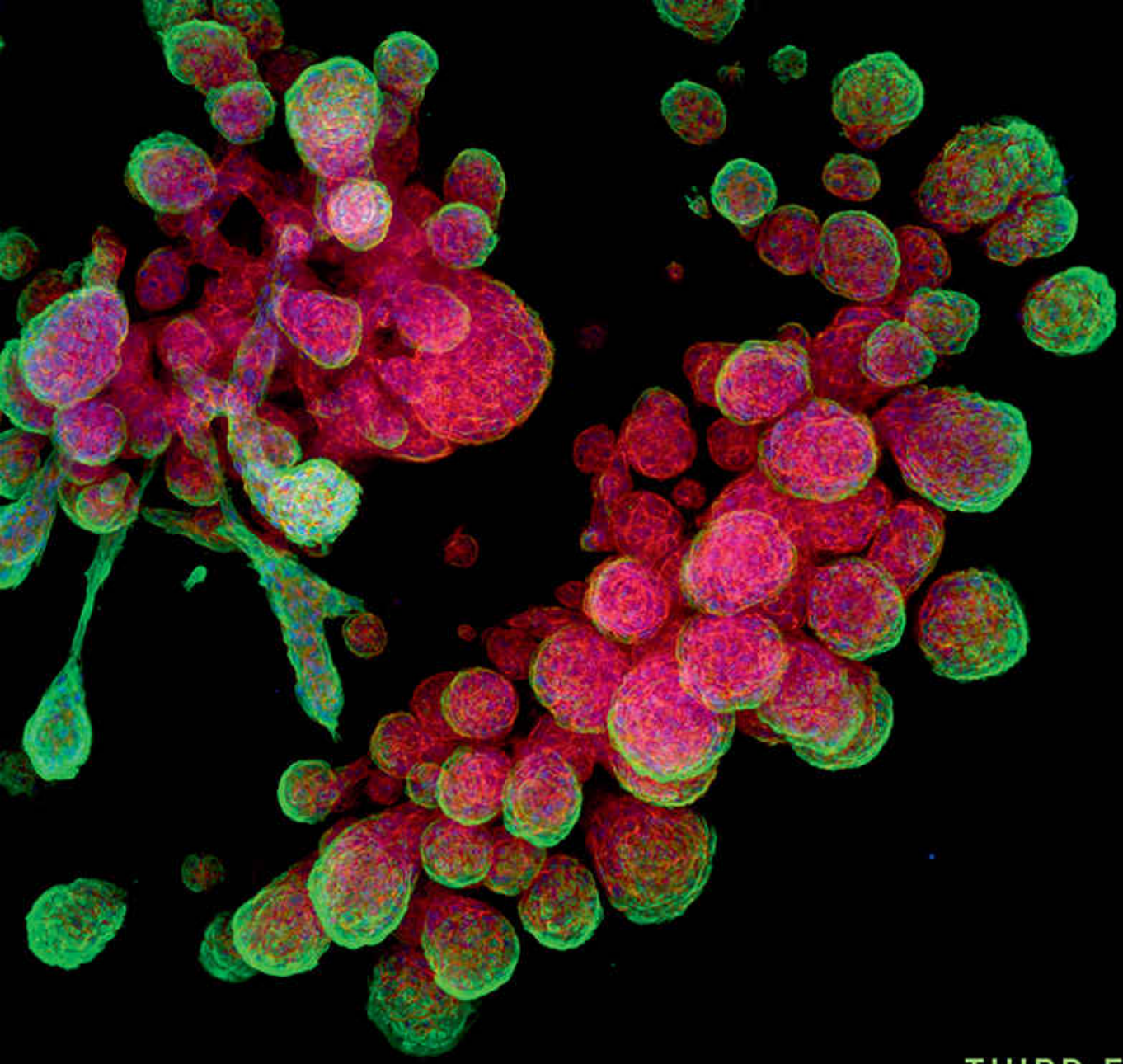
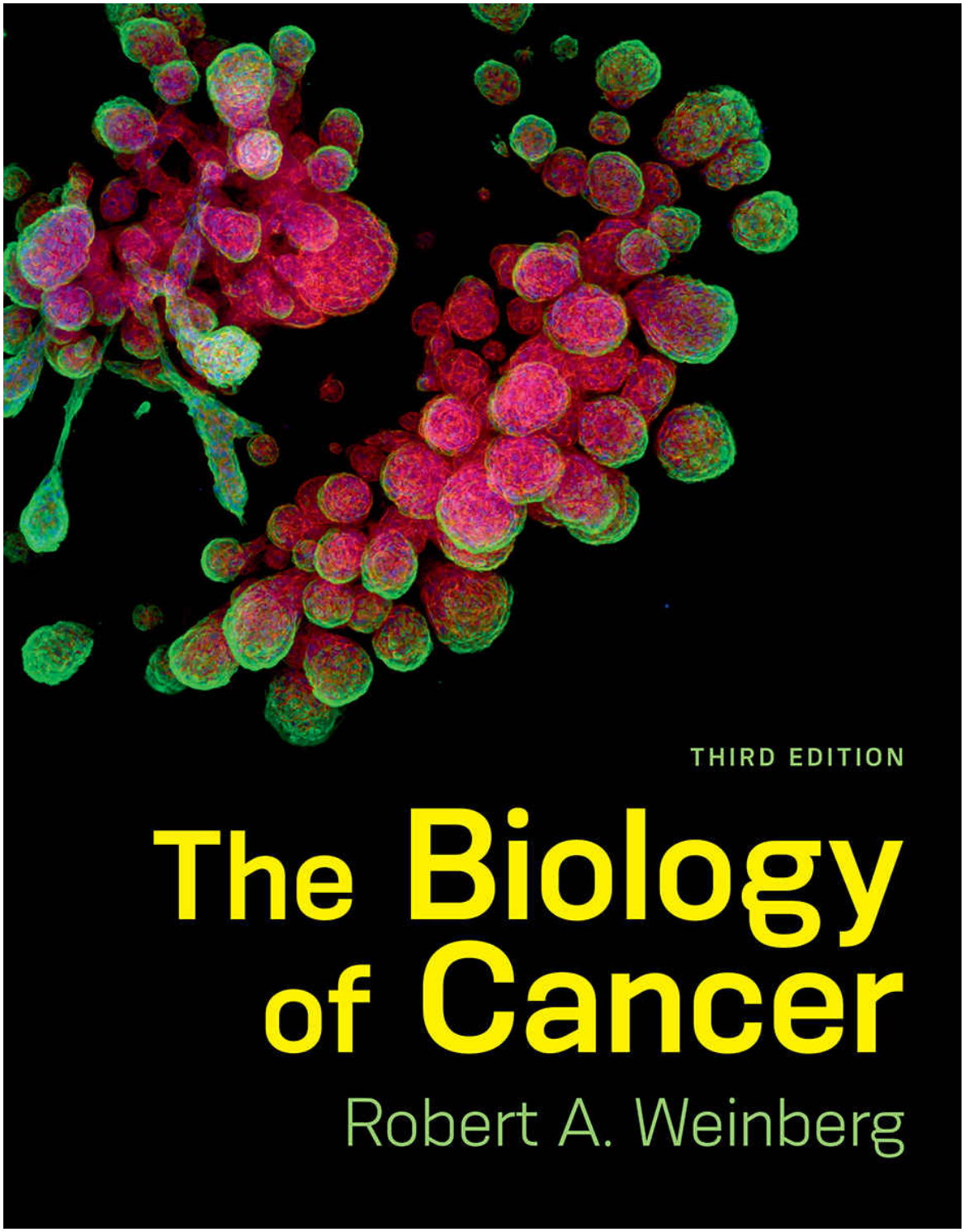


THIRD EDITION

The Biology of Cancer

Robert A. Weinberg



A fluorescence microscopy image of bulbous cells clustered together. They are mostly colored red but some have green edges.

the biology of CANCER

THIRD EDITION

Robert A. Weinberg,
Massachusetts Institute
of Technology

With chapters by:
Richard Goldsby, Amherst College
Michael Hemann, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
Tyler Jacks, Massachusetts Institute of Technology

W. W. NORTON & COMPANY
Celebrating a Century of Independent Publishing

OceanofPDF.com

Publisher’s Notice

Please note that this version of the ebook does not include access to any media or print supplements that are sold packaged with the printed book.

OceanofPDF.com

W. W. Norton & Company has been independent since its founding in 1923, when William Warder Norton and Mary D. Herter Norton first published lectures delivered at the People's Institute, the adult education division of New York City's Cooper Union. The firm soon expanded its program beyond the Institute, publishing books by celebrated academics from America and abroad. By midcentury, the two major pillars of Norton's publishing program—trade books and college texts—were firmly established. In the 1950s, the Norton family transferred control of the company to its employees, and today—with a staff of five hundred and hundreds of trade, college, and professional titles published each year—W. W. Norton & Company stands as the largest and oldest publishing house owned wholly by its employees.

Copyright © 2023 by W. W. Norton & Company, Inc.

All rights reserved

Editors: Cailin Barrett-Bressack and Betsy Twitchell

Editorial Advisor: Denise Schanck

Senior Project Editor: Jennifer Barnhardt

Assistant Editor: Maggie Stephens

Managing Editor, College: Marian Johnson

Developmental Editor: Judith Kromm

Copyeditors: Richard Mickey and Marjorie Anderson

Senior Production Managers: Richard Bretan and Eric Pier-Hocking

Media Editor: Gina Forsythe

Associate Media Editor: Jasmine Ribeaux

Media Project Editor: Jesse Newkirk, Nora G. Martinez, and Colette Nolan

Media Editorial Assistant: Mandy Lin

Managing Editor, College Digital Media: Kim Yi

Ebook Producer: Kate Barnes and Emily Schwoyer

Marketing Manager, Biology: Holly Plank

Design Director: Rubina Yeh

Design: Matthew McClements, Blink Studio, Ltd.

Director of College Permissions: Megan Schindel

Permissions Associate: Patricia Wong

Photo Editors: Stacey Stambaugh and Thomas Persano

Composition: Graphic World

Illustrations: Nigel Orme

Permission to use copyrighted material appears alongside the appropriate content.

ISBN: 978-0-393-69021-7 (print)

ISBN: 978-0-393-88758-7 (ebk)

W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10110

www.wwnorton.com

W. W. Norton & Company Ltd., 15 Carlisle Street, London W1D 3BS

Ebook version: 1.2-retailer

OceanofPDF.com

About the Authors

Robert A. Weinberg is a Founding Member of the Whitehead Institute for Biomedical Research. He is the Daniel K. Ludwig Professor for Cancer Research and Professor in the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) Department of Biology. His research is focused on the molecular and cellular mechanisms of cancer pathogenesis. He was awarded the U.S. National Medal of Science in 1997.

Contributing authors

Richard Goldsby is a Professor of Biology emeritus, Amherst College, Amherst, with a longstanding involvement and expertise in immunology.

Michael Hemann is a Member, Koch Institute for Integrative Cancer Research and Professor of Biology, MIT with an interest in how current cancer therapies succeed or fail.

Tyler Jacks is a Member, Koch Institute for Integrative Cancer Research and Professor of Biology, MIT with an interest in how mouse models of human cancer shed critical light on mechanisms of disease pathogenesis.

Front Cover

When propagated in a three-dimensional gel matrix *in vitro*, mammary epithelial cells can be induced to form the alveoli and ducts closely resembling comparable structures developed naturally in the mammary gland. The fluorescent stains reveal cytokeratins associated with the basal and with the luminal epithelial cells in this experimental model. (From E. S. Sokol, D.H. Miller, A. Breggia et al., *Breast Cancer. Res*. 18:19–32, 2016).

OceanofPDF.com

Dedication

Robert A. Weinberg dedicates this third edition, as the first and second ones, to his dear wife, Amy Shulman Weinberg, who endured long hours of inattention, hearing from him repeatedly the claim that the writing of this edition was almost complete, when in fact years of work lay ahead. She deserved much better! With much love.

OceanofPDF.com

Preface

“No one can trust you scientists. You’re always changing your minds.” So said a neighbor of mine in the green woods of New Hampshire, to which I responded “If it makes any difference to you, 99% of what I learned as an undergraduate is still considered to be accurate and true.” This brief exchange highlighted the two worlds that scientists live in, surrounded in one world by the fixed certainties of accepted wisdom and, when moving through the other, trying to maintain balance on constantly shifting ground, never knowing how much the landscape will change from one year to the next.

This dichotomy afflicted the textbook authors in major ways, in this edition myself (R.A.W.) and the three co-authors—Tyler Jacks, Michael Hemann, and Richard A. Goldsby—who have wrestled repeatedly with this question. What should we portray with a voice of certainty and conviction and what to describe in a very tentative and uncertain voice? If there is a measure of uncertainty, should we present something nevertheless, doing so with the conviction that several years down the road, it will be seen as the precursor of a major, highly topical breakthrough? Which recent discoveries will emerge as truly important and which will fade into insignificance, being nothing more than trivial distractions?

Then, there is a second major problem: How much material to present? This issue is, if anything, an even greater challenge. The problem is dictated by the subject matter, in this case the vast and ever-expanding area of contemporary cancer research. Some readers are entranced by the wealth of precisely documented detail presented in a textbook, but far more will, instead, be driven away by too much. Independent of the limitations of the human mind to absorb and process the details is the far more pressing problem, specifically, that of losing would-be readers who, having confronted a forbidding mass of complex information, will simply run away and search for more readily accessible, simple prose and logic. Cancer research, as the authors of this textbook truly believe, should be truly accessible with relatively little advanced preparation, unlike theoretical

physics or complex organic chemistry. Turning away would-be readers will thwart our achieving the major goal of this book—to recruit a new generation of young people to the ranks of the cancer research community.

These dynamics also influence the detailed contents of each chapter in another way: We consciously aspired to present concepts and the logical development of various lines of cancer research rather than providing encyclopedic assemblies of all known facts. Hence, this book is decidedly not a reference book but rather one that hopes to explain scientific logic and paths of discovery. This also touches on a related agenda of this book: to provide by example instruction to students who are learning precisely how biomedical research actually proceeds.

We embrace the existence of a logical backbone that threads its way through each of the chapters and the research subspecialities presented here. Cancer research is an area that does indeed have a conceptual coherence rather than being a grab bag of unrelated and arbitrarily encountered phenomena. All four of us feel a need to move away from compilations of facts and focus instead on underlying principles. In my own case, this drive comes from a chance encounter in the early 1980s with an older, by-then cynical researcher in England, who was disillusioned by what he perceived was the mindless phenomenology of cancer research at the time and warned me sternly that “you should never ever confuse cancer research with science.” This textbook is written with the intent of proving him wrong.

Reassuringly, the initial chapters of this book, which reflect the foundations of this field of modern cancer research, have not changed much from the earlier editions. We present these chapters in their largely unchanged form without apology, because they continue to represent the sturdy logical foundations on which all that follows rests. A need to revise them substantially would indicate that many of our assumptions of what were solid scientific truths were nothing more than illusions. The later chapters of this book, in contrast, address the more dynamic, rapidly changing areas of cancer research whose ultimate outcomes are not yet totally clear.

Compared with other areas of biological research, the science of molecular oncology is a recent arrival; its beginning can be traced with precision to a milestone discovery in 1975. In that year, the laboratory of Harold Varmus

and J. Michael Bishop in San Francisco, California demonstrated that normal cell genomes carry a gene—they called it a proto-oncogene—that has the potential, following alteration, to incite cancer. Before that time, we knew essentially nothing about the molecular mechanisms underlying cancer formation; since that time an abundance of information has accumulated that now reveals how normal cells become transformed into tumor cells and how these neoplastic cells collaborate to form life-threatening tumors.

In spite of this abundance of findings, there are major gaps in our knowledge that remain to be filled. Most critically, the lessons about cancer's origins, laid out extensively in this book, have not yet been successfully applied to make major inroads into the prevention and cure of many common types of neoplastic disease. This represents the major frustration of contemporary cancer research: the lessons of disease causation have rarely been followed, as day follows night, by the development of definitive cures.

And yes, there are still major questions that remain murky and poorly resolved. We still do not understand precisely how many types of human cancers are triggered. We still possess a woefully incomplete understanding of the role of the immune system in preventing cancer development. And while we know much about the individual signaling molecules operating inside individual human cells, we lack a clear understanding of how the complex signaling circuitry assembled by these molecules makes the life-and-death decisions that govern the fate of individual cells within our body. Those decisions ultimately determine whether or not one or another of our cells begins the journey down the long road leading to cancerous proliferation and, finally, to a life-threatening tumor.

Contemporary cancer research has enriched numerous other areas of modern biomedical research. Consequently, much of what you will learn from this book will be useful in understanding many aspects of cell biology, immunology, neurobiology, developmental biology, and a dozen other biomedical research fields. Enjoy the ride!

On behalf of my three co-authors, Richard Goldsby, Michael Hemann, and Tyler Jacks,

Robert A. Weinberg

Cambridge, Massachusetts

March 2023

OceanofPDF.com

A Note to the Reader on the Third Edition

The third edition of this book is organized into 17 chapters of differing lengths. The conceptual structure that was established in the first two editions still seemed to be highly appropriate for this one, and so it was retained. The chapters are meant to be read in the order that they appear, in that each builds on the ideas that have been presented in the chapters before it. The first chapter is a condensed refresher course for undergraduate biology majors and pre-doctoral students; it lays out many of the foundational concepts that are assumed in the subsequent chapters. The driving force of these three editions has been a belief that modern cancer research represents a conceptually coherent field of science that can be presented as a clear, logical progression. Embedded in these discussions is an anticipation that much of this information will one day prove useful in devising novel diagnostic and therapeutic strategies that can be deployed in oncology clinics. Each text chapter has pedagogical elements that will help you navigate these concepts. Also, certain experiments are described in detail to indicate the logic supporting many of these concepts.

- You will find numerous **schematic drawings**, often coupled with **micrographs**, that will help you to appreciate how experimental results have been assembled, piece-by-piece, generating the syntheses that underlie molecular oncology.
- Scattered about the text are "**Sidebars**," which consist of commentaries that represent detours from the main thrust of the discussion. Often these Sidebars contain anecdotes or elaborate on ideas presented in the main text. Read them if you are interested, or skip over them if you find them too distracting. They are presented to provide additional interest—a bit of extra seasoning in the rich stew of ideas that constitutes contemporary research in this area.
- The same can be said about the "**Supplementary Sidebars**," which are available in the ebook. These also elaborate upon topics that are laid out in the main text and are cross-referenced throughout the book,

and they appear in a section at the end of each ebook chapter. Space constraints dictated that the Supplementary Sidebars could not be included in the hardcopy versions of the textbook.

- Throughout the main text you will find extensive **cross-references** whenever topics under discussion have been introduced or described elsewhere. Many of these have been inserted in the event that you read the chapters in an order different from their presentation here. These cross-references should not provoke you to continually leaf through other chapters in order to track down cited sections or figures. If you feel that you will benefit from earlier introductions to a topic, use these cross-references; otherwise, ignore them.
- Each chapter except the first one ends with a forward-looking summary titled "**Synopsis and Prospects**." This section synthesizes the main concepts of the chapter and often addresses ideas that remain matters of contention. It also considers where research might go in the future. This overview is extended by a list of key concepts and a set of questions. Some of the questions are deliberately challenging and we hope they will provoke you to think more deeply about many of the issues and concepts developed.
- Each of the chapters has at its end an **Additional Reading** section, which presents a list of especially useful articles from research journals. Most of these are reviews of specific, circumscribed areas of the scientific literature. These will be useful if you wish to explore a particular topic in more detail.
- Perhaps the most important goal of this book is to enable you to move beyond the textbook and jump directly into the primary research literature. This explains why some of the text is directed toward teaching the elaborate, specialized vocabulary of the cancer research literature, and many of its terms are defined in the **Glossary**. Boldface type has been used throughout to introduce and highlight key terms that you should understand.
- Cancer research, like most areas of contemporary biomedical research, is plagued by numerous abbreviations and acronyms that pepper the text of many published reports; the book provides a key to deciphering this alphabet soup by defining these acronyms. You will find a list of such **abbreviations** in the back.

Because this book describes an area of research in which new and exciting findings are being announced all the time, some of the details and interpretations presented here will become outdated (or, equally likely, proven to be wrong) once this book is in print. Still, the primary concepts presented here will remain, as they rest on solid foundations of experimental results.

The author and the publisher would greatly appreciate your feedback. Every effort has been made to minimize errors. Nonetheless, you may find them here and there, and it would be of great benefit if you took the trouble to communicate them. Even more importantly, much of the science described herein will require reinterpretation in coming years as new discoveries are made. Please email us at biology@wwnorton.com with your suggestions, which will be considered for incorporation into future editions.

OceanofPDF.com

Digital Resources for Instructors and Students

The third edition has a number of exciting digital resources for instructors and students to use that are available at wwnorton.com.

OceanofPDF.com

Instructor Resources

Image files

Much of the art from the book, sized for classroom display, is available in PowerPoint with alt text and in JPEG format.

Test Bank

Norton uses evidence-based assessment practices to deliver high quality and pedagogically effective quizzes and testing materials. The framework to develop our test banks, quizzes, and support materials is the result of a collaboration with leading academic researchers and advisers. Questions are classified by section and difficulty, making it easy to construct tests and quizzes that are meaningful and diagnostic. Norton Testmaker brings Norton's high-quality testing materials online. Create assessments for your course from anywhere with an Internet connection, without downloading files or installing specialized software. Search and filter test bank questions by chapter, type, difficulty, and other criteria. You can also customize test bank questions to fit your course. Easily export your tests to Microsoft Word or Common Cartridge files for your LMS.

Primary Research Suggestions with Discussion Questions

Primary literature suggestions for every chapter are available to instructors for download on wwnorton.com/instructors along with questions to prompt discussion.

OceanofPDF.com

Student Resources

Ebook

Norton Ebooks offer an enhanced reading experience at a fraction of the cost of a print textbook. They provide an active reading experience, enabling students to highlight, take notes, search, and read offline. Instructors can add their own content and notes that students can see as they are reading the text. Supplementary Sidebars that elaborate on and further illustrate concepts and figures in the main text are available for the first time within the ebook in a section at the end of each chapter. Norton Ebooks can be viewed on all devices and are born accessible, with content and features designed from the start for all learners. Available at digital.wwnorton.com/cancer3.

Animations

Narrated animations cover selected topics. These animations for *The Biology of Cancer* are available online and in the ebook.

MP3 mini-lectures

Audio files of mini-lectures by the author are available at digital.wwnorton.com/cancer3.

OceanofPDF.com

Acknowledgments

The science described in this book is the opus of a large, highly interactive research community stretching across the globe. Its members have moved forward our understanding of cancer immeasurably over the past generation. The colleagues listed below have helped the authors in countless ways, large and small, by providing sound advice, referring us to critical scientific literature, analyzing complex and occasionally contentious scientific issues, reviewing individual chapters, and providing much-appreciated critiques over the past three editions. Their scientific expertise and their insights into pedagogical clarity have proven to be invaluable. Their help extends and complements the help of an equally large roster of colleagues who helped with the preparation of the first two editions. These individuals are representatives of a community, whose members are, virtually without exception, prepared and pleased to provide a helping hand to those who request it. We are most grateful to them. Not listed below are the many colleagues who generously provided high-quality versions of their published images; they are acknowledged through the literature citations in the figure legends.

Daniel Abankwa

Mohammed Abba

Michael Abler

Rudolf Aebersold

Andrew Aguirre

Donna Albertson

Adriana Albini

Sarah Allinson

C. David Allis

Mohammad Alzrigat

L. Mario Amzel

Dimitris Anastassiou

Kristin Ardlie

Cheryl Arrowsmith

Steven Artandi

Laura Attardi

David E. Axelrod

Gustavo Ayala

Yael Aylon

Melanie Badtke

Chris Bailey

Frances Balkwill

Allan Balmain

Xiaomin Bao

Mariano Barbacid

David Bartel

Stephen Baylin

Gregory Beatty

Robert Benezra

A. Elif Erson Bensan

Anton Berns

Bradley Bernstein

Rameen Beroukhim

Brian Bierie

J. Michael Bishop

Stacy Blain

Paul Blainey

Jennifer Blasé

Gerd Blobel

AnneMarie Block

C. Richard Boland

Jean-Paul Borg

Mariana Brait

Greg N. Brooke

Joan Brugge

Thijn Brummelkamp

Christopher Burge

Tony Burgess

Mike Calderwood

Carlos Carmona-Fontaine

Peter Campbell

Judith Campisi

Clare-Anne Edwards Canfield

Carmen Cantemir-Stone

Lewis Cantley

Leah Caplan

Lisa Carey

Scott Carter

Tony Cesare

Iain Cheeseman

Andrew Cherniack

Paola Chiarugi

Shin-Heng Chiou

Karen Cichowski

Hans Clevers

David Cobrinik

Robert Coffey

Ofir Cohen

Jonathan Coloff

Carla Concepcion

John Condeelis

Amanda Coutts

Pau Creixell

Edwin Cuppen

Christina Curtis

Chi Van Dang

Karin de Visser

João Pedro de Magalhães

Titia de Lange

Karin de Visser

Ralph DeBerardinis

James DeCaprio

James DeGregori

George Demetri

Gina DeNicola

Channing Der

Rik Derynck

Mark Dewhirst

John Dick

Deborah Dillon

Elie Dolgin

Anushka Dongre

Steven Dowdy

Julian Downward

Glenn Dranoff

Denis Duboule

Andrew Duncan

Michel Dupage

Nicholas Dyson

Gail Eckhardt

Mikala Egeblad

Martin Eilers

Robert Eisenman

Kevin Elias

Eran Elinav

Stephen Elledge

Neta Erez

Manel Esteller

Andrew Ewald

Yi Fan

Douglas Fearon

Napoleone Ferrara

David Fisher

Garrett Frampton

Christopher French

Peter Friedl

Sylvia Fromherz

Julia Fröse

Leslie Gaffney

Giulio Genovese

Marios Georgiou

Jacqueline Gerritsen

Frank Gertler

Gad Getz

Filippo Giancotti

Charles Giardina

Luke Gilbert

Richard Gilbertson

Christine Gilles

Thomas Gilmore

Richard Goldsby

Richard Gomer

Farhad Islami Gomeshtapeh

Vera Gorbunova

Anna Grabowska

Charles Graham

Kenneth Gray

Jack Griffith

Frank Grosveld

Amy Groth

Kun-Liang Guan

Kishore Guda

Lorraine Gudas

Vincent Guen

Malini Guha

Theresa Guise

Barry Gumbiner

Piyush Gupta

Silvio Gutkind

Daniel Haber

William Hahn

Kevin Haigis

Bashar Hamza

Alfizah Hanafiah

Douglas Hanahan

Edward Harhaj

Masanori Hatakeyama

James Haughian

Daniel Hayes

Whitney Henry

Yusuf Hannun

Mary Hitt

Aaron Hobbs

David A. Hoekstra II

Matan Hofree

Eric Holland

Andrew Hoyt

Ralph Hruban

Karen Hubbard

Chi-Chung Hui

Tony Hunter

Bonnie Hylander

Richard Hynes

Antonio Iavarone

Mitsuhiko Ikura

Sonia Iyer

Emily K. Jackson

Rudolf Jaenisch

Siddhartha Jaiswal

Stefanie Jeffrey

Ahmedin Jemal

Nicolas Jonckheere

Johanna Joyce

FuiBoon Kai

William Kaelin

Eric Kalkhoven

Yibin Kang

Madhuri Kango-Singh

Loukia Karacosta

Jan Karlseder

Edward Kastenhuber

Zuzana Keckesova

Alan Kelly

Trey Kidd

Carla Kim

Alec Kimmelman

Nicole King

Kenneth Kinzler

Jesse Kirkpatrick

Keith Knutson

Angela Koehler

Eugene Koonin

Carl Koschmann

Adrian Krainer

Jordan Krall

Barry Kramer

Merideth Krevosky

Cornelia Kröger

Heather Kuruvilla

Lindsay LaFave

Arthur Lambert

Laurens Lambert

David Lane

Ju-Seog Lee

Greg Lemke

Anthony Letai

Erez Levanon

Arnold Levine

Daniel Levy

Xin Li

Daniel Link

David Livingston

Josep Llovet

Gregory Longmore

Jari Louhelainen

Scott Lowe

Kiven Erique Lukong

Salvador Macip

Ilaria Malanchi

Carlo Maley

Scott Manalis

Mathias Mann

Sanford Markowitz

Ronen Marmorstein

Sarah-Anne Martin

Stuart Martin

Yosef Maruvka

Joan Massagué

Roberto Mayor

Sandra McAllister

Andrea McClatchey

Frank McCormick

Donald McDonald

Matthew Meyerson

Thomas Michniacki

Kim Miller

Mari Mino-Kenudson

Arindam Mitra

Saili Moghe

Shabaz Mohammed

Aristidis Moustakas

Paul Mueller

Karl Munger

James Murphy

Cornelis Murre

Hyman Muss

Mandar Muzumdar

Honami Naora

Nicholas Navin

Jens Nielsen

M. Angela Nieto Toledano

Martin Noble

Roeland Nusse

Ruth Nussinov

Robert O’Donnell

Fergal O’Farrell

Esther Oliva

Moshe Oren

Terry Orr-Weaver

Barbara Osborne

Timothy Padera

Raymond Pagliarini

Duojia Pan

Klaus Pantel

Luis Parada

David Pellman

Eran Perlson

Charles Perou

Julian Peto

Stefano Piccolo

Eli Pikarsky

Mikael Pittet

Leonid Pobezinsky

Jeffrey Pollard

Supriya Prasanth

David Price

Justin Pritchard

Carol Prives

Sidharth Puram

Bruce Pyenson

Jayaraj Rajagopal

Joe Ramos, Jr.

Kodimangalam Ravichandran

Roger Reddel

E. Premkumar Reddy

Elizabeth Repasky

Lyndsay Rhodes

David Richardson

Anne Ridley

Gregory Riely

Samantha Riesenfeld

Douglas Robertson

Rodrigo Romero

Amy Romesburg

Jatin Roper

Jeffrey Rosen

Richard Rothenberg

David Rowley

Orit Rozenblatt-Rosen

David Sabatini

Masoud Sadaghiani

Julien Sage

Yardena Samuels

Francisco Sanchez-Rivera

Leona Samson

Ioannis Sanidas

Pierre Savagner

Antje Schaefer

Alexandra Schambony

William Schiemann

John Schiller

Joseph Schlessinger

Ralph Scully

Darren Seals

Sendurai Mani

Javier Leon Serrano

Jeffrey Settleman

Lawrence Shapiro

Norman Sharpless

Jerry Shay

Kuang Shen

Dean Sheppard

Darryl Shibata

Tsukasa Shibue

Peter Sicinski

Rebecca Siegel

Daniel Silver

Dhirendra Simanshu

Robert Singer

Michael Sixt

Pierre Sonveaux

Steven Stacker

Ben Stanger

Phoebe Stavride

David Stern

Sheila Stewart

Michael Stratton

Mario Suva

Charles Swanton

Clifford Tabin

Maria Letizia Taddei

Makoto Taketo

Wai Leong Tam

Dan Theodorescu

Steven Theroux

Marc Therrien

Jean Paul Thiery

Itay Tirosh

Marc Tollis

Cristian Tomasetti

Nick Tonks

Jeffrey Townsend

Samra Turajlic

David Tuveson

Ruben van Boxtel

Jan van Deursen

Michael van Dyke

Jacco van Rheenen

Frans van Roy

Bert van de Kooij

Sander van den Heuvel

Louise van der Weyden

Matthew Vander Heiden

Vinay Varadan

Ajit Varki

Harold Varmus

Victor Velculescu

Subramanian Venkatesan

Andrea Ventura

Marc Vidal

Bert Vogelstein

Peter Vogt

Ulrich von Andrian

Karen Vousden

Johanna Wagner

Graham Walker

Timothy C. Wang

Xiao-Fan Wang

Yuan Wang

Fiona Watt

Valerie Weaver

Wenyi Wei

David Weinstock

Matthew Weirauch

William Weis

Kipp Weiskopf

Robin Weiss

Zena Werb

Jukka Westermarck

Amanda Whipple

Forest White

Daniel Wicklein

Traci Wilgus

Monte Winslow

Jedd Wolchok

Brian Wong

Victoria Wu

Shujuan Xia

Michael Yaffe

Jing Yang

Yosef Yarden

Xin Ye

Kam Chi Yeung

Ömer Yilmaz

Richard Young

Stuart Yuspa

Jinghui Zhang

Xiang-Dong Zhang

Yun Zhang

Martin Zornig

Lee Zou

Special thanks to Prof. Makoto Mark Taketo for truly extraordinary help in critiquing the previous editions of this textbook.

W. W. Norton & Company: The authors would like to thank the extraordinary staffs at W.W. Norton, and before them, at Garland Science, who made the assembling of this book possible. While the prose of the authors is the most visible component of this book, supporting it and lying behind it are hundreds of hours of detailed editing, production, permissions, and sales efforts on the part of these staffs, including most prominently the leading editorial roles of Denise Schanck at Garland Science and Cailin Barrett-Bressack at W.W. Norton, as well as the work of our extraordinary illustrator, Nigel Orme. While their respective contributions are critical to publication of a book like this one, their work often passes unrecognized,

and so we, the authors, would like to thank them for their greatly appreciated work!

Media contributors: A sincere thank you to all of those involved in writing, curating, or reviewing the digital resources for the third edition. Your hard work, creative vision, and thoughtful contributions to the test bank, animations, audio lectures, ebook, and primary research discussion questions will provide support to many instructors and students.

OceanofPDF.com

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: The Biology and Genetics of Cells and Organisms1
Chapter 2: The Nature of Cancer31
Chapter 3: Cancer as an Infectious Disease67
Chapter 4: Cellular Oncogenes101
Chapter 5: Growth Factors, Receptors, and Cancer125
Chapter 6: Cytoplasmic Signaling Circuitry Programs Many of the Traits of Cancer171
Chapter 7: Tumor Suppressor Genes233
Chapter 8: pRb and Control of the Cell Cycle Clock275
Chapter 9: p53: Master Guardian and Executioner323
Chapter 10: Eternal Life: Cell Immortalization and Tumorigenesis375
Chapter 11: Multi-Step Tumorigenesis415
Chapter 12: Shaping and Characterizing the Cancer Genome479
Chapter 13: Dialogue Replaces Monologue: Heterotypic Interactions and the Biology of Angiogenesis549
Chapter 14: Moving Out: Invasion and Metastasis609
Chapter 15: Crowd Control: Tumor Immunology697
Chapter 16: Cancer Immunotherapy737
Chapter 17: The Rational Treatment of Cancer781
AbbreviationsA:1
GlossaryG:1
IndexI:1
Supplementary Sidebars963

OceanofPDF.com

Detailed Contents

Chapter 1: The Biology and Genetics of Cells and Organisms 1

- 1.1 Mendel establishes the basic rules of genetics 2
- 1.2 Mendelian genetics helps to explain Darwinian evolution 4
- 1.3 Mendelian genetics governs how both genes and chromosomes behave 6
- 1.4 Chromosomes are altered in most types of cancer cells 9
- 1.5 Mutations causing cancer occur in both the germ line and the soma 9
- 1.6 Genotype embodied in DNA sequences creates phenotype through proteins 12
- 1.7 Gene expression patterns also control phenotype 17
- 1.8 Modification of chromatin proteins and DNA controls gene expression 20
- 1.9 Unconventional RNA molecules also affect the expression of genes 24
- 1.10 Metazoa are formed from components conserved over vast evolutionary time periods 26
- 1.11 Gene cloning techniques revolutionized the study of normal and malignant cells 27
- Additional reading 29
- Supplementary Sidebars S:1

Chapter 2: The Nature of Cancer 31

- 2.1 Tumors arise from normal tissues 32
- 2.2 Tumors arise from many specialized cell types throughout the body 34
- 2.3 Some types of tumors do not fit into the major classifications 42
- 2.4 Cancers seem to develop progressively 44
- 2.5 Tumors are monoclonal growths 49
- 2.6 Cancers occur with vastly different frequencies in different human populations 51
- 2.7 The risks of cancers often seem to be increased by assignable influences, including lifestyle 54

- 2.8 Specific chemical agents can induce cancer 56
- 2.9 Both physical and chemical carcinogens act as mutagens 57
- 2.10 Mutagens may be responsible for some human cancers 60
- 2.11 Synopsis and prospects 61
- Key concepts 63
- Thought questions 64
- Additional reading 65
- Supplementary Sidebars S:6

Chapter 3: Cancer as an Infectious Disease 67

- 3.1 Peyton Rous discovers a chicken sarcoma virus 68
- 3.2 Rous sarcoma virus is discovered to transform infected cells in culture 69
- 3.3 The continued presence of RSV is needed to maintain transformation 72
- 3.4 Viruses containing DNA molecules are also able to induce cancer 74
- 3.5 Tumor viruses induce multiple changes in cell phenotype including acquisition of tumorigenicity 77
- 3.6 Tumor virus genomes persist in virus-transformed cells by becoming part of host-cell DNA 79
- 3.7 Retroviral genomes become integrated into the chromosomes of infected cells 82
- 3.8 A version of the *src* gene carried by RSV is also present in uninfected cells 84
- 3.9 RSV exploits a kidnapped cellular gene to transform cells 86
- 3.10 The vertebrate genome carries a large group of proto-oncogenes 88
- 3.11 Slowly transforming retroviruses activate proto-oncogenes by inserting their genomes adjacent to these cellular genes 89
- 3.12 Some retroviruses naturally carry oncogenes 92
- 3.13 Bacterial cancers 94
- 3.14 Synopsis and prospects 95
- Key concepts 97
- Thought questions 98
- Additional reading 99
- Supplementary Sidebars S:18

Chapter 4: Cellular Oncogenes 101

- 4.1 Transfection of DNA provides a strategy for detecting nonviral oncogenes 102
- 4.2 Oncogenes discovered in human tumor cell lines are related to those carried by transforming retroviruses 104
- 4.3 Proto-oncogenes can be activated by genetic changes affecting either protein expression level or structure 107
- 4.4 Variations on a theme: the *myc* oncogene can arise via at least three additional distinct mechanisms 111
- 4.5 A diverse array of structural changes in proteins can also lead to oncogene activation 117
- 4.6 Synopsis and prospects 120
- Key concepts 122
- Thought questions 123
- Additional reading 123
- Supplementary Sidebars S:29

Chapter 5: Growth Factors, Receptors, and Cancer 125

- 5.1 Normal metazoan cells control each other's lives 126
- 5.2 The *Src* protein functions as a tyrosine kinase 129
- 5.3 The EGF receptor functions as a tyrosine kinase 132
- 5.4 An altered growth factor receptor can function as an oncoprotein 135
- 5.5 A growth factor gene can become an oncogene: the case of *sis*138
- 5.6 Transphosphorylation underlies the operations of many receptor tyrosine kinases 141
- 5.7 Yet other types of receptors enable mammalian cells to communicate with their environment 147
- 5.8 Nuclear receptors sense the presence of low–molecular-weight lipophilic ligands 153
- 5.9 Integrin receptors sense association between the cell and the extracellular matrix 154
- 5.10 The Ras protein, an apparent component of the downstream signaling cascade, functions as a G-protein 159
- 5.11 Synopsis and prospects 162
- Key concepts 167
- Thought questions 169
- Additional reading 169

- Supplementary Sidebars S:41

Chapter 6: Cytoplasmic Signaling Circuitry Programs Many of the Traits of Cancer 171

- 6.1 A signaling pathway reaches from the cell surface into the nucleus 172
- 6.2 The Ras protein stands in the middle of a complex signaling cascade 176
- 6.3 Tyrosine phosphorylation controls the location and thereby the actions of many cytoplasmic signaling proteins 177
- 6.4 SH2 and SH3 groups explain how growth factor receptors activate Ras and acquire signaling specificity 182
- 6.5 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: A cascade of kinases forms one of three important signaling pathways downstream of Ras 184
- 6.6 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: a second downstream pathway controls inositol lipids and the Akt/PKB kinase 189
- 6.7 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: a third downstream pathway acts through Ral, a distant cousin of Ras 198
- 6.8 The JAK–STAT pathway allows signals to be transmitted from the plasma membrane directly to the nucleus 200
- 6.9 Cell adhesion receptors emit signals that converge with those released by growth factor receptors 202
- 6.10 The canonical and non-canonical Wnt pathways control diverse cellular phenotypes 204
- 6.11 G-protein–coupled receptors can also drive normal and neoplastic proliferation 208
- 6.12 Four additional “dual-address” signaling pathways contribute in various ways to normal and neoplastic proliferation 211
- 6.13 The Hippo signaling circuit integrates diverse inputs to govern diverse cell phenotypes 217
- 6.14 Well-designed signaling circuits require both negative and positive feedback controls 218
- 6.15 Synopsis and prospects 221
- Key concepts 229
- Thought questions 230
- Additional reading 231

- Supplementary Sidebars S:52

Chapter 7: Tumor Suppressor Genes 233

- 7.1 Cell fusion experiments indicate that the cancer phenotype is recessive 234
- 7.2 The recessive nature of the cancer cell phenotype requires a genetic explanation 235
- 7.3 The retinoblastoma tumor provides a solution to the genetic puzzle of TSGs 236
- 7.4 Incipient cancer cells eliminate wild-type copies of TSGs by a variety of mechanisms 240
- 7.5 The Rb gene often undergoes loss of heterozygosity in tumors 242
- 7.6 Loss-of-heterozygosity events can be used to find TSGs 244
- 7.7 Promoter methylation represents an important mechanism for inactivating TSGs 247
- 7.8 TSGs and their encoded proteins function in diverse ways 253
- 7.9 The NF1 protein acts as a negative regulator of Ras signaling 254
- 7.10 APC facilitates egress of cells from colonic crypts 259
- 7.11 KEAP1 regulates cellular response to oxidative stress 265
- 7.12 Not all familial cancers can be explained by inheritance of mutant TSGs 268
- 7.13 Synopsis and prospects 268
- Key concepts 272
- Thought questions 273
- Additional reading 273
- Supplementary Sidebars S:62

Chapter 8: pRb and Control of the Cell Cycle Clock 275

- 8.1 Cell growth and division is coordinated by a complex array of regulators 276
- 8.2 Cells make decisions about growth and quiescence during a specific period in the G_1 phase 280
- 8.3 Cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases constitute the core components of the cell cycle clock 282
- 8.4 Cyclin–CDK complexes are also regulated by CDK inhibitors 287

- 8.5 Viral oncoproteins reveal how pRb blocks advance through the cell cycle 292
- 8.6 pRb is deployed by the cell cycle clock to serve as a guardian of the restriction-point gate 295
- 8.7 E2F transcription factors enable pRb to implement growth-versus-quiescence decisions 297
- 8.8 A variety of mitogenic signaling pathways control the phosphorylation state of pRb 301
- 8.9 The Myc protein governs decisions to proliferate or differentiate 302
- 8.10 TGF-β prevents phosphorylation of pRb and thereby blocks cell cycle progression 307
- 8.11 pRb function and the controls of differentiation are closely linked 309
- 8.12 Control of pRb function is perturbed in most if not all human cancers 311
- 8.13 Synopsis and prospects 315
- Key concepts 318
- Thought questions 320
- Additional reading 320
- Supplementary Sidebars S:69

Chapter 9: p53: Master Guardian and Executioner 323

- 9.1 DNA tumor viruses lead to the discovery of p53 324
- 9.2 *p53* is discovered to be a tumor suppressor gene 324
- 9.3 Inherited mutations affecting *p53* predispose individuals to a variety of tumors 327
- 9.4 Mutant versions of p53 interfere with normal p53 function 327
- 9.5 p53 protein molecules usually have short lifetimes 330
- 9.6 Various signals cause p53 induction 332
- 9.7 DNA damage and deregulated growth signals cause p53 stabilization 333
- 9.8 Mdm2 destroys its own creator 335
- 9.9 ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis protect against cancer by monitoring intracellular signaling 340
- 9.10 p53 functions as a transcription factor that halts cell cycle advance in response to DNA damage and attempts to aid in the

repair process 341
- 9.11 Prolonged DNA damage and oncogene activation can induce p53-dependent senescence 345
- 9.12 The apoptosis program participates in normal tissue development and maintenance 348
- 9.13 Apoptosis is a complex biochemical program that often depends on mitochondria 349
- 9.14 Both intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic programs can lead to cell death 359
- 9.15 Cancer cells deploy numerous ways to inactivate their apoptotic machinery 363
- 9.16 p53 inactivation provides an advantage to incipient cancer cells at a number of steps in tumor progression 366
- 9.17 Additional forms of cell death may limit the survival of cancer cells 367
- 9.18 Synopsis and prospects 370
- Key concepts 372
- Thought questions 373
- Additional reading 373
- Supplementary Sidebars S:81

Chapter 10: Eternal Life: Cell Immortalization and Tumorigenesis 375

- 10.1 Normal cell populations appear to register the number of cell generations separating them from their ancestors in the early embryo 376
- 10.2 Cells need to become immortalized in order to form a cell line 378
- 10.3 Cancer cells need to become immortal in order to form tumors 380
- 10.4 The proliferation of cultured cells is also limited by the telomeres of their chromosomes 384
- 10.5 Telomeres are complex molecular structures that are not easily replicated 389
- 10.6 Incipient cancer cells can escape crisis by expressing telomerase 391
- 10.7 Telomerase plays a key role in the proliferation of human cancer cells 396

- 10.8 Some immortalized cells can maintain telomeres without telomerase 399
- 10.9 Telomeres play different roles in the cells of laboratory mice and in human cells 401
- 10.10 Telomerase-negative mice show both decreased and increased cancer susceptibility 403
- 10.11 The mechanisms underlying cancer pathogenesis in telomerase-negative mice may also operate during the development of human tumors 406
- 10.12 Synopsis and prospects 409
- Key concepts 412
- Thought questions 413
- Additional reading 413
- Supplementary Sidebars S:87

Chapter 11: Multi-Step Tumorigenesis 415

- 11.1 Most human cancers develop over many decades of time 416
- 11.2 Histopathology provides evidence of multi-step tumor formation 419
- 11.3 Cells accumulate genetic and epigenetic alterations as tumor progression proceeds 424
- 11.4 Cancer development seems to follow the rules of Darwinian evolution 429
- 11.5 Multi-step tumor progression helps to explain familial polyposis and field cancerization 431
- 11.6 Intra-tumor diversification can outrun Darwinian selection 432
- 11.7 Tumor stem cells further complicate the Darwinian model of clonal succession and tumor progression 437
- 11.8 Multiple lines of evidence reveal that normal cells are resistant to transformation by a single mutated gene 443
- 11.9 Human cells are constructed to be highly resistant to immortalization and transformation 448
- 11.10 Mammalian evolution contributed to the complexity of human cell transformation 451
- 11.11 Nonmutagenic agents, including those favoring cell proliferation, make important contributions to tumorigenesis 453

- 11.12 Mitogenic agents, key governors of human cancer incidence, can act as human tumor promoters 458
- 11.13 Chronic inflammation often serves to promote tumor progression in mice and humans 460
- 11.14 Inflammation-dependent tumor promotion operates through defined signaling pathways 462
- 11.15 Metabolism is the elusive heart of the cancer process 465
- 11.16 Synopsis and prospects 470
- Key concepts 475
- Thought questions 476
- Additional reading 476
- Supplementary Sidebars S:97

Chapter 12: Shaping and Characterizing the Cancer Genome 479

- 12.1 Tissues are organized to minimize the progressive accumulation of mutations 480
- 12.2 The properties of stem cells make them good candidates to be cells-of-origin of cancer 483
- 12.3 Apoptosis, drug pumps, and DNA replication quality control mechanisms offer tissues a way to minimize the accumulation of mutant preneoplastic cells 485
- 12.4 Cell genomes are under constant attack from endogenous biochemical processes 491
- 12.5 Cell genomes are under occasional attack from exogenous mutagens and their metabolites 494
- 12.6 Cells deploy a variety of defenses to protect DNA molecules from attack by mutagens 501
- 12.7 Repair enzymes fix DNA that has been altered by mutagens 502
- 12.8 Inherited defects in nucleotide-excision repair, base-excision repair, and mismatch repair lead to specific cancer susceptibility syndromes 508
- 12.9 A variety of other DNA repair defects confer increased cancer susceptibility 514
- 12.10 The karyotype of cancer cells is often changed through alterations in chromosome structure 520
- 12.11 The karyotype of cancer cells is often changed through alterations in chromosome number 524

- 12.12 Advances in genome sequencing technologies have fueled a revolution in cancer genomics 528
- 12.13 Genomic analysis reveals that human cancers differ with respect to mutational burden, patterns of mutations, and copy number gains and losses 529
- 12.14 Cancer genomes contain driver and passenger gene mutations 534
- 12.15 Cancer genomic studies reveal both inter-tumoral and intra-tumoral heterogeneity 535
- 12.16 Synopsis and prospects 539
- Key concepts 546
- Thought questions 547
- Additional reading 547
- Supplementary Sidebars S:116

Chapter 13: Dialogue Replaces Monologue: Heterotypic Interactions and the Biology of Angiogenesis 549

- 13.1 Normal and neoplastic epithelial tissues are formed from interdependent cell types 551
- 13.2 The extracellular matrix represents a critical component of the tumor microenvironment 561
- 13.3 Tumors resemble wounded tissues that do not heal 563
- 13.4 Experiments directly demonstrate that stromal cells are active contributors to tumorigenesis 575
- 13.5 Macrophages and myeloid cells play important roles in activating the tumor-associated stroma 576
- 13.6 Endothelial cells and the vessels that they form ensure tumors adequate access to the circulation 582
- 13.7 Tripping the angiogenic switch is essential for tumor expansion 588
- 13.8 The angiogenic switch initiates a highly complex process 592
- 13.9 Anti-angiogenesis therapies have been employed to treat cancer 594
- 13.10 Nervous tissue contributes to tumor growth 599
- 13.11 Synopsis and prospects 601
- Key concepts 606
- Thought questions 607

- Additional reading 607
- Supplementary Sidebars S:133

Chapter 14: Moving Out: Invasion and Metastasis 609

- 14.1 The invasion–metastasis cascade begins with local invasiveness 612
- 14.2 Epithelial–mesenchymal transitions profoundly reshape the phenotypes of carcinoma cells 615
- 14.3 Epithelial–mesenchymal transitions are often induced by contextual signals 622
- 14.4 EMTs are programmed by transcription factors that orchestrate key steps of embryogenesis 633
- 14.5 Signals released by an array of stromal cell types contribute to the induction of invasiveness and intravasation 637
- 14.6 EMT-inducing transcription factors may enable entrance into the stem cell state 643
- 14.7 EMT-inducing transcription factors help drive malignant progression including metastatic dissemination 646
- 14.8 The invasiveness of carcinoma cells depends on clearance of obstructing ECM 651
- 14.9 Motility enables cancer cells to move into space excavated by MMPs 656
- 14.10 Intravasation and the formation of circulating tumor cells: first steps in perilous journeys 657
- 14.11 Colonization represents the most complex and challenging step of the invasion–metastasis cascade 667
- 14.12 Successful metastatic colonization often involves complex adaptations 677
- 14.13 An example of extreme metastatic specialization: metastasis to bone requires the subversion of osteoblasts and osteoclasts 679
- 14.14 Occult micrometastases threaten the long-term survival of many cancer patients 685
- 14.15 Synopsis and prospects 686
- Key concepts 692
- Thought questions 693
- Additional reading 694
- Supplementary Sidebars S:149

Chapter 15: Crowd Control: Tumor Immunology 697
- 15.1 The immune system continuously conducts surveillance of tissues 698
- 15.2 The human immune system plays a critical role in warding off various types of human cancer 700
- 15.3 The immune system functions to destroy foreign invaders and abnormal cells in the body's tissues 704
- 15.4 The diversity of B cell and T cell receptors arises from the stochastic diversification of the genes that encode them 708
- 15.5 MHC molecules play key roles in antigen recognition by T cells 710
- 15.6 T cells that recognize MHC-I have different roles from those that recognize MHC-II 714
- 15.7 Dendritic cell activation of naive T cells is a key step in the generation of functional helper and cytotoxic T cells 714
- 15.8 Tumor antigens are targets of the immune response to cancer 717
- 15.9 Natural killer cells contribute to anti-cancer immunity 721
- 15.10 Macrophages make multiple contributions to tumor development 722
- 15.11 Regulatory T cells are indispensable negative regulators of the immune response that are co-opted by tumors to counteract immune attack 725
- 15.12 Immune checkpoints act to limit immune responses 727
- 15.13 Synopsis and prospects 730
- Key concepts 734
- Thought questions 736
- Additional reading 736
- Supplementary Sidebars S:171

Chapter 16: Cancer Immunotherapy 737
- 16.1 Vaccination can prevent cancer caused by infectious agents 738
- 16.2 Vaccination against human papillomaviruses prevents cervical cancer 740
- 16.3 Therapeutic vaccination is a potential treatment for cancer 742

- 16.4 Passive immunization with antibodies can be used to treat cancer 745
- 16.5 Lymphoma and breast cancer can be treated with monoclonal antibodies 748
- 16.6 Antibody–drug conjugates deliver toxic drugs to cells displaying tumor antigens 750
- 16.7 Cancer can be treated by adoptive cell transfer 754
- 16.8 CAR T cells have predetermined specificity and bypass MHC-dependent antigen presentation 757
- 16.9 Checkpoint inhibition is a distinct type of immunotherapy that modifies the behavior of immune cells 761
- 16.10 Checkpoint immunotherapies based on mouse studies have been applied in the oncology clinic 767
- 16.11 Resistance to immune checkpoint inhibitors commonly arises 768
- 16.12 Lethal encounters between T cells and cancer cells can be encouraged by constructing bi-specific antibodies 769
- 16.13 T-cell–dependent immunotherapies can be hampered by T-cell exhaustion 771
- 16.14 Synopsis and Prospects 773
- Key Concepts 777
- Thought questions 778
- Additional reading 778
- Supplementary Sidebars S:172

Chapter 17: The Rational Treatment of Cancer 781

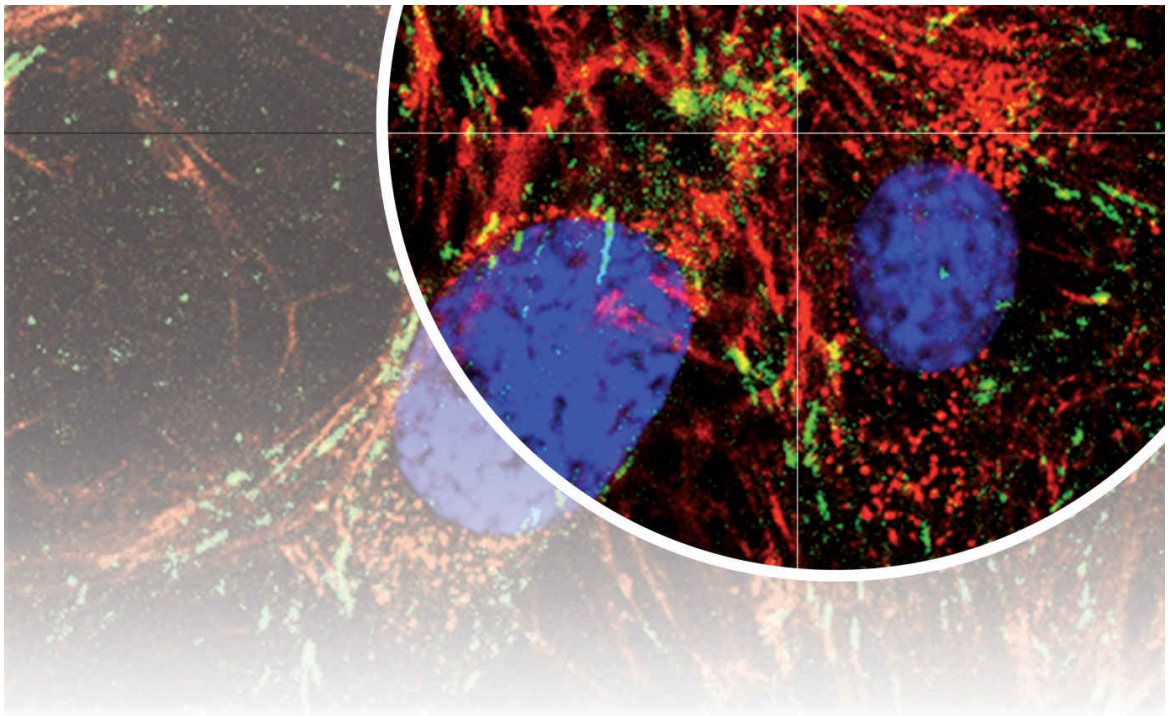
- 17.1 The development and clinical use of effective therapies will depend on accurate diagnosis of disease 784
- 17.2 Surgery, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy are the major pillars on which current cancer therapies rest 792
- 17.3 The present and future use of chemotherapy requires improved understanding of how anti-cancer drugs work 796
- 17.4 Differentiation, synthetic lethality, and cell cycle checkpoints can be exploited to kill cancer cells 801
- 17.5 Functional and biochemical considerations dictate that only a subset of the defective proteins in cancer cells are attractive targets for drug development 803

- 17.6 Pharmaceutical chemists can generate and explore the biochemical properties of a wide array of potential drugs 811
- 17.7 Drug candidates and their targets must be examined in cell models as an initial measurement of their utility in whole organisms 815
- 17.8 Studies of a drug's action in laboratory animals are an essential part of pre-clinical testing 819
- 17.9 Promising candidate drugs are subjected to rigorous clinical tests in Phase I trials in humans 821
- 17.10 Phase II and III trials provide credible indications of clinical efficacy 824
- 17.11 Tumors often develop resistance to initially effective therapy 826
- 17.12 Targeting Bcl-2 to induce cell death 827
- 17.13 Gleevec paved the way for the development of many other highly targeted compounds 830
- 17.14 EGF receptor antagonists may be useful for treating a wide variety of tumor types 841
- 17.15 Proteasome inhibitors yield unexpected therapeutic benefit 847
- 17.16 B-Raf discoveries have led to inroads into the melanoma problem 852
- 17.17 Synopsis and prospects: challenges and opportunities on the road ahead 855
- Key concepts 863
- Thought questions 864
- Additional reading 864
- Supplementary Sidebars S:178

Abbreviations A:1
Glossary G:1
Index I:1
Supplementary Sidebars963

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 1
The Biology and Genetics of Cells and Organisms



A fluorescence microscopy image with blue, green, and red staining.

Protoplasm, simple or nucleated, is the formal basis of all life... Thus it becomes clear that all living powers are cognate, and that all living forms are fundamentally of one character. The researches of the chemist have revealed a no less striking uniformity of material composition in living matter.

Thomas Henry Huxley, evolutionary biologist, 1868

Anything found to be true of *E. coli* must also be true of elephants.

Jacques Monod, pioneer molecular biologist, 1954

The biological revolution of the twentieth century totally reshaped all fields of biomedical study, cancer research being only one of them. The fruits of this revolution were revelations of both the outlines and the minute details of genetics and heredity, of how cells grow and divide, how they assemble to form tissues, and how the tissues develop under the control of specific genes. Everything that follows in this text draws directly or indirectly on this new knowledge.

This revolution, which began in mid-century and was triggered by Watson and Crick's discovery of the DNA double helix, continues to this day. Indeed, we are still too close to this breakthrough to properly understand its true importance and its long-term ramifications. The discipline of molecular biology, which grew from this discovery, delivered solutions to the most profound problem of twentieth-century biology—how does the genetic constitution of a cell or organism determine its appearance and function?

Without this molecular foundation, modern cancer research, like many other biological disciplines, would have remained a descriptive science that cataloged diverse biological phenomena without being able to explain the mechanics of how they occur. Today, our understanding of how cancers arise is being continually enriched by discoveries in diverse fields of biological research, most of which draw on the sciences of molecular biology and genetics. Perhaps unexpectedly, many of our insights into the origins of malignant disease are not coming from the laboratory benches of cancer researchers. Instead, the study of diverse organisms, ranging from yeast to worms to flies, provides us with much of the intellectual capital that fuels the forward thrust of the rapidly moving field of cancer research.

Those who fired up this biological revolution stood on the shoulders of nineteenth-century giants, specifically, Darwin and Mendel. Without the concepts established by these two, which influence all aspects of modern biological thinking, molecular biology and contemporary cancer research would be inconceivable. So, throughout this chapter, we frequently make reference to evolutionary processes as proposed by Charles Darwin and genetic systems as conceived by Gregor Mendel.

OceanofPDF.com

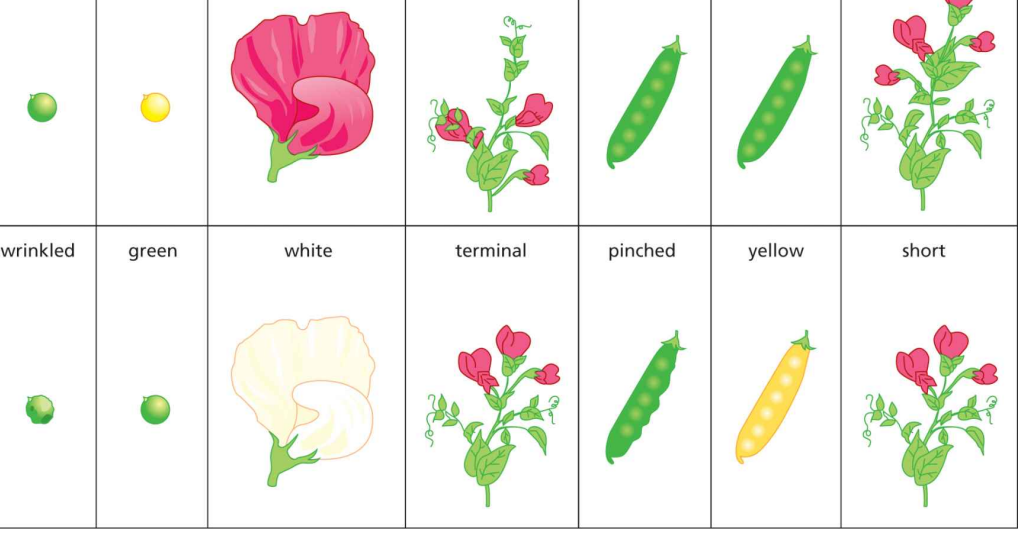
1.1 Mendel establishes the basic rules of genetics

Many of the basic rules of genetics that govern how genes are passed from one complex organism to the next were discovered in the 1860s by Gregor Mendel and have come to us basically unchanged. Mendel's work, which tracked the breeding of pea plants, was soon forgotten, only to be rediscovered independently by three researchers in 1900. During the decade that followed, it became clear that these rules—we now call them Mendelian genetics—apply to virtually all sexual organisms, including metazoa (multicellular animals), as well as metaphyta (multicellular plants).

Mendel's most fundamental insight came from his realization that genetic information is passed in particulate form from an organism to its offspring. This implied that the entire repertoire of an organism's genetic information—its genome, in today's terminology—is organized as a collection of discrete, separable information packets, now called genes. Only in recent years have we begun to know with any precision how many distinct genes are present in the genomes of mammals; many current analyses of the human genome—the best studied of these—place the number in the range of 20,000 protein-coding genes, somewhat more than the ~14,500 genes identified in the genome of the fruit fly, *Drosophila melanogaster*. In addition, a still-unresolved number of genes—numbering in the thousands—that specify functionally important noncoding RNAs reside in the mammalian genome.

Mendel's research implied that the genetic constitution of an organism (its genotype) could be divided into hundreds, perhaps thousands of discrete information packets, paralleling the observable appearance of the organism (its phenotype), which also could be divided into a large number of discrete physical traits (**Figure 1.1**).

	seed shape	seed color	flower color	flower position	pod shape	pod color	plant height
one form of trait (dominant)	round	yellow	violet-red	axial	inflated	green	tall
a second form of trait (recessive)	wrinkled	green	white	terminal	pinched	yellow	short



A table of the dominant and recessive forms of seven pea plant traits. For seed shape, round is dominant and wrinkled is recessive. For seed color, yellow is dominant and green is recessive. For flower color, violet-red is dominant and white is recessive. For flower position, axial (that is, near the center of the plant) is dominant and terminal (off the ends of a stem) is recessive. For pod shape, inflated is dominant and pinched is recessive. For pod color, green is dominant and yellow is recessive. For plant height, tall is dominant and short is recessive.

Figure 1.1 A particulate theory of inheritance One of Gregor Mendel's principal insights was that the genetic content of an organism consists of discrete parcels of information, each responsible for a distinct observable trait. Shown are the seven pea-plant traits that Mendel studied through breeding experiments. Each trait had two observable (phenotypic) manifestations, which we now know to be specified by the alternative versions of genes that we call alleles. When the two alternative alleles coexisted within a single plant, the "dominant" trait (*above*) was always observed while the "recessive" trait (*below*) was never observed. (Courtesy of J. Postlethwait and J. Hopson.)

Mendel's thinking launched a century-long research project among geneticists, who applied his principles to studying thousands of traits in a variety of

experimental animals, including flies (*Drosophila melanogaster*), worms (*Caenorhabditis elegans*), and mice (*Mus musculus*). In the mid-twentieth century, geneticists also began to apply Mendelian principles to the study of the genetic behavior of single-celled organisms, such as the bacterium *Escherichia coli* and baker's yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. The principle of genotype governing phenotype was directly transferable to these simpler organisms and their genetic systems.

While Mendelian genetics represents the foundation of contemporary genetics, it has been adapted and extended in myriad ways since its embodiments of 1865 and 1900. For example, the notion that each attribute of an organism can be traced to instructions carried in a single gene was realized to be simplistic. The great majority of observable traits of an organism are traceable to the cooperative interactions of multiple genes. Conversely, almost all the genes carried in the genome of a complex organism play roles in the development and maintenance of multiple organs, tissues, and physiologic processes.

Mendelian genetics revealed for the first time that genetic information is carried redundantly in the genomes of complex plants and animals. Mendel deduced that there were two copies of a gene for flower color and two for pea shape. Today we know that this twofold redundancy applies to the entire genome with the exception of the genes carried in the sex chromosomes. Hence, the genomes of higher organisms are termed diploid.

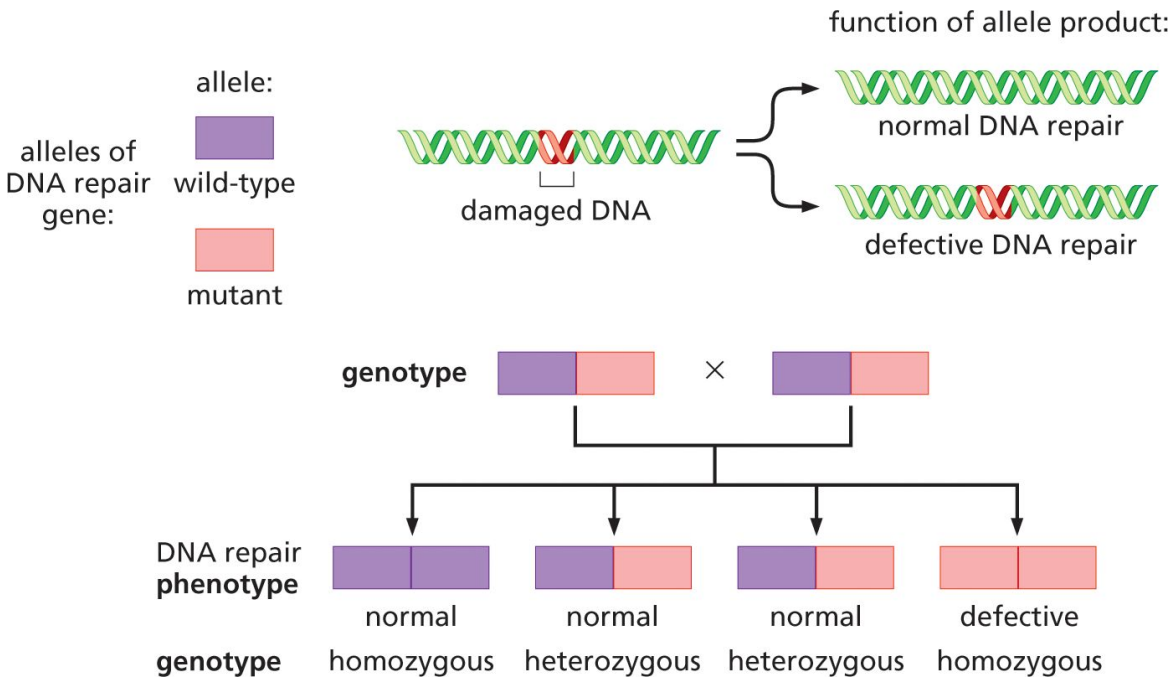
Mendel's observations also indicated that the two copies of a gene could convey different, possibly conflicting information. Thus, one gene copy might specify rough-surfaced and the other smooth-surfaced peas. In the twentieth century, these different versions of a gene came to be called alleles. An organism may carry two identical alleles of a gene, in which case, with respect to this gene, it is said to be homozygous. Conversely, the presence of two different alleles of a gene in an organism's genome renders this organism heterozygous with respect to this gene.

Because the two alleles of a gene may carry conflicting instructions, our views of how genotype determines phenotype become more complicated. Mendel found that in many instances, the action of one allele may dominate over that of the other in deciding the ultimate appearance of a trait. For example, a pea genome may be heterozygous for the gene that determines the shape of peas, carrying one round and one wrinkled allele. However, the pea plant carrying this pair of alleles will invariably produce round peas. This indicates that the round allele is

dominant, and that it will invariably overrule its recessive counterpart allele (wrinkled) in determining phenotype (see Figure 1.1). (Strictly speaking, using proper genetic parlance, we would say that the phenotype encoded by one allele of a gene is dominant with respect to the phenotype encoded by another allele, the latter phenotype being recessive.)

In fact, classifying alleles as being either dominant or recessive oversimplifies biological realities. The alleles of some genes may be **co-dominant**, in that an expressed phenotype may represent a blend of the actions of the two alleles. Equally common are examples of incomplete penetrance, in which case a dominant allele may be present but its phenotype is not manifested because of the actions of other genes within the organism's genome. Therefore, the dominance of an allele is gauged by its interactions with other allelic versions of its gene, rather than its ability to dictate phenotype.

With such distinctions in mind, we note that the development of tumors also provides us with examples of dominance and recessiveness. For instance, one class of alleles that predispose cells to develop cancer encode defective versions of enzymes involved in DNA repair and thus in the maintenance of genomic integrity (discussed again in Chapter 12). These defective alleles are relatively rare in the general population and function recessively. Consequently, their presence in the genomes of many heterozygotes (of a normal/mutant genotype) is not apparent. However, two heterozygotes carrying recessive defective alleles of the same DNA repair gene may mate. One-fourth of the offspring of such mating pairs, on average, will inherit two defective alleles, exhibit a specific DNA repair defect in their cells, and develop certain types of cancer at greatly increased rates (**Figure 1.2**).



The relationship between genotype and phenotype, illustrated using a gene for D N A repair. The normal, dominant, wild-type allele is associated, phenotypically, with an ability to repair damaged D N A, while the mutant, recessive allele is associated with a lack of that capability, or lack of the capability to perform the repair properly. Suppose a cross between two heterozygous individuals, each with one of each type of allele, produces four offspring. Genotypically, on average one individual will be homozygous with two normal alleles, two individuals will be heterozygous with one allele of each type, and one individual will be homozygous with two mutant alleles. Phenotypically, the first three offspring will, like their parents, have normal D N A repair capability. The last one, with two mutant alleles, will lack the ability to repair D N A.

Figure 1.2 Discrepancy between genotype and phenotype The phenotype of an individual often does not indicate genotype. For example, individuals who are phenotypically normal for a trait may nevertheless, at the level of genotype, carry one wild-type (normal) and one mutant (defective) allele of the gene that specifies this trait; this mutant allele will be recessive to the wild-type allele, the latter being dominant. Such individuals are heterozygous with respect to this gene. In the example shown here, two individuals mate, both of whom are phenotypically normal but heterozygous for a gene specifying a DNA repair function. On average, of their four children, three will be phenotypically normal and their cells will exhibit normal DNA repair

function; of these three, one of the children will receive two wild-type alleles (be a homozygote) and two will be heterozygotes like their parents. A fourth child, however, will receive two mutant alleles (i.e., be a homozygote) and will be phenotypically mutant, in that this child's cells will lack the DNA repair function specified by this gene. Individuals whose cells lack proper DNA repair function are often cancer-prone, as described in Chapter 12.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

metaphyta
: Plants composed of many cells.

genotype
: Genetic constitution of a cell or an organism.

phenotype
: (1) A measurable or observable trait of an organism. (2) The sum of all such traits of an organism.

diploid
: Describing a genome in which all chromosomes are present in pairs, one of each pair being inherited from a father and the other from a mother, with the exception of the sex chromosomes, which in placental mammals are paired in either the XX or the XY configuration.

allele
: One alternative among different versions of a gene that may be defined by the phenotype that it creates, by the protein that it specifies, or by its nucleotide sequence.

homozygous
: Referring to the configuration of a genetic locus in which the two copies of the associated gene carry identical alleles of the gene. *See also* **heterozygous**.

heterozygous
: Referring to the configuration of a genetic locus in which the two copies of the associated gene carry different versions (alleles) of the gene that represents this locus. *See also* **homozygous**.

dominant
: (1) Referring to one of several alternative traits (phenotypes) that can be specified by a genetic locus; when the locus is heterozygous and carries information specifying two distinct traits, the dominant trait will be the one actually exhibited. (2) Describing an allele of a gene that determines phenotype in spite of the concomitant presence of a second allele, considered to be recessive, that specifies a different, alternative phenotype. *See also* **recessive**.

recessive

(1) Referring to one of several alternative traits that can be specified by a genetic locus; when the locus is heterozygous and carries information specifying two distinct traits, the dominant trait will be exhibited phenotypically by the organism and the recessive will not. (2) Referring to an allele of a gene that is unable to dictate phenotype when expressed in the presence of a second allele that acts dominantly. *See also* **dominant**.

incomplete penetrance

Situation in which a dominant allele fails to affect phenotype because of the actions of other genes present in an organism's genome. *See also* **penetrance**.

heterozygote

Individual cell or organism that carries two distinct alleles of a gene of interest. *See also* **heterozygous**.

metazoan

Referring to animals composed of many cells. *Compare* **protozoan**.

OceanofPDF.com

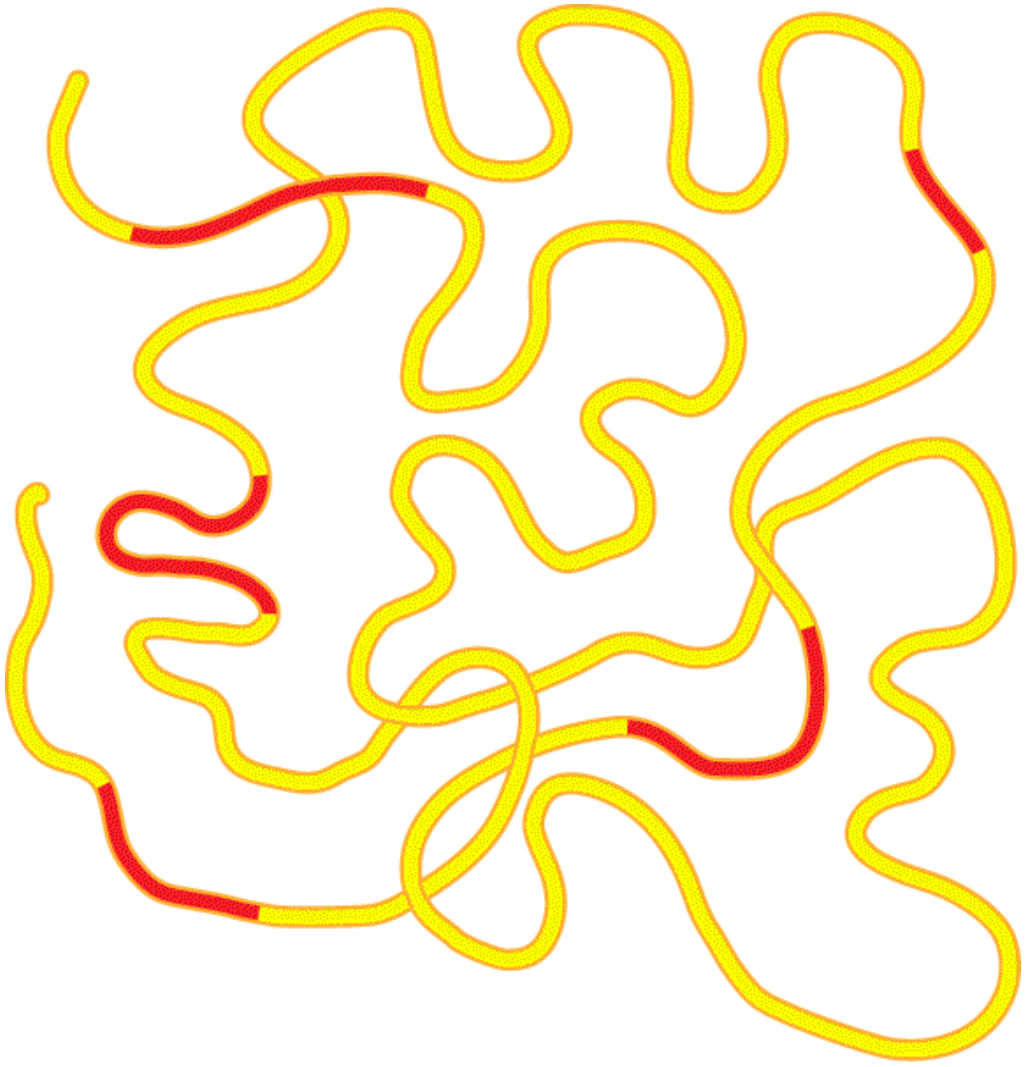
1.2 Mendelian genetics helps to explain Darwinian evolution

In the early twentieth century, it was not apparent how the distinct allelic versions of a gene arise. At first, this variability in information content seemed to have been present in the collective gene pool of a species from its earliest evolutionary beginnings. This perception changed only later, beginning in the 1920s and 1930s, when it became apparent that genetic information is corruptible. The information content in genetic texts, like that in all texts, can be altered. Mutations were found to be responsible for changing the information content of a gene, thereby converting one allele into another or creating a new allele from one previously widespread within a species. An allele that is present in the great majority of individuals within a species is usually termed wild type, the term implying that such an allele, being naturally present in large numbers of apparently healthy organisms, is compatible with normal structure and function.

Mutations alter genomes continually throughout the evolutionary life span of a species, which usually extends over millions of years. They strike the genome and its constituent genes randomly. Mutations provide a species with a method for continually tinkering with its genome, for trying out new versions of genes that offer the prospect of novel, possibly improved phenotypes. The lifetime of a species begins with a small founding, ancestral population. During the subsequent evolutionary history of the species, a continuing rain of mutations on the genomes carried by its individual members creates a progressive increase in the genetic diversity within this species. Thus, the collection of alleles present in the genomes of all members of a species—the gene pool of this species—becomes progressively more heterogeneous as the species grows older.

The continuing diversification of alleles in a species' genome, occurring over millions of years, is countered to some extent by the forces of natural selection that Charles Darwin first described. Some alleles of a gene may confer more advantageous phenotypes than others, so individuals carrying these alleles have a greater probability of leaving numerous descendants than do those members of the same species that lack them. Consequently, natural selection results in a continual discarding of many of the alleles that have been generated by random mutations. In the long run, all things being equal, disadvantageous alleles are lost from the pool of alleles carried by the members of a species, advantageous alleles increase in number, and the overall fitness of the species improves incrementally.

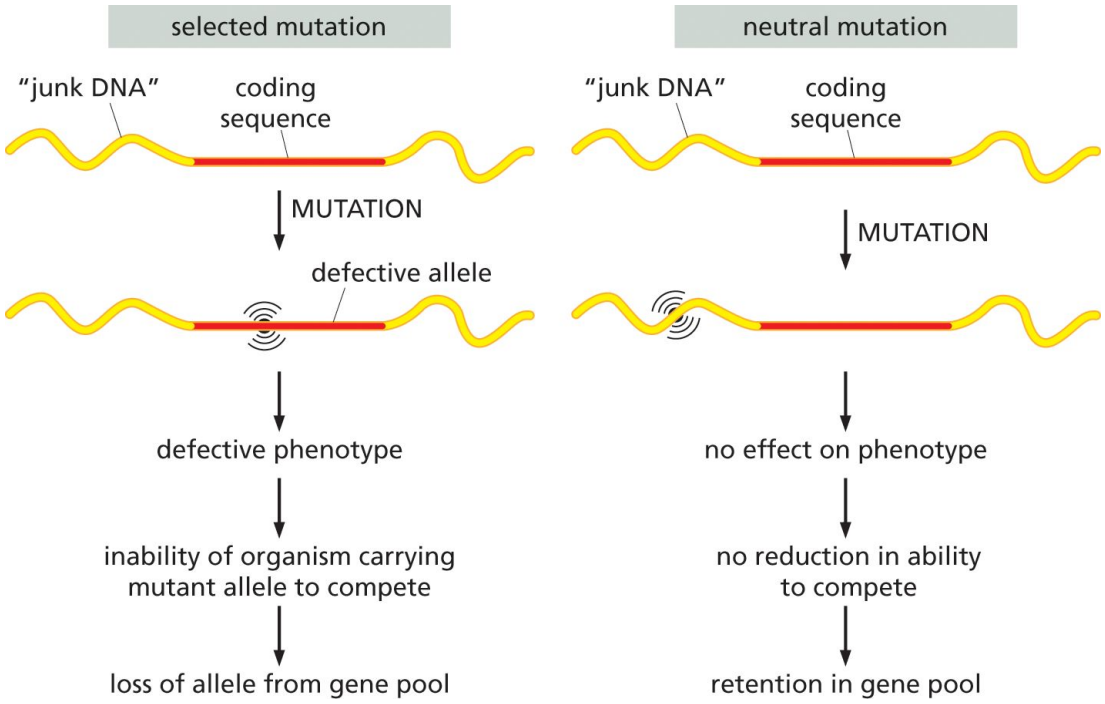
Now, more than a century after Mendel was rediscovered and Mendelian genetics revived, we have come to realize that most of the genetic information in our own genome—indeed, in the genomes of all mammals—does not seem to specify phenotype and is often not associated with specific genes. Reflecting the discovery in 1944 that genetic information is encoded in DNA molecules, these "noncoding" stretches in the genome have been called, for want of a better term, "junk DNA" (**Figure 1.3**). Only about 1.5% of a mammal's genomic DNA carries sequence information that encodes the structures of proteins. Recent sequence comparisons of human, mouse, and dog genomes suggest that another ~2% encodes important information regulating gene expression and mediating other, still-poorly understood functions. (While some have proposed that as much as 80% of the human genome has important functions, a 2017 estimate of how much of the genome is likely to be truly important for organismic development and viability suggested an upper limit of 25%. So, the debate about the appropriateness of the term "junk DNA" continues unabated, with as much as one-quarter of it having possible biological function.)



A single strand of D N A, twisted and folded irregularly like loose spaghetti on a plate. Most of the strand is yellow, but five short segments are red.

Figure 1.3 Biologically important sequences in the human genome The human genome can be characterized as a collection of relatively small islands of biologically important sequences (∼3.5% of the total genome; *red*) floating amid a sea of "junk DNA" (*yellow*). The proportion of sequences carrying biological information has been greatly exaggerated for the sake of illustration. (With the passage of time, genes that appear to play important roles in cell and organismic physiology and specify certain noncoding RNA species have been localized to these intergenic regions, as have short DNA segments involved in regulating gene expression; hence the depiction of all genomic sequences localized between a human cell's ∼20,000 protein-coding genes as useless junk is simplistic and incorrect.)

Because mutations act randomly on a genome, altering true genes and junk DNA indiscriminately, the great majority of mutations alter genetic information—nucleotide sequences in the DNA—that have no effect on cellular or organismic phenotype. These mutations remain silent phenotypically and are said, from the point of view of natural selection, to be neutral mutations, being neither advantageous nor disadvantageous (**Figure 1.4**). Since the alleles created by these mutations are functionally silent, their existence could not be discerned by early geneticists whose work depended on gauging phenotypes. However, with the advent of DNA sequencing techniques, it became apparent that upward of a million functionally silent mutations can be found scattered throughout the genomes of organisms such as humans. The genome of each human carries its own unique array of these functionally silent genetic alterations.

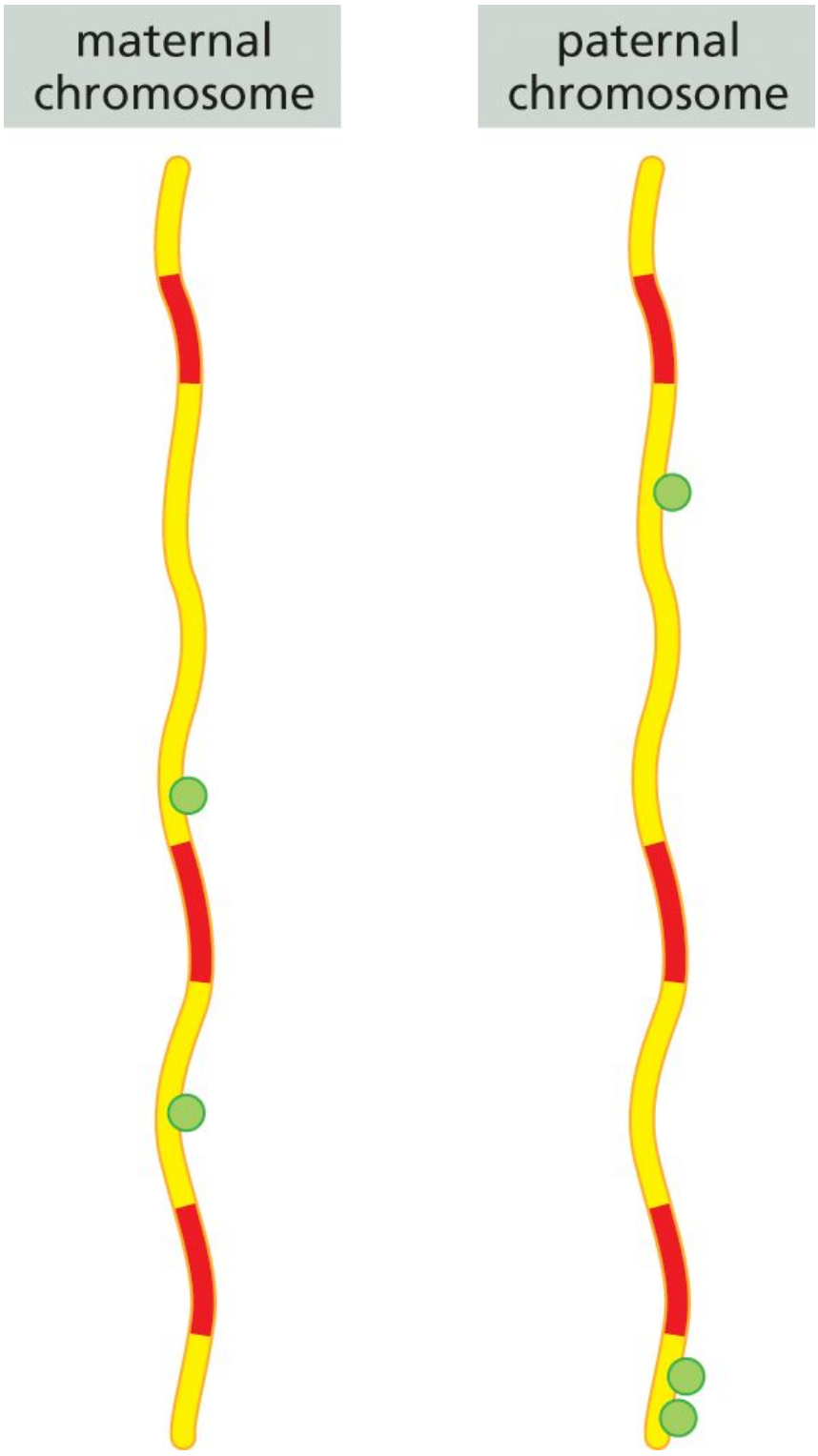


A segment of D N A has a coding sequence in the middle, shown in red, and junk D N A at each end, shown in yellow. Two types of mutation are shown acting on the segment. A selected mutation occurs when the mutation takes places in the coding sequence. The result is a defective allele, leading to a defective phenotype, leading to an inability of the organism carrying the mutant allele to compete, leading to a loss of the allele from gene pool. A neutral mutation occurs when the mutation takes place in one of the junk D N A ends. The coding sequence remains unchanged, so there is no effect on the phenotype and therefore no reduction in the organism's ability to compete. The allele is retained in the gene pool.

Figure 1.4 Neutral mutations and evolution The coding sequences (*red*) of most genes that encode protein structure were optimized in the distant evolutionary past. Hence, many mutations affecting amino acid sequence and thus protein structure (*left*) often create alleles that compromise the organism's ability to survive. For this reason, these mutant alleles are likely to be eliminated from the species' gene pool by the process of natural selection. In contrast, mutations striking "junk DNA" (*yellow*) have no effect on phenotype and are therefore often preserved in the species' gene pool (*right*). This explains why, over extended periods of evolutionary time, coding DNA sequences change slowly, while noncoding DNA sequences change far more rapidly.

The term *polymorphism* was originally used to describe variations in shape and form that distinguish normal individuals within a species from each other. These days,

geneticists use the term genetic polymorphisms to describe the inter-individual differences in DNA sequence at various sites throughout the genome, most of which, as discussed above, are registered as minor variations in sequence that have no effect on biological function (**Figure 1.5**). Recent estimates of the rate of spontaneously arising point mutations (affecting single DNA nucleotides) striking the genomes of proliferating normal human cells suggest that these mutations are accumulated at a rate of less than one nucleotide per genome per cell division, that is, only about one base pair per three billion base pairs per division—a stunning testimonial to the fidelity of DNA replication and repair. (Even lower mutational rates may affect the genes in germ cells, that is, those that give rise to eggs and sperm.) As we will see later (Chapter 12), these rates are increased in the genomes of replicating cancer cells.



A pair of chromosomes, one maternal and the other paternal. They are similar in length and have yellow non-functional stretches and red functional, coding stretches in all the same places. The only differences between the two

chromosomes are in the locations of a few green dots appearing randomly along the yellow stretches.

Figure 1.5 Polymorphic diversity in the human gene pool Because the great majority of human genomic DNA does not encode biologically important information (*yellow*), it has evolved relatively rapidly and has accumulated many subtle differences in sequences—polymorphisms—that are phenotypically silent (see Figure 1.4). Such polymorphisms are transmitted like Mendelian alleles, but their presence in a genome can be ascertained only by molecular techniques such as DNA sequencing. The dots (*green*) indicate where the sequence on this chromosome differs from the sequence that is most common in the human gene pool. For example, the prevalent sequence in one stretch may be TAACTGG, while the variant sequence TTACTGG may be carried by a minority of humans and constitute a polymorphism. The presence of a polymorphism in one chromosome but not the other represents a region of heterozygosity, even though a nearby gene (*red*) may be present in the identical allelic version on both chromosomes and therefore exist in a homozygous configuration.

During the course of evolution, the portion of the genome that encodes and affects biological function behaves much differently from the junk DNA. Junk DNA sequences suffer mutations that have no effect on the viability of an organism. Consequently, countless mutations in the noncoding sequences of a species' genome survive in its gene pool and accumulate progressively during its evolutionary history. In contrast, mutations affecting, for example, the protein-coding sequences of genes (see Section 1.6) often lead to loss of function and, as a consequence, reduction in organismic viability; hence, these mutations are usually weeded out of the gene pool by the hand of natural selection, explaining why genetic sequences that do indeed specify biological functions generally change very slowly over long evolutionary time periods (**Sidebar 1.1**).

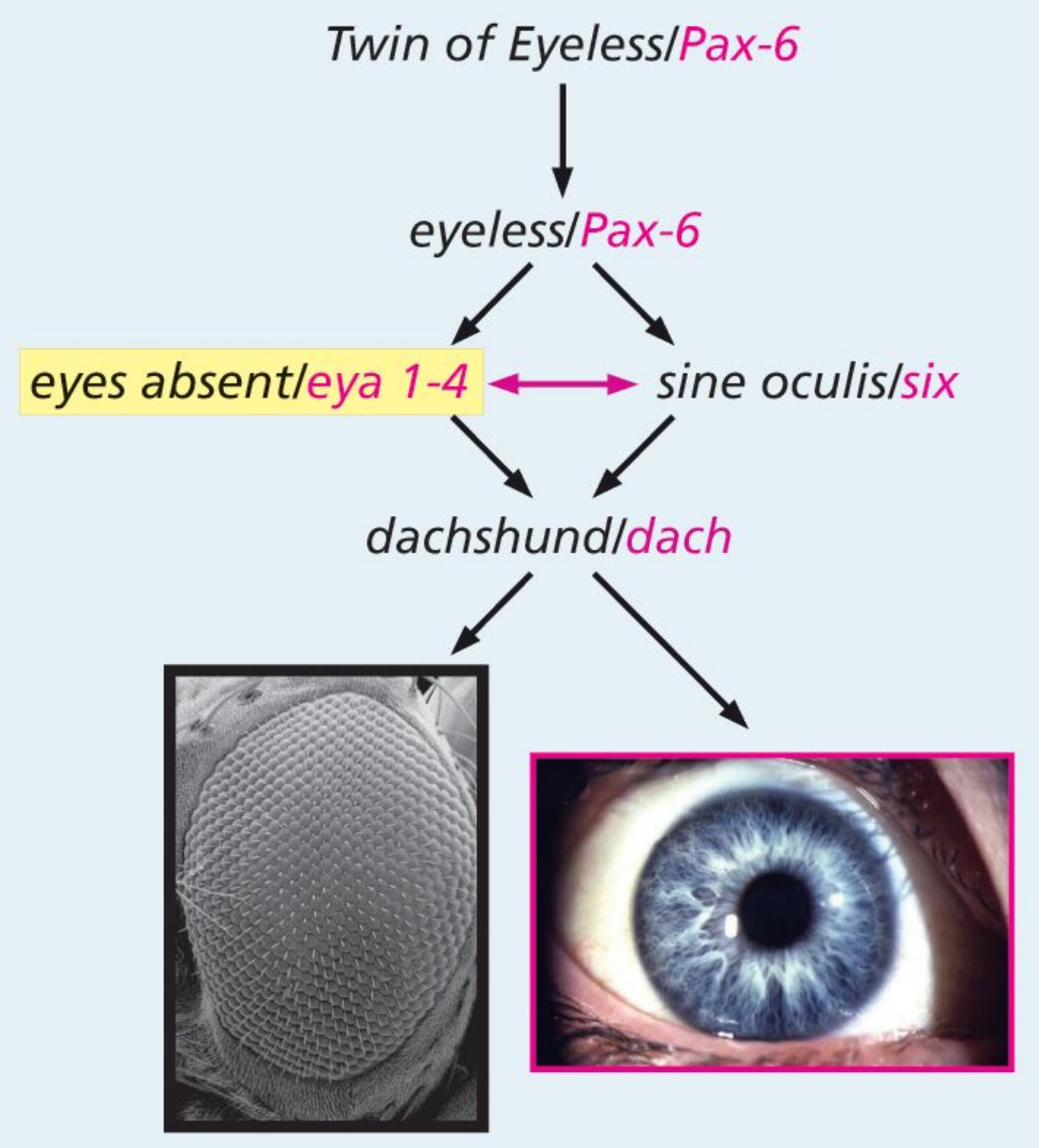
Sidebar 1.1 Evolutionary forces dictate that certain genes are highly conserved

Many genes encode cellular traits that are essential for the continued viability of the cell. These genes, like all others in the genome, are susceptible to the ever-tinkering hand of mutation, which is continually creating new gene sequences by altering existing ones. Natural selection tests these novel sequences and determines whether they specify phenotypes that are more advantageous than the preexisting ones.

The actual agents that create phenotypes are the proteins encoded by the genes. The amino acid sequences of the proteins required for cell and therefore organismic viability were already optimized hundreds of millions of years ago. Consequently, almost all subsequent changes in the amino acid sequences of such critical proteins

(resulting from mutations in the genes encoding them) would have been deleterious and would have compromised the viability of the cell and, in turn, the organism. These mutant alleles were soon lost from the gene pool of a species, because the mutant organisms carrying them failed to leave descendants. This dynamic explains why the sequences of many proteins have been highly conserved over vast evolutionary time periods. This dynamic can also be viewed in a different light: once certain genes and proteins developed, dozens and then hundreds of subsequent evolutionary inventions depended on the continued functioning of these earlier inventions. Any changes in the latter would cause the entire biological edifice to crumble, much like the removal of a playing card from a house of cards or a key foundation stone from a building. As we will read later in this book (Chapter 11), similar evolutionary dynamics influence the development of tumors within the human body.

In fact, the almost half of the proteins that are present in our own cells and are required for cell viability developed during the evolution of single-cell eukaryotes. This is indicated by numerous observations showing that many of our proteins have clearly recognizable counterparts in single-cell eukaryotes, such as baker's yeast. Another large repertoire of highly conserved genes and proteins is traceable to the appearance of the first multicellular animals (metazoa); these genes enabled the development of distinct organs and of organismic physiology. Hence, another large group of our own genes and proteins is present in counterpart form in worms and flies (**Figure 1.6**).



Two similarly structured sequences of genes that regulate eye development, in fruit flies and in mice. The sequences start with a gene called twin of eyeless in flies and PAX 6 in mice. Next is a gene called eyeless in flies and PAX 6 in mice. Here the sequence branches. On one side is a gene called eyes absent. The mouse version has variants 1 through 4. On the other side is a gene called sine oculis in flies and six in mice. Finally, the sequence converges again, to a gene called dachshund in flies and dachs in mice. These genes lead to photos of a fly eye and a human eye.

(A)

A photo of a red fly eye growing on a leg joint.

(B)

human	FGLARAFGIPIRVYTHEVVTLWYRSPEVLLGS
S. pombe	FGLARSFGVPLRNYTHEIVTLWYRAPEVLLGS
S. cerevisiae	FGLARAFGVPLRAYTHEIVTLWYRAPEVLLGG
human	ARYSTPVDIWSIGTIFAELATKLPLFHGDSEI
S. pombe	RHYSTGVDIWSVGCIFAENIRRSPLFPGDSEI
S. cerevisiae	KQYSTGVDTWSIGCIFAEHCNRLPIFSGDSEI
human	DQLFRIPRALGTPNNEVWPEVESLQDYKNTFP
S. pombe	DEIFKIPQVLGTPNEEVWPGVTLLQDYKSTFP
S. cerevisiae	DQIFKIPRVLGTPNEAIWPDIVYLPDFKPSFP

A comparison of the amino acid sequence of a human protein with the sequences of the corresponding proteins from S. pombe and S. cerevisiae. For the 96 amino acid positions shown, the amino acid is the same across all three species in 60 of them. Where the amino acids are not all the same, sometimes the human protein matches one of the two yeast proteins but not the other.

(C)

Figure 1.6 Extraordinary conservation of gene function The last common ancestor of flies and mammals lived more than 600 million years ago. Moreover, fly (i.e., arthropod) eyes and mammalian eyes show totally different architectures. Nevertheless, the genes that orchestrate their development (*eyeless* in the fly, *Pax-6/small eye* in the mouse) are interchangeable—the gene from one organism can replace the corresponding mutant gene from the other and restore wild-type function. (A) Thus, the genes encoding components of the signal transduction cascades that operate downstream of these master regulators to trigger eye development (*black* for flies, *pink* for mice) are also highly conserved and interchangeable. (B) The expression of the mouse *Pax-6/small eye* gene, like the *Drosophila eyeless* gene, in an ectopic (inappropriate) location in a fly embryo results in the fly developing a fly eye on its leg (*arrow*), demonstrating the interchangeability of the two genes. (C) The conservation of genetic function over vast evolutionary distances is often manifested in the amino acid sequences of homologous proteins. Here, the amino acid sequence of a human protein is given together with the sequences of the corresponding proteins from two yeast species, *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* and *S. cerevisiae*. The amino acid residues present identically in the three proteins are indicated in a *white* background whereas those that have diverged from one another are indicated in a *light blue* background. The last common ancestor of the corresponding organisms is estimated to have lived more than 1 billion years ago. (A, left from I. Rebay et al., *Genetics 154*: 695-712, 2000. With permission from Oxford University Press; right, courtesy of Helga Kolb. B, courtesy of Walter Gehring, University of Basel. C, adapted from B. Alberts et al., Essential Cell Biology, 5th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2019.)

By the time the ancestor of all mammals first appeared more than 200 million years ago, virtually all the biochemical and molecular features present in contemporary mammals had already been developed. The fact that they have changed little in the intervening time points to their optimization and essentiality long before the appearance of the various mammalian orders. This explains why the embryogenesis, physiology, and biochemistry of all mammals is very similar, indeed, so similar that lessons learned through the study of laboratory mice are almost always transferable to an understanding of human biology.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mutation
: Change in the genotype of a virus or cell that involves an alteration in the nucleotide sequence of its genome, in the arrangement of a segment within a chromosome, in the number of copies of a segment, in the physical structure of a chromosome, or in the number of copies of a structurally normal chromosome.

wild type
: The allele of a gene that is commonly present in the great majority of individuals in a species and is usually presumed to be fully functional.

gene pool
: Collection of genes and associated alleles that are carried by the members of a species or by a group of individual organisms.

junk DNA
: Genomic DNA that cannot be associated with any biological function.

neutral mutation
: Change in DNA sequence that has no effect on phenotype, including mutations that have no effect on protein structure.

genetic polymorphism
: A genetic element that is present in the gene pool of a species in multiple variant forms. Polymorphisms are often implied to have small or no effects on phenotype or evolutionary fitness. *See also* **polymorphism**.

eukaryotic
: Referring to the large, complex, nucleated cells of metazoa, metaphyta, and many protozoa. *See also* **prokaryotic.**

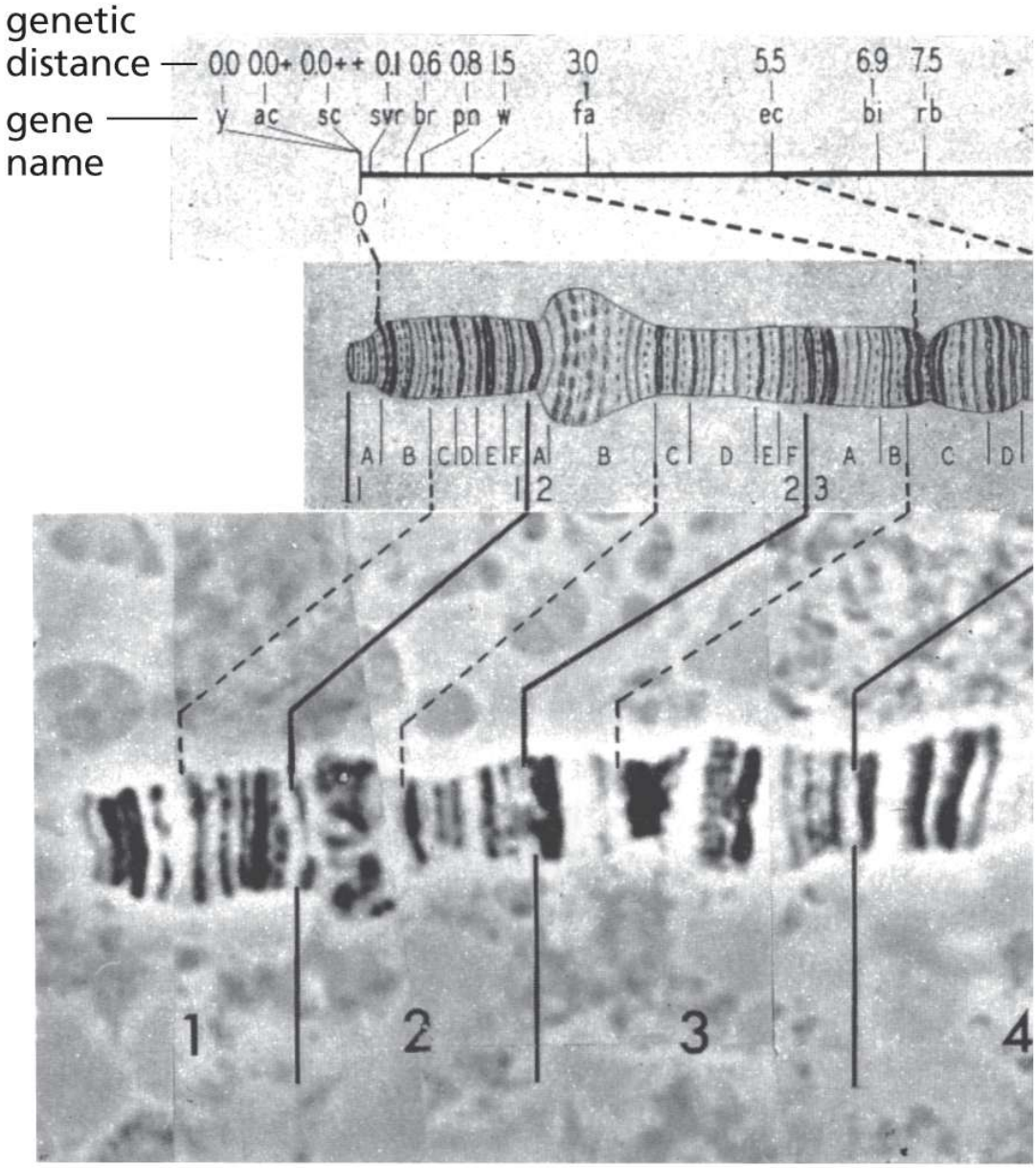
OceanofPDF.com

1.3 Mendelian genetics governs how both genes and chromosomes behave

In the first decade of the twentieth century, Mendel's rules of genetics were found to have a striking parallel in the behavior of the chromosomes that were then being visualized under the light microscope: Mendel's genes and the chromosomes were both found to be present in pairs. Soon it became clear that an identical set of chromosomes is present in almost all the cells of a complex organism. This chromosomal array, often termed the karyotype, was found to be duplicated each time a cell went through a cycle of growth and division.

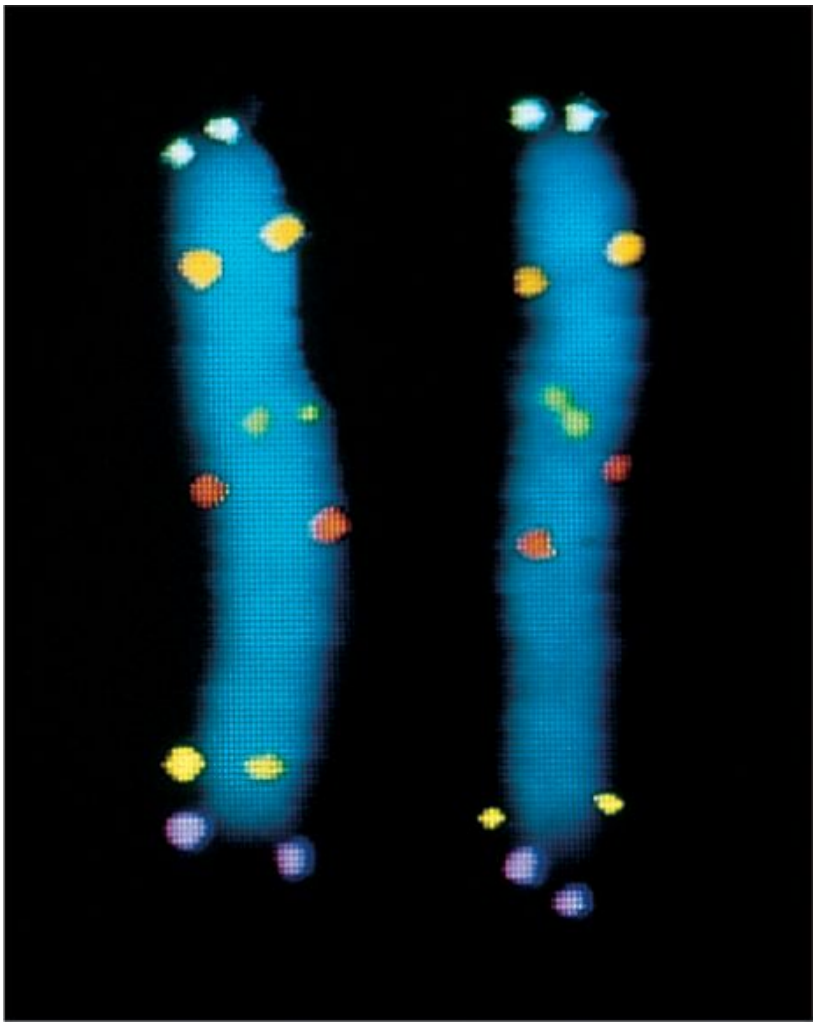
The parallels between the behaviors of genes and chromosomes led to the speculation, soon validated in hundreds of different ways, that the mysterious information packets called genes were carried by the chromosomes. Each chromosome was realized to carry its own unique set of genes in a linear array. Today we know that as many as several thousand genes may be arrayed along a mammalian chromosome. (Human Chromosome 1—the largest of the set—carries ~8% of the human genome.)

Each gene was found to be localized to a specific site on a specific chromosome. This site is often termed a genetic locus. Much effort was expended by geneticists throughout the twentieth century to map the sites of genes—genetic loci—along the chromosomes of a species (**Figure 1.7**).



A physical banding map of a drosophila chromosome. Above it is a linear map of various genetic loci along with their genetic distance and gene name. Below the physical banding map is a micrograph of the chromosome. Lines between the three images show correspondences.

(A)



A micrograph shows two human chromosomes lying side by side like two blue worms. Brightly colored dots denote gene sites. Each chromosome has on it, from top to bottom, two white dots, two orange dots, two green dots, two red dots, two yellow dots, and two purple dots.

(B)

Figure 1.7 Localization of genes along chromosomes (A) The physical structure of *Drosophila* chromosomes was mapped (*middle*) by using the fly's salivary gland chromosomes, which exhibit banding patterns resulting from alternating light (sparse) and dark (condensed) chromosomal regions (*bottom*). Independently, genetic crosses yielded linear maps (*top*) of various genetic loci arrayed along the chromosomes. These loci could then be aligned with physical banding maps, like the one shown here for the beginning of the left arm of *Drosophila* chromosome 1. (B) The availability of DNA probes that hybridize specifically to various genes now makes it possible to localize genes along a chromosome by tagging each

probe with a specific fluorescent dye or combination of dyes. Shown are six genes that were localized to various sites along human Chromosome 5 by using fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) during metaphase. (There are two dots for each gene because chromosomes are present in duplicate form during metaphase of mitosis.) (A, top from C.B. Bridges, *J. Hered*. 26:60, 1935. With permission from Oxford University Press; bottom from M. Singer and P. Berg, *Genes and Genomes*. University Science Books, 1991. With permission from University Science Books. B, courtesy of David C. Ward.)

The diploid genetic state that reigns in most cells throughout the body was found to be violated in the *germ cells*, sperm and egg. These cells carry only a single copy of each chromosome and gene and thus are said to be haploid. During the formation of germ cells in the testes and ovaries, each pair of chromosomes is separated and one of the pair (and thus associated genes) is chosen at random for incorporation into the sperm or egg. When sperm and egg combine subsequently during fertilization, the two haploid genomes fuse to yield the new diploid genome of the fertilized egg. All cells in the organism descend directly from this diploid cell and, if all goes well, inherit precise replicas of its diploid genome. In a large multicellular organism like the human, this means that a complete copy of the genome is present in almost all of the approximately 3×10^{13} cells throughout the body!

With the realization that genes reside in chromosomes, and that a complete set of chromosomes is present in almost all cell types in the body, came yet another conclusion that was rarely noted: genes create the phenotypes of an organism through their ability to act *locally* by influencing the behavior of its individual cells. The alternative—that a single set of genes residing at some unique anatomical site in the organism controls the entire organism's development and physiology—was now discredited.

The rule of paired, similarly appearing chromosomes was found to be violated by some of the sex chromosomes. In the cells of female placental mammals, there are two similarly appearing X chromosomes, and these behave like the autosomes (the nonsex chromosomes). But in males, an X chromosome is paired with a Y chromosome, which is smaller and carries a much smaller repertoire of genes. In humans, the X chromosome is thought to carry about 900 genes, compared with the 78 distinct genes on the Y chromosome, which, because of redundancy, specify only 27 distinct proteins (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.1**).

This asymmetry in the configuration of the sex chromosomes puts males at a biological disadvantage. Many of the 900 or so genes on the X chromosome are vital to normal organismic development and function. The twofold redundancy created by the paired X chromosomes in female cells guarantees more robust biology. If a gene

copy on one of the X chromosomes is defective (that is, represents a nonfunctional mutant allele), chances are that the second copy of the gene on the other X chromosome can continue to carry out the task of the gene, ensuring normal biological function. Males lack this genetic fail-safe system in their sex chromosomes. One of the more benign consequences of this is color blindness, which strikes males frequently and females infrequently, due to the localization on the X chromosome of the genes encoding the color-sensing proteins of the retina.

Color blindness reveals the virtues of having two redundant gene copies around to ensure that biological function is maintained. If one copy is lost through mutational inactivation, the surviving gene copy is often capable of specifying a wild-type phenotype. Such functional redundancy operates for the great majority of genes carried by the autosomes. As we will see later, this dynamic plays an important role in cancer development, since virtually all of the genes that operate to prevent runaway proliferation of cells are present in two redundant copies, both of which must be inactivated in a cell before their growth-suppressing functions are lost and malignant cell proliferation can occur. Of additional interest, the asymmetry of X-chromosome complements between males and females is compensated in part by the mechanism of X-chromosome inactivation (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.1**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

karyotype
: (1) The array of chromosomes carried by a cell, as determined by detailed microscopic examination of these chromosomes usually performed with condensed chromosomes at metaphase. (2) Images of the metaphase chromosomes of a cell arrayed systematically by homologous pairs from the largest to the smallest pair.

locus
: (1) Chromosome site that can be studied genetically and is presumed to be associated with a specific gene. (2) A genetic element that can be mapped by genetic analysis.

haploid
: Describing a genome in which all chromosomes are present in a single copy.

autosome
: A chromosome that is not a sex chromosome, i.e., neither an X nor a Y chromosome.

OceanofPDF.com

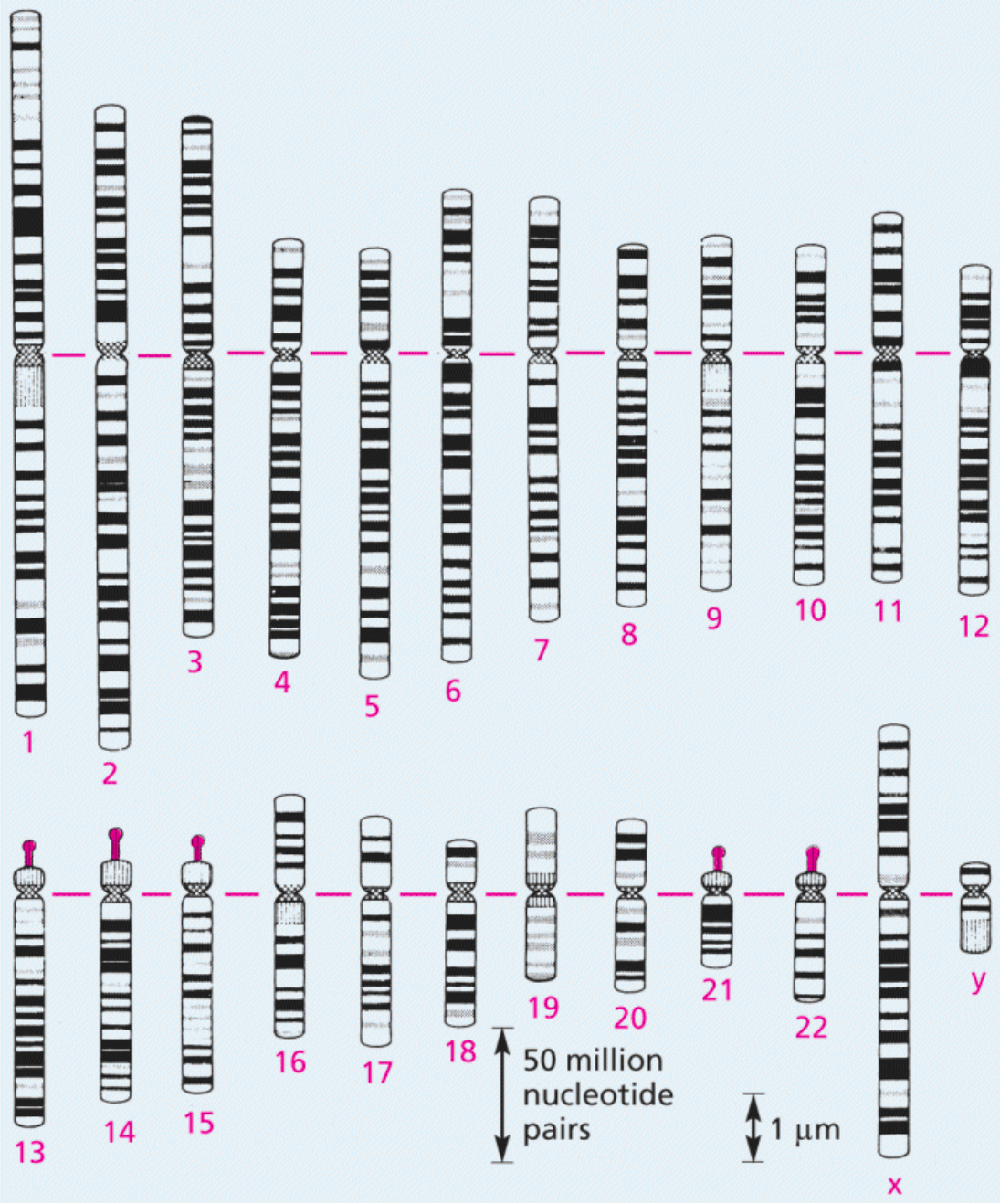
1.4 Chromosomes are altered in most types of cancer cells

Individual genes are far too small to be seen with a light microscope, and subtle mutations within a gene are smaller still. Consequently, the great majority of the mutations that play a part in cancer cannot be visualized through microscopy. However, the examination of chromosomes through the light microscope can give evidence of large-scale alterations of the cell genome. Indeed, such alterations were noted as early as 1892, specifically in cancer cells.

Today, we know that cancer cells often exhibit aberrantly structured chromosomes of various sorts, the loss of entire chromosomes, the presence of extra copies of others, and the fusion of the arm of one chromosome with part of another (**Sidebar 1.2**; see Figure 1.8). These changes in overall chromosomal configuration expand our conception of how mutations can affect the genome: since alterations of overall chromosomal structure and number also constitute types of genetic change, these changes must be considered to be the consequences of mutations. And importantly, the abnormal chromosomes seen initially in cancer cells provided the first clue that these cells might be genetically aberrant, that is, that they were mutants.

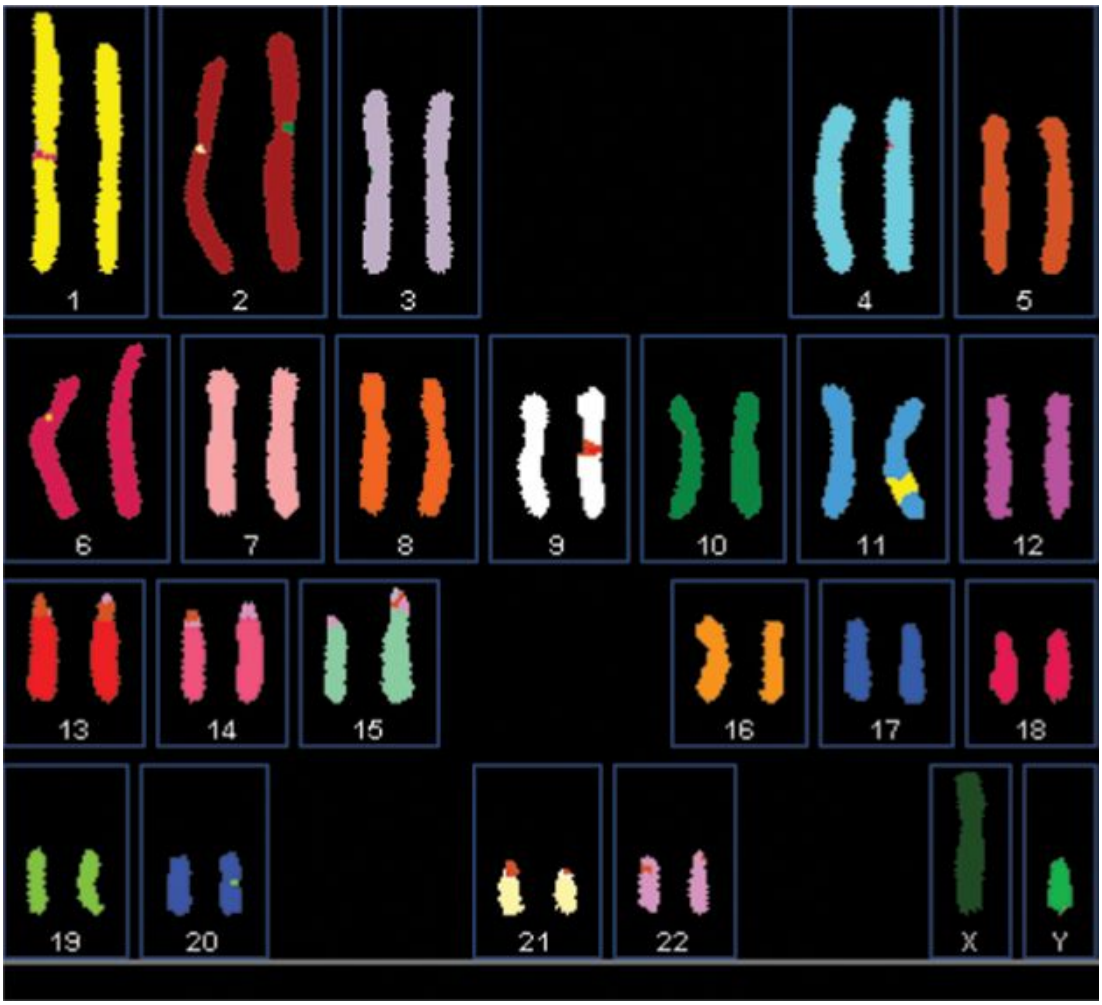
Sidebar 1.2 Cancer cells are often aneuploid

The presence of abnormally structured chromosomes and changes in chromosome number provided the first clue, early in the twentieth century, that changes in cell genotype often accompany and perhaps cause the uncontrolled proliferation of malignant cells. These deviations from the normal euploid karyotype can be placed into a number of categories. Chromosomes that seem to be structurally normal may accumulate in extra copies, leading to three, four, or even more copies of these chromosomes per cancer cell nucleus (**Figure 1.8**); such deviations from normal chromosome number are manifestations of *aneuploidy*.



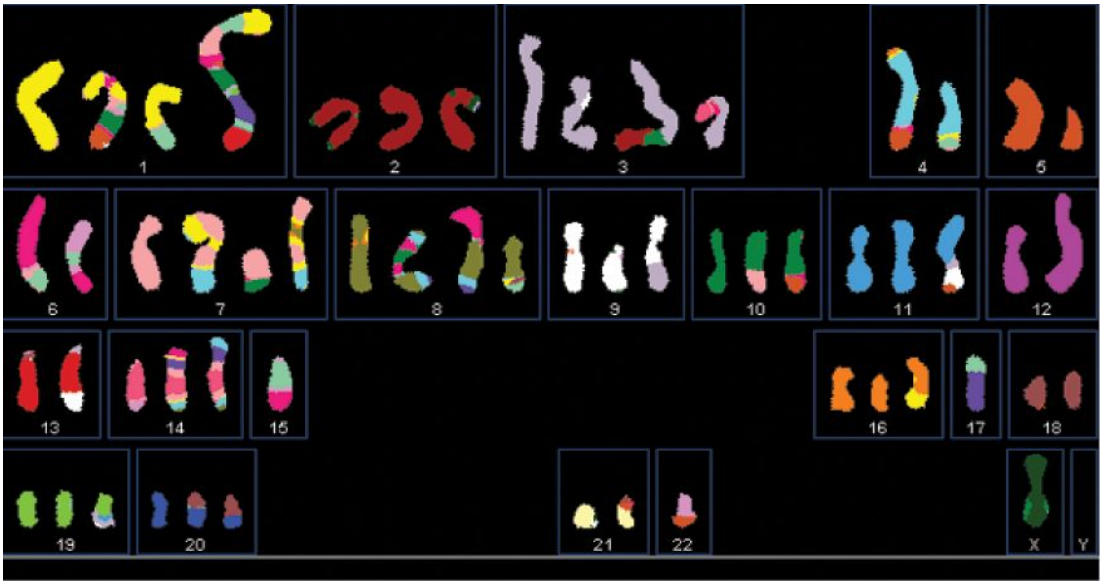
Banding patterns from 22 numbered human chromosomes, plus an X and a Y. They vary in length from about 1.4 microns long to about 10.6 microns long and contain between 35 million and 265 million base pairs.

(A)



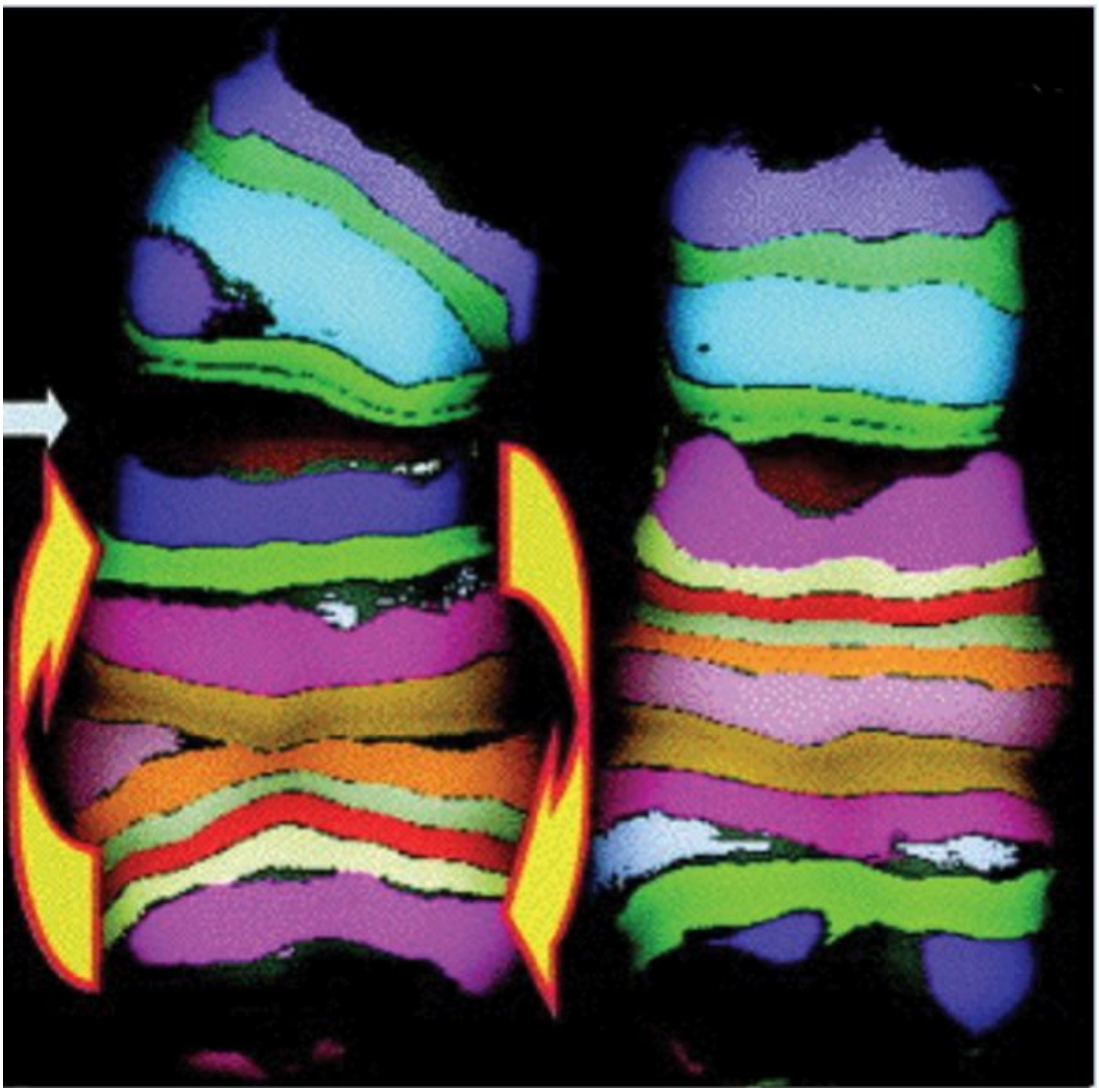
A color-coded image of 22 numbered human chromosome pairs, one color per pair, plus an X-Y pair. The image represents the chromosomes in their normal condition.

(B)



A color-coded image of what should be 22 numbered human chromosome pairs, one color per pair, plus an X-Y pair. In most cases, what should be a pair appears as three or four chromosomes, and quite a few of the chromosomes have stripes of many colors, like multicolored candy-canes. The Y chromosome is absent.

(C)



Two versions of a short segment of human chromosome. Colored stripes in each chromosome reveal that, as two curved arrows indicate, the version on the left has a portion that was flipped 180 degrees from the version on the right such that what was once on the bottom is now in the middle.

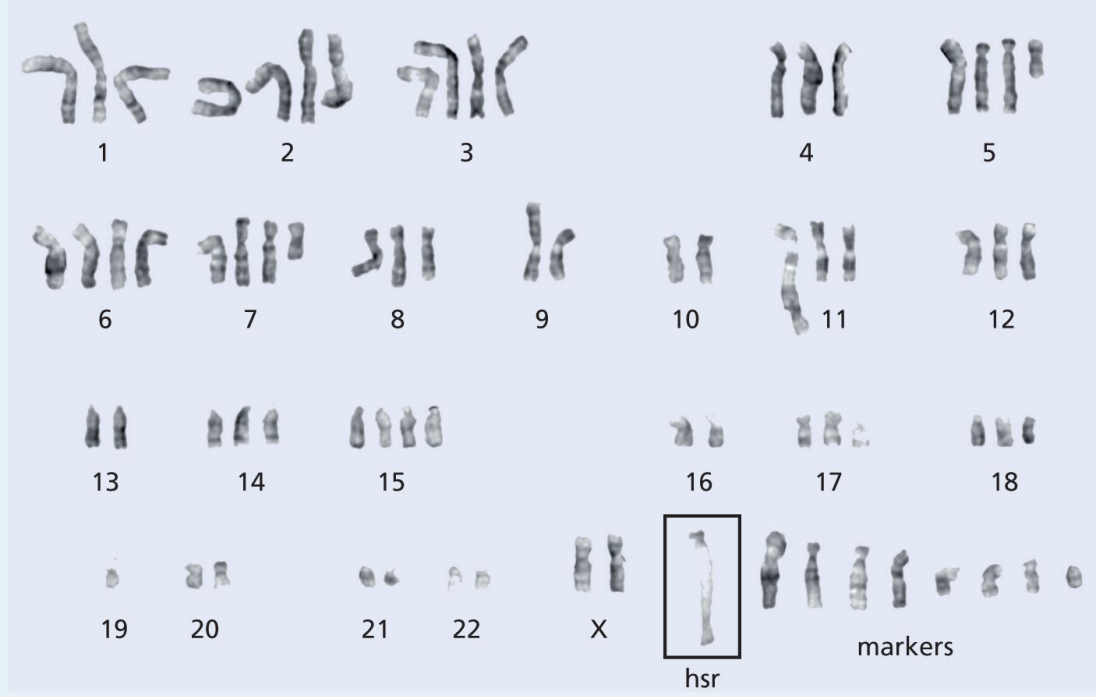
(D)

Figure 1.8 Normal and abnormal chromosomal complements (A) Staining of metaphase chromosomes reveals a characteristic light-and-dark banding pattern for each. The full array of human chromosomes is depicted; their centromeres are aligned (*pink line*). (B) The techniques of spectral karyotype (SKY) analysis and multicolor fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (mFISH) allow an experimenter to "paint" each metaphase chromosome with a distinct color (by hybridizing chromosome-specific DNA probes labeled with various fluorescing dyes to the chromosomes). The actual colors in images such as these are generated by

computer. The diploid karyotype of a normal human male cell is presented. (The small regions in certain chromosomes that differ from the bulk of these chromosomes represent hybridization artifacts.) (C) The aneuploid karyotype of a human pancreatic cancer cell, in which some chromosomes are present in inappropriate numbers and in which numerous translocations (exchanges of segments between chromosomes) are apparent. (D) Here, mFISH (multicolor FISH) was used to label intrachromosomal subregions with specific fluorescent dyes, revealing that a large portion of an arm of normal human Chromosome 5 (*right*) has been inverted (*left*) in cells of a worker who had been exposed to plutonium in the nuclear weapons industry of the former Soviet Union. The site where the normal chromosome was broken and then rejoined with the inverted remainder of the chromosome is indicated by a *white arrow.* (A, adapted from U. Francke, *Cytogenet. Cell Genet.* 31:24–32, 1981. B and C, courtesy of M. Grigorova, J.M. Staines, and P.A.W. Edwards. D, from M.P. Hande et al., *Am. J. Hum. Genet.* 72:1162–1170, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

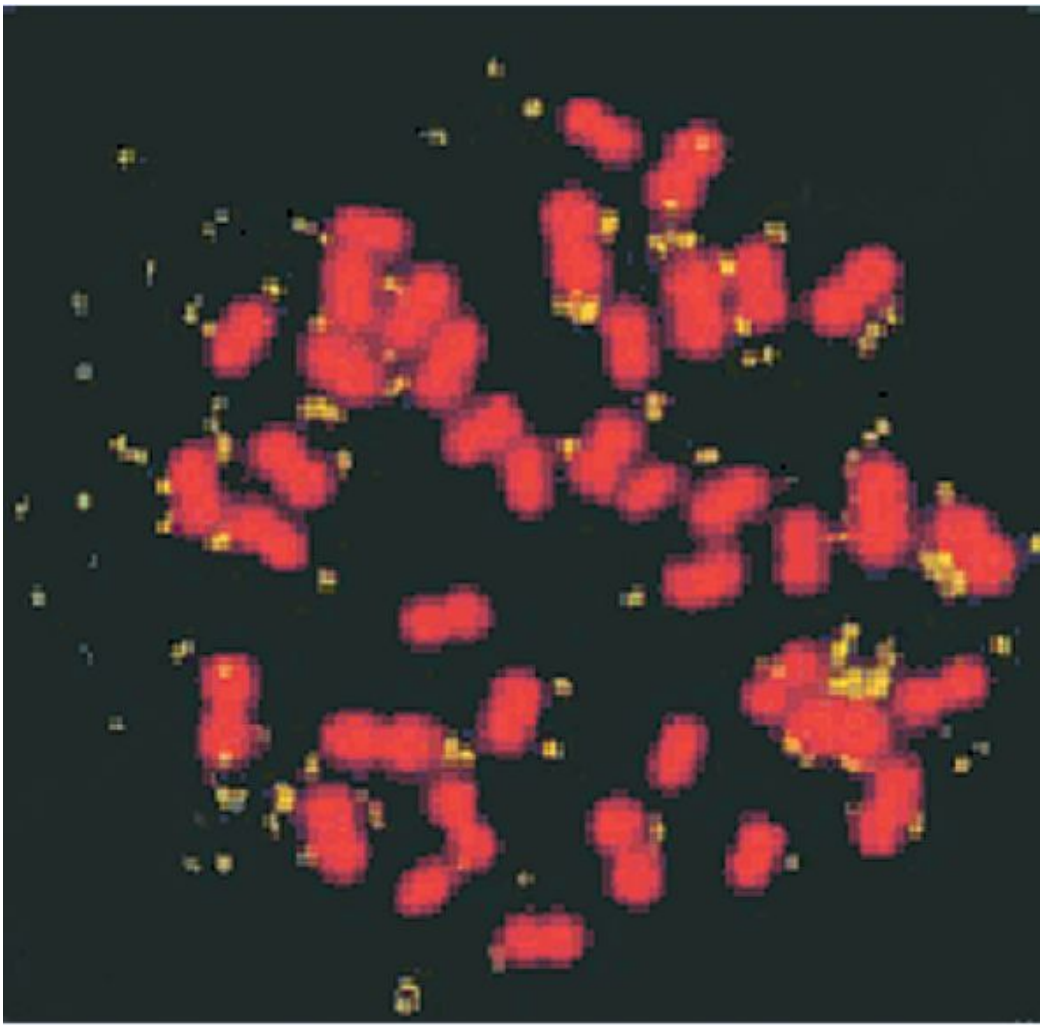
Alternatively, chromosomes may undergo changes in their structure. A segment may be broken off one chromosomal arm and become fused to the arm of another chromosome, resulting in a chromosomal translocation (see Figure 1.8C). Moreover, chromosomal segments may be exchanged between chromosomes from different chromosome pairs, resulting in reciprocal translocations. A chromosomal segment may also become inverted, which may affect the regulation of genes that are located near the breakage and fusion points (see Figure 1.8D).

A segment of a chromosome may be copied many times over, and the resulting extra copies may be fused head-to-tail in long arrays within a chromosomal segment that is termed an HSR (homogeneously staining region; **Figure 1.9A**). A segment may also be cleaved out of a chromosome, replicate as an autonomous, extrachromosomal entity, and increase to many copies per nucleus, resulting in the appearance of subchromosomal fragments termed DMs (double minutes; Figure 1.9B). These latter two changes cause increases in the copy number of genes carried in such segments, resulting in gene amplification. Sometimes, both types of gene amplification coexist in the same cell. In general, gene amplification can favor the growth of cancer cells by increasing the copy number of growth-promoting genes.



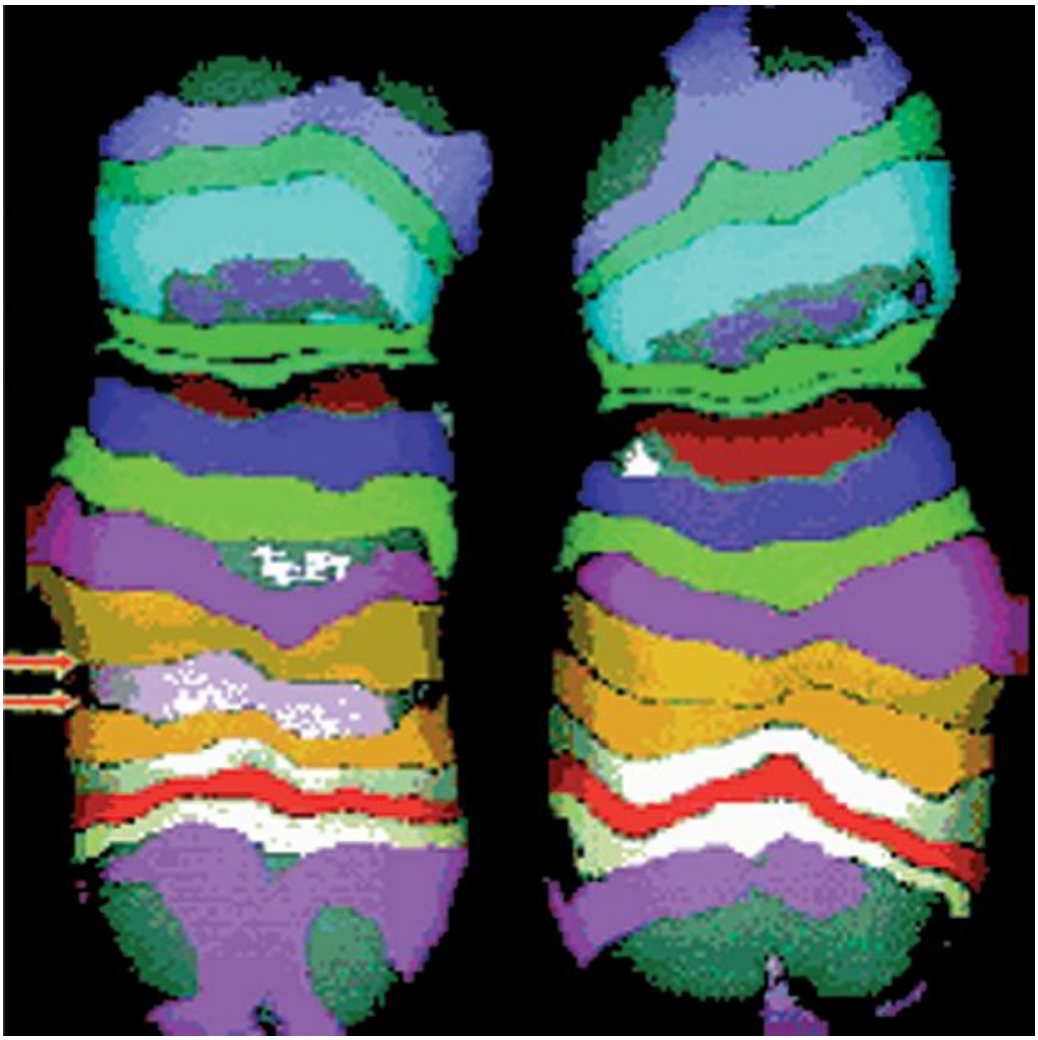
A black-and-white image of what should be 22 numbered human chromosome pairs, plus an X-Y pair. In most cases, which should be a pair appears as three or four chromosomes. The Y chromosome is absent. Most chromosomes shown visible banding, but a segment labeled h s r has a long middle section that is white. Also shown are eight pieces of chromosome labeled as markers.

(A)



Several dozen peanut-shaped objects appear bright red against a black background. Interspersed are small, yellow, grainlike flecks.

(B)



Two versions of a short segment of human chromosome. Colored stripes reveal that, as two small arrows indicate, a pale purple stripe present in the lef version is missing from an otherwise similar pattern of stripes on the right version.

(C)

Figure 1.9 Increases and decreases in copy number of chromosomal segments
(A) The amplification in the gene copy number of the *myc* oncogene (that is, a cancer-causing gene; see Section 4.3) in a human neuroendocrinal tumor, arising via end-to-end assembly of multiple copies of the oncogene, has caused an entire stretch of chromosome to stain *white* (*rectangle*), creating a homogeneously staining region (HSR). Almost all other chromosomes are present in multiple copies, many with structural abnormalities. (B) Double-minute chromosomes (DMs) derive from chromosomal segments that have broken loose from their original sites and have been replicated repeatedly as extrachromosomal genetic

elements; like normal chromatids, these structures are doubled during metaphase of mitosis. FISH reveals the presence of amplified copies of the *HER2/neu* oncogene borne on DMs (*yellow dots*) in a mouse breast cancer cell. (C) The use of multicolor FISH (mFISH) revealed that a segment within normal human Chromosome 5 (*paired arrows, light purple segment, left*) has been deleted, yielding an interstitial deletion in which this segment is absent (*right chromosome*) following extensive exposure to radiation from plutonium. (A, from J.-M. Wen et al., *Cancer Genet. Cytogenet.* 135:91–95, 2002. With permission from Elsevier. B, from C. Montagna et al., *Oncogene* 21:890–898, 2002. With permission from Nature. C, from M.P. Hande et al., *Am. J. Hum. Genet.* 72:1162–1170, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

On some occasions, certain growth-inhibiting genes may be discarded or inactivated by cancer cells during their development. For example, when a segment in the middle of a chromosomal arm is discarded and the flanking chromosomal regions are joined, this can result in an interstitial deletion (Figure 1.9C), which liberates the incipient cancer cell from the inhibitory actions of the now-deleted gene or genes.

These descriptions of copy-number changes in genes, involving both amplifications and deletions, might suggest widespread chaos in the genomes of cancer cells, with gene amplifications and deletions occurring randomly. However, as the karyotypes and genomes of human tumors have been examined more intensively, it has become clear that certain regions of the genome tend to be lost characteristically in certain tumor types but not in others; this non-random activation or inactivation of a particular gene in a number of independently arising human tumors is termed a recurrent mutation and points to a critical role played by the altered gene and encoded protein in specific steps of tumor development. This suggests a theme that we will pursue in great detail throughout this book—that the gains and losses of particular genes favor the proliferation of specific types of tumors.

The normal configuration of chromosomes is often termed the euploid karyotypic state. Euploidy implies that each of the autosomes is present in normally structured pairs and that the X and Y chromosomes are present in the numbers appropriate for the sex of the individual carrying them. Deviation from the euploid karyotype—the state termed aneuploidy—is seen, as mentioned above, in many cancer cells. Indeed, the cells of perhaps 90% of human solid tumors carry aneuploid karyotypes (see Figure 1.9); often this aneuploidy is merely a consequence of the general chaos that reigns within a cancer cell. However, this connection between aneuploidy and malignant cell proliferation also hints at a theme that we will return to repeatedly in this book: the acquisition of extra copies of one chromosome or the loss of another can create a

genetic configuration that somehow benefits the cancer cell and its agenda of runaway proliferation.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

translocation
: (1) Rearrangement of chromosomes that results in the fusion of two chromosomal segments that are not normally attached to one another, often resulting in a microscopically visible alteration of karyotype. (2) Movement of a physical entity from one part of the cell to another. (3) Movement of a ribosome down an mRNA being translated.

reciprocal translocation
: Exchange via a process resembling recombination of chromosomal segments between two chromosomes from different (i.e., usually nonhomologous) chromosome pairs, resulting in the conservation of all participating chromosomal segments.

homogeneously staining region
: A region of a chromosome consisting of amplified copies of a chromosomal segment that have become fused end to end; because each copy contains a characteristic sequence of DNA, the region as a whole appears homogenous following staining.

gene amplification
: *See* **amplification**: Genetic mechanism by which the copy number of a gene is increased above its normal level in the diploid genome.

interstitial deletion
: Genetic alteration, often observed through analysis of karyotype, that causes deletion of an internal segment of a chromosomal arm.

recurrent mutation
: Somatic mutations of a particular gene or nucleotide sequence that is observed in the genomes of a number of independently arising tumors, providing strong indication that mutations of this gene or sequence confer selective advantage to the cells that sustain them. *See also* **driver mutation**.

euploid
: (1) Referring to a collection of chromosomes that corresponds precisely in number and structure to the array present in normal, wild-type cells. (2) Describing a karyotype having such a complement of chromosomes. *See also* **karyotype.**

double-minute

A chromosomal segment that becomes separated from the chromosome in which it normally resides and is able to perpetuate itself as an extrachromosomal particle unlinked to a centromere, so termed because it is visualized at metaphase as small spots that are doubled like the chromatids prior to anaphase.

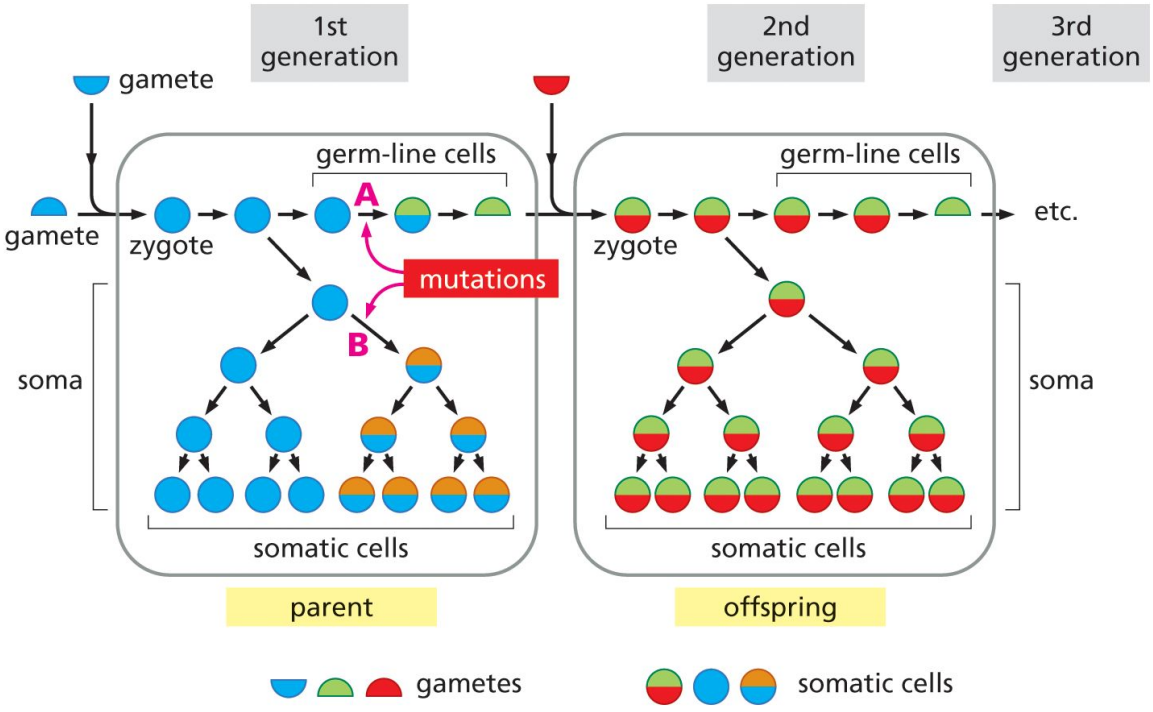
aneuploid

(1) Describing a karyotype that deviates from diploid because of increases or decreases in the numbers of certain chromosomes. (2) Less commonly, describing a karyotype that carries structurally abnormal chromosomes.

OceanofPDF.com

1.5 Mutations causing cancer occur in both the germ line and the soma

Mutations alter the information content of genes, and the resulting mutant alleles of a gene can be passed from parent to offspring. This transmission from one generation to the next, made possible by the germ cells (sperm and egg), is said to occur via the germ line (**Figure 1.10**). Importantly, the germ-line transmission of a recently created mutant allele from one organism to its offspring can occur only if a precondition has been met: the responsible mutation must strike a gene carried in the genome of sperm or egg (**gametes**) or in the genome of one of the cell types that are immediate precursors of the sperm or egg within the gonads. Mutations affecting the genomes of cells everywhere else in the body—which constitute the soma—create somatic mutations. The resulting mutant alleles have no prospect of being transmitted to the offspring of an organism, because they are not incorporated into the vehicles of generation-to-generation genetic transmission—the chromosomes of sperm or eggs.



A comparison of the effects of germ-line and somatic mutations. A parent individual begins with the uniting of two gametes to form a zygote. Multiplication of the zygote produces the cells of the soma and also germ cells. Mutation B in a somatic cell is passed on only to the descendants of that cell within the same individual. Mutation A in a germ cell, by contrast, produces a gamete that can pass the mutation on to an offspring by uniting with another gamete. The resulting zygote carries the mutation, and therefore so does every somatic cell and germ cell descended from it. The mutated gamete may then be passed on to a third generation, as well.

Figure 1.10 Germ-line versus somatic mutations The fate of the novel allele created by a mutation depends upon the particular cell in which the mutation strikes. Mutation A, which occurs in the genome of a germ-line cell in the gonads, can be passed from parent (*above left*) to offspring via gametes —sperm or egg (*green half circles*). Once incorporated into the fertilized egg (zygote), the mutant alleles can then be transmitted to all of the cells in the body of the offspring (2nd generation) outside of the gonads, i.e., its soma, as well as being transmitted via germ-line cells and gametes to a third generation (*not shown*). However, mutation B (*left*), which strikes the genome of a somatic cell in the parent, can be passed (*light brown half circles*) only to the lineal descendants of that mutant cell within the body of the parent and cannot be transmitted to offspring. (Adapted from B. Alberts et al., Essential Cell Biology, 5th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2019.)

Somatic mutations are of central importance to the process of cancer formation. As described repeatedly throughout this book, a somatic mutation can affect the behavior of the cell in which it occurs and, through repeated rounds of cell growth and division, can be passed on to all descendant cells within a tissue. These direct descendants of a single progenitor cell, which may ultimately number in the millions or even billions, are said to constitute a cell clone, in that all members of this group of cells trace their lineage directly back to the single ancestral cell in which the mutation originally occurred.

An elaborate repair apparatus within each cell continuously monitors the cell's genome and, with great efficiency, eradicates mutant sequences, replacing them with appropriate wild-type sequences and eliminating cells with inappropriate karyotype. (We will examine this repair apparatus in depth in Chapter 12.) This apparatus maintains genomic integrity by minimizing the number of mutations that strike the genome and, in the absence of proper repair, are then perpetuated

by transmission to descendant cells. The challenge that the repair apparatus confronts is suggested by the fact that as many as 10^{16} cells are formed in the human body during a single lifetime, each created following the replication of cell genomes and the proper segregation of chromosomes; the occasional errors made by these processes must be detected and resolved, lest mutant genomes be perpetuated and transmitted to descendant cells. One stunning indication of the efficiency of genome repair comes from the successes of organismic cloning: the ability to generate an entire organism from the nucleus of a differentiated cell (prepared from an adult tissue) indicates that the genome of this adult cell is essentially a faithful replica of the genome of a fertilized egg, which existed many years and many cell generations earlier (**Supplementary Sidebar 1.2**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

germ line
: (1) The collection of genes that is transmitted from one organismic generation to the next. (2) The cells within a multicellular organism that are responsible for carrying and transmitting genes from one organismic generation to its offspring.

soma
: All the tissues in the body outside of the germ cells (sperm and egg) and the immediate precursors of the germ cells.

somatic mutation
: Mutation that strikes the genome of a cell outside of the germ line; such a mutation cannot, by definition, be transmitted to the next organismic generation. *See also* **germ line**.

clone
: (adj., **clonal**) (1) Copy of a gene that has been isolated by recombinant DNA procedures and amplified into a large number of identical copies. (2) Population of cells, all of which descend from a common progenitor cell. (3) Offspring of a procedure of asexual reproduction in which the genome of a somatic diploid cell of an organism is used to form a cell that functions equivalently to a fertilized egg that may itself develop thereafter into an entire organism.

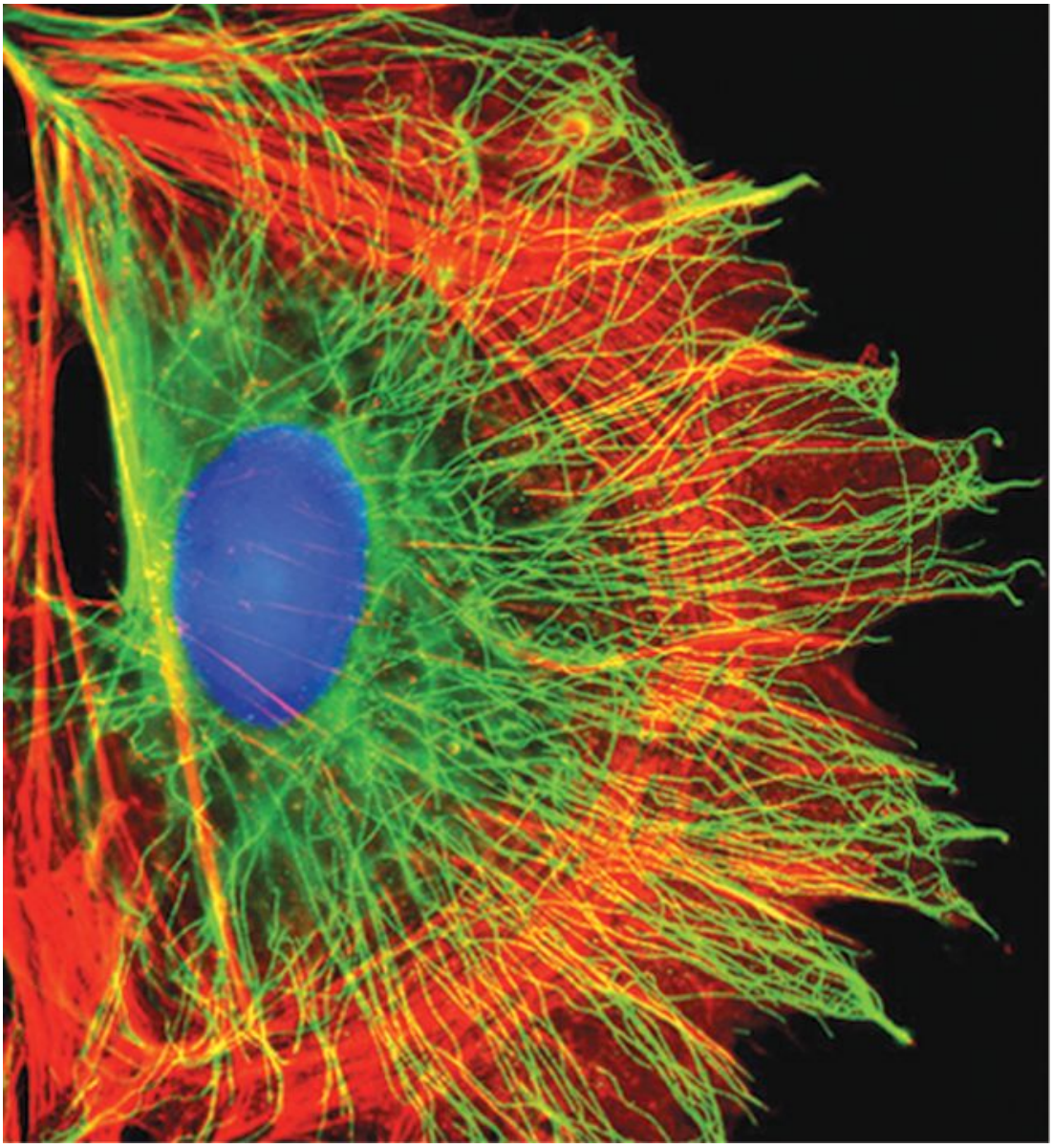
OceanofPDF.com

1.6 Genotype embodied in DNA sequences creates phenotype through proteins

The genes studied in Mendelian genetics are essentially mathematical abstractions. Mendelian genetics explains their transmission, but it sheds no light on how genes create cellular and organismic phenotypes. Phenotypic attributes can range from complex, genetically templated behavioral traits to the morphology (shape, form) of cells and subcellular organelles to the biochemistry of cell metabolism. This mystery of how genotype creates phenotype represented the major problem of twentieth-century biology. Indeed, attempts at forging a connection between these two became the obsession of many molecular biologists during the second half of the twentieth century and continue as such into the twenty-first, if only because we still possess an incomplete understanding of how genotype influences phenotype.

Molecular biology has provided the basic conceptual scaffold for understanding the connection between genotype and phenotype. In 1944, DNA was proven to be the chemical entity in which the genetic information of cells is carried. Nine years later, Watson and Crick elucidated the double-helical structure of DNA. Eleven years after that, in 1964, it became clear that the sequences in the bases of the DNA double-helix determine precisely the sequence of amino acids in proteins. The unique structure and function of each type of protein in the cell is determined by its sequence of amino acids. Therefore, the specification of amino acid sequence, which is accomplished by base sequences in the DNA, provides almost all the information that is required to construct a protein.

Once synthesized within cells, proteins proceed to create phenotype, doing so in a variety of ways. Some proteins assemble within the cell to create intracellular structure —the components of the cytoarchitecture, or, more specifically, the cytoskeleton (**Figure 1.11A and B**). When secreted into the space between cells, other proteins form the extracellular matrix (ECM), which ties cells together, enabling them to form complex, physically robust tissues (Figure 1.11C and D). As we will see later, the structure of the ECM is often disturbed by malignant cancer cells, enabling them to migrate to sites within a tissue and organism that are usually forbidden to them. Examples of how individual protein molecules can assemble to form the cytoskeleton and the ECM can be found in **Figure 1.12**.

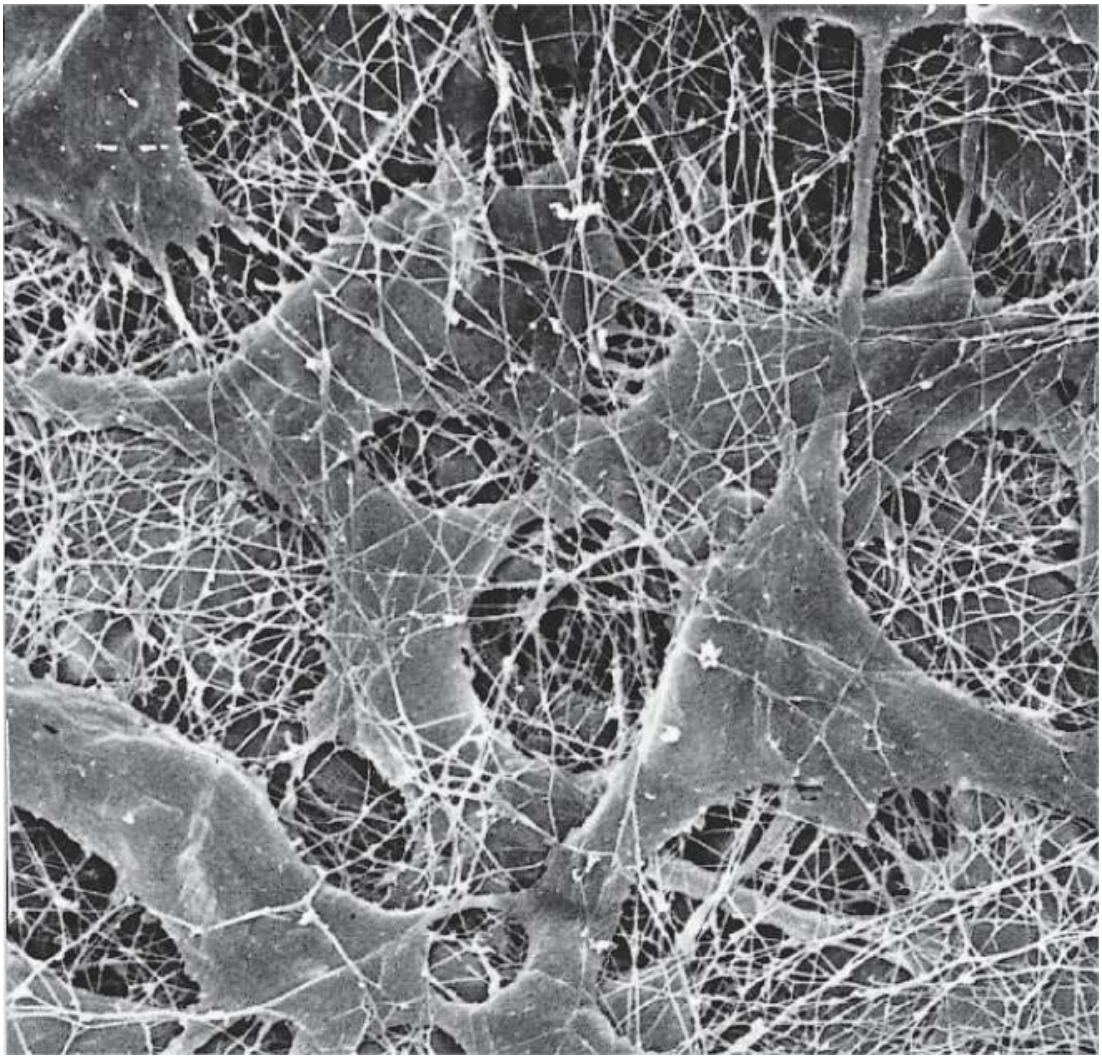


A cell is shown in color with a bright blue nucleus surrounded by a capsule of orange filaments. Green filaments radiate outward from the nucleus and penetrate the capsule to reach the cell exterior.

(A)

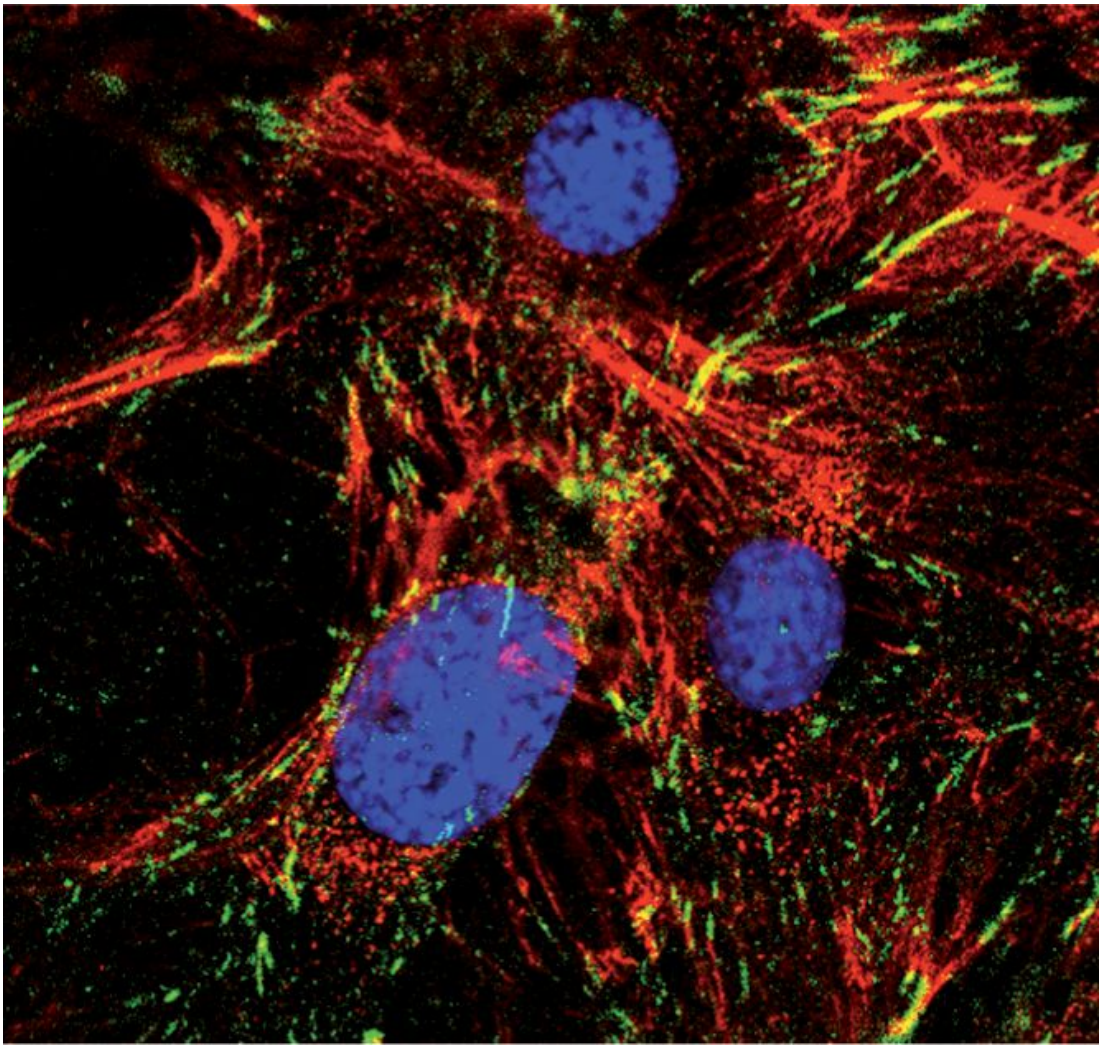
An epithelial cell is shown in color. The center, shown in bright blue and almost gemlike in appearance, is surrounded by a yellow, spongy mass of hairlike fibers.

(B)



A black-and-white electron micrograph shows a dense network of crisscrossing fibers. Most are very thin, but a few are thick, like tree trunks amidst branches, viewed from above.

(C)

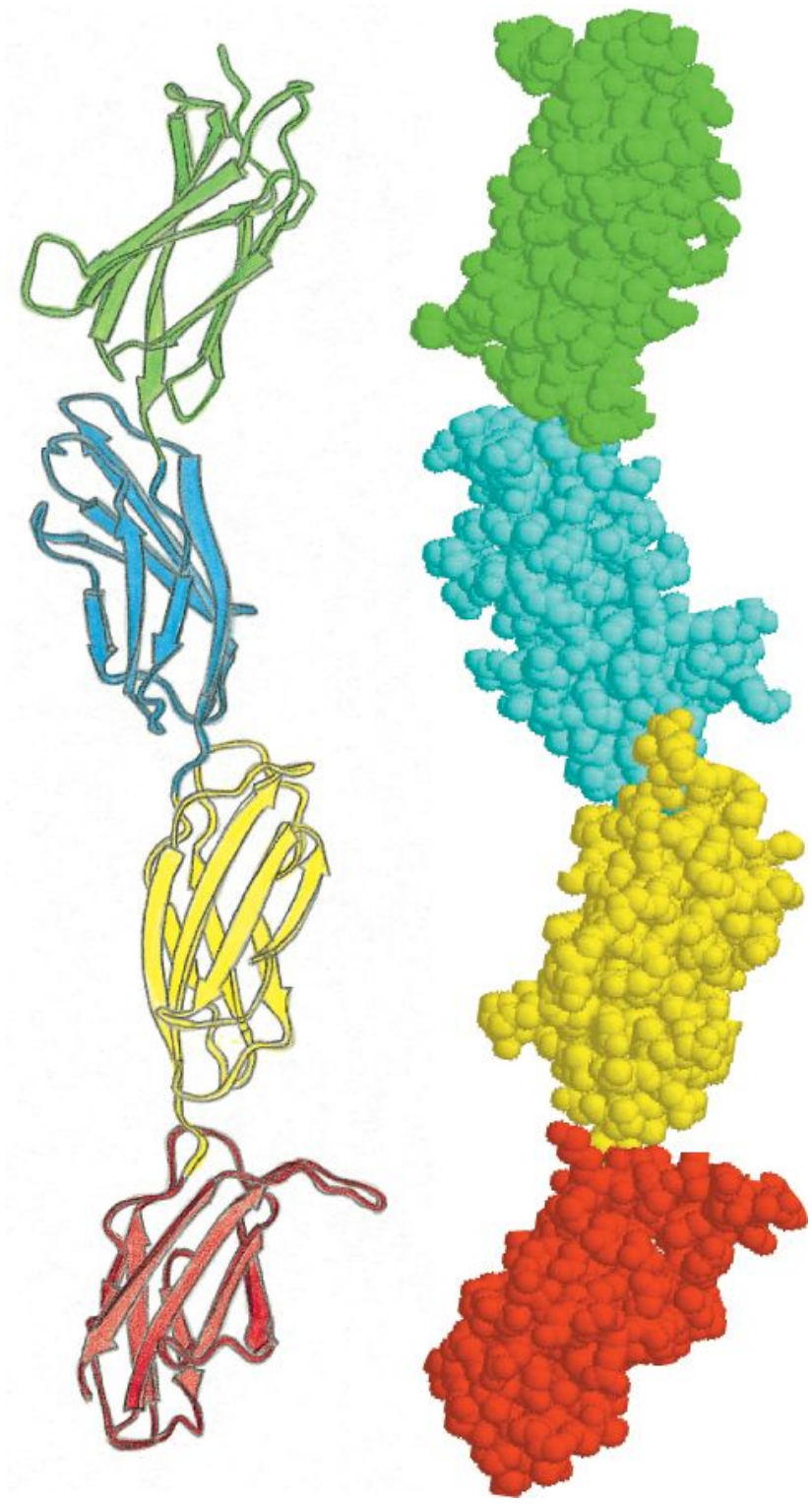


Three deep blue ovals are surrounded by seemingly random streaks of red, with a streaks of yellow and green also visible.

(D)

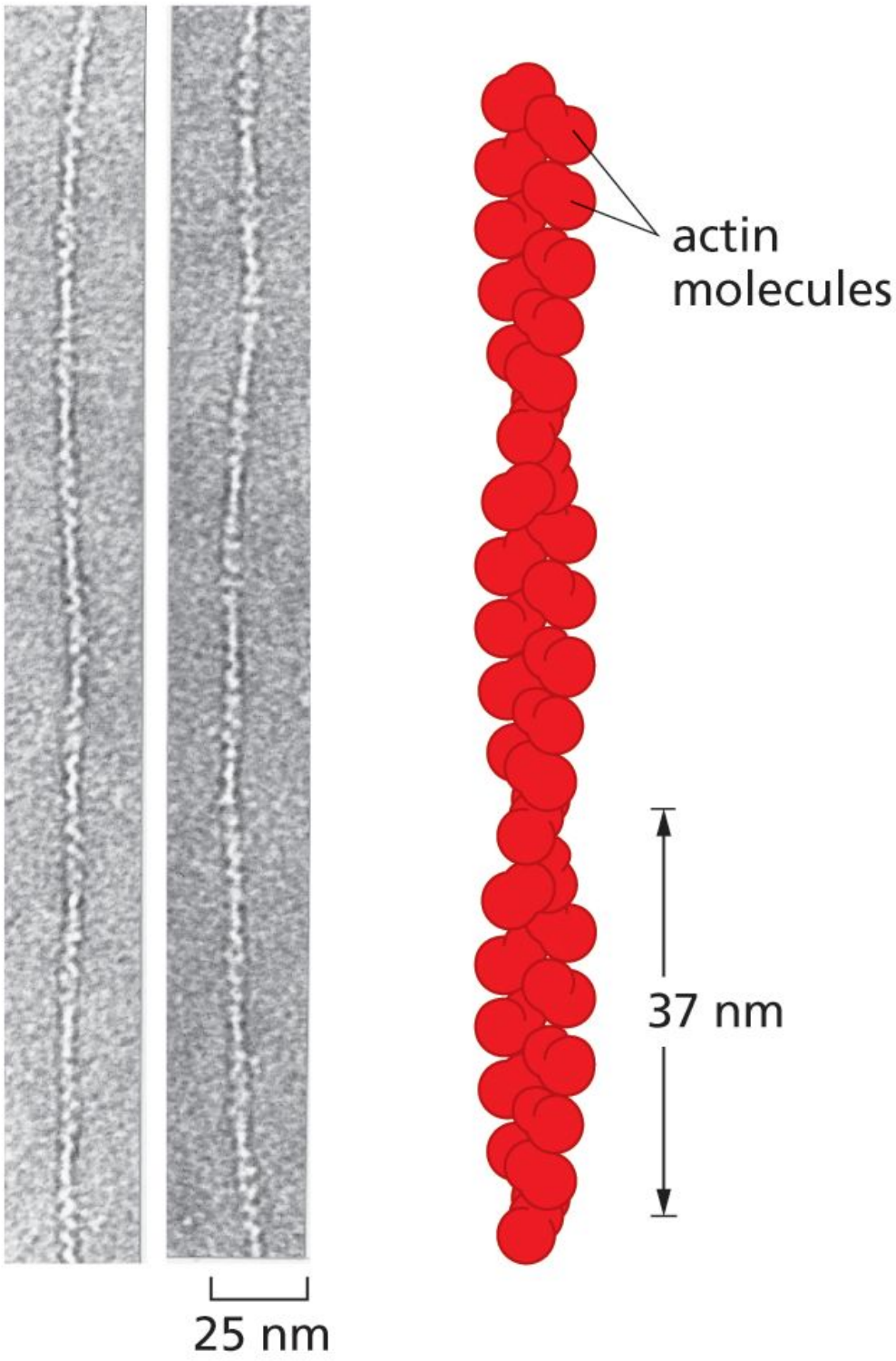
Figure 1.11 Intracellular and extracellular scaffolding The cytoskeleton is assembled from complex networks of intermediate filaments, actin microfilaments, and microtubules. Together, they generate the shape of a cell and enable its motion. (A) In this cultured cell, microfilaments composed of actin (*orange*) form bundles that lie parallel to the cell surface while microtubules composed of tubulin (*green*) radiate outward from the nucleus (*blue*). Both types of fibers are involved in the formation of protrusions from the cell surface. (B) Here, important intermediate filaments of epithelial cells—cytokeratins—are detected through use of hybrid proteins in which a fluorescent reporter protein (eYFP, *light yellow*) has been fused to both cytokeratins 8 and 18. (This is achieved through the creation of hybrid mRNAs in which the corresponding

reading frames have been fused to one another using recombinant DNA techniques that insert eYFP-encoding DNA segments into the two cytokeratin genes.) (C) Cells secrete a diverse array of proteins that are assembled into the extracellular matrix (ECM). A scanning electron micrograph reveals the complex meshwork of collagen fibers, glycoproteins, hyaluronan, and proteoglycans, in which fibroblasts (connective tissue cells) are embedded in the rat cornea. (D) Mouse breast cancer cells propagated in a monolayer on the bottom surface of a Petri dish are attached to the dish via fibronectin molecules that they have secreted (*red*). Points of physical contact with the ECM formed by the fibronectin are achieved by integrin molecules (*green*; see Section 5.9) displayed on the surface of these cells that form *focal adhesions* that physically tether the cells to the fibronectin of the ECM. Nuclei are stained in *blue*. (A, courtesy of A. Tousson, High-Resolution Imaging Facility, University of Alabama at Birmingham. B, courtesy of Bram van den Broek and Kees Jalink. C, courtesy of T. Nishida. D, courtesy of Tsukasa Shibue.)



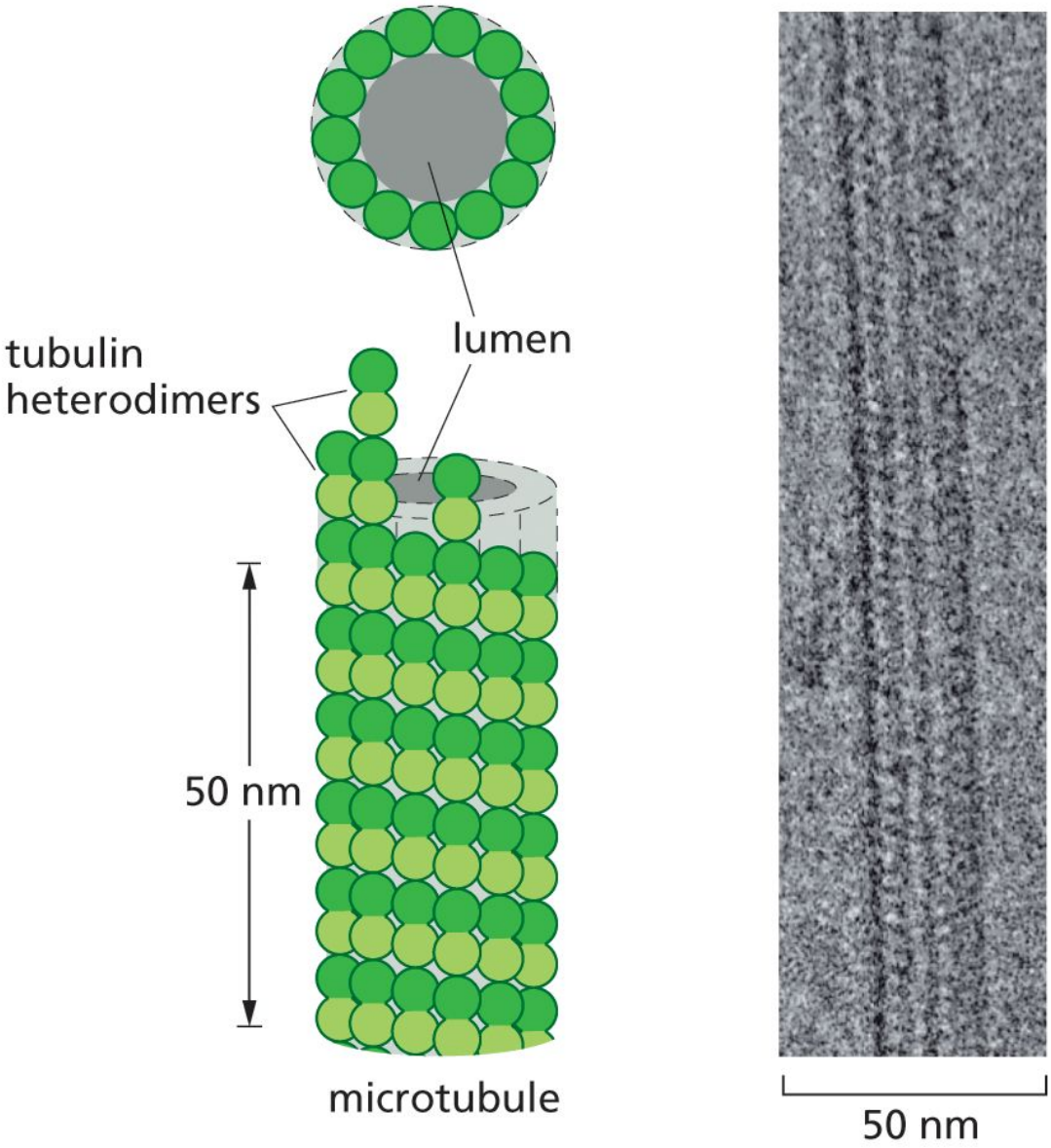
A segment of protein is shown, top to bottom, as a green mass connected to a blue mass connected to a yellow mass connected to a red mass. The same structure appears as a ribbon diagram on the left and as a space-filling

diagram on the right. In the ribbon diagram, most sections are made of antiparallel beta sheets connected by looping strands.
(A)



Two micrographs of twisted fibers roughly 4.5 nanometers thick appear next to a model of a chain of actin molecules showing that a 180 degree twist occurs ever 37 nanometers of length.

(B)



A micrograph of a microtubule roughly 23 nanometers thick appears next to a model showing that the hollow center, called the lumen, is surrounded by a helical arrangement of peanut-shaped structures called tubulin heterodymers, oriented with their long axis parallel to the tubule axis.

(C)

Figure 1.12 Structures of proteins and multiprotein assemblies (A) The three-dimensional structure of part of fibronectin, an important extracellular matrix protein (see Figure 1.11C and D), is depicted as a ribbon diagram (*left*), which illustrates the path taken by its amino acid chain; alternatively, the space-filling model (*right*) shows the positions of the individual atoms. One portion of fibronectin is composed of four distinct, similarly structured domains, which are shown here with different colors. (B) The actin fibers (*left*), which constitute an important component of the cytoskeleton (see Figure 1.11A), are composed of assemblies of individual protein molecules, each of which is illustrated here as a distinct two-lobed body (*right*). (C) Microtubules are assembled as hollow tubes made from heterodimers of two types of tubulin (*light green*, *dark green*); in addition to helping form the microskeleton, they form the fibers of the mitotic apparatus and the spines of flagella and cilia. (A, adapted from D.J. Leahy, I. Aukhil and H.P. Erickson, *Cell* 84:155–164, 1996. With permission from Elsevier. B, left, courtesy of Roger Craig; right, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015. C, left, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015; right, courtesy of R. Wade.)

Many proteins function as enzymes that catalyze the thousands of biochemical reactions that together are termed intermediary metabolism; without the active intervention of enzymes, few of these reactions would occur spontaneously. In recent years, it has become apparent that the metabolism of cancer cells is often quite different from that of corresponding normal cells. Proteins can also contract and create cellular movement as well as muscle contraction. Cellular motility, described in more detail in Chapter 14, plays an important role in cancer development by allowing cancer cells to spread through tissues and migrate to distant organs.

And most important for the process of cancer formation, proteins can convey signals between cells, thereby enabling complex tissues to maintain the appropriate numbers of constituent cell types. Within individual cells, certain proteins receive signals from an extracellular source, process these signals, and pass them on to other proteins within the cell; such signal-processing functions, often termed signal transduction, are also central to the creation of cancers, since many of the abnormal-growth phenotypes of cancer cells are the result of aberrantly functioning intracellular signal-transducing molecules.

The functional versatility of the countless proteins within a cell (**Sidebar 1.3**) makes it apparent that almost all aspects of cell and organismic phenotype can be created by their actions. Once we realize this, we can depict genotype and phenotype in the simplest of molecular terms: genotype resides in the sequences of bases in DNA, while phenotype derives from the actions of proteins. (In fact, this depiction is simplistic,

because it ignores the important role of RNA molecules as intermediaries between DNA sequences and protein structure and the abilities of some RNA molecules to function as enzymes and others to act as regulators of the expression of certain genes.)

Sidebar 1.3 How many distinct proteins can be found in the human body, and how are the encoding mRNAs produced?

It is difficult to extrapolate from the number of human genes (~20,000) to the total number of distinct proteins encoded in the human genome. The simplest estimate comes from the assumption that each gene encodes the structure of a single protein. But this assumption is naive, because it ignores the fact that the pre-mRNA transcript deriving from a single gene may be subjected to several *alternative splicing* patterns, yielding multiple, distinctly structured mRNAs, many of which may in turn encode distinct proteins (see Figure 1.13).

In more detail, flanking each intron are two retained sequences, the exons, which are fused together during this process of splicing. The initially synthesized RNA molecule and its derivatives found at various stages of splicing, together with nuclear RNA transcripts being processed from thousands of other genes, collectively constitute the hnRNA (heterogeneous nuclear RNA). The end product of these post-transcriptional modifications may be an RNA molecule that is only a small fraction of the length of its initially synthesized hnRNA precursor. This final, mature RNA molecule may be exported into the cytoplasm, where, as an mRNA (messenger RNA) molecule, it serves as the template on which ribosomes assemble the amino acids that form the proteins. (The term pre-mRNAs is often used to designate those hnRNAs that are precursors of cytoplasmic mRNAs.) The complexity of post-transcriptional modifications of RNA yields an enormous array of distinct protein species within the cell.

In some cells, splicing may include certain exons in the final mRNA molecule made from a pre-mRNA, while in other cells, these exons may be absent (Figure 1.13B). Such alternative splicing patterns can generate mRNAs having greatly differing structures and protein-encoding sequences. In one admittedly extreme case, a single *Drosophila* gene has been found to be capable of generating 38,016 distinct mRNAs and thus proteins through various alternative splices of its pre-mRNA; genes having similarly complex alternative splicing patterns are likely to reside in our own genome.

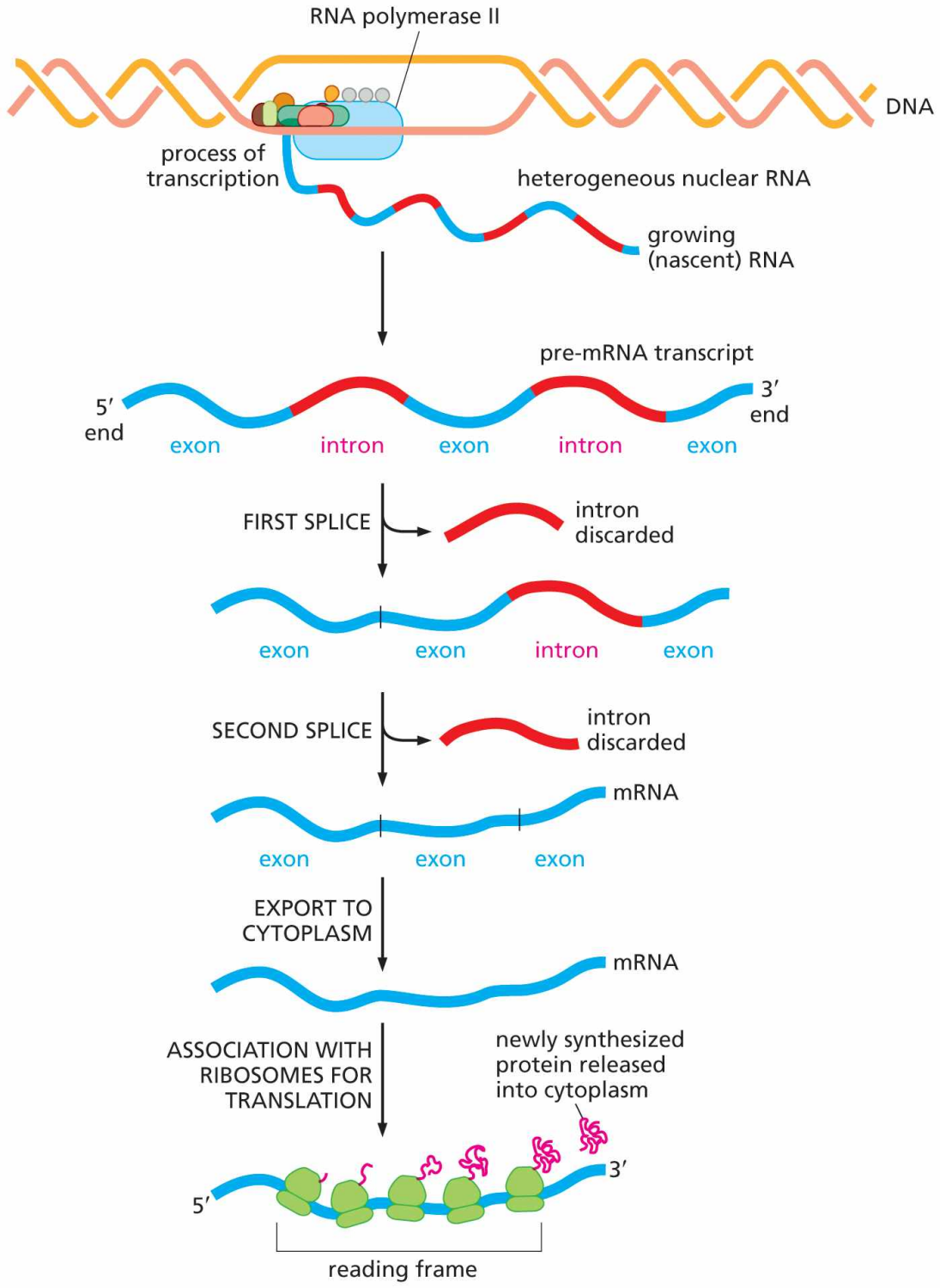
An additional dimension of complexity derives from the post-translational modifications of proteins. The proteins that are exported to the cell surface or secreted in soluble form into the extracellular space are usually modified by the covalent attachment of complex trees of sugar molecules—usually attached to asparagine side chains of proteins—during the process of glycosylation. Intracellular proteins often

undergo other types of chemical modifications. Thus, proteins involved in transducing the signals that govern cell proliferation often undergo phosphorylation through the covalent attachment of phosphate groups to serine, threonine, or tyrosine amino acid residues. Many of these phosphorylations affect some aspect of the functioning of these proteins. Similarly, the histone proteins that wrap around DNA and control its access by the RNA polymerases that synthesize hnRNA are subject to methylation, acetylation, and phosphorylation, as well as more complex post-translational modifications.

The polypeptide chains that form proteins may also undergo cleavage at specific sites following their initial assembly, often yielding small proteins showing functions that were not apparent in the uncleaved precursor proteins. Later, we will describe how certain signals may be transmitted through the cell via a cascade of the protein-cleaving enzymes termed proteases. In these cases, protein A may cleave protein B, activating its previously latent protease activity; thus activated, protein B may cleave protein C, and so forth. Taken together, alternative splicing and post-translational modifications of proteins generate vastly more distinct protein molecules than are apparent from counting the number of genes in the human genome.

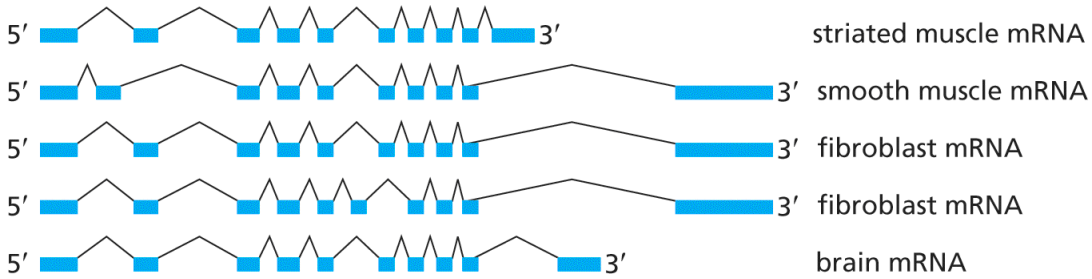
In the complex eukaryotic (nucleated) cells of animals, as in the simpler prokaryotic cells of bacteria, DNA sequences are copied into RNA molecules in the process of transcription; a gene that is being transcribed is said to be actively expressed, while a gene that is not being transcribed is often considered to be repressed. In its simplest version, the transcription of a gene yields an RNA molecule of length comparable to the gene itself. Once synthesized, the base sequences in the RNA molecule are translated by the protein-synthesizing factories in the cell, its ribosomes, into a sequence of amino acids. The resulting macromolecule, which may be hundreds, even thousands of amino acids long, folds up into a unique three-dimensional configuration and becomes a functional protein.

In eukaryotic cells—the main subject of this book—the synthesis of RNA is itself a complex process. An RNA destined to become a messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule (often termed a pre-mRNA), when transcribed from its parent gene in the nucleus, may initially be almost as long as that gene. However, while it is being elongated, segments of the pre-mRNA molecule, some very small and others enormous, may be cleaved out of the growing RNA molecule. These segments, termed introns, are soon discarded and consequently have no impact on the subsequent coding ability of the RNA molecule (**Figure 1.13**). The retained portions of the initial RNA transcript, termed exons, once fused together to form a mature mRNA, are exported to the cytoplasm (see Sidebar 1.3). The entire process of editing pre-mRNA molecules via deletion of introns and fusion of exons is termed splicing.



A top-to-bottom flowchart that starts with D N A and ends with protein synthesis. On a stretch of D N A that has been untwisted to separate the two strands, R N A polymerase 2 transcribes the information on one of the strands onto a heterogeneous nuclear R N A strand it generates, consisting of

alternating blue and red segments. The result is a pre m R N A transcript with a 5 prime end and a 3 prime end, between which two red intron segments alternate with three blue exon segments. Through successive splices, the intron segments are removed, leaving m R N A consisting entirely of blue exon segments. This m R N A is exported to the cytoplasm, where it associates with ribosomes that attach to it and read its information to synthesize proteins and release them into the cytoplasm.
(A)



Five different patterns of alternating exons and introns in a pre-mRNA molecule: one for striated muscle, one for smooth muscle, two for fibroblasts, and one for brain tissue. The exons and introns vary in length but there are the same number per molecule. The smooth muscle and fibroblast types conclude on the 3 prime end with a long intron followed by a long exon.

(B)

Figure 1.13 Processing of pre-mRNA (A) By synthesizing a complementary RNA copy of one of the two DNA strands of a gene, RNA polymerase II creates a molecule of heterogeneous nuclear RNA (hnRNA; *red and blue*). The subset of hnRNA molecules that are processed into mRNAs are termed pre-mRNA. The progressive removal of the introns (*red*) leads to a processed mRNA containing only exons (*blue*). (B) A given pre-mRNA molecule may be spliced in a number of alternative ways, yielding distinct mRNAs that may encode distinct protein molecules. Illustrated here are the tissue-specific alternative splicing patterns of the α-tropomyosin pre-mRNA molecule, whose mRNA products specify important components of cell (and thus muscle) contractility. In this case, the introns are indicated as *black carets* while the exons are indicated as *blue rectangles*. (B, adapted from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015.)

Of note, an initially transcribed pre-mRNA may be processed through alternative splicing into a series of distinct mRNA molecules that retain different combinations of exons (see Figure 1.13B). Indeed, the pre-mRNAs arising from ~93% of the genes in

our genome are subject to alternative splicing. The resulting alternatively spliced mRNAs may carry altered reading frames, explaining, for example, the distinctive isoforms of certain proteins that are found in cancer cells but not in their normal counterparts. Alternatively, these splicing events may affect untranslated regions of mRNAs, such as those targeted by microRNAs (miRNAs; Section 1.9); these interactions with miRNAs can alter the function of an mRNA, by regulating either its translation or its stability. Alternative splicing events are currently estimated to generate mRNAs encoding ~70,000 distinct proteins arising from ~20,000 human genes. Importantly, the order of exons in the mature, spliced mRNA reflects the order of these segments in the initial unprocessed primary pre-mRNA transcript.

Interestingly, a protein that orchestrates an alternative splicing pattern of certain pre-mRNAs has been reported, when expressed in excessively high levels in cells, to favor their transformation (conversion) from a normal to a cancerous growth state. In certain hematopoietic malignancies described in the next chapter, the genes encoding several other splicing factors (SFs) have been found to have suffered missense mutations in specific codons, suggesting that these tumors gained proliferative advantage from the resulting subtle changes in protein structure (**Sidebar 1.4**). These findings are surprising, since one might imagine that proteins that regulate splicing would mediate the processing of many or all pre-mRNAs within the cell rather than affecting only a subset of genes involved in a specific cell-biological function, such as cell transformation. Moreover, a 2008 survey of alternatively spliced mRNAs found 41 that showed a distinct pattern of alternative splicing in human breast cancer cells compared with normal mammary cells; indeed, these alternatively spliced mRNAs could be used as diagnostic markers of the cancerous state of these cells. Even more dramatic, in 2010 as many as 1000 pre-mRNAs were found to undergo alternative splicing as cells passed through an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), an important transdifferentiation step that carcinoma cells utilize in order to acquire traits of high-grade malignancy, as will be discussed in Chapters 13 and 14. And a year later, the genes encoding three splicing factors were found to be targets of recurrent mutations in a number of independently arising cases of myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS)—a pre-neoplastic condition of the bone marrow that is sometimes termed a "pre-leukemia."

Sidebar 1.4 Splicing factors and cancer

Splicing, (including alternative splicing) is regulated by a large cohort of splicing factors (SFs) that function by recognizing and binding specific oligonucleotide segments in pre-mRNA, thereby guiding the general splicing machinery to the appropriate sites of cleavage and fusion of segments within the individual pre-mRNA molecules. When portrayed most simply, all splicing factors would seem to be dedicated to monitoring the processing of all the pre-mRNAs produced within a cell.

However, the truth is more interesting: some appear to be specialized to process specific pre-mRNAs, including some SFs ostensibly involved in the control of cell proliferation. In addition to the observation that overexpression of at least one of these has been found to transform normal cells in culture into tumor cells, three other SFs have been found to appear repeatedly in mutant form in the genomes of various types of cancer cells, indicating that their alteration favors tumor development. Hence, certain SFs may be specialized to control the processing of genes with highly specialized cell-biological functions, including in this case the control of cell growth and proliferation.

Post-translational modification of the initially synthesized protein may result in the covalent attachment of certain chemical groups to the side chains of amino acid residues in a protein chain; included among these modifications are, notably, phosphates, complex sugar chains, and methyl, acetyl, succinyl, and lipid groups, as well as ubiquitin and SUMO groups. In the case of certain critical cellular proteins, this can lead to an extraordinary complexity: thus, histone H3, which is associated with chromosomal DNA and is involved in the regulation of transcription, has been estimated to exist in perhaps 1000 distinct isoforms, each defined by a different combination of post-translational modifications (PTMs). Some PTMs are almost universal: cell-surface proteins and those secreted in soluble form into the extracellular space almost invariably display carbohydrate side chains that are attached via the process of glycosylation, as cited in Sidebar 1.3; proteins of the Ras family, which are located in the cytoplasm and play important roles in cancer development, contain lipid groups attached to their carboxy termini. An equally important post-translational modification involves the cleavage of one protein by a second protein termed a protease, which has the ability to cut amino acid chains at certain sites, also mentioned in Sidebar 1.3. Accordingly, the final, mature form of a protein chain may include far fewer amino acid residues than were present in the initially synthesized protein. Following their synthesis, many proteins are dispatched to specific sites within the cell or are exported from the cell through the process of secretion; these alternative destinations are specified in the newly synthesized proteins by short amino acid (oligopeptide) sequences that function, much like postal addresses, to ensure the diversion of these proteins to specific intracellular sites.

With the passage of time, subtleties in the molecular biology of cells continue to be discovered. One of these discoveries involves long noncoding RNAs, discussed in more detail in Section 1.9. Yet another involves ribosomes, which have traditionally been depicted as workshops that are highly flexible in being able to translate essentially all mRNAs in the cytoplasm. Of late, ribosomes have been found to have physically associated proteins that specialize them to translate certain mRNAs but not others. Such specialization could not have been imagined by those who first articulated the DNA → RNA → protein paradigm more than half a century ago. The discovery of

these specialized ribosomes leaves open the possibility that the formation of some of them is favored in certain types of cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

morphology
: Shape and form of a cell, tissue, or organism.

cytoarchitecture
: Physical structure of a cell.

cytoskeleton
: Network of filamentous proteins in the cell cytoplasm that provides it with structure and rigidity enables it to exhibit motile behavior and is formed from polymerized actin, tubulin, and intermediate filament proteins such as cytokeratins.

extracellular matrix
: Meshwork of secreted proteins, largely glycoproteins and proteoglycans, that surrounds most cells within tissues and creates a structural scaffold in the intercellular space.

intermediary metabolism
: The collection of biochemical reactions within a cell that allow the interconversion of various molecular species into one another, involving both anabolic and catabolic reactions. *See* **anabolic, catabolic**.

motility
: (adj., **motile**) Tendency for movement, such as that of individual cells, from one location to another.

transduction
: (1) Process whereby a signaling element, such as a protein, receives a signal and, in response, processes the signal and emits another signal. (2) Process by which a gene is introduced into a cell, usually by a vector such as a viral vector.

heterogenous nuclear RNA (hnRNA)
: The collection of primary transcripts synthesized by pol II and derived processed intermediates arising from the actively transcribed genes of a cell.

messenger RNA (mRNA)
: The transcript of a gene that has been processed by splicing and exported to the cytoplasm where it serves as the template for protein synthesis conducted by ribosomes.

pre-mRNA
: The class of nuclear RNA molecules that are destined to become mRNA following their processing via splicing and export to the cytoplasm.

alternative splicing
: Process whereby a pre-mRNA may be spliced in several alternative ways, resulting in mRNAs composed of different combinations of exons.

alternative splicing
: Process whereby a pre-mRNA may be spliced in several alternative ways, resulting in mRNAs composed of different combinations of exons.

glycosylation
: Covalent attachment of a carbohydrate side chain, usually a covalently linked branched network of monosaccharides, to a second molecule, e.g., to the side chain of an asparagine residue of a protein; such attachment occurs in concert with or following initial synthesis of the polypeptide backbone of a protein.

glycosylation
: Covalent attachment of a carbohydrate side chain, usually a covalently linked branched network of monosaccharides, to a second molecule, e.g., to the side chain of an asparagine residue of a protein; such attachment occurs in concert with or following initial synthesis of the polypeptide backbone of a protein.

phosphorylation
: Covalent attachment of a phosphate group to a substrate, often the side chain of an amino acid residue of a protein. *See also* **phosphoprotein**.

protease
: An enzyme that cleaves protein substrates.

protease
: An enzyme that cleaves protein substrates.

eukaryotic
: Referring to the large, complex, nucleated cells of metazoa, metaphyta, and many protozoa. *See also* **prokaryotic.**

prokaryotic
: Referring to the relatively small, nonnucleated cells of bacteria and archaea. *See also* **eukaryotic**.

transcription
: Copying of DNA sequences into RNA molecules mediated by RNA polymerases.

repressed
: Referring to a gene that is not being expressed and therefore is not being transcribed.

ribosome
: The ribonucleoprotein complex that operates in the cytoplasm to translate the coding information of an mRNA to which it is bound into an amino acid sequence that yields as an end product a complete protein molecule.

intron
: Portion of a primary RNA transcript that is deleted during the process of splicing. *See also* **exon**.

exon
: Portion of a primary RNA transcript that is retained in the RNA product of splicing. *See also* **intron**.

splicing
: (1) Process that causes the deletion of a defined internal segment of a primary RNA transcript and the subsequent fusion of the two RNA segments flanking the deleted RNA segment. (2) Process occurring in the nucleus whereby a pre-mRNA precursor is converted into an mRNA through the deletion of introns and the fusion of remaining exons.

isoform
: Protein that is functionally and structurally similar but not identical to another protein. Multiple distinct isoforms of a protein are usually encoded either by a single gene (via alternative splicing of a pre-mRNA) or by closely related paralogous genes. *See* **paralog**.

transformation
: (1) Process of converting a normal mammalian cell into a cell having some or many of the attributes of a cancer cell. (2) Alteration of a cell through the introduction of a genetic element, usually referring to a process occurring in prokaryotic cells.

epithelial–mesenchymal transition
: Cell-biological program enabling acquisition by epithelial cells of some of the phenotypes of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts.

Compare **mesenchymal–epithelial transition**.

pre-neoplastic

Referring to a tissue that has acquired certain features of a frank tumor but has itself not yet developed into a neoplasia. *See also* **neoplastic**.

post-translational modification

Covalent alteration of a protein occurring concomitantly with or after the initial polymerization of the polypeptide backbone of the protein, including cleavage of the initially synthesized polypeptide and covalent modification of its amino-acid side chains.

ubiquitin

A polypeptide composed of 76 amino acid residues that undergoes covalent attachment to a substrate protein, often signaling that the resulting ubiquitylated protein is destined for degradation and usually present as a linear or branched polyubiquitylated modification of the substrate protein.

SUMO

One of a group of four ubiquitin-like polypeptides that, like ubiquitin, are attached covalently to substrate proteins, thereafter affecting intracellular localization and functions of the modified proteins but not their degradation.

expression

(1) Transcription of an active gene or synthesis of a protein from its encoded mRNA. (2) Forced release of interstitial fluid from a tissue caused by contraction of cells and/or extracellular matrix in that tissue. *See also* **repression**.

translation

Synthesis of proteins by ribosomes in which the amino acid sequences of the synthesized proteins are dictated by the nucleotide sequences of the ribosome-associated mRNA molecules. *See also* **ribosome**.

hematopoiesis

(adj., - **poietic**) Process that results in the formation of all of the cells in the blood, including its red and white cells, the latter including various cells of the immune system.

splicing factor

Protein involved in regulating the process of splicing including the recognition of appropriate splice sites in the RNA molecule serving as the substrate of the splicing. *See also* **splice site**, **splicing**.

missense codon

A triplet codon in the genetic code, often created by a point mutation, that specifies an amino acid residue different from that specified by the codon that it replaces. *See also* **nonsense codon**.

splicing factor

Protein involved in regulating the process of splicing including the recognition of appropriate splice sites in the RNA molecule serving as the substrate of the splicing. *See also* **splice site**, **splicing**.

transformation

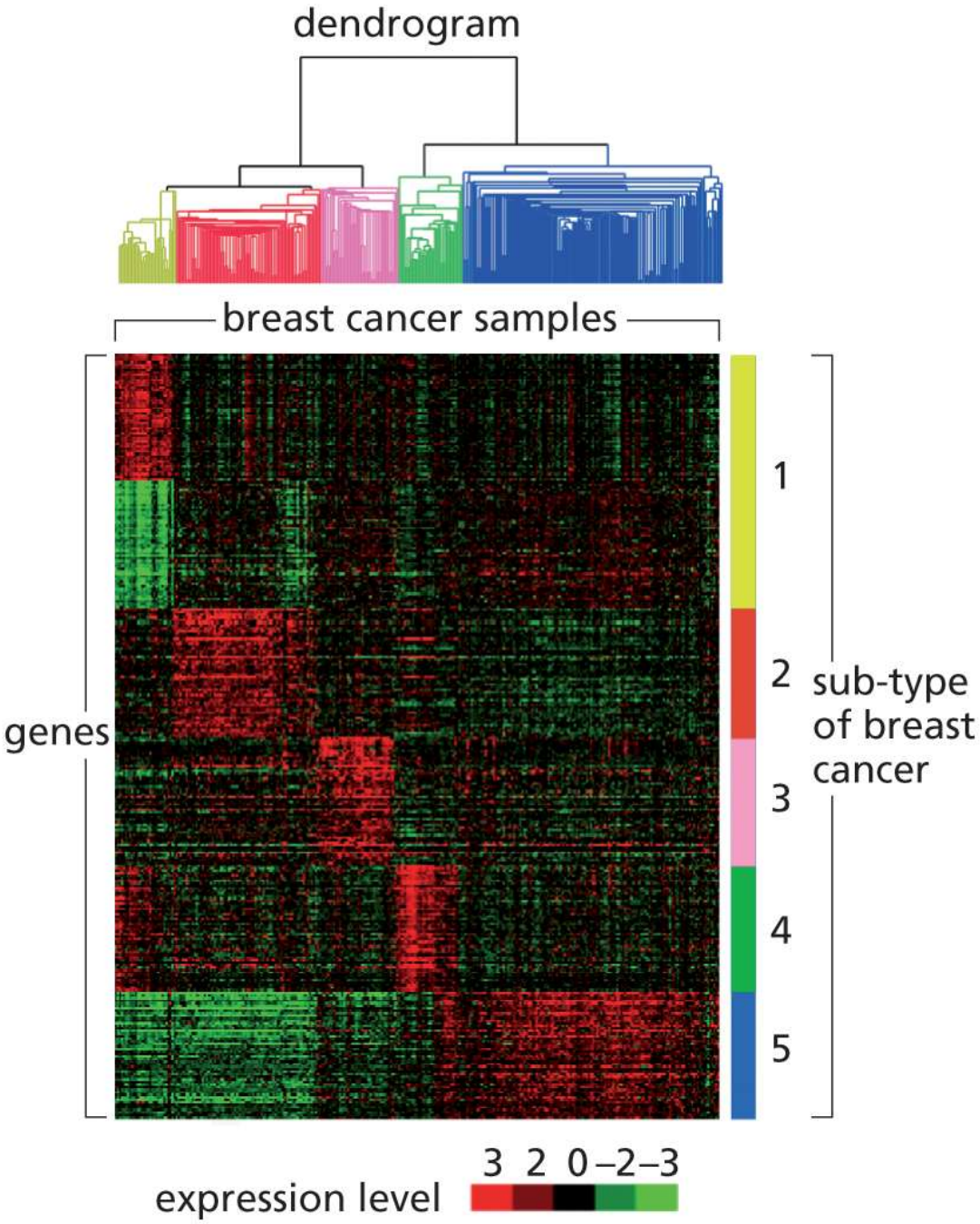
(1) Process of converting a normal mammalian cell into a cell having some or many of the attributes of a cancer cell. (2) Alteration of a cell through the introduction of a genetic element, usually referring to a process occurring in prokaryotic cells.

OceanofPDF.com

1.7 Gene expression patterns also control phenotype

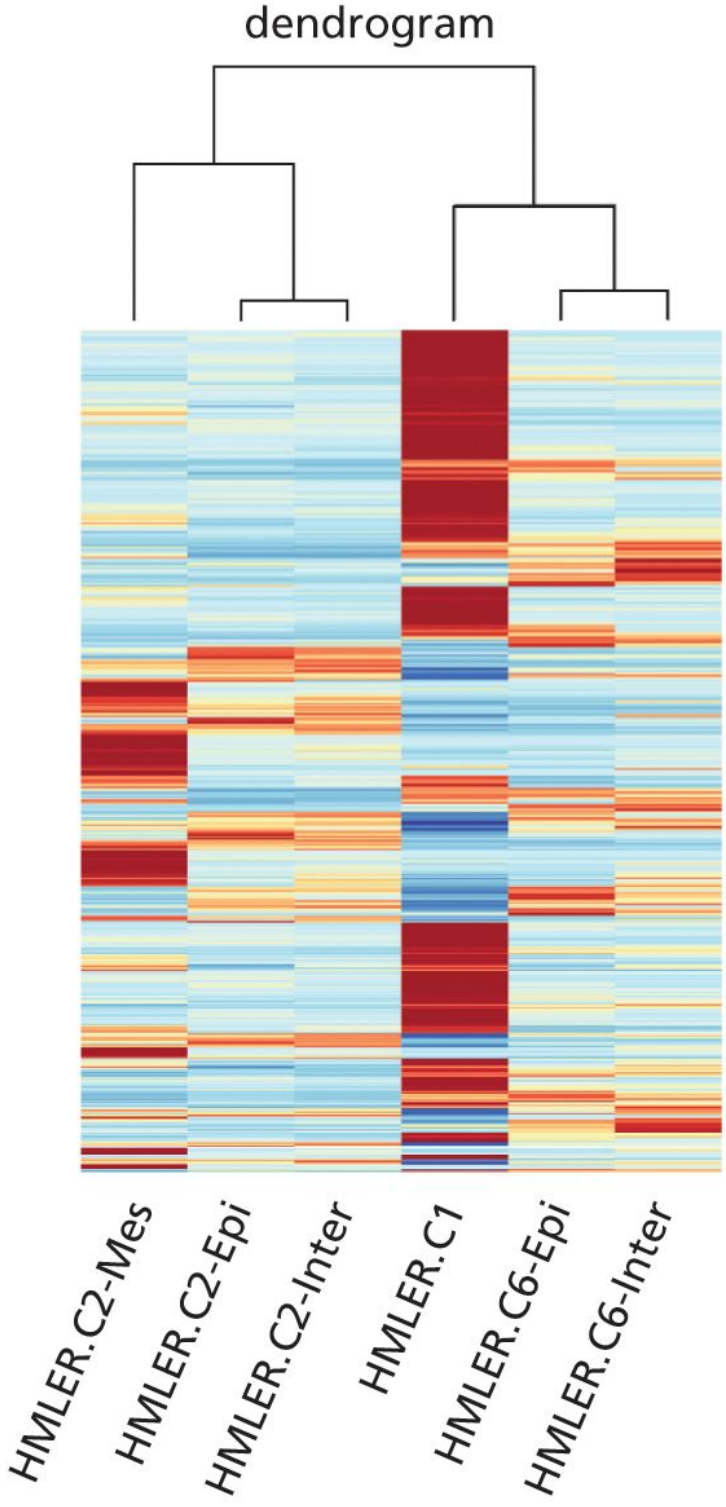
Approximately 20,000 genes in the mammalian genome, acting combinatorially within individual cells, are able to create the extraordinarily complex organismic phenotypes of the mammalian body. A central goal of twenty-first-century biology is to relate the functioning of this large repertoire of genes to organismic physiology, developmental biology, and disease development. The complexity of this problem is illustrated by the fact that there are at least several hundred distinct cell types within the mammalian body, each with its own behavior, its own distinct metabolism, and its own physiology. Indeed, as the collections of RNA transcripts are surveyed in individual cells throughout the body, more and more cell types are uncovered, so that this number may eventually grow into many hundreds, possibly even several thousand.

This complexity is acquired during the process of organismic development, and its study is the purview of developmental biologists. They wrestle with a problem that is inherent in the organization of all multicellular organisms. All of the cells in the body of an animal are the lineal descendants of a fertilized egg. Moreover, almost all of these cells carry genomes that are reasonably accurate copies of the genome that was initially present in this fertilized egg (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.2**). The fact that cells throughout the body are phenotypically quite distinct from one another (for example, a skin cell versus a brain cell) while being genetically identical creates a central problem of developmental biology: how do these various cell types acquire distinct phenotypes if they all carry identical genetic templates? The answer, documented in thousands of ways over the past four decades, lies in the selective reading of the genome by different cell types. Newer technologies, notably the recently gained ability to analyze the transcriptional programs (often termed the transcriptomes) of individual cells, have been confirming existing classifications of distinct differentiated cell types, while revealing that certain of these cell types, previously thought to represent a single homogeneous population, actually include a variety of distinct subtypes as mentioned above (**Figure 1.14**).



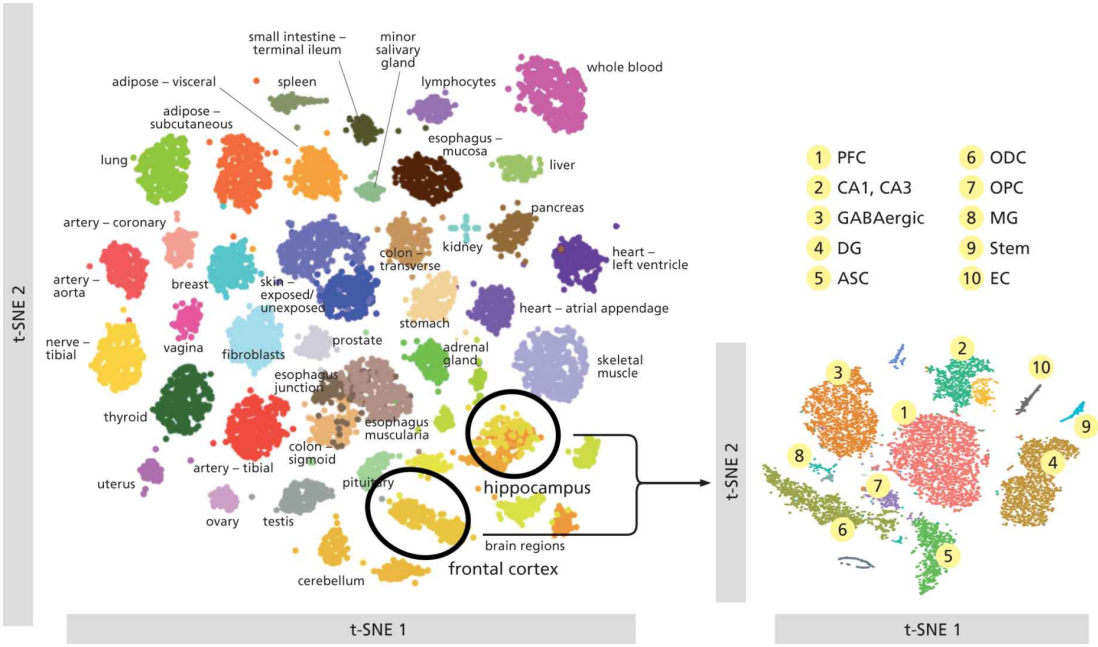
A rectangle with shades of red and green on a black background. Across the top, breast cancer tissue samples are organized into a dendrogram. The vertical axis is labeled genes on the left. Within the rectangle, red represents especially strong gene expression, white green represents especially weak gene expression. The patterns of red and green form six distinct horizontal bands, each characterized by a distinct left-to-right pattern of red and green. Down the right side, the top two bands are associated with breast cancer sub-

type 1, and the remaining four bands with sub-types 2, 3, 4 and 5, respectively.
(A)



A rectangle with six vertical bands, each characterized by a particular pattern of thin horizontal stripes in various shades of blue, orange, and red. Across the bottom, the stripes are labeled, left to right, H M L E R.C2-Mes, H M L E R.C2-Epi, H M L E R.C2-Inter, H M L E R.C1, H M L E R.C6-Epi, and H M L E R.C6-Inter. Across the top, a dendrogram groups the three C2 bands together and groups the C1 and C6 bands together. Within the each group of three, the Epi and Inter bands form a subgroup.

(B)



Two sets of axes, each with a horizontal t S N E 1 axis and a vertical t S N E 2 axis. The main set of axes displays many clusters of dots, each cluster representing a certain type of tissue: lung, liver, prostate, uterus, and so on. The clusters in the lower right corner are all associated with different types of brain tissue. The second set of axes displays the clustering of hippocampal and frontal lobe cells in finer detail, revealing ten subtypes, named P F C, C A 1 C A 3, GABA ergic, D G, A S C, O D C, O P C, M G, Stem, and E C.

(C)

Figure 1.14 Global surveys of gene expression arrays Multiple experimental strategies are available to survey the gene expression programs of cells. (A) One procedure makes it possible to survey the expression levels of thousands of genes within a given type of cell (i.e., its transcriptome) using sequence-specific probes immobilized in a *microarray* to register the expression of cognate mRNAs. In this image, the most highly expressed genes and the most weakly expressed genes in

each of the five major subtypes of breast cancer were used to choose DNA probes for stratification (*ordinate*). Hierarchical clustering was used to generate the *dendrogram* (*above*), which plots the degrees of similarity of the transcriptomes of these five groups of cells, doing so by clustering similar transcriptomes together on individual branches of the larger tree. In this image, higher-than-average levels of RNA expression are indicated as *red* pixels, while lower-than-average levels are indicated by *green* pixels. Average-level expression is indicated by *black* pixels. This analysis reveals that breast cancers, which at one level appear to be superficially similar, can actually be stratified into at least five distinct subtypes indicated by the five vertical colored bars on the right. Subsequent work has used such stratification to develop specific therapies for each subtype, in part based on information in this microarray. (B) In 2015, the newer RNA-seq technology overtook microarray analysis as the most common method for analyzing transcriptomes. It depends on the reverse transcription of a large collection of mRNAs, followed by sequencing of resulting cDNAs to measure the presence and abundance of the reverse transcripts. In this figure, the mRNAs from six different human breast cancer cell lines residing in different phenotypic states along the epithelial-to-mesenchymal spectrum (see Chapter 14) have been analyzed by RNA-seq. The 525 genes analyzed (*vertical axis*) were chosen because of their variability between two of these cell lines. Genes that are expressed at average levels are indicated in *yellow*, and overexpressed genes in *red*; while relatively underexpressed genes are in *blue*. Hierarchical clustering (*above*) has been used to organize these six samples, placing those with greater similarity closer to one another in the dendrogram tree. (C) RNA-seq was used to quantify gene expression across a variety of human tissues (*left panel*). The gene expression profiles (transcriptomes) obtained from each tissue sample were projected onto a two-dimensional space, using a statistical approach that groups samples with similar transcriptomes close to one another. This approach, termed the T-distributed Stochastic Neighbor Embedding (t-SNE) machine learning algorithm, takes a high-dimensional dataset and reduces it to a two-dimensional projection of the data (indicated here by the t-SNE 1 and t-SNE 2 axes of the two scatter plots presented here). A similar approach was applied to the transcriptomes of individual cells (*right panel*), measured using the more recently developed technology of single-cell sequencing (scRNA-seq). In this case, two of the tissues examined by conventional RNA-seq—hippocampus and frontal cortex—were subjected to scRNA-seq analysis, revealing that these two tissues, when mixed, actually together harbor ten distinct subtypes of cells (indicated by the acronyms). These images provide a direct visual validation of the fact that various differentiated cell types and the tissues that they form express distinct sets of transcripts, which presumably underlie their distinct tissue-specific functions. (Such single-cell RNA-seq reveals that the number of distinct subtypes of cells within many tissues is far larger than deduced from previous analyses of the

transcriptomes of pooled cells prepared from various tissues.) (A, Charles M. Perou. B, Courtesy of Yun Zhang. C, left from F. Aguet and K.G. Ardlie, *Curr. Genet. Med. Rep.* 4:163–169, 2016. With permission from Springer. Right, from N. Habib, I. Avraham-Davidi, A. Basu et al., *Nat. Methods* 14:955–958, 2017. With permission from Nature.)

As cells in the early embryo pass through repeated cycles of growth and division, the cells located in different parts of the embryo begin to assume distinct phenotypes, this being the process of differentiation. Differentiating cells become committed to form one type of tissue rather than another, for example, gut as opposed to nervous system. All the while, they retain the same set of genes. This discrepancy leads to a simplifying conclusion: sooner or later, differentiation must be understood in terms of the sets of genes that are expressed (that is, transcribed) in some cells but not in others.

By being expressed in a particular cell type, a suite of genes dictates the synthesis of a cohort of proteins and RNA molecules that collaborate to create a specific cell phenotype. Accordingly, the phenotype of each kind of differentiated cell in the body should, in principle, be understandable in terms of the specific subset of genes that is expressed in that cell type.

The genes within mammalian cells have been grouped into two broad functional classes—the housekeeping genes and the tissue-specific genes. Many genes encode proteins that are universally required among all cell types throughout the body and maintain cell viability by carrying out certain biological functions common to all of them. These commonly expressed genes are classified as housekeeping genes. The size of the repertoire of human housekeeping genes is of more than passing interest to cancer biologists (**Supplementary Sidebar 1.3**).

A minority of expressed genes within a differentiated cell—the tissue-specific genes—are dedicated to the production of proteins and thus phenotypes that are associated specifically with this and a number of other specialized cell types in the body. It may be, for example, that 6000 housekeeping genes are expressed by a cell while far fewer than 3000 differentiation-specific genes are responsible for the distinguishing, differentiated characteristics of the cell. By implication, in each type of differentiated cell, a significant proportion of the 20,000 or so genes in the genome are unexpressed, since they are not required either for the cell's specific differentiation program or for general housekeeping purposes. As detailed sequencing of the mRNAs expressed by various tissues proceeds, the distinctions between housekeeping genes and tissue-specific genes have blurred, rendering these classifications more difficult to justify. The census of proteins co-expressed in the average differentiated mammalian cell using the analytical tools of proteomics reveals about 10,000 concomitantly expressed proteins; on its own, this census does not account for the diversification of protein

structures that results from post-translational modifications such as phosphorylation, glycosylation, and proteolysis (see Section 1.6).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

transcriptome
: (1) The assembly of all of the transcripts that are produced by one cell or cell type. (2) More commonly, the assembly of all of the mRNAs produced by one cell or cell type.

differentiation
: Process whereby a cell acquires a specialized phenotype, such as a phenotype characteristic of cells in a particular tissue.

housekeeping gene
: A gene that is used universally in all cells throughout the body independent of their differentiated state and is assumed to be essential for their continuing viability.

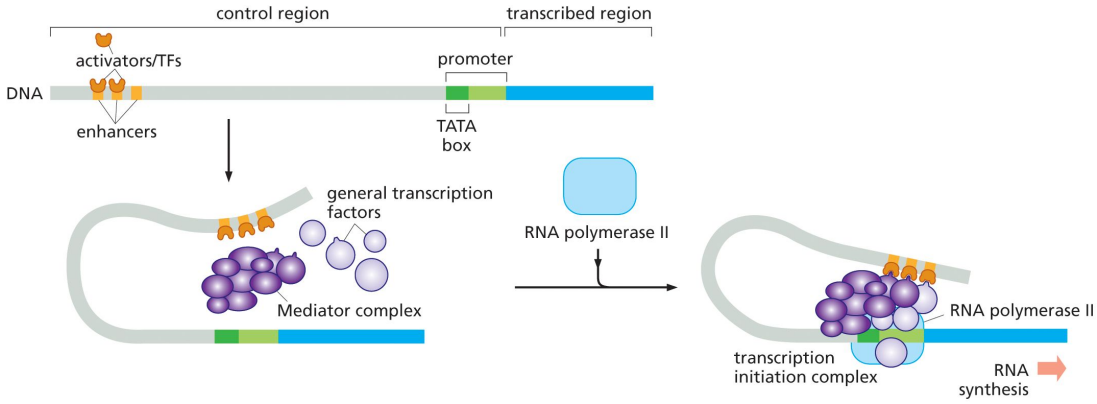
tissue-specific gene
: Gene that is expressed only in cells of certain individual tissue types.

proteomics
: (1) Technologies by which systematic analyses are made of large numbers of distinct protein species in a biological sample, such as a cell lysate or a biological fluid. (2) Enumeration of the set of proteins synthesized by a cell or tissue.

OceanofPDF.com

1.8 Modification of chromatin proteins and DNA controls gene expression

The foregoing description of differentiation makes it clear that large groups of genes must be coordinately expressed while other genes must be repressed in order for cells to display complex, tissue-specific phenotypes. Such coordination of expression is the job of proteins called transcription factors (TFs; **Figure 1.15**). Multiple transcription factors associated with a gene each bind to a specific DNA sequence in the control region of the gene and determine whether or not the gene will be transcribed. The specific stretch of nucleotide sequence to which each TF binds, often called a sequence motif, is usually quite short, typically 5–10 nucleotides long. In ways that are still incompletely understood at the molecular level, some TFs operate to provide the RNA polymerase enzyme (RNA polymerase II in the case of pre-mRNAs) with access to a gene. Yet other TFs may block such access and thereby ensure that a gene is transcriptionally repressed.



A sequence depicting the regulation of gene expression. At the start, a stretch of D N A has a long, gray control region and a somewhat shorter, blue transcribed region. The end of the control region that connects to the transcribed region is shown in green and labeled promoter. A section on the left end of the promoter is labeled T A T A box. At the other end of the control region, away from the transcribed region, is a short series of segments called enhancers. Free-floating u-shaped structures called activators or transcription factors attach to these, one per enhancer. Next, the control region folds over, bringing the enhancers with attached activators near the promoter. The space inside the fold is populated by general transcription factors, which are generally spherical, and by a complex protein

cluster called a mediator complex. Finally, R N A polymerase 2 has attached to the promoter, the mediator complex and the general transcription factors have attached to the R N A polymerase 2, and specific binding sites on the mediator complex and the general transcription factors have attached to the transcription factors on the enhancers, locking the loop into place. Transcription can now begin.
Figure 1.15 Regulation of gene transcription RNA polymerase II (pol II) is responsible for generating the transcripts that in turn are processed to become mRNAs in the cytoplasm. The control region of a gene transcribed by pol II includes specific segments of DNA, termed *enhancers*, to which gene regulatory proteins, known as transcription factors (TFs, *light brown*; also termed *activators*) bind in a sequence-specific manner, the latter often forming multiprotein complexes; the *enhancer* segments (*orange*) are often located many kilobases upstream of the *promoter*. The bound TFs influence the structure of chromatin (notably the histone proteins that package DNA; see Figure 1.16), creating a localized chromatin environment that enables pol II to produce an RNA transcript (*orange-red arrow, right*). In addition, the bound TFs interact with the transcription initiation complex via the Mediator complex (of ∼30 protein subunits). The promoter of the gene (*dark, light green*) contains sequences to which RNA polymerase II (pol II) and associated proteins can bind in order to initiate transcription of a gene; within the promoter of regulated genes is a short AT-rich sequence (TATA Box) that helps, together with associated proteins, to ensure proper localization of the start site of transcription. (The general TFs are involved in initiating the transcription of thousands of genes throughout the genome, while the specialized TFs bound to enhancers, as described above, regulate the expression of specific subsets of genes.) Although in general a gene can be separated into two functionally significant regions—the nontranscribed control sequences and the transcribed sequences represented in pre-mRNA and mRNA molecules—some of the regulatory sequences (enhancers) may be located within the transcribed region of a gene, often in introns. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2015.)

Transcription factors can exercise great power, since a single type of TF can simultaneously affect the expression of a large cohort of downstream responder genes, each of which carries the recognition sequence that allows this TF to bind its promoter (see Figure 1.15). This ability of a single master regulator, such as a TF, to elicit multiple changes within a cell or organism is often termed pleiotropy. In the case of cancer cells, a single malfunctioning, pleiotropically acting TF may simultaneously orchestrate the expression of a large cohort of responder genes that together proceed to create major components of the cancer cell phenotype. A 2018 enumeration of the genes in the human genome that are likely to encode TFs has listed 1639 distinct genes

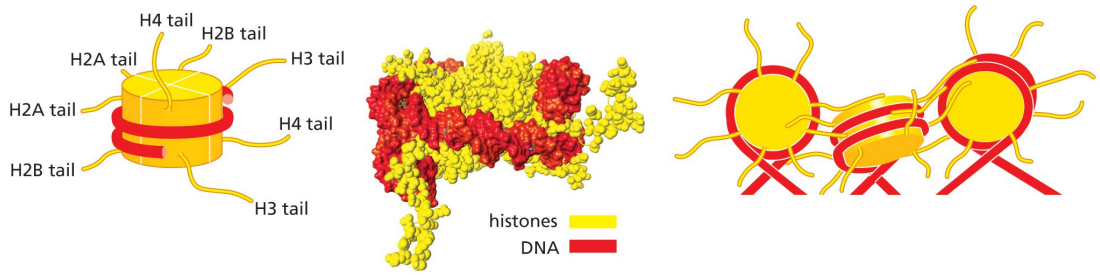
(about 8% of the total protein-coding genes). Not included in this list were variant versions of these proteins arising through alternative splicing of pre-mRNAs.

The transcription of most genes is dependent upon the actions of several distinct TFs that must sit down together, each at its appropriate sequence site (that is, enhancer) in or near the gene promoter, and collaborate to activate gene expression (see Figure 1.15). This means that the expression of a gene is most often the result of the combinatorial actions of several TFs. Therefore, the coordinated expression of multiple genes within a cell, often called its gene expression program, is dependent on the actions of multiple TFs acting in combination on large numbers of gene promoters. In a variety of differentiated human cells, large clusters of multiple distinct TFs (each binding to its own enhancer sequence) assemble together with general transcription factors to drive high-level transcription of nearby non-housekeeping genes; these clusters of TFs, which may number in the hundreds within a given cell type, are termed super-enhancers (even though, more appropriately, the term should refer to the DNA sequences to which the component TFs bind). Some have proposed that the DNA sequences in the human genome responsible for regulating transcription, such as the enhancers, exceed those sequences encoding protein structure.

Figure 1.15 implies that modulation of gene expression is achieved by controlling initiation of transcription by RNA polymerase II (pol II) and that transcription proceeds in one direction. In fact, for many genes, possibly the majority, pol II molecules initially sit down on the promoter of a gene and proceed to transcribe the DNA in both directions. After extending nascent RNA transcripts for 20–60 nucleotides, pol II halts—the process termed transcriptional pausing or **promoter-proximal pausing**. A subset of the stalled polymerase complexes that have initiated in the appropriate transcriptional direction are then induced by physiologic signals to resume elongation, resulting in full-length pre-mRNA transcripts, while other pol II complexes remain stalled and never resume transcription. The factors that permit stalled pol II to proceed with elongation of transcripts are incompletely understood but would seem to be as important as the conventionally defined TFs in regulating gene expression. One important cancer-causing protein, termed Myc, has been found to act as an anti-pausing protein whose actions permit thousands of cellular genes to be fully transcribed.

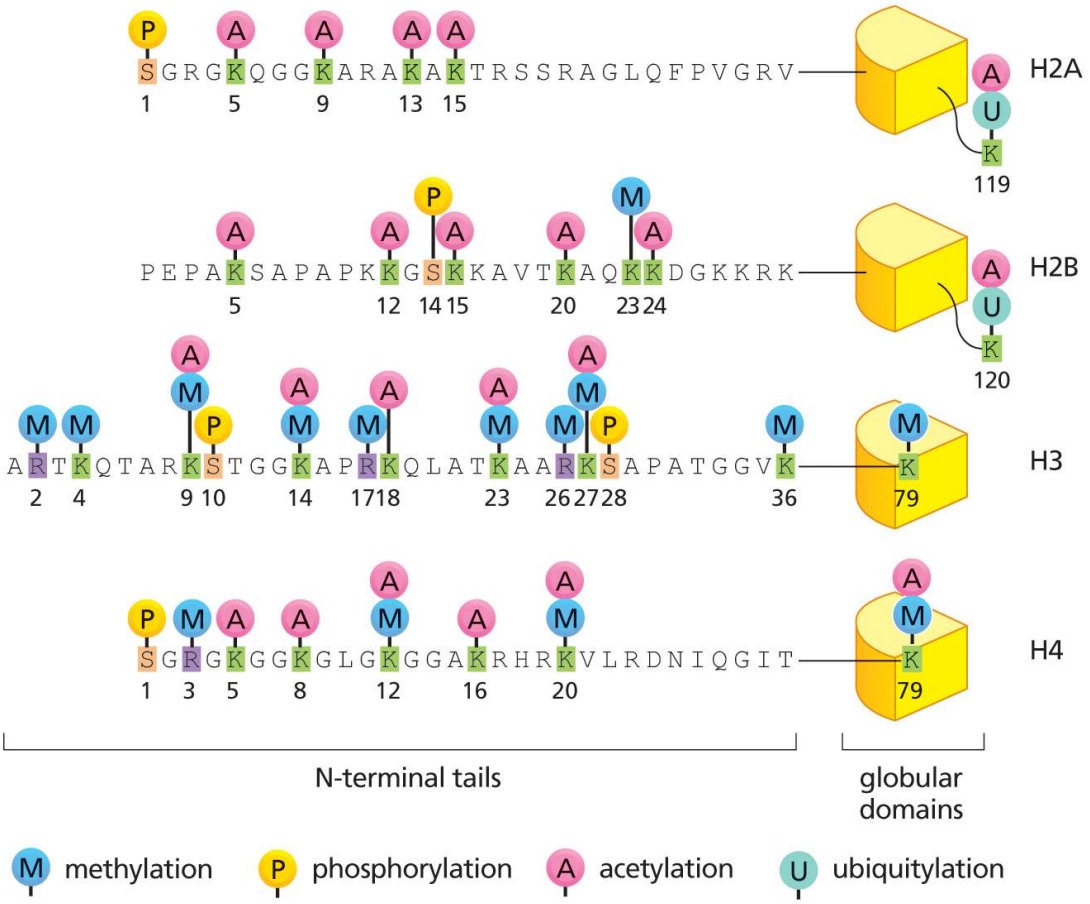
Figure 1.15 also implies that both TFs and RNA polymerase interact only with DNA. In fact, in eukaryotic cells, DNA is packaged in a complex mixture of proteins that, together with the DNA, form the chromatin (**Figure 1.16**). The chromatin proteins are responsible for controlling the interactions of TFs and RNA polymerases with DNA and therefore play critical roles in governing gene expression. The core of chromatin is formed by DNA bound to nucleosomes, the latter being octamers consisting of two copies of each of four standard histone species (H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) with a fifth histone species—H1—bound to some but not all nucleosome octamers. This basic

organization of chromatin structure, which resembles beads on a string, is found throughout the chromosomes. Altogether, about 30 million nucleosomes package the genomic DNA in the nucleus of each human cell.



In a schematic diagram, a red coil is wrapped around a short yellow cylinder with long, eight hairlike projections labeled H3 tail, H4 tail, H2A tail and H2E tail. Each projection is attached to an octant of the cylinder. The same structure is also shown, more realistically, as a space-filling molecular model. Finally, a schematic diagram shows three such structures locked together in a row.

(A)



The detailed structure of each type of N-terminal histone tail. The structure of the H2A tail is S G R G K Q G G K A R A K A K T R S S R A G L Q F P V G R V. The S in position 1 has an attached phosphate group. The kays in positions 5, 9, 13 and 15 have attached acetyl groups. Also, within the main body a K in position 119 has an attached ubiquitil group, which in turn has an attached acetyl group. The structure of the H2B tail is P E P A K S A P A P K K G S K K A V T K A Q K K D G K K R K. The kays in positions 5, 12, 15, 20 and 24 have attached acetyl groups. The S in position 14 has an attached phosphate group. The K in position 24 has an attached methyl group. Also, within the main body a K in position 120 has an attached ubiquitil group, which in turn has an attached acetyl group. The structure of the H3 tail is A R T K Q T A R K S T G G K A P R K Q L A T K A A R K S A P A T G G V K. The ars in positions 2, 17 and 26 and the kays in positions 4, 36, and also 79 within the main body all have attached methyl groups. The esses in positions 10 and 28 have attached phosphate groups. The kays in positions 9, 14, 23 and 27 each have an attached methyl group, which in turn has an attached acetyl group. The structure of the H4 tail is S G R G K G G K G L G K G G A K R H R K V L R D N I Q G I T. The kays in positions 5, 8, and 16 have attached acetyl groups. The S in position 1 has an attached phosphate group. The R in

position 3 has an attached methyl group. The kays in positions 12, 20, and also 79 within the main body each have an attached methyl group, which in turn has an attached acetyl group.
(B)

Figure 1.16 Organization of chromatin structure Examination of chromatin prepared in the proper way reveals that it appears like beads on a string (*not shown*). We now understand this structure in molecular detail. (A) The DNA double-helix (*red*) is wrapped ∼1.67 times around each nucleosome, which consists of a core (*yellow*) formed as an octamer of four different histone molecules, each present in two copies (*left*); the N-terminal tail of each of the histones protrudes from the core nucleosome. X-ray crystallography has revealed (*middle*) that the core of the nucleosome (*yellow*) is disc-shaped; the N-terminal histone tails are not clearly revealed in this space-filling molecular model. The N-terminal tails of the histones (*right, yellow*) regulate the degree of compaction of chromatin, in part through their role in mediating interactions between nucleosomes bound along the DNA. (B) Each of these N-terminal histone tails can be modified by the covalent attachment of a variety of chemical groups, most commonly methyl, acetyl, phosphate, and ubiquitin groups. These post-translational modifications (PTMs) are attached by histone "writers," enzymes that alter the structure and the function of the chromatin proteins and determine whether or not a given segment of chromatin will be transcribed or not. (A, Adapted from Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015. PDB code: 1KX5. B, from H. Santos-Rosa and C. Caldas, *Eur. J. Cancer* 41:2381–2402, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

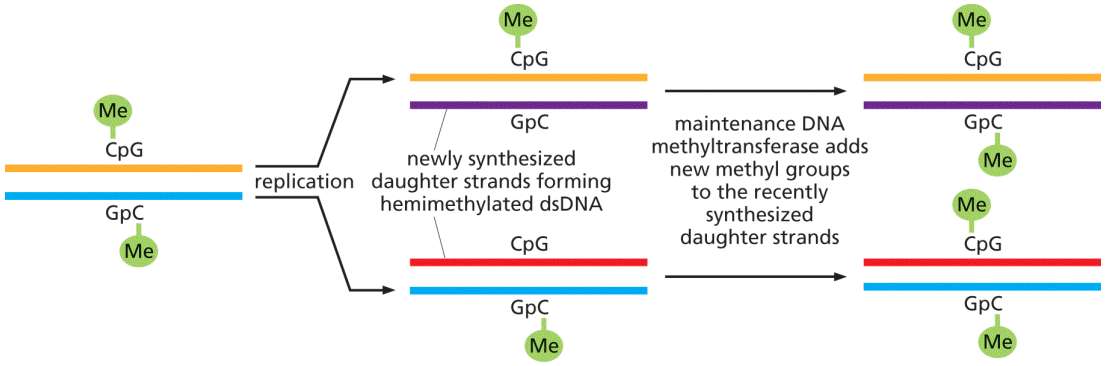
The globular core of the nucleosome represents the basic scaffold of chromatin that is modified in two ways. First, some of the standard histones (sometimes termed canonical histones), such as histones H2A and H3, may be replaced in a minority of nucleosomes by variant forms that are specified by genes distinct from those encoding the standard histones. Indeed, there are several dozen variant histones scattered here and there throughout the chromatin; the precise contributions of most of these to the regulation of chromatin structure and function remain poorly understood. One exception to this rule is the much-studied H2AX, which represents 10–15% of the H2A molecules in the nucleosomes. As discussed in Chapter 12, the phosphorylation of H2AX occurs in the nucleosomes that flank sites of double-strand DNA breaks, facilitating subsequent DNA repair. Yet another variant of histone H2A, termed H2A.Z, operates specifically to activate genes encoding epithelial functions and to repress those specifying mesenchymal functions; the resulting shifts in transcription are responsible for the programming of malignant cell traits that we will encounter in detail in Chapter 14.

Second, chromatin structure and transcription are strongly affected by covalent modifications of the standard four histones that occur after these histones assemble into nucleosomes. Most of these modifications affect lysine and arginine residues in the N-terminal tails of the core histones (see Figure 1.16B), which extend outward from the globular core of each nucleosome. Included here are modifications such as methylation, acetylation, phosphorylation, and ubiquitylation; other, less common modifications have also been observed, including biotinylation and sumoylation. A minority of this bewildering array of modifications have been associated with specific cell-biological programs, such as meiosis, apoptosis, and X-chromosome inactivation. During the cell growth-and-division cycle, one type of histone phosphorylation is associated with the condensation of chromatin that occurs during mitosis and the related global shutdown of gene expression. At other times in the cell cycle, acetylation of core histones is generally associated with active gene expression, while methylation is generally correlated with gene repression. Certain histone-modifying enzymes are specialized to elicit specific phenotypic changes in cells, doing so by altering transcriptional programs in ways that favor cancer cell growth and survival and, in turn, the outgrowth of tumors. [Recent measurements have suggested that various combinations of post-translational modifications (PTMs) generate as many as 1000 distinct isoforms of the H3 proteins present within individual human cells.]

Decades of research have revealed that the phenotypes and thus transcriptional programs of cells are transmitted stably over dozens, even hundreds of successive cycles of cell growth and division. For example, the descendants of a fibroblast are highly likely to preserve and exhibit a fibroblastic phenotype. This implies that specific states of histone modification are also transmitted faithfully from mother cells to their daughters in order to ensure the perpetuation of phenotypic states over many cell generations. However, the biochemical mechanisms responsible for the transmission of histone modification states are incompletely understood. This fidelity and associated heritability of cell-biological phenotypes is also critical to cancer biology, since many of the specific phenotypes of cancer cells are inherited from normal ancestral cells (often termed cells-of-origin) and resist disruption by the actions of activated oncogenes and inactivated tumor suppressor genes. Since the perpetuation of specific cellular phenotypes over multiple cell generations does not depend on specific changes in nucleotide sequence, this transmission of phenotype is considered a product of **epigenetic inheritance**.

Importantly, histone modifications, acting on their own, represent only one mechanism to ensure the stable intergenerational transmission of gene expression programs. In fact, a second key mechanism that enables epigenetic inheritance depends on covalent modification of DNA, specifically by DNA methyltransferases—enzymes that attach methyl groups covalently to cytosine bases of CpG dinucleotides in the DNA double helix. (The designation CpG indicates that the sequence is a cytidine positioned 5′ immediately before a guanosine.) The affected CpG dinucleotides are often located

near transcriptional promoters, and the resulting methylation generally causes repression of nearby genes. The biochemical mechanism of maintenance methylation is well understood: maintenance DNA methyltransferase enzymes recognize hemi-methylated segments of recently replicated DNA and proceed to methylate any unmethylated CpG dinucleotides that are complementary to already-methylated CpGs in the other DNA strand (**Figure 1.17**). Extensive CpG methylation in the vicinity of a gene promoter often results in its repression and, in turn, in the continuing repression of this gene in descendant cells. As might be concluded from the previous paragraph, the mechanisms of transcriptional repression operate through close coordination between DNA methylation and enzymes responsible for histone modification. The mechanisms of CpG methylation assume a major role in ensuring that certain tumor suppressor genes are transcriptionally repressed, as will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 7.



A three-stage diagram. In the first stage, a D N A double helix has a C p G dinucleotide on one side directly opposite a G p G on the other side. Both cees are methylated. After replication, each daughter D N A also has a C p G dinucleotide on one side directly opposite a G p G on the other side, but only the C in the strand that came from the parent is methylated. The newly synthesized daughter strands are hemimethylated d s D N A. Finally, maintenance D N A methyltransferase adds new methyl groups to the recently synthesized daughter strands. Now both daughter strands are replicas of the original parent strand, methylated on both cees of the dinucleotides.

Figure 1.17 Maintenance of DNA methylation following replication When a DNA double helix that is methylated (*green* Me groups, *left*) at CpG sites undergoes replication, the newly formed daughter helices will initially lack methyl groups attached to CpGs in the recently synthesized daughter strands (*purple*, *red*) and will therefore be *hemi-methylated*. Shortly after their synthesis, however, a maintenance DNA methyltransferase will detect the hemi-methylated DNA and attach methyl groups (*green*) to these CpGs, thereby regenerating the same configuration of methyl groups that existed in the parental helix prior to replication. CpG sites that are unmethylated in the parental helix (*not shown*) will

be ignored by the maintenance methyltransferase and will therefore remain so in the newly synthesized strands.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

transcription factor
: Protein that is involved in regulating the transcription of a gene, often by associating with specific sequences in the promoter region of the gene. *See also* **general transcription factor**.

sequence motif
: (1) Short oligonucleotide sequence in DNA that is characteristically associated with one or another biological function including recognition and binding by sequence-specific transcription factors. (2) Amino acid sequence that is characteristically associated with a structural or functional aspect of a protein.

pleiotropy
: Ability of a gene or protein to concomitantly evoke multiple distinct downstream responses within a cell or organism.

enhancer
: A relatively short sequence of nucleotides near or within a gene to which a transcription factor may bind in a sequence-specific manner and in turn influence the transcription of this gene. *See also* **super-enhancer, transcription factor**.

expression program
: The coordinated expression of a series of genes.

general transcription factor
: A protein that associates with sequence-specific transcription factors throughout the genome to enable transcription to occur; general transcription factors usually do not possess sequence-specific DNA-binding domains and are presumed to be responsible for regulating the expression of large numbers of genes, possibly in certain cases all of the actively transcribed genes in a cell. *See also* **transcription factor**.

super-enhancer
: A large cohort of transcription factors, each bound to its cognate enhancer sequence, that assemble in a physical complex and drive the high-level expression of a nearby gene. *See also* **enhancer**.

transcriptional pausing
: The process causing an RNA polymerase II molecule that has initiated transcription of a gene to halt at a downstream site relatively close to

the transcriptional start site; formation of a full-length transcript depends on release of the polymerase from the site of pausing.

chromatin
: Complex of DNA, RNA, and protein molecules that together constitute chromosomes.

canonical
: Referring to the most widely accepted representation of an entity or process, often the one that is initially discovered and characterized. *See also* **non-canonical**.

hemi-methylated
: Referring to a DNA molecule in which only one of the two complementary strands of a particular DNA segment is methylated, usually at the deoxycytidine moiety of a CpG dinucleotide sequence.

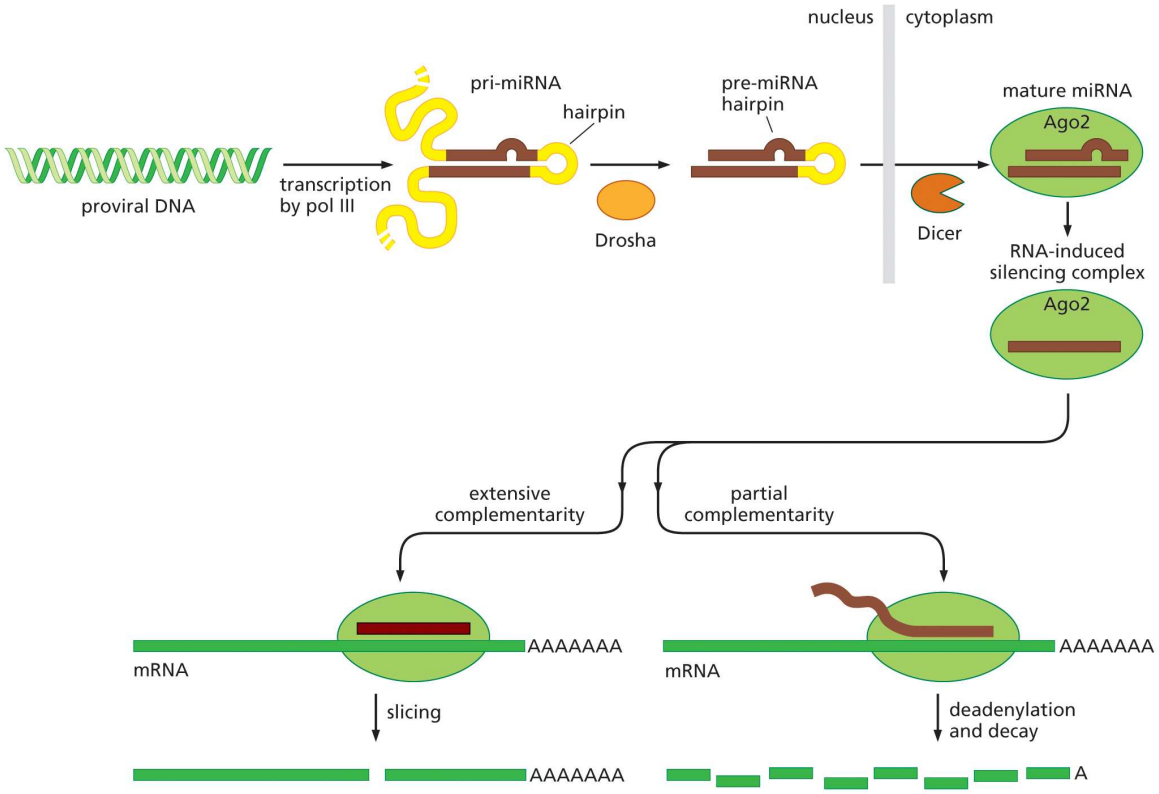
cell-of-origin
: The fully normal cell that serves as the ancestor of all the neoplastic cells within a tumor, i.e., their last common normal ancestor.

OceanofPDF.com

1.9 Unconventional RNA molecules also affect the expression of genes

The Central Dogma of molecular biology, developed in the decade after the 1953 discovery of the DNA double helix, proposed that information flows in cells from DNA via mRNA to proteins. In addition, non-informational RNA molecules—ribosomal and transfer RNAs—were implicated as components of the translational machinery, and small nuclear RNAs were found to play key roles in the splicing and maturation of pre-mRNAs. In the 1980s, the view of RNA's functions was expanded through the discovery that certain RNA species can act as enzymes, thereby taking their place alongside proteins as catalysts of certain biochemical reactions.

The 1990s revealed an entirely new type of RNA molecule that functions to control either the levels of certain mRNAs in the cytoplasm, the efficiency of translating these mRNAs, or both. These microRNAs (miRNAs) are only ∼22 nucleotides long and are generated as cleavage products of far larger nuclear RNA precursors. As outlined in **Figure 1.18**, the post-transcriptional processing of a primary miRNA transcript results in the formation in the cytoplasm of a miRNA that is part of a RISC (RNA-induced silencing complex) nucleoprotein. This complex associates with a spectrum of mRNA targets that contain, usually in their untranslated region, a sequence that is partially or completely complementary to the miRNA in the complex. Such association can result in either the inhibition of translation of the mRNA or its degradation, or both.



A multi-stage diagram depicting Micro R N As and gene regulation. Within a cell nucleus, a section of proviral D N A double helix is transcribed by pol 3 to produce a primary micro R N A with a section that is folded into a hairpin shape. A Drosha protein enzyme complex excises this hairpin section and it becomes pre-micro R N A, which passes out of the nucleus into the cytoplasm. There, action by the Dicer enzyme generates a mature micro R N A bound to Argonaute, shown as a green capsule labeled Ago2. Discarding of one side of the hairpin produces an R N A-induced silencing complex. The process ends in one of two ways. In the case of extensive complementarity, the R N A-induced silencing complex makes occasional slices in m R N A. In the case of partial complementarity, the R N A-induced silencing complex chops the m R N A into many small segments. This outcome is labeled deadenylation and decay.

Figure 1.18 MicroRNAs and gene regulation A primary microRNA (pri-miRNA) is transcribed from a gene, and an enzyme complex involving the Drosha protein excises a small segment of the pri-miRNA that has formed a double-stranded RNA hairpin because of the self-complementarity of nucleotide sequences. The resulting pre-miRNA is exported to the cytoplasm, where it is further processed by the Dicer enzyme to generate a mature

miRNA of 21 to 25 nucleotides. The resulting double-stranded miRNA is then bound to Argonaute (Ago2), which discards one of the two strands to generate the nucleoprotein complex termed RISC (RNA-induced silencing complex) and associates with mRNAs in the cytoplasm with which it has either precise or partial sequence complementarity, resulting in either degradation of the mRNA or inhibition of its translation. Several dozen miRNAs have been found to regulate various steps of tumor formation, either favoring or blocking critical steps of this process. Mutations of the gene encoding the Dicer enzyme (as well as those encoding other proteins involved in miRNA processing) have been associated with cancer progression, and analyses of miRNA expression patterns, much like expression array analyses of mRNAs (see Figure 1.14), have proved useful in classifying various types of cancer. (Courtesy of P.A. Sharp and D. Bartel.)

More than 500 distinct miRNA species have been found and characterized in human cells. Although it remains unclear precisely how many of these miRNAs are actually involved in regulating the translation and stability of mRNAs, those that do affect mRNA function are thought to regulate expression of more than 60% of all genes in the human genome. Moreover, a single miRNA species can target and thus regulate the functioning of dozens of distinct mRNA species, enabling it to act pleiotropically on a variety of cellular processes.

The potential importance of miRNAs in regulating gene expression is suggested by one survey of mRNAs and corresponding proteins in a group of 76 lung cancers. Only about 20% of the genes studied showed a close correlation between mRNA expression and protein expression levels. Hence, in the remaining 80%, the rate of protein synthesis (which can be strongly influenced by miRNAs) and the post-translational lifetime of proteins strongly influenced actual protein levels. Since proteins, rather than mRNA, are responsible for creating cell phenotypes, this also reveals the limitations of interpreting mRNA levels as reliable indicators of gene activity.

Let-7, a miRNA expressed by the *C. elegans* worm, was one of the first characterized miRNAs. It was found to suppress expression of the *ras* gene in worms and later in mammals. As we will read later (Chapters 4 through 6), the Ras proteins play critical roles in the development of many types of common human cancers. Since this pioneering work, the overexpression or loss of more than a dozen miRNA species has been associated with the formation of a variety of human cancers and the acquisition by tumors of malignant traits. The list of

these miRNAs, which have garnered the term “oncoMiRs,” continues to lengthen. In addition, loss of the Dicer processing enzyme (see Figure 1.18) and of other miRNA-processing enzymes involved in creating mature miRNAs has been found to facilitate the formation of tumors in mice and humans, doing so through still-unknown mechanisms. Interestingly, inheritance of a variant of the *K-ras* gene, which causes a single nucleotide change in the 3′ untranslated region (3′ UTR) of its mRNA, prevents recognition by *Let-7* and is associated with higher levels of the growth-promoting K-Ras protein and as much as a twofold increased risk of certain forms of lung and ovarian cancers.

A decade after the discovery of microRNAs, yet another unusual class of RNAs appeared on the scene: a diverse assay of lncRNA molecules (long noncoding RNAs) were found in the nucleus and cytoplasm and were shown to be involved in still-poorly understood ways in regulating gene expression. The discovery of these molecules came from the realization that 4 to 9% of the human genome is transcribed into relatively long (>200-nucleotide) RNA molecules that have no identifiable protein-coding sequences and thus no readily ascertainable functions. Some lncRNAs are polyadenylated while others are not. The few lncRNAs that have been characterized seem to function by associating with proteins that are involved in one fashion or another in regulating transcription, often by serving as scaffolds to hold certain chromatin-modifying proteins together. There may be several thousand distinct lncRNA species encoded by the human genome, and they are increasingly viewed as key molecular components of the cell’s regulatory machinery.

The role of lncRNAs in cancer development is only beginning to be uncovered. For example, elevated expression of the *HOTAIR* lncRNA has been found to be correlated with metastatic behavior of human breast and colorectal carcinomas. More important, forced expression of *HOTAIR* in carcinoma cells causes localization of a transcription-repressing protein complex, termed PRC2, to certain chromosomal sites, altered methylation of histone H3 lysine 27 (see Figure 1.16B), and increased cancer invasiveness and metastasis. Another lncRNA has been reported to be critically important in enabling melanoma cell invasiveness.

Yet another class of unconventional RNAs came into clear view in the decade after 2010: small circular RNAs (circRNA) that are created as side products of splicing in the nucleus. While more than 10,000 of these have been identified, most may be incidental by-products of splicing, with only a tiny subset playing validated functional roles. One prominent example here is ciRS-7, which contains

∼70 copies of a sequence that enables it to act as a sponge to attract and bind molecules of miR-7, thereby diverting the latter from its usual mRNA targets. miR-7, in turn, is an important tumor-suppressing microRNA for reasons described above.

The actions of miRNAs and lncRNAs provide a glimpse of the complexity of gene expression and its regulation in mammalian cells. Thus, after the transcription of a gene is initiated, a number of mechanisms may then intervene to control the accumulation of its ultimate product—a protein that does the actual work of the gene. Among these mechanisms are (1) promoter-proximal pausing; (2) post-transcriptional processing of pre-mRNA transcripts, including alternative splicing patterns; (3) stabilization or degradation in the cytoplasm of the mRNA product; (4) regulation of mRNA translation; and (5) post-translational modification, stabilization, or degradation of the protein product. These mechanisms reinforce the notion, cited above, that the rate of transcription of a gene often provides little insight into the levels of its protein product within a cell. Hence, as we will see, distinct patterns of mRNA expression may help us to distinguish various neoplastic cells from one another but, on their own, tell us rather little about how these cells are likely to behave.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

microRNA

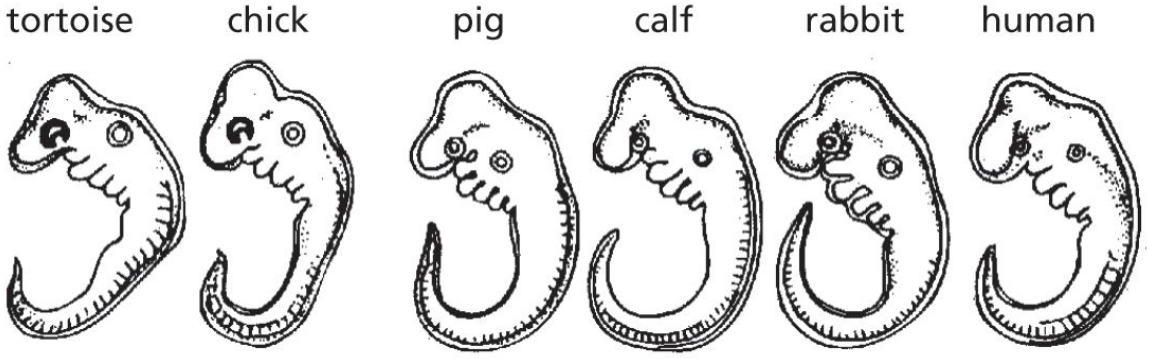
: Endogenously synthesized RNA transcribed by RNA polymerase II and processed into 21- to 23-nt-long ssRNA that interferes with translation of an mRNA or causes its degradation, depending on the degree of complementarity with the mRNA.

OceanofPDF.com

1.10 Metazoa are formed from components conserved over vast evolutionary time periods

The following descriptions of cell biology, genetics, and evolution are informed in part by our knowledge of the history of life on Earth. Metazoa probably arose only once during the evolution of life on this planet, likely more than 650 million years ago. Once the principal mechanisms governing their genetics, biochemistry, and embryonic development were developed, these mechanisms remained largely unchanged in the descendant organisms up to the present (see Figure 1.6). This sharing of conserved traits among various animal phyla and orders has profound consequences for cancer research, since many lessons learned from the study of more primitive but genetically tractable organisms, such as flies and worms, have proven to be directly transferable to our understanding of how mammalian tissues, including those of humans, develop and function.

A survey of the diverse organisms grouped within the mammalian class reveals that the differences in biochemistry and cell biology are minimal (**Figure 1.19**). For this reason, throughout this book we will move effortlessly back and forth between mouse biology and human biology, treating them as if they are essentially identical. On occasion, where species-specific differences are important, these will be pointed out.



Drawings of the embryos of a tortoise, a chick, a pig, a calf, a rabbit, and a human. They all look very similar: a lumpy head, a series of folds that look

like the beginnings of a ribcage, and a long, tail-like projection, curled forward like a fishhook, that will develop into the spine.

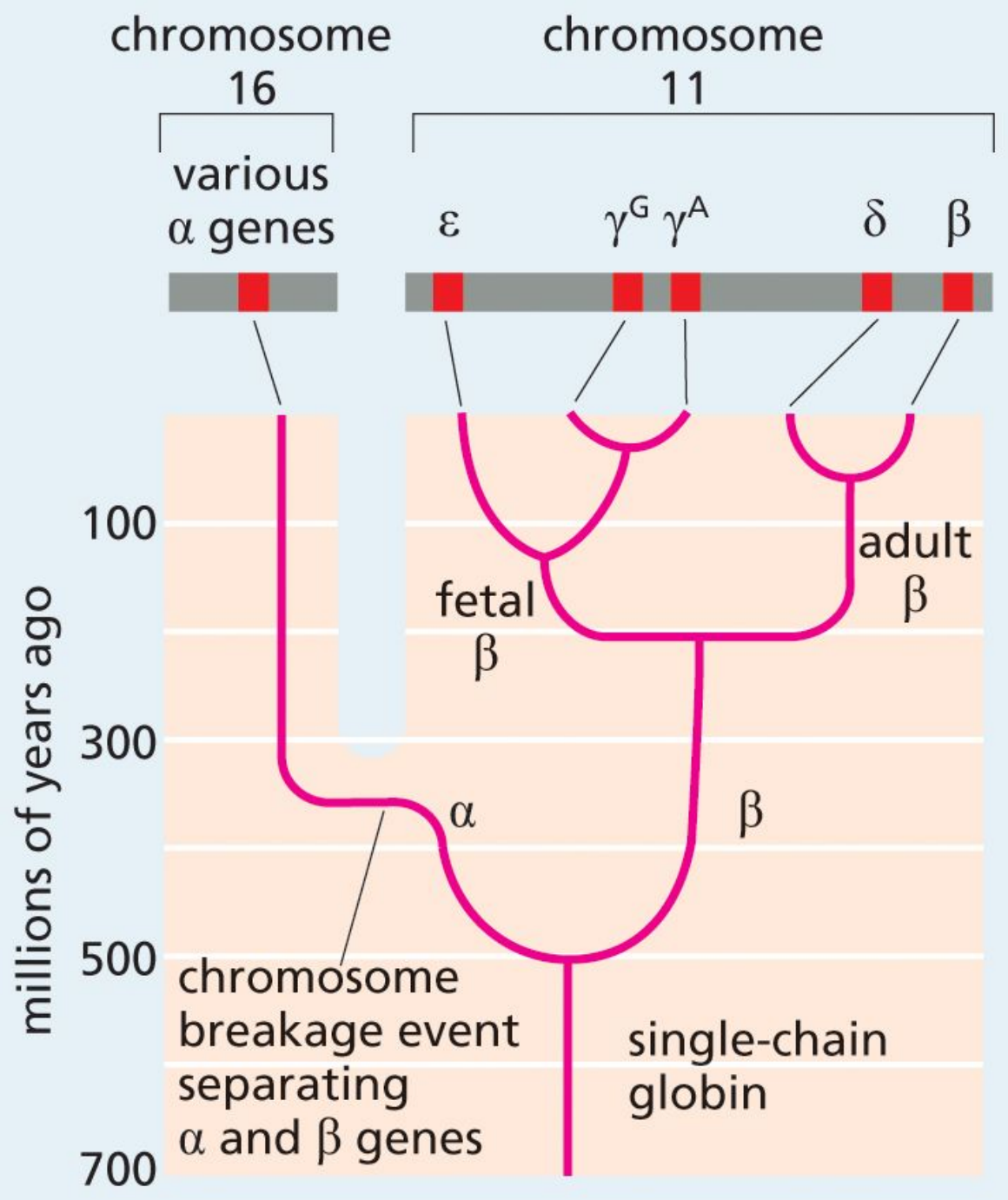
Figure 1.19 Visual evidence of the conservation of vertebrate biological traits A stunning visual demonstration that contemporary metazoa develop through embryonic pathways that have changed little since mammals and reptiles diverged from one another 200+ million years ago comes from an examination of mammalian embryos and one reptile—a tortoise. These morphological similarities do not begin to reveal the underlying biochemical pathways of cells and organisms that are equally well conserved. These 1874 drawings have been criticized for oversimplifying the similarities between these embryos. (In G.J. Romanes, Darwin and after Darwin, London, Vol. 1, 1892, adapted in turn from Haeckel, E., Anthropogenie; oder, Entwickelungsgeschichte des menschen. Keimes- und stammesgeschichte.)

The complex signaling circuits operating within cells seem to be organized in virtually identical fashion in all types of mammals. Even more stunning is the interchangeability of the component parts. It is rare that a human protein cannot function in place of its counterpart *orthologous* protein (**Sidebar 1.5**) in mouse cells. In the case of many types of proteins, this conservation of both function and structure is so profound that proteins can be swapped between organisms that are separated by far greater evolutionary distances. A striking example, noted earlier (see Figure 1.6), is provided by the gene and thus the protein that specifies eye formation in mammals and in flies. Extending even further back in our evolutionary history are the histones and the mechanisms of chromatin remodeling discussed earlier. In fact, the counterparts of many molecules and biochemical mechanisms that operate in mammalian cells are already apparent in protozoa.

Sidebar 1.5 Orthologs and homologs

All higher vertebrates (birds and mammals) seem to have comparable numbers of protein-encoding genes—in the range of 20,000. Moreover, almost every gene present in the bird genome seems to have a closely related counterpart in the human genome. The correspondence between mouse and human genes is even stronger, given the closer evolutionary relatedness of these two mammalian species.

Within the genome of any single species, there are genes that are clearly related to one another in their information content and in the related structures of the proteins they specify. Such genes form a gene family. For example, the group of genes in the human genome encoding globins constitutes such a group. It is clear that these related genes arose at some point in the evolutionary past through repeated cycles of the process in which an existing gene is duplicated followed by the progressive divergence of the two duplicated nucleotide sequences from one another (**Figure 1.20**). More directly related to cancer development are the more than 500 protein kinases encoded by the human genome. The kinase enzymes attach phosphate groups to their protein substrates, and almost all of these enzymes are specified by members of a single gene family that underwent hundreds of cycles of gene duplication and divergence during the course of metazoan evolution (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.7**).



A branching, bottom-to-top chronology of the evolutionary development of gene families. 700 million years ago, there was a single-chain globin gene. 500 million years ago, there was differentiation into alpha and beta versions. 350 million years ago, there was a chromosome breakage event separating the alpha and beta genes. The alpha branch produced human chromosome 16 with various versions of the alpha gene. The beta branch produced human chromosome 11. A branch 100 million years ago produced, on one side, fetal

beta with the epsilon, G gamma G and A gamma genes, and on the other side adult beta with the delta globin and beta globin genes.
Figure 1.20 Evolutionary development of gene families The evolution of organismic complexity has been enabled, in part, by the development of increasingly specialized proteins. New proteins are "invented" largely through a process of gene duplication followed by diverging evolution of the two resulting genes via incremental changes that ultimately lead to structurally and functionally distinct proteins. Repeated cycles of such gene duplications followed by divergence have led to the development of large numbers of multi-gene families. During vertebrate evolution, an ancestral globin gene, shown here as an example, which encoded the protein component of hemoglobin, was duplicated repeatedly, leading to the α and multiple distinct β-like globin genes in the modern mammalian genome that are present on two human chromosomes. Because these globins have distinct amino acid sequences, each can serve a specific physiologic function. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015.)

Genes that are related to one another within a single species' genome or genes that are related to one another in the genomes of two distinct species are said to be homologous to one another. Often the precise counterpart of a gene in a human can be found in the genome of another species. These two closely related genes are said to be orthologs of one another. Thus, the precise counterpart—the ortholog—of the c-*myc* gene in humans is the c-*myc* gene in chickens. To the extent that there are other *myc*-like genes harbored by the human genome (that is, N-*myc* and L-*myc*), they are members of the same gene family as c-*myc* but are not orthologs of one another or of the c-*myc* gene in chickens; instead, the c-*myc*, N-*myc*, and L-*myc* genes within a mammalian genome are termed paralogs due to their descent from a common ancestral gene.

Throughout this book we will often refer to genes without making reference to the species from which they were isolated. This is done consciously, since in the great majority of cases, the functioning of a mouse gene (and encoded protein) is indistinguishable from that of its human or chicken ortholog.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

gene family
: Group of genes all of which are descended evolutionarily from a common ancestral gene. The members of a gene family generally encode distinct, structurally related proteins.

kinase
: Enzyme that removes the γ phosphate from ATP and covalently attaches the phosphate moiety to substrate molecules, often but not exclusively proteins.

homologous
: (1) Referring to the relationship between a pair of chromosomes that carry the same set of genes within a diploid cell or organism. (2) Referring to genes or characteristics that are similar in related organisms because of shared descent from a common precursor. (3) Referring to two nucleic acids having similar or closely related nucleotide sequences. *See also* **analogous**.

ortholog
: (*also* **orthologue**) A gene in one species that is the closest relative of a gene in another species, with the two genes arising from a common ancestral gene in a common ancestral species; usually orthologs represent direct counterparts of one another in the genomes of two species, often retaining very similar functions. *See also* **homolog**, **paralog**.

paralog
: (*also* **paralogue**) A gene or protein that is related to another gene or protein through evolution from a common ancestral precursor; paralogs usually arise via gene duplication followed by sequence divergence of the two resulting genes, often with the development of two distinct functions, with both resulting genes continuing to be present in the genome of a descendant organism. *See also* **homolog, ortholog**.

OceanofPDF.com

1.11 Gene cloning techniques revolutionized the study of normal and malignant cells

Until the mid-1970s, the molecular analysis of mammalian genes was confined largely to the genomes of DNA tumor viruses, indeed the viruses described later in Chapter 3. These viruses have relatively simple genomes that accumulate to a high copy number (that is, number of molecules) per cell. This made it possible for biologists to readily purify and study the detailed structure and functioning of viral genes that operate much like the genes of the host cells in which these viruses multiplied. In contrast, molecular analysis of cellular genes was essentially impossible, since there are so many of them (tens of thousands per haploid genome) and they are embedded in a genome of daunting complexity (~3.2 billion base pairs of DNA per haploid cellular genome).

All this changed with the advent of gene cloning (**Supplementary Sidebar 1.4**). Thereafter, cellular genomes could be fragmented and used to create the collections of DNA fragments known as genomic libraries. Various DNA hybridization techniques could then be used to identify the genomic fragments within these libraries that were of special interest to the experimenter, in particular the DNA fragment that carried part or all of a gene under study. The retrieval of such a fragment from the library and the amplification of this retrieved fragment into millions of identical copies yielded a purified, cloned fragment of DNA and thus a cloned gene. Yet other techniques were used to generate DNA copies of the mRNAs that are synthesized in the nucleus and exported to the cytoplasm, where they serve as the templates for protein synthesis. Discovery of the enzyme reverse transcriptase (RT; see Figure 3.12) was of central importance here. Use of this enzyme made it possible to synthesize *in vitro* (that is, in the test tube) complementary DNA copies of mRNA molecules. These DNA molecules, termed cDNAs, carry the sequence information that is present in an mRNA molecule after the process of splicing has removed all introns. While we

will refer frequently throughout this book to DNA clones of the genomic (that is, chromosomal) versions of genes and to cDNAs generated from the mRNA transcripts of such genes, space limitations preclude any detailed descriptions of the cloning procedures *per se*. With segments of cloned gene segments in hand, cancer biologists could begin to suppress or eliminate the function of specific targeted genes through several alternative experimental strategies (**Supplementary Sidebar 1.5**).

For cancer researchers, gene cloning arrived just at the right time. As we will see in the next chapters, research in the 1970s diminished the candidacy of tumor viruses as the cause of most human cancers. As these viruses moved off center stage, cellular genes took their place as the most important agents responsible for the formation of human tumors. Study of these genes would have been impossible without the newly developed gene cloning technology, which became widely available in the late 1970s, just when it was needed by the community of scientists intent on finding the root causes of cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

library
: (1) A collection of DNA clones derived from a cell's or an organism's genome or from cDNAs prepared from its expressed mRNAs, in which each component clone ideally derives from a distinct gene in this genome. (2) A collection of chemical compounds such as those synthesized because of their possible therapeutic utility.

reverse transcriptase
: Enzyme capable of making a DNA complementary copy of an RNA molecule using the RNA molecule as template.

complementary DNA
: DNA strand that is produced on an RNA template by reverse transcriptase.

in vitro
: (1) Referring to biochemical processes, notably reactions, that occur outside of living cells, including in cell lysates or under conditions involving purified reactants. (2) Referring to the propagation of living cells in a vessel (e.g., a Petri dish) rather than in living tissues.

clone
: (adj., **clonal**) (1) Copy of a gene that has been isolated by recombinant DNA procedures and amplified into a large number of identical copies. (2) Population of cells, all of which descend from a common progenitor cell. (3) Offspring of a procedure of asexual reproduction in which the genome of a somatic diploid cell of an organism is used to form a cell that functions equivalently to a fertilized egg that may itself develop thereafter into an entire organism.

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Allis CD & Jenuwein T (2016) The molecular hallmarks of epigenetic control. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 17, 487–500.

Bannister AJ & Kouzarides T (2011) Regulation of chromatin by histone modifications. *Cell Res.* 21, 381–395.

Bartel DP (2018) Metazoan microRNAs. *Cell* 173, 20–51.

Bartonicek N, Maag JLV & Dinger ME (2016) Long noncoding RNAs in cancer: mechanisms of action and technological advancements. *Mol. Cancer* 15, 43–52.

Eifler K & Vertegaal ACO (2015) SUMOylation-mediated regulation of cell cycle progression and cancer. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 40, 779–793.

Freeley KP & Edmonds MD (2018) Hiding in plain sight: rediscovering the importance of noncoding RNA in human malignancy. *Cancer Res.* 78, 2149–2158.

Hnisz D, Day DS & Young RA (2016) Insulated neighborhoods: structural and functional units of mammalian gene control. *Cell* 167, 1188–1200.

Jones PA & Liang G (2009) Rethinking how DNA methylation patterns are maintained. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 10, 805–811.

Lambert SA, Jolma A, Campitelli LF et al. (2018) The human transcription factors. *Cell* 172, 650–665.

Martire S & Banaszynski LA (2020) The roles of histone variants in fine-tuning chromatin organization and structure. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 21, 522–541.

Nacev BA, Jones KB, Intlekofer AM et al. (2020) The epigenomics of sarcoma. *Nat. Rev. Cancer*. 20, 608–623.

Pennisi E (2012) ENCODE Project writes eulogy for junk DNA. *Science* 337, 1159–1161.

Rape M (2018) Ubiquitylation at the crossroads of development and disease. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 19, 59–70.

Rasmussen KD & Helin K (2016) Role of TET enzymes in DNA methylation, development and cancer. *Genes Dev.* 30, 733–750.

Salzman J (2016) Circular RNA expression: its potential regulation and function. *Trends Genet.* 32, 309–316.

Seeler JS & Dejean A (2017) SUMO and the robustness of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 17, 184–197.

Soshnev AA, Josefowicz SZ & Allis CD (2016) Greater than the sum of parts: complexity of the dynamic epigenome. *Mol. Cell* 62:681–694.

Tessarz P & Kouzarides T (2014) Histone core modifications regulating nucleosomal structure and dynamics. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 15, 703–708.

Venkatesh S & Workman JL (2015) Histone exchange, chromatin structure and the regulation of transcription. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 16, 178–189.

Zhang R, Xia LQ, Lu WW, Zhang J & Zhu JS (2016) LncRNAs and cancer. *Oncol. Lett.* 12, 1233–1239.

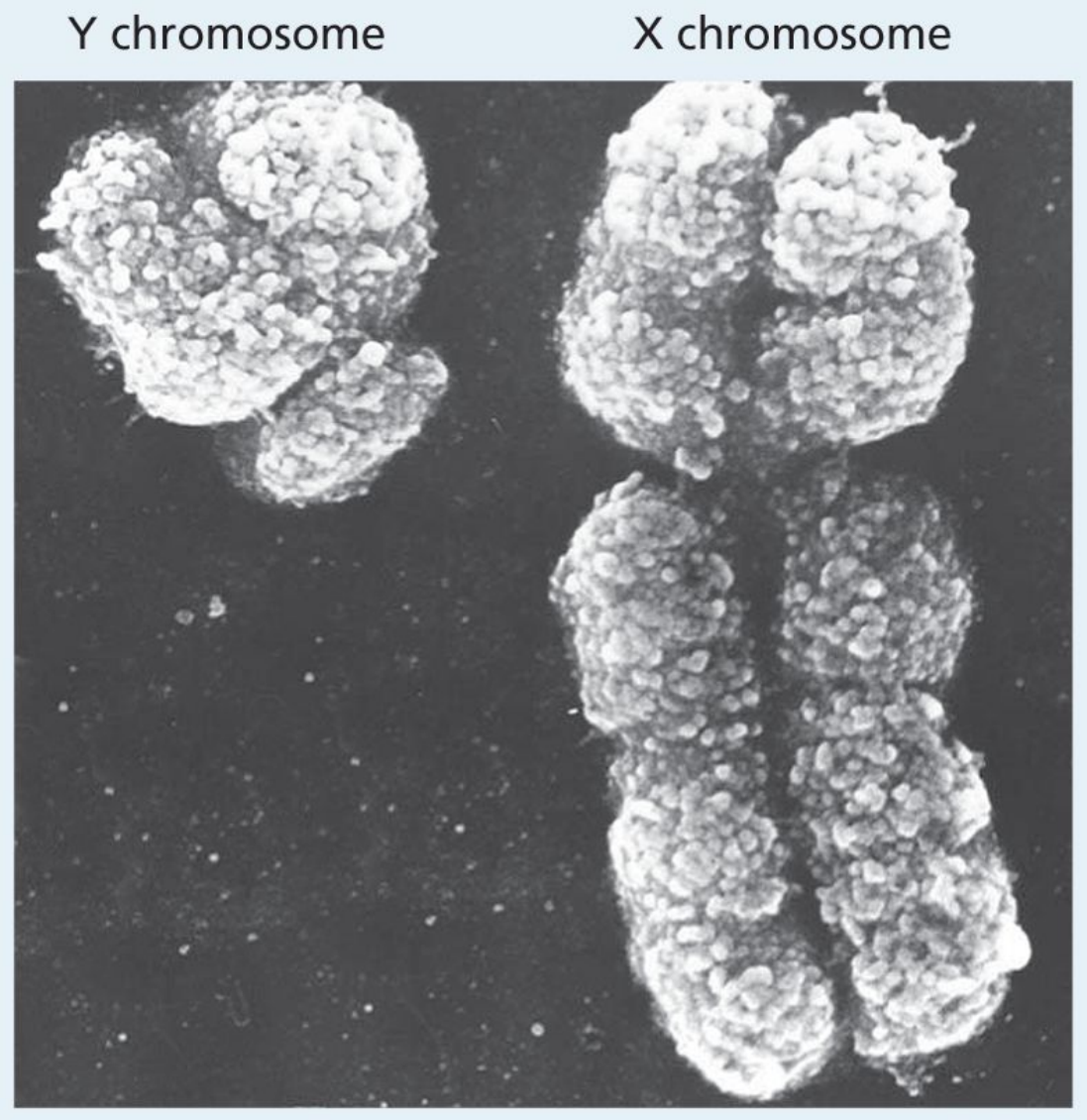
Zhou S, Treloard AE & Lupien M (2016) Emergence of the noncoding cancer genome: a target of genetic and epigenetic alterations. *Cancer Discov.* 6, 1215–1229.

OceanofPDF.com

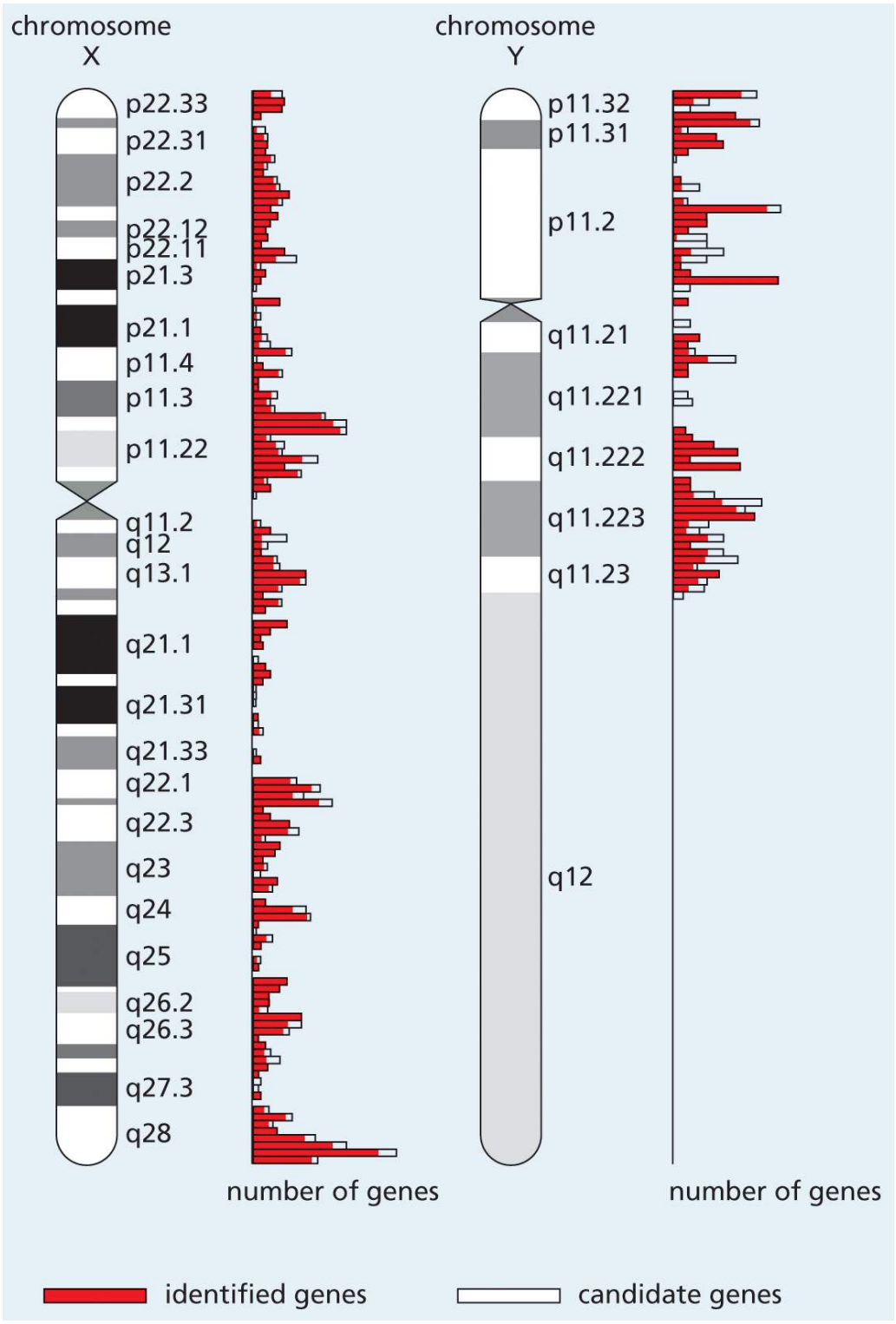
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 1.1 Each female cell can access information only from a single X chromosome

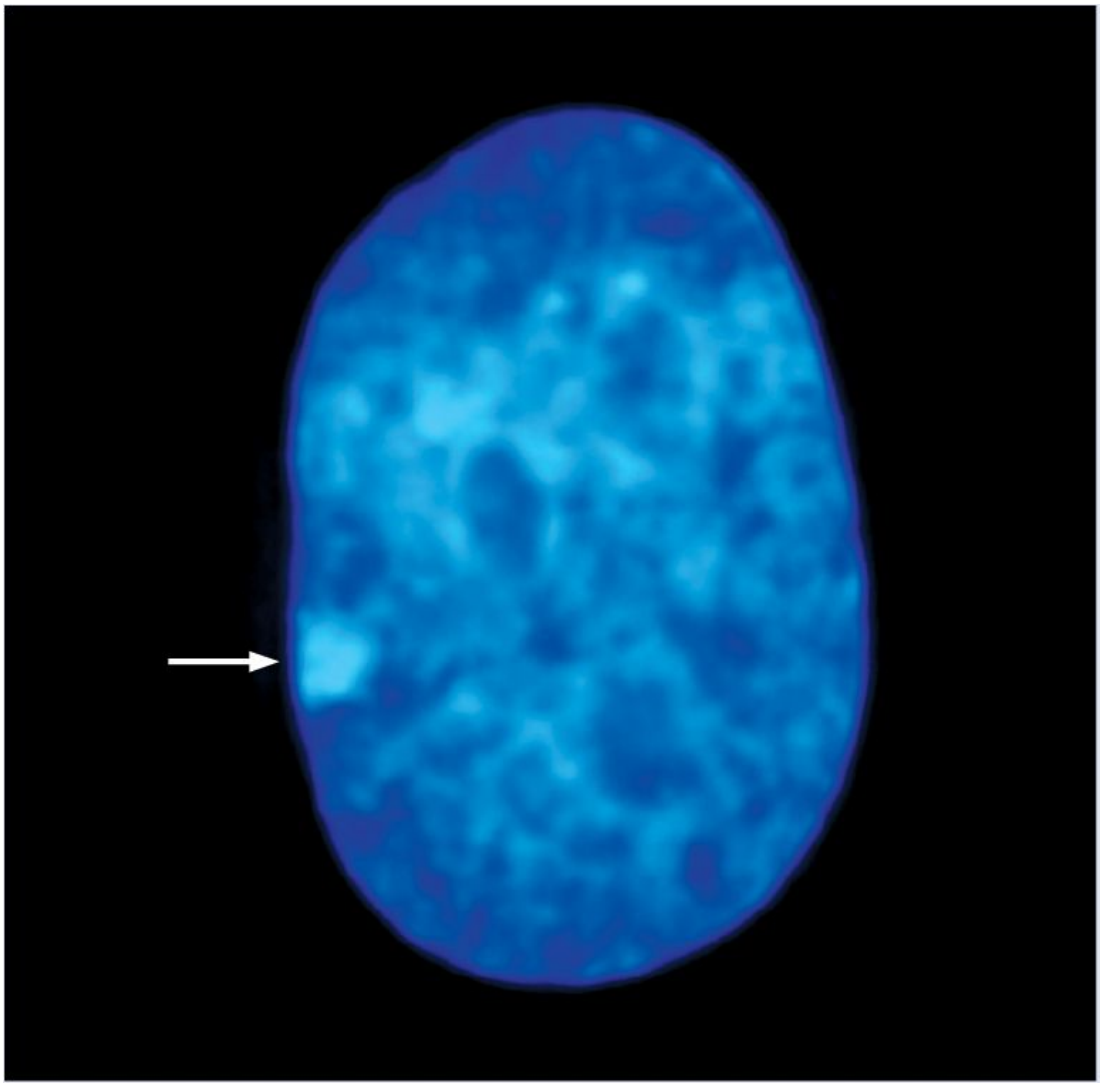
In the simplest depiction of sex chromosome behavior, each male cell relies on the information carried by its single X chromosome, while each female cell is able to consult both of its X chromosomes. Given the large number of genes present on the X chromosome, this disparity would create substantial physiologic differences between male and female cells, since female cells would, in general, express twice as much of each of the products specified by the genes on their X chromosomes. This problem is solved by the mechanism of X-inactivation. Early in embryogenesis, one of the two X chromosomes is randomly inactivated in each of the cells of a female embryo. This inactivation silences almost all of the genes on this chromosome and causes this chromosome to shrink into a small particle termed the Barr body (**Figure S1.1**). Subsequently, all descendants of that cell will inherit this pattern of chromosomal inactivation and will therefore continue to carry the same inactivated X chromosome. Accordingly, the female advantage of carrying redundant copies of X chromosome–associated genes is only a partial one.



(A)


chromosome
X
p22.33
p22.31
p22.2
p22.12
p22.11
p21.3
p21.1
p11.4
p11.3
p11.22
q11.2
q12
q13.1
q21.1
q21.31
q21.33
q22.1
q22.3
q23
q24
q25
q26.2
q26.3
q27.3
q28
number of genes
chromosome
Y
p11.32
p11.31
p11.2
q11.21
q11.221
q11.222
q11.223
q11.23
q12
number of genes
identified genes
candidate genes

(B)



(C)

Figure S1.1 Physical maps and condensation of human sex chromosomes (A) Shown is a scanning electron micrograph of human X and Y chromosomes. Like the 22 autosomes (non-sex chromosomes), they have been sequenced. (B) This has allowed the *cytologic* maps of these chromosomes. These maps can be generated by microscopically examining stained chromosomes harvested at the metaphase of mitosis, in which, as an example, heterochromatic regions of the chromosome stain darkly. The maps can then be matched with their DNA sequence. Note that the short arm of a human chromosome is the “p” arm, while the long arm is the “q” arm. Each chromosome has been divided into regions on the basis of the observed banding pattern, and distinct genes have been assigned on the basis of the sequence analyses (*histograms to right of each chromosome*). Identified genes are filled bars (*red*), while sequences that appear to encode still-to-be-identified genes are in open bars; in most chromosomal regions the latter

represent a small minority. The human Y chromosome is ∼57 megabases (Mb) long, compared with the X chromosome's ∼155 Mb. (C) One of the two X chromosomes in each cell of an early female embryo is randomly inactivated and remains inactivated in all lineal descendant cells as a Barr body. It is visible in the interphase nuclei of these cells, where it remains condensed and associated with the nuclear membrane (*white arrow*). (A, courtesy of Indigo® Instruments. B, Ensembl genome browser http://www.ensembl.org. C, from B.P. Chadwick and H.F. Willard, *Semin. Cell Dev. Biol.* 14:359–367, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

Supplementary Sidebar 1.2 Organismic cloning and the integrity of the somatic cell genome

A large number of growth-and division cycles intervene between the formation of the fertilized egg (that is, the zygote) and the formation of specific differentiated cells. These cycles, which may number in the many dozens, involve processes that may go awry, notably DNA replication and chromosome segregation. This provokes the question of the intactness of the genome of somatic cells; that is, How closely do they correspond in sequence and organization to the genome of their ancestral zygote? The efficiency of the complex apparatus that repairs DNA (see Chapter 12), the resulting suppression of somatic mutations, and the consequent integrity of the genomes of somatic cells were all illustrated dramatically in the much-celebrated case of the sheep Dolly. In experiments performed in Scotland in 1996, nuclei from cells taken from the breast tissue of Dolly's "mother" were removed and implanted in egg cells (oocytes) whose own nuclei had previously been eliminated. The resulting cells, containing donor nuclei and recipient egg cytoplasm, were then induced to proliferate and to form embryos. The fact that an essentially normal sheep (Dolly) was born many months later, having developed from one of these embryos, demonstrated that the genome in one of her mother's mammary gland cells carried no mutations that compromised normal embryologic development. The success of organismic cloning demonstrated directly that the somatic genome, as gauged through its ability to orchestrate proper organismic development, is largely if not entirely intact (**Figure S1.2**).

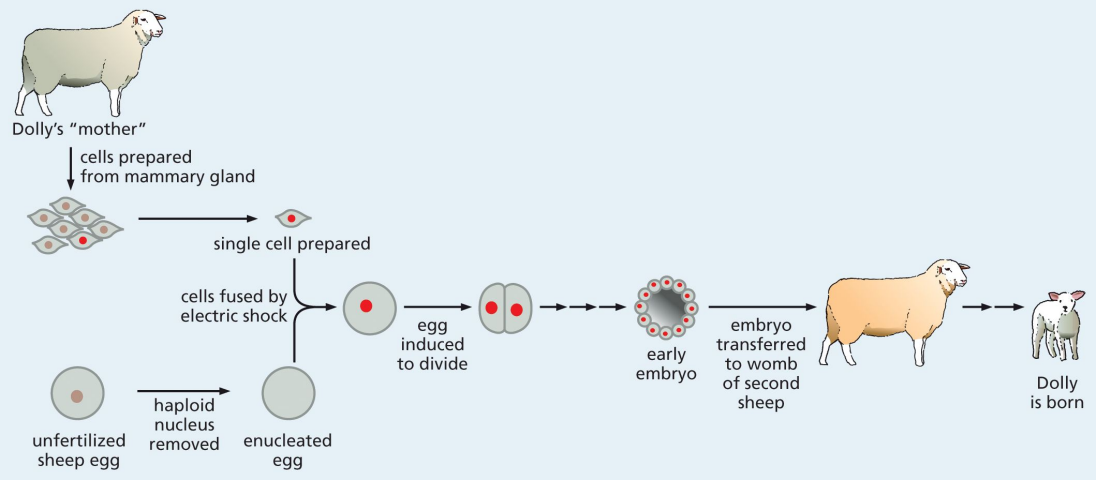


Figure S1.2 Reproductive cloning and genomic integrity In the first reported reproductive cloning procedure, the nucleus of an unfertilized egg was removed and the nucleus from a somatic cell—a mammary gland cell from Dolly's "mother"—was introduced via cell fusion into the enucleated egg. The resulting cell was diploid, having received its entire genetic complement from the mammary gland cell originating with Dolly's "mother." Being diploid, it was genetically equivalent to a fertilized egg. This reconstituted egg cell was induced to divide by chemical means and proceeded to generate an embryo that could then be implanted in the womb of a foster "pseudo-pregnant" ewe—a ewe whose physiologic state was comparable to that of a naturally pregnant ewe but had been induced in this case by hormonal treatment. This implanted embryo could then develop into a newborn, albeit at low efficiency. Successful generation of a healthy newborn led to several conclusions, the most immediate of which was that the nuclear chromosomal DNA originating in the mammary epithelial cells of Dolly's "mother" could be re-programmed, shedding its existing program of mammary gland differentiation and assuming the very different program of a recently fertilized egg; this re-programming clearly came from biochemical signals that were present in the cytoplasm of the enucleated oocyte into which the mammary gland nucleus had been introduced. More important for the present discussion, the birth of a relatively normal lamb indicated that the nucleus of the donor somatic cell prepared from Dolly's "mother's" mammary gland carried the genome of the species in an essentially intact, functional form. This donor mammary gland cell was formed after many successive cell divisions during the development of Dolly's "mother" from a natural fertilized egg. The ability of this cell's genome to generate Dolly indicated that these many successive cell divisions—those intervening between the fertilization of the egg that led to Dolly's mother and the formation of her mammary gland cell—did not affect its functional integrity.

Supplementary Sidebar 1.3 The size of the human essentialome

It is very unclear precisely how many genes and proteins are required to maintain human cell viability. Such critical genes have been considered as forming an "essentialome," for want of a better term. The numbers of genes required for viability are very different for an individual human cell being propagated in culture and for a comparable cell residing in a tissue. Moreover, some genes but not others must be present in two copies in order to ensure optimal functioning, since loss of only one copy will compromise phenotypic fitness—the phenomenon of haploinsufficiency. Given these uncertainties, there is little consensus at present about numbers: such essential genes have been found to range between 1000 and 4000, depending on the experimental conditions. (On the other hand, a set of as many as 10,000 genes may be expressed in virtually all tissues in the body—far more than experimental tests show to be necessary for cell viability.)

These numbers are of great interest to cancer biologists, since they dictate the outer boundaries of genetic variability that may be generated as cells undergo random somatic mutations including the losses of chromosomal segments of significant size. For example, the chromosomal region carrying the *RB1* tumor suppressor gene on Chromosome 13 (see Chapters 7 and 8) may be deleted homozygously in certain cancer cells (**Figure S1.3**). However, the ends of this deleted region and thus its overall size are likely to be limited by the locations to the left and right along Chromosome 13 of essential genes that cannot be discarded homozygously because their continued functions are critical to ongoing cell viability.

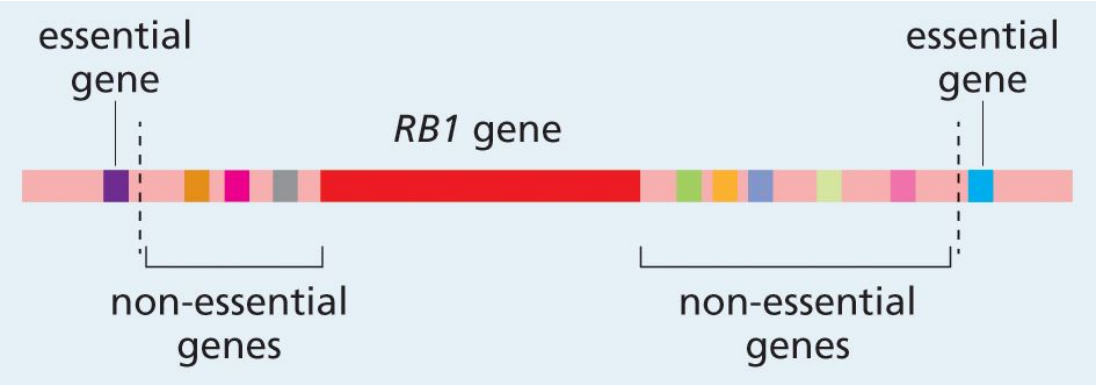


Figure S1.3 Loss of genomic regions during cancer formation As will be described in Chapter 7, tumor suppressor genes (TSGs) represent an important class of cellular proliferation–controlling genes that operate to constrain cell proliferation in various ways and are often shed during the formation of a variety of human tumor cells. Often both copies of a TSG gene, such as the *RB1* gene depicted here, are lost through interstitial deletions, leading to homozygous loss of the gene and often adjacent chromosomal regions (see Figure 1.9C). When

examining the genomes of a series of independently arising tumors, it becomes clear that the boundaries of the homozygously deleted flanking regions are found at random locations to the left and right of the *RB1* TSG—the only thing shared in common among the deletions mapped in different independently arising tumors being the loss of the TSG itself (a loss that confers proliferative advantage on a pre-neoplastic cell). In addition to homozygous deletions of the TSG itself, additional nearby cellular genes flanking the TSG on both sides are often lost homozygously, because their loss during tumor formation has no effect on cell viability and is therefore compatible with the subsequent outgrowth of robustly proliferating cancer cells. The outside boundaries of the chromosomal segment that can be deleted homozygously (*vertical dashed lines*) are defined by the locations along the chromosome of nearest genes to the left and the right of the TSG that are essential for continued cell viability, must therefore be retained in at least single copy number in a cancer cell, and therefore cannot be deleted homozygously. Accordingly, any pre-neoplastic cell that deletes an overly large chromosomal segment carrying this *RB1* gene (or entire chromosomal arm) homozygously will be lost from the population of cells that could serve as precursors of full-blown tumor cells.

Supplementary Sidebar 1.4 Gene cloning strategies

Gene cloning strategies first became practical in the late 1970s, and since that time a diverse array of technical strategies have been developed. **Figure S1.4** illustrates the logic of gene cloning that is common to many of these strategies.

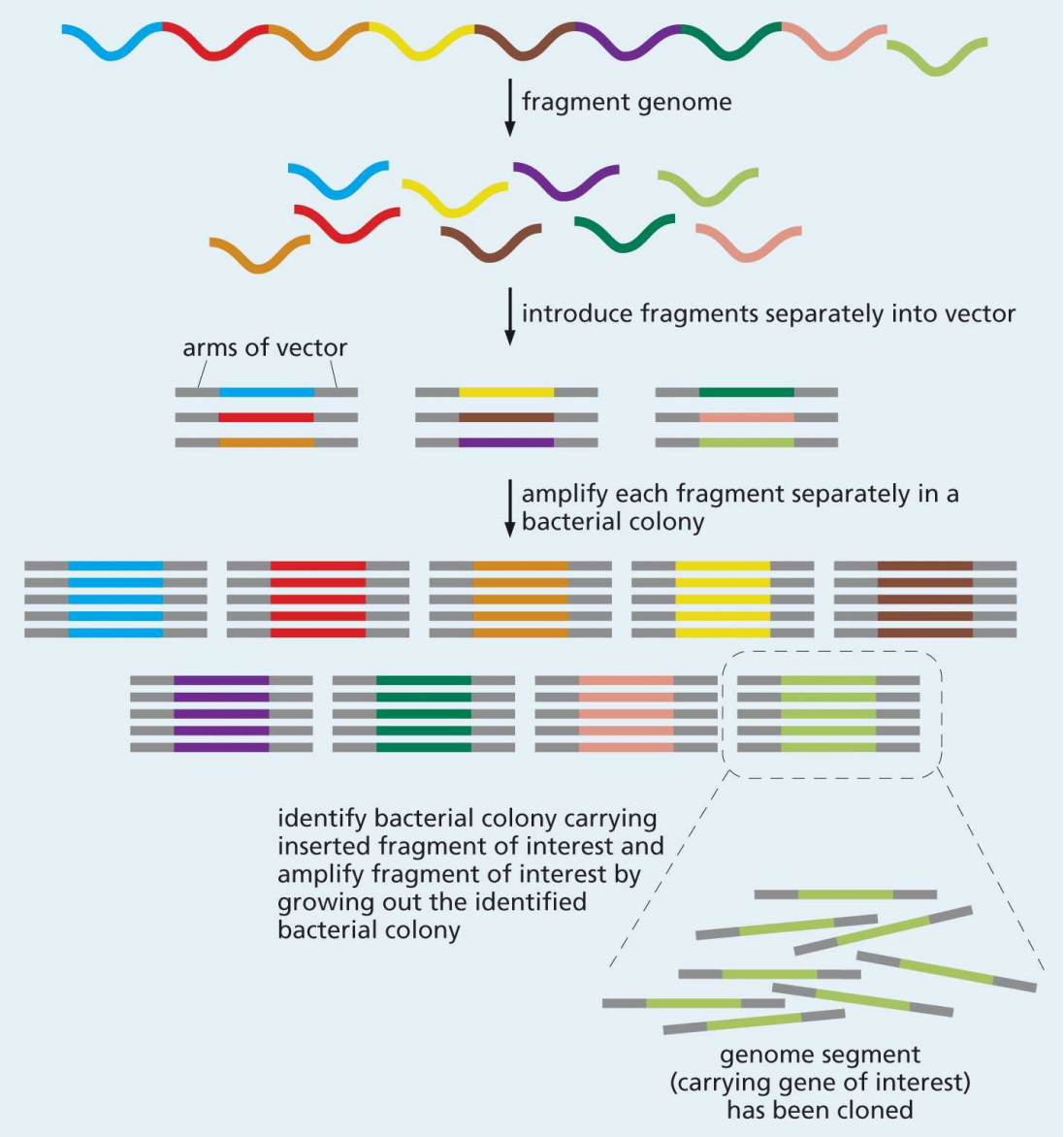
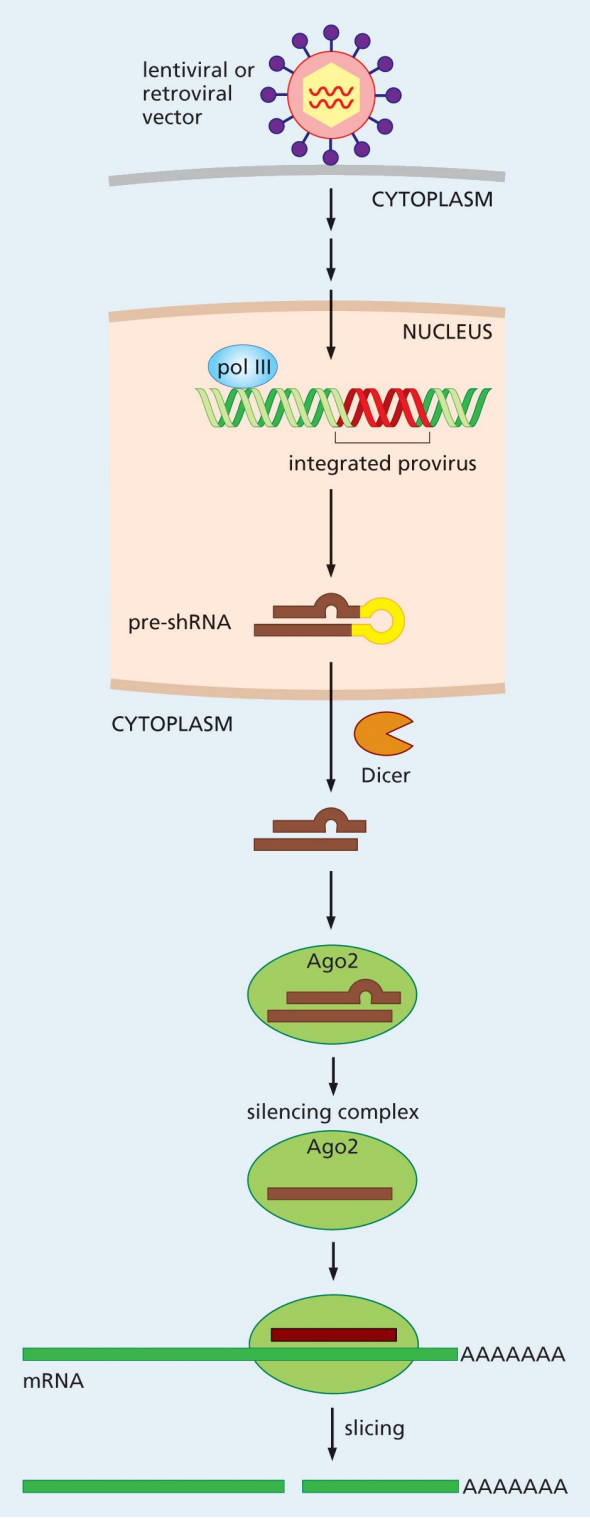


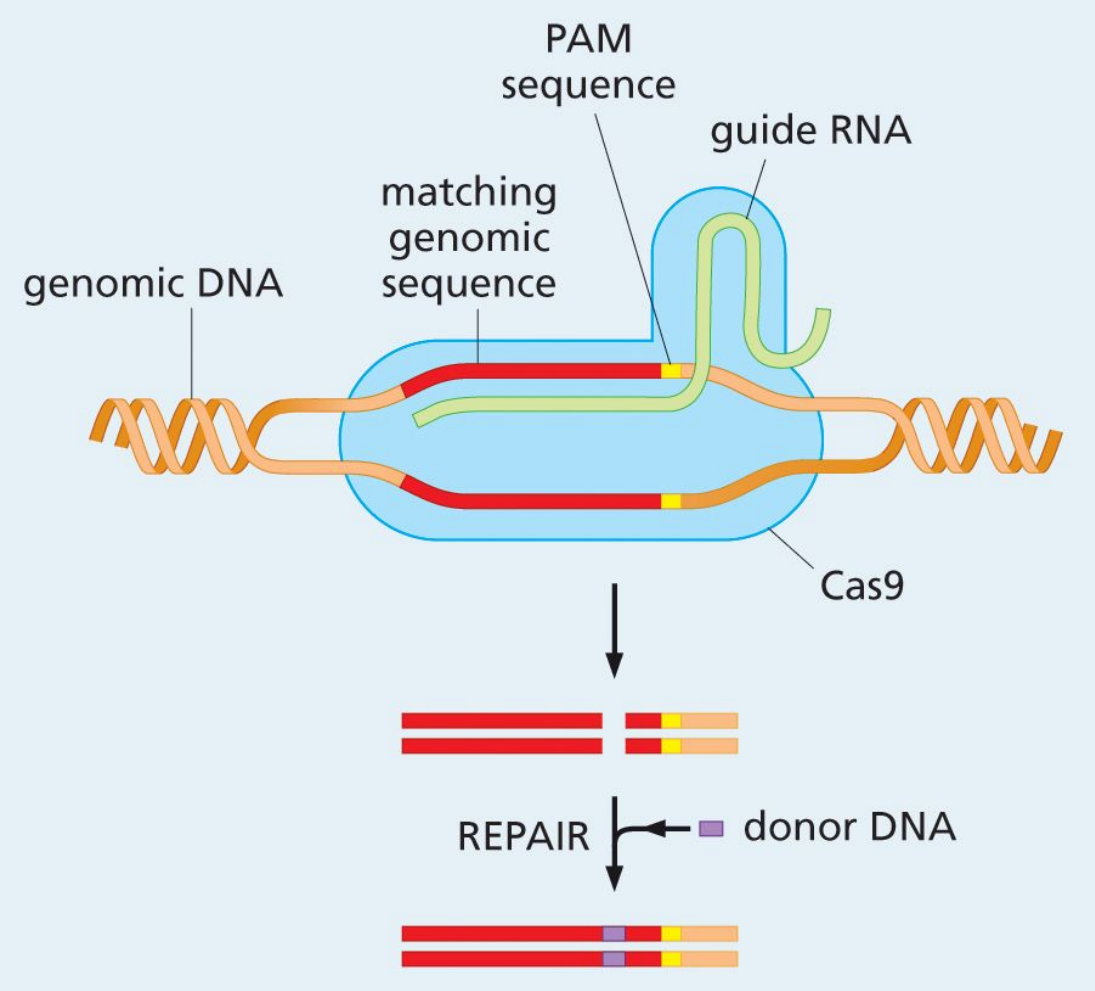
Figure S1.4 Molecular cloning of genes Many versions of the gene cloning procedure have been developed since this technology was first invented in the 1970s. Pictured is an outline of one version. The genome from an organism (e.g., human) is fragmented into relatively small segments, often several tens of kilobases long (*top*); each DNA segment is linked (i.e., experimentally recombined) to the DNA of a vector (*gray arms*), yielding a recombinant vector. Each recombinant vector is then inserted independently into a bacterium, which is expanded into a colony containing many thousands of bacteria. The bacterial colony bearing the vector with the gene of interest is identified and the vector is retrieved, yielding millions of copies of this genomic fragment (*bottom right*).

Supplementary Sidebar 1.5 Suppressing gene expression with shRNAs, siRNAs, and CRISPR/Cas9

The discovery of microRNAs (miRNAs), as described in Section 1.9, led to an understanding of the complex molecular machinery that allows their processing from primary transcripts in the nucleus and their dispatch into the cytoplasm, where they inhibit the functioning of thousands of cellular mRNA species. At the same time, these discoveries enabled the development of novel experimental strategies in which exogenous miRNAs could be introduced into cells through the use of viral vectors or transfection, whereupon these introduced RNAs exploit the cellular miRNA-processing machinery to produce mimics of endogenously synthesized miRNAs; the mimics then proceed to shut down the operations of targeted mRNA species, partly by blocking translation and partly by driving the degradation of these mRNA molecules (**Figure S1.5A**). This ability to shut down the expression of proteins of expressed genes within cells has become an invaluable tool for cancer researchers who wish to demonstrate the essential role that one or another protein plays in a cell-biological process under study. One often used procedure is often termed gene “knockdown.”


lentiviral or
retroviral
vector
CYTOPLASM
NUCLEUS
pol III
integrated provirus
pre-shRNA
CYTOPLASM
Dicer
Ago2
silencing complex
Ago2
AAAAAAA
mRNA
slicing
AAAAAAA

(A)



(B)

Figure S1.5 Strategies for reducing or eliminating the expression of a gene
Two major strategies have been employed over the past decade in order to shut down the expression of a gene. (A) The process of gene "knockdown" achieved via RNA interference (RNAi) operates normally in cells to produce microRNAs (miRNAs) that suppress mRNA function, as described in Section 1.9 and Figure 1.18. This process can be exploited experimentally to suppress targeted mRNAs. Two major strategies can be used. In the first, a viral vector (in this case derived either from a retrovirus genome or from the genome of a retrovirus-related lentivirus vector; see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.6**) is constructed that uses an RNA polymerase III promoter to drive expression of a transcript that serves as precursor of an shRNA; this hybrid gene is inserted via recombinant DNA procedures into the DNA proviral genome of the viral vector. The resulting pre-shRNA is processed by the Dicer enzyme into an siRNA of 19–21 nucleotides, which is reduced to a single-stranded RNA (ssRNA). The ssRNA associates with the Argonaut protein (Ago2) and other proteins to form a RISC (RNA-induced

silencing complex), which anneals to partially homologous target sequences that are usually located in the 3′ untranslated region (3′ UTR) of certain mRNAs. This results either in the cleavage of the mRNA or inhibition of its translation (see Figure 1.18), blocking in both cases expression of the mRNA and thus the gene encoding this mRNA. Because the retroviral or lentiviral provirus is integrated into the cell chromosome and is transmitted heritably to the progeny of an initially infected cell, the expression of a targeted mRNA can be suppressed stably over many subsequent cell generations. As an alternative strategy, an siRNA of a particular configuration can be chemically synthesized and transfected directly into a cell (*not shown*). While this is easier than the procedure described above, the targeted mRNA will be suppressed only transiently, since there is no mechanism to ensure the continued synthesis of the siRNA in the descendants of the initially transfected cell. (B) The more recent CRISPR/Cas9 strategy yields gene "knockout," in that the targeted gene is cleaved in a fashion that yields a dsDNA break and usually the total inactivation of gene function. Thus, the broken DNA may be repaired by cellular repair enzymes albeit in a fashion that does not restore the reading frame of the targeted gene, resulting in gene inactivation. Alternatively, a "donor DNA" chosen by an investigator may be inserted into the cleaved DNA in a fashion that also employs cellular repair enzymes (see Chapter 12). Because gene knockdown, as described above, usually results in incomplete suppression of gene function, the newer CRISPR/Cas9 knockout technology and variants of it have increasingly been employed by cancer researchers to eliminate gene function, as will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 7.

For example, knockdown of the expression of a certain pro-apoptotic protein may protect a cell from apoptosis, demonstrating the essential role that the protein plays in orchestrating apoptosis in such a cell. Similarly, knockdown of the expression of a growth factor receptor may render a cell unresponsive to that factor, demonstrating the receptor's key role in conferring such responsiveness.

While highly useful in principle, in practice the application of this technique has proven challenging in the case of certain genes being targeted for knockdown. Thus, a targeted mRNA may not respond significantly, for reasons that are unclear, necessitating the screening of multiple vectors, each targeting a distinct nucleotide segment in the 3′ untranslated region of an mRNA under study; in some cases, four, five, or even six alternative siRNAs (small interfering RNAs) or shRNAs (small hairpin RNAs) must be tested before an experimenter discovers one that can reduce protein expression by 90% or more.

Independent of these difficulties in achieving significant knockdown is the opposite problem: some siRNAs and shRNAs have been found to affect far more mRNAs than their intended target—the phenomenon of "off-target effects." Off-target effects often

make it impossible to draw rigorous conclusions from the results of these experiments because of the confounding effects on other mRNAs and proteins operating in unrelated signaling pathways.

The newer CRISPR/Cas9 technology usually enables the total elimination of a gene's function (Figure S1.5B).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

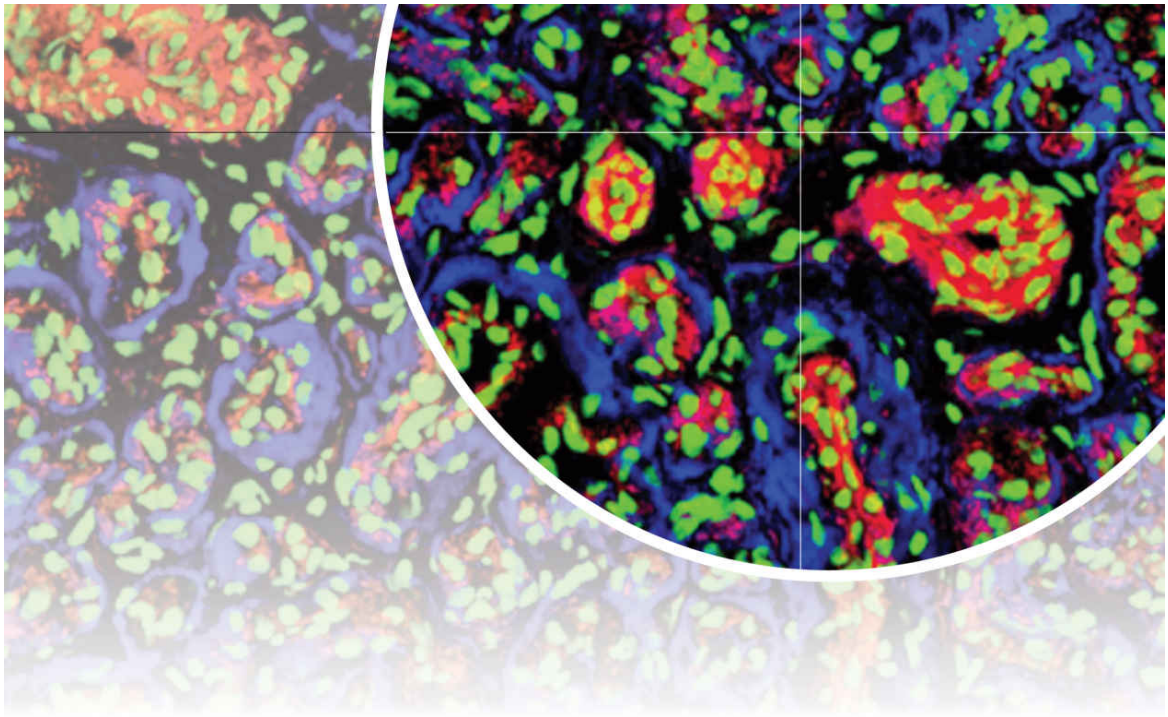
Barr body
: The condensed, inactive X chromosome found in each of the cells of females of placental mammals.

essentialome
: The collection of genes present in the genome of a cell or organism that is critical to its viability. *See also* **essential genes**.

haploinsufficiency
: Genetic condition in which the presence of only a single functional copy of a gene yields a mutant or partially mutant phenotype.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 2
The Nature of Cancer



A fluorescence microscopy image with blue, green, and red staining. The green spots are smaller and cover the intermixed red and blue streaks.

When I published the results of my experiments on the development of double-fertilized sea-urchin eggs in 1902, I added the suggestion that malignant tumors might be the result of a certain abnormal condition of the chromosomes, which may arise from multipolar mitosis. . . . So I have carried on for a long time the kind of experiments I suggested, which are so far without success, but my conviction remains unshaken.

Theodor Boveri, pathologist, 1914

Tumors destroy man in a unique and appalling way, as flesh of his own flesh which has somehow been rendered proliferative, rampant, predatory and ungovernable. They are the most concrete and formidable of human

> maladies, yet despite more than 70 years of experimental study they remain the least understood.
>
> Francis Peyton Rous, tumor virologist, Nobel lecture, 1966

The cellular organization of metazoan tissues has made possible the evolution of an extraordinary diversity of anatomical designs. Much of this plasticity in design can be traced to the fact that the building blocks of tissue and organ construction —individual cells—are endowed with great autonomy and versatility. Most types of cells in the metazoan body carry a complete organismic genome—far more information than any one of these cells will ever require. And many cells retain the ability to grow and divide long after organismic development has been completed. This retained ability to proliferate and to participate in tissue morphogenesis (the creation of shape) makes possible the maintenance of adult tissues throughout the life span of an organism. Such maintenance may involve the repair of wounds and the replacement of cells that have suffered attrition after extended periods of service.

At the same time, this versatility and autonomy pose a grave danger, in that individual cells within the organism may gain access to information in their genomes that is normally denied to them and assume roles that are inappropriate for normal tissue maintenance and function. Moreover, their genomic sequences are subject to corruption by various mechanisms that alter the structure and hence information content of the genome. The resulting mutated genes may divert cells into acquiring novel, often highly abnormal phenotypes. Such changes may be incompatible with the normally assigned roles of these cells in organismic structure and physiology. Among these inappropriate changes may be alterations in cellular proliferation programs, and these in turn can lead to the appearance of large populations of cells that no longer obey the rules governing normal tissue construction and maintenance.

When portrayed in this way, the renegade cells that form a tumor are the result of normal development gone awry. In spite of extraordinary safeguards taken by the organism to prevent their appearance, cancer cells somehow learn to thrive. Normal cells are carefully programmed to collaborate with one another in constructing the diverse tissues that make possible organismic survival. Cancer cells have a quite different and more focused agenda. They appear to be motivated by only one consideration: making more copies of themselves.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

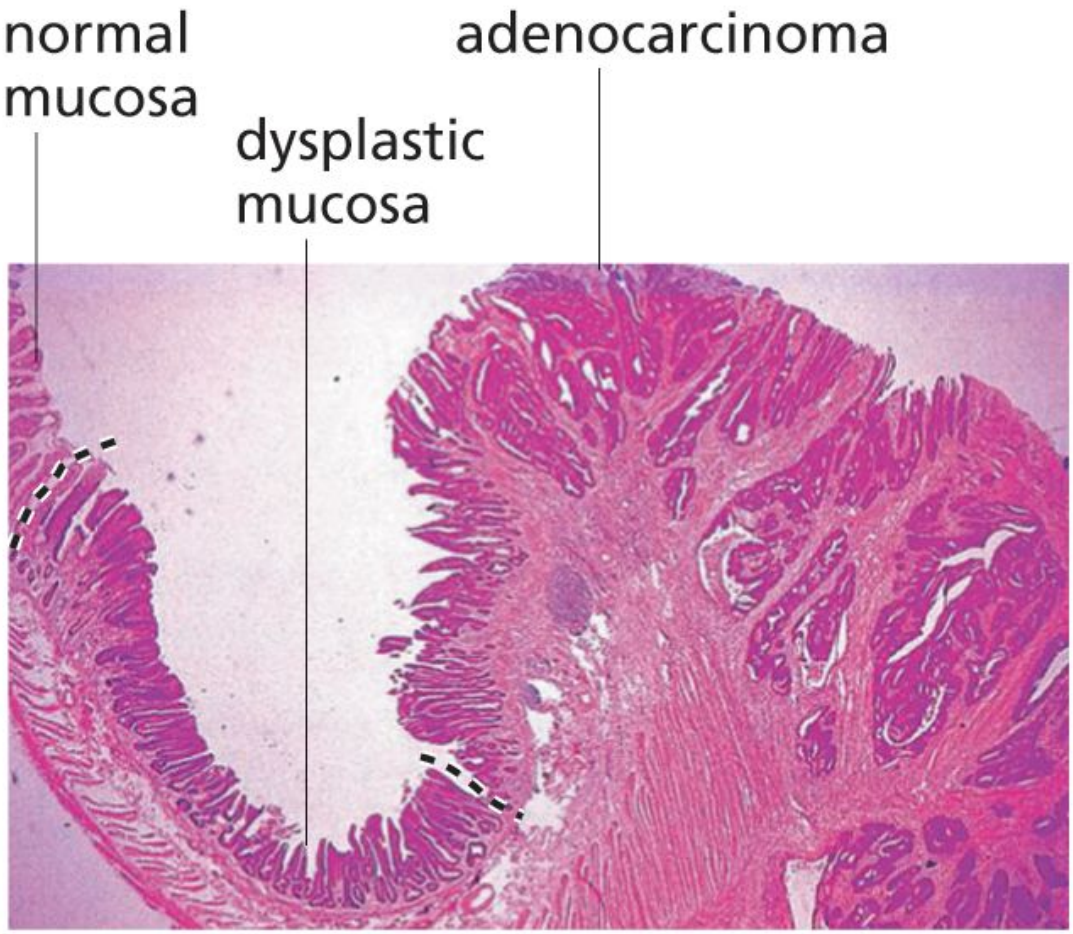
morphogenesis
: Process whereby shape is created, usually referring to the creation of shape of various tissue and organ structures during embryonic development.

OceanofPDF.com

2.1 Tumors arise from normal tissues

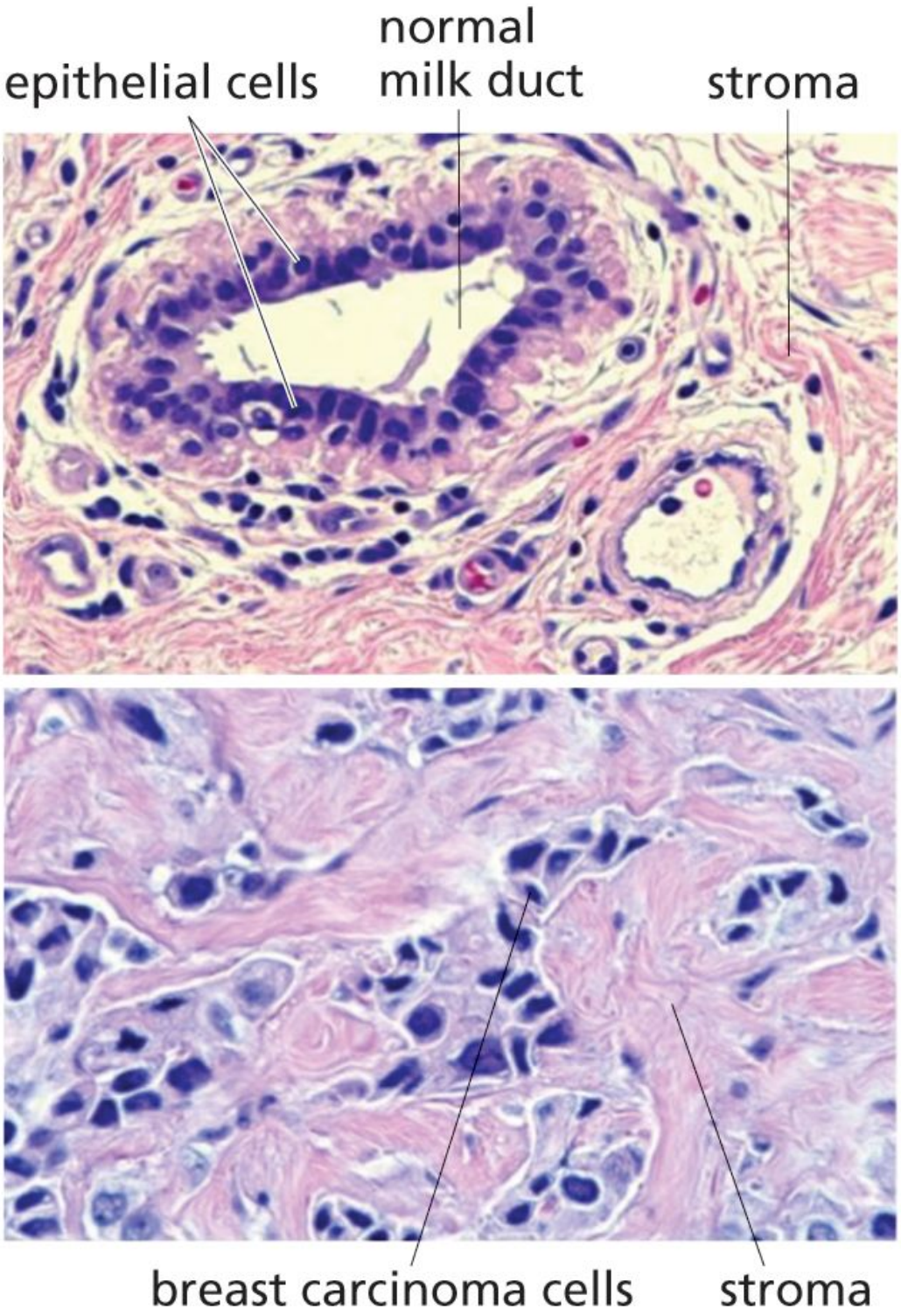
A confluence of discoveries in the mid- and late nineteenth century led to our current understanding of how tissues and complex organisms arise from fertilized eggs. The most fundamental of these was the discovery that all tissues are composed of cells and cell products, and that all cells arise through the division of preexisting cells. Taken together, these two revelations led to the deduction, so obvious to us now, that all the cells in the body of a complex organism are members of cell lineages that can be traced back to the fertilized egg. Conversely, the fertilized egg is able to spawn all the cells in the body, doing so through repeated cycles of cell growth and division.

These realizations had a profound impact on how tumors were perceived. Previously, many had portrayed tumors as foreign bodies that had somehow entered and taken root in an afflicted person. Now, tumors, like normal tissues, could be examined under the microscope by researchers in the then-new science of histology. These examinations of tissue sections (slices) revealed that tumors, like normal tissues, were composed of masses of cells (**Figure 2.1**). Contemporary cancer research makes frequent use of a variety of histological techniques; the most frequently used of these are illustrated in **Supplementary Sidebar 2.1**.



A cross section of cancerous small intestine, stained pink. On the far left is a section labeled normal mucosa. In the middle is a section labeled dysplastic mucosa. These two sections are relatively thin and uniform along their length. On the right is a section labeled adenocarcinoma. This section is greatly thickened, and the structure is more chaotic-looking.

(A)



Two specimens of mammary gland tissue. In the normal tissue, a milk duct is lined with epithelial cells, which appear dark due to the many dark purple nuclei. The duct structure is surrounded by lighter-colored tissue labeled stroma. In the cancerous tissue, cancerous epithelial cells with large, dark

purple nuclei run irregularly through stroma tissue. No well-defined duct structure is visible.
(B)

Figure 2.1 Normal versus neoplastic tissue (A) This histological section of the lining of the ileum in the small intestine, viewed at low magnification, reveals the continuity between normal and cancerous tissue. At the far left is the normal epithelial lining, the mucosa. In the middle is mucosal tissue that has become highly abnormal, or "dysplastic." To the right is an obvious tumor—an adenocarcinoma—which has begun to invade underlying tissues. (B) This pair of sections, viewed at high magnification, shows how normal tissue architecture becomes deranged in tumors. In the normal human mammary gland (*upper panel*), a milk duct is lined by epithelial cells (*dark purple nuclei*). The ducts are surrounded by mesenchymal tissue (termed "stroma"), which consists of connective tissue cells, such as fibroblasts and adipocytes, and collagen matrix (*pink*). In an invasive ductal breast carcinoma (*lower panel*), the cancer cells, which arise from the epithelial cells lining the normal ducts, exhibit abnormally large nuclei (*purple*), no longer form well-structured ducts, and have invaded the stroma (*pink*). (A, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier. B, Courtesy of A. Orimo.)

Evidence accumulated that tumors of various types, rather than invading the body from the outside world, often derive directly from the normal tissues in which they are first discovered (see Figure 2.1A). However, certain tumors did seem to be capable of moving within the confines of the human body: in many patients, multiple tumors were discovered at anatomical sites quite distant from where their disease first began, a consequence of the tendency of cancers to spread throughout the body and to establish new colonies of cancer cells (**Figure 2.2**). These new settlements, termed metastases, were often traceable directly back to the site where the disease of cancer had begun—the founding or primary tumor.

A cancerous liver, sectioned to show many cauliflower-like tumors within the dark liver tissue.

(A)

A brain hemisphere infiltrated by cancer. Multiple white nodules of varying size, which look like lumps of fatty tissue, protrude from the surface.

(B)

Figure 2.2 Metastasis of cancer cells to distant sites Many types of tumors eventually release cancer cells that migrate to distant sites in the body, where they form the secondary tumors known as metastases. (A) Metastases (*white*) in the liver often arise in patients with advanced colon carcinomas. The portal vein, which drains blood from the colon into the liver, provides a route for metastasizing colon cancer cells to migrate directly into the liver, where they are trapped in large numbers in microvessels. (B) Breast cancer often metastasizes to the brain. Here, large metastases are revealed post mortem in the right side of a brain where the dura (membrane covering; shown intact at *right*) of the brain has been removed. (A, courtesy of Peter Isaacson. B, from H. Okazaki and B.W. Scheithauer, Atlas of Neuropathology. New York: Gower Medical Publishing, 1988. With permission of Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research.)

Invariably, detailed examination of the organization of cells within tumor masses gave evidence of a tissue architecture that was less organized than the architecture of nearby normal tissues (see Figure 2.1). These histopathological comparisons provided the first seeds of an idea that would take the greater part of the twentieth century to prove: tumors are composed of cells that have lost the ability to assemble and create tissues of normal form and function. Stated more simply, cancer came to be viewed as a disease of malfunctioning cells, and all of the properties of individual tumors must derive, directly or indirectly, from the behavior of the cancerous cells within such tumors.

While the microarchitecture of tumors differed in obvious ways from that of normal tissue, tumors nevertheless exhibited certain histological features that resembled those of normal tissue. This suggested that all tumors should, in principle, be traceable back to the specific tissue or organ site in which they first arose, using the histopathological analyses of tumor sections to provide critical clues. This simple idea led to a new way of classifying these growths, which depended on their presumed tissues of origin. The resulting classifications often united under one roof cancers that arise in tissues and organs that have radically different functions in the body but share common types of tissue organization.

The science of histopathology also made it possible to understand the relationship between the clinical behavior of a tumor (that is, the effects that the tumor had on the patient's body) and its microscopic features. Most important here were the criteria that segregated tumors into two broad categories depending on their degree of aggressive growth. Those that grew locally without invading adjacent tissues were classified as benign, while others that invaded nearby tissues and possibly spawned metastases were termed malignant.

In fact, the great majority of primary tumors arising in humans are benign and are harmless to their hosts, except in the rare cases where the expansion of these localized

masses causes them to press on vital organs or tissues. Some benign tumors, however, may cause clinical problems because they release dangerously high levels of hormones that create physiologic imbalances in the body. For example, thyroid adenomas (premalignant epithelial growths) may cause excessive release of thyroid hormone into the circulation, leading to hyperthyroidism; pituitary adenomas may release growth hormone into the circulation, causing excessive growth of certain tissues—a condition known as acromegaly. Nonetheless, deaths caused by benign tumors are relatively uncommon. The vast majority of cancer-related mortality derives from malignant tumors. More specifically, it is the metastases spawned by these tumors that are responsible for some 90% of deaths from cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

histology
: Study of tissue structure at the microscopic level. *See also* **histopathology**.

histopathology
: Study of tissue structure at the microscopic level, often with reference to abnormal tissue. *See also* **pathology**.

section
: A slice, e.g., through a tissue.

primary tumor
: Tumor growing at the anatomical site where tumor formation began and proceeded to yield this mass. *See also* **metastasis**.

benign
: (1) Describing a growth that is confined to a specific site within a tissue and gives no evidence of invading adjacent tissue. (2) Referring to an epithelial growth that has not penetrated through the basement membrane.

malignant
: Describing a growth that shows evidence of being locally invasive and possibly even metastatic.

adenoma
: (adj., **- omatous**) Any of a series of premalignant, noninvasive growths in various epithelial tissues, many of which have the potential to progress further to carcinomas. *See also* **polyp**.

hyperthyroidism
: Condition in which the thyroid gland releases inappropriately high levels of thyroid hormone into the circulation, leading to an elevated metabolic rate and multiple secondary effects on the body.

acromegaly
: Pathological condition of excessive growth of certain tissues, notably the hands, feet, and face, usually due to the elaboration of excessive growth hormone by a pituitary tumor.

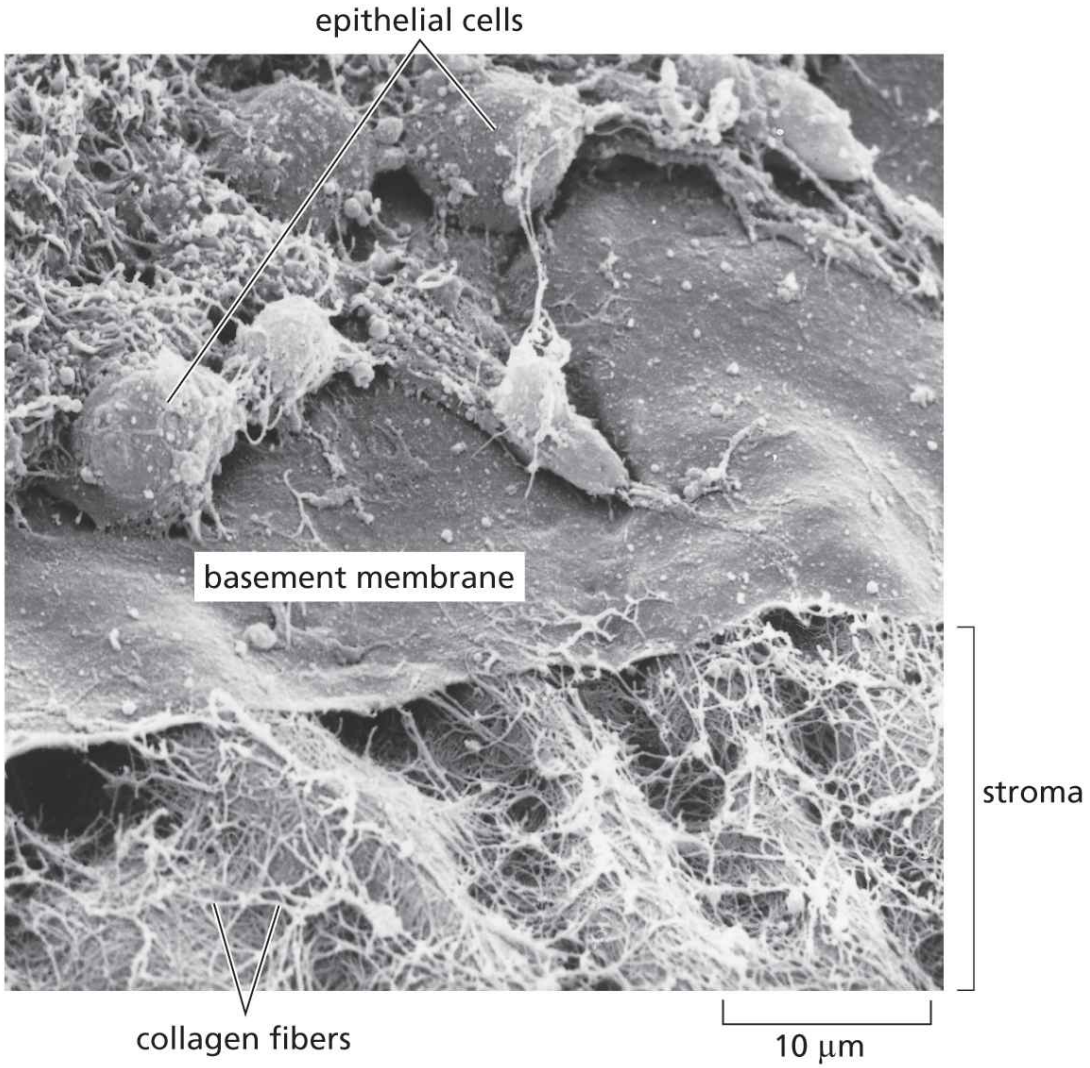
metastasis
: (pl., **- es**; adj., **metastatic**; v. **metastasize**) A neoplastic growth forming at one site in the body, the cells of which derive from a

malignancy located elsewhere in the body, such as the site of primary tumor formation. (2) The process leading to the formation of metastases. *See also* **primary tumor**.

OceanofPDF.com

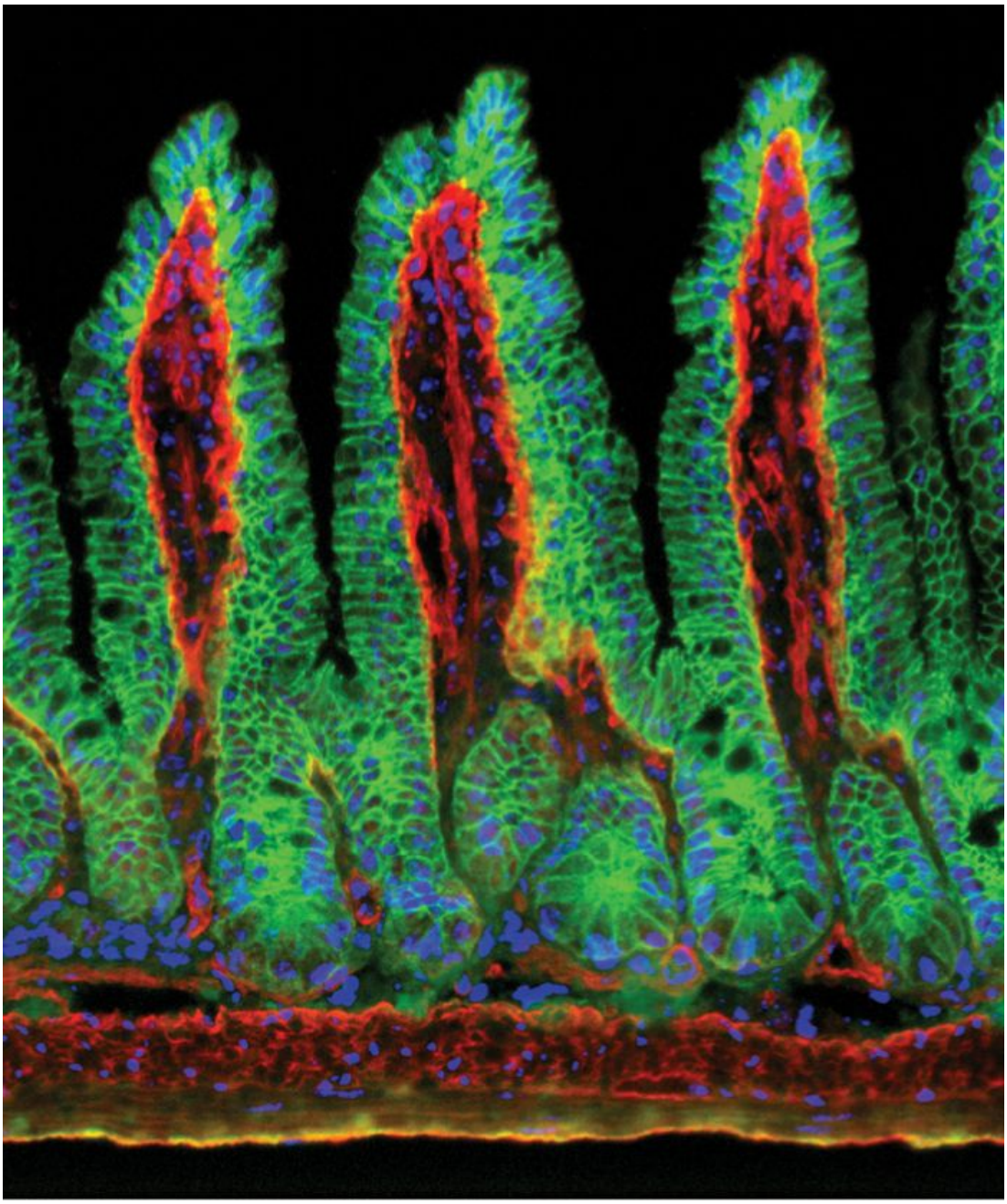
2.2 Tumors arise from many specialized cell types throughout the body

The majority of human tumors arise from epithelial tissues. Epithelia are sheets of cells that line the walls of cavities and channels or, in the case of skin, serve as the outside protective covering of the body. By the first decades of the twentieth century, detailed histological analyses had revealed that normal tissues containing epithelia are all structured similarly. Thus, beneath the epithelial cell layers in each of these tissues lies a basement membrane (sometimes called a basal lamina); it separates the epithelial cells from the underlying layer of supporting connective tissue cells, termed the stroma (**Figure 2.3**).



A black-and-white electron micrograph representing a section of tissue about 50 microns wide. An undulating surface labeled basement membrane lies over stroma tissue that is crisscrossed by a dense, irregular network of collagen fibers. Nodules lying on top of the basement membrane are labeled epithelial cells.

(A)



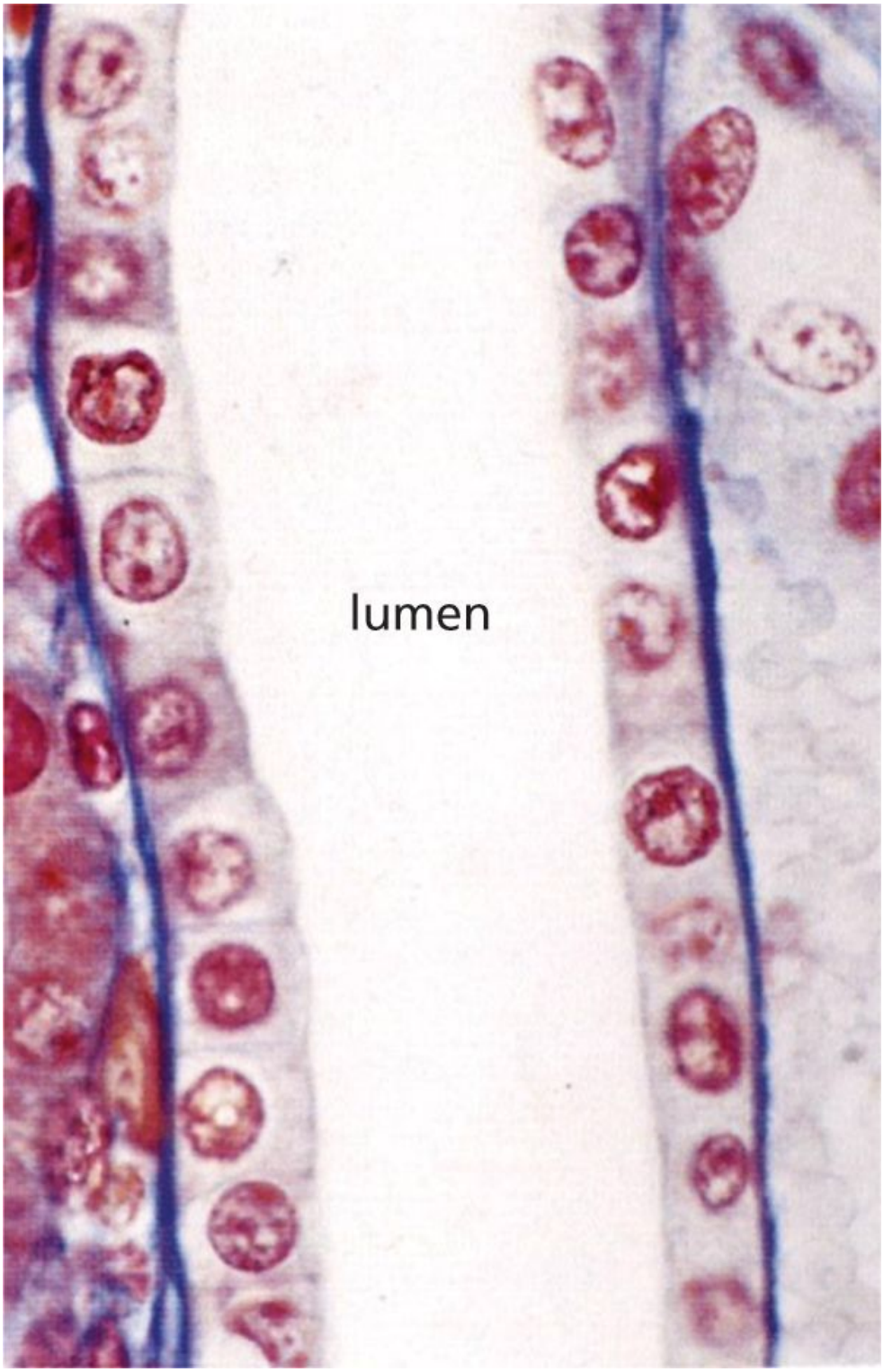
A brightly colored image of three columnar structures, part of a longer row. Each looks like a tall, thin sea sponge, blue-green in color but with a dark core and a bright red layer forming the outer skin of the core. Densely packed green tendril-like villi extend out from the core. These structures are attached at the base to a continuous horizontal structure.

(B)

Figure 2.3 Basement membranes (A) This scanning electron micrograph of a chick corneal epithelium illustrates the basic plan of epithelial tissues, in which epithelial cells are tethered to one side of the basement membrane, sometimes termed the “basal lamina.” Seen here as a continuous sheet, it is formed as a meshwork of extracellular matrix proteins. A network of collagen fibers anchors the underside of the basement membrane to the extracellular matrix (ECM) of the stroma. (B) While basement membranes cannot be detected using conventional staining techniques, use of immunofluorescence with an antibody against a basement membrane protein—in this case laminin 5 (*red*)—allows its visualization. Epithelial cells coating the villi of mouse small intestine have been stained with an antibody against E-cadherin (*green*), while all cell nuclei are stained *blue*. Here the convoluted basement membrane separates the outer villus layer of epithelial cells, termed enterocytes, from the mesenchymal cells forming the core of each villus (*not stained*). [A, courtesy of Robert Trelstad. B, from Z.X. Mahoney et al., *J. Cell Sci.* 121:2493–2502, 2008 (cover image). With permission from the authors.]

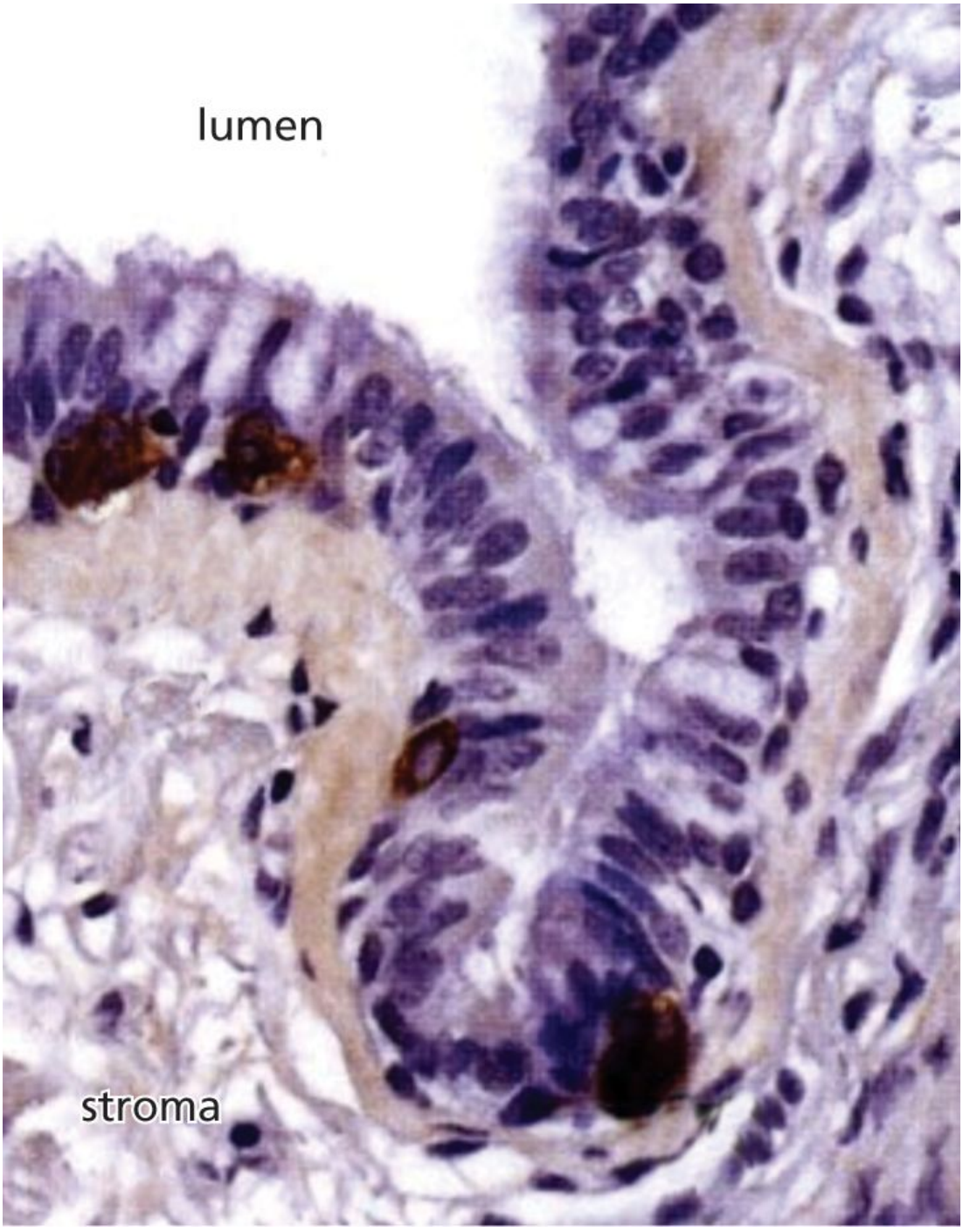
The basement membrane is a specialized type of extracellular matrix (ECM) and is assembled from proteins secreted largely by the epithelial cells. Another type of basement membrane separates endothelial cells, which form the inner linings of capillaries and larger vessels, from an outer layer of specialized smooth muscle cells. In all cases, these basement membranes serve as a structural scaffolding of the tissue. In addition, as we will learn later, cells attach a variety of biologically active signaling molecules to both the ECM and basement membrane; such molecules, including the growth factors to be described in Chapter 5, are then liberated later to stimulate epithelial cell proliferation.

Epithelia are of special interest here, because they spawn the most common human cancers—the carcinomas. These tumors are responsible for more than 80% of the cancer-related deaths in the Western world. Included among the carcinomas are tumors arising from the epithelial cell layers of the gastrointestinal tract—which includes mouth, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines—as well as the skin, mammary gland, pancreas, lung, liver, ovary, uterus, prostate, gallbladder, and urinary bladder. Examples of normal epithelial tissues are presented in **Figure 2.4**.



A columnar cavity, labeled lumen, surrounded by a sheath of tissue one cell thick. Each cell in the sheath appears generally square and has a red-stained nucleus.

(A)

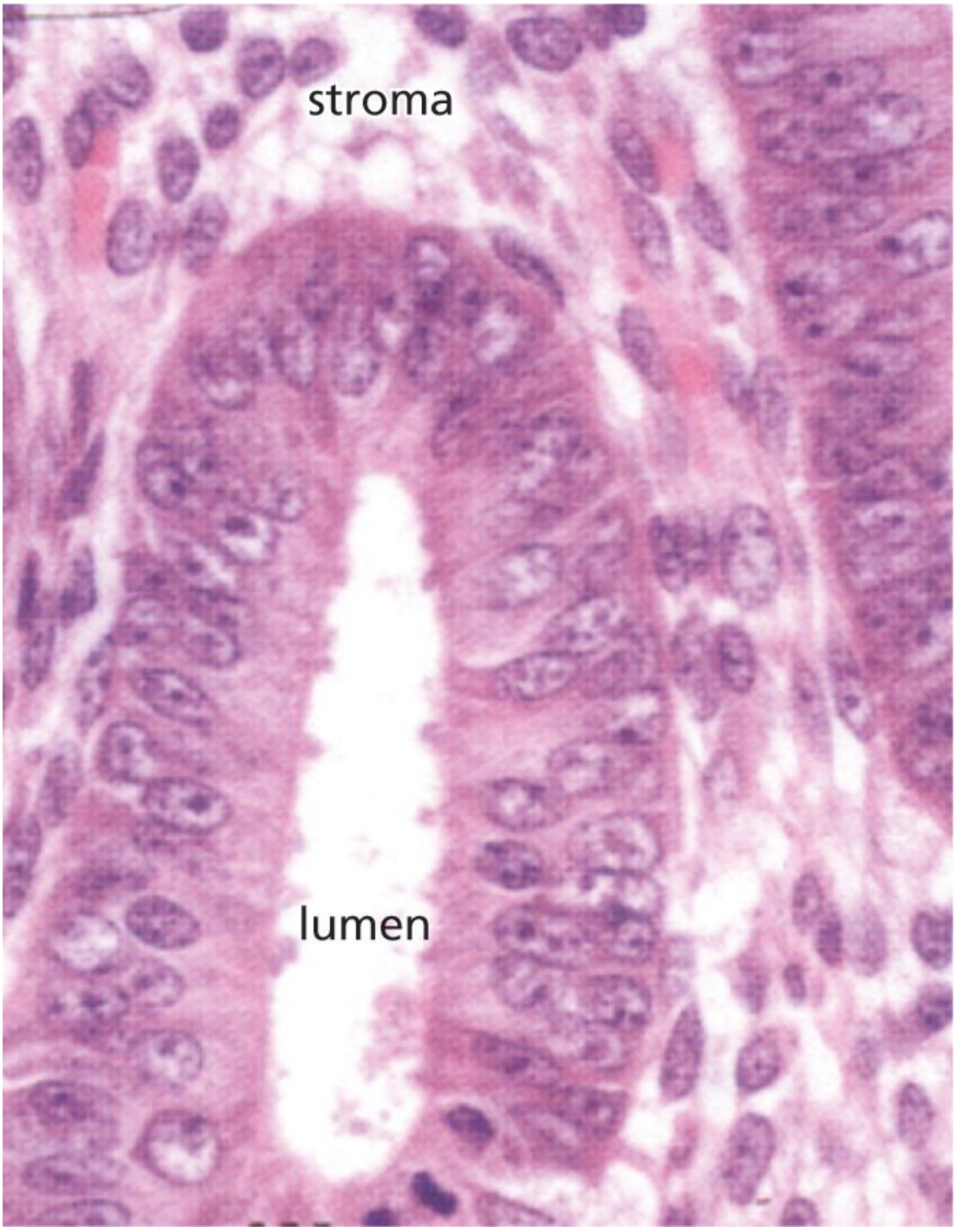


An irregular cavity, labeled lumen, surrounded by a layer of tissue consisting of densely packed cells. Each cell in this layer is stained purple with a dark purple nucleus. The surrounding lighter tissue is labeled stroma.

(B)

An extreme close-up of a pancake-like stack of cells stained pink, each with one dark pink nucleus. These cells separate more irregular tissue on the left from a cavity labeled lumen on the right.

(C)



An elongated oval cavity labeled lumen, surrounded by a ring of dark pink cells, surrounded by lighter tissue.

(D)

Figure 2.4 Architecture of epithelial tissues A common organizational plan describes most of the epithelial tissues in the body: The mature, differentiated epithelial cells are at the exposed surface of an epithelium. In many tissues, underlying these epithelia are less differentiated epithelial cells, not seen in this figure. Beneath the epithelial cell layer lies a basement membrane (see Figure 2.3), which is usually difficult to visualize in the light microscope. Shown here are epithelia of (A) a collecting tubule of the kidney, (B) a bronchiole of the lung with its thickened basement membrane, (C) the columnar epithelium of the gallbladder, and (D) the endometrium of the uterus. In each case, the epithelial cells protect the underlying tissue from the contents of the lumen (cavity) that they are lining. Panel C illustrates another property that is characteristic of the epithelial cells forming an epithelium: the state of apico-basal polarity, in which individual epithelial cells are organized to present their apical surface toward the lumen (*right*) and their basal surface toward the underlying basement membrane. (The side-by-side lateral interactions between adjacent epithelial cells are often included together with the basal surface to constitute the actions of the basolateral domain.) This polarization involves the asymmetric localization of the nuclei, which are more basally located, along with hundreds of cell surface (and associated cytoskeletal) proteins (*not shown*) that are specifically localized either to the apical, basal, or lateral surface of these cells. Moreover, the lateral surfaces of the epithelial cells establish several distinct types of junctions with their adjacent epithelial neighbors that bind together the epithelial cell sheet. (A, B, and D, from B. Young et al., Wheater's Functional Histology, 5th ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 2006. With permission from Elsevier. C, Jose Luis Calvo/Shutterstock.)

This group of tissues encompasses cell types that arise from all three of the primitive cell layers in the early vertebrate embryo. Thus, the epithelia of the lungs, liver, gallbladder, pancreas, esophagus, stomach, and intestines all derive from the inner cell layer, the endoderm. Skin arises from the outer embryonic cell layer, termed the ectoderm, while the ovaries originate embryologically from the middle layer, the mesoderm (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.2**). Therefore, in the case of carcinomas, histopathological classification is not informed by the early developmental history of the tissue of origin.

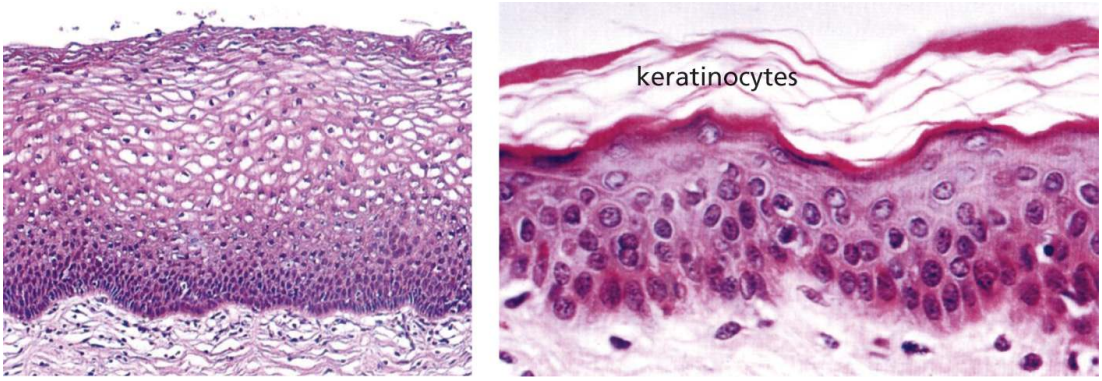
The epithelial and stromal cells of these various tissues collaborate in forming and maintaining the epithelial sheets. When viewed from the perspective of evolution, it now seems that the embryologic mechanisms for organizing and structuring epithelial tissues were invented early in metazoan evolution, likely more than 600 million years ago, and that these structural principles have been applied time and again during metazoan evolution to construct tissues and organs having a wide array of physiologic functions.

Most carcinomas fall into two major categories that reflect the two major biological functions associated with epithelia (**Table 2.1**). Some epithelial sheets serve largely to seal the cavity or channel that they line and to protect the underlying cell populations (**Figure 2.5**). Tumors that arise from epithelial cells forming these protective cell layers are termed squamous cell carcinomas. For example, the epithelial cells lining the skin (keratinocytes) and most of the oral cavity spawn tumors of this type.

Table 2.1 Carcinomas

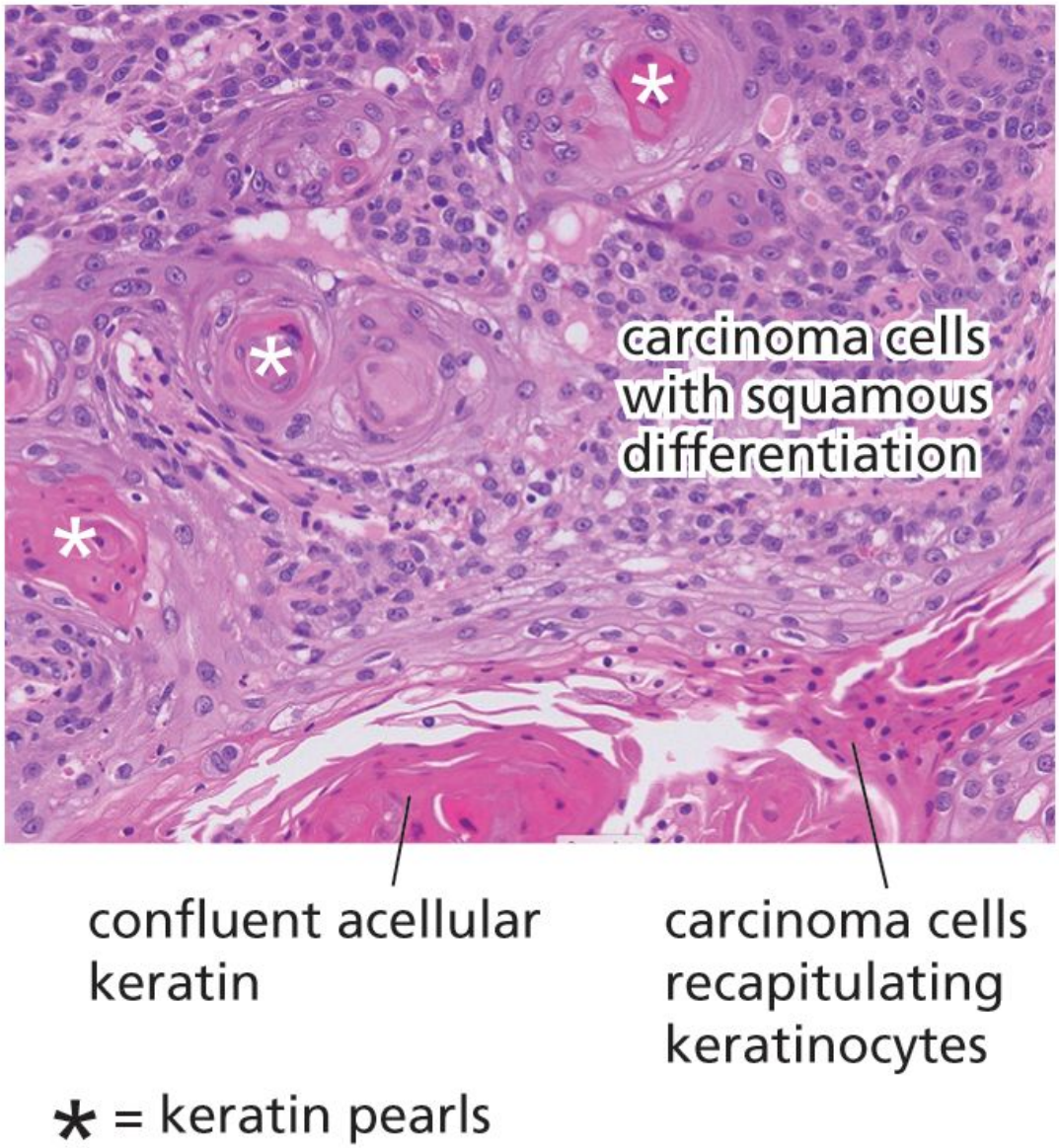
Tissue sites of more common types of adenocarcinoma
lung colon breast pancreas stomach esophagus prostate endometrium ovary
Tissue sites of more common types of squamous cell carcinoma
skin nasal cavity oropharynx larynx lung

Tissue sites of more common types of adenocarcinoma
esophagus cervix
Other types of carcinoma
small-cell lung carcinoma large-cell lung carcinoma hepatocellular carcinoma renal cell carcinoma transitional-cell carcinoma (of urinary bladder)



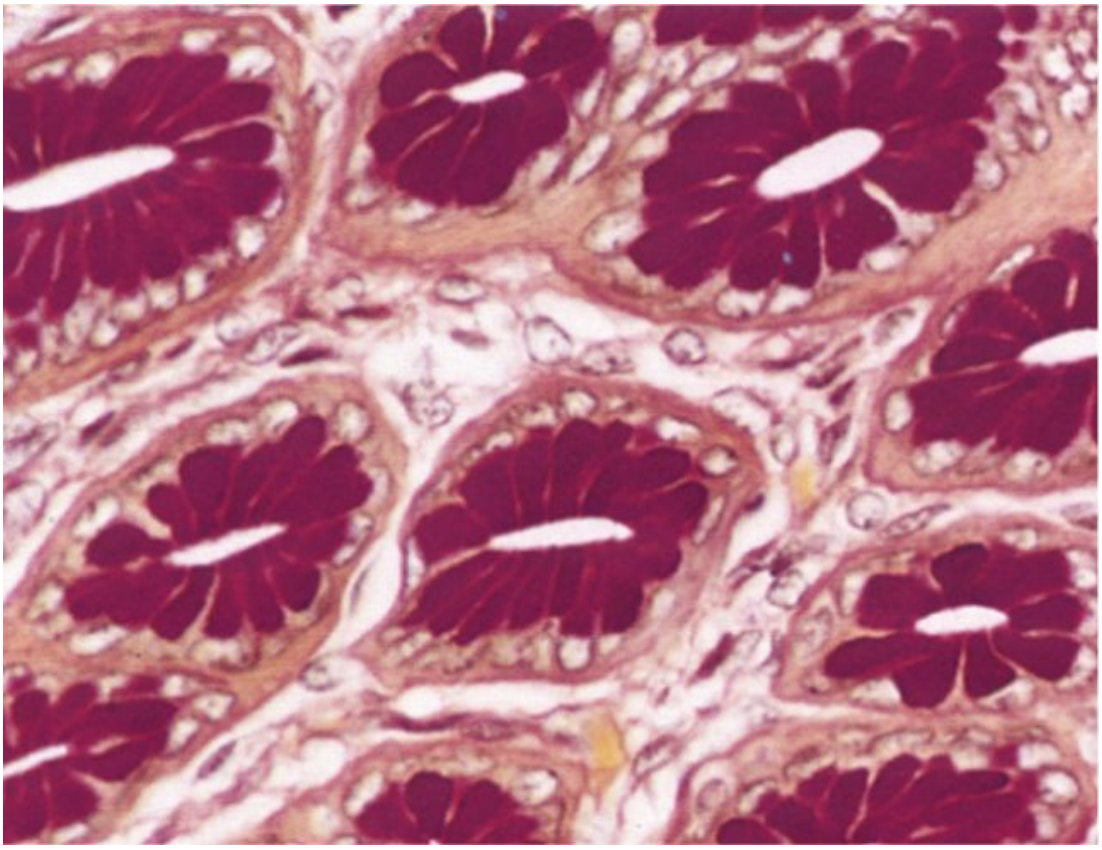
Two samples of normal squamous cell tissue layers. In the first sample, the layer is many cells thick. Toward the bottom of the layer, the cells are densely packed and somewhat elongated vertically. Toward the top, the cells are more loosely packed and somewhat elongated horizontally. In the second sample, the layer is only a few cells thick, but again the cells are more loosely packed at the top and less vertically elongated. There is also a layer of horizontally elongated cells on top, labeled keratinocytes. These cells have no nuclei.

(A)



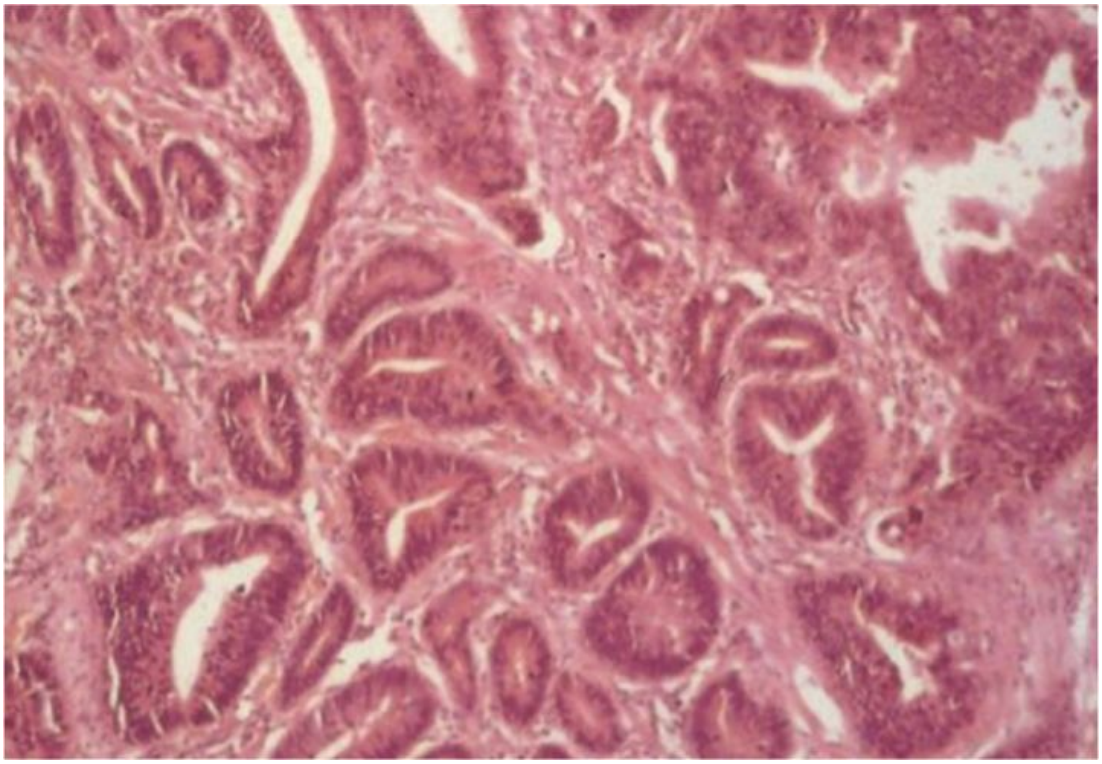
Cancerous squamous cells. The cells have no overall orientation pattern, and there are three round keratin pearls that appear as pink nodules within the purple-stained normal cells. Near the bottom of the image, there is a large pink, lumpy tissue labeled confluent acellular keratin, and within it there are carcinoma cells recapitulating keratinocytes.

(B)



A sample of normal stomach lining tissue. Seven or eight lumina appear as white ovals, surrounded by deep red cells to give the appearance of a blood-red daisy with a white center. The appearance is fairly regular from one lumen to the next.

(C)



A sample of cancerous stomach tissue. Many lumina appear as irregular or greatly elongated white shapes, surrounded by dark cells. The lumina vary greatly in size and shape from one lumen to the next.

(D)

Figure 2.5 Epithelia and derived carcinomas Epithelia can be classified into subtypes depending on their normal shape and function and on the carcinomas arising from them. Two major subtypes and their respective derived carcinomas—squamous cell carcinomas and adenocarcinomas—are seen here. Squamous cell carcinomas derive from normal squamous epithelial cells whereas adenocarcinomas derive from epithelial cells with secretory function. (A) Normal squamous cells are often flattened and function to protect the epithelium and underlying tissue from the contents of the lumen or, in the case of skin, from the outside world. The squamous epithelia of the cervix of the uterus (*left*) and the skin (*right*) are organized quite similarly, with mature flattened cells at the surface being continually shed (for example, the dead keratinocytes of the skin) and replaced by less differentiated cells that move upward and proceed to differentiate. (B) Keratin pearl formation is a characteristic feature among a malignant tumor cell population that shows squamous differentiation. Confluent areas of accumulation of acellular keratin (*white asterisk*) and tumor cells recapitulating the appearance of normal keratinocytes are common in addition to large numbers of carcinoma cells exhibiting a morphology characteristic of squamous cell

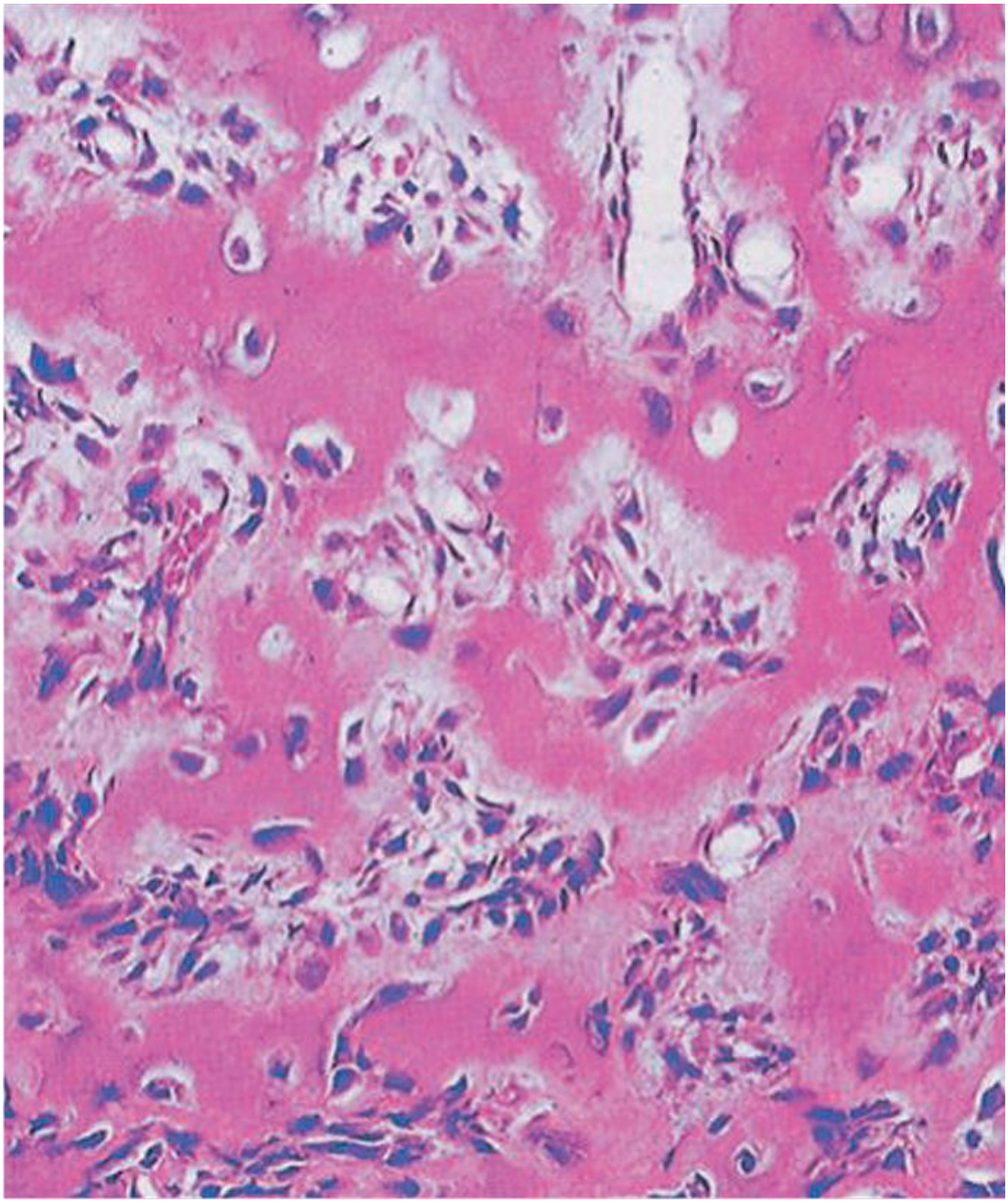
carcinomas. (C) In some tissues, the glandular cells within epithelia secrete mucopolysaccharides to protect the epithelium; in other tissues, they secrete proteins that function within the lumina (cavities) of ducts or are distributed to distant sites in the body. Pits in the stomach wall are lined by mucus-secreting cells (*dark red*). (D) This adenocarcinoma of the stomach shows multiple ductal elements, which are clear indications of its derivation from secretory epithelia such as those in panel C. (A and C, from B. Young et al., Wheater's Functional Histology, 5th ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 2006. With permission from Elsevier. B, Dr. Vickle Young Jo. D, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

Many epithelia also contain specialized cells that secrete substances into the ducts or cavities that they line. This class of epithelial cells generates adenocarcinomas. Often these secreted products are used to protect the epithelial cell layers from the contents of the cavities (lumina) that they surround (see Figure 2.5). Thus, some epithelial cells lining the lung and stomach secrete mucus layers that protect them, respectively, from the air (and airborne particles) and from the corrosive effects of high concentrations of acid. The epithelia in some organs, such as the lung, uterus, and cervix, have the capacity to give rise to pure adenocarcinomas or pure squamous cell carcinomas; quite frequently, however, tumors in these organs are found in which both types of carcinoma cells coexist.

The remainder of malignant tumors arise from nonepithelial tissues throughout the body. The first major class of nonepithelial cancers derive from the various connective tissues, all of which share a common origin in the mesoderm of the embryo (**Table 2.2**). These tumors, the sarcomas, constitute only about 1% of the tumors encountered in the oncology clinic. Sarcomas derive from a variety of mesenchymal cell types. Included among these are fibroblasts and related connective tissue cell types that secrete collagen, the major structural component of the extracellular matrix of tendons and skin; adipocytes, which store fat in their cytoplasm; osteoblasts, which assemble calcium phosphate crystals within matrices of collagen to form bone; and myocytes, which assemble to form muscle (**Figure 2.6**). Hemangiomas, which are relatively common in children, arise from precursors of the endothelial cells. The stromal layers of epithelial tissues include a variety of these mesenchymal cell types, notably fibroblasts and adipocytes.

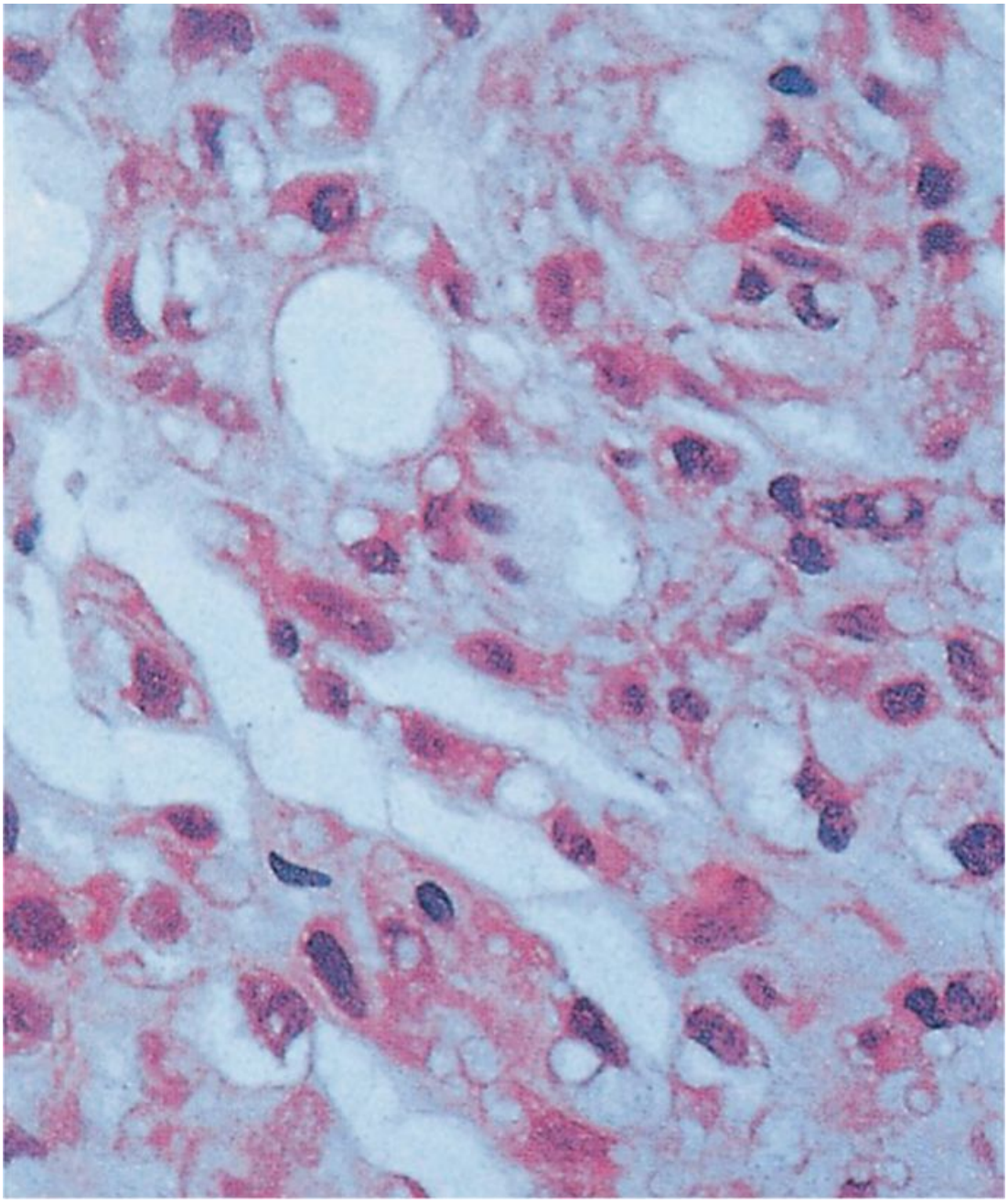
Table 2.2 Various types of more common sarcomas

Type of tumor	**Presumed cell lineage of founding cell**
Osteosarcoma	osteoblast (bone-forming cell)
Liposarcoma	adipocyte (fat cell)
Leiomyosarcoma	smooth muscle cell (e.g., in gut)
Rhabdomyosarcoma	striated/skeletal muscle cell
Malignant fibrous histiocytoma	adipocyte/muscle cell
Fibrosarcoma	fibroblast (connective tissue cell)
Angiosarcoma	endothelial cells (lining of blood vessels)
Chondrosarcoma	chondrocyte (cartilage-forming cell)



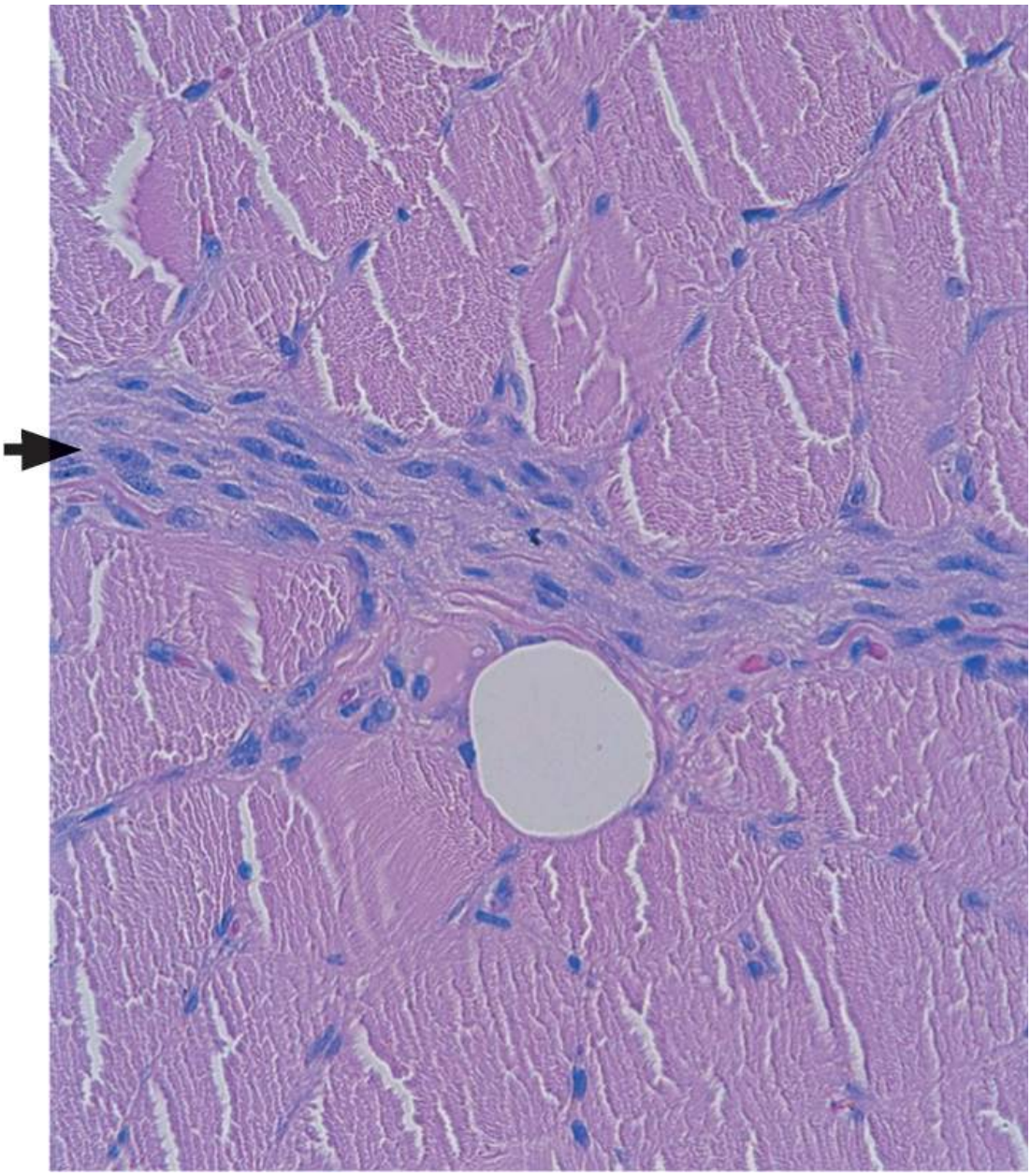
Cancer cells in bone. Irregular clumps of dark purple nuclei surrounded by pale halos appear within a pink matrix in which no nuclei are visible.

(A)



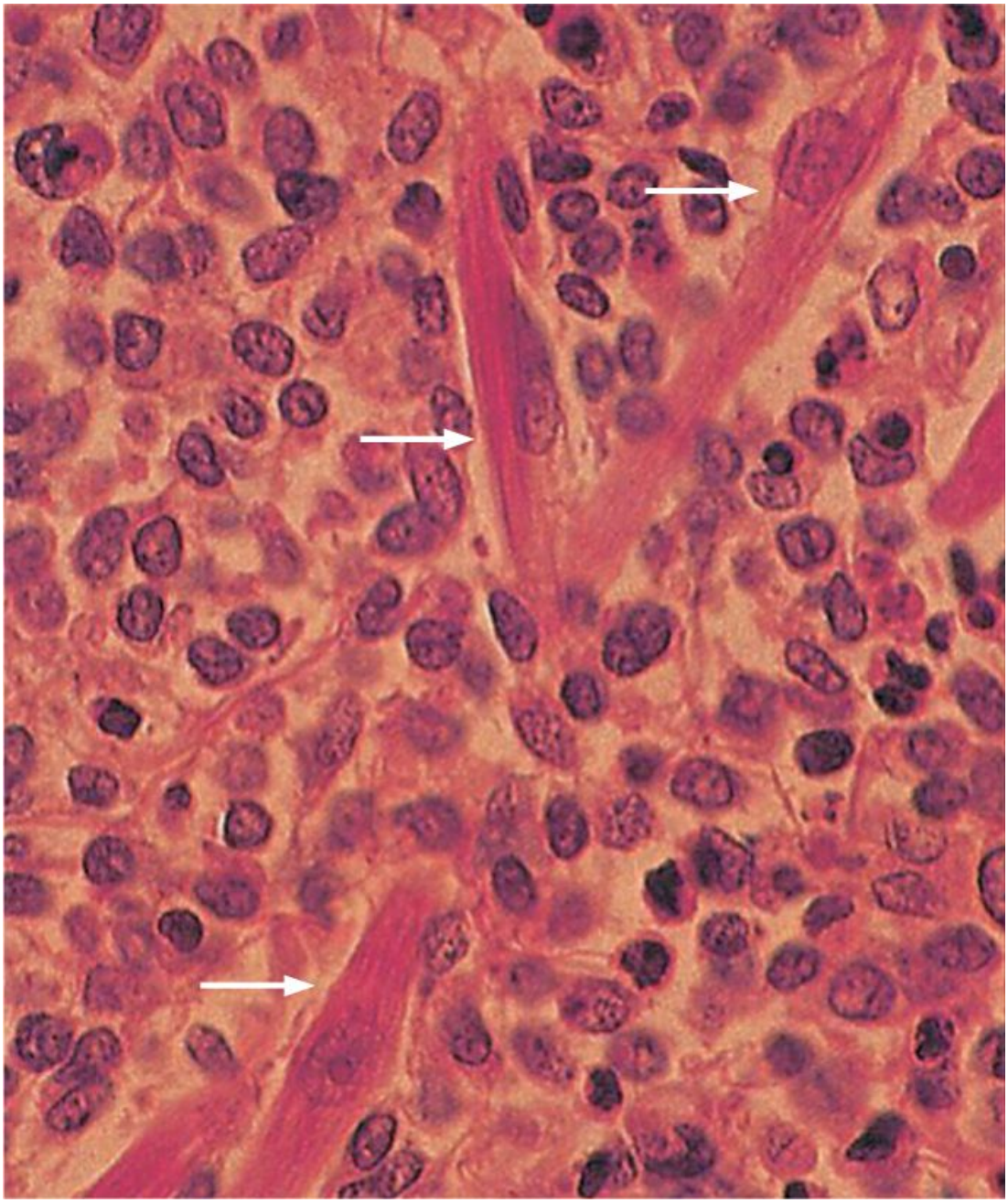
Cancerous fatty tissue. White globules appear within tissue formed of irregularly arranged cells.

(B)



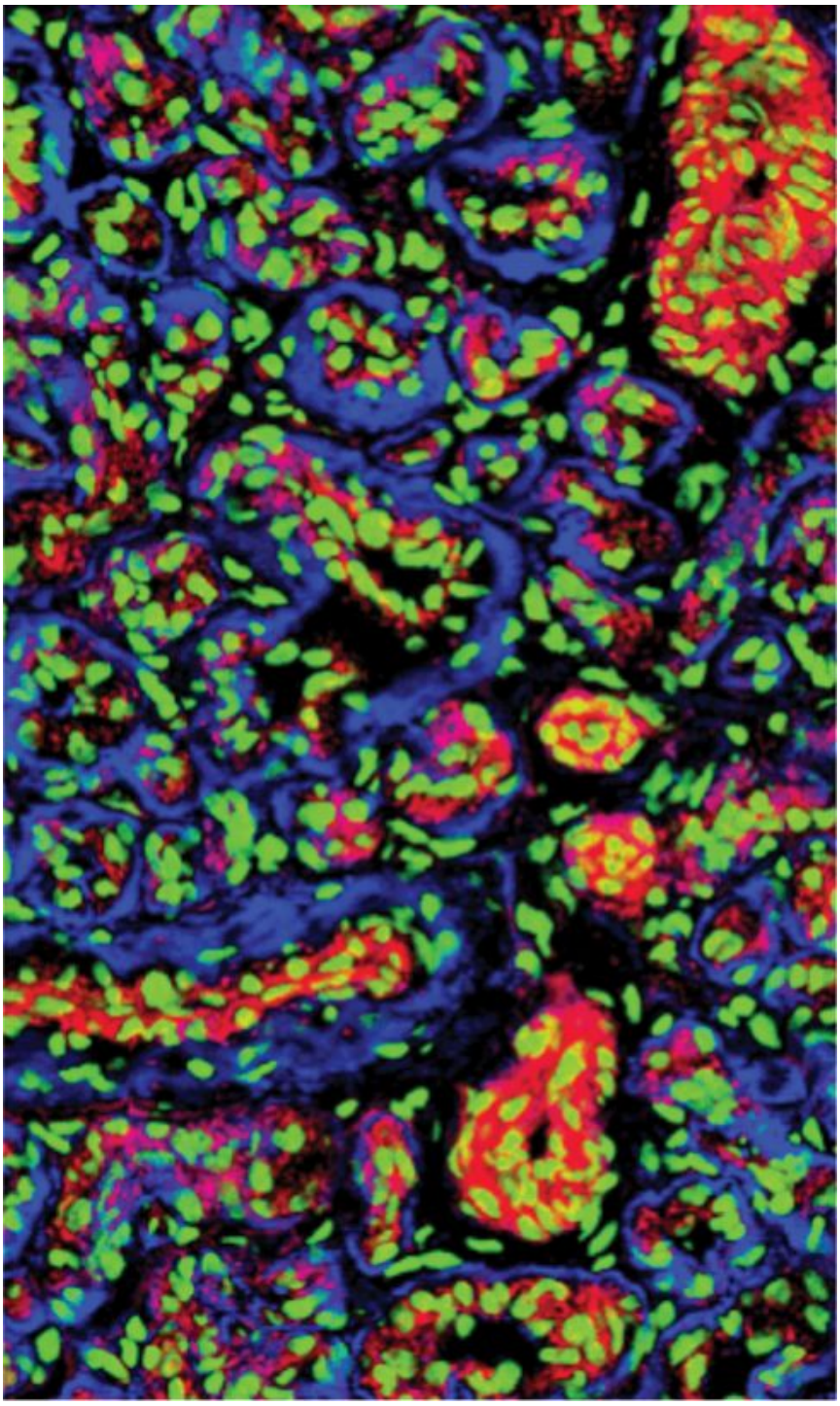
Cancerous smooth muscle tissue. The cancerous cells appear a dark band with many nuclei, running through lighter colored tissue. Smaller dark bands branch in different directions from the main one. The appearance is someone like veins of ore running through rock.

(C)



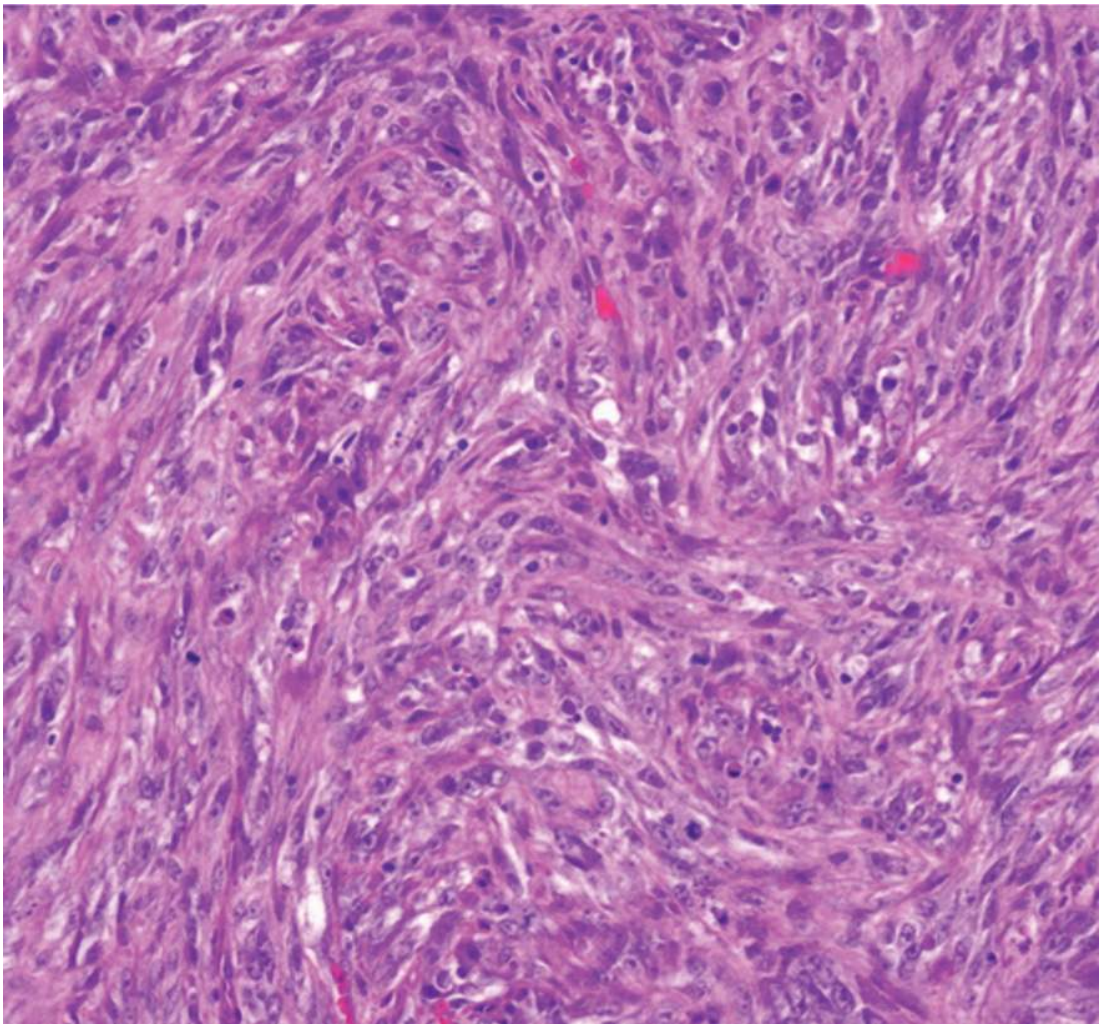
Cancerous skeletal muscle tissue. Many dark brown-red nuclei crowd around a few elongated bright red structures, which are normal cells.

(D)



Cancerous endothelial cells, in an image with a black background. Many small green flecks appear within larger shapes, most of which are dark blue but a few of which are bright red.

(E)



A spindle cell sarcoma sample. Many cells are arranged in irregularly. The general appearance is like that of the grain in a wood burl.

(F)

Figure 2.6 Mesenchymal tumors (A) Seen in this osteosarcoma are malignant bone-forming cells—osteoblasts (*dark purple nuclei*)—amid the mineralized bone (*pink*) they have assembled in the surrounding extracellular matrix. (B) A liposarcoma arises from cells closely related to adipocytes, which store lipid globules in various tissues. The presence of these globules throughout this tumor gives it a foamy appearance. (C) This leiomyosarcoma (*arrow, dark purple nuclei*), which arises in cells that form smooth muscle, is dispatching individual tumor cells to grow among adjacent normal muscle fibers (*light purple*). (D) Rhabdomyosarcomas arise from the cells forming striated skeletal muscles; the cancer cells (*dark red nuclei*) are seen here amid several normal muscle cells (*arrows*). (E) Hemangiomas—common benign tumors in infants that regress

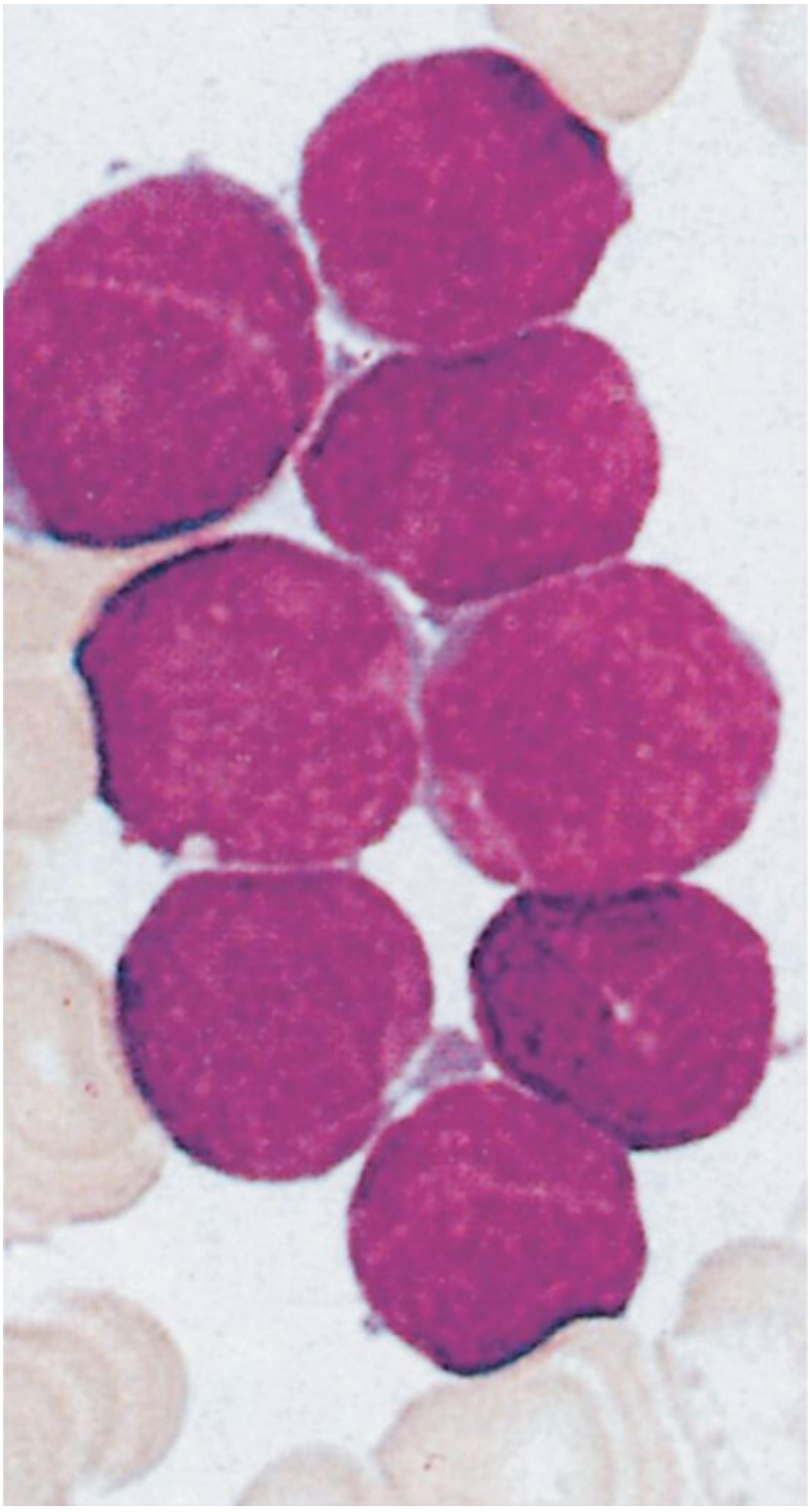
spontaneously—derive from the endothelial cells that form the lining of the lumina of small and large blood vessels. The densely packed capillaries in this particular tumor are formed from endothelial cells with cell nuclei stained *green* and cytoplasms stained *red*. Like epithelial cells, endothelial cells form basement membranes to which they attach, seen here in *blue*. (F) A dedifferentiated, high-grade spindle cell sarcoma. The dedifferentiated component may show an osteosarcoma, a fibrosarcoma, a malignant fibrous histiocytoma, or rarer subtypes including angiosarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma, and therefore may mimic the common mesenchymal precursor of these various mesenchymal cell types. (A–C, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2003. With permission from Elsevier. D, from H. Okazaki and B.W. Scheithauer, Atlas of Neuropathology. New York: Gower Medical Publishing, 1988. With permission of Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research. E, from M.R Ritter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 99:7455–7460, 2002. With permission of National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. F, Courtesy of Dharam M. Ramnani.)

The second group of nonepithelial cancers arise from the various cell types that constitute the blood-forming (hematopoietic) tissues, including the cells of the immune system (**Table 2.3** and **Figure 2.7**); these cells also derive from the embryonic mesoderm. Among them are cells destined to form erythrocytes (red blood cells), antibody-secreting (plasma) cells, and T and B lymphocytes. The term leukemia (literally “white blood”) refers to malignant derivatives of several of these hematopoietic cell lineages that move freely through the circulation and, unlike the red blood cells, are nonpigmented. Lymphomas include tumors of the lymphoid lineages (B and T lymphocytes) that aggregate to form solid tumor masses, most frequently found in lymph nodes, rather than the dispersed, single-cell populations of tumor cells seen in leukemias. This class of tumors is responsible for ∼7% of cancer-associated mortality in the United States.

Table 2.3 Various types of more common hematopoietic malignancies

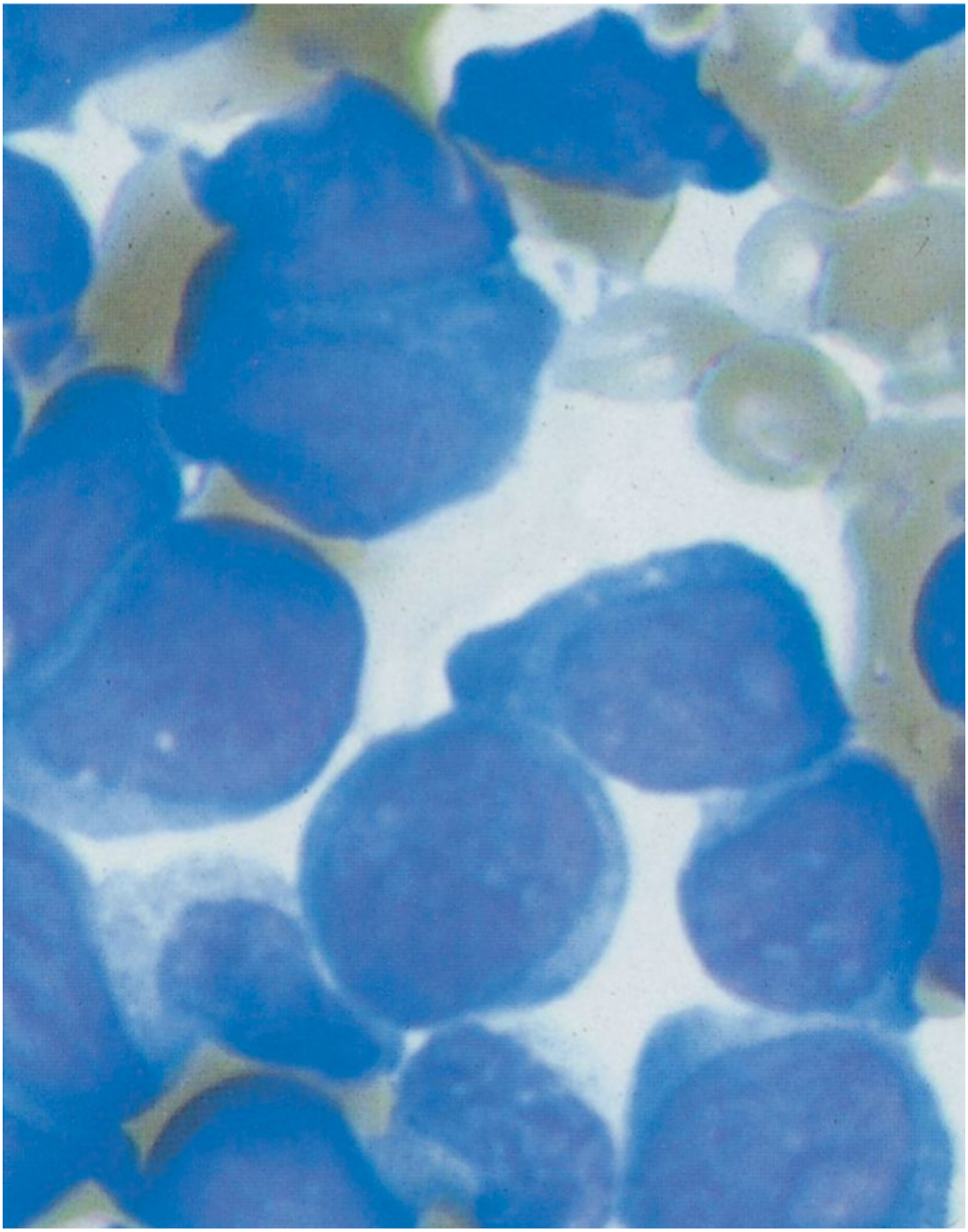
Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL)
Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)
Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)
Multiple myeloma (MM)
Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma[a] (NHL)
Hodgkin’s lymphoma (HL)



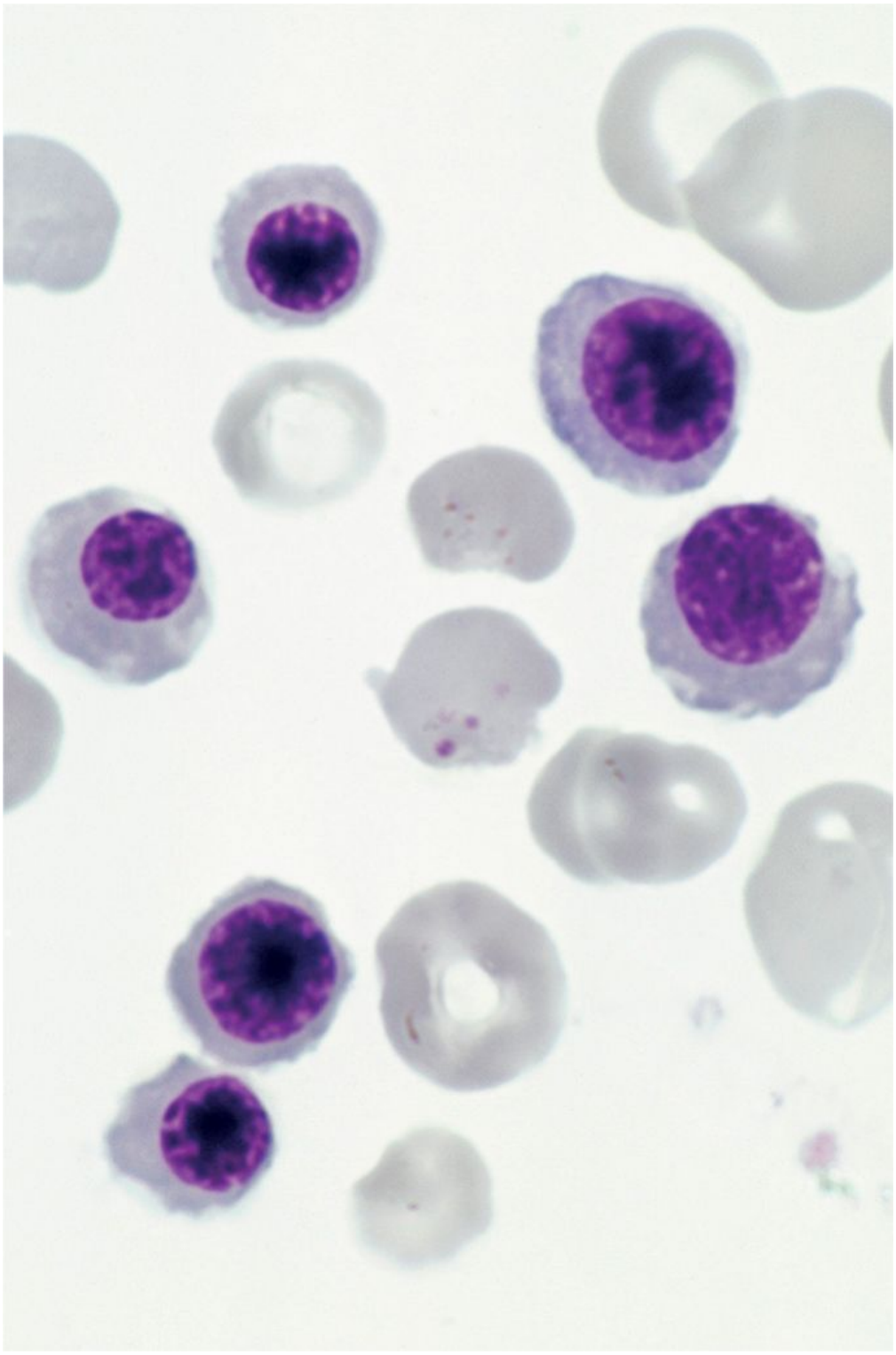
Eight round lymphocytic leukemia cells are stained wine-red and look like a small cluster of grapes, surrounded by pale gray normal cells.

(A)



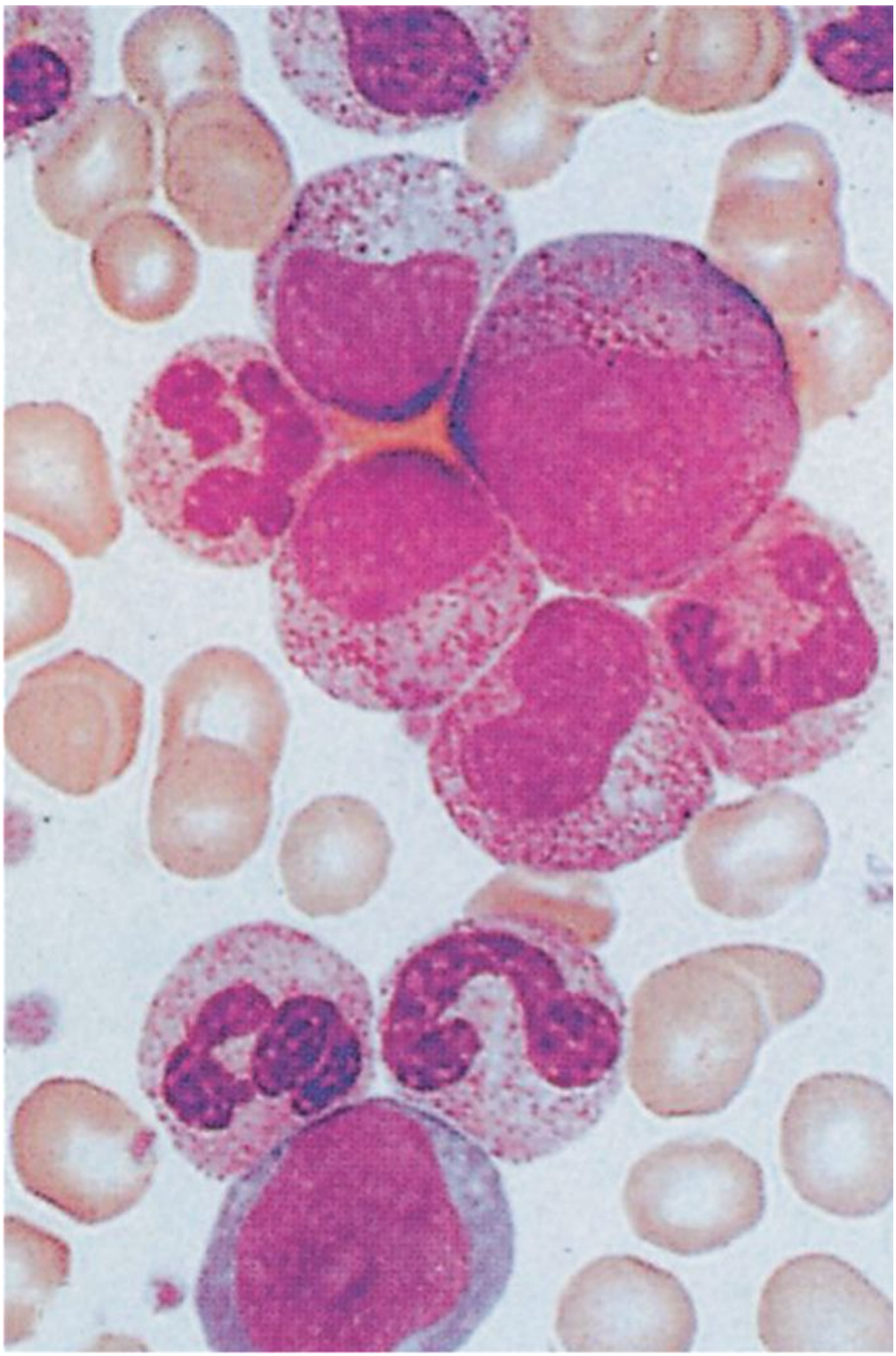
Acute myelogenous leukemia cells are stained sapphire blue. They contrast strongly with pale gray normal cells.

(B)



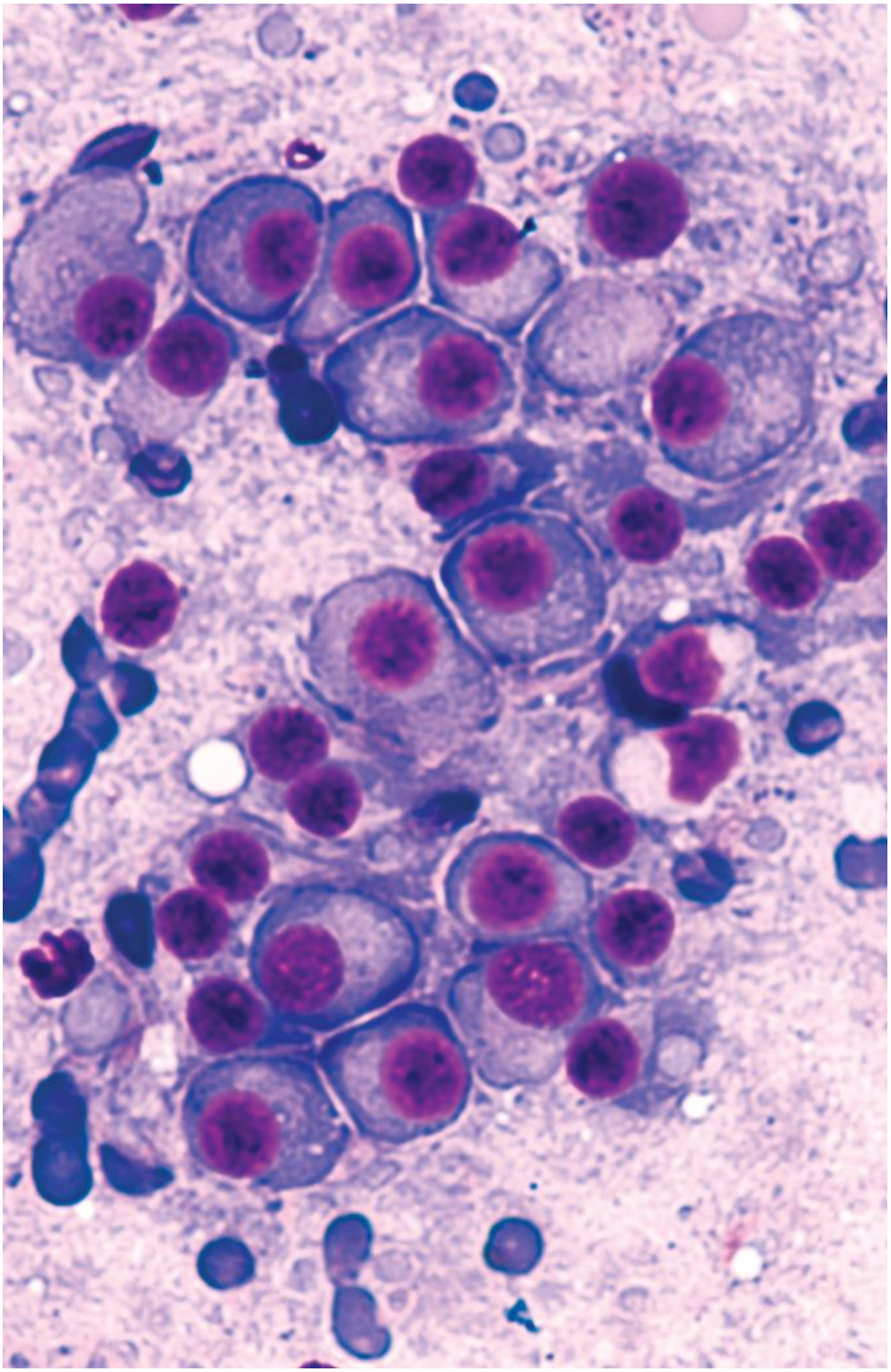
Erythroleukemia cells. Seventeen cells appear as irregular but generally round pale gray shapes. Six of them contain large, round structures that appear in purple.

(C)



Chronic myelogenous leukemia cells. Many cells appear as generally round pale gray shapes. Most are small and contain no visible nuclei, but some are

enlarged and contain visible nuclei stained red. Some of the nuclei appears as large red globes. Others appear as dark, wormlike structures or as clusters of small clumps.
(D)



Multiple myeloma cells. The cells appear against a pale pink background. Their bodies are stained dark blue. The nuclei are visible as purple globes within.

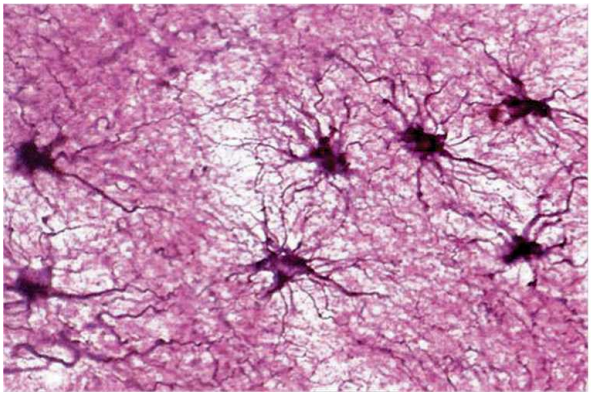
(E)

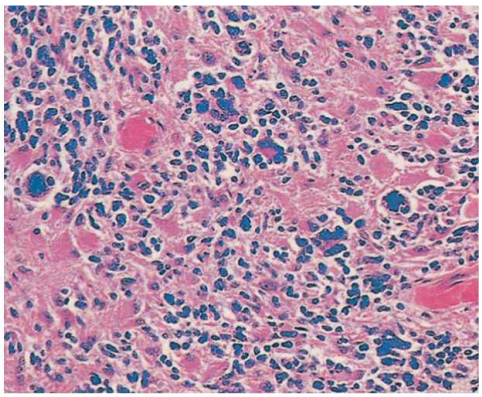
Figure 2.7 Hematologic malignancies (A) Acute lymphocytic leukemias (ALLs) arise from both the B-cell (80%) and T-cell (20%) lineages of lymphocytes. The cells forming this particular tumor (*red-purple*) exhibited the antigenic markers indicating origin from pre-B cells. (B) As in many hematopoietic malignancies, these acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) cells (*blue*) have only a small rim of cytoplasm around their large nuclei. They derive from precursor cells of the lineage that forms various types of granulocytes as well as monocytes, the latter developing, in turn, into macrophages, dendritic cells, osteoclasts, and other tissue-specific phagocytic cells. (C) The large erythroblasts in this erythroleukemia (*dark purple*) closely resemble the precursors of differentiated red blood cells—erythrocytes. (D) In chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), a variety of leukemic cells of the myeloid (marrow) lineage are apparent (*red nuclei*), suggesting the differentiation of myeloid leukemia stem cells into several distinct cell types. (E) Multiple myeloma (MM) is a malignancy of the plasma cells of the B-cell lineage, which secrete antibody molecules, explaining their relatively large cytoplasms in which proteins destined for secretion are processed and matured. Seen here are plasma cells of MM at various stages of differentiation (*purple nuclei*). In some of these micrographs, numerous lightly staining erythrocytes are seen in the background. (A, B, and D, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2003. With permission from Elsevier. C, Richard J. Green / Science Source. E, David A. Litman / Shutterstock.)

The third and last major grouping of nonepithelial tumors arises from cells that form various components of the central and peripheral nervous systems (**Table 2.4**). These are often termed neuroectodermal tumors to reflect their origins in the outer cell layer of the early embryo. Included in this category are gliomas, glioblastomas, neuroblastomas, schwannomas, and medulloblastomas (**Figure 2.8**). While comprising only 1.3% of all diagnosed cancers, these are responsible for about 2.5% of cancer-related deaths. Of note, the developmental origin of much of the central nervous system (CNS) from a primitive neuroepithelial cell layer seems to explain some of the striking similarities between CNS tumors and the carcinomas listed earlier.

Table 2.4 Various types of neuroectodermal malignancies

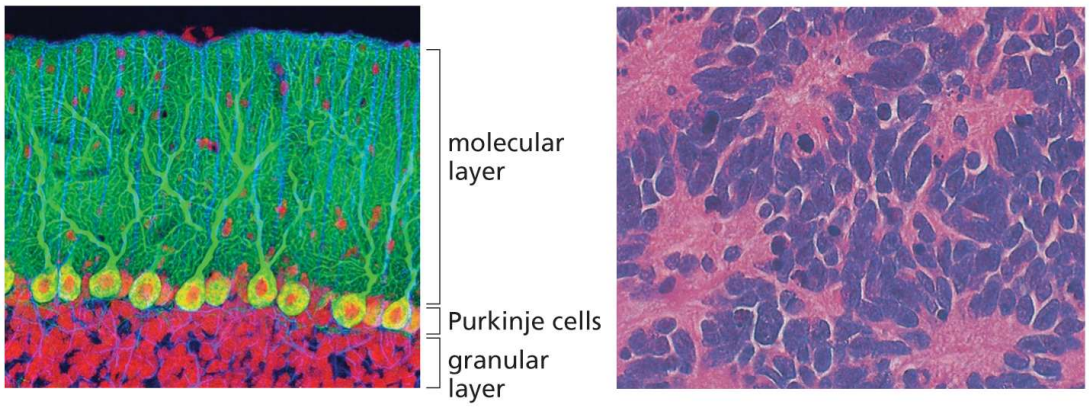
Name of tumor	**Lineage of founding cell**
Glioblastoma multiforme	highly progressed astrocytoma
Astrocytoma	astrocyte (type of glial cell)[a]
Meningioma	arachnoidal cells of meninges[b]
Schwannoma	Schwann cell around axons[c]
Retinoblastoma	cone cell in retina[d]
Neuroblastoma[e]	cells of peripheral nervous system
Ependymoma	glial cells lining ventricles of brain[f]
Oligodendroglioma	oligodendrocyte covering axons[g]
Medulloblastoma	granular cells of cerebellum[h]





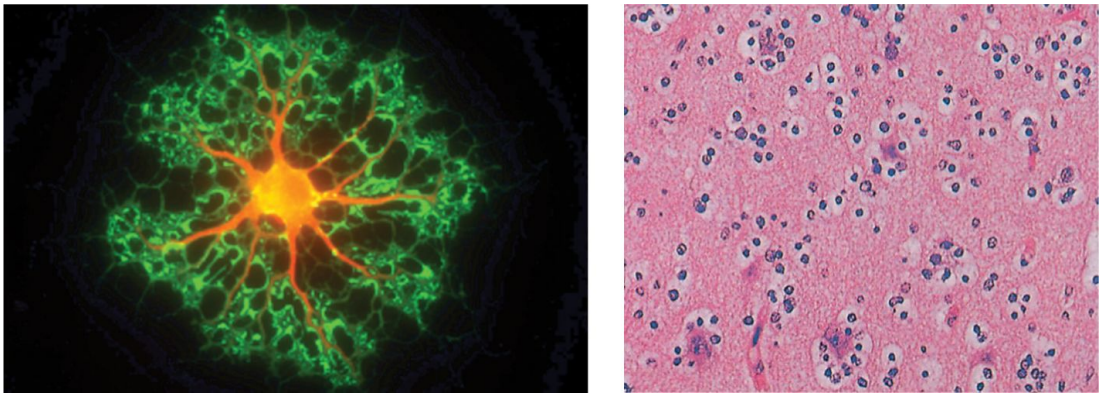
On the left are normal astrocytes, appearing as dark, spidery structures within lighter colored brain tissue. On the right is a sample of cancerous brain tissue. The tissue is irregular and crowded with dark nuclei. A few isolated regions are free of these nuclei.

(A)



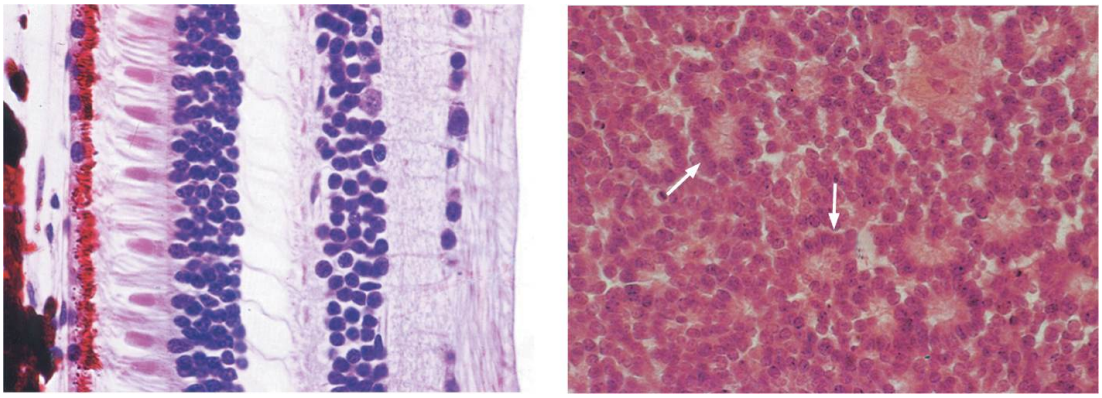
On the left is a cross section of cerebellum cells. At the bottom is the granular layer, with cells that look like a layer of gravel but in bright red. On top of them is a single layer of Purkinje cells, round cells with yellow centers; they look like a long row of fried eggs. Up from these sprouts a thick, spongy blue-green layer that looks like vegetation. This is the molecular layer. On the right are medulloblastomas. Many purple nuclei appear crowded together, but some isolated regions are pink, creating the appearance of a field of flowers with purple petals and pink centers.

(B)



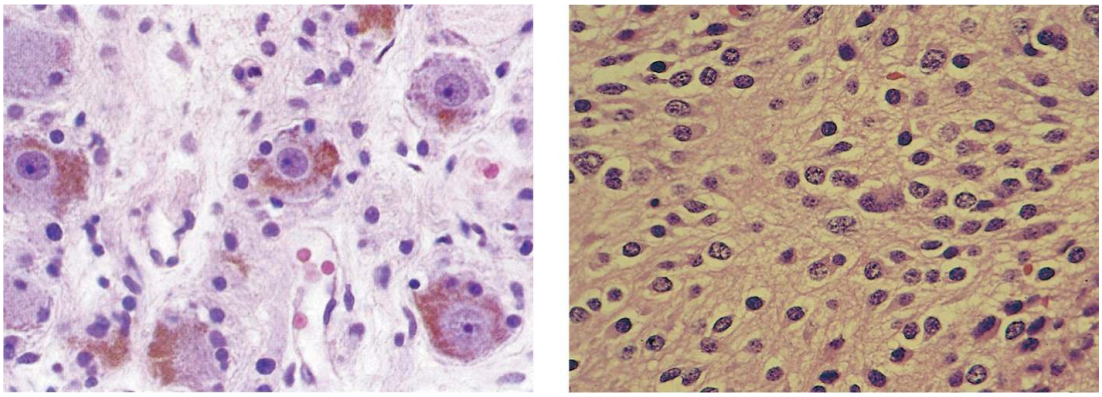
On the right is a tissue sample from an oligodendroglioma. Many cell nuclei appear dark blue within pale halos against a pink background. On the left is a

single normal oligodendrocyte. It looks like a spherical green broccoli floret but with a glowing golden center.
(C)



On the left is a cross section of a normal retina, showing cleanly defined, even layers of cells. On the right is a sample of cancerous retinal tissue, with cells clustered into rosette-like clumps with reddish peripheries and orangish centers.

(D)



On the left are normal nerve cells. Sympathetic ganglia appear dark and round within paler surrounding tissue. On the right is a sample of neuroblastoma tissue, with spidery filaments weaving around and among many tumor cells.

(E)

Figure 2.8 Neuroectodermal tumors (A) Astrocytes—nonneuronal, supporting cells of the brain (*dark purple, left panel*)—are the presumed precursors of astrocytomas and glioblastomas (*right panel*). Glioblastoma multiforme takes its name from the multiple distinct neuroectodermal cell types that constitute the

tumor. The tumor cells are seen to have nuclei of various sizes (*purple*). (B) Cells of the granular layer of the cerebellum (*left panel*) reside below Purkinje cells and cells of the molecular layer in the cortex of the cerebellum. The precursors of granular cells yield medulloblastomas (*right panel*), the cells of which are notable for their ability to differentiate into neurons, glial cells, and pigmented neuroepithelial cells (*purple nuclei, pink cytoplasms*). About one-third of these tumors show the rosettes of cells seen here. (C) Shown is an oligodendroglioma (*right*), which derives from oligodendrocytes, nonneuronal cells of ectodermal origin that support and insulate axons in the central nervous system. Each of the neoplastic cell nuclei here has a halo around it, which is characteristic of this tumor. The cultured normal oligodendrocyte shown here (*left*) exhibits a number of branching (dendritic) arms—each of which associates with one or several axons and proceeds to form an insulating myelin sheath around a segment of each of these axons. The cell body has been immunostained (*yellow/orange*) for the O4 oligodendrocyte marker, while the tips of the dendritic arms (*green*) have been stained for CNPase, an enzyme associated with myelination of axons. (D) Rods, cones, and other neuronal cell types (*left panel*) constitute important components of the normal retina. Retinoblastomas (*right panel*) arise from cells with attributes of the cone precursors present in the normal developing retina. Retinoblastomas often show the characteristic rosettes, indicated here with arrows. (E) Cells of the sympathetic ganglia of the peripheral nervous system (*larger cells, left panel*) give rise to neuroblastomas (*right panel*), which are usually seen in children. The individual tumor cells here are surrounded by dense fibrillary webs, which are derived from neurites—cytoplasmic processes used by neurons to communicate with one another. (A, D, and E, left panels, from B. Young et al., Wheater's Functional Histology, 4th ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 2003. With permission from Elsevier. A–C, right panels, from H. Okazaki and B.W. Scheithauer, Atlas of Neuropathology. New York: Gower Medical Publishing, 1988. With permission of Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research. B, left panel, Thomas Deerinck, NCMIR/Science Source. C, left panel, courtesy of R. Hardy and R. Reynolds. D and E, right panels, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

basement membrane
: The specialized extracellular matrix that forms a sheet separating epithelial from stromal cells or endothelial cells from pericytes. *Also termed* **basal lamina**.

basal lamina
: The specialized extracellular matrix that forms a sheet separating epithelial from stromal cells or endothelial cells from pericytes. *Also termed* **basement membrane**.

stroma
: (pl., **stromata**; adj., **stromal**) (1) The mesenchymal components of normal epithelial and hematopoietic tissues, which may include fibroblasts, adipocytes, endothelial cells, and various immunocytes as well as associated extracellular matrix. (2) A spectrum of similar cell types that constitute the stromal cells within a tumor and are recruited into the tumor from host tissues and lack the somatic mutations born by the tumor cells. *See also* **reactive stroma**.

extracellular matrix
: Meshwork of secreted proteins, largely glycoproteins and proteoglycans, that surrounds most cells within tissues and creates a structural scaffold in the intercellular space.

growth factor
: Secreted protein that is able to stimulate the growth and/or proliferation of a cell by binding to a specific cell-surface receptor displayed by that cell.

carcinoma
: (adj., - **omatous**) A cancer arising from epithelial cells.

endoderm
: Innermost layer of cells in an early embryo, which in chordates serves as precursor of the gastrointestinal tract and associated tissues, including the lungs, liver, and pancreas.

ectoderm
: Outermost layer of cells in an early chordate embryo that gives rise to the skin and nervous system.

mesoderm

Middle layer of cells in an early chordate embryo lying between the ectoderm and endoderm, which is the precursor of mesenchymal tissues, including connective tissues and the hematopoietic system. *See also* mesenchymal.

squamous cell carcinoma

Tumor arising from squamous cells. *See also* **adenocarcinoma**.

keratinocyte

Epithelial cell type found in a variety of epithelial tissues, notably the skin. These cells are named after the cytokeratins that they express, which form key components of the cytoskeleton of these cells. *See also* **cytokeratin.**

adenocarcinoma

Tumor derived from secretory epithelial cells. *See also* **squamous cell carcinoma**.

sarcoma

Tumor derived from mesenchymal cells, usually those constituting various connective tissue cell types, including fibroblasts, osteoblasts, endothelial cell precursors, and chondrocytes.

mesenchymal

(1) Referring to tissue composed of cells of mesodermal origin, including fibroblasts, smooth muscle cells, endothelial cells, and adipocytes. (2) Referring to an individual cell type belonging to this class of cells. (3) Referring to a phenotypic state associated with mesenchymal markers and created by the epithelial–mesenchymal transition cell-biological program. *See* **epithelial–mesenchymal transition**.

fibroblast

Mesenchymal cell type that is common in connective tissues and in the stromal compartment of epithelial tissues and is characterized by its secretion of collagen.

adipocytes

Specialized cells of the mesenchymal lineage, closely related to fibroblasts, that create fat and store it in large globules in the cytoplasm; the dominant cell type in fatty tissues.

osteoblast

Mesenchymal cell type related to fibroblasts that constructs mineralized bone through the deposition of a collagenous matrix and

apatite crystals.

myocytes
: The individual contractile cells that assemble to form functional muscles. *See also* **myoblasts**.

hemangioma
: Benign tumor of endothelial cell origin often seen in infants.

erythrocyte
: Red blood cell.

plasma
: The fluid component of blood that is left behind when its cellular components are removed, usually by centrifugation.

lymphocytes
: Class of leukocytes that mediate humoral or cellular immunity, encompassing B cells, T cells, and NK cells and derivatives thereof.

leukemia
: Malignancy of any of a variety of hematopoietic cell types, including the lineages leading to lymphocytes and granulocytes, in which the tumor cells are nonpigmented and dispersed throughout the circulation. *Compare* **lymphoma**.

lymphoma
: Solid tumor of lymphoid cells. *Compare* **leukemia**.

lymphoid
: (1) Referring to the lymphatic system and its associated organelles. (2) Referring to the lineage of hematopoietic cells that yields B and T lymphocytes as well as natural killer cells. *Compare* **myeloid**.

neuroectodermal
: Referring to the components of the nervous system, which derive from the embryonic ectoderm.

glioma
: A group of central nervous system tumors that arise from glial cells and include ependymomas, astrocytomas, and oligodendrogliomas. *See also* **glioblastoma**.

glioblastoma
: A malignant high-grade glioma that often originates from a low-grade astrocytoma. *Also termed* glioblastoma multiforme. *See also* **glioma**.

neuroblastoma

Tumor of primitive neuronal precursor cells of the peripheral nervous system and adrenal medulla.

schwannoma

Tumor of the Schwann cells.

medulloblastoma

Tumor of the primitive precursors of neurons in the cerebellum.

epithelium

(pl., **epithelia**) A layer of cells that forms the lining of a cavity or duct and the specialized epithelium that forms the skin.

endothelial cells

(1) Mesenchymal cells that form the walls of capillaries or lymph ducts by assuming shapes that allow the assembly of tubelike structures. (2) Mesenchymal cells lining the luminal walls of larger blood vessels or lymph ducts.

lumen

(pl., **lumina**; adj., **luminal**) (1) The bore of a hollow, tubelike structure, such as the gut, a bronchiole in the lung, a blood vessel, or a duct in a secretory organ. (2) The enclosed cavity within a spherical structure, such as a membranous vesicle.

endothelial cells

(1) Mesenchymal cells that form the walls of capillaries or lymph ducts by assuming shapes that allow the assembly of tubelike structures. (2) Mesenchymal cells lining the luminal walls of larger blood vessels or lymph ducts.

hematopoiesis

See **hematopoiesis**: Process that results in the formation of all of the cells in the blood, including its red and white cells, the latter including various cells of the immune system.

OceanofPDF.com

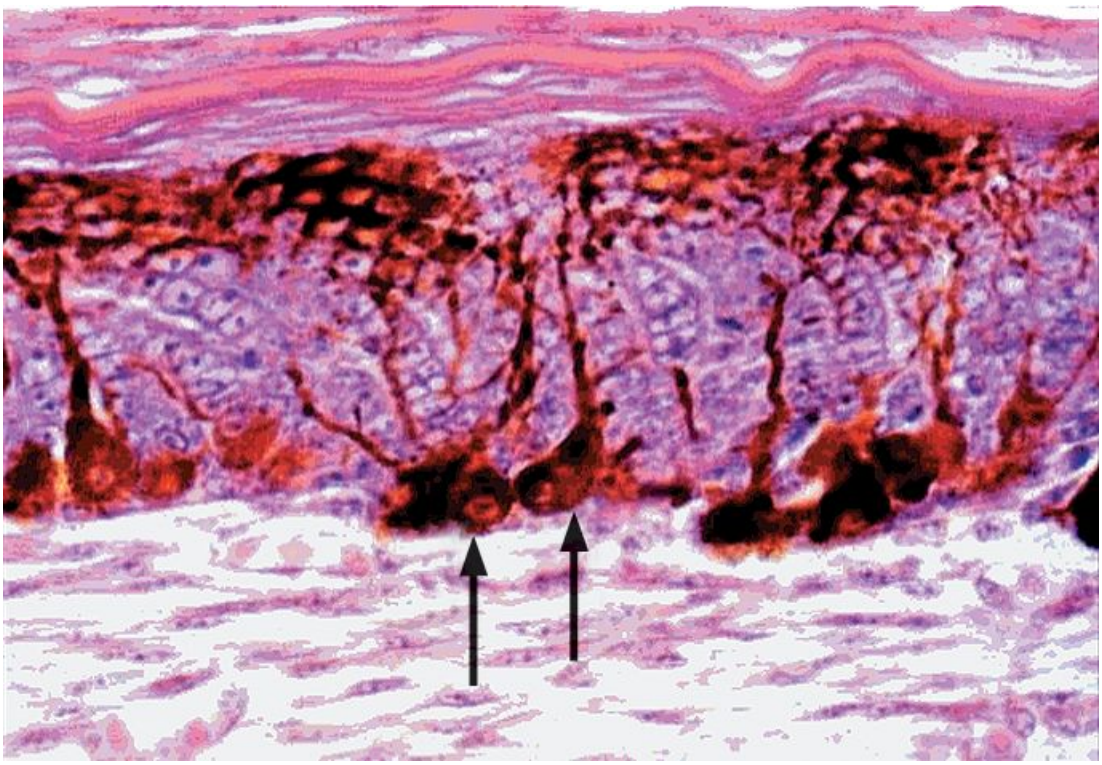
Footnotes

- aThe non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma types, also known as lymphocytic lymphomas, can be placed in as many as 15–20 distinct subcategories, depending upon classification system.Return to reference a
- aNonneuronal cell of central nervous system that supports neurons.Return to reference a
- bMembranous covering of brain.Return to reference b
- cConstructs insulating myelin sheath around axons in peripheral nervous system.Return to reference c
- dPhotosensor for color vision during daylight.Return to reference d
- eThese tumors arise from cells of the sympathetic nervous system.Return to reference e
- fFluid-filled cavities in brain.Return to reference f
- gSimilar to Schwann cells but in brain.Return to reference g
- hCells of the lower level of cerebellar cortex (as a related example, see Figure 2.8B).Return to reference h

OceanofPDF.com

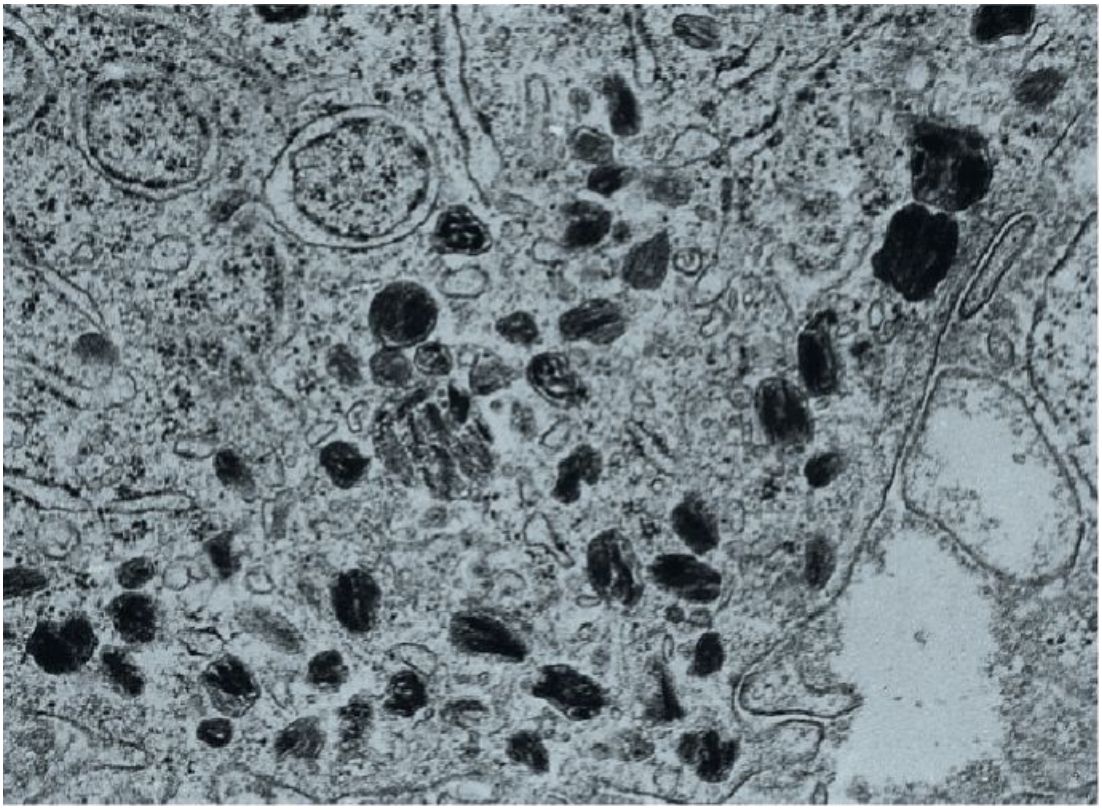
2.3 Some types of tumors do not fit into the major classifications

Not all tumors fall neatly into one of these four major groups. For example, melanomas derive from melanocytes, the pigmented cells of the skin and the retina. The melanocytes, in turn, arise from a primitive embryonic structure termed the neural crest. While having an embryonic origin close to that of the neuroectodermal cells, the precursors of melanocytes end up during development as wanderers that settle in the skin and the eye and provide pigment to these tissues, but establish no direct connections with the nervous system (**Figure 2.9**). Moreover, melanoma cells share many features in common with certain types of carcinoma cells.



Part A shows a cross-section of normal skin. The epithelium layer consists of live keratinocytes. Below the epithelium is stroma tissue, and above the epithelium is layer of dead, flattened keratinocytes. Melanocytes, visible as dark nodues, lie at the boundary between the epithelium and the stroma tissue and extend branches up into the epithelium.

(A)



Part B shows an electron micrograph of dark pigment granules within lighter colored tissue. They look like many small lakes in a large forest.

(B)

Part C is a color photograph of cutaneous melanoma on a person. The cancerous tissue appears as a large collection of black bumps that look like bubbles of tar rising to the surface of the skin.

(C)

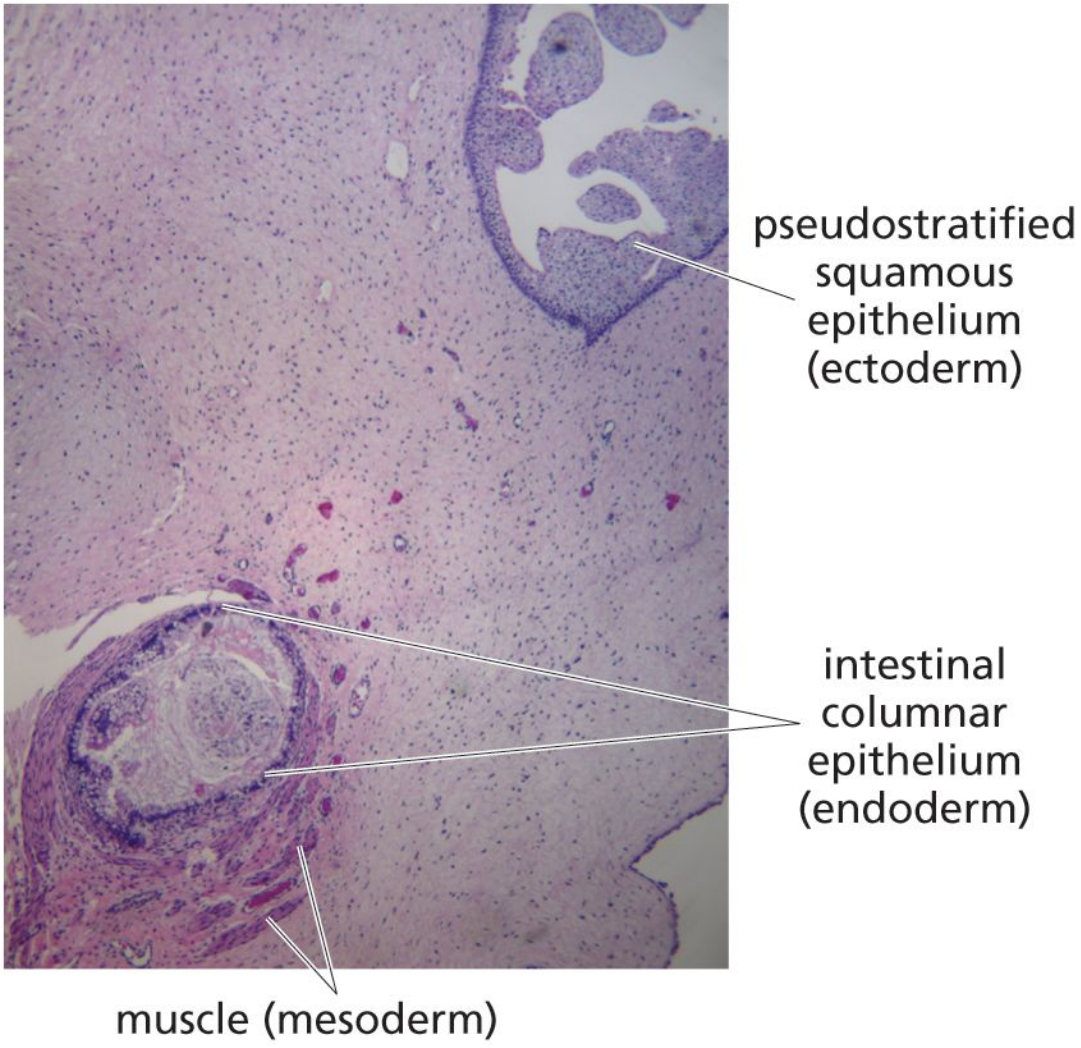
Figure 2.9 Melanocytes and melanomas (A) Melanocytes (*arrows*), which form melanin pigment granules, are normally scattered among the basal keratinocytes of the skin. They extend long, thin cytoplasmic processes through which they deposit these granules in the cytoplasm of keratinocytes, which form the bulk of the epithelium (see Figure 2.5A). Layers of dead keratinocytes at the surface of the skin (*above*) and stroma cells (*below*) are also apparent. (B) The pigment granules, visualized here by transmission electron microscopy, have made melanomas favored objects of research because the metastases that they form are easily visualized. Once melanomas have begun to invade vertically from the superficial layers of the skin into the underlying stroma, they have a high tendency to metastasize to distant tissues. (C) This case of cutaneous melanoma dramatizes the metastatic nature of the disease and the readily observed, pigmented metastases. (A, from W.J. Bacha Jr. et al., Color Atlas of Veterinary Histology, 2nd ed. Ames, IA: Wiley–Blackwell, 2012. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. B and C, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

Small-cell lung carcinomas (SCLCs) contain cells having many attributes of neurosecretory cells, such as those of neural crest origin in the adrenal glands that sit above the kidneys. Such cells, often in response to neuronal signaling, secrete biologically active peptides. It appears that these tumors originate in endodermal stem cell populations of the lung that have shed some of their epithelial characteristics and acquired others that are characteristic of a neuroectodermal lineage.

This switching of tissue lineage and resulting acquisition of an entirely new set of differentiated characteristics is often termed transdifferentiation. The term implies that the commitments that cells have made by individual cells during embryogenesis to enter into one or another tissue and cell lineage are not irreversible, and that under certain conditions, descendant cells can move from one differentiation lineage to another. Such a change in phenotype may affect both normal and cancer cells. For example, at the borders of many carcinomas, epithelial cancer cells often change shape and gene expression programs and take on certain attributes that are usually associated with cells of mesenchymal origin. This dramatic shift in cell phenotype, termed the epithelial–mesenchymal transition, or simply EMT, implies great phenotypic plasticity on the part of cells that normally seem to be fully committed to behaving like epithelial cells. As described later (Chapters 13 and 14), this transition may often accompany and enable the invasion by carcinoma cells into adjacent normal tissues. (This carcinoma-associated EMT exploits a cell-biological program operating in normal tissues during the healing of damaged epithelial cell sheets.) Cells activating an EMT program usually do so reversibly, in contrast to most types of transdifferentiation in which cells shift their tissue-specific phenotypes irreversibly. Importantly, these interconversions involve changes in gene expression programs rather than mutations in the genomes of carcinoma cells.

Of the atypical tumor types, teratomas are arguably the most bizarre of all, in part because they defy all attempts at classification. While only ~10,000 cases are diagnosed worldwide annually, teratomas deserve mention because they are unique and shed light on the biology of embryonic stem (ES) cells, which have become so important to biologists; ES cells enable genetic manipulation of the mouse germ line and are central to certain types of stem cell therapies currently under development. Teratomas seem to arise from germ cell (egg and sperm) diploid precursors (see Section 1.3) that have failed to migrate to their proper destinations during embryonic development and persist at ectopic (inappropriate) sites in the developing fetus. They retain the pluripotency of early embryonic cells—the ability to generate most and possibly all of the differentiated cell types present in the fully developed fetus. The cells in different sectors of common “mature” teratomas—which are largely benign, localized growths—differentiate to create tissues that are very similar at the histopathological level to those found in a variety of adult tissues (**Figure 2.10**).

Typically, representatives of the three cell layers of the embryo—endoderm, mesoderm, and ectoderm (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.2**)—coexist within a single tumor and often develop into recognizable tissue structures, such as those of teeth, hair, and bones. Occasionally these tumors progress to become highly malignant and thus life-threatening.



A tissue sample from a teratoma. Within a large, mostly undifferentiated expanse of pale pink tissue there appear two rounded regions with internal structure. The upper right one contains an irregular mix of empty space and darker tissue labeled pseudostratified squamous epithelium (ectoderm). The lower left rounded region contains a dark, granular ring around a pale core. The granular ring is labeled intestinal columnar epithelium (endoderm). Loosely encircling the dark, granular ring are segments of reddish tissue labeled muscle (mesoderm).

Figure 2.10 Teratomas This teratoma was created by implanting human embryonic stem (ES) cells into a mouse, yielding a tumor that is a phenocopy of the spontaneous teratomas found in children; such “mature” teratomas contain fully differentiated cells and are localized, noninvasive tumors. (Courtesy of Sumita Gokhale.)

Of special interest is the fact that careful karyotypic and molecular analyses of benign, mature teratomas have suggested that the associated tumor cells are genetically wild type. This suggests that such teratoma cells are unique, being the only type of tumorigenic cell whose genomes are truly wild type, in contrast to the cells of essentially all other tumor types described in this book, which almost always carry identifiable genetic aberrations, often in large number.

The occasional rule-breaking exceptions, such as those represented by teratomas and the products of the EMT, do not detract from one major biological principle that seems to govern the vast majority of cancers: while cancer cells deviate substantially in behavior from their normal cellular precursors, they almost always retain many of the distinctive attributes of the normal cell types from which they descend. These vestigial, differentiation-associated traits provide critical clues about the origins of most tumors; they enable pathologists to examine tumor biopsies under the microscope and assign a tissue-of-origin and tumor classification, even without prior knowledge of the anatomical sites from which these biopsies were prepared.

In a small minority of cases (2–5%), the tumor biopsies given to pathologists for analysis have shed virtually all of the characteristic tissue-specific, differentiated traits of the corresponding normal precursor tissues. The cells in such tumors are said to have dedifferentiated, and the tumors as a whole are anaplastic, in that it is no longer possible to use histopathological criteria to identify the tissues from which they have arisen (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.3**). A tumor of this type, by definition detected at a site of metastatic dissemination, is often classified as a cancer of unknown primary (CUP), reflecting the difficulty of identifying the original site of primary tumor formation in the patient. In recent years, however, analysis of molecular markers, such as the methylation patterns of DNA and gene expression patterns, has enabled the identification of the tissues-of-origin of almost 90% of CUPs that could not be classified using only histopathological criteria. It is unclear what forces have driven the shedding of tissue-specific differentiation markers; their elimination may reflect the potentially highly mutable genomes of CUPs (as discussed in Chapter 12), or immunological attacks may have weeded out cancer cell subpopulations within growing tumors that express differentiation-specific proteins (as described in Chapter 15).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

melanoma
: Tumor arising from the melanocytes present as the pigmented cells of the skin, iris, and retinal pigmented epithelium.

neural crest
: Dorsal region of the early chordate embryo that contains cells serving as precursors of various specialized tissue and cell types, including certain cells of the peripheral nervous system, bones of the face, melanocytes, and several types of neurosecretory cells.

small-cell lung carcinoma
: Lung cancer of specialized pulmonary cells having neurosecretory properties.

neurosecretory
: Referring to a cell type that will secrete a substance, such as a hormone, in response to neuronal signals.

adrenal
: Referring to the hormone-producing secretory glands that sit above the kidneys.

transdifferentiation
: Transition by a cell from one differentiation lineage into the phenotypic state characteristic of cells from another, distinct differentiation lineage.

epithelial–mesenchymal transition
: Cell-biological program enabling acquisition by epithelial cells of some of the phenotypes of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts. *Compare* **mesenchymal–epithelial transition**.

teratoma
: Benign tumor formed by embryonic stem cells in which a wide variety of differentiated cell types are formed.

germ cell
: An egg (ovum) or sperm (spermatocyte) or its immediate precursor within the ovary or testis, respectively.

ectopic
: (1) Referring to the expression of a gene or protein in a location or physiological situation where it normally would not be expressed. (2)

Referring to the presence of cells or tissues in an anatomical site where they would not naturally be found in the body. *See also* **orthotopic**.

anaplastic

(Referring to a tumor) having a tissue and cellular architecture lacking the differentiated characteristics of an identifiable tissue-of-origin or tumor type.

cancer of unknown primary

A tumor, often a metastasis, whose histopathological appearance does not permit a determination of its tissue-of-origin within a patient. *See also* **primary tumor**.

pluripotent

Referring to the ability of a stem cell to generate progeny that can participate in the formation of all of the tissues of an embryo except the extraembryonic membranes. *See also* **multipotent**, **totipotent**.

embryonic stem cell

A cell that derives from the inner cell mass of an early embryo and exhibits pluripotent powers, being able to spawn derivatives that can differentiate into all the cell types of an embryo except the placenta. *See also* **pluripotent**.

dedifferentiation

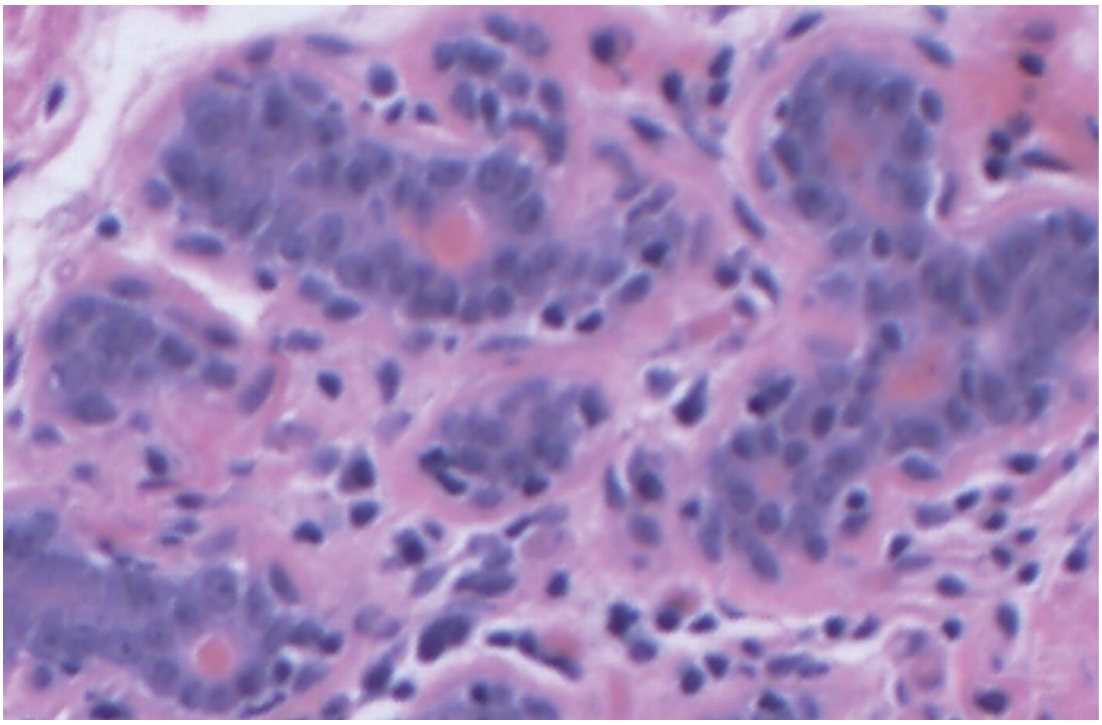
Reversion of a more differentiated cell to the phenotype of a less differentiated cell, such as its stem cell precursor.

OceanofPDF.com

2.4 Cancers seem to develop progressively

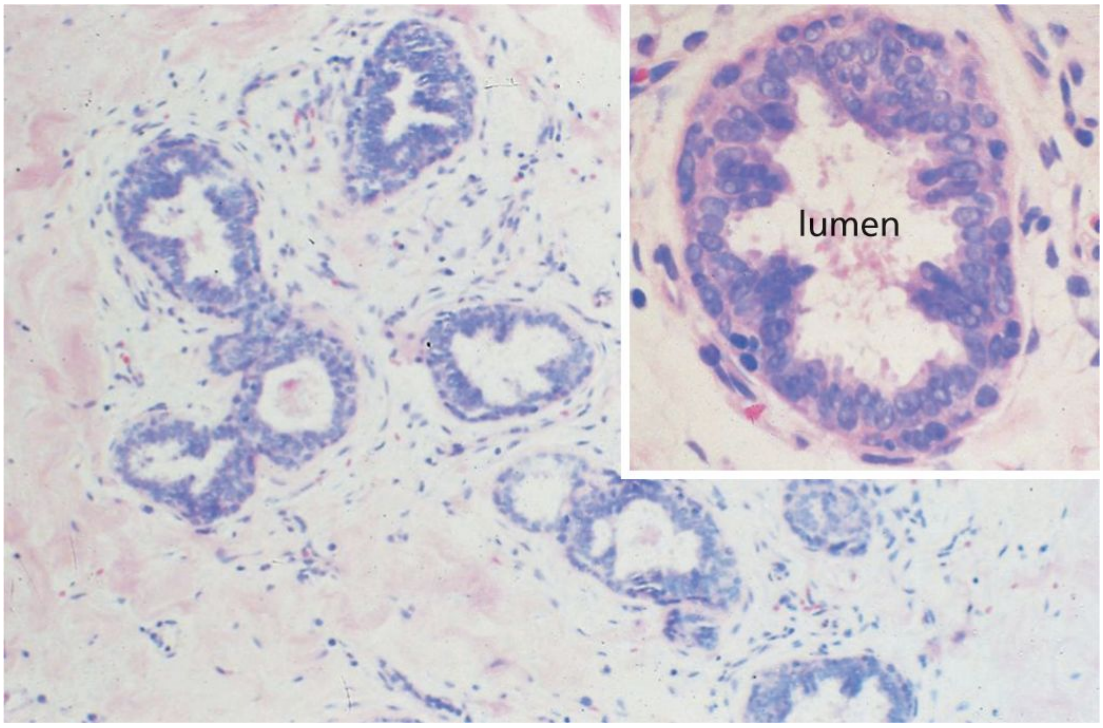
Between the two extremes of fully normal and highly malignant tissue architectures lies a broad spectrum of tissues of intermediate histopathological appearance. The different gradations of abnormality may well reflect cell populations that are evolving progressively toward greater degrees of aggressive and invasive behavior. Thus, each type of abnormal growth detected within a tissue may represent a distinct step along this evolutionary pathway. If so, these architectures suggest, but hardly prove, that the development of tumors is a complex, multi-step process, a subject that is discussed in great detail in Chapter 11.

Some growths contain cells that deviate only minimally from those of normal tissues but may nevertheless be abnormal in that they contain excessive *numbers* of cells. Such growths are termed hyperplastic (**Figure 2.11**). In spite of their apparently deregulated proliferation, the cells forming hyperplastic growths have retained the ability to assemble into tissues that appear reasonably normal.



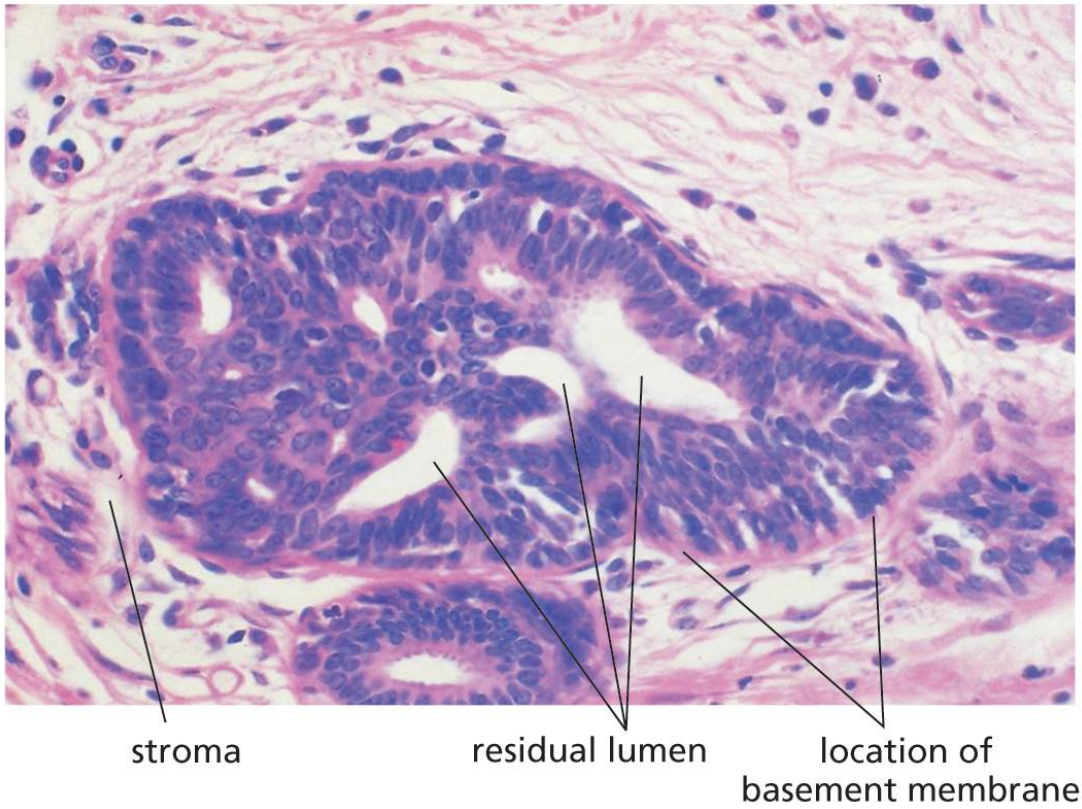
Part A shows normal mammary gland tissue. It is only mildly differentiated into dark, densely packed clusters of epithelial cells within lighter tissue.

(A)



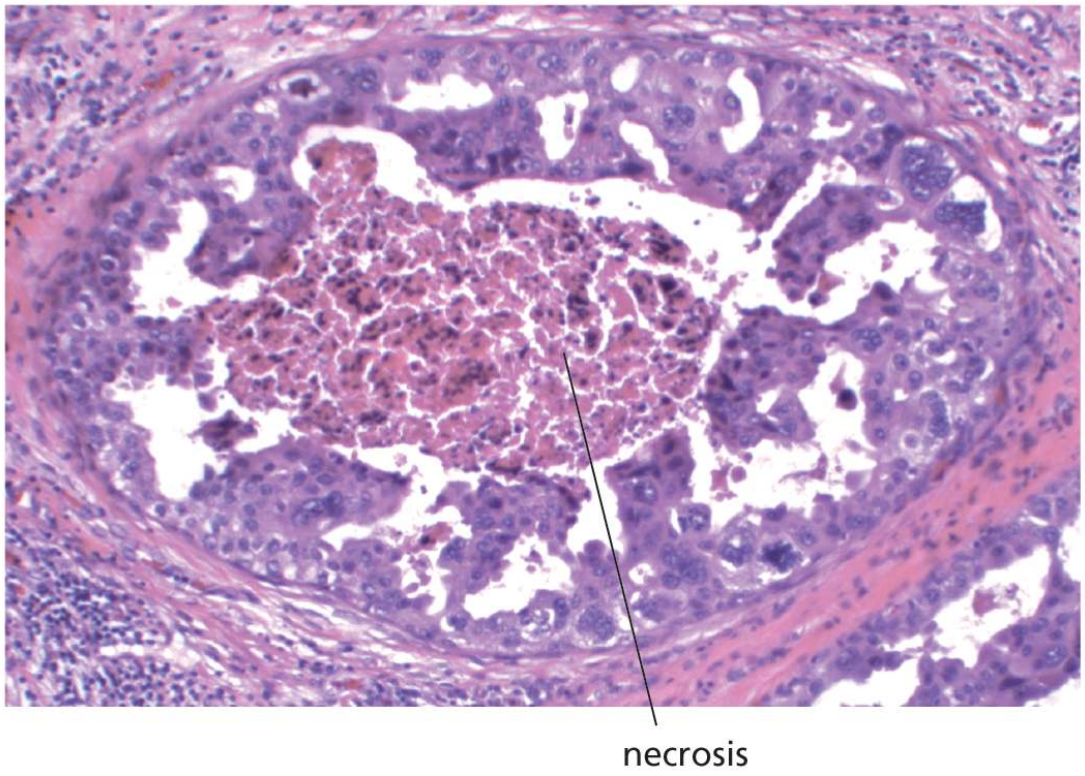
Part B shows mildly hyperplastic mammary gland tissue. It is fairly sharply differentiated into thick, dark epithelial rings each separating a lumen on the inside from much lighter tissue on the outside. An inset shows a dark ring sending spiky projections inward, into the lumen.

(B)



Part C shows severely hyperplastic mammary gland tissue. Epithelial rings have thickened to almost close the inner lumen shut. A few remaining white regions are labeled residual lumen. The tissue outside the rings is labeled stroma. The outer layer of the mass of epithelial tissue is a thin pink layer labeled location of basement membrane.

(C)

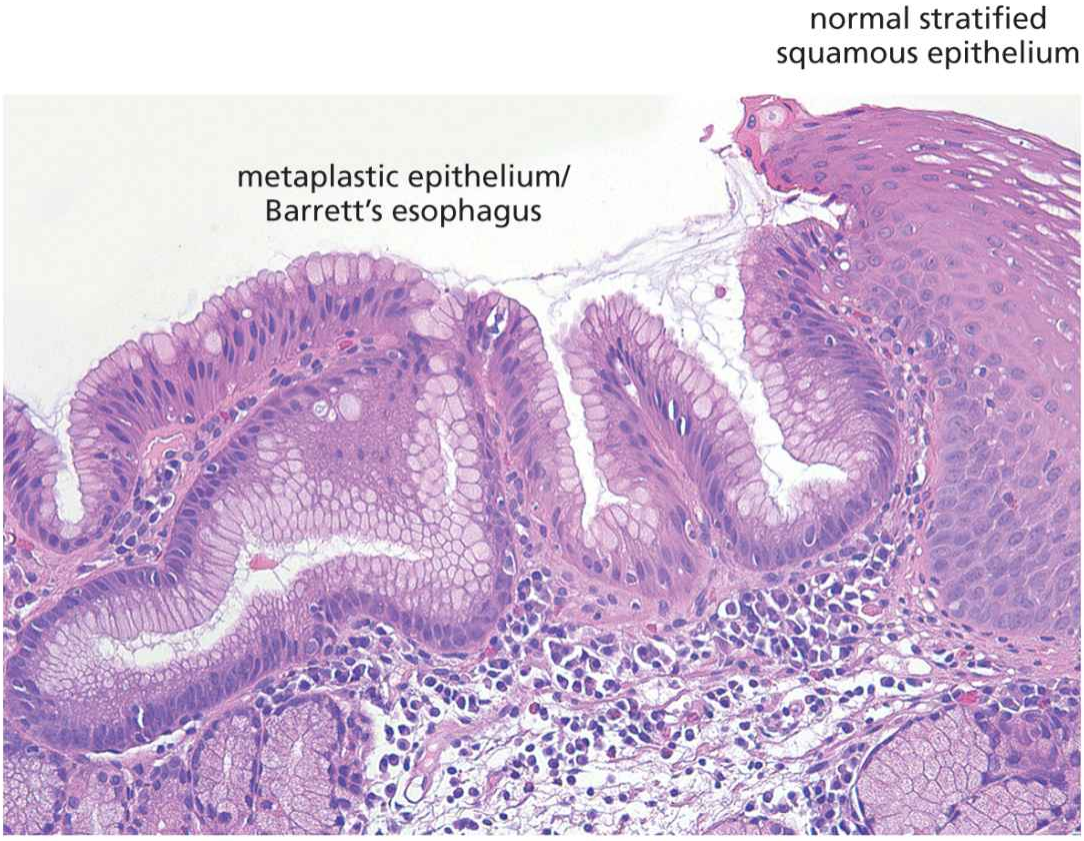


Part D shows an epithelial mass in which the lumen has completely disappeared but irregular open spaces have reappeared due to die-off of the epithelial tissue in the center of the mass. The dead center is labeled necrosis.

(D)

Figure 2.11 Progression of normal mammary tissue to ductal carcinoma *in situ* The morphology of the normal ductal epithelium of the mammary gland, termed a normal terminal ductal lobular unit (A), can be compared with mildly hyperplastic milk ducts (B), shown at low magnification and high magnification (*inset*), in which mammary epithelial cells have begun to form piles that protrude into the lumina. (C) A more advanced hyperplastic mammary duct shows epithelial cells that are crowded together and almost completely fill the lumen. (D) In this ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) the pre-neoplastic cells have proliferated to generate a mass that fills the lumen of a duct and has then suffered necrosis, ostensibly because they lacked access to an adequate blood supply. However, the involved cells have not penetrated the basement membrane (*not visible*) and invaded the surrounding stroma. (A and D, Courtesy of Deborah Dillon. B and C, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

An equally minimal deviation from normal is seen in metaplasia, where one type of normal cell layer within a tissue is displaced by cells of another type that are not normally encountered there. These invaders, although present in the wrong location, often appear completely normal under the microscope. Metaplasia is most frequent in epithelial transition zones where one type of epithelium meets another. Transition zones like these are found at the junction of the cervix with the uterus and the junction of the esophagus and the stomach. In both locations, a squamous epithelium normally undergoes an abrupt transition into a mucus-secreting epithelium. For example, an early indication of premalignant change in the esophagus is the metaplastic condition termed Barrett's esophagus, in which the normally present squamous epithelium is replaced by secretory epithelial cells of a type usually found within the stomach (**Figure 2.12**). Even though these gastric cells have a quite normal appearance, this metaplasia is considered an early step in the development of esophageal adenocarcinomas. Indeed, patients suffering from Barrett's esophagus have a thirtyfold increased risk of eventually developing these highly malignant tumors.

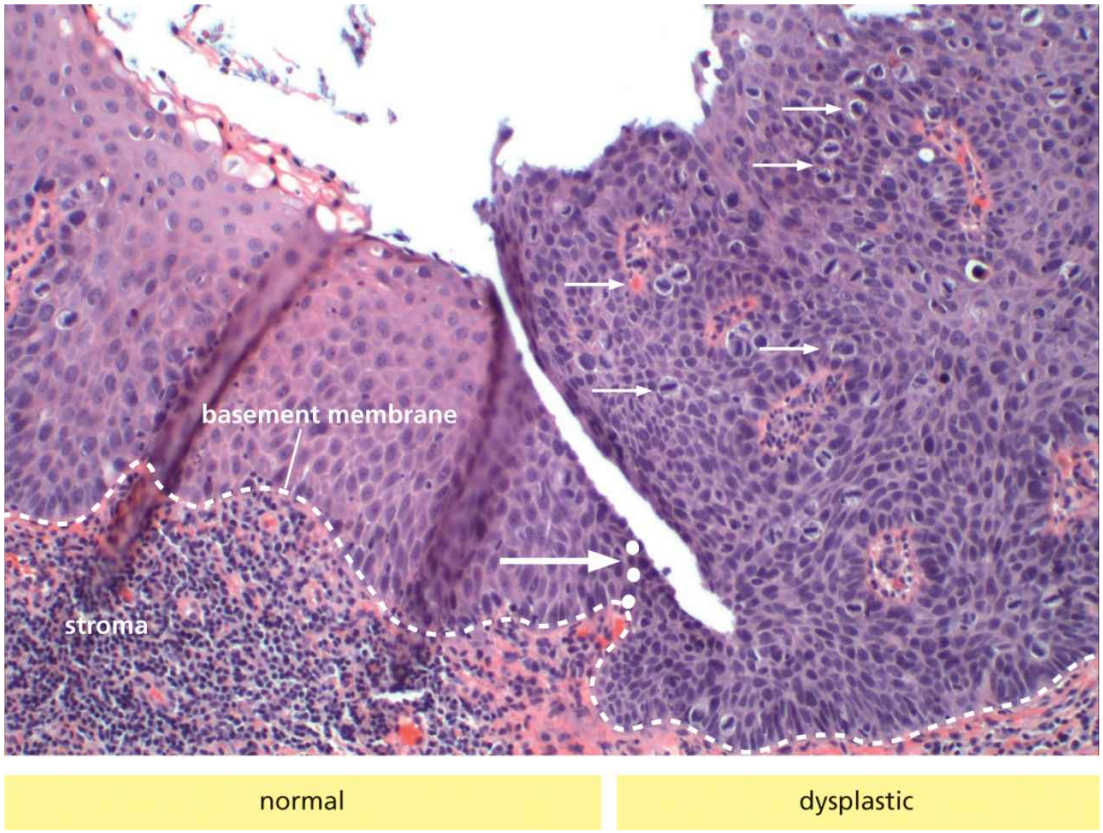


Esophageal epithelial tissue undergoing metaplastic conversion. On the right is normal stratified squamous epithelium, with a layer of flattened cells on the surface. On the left is metaplastic epithelium or Barrett's esophagus. This epithelium is more characteristic of stomach lining. The surface cells are columnar

and the epithelium is multiply folded. The image shows a gradual transition between the two types of epithelium.

Figure 2.12 Metaplastic conversion of epithelia In certain precancerous conditions, the normally present epithelium is replaced by an epithelium from a nearby tissue—the process of metaplasia. For example, in Barrett's esophagus (sometimes termed Barrett's esophagitis), the squamous cells that normally line the wall of the esophagus (residual squamous mucosa) are replaced by secretory cells that migrate from the lining of the stomach (metaplastic Barrett's epithelium). This particular metaplasia, which is provoked by chronic acid reflux from the stomach, can progress to an esophageal carcinoma, which occurs in ~0.5% of Barrett's esophagus patients per year. As seen here, the *left three-quarters* of this image shows the invading columnar epithelium, which is typical of the gastric mucosa, while the *right quarter* shows the remaining squamous epithelium that is typical of the normal esophagus. (From New England Journal of Medicine, Stuart J. Spechler, M.D., Rhonda F. Souza, M.D., Barrett's Esophagus, 371, 836-45. Copyright © 2014 Massachusetts Medical Society. Reprinted with permission from Massachusetts Medical Society. Image: Dr. Robert Genta.)

A slightly more abnormal tissue is said to be dysplastic. Cells within a dysplasia are usually abnormal cytologically, that is, the appearance of individual cells is no longer normal. The cytological changes include variability in nuclear size and shape, increased nuclear staining by dyes, increased ratio of nuclear versus cytoplasmic size, increased mitotic activity, and lack of the cytoplasmic features associated with the normal differentiated cells of the tissue (**Figure 2.13**). In dysplastic growths, the relative proportions of the various cell types seen in the normal tissue are no longer observed. Together, these changes in individual cells and in cell numbers have major effects on the overall tissue architecture. Dysplasia is considered to be a transitional state between completely benign growths and those that are premalignant.



Normal and dysplastic cervical epithelial tissue, side by side in the same sample. On the left, the normal tissue appears as an orderly arrangement of pink cells with dark nuclei. On the right, the dysplastic tissue appears more chaotic and the nuclei are visibly more densely packed together. White arrows point to many small, round inclusions within the dysplastic tissue. The basement membrane separating the epithelium from the underlying stroma runs irregularly left to right across the figure.

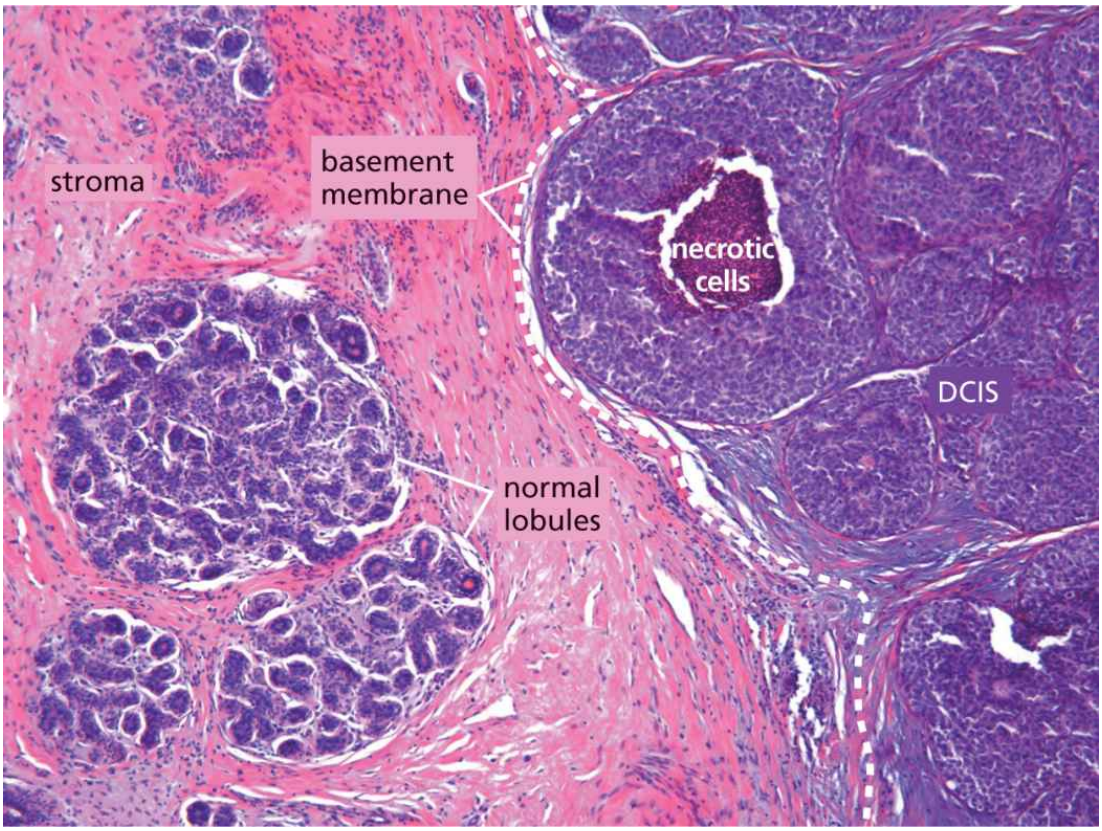
Figure 2.13 Formation of dysplastic epithelium In this intraepithelial squamous neoplasia of the cervix (*to right of white dotted line, large white arrow*), the epithelial cells have not broken through the basement membrane (*not visible, indicated by white dashed line*) and invaded the underlying stroma. The cells in this dysplasia continue to be densely packed all the way to the luminal surface (*above*), in contrast to the more diffuse distribution of cells in the normal epithelium (*left*), whose cytoplasms (*light pink*) increase in size as the cells differentiate. Numerous mitotic figures are also apparent in the dysplasia (*small white arrows*), indicating extensive cell proliferation. (Courtesy of T.A. Ince.)

Even more abnormal are the growths that are seen in epithelial tissues and termed variously adenomas, polyps, adenomatous polyps, papillomas, and, in skin, warts

(**Figure 2.14**). These are often large growths that can be readily detected with the naked eye. They contain all the cell types found in the normal epithelial tissue, but this assemblage of cells has launched a program of substantial expansion, creating a macroscopic mass. Under the microscope, the tissue within these adenomatous growths is seen to be dysplastic. These tumors usually grow to a certain size and then stop growing, and they respect the boundary created by the basement membrane, which continues to separate them from the underlying stroma. Since adenomatous growths do not penetrate the basement membrane and invade underlying tissues, they are considered to be benign.

A polyp protruding from the surface of a colon wall. It looks like a tree rising above a landscape of round shrubs.

(A)



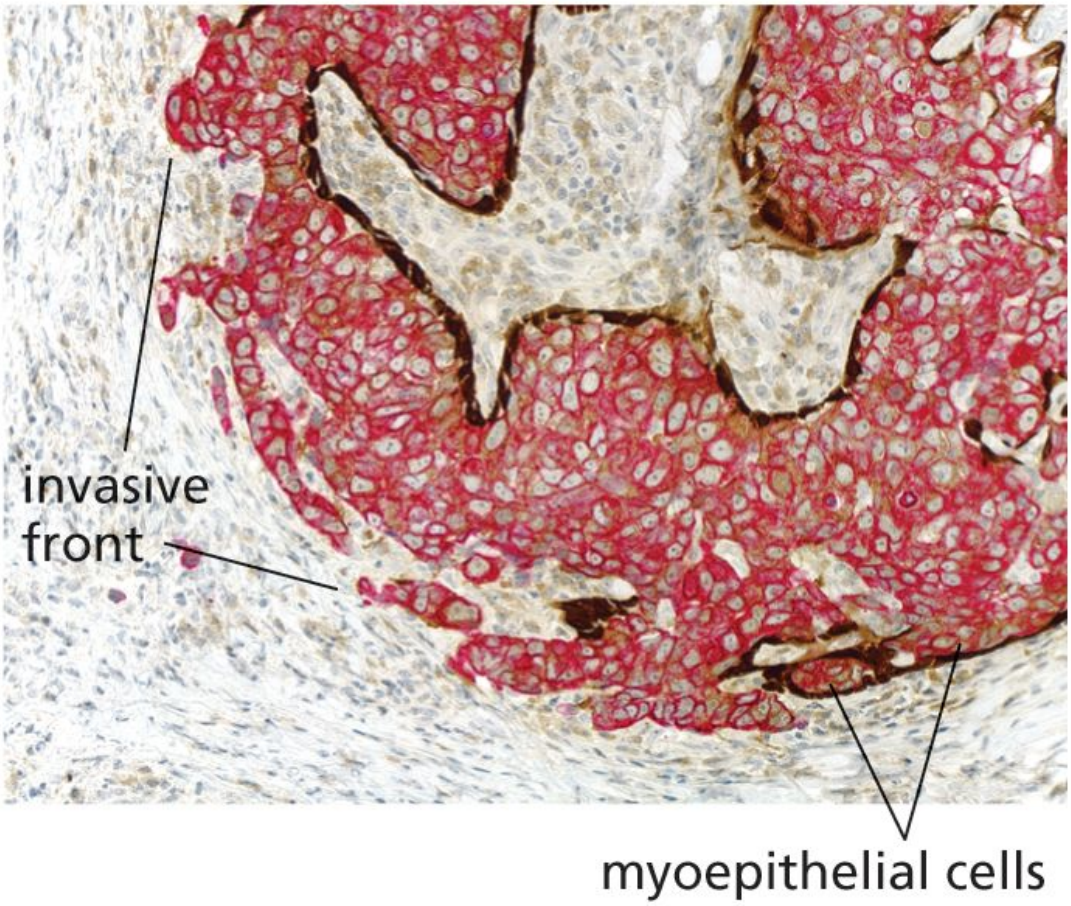
A micrograph of normal and cancerous breast tissue, side by side in the same sample. On the left is normal tissue, with milk-producing lobules that appear purple within the pink stroma surrounding them. Each lobule is a clump of small, round structures. On the right, separated from the normal tissue by basement membrane, is cancerous tissue labeled D C I S. It consists of large purple lumps packed together, with no visible stroma. In one of the lumps, the center has cracked away from its surroundings and appears redder than the other cells. This area is labeled necrotic cells.

(B)

Figure 2.14 Pre-invasive adenomas and carcinomas Adenomatous growths, termed polyps in certain organs, have a morphology that sets them clearly apart from normal and dysplastic epithelium. (A) In the colon, pre-invasive growths appear as either flat thickenings of the colonic wall (sessile polyps; *not shown*) or as the stalk-like growths (pedunculated polyps) shown here in a photograph. These growths, also termed “adenomas,” have not penetrated the basement membrane and invaded the underlying stroma. (B) The lobules of the normal human breast (*purple islands, left half of figure*), each containing numerous small alveoli in which milk is produced, are surrounded by extensive fibrous stroma (*pink*). The cells of an intraductal carcinoma, often called a ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS;

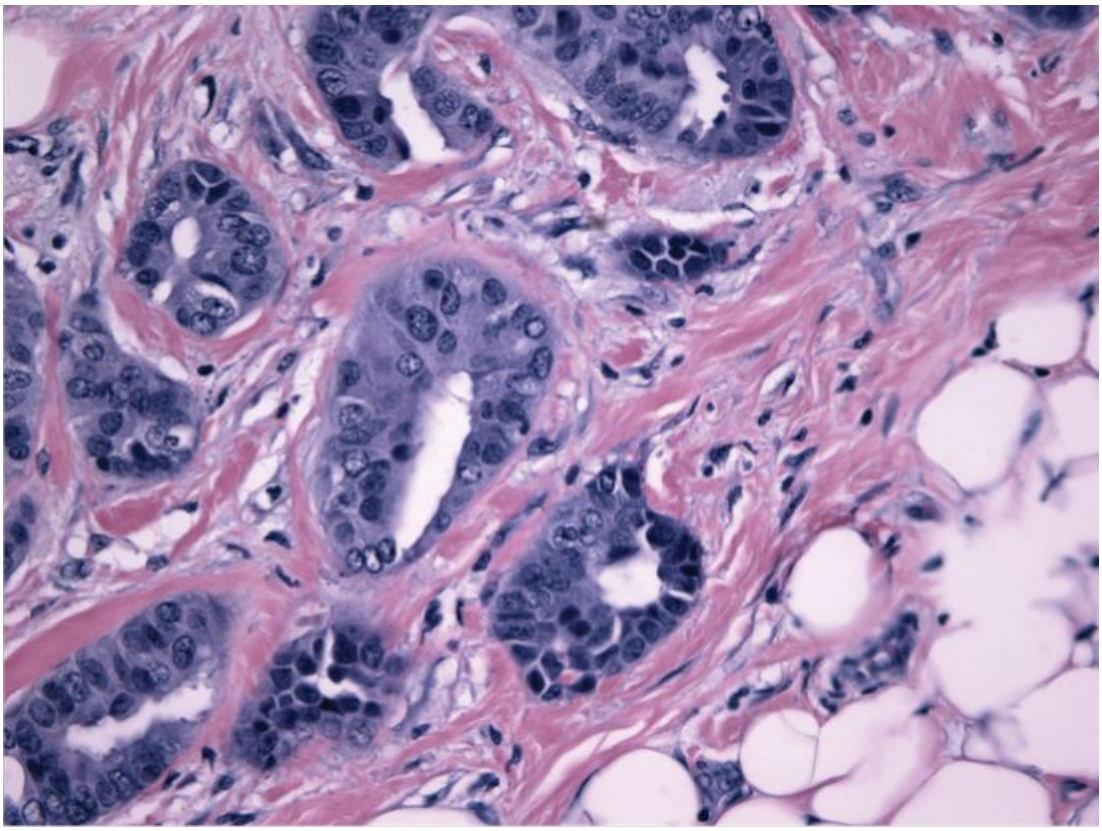
purple, to right of dashed line), fill and distend ducts but have not invaded through the basement membrane surrounding the ducts into the stroma. In the middle of one of these ducts is an island of necrotic carcinoma cells (*dark red*) that have died ostensibly because of inadequate access to the circulation. (A, courtesy of J. Northover and Cancer Research, UK. B, courtesy of T.A. Ince.)

A further degree of abnormality is represented by growths that do indeed invade underlying tissues. In the case of carcinomas, this incursion is signaled the moment carcinoma cells break through a basement membrane and invade into the adjacent stroma (**Figure 2.15**). Here, for the first time, we encounter malignant cells that have a substantial potential of threatening the life of the individual who carries them. Clinical oncologists and surgeons often reserve the word cancer for these and even more abnormal growths. However, in this book, as in much of contemporary cancer research, the word cancer is used more loosely to include all types of abnormal growths. (In the case of epithelial tissues, the term "carcinoma" is usually applied to growths that have acquired this degree of invasiveness.) This disparate collection of growths—both benign and malignant—are called collectively neoplasms, that is, new types of tissue. (Some reserve the term "neoplasm" for malignant tumors.) A summary of the overall pathological classification scheme of tumors is provided in **Figure 2.16**. A short discussion of some of the principles and techniques enabling these classifications can be found in **Supplementary Sidebar 2.4**.



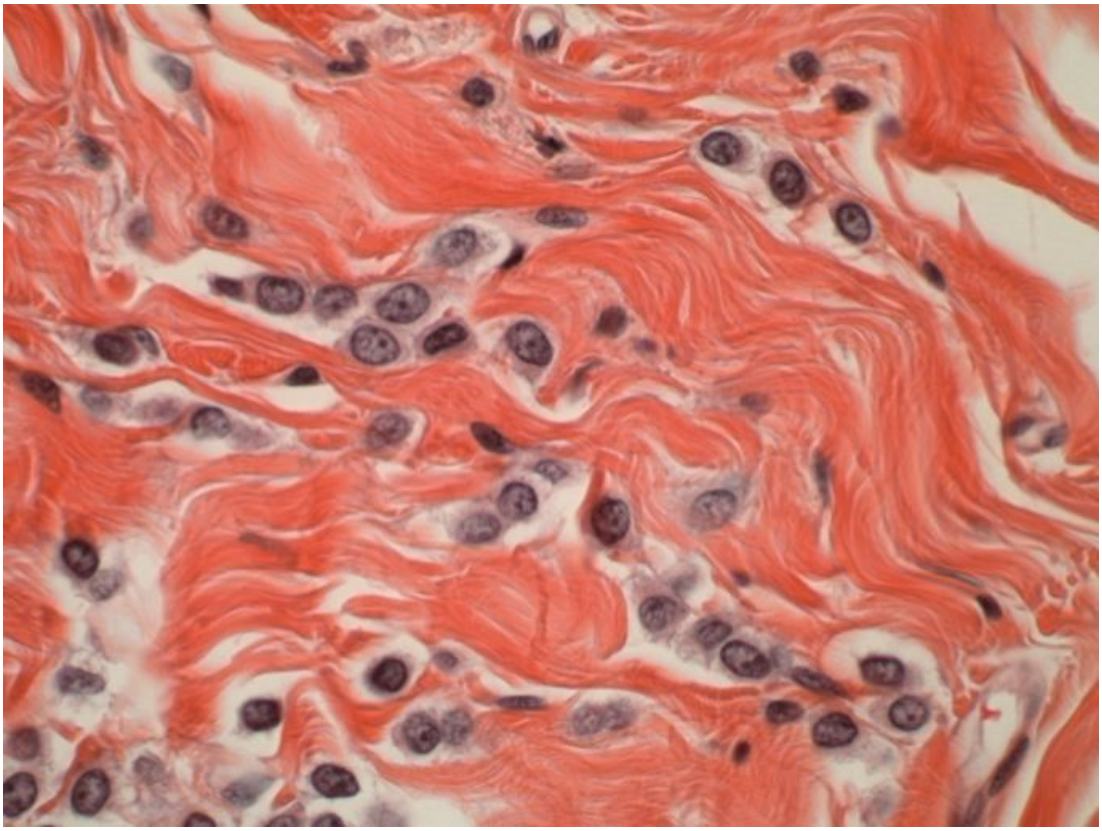
A region of dark red cancer cells appears beside two regions of pale gray stroma cells. In the upper middle and on the right, a thin border of dark brown myoepithelial cells separates the red and the gray. However, in an arc from the lower middle to the upper left, there is no such border, and the red cells are pushing irregularly into the gray area. This arc is the invasive front.

(A)



Rings of dark purple epithelial cancer cells, each ring enclosing a lumen, are interspersed amid dark pink stroma tissue.

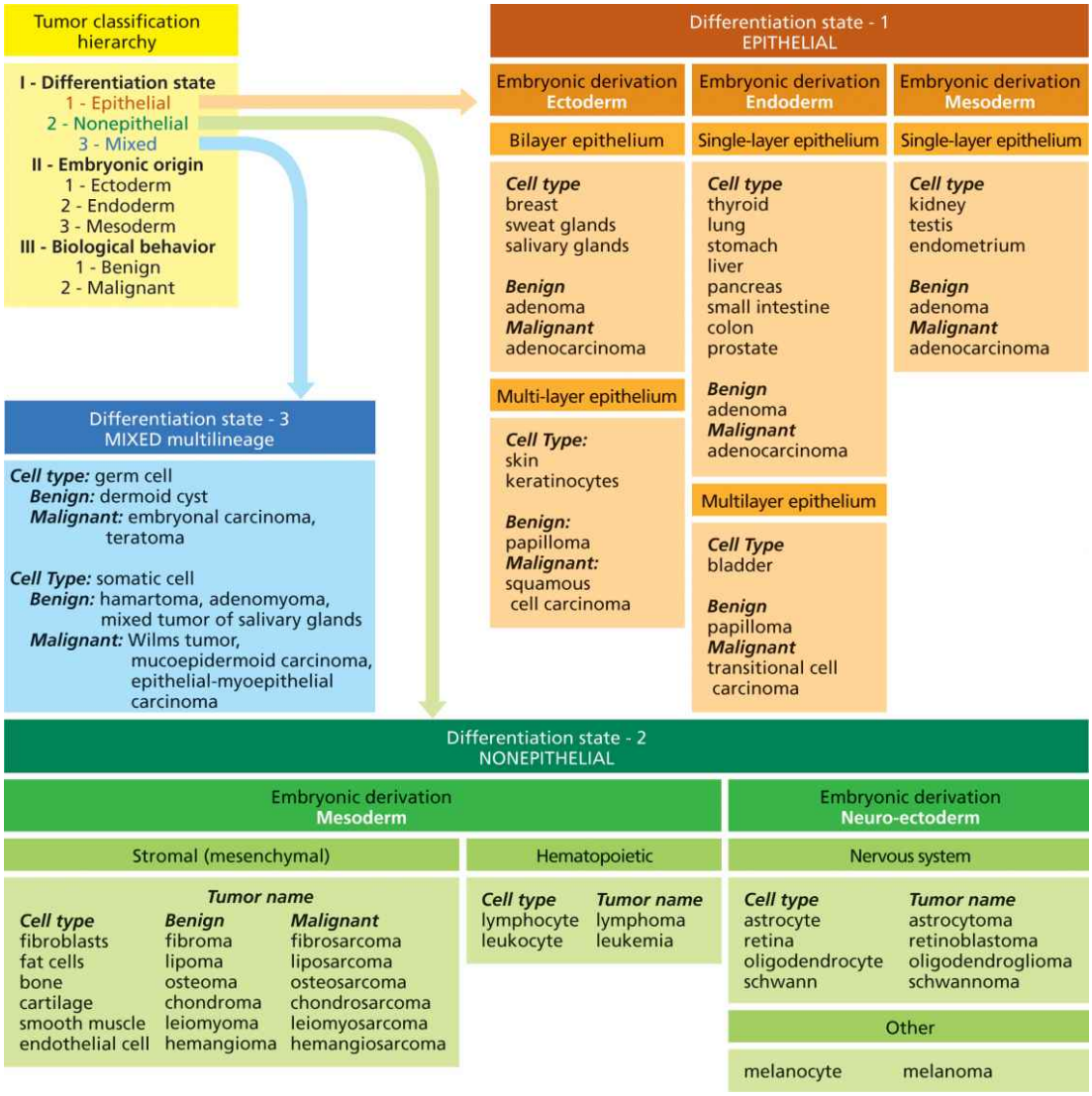
(B)



Striated stroma tissue appears as deep orange. Pale cancer cells with dark purple nuclei look like dark berries in a current of orange water.

(C)

Figure 2.15 Invasive carcinomas Tumors are considered malignant only after they have breached the basement membrane and invaded the surrounding stroma. (A) These breast cancer cells (*dark red*), which previously constituted a ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS; see Figure 2.14B), have now broken through on a broad front the layer of myoepithelial cells (*dark brown, lower right*) and underlying attached basement membrane (*not visible*) into the stroma; this indicates that they have acquired a new trait: invasiveness. (B) After breaching the basement membrane, invasive cancer cells can appear in various configurations amid the stroma. In this invasive ductal carcinoma of the breast, islands of epithelial cancer cells (*dark purple*) are interspersed amid the stroma (*dark pink*). The ductal nature of this carcinoma is revealed by the numerous rudimentary ducts formed by the breast cancer cells. (C) In this invasive lobular carcinoma of the breast, individual carcinoma cells (*dark purple nuclei*) have ventured into the stroma (*red-orange*), often doing so in single-file formation. (A, from F. Koerner, Diagnostic Problems in Breast Pathology. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier, 2008. With permission from Elsevier. B and C, courtesy of T.A. Ince.)



A classification scheme for tumors. Tumors are classified by Differentiation state, Embryonic origin, and Biological behavior.

Differentiation state 1 is epithelial. These cells may be derived from embryonic ectoderm, endoderm, or mesoderm.

Cells derived from embryonic ectoderm may be bilayer or multi-layer epithelium. The bilayer type includes cells in breast tissue, sweat glands, and salivary glands; benign growths are called adenomas, while malignant growths are called adenocarcinomas. The multi-layer type includes skin cells and keratinocytes; benign growths are called papillomas, while malignant growths are called squamous cell carcinomas.

Cells derived from embryonic endoderm may be single-layer or multi-layer epithelium. The single-layer type includes cells in the thyroid, lung, stomach, liver, pancreas, small intestine, colon, and prostate. Benign growths are called adenomas, while malignant growths are called adenocarcinomas. The multi-layer type includes cells in the bladder; benign growths are called papillomas, while malignant growths are called transitional cell carcinomas.

Cells derived from embryonic mesoderm are always single-layer epithelium. These include cells in the kidneys, testes, and endometrium. Benign growths are called adenomas, while cancerous growths are called adenocarcinomas.

Differentiation state 2 is nonepithelial. These cells may be derived from embryonic mesoderm or neuro-ectoderm.

Cells derived from embryonic mesoderm may be stromal (mesenchymal) or hematopoietic. There are six stromal types: fibroblasts, which form benign tumors called fibromas and malignant tumors called fibrosarcomas; fat cells, which form benign tumors called lipomas and malignant tumors called liposarcomas; bone cells, which form benign tumors called osteomas and malignant tumors called osteosarcomas; cartilage cells, which form benign tumors called chondromas and malignant tumors called chondrosarcomas; smooth muscle cells, which form benign tumors called leiomyomas and malignant tumors called leiomyosarcomas; and endothelial cells, which form benign tumors called hemangiomas and malignant tumors called hemangiosarcomas.

There are two hematopoietic types: lymphocytes, which form tumors called lymphomas; and leukocytes, which form tumors called leukemia.

Cells derived from embryonic neuro-ectoderm are most associated with the nervous system. There are four types of these: astrocytes, which form tumors called astrocytomas; retinal cells, which form tumors called retinoblastomas; oligodendrocytes, which form tumors called oligodendrogliomas; and schwann cells, which form tumors called schwannomas. The other cells derived from embryonic neuro-ectoderm are melanocytes, which form tumors called melanomas.

Differentiation state 3 is mixed or multilineage. These cells are of two types: germ cells, which form benign tumors called dermoid cysts and malignant tumors called embryonal carcinomas and teratomas; and somatic cells, which form benign tumors called hamartomas, adenomyomas, and mixed tumors of the salivary glands, and malignant tumors called Wilms tumors, mucoepidermoid carcinomas, and epithelial-myoepithelial carcinomas.

Figure 2.16 Classification scheme of tumors A clear understanding of the histopathological classification of tumors is essential for the study of cancer. However, the entire spectrum of tumors arising in various organs and tissues has been difficult to capture in a single classification scheme that is either purely morphologic or purely molecular. This has necessitated the use of histological features of tumor cells together with information about their respective tissues-of-origin, differentiation states, and biological behaviors; together these make it possible to develop a taxonomy of human tumors that has proven useful for the diagnosis and clinical management of most tumors. The scheme for classifying tumors presented here responds to three critical determinants of tumor biology: the embryonic tissue-of-origin and normal cell-of-origin of the tumor, the phenotype of the cell that has undergone transformation (e.g., epithelial vs. mesenchymal), and the extent of progression to a highly malignant state. This scheme allows classification of the great majority of, but not all, human tumors. (Courtesy of T.A. Ince.)

As mentioned earlier, cells in an initially formed primary tumor may seed new tumor colonies at distant sites in the body through the process of metastasis. This process is itself extraordinarily complex, and it depends upon the ability of cancer cells to invade adjacent tissues, to enter into blood and lymph vessels, to migrate through these vessels to distant anatomical sites, to leave the vessels and invade adjacent tissue, and to found new tumor cell colonies at the distant sites. These steps are the subject of detailed discussion in Chapter 14.

Because the various growths cataloged here represent increasing degrees of tissue abnormality, it would seem likely that they are distinct stopping points along the road of tumor progression, in which a normal tissue evolves progressively into one that is highly malignant. However, the precursor–product relationships of these various growths (that is, normal → hyperplastic → dysplastic → neoplastic → metastatic) are only suggested by the above descriptions but by no means proven.

We will postpone until Chapter 11 an in-depth discussion of multi-step tumor progression. Not discussed here are another set of changes that occur in cancer cells as they progress toward high-grade malignancy: their profound changes in metabolism, largely involving energy metabolism. The observed shifts in metabolic pathways appear to be critical for tumor growth, but for reasons that are not yet clear.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

metaplasia
: Replacement within a tissue of cells of one differentiation lineage by cells belonging to another lineage.

Barrett's esophagus
: Metaplasia in which squamous epithelium of the esophagus is replaced by secretory epithelial cells of a type normally found in the stomach. *See also* **metaplasia**.

adenoma
: (adj., - **omatous**) Any of a series of premalignant, noninvasive growths in various epithelial tissues, many of which have the potential to progress further to carcinomas. *See also* **polyp**.

polyp
: A tumor, usually presumed to be premalignant, protruding into the lumen of an organ, such as gut or bladder, often equated with an adenoma. *See also* **adenoma, polyposis**.

papilloma
: Benign, adenomatous proliferation of epithelial cells; term often used to describe benign lesions of the skin.

cancer
: (1) A clinical condition that is manifested by the presence of one or another type of neoplastic growth. (2) A malignant tumor.

neoplasm
: A tumor. *See also* **neoplasia**.

tumor progression
: (1) Process of multi-step evolution of a normal cell into a fully neoplastic, malignant tumor cell. (2) Evolution of a benign into a malignant cancer cell or growth. (3) Evolution of a premalignant cell from a promoter-dependent to a promoter-independent state.

hyperplasia
: (adj., - **plastic**) (1) Accumulation of excessive numbers of normal-appearing cells within an otherwise normal-appearing tissue. (2) An increase in the size of a tissue or organ, usually due to increased cell number rather than increased size of constituent cells.

dysplasia

(adj., - **plastic**) A premalignant tissue composed of abnormally appearing cells forming a tissue architecture that deviates from normal.

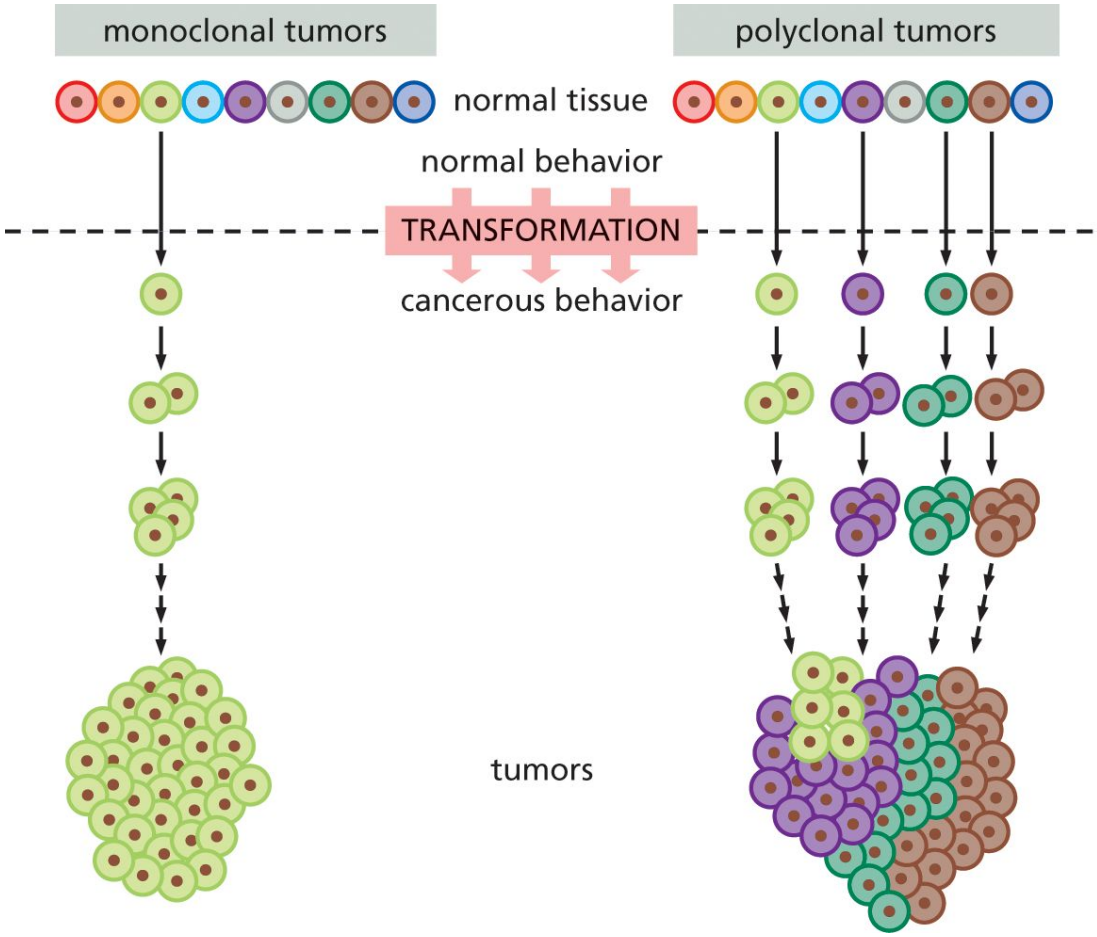
cytology

(adj., -**logical**) (1) Analysis of subcellular structure under the microscope. (2) The microscopic appearance of a cell.

OceanofPDF.com

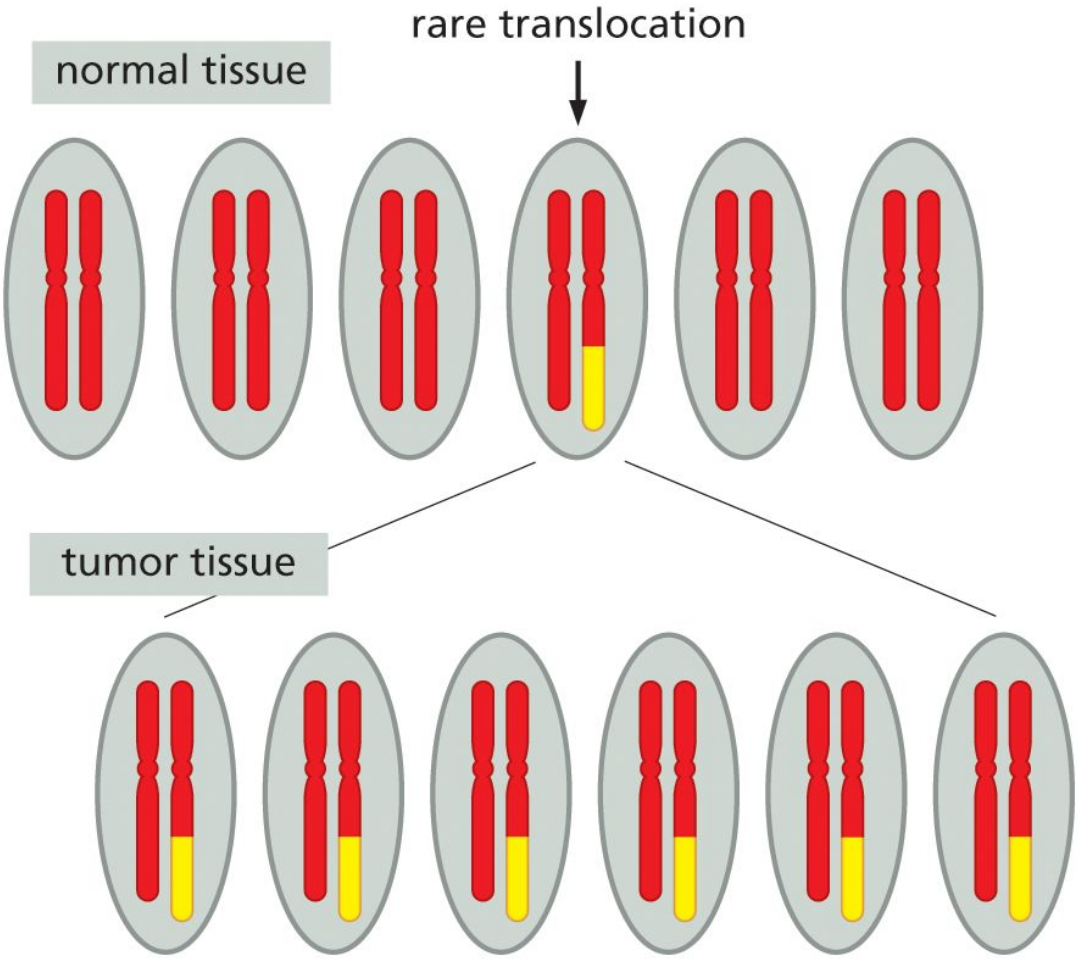
2.5 Tumors are monoclonal growths

Even if we accept the notion that tumors arise through the progressive alteration of normal cells, another question remains unanswered: How many normal cells are the ancestors of those cells that congregate to form a tumor (**Figure 2.17A**)? Do the tumor cells descend from a single ancestral cell that crossed over the boundary from normal to abnormal growth? Or did a large cohort of normal cells undergo this change, each becoming the ancestor of a distinct subpopulation of cells within a tumor mass?



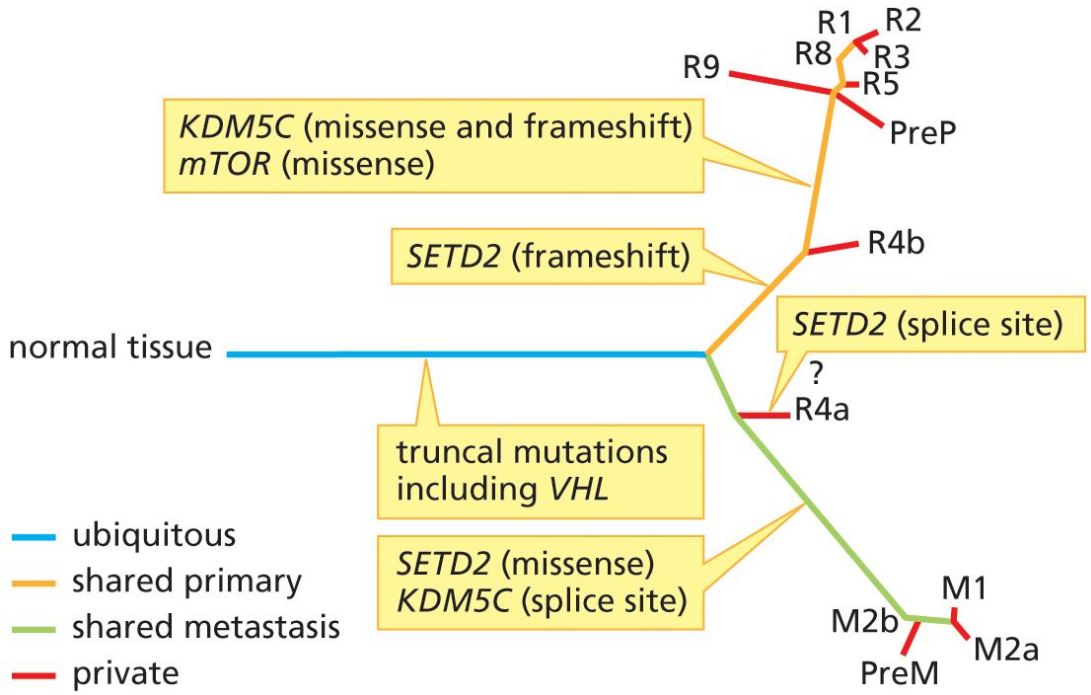
A monoclonal tumor after a single cell type within normal tissue undergoes transformation and multiplies expressing cancerous behavior. It also shows a polyclonal tumor forming after several different cell types within normal tissue undergo transformation, multiply, and the resulting tumors clump together.

(A)



A row of similar, normal tissue cells with a pair of chromosomes in each. One of them contains a rare translocation, an exchange of segments between two different nonhomologous chromosomes. When this cell multiplies, all cells in the resulting tumor tissue have the same translocation.

(B)



A genealogic tree that depicts the genetic relationships between the multiple subpopulations of cells coexisting within an advanced kidney carcinoma. The long blue trunk of the tree begins with normal tissue. Truncal mutations, including V H L, take place along this trunk. This trunk ends with a branching in two directions. In one direction lies an orange branch labeled S E T D 2 (frameshift) and, farther along, K D M 5 C (missense and frameshift) and m T O R (missense). Points along the orange branch, many associated with small red branches, are labeled R1, R2, R3, R5, R8, R9, Pre P, and R4b. In the other direction from branching off the trunk lies a green branch labeled S E T D 2 (missense), K D M 5 C (splice site). Points along the green branch, many associated with small red branches, are labeled M1, M2a, M2b, and Pre M. A small red branch labeled M4a has a question mark by it. This is labeled S E T D 2 (splice site).

(C)

Figure 2.17 Monoclonality versus polyclonality of tumors (A) In theory, tumors may be polyclonal or monoclonal in origin. In a polyclonal tumor (*right*), multiple cells cross over the border from normalcy to malignancy to become the ancestors of several genetically distinct subpopulations of cells within a tumor mass. In a monoclonal tumor (*left*), only a single cell is transformed from normal to cancerous behavior to become the ancestor of the cells in a tumor mass. (B) Illustrated is an unusual translocation (*arrow*) that involves exchange of segments between two different (nonhomologous) chromosomes—a *red* and a *yellow*

chromosome. (Only one of the two chromosomal products of the translocation is shown here.) The translocation creates a characteristic “signature” that distinguishes the affected cell from the surrounding population of karyotypically normal cells (*top row*). Since all of the cancer cells within a subsequently arising tumor carry the identical, rare translocation (*bottom row*), this indicates their descent from a common progenitor in which this translocation initially occurred. (C) As tumors progress, an initial monoclonal cell population descended from a founder cell becomes increasingly heterogeneous due to progressive accumulation of random genetic errors affecting labeled genes; only some of these mutations may create functionally important alleles that drive further tumor progression. Each mutation creates a new genetically distinct subpopulation, and thus each subpopulation is characterized by the unique combination of mutant alleles that it carries. The resulting formation of multiple genetically distinct cancer cell subpopulations, however, disguises the fact that all of these subpopulations of cells trace their origins to a common genetic founding population that already carried its own set of mutations (e.g., *VHL*); these commonly shared (ubiquitous) mutant alleles are often termed truncal mutations to reflect their presence in the trunk (*blue*) of the genealogic tree that depicts the genetic relationships between the multiple subpopulations of cells coexisting within an advanced kidney carcinoma under study. The length of the branches is calculated by the numbers of random genetic errors accumulated in intergenic DNA. R, specific sub-regions of the primary tumor; M, metastasis; PreP, primary tumor sample isolated before chemotherapy; PreM, metastasis isolated before chemotherapy; private, found uniquely in this sample. (R4a and R4b are the subclones detected in R4. A question mark indicates that the detected *SETD2* splice-site mutation probably resides in R4a, whereas R4b most likely shares the *SETD2* frameshift mutation also found in other primary-tumor regions.) The fact that three subpopulations independently acquired a mutation in the *SETD2* gene indicates that each acquired significant proliferative advantage from mutation of this particular gene beyond the advantage conferred by the existing truncal mutations. (C, from M. Gerlinger et al., *New Engl. J. Med.* 366:883–892, 2012. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

The most effective way of addressing this issue is to determine whether all the cells in a tumor share a common, highly unique genetic or biochemical marker. For example, a randomly occurring somatic mutation might mark a cell in a very unusual way. If this particular genetic marker were present in all cells within a tumor, this would indicate that they all descend from an initially mutated cell. Such a population of cells, all of which derive from a common ancestral cell, is said to be monoclonal. Alternatively, if the tumor mass were composed of a series of genetically distinct subpopulations of cells that give no indication of a common origin, it can considered to be polyclonal.

A number of experimental strategies have been pursued to demonstrate the monoclonality of the neoplastic cells within a tumor (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.5**). Perhaps the most vivid demonstrations of tumor monoclonality have come from cancer cells sporting a variety of chromosomal aberrations that can be visualized microscopically when chromosomes condense during metaphase of mitosis. Often, a very peculiar chromosomal abnormality—the clear result of a rare random genetic accident—is seen in all the cancer cells within a tumor mass (Figure 2.17B). This observation makes it obvious that all the malignant cells within this tumor descend from the single ancestral cell in which this unusual chromosomal restructuring originally occurred.

While such observations seem to provide compelling proof that tumor populations are monoclonal, tumorigenesis may actually be more complex. Let us imagine, as a counterexample, that 10 normal cells in a tissue simultaneously crossed over the border from being normal to being malignant (or at least premalignant) and that each of these cells, and its descendants in turn, proliferated uncontrollably. Each of these founding cells would spawn a large monoclonal population, and the tumor mass, as a whole, consisting of a mixture of these 10 cell populations, would be polyclonal.

It is highly likely that each of these 10 clonal populations varies subtly from the other 9 in a number of characteristics, among them the time required for their cells to double. Simple mathematics indicates that a cell population that exhibits a slightly shorter doubling time will, sooner or later, outgrow all the others, and that the descendants of these cells will dominate in the tumor mass, creating what will appear to be a monoclonal tumor. In fact, many tumors seem to develop over decades, which is plenty of time for one clonal subpopulation to dominate in the overall tumor cell population. Hence, the monoclonality of the cells in a large tumor mass hardly proves that this tumor was strictly monoclonal during the early stages of its development.

As we will discuss in great detail in Chapters 11 and 12, the population of cells within a tumor may begin as a relatively homogeneous collection of cells (thereby constituting a true monoclonal growth), but soon may become quite heterogeneous because of the continual acquisition of new mutant alleles by some of its cells, this being the consequence of the elevated genetic instability observed in most neoplastic cells (described in Chapter 12). The great majority of acquired variant alleles may have minimal if any effects on the phenotype of the evolving cancer cells belonging to a subpopulation of cancer cells, neither aiding nor hindering their proliferation and thus their representation among the larger populations of cancer cells within a tumor. However, each of these mutant alleles demarcates a genetically distinct subclone and the tumor, as a whole, becomes polyclonal. In fact, analyses of the genomes of the cells within such a tumor generates the analog of a genealogical tree, with repeated cycles of branching and outgrowth of genetically distinct subpopulations (Figure 2.17C). Indeed, the accumulated genetic intra-tumoral heterogeneity may mask the

true monoclonal origin of the cells within this tumor. However, as the tree of Figure 2.17C reveals, all the variant subpopulations within a tumor will still share in common a mutation or set of mutant alleles that can be ascribed to a common ancestral population at the trunk of the tree, leading to the increasingly used term of truncal mutations. As we will see in Chapters 16 and 17, this genetic diversification of tumor cells holds important implications for cancer therapy and the successful eradication of populations of cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

monoclonal
: Describing a population of cells, all of which derive by direct descent from a single common ancestral cell. *See also* **oligoclonal**, **polyclonal**.

polyclonal
: Describing a population of cells that trace their origins to multiple founding ancestral cells. *See also* **monoclonal**, **oligoclonal**.

truncal
: Referring to a genetic alteration that is present in the genomes of all of the otherwise-heterogeneous neoplastic cells within a tumor and is indicative of their shared descent from a common ancestral cell; such mutations are associated with the trunk of a branched tree drawn to depict graphically the evolutionary history of these cells from their common ancestor.

OceanofPDF.com

2.6 Cancers occur with vastly different frequencies in different human populations

The nature of cancer suggests that it is a disease of chaos, a breakdown of existing biological order within the body. More specifically, the disorder seen in cancer appears to derive directly from malfunctioning of the controls that are normally responsible for determining when and where cells throughout the body will multiply. In fact, there is ample opportunity for the disorder of cancer to strike a human body. Most of the more than the $\sim 3 \times 10^{13}$ cells in the adult body continue to carry the genetic information that previously allowed them to come into existence and might, in the future, allow them to multiply once again. This explains why the risk of uncontrolled cell proliferation in countless sites throughout the body is substantial throughout the lives of mammals like ourselves.

To be more precise, the risk of cancer is far greater than the $\sim 3 \times 10^{13}$ cell population size would suggest, since this number only represents the average, steady-state population of cells in the body at any point in time during adulthood. The aggregate number of cells that are formed during an average human lifetime is about 10^{16}, a number that testifies to the enormous amount of cell turnover—involving cell death and replacement (almost 10^7 events per second)—that occurs continuously in many tissues in the adult body. As discussed in various ways in Chapters 10 and 12, each time a new cell is formed by the complex process of cell growth and division, there are many opportunities for things to go awry. Hence, the chance for disaster to strike, including the inadvertent formation of cancer cells, is great.

Since a normal biological process (incessant cell division) is likely to create a substantial risk of cancer, it would seem logical that human populations throughout the world would experience similar frequencies of cancer. However, when cancer incidence rates (that is, the rates with which the disease is diagnosed) are examined in various countries, we learn that the risks of many types of cancer seem to vary dramatically (**Table 2.5**), while other cancers (not indicated in this table) do indeed show comparable incidence rates across the

globe. So, our speculation that all cancers should strike different human populations at comparable rates is simply wrong. Some do and some don't. But we need to be cautious here, simply because incidence rates for certain cancers may be highly misleading—the consequence of diagnostic bias (**Sidebar 2.1**).

Table 2.5 Geographic variation in cancer incidence and death rates

Countries showing highest and lowest incidence of specific types of cancer[a]			
Cancer site	**Country of highest risk**	**Country of lowest risk**	**Relative risk H/L**[b]
Skin (melanoma)	Australia (Queensland)	Japan	155
Lip	Canada (Newfoundland)	Japan	151
Nasopharynx	Hong Kong	United Kingdom	100
Prostate	U.S. (African American)	China	70
Liver	China (Shanghai)	Canada (Nova Scotia)	49
Penis	Brazil	Israel (Ashkenazic)	42
Cervix (uterus)	Brazil	Israel (non-Jews)	28

Countries showing highest and lowest incidence of specific types of cancer[a]			
Cancer site	**Country of highest risk**	**Country of lowest risk**	**Relative risk H/L**[b]
Stomach	Japan	Kuwait	22
Lung	U.S. (Louisiana, African American)	India (Madras)	19
Pancreas	U.S. (Los Angeles, Korean American)	India	11
Ovary	New Zealand (Polynesian)	Kuwait	8
Geographic areas showing highest and lowest death rates from specific types of cancer[c]			
Cancer site	**Area of highest risk**	**Area of lowest risk**	**Relative risk H/L**[b]
Lung, male	Eastern Europe	West Africa	33
Esophagus	Southern Africa	West Africa	16
Colon, male	Australia, New Zealand	Middle Africa	15

Countries showing highest and lowest incidence of specific types of cancer[a]			
Cancer site	**Country of highest risk**	**Country of lowest risk**	**Relative risk H/L[b]**
Breast, female	Northern Europe	China	6

Sidebar 2.1 Cancer incidence and mortality rates can be highly misleading

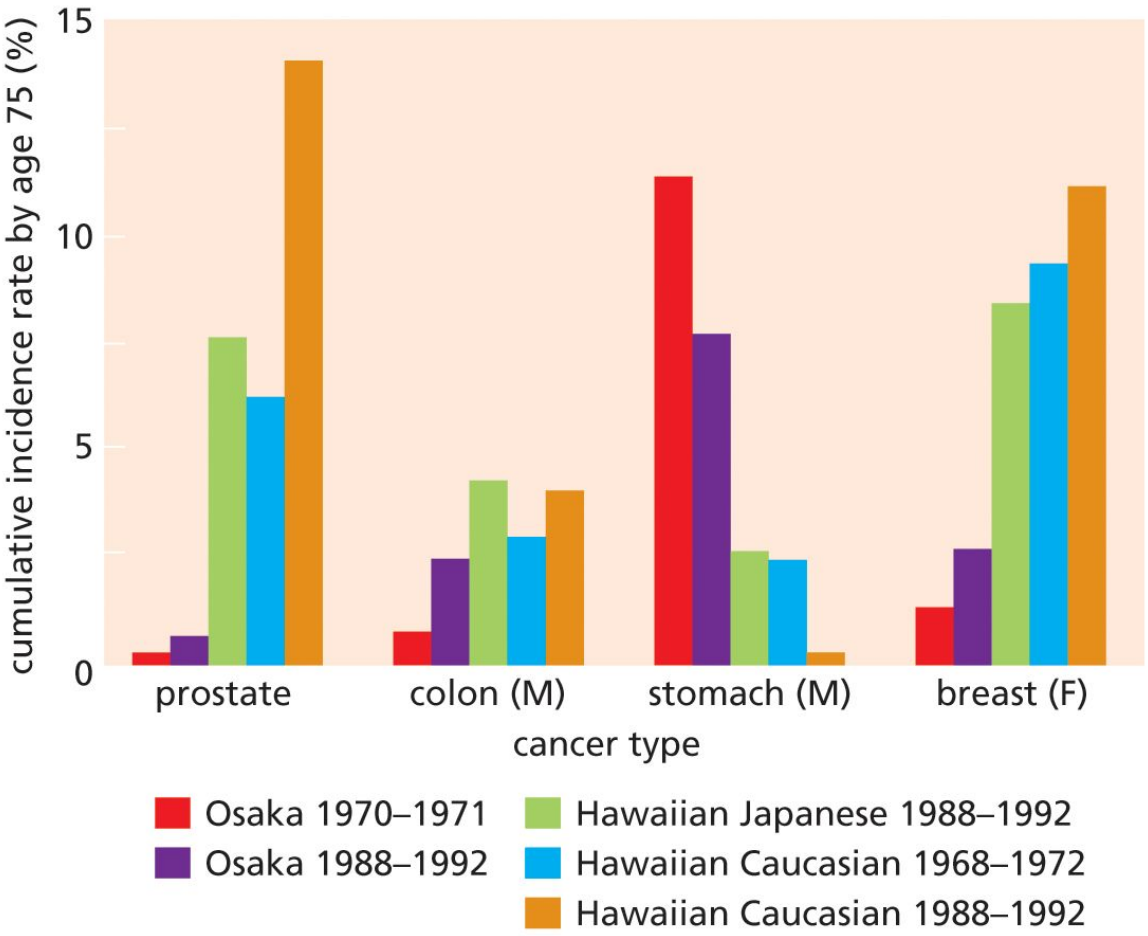
Cancer incidence rates, (reflecting the number of cases diagnosed) and mortality rates are usually presented in an age-adjusted form to compensate for the facts that (1) different cancers tend to arise at different times during the human lifetime and (2) different human populations have different age distributions. These numbers are then corrected for population sizes and often presented in rates per 100,000 of the general population. These corrections, on their own, cannot compensate for the difficulties in gauging the frequencies with which different tumors arise, since the resulting incidence rates are strongly influenced by diagnostic practices and conventions, reflecting the complex problem of diagnostic bias. Thus, as a prominent example, it is unclear how much of the sixfold difference in breast cancer incidence between China and the Western world derives from the relative occurrence of potentially life-threatening cancers in these two populations and how much derives from population-wide screening techniques, in this case by the highly sensitive technique of mammography, which reveals many small growths in the breast that would have remained indolent during the lifetime of the women bearing them and, because of their small size, remained undetected. (In the case of the United States, it is plausible that at least two-thirds of currently diagnosed “breast cancers” fall into this class.)

This explains why incidence rates often reflect the frequency with which population-wide, highly sensitive screening techniques are in force, indicating that for many types of cancer, the alternative metric—age-adjusted mortality rates—provides a more reliable index of the frequency with which life-threatening cancers strike in different populations (simply because deaths represent an unambiguous and easily measured outcome). Even here, we need to be cautious when attempting to assess the true rates at which cancers strike, since different

types of tumor are treated with more or less success in different countries. For example, cancer mortality rates in the United States have declined by almost 35% over the past generation, a reflection of successes in treating them; this decline on its own, would cause us to increase by about 35% our estimate of the rates with which true life-threatening breast cancers are formed each year in the United States. In addition, in many parts of the world, assessments about the causes of death, especially for diseases of internal organs, may not properly reflect the true disease state that led to death.

Table 2.5 indicates that, in spite of these reservations about cancer incidence and mortality rates, some cancers vary dramatically from country to country. Yet other tumor types, not listed in this table, seem to strike with comparable frequencies. Such tumors seem to be caused by random, essentially unavoidable accidents of nature. This seems to be especially true for a number of pediatric tumors that affect children with comparable frequencies across the globe.

Still, as Table 2.5 makes clear, other factors and processes appear to intervene in certain populations to increase dramatically the total number of cancer cases. Some of these differences are so dramatic as to essentially rule out important contributions from diagnostic bias and effectiveness of anti-cancer therapies. The two obvious factors contributing to these stark differences are heredity and environment. Which of these two alternatives is the dominant determinant of the country-to-country variability of cancer incidence and mortality rates? While many types of inherited disease-causing alleles are distributed unequally in the gene pools of different human populations, these inherited genetic factors do not seem to explain the dramatically different incidence and mortality rates of various cancers throughout the world. This point is demonstrated most dramatically by measuring cancer rates in migrant populations. For example, Japanese experience rates of stomach cancer that are 6 to 8 times higher than those of Americans. However, when Japanese settle in the United States, within a generation their offspring exhibit a stomach cancer rate that is comparable to that of the surrounding population (**Figure 2.18**). (Since the majority of those diagnosed with stomach cancer eventually die from the disease, the incidence rates track closely with mortality rates and therefore reflect how often life-threatening disease strikes.)



A bar chart comparing the cumulative incidence rates by age 75 of four different types of cancer in five different populations in Hawaii and Japan. The three Hawaiian populations are Hawaiian Japanese 1988 to 1992, Hawaiian Caucasian 1968 to 1972, and Hawaiian Caucasian 1988 to 1992. The two Japanese populations are Osaka 1970 to 1971 and Osaka 1988 to 1992. Both Japanese populations had extremely low rates of prostate cancer, and relatively rates of colon cancer in males and breast cancer in females, but higher rates of stomach cancer in males: about 12 percent for the early Osaka group and 8 percent for the later one. The three Hawaiian populations all had low to moderately low rates of colon and stomach cancer in males, but fairly high rates of prostate and breast cancer–especially the later Hawaiian Caucasian group, for which the incidence of prostate cancer was about 14 percent and the incidence of breast cancer was about 11 percent. Interestingly, however, this group had the lowest incidence of male stomach cancer of all five groups, less than 1 percent.

Figure 2.18 Country-to-country comparisons of cancer incidence Public health records reveal dramatic differences in the incidence of certain cancers in different countries. Here, the relative incidence rates of a group of cancers in Japan and in the American state of Hawaii are presented. Invariably, after Japanese have immigrated to Hawaii, within a generation their cancer rates approach those of the population that settled there before them. Cancer incidence numbers are strongly influenced by diagnostic bias (see Sidebar 2.1), especially in the cases of prostate and breast cancer. In contrast, the incidence rates of colon and stomach cancer are not strongly influenced by diagnostic bias and are thus more reflective of the frequency of developing life-threatening disease. This indicates that the differing cancer rates are not due to genetic differences between the Japanese and the American populations. M, male; F, female. (From J. Peto, *Nature* 411:390–395, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

As indicated in Table 2.5, the incidence (that is, the risk of developing diagnosed disease) of breast cancer in China was, at one point in time, about one-sixth as great as in the United States or Northern Europe (see Sidebar 2.1). Having excluded genetic contributions to this difference, we might conclude, perhaps simplistically, that as many as 85% of the breast cancers in the United States might in theory be avoidable if only American women were to experience an environment and lifestyle comparable to those of their Chinese counterparts; however, as we read above, these numbers need to be taken with great reservation, given the profound influence of diagnostic bias.

Even within the American population, there are vast differences in cancer mortality: the Seventh-day Adventists, whose religion discourages smoking, heavy drinking, and the consumption of animal protein, die from cancer at rates that are 40% lower for men and 24% lower for women than the general population. These numbers, which are robustly documented, reveal dramatically the key roles of environment within a human population, where “environment” encompasses both the surrounding physical environment and, more importantly in this case, lifestyle practices including prominently diet.

For those who wish to understand the etiologic (causative) mechanisms of cancer, these often-dramatic differences in incidence and mortality lead to an inescapable conclusion: the great majority of the commonly occurring cancers are caused by factors that can vary dramatically between one population and another, and between individuals within each of these populations. Most of these might be

traced to “lifestyle factors,” including smoking, diet and obesity, and physical activity, and to various types of infections; in addition, substantial variations in cancer risk may be attributable to differences in reproductive behavior and the resulting dramatic effects on the hormonal environment within the human female body. When comparing cancer risks across the globe, only a small proportion of the differences in cancer incidence and mortality can be ascribed to differences in genetic predisposition and, it would seem, environmental pollution.

Let us imagine, for the sake of argument, that avoidance of certain cancer-causing factors in diet and overall lifestyle, some discussed below, resulted in a 50% reduction in the risk of dying from cancer in the West, leaving the disease of cancer as the cause of only about 10% of overall mortality in this population. Under these conditions, given the approximately 10^{16} mitoses occurring in each human body during a normal life span, we calculate that only 1 in 10^{17} cell divisions—the total number in aggregate of cell divisions occurring in the bodies of 10 individuals during their lifetimes—would lead directly or indirectly to a clinically detectable cancer. Now, we become persuaded that in spite of the enormous intrinsic risk of developing cancer, the body must be able to mount highly effective defenses that usually succeed in holding off the disease for the 70 or 80 years that most of us spend on this planet. These built-in defenses are the subject of many discussions throughout this book.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

incidence
: Frequency with which a condition or a disease occurs or is diagnosed in a population.

diagnostic bias
: Tendency of an observation or conclusion to be influenced by the specific properties or applications of a diagnostic technique rather than to accurately reflect an intrinsic property of the entity (such as a disease) under examination.

diagnostic bias
: Tendency of an observation or conclusion to be influenced by the specific properties or applications of a diagnostic technique rather than to accurately reflect an intrinsic property of the entity (such as a disease) under examination.

age-adjusted
: Referring to an epidemiologic measurement, such as disease incidence or mortality, that has been adjusted to compensate for the age distribution of the population under study, allowing rates to be compared between populations having different age distributions.

mammography
: A clinical procedure using X-rays to detect incipient breast cancers.

steady state
: The condition reached when a series of dynamic, often countervailing processes have placed a complex system in a balanced, relatively constant, unchanging state.

etiology
: (adj., - **ologic**) (1) Mechanism or agent that is responsible for causing a specific pathological state. (2) The study of causative mechanisms of pathology.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aSee C. Muir, J. Waterhouse, T. Mack et al., eds., Cancer Incidence in Five Continents, vol. 5. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer, 1987. Excerpted by V.T. DeVita, S. Hellman and S.A. Rosenberg, Cancer: Principles and Practice of Oncology. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1993.Return to reference a
- bRelative risk: age-adjusted incidence or death rate in highest country or area (H) divided by age-adjusted incidence or death rate in lowest country or area (L). These numbers refer to age-adjusted rates, for example, the relative risk of a 60-year-old dying from a specific type of tumor in one country compared with a 60-year-old in another country.Return to reference b
- bRelative risk: age-adjusted incidence or death rate in highest country or area (H) divided by age-adjusted incidence or death rate in lowest country or area (L). These numbers refer to age-adjusted rates, for example, the relative risk of a 60-year-old dying from a specific type of tumor in one country compared with a 60-year-old in another country.Return to reference b
- cSee P. Pisani, D.M. Parkin, F. Bray and J. Ferlay, *Int. J. Cancer* 83:18–29, 1999. This survey divided the human population into 23 geographic areas and surveyed the relative mortality rates of various cancer types in each area.Return to reference c

OceanofPDF.com

2.7 The risks of cancers often seem to be increased by assignable influences, including lifestyle

Evidence that certain kinds of cancers are associated with specific exposures or lifestyles is actually quite old, predating modern epidemiology by more than a century. The first known report comes from the observations of the English physician John Hill, who in 1761 noted the connection between the development of nasal cancer and the excessive use of tobacco snuff. Fourteen years later, Percivall Pott, a surgeon in London, reported that he had encountered a substantial number of skin cancers of the scrotum in adolescent men who, in their youth, had worked as chimney sweeps. Within three years, the Danish sweepers guild urged its members to take daily baths to remove the apparently cancer-causing material from their skin. This practice was likely the cause of the markedly lower rate of scrotal cancer in continental Europe when compared with Britain even a century later.

In 1839, an Italian physician reported that breast cancer was a scourge in the nunneries, being present at rates that were six times higher than among women in the general population who had given birth multiple times. By the end of the nineteenth century, it was clear that occupational exposure and lifestyle were closely connected to and apparently causes of a number of types of cancer.

The range of agents that might trigger cancer was expanded with the discovery in the first decade of the twentieth century that physicians and others who experimented with the then-recently invented X-ray tubes experienced increased rates of cancer, often developing tumors at the site of irradiation.

Perhaps the most compelling association between environmental exposure and cancer incidence was forged in 1949 and 1950 when two groups of epidemiologists reported that individuals who were heavy cigarette smokers ran a lifetime risk of lung cancer that was more than twentyfold higher than that of nonsmokers. The initial results of one of these landmark studies are given in **Table 2.6**. These various epidemiologic correlations proved to be critical for

subsequent cancer research, since they suggested that cancers often had specific, assignable causes, and that a chain of causality might one day be traced between these ultimate causes and the cancerous changes observed in certain human tissues. Indeed, in the half century that followed the 1949–1950 reports, epidemiologists identified a variety of lifestyle factors, infections (**Table 2.7**), and exposures to specific agents (see Table 2.8) that were strongly correlated with the incidence of certain cancers (**Figure 2.19**); in a subset of these cases, researchers have been able to discover the specific biological mechanisms through which these etiologic factors act.

Table 2.6 Relative risk of lung cancer as a function of the number of cigarettes smoked per day[a]

	Lifelong non-smoker	**Smokers**			
Most recent number of cigarettes smoked (by subjects) per day before onset of disease	—	≥1, <5	≥5, <15	≥15, <25	≥25
Relative risk	1	8	12	14	27

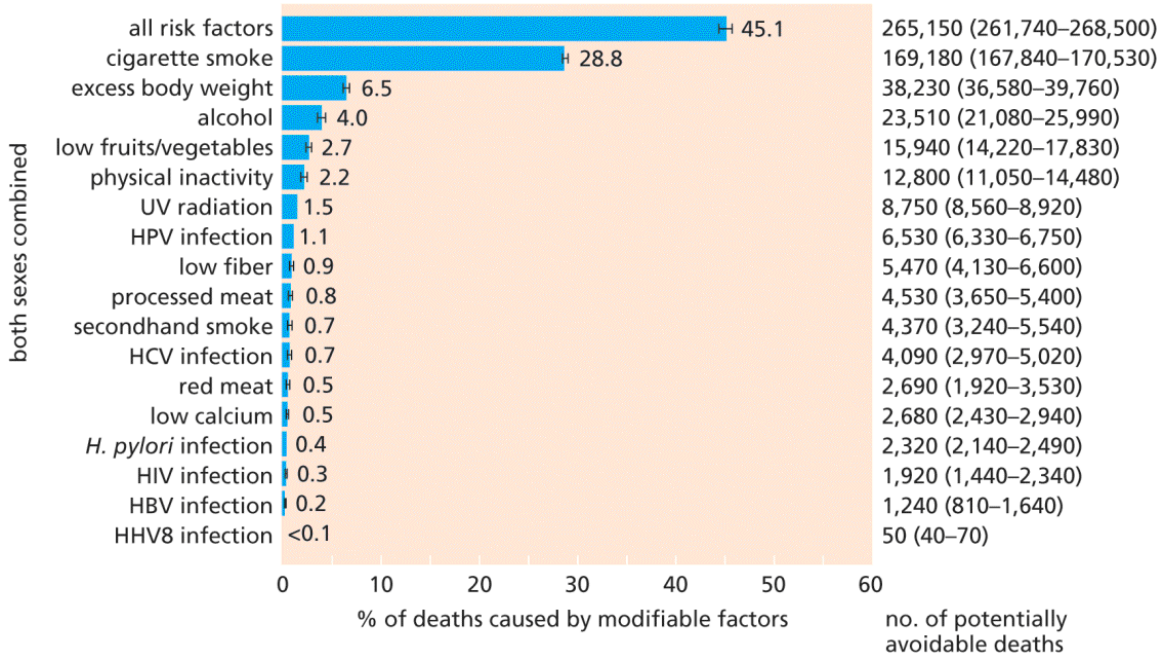
Adapted from R. Doll and A.B. Hill, *BMJ* 2:739–748, 1950.

Table 2.7 Known or suspected causes of human cancers

Environmental and lifestyle factors known or suspected to be etiologic for human cancers in the United States[a]	
Type	**% of total cases**[b]
Cancers due to occupational exposures	1–2

Environmental and lifestyle factors known or suspected to be etiologic for human cancers in the United States[a]	
Type	**% of total cases**[b]
Lifestyle cancers	
Tobacco-related (sites: e.g., lung, bladder, kidney)	34
Diet (low in vegetables, high in nitrates, salt) (sites: e.g., stomach, esophagus)	5
Diet (high fat, low fiber, broiled/fried foods) (sites: e.g., bowel, pancreas, prostate, breast)	37
Tobacco plus alcohol (sites: mouth, throat)	2
Specific carcinogenic agents implicated in the causation of certain cancers[c]	
Cancer	**Exposure**
Scrotal carcinomas	chimney smoke condensates
Liver angiosarcoma	vinyl chloride

Environmental and lifestyle factors known or suspected to be etiologic for human cancers in the United States[a]	
Type	**% of total cases**[b]
Acute leukemias	benzene
Nasal adenocarcinoma	hardwood dust
Osteosarcoma	radium
Skin carcinoma	arsenic
Mesothelioma	asbestos
Vaginal carcinoma	diethylstilbestrol
Oral carcinoma	snuff
ER+ breast cancer[d]	hormone replacement therapy (E + P)[e]



A bar chart describing, for both sexes combined, the extent to various modifiable risk factors contribute to avoidable deaths from cancer. For a given risk factor, the length of the bar gives the percent of all cancer deaths attributable to that factor. Also given, for each risk factor, is the corresponding estimate of the number of avoidable deaths in the United States for the year 2014. For all types of cancer, 45.1 percent of deaths were caused by modifiable factors, implying 265,150 potentially avoidable deaths from cancer in 2014. 28.8 percent of cancer deaths, or 169,180 deaths, were caused by smoking. 6.5 percent of cancer deaths, or 38,230 deaths, were caused by excess body weight. 4.0 percent of cancer deaths, or 23,510 deaths, were caused by alcohol consumption. 2.7 percent of cancer deaths, or 15,940 deaths, were caused by low consumption of fruits and vegetables. 2.2 percent of cancer deaths, or 12,800 deaths, were caused by physical inactivity. The list goes on to include U V radiation, H P V infection, low fiber consumption, processed meat, secondhand smoke, H C V infection, red meat, low calcium, H. pylori infection, H I V infection, H B V infection, and H H V 8 infection. Each of these risk factors caused fewer than 2 percent of deaths from cancer.

Figure 2.19 Percentage of avoidable cancers Epidemiologists have undertaken long-term studies in which the incidence and mortality of various cancers have been correlated with various lifestyle factors and infections. These studies have employed large population cohorts and attempted to factor out extraneous influences that might have otherwise confounded the calculations of the associations of specific cancers with certain assignable

risk factors. A 2018 analysis undertook to determine what effects changes in existing, potentially modifiable lifestyle factors and infections would have had on overall cancer incidence and mortality in the United States in 2014, which totaled ∼587,000 deaths. The numbers on the right are the average calculated avoidable deaths with a lower to upper range of variation that could be stated with 95% confidence. The overall reduction in mortality rate was calculated to be 45% for both sexes; less conservative predictions of avoidable cancer deaths have ranged from 50 to 60%. Smoking, obesity, and alcohol intake together represent the lion's share (39.3%) of this potential reduction. HPV, Human papillomavirus; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; *H. pylori*, *Helicobacter pylori*; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HHV8, human herpesvirus 8. (From F. Islami et al., *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 68:31–54, 2018. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aThe relative risk indicates the risk of contracting lung cancer compared with that of a nonsmoker, which is set at 1.Return to reference a
- aAdapted from American Cancer Society. Cancer Facts & Figures 1990. Atlanta: American Cancer Society, Inc.Return to reference a
- bA large number of cancers are thought to be provoked by a diet high in calories acting in combination with many of these lifestyle factors.Return to reference b
- cAdapted from S. Wilson, L. Jones, C. Coussens and K. Hanna, eds., Cancer and the Environment: Gene–Environment Interaction. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2002.Return to reference c
- dER+, estrogen receptor–positive.Return to reference d
- eE + P, therapy containing both estrogen and progesterone.Return to reference e

OceanofPDF.com

2.8 Specific chemical agents can induce cancer

Coal tar condensates, much like those implicated in cancer causation by Percivall Pott's work, were used in Japan at the beginning of the twentieth century to induce skin cancers in rabbits. Repeated painting of localized areas of the skin of their ears resulted, after many months, in the outgrowth of carcinomas. This work, first reported by Katsusaburo Yamagiwa in 1915, was little noticed in the international scientific community of the time; instead, the 1926 Nobel Prize in Medicine was given to a Dane whose research on the experimental induction of cancer was soon discredited (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.6**). In retrospect, Yamagiwa's work represented a landmark advance, because it directly implicated chemicals (those in coal tar) in cancer causation. Equally important, Yamagiwa's work, together with that of Peyton Rous (to be described in Chapter 3), demonstrated that cancer could be induced at will in laboratory animals. Before these breakthroughs, researchers had been forced to wait for tumors to appear spontaneously in wild or domesticated animals. Now, cancers could be produced according to a predictable schedule, often involving many months of experimental treatment of animals.

By 1940, British chemists had purified several of the components of coal tar that were particularly carcinogenic (that is, cancer-causing), as demonstrated by the ability of these compounds to induce cancers on the skin of laboratory mice. Compounds such as 3-methylcholanthrene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, and 1,2,4,5-dibenz[*a*,*h*]anthracene were common products of combustion, and some of these hydrocarbons, notably benzo[*a*]pyrene, were subsequently found in the condensates of cigarette smoke as well (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.7**). These findings suggested that certain chemical species that entered into the human body could perturb tissues and cells and ultimately provoke the emergence of a tumor. The same could be said of X-rays, which were also able to produce cancers, ostensibly through a quite different mechanism of action.

While these discoveries were being reported, an independent line of research developed that portrayed cancer as an infectious disease. As described in detail in Chapter 3, researchers in the first decade of the twentieth century found that viruses could cause leukemias and sarcomas in infected chickens. By mid-century, a wide variety of viruses had been found able to induce cancer in rabbits, chickens, mice, and rats. As a consequence, those intent on uncovering the origins of human cancer were pulled in three different directions, since the evidence of cancer causation by chemical, viral, and radioactive agents had become compelling.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

carcinogenic
: Capable of causing or contributing to the causation of cancer.

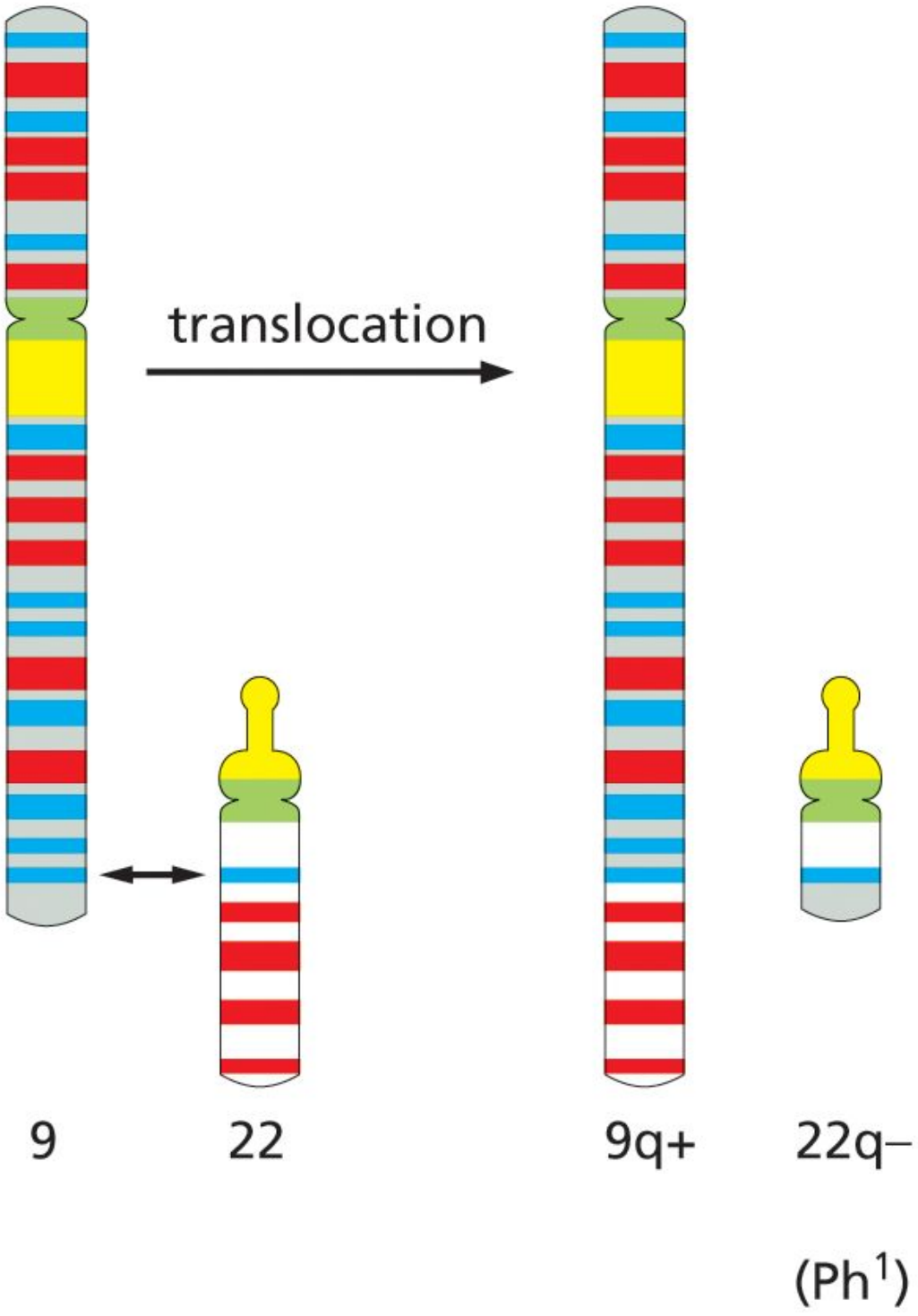
OceanofPDF.com

2.9 Both physical and chemical carcinogens act as mutagens

The confusion caused by the three competing theories of carcinogenesis was reduced significantly by discoveries made in the field of fruit fly genetics. In 1927, Hermann Muller discovered that he could induce mutations in the genome of *Drosophila melanogaster* by exposing these flies to X-rays. Most important, this discovery revealed that the genome of an animal was mutable, that is, that its information content could be changed through specific treatments, notably irradiation. At the same time, it suggested at least one mechanism by which X-rays could induce cancer: perhaps radiation was able to mutate the genes of normal cells, thereby creating mutant cells that grew in a malignant fashion.

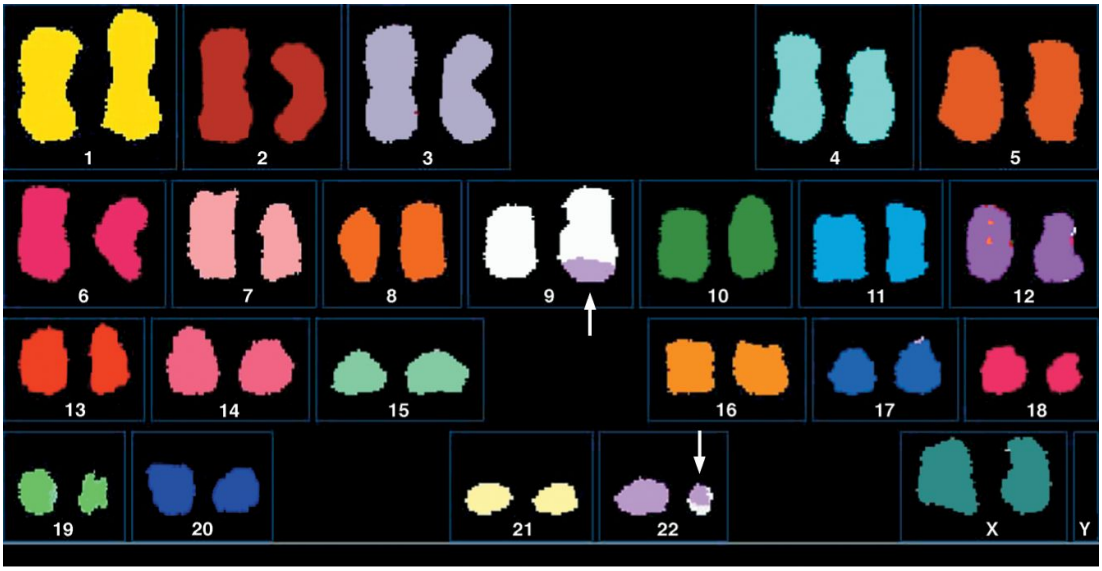
By the late 1940s, a series of chemicals, many of them alkylating agents of the type that had been used in World War I mustard gas warfare, were also found to be mutagenic for fruit flies. Soon thereafter, some of these same compounds were shown to be carcinogenic in laboratory animals. These findings caused several geneticists to speculate that cancer was a disease of mutant genes, and that carcinogenic agents, such as X-rays and certain chemicals, succeeded in inducing cancer through their ability to mutate genes.

These speculations were hardly the first ones of this sort. As early as 1914, the German biologist Theodor Boveri, drawing on yet older observations of others, suggested that chromosomes, which by then had been implicated as carriers of genetic information, were aberrant within cancer cells, and that cancer cells might therefore be mutants. Boveri's notion, along with many other speculations on the origin of cancer, gained few adherents, however, until the discovery in 1960 of an abnormally configured chromosome in a large proportion of cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). This chromosome, soon called the Philadelphia chromosome after the place of its discovery, was clearly a distinctive characteristic of this type of cancer (**Figure 2.20**). Its reproducible association with this class of tumor cells suggested, but hardly proved, that this genetic alteration played a causal role in tumorigenesis.



Translocation causes a short segment on human chromosome 9 to change places with a long segment on chromosome 22, resulting in a 9 q plus chromosome and a 22 q minus chromosome. Normal 22 is already fairly short, so 22 q minus is very short. This is P h 1, the Philadelphia chromosome.

(A)



A color display of all 22 human chromosome pairs, plus the X Y pair. Pair 9 is white, but one of the two chromosomes, longer than the other, has a purple section. Pair 22 is purple, but one of the two chromosomes, shorter than the other, has a small white section.

(B)

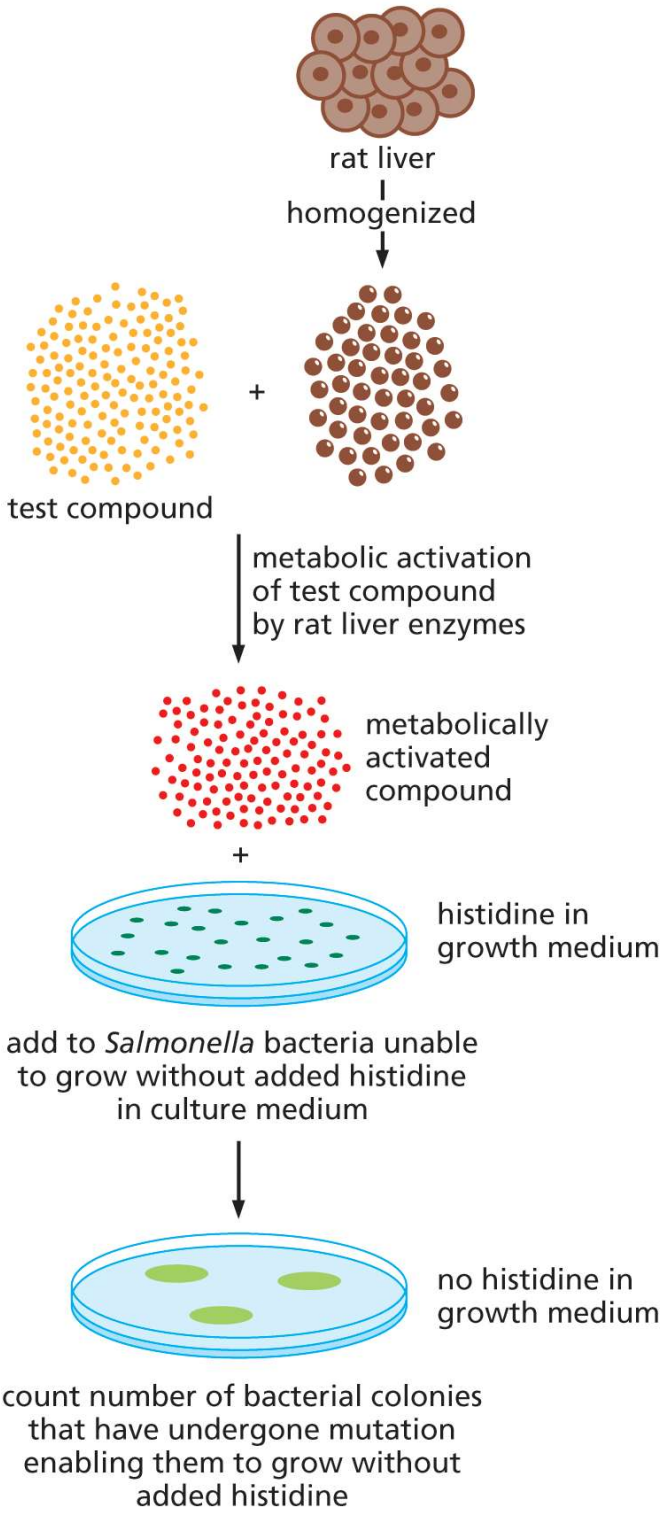
Figure 2.20 Structure of the Philadelphia chromosome Analyses of the banding patterns of stained metaphase chromosomes of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) cells first revealed the characteristic tiny chromosome (called the "Philadelphia chromosome" or Ph^1) that is present in the leukemia cells of most CML patients. (A) This banding pattern, determined through light-microscopic surveys, is illustrated here schematically. While the chromosomal translocation generating the two altered chromosomes (9q+ and 22q−) is reciprocal (that is, involving a loss and a gain by both), the sizes of the exchanged chromosomal arms are unequal, leading to the greatly truncated Chromosome 22 (22q−). The small arrow indicates the point of crossing over, known as the translocation breakpoint. Colors are added only to clarify banding patterns of chromosomes. (B) The relatively minor change to the tumor cell karyotype that is created by the CML translocation is apparent in this multicolor spectral karyotype (SKY) analysis, in which chromosome-specific probes are used, together with fluorescent dyes and computer-generated coloring, to visualize the entire chromosomal complement of CML cells. As is apparent, one of the two Chromosomes 9 has acquired a *light purple* segment (a color normally assigned to Chromosome 22) at the end of its long arm. Reciprocally, one of the two Chromosomes 22 has acquired a *white* region (normally characteristic of Chromosome 9) at the end of

its long arm (*arrows*). (A, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2015. B, courtesy of T. Ried and N. McNeil.)

In 1975 Bruce Ames, a bacterial geneticist working at the University of California in Berkeley, reported experimental results that lent great weight to the theory that carcinogens can function as mutagens. By then, decades of experiments with laboratory mice and rats had demonstrated that chemical carcinogens acted with vastly different potencies, differing by as much as 1 million-fold (per weight unit) in their ability to induce cancers. Such experiments showed, for example, that one microgram of aflatoxin, a compound produced by molds growing on peanuts and wheat, was as potent a carcinogen as was a 10,000 times greater weight of the synthetic compound benzidine. Ames posed the question whether these various compounds were also mutagenic, more specifically, whether compounds that were potent carcinogens also happened to be potent mutagens.

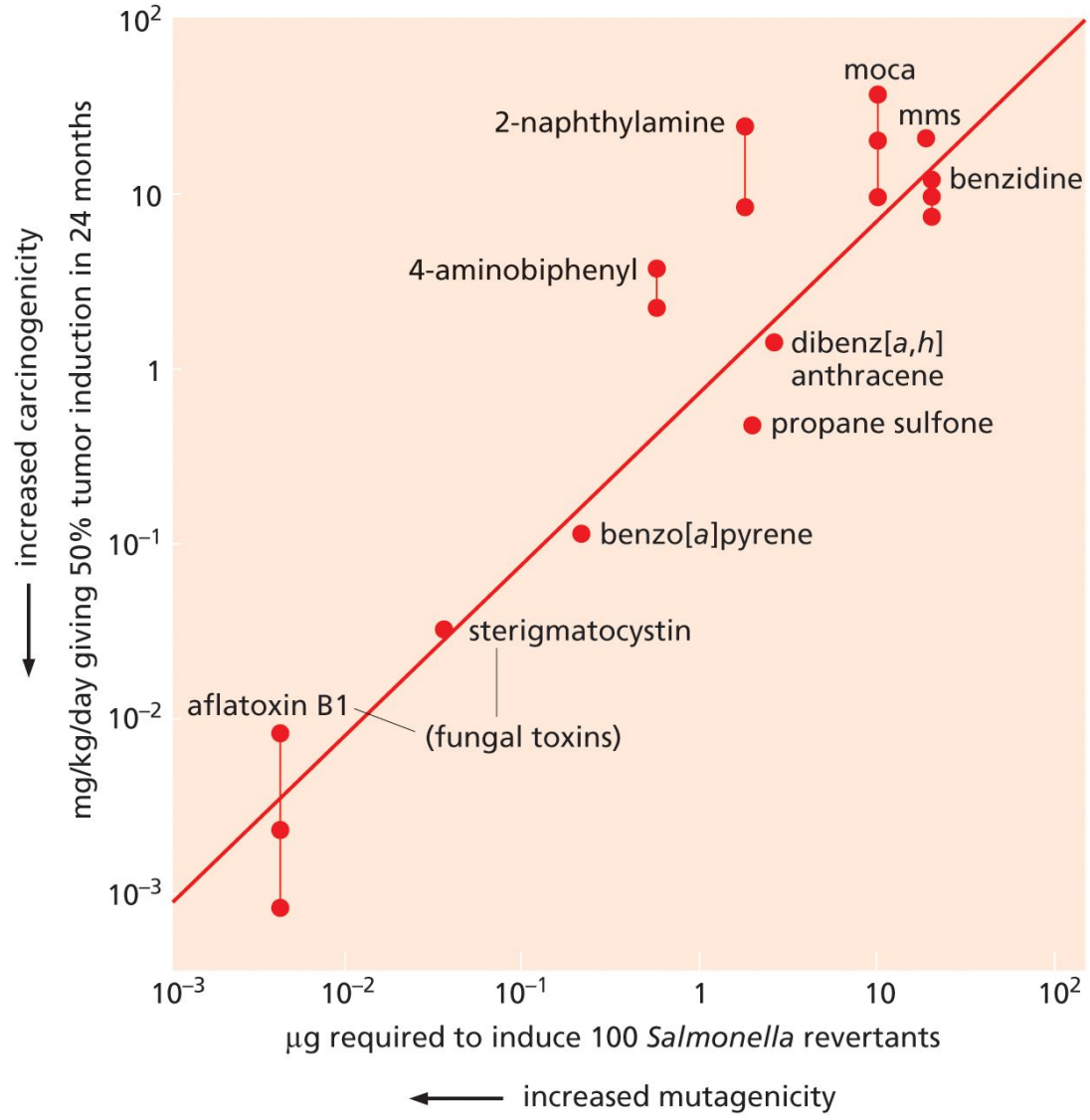
At the time, there were no good ways of measuring the relative mutagenic potencies of various chemical species. So Ames devised his own method. It consisted of applying various carcinogenic chemicals to a population of *Salmonella* bacteria growing in Petri dishes and then scoring for the abilities of these carcinogens to mutate the bacteria. The readout here was the number of colonies of *Salmonella* that grew following exposure to one or another chemical. (Implicit in the design of his experiments was the notion that chemicals that were mutagenic for bacterial genomes, and thus for bacterial DNA, would also act as mutagens for mammalian genomes and DNA.)

In detail, Ames used a mutant strain of *Salmonella* that was unable to grow in medium lacking the amino acid histidine. The mutant allele that caused this phenotype was susceptible to back-mutation to a wild-type allele. Once the wild-type allele had formed in response to exposure to a mutagen, a bacterium carrying this allele became capable of growing in Ames's selective medium, multiplying until it formed a colony that could be scored by eye (**Figure 2.21A**).



The Ames test. Rat liver is homogenized and then combined with a test compound. Rat liver enzymes metabolically activate the test compound. A petri dish has been prepared with enough histidine in the culture medium to grow Salmonella bacteria that are unable to grow without added histidine. The

bacteria grow to form many small spots but stop growing once the histidine is depleted. Now the metabolically activated compound is added to the dish. It cases some bacteria to mutate into a form that does not require added histidine for growth. Where these bacteria are present, the spots grow large enough to be counted with the naked eye. The number of such spots indicates the mutagenic strength of the test compound.
(A)



A log-log plot. On the horizontal axis is quantity required to induce 100 Salmonella revertants. The smaller the quantity, the greater the mutagenicity. On the vertical axis is quantity per day giving 50 percent tumor induction in 24 months. The smaller the quantity, the greater the carcinogenicity. A scatterplot of 10 compounds generally follow a straight trend line that is at a

45 degree angle. The compounds, in order of increasing mutagenicity and carcinogenicity–that is, moving from the upper right to the lower left–are m o c a and m m s, benzidine, 2-naphthylamine, dibenz a h anthracene, propane sulfone, benzo a pyrene, the fungal toxin sterigmatocystin, and the fungal toxin aflatoxin B1.
(B)

Figure 2.21 The Ames test for gauging mutagenicity The Ames test makes it possible to quantitatively assess the mutagenic potency of a test compound. (A) To begin, the liver of a rat (or other species) is homogenized to release its enzymes. The liver homogenate (*brown dots*) is then mixed with the test compound (*orange*), which often results in the liver enzymes metabolically converting the test compound to a chemically activated, mutagenic state (*red*). This mixture (still containing the liver homogenate, *not shown*) is applied to a dish of mutant *Salmonella* bacteria (*small green dots*) that require the amino acid histidine in their culture medium in order to grow. Since histidine is left out of the medium, only those bacteria that are mutated to a histidine-independent genotype (and phenotype) will be able to grow, and each of these will yield a large colony (*green*) that can be counted with the naked eye, indicating how many mutant bacteria (and thus mutant alleles) were generated by the brief exposure to the activated compound. (B) On this log–log plot, the relative carcinogenic potencies of a group of chemicals (*ordinate*) that have been used to treat laboratory animals (rats and mice) are plotted as a function of their mutagenic potencies (*abscissa*), as gauged by the Ames test (panel A). Since both the ordinate and abscissa are plotted as the amount of compound required to elicit an observable effect (yielding tumors in 50% of treated animals or 100 colonies of mutant *Salmonella* bacteria, termed here “revertants”), the compounds that are the most potent mutagens and most potent carcinogens appear in the lower left of this graph. Note that both parameters vary by 5 orders of magnitude. moca, 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline), used in manufacture of polyurethane; mms, methyl methanesulfonate, an alkylating mutagen. (Adapted from M. Meselson and K. Russell, in H.H. Hiatt, J.D. Watson, and J.A. Winsten (eds.), Origins of Human Cancer, Book C: Human Risk Assessment. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1977. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

In principle, Ames needed only to introduce a test compound into a Petri dish containing his special *Salmonella* strain and count the bacterial colonies that later appeared. There remained, however, one substantial obstacle to the success of this mutagenesis assay. Detailed studies by other researchers had shown that after carcinogenic molecules entered the tissues of laboratory animals, they were metabolized into yet other chemical species. In many cases, the resulting products of

metabolism, rather than the initially introduced chemicals, seemed to be the agents that were directly responsible for the observed cancer induction. These metabolized compounds were found to be highly reactive chemically and able to form covalent bonds with the various macromolecules known to be present in cells—DNA, RNA, and protein.

The original, unmodified compounds that were introduced into laboratory animals came to be called procarcinogens to indicate their ability to become converted into actively carcinogenic compounds, which were labeled ultimate carcinogens. This chemical conversion complicated the design of Ames's mutagenesis assay. If many compounds required metabolic activation before their carcinogenicity was apparent, it seemed plausible that their mutagenic powers would also be evident only after such conversion. Given the radically different metabolisms of bacteria and mammalian cells, it was highly unlikely that Ames's *Salmonella* would be able to accomplish the metabolic activation of procarcinogens that occurred in the tissues of laboratory animals.

Earlier work of others had shown that a great many chemicals introduced into the body undergo metabolic conversion in the liver. Moreover, many of these conversions could be achieved in the test tube simply by mixing such chemicals with homogenized liver extracts. So Ames mixed rat liver homogenates with his test compounds and only then introduced this mixture into the Petri dishes carrying *Salmonella*. (We now know that the metabolic activation of procarcinogens in the liver is often mediated by enzymes that are normally involved, paradoxically, in the detoxification of compounds introduced into the body.)

With the addition of this extra step, Ames's assay revealed that a number of known carcinogens were also actively mutagenic. Even more important were the correlations that Ames found. Chemicals that were potently mutagenic were also powerful carcinogens. Those that were weakly mutagenic induced cancer poorly. These correlations, as plotted by others, extended over five orders of magnitude of potency (Figure 2.21B).

As we have read, the notion that carcinogens are mutagens predated Ames's work by a quarter of a century. Nonetheless, his analyses galvanized researchers interested in the origins of cancer, since the results addressed the carcinogen–mutagen relationship so directly. Their reasoning went like this: Ames had demonstrated the mutagenic powers of certain chemical compounds in bacteria. Since the genomes of bacterial and animal cells are both made of the same chemical substance—double-stranded DNA—it was likely that the compounds that induced mutations in the *Salmonella* genome were similarly capable of inducing mutations in the genomes of animal cells. Hence, the "Ames test," as it came to be known, should be able to predict the mutagenicity of these compounds in mammals. And in light of the correlation between mutagenic and

carcinogenic potency, the Ames test could be employed to screen various substances for their carcinogenic powers, and thus for their threat to human health. By 1976, Ames and his group reported on the mutagenic potencies of 300 distinct organic compounds (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.8**).

Ames's results led to the next deduction, really more of a speculation: if, as Ames argued, carcinogens are mutagens, then it followed that the carcinogenic powers of various agents derived directly from their ability to induce mutations in the cells of target tissues. As a further deduction, it seemed inescapable that the cancer cells created by chemical carcinogens carried mutated genes. These mutated genes, whatever their identity, must in some way be responsible for the aberrant growth phenotypes of such cancer cells.

This logic was transferable to X-ray carcinogenesis as well. Since X-rays were mutagens and carcinogens, it followed that they also induced cancer through their ability to mutate genes. This convergence of cancer research with genetics had a profound effect on researchers intent on puzzling out the origins of cancer. Though still unproven, it appeared likely that the disease of cancer could be understood in terms of the mutant genes carried by cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mutable
: Referring to an entity that is subject to change, notably a genome subject to genetic mutation.

procarcinogen
: A chemical compound that is relatively nonreactive chemically, but can be converted into a highly reactive carcinogen, usually through metabolic processes. *See also* **ultimate carcinogen**.

ultimate carcinogen
: A chemical compound that is able to directly contribute to the induction of cancer without further chemical modification, usually by direct chemical interaction with DNA, thereby altering the chemical structure of the latter. *See also* **procarcinogen**.

Ames test
: An experimental protocol and versions thereof that enable the quantification of the mutagenic potency of candidate chemicals through their ability to induce mutations in bacteria growing in a Petri dish.

detoxify
: To render a previously toxic substance harmless.

mutagenicity
: The property of being mutagenic.

OceanofPDF.com

2.10 Mutagens may be responsible for some human cancers

The connection between carcinogenesis and mutagenesis seemed to shed light on how human tumors arise. Perhaps many of these neoplasms were the direct consequence of the mutagenic actions of chemical and physical carcinogens. The mutagenic chemicals, specifically, procarcinogens, need not derive exclusively from the combustion of carbon compounds and the resulting formation of coal tars. It seemed plausible that chemical species present naturally in foodstuffs (see Table S2.1) or generated during cooking could also induce cancer. Even if many foods did not contain ultimate carcinogens, chemical conversions carried out by liver cells or by the abundant bacteria in the colon might well succeed in creating actively mutagenic and thus carcinogenic chemical species. In the years after Ames's work, a variety of other tests of mutagenic potency have been developed (**Supplementary Sidebar 2.9**).

As this research on the causes of human cancer proceeded, the understanding of carcinogenic agents became more nuanced. Thus, it became apparent that virtually all compounds that are mutagenic in human cells are likely to be carcinogenic as well. However, the converse does not seem to hold: chemical compounds that are carcinogenic are not necessarily mutagenic. By the 1990s, extensive use of the Ames test showed that as many as 40% of the compounds that were known to be carcinogenic in rodents showed no obvious mutagenicity in the *Salmonella* mutation assay. So, the conclusions drawn from the initial applications of Ames's test required major revision: some carcinogens act through their ability to mutate DNA, while others promote the appearance of tumors through nongenetic mechanisms. We will encounter these nonmutagenic carcinogens, often called tumor promoters, again in Chapter 11. Such promoters, including inflammation-inducing factors, may ultimately prove

to be far more important human carcinogens than the much-studied mutagenic agents identified by the Ames test.

Ames and others eventually used his test to catalog the mutagenic powers of a diverse group of chemicals and natural foodstuffs, including many of the plants that are common and abundant in the Western diet. As he argued, the presence of such compounds in foodstuffs derived from plants was hardly surprising, since plants have evolved thousands, possibly millions of distinct toxic chemical compounds in order to defend themselves from predation by insects and larger animals. Some of these naturally toxic compounds, initially developed as anti-predator defenses, might also, as an unintended side effect, be mutagenic (see Table S2.1).

A diverse set of discoveries led to the model that a significant proportion of human cancer is attributable directly to the consumption of foodstuffs that can generate mutagenic compounds and, for this reason, are carcinogenic. This model remains unproven in many of its aspects to this day.

The difficulties in proving this model derive from several sources. Each of the plant and animal foodstuffs in our diet is composed of thousands of diverse chemical species present in vastly differing concentrations. Almost all of these compounds undergo metabolic conversions once ingested, first in the gastrointestinal tract and often thereafter in the liver. Moreover, the hundreds of distinct bacterial species inhabiting our gastrointestinal tract, which together constitute much of our microbiome, have diverse metabolisms and thus powers to generate potentially carcinogenic compounds. Accordingly, the number of distinct chemical species that are introduced into our bodies is incalculable. Each of these introduced compounds may then be concentrated in some cells or quickly metabolized and excreted, creating a further dimension of complexity.

Moreover, the actual mutagenicity of various compounds in different cell types may vary enormously because of metabolic differences in these cells. For example, some cells, such as hepatocytes in the liver, express high levels of biochemical species designed to scavenge and inactivate mutagenic compounds, while others, such as fibroblasts, express far lower levels. In sum, the ability to relate the biological activities of foodstuffs to actual rates of mutagenesis and carcinogenesis in the human body is far

beyond our reach at present—a problem of seemingly intractable complexity. In addition, the limitations of using animal models to detect human carcinogens indicate the profound difficulties of determining in a biological relevant model—a living mammal—how carcinogenic various substances actually are (**Sidebar 2.2**).

Sidebar 2.2 The frustrating search for elusive human carcinogens

Ideally, the identification of important human carcinogens should have been aided by the use of *in vitro* assays, such as the Ames test (see Section 2.9), and *in vivo* tests—exposure of laboratory animals to agents suspected of causing cancer. In truth, however, these various types of laboratory tests have failed to register important human carcinogens. Instead, we have learned about their carcinogenicity in humans because of various epidemiologic studies. For example, the most important known human carcinogen—tobacco smoke—would likely have escaped detection because it is a relatively weak carcinogen in laboratory rodents; and another known human carcinogen—asbestos—would have eluded detection by both *in vitro* and *in vivo* laboratory tests. Conversely, some frequently used drugs, such as phenobarbital and isoniazid, register positive in the Ames test, and saccharin registers as a carcinogen in male laboratory rats, but epidemiologic evidence indicates conclusively that none of these is actually associated with increased cancer risk in humans who have been exposed to these compounds over long periods of time. Moreover, as mentioned, many human carcinogens act through non-mutational mechanisms and therefore do not register in the Ames test or, indeed, in a variety of other laboratory tests. Hence, the development of tests to accurately identify a wide range of human carcinogenic agents still lies in the future.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

promoter

(1) An agent that furthers the progression of multi-step tumorigenesis by nongenetic mechanisms, notably those involving inflammation and/or mitogenesis, sometimes termed promoting agent. Tumor promoters are presumed to work by accelerating the rate of clonal expansion of already-mutated cells. (2) The DNA sequence associated with a gene that controls its transcription. *See also* **promotion**.

microbiome

The collection of microbes, largely bacteria, that exist naturally as commensal organisms in normal organs, such as the gastrointestional tract and the skin; each of these and other tissues carries its own spectrum of microbes and thus its own microbiome.

hepatocyte

Epithelial cell type that forms the bulk of the liver and is responsible for virtually all of its metabolic activities.

OceanofPDF.com

2.11 Synopsis and prospects

The descriptions of cancer and cancer cells developed during the second half of the nineteenth century and the first half of the twentieth indicated that tumors were nothing more than normal cell populations that had run amok. Moreover, many tumors seemed to be composed largely of the descendants of a single cell that had crossed over the border from normalcy to malignancy and proceeded to spawn the billions of descendant cells constituting these neoplastic masses. This model drew attention to the nature of the cells that founded tumors and to the mechanisms that led to their transformation into cancer cells. If one could understand why a cell multiplied uncontrollably, somehow other pieces of the cancer puzzle were likely to fall into place.

Still, existing observations and experimental techniques offered little prospect of revealing precisely why a cell altered its behavior, transforming itself from a normal into a malignant cell. The carcinogen = mutagen theory seemed to offer some clarification, since it implicated mutant cellular genes as the agents responsible for disease development and, therefore, for the aberrant behavior of cancer cells. Perhaps there were mutant genes operating inside cancer cells that programmed the runaway proliferation of these cells, but the prospects for discovering such genes and understanding their actions seemed remote. No one knew how many genes were present in the human genome and how to analyze them. If mutant genes really did play a major part in cancer causation, they were likely to be small in number and dwarfed by the apparently vast number of genes present in the genome as a whole. They seemed to be the proverbial needles in the haystack, in this case a vast haystack of unknown size.

This theorizing about cancer’s origins was further complicated by two other important considerations. First, many apparent carcinogens failed the Ames test, suggesting that they were nonmutagenic. Second, certain viral infections seemed to be closely connected to the incidence of a small but significant subset of human cancer types. Somehow, their carcinogenic

powers had to be reconciled with the actions of mutagenic carcinogens and mutant cellular genes.

By the mid-1970s, recombinant DNA technology, including gene cloning, began to influence a wide variety of biomedical research areas. While appreciating the powers of this new technology to isolate and characterize genes, cancer researchers were unable, at least initially, to exploit it to track down the elusive mutant genes that were responsible for cancer. One thing was clear, however. Sooner or later, the process of cancer pathogenesis (disease development) needed to be explained and understood in molecular terms. Somehow, the paradigm of DNA, RNA, and proteins, so powerful in elucidating a vast range of biological processes, would need to be brought to bear on the cancer problem.

In the end, the breakthrough came from study of the tumor viruses, which by most accounts were minor players in human cancer development. Tumor viruses were genetically simple, and yet they possessed potent carcinogenic powers. To understand these viruses and their import, we need to move back, once again, to the beginning of the twentieth century and confront another of the ancient roots of modern cancer research. This will be the subject of Chapter 3.

Moving back to the present, we confront an ongoing major challenge for cancer research: how various biological and environmental factors, the latter including lifestyle, contribute to the incidence of cancers, many of them quite common ones. For example, as indicated in part in Table 2.5, the incidence of cancers, such as those of the colon, breast, and prostate, shows enormous geographic variation—dramatic differences that cannot be ascribed to differing genetic susceptibilities. In fact, epidemiologists have uncovered many correlations between the frequencies of these and other cancer types and exposure to various agents. However, with rare exception, our understanding of the biological and biochemical mechanisms by which these factors increase (or reduce) disease incidence is either incomplete or nonexistent (**Table 2.8**). Indeed, these correlations represent one of the major unsolved mysteries confronting contemporary cancer researchers.

Table 2.8 Examples of etiologic mysteries: epidemiologic correlations between environmental/lifestyle factors and cancer incidence that lack

a clear explanation of causal mechanism[a]

Lifestyle, dietary factor, or medical condition	**Altered cancer risk**
High birth weight	premenopausal breast cancer ↑
	infant acute leukemia ↑
Processed red meat[b]	ER+ breast cancer ↑
	squamous cell and adenocarcinoma of lung ↑
Childhood soy consumption	breast cancer ↓
Well-done red meat	prostate cancer ↑
Western diet—high in fat, high in red meat	colorectal, esophageal, liver, and lung cancer ↑
Exercise	hormone-responsive breast cancer ↓
Diet with cruciferous vegetables	prostate cancer ↓

Lifestyle, dietary factor, or medical condition	**Altered cancer risk**
High body-mass index (BMI)	multiple cancer types ↑
Higher ratio of number of daughters to number of sons born to a woman	ovarian carcinoma ↑
Parkinson’s disease	melanoma ↑
Low circulating vitamin D	breast cancer incidence, CRC mortality ↑
Periodontal disease	esophageal carcinoma ↑
Coffee consumption	hepatocellular carcinoma ↓

Abbreviations: ER+= estrogen receptor–positive; CRC = colorectal cancer.

Until we understand how various biological and lifestyle factors succeed in triggering or preventing tumor development, our ability to prevent new cancers (which is usually far more effective than trying to cure them after they have been diagnosed) will be limited. Many of the chapters that follow provide critical information that may ultimately help to unravel these mysteries of cancer etiology.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

pathogenesis
: Process that leads to the creation of a disease state or diseased tissue.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aRelative risk (RR) is not given, because not all studies used the same criteria to gauge RR. ↑ = increased risk; ↓ = decreased risk.Return to reference a
- bProcessed red meat generally refers to meat that has been preserved by smoking, curing, salting, or adding chemical preservatives.Return to reference b

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- The nineteenth-century discovery that all cells of an organism descend from the fertilized egg led to the realization that tumors are not foreign bodies but growths derived from normal tissues. The comparatively disorganized tissue architecture of tumors pointed toward cancer as being a disease of malfunctioning cells.
- Tumors can be either benign (localized, noninvasive) or malignant (invasive, metastatic). The metastases spawned by malignant tumors are responsible for almost all deaths from cancer.
- With some exceptions, most tumors are classified into four major groups according to their origin (epithelial, mesenchymal, hematopoietic, and neuroectodermal).
- Virtually all cell types can give rise to cancer, but the most common human cancers are of epithelial origin—the carcinomas. Most carcinomas fall into two categories: squamous cell carcinomas arise from epithelia that form protective cell layers, while adenocarcinomas arise from secretory epithelia.
- Nonepithelial malignant tumors include (1) sarcomas, which originate from mesenchymal cells; (2) hematopoietic cancers, which arise from the precursors of blood cells; and (3) neuroectodermal tumors, which originate from components of the nervous system.
- If a tumor’s cells have dedifferentiated (lost all tissue-specific traits), its origin cannot be readily identified; such tumors are said to be anaplastic.
- Cancers seem to develop progressively, with tumors demonstrating different gradations of abnormality along the way from benign to metastatic.
- Benign tumors may be hyperplastic or metaplastic. Hyperplastic tissues appear normal except for an excessive number of cells, whereas metaplastic tissues show displacement of normal cells by normal cell types not usually encountered in those tissues. Metaplasias are most frequent in the transition zones between two types of epithelial populations.

- Dysplastic tumors contain cells that are cytologically abnormal. Dysplasia is a transitional state between completely benign and premalignant. Adenomatous growths (adenomas, polyps, papillomas, and warts) are dysplastic epithelial tumors that are considered to be benign because they respect the boundary created by the basement membrane.
- Tumors that breach the basement membrane and invade underlying tissue are malignant. An even further degree of abnormality is metastasis, the seeding of tumor colonies to other sites in the body. Metastasis requires not only invasiveness but also such newly acquired traits as motility and adaptation to foreign tissue environments.
- Biochemical and genetic markers seem to indicate that human tumors are monoclonal (descended from one ancestral cell) rather than polyclonal (descended from multiple ancestral cells, each of which independently spawned a population of cancer cells).
- The incidence of many (but not all) cancers varies dramatically by country, an indication that they cannot be due simply to a normal biologic process gone awry by chance. While differences in either heredity or environment could explain these variations, epidemiologic studies show that environment (including lifestyle factors) is the dominant determinant of the country-by-country variations in cancer incidence.
- Laboratory research supported the epidemiologic studies by directly implicating chemical and physical agents (tobacco, coal dust, X-rays) as causes of cancers. However, the possibility of cancer as an infectious disease arose when viruses were found to cause leukemias and sarcomas in chickens.
- A possible mechanism that supported carcinogenesis by physical and chemical agents surfaced when mutations were induced in fruit flies by exposing them to either X-rays or chemicals, indicating that they were mutagenic. Since these agents were also known to be carcinogenic in laboratory animals, this led to the speculation that cancer was a disease of mutant genes and that carcinogenic agents induced cancer through their ability to mutate genes.
- In 1975 the Ames test provided support for this idea by showing that many carcinogens can act as mutagens. Additional research showed that although almost all compounds that are mutagenic are likely to be

carcinogens, the converse does not hold true. So, some carcinogens act through their ability to mutate DNA, while others promote tumorigenesis through nongenetic mechanisms. Such nonmutagenic carcinogens are called tumor promoters.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What types of observation allow a pathologist to identify the tissue of origin of a tumor? And why are certain tumors extremely difficult to assign to a specific tissue of origin?
2. Under certain circumstances, all tumors of a class can be traced to a specific embryonic cell layer, while in other classes of tumors, no such association can be made. What tumors would fit into each of these two groupings?
3. What evidence persuades us that a cancer arises from the native tissues of an individual rather than invading the body from outside and thus being of foreign origin?
4. How compelling are the arguments for the monoclonality of tumor cell populations, and what logic and observations undermine the conclusion of monoclonality?
5. How can we estimate what percentage of cancers in a population are avoidable (through virtuous lifestyles) and what percentage occur independently of lifestyle?
6. What limitations does the Ames test have in predicting the carcinogenicity of various agents?
7. In the absence of being able to directly detect mutant genes within cancer cells, what types of observation allow one to infer that cancer is a disease of mutant cells?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Ames BN (1983) Dietary carcinogens and anticarcinogens. *Science* 231, 1256–1264.

Bickers DR & Lowy DR (1989) Carcinogenesis: a fifty-year historical perspective. *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 92, 121S–131S.

Greenwald P & Dunn BK (2009) Landmarks in the history of cancer epidemiology. *Cancer Res.* 69, 2151–2162.

Jemal A, Center MM, DeSantis C & Ward EM (2010) Global patterns of cancer incidence and mortality rates and trends. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* 19, 1893–1907.

Loeb LA & Harris CC (2008) Advances in chemical carcinogenesis: a historical review and prospective. *Cancer Res.* 68, 6863–6872.

Mukherjee, S (2010) The Emperor of All Maladies: A Biography of Cancer. New York: Scribner.

Peto J (2001) Cancer epidemiology in the last century and the next decade. *Nature* 411, 390–395.

Preston-Martin S, Pike MC, Ross RK et al. (1990) Increased cell division as a cause of human cancer. *Cancer Res.* 50, 7415–7421.

Rassy E & Pavlidis N (2020) Progress in refining the clinical management of cancer of unknown primary in the molecular era. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 17:541–554.

Siegel RL, Miller KD & Jemal A (2020) Cancer statistics, 2020. *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 70, 7–30.

Vander Heiden MG, Cantley LC & Thompson CB (2009) Understanding the Warburg effect: the metabolic requirements of cell proliferation. *Science* 324, 1029–1033.

Wilson S, Jones L, Coussens C & Hanna K (eds) (2002) Cancer and the Environment: Gene-Environment Interaction. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

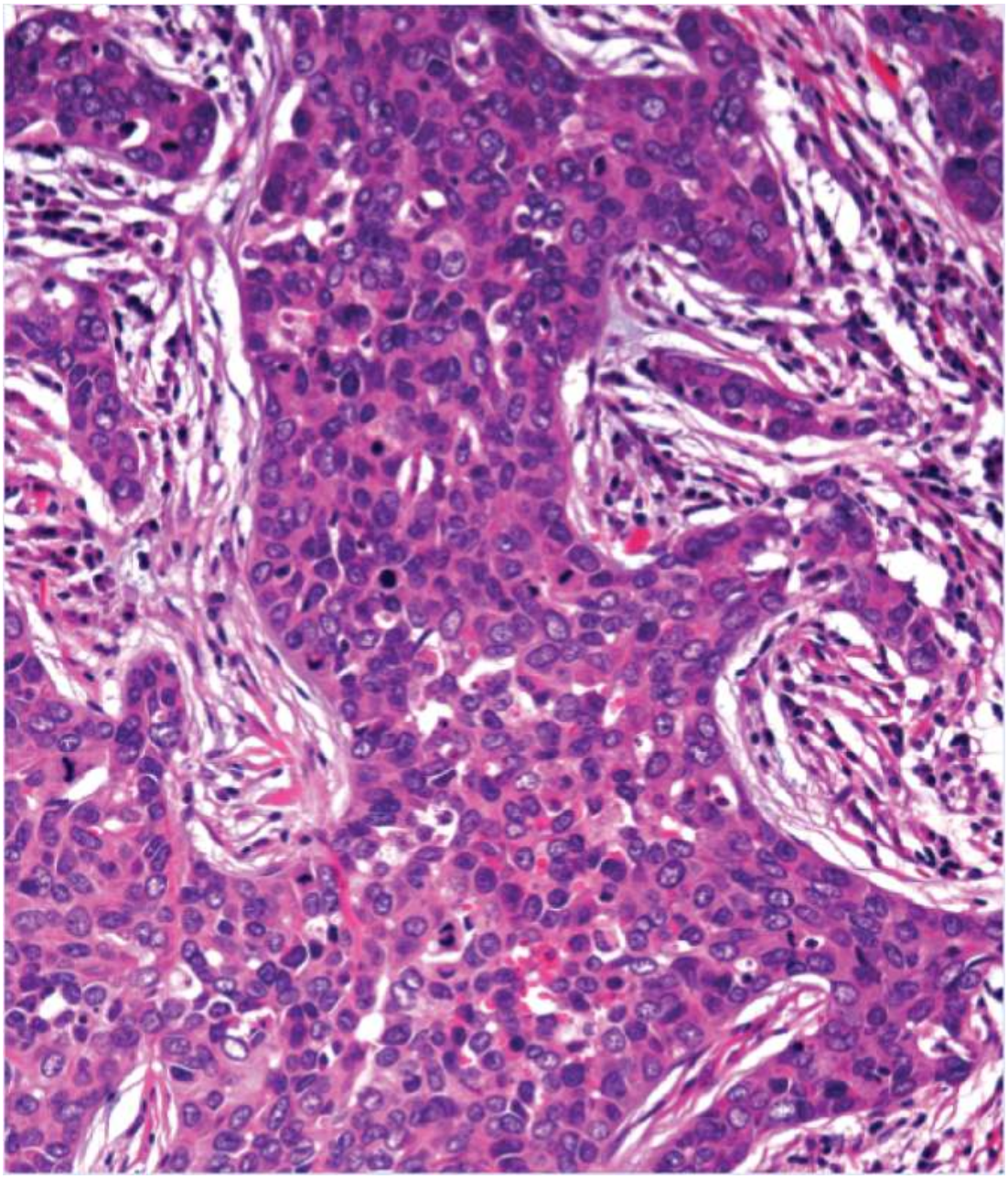
Xu L, Wang SS, Healey MA et al. (2011) The Ninth Annual AACR International Conference on the Frontiers of Cancer Prevention Research. *Cancer Prev. Res. (Phila.)* 4, 616–621.

OceanofPDF.com

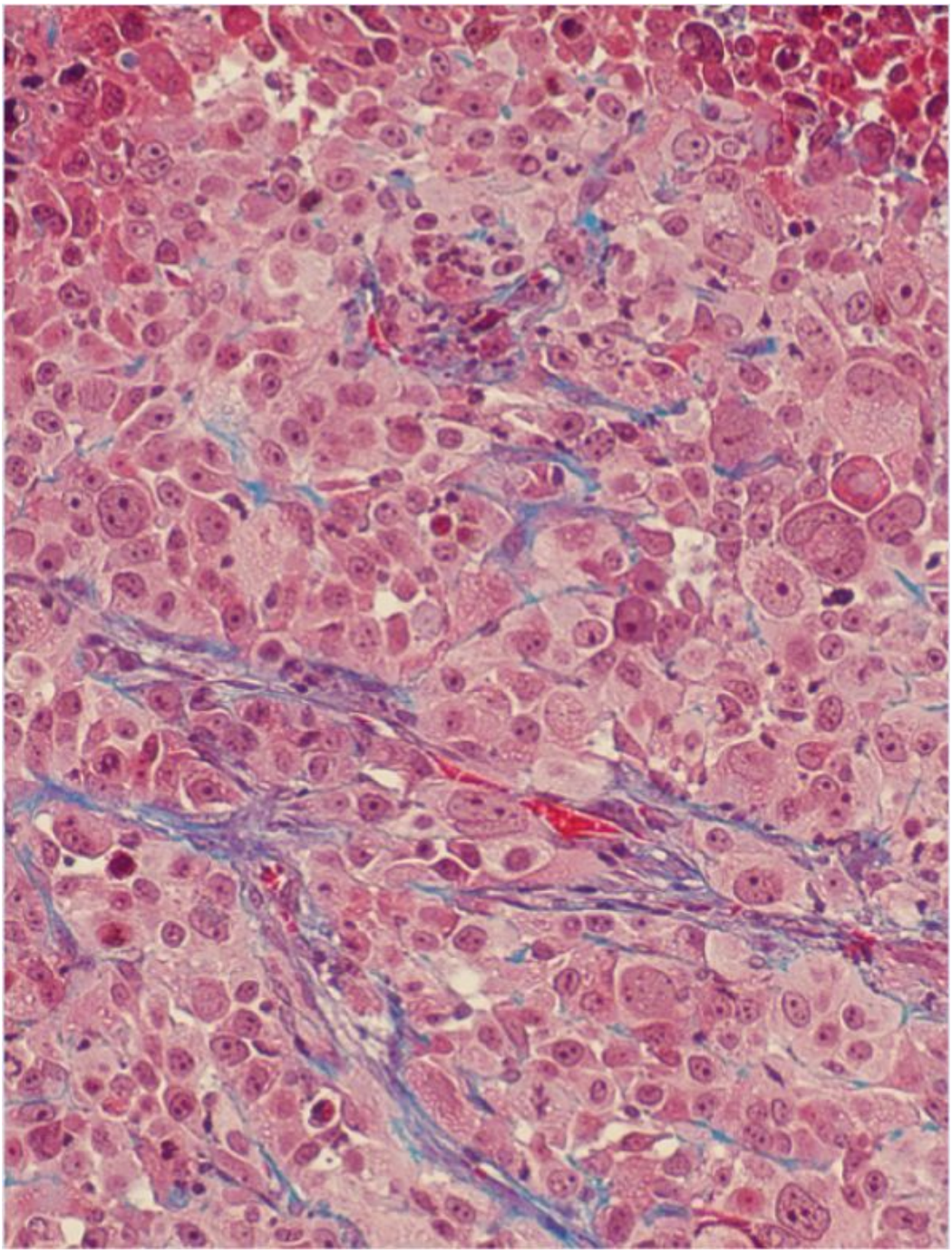
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 2.1 Commonly used histopathological techniques

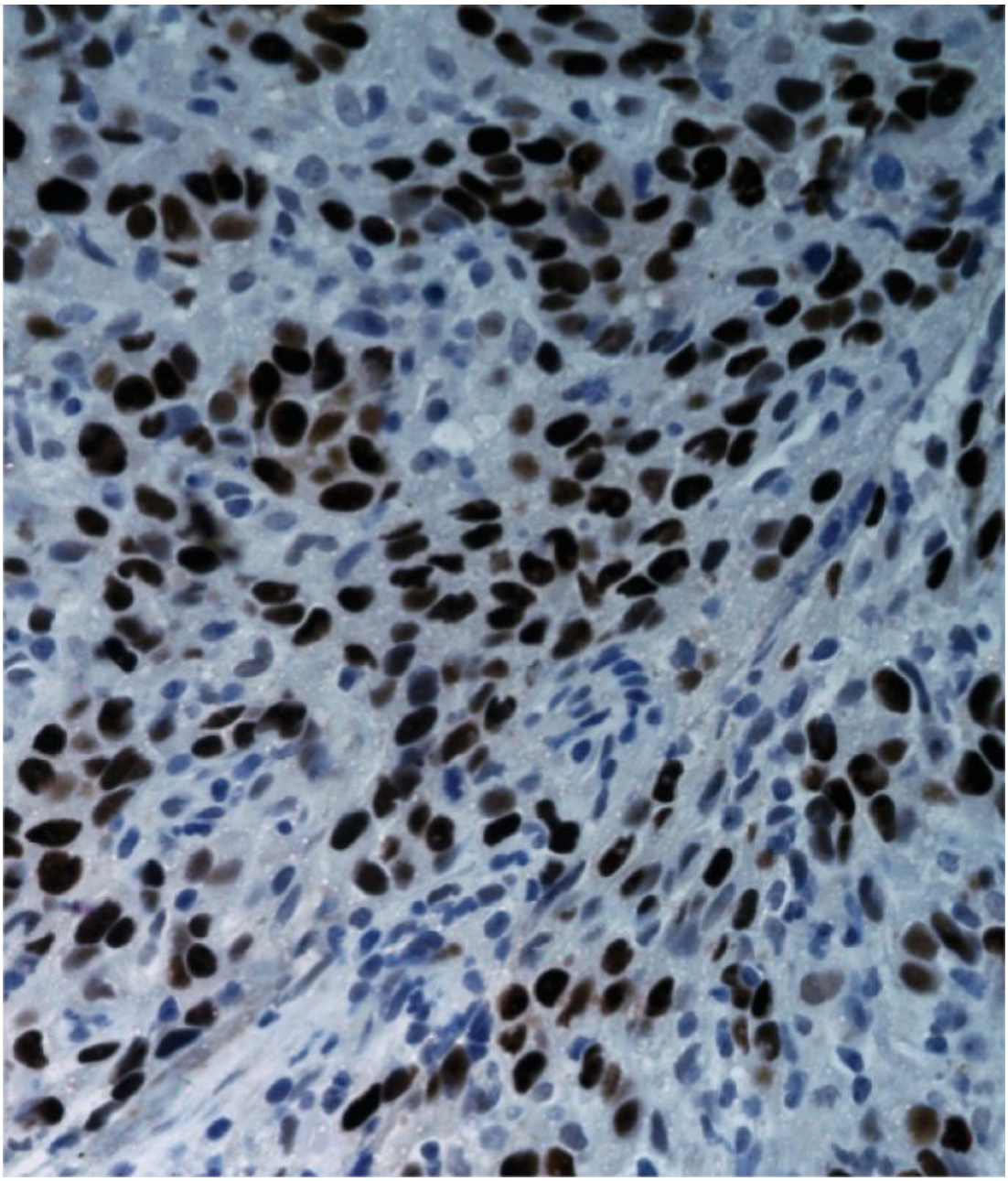
Several techniques are used frequently to mark structures in the fields viewed through a light microscope in order to resolve tissue architecture, the subcellular structures within individual cells, proteins that form these various structures, and even specific genes borne by chromosomal DNA (**Figure S2.1**).



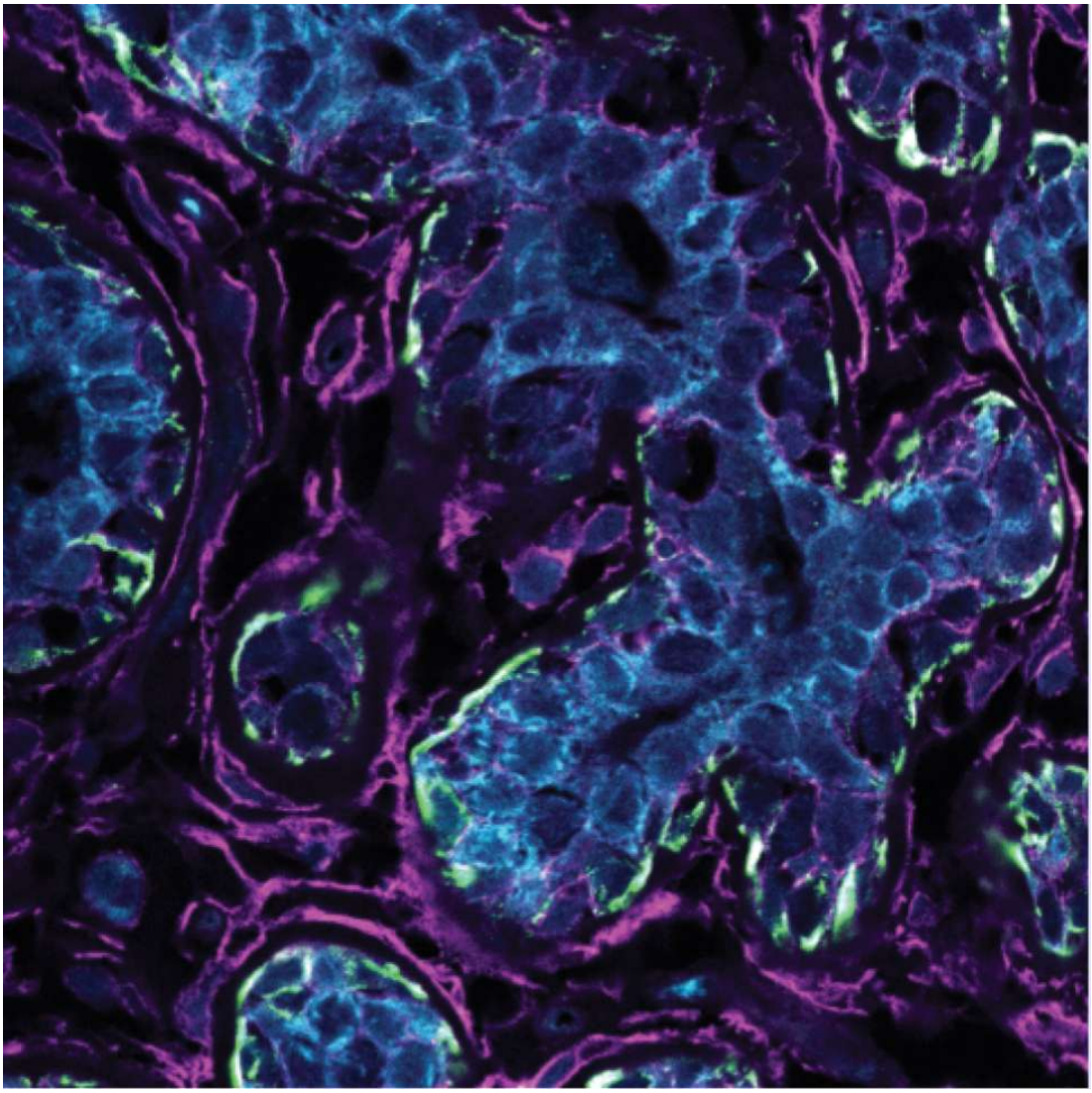
(A)



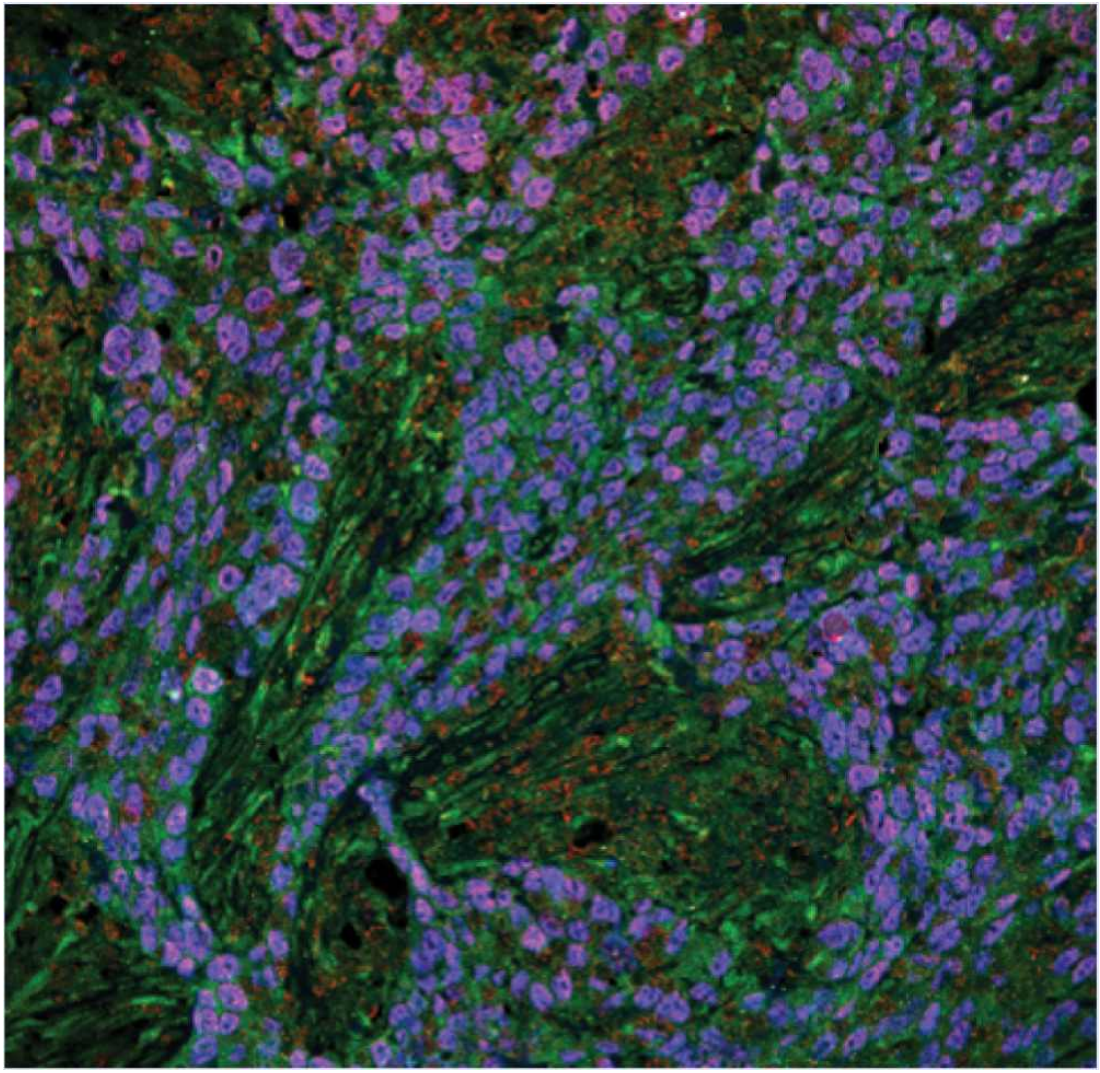
(B)



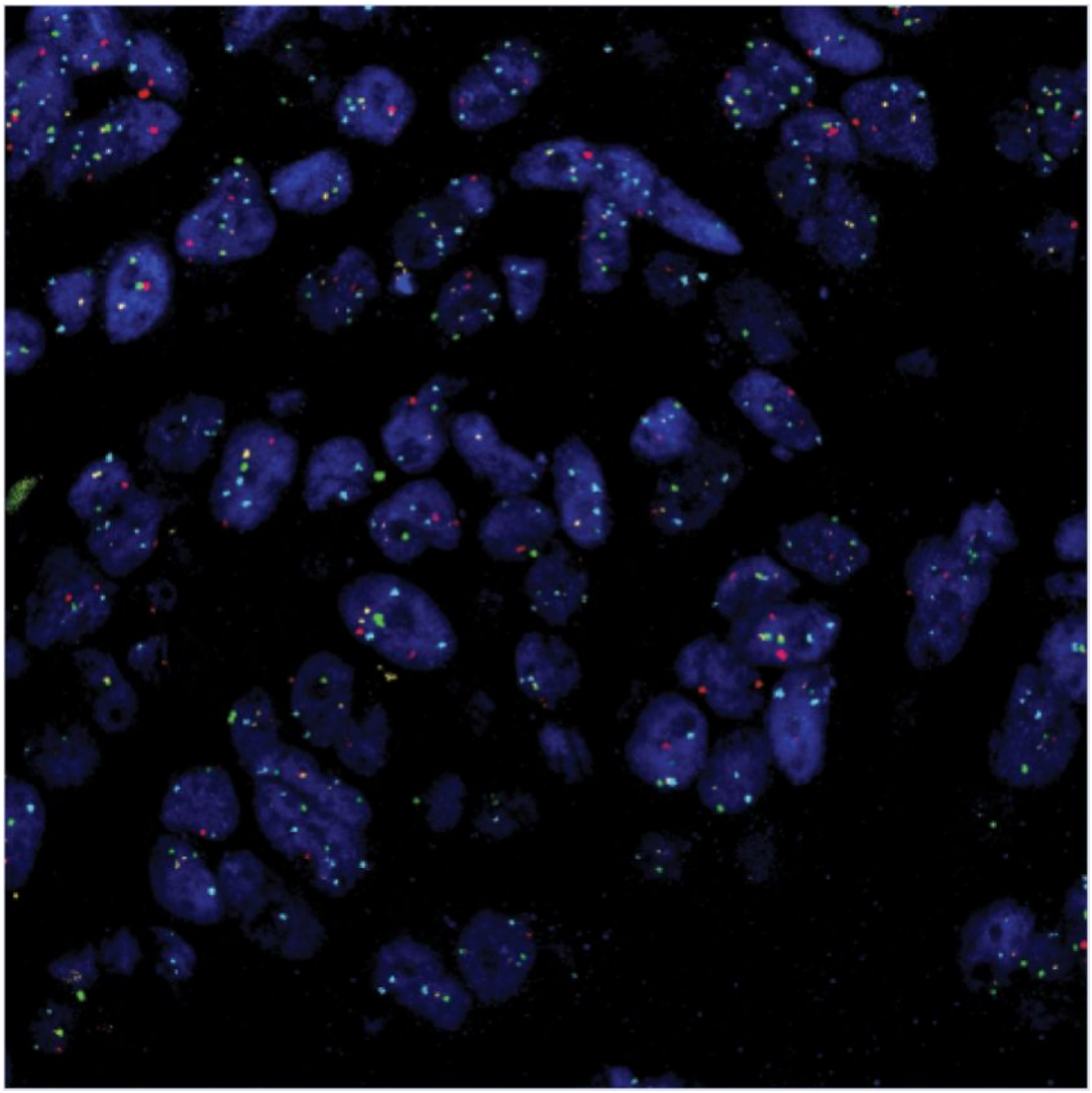
(C)



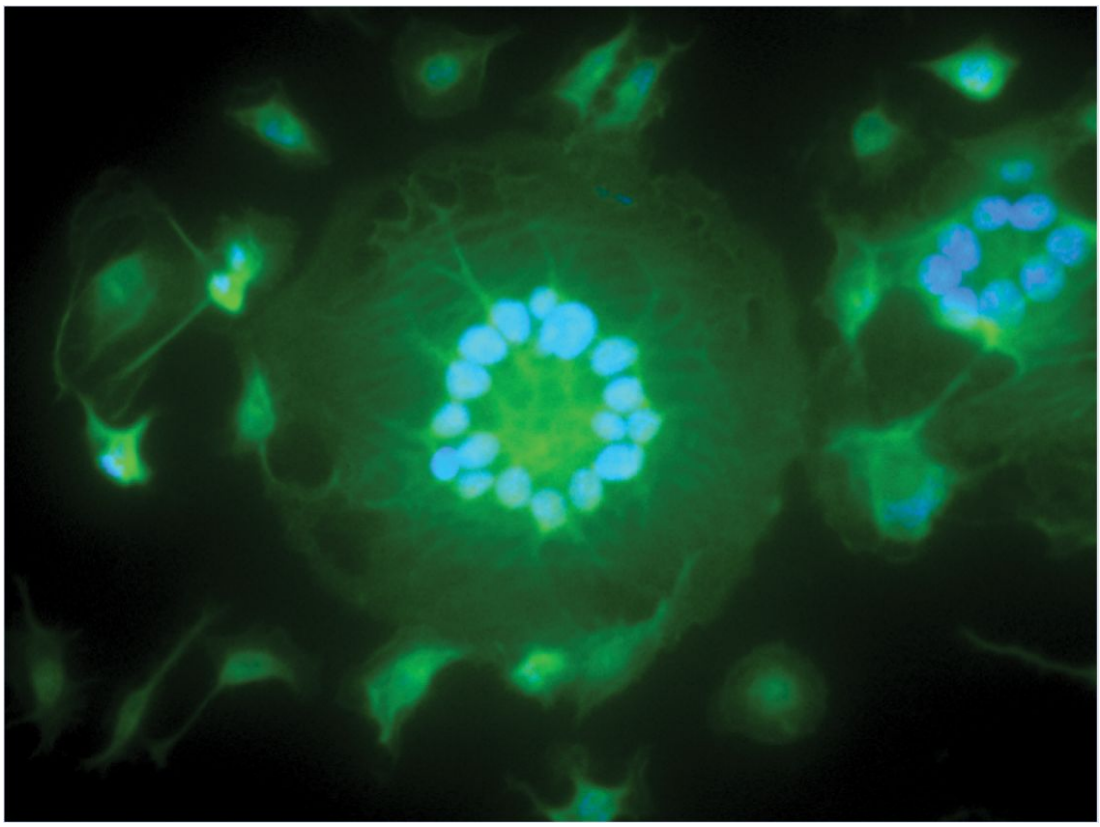
(D)



(E)



(F)



(G)

Figure S2.1 Some frequently used techniques for staining histopathological sections While certain modern microscopic techniques allow visualization of tissues at various depths of focus (sometimes termed the “z-axis”), the great majority are limited to viewing at a single depth, either in cell monolayers or in tissue sections. The latter are prepared by sectioning tissues that have been stabilized by certain fixatives, such as formaldehyde, glutaraldehyde, or ethanol, which permeabilize cells and cross-link molecules in the biological sample prior to its being embedded in paraffin wax and sectioned; this embedding increases the mechanical strength of the sample, thereby facilitating sectioning. Alternatively, a tissue sample may be frozen and sectioned. In both cases, the resulting tissue sections are then deposited on glass slides. The magnification of the images (e.g., 20×) is then represented as the size of an object in an image of a microscopic field divided by its actual size; this factor may then be further increased or decreased as the initially viewed image is printed or presented in digital form. (A) Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) staining reveals complex tissue architecture in this section of a human basal-like carcinoma of the breast (40×). Hematoxylin stains nuclear structures, notably the histones in the chromatin, *blue*; in contrast, eosin stains cytoplasm, connective tissue, and extracellular structures, such as extracellular matrix, *pink*. Note the two major types of tissue organization here: the carcinoma

cells have large, *dark purple* nuclei and are assembled in continuous aggregates while the non-neoplastic cells forming the loose, fibrous stroma have small, *very dark* nuclei. (B) Use of Masson's trichrome stain allows a variety of structures to be visualized with a single staining procedure. In this micrograph (20×) of experimentally transformed human mammary epithelial cells growing as a tumor *xenograft* in a mouse, erythrocytes (red blood cells) appear *bright red*, collagen appears *blue*, cytoplasms appear *light pink*, and cell nuclei appear *dark pink*. (C) Immunohistochemistry (IHC) depends on the ability to conjugate (link) an antigen-specific antibody with an enzyme, usually horseradish peroxidase; this enzyme uses added hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) to oxidize an added chemical substrate, usually generating a *dark brown* or *black* product. In this image (40×), a section of a human basal-like breast tumor has been immunostained using an antibody that binds the p53 tumor suppressor protein, which, in mutant form, accumulates in high concentrations in cell nuclei, revealing them here as *dark ovals*. The section was then stained with hematoxylin, which was used here as a *counterstain* to reveal remaining structures in the tumor, seen here as *light blue*. Nuclei stained with hematoxylin but not with the anti-p53 peroxidase-conjugated antibody are mostly normal, non-neoplastic cells of the tumor-associated stroma. (D) Normal human mammary gland tissue has been stained here using the technique of immunofluorescence (IF), in which antigen-specific antibodies have been conjugated to fluorescent dyes (sometimes termed fluorophores) that emit light at various wavelengths after being excited with light of different, specific wavelengths. This allows the staining with multiple distinct antigen-specific antibodies (in this case three) that enables the concomitant visualization of multiple distinct antigens and thus the cells that express them. In this micrograph (63×), cells expressing the CD44 antigen have been stained with a conjugated antibody that generates a *pink/purple* signal, cells expressing the CD24 antigen have been stained with an antibody that generates a *blue* signal, while cells expressing α-smooth muscle actin have been stained with an antibody that generates a *green* signal. The *blue* mammary epithelial cells are arrayed as the lining of ducts that have a dark lumen (cavity) in their center. (E) An alternative combination of antibodies allows this visualization of human basal-like breast cancer at 40× magnification. In this case, the anti-p53 antibody has been conjugated to a fluorescent dye emitting a *blue* signal, and an antibody recognizing the BRCA1 protein has been conjugated with a dye emitting a *red* signal (yielding small *red dots* in cell nuclei), while an antibody recognizing the PTEN tumor suppressor protein has been stained with an antibody that emits *green* light. This image indicates that the neoplastic cells with *pinkish blue* nuclei generally have lower levels of the BRCA1 protein than do the non-neoplastic cells of the tumor stroma, which lack mutant p53 protein and thus the *pinkish blue* nuclei. (F) In this micrograph (63×), immunofluorescence staining has been combined with fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH), which allows the

detection of DNA sequences in the section by annealing (hybridizing) sequence-specific DNA probes that have been coupled with specific fluorescent dyes; the combined staining is sometimes termed *immunoFISH*. Here, an anti-p53 antibody stains carcinoma cell nuclei *dark blue*, while specific DNA probes have detected DNA sequences associated with the centromeres of Chromosome 10 (CEP10, *red*) and Chromosome 17 (CEP17, *green*), as well as the genes encoding the PTEN (*yellow*) and BRCA1 (*light blue*) proteins. (G) Monkey kidney cells growing in monolayer culture were forced to express a protein that caused them to undergo cell–cell fusion, generating a multi-nucleated cell, sometimes termed a polykaryon or syncytium (*center*). The nuclei were stained with DAPI (4′,6′-diamidino-2-phenylindole), a dye that emits *blue* fluorescence when it binds to dsDNA (double-stranded DNA), while the actin cytoskeleton was stained with phalloidin, which binds actin filaments and in this case has been linked to the *green* fluorescent dye FITC (fluorescein isothiocyanate). (A, C–F, courtesy of F. Martins and K. Polyak.B, courtesy of S. McAllister. G, courtesy of S. Rozenblatt.)

Supplementary Sidebar 2.2 Early embryonic cell layers generate distinct cell types

The early embryos of chordates form three distinct cell layers, each of which in turn generates distinct sets of differentiated cell types in the later embryo and newborn (**Figure S2.2**). Moreover, most adult tissues are formed from cells deriving from more than one early embryonic cell layer. For example, in the majority of adult epithelial tissues, the epithelial cells derive from either the ectoderm or the endoderm, while the underlying mesenchymal cells arise from the mesoderm. Notable exceptions to this involve the kidneys and reproductive organs, in which the multiple cell types forming each of these tissues originate entirely from the mesoderm. Hence, epithelial cells can actually arise from the endoderm, mesoderm, or ectoderm.

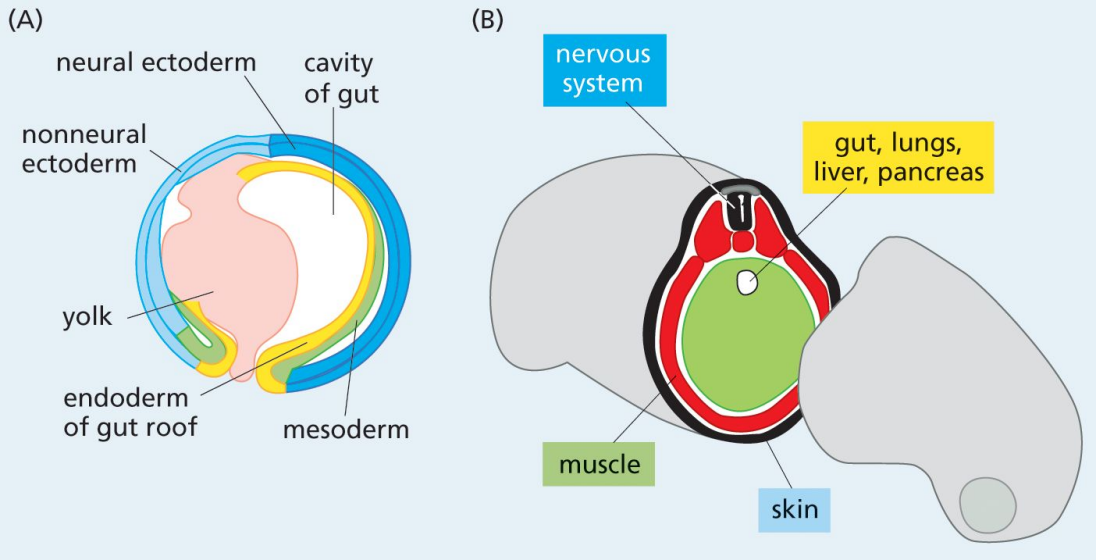


Figure S2.2. Embryonic cell layers (A) The tissues of more complex metazoa develop from three embryonic cell compartments—ectoderm (*blue*), mesoderm (*green*), and endoderm (*yellow*). Each of the three embryonic cell layers is precursor to distinct types of differentiated cells. (B) In an early-stage tadpole, the skin and nervous system develop from the ectoderm (*black*), while the connective tissue, including bone, muscle, and blood-forming cells, develops from the mesoderm (*red*). The gut and derived outpouchings, including lung, pancreas, and liver, develop from the endoderm (*green*). The development of all chordates follows this plan. (Adapted from T. Mohun et al., *Cell* 22:9–15, 1980.)

Supplementary Sidebar 2.3 Anaplastic tumors

Much of the profession of pathology involves analyses of microscopic sections of neoplastic growths, with attempts to determine the grade of tumor, that is, how far it has progressed to a state of aggressive malignancy and, in the case of metastases, the tissue-of-origin in the event that the primary tumor that spawned the metastases cannot be readily detected. Identification of tissue-of-origin is usually aided by the fact that the cells of high-grade malignancies retain many of the biological features that are present in the corresponding normal cells-of-origin. However, as seen in **Figure S2.3**, occasionally the malignant progression of a tumor can effectively erase the morphological traits that usually enable pathologists to readily identify the origins of a tumor under study. Such anaplastic tumors are often highly aggressive and difficult to treat effectively. With the development of (1) monoclonal antibodies directed against tissue-specific marker proteins, (2) large-scale systematic surveys of transcriptomes (see, as examples, Figure 1.14), and (3) the bioinformatics required to process the resulting complex data sets, the assignment of a specific biopsied tumor to one or

another subtype of cancer became almost routine. Hence, the previous reliance exclusively on the morphologic features provided by histopathology was replaced by multi-parameter tests that could categorize tumors routinely, including the great majority of metastatic tumors whose morphology had previously caused them to be relegated to the category of cancers of unknown primary (CUPs).

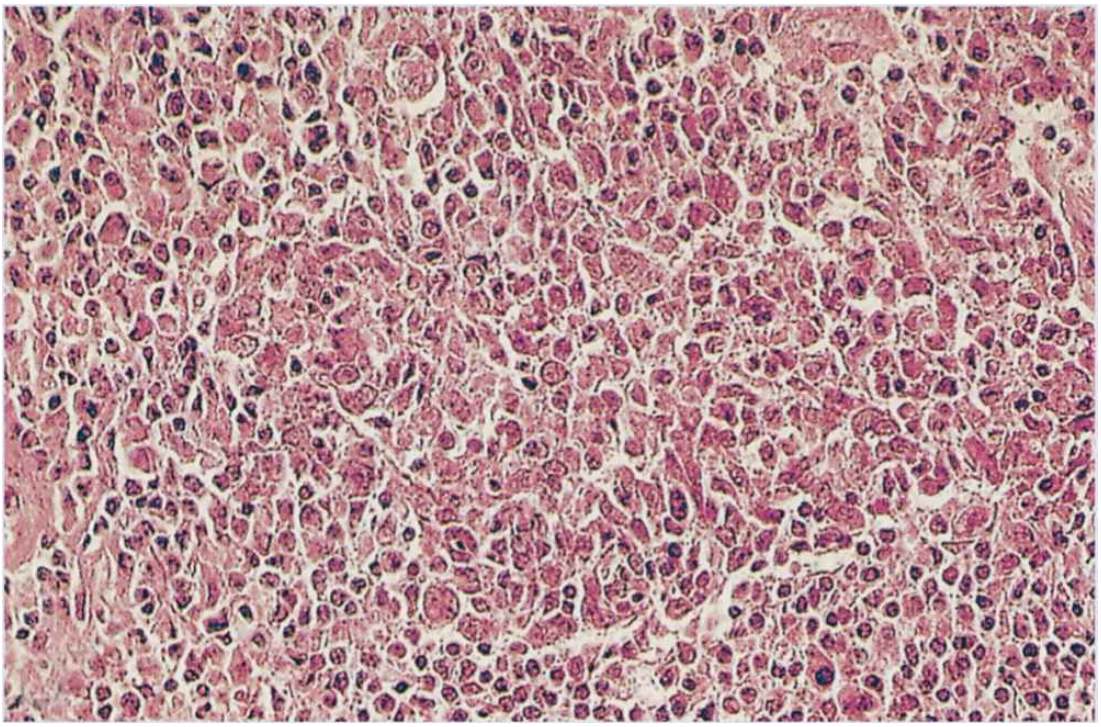


Figure S2.3 Anaplastic tumors of obscure origin The histological appearance of an anaplastic tumor, such as that shown here, gives little indication of its tissue-of-origin. Attempts to determine the origin of these cells with an antibody stain that specifically recognizes one or another tissue-specific protein marker may also prove uninformative. However, more recently developed procedures, including gene expression analyses and sequence analyses of tumor genomes, usually yield an unambiguous assignment of tissue-of-origin. (From A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

Supplementary Sidebar 2.4 Some principles involved in classifying tumors

Many of the principles associated with tumor classification are associated with the need to make useful clinical decisions involving the diagnosis of a tumor (assigning it to a well-defined type or subtype of cancer by enumerating its various characteristics) and prognosis (predicting the future course of the disease). The latter includes a judgment of the responsiveness of a diagnosed tumor to various types of contemplated

therapy including surgery, in addition to the long-term course of a patient's disease. Thus, each type and subtype of tumor has a characteristic course that can be described and predicted with some accuracy by the decades-long experiences of oncologists.

The task of classifying tumors has in recent years become both easier and more difficult. In decades past, almost all of the diagnosis depended simply on histopathological examination of the tissue structure of the tumor under the microscope, doing so using histochemical stains, such as the widely used H&E (hematoxylin and eosin) stain for a wide spectrum of tissue and cancer types (for example, see Figure S2.1A) or more specialized histochemical stains for specific cellular or tissue structures. In addition, macroscopic examination of a tumor, which was usually possible only upon exposing it through surgery, provided further information about its size, degree of progression, and origins. (For example, larger tumors of a given cancer type such as breast cancers generally hold a worse prognosis than smaller tumors.)

The last of these judgments—the origin of the tumor—usually provided the most useful diagnostic decision. The differentiation programs of the cells in various normal tissues continue to influence cell behavior after cells in those tissues undergo neoplastic transformation and become the cells-of-origin of tumor cell populations arising in those tissues. Stated differently, major components of normal differentiation programs persist robustly in tumor cells in spite of the widespread changes in cell physiology that occur in association with the transformation of a normal cell into a tumor cell. This explains why pathologists examining microscopic sections of tumors could successfully classify the tissue origins of >95% of tumors simply by the histomorphology of a cancerous tissue, including aspects of its cytology—the shape and form of individual cells. The remaining tumors, cancers/carcinomas-of-unknown-primary (CUPs), typically were tumors that were ostensibly metastases from a primary tumor that could not be identified at the time of diagnosis; such primary tumors may have disappeared following the seeding of the CUP (see Chapter 14) or remained small, unobtrusive, and thus not readily located.

In addition, microscopic examination of the lymph nodes connected to the organ site in which the tumor was growing would reveal, following their isolation during surgery, the extent to which the tumor had begun to release cells into the lymphatic system, presumably doing so in parallel with releasing cells into the venous system draining the tumor site; hence, lymph node status, including the number of affected lymph nodes, could reveal the degree of metastatic progression, a topic that will be addressed in Chapter 14.

Finally, karyotypic analysis would provide one view of the disorder of the cancer cells' genomes, which in turn could be associated with the staging of the tumor—that is, when considered together with the above-mentioned characteristics, rendering a

judgment of how far the tumor had progressed through the course of multi-step tumor development (see Chapter 11). Together, the various parameters could be integrated into an overall classification of the tumor, placing it in a particular subtype. Reference thereafter to the massive body of clinical oncology experience would then allow a reasonably accurate prediction of the responsiveness of the tumor to surgery, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy, as well as the subsequent eventual course of clinical development, that is, prognosis.

The invention of monoclonal antibodies in 1975 (see **Supplementary Sidebar 16.1**) led in the ensuing decades to an explosion of antigen-specific reagents that made possible the visualization of specific proteins using these antibodies, which were, in turn, often chemically coupled either to enzymes or to a fluorescent protein that generated a specific microscopically visible product (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.1**). An often-used antibody-coupled enzyme is horseradish peroxidase (HRP), which can react with added chromagenic substrate molecules to generate a pigment that is readily visualized in the microscope. A commonly used fluorescent protein is green fluorescent protein (GFP). At present, the traditional H&E staining suffices for histopathological diagnosis in ∼80% of tumor samples, while the newer immunostaining is often employed in the remaining 20% of cases. In recent years, use of the antibody-based histological techniques has made it possible to properly identify the origins of CUPs as well as tumors that have become quite anaplastic, that is, have shed most of the histomorphological features that enable the identification of the origins of a tumor.

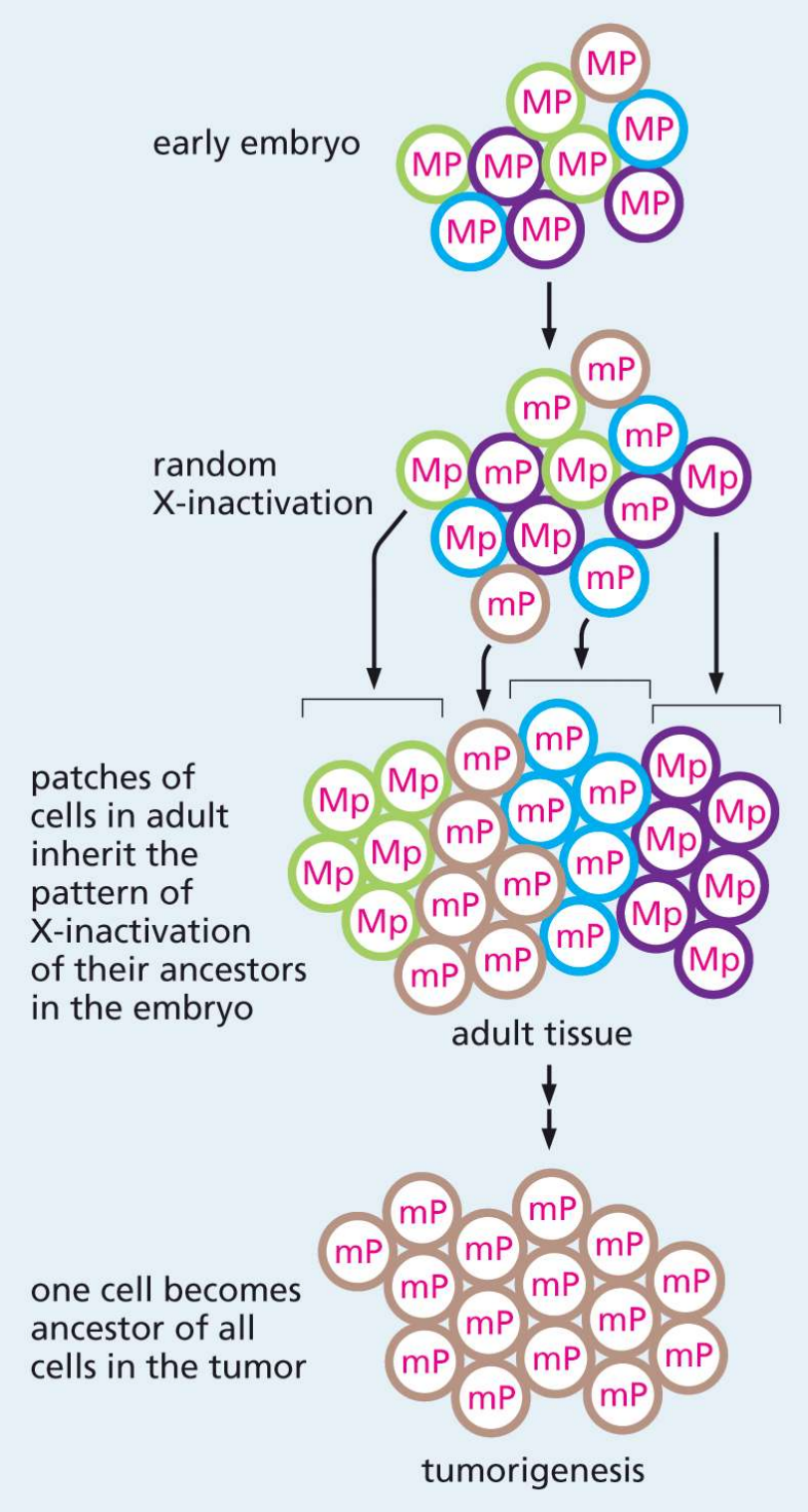
In the same year, the technology was invented that led to the development of DNA microarrays, in which large assemblies of gene-specific DNA molecules could be affixed to glass slides or other substrates, which enabled in turn the surveys of the RNA transcriptomes of cells and tissues. Such microarrays could be used in subsequent decades to stratify tumor samples, that is, to segregate them into distinct subsets that share in common certain transcriptional patterns (see Figure 1.14A). Such stratification allowed tumors that were superficially similar, as judged by histopathology, to be divided into tumor subtypes that carried very different prognoses and behaved very differently in the oncology clinic in response to therapy.

Supplementary Sidebar 2.5 Demonstrations of monoclonality of tumors

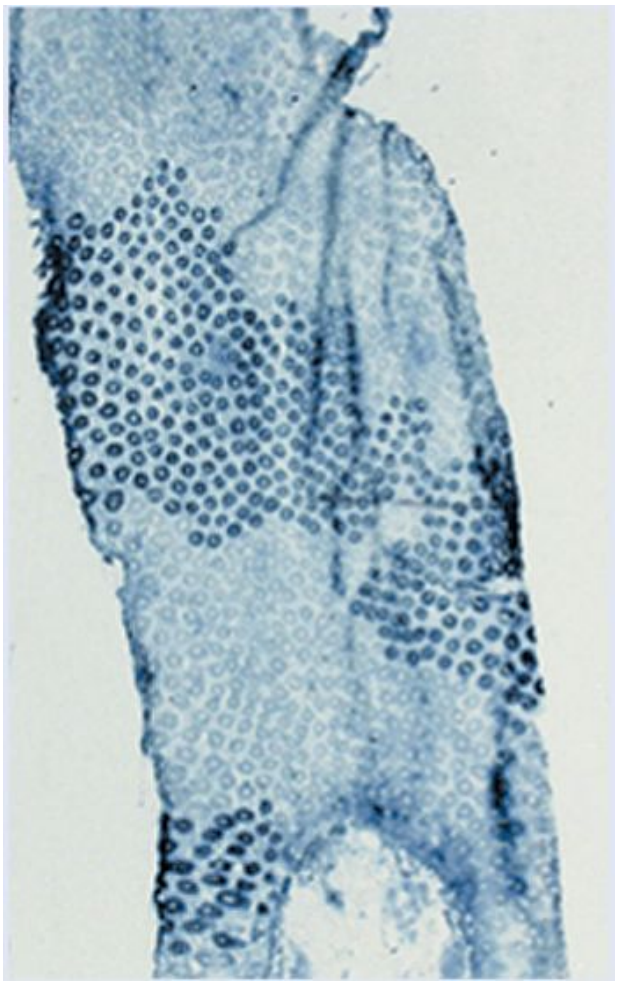
The first experiments designed to measure the clonality of tumor cell populations actually relied on a naturally occurring, nongenetic (epigenetic) marking event. As described in Chapter 1, in the somatic cells of early embryos of female placental mammals, one of the two X chromosomes in each cell is selected randomly for silencing. This silencing causes almost all genes on one X chromosome in a cell to be repressed transcriptionally and is manifested karyotypically through the condensation

of the silenced X chromosome into a small particle termed the Barr body. Once an X chromosome (of maternal or paternal origin) has been inactivated in a cell, all descendant cells in adult tissues appear to respect this decision and thus continue to inactivate the same X chromosome.

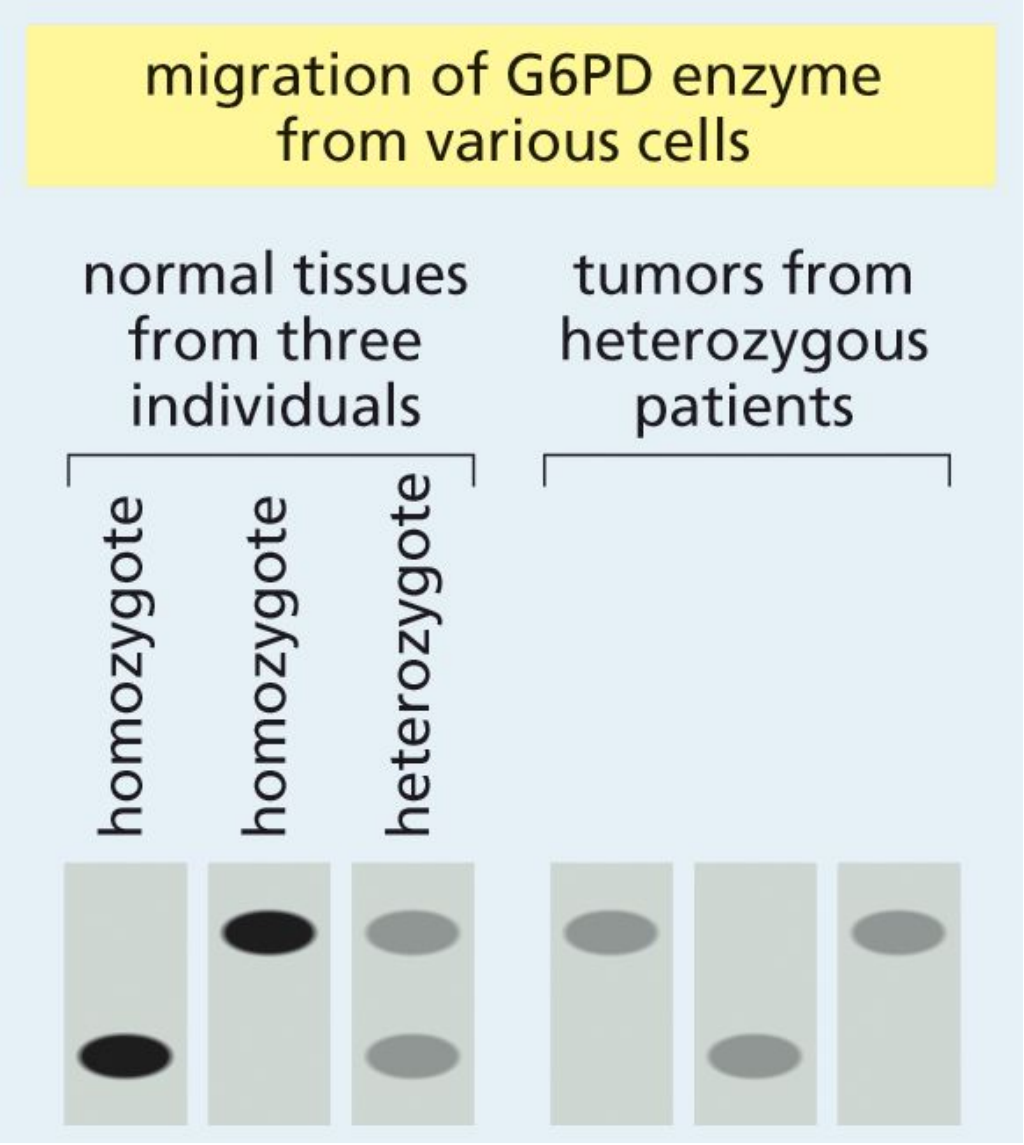
Thus, the lineage of a cell can be followed *in vivo* from its embryonic ancestor, a process called lineage tracing. The gene for glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) is located on the X chromosome, and more than 30% of African American women are heterozygous at this locus. Thus, they carry two alleles specifying forms of this enzyme that can be distinguished either by starch gel electrophoresis or by susceptibility to heat inactivation. Because of X-chromosome silencing, each of the cells in these heterozygous women will express only one or the other allele of the *G6PD* gene, which is manifested in turn in the variant of the G6PD protein that these cells synthesize (**Figure S2.4**). In most of their tissues, half of the cells make one variant enzyme, while the other half make the other variant. In 1965, observations were reported on a number of leiomyomas (benign tumors of the uterine wall) in African American heterozygotes. Each leiomyoma invariably expressed either one or the other variant form of the G6PD enzyme. This meant that, with great likelihood, its component cancer cells all descended from a single founding progenitor that expressed only that particular allele of the *G6PD* gene.


early embryo
random
X-inactivation
patches of
cells in adult
inherit the
pattern of
X-inactivation
of their ancestors
in the embryo
adult tissue
one cell becomes
ancestor of all
cells in the tumor
tumorigenesis

(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S2.4 X-chromosome inactivation patterns and the monoclonality of tumors (A) The female embryo begins with both X chromosomes in an equally active state. At a very early stage of development, the embryonic cells individually undergo random inactivation of either the X chromosome inherited from the mother (M) or the one from the father (P); expression of almost all genes on a cell's inactivated chromosome becomes silenced. In the adult female, all the lineal descendants of any particular embryonic cell continue to exhibit inactivation of the same X chromosome as their ancestor. Hence, the adult female body is made of patches (clones) of cells of the type Mp and patches of the type mP, where the lowercase letter denotes an inactivated state. (B) The two allelic forms of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD), which is encoded by a gene on the X

chromosome, have differing sensitivities to heat inactivation. Hence, gentle heating of tissue from a heterozygote—in this case a section of intestine—reveals patches of cells that carry the heat-resistant, still-active enzyme variant (*dark blue spots*) among patches that do not. The cells in any given patch are the descendants of an embryonic cell that had inactivated either its maternal or its paternal X chromosome. (C) Use of starch gel electrophoresis to resolve the two forms of G6PD showed all of the cancer cells in a tumor from a G6PD-heteozygous patient expressing the same version of this enzyme. This indicated their likely descent from a common ancestral cell that already had this particular pattern of X-inactivation, suggesting that the cancer cells within a tumor mass constitute a monoclonal growth. (B, from M. Novelli et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:3311–3314, 2003. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. C, adapted from P.J. Fialkow, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 291:26–35, 1974.)

Demonstrations of the monoclonality of human tumors have taken many forms. One of particular interest came from observations of myelomas, which derive from the B-cell precursors of antibody-producing plasma cells. Normally, the pool of these B-cell precursors consists of hundreds of thousands, likely millions of distinct subpopulations, each expressing its own specific antibody molecules as a consequence of a particular immunoglobulin (antibody) gene rearrangement. In contrast, all the myeloma cells in a patient produce the identical antibody molecule, indicating their descent from a single, common ancestor that was present years earlier in this complex, heterogeneous cell population (**Figure S2.5**).

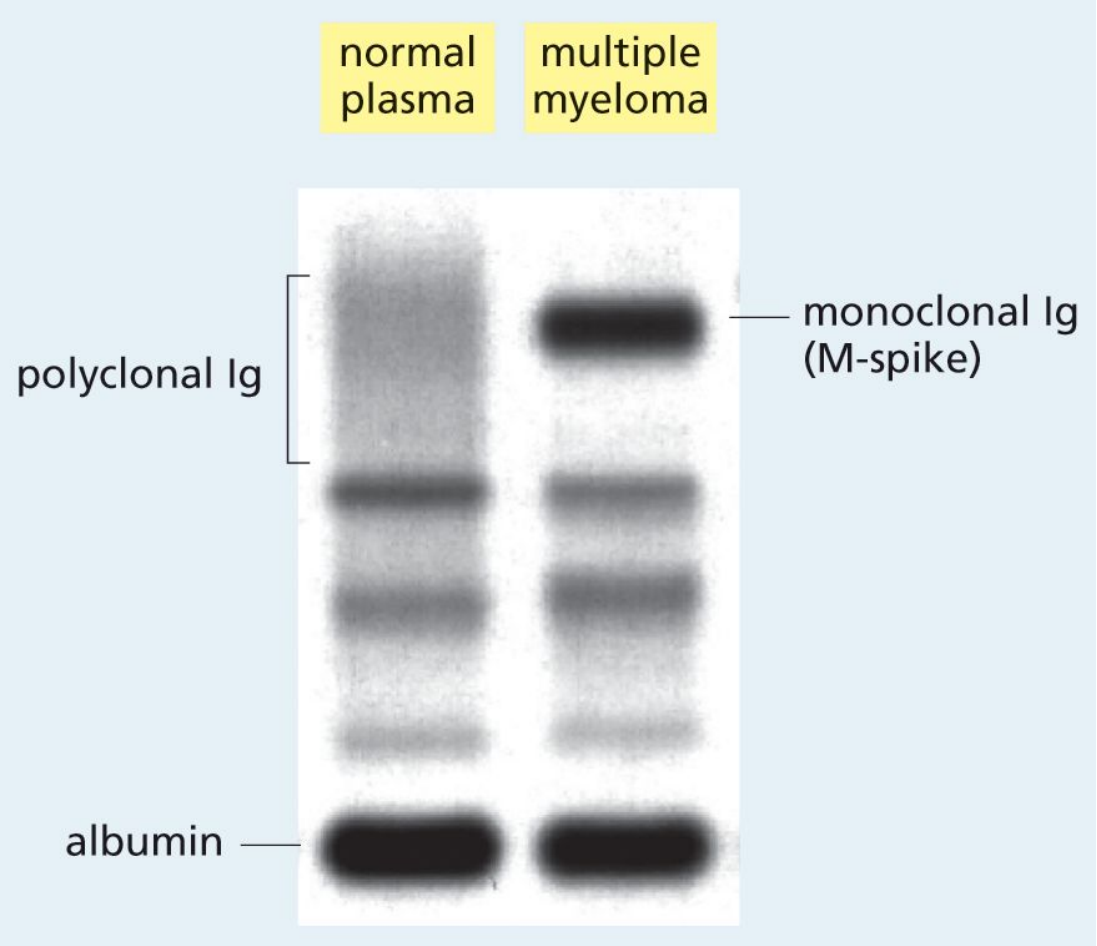


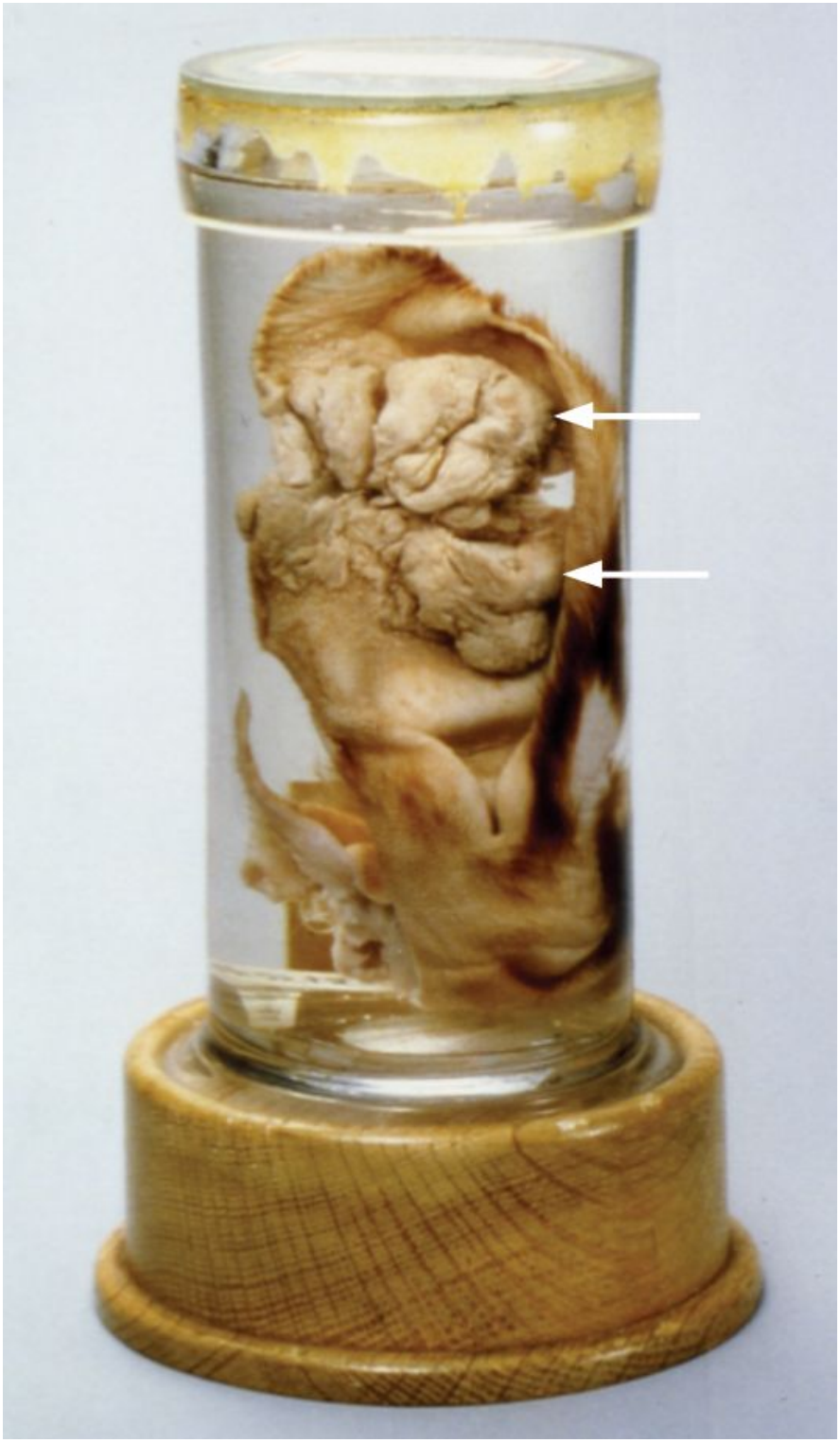
Figure S2.5 Additional proofs of tumor monoclonality In normal plasma, the immunoglobulin (Ig) molecules (e.g., antibodies) migrate as a heterogeneous collection of molecules upon gel electrophoresis (polyclonal Ig, *top of left channel*); this heterogeneity is indicative of the participation of a diverse spectrum (a polyclonal population) of plasma cells in antibody production. However, in multiple myeloma, this heterogeneity is replaced by a single antibody species (termed an M-spike) that is produced by a single clonal population of antibody-secreting tumor cells. (Courtesy of S. Chen-Kiang and S. Ely.)

Supplementary Sidebar 2.6 Katsusaburo Yamagiwa and the origins of experimental carcinogenesis

Working at the University of Tokyo, Katsusaburo Yamagiwa undertook to induce tumors by applying agents that were suspected at the time to be potent carcinogens. Others before him had attempted to induce tumors using some of the same coal tar chemicals that Percivall Pott's earlier research had implicated in inducing scrotal cancers in men who had worked as chimney sweeps in London; these attempts all

failed. Yamagiwa, in contrast, undertook to repeatedly apply coal tar carcinogens to the skin of rabbit ears, doing so over a period of many months and finally succeeding (1915) in inducing tumors (**Figure S2.6**). This work effectively launched the field of chemical carcinogenesis research that flourished during most of the twentieth century.

(A)



(B)

Figure S2.6 The first induction of tumors by chemical carcinogens In 1915, Katsusaburo Yamagiwa (A) reported the first successful induction of cancer by repeated treatment of rabbit ears with a chemical carcinogen, in this case coal tars. (B) The skin carcinomas (*arrows*) that he induced on the ears of these rabbits are preserved to this day in the Medical Museum of the University of Tokyo. This particular carcinoma was harvested and fixed following 660 days of painting with coal tar. (Courtesy of University of Tokyo Graduate School of Medicine.)

In faraway Denmark, Johannes Grib Fibiger had reported two years earlier that stomach cancers in rats could be traced to *Spiroptera* worms that they harbored. His work, for which he received the 1926 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, represented direct and strong validation of the idea, first indicated by Peyton Rous's work (described in Section 3.1), that cancer was yet another example of an infectious disease. Indeed, although their work was mechanistically quite unrelated, the Nobel Committee regarded Yamagiwa's research as a validation of Fibiger's research and therefore awarded the Nobel Prize only to Fibiger.

A year after Fibiger's 1926 Nobel award, he passed away and his scientific opus began to disintegrate. The stomach tumors that he had described were not tumors at all. Instead, they were found to be metaplastic stomach epithelia that were the result of the profound vitamin deficiencies suffered by these rats; they lived in sugar refineries and ate sugar cane almost exclusively. Fibiger's Nobel Prize became an embarrassment to the still-small community of cancer researchers. They threw the proverbial baby out with the bathwater, discrediting both his work and the notion that cancer could ever be caused by infectious agents. Another 40 years would pass before the Nobel Committee once again awarded a prize for cancer research (by recognizing Peyton Rous for his discovery of Rous sarcoma virus).

Yamagiwa's fundamental contribution earned him much respect in Japan but was essentially overlooked in the rest of the world during his lifetime. Only with the advent in the 1940s of intensive experimental study of skin carcinogenesis by Isaac Berenblum, first at Oxford University and later at the Weizmann Institute in Israel (described in Section 11.13), did Yamagiwa's pioneering work become widely appreciated internationally.

Supplementary Sidebar 2.7 Structures of carcinogenic coal tar molecules

While work of Yamagiwa (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.6**) and others demonstrated experimentally that coal tar chemicals were potently carcinogenic, the chemical species within the highly complex mixture of coal tar condensate chemicals that were specifically responsible for the observed effects on cancer induction were unresolved.

By the late 1930s, using complex analytical tools of organic chemistry, chemists had deciphered the molecular structures of many of these compounds (**Figure S2.7**).

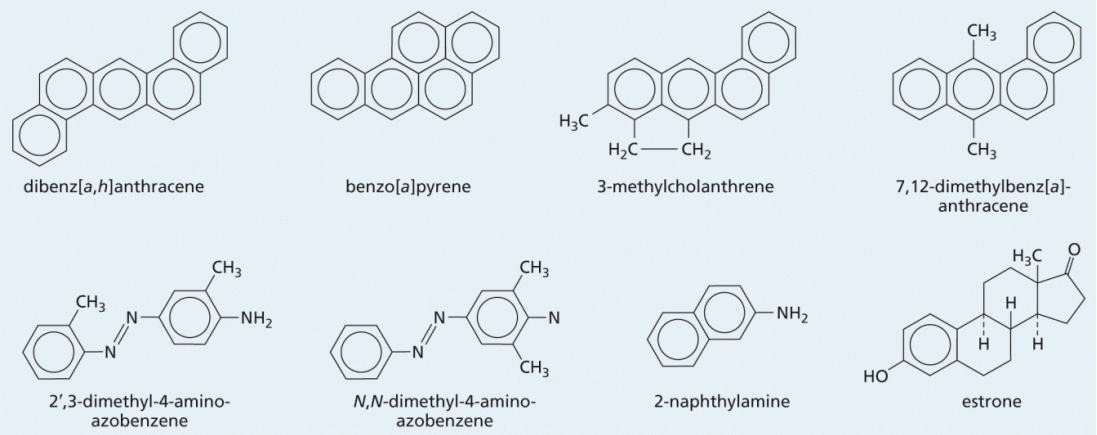


Figure S2.7 Structures of carcinogenic hydrocarbons These chemical species arise from the incomplete combustion of organic (carbon-containing) compounds. Each of the chemical structures shown here, which were already determined before 1940, represents a chemical species thatwas found, following purification, tobe potently carcinogenic. The four compounds shown in the top row are all polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). (From E.C. Miller, *Cancer Res.* 38:1479–1496, 1978. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Supplementary Sidebar 2.8 Use of the Ames test to detect mutagenic and thus potentially carcinogenic compounds

The Ames test was applied extensively in the years after its initial employment to detect a wide diversity of mutagens, many of which are present in the food supply and many of which are the products of natural biosynthesis. In the great majority of cases, these “natural” compounds are present in minute quantities in the food chain and therefore do not present significant risk of developing various types of cancer. Nevertheless, they suggest the possibility that the vast majority of mutagenic compounds to which humans are exposed are products of natural/organic biosynthesis rather than being products of synthetic chemical processes (**Table S2.1**).

Table S2.1 A sampling of Bruce Ames’s roster of carcinogens identified in the normal diet[a]

Foodstuff	Compound	Concentration in foodstuff
Black pepper	piperine	100 mg/g
Common mushroom	agaritine	3 mg/g
Celery	furocoumarins, psoralens[b]	1 µg/g, 0.8 µg/g
Rhubarb	anthraquinones	varies
Cocoa powder	theobromine	20 mg/g
Mustard, horseradish	allyl isothiocyanate	varies
Alfalfa sprouts	canavanine[c]	15 mg/g
Burnt materials[d]	large number	varies
Coffee	caffeic acid	11.6 mg/g

Adapted from B.N. Ames, *Science* 221:1256–1264, 1983; B.N. Ames and L.S. Gold, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:7777–7781, 1990; and L.S. Gold, B.N. Ames and T.H. Slone, Misconceptions about the causes of cancer, in D. Paustenbach, ed., Human and Environmental Risk Assessment: Theory and Practice, New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2002, pp. 1415–1460.

Supplementary Sidebar 2.9 Other tests for mutagenicity help assess possible carcinogenicity

The Ames test is only one of a number of biological assay systems that can be used to assess the mutagenic potency of suspected carcinogenic chemicals. Many of these other assays depend upon exposing mammalian cells directly to the chemical compounds being tested and the subsequent use of a diverse array of biological readouts. For example, (1) a test for sister chromatid exchange (SCE) measures crossing over between the two paired chromatids that are formed by DNA replication during the S phase and persist in paired form during the late (that is, G_2) phase of a cell's growth-and-division cycle. Many mutagenic agents have been shown to provoke this SCE. (2) Mutagenic agents may also register as being capable of inducing the formation of fragmented cell nuclei, that is, micronuclei. (3) Use of genetics has made it possible to select mammalian cells that have lost by mutation their thymidine kinase or HGPRT (hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase) enzymes. (4) The ability to examine under the light microscope the chromosomal array (that is, the karyotype; see Figure 1.9) of cells in metaphase of mitosis makes it possible to screen for chromosomal aberrations inflicted by test compounds. (5) Yet another assay gauges the degree of DNA labeling in those cells that are in the G_1 or G_2 phase of the cell cycle (described in Chapter 8); since cellular DNA synthesis normally occurs in the S phase, such non-S-phase labeling, which is sometimes referred to as "unscheduled DNA synthesis," has also been shown to be a good indicator of the genomic damage that has been inflicted on a cultured cell, since this type of DNA synthesis represents one key step in the process used by cells to repair damaged DNA.

None of these tests has proven to be ideal as a predictor of the carcinogenicity of a test substance. The Ames test, as an example, has been found by some to have a sensitivity (% of established carcinogens identified as mutagens) of about 54% and a specificity (% of noncarcinogens identified as nonmutagens) of 70%.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cell-of-origin
: The fully normal cell that serves as the ancestor of all the neoplastic cells within a tumor, i.e., their last common normal ancestor.

micronucleus
: (1) A small fragment of a nucleus that has its own nuclear membrane and results from certain aberrations in cell division or from damage inflicted on a cell; micronuclei often carry only a single chromosome and arise when this chromosome fails to be incorporated into the previously formed mitotic spindle, thereby escaping inclusion in the normal karyotypic array of a daughter cell. (2) Smaller of the two nuclei in many ciliate cells, which is used to carry and transmit the ciliate genome to progeny cells.

immunoglobulin
: An antibody molecule assembled from two heavy and two light chains.

epigenetic
: (1) Referring to a process that affects phenotype without the involvement of heritable changes in the nucleotide sequence of the genome. (2) Referring to a mechanism enabling the transmission of a heritable trait from a cell or organism to its progeny that does not depend directly on changes of specific nucleotide sequences in its genome. (3) Referring to a mechanism that creates a cell-heritable trait, as in (2), and maintains expression of this trait in the absence of ongoing exposure to the stimulus that initially induced the expression of this trait. *See also* **epigenetics**, **genetic**.

leiomyoma
: Benign tumor of the mesenchymal cells forming the wall of the uterus.

myeloma
: A malignancy of the antibody-producing cells of the bone marrow, often called multiple myeloma to indicate the large number of osteolytic lesions that are encountered in patients with advanced disease.

lineage
: A continuous, linear succession of cells extending from an ancestral cell via multiple intervening generations to its most recent

descendants.

anaplastic

(Referring to a tumor) having a tissue and cellular architecture lacking the differentiated characteristics of an identifiable tissue-of-origin or tumor type.

anaplastic

(Referring to a tumor) having a tissue and cellular architecture lacking the differentiated characteristics of an identifiable tissue-of-origin or tumor type.

prognosis

A prediction about the future clinical course of a disease, often influenced by detailed analyses of its existing attributes such as histopathology and biochemical markers.

staging

A determination of the extent to which a tumor has progressed to a specific stage of multi-step tumor progression, involving consideration of an array of gross/macroscopic, histopathological, and karyotypic parameters.

chromogenic

A chemical that generates a visible pigment upon enzymatic alteration; *sometimes called* **chromagenic**.

stratify

(n., **stratification**) To classify superficially similar entities (e.g., a group of tumors) into several distinct categories or subclasses based on the shared properties of the entities within a given subclass.

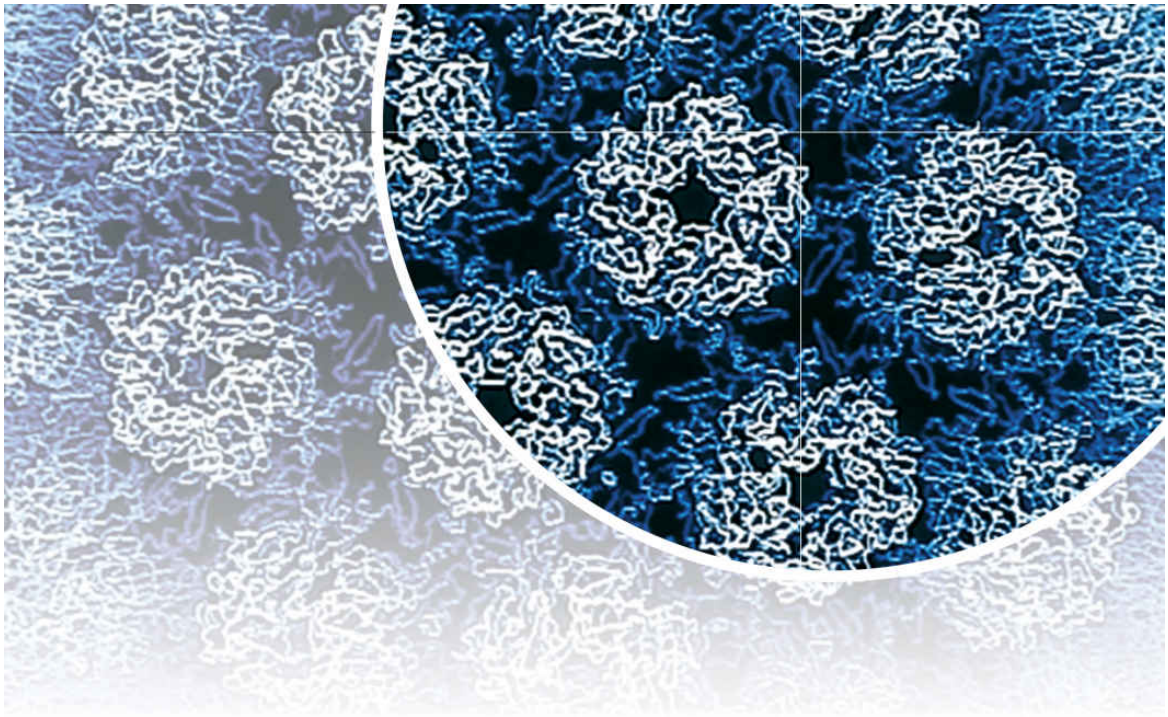
OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aAmes has cited 37 naturally occurring compounds that have registered as carcinogens in laboratory animals; one or more have been found in each of the following foodstuffs: absinthe, allspice, anise, apple, apricot, banana, basil, beet, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, cabbage, cantaloupe, caraway, cardamom, carrot, cauliflower, celery, cherries, chili pepper, chocolate, cinnamon, cloves, coffee, collard greens, comfrey herb tea, coriander, corn, currants, dill, eggplant, endive, fennel, garlic, grapefruit, grapes, guava, honey, honeydew melon, horseradish, kale, lemon, lentils, lettuce, licorice, lime, mace, mango, marjoram, mint, mushrooms, mustard, nutmeg, onion, orange, paprika, parsley, parsnip, peach, pear, peas, pepper (black), pineapple, plum, potato, radish, raspberries, rhubarb, rosemary, rutabaga, sage, savory, sesame seeds, soybean, star anise, tarragon, tea, thyme, tomato, turmeric, and turnip.Return to reference a
- bThe levels of these can increase 100-fold in diseased plants.Return to reference b
- cCanavanine is indirectly genotoxic because of oxygen radicals that are released, perhaps during the inflammatory reactions associated with elimination of canavanine-containing proteins.Return to reference c
- dOn average, several grams of burnt material are consumed daily in the form of bread crusts, burnt toast, and burnt surfaces of meats cooked at high temperature.Return to reference d

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 3
Cancer as an Infectious Disease



A color micrograph of the S V 40 virus. It is coated with cylidrical protrusions.

A tumor of the chicken ... has been propagated in this laboratory since October, 1909. The behavior of this new growth has been throughout that of a true neoplasm, for which reason the fact of its transmission by means of a cell-free filtrate assumes exceptional importance.

Francis Peyton Rous, cancer biologist, 1911

Viruses are capable of causing a wide variety of human diseases, ranging from rabies to smallpox to the common cold and the acute respiratory syndrome triggered by the COVID-19 virus. The great majority of these infectious agents do harm through their ability to multiply inside infected host cells, to kill these cells, and to release progeny virus particles that proceed to infect other hosts

nearby. The cytopathic (cell-killing) effects of viruses, together with their ability to spread rapidly throughout a tissue, enable these agents to leave wide swaths of destruction in their wake.

But the peculiarities of certain viral replication cycles may on occasion yield quite another outcome. Rather than killing infected cells, some viruses may, quite paradoxically, force their cellular hosts to thrive, indeed, to proliferate uncontrollably. In so doing, such viruses—often called tumor viruses—can create cancer.

At one time, beginning in the early 1970s, tumor viruses were studied intensively because they were suspected to be the cause of many common human cancers. This notion was eventually rejected based on the evidence subsequently gathered during that decade, which indicated that virus-induced cancers represent only a minority of the cancer types afflicting humans. Nonetheless, this line of research proved to be invaluable for cancer biologists: study of various tumor viruses provided the key for opening many of the long-hidden secrets of human cancers, including the great majority of cancers that have no connection with infectious agents.

As we will see, tumor virus research had a highly variable history over the course of the last century. These infectious agents were discovered in the first decade of the twentieth century and then retreated from the center stage of science. Half a century later, interest in these agents revived, culminating in the frenetic pace of tumor virus research during the 1970s.

The cancer-causing powers of tumor viruses drove many researchers to ask precisely how they succeed in creating disease. Most of these viruses possess relatively simple genomes containing only a few genes, yet some were found able to overwhelm an infected cell and its vastly more complex genome and to redirect cell growth. Such behavior indicated that tumor viruses have developed extremely potent genes to perturb the complex regulatory circuitry of the host cells that they infect.

By studying tumor viruses and their mechanisms of action, researchers changed the entire mindset of cancer research. Cancer became a disease of genes and thus a condition that was susceptible to analysis by the newly invented tools of molecular biology and genetics. When this story began, no one anticipated how obscure tumor viruses would one day revolutionize the study of human cancer pathogenesis.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cytopathic
: Causing damage or death to a cell. *See also* **cytocidal**, **cytostatic**, **cytotoxic**.

replication cycle
: The program of molecular and biochemical changes that enables an infecting virus particle to multiply within a cell, generate progeny virus particles, and release these particles so that they may infect other cells.

OceanofPDF.com

3.1 Peyton Rous discovers a chicken sarcoma virus

In the last two decades of the nineteenth century, the research of Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch uncovered the infectious agents that were responsible for dysentery, cholera, rabies, and a number of other diseases. By the end of the century, these agents had been placed into two distinct categories, depending on their behavior upon filtration. Solutions of infectious agents that were trapped in the pores of filters were considered to contain bacteria. The other agents, which were small enough to pass through the filters, were classified as viruses. On the basis of this criterion, the agents responsible for rabies, foot-and-mouth disease, and smallpox were categorized as viruses.

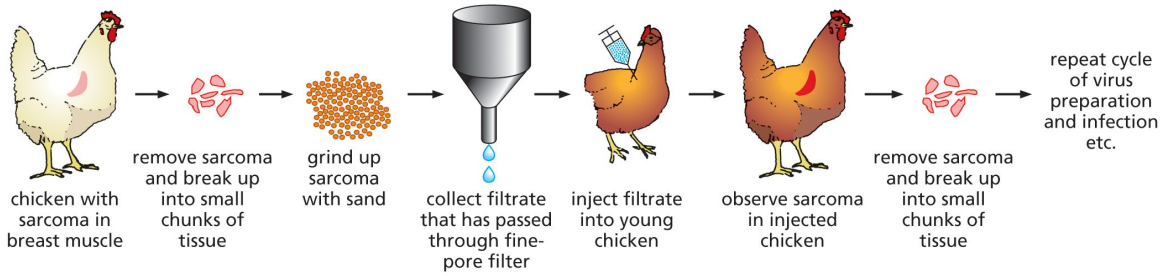
Cancer, too, was considered a candidate infectious disease. As early as 1876, a researcher in Russia reported the transmission of a tumor from one dog to another: chunks of tumor tissue from the first dog were experimentally implanted into the second, whereupon a tumor appeared several weeks later. This success was followed by many others using rat and mouse tumors.

The significance of these early experiments remained controversial. Some researchers interpreted these outcomes as proof that cancer was a transmissible disease. Yet others dismissed these transplantation experiments, since in their eyes, such work showed only that tumors, like normal tissues, could be excised from one animal and forced to grow as a graft in the body of a second animal.

In 1908, two researchers in Copenhagen reported extracting a filterable agent from chicken leukemia cells and transmitting this agent to other birds, which then contracted the disease. The two Danes did not follow up on their initial discovery, and it remained for Peyton Rous, working at the Rockefeller Institute in New York, to found the discipline of tumor virology (**Supplementary Sidebar 3.1**).

A year later, Rous began his study of a sarcoma that had appeared in the breast muscle of a hen. In initial experiments, Rous succeeded in transmitting the tumor by implanting small fragments of it into other birds of the same breed. Later, as a variation of this experiment, he ground up a sarcoma fragment in sand and filtered the resulting homogenate under conditions in which only subcellular particles could pass through the filter (**Figure 3.1**). When he injected the resulting

filtrate into young birds, they too developed tumors, sometimes within several weeks. He subsequently found that these induced tumors could also be homogenized to yield, once again, an infectious agent that could be transmitted, following filtration, to yet other birds, which also developed sarcomas at the sites of injection.



Rous's protocol for inducing sarcomas in chickens begins with a chicken that already has sarcoma in the breast muscle. The sarcoma tissue is removed and broken up into small chunks, which are then ground up with sand. The resulting homogenate is passed through a fine-pore filter. The collected filtrate is injected into a young chicken. Some time later, a sarcoma is observed in the injected chicken. Now the cycle of virus preparation and infection can be repeated: the sarcoma tissue is removed and broken up into small chunks, and so on.

Figure 3.1 Rous's protocol for inducing sarcomas in chickens Rous removed a sarcoma from the breast muscle of a chicken, ground it with sand, and passed the resulting homogenate through a fine-pore filter. He then injected the filtrate (the liquid that passed through the filter) into the wing web of a young chicken and observed the development of a sarcoma many weeks later. He then ground up this new sarcoma and repeated the cycle of homogenization, filtration, and injection, once again observing a tumor in another young chicken. These cycles could be repeated indefinitely; after repeated serial passaging, the virus produced sarcomas far more rapidly than the original viral isolate.

These serial passages of the sarcoma-inducing agent from one animal to another yielded a number of conclusions that are obvious to us now but at the time were nothing less than revolutionary. The carcinogenic agent, whatever its nature, was clearly very small, since it could pass through a filter. Hence, it was a virus (**Sidebar 3.1**). This virus could cause the development of a sarcoma in an injected chicken, doing so on a predictable timetable. Such an infectious agent offered

researchers the unique opportunity to induce cancers at will rather than relying on the spontaneous and unpredictable appearance of tumors in animals or humans. In addition to its ability to induce cancer, this agent, which came to be called Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), was capable of multiplying within the tissues of the chicken; far more virus could be recovered from an infected tumor tissue than was originally injected.

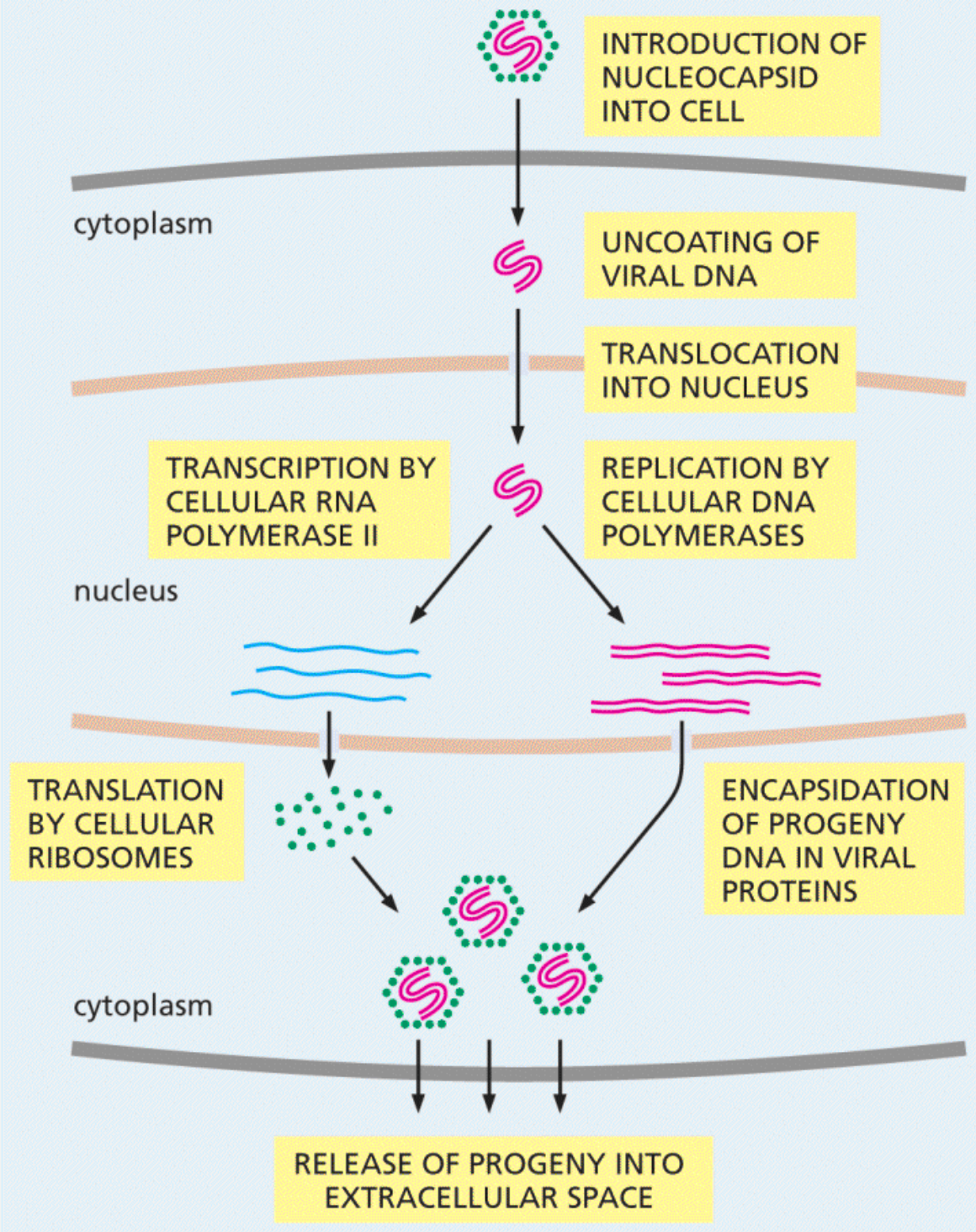
Sidebar 3.1 Viruses have simple life cycles

The term “virus” refers to a diverse array of particles that infect and multiply within a wide variety of cells, ranging from bacteria to the cells of plants and metazoa. Relative to the cells that they infect, individual virus particles, often termed virions, are tiny. This explains the original experimental definition of a virus: an infectious particle that could pass through a filter that was designed to trap larger infectious particles, namely bacteria. Virions are generally simple in structure, with a nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) genome wrapped in a protein coat (a capsid) and, in some cases, a lipid membrane surrounding the capsid. In isolation, viruses are metabolically inert. They can multiply only by infecting and parasitizing a suitable host cell. The viral genome, once introduced into the cell, provides instructions for the synthesis of progeny virus particles. The host cell, for its part, provides the low–molecular-weight precursors needed for the synthesis of viral proteins and nucleic acids, the protein-synthetic machinery, and, in many cases, the polymerases required for replicating and transcribing the viral genome.

The endpoint of the resulting infectious cycle is the production of hundreds, even thousands of progeny virus particles that can then leave the infected cell and proceed to infect other susceptible cells. The interaction of the virus with the host cell can be either a virulent one, in which the host cell is destroyed during the infectious cycle, or a persistent one, in which the host cell survives for extended periods, all the while harboring the viral genome and releasing progeny virus particles.

Many viruses carrying double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) genomes replicate in a fashion that closely parallels the macromolecular metabolism of their host cells (**Figure 3.2**). These viruses use host-cell DNA polymerases to replicate their DNA, host-cell RNA polymerases to transcribe the viral mRNAs from viral dsDNA templates, and host ribosomes to translate the resulting viral mRNAs. Once synthesized, viral proteins are used to coat (encapsidate) the newly

synthesized viral genomes, resulting in the assembly of complete progeny virions, which then are released from the infected cell.



The life cycle of a virus. It begins when a nucleocapsid is introduced into the cytoplasm of a cell. The viral D N A undergoes uncoating and translocation

into the cell nucleus. Now two processes occur in parallel. One process is transcription by cellular R N A polymerase 2. The other process is replication by cellular D N A. Ribosomes translate the products of the transcription process out of the nucleus. The progeny D N A produced by replication undergo encapsidation by the viral proteins produced through transcription. The new, complete progeny particles are released into extracellular space.
Figure 3.2 Life cycle of viruses with dsDNA genomes The life cycle of viruses with double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) genomes closely parallels that of the host cell. Almost all of the steps leading to the synthesis of viral DNA, RNA, and proteins can be achieved by using the synthetic machinery provided by the infected host cell. (Adapted from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2015.)

Since cells do not express enzymes that can replicate RNA molecules, the genomes of most RNA-containing virus particles encode their own RNA-dependent RNA polymerases to replicate their genomes. Poliovirus, as an example, makes such an enzyme, as does rabies virus. RNA tumor viruses like Rous sarcoma virus, as we will learn later in this chapter, follow a much more circuitous route for replicating their viral RNA.

In 1911, when Rous finally published his work, yet another report appeared on a transmissible virus of rabbit tumors, called myxomas. Soon thereafter, Rous and his collaborators found two other chicken viruses, and yet another chicken sarcoma virus was reported by others in Japan. Four years later, Rous himself gave up his research on the virus he had discovered, since human cancer did not seem to behave like an infectious disease. Then, research on tumor viruses languished for two decades until other novel tumor viruses were discovered. The molecular nature of viruses and the means by which they multiplied would remain mysteries for more than half a century after Rous's initial discovery.

Still, his finding of a sarcoma virus reinforced the convictions of those who believed that virtually all human diseases were provoked by infectious agents. In their eyes, cancer could be added to the lengthening list of diseases, such as cholera, tuberculosis, rabies, and sepsis, whose causes could be associated with a specific microbial agent. Like many others, however, Rous focused his research in the decades that followed on chemicals as causes of human cancer. As described in Section 2.8, the field of chemical carcinogenesis to which Rous turned was established in the early twentieth century following the discovery of chemicals that were clearly carcinogenic. The research community turned its back

on Rous sarcoma virus and the other tumor viruses for decades after his initial discoveries.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

filtrate
: Liquid that has passed through a filter.

virion
: Virus particle including a capsid (coat) and the viral genome.

capsid
: Protein coat of a virus particle that envelops and protects the viral genome.

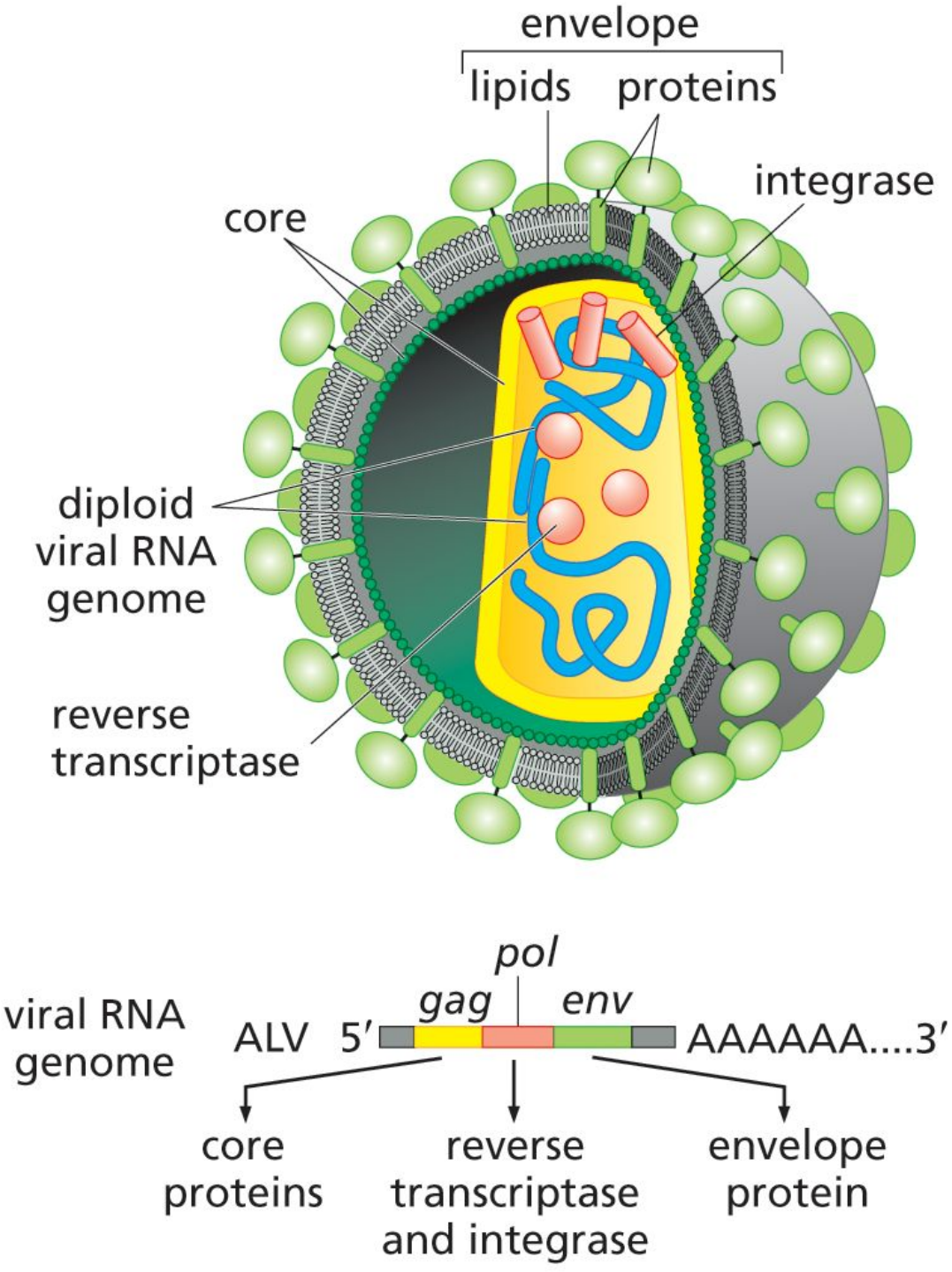
virulent
: Referring to an infectious agent, such as a virus, that exhibits toxicity and creates damage in an infected host cell or organism. *See also* **temperate**.

encapsidation
: Process of packaging a viral genome in a capsid.

OceanofPDF.com

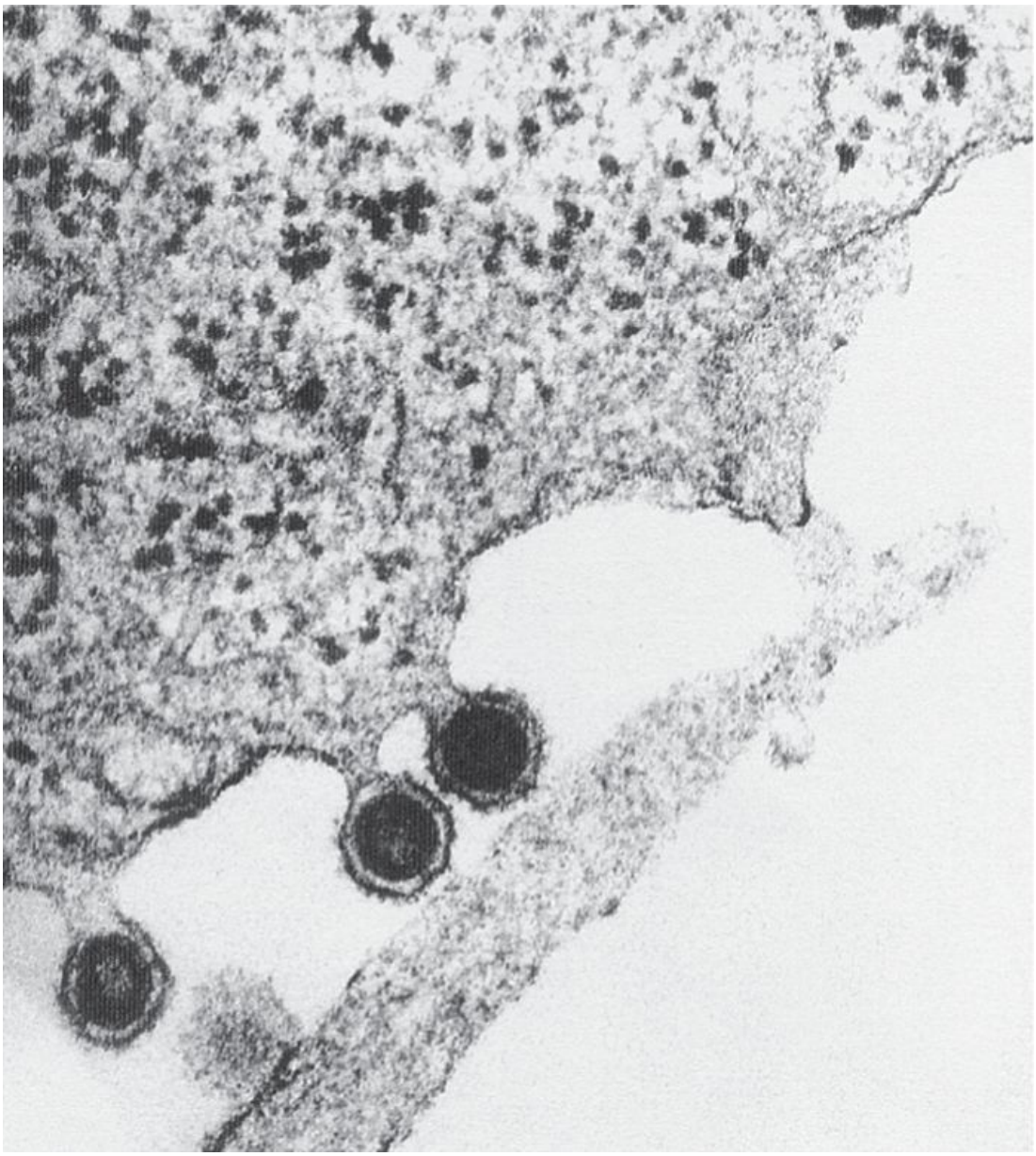
3.2 Rous sarcoma virus is discovered to transform infected cells in culture

The rebirth of Rous sarcoma virus research began largely at the California Institute of Technology in Pasadena, in the virology laboratory of Renato Dulbecco. This group found that when stocks of RSV were introduced into Petri dishes carrying cultures of chicken embryo fibroblasts, the RSV-infected cells survived, apparently indefinitely. (These experiments depended on the then-recently developed procedures of tissue culture, that is, the ability to propagate cells in culture dishes outside of living tissues; **Supplementary Sidebar 3.2.**) It seemed that RSV parasitized these cells, forcing them to produce a steady stream of progeny virus particles for many days, weeks, even months (**Figure 3.3A, B**). Most other viruses, in contrast, were known to enter into host cells, multiply, and quickly kill their hosts; the multitude of progeny virus particles released from dying cells could then proceed to infect yet other susceptible cells in the vicinity, repeating the cycle of infection, multiplication, and cell destruction (see Sidebar 3.1).



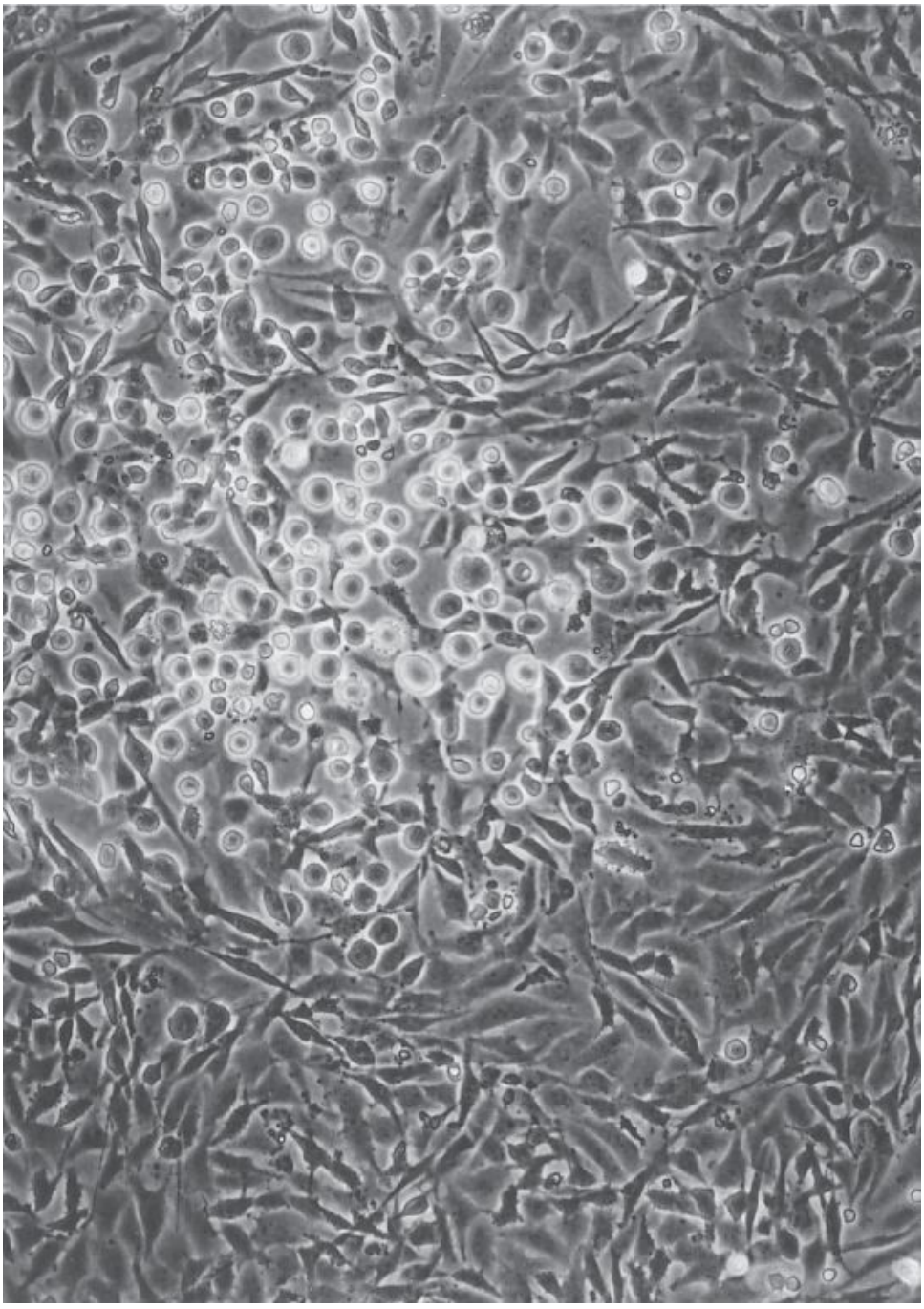
The structure of the R S V virion. The spherical outer shell consists of a layer of lipids penetrated by rodlike proteins that have a bulbous attachment on the outward-facing end. The core is also spherical, but at its center is an oblong structure containing short, rod-shaped pieces of integrase; long, wormlike pieces of of diploid viral R N A genome; and small, spherical pieces of reverse

transcriptase. Below the virion is a diagram of the structure of the viral R N A genome for A L V, with a 5 prime end on the left and a 3 prime end on the right. At the 5 prime end, from left to right, are a gag gene that encodes core proteins, a pol gene that encodes reverse transcriptase and integrase, and an evn gene that encodes envelope protein.
(A)



A transmission electron micrograph shows virus particles budding from the surface of an infected cell.

(B)



A micrograph shows a dense cluster of rounded cells surrounded by less densely packed elongated cells.

(C)

Figure 3.3 The virion of RSV and transformation of infected cells (A) An artist’s reconstruction of the structure of a retrovirus virion, such as that of Rous sarcoma virus, which has four major types of viral proteins. The glycoprotein

spikes (encoded by the viral *env* gene) that protrude from the lipid bilayer membrane enable the virion to *adsorb* to the surface of a cell and to introduce its contents into the cytoplasm. Beneath this lipid membrane lies a protein shell formed by the several core proteins encoded by the viral *gag* gene. Within this protein shell are two identical copies of the viral genomic RNA and a number of reverse transcriptase and integrase molecules specified by the viral *pol* gene. (B) Transmission electron micrograph showing murine leukemia virus (MLV) particles budding from the surface of a chronically infected cell; avian leukosis virus (ALV) particles behave identically. As the nucleocapsid cores (containing the viral gag proteins, the virion RNA, and the reverse transcriptase and integrase enzymes) push through the plasma membrane of the infected cell, they wrap themselves with a patch of lipid bilayer taken from the plasma membrane of the infected cell. (C) This phase-contrast micrograph reveals a focus of Rous sarcoma virus–transformed chicken embryo fibroblasts surrounded by a monolayer of uninfected cells. The focus stands out because it is composed of rounded, refractile cells that are beginning to pile up on one another, in contrast to the flattened morphology of the surrounding normal cells, which stop proliferating after they have produced a layer of cells one cell thick. (A, adapted from H. Fan et al., The Biology of AIDS. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 1989. With permission of Jones and Bartlett. B, reprinted from *Cell Press*, Vol. 107, 55–65, Jennifer E. Garrus, Uta K. von Schwedler, Owen W. Pornillos, Scott G. Morham, Kenton H. Zavitz, Hubert E. Wang, Daniel A. Wettstein, Kirsten M. Stray, Mélanie Côté, Rebecca L. Rich, David G. Myszka, Wesley I. Sundquist, Tsg101 and the Vacuolar Protein Sorting Pathway Are Essential for HIV-1 Budding, 55-65, Copyright (2001), with permission from Elsevier. C, courtesy of P.K. Vogt.)

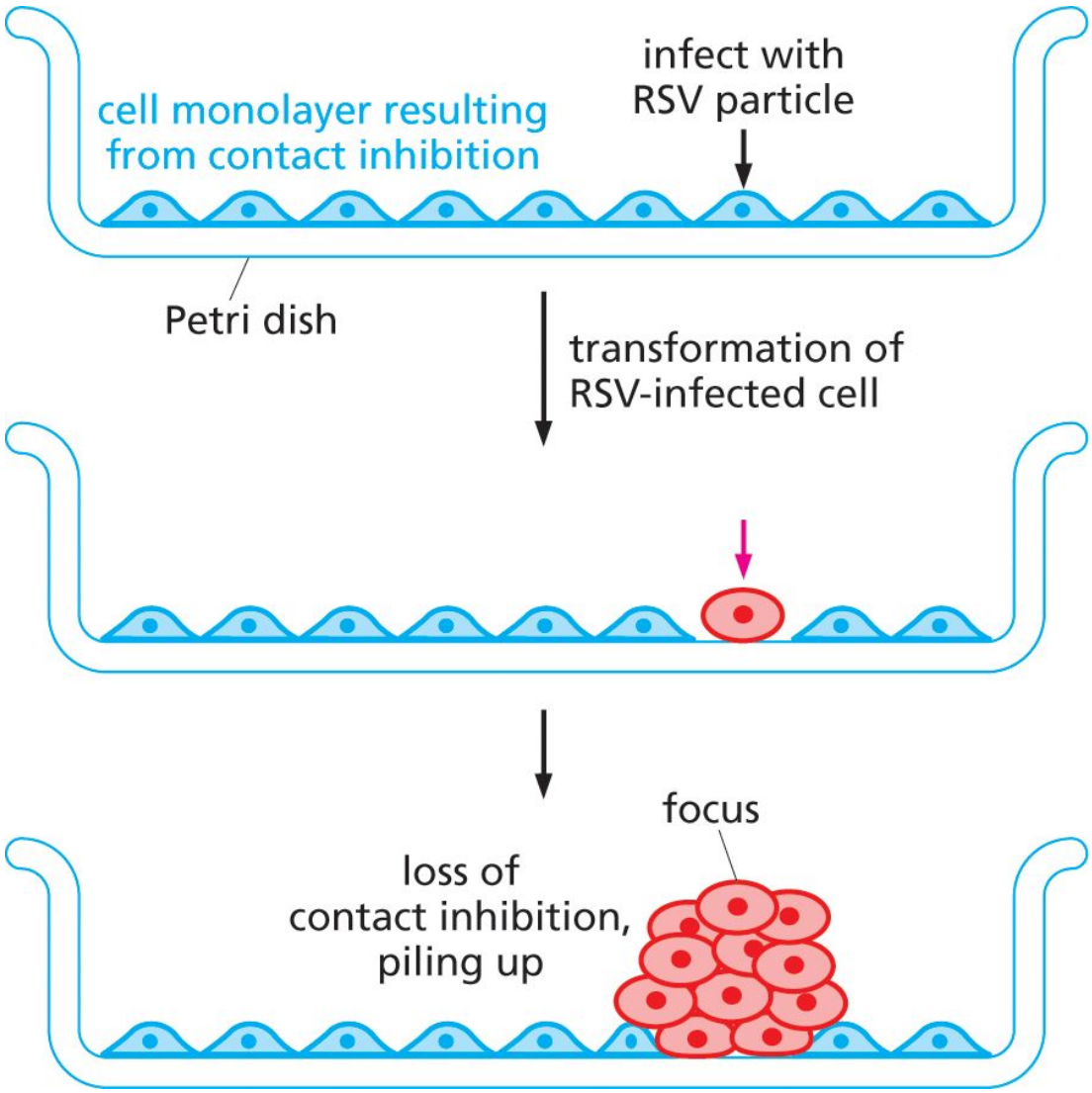
Most important, the RSV-infected cells in these cultures displayed many of the traits associated with cancer cells. Thus, foci (clusters) of cells appeared after infection. Under the microscope, these cells strongly resembled the cells isolated from chicken sarcomas, exhibiting the characteristic rounded morphology of cancer cells (Figure 3.3C). They also had a metabolism reminiscent of that seen in cells isolated from tumors. This resemblance led Howard Temin (a student in Dulbecco's laboratory; **Supplementary Sidebar 3.3**) and Harry Rubin (a post-doctoral fellow) to conclude that the process of cell transformation—conversion of a normal cell into a tumor cell—could be accomplished within the confines of a Petri dish, not just in the complex and difficult-to-study environment of a living tissue.

These simple observations radically changed the course of twentieth-century cancer research, because they clearly demonstrated that cancer formation could be studied at the level of individual cells whose behavior could be tracked closely under the microscope. This insight suggested the further possibility that the entire complex biology of tumors could one day be understood by studying the transformed cells

forming tumor masses. So, an increasing number of biologists began to view cancer as a disease of malfunctioning cells rather than abnormally developing tissues.

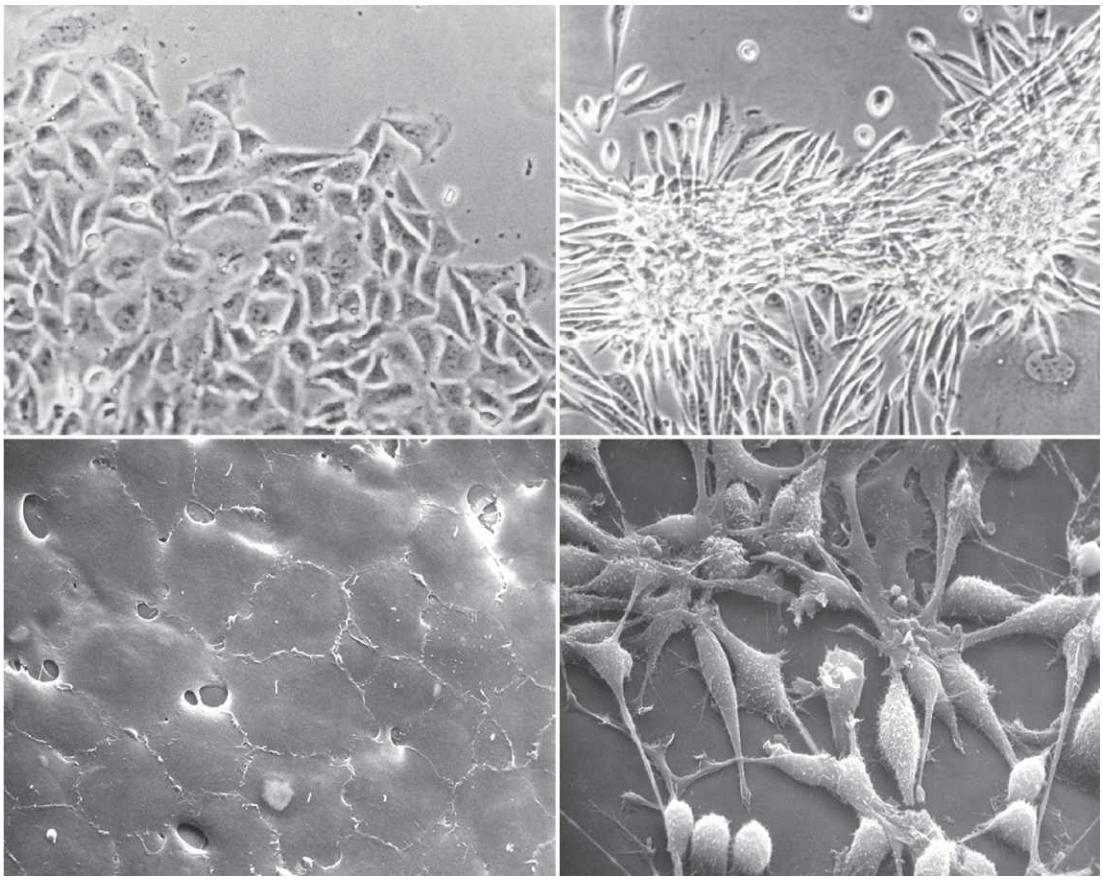
Temin and Rubin, soon followed by many others, used this experimental model to learn some basic principles about cell transformation. They were interested in the fate of a cell that was initially infected by RSV. How did such a cell proliferate when compared with uninfected neighboring cells? After exposure of cells to a solution of virus particles (often called a virus stock), the two researchers would place a layer of agar above the cell layer growing at the bottom of the Petri dish, thereby preventing free virus particles from spreading from initially infected cells to uninfected cells in other parts of the dish. Hence, any changes in cell behavior were the direct result of the initial infection by virus particles of chicken embryo fibroblasts.

The foci that Temin and Rubin studied revealed dramatic differences in the behavior of normal versus transformed cells. When first introduced into a Petri dish, normal cells formed islands scattered across the bottom of the dish. They then proliferated and eventually filled up all the space in the bottom of the dish, thereby creating confluent cultures. Once they reached confluence, however, these normal cells stopped proliferating, resulting in a one-cell-thick (or slightly thicker) layer of cells, often called a cell monolayer (**Figure 3.4A**).



A diagram of the behavior of R S V infected cells. Initially, normally elongated cells grow on the bottom of a Petri dish. Because of contact inhibition, they form a monolayer. Once cell is then infected with a R S V particle, and thereby transformed into an abnormally round cell. The infected cell multiplies, and due to loss of contact inhibition it forms a thick cluster, multiple cells deep, called a focus.

(A)



Four micrographs. In the two on the left, normally elongated and flattened cells form a monolayer. In the two on the right, rounded cells form multilayered clumps with extentions from the cells connecting them.

(B)

Figure 3.4 Transformed cells forming foci (A) Normal chicken embryo fibroblasts (*blue*) growing on the bottom of a Petri dish form a layer one cell thick —a monolayer. This is formed because these cells cease proliferating when they touch one another—the behavior termed *contact inhibition*. However, if one of these cells is infected by RSV prior to reaching confluence, this cell (*red*) and its descendants acquire a rounded morphology and lose contact inhibition. As a consequence, they continue to proliferate in spite of touching one another and eventually accumulate in a multilayered clump of cells (a *focus*) visible to the naked eye. (B) The effects of RSV infection and transformation can be observed through both phase-contrast microscopy (*upper panels*) and scanning electron microscopy (*lower panels*). Normal chicken embryo fibroblasts are spread out and form a continuous monolayer (*left panels*). However, upon transformation by RSV, they round up, become refractile (*white halos, upper right panel*), and pile up on one another (*right panels*). (B, courtesy of L.B. Chen.)

The cessation of growth of these normal cells after forming confluent monolayers was the result of a process that came to be called contact inhibition, density inhibition, or topoinhibition. Somehow, high cell density or contact with neighbors caused these cells to stop dividing. This behavior of normal cells contrasted starkly with that of the transformants within the RSV-induced foci (Figure 3.4B). The latter clearly had lost contact (density) inhibition and consequently continued to proliferate, piling up on top of one another and creating multilayered cell foci so thick that they could often be seen with the naked eye.

Under certain experimental conditions, it could be shown that all the cells within a given focus were the descendants of a single progenitor cell that had been infected and presumably transformed by an RSV particle. Today, we would term such a flock of descendant cells a cell clone, and the focus as a whole, a clonal outgrowth.

The behavior of these foci gave support to one speculation about the possible similarities between the cell transformation triggered by RSV in the Petri dish and the processes that led to the appearance of tumors in living animals, including humans: maybe all the cells within a spontaneously arising human tumor mass also constitute a clonal outgrowth and therefore are the descendants of a single common progenitor cell that somehow underwent transformation and then launched a program of replication that led eventually to the millions, even billions, of descendant cells that together formed the mass. As discussed earlier (see Section 2.5), detailed genetic analyses of human tumor cells were required, in the end, to test this notion in a truly definitive way.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tissue culture
: Procedure of propagating cells outside of living tissues in various types of vessels including flasks and Petri dishes.

transformation
: (1) Process of converting a normal mammalian cell into a cell having some or many of the attributes of a cancer cell. (2) Alteration of a cell through the introduction of a genetic element, usually referring to a process occurring in prokaryotic cells.

virus stock
: A solution of virus particles used experimentally to infect cells or organisms.

monolayer
: A population of cells growing *in vitro* as a layer one cell thick.

contact inhibition
: Behavior exhibited by cells propagated in monolayer culture, reflecting the halt in cell proliferation when adjacent cells touch one another. *Also termed* **density inhibition**.

density inhibition
: Behavior exhibited by cells propagated in monolayer culture, reflecting the halt in cell proliferation when adjacent cells touch one another. *Also termed* **contact inhibition**.

topoinhibition
: Behavior exhibited by cells propagated in monolayer culture, reflecting the halt in cell proliferation when adjacent cells touch one another. *Also termed* **contact inhibition**.

transformant
: A neoplastic cell that is formed by the experimental transformation of a non-neoplastic cell. *See* **transformation**.

clone
: (adj., **clonal**) (1) Copy of a gene that has been isolated by recombinant DNA procedures and amplified into a large number of identical copies. (2) Population of cells, all of which descend from a common progenitor cell. (3) Offspring of a procedure of asexual reproduction in which the genome of a somatic diploid cell of an organism is used to

form a cell that functions equivalently to a fertilized egg that may itself develop thereafter into an entire organism.

confluence

State reached when cells in monolayer culture proliferate until they fill available space at the bottom surface of a Petri dish.

OceanofPDF.com

3.3 The continued presence of RSV is needed to maintain transformation

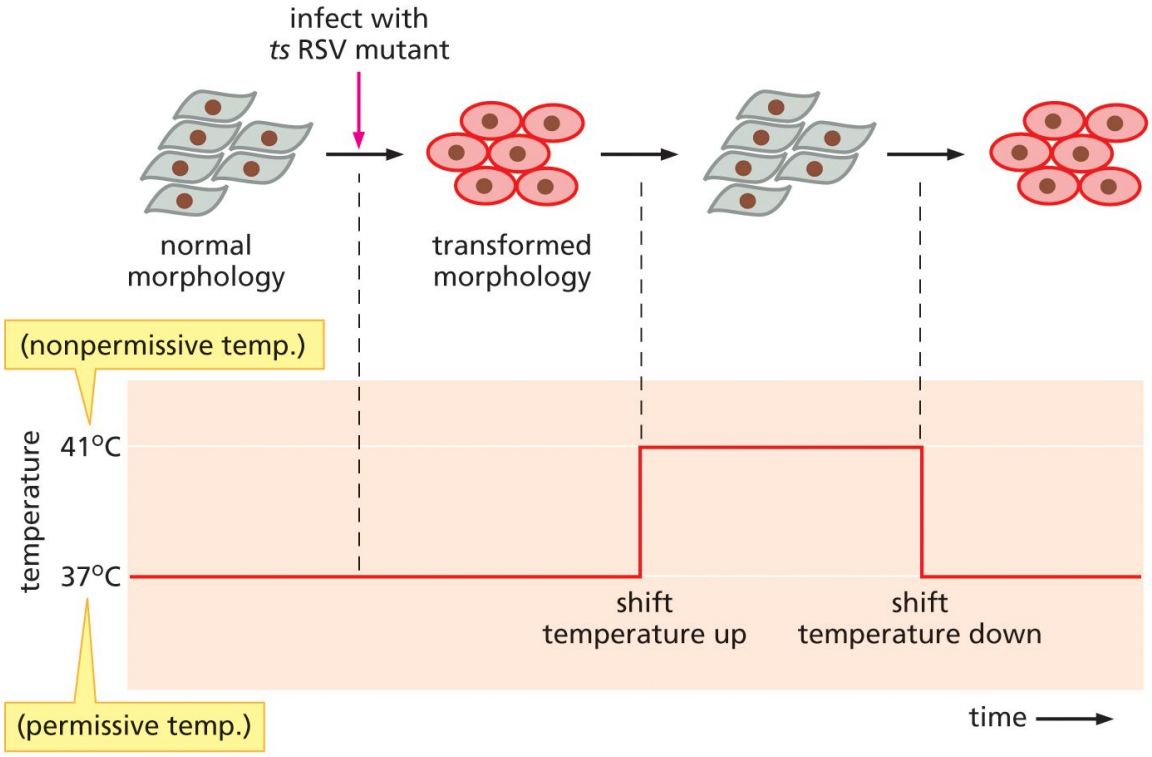
The behavior of the cells within an RSV-induced focus indicated that the transformation phenotype was transmitted from an initially infected, transformed chicken cell to its direct descendants. This transmission provoked another set of questions: Did an RSV particle infect and transform the progenitor cell of the focus and, later on, continue to influence the behavior of all of its direct descendants, ensuring that they also remained transformed? Or, as an alternative, did RSV act in a “hit-and-run” fashion by striking the initially infected progenitor cell, altering its behavior, and then leaving the scene of the crime? According to this second scenario, the progenitor cell could somehow transmit the phenotype of cancerous growth to its descendants without the continued presence of RSV.

Temin and Rubin’s work made it clear that the descendants of an RSV-infected cell continued to harbor copies of the RSV genome, but that evidence, on its own, settled little. The real question was: Did the transformed state of the descendant cells actually depend on some continuing influence exerted by the RSV genomes that they carried?

An experiment performed in 1970 at the University of California, Berkeley, settled this issue unambiguously. A mutant of RSV was developed that was capable of transforming chicken cells when these cells were cultured at 37°C but not at 41°C (the latter being the normal temperature at which chicken cells grow). Temperature-sensitive (ts) mutants like this one were known to encode partially defective proteins, which retain their normal structure and function at one temperature and lose their function at another temperature, presumably through thermal denaturation of the structure of the mutant protein.

After the chicken embryo fibroblasts were infected with the ts mutant of RSV, these cells became transformed if they were subsequently cultured at the lower (permissive) temperature of 37°C, as anticipated. Indeed, these cells could be propagated for many cell generations at this lower temperature and continued to grow and divide just like cancer cells, showing their characteristic transformed morphology. But weeks later, if the temperature of these infected cultures was

raised to 41°C (the nonpermissive temperature), these cells lost their transformed shape and quickly reverted to the shape and growth pattern of cells that had never experienced an RSV infection. If these RSV-infected cells were again returned to the permissive temperature, they regained their transformed appearance (**Figure 3.5**).



A timeline of transformation in a temperature sensitive mutant. Morphologically normal, elongated cells maintained at 37 degrees Celsius are transformed into morphologically abnormal, rounded cells by infection with the t s R S V mutant. When the temperature is shifted from 37 degrees, which is a permissive temperature, up to 41 degrees, which is a non-permissive temperature, the morphology reverts to normal. However, when the temperature is shifted back down to 37, the abnormal morphology reasserts itself.

Figure 3.5 A temperature-sensitive mutant and the maintenance of transformation by RSV When chicken embryo fibroblasts were infected with a temperature-sensitive mutant of RSV and cultured at a *permissive* temperature of 37°C, the viral transforming function could be expressed and the cells became transformed. However, when the cultures containing these infected cells were shifted to a *nonpermissive* temperature of 41°C, the cells

reverted to a normal, nontransformed morphology. Many cell generations later, with a shift of the cultures back to the permissive temperature, the cells once again exhibited a transformed morphology. The loss of the transformed phenotype upon temperature shift-up demonstrated that the continuous action of some temperature-sensitive viral protein was required in order to maintain this phenotype. The reacquisition of the transformed phenotype after temperature shift-down to the permissive temperature many cell generations later indicated that the viral genome continued to be present in these cells at the high temperature in spite of their normal appearance.

The Berkeley experiments led to simple and yet profoundly important conclusions. Since the cells that descended from a ts RSV–infected cell continued to show the temperature-sensitive growth trait, it was obvious that copies of the genome of the infecting virus persisted in these cells for weeks after the initial infection. These copies of the RSV genome in the descendant cells continued to make some temperature-sensitive protein (whose precise identity was not known). Most important, the continuing actions of this protein were required in order to maintain the transformed growth phenotype of the RSV-infected cells.

This work showed that cell transformation, at least that induced by RSV, was not a hit-and-run affair. In the language of the tumor virologists, the viral transforming gene was required to both initiate and maintain the transformed phenotype of virus-infected cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

temperature-sensitive
: Describing a phenotype that is apparent when cells or viruses grow at one temperature but not at another.

denaturation
: Process that causes a molecule, such as a macromolecule (DNA, RNA, or protein), to lose its natural three-dimensional structure.

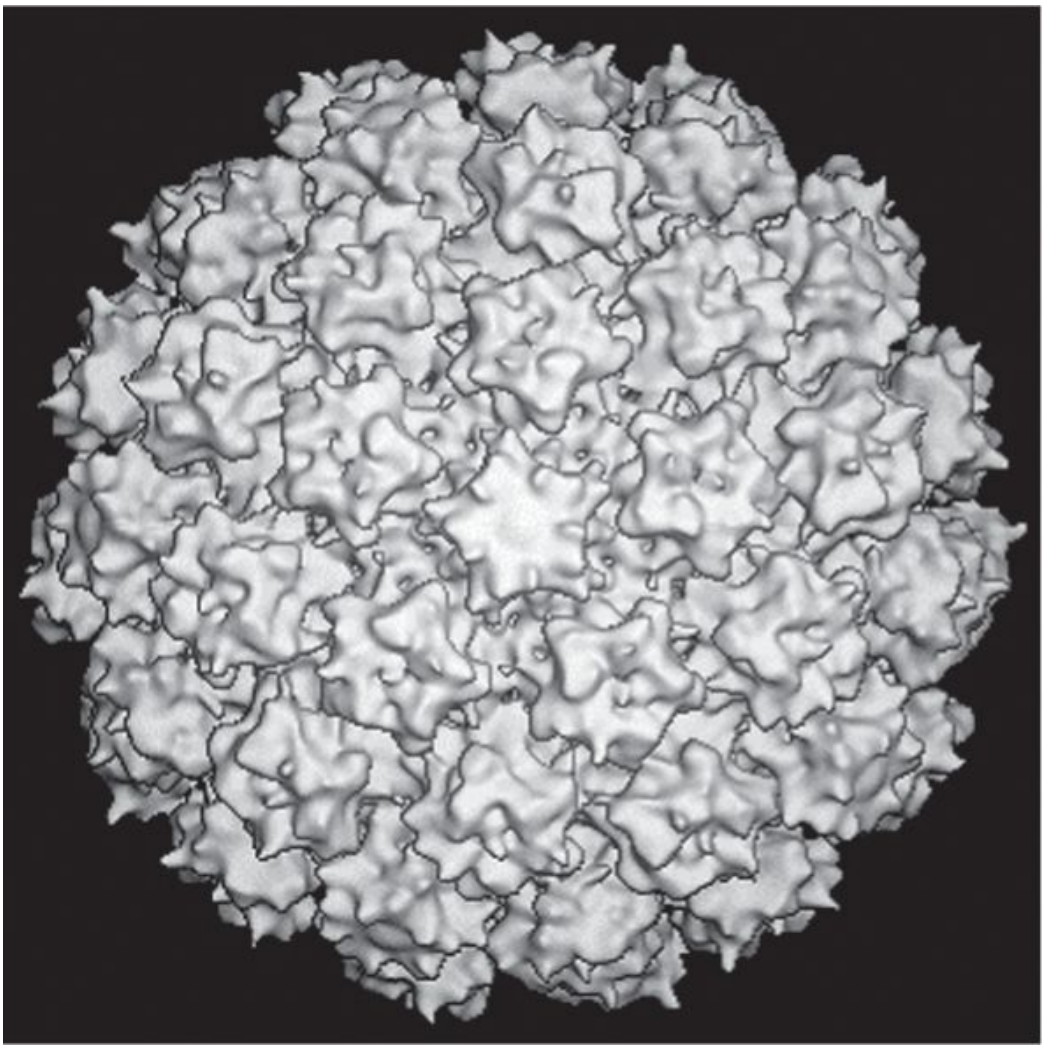
permissive
: (1) Describing a physiological state that allows the survival and/or proliferation of a cell or infectious agent, such as a temperature-sensitive virus. (2) Describing a type of host or host cell that allows cells or infectious agents to proliferate. *See also* **nonpermissive**.

OceanofPDF.com

3.4 Viruses containing DNA molecules are also able to induce cancer

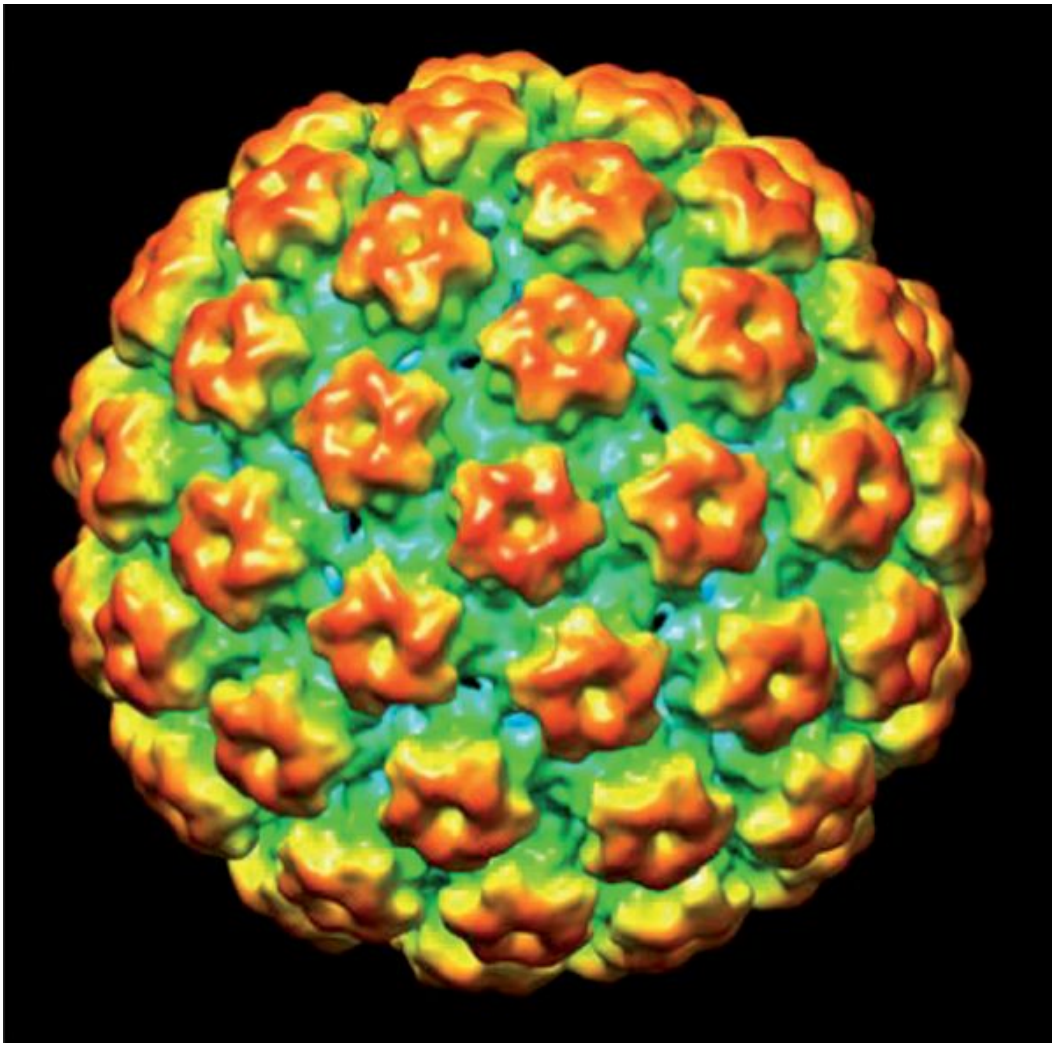
RSV was only one of a disparate group of viruses that were found able to induce tumors in infected animals. By 1960, four other classes of tumor viruses had become equally attractive agents for study by cancer biologists. One of them was a tumor virus that was discovered almost a quarter century after Rous's pioneering work. This virus, discovered by Richard Shope in rabbits, caused papillomas (warts) on the skin. These were actually benign lesions, which on rare occasions progressed to true cancers—squamous cell carcinomas of the skin.

By the late 1950s, it became clear that the Shope papillomavirus was constructed very differently from RSV. The papillomavirus particles carried DNA genomes, whereas RSV particles were known to carry RNA molecules. Also, the Shope virus particles were sheathed in a protein coat (**Figure 3.6**), whereas RSV clearly had, in addition, a lipid membrane coating on the outside (see Figure 3.3A and B). In the decades that followed, more than 100 distinct human papillomavirus (HPV) types, all related to the Shope virus, would be discovered.



The papillomavirus virion appears in a grayscale micrograph as a ball with a complex, spiky surface.

(A)



The papillomavirus virion appears in a color-enhanced micrograph. It looks like a spherical blue-green bush with five-petaled orange flowers.

(B)

Figure 3.6 Papillomavirus virion (A) A cryogenic electron microscopy 3D reconstruction and (B) a cryoelectron micrograph, together with image enhancement, reveal the structure of papillomavirus particles. (A, from B.L. Trus et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 4:413–420, 1997. With permission from Springer Nature. B, Hyunwook Lee, Sarah A. Brendle, Stephanie M. Bywaters, Jian Guan, Robert E. Ashley, Joshua D. Yoder, Alexander M. Makhov, James F. Conway, Neil D. Christensen, Susan Hafensteinl. *Journal of Virology*, 2015 Jan 15; 89(2): 1428–1438. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02898-14. Reproduced with permission from American Society for Microbiology.)

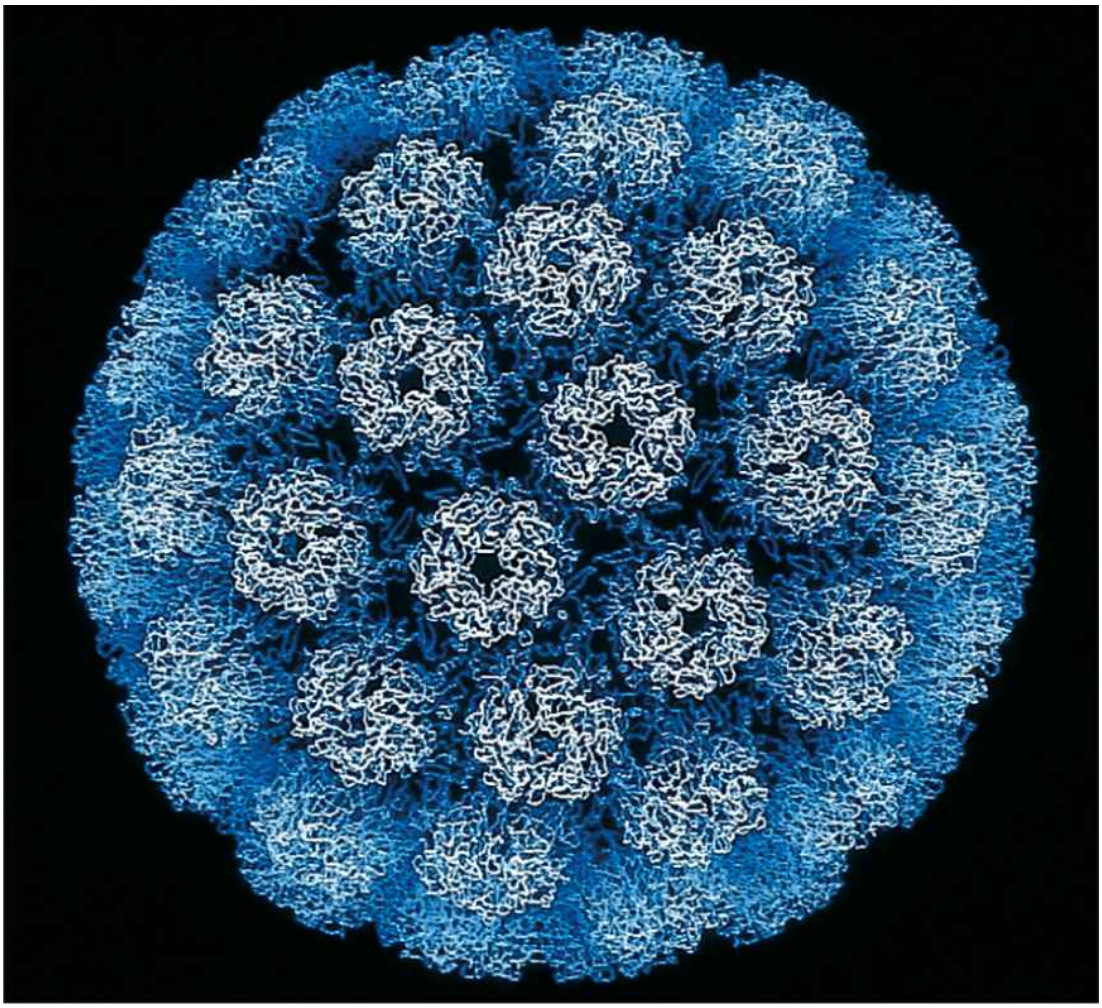
In the 1950s and 1960s, various other DNA tumor viruses were isolated (**Table 3.1**). The murine polyomavirus (MPyV), named for its ability to induce a variety of distinct tumor types in newborn mice, was discovered in 1953. Closely related to MPyV in its size and chemical makeup was SV40 virus (the 40th simian virus in a series of isolates). This monkey virus had originally been discovered as a contaminant of the poliovirus vaccine stocks prepared in the mid- and late 1950s (**Figure 3.7A**). Clever virological sleuthing revealed that SV40 particles often hid out in cultures of the rhesus and cynomolgus monkey kidney cells used to propagate poliovirus during the preparation of vaccine. In fact, the presence of SV40 was not initially apparent in these cell cultures. However, when poliovirus stocks that had been propagated in these monkey cells were later used to infect African green monkey kidney (AGMK) cells, SV40 revealed itself by inducing a very distinctive cytopathic effect—numerous large vacuoles (fluid-filled bubble-like structures) in the cytoplasm of infected cells (Figure 3.7B). Within a day after the vacuoles formed in an SV40-infected cell, this cell would lyse, releasing tens of thousands of progeny virus particles. (Because of SV40 contamination, occurring during the course of poliovirus vaccine production, some poliovirus-infected cell cultures yielded far more SV40 virus particles than poliovirus particles! See **Supplementary Sidebar 3.4**.)

Table 3.1 Tumor virus genomes

	Virus family	**Approximate size of genome (kb)**
DNA viruses		
Hepatitis B virus (HBV)	hepadna	3
SV40/murine polyomavirus (MPyV)	polyoma	5
Human papillomavirus 16 (HPV) / Shope papillomavirus (SPV)	papilloma	8
Human adenovirus 5	adenovirus	35

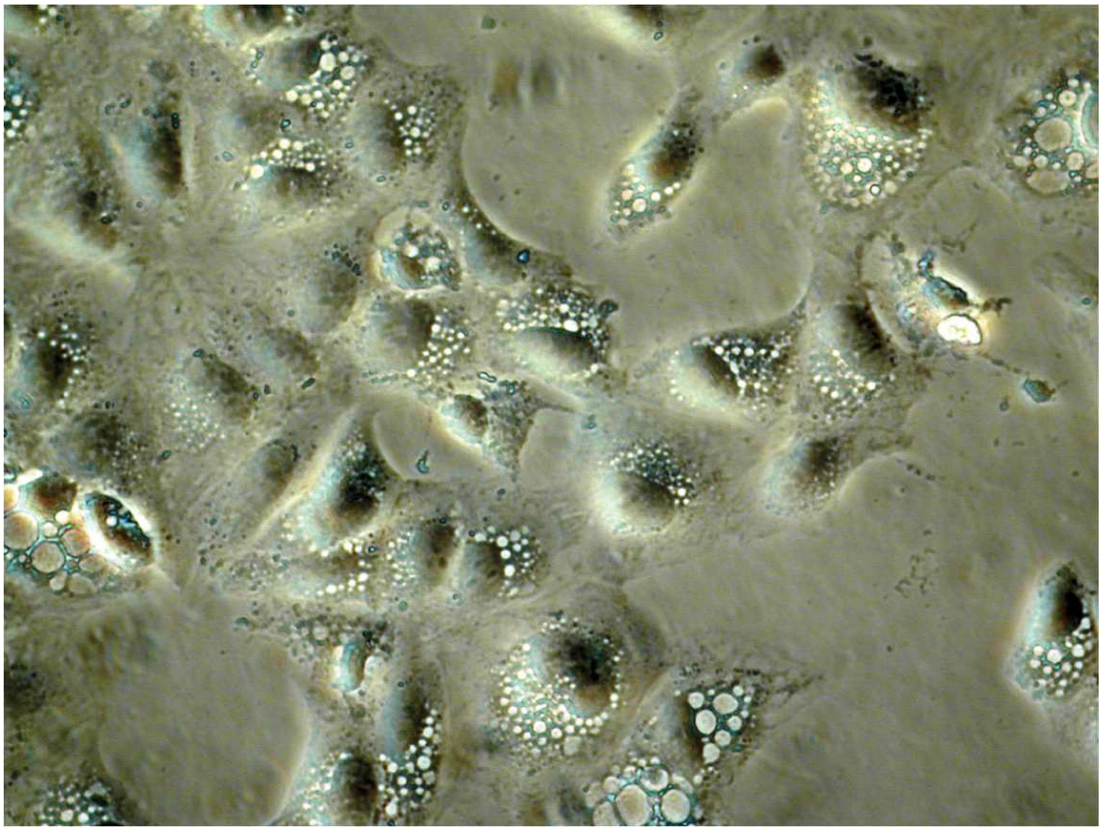
	Virus family	Approximate size of genome (kb)
DNA viruses		
Human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8; KSHV) / Human herpesvirus 4 (HHV-4; EBV)	herpesviruses	165
Shope fibroma virus (SFV)	poxviruses	160
RNA viruses		
Human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV-I)	retrovirus	8.2
Rous sarcoma virus (RSV)	retrovirus	9.3
Hepatitis C virus (HCV)	flavivirus	9.6

Adapted in part from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 1995.



A color micrograph of the S V 40 virus. It appears as a fuzzy blue sphere with many tuftlike protrusions.

(A)



Smooth gray tissue is pockmarked by irregular depressions containing round, white nodules of varying size.

(B)

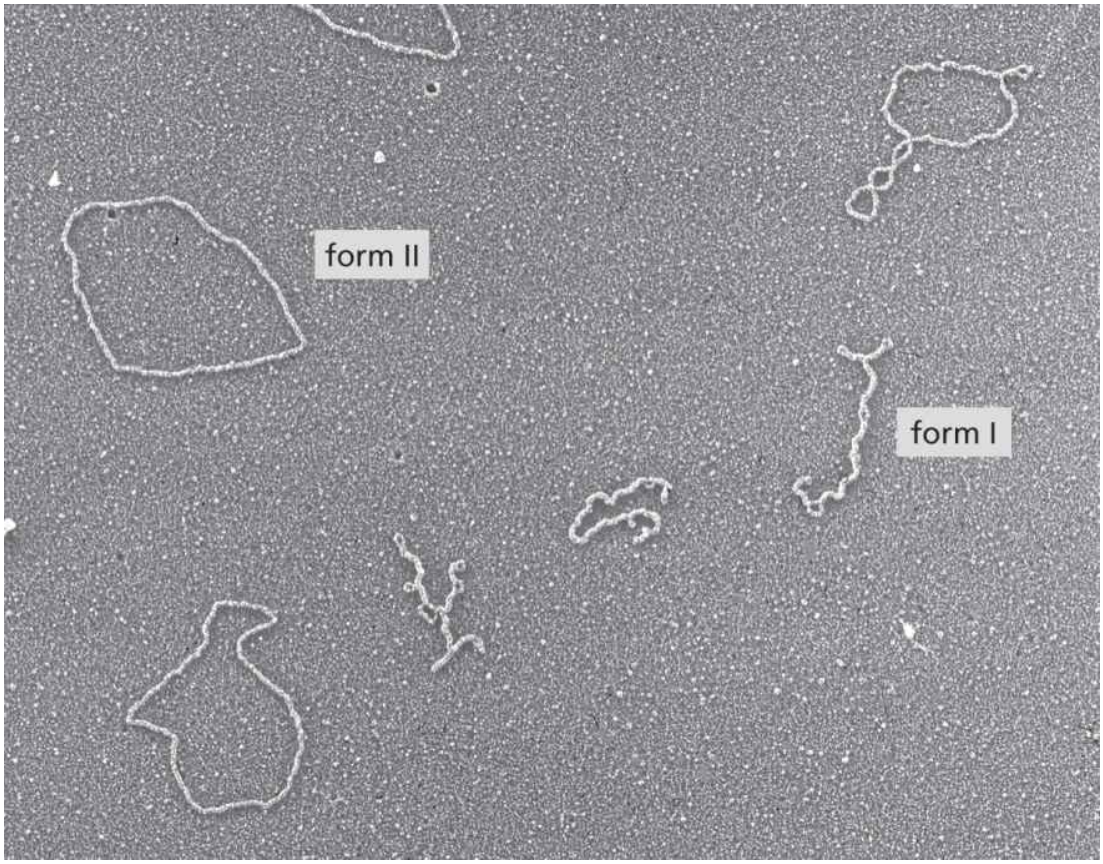
Figure 3.7 SV40 virus (A) As determined by X-ray diffraction, the protein capsid of the SV40 DNA tumor virus consists of three virus-encoded proteins that are assembled into pentamers and hexamers that assemble to create a virion organized via icosahedral symmetry. The circular dsDNA genome of SV40 is carried within this capsid. (B) SV40 launches a lytic cycle in permissive host cells, such as the kidney cells of several monkey species. The resulting cytopathic effect, seen here, involves the formation of large cytoplasmic vacuoles prior to the death of the cell and the release of tens of thousands of progeny virus particles. (A, courtesy of R. Grant, S. Crainic, and J.M. Hogle. B, courtesy of A. Oppenheim.)

This lytic cycle of SV40 in monkey cells contrasted starkly with its behavior in cells prepared from mouse, rat, or hamster embryos. SV40 was unable to replicate in these rodent cells, which were therefore considered to be nonpermissive hosts. But on occasion, in one cell out of thousands in a nonpermissive infected cell population, a transformant grew out that shared many characteristics with RSV-transformed cells,

that is, the cell had undergone changes in morphology and loss of contact inhibition, and had acquired the ability to seed tumors *in vivo*. On the basis of this, SV40 was classified as a tumor virus.

By some estimates, between one-third and two-thirds of the polio vaccines—the oral, live Sabin vaccine and the inactivated, injected Salk vaccine—administered between 1955 and 1963 contained SV40 virus as a contaminant, and between 10 and 30 million people were exposed to this virus through vaccination. In 1960, the fear was first voiced that the SV40 contaminant might trigger cancer in many of those who were vaccinated. Reassuringly, epidemiologic analyses conducted over the succeeding four decades indicated little, if any, increased risk of cancer among those exposed to these two vaccines.

Shope's papillomavirus, the mouse polyomavirus, and SV40 were initially grouped together as the papovavirus class of DNA tumor viruses, the term signifying papilloma, polyoma, and the vacuoles induced by SV40 during its lytic infection. In 2000, these viruses were recategorized as two distinct families, the first including HPV and the Shope papillomavirus as part of the papillomavirus family, and the second including SV40 and the murine polyomavirus as part of the polyomavirus family. By the mid-1960s, it was apparent that the genomes of the papillomavirus and polyomavirus were all formed from circular double-stranded DNA molecules (**Figure 3.8**). This represented a great convenience for experimenters studying the viral genomes, since there were several techniques in use at the time that made it possible to separate these relatively small, circular DNA molecules [about 5–8 kilobases (kb) in length] from the far larger, linear DNA molecules present in the chromosomes of infected host cells.



A grayscale micrograph of several circular coils of D N A lying on a flat surface. Some coils appear more or less linear, because they are twisted around themselves like twisted rubber bands. These are labeled form 1. Other coils lie in open loops, like rubber bands that are not twisted. These are labeled form 2.

Figure 3.8 Papillomavirus and polyomavirus genomes Electron-microscopic analyses revealed the structure of DNA genomes of both the papillomavirus and the polyomavirus to be double-stranded and circular. Shown here are the closed-circular, supercoiled form of SV40 DNA (form I; kinked DNAs) and the relaxed, nicked circular form (form II; open, spread circles). Form III, which is a linear form of the viral DNA resulting from a double-strand DNA break, is not shown. (Courtesy of J.D. Griffith, University of North Carolina.)

The group of DNA tumor viruses grew further with the discovery that human adenovirus, known to be responsible for upper respiratory infections in humans, was able to induce tumors in infected hamsters. Here was a striking parallel with the behavior of SV40. The two viruses could multiply freely in their natural host cells, which were therefore considered to be permissive. During the resulting lytic cycles of the virus, permissive host cells were rapidly killed in concert with the release of

progeny virus particles. But when introduced into nonpermissive rodent cells, both adenovirus and SV40 failed to replicate and instead left behind, albeit at very low frequency, clones of transformants.

Other entrants into the class of DNA tumor viruses were members of the herpesvirus group. While human herpesvirus types 1 and 2 were apparently not tumorigenic (capable of inducing tumors), a distantly related herpesvirus of Saimiri monkeys provoked rapid and fatal lymphomas when injected into monkeys from several other species. Another distantly related member of the herpesvirus family—Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)—was discovered to play a causal role in provoking the development of Burkitt's lymphomas in young children in Equatorial Africa and New Guinea as well as nasopharyngeal carcinomas in Southeast Asia. Finally, at least two members of the poxvirus class, which includes smallpox virus, were found to be tumorigenic: Shope fibroma virus (SFV) and Yaba monkey virus cause benign skin lesions in rabbits and rhesus monkeys, respectively. The tumorigenic powers of poxviruses, which have very large genomes (135–160 kb), remain poorly understood to this day.

Researchers found that adenovirus and herpesvirus particles contain long, linear double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) molecules, which, like the genomes of RSV, carry the information required for both viral replication and virus-induced cell transformation. Compared with the papillomavirus and polyomavirus, the herpesviruses had genomes of enormous size (see Table 3.1), suggesting that they carried a proportionately larger number of genes. In the end, it was the relatively small sizes of papillomavirus and polyomavirus genomes that made them attractive objects of study.

Most of the small group of genes in a papillomavirus and polyomavirus genome were apparently required to program viral replication; included among these were several genes specifying the proteins that form the capsid coat of the virus particle. This dictated that papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses could devote only a small number of their genes to the process of cell transformation.

This realization offered the prospect of greatly simplifying the cancer problem by reducing the array of responsible genes and causal mechanisms down to a very small number. Without such simplification, cancer biologists were forced to study the cancer-causing genes that were thought to be present in the genomes of cells transformed by nonviral mechanisms. Cellular genomes clearly harbored large arrays of genes, possibly more than a hundred thousand. At the time, the ability to analyze genomes of such vast complexity and to isolate individual genes from these genomes was a distant prospect.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

papilloma
: Benign, adenomatous proliferation of epithelial cells; term often used to describe benign lesions of the skin.

cytopathic
: Causing damage or death to a cell. *See also* **cytocidal**, **cytostatic**, **cytotoxic**.

vacuoles
: Small, fluid-filled, bubble-like structures, often seen in the cytoplasm of cells that are under physiological stress and in cells infected by certain viruses.

lytic cycle
: Cycle of viral infection and replication that results ultimately in the death of the infected host cell.

nonpermissive
: (1) Describing a physiological state that does not permit the survival and/or proliferation of a cell or infectious agent such as a temperature-sensitive virus. (2) Describing a type of host or host cell that does not permit cells or infectious agents to proliferate. *See* **permissive**.

permissive
: (1) Describing a physiological state that allows the survival and/or proliferation of a cell or infectious agent, such as a temperature-sensitive virus. (2) Describing a type of host or host cell that allows cells or infectious agents to proliferate. *See also* **nonpermissive**.

tumorigenic
: (1) Referring to the ability of cells to form tumors when introduced into appropriate animal hosts. (2) Less commonly, pertaining to an agent such as a tumor virus that imparts this ability to cells.

OceanofPDF.com

3.5 Tumor viruses induce multiple changes in cell phenotype including acquisition of tumorigenicity

Like RSV-transformed chicken cells, the rodent cells transformed by SV40 showed profoundly altered shape and piled up on one another. This loss of contact inhibition was only one of a number of changes exhibited by virus-transformed cells (**Table 3.2**). As discussed later in this book (in Chapter 5), normal cells in culture will not proliferate unless they are provided with serum and serum-associated growth-stimulating factors. Cells transformed by a variety of tumor viruses were often found to have substantially reduced requirements for these factors in their culture medium.

Table 3.2 Properties of transformed cells

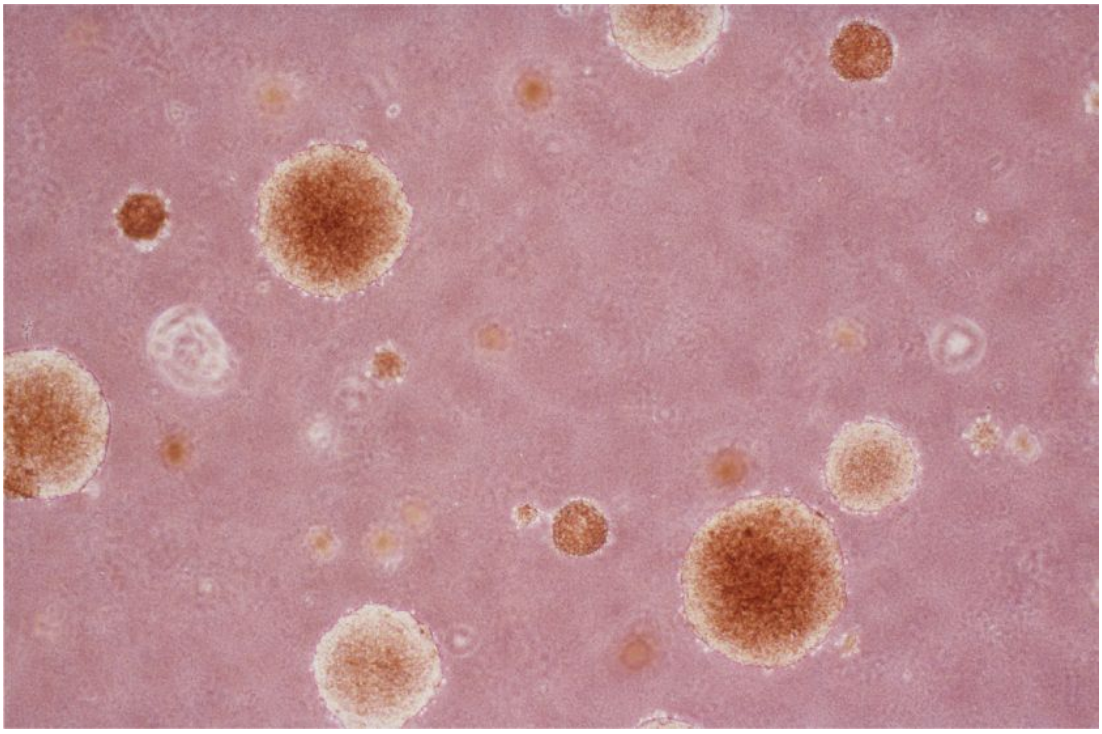
Altered morphology (rounded shape, refractile in phase-contrast microscope)
Loss of contact inhibition (ability to grow over one another)
Ability to grow without attachment to solid substrate (anchorage independence)
Ability to proliferate indefinitely (immortalization)
Reduced requirement for exposure to mitogenic growth factors
High saturation density (ability to accumulate large numbers of cells in culture dish)
Inability to halt proliferation in response to deprivation of growth factors

Increased import of glucose
Glycolysis in presence of oxygen
Tumorigenicity

Adapted in part from S.J. Flint, L.W. Enquist, R.M. Krug et al., Principles of Virology. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2000.

Yet another hallmark of the transformed state is an ability to proliferate in culture for unusually long time periods. Normal cells have a limited proliferative potential in culture and ultimately stop multiplying after a certain, apparently predetermined number of cell divisions. Cancer cells seemed to be able to proliferate indefinitely in culture, and thus to undergo immortalization (as discussed in Chapter 10).

When transformed cells were suspended in an agar gel, they were able to proliferate into spherical colonies containing dozens, even hundreds of cells (**Figure 3.9A**). This ability to multiply without attachment to the solid substrate at the bottom of the Petri dish was termed the trait of anchorage independence. Normal epithelial cells and fibroblasts, in contrast, demonstrated an absolute requirement for tethering to a solid substrate before they would grow and were therefore considered to be anchorage-dependent. The ability of cells to grow in an anchorage-independent fashion *in vitro* usually served as a good predictor of their ability to form tumors *in vivo* following injection into appropriate host animals (Figure 3.9B).



A color micrograph showing spherical tumor cell colonies growing in a transparent medium, not attached to anything solid.

(A)

A photo of a hairless mouse with a large tumor growing on its back, under the skin.

(B)

Figure 3.9 Anchorage-independent growth and tumorigenesis (A) A photomicrograph of colonies of cells growing in an anchorage-independent fashion. (Each of the larger colonies seen here may contain several hundred cells, all the descendants of a single transformed ancestor.) This test is usually performed by suspending cells in a semi-solid medium, such as agarose or methylcellulose, to prevent their attachment to a solid substrate, specifically, the bottom of the Petri dish. The ability of cells to proliferate while held in suspension —the phenotype of anchorage independence—is usually a good (but hardly infallible) predictor of their ability to form tumors *in vivo*. (B) Mice of the Nude strain offer two advantages in tests of tumorigenicity. Lacking a thymus, they are highly immunocompromised and therefore relatively receptive to engrafted cells from genetically unrelated sources (i.e., xenografts), including those from foreign species. In addition, because these mice are hairless, it is easy to monitor closely the progress of tumor formation (*arrow*) after transformed cells have been injected under their skin. (A, courtesy of A. Orimo. B, courtesy of X.G. Wang and E. Dadachova; see also X.G. Wang et al., *PLoS ONE* 2(10): e1114, 2007.)

This tumor-forming ability—the phenotype of tumorigenicity—represented the acid test of whether cells were fully transformed, that is, had acquired the full repertoire of neoplastic traits. One test for tumorigenicity could be performed by injecting mouse cells prepared from one strain of mice and then transformed in an *in vitro* transformation experiment into host mice of the same strain (**Sidebar 3.2**). Since the host and injected cells came from the same genetic strain, the immune systems of such syngeneic host mice would not recognize the transformed cells as being foreign bodies and therefore would not attempt to eliminate them—the process of tumor rejection (a process to which we will return in Chapter 15). This allowed injected cells to survive in their animal hosts, enabling them to multiply into large tumors if, indeed, they had acquired the tumorigenic phenotype. (Populations of injected non-tumorigenic cells, in contrast, might survive in a syngeneic host as small clumps for weeks, even months, without increasing in size.)

Sidebar 3.2 The powers of the immune system dictate whether transformed cells can form tumors

Over the past century, repeated cycles of inbreeding have been used to create distinct strains of mice and rats that are genetically identical within a strain (aside from the gender-specific differences created by the Y chromosome). Included among these mouse strains are, for example, the BALB/c, C3H, and C57/BL6 strains. The shared genetic identity of all individuals within a strain means that tissue fragments (including tumors) from one animal of a strain can be transplanted to other animals of that strain and become established in the recipient animals. The transplanted cells are not rejected by the immune systems of these animals because they are not recognized as foreign, since they express proteins that are identical to those of their hosts.

This ability to transplant tissues from one individual to another does not exist in outbred populations, such as humans and natural populations of mice. Except for the rare instances of identical twins, tissues that are introduced from one animal (or human) to another are recognized as being foreign by the recipient's immune system. The immune system then attempts to eliminate the foreign tissue and usually succeeds in doing so rapidly. This means that true tests of the tumorigenicity of *in vitro* transformed mouse cells can be undertaken only when such cells derive from the same strain of mice as the hosts into which these cells are introduced. As an aside, the lack of inbred strains of chickens severely limited the type of cancer research that could be carried out with these birds.

This barrier to transplantation can be circumvented in several ways. Often the immune system of a very young animal is more tolerant of genetically foreign tissue than the more robust, well-developed immune system of an adult. This allowed Rous to carry out some of his experiments. More common and practical, however, is the use of

immunocompromised strains of mice, which lack fully functional immune systems and therefore tolerate engrafted tissues of foreign genetic origin, including cells and tissues originating in other species (termed xenografts). Frequently used strains of immunocompromised mice include the Nude, RAG, and NOD/SCID mice, each of which has a defect in one or more key components of its immune system.

Often, it was impossible to test the tumorigenicity of tumor virus–infected cells in a syngeneic host animal, simply because the cells being studied came from a species in which inbred syngeneic hosts were not available. This forced the use of immunocompromised hosts whose immune systems were defective and thus tolerant of a wide variety of foreign cell types, including those from other species (see Sidebar 3.2). Mice of the Nude strain soon became the most commonly used hosts to test the tumorigenicity of a wide variety of cells, including those of human origin. Quite frequently, candidate tumor cells are injected subcutaneously, that is, directly under the skin of these animals. Since they also happen to lack the ability to grow hair, Nude mice provide the additional advantage of allowing the experimenter to closely monitor the behavior of implanted tumor cells, specifically the growth of any tumors that they may spawn (see Figure 3.9B).

As mentioned, the small size of the genomes of RNA tumor viruses (for example, RSV) and the papillomavirus and polyomavirus dictated that each of these employ only a small number of genes (perhaps as few as one) to elicit multiple changes in the cells that they infect and transform. Recall that the ability of a gene to concomitantly induce a number of distinct alterations in a cell is termed pleiotropy. Accordingly, though little direct evidence about gene number was yet in hand, it seemed highly likely that the genes used by tumor viruses to induce cell transformation were acting pleiotropically on a variety of molecular targets within cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

anchorage independence
: Ability of a cell to proliferate without attachment to a solid substrate.

syngeneic
: (1) Referring to two organisms that share the identical genetic background, such as two members of an inbred strain of mice. (2) Describing the relationship between two sets of cells or tissues, or between a set of cells and an organism, deriving from identical genetic backgrounds.

tumor rejection
: Process by which an organism prevents the formation of a tumor (including tumor formation by engrafted cells), usually achieved through the action of its immune system.

xenograft
: A normal or neoplastic tissue derived from one species that has been implanted into a host animal from another species.

immunocompromised
: Describing an organism lacking a fully functional immune system. *Also termed* **immunodeficient**.

anchorage dependence
: Requirement of cells for tethering to a solid substrate before they will grow.

subcutaneous
: Beneath the skin.

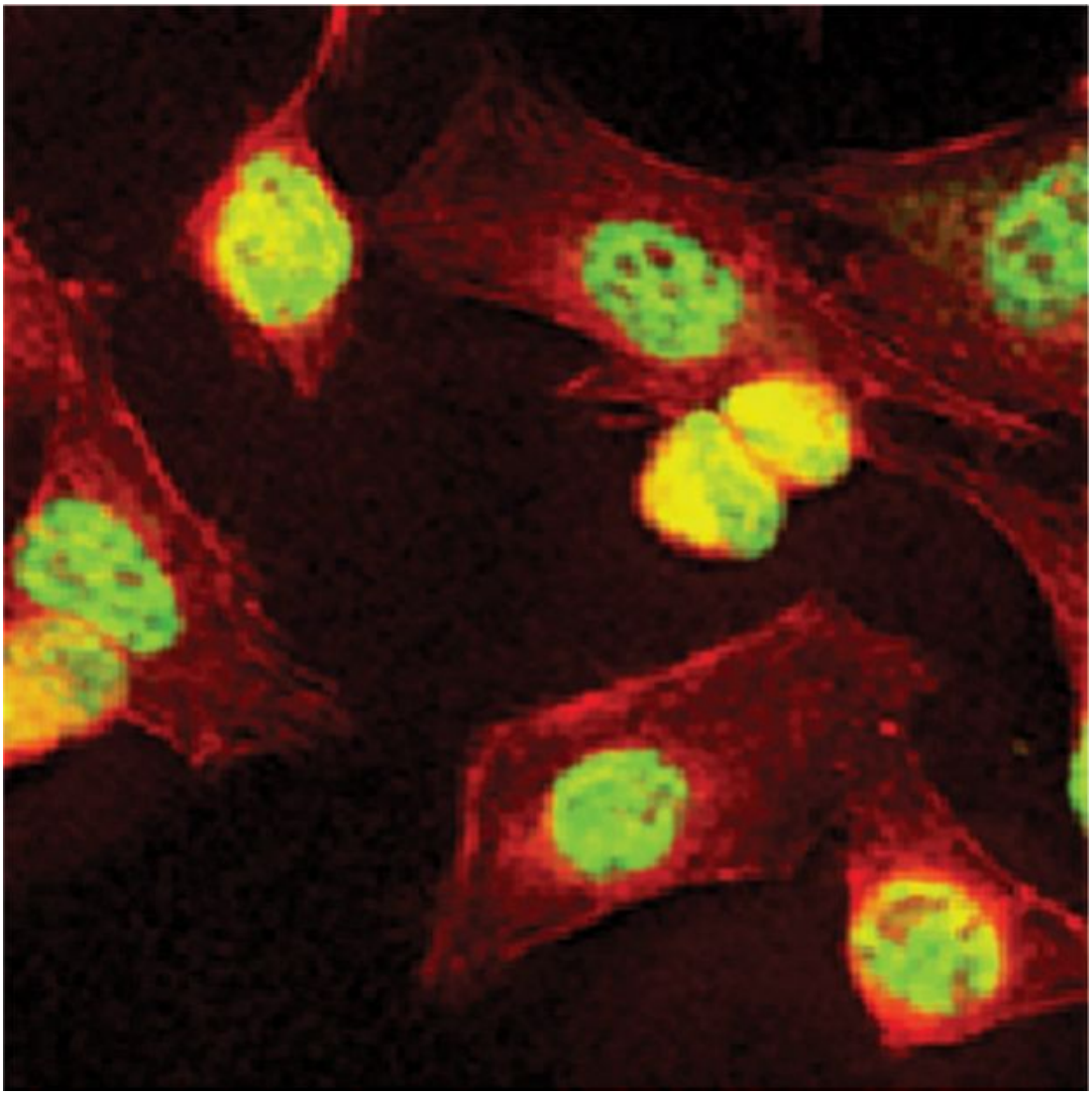
immortalization
: Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

OceanofPDF.com

3.6 Tumor virus genomes persist in virus-transformed cells by becoming part of host-cell DNA

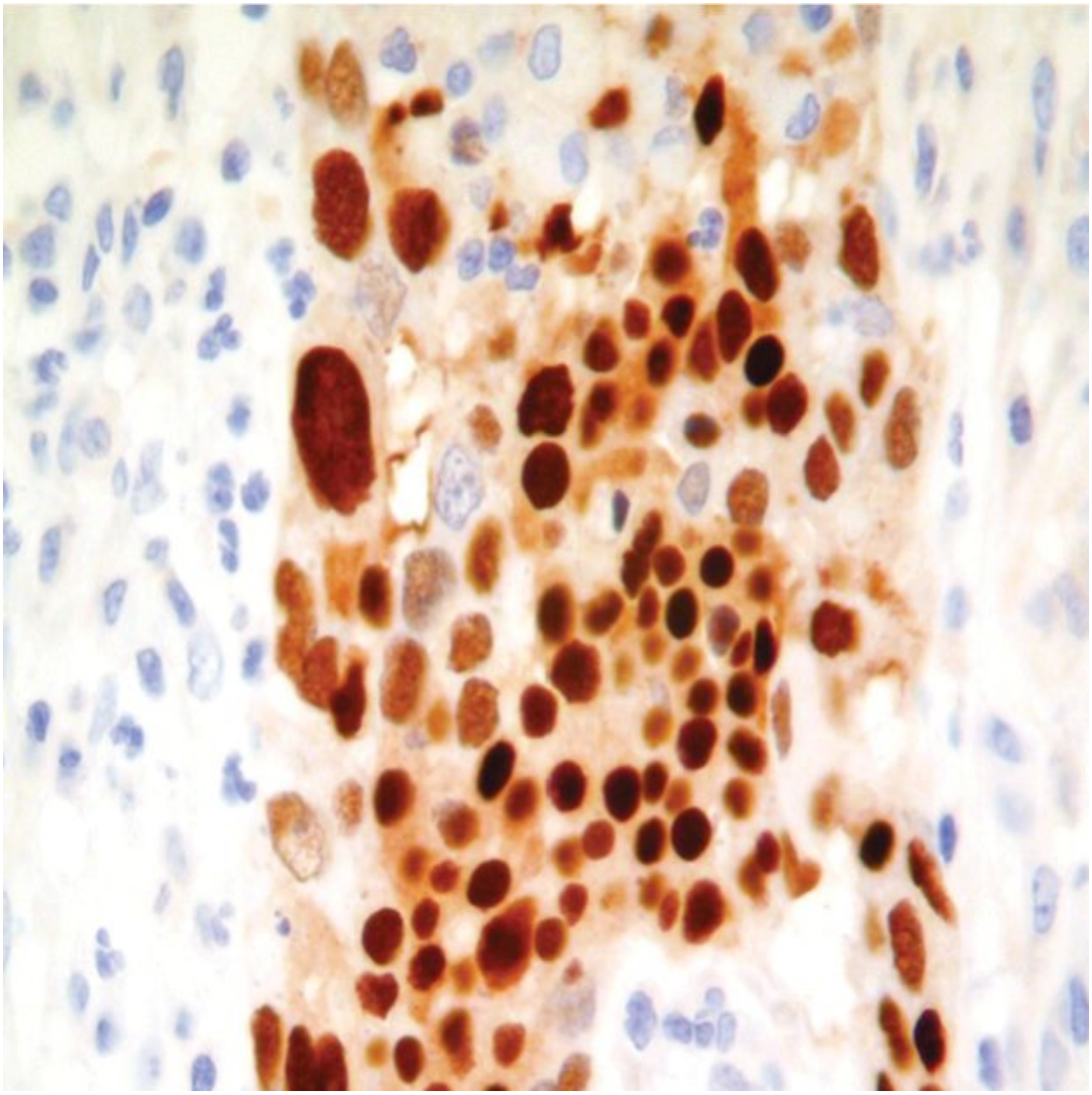
The Berkeley experiment (see Section 3.3) provided strong evidence that the continued actions of the RSV genome were required to maintain the transformed state of cells, including those that were many cell generations removed from an initially infected progenitor cell. This meant that some or all of the viral genetic information needed to be perpetuated in some form, being passed from a transformed mother cell to its two daughters and, further on, to descendant cells through many cycles of cell growth and division. Conversely, a failure to faithfully transmit these viral genes to descendant cells would result in the reversion of such cells to those showing normal growth behavior.

Paralleling the behavior of RSV, cell transformation achieved by two intensively studied DNA tumor viruses—SV40 and the murine polyomavirus—also seemed to depend on the continued presence of viral genomes in the descendants of an initially transformed cell. The evidence proving this came in a roundabout way, largely from the discovery of tumor-associated proteins (T antigens) that were found in cancers induced by these two viruses. For example, sera prepared from mice carrying an SV40-induced tumor showed strong reactivity with a nuclear protein that was present characteristically in tumors triggered by SV40 and absent in tumors induced by other carcinogenic agents. The implication was that the viral genome residing in tumor cells encoded a protein (in this case, the SV40 T antigen) that induced a strong immunological response in the tumor-bearing mouse or rat host (**Figure 3.10**).



A micrograph shows nine or so cells with irregular, angular shapes. Cytoplasm appears in red and has a faintly visible fibrous structure. Cell nuclei appear in brightly glowing yellow and pale green.

(A)



A micrograph shows cancer cells in bladder tissue. Their densely packed nuclei are varying shades of reddish brown. A few of these nuclei are grossly enlarged. The nuclei of the surrounding normal cells are pale blue and less densely packed.

(B)

Figure 3.10 Expression of the SV40 T antigen When SV40-transformed cells are introduced into a syngeneic host, they provoke a strong immune response against the SV40-encoded T antigen (tumor antigen), which is usually termed “large T” (LT). Anti-LT serum, together with appropriate immunofluorescent tags, can be used to stain virus-transformed cells. (A) In the light micrograph shown here, an anti-LT monoclonal antibody (rather than anti-tumor serum) has been used to stain mouse cells that have been transformed by SV40, revealing the nuclear

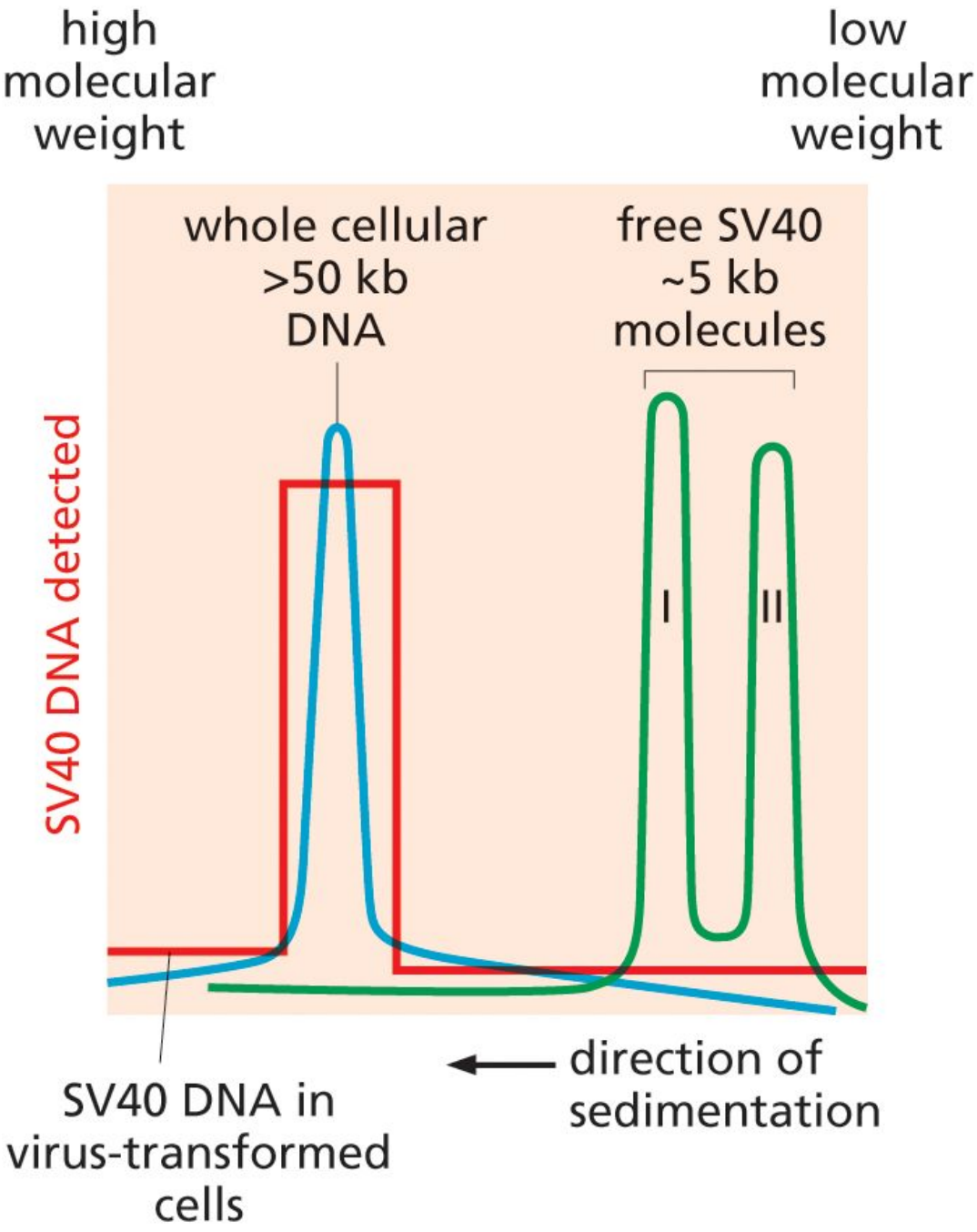
localization of LT (*green*); the cytoplasm of each cell has been stained with phalloidin (*red*), which reveals the F-actin fibers of the cytoskeleton. (B) While SV40 itself rarely if ever causes human tumors (see Section 3.4), immunosuppression can allow an otherwise latent close cousin of SV40, termed BK virus, to become active and occasionally oncogenic. Seen here is a urothelial (bladder) carcinoma arising in a kidney transplant patient. The tumor cells show strong staining for T antigen (*brown*), while the nearby normal urothelial cells are unstained. (The tumor cell nuclei show dramatic variations in size.) (A, courtesy of S.S. Tevethia. B, from I.S.D. Roberts et al., *Brit. J. Cancer* 99:1383–1386, 2008. With permission from Springer Nature.)

The display of the virus-induced T antigen correlated directly with the transformed state of these cells. Therefore, cells that lost the T antigen would also lose the transformation phenotype induced by the virus. This correlation suggested, but hardly proved, that the viral gene sequences responsible for transformation were associated with or closely linked to viral sequences encoding the T antigen.

The cell-to-cell transmission of viral genomes over many cell generations represented a major conceptual problem. Cellular genes were clearly transmitted with almost total fidelity from mother cells to daughter cells through the carefully programmed processes of chromosomal DNA replication and mitosis that occur during each cellular growth-and-division cycle. How could viral genomes succeed in being replicated and transmitted efficiently through an unlimited number of cell generations? This was especially puzzling, since viral genomes seemed to lack the genetic elements, specifically those forming centromeres, that were thought to be required for proper allocation of chromosomes to daughter cells during mitosis.

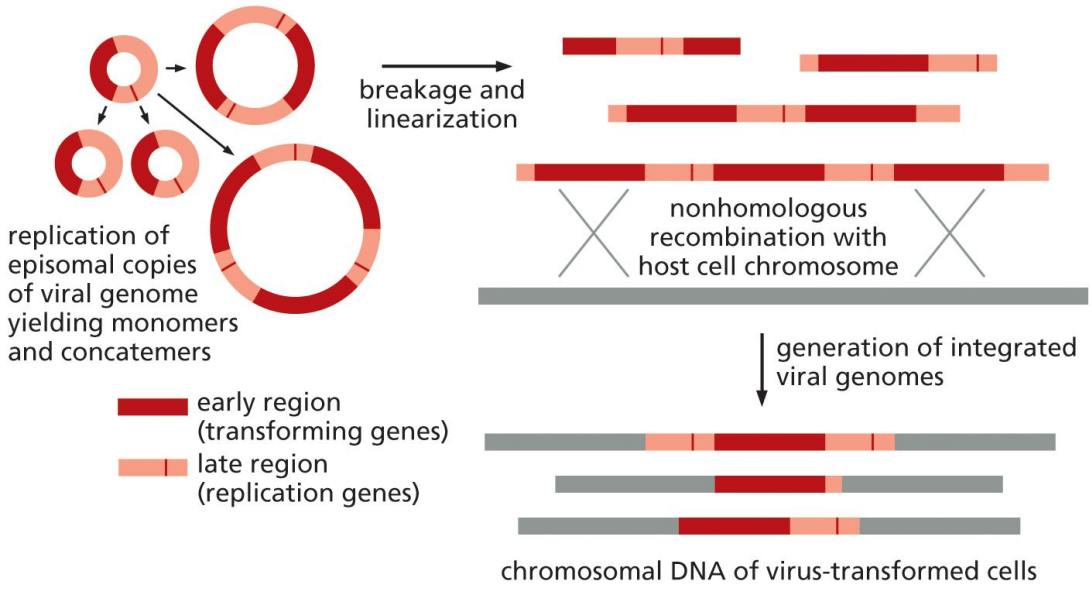
Adding to this problem was the fact that the DNA metabolism of papovaviruses, such as papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses, was very different from that of the host cells that they preyed upon. For example, when SV40 and the murine polyomavirus infected permissive host cells, the viral DNAs were replicated as autonomous, extrachromosomal molecules. Both viruses could form many tens of thousands of circular, double-stranded DNA genomes of about 5 kb in size, all derived from a single viral DNA genome initially introduced by an infecting virus particle (see Figure 3.8). While the viral DNA replication exploited a number of host-cell DNA replication enzymes (see Figure 3.2), it proceeded independently of the infected cells' chromosomal DNA replication. This nonchromosomal replication occurring during the lytic cycles of SV40 and the murine polyomavirus shed no light on how these viral genomes were perpetuated in populations of virus-transformed cells. The latter were, after all, nonpermissive hosts and therefore prevented these viruses from replicating their DNA, both in the initially infected cell and, presumably, in the descendants of this cell.

A solution to this puzzle came in 1968, when it was discovered that the viral DNA in SV40-transformed mouse cells was tightly associated with their chromosomal DNA. Using centrifugation techniques to gauge the molecular weights of DNA molecules, it became clear that the SV40 DNA in these cells no longer sedimented like a small (∼5 kb) viral DNA genome. Instead, the SV40 DNA sequences in virus-transformed cells co-sedimented with the high–molecular-weight (>50 kb) chromosomal DNA of the host cells (**Figure 3.11A**). In fact, the viral DNA in these transformed cells could not be separated from the cells' chromosomal DNA by even the most stringent methods of dissociation, including the harsh treatment of exposure to alkaline pH.



A graphic shows the results of separating D N A molecules in a centrifuge, with the lightest molecules on the right and the heaviest ones on the left. In the right half of the figure, two green peaks indicate the isolation of free S V 40 D N A, with roughly 5 kilobases per molecule. The peak for form 1 is to the left of the peak for form 2. In the left half of the figure, a single blue peak indicates the isolation of whole cellular D N A, with more than 50 kilobases

per molecule. This is where large amounts of S V 40 D N A from virus-transformed cells are detected.
(A)



A flowchart begins with the replication of episomal copies of a viral genome, yielding monomers and concatemers. The original genome and the copies are all ring-shaped and all contain a mix of so-called early regions, containing transforming genes, and late regions, containing replication genes. In the next step, breakage and linearization turn the rings into linear structures, which undergo nonhomologous recombination with a host cell chromosome. In the final step, generation of integrated viral genomes occurs, producing linear strings of chromosomal D N A of virus-transformed cells. The former early and late regions have been spliced into the middle of the host cell D N A segments.

(B)

Figure 3.11 Integration of SV40 DNA (A) DNA molecules from SV40-transformed cells were isolated and sedimented by centrifugation through an alkaline solution stabilized by a sucrose gradient (composed of more concentrated sucrose at the bottom and more dilute sucrose at the top and used to prevent mixing of different fluid strata within the centrifuge tube). Under these conditions, the high–molecular-weight cellular DNA (*blue*) sedimented a substantial distance down the sucrose gradient (*left side of graph*). In contrast, the SV40 DNA isolated from virus particles (*green*) sedimented more slowly, indicative of its lower molecular weight. Forms I and II viral DNA refer to the closed circular and nicked circular DNAs of SV40, respectively (see Figure 3.8). Use of an SV40-specific

radioactive probe revealed that the SV40 DNA sequences in SV40 virus–transformed cells co-sedimented with the high–molecular-weight chromosomal DNA of the virus-transformed cells. Because high pH conditions disrupt all noncovalent interactions, this co-sedimentation indicated the covalent association of the viral genomic DNA (*red*). with that of the host cell (*blue*). (B) When nonchromosomal (that is, episomal) SV40 genomes (*top leftmost circles*) replicate, they often generate large, tandemly repeated, circular genomes termed concatemers. Monomeric and concatemerized SV40 DNA genomes can undergo linearization and thereafter recombine at low efficiency with the host-cell chromosomal DNA (*gray*), doing so at random sites in the host genome; this leads to the covalent linkage of viral and cellular DNA sequences. Since the viral and host-cell genomes lack significant sequence identity, this type of recombination is termed nonhomologous or illegitimate recombination. Use of restriction enzyme cleavage-site mapping revealed the configurations of SV40 genomes integrated into the chromosomal DNA of virus-transformed cells. In some cells, only a portion of the viral genome was present; in others, full, multiple, head-to-tail tandem arrays were present. Cell transformation by SV40 requires only the genes in the "early region" of the viral genome (*dark red*). Consequently, all virus-transformed cells contained at least one uninterrupted copy of this early region but often lacked segments of the viral late region (*pink*), which is functionally unimportant for cell transformation. (A, adapted from J. Sambrook et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 60:1288–1295, 1968. B, adapted from M. Botchan, W. Topp and J. Sambrook, *Cell* 9:269–287, 1976.)

These results indicated that SV40 DNA in virus-transformed cells had been inserted into the cells' chromosomes, becoming covalently linked to the chromosomal DNA. Such integration of the viral genome into a host-cell chromosome solved an important problem in viral transformation: transmission of viral DNA sequences from a mother cell to its offspring could be guaranteed, since the viral DNA would be co-replicated together with the cell's chromosomal DNA during the S (DNA synthesis) phase of each cell cycle. In effect, by integrating into the chromosome, the viral DNA sequences became as much a part of a cell's genome as the cell's own native genes (Figure 3.11B).

Some years later, this ability of the papillomavirus and polyomavirus genomes to integrate into host-cell genomes became highly relevant to the pathogenesis of one common form of human cancer—cervical carcinoma. Almost all (>99.7%) of these tumors have been found to carry fragments of human papillomavirus (HPV) genomes integrated into their chromosomal DNA. Provocatively, intact viral genomes are rarely discovered to be present in integrated form in cancer cell genomes. Instead, only the portion of the viral genome that contains oncogenic (cancer-causing) information has been found in the chromosomal DNA of these cancer cells, while the portion that

enables these viruses to replicate and construct progeny virus particles is almost always absent or present in only fragmentary form (see Figure 3.11B). Interestingly, among the HPV genes discarded or disrupted during the chromosomal integration process is the viral E2 gene, whose product serves to repress transcription of viral oncogenes (genes contributing to cell transformation); in the absence of E2, the viral E6 and E7 oncogenes present in the integrated viral genome segments (discussed in Chapters 8 and 9) are actively transcribed, thereby driving cervical epithelial cells toward a neoplastic phenotype. (An analogous situation is seen in SV40-transformed rodent cells in which the viral genes responsible for viral replication are also often absent.)

More recently, herpesviruses have been found to use at least two different molecular strategies to maintain intact viral genomes in infected cells over extended periods of time. Certain lymphotropic herpesviruses (which infect lymphocytes), specifically human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6) and Marek's disease virus (MDV) of chickens, can integrate their genomes into the telomeric repeats (see Chapter 10) of the chromosomal DNA of their cellular hosts. This strategy enables these viruses to establish long-term latent infections, in which the viral genomes are maintained indefinitely while the viruses shut down active replication; after great delay, however, the viral genomes can excise themselves and launch active replication of the resulting non-chromosome-integrated (that is episomal) genomes.

More common, however, are molecular strategies that allow DNA tumor viruses, such as Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV/HHV-8), to maintain their genomes continuously as episomes over many cell generations. Rather than covalently linking their genomes to cellular DNA, these viruses deploy viral proteins that serve as bridges between the episomal viral genomes and cellular chromatin. This allows the viral genomes to "hitchhike" with cellular chromosomes, ensuring nuclear localization during mitosis and proper allocation of viral genomes to daughter cells (**Supplementary Sidebar 3.5**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

T antigen
: Tumor-associated antigen, such as that encoded by the genome of a transforming tumor virus such as SV40 and the genomes of the cells that it has transformed. *See* **tumor-associated antigen**.

centromere
: Region of a chromosome that holds the two chromatids together and that binds, via a kinetochore, with mitotic or meiotic spindle fibers.

integration
: Insertion of a fragment of foreign double-stranded DNA (e.g., the DNA genome of an infecting virus) into chromosomal DNA so that the foreign DNA becomes covalently linked to the chromosomal DNA segments flanking it on both sides and can be replicated together with the flanking DNA during subsequent rounds of cell growth and division.

oncogenic
: Referring to the ability to induce or cause cancer.

oncogene
: (1) A cancer-inducing gene. (2) A gene that can transform cells from a normal to a neoplastic state.

lymphotropic
: Capable of infecting lymphocytes.

episome
: (adj., **episomal**) A genetic element, implicitly formed of dsDNA, that exists in a cell, often over multiple cell generations, but is not physically linked via covalent bonds to the cell's chromosomal DNA.

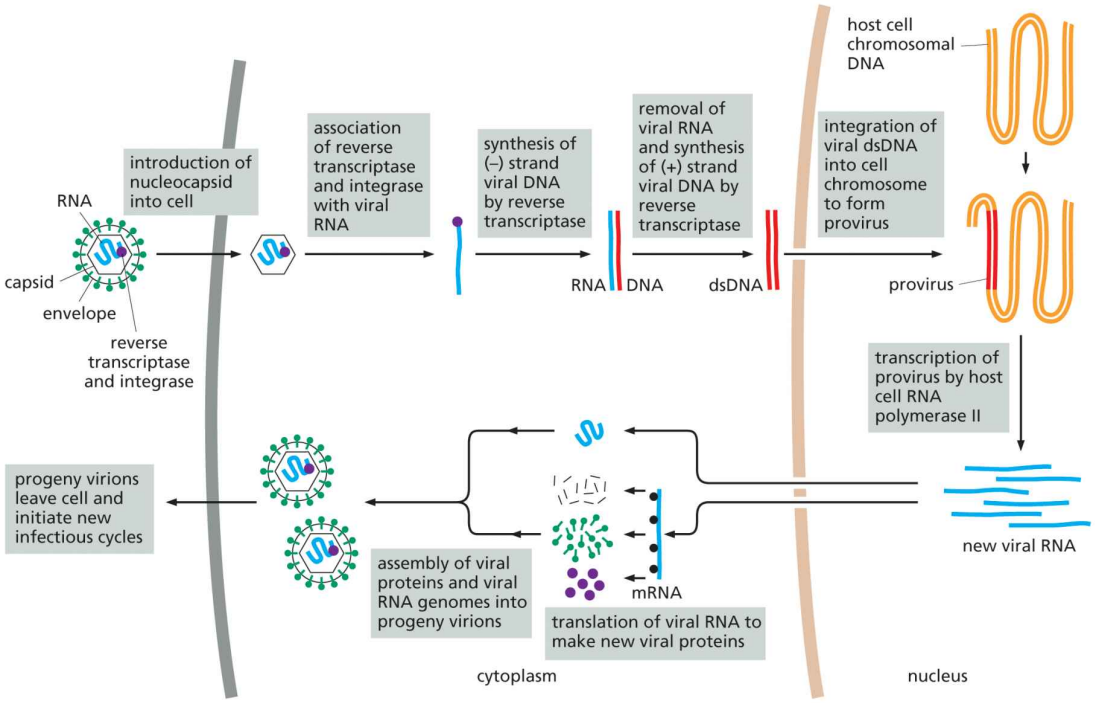
episome
: (adj., **episomal**) A genetic element, implicitly formed of dsDNA, that exists in a cell, often over multiple cell generations, but is not physically linked via covalent bonds to the cell's chromosomal DNA.

OceanofPDF.com

3.7 Retroviral genomes become integrated into the chromosomes of infected cells

The ability of SV40 and the other polyomaviruses to integrate copies of their genomes into host-cell chromosomal DNA solved one problem but created another that seemed much less solvable: how could RSV succeed in transmitting its genome through many generations within a cell lineage? The genome of RSV is made of single-stranded RNA, which clearly could not be integrated directly into the chromosomal DNA of an infected cell. Still, RSV succeeded in transmitting its genetic information through many successive cycles of cell growth and division.

This puzzle consumed Temin in the mid- and late 1960s and caused him to propose a solution so unorthodox that it was ridiculed by many, landing him in the scientific wilderness. Temin argued that after RSV particles (and those of related viruses) infected a cell, they made double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) copies of their RNA genomes. It was these dsDNA versions of the viral genome, he said, that became established in the chromosomal DNA of the host cell. Once established, the DNA version of the viral genome—which he called a provirus—then assumed the molecular configuration of a cellular gene and would be replicated each time the cell replicated its chromosomal DNA. In addition, the proviral DNA could then serve as a template for transcription by cellular RNA polymerase, thereby yielding RNA molecules that could be incorporated into progeny virus particles or, alternatively, could function as messenger RNA (mRNA) that was used for the synthesis of viral proteins (**Figure 3.12**). (The provirus concept was inspired, in part, by the 1952 discovery of prophages—latent forms of bacteriophages that reside in bacterial genomes.)



The life cycle of an R N A tumor virus like R S V. It begins when a virus sheds its envelope and the nucleocapsid within is introduced into the cytoplasm of a cell. This capsid contains an R N A chain that near one end has a clump of reverse transcriptase and integrase. Association of reverse transcriptase and integrase with viral R N A produces a single, straight genome strand with the reverse transcriptase and integrase clump at one end. Reverse transcriptase copies the R N A to produce a matching single minus strand of viral D N A. Removal of the viral R N A and synthesis of a plus strand of viral D N A results in double-stranded d s D N A. This then moves into the nucleus, where it is integrated into the cell chromosome to form a provirus. The host cell's R N A polymerase 2 transcribes the provirus to form new viral R N A. This is translated back out into the cytoplasm, where it makes new viral proteins of various forms. These viral proteins and the viral R N A genomes are assembled into progeny virions. The progeny particles leave the cell and initiate new infectious cycles.

Figure 3.12 The life cycle of an RNA tumor virus like RSV An infecting virion introduces its single-stranded (ss) RNA genome (*blue*) into the cytoplasm of a cell together with the reverse transcriptase enzyme (RT, *purple*). The RT makes a single-stranded DNA using the viral RNA as template complementary to the viral RNA (*red*), and then a second DNA strand (*red*). The reverse-transcribed dsDNA then moves into the nucleus, where it becomes integrated through the actions of the virus-encoded integrase into the cellular chromosomal DNA (*orange*). The resulting integrated provirus is then transcribed by host-cell RNA polymerase II into progeny viral RNA molecules (blue). The progeny RNA molecules are

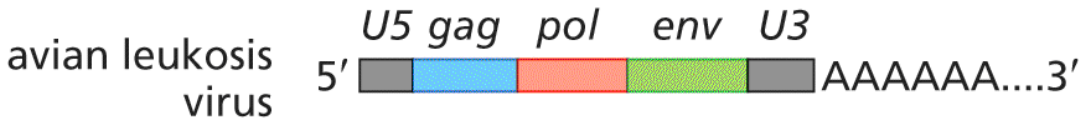
exported to the cytoplasm, where they either serve as mRNAs to make viral proteins or are packaged into progeny virus particles that leave the cell and initiate a new round of infection. (Not explained by this scheme is the mechanistic rationale for the incorporation of RT molecules within the virions. Thus, the indicated replication strategy could in principle be achieved if the RT were not carried within virions but instead was synthesized *de novo* on viral RNA templates only after the virions had entered the cell.) (Adapted from B. Alberts et al., Essential Cell Biology, 3rd ed. New York: Garland Science, 2010.)

The process of reverse transcription that Temin proposed—making DNA copies of RNA—was without precedent in the molecular biology of the time, which recognized information flow only in a single direction, specifically, DNA → RNA → proteins. But the idea prevailed, receiving strong support from Temin's and David Baltimore's simultaneous discoveries in 1970 that RSV and related virus particles carry the enzyme reverse transcriptase. As both research groups discovered, this enzyme has the capacity to execute the key copying step that Temin had predicted—the step required in order for RSV to transmit its genome through many cycles of cell growth and division.

It soon became apparent that RSV was only one of a large group of similarly constructed viruses (including HIV; **Supplementary Sidebar 3.6**), which together came to be called retroviruses to reflect the fact that their cycle of replication depends on information flowing "backward" from RNA to DNA. Within a year of the discovery of reverse transcriptase, the presence of proviral DNA was detected in the chromosomal DNA of RSV-infected cells. Hence, like SV40 and polyomavirus, retroviruses rely on integration of their genomes into the chromosome to ensure the stable retention and transmission of their genomes.

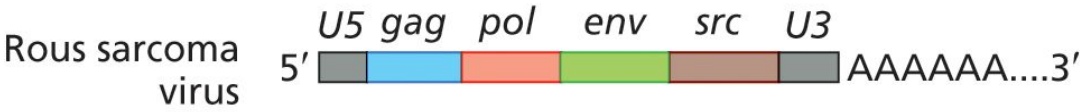
There is, however, an important distinction between the integration mechanisms used by retroviruses like RSV (see Figure 3.12) and the DNA tumor viruses such as SV40 and the murine polyomaviruses (see Figure 3.11B). Integration is a normal, essential part of the replication cycle of retroviruses. Indeed, retrovirus genomes carry the gene specifying an integrase. This enzyme is encoded by the viral *pol* gene (**Figure 3.13**) and is synthesized together with the reverse transcriptase as part of a larger polyprotein. Integrase is dedicated to mediating the process of chromosomal integration. Accordingly, during each cycle of infection and replication, the retroviral genome—its provirus—is integrated into the host chromosomal DNA through a precise, ordered process that ensures the presence of the entire viral genome and thus the retention of all viral genes. This contrasts with the behavior of DNA tumor viruses: chromosomal integration of their genomes is a very rare accident (<<1 per 1000 infections) that enables the perpetuation of viral genomes in the descendants of an initially infected cell; the rare SV40 genomes that do succeed in becoming established

in chromosomal DNA are found integrated in a haphazard fashion that often includes only fragments of the wild-type genome



The structure of the avian leukosis genome, with a 5 prime end on the left and a 3 prime end on the right. At the 5 prime end, from left to right, are a U 5 segment, a gag gene, a pol gene, an e n v gene, and a U 3 segment.

(A)



The structure of the Rous sarcoma virus genome, with a 5 prime end on the left and a 3 prime end on the right. At the 5 prime end, from left to right, are a U 5 segment, a gag gene, a pol gene, an e n v gene, a Sarc gene, and a U 3 segment.

(B)

Figure 3.13 Structure of the Rous sarcoma virus genome The RNA genome of RSV is closely related to that of a relatively common infectious agent of chickens, avian leukosis virus, or ALV (A). Both genomes include the *gag* gene, which encodes the proteins that, together with the viral RNA, form each virion's nucleoprotein core; the *pol* gene, which encodes the reverse transcriptase and integrase; and the *env* gene, which specifies the glycoprotein spikes of the virion (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.6**). (B) The RSV genome carries, in addition, a gene (*src*, *brown*) that specifies the Src protein, which causes cell transformation. At both the left and right ends of these genomes are sequences—*U3* and *U5*—that are duplicated during the course of reverse transcription to generate the pair of identical long terminal repeats (LTRs, *gray*) at the ends of the provirus; the LTRs carry strong transcriptional promoters and sequences involved in chromosomal integration.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

provirus
: The dsDNA copy of a retroviral genome that is the product of reverse transcription; it can exist transiently, as an episomal (nonchromosomal) plasmid, or stably, following its integration into the chromosomal DNA of an infected host cell.

reverse transcription
: Enzymatic reaction whereby an enzyme, such as reverse transcriptase, copies an RNA template into a complementary DNA copy.

reverse transcriptase
: Enzyme capable of making a DNA complementary copy of an RNA molecule using the RNA molecule as template.

retrovirus
: A class of viruses that uses a reverse transcriptase enzyme to copy its genomic single-strand RNA into double-strand DNA that, after integration into a host cell chromosome, serves as template for transcription of viral mRNA and progeny viral genomes.

integrase
: An enzyme that is specialized to integrate an episomal DNA, such as a retroviral DNA genome, into host-cell chromosomal DNA. *See also* **integration, episome**.

polyprotein
: Initial product of translation that is cleaved subsequently into multiple smaller proteins, each of which may then exhibit its own distinct function.

OceanofPDF.com

3.8 A version of the *src* gene carried by RSV is also present in uninfected cells

Because the genomes of retroviruses, like those of the papillomavirus and polyomavirus, were found to be quite small (<10 kb), it seemed likely that the coding capacity of the retroviral genomes was limited to a small number of genes, probably far fewer than ten. Using this small repertoire of genes, retroviruses nevertheless succeeded in specifying some viral proteins needed for viral genome replication, others required for the construction and assembly of progeny virus particles, and yet other proteins used to transform infected cells.

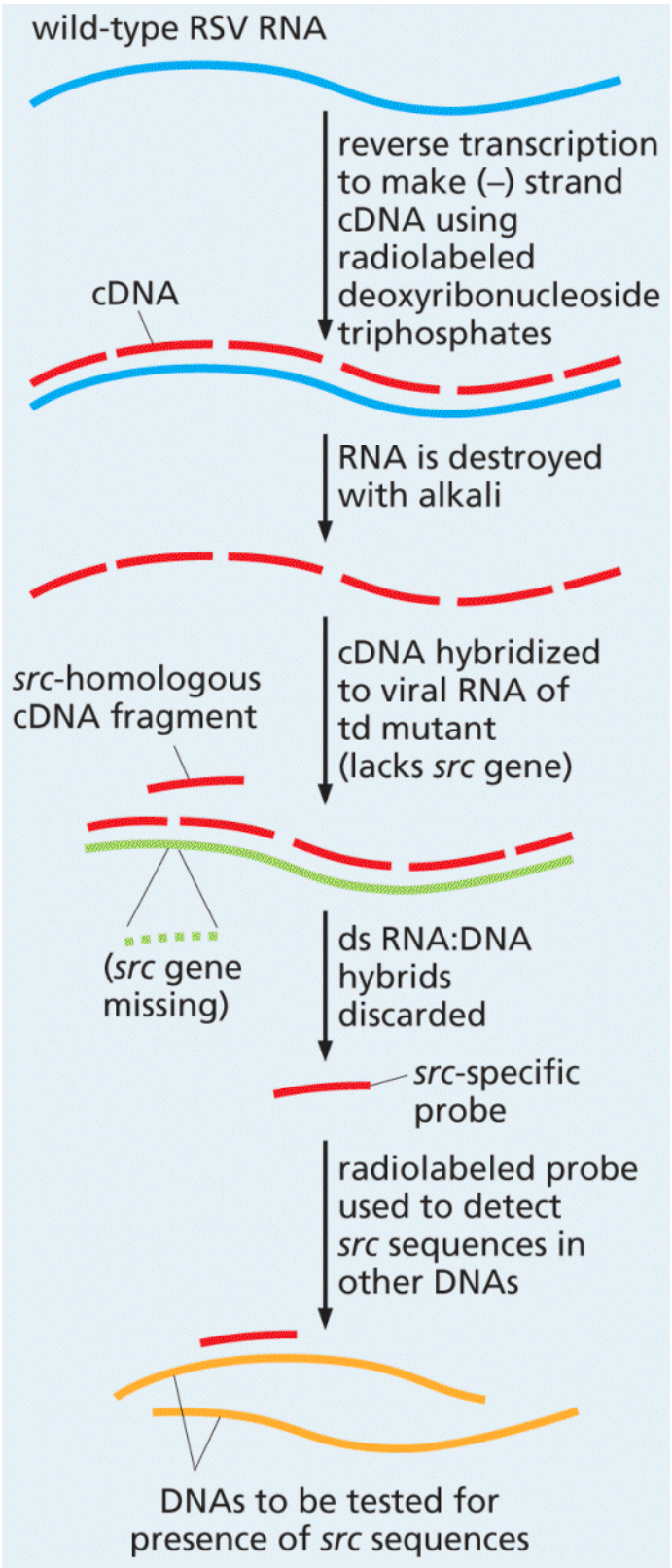
In the case of RSV, the use of mutant viruses revealed that the functions of viral replication (including reverse transcription and the construction of progeny virions) required one set of genes, while the function of viral transformation required another. Thus, some mutant versions of RSV could replicate perfectly well in infected cells, producing large numbers of progeny virus particles, yet such mutants lacked transforming function. Conversely, other mutant derivatives of RSV could transform cells but had lost the ability to replicate and make progeny virions in these transformed cells.

At least three retroviral genes were implicated in viral replication. Two of these encode structural proteins that are required for assembly of virus particles; a third specifies both the reverse transcriptase (RT) enzyme, which copies viral RNA into double-stranded DNA shortly after retrovirus particles enter into host cells, and the integrase enzyme, which is responsible for integrating the newly synthesized viral DNA into the host-cell genome (see Figures 3.12 and 3.13). A comparison of the RNA genome of RSV with the genomes of related retroviruses lacking transforming ability suggested that there was rather little information in the RSV genome devoted to encoding the remaining known viral function—transformation. Consequently, geneticists speculated that all of the viral transforming functions of RSV resided in a single gene, which they termed *src* (pronounced “sark”), to indicate its role in triggering the formation of sarcomas in infected chickens (see Figure 3.13B).

In 1974, the laboratory run jointly by J. Michael Bishop and Harold Varmus at the University of California, San Francisco, undertook to make a DNA probe that specifically recognized the transformation-associated (that is, *src*) sequences of the RSV genome in order to understand its origins and functions (**Sidebar 3.3**). This *src*-specific probe was then used to follow the fate of the *src* gene after cells were infected with RSV. The notion here was that uninfected chicken cells would carry no *src*-related DNA sequences in their genomes, which *src* sequences would become readily detectable in cells following RSV infection, having been introduced by the infecting viral genome.

Sidebar 3.3 The making of a *src*-specific DNA probe

In order to make a *src*-specific DNA probe, a researcher in Bishop and Varmus's laboratory exploited two types of RSV strains: a wild-type RSV genome that carried all of the sequences needed for viral replication and transformation, and a mutant RSV genome that was able to replicate but had lost, by deletion, the *src* sequences required for transformation (**Figure 3.14**). Using reverse transcriptase, he made a DNA copy of the wild-type sequences, yielding single-stranded DNA molecules complementary to the viral RNA genome. He fragmented the complementary DNA (often termed cDNA) and hybridized it to the RNA genome of the RSV deletion mutant that lacked *src* sequences, creating DNA–RNA hybrid molecules. The bulk of the cDNA fragments annealed to the RNA genome of the deletion mutant, with the exception of cDNA fragments derived from the region encoding the *src* sequences. He then retrieved the ssDNA molecules that failed to form DNA–RNA hybrids (discarding the hybrids). The result was ssDNA fragments that specifically recognized sequences contained within the deleted portion of the mutant RSV genome, that is, those lying within the *src* gene.


wild-type RSV RNA
reverse transcription to make (–) strand cDNA using radiolabeled deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates
cDNA
RNA is destroyed with alkali
cDNA hybridized to viral RNA of td mutant (lacks src gene)
src-homologous cDNA fragment
(src gene missing)
ds RNA:DNA hybrids discarded
src-specific probe
radiolabeled probe used to detect src sequences in other DNAs
DNAs to be tested for presence of src sequences

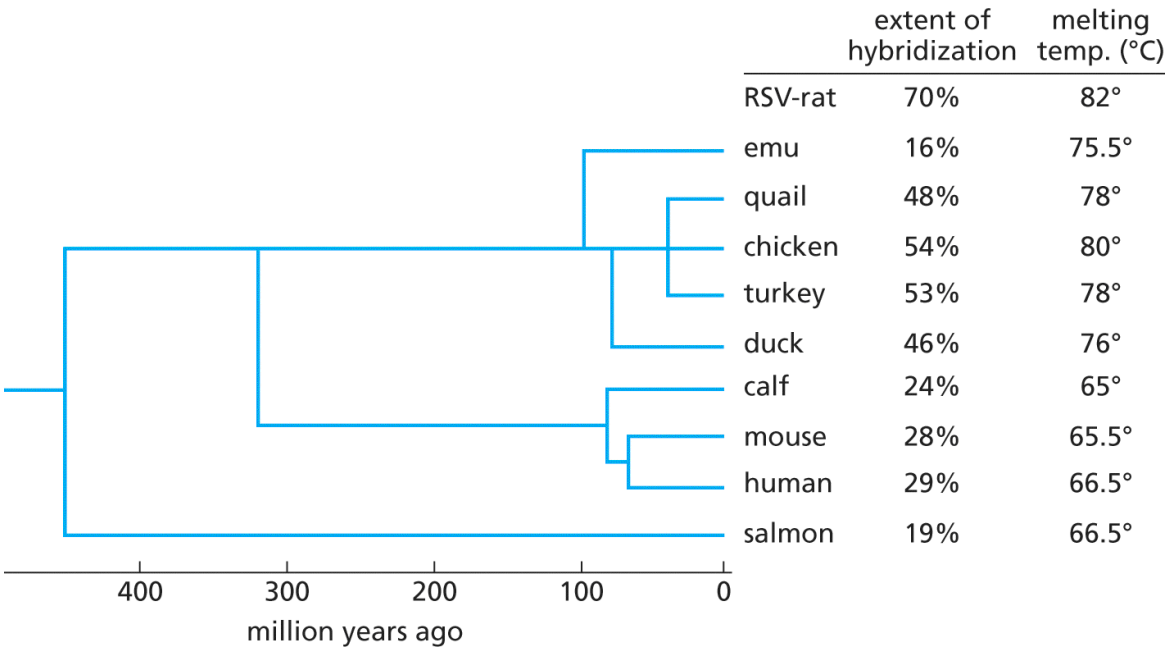
The construction of a Sarc-specific D N A probe. Wild-type R S V R N A is subjected to reverse transcription, using radiolabeled deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates, to make minus strand c D N A. After the R N A is destroyed with alkali, the c D N A is hybridized to viral R N A of t d mutant, which lacks the Sarc gene. This liberates a Sarc-homologous c D N A fragment, which remains after the R N A D N A hybrids are discarded. It is the radiolabeled Sarc-specific D N A probe. It can be used to detect Sarc sequences in other D N A that require testing to be for presence of Sarc sequences.

Figure 3.14 The construction of a *src*-specific DNA probe Wild-type (wt) RSV RNA (*blue*) was reverse-transcribed under conditions where only a single-stranded (ss) complementary DNA molecule (a cDNA; *red*) was synthesized. The wt single-stranded viral DNA was then annealed (hybridized) to viral RNA (green) of a transformation-defective (td) RSV mutant, which had lost its transforming function and apparently deleted its *src* gene. The resulting RNA:DNA hybrids were discarded, leaving behind the ssDNA fragment of the wtDNA that failed to hybridize to the RNA of the td mutant. This surviving DNA fragment, if radiolabeled, could then be used as a *src*-specific probe to detect *src*-related sequences in various cellular DNAs (*orange*) via DNA:DNA hybridization.

Because the initial reverse transcription of the wild-type RSV RNA was carried out in the presence of radiolabeled deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates, the *src*-specific DNA fragments (which constituted the *src* “probe”) were also labeled with radioisotope. This made it possible to discover whether DNAs of interest (such as the DNAs prepared from virus-infected or uninfected cells) also carried *src* sequences by determining whether or not the *src* probe (with its associated radioactivity) was able to hybridize to these cellular DNAs.

The actual outcome of this experiment was, however, totally different from expectation. In 1975, this research group, using their *src*-specific probe, found that *src* sequences were clearly present among the DNA sequences of uninfected chicken cells. These *src* sequences were present as single-copy cellular genes; that is, two copies of the *src*-related DNA sequences were present per diploid chicken cell genome—precisely the representation of the great majority of genes in the cellular genome.

The presence of *src* sequences in the chicken cell genome could not be dismissed as some artifact of the hybridization procedure used to detect them. Moreover, careful characterization of these *src* sequences made it unlikely that they had been inserted into the chicken genome by some retrovirus. For example, *src*-related DNA sequences were readily detectable in the genomes of several related bird species, and, more distantly on the evolutionary tree, in the DNAs of several mammals (**Figure 3.15**). The more distant the evolutionary relatedness of a species was to chickens, the weaker was the reactivity of the *src* probe with its DNA. This was precisely the behavior expected of a cellular gene that had been present in the genome of a common ancestral species and had acquired increasingly divergent DNA sequences as descendant species evolved progressively away from one another over the course of millions of years.



The Evolutionary tree of the Sarc gene, laid out horizontally with the present day on the right. The common ancestor of the chicken, the turkey, and the quail lived about 40 million years ago. The common ancestor of it and the duck lived about 80 million years ago. The common ancestor of it and the emu lived about 100 million years ago. The common ancestor of it and mammals such as the human, the mouse and the calf lived about 310 million years ago. The common ancestor of it and the salmon lived about 450 million years ago. To the right of the tree, a chart lists extent of hybridization and melting temperature in degrees Celsius for each species. RSV-rat, 70%, 82 degrees; emu 16%, 75.5 degrees; quail, 48%, 78 degrees; chicken, 54%, 80 degrees; turkey, 53%, 78 degrees; duck, 46%, 76 degrees; calf, 24%, 65

degrees; mouse, 28%, 65.5 degrees; human, 29%, 66.5 degrees; salmon, 19%, 66.5 degrees.

Figure 3.15 Evolutionary tree of the *src* gene The *src*-specific cDNA probe (see Figure 3.14) was annealed with the DNAs of a variety of vertebrate species—whose relatedness to the chicken is indicated on this evolutionary tree—as well as to a rat cell that had recently been infected and transformed by Rous sarcoma virus and by definition contained the entire sequence of RSV including its *src* gene (RSV-rat). The abscissa indicates the time when the last common ancestor shared by the chicken and each other vertebrate species lived. The best hybridization of the RSV *src* probe was with the DNA of an RSV-transformed rat cell (RSV-rat) carrying an RSV provirus (used as a positive control), as indicated by the percentage of the probe radioactivity that annealed to this cellular DNA and the higher melting temperature of the resulting hybrid. (Melting temperature refers to the temperature at which two nucleic acid strands separate from one another, that is, the temperature at which a double-helix is denatured. The higher the melting temperature, the greater the sequence complementarity and thus base-pairing between two annealing DNA strands; hence, genes borne by distantly related species, because of sequence divergence accumulated as they evolved, should hybridize only imperfectly with the chicken-derived *src* probe, and resulting hybrids should be disrupted at relatively low temperature.) The results for chicken DNA indicate that the sequence of the *src* gene of RSV deviates slightly from the related gene in the chicken genome. The *src* proto-oncogenes of species that were further removed evolutionarily from chickens showed lesser extents of hybridization. Subsequent work, not shown here, revealed the presence of *src* sequences in the DNA of organisms belonging to other metazoan phyla, such as arthropods (e.g., *Drosophila melanogaster*) and even a sponge, whose ancestors diverged from those of vertebrates and other metazoa ∼550 million years ago. The extensive evolutionary conservation of the *src* gene indicates that it played a vital role in the lives of all the organisms that carried it in their genomes. (Courtesy of H.E. Varmus and adapted from D.H. Spector, H.E. Varmus and J.M. Bishop, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 75:4102–4106, 1978.)

The evidence converged on the idea that the *src* sequences present in the genome of an uninfected chicken cell possessed all the properties of a normal cellular gene, being present in a single copy per haploid genome, evolving slowly over tens of millions of years, and being present in species that were ancestral to all

modern vertebrates. This realization created a revolution in thinking about the origins of cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

probe

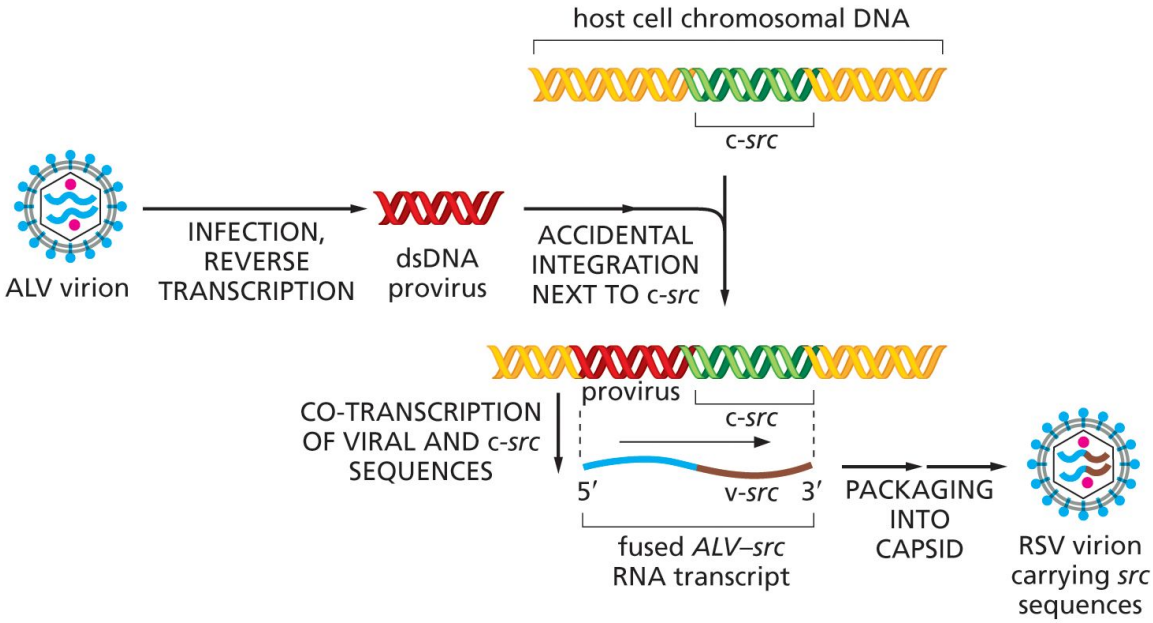
(1) An RNA or DNA, often radiolabeled, that anneals specifically with a complementary nucleic acid being analyzed, enabling the detection of the targeted nucleic acid sequence. (2) An immunological reagent used to detect an antigen or antibody.

OceanofPDF.com

3.9 RSV exploits a kidnapped cellular gene to transform cells

The presence of a highly conserved *src* gene in the genome of a normal organism implied that this cellular version of *src*, sometimes termed c-*src* (that is, cellular *src*), played some role in the life of this organism (the chicken) and its cells. How could this role be reconciled with the presence of a powerful transforming *src* gene carried in the genome of RSV? This viral transforming gene (v-*src*) was closely related to the c-*src* gene of the chicken, yet the two genes had drastically different effects and apparent functions. When ensconced in the cellular genome, the actions of c-*src* were apparently compatible with normal cellular behavior and normal organismic development. In contrast, the very similar v-*src* gene borne by the RSV genome acted as a potent oncogene—a gene capable, following its introduction into a cell by an infecting virus particle, of transforming the previously normal cell into a tumor cell.

One solution to this puzzle came from considering the possibility that perhaps the *src* gene of RSV was not naturally present in the retrovirus ancestral to RSV. This hypothetical viral ancestor, while lacking *src* sequences, would be perfectly capable of replicating in chicken cells. In fact, such a *src*-negative retrovirus—avian leukosis virus (ALV)—was common in chickens and was capable of infectious spread from one chicken to another. This suggested that during the course of infecting a chicken cell, an ancestral virus, similar to this common chicken virus, somehow acquired sequences from the genome of a cell that it had infected (**Figure 3.16**), doing so through some genetic trick. The acquired cellular sequences (that is, the *src* sequences) were then incorporated into the viral genome, thereby adding a fourth gene to the existing three genes that this retrovirus used for its replication in infected cells (see Figure 3.13). Once present in the genome of RSV, the kidnapped *src* gene could then be altered and exploited by this virus to transform subsequently infected cells.



A diagram shows the process of the capture of Sarc by avian leukosis virus. Starting with an A L V virion, infection and reverse transcription produce a d s D N A provirus. This accidentally becomes integrated into host cell chromosomal D N A right beside a c-Sarc proto-oncogene. Co-transcription of the viral and c-Sarc sequences produces a fused A L V Sarc R N A transcript. Packaging into a capsid produces an R S V virion carrying Sarc sequences.

Figure 3.16 Capture of *src* by avian leukosis virus The precise mechanism by which an avian leukosis virus (ALV) captured a cellular *src* gene (c-*src*) is not known. According to the most plausible model, ALV proviral DNA (*red*) became integrated (by chance) next to a c-*src* proto-oncogene (*green*) residing in the chromosomal DNA of an infected chicken cell. The ALV provirus and adjacent c-*src* gene were then co-transcribed into a single hybrid RNA transcript (*blue and brown*). After splicing out c-*src* introns (not shown), this hybrid viral RNA was packaged into a virus particle that became the ancestor of Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). (Not shown is the acquisition during a subsequent infectious cycle of ALV sequences at the 3′ side of v-*src*, with the result that this viral oncogene became flanked on both sides by ALV sequences.)

This scheme attributed great cleverness to retroviruses by implying that they had the ability to pick up and exploit preexisting cellular genes for their own

purposes. Such behavior is most unusual for a virus, since virtually all other types of viruses carry genes that have little if any relatedness to DNA sequences native to the cells that they infect (**Supplementary Sidebar 3.7**).

But there was an even more important lesson to be learned here, this one concerning the c-*src* gene. This cellular gene, one among tens of thousands in the chicken cell genome, could be converted into a potent viral oncogene following some slight remodeling by a retrovirus such as RSV. Because it was a precursor to an active oncogene, c-*src* was called a proto-oncogene. The very concept of a proto-oncogene was revolutionary: it implied that the genomes of normal vertebrate cells carry a gene that has the potential, under certain circumstances, to induce cell transformation and thus cancer.

The structures of the c-*src* proto-oncogene and the v-*src* oncogene were worked out rapidly in the years that followed these discoveries in 1975 and 1976. Just as the viral geneticists had speculated, all of the viral transforming sequences resided in a single viral oncogene. Within the RSV RNA genome, the v-*src* gene was found at the downstream, 3′ end of the genome, added to the three preexisting retroviral genes that were involved in viral replication (see Figure 3.13). Amusingly, the c-*src* gene may have been acquired by ALV on only one occasion documented in the history of modern cancer research (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.7**).

This scenario of acquisition and activation of c-*src* by a retrovirus led to three further ideas. First, if retroviruses could activate this proto-oncogene into a potent oncogene, perhaps other types of mutational mechanisms might reshape the normal c-*src* gene and yield a similar outcome. Maybe such mechanisms could activate a cellular proto-oncogene without removing the normal gene from its normal roosting site on the cellular chromosome. Maybe the information for inducing cancer was already present in the normal cell genome, waiting to be unmasked.

Second, it became clear that all of the transforming powers of RSV derived from the presence of a single gene—v-*src*—in its genome. This was of great importance, because it implied that a single oncogene could, as long suspected, elicit a large number of changes in the shape, metabolism, and growth behavior of a cell. More generally, this suggested that other cancer-causing genes could also act pleiotropically. Accordingly, if a transformed, tumorigenic cell differed from a normal cell in 20 or 30 distinct traits, perhaps these multiple changes were not dependent on the alteration of 20 or 30 different genes; instead, maybe a small

number of master control genes would suffice to transform a normal cell into a tumorigenic cell.

Third, RSV and its v-*src* oncogene might represent a model for the behavior of other types of retroviruses that were similarly capable of transforming infected cells *in vitro* and inducing tumors *in vivo*. Perhaps such retroviruses had acquired other cellular genes unrelated to *src*. While c-*src* was certainly the first cellular proto-oncogene to be discovered, maybe other cellular proto-oncogenes were hiding in the vertebrate cellular genome, waiting to be picked up and activated by some passing retrovirus.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

oncogene
: (1) A cancer-inducing gene. (2) A gene that can transform cells from a normal to a neoplastic state.

oncogene
: (1) A cancer-inducing gene. (2) A gene that can transform cells from a normal to a neoplastic state.

proto-oncogene
: A normal cellular gene that, upon alteration by DNA-damaging agents or viral genomes, can acquire the ability to function as an oncogene. *See* **oncogene**.

OceanofPDF.com

3.10 The vertebrate genome carries a large group of proto-oncogenes

An accident of history—an encounter in 1909 between a Long Island chicken farmer and Peyton Rous—made RSV the first tumorigenic retrovirus to be isolated and characterized in detail. Consequently, RSV was favored initially with the most detailed molecular and genetic analysis. However, in the 1950s and 1960s, a group of other chicken and rodent tumor viruses were found that were subsequently realized to be members, like RSV, of the retrovirus class.

The diversity of these other transforming retroviruses and the diseases that they caused suggested that they, like RSV, might be carrying kidnapped cellular proto-oncogenes and might be using these acquired genes to transform infected cells. So, within a year of the discovery of v-*src* and c-*src*, the race began to find additional viruses that had traveled down a similar genetic path and picked up other, potentially interesting proto-oncogenes.

Another chicken retrovirus—the MC29 myelocytomatosis virus—which was known to be capable of inducing a malignancy of blood-forming cells in chickens, was one of this class. MC29 was also found to carry an acquired cellular gene in its genome, termed the v-*myc* oncogene, which this virus exploited to induce rapidly growing tumors in infected chickens. As was the case with v-*src*, the origin of the v-*myc* gene could be traced to a corresponding proto-oncogene residing in the normal chicken genome. Like *src*, *myc* underwent some remodeling after being incorporated into the retroviral genome. This remodeling imparted potent oncogenic powers to a gene that previously had played a normal physiologic, apparently essential role in the life of normal chicken cells.

Of additional interest was the discovery that MC29, like RSV, descended from avian leukosis virus (ALV). This reinforced the notion that retroviruses like ALV were adept at acquiring random pieces of a cell's genome. The biological powers of the resulting hybrid viruses would presumably depend on which particular cellular genes had been picked up. In the case of the large majority of randomly acquired cellular genes, hybrid viruses carrying such genes would show no obvious phenotypes such as tumor-inducing potential. Only on rare occasion, however, when a growth-promoting cellular gene—a proto-oncogene—happens to be acquired, the hybrid virus might exhibit a cancer-inducing phenotype that could lead to its discovery and eventual isolation by a virologist.

Mammals were also found to harbor retroviruses that are distantly related to ALV and, like ALV, are capable of acquiring cellular proto-oncogenes and converting them into potent oncogenes. Among these is the feline leukemia virus, which acquired the *fes* oncogene in its genome, yielding feline sarcoma virus, and a hybrid rat–mouse leukemia virus, which on separate occasions acquired two distinct proto-oncogenes: the resulting transforming retroviruses, Harvey and Kirsten sarcoma viruses, carry the H-*ras* and K-*ras* oncogenes, respectively, in their genomes. Within a decade, the repertoire of retrovirus-associated oncogenes had increased to more than two dozen, many named after the viruses in which they were originally discovered (**Table 3.3**). By now, more than fifty distinct vertebrate proto-oncogenes have been discovered through various experimental routes, thirty of which were initially identified through their association with a transforming retrovirus. [Many more genes can be classified as proto-oncogenes based on observations that their copy number is increased by gene amplification (see Section 4.2) in many human tumors.]

Table 3.3 Examples of acutely transforming retroviruses and the oncogenes that they have acquired[a]

Name of virus	Viral oncogene	Species	Major disease	Nature of oncoprotein
Hardy–Zuckerman feline sarcoma	*kit*	cat	sarcoma	steel factor RTK
Simian sarcoma	*sis*	woolly monkey	sarcoma	PDGF
AKT8	*akt*	mouse	lymphoma	ser/thr kinase
Avian virus S13	*sea*	chicken	erythroblastic leukemia[b]	RTK; unknown ligand
Myeloproliferative leukemia	*mpl*	mouse	myeloproliferation	TPO receptor
Regional Poultry Lab v. 30	*eyk*	chicken	sarcoma	RTK; unknown ligand
Avian sarcoma virus CT10	*crk*	chicken	sarcoma	SH2/SH3 adaptor
Avian sarcoma virus 17	*jun*	chicken	sarcoma	transcription factor

Name of virus	Viral oncogene	Species	Major disease	Nature of oncoprotein
Avian sarcoma virus 31	*qin*	chicken	sarcoma	transcription factor[c]
AS42 sarcoma virus	*maf*	chicken	sarcoma	transcription factor
Cas NS-1 virus	*cbl*	mouse	lymphoma	SH2-dependent ubiquitylation factor
ASV-16	*p3k*	chicken	hemangiosarcoma	lipid kinase
Abelson leukemia virus	*abl*	mouse	lymphosarcoma	tyr kinase

Abbreviations: PDGF, platelet-derived growth factor; RTK, receptor tyrosine kinase; ser/thr, serine/threonine; SH, *src*-homology segment; TK, tyrosine kinase; TPO, thrombopoietin.
Adapted in part from S.J. Flint, L.W. Enquist, R.M. Krug et al., Principles of Virology. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2000. Also in part from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 1995.

In each case, a proto-oncogene found in the DNA of a mammalian or avian species was readily detectable in the genomes of all other vertebrates. There were, for example, chicken, mouse, and human versions of c-*myc*, and these genes seemed to function identically in their respective hosts. The same could be said of all the other proto-oncogenes that were uncovered. Soon it

became clear that this large repertoire of proto-oncogenes must have been present in the genome of the vertebrate that was the common ancestor of all mammals and birds, and that this group of genes, like most others in the vertebrate genome, was inherited by all of the modern descendant species.

Now, almost half a century later, we realize that these transforming retroviruses provided cancer researchers with a convenient window through which to view the cellular genome and its cohort of proto-oncogenes. Without these retroviruses, the discovery of many proto-oncogenes would have been exceedingly difficult. By fishing these genes out of the cellular genome and revealing their latent powers, these viruses catapulted cancer research forward by decades.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aNot all viruses that have yielded these oncogenes are indicated here. “Species” denotes the animal species from which the virus was initially isolated.Return to reference a
- bAlso causes granulocytic leukemias and sarcomas.Return to reference b
- cFunctions as a transcriptional repressor.Return to reference c

OceanofPDF.com

3.11 Slowly transforming retroviruses activate proto-oncogenes by inserting their genomes adjacent to these cellular genes

As described above, each of the various tumorigenic retroviruses arose when a nontransforming retrovirus, such as avian leukosis virus (ALV) or murine leukemia virus (MLV), acquired a proto-oncogene from the genome of an infected host cell. The result, in each case was an “acutely transforming” retrovirus whose transforming powers could usually be observed by its effects on monolayer cultures of infected cells (see Figure 3.4) and on virus-infected animal hosts, which developed tumors rapidly after infection. In fact, the “nontransforming” precursor viruses could also induce cancers, but they were able to do so only on a much more extended timetable; often months passed before these viruses succeeded in producing cancers. The oncogene-bearing acutely transforming retroviruses, in contrast, often induced tumors within days or weeks after they were injected into host animals.

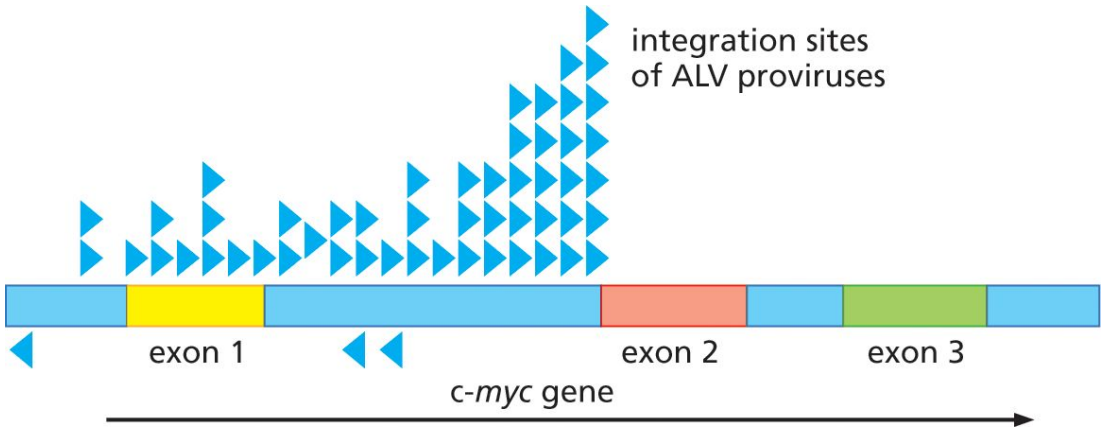
When the rapidly transforming retroviruses were used to infect cells in culture, the cells usually responded by undergoing changes in morphology and growth behavior that typify the behavior of cancer cells (see Table 3.2). In contrast, when the slowly tumorigenic, nontransforming viruses, such as ALV and MLV, infected cells, these cells released progeny virus particles but did not show any apparent changes in shape or growth behavior. This lack of change in cell phenotypes was consistent with the fact that these viruses appeared to lack oncogenes in their genomes.

These facts, when taken together, represented a major puzzle. How could viruses like MLV or ALV induce a malignancy if their genomes carried no oncogenes?

The solution came in 1981 from study of the leukemias that ALV induced in chickens, more specifically, from detailed analysis of the genomic DNAs of the leukemic cells. These cells invariably carried copies of the ALV provirus integrated into their genomes. By the time these experiments began, a decade after Temin and Baltimore’s discovery, it had become clear that the integration of retroviral proviruses occurs at myriad sites throughout the chromosomal DNA of infected host cells. Given the size of the chicken genome, there might be many millions of distinct chromosomal sites used

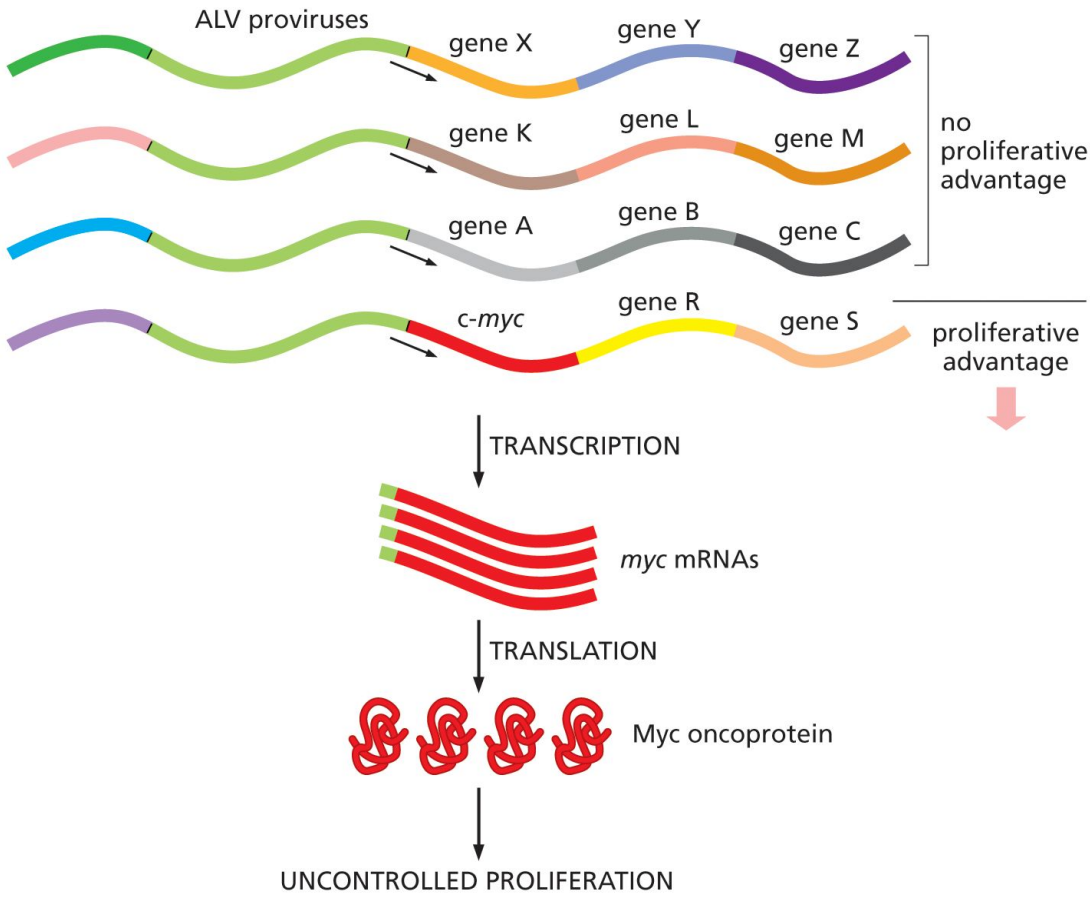
by ALV to integrate its provirus; moreover, each infected leukemia cell might carry one or several proviruses in its genome. Knowing all this, researchers nevertheless undertook to map the genomic sites in ALV-induced leukemias where ALV proviruses had integrated.

This molecular analysis of a series of ALV-induced leukemias, each arising independently in a separate chicken, revealed a picture very different from the expected collection of random integration sites. In a majority (>80%) of these leukemia cell genomes, the ALV provirus was found to be integrated into the chromosomal DNA immediately adjacent to or within the c-*myc* proto-oncogene (**Figure 3.17A**)! This observation, on its own, was difficult to reconcile with the notion that provirus integration occurs randomly at millions of sites throughout the genomes of infected cells.



A segment of chromosomal D N A carrying the c-m y c gene, with exons 1, 2 and 3 shown as colored subsegment spaced out, left to right, along the gene. Over 50 small triangles placed along the gene show the integration sites of A L V proviruses. A few of these are to the left of exon 1 or within it, but the large majority are between exons 1 and 2 and especially just to the left of exor 2. No integration sites are within or to the right of exon 2. Nearly all the triangles point rightward, but three point leftward.

(A)



Four different chromosome segments with an A L V provirus inserted. Three of them contain various collections of other genes that confer no proliferative advantage. The fourth contains the c-m y c gene immediately next to the A L V provirus. This combination has a proliferative advantage. Transcription produces many m y c m R N A, and then translation produces many M y c oncoproteins, in uncontrolled proliferation.

(B)

Figure 3.17 Insertional mutagenesis The oncogenic actions of viruses, such as avian leukosis virus (ALV), that lack acquired oncogenes could be explained by the integration of their proviral DNA adjacent to a cellular proto-oncogene. (A) Analysis of numerous B-cell lymphomas that were induced in chickens by ALV revealed that a large proportion of the ALV proviruses were integrated (*filled blue triangles*) into the chromosomal DNA segment carrying the c-*myc* proto-oncogene, usually in the same transcriptional orientation as that of the c-*myc* gene; the majority were integrated between the first noncoding exon of c-*myc* and the second exon, in which the *myc* reading frame begins. (B) ALV's oncogenic behavior could be rationalized as follows. In the course of ALV infection of

chicken lymphocytes, ALV proviruses (*green*) become integrated randomly at millions of different sites in the chromosomal DNA of these cells. (Chromosomal DNA maps of only four are illustrated schematically here.) On rare occasions, an ALV provirus becomes integrated (by chance) within the c-*myc* proto-oncogene (*red*). This may then cause transcription of the c-*myc* gene to be driven by the strong, constitutively acting ALV promoter, notably the one found at the 3′ (*right*) end of the provirus (see Figure 3.13). Because high levels of the Myc protein are potent in driving cell proliferation, the cell carrying this particular integrated provirus and activated c-*myc* gene will now multiply uncontrollably, eventually spawning a large host of descendants that will constitute a lymphoma. [A, adapted from J.R. Nevins and P.K. Vogt, “Cell Transformation by Viruses” in *Fields Virology*, Third Ed. (Lippincott-Raven, 1996). With permission from Wolters Kluwer.]

It soon became clear that the close physical association of an integrated proviral genome and the cellular *myc* proto-oncogene led to a functional link between these two genetic elements. The viral transcriptional promoter and enhancer (see Section 1.8), nested within the ALV provirus, overrode and disrupted the control mechanisms that normally govern expression of the c-*myc* gene (see Figure 3.17A). Now, instead of being regulated by its own native gene promoter, the cellular *myc* gene was placed directly under viral transcriptional control. As a consequence, rather than being regulated up and down by the finely tuned control circuitry of the cell, c-*myc* expression was taken over by a foreign usurper that drove its expression unceasingly and at a high rate. In essence, this hybrid viral–cellular gene residing in the chromosomes of leukemic cells now functioned much like the v-*myc* oncogene carried by avian myelocytomatosis virus.

Suddenly, all the clues needed to solve the puzzle of leukemogenesis (leukemia formation) by ALV fell into place. The solution went like this. During the course of infecting a chicken, ALV spread to thousands, then millions of cells in the hematopoietic system of this bird. Soon, the infection was so successful that the bird would become viremic, that is, its bloodstream carried high concentrations of virus particles. Each of the tens of millions of infections occurring within this bird resulted in the insertion of an ALV provirus at some random location in the genome of an infected cell. In the vast majority of cases, this provirus integration had no effect on the infected host cell, aside from forcing the host to produce large numbers of progeny virus particles. But on rare occasions, perhaps in 1 out of 10 million infections, a provirus became integrated by chance next to the c-*myc* gene (Figure 3.17B). This jackpot event led to an explosive outcome—conversion of the resident c-*myc* gene into a potent oncogene whose unceasing expression was now driven by the adjacently integrated provirus and its transcriptional promoter. The rare cell carrying this deregulated *myc* gene then initiated a program of uncontrolled proliferation, and within

weeks, some of the progeny cells evolved further into more aggressive cancer cells that constituted a leukemia. It was this neoplasia that alerted experimenters to the likelihood of an infection by a retrovirus.

This scenario explains the slow kinetics with which these leukemias arise after initial viral infection of a bird. Since activation of the c-*myc* gene through provirus integration is a low-probability event, many weeks and many millions of infectious events are required before these malignancies are triggered. This particular mechanism of proto-oncogene activation came to be called insertional mutagenesis; it explains, as well, the leukemogenic powers of other slowly acting retroviruses, such as MLV. By now, study of avian and murine retrovirus-induced infections has demonstrated integration events occurring next to more than 25 distinct cellular proto-oncogenes. Indeed, insertional mutagenesis can be used as a powerful strategy to find new proto-oncogenes (**Sidebar 3.4**; see Table 3.4). Moreover, insertional mutagenesis has had implications for the development of new approaches to curing disease using gene therapy (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.8**).

Sidebar 3.4 Insertional mutagenesis uncovers novel proto-oncogenes

As described earlier (see Section 3.10), the analysis of the genomes of rapidly transforming retroviruses enabled investigators to identify a large cohort of proto-oncogenes. The phenomenon of insertional mutagenesis, first discovered through the insertion of an ALV genome adjacent to the c-*myc* proto-oncogene, offered an alternative strategy for discovering these cellular genes. Thus, a researcher could study a series of independently arising tumors, all of which had been induced by a retrovirus, such as ALV or MLV, that was known to lack its own oncogene. More specifically, this researcher could analyze the host-cell sequences that lay immediately adjacent to the integrated proviruses in the chromosomal DNA of the virus-infected, transformed cells. The hope was that the proviruses might be found to be integrated repeatedly next to a (possibly still-unknown) cellular gene whose activation was triggered by the transcriptional promoter of the provirus. The adjacent gene could be readily cloned, since it was effectively tagged by the closely linked proviral DNA.

The initial fruits of this strategy came from studying the breast cancers induced by mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV), another retrovirus that lacked an oncogene in itsgenome. Researchers mapped the integration sites of MMTV proviruses in the genomes of mouse breast cancers that had been induced by this virus. Most of the proviruses were found to be integrated in one of three chromosomal locations, clustering next to cellular genes that were then called *int-1*, *int-2*, and *int-3* (**Table 3.4**). Each of these genes was later discovered to encode a protein involved in stimulating cell proliferation in one way or another. The deregulated expression of each of these genes, resulting from nearby MMTV provirus integration, seemed to be

responsible for triggering the cell proliferation that led to the appearance of mammary tumors.

The *int-1* gene, which was found to be homologous to the *wingless* gene of *Drosophila*, was renamed *Wnt-1*, and was the forerunner of a whole series of *Wnt* genes that have proven to be important vertebrate mitogens and morphogens, that is, factors controlling morphogenesis. This set of genes and the associated Wnt pathway is upregulated in many types of human cancer (see Chapters 5 and 6). More recently, this search strategy has uncovered a large group of other cellular genes, each of which, when activated by insertional mutagenesis mediated by MLV, triggers leukemias in mice (see Table 3.4).

Table 3.4 Examples of cellular genes found to be activated by insertional mutagenesis

Gene	Insertional mutagen	Tumor type	Species	Type of oncoprotein
Myc	ALV	B-cell lymphoma	chicken	transcription factor
Myc	ALV, FeLV	T-cell lymphoma	chicken, cat	transcription factor
Nov	ALV	nephroblastoma	chicken	growth factor
erbB	ALV	erythroblastosis	chicken	receptor TK
mos	IAP	plasmacytoma	mouse	ser/thr kinase
int-1[a]	MMTV	mammary carcinoma	mouse	growth factor
int-2[b]	MMTV	mammary carcinoma	mouse	growth factor

Gene	Insertional mutagen	Tumor type	Species	Type of oncoprotein
int-3	MMTV	mammary carcinoma	mouse	receptor[c]
int-H/int-5	MMTV	mammary carcinoma	mouse	enzyme[d]
pim-1	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	ser/thr kinase
pim-2	Mo-MLV	B-cell lymphoma	mouse	ser/thr kinase
bmi-1	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	transcription repressor
tpl-2	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	ser/thr kinase
lck	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	non-receptor TK
p53	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	transcription factor
GM-CSF	IAP	myelomonocytic leukemia	mouse	growth factor
IL2	GaLV	T-cell lymphoma	gibbon ape	cytokine[e]
IL3	IAP	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	cytokine

Gene	Insertional mutagen	Tumor type	Species	Type of oncoprotein
K-ras	F-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	small G protein
CycD1	F-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	G1 cyclin
CycD2	Mo-MLV	T-cell lymphoma	mouse	G1 cyclin

Abbreviations: ALV, avian leukosis virus; FeLV, feline leukemia virus; F-MLV, Friend murine leukemia virus; GaLV, gibbon ape leukemia virus; IAP, intracisternal A particle (a retrovirus-like genome that is endogenous to cells); Mo-MLV, Moloney murine leukemia virus; MMTV, mouse mammary tumor virus; ser/thr, serine/threonine; TK, tyrosine kinase.
Adapted in part from J. Butel, *Carcinogenesis* 21:405–426, 2000; and from N. Rosenberg and P. Jolicoeur, in J.M. Coffin, S.H. Hughes and H.E. Varmus (eds.), Retroviruses. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1997. Also in part from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 1995.

Unvoiced by those who uncovered insertional mutagenesis was another provocative idea: maybe it was possible that nonviral carcinogens could achieve the same end result as ALV did. Perhaps these other carcinogens, including X-rays and mutagenic chemicals, could alter cellular proto-oncogenes while these genes resided in their normal sites in cellular chromosomes. The result might be a disruption of cellular growth control that was just as destabilizing as the events that led to ALV-induced leukemias.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

leukemogenesis
: (adj., - **genic**) Process that creates a leukemia.

insertional mutagenesis
: Alteration of a gene and its function through the integration of a retroviral provirus or transposon into the gene itself or a closely linked chromosomal site.

morphogen
: Low–molecular-weight substance that induces cells to assemble and participate in the construction of a tissue of a certain shape and form.

viremia
: Presence of high concentrations of virus in the bloodstream.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aSubsequently renamed *Wnt-1*.Return to reference a
- bSubsequently identified as a gene encoding a fibroblast growth factor (FGF).Return to reference b
- cRelated to Notch receptors.Return to reference c
- dEnzyme that converts androgens to estrogens.Return to reference d
- eCytokines are growth factors that largely regulate various types of hematopoietic cells.Return to reference e

OceanofPDF.com

3.12 Some retroviruses naturally carry oncogenes

The descriptions of retroviruses in this chapter indicate that they essentially fall into two classes. Some, such as ALV and MLV, carry no oncogenes but can induce tumors that erupt only after a long latent period (that is, many weeks) following the initial infection of a host animal. Other viruses, such as RSV, can induce cancer rapidly (that is, in days or several weeks), having acquired an oncogene from a cellular proto-oncogene precursor.

In reality, there is a third class of retroviruses that conforms to neither of these patterns. Most prominent among them is human T-lymphotropic leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-I), which chronically infects about 1% of the inhabitants of Kyushu, the south island of Japan; in Japan as a whole about one thousand people die each year from HTLV-I–induced leukemias. An endemic infection is also present, albeit at a lower rate, in some islands of the Caribbean. Lifelong HTLV-I infection carries a 3–4% risk of developing adult T-cell leukemia, and the virus seems to be maintained in the population largely via milk-borne, mother-to-infant transmission.

There are no indications, in spite of extensive molecular surveys, that HTLV-I provirus integration sites are clustered in certain chromosomal regions. Accordingly, it appears highly unlikely that HTLV-I uses insertional mutagenesis to incite leukemias. Instead, its leukemogenic powers seem to be traceable to one or more viral proteins that are naturally encoded by the viral genome. The best understood of these is the viral Tax protein, whose product is responsible for activating transcription of proviral DNA sequences, thereby enabling production of progeny RNA genomes. At the same time, the *tax* gene product—the Tax oncoprotein—appears to activate two cellular signaling pathways involving NF-κB and PI3 kinase (Chapter 6). These pathways proceed to stimulate the proliferation of T lymphocytes (Chapter 15) and to suppress apoptosis (Chapter 9). While such induced proliferation, on its own, does not directly create a leukemia, it seems that populations of these HTLV-I–stimulated cells may progress at

a low but predictable frequency to spawn variants that are indeed neoplastic. In this instance, the expression of certain viral oncogenes, notably tax, appears to be an intrinsic and essential component of a retroviral replication cycle within host animals, rather than the consequence of rare genetic accidents that yield unusual hybrid genomes, such as the genome of RSV. Jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus represents a second example of an acutely transforming retrovirus that carries a viral oncogene exhibiting no apparent homology with a normal cellular gene; this poorly studied virus deploys the glycoprotein product of its *env* gene (see Figure 3.13) to transform infected cells, leading to contagious pulmonary carcinomas that spread through flocks of sheep.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

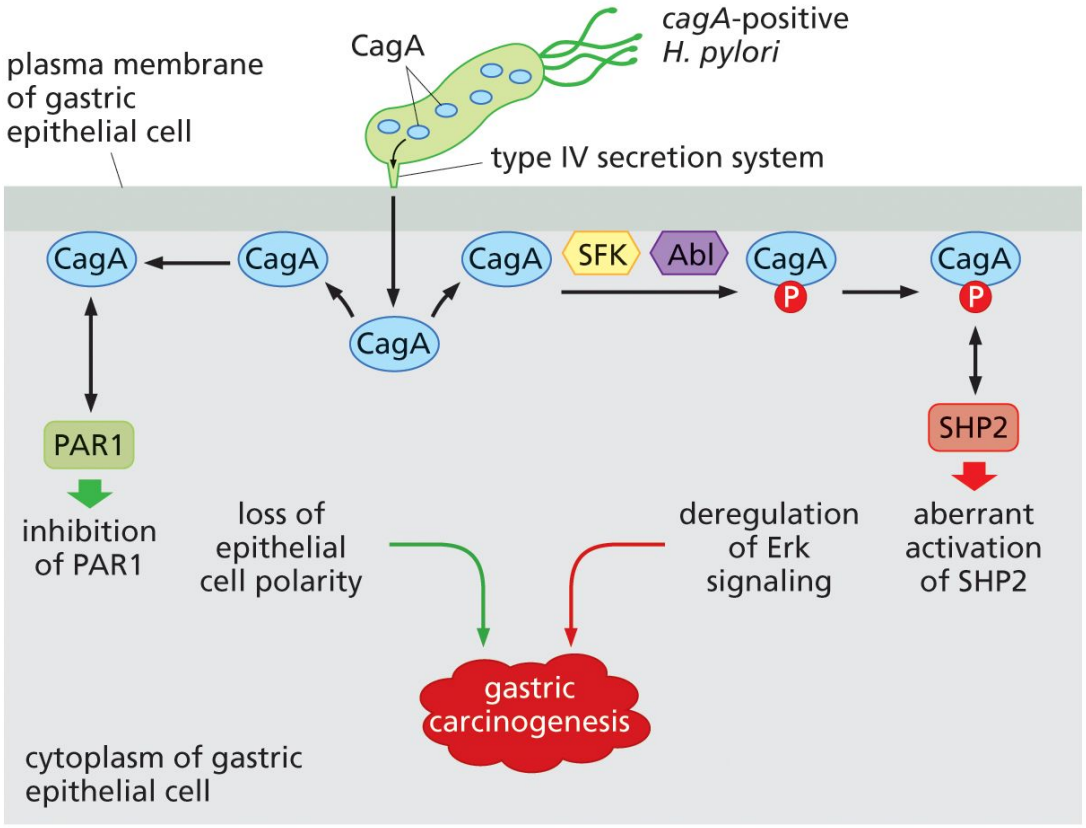
oncoprotein
: A protein specified by an oncogene that mediates its effects on cell physiology, often including neoplastic transformation.

OceanofPDF.com

3.13 Bacterial cancers

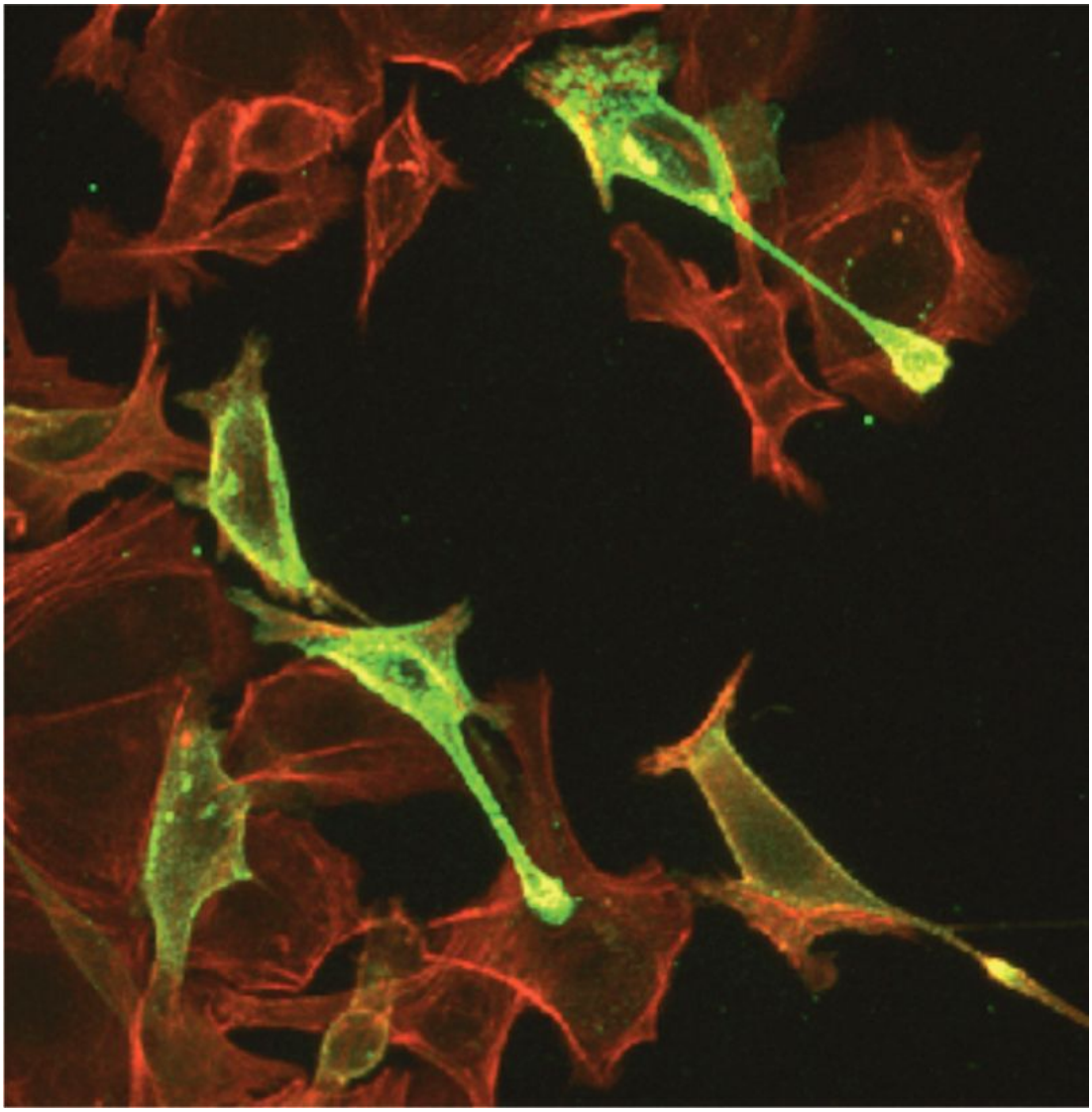
This chapter has focused on tumor viruses for two reasons: They opened the window on discovering the genes in our genomes that, in mutant form, can function to drive cancer cell proliferation. In addition, they are responsible for almost 20% of lethal cancers worldwide. [Most virus-induced cancers derive from infections by hepatitis B and C viruses (~600,000 deaths), which produce liver cancers after years of inducing chronic inflammation in this organ; as well as human papillomaviruses, whose genomes encode viral oncoproteins (~610,000 deaths.)] However, another class of infectious agents—bacteria—seem to drive the formation of a considerable proportion of a common cancer: gastric carcinomas. Worldwide, almost 1 million cases were diagnosed in 2012, three-quarters of which were likely to prove lethal. Indeed, while stomach carcinoma mortality rates are declining, these tumors still represent the third leading cause of cancer-associated death. It is estimated that at least 75% of these deaths are due to chronic infection by pathogenic strains of the common bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. In Japan, 99% of cases of gastric carcinomas are associated with infection by some specific strains of *H. pylori*.

H. pylori actually causes gastric carcinomas through two mechanisms. Like hepatitis B and C viruses, it establishes chronic, long-term infections and associated inflammation; the latter condition serves to incubate and drive cancer formation, a topic discussed in more detail in Chapter 11. In addition, certain strains of *H. pylori* carry a 40-kb stretch of genes, termed the *Cag* pathogenicity island (PAI), which encodes ~30 protein products that enable the insertion of the CagA bacterial protein—also encoded by this PAI—into cells lining the stomach (**Figure 3.18**; **Supplementary Sidebar 3.9**). Once inside the cell cytoplasm, the introduced CagA protein participates in the deregulation of a series of cellular signals and thereby confers multiple cell-biological changes on these cells, including changes in cell shape, disruption of junctions formed between affected cells and their neighbors, invasiveness, enhanced proliferation, inhibition of apoptosis, and activation of gastric stem cells. Each of these changes in cellular phenotype will be addressed in later chapters of this book. For the moment, we note that these multiple changes in cell phenotype are, strikingly, precisely the ones that are associated with shifts occurring during the cell transformation orchestrated by well-characterized oncoproteins, such as those cited in this chapter. Hence, by these criteria, the bacterial CagA protein can be considered a bona fide pleiotropically acting oncoprotein.



A diagram shows how cag A-positive H. pylori triggers gastric carcinogenesis A cag A-positive H. pylori uses a Type 4 secretion system to inject cag A proteins through the plasma membrane of a gastric epithelial cell, into the cytoplasm. Some of these proteins cause inhibition of PAR 1, leading to loss of epithelial cell polarity. Other cag A proteins cause aberrant activation of S H P2, leading to deregulation of Erk signaling. Together, these two effects trigger gastric carcinogenesis.

(A)



A micrograph in which the cytoplasm of normal cells appears in red while a few altered cells glow bright yellow green. These cells have elongated portions that look like hummingbird beaks.

(B)

Figure 3.18 Perturbation of intracellular signaling pathways by *H. pylori*
CagA strains of *Helicobacter pylori* carry various versions of the *CagA* pathogenicity island (PAI) in their genomes; those with *CagA*-associated alleles that are especially virulent are associated with greatly increased incidence of gastric adenocarcinomas. (A) A bacterial micro-syringe functioning as a type IV secretion system (T4SS) forms a channel in the plasma membrane of host gastric epithelial cells through which it delivers the *H. pylori* CagA protein into the cytoplasm of these cells. PAR1 (partitioning-defective protein 1) is an important

regulator of the polarity of an epithelial cell. The inhibition of PAR1 leads to loss of epithelial cell polarity, whereas the activation of Erk signaling (see Section 6.5) stimulates cell proliferation. These *H. pylori*–induced changes, together with other factors, such as those of dietary origin, lead to gastritis (gastric epithelial inflammation) and, with some frequency, eventual formation of gastric adenocarcinomas. SHP2 is a phosphotyrosine phosphatase involved in regulating mitogenic signals downstream of growth factor receptors, as described in Chapter 6. (B) The biochemical changes elicited by CagA within cultured gastric carcinoma cells create the characteristic "hummingbird" morphological phenotype in these cells, in this case forced to express a virulent form of CagA (detected by immunofluorescence; *green*); F-actin cytoskeletal filaments are labeled with phalloidin (*red*). Indeed, this unique cell morphology is, on its own, a signature of the actions of the CagA protein. (A, courtesy of M. Hatakeyama. B, Republished with permission of American Society for Biochemistry & Molecular Biology, from Role of Partitioning defective 1/Microtubule Affinity-regulating Kinases in the Morphogenetic Activity of Helicobacterpylori CagA, Huaisheng Lu, Naoko Murata-Kamiya, Yasuhiro Saito, Masanori Hatakeyama, 2009 Aug 21; 284(34):23024-36. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M109.001008; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.)

Unanswered by these descriptions is the rationale of why certain *H. pylori* strains carry highly pathogenic versions of the *CagA* gene, that is, what proliferative advantage do these bacteria gain by inducing various changes in the cells lining the stomach? The answer seems to derive from the fact that CagA-activated gastric epithelium appears to offer a tissue microenvironment that is more hospitable to ongoing bacterial survival, shielding these cells from the contents of the hostile, highly acidic gastric lumen.

The incubation time of gastric adenocarcinomas is generally more than five decades, since infection generally occurs very early in life whereas tumors usually appear in individuals over the age of 50. While *H. pylori* infections are common worldwide, only those strains of the bacterium harboring the *Cag* PAI are thought to be highly effective in triggering gastric cancer. Of additional interest is the fact that CagA function, while being critical to the formation of many gastric carcinomas, is no longer required once these tumors erupt. Hence, it operates a "hit-and-run" oncoprotein, unlike Src, whose continued presence is required to maintain the transformed cell phenotype (see Section 3.3).

Finally, bacteria harboring the most virulent alleles of the *Cag* PAI are commonly present in East Asia while being relatively uncommon in the Western Hemisphere and Europe; these differences seem to explain the extraordinarily high rate of gastric cancer in certain parts of East Asia compared with the rest of the world. Importantly, the pathogenesis of most gastric cancers appears to depend on the collaborative effects

of *H. pylori* infection with certain co-factors, such as dietary components. The bacterium seems to be spread largely through vertical transmission (from parent to offspring). Of additional interest, a version of the *H. pylori*–associated CagA protein that was present in the Western Hemisphere prior to European colonization shows genetic affinity with CagA proteins of East Asia, suggesting a chain of transmission extending over the >12,000 years since the trans-Siberian migration of the ancestors of Amerindians.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

vertical transmission

The transmission of an agent, such as an infectious agent, from parent to offspring. *See also* **horizontal transmission**.

OceanofPDF.com

3.14 Synopsis and prospects

By studying tumors in laboratory and domesticated animals, cancer biologists discovered a wide array of cancer-causing viruses during the twentieth century. Many of these viruses, having either DNA or RNA genomes, were found able to infect cultured cells and transform them into tumorigenic cells. These transforming powers pointed to the presence of powerful oncogenes in the genomes of the viruses, indeed, oncogenes that were potent enough to induce many of the phenotypes associated with cancer cells (see Table 3.2). Moreover, the ability of these viruses to create transformed cells in the culture dish shed light on the mechanisms by which such viruses could induce cancers in the tissues of infected host animals.

A major conceptual revolution came from the detailed study of RNA tumor viruses, specifically, Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). Its oncogene, termed v-*src*, was found to have originated in a normal cellular gene, c-*src*. This discovery revealed the ability of nontransforming, slowly tumorigenic retroviruses, such as ALV (avian leukosis virus), to acquire certain normal cellular genes and convert these captured genes into potently transforming oncogenes. The hybrid viruses that arose following these genetic acquisitions were now able to rapidly induce tumors in infected hosts.

Even more important were the implications of finding the c-*src* gene. Its presence in uninfected cells demonstrated that the normal cellular genome carries a proto-oncogene that can be converted into an oncogene by altering its sequences. (The details of these alterations will be described in the next several chapters.) Soon a number of retroviruses of both avian and mammalian origin were discovered to carry other oncogenes that had been acquired in similar fashion from the genomes of infected cells. While each of these proto-oncogenes was found initially in the genome of one or another vertebrate species, we now know that all of these genes are represented in the genomes of all mammals and likely all vertebrates. Consequently, the generic vertebrate genome carries dozens of such normal genes, each of which has the potential to become converted into an active oncogene.

Yet other proto-oncogenes were discovered by studying the integration sites of proviruses in the genomes of tumors that had been induced by nontransforming retroviruses, such as murine leukemia virus (MLV) and ALV. The random integration of these proviruses into chromosomal DNA occasionally yielded, through the process of insertional mutagenesis, the conversion of a proto-oncogene into an activated oncogene that could readily be isolated because of its close physical linkage in the cell genome to the provirus. On many occasions, insertional mutagenesis led to rediscovery of a proto-oncogene that was already known because of its presence in an acutely transforming retrovirus; *myc* and avian myelocytomatosis virus (AMV) exemplify this situation. On other occasions, entirely novel proto-oncogenes were discovered through study of provirus integration sites; the *int-1* gene activated by mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV) provides a striking example of this route of discovery. This gene (the prototype of a class of genes now termed *Wnts*) is now known to encode a key component of a cellular signaling pathway frequently corrupted in human cancers. In fact, the process of insertional mutagenesis remained little more than a laboratory curiosity, of interest to only a small cadre of cancer biologists, until it was reported to lead to leukemias in several children being treated by gene therapy (**Supplementary Sidebar 3.9**).

The discoveries of proto-oncogenes and oncogenes, as profound as they were, provoked as many questions as they answered. It remained unclear how the retrovirus-encoded oncogene proteins (that is, oncoproteins) differed functionally from the closely related proteins encoded by corresponding proto-oncogenes. The biochemical mechanisms used by these oncoproteins to transform cells were also obscure.

The biochemical mechanisms used by DNA tumor viruses to transform infected cells were even more elusive, since these viruses seemed to specify oncoproteins that were very different from the proteins normally made by their host cells. Such differences suggested that these viral oncoproteins could not insinuate themselves into the cellular growth-regulating machinery in any easy, obvious way. Only in the mid-1980s, ten years after this research began, did their transforming mechanisms become apparent, as we will see in Chapters 8 and 9.

For many cancer researchers, and for the public that supported this research, there was a single overriding issue that had motivated much of this work in the first place: did any of these viruses and the proto-oncogenes that they activated play key roles in causing human cancers? In fact, about one-fifth of the human cancer burden worldwide is associated with infectious agents. Hepatitis B and C viruses (HBV, HCV), Epstein–Barr virus (EBV), human papillomaviruses (HPVs), and *H. pylori* play key roles in triggering commonly occurring cancers. Indeed, even infrequently occurring human tumors that seem to be familial have been traced in recent years to viral infections (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.5**). So, this recognized role of viruses in cancer pathogenesis is substantial and growing. Still, these various infectious agents—now understood to cause many cancers throughout the world—do not include the retroviruses and the DNA tumor viruses, such as SV40, that were intensively studied in the 1970s. Hence, from the perspective of improving public health, was the research described in this chapter truly justified?

The response to this question is a resounding yes. Even if the tumor viruses described were not responsible for inciting a single case of human cancer, the contributions of this research to understanding the mechanisms of human cancer development were clear: this research opened the curtain on the genes in our genome that play central roles in all types of human cancer. It accelerated by decades our understanding of cancer pathogenesis at the level of genes and molecules. It catapulted cancer research from a descriptive science into one where complex phenomena could finally be understood and explained in precise, mechanistic terms.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Decades after Peyton Rous's 1910 discovery that a virus could induce tumors in chickens, the transformation of cultured cells into tumor cells upon infection with Rous sarcoma virus (RSV) resurrected tumor virus research and led to the realization that cancer could be studied at the level of the cell.
- Transformed cells in culture have numerous unusual characteristics, including altered morphology, lack of contact inhibition, anchorage independence, proliferation in the absence of growth factors, immortalization, and tumorigenicity, the latter being the acid test for full cellular transformation.
- The transformation phenotype induced by RSV infection was found to be transmitted to progeny cells and to depend on the continued activity of an RSV gene product.
- In addition to RNA viruses like RSV, several classes of DNA viruses—including the papillomavirus, polyomavirus, human adenovirus, herpesvirus, and poxvirus—were found to induce cancers in laboratory animals or humans.
- While the genomes of RNA tumor viruses consist of single-stranded RNA, the genomes of DNA tumor viruses consist of double-stranded DNA (dsDNA).
- Since replication of viral DNA genomes normally occurs independently of the host cells' DNA and since viral genomes lack the DNA segments (centromeres) to properly segregate during mitosis, the transmission of DNA tumor virus genomes from one cell generation to the next posed a conceptual problem, until it was discovered that DNA tumor virus genomes integrate into host-cell chromosomal DNA.
- Since the genomes of RNA tumor viruses consist of single-stranded RNA that cannot be incorporated into host DNA, and since re-infection does not explain the persistence of the transformed state in descendant cells, Howard Temin postulated that RNA viruses make double-stranded DNA copies of their genomes—the process of reverse transcription—and that these DNA copies are integrated into the host's chromosomal DNA as a part of the normal viral replication cycle. This

represents a major distinction from most DNA tumor viruses, for which integration of their genomes into chromosomal DNA is a very rare, haphazard event and not an integral part of viral replication.

- Because their replication cycle depends on information flowing backward (that is, from RNA to DNA), RNA viruses came to be called retroviruses and the DNA version of their viral genomes was called a provirus.
- Working with RSV, researchers found that viral replication and cell transformation were specified by separate genes, with the transforming function residing in a single gene called *src*.
- Use of a DNA probe that specifically recognized the transformation-associated (that is, *src*) sequences of the RSV genome led to the unexpected discovery that *src*-related sequences were present in the DNA of uninfected chicken cells. Further research indicated that the *src* gene was a normal, highly conserved gene of all vertebrate species (as later proved true of many other such genes).
- The difference between the actions of the cellular version of *src* (c-*src*), which supports normal cell function, and the viral version (v-*src*), which acts as an oncogene, could be explained if v-*src* were an altered version of a c-*src* that had originally been kidnapped from a cellular genome by an ancestor of RSV and thereafter reshaped into an active oncogene.
- Because it can serve as a precursor to an oncogene, c-*src* was called a proto-oncogene, a term implying that normal vertebrate cells contain genes that have the intrinsic potential to become converted into oncogenes that can induce cancer.
- The actions of v-*src* indicated that a single oncogene could act pleiotropically to evoke a multiplicity of changes in cellular traits. In addition, the discovery of c-*src* in the normal cellular genome suggested the possibility that other mutational mechanisms, notably those not involving viruses, might activate proto-oncogenes that continued to reside in their normal sites in cellular chromosomes.
- In contrast to RSV, nontransforming, slowly tumorigenic retroviruses lack their own oncogenes and occasionally cause tumors by integrating their genomes adjacent to proto-oncogenes in the chromosomal DNA of infected host cells, a process called insertional mutagenesis. This chance occurrence places the proto-oncogene under the control of the

viral transcriptional promoter, which deregulates the gene's expression and leads to uncontrolled cell proliferation. Insertional mutagenesis can also be exploited to find new proto-oncogenes.

- The formation of most oncogene-bearing, rapidly transforming retroviruses involves the replacement of viral replicative genes by acquired cellular oncogenic sequences. This results in the formation of a potently transforming virus that cannot proliferate on its own due to the loss of viral genes that are essential for replication.
- In addition to the nontransforming retroviruses (which work via insertional mutagenesis) and the acutely transforming ones (which work via acquired oncogenes), retroviruses exist whose carcinogenic powers are traceable to their own viral gene products. Needed for viral replication, these viral proteins have the side effect of also activating the expression of cellular genes involved in cell growth and proliferation.
- Stomach cancer, which is responsible for almost a million deaths internationally each year, is often provoked by strains of *H. pylori* that inhabit the gastric mucosa and inject the CagA bacterial protein into the cytoplasm of gastric epithelial cells, evoking a series of transformation-related phenotypes in these cells that set the stage for the formation of full-blown stomach cancers.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What observations favor or argue against the notion that cancer is an infectious disease?
2. How can one prove that tumor virus genomes must be present in order to maintain the transformed state of a virus-induced tumor? What genetic mechanisms, do you imagine, might enable this process to become “hit-and-run,” in which the continued presence of a tumor virus is not required to maintain the tumorigenic phenotype after a certain time?
3. Why are oncogene-bearing viruses like Rous sarcoma virus so rarely encountered in wild populations of chickens?
4. What evidence suggests that the phenotypes of cells transformed by tumor viruses *in vitro* reflect comparable phenotypes of tumor cells *in vivo*?
5. What logic suggests that the chromosomal integration of tumor virus genomes is an intrinsic, obligatory part of the replication cycle of RNA tumor viruses but an inadvertent side product of DNA tumor virus replication?
6. What evidence suggests that a proto-oncogene like c-*src* is actually a normal cellular gene rather than a gene that has been inserted into the germ line by an infecting retrovirus?
7. How do you imagine that DNA tumor viruses and retroviruses like avian leukosis virus arose in the distant evolutionary past?
8. Why do retroviruses like avian leukosis virus take so long to induce cancer?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Aguayo F, Muñoz JP, Perez-Dominguez F et al. (2020) High-risk human papillomavirus and tobacco smoke interactions in epithelial carcinogenesis. *Cancers (Basel)* 12, E2201. doi: 10.3390/cancers12082201.

Brower V (2004) Connecting viruses to cancer: how research moves from association to causation. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 96, 256–257.

Butel J & Fan H (2012) The diversity of human cancer viruses. *Curr. Opin. Virol.* 3, 449–452.

Carbone M, Pass HI, Miele L & Bocchetta M (2003) New developments about the association of SV40 with human mesothelioma. *Oncogene* 22, 5173–5180.

Coffin JM, Hughes SH & Varmus HE (eds) (1997) Retroviruses. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.

Cover TL (2016) *Helicobacter pylori* diversity and gastric cancer risk. *mBio* 7:e01869-15.

Coffin JM & Fan H (2016) The discovery of reverse transcriptase. *Annu. Rev. Virol.* 3, 29–51.

de Martel C, Ferlay J, Franceschi S et al. (2012) Global burden of cancers attributable to infections in 2008: a review and synthetic analysis. *Lancer Oncol*. 13, 607–615.

DiMaio D & Liao JB (2006) Human papillomaviruses and cervical cancer. *Adv. Virus Res.* 66, 125–159.

Drost J and Clevers H (2018) Organoids in cancer research. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 18, 407–418.

Flint SJ, Enquist LW, Krug RM et al. (2000) Principles of Virology. Washington, DC: ASM Press.

Gaglia MM & Munger K (2018) More than just oncogenes: mechanisms of tumorigenesis by human cancer viruses. *Curr. Opin. Virol*. 32, 48–59.

Howley PM & Livingston DM (2009) Small DNA tumor viruses: large contributors to biomedical sciences. *Virology* 384, 256–259.

Hsu JL & Glaser SL (2000) Epstein-Barr virus-associated malignancies: epidemiologic patterns and etiologic implications. *Crit. Rev. Oncol. Hematol.* 34, 27–53.

Javier RT & Butel JS (2008) The history of tumor virology. *Cancer Res.* 68, 7693–7706.

Martin D & Gutkind JS (2008) Human tumor-associated viruses and new insights into the molecular mechanisms of cancer. *Oncogene* 27, S31–S42.

Mesri E, Feitelson MA & Munger K (2014) Human viral oncogenesis: a cancer hallmark analysis. *Cell Host & Microbe* 15, 266–282.

Moore PS & Chang Y (2010) Why do viruses cause cancer? Highlights of the first century of human tumor virology. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 878–889.

Parsonnet J (ed) (1999) Microbes and Malignancy: Infection as a Cause of Human Cancers. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Phillips AC & Vousden KH (1999) Human papillomavirus and cancer: the viral transforming genes. *Cancer Surv.* 33, 55–74.

Pisani P, Parkin DM, Muñoz N & Ferlay J (1997) Cancer and infection: estimates of the attributable fraction in 1990. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prevent.* 6, 387–400.

Taylor GS, Long HM, Brooks JM et al. (2015) The immunology of Epstein-Barr virus-induced disease. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 33, 787–821.

Wallace MC, Preen D, Jeffrey GP & Adams LA (2015) The evolving epidemiology of hepatocellular carcinoma: a global perspective. *Expert Rev. Gastroenterol. Hepatol.* 9, 765–779.

Weiss R, Teich N, Varmus H & Coffin J (eds) (1985) Molecular Biology of Tumor Viruses: RNA Tumor Viruses, 2nd ed. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.

zur Hausen H (2009) Papillomaviruses in the causation of human cancers: a brief historical account. *Virology* 384, 260–265.

zur Hausen H (2019) Cancers in humans: a lifelong search for contributions of infectious agents, autobiographic notes. *Annu. Rev. Virol.* 6, 1–28.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 3.1 Peyton Rous and the discovery of Rous sarcoma virus

[Francis] Peyton Rous began his study of tumor viruses in the years 1909–1910 (**Figure S3.1**). His work followed a report by two Danish virologists—Vilhelm Ellermann and Oluf Bang—demonstrating that a transmissible agent caused a chicken erythroblastosis (a leukemia of the red cell lineage). Direct evidence of the existence of infectious agents that could trigger tumor formation was lacking until the research of

(A)

(B)

Figure S3.1 Peyton Rous and a hen that helped to launch modern cancer research (A) Francis Peyton Rous (shown as a young researcher, *left*) began his work in 1909 that led to the discovery of Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). In 1966, more than 50 years later, Rous (seen in a photo of that time, *right*) received the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this seminal work—a tribute to both his persistence in science and his longevity. (B) His good fortune began when a Long Island, N.Y., chicken farmer brought Rous, then working at the Rockefeller Institute in New York, a prized barred Plymouth Rock hen. The farmer wanted Rous to treat the large tumor growing in its chest muscle; Rous, the famed chicken doctor, saw an experimental opportunity instead and dispatched the hen, extracting the tumor. The arthritic hands carrying a sarcoma-bearing chicken may or may not be those of the chicken farmer. (A, courtesy of the Rockefeller Archives Center. B, from P. Rous, *J. Exp. Med.* 12:696–705, 1910.)

Ellermann, Bang, and Rous. Unlike Ellermann and Bang, Rous continued to follow up the characterization of the virus that he had isolated, which came to be called Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). While a number of other diseases had been associated over the previous decade with infectious agents—both bacteria and viruses—the development of tumors had no obvious connection with such agents until their work, which represented a milestone in twentieth century cancer research.

Supplementary Sidebar 3.2 Tissue Culture

Over the past half century a variety of procedures have been developed that enable the propagation of cells *ex vivo* (outside of living tissues) and thus *in vitro* (in culture vessels). Sometimes this procedure begins by dissociating living cells from a tissue using proteases to break down the extracellular matrix, yielding single-cell suspensions that can be introduced into culture vessels, almost always Petri dishes that contain a liquid medium that enables the survival and proliferation of the introduced cells. Subsequently, cells are passaged from an initially seeded Petri dish to another, being released from their anchorage to the bottom of the first Petri dish by the use of trypsin protease and then, as single-cell suspensions, introduced into fresh medium that is placed, in turn, into the second Petri dish.

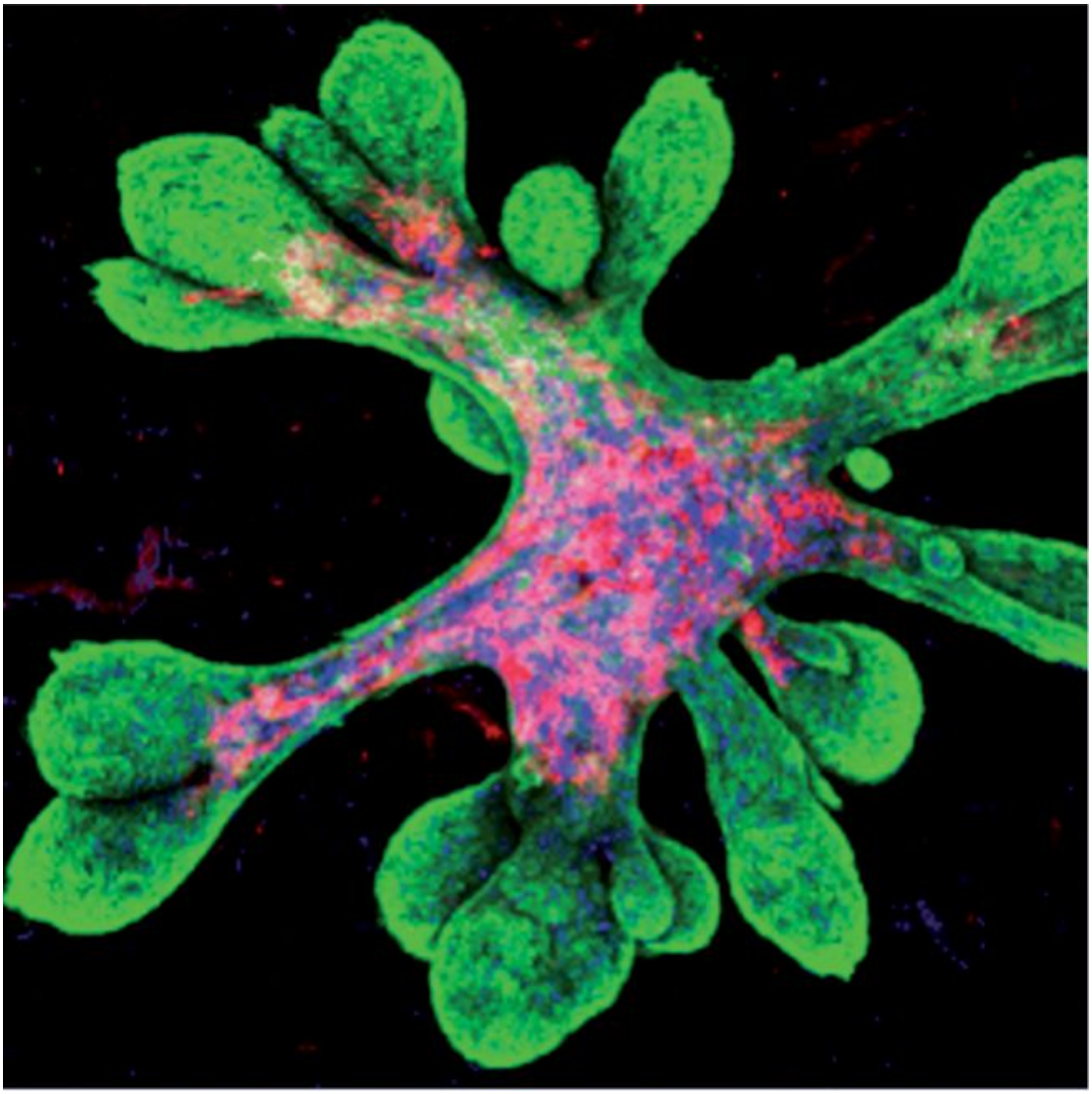
The medium itself is usually composed of nutrients such as glucose, essential amino acids, and vitamins that the cells cannot make for themselves plus various salts. In addition to these ingredients, the medium invariably contains admixed serum, usually of bovine origin, that provides various growth factors that stimulate the cells to survive and proliferate. Without the admixed serum, cells may survive for an extended period of time in the culture vessel but will rarely if ever proliferate (see Section 5.1). This general procedure for propagating cells *in vitro* was first devised in the mid-1950s and slight variants of it have remained as standard operating procedure since that time. Changes have been made in the composition of certain ingredients, specifically, chemically defined compounds. Most cells that are propagated *in vitro* will secrete extracellular matrix (ECM) components that adhere to the bottom surface of the Petri dish. Thereafter, the cells will attach to the resulting ECM via a series of cell-surface integrins that they employ to directly tether themselves to the various glycoprotein components of the ECM (see Section 5.9). Accordingly, the protease—usually trypsin—employed to liberate the cells from attachment to the dish works by degrading both ECM components and integrins.

By necessity, these *in vivo* culture conditions deviate significantly from those that cells experience in living tissues. Cells usually experience relatively low oxygen tensions within living tissues, often as low as 2 to 3%, whereas tissue culture is usually practiced in incubators that use ambient air where oxygen tensions are ~21%. In addition, cells within incubators are routinely exposed to a mixture of ambient air (~95%) and carbon dioxide (~5%), in order to maintain the proper pH of the culture medium. Incubators are maintained at ~37°C in order to approximate the temperature inside the human body.

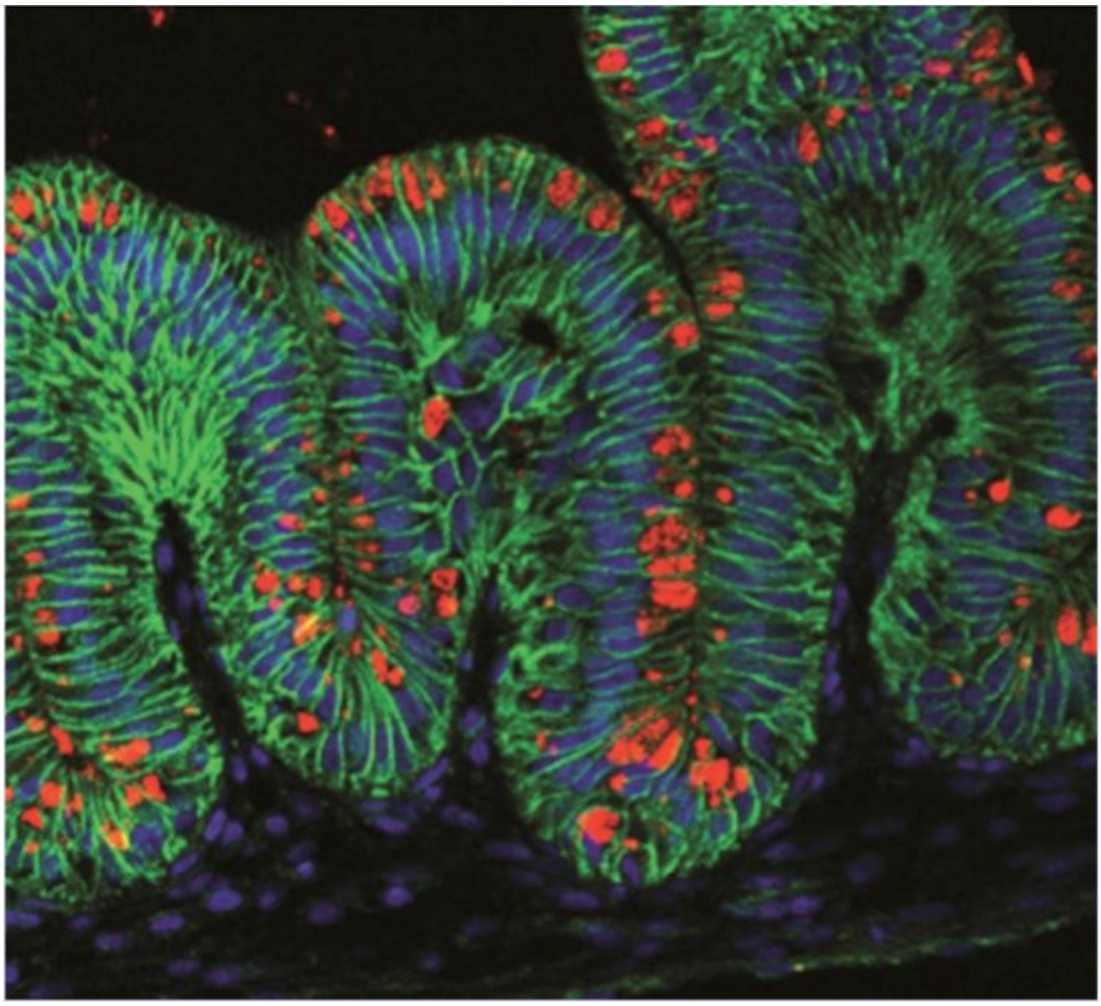
These various conditions nevertheless fail to closely replicate conditions that cells experience within living tissues. This explains why many cell types explanted from living tissue do not thrive *ex vivo* and soon senesce or die. Others can be propagated for an extended period *in vitro* before they eventually develop variants that are well

adapted to multiplying in tissue culture and begin to proliferate robustly; these adapted cells may deviate in significant ways from their progenitors that were initially prepared from living tissues. Traditional culture conditions using admixed serum in the medium favor the outgrowth of mesenchymal cells, such as fibroblasts and cancer cells, both of which often require minimal adaptation to these culture conditions. Generally, epithelial cells, including both normal and neoplastic cells, are more difficult to propagate under these conditions, which has resulted in the formulation of *serum-free* media that permit many explanted cells to proliferate with minimal adaptation. Nonetheless, many cell populations, even after being ostensibly adapted to proliferate in culture, will eventually halt proliferation, exhibiting the phenomenon of cell senescence that is described in detail in Chapter 10. (It remains unclear whether the senescence exhibited by many cell types in culture, which involves a halting of proliferation but extended continued survival in a viable state, represents an intrinsic limitation of the cells or the consequences of sub-optimal conditions of culture.) Cancer cells usually do not enter senescence *in vitro* and are thus considered to be immortalized (see Chapter 10).

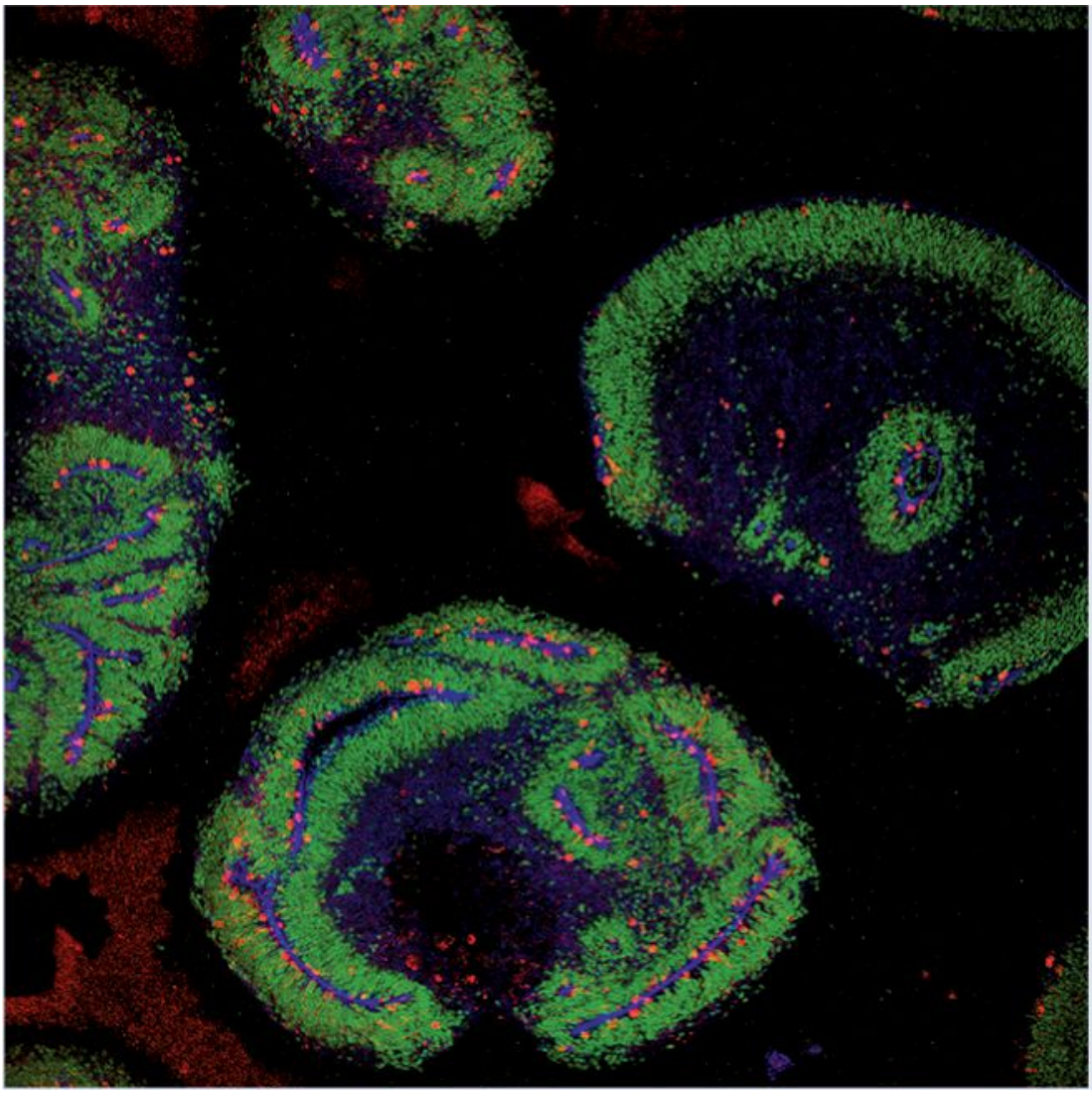
A final variable of propagation *ex vivo* involves the dimensionality of cells in culture. Thus, propagation in Petri dishes involves cell growth and proliferation in two dimensions (2D), that is, across the bottom surface of the dish, whereas growth of cells *in vivo* involves growth in a three-dimensional environment (3D). This realization has prompted the development of a diverse array of procedures for propagating cells in 3D in a variety of gels and matrices, either entirely artificial (for example, agarose) or derived from a natural ECM (for example, Matrigel). In both cases, cells are presumed to condition their surroundings by secreting ECM molecules to which they can attach, in addition to those that may have already been provided by the gel matrix (in the case of Matrigel). Such cells can in turn generate multicellular structures that more closely approximate those generated during normal tissue morphogenesis, indeed generating structures, termed organoids, that approximate in morphology and function the corresponding structures within living tissues (**Figure S3.2**).



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S3.2 Organoids The practice of propagating cells in two-dimensional (2D) culture—usually on the bottom surfaces of Petri dishes—by necessity dictates a topological state that deviates from the three-dimensional environment that cells experience within living tissues. In recent years, a series of procedures have been developed to allow cells and fragments of tissues to be propagated in a three-dimensional (3D) matrix that is supplemented by a variety of growth factors, nutrients, and extracellular matrix constituents and permit implanted cells to form mini-organs that closely resemble in their histopathology the corresponding normal tissues they are intended to model. (A) When placed into organoid culture, mammary epithelial cells self-organize into the bilayered lobular structures seen in the mammary gland, including luminal cells stained with antibodies against cytokeratins 8 and 18 (*green*) and basal/myoepithelial cells stained with antibody

against cytokeratin 14 (*pink*; nuclei/DNA, *blue*). (B) This gastric organoid was derived by differentiation of pluripotent stem cells and recapitulates many of the features of the stomach lining including the presence of mucin-secreting cells. E-cadherin, *green*; Mucin 5AC, *red*; nuclei/DNA, *blue*. (C) An incipient brain organoid shows the multilayered structure of growing brain tissue. Ki67 proliferation marker, *green*; Tbr1 marker of first-born neurons, *red*; DNA/nuclei, *blue*. (A, Sokol, E.S., Miller, D.H., Breggia, A. et al. Growth of human breast tissues from patient cells in 3D hydrogel scaffolds. *Breast Cancer Res*. 18, 19 (2016). https://doi.org/10.1186/s13058-016-0677-5. B, reprinted by permission from Springer Nature: Nature, McCracken, K., Catá, E., Crawford, C. et al. Modelling human development and disease in pluripotent stem-cell-derived gastric organoids. 516, 400–404 (2014). https://doi.org/10.1038/nature13863. C, Dr. Arnold Kriegstein.)

Supplementary Sidebar 3.3 Howard Temin and the retrovirus theory

Temin received his Ph.D. training at the California Institute of Technology in Pasadena, under the aegis of Prof. Renato Dulbecco and post-doctoral fellow Harry Rubin. He continued his research on Rous sarcoma virus at the University of Wisconsin at Madison (**Figure S3.3**). As early as 1963, Temin reported that the synthesis of the virion RNA of RSV could be blocked by the drug actinomycin D, known at the time to inhibit DNA-dependent RNA synthesis. His findings caused him to propose that the transmission of an RSV genome from one cell generation to the next depended on the formation of a DNA provirus that was integrated into the host-cell chromosomal DNA and transcribed thereafter into viral RNA; his thinking was inspired in no small part by the discovery of one form of a bacteriophage genome that became integrated into the chromosomal DNA of a latently infected bacterial cell. Because this mechanism ran counter to the then-widely accepted canonical model of information transfer in cells, that is, DNA → RNA → proteins, he was ridiculed for years and his research was ignored by most virologists until the simultaneous, independent discoveries of the reverse transcriptase enzyme by his research group and that of David Baltimore, then at MIT, in 1970 (Baltimore had also studied with Dulbecco). While this enzyme, on its own, represented only one component needed to validate the overall scheme that he had initially proposed, the scheme as a whole was immediately accepted by many as firmly established. Indeed, because reverse transcriptase activity was thought to be absent in normal mammalian cells, this discovery led to the search by others for such enzymatic activity in various human tumors as a means of associating their formation with retrovirus infections.

Figure S3.3 Howard Temin. Temin, pictured here in 1964, began his work by demonstrating the ability of Rous sarcoma virus to transform cells *in vitro* and later showed the persistence of the virus in the infected, transformed cells. He postulated the existence of a DNA provirus and subsequently shared the 1975 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine with David Baltimore for their

simultaneous discoveries of the enzyme reverse transcriptase. (Courtesy of *The Capital Times*.)

Temin passed away at the relatively early age of 59 in 1994 and did not live to see the full ramifications of his 1970 discovery that continued to play out into the 21st century. His post-doctoral mentor, Harry Rubin, born eight years earlier, moved to the University of California, where he continued research on the cell biology of neoplastic transformation; he died in 2020 at the age of 93, more than a quarter century after his former colleague Temin. Temin, Baltimore, and Dulbecco shared the Nobel Prize for their research on RSV in 1975. In fact, their paths had crossed on multiple occasions earlier in their lives. As high school students, the two attended together a summer school held in 1952 at the Jackson Laboratory in Bar Harbor, Maine, and as undergraduates, they both attended, at different times, Swarthmore College in Pennsylvania; while there, Baltimore's roommate was Peter Temin, Howard Temin's younger brother.

Supplementary Sidebar 3.4 Is SV40 responsible for the mesothelioma plague?

The mesothelium is the membranous outer lining of many internal organs and derives directly from the embryonic mesoderm. Mesotheliomas—tumors of various mesothelial surfaces, notably the pleural membranes of the chest—were virtually unknown in the United States in the first half of the twentieth century. Beginning in about 1960, however, their incidence began to climb steeply. By the end of the century, the annual incidence in the United States approached 2500, and over the following decade, the annual incidence increased to 3200 cases. The tumors were attributed mostly to asbestos exposure, specifically to a subtype termed crocidolite. The disease is seen frequently among those who have worked with asbestos, which was used as a heat-resistant insulating material until being banned in the United States in the 1980s. However, 20% of mesothelioma patients have no documented exposure to asbestos, a fact that has provoked a search for other etiologic (causative) agents.

SV40 was suggested as a plausible etiologic agent of mesothelioma. By 2003, forty-one laboratories across the world had reported SV40 DNA, RNA, or protein in mesothelioma cells. Traces of the virus are otherwise rarely found in human tumors, with the exception of certain types of brain tumors. Cultured human mesothelial cells are readily infected by SV40, and this infection leads rapidly to their immortalization , that is, to the ability of these cells, which usually have limited proliferative potential in culture, to multiply indefinitely.

The presence of SV40 contamination in certain initially used poliovirus vaccine stocks has raised concerns that mesothelioma may have been induced in many individuals as

an unintended side effect of poliovirus vaccination. However, there are many individuals with mesotheliomas who are highly unlikely to have been exposed to these vaccines. Moreover, the viral T-antigen protein, whose presence is invariably observed in SV40-transformed cells (see Section 3.6), is rarely detected in mesothelioma tumor cells. Also, attempts at demonstrating viral DNA have usually yielded DNA segments that are indicative of laboratory artifacts, for example, contamination of mesothelioma tumor samples by laboratory stocks of SV40 or by recombinant DNA plasmids engineered to include segments of the viral genome. The discoveries of such contaminations provide increasing ammunition for those who are skeptical of SV40's role in mesothelioma pathogenesis.

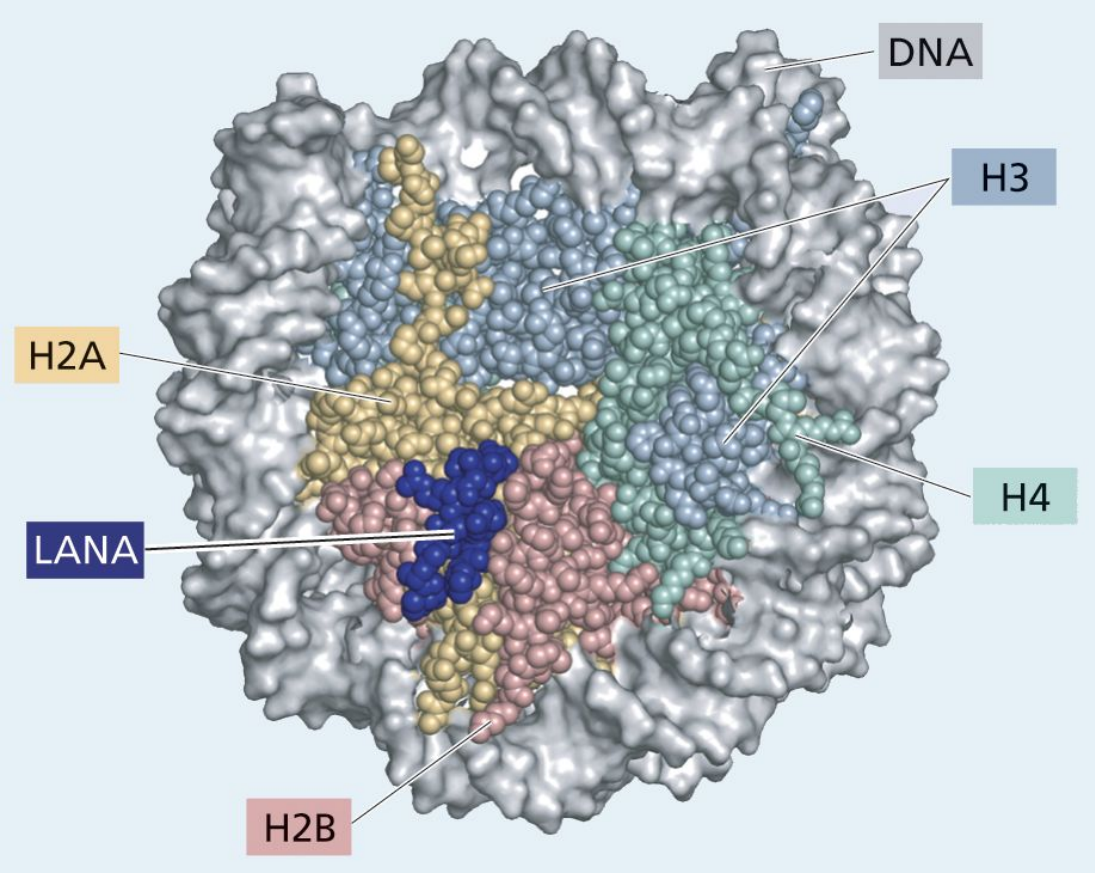
As many as 85% of humans are known to be infected with two viruses that are closely related to SV40—JC and BK—and antisera that recognize the capsids of these viruses cross-react with the capsid of SV40, explaining many of the claims that SV40 is often present in human tissues. In immunosuppressed individuals, notably AIDS patients, JC virus can cause a fatal brain degeneration—progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML). And in patients who are immunosuppressed because they are organ transplant recipients, BK virus has been implicated in the causation of certain carcinomas (see, for example, Figure 3.10B).

Supplementary Sidebar 3.5 Maintenance of KSHV and HPV genomes in episomal and chromosomal form

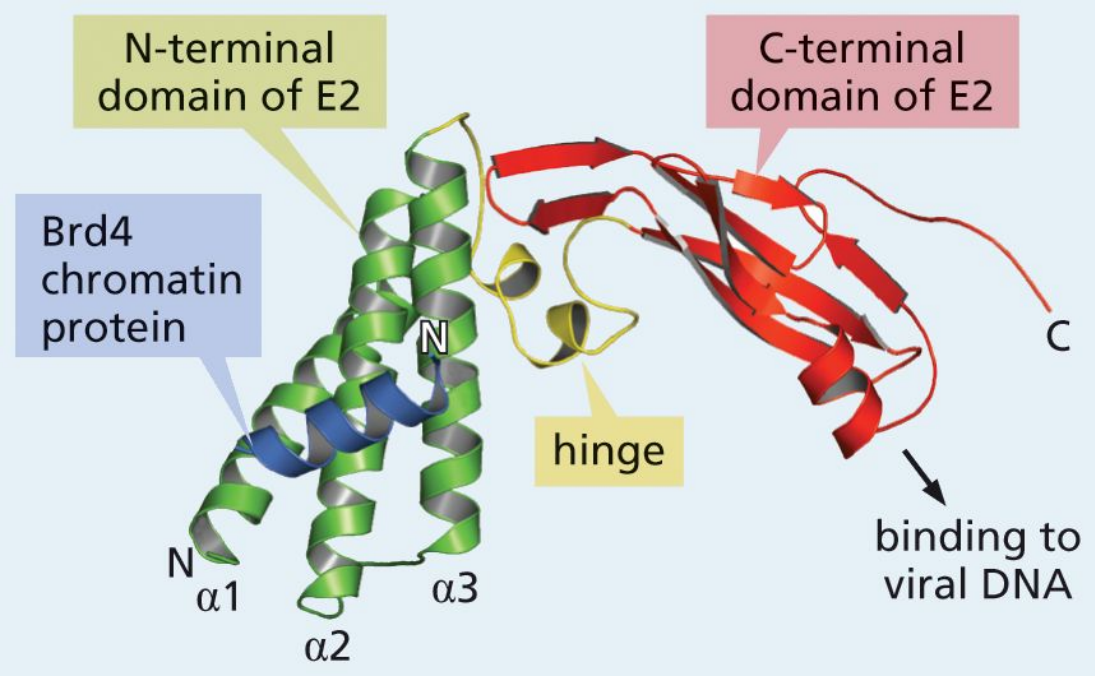
Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) was recognized as a distinct disease entity in 1872. Over the following century it was found to occur on rare occasion, mostly in men of Mediterranean or Near Eastern ancestry. On the basis of this association, the disease was presumed to represent a hereditary condition transmitted through the human germ line by unknown alleles. However, this otherwise-rare tumor became commonplace with the eruption of the AIDS epidemic in the early 1980s, which made it clear that KS is caused by an infectious agent that is normally kept under control by a functional immune system. Finally, in 1996, the responsible agent was identified as a new virus of the herpesvirus class and named human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8) or Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV). Its discovery provoked interest in how the viral genome is maintained in infected cell populations over multiple cell generations.

In fact, herpesvirus genomes, like those of papillomaviruses, are able to persist for years in a virus-infected tissue in an episomal form, that is, as molecules that are not integrated covalently into the host-cell chromosomal DNA. In the case of KSHV/HHV-8, this is achieved through the actions of its LANA protein (**Figure S3.4A**), which binds to terminally repeated sequences in the viral genome and, at the same time, to the histone molecules forming the core nucleosome (see Figure 1.16).

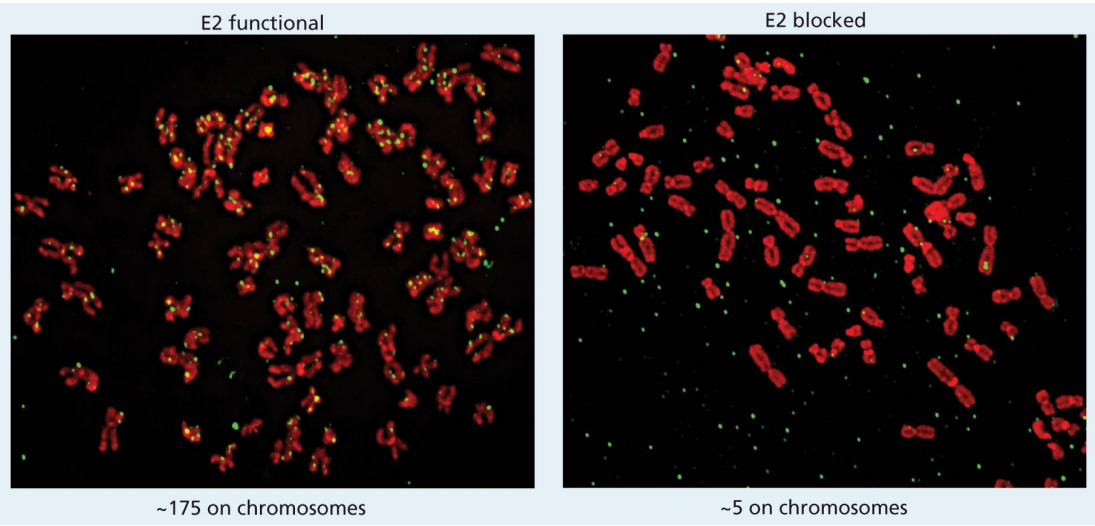
This enables maintenance of the viral genome even though direct covalent linkage between viral and host DNAs is absent.



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S3.4 Tethering of episomal viral genomes to host-cell chromatin
Certain DNA viruses maintain chronic infections through their ability to maintain their genomes stably but in an unintegrated (episomal) configuration over many successive cell generations. They do so by synthesizing viral proteins that are able to physically link the viral nucleoprotein to the chromatin of the infected host cell when that cell passes through mitosis, ensuring transmission of the viral episomal genomes to both daughter cells. (A) In the case of KSHV/HHV-8, the agent of

Kaposi's sarcoma, the virus makes a protein termed LANA (latency-associated nuclear antigen; *blue*) that is able, on the one hand, to associate with a nucleosome at the interface between its H2A and H2B histones (see Figure 1.16) and, on the other, to bind terminal repeat sequences in the viral DNA genome. (B) Human papillomavirus type 16 (HPV-16) uses the N-terminal domain of its E2 protein (*light green*) to tether the episomal viral DNA genome to the Brd4 chromatin-remodeling protein (*blue*), which is bound, in turn, to cellular chromatin during mitosis, enabling the viral genome (tethered to the C-terminal domain of E2) to "hitchhike" with the cellular chromosomes during mitosis. (C) The association of HPV-16 genomes with metaphase chromosomes can be gauged using HPV-16–specific DNA probes in FISH (fluorescence *in situ* hybridization) analyses. The chromosomes are stained here in *red*, while the viral genomes are detected as *yellow* dots if they are located above the metaphase chromosomes and as *green* dots if they are not located above the chromosomes. In the left panel, the E2 protein is functioning normally in chromosomal tethering, whereas in the right panel, its ability to bind to the Brd4 chromatin-associated protein has been blocked. As indicated, enumeration of the viral genomes above chromosomes reveals a drastic decrease in the metaphase chromosome-associated viral genomes when E2 tethering function is blocked. (A, from A.J. Barbera et al., *Science* 311:856–861, 2006. With permission from AAAS. B and C, from E.A. Abbate, C. Voitenleitner and M.R. Botchan, *Mol. Cell* 24:877–889, 2006. With permission from Elsevier.)

A similar dynamic operates in human papillomavirus (HPV)–infected tissues. Following initial infection, HPV-infected cells and viral genomes in general are cleared from the infected tissue within a period of weeks or months by the immune system. However, in a minority of infected individuals, the HPVs persist, establishing chronic infections in epithelial tissues and maintaining their genomes, once again, in an episomal state, apparently for years, if not decades. These viral infections sometimes trigger low- and then high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSILs, HSILs) of the cervix; the number of episomal HPV genomes per cell generally increases during this progression and, depending on the subtype of HPV virus, may reach more than several hundred copies per infected cell.

On rare occasion, these chronic infections may trigger the onset of frank malignancies —cervical carcinomas; squamous cell carcinomas triggered by HPV can also arise in the oropharynx. In the genomes of the cervical carcinoma cells, oncogenic fragments of the HPV genomes are invariably found in an integrated state, while the episomal HPV genomes are generally no longer detectable. This integration is achieved by mechanisms similar to those used by SV40 to establish its genome in cells that it has transformed (see Figure 3.11) and involves nonhomologous or illegitimate recombination between viral genomes and host-cell chromosomal sequences. Such

chromosomal integration, as was the case with SV40, ensures the perpetuation of the HPV genome fragments in descendant cells. In fact, the HPV genomes seem to be integrated preferentially in chromosomal "common fragile sites"—chromosomal regions (numbering more than 100) that are scattered throughout normal genomes and exhibit relatively high genetic instability, including susceptibility to dsDNA breakage.

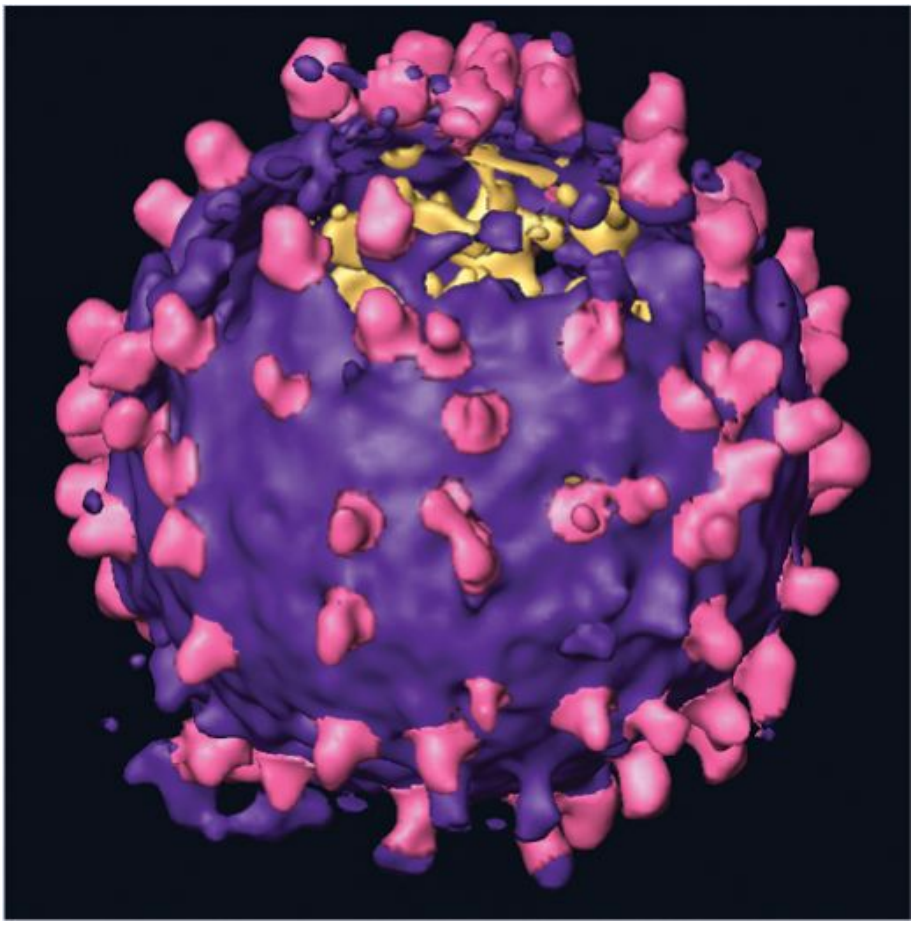
The integration of HPV genomes has a second functional consequence: the molecular steps that lead to integration usually result in the deletion or inactivation of certain viral genes that are needed for replication of episomal viral DNA, and of other viral genes whose products operate to repress expression of the mRNAs encoding the virus-encoded oncoproteins (the latter described in Chapters 7 and 8). Once freed of this transcriptional repression, the viral mRNAs and, as a consequence, viral oncoproteins are expressed by the integrated viral genomes at far higher levels, thereby driving the progression of pre-neoplastic virus-infected cells into carcinoma cells.

The transcriptional repression of HPV mRNAs that serve as templates for viral oncoprotein expression is the task of the viral E2 protein, which has a second, ostensibly related function: it acts to link the unintegrated viral genome to a cellular protein that is bound to chromatin during mitosis (as an example, see Figure S3.4B). This ensures the tethering of the viral genome to chromosomes during mitosis (Figure S3.4C). When this tethering is blocked experimentally, the viral genomes are unable to "hitchhike" with the host-cell chromosomes during mitosis and consequently are largely left in the cytoplasmic compartment of the mitotic cells, which leads to their rapid loss following multiple successive cellular growth-and-division cycles.

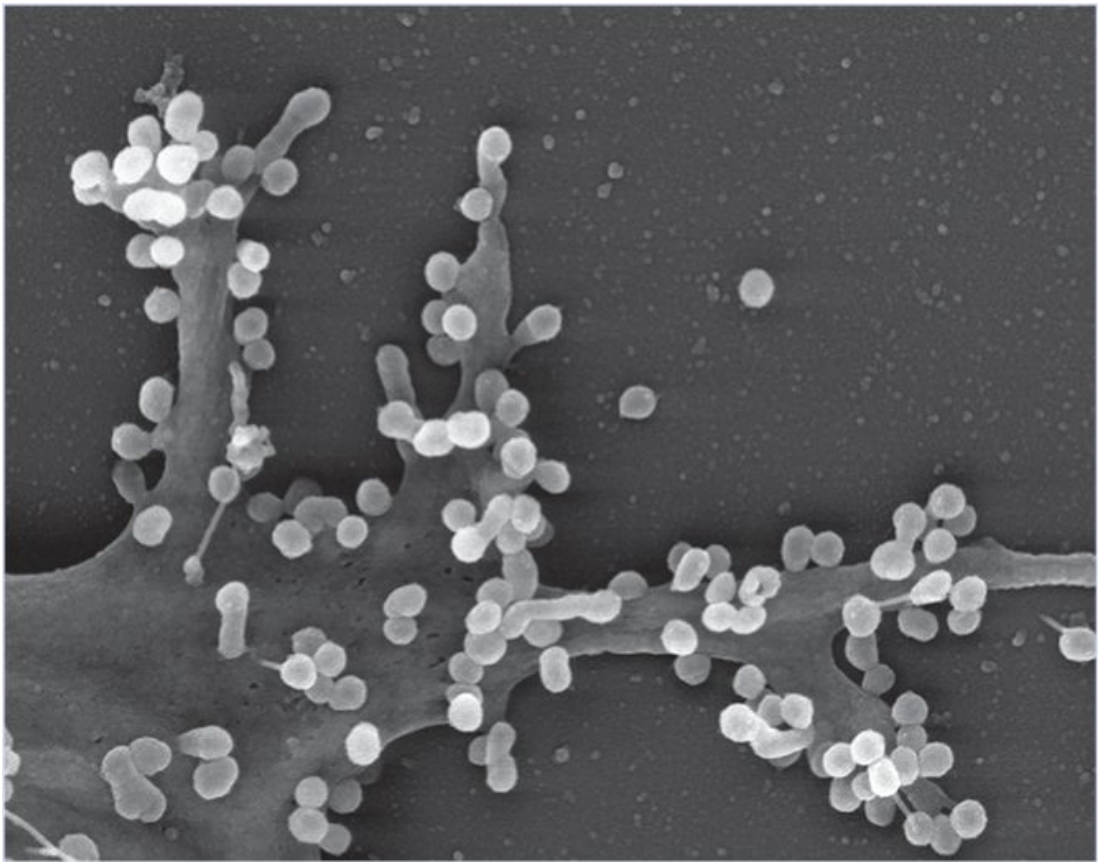
Supplementary Sidebar 3.6 Retroviruses and HIV

The discovery of the reverse transcriptase enzyme by Howard Temin and David Baltimore in 1970 (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.3**) led to the explosion of research into this class of viruses, which led to the discovery of the origins of the *src* oncogene borne by Rous sarcoma virus and, subsequently, a large number of acutely transforming retroviruses, each of which was found to have acquired and activated a cellular proto-oncogene (see Table 3.3). In 1981 a new disease condition was discovered in homosexual men and drug users, primarily in San Francisco and New York, which soon was termed acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) to contrast it with inborn immunodeficiency syndromes. Within two years, the origins of this apparently transmissible disease had been traced to a virus that, like ALV, RSV, and MLV, carried a reverse transcriptase in its virion (**Figure S3.5**). Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), as it was soon called, is a true retrovirus distantly related to the avian and murine retroviruses discussed in Section 3.7. The extraordinarily rapid association of a newly discovered clinical condition (AIDS) with a specific causative agent (HIV) was directly due to the large body of information on

retroviruses that had been accumulated over the preceding decade in research focused on retroviruses associated with cancer. Hence, as is often the case, basic curiosity-driven research yielded benefits that could not have been anticipated when such research began a decade earlier.



(A)



(B)

Figure S3.5 Retroviruses (A) Cryoelectron microscopy and complex image-processing algorithms have produced the first high-resolution reconstructed image of a murine leukemia virus (MLV) virion; MLV is related to RSV, and its virion has a structure similar to that of RSV. The glycoprotein spikes are seen here in *magenta*, while the lipid bilayer of the virion is shown in *purple*; parts of the underlying nucleocapsid, revealed at lower resolution, are shown in *yellow*. (B) Scanning electron micrograph of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) nucleocapsid cores budding from the surface of baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells; HIV-infected lymphocytes generate similar images. HIV is a member of the same family of viruses as RSV and MLV. (A, from F. Förster et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 102:4729–4734, 2005. With permission from National Academy of Sciences. B, courtesy of P. Roingeard.)

Supplementary Sidebar 3.7 Where do viruses and their genes originate?

The discovery by Varmus and Bishop's laboratory of the cellular origins of the RSV *src* gene provoked the question of where most viral genes come from and how viruses

originate. Viral genome replication—in both DNA and RNA virus replication cycles—is executed with far less fidelity than is the replication of cellular DNA. The consequence is that viral genome sequences evolve far more rapidly than the genomic sequences of metazoan cells. Hence, most traces of precursor gene sequences that may have been present in ancestral viruses or in host cells were erased by this rapid evolution hundreds of millions of years ago.

We will probably never know where and how most viral genomes originated. Presumably, viruses have been around since the cells that they parasitize first appeared. Some types of viruses may have begun as renegade genes that broke away from cellular genomes and struck out on their own. RNA viruses may bear vestiges of early cellular life forms that used RNA molecules as genomes and, in the case of retroviruses, of a later stage of cellular evolution when a reverse transcriptase-like cellular enzyme enabled the transition from cellular RNA to cellular DNA genomes.

Whatever their origins, the great majority of viral genes have no obvious relatedness with the genes of their hosts. This highlights the uniqueness of the Varmus and Bishop finding that retroviruses can apparently acquire and transduce (carry in their genomes) cellular genes, seemingly promiscuously. This flexibility of their genomes suggested a novel application of retroviruses, which began to flourish in the mid-1980s: a variety of interesting genes were introduced into retroviral genomes using recombinant DNA techniques. The resulting viral genomes were then used as vectors to transduce these genes into cultured cells *in vitro* and into living tissues *in vivo* (the latter application often being referred to as “gene therapy”; see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.8**).

Supplementary Sidebar 3.8 Gene therapy can occasionally have tragic consequences

Gene therapy has been found to be most applicable to diseases of the hematopoietic system. Thus, children who are born with a severe immunodeficiency due to a germ-line–specified defect in one or another critical component of the immune system can, in principle, be cured if the missing gene is transduced into their bone marrow stem cells using retrovirus vectors. In more detail, retrovirus genomes can be reconstructed by deleting genes required for viral replication and inserting a gene or genes of interest in their place. In this case, the virus is being used to convey genes of interest into infected cells, and the retrovirus itself is therefore termed a vector. Cells infected by hybrid viruses carrying genes-of-interest will therefore be infected stably and produce the product of the vector-borne gene stably and possibly indefinitely. (Because a gene or genes essential for replication must be deleted from the viral genome in order to accommodate an inserted gene-of-interest, the cells used to produce large amounts of such hybrid viruses must also be supplied with genes encoding the missing replicative genes of the retrovirus.) In one version of retroviral gene therapy, hematopoietic stem

cells are infected *in vitro* by a gene-transducing retroviral vector; these stem cells are then introduced into afflicted children, in whose bone marrow these cells become stably engrafted. The differentiated progeny of these engrafted, genetically altered stem cells are then able to supply missing immune functions, thereby reversing the congenital immunodeficiency. (Clearly, one of the challenges of this particular gene therapy strategy is the difficulty of transducing a gene, using the viral vector, into a high enough proportion of cells within the marrow of the patient to ensure a major shift in systemic function.)

Just such a therapeutic approach was launched in France. Bone marrow stem cells from ten children suffering from a congenital severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), which involves the absence of T cells and NK cells (to be described in Chapter 16), were infected with a Moloney murine leukemia virus (Mo-MLV)–derived retroviral vector; the vector transduced a gene specifying the gene product that the children lacked—the γc protein, a component of the interleukin receptors that allow proper development and regulation of the immune system. Nine of these children responded by showing a dramatic reconstitution of their immunological function. However, in the years after the inception of this trial, four of the children developed T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia.

In three of the four cases, analyses of the DNA of leukemic cells revealed proviruses derived from the viral vector that had become integrated within several kilobase pairs of the first exon of the *LMO2* gene, a proto-oncogene known to be activated in human T-cell leukemias. DNA of cells from the fourth patient showed a provirus integration near another proto-oncogene, *Bmi-1*. Three of these four leukemic children were eventually cured, and the nine surviving children showed restitution of their immune functions for periods as long as a decade following original treatment.

Given the known roles of the *LMO2* and *Bmi-1* oncogenes in leukemogenesis, the inserted proviruses were almost certainly responsible for triggering the four leukemias. Hence, insertional mutagenesis leading to oncogenesis, which had long been feared as a possible but remote risk incurred by such a gene therapy strategy, became a grim reality. In response to these findings, researchers have begun to develop new types of viral vectors that are less likely to activate proto-oncogenes via insertional mutagenesis, giving hope to those who are interested in correcting certain inborn defects through gene therapy.

Supplementary Sidebar 3.9 A bacterial agent of cancer pathogenesis

Helicobacter pylori was first identified in 1983 as a “curved bacterium” associated with chronic gastric inflammation. Over the ensuing decades it became increasingly associated with the pathogenesis of gastric adenocarcinomas. In certain parts of the

world, such as Japan, it is associated with essentially all cases of this disease, which is ten times more common in Japan than in the West. Its properties, in part revealed in Figure 3.18, enable it to create chronic inflammation in the stomach, often with loss of the acid-producing cells lining the stomach and resulting increases in the pH of stomach fluids. *H. pylori* bacteria become physically tethered to the epithelial cells lining the stomach wall, which results in turn in the injection of at least one protein, termed CagA, into the cytoplasm of the epithelial cells via a *CagA* pathogenicity island (PAI), a ~40 kb stretch of the *H. pylori* genome that encodes at least 30 distinct proteins. This injection is achieved by a series of *CagA*-encoded proteins that function essentially as a microsyringe. Various allelic versions of the *CagA* PAI are correlated with various degrees of risk of stomach cancer development. As might be surmised, the more virulent allelic versions of the *CagA* PAI are found in East Asian countries, where stomach cancer is often the leading cause of cancer-associated mortality. *H. pylori* appears to gain several advantages from its effects on the gastric mucosa. Its ability to increase the gastric pH creates a more hospitable tissue environment for its multiplication. In addition, it may gain vital nutrients, such as iron, from the gastric cells that it affects.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ex vivo
: Occurring outside of a living body or organism. *Compare in vitro, in vivo*.

in vitro
: (1) Referring to biochemical processes, notably reactions, that occur outside of living cells, including in cell lysates or under conditions involving purified reactants. (2) Referring to the propagation of living cells in a vessel (e.g., a Petri dish) rather than in living tissues. *Compare* ***in vivo, ex vivo***.

medium
: The fluid in which cells are propagated *in vitro. See also* **tissue culture**.

passaging
: (1) Practice of transferring cells from one culture vessel to another, often performed because the cell population has filled up the first vessel. (2) Similarly, the transfer of tumor cells or infectious agents, notably viruses, from one host cell or organism to another. *See also* **serial passaging**.

integrin
: A heterodimeric cell surface receptor that binds components of the extracellular matrix and transmits information about this binding to the cell interior; the cytoplasmic domain of an integrin may also be coupled with components of the cytoskeleton, thereby linking the extracellular matrix to the cytoskeleton.

senescence
: A nongrowing state of cells in which they exhibit distinctive cell phenotypes and remain viable for extended periods of time but are generally unable to proliferate again; senescence often arises after extended passaging of cells *in vitro*, notably under suboptimal conditions of culture. *See* **replicative senescence**.

immortalization
: Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

organoid

An experimentally created model of a normal adult tissue, usually generated through incubation of organ-specific stemlike cells suspended in a three-dimensional gelatinous matrix containing a cocktail of factors designed to induce a tissue-specific differentiation program in the organoid.

immortalization

Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

oropharynx

adj., **oropharyngeal**) The cavity extending from the back of the mouth down the respiratory tract to the larynx (voice box).

nonhomologous recombination

Process of recombination between two DNA molecules in which the two participating molecules do not share significant sequence identity. *Also called* **illegitimate recombination**.

fragile site

A site along a chromosome that is intrinsically unstable and thus especially susceptible to breakage, the existence of which is often revealed when DNA replication forks proceeding through the site are stalled.

transduction

(1) Process whereby a signaling element, such as a protein, receives a signal and, in response, processes the signal and emits another signal. (2) Process by which a gene is introduced into a cell, usually by a vector such as a viral vector.

vector

(1) Agent, often a virus, that is able to carry (transduce) a gene from one cell to another. (2) An infected organism that serves to transmit and distribute an infectious agent to other organisms.

vector

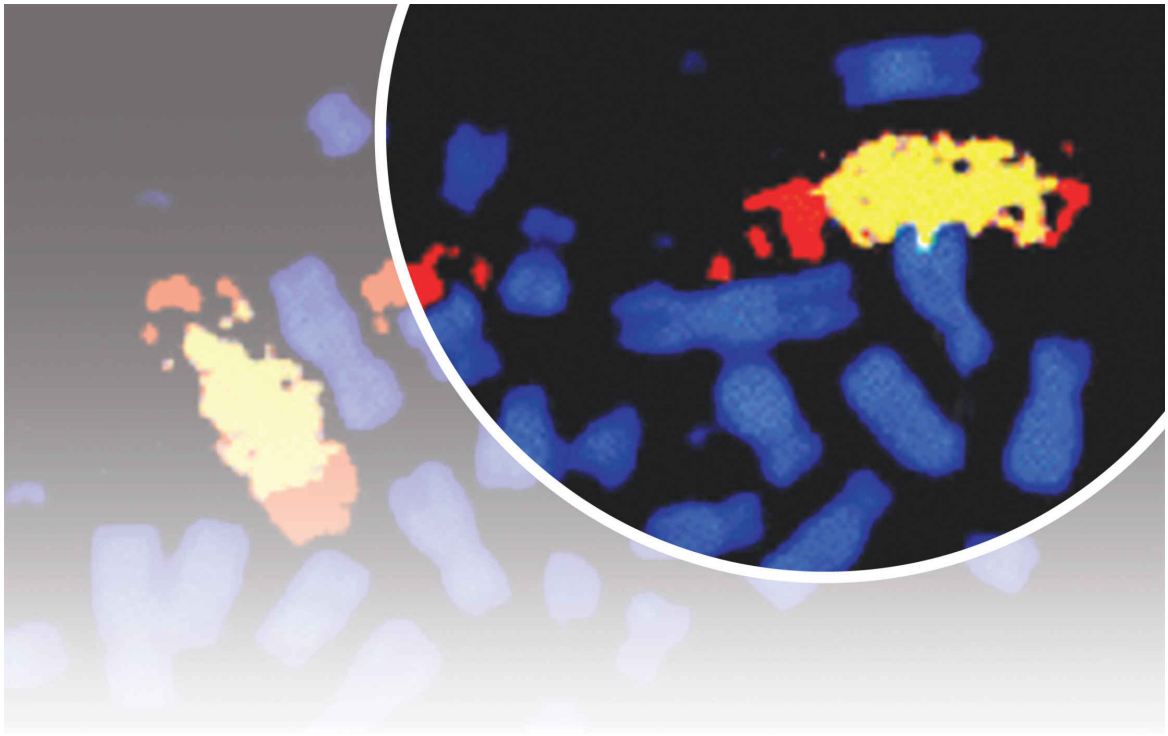
(1) Agent, often a virus, that is able to carry (transduce) a gene from one cell to another. (2) An infected organism that serves to transmit and distribute an infectious agent to other organisms.

insertional mutagenesis

Alteration of a gene and its function through the integration of a retroviral provirus or transposon into the gene itself or a closely linked chromosomal site.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 4
Cellular Oncogenes



A fluorescence microscopy image with dark blue and bright red and yellow staining. The dark blue objects are chromosomes.

> The viral origin of the majority of all malignant tumors ... has now been documented beyond any reasonable doubt. It ... would be rather difficult to assume a fundamentally different etiology for human tumors.
>
> Ludwik Gross, tumor virologist, 1970

The DNA and RNA tumor viruses characterized in the 1970s provided cancer biologists with a simple and powerful theory of how human tumors could arise. Viruses that occurred commonly in the human population might, with some frequency, infect susceptible tissues and cause the transformation of infected cells. These cells, in turn, would begin to multiply and, sooner or later, form the large cell masses that were encountered frequently in the oncology clinic. Since

tumor viruses succeeded in transforming normal rodent and chicken cells into tumor cells with only a small number of introduced genes, these viruses might have similar powers in transforming human cells as well.

With the passage of time, this scenario, attractive as it was, became increasingly difficult to reconcile with the biology and epidemiology of human cancer. Most types of human cancer clearly did not spread from one individual to another as an infectious disease. Significant clusters of cancer cases—mini-epidemics of disease—were hard to find. Even more important, attempts undertaken during the 1970s to isolate viruses from most types of human tumors were unsuccessful. Of the hundred and more tumor types encountered in the oncology clinic, only two commonly occurring tumor types in the Western world—hepatomas (liver carcinomas) and cervical carcinomas—were known or suspected to be tied to specific viral causative agents.

These realizations evoked two responses. Those who hung tenaciously to tumor viruses as causative agents of all human cancers argued that chemical and physical carcinogens interacted with viruses that normally hid within the body's cells, activating their latent cancer-causing powers. Other researchers responded by jettisoning viruses entirely and began looking at another potential source of the genes responsible for human cancers—the cellular genome with its tens of thousands of genes. This second tack eventually triumphed, and by the late 1980s, the normal human genome was recognized to be a rich source of the genes that drive human cancer cell proliferation.

So, tumor viruses, once viewed as the key agents triggering all human cancers, failed to live up to these high expectations. Ironically, however, tumor virus research proved to be critical in uncovering many of the cellular genes that are indeed responsible for the neoplastic cell phenotype. The large catalog of cellular cancer-causing genes assembled over the ensuing decades—oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes—derives directly from these early efforts to find infectious cancer-causing agents in human populations.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

hepatoma

Tumor of the liver; also known as **hepatocellular carcinoma**.

OceanofPDF.com

4.1 Transfection of DNA provides a strategy for detecting nonviral oncogenes

In the 1970s some researchers attempted to connect chemical carcinogenesis of the type that Yamagiwa first developed (Section 2.8) with viral carcinogenesis. In particular, they sought an explanation that came from the fact that latent retroviral genomes could be found in abundance in the germ lines of various mammalian species. Such endogenous retroviral genomes, they argued, while normally transcriptionally silent, could be activated by various carcinogens, provoking virus production, viremia, and eventually cancer induction (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.1**). As attractive as this mechanism was, it failed to attract experimental support.

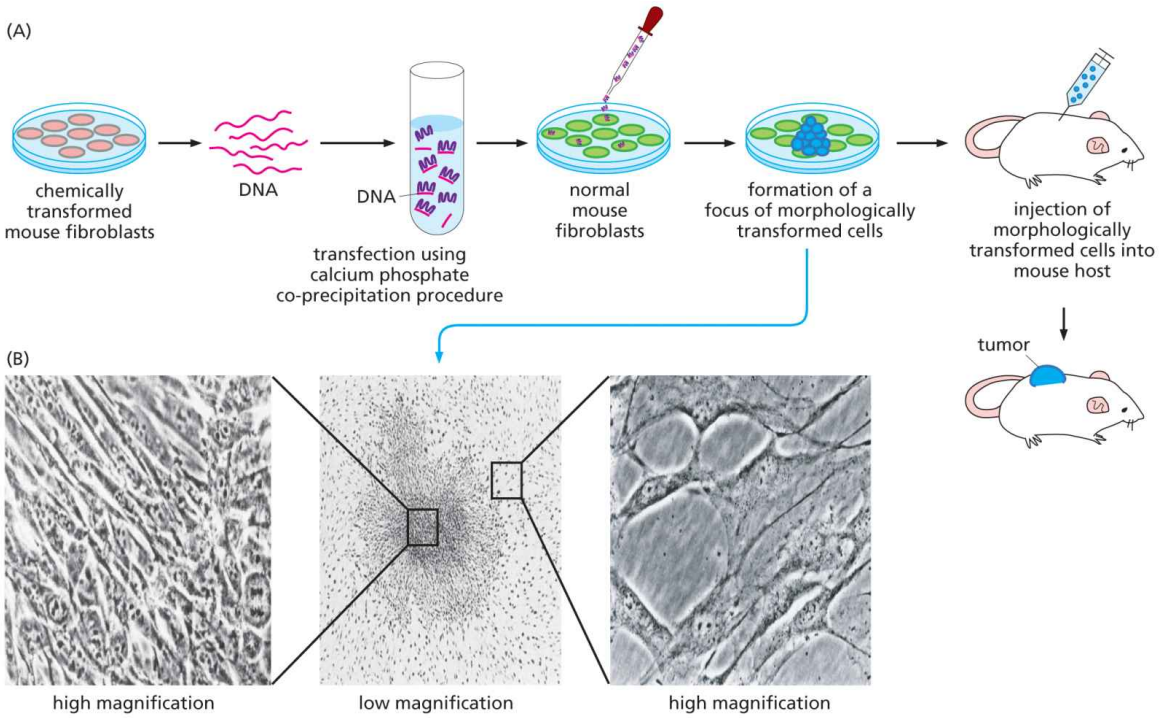
The demise of the endogenous retrovirus theory left one viable theory on the table. According to this theory, carcinogens function as mutagens (see Section 2.9). Whether physical (for example, X-rays) or chemical (for example, tobacco tars), these agents could induce cancer through their ability to mutate critical growth-controlling genes in the genomes of susceptible cells. Such growth-controlling genes might possibly be normal cellular genes, such as the proto-oncogenes discovered by the retrovirologists. Once these genes were mutated, the resulting mutant alleles might thereafter function as active oncogenes, driving the cancerous growth of the cells that carried them. All this could happen without the involvement of tumor viruses and their genomes.

Stated differently, this model—really a speculation—predicted that chemically transformed cells carried mutated cellular genes and that these genes were responsible for programming the aberrant growth of these cells. In fact, the notion that cancer cells were mutant cells traced its origins back to the beginning of the twentieth century and the speculations of the pathologist David von Hansemann and the embryologist Theodor Boveri (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.2**). It was impossible to predict the number of such mutated genes present in the genomes of these cells. More important, experimental proofs of the existence of these cancer-causing genes represented a daunting challenge. If they were really present in the genomes of chemically transformed cells, including perhaps human tumor cells, how could they possibly be found? If these genes were mutant versions of normal

cellular genes, then they were embedded in cancer cell genomes together with tens of thousands, perhaps even a hundred thousand other genes, each present in at least one copy per cell genome. These cancer genes, if they existed, were clearly tiny needles buried in very large haystacks.

To determine whether nonviral oncogenes existed in chemically transformed cells, a novel experimental strategy was devised. It involved introducing DNA (and thus the genes) of cancer cells into normal cells, and then determining whether the recipient cells became transformed in response to the introduced tumor cell DNA. Such transformation could be scored by the appearance of foci in the cultures of recipient cells several weeks after their exposure to tumor cell DNA—essentially the assay that Howard Temin had used to score for the presence of infectious transforming Rous sarcoma virus particles in monolayers of chick embryo fibroblasts (Section 3.2). This strategy depended on several experimental advances, including the development of an effective gene transfer procedure. Additionally, appropriate cancer cells from which to extract DNA and suitable recipient cells needed to be identified.

In 1972, a highly effective gene transfer procedure, soon termed transfection, was developed. This procedure, which made possible the introduction of naked DNA molecules from donor cells directly into mammalian cells serving as recipients (**Figure 4.1**), was based on co-precipitation of DNA with calcium phosphate crystals. Cells of the NIH 3T3 cell line, derived originally from mouse embryo fibroblasts, turned out to be especially adept at taking up and integrating into their genomes the foreign DNA introduced in this fashion.



A two-part figure about transfection of the D N A of transformed cells. In Part A, a tumor is induced in a mouse via transfection of D N A. D N A is initially extracted from chemically transformed mouse fibroblasts grown in a petri dish. Transfection is then achived using a calcium phosphate co-precipitation procedure. The resulting liquid is dripped onto normal normal mouse fibroblasts growing in a petri dish. This results in the formation of a focus of morphologically transformed cells. When some of the morphologically transformed cells are injected into a mouse host, the mouse develops a tumor on its back. Part B shows three micrograph images of human cells that have been morphologically transformed in the same way. A low-magnification image shows a focus consisting of densely packed abnormal cells surrounded by more loosely packed normal cells. A high-magnification image shows that the densely packed abnormal cells are highly elongated. Another high-rmagnification image shows that the less densely packed normal cells are more rounded.

Figure 4.1 Transfection of DNA of transformed cells (A) The procedure of transfection can be used to detect oncogenes in the DNA of cancer cells. DNA is extracted from cancer cells (*pink*) growing in a Petri dish. (For simplicity, the double-stranded DNA is depicted as single lines.) DNA is then introduced into a phosphate buffer. When calcium ions are added, a co-precipitate of DNA and calcium phosphate crystals is formed (*pink and*

purple). These crystals are added to a monolayer culture of normal cells (*green*). The calcium phosphate crystals facilitate the uptake of DNA fragments by cells. If a transforming gene (oncogene) is present in the donor DNA, it may become incorporated into the genome of one of the recipient cells and transform the latter. This transformed cell will now proliferate, and its descendants will form a clump (focus, *blue*) of cells that is visible to the naked eye. Injection of these cells into a host mouse and resulting tumor formation can be used to confirm the transformed state of these cells. (B) In addition to the initially used mouse tumor DNAs (panel A), human tumor DNAs could also yield foci of transformants following transfection. Seen at low magnification (*middle*) is a focus generated by transfection of DNA from the T24 human bladder carcinoma cell line. At high magnification the transformed cells within this focus (*left*), like many transformed fibroblasts, are spindle-shaped, refractile, and piled up densely on one another (see also Figure 3.4A). At the same magnification, the cells in the surrounding monolayer of untransformed NIH 3T3 cells (*right*), like normal fibroblasts, have wide, extended cytoplasms and are not piled on one another. (B, from M. Perucho et al., *Cell* 27:467–476, 1981. With permission from Elsevier.)

Researchers chose donor tumor cells derived from mouse fibroblasts of the C3H10T1/2 mouse cell line; these cells had been treated repeatedly with the potent carcinogen and mutagen 3-methylcholanthrene (3-MC), a known component of coal tars (see Section 2.8), which resulted in their transformation. Importantly, these transformed cells bore no traces of either tumor virus infection or activated endogenous retroviral genomes. Hence, any transforming oncogenes detected in the genome of these donor cells would, with great likelihood, be of cellular origin, that is, mutant versions of normal cellular genes.

In 1978–1979, DNAs extracted from several such 3-MC–transformed mouse cell lines were transfected into cultures of NIH 3T3 recipient cells, yielding large numbers of foci after several weeks. The cells plucked from the resulting foci were later found to be both anchorage-independent and tumorigenic (see Table 3.2). This simple experiment proved that the donor tumor DNA carried one or several genetic elements that were able to convert a non-tumorigenic NIH 3T3 recipient cell into a cell that was strongly tumorigenic.

DNA extracted from normal, untransformed C3H10T1/2 cells used as controls was unable upon transfection to induce foci in the NIH 3T3 cell monolayers. This difference made it highly likely that previous exposure of normal C3H10T1/2

cells to the 3-MC carcinogen had altered the genomes of these cells in some way, resulting in the creation of novel genetic sequences that possessed transforming powers. In other words, it seemed likely that the 3-MC carcinogen had converted a previously normal C3H10T1/2 gene (or genes) into a mutant allele that now could function as a transforming oncogene when introduced into NIH 3T3 recipient cells.

At first, it seemed quite difficult to determine whether the donor tumor cells carried a single oncogene in their genomes or several distinct oncogenes that acted in concert to transform the recipient cells. Careful analysis of the transfection procedure soon resolved this issue. Researchers discovered that when cellular DNA was applied to a recipient cell, only about 0.1% of a cell genome's worth of donor DNA became established in the genome of each transfected recipient cell. The probability of two independent, genetically unlinked donor genes both being concomitantly introduced into a single recipient cell was therefore $10^{-3} \times 10^{-3} = 10^{-6}$, that is, a highly unlikely event. From this calculation they could infer that only a single gene was responsible for the transformation of NIH 3T3 cells following transfection of donor tumor cell DNA. This led, in turn, to the conclusion that, years earlier, exposure of normal C3H10T1/2 mouse cells to the 3-MC carcinogen had caused the formation of a single mutant oncogenic allele; this allele was able, on its own, to transform both the C3H10T1/2 cells in which this mutation arose and, later on, the recipient NIH 3T3 cells into which this allele was introduced by gene transfer.

These transfection experiments provided strong indication that oncogenes can arise in the genomes of cells through mechanisms that have no apparent connection with viral infection. Perhaps human tumor cells, which likewise appeared to arise via nonviral mechanisms, also carried transfectable oncogenes. Would human oncogenes, if present in the genomes of these cells, also be able to alter the behavior of mouse cells?

Both of these questions were soon answered in the affirmative. DNAs extracted from cell lines derived from human bladder, lung, and colon carcinomas, as well as DNA from a human promyelocytic leukemia, were all found capable of transforming recipient NIH 3T3 mouse fibroblasts. This meant that the oncogenes in these cell lines, whatever their nature, were capable of acting across species and tissue boundaries to induce cell transformation. Most important, this work demonstrated directly that chemically transformed cells as well as certain human tumor cells contained mutant genes that were capable of driving such cells into a neoplastic growth state.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

endogenous retroviral genome
: The provirus of a retrovirus that is integrated into the germ line DNA of an organism, thereby assuming a configuration much like all cellular genes in the organism's genome.

transfection
: A procedure for introducing DNA or RNA molecules into cells which may thereafter be expressed transiently in such cells or, in the case of DNA, stably in such cells.

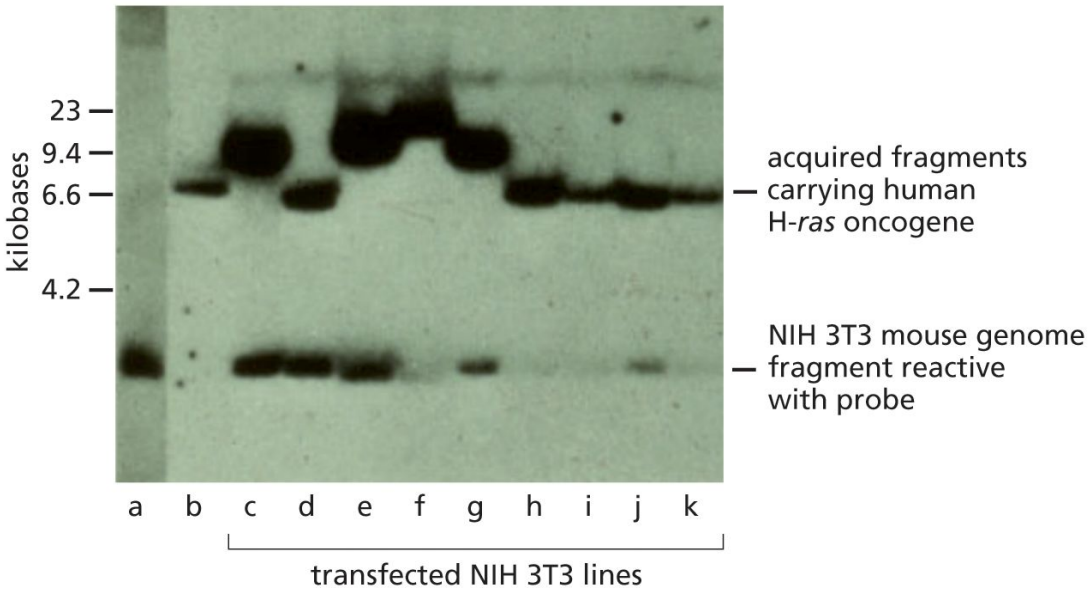
OceanofPDF.com

4.2 Oncogenes discovered in human tumor cell lines are related to those carried by transforming retroviruses

The oncogenes detected by transfection in the genomes of various human tumor cells were ostensibly derived from preexisting normal cellular genes that lacked oncogenic function. This seemed to parallel the process that led to the appearance of transforming retroviruses (see Section 3.9). Recall that during the formation of these viruses, preexisting normal cellular genes—proto-oncogenes—became associated with viral genomes and activated into potent oncogenes, albeit through an entirely different genetic mechanism.

These apparent parallels led to an obvious question: Could the same group of cellular proto-oncogenes become activated into oncogenes by marauding retroviruses in one context and by nonviral mutagens in another? Or, alternatively, did the retrovirus-associated oncogenes and those activated by nonviral mechanisms arise from two very distinct groups of cellular proto-oncogenes?

Use of DNA probes specific for the retrovirus-associated oncogenes provided the answers in short order. Using the Southern blot procedure (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.3**), a DNA probe derived from the H-*ras* oncogene present in Harvey rat sarcoma virus was able to recognize and form hybrids with the oncogene detected by transfection in the DNA of a human bladder carcinoma cell (**Figure 4.2**). A related oncogene, termed K-*ras* from its presence in the genome of Kirsten sarcoma virus, was able to anneal with the oncogene detected by transfection of DNA from a human colon carcinoma cell line.



A Southern blot image with 11 lanes, labeled a through k. Lanes b through j represent transfected N I H 3 T 3 lines. The vertical axis represents molecular weight in kilobases. A straight horizontal band of blots at roughly 2 kilobases is labeled N I H 3 T 3 mouse genome fragment reactive with probe. Higher up, blots at varying heights between 6.6 and 23 kilobases is labeled acquired fragments carrying human H-ras oncogene.

Figure 4.2 Homology between transfected oncogenes and retroviral oncogenes
The Southern blot procedure (see Supplementary Sidebar 4.3) was used to determine whether there was any relatedness between retrovirus-associated oncogenes and those discovered by transfection of tumor cell DNA. Cloned retroviral oncogene DNAs were used to make radiolabeled probes, while the restriction enzyme–cleaved genomic DNAs from transfected cells were analyzed by the Southern blot procedure. Shown here is the annealing between a radiolabeled H-*ras* oncogene probe (cloned from the genome of Harvey murine sarcoma virus; see Section 3.10) and the genomic DNAs from a series of nine lines of NIH 3T3 cells (*lanes b–j*) that had been transformed by transfection of DNA extracted from the EJ/T24 human bladder carcinoma cell line; the DNA of untransfected NIH 3T3 cells was analyzed in channel a and the genomic DNA of T24 human bladder carcinoma cells was analyzed in lane k. In many of the lines of transfected NIH 3T3 cells (*lanes b–j*), in addition to the acquired DNA fragments carrying the transfected oncogene, a lower–molecular-weight fragment representing the endogenous mouse H-*ras* proto-oncogene was also detected. In many of these transfected cell lines, the size of the DNA fragment carrying the transfected H-*ras* oncogene was affected by random DNA breakage events that had occurred in prior rounds of transfection and separated previously linked restriction enzyme cleavage sites from the DNA segment carrying the oncogene.

The human tumor DNA in channel a indicates the size of the restriction fragment carrying the human H-*ras* proto-oncogene. The variable intensity of this band indicates unequal loading of DNA samples in various gel channels. (From L.F. Parada et al., *Nature* 297:474–478, 1982. With permission from Nature.)

The list of connections between the retrovirus-associated oncogenes and oncogenes present in non-virus-induced human tumors soon grew by leaps and bounds (**Table 4.1**). In fact, many of these connections were forged following the discovery that the retrovirus-associated oncogenes were present in increased copy number in human tumor cell genomes. The *myc* oncogene, originally known from its presence in avian myelocytomatosis virus (MC29; see Section 3.10), was found to be present in multiple copies in the DNA of the HL-60 human promyelocytic leukemia cell line. These extra copies of the *myc* gene (about 10–20 per diploid genome) were the result of the process of gene amplification and the apparent cause of the proportionately increased levels of its protein product, the Myc oncoprotein; the excess Myc protein somehow favored the proliferation of the cancer cells. The *erbB* gene, first discovered through its presence in the genome of avian erythroblastosis virus (AEV; refer to Table 3.3), was discovered to be present in increased copy number in the DNAs of human stomach, breast, and brain tumor cells. (Erythroblastosis is a malignancy of red blood cell precursors.) Elevated expression of the homolog of the *erbB* gene is now thought to be present in the majority of human carcinomas.

Table 4.1 Initial examples of retrovirus-associated oncogenes that were discovered in altered form in human cancers

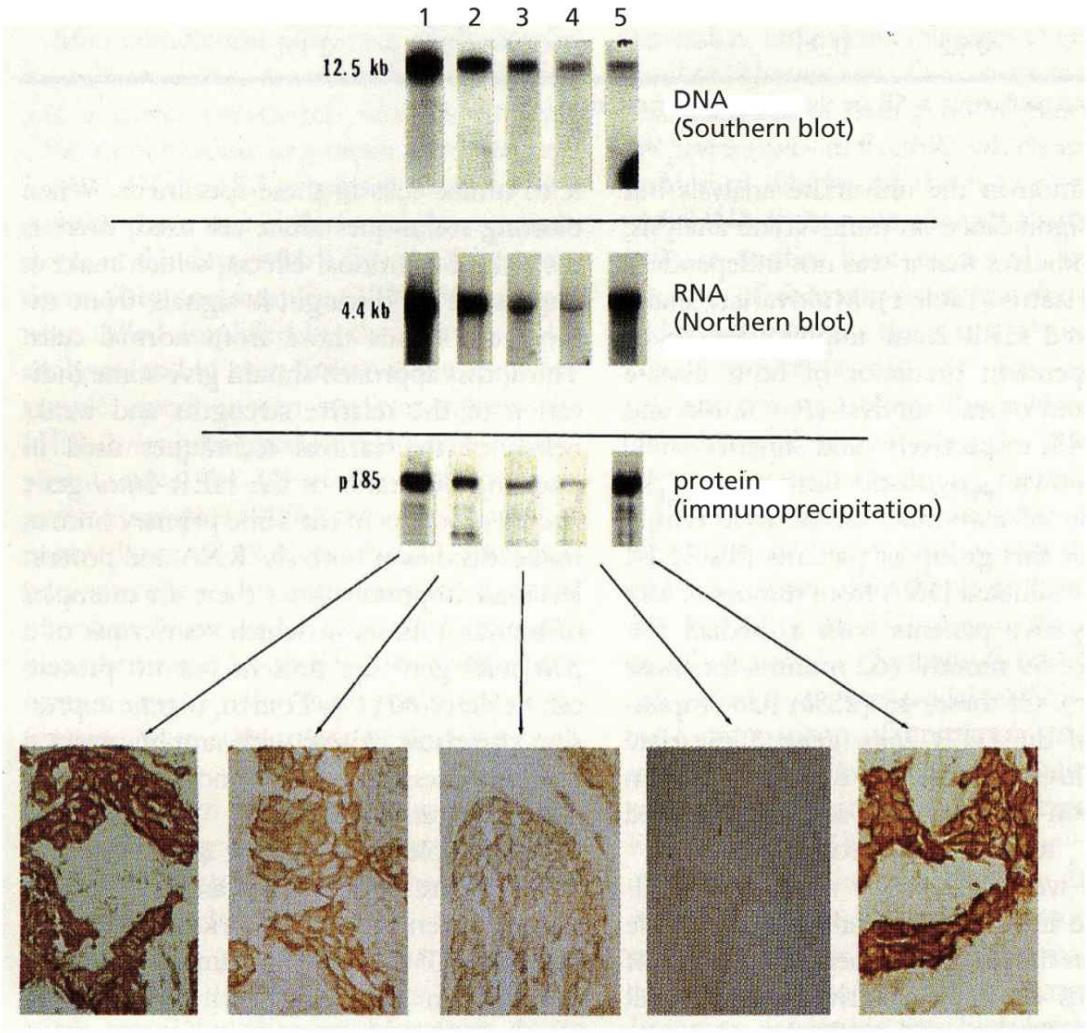
Name of virus	**Species**	**Oncogene**	**Type of oncoprotein**	**Homologous oncogene found in human tumors**
Abelson leukemia	mouse	*abl*	non-receptor TK	CML
Avian erythroblastosis	chicken	*erbB*	receptor TK	gastric, lung, breast[a]
McDonough feline sarcoma	cat	*fms*	receptor TK	AML[b]

Name of virus	Species	Oncogene	Type of oncoprotein	Homologous oncogene found in human tumors
H-Z feline	cat	*kit*	receptor TK[c]	gastrointestinal stromal
Murine sarcoma 3611	mouse	*raf*	ser/thr kinase[d]	bladder carcinoma
Simian sarcoma	monkey	*sis*	platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)	many types[e]
Harvey sarcoma	mouse/rat	H-*ras*[f]	small G protein	bladder carcinoma
Kirsten sarcoma	mouse/rat	K-*ras*[f]	small G protein	many types
Avian erythroblastosis	chicken	*erbA*	nuclear receptor[g]	liver, kidney, pituitary
Avian myeloblastosis E26	chicken	*ets*	transcription factor	leukemia[h]
Avian myelocytoma	chicken	*Myc* [i]	transcription factor	many types

Name of virus	Species	Oncogene	Type of oncoprotein	Homologous oncogene found in human tumors
Reticuloendotheliosis	turkey	*Rel* [j]	transcription factor	lymphoma

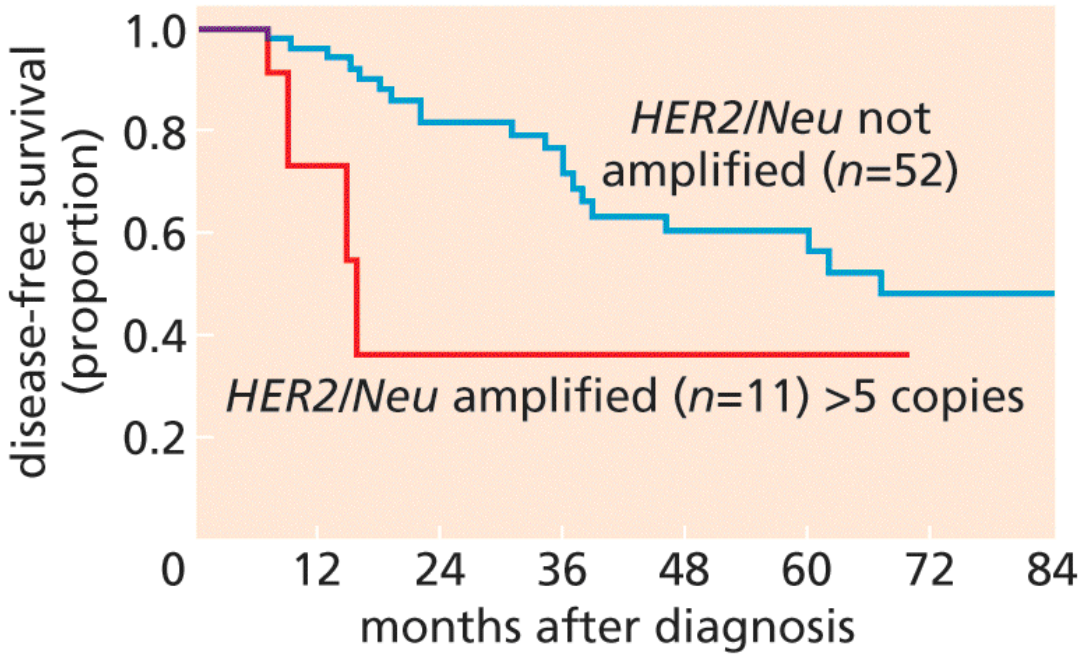
Abbreviations: AML, acute myelogenous leukemia; CML, chronic myelogenous leukemia; TK, tyrosine kinase.
Adapted in part from J. Butel, *Carcinogenesis* 21:405–426, 2000; and G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Boston and London: Jones and Bartlett, 1995.

In 1987, amplification of the *erbB*-related gene known variously as *erbB2*, *neu*, or *HER2* was reported in many breast cancers (**Figure 4.3A**). Increases in gene copy number of more than five copies per cancer cell were found to correlate with a decrease in the number of patients who, following initial treatment, survived without recurrence of disease (Figure 4.3B). (Kaplan–Meier plots, like the one in the figure, will be used repeatedly throughout this book. In each case, the status of patients—either disease-free survival, progression-free survival, overall survival, or another clinical parameter—is plotted as a function of the time elapsed following initial diagnosis or treatment.) Significantly, the observed amplification of the *erbB2/HER2* gene was often but not always correlated with an increased expression of its encoded protein (see Figure 4.3A). Among a large group of breast cancer patients, those whose tumors expressed normal levels of this protein showed a median survival of 6 to 7 years after diagnosis, while those patients whose tumors expressed elevated levels had a median survival of only 3 years. This inverse correlation between *erbB2/HER2* expression levels and long-term patient survival provided a strong indication that this gene, in amplified form, was causally involved in driving the malignant growth of the breast cancer cells (but see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.4**).



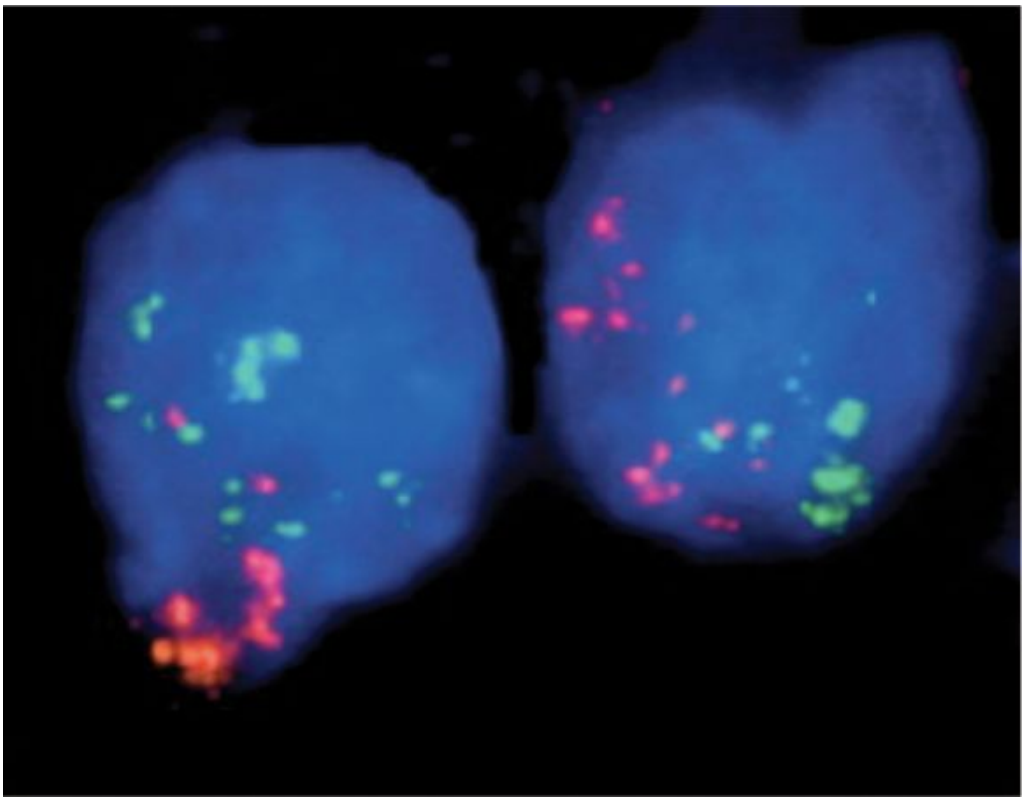
Three photos labeled immunohistochemistry, show three sets of blot images. The first shows five D N A blots using the Southern blot method. The recorded fragments are 12.5 kilobases long. The second image shows five R N A blots using the Northern blot method. The recorded fragments are 4.4 kilobases long. The third image shows five blots of protein p185 obtained using immunoprecipitation. Each of the protein blots is accompanied by a micrograph showing physical appearance of cells. Lanes 1 and 5 have the darkest blots and the darkest red colored clumps in the cells. Lane 4 has the lightest blots and more uniform coloration in the cells.

(A)



A time plot with months after diagnosis on the horizontal axis and disease-free survival proportion on the vertical axis. There are two curves, one red and one blue, which both begin at 1.0 on the vertical axis at 0 months. The red curve, labeled H E R 2 / N e u amplified (n=11) >5 copies, drops to just under 0.4 within about 14 months and then remains flat out to 70 months. The blue curve, labeled H E R 2 / N e u not amplified (n=52), declines more gradually, to just under 0.5 in about 66 months and then remains flat out to 84 months.

(B)



Two cell nuclei at high magnification, each appearing dark blue against a black background but with a few bright red and green fluorescent spots on them.

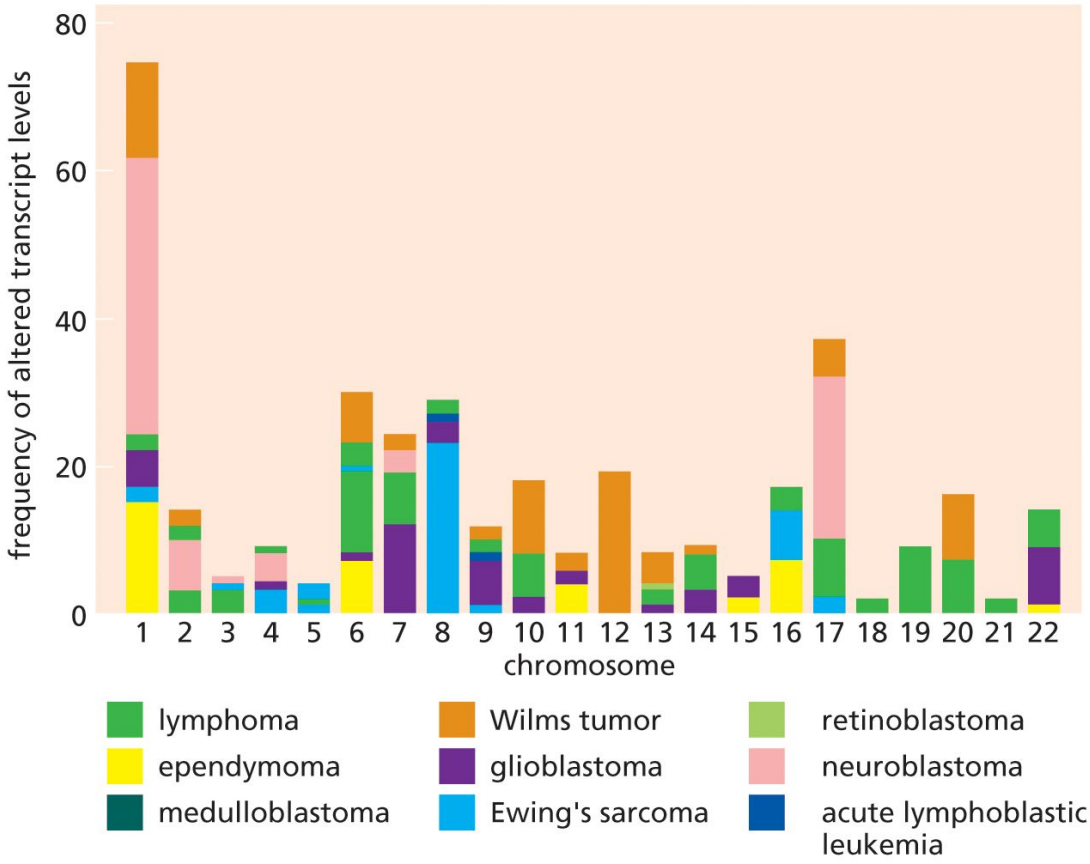
(C)

Figure 4.3 Amplification of the *erbB2/HER2/neu* oncogene in breast cancers
(A) The Southern blotting procedure (see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.3**) was used to determine whether the DNA of five human breast carcinomas carried extra (that is, amplified) copies of the *erbB2/neu* oncogene (also termed *HER2*), a close relative of the *erbB* oncogene. As indicated by the dark bands representing restriction enzyme fragments, some human breast carcinomas carried extra copies of this gene. Subsequent work indicated that while the *erbB2/HER2* oncogene was amplified in some tumors ("DNA," *lanes 1, 2, and 3*), others overexpressed the mRNA without gene amplification ("RNA," *lane 5*). Levels of the encoded ErbB2/HER2 protein could also be gauged via immunoprecipitation and immunohistochemistry (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.1**) by using an antibody that reacts with this protein; these levels generally correlated with relative levels of the encoding mRNA. (B) This gene amplification is correlated with a poor prognosis for the breast cancer patient, as indicated by this *Kaplan–Meier* plot. Those patients whose tumors carried more than five copies of the *erbB2/neu* gene were far more likely to experience a relapse in the first 18 months after diagnosis

and treatment than were those patients whose tumors lacked this amplification. (All patients in this study had breast cancer cells that had spread to the lymph nodes draining the involved breast. *n*, number of patients.) (C) Use of fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) has shown that in some human breast cancers, there are multiple spots in each cell nucleus that react with a fluorescence-labeled DNA probe that recognizes the *erbB2/HER2* gene (*light green*) and yet other spots that react with a DNA probe specific for the *CCND1/cyclin D1* gene (*orange/pink*). Each of these probes generates only two spots when used to analyze nuclei of normal diploid cells. (As described in Chapter 8, cyclin D1 promotes progression of cells through their growth-and-division cycles.) (A, from D.J. Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707–712, 1989. B, from D.J. Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177–182, 1987. Both with permission from AAAS. C, from J. Hicks et al., *Genome Res*. 16:1465–1479, 2006. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

In the years that followed, yet other techniques, including fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH), have been used to determine gene amplification in these and other tumor types. By 2010, a variety of techniques had been brought to bear for validating the oncogenic roles of genes that are amplified in a variety of human cancers; included among these techniques were tests of the transforming powers of these genes. This work resulted in a roster of 77 genes that are, with great likelihood, contributing to tumor development when they are present in amplified form in human cancer cell genomes. (Since the amplification of a gene is often accompanied by the co-amplification of other genes that happen to be located nearby on a chromosome, the gene whose amplification is thought to be causal in fostering tumor development is often termed a driver, while the nearby flanking genes that "may go along for the ride" but are mechanistically unimportant in tumor development are termed passengers.)

As genetic technology has improved, the ability to survey entire tumor cell genomes for chromosomal regions that have suffered changes in copy number has improved immeasurably, and genome-wide surveys of both gene amplifications and deletions have become almost routine. In the case of cancer cells, the amplifications presumably result in the overexpression of growth-promoting genes (that is, proto-oncogenes), while the deletions involve the loss of putative growth-retarding tumor suppressor genes, which are discussed in Chapter 7. As **Figure 4.4** makes clear, different cell types undergo distinct sets of genomic alterations during their transformation into full-fledged tumor cells. The analyses of cancer cell genomes by a variety of methods will be discussed in detail in Chapter 12.



A bar chart listing the 22 human chromosomes left to right. The vertical axis represents frequency of altered transcript levels, in each chromosome, for each of nine different pediatric cancers: lymphoma, ependymoma, medulloblastoma, Wilms tumor, glioblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma, retinoblastoma,, neuroblastoma, acute lymphoblastic, and leukemia. Almost 40 percent of neuroblastoma samples have alterations in chromosome 1, and roughly 20 percent have alterations in chromosome 17. Other alterations occur in chromosomes 2, 3, 4, and 7. Over 20 percent of samples of Ewing's sarcomas have alterations in chromosome 8. Other alterations occur in chromosomes 1, 4, 5, 9, 16, and 17. Just under 20 percent of Wilms tumor samples have alterations in chromosome 12. Other cancers have alterations spread across many chromosomes at small frequecies.

Figure 4.4 Nonrandom amplifications and deletions of chromosomal regions A survey of nine different types of pediatric cancers indicates that each cancer type has characteristic gene amplifications and deletions affecting a specific set of chromosomal regions. This survey examined the transcripts deriving from genes carried by the 22 non-sex chromosomes. For example, neuroblastomas (*pink*) often have changes in the copy numbers of genes on Chromosomes 1 and 17 and corresponding changes in the levels of the transcripts expressed by these genes. In this analysis, measurable changes in the copy number of 493 genes were found to

be paralleled by changes in mRNA expression levels—that is, when DNA copy number of a chromosomal region was increased (that is, amplified) or reduced, there was a parallel change in the level of the corresponding RNA, this being observed in multiple tumors of a given type. (Of these 493 chromosomal sites, which were scattered across the human genome, 440 could be associated with genes of known biological function.) This parallel behavior made it possible to assess changes in gene copy number by measuring levels of RNA transcripts in these tumors rather than by directly measuring DNA copy number of the corresponding genes. (The "altered transcripts" indicated in the ordinate denotes RNAs whose concentrations were significantly increased above or below normal in the tumors being examined.) As is apparent, Chromosome 1 carries regions that are most commonly found to be amplified or deleted in a variety of these tumors, which might be expected from its relatively large size. This does not explain, however, the relatively infrequent amplification or deletion of regions of Chromosomes 2, 3, 4, and 5, which are almost as large. Some tumors, such as lymphomas (*darker green*), show changes at diverse chromosomal sites, while the aforementioned neuroblastomas (*pink*) usually show changes mapping to one or two chromosomes. (From G. Neale et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 14:4572–4583, 2008. With permission from the American Association for Cancer Research.)

Ironically, mutant alleles of the c-*src* proto-oncogene (see Section 3.9), the first cellular oncogene to be discovered, proved to be elusive in human tumor cell genomes. More specifically, repeated attempts to find mutant alleles of c-*src* that are present in human cancer cell genomes and affect the structure of the encoded Src protein have consistently failed.

The lesson taught by these numerous cross connections was simple and clear: many (but not all) of the oncogenes originally discovered through their association with avian and mammalian retroviruses could be found in a mutated, activated state in human tumor cell genomes. This meant that a common set of cellular proto-oncogenes might be activated either by retroviruses (in animals) or, alternatively, by nonviral mutational mechanisms operating during the formation of human cancers.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

gene amplification
: Genetic mechanism by which the copy number of a gene is increased above its normal level in the diploid genome.

erythroblastosis
: Malignancy of the precursors of red blood cells, usually referring to a condition of birds.

Kaplan–Meier plot
: A convention for graphing various clinical observations in which the percentage of surviving patients (or another clinical parameter such as disease-free or progression-free survival) is plotted on the ordinate (*y*-axis), while the time course after initial diagnosis or treatment is plotted (usually in increments of months or years) on the abscissa (*x*-axis).

driver gene
: A gene that is affected by driver mutations and is identified because the mutations affecting this gene occur more frequently in tumors than would be expected by random chance; driver genes are mutated on a recurring basis in the genomes of multiple, independently arising tumors, ostensibly because these mutations confer advantageous cell phenotypes. *See* **driver mutation**.

passenger gene
: Gene altered by passenger mutation. *See* **passenger mutation**.

tumor suppressor gene
: (1) A gene whose partial or complete inactivation, occurring in either the germ line or the genome of a somatic cell, leads to an increased likelihood of cancer development. (2) Such a gene that is responsible for constraining cell proliferation. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aReceptor for EGF; the related erbB2/HER2/Neu protein is overexpressed in 30% of breast cancers.Return to reference a
- bFms, the receptor for colony-stimulating factor (CSF-1), is found in mutant form in a small number of AMLs; the related Flt3 (Fms-like tyrosine kinase-3) protein is frequently found in mutant form in these leukemias.Return to reference b
- cReceptor for stem cell factor.Return to reference c
- dThe closely related B-Raf protein is mutant in the majority of melanomas.Return to reference d
- eProtein is overexpressed in many types of tumors.Return to reference e
- fThe related N-*ras* gene is found in mutant form in a variety of human tumors.Return to reference f
- fThe related N-*ras* gene is found in mutant form in a variety of human tumors.Return to reference f
- gReceptor for thyroid hormone.Return to reference g
- h27 distinct members of the Ets family of transcription factors are encoded in the human genome. Ets-1 is overexpressed in many types of tumors; others are involved in chromosomal translocations in AML, Ewing's sarcoma, and prostate carcinoma.Return to reference h
- iThe related N-*myc* gene is overexpressed in pediatric neuroblastomas and small-cell lung carcinomas.Return to reference i
- jRel is a member of a family of proteins that constitute the NF-KB transcription factor, which is constitutively activated in a wide range of human tumors.Return to reference j

OceanofPDF.com

4.3 Proto-oncogenes can be activated by genetic changes affecting either protein expression level or structure

While a number of proto-oncogenes were found in activated, oncogenic form in human tumor genomes, the precise genetic alterations that led to many of these activations remained unclear. In the case of retrovirus-associated oncogenes, one mechanism became obvious once the organization of the transforming retrovirus genomes was known. In the normal cell, the expression of each proto-oncogene was regulated by its own transcriptional promoter—the DNA sequence that controls the level of its transcription. The promoter of each proto-oncogene enabled the gene to respond to a variety of physiologic signals. Often the needs of the cell, communicated through these signals, caused a proto-oncogene to be expressed at very low levels; however, on certain occasions, when required by the cell, expression of the gene might be strongly induced.

A quite different situation resulted after a proto-oncogene was acquired by a retrovirus. After insertion into the retrovirus genome, expression of this captured gene was now controlled by a retroviral transcriptional promoter (see Figure 3.13), which invariably drove the gene's expression unceasingly and at high levels. Transcription of this virus-associated gene, now an oncogene, was therefore no longer responsive to the cellular signals that had previously regulated its expression. For example, in the case of c-*myc*, expression or repression (that is, shutdown) of this gene in a cell is normally tightly controlled by the changing levels of certain extracellular signals, such as those conveyed by mitogenic growth factors (to be discussed in Chapter 5), to which the cell is exposed. Once incorporated into the genome of avian myelocytomatosis virus (MC29), expression of this gene (now called v-*myc*) is found to be at far higher levels than are seen normally in cells, and this expression occurs at a constant (sometimes termed constitutive) level.

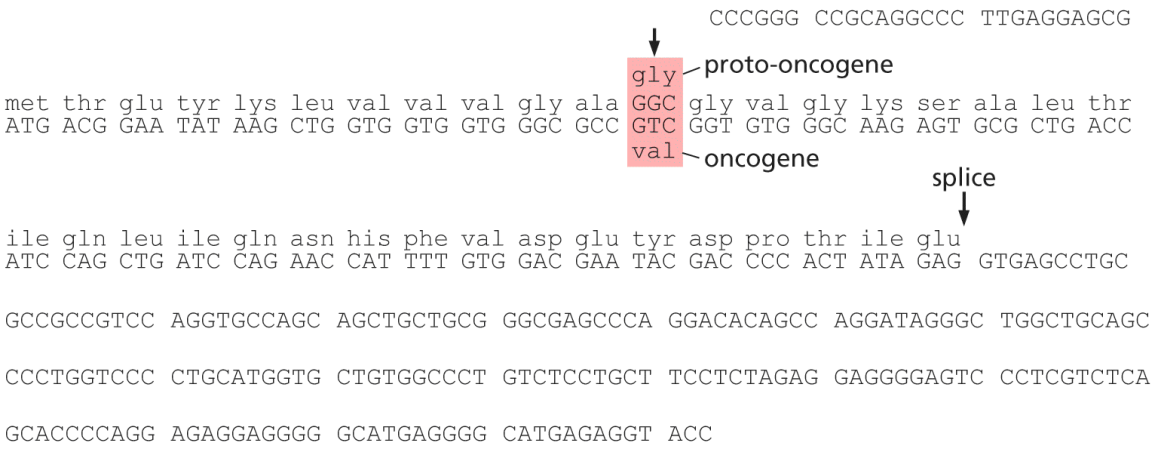
But how did a normal human H-*ras* proto-oncogene become converted into the potent oncogene that was detected by transfection of human bladder carcinoma

DNA (see Sections 4.1 and 4.2)? Gene amplification could not be invoked to explain its activation, since this oncogene seemed to be present in bladder carcinoma DNA as a single-copy gene. The puzzle grew when this H-*ras* bladder carcinoma oncogene was isolated by molecular cloning (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.5**). It was localized to a genomic DNA fragment of 6.6 kilobases in length. Provocatively, an identically sized DNA fragment was found in normal human DNAs. The latter fragment clearly represented the human H-*ras* proto-oncogene —the normal gene that suffered some type of mutation that converted it into an oncogene during the formation of the bladder carcinoma.

While their overall DNA structures were very similar, these two versions of the H-*ras* gene performed in dramatically different ways. The oncogene that had been cloned from human bladder carcinoma cells caused transformation of NIH 3T3 cells, while its normal proto-oncogene counterpart lacked this ability. The mystery deepened when more detailed mapping of the physical structures of these two DNA segments—achieved by making maps of the cleavage sites of various restriction enzymes—revealed that the two versions of the gene had overall physical structures that were indistinguishable from one another.

Yet clearly, the two versions of the H-*ras* gene had some significant difference in their sequences, because they functioned so differently. The critical sequence difference was initially localized by recombining segments of the cloned proto-oncogene with other segments deriving from the oncogene (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.6**). This made it possible to narrow down the critical difference to a segment only 350 base pairs long.

The puzzle was finally solved when the corresponding 350-bp segments from the proto-oncogene and oncogene were subjected to DNA sequence analysis. The critical difference was extraordinarily subtle—a single base substitution in which a G (guanosine) residue in the proto-oncogene was replaced by a T (thymidine) in the oncogene. This single base-pair replacement—a point mutation—appeared to be all that was required to convert the normal gene into a potent oncogene (**Figure 4.5**)! This important discovery was made simultaneously in three laboratories, eliminating all doubt about its correctness.



A 320-nucleotide-long sequence of D N A bases. Bases 27 through 137 are grouped into 37 codons of three bases each, and for each group the amino acid coded for is shown, starting with methionine for A T G. The twelfth codon is highlighted; there, a change from G G C in the proto-oncogene to G T C in the oncogene causes the amino acid coded for to change from glycine to valine. After the last group of three, the sequence of amino acids ends with an arrow labeled splice.

Figure 4.5 Mutation responsible for H-*ras* oncogene activation As described in Supplementary Sidebar 4.6, the critical difference between the human EJ/T24 bladder carcinoma oncogene and its corresponding proto-oncogene could be localized to an intragenic restriction enzyme–generated fragment of 350 base pairs. The sequences of the two 350-nucleotide-long DNA fragments from the oncogene and proto-oncogene were then determined. The two differed at a single nucleotide, which affected the 12th codon of the H-*ras* reading frame (*arrow*), converting the normally present glycine-encoding codon to one specifying valine. (From C.J. Tabin et al., *Nature* 300:143–149, 1982. With permission from Nature.)

The discovery of this point mutation represented a significant milestone in cancer research. It was the first time that a specific mutation was discovered in a gene that contributed causally to the neoplastic growth of a human cancer. Equally important, it seemed that this genetic change arose as a somatic mutation. And finally, this work revealed the powers of the then-recently developed recombinant DNA technology, which could trace a critical oncogene-activating mutation to a change in a single nucleotide out of the ~3.2 billion nucleotides that comprise the haploid human genome.

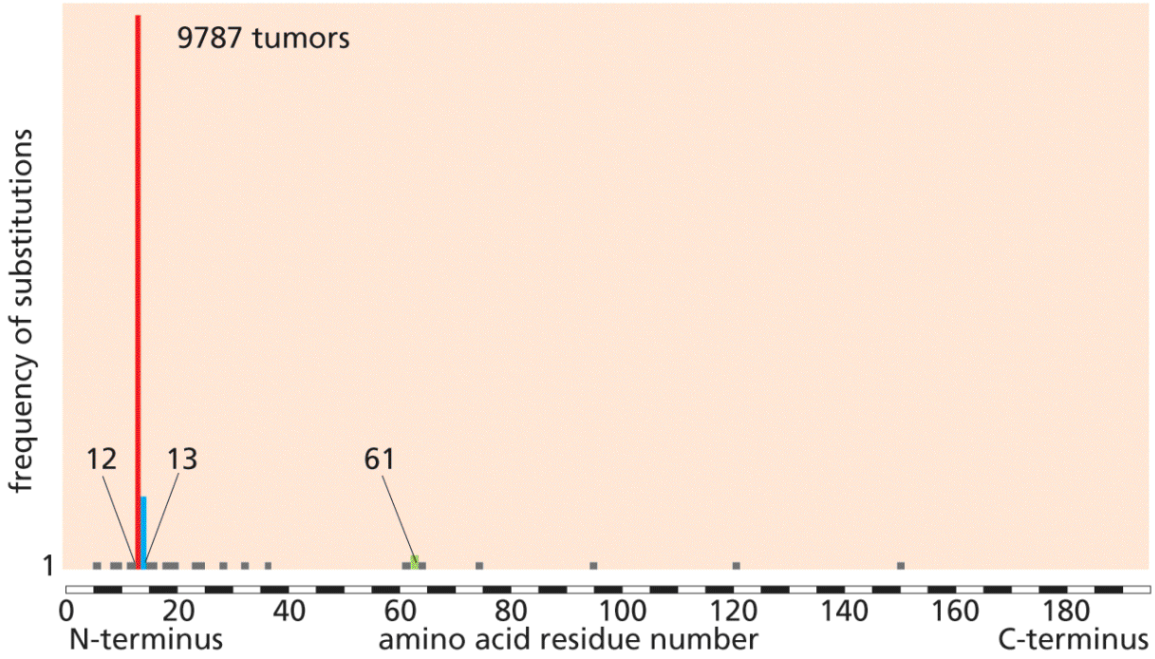
With this information in hand, researchers could devise a likely explanation for the origin of the bladder carcinoma and, by extension, other similar tumors. The particular bladder carcinoma from which the H-*ras* oncogene had been cloned was said to have arisen in a middle-aged man who had been smoking for four decades. During this time, carcinogens present in cigarette smoke were introduced in large amounts into his lungs and passed from there through the bloodstream to his kidneys, which excreted these chemical species with the urine. While in the bladder, some of the carcinogen molecules present in the urine had entered urothelial cells lining the bladder and attacked their DNA. On one occasion, a mutagenic carcinogen introduced a point mutation in the H-*ras* proto-oncogene of a urothelial cell. Thereafter, this mutant cell and its descendants proliferated, being driven by the potent transforming action of the H-*ras* oncogene that they carried. The result, years later, was the large tumor mass that was eventually diagnosed in this patient. [As we will learn later (Chapter 11), acquisition of this H-*ras* mutation must have been followed by additional, subsequently acquired mutations in other growth-controlling genes before these cells could behave in a fully neoplastic manner.]

Importantly, this base-pair substitution occurred in the reading frame of the H-*ras* gene—the portion of the gene dedicated to encoding amino acid sequence (see Figure 4.5). In particular, this point mutation caused the substitution of a glycine residue present at residue position 12 in the normal H-*ras*–encoded protein by a valine residue. The effects of this amino acid substitution on the function of the Ras oncoprotein will be discussed later in Chapters 5 and 6.

The discovery of this point mutation established a mechanism for oncogene activation that was quite different from that responsible for the creation of *myc* oncogenes. In the case of H-*ras*, a change in the structure of the encoded protein appeared to be critical. In the contrasting case of *myc*, deregulation of its expression level seemed to be important for imparting oncogenic powers to this gene.

Within a decade, a large number of human tumors were found that carried point mutations in one of the three *ras* genes present in the mammalian genome: H-*ras*, K-*ras*, and N-*ras*. Significantly, in each of these tumors, the point mutation that was uncovered was present in one of three specific codons in the reading frame of a *ras* gene. Consequently, all Ras oncoproteins (whether made by the H-, K-, or N-*ras* gene) were found to carry amino acid substitutions in residue 12 or, less frequently, residues 13 and 61 (**Figure 4.6**); yet other sites of mutated codons have been reported on occasion. (This striking concentration of mutations

affecting only a small number of residues in the Ras protein occurs in spite of the fact that all of the coding sequences in the *ras* proto-oncogenes presumably have similar vulnerability to mutation. The resolution of this puzzle comes from studying the structure and function of the Ras protein, topics that we will address in the next chapter.) A survey of 40,000 human tumor genomes conducted many years later revealed that 22%, 8.2%, and 3.7% of these tumors had activating mutations in either the K-, N-, or H-*ras* genes, respectively.



A graphic depicting the concentration of point mutations leading to activation of the K-r a s oncogene. The gene, 189 codons long, is laid out horizontally with the N terminus on the left and the C terminus on the right. Vertical bars indicate that when nearly 10,000 tumors were sequenced, 9787 of them had a substitution in codon 12. A much smaller number, but still significant, had a substitution in codon 13. Two had a substitution on codon 60. Substitutions on other codones were each recorded only once, mostly on the N terminus end, in the vicinity of codons 12 and 13.

Figure 4.6 Concentration of point mutations leading to activation of the K-*ras* oncogene The sequencing of almost 10,000 K-*ras* oncogenes in human tumors has revealed that, rather than occurring randomly throughout the reading frame of the gene, which encompasses 189 codons, mutations affect almost exclusively the nucleotides forming codon 12; mutations affect codon 13 only about 12% as frequently and codon 61 only on rare occasions. Since all the codons of the K-*ras* reading frame are likely to suffer mutations at

comparable rates during tumor development, this suggests that an extraordinarily strong selective pressure favors the outgrowth of cells having mutations affecting codons 12, 13, and 61, while mutations altering other codons in the reading frame either have no effect on cell phenotype or are actively disadvantageous for the cells bearing them. (Data from Catalogue of Somatic Mutations in Cancer (COSMIC database), http://www.sanger.ac.uk.)

For unknown reasons, the frequency with which these mutant oncogenes are found varies dramatically from one tissue site to another (**Table 4.2**). One clue, however, has come from genetically engineered mice in which the reading frame of the K-*ras* proto-oncogene has been replaced ("knocked-in") with the reading frame of an H-*ras* oncogene. Wild-type mice usually develop lung tumors carrying K-*ras* oncogenes in response to treatment by a chemical carcinogen; however, the vast majority of the knock-in mice develop lung tumors carrying H-*ras* oncogenes following this treatment. This indicates that the *regulatory sequences* controlling the expression of the K-*ras* proto-oncogene, rather than the *structure* of the encoded protein, determine which *ras* proto-oncogene, following mutation by a carcinogen, appears in mutant form in the genome of a particular type of carcinoma.

Table 4.2 A list of point-mutated *ras* oncogenes carried by a variety of human tumor cells

Tumor type	**Proportion (%) of tumors carrying a point-mutated *ras* gene**[a]
Pancreas	98 (K)
Thyroid (papillary)	60 (H, K, N)
Thyroid (follicular)	55 (H, K, N)
Colorectal	52 (K, N)

Tumor type	**Proportion (%) of tumors carrying a point-mutated *ras* gene**[a]
Seminoma	45 (K, N)
Myeloma	43 (N, K)
Lung (non-small-cell)	32 (K)
Melanoma	30 (N)
Uterine endometrioid	25 (H, K,N)
Acute myelogenous leukemia	11 (N)
Bladder	10 (H, K, N)

Adapted from J. Downward, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3:11–22, 2003; N. Vasan et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 20:3921–3930; and A.D. Cox et al., *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 13, 828–851.

Both activation mechanisms—regulatory and structural—might collaborate to create an active oncogene. In the case of the *myc* oncogene carried by avian myelocytomatosis virus, for example, expression of this gene was found to be strongly deregulated by the viral transcription promoter as mentioned above. At the same time, some subtle alterations in the reading frame of the *myc* oncogene (and thus changes in the structure of its encoded oncoprotein, Myc) further enhanced the already-potent transforming powers of this oncogene. Similarly, the H-*ras* oncogene carried by Harvey sarcoma virus was found to carry a point mutation in its reading frame (like that discovered in the bladder carcinoma oncogene); at the same time, this viral oncogene was greatly overexpressed

relative to its expression levels in normal cells, being driven by the retroviral transcriptional promoter. Indeed, in many animal and human tumors carrying a mutant, activated *ras* oncogene, the initially arising oncogene is found to subsequently undergo the process of gene amplification (see Section 4.2), enabling the tumor cells to acquire increased signaling from the mutant oncoprotein.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

repression
: Regulatory mechanism that causes shutdown of the expression (transcription) of a gene. *See also* **expression**.

constitutive
: Describing a state of activity that occurs at a constant level and is therefore not responsive to modulation by physiologic regulators, or a type of control that yields such a constant output. *See also* **conditional**.

point mutation
: Substitution of a single base for another in a DNA sequence.

urothelium
: The specialized epithelial cell lining of the urinary bladder.

reading frame
: (1) The nucleotide sequence within a gene or mRNA that encodes the amino acid sequence of a protein. (2) The registration of triplet codons within this sequence that enables the proper translation of this protein sequence.

knock-in
: A targeted mutation achieved through the homologous recombination of an experimentally introduced, cloned DNA fragment containing, in part, sequences of the targeted gene; the resulting integration of the introduced fragment into the genome of a cell usually results in the addition of novel sequences that affect the function of the targeted gene. *See also* **knock-out**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aH, K, and N refer to the human *H-RAS*, *K-RAS*, and *N-RAS*, respectively.Return to reference a

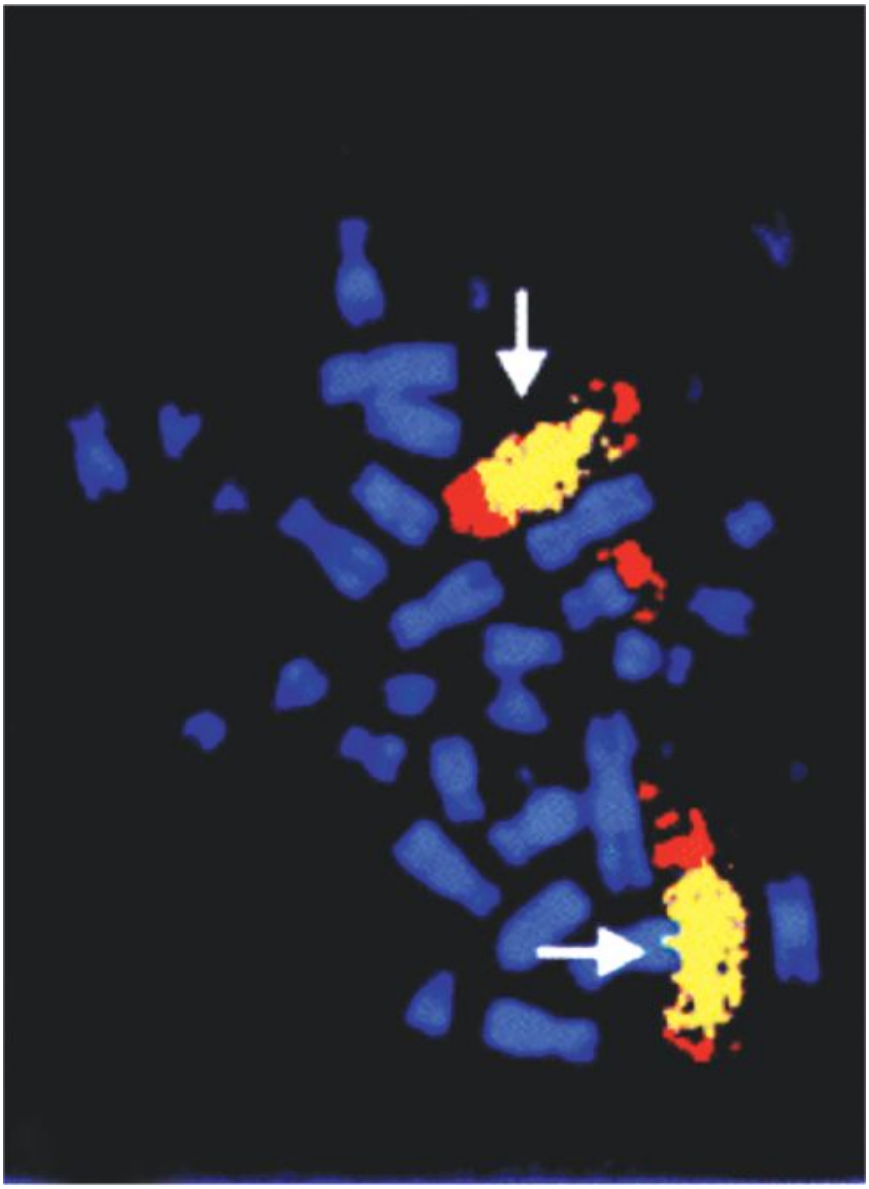
OceanofPDF.com

4.4 Variations on a theme: the *myc* oncogene can arise via at least three additional distinct mechanisms

The observation that the v-*myc* oncogene of avian myelocytomatosis virus (MC29) arose largely through deregulation of its expression only hints at the diverse mechanisms that are capable of creating this oncogene. As mentioned in Section 4.2, in some human tumors, expression of the *myc* gene continues to be driven by its own natural transcriptional promoter but the copy number of this gene is found to be elevated to levels many times higher than the two copies present in the normal human genome. In 30% of childhood neuroblastomas, a close relative of the c-*myc* gene, termed N-*myc*, has also been found to be amplified, specifically in the more aggressive tumors of this type (**Sidebar 4.1**). In both instances, the increased gene copy numbers result in corresponding increases in the level of gene products—the Myc and N-Myc proteins. As we will discuss later in Chapter 8, proteins of the Myc family possess potent growth-promoting powers. Consequently, when present at excessive levels, these proteins seem to drive uncontrolled cell proliferation.

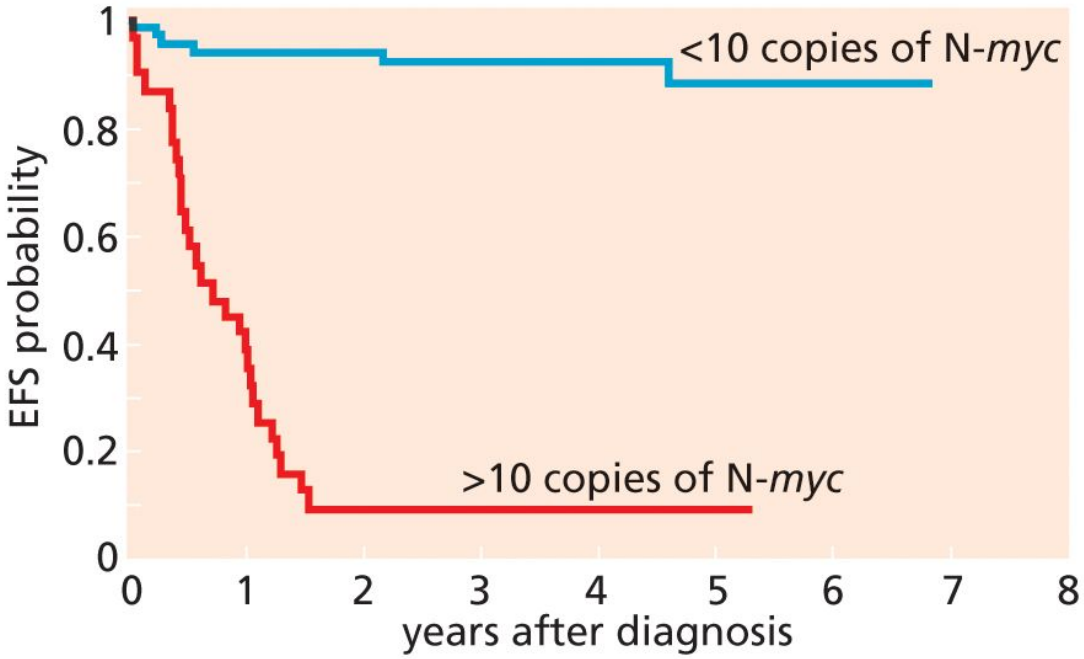
Sidebar 4.1 N-*myc* amplification and childhood neuroblastomas

Amplification of the N-*myc* gene occurs in about 30% of advanced pediatric neuroblastomas, which are tumors of the peripheral nervous system. This amplification, which is associated with the formation of either double minutes (DMs) or homogeneously staining regions (HSRs; see Figure 1.9A and B), represents a bad prognosis for the patient (**Figure 4.7**). The HSRs, which contain multiple copies of the genomic region encompassing the N-*myc* gene, are often found to have broken away from the normal chromosomal mapping site of N-*myc* and, in one study, to have become associated with at least 18 other different chromosomal regions. While N-*myc* amplification was originally thought to be a peculiarity of neuroblastomas (and thus a specific diagnostic marker for this particular disease), it has now been found in a variety of neuroectodermal tumors, including astrocytomas and retinoblastomas; in addition, small-cell lung carcinomas, which have neuroendocrine traits, often exhibit amplified N-*myc* genes.



A fluorescence microscopy image of chromosomes at high magnification. Most appear dark blue against a black background, but two are bright yellow with red ends.

(A)



A time plot with years after diagnosis on the horizontal axis and event-free survival probability on the vertical axis. There are two curves, one red and one blue, which both begin at 1.0 on the vertical axis at 0 years. The red curve, labeled more than 10 copies of N-m y c, drops to just under 0.1 within about 1.5 years and then remains flat out past 5 years. The blue curve, labeled less than 10 copies of N-m y c, declines more gradually, to under 0.9 in about 4.6 years and then remains flat out to just under 7 years.

(B)

Figure 4.7 N-*myc* amplification and neuroblastoma prognosis (A) The N-*myc* gene is often amplified in human childhood neuroblastomas. Here, use of fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) has revealed multiple copies of this gene (*yellow*). The fact that these N-*myc* gene copies are present as tandem arrays within chromosomes means that they constitute homogeneous staining regions (HSRs) rather than extrachromosomal particles—double minutes (DMs)—which are also frequently seen in these tumors (see also Figure 1.10). (B) This Kaplan–Meier plot illustrates the event-free survival (EFS) of children suffering from neuroblastoma, that is, no clinically significant cancer-related symptoms in the indicated years following initial diagnosis and treatment. Those whose tumor cells have minimal or no N-*myc* amplification have a very good prognosis and minimal clinical events, while those whose tumors exhibit extensive N-*myc* amplification have a dramatically poorer prognosis and therefore short survival times after diagnosis. (A, from C. Lengauer et al., *Nature* 396:643–649, 1998. With

permission from Nature. B, from M.L. Schmidt et al., *J. Clin. Oncol*. 18:1260–1268, 2000. With permission from Wolters Kluwer.)

Note, by the way, the notations that are used here and throughout this text. Nonhuman oncogenes are usually written as uncapitalized three-letter words in italics (for example, *myc*), while their protein products are written in roman font with an initial capital (for example, Myc). The *myc* proto-oncogene itself is often termed c-*myc* to distinguish it from its two cousin genes, N-*myc* and L-*myc*. To make matters more confusing, human genes follow a different nomenclature, so that the human *myc* gene is denoted as *MYC* and its protein product is written as MYC. We will generally use the nonhuman acronym conventions throughout this book.

The gene amplification process, which is responsible for increases in *myc* copy number, occurs through the preferential replication of a limited region of chromosomal DNA, leaving the more distantly located chromosomal regions unaffected (see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.4**). Since the region of chromosomal DNA that undergoes amplification—the amplicon—usually includes a stretch of DNA far longer than the c-*myc* or N-*myc* gene (for example, typically including 0.5 to 10 megabases of DNA), the amplified chromosomal regions are often large enough to be observed at the metaphase of mitosis through a light microscope. Often gene amplification yields large, repeating end-to-end linear arrays of the chromosomal region, which appear as homogeneously staining regions (HSRs) in the microscope (see Figure 1.9A). Alternatively, the chromosomal region carrying a *myc* or N-*myc* gene may break away from the chromosome and can be seen as small, independently replicating, extrachromosomal particles (double minutes; see Figure 1.9B). Indeed, we now know that a number of proto-oncogenes can be found in amplified gene copy number in various types of human tumors (**Table 4.3**). A 2010 survey found that altogether 77 genes in the genomes of human cancer cells are found to be recurrently amplified, indicating that increased copy number of each of these confers an advantageous phenotype on the cells that develop them.

Table 4.3 Some frequently amplified chromosomal regions and the genes they are known to carry

Name of oncogene[a]	**Human chromosomal location**	**Human cancers**	**Nature of protein**[b]
MDM4/MDMX	1q32	breast, colon, lung, pre-	p53

Name of oncogene[a]	Human chromosomal location	Human cancers	Nature of protein[b]
		B leukemias	inhibitor
PIK3CA	3q26.3	lung SCC, ovarian, breast carcinomas	PI kinase
erbB1/EGFR	7q12–13	glioblastomas (~30%), squamous cell carcinomas (10–20%)	RTK
cab1–erbB2–grb7	17q12	gastric, ovarian, breast carcinomas (10–25%)	RTK, adaptor protein
k-sam	7q26	gastric, breast carcinomas (10–20%)	RTK
FGF-R1	8p12	breast carcinomas (10%)	RTK
Met	7q31	gastric carcinomas (20%)	RTK
k-*ras*	12p12.1	lung, ovarian, colorectal, bladder, gastric carcinomas (5–20%)	small G protein
n-*ras*	1p13	head-and-neck cancers (30%)	small G protein

Name of oncogene[a]	Human chromosomal location	Human cancers	Nature of protein[b]
h-*ras*	11p15	colorectal carcinomas (30%)	small G protein
c-*myc*	8q24	various leukemias, carcinomas (10–50%)	TF
l-*myc*	1p32	lung carcinomas (10%)	TF
n-*myc–DDX1*	2p24–25	neuroblastomas, lung carcinomas (30%)	TF
akt-1	14q32–33	gastric cancers (20%)	ser/thr kinase
akt-2	19q13	ovarian carcinomas	ser/thr kinase
cyclin D1–exp1–hst1–ems1	11q13	breast, liver and squamous cell carcinomas (25–50%)	G1 cyclin
cdk4–mdm2–sas–gli	12q13	sarcomas (10–30%), HNSCC (40%), B-cell lymphomas (25%)	CDK, p53 antagonist
cyclin E	19q12	gastric cancers (15%)	cyclin
akt2	19q13	pancreatic, ovarian cancers (10-30%)	ser/thr kinase

Name of oncogene[a]	Human chromosomal location	Human cancers	Nature of protein[b]
AIB1, *BTAK*	20q12–13	breast cancers (15%)	receptor co-activator
cdk6	19q21–22	gliomas (5%)	CDK
myb	6q23–24	colon carcinoma (5–20%), leukemias	TF
ets-1	11q23	lymphoma	TF
gli	12q13	glioblastomas	TF

Courtesy of M. Terada, Tokyo, and adapted from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed., Boston and London: Jones and Bartlett, 1995; and C.M Croce, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 358:502–511, 2008.

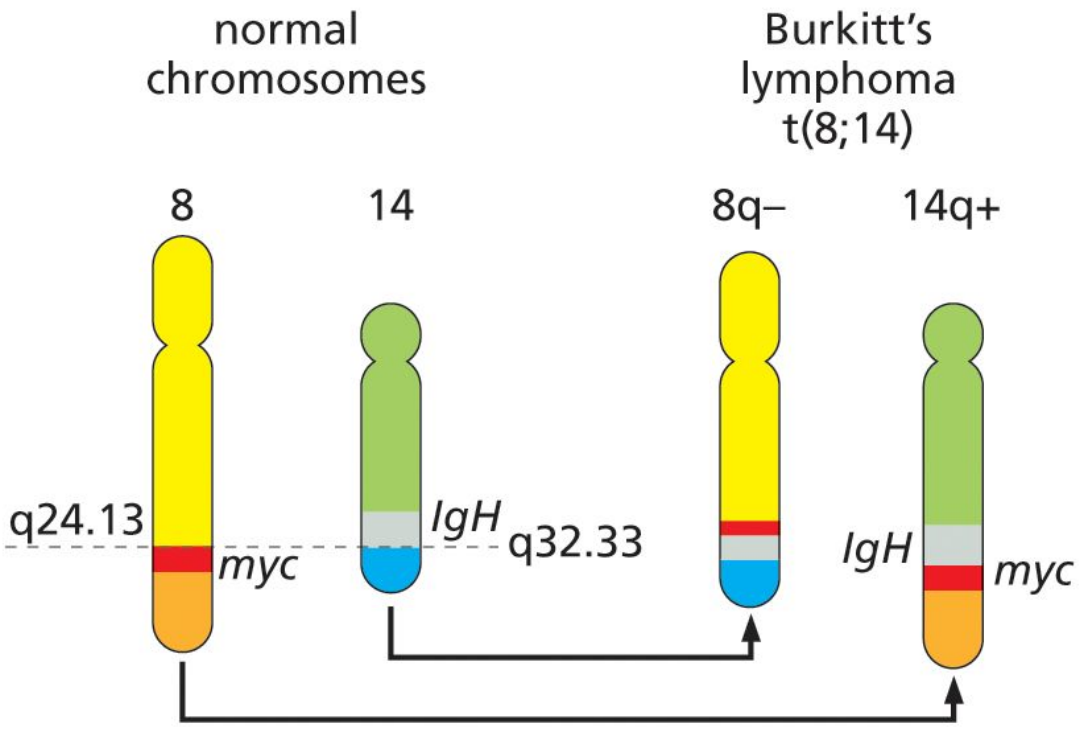
As Figure 4.4 indicates, certain types of tumor, such as Wilms tumor, show multiple regions of chromosomal amplification, while others, such as Ewing's sarcoma, usually exhibit amplification of only a single chromosomal region. In most cases, the identities of the critical growth-promoting genes in these chromosomal regions remain elusive. Even within a single tumor, such as the breast cancers described above, multiple chromosomal regions that have undergone gene amplification are often found (see Table 4.3). As discussed later (Chapter 11), these multiple changes are thought to collaborate with one another to create the fully neoplastic phenotypes of cancer cells. The molecular mechanisms responsible for generating gene amplifications remain poorly understood; however, in the case of tandem duplications that yield HSRs, detailed structural analyses of amplified genes have provided good clues as to how these may occur (see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.4**).

An even more unusual way of deregulating *myc* expression levels has already been cited (see Section 3.11). Recall that the insertional mutagenesis mechanism generated by integrated retrovirus proviruses causes the expression of the c-*myc* proto-oncogene

to be placed under the transcriptional control of an ALV provirus that has integrated nearby in the chromosomal DNA. The resulting constitutive overexpression of c-*myc* RNA and thus Myc protein results, once again, in flooding of the cell with excessive growth-promoting signals.

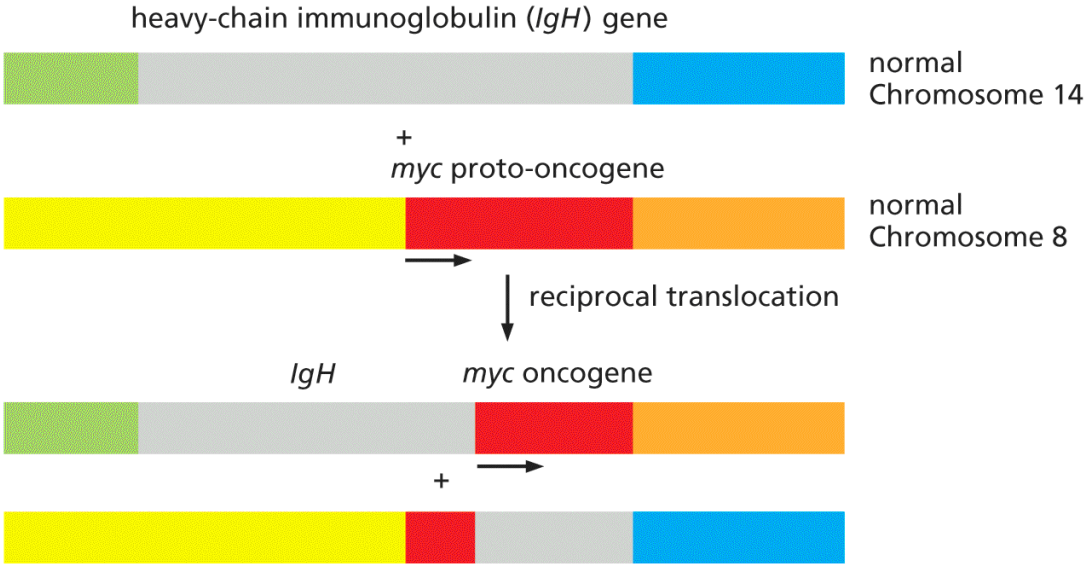
Such activation by provirus integration hinted at a more general mode of activation of the c-*myc* proto-oncogene: even while continuing to reside at its normal chromosomal site, c-*myc* can become involved in cancer development if it happens to come under the control of foreign transcriptional promoters. In the disease of Burkitt's lymphoma (BL), this principle was validated in a most dramatic way. This tumor occurs with significant frequency among young children in East and Central Africa (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.7**). The etiologic agents of this disease include chronic infections both by Epstein–Barr virus (EBV, a distant relative of human herpesviruses; Section 3.4) and by malarial parasites, which appear to contribute to tumor pathogenesis by suppressing the immune response to EBV.

Neither of these etiologic factors sheds light on the nature of a critical genetic change occurring inside Burkitt's lymphoma cells that is responsible for their runaway proliferation. However, careful examination of metaphase chromosome spreads of these tumor cells uncovered a striking clue: the tumor cells almost invariably carried chromosomal translocations (see also Figure 2.20). Such alterations fuse a region from one chromosome with a region from a second, unrelated chromosome (**Figure 4.8**). Translocations were usually found to be *reciprocal*, in the sense that a region from chromosome A lands on chromosome B, while the displaced segment of chromosome B ends up being linked to chromosome A. In the case of Burkitt's lymphomas, three distinct, alternative chromosomal translocations were found, involving human Chromosomes 2, 14, or 22. The three translocations were united by the fact that in each case, a region from one of these three chromosomes was fused to a section of Chromosome 8.



Chromosomes 8 and 14, each in its normal and its translocated state. A dashed line labeled q24.13 on the left and q32.33 on the right indicates where on each chromosome the break occurs, in a t(8;14) translocation that produces abnormal chromosomes 8q minus and 14q plus.

(A)



The t(8;14) translocation more schematically and in greater detail. Normal chromosome 14 contains a heavy-chain immunoglobulin (I g H) gene, shown in gray, followed by a blue end, while normal chromosome 8 contains an m y c proto-oncogene, in red, followed by an orange end. During translocation, most of the red m y c and all of the orange tail moves onto chromosome 14, displacing part of the gray l g H and all of the blue tail, which moves onto chromosome 8. Chromosome 14 now has an m y c oncogene next to l g H.

(B)

Figure 4.8 Chromosomal translocations in Burkitt's lymphomas (A) In the genomes of Burkitt's lymphoma (BL) cells, the expression of the c-*myc* gene is placed under control of the transcription-controlling enhancer sequences (see Figure 1.15) of an immunoglobulin gene as a direct consequence of reciprocal chromosomal translocations. These translocations juxtapose immunoglobulin genes on Chromosomes 2, 14, or 22 with the *myc* gene on Chromosome 8. (Translocations involving either the κ, λ, or heavy immunoglobulin chain occur in 9%, 16%, and 75% of BLs, respectively.) The most common translocation, t(8;14), is shown here. (B) Depicted is a molecular map of the translocation event that places the c-*myc* gene (*red rectangle*) on Chromosome 8 under the control of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain sequences (*IgH; gray rectangle*) on human Chromosome 14. Because the immunoglobulin enhancer sequences (see Figure 1.15) direct high, constitutive expression, the normal modulation of *myc* expression in response to physiologic signals is abrogated. The resulting *myc* oncogene initially makes structurally normal Myc protein but in abnormally high amounts. (Subsequently occurring point mutations in the *myc* reading frame may further potentiate the function of the Myc oncoprotein.) (Data from P. Leder et al., *Science* 222:765–771, 1983.)

In 1982 researchers realized that the *myc* (that is, c-*myc*) proto-oncogene could be found in the region on human Chromosome 8 that is involved in all three of these translocations. On the other side of the fusion site (often termed the chromosomal breakpoint) were found the transcription-promoting sequences from any one of three distinct immunoglobulin (antibody) genes. Thus, the immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene cluster is found on Chromosome 14, the κ antibody light-chain gene is located on Chromosome 2, and the λ antibody light-chain gene is found on Chromosome 22. There is clear evidence that the enzymes responsible for rearranging the sequences of antibody genes during the development of the immune system (described in Chapter 15) occasionally lose specificity and, instead of creating a rearranged antibody gene, inadvertently fuse part of an antibody gene with the *myc* proto-oncogene. Parenthetically, none of this explains the role of EBV in the pathogenesis of Burkitt's lymphoma (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.8**).

Suddenly, the grand design underlying these complex chromosomal changes became clear, and it was a simple one: these translocations separate the *myc* gene from its normal transcriptional promoter and place it, instead, under the control of one of three highly active transcriptional regulators, each part of an immunoglobulin gene (see Figure 4.8). Once its expression is subjugated by the antibody gene promoters, *myc* becomes a potent oncogene and drives the relentless proliferation of lymphoid cells in which these transcriptional promoters are highly active. Hence, the proliferation of the rare cell that happens to acquire such a deregulated *myc* gene will be strongly favored.

Since these discoveries, several dozen distinct chromosomal translocations have been found to cause deregulated expression of known proto-oncogenes; many of these genes remain poorly characterized (**Table 4.4**). Altogether, more than 300 distinct recurring translocations (that is, those that have been encountered in multiple, independently arising human tumors) have been cataloged, and more than 100 of the novel hybrid genes created by these translocations have been isolated by molecular cloning. More often than not, each of these translocations can be found in a small set of hematopoietic tumors. However, solid tumors are increasingly found to harbor specific translocations, some quite common. For example, in 2005, ~70% of prostate carcinomas were found to harbor chromosomal translocations that lead to deregulated expression of one of two transcription factors (termed ERG and ETV1); given the high incidence of prostate cancer in Western populations, these may represent the most frequent translocations in human cancer. (Indeed, the dearth of translocations discovered to date in solid tumors may simply be a consequence of the difficulties of dissociating solid tumors and studying the karyotypes of their constituent cells.) Yet other chromosomal translocations function in an entirely different fashion to foster cancer outgrowth (**Sidebar 4.2**).

Table 4.4 Translocations in human tumors that deregulate proto-oncogene expression and thereby create oncogenes

Oncogene	Neoplasm
myc	Burkitt’s lymphoma; other B- and T-cell malignancies
bcl-2	follicular B-cell lymphoma
bcl-3	chronic B-cell lymphoma

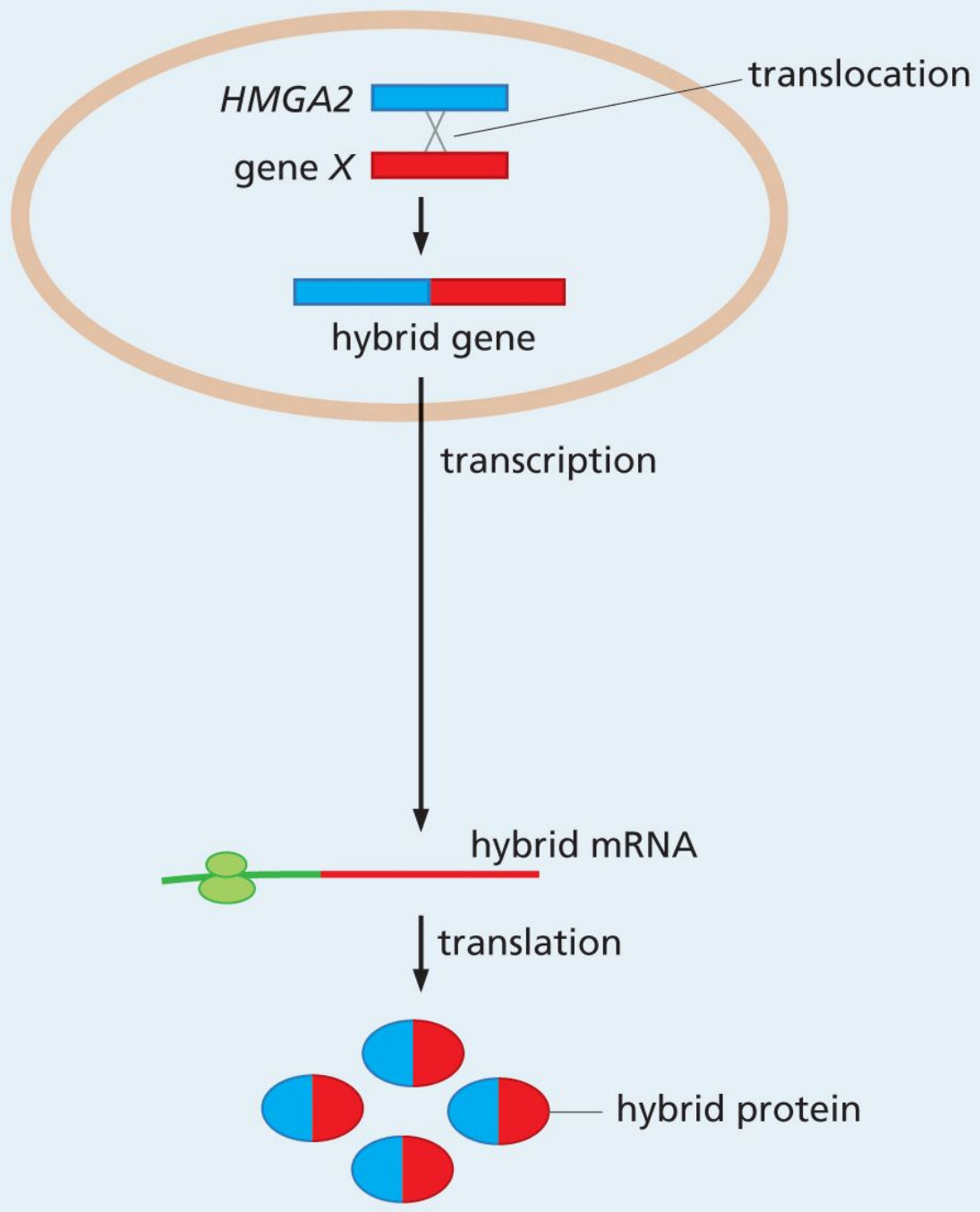
bcl-6	diffuse B-cell lymphoma
hox1	acute T-cell leukemia
lyl	acute T-cell leukemia
rhom-1	acute T-cell leukemia
rhom-2	acute T-cell leukemia
tal-1	acute T-cell leukemia
tal-2	acute T-cell leukemia
tan-1	acute T-cell leukemia
etv-1, *etv-4*	prostate carcinoma
erg	prostate carcinoma

Adapted from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Boston and London: Jones and Bartlett, 1995. With permission from Jones and Bartlett.

Sidebar 4.2 Chromosomal translocations can act indirectly to perturb levels of gene expression

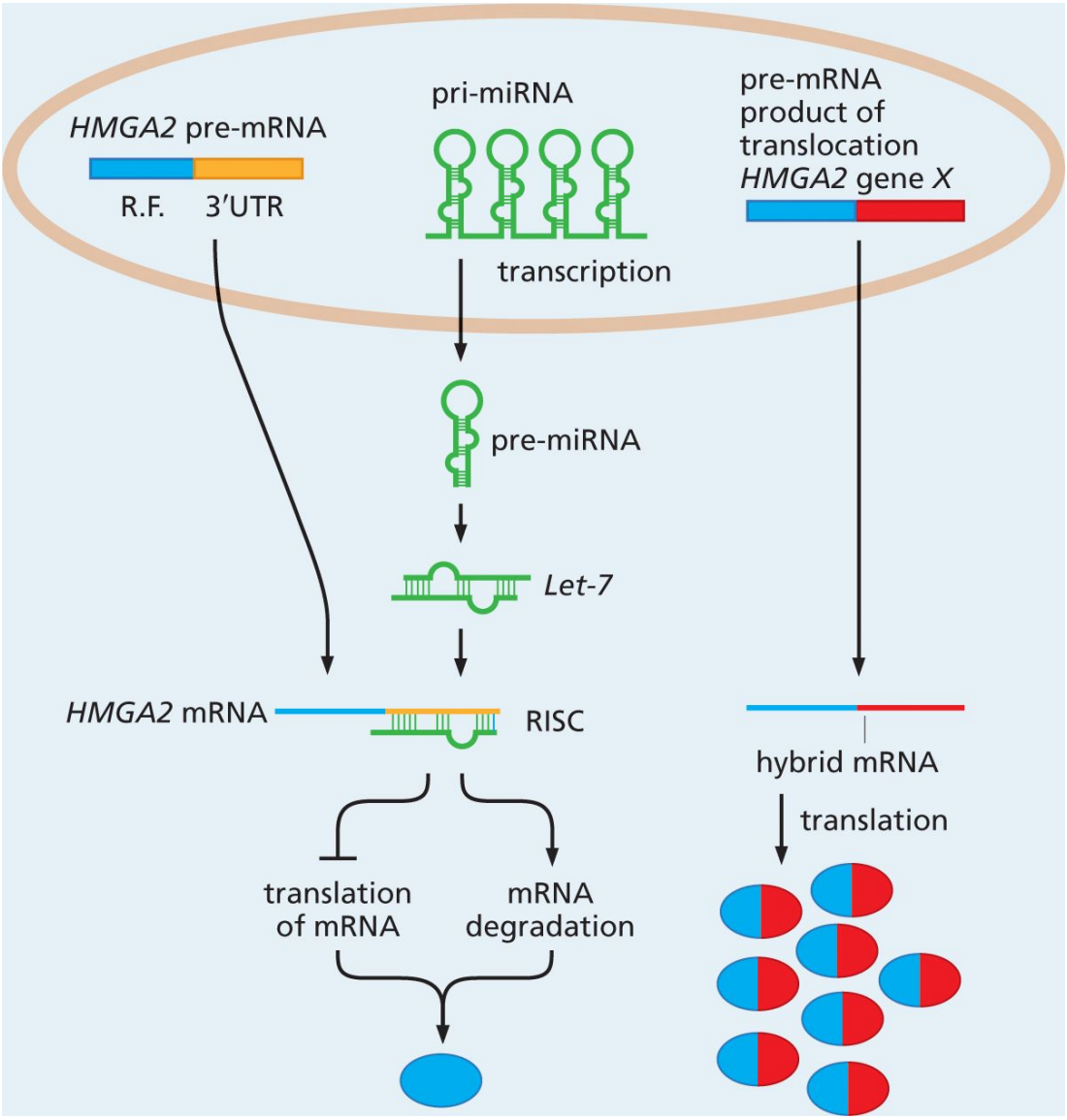
The discovery of microRNAs and the roles they play in gene regulation (see Section 1.9) have made it possible to understand certain chromosomal translocations whose precise molecular mechanisms-of-action were previously obscure. In one case, a small non-histone nuclear protein, termed HMGA2, is known to be overexpressed in a variety of benign and malignant tumors and to be capable of functioning as an oncoprotein. Its gene is frequently found to undergo translocations that sever the

sequences specifying the 3′ untranslated region (3′UTR) from the reading frame of the *HMGA2* mRNA while joining the reading frame of the *HMGA2* gene with that of a second gene (**Figure 4.9**). It was long assumed that the resulting fusion protein enhanced the oncogenic functions of HMGA2 (similar to situations that we will encounter shortly in Section 4.5). However, deletion of the protein sequences that became fused to HMGA2 did not affect the transforming powers of the hybrid protein. This led to the realization that the translocation served another purpose: it caused deletion of seven recognition sites for the *Let-7* microRNA (see Section 1.9) that are normally present in the 3′UTR of the *HMGA2* mRNA. This loss, in turn, enables the resulting mRNA to escape *Let-7*–mediated translational inhibition and eventual degradation. The end result is greatly increased levels of the *HMGA2* mRNA and protein, which proceeds, via still poorly understood mechanisms, to alter chromatin configuration (see Section 1.8) and thereby to facilitate cell transformation. In this instance, translocations serve to liberate a proto-oncogene from negative regulation rather than fusing it with a positive regulator.



A translocation within the nucleus fuses H M G A 2 with gene X to form a hybrid gene. From there, transcription produces hybrid R N A outside the nucleus, and then translation produces multiple copies of a hybrid protein.

(A)



Normally, transcription of p r i-micro R N A within the nucleus produces p r e-micro R N A outside the nucleus, which produces the Let-7 protein. This protein binds to the 3 prime untranslated region of H M G A 2 pre-m R N A to form an R N A-induced silencing complex. This suppresses translation of m R N A and promotes m R N A degradation. The result is production of a small amount of protein corresponding only to the reading frame on H M G A 2. When translocation instead produces p r e-m R N A consisting of H M G A 2 joined to gene X, translation of the resulting hybrid m R N A produces many hybrid proteins.

(B)

Figure 4.9 Translocations liberating an mRNA from miRNA inhibition The *HMGA2* gene encodes a chromatin-binding, proliferation-promoting protein whose biochemical function is still poorly understood; this protein (often present as a hybrid protein in which HMGA2 is fused to the protein encoded by a second gene) is expressed at elevated levels in a variety of cancer cell types in the absence of detectable gene amplification. (A) A chromosomal translocation that fuses the *HMGA2* (*aquamarine*) gene with a second gene (gene *X*, *red*) was initially assumed to create a hybrid fusion protein whose two domains collaborated to form a functional oncoprotein. (B) The true functional consequence of such a translocation was later realized to derive from severing the reading frame (R.F.) of the *HMGA2* mRNA (*blue*) from its 3′ untranslated region (3′UTR, *orange*). In the 3′UTR of this mRNA there are normally seven recognition sites that are bound by the *Let-7* microRNA (*green*); this binding reduces translation of the mRNA and drives its degradation, resulting in suppression of HMGA2 protein synthesis. (Only a single binding site is illustrated here.) These recognition sites are absent in the novel hybrid mRNA, allowing this mRNA to escape inhibition by *Let-7*; this results in synthesis of greatly increased amounts of the hybrid protein (right). Importantly, the domain of the novel protein that is encoded by the fusion partner gene (gene *X*, *red*) does not contribute to the oncogenic functions of the resulting protein. (Adapted from A.R. Young and M. Narita, *Genes Dev*. 21:1005–1009, 2007. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

In another case, chromosomal translocations, like those involving *myc*, have been found to drive enhanced expression of a microRNA by fusing the miRNA-encoding gene with a foreign transcriptional promoter. In tumors with such translocations—myelodysplasia and associated acute myelogenous leukemias—the resulting overexpressed miRNA blocks differentiation of cells, trapping them in a phenotypic state where they can evolve into highly aggressive tumors. This discovery, along with others that followed, resolves the long-standing mystery of how it is possible for chromosomal translocations that do not involve protein-encoding genes to affect cell behavior.

Returning to *myc*, we see that there are three alternative ways of activating the c-*myc* proto-oncogene—through provirus integration, gene amplification, or chromosomal translocation—all converging on a common mechanistic theme. Invariably, the gene is deprived of its normal physiologic regulation and is forced instead to be expressed at high, constitutive levels.

In general, the mechanisms leading to the overexpression of genes in cancer cells remain poorly understood. Some overexpression, as indicated here, is achieved through gene amplification and chromosomal translocation. But even more frequently,

genes that are present in normal configuration and at normal copy number are transcribed at excessively high levels in cancer cells through the actions of deregulated transcription factors; the latter are largely uncharacterized. To complicate matters, gene amplification does not always lead to overexpression. Instead, only 40 to 60% of the genes that are found to be amplified in cancer cell genomes show corresponding increases in their RNA transcripts (and thus proteins). Such observations indicate that the expression levels of many genes are regulated by complex negative-feedback mechanisms that ensure physiologically appropriate levels of expression even in the presence of excess copies of these genes.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

amplicon
: A defined stretch of (chromosomal) DNA that undergoes amplification flanked on both sides by DNA segments that are present in normal copy number.

translocation
: (1) Rearrangement of chromosomes that results in the fusion of two chromosomal segments that are not normally attached to one another, often resulting in a microscopically visible alteration of karyotype. (2) Movement of a physical entity from one part of the cell to another. (3) Movement of a ribosome down an mRNA being translated.

breakpoint
: Location in a chromosomal region or gene at which it becomes fused through chromosomal translocation with another chromosomal region or gene.

immunoglobulin
: An antibody molecule assembled from two heavy and two light chains.

myelodysplasia
: Condition in which incompletely differentiated cells of one or another myeloid lineage accumulate in the blood, often accompanied by a reduction in the concentration within the circulation of properly differentiated cells of bone marrow origin.

negative feedback
: A regulatory process whereby a stimulatory signal upstream in a signaling pathway activates a downstream target that proceeds to inhibit the source of the initial upstream signal, thereby reducing further overall signaling. *See also* **positive feedback**.

OceanofPDF.com

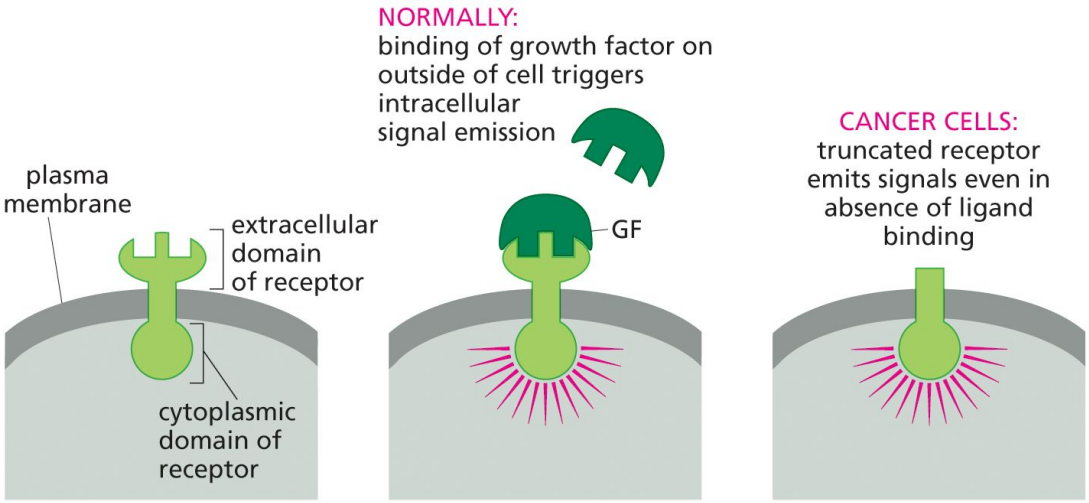
Footnotes

- aThe listing of several genes indicates the frequent co-amplification of a number of closely linked genes; only the products of the most frequently amplified genes are described in the right column.Return to reference a
- bAbbreviations: TF, transcription factor; RTK, receptor tyrosine kinase; CDK, cyclin-dependent kinase; G protein, guanine nucleotide-binding protein; HNSCC, head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas; SCC, squamous cell carcinomas.Return to reference b

OceanofPDF.com

4.5 A diverse array of structural changes in proteins can also lead to oncogene activation

The point mutation discovered in *ras* genes was the first of many mutations that were found to affect the structures of proto-oncogene–encoded proteins (rather than their expression levels), converting them into active oncoproteins. As an important example, the formation of certain human tumors, such as gastric and mammary carcinomas and glioblastoma brain tumors, involves the protein that serves as the cell surface receptor for epidermal growth factor (EGF). As we will discuss in detail in the next chapter, this receptor protein extends from the extracellular space through the plasma membrane of cells into their cytoplasm. Normally, the EGF receptor, like almost 60 similarly structured receptors, recognizes the presence of one of its cognate ligands (notably EGF) in the extracellular space and, having bound this ligand, informs the cell interior of this encounter. In about one-third of glioblastomas, however, the EGF receptor has been found to be decapitated, lacking most of its extracellular domain (**Figure 4.10**). We now know that such truncated receptors send growth-stimulatory signals into cells, even in the absence of any EGF. In so doing, they act as oncoproteins to drive cell proliferation. In Chapter 5, we will describe more precisely how structural alterations of growth factor receptors convert them into potent oncoproteins.

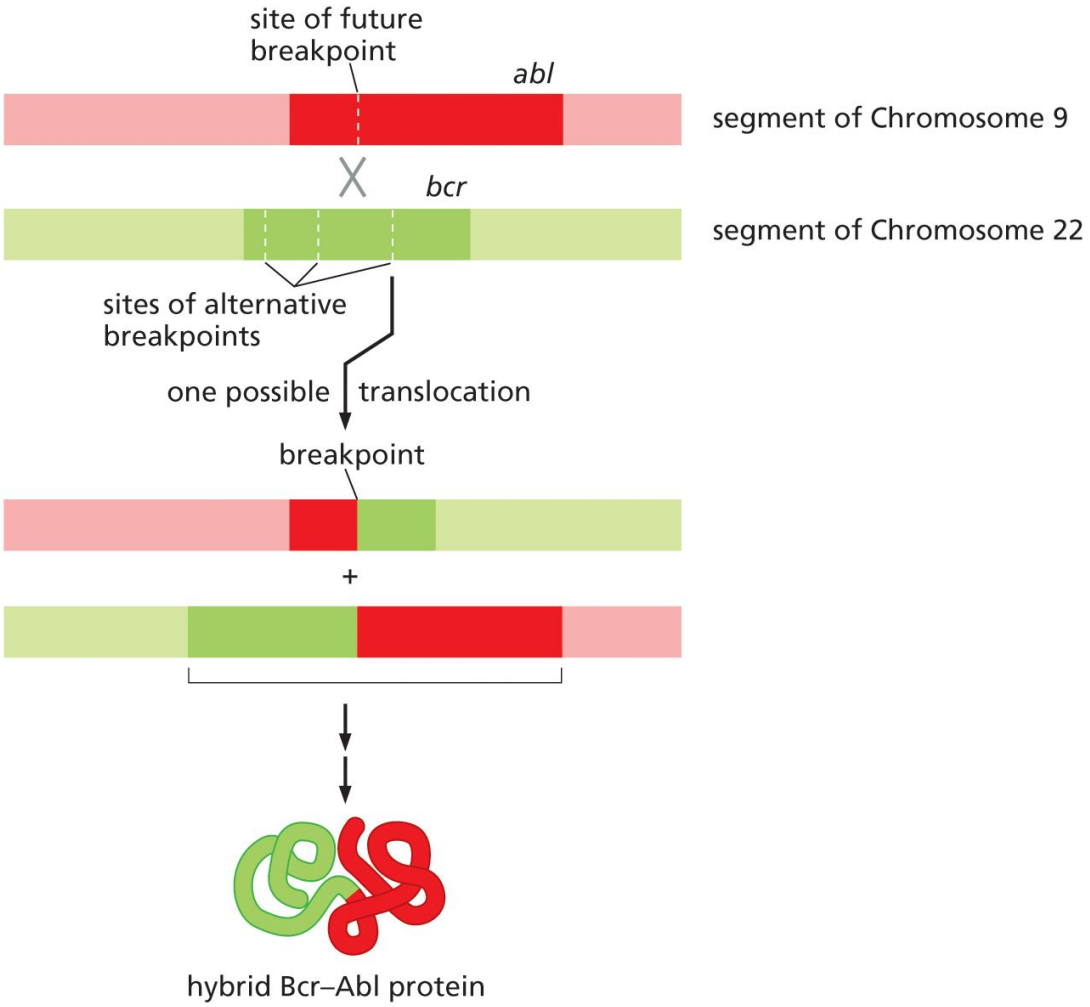


An illustration shows the behavior of growth factor surface receptors in normal cells and in cancer cells. A surface receptor within a plasma membrane has a cytoplasmic domain at one end and an extracellular domain at the other end.

Normally, the extracellular domain corresponds, in lock-and-key fashion, to a particular growth factor, and it is the binding of that growth factor to the extracellular domain which triggers signal emission on the cytoplasmic side. In cancer cells, the extracellular domain is truncated, and signal emission on the cytoplasmic side occurs even in the absence of any growth factor ligand binding.
Figure 4.10 Deregulated firing of growth factor receptors Normally, growth factor receptors displayed on the plasma membrane of a cell release signals into the cell interior only when the extracellular domain of the receptor has bound the appropriate growth factor (GF; i.e., the *ligand* of the receptor, *dark green*). However, if the extracellular domain of certain receptors is deleted because of a mutation in the receptor-encoding gene or alternative splicing of the receptor pre-mRNA, the resulting truncated receptor protein then emits signals into the cell without binding its growth factor ligand.

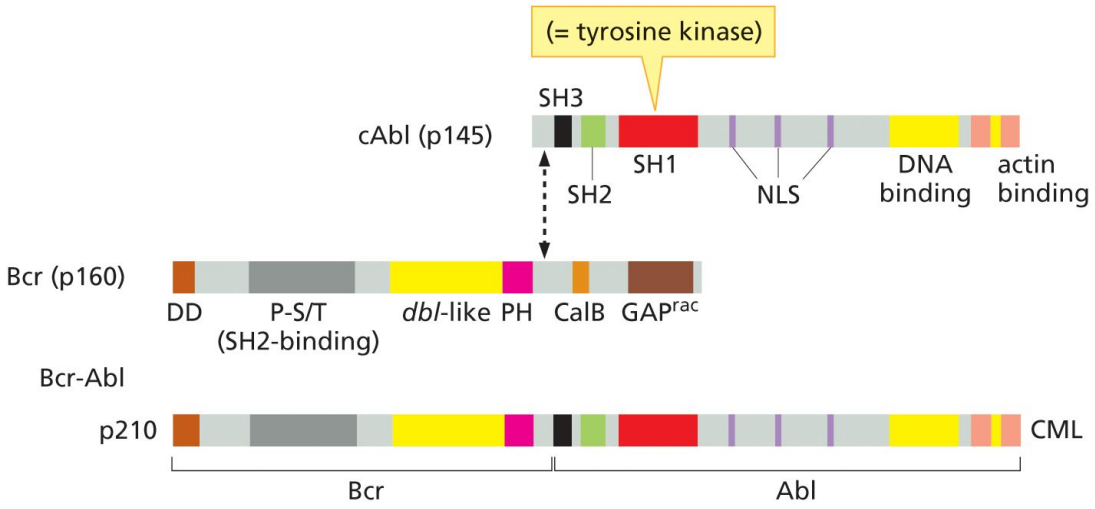
The chromosomal translocations cited in the previous section result, in one way or another, in *deregulated expression* of oncogenic proteins or microRNAs; even more common are translocations that lead to the formation of *novel hybrid proteins* and thereby create functionally altered proteins. The best known of these are the chromosomal translocations found in more than 95% of the cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML; see Figure 2.20). These CML translocations, which result in the synthesis of hybrid proteins, contrast with those found in Burkitt's lymphomas (see Figure 4.8), in which the *transcription-regulating* sequences of one gene are juxtaposed with the reading frame of a second gene.

To the right of the CML translocation breakpoint illustrated in **Figure 4.11** are sequences that encode the protein made by the *abl* proto-oncogene. The *abl* gene was originally discovered by virtue of its presence as an acquired oncogene in **Abe**l**l**son murine leukemia virus, a rapidly tumorigenic retrovirus (refer to Table 3.3). The *abl* gene, which maps to Chromosome 9q34 (that is, the fourth band of the third region of the long arm of human Chromosome 9), was found, upon examination of various CMLs, to be fused with sequences that are clustered in a narrow region in Chromosome 22q11. [The standard notation used here is t(9;22)(q34;q11), where t signifies a translocation, q the long arm, and p the short arm of a chromosome.] This area on Chromosome 22 was called the **b**reakpoint **c**luster **r**egion. Subsequently, all of these breakpoints were found to lie within the gene that came to be called *bcr*. The resulting fusion of Abl with Bcr amino acid sequences deregulates the normally well-controlled Abl protein, causing it to emit growth-promoting signals in a strong, deregulated fashion. (Two other alternative breakpoints in the *bcr* gene result in the formation of the slightly different Bcr–Abl fusion proteins found in other hematopoietic malignancies; these alternative Bcr–Abl proteins are not illustrated in Figure 4.11.)



The translocation of segments of chromosomes 9 and 22. A segment of chromosome 9 contains the a b l gene, within which a future breakpoint site is marked, and a segment of chromosome 22 contains the b c r gene, within which three possible alternative breakpoint sites are marked. One of the three possible translocations is shown to result in a hybrid B c r–A b l protein.

(A)



The domain structures of three proteins. The first, p145, is encoded by c A b l. It contains S H 3 and S H 2 segments, an S H 1 segment which is tyrosine kinase, then three N L S segments followed by a D N A binding segment, and finally an actin binding segment. The second protein, p160, is encoded by B c r. It contains a D D segment, a P-S slash T d b l-like S H 2-binding segment, a P H segment, and finally Cal B and G A P r a c segments. The third protein, p210, is the Ba hybrid protein. It contains all the named segments from p145 and segments D D through P H from p160.

(B)

Figure 4.11 Formation of the *bcr–abl* oncogene (A) Reciprocal chromosomal translocations between human Chromosomes 9 and 22, which carry the *abl* and *bcr* genes, respectively, result in the formation of fused, hybrid genes that encode hybrid Bcr–Abl proteins commonly found in chronic myelogenous leukemias (CML). Two other alternative breakpoint sites in the *bcr* gene are involved in *bcr–abl* translocations (*not shown here*) arising in certain other hematopoietic malignancies. (B) The domain structures of the proteins encoded by the normal *bcr* and *abl* genes are shown here (*above and middle*). Each is a multidomain, multifunctional protein, as indicated by the labels attached to the colored areas. The chromosomal translocation found in almost all cases of CML results in the fusion of most of the reading frame of the *Bcr* gene with most of the reading frame of the *Abl* gene (*below*). The approximate locations of the translocation breakpoint are indicated by the double-headed arrow. The fusion causes deregulated firing of the tyrosine kinase of the fusion protein, which is equivalent to the SH1 domain labeled here; this firing (to be discussed in Section 6.3) is responsible for most of the transforming effects of the newly formed oncoprotein. (B, adapted from A.M. Pendergast, in A.M. Carella, Chronic Myeloid Leukaemia:

Biology and Treatment. London: Martin Dunitz, 2001. With permission from Taylor and Francis.)

Since the discovery of the *bcr–abl* translocation, dozens of other, quite distinct translocations have been documented that also result in the formation of hybrid proteins, most but not all of which are encountered in small subsets of hematopoietic tumors (for examples, see **Table 4.5**). Possibly the greatest diversity derives from the *MLL1* (mixed-lineage leukemia) gene, occasionally termed *ALL1*, which encodes a histone methylase (see Section 1.8); it participates in translocations with at least 50 distinct fusion-partner genes, resulting in a diverse array of hybrid proteins, all of which appear to affect chromatin structure and function. Because each type of translocation is found only rarely, the functions of many of the resulting hybrid proteins remain obscure. In the case of solid tumors, an example of such fusion proteins comes from a class of pediatric tumors—alveolar rhabdomyosarcomas—80% of which are found to harbor a translocation that fuses the domains of two transcription factors (PAX3 or PAX7 and FKHR), thereby yielding a protein with far more potent transcription-activating powers than either of its two normal precursors possessed. (This novel transcription factor seems to expand the population of skeletal muscle progenitor cells, thereby setting the stage for acquisition of additional mutations that then lead to the eruption of highly aggressive tumors.) Yet other less common chromosomal rearrangements, such as inversions of discrete segments of DNA, may also serve to generate novel oncogenes and often novel oncoproteins.

Table 4.5 Translocations in human tumors that cause the formation of oncogenic fusion proteins of novel structure and function

Oncogene	**Neoplasm**
bcr/abl	chronic myelogenous leukemia; acute lymphocytic leukemia
dek/can	acute myeloid leukemia
E2A/pbx1	acute pre-B-cell leukemia
PML/RAR	acute promyelocytic leukemia

Oncogene	**Neoplasm**
tls/erg	myeloid leukemia
irel/urg	B-cell lymphoma
CBFβ/MYH11	acute myeloid leukemia
aml1/mtg8	acute myeloid leukemia
ews/fli	Ewing's sarcoma
lyt-10/Cα1	B-cell lymphoma
hrx/enl	acute leukemias
hrx/af4	acute leukemias
NPM/ALK	large-cell lymphomas
PAX3/FKHR	alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma
EML4/ALK[a]	non-small-cell lung cancer
MLL/various	acute leukemias

Adapted from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Boston and London: Jones and Bartlett, 1995. With permission from Jones and Bartlett.

Every chromosomal rearrangement, even those occurring repeatedly in many tumors of a given type, appears to represent the product of an exceedingly rare genetic accident. Some of these accidents generate deregulated gene or protein expression while others encode novel hybrid proteins. However, once formed, these translocations clearly favor the outgrowth of the cells that carry them, this being indicated by the presence of these chromosomal translocations in all of the neoplastic cells within resulting tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

receptor
: Protein found on the plasma membrane or in the nucleus within a cell that is capable of specifically binding a signaling molecule (its cognate ligand). Most types of receptors emit signals, such as those inducing cell proliferation, in response to such binding. *See also* **ligand**.

ligand
: Molecule that binds specifically to a receptor and thereby activates its signaling powers. *See also* **receptor**.

chronic myelogenous leukemia
: An excess of the cells originating in the bone marrow that are precursors of granulocytes; these cells accumulate in large numbers in the blood of patients. *See also* **granulocyte**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aWhile often termed a translocation, this gene fusion arises from inversion of a short segment of the short arm of Chromosome 2 without the involvement of other chromosomal arms.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

4.6 Synopsis and prospects

By the late 1970s, disparate lines of evidence concerning cancer genes coalesced into a relatively simple idea. The genomes of mammals and birds contain a cohort of proto-oncogenes, which function to regulate normal cell proliferation and differentiation. Alterations of these genes that affect either the control of their expression or the structure of their encoded proteins can lead to overly active growth-promoting genes, which appear in cancer cells as activated oncogenes. Once formed, such oncogenes proceed to drive cell multiplication and, in so doing, play a central role in the pathogenesis of cancer.

Many of these cellular genes were originally identified because of their presence in the genomes of rapidly transforming retroviruses, such as Rous sarcoma virus, avian erythroblastosis virus, and Harvey sarcoma virus. Subsequently, transfection experiments revealed the presence of potent transforming genes in the genomes of cells that had been transformed by exposure to chemical carcinogens and cells derived from spontaneously arising human tumors. These tumor cells had no associations with retrovirus infections. Nonetheless, the oncogenes that they carried were found to be related to those carried by transforming retroviruses. This meant that a common repertoire of proto-oncogenes could be activated by two alternative routes: retrovirus acquisition or somatic mutation.

The somatic mutations that caused proto-oncogene activation could be divided into two categories—those that caused changes in the structure of encoded proteins and those that led to elevated, deregulated expression of these proteins. Mutations affecting structure included the point mutations affecting *ras* proto-oncogenes and the chromosomal translocations that yielded hybrid genes such as *bcr–abl*. Elevated expression could be achieved in human tumors through gene amplification or chromosomal translocations, such as those that place the *myc* gene under the control of immunoglobulin enhancer sequences.

These revelations about the role of mutant cellular genes in cancer pathogenesis eclipsed for some years the observations that certain human cancers, some of them quite common, are associated with and likely caused by infectious agents, notably viruses and bacteria. With the passage of time, however, the importance of infections in human cancer pathogenesis became clear. We now know that about one-fifth of human deaths from cancer worldwide are associated with tumors triggered by infectious agents. Thus, most of the 9% of worldwide cancer mortality caused by stomach cancer is associated with long-term infections by *Helicobacter pylori* bacteria. Six percent of cancer mortality is caused by carcinomas of the liver (hepatomas), almost all of which are associated with chronic hepatitis B and C virus infections. And the 5% of cancer mortality from cervical carcinomas is almost entirely attributable to human papillomavirus (HPV) infections (**Table 4.6**).

Table 4.6 Viruses implicated in human cancer causation

Virus[a]	**Virus family**	**Cells infected**	**Human malignancy**	**Transmission route**
EBV[b]	Herpesviridae	B cells	Burkitt's lymphoma	saliva
		oropharyngeal epithelial cells	nasopharyngeal carcinoma	saliva
		lymphoid	Hodgkin's disease[c]	?
HTLV-I	Retroviridae	T cells	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	parenteral, venereal[d]

Virus[a]	Virus family	Cells infected	Human malignancy	Transmission route
HHV-8[e]	Herpesviridae	endothelial cells	Kaposi's sarcoma, body cavity lymphoma	venereal, vertical[d]
HBV	Hepadnaviridae	hepatocytes	hepatocellular carcinoma	parenteral, venereal
HCV	Flaviviridae	hepatocytes	hepatocellular carcinoma	parenteral
HPV	Papillomaviridae	cervical epithelial	cervical carcinoma	venereal
JCV[f]	Polyomaviridae	central nervous system	astrocytoma, glioblastoma	?
MCV	Polyomaviridae	Merkel cells in skin	Merkel cell carcinoma	?

Adapted in part from J. Butel, *Carcinogenesis* 21:405–426, 2000.

Somehow, we must integrate the carcinogenic mechanisms activated by these various infectious agents into the larger scheme of how human cancers arise—the scheme that rests largely on the discoveries, described in this chapter, of cellular oncogenes. In the case of most of the cancer-causing

viruses, it is clear that they introduce viral oncogenes into cells that contribute to the transformation phenotype. Included here are HPV, MCV, Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) and human herpesvirus type 8 (HHV-8).

Most of these viruses carry at least one gene that alters the physiology of the cells that it infects. In each case, it seems that these virus-induced changes are driven by the need of the virus to create an intracellular environment that is more hospitable for its own replication. Of note, the viral genes that induce these changes, which can fairly be termed viral oncogenes, have resided in viral genomes for millions—if not hundreds of millions—of years rather than being rare aberrations of the sort that have led to the formation of transforming retroviruses like Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). Hence, cancer, to the extent that it ensues from infections by these viruses, is an unintended side-effect of the changes favoring viral replication. In Chapters 8 and 9 we shall see precisely how several of these viral oncogenes function to deregulate cell proliferation and protect cells from apoptosis (programmed cell death), two critical changes that contribute to the formation of human cancers. Only in Chapter 11 do we return to HBV and HCV and the mechanisms by which they induce cancer without deploying viral oncogenes and oncoproteins.

In the next two chapters we focus on the cellular genes that trigger cancer as a consequence of somatic mutations and the various biochemical mechanisms-of-action of the encoded oncoproteins. At first, the discoveries of cellular oncogenes seemed, on their own, to provide the definitive answers about the origins and growth of human tumors. But soon it became clear that cellular oncogenes and their actions could explain only a part of human cancer development. Yet other types of genetic elements were clearly involved in programming the runaway proliferation of cancer cells. Moreover, a definitive understanding of cancer development depended on understanding the complex machinery inside cells that enables them to respond to the growth-promoting signals released by oncoproteins. So, the discovery of cellular oncogenes was a beginning, a very good one, but still only a beginning. Two decades of further work were required before a more complete understanding of cancer pathogenesis could be assembled.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aMost of these viruses carry one or more growth-promoting genes/oncogenes in their genomes.Return to reference a
- bEBV is also involved in transplant-related lymphoproliferative disorder, gastric cancer, and cutaneous leiomyosarcoma (in patients with AIDS).Return to reference b
- cThese lymphomas, which bear copies of EBV genomes, appear in immunosuppressed patients.Return to reference c
- dParenteral, blood-borne; venereal, via sexual intercourse; vertical, parent to child.Return to reference d
- dParenteral, blood-borne; venereal, via sexual intercourse; vertical, parent to child.Return to reference d
- eAlso known as KSHV, Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus.Return to reference e
- fJCV (JC virus, a close relative of SV40) infects more than 75% of the human population by age 15, but the listed virus-containing tumors are not common. Much correlative evidence supports the role of JCV in the transformation of human central nervous system cells, but evidence of a causal role in tumor formation is lacking.Return to reference f

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Unable to find tumor viruses in the majority of human cancers, researchers in the mid-1970s were left with one main theory of how most human cancers arise: the mutation by carcinogens of normal growth-controlling genes, converting them into oncogenes.
- To verify this model's prediction that transformed cells carry mutated genes functioning as oncogenes, a novel experimental strategy was devised: DNA from chemically transformed cells was introduced into normal cells—the procedure of transfection—and the recipient cells were then monitored to determine whether they too had become transformed.
- Cultures of NIH 3T3 cells that had been transfected with DNA from chemically transformed mouse cells yielded numerous transformants, which proved to be both anchorage-independent and tumorigenic; this indicated that the chemically transformed cells carried genes that could function as oncogenes and that oncogenes could arise in the genomes of cells independently of viral infections.
- Further experiments using human tumor donor cells transfected into murine cells showed that the oncogenes could act across species and tissue boundaries to induce cell transformation.
- The oncogenes detected in human tumor cells by transfection experiments and the oncogenes of transforming retroviruses were both found to derive from the same group of preexisting normal cellular genes. This meant that normal proto-oncogenes could be activated either by retrovirus-induced modifications or by somatic mutations.
- Proto-oncogenes were often found to be present in increased copy number in human tumor cell genomes, which suggested that gene amplification resulted in increased levels of protein products that favored the proliferation of cancer cells, an example being the amplification of the *myc* gene in a variety of human cancer types.
- The activation of proto-oncogenes via deregulation by retro viral transcriptional promoters was well documented. However, the mechanism(s) by which normal human proto-oncogenes became converted into oncogenes in the absence of viruses was not evident

until the discovery of a point mutation in the H-*ras* gene that yielded a structurally altered protein with aberrant behavior. This established a new mechanism for oncogene activation based on a change in the structure of an oncogene-encoded protein rather than the expression levels of such a protein.

- Both activation mechanisms—regulatory and structural—might collaborate to create an active oncogene.
- The *myc* oncogene was initially discovered in the genome of an avian retrovirus. This oncogene was found to be activated through three alternative mechanisms in cancer cells: provirus integration, gene amplification, and chromosomal translocation.
- Gene amplification occurs through preferential replication of a segment (an amplicon) of chromosomal DNA. The result may be repeating end-to-end linear arrays of the segment, which appear under the light microscope as homogeneously staining regions (HSRs) of a chromosome. Alternatively, the region carrying the amplified segment may break away from the chromosome and be seen as small, independently replicating extrachromosomal particles (double minutes, DMs).
- Translocation involves the fusion of a region from one chromosome to a nonhomologous chromosome. Translocation can place a gene under the control of a foreign transcriptional promoter and lead to its overexpression, as is the case with the *myc* oncogenes in Burkitt's lymphomas. Translocation may also free an mRNA from inhibition by a microRNA by removing mRNA sequences normally recognized by the miRNA. Alternatively, a translocation can result in the fusion of two protein-coding sequences, leading to a hybrid protein that functions differently than the two normal proteins from which it arose, as is seen in the Bcr–Abl protein encountered in chronic myelogenous leukemias.
- Besides the amino acid substitutions that activate signaling by the Ras oncoprotein and the fusion of protein domains, as is seen in the Bcr–Abl protein, yet other changes in protein structure can lead to oncogene activation. For example, truncation of the EGF receptor leads this protein to emit growth-promoting signals in an unremitting fashion.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What evidence do we have that suggests that endogenous retrovirus genomes play little if any role in the development of human cancers?
2. Why might an assay like the transfection-focus assay fail to detect certain types of human tumor–associated oncogenes?
3. What molecular mechanisms might cause a certain region of chromosomal DNA to accidentally undergo amplification?
4. How many distinct molecular mechanisms might be responsible for converting a single proto-oncogene into a potent oncogene?
5. How many distinct molecular mechanisms might allow chromosomal translocations to activate proto-oncogenes into oncogenes?
6. What experimental search strategies would you propose if you wished to launch a systematic screening of a vertebrate genome in order to enumerate all of the proto-oncogenes that it harbors?
7. Since proto-oncogenes represent distinct liabilities for an organism, in that they can incite cancer, why have these genes not been eliminated from the genomes of chordates?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Albertson DG (2006) Gene amplification in cancer. *Trends Genet.* 22, 447–455.

Bos JL (1989) *Ras* oncogenes in human cancer: a review. *Cancer Res.* 49, 4682–4689.

Bos JL, Rehmann H & Wittinghofer A (2007) GEFs and GAPs: critical elements in the control of small G proteins. *Cell* 129, 865–877.

Boxer LM & Dang CV (2001) Translocations involving c-*myc* and c-*myc* function. *Oncogene* 20, 5595–5610.

Brodeur G (2003) Neuroblastoma: biological insights into a clinical enigma. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3, 203–216.

Butel J (2000) Viral carcinogenesis: revelation of molecular mechanisms and etiology of human disease. *Carcinogenesis* 21, 405–426.

Edwards PAW (2010) Fusion genes and chromosome translocations in the common epithelial cancers. *J. Pathol.* 220, 244–254.

Martin GS (2001) The hunting of the Src. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 2, 467–475.

Mitelman F, Johansson B & Mertens F (eds) (2004) Mitelman Database of Chromosome Aberrations in Cancer. http://cgap.nci.nih.gov/Chromosomes/Mitelman.

Mitelman F, Johansson B & Mertens F (2007) The impact of translocations and gene fusions on cancer causation. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 7, 233–245.

Moasser M (2007) The oncogene HER2: its signaling and transforming functions and its role in human cancer pathogenesis. *Oncogene* 26, 6469–6487.

Moore PS & Chang Y (2010) Why do viruses cause cancer? Highlights of the first century of human tumour virology. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 879–889.

Morris DS, Tomlins SA, Montie JE & Chinnaiyan AM (2008) The discovery and application of gene fusions in prostate cancer. *BJU Int.* 102, 276–281.

Nesbit CE, Tersak JM & Prochownik EV (1999) *Myc* oncogenes and human neoplastic disease. *Oncogene* 18, 3004–3016.

Pylayeva-Gupta Y, Grabocka E & Bar-Sagi D (2011) RAS oncogenes: weaving a tumorigenic web. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 761–774.

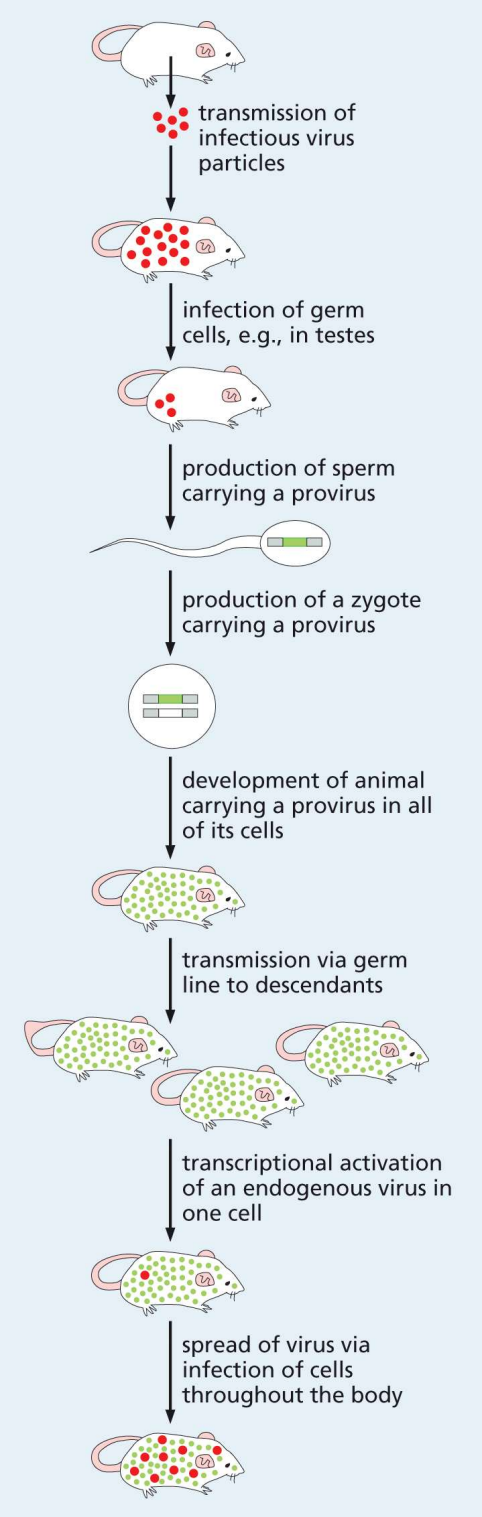
Santarius T, Shipley J, Brewers D et al. (2010) A census of amplified and overexpressed human cancer genes. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 59–64.

OceanofPDF.com

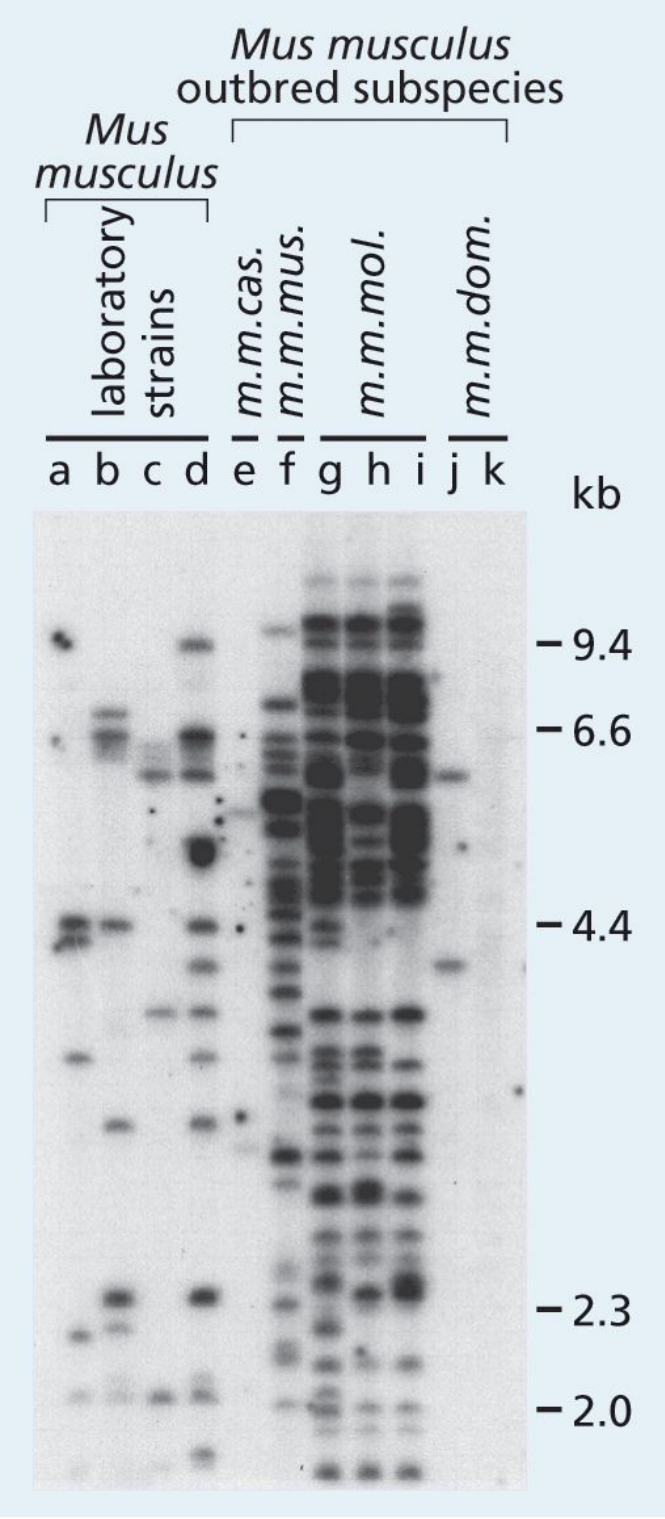
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 4.1 Endogenous viruses can explain tumor development in the absence of infectious viral spread

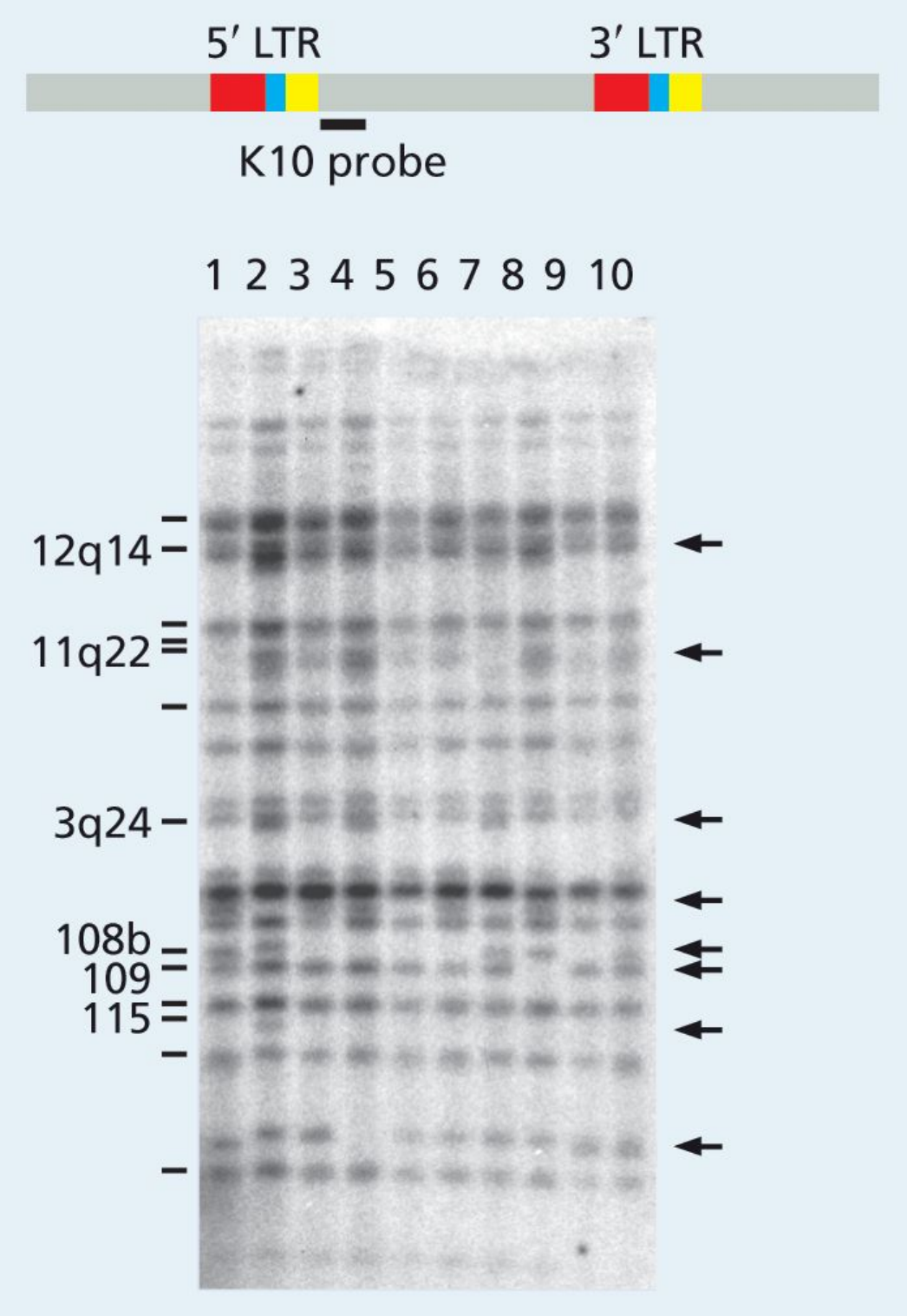
The exposure of a mouse or chicken to a retrovirus often results in the infection of a wide variety of cell types in the body including, on occasion, the cells in the gonads—ovaries or testes. Infections of cells in these organs can result in the integration of a retroviral provirus into the chromosomes of cells that serve as precursors to either sperm or egg. Such proviruses become established in a genetic configuration that is equivalent to that of the cellular genes carried by the sperm or egg. Therefore, when these gametes participate in fertilization, the provirus can be transmitted to a fertilized egg and thus to all of the cells of a resulting embryo and adult (**Figure S4.1**). This provirus might now become ensconced in the genome of all animals that descend from the initially infected animal. Such a provirus is termed an endogenous virus to distinguish it from infectious viruses that are transmissible from one individual to the next via conventional infectious cycles.


transmission of infectious virus particles
infection of germ cells, e.g., in testes
production of sperm carrying a provirus
production of a zygote carrying a provirus
development of animal carrying a provirus in all of its cells
transmission via germ line to descendants
transcriptional activation of an endogenous virus in one cell
spread of virus via infection of cells throughout the body

(A)


Mus musculus
outbred subspecies
Mus musculus
laboratory strains
m.m.cas.
m.m.mus.
m.m.mol.
m.m.dom.
a b c d e f g h i j k
kb
9.4
6.6
4.4
2.3
2.0

(B)



(C)

Figure S4.1 Origin of endogenous retroviruses (A) These viral genomes arise when retroviruses (*red dots*) succeed in establishing a systemic infection in an

organism (for example, a mouse) and infect, among other cells, a precursor cell of gametes—sperm or eggs. Once a resulting provirus (*green rectangle*) becomes integrated in the genome of a gamete (in this case sperm), it may be introduced into the genome of a fertilized egg and thereafter be distributed to all cells (*green dots*) of the organism arising from this zygote. This organism can in turn transmit the provirus to its descendants via the normal route of sexual reproduction. Activation of expression of the endogenous provirus in an animal (*red dot*) can lead to infectious spread throughout the body, viremia, and eventually leukemia (*bottom*). (B) The presence of endogenous retrovirus (ERV) genomes can be detected by probing the genomic DNA of a species using the DNA of an infectious retrovirus as the probe. Shown is a Southern blot (see Figure S4.3) of the ERV genomes present in the DNAs of a variety of mouse strains and subspecies. In this case, only the subclass of ERV genomes related to xenotropic murine retroviruses is being probed. Each band in a gel channel represents a restriction fragment in a cell genome that carries part or all of an ERV genome together with nonviral cellular DNA flanking the integrated proviral genome. The variability of ERV integration sites from one lab strain to another indicates that numerous novel ERVs have been integrated into the mouse germ line since the speciation of *Mus musculus*, from which all these strains derive. (C) In contrast to the mouse ERV genomes, those detected [using as a probe a fragment (K10) of the clone of a human ERV, *above*] in a collection of human DNAs show rather similar integration sites across the species, indicating their germ-line integration before the emergence of the human species; the polymorphic differences (*black arrows*) are largely the results of recombination between the pair of long terminal repeat (LTR) sequences at the ends of individual ERV proviruses and resulting deletion of the intervening stretches of proviral DNA. (B, from K. Tomonaga and J.M. Coffin, *J. Virol.* 73:4327–4340, 1999. With permission from American Society for Microbiology. C, from J.F. Hughes and J.M. Coffin, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101:1668–1672, 2004. With permission of National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

(Of relevance here are other viral infections that also appear to be inherited genetically within families, simply because they are present in multiple generations of such families. Such vertical transmission between multiple generations, on its own, proves little, since conventional viral infections—often between mother and offspring—may actually be responsible for the presence of certain viruses in multiple generations of a kindred.)

Responding to the discoveries of endogenous viruses, some adherents of the viral theory of cancer development proposed in the early 1970s a novel mechanism of cancer's origins. This new scheme derived from the peculiar biology of endogenous viruses. Almost always endogenous proviruses are transcriptionally silent and their presence in all of the cells of an organism is not apparent. On rare occasions, however,

it is possible to awaken the expression of such latent endogenous proviruses, which, at least in murine cells, often retain the ability to encode infectious retrovirus particles.

In fact, activation of endogenous retroviral (ERV) genomes—achieved by the transcriptional activation of these normally silent proviruses—could actually be accomplished experimentally by culturing certain types of mouse fibroblasts in the presence of the thymidine analog bromodeoxyuridine (BrdU). In response, these connective tissue cells, which were ostensibly free of retroviral infection, suddenly began to release retrovirus particles, due to the transcriptional de-repression of their normally silent, endogenous proviruses. Similarly, latent endogenous proviruses might be activated spontaneously *in vivo* in a relatively small number of cells in a living mouse. Once infectious virus particles—so the thinking went—were released from these few cells, they could multiply by cell-to-cell infection, spreading rapidly throughout the body, inducing viremia and ultimately leukemias in these animals.

Knowing this behavior of endogenous murine retroviruses, some suspected that human cancers might arise in a similar fashion. For example, mutagenic carcinogens, such as those present in tobacco tar, might provoke the transcription of previously silent endogenous retroviruses. The resulting virus particles would then begin multiplying, spread throughout an individual's body, and, like the endogenous retroviruses in some mouse strains, cause cancers to form in one or another susceptible tissue. At the same time, while capable of spreading throughout a person's tissues, such endogenous viruses might be unable to spread horizontally to another individual, explaining the repeated observations that cancer does not behave like a communicable disease. Another related scheme postulated that retroviruses had inserted viral oncogenes into the germ lines of various species, and that these latent viral oncogenes became activated by various types of carcinogens.

While attractive in concept, these models of human cancer causation soon collapsed because supporting evidence was not forthcoming. Reports of infectious retroviral particles in human tumors could not be verified. Even reverse transcriptase–containing virus particles were difficult to find in human tumors.

It became clear that most endogenous retroviral genomes present in the human genome are relics of ancient germ-line infections that occurred 5 million years ago and earlier in ancestral primates. Since that time, these proviruses mutated progressively into sequences that were no longer capable of specifying infectious retrovirus particles and thereby joined the ranks of the "junk DNA" sequences that form the bulk of our genome (see Figure 1.3). Even though as much as 8% of the human genome derives from endogenous retroviral genomes (ERVs), only several of its approximately 40,000 retrovirus-derived segments have ever been shown to be genetically intact and capable, in principle, of specifying infectious virus particles. More recently, it became clear that one subfamily of these retroviruses, termed HERV-K, had entered into the human germ

line relatively recently and thus had not yet suffered the inactivating mutations that have inactivated almost all ERVs in our genome; accordingly, several of the HERV-K proviruses were seemingly intact. However, even these proviruses could not be found to produce infectious viruses or to become mobilized in cancer cells. (It remains unclear why the germ lines of other mammalian species have continued to acquire new endogenous proviruses during recent evolutionary times while ours has not.) So cancer researchers began to look elsewhere for the genetic elements that might be triggering human cancer formation.

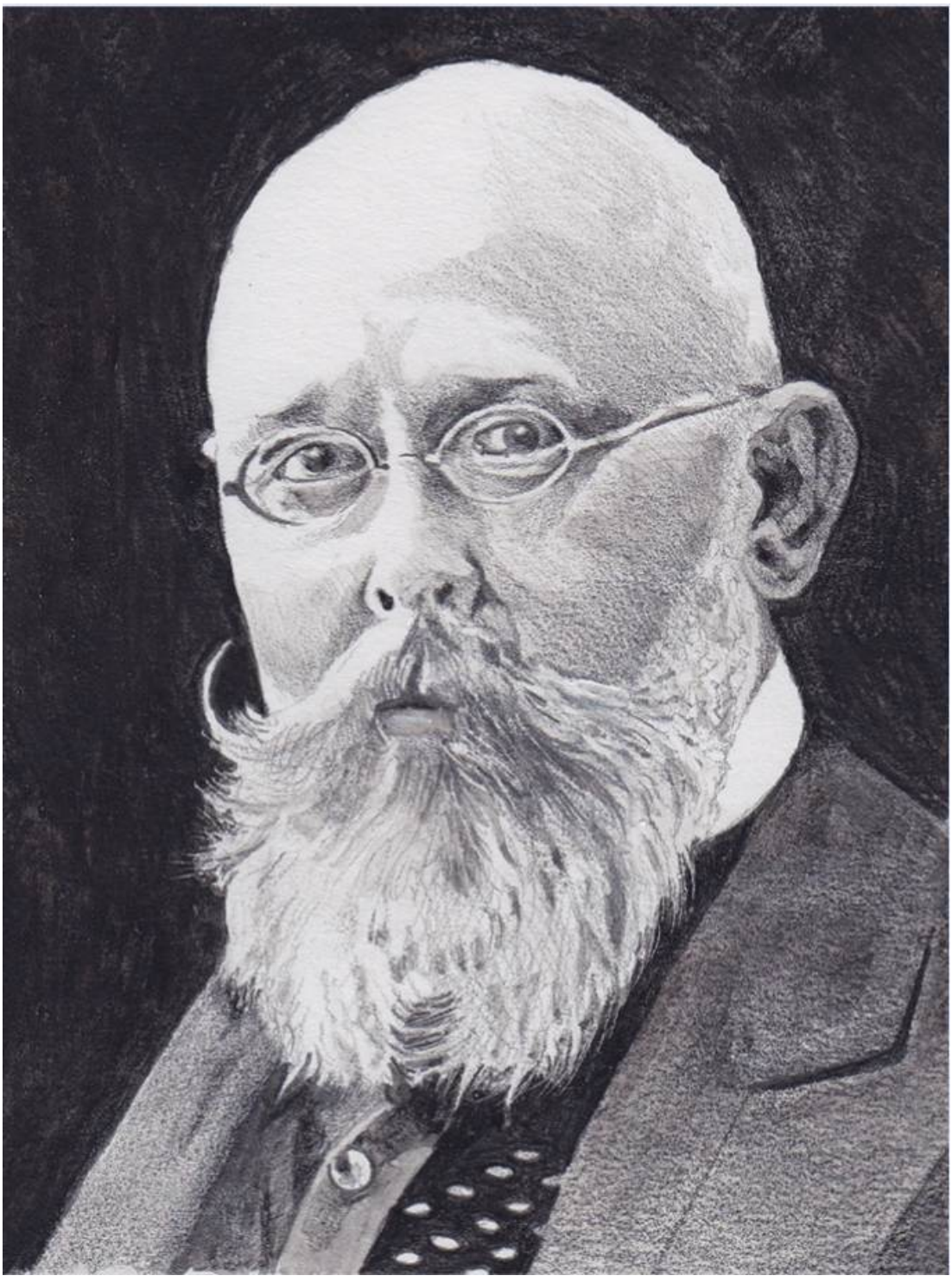
In theory, endogenous proviruses that are actively transcribed in an animal's tissues may create a viremia and, following millions of replication cycles, may induce cancer in that animal. Such disease-inducing endogenous proviruses are therefore disadvantageous and, during the course of evolution, will be eliminated from a species' gene pool. This explains why the endogenous proviruses found in the germ lines of most species are, with rare exception, either transcriptionally silent or incapable of encoding infectious virus particles because of disabling mutations.

However, a small subset of endogenous viral genomes, notably those that have been recently inserted into a species' germ line, may remain genetically intact. Given the proper stimulus, these previously latent proviruses may suddenly be transcribed in one or another cell, generating virus particles that spread via infection from this cell throughout the body and eventually trigger some type of malignancy, usually of hematopoietic cells (see Section 3.11). For example, the high rate of leukemia in mice of the AKR strain is attributable to the frequent spontaneous activation of an endogenous murine leukemia provirus, the subsequent infectious spread of virus throughout the mouse, viremia, and, finally, via insertional mutagenesis, the activation of a proto-oncogene and the eruption of a leukemia.

Such germ-line transmission of viral genomes was thought to be nothing more than a laboratory curiosity until reports, beginning in 2006, revealed that certain people carry loads of human herpesvirus type 6 (HHV-6) in their peripheral mononuclear cells (for example, lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages) that are 1000 to 10,000 times higher than the average person carries. (Latent HHV-6 infections are widespread in the general population.) Subsequent studies revealed that these high loads of HHV-6 were often present in multiple members of a family and that in these families, HHV-6 genomes were inherited in the germ line integrated in certain chromosomes, specifically in telomeric DNA. Thus, a mechanism that HHV-6 usually employs in order to enter into a latent state (that is, by integrating its genome into one or another chromosome; see Section 3.6) occasionally results in germ-line transmission. The clinical consequences of inherited HHV-6 genomes remain unclear.

Supplementary Sidebar 4.2 Boveri and Hansemann independently hypothesized genetic abnormality as the cause of cancer cells' malignant behavior

The discovery that cancers arise as a consequence of aberrations in genetic material is widely attributed to the work of Theodor Boveri (1862–1915), a dominant figure in early twentieth-century German biology. This story, like many accounts of scientific history, is actually a bit more complicated and more interesting than conventional accounts depict. The roots of this notion actually reach back to an earlier set of observations by Boveri's contemporary David Paul von Hansemann (1858–1920; **Figure S4.2A**). In 1890, Hansemann, a pathologist, first reported his observations that the mitotic figures of cancer cells contained a variety of abnormal chromosomal configurations, including multipolar mitotic spindles—unusual arrays of chromosomes at anaphase—and asymmetric mitoses. He also proposed that the cells within tumors underwent partial dedifferentiation, another theme that anticipated twentieth-century histopathological studies of tumors. Hansemann continued to report his observations in the decade that followed, but at the time had little insight into the cell-biological consequences of abnormal chromosome number and configuration.



(A)

(B)

Figure S4.2 The first clues to the genetic origins of human tumor development (A) David Paul von Hansemann described the abnormal mitotic

figures and chromosomes in human cancer cells without knowing their significance. (B) Theodor Boveri drew on Hansemann's observations and his own to propose that abnormal chromosomes somehow were responsible for the abnormal behaviors of cancer cells. (B, courtesy of the Biocenter, University of Würzburg.)

In 1900, the work of Mendel, long forgotten, was rediscovered by three geneticists. They popularized the idea that cells are essentially diploid, with pairs of genetic determinants being separated from one another during meiosis. In the several years that followed, the behaviors of Mendel's genetic determinants were realized to parallel that of chromosomes, leading many to conclude that the chromosomes were the seat of heredity. Hence, cells with abnormal numbers of chromosomes were perceived as being genetically mutant, though the term "mutant" had not yet come into currency.

Unlike Hansemann, Boveri (see Figure S4.2B) was a zoologist and worked largely with early sea urchin embryos. He hardly acknowledged the work of Mendel and minimally that of Hansemann. Instead, his own work in manipulating metaphase figures in early sea urchin embryos led him to propose that the karyotypic aberrations observed occasionally in otherwise-normal cells represented genetic abnormalities, that each chromosome carries a distinct subset of the genetic information present in the genome as a whole, and that the karyotypic abnormalities within cancer cells were responsible, in some fashion, for the aberrant behavior of cancer cells. The corrupted information content present in one cell was, he proposed, heritable from one cell generation to the next.

Boveri's posthumously published 1916 monograph, in which he laid out these ideas, was followed 13 years later by an English translation, carried out by his widow, the former Marcella O'Grady of Boston, Massachusetts, a biologist and accomplished experimentalist, who was the first female graduate of the Biology Department of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) in Cambridge. Hansemann lacked a loyal widow and translator, and so awareness of his pioneering contributions in connecting an abnormal genetic constitution of cells with the development of tumors receded. Boveri's personality also may have helped impress on the scientific community his unique role in many of these advances; an otherwise-uncritical colleague described him as "vehement, inflexible, and [a] relentless assailant." Today, few remember that Hansemann began the charge that led to the now widely embraced notion that cancer cells are genetically abnormal, and that these cells' chromosomes are responsible for their malignant behavior.

Supplementary Sidebar 4.3 Southern and Northern blotting

Southern blotting was invented in 1973 by the British molecular biologist Edwin Southern as a means of detecting specific DNA fragments that are generated by restriction enzyme cleavage of DNA; these fragments may be present amid a millionfold excess of other concomitantly generated DNA fragments, revealing the sensitivity of this procedure (**Figure S4.3**). Within several years, the procedure was adapted to detect specific mRNA molecules resolved by gel electrophoresis, once again present amid a vast excess of unrelated mRNA species; for want of a better name, this newer procedure was dubbed Northern blotting. Thereafter, a further adaptation of the procedure was developed in order to detect individual proteins, once again resolved by gel electrophoresis, amid a vast excess of unrelated proteins and termed the Western blotting procedure (not shown in the figure). While the Southern and Northern blots use radiolabeled nucleic acid probes, the Western blotting procedure uses specific antibodies, usually monoclonal antibodies, to detect proteins that have been adsorbed to filters and for this reason is also termed immunoblotting. The binding of these "primary" monoclonal antibodies to their cognate antigens is usually detected by the use of a "secondary" antibody that recognizes the constant region of the primary antibody molecule and is itself labeled with a fluorescent reporter or an enzyme that can generate a visible dye or deposit.

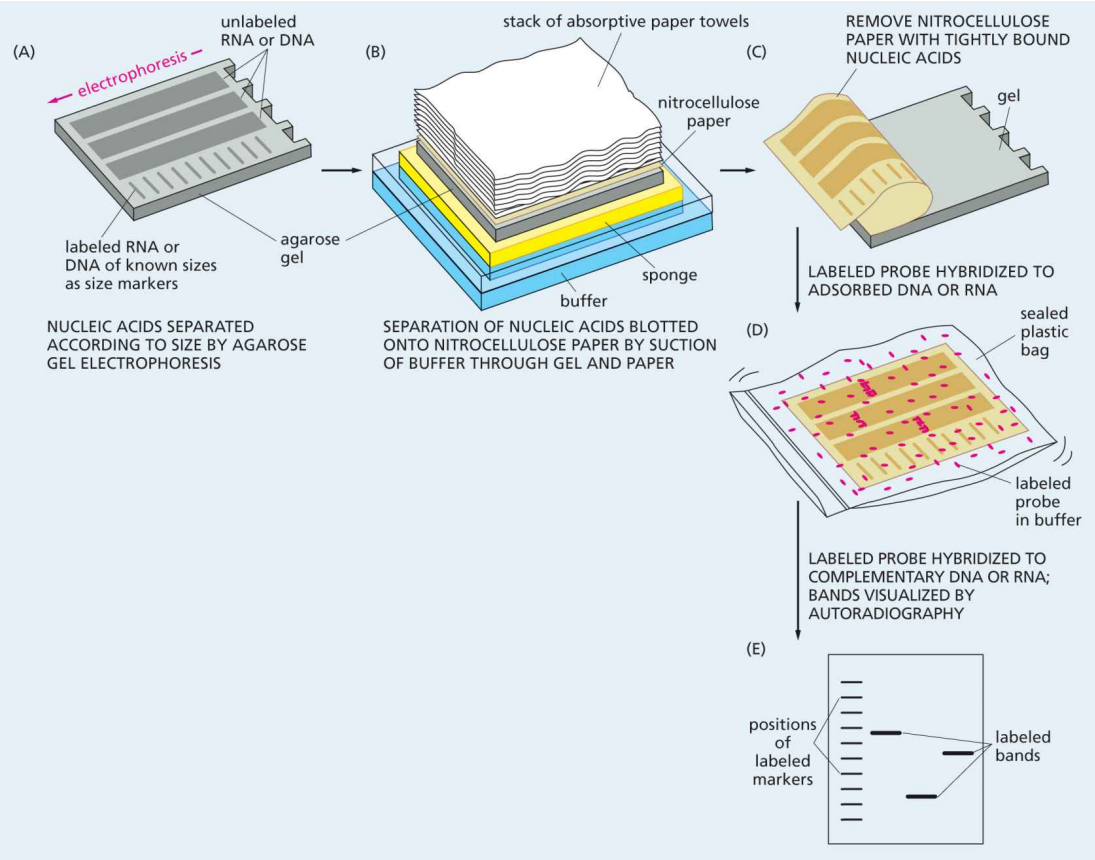


Figure S4.3 Southern and Northern blotting procedures Use of these blotting procedures makes possible the detection of specific fragments of the cell genome (or specific RNA transcripts) if an appropriate radiolabeled DNA probe is available. (A) Either DNA fragments that have been generated by restriction enzyme cleavage of genomic DNA (in a Southern blot) or a mixture of cellular RNAs (in a Northern blot) are resolved by gel electrophoresis. (B) The gel slab is then placed beneath a nitrocellulose filter, and paper towels (or other absorptive material) are used to wick fluid upward through the gel, allowing the DNA (or RNA) molecules to adsorb to the filter paper, creating a replica pattern of their previous positions in the gel. (C) The filter paper is peeled away from the gel and (D) placed in a plastic bag together with a solution of radiolabeled probe (*pink*). (E) Hybridization of the probe with complementary DNA (or RNA) molecules adsorbed on the filter and subsequent autoradiography with a photographic emulsion allow the detection of DNA fragments (or RNA molecules) that were present in the initial DNA (or RNA) preparation; these are manifested by bands of silver grains on the film. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 5th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2008.)

Supplementary Sidebar 4.4 Increases in gene copy number and their interpretation

The process of gene amplification is defined as a preferential increase in the copy number of a discrete chromosomal region (an amplicon), rather than increases in the ploidy of the genome, as may occur in certain specialized mammalian cells during the course of normal development. In the latter case, the entire complement of chromosomes will increase coordinately, resulting in multiple copies of the entire genome and the state of polyploidy. Such polyploidy seems to occur only in a small number of highly differentiated mammalian cell types that have a requirement for producing large amounts of specialized gene products, notably the megakaryocytes (precursors of blood platelets) and the trophoblast giant cells of the placenta. In both cell types, such endoreduplication occurs through repeated passages through S phase of the cell cycle without subsequent mitoses (M phase; see Chapter 8).

Alternatively, reduplication can be focal, where increases in the copy number of discrete chromosomal regions can be observed. This can occur during cancer pathogenesis through the process of unequal crossing over as illustrated in **Figure S4.4**. Alternatively, such focal reduplication leading to gene amplification can occur through the multiple successive firings of specific DNA replication origins in the absence of passage through mitosis (**Figure S4.5**). Such directed, localized gene amplification often results in proportional increases in the expression of the corresponding mRNA and protein. For example, in the fruit fly *Drosophila*

melanogaster, genes specifying chorion proteins normally undergo amplification during the development of ovarian follicle cells, doing so in order to enable the synthesis of massive amounts of these proteins required for oogenesis.

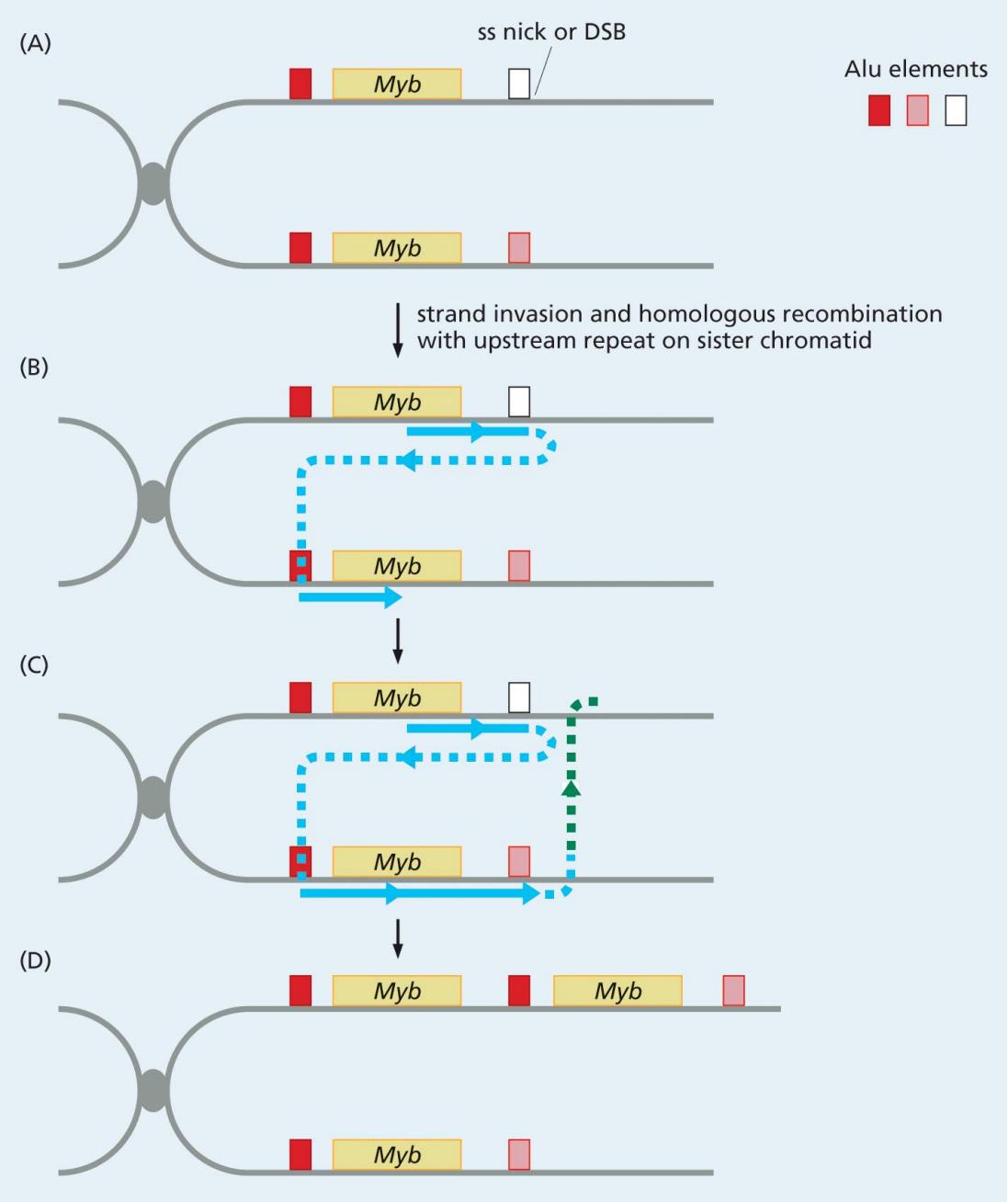


Figure S4.4 Mechanism of generating tandemly duplicated genes A number of molecular mechanisms have been proposed to explain the generation of tandemly duplicated genes, such as those that form the homogeneously staining regions (HSRs) that create oncogene amplification. In the example presented here, the mechanism of amplification of the *Myb* oncogene via tandem duplication was

studied in a human T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. The amplification mechanism was traced, with high likelihood, to the presence of *Alu* elements, which are present in about 1 million copies scattered throughout the human genome (see Figure S4.7). In this case, the normal human *Myb* gene is flanked by two *Alu* repeat sequences. (A) When the *Myb* gene underwent replication during the S phase of the cell cycle, a single-strand (ss) nick or double-strand break (DSB) in the newly synthesized upper sister chromatid allowed the resulting free end (which contains an *Alu* sequence; *empty rectangle*) to invade the double-strand helix of the lower sister chromatid and anneal to another *Alu* sequence (*dark red rectangle*) that lies upstream of the *Myb* gene on the lower sister chromatid (B). The 3′ end of the newly synthesized, annealed strand could then be elongated using as a template this lower sister chromatid (*light blue*). (C). Subsequently, this elongating strand could jump back to the upper sister chromatid (*dark green*) and continue elongation, generating two head-to-tail tandem copies (D) of the *Myb* gene. This process might then be repeated, leading to an exponential expansion of this chromosomal region. (From J. O'Neil et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 204:3059–3066, 2007. With permission from Rockefeller University Press.)

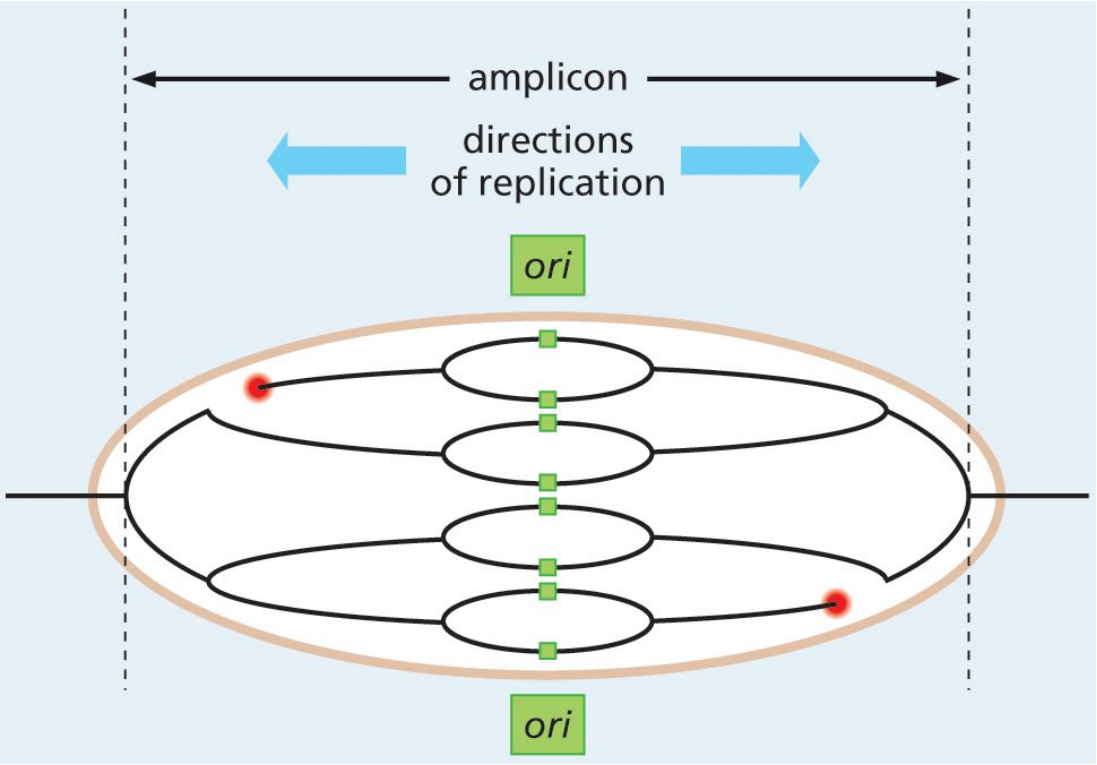


Figure S4.5 Mechanism of generating amplified chromosomal regions The focal amplification of a very short segment of chromosomal DNA, achieved by unequal crossing over (see Figure S4.4), can be contrasted with an alternative

mechanism of generating amplified regions that often are much longer than those resulting from unequal crossing over. This mechanism depends on the fact that in normal replication (occurring in the S phase of the cell cycle) an origin of replication (*ori*) is fired only once, resulting in the bidirectional out-migration of two replication forks that proceed until they encounter replication forks or replicated DNA in adjacent regions, thereby creating two identical complete copies of a replicon. However, under pathological conditions, an *ori* may be re-fired on multiple occasions during a single S phase, resulting in the re-replication of a chromosomal region that should be replicated only once during that S phase. This creates multiple identical copies of a chromosomal region that are termed an amplicon. These multiple copies may then recombine in complex ways and resolve the complex structure seen here, causing it to regenerate a chromosomal region that contains, once again, only a single double-helix of DNA but bears the multiple copies joined in head-to-tail or head-to-head orientation.

The discoveries that certain proto-oncogenes similarly undergo amplification revealed an important mechanism of mutation that contributes to tumor pathogenesis. (Thus, gene amplification represents a mutation in the same sense that intragenic alterations do.) Figure 4.3B illustrates the fact that amplification of the *erbB2/HER2* gene, which occurs in about 30% of human breast cancers, is correlated with poor prognosis. This amplification would seem to explain how many highly malignant breast cancers acquire their aggressive phenotypes. It is known that elevated signaling by the *erbB2/HER2*-encoded protein drives cells into endless rounds of growth and division and also protects them from programmed cell death—apoptosis (see Chapter 9).

As illustrated in **Figure S4.6**, a gene that appears to be the object of gene amplification (that is, confers proliferative advantage on a cell that harbors it in multiple copies) may often be co-amplified with flanking chromosomal DNA, resulting in increased copy number of neighboring genes. This creates an ambiguity, since it is not always clear precisely which gene in an amplified multi-genic region is functionally important in conferring benefit on an incipient cancer cell. One example of this dilemma came from analyses of the involvement of the c-*src* gene in human colorectal cancer (CRC) development. Thus, in about 10% of human CRCs, a chromosomal region containing c-*src* undergoes readily detectable amplification. In these cases, however, it is not obvious whether the c-*src* gene itself or other nearby genes in this chromosomal region are the actual objects of the gene amplification that confers proliferative advantage on evolving pre-neoplastic cells.

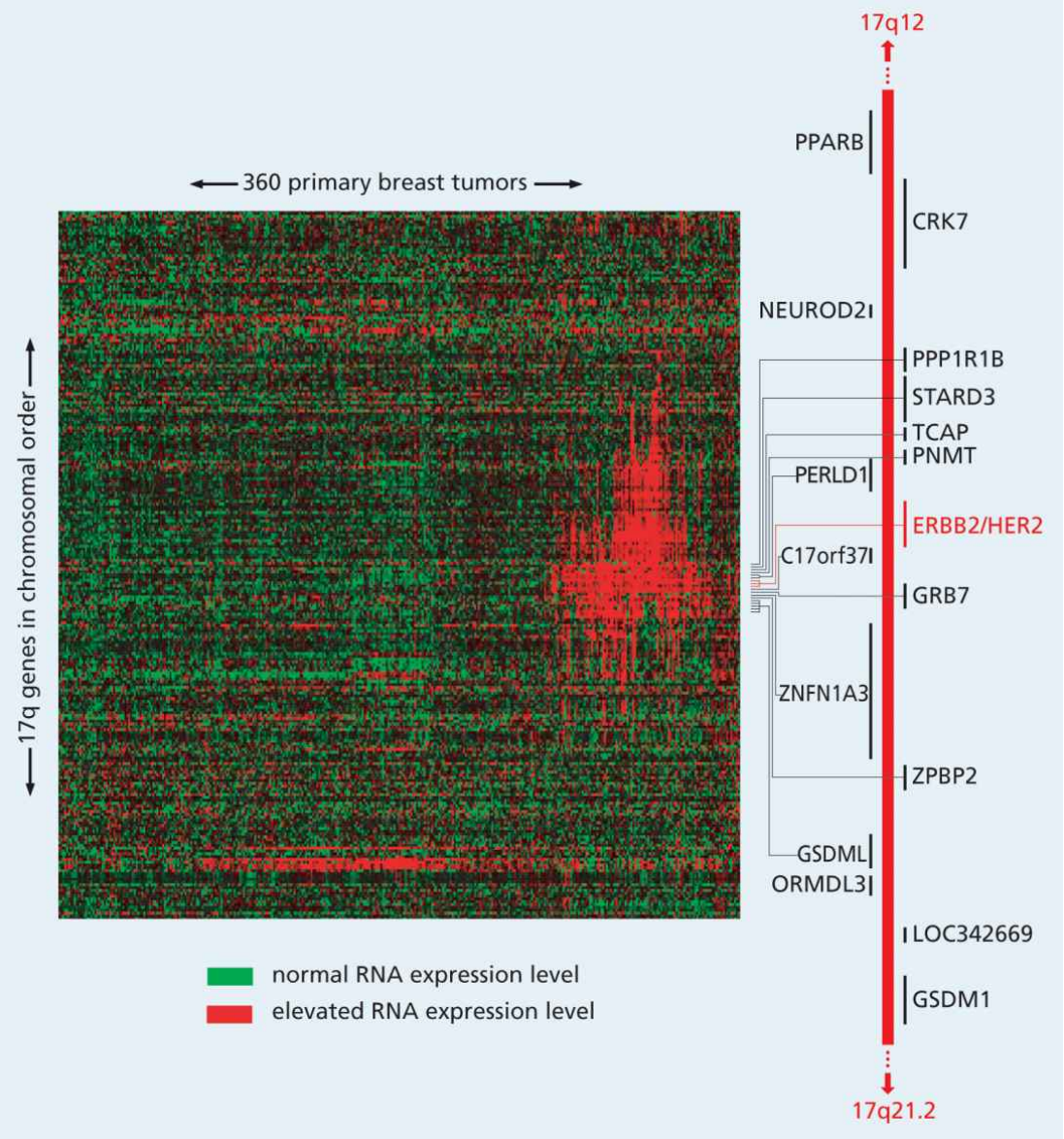


Figure S4.6 Interpretation of amplified chromosomal regions The discovery that the *erbB2/neu/HER2* gene is amplified in about 30% of human breast cancers, and that this amplification is correlated with poor prognosis (see Figure 4.3), would seem to explain how many highly malignant breast cancers acquire their aggressive phenotypes. It is known that elevated signaling by this protein drives cells into endless rounds of growth and division and also protects them from programmed cell death—apoptosis. However, analyses of gene expression patterns yield more complex interpretations. The map of some of the genes identified that flank *HER2* on both sides is provided (*red vertical bar, right*). In the expression array analysis shown here, the expression levels of a cohort of 160 genes that flank this gene (labeled here ERBB2/HER2) on both sides along human Chromosome 17q, together with the expression of this gene itself, were monitored

in a series of 360 human breast cancers. Elevated expression is indicated in *red* while normal expression is indicated in *green*. As is apparent, in about one-fourth of these breast cancers (*right quarter of array*), expression of *erbB2/neu/HER2* RNA was elevated, as might be expected from the amplification that this gene had undergone in many of these tumors. At the same time, in many of these tumors, expression of closely linked genes mapping to both sides of this gene was also elevated. This reflects the fact that the unit of DNA amplification—the amplicon (see Figure S4.5)—almost always included a stretch of chromosomal DNA that was far longer than the *erbB2/neu/HER2* gene itself, leading to co-amplification of these neighboring genes. Among these genes are several that may also positively influence cell proliferation and survival, including *GRB7* and *PPARB*, whose protein products interact with ErbB2 (see Chapter 6) and with the apoptosis circuitry (see Chapter 9), respectively. Hence, in such cases, a number of co-amplified genes may be collaborating to orchestrate the malignant phenotype of human breast cancer cells, and it becomes difficult to ascribe specific cancer cell phenotypes to the elevated expression of only a single gene, such as the *erbB2/neu/HER2* discussed here. (Courtesy of L.D. Miller, Genome Institute of Singapore.)

In childhood neuroblastomas, amplification of the N-*myc* proto-oncogene is known to play a central role in the development of aggressive disease (see Figure 4.7). In some tumors, the co-amplification of the linked *Alk* proto-oncogene is observed, raising the question whether this co-amplification contributes to the aggressiveness of this disease.

Supplementary Sidebar 4.5 Cloning of transfected oncogenes

The oncogene of the T24/EJ human bladder carcinoma cell line was cloned by two research groups before its relationship with the H-*ras* oncogene of Harvey sarcoma virus (see Figure 4.2) was known. These groups faced the challenge of isolating a gene without knowing anything about its sequence or structure. One group of researchers transfected DNA of the human bladder carcinoma cells into NIH 3T3 mouse cells (**Figure S4.7**). (During the course of transfection, the genomic DNA being transfected undergoes shearing at random sites, yielding fragments tens of kilobases long that become integrated into the genomes of recipient cells. On average, about 0.1% of a genome's worth of donor DNA becomes integrated into the genome of a recipient cell.) This research group used Southern blotting (see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.3**) to detect the donor DNA by exploiting probes that were specific for the *Alu* repeat sequences, which are scattered randomly about the human genome in about 1 million sites but are absent from the mouse genome. (More precisely, distantly related mouse

repeat sequences are not recognized by DNA probes that are specific for the human *Alu* repeats.) Thus, *Alu* sequences are present in the human genome, on average about every 3–4 kb or so. Accordingly, it was likely that the human bladder carcinoma oncogene carried with it some linked human *Alu* sequences into recipient mouse cells during the transfection procedure.

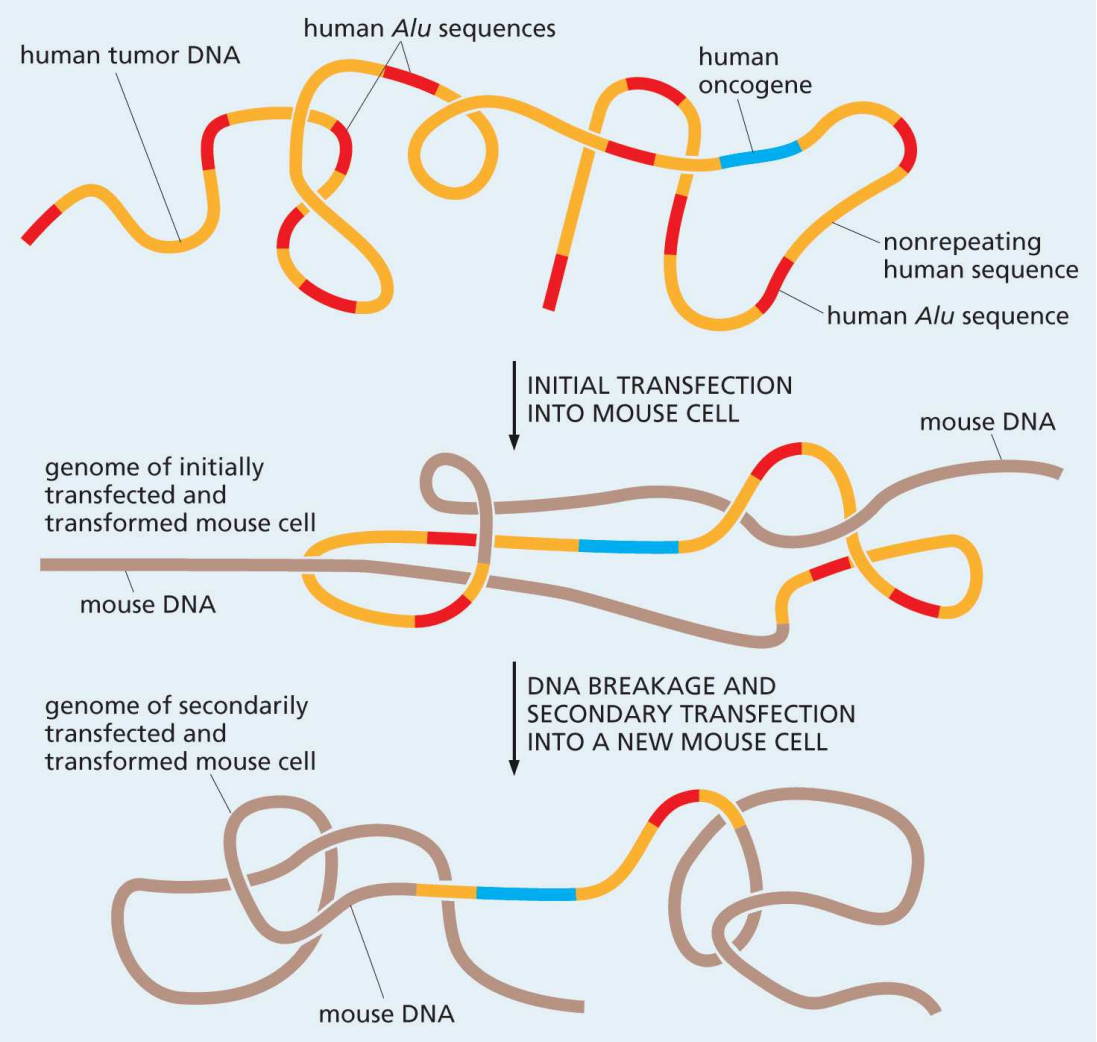


Figure S4.7 Cloning of transfected human oncogenes This strategy for cloning the oncogene present in a human bladder carcinoma depended on *Alu* sequences of ~280 bp length (*short red segments*), which are present in almost a million copies scattered throughout the human genome (*orange segments*). As a consequence, virtually all human genes are closely linked to one or more of the *Alu* sequences. If the genomic DNA of a human tumor cell bearing an oncogene (*blue segment*) is fragmented and transfected into a mouse cell [whose DNA (*light brown line*) lacks sequences closely related to human *Alu* sequences], the introduced human DNA can be detected by use of an *Alu*-specific probe in the Southern blotting procedure (see Supplementary Sidebar 4.3). In the case of the

transfections described here, only about 0.1% of the donor DNA genome became established in the initially transfected, transformed mouse cells, indicating that these cells carried both the transforming oncogene and perhaps 10^3 co-transfected human *Alu* sequences. Because so many human *Alu* sequences were co-introduced with the human oncogene into these initially transfected, transformed cells, the DNA of cells descended from them was extracted, fragmented, and used in a second cycle of transfection into mouse cells. Once again, only about 0.1% of the donor DNA (from the initially transfected cells) survived in the secondary transfectants, dictating that the only human DNA and associated *Alu* sequences that were present in the secondarily transformed cells were those that were closely linked to the human oncogene (whose presence was detected because of the transformed phenotype that it caused in these cells). A genomic library (see Supplementary Sidebar 1.4) could then be made from the DNA of these secondary transformants, and the DNA clone containing the bladder carcinoma oncogene could be identified (using an *Alu*-specific probe) and retrieved.

Indeed, the researchers found a relatively small number of human *Alu* sequences (about 0.1% of the total *Alu* sequences in a human genome) in the genomes of initially transfected, transformed mouse cells. They then prepared whole genomic DNA from these transformed NIH 3T3 cells and transfected it once again into fresh NIH 3T3 cells and isolated transformed cells that arose following this second cycle of transfection. Once again, as before, only about 0.1% of the donor DNA (prepared from the initially transfected cell) was transferred from donor to recipient (see Figure S4.7). In these secondarily transfected cells, the only human *Alu* sequences that had survived the two cycles of transfection were those that were closely linked to the oncogene responsible for the observed transformation. These researchers then used a human *Alu*-specific sequence probe to identify the presence of an *Alu*-containing DNA fragment in a collection (a genomic library) of DNA fragments prepared from the genomic DNA of the secondarily transfected cells. They then retrieved this fragment using standard gene cloning procedures. The cloned *Alu*-containing DNA segment was found to carry, in addition, the long-sought bladder carcinoma oncogene.

The other research group used an elegant procedure that caused the bladder carcinoma gene to become closely linked to a bacterial gene during the initial transfection event. They then followed the fate of this bacterial segment through another cycle of transfection and, by using a probe specific for it, were able to isolate both this bacterial segment and the linked bladder carcinoma cell from transfected cells by molecular cloning.

Supplementary Sidebar 4.6 Localization of the oncogene-activating mutation in the H-*ras* gene

Physical mapping of the restriction enzyme cleavage sites in the clone of the transfected H-*ras* oncogene (derived from a human bladder carcinoma) and in the corresponding proto-oncogene present in normal human DNA revealed that the two versions of this gene shared an apparently identical overall structure. This dictated that the differences between the two allelic versions of the gene—one of which carried transforming information whereas the other lacked it—were very subtle. The functionally important difference between the two cloned segments could be localized by recombining fragments of the two alleles and testing the recombinant genes for biological activity. This revealed that the differences between the two alleles lay in a 350-nucleotide fragment toward the left ends of the 6.6 kb-long clones (**Figure S4.8**).

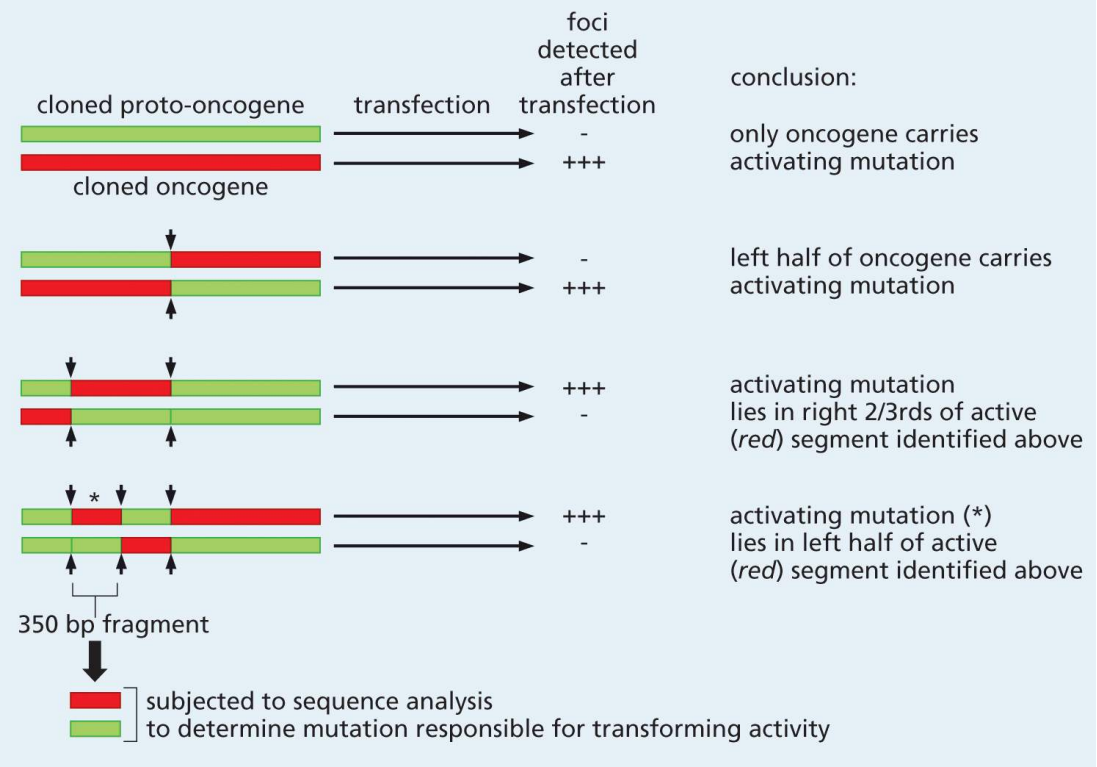
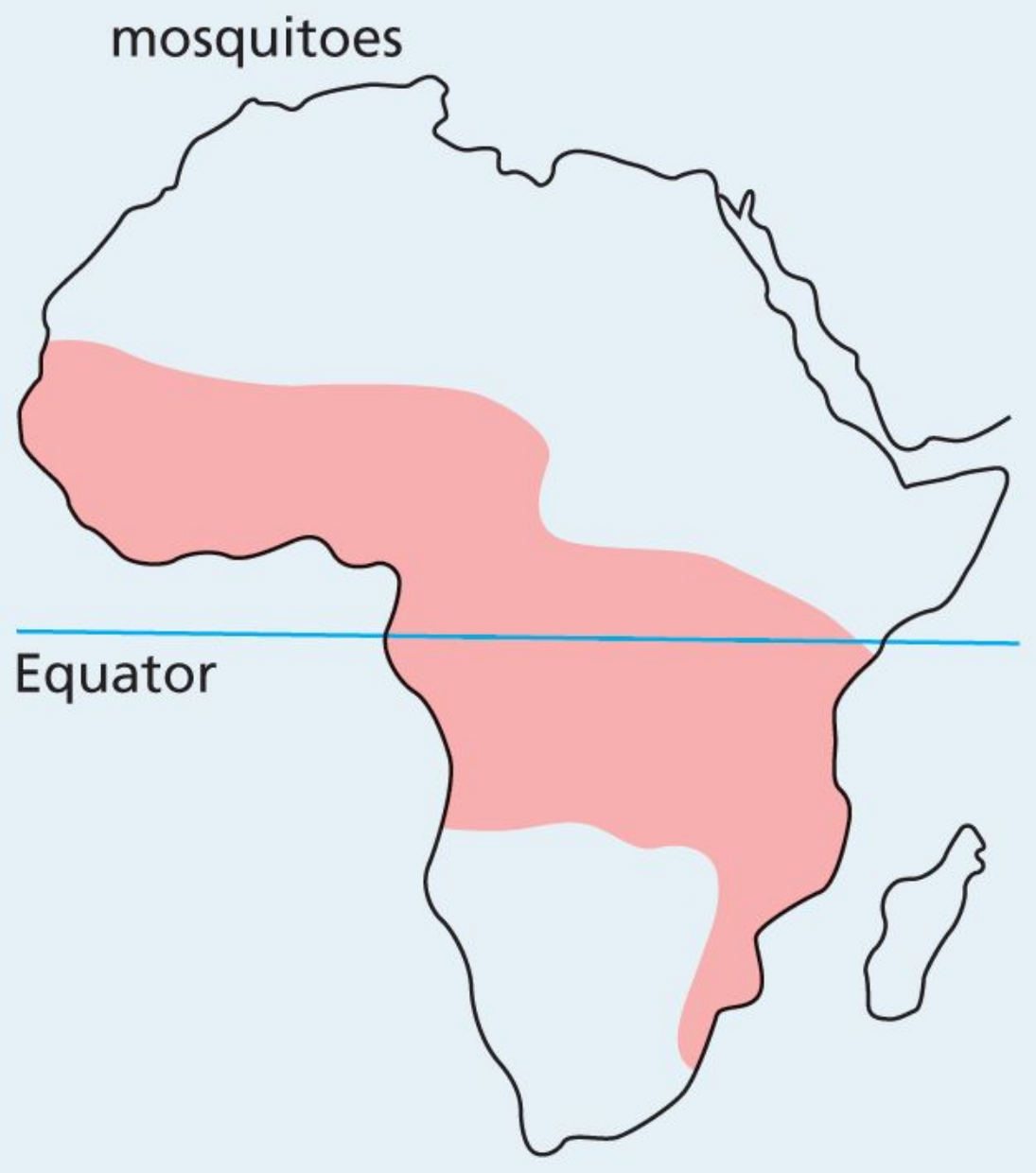


Figure S4.8 Localization of an oncogene-activating mutation The cloned DNAs of a human bladder carcinoma oncogene (*red segments*) and the closely related human H-*ras* proto-oncogene (*green segments*) were cleaved by restriction enzymes at the sites indicated (*vertical arrows*) and recombinant genes were made by ligating (linking) the resulting DNA fragments from the two sources and testing the hybrid DNA molecules for their transforming activity using the transfection-focus assay (see Figure 4.1). This made it possible to progressively localize the mutation responsible for oncogene activation to a small 350-base-pair

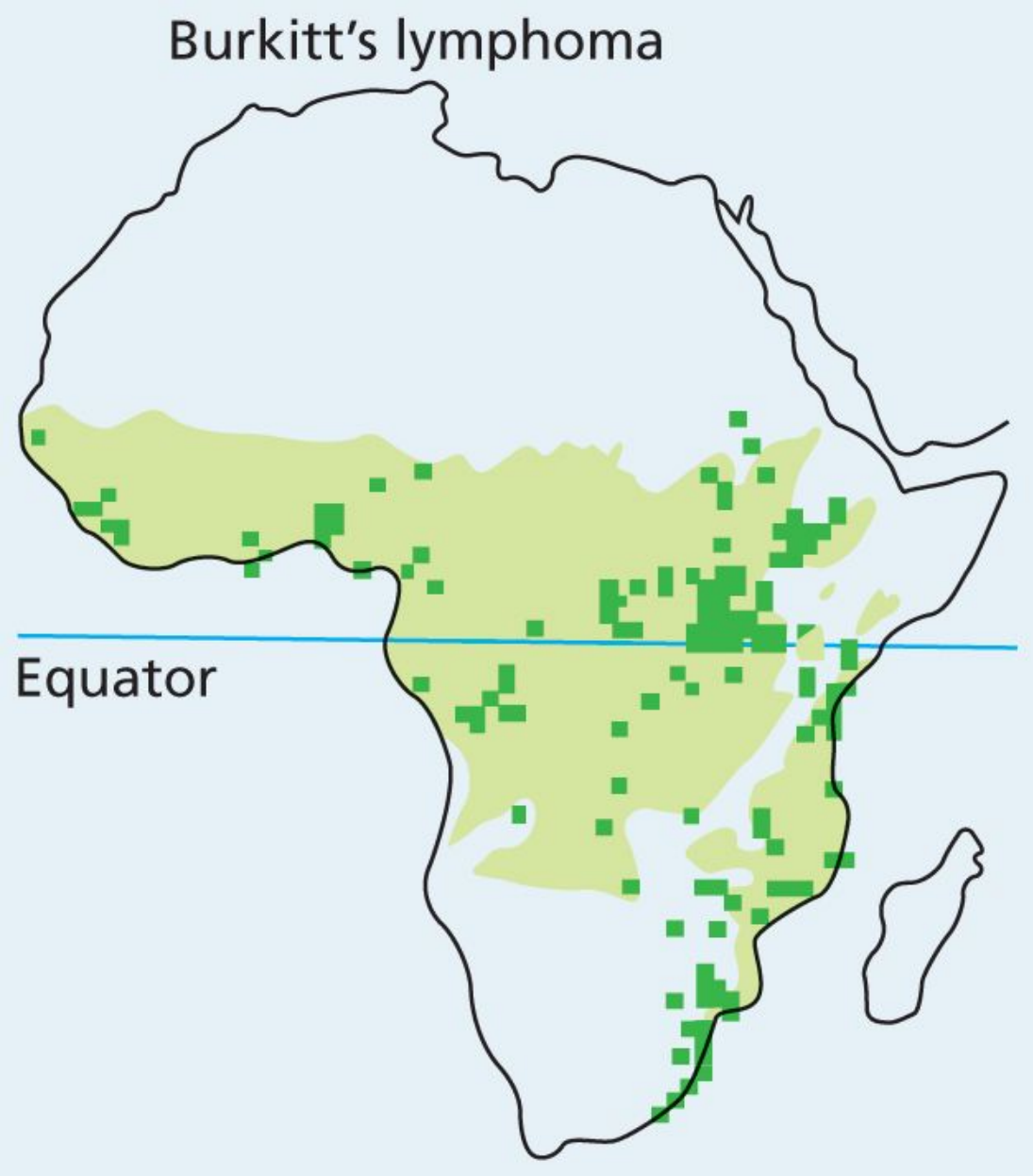
segment, which could then be subjected to sequence analysis in order to determine the precise sequence change that distinguished the two allelic versions of this gene. (From C.J. Tabin et al., *Nature* 300:143–149, 1982. With permission from Nature.)

Supplementary Sidebar 4.7 Distribution of mosquitoes, malaria, and Burkitt's lymphoma

The disease of Burkitt's lymphoma, described in 1958 in East Africa by Denis Burkitt, generally affects children in equatorial regions where malaria is endemic. The tumors, derived from lymphocytes with B-cell characteristics, are often found in the jaw or other facial bones, and in the ileum, cecum, kidneys, and ovaries. The geographic distribution of the disease maps closely to the distribution of mosquito-borne malaria (**Figure S4.9**). The tumors are invariably associated with infections by Epstein–Barr herpesvirus (EBV), which is also associated as an etiologic agent with the pathogenesis of mononucleosis and nasopharyngeal carcinomas. The immunologic stresses caused by repeated infectious cycles launched by mosquito-borne malarial parasites are thought to conspire with EBV to trigger the B cell translocations observed in patients afflicted with Burkitt's lymphoma (see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.8**).



(A)



(B)

Figure S4.9 Burkitt's lymphoma incidence in Africa (A) The geographic distribution in Africa of the *Anopheles gambiae* mosquito, a known vector in the transmission of malaria. (B) The geographic distribution of childhood Burkitt's lymphoma (BL), as originally documented by Denis Burkitt. The congruence of these two distribution maps suggested that malarial infection was likely an etiologic factor in this disease. In addition, the invariable presence of the Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) genome in the BL tumor cells indicates a second etiologic factor. As the tumor cells evolve, a chromosomal translocation involving the c-*myc* gene

develops, which contributes to the neoplastic proliferation of the EBV-infected B lymphocytes. (A and B, from I. Magrath, in E.S. Robertson (ed.), Burkitt's Lymphoma. Edinburgh and London: Springer, 2012. With permission from Springer.)

Supplementary Sidebar 4.8 How does Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) cause cancer?

The 1982 discovery of the Burkitt's lymphoma–associated chromosomal translocations shed little light on the precise mechanism by which the etiologic factors (chronic EBV and malarial parasite infections; see **Supplementary Sidebar 4.7**) favor the formation of these tumors. The contributions of each of these agents to lymphoma pathogenesis are still not totally clear. It appears that chronic malarial infection together with malnutrition can compromise the immune defenses of children and thereby render them susceptible to runaway EBV infections that further debilitate their already-weakened immune systems. These EBV infections can lead to the accumulation of large pools of EBV-immortalized B lymphocytes that are driven to proliferate continuously by the virus. (As we will learn in Chapter 10, the process of immortalization enables cells that previously are able to proliferate for only a limited number of cell doublings in culture to do so indefinitely. Immortalization also appears to be a critical component of the overall proliferative program of neoplastic cells *in vivo*.)

In some EBV-infected cells, the enzymatic machinery dedicated to organizing normal immunoglobulin gene rearrangement (as described in Chapter 15) misfires and, in so doing, occasionally creates inappropriate juxtapositions of segments of antibody genes with the c-*myc* proto-oncogene. The resulting *myc* oncogenes, working together with several genes (possible oncogenes) expressed by EBV, then drive the cell proliferation that leads eventually to the eruption of lymphomas. An additional puzzle comes from the involvement of EBV in nasopharyngeal carcinomas (NPCs) in Southeast Asia, where this viral infection, together with certain lifestyle factors (possibly the consumption of Chinese-style salted fish early in life), has been implicated as an etiologic agent. Even more puzzling is the fact that in Western populations, EBV infection is common and causes mononucleosis in immunocompetent individuals (that is, those with a fully functional immune system), triggering malignancies only in rare instances.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

endogenous provirus
: The provirus of a retrovirus that is integrated into the germ line DNA of an organism, thereby assuming a configuration much like all cellular genes in the organism's genome.

vertical transmission
: The transmission of an agent, such as an infectious agent, from parent to offspring. *See also* **horizontal transmission**.

endogenous provirus
: The provirus of a retrovirus that is integrated into the germ line DNA of an organism, thereby assuming a configuration much like all cellular genes in the organism's genome.

viremia
: Presence of high concentrations of virus in the bloodstream.

horizontal transmission
: Transmission of an agent, such as an infectious agent, throughout a population in ways that do not depend on parent-offspring interactions. *See also* **vertical transmission**.

constant region
: Portion of an antibody molecule that is present identically by all members of a class of these molecules, e.g., all immunoglobulin gamma molecules. *Compare* **variable region**.

amplicon
: A defined stretch of (chromosomal) DNA that undergoes amplification flanked on both sides by DNA segments that are present in normal copy number.

polyploid
: Referring to a genome in which the entire haploid array of chromosomes is represented in copy numbers larger than two. *See also* **haploid**, **diploid**.

endoreduplication
: Process whereby a genome or chromosomal segment is replicated without subsequent segregation of the replicated copies during mitosis.

endoreduplication

Process whereby a genome or chromosomal segment is replicated without subsequent segregation of the replicated copies during mitosis.

focal

Referring to a change that affects only a small region or area, such as a relatively short segment of a chromosome.

intragenic

Process, event, or DNA sequence occurring within the genomic boundaries of a gene. *Compare* **intergenic**.

Alu repeat

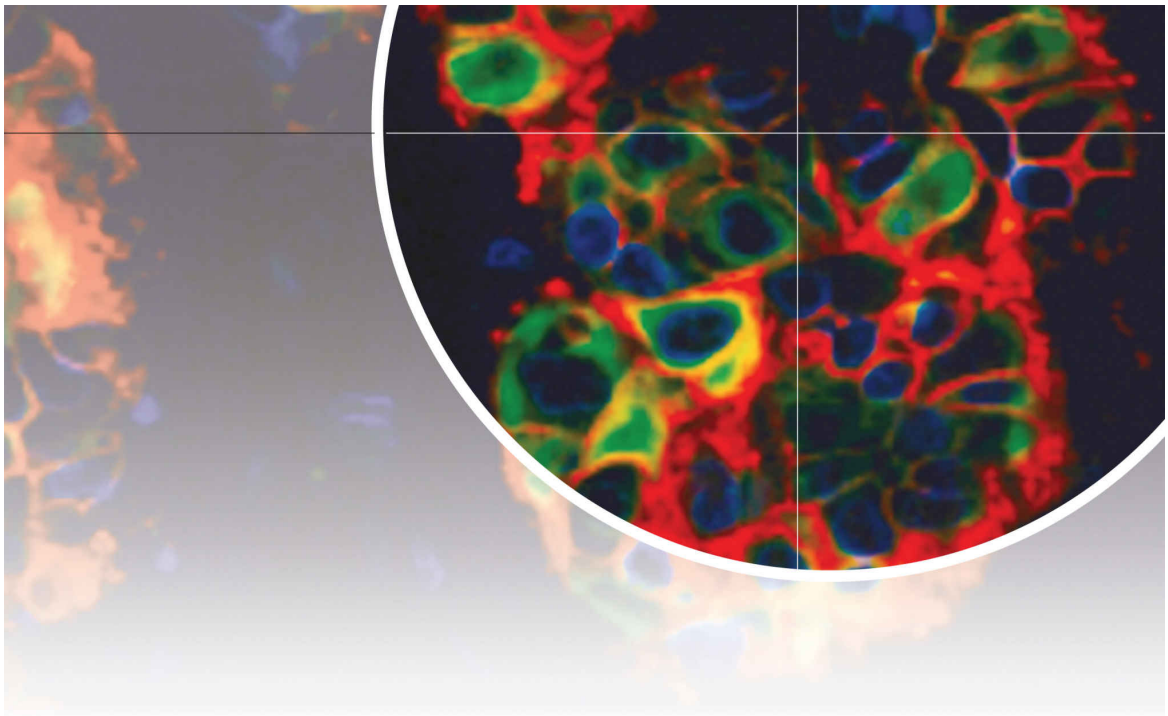
Sequence block of about 300 bp that is found in almost 1 million copies scattered throughout the human genome.

immunocompetent

Referring to an organism whose immune system is fully functional.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 5
Growth Factors, Receptors, and Cancer



Breast cancer cells stained in red and green, with non-staining nuclei appearing as blue.

Chapter opener photo: From J.S. de Jong et al., *J. Pathol* . 184:44–52, 1998. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.

The ability of certain fetal serums to stimulate cell growth and the decreased requirement for such factors by transformed cells may be due to the fact that these serum factors are the same or similar to the transforming factors synthesized by some embryonic or neoplastic cells.

David E. Comings, geneticist, 1973

The discovery of oncogenes and their precursors, the proto-oncogenes, stimulated a variety of questions. The most pointed of these centered on the issue of how the oncogenes, acting through their encoded protein products, succeed in perturbing cell behavior so profoundly. A variety of cell phenotypes were concomitantly altered by the actions of oncoproteins such as Src and Ras, the products of the *src* and *ras* oncogenes. How could a single protein species succeed in changing so many different cellular regulatory pathways at the same time?

The vital clues about oncoprotein functioning came from detailed studies of how normal cells regulate their growth and division. Normal cells receive growth-stimulatory signals from their surroundings. These signals are processed and integrated by complex circuits within the cell, which decide whether or not cell growth and division are appropriate.

This need to receive extracellular signals at the cell surface and to transfer them into the cytoplasm creates a challenging biochemical problem. The extra- and intracellular spaces are separated by the lipid bilayer that is the plasma membrane. This membrane is a barrier that effectively blocks the movement of virtually all but the smallest molecules through it, resulting in dramatically differing concentrations of many types of molecules (including ions) on its two sides. How have cells managed to solve the problem of passing (transducing) signals through a membrane that is almost impervious? And given this barrier, how can the inside of the cell possibly know what is going on in the surrounding extracellular space?

These signaling processes are part of the larger problem of cell-to-cell communication. Indeed, the evolution of the first multicellular animals (metazoa) more than 600 million years ago depended on the development of biochemical mechanisms that allow cells to receive and process signals arising from their neighbors within tissues. Without effective intercellular communication, the behavior of individual cells could not be coordinated, and the formation of architecturally complex tissues and organisms was inconceivable. Obviously, such communication depended on the ability of some cells to emit signals and of others to receive them and respond in specific ways. By necessity, these signals must pass through extracellular spaces en route from signal-emitting cells to those cells that are destined to receive these signals.

In very large part, the signals passed between cells are conveyed by proteins. This fact also required evolutionary innovations: signal emission requires an ability by some cells to release proteins into the nearby extracellular space. Such release—

the process of protein secretion—is also complicated by the imperviousness of the plasma membrane. Once released into the extracellular space, the designated recipient cells must be able to *sense* the presence of these proteins in their surroundings. Much of this chapter is focused on this second problem—how normal cells receive signals from the environment that surrounds them. As we will see, the deregulation of this signaling is central to the formation of cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

transduction

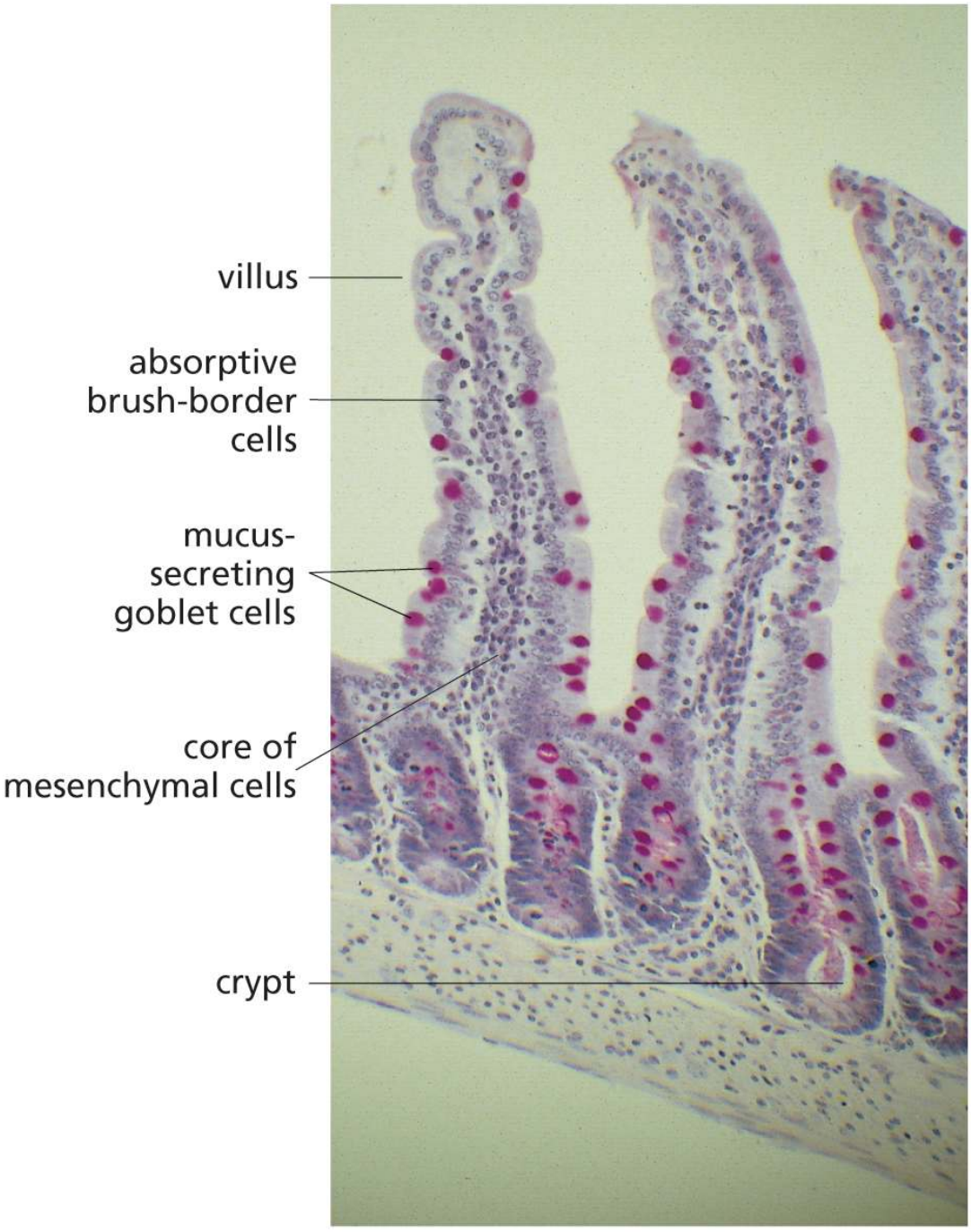
(1) Process whereby a signaling element, such as a protein, receives a signal and, in response, processes the signal and emits another signal. (2) Process by which a gene is introduced into a cell, usually by a vector such as a viral vector.

OceanofPDF.com

5.1 Normal metazoan cells control each other’s lives

As already implied, the normal versions of oncogene-encoded proteins often serve as components of the machinery that enables cells to receive and process biochemical signals regulating cell proliferation. Therefore, to truly appreciate the complexities of oncogene and oncoprotein function, we need to understand the details of how normal cell proliferation is governed.

Our entrée into this discussion comes from a basic and far-reaching principle. Proper tissue architecture depends absolutely on maintaining appropriate proportions of different constituent cell types within a tissue, on the replacement of missing cells, and on discarding extra, unneeded cells (**Figure 5.1**). Wounds must be repaired, and attacks by foreign infectious agents must be warded off through the concerted actions of many cells within the tissue.



Stained intestinal epithelial tissue. Columnar villi rise vertically, attached at their bases to the horizontal submucosal layer. On the surface of a villus, mucus-secreting goblet cells appear as red dots distributed among the violet absorptive brush-border cells. The core of each villus is made up of mesenchymal cells. Around the bases of the villi are crypts, which are pocket-like depressions.

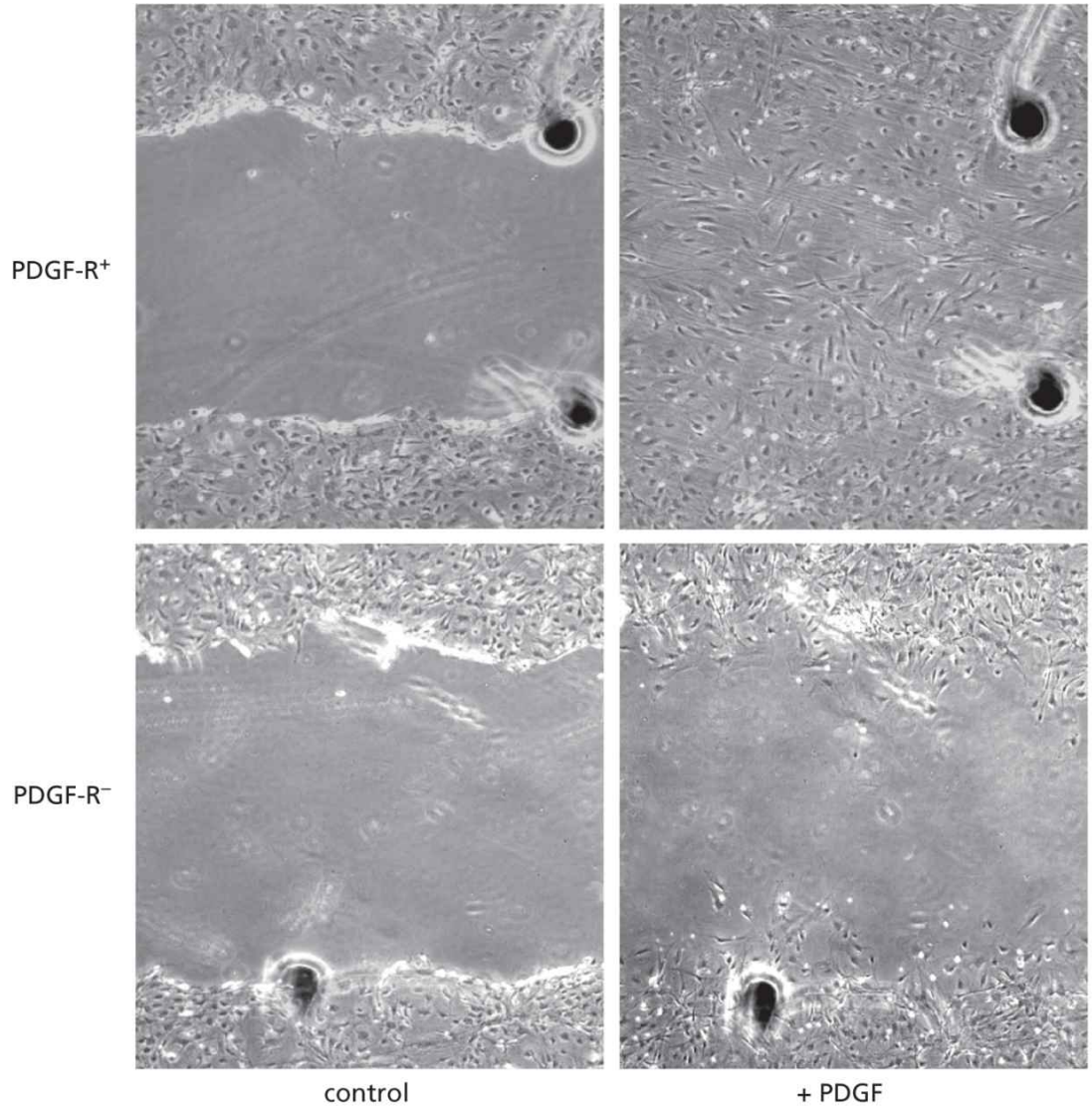
Figure 5.1 Maintenance of tissue architecture The epithelial lining of the small intestine shown here illustrates the fact that a number of distinct cell types coexist within a tissue. The relative numbers and positions of each cell type must be tightly controlled in order to ensure proper tissue structure and function. This control is largely achieved via the exchange of signals between neighboring cells within the tissue. In this particular epithelium, cell-to-cell signaling also ensures that new epithelial cells—termed *enterocytes* in the intestine—are continually being generated in the crypts (at the bases of fingerlike villi) in order to replace others that have migrated up the sides of the villi to the tips, where they are sloughed off. Included among the epithelial cells are mucus-secreting goblet cells (*dark red*) and absorptive cells, as well as enteroendocrine cells and Paneth cells (*not shown*). In addition, in the middle of each villus is a core of mesenchymal cell types, which together constitute the stroma and include fibroblasts, endothelial cells, pericytes, and macrophages. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2015.)

Decisions about growth versus no-growth must be made for the welfare of the entire tissue and whole organism, not for the benefit of its individual component cells. For this reason, no single cell within the condominium of cells that is a living tissue can be granted the autonomy to decide on its own whether it should proliferate or remain in a nongrowing, quiescent state. Instead, this weighty decision can be undertaken only after consultation with other cells within the tissue. These neighbors may provide a particular cell with growth-stimulating signals that stimulate its proliferation or release growth-inhibitory signals that discourage it. In the end, all the decisions made by an individual cell about its proliferation must, by necessity, represent a consensus decision shared with the cells that reside in its neighborhood. Much of this incessant back-and-forth chatter is conveyed by growth factors (GFs). These are relatively small proteins that are released by some cells, make their way through intercellular space, and eventually impinge on yet other cells, carrying with them specific biological messages. Growth factors convey many of the signals that tie the cells within a tissue together into a single community, all members of which are in continuous communication with their respective neighbors.

The dependence of individual cells on their surroundings is illustrated nicely by the behavior of normal cells when they are removed from living tissue and propagated in a Petri dish—the procedures that are termed tissue culture (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.2**). Even though the liquid medium placed above the cells contains all the nutrients required to sustain their growth and division, including amino acids, vitamins, glucose, and salts, such medium, on its own, does not suffice to induce these cells to proliferate. Instead, this decision depends upon the addition to the medium of serum, usually prepared from the blood of calves or fetal calves. Serum contains the growth factors that persuade cells to multiply.

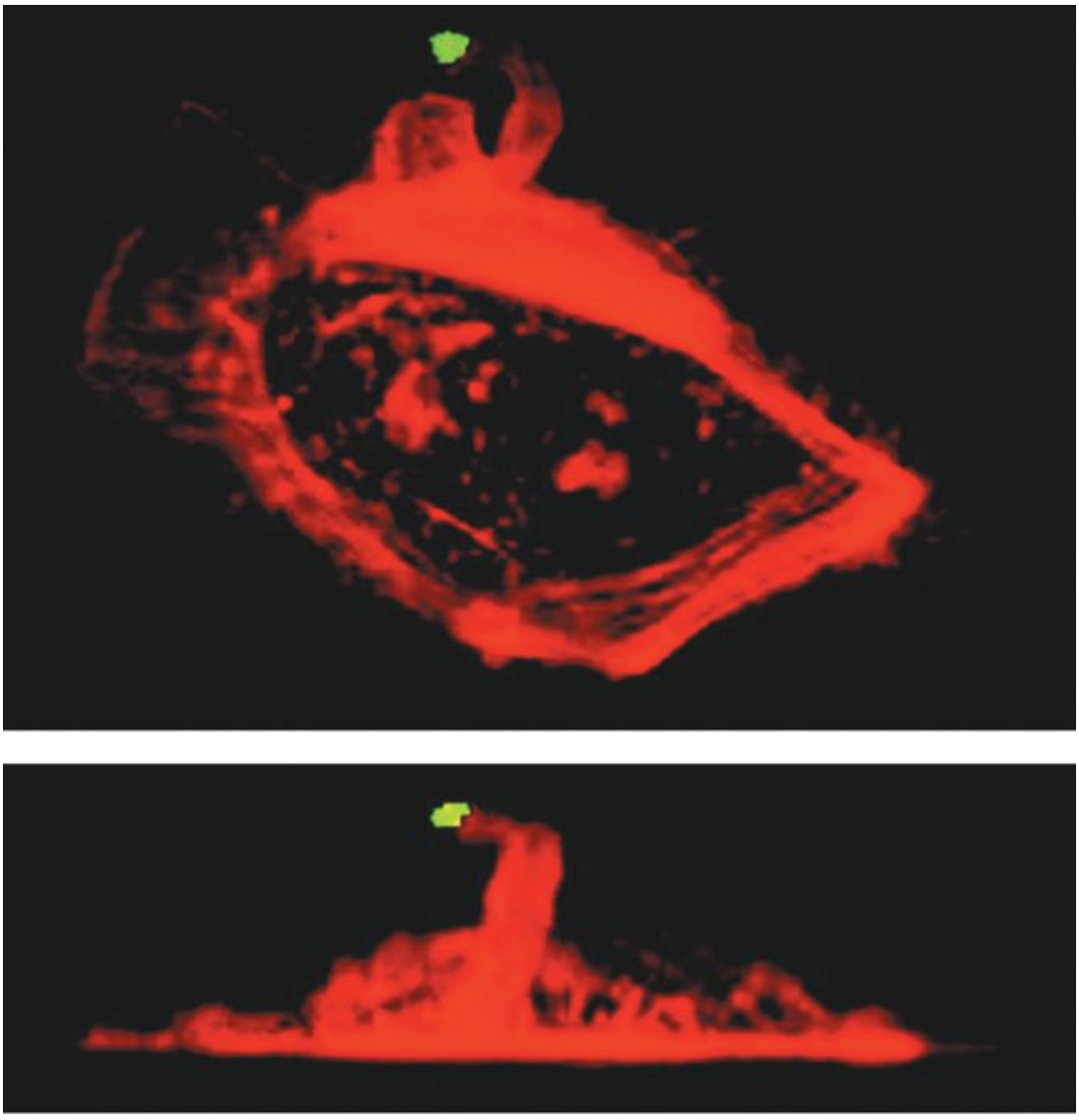
Serum is produced when blood is allowed to clot. The blood platelets adhere to one another and form a matrix that gradually contracts and traps most of the cellular components of the blood, including both the white and red cells. In the context of a wounded tissue, this clot formation is designed to stanch further bleeding. The clear fluid that remains after clot formation and retraction constitutes the serum.

While the platelets in a wound site aggregate as part of clot formation, they also initiate the wound healing process. This process is mediated via the release into the extracellular space of granules carrying a complex mixture of GFs (see Figure S5.1), notably platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), epidermal growth factor (EGF), transforming growth factor-β1 (TGF-β1), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), insulin-like growth factor (IGF), and fibroblast growth factor 2 (FGF-2) (**Figure 5.2**), which act on diverse cell types in the damaged tissue, all of which must be enlisted in the task of reconstructing the damaged tissue. Portrayed differently, this complex mixture of released GFs hints at the complexity of the wound-healing process, in which the proliferation of these multiple distinct cell types must be coordinated.



A 2 by 2 block of micrographs shows the results of an experiment with cell cultures that have been physically damaged. When P D G F is added, the culture of cells that have P D G F-R can be seen to repair itself, whereas the culture of cells that are missing P D G F-R does not exhibit repair.

(A)



Two views of a red cellular mass that is extending an arm up toward a bright green dot.

(B)

Figure 5.2 Effects of growth factors on cells (A) The PDGF released by platelets upon clotting is a potent attractant and mitogen for fibroblasts, which swarm into a wound site in order to reconstruct the tissue. In this *in vitro* model of wound healing, two monolayers of fibroblasts in Petri dishes have been wounded by the tip of a pipette (*left two panels*) and one form of PDGF (PDGF-BB) has been added to their growth medium. While large numbers of wild-type fibroblasts (*top left*) proliferate and migrate into the wound site within 48 hours (*top right*), mutant fibroblasts that have been rendered unresponsive to PDGF (through the loss of a

PDGF cell-surface receptor, PDGF-R, that enables them to sense and respond to the presence of PDGF; *lower left*) fail to do so (*lower right*). (B) Five minutes after epidermal growth factor (EGF) that has been immobilized on a bead (*green dot*) is applied to a mouse mammary carcinoma cell, the cell has reorganized its actin cytoskeleton (*red*) and extended an arm of cytoplasm toward the growth factor (*above*, top view; *below*, side view). (A, from Z. Gao et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 280:9375–9389, 2005. Copyright © 2005 ASBMB. This article is distributed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license. B, from S.J. Kempiak et al., *J. Cell Biol.* 162:781–787, 2003. With permission from Rockefeller University Press.)

Secreted proliferation-stimulating factors, such as most of these GFs, are often termed mitogens, to indicate their ability to induce cells to proliferate. PDGF, for its part, is a potent stimulator of fibroblasts, which form much of the connective tissue including the cell layers beneath epithelia (see Figure 2.4). Its release during clot formation attracts fibroblasts into the wound site and then stimulates their proliferation (see, for example, Figure 5.2A). Other released GFs, such as epidermal growth factor (EGF), can cause dramatic changes in cell shape in addition to stimulating the proliferation of epithelial cells (see Figure 5.2B). Without stimulation by serum-derived PDGF, cultured fibroblasts will remain viable and metabolically active for weeks in a Petri dish, but they will not grow and divide.

This dependence of fibroblasts on growth-stimulating signals released by a second cell type, in this case, blood platelets, mirrors hundreds of similar cell-to-cell communication routes that operate within living tissues to encourage or discourage cell proliferation. Moreover, as discussed in greater detail below, PDGF and EGF are only two of a large and disparate group of growth factors that help to convey important growth-controlling messages from one cell to another (**Sidebar 5.1**).

Sidebar 5.1 Cell-to-cell communication involves far more than secreted growth factors

In fact, soluble growth factors represent only a small subset of the proteins that are secreted by cells and potentially contribute to the intercommunication between them. Most important is the network of secreted proteins that assemble to form the extracellular matrix (ECM) as discussed in Chapter 1 (see Figure 1.11C). More than 250 distinct proteins form the structural backbone of the ECM with up to three times as many additional secreted proteins associating in various ways with the ECM and modifying its structure. Some of the latter, largely proteases, continuously remodel the ECM and the GFs that are present in the extracellular space. We focus in this chapter largely on the GFs. Nevertheless, our narrative overlooks many of the still-poorly

understood functions of almost all ECM components, ECM-associated proteins, and secreted proteases. Together, they form the secretomes of cells.

As developed in the rest of this chapter, many oncogene-encoded proteins usurp the signaling molecules that enable cells to sense the presence of growth factors in their surroundings, to convey this information into the cell interior, and to process this information. By taking charge of the natural growth-stimulating machinery of the cell, oncoproteins are able to delude a cell into believing that it has encountered growth factors in its surroundings. Once this deception has taken place, the cell responds slavishly by beginning to proliferate, just as it would have done if abundant growth factors were actually present in the medium around it.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mitogen
: (adj., - **genic**) An agent that provokes cell proliferation.

secretome
: The collection of proteins that are released by a cell into the extracellular space under specific physiological conditions or states of differentiation, often focused on signaling proteins.

growth factor
: Secreted protein that is able to stimulate the growth and/or proliferation of a cell by binding to a specific cell-surface receptor displayed by that cell.

OceanofPDF.com

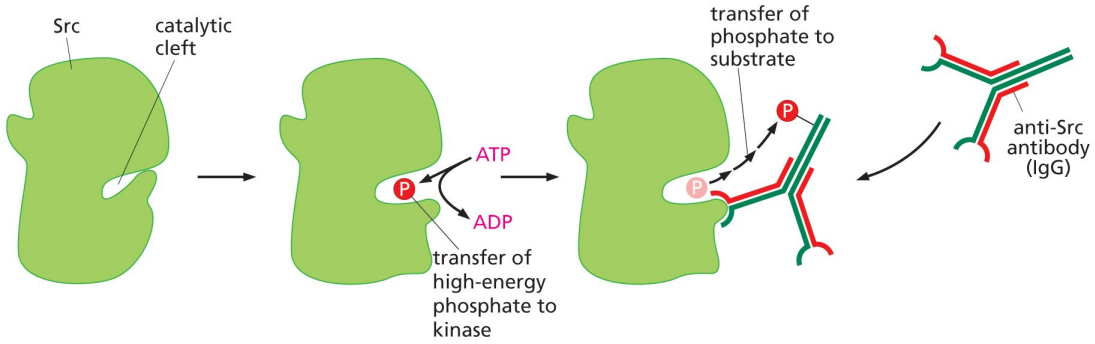
5.2 The *Src* protein functions as a tyrosine kinase

The first clues to how cell-to-cell signaling via growth factors operates came from biochemical analysis of the v-*src* oncogene and the protein that it specifies. The trail of clues led, step-by-step, from this protein to the receptors used by cells to detect growth factors and, in turn, to the intracellular signaling pathways that control normal and malignant cell proliferation.

The initial characterization of the v-*src*–encoded oncoprotein attracted enormous interest. This was the first cellular oncoprotein to be studied and therefore had the prospect of giving cancer researchers their first view of the biochemical mechanisms of cell transformation. After the molecular cloning of the *src* oncogene, the amino acid sequence of its protein product was deduced directly from the nucleotide sequence of the cloned gene. This sequence revealed that the encoded protein was synthesized as a polypeptide chain of 533 amino acid residues and had a mass of almost precisely 60 kilodaltons (kD).

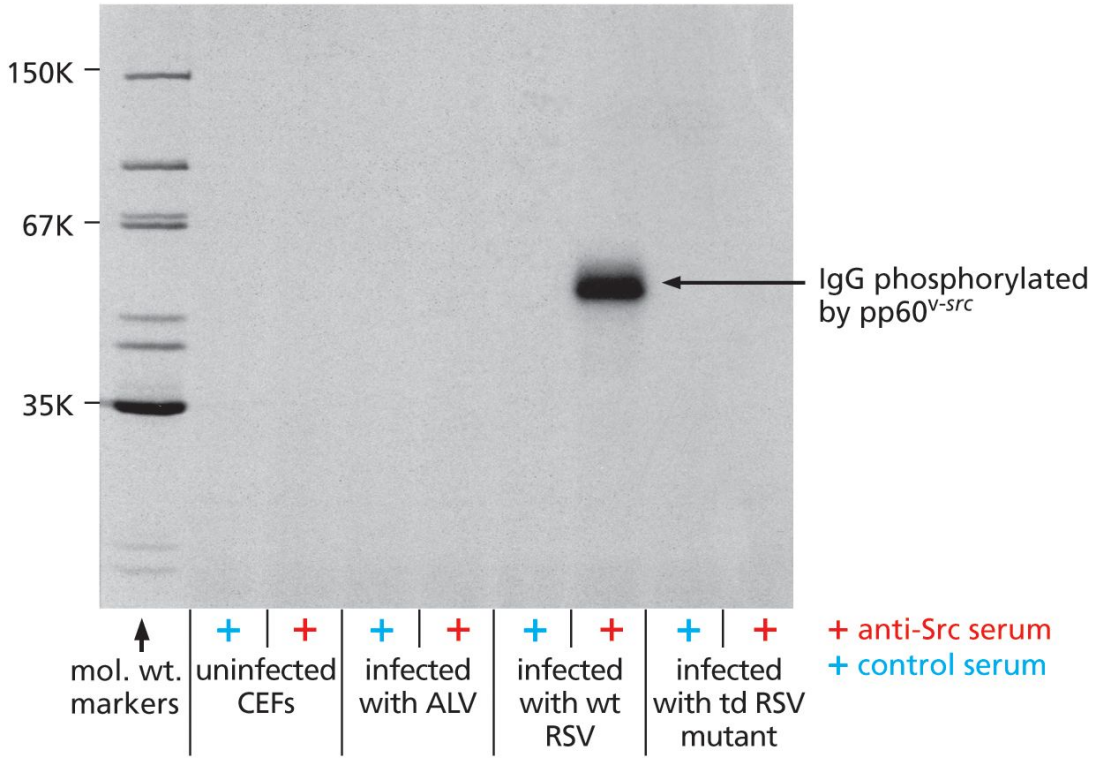
The amino acid sequence of Src provided few clues as to how this oncoprotein functions to promote cell proliferation and transformation. Avian and mammalian cells transformed by the v-*src* oncogene were known to exhibit a radically altered shape, to pump in glucose from the surrounding medium more rapidly than normal cells, to grow in an anchorage-independent fashion, to lose contact inhibition, and to form tumors. Whatever the precise mechanisms of action, it was obvious that Src affected, directly or indirectly, a wide variety of intracellular targets.

Clever biochemical sleuthing in 1977–1978 solved the puzzle of how Src operates. Antibodies were produced that specifically recognized and bound Src (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.1**). The antibody molecules were found to become phosphorylated when they were incubated in solution with both Src and adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the universal phosphate donor of the cell. Phosphorylation was known to involve the covalent attachment of phosphate groups to the side chains of specific amino acid residues. Hence, it was clear that Src operates as a protein kinase —an enzyme that removes a high-energy phosphate group from ATP and transfers it to a suitable protein substrate, in this instance, an antibody molecule (**Figure 5.3**). While Src does not normally phosphorylate antibody molecules, its ability to do so in these early experiments suggested that its usual mode of action also involved the phosphorylation of certain protein substrates within cells.



A sequence that begins when the catalytic cleft on Sarc opens, in order to permit transfer of high-energy phosphate to a kinase within the cleft. This phosphate comes from an A T P molecule, reducing it to A D P. The phosphate is then transferred to the substrate of an anti-Sarc antibody (I g G).

(A)



The results of an experiment, in blot form. The left edge of the image shows a vertical series of blots used as molecular weight markers for calibration. The rest of the image has control serum and anti-Sarc serum bands for four different categories of chicken embryo fibroblast: uninfected, infected with A L V, infected with wild-type R S V, and infected with transformation-defective R S V mutant. The only blot is in the band for infected with wild-type R S V,

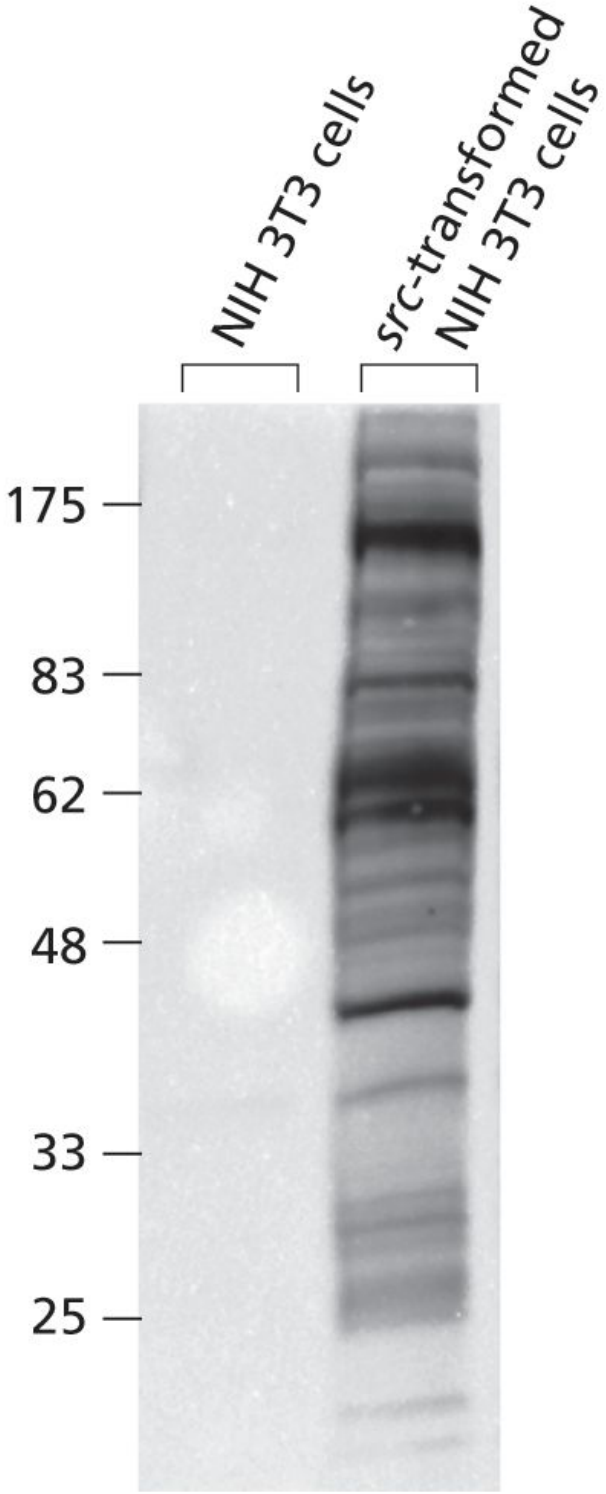
with anti-Sarc serum. The vertical position of this heavy blot suggests a molecular weight of about 50 k. The blot is labeled I g G phosphorylated by p p 60 v-Sarc.
(B)

Figure 5.3 Phosphorylation of a precipitating antibody molecule by Src
Protein kinases operate by removing the high-energy γ phosphate group from ATP and attaching it to the hydroxyl groups in the side chains of serine, threonine, or tyrosine residues of substrate proteins. (A) The antibody molecule that was used to immunoprecipitate Src molecules (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.1**) also could serve as a substrate for phosphorylation by this kinase. In cells, Src phosphorylates a wide range of protein substrates. (B) This experiment revealed, for the first time, the biochemical activity associated with an oncoprotein. Normal rabbit serum (*blue* "=" *signs*) or serum from a rabbit bearing an RSV-induced, Src-expressing tumor (which contained antibodies against Src; *red* "=" *signs*) was used to immunoprecipitate cell lysates that were incubated with $^{32}PO_4$-radiolabeled ATP. Lysates were prepared from uninfected chicken embryo fibroblasts (CEFs); CEFs infected with avian leukosis virus (ALV), which lacks a *src* oncogene; CEFs infected with wild-type (wt) RSV; or CEFs infected with a transformation-defective (td) mutant of RSV, which lacks a functional *src* gene. Only the combination of tumor-bearing rabbit serum and a lysate from wt RSV–infected CEFs yielded a strongly ^{32}P-labeled protein that co-migrated with the precipitating antibody, indicating that the antibody molecule had become phosphorylated by the Src oncoprotein. (B, from M.S. Collett and R.L. Erikson, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 75:2021–2024, 1978. With permission from the authors.)

Independent of this kinase activity, Src was itself a phosphoprotein, that is, it carried phosphate groups attached covalently to one or more of its amino acid side chains. This indicated that Src also served as a substrate for phosphorylation by a protein kinase—either phosphorylating itself (autophosphorylation) or serving as the substrate of yet another kinase. Its molecular weight and phosphoprotein status caused it initially to be called $pp60^{src}$, although hereafter we will refer to it simply as Src.

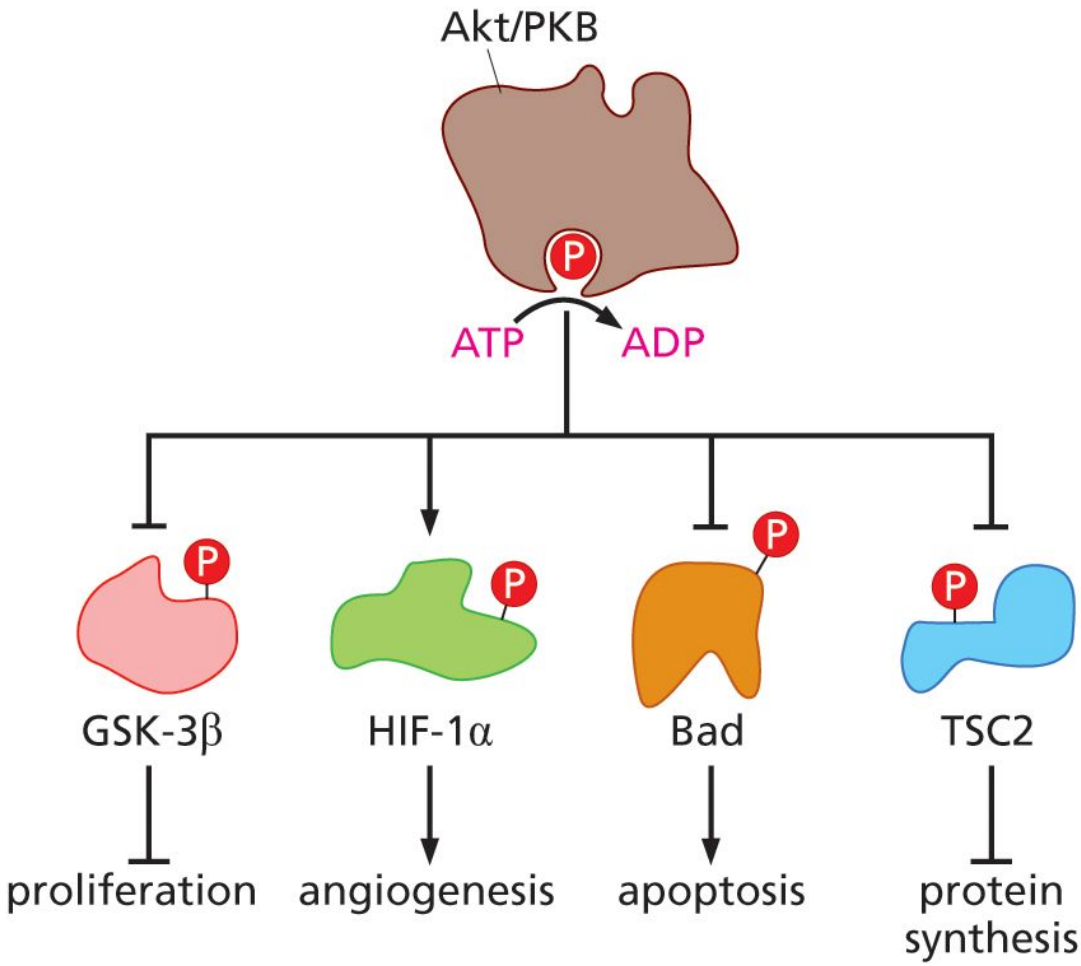
The fact that Src functions as a kinase was a major revelation. In principle, a protein kinase can phosphorylate multiple, distinct substrate proteins within a cell. In the case of Src, more than 50 distinct substrates have since been enumerated (**Figure 5.4A**). Once phosphorylated, each of these substrate proteins may be functionally altered and proceed, in turn, to alter the functions of its own set of downstream targets. This mode of action (Figure 5.4B and C) seemed to explain how a protein kinase could act pleiotropically to perturb multiple cell phenotypes. At the time of this discovery, other

protein kinases had already been found able to regulate complex circuits, notably those involved in carbohydrate metabolism.



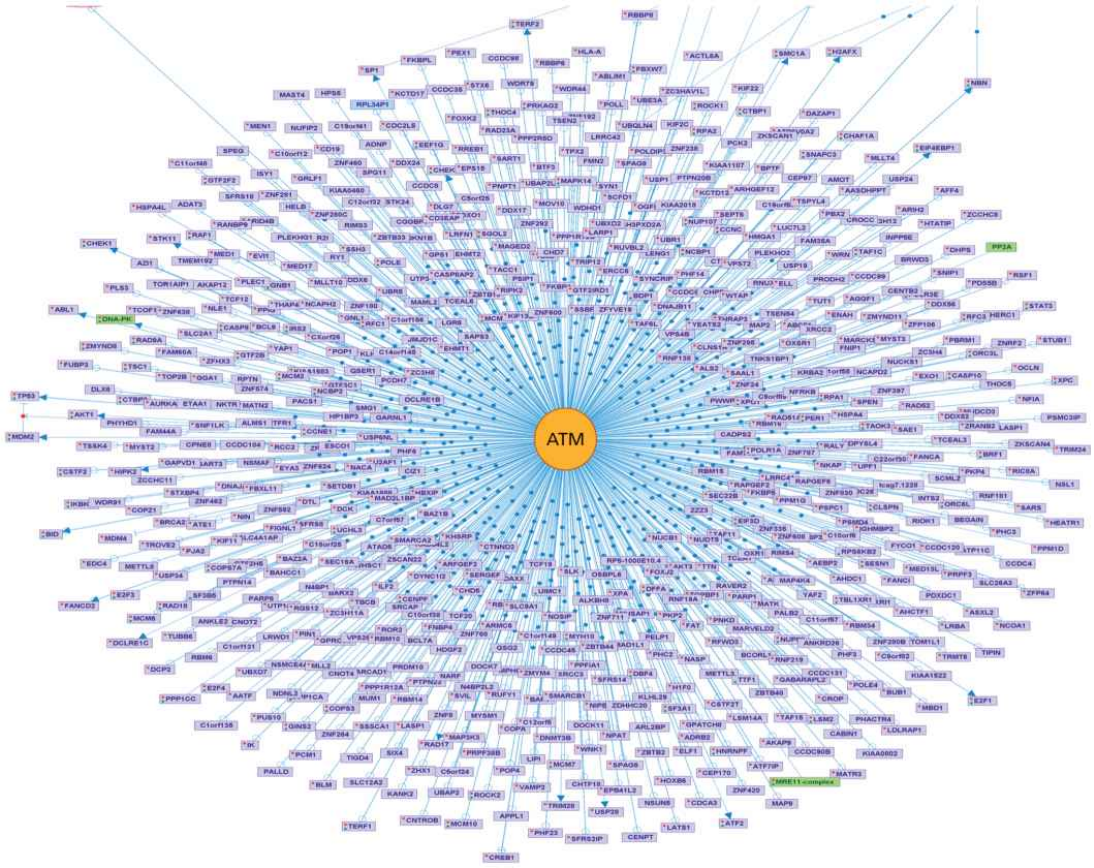
An autoradiograph with two lanes. There are numbers along the left edge, from 25 near the bottom to 175 near the top. The lane on the left, for untransformed N I H 3 T 3 cells, is essentially blank. The lane on the right, for Sarc-transformed N I H 3 T 3 cells, has a series of bands that are dark and pronounced from 25 on up.

(A)



A diagram illustrating the actions of the A k t / P K B kinase. After it receives a phosphate from A T P (which then becomes A D P), it can transfer the phosphate to one of four proteins shown. Phosphorylation of G S K-3 beta inactivates its power to inhibit proliferation, Phosphorylation of H I F 1 alpha activates its angiogenic powers, Phosphorylation of B a d inactivates its apoptotic powers, and Phosphorylation of T S C 2 inactives its power to block protein synthesis.

(B)



A sunburst-like figure with A T M at the center, surrounded by hundreds of protein substrate names. Lines connect A T M to the names.

(C)

Figure 5.4 Actions of protein kinases (A) This autoradiograph of proteins resolved by gel electrophoresis illustrates the fact that the phosphorylation state of a number of distinct protein species within a cell can be altered by the actions of the Src kinase expressed in cells by Rous sarcoma virus. This immunoblot analysis, using an anti-phosphotyrosine antibody, specifically detects proteins that carry phosphotyrosine residues, the known products of Src kinase action (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.2**). The left channel contains proteins from a lysate of untransformed mouse NIH 3T3 fibroblasts and is essentially blank, indicating the relative absence of phosphotyrosine-containing proteins in cells that lack Src expression. The right channel shows the phosphorylated proteins in cells expressing an active Src kinase protein. (B) The pleiotropic actions of a protein kinase usually derive from its ability to phosphorylate and thereby modify the functional state of a number of distinct substrate proteins. Illustrated here are the actions of the Akt/PKB kinase, a serine/threonine kinase that can influence a wide variety of biological processes through phosphorylation of the indicated major

control proteins. (A number of other known substrates of this kinase are not shown here.) Thus, Akt/PKB can inactivate the antiproliferative actions of GSK-3β, the pro-apoptotic powers of Bad, and the translation-inhibiting actions of TSC2, and it can activate the angiogenic (blood vessel–inducing) powers of HIF-1α. In this diagram and throughout this book, arrowheads denote stimulatory signals, while lines at right angles (crossbars) denote an inhibitory signal. (C) A more typical behavior of a protein kinase is illustrated here. The ability of a serine/threonine kinase termed ATM, which evokes a highly complex set of biochemical changes in a cell in response to detected DNA damage (discussed in Chapter 12), has been associated with its phosphorylation of many hundreds of distinct protein substrates, most validated by direct biochemical analyses. (A, from S.M. Ulrich et al., *Biochemistry* 42:7915–7921, 2003. With permission from American Chemical Society. C, courtesy of Y. Shiloh.)

Src was soon found to be quite different from all other previously discovered protein kinases. These other kinases were known to attach phosphate groups to the side chains of serine and threonine amino acid residues. Src, in contrast, phosphorylated certain tyrosine residues of its protein substrates (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.2**). Careful quantification of the phosphorylated amino acid residues in cells revealed how unusual this enzymatic activity is. More than 99% of the phosphoamino acids in normal cells are phosphothreonine or phosphoserine; phosphotyrosine constitutes as little as 0.05 to 0.1% of these cells' total phosphoamino acids.

After transformation of cells by the v-*src* oncogene, the level of phosphotyrosine was found to rise dramatically, becoming as much as 1% of the total phosphoamino acids in these cells. (This helps to explain the dramatic differences between the two channels shown in Figure 5.4A.) When the same cells were transformed by other oncogenes, such as H-*ras*, their phosphoamino acid content hardly changed at all. Therefore, the creation of phosphotyrosine residues appeared to be a specific attribute of Src and was not associated with all mechanisms of cell transformation. The multiple bands of proteins phosphorylated by Src provided another insight: the ability of a protein kinase like Src to evoke multiple distinct biochemical changes in a cell (representing its ability to function in a pleiotropic fashion) is derived from its ability, and that of other kinases, to phosphorylate a multitude of functionally distinct protein substrates (see Figure 5.4B and C). Later studies yielded a second, related conclusion: signaling through tyrosine phosphorylation is a device that is used largely by mitogenic signaling pathways in mammalian cells, whereas the kinases that are involved in regulating thousands of other processes rely almost exclusively on serine and threonine phosphorylation to convey their messages.

Mutant forms of Src that had lost the ability to phosphorylate substrate proteins also lost their transforming powers. So the accumulating evidence converged on the idea

that Src succeeds in transforming cells through its ability to act as a tyrosine kinase (TK) and phosphorylate a still-uncharacterized group of substrate proteins within these cells. While an important initial clue, these advances only allowed a reformulation of the major question surrounding this research area. Now the problem could be restated as follows: How did the phosphorylation of tyrosine residues result in cell transformation?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

receptor
: Protein found on the plasma membrane or in the nucleus within a cell that is capable of specifically binding a signaling molecule (its cognate ligand). Most types of receptors emit signals, such as those inducing cell proliferation, in response to such binding. *See also* **ligand**.

kinase
: Enzyme that removes the γ phosphate from ATP and covalently attaches the phosphate moiety to substrate molecules, often but not exclusively proteins.

phosphoprotein
: A protein to which one or more phosphate groups have been covalently attached, usually to threonine, serine, or tyrosine residues.

autophosphorylation
: Phosphorylation of a protein molecule by its own associated kinase activity. *See also* **transphosphorylation**.

pleiotropy
: Ability of a gene or protein to concomitantly evoke multiple distinct downstream responses within a cell or organism.

OceanofPDF.com

5.3 The EGF receptor functions as a tyrosine kinase

After the cloning and sequencing of the v-*src* oncogene, the oncogenes of a number of other acutely transforming retroviruses were isolated by molecular cloning and subjected to DNA sequencing. Unfortunately, in the great majority of cases, the amino acid sequences of their protein products provided few clues about biochemical function. The next major insights came instead from another area of research. Cell biologists interested in how cells exchange signals with one another isolated a variety of proteins involved in cell-to-cell signaling and determined the amino acid sequences of these proteins. Quite unexpectedly, close connections were uncovered between these signaling proteins and the protein products of certain oncogenes.

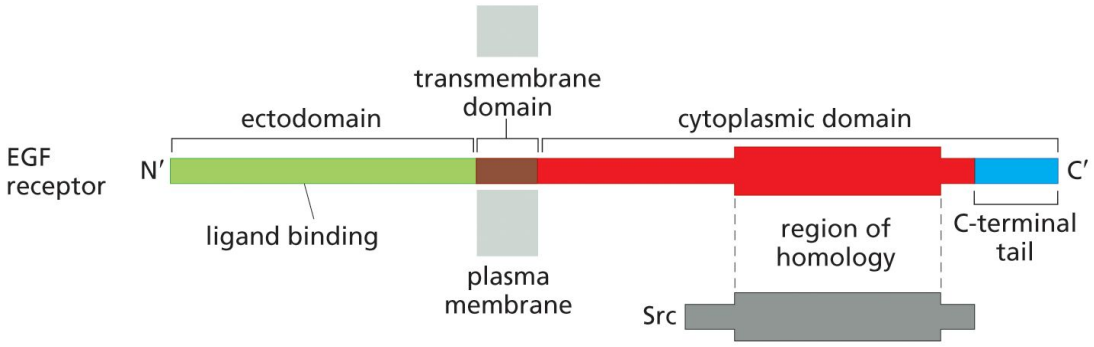
This line of research began with epidermal growth factor (EGF), the first of the growth factors to be discovered. EGF was initially characterized because of its ability to provoke premature eye opening in newborn mice. Soon after, EGF was found to have mitogenic effects when applied to a variety of epithelial cell types.

EGF was able to bind to the surfaces of the cells whose growth it stimulated; cells to which EGF was unable to bind were unresponsive to its mitogenic effects. Taken together, such observations suggested the involvement of a cell surface protein, an EGF *receptor* (EGF-R), that was able to specifically recognize EGF in the extracellular space, bind to it, and inform the cell interior that an encounter with EGF had occurred. In the language of biochemistry, EGF served as the ligand for its cognate receptor—the still-hypothetical EGF receptor.

Isolation of the EGF-R protein proved challenging because this receptor, like many others, is usually expressed at very low levels in cells. Researchers circumvented this problem by taking advantage of a human tumor cell line (an epidermoid carcinoma of the uterus) that expresses the EGF-R at elevated levels—as much as 100-fold higher than normal. These cells yielded an abundance of the receptor protein, which could then be purified biochemically and subjected to amino acid sequence analysis.

The sequence of the EGF-R protein provided important insights into its overall structural features and how this structure enables it to function (**Figure 5.5A**). Its large N-terminal domain of 621 amino acid residues, which protrudes into the extracellular space (and is therefore termed its ectodomain), was clearly involved in recognizing and binding the EGF ligand. The EGF receptor possessed a second distinctive domain that is common to many cell surface glycoproteins; this transmembrane domain of 23

amino acid residues threads its way from outside the cell through the lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane into the cytoplasm. The existence of this transmembrane domain could be deduced from the presence of a continuous stretch of hydrophobic amino acid residues located in the middle of the protein's sequence; this domain of EGF-R protein resides comfortably in the highly hydrophobic environment of the lipid bilayer that forms the plasma membrane. Finally, a third domain of 542 residues at the C-terminus (that is, the end of the chain synthesized last) of the EGF receptor was found to extend into the cytoplasm.



A schematic diagram of the receptor E G F receptor, with an N terminus on the left and a C terminus on the right. The segments, from left to right, are a ligand binding ectodomain, shown in green; a transmembrane domain, shown in brown, that spans the plasma membrane; and a cytoplasmic domain with a long red section followed by a shorter blue section. A widened part of the red section is the region of homology with a S r c protein, shown alongside. The blue section is the terminal tail.

(A)

A comparison of the amino acid sequences of the cytoplasmic domains of six proteins: S r c, A b l, F e S, Erb B, R a f, and M o s. Green highlighting indicates where S r c and E r b B match.

(B)

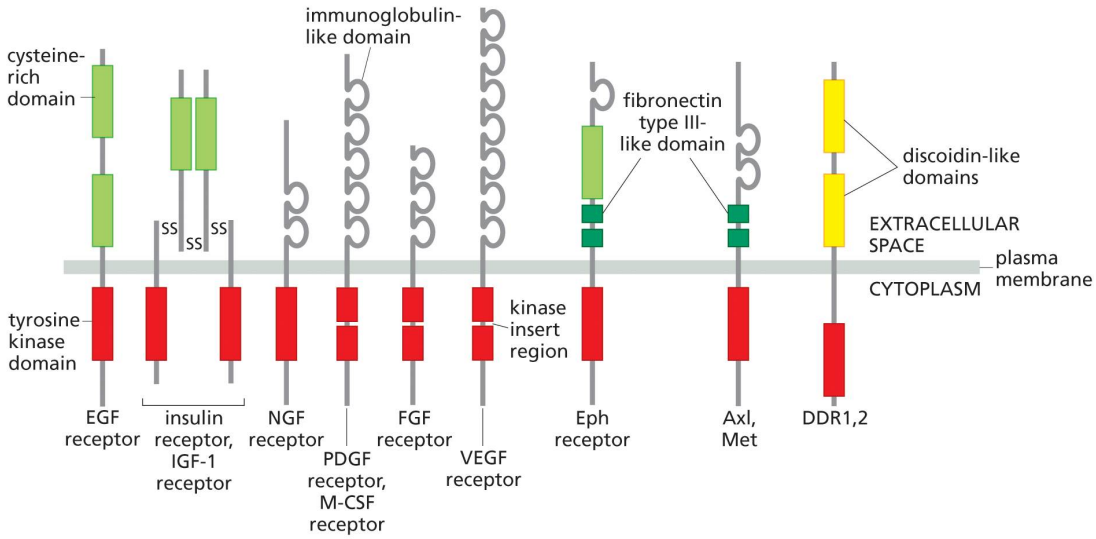
Figure 5.5 Structure of the EGF receptor (A) The receptor for epidermal growth factor (EGF-R) is a complex protein with an extracellular domain (ectodomain, *green*), a transmembrane domain that threads its way through the plasma membrane (*brown*), and a cytoplasmic domain (*red*, *blue*). The ligand-binding domain is responsible for binding EGF. Similarity in amino acid sequences (see panel B) demonstrates that one region of the cytoplasmic domain (*wide red rectangle*) is related to a region in the Src oncoprotein (*gray*). (B) Comparison of the amino acid sequences (using the single-letter code) of the cytoplasmic domains of the EGF-R (labeled “ErbB” here) and Src revealed areas of sequence identity (*green*), suggesting that the EGF-R, like Src, emits signals by functioning as a tyrosine kinase. While the sequence identities seem to be quite scattered, the shared residues nonetheless indicate clear evolutionary relatedness (homology)

between Src and ErbB; such homology of structure usually indicates analogous functions. Yet other viral oncoproteins, such as Abl and Fes, some of whose sequences are also shown here, were found to share some sequence similarity with these two. The viral oncoproteins specified by the *raf* and *mos* oncogenes, which function as serine/threonine kinases, are seen to be more distantly related, sharing even fewer sequences with Src and the EGF-R. The dashes indicate amino acid residues that are missing in one protein but are present in one or more of its homologs; these have been introduced to maximize the sequence alignment between homologs. (Adapted from G.M. Cooper, Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett, 1995. www.jblearning.com. Reprinted with permission.)

The overall structure of the EGF receptor suggested in outline how it functions. After its ectodomain binds EGF, a signal is transmitted through the plasma membrane to activate the cytoplasmic domain of the receptor; once activated, the latter emits signals that induce a cell to grow and divide. Provocatively, examination of this cytoplasmic domain revealed a clear sequence similarity with the already-known sequence of the Src protein (Figure 5.5B). (Such shared structure indicates similar functions and a shared descent from a common precursor in the distant evolutionary past.)

Suddenly, it became clear how the EGF receptor emits signals in the cell interior: once its ectodomain binds EGF, somehow the Src-like kinase in its cytoplasmic domain becomes activated, proceeds to phosphorylate tyrosines on certain cytoplasmic proteins, and thereby causes a cell to proliferate. Subsequent sequencing efforts revealed overall sequence similarities among a variety of tyrosine kinases, many of which can function as oncoproteins (see Figure 5.5B).

Since these initial analyses of the EGF receptor structure, a large number of other, similarly structured receptors have been characterized (**Figure 5.6**). As discussed later, each of these receptors has its own growth factor ligand or set of ligands (**Table 5.1**). Depending on the particular growth factor–receptor pair, the binding of a ligand to its receptor can trigger multiple biological responses in the cell in addition to stimulating growth and division. Important among these are changes in cell shape, cell survival, cell metabolism, and cell motility.



An overview of different tyrosine kinase receptor structures, all shown embedded in a plasma membrane. The samples include an E G F receptor, an insulin receptor slash I G F-1 receptor, an N G F receptor, a P D G F receptor slash M-C S F receptor, an F G F receptor, a V E G F receptor, an E p h receptor, an A x l slash M e t, and a D D R 1,2. On the cytoplasm side, the tyrosine kinase domains are shown in red. Some have a break in the middle, a kinase insert region. On the extracellular side, the structures are more varied. There are long cysteine-rich domains shown as light green rectangles, shorter fibronectin type 3-like domains shown as dark green squares, long discoidin-like domains shown as yellow rectangles, and immunoglobulin like domains shown as series of connected loops.

Figure 5.6 Structure of tyrosine kinase receptors The EGF receptor (see Figure 5.5A) is only one of many similarly structured receptors that are encoded by the human genome. These tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs) can be placed into distinct families, depending on the details of their structure. Representatives of most of these families are shown here. All have in common quite similar cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase domains (*red*), although in some cases (e.g., the VEGF receptor) these domains are interrupted by small “insert” regions. The RTK ectodomains (which protrude into the extracellular space; *green*, *gray*, *yellow*) have highly variable structures, reflecting the fact that they recognize and bind a wide variety of extracellular ligands. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2015.)

Table 5.1 Growth factors (GFs) and tyrosine kinase receptors that are often involved in tumor pathogenesis

Name of GF	Name of receptor	Cells responding to GF
PDGF[a]	PDGF-R	endothelial, VSMCs, fibroblasts, other mesenchymal cells, glial cells
EGF[b]	EGF-R[c]	many types of epithelial cells, some mesenchymal cells
NGF	Trk	neurons
FGF[d]	FGF-R[e]	endothelial, fibroblasts, other mesenchymal cells, VSMCs, neuroectodermal cells
HGF/SF	Met	various epithelial cells
VEGF[f]	VEGF-R[g]	endothelial cells in capillaries, lymph ducts
IGF[h]	IGF-R1	wide variety of cell types
GDNF	Ret	neuroectodermal cells
SCF	Kit	hematopoietic, mesenchymal cells

Abbreviation: VSMC, vascular smooth muscle cell.
Adapted in part from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2015.

Interestingly, these receptors and their ligands represent relatively recent evolutionary inventions, and their antecedents cannot be found among the proteins made by almost all single-cell eukaryotes. Many were invented just before metazoan life first arose and have been retained in clearly recognizable form in all modern metazoa. This explains why research on the cell-to-cell communication systems of simpler metazoan

organisms, such as worms and flies, has so greatly enriched our understanding of growth factors and how they signal. Unexpectedly, recent research has revealed the presence of a tyrosine kinase receptor gene in the genome of at least one single-cell eukaryote; this organism, which may occasionally form multicellular aggregates, may be closely related to the common protozoan ancestor of all metazoa, and its receptor may be the prototype of many dozens of tyrosine kinase receptors present in modern metazoa including ourselves (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.3**).

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aPDGF is represented by four distinct polypeptides, PDGF-A, -B, -C, and -D. The PDGF-Rs consist of at least two distinct species, α and β, that can homodimerize or heterodimerize and associate with these ligands in different ways.Return to reference a
- bThe EGF family of ligands, all of which bind to the EGF-R (ErbB1) and/or heterodimers of erbB1 and one of its related receptors (footnote c), includes—in addition to EGF—TGF-α, HB-EGF, amphiregulin, betacellulin, and epiregulin. In addition, other related ligands bind to heterodimers of ErbB2 and ErbB3 or ErbB4; these include epigen and a variety of proteins generated by alternatively spliced neuregulin (NRG) mRNAs, including heregulin (HRG), glial growth factor (GGF), and less well-studied factors such as sensory and motor neuron–derived factor (SMDF).Return to reference b
- cThe EGF-R family of receptors consists of four distinct proteins, ErbB1 (EGF-R), ErbB2 (HER2, Neu), ErbB3 (HER3), and ErbB4 (HER4). They often bind ligands as heterodimeric receptors, for example, ErbB1 + ErbB3, ErbB1 + ErbB2, or ErbB2 + ErbB4; ErbB3 is devoid of kinase activity and is phosphorylated by ErbB2 when the two form heterodimers. ErbB2 has no ligand of its own but does have strong tyrosine kinase activity. ErbB3 and ErbB4 bind neuregulins, a family of more than 15 ligands that are generated by alternative splicing.Return to reference c
- dFGFs constitute a large family of GFs. The prototypes are acidic FGF (aFGF) and basic FGF (bFGF); in addition there are other known members of this family.Return to reference d
- eThere are four well-characterized FGF-Rs.Return to reference e
- fThere are four known VEGFs. VEGF-A and -B are involved in angiogenesis, while VEGF-C and -D are involved predominantly in lymphangiogenesis.Return to reference f
- gThere are three known VEGF-Rs: VEGF-R1 (also known as Flt-1) and VEGF-R2 (also known as Flk-1/KDR), involved in angiogenesis; and VEGF-R3, involved in lymphangiogenesis.Return to reference g
- hThe two known IGFs, IGF-1 and IGF-2, both related in structure to insulin, stimulate cell growth (i.e., increase in size) and survival; they

also appear to be weakly mitogenic.Return to reference h

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ligand
: Molecule that binds specifically to a receptor and thereby activates its signaling powers. *See also* **receptor**.

ectodomain
: Portion of a cell surface protein that protrudes from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space.

transmembrane
: Referring to the domain of a protein, usually composed of a stretch of 12 to 35 hydrophobic amino acids, that is threaded through a lipid bilayer membrane and therefore resides largely or entirely within the hydrophobic environment of the lipid bilayer.

hydrophobic
: Referring to a chemical moiety or environment that avoids direct interaction with water. *Compare* **hydrophilic**.

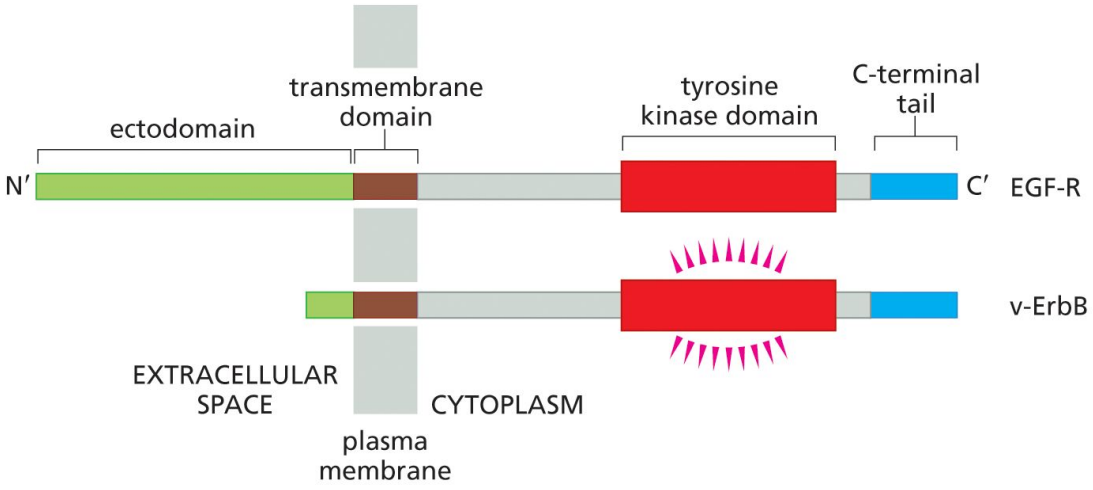
motility
: (adj., **motile**) Tendency for movement, such as that of individual cells, from one location to another.

OceanofPDF.com

5.4 An altered growth factor receptor can function as an oncoprotein

A real bombshell fell in 1984 when the sequence of the EGF receptor was recognized to be closely related to the sequence of a known oncoprotein specified by the *erbB* oncogene. This oncogene had been discovered originally in the genome of avian erythroblastosis virus (AEV), a transforming retrovirus that rapidly induces a leukemia of the red blood cell precursors (an erythroleukemia). In one stroke, two areas of cell biology were united. A protein used by the cell to sense the presence of a growth factor in its surroundings had been appropriated (in its avian form) and converted into a potent retrovirus-encoded oncoprotein.

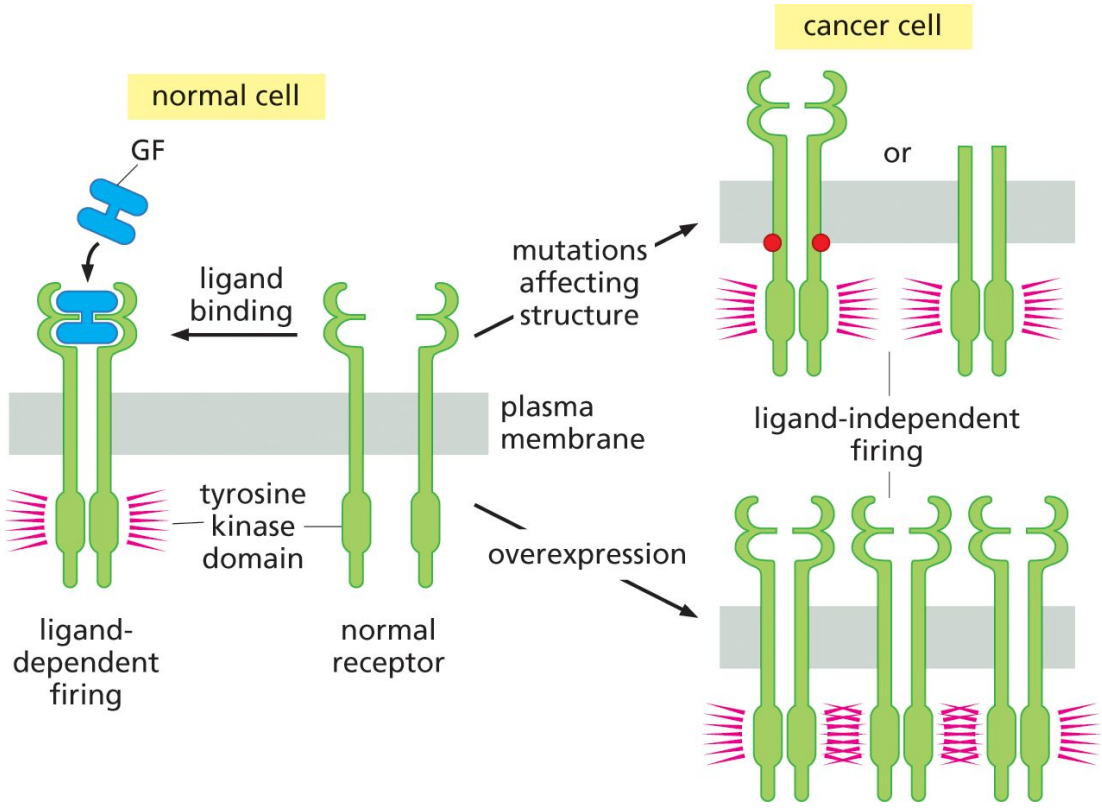
Once examined in detail, the oncoprotein specified by the *erbB* oncogene of avian erythroblastosis virus was found to lack sequences present in the N-terminal ectodomain of the EGF receptor (**Figure 5.7**). Without these N-terminal sequences, the ErbB oncoprotein clearly cannot recognize and bind EGF, and yet it functions as a potent stimulator of cell proliferation. This realization led to an interesting speculation that was soon validated: somehow, deletion of the ectodomain enables the resulting truncated EGF receptor protein to send growth-stimulating signals into cells in a constitutive fashion, fully independent of EGF. Years later, such truncated EGF receptors were discovered to be present in one-third of human glioblastomas and in smaller proportions of a variety of other human tumors. Still later, the presence in breast cancers of similarly truncated versions of ErbB/EGF-R's close cousin, termed variously ErbB2, HER2, or Neu, were found to be associated with particularly poor prognosis.



An E G F receptor and a v-Erb B oncoprotein shown schematically, side by side within the same plasma membrane. On the extracellular side, the E G F receptor has a long ectodomain, whereas the v-Erb B protein has much shorter one. On the cytoplasm side, the two proteins have the same structure: a long, gray domain with a widened tyrosine kinase domain shown in red, followed by a blue C-terminal tail. However, the v-Erb B protein's tyrosine kinase domain is signaling, where as the E G F receptor's is not.

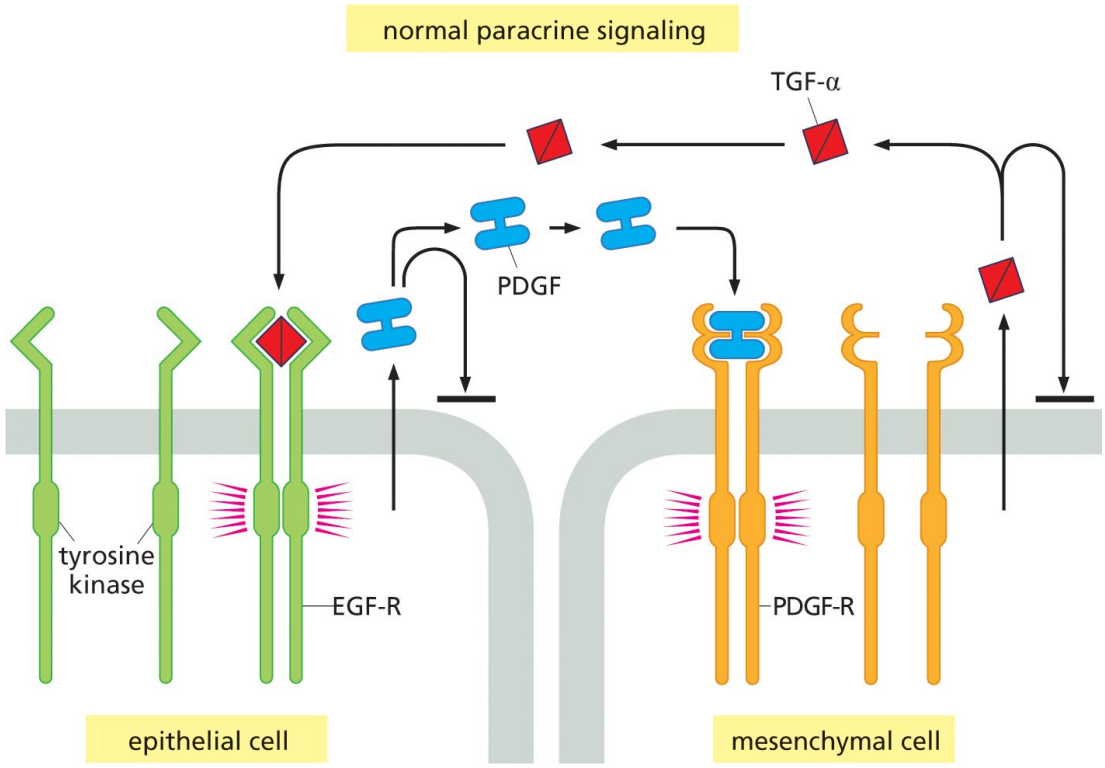
Figure 5.7 The EGF receptor and v-ErbB The EGF receptor and the v-ErbB oncoprotein of avian erythroblastosis virus are closely related. More specifically, the v-ErbB protein is specified by an altered version of the gene encoding the chicken EGF receptor, which encodes a truncated form of EGF-R that lacks most of the normally present ectodomain (*green*). In the absence of ligand, signaling by the intact receptor molecule is silent, whereas the truncated receptor can emit mitogenic signals constitutively, i.e., without stimulation by EGF ligand.

As indicated schematically in **Figure 5.8A**, mutations in the genes encoding growth factor receptors, including those specifying truncated receptors, may trigger ligand-independent firing by these receptors. Indeed, a variety of mutations, including those creating amino acid substitutions in the transmembrane domain (shown), or in the ectodomain and cytoplasmic domains (not shown), of some receptors can provoke ligand-independent firing. (In fact, Figure 5.8 introduces yet another idea that we will explore in detail shortly: growth factors often activate receptors by triggering receptor dimerization.) In Chapter 17, we will see how structurally altered growth factor receptors influence the responsiveness of human tumors to anti-cancer therapeutic drugs.



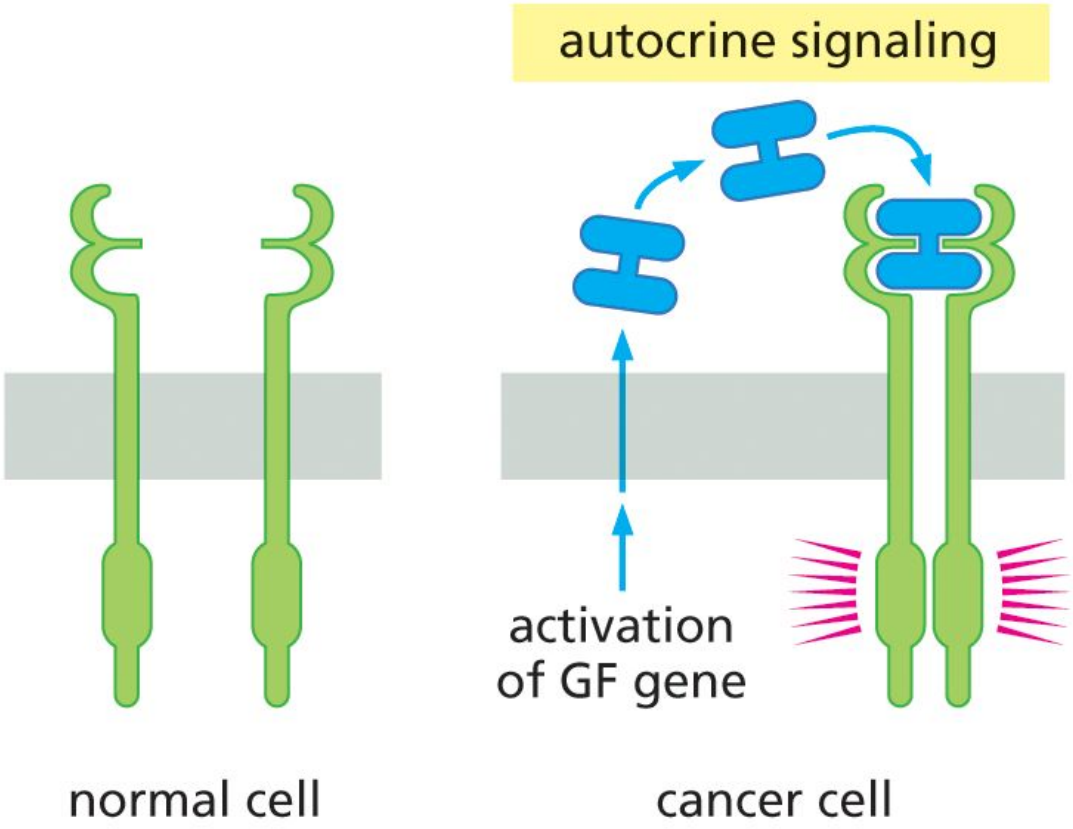
Two normal growth factor (G F) receptors with extracellular ectodomains and cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase domains. As one of them binds with a G F, the two subunits move together and the cytoplasmic domains begin signaling. This is ligand-dependent firing. Also shown are two cancer cell abnormalities that lead to ligand-independent firing. In mutations affecting structure, abnormalities in the receptors cause firing in the absence of any ligand. In overexpression, the crowding together of too many receptors causes subunits to connect and begin firing even in the absence of any ligand.

(A)



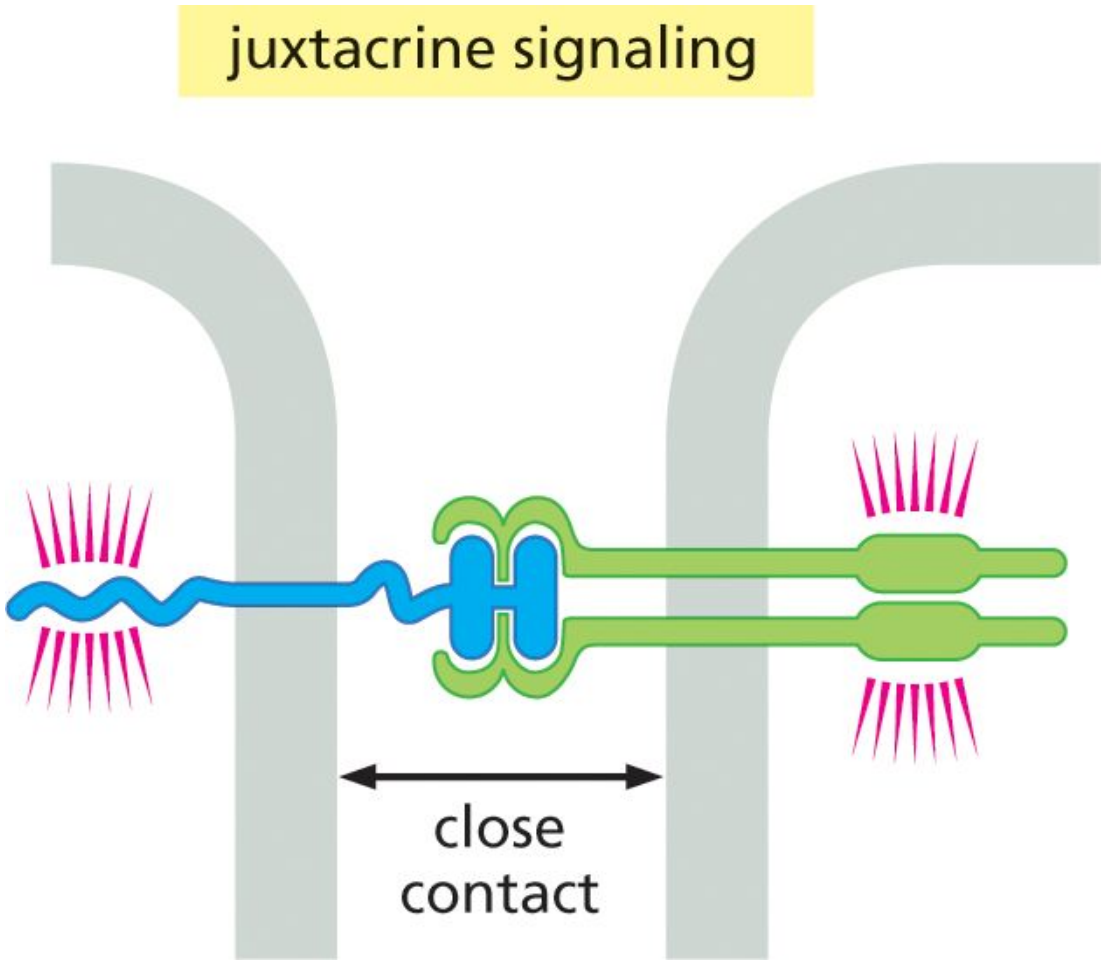
Normal paracrine signaling between an epithelial cell that produces P G D F and an adjacent mesenchymal cell that produces T G F alpha. Each ligand finds no receptors on the cell of origin but binds to receptors on the other cell, causing signaling by both sets of receptors.

(B)



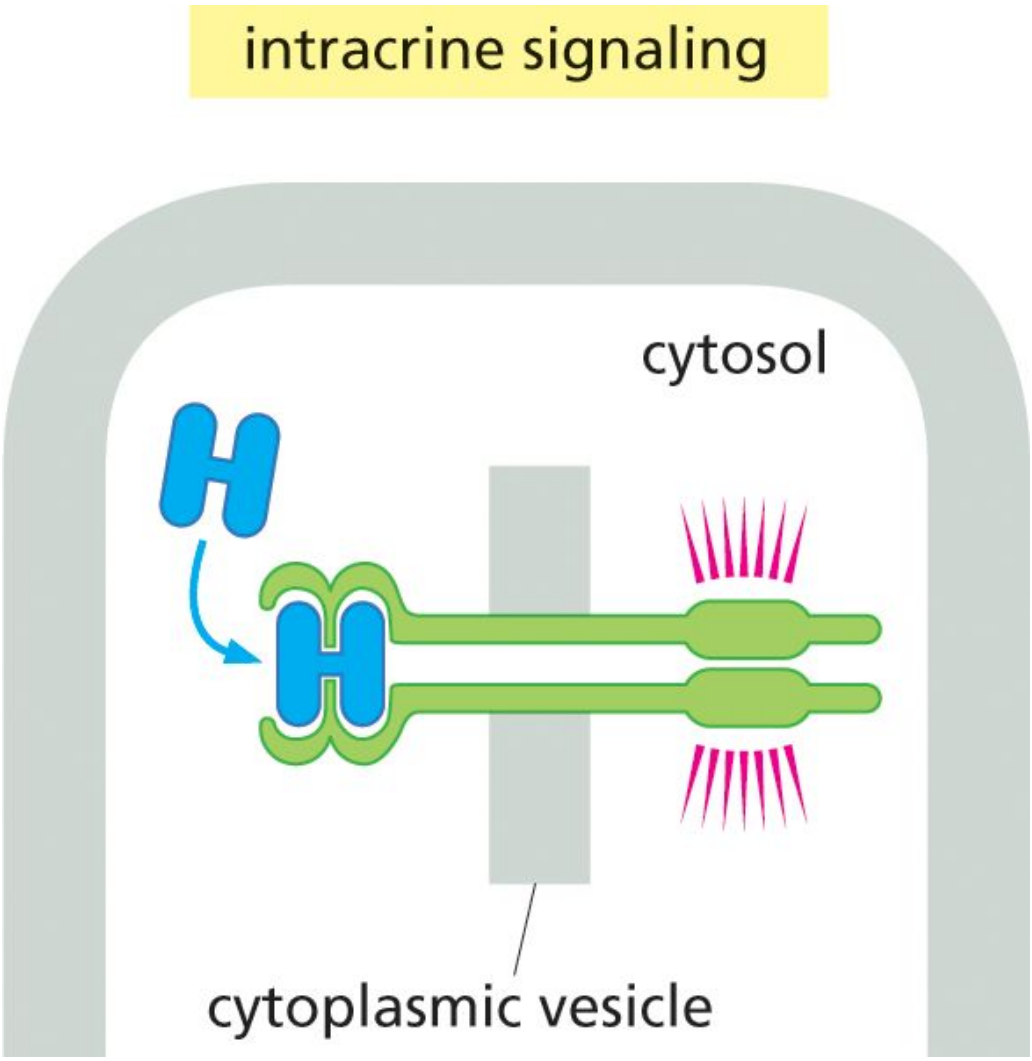
Autocrine signaling in a cancer cell. After activation of the G F gene, G F produced by the cell binds to G F receptors on the same cell.

(C)



Juxtacrine signaling. A ligand with a tail that remains within the cytoplasm of the cell of origin binds to a receptor on another cell that is in physical contact with the first. Both cytoplasmic ends emit signals.

(D)



Intracrine signaling. A G F ligand in the cytosol binds to a receptor embedded in the wall of a cytoplasmic vesicle.

(E)

Figure 5.8 Regulation of growth factor signaling (A) Normally functioning growth factor receptors emit cytoplasmic signals (*red spikes*) in response to binding soluble ligand (*blue*, *left*). However, mutations in the genes encoding the receptor molecules (*upper right*) can cause subtle alterations in protein structure, such as amino acid substitutions (*red dots*), that cause ligand-independent firing. More drastic alterations in receptor structure, including truncation of the ectodomain (see, for example, Figure 5.7) may also yield such deregulated signaling. In many human tumors, receptor proteins are overexpressed (*lower right*). Excessive numbers of normally structured receptor molecules can also drive ligand-independent receptor firing, apparently by causing these molecules to

frequently collide and thereby spontaneously dimerize and release signals (*red spikes*). (B) In general, in the context of paracrine signaling, normal cells do not synthesize and release a growth factor ligand whose cognate receptor they also display. Shown here is the tendency of epithelial cells to make PDGF (*blue*), the ligand for the PDGF-R displayed by mesenchymal cells; conversely, mesenchymal cells often make TGF-α, an EGF-related ligand (*red*), which binds the EGF-R displayed by epithelial cells. However, the PDGF made by an epithelial cell fails to find its cognate receptor on the surface of that cell (*horizontal bar*), preventing inadvertent activation of autocrine signaling. Similarly, the mesenchymal cells releasing TGF-α fail to express the cognate EGF-R that could bind and respond to this ligand. (C) In contrast, in many types of cancer, tumor cells acquire the ability to make a ligand for a growth factor receptor that they also naturally display (*right*). This creates an auto-stimulatory or autocrine signaling loop. (*continued*)

These insights into receptor function provided one solution to a long-standing problem in cancer cell biology. As mentioned earlier, normal cells had long been known to require growth factors in their culture medium in order to grow. In contrast, cancer cells propagated in tissue culture were known to have a greatly reduced dependence on growth factors for their proliferation and survival. The discovery of the ErbB–EGF-R connection yielded a simple, neat explanation of this particular trait of cancer cells: the ErbB oncoprotein releases signals very similar to those emitted by a ligand-activated, wild-type EGF receptor. However, unlike the EGF receptor, the ErbB oncoprotein can send a constant, unrelenting stream of growth-stimulating signals into the cell, thereby persuading the cell that substantial amounts of EGF are present in its surroundings when none might be there at all. Stated differently, in the presence of such an oncoprotein, a cell is liberated from dependence on GFs present in its surrounding. More generally, a variety of growth factor receptors that are configured much like the EGF-R have been found to be overexpressed in human tumors or synthesized in structurally altered form (**Table 5.2**).

Table 5.2 Examples of tyrosine kinase GF receptors altered in human tumors[a]

Name of receptor	**Main ligand**	**Type of alteration**	**Types of tumor**
EGF-R/ErbB1	EGF, TGFα	overexpression	non-small cell lung cancer; breast, head and neck, stomach, colorectal, esophageal, prostate,

Name of receptor	Main ligand	Type of alteration	Types of tumor
			bladder, renal, pancreatic, and ovarian carcinomas; glioblastoma
EGF-R/ErbB1		truncation of ectodomain	glioblastoma; lung and breast carcinomas
ErbB2/HER2/Neu	NRG, EGF	overexpression	30% of breast adenocarcinomas, ~20% of gastric carcinomas, other carcinomas
ErbB3, 4	various	overexpression	oral squamous cell carcinoma
Flt-3	FL	tandem duplication	acute myelogenous leukemia
Kit	SCF	amino acid substitutions	gastrointestinal stromal tumor
Ret	GFL	fusion with other proteins; point mutations	papillary thyroid carcinomas; multiple endocrine neoplasias 2A and 2B
FGF-R2	FGF	amino acid substitutions	breast, gastric, endometrial carcinomas
FGF-R3	FGF	overexpression; amino acid	multiple myeloma; bladder and cervical carcinomas;

Name of receptor	Main ligand	Type of alteration	Types of tumor
		substitutions; translocations	acute myelogenous leukemia
FGF-R4	FGF-4,5,6	overexpression	rhabdomyosarcoma, hepatocellular carcinoma
IR	IGF-2	overexpression	osteosarcoma
PDGF-Rβ	PDGF	translocations	chronic myelomonocytic leukemia

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aSee also Figure 5.12.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

erythroleukemia
: A leukemia of the nonpigmented precursors of red blood cells.

constitutive
: Describing a state of activity that occurs at a constant level and is therefore not responsive to modulation by physiologic regulators, or a type of control that yields such a constant output. *See also* **conditional**.

OceanofPDF.com

5.5 A growth factor gene can become an oncogene: the case of *sis*

The notion that oncoproteins can activate mitogenic signaling pathways received another big boost when the platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) protein was isolated and its amino acid sequence determined. In 1983, the B chain of PDGF was found to be closely related in sequence to the oncoprotein encoded by the v-*sis* oncogene of simian sarcoma virus. Once again, study of the oncogenes carried by rapidly transforming retroviruses paid off handsomely.

The PDGF protein was discovered to be unrelated in structure to EGF and to stimulate proliferation of a different set of cells. PDGF stimulates largely mesenchymal cells, such as fibroblasts, adipocytes, and smooth muscle cells; in the brain, it can also stimulate the growth and survival of glial cells. By contrast, the mitogenic activities of EGF and related GF ligands are focused largely (but not entirely) on epithelial cells (for example, see Figure 5.8B). This specificity of action could be understood once the PDGF receptor was isolated: the PDGF-R was found to be expressed on the surfaces of mesenchymal cells and is not usually displayed by epithelial cells, while the EGF-R largely shows the opposite pattern of expression. (Like the EGF receptor, the PDGF-R uses a tyrosine kinase in its cytoplasmic domain to broadcast signals into the cell.)

The connection between PDGF and the *sis*-encoded oncoprotein suggested another important mechanism by which oncoproteins could transform cells: when simian sarcoma virus infects a cell, its *sis* oncogene causes the infected cell to release copious amounts of the PDGF-like Sis protein into the surrounding extracellular space. Once there, the PDGF-like molecules can attach to the PDGF-R displayed by the same cell that just synthesized and released them (Figure 5.8C). The result is strong activation of this cell’s

PDGF receptors and, in turn, a flooding of the cell with an unrelenting flux of the growth-stimulating signals released by the ligand-activated PDGF-R.

These discoveries also resolved a long-standing puzzle. Most types of acutely transforming retroviruses are able to transform a variety of infected cell types. Simian sarcoma virus, however, was known to be able to transform fibroblasts, but it failed to transform epithelial cells. The cell type–specific display of the PDGF-R explained precisely why this virus could transform some cells but not others.

Once again, a close connection had been forged between a protein involved in mitogenic signaling and a viral oncoprotein. In this instance, a virus-infected cell was forced to make and release a growth factor to which it could also respond. Rather than a growth factor signal sent from one type of cell to another cell type located nearby (often termed paracrine signaling; Figure 5.8B), or sent via the circulation from cells in one tissue in the body to others in a distant tissue (endocrine signaling), this represented an auto-stimulatory, or autocrine, signaling loop in which a cell manufactured its own mitogens (see Figure 5.8C and **Supplementary Sidebar 5.4**).

In fact, a variety of human tumor cells are known to produce and release substantial amounts of growth factors to which these cells can also respond (**Table 5.3**). Some human cancers, such as certain lung cancers, produce at least three distinct growth factors, specifically, transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α), stem cell factor (SCF), and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1); at the same time, the tumors express the receptors for these three ligands, thereby establishing three autocrine signaling loops simultaneously. Such autocrine signaling loops seem to be functionally important for the clinical behavior of tumors. Melanoma cells that develop resistance to therapeutic drugs designed to inhibit signaling pathways downstream of growth factor receptors often express elevated levels of the EGF-R, PDGF-R, IGF1-R, and AXL receptors (**Sidebar 5.2**) as well as their respective ligands.

Table 5.3 Examples of human tumors making autocrine growth factors

Ligand	Receptor	Tumor type(s)
CSF1	CSF1R	breast cancer
HGF	Met	miscellaneous endocrinal tumors, invasive breast and lung cancers, osteosarcoma
IGF-2	IGF-1R	colorectal
IL-6	IL-6R	myeloma, HNSCC
IL-8	IL-8R A	bladder cancer
NRG	ErbB2[a]/ErbB3	ovarian carcinoma
PDGF-BB	PDGF-Rα/β	osteosarcoma, glioma
PDGF-C	PDGF-Rα/β	Ewing’s sarcoma
PRL	PRL-R	breast carcinoma
SCF	Kit	Ewing’s sarcoma, SCLC

Ligand	Receptor	Tumor type(s)
VEGF-A	VEGF-R 1(Flt-1)	neuroblastoma, prostate cancer, Kaposi's sarcoma, osteosarcoma
TGFα	EGF-R	squamous cell lung, breast and prostate adenocarcinoma, pancreatic, mesothelioma
GRP	GRP-R	small-cell lung cancer

Abbreviations: HNSCC, head and neck squamous cell carcinoma; SCLC, small cell lung cancer.

Sidebar 5.2 Receptor overexpression results from a variety of molecular mechanisms

Receptor overexpression may cause a cell to become hyper-responsive to low concentrations of growth factor in the extracellular space; alternatively, overexpression may cause ligand-independent receptor firing, simply because mass-action effects may drive spontaneous receptor dimerization (see Figure 5.8A), much like the ligand-stimulated receptor dimerization described in the next section (see Figure 5.11).

In some cancer cells, receptors are overexpressed at the cell surface because the encoding gene is transcribed at an elevated rate, resulting in correspondingly increased levels of mRNA and protein. Alternatively, in a number of types of human cancers, these receptor genes are often amplified, leading to increased copy number of the involved genes and, once again, to proportionately increased levels of the corresponding mRNA transcript and receptor protein.

Yet other, more subtle mechanisms may also be responsible for increased numbers of receptor molecules being displayed at the cell surface. Some of these derive from the mechanisms that govern the *lifetime* of receptor molecules at the cell surface. Many receptor molecules are displayed at the surface for only a brief period of time before they are internalized via endocytosis, in which a patch of plasma membrane together with associated proteins is pulled into the cytoplasm, where it forms a vesicle. Thereafter, the contents of this vesicle may be dispatched to lysosomes, in which they are degraded, or alternatively they may be recycled back to the cell surface.

One protein, termed huntingtin-interacting protein-1 (HIP1), is part of a complex of proteins that facilitate endocytosis. HIP1 has been found to be overexpressed in a variety of human carcinomas. For reasons that are poorly understood, overexpression of HIP1 prevents the normal endocytosis of a number of cell surface proteins, including the EGF receptor (EGF-R). As a consequence, cells overexpressing HIP1 accumulate excessive numbers of EGF-R molecules at the cell surface and, in the case of NIH 3T3 mouse fibroblasts, become hyper-responsive to EGF. This explains why such cells can grow vigorously in the presence of very low levels of growth factor–containing serum (0.1%) that would otherwise cause normal NIH 3T3 cells to retreat into a nongrowing, quiescent state. Moreover, these cells behave like transformed cells in the presence of 10% serum in the tissue culture medium—the serum concentration that is routinely used to propagate untransformed NIH 3T3 cells; both behaviors demonstrate the hyper-responsiveness to GFs resulting from receptor overexpression.

Another protein, called cyclin G–associated kinase (GAK), is a strong promoter of EGF-R endocytosis. When its expression is suppressed, levels of cell surface EGF-R increase by as much as fiftyfold. A third protein, called c-Cbl, is responsible for tagging ligand-activated EGF-R, doing so via a covalent modification termed mono-ubiquitylation (which contrasts with the poly-ubiquitylation that causes degradation of a protein in proteasomes; see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). This tagging causes the endocytosis of the EGF-R and its subsequent degradation in lysosomes. The v-Cbl viral oncoprotein, as well as several cellular proteins (Sts-1, Sts-2), can block this endocytosis, resulting, once again, in accumulation of elevated levels of EGF-R at the cell surface. In a more general sense, the

spontaneous receptor dimerization or hyper-responsiveness to growth factors resulting from receptor overexpression is likely to drive the proliferation of a variety of human cancer cell types *in vivo*.

Possibly the champion autocrine tumor is Kaposi's sarcoma, a tumor of cells closely related to the endothelial cells that form lymph ducts (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 3.5**). To date, Kaposi's tumors have been documented to produce VEGFs, Ang-1, Ang-2, bFGF, IL-6, IL-8, GRO-α, TNF-β, and ephrin B2—all ligands of cellular origin—as well as the receptors for these ligands. At the same time, the causal agent of this disease, the human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8) genome that is present in Kaposi's tumor cells, encodes and thus produces two additional ligands—vIL6 and vMIP—whose cognate receptors are also expressed by the endothelial cell precursors that generate these tumors.

Such autocrine signaling loops seem to represent potential perils for tissues and organisms. In normal tissues, the proliferation of individual cells almost always depends on signals received from other cells; such interdependence ensures the stability of cell populations and the constancy of tissue architecture. A cell that has gained the ability to control its own proliferation (by making its own mitogens) therefore creates an imminent danger, since self-reinforcing, positive-feedback loops often lead to gross physiologic imbalances. (Nonetheless, autocrine signaling loops are clearly used in certain normal biological situations, such as those that operate to stably maintain the unique properties of stem cells including cancer stem cells, as we will see in Chapter 11. Accordingly, it seems that some autocrine loops operate normally to maintain specific states of differentiation, whereas others conveying mitogenic signals are confined largely to neoplastic cells.)

We should note that the activation of autocrine mitogenic signaling loops yields an outcome very similar to that occurring when a structurally altered receptor protein such as ErbB/EGF-R is expressed by a cell. In both cases, the cell generates its own mitogenic signals and its dependence upon exogenous mitogens is greatly reduced. Interestingly, these dynamics also have important implications for the development of anti-cancer drugs (**Sidebar 5.3**).

Sidebar 5.3 Autocrine signaling influences the development of anti-cancer therapies

Testing of the efficacy of a novel anti-cancer drug usually begins with analyses of the drug's ability to affect the growth and/or survival of cancer cells grown in culture (*in vitro*), as we will see later in Chapter 17. These tests are then followed up by the seeding of such cancer cells in host mice, where they are allowed to form tumors (*in vivo*). The responsiveness of these tumor grafts to drug treatment of the tumor-bearing mice is often used to predict whether the drug under study will have clinical efficacy, that is, an ability to shrink a tumor or stop its further growth in patients.

On some occasions, the *in vitro* drug responsiveness of a tumor cell population may predict its behavior *in vivo*; in other cases, it will not. The experience of certain drug developers indicates that these contrasting behaviors correlate with the production of autocrine growth factors by tumor cell lines. Those cancer cells that produce abundant autocrine growth factors usually respond to drug treatment similarly *in vitro* and *in vivo*, while those that do not secrete growth factors behave very differently under these two conditions. It seems that the tumor cells that secrete autocrine factors create their own growth factor environment both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Conversely, those that do not secrete these factors depend on serum-associated mitogens *in vitro* and on the growth factors supplied by nearby host cells *in vivo*; the latter may differ dramatically from the spectrum of mitogens present in serum, providing a plausible explanation of the observed differences in responses.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aAlso known as HER2 or Neu receptor.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

paracrine
: Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is released by one cell and acts on a nearby cell, ostensibly after transport through the interstitial fluid of a tissue. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine, exocrine, intracrine**, **juxtacrine**.

endocrine
: (1) Referring to a gland that secretes substances into the general circulation and thus to the rest of the body. (2) Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is made by cells in a tissue, passes through the circulation, and affects the behavior of cells in another tissue at a distant anatomical site. *Compare* **autocrine**, **exocrine, intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

autocrine
: Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is released by a cell and proceeds to act upon the same cell (or same cell type) that has released it. *Compare* **endocrine**, **exocrine**, **intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

endocytosis
: Uptake by a cell of extracellular material together with associated extracellular fluid that is achieved through the invagination of a patch of plasma membrane, thereby yielding membrane-bound vesicles termed endosomes within the cytoplasm. Pinocytosis and phagocytosis are forms of endocytosis. *See also* **exocytosis**, **endosome**, **phagocytosis**, **pinocytosis**.

lysosome
: A cytoplasmic vesicle that contains in its lumen degradative enzymes in a solution of low pH, allowing it to degrade various molecules that are introduced into it; in addition, cells may sense nutrient availability by gauging the concentrations of certain amino acids in the lumina of their lysosomes.

mass action
: Referring to a situation in which the rate of a chemical or biochemical reaction is governed by the concentration of one or more of its reactants.

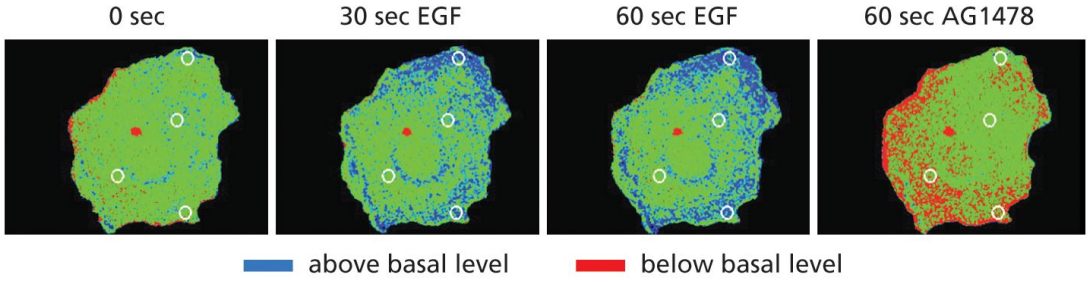
OceanofPDF.com

5.6 Transphosphorylation underlies the operations of many receptor tyrosine kinases

The actions of oncogenes such as *sis* and *erbB* provide a satisfying biological explanation of how a cell can become transformed. By supplying cells with a continuous flux of growth-stimulatory signals, oncoproteins are able to drive the repeated rounds of cell growth and division that are needed in order for large populations of cancer cells to accumulate and for tumors to form. Still, this biological explanation sidesteps an important biochemical question lying at the heart of mitogenic signaling: How do growth factor receptors containing tyrosine kinases (often called receptor tyrosine kinases or RTKs) succeed in transducing signals from the extracellular space into the cytoplasm of cells?

Knowing the presence of the tyrosine kinase enzymatic activity borne by the cytoplasmic domains of these proteins allows us to rephrase this question: How do growth factor receptors use their tyrosine kinase domains to emit intracellular signals in response to ligand binding?

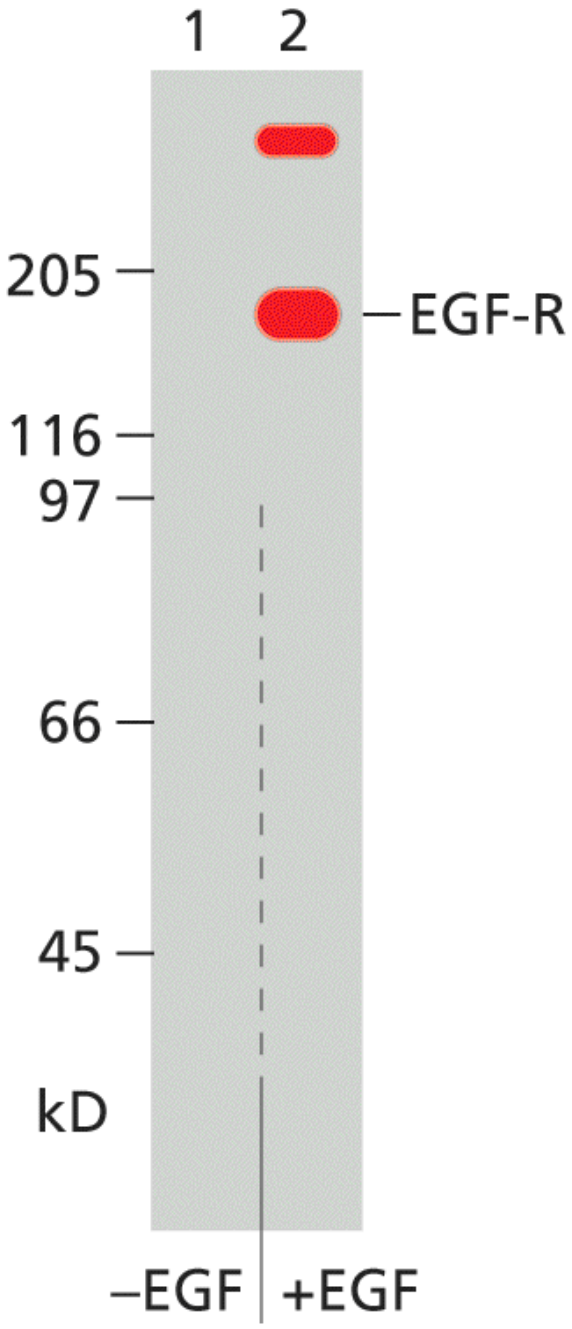
The solution to this problem came from a detailed examination of the proteins that become phosphorylated within seconds after a growth factor such as EGF is applied to cells expressing its cognate receptor, in this case the EGF-R (**Figure 5.9**). It would seem reasonable that a variety of cytoplasmic proteins become phosphorylated on their tyrosine residues following ligand binding to a growth factor receptor. Indeed, there are a number of such proteins. But the most prominent among these phosphotyrosine-bearing proteins is often the receptor molecule itself (**Figure 5.10**)! Hence, these receptors seem to be capable of autophosphorylation.



A four-image sequence, showing changes in a single cell. The first three images, show an irregular green shape with a red dot in the middle. At zero seconds, the

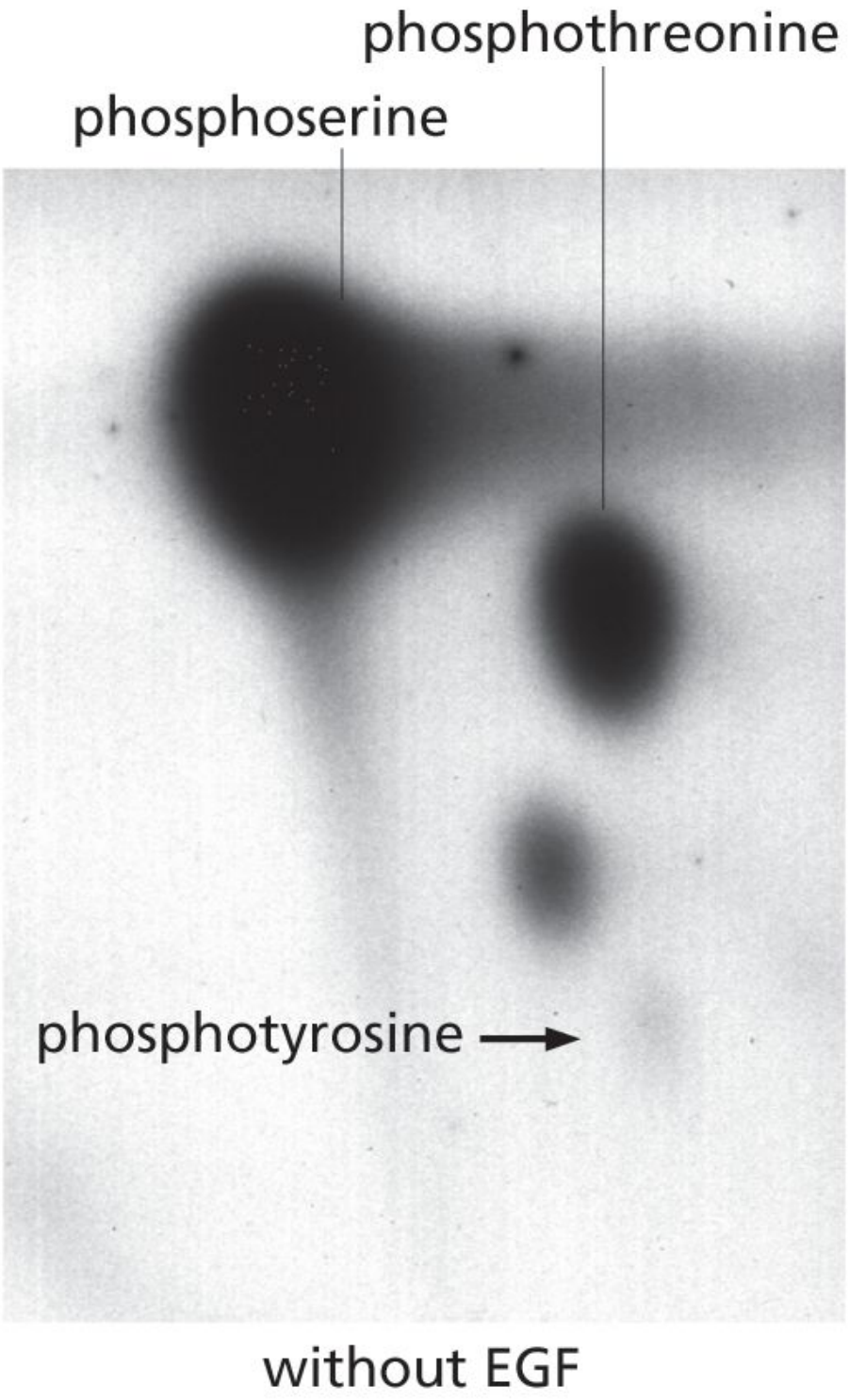
shape is more or less uniformly green except for the red dot. At 30 seconds, there are a lot of blue dots, and at 60 seconds, there are slightly more blue dots. The last image shows the same cell after 60 seconds of treatment with 60 A G 14 78. All the blue dots are gone, and there are red ones instead.

Figure 5.9 Formation of phosphotyrosine on the EGF-R following ligand addition The use of a fluorescent reagent that binds specifically to a phosphotyrosine residue on the EGF-R enables the visualization of receptor activation following ligand binding. Here, receptor activation is measured on a monkey kidney cell at a basal level (0 sec), as well as 30 and 60 sec after EGF addition. In addition, following a 2-minute stimulation by EGF, the effects of a 60-sec treatment by a chemical inhibitor of the EGF-R kinase (AG1478) are shown (*right*), indicating that the EGF-induced activation of the EGF-R can be rapidly reversed. Receptor activity above the basal level is indicated in *blue*, while activity below the basal level is indicated in *red*. The response to AG1478 treatment indicates that a significant basal level of EGF-R activity was present (at 0 sec) even before EGF addition. (From M. Offterdinger et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 279:36972–36981, 2004. Copyright © 2004 ASBMB. This article is distributed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.)



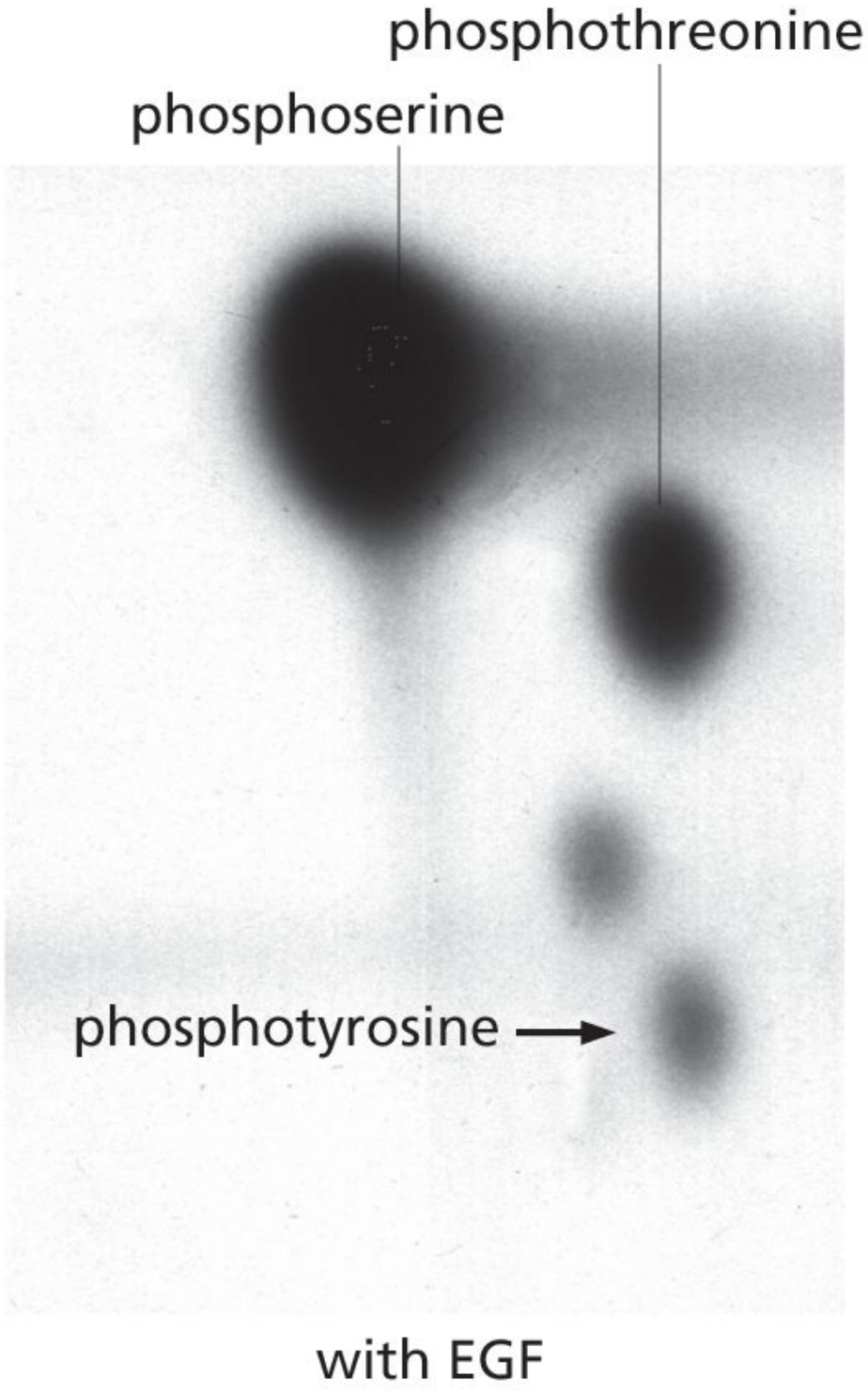
The results of immunoprecipitation with and without E G F treatment. The without E G F lane contains no blots. The with E G F lane contains two. A larger one between 116 and 205 kilo Daltons and a smaller one near the top.

(A)



An image produced using electrophoresis without E G F treatment. It contains a large, dark blot corresponding to phosphoserine, a smaller dark blot representing phosphothreonine, and a very faint blot representing phosphotyrosine.

(B)



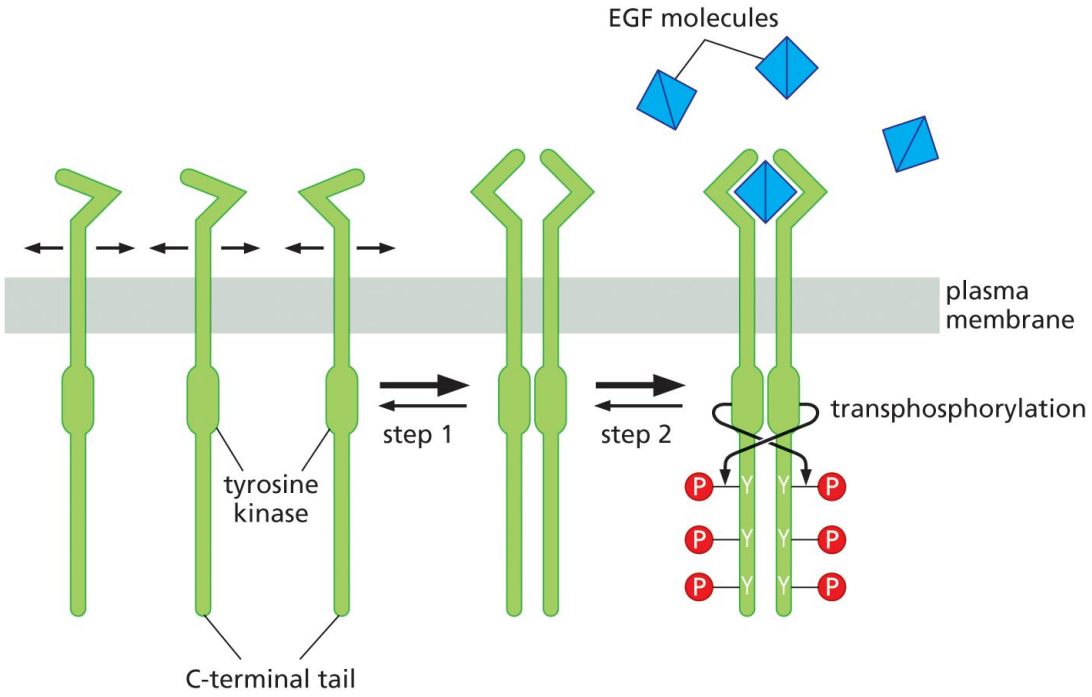
An image produced using electrophoresis with E G F treatment. It contains a large, dark blot corresponding to phosphoserine, a smaller dark blot

representing phosphothreonine, and another small, dark blot representing phosphotyrosine.
(C)

Figure 5.10 Apparent autophosphorylation of the EGF receptor (A) When human A431 epidermoid carcinoma cells, which greatly overexpress the EGF-R, are incubated in $^{32}PO_4$-containing medium and then exposed to EGF, a radiolabeled protein can be immunoprecipitated with an anti-phosphotyrosine antiserum (*lane 2*); this protein co-migrates upon gel electrophoresis with the EGF-R and is not detectable in the absence of prior EGF treatment (*lane 1*). (B) The $^{32}PO_4$-labeled phosphoamino acids borne by the proteins in such cells in the absence of EGF (as resolved by electrophoresis; see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.2**) are seen here. (C) Following the addition of EGF to A431 cells, a spot in the lower right becomes darker; internal markers indicate that this is phosphotyrosine. (A, from A.B. Sorokin et al., *FEBS Lett.* 268:121–124, 1990. With permission from John Wiley and Sons. B and C, courtesy of A.R. Frackelton Jr.)

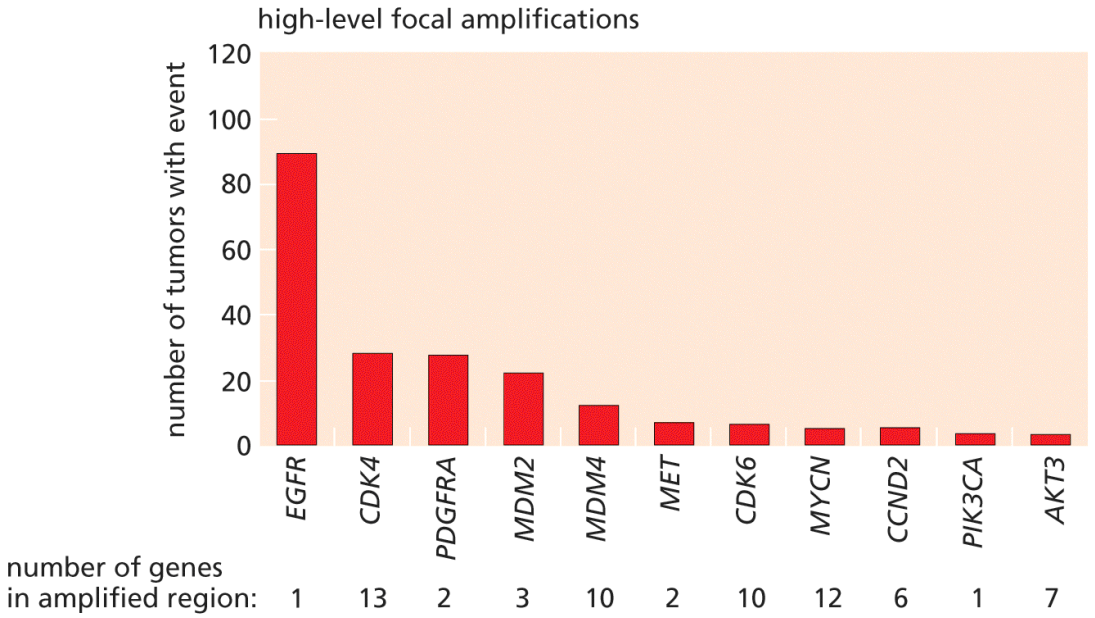
Another clue came from the structure of many growth factor ligands; they were often found to be dimeric, being composed either of two identical protein subunits (homodimers) or of very similar but nonidentical subunits (heterodimers) (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 5.5**). A third clue derived from observations that many transmembrane proteins constructed like the EGF and PDGF receptors have lateral mobility in the plane of the plasma membrane. That is, as long as the hydrophobic transmembrane domains of these receptor proteins remain embedded within the lipid bilayer of this membrane, they are relatively free to wander back and forth across the surface of the cell.

Taken together, these facts led to a simple model (**Figure 5.11A**). In the absence of ligand, a growth factor receptor exists in a monomeric (single subunit) form, embedded as always in the plasma membrane. It may wander laterally in the plasma membrane and encounter another identical RTK, with which it forms an unstable homodimeric complex. However, when presented with the appropriate growth factor ligand, the homodimeric receptor complex will be stabilized. Alternatively, a receptor molecule will bind to one of the two subunits of its dimeric ligand. Thereafter, the ligand–receptor complex will wander around the plasma membrane until it encounters another receptor molecule, to which the second, still-unengaged subunit of the ligand can bind. The result is, once again, the noncovalent cross-linking of the two receptor molecules achieved by the dimeric ligand that forms a bridge between them. (In all of these cases, the identity of the particular RTKs that are recruited into these complexes will be dictated by the binding specificities of the GF ligand.)



Several receptor subunits, each with a receptor ectodomain and a cytoplasmic domain containing a tyrosine kinase segment and a C-terminal tail. These subunits move left and right while embedded within a plasma membrane. Step 1, which is reversible, involves two subunits coming together in dimerization. Step 2, also reversible, involves the receptor ectodomains binding to an E G F molecule and phosphates being added to the two cytoplasmic domains during transphosphorylation.

(A)



A bar chart captioned high-level focal amplifications. It has number of tumors with event from 0 to 120 on the vertical axis. On the horizontal axis it lists eleven receptor types and for each also gives the number of genes in the amplified region. The data are as follows: E G F R, 1 gene in the amplified region, about 90 tumors with events. C D K 4, 13 genes in the amplified region, about 30 tumors with events. P D G F R A, 2 genes in the amplified region, about 30 tumors with events. M D M 2, 3 genes in the amplified region, about 20 tumors with events. M D M 4, 10 genes in the amplified region, about 10 tumors with events. M E T, 2 genes in the amplified region, about 5 tumors with events. C D K 6, 10 genes in the amplified region, about 5 tumors with events. M Y C N, 12 genes in the amplified region, about 5 tumors with events. C C N D 2, 6 genes in the amplified region, about 5 tumors with events. P I K 3 C A, 1 gene in the amplified region, about 3 tumors with events. A K T 3, 7 genes in the amplified region, about 3 tumors with events.

(B)

Figure 5.11 Receptor dimerization, ligand binding, transphosphorylation, and glioblastoma pathogenesis (A) In the absence of ligand, many growth factor receptor molecules (*left*, *green*) are free to move laterally (*diverging arrows*) in the plane of the plasma membrane. The consequences of these lateral migrations have been studied in the greatest detail in the case of the EGF receptor depicted here. When two receptor molecules encounter one another, they form a homodimer that persists for a brief period; at the same time, the ectodomains of these receptors change conformation and acquire increased affinity for binding growth factor

ligands (step 1). Subsequent binding of EGF ligand molecules results in further stabilization of the dimer and activation of the linked tyrosine kinase (TK) domains (step 2). Thus, the TK domain of each receptor subunit phosphorylates the C′-terminal cytoplasmic tail of the other subunit—the process of transphosphorylation (*arrows*). Other GF receptors, not yet studied in such detail, seem to behave in a similar fashion. (While the initial receptor–ligand interactions may occur while receptors such as the EGF-R are displayed on the cell surface, the bulk of subsequent signaling events may operate after the receptor–ligand complexes are internalized by endocytosis and are associated, at least transiently, with endosomes. In addition, as shown in **Supplementary Sidebar 5.5**, the EGF-related ligand TGF-α binds as monomers to opposite-facing domains of the EGF-R ectodomains.) (B) The dynamics of receptor function depicted in panel A shed light on how amplification of *EGFR* genes and resulting EGF-R protein overexpression confers proliferative advantage on glioblastoma cells. Sequence analysis of 206 human glioblastomas has revealed chromosomal regions that are repeatedly amplified (yielding focal amplifications), resulting in copy number alterations (CNAs) of the genes embedded in these chromosomal regions. As seen here, the chromosomal region harboring the *EGFR* gene is amplified in ∼90 of these tumors out of the total cohort of 206 tumors analyzed; in contrast, chromosomal regions harboring other growth factor receptors (*PDGFRA*, *MET*) and oncogenes are found to be amplified far less frequently. (The majority of the amplified *EGFR* genes encode wild-type protein, indicating that any effects of receptor amplification must derive from the increased number of receptor molecules expressed at the cell surface rather than the deregulated firing of structurally altered receptor molecules.) The excessive numbers of EGF-R molecules that are displayed on the surfaces of many of these brain tumor cells appear to drive an increased frequency of random collisions between these molecules and thus dimerization (step 1 of panel A). The number given below each receptor indicates the number of genes that are co-amplified with the receptor gene in the particular amplicon in which this gene resides. (B, from The Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network, *Nature* 455:1061–1068, 2008. With permission from Nature.)

X-ray crystallographic studies of growth factors bound to the ectodomains of their cognate receptors have revealed a variety of mechanisms by which these ligands are able to induce receptor dimerization (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.5**). In fact, certain GF ligands don’t naturally form dimers. For example, in the case of the EGF-R–related receptors, individual monomeric ligand molecules bind separately to the ectodomains of monomeric receptors. These GF-bound ectodomains respond by undergoing a steric shift that allows them to dimerize with one another via sites quite distant from the sites of ligand binding (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.5**).

Once dimerization of the ectodomains of two receptor molecules has been achieved by ligand binding, the cytoplasmic portions are also pulled together. Now each kinase domain phosphorylates tyrosine residues present in the cytoplasmic domain of the other receptor. So the term “autophosphorylation” is actually a misnomer. This bidirectional, reciprocal phosphorylation is best described as a process of transphosphorylation (see Figure 5.11A). (Indeed, it is unclear whether a single isolated kinase molecule is ever able to phosphorylate itself.)

The phosphorylation of these tyrosine residues can have at least two consequences. The catalytic cleft of a kinase—the region of the protein where its enzymatic function operates—may normally be partially obstructed by a loop of the protein, preventing the kinase from interacting effectively with its substrates. In many RTKs, transphosphorylation of a critical tyrosine in the obstructing “activation loop” causes the loop to swing out of the way, thereby providing the catalytic cleft with direct access to substrate molecules (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.6**). In addition, receptor transphosphorylation results in the phosphorylation of an array of tyrosine residues present in C-terminal, cytoplasmic portions of the growth factor receptor outside the kinase domain, as indicated in Figure 5.11A. As we will learn in the next chapter, these phosphorylation events enable the receptor to activate a diverse array of downstream signaling pathways.

As mentioned above, some receptor molecules may heterodimerize with others. For example, the HER2/ErbB2/Neu receptor, which is overexpressed in human breast cancers (see Figure 4.3), often forms heterodimers with its cousins, either the HER1/EGF-R or the HER3 receptor. Since HER2 lacks its own identified ligand, it may be that a single ligand molecule binding either HER1 (= EGF-R) or HER3 suffices to trigger ligand-activated heterodimerization with HER2 and activation of downstream signaling. HER3 actually has a defective kinase domain, but its C-terminal tail can nonetheless serve as a substrate for phosphorylation by the HER2-borne kinase. The resulting phosphotyrosines then enable HER3 to release signals into the cell.

Receptor heterodimerization is increasingly seen to play an important role in human cancer development. For example, the AXL receptor, which is a member of an RTK family distinct from that of HER1/2/3/4 (see Figure 5.6), can be expressed at significant levels and heterodimerize with the EGF-R in lung cancers being treated with drug inhibitors of EGF-R signaling. Signaling by the resulting heterodimers is relatively resistant to inhibition by these drugs because they inhibit only the EGF-R–associated tyrosine kinase, leaving the AXL-associated kinase unaffected, thereby enabling the outgrowth of drug-resistant cells and clinical relapse.

The receptor dimerization model explains how growth factor receptors can participate in the formation of cancers when the receptor molecules are overexpressed, that is,

displayed on the cell surface at levels that greatly exceed those seen in normal cells (see Figure 5.11B). Since these receptors are free to move laterally in the plane of the plasma membrane, their high numbers can cause them to collide frequently, and these chance encounters, like the dimerization events triggered by ligand binding, can result in transphosphorylation, receptor activation, and signal emission, as mentioned earlier. For instance, as Table 5.2 indicates, the EGF receptor is overexpressed in a wide variety of human tumors, mostly carcinomas. In such tumors, this overexpression may result in ligand-independent receptor dimerization and firing (**Sidebar 5.4**). In addition, overexpressed EGF-R may sensitize a cell to limiting amounts of ligand present in the extracellular space; this may place a cell in a hyper-responsive state, driving its proliferation under conditions where the low levels of ligand would fail to activate proliferation. [This touches on an issue that is almost unexplored in contemporary cancer research: how often is the frequently observed elevated receptor firing due to elevated levels of available ligands (**Sidebar 5.5**)?]

Sidebar 5.4 Clear evidence of ligand-independent receptor firing

Experiments with the Met receptor provide clear evidence of ligand-independent receptor dimerization and firing. In these experiments, the human Met receptor [whose ligand is hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), also known as scatter factor (SF)] was overexpressed in liver cells of a genetically altered mouse strain; this led, in turn, to the development of hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs). Since the human Met receptor is incapable of binding the mouse HGF/SF ligand (the only ligand available in these mice), this dictated that the observed receptor activation, cell transformation, and tumor formation could only be ascribed to a ligand-independent process, specifically, spontaneous dimerization of overexpressed Met receptor molecules. Yet other indications of ligand-independent firing come from studies of structurally altered RTKs present in human tumors (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.7**).

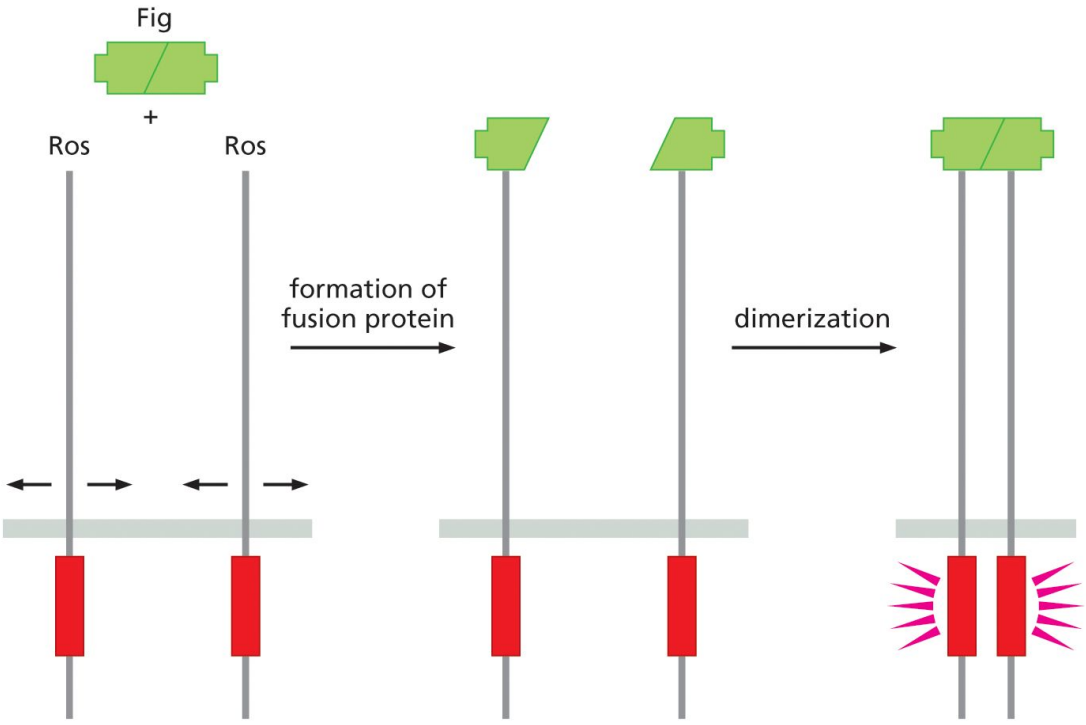
Sidebar 5.5 Regulation of ligand availability

A major unsolved problem in cell biology and therefore in cancer pathogenesis derives from the complex biochemical mechanisms that govern the availability of GF ligands and thus binding to their cognate receptors. As one example, in the case of the EGF-R, nine alternative ligand proteins have been identified that can all bind, via characteristic EGF-like domains, to this receptor; all of these EGF-like ligands are synthesized as transmembrane proteins that are initially displayed on the surface of ligand-producing cells and can thereafter be mobilized by certain proteases that liberate them from their plasma-membrane anchorage, thereby making them available for receptor binding. These proteolytic cleavage events are highly regulated and are clearly rate-limiting steps in ligand availability and thus receptor activation. In the case of the EGF-R,

proteolytic cleavage of EpCAM, a cell-surface epithelial adhesion molecule that is unrelated in structure to EGF itself, has been reported to generate a soluble ectodomain of this protein that is capable of activating EGF-R signaling, much like EGF itself.

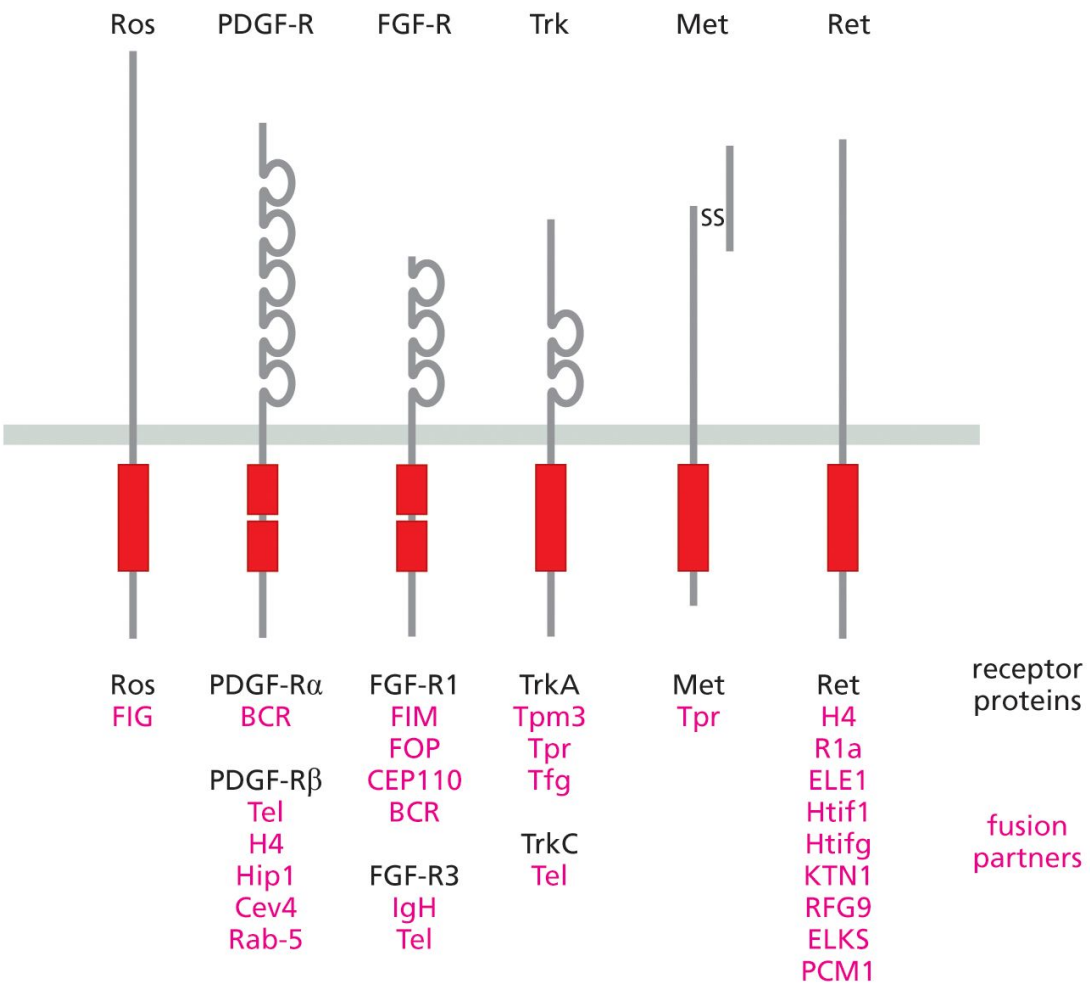
Members of the TGF-β family of GFs—there are 33 in all—are initially synthesized in inactive complexes that require regulated proteolytic activation, which liberates them from both inactivating subunits and sequestration in the extracellular matrix (ECM). Fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), of which there are 23 distinct species, operating with their cognate receptors (FGF-Rs), play a critical role in various types of morphogenesis and cancer pathogenesis. Their availability as ligands is governed by their binding to heparan proteoglycans in the ECM to which they bind with various affinities. A final example is provided by the process of lymphangiogenesis, which results in the formation of lymph ducts draining lymph from tissues throughout the body. In this case, a critical growth factor, VEGF-C, is required. Once secreted into the extracellular space, the precursor of mature VEGF-C must be cleaved by two distinct proteases that also regulate one another; the resulting cleavage is essential for the proper formation of lymphatic drainage of all tissues. Current research has not even begun to grapple with the complexity of signaling in the extracellular space.

Arguably, the most direct and compelling demonstration of the key role of receptor homodimerization comes from the mechanisms by which fusion proteins formed in many human cancers drive constitutive receptor signaling (**Figure 5.12**; see also **Supplementary Sidebar 5.7**). Nonetheless, it is important to know that the scheme of receptor dimerization oversimplifies the responses of certain receptors to binding of their cognate ligands: certain receptors are constitutively dimerized even in the absence of ligand binding, and some evidence suggests that higher-order clusters involving large numbers of receptor molecules may form on the surfaces of tumor cells in response to ligand binding. Conversely, some published reports indicate that certain ligand-bound monomeric receptors may also fire, ostensibly by associating with tyrosine kinases that are not covalently associated, like most RTKs, with ligand-binding ectodomains.



Two R o s receptors are free to move laterally side by side while embedded in a plasma membrane. An approaching F i g protein dimer separates into two parts, and each part binds to the end of an R o s receptor–but then the two parts of the F i g protein re-fuse, forcing dimerization of the two R o s receptors, resulting in signaling from the cytoplasmic domains.

(A)



Six different receptor types, shown schematically and with their receptor proteins and fusion partners listed. An R o s receptor has a long, straight ectodomain. Its receptor protein is R o s. Its fusion partner is F i g. A P D G F-R receptor has an ectodomain with many loops on it. One of its receptor proteins is P D G F R alpha. The corresponding fusion partner is B C G. The other receptor protein is P D G F R beta. The corresponding fusion partners are Tel, H 4, Hip 1, C e v 4, and Rab-5. An F G R-R receptor has an ectodomain with a shorter series of loops. One of its receptor proteins is F G F R 1. The corresponding fusion partners are F I M, F O P, C E P 110, and B C R. The other receptor protein is F G F R 3. The corresponding fusion partners are I g H and Tel. A T r k receptor's ectodomain has short series of loops and a short straight segment. One of its receptor proteins is T r k A. The corresponding fusion partners are T p m 3, T p r, and T f g. The other receptor protein is T r k C. The corresponding fusion partner is Tel. A Met receptor has an ectodomain consisting of two straight segments joined by a short lateral S S bridge. Its receptor protein is Met. Its fusion partner is T p r. Finally, a Ret receptor has a moderately long, straight ectodomain. Its receptor protein is

Ret. Its fusion partners are H 4, R 1 a, E L E 1, H t i f 1, H t i f g, K T N 1, R F
G 9, E L K S, and P C M 1.
(B)

Figure 5.12 Gene fusion causing constitutively dimerized receptors (A) The Ros receptor (*lower left*), like other RTKs, normally is free to move laterally in the plane of the plasma membrane and requires ligand binding for dimerization. However, in a glioblastoma, the reading frame specifying the ectodomain of the *ROS* gene has become fused to the reading frame of a second, unrelated neighboring gene, termed *FIG*, which encodes a protein that normally dimerizes spontaneously (*green*, *upper left*). In the resulting fusion protein (*right*), the dimerized Fig domain pulls two Ros receptors together, resulting in constitutive, ligand-independent dimerization and signaling. (B) Similarly, in a diverse array of malignant tumors, receptor dimerization occurs when the genes encoding growth factor receptors (*black type*) become fused to unrelated genes that happen to specify proteins that normally dimerize or form higher-order oligomers (*red type*), dragging together pairs of receptor monomers. Listed here are a number of such mutant, fused receptors found in human tumors; in certain cases, a given receptor may be found fused to multiple alternative oligomerizing proteins. (B, courtesy of A. Charest.)

A further source of complexity comes from the fact that not all ligands of RTKs are soluble GFs that are transported through intercellular space. Thus, the DDR receptors depicted in Figure 5.6 and **Supplementary Sidebar 5.5** bind various insoluble collagens that form key components of the extracellular matrix and basement membrane; loss of the DDR2 receptor function can compromise the ability of aggressive cancer cells to exhibit motility and invasiveness, key components of the cells of high-grade malignancies. Moreover, the Eph RTKs (see Figures 5.6 and 5.8D) bind ephrin ligands that are stably displayed on the surface of closely apposed neighboring cells, resulting in signals funneled into the cytoplasms of *both* the receptor- and ligand-displaying cells.

Finally, it is increasingly apparent that the strong mitogenic signals released by ligand-activated RTKs must be limited by opposing mechanisms that operate to constrain such signaling. As detailed in the next chapter, the phosphotyrosines created by actively signaling receptors are converted back to tyrosines by an array of phosphatases, thereby reversing the biochemical effects of RTK activation. Yet another critical negative-feedback mechanism depends on receptor internalization in which actively signaling RTKs are shunted via the process of endocytosis into the cytoplasmic vesicles termed endosomes, from which their signals continue to be emitted, and soon thereafter into cytoplasmic lysosomes, in which their GF ligands are released and the receptor molecules themselves are degraded. Interestingly, certain

ligand-activated RTKs, such as the EGF-R, seem to release the bulk of their signals not from their normal homes on the plasma membrane but instead while residing in endosomes prior to their eventual degradation in lysosomes.

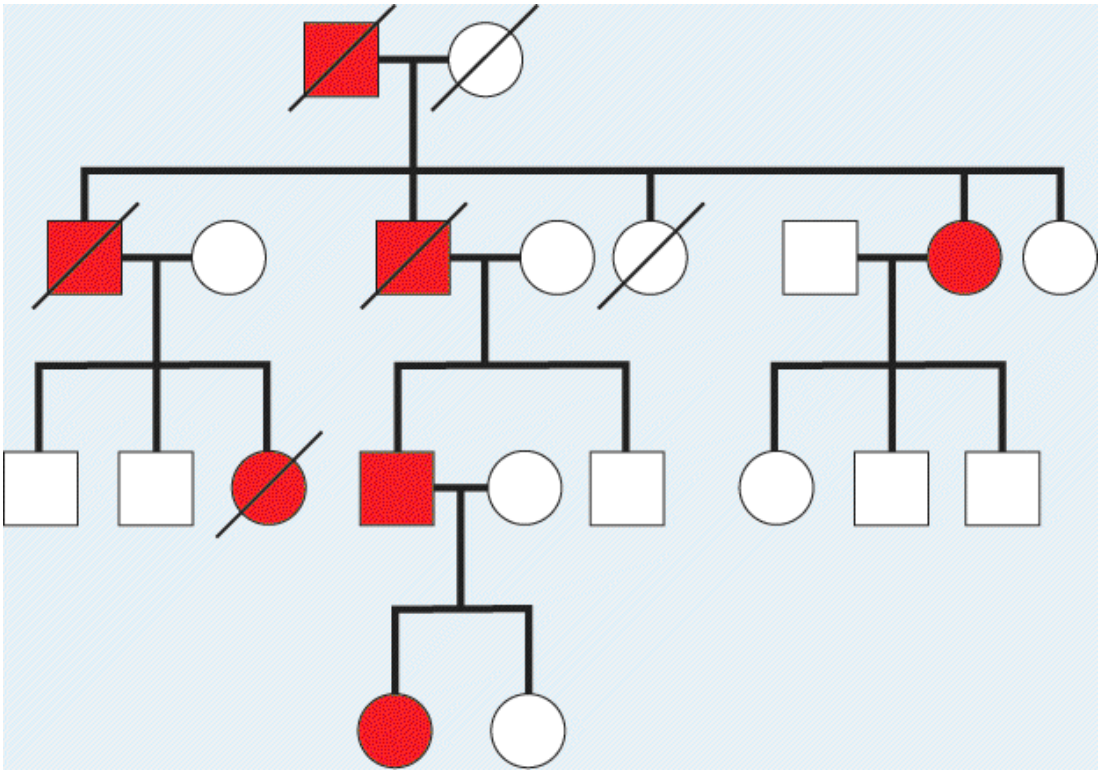
We can also note that of the approximately 20,000 protein-encoding genes in our genome, at least 58 specify protein products having the general structures of the EGF and PDGF receptors, that is, a ligand-binding ectodomain, a transmembrane domain, and a tyrosine kinase cytoplasmic domain. These receptors are further grouped into subclasses according to their structural similarities and differences (see Figure 5.6). Some of these receptors play seemingly unrelated roles in diverse tissues (**Supplementary Sidebar 5.8**). To date, only a minority of these receptors have been implicated as agents contributing to human cancer formation. It is likely that the involvement of other receptors of this class in human cancer will be uncovered in the future. Significantly, mutant alleles of certain tyrosine kinase receptor genes may also be transmitted in the human germ line. This explains the origins of a number of familial cancer syndromes, in which affected family members show greatly increased risks of contracting certain types of cancer (**Sidebar 5.6**).

Sidebar 5.6 Mutant receptor genes can be transmitted in the human germ line

Our discussions until now have focused on somatic mutations sustained in the genomes of cells as these cells advance toward neoplasia; for example, see Figure 4.5. However, certain mutant alleles of the genes encoding growth-promoting proteins, notably receptors, may also be passed through the germ line, resulting in familial cancer syndromes afflicting multiple members of a family; these represent our first exposure in this book to multi-generational cancer syndromes. The *ret* gene encodes an RTK; mutant alleles of this gene can be transmitted through the human germ line, where their transmission from one generation to the next causes the familial cancer syndromes known as multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) types 2A and 2B, as well as familial medullary thyroid carcinoma. Hereditary papillary renal cancer is due to inherited mutant alleles in the *met* gene, which encodes the receptor for hepatocyte growth factor (HGF). These mutant germ-line alleles of *met* usually carry point mutations that cause amino acid substitutions in the tyrosine kinase domain of Met that result in constitutive, ligand-independent firing by the receptor. (In the Rottweiler breed of dogs, a point mutation affecting the Met juxtamembrane region is transmitted through the germ line of ~70% of these pets and appears to contribute to their high risk of developing several types of cancer.)

Members of a Japanese family (**Figure 5.13**) have been reported to transmit a mutant allele of the Kit receptor in their germ line. Like the somatically mutated forms of *kit* (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.8**), the mutant germ-line allele carries a mutation affecting the juxtamembrane domain of the Kit receptor and yields gastrointestinal

stromal tumors (GISTs). When this mutation is introduced into one of the two copies of the *kit* gene in the mouse germ line, mice inheriting this mutant allele develop tumors that are indistinguishable from GISTs seen in humans.



A pedigree chart showing three generations of offspring of two human parents, both now deceased. The original male parent carried a mutant gene, which was passed to both sons and one of three daughters. The affected daughter, who remains alive, did not pass the gene on to any of her three offspring. One of the sons, now deceased, passed the gene on to a daughter, also now deceased, but not to his two sons. The other son, also now deceased, passed the gene on to one of his two sons, who remains alive but in turn passed it on to a daughter, also still alive.

Figure 5.13 Familial gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) Gastrointestinal stromal tumors arise from the mesenchymal pacemaker cells of the lower gastrointestinal tract and contrast with the far more frequent colon carcinomas, which derive from the epithelial cell layer lining the lumen of the gut. In the case of the kindred depicted here, an allele encoding a mutant, constitutively active Kit tyrosine kinase receptor has been carried by at least four generations, afflicting them with GISTs and/or intestinal obstructions. The transmission of this mutant allele—which carries a deletion of a single amino acid residue in the juxtamembrane domain of the receptor protein (see Supplementary Sidebar 5.6)—through so many generations indicates that phenotypic expression of this mutant

germ-line allele is often delayed until relatively late in life after childbearing years. Affected individuals, *red*; males, *squares*; females, *circles*; deceased, *diagonal strikethroughs*. (From T. Nishida et al., *Nat. Genet.* 19:323–324, 1998. With permission from Nature.)

The familial syndromes described here are most unusual, because the great majority of human familial cancer syndromes involve germ-line mutations of genes that result, at the cellular level, in the formation of inactive, recessive alleles. Included among these are alleles of the tumor suppressor genes to be discussed in Chapter 7 and DNA repair genes to be described in Chapter 12. It seems likely that, in general, mutant alleles encoding constitutively active oncoproteins, such as mutant RTKs, cannot be tolerated in the germ line, because they usually function as dominant alleles in cells and are therefore highly disruptive of normal embryonic development. Recessive alleles present in single copy in the germ line can be tolerated, however, because their presence in cells becomes apparent only when the surviving wild-type dominant allele is lost. Because such loss is infrequent, expression of the cancer-inducing phenotype is delayed until late in development.

Nonetheless, the contrasting behaviors of the dominantly acting, oncogenic alleles of tyrosine kinase receptor genes listed above seem to be compatible with reasonably normal development because their expression (in the case of the *ret* and *kit* genes) is limited to a small set of tissues, and may even be delayed during embryogenesis, allowing embryos to develop normally without the disruptive effects of these growth-promoting alleles.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

homodimer
: Molecular complex composed of two identical subunits. *See also* **heterodimer**.

heterodimer
: Molecular complex composed of two distinct subunits. *See also* **homodimer**.

transphosphorylation
: Phosphorylation of one protein molecule by another, such as the phosphorylation of one receptor subunit by the kinase carried by another. *See also* **autophosphorylation**.

phosphatase
: An enzyme that removes phosphate groups from phosphorylated substrates, such as the phosphoamino acid residues in a protein or the phosphorylated inositol of a phospholipid.

endocytosis
: Uptake by a cell of extracellular material together with associated extracellular fluid that is achieved through the invagination of a patch of plasma membrane, thereby yielding membrane-bound vesicles termed endosomes within the cytoplasm. Pinocytosis and phagocytosis are forms of endocytosis. *See also* **exocytosis**, **endosome**, **phagocytosis**, **pinocytosis**.

endosome
: Membranous vesicle lying beneath the plasma membrane that is formed after a patch of the plasma membrane invaginates into the cytoplasm via the process of endocytosis and pinches off from the plasma membrane into the cytoplasm, carrying with it extracellular fluid and associated molecules. *See also* **endocytosis.**

juxtamembrane
: Located immediately adjacent to a membrane.

dimer
: Molecular complex composed of two subunits.

monomer
: Molecule composed of a single unit or a single subunit of a chemical entity that is capable of forming higher–molecular-weight polymeric

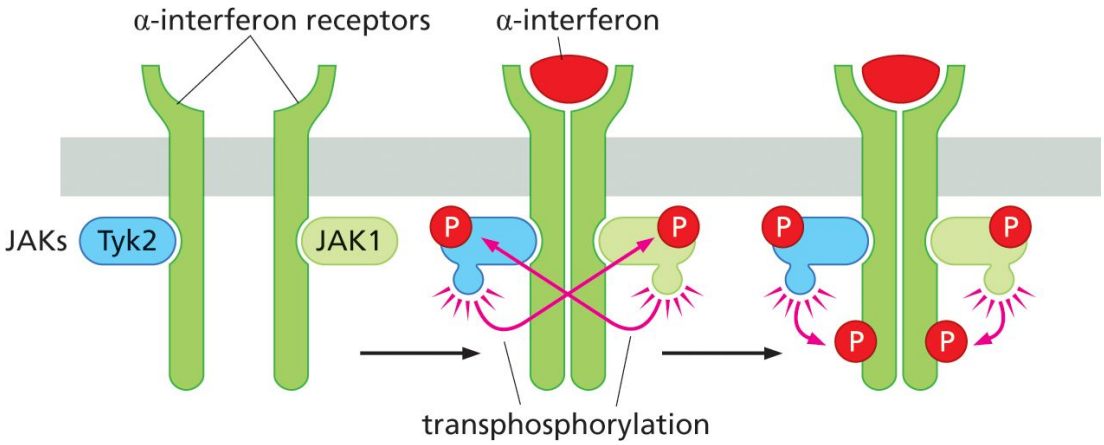
structures by association with or covalent linkage to other identical or similar units.

OceanofPDF.com

5.7 Yet other types of receptors enable mammalian cells to communicate with their environment

The cytokine receptors are especially important in receiving signals controlling the development of various hematopoietic cell types. This class of receptors also uses tyrosine kinases. However, in this case, the responsible kinases, termed JAKs (Janus kinases), are separate polypeptides that associate with the cytoplasmic domains of the cytokine receptors through noncovalent links. Indeed, as early as the 1980s, the discovery of a number of other structurally unrelated types of metazoan receptors made it clear that the tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs) described above represent only one class of receptors among a far larger group of cell-surface molecules belonging to various structural and functional classes. As is the case with RTKs, each of these other receptor types is specialized to detect the presence of specific extracellular ligands or groups of related ligands and to respond to this encounter by transducing signals through the plasma membrane into the cell.

One class of receptors that is especially important in receiving signals controlling the development of various hematopoietic cell types also uses tyrosine kinases. In this case, however, the responsible kinases, termed JAKs (Janus kinases), are separate polypeptides that associate with the cytoplasmic domains of these receptors through noncovalent links. Included here are the receptor for erythropoietin (EPO), which regulates the development of erythrocytes (red blood cells), and the thrombopoietin (TPO) receptor, which controls the development of the precursors of blood platelets, called megakaryocytes. The receptors for the important immune regulator interferon are also members of this class, as is the large group of interleukin receptors that regulate diverse immune responses. When these various cytokine receptor molecules dimerize in response to ligand binding, the associated JAKs phosphorylate and activate each other (**Figure 5.14**); the activated JAKs then proceed to phosphorylate the C-terminal tails of the receptor molecules, thereby creating receptors that are activated to emit signals, much like the RTKs described in the previous section. We will return to the details of JAK intracellular signaling in the next chapter.

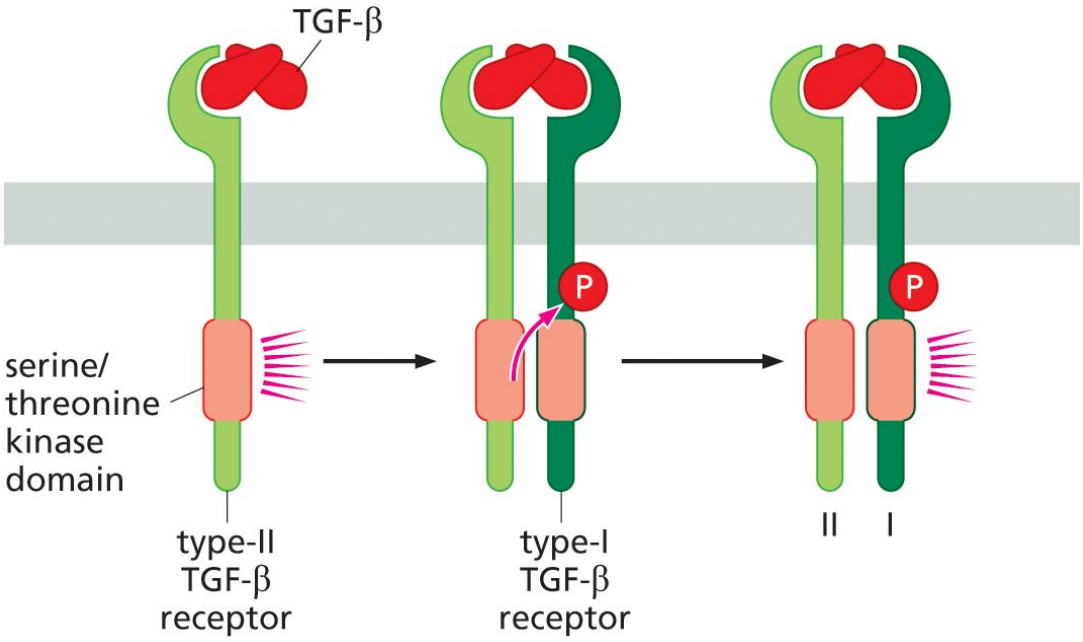


The structure and functioning of a cytokine receptor consisting of two subunits. On the extracellular side of a plasma membrane, each subunit has a cuplike alpha interferon receptor ectodomain. The cytoplasmic domain of each subunit has a J A K attached. One is a T y k 2, and the other is a J A K 1. When alpha interferon binds to the ectodomains, the two subunits move together. The J A Kays phosphorylate each other and thereupon each become active. The J A Kays then each phosphorylate the C-terminal tail of their own subunit, and the entire receptor begins actively signaling.

Figure 5.14 Structure of cytokine receptors The interferon receptor (IFN-R, *darker green*), like the receptors for erythropoietin and thrombopoietin, carries noncovalently attached tyrosine kinases (TKs) of the JAK family (in this case, Tyk2 and Jak1). Upon ligand binding (in this case α-interferon), the two TKs transphosphorylate and thereby activate one another. Subsequently, they phosphorylate the C-terminal tails of the receptor subunits, placing the receptor in an actively signaling configuration, much like the receptor tyrosine kinases described in Section 5.6.

Transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) and related ligands have receptors that are superficially similar to the tyrosine kinase receptors, in that they have an extracellular ligand-binding domain, a transmembrane domain, and a cytoplasmic kinase domain. However, these receptors invariably function as heterodimers, such as the complex of the type I and type II TGF-β receptors (**Figure 5.15**). Importantly, their kinase domains phosphorylate serine and threonine rather than tyrosine residues. TGF-β ligands play centrally important roles in cancer pathogenesis, since they suppress the proliferation of normal epithelial cells while promoting the acquisition of malignant properties by already-transformed cells. Upon ligand binding, the type II TGF-β receptor subunit, which carries a constitutively active serine/threonine kinase, is brought into close proximity with the type I TGF-β receptor subunit, which it then phosphorylates. The kinase belonging to the type I TGF-β receptor subunit becomes

activated as a consequence, and proceeds to phosphorylate cytosolic proteins that subsequently migrate to the nucleus, where they trigger expression of certain target genes. (A series of TGF-β-related factors, including activin and bone morphogenetic proteins, or BMPs, use similar receptors for signaling; they are not discussed further here, as their role in cancer development has not been as extensively documented.) We postpone more detailed discussion of the effects of the TGF-β signaling system on proliferation (until Chapter 8) and on carcinoma cell aggressiveness (until Chapter 14).

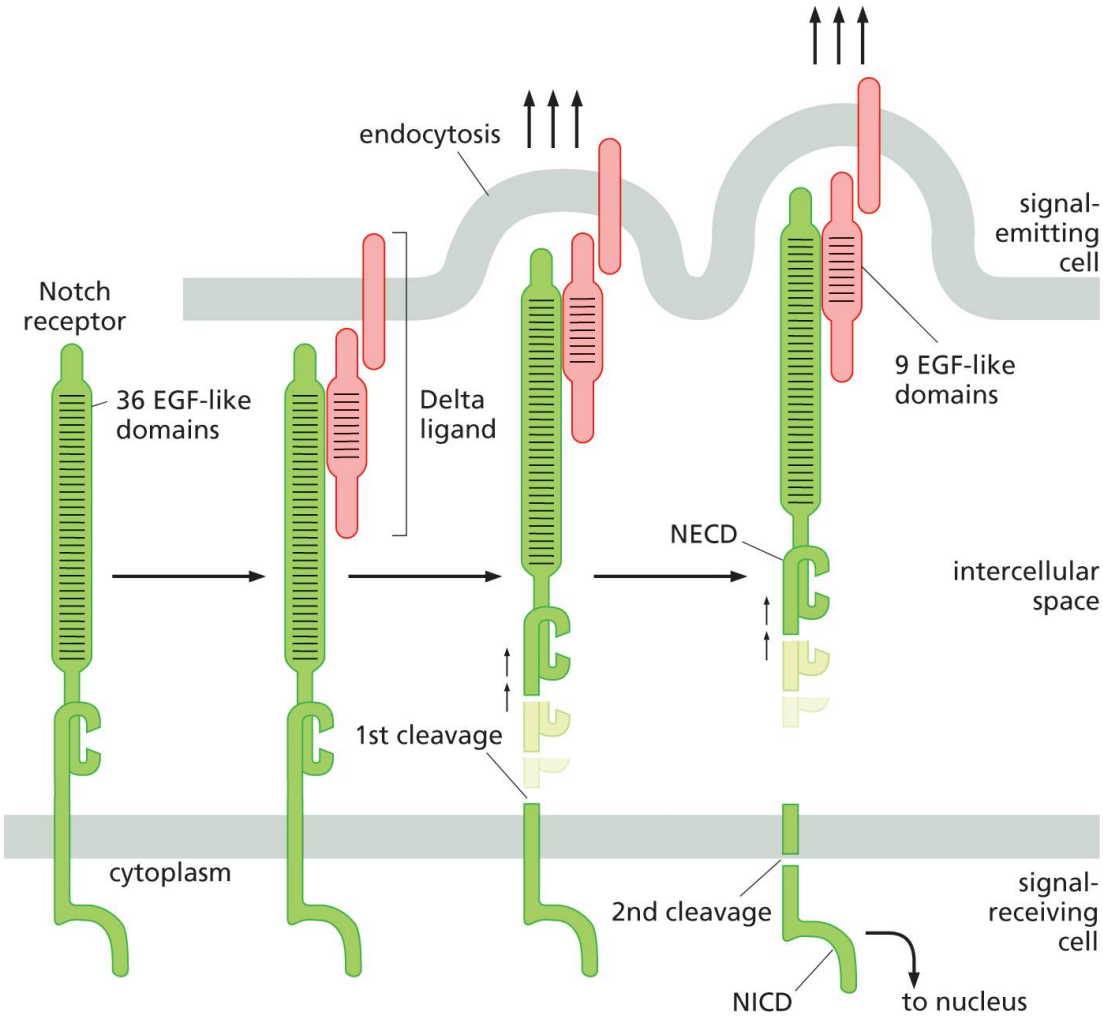


The structure and functioning of T G F beta receptors. On the extracellular side of a plasma membrane, a Type 2 T G F beta receptor has a cuplike receptor ectodomain. The cytoplasmic domain has a serine slash threonine kinase domain. When T G F beta binds to the ectodomain, the serine slash threonine kinase domain begins signaling. A Type 1 T G F beta receptor, structurally the mirror of the Type 2, attaches to the type 1, and the serine slash threonine kinase on the Type 2 phosphorylates the serine slash threonine kinase on the Type 1. The kinase on the Type 1 then begin signaling.

Figure 5.15 Structure of the TGF-β receptor The structure of the TGF-β receptor is superficially similar to that of tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs), in that both types of receptors signal through cytoplasmic kinase domains. However, the kinase domains of TGF-β receptors specifically phosphorylate serine and threonine, rather than tyrosine residues. After the type II receptor (TGF-βRII) is brought into contact with the type I receptor (TGF-βRI) through the binding of TGF-β ligand, it phosphorylates and activates the kinase carried by the type I

receptor. The activated type I receptor kinase then emits signals by phosphorylating certain cytoplasmic substrates.

A far more primitive form of a transmembrane signaling system is embodied in the Notch receptor (termed simply Notch) and its multiple alternative ligands (NotchL, Delta, Jagged; **Figure 5.16**). Importantly, these ligands are immobilized cell-surface proteins that are displayed by the signal-emitting cell. Hence, ligand–receptor interactions require close physical association between the signal-emitting and signal-receiving cells, similar to the Ephrin-Eph receptors depicted in Figure 5.8D and unlike other examples of receptor–ligand interactions, where the ligands are secreted as soluble proteins into the extracellular space by a cell that may be located at some distance from the cell destined to respond to this ligand. Hence, the interactions of Notch with its ligands conform to the signaling pattern between closely apposed cells that we have termed juxtacrine signaling (Figure 5.8D).



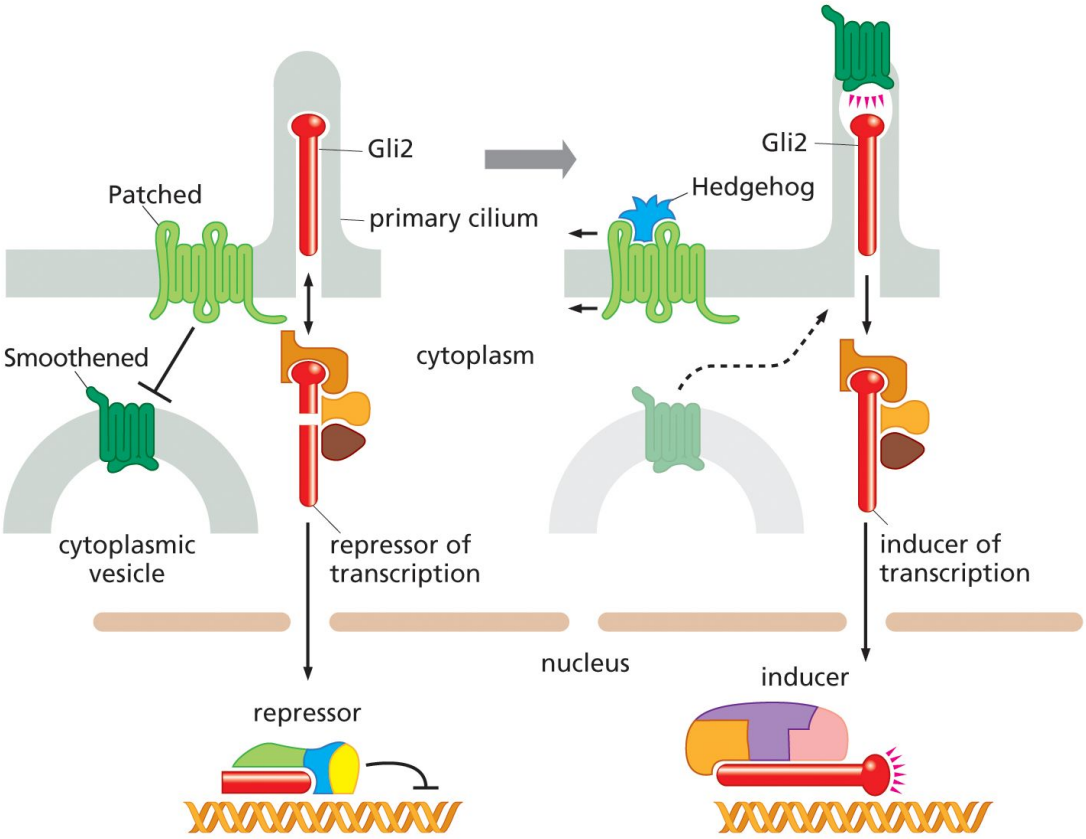
The structure and functioning of the Notch receptor. The receptor's ectodomain has a C-shaped structure near the transmembrane domain, and it ends in a series of 36 E G F like domains. The cytoplasmic domain is short and hook shaped. After the ectodomain binds to a delta ligand attached to a signal-emitting cell, the ligand is drawn back into a fold of that cell's membrane. The Notch receptor separates at the ectodomain-transmembrane domain junction. It then separates at the transmembrane domain-cytoplasmic domain junction, and the hooklike cytodomain fragment begins migrating toward the nucleus of the signal-receiving cell.

Figure 5.16 Structure of the Notch receptor The Notch receptor (*green*) appears to embody a very primitive type of signaling. The extracellular domain (NECD) of Notch displayed by the recipient cell is composed of two polypeptides that are associated via noncovalent interactions. After it has bound a ligand (for example, NotchL or, as shown here, Delta, *pink*) that is being displayed on the surface of an adjacent signal-emitting cell, the bound ligand (here, Delta) undergoes endocytosis into the ligand-presenting cell. This ligand binding also triggers two successive proteolytic cleavages of the Notch receptor. The resulting C-terminal cytoplasmic fragment (NICD) of the Notch receptor is thereby liberated, allowing it to migrate to the cell nucleus, where it alters the expression of certain genes. Mammals have five distinct Notch ligands and four distinct Notch receptors.

Interestingly, considerable evidence points to a mechanism in which the Notch ligand–presenting cell must attach its ligand to the Notch receptor and then use mechanical force to tear the Notch ectodomain away from the signal-receiving cell. (This mechanical force is generated by the endocytosis of the ligand, which pulls it into the cytoplasm of the ligand-presenting cell!) The mechanical tension initially created by ligand binding seems to stretch in some fashion the Notch (receptor) ectodomain, making it vulnerable to cleavage by a protease; this cleavage is followed by a second proteolytic cleavage that releases a fragment from the Notch receptor cytoplasmic domain. The released fragment then migrates to the nucleus, where it functions as part of a complex of transcription factors that activate expression of a cohort of responder genes. Mutant, constitutively active forms of Notch, which fire in a ligand-independent fashion, have been found in half of adult T-cell leukemias. Of note, Notch signaling seems often to direct cell fate, that is, the choice of which specific differentiation pathway a stem cell chooses to enter, rather than providing mitogenic signals.

Yet another receptor, termed Patched, is constructed from multiple transmembrane domains that weave their way back and forth through the plasma membrane (**Figure 5.17**); receptors configured in this way are often termed serpentine receptors. Curiously, the Patched–Smoothened signaling system depends on a cellular structure that was once dismissed as nothing more than an evolutionary relict, a vestige of our

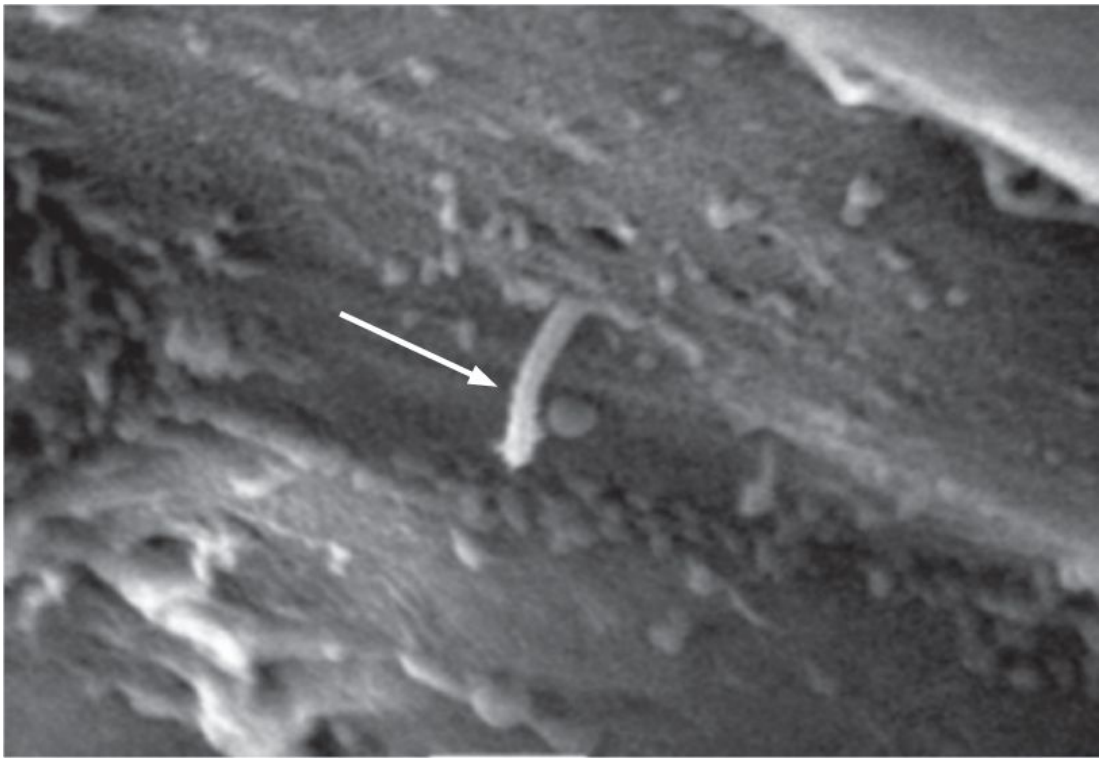
early origins as ciliated or flagellated single-cell eukaryotes. A primary cilium protrudes from the surfaces of cells belonging to almost all mammalian cell types, often being deployed by these cells for various forms of sensory input (see Figure 5.17B). Normally, Smoothened (Smo), which is associated with cytoplasmic membranous vesicles, and the Gli2 transcription factor cycle back and forth in and out of the primary cilium (Figure 5.17A and C). However, when a Hedgehog (Hh) ligand binds its Patched receptor in the plasma membrane, Smoothened and Gli2 are permitted to accumulate in the primary cilium, where Gli2 is converted into an inducer of transcription and is dispatched to the nucleus. (The related Gli1 and Gli3 behave in slightly different ways.)



Two diagrams show variations in the functioning of the Patched-Smoothened signaling system. In both versions, Patched is a folded protein within a plasma membrane near a primary cilium that has a Gli 2 protein through its core, and Smoothed is a folded protein within the wall of a cytoplasmic vesicle. Normally, Smoothened remains where it is, under the influence of Patched. The Gli2 cilium core moves down into the cytoplasm, a portion that acts as a repressor of transcription breaks off and moves into the cell nucleus, where it becomes part of a complex that inhibits transcription. In an alternate process, a Hedgehog ligand binds to Patched and blocks its influence on Smoothened.

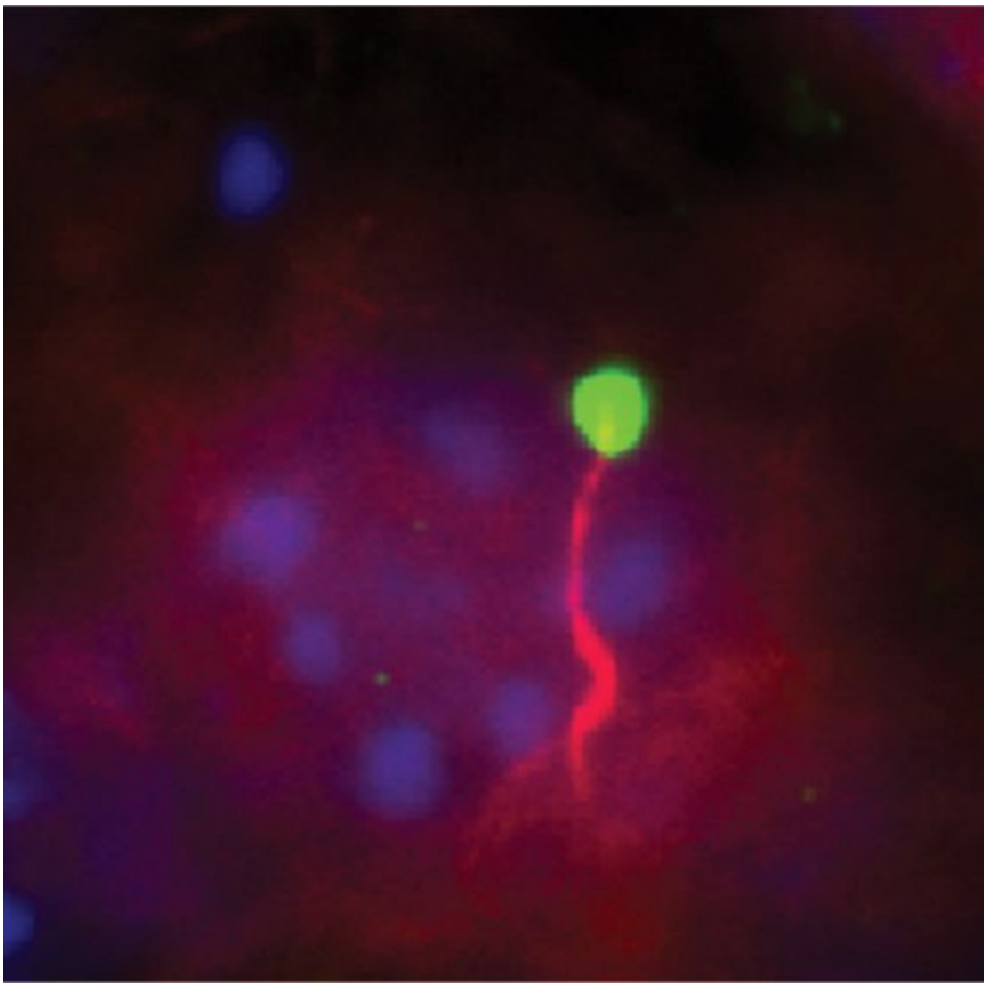
Smoothened moves up into the tip of the cilium, and under its influence the entire Gli2 cilium core moves into the cytoplasm, and from there, unbroken, into the cell nucleus, where it becomes part of a complex that induces transcription. Part B is a scanning electron micrograph of a cilium protruding from the surface of an epithelial cell. Part C shows a bright yellow green blob perched on the tip of a purplish-red filament that extends up from a red surface.

(A)



A scanning electron micrograph of a cilium protruding from the surface of an epithelial cell.

(B)



A bright yellow green blob perched on the tip of a purplish-red filament that extends up from a red surface.

(C)

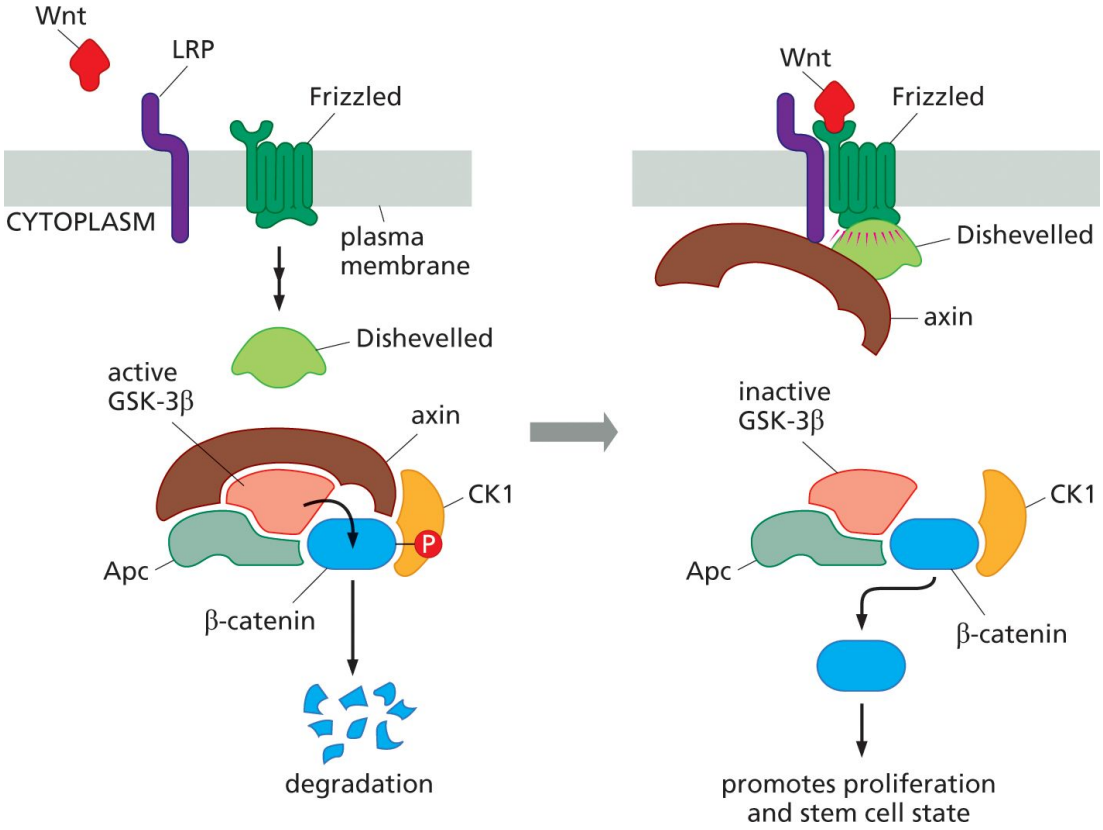
Figure 5.17 The Patched–Smoothened signaling system The Hedgehog pathway utilizes its own, unique signaling system. (A) Normally (*left*), Smoothened (Smo), a seven-membrane-spanning protein structurally related to the Frizzled receptors of the Wnt signaling family (*dark green*; see Figure 5.18), is functionally inert, being confined in cytoplasmic vesicles by the actions of Patched (Ptc; *light green*), which contains 12 membrane-spanning domains (*top left*). This sequestration seems to depend on the catalytic actions of Patched on Smoothened, which prevents Smoothened from moving into primary cilia. Recent research suggests that Ptc acts to control the access of Smo to cholesterol molecules (*not shown*). However, when a Hedgehog (Hh) ligand (*right, blue*) binds to Patched, the latter releases Smoothened from its site of sequestration in the cytoplasm, and Smoothened moves onto the surface of a primary cilium and

proceeds, in some unknown fashion, to protect Gli2 from cleavage, enabling Gli2 to move into the nucleus, where it can act with yet other protein partners as an inducer of transcription. (According to an alternative version, Smoothened routinely cycles in and out of the primary cilium. In the absence of Hh binding, Patched, which is associated closely with the primary cilium, prevents Smoothened accumulation in the cilium; in the presence of Hh, however, Patched is inactivated, thereby allowing the accumulation of Smoothened in the cilium.) Two other Gli proteins—not pictured here—operate in slightly different ways. (B) While most discussions of cell surface receptors imply that such receptors are dispersed randomly across the surface of the plasma membrane, in fact many receptors are displayed only in localized, specialized domains of the cell surface. The Smoothened receptor (like the PDGF-α receptor) is displayed on the surface of primary cilia (*white arrow*), which protrude from the plasma membrane of many types of mammalian cells, as is seen here in a scanning electron micrograph of the surface of an epithelial cell. (C) The cycling of Gli back and forth between the cytosol and the tip of the primary cilium can be blocked experimentally, trapping Gli (*green*) at the tip of the primary cilium (*magenta stalk*) and revealing dramatically one phase of its biochemical cycle. (A, courtesy of D. Thomas and adapted from S. Goetz and K.V. Anderson, *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 11:331–344, 2010. B, from C.J. Haycraft et al., *PLoS Genet.* 1(4):e53, 2005. This article is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Public Domain declaration. C, from J. Kim, M. Kato and P.A. Beachy, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 106:21666–21671, 2009. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

In fact, the primary cilium also hosts an RTK—the PDGF-Rα—that we discussed earlier, whose signaling is absolutely dependent on localization to this tiny organelle; thus, blockage of this localization precludes effective ligand-stimulated receptor firing. A similar association operates between primary cilia and the receptors for certain Wnts and GPCRs that are described below. The Hedgehog (Hh) ligands of mammals, specifically, Desert Hh, Indian Hh, and Sonic Hh, appear to function in normal development primarily as morphogens, that is, molecules that enable embryonic tissues to develop specific patterns and shapes.

The Wnt factors represent yet another, entirely independent signaling system. As described earlier, their discovery is traced back to a *Drosophila* mutant termed *Wingless* and a related gene termed *int-1* in mice; the latter was discovered because of insertional mutagenesis by mouse mammary tumor virus (see Sidebar 3.4). These Wnt proteins—humans make at least 19 distinct Wnt species—are tethered tightly to the extracellular matrix (ECM) and, through a lipid tail, to cell membranes, and thus do not appear to be freely diffusible like several of the growth factors that we encountered earlier. Growth factors of the Wnt class activate receptors of the Frizzled (Fzd/Frz) family, which, like Patched, are complex receptors that weave back and forth through

the plasma membrane multiple times (**Figure 5.18**). (Their name comes from the behavior of a *Drosophila* mutant allele encoding one of these receptors that creates disordered hairs growing in disorganized orientations from the cuticle of this fruit fly; mammals express ten distinct receptors belonging to this family.)



A diagram shows canonical W n t signaling via Frizzled receptors. A plasma membrane contains an L R P and a Frizzled receptor. When W n t floats freely, by itself, outside the cell, a Dishevelled protein remains floating freely, by itself, within the cytoplasm. Then beta catenin is phosphorylated by active G S K-3 when the two are joined in a complex that also includes A p c, axin, and C K 1. Subsequently the beta catenin is degraded into small pieces. On the other hand, when W n t binds to the Frizzled receptor, the Dishevelled protein binds to the receptor on the other side, and the axin binds to the Dishevelled protein and the L R P. Then the complex in which G S K-3 would phosphorylate beta catenin remains incomplete, and so the beta catenin remains unphosphorylated. Instead of being degraded, it proliferates and promotes stem cell state.

Figure 5.18 Canonical Wnt signaling via Frizzled receptors Receptors of the Wnt proteins are members of the Frizzled (Frz) family of transmembrane proteins. In the canonical Wnt signaling pathway, and in the absence of Wnt ligand binding (*left*), a complex of axin (*brown*) and Apc (*light blue-green*) allows glycogen

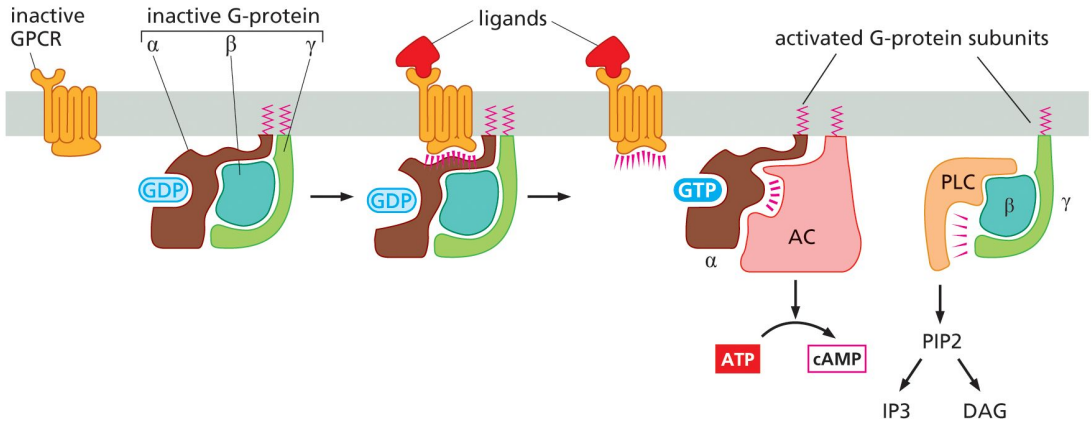
synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β, *pink*) to phosphorylate β-catenin (*blue*). This marks β-catenin for rapid destruction by proteolysis. However, when a Wnt ligand binds to certain Frizzled receptors (*right*, *dark green*) and the LRP co-receptor (*purple*), the resulting activated Frizzled receptor, acting via the Dishevelled protein (*light green*) and axin (*dark brown*), causes inhibition of GSK-3β. This spares β-catenin, which may accumulate in the nucleus and promote cell proliferation. Two other Wnt-activated pathways, termed "non-canonical Wnt pathways," are not shown here.

In the absence of Wnt signaling, the cytoplasmic enzyme glycogen synthase kinase-3 β (GSK-3β) phosphorylates several key proliferation-promoting proteins, including β-catenin, tagging them for destruction. However, the binding of Wnts to Frizzled receptors triggers a cascade of steps that shut down GSK-3β firing, allowing these proteins to escape degradation and promote cell proliferation (see Figure 5.18). This pathway also plays a critical role in cancer pathogenesis, and we will discuss it in great detail later in this book.

The control of β -catenin levels by Wnts, often termed "canonical Wnt signaling," is only one of multiple ways by which Wnts and their Frizzled receptors affect cell behavior. Certain Wnts, acting together with a subset of the Frizzled receptors, signal through entirely different biochemical pathways that together constitute "non-canonical Wnt signaling." Two of these pathways, which play especially important roles in cancer development—termed Wnt-PCP and Wnt-Ca^2=—contribute in important ways to the formation of certain cancers and will be described in some detail in the next chapter. Recent research has revealed another four non-canonical Wnt signaling pathways whose respective contributions to cancer cell phenotypes are still being described.

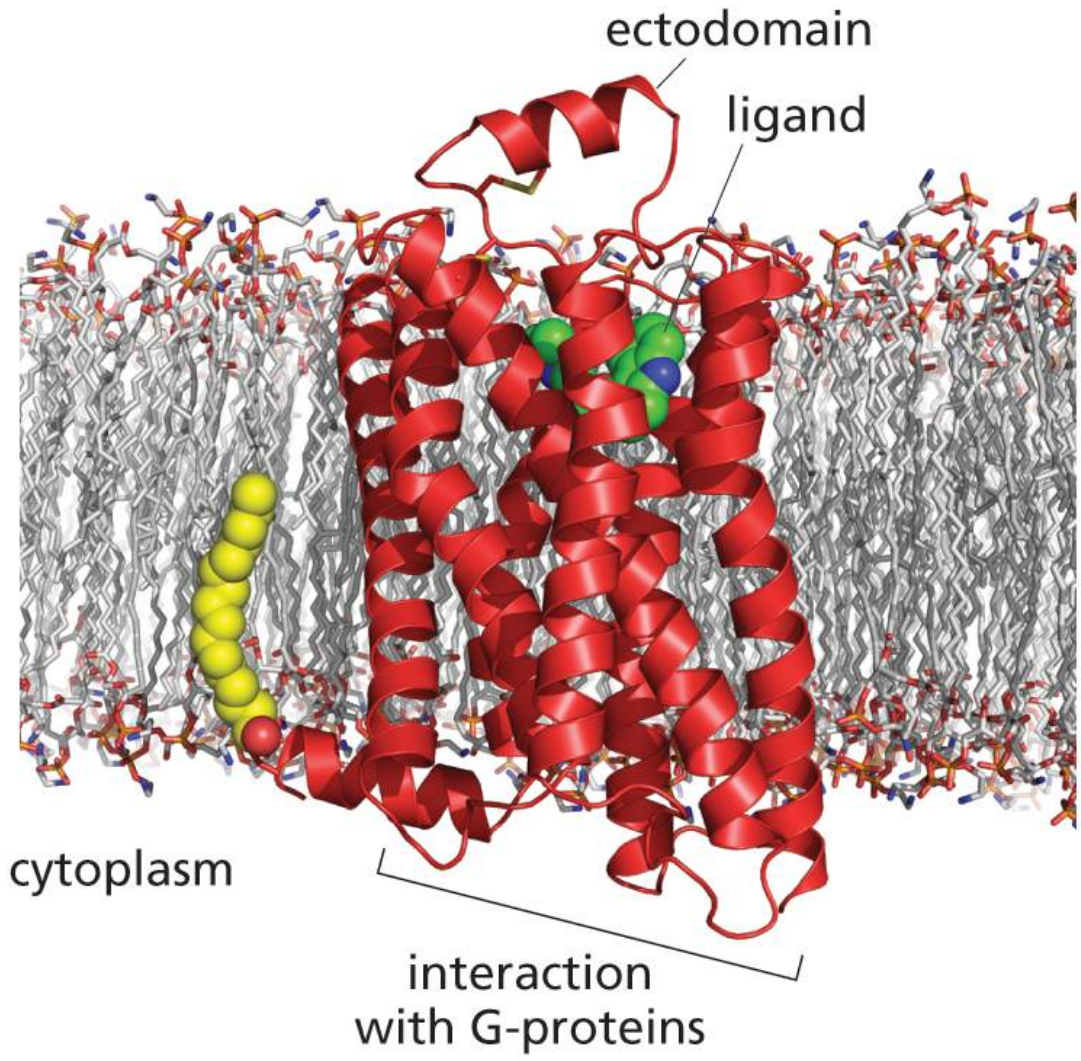
The. structure of Patched and the Frizzled receptors echoes that of a far larger family of 7 membrane-spanning, serpentine receptors that fall into the class of G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs). The latter are named because of their ability to activate guanosine nucleotide–binding proteins (G-proteins, for short), which function, much like Ras (see Section 5.10), as binary on–off switches that alternate between a GTP-bound active state and a GDP-bound inactive state (**Figure 5.19**). (The close structural resemblance of the Frizzled receptors with the GPCRs caused many, at one time, to speculate that Frizzled receptors also employ G-proteins for signaling, which is manifestly not the case.) In more detail, the G-proteins activated by ligand-bound GPCRs are structurally complex, being formed as heterotrimers composed of α, β, and γ subunits. As indicated in Figure 5.19A, once a GPCR binds its ligand, a poorly understood shift in the configuration of the receptor causes it to trigger the release of GDP by the α subunit of the G-protein, permitting the binding of GTP instead. The α subunit then dissociates from its β and γ partners, and both the α subunit and the

complexed β=γ subunits may then proceed to interact with their own respective effector proteins, that is, proteins that do the work of the the G-proteins by transmitting signals further into the cell interior. In the case of the GPCR depicted in Figure 5.19A, the effector of the activated α subunit is the adenylate cyclase (AC) enzyme, while the β=γ complex activates a distinct effector—phospholipase C-β (PLC-β). Eventually, an actively signaling α subunit turns itself off by hydrolyzing its bound GTP (converting it to GDP) and reassociates with its β and γ partners. These heterotrimeric complexes then retreat into their inactive, nonsignaling state, awaiting signals once again from a ligand-activated GPCR.



A diagram describing signaling by G P C Rs. A G P C R sits inactive within a plasma membrane, near to an inactive G-protein attached to the cytoplasmic side of the membrane. The protein has alpha, beta and gamma subunits. The alpha unit contains a G D P particle. After the G P C R binds with a ligand, it binds to the alpha subunit of the G protein. The alpha unit releases its G D P and acquires a G T P. Next, the alpha subunit separates from the beta-gamma complex, but both remain attached to the inner wall of the plasma membrane. The alpha unit binds to an A C complex and signals it to produce c A M P from A T P. Meanwhile, the beta-gamma complex binds to a P L C complex and signals it break P I P 2 into I P 3 and D A G.

(A)



The complicated coiled structure of G P C R shown as a ribbon diagram. Much of the protein is alpha helices that lie between the inner and outer layers of the plasma membrane, but the ectodomain protrudes on the extracellular side. Several portions also protrude on the cytoplasmic side and are the site of interaction with G proteins. The ligand bound to the protein on the extracellular side is also visible, but deeply embedded.

(B)

Figure 5.19 Signaling via the G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) (A) In the absence of ligand binding to the GPCR, both the GPCR and its cognate heterotrimeric G-protein (which is composed of α, β, and γ subunits) are in inactive configurations. In response to ligand binding (usually a low molecular weight molecule), the receptor binds to and stimulates the α subunit of the G protein to release its GDP (guanosine diphosphate) and bind GTP (guanosine

triphosphate) instead (*light blue*). The α subunit then dissociates from the β=γ pair. Now, the α subunit (*brown*) can proceed to regulate key enzymes: in the case shown here, the α subunit activates an adenylate cyclase (AC) (*pink*), which generates cAMP, which in turn modulates the activity of several cellular proteins kinase A (PKA). In some cases the β=γ complexes can activate their own constituencies of downstream effectors, such as a phospholipase C (PLC) (*orange*) shown here. PLC cleaves phosphatidylinositol 2 (PIP2) embedded in the plasma membrane (*not shown*), yielding two products, that is IP_3 which increases intracellular calcium and diacylglycerol (DAG) which proceeds to activate one form of protein kinase C (PKC). By subsequently hydrolyzing its bound GTP to GDP, the α subunit of the G-protein eventually shuts down signaling, acting much like the Ras protein (see Figure 5.24), permitting the re-association of the α, β, and γ subunits with one another. (B) The structures of G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) have been elusive because of difficulties in crystallizing them. A structure of rhodopsin produced in 2000 was followed in 2007 by the elucidation of the structure of the β2-adrenergic receptor, which is composed of seven α-helices (*red*). A low–molecular-weight ligand (*green*) is shown binding in the receptor's core, while a molecule of cholesterol (*yellow*) is shown embedded in the lipid bilayer of the surrounding plasma membrane. Some serpentine receptors, notably GPCRs, are specialized to bind low–molecular-weight ligands, whereas others, like Frizzled receptors, bind higher–molecular-weight polypeptide ligands. (B, from V. Cherezov et al., *Science* 318:1258–1265, 2007. With permission from AAAS.)

A recent survey of the human genome sequence indicates that it encodes, in addition to the tyrosine kinase receptors, eleven TGFβ-like receptors, four Notch receptors, two Patched receptors, and ten Frizzled receptors. The GPCRs vastly outnumber these. Altogether, there are more than 800 *GPCR* genes in the mammalian genome, constituting ∼4% of the coding genes in the genome; of these, 400 or so GPCRs function as olfactory receptors and most of the remainder appear to be nonfunctional pseudogenes. The functional versatility of these receptors is illustrated by their diverse functions beyond olfaction, as some underlie mechanisms of taste in the mouth, detection of photons in the retina, and signaling by dozens of distinct neurotransmitters in the brain. While vast in number, these receptors have to date been found to contribute directly to the formation of only a relatively small number of human cancers (described in Chapter 6). However, a subset of the GPCRs, termed chemokine receptors, play an important role in recruiting various immune cells into the tumor-associated stroma, which interact in various complex ways with cancer cells, as described in Chapters 13 and 15. Moreover, hyperactive signaling by certain chemokine receptors also contributes to mitogenic signals in a small subset of human tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cytokine
: (1) Secreted protein that operates like growth factors to stimulate or inhibit various cell types, notably those constituting various branches of the hematopoietic and immune systems. (2) Less commonly, secreted proteins that convey signals between cells, including mitogenic growth factors.

thrombopoietin
: A growth factor that stimulates the production of megakaryocytes and thus of derived blood platelets.

megakaryocyte
: Large cell of the hematopoietic system that produces platelets by pinching off fragments of its cytoplasm.

juxtacrine
: Type of cell–cell signaling in which the signal-emitting cell must be directly apposed to the signal-receiving cell in order for the signal to be properly transmitted. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine**, **exocrine**, **intracrine**, **paracrine**.

cell fate
: The entrance of a less-differentiated cell into a specific differentiation lineage and eventual differentiated state, often determined by a cell long before such a cell manifests specific markers of such a state.

serpentine
: Referring to the class of membrane proteins, such as G protein-coupled receptors, that wend their way back and forth (in a snakelike pattern) through a membrane multiple times.

primary cilium
: Single nonmotile cilium displayed by many types of mammalian cells which bears a specific set of receptors that confer responsiveness to various cytokines. *See also* **cilium**.

morphogen
: Low–molecular-weight substance that induces cells to assemble and participate in the construction of a tissue of a certain shape and form.

G-protein

A signaling protein that actively emits signals when it has bound GTP and shuts itself off by hydrolyzing the GTP, yielding bound GDP and transition of the protein to its inactive, non-signaling state. *See also* **guanine nucleotide exchange factor**.

effector

An agent (such as a protein) that carries out the actual work of a biological process rather than simply regulating it.

pseudogene

A gene present in the genome that shares extensive sequence similarity with known functional genes but encodes a defective function, such as a catalytically inactive enzyme; such pseudogenes invariably derive evolutionarily from functional genes that have sustained inactivating mutations in the distant past but have nonetheless persisted in an organism's genome.

chemokine

(1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

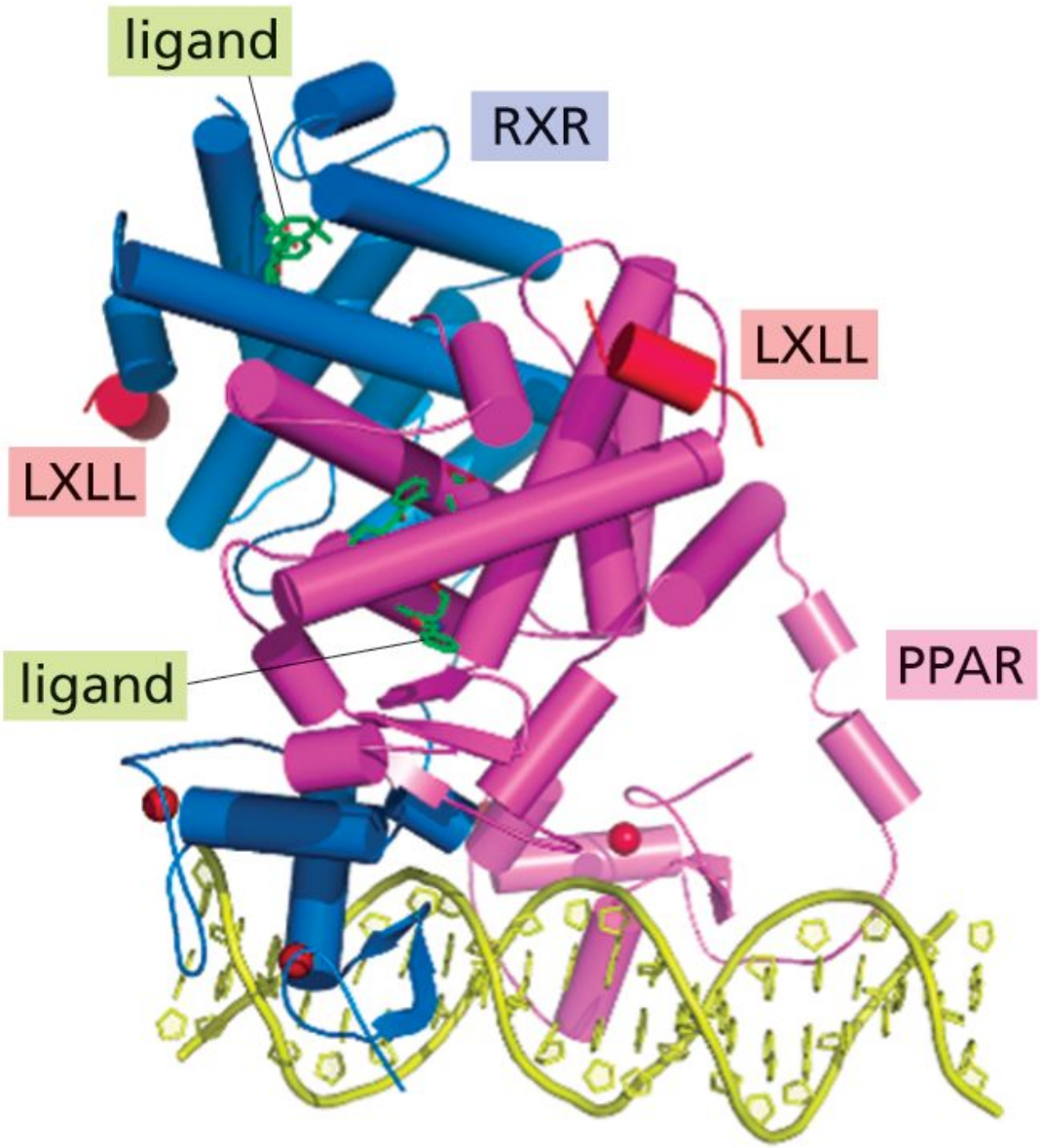
OceanofPDF.com

5.8 Nuclear receptors sense the presence of low–molecular-weight lipophilic ligands

The ability of cells to sense various extracellular signals is dictated by the chemical properties of signaling ligands and the impermeability of the plasma membrane to polar compounds, including almost all polypeptides. These conditions necessitated the development of two of the major classes of receptors that we have already encountered: because neither polypeptide GFs nor the low–molecular-weight polar ligands of GPCRs can penetrate the plasma membrane, their corresponding receptors display elaborate ligand-binding ectodomains to the extracellular environment.

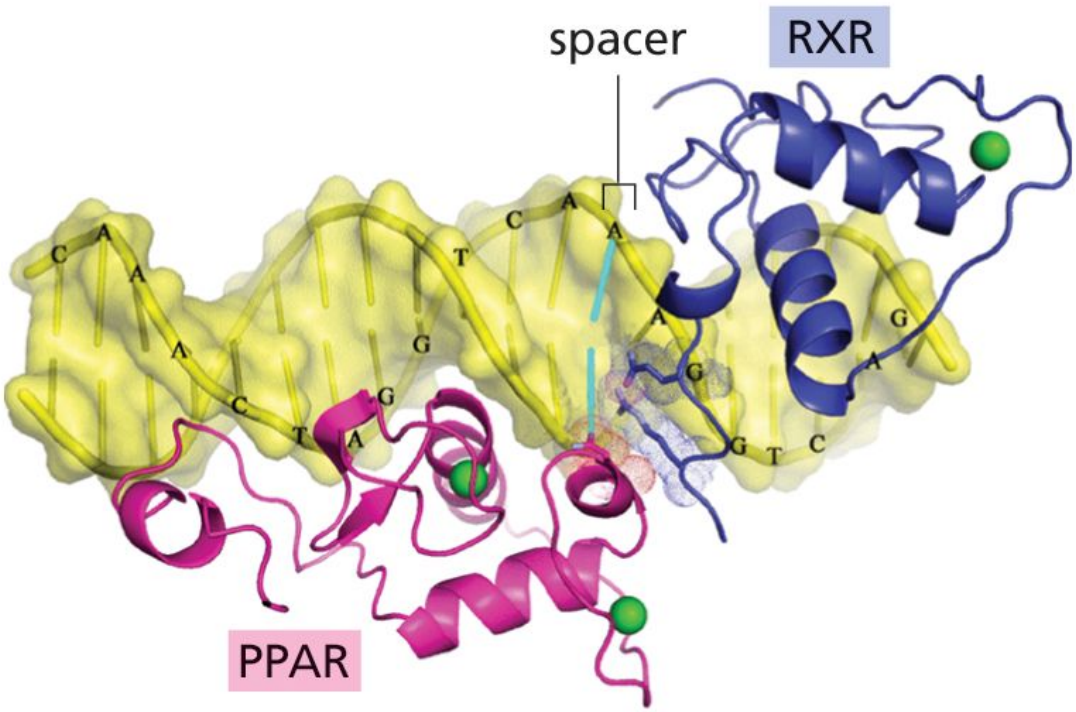
Another class of signaling ligands, however, consists of molecules that are both of low molecular weight and relatively hydrophobic; included among these are steroid sex hormones, retinoids, and vitamin D. Their hydrophobicity enables these ligands to readily penetrate the plasma membrane and advance further into the nucleus, where they may bind and activate a series of nuclear DNA-binding proteins that function as transcription factors. The complex cytoplasmic signaling cascades that have evolved to function as intermediaries between a diverse array of cell surface receptors and the nuclear transcription machinery are not needed here, since these "nuclear receptors" can bind their ligands and directly regulate the expression of target genes by binding to the promoters of these genes. Prominent among the 48 or so human nuclear receptors are those that bind the steroid hormones estrogen, progesterone, and androgens. These three receptors play key roles in the development of common human malignancies, in particular, breast, ovarian, and prostate carcinomas.

Nuclear receptor molecules contain a DNA-binding domain, a hinge region, and a conserved ligand-binding domain, these three being flanked by variable N′- and C′-terminal domains. Some nuclear receptors remain in the cytoplasm until ligand binding triggers their nuclear import, while others are constitutively bound to chromatin. Once associated with the chromatin, these receptors bind as homo- or heterodimers (**Figure 5.20A**) to a pair of recognition sequences in the DNA located within or near the promoters of genes whose expression they control; these recognition sequences are often termed hormone response elements (HREs) and are composed of a pair of hexanucleotides separated by a variable number of spacer sequences (Figure 5.20B).



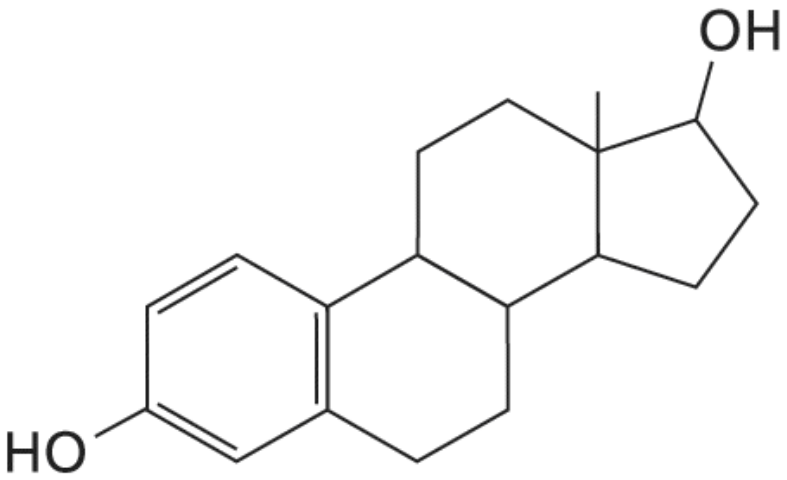
A three-dimensional rendering of a nuclear receptor complex, with dark blue segments labeled R X R, light purple segments labeled P P A R, and two short red segments labeled L X L L. Two thin green strands are labeled ligands. Also shown are three red dots. The entire structure is attached to a D N A molecule.

(A)

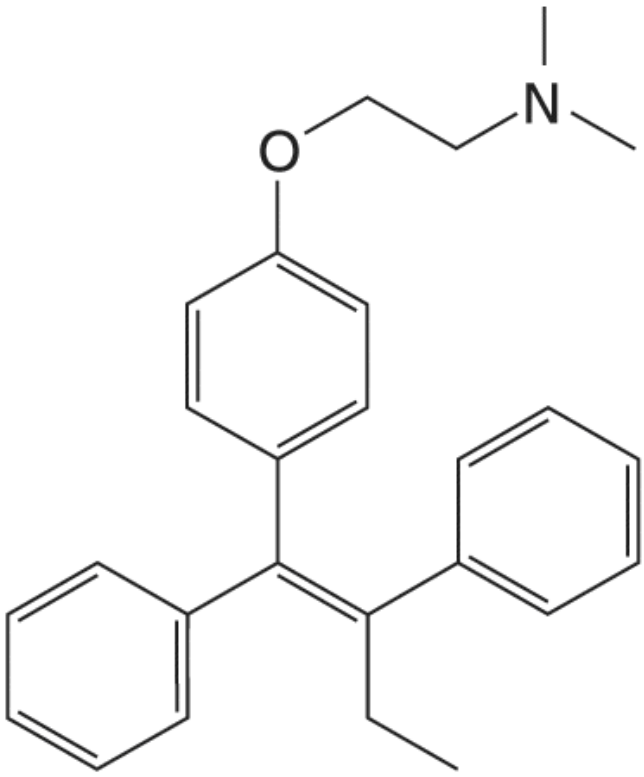


Details for the D N A attachment in Part A. A sequence of bases spirals around the D N A: C A A A C T A G G T C A A A G G T C A G. In this sequence, A G G T C A occurs twice, with an A between them labeled spacer. A P P A R domain binds to the first A G G T C A. An R X R domain binds to the second one.

(B)



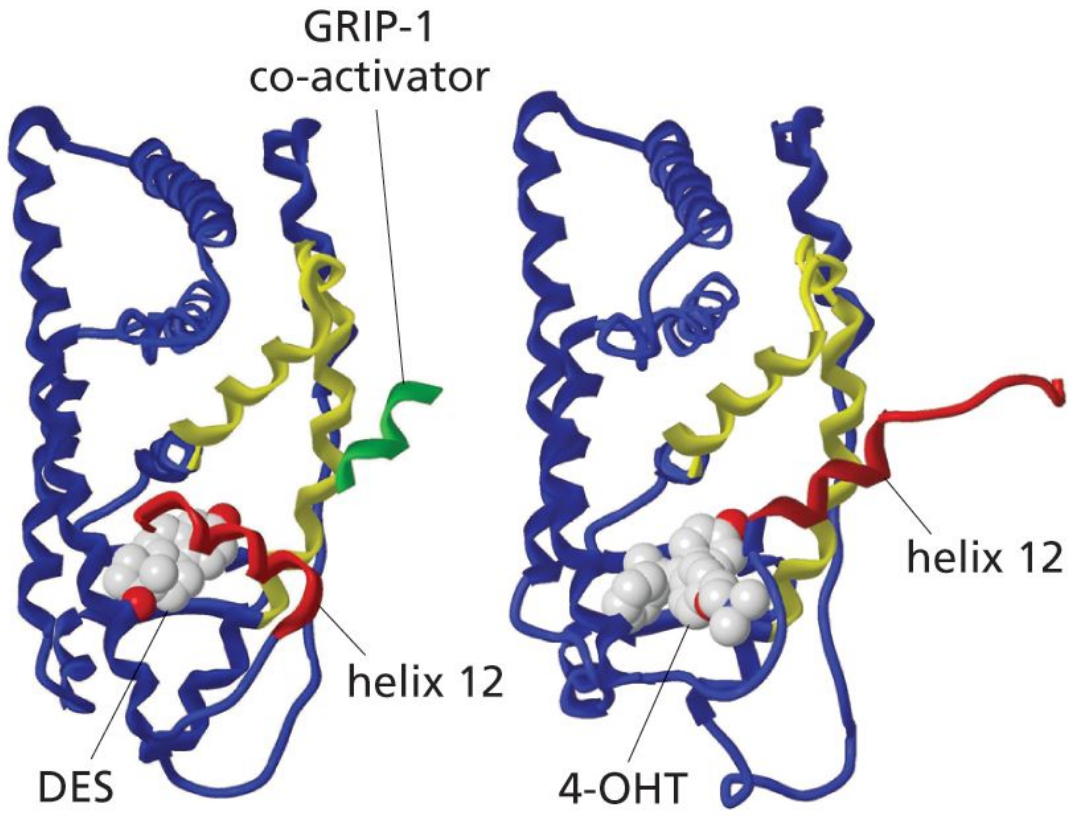
E2/estrogen



4-OHT/tamoxifen

Two molecular diagrams. One is E 2 slash estrogen, featuring 17 carbons joined as three six-carbon rings and a five-carbon ring. An O H group hangs off each end, and an 18th carbon attaches in the middle. The other molecule is 4-O H T slash tamoxifen, featuring three full, separate six carbon rings held

together by a 19th and 20 carbon that also have an attached ethyl group. One of the six-rings has an attached oxygen to which, in turn, is attached a two-carbon chain with a dimethyl amino group at the other end.
(C)



Two very similar structures, side by side. The left one has a cluster of spheres labeled D H S where the right one has a cluster labeled 4-O H T. The left one has a GRIP-1 co-activator, while the right one does not. Both have a section labeled helix 12, but on the right one this is in the position of the left one's GRIP-1 co-activator.

(D)

Figure 5.20 Nuclear receptors (A) While the estrogen receptor (ER) often functions as a homodimer, many other nuclear receptors function as heterodimers, with each monomer binding its own ligand and its own recognition site in the DNA. Seen here is the structure of a nuclear receptor complex that has been elucidated in its entirety—the heterodimeric complex of PPAR-γ (peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ, *light purple*) and the RXR (retinoid X receptor, *blue*). The LXLL domain (where L = leucine and X = variable amino acid residue) of the co-activator of each receptor (*red*) enables the co-activator to bind directly

to the receptor; the bound co-activators then recruit chromatin-modifying enzymes to the nearby chromatin. The ligands (*green*) of the two receptors are rosiglitazone (bound by PPAR) and 9-*cis*-retinoic acid (bound by RXR). Zinc ions are seen as *red dots*. α-helices are depicted as cylinders. (B) The DNA-binding domains of the two subunits of the receptor shown in (A) are seen here in greater detail, in this case binding to two copies of the sequence AGGTCA (separated by a single base-pair spacer sequence, *light green lines*). Other nuclear receptors have paired DNA recognition sites with spacers of various lengths, and one class of these receptors bind DNA as monomers. Zinc ions are seen as *green dots*. (C) Like the ligands of other nuclear receptors, 17β-estradiol, otherwise called estrogen or simply E2, causes a conformation shift of the estrogen receptor (ER) that enables the receptor to associate physically with a co-activator, resulting in activation of transcription. Binding of pseudoligands, such as the synthetic drug 4-hydroxytamoxifen (4-OHT, *below*), causes an alternative stereochemical shift in the ER that results in the loss of contact with co-activators and the acquisition of contact with co-repressors; this explains why tamoxifen is often used therapeutically to antagonize estrogen signaling. (D) Analysis of the effects of the E2 mimic diethylstilbestrol (DES; *white, left*) versus 4-OHT (*white, right*) reveals a shift in the location of helix 12 of the ER (*red*). Following DES binding (*left*), the ER (*dark purple/blue*) is able to associate with a domain of the GRIP-1 (glucocorticoid receptor-interacting protein-1) transcriptional co-activator (*green*). However, if the E2 antagonist 4-OHT is bound (*right*), the shift in helix 12 of the ER (*red*) precludes the binding of the co-activator, blocking transcriptional activation. (A and B, from V. Chandra et al., *Nature* 456:350–356, 2008. With permission from Nature. D, adapted from A.K. Shiau et al., *Cell* 95:927–937, 1998. With permission from Elsevier.)

In the case of the estrogen receptor (ER), binding of its natural ligand—17β-estradiol, commonly called estrogen or simply E2 (see Figure 5.20C)—causes a conformational shift of α-helices near the ER ligand-binding pocket; these shifts allow the receptor to attract one of several receptor co-activators and release co-repressors, that is, proteins that relay signals from the ER to the general transcriptional machinery (see Figure 1.15). These intermediaries often act by modifying nearby histones or, alternatively, by recruiting histone-modifying enzymes (see Section 1.8). The resulting modified chromatin then either allows or prevents transcription of associated genes by RNA polymerase II. A selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM), as represented here by tamoxifen, causes the ER to release co-activators (see Figure 5.20D) and to recruit co-repressors (not shown), resulting in effective blocking of E2 signaling; this shutdown, in turn, can confer great clinical benefit when this SERM is used to treat patients having ER-positive human breast carcinomas. For example, in one clinical trial, blocking E2 signaling with tamoxifen treatment resulted in an almost twofold

reduction in the breast cancer relapse rate of postmenopausal women whose ER-positive primary tumors had been surgically removed. Yet other nuclear receptors play key roles in cancer pathogenesis. For example, the vitamin D ligand molecule, acting via its cognate nuclear receptor, has strong effects in normalizing the otherwise highly abnormal stroma of pancreatic adenocarcinomas.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

nuclear receptor
: One of a family of nuclear DNA-binding proteins that bind lipid-soluble ligands and, in response, undergo a conformational shift that enables them to directly control the transcription of genes to which they are bound.

hormone response element
: An oligonucleotide sequence in genomic DNA to which hormone-activated nuclear receptors bind.

co-activator
: Protein that associates with a DNA-binding transcription factor and causes, directly or indirectly, the modification of nearby chromatin proteins and a resulting stimulatory effect on the transcription of an adjacent gene. *See also* **co-repressor**.

co-repressor
: Protein that associates with a DNA-binding transcription factor and causes, directly or indirectly, the modification of nearby chromatin proteins and a resulting inhibitory effect on the transcription of an adjacent gene. *See also* **co-activator**.

selective estrogen receptor modulator
: A pharmacological agent that binds as a pseudo-ligand to the estrogen receptor and perturbs its behavior in one way or another. *See* **pseudoligand**.

tamoxifen
: A synthetic pharmacological analog of estrogen which can bind the estrogen receptor and inhibit a subset of the normal signaling functions of this estrogen-activated receptor, thereby antagonizing the actions of estrogen.

OceanofPDF.com

5.9 Integrin receptors sense association between the cell and the extracellular matrix

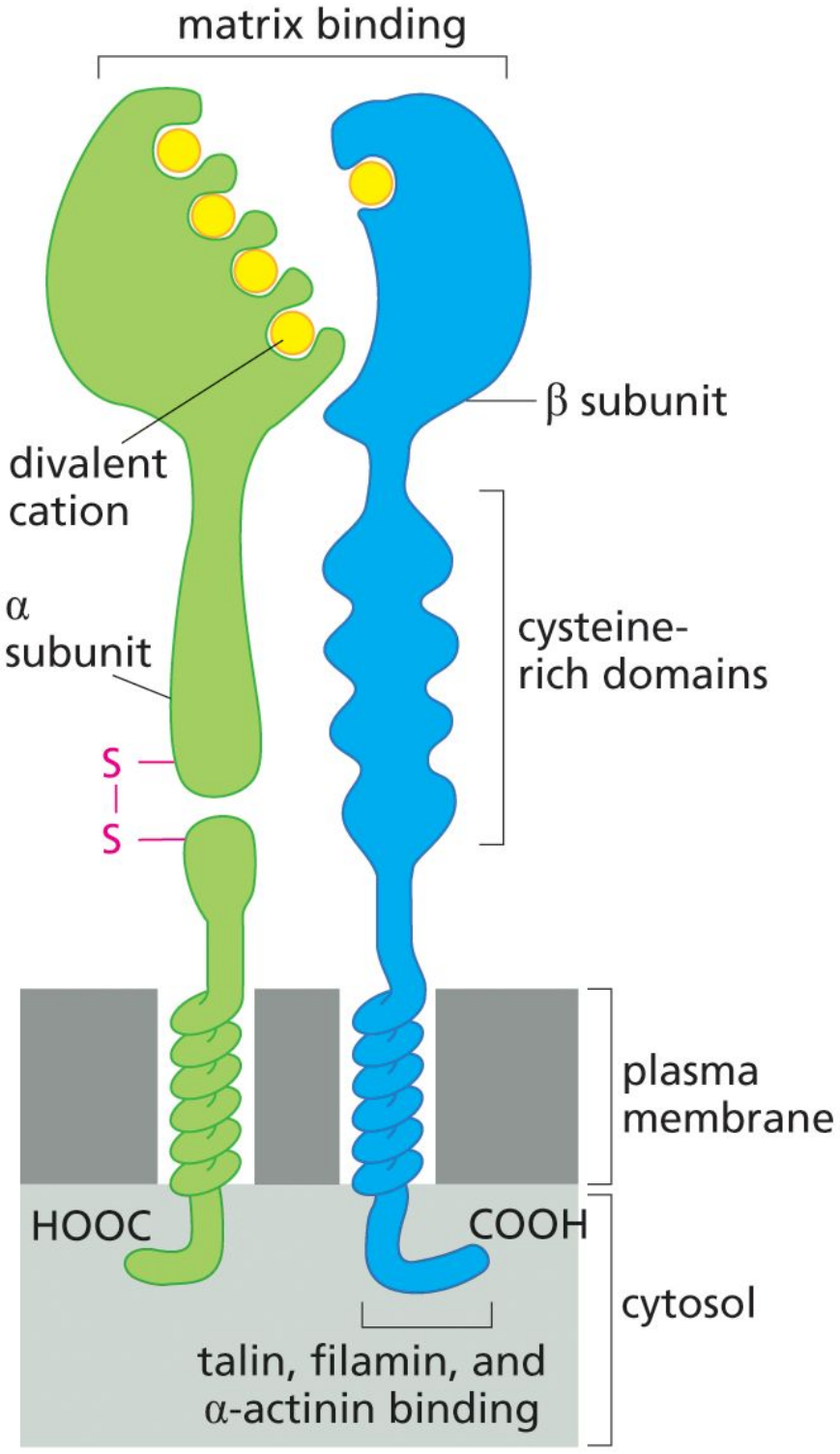
The biology of normal and transformed cells provides hints of yet another type of cell surface receptor, one dedicated to sensing a quite different class of molecules in the extracellular space. Recall that an important attribute of transformed cells is their ability to grow in an anchorage-independent fashion, that is, to proliferate without attachment to a solid substrate such as the one at the bottom of a Petri dish (see Section 3.5). This behavior contrasts with that of normal cells, which require attachment in order to proliferate. Indeed, in the absence of such attachment, many types of normal cells will activate a version of their death program (apoptosis) that is often termed anoikis. These cell death processes will be explored in detail in Chapter 9.

Biochemical analyses of the solid substrate to which cells adhere at the bottom of Petri dishes have revealed that, in very large part, cells are not anchored directly to the glass or plastic surface of these dishes. Instead, they attach to a complex network of molecules that closely resembles the extracellular matrix (ECM) usually found in the spaces between cells within most tissues (see Figure 1.11C). The ECM is composed of a series of glycoproteins, including collagens, laminins, proteoglycans, and fibronectin. After cells are introduced into a Petri dish, they secrete ECM components that adhere to the glass or plastic; once a provisional ECM is laid down in this way, the cells attach themselves to this matrix; this process of ECM assembly mirrors in some fashion the formation of ECM in living tissue. Consequently, the anchorage dependence observed *in vitro* reflects the need of normal cells to be tethered within living tissues to ECM components in order to survive and proliferate.

The trait of anchorage dependence makes it obvious that cells are able to sense whether or not they have successfully attached themselves to the ECM. As was learned in the mid-1980s, such sensing depends on specialized receptors that inform cells about the extent of tethering to the ECM and about the identities of specific molecular components of the ECM (for example, collagens, laminins, fibronectin) to which tethering has occurred. Sensing of the collagen fibers in the ECM can be accomplished by an unusual pair of RTKs, termed discoidin domain receptors (DDRs; see Figure 5.6). However, most sensing of ECM components is carried out by a specialized class of cell surface receptors termed integrins. In effect, the molecular components of the ECM serve as the ligands of the integrin receptors. At the same time, the integrins

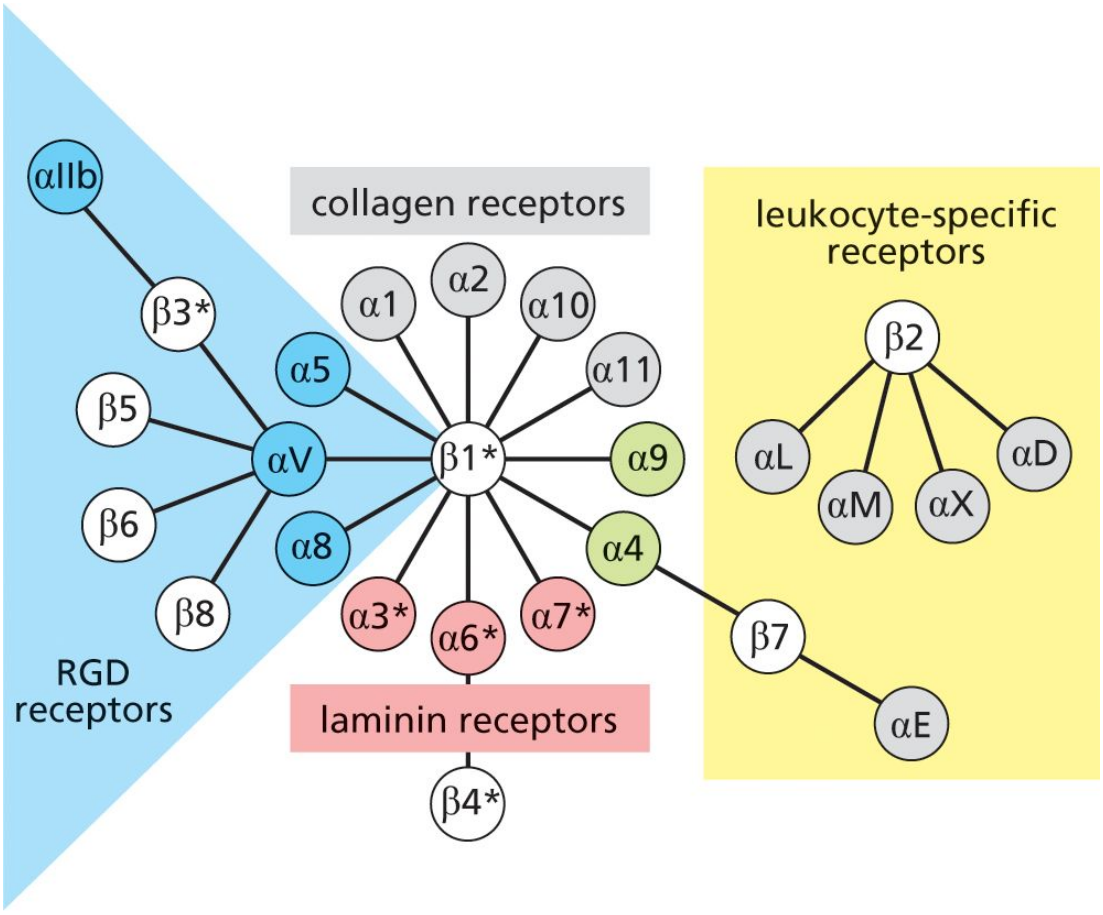
create mechanical stability in tissues by tethering cells to the scaffolding formed by the ECM.

Integrins constitute a large family of heterodimeric transmembrane cell surface receptors composed of α and β subunits (**Figure 5.21**). At least eighteen α and eight β subunits have been enumerated; together, 24 distinct heterodimers are known. **Table 5.4** indicates that the ectodomain of each integrin heterodimer shows specificity for binding a specific ECM molecule or a small subset of ECM components. The much studied α5β1 integrin, for example, is the main receptor for fibronectin, an important glycoprotein component of the ECM found in vertebrate tissues. Laminins, which are large, multidomain ECM molecules, have been reported to be bound by as many as 12 distinct integrin heterodimers.



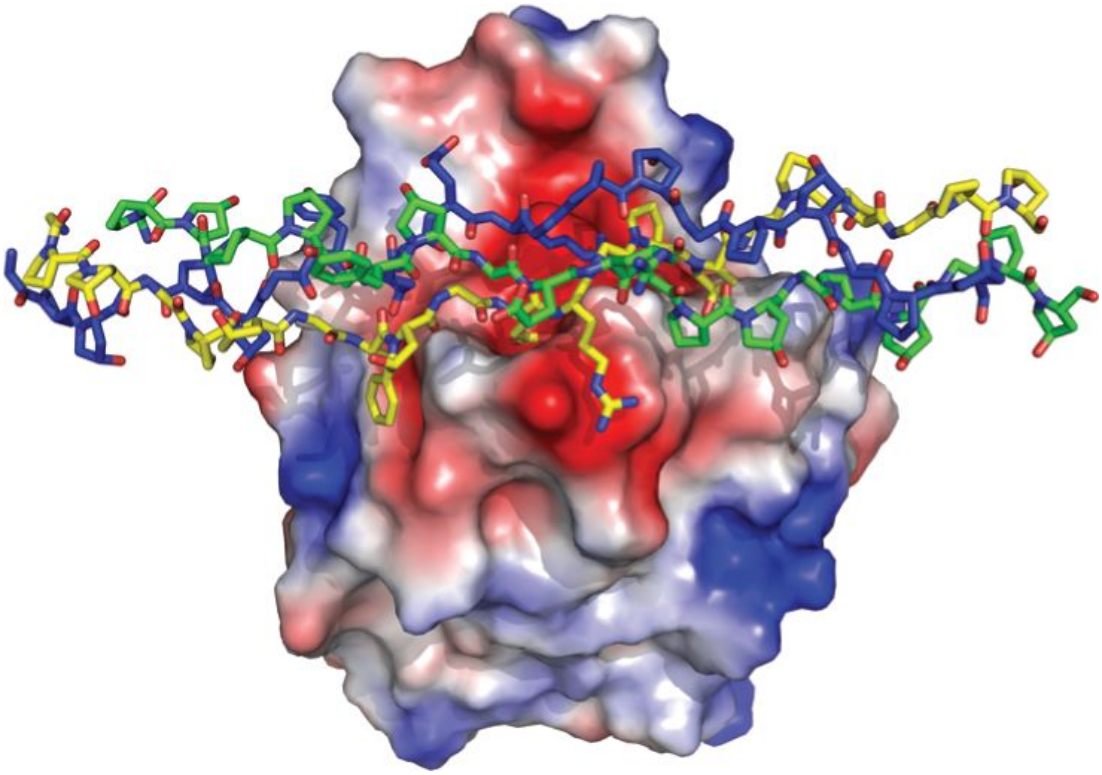
A diagram of an integrin, with a green alpha subunit on the left and a blue beta subunit on the right. At the top end is the matrix binding domain, with four divalent cations on the alpha subunit and one cation on the beta subunit. Below the matrix binding portion is a section that in the alpha subunit

contains an S S bond and in the beta subunit contains a series of cysteine-rich domains. The lower end of this section connects to transmembrane domain, which in each subunit is spiral-shaped. The domain that extends into the cytosol is hook-shaped, and the carboxyl group at the end is shown. On the beta subunit, this part is labeled talin, filamin, and alpha-actinin binding. (A)



A diagram showing the 24 ways different types of alpha and beta subunits normally combine. Alpha 2 b can combine with beta 3. Beta 3, along with betas 5, 6 and 8, can combine with alpha V. Alpha V, along with alphas 5 and 8, can combine with beta 1. All these combinations form R G D receptors. Beta 1 can also combine with alphas 1, 2 10 and 11 to form collagen receptors and with alphas 3, 6 and 7 to form laminin receptors. Alpha 6 can also combine with beta 4 to form a laminin receptor. Beta 1 can also combine with alphas 4 and 9, whose receptitivity is not specified. Beta 7 can combine with alpha 9 or alpha E to form a leukocyte-specific receptor. Finally, leukocyte-specific receptors can also be formed by combining beta 2 with alpha L, M, X or D. Asterisks appear on betas 1, 3 and 4 and alphas 3, 6 and 7.

(B)



A space-filling model of an alpha 2 beta 1 integrin, shown as a red, white and blue blob with a sort of stick-figure “crown” in many color that is collagen I.

(C)

Figure 5.21 Structure of integrins Integrin molecules function as heterodimeric cell surface receptors, each composed of an α plus a β subunit (*green*, *blue*). (A) The ectodomains of these receptors bind specific components of the extracellular matrix (ECM). Divalent cations (*yellow dots*), notably magnesium, manganese, and calcium, modulate this binding in various ways. At the same time, the cytoplasmic domain (largely that of the β subunit) is linked, via intermediary proteins, to the cytoskeleton (largely that constructed by actin fibers); in addition, the cytoplasmic domains may attract a variety of signal-transducing proteins that become activated when the ectodomain binds an ECM ligand. (B) The α and β integrin subunits associate with one another as heterodimers in various specific combinations to enable the binding of a variety of ECM ligands and to transduce multiple signals into the cell. As is apparent, the set of heterodimers actually found in cells is far less (24) than might be theoretically predicted through combinatorial interactions of each α subunit with each β subunit (144 in all). [The most promiscuous of the β subunits is β1 (*center*), which can associate with 12 alternative α subunits, resulting in many distinct integrin heterodimers.] RGD

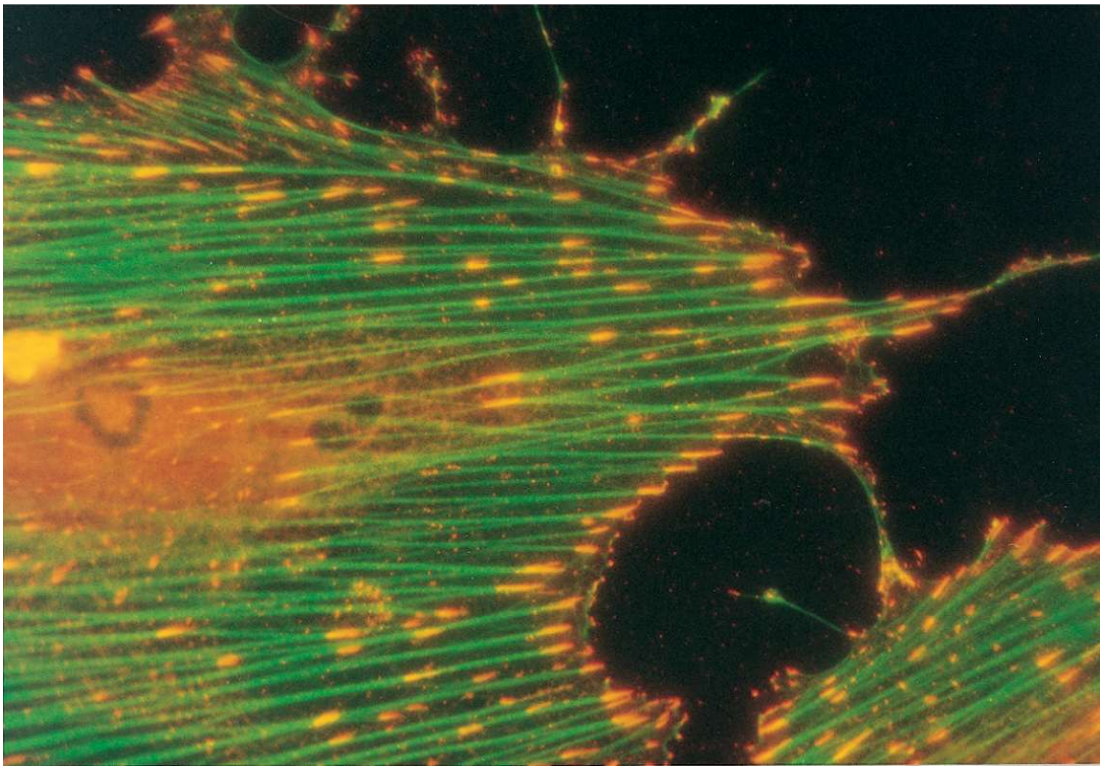
receptors recognize the arginine–glycine–aspartic acid tripeptide motif that is found in a number of distinct ECM proteins and represents the core sequences recognized by these integrins to initiate such binding. Laminin is a critical component of the basement membrane (see Figure 2.3). Asterisks denote alternatively spliced cytoplasmic domains. (C) One depiction of integrin–ECM binding comes from the crystallographic analysis of the ectodomain of the α2β1 integrin (*space-filling structure*) interacting with collagen I, a triple helix (*stick figures*). The *red* surface patches on the integrin ectodomain contain the more acidic side chains, while the *blue* surface patches contain basic amino acids. (B, from R.O. Hynes, *Cell* 110:673–687, 2002. C, from J. Emsley et al., *Cell* 101:47–56, 2000. Both with permission from Elsevier.)

Table 5.4 Examples of integrins and their extracellular matrix ligands

Integrin	**ECM ligand**
α1β1	collagens, laminin
αvβ3	vitronectin, fibrinogen, thrombospondin
α5β1	fibronectin
α6β1	laminin
α7β1	laminin
α2β3	fibrinogen
α6β4	laminin—epithelial hemidesmosomes

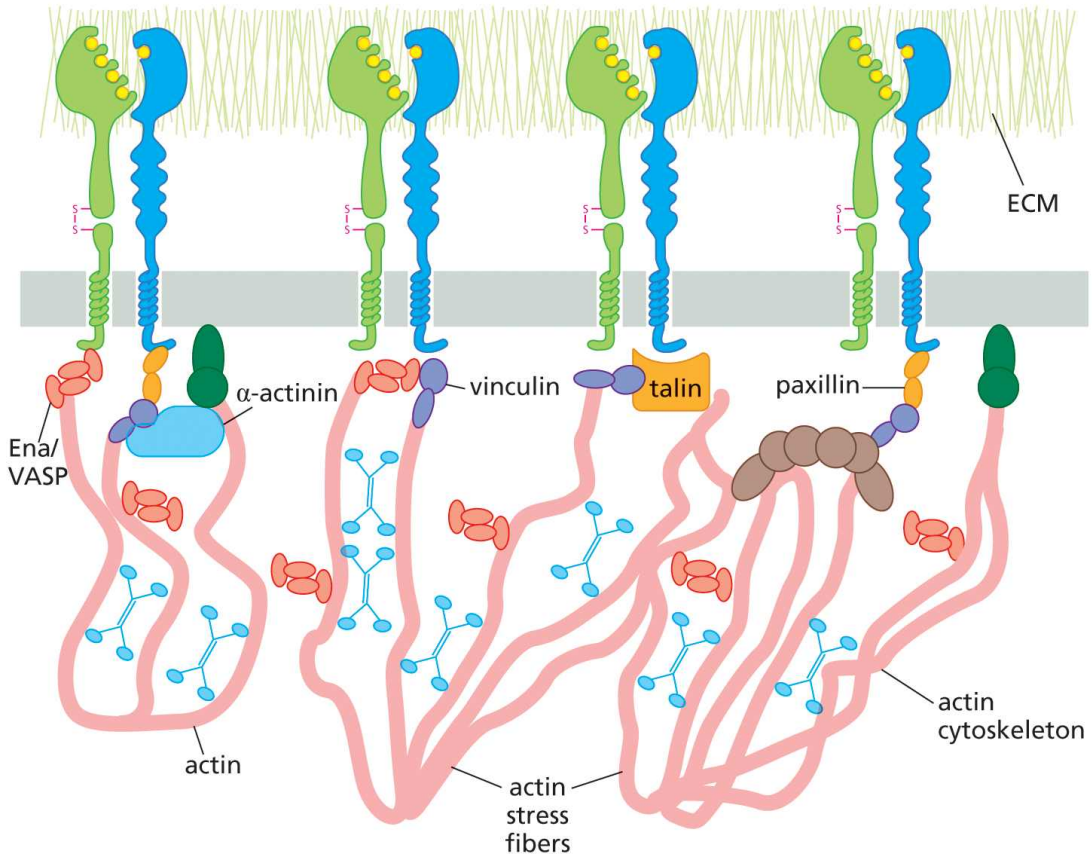
Having bound their ECM ligands through their ectodomains, integrins cluster to form *focal adhesions* (**Figure 5.22A**). This clustering affects the organization of the cytoskeleton underlying the plasma membrane, since some integrins are linked directly or indirectly via their cytoplasmic domains to important components of the

cytoskeleton, such as actin, vinculin, talin, and paxillin (Figure 5.22B and C). The formation of focal adhesions may also cause the cytoplasmic domains of integrins to activate signaling. As an example, by triggering the release of anti-apoptotic signals, integrins reduce the likelihood of anoikis. The functions of integrins continue to be critical during the development of many tumors, indicating that tumor cells usually do not evolve to a stage where they have completely outgrown their dependence on integrins and thus tethering to the ECM in order to acquire survival and proliferation signals (**Sidebar 5.7**).



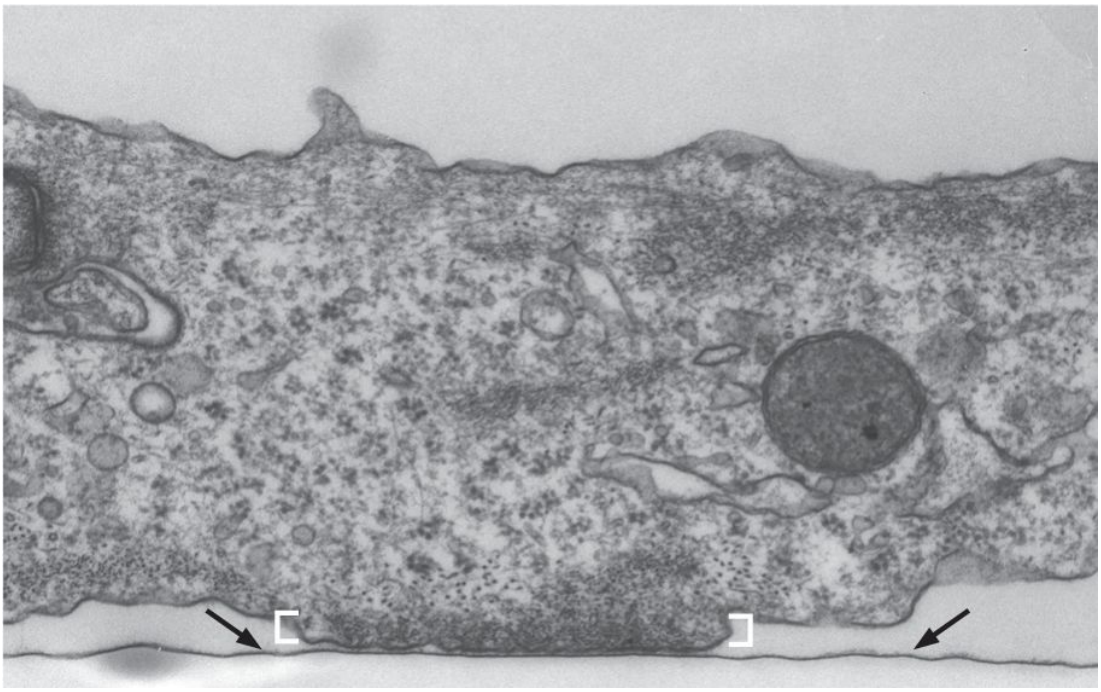
A fluorescence micrograph in which long green lines with yellow orange ends run horizontally across the image. They run between a cloudy orange structure on the left and a cluster of round black shapes on the right.

(A)



A schematic figure showing how integrins are organized. On the cytoplasmic side of a plasma membrane, pink actin fibers form a network of stress fibers and make up the cytoskeleton. Various other, small structures are present near the membrane, including pinkish globule clusters labeled E n a / V A S P, a light blue blob labeled alpha actinin, purple globules labeled vinculin, an orange box labeled talin, and orange globules labeled paxillin. Integrins, each composed of a green subunit and a blue one, lie on the extracellular side but with hooklike tails passed through the plasma membrane for attachment. The heads of the integrins are embedded in a layer of fibers that runs parallel to the plasma membrane. This is the extracellular matrix.

(B)



A black and white micrograph in which a portion of a cell membrane, indicated by brackets, is attached to an underlying surface defined by a dark line, indicated by arrows.

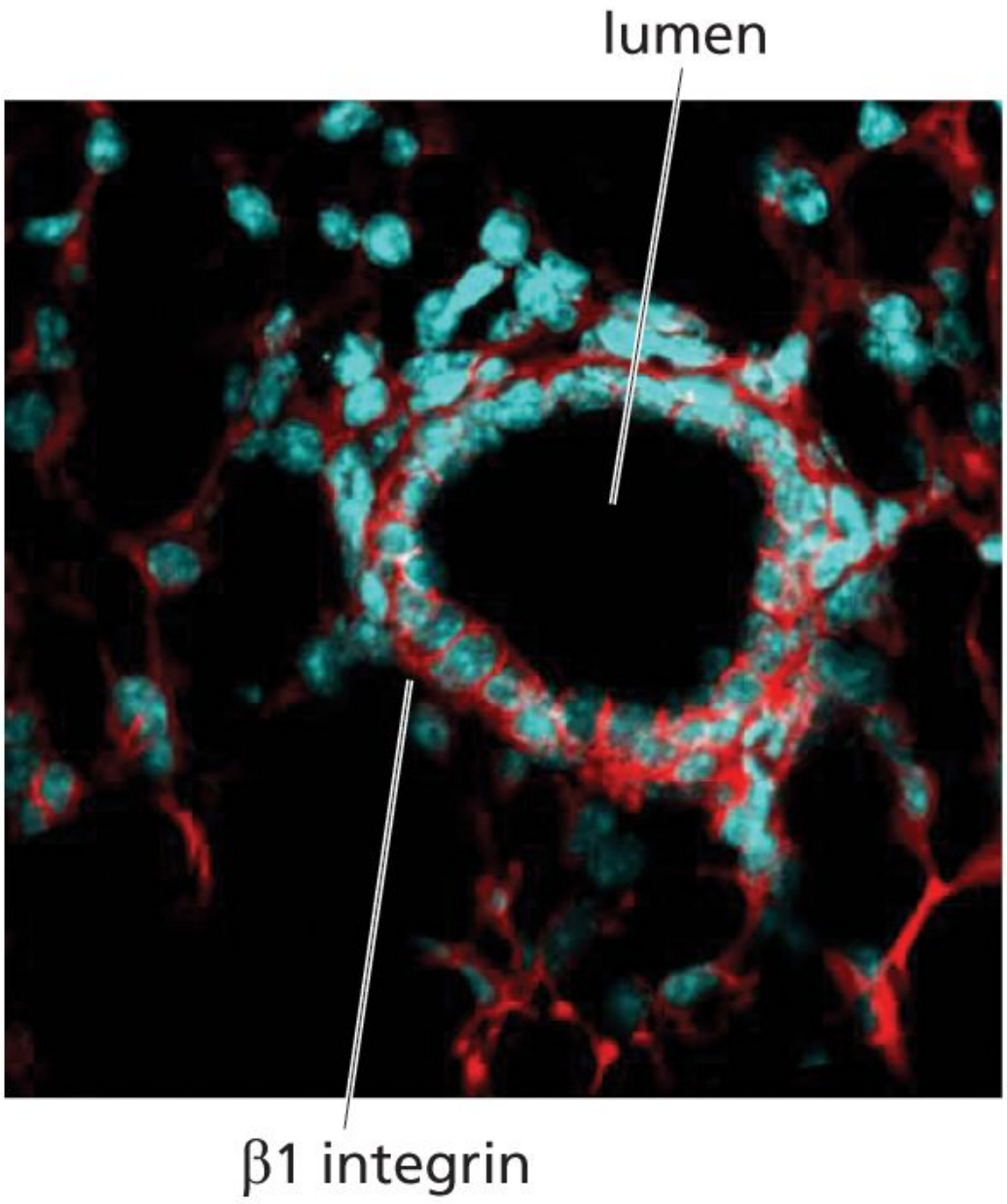
(C)

Figure 5.22 Integrin tethering to the ECM and cytoskeleton (A) This fluorescence micrograph illustrates the discrete elongated foci (*yellow/orange*) on the cell surface, termed focal adhesions, at which integrins tether cells to the extracellular matrix (ECM). Most of these foci seen here have been formed on the *ventral* sides of these cells, i.e., the undersides of these cells that are directly apposed to the ECM that is, in turn, adsorbed to the surface of the Petri dish. Formation of these focal adhesions also controls the organization of the actin fibers (*green*) forming the cytoskeleton inside the cell. (B) This schematic figure of the organization of integrins (*green, blue*) indicates their association with the ECM (*green fibers, above*) through their ectodomains and their association with the actin cytoskeleton (*pink chains*) through their cytoplasmic domains largely via the β subunit of each heterodimer. A series of intermediary proteins, such as actinin, vinculin, and talin, allows these linkages to be formed. (C) This transmission electron micrograph section, which is oriented in a plane perpendicular to the bottom surface of a Petri dish, reveals a single focal adhesion formed between the ventral surface of a chicken lens cell and the underlying solid substrate; in this case, ECM molecules adsorbed to the surface of the Petri dish are seen as a dark line (*arrows*). The electron-dense, cytoplasmic material (*white brackets*) that is immediately above the region of contact with the substrate

contains large numbers of integrin-associated proteins and actin fibers that in aggregate constitute this focal adhesion, which may be as much as several microns in width when viewed from this perspective. (The resolution of this image does not afford visualization of individual actin fibers or integrin molecules.) (A, courtesy of Keith Burridge. B, adapted from C. Miranti and J. Brugge, *Nat. Cell Biol.* 4:E83–E90, 2002. With permission from Nature. C, from O. Medalia and B. Geiger, *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 22:659–668, 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

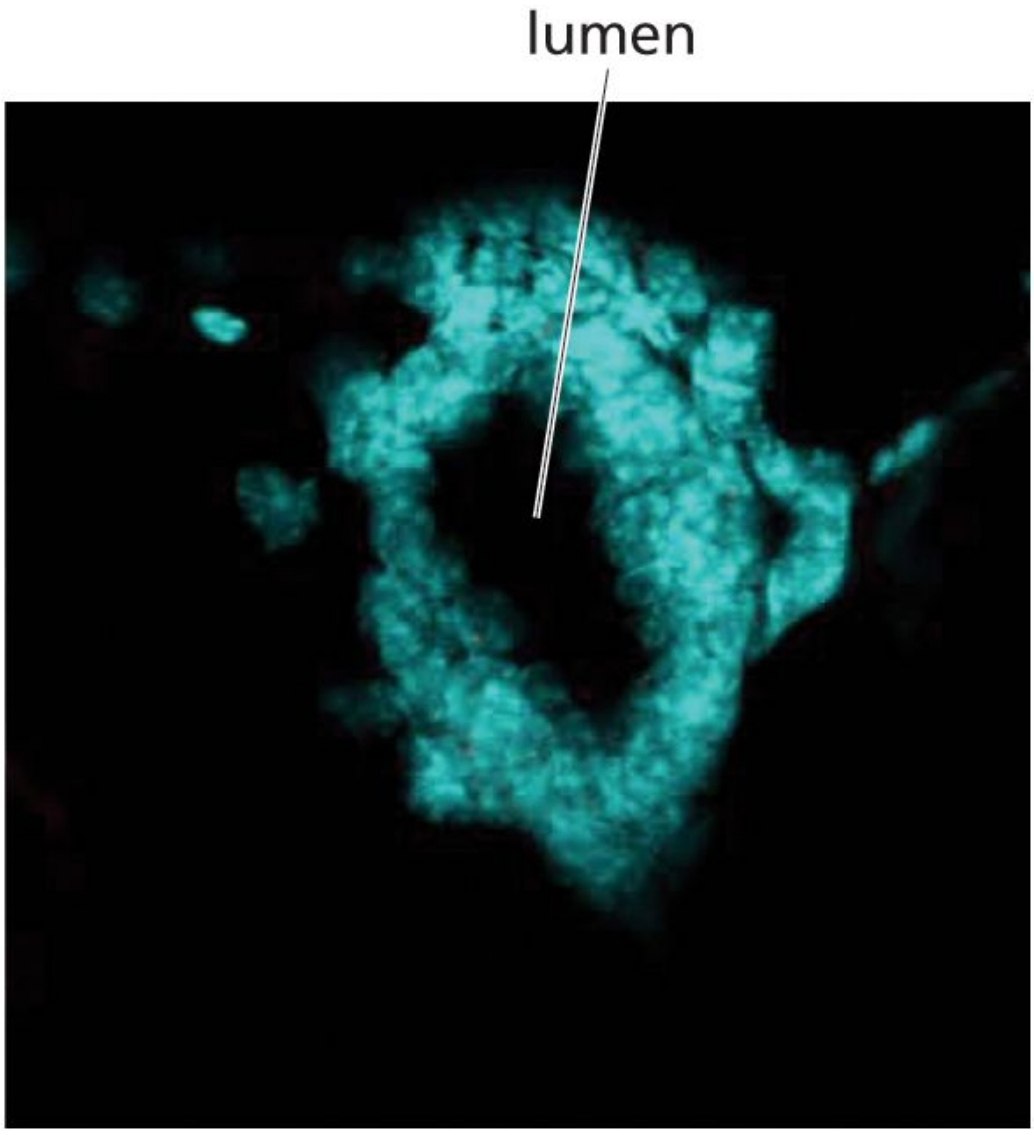
Sidebar 5.7 Some integrins are essential for tumorigenesis

The ability to selectively inactivate ("knock out") genes within targeted tissues has made it possible to evaluate the contributions of various signaling proteins to tumorigenesis (to be described in Sidebar 7.5). For example, inactivation of the gene encoding the β1 integrin in the mouse germ line leads to the absence of this integrin in all cells of the embryo and to embryonic lethality; however, introduction of a modified gene into the mouse germ line makes it possible to inactivate this gene in a targeted fashion in one or another specific organ or tissue. In the experiment shown in **Figure 5.23**, both copies of the β1 integrin allele have been selectively deleted from the genomes of epithelial cells of the mouse mammary gland, leaving the gene unperturbed in all other tissues. Such inactivation of both copies of the β1 integrin gene has minimal effects on the normal development of the mammary gland.



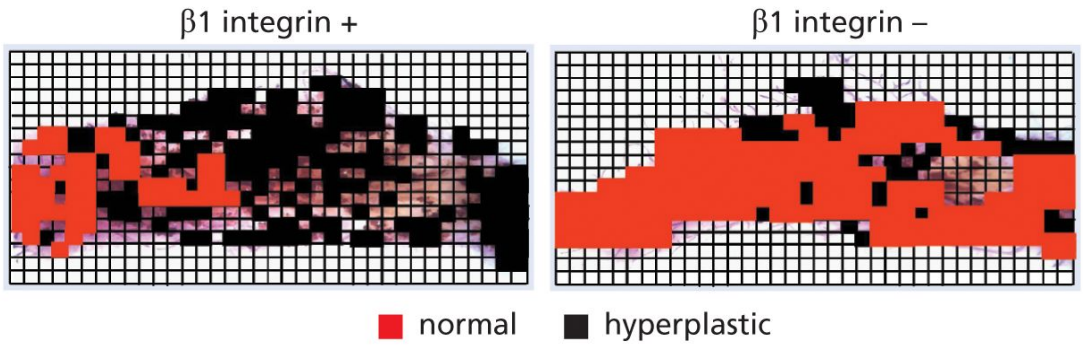
An image of a normal mouse mammary duct, with stained cells surrounding a dark lumen. Most of the cells are blue, but many are red, indicating the presence of beta 1 integrin.

(A)



An image of a mouse mammary duct where beta 1 integrin is missing, with stained cells surrounding a dark lumen. All the cells are blue.

(B)



Two images of a mouse mammary gland with a superimposed grid. The one on the left is of a gland in which beta 1 integrin is present. Some of the grid squares are coded red, denoting normal tissue, but many are coded black, denoting premalignant hyperplastic nodules. The image on the right is of a gland in which beta 1 integrin is absent. This image contains far more normal tissue and only a few hyperplastic nodules.

(C)

Figure 5.23 β1 integrin and mammary tumorigenesis The selective inactivation of the gene encoding β1 integrin in the mouse mammary gland allows a test of its importance in tumorigenesis. (A) The immunostaining of β1 integrin (*red*) on the surface of the epithelial cells forming a normal mouse mammary duct (*blue*), seen here in cross section. (B) In the absence of β1 integrin, ductal morphogenesis still proceeds normally. Moreover, the overall development of the mammary gland is normal (*not shown*). (C) Premalignant hyperplastic nodules in a transgenic mouse prone to mammary tumorigenesis (because of the selective expression of an oncogene in the mammary gland) have been scored visually by microscopic examination of whole mammary glands (*left*); the nodules are present in abundance and, wherever they have been detected, are represented by *black squares*, in contrast to areas in which only normal epithelium is observed in these glands (*red squares*). However, in mammary glands of transgenic mice in which β1 integrin is absent (because its encoding gene has been inactivated), the transgenic oncogene fails to induce the formation of large numbers of premalignant nodules (*right*). (From D.E. White et al., *Cancer Cell* 6:159–170, 2004. With permission from Elsevier.)

In these mice, a second germ-line alteration involved the insertion of the middle T oncogene of polyomavirus that had been placed under the control of a promoter that allows this transgene to be expressed only in the mice’s breast tissue. In mice with an intact β1 integrin gene, this oncogenic transgene generally triggers the formation of premalignant hyperplastic nodules that progress into aggressive mammary carcinomas.

However, when β1 integrin is absent from these oncogene-expressing mammary epithelial cells (because of selective gene inactivation), the number of normally observed hyperplastic nodules is reduced by more than 75% and the β1 integrin–negative cells in these nodules are fully unable to develop further to form mammary carcinomas (see Figure 5.23C). Detailed analyses indicate that this loss of β1 integrin expression permits the oncogene-expressing mammary epithelial cells to survive but precludes their active proliferation and thus their ability to spawn mammary carcinomas.

Integrins are most unusual in one other respect. Normally we think of receptors as passing information from outside the cell into the cytoplasm. Integrins surely do this. But in addition, it is clear that signals originating in the cytoplasm are used to control the binding affinities of integrins for their ECM ligands. Such "inside-out" signaling enables cells to modulate their associations with various types of ECM or with various points of contact with an ECM, breaking existing contacts and forging new ones in their place. Rapid modulation of extracellular contacts enables cells to free themselves from one microenvironment within a tissue and move into another, and to invade through a sheet of ECM *in vitro*. Cultured fibroblasts lacking focal adhesion kinase (FAK), one of the signaling molecules that associate with the cytoplasmic domains of integrins, are unable to remodel their focal contacts and lack motility, indicating that the signals transduced throughout the cytoplasm by FAK are important for reconfiguring the cytoskeleton—the structure that enables cells to change shape and to move. Later, in Chapter 14, we will see how cell motility is critical to the ability of cancer cells to invade and metastasize.

These various descriptions of tyrosine kinase receptors and integrins reveal that mammalian cells use specialized cell surface receptors to sense two very distinct classes of extracellular proteins. Some receptors, such as the EGF, PDGF, and Frizzled receptors, sense soluble (or solubilized) growth factors, while others, notably the integrins, sense attachment to the essentially insoluble scaffolding of the ECM. (Sometimes two types of receptors, such as integrins and RTKs, associate laterally with one another and regulate each other's signaling. As we learn more about these cell surface proteins, we increasingly realize the importance of these lateral interactions; see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.9**.) Together, these various receptors enable a normal cell to determine whether two preconditions have been satisfied before this cell undertakes growth and division: the cell must sense the presence of adequate levels of mitogenic and trophic growth factors in its surroundings and the existence of adequate anchoring to specific components of the ECM.

Both of these requirements for cell proliferation are known to be abrogated if a cell carries an activated *ras* oncogene. Thus, *ras*-transformed cells can grow in the presence of relatively low concentrations of serum and therefore serum-associated

mitogenic growth factors; in addition, many types of *ras*-transformed cells can proliferate in an anchorage-independent fashion. These behaviors suggest that, in some way, a Ras oncoprotein is able to mimic and thereby supplant the signals normally introduced into the cell by ligand-activated growth factor receptors and by integrins that have engaged ECM components. An understanding of the biochemical basis of these various signals demands some insight into the structure and function of the normal and oncogenic Ras proteins. So, we will move back in history to the early 1980s to see how the puzzle of Ras function was solved.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

apoptosis
: Complex program of cellular self-destruction, triggered by a variety of stimuli and involving the activation of caspase enzymes, which drive rapid fragmentation of diverse cellular structures and elimination of all breakdown products of a cell and phagocytosis of resulting cell fragments by neighboring cells or macrophages. *See also* **ferroptosis**, **necroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

anoikis
: Form of apoptosis that is triggered by the failure of a cell to establish anchorage to a solid substrate, such as the extracellular matrix, or by loss of such anchorage.

integrin
: A heterodimeric cell surface receptor that binds components of the extracellular matrix and transmits information about this binding to the cell interior; the cytoplasmic domain of an integrin may also be coupled with components of the cytoskeleton, thereby linking the extracellular matrix to the cytoskeleton.

transgene
: (1) A cloned gene that has been inserted experimentally into the germ line of an animal, often that of a laboratory mouse. (2) Less commonly, any experimentally altered gene in the germ line.

trophic
: Aiding in or supporting cell growth, proliferation, or survival.

discoldin domain receptor
: A cell surface tyrosine kinase receptor that recognizes and binds extracellular collagen as its activating cognate ligand.

OceanofPDF.com

5.10 The Ras protein, an apparent component of the downstream signaling cascade, functions as a G-protein

The discoveries that two oncogenes—*erbB* and *sis*—encode components of the mitogenic growth factor signaling machinery (Sections 5.4 and 5.5) sparked an intensive effort to relate other known oncoproteins, notably the Ras oncoprotein, to this signaling machinery. The *ras* oncogene clearly triggered many of the same changes in cells that were seen when cells were transformed by either *src*, *erbB*, or *sis*. Was there some type of signaling cascade—a molecular bucket brigade—operating in the cell, in which protein A transferred a signal to protein B, which in turn signaled protein C? And if such a cascade did exist, could the Ras oncoprotein be found somewhere downstream of *erbB* and *sis*? Did the signals emitted by these various proteins all converge on some common target at the bottom of this hypothesized signaling cascade?

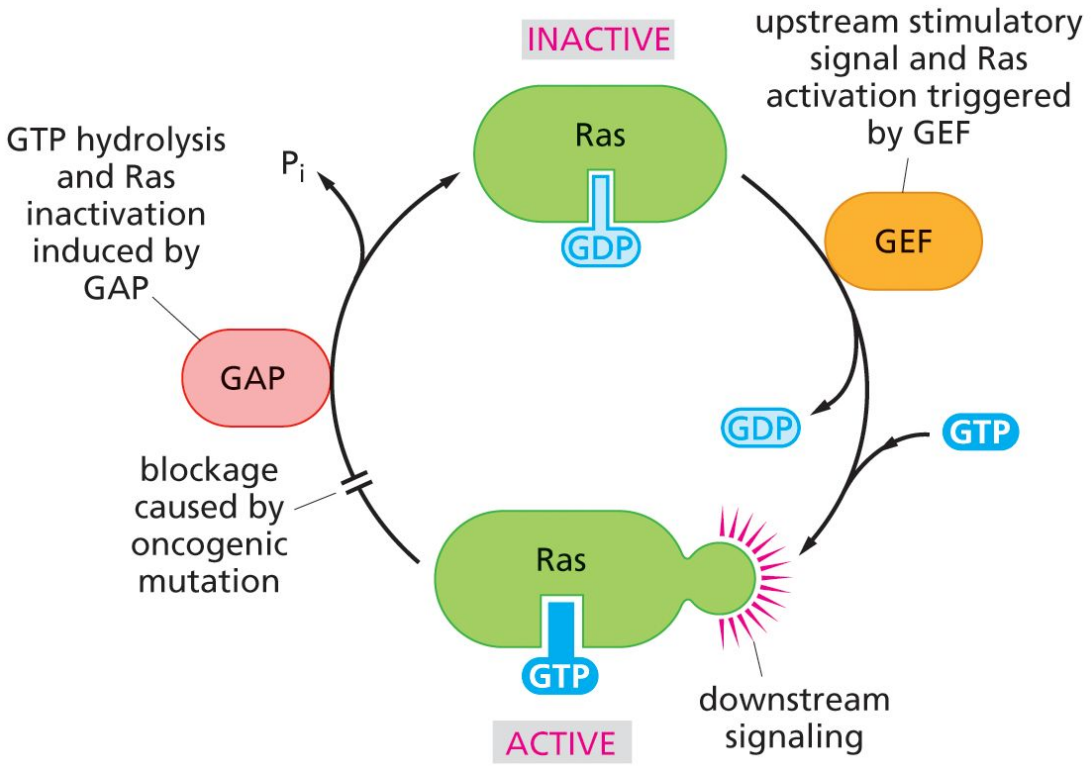
At the biochemical level, it was clear that growth factor ligands activated tyrosine kinase receptors, and that these receptors responded by activating their cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase domains. But which proteins were affected thereafter by the resulting receptor phosphorylation events? And how did this phosphorylation lead further to a mitogenic response by the cell—its entrance into a phase of active growth and division? In the early 1980s, progress on these key issues ground to a halt because biochemical experiments offered no obvious way to move beyond the tyrosine kinase receptors to the hypothesized downstream signaling cascades.

All the while, substantial progress was being made in understanding the biochemistry of the Ras protein. In fact, the three distinct *ras* genes in mammalian cells encode four distinct Ras proteins (since K-*ras* specifies a second protein via alternative splicing of a pre-mRNA). Because all four Ras proteins have almost identical structures and function similarly, we refer to them simply as “Ras” in the discussions that follow even though subtle differences in their functions have emerged in recent years. At their C-termini, they all carry covalently attached lipid tails, composed of farnesyl, palmitoyl, or geranylgeranyl groups (or combinations of several of these groups). These lipid moieties enable the Ras proteins, all of about 21 kD mass, to become anchored to cytoplasmic membranes, largely to the cytoplasmic face of the plasma membrane. There are, however, clear indications that isoforms of Ras are also tethered

to the membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus, where they may also emit signals.

Like the heterotrimeric G-proteins (Section 5.7), Ras was found to bind and hydrolyze (that is, cleave) guanosine nucleotides. This activity as a GTPase indicated a mode of action quite different from that of the Src and erbB tyrosine kinases, yet intriguingly, all three oncoproteins had very similar effects on cell behavior.

In further analogy to the G-proteins, Ras was found (1) to bind a GDP molecule when in its inactive state; (2) to jettison its bound GDP after receiving some stimulatory signal from upstream in a signaling cascade; (3) to acquire a GTP molecule in place of the recently evicted GDP; (4) to shift into an activated, signal-emitting configuration while binding this GTP; and (5) to cleave this GTP after a short period, using its own intrinsic GTPase function to do so, thereby placing itself, once again, in its non-signal-emitting configuration (**Figure 5.24**). In effect, the Ras molecule seemed to behave like a light switch that automatically turns itself off after a certain predetermined time.



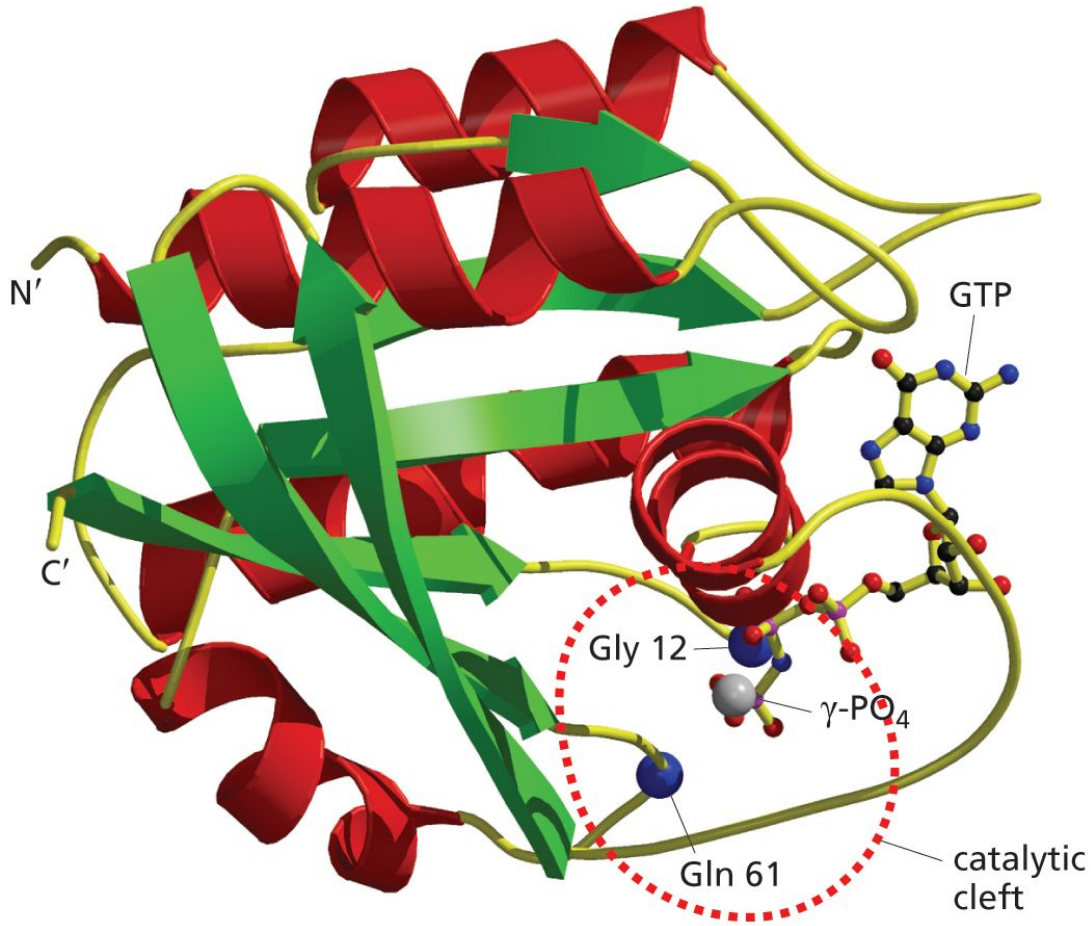
The R a s signaling cycle. A green R a s protein binding to a G D P is in an inactive state. An upstream stimulatory signal arrives in the form of an orange G E F. This triggers the release of the G D P and its replacement by a G T P. The R a s protein thereby transitions to an active, signaling state. When a pink G A P induces G T P hydrolysis, a P sub i is released and R a s returns to hits inactive, G D P

bound state. However, the deactivating action of G A P can be blocked by an oncogenic mutation.

Figure 5.24 The Ras signaling cycle Detailed study of the biochemistry of Ras proteins revealed that they, like the heterotrimeric G-proteins (see Figure 5.19A), operate as binary switches, binding GDP in their inactive state (*top*) and GTP in their active, signal-emitting state (*bottom*). Thus, an inactive, GDP-binding Ras protein is stimulated by a GEF (guanine nucleotide exchange factor, *orange*) to release its GDP and acquire a GTP in its stead, placing Ras in its active, signaling configuration. This period of signaling is soon halted by the actions of a GTPase activity intrinsic to Ras, which hydrolyzes GTP to GDP. This GTPase activity is strongly stimulated by GAPs (GTPase-activating proteins, *light red*) that Ras might encounter while in its activated state. Amino acid substitutions caused by oncogenic point mutations (see Figures 4.5 and 4.6) block this cycle by preventing the stimulatory GAPs from interacting with Ras, effectively inactivating the intrinsic GTPase activity of Ras; this traps Ras in its activated, signal-emitting state.

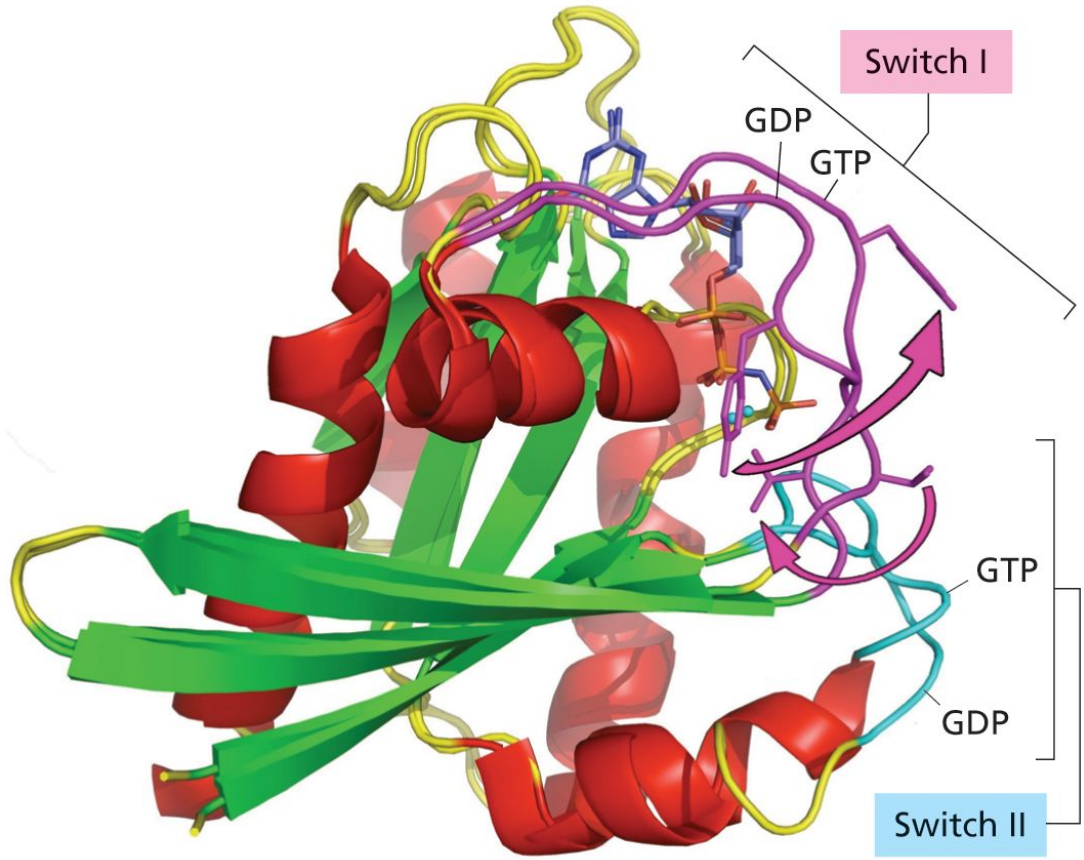
In more detail, the hypothesized chain of events went like this. Mitogenic signals, perhaps transduced in some way by tyrosine kinase receptors, activated a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF) for Ras. This GEF induced an inactive Ras protein to shed its GDP and bind GTP instead. The resulting activated Ras would emit signals to a (still-unknown) downstream target or group of targets. This period of signaling would be terminated, sooner or later, when Ras decided to hydrolyze its bound GTP. By doing so, Ras would force itself to revert to its nonsignaling state. As was learned later, a group of other proteins known as GAPs (GTPase-activating proteins) could actively intervene and encourage Ras to undertake this hydrolysis (see Sidebar 5.8). Implied in this model (see Figure 5.24) is the notion that Ras acts as a signal-transducing protein, in that it receives signals from upstream in a signaling cascade and subsequently passes these signals on to a downstream target, doing so for a circumscribed period of time.

A striking discovery was made in the course of detailed biochemical analysis of a Ras oncoprotein made by a point-mutated *ras* oncogene, specifically, the Ras oncoprotein encoded by Harvey sarcoma virus. Like the normal Ras protein, the Ras oncoprotein could bind GTP. However, the oncoprotein was found to have lost virtually all GTPase activity (**Figure 5.25A**). In such condition, it could be pushed into its active, signal-emitting configuration (Figure 5.25B) by some upstream stimulatory signal and guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs). But once in this activated state, the Ras oncoprotein was unable to turn itself off! The negative-feedback loop that is so essential to the operations of the normal Ras protein had been sabotaged by this point mutation and resulting amino acid substitution.



A ribbon diagram with five red coils and six directional arrows. A G T P molecule is attached on the right side. A space identified as the catalytic cleft is surrounded by a G l n 61, a G l y 12, and a gamma P O 4.

(A)



A second ribbon diagram with five red coils and six directional arrows. Attached on the upper right now is a pink stick figure structure containing G D P and G T P; this is Switch 1. Attached below it is a blue stick figure structure also containing G D P and G T P; this is Switch 2.

(B)

Figure 5.25 The structure of the Ras protein and its response to GTP binding
(A) This ribbon diagram of the structure of a Ras protein, as determined by X-ray crystallography, depicts the polypeptide backbone of Ras and its α-helical (*red*) and β-pleated sheet (*green*) domains. GTP is indicated as a stick figure, and two of the amino acid residues often found altered in the Ras oncoproteins present in human tumors —glycine 12 and glutamine 61—are shown as *dark blue balls*. Their close association with the γ-phosphate of GTP (*gray ball*) helps to explain why substitutions of these residues reduce or eliminate the Ras protein's GTPase activity, which normally converts GTP into GDP by removing the γ-phosphate. The catalytic cleft of the GTPase is outlined (*red dotted oval*). This provides an explanation of why the codons specifying these particular residues are commonly mutated in human tumor cell genomes; conversely, amino acid substitutions striking elsewhere in the Ras protein may compromise its intrinsic signal-emitting

functions and therefore are unlikely to potentiate Ras function. (B) The replacement of GDP by GTP, which results in the activation of Ras signaling, also causes a shift in two regions of the Ras protein (depicted here from a slightly different perspective as in panel A). Both Switch I (*magenta*) and Switch II (*aquamarine*) regions undergo the GDP-to-GTP conformational shift (as indicated by the positions labeled GDP and GTP). The conformational shift for a domain of Switch I induced by GTP binding is also indicated by the *magenta arrows*. These shifts allow the Ras protein to interact physically with its downstream effectors (see Figures 6.9, 6.10, and 6.15). The guanine nucleotide is indicated by a stick figure. (A and B, courtesy of I.R. Vetter and A. Wittinghofer.)

This provided a clear explanation of how Ras can operate as an oncoprotein: rather than sending out short, carefully rationed pulses of growth-stimulating signals (the behavior of a normal RAS protein), the oncoprotein emits signals for a long, possibly indefinite period of time, thereby flooding the cell with these signals. Subsequent analysis of Ras protein biochemistry has revealed additional levels of control that may go awry in cancer cells (**Sidebar 5.8**).

Sidebar 5.8 GTPase-activating proteins and cancer

When purified Ras proteins are examined in isolation, they show a very low level of GTPase activity. However, within living cells, it is clear that the GTP-bound form of Ras can interact with a second class of proteins termed GAPs (GTPase-activating proteins). This interaction increases the intrinsic GTPase activity of the Ras protein by as much as 100,000-fold and thus results in the rapid conversion of active, GTP-bound Ras into its inactive, GDP-bound form. (The Ras-GAP protein, one of two well-studied GAPs that act on Ras, has been found to insert an oligopeptide loop termed an “arginine finger” into the GTPase catalytic cleft of Ras; the tip of this finger then actively participates in the catalysis that converts GTP to GDP. Interestingly, Ras-GAP has almost no effect in stimulating the GTPase activity of mutant Ras oncoproteins, helping to explain the high proportion of GTP-loaded Ras in mutant cells.)

The lifetime of the activated, GTP-bound form of normal Ras may therefore be governed by the time required for its chance encounter with a GAP molecule. Since the GAPs themselves may be under the control of yet other signals, this means that the GTPase activity of the Ras proteins is modulated indirectly by yet other signaling pathways. Moreover, as described later (Section 7.10), the loss from a cell of the other well-studied Ras-GAP, termed NF1, leaves the GTPase activity of Ras at an abnormally low level in this cell, resulting in the accumulation of GTP-loaded Ras, the hyperactivity of Ras signaling, and ultimately the formation of neuroectodermal tumors.

These findings provided a solution to a puzzle created by the sequencing of the mutant *ras* oncogenes present in many human tumors. As we learned (see Section 4.3), invariably the point mutations creating these oncoproteins were missense mutations (which caused an amino acid substitution) rather than nonsense mutations (which caused premature termination of the growing polypeptide chain). Invariably these mutations struck either the 12th, 13th, or 61st codon of the reading frame of the *ras* genes (with the great majority altering codon 12; see Figure 4.6).

We might imagine that these particular nucleotides represent sites in the genomic DNA that are particularly susceptible to attack and alteration by mutagenic carcinogens. However, detailed study of the structure of the Ras proteins, as generated by X-ray crystallography, has led to a far more compelling model. Examination of the 12th, 13th, and 61st amino acid residues of these proteins reveals that these residues are located around the cavity in the Ras protein where the GTPase catalytic activity operates (Figure 5.25B). Consequently, almost all substitutions of these three amino acids, such as the glycine-to-valine substitution that we encountered earlier, compromise GTPase function. [To be more precise, they compromise the ability of GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs; see Figure 5.24) to trigger hydrolysis of the GTP bound by Ras.]

Knowing this, we can immediately understand why point mutations affecting only a limited number of amino acid residues are found in the *ras* oncogenes carried by human tumor cell genomes. Large-scale alterations of the *ras* proto-oncogenes, such as deletions, are clearly not productive for cancer, since they would result in the elimination of Ras protein function rather than an enhancement of it. Similarly, the vast majority of point mutations striking *ras* proto-oncogenes will yield mutant Ras proteins that have lost rather than gained the ability to emit growth-stimulatory signals. Only when the signal-emitting powers of Ras are left intact and its GTPase negative-feedback mechanism is inactivated selectively (by amino acid substitutions at one of these three amino acid residue sites in the protein) does the Ras protein gain *increased* power to drive cell proliferation and transform the cell.

This explains why only those rare cells that happen to have acquired mutations affecting one of the three amino acid residues of Ras (residues 12, 13, or, rarely, 61; see Figure 4.6) gain proliferative advantage over their wild-type counterparts and thereby stand the chance of becoming the ancestors of the cells in a tumor mass. Stated differently, even though point mutations affecting all the amino acid residues of a Ras protein are likely to occur with comparable frequencies, only those few conferring substantial proliferative advantage will actually be found in tumor cells. Other cells that happen to acquire point mutations affecting other residues in the Ras protein will retain a normal phenotype or may even lose proliferative ability.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

guanine nucleotide exchange factor
: Protein that interacts with a G-protein, inducing the latter to release whatever guanine nucleotide it is binding, thereby creating space for another to be bound. Since GTP is present in the cytosol in great molar excess over GDP, this induced change usually results in the replacement of a GDP with a GTP and the associated functional activation of the G protein. *See also* **G-protein**, **GTPase-activating protein**.

missense mutation
: Point mutation causing an amino acid substitution. *See* **missense codon**.

nonsense mutation
: Mutation causing premature termination of a growing polypeptide chain. *See also* **nonsense codon**.

OceanofPDF.com

5.11 Synopsis and prospects

In the early 1980s, the discovery of oncogenes such as *erbB* and *sis* revealed the intimate connections between growth factor signaling and the mechanisms of cell transformation. More specifically, these connections suggested that cell transformation results from hyperactivation of the mitogenic signaling pathways. This notion galvanized researchers interested in the biochemical mechanisms of carcinogenesis. Many began to study the growth factor receptors and their biochemical mechanisms of action.

A major problem surrounding growth factor receptors was ignorance about their mechanism for transferring signals from outside a cell into its interior. A simple model was soon developed to explain how this occurs. The growth factor ligands of receptors bind to their ectodomains. By doing so, the ligands encourage receptor molecules to come together to form dimers. This dimerization of the ectodomains then encourages dimerization of the receptor's cytoplasmic domains as well. Somehow, this enables the cytoplasmic domains to emit signals.

This model sheds no light on how, at the biochemical level, receptors are able to emit signals. Here, research on the biochemistry of the Src protein proved to be telling. It was found to be a tyrosine kinase (TK), an enzyme that transfers phosphate groups to the side chains of tyrosine residues borne by various substrate proteins. Once the amino acid sequences of several growth factor receptors were analyzed, the cytoplasmic domains of these receptors were found to contain sequences encoding kinases that were structurally (and thus functionally) related to Src. This indicated that tyrosine kinase domains create the means by which growth factor receptors emit biochemical signals.

This information was then integrated into the receptor dimerization model: when growth factor receptors are induced by ligand binding to dimerize, the tyrosine kinase of each receptor monomer transphosphorylates the cytoplasmic domain of the other monomer. This yields receptor molecules with phosphorylated cytoplasmic tails that allow signaling to proceed. Much of the next chapter is focused on these downstream signaling mechanisms. An overview and preview of how one subfamily of RTKs operates is provided in **Supplementary Sidebar 5.10**. This image, which involves only this group of receptors (all related to the EGF-R), indicates the complexity of these signaling processes and, by implication, the challenges at present encountered by those who would like to portray these interactions with various types of mathematical models.

While highly instructive, the RTK dimerization model has proven to be simplistic: we now realize that in the absence of ligand, certain growth factor receptors are found in large clusters, that ligand binding exerts subtle effects on the stereochemistry of individual receptor molecules, and that the activation of many types of RTKs cannot be understood simply by ligand-driven dimerization.

Hyperactive signaling by these receptors is encountered in many types of human cancer cells. Often, the receptors are overexpressed, resulting in ligand-independent firing via molecular mechanisms that remain unclear. Even more potent ligand-independent firing is achieved by various types of structural alterations of receptors. Most of these occur as the consequences of somatic mutations. However, some mutant alleles of receptor genes have been found in the human gene pool, and inheritance of such alleles is associated with a variety of inborn cancer susceptibility syndromes. In the case of commonly occurring lung cancers, some commonly observed mutations affect the structure of the kinase domain of the EGF receptor and result in ligand-independent firing. Yet other mutations affect the internalization of the receptor, which usually operates following ligand binding; by compromising this negative-feedback mechanism, this second class of mutations results in the accumulation of inappropriately high concentrations of receptor at the cell surface. Both classes of change result in driving the proliferation of these cancer cells.

In our discussions of receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) we have focused exclusively on the signaling powers of their cytoplasmic domains, specifically the TK catalytic domains and the multiple tyrosine residues phosphorylated as substrates of these TKs. In doing so, we have overlooked important understudied functions of RTKs: after ligand binding, entire receptors or fragments thereof migrate to the nucleus, where they operate as components of multiprotein complexes involved in the regulation of transcription. As an example, the entire PDGF-Rβ protein is conveyed to the nucleus following binding of its PDGF-BB ligand, where it participates in chromatin remodeling. In another case, in response to ligand binding by HER4/ErbB4 (cousin of the EGF-R), the intracellular domain of this receptor associates with several other transcription-regulating proteins in neural precursor cells, after which the resulting complexes migrate to the nucleus, where they repress genes involved in the formation of glial cells. These cases represent only the tip of the iceberg, since multiple RTKs have been found to move, either entirely or as proteolytic fragments, to the nucleus, where they exert various functions regulating transcription.

Such RTKs represent only one of multiple ways by which cells sense their surroundings. The TGF-β receptors, for example, are superficially similar to the RTKs, in that they have a ligand-binding ectodomain and a signal-emitting kinase domain in their cytoplasmic portion. However, the kinases of the TGF-β receptors are serine/threonine kinases and, as we will learn later, signal through entirely different mechanisms.

A variety of other signal-transducing receptors have been uncovered, including those of the Notch, Patched–Smoothened, and Frizzled classes. These receptors use a diversity of signal-transducing mechanisms to release signals into the cytoplasm. As we will see throughout this book, aberrant signaling by these receptors plays a key role in the pathogenesis of many types of human cancers. Moreover, we will encounter yet another class of receptors in Chapter 9, where their role in programmed cell death—apoptosis—is described. Descriptions of these diverse cell surface receptors do not address yet another class of receptors that operate in the nucleus, bind hydrophobic ligands, and in response function as transcription factors. The nuclear receptors play prominent roles in a group of common human carcinomas—those arising in the breast, ovary, and prostate. In these tumors, the ligands are steroid hormones—estrogen, progesterone, and androgens—and the roles of their corresponding nuclear receptors in tumor growth have been described in tens of thousands of research reports. (To provide an indication of their importance, note that—as of 2021—55,000 studies of the estrogen receptor and 41,000 studies of the progesterone receptor had been published in research journals worldwide.)

Cells must also sense their contacts with the extracellular matrix (ECM)—the cage of secreted glycoproteins and proteoglycans that surrounds every cell in living solid tissues. One class of RTKs binds directly to collagens as their signal-activating ligands. But another class of receptors, the far more common integrins, play a more central and multifaceted role. Having bound components of the ECM, the heterodimeric integrin receptors transduce signals into cells that stimulate proliferation, suppress cells' apoptotic suicide program, and participate in various ways in cell motility. (Altogether, almost 15% of the human proteome of ~20,000 proteins has been predicted to involve cell surface proteins mediating various types of communication of cells with their extracellular environment.)

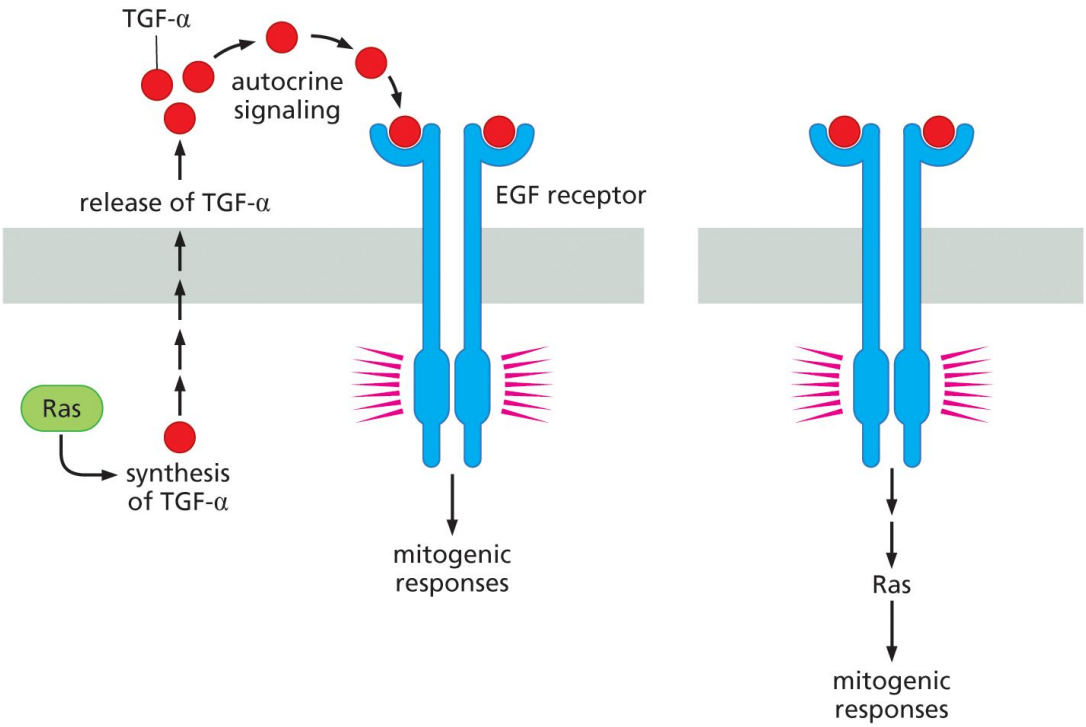
In recent years an entirely different channel of cell-to-cell communication has been proposed following the discovery of membranous vesicles—termed exosomes—that are released into the extracellular space by one cell, travel through the interstitial space between cells, and become fused with the plasma membranes of other cells that become the recipients of signals borne by these vesicles. The precise roles of these vesicles in the cell-to-cell signaling operating in normal and neoplastic tissues are still being uncovered.

A distinct line of research, pursued in parallel with the studies of RTKs, elucidated the biochemistry of the Ras protein, another key player in cancer pathogenesis. Ras operates like a binary switch, continually flipping between the active, signal-emitting state and the quiescent state. The mutant alleles found in cancer cells cause amino acid substitutions in the GTPase pockets of Ras proteins, thereby disabling the mechanism that these proteins normally use to shut themselves off. This traps the Ras proteins in

their active, signal-emitting configuration for extended periods of time, causing cells to be flooded with an unrelenting stream of mitogenic signals.

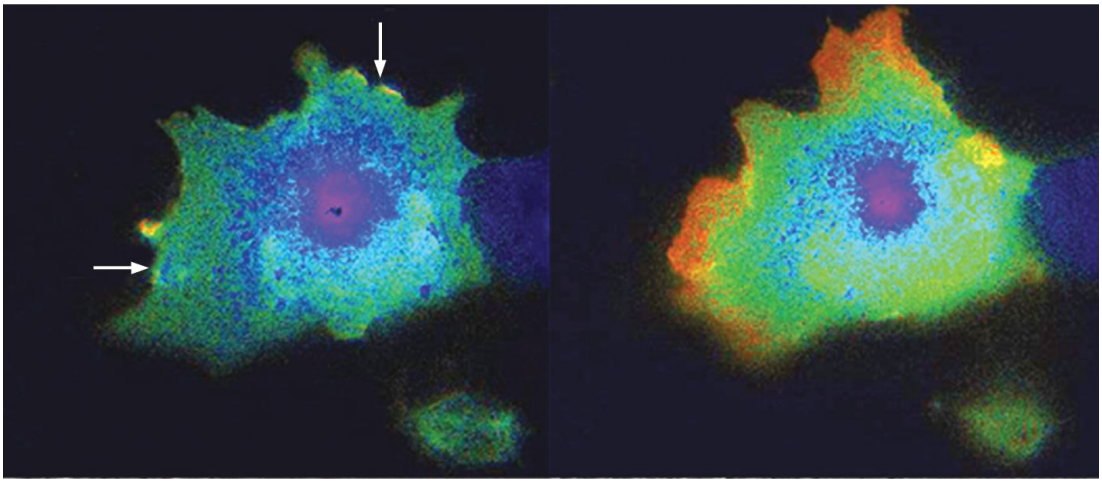
While these investigations revealed how isolated components of the cellular signaling machinery (for example, RTKs, Ras) function, they provided no insights into how these proteins communicate with one another. That is, the *organization* of the intracellular signaling circuitry remained a mystery. Cell physiology hinted strongly that ErbB (that is, the EGF-R) and other tyrosine kinase receptors operated in a common signaling pathway with the Ras oncoprotein. Src fit in somewhere as well. These various oncoproteins, while having diverse biochemical functions, were found to exert very similar effects on cells. They all caused the rounding up of cells in monolayer culture, the loss of contact inhibition, the acquisition of anchorage independence, and reduction of a cell's requirement for mitogenic growth factors in its culture medium. This commonality of function suggested participation in a common signaling cascade.

One possible connection between Ras and the tyrosine kinase receptors came from the discovery that an activated *ras* oncogene causes many types of cells to produce and release growth factors. Prominent among these was transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α), an EGF-like growth factor. Like EGF, TGF-α binds to and activates the EGF receptor. This suggested the following scenario. Once released by a *ras*-transformed cell, TGF-α might function in an autocrine manner (see Figure 5.8C) to activate EGF receptors displayed on the surface of that cell. This, in turn, would evoke a series of responses quite similar to those created by a mutant, constitutively activated EGF receptor. When viewed from this perspective, Ras appeared to operate *upstream* of a growth factor receptor rather than being an important component of the signaling cascade lying *downstream* of the receptor (**Figure 5.26A**).



Two diagrams, describing two different theories. According to the first, R a s stimulates synthesis of T G F alpha within the cell. The T G F alpha moves to the plasma membrane and then is released through it to the extracellular space. There, in an act of autocrine signaling, it binds to a T G F receptor in the same cell, whose cytoplasmic end begins signaling and promoting mitogenic responses. According to the second theory, the T G F alpha has another source, and R a s is part of the pathway by which the receptor's signaling promotes mitogenic responses.

(A)



Two color micrographs. The first shows a cell in blue and green with a purple nucleus. The second shows the same cell, but parts of the periphery are now red and orange.

(B)

Figure 5.26 Alternative mechanisms of transformation by Ras (A) One hypothetical depiction (*left*) of how Ras (*green*) normally operates to promote cell proliferation was inspired by the observation that *ras*-transformed cells release a number of growth factors into their surroundings, such as TGF-α (*red circles*). Once secreted, the growth factors might act in an autocrine fashion to activate a receptor, such as the EGF receptor shown here, thereby promoting cell proliferation. In this depiction, Ras operates "upstream" of the EGF receptor. An alternative scheme (*right*) placed Ras in the midst of a signaling cascade that operates "downstream" of such growth factor receptors. (B) Extensive evidence favoring the second scheme accumulated. This graphic example, produced years later, shows that 5 minutes after EGF is added to cells, previously inactive Ras protein (*blue shading*) becomes activated near the cell surface (*red–orange shading*). This response is so rapid that it indicates close biochemical communication between the EGF receptor and Ras. [Interestingly, this activation occurred only on the two sides of a cell (*white arrows*) that were not in direct contact with nearby cells.] (B, from N. Mochizuki et al., *Nature* 411:1065–1068, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

In the end, this autocrine scheme was able to explain only a small part of *ras* function, since *ras* was found to be able to transform cells that lacked receptors for the growth factors that it induced. In addition, ample biochemical evidence accumulated that ligand binding of growth factor receptors led rapidly to activation of Ras (Figure 5.26B). This left open only one alternative: direct intracellular signaling between ligand-activated growth factor receptors and Ras proteins. So the search was on to find the elusive biochemical links between tyrosine kinase receptors and the proteins like Ras that appeared to form components of the hypothesized downstream signaling cascade.

The use of biochemistry to discover the connections between RTKs and their downstream effectors had serious limitations. As this chapter has made clear, biochemistry provided researchers with powerful tools to elucidate the functioning of individual, isolated signaling proteins. However, it had limited utility in revealing how different proteins might talk to one another within a cell. If there really were linear signaling cascades of the form A → B → C, biochemistry might well reveal how A or C functioned in isolation (for example, as a kinase or GTPase) but would shed little light on the *organization* of the signaling pathway that lay between them.

Detailed biological characterization of human tumor cells overexpressing certain growth factor receptors also suggested another dimension of complexity. In the case of human breast cancers, overexpression of the HER2/Neu receptor (see Section 4.2) was found to be correlated with a bewildering array of phenotypes displayed by the associated cancer cells. Those breast cancer cells expressing elevated levels of this protein showed increased rates of DNA synthesis, better anchorage-independent growth, greater efficiency in forming tumors when implanted into host mice (that is, tumorigenicity), greater tendency to metastasize, and less dependence on estrogen for their growth. Hence, these receptor proteins were acting pleiotropically to confer a number of distinct changes on cancer cells. Such action seemed to be incompatible with a simple linear signaling cascade operating downstream of activated receptors. Instead, it appeared more likely that a number of distinct downstream signaling pathways were radiating out from these receptors, each involved in evoking a distinct cancer cell phenotype. But once again, there seemed to be little prospect of mapping these pathways and their signaling components.

This stalemate could be broken only by exploiting new types of experimental tools and a new way of thinking about the organization of complex signaling circuits. The science of genetics provided the new tool kit and mindset. However, genetics could be practiced with facility only on relatively simple experimental organisms, specifically, flies, worms, and yeast, for which powerful genetics techniques had been developed.

As it turned out, the elucidation of these signaling cascades also depended on one more factor. Much had already been learned from genetically dissecting the simpler metazoans and single-cell eukaryotes. Were lessons learned about their signaling systems transferable to the signaling cascades operating in mammalian cells? Here, fortune favored the cancer biologists. Because these intracellular signaling cascades were of very ancient lineage and had changed little over many hundreds of millions of years, discoveries about their organization and design in the worm, fly, and yeast proved to be directly applicable to mammalian cells. The consequence was the enrichment of cancer cell biology by research fields that had appeared, at least superficially, to be irrelevant to an understanding of human cancer. As was often the case in cancer research, the important advances came from unexpected quarters, from the laboratories of researchers who never thought of themselves as foot soldiers in the war against cancer.

More recent research on the biochemistry of receptor signaling continues to reveal new dimensions of complexity that impact the contributions that these proteins make to the development of human tumors. For example, RTKs often have extensive lateral interactions with other cell surface proteins, such as integrins; these side-by-side interactions influence the localization of the receptors and their access to different ligands (see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.9**). The control mechanisms that govern the concentrations of GFs in the extracellular space continue to be poorly understood;

included among these mechanisms are those that allow proteases to activate latent GF precursors or to liberate GFs from sequestration in the extracellular matrix.

Moreover, a variety of inhibitory proteins are released by cells that prevent GFs from binding to their cognate receptors, doing so by intercepting these ligands in the extracellular space; some of these interceptors may bind and sequester GFs in an inactive state, while others may function as “decoy receptors” that display the ligand-binding domains of bona fide receptors but are incapable of releasing downstream signals. Such inhibitory proteins seem to play especially important roles in regulating Wnt signaling.

Yet other negative-feedback controls operate to constrain receptor signaling, often confining it to brief periods of time. Many ligand-bound receptors are quickly internalized by the process of endocytosis as a means of curtailing their further signaling. In the case of RTKs, a variety of tyrosine phosphatases are often mobilized to quickly reverse the actions of the TK domains of these receptors, doing so by removing the phosphate groups from recently formed phosphotyrosine residues. This represents only one strategy to constrain signaling by RTKs. (In the next chapter, we will gain an appreciation of the fact that the release of stimulatory signals by various regulatory proteins must be counterbalanced by compensating negative-feedback controls in order to ensure proper regulation of the overall signal-processing circuitry operating within individual cells.)

We have mentioned, only in passing, members of another group of RTKs that actually constitute the largest subfamily—the Eph receptors and their ligands, termed ephrins. As is the case with Notch receptors and their cognate ligands, their signaling occurs between two cells that are in direct physical contact with one another. Thus, the ephrins are displayed as proteins tethered to the surface of the ligand-presenting cells; when an ephrin ligand binds and activates an Eph receptor displayed by an adjacent cell, signals are dispatched bidirectionally, that is, transduced into *both cells* that are engaged in these juxtacrine interactions. The roles of these ligand–receptor pairs in cancer pathogenesis are only beginning to emerge.

Yet other subtleties of receptor function remain underexplored. As one example, members of the family of 33 mammalian tetraspanins can be found embedded in various membranes throughout the cell. These abundantly expressed proteins are named after the four transmembrane domains carried by each of them. While not directly involved in transduction of ligand-triggered signal emission, they can move laterally in the plane of the plasma membrane and associate physically with other receptors, such as the RTKs and integrins, and influence signaling by the latter. We understand almost nothing about these membrane proteins and their contributions to the runaway signaling associated with the neoplastic cell state.

As we learn more about cell surface receptors, our current depictions of how they function will increasingly be seen as crude approximations of how they really operate within living tissues including tumors. Moreover, our focus on GFs and RTKs as the prime means of regulating communication between cells will be viewed as overly narrow. One hundred and three human phosphotyrosine phosphatases (PTPs), which reverse the actions of TKs, are likely to play key roles in regulating the levels of specific phosphotyrosines within cells, including those acquired by RTKs. Secreted proteases having narrow substrate specificities are also likely to sit astride numerous cell-to-cell signaling channels, controlling, for example, growth factor ligand availability as described above; at present we know virtually nothing about the 300 or so of these human enzymes and how they influence intercellular communication routes. Many of these normal signaling mechanisms are likely to be subverted by cancer cells. All of this suggests that we have explored only the most visible corners of the complex circuitry that drives neoplastic growth.

Implicit in this entire chapter is another idea that we only begin to confront in subsequent chapters: the fate of individual cells, including cancer cells, is heavily influenced by their surroundings. Hence, while we often focus on the intracellular signals governing the life of an individual cell, equally important determinants of a cell’s fate come from outside, from its immediate neighboring cells and from others far away in the body.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

exosomes
: Small (30- to 100-nm) membrane vesicles that are released by many cell types into the extracellular space, following which they may adsorb to and fuse with other cells, thereby conveying molecular cargo into the latter.

phosphatase
: An enzyme that removes phosphate groups from phosphorylated substrates, such as the phosphoamino acid residues in a protein or the phosphorylated inositol of a phospholipid.

tetraspanin
: A relatively small protein with four transmembrane domains that operates in various membranes to modulate signaling by a wide variety of other transmembrane proteins such as receptors.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Because a multicellular organism can exist only if its individual cells work in a coordinated fashion, the problems of cell-to-cell communication were solved by the time the first metazoa arose. Deregulation of such cell signaling is central to the formation of cancer.
- Src provided the first insight into how oncoproteins function when it was found to operate as a protein kinase—an enzyme that transfers phosphates from ATP to other proteins in the cell. Since multiple distinct protein substrates could be phosphorylated and since each of these could affect its own set of downstream targets, this explained how Src could act pleiotropically to yield the numerous biological changes observed in RSV-transformed cells.
- Most protein kinases phosphorylate threonine or serine residues, but Src functions as a tyrosine kinase: it attaches phosphates to tyrosine residues of its protein substrate. Tyrosine phosphorylation is favored by mitogenic signaling pathways.
- Study of tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs), such as the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R), elucidated how they transduce signals from a cell's exterior into its cytoplasm. Binding of growth factor ligand to the N-terminal ectodomain of a cognate receptor induces dimerization of the receptor. This activates each monomer's kinase to phosphorylate its partner's tyrosines on the partner's C-terminal cytoplasmic domain. The resulting phosphotyrosines then enable emission of mitogenic signals to downstream target proteins within the cell.
- The dimerization model explains how overexpression of growth factor receptors favors cancer formation: when overexpressed, the high numbers of receptor molecules collide frequently as they move around the plane of the plasma membrane, resulting in dimerization, transphosphorylation, receptor activation, and emission of mitogenic signals.
- Mutations affecting any of the three RTK domains may create ligand-independent firing. An EGF-R with a truncated ectodomain cannot

recognize its ligand but nonetheless emits growth-stimulatory signals in a constitutive fashion. Gene fusion events may create receptors that signal unremittingly by virtue of their ectodomains becoming fused with proteins that are naturally prone to dimerize or oligomerize. Amino acid substitutions or deletions in the transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains of receptors are also found in some cancers.

- Another mechanism for cell transformation is exemplified by the Sis oncoprotein of simian sarcoma virus. The virus forces an infected cell to release copious amounts of a PDGF-like protein, which attaches to the PDGF receptors of the same cell. This creates an autocrine signaling loop in which a cell manufactures a mitogen to which it can also respond.
- Other classes of receptors besides RTKs are important in cancer:
    - Cytokine receptors lack tyrosine kinase domains and rely on noncovalently associated JAK tyrosine kinases for signaling instead of covalently associated TK domains.
    - Receptors for TGF-β have cytoplasmic kinase domains that phosphorylate serine and threonine rather than tyrosine residues.
    - Notch receptor forgoes activation by phosphorylation and instead relies on proteases to liberate a cytoplasmic domain fragment that migrates to the nucleus, where it regulates gene expression.
    - The Patched–Smoothened system relies on one transmembrane protein controlling another, which in turn controls a transcriptional regulator.
    - Binding of canonical Wnt factors to a Frizzled receptor triggers a cascade of steps that prevents a cytoplasmic kinase from tagging β-catenin for destruction.
    - G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) induce heterotrimeric G-proteins to flip from an inactive GDP-bound state to a signaling GTP-bound state.
- Integrins constitute a large family of heterodimeric transmembrane cell surface receptors, almost all of which have ECM components as their ligands. Upon ligand binding, integrins form focal adhesions that link their cytoplasmic domains to the actin cytoskeleton. Integrins pass information both into and out of the cell.
- While Ras proteins seemed to be part of a signaling cascade lying downstream of RTKs, the biochemical mechanisms connecting them

were obscure, since the tyrosine kinase activity of RTKs had no apparent connection with the GTPase-bearing Ras protein.

- The difference between a normal Ras protein and its oncogenic counterpart is a missense mutation that alters a residue in the GTPase domain of Ras, preventing proper GTP hydrolysis; this in turn causes the mutant Ras protein to remain in its actively signaling state for extended periods of time rather than behaving like the normal protein and shutting itself off.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Why is autocrine signaling an intrinsically destabilizing force for a normal tissue?
2. The responsiveness of a cell to exposure to a growth factor is usually attenuated after a period of time (for example, half an hour), after which time it loses this responsiveness. Given what you have already learned about growth factor receptors, what mechanisms might be employed by a cell to reduce its responsiveness to a growth factor?
3. What lines of evidence can you cite to support the notion that growth factor receptor firing following ligand binding is often dependent on the dimerization of a receptor (rather than some other molecular change in the receptor)?
4. In what ways are the heterotrimeric G-proteins similar to the low–molecular-weight G-proteins (for example, Ras), and in what way do they differ fundamentally?
5. In what ways has the study of lower organisms, notably yeast, flies, and worms, proven to be highly revealing in characterizing the intracellular signaling cascades and the receptors operating at the cell surface?
6. Integrins exhibit a novel type of control, termed “inside-out signaling,” in which intracellular signals dictate the affinity of these receptors for their various extracellular ligands (that is, components of the extracellular matrix). Why is such signaling essential to the process of cell motility?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Andrae J, Gallini R & Betsholtz C (2008) Role of platelet-derived growth factors in physiology and medicine. *Genes Dev.* 22, 1276–1312.

Angers S & Moon RT (2009) Proximal events in Wnt signal transduction. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 20, 468–477.

Arnal JF, Lenfant F, Metivier R et al. (2017) Membrane and nuclear estrogen receptor alpha actions: from tissue specificity to medical implications. *Physiol. Rev.* 97, 1045–1087.

Arnaout MA, Mahalingam B & Xiong JP (2005) Integrin structure, allostery, and bidirectional signaling. *Annu. Rev. Cell Dev. Biol.* 21, 381–410.

Bethani I, Skånland SS, Dikic I & Acker-Palmer A (2010) Spatial organization of transmembrane receptor signaling. *EMBO J.* 29, 2677–2688.

Borza CM & Pozzi A (2014) Discoidin receptors in disease. *Matrix Biol.* 34, 185–192.

Briscoe J & Thérond PP (2013) The mechanisms of Hedgehog signaling and its roles in development and disease. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 14, 418–431.

Charrin S, Jouannet S, Boucheix C & Rubinstein E (2014) Tetraspanins at a glance. *J. Cell Sci.* 127, 3641–3648.

Chow MT & Luster AD (2014) Chemokines in cancer. *Cancer Immunol. Res.* 2, 1125–1131.

Cooper J & Giancotti FG (2019) Integrin signaling in cancer: mechanotransduction, stemness, epithelial plasticity, and therapeutic resistance. *Cancer Cell* 35, 347–367.

Desgrosellier JS & Cheresh DA (2010) Integrins in cancer: biological implications and therapeutic opportunities. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 9–22.

Dorsam RT & Gutkind JS (2007) G-protein-coupled receptors and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 7, 79–94.

D'Souza B, Miyamoto A & Weinmaster G (2008) The many facets of Notch ligands. *Oncogene* 27, 5148–5167.

Evangelista M, Tian H & de Sauvage FJ (2006) The Hedgehog signaling pathway in cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 12, 5924–5928.

Fodde R & Brabletz T (2007) Wnt/beta-catenin signaling in cancer stemness and malignant behavior. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 19, 150–158.

Geiger B & Yamada KM (2011) Molecular architecture and function of matrix adhesions. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 3, a005033; doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a005033.

Gilbert B & Mehlen P (2015) Dependence receptors and cancer: addiction to trophic ligands. *Cancer Res.* 72, 5171–5175.

Goel HL & Mercurio AM (2013) VEGF targets the tumour cell. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 13, 871–882.

Gómez-Orte E, Saenz-Narciso B, Moreno S & Cabello J (2013) Multiple functions of the noncanonical Wnt pathway. *Trends Genet.* 29, 545–553.

Hanna A & Shevde LA (2016) Hedgehog signaling: modulation of cancer properties and tumor microenvironment. *Mol. Cancer* 15, 24; doi: 10.1186/s12943-016-0509-3.

Hassounah NB, Bunch TA & McDermott KM (2012) Molecular pathways: the role of primary cilia in cancer progression and therapeutics with a focus on Hedgehog signaling. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 18, 2429–2435.

Hynes RO (2002) Integrins: bidirectional, allosteric signaling machines. *Cell* 110, 673–687.

Hynes RO (2009) The extracellular matrix: not just pretty fibrils. *Science* 326, 1216–1219.

Jura N, Zhang X, Endres NF et al. (2011) Catalytic control in the EGF receptor and its connection to general kinase regulatory mechanisms. *Mol. Cell* 42, 9–22.

Klein R (2012) Eph/ephrin signaling during development. *Development* 139, 4105–4109.

Kopan R & Ilagan MX (2009) The canonical Notch signaling pathway: unfolding the activation mechanism. *Cell* 137, 216–233.

Kowatsch C, Woolley RE, Kinnebrew M et al. (2019) Structures of vertebrate Patched and Smoothened reveal intimate links between cholesterol and Hedgehog signalling. *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* 57, 204–214.

Lee JS, Kim KI & Baek SH (2008) Nuclear receptors and coregulators in inflammation and cancer. *Cancer Lett.* 267, 189–196.

Lemmon MA & Schlessinger J (2010) Cell signaling by receptor tyrosine kinases. *Cell* 141, 117–134.

Massagué J (2012) TGF-β signaling in context. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 13, 616–630.

Mikels AJ & Nusse R (2006) Wnts as ligands: processing, secretion and reception. *Oncogene* 25, 7461–7468.

Mosesson Y, Mills GB & Yarden Y (2008) Derailed endocytosis: an emerging feature of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 835–850.

O'Malley BW & Kumar R (2009) Nuclear receptor coregulators in cancer biology. *Cancer Res.* 69, 8217–8222.

Pencik J, Pham HT, Schmoeller J et al. (2016) JAK-STAT signaling in cancer: from cytokines to non-coding genome. *Cytokine* 87, 26–36.

Schlaepfer DD & Mitra SK (2004) Multiple contacts link FAK to cell motility and invasion. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev*. 14, 92–101.

Schou KB, Pedersen LB & Christensen ST (2015) Ins and outs of GPCR signaling in primary cilia. *EMBO Rep.* 16, 1099–1113.

Seguin L, Desgrosellier JS, Weis SM & Cheresh DA (2015) Integrins and cancer: regulators of cancer stemness, metastasis and drug resistance. *Trends Cell Biol.* 25, 234–240.

Sever R & Glass CK (2013) Signaling by nuclear receptors. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 5, a016709; doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a016709.

Sigismund S, Avanzato D & Lanzetti L (2017) Emerging functions of the EGFR in cancer. *Mol. Oncol.* 12, 3–20.

Singh AB & Harris RC (2005) Autocrine, paracrine and juxtacrine signaling by EGFR ligands. *Cell Signal.* 17, 1183–1193.

Singh B & Coffey RJ (2014) Trafficking of epidermal growth factor receptor ligands in polarized epithelial cells. *Annu. Rev. Physiol.* 76, 275–300.

Song S, Rosen KM & Corfas (2013) Biological function of nuclear receptor tyrosine kinase action. *Cold Spring Harb. Persp. Biol.* 5, a009001; doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a009001.

Streuli CH & Akhtar N (2009) Signal co-operation between integrins and other receptor systems. *Biochem. J.* 418, 491–506.

Tian A-C, Rajan A & Bellen HJ (2009) A Notch updated. *J. Cell Biol.* 184, 621–629.

Valiathan RR, Marco M, Leitinger B et al. (2013) Discoidin domain receptor tyrosine kinases: new players in cancer progression. *Cancer Met. Rev.* 31, 295–321.

Varjosolo M & Taipale J (2010) Hedgehog: functions and mechanisms. *Genes Dev.* 22, 2454–2472.

Wieduwilt MJ & Moasser MM (2008) The epidermal growth factor receptor family: biology driving targeted therapeutics. *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 65, 1566–1584.

Witsch E, Sela M & Yarden Y (2010) Roles for growth factors in cancer progression. *Physiology* 25, 85–101.

Yamamoto S, Schulze KL & Bellen HJ (2014) *Methods Mol. Biol.* 1187, 1–14.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

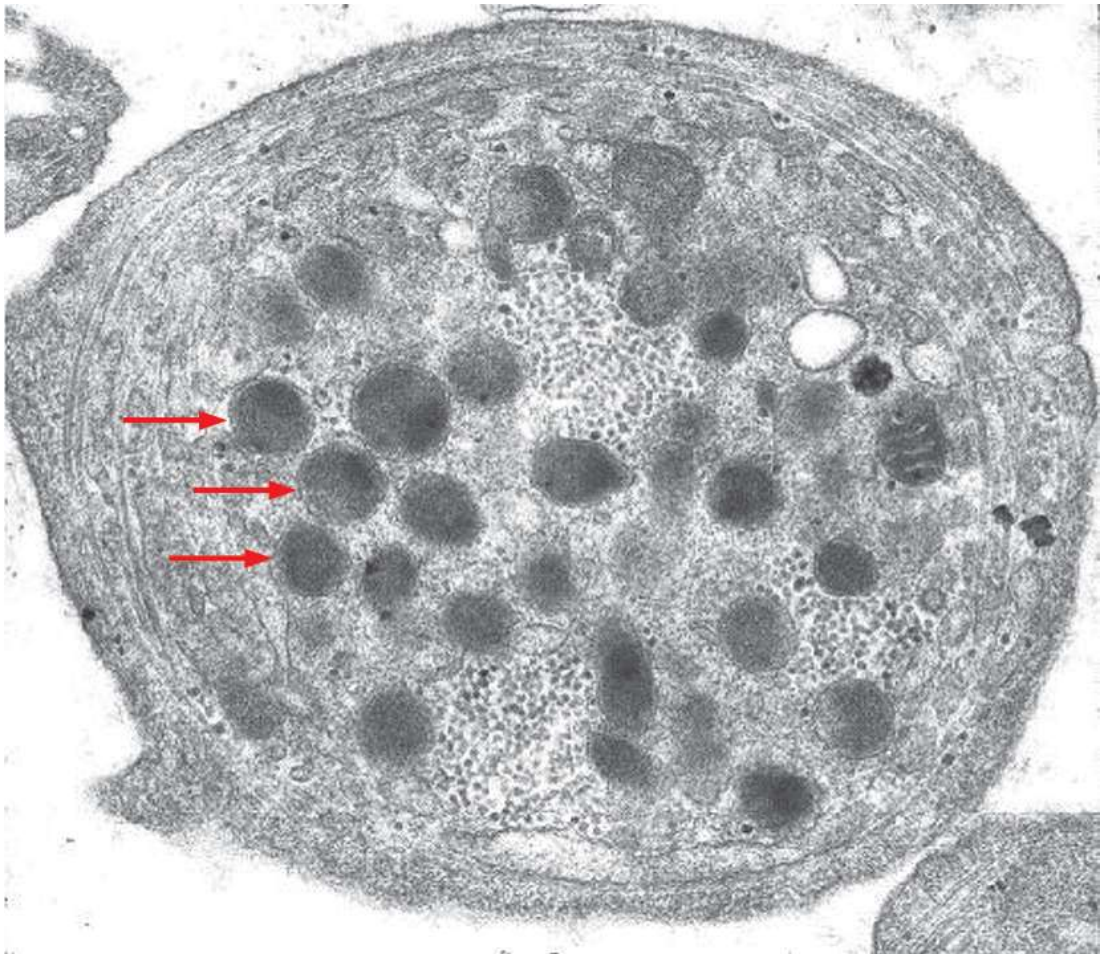


Figure S5.1 Storage of GFs by platelets Platelets carry numerous secretory (*exocytotic*) vesicles termed α-granules (*arrows*), which contain important signaling molecules, prominent among them being several types of platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and other GFs. When platelets become activated during clot formation, these vesicles fuse with the plasma membrane, releasing previously stored growth and survival factors into the extracellular space. (Courtesy of S. Israels.)

Supplementary Sidebar 5.1 Making anti-Src antibodies presented a major challenge

Thorough biochemical analyses of thousands of cellular proteins have depended upon the ability to detect and isolate a protein of interest (for example, Src) amid the complex soup of proteins present in cells. This detection frequently relies on the use of antibodies that specifically recognize and bind a protein such as Src while ignoring all other cellular proteins around it. The production of such antibodies involves the injection of an intact protein (for example, the entire Src protein) or a chemically synthesized oligopeptide (for example, a short protein whose amino acid sequence reflects the sequence of a small segment of the Src protein) into an animal, usually a mouse, rabbit, or goat. The hope is that the injected material will be immunogenic (will elicit an immune response) in the animal, causing it to form antibodies that will specifically bind and precipitate this protein from a cell lysate (a preparation of disrupted cells).

The immune system of a mammal often reacts vigorously to a foreign antigen, that is, a protein carrying peptide sequences that are unfamiliar, in that the immune system has not previously experienced or been exposed to that antigen. Conversely, the immune system often mounts no immune response at all (and thus fails to make antibody) against an injected protein that closely resembles one of the proteins normally present in the animal (and thus represents a protein that is familiar to the immune system). This lack of immunoreactivity against familiar proteins is termed immunological tolerance, a phenomenon that we will return to in Chapter 15.

Those researchers who first produced anti-Src antibodies used a strain of RSV that can infect and transform mammalian cells and can therefore induce tumors in mammals. They anticipated that the resulting tumors would express the chicken Src protein, and that dying tumor cells would expose this protein to the immune systems of the tumor-bearing mammalian hosts and thus provoke an immune response. In fact, the Src protein proved to be poorly immunogenic in most animals. The reason for this was discovered much later: the structure of the Src protein is highly conserved evolutionarily. Accordingly, the chicken Src protein is almost identical to the corresponding protein of most mammalian species and is therefore not readily recognized as a foreign protein by these species' immune systems. In the end, these investigators succeeded (for unknown reasons) in producing anti-Src antiserum only from rabbits bearing RSV-induced tumors. The factors that determine the immunogenicity of a protein such as Src in one or another species are complex and often obscure.

Once in hand, the anti-Src antiserum could be used to precipitate (that is, immunoprecipitate) Src protein from lysates of a wide variety of RSV-transformed cells and from normal, untransformed cells (**Figure S5.2**). As in many such analyses, these lysates were prepared from cells that had been incubated in the presence of radiolabeled amino acids, resulting in the incorporation of radiolabel in the cells' proteins. Following immunoprecipitation, the resulting proteins were resolved by gel

electrophoresis, and the presence of radiolabeled proteins was detected by autoradiography. In the present case, the long-sought Src protein was detected as a polypeptide migrating as a 60-kD protein.

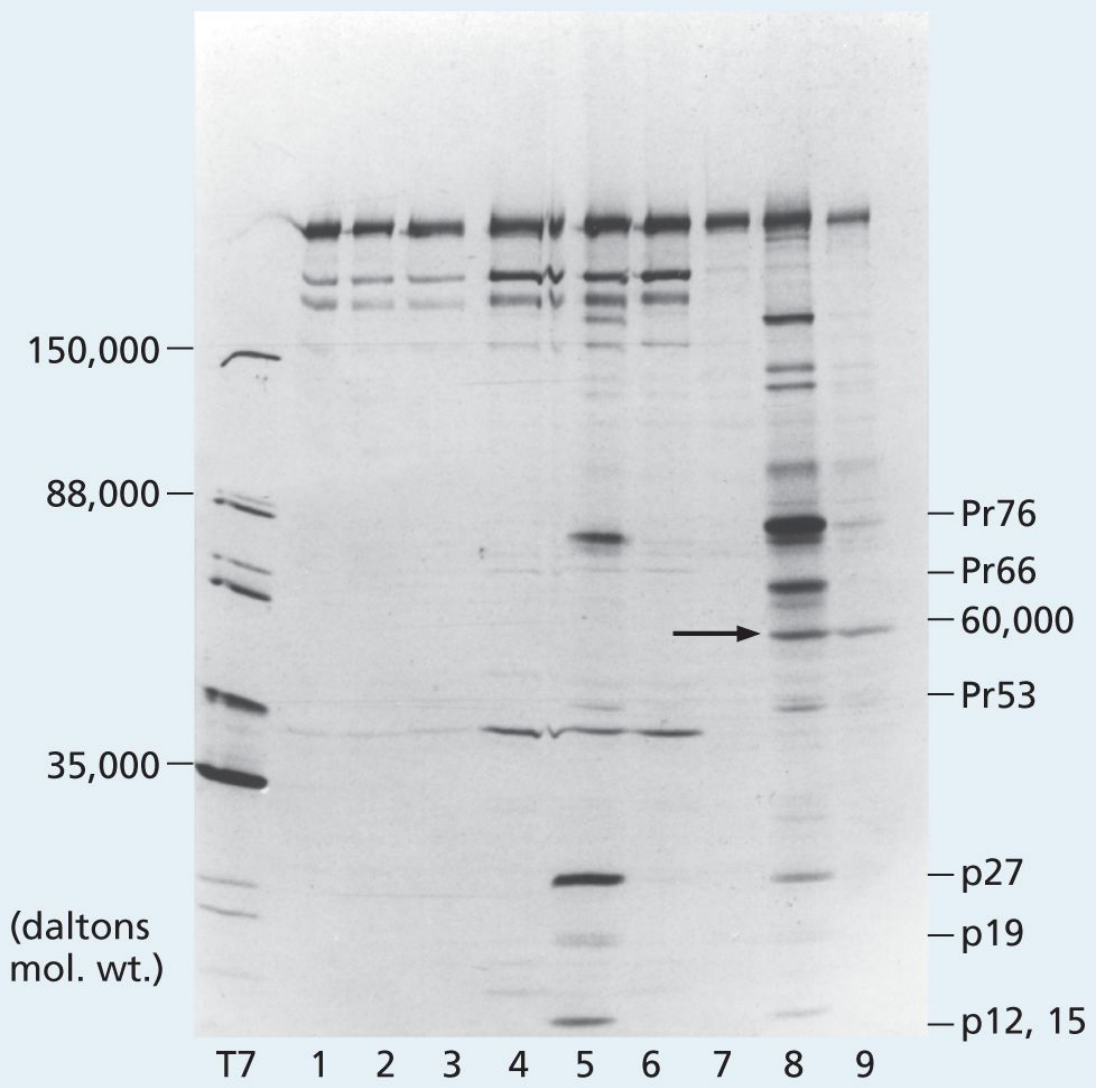


Figure S5.2 Immunoprecipitate of Src protein Initially, the only means of studying the Src protein depended on first *immunoprecipitating* it from the mixture of tens of thousands of other cellular proteins. Many attempts at making an anti-Src serum finally succeeded in isolating an antibody preparation that could be used to immunoprecipitate this protein from cells. Molecular weight markers are in the leftmost channel T7; channels 1–3, lysate of normal, uninfected cells; channels 4–6, lysate of cells infected with an RSV mutant with a deleted *src* gene; channels 7–9, lysate of cells infected with wild-type RSV. All lysates were immunoprecipitated with serum from tumor-bearing rabbits except channel 7 where normal serum was used. Channel 9 was first pre-incubated with lysate of

RSV particles. The band at 60 kD in channels 8 and 9 (*arrow*) represented the first detection of the RSV oncoprotein. (p12, p15, p19, p27, Pr53, Pr66, and Pr76 are RSV virion proteins.) (From A.F. Purchio et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 75:1567–1571, 1978. With permission from the authors.)

Supplementary Sidebar 5.2 The discovery of phosphotyrosine phosphorylation by Src

The actions of Src to function as a protein kinase were likely due to its ability to attach phosphate groups to the amino acid side chains of protein substrates, specifically those side chains that carry hydroxyl moieties. This limited the likely substrate residues to serine, threonine, and tyrosine. Further analysis demonstrated that Src uses tyrosine as a substrate (**Figure S5.3**).

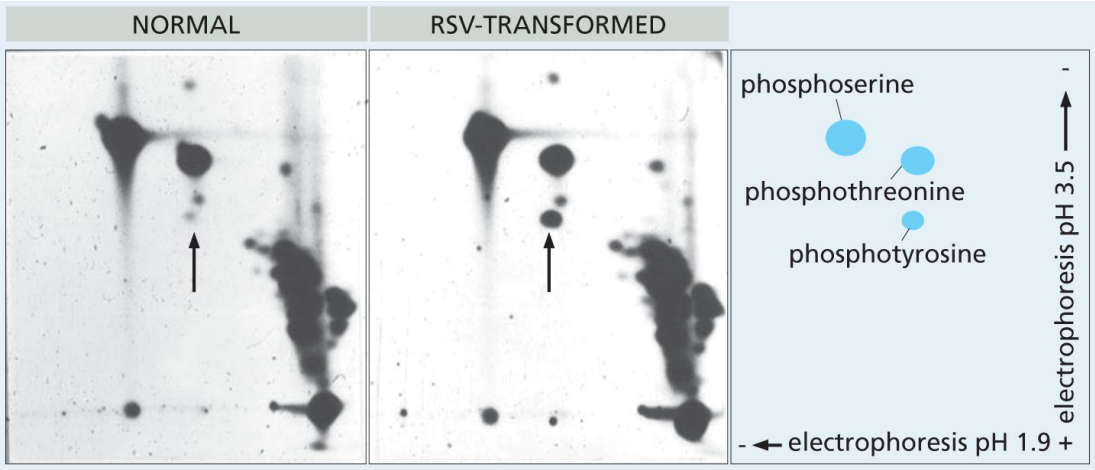
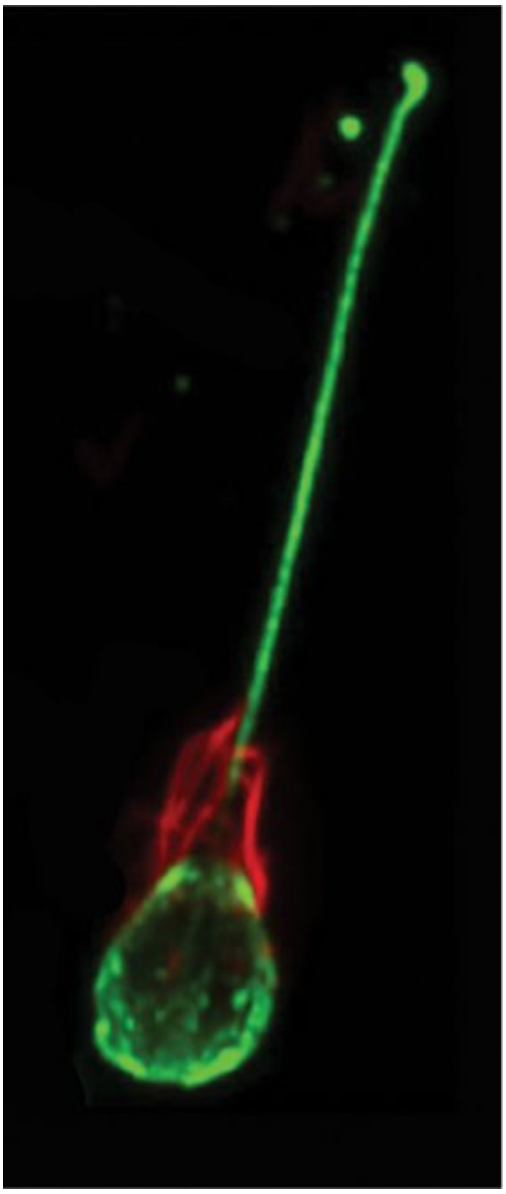


Figure S5.3 Substrate specificity of the Src kinase Electrophoresis can be used to resolve the three types of commonly encountered phosphoamino acids—phosphotyrosine, phosphothreonine, and phosphoserine. In the images shown, electrophoresis was performed toward the cathode at pH 1.9 (*right to left*) and pH 3.5 (*bottom to top*). The right panel shows the expected locations following electrophoresis of these three phosphoamino acids prepared by hydrolysis of proteins from cells previously exposed to $^{32}PO_4$ radioactive orthophosphate. In normal chicken embryo fibroblasts (CEFs; *left panel*), phosphoserine and phosphothreonine are present in abundance, while almost no phosphotyrosine is evident (*arrow*). However, in *src*-transformed CEFs (*center panel*), the level of phosphotyrosine (*arrow*) rises dramatically. Unrelated phosphorylated compounds and inorganic orthophosphate are seen at the lower right of each electrophoresis. (Courtesy of T. Hunter.)

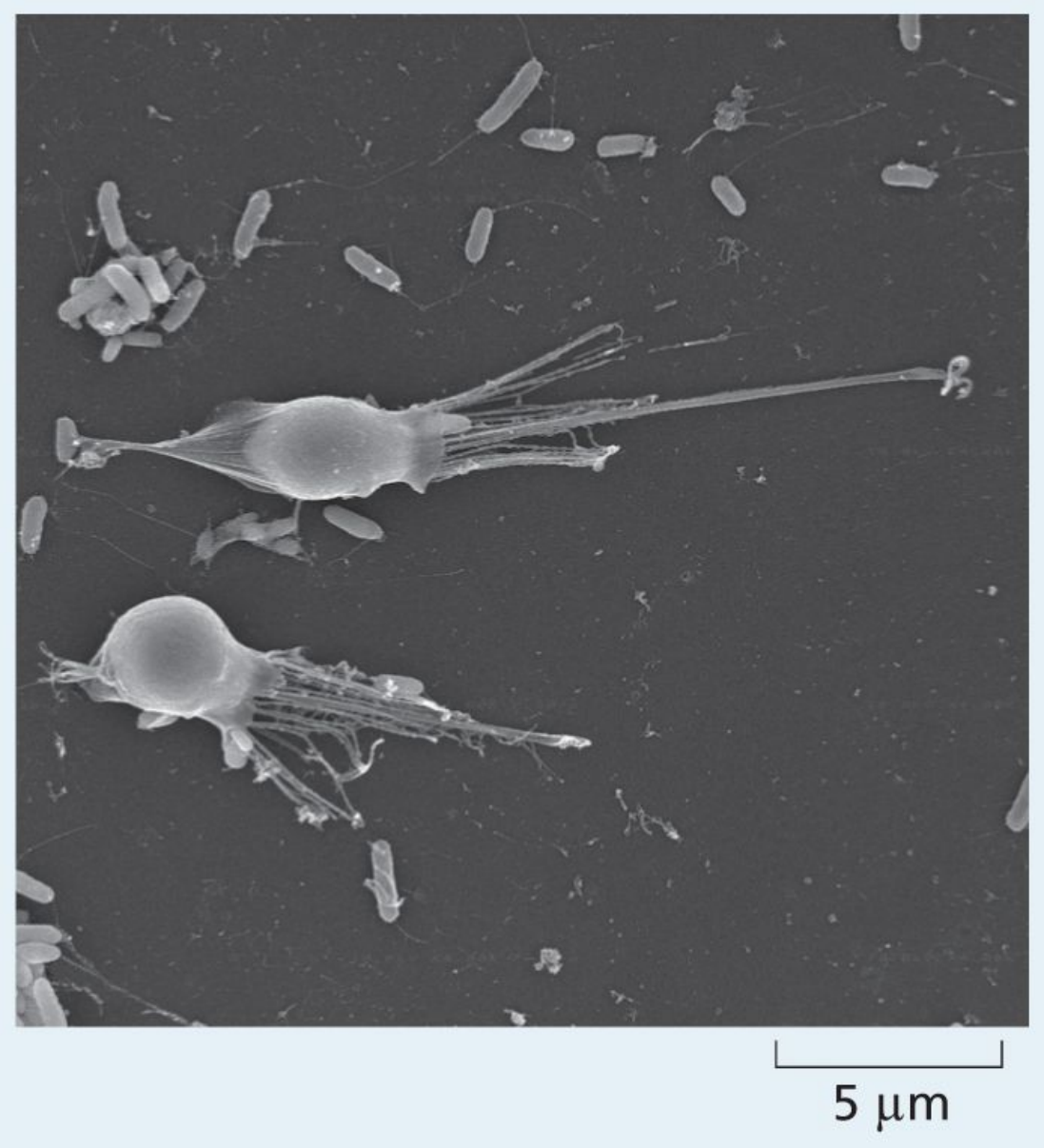
Supplementary Sidebar 5.3 The protozoan roots of metazoan signaling

In the Cambrian era, ∼540 million years ago, a diverse array of complex multicellular organisms appeared; many of these were the ancestors of contemporary metazoan phyla and already had recognizable features of modern organisms. Examination of contemporary animal phyla leads to a key insight into our origins: a metazoan organization plan was invented only once, and all modern metazoa descend from a common pre-metazoan ancestor that somehow solved the problem of cell–cell communication and the organization of complex tissues. This organization depended in significant part on the evolution of cell-to-cell signaling systems, including the growth factors, receptors, and cell–cell adhesion molecules that are found in all modern metazoa. The fossil record indicates that during the earlier Vendian/Ediacaran era, which spanned from 650 to 540 million years ago, a variety of soft-bodied metazoa were already present, pushing the evolutionary origins of metazoa back another ∼100 million years.

The nature of the common pre-metazoan ancestor has been obscure until recently. However, accumulating evidence now implicates choanoflagellates as being among the closest living relatives of the common ancestor of metazoans. (While closely related to the common ancestral species, these protozoans do not reveal the precise identity of this ancestral species.) Each single-cell form of a choanoflagellate has a single flagellum (which provides propulsion) that is surrounded by a large collar (assembled from 30–40 microvilli) that enables these protozoans to trap the bacteria that they consume for food (**Figure S5.4**). Large multicellular choanoflagellate colonies contain flagellated cells on the outside and possibly other flagellum-free cell types on the inside. The evolution of these multicellular colonies presumably depended on the development of cell–cell signaling and adhesion molecules that were subsequently adapted to enable metazoan tissues to form.



(A)



(B)

Figure S5.4 Origins of cell–cell communication The tyrosine kinase receptors, along with a series of other important signaling molecules, were clearly developed long before the Cambrian radiation generated the ancestors of the various modern metazoan phyla more than 550 million years ago. This raises the question of the most recent common ancestor of metazoa. Choanoflagellates are single-cell organisms that appear to be closely related to such an ancestor; their genomes encode many of the molecules that are critical to cell–cell signaling in contemporary metazoa. (A) The choanoflagellates received their name from the distinctive collar that surrounds their single and is composed of an array of actin-

rich microvilli (*red*). The single flagellum, like the microtubules of the cytoplasm, are revealed here by an anti-tubulin antibody (*green*), while the nuclei are stained *blue*. (B) This scanning electron micrograph reveals that each solitary cell extends a single long flagellum with a surrounding collar that, in this case, has been disrupted into its individual component microvilli. Bacteria, which are trapped by these microvilli and used as food by the choanoflagellates, are seen nearby. (A, Ryan Null. B, courtesy of M.J. Dayel, K. McDonald, and N. King.)

Importantly, sequencing of a choanoflagellate genome indicates that these protozoans make signaling proteins that are found in higher metazoa, including a receptor tyrosine kinase, EGF-like proteins, G-protein–coupled receptors, a TNF receptor-like molecule (Chapter 9), and SH2 groups (Chapter 6), as well as structural proteins such as cadherins (which bind metazoan epithelial cells together in two-dimensional sheets; see Chapter 6). Once evolved to enable the assembly of these primitive multicellular colonies, these proteins could then be adapted in various ways to permit the formation and explosive diversification of far more complex multicellular animals during the early Cambrian period. At the same time, the signaling systems that were assembled from these proteins laid the foundations for the disease that, half a billion years later, we call cancer.

Supplementary Sidebar 5.4 Demonstration of autocrine signaling by living cells

An important proof that autocrine signaling occurs in populations of cells comes from a demonstration that the same cells that release a ligand also display a receptor that can bind the ligand and release signals in response to such binding (**Figure S5.5**).

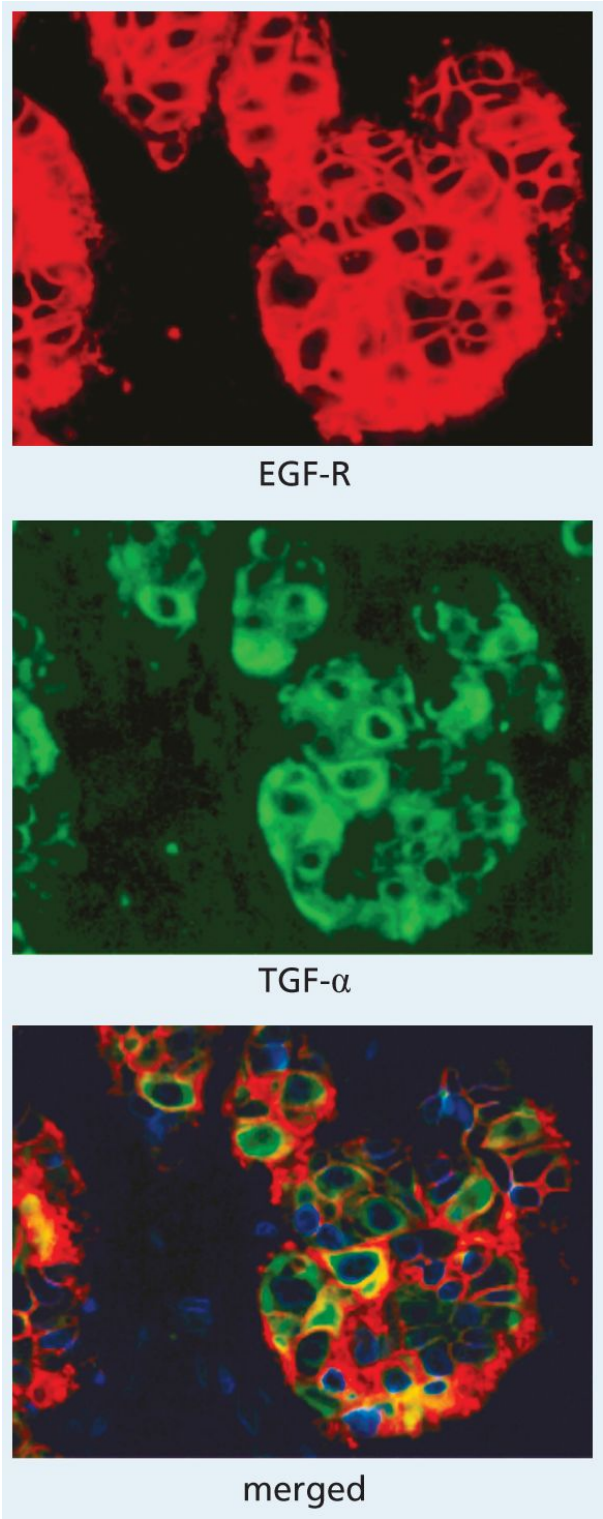
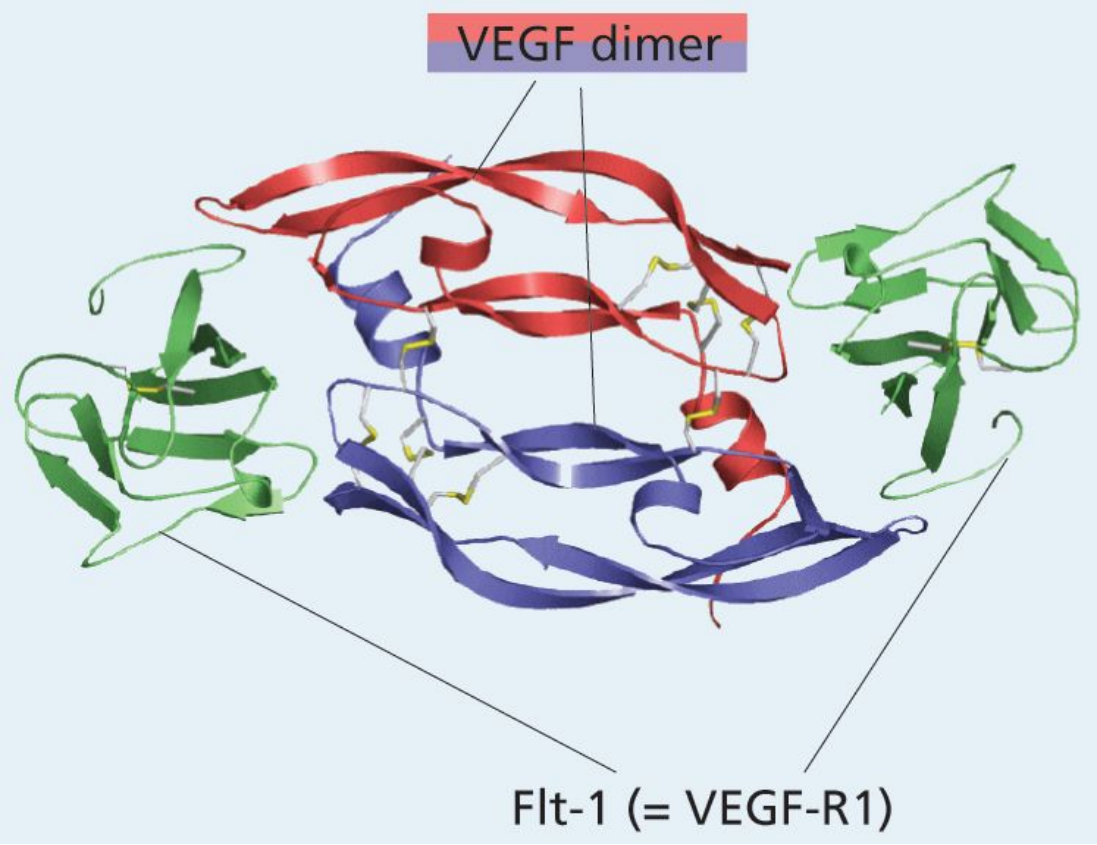


Figure S5.5 Autocrine signaling An example of autocrine signaling is seen in these successive sections of an invasive human breast carcinoma, in which islands of cancer cells are surrounded by nonstained stroma (*black*). The top section has been immunostained for expression of the EGF receptor (*red*), while the middle

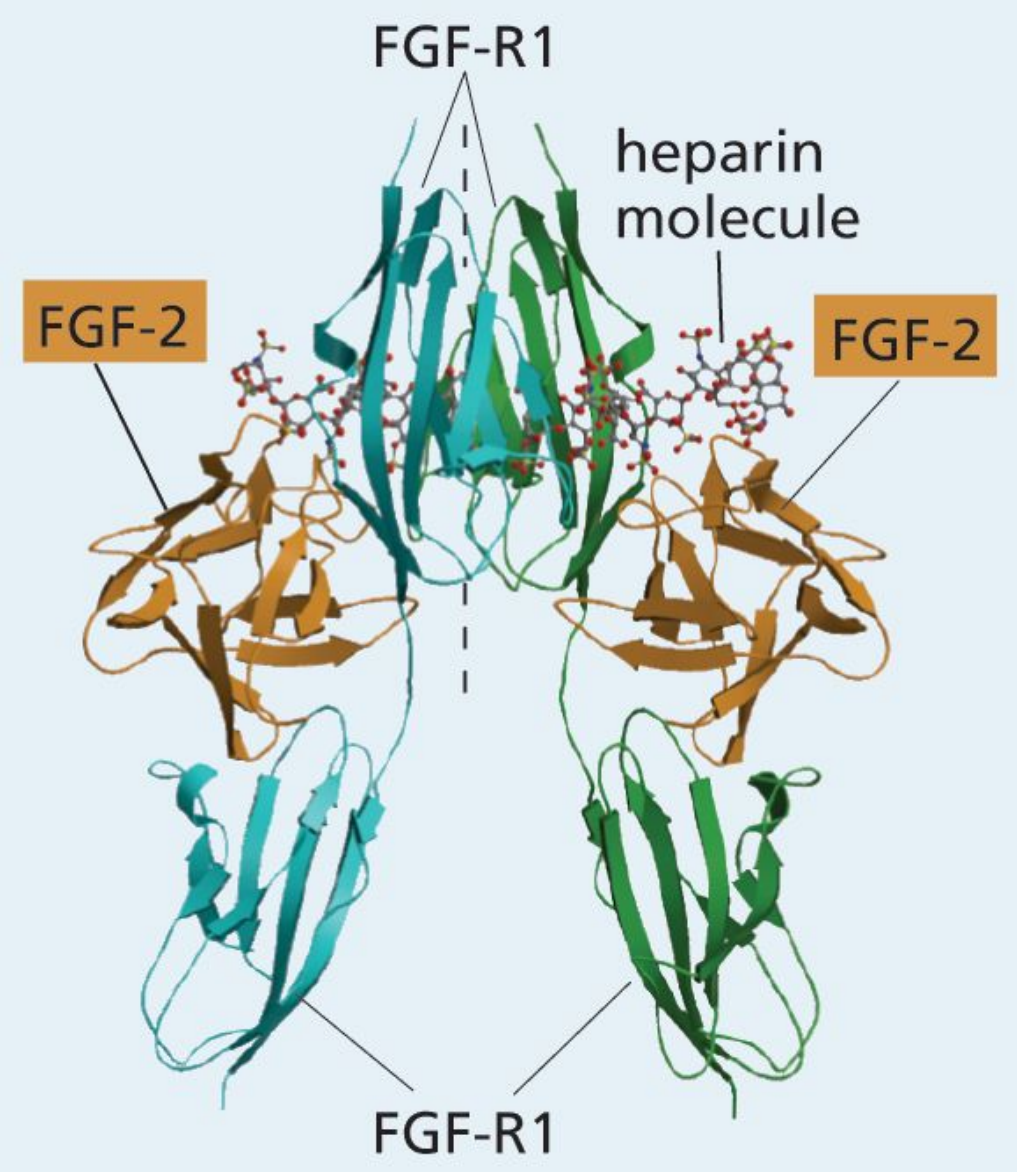
section has been stained for expression of TGF-α (*green*), an EGF-like ligand of the EGF receptor. When these two images are superimposed (*bottom panel*), cells that express both receptor and ligand are stained *yellow*. Nuclei are stained *blue*. (From J.S. de Jong et al., *J. Pathol.* 184:44–52, 1998. With permission from John Wiley and Sons.)

Supplementary Sidebar 5.5 Ligand-mediated dimerization of RTKs

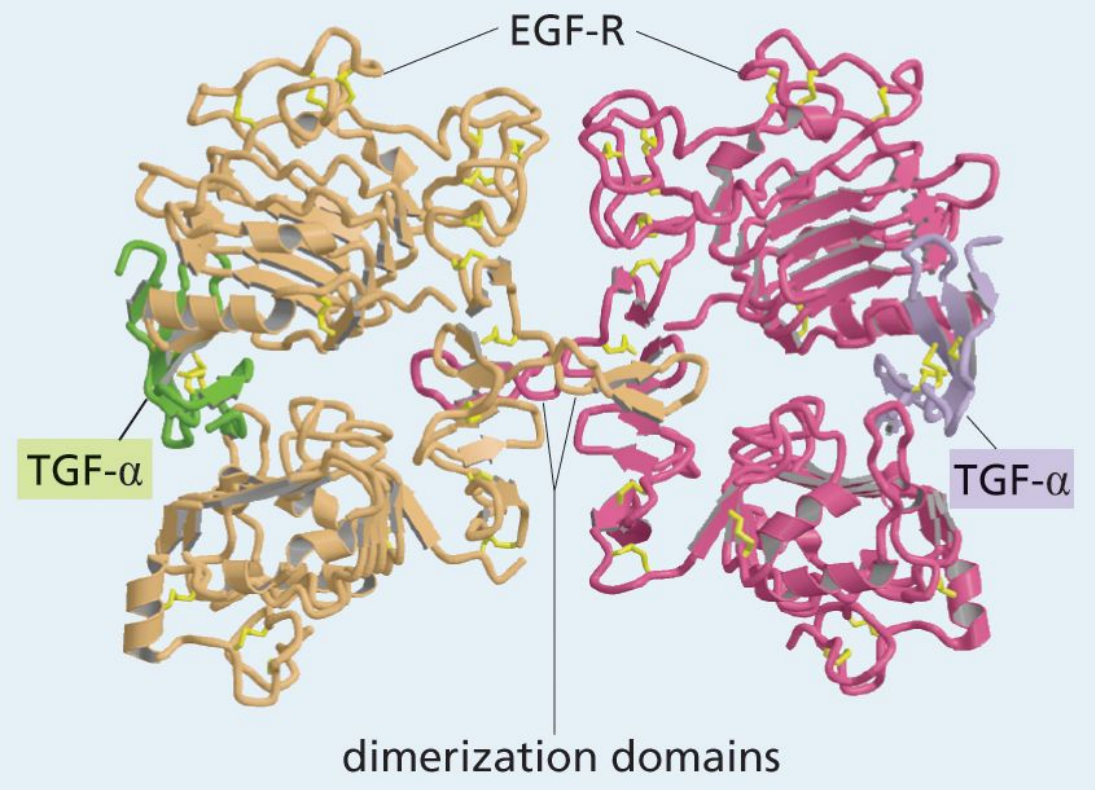
The ligands of RTKs come in various molecular configurations, allowing the ligands to trigger receptor dimerization through a diverse array of molecular mechanisms (**Figure S5.6**).



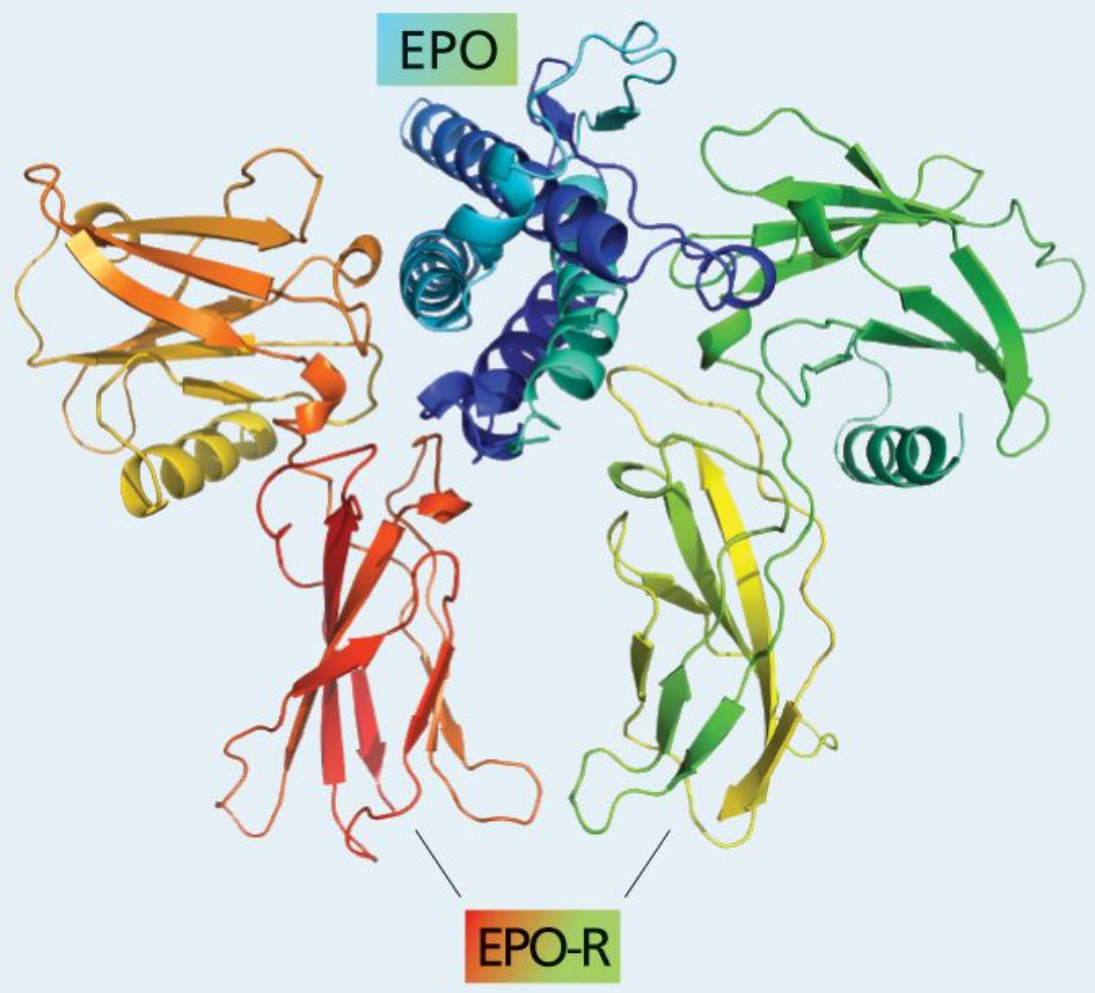
(A)



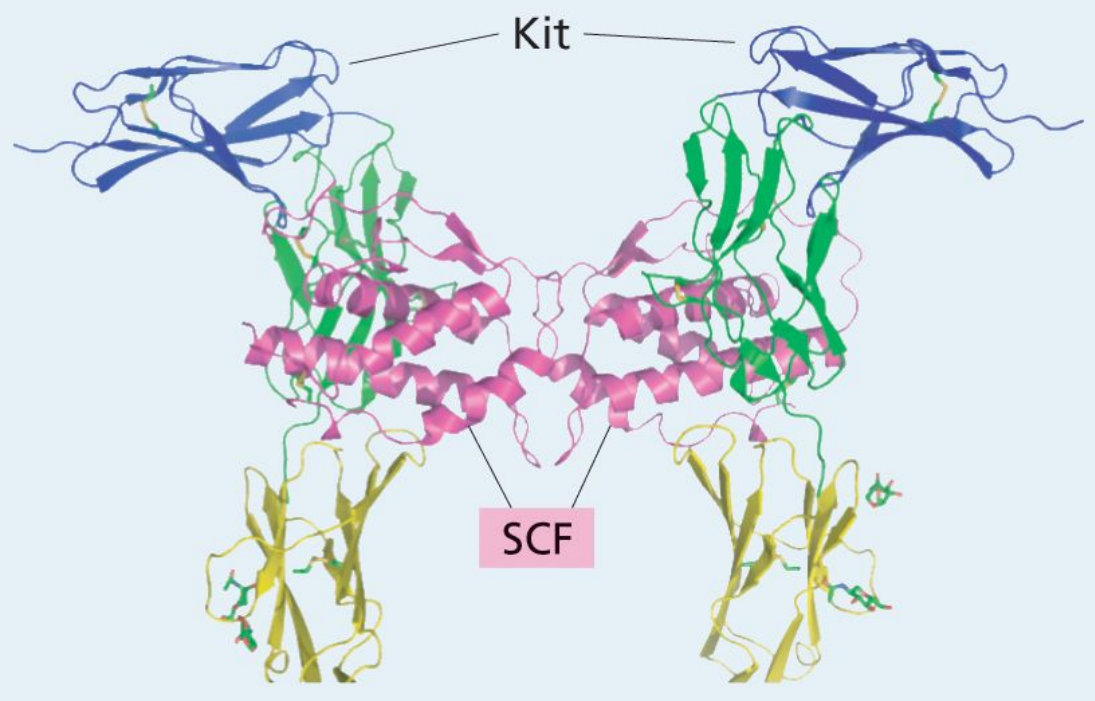
(B)



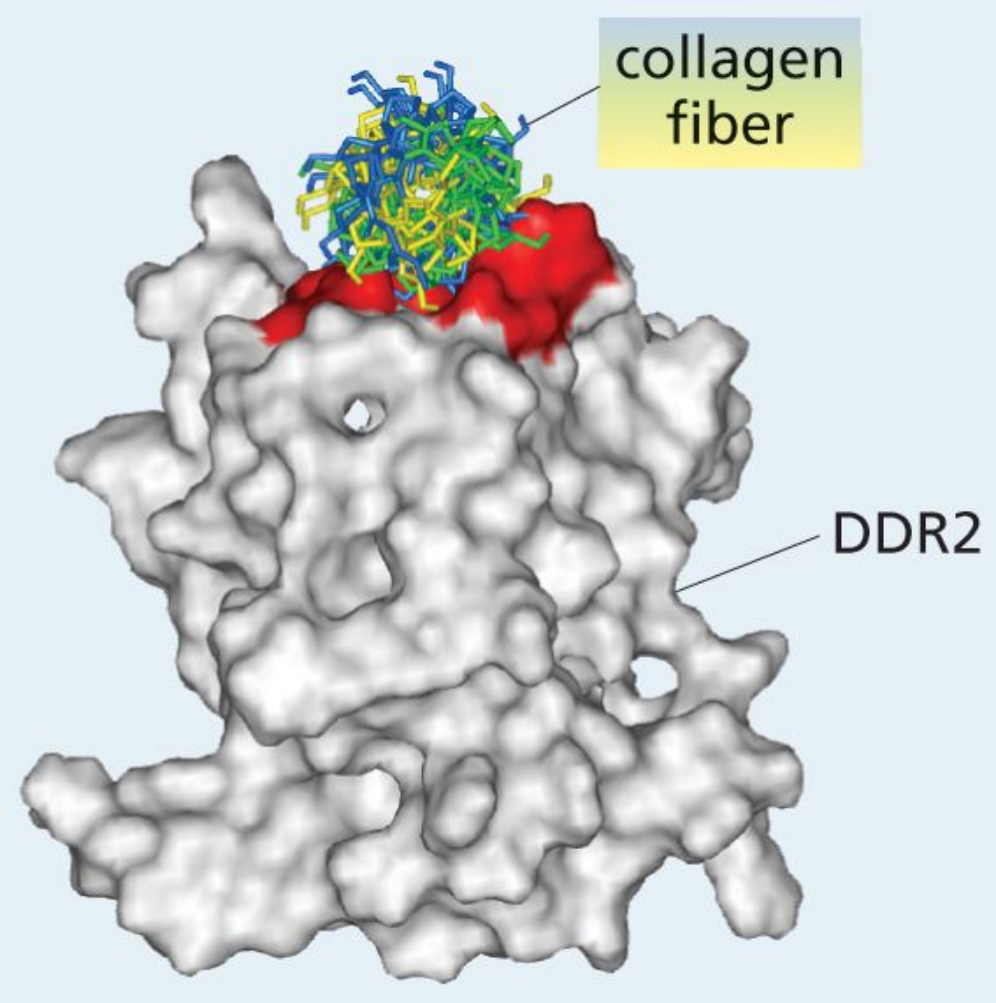
(C)



(D)



(E)



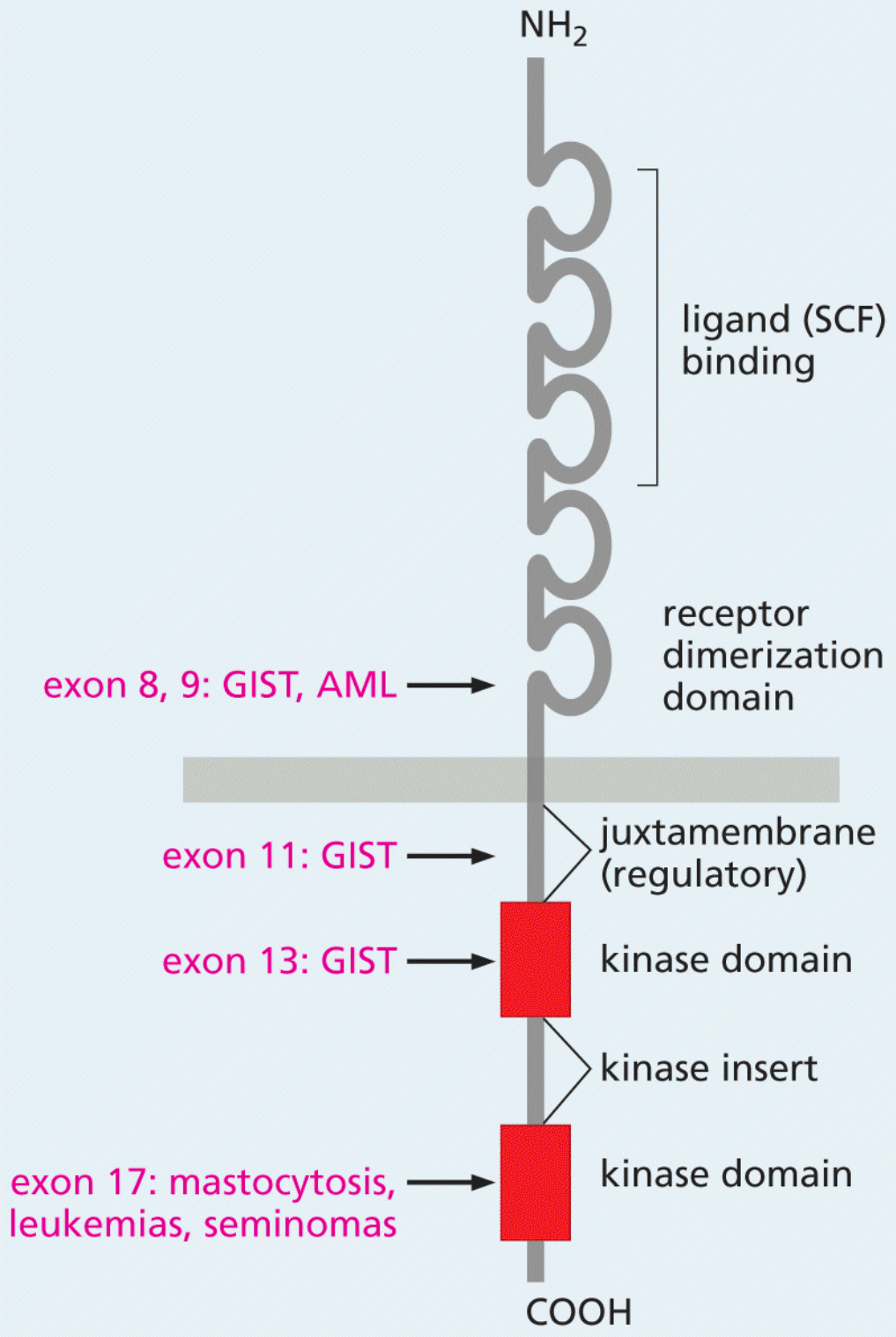
(F)

Figure S5.6 Alternative mechanisms of growth factor–induced receptor dimerization X-ray crystallography has revealed how a variety of growth factor ligands cause receptor dimerization. (A) Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) binds as a homodimer (*red, blue*) to two monomers of its receptor, called Flt-1 (*green*), thereby bringing them together. This complex is seen as a bottom view, i.e., from the plasma membrane looking outward, and exemplifies the dimerization mechanism illustrated in Figure 5.11A. (B) In the case of the fibroblast growth factor receptor-1 (FGF-R1), the ligands are growth factor monomers (FGF-2) that do not contact each other directly but instead are linked by a heparin molecule to which both are bound (*stick figure*). (Heparin is a glycosaminoglycan component of the extracellular matrix.) Each FGF-2 monomer (*dark orange*) then attracts and binds the ligand-binding domain of a receptor monomer (*green, aquamarine*). Each ligand-binding domain of the receptor subunit, seen here in side view, is composed of two subdomains, one binding

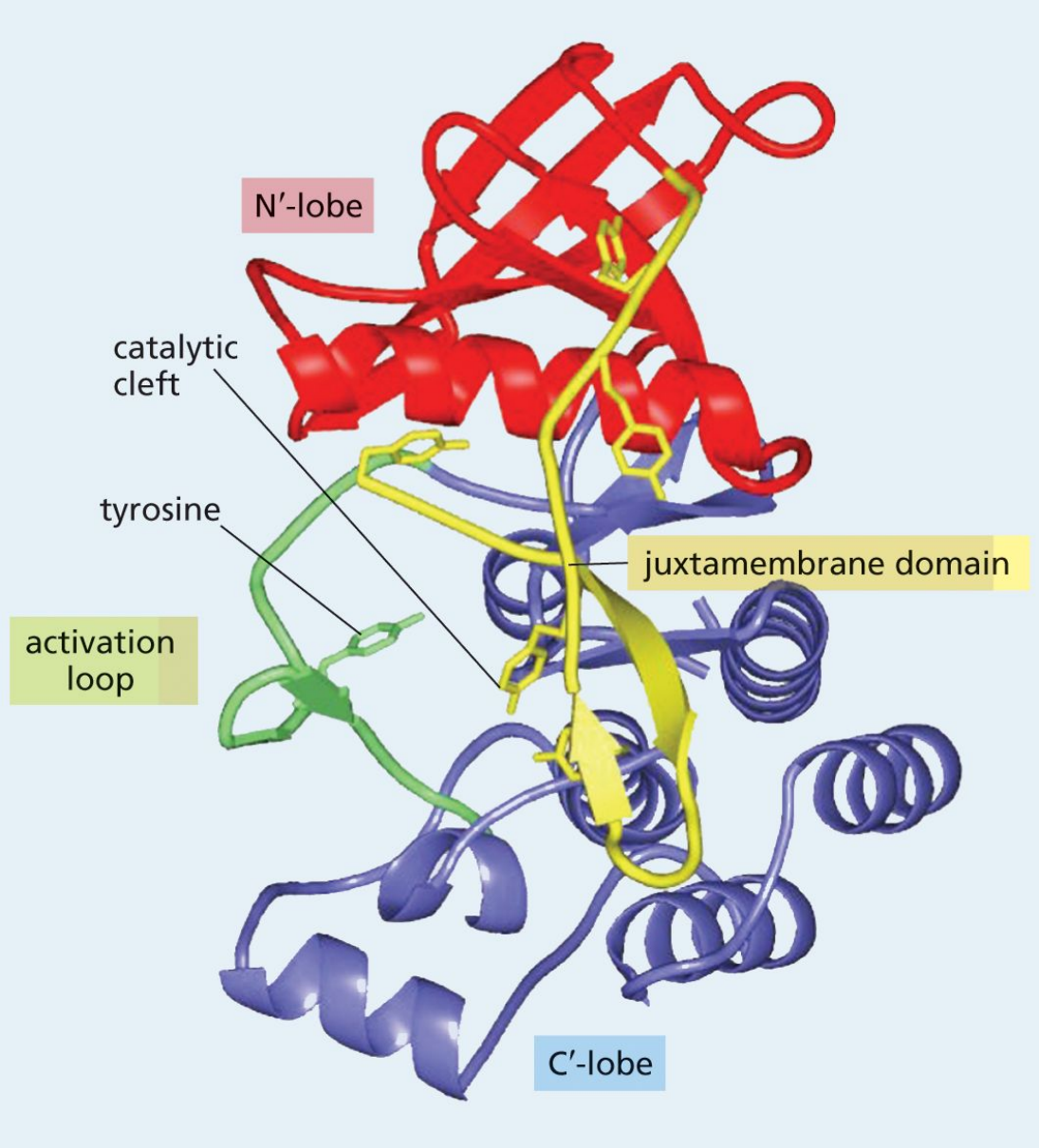
above, the other below the FGF-2 ligand. The interface between the two dimerized receptor molecules is indicated by the dashed line. (C) In the case of the EGF-R, molecules of tumor growth factor-α (TGF-α), one of the alternative EGF-related ligands of this receptor, bind as individual monomers (*green, left; purple, right*) to the "front sides" of two receptor subunits (*dark yellow, dark pink*). As seen in a top view facing the plasma membrane, receptor monomers respond to ligand binding by exposing finger-like dimerization domains that mediate their "back-to-back" dimerization. Hence, there is no direct connection between the two ligand molecules, since each is actually far removed from the region of the receptor monomer that is directly involved in dimerization. (D) Some growth factors function as single polypeptide chains. Thus, a single molecule of erythropoietin (EPO; *blue/aquamarine*) is able to simultaneously contact two receptor molecules (EPO-R; *orange/red* and *green/yellow*), causing their dimerization. (E) Like VEGF, stem cell factor (SCF) is a homodimeric ligand that binds to two molecules of the Kit receptor; in the side view here, one molecule of SCF (*magenta*) binds in front of the left Kit molecule while the other passes behind the right Kit molecule. (F) Collagen, an extracellular matrix protein, is an unusual ligand for an RTK since it is not presented in a soluble form to its two cognate tyrosine kinase receptors, termed discoidin domain receptors (DDR1 and -2). Seen here is a space-filling representation of the collagen-binding domain (*red*) of DDR2, which is constitutively dimerized even in the absence of collagen ligand and active signaling. Binding of the triple-helix fibrillar collagen protein (in cross section, *blue*, *green*, *yellow stick figures*) causes activation of receptor signaling via a still-poorly understood mechanism. (A, from C. Wiesmann et al., *Cell* 91:695–704, 1997. B, from A. Plotnikov et al., *Cell* 98:641–650, 1999. C, from T.P.J. Garrett et al., *Cell* 110:763–773, 2002. All with permission from Elsevier. D, courtesy of J.S. Finer-Moore, from R.S. Syed et al., *Nature* 395:511–516, 1998. With permission from Nature. E, from S. Yuzawa et al., *Cell* 130:323–334, 2007. With permission from Elsevier. F, from O. Ichikawa et al., *EMBO J.* 26:4168–4176, 2007. With permission from John Wiley and Sons.)

Supplementary Sidebar 5.6 Mechanisms of activation of receptor signaling via transphosphorylation

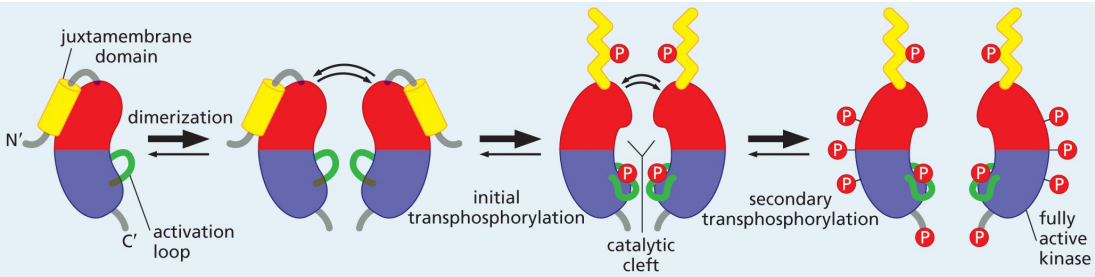
The signaling output of an RTK derives from the phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in its C-terminal domain, as we will see in Chapter 6. However, even before this occurs through the actions of the kinase domain of the other RTK in the dimerized receptor, a series of phosphorylation events must happen in most RTKs that lead to the activation of the kinase domains of the two associated receptor molecules (**Figure S5.7**).


NH2
ligand (SCF) binding
receptor dimerization domain
exon 8, 9: GIST, AML
juxtamembrane (regulatory)
exon 11: GIST
kinase domain
exon 13: GIST
kinase insert
kinase domain
exon 17: mastocytosis, leukemias, seminomas
COOH

(A)


N′-lobe
catalytic cleft
tyrosine
juxtamembrane domain
activation loop
C′-lobe

(B)


juxtamembrane domain
N′
dimerization
C′
activation loop
initial transphosphorylation
catalytic cleft
secondary transphosphorylation
fully active kinase

(C)

Figure S5.7 Mechanisms governing Kit receptor firing (A) As seen here, the Kit receptor may be found in a constitutively active, mutant form in a number of different types of human tumors (*red type*). Most of the alterations in the indicated exons involve missense point mutations in the reading frame of the Kit mRNA. GIST, gastrointestinal stromal tumor; AML, acute myelogenous leukemia. (B) The cytoplasmic domain of the Flt-3 receptor, which is very closely related to that of Kit, is shown here as a ribbon structure. Like almost all protein kinases, this one is composed of an N-terminal lobe (*red*) and a C-terminal lobe (*blue*), with a catalytic cleft in between. The catalytic cleft is normally obstructed by both an "activation loop" (*green*) and a juxtamembrane domain (*yellow*). In the activation loop, note the tyrosine residue, whose phosphorylation causes this loop to swing out of the way, allowing the catalytic cleft access to substrates. (C) The Kit receptor, which is found in mutant form in almost all gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), often carries alterations affecting the juxtamembrane (JM) domain, depicted here as a *yellow* cylinder that sits above the N-terminal lobe of the two-lobed Kit tyrosine kinase [*side view, plasma membrane* (*not shown*) *above*]. Ligand binding to the Kit receptor results initially in transphosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the JM domain, which causes it to dissociate from the side of the N-terminal lobe; the resulting phosphorylated structure (*yellow zigzag*) is depicted here as sitting above the kinase domain, out of the way. Subsequent transphosphorylation of the key tyrosine residue in the activation loops (*green*; see panel B), which normally obstruct the catalytic clefts, also contributes to activation of kinase function. Mutant Kit receptors with defective JM domains are therefore partially activated even in the absence of ligand binding. (A, courtesy of D. Emerson. B, from J. Griffith, *J. Mol. Cell* 13:169–178, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. C, from P.M. Chan et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 23:3067–3078, 2003. With permission from the American Society for Microbiology.)

Supplementary Sidebar 5.7 Structural alterations of growth factor receptors leading to deregulated firing

A diverse array of structural alterations can also cause ligand-independent receptor dimerization, doing so in the absence of receptor overexpression. This lesson is driven home most dramatically by a mutant version of Neu, the rat ortholog of the human HER2/ErbB2 receptor. Exposure of pregnant rats to the mutagen ethylnitrosourea (ENU) results in the birth of pups that often succumb to neuroectodermal tumors 3 to 6 months later. The tumors almost invariably carry a point mutation in the sequence specifying the transmembrane domain of this receptor. The resulting substitution of a valine by a glutamic acid residue favors the constitutive dimerization of the receptors, even in the absence of ligand binding, thereby creating a potent oncoprotein.

Like HER2/ErbB2/Neu, the EGF and FGF (fibroblast growth factor) receptors may be affected by point mutations or small deletions that generate constitutively active receptors; the responsible somatic mutations alter the cytoplasmic domains of these receptors, perturbing the domains that regulate the receptor-associated tyrosine kinases. In a series of non-small-cell lung carcinomas, about 10% were found to have mutant EGF receptors, and these turned out to be particularly responsive to therapeutic drugs directed against the receptor molecule, as we will learn in Chapter 17. Structurally altered receptors have been found to be far more common in bladder carcinomas: at least 60% of these tumors have been found to harbor subtly altered versions of the FGF receptor-3. The precise mechanism by which truncated, mutant versions of the EGF receptor lacking ectodomains become constitutively activated (see Figures 5.9 and 5.8A) is less well understood. Similarly, the mechanisms by which relatively subtle structural alterations succeed in converting RTKs into the oncoproteins found in certain tumors (see Figure S5.7A) also lack clear explanation.

Quite different major structural alterations of RTKs can also generate oncoproteins. For example, Met, which functions as the receptor for hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), and TrkA, which serves as the receptor for nerve growth factor (NGF), have both been found to have become converted into oncoproteins in some tumors as a consequence of gene fusion events. In addition to truncated ectodomains, the consequences of gene fusions may be receptors whose other parts are fused to unrelated proteins that are normally prone on their own to dimerize or oligomerize (see Figure 5.12). This results in a constitutive, ligand-independent dimerization of these receptors, explaining the oncogenic powers of these fusion proteins. Yet other, subtle changes in receptor structure can also encourage ligand-independent firing in diverse cell types (see Sidebar 5.6).

Supplementary Sidebar 5.8 Mutant forms of a single tyrosine kinase receptor may play a causal role in very different types of cancer

The Kit protein was originally discovered as an oncoprotein encoded by a feline sarcoma retrovirus. The *kit* proto-oncogene encodes a tyrosine kinase receptor whose ligand is stem cell factor (SCF), a growth factor that is important in stimulating the formation of various types of blood cells (the process of hematopoiesis), as well as the development of a variety of nonhematopoietic cell types, including melanocytes and the cells mediating gut motility. Mutant forms of the Kit receptor, which fire constitutively in a ligand-independent fashion, are found in a diverse array of malignancies. In many leukemias of dogs, mutant Kit receptors carrying amino acid substitutions in the cytoplasmic juxtamembrane residues—those close to the transmembrane domain—are common.

The pacemaker cells of the intestine, which control the peristaltic contractions of the smooth muscles of this organ, also rely on the Kit receptor for their proper development, and indeed, these cells are absent if the *kit* gene is inactivated in the germ line (and thus in all cells) of a mouse. In human gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), which seem to arise from these same cells, juxtamembrane amino acid substitutions similar to those seen in dog leukemias are commonly observed. Analyses of the structure of the Kit receptor and related tyrosine kinase receptors indicate that the juxtamembrane domain plays an *inhibitory* role in regulating the receptor, and that its ability to suppress receptor firing is compromised by the amino acid substitutions and deletions in this domain that are commonly seen in GISTs (see Figure S5.7). In one group of GIST patients, those whose tumors carried subtle (missense) mutations affecting exon 11 of the *kit* gene were all alive four years after initial diagnosis and treatment, while only half of those whose GISTs carried deletions of this entire exon survived that long.

Supplementary Sidebar 5.9 Lateral interactions of cell surface receptors

While GF receptors, such as those responding to EGF or PDGF, as well as integrins have been presented here as independently acting signaling proteins, it is becoming increasingly apparent that these cell surface receptors often form lateral complexes with one another and regulate each other's signaling. In addition, integrin:RTK complexes are formed following association of certain integrins with components of the ECM (**Figure S5.8**). For example, after binding its extracellular matrix (ECM) ligands, the αvβ1 integrin can cause phosphorylation of the EGF receptor even in the absence of EGF or EGF-related ligands. This cross-phosphorylation appears to require physical association between the integrin and the EGF-R and depends, as well, on the complex of signaling molecules that the integrin attracts to its C-terminal tail in the cytoplasm. The Src tyrosine kinase, an important component of these integrin signaling complexes (see Figure 6.17), is activated following αvβ1 integrin binding to the ECM and is required for the phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the C-terminal tail of the closely apposed EGF-R. This phosphorylation occurs independently of the EGF-R's binding any of its normal ligands and results in the formation of a spectrum of phosphotyrosines on the C-terminal tail of EGF-R that is different from the spectrum of phosphotyrosines seen after the EGF-R binds one of its ligands. In addition, the amount of EGF-R present on the cell surface increases after the αvβ1 integrin binds ECM ligands. Indeed, efficient EGF-R signaling may actually require integrin association and integrin-mediated signaling.

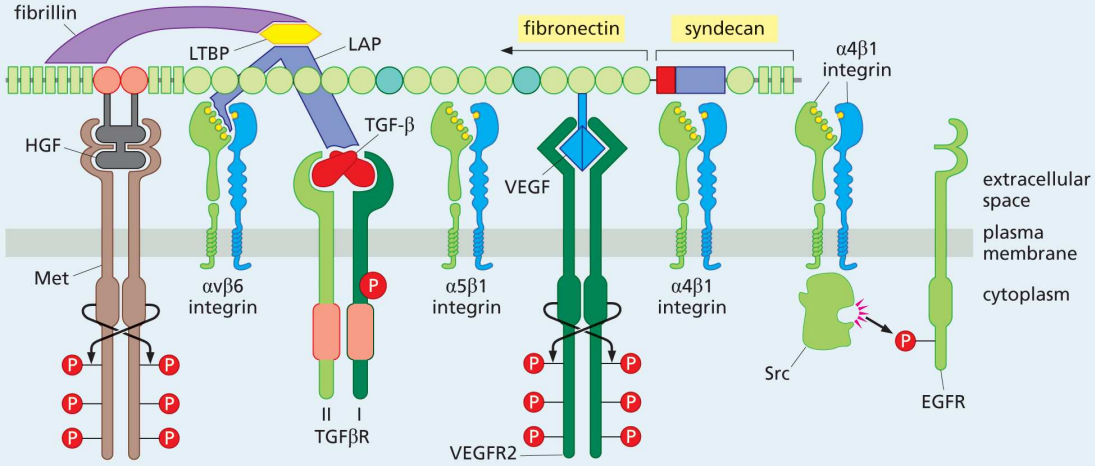


Figure S5.8 Association of integrins and growth factor receptors with extracellular matrix components and with one another Many growth factors do not function as diffusible signaling molecules. Instead, they are frequently attached to components of the extracellular matrix (ECM) following initial synthesis and secretion by a signal-emitting cell and later are either mobilized from the ECM and activated by proteases produced by a second, signal-receiving cell or, alternatively, presented as solid-phase ligands attached to the matrix. Fibronectin is a key component of the ECM (*green* and *pink circles*). The HGF, TGF-β, and VEGF growth factors are bound to the ECM and are apparently presented to their cognate receptors in the form of immobilized ligands. In addition, TGF-β is synthesized in an inactive form and is activated in association with LAP (*dark blue*), LTBP (*yellow*), and fibrillin (*purple*), and αvβ6 integrin. Moreover, integrins αvβ6, α5β1, and α4β1 provide physical anchorage to the ECM via their association with fibronectin and syndecan, a third ECM protein that binds, via a specialized domain (heparan sulfate, *purple*, *blue*), to fibronectin. These various associations with common ECM components serve also to nucleate multiprotein complexes containing integrins, RTKs, and other signaling molecules like Src. (Adapted from R.O. Hynes, *Science* 326:1216–1219, 2009. With permission from AAAS.)

This example is only one of many. Thus, integrin-mediated modulation of tyrosine kinase receptor (RTK) signaling has been described for the platelet-derived growth factor-β (PDGF-β) receptor; a vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) receptor; the hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) receptor (termed Met), and the Met-related Ron RTK, which binds the HGFL (HGF-like) ligand; the insulin receptor (IR); and the EGF-R–related ErbB2/HER2 receptor. And not unexpectedly, interactions between integrins and RTKs can be reciprocal: activation of RTKs by their respective ligands can stimulate signaling by the proteins associated with the C-terminal tails of integrins. Taken together, such reciprocal signaling indicates that RTKs emit signals in part by

activating integrin-associated signaling proteins, while integrins release signals in part by activating RTK-associated proteins.

Supplementary Sidebar 5.10 Cross-phosphorylation and the complexity of signaling processes

As receptor biochemistry is studied in increasing detail, it is also apparent that cross-phosphorylation between receptors occurs commonly and may represent a critical mechanism for controlling cell type–specific signaling. Within the EGF-R family of receptors, for example, HER2 can form heterodimeric complexes with HER3 and phosphorylate the C-terminal tail of the latter, thereby creating binding sites for SH2-containing proteins such as those discussed in Chapter 6; in fact, HER3 itself lacks a catalytically functional kinase (**Figure S5.9**). Perhaps more unexpected are the signals exchanged between unrelated receptors. Thus, the mutant truncated EGF-R present in glioblastomas (Section 5.4) can drive phosphorylation of the *activation loop* of the tyrosine kinase domain of Met (also discussed in Chapter 6); such phosphorylation causes the activation loop to swing out of the way of the catalytic cleft of this kinase, permitting access by the kinase to its substrates and thus its active signaling. In lung carcinomas that have become resistant to a low–molecular-weight inhibitor of the EGF-R tyrosine kinase, a new signaling channel is established in which the Met receptor can drive HER3 tyrosine phosphorylation—a biochemical function that is usually mediated by the HER2 receptor–associated kinase. The formation of physical complexes between these various cross-talking receptors has yet to be directly demonstrated.

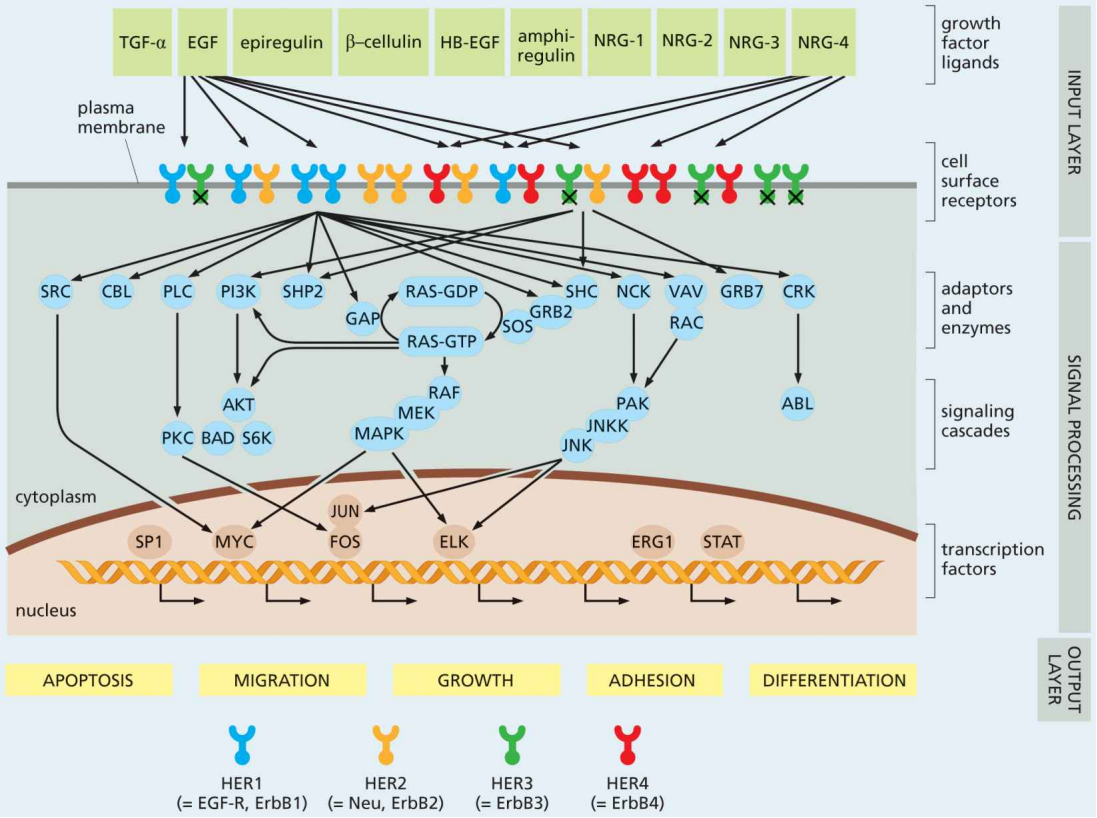


Figure S5.9 The human EGF receptor (HER) signaling network This diagram describes the outlines of the organization of the signaling network that is activated by members of the EGF-R family of receptors. The EGF-R itself is sometimes termed HER1 or ErbB1, while HER2 is often termed HER2/Neu. A variety of protein messengers (growth factor ligands, *light green rectangles*, *top*) interact with a complex array of cell surface receptors, which transduce signals across the plasma membrane (*gray*) into the cytoplasm. There, a complex network of signal-transducing proteins processes these signals, funnels signals into the nucleus (*bottom*), and ultimately evokes a variety of biological responses ("output layer," *yellow rectangles*, *bottom*). Many of the components of this circuitry, both at the cell surface and in the cell interior, are involved in cancer pathogenesis. This cartoon focuses on a small subset of the receptors—the EGF receptor and its cousins—that are displayed on the surfaces of mammalian cells. Note that heterodimeric complexes of certain receptors are indicated (e.g., HER1 + HER2) and that downstream signaling is indicated for only a subset of the receptors expressed at the cell surface. The X's associated with the cytoplasmic domain of HER3 indicate the absence of detectable tyrosine kinase activity in contrast to the readily detectable kinase activity of the other three members of this family of receptors. (From Y. Yarden and M.X. Sliwkowski, *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 2:127–137, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

oligopeptide
: A short protein chain consisting of a relatively small number of amino acids.

immunogen
: (adj., **-genic**) A chemical structure that is capable of provoking some type of immune response, e.g., an antigen that can provoke the synthesis of antibody molecules capable of recognizing and binding it.

lysate
: Product of experimentally dissolving the structure of a tissue or a population of cells, usually generated in order to liberate the internal contents of the tissue or cells.

antigen
: (adj., **-genic**) Molecule or portion of a molecule, often an oligopeptide, that can be specifically recognized and bound by an antibody or a T-cell receptor or that provokes the production of an antibody. *See also* **immunogenic**.

tolerance
: Physiological state that reflects the ability of the immune system to ignore or overlook the body's normal complement of antigens and the cells expressing such antigens.

immunoprecipitate
: Process of precipitating a molecule or molecular complex using an antibody that specifically recognizes and binds such a molecule or a component of such a molecular complex.

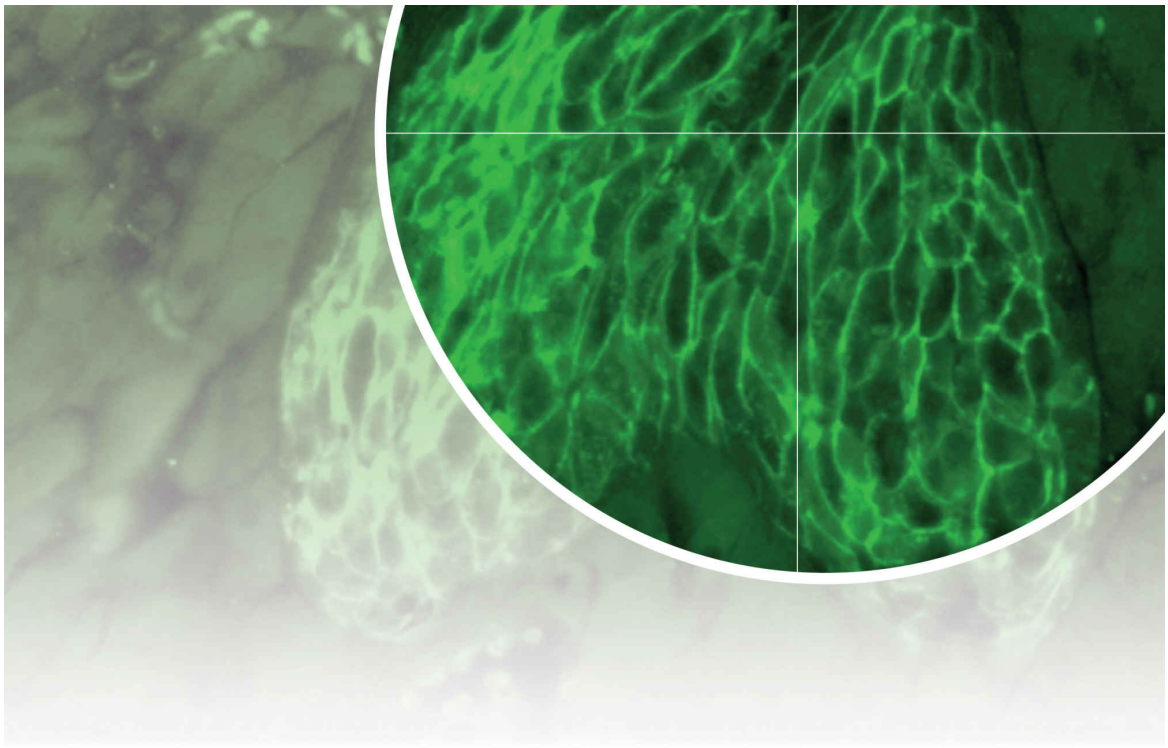
hematopoiesis
: (adj., **-poietic**) Process that results in the formation of all of the cells in the blood, including its red and white cells, the latter including various cells of the immune system.

juxtamembrane
: Located immediately adjacent to a membrane.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 6

Cytoplasmic Signaling Circuitry Programs Many of the Traits of Cancer



Enlarged cells from a mouse pancreas glow green due to fluorescent staining.

Considering the wonderful frame of the human body, this infinitely complicated engine, in which, to the due performance of the several functions and offices of life, so many strings and springs, so many receptacles and channels are necessary, and all to be in their right frame and order; and in which, besides the infinite, imperceptible and secret ways of mortality, there are so many sluices and flood-gates to let death in, and life out, it is next to a miracle we survived the day we were born.

James Puckle, inventor, 1711

Any living cell carries with it the experiences of a billion years of experimentation by its ancestors. You cannot expect to explain so wise an old bird in a few simple words.

Max Delbrück, geneticist, 1966

Cancer is a disease of uncontrolled cell proliferation. Because the proliferative behavior of cancer cells is so aberrant, we might imagine that cancer cells invent entirely new ways of programming their growth and division—that the control circuitry within cancer cells is organized quite differently from that of normal, healthy cells. Such thinking greatly exaggerates the actual differences between normal and neoplastic cells. In truth, the two types of cells utilize control circuitry that is almost identical. Cancer cells discover ways of making relatively minor modifications to the control machinery operating inside cells. They tweak existing controls rather than demolishing the entire machinery and assembling a new version from the remnants of the original.

The present chapter is about this control machinery—really about the signal-processing circuitry that operates within the cell cytoplasm and governs cell growth and proliferation. An electronic circuit board is assembled from complex arrays of hard-wired components that function as resistors, capacitors, diodes, and transistors. The cell also uses circuits assembled from arrays of intercommunicating components, but these are, almost without exception, proteins. While individual proteins and their functions are relatively simple, the operating systems that can be assembled from these components are often extraordinarily complex.

In Chapter 5, we read about the receptors displayed at the cell surface that gather a wide variety of signals and funnel them into the cytoplasm. Here, we study how these signals, largely those emitted by growth factor receptors, are processed and integrated in the cytoplasm. Many of the outputs of this signal-processing circuitry are then transmitted to the nucleus, where they provide critical inputs to the central machinery that governs cell proliferation. Our discussion of this nuclear governor—the *cell cycle clock*—will follow in Chapter 8.

A single cell may express 20,000 or more distinct proteins, many of which are actively involved in the cytoplasmic regulatory circuits that are described here. These regulatory proteins are found in various concentrations and in different locations throughout the cytoplasm; often intercommunicating proteins

congregate in specific organelles or focal areas within the cytoplasm. Moreover, rather than floating around in dilute concentrations in the intracellular water, they form a thick soup. Indeed, as much as 30% of the volume of a cell is taken up by proteins rather than aqueous solvent.

These proteins must be able to talk to one another and to do so with great specificity and precision. The problem of specificity is complicated by the fact that important components of the signaling circuitry, such as kinases, have many paralogs—proteins that share a common evolutionary origin and retain common structural features. For example, there are more than 400 similarly structured serine/threonine kinases in mammalian cells. In spite of this complexity, a signaling protein operating in a linear signaling cascade must recognize only those signals that come from its upstream partner protein(s) and pass them on to its intended downstream partner(s). In so doing, it will largely ignore the thousands of other proteins within the cell.

This means that each protein component of a signaling circuit must actually solve two problems. The first is one of specificity: how can it exchange signals only with the small subset of cellular proteins that are its intended signaling partners in the circuit? Second, how can this protein acquire rapid, almost instantaneous access to these signaling partners, doing so while operating in the viscous soup that is present in the cytoplasm and nucleus?

We study this circuitry because its design and operations provide key insights into how cancer cells arise. Thus, many of the oncoproteins described in previous chapters create cancer through their ability to generate signaling imbalances in this normally well regulated system. At one level, cancer is surely a disease of inappropriate cell proliferation, but as we bore deep into the cancer cell, we will come to understand cancer at a very different level: cancer is really a disease of aberrant signal processing.

The present chapter will perhaps be the most challenging of all chapters in this book. The difficulty comes from the sheer complexity of signal transduction biochemistry, a field that is afflicted with many facts and blessed with only a small number of unifying principles. So, absorb this material in pieces; the whole is far too much for one reading.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

paralog

(*also* **paralogue**) A gene or protein that is related to another gene or protein through evolution from a common ancestral precursor; paralogs usually arise via gene duplication followed by sequence divergence of the two resulting genes, often with the development of two distinct functions, with both resulting genes continuing to be present in the genome of a descendant organism. *See also* **homolog, ortholog**.

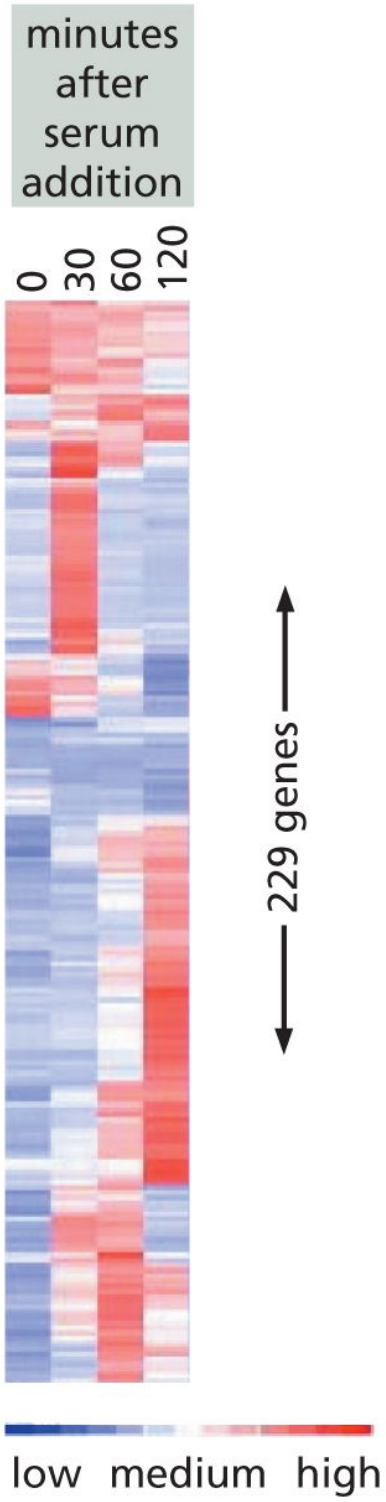
OceanofPDF.com

6.1 A signaling pathway reaches from the cell surface into the nucleus

The growth and division that cells undertake following exposure to mitogens clearly represent complex regulatory programs involving the coordinated actions of hundreds, even thousands of distinct cellular proteins. How can growth factors succeed in evoking all of these changes simply by binding and activating their receptors? And how can the deregulation of these proliferative programs lead to cell transformation? And where does Ras fit into this circuitry, if indeed it does?

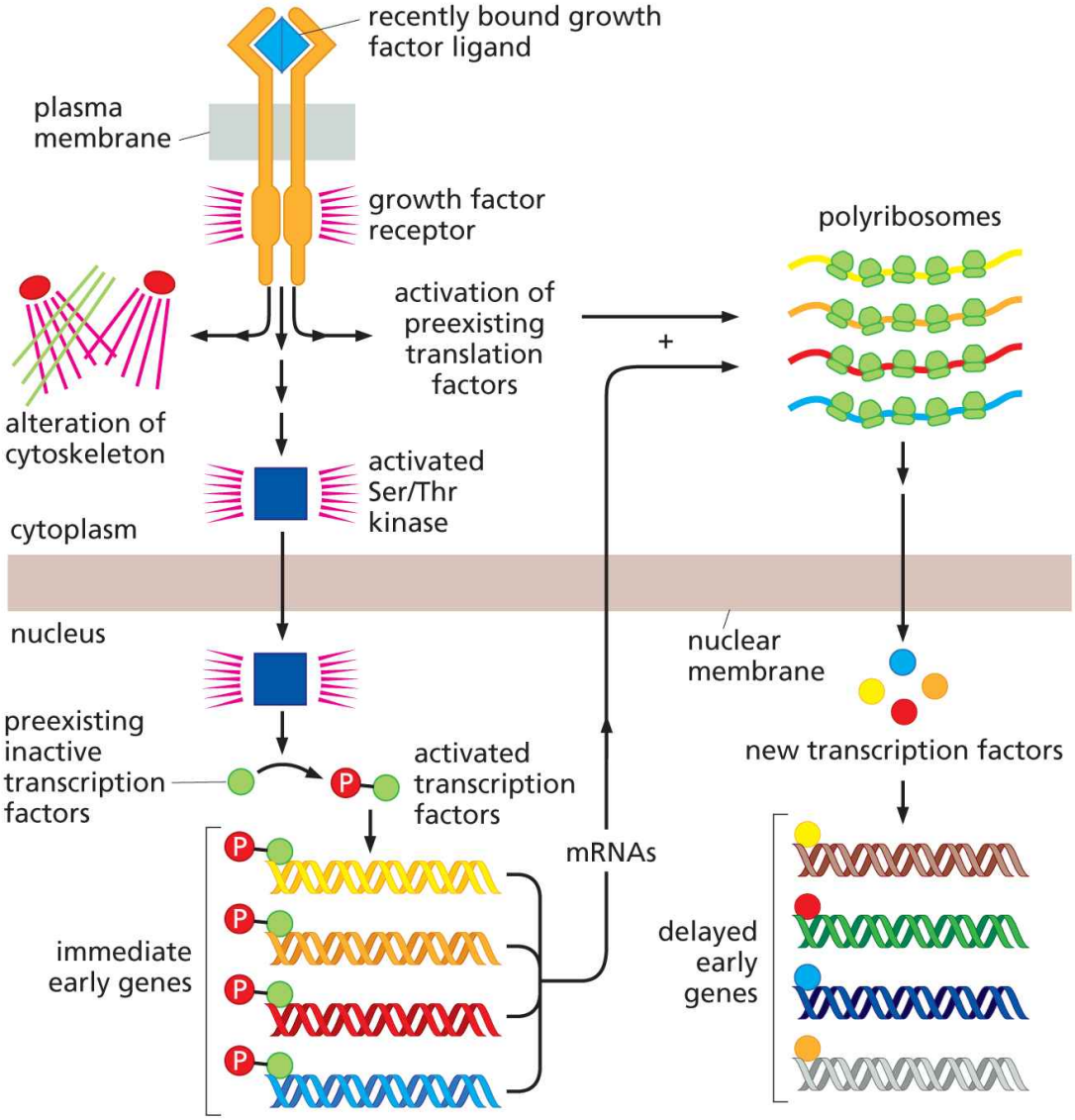
A major insight into these issues came in 1981 from examining the behavior of cultured normal cells, specifically, fibroblasts that had been deprived of serum-associated growth factors for several days. During this period of "serum starvation," the cells within a culture were known to enter reversibly into the nongrowing, quiescent state termed G_0 ("G zero"). After remaining in this G_0 state for several days, serum-starved cells were then exposed to fresh serum and thus to abundant amounts of mitogenic growth factors. The intent of this experiment was to induce all the cells in such cultures to enter into a state of active growth and division synchronously (coordinately). Indeed, within a period of 9 to 12 hours, the great majority of these previously quiescent cells would begin to replicate their DNA and initiate cell division a number of hours later.

These readily observed changes in cell behavior provided no hint of the large number of less obvious but nonetheless important molecular changes that occurred in these cells, often within minutes of exposure to fresh growth factors. For example, within less than an hour, transcription of an ensemble of more than 100 cellular genes was induced (**Figure 6.1**). Expression of these genes, which we now call immediate early genes (IEGs), increased rapidly in the half hour after growth factor stimulation. As is suggested by the contents of **Table 6.1**, the products of some of these genes help cells in various ways to emerge from the quiescent G_0 state into their active growth-and-division cycle. In fact, experiments involving several of these genes showed that blocking their expression prevents the emergence of cells from the G_0 state.



A tall image with four vertical lanes representing instants in time: 0, 30, 60, and 120 minutes after serum addition. Each lane contains 229 thin horizontal bands representing 229 genes. The bands are color-coded, from blue for low expression, through white for medium expression, up to red for high

expression. Some genes remain blue or white up to 60 minutes but then shift to red at 120 minutes. Other genes start out blue, then shift to red at 30 minutes, but then back down to white or even blue at 60 and 120 minutes. Stil other genes remain blue throughout.
(A)



A diagram of a sequence of events that begins with a growth factor receptor in a plasma membrane binding to a growth factor ligand and then signaling. The signaling causes alteration of the cytoskeleton. It also activates S e r slash T h r kinase, which moves through the nuclear membrane into the cell nucleus, where it causes activation through phosphorylation of preexisting inactive transcription factors. These attach to the immediate early genes and produce m R N Aze, which move outside the nucleus. There, they meet up with

preexisting translation factors that were also activated by the growth factor receptor, resulting in polyribosomes. These produce new transcription factors released back into the nucleus to attached delayed early genes.
(B)

Figure 6.1 Expression of immediate and delayed early genes (A) Expression of a large array of "immediate early genes" (IEGs) is induced within the first two hours after serum-starved cells are exposed to fresh serum. The expression of IEGs, by definition, occurs even when protein synthesis is blocked during this period, indicating that the transcription factors regulating expression of these genes are already present in the serum-starved cells. Analyses of the expression patterns of the 14,824 genes surveyed here at 30, 60, and 120 minutes following serum addition led to the identification of 229 genes (*unlabeled, arrayed top to bottom*) that behave like IEGs. Complex signaling cascades explain why some IEGs are only induced with some delay. *Red* indicates a high level of RNA expression, while *blue* indicates low expression. Note that some IEGs are expressed for only a brief period of time before being repressed even though the serum and associated mitogens continue to be present in the culture medium. (B) The profound changes in cell physiology following the application of serum-associated mitogenic growth factors to a cell indicate that growth factor receptors can release a diverse array of biochemical signals once they are activated by ligand binding. The transcription of some IEGs can already be observed within minutes of growth factor stimulation (*lower left*). These contrast with the expression of delayed early genes that requires the synthesis of new transcription factors (*lower right*). (A, from A. Selvaraj and R. Prywes, *BMC Mol. Biol*. 5:13, 2004. With permission from Springer.)

Table 6.1 A sampling of immediate early genes[a]

Name of gene or gene product	**Location of gene product**	**Function of gene product**
fos[b]	nucleus	component of AP-1 TF
junB	nucleus	component of AP-1 TF
egr-1	nucleus	zinc finger TF

Name of gene or gene product	Location of gene product	Function of gene product
nur77	nucleus	related to steroid receptors
Srf-1[c]	nucleus	TF
myc	nucleus	bHLH TF
β-actin	cytoplasm	cytoskeleton
γ-actin	cytoplasm	cytoskeleton
tropomyosin	cytoplasm	cytoskeleton
fibronectin	extracellular	extracellular matrix
glucose transporter	plasma membrane	glucose import
JE	extracellular	secreted cytokine
KC	extracellular	secreted cytokine

Adapted in part from H.R. Herschman, *Annu. Rev. Biochem*. 60:281–319, 1991; and from B.H. Cochran, in R. Grzanna and R. Brown (eds.), Activation of Immediate Early Genes by Drugs of Abuse. Rockville, MD: National Institutes of Health, 1993, pp. 3–24.

A variation of this 1981 experiment was undertaken in which fresh serum was added together with cycloheximide, a drug that shuts down all cellular protein synthesis. In spite of the inhibition of protein synthesis, induction of the immediate early genes

proceeded quite normally. This indicated that all of the proteins required to activate transcription of these genes were already in place at the moment when the serum was added to the cell. Stated differently, the induction of these genes did not require *de novo* (new) protein synthesis.

These results also demonstrated that, in addition to the growth factor receptors at the cell surface, an array of other proteins was present within the cell that could rapidly convey mitogenic signals from the receptors located at the cell surface to transcription factors (TFs) operating in the nucleus. Clearly, the functional activation of such cytoplasmic signal-transducing proteins did not depend upon increases in their concentration (since cycloheximide had no apparent effect on this signaling). Instead, changes in the proteins' structure, configuration, and intracellular localization appeared to play a dominant role in their functional activation soon after the stimulation of tyrosine kinase receptors by their growth factor ligands.

The immediate early genes encode a number of interesting proteins (Table 6.1). Some of them specify transcription factors that, once synthesized, help to induce a second wave of gene expression. Included here are the *myc*, *fos*, and *jun* genes, which were originally identified through their incorporation as oncogenes into the genomes of transforming retroviruses (see Table 3.3). Yet other immediate early genes encode proteins that are secreted growth factors (cytokines) or help to organize the cellular cytoskeleton.

The levels of *myc* mRNA were found to rise steeply following mitogen addition and to collapse quickly following mitogen removal. Moreover, the Myc protein itself turns over rapidly, having a half-life ($T_{1/2}$) of only 25 minutes. Such observations indicated that the levels of the Myc protein serve as a sensitive and responsive intracellular indicator of the amount of mitogens present in the nearby extracellular space.

As an aside, we might note that the activity of Myc operating as a signaling protein derives in large part from major changes in its *concentration* within the cell nucleus. This contrasts starkly with the behavior of cytoplasmic signal-transducing proteins such as Ras and Src. These and many other cytoplasmic signaling proteins respond to mitogenic signals by undergoing *relocalization* within the cell as well as alterations in their *structure* rather than exhibiting significant increases in concentration. This difference is mirrored by the changes occurring when the normal *myc*, *ras*, and *src* genes are converted into oncogenes: the *levels* of Myc protein become deregulated (being expressed constitutively rather than being modulated in response to physiologic signals), whereas the *structures* of the Ras and Src proteins undergo alteration but the amounts of these proteins do not necessarily increase.

Within an hour after the immediate early mRNAs appear, a second wave of gene induction was found to occur. Significantly, the induction of these delayed early genes

was largely blocked by the presence of cycloheximide, indicating that their expression did indeed depend on *de novo* protein synthesis (see Figure 6.1B). (In fact, expression of these delayed early genes seems to depend on transcription factors cited above that are synthesized in the initial wave of immediate early gene expression.)

Addition of growth factors to quiescent cells was found to provoke yet other changes in cell physiology besides the rapid induction of nuclear genes. Following exposure of cells to serum, their rate of protein synthesis increases significantly, this being achieved through functional activation of the proteins that enable ribosomes to initiate translation of mRNAs. Some growth factors were discovered to induce motility in cells, as indicated by the movement across the bottom surfaces of Petri dishes. Yet others can provoke a reorganization of actin fibers that help to construct the cell's cytoskeleton—the intracellular scaffolding that defines cell shape (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.1**). Subsequently, many growth factors were discovered to provide survival signals to cells, thereby protecting them from inadvertent activation of the cell suicide program known as apoptosis, which is described later in Chapter 9.

These diverse responses indicated that a variety of distinct biochemical signals radiate from ligand-activated growth factor receptors, and that these signals impinge on a diverse array of cellular targets. Some of these signals seemed to be channeled directly into the nucleus, where they altered gene expression programs, while others were clearly directed toward cytoplasmic targets, including the protein-synthesizing machinery and the proteins that organize the structure of the cytoskeleton.

Clearly, an understanding of how these signaling cascades operate was very relevant to the cancer problem: if it were true that some oncoproteins flood cells with a continuous stream of mitogenic signals (see Chapter 5), then the transformed state of cancer cells might well represent an exaggerated version of the responses that normal cells exhibit following exposure to growth factors. In fact, many of the traits of cancer cells can indeed be traced to responses evoked by growth factors, while others cannot be predicted by the initial responses of cells to these factors (**Sidebar 6.1**).

Sidebar 6.1 Short-term transcriptional responses to mitogens provide no indication of the gene expression in continuously growing cells

Simple logic would dictate that the transcriptional responses observed shortly after growth factor stimulation of a serum-starved cell ought to predict the transcriptional state of cells in which mitogenic signaling occurs continuously, whether in response to ongoing exposure to growth factors or the activity of certain oncoproteins. Accordingly, the spectrum of immediate and delayed early genes induced within the first hour of growth factor stimulation should also be expressed continuously and at a high rate in transformed cells.

In fact, some genes that are members of the immediate and delayed early gene expression groups are found to be expressed at high levels in cancer cells, while others are not. This discordance derives from negative-feedback controls that force the shutdown of certain genes shortly after they have been expressed. For example, expression of the *fos* gene, itself a proto-oncogene, increases rapidly in response to serum stimulation, peaks, and then declines dramatically, all within an hour or so (see, for example, Figure 6.1A). This shutdown is due to the ability of the Fos protein, once synthesized, to act as a transcriptional repressor of the synthesis of more *fos* mRNA. Numerous other negative-feedback mechanisms operate in cells to ensure that many of the initial biochemical responses evoked by growth factors function only transiently. More generally, negative-feedback loops are installed in virtually all signaling pathways to ensure that the flow of signals through these pathways is tightly controlled in both intensity and duration (see Section 6.14).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immediate early genes
: Referring to the group of genes whose expression is induced within half an hour of growth factor stimulation of previously factor-deprived cells, occurring even when protein synthesis is inhibited. *See also* **delayed early**.

cycloheximide
: Drug that prevents the forward movement of ribosomes down mRNA templates, thereby blocking protein synthesis.

cytokine
: (1) Secreted protein that operates like growth factors to stimulate or inhibit various cell types, notably those constituting various branches of the hematopoietic and immune systems. (2) Less commonly, secreted proteins that convey signals between cells, including mitogenic growth factors.

half-life
: (1) Time during which half of a population of metabolically unstable molecules decays or is eliminated or the time required for half of a physiological signal to decrease. (2) Time in which 50% of the atoms of a quantity of a radioactive isotope decay. (3) Time during which half of the entities forming a large population disappear or are removed.

apoptosis
: Complex program of cellular self-destruction, triggered by a variety of stimuli and involving the activation of caspase enzymes, which drive rapid fragmentation of diverse cellular structures and elimination of all breakdown products of a cell and phagocytosis of resulting cell fragments by neighboring cells or macrophages. *See also* **ferroptosis**, **necroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

de novo
: (1) Arising or formed anew. (2) Occurring for the first time.

synchronous
: (1) Occurring at the same time; i.e., in a temporally coordinated fashion. (2) Referring to a population of cells that enter a specific phase of the cell cycle at the same time. *See also* **asynchronous**.

delayed early

Referring to genes whose expression depends on prior *de novo* protein synthesis and is induced with some delay following growth factor stimulation of a factor-starved cell. *See also* **immediate early**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aThe genes listed here represent only a small portion of the immediate early genes (IEGs; see Figure 6.1A).Return to reference a
- bExpression of a group of *fos*-related genes is also induced as IEGs. These include *fosB*, *fra-1*, and *fra-2*.Return to reference b
- cSrf is a TF that binds to the promoters of other immediate early genes such as *fos*, *fosB*, *junB*, *egr-1*, *egr-2*, and *nur77*; and cytoskeletal genes such as actins and myosins.Return to reference c

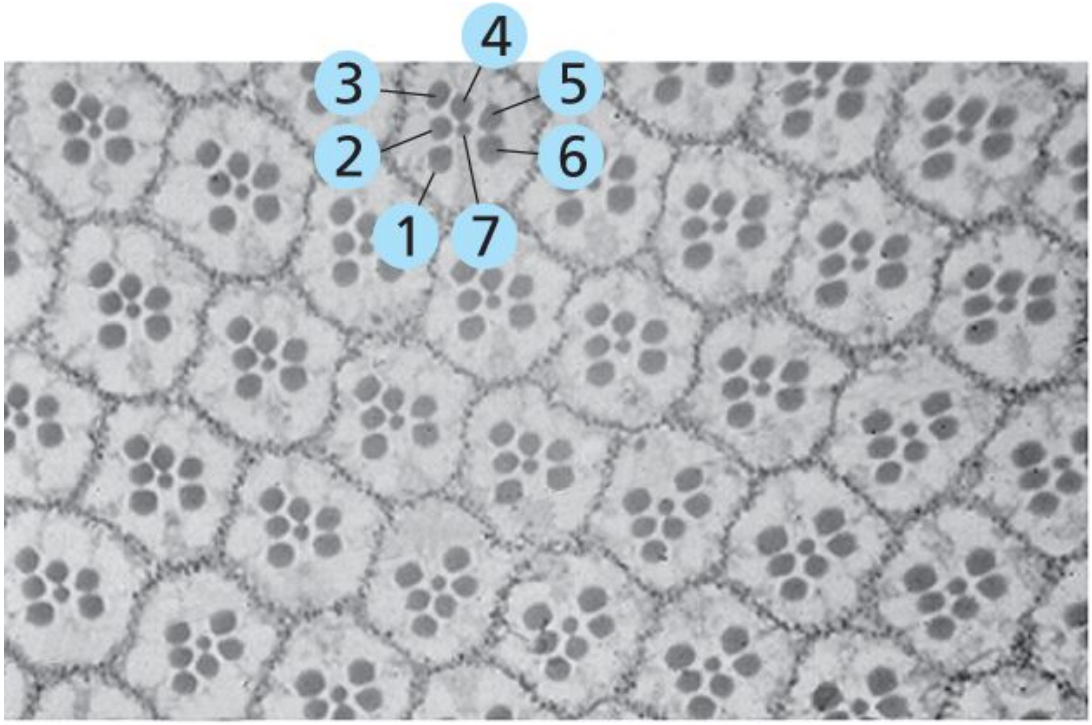
OceanofPDF.com

6.2 The Ras protein stands in the middle of a complex signaling cascade

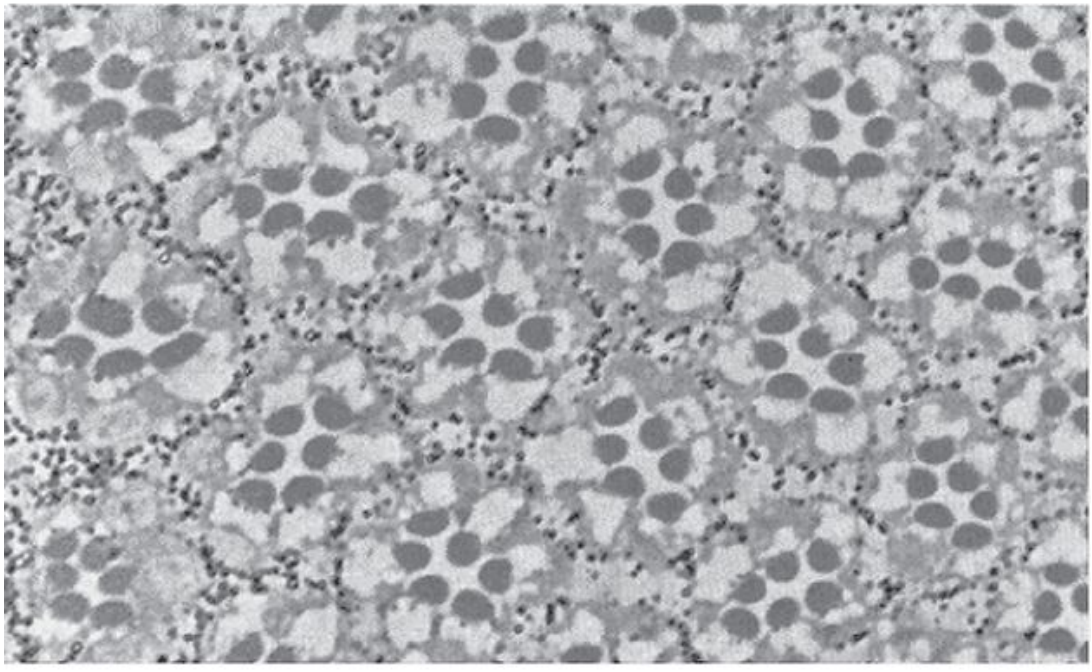
The disparate responses of cells to growth factors represented a challenge to those interested in intracellular signal transduction, since almost nothing was known about the organization and function of the communication channels operating within the cell. Over a period of a decade (the 1980s), these circuits were slowly pieced together, much like a jigsaw puzzle. The clues came from many sources. The story started with Ras and then moved up and down the signaling cascades until the links in the signaling chains were finally connected.

The advances in Ras biochemistry that we discussed in the last chapter (Section 5.10) seemed to explain much about how it operates as a binary switch, but provided no insight into its context—how this protein is connected with the overall signaling circuitry in which it is embedded. Indeed, it remained possible that the Ras protein functioned in a signaling pathway that was independent of the one controlled by growth factors and their receptors.

In the end, the solution to the Ras problem came from a totally unexpected quarter. The genetics of eye development in the fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster* revealed a series of genes whose products were essential for the normal development of the ommatidia, the light-sensing units forming the compound eye. One important gene here came to be called *Sevenless*; in its absence, the seventh cell in each ommatidium failed to form (**Figure 6.2A**). Provocatively, after cloning and sequencing, the *Sevenless* gene was found to encode a protein with the general structural features of a tyrosine kinase receptor, specifically a mammalian FGF receptor.



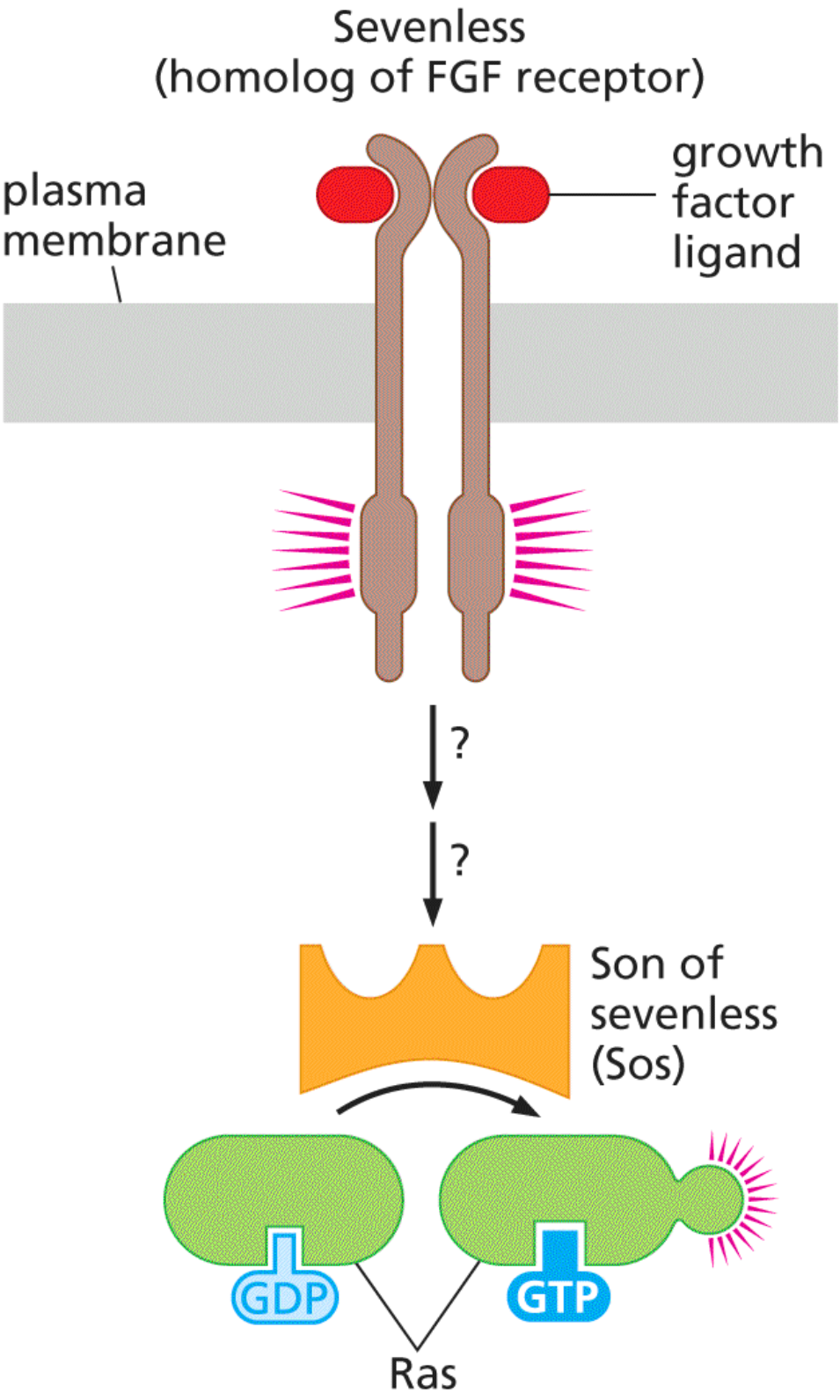
wild type



sevenless mutant

A micrograph of wild-type receptors, in which six large cells surround a smaller seventh one, compared with a micrograph of so-called sevenless receptors in which the seventh cell is missing. This causes a more disorganized appearance of the cells.

(A)


Sevenless
(homolog of FGF receptor)
plasma
membrane
growth
factor
ligand
?
?
Son of
sevenless
(Sos)
GDP
GTP
Ras

A receptor in sevenless, the homolog of an F G F receptor, is bound by a growth factor ligand and is signaling. An unknown cascade, denoted by question marks, leads to a protein named Son of Sevenless, or S o s, that can activate an R a s protein by replacing G D P with G T P.

(B)

Figure 6.2 Son of Sevenless and Ras (A) Study of the light-sensing units in *the Drosophila melanogaster* eye—the ommatidia—revealed that each ommatidium is normally formed from a series of seven cells, with six outer ones surrounding a seventh in the center, as seen in this electron micrograph section (*upper panel*). A fly carrying the mutation in the gene that came to be called *sevenless* produced ommatidia lacking the seventh, central cell (*lower panel*). Later, *sevenless* was found to encode a homolog of the mammalian fibroblast growth factor (FGF) receptor. (B) Genetic studies of *Drosophila* eye development revealed another gene whose product appeared to lie downstream of *Sevenless* in a signaling cascade and specified a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF; *orange*), capable of activating the Ras protein. This gene was named *Son of sevenless* or simply *Sos*. (A, courtesy of E. Hafen.)

Yet other mutations mimicked the effects of *Sevenless* mutation. Genetic complementation tests revealed that these mutations affected genes whose products operate downstream of *Sevenless*, ostensibly in a linear signal transduction cascade. One of these downstream proteins was encoded by a gene that was named *Son of sevenless* or simply *Sos*. Close examination of the Sos amino acid sequence showed it to be related to proteins known from yeast biochemistry to be involved in provoking nucleotide exchange by G (guanine nucleotide–binding) proteins such as Ras. The yeast proteins, often called guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs), were known to induce G proteins to release their bound GDPs, thereby making room for GTPs to jump aboard (see Figure 5.24). The consequence was an activation of these G proteins from their inactive to their active, signal-emitting configuration. This was precisely the effect that Sos exerted on Ras proteins (Figure 6.2B). Therefore, Sos appeared to be the long-sought upstream stimulator that kicked Ras into its active configuration.

Soon other intermediates in the signaling cascade were uncovered. Two of these, Shc (pronounced “shick”) and Grb2 (pronounced “grab two”), were discovered through genetic and biochemical screens for proteins that interacted with phosphorylated receptors or derived peptides. It became apparent that these two

proteins function as adaptors, forming physical bridges between growth factor receptors and Sos; such bridging proteins will be discussed in greater detail later. A third such adaptor protein, called Crk (pronounced “crack”), was identified as the oncoprotein encoded by the CT10 avian sarcoma virus (see Table 3.3).

These discoveries demonstrated the very ancient origins of this signaling pathway, which was already well developed more than 600 million years ago in the common ancestor of all contemporary metazoan phyla. Once in place, the essential components of this cascade remained relatively unchanged in the cells of descendant organisms. Indeed, the individual protein components of these cascades have been so conserved that in many cases the protein components prepared from the cells of members of one phylum (for example, chordates) can be exchanged with those of another (for example, arthropods) to reconstitute a functional signaling pathway.

Together, the genetic and biochemical data from these distantly related animal phyla could be combined in a scheme that suggested a linear signaling cascade organized like this: tyrosine kinase receptor → Shc → Grb → Sos → Ras. While this cascade provided the outline of a signaling channel, it gave little insight into the biochemical interactions that enabled these various proteins to exchange signals with one another.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

complementation

Ability of two mutant genotypes, when coexisting in the same cell or organism, to compensate for each other's defects and thereby create a wild-type phenotype, indicating that the two genotypes carry changes in distinct genes and therefore can be classified as belonging to distinct complementation groups. *See also* **complementation groups**.

OceanofPDF.com

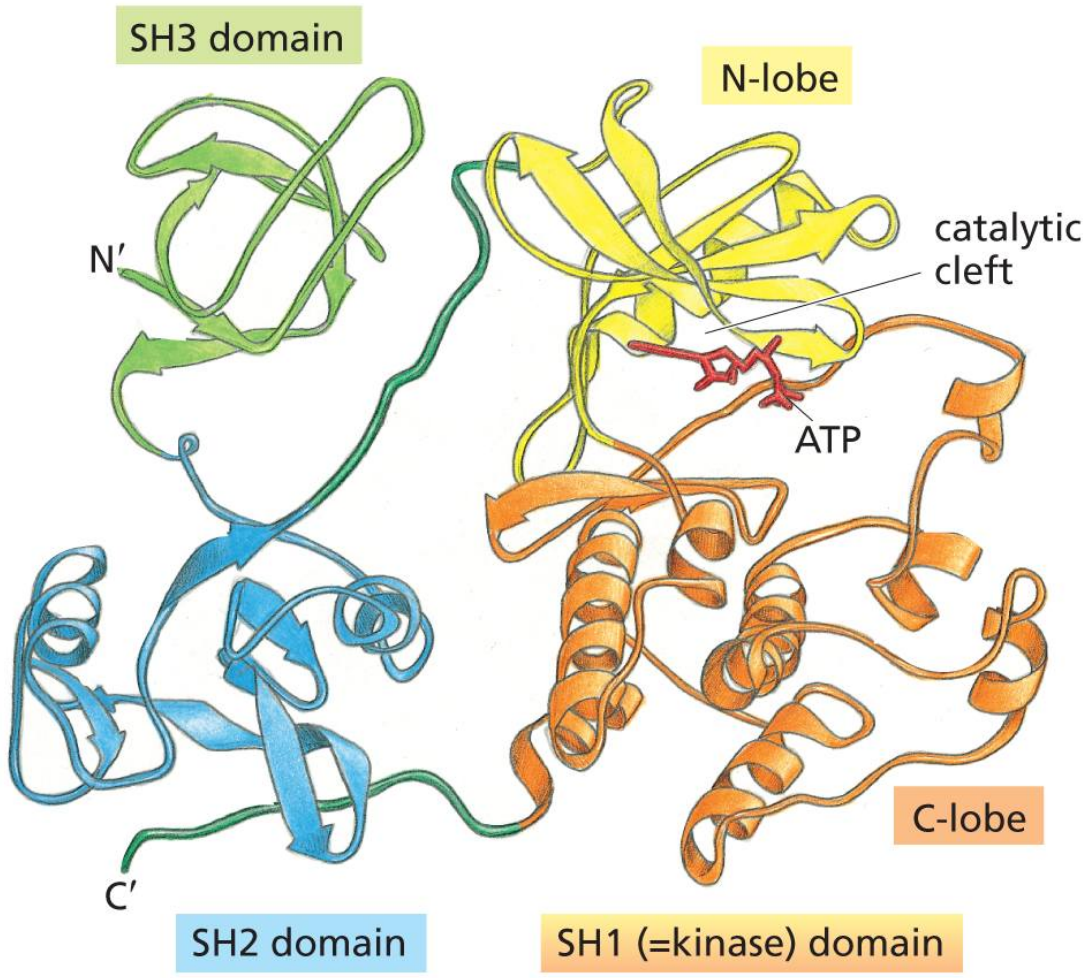
6.3 Tyrosine phosphorylation controls the location and thereby the actions of many cytoplasmic signaling proteins

Among the major biochemical issues left unanswered, perhaps the most critical were the still-mysterious actions of the kinases carried by many growth factor receptors. Was the phosphorylation of these receptors on tyrosine residues crucial to their ability to signal, or was it a distraction? And if this phosphorylation was important, how could it activate the complex signaling circuitry that lay downstream?

Two alternative mechanisms seemed plausible. The first predicted that a receptor-associated tyrosine kinase would phosphorylate a series of target proteins in the cytoplasm. Such covalent modification would alter the three-dimensional *conformation* of the proteins and associated changes in biochemical function (that is, their stereochemistry), thereby placing each of them in an actively signaling state that allowed them to transfer signals to partners one step further down in a signaling cascade. This model implied, among other things, that the phosphorylation of the receptor molecule itself was of secondary importance to signaling.

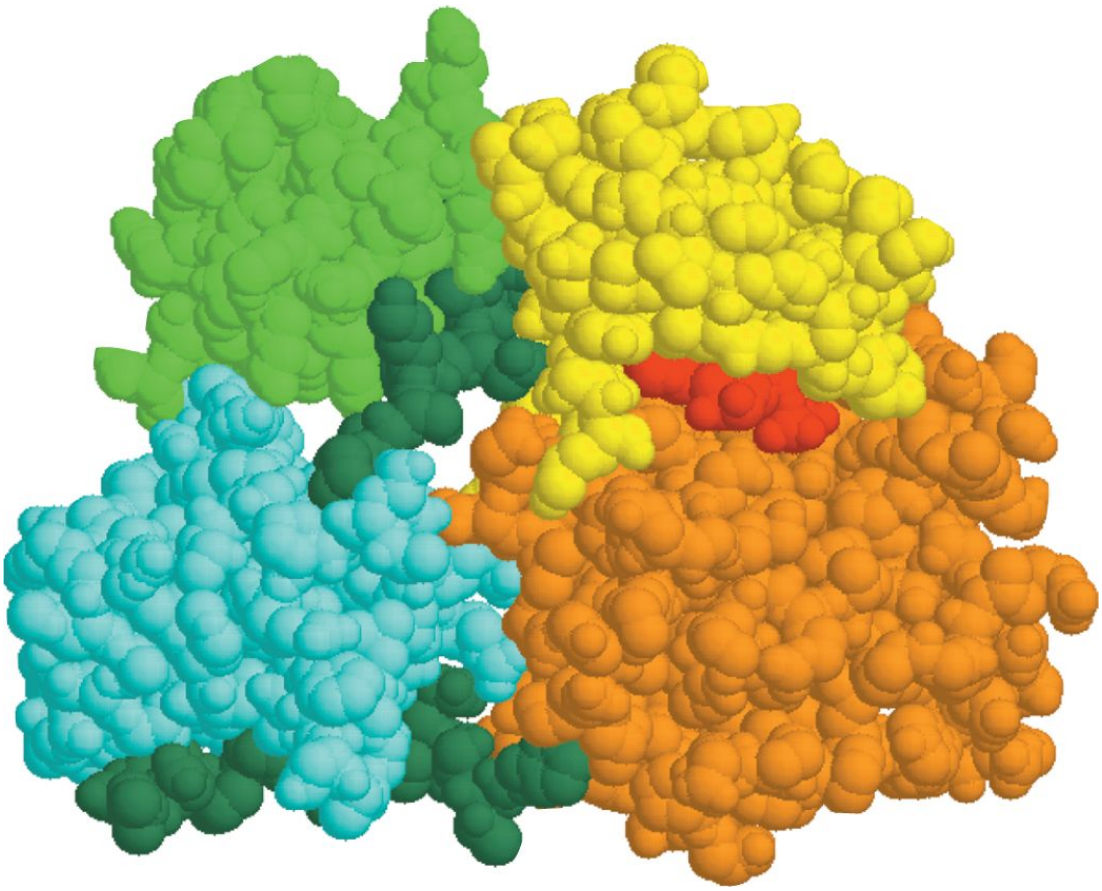
According to the alternative model, the phosphorylation of the cytoplasmic tail of a receptor following growth factor binding (see Figure 5.11A) affected the *physical location* of its downstream signaling partners without necessarily changing their intrinsic activity. Once relocalized to new sites within the cytoplasm, these downstream partners could then proceed with their task of emitting signals to yet other targets in the cell.

As it turned out, the second model, involving protein relocalization, proved to be more important. The salient insights came from analyzing the detailed structure of the Src protein. Researchers noted three distinct amino acid sequence domains, each of which appeared both in Src and in a number of other, otherwise unrelated proteins. These sequences, called Src homology domains 1, 2, and 3 (SH1, SH2, and SH3), provided the key to the puzzle of receptor signaling (**Figure 6.3**).



A ribbon diagram with four domains. The upper left S H 3 domain appears in green; it consists of a few flattened ribbons. The lower left S H 2 domain appears in blue; it consists of a few flattened ribbons. The right side is the S H 1 domain or kinase domain. Its upper half is the N lobe, which appears in yellow; it consists of flattened ribbons. The lower half is the C lobe, which appears in orange; it consists of coils. A red A T P molecule is shown in the catalytic cleft between the N and C lobes.

(A)



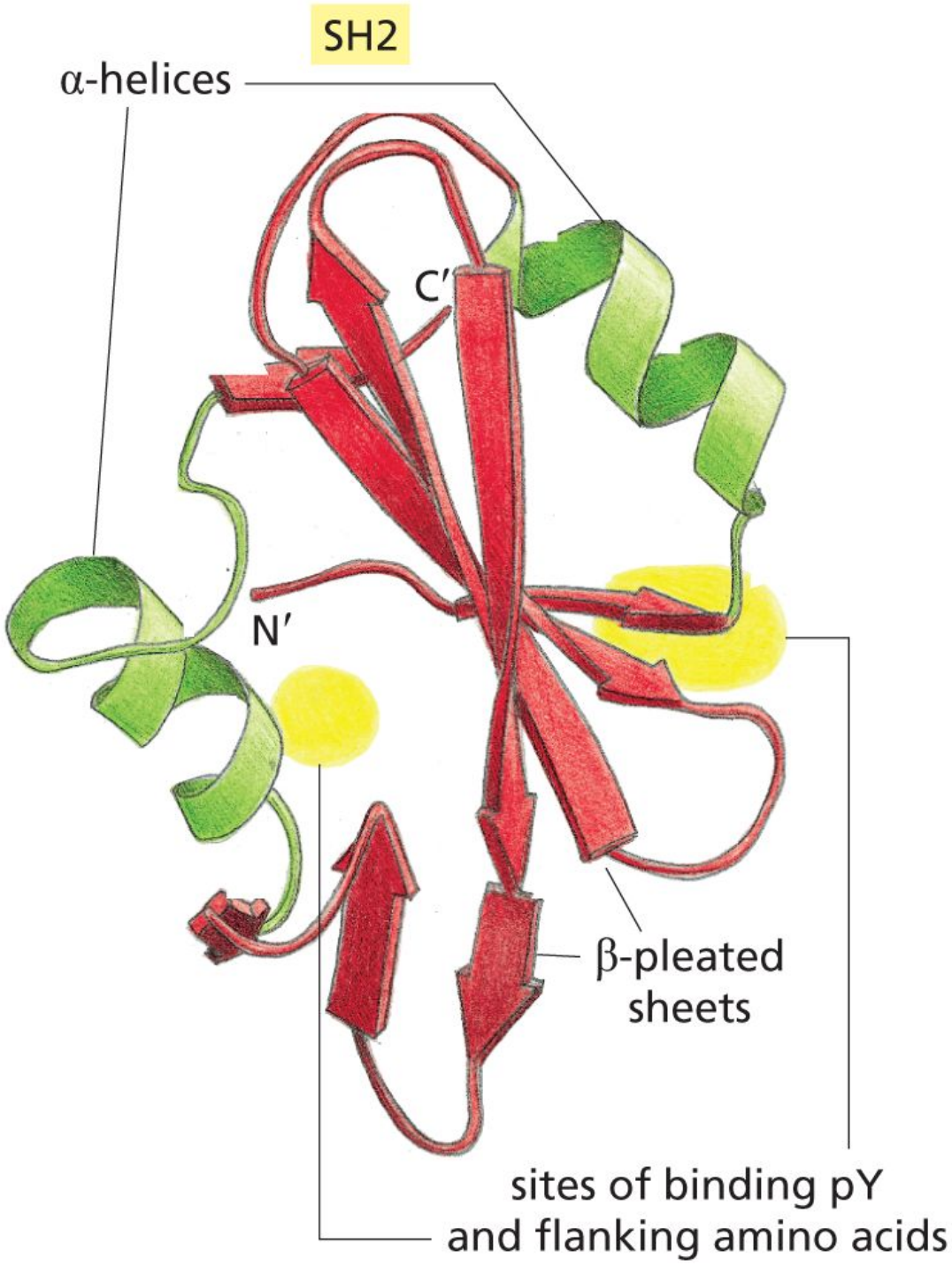
A space filling model of the Sarc protein, with green, blue, yellow and orange components as in Part A.

(B)

Figure 6.3 Domain structure of the Src protein Sequence analyses of the Src protein revealed three distinct structural domains that are also found in a number of otherwise-unrelated proteins. (A) In this ribbon diagram of Src—the product of X-ray crystallography—coils indicate α-helices, while flattened ribbons indicate β-pleated sheets. Like the great majority of other subsequently analyzed protein kinases, the catalytic SH1 (Src homology) domain is seen to be composed of two subdomains (*right*), termed the N- and C-lobes of the kinase (*yellow, orange*; *right*). Between these lobes is the ATP-binding site (ATP—*red stick figure*) where catalysis takes place. The SH2 and SH3 domains (*blue, light green*; *left*) are involved in substrate recognition and regulation of catalytic activity. (B) A space-filling model of Src is presented in the same color scheme. Connecting segments are shown in *dark green*. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2015.)

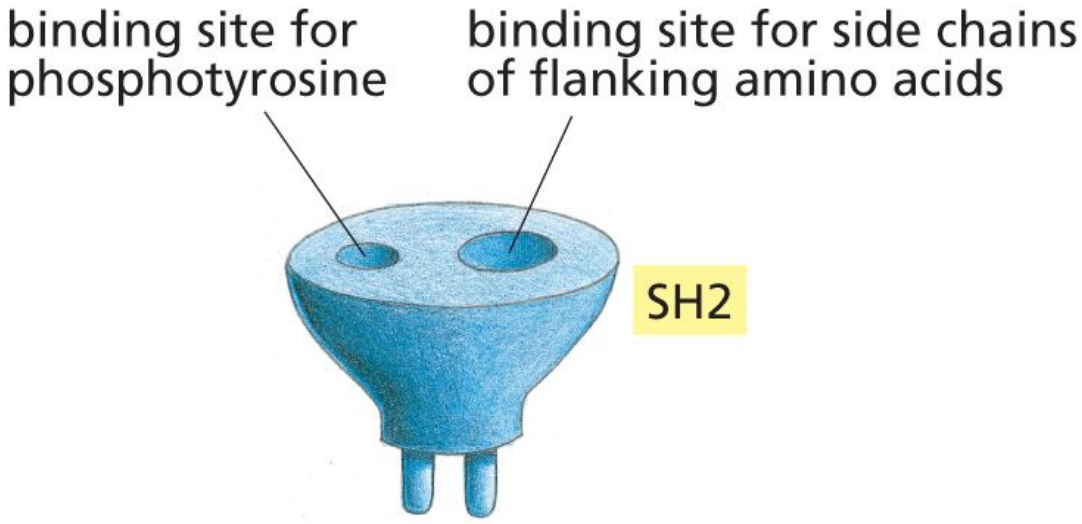
The SH1 domain of Src represents its catalytic domain, and indeed similar sequence domains are present in all receptor tyrosine kinases, as well as in the other, nonreceptor tyrosine kinases that are configured like Src. This shared sequence relatedness testifies to the common evolutionary origin of all these kinases.

Clever biochemical sleuthing conducted in the late 1980s uncovered the role of the SH2 domain present in Src and other signaling proteins. This relatively small structural domain of about 100 amino acid residues (**Figure 6.4A and B**) acts as an intracellular "receptor." The "ligand" for this SH2 receptor is a short oligopeptide sequence that contains both a phosphorylated tyrosine and a specific oligopeptide sequence 3 to 6 residues long that flanks the phosphotyrosine on its C-terminal side.



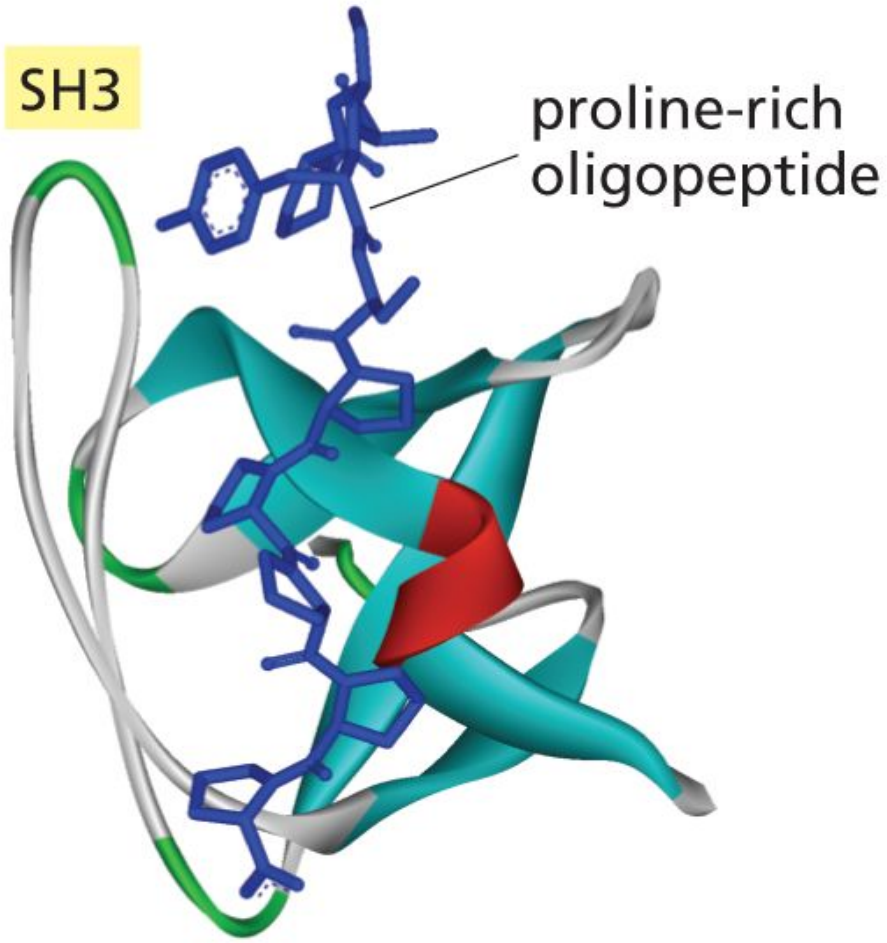
The S H 2 domain is shown to consist of beta-pleated sheets in red, which include the N prime and C prime ends, flanked by alpha-helices in green. Two sites of binding p Y and flanking amino acids are indicated.

(A)



The S H 2 domain is shown very schematically as a plug with two prongs at the bottom pointing down and two different-size sockets on top. The smaller one is the binding site for phosphotyrosine; the larger one is the binding site for side chains of flanking amino acids.

(B)



A ribbon diagram of S H 3 in aqua, red and white, with a long proline-rich oligopeptide attached in dark blue.

(C)

Figure 6.4 Structure and function of SH2 and SH3 domains (A) This SH2 domain is seen in a different orientation from that in Figure 6.3. As revealed by X-ray crystallography, a typical SH2 domain is composed of about 100 amino acid residues and is assembled from a pair of anti-parallel β-pleated sheets (*red*) surrounded by a pair of α-helices (*green*). (The N′- to C′-terminal orientation is indicated by the arrowheads.) The sites of interaction by the SH2 domain with its "ligand"—a phosphotyrosine (pY)-containing peptide (composed of a pY and flanking amino acids)—are indicated by the *yellow* spots. (B) As indicated, the SH2 domain can be thought to function like a modular plug: it recognizes both a phosphotyrosine and the amino acids that flank this phosphotyrosine on its C-terminal side. These flanking amino acid residues determine the specificity of binding, i.e., the identities of the particular phosphotyrosine-containing

oligopeptides that are recognized and bound by a particular SH2 domain. (C) The SH3 domain (*ribbon diagram*), shown in a different orientation from that of Figure 6.3, recognizes as its ligands proline-rich oligopeptide (*blue stick figure*) sequences in partner proteins. (A, from G. Waksman et al., *Cell* 72:779–790, 1993. With permission from Elsevier. B, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the *Cell*, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2015. C, adapted from S. Casares et al., *Protein* 67:531–547, 2007.)

Soon, it became apparent that there are dozens of distinct SH2 domains, each carried by a different protein and each having an affinity for a specific phosphotyrosine-containing oligopeptide sequence that functions as its ligand. By now, the sequence specificities of a substantial number of SH2 groups have been cataloged. The human genome is estimated to encode at least 120 distinct SH2 groups, each constituting a domain of a larger protein and each apparently having an affinity for binding a particular phosphotyrosine together with a flanking oligopeptide sequence. (Ten proteins carry two SH2 domains, yielding a total census of 110 distinct SH2-containing proteins in our cells.)

Most commonly, an SH2 domain enables the protein carrying it to associate with a partner protein that is displaying a specific phosphotyrosine plus flanking amino acid sequence, thereby forming a physical complex between these two proteins. Some SH2-bearing proteins carry no enzymatic activity at all. Other such proteins, in addition to their SH2 domains, carry catalytic sites that are quite different from the tyrosine kinase (TK) activity present in Src itself. For example, one form of phospholipase C carries an SH2 domain, as does the p85 subunit of the enzyme phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K). The SHP-1 protein, discussed in **Sidebar 6.2**, carries two SH2 domains linked to a protein tyrosine phosphatase (PTP) catalytic domain, that is, a domain with an enzymatic activity that removes phosphate groups from tyrosine residues, thereby reversing the actions of tyrosine kinases.

Sidebar 6.2 A negative-feedback control mechanism leads to an SH2-containing molecule that can determine outcomes of Olympic competitions

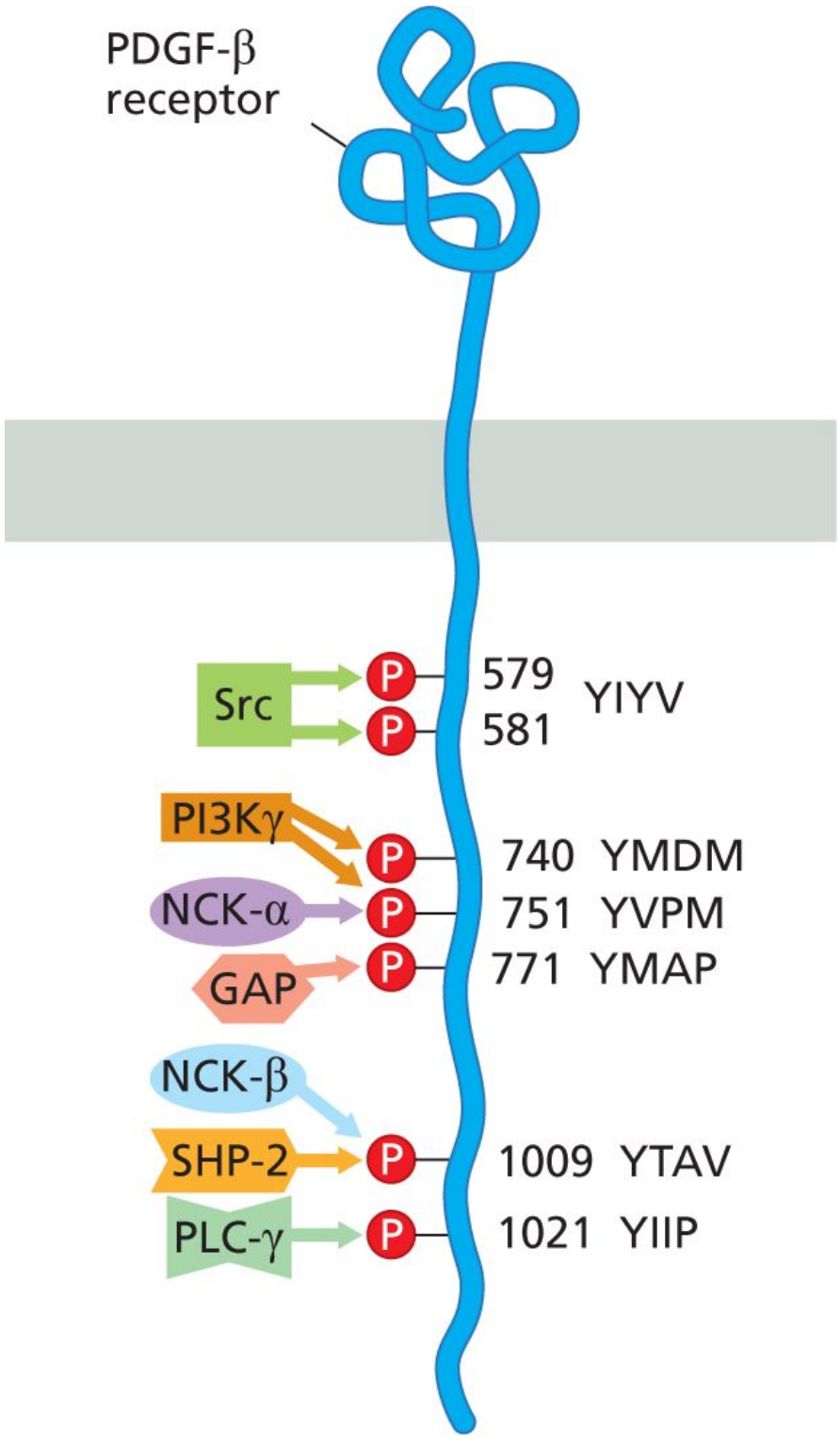
One of the SH2-containing partners of tyrosine kinase receptors is a phosphotyrosine phosphatase (PTP), an enzyme that removes the phosphate group from phosphotyrosine. Once tethered via its SH2 group to a ligand-activated, tyrosine-phosphorylated receptor, this particular phosphatase, termed SHP-1, begins to chew away the phosphate groups on tyrosine residues that have enabled the receptor to attract other downstream signaling partners. In this fashion, an enzyme such as SHP-1 creates a negative-feedback loop to shut down further receptor firing. In fact, the SHP-1 phosphatase is responsible for shutting down signaling by a variety of receptors,

among them the receptor for the erythropoietin (EPO) growth factor, which normally responds to EPO by triggering erythropoiesis—red blood cell formation (see Section 6.8 and Figure 6.16). (The catalytic activity of the phosphatase domain of the related SHP-2 protein is increased by >100-fold following binding of its two SH2 groups to phosphotyrosines.)

Some individuals inherit a mutant gene encoding an EPO receptor that lacks the usual docking site for the SHP-1 phosphatase. In individuals whose cells express this mutant receptor, the resulting defective negative-feedback control leads to a hyperactive EPO receptor, and, in turn, to higher-than-normal levels of red cells and thus oxygen-carrying capacity in their blood. In the case of several members of a Finnish family with this inherited genetic defect, this condition seems to have played a key role in their winning Olympic medals in cross-country skiing! Provocatively, expression of SHP-1 is shut down in many leukemias and non-Hodgkin's lymphomas; this permits multiple mitogen receptor molecules to fire excessively in the tumor cells.

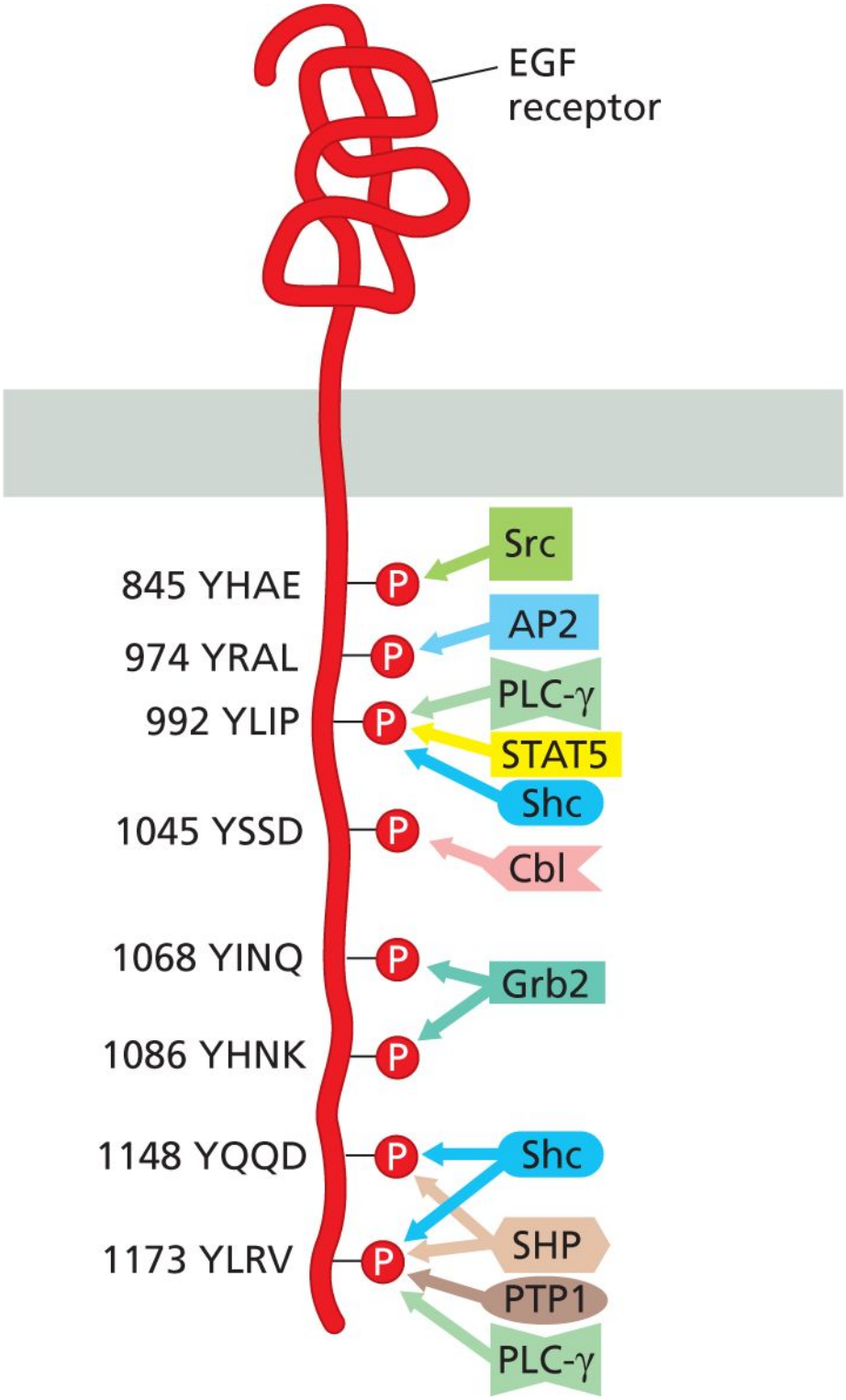
These findings indicated that the catalytic domains of the various proteins and their SH2 groups function as independent structural modules that have been pasted together in various combinations by evolution. The SH2 group(s) borne by each of these proteins allows them to become localized to certain sites within a cell, specifically to those sites that contain particular phosphotyrosine-bearing proteins to which the SH2-containing protein can become tethered.

The discoveries about SH2 groups finally solved the puzzle of how tyrosine kinase receptors are able to emit signals. The story is illustrated schematically in **Figure 6.5A and B**. As a consequence of ligand-induced transphosphorylation, a receptor molecule, such as the PDGF-β receptor, will acquire and display a characteristic array of phosphotyrosine residues on its cytoplasmic tail; likewise, the EGF receptor will display its own spectrum of phosphotyrosines on its cytoplasmic tail. The unique identity of each of the phosphotyrosine residues borne by these tails is dictated by the sequence of amino acid residues flanking the phosphotyrosine on its C-terminal side. These phosphotyrosines become attractive homing sites for various SH2-containing cytoplasmic proteins, specifically, proteins that normally reside in the soluble portion of the cytoplasm (the cytosol) and are therefore free to move from one location to another in the cytoplasm. Consequently, shortly after becoming activated by ligand binding, a growth factor receptor becomes decorated with a specific set of these SH2-containing partner proteins that are attracted to its various phosphotyrosines.



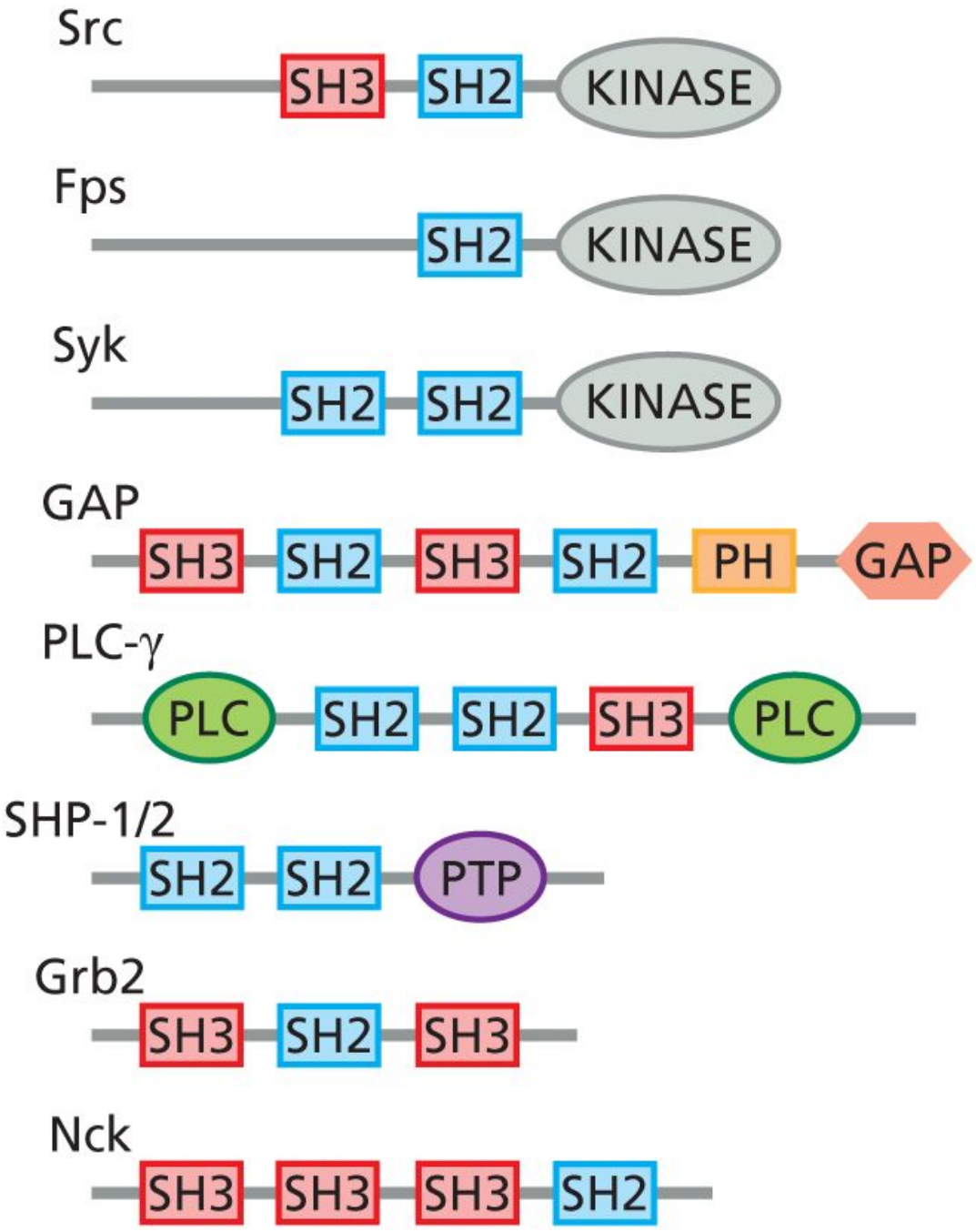
A schematic of the P D G F-beta receptor. The C-terminal domain has seven phosphorylated tyrosine residues attached, at positions 579, 581, 740, 751, 771, 1009 and 1021. In rough correspondence, seven cytoplasmic proteins are shown down the left: Sarc, P I 3 K gamma, N C K alpha, G A P, N C K beta, S

H P 2 and P L C gamma. On the right is a list of six codes: Y I Y V, Y M D M, Y V P M, Y M A P, Y T A V and Y I I P.
(A)



Aschematic of the E G F receptor. The C-terminal domain has eight phosphorylated tyrosine residues attached, at positions 845, 974, 992, 1045, 1068, 1086, 1148 and 1173. In very rough correspondence, eleven cytoplasmic proteins are shown down the right: Sarc, A P 2, P L C gamma, STAT 5, S h c, C b l, G r b 2, S h c again, S H P, P T P 1 and P L C gamma again. On the right is a list of eight codes, one for each position: Y H A E, Y R A L, Y L I P, Y S S D, Y I N Q, Y H N K, Y Q Q D, Y L R V.

(B)



A list of eight proteins showing a sequence of domains for each. For Sarc the sequence is S H 3, S H 2, KINASE. For F p s, the sequence is S H 2, KINASE. For S y k, the sequence is S H 2, S H 2, KINASE. For G A P, the sequences is S H 3, S H 2, S H 3, S H 2, P H, and G A P. For P L C gamma, the sequence is P L C, S H 2, S H 2, S H 3, P L C. For S H P one half, the sequence is S H 2, S H 2, P T P. For G r b 2, the sequence is S H 3, S H 2, S H 3. Finally, for N c k, the sequence is S H 3, S H 3, S H 3, S H 2.

(C)

Figure 6.5 Attraction of signal-transducing proteins by phosphorylated receptors (A) This schematic diagram of a molecule of the platelet-derived growth factor-β (PDGF-β) receptor, which omits its tyrosine kinase domain, reveals a large number of tyrosine residues in its C-terminal domain that undergo phosphorylation following ligand binding and receptor activation. (The positions of these tyrosine residues in the receptor polypeptide chain are indicated by the numbers.) Listed to the left are seven distinct cytoplasmic proteins, each of which can bind via its SH2 domain(s) to one or more of the phosphotyrosines of the PDGF-β receptor. The three amino acid residues (denoted by the single-letter code) that flank each tyrosine (Y) residue on its C-terminal side define the unique binding site recognized by the various SH2 domains of these seven associated proteins. (The "kinase insert region" and associated phosphotyrosine in the middle of the PDGF-β receptor tyrosine kinase domain is not shown.) (B) Similarly, a constellation of phosphotyrosines can be formed after the EGF receptor binds its ligand, often forming heterodimers with the HER2 receptor protein. However, the spectrum of SH2-containing proteins that associates with the EGF-R is quite different, allowing this receptor to activate a set of downstream signaling pathways that are different from those associated with the PDGF-β receptor. Not shown here is the binding of Grb2 to Y1045, Y1101, Y1148, and Y1173, as well as the binding of Shc to Y1045, Y1068, Y1086, and Y1101. (C) Specific multiprotein complexes are formed using domains such as the SH2, SH3, and PH domains, which bind phosphotyrosines, proline-rich sequences, and PIP3, respectively (discussed in Section 6.6). As is indicated here, evolution has shuffled these domains in a modular fashion, attaching them to tyrosine kinase catalytic domains in the case of the first three tyrosine kinases (Src, Fps, and Syk), to a GAP (Ras GTPase-activating protein) domain, to a PLC (phospholipase C) domain, or to a protein tyrosine phosphatase domain (SHP-1, SHP-2). At the bottom are shown two adaptor or "bridging" proteins that contain only SH2 and SH3 domains and lack catalytic domains; each of these adaptors serves as a linker between pairs of other proteins, one of which carries a certain phosphotyrosine (to which an SH2 domain can bind) and the other of which carries a proline-rich domain (to which an SH3 domain can bind; see Figure 6.7). (A and C, adapted from T. Pawson, *Adv. Cancer Res*. 64:87–110, 1994. B, adapted from R. Sordella et al., *Science* 305:1163–1167, 2004.)

For example, one ligand-activated form of the PDGF receptor attracts Src, PI3K, Ras-GAP (which stimulates Ras GTPase activity; refer to Sidebar 5.8), SHP-2 (SH2-containing tyrosine phosphatase 2), and PLC-γ (phospholipase C-γ). Each of these recruited proteins carries at least one SH2 domain (Figure 6.5C), and all of them flock to the PDGF-R after its cytoplasmic tail and a short segment in the middle of its kinase

domain (called a “kinase insert region”) become tyrosine-phosphorylated. Once tethered to the PDGF-R, some of these SH2-containing proteins may then become substrates for tyrosine phosphorylation by the PDGF-R kinase. Yet other proteins serve as bridges by attracting additional proteins to these multiprotein complexes (see Figure 6.7 in the next section). (It remains unclear whether all of these SH2-containing proteins can bind simultaneously to a single ligand-activated PDGF receptor molecule.)

The biochemical diversity of these associated proteins provides us with at least one solution to the question of how a growth factor receptor is able to elicit a diversity of biochemical and biological responses from a cell: each of these associated proteins controls its own downstream signaling cascade, and each of these cascades, in turn, influences a different aspect of cellular behavior. By becoming tethered to a receptor molecule, these SH2-containing proteins are poised to activate their respective cascades. Some of these SH2-bearing proteins function to activate negative-feedback loops that ultimately shut down receptor signaling, as discussed in Sidebar 6.2 and again later in this chapter.

Because the cytoplasmic domains of tyrosine kinase receptors are found near the inner surface of the plasma membrane, the SH2-containing partner proteins attracted to the receptor are brought into close proximity to the plasma membrane and thus close to other molecules that are, for their own reasons, already tethered to this membrane. This close juxtaposition enables various SH2-containing proteins to interact directly with the membrane-associated proteins and phospholipids, thereby generating a variety of biochemical signals that can thereafter be transmitted to various downstream signal-transducing cascades.

For example, the Ras GTPase-activating protein (Ras-GAP), having become attached to a phosphorylated receptor, is tethered in close proximity to Ras proteins, many of which are permanently anchored to the plasma membrane via their C-terminal lipid tails. This allows Ras-GAP to interact with nearby Ras molecules, stimulating them to hydrolyze their bound GTPs and thereby convert from an active to an inactive signaling state (see Figure 5.24).

Similarly, when phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) becomes tethered via its SH2 group near the plasma membrane, it is able to reach over and phosphorylate inositol lipids embedded in the membrane; we return to this enzyme and its mechanism of action in Section 6.6. Yet another example is provided by phospholipase C-γ (PLC-γ), which, when juxtaposed to the plasma membrane via receptor tethering, is able to cleave a membrane-associated phospholipid [phosphatidylinositol (4,5)-diphosphate, or PIP2] into two products (IP3 and DAG; see Figure 6.11), each of which, on its own, has potent signaling powers. The point here is that many reactions become possible (or

can proceed at much higher rates) when enzymes and their substrates are brought into close proximity through tethering of these enzymes to phosphorylated receptors.

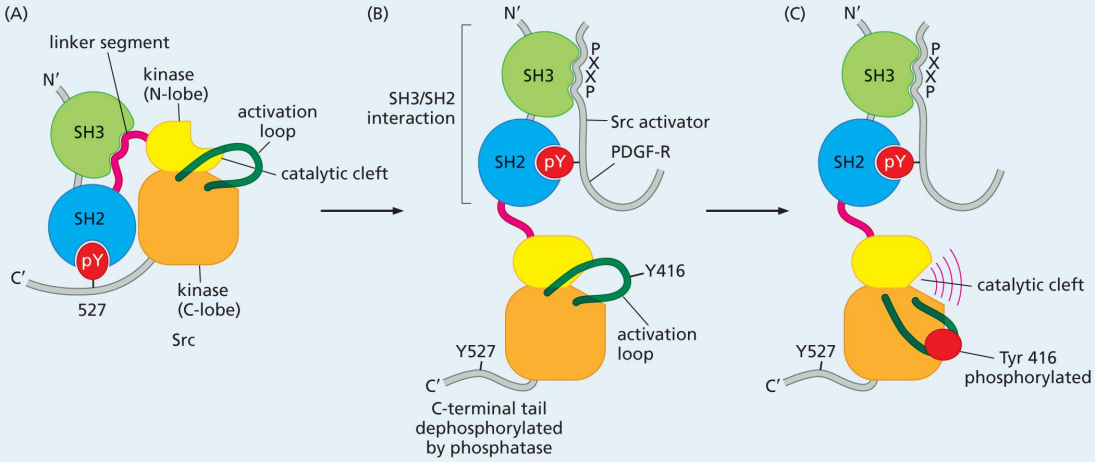
The discovery of SH2 domains and their presence in a diverse array of signaling proteins solved a long-standing paradox. The dozens of distinct RTKs expressed by human cells were known to carry essentially identical tyrosine kinase signal-emitting domains, yet these receptors, when activated by ligand binding, clearly induced very different cellular responses. This puzzle was resolved when it was realized that, following ligand binding, each RTK acquires its own particular array of phosphotyrosine-containing peptides (see Figure 6.5A and B), enabling it to attract its own combination of downstream signaling partners. In recent years, systematic surveys have been undertaken to reveal the full range of interactions between RTKs, such as the EGF receptor, and the various SH2 domain–containing proteins in the cytoplasm (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.2**). In the longer term, such surveys will provide the databases that will make it possible to construct mechanistic models that help to predict how individual receptors, once activated by their ligands, operate to change the biochemistry and physiology of a cell. Nonetheless, even with this information in hand, a significant number of other variables complicate attempts to understand precisely how individual ligand-activated RTKs function (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.2**).

The last of the sequence motifs present in Src (see Figure 6.3)—SH3 domains—were initially found to bind specifically to certain proline-rich sequence domains in partner proteins; these proline-rich sequences thus serve as the ligands of the SH3 domains (see Figure 6.4C). (A rapidly growing minority of SH3 groups has been found to recognize ligands of a quite different structure.) These SH3 domains are a relatively ancient invention (apparently originating in an array of protozoa more than one billion years ago), since there are at least 28 of them in various proteins of the yeast *S. cerevisiae*. The SH2 domain, in contrast, seems to be of more recent vintage, having been invented and subsequently diversified possibly at the same time as tyrosine phosphorylation came into widespread use—perhaps 900 million years ago when the first metazoa arose.

In the specific case of the SH3 domain of Src, there is evidence that this domain is used to recognize and bind certain proline-rich substrates, which can then be phosphorylated by Src's kinase activity. Yet other evidence points to a proline-rich linker domain within Src itself, to which Src's SH3 domain associates, creating intramolecular binding (**Sidebar 6.3**). Through analyses of the human genome sequence, almost 300 distinct human SH3 domains have been documented, each part of a larger protein.

Sidebar 6.3 The SH2 and SH3 domains of Src both have alternative functions

We have portrayed SH2 as a protein domain that enables its carrier to recognize and bind to other phosphotyrosine-containing partner proteins, thereby forming bimolecular complexes. In tyrosine kinases such as Src, however, the SH2 group can also play a quite different role. Like most signaling molecules, the Src kinase is usually held in a functionally silent configuration. It is kept in this inactive state by a negative regulatory domain of Src—a stretch of polypeptide that lies draped across the catalytic site of Src and blocks access to the substrates of this kinase. This obstructing domain (sometimes called an "activation loop" (*dark green*); see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.6**) is held in place, in part, through the actions of the Src SH2 group, which recognizes and binds a phosphotyrosine in position 527 of Src itself. Hence, this SH2 group is forming an *intra*molecular rather than an *inter*molecular bridge (**Figure 6.6A**).



A three-part figure describing the Structure and function of Sarc. Following the N terminal, Sarc contains a green S H 3 domain, a complex consisting of a blue S H 2 domain and a red p Y, a red linker segment, a yellow kinase N lobe, an orange kinase C lobe with an attached activation loop, and finally the C terminal. In Part A, the p Y is attached to position 527 on the C terminal and the S H 3 is attached to the linker segment. The catalytic cleft between the two kinase lobes is closed by the positioning of the activation loop. In Part B, the p Y is no longer attached to the C terminal, and the S H 3 is no longer attached to the linker segment. Instead, both are attached to a Sarc activator in the form of a P D G F R. A position on the activation loop is marked as Y416. The C-terminal tail is dephosphorylated by phosphatase and position 527 is marked as Y527. In Part C, position 416 is marked as Tyr 416 phosphorylated, and the activation looped has moved downward to open up the catalytic cleft.

Figure 6.6 Structure and function of Src (A) The SH2 group of Src (*blue*) normally binds in an intramolecular fashion to a phosphotyrosine residue (pY; *red*) at position 527 near the C-terminus of Src. This binding causes the catalytic cleft

of Src, which is located between the N-lobe and the C-lobe of the kinase domain (*yellow, light orange*), to be obstructed. At the same time, the SH3 (*light green*) domain binds a proline-rich portion in the linker segment (*dark red*) between the N-lobe of the kinase domain and the SH2 domain. (B) However, when a domain of the PDGF receptor (indicated here as a "Src activator") becomes phosphorylated, one of its phosphotyrosines (*red*) serves as a ligand for this SH2 group of Src, causing the SH2 to switch from intramolecular binding to intermolecular binding. Concomitantly, the SH3 group of Src detaches from its intramolecular binding to bind a proline-rich domain (PXXP) on the receptor. These changes open up the catalytic cleft of Src, placing it in a configuration that poises it to fire. (C) The full tyrosine kinase activity of Src only occurs following a final phosphorylation of tyrosine 416, which moves an obstructing oligopeptide activation loop (*dark green*) out of the way of the catalytic cleft; the formation of Y416 may occur in dimerized Src molecules that transphosphorylate one another. (Adapted from W. Xu et al., *Mol. Cell* 3:629–638, 1999. With permission from Elsevier.)

Some receptors, such as the PDGF receptor, may become activated by ligand binding and display phosphotyrosines in their cytoplasmic domains that are also attractive binding sites for the SH2 group of Src. As a consequence, the fickle Src SH2 group breaks its intramolecular bond and forms an intermolecular bond with the PDGF receptor instead; this results in the tethering of Src to the PDGF receptor (Figure 6.6B). Concomitantly, the SH3 group of Src breaks its intramolecular association with the linker segment of Src and binds to an oligopeptide in the PDGF receptor. Now Src's catalytic cleft shifts into an active configuration and, following phosphorylation of its activation loop (*red*), begins to phosphorylate its clientele of substrates, thereby amplifying the signal broadcast by the PDGF receptor (Figure 6.6C).

The Src oncoprotein specified by Rous sarcoma virus is a mutant form of the normal c-Src protein, in which the C-terminal oligopeptide domain containing the tyrosine 527 residue has been replaced by another, unrelated amino acid sequence. As a consequence, a phosphotyrosine can never be formed at this site and the intramolecular inhibitory loop cannot form and, in turn, obstruct the Src catalytic site. The viral oncoprotein (v-Src) is therefore given a free hand to fire constitutively. A similar mutant Src, in which the six C-terminal amino acids are deleted (including tyrosine 527), has been reported in liver metastases of human colon carcinomas. While the Src kinase is hyperactive in many colon carcinomas, this is one of the very rare examples of a mutant, structurally altered Src in human cancers.

The SH2 and SH3 domains were the first of a series of specialized protein domains to be recognized and cataloged (see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.3**). Each of these

specialized domains is able to recognize and bind a specific sequence or structure present in a partner molecule. Some of these specialized domains recognize and bind phosphoserine or phosphothreonine on partner proteins, while others bind to phosphorylated forms of certain membrane lipids (**Table 6.2**). These partner-binding domains are critical to ensure the specific, focused intercommunication between appropriate pairs of signaling molecules operating throughout the intracellular signaling circuitry.

Table 6.2 Binding domains that are carried by various proteins[a]

Name of domain	**Ligand**	**Examples of proteins carrying this domain**
SH2	phosphotyrosine	Src (tyrosine kinase), Grb2 (adaptor protein), Shc (scaffolding protein), SHP-2 (phosphatase), Cbl (ubiquitylation)
PTB	phosphotyrosine	Shc (adaptor protein), IRS-1 (adaptor for insulin RTK signaling), X11 (neuronal protein)
SH3	proline-rich	Src (tyrosine kinase), Crk (adaptor protein), Grb2 (adaptor protein)
14-3-3	phosphoserine	Cdc25 (CDK phosphatase), Bad (apoptosis regulator), Raf (Ser/Thr kinase), PKC (protein kinase C Ser/Thr kinase)
Bromo	acetylated lysine	P/CAF (transcription co-factor), chromatin proteins
PH[b]	phosphorylated inositides	PLC-δ (phospholipase C-δ), Akt/PKB (Ser/Thr kinase), BTK

Taken together, these various domains illustrate how the lines of communication within a cell are restricted, since the ability of signaling molecules to physically associate in highly specific ways with target molecules ensures that signals are passed only to these intended targets and not to other proteins within the cell. In addition, examination of an array of signaling proteins has revealed that these various domains have been used as modules, being assembled in different combinations through evolution to ensure the specificity of a variety of intermolecular interactions (see Figure 6.5C).

The discovery of SH2 groups also explained how Src, the original oncoprotein, operates within the normal cell, and how Rous sarcoma virus has reconfigured the structure of Src, making it into an oncoprotein (see Sidebar 6.3).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

stereochemistry
: Description of the three-dimensional structure of a molecule (such as a protein or drug) and the influence that this structure exerts on the chemical behavior or biochemical function of the molecule.

phosphatase
: An enzyme that removes phosphate groups from phosphorylated substrates, such as the phosphoamino acid residues in a protein or the phosphorylated inositol of a phospholipid.

erythropoiesis
: Process by which red blood cells are formed.

cytosol
: Portion of the cytoplasm that contains soluble material untethered to either cytoskeleton or membranes including those associated with organelles.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

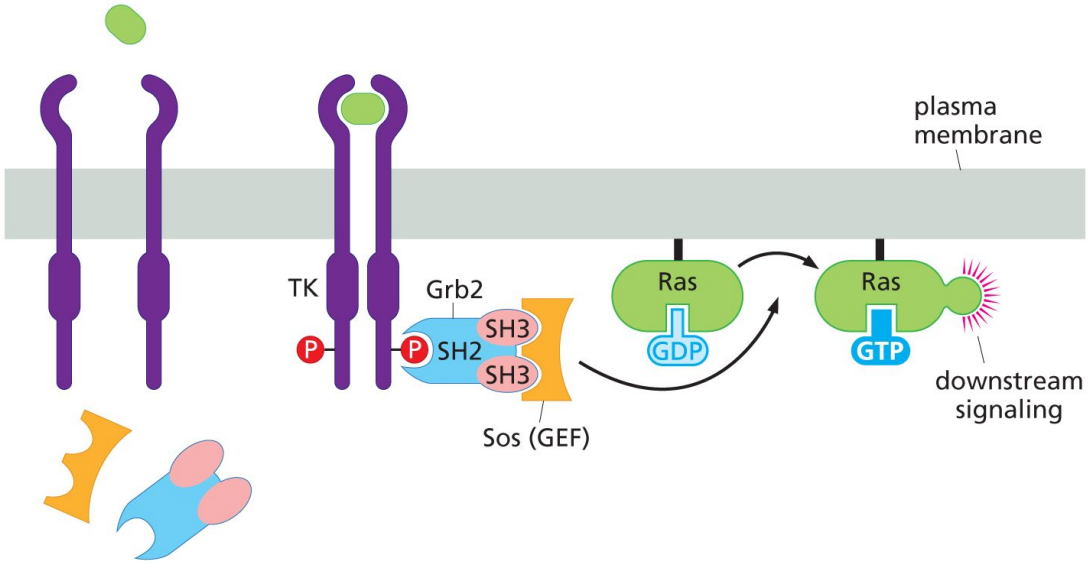
- aAt least 32 distinct types of binding domains have been identified (see Supplementary Sidebar 6.3). This table presents six of these that are often associated with transduction of mitogenic signals.Return to reference a
- bThe phosphoinositide-binding groups include, in addition to the PH domain, the Fab1, YOTB, Vac1, EEA1 (FYVE), PX, ENTH, and FERM domains.Return to reference b

OceanofPDF.com

6.4 SH2 and SH3 groups explain how growth factor receptors activate Ras and acquire signaling specificity

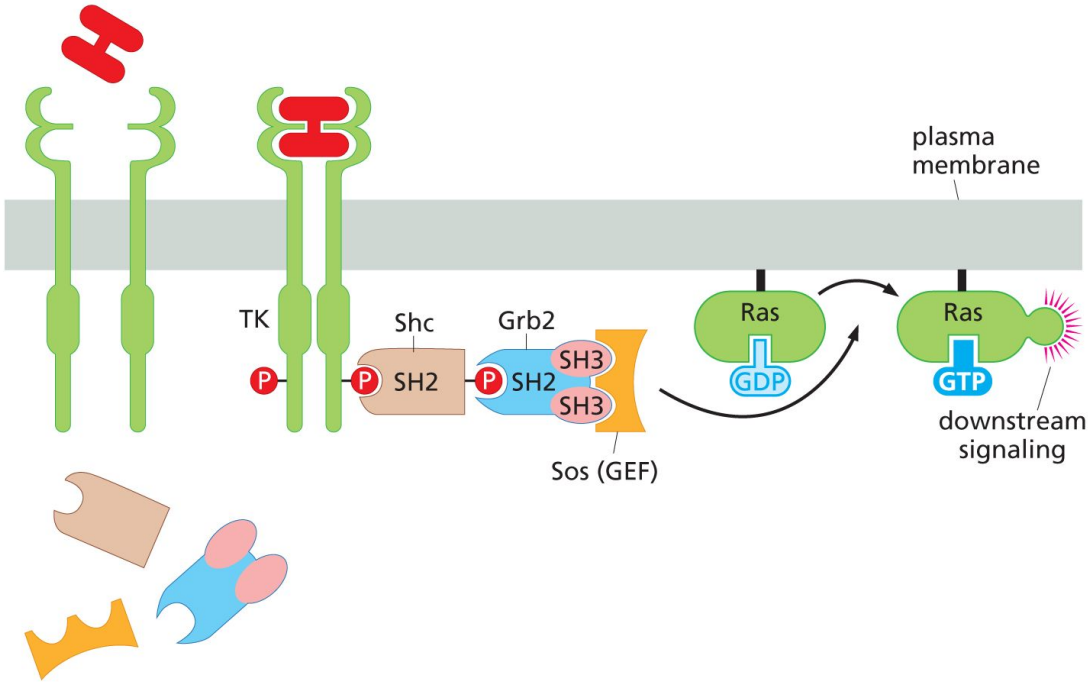
The discovery of SH2 and SH3 groups and their mechanisms of action made it possible to solve several important problems. The biochemical clues were now in place to explain precisely how the receptor → Sos → Ras cascade operates.

The final clues came from analyzing the structure of Grb2. It contains two SH3 groups and one SH2 group (Figure 6.5C). Its SH3 domains have an affinity for two distinct proline-rich sequences present in Sos, while its SH2 sequence associates with a phosphotyrosine present on the C-terminus of many growth factor–activated receptors. Consequently, Sos, which seems usually to float freely in the cytoplasm, now becomes tethered via the Grb2 linker molecule to the receptor (**Figure 6.7A**).



A diagram shows one way of achieving the association of S o s with ligand-activated growth factor receptors. A receptor is activated by a ligand. Simultaneously, two S H 3 domains of a G r b 2 bind to an S o s while the G r b twos S H 2 domain binds to a phosphotyrosine located on the receptor’s C-terminal tail, below the tyrosine kinase domain. The complex the converts an R a s with G D P to one with G T P, which begins downstream signaling.

(A)



A diagram shows another way of achieving the association of S o s with ligand-activated growth factor receptors. A receptor is activated by a ligand. Simultaneously, two S H 3 domains of a G r b 2 bind to an S o s while the G r b twos S H 2 domain binds to a phosphotyrosine located on S h c. The S h cees S H 2 domain, in turn, binds to a phosphotyrosine located on the receptor's C-terminal tail, below the tyrosine kinase domain. The complex then converts an R a s with G D P to one with G T P, which begins downstream signaling.

(B)

Figure 6.7 Intermolecular links forged by the Grb2 and Shc bridging proteins (A) The association of Sos, the Ras guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF), with ligand-activated growth factor receptors is achieved by bridging proteins, such as Grb2, shown here. The two SH3 domains of Grb2 (*pink*) bind to proline-rich domains of Sos (*orange*), while its SH2 domain (*light blue*) binds to a phosphotyrosine located on the C-terminal tail of a receptor. (B) An alternative mode of association can be achieved through a collaboration between two bridging proteins, Grb2 and Shc. Grb2 uses its SH3 domains to bind Sos and its SH2 domain to bind a phosphotyrosine on Shc (*beige*); the latter uses its own SH2 domain to bind a phosphotyrosine on a ligand-activated receptor. (Phosphorylation of Shc is achieved by Src-like tyrosine kinases.) (Adapted from G.M. Cooper,

Oncogenes, 2nd ed. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett, 1995. www.jblearning.com. Reprinted with permission from Jones and Bartlett.)

Detailed analysis of the structures of Grb2 and similarly configured proteins (for example, Crk) indicates that they carry no other functional domains beyond their SH2 and SH3 domains. Apparently, these adaptor proteins are nothing more than bridge builders designed specifically to link other proteins to one another. (An alternative bridging, also shown in Figure 6.7B, can be achieved when a growth factor receptor associates with Sos via Grb2 and Shc.)

Once Sos becomes anchored via Grb2 (or via Grb2 + Shc) to a receptor, it is brought into close proximity with Ras proteins, most of which seem to be permanently tethered to the inner face of the plasma membrane. Sos is then physically well positioned to interact directly with these Ras molecules, inducing them to release GDPs and bind instead GTPs. This guanine nucleotide exchange causes the activation of Ras protein signaling. Hence, the biochemically defined pathway could now be drawn like this:

Receptor → Grb2 → Sos → Ras or Receptor → Shc → Grb2 → Sos → Ras

Because a diverse group of signaling proteins become attracted to ligand-activated receptors (see, for example, Figure 6.5A and B), the Sos–Ras pathway represents only one of a number of signaling cascades radiating from growth factor receptors. Moreover, the SH2 and SH3 groups, as described here, represent only a small subset of the domains within intracellular proteins that are responsible for protein:protein interactions (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.3**).

OceanofPDF.com

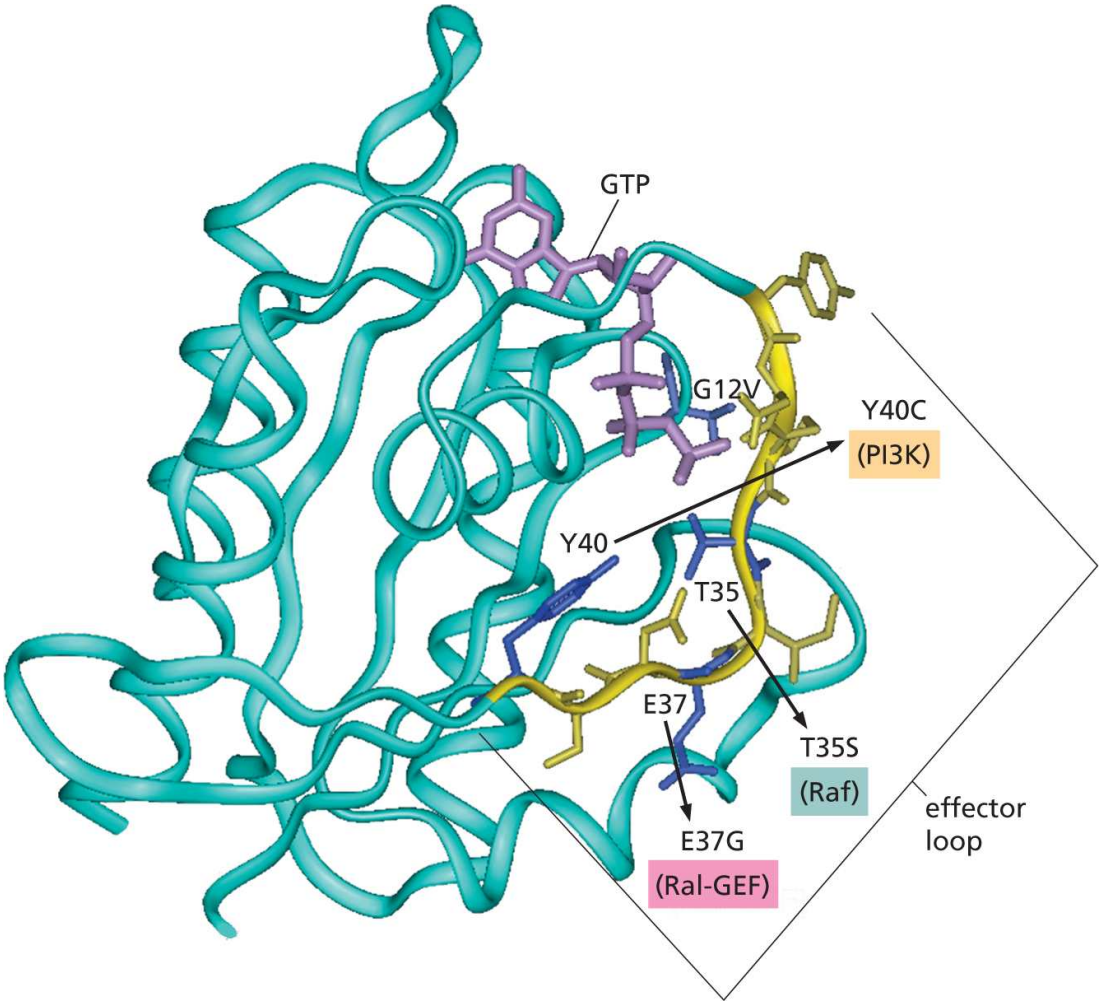
6.5 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: A cascade of kinases forms one of three important signaling pathways downstream of Ras

The multiple cellular responses that a growth factor elicits could now be explained by the fact that its *cognate* receptor (that is, the receptor that specifically binds it) is able to activate a specific combination of downstream signaling pathways. Each of these pathways might be responsible for inducing, in turn, one or another of the multiple biological changes occurring after cells are stimulated by this particular growth factor. Moreover, exaggerated forms of this signaling might well be operating in cancer cells that experience continuous growth factor stimulation because of a mutant, constitutively activated receptor or an autocrine signaling loop (see Figure 5.8A and C).

This branching of downstream pathways did not, however, explain precisely how the mutant Ras oncoprotein (which itself represents only one of the multiple pathways downstream of growth factor receptors) is able to evoke a number of distinct changes in cells. Here, once again, signal transduction biochemistry provided critical insights. We now know that at least three major downstream signaling cascades radiate from the Ras protein. (Precisely where within a cell these signals are transmitted remains unclear; see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.4**.). Their diverse actions help to explain how the Ras oncoprotein causes so many distinct changes in cell behavior.

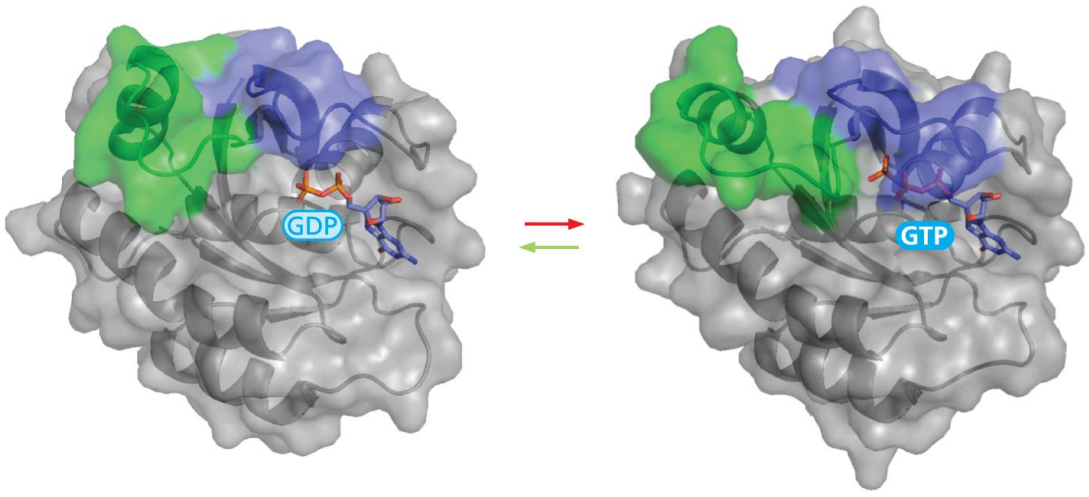
The layout of these downstream signaling pathways was mapped through a combination of yeast genetics and biochemical analyses of mammalian cells. These approaches made it clear that when Ras binds GTP, two of its “switch domains” shift (see Figure 5.25B), enabling its effector loop (**Figure 6.8**) to interact physically with several alternative downstream signaling partners that are known collectively as Ras *effectors*, that is, the proteins that carry out the actual work of Ras. Each of these effectors binds quite tightly to the effector loop of the GTP-bound form of Ras protein while having little affinity for the loop presented by its GDP-bound form. The first of these Ras effectors to be discovered was the Raf kinase (**Figure 6.9A**). Like the great majority of protein kinases in the cell, Raf phosphorylates substrate proteins on their serine and threonine residues. Long before its association with Ras was uncovered, the

Raf kinase had already been encountered as the oncoprotein specified by both a rapidly transforming murine retrovirus and, in homologous form, a chicken retrovirus.



A ribbon diagram of the R a s protein, with the effector loop on the right. Near by, G T P is shown with a G 12 V at one end. On the effector loop, three residues are shown, along with the effects of substitutions. Replacing the Y40 residue with Y40C leads to interaction with P I 3 K. Replacing T 35 with T 35 S leads to interaction with R a f. And replacing E 37 with E 37 G leads to interaction with R a l G E F.

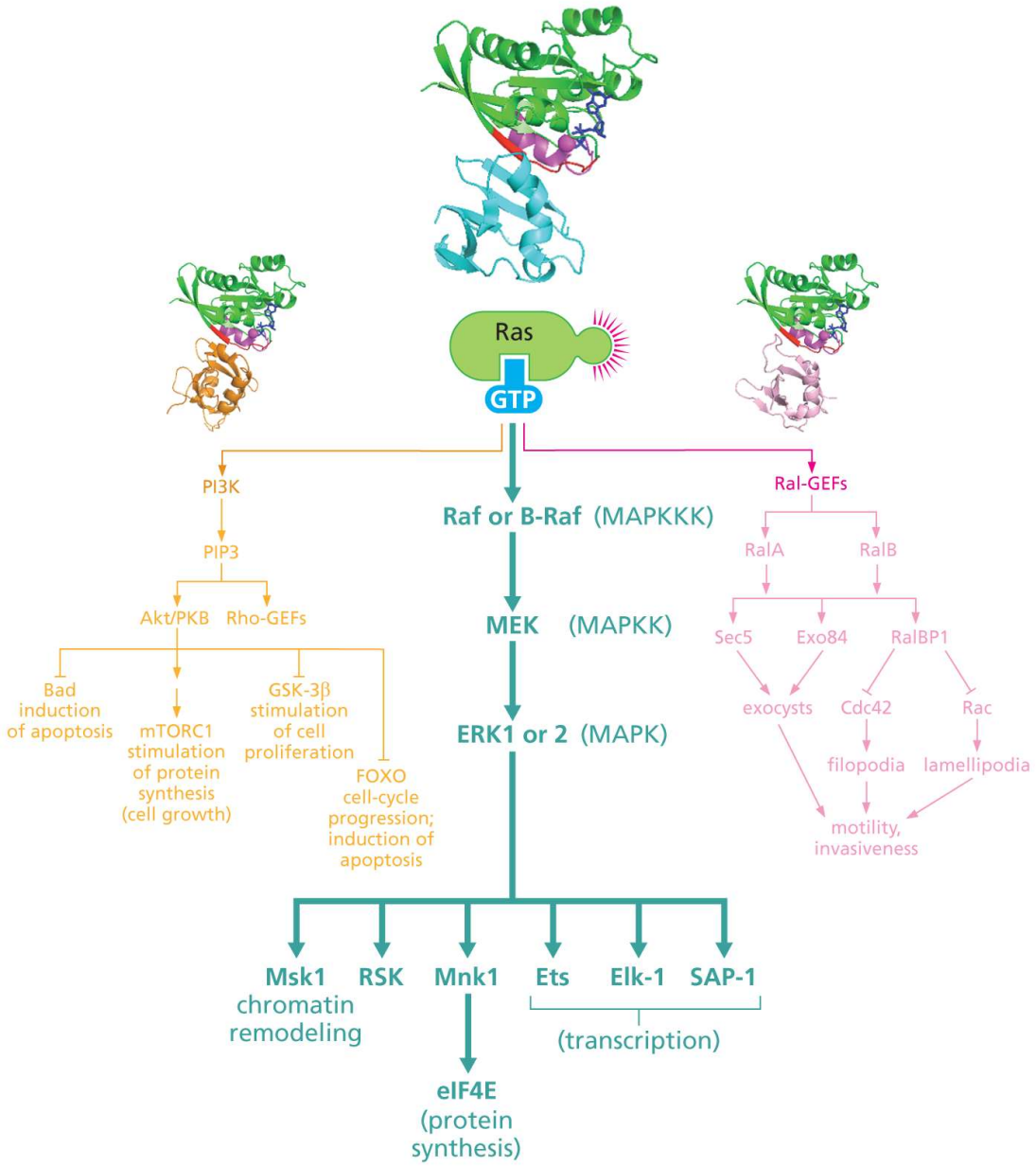
(A)



A diagram of transitions back and forth between two space filling models of R a s: inactive G D P-bound on the left and active G T P-bound on the right. With the transition, the conformation of the protein changes slightly.

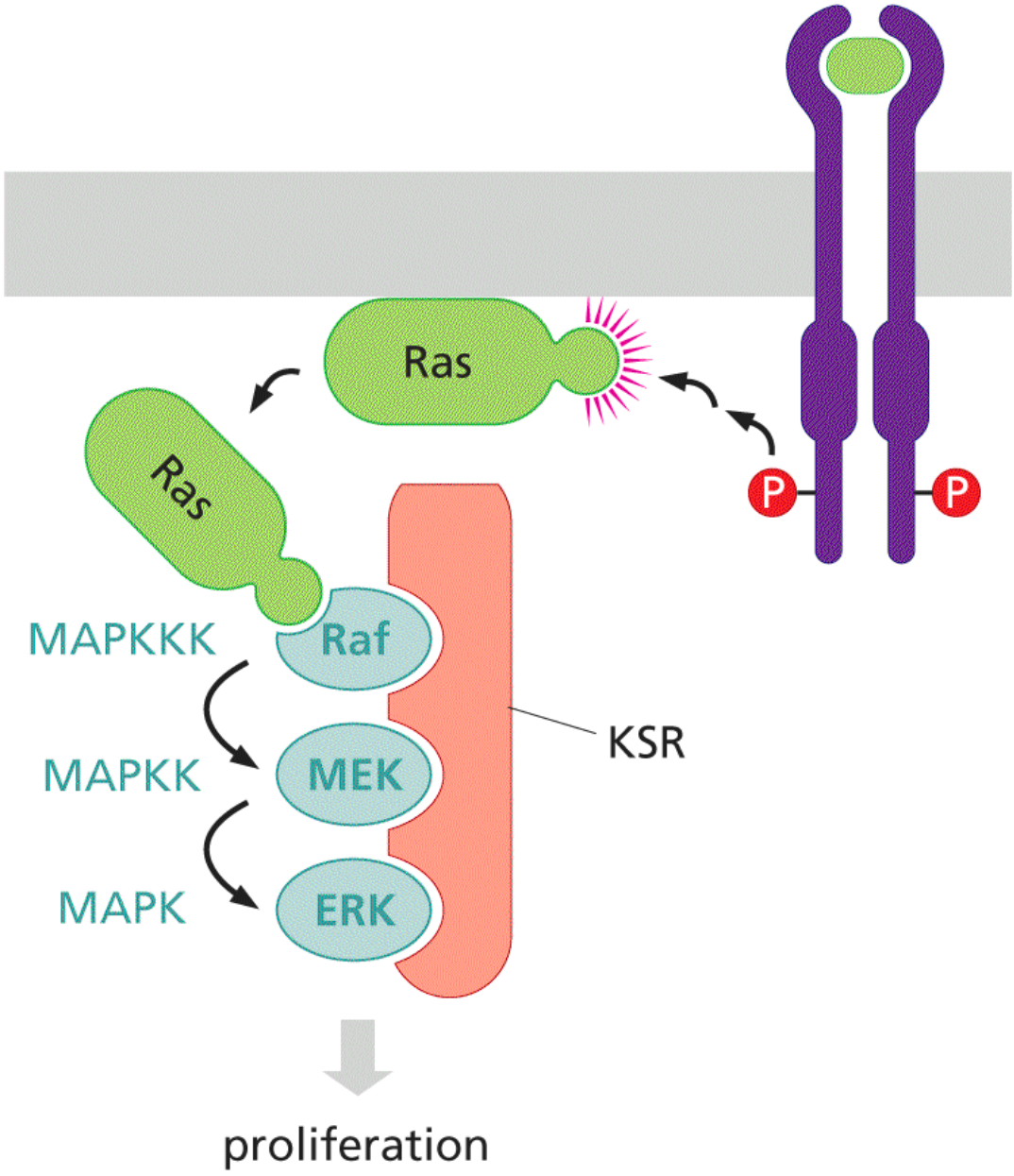
(B)

Figure 6.8 The Ras effector loop (A) The crystallographic structure of the Ras protein, viewed from a different angle than those illustrated in Figure 5.25, is depicted here in a ribbon diagram (*largely aquamarine*). The guanine nucleotide (*light purple stick figure*) is shown together with the nearby glycine residue, which, upon replacement by a valine in oncogenic Ras, causes inactivation of the GTPase activity (G12V). The effector loop (*yellow*) interacts with at least three important downstream effectors of Ras. Experimentally introduced amino acid substitutions (*arrows*) affecting three residues in the effector loop create three alternative forms of the Ras protein that interact preferentially with either PI3 kinase, Raf/B-Raf, or Ral-GEF. (B) In these space-filling models, the stereochemical shift of the effector domain of Ras (*green*, *purple*) enables Ras to interact physically with at least three of its downstream effectors listed in panel A. (A, Courtesy of R. Latek and A. Rangarajan, adapted from data in U. Krengel et al., *Cell* 62:539–548, 1990. B, Courtesy of P. Marinec and F. McCormick.)



A diagram shows three pathways which all begin with a G T P activated R a s. In the middle one, which is emphasized, R a s activates R a f or B R a f (an M A P K K K). The latter activates M E K (an M A P K K), which in turn activates E R K 1 or E R K 2 (an M A P K). E R K 1 or 2 then activates one or more of the following: M s k 1, R S K, M n k 1, E t s, E l k-1, and S A P-1. M s k 1 is labeled chromatin remodeling. E t s, E l k-1, and S A P-1 are labeled transcription. M n k 1 activates e I F 4 E, which is labeled protein synthesis. Ir another pathway, G T P activated R a s activates P I 3 K. The signal cascade passes through several other molecules that may result in induction of apoptosis, cell growth, cell proliferation, and or cell cyle progression. In the third pathway, G T P activated R a s activates R a l-G E effs. The signal

cascade passes through several molecules ulitimately causing motility and invasiveness.
(A)



A diagram shows phosphotyrosine from the C-terminal tail of a receptor activating R a s. The pathway featured in Part A then unfolds, with the R a s activating a cascade between R a f, M E K and E R K which are all attached tc a K S R, a vertically elongated molecule. Proliferation follows.

(B)

Figure 6.9 The Ras → Raf → MAP kinase pathway (A) This multi-kinase signaling cascade (*aquamarine*, *center*) is one of a series of similarly organized pathways in mammalian cells that have the overall plan MAPKKK → MAPKK → MAPK. In this particular case, Ras activates the Raf kinase (a MAPKKK), the latter proceeds to phosphorylate and activate MEK (a MAPKK), and MEK then phosphorylates and activates ERK1 and ERK2 (MAPKs). (The two other key effector pathways of Ras shown here will be analyzed further in Figures 6.10 and 6.15.) ERK1/2 can then phosphorylate kinases in the cytoplasm that regulate translation as well as transcription factors in the nucleus. The bimolecular complex, portrayed as a ribbon structure (*above*), illustrates the interaction of the effector domain of Ras (*red*, *purple*) with the Ras-binding domain of Raf (*aquamarine*). (B) Multi-kinase signaling cascades in eukaryotic cells are often assembled by scaffolding proteins that ensure the direct physical juxtaposition of one kinase to its downstream kinase substrate. The KSR scaffold shown here organizes the highly efficient signal transduction of Raf to ERK. (A, adapted from M.E. Pacold et al., *Cell* 103:931–943, 2000; N. Nassar et al., *Nature* 375:554–560, 1995; and L. Huang et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 5:422–426, 1998. B, adapted from M.C. Good, J.G. Zalatan and W.A. Lim, *Science* 332, 680–686, 2011.)

The activation of Raf by Ras depends upon the relocalization of Raf within the cytoplasm. Recall that Ras proteins are always anchored to a membrane, usually the inner surface of the plasma membrane, through their C-terminal hydrophobic tails. Once it has bound GTP (see Figure 6.9A), the affinity of Ras for Raf increases by three orders of magnitude, enabling Ras to bind Raf relatively tightly, doing so via the Ras effector loop. Before this association, Raf is found in the cytosol; thereafter, Raf becomes tethered via Ras to the plasma membrane (or, in certain cases, to another cytoplasmic membrane). Moreover, as has recently been determined, both Ras and Raf function as dimeric proteins, and the dimerization of Raf may even depend on the prior dimerization of Ras molecules (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.5**). These interactions are further influenced by the fact that the intracellular localization of Ras is affected by whether it has bound GDP or GTP (see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.4**).

The physical association of Raf with Ras appears to be facilitated by additional proteins that act as scaffolds to hold them together (Figure 6.9B); yet others trigger the phosphorylation and dephosphorylation of key amino acid residues on Raf, altering its three-dimensional configuration. Raf now acquires active signaling powers and proceeds to phosphorylate and thereby activate a second kinase known as MEK. (MEK is actually a “dual-specificity kinase,” that is, one that can phosphorylate serine/threonine residues as well as tyrosine residues.) MEK uses these powers to phosphorylate two other kinases, the *e*xtracellular signal–*r*egulated *k*inases 1 and 2, commonly referred to as ERK1 and ERK2. Once phosphorylated and activated, each of these ERKs then phosphorylates substrates that, in turn, regulate various cellular

processes including transcription of genes promoting cell proliferation as described below (see Figure 6.9A). Much of the rapidity of activation of the Raf-MEK-ERK signaling cascade is due to the fact that scaffolding proteins hold these kinase components together, ensuring essentially instantaneous access to a downstream kinase substrate by its upstream kinase activator (see Figure 6.9B).

This type of kinase signaling cascade has been given the generic name of a MAPK (mitogen-activated protein kinase) pathway. In fact, there are at least four other signaling cascades in mammalian cells organized in a manner similar to the one described here. In the present case, ERK1 and ERK2 at the bottom of the Raf-initiated cascade are considered MAPKs. The kinase responsible for phosphorylating a MAPK is termed generically a MAPKK; in the case of the particular cascade studied here, this role is played by MEK. The kinase responsible for phosphorylating a MAPKK is therefore called generically a MAPKKK (see Figure 6.9A); in this scheme, Raf is classified as a MAPKKK.

Note that in these various kinase cascades, phosphorylation of kinase B by kinase A always results in the functional activation of kinase B. For example, when MEK is phosphorylated by Raf, MEK becomes activated as a signal-emitting kinase. Such serine/threonine phosphorylation therefore has a very different consequence from the phosphorylation of tyrosine residues carried by the cytoplasmic tails of growth factor receptors. The phosphotyrosines on these receptors attract signaling partners and are therefore responsible for the *relocalization* of partner proteins; in contrast, the phosphate groups attached to MEK by Raf cause a stereochemical shift in its structure that results in its *functional activation* as a kinase.

Once activated, an ERK kinase at the bottom of this cascade not only phosphorylates cytoplasmic substrates, but can also translocate to the nucleus, where it causes the phosphorylation of transcription factors; some of the latter then initiate the immediate and delayed early gene responses. For example, as indicated in Figure 6.9A, ERK can phosphorylate several transcription factors (as examples, Ets, Elk-1, and SAP-1) directly and, in addition, phosphorylate and thereby activate other kinases, which proceed to phosphorylate and activate yet other transcription factors. These downstream kinases phosphorylate two chromatin-associated proteins (HMG-14 and histone H3), creating modifications that place the chromatin in a configuration that is more hospitable to transcription (see Section 1.8). In the cytoplasm, the Mnk1 kinase, a cytoplasmic substrate of ERK1 and ERK2, phosphorylates the translation initiation factor eIF4E, thereby helping to activate the cellular machinery responsible for protein synthesis.

Once the ERKs phosphorylate the Ets transcription factor, the latter can then proceed to stimulate the expression of important growth-regulating genes, such as those specifying heparin-binding EGF (HB-EGF), cyclin D1, Fos, and $p21^{Waf1}$. (The

functions of the last three are described in detail in Chapter 8.) The actual number of distinct ERK substrates is vastly larger: a 2017 study undertook to enumerate those for which there was reasonably compelling biochemical evidence and came up with 2507 protein targets!

Especially important among the genes induced by the Raf → MEK → ERK pathway are the two immediate early genes encoding the Fos and Jun transcription factors. Once synthesized, these two proteins can associate with one another to form AP-1, a widely acting heterodimeric transcription factor that is often found in hyperactivated form in cancer cells. The special importance and influence of Fos and Jun is indicated by the fact that each was originally identified as the product of a retrovirus-associated oncogene (see Table 3.3).

The Ras → Raf → MEK → ERK pathway is only one of several downstream signaling cascades that are activated by the GTP-bound Ras proteins (see Figures 6.9, 6.10, and 6.15). The central importance of this kinase cascade is indicated by the fact that in a number of cell types, the Raf protein kinase, when introduced into cells in mutant, oncogenic form, can evoke most of the transformation phenotypes that are induced by the Ras oncoprotein itself. Hence, in such cells, the pathway downstream of Raf is responsible for the lion's share of the transforming powers of Ras oncoproteins. In addition to activating a number of growth-promoting genes, as described above, this pathway confers anchorage independence and loss of contact inhibition. It also contributes to the profound change in cell shape that is associated with transformation by a *ras* oncogene.

In certain cancers, the signaling pathway lying downstream of Raf may be strongly activated without any prior stimulation by Ras. Thus in ~50% of human melanomas a mutant form of B-Raf, a close cousin and functional analog of Raf, is found to carry an amino acid substitution causing a ~500-fold increase in kinase activity. [The mutation commonly occurring in melanomas causes B-Raf's activation loop, which usually obstructs access to the catalytic cleft of this enzyme (as seen in other kinases, see **Supplementary Sidebar 5.6**), to swing out of the way.] In about one-third of the remaining melanomas, mutant alleles encoding activated N-Ras oncoproteins can be found. In human tumors overall, a *ras* oncogene is rarely found to coexist with mutant alleles of *B-raf*, providing evidence that these two oncogenes have overlapping functions and thus are partially redundant with one another.

Various explanations have been proposed to rationalize why multi-kinase cascades like this one are used in a variety of signaling circuits throughout the cell. In fact, versions of these cascades are already apparent in single-cell eukaryotes, such as yeast, in which they are employed to regulate a variety of cell-biological processes. These kinase cascades—all exhibiting the MAPKKK–MAPKK–MAPK organization—share in common another striking feature that ensures their rapid and efficient firing: the

participating kinases are physically held together by scaffolding proteins (see Figure 6.9B). These proteins, such as the KSR featured in this figure, ensure that the signals flowing through the kinase cascades do so rapidly, and that the participating kinases are able to find their substrates instantaneously rather than depending on diffusion-dependent processes to do so. (A second aspect of kinase firing involving dimerization is discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 6.5**.)

Of note, versions of ERK that are unable to dimerize and associate with the cytoplasmic scaffolding proteins in response to Ras or Raf signaling cripple the cell transformation usually induced by these oncoproteins; similarly, ERK proteins that are unable to translocate as monomers to the nucleus following their activation in the cytoplasm also preclude transformation by these oncogene-encoded proteins

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

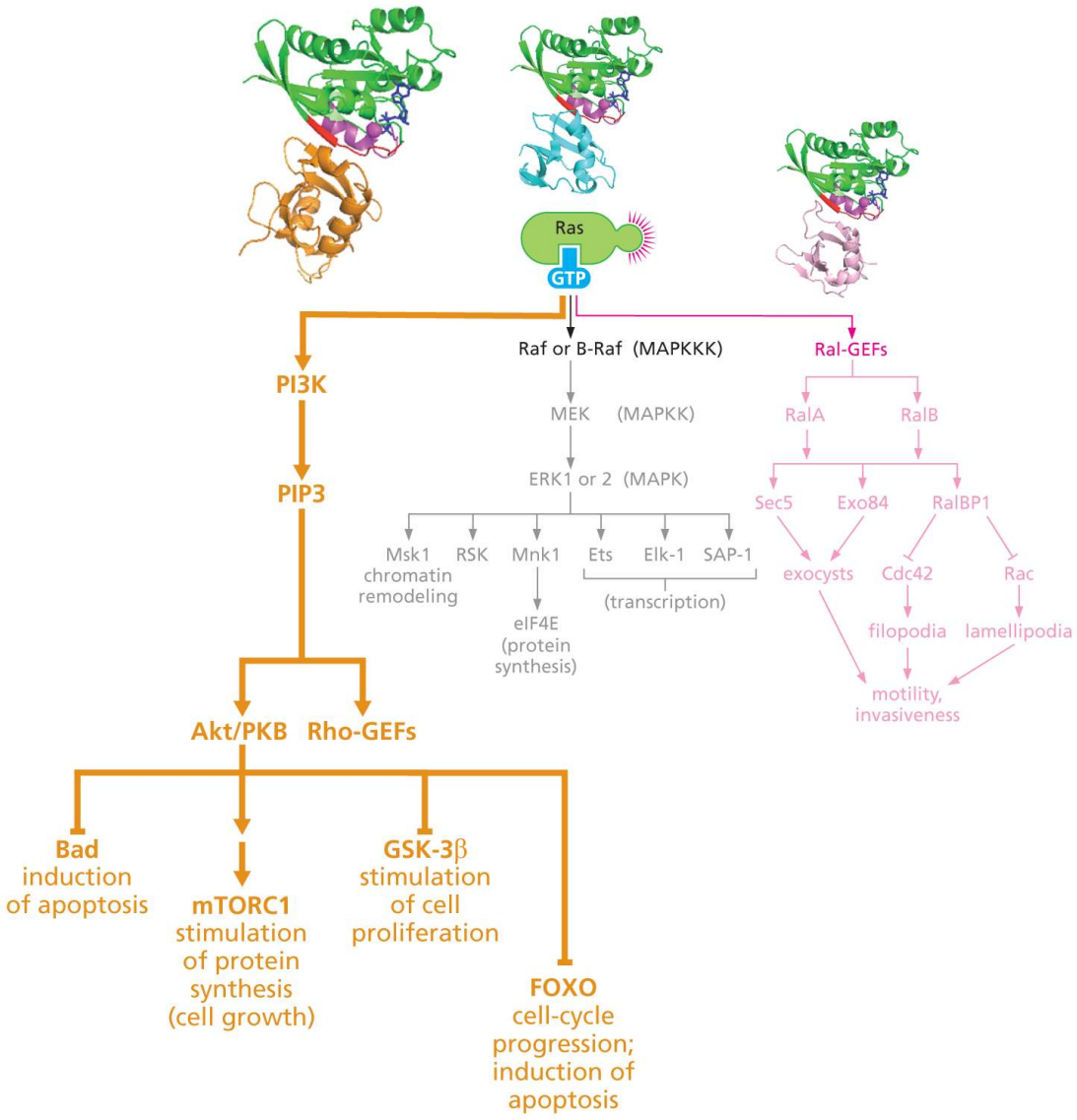
effector loop

Region of a Ras protein that participates in direct physical interaction with one of its effector proteins; such interaction usually leads to the physical relocalization and/or functional activation of an effector protein.

OceanofPDF.com

6.6 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: a second downstream pathway controls inositol lipids and the Akt/PKB kinase

A second important downstream effector of the Ras protein enables Ras to evoke other, quite distinct cellular responses (**Figure 6.10**). In the context of cancer, the most important of these is a suppression of apoptosis. This anti-apoptotic effect is especially critical for cancer cells, since many of them are poised on the brink of activating this cell suicide program, a subject covered in detail in Chapter 9.

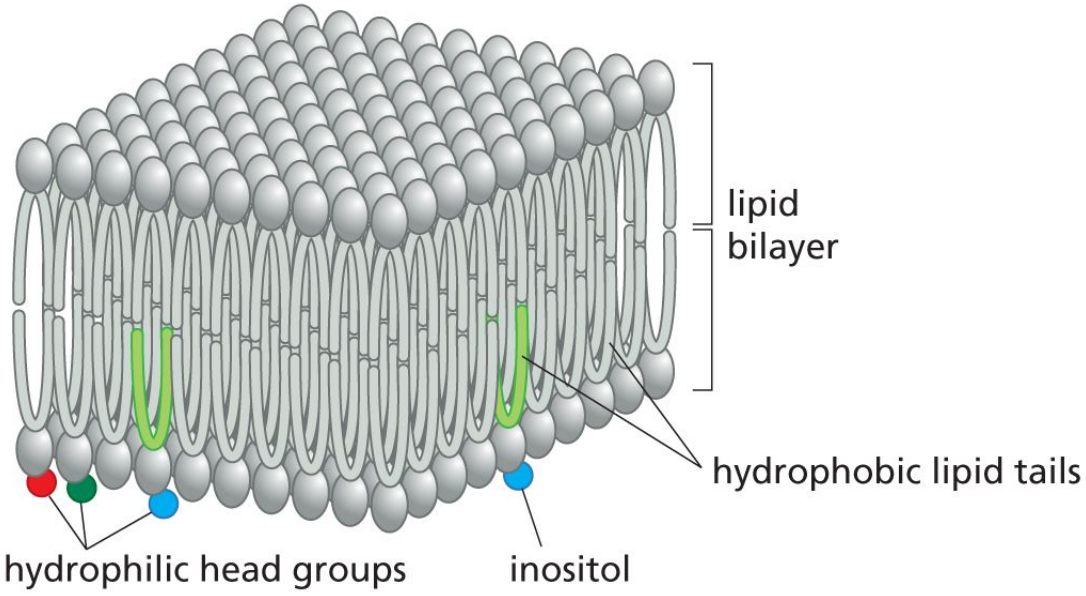


Three pathways all begin with a G T P activated R a s. In the left one, which is emphasized, R a s activates P I 3 K, which leads to the formation of PIP 3. This leads in turn to A k t (also called P K B) and Rho-G E effs. A k t inhibits Bads induction of apoptosis, it promotes m T O R C ones stimulation of protein synthesis (cell growth), it inhibits G S K - betas stimulation of cell proliferation, and it inhibits F O X O cell-cycle progression and induction of apoptosis. In another pathway, G T P activated R a s activates R a f or B R a f. In the third pathway, G T P activated R a s activate R a l-G E effs.

Figure 6.10 The PI3 kinase pathway A second effector pathway of Ras (*dark orange*, *left*) derives from its ability to associate with and activate phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), with the resulting formation of phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)-triphosphate (PIP3). This leads in turn to the tethering

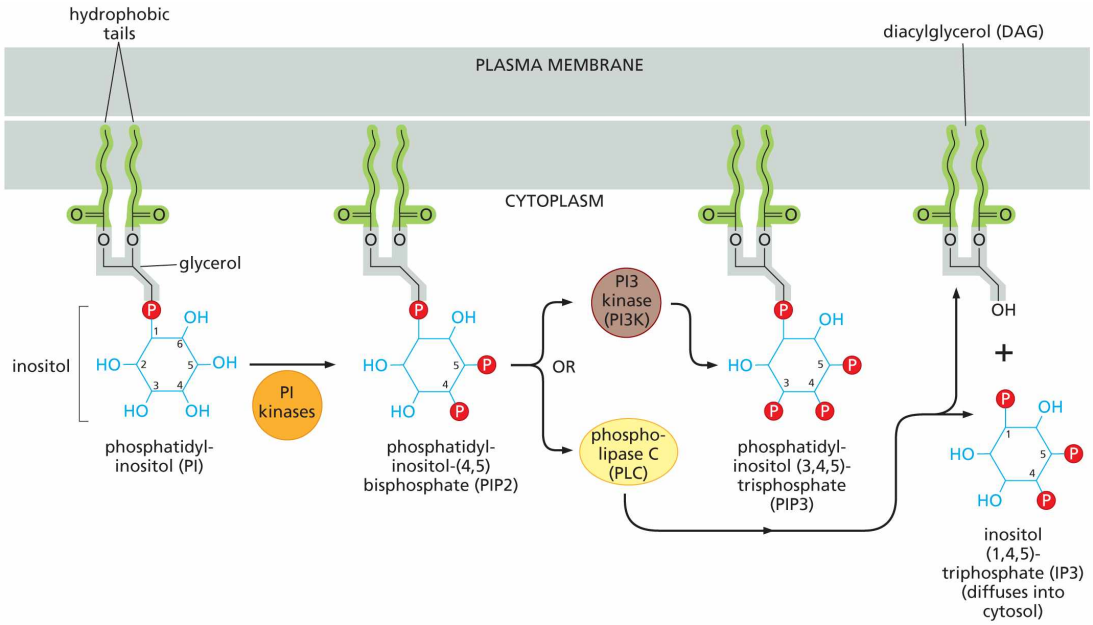
of PH-containing molecules, such as Akt (also called PKB) and Rho guanine nucleotide exchange proteins (Rho-GEFs), to the plasma membrane. Akt/PKB is able to inactivate Bad (a pro-apoptotic protein); inactivate GSK-3β, an antagonist of growth-promoting proteins such as β-catenin, cyclin D1, and Myc; and activate mTOR. (The latter is a kinase that stimulates protein synthesis and cell growth and also acts reciprocally to phosphorylate and activate Akt/PKB.) The bimolecular complex, seen as a ribbon structure (*above*), illustrates the interaction of the effector domain of Ras (*red, purple*) with the Ras-binding domain of PI3K (*orange*). (Adapted from M.E. Pacold et al., *Cell* 103:931–943, 2000; N. Nassar et al., *Nature* 375:554–560, 1995; and L. Huang et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 5:422–426, 1998.)

Early studies of the biochemistry of the plasma membrane suggested that its phospholipids serve simply as a structural barrier between the aqueous environments in the cell exterior and interior. The biochemistry of these phospholipid molecules showed that they are amphipathic—that is, each possesses a hydrophilic head, which likes to be immersed in water, and a hydrophobic tail, which prefers nonaqueous environments (**Figure 6.11A**). This polarity explains the structure of lipid bilayers throughout the cell, in which the hydrophilic groups face and protrude into the extracellular or cytosolic aqueous environments while the hydrophobic tails are buried in the middle of the membrane, from which water is excluded. (The transmembrane domains of growth factor receptors discussed in Chapter 5 consist of hydrophobic acids that permit these domains to be buried stably in this hydrophobic environment.)



A lipid bilayer in cross section, consisting of many phospholipid molecules with hydrophilic heads on the upper and lower surfaces of the layer and hydrophobic tails oriented toward the middle of the layer. A few of the hydrophilic heads on the underside have hydrophilic head groups of different types attached. One type is inositol.

(A)



A phospholipid molecule with an inositol head group in greater detail. This is labeled phosphatidylinositol, or P I for short. It has two hydrophobic tails extending up into the plasma membrane. At the base of each tail is a double-bonded oxygen. Each tail attaches to one of two oxygens that are part of a glycerol structure. The other end of the glycerol attaches to a phosphorus, which in turn attaches to the 1-carbon in a six-carbon inositol ring. The other five carbons in the ring each carry an O H group. P I kinases cause phosphorylation on the 4 and 5 carbons, forming phosphatidylinositol (4,5) bisphosphate (PIP 2). From here, one of two things can happen. P I 3 kinase can cause phosphorylation on the 3 carbon, forming phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5) trisphosphate (PIP 3). Or phospholipase C (P L C) can cause the inositol to break away, along with the phosphotyrosine linking it to the rest of the structure, as inositol (1,4,5) triphosphate (I P 3), which diffuses into the cytosol. What remains behind is diacylglycerol (D A G), consisting of the glycerol and the two tails, with an O H group where the phosphorus had been.

(B)

Figure 6.11 Biochemistry of lipid bilayers (A) All cellular membranes are assembled as phospholipid bilayers, in which the hydrophilic head groups (*gray ovals*) protrude into the aqueous solvent above and below the membrane, while the hydrophobic tails (*green*, *gray*) are confined to the nonaqueous space within the lipid bilayer. A small minority of the various types of hydrophilic head groups (*red, green, blue*) contain inositol sugars (*blue*). (B) Phosphatidylinositol (PI; *left*) is composed of three parts—two fatty acids with long hydrocarbon tails (*green*) inserted into the plasma membrane, glycerol (*gray*), and inositol (*light blue*) attached to the glycerol via a phosphodiester linkage. PI kinases can add phosphate groups to the various hydroxyls of inositol, yielding, for example, the PI (4,5)-diphosphate (PIP2) shown here. Cleavage of PIP2 by phospholipase C yields diacylglycerol (DAG), which can activate protein kinase C (PKC); and inositol (1,4,5)-triphosphate (IP3), which induces release of calcium ions from intracellular stores. Alternatively, PIP2 can be further phosphorylated by PI3 kinase (PI3K) to yield phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)-triphosphate (PIP3). Once formed, the phosphorylated head group of PIP3 serves to attract proteins carrying PH domains, which thereby become tethered to the inner surface of the plasma membrane.

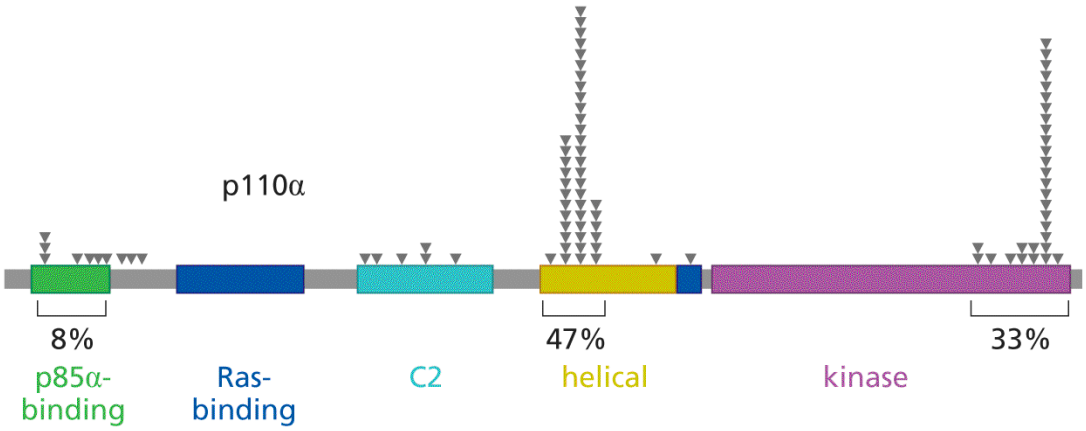
In the 1970s, it became apparent that eukaryotic cells exploit some of the membrane-associated phospholipids for purposes that are fully unrelated to the maintenance of membrane structure. Some phospholipids contain, at their hydrophilic heads, an inositol group. Inositol is a water-soluble carbohydrate molecule (termed more properly a polyalcohol). The inositol moiety of such phospholipids can be modified by the addition of phosphate groups. In some situations, the resulting phosphoinositol may then be cleaved by the phospholipase C (PLC) from the remaining, largely hydrophobic portions of a phospholipid molecule. Since it is purely hydrophilic, this liberated phosphoinositol, termed IP3 or IP_3, can then diffuse away from the membrane (Figure 6.11B), thereby serving as an *intracellular hormone* to dispatch signals from the plasma membrane to distant parts of the cell; such intracellular hormones are often called second messengers. The second product of this cleavage, termed diacylglycerol (DAG), which remains tethered to the plasma membrane, can serve to activate key signaling kinases in the cell—certain serine/threonine kinases belonging to the class known generically as protein kinase C (PKC). In other situations, a phosphorylated inositol avoids cleavage, can remain intact, and therefore can remain attached to the remainder of the phospholipid and thus can remain tethered to the plasma membrane; there, it can serve as an anchoring point to which certain cytosolic proteins can become attached, as discussed below.

We now know that the inositol moiety can be modified by several distinct kinases, each of which shows specificity for phosphorylating a particular hydroxyl of inositol.

Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), for example, is responsible for attaching a phosphate group to the 3′ hydroxyl of the inositol moiety of membrane-embedded phosphatidylinositol (PI). While several distinct PI3 kinases have been discovered, the most important of these may well be the PI3K that phosphorylates PI(4,5)P_2 (or, more simply, PIP2). Prior to modification by PI3K, PIP2 already has phosphates attached to the 4′ and 5′ hydroxyl groups of inositol (in addition to the phosphodiester bond that links its 1′ hydroxyl to the membrane-embedded diacyglycerol-lipid moiety and gives these various forms their "PI" name); after this modification, this inositol acquires yet another phosphate group, and PIP2 is converted into PI(3,4,5)P_3, that is, PIP3 (see Figure 6.11B).

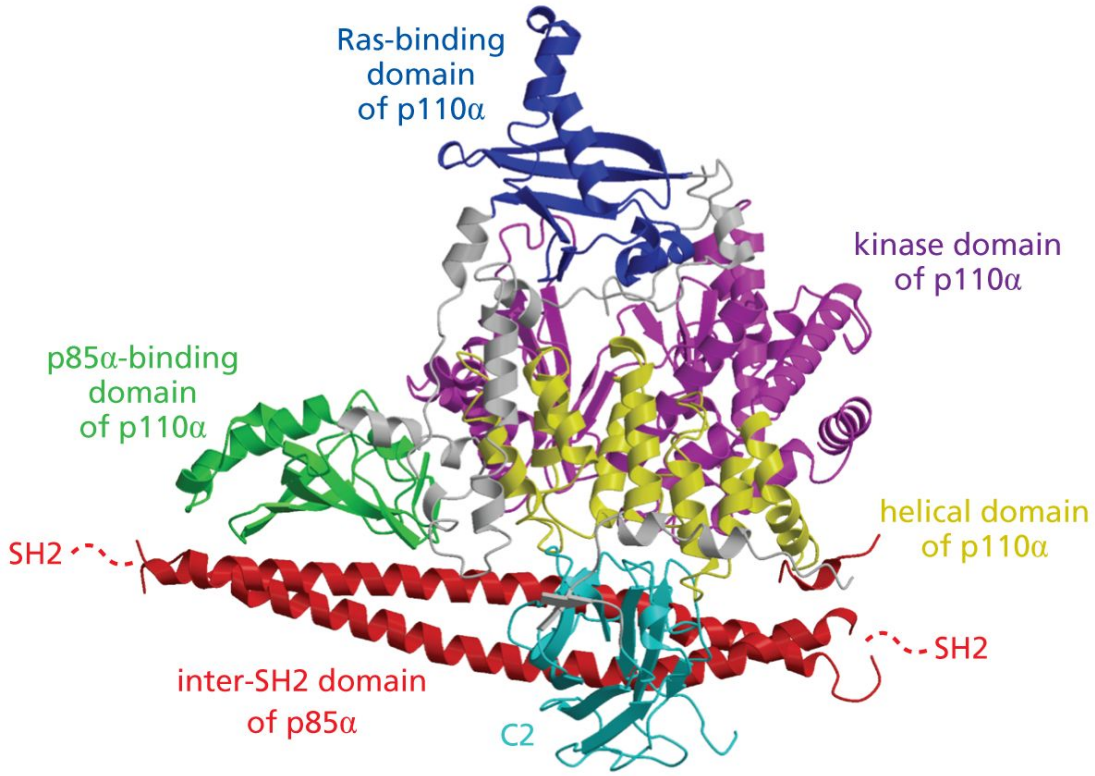
Note an important difference between the organization of this pathway and the Ras → Raf → MEK → ERK cascade that was described in the previous section. In the present case, one of the critical kinases (that is, PI3K) attaches phosphates to a phospholipid, rather than phosphorylating the side chain of an amino acid residue within a protein.

We first encountered PI3K, in passing, at an earlier point in this chapter (see Section 6.3, Figure 6.5A). There, we described the attraction of the PI3Kγ enzyme to a ligand-activated PDGF receptor via the SH2 groups of its regulatory subunit (resulting, as we now realize, in the phosphorylation of inositol-containing phospholipids already present in the nearby plasma membrane). It turns out that GTP-activated Ras is also able to bind PI3K directly and thereby enhance its functional activation (**Figure 6.12**). (Indeed, there is strong evidence that the H-Ras protein can effectively activate PI3K only when the p85 regulatory subunit of PI3K is bound to a phosphotyrosine on a ligand-activated growth factor receptor.) Hence, PI3K can function as a direct downstream effector of Ras. As is the case when Raf binds Ras, the binding of PI3K to Ras causes PI3K to become closely associated with the plasma membrane, where its PI substrates are located.



A schematic diagram showing five domains. From left to right, they are the p85 alpha binding, R a s binding, C 2, helical, and kinase domains. 8 percent of the mutations that led to P I 3 K activation occur on the p85 binding domain, 47 percent occur on the helical domain, and 33 percent occur on the kinase domain.

(A)



A ribbon diagram. It includes the five domains in Part A and also the inter-S H 2 domain of p85 alpha.

(B)

Figure 6.12 Activation of PI3K by Ras, growth factor receptors, and somatic mutation PI3K is a key enzyme in the control of cell growth and proliferation. The most important form of this enzyme, assembled as a complex of a catalytic subunit, termed p110, and a regulatory subunit, termed p85, is activated by the actions of the Ras oncoprotein and by tyrosine-phosphorylated growth factor receptors (RTKs). Three alternative forms of the catalytic subunit and five alternative regulatory subunits associate in various heterodimeric combinations. (A) The multidomain structure of p110α is depicted here schematically. The *gray* arrowheads indicate the locations of the somatic mutations that led to PI3K

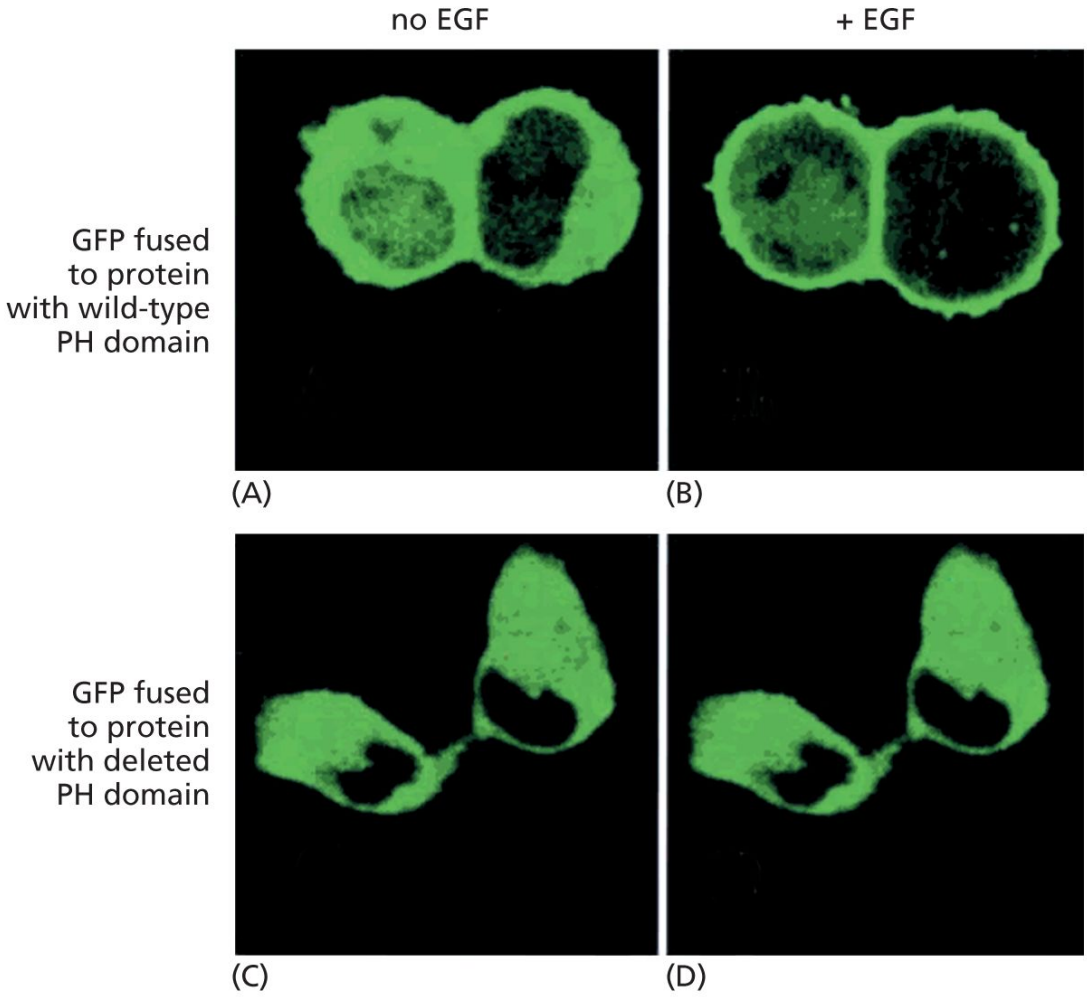
activation, as reported in an initial survey of PI3K sequences in human tumor cell genomes; like many activating mutations, these affected a limited number of nucleotides in the encoding gene. (B) A ribbon model of p110α with the inter-SH2 domain of p85α is shown here. The Ras-binding domain of p110α (*dark purple*) enables its tethering via Ras to the plasma membrane (*not shown*). The p85α subunit uses its two SH2 groups, which are located at the opposite ends of the inter-SH2 domain of p85 (*dark red*), to bind to phosphotyrosine residues in the cytoplasmic tails of ligand-activated growth factor receptors. The catalytic domain of p110α is shown in *light purple*. It remains unclear whether simultaneous interactions between p85, p110, Ras, and a ligand-activated RTK are required for activation of p110 or, alternatively, whether interactions of p85 with either a ligand-activated RTK or with Ras suffice for this activation. The inter-SH2 domain seems to have an affinity for binding lipid membranes. (A, from Y. Samuels et al., *Science* 304:554, 2004. B, from C.-H. Huang et al., *Science* 318:1744–1748, 2007. Both with permission from AAAS.)

Once activated by one or both of these associations, PI3K plays a central role in a number of signaling pathways, as described below. This is indicated by the fact that this enzyme is activated by a diverse array of signaling agents, including PDGF, nerve growth factor (NGF), insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), interleukin-3, and the extracellular matrix (ECM) attachment achieved by certain integrins (see Section 6.9).

The formation of the phosphorylated inositol head groups of phosphatidylinositol has little if any effect on the overall structure and function of the plasma membrane. (The inositol phospholipids are minor constituents of the plasma membrane.) However, a phosphorylated inositol head group protruding from the plasma membrane may be recognized and bound by certain proteins that are usually floating freely in the cytosol. Once anchored via a phosphoinositol to the plasma membrane, these proteins are then well positioned to release certain types of signals.

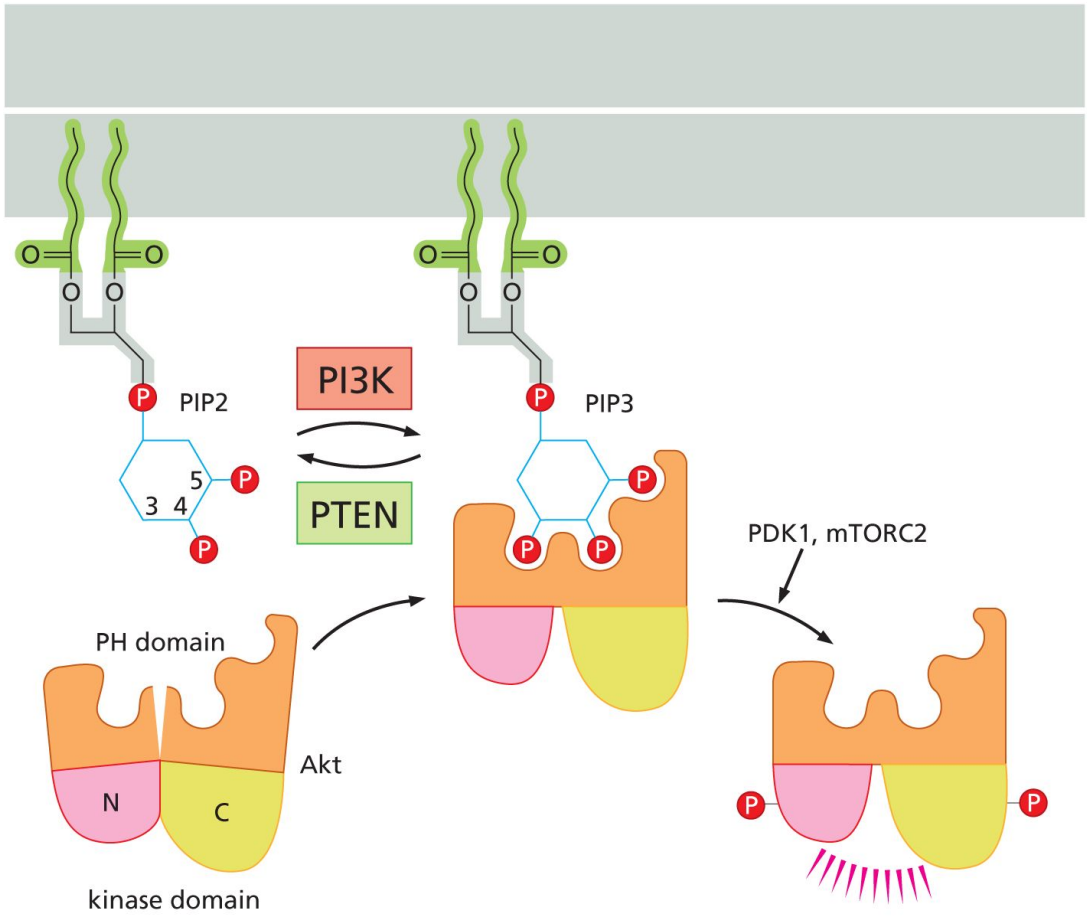
The most important of the phosphorylated inositol head groups appears to be PIP3, whose inositol, as mentioned above, carries phosphates at its 3′, 4′, and 5′ positions (see Figure 6.11B). Many of the cytosolic proteins that are attracted to PIP3 carry pleckstrin homology (PH) domains (see Table 6.2) that have strong affinity for this triply phosphorylated inositol head group (**Figures 6.13 and 6.14**). Arguably the most important PH domain–containing protein is the serine/threonine kinase named Akt/PKB, hereafter simply Akt. Thus, once PIP3 is formed by PI3K, an Akt kinase molecule can become tethered via its PH domain to the inositol head group of PIP3 that protrudes from the plasma membrane into the cytosol (Figure 6.14A). This association of Akt with the plasma membrane (together with phosphorylations of Akt that soon follow) results in the functional activation of Akt as a kinase. (In the absence of PIP3 binding, the PH domain of an Akt molecule obstructs its kinase domain,

explaining the inactivity of the cytosolic pool of Akt; see Figure 6.14B.) Once activated, Akt proceeds to phosphorylate a series of protein substrates that have multiple effects on the cell (see Figure 5.4B), including (1) aiding in cell survival by reducing the possibility that the cell apoptotic suicide program will become activated; (2) stimulating cell proliferation; and (3) stimulating cell growth, in the most literal sense of the term, that is, stimulating increases in cell size by increasing protein synthesis (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.6**). In addition, it also exerts an influence, still poorly understood, on cell motility and on angiogenesis—the production of new blood vessels (to be discussed in Chapter 13).



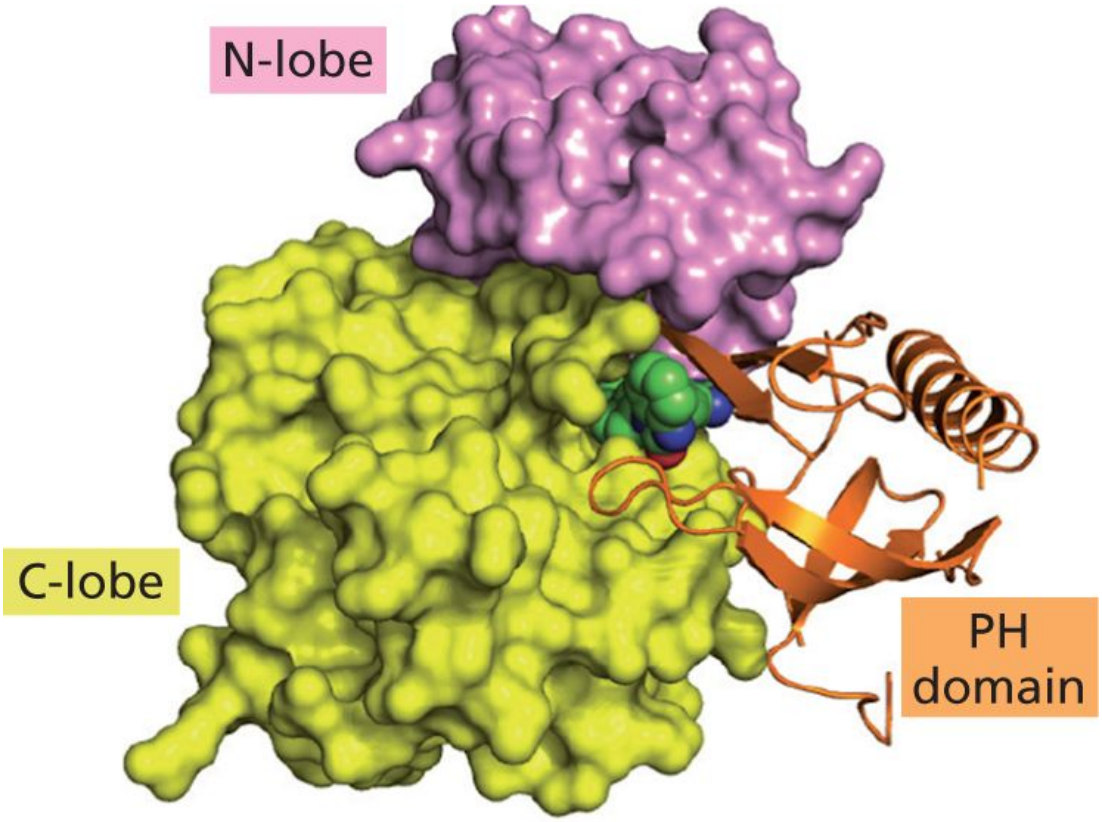
A four-part figure showing the effects of adding epidermal growth factor, E G F, to cells. Part A shows two connected cells, each roughly spherical, containing green fluorescent protein, G F P, fused to a protein with a wild-type P H domain. Each cell has large regions of bright green within the cytoplasm. Part B shows the effect of adding E G F to the wild type cells. The interior of each cell is now uniformly darker. Part C shows two cells, each irregularly shaped and connected by a short filament, containing G F P, fused to a protein with the P H domain removed.

Again, each cell has large regions of bright green within the cytoplasm. Part D looks the same as Part C indicating that adding the E G F has had no effect.
Figure 6.13 Migration of PH-containing proteins to PIP3 in the plasma membrane After PIP3 head groups are formed by PI3 kinase (see Figure 6.11B), they become attractive docking sites for PH (pleckstrin homology) domain–containing proteins. This phosphorylation and homing occurs within seconds of the activation of PI3 kinase, as revealed by these micrographs, in which green fluorescent protein (GFP) has been fused to a protein carrying a PH domain. This hybrid protein moves from a diffuse distribution throughout the cytoplasm (A) to the inner surface of the plasma membrane (B) within a minute after EGF (epidermal growth factor) has been added to cells. However, if the PH domain of the fusion protein is deleted (C), addition of EGF has no effect on its intracellular distribution (D) and it remains diffusely distributed throughout the cytoplasm. (From K. Venkateswarlu et al., *J. Cell Sci*. 112:1957–1965, 1999. With permission from The Company of Biologists.)



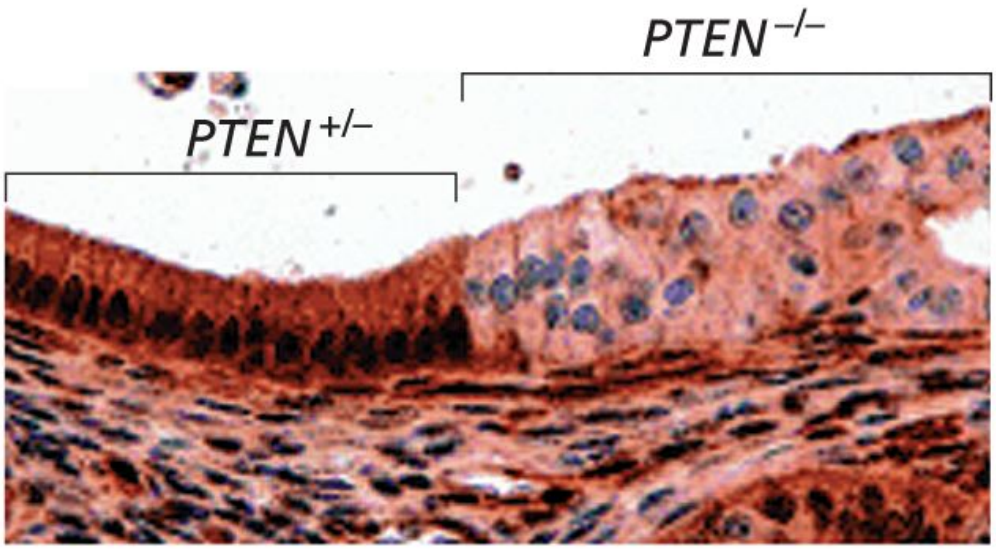
A sequence that begins with PIP 2, with its hydrophobic tails inside a plasma membrane and the head consisting of a glycerol and an inositol ring in which carbons 4 and 5 are phosphorylated. P I 3 K phosphorylates the number 3 carbon, producing PIP 3. The reverse process, from PIP 3 to PIP 2, would be via P T E N. A k t kinase has an N lobe and a C lobe on the kinase domain end and a complex P H domain at the other end that binds to the three exposed phosphotyrosines on the PIP 3 head. When the N and C lobes are each phosphorylated by P D K 1 and m T O R C 2, A k t kinase, now activated, detaches from PIP 3.

(A)



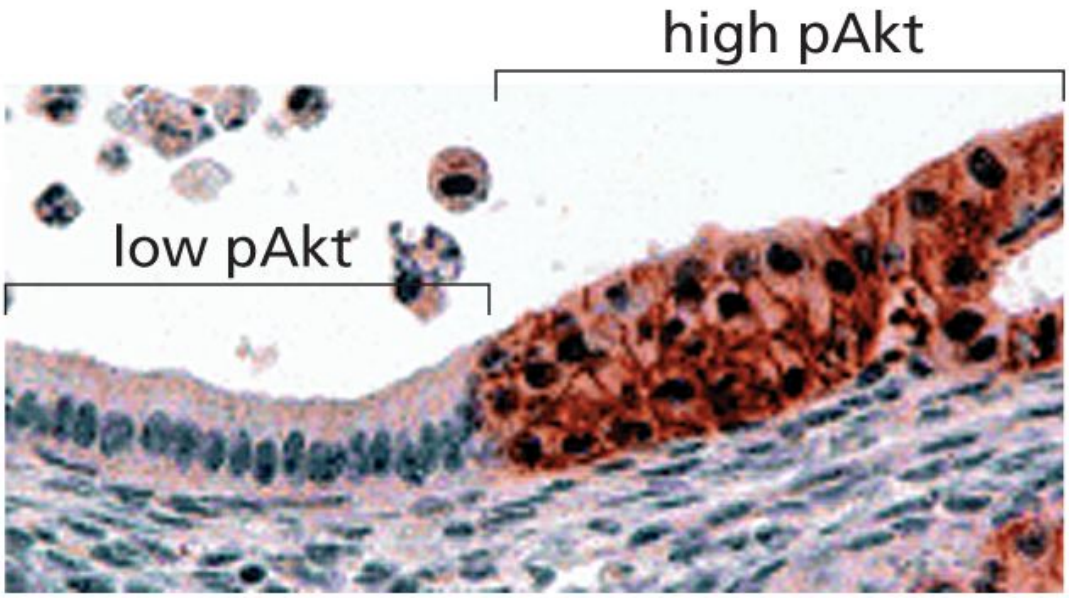
A model of A k t kinase, showing the large N lobe and the smaller C love as space-filling models and the P H domain as a ribbon structure. At the point where it connects to the N and C lobes there is a dark green structure.

(B)



A histology image of uterine epithelial cells, with P T E N plus minus cells on the left that look normal and P T E N minus minus cells on the right that are unnaturally thickened and irregular.

(C)



The same tissue and same pattern of normal and abnormal cell growth as in Part C, but with low p A k t activity on the left and high p A k t activity on the right.

(D)

Figure 6.14 Docking of PH domains to PIP3 By forming the triply phosphorylated inositol "head group" (*blue lines*) of PIP3 (see Figure 6.11B), PI3K creates a docking site for cytoplasmic proteins that carry PH domains. The most important of these is the Akt kinase. Once docked to the inner surface of the plasma membrane via its PH domain, the Akt kinase (sometimes termed PKB) becomes doubly phosphorylated at its two lobes (N, C) by two other kinases (PDK1 and mTORC2, respectively) and thereby activated (*lower right*). (Recent evidence indicates that PDK1, which has its own PH domain, can transduce oncogenic signals that do not depend on Akt activation.) Akt then proceeds to phosphorylate a variety of substrates throughout the cell regulating cell proliferation, survival, and size. However, if PTEN is also present and active, it dephosphorylates PIP3 to PIP2, thereby depriving Akt/PKB of a docking site at the plasma membrane. (The size of the PH domain of Akt/PKB relative to the size of its kinase domain has been greatly exaggerated in this drawing.) (B) The crystal structure of Akt reveals that the protein is formed from a kinase domain (*left*), shown here in a space-filling structure with the N- and C-lobes (*pink, yellow*) typical of most kinases (see Figure 6.6), which are connected via a flexible linker to the PH domain, shown as a ribbon diagram (*right, orange brown*). The catalytic cleft of the kinase domain sandwiched between its N- and C-lobes is usually inhibited by the PH domain. Upon binding to PIP3, the PH domain shifts away, disinhibiting the kinase domain. A drug molecule that inhibits the kinase and is bound near the catalytic cleft of the kinase is shown in *green*. (C) The dynamics of this interaction are seen in genetically altered mice having a *Pten*$^{+/-}$ genotype. Uterine epithelial cells in these mice often lose the remaining *Pten* wild-type allele, yielding *Pten*$^{-/-}$ cells, which form localized hyperplasias and cysts. Immunostaining with anti-PTEN antiserum shows that the epithelial cells on the right have lost PTEN expression and become larger, indicating the effects of the PIP3 pathway on cell size. (D) When the same lesion is stained with an anti-phospho-Akt antibody (which detects activated Akt), the cells on the right show high pAkt activity, while those on the left show very low activity, illustrating how even half the normal dose of PTEN present in the heterozygous cells suffices to shut down Akt function. (B, from W.-I. Wu et al., *PLoS One* 5:e12913, 2010. © 2010 Wu et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License. C and D, from K. Podsypanina et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. USA 98:10320–10325, 2001. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

Interestingly, functionally active Akt seems to elicit many of its effects while still anchored via its PH domain to the plasma membrane. In addition, once released from this tethering into the cytosol, Akt persists for some time in its activated state, ostensibly sustained by its pair of phosphorylated residues (see Figure 6.14A); indeed,

a portion of activated Akt succeeds in migrating into the nucleus, where it phosphorylates and thereby activates certain transcription factors. Eventually, however, Akt signaling is reversed by phosphatases that remove its activating phosphate groups.

The activation of PI3K, and thus of Akt, is under very tight control. In a quiescent, nongrowing cell lacking growth factor stimulation, the intracellular levels of PIP3 are extremely low. Once such a cell encounters mitogens, the levels of PIP3 in this cell increase rapidly (see Figure 6.13). The normally low levels of PIP3 and other phosphorylated PI molecules are the work of a series of phosphatases that reverse the actions of the activating kinases such as PI3K. The best characterized of these phosphatases, PTEN, removes the 3′ phosphate group from PIP3 that has previously been attached by PI3K (Figure 6.14A and C). This removal suggests two distinct mechanisms by which the Akt/PKB signaling pathway can become deregulated in cancer cells—hyperactivity of PI3K or inactivity of PTEN.

The portfolio of diverse biological functions assigned to Akt and described above requires that this kinase be able to phosphorylate a variety of substrates, each involved in a distinct downstream signaling pathway (**Table 6.3**). The first of these functions—facilitating cell survival—depends on the ability of Akt to suppress any tendencies the cell may have to activate its own built-in suicide program of apoptosis, as discussed in Chapter 9. For the moment, suffice it to say that phosphorylation by Akt results in the inhibition of several proteins that play prominent roles favoring the entrance of a cell into apoptosis.

Table 6.3 Effects of Akt/PKB on survival, proliferation, and cell growth[a]

Biological effect	**Substrate of Akt/PKB**	**Description**	**Functional consequence**
Anti-apoptotic			
	Bad (pro-apoptotic)	Bcl-X antagonist; like Bad, belongs to Bcl-2 protein family controlling mitochondrial membrane pores (Section 9.13).	inhibition

Biological effect	Substrate of Akt/PKB	Description	Functional consequence
Anti-apoptotic			
	caspase-9 (pro-apoptotic)	Component of the protease cascade that affects the apoptotic program (Section 9.13).	inhibition
	IκB kinase, abbreviated IKK (anti-apoptotic)	Activated by Akt/PKB phosphorylation (Section 6.12).	activation
	FOXO1 TF, formerly called FKHR TF (pro-apoptotic)	Phosphorylation prevents its nuclear translocation and activation of pro-apoptotic genes.	inhibition
	Mdm2 (anti-apoptotic)	Activated via phosphorylation by Akt/PKB; it triggers destruction of p53 (Section 9.8).	activation
Proliferative			
	GSK-3β (anti-proliferative)	Phosphorylates β-catenin, cyclin D1, and Myc (Sections 7.10, 8.3, 8.9), causing their degradation; inactivated via phosphorylation by Akt/PKB.	inhibition

Biological effect	Substrate of Akt/PKB	Description	Functional consequence
Anti-apoptotic			
	FOXO4, formerly called AFX (anti-proliferative)	Induces expression of the CDK inhibitor $p27^{Kip1}$ (Section 8.4) gene and some pro-apoptotic genes; exported from the nucleus when phosphorylated by Akt/PKB.	inhibition
	$p21^{Cip1}$ (anti-proliferative)	CDK inhibitor, like $p27^{Kip1}$ (Section 8.4). Exits the nucleus upon phosphorylation by Akt/PKB.	inhibition
Growth			
	Tsc2 (anti-growth)	Phosphorylation by Akt/PKB causes Tsc1/Tsc2 complex to dissociate, allowing activation of mTOR, which then up-regulates protein synthesis.	inhibition
Metabolism			
	GSK-3β	glycogen formation	activation
	ATP citrate lyase	fatty acid synthesis	activation
	mTOR	activator of glycolysis	activation

Biological effect	Substrate of Akt/PKB	Description	Functional consequence
Anti-apoptotic			
	GLUT4	glucose transporter	activation

The proliferative functions of Akt depend on its ability to perturb proteins that are important for regulating the advance of a cell through its cycle of growth and division, often termed the "cell cycle." We will learn more about this complex program in Chapter 8.

Independent of these effects on proliferation, Akt is able to induce dramatic changes in the proteins that control the rate of protein synthesis in the cell. Akt acts through intermediaries to trigger activation of mTOR kinase; the latter, when acting as a subunit of the mTORC1 complex, proceeds to phosphorylate and inactivate 4E-BP, a potent inhibitor of translation and, at the same time, phosphorylates and thereby activates p70S6 kinase, an activator of translation. These changes allow Akt to increase the efficiency with which the translation of a class of mRNAs is initiated; the resulting elevated rate of protein synthesis favors the accumulation of many cellular proteins and is manifested in the growth (rather than the proliferation) of cells. An illustration of the growth-inducing powers of Akt is provided by transgenic mice that express a mutant, constitutively active Akt in the β cells of the pancreatic islets (see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.6**); in such mice, these particular cells grow to a size more than twice the cross-sectional area (and almost 4 times the volume) of normal β cells!

There is evidence that yet other cytoplasmic proteins use their PH domains to associate with PIP3, and that this association also favors their functional activation. Among the PH-bearing cellular proteins are a group of guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) that function analogously to Sos (see Figure 5.24), being responsible for activating various small GTPases that are distant relatives of the Ras proteins. These other GTPases belong to the Rho family of signaling proteins, which includes Rho proper and its two cousins, Rac and Cdc42. Like Ras, these Rho proteins operate as binary switches, cycling between a GTP-bound actively signaling state and a GDP-bound inactive state (**Sidebar 6.4**). The Rho-GEFs, once activated by binding to PIP3, act on Rho proteins in the same way that Sos acts on Ras. In particular, the Rho-GEFs induce Rho proteins to jettison their bound GDPs, allowing GTP to jump aboard and activate the Rho's.

Sidebar 6.4 Ras is the prototype of a large family of similar proteins

Ras is only one of a large superfamily of at least 151 similarly structured mammalian proteins that together are called “small G proteins” to distinguish them from the other class of larger, heterotrimeric guanine nucleotide–binding G proteins that are activated by association with seven-membrane-spanning (serpentine) cell surface receptors (see Figure 5.19A). Most of these small G proteins have been given three-letter names, each derived in some way from the initially named and discovered Ras proteins—for example, Ral, Rac, Ran, Rho, Rheb, and so forth. (The Cdc42 protein is a member of the Rho family that has kept its own unique name because of its initial discovery through yeast genetics.)

Much of the sequence similarity shared among these otherwise diverse proteins is found in the cavities in each that bind and hydrolyze guanine nucleotides. Virtually all of the small G proteins operate like a binary switch, using a GTP–GDP–GTP cycle to flip back and forth between an on and an off state (see Figure 5.24). Like Ras, each of these proteins is thought to have its own specialized guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) to activate it (by promoting replacement of GDP by GTP) and its own GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs) to trigger its GTPase activity, thereby inactivating it.

Each of these small G proteins is specialized to associate with its own group of effector proteins and control a distinct cell-physiologic or biochemical process, including regulation of the structure of the cytoskeleton, trafficking of intracellular vesicles, and apoptosis. One is even used to regulate the transport of proteins through pores in the nuclear membrane. The only trait shared in common by these diverse cell-biological processes is a need to be regulated by some type of binary switching mechanism—an operation for which the small G proteins are ideally suited.

Activated Rho proteins have functions that differ strongly from those of Ras: they participate in reconfiguring the structure of the cytoskeleton and the attachments that the cell makes with its physical surroundings. (While Ras and Rho proteins retain many commonalities in structure and guanine nucleotide binding, they seem to have diverged from one another at least 1.5 billion years ago during the early evolution of eukaryotic cells.) The Rho-like proteins control cell shape, motility, and, in the case of cancer cells, invasiveness. For example, Cdc42 is involved in reorganizing the actin cytoskeleton of the cell as well as controlling filopodia, small, fingerlike extensions from the plasma membrane that the cell uses to explore its environment and form adhesions to the extracellular matrix. Rac, in contrast, is involved in the formation of lamellipodia, broad ruffles extending from the plasma membrane that are found at the leading edges of motile cells. Because these structures are so intimately tied to the

steps of tumor cell invasion and metastasis, we will defer further discussion of these structures and their mechanisms of action until Chapter 14.

The pathway involving PI metabolites and Akt is deregulated in a number of human cancer cell types through changes that are often quite independent of Ras oncoprotein action (**Table 6.4**). In advanced ovarian carcinomas, elevated levels of one form of PI3K are associated with increased proliferation and invasiveness as well as decreased levels of apoptosis. In yet other tumors, such as lymphomas, cancers of the head and neck, and colon carcinomas, the Akt enzyme is overexpressed and presumably hyperactivated.

Table 6.4 Alteration of the PI3K pathway in human tumors[a]

Cancer type	***Akt/PKB* hyperactive**	***PIKC3A* hyperactive**[b]	***p85α***[c]	***PTEN*-mutant or repressed** [d]
Glioblastoma		6–27%	8%	20%
Ovarian carcinoma	~2%	4–12%	4%	8%
Endometrial carcinoma		22%		42–54%
HeHepatocellular carcinoma		6–36%		5%
Melanoma	~80%	~9%		40–50%
Lung carcinoma		3–4%		9%
Renal cell carcinoma		3%		4%
Thyroid carcinoma		5%		5%

Cancer type	***Akt/PKB* hyperactive**	***PIKC3A* hyperactive**[b]	***p85α***[c]	***PTEN*-mutant or repressed** [d]
Lymphoid		3%		8%
Prostate carcinoma		2%		10%
Colon carcinoma	~6%	14–32%	2–8%	13–54%
Breast carcinoma	~8%	18–40%	2%	20–33%
Bladder		23%		8%
Pancreatic		25%	17%	
Gastric		8%		

From www.sanger.ac.uk/perl/genetics/CGP/cosmic; T.L. Yuan and L.C. Cantley, *Oncogene* 27:5497–5510; B.S. Jaiswal et al., *Cancer Cell* 16:463–474, 2009; D.W. Parsons et al., *Science* 321:1807–1812, 2008; and Y. Samuels and K. Ericson, *Curr. Opin. Oncol*. 18:77–82, 2006.

PI3K is hyperactivated in almost one-third of human colon carcinomas because of mutations affecting its p110α catalytic subunit (see Figure 6.12A and Table 6.4). In fact, these activating mutations make the *PIK3CA* gene, which encodes the α isoform of PI3K, the second most mutated oncogene in human cancers, appearing just below the K-*RAS* gene in the roster. Experimental inactivation of the gene encoding the p110α subunit effectively eliminates the ability of an activated K-*ras* oncogene to incite pancreatic cancer in mice, pointing to the critical role of this PI3K isoform in relaying signals from a Ras oncoprotein to a variety of downstream cellular targets. At the same time, the frequently observed hyperactivity of Akt seen in a diverse array of human cancers is due to elevation of PIP3 levels caused more often by loss of PTEN function rather than hyperactivity of PI3K (see Table 6.4).

In a number of distinct tumor types, including breast and prostate carcinomas as well as glioblastomas, this loss of PTEN activity arises because of mutations in the encoding *PTEN* gene, DNA methylation events that suppress transcription of the *PTEN* gene, or overexpression of a microRNA that suppresses translation of the PTEN mRNA. Altogether, PTEN activity is lost in 30 to 40% of all human cancers. The resulting accumulation of high levels of the PIP3 phosphorylated inositide results in the downstream consequences enumerated above. This normal behavior of *PTEN* in suppressing cell proliferation indicates that it functions as a tumor suppressor gene, a topic that we will explore in Chapter 7.

Since PI3K activation and PTEN loss lead to the same outcome—an increase in PIP3—we might expect that human tumors generally have one but not the other alteration, and this is indeed the case. Hence, PI3K activation makes PTEN inactivation unnecessary, and vice versa.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

amphipathic
: Describing a molecule containing distinct hydrophobic and hydrophilic domains.

second messenger
: A low–molecular-weight molecule that functions as an intracellular hormone, conveying signals from one part of a cell to another.

filopodium
: Filamentous, spikelike protrusion from the surface of a cell, usually extending from the leading edge of a lamellipodium, that may be used by the cell to explore territory that lies ahead in its path and to forge focal adhesions with the extracellular matrix lying in this path. *See also* **lamellipodium**.

lamellipodium
: (pl., **- ia**) A broad, sheetlike ruffle extending from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space that is typically found at the leading edge of a motile cell.

angiogenesis
: Process by which new blood vessels are formed by sprouting from existing vessels; *also called* **neoangiogenesis** in certain circumstances. *Compare* **vasculogenesis**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aAdditional effects of Akt on extracellular matrix formation, motility, and yet other cell-biological processes are not indicated here.Return to reference a
- aThe percentages in this table are approximate, since the proportion of tumors bearing the indicated alteration increases progressively as tumor progression proceeds, often dramatically, and because many reports do not distinguish between inactivation by mutation and inactivation by promoter methylation.Return to reference a
- b*PIKC3A* appears to be the only gene of the 16 members of the PI3K-encoding gene family to undergo somatic mutation during tumor development. These mutations affect the p110 catalytic subunit of PI3 kinase; frequently occurring amplifications of this gene are not registered in this table.Return to reference b
- c*PI3KR1* mutations affect the regulatory subunit of PI3K kinase and are most commonly observed in human cancers; alterations of the four other members of this family of PI3K regulatory subunits are not registered here. Alterations of the encoded p85α subunit cited here were few in number and the indicated percentages are likely to change dramatically as more data are collected.Return to reference c
- d[d]*PTEN* nonsense mutations and deletions are registered here and, in many cases, the even more frequent shutdown of expression through promoter methylation or the actions of microRNAs. (Promoter methylation often results in shutdown of transcription of a gene; see Section 7.7.)Return to reference d

OceanofPDF.com

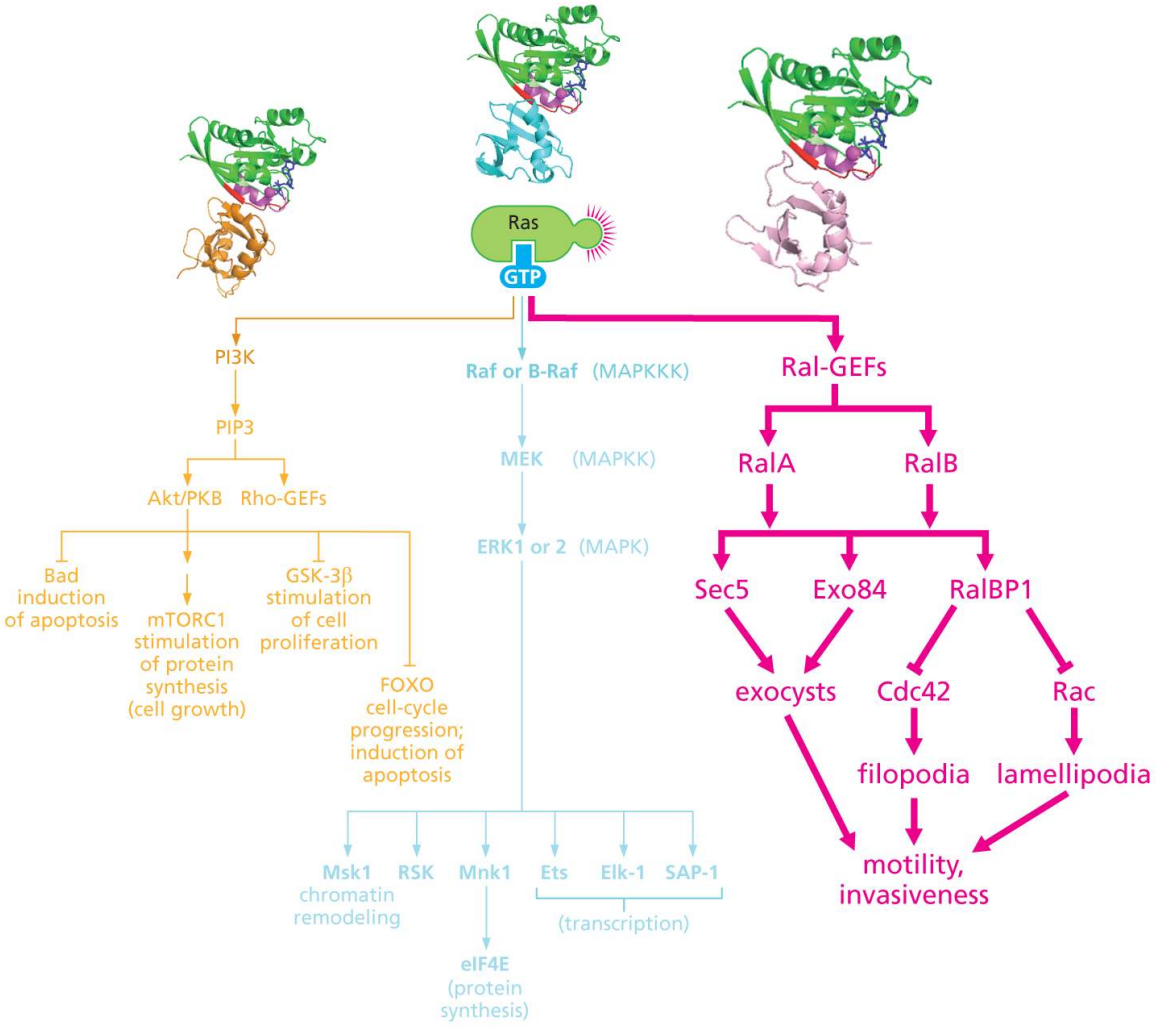
6.7 Ras-regulated signaling pathways: a third downstream pathway acts through Ral, a distant cousin of Ras

The third of the three major effector pathways downstream of Ras involves a pair of Ras-like proteins termed Ral-A and Ral-B, which share 58% sequence identity with Ras (see Sidebar 6.4). As is the case with Ras and the Rho proteins, functional activation of these Ral proteins involves the replacement of bound GDP with GTP (see Figure 5.24).

The communication between Ras and Ral is mediated by Ral guanine nucleotide exchange factors (Ral-GEFs), which can stimulate a Ral protein to shed its GDP and bind GTP, thereby echoing the effects of Sos on Ras. In addition to its GEF (guanine nucleotide exchange factor) domain, each Ral-GEF has a pocket that can bind activated Ras. This association with Ras has two consequences for the Ral-GEF: Ras causes the relocalization of the Ral-GEFs near the inner surface of the plasma membrane or another cytoplasmic membrane; in addition, binding to Ras seems to cause a conformational shift in Ral-GEFs that activates their intrinsic guanine nucleotide exchange factor activity.

The resulting activation of RalA and RalB proteins allows them to regulate targets further downstream in the signaling circuitry (**Figure 6.15**). For example, the Ral pathway can activate two proteins—Sec5 and Exo84—that contribute to Ras-mediated anchorage-independent growth, ostensibly by regulating exocysts that control the display of various proteins on the cell surface via the process of exocytosis; in addition, RalA/B signaling, acting via RalBP1, causes inactivation of the two Rho proteins cited in the last section—Cdc42 and Rac. RalA phosphorylation results in its functional inactivation, and its dephosphorylation (by PP2A phosphatase; see Section 11.9) can mimic much of the actions of an activated Ras oncoprotein in human cell transformation. Rac can also emit mitogenic signals and, by stimulating the production of reactive oxygen species, antagonize the actions of several Rho proteins. Though still poorly understood,

the Ral proteins are likely to play key roles in the motility that enables cancer cells to invade and metastasize.



Three pathways all begin with a G T P activated R a s. In the right one, which is emphasized, R a s activates R a l-G E effs. This leads to the activation of R a l A and R a l B. These in turn lead to S e c 5, E x o 84, and R a l B P 1. S e c 5 and E x o 84 together stimulate the development of exocysts, which enhance motility and invasiveness. R a l B P 1, meanwhile, inhibits C d c 4 2, which stimulates development of filopodia, which enhance motility and invasiveness, and R a l B P 1 also inhibits R a c, which stimulates development of lamellipodia, which again enhance motility and invasiveness. In another pathway, G T P activated R a s activates R a f or B R a f. In the third pathway, G T P activated R a s activates P I 3 K.

Figure 6.15 Ral and the control of the cytoskeleton The interaction of Ras with Ral-GEF (*pink, right*) enables the latter to activate the RalA and RalB GTPase proteins. The resulting GTP-bound Ral proteins proceed to activate a number of downstream pathways; prominent among them are those that activate Sec5, Exo84, and RalBP1. Sec5 and Exo84 contribute to the anchorage-independent growth of *Ras*-transformed cells *in vitro* and to their tumorigenicity *in vivo*; in addition, these two proteins together exert effects on the *exocyst*—a multiprotein complex involved in tethering cytoplasmic vesicles to the plasma membrane prior to exocytosis as well as other functions associated with vesicular trafficking. RalBP1, acting via Cdc42 and Rac, reorganizes the actin cytoskeleton and thereby affects cell motility and invasiveness. The bimolecular structural complex (*above*) illustrates the interaction of the effector domain of Ras (*red, purple*) with the Ras-binding domain of Ral-GEF, also known as Ral-GDS (*pink*). (Adapted from M.E. Pacold et al., *Cell* 103:931–943, 2000; N. Nassar et al., *Nature* 375:554–560, 1995; and L. Huang et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 5:422–426, 1998.)

The functional description of Ras as a pleiotropically acting oncoprotein can now be explained at a biochemical level by the actions of the three downstream signaling cascades that radiate from Ras. It would be pleasing if each of the phenotypes that we have associated with Ras oncoprotein action (for example, anchorage independence, survival, proliferation, or biosynthetic rate) could be linked specifically to the actions of one of the three Ras effector arms. In fact, things are more complicated: most Ras-induced phenotypes seem to be achieved through the collaborative actions of several of these effectors with one another. However, to oversimplify, the pleiotropic actions of a Ras oncoprotein depend on its Raf effectors inducing cell proliferation, its PI3K effectors promoting cell survival and metabolic changes (for example, aerobic glycolysis), and its Ral-GEF effectors controlling membrane trafficking and adhesion.

There are also three other dimensions of complexity that we have not touched on. First, we have discussed Ras here as if it were a single protein, but there are indications that the four Ras proteins (one H-Ras, one N-Ras, and two K-Ras species) act in subtly different ways in distinct cytoplasmic locations. Thus, after Ras proteins become activated by Sos and its relatives near the plasma membrane, they may continue to emit signals from the membranes of endosomes generated by endocytosis and, thereafter, from other cytoplasmic membranes, notably those of the Golgi apparatus and the endoplasmic reticulum; at each of these locations, the various Ras proteins interact with greater or lesser efficiency

with their downstream effectors (see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.4**). Second, our list of three Ras effectors (Raf, PI3K, and Ral-GEF) is hardly an exhaustive one. It is clear that Ras can interact with at least half a dozen other, still poorly characterized effectors that enable it to evoke yet other changes within the cell (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.9**). And finally, the Raf kinase, and plausibly many other kinases, act as homodimers and heterodimers that control each other's catalytic activity (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.5**), echoing receptor tyrosine kinase dimerization described in the last chapter.

In any hierarchical organization, those individuals near the top exert far more power and influence than those lower down. By activating multiple control pathways concomitantly, a Ras oncoprotein (or a stimulatory signal emitted by one of its upstream controllers) induces many of the phenotypic changes acquired by a cell during the course of neoplastic transformation. In contrast, deregulation of one or another of the pathways downstream of Ras confers only a *subset* of these phenotypic changes and therefore yields far less proliferative advantage for a would-be cancer cell. This point is illustrated nicely by the mutant alleles of the gene encoding the B-Raf kinase, the close cousin of Raf cited above, which is also activated by interaction with Ras. These mutations, which are found in more than half of human melanomas, create oncogenic *BRAF* alleles whose products, in spite of their greatly enhanced kinase activity (also described in Section 6.5), have only about one-fiftieth of the transforming power of the glycine-to-valine–substituted, activated Ras oncoprotein. Presumably, signaling components located further downstream, when altered by mutation, confer even less benefit (that is, proliferative advantage) on evolving pre-neoplastic cells and therefore are rarely encountered in the genomes of human tumor cells. Moreover, human tumors often show concomitant genetic alterations of two of the effector pathways (for example, Raf and PI3K) rather than a mutation in the *Ras* gene itself; this apparently enables these downstream effectors, working in concert, to achieve cell-biological effects comparable to those elicited by a mutant Ras oncoprotein.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

exocyst

Multi-subunit cytoplasmic protein complex that enables the tethering to the inner surface of the plasma membrane of vesicles destined for exocytosis, thereby regulating the cell surface display and secretion of a broad range of signaling molecules. *See* **exocytosis**.

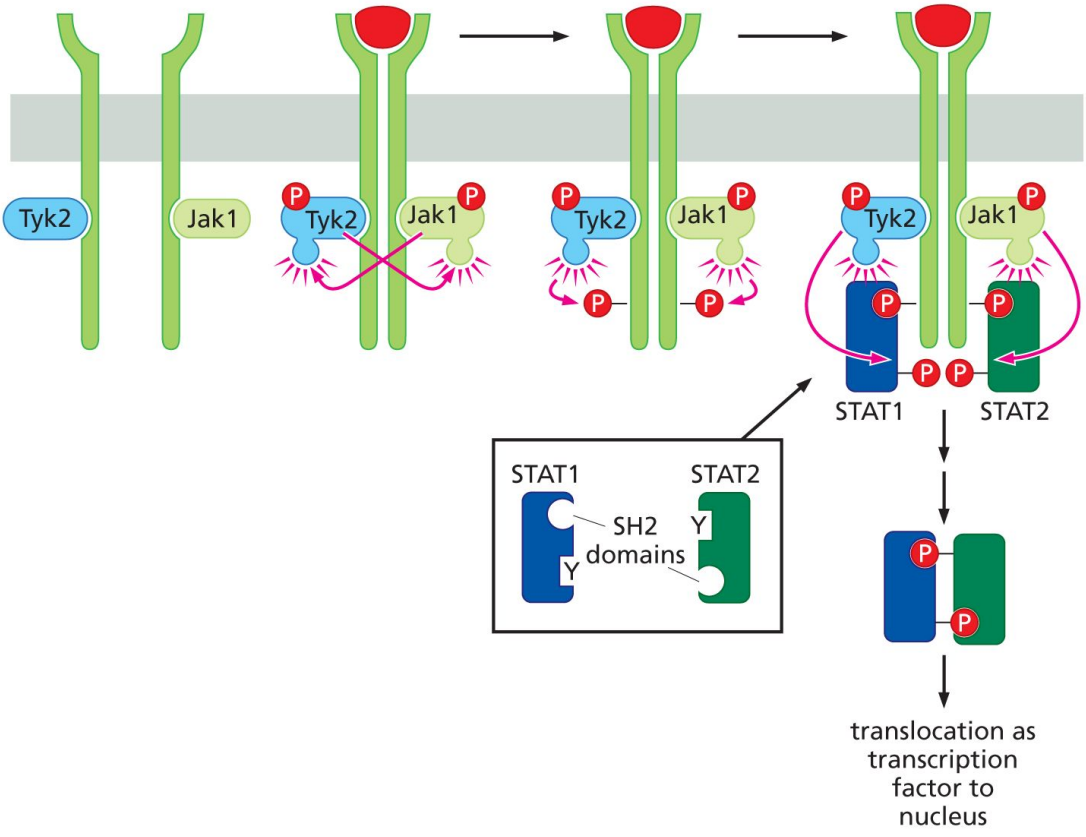
exocytosis

(1) Process by which cells secrete soluble products by storing them in the lumina of cytoplasmic exocytic vesicles that are caused to fuse with the plasma membrane, allowing the products carried within these vesicles to be released into the extracellular space. (2) Process by which cells achieve the display of proteins on the cell surface by embedding them in the membranes of exocytic vesicles prior to fusion of the latter with the plasma membrane. *Compare* **endocytosis**. *See also* **exocyst**.

OceanofPDF.com

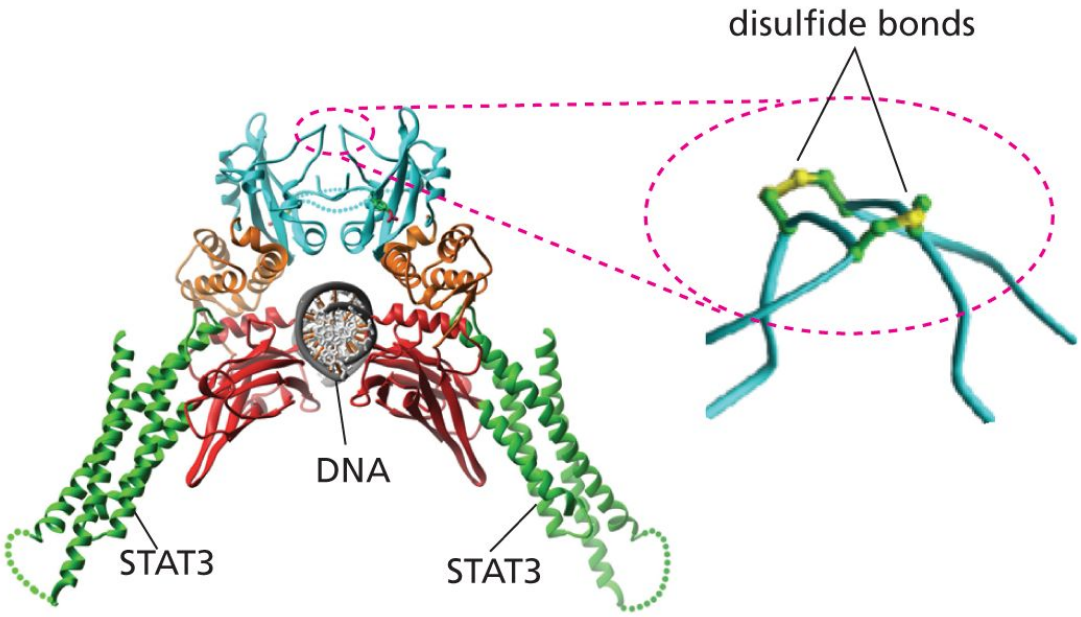
6.8 The JAK–STAT pathway allows signals to be transmitted from the plasma membrane directly to the nucleus

As mentioned in Section 5.7, study of a number of receptors for cytokines—growth factors that stimulate components of the hematopoietic system—has revealed receptor molecules that are constructed slightly differently from most of the growth factor receptors that were discussed in the last chapter. These particular receptor proteins do not carry covalently linked tyrosine kinase domains and instead form noncovalent complexes with tyrosine kinases of the JAK (Janus kinase) class (**Figure 6.16A**). Included among these are the receptors for interferon (IFN), erythropoietin (EPO), and thrombopoietin (TPO). Interferon is an important mediator of immune cell function, as we will learn in Chapter 15; the other two cytokines control erythropoiesis (red blood cell formation) and thrombopoiesis (platelet formation), respectively.



A diagram shows what happens after a ligand binds to a receptor with a T y k 2 domain on one subunit and a J a k 1 domain on the other subunit. The two domains transphosphorylate each other and then phosphorylate the C two terminal tails. The resulting complex attracts an STAT 1 to the T y k 2 side and an STAT 2 to the J a k 1 side. The two STATs then attach to each other, matching an S T 2 domain on each to a phosphotyrosine attached to the other. The dimerized STAT translocates to the nucleus as a transcription factor.

(A)



A symmetric ribbon diagram with two S T A threes flanking a central D N A. A close-up of the top of the molecule shows disulfide bonds.

(B)

Figure 6.16 The JAK–STAT pathway (A) The JAK–STAT pathway depends upon the actions of JAK tyrosine kinases, such as JAK1 and Tyk2 illustrated here. Both of these kinases are attached noncovalently to a number of cytokine receptors, including those for interferons, erythropoietin (EPO), and thrombopoietin (TPO). Once a ligand has activated one of these receptors via dimerization, the JAKs transphosphorylate one another as well as the C-terminal tails of the receptors. The resulting phosphotyrosines attract STAT proteins, such as the STAT1 and STAT2 shown here (*dark blue, dark green*), which bind via their SH2 domains and become phosphorylated on specific phosphotyrosines, indicated here as Y's (*inset*), by the JAKs. Thereafter, the STATs dimerize, each using its SH2 domain to bind to the phosphotyrosine of its partner, and then translocate to

the nucleus, where they operate as transcription factors to activate expression of key genes, for example, the gene encoding an interferon. Not shown here is the activation under certain conditions of JAKs that are bound to some G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) and the phosphorylation of STATs directly by certain ligand-activated growth factor receptors (RTKs) as well as non-receptor tyrosine kinases. (B) As indicated above, the STAT3 proteins normally dimerize through the SH2 domains in their C-terminal regions (*aquamarine*) to form dimeric transcription factors that sit astride the DNA double helix (*gray and brown circular structure*). However, use of site-directed mutagenesis has allowed the insertion of two cysteine residues in the C-terminal domain of STAT3, leading to the formation of dimers that are held together covalently by disulfide bonds (*right*). Thus, the disulfide bonds (*yellow*) linking the two monomers are within the dashed oval (*left*). Thereafter, these two STAT3 proteins are held together constitutively without any physiological signal to stimulate their dimerization. (From J. Bromberg et al., *Cell* 98:295–303, 1999. With permission from Elsevier.)

Following ligand-mediated receptor dimerization, the JAK enzyme associated with each receptor molecule phosphorylates tyrosine residues on the cytoplasmic tails of the partner receptor molecule, much like the transphosphorylation occurring after ligand activation of receptors like the EGF-R and PDGF-R (see Figure 5.11A). The resulting phosphotyrosines attract and are bound by SH2-containing transcription factors termed STATs (signal transducers and activators of transcription), which then become phosphorylated by the JAKs. This creates individual STAT molecules that possess both SH2 groups and newly acquired phosphotyrosines. Importantly, the SH2 groups displayed by the STATs have a specificity for binding the phosphotyrosine residues that have just been created on the STATs. Consequently, STAT–STAT dimers form, in which each STAT uses its SH2 group to bind the phosphotyrosine of its partner. The resulting dimerized STATs migrate to the nucleus, where they function as transcription factors (see Figure 6.16A).

The STATs—seven of which have been documented—activate target genes that are important for cell proliferation and cell survival. Included among these genes are *myc*, the genes specifying cyclins D2 and D3 (which enable cells to advance through their growth-and-division cycles, as described in Chapter 8), and the gene encoding the strongly anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-X_L (described in Chapter 9). In addition to phosphorylating STATs, the JAKs can phosphorylate substrates that activate other mitogenic pathways, including the Ras–MAPK pathway described earlier.

Perhaps the most dramatic demonstration of the contribution of STATs to cancer development has come from a re-engineering of the STAT3 protein through the introduction of a pair of cysteine residues, which causes the resulting mutant STAT3 to

dimerize spontaneously, forming stable covalent disulfide cross-linking bonds (Figure 6.16B). These stabilized STAT3 dimers are structural and functional mimics of the dimers that are formed physiologically when STAT3 is phosphorylated by JAKs. This mutant STAT3 protein is now constitutively active as a nuclear transcription factor and can function as an oncoprotein that is capable of transforming NIH 3T3 and other immortalized mouse cells to a tumorigenic state.

STAT3 is also known to be constitutively activated in a number of human cancers. For example, in many melanomas, its activation is apparently attributable to Src, which is also constitutively active in these cancer cells; indeed, at least four other cousins of Src, all nonreceptor tyrosine kinases, can also phosphorylate and thereby activate STAT3. This highlights the fact that STATs can be activated in the cytoplasm by tyrosine kinases other than the receptor-associated JAKs. In the case of the melanoma cells, inhibition of Src, which leads to deactivation of STAT3, triggers apoptosis, pointing to the important contribution of STAT3 in ensuring the survival of these cancer cells.

In the majority of breast cancer cells, STAT3 has been found to be constitutively activated; in some of these, STAT3 is phosphorylated by Src and JAKs acting collaboratively. As is the case with melanoma cells, reversal of STAT3 activation in these breast cancer cells leads to growth inhibition and apoptosis. In almost all head-and-neck cancers, STAT3 is also constitutively activated, possibly through the actions of the EGF receptor. Alternatively, in many glioblastomas, activation of STAT3 is favored by the loss of a phosphatase responsible for removing its phosphotyrosine. STAT3 activation in lung and gastric cancers also appears to be critical to their neoplastic phenotype.

After reaching the nucleus, dimerized activated STAT proteins induce the expression of several hundred genes, many of which favor cell proliferation and protect against apoptosis. Taken together, these various threads of evidence converge on the notion that STATs represent important mediators of transformation in a variety of human cancer cell types. This depiction of the STATs as being invariably tumor-promoting must be tempered by the fact that certain STATs, such as STAT1, can antagonize cell proliferation and survival and therefore act as tumor-suppressing proteins. For example, this particular STAT can act to promote cell cycle arrest and even induce cell death via apoptosis, which we will encounter in Chapter 9.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cytokine
: (1) Secreted protein that operates like growth factors to stimulate or inhibit various cell types, notably those constituting various branches of the hematopoietic and immune systems. (2) Less commonly, secreted proteins that convey signals between cells, including mitogenic growth factors.

erythropoiesis
: Process by which red blood cells are formed.

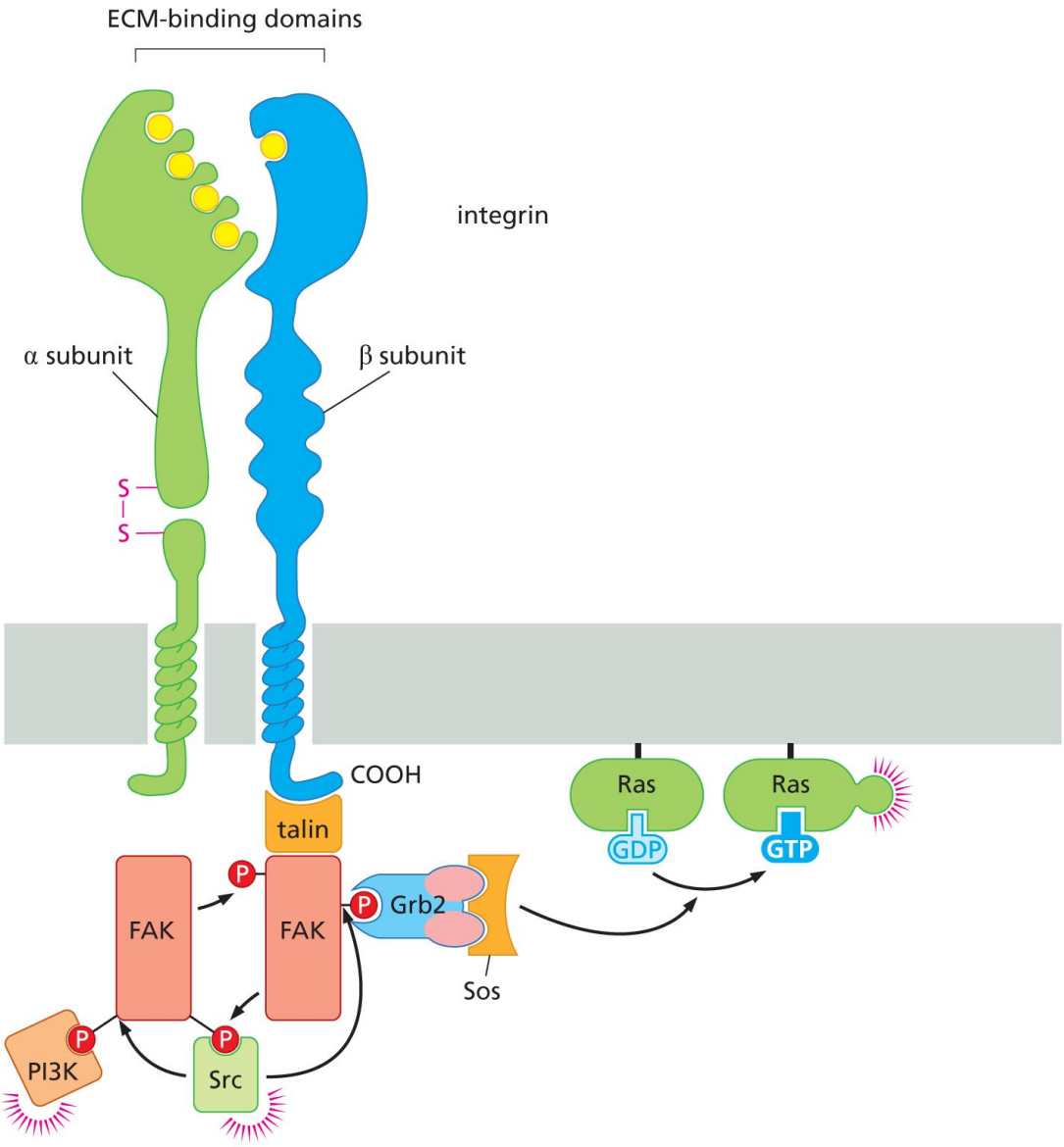
thrombopoiesis
: Process leading to the formation of blood platelets from megakaryocytes.

OceanofPDF.com

6.9 Cell adhesion receptors emit signals that converge with those released by growth factor receptors

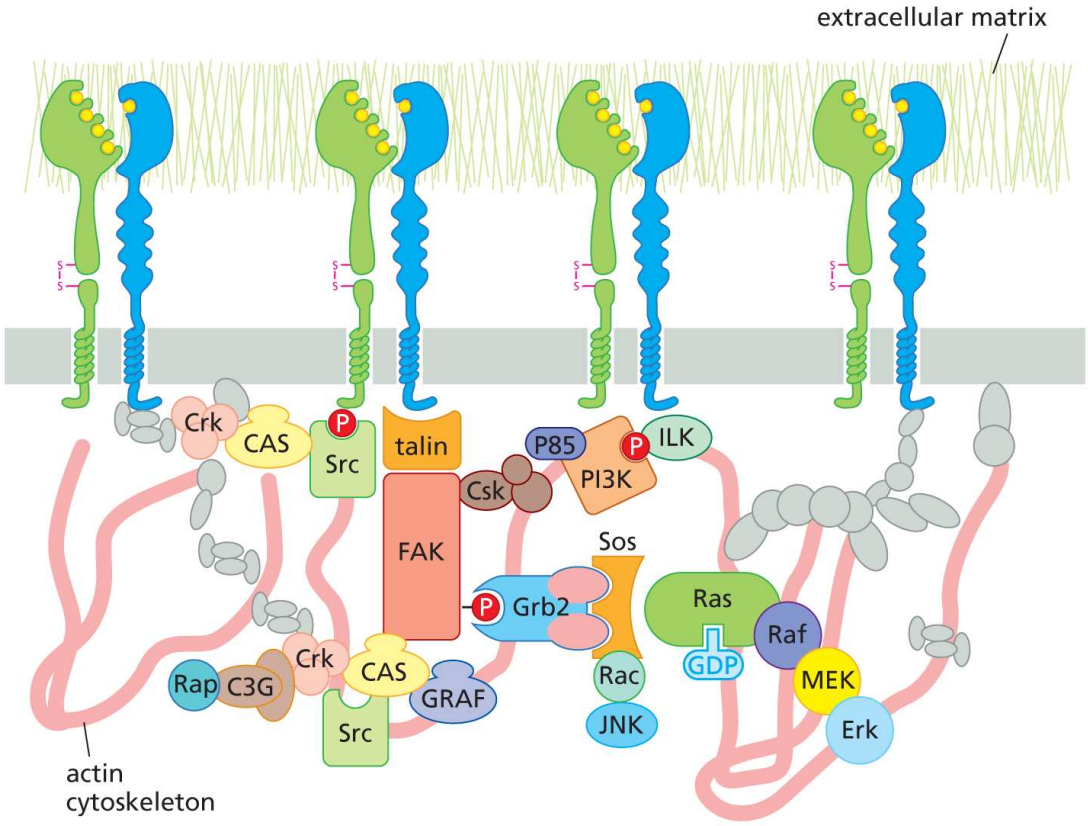
In the last chapter, we read that cells continuously monitor their attachment to components of the extracellular matrix (ECM; Section 5.9). Successful tethering to the molecules forming the ECM, achieved via integrins, causes survival signals to be released into the cytoplasm that decrease the likelihood that a cell will enter into the form of apoptosis termed anoikis. At the same time, integrin activation, provoked by signals originating inside the cell, can promote cell motility by stimulating integrin molecules located at specific sites on the plasma membrane to forge new linkages with the ECM. Consequently, integrins serve the three functions of (1) physically linking cells to the ECM, (2) informing cells whether or not tethering to certain ECM components has been achieved, and (3) facilitating motility by making and breaking contacts with the ECM. (In fact, there is a fourth but incompletely understood function: integrins and their cytoplasmic signaling partners serve as sensors of physical tension that arises between the ECM and the actin cytoskeleton. Cells respond in complex ways to this sensed tension.)

As described in the last chapter, integrins may cluster and form multiple links to the ECM in small, localized areas termed *focal adhesions* (see Figure 5.22A). Such clustering provokes strong activation of focal adhesion kinase (FAK), a nonreceptor tyrosine kinase like Src. FAK is associated with the cytoplasmic tails of the β subunits of certain integrin molecules and becomes phosphorylated, apparently by transphosphorylation, once integrins congregate in these focal adhesions. One of the resulting phosphotyrosine residues on FAK provides a docking site for various SH2-containing signaling molecules including notably Src, Shc, PI3K, and PLC-γ (**Figure 6.17A**). The binding of Src results in the phosphorylation of additional tyrosines on FAK, and the resulting phosphotyrosines serve as docking sites for yet other SH2-containing signaling molecules, including Grb2, Shc, and PLC-γ. There is also evidence that Grb2, once bound to tyrosine-phosphorylated FAK, can recruit Sos into this complex; Sos then proceeds to activate its normal downstream Ras target. In fact, the full complexity of signaling downstream of integrins still awaits resolution (Figure 6.17B).



A diagram of an integrin, with a green alpha subunit on the left and a blue beta subunit on the right. The domains that extend into the cytosol are hook-shaped, and on the beta subunit the carboxyl group at the end is shown. A talin attaches to the hooked portion, and a series of interactions occur with an F A K that has phosphorylated, activated P I 3 K and Sarc groups attached. The result is that a doubly phosphorylated F A K attaches to the talin, and a G r b 2 S o s complex attaches to one of the phosphotyrosines. An R a s attached to the cytoplasmic side of the plasma membrane has an attached G D P. The G r b 2 S o s complex converts the G D P to G T P, activating the R a s, which begins signaling.

(A)



Four integrins, side by side. Attached to the hook shaped ends on the cytoplasmic side is a complex arrangement of proteins and other molecules fixed within the actin cytoskeleton. These include the molecules shown in Par A, two copies each of C R S and C R K, and single copies of many other molecules.

(B)

Figure 6.17 Integrin signaling (A) The integrins are assembled as α + β heterodimers. In addition to physically linking the cytoskeleton to the extracellular matrix (ECM; see Figure 5.22B), the binding by the ectodomain of the heterodimer to components of the ECM (*not shown*) triggers the association of a series of cytoplasmic signal-transducing proteins, such as focal adhesion kinase (FAK), with the β subunit. Resulting transphosphorylation events and the attraction of SH2-containing signaling molecules release signals that activate many of the same pathways that are turned on by ligand-activated growth factor receptors. This signaling is amplified by clustering of multiple heterodimers following ECM binding (*not shown*). (B) As indicated here, the molecules shown in panel A represent only part of a complex, still-poorly understood collection of signal-transducing molecules that become physically associated with the cytoplasmic domains of various integrin β subunits following ECM binding. In

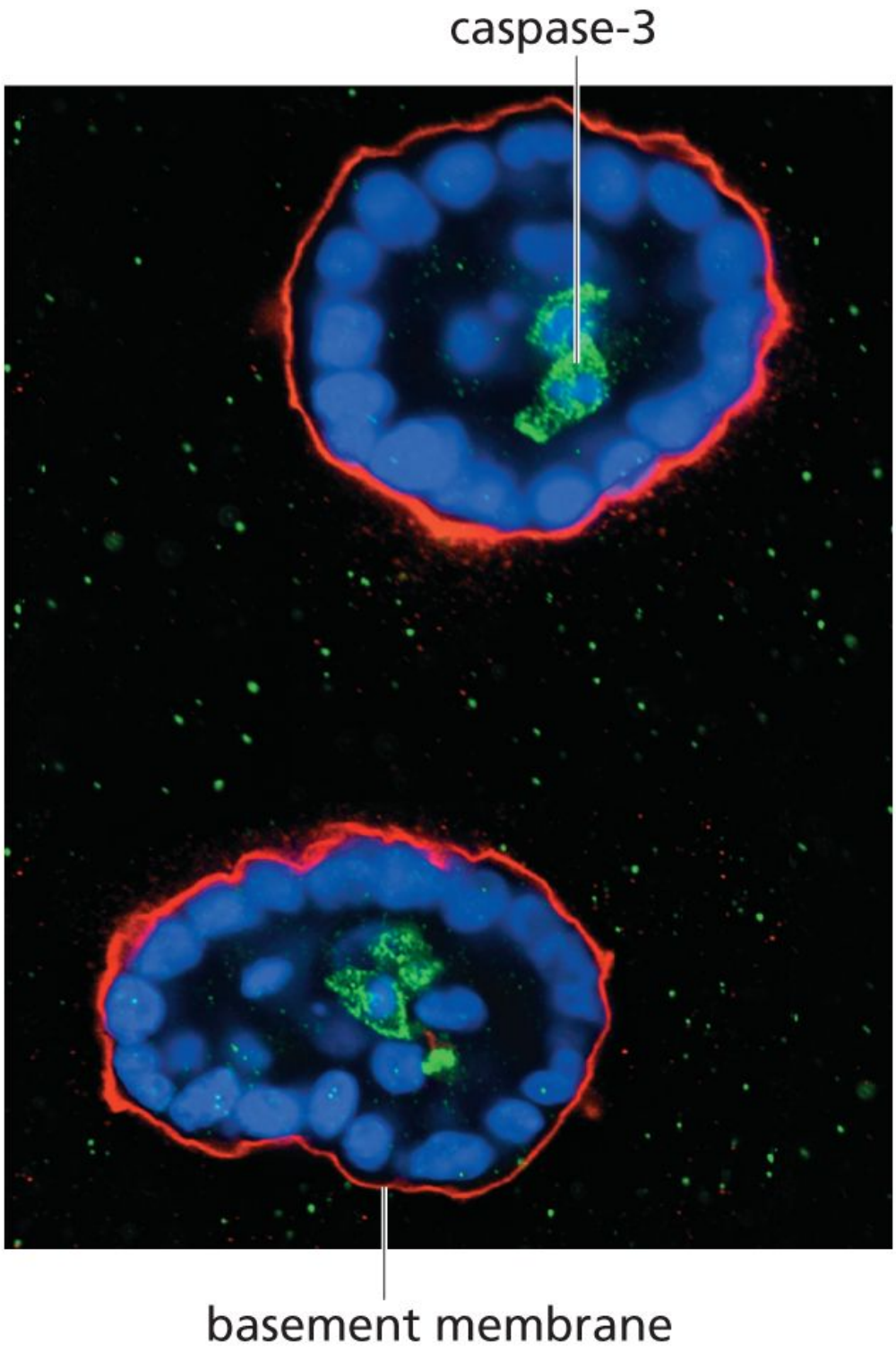
total, almost 180 distinct proteins have been found to be physically associated with focal adhesions. (Adapted from C. Miranti and J. Brugge, *Nat. Cell Biol*. 4:E83–E90, 2002. With permission from Nature.)

The accumulated evidence suggests a pathway that has, minimally, the following components:

ECM → integrins → Sos → Ras → Raf, PI3K, and Ral-GEF

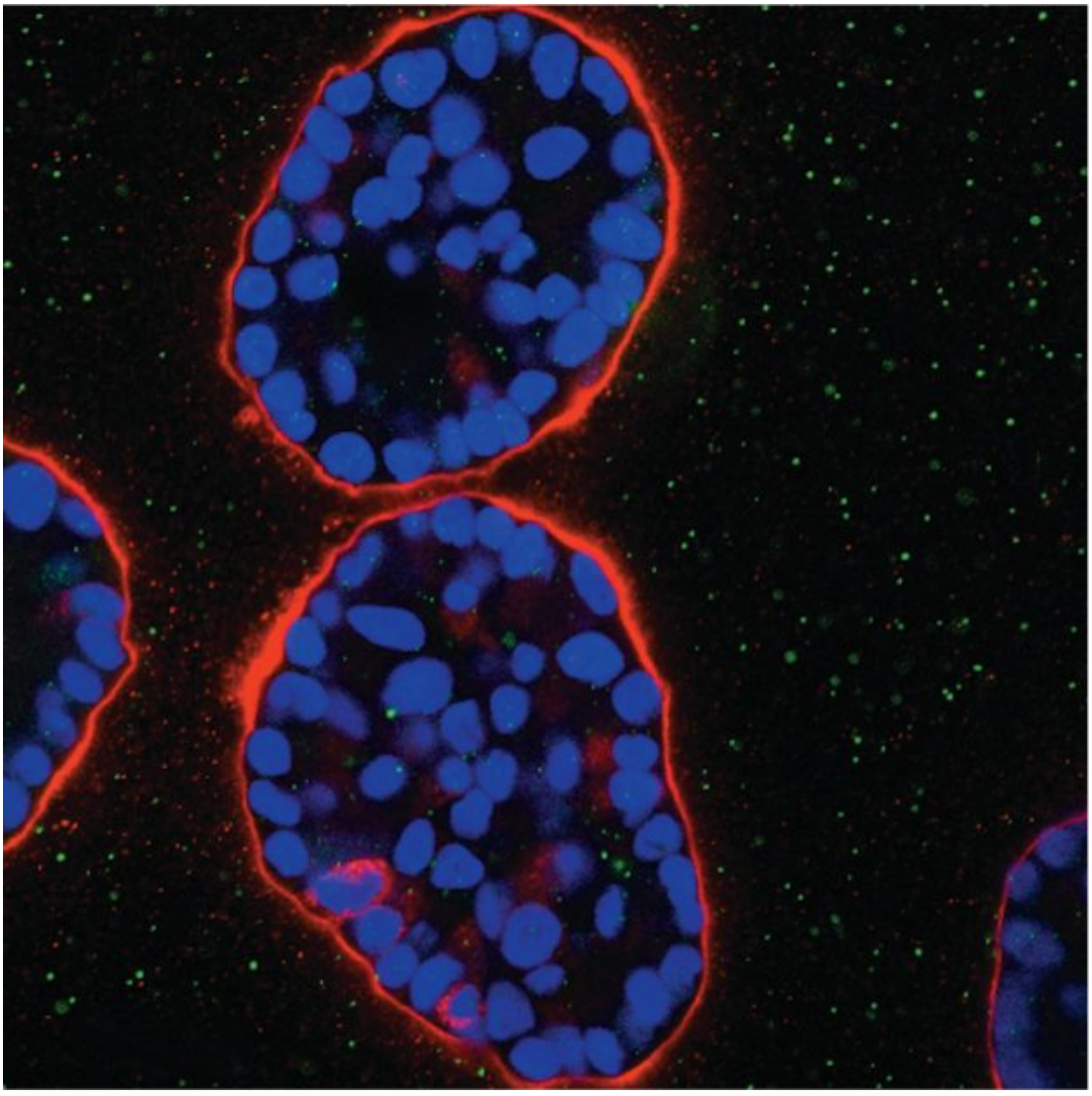
The parallels between integrin and receptor tyrosine kinase signaling are striking: tyrosine kinase receptors bind growth factor ligands in the extracellular space, while integrins bind extracellular matrix components as ligands. Once activated, these two classes of sensors release signals that converge on many of the same downstream signal transduction cascades. Moreover, some integrins co-localize on the plasma membrane with certain tyrosine kinase receptors; this lateral physical association appears to enhance the signaling by both types of cell surface proteins.

This convergence of signaling pathways appears to explain one of the important cell-biological effects of the Ras oncoprotein—its ability to enable cells to grow in an anchorage-independent fashion. It seems that cells normally depend on integrin signaling to provide a measure of activation of the normal Ras and Src proteins. In the absence of this signaling, cells come to believe that they have failed to associate with the extracellular matrix. This may block further advance of cells through their cell growth-and-division cycle or, more drastically, may cause cells to enter into anoikis as mentioned above. Avoidance of anoikis triggered by loss of normal attachment to the basement membrane seems to represent one of the first steps in the initiation of breast cancers (**Figure 6.18**).



Two normal acini formed in suspension culture. Each acinus features a red outer wall with cells attached to the inner surface in orderly fashion, as can be seen from the large blue nuclei. The center of each acinus contains blue and green cells that are in the process of withering to leave an empty lumen.

(A)



More acini formed in suspension culture, but here the attachment of cells to the red wall is less orderly, and within the center of each acinus there are many more cells, none of which are green to indicate that they are withering.

(B)

Figure 6.18 Anoikis and morphogenesis Anoikis serves during morphogenesis to excavate lumina (cavities) in the middle of cylindrical aggregates of cells, thereby creating hollow ducts. When placed into suspension culture, human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) form globular clusters that mimic, at least superficially, the acinar structures of mammary gland ducts. (A) An acinus is seen here in cross section surrounded by a layer of basement membrane containing

laminin-5 (*red*) that the cells have secreted (see Section 2.2). Cells that succeed in tethering to this basement membrane via their integrins are healthy and have large nuclei (*blue*), while those that are deprived of direct attachment to this basement membrane undergo anoikis, resulting in the formation of a protein (activated caspase-3; *green*) that is indicative of active apoptosis (see Chapter 9); these central cells also exhibit fragmented nuclei, another sign of apoptosis. The loss of these cells will yield a lumen in this acinus. Here the basement membrane serves as an analog of the substrate to which cells must adhere in the Petri dish in order to avoid anoikis. (B) In an early step of breast cancer development, normal anoikis and resulting excavation of the lumen of a mammary duct may be prevented by the actions of certain anti-apoptotic proteins described in Chapter 9. Here, experimentally induced expression of the anti-apoptotic Bcl-xL protein in MECs has resulted in the suppression of apoptosis, survival of luminal cells, and resulting luminal filling, echoing the appearance of certain ductal hyperplasias and *in situ* carcinomas often seen in the initial steps of human breast cancer development. Indeed, overexpressed EGF-R, which activates many of the same signaling pathways as integrins, also strongly reduces anoikis, once again favoring luminal filling (*not shown*). (Courtesy of J. Debnath and J. Brugge.)

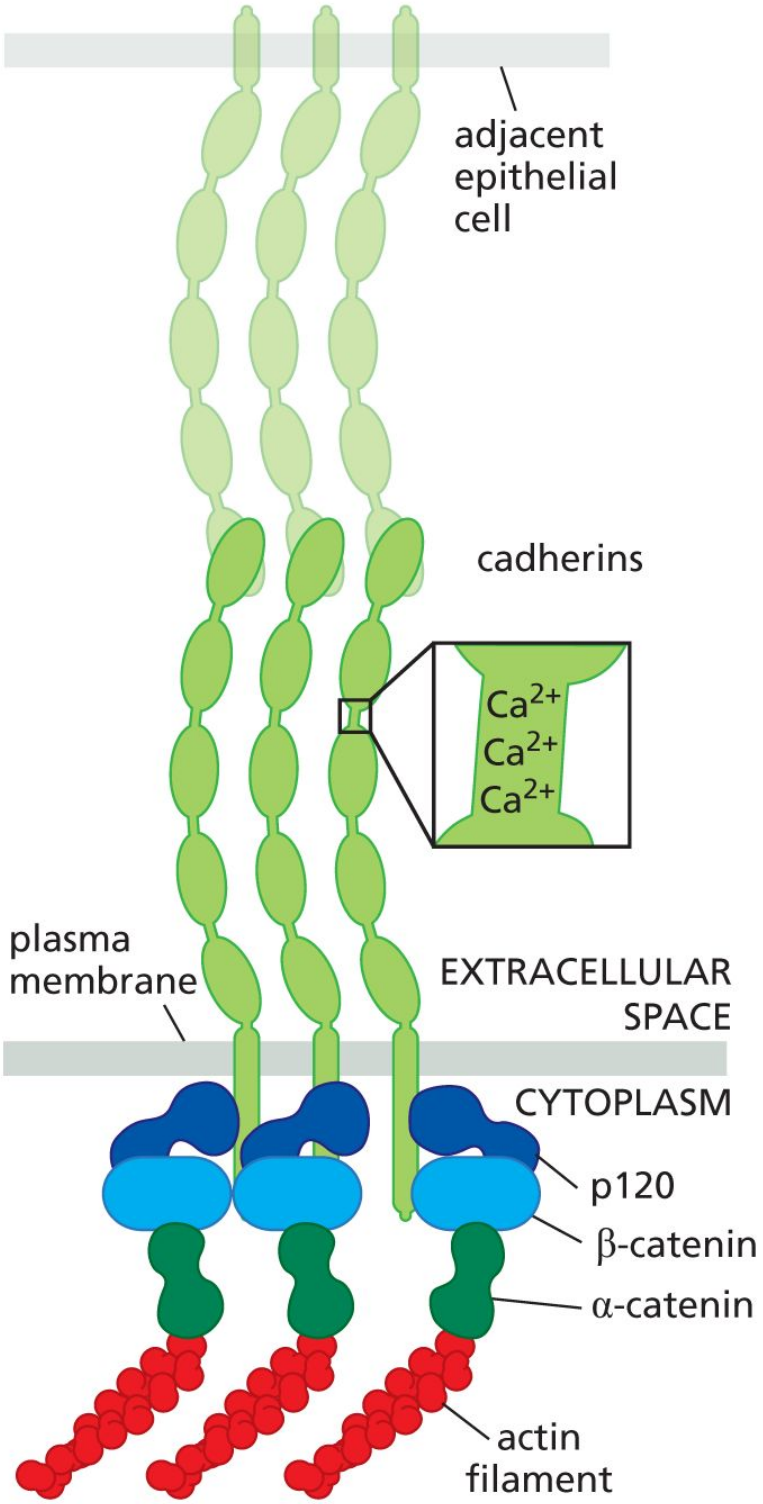
Taken together, these diverse observations suggest that oncogenic Ras promotes anchorage-independent proliferation by mimicking one of the critical downstream signals that result following tethering by integrins to the extracellular matrix. In effect, oncogenic Ras may delude a cell into believing that its integrins have successfully bound certain ECM components, thereby permitting a *ras*-transformed cell to proliferate, even when no such attachment has actually occurred.

OceanofPDF.com

6.10 The canonical and non-canonical Wnt pathways control diverse cellular phenotypes

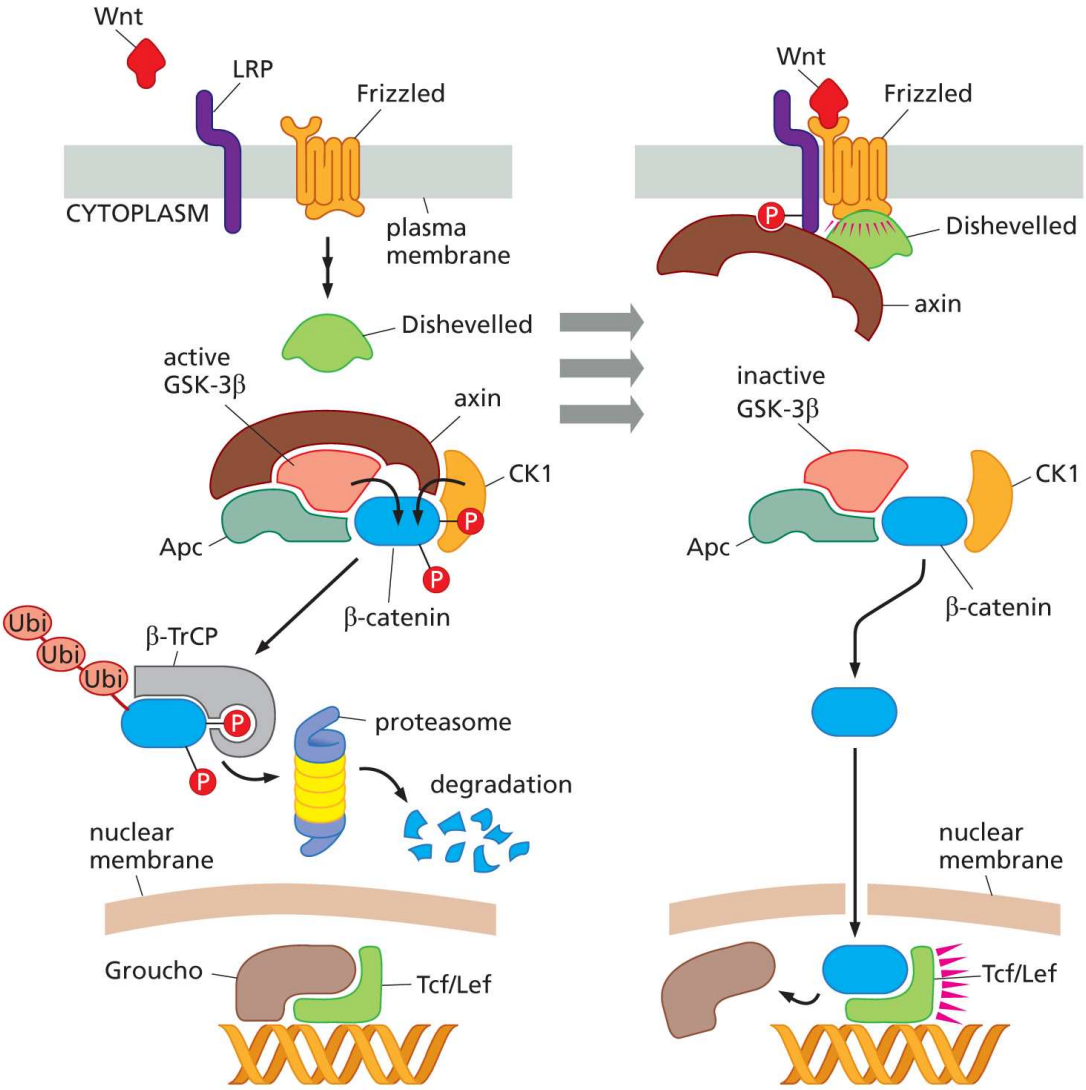
In most cell types, the RTK → Sos → Ras cascade appears to play a dominant role in mediating responses to extracellular mitogens, but it is hardly the only pathway having this result. Yet other, less studied pathways also confer responsiveness to mitogenic signals impinging on the cell surface. Prominent among these is the pathway controlled by Wnt factors, of which at least 19 can be found in various human tissues. In addition to transducing mitogenic signals, this pathway enables cells to remain in a relatively undifferentiated, stem cell-like state—an important attribute of certain subsets of the cancer cells in many tumors that will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 11.

As we learned in the last chapter (see Section 5.7), the molecular design of the Wnt pathway is totally different from that of the RTK → Sos → Ras → Raf → ERK pathway. Recall that canonical Wnt factors, acting through Frizzled receptors, suppress the activity of glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β). In the absence of Wnts, GSK-3β phosphorylates several key substrate proteins, which are thereby tagged for destruction. The most important of these substrates is β-catenin, normally a cytoplasmic protein that exists in three states. It may be bound to the cytoplasmic domain of cell–cell adhesion receptors, notably the E-cadherin that is expressed on the surface of all epithelial cells and serves to knit together epithelial cell sheets (**Figure 6.19A**); E-cadherin molecules from adjacent cells may associate with one another to form adherens junctions involving cell-to-cell contacts together with associated cytoplasmic proteins that help to ensure the structural integrity of epithelial sheets and impede metastasis (as discussed in Chapter 14). Moreover, the cytoplasmic association of adherens complexes with the actin cytoskeleton, which depends on the involvement of β-catenin, creates physical coupling between the cytoskeletons of adjacent epithelial cells. Alternatively, in a fully unrelated role, β-catenin exists in a soluble pool in the cytosol, where it turns over very rapidly, having a lifetime of less than 20 minutes. And finally, β-catenin operates in the nucleus as an important component of a transcription factor complex (Figure 6.19B).



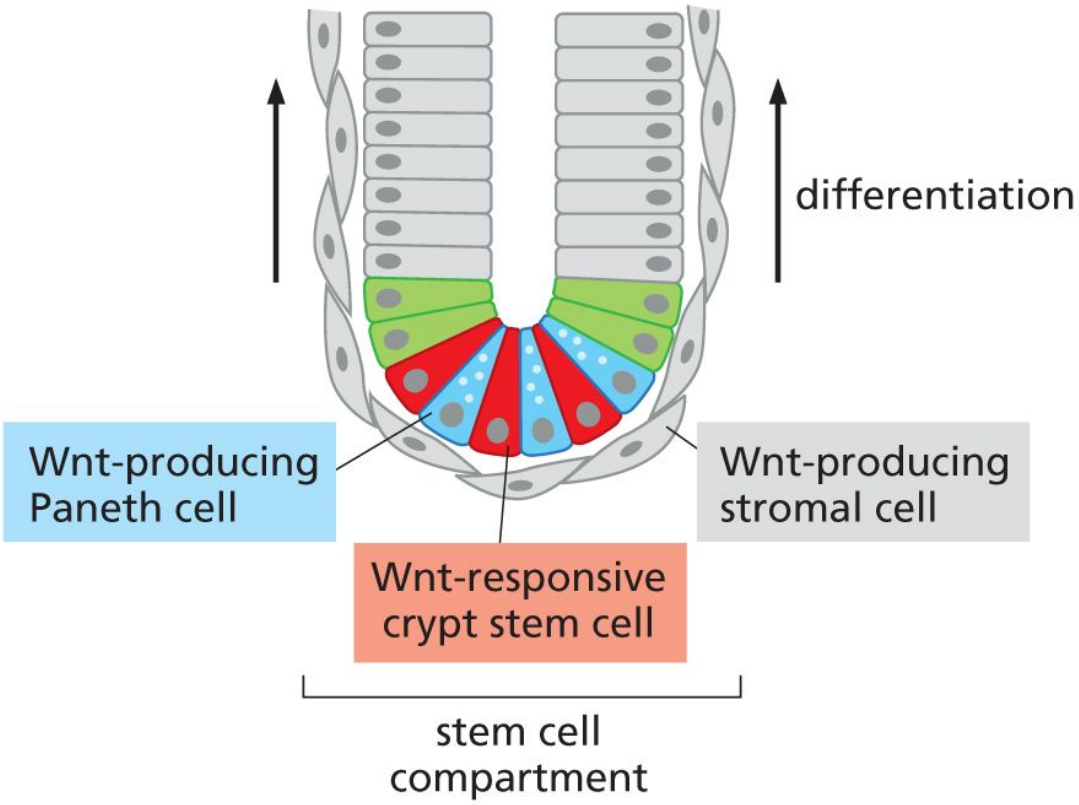
Long proteins called cadherins extend from one epithelial cell into the intracellular space and connect end-to-end with another cell's cadherins to bridge the space between the two cells. Each cadherin is a chain of five bulbous segments joined by thin segments made of C a plus 2 ions. The

cytoplasmic tails the cadherins connect to cytoplasmic actin filaments via a structure containing a p 120, a beta catenin, and an alpha catenin.
(A)



Two images show what happens to beta catenin in the absence and then in the presence of W n t binding. Without W n t binding, L R P and Frizzled remain apart within the plasma membrane. In the cytoplasm, Dishevelled remains separate from a complex consisting of C K 1, axin, active G S K 3 beta, A p c, and doubly phosphorylated beta catenin. This beta catenin detaches, while remaining doubly phosphorylated. A chain of three U b eyes attaches to it, and so does a beta T r C P. Degradation of the beta catenin is then mediated by a spiral-shaped proteasome. Meanwhile, within the cell nucleus, two proteins labeled Groucho and T c f / L e f are attached to a D N A double helix. This picture is changed by W n t binding. W n t, L R P and Frizzled come together

and activate, and Dishevelled and the axin from the complex attach on the cytoplasmic side. Also, the L R P is now singly phosphorylated. The G S K 3 beta in the complex is now inactive. Beta catenin remains unphosphorylated and does not undergo degradation. Instead, it passes through the nuclear membrane and binds to the T c f / L e f and the D N A double helix, displacing the Groucho protein. The T c f / L e f begins signaling.
(B)



A U-shaped structure of cells is shown. The bottom of the U is labeled stem cell compartment. Here, W n t-producing Paneth cells alternate with W n t-responsive crypt stem cells. The vertical arms of the U represent increasingly differentiated cells. The U is enclosed in a thin layer of W n t-producing stromal cells.

(C)

Figure 6.19 Canonical Wnt signaling: multiple roles of β-catenin (A) Like many integrins, the cadherins (*light green*) are transmembrane proteins that form attachments in the extracellular space and become linked, via intermediary proteins, to the actin cytoskeleton (*red*). The ectodomains of an epithelial cell's E-cadherin associate with E-cadherin molecules displayed by an adjacent epithelial

cell via *homophilic* interactions that form the core of adherens junctions displayed between adjacent epithelial cells in an epithelial cell sheet. Only the most distal, N-terminal subdomain among the five repeating subdomains of an individual E-cadherin ectodomain participate in associating with one displayed by an adjacent cell. Each of the four inter-subdomain linker regions binds three calcium ions whose presence is critical to preserve the rigidity and adhesive interactions of the protein. The cytoplasmic tail of E-cadherin, for its part, is known to associate directly with p120 and β-catenin (*dark blue, light blue*). These associate in turn with a monomer of α catenin (*dark green*). The precise molecular mechanisms of linkage of the cytoplasmic components are still poorly resolved. Breakdown of this multi-subunit complex, which includes comparable E-cadherin-associated proteins in the adjacent cell (*above, not shown*) often accompanies the acquisition of highly malignant properties by carcinoma cells. With the exception of actin (*red, below),* all of the proteins shown in this figure together with corresponding proteins in the adjacent cell (*not shown*) form, in aggregate, an adherens junction. (*continued*)

The relatively large number of E-cadherin molecules on the surface of epithelial cells serves as a major sink to absorb and stabilize a significant proportion of a cell's pools of β-catenin molecules; the latter are liberated when adherens junctions are dissolved, often achieved through the endocytosis of E-cadherin molecules. We focus here on the pools of these β-catenin molecules that are released into the cytosol following E-cadherin endocytosis. Such cytosolic β-catenin molecules may initially form multiprotein complexes with three other cellular proteins—Apc (the adenomatous polyposis coli protein), Wtx, and axin. These proteins help to bring β-catenin together with its GSK-3β executioner (see Figure 6.19B). By phosphorylating β-catenin, GSK-3β ensures that β-catenin will be tagged by ubiquitylation, a process that drives the rapid destruction of β-catenin; this explains the low steady-state concentrations of β-catenin normally present in the cytosol. We will encounter this degradation system later in more detail (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**).

However, when canonical Wnt signaling is activated by the binding of canonical Wnt ligands to their cognate Frizzled (Fzd) receptors, GSK-3β firing is blocked and β-catenin is saved from rapid destruction; its half-life increases from less than 20 minutes to 1–2 hours, and its steady-state concentrations increase proportionately. Following appropriate changes in their phosphorylation, many of the accumulated β-catenin molecules move into the nucleus and bind to Tcf/Lef proteins (see Figure 6.19B). The resulting multi-subunit transcription factor complexes proceed to activate expression of a number of important genes, including those encoding critical proteins involved in cell growth and proliferation, such as cyclin D1 and Myc, that we will study later in Chapter 8.

In addition, GSK-3β can phosphorylate other crucial growth-regulating proteins besides cytoplasmic β-catenin. By phosphorylating cyclin D1 in the nucleus, GSK-3β also tags this growth-promoting protein for rapid degradation. Hence, the Wnt pathway actually modulates cyclin D1 expression at both the transcriptional and the post-translational levels. These various actions of Wnts indicate that, in addition to their originally discovered powers as morphogens, they can also act as potent mitogens, much like the ligands of many tyrosine kinase receptors. Moreover, as we will learn in Chapter 7, high levels of β-catenin in intestinal stem cells ensure that these cells remain in an undifferentiated, stem cell-like state, rather than developing into the specialized cells that line the wall of the intestine (Figure 6.19C). Indeed, there are multiple tissues throughout the body in which the stem cells seem to depend on Wnt signaling to enable their survival and drive their proliferation.

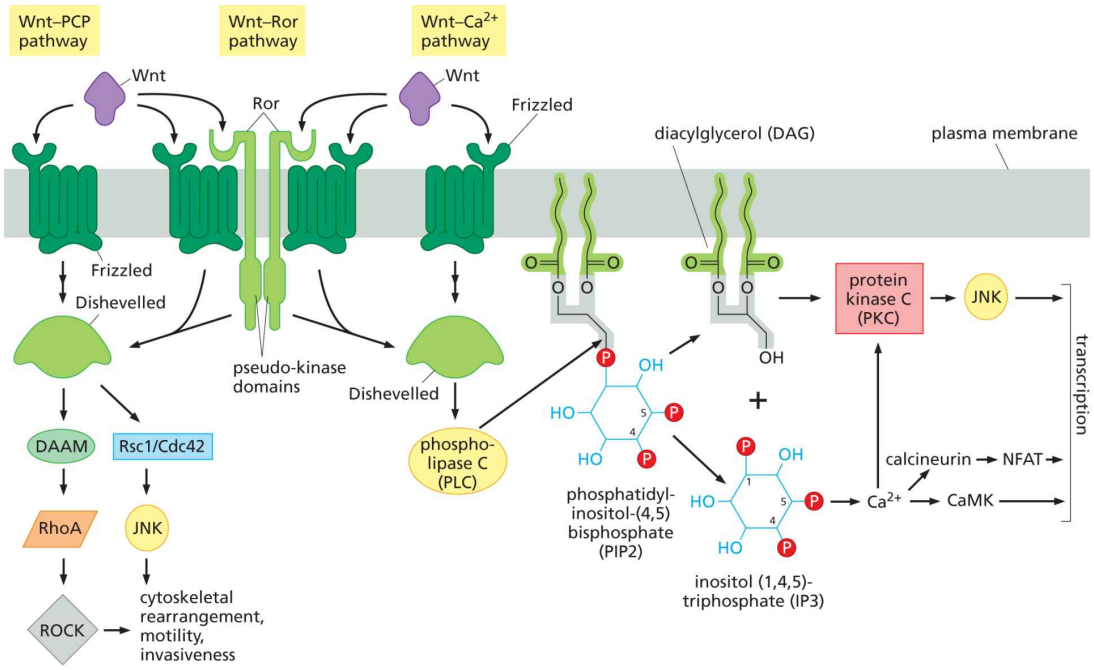
Then there is a major puzzle: Why has evolution invested two such unrelated functions in a single protein? (In worms, these two functions of β-catenin are carried out by distinct proteins encoded by separate genes.) According to one rationalization, the adherens junctions act as sensors of cell–cell contact in epithelial cell sheets, and once this contact is disrupted by various biological mechanisms, β-catenin can rapidly move into the nucleus to re-align the cell's transcriptional program to respond to this new biological state. This may explain how epithelial cells at the edge of a damaged cell sheet (which have lost adherens junctions with neighbors previously on one side) can activate the β-catenin–induced EMT (epithelial–mesenchymal transition) program, doing so in order to gain the motility that enables them to cover over and thereby heal the wound that generated this broken sheet, as described later in Chapter 14.

In many human breast cancers, expression of certain Wnts is increased four- to tenfold above normal, suggesting the operations of autocrine and paracrine growth-stimulatory pathways. There is clear evidence of nuclear translocation of β-catenin in approximately 20% of advanced prostate carcinomas. Moreover, in 5 to 7% of prostate carcinomas, mutations of the β-catenin gene have yielded a protein that can no longer be phosphorylated by GSK-3β, allowing it, in turn, to accumulate to high levels in the nucleus, where it can operate as a transcription factor. Such mutations have also been documented in carcinomas of the liver, colon, endometrium, and ovary, as well as in melanomas (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.7**). And as we will see in the next chapter, in virtually all colon carcinomas, β-catenin degradation is flawed, due to defects in one of the proteins—Apc—that usually facilitate its degradation (see Figure 6.19B). It is likely that this pathway is also deregulated in other human cancers by mechanisms that have not yet been uncovered.

The above descriptions do not begin to address the complexity of Wnt signaling. Thus, there are alternatives to the "canonical" Wnt signaling cascade described above. These alternative pathways tend to be triggered by a distinct subset of the Wnt ligands, operate independently of β-catenin signaling, and are grouped together under the

rubric of “non-canonical Wnt signaling.” Thus, Wnt3a is often used experimentally as a representative of canonical Wnt ligands whereas Wnt5a is used to study non-canonical signaling.

As seen in **Figure 6.20**, non-canonical Wnt signaling encompasses multiple signaling pathways. In the context of cancer, arguably the most important are a group of five tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs), all of which appear to carry catalytically inactive kinase domains, much like HER3 (see Section 5.6). Among these pseudokinase receptors, Ror1 and Ror2 are best documented as important drivers of cancer-associated cellular phenotypes. These five receptors are clearly distant relatives of active RTKs whose kinase domains have lost catalytic activity through replacement of critical amino acid residues within the catalytic clefts of their respective tyrosine kinase domains. Indeed, like most RTKs, versions of these receptors are evolutionarily highly conserved, being clearly present in the cells of worms and flies.



Three non-canonical W n t signaling pathways. The W n t-P C P pathway involves W n t binding to Frizzled. The W n t-Ror pathwat involves W n t binding to both Frizzled and Ror. These two pathways combine to act on Dishevelled and initiate a sequence that also involves D A A M, R s c 1 / C d c 42, R h o A, ROCK, and J N K. The end result is cytoskeletal rearrangement and enhanced motility and invasiveness. A third pathway is W n t-Calcium plus 2. It and the W n t-Ror pathway combine to act on Dishevelled and initiate a sequence that also involves phospholipase C (P L C), phosphatidylinositol-(4,5) bisphosphate (P I P 2) attached to diacylglycerol (D A G), inositol (1,4,5)-triphosphate (I P 3) detached

from D A G, Calcium plus 2, calcineurin, C a M K, N F A T, protein kinase C (P K C), and J N K. The end result is transcription.

Figure 6.20 Non-canonical Wnt signaling A second set of Wnt signaling pathways operates entirely differently from the canonical Wnt pathway that is described in Figure 6.19 that is involved in regulating cell proliferation and stemness. Some Wnt ligands bind preferentially to the Frizzled (Fzd) receptors that activate these non-canonical Wnt pathways (*dark green*), while other Wnt ligands can bind both canonical and non-canonical Frizzled receptors; in addition, certain Wnts (*purple*) can bind a set of non-canonical receptors [including Ror (*light green*), Ryk, PTK7, and MuSK and represented here by Ror] that are structured like RTKs but have a nonfunctional "pseudokinase" domain. Various canonical and non-canonical Wnt ligands associate with either non-canonical Frizzled receptors, Ror-like receptors, or physical complexes involving both Ror-like receptors and Frizzled receptors and elicit a distinct set of cell-biological processes largely associated, at least in carcinoma cells, with motility, invasiveness, and, ultimately, metastatic dissemination. For example, the *p*lanar cell *p*olarity (Wnt-PCP) pathway is involved in reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton, motility, and associated invasiveness, while the Wnt-Ca^{2+} pathway also contributes to motility and invasiveness by up-regulating a constituency of nuclear genes. In addition, the Wnt-Ror pathways can also function to suppress canonical Wnt β-catenin signaling. (Not illustrated here are the Wnt ligand-driven heterodimerizations of Ror receptors with certain RTKs.)

These RTKs display a structurally diverse group of Wnt-binding ectodomains, some of which are structurally related to the Frizzled receptors cited above; like other "pseudokinase" receptors, these appear to act via dimerization with other actively signaling receptors (see Section 5.6 and **Supplementary Sidebar 6.5**). In some instances, these RTKs may form heterodimers with the structurally unrelated Frizzled receptors. The downstream signaling mechanisms of these RTKs are complex and still being resolved. However, their roles in cancer pathogenesis are clearly significant, since these receptors have been reported to contribute to a broad spectrum of cell-biological traits relevant to tumor formation and progression, namely, cell growth, proliferation, motility, invasiveness, and inhibition of apoptosis. Some have even suggested that a historically earlier discovery of these Wnt RTKs would have caused them, rather than the much-studied Frizzled proteins, to be portrayed as the "canonical" Wnt receptors.

Yet other non-canonical Wnt pathways have been reported, but their role in cancer pathogenesis is less clear. Some of these distinct subsets of signaling cascades, termed the Wnt-PCP and the Wnt-Ca^{2+} pathways, lie downstream of Frizzled receptors, while others may be activated by the pseudokinase RTKs mentioned above. While the

canonical Wnt pathway has been found to play a role in cancer cell proliferation and stemness—and thus the formation of tumor-initiating cancer stem cells—the non-canonical Wnt pathway largely contributes to critical aspects of the malignant cell phenotype, notably cytoskeletal rearrangement, motility, and invasiveness. Canonical Wnt ligands can occasionally activate non-canonical signaling and vice versa, and the non-canonical Wnt-PCP pathway has been found in some contexts to inhibit canonical Wnt signaling. For better or worse, as non-canonical Wnt signaling pathways are studied in ever-increasing detail, their complexity grows exponentially.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

adherens junction
: Lateral cell–cell junction between adjacent cells, notably epithelial cells, that is formed by cadherins displayed on the opposing surfaces of participating pairs of cells; these junctions include the cytoplasmic proteins that are physically associated with the cytoplasmic domains of both participating cadherins and serve to link these junctions, in turn, to the actin cytoskeletons of the two cells.

ubiquitylation
: Process by which one or more ubiquitin molecules are attached covalently to a protein substrate molecule, which often results in the degradation of the tagged protein in a proteasome, *alternatively termed* **ubiquitination**.

morphogen
: Low–molecular-weight substance that induces cells to assemble and participate in the construction of a tissue of a certain shape and form.

OceanofPDF.com

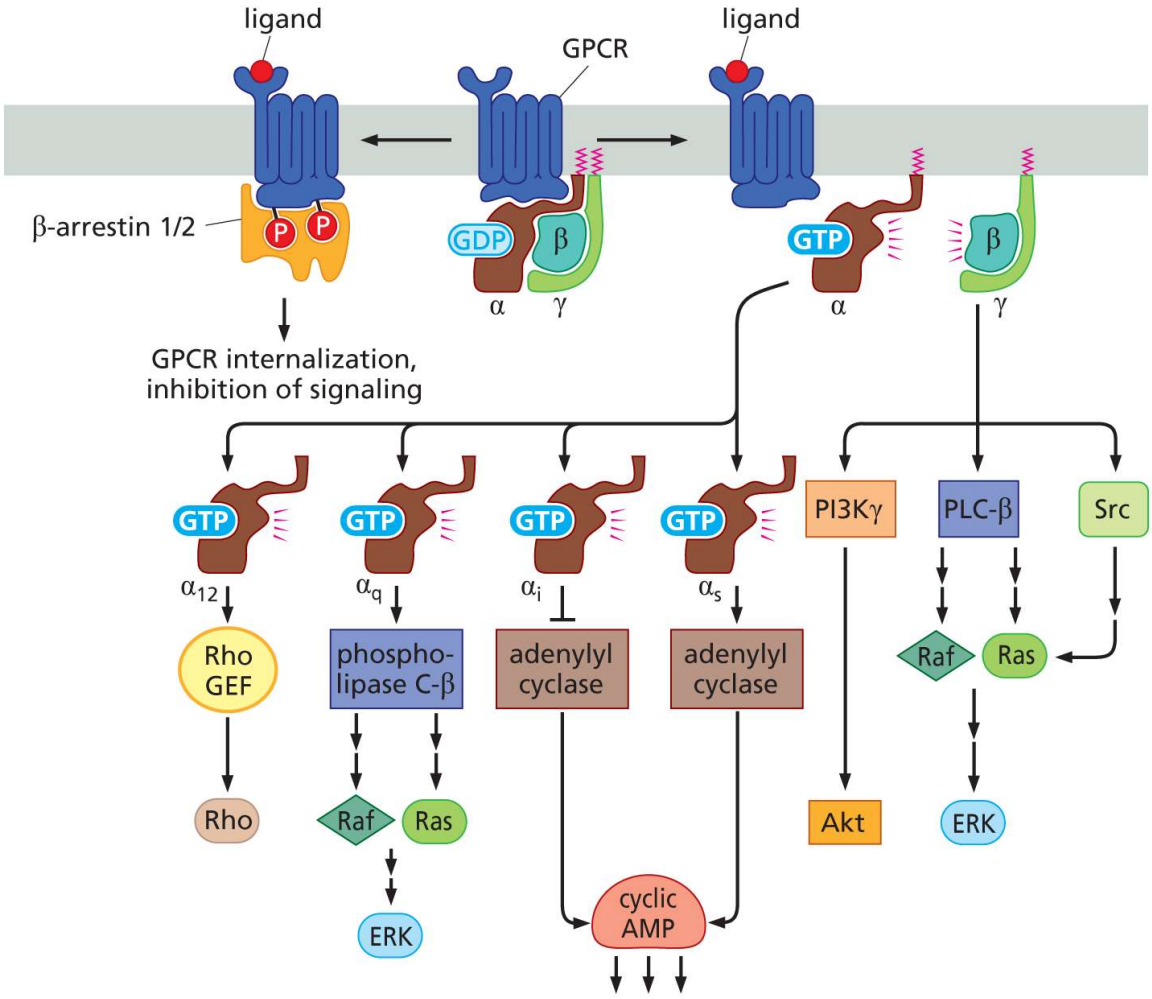
6.11 G-protein–coupled receptors can also drive normal and neoplastic proliferation

As we read in the last chapter (Section 5.7), G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) are transmembrane proteins that weave their way back and forth through the plasma membrane seven times. Upon binding their extracellular ligands, each of these “serpentine” receptors activates one or more types of cytoplasmic heterotrimeric G protein, so named because of its three distinct subunits (Gα, Gβ, and Gγ), the first of which binds either GDP or GTP. As is the case with the Ras protein, the activated state of Gα is achieved when it binds GTP. Hence, a ligand-activated GPCR can act as a GEF (guanine nucleotide exchange factor) for Gα proteins, much like the GEFs for Ras-like proteins (see Figure 5.24). While the majority of known GPCR ligands are soluble molecules, a small number of these receptors use their ectodomains to sense adhesion to the extracellular matrix (ECM).

Of note, only a relatively small proportion of the ~830 GPCRs encoded in the human genome are involved in cancer pathogenesis. About half of the rest are olfactory receptors, while several dozen others are involved in other types of sensation, such as taste and light, and in signaling via neurotransmitters in the brain. These receptors are of more than passing interest to clinical medicine, since more than 35% of currently approved pharmaceutical agents target various GPCRs. As many as 100 of the GPCRs have no known ligands and, as such, are termed “orphan receptors.” The multiplicity of downstream heterotrimeric G proteins derives from the variability of the constituent subunits: there are at least 21 distinct Gα, 6 distinct Gβ, and 12 Gγ subunits, which can associate in various combinations.

Once stimulated by a G-protein–coupled receptor (GPCR), the Gα subunit of a heterotrimeric G protein dissociates from its two partners, Gβ and Gγ, and proceeds to activate a number of distinct cytoplasmic enzymes (**Figure 6.21**). Included among these are adenylyl cyclase (which converts ATP into cyclic AMP) and phospholipase C-β (PLC-β), which cleaves PIP3 to yield diacylglycerol (DAG) and inositol triphosphate (IP3) (see Figure 6.11B). The latter are potent second messengers that can function to stimulate cell proliferation. (The Frizzled

receptors enabling canonical Wnt signaling [see Section 6.10] are structurally classified as GPCRs and some have been found to associate with heterodimeric G proteins. However, the importance of Wnt signaling through heterotrimeric G proteins remains unclear.)



A diagram shows signaling originating with a G-protein–coupled receptor, or G P C R. Initially, the G P C R within a plasma membrane is connected on the cytoplasmic side to an alpha unit containing a G D P, a beta unit, and a gamma unit. When a ligand binds to the G P C R on the extracellular side, the alpha unit detaches, with the G D P replaced with a G T P. The beta and gamma units detach while remaining attached to each other. Both detached units remain attached to the cytoplasmic side of the plasma membrane. The beta-gamma complex activates A k t via P I 3 K gamma. It also activates E R K via two pathways that involve P L C-beta, Sarc, R a f, and R a s. The alpha-G T P activates one of several cytoplasmic effectors, depending on the identity of the alpha unit. Alpha 12 activates R h o via R h o G E F. Alpha q

activates E R K via phospholipase C-beta, R a f and R a s. Alpha i inhibits cyclic A M P by inhibiting the adenylyl cyclase that would normally activate it. Alpha s activates cyclic A M P by activating the adenylyl cyclase. Meanwhile, the ligand-bound G P C R, now doubly phosphorylated, binds to beta arrestin 1 slash 2. The result is G P C R internalization and inhibition of signaling.

Figure 6.21 G-protein–coupled receptors The seven-membrane-spanning ("serpentine") receptors (*dark purple*) are able to activate a variety of heterotrimeric G proteins that differ largely in the identity of their Gα subunits (*dark brown*). Once stimulated by a ligand-activated GPCR, a Gα subunit evicts its bound GDP, binding GTP instead, separates from the Gβ + Gγ complex, and proceeds to activate or inhibit a variety of cytoplasmic effectors, only four of which are shown here. In addition to activating enzymes, a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF) for the Rho family of small GTPase proteins (Rho, Rac, and Cdc42) can be activated (*light yellow, lower left*). These enzymes, in turn, can have mitogenic or anti-mitogenic influences, depending upon the cell type. At the same time, the Gβ + Gγ dimer complexes (*right*) can activate their own set of effectors, including phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase γ (PI3Kγ), phospholipase C-β (PLC-β), and Src. Following GPCR activation, these receptors are rapidly phosphorylated and attract β-arrestins 1 and 2 (*light orange, left)*, which results in cessation of further GPCR firing and in GPCR internalization. Soon, each Gα subunit will hydrolyze its bound GTP, returning it to the inactive, nonsignaling state (*not shown*). Moreover, this cartoon provides only a hint of the diverse array of G proteins and their effectors that have been discovered. For example, there are nine subtypes of adenylyl cyclase.

There is also evidence that the Src kinase can be activated by certain GTP-bound Gα subunits. Moreover, complexes of the other two subunits of the heterotrimeric G protein—Gβ and Gγ—have been found to stimulate yet other important mitogenic signaling proteins, such as one form of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K). The ability of GPCRs to activate mitogenic pathways suggests that deregulation of signaling by these receptors and associated G proteins may well contribute to cell transformation and tumorigenesis—a speculation that has been borne out by analyses of a limited number of types of human cancer cells (**Table 6.5**).

Table 6.5 G-protein–coupled receptors and G proteins involved in human cancer pathogenesis

G protein or receptor	Type of tumor
Activating mutations affecting G proteins	
$G\alpha_s$	thyroid adenomas and carcinomas, pituitary adenomas
$G\alpha_{i2}$	ovarian tumors, adrenal cortical tumors
$G\alpha_q$	melanocyte-derived tumors, uveal melanomas
$G\alpha_{11}$	uveal melanomas
Activating mutations affecting G-protein–coupled receptors	
Thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor	thyroid adenomas and carcinomas
Follicle-stimulating hormone receptor	ovarian tumors
Luteinizing hormone receptor	Leydig cell hyperplasias
Cholecystokinin-2 receptor	colorectal carcinomas
Ca^{2+}-sensing receptor	various neoplasms

G protein or receptor	Type of tumor
Activating mutations affecting G proteins	
GPR98	melanomas
GRM3	melanomas
Autocrine and paracrine activation	
Neuromedin B receptor	small cell lung cancer (SCLC)
Neurotensin receptor	prostate carcinomas and SCLC
Gastrin receptor	gastric carcinomas and SCLC
Cholecystokinin receptor	pancreatic hyperplasias and carcinomas, gastrointestinal carcinomas, and SCLC
Virus-encoded G-protein–coupled receptors	
Kaposi’s sarcoma herpesvirus (HHV-8)	Kaposi’s sarcoma
Herpesvirus saimiri	primate leukemias and lymphomas
Jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus	sheep pulmonary carcinomas

G protein or receptor	Type of tumor
Activating mutations affecting G proteins	

Adapted in part from M.J. Marinissen and J.S. Gutkind, *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* 22:368–376, 2001. With permission from Elsevier.

The role of GPCRs in human cancer pathogenesis is highlighted by the behavior of small-cell lung carcinomas (SCLCs), a common tumor of cigarette smokers. SCLC cells release a number of distinct peptide factors, some with neuropeptide-like properties. In some SCLCs, the tumor cells may simultaneously secrete bombesin (also known as gastrin-releasing peptide, or GRP), bradykinin, cholecystokinin (CCK), gastrin, neurotensin, and vasopressin. At the same time, these cells display the GPCRs that recognize and bind all of these released factors, resulting in the establishment of multiple autocrine signaling loops.

The experimental proof that these autocrine loops are actually responsible for driving the proliferation and/or survival of the SCLC cells is straightforward: SCLC cells can be incubated *in vitro* in the presence of an antibody that binds and neutralizes a secreted autocrine growth factor, such as GRP. In a number of SCLC cell lines, this treatment results in the rapid cessation of growth and even leads to apoptosis. Such a response indicates that these cancer cells depend on a GRP-based autocrine signaling loop for their survival, and it suggested a novel therapy for SCLC patients: in twelve SCLC patients who were treated with a GRP-neutralizing antibody, one patient showed a complete remission, while four patients exhibited a partial shrinkage of their tumors. (This therapeutic strategy has not, however, been further pursued in recent years.)

In another class of neoplasias—thyroid adenomas and some thyroid carcinomas—the gene encoding the thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR), another GPCR, is often found to carry a point mutation. This leads to constitutive, ligand-independent firing of the TSH receptor, which in turn results in the release of strong mitogenic signals into the thyroid epithelial cells (see Table 6.5). In yet other tumors of the thyroid gland, a Gα subunit has suffered a point mutation that functions much like the mutations activating Ras signaling (see Figure 5.24), by depriving this Gα subunit of the ability to shut itself off through its own intrinsic GTPase activity. Altogether, at least 10 of the 17 human genes encoding Gα

subunits have been found to function as oncogenes in certain cell types and in various human malignancies.

The most bizarre subversion of these G-protein–coupled receptors occurs during infections by certain herpesviruses, such as human herpesvirus type 8 (HHV-8), also known as the Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV; refer to **Supplementary Sidebar 3.5**). This virus is responsible for the vascular tumors that frequently afflict AIDS patients. At one point in its evolutionary past, this virus acquired a cellular gene specifying a G-protein–coupled receptor. The viral form of this gene has been remodeled, so that the encoded receptor releases signals in a ligand-independent manner. Among other consequences, this signaling causes HHV-8–infected endothelial cells (lining the walls of blood vessels) to secrete vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF); the released VEGF then creates an autocrine signaling loop by binding to its cognate receptors on the surface of these infected endothelial cells and driving their proliferation. Later we will read (Chapter 15) about the role of chemokines, which serve as ligands of a special class of GPCRs (altogether 20 in humans), for recruiting various types of immune cells to specific sites within tissues.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

neuropeptide

A small protein or oligopeptide that is produced by cleavage of a higher–molecular-weight precursor and is released by certain cells of the central nervous system and neuroendocrinal cells and that impinges upon and thereby signals to other cells inside and outside of the central nervous system.

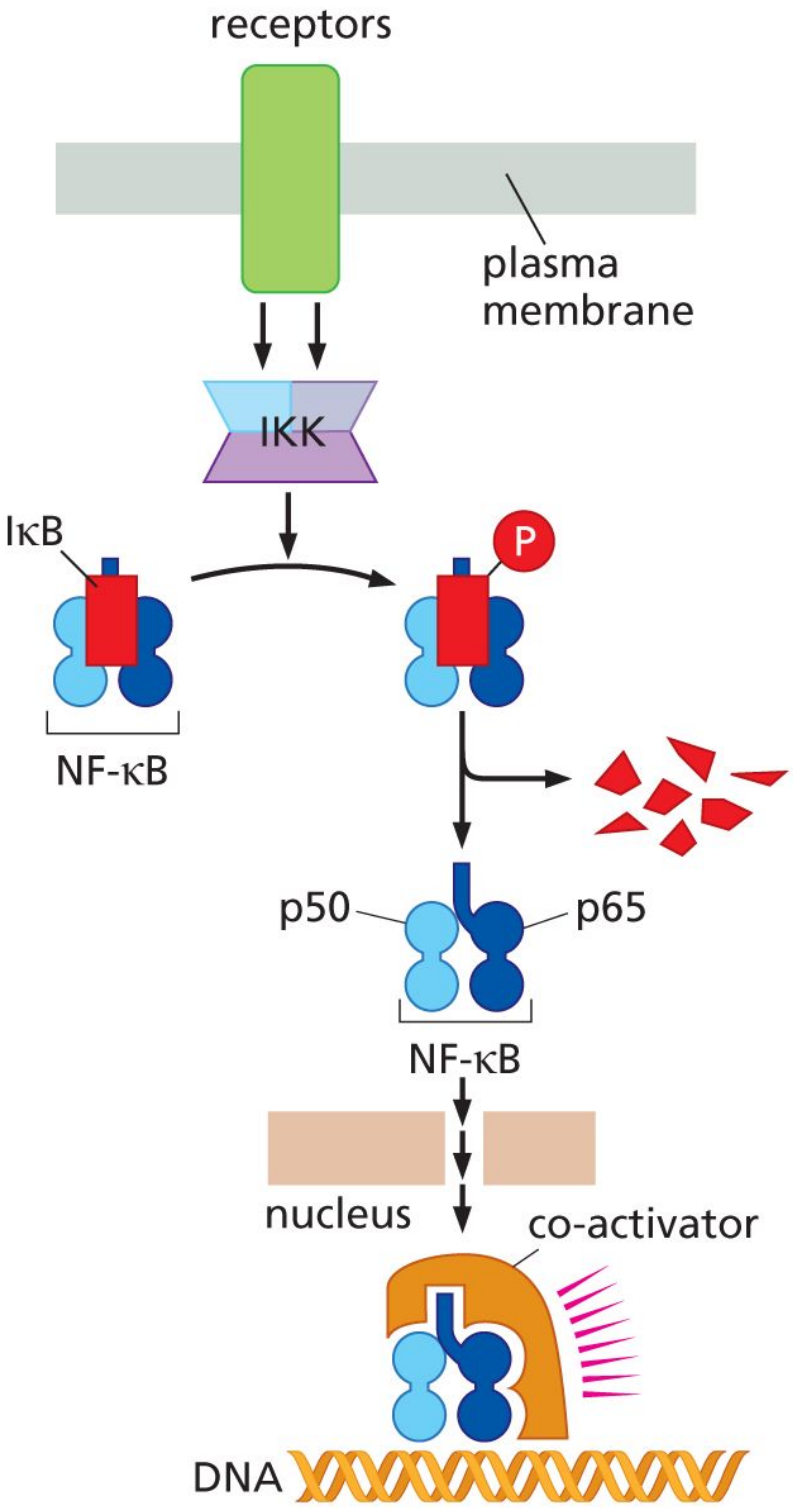
chemokine

(1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

OceanofPDF.com

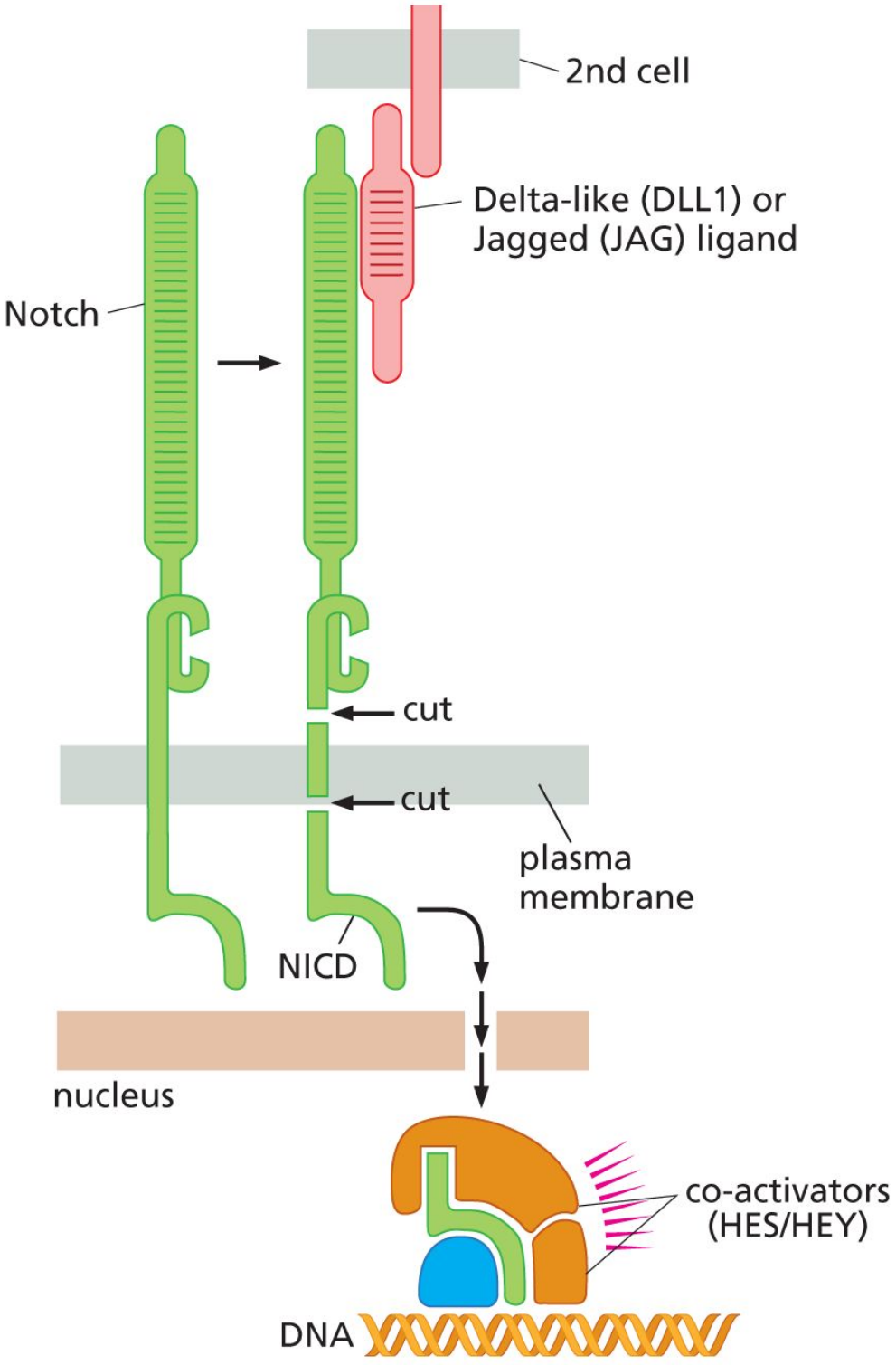
6.12 Four additional “dual-address” signaling pathways contribute in various ways to normal and neoplastic proliferation

Both JAK–STAT and Wnt–β-catenin signaling represent “dual-address” pathways, which operate by modifying and dispatching to the nucleus certain signaling proteins that normally reside in the cytoplasm; once in the nucleus, the key proteins in these two pathways (that is, STATs and β-catenin) function as components of specific transcription factor complexes to drive gene expression. In fact, four other dual-address signaling channels play important roles in the pathogenesis of human cancers. Here, we will briefly summarize the downstream actions of these four pathways (**Figure 6.22**) and cite examples of how each is deregulated in one or another type of human tumor (**Figure 6.23**).



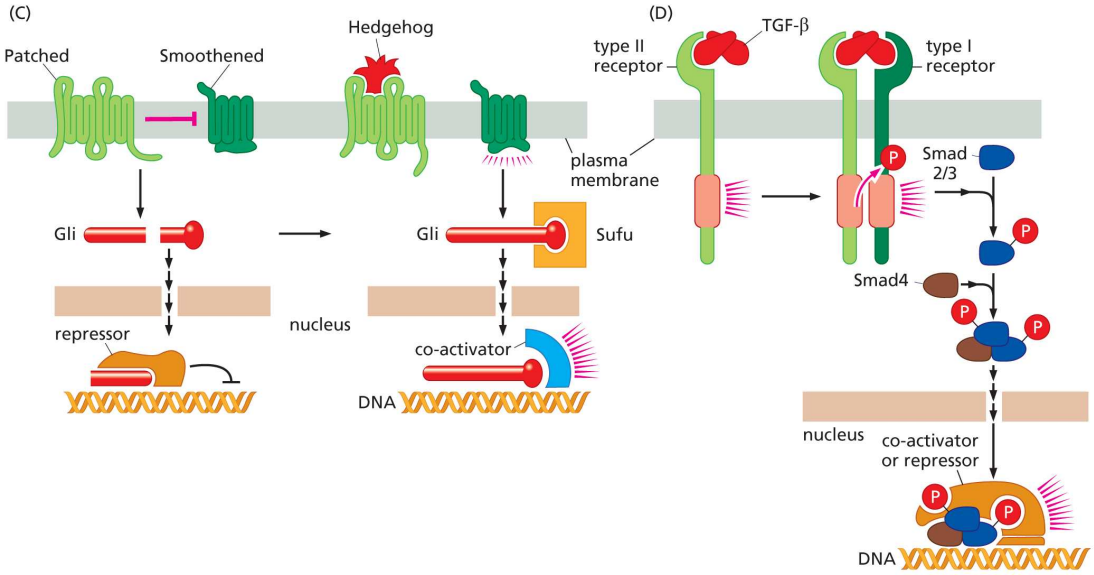
A receptor in the plasma membrane activates I K K, which phosphorylates an I kappa B within an N F-kappa B. This leads to the degradation of the I kappa B, leaving behind N F-kappa B with just a p 50 subunit and a p 65 subunit.

This passes into the nucleus, where the N F-kappa B joins a co-activator in attaching to a D N A helix.
(A)



A notch receptor in one cell's plasma membrane binds to a Delta-like (D L L1) or Jagged (J A G) ligand already bound to a receptor on another cell. This causes the notch receptor to break in two places, namely the inner and outer surfaces of the plasma membrane. The cytoplasmic domain, labeled N I C D, migrates into the nucleus, where it joins co-activators co-activators (H E S / H E Y) in attaching to a D N A helix.

(B)

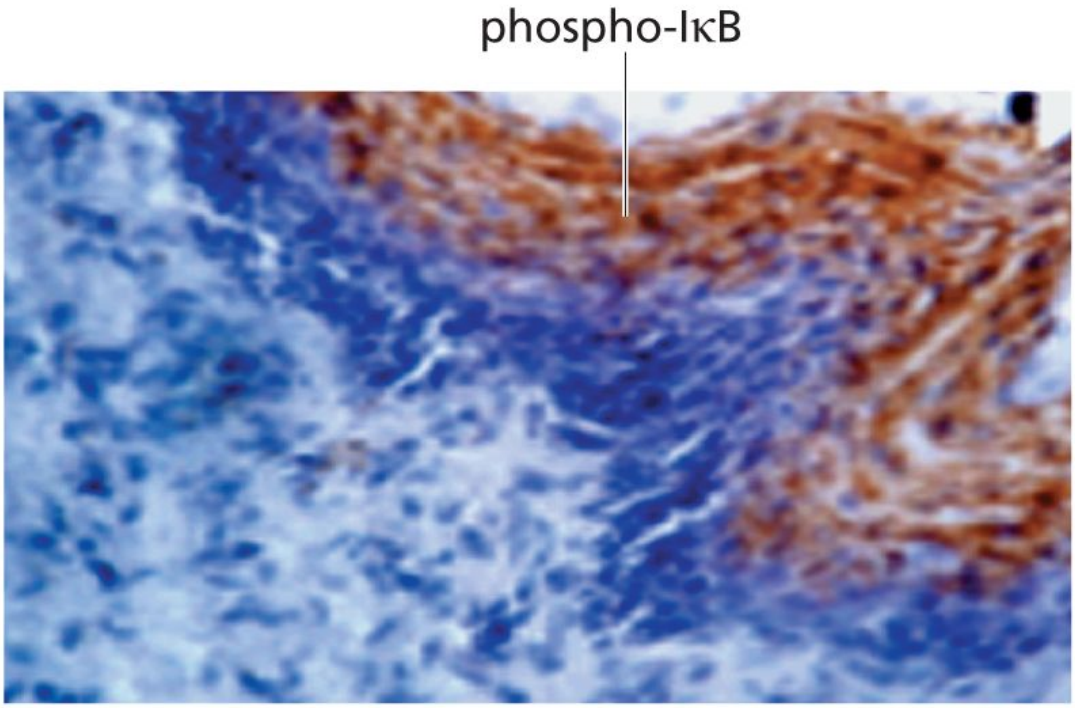


Patched initially inhibits Smoothened. This promotes the degradation of G l i, part of which moves into the nucleus and participates in transcription repression. When Patched is bound by a Hedgehog ligand, it stops inhibiting Smoothened. Then G l i is no longer degraded, it temporarily binds to Sufu and then translocates to the nucleus, where it joins with a co-activator to promote D N A transcription.

Binding of a Type 1 receptor by a T G F-ligand joins it with a Type 2 receptor. A series of phosphorylation steps involving S m a d 2 slash 3 and S m a d 4 results in a complex that in the nucleus joins with a co-activator or co-repressor to either activate or repress gene expression.

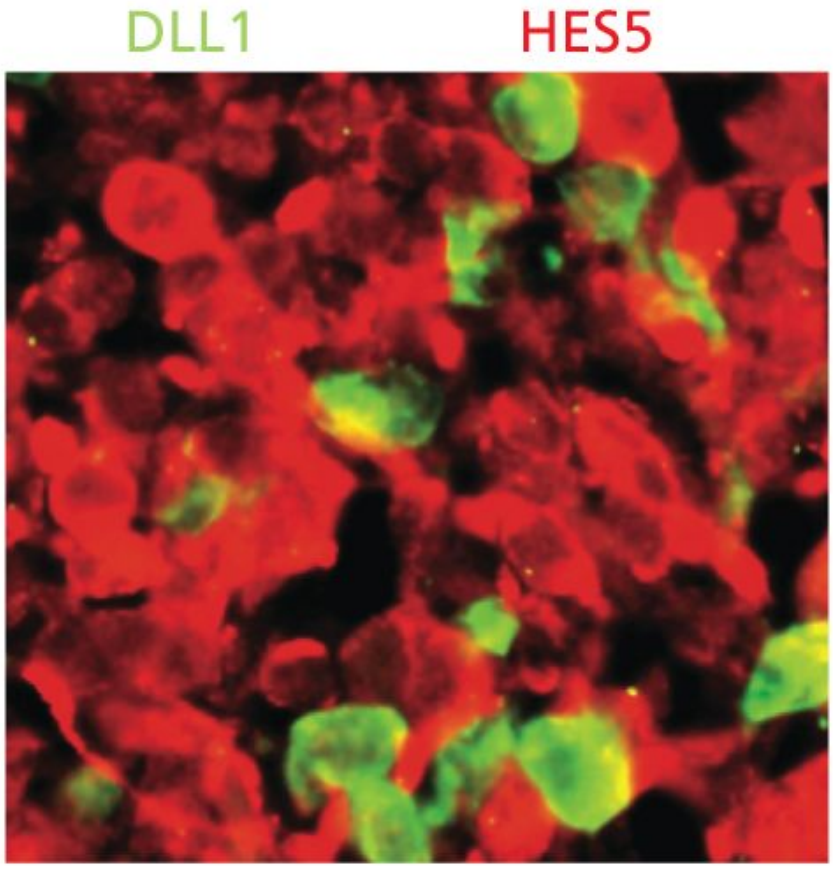
Figure 6.22 Four different "dual-address" signaling pathways (A) The NF-κB family of five transcription factor proteins, which function as homo- and heterodimers represented here by the commonly found p50 and p65 (*light and dark blue*), are sequestered in the cytoplasm by IκB (*red*). A variety of receptors and afferent signals (such as inflammatory cytokines) activate the IKK heterotetramer, which contains two distinct kinase subunits and phosphorylates

IκB, tagging it for proteolytic degradation. Once liberated from IκB, the NF-κB dimer can translocate to the nucleus, where it activates a broad constituency of genes, including anti-apoptotic and mitogenic genes. A prominent gene target of NF-κB transcriptional regulation is the gene encoding IκBα, which ( ) generates this inhibitory protein that proceeds to move into the nucleus to shut down further transcription by NF-κB, thereby functioning as a negative-feedback inhibitor (*not shown*). Also not shown are the alternative, non-canonical, and atypical NF-κB pathways. (B) The Notch receptor can bind ligands belonging to the Delta-like and Jagged families that are presented by a closely apposed second cell. Ligand binding causes two proteolytic cuts in Notch (*below*), liberating a cytoplasmic fragment (termed Notch intracellular domain, NICD) that can translocate to the nucleus, where it functions as part of a transcription factor complex. At the same time, the Notch ligand and the ectodomain of the Notch receptor are internalized and then degraded by the ligand-presenting cell (*not shown*; see Figure 5.16). (C) In this simplified depiction of Patched (Ptc)–Smoothened signaling, the binding of a Hedgehog (Hh) ligand releases Smo from Ptc control (see Figure 5.17 for more details). Smo then allows Gli to escape ongoing degradation (where its cleaved form acts as a transcriptional repressor in the nucleus). The resulting full-length Gli protein appears to be sequestered by Sufu in the cytoplasm and in the primary cilium. In response to Hh ligand binding, Sufu releases its grip on the Gli protein, allowing the latter to accumulate in full-length form and translocate to the nucleus, where it functions as a transcriptional inducer or repressor. (In fact, two of the three Gli proteins function as repressors; a third one can act to stimulate transcription under certain conditions.) (D) Binding of the TGF-β ligand to the type II TGF-β receptor brings the type II and type I receptors together and results in the phosphorylation by the type II receptor of the type I receptor. The latter, now activated, phosphorylates cytosolic Smad2 and/or Smad3 proteins; these phospho-Smads then bind to Smad4. The resulting heterotrimeric Smad complexes (composed of Smad 2/2/4, 2/3/4, or 3/3/4 subunits) translocate to the nucleus, where they bind specifically to a tetranucleotide DNA segment and associate with other adjacently bound transcription factors (*light brown*) to induce or repress gene expression.



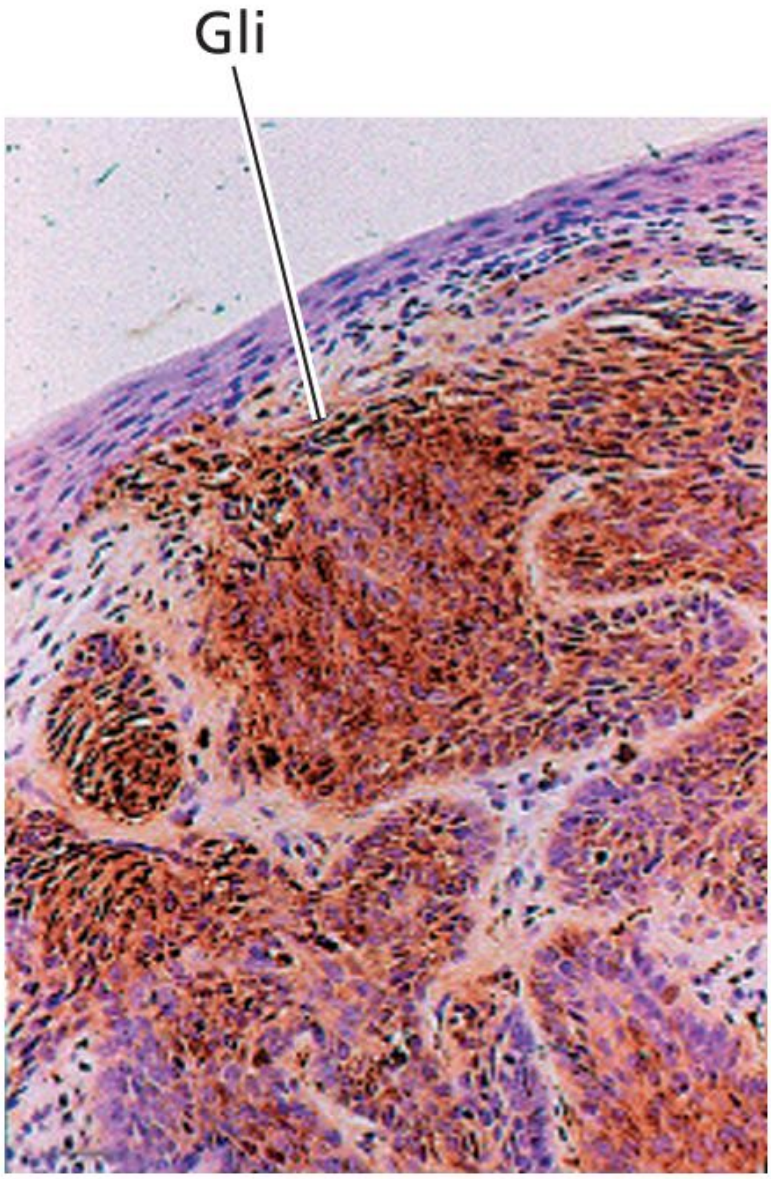
A histology image showing a undulating band of epithelial cells stained brown, surrounded by cells stained blue.

(A)



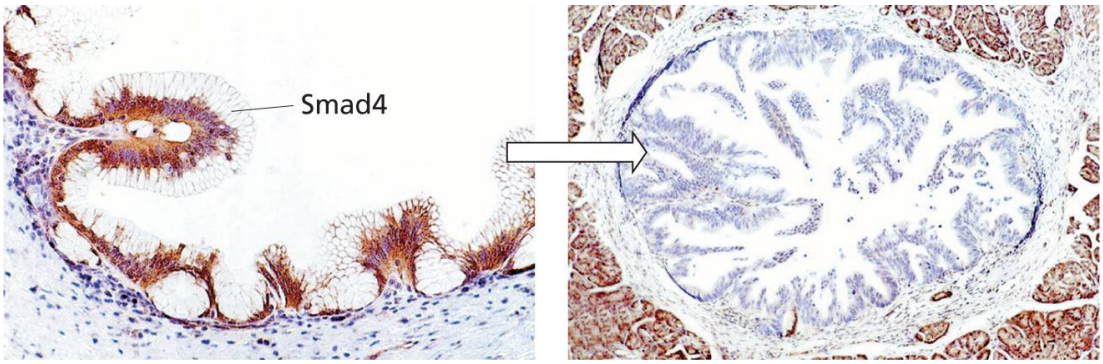
A false-color micrograph showing a few bright green blobs in a field of red-orange blobs. Above the image is the green label D L L1 and the red label HES5.

(B)



A histology image of cells stained rust brown surrounded by cells stained purplish pink. The brown cells are labeled G l i 1.

(C)



Two histology images. In the first, a tissue sample shows healthy cells in pale blue, with brown tree-like projections growing from the edge of the sample at irregular intervals. One of these is labeled S m a d 4. In the second image, a pale blue lesion is surrounded by brown tissue. Fissures run through tissues of both colors.

(D)

Figure 6.23 Deregulation of dual-address pathways in human cancers (A) NF-κB pathway. Immunostaining for the phosphorylated form of IκB reveals the localized activation of the NF-κB pathway (*brown area*) early in the multi-step development of a human cervical carcinoma, in this case in a low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion. (B) Notch pathway. This pathway is often deregulated through localized expression of Notch ligands. Characteristic downstream targets of Notch-stimulated transcription are a pair of bHLH transcription factors (see Figure 8.21) termed HES and HEY. In human glioblastomas, the DLL1 Notch ligand is expressed by endothelial cells forming the microvasculature of the tumor (*green*). Close to these endothelial cells are neoplastic glioblastoma cells that have responded to this DLL1-mediated activation of their Notch1 and Notch2 receptors by expressing HES5, a clear marker of activated Notch signaling (*red orange*). This *juxtacrine* signaling also causes the glioblastoma cells to express Nestin (*not shown*), a marker of both normal and neoplastic stem cells in the brain. (C) Hedgehog pathway. This pathway is deregulated in the majority of basal cell carcinomas of the skin (BCCs). Its deregulation is indicated by the elevated concentration of Gli1 protein in BCCs, detected here by immunostaining (*brown*), while being barely evident in normal cells (*light pink*). Northern (RNA) blot analyses (*not shown*) indicate as much as a 40-fold elevation in Gli1 mRNA in BCCs compared with normal skin. (D) TGF-β pathway. This pathway is inactivated in a wide variety of carcinomas through several mechanisms. During pancreatic carcinoma progression, low-grade pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasias (PanIN-1) usually express Smad4 (*brown, left panel*), a critical transcription factor in TGF-β signaling (see Figure 6.22D). These can progress (*arrow*) to high-grade PanIN-3 lesions, which often lose Smad4 expression, typically because of

mutation of the encoding gene (*center of right panel*). (A, from A. Nair et al., *Oncogene* 22:50–58, 2003. With permission from Nature. B, from T.S. Zhu et al., *Cancer Res*. 71:6061–6062, 2011. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, from L. Ghali et al., *J. Invest. Dermatol*. 113:595–599, 1999. With permission from Elsevier. D, from R.E. Wilentz et al., *Cancer Res*. 60:2002–2006, 2000. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Nuclear factor-κB The first indication of the importance of this pathway to cancer pathogenesis came from the discovery of the *rel* oncogene in a rapidly transforming turkey retrovirus responsible for reticuloendotheliosis, a hematopoietic tumor of the monocyte/macrophage lineage. Later investigations into the transcription factors responsible for regulating immunoglobulin gene expression revealed Rel to be a member of a family of transcription factors that came to be called collectively NF-κBs. These proteins form homo- and heterodimers in the cytoplasm.

The most common form of NF-κB is a heterodimer composed of a p65 and a p50 subunit. Usually, NF-κB is sequestered in the cytoplasm by a third polypeptide named IκB (inhibitor of NF-κB; see Figure 6.22A); while in this state, this signaling system is kept silent. However, in response to signals originating from a diverse array of sources, IκB becomes phosphorylated and thereby tagged for rapid destruction. (Recall that β-catenin suffers the same fate following its phosphorylation in the cytoplasm.) As a result, NF-κB is liberated from the clutches of IκB, migrates into the nucleus, and proceeds to activate the expression of a cohort of as many as 500 target genes.

The kinase that tags IκB for destruction (named IκB kinase or simply IKK) and thereby activates NF-κB signaling is itself stimulated by signals as diverse as tumor necrosis factor-α and interleukin-1β (extracellular factors involved in the inflammatory response of the immune system), lipopolysaccharide (a component of the outer membrane of certain bacteria and thus an indicator of bacterial infection), reactive oxygen species (ROS), anti-cancer drugs, and gamma irradiation. In the context of cancer, NF-κBs affect cell survival and proliferation. Once they have arrived in the nucleus, the NF-κBs can induce expression of genes specifying a number of key anti-apoptotic proteins, such as Bcl-2 and IAP-1 and -2; we will learn more about these proteins in Chapter 9. At the same time, NF-κBs function in a mitogenic fashion by inducing expression of the *myc* and cyclin D1 genes, components of the cell cycle machinery that we will encounter in Chapter 8. Hence, NF-κBs can protect cancer cells from apoptosis (programmed cell death) and, at the same time, drive their proliferation. An alternative, non-canonical form of NF-κB participates, albeit less frequently, in the development of certain tumors.

While components of the NF-κB signaling cascade are rarely found in mutant form in human cancers, this pathway is frequently found to be constitutively activated. In

breast cancers, for example, the pathway is often highly active, ostensibly through the actions of IKKε, which is overexpressed in ~30% of these tumors. NF-κB seems to play its most important role in malignancies of various lymphocyte lineages. The *REL* gene, which encodes one of the subunits of NF-κB, is amplified in about one-fourth of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas, resulting in a 4- to 35-fold increase in expression of its gene product. Translocations affecting the *NFKB2* locus have been found frequently in B- and T-cell lymphomas and in myelomas (tumors of antibody-producing cells). And deregulation of this pathway can often be observed early in the development of low-grade malignant growths (see Figure 6.23A). More generally, overexpression of NF-κB is associated with poor prognosis in a variety of common cancers.

Notch Study of another unusual signaling pathway, this one controlled by the Notch protein, traces its roots to the discovery in 1913 of an allele of a *Drosophila* gene that causes notches to form in the edges of this fly's wings. Only many decades later was it realized that Notch is a transmembrane protein; four different varieties of Notch (products of four different genes) are expressed by mammalian cells. As described in the last chapter (see Figure 5.16), after Notch, acting as a cell surface receptor, binds a ligand (a Jagged- or Notch-like protein), it undergoes two proteolytic cleavages, one in its ectodomain, the other within its transmembrane domain. The latter cleavage liberates a largely cytoplasmic protein fragment from its tethering to the plasma membrane. This fragment of Notch then migrates to the nucleus of targeted cells, where it functions, together with partner proteins, as a transcription factor (see Figure 6.22B).

Notch signaling is especially important in governing cell fate decisions during development and tumorigenesis, that is, the decision by a less differentiated cell to enter into one or another alternative differentiation pathway. Indeed, the repertoire of genes activated in different cell types by Notch is strongly affected by the differentiation pathways that these cells have entered. In addition, Notch has proliferation-inducing functions independent of its tissue-specific effects; these are most apparent from its ability to activate expression of Myc, which we will see in Chapter 8 is a potent driver of cell proliferation.

This signaling system operates using biochemical mechanisms that are clearly very different from those governing signaling by tyrosine kinase receptors. Each time a Notch receptor binds its ligand, the receptor undergoes irreversible covalent alterations, specifically, the proteolytic cleavages cited above. Hence, receptor firing occurs in direct proportion to the number of ligands encountered in the extracellular space, and each Notch receptor molecule can presumably fire only once after it has bound its ligand and therefore relies on its ability to drive multiple cycles of transcription in the nucleus in order to amplify the signal initiated by Notch ligand binding. Tyrosine kinase receptors, in dramatic contrast, release signals repetitively over an extended period of time following ligand binding, and therefore already

amplify the signals initiated by their growth factor ligands in the cytoplasm; this amplification is multiplied further by the ability of their downstream partners, many of which are enumerated in Figure 6.5. In addition, as mentioned in the last chapter, Notch signaling operates in a *juxtacrine* fashion, that is, between two cells that are in direct physical contact with one another. This contrasts with many other signaling interactions that depend on soluble ligands diffusing through the interstitial space between cells located near one another within a tissue but not necessarily in direct physical contact, creating the contrasting *paracrine* signaling interactions.

Truncated forms of *Notch* that specify only the cytoplasmic domain of the Notch protein are potent oncogenes for transforming cells, suggesting that altered forms of Notch contribute to human cancer pathogenesis. Indeed, overexpression of one or another of the Notch proteins is seen in the great majority of cervical carcinomas, in a subset of colon and prostate carcinomas, and in squamous cell carcinomas of the lung. This overexpression is often accompanied by nuclear localization of the cytoplasmic cleavage fragment of Notch, indicating that active signaling through this pathway is occurring in tumor cells. Increased expression of two classes of Notch ligands, termed Jagged and Delta, has also been found in some cervical and prostate carcinomas (Figure 6.23B). More dramatically, in about 60% of T-cell acute lymphocytic leukemias (T-ALLs), constitutively active forms of Notch are found; these result from genetic deletions of the portion of the *NOTCH-1* gene encoding the extracellular domain of the protein. Some experiments also suggest that Notch signaling contributes to transformation by *ras* oncogenes. In general, however, variant forms of *Notch* act as oncogenes in hematopoietic malignancies and in an array of other tumors but may function in an opposite fashion as tumor suppressors in certain carcinomas; hence, the contributions of Notch signaling to cancer development seem to be highly dependent on cellular context.

Hedgehog As was discussed previously, binding of the Patched receptor by its ligand, Hedgehog (Hh), somehow alters the interactions between Patched (Ptc) and Smoothened (Smo). As a consequence, Smoothened and Gli then accumulate in the primary cilium, often at its tip (see Figure 5.17). Normally, in the absence of intervention by Smoothened, the Gli precursor protein is cleaved into two fragments, one of which moves into the nucleus, where it functions as a transcriptional repressor. However, following Hedgehog stimulation, Smoothened and Gli interact in the primary cilium, where the Gli precursor is protected from cleavage. The resulting intact Gli protein migrates to the nucleus, where it serves as an activator of transcription (see Figure 6.22C). During the course of embryogenesis, Hh signaling has been associated with development of patterned development in certain tissues as well as commitments to specific cell states (although acting over greater distances than Notch). It can also emit signals promoting cell proliferation.

Gli was first discovered as a highly expressed protein in glioblastomas (whence its name). When overexpressed, Gli and several closely related cousins can function as oncoproteins. Subsequent research into this pathway has revealed other instances where its malfunctioning contributes to tumor development. For example, germ-line inactivating mutations of the human patched (*PTCH*) gene cause Gorlin syndrome, an inherited cancer susceptibility syndrome, which involves increased risk of multiple basal cell carcinomas of the skin as well as other tumors, notably medulloblastomas—tumors of cells arising from primitive stem cells in the cerebellum. Such inactivating mutations prevent Patched from inhibiting Smoothened, giving the latter a free hand to dispatch an uninterrupted stream of active Gli protein to the cell nucleus.

As many as 50% of sporadic basal cell carcinomas of the skin (which, by definition occur because of somatic rather than germ-line mutations) carry mutant *PTCH1* or *SMO* alleles—the latter encoding Smoothened. These basal cell carcinomas are the most common form of cancer in Western populations and fortunately are usually benign (see Figure 6.23C). Somatically mutated alleles of *PTCH1* have also been found in a variety of other tumors, including medulloblastomas (as noted above) and meningiomas, as well as breast and esophageal carcinomas. These somatic mutations, like those present in mutant germ-line alleles of *PTCH1*, seem to compromise Patched 1 function, once again permitting Smoothened to constitutively activate Gli transcription factors. Recently, germ-line and somatically mutated inactivating alleles of *SUFU*—which otherwise sequesters some full-length Gli proteins (see Figure 6.22C)—have been described in association with human medulloblastoma development.

These various cancers, all involving mutations that affect the structure of various components of the Hedgehog pathway, represent only a small portion of the human tumors in which this signaling cascade is hyperactivated. Thus, a survey of esophageal, gastric, biliary tract, and pancreatic carcinoma cell lines and tumors has revealed that virtually all of these expressed significant levels of the Patched receptor as well as its ligands (either Sonic Hedgehog or Indian Hedgehog). Often the ligands are produced by the epithelial cells within carcinomas while the Patched receptor is expressed in nearby stromal cells, suggesting the operations of a paracrine signaling channel. This notion was confirmed by demonstrating elevated nuclear levels of the Gli factor, the downstream product of the activated pathway, in stromal cells rather than the epithelial carcinoma cells themselves. Moreover, treatment of tumors with anti-Hedgehog antibody caused cessation of proliferation and/or death of tumor cells, suggesting that stromal cells stimulated by Hedgehog ligands reciprocate by sending mitogenic and survival signals back to nearby carcinoma cells. Similar findings have been reported for small-cell lung carcinomas (SCLCs). Equally plausible is an alternative mechanism, in which both the Hh ligands and the Patched receptor are expressed in the carcinoma cells, causing cell proliferation to be driven by autocrine signaling loops. Quite often, Hedgehog-responsive tumor cells have been identified as

neoplastic cells with stem cell-like properties. Together, these reports point to an important role of this signaling pathway in the tumors including those that arise in the multiple tissues deriving developmentally from the embryonic gut.

TGF-β A fourth signaling pathway that involves the dispatch of cytoplasmic proteins to the nucleus is represented by the pathway leading from TGF-β receptors (Section 5.7). TGF-β and the signaling pathway that it controls appear to play major roles in the pathogenesis of many if not all carcinomas, both in their early stages, when TGF-β acts to arrest the growth of many cell types, and later in cancer progression, when it contributes, paradoxically, to the phenotype of tumor invasiveness. We will defer detailed discussions of the cell-biological functions of this important pathway until Section 8.10 and Chapter 14. For the moment, suffice it to say that activation of this pathway leads to dispatch of Smad transcription factors to the nucleus, where they can bind a specific tetranucleotide sequence in the DNA and associate with adjacently bound transcription factors to induce the expression of a large constituency of genes and repress many others (see Figure 6.22D). In the absence of critical Smads, epithelial cancer cells can escape the growth-inhibitory actions of TGF-β and thrive—a state that is often observed in the precursors of invasive human pancreatic carcinomas (see Figure 6.23D).

The Smad transcription factors (TFs) are most unusual, because they recognize and bind only a tetranucleotide sequence in chromosomal DNA, as mentioned above. This DNA binding, on its own, is too weak to maintain the stable association of Smads with the DNA. Instead, the Smads often and perhaps invariably bind DNA segments immediately adjacent to the binding sites of other more stably bound TFs with which they establish non-covalent associations. The resulting lateral protein–protein interactions between the Smad and its diverse TF partners ensure that binding by Smads and its partners to DNA is cooperative and quite strong. To date, Smads have been found to form such partnerships with more than 130 distinct TFs; the functions of most of these have not been explored. As one example among many, the complex of Smad2 and Smad4 can associate with the YAP/TAZ + TEAD complex described in the next section. This versatility explains why TGF-β and its Smad effectors can elicit diverse responses from cells, depending on the signaling context. TGF-β can induce apoptosis in certain cells but in the presence of active PI3K signaling may simply be cytostatic (see Chapter 8). When signaling in the presence of a Ras oncoprotein, TGF-β may induce an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (Chapters 13 and 14).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

reticuloendotheliosis
: Tumor of monocyte/macrophage lineage common in chickens and turkeys.

myeloma
: A malignancy of the antibody-producing cells of the bone marrow, often called multiple myeloma to indicate the large number of osteolytic lesions that are encountered in patients with advanced disease.

interstitial
: (n. pl., **interstices**) (1) Referring to the space between an array of objects. (2) The space within a tissue that lies between cells.

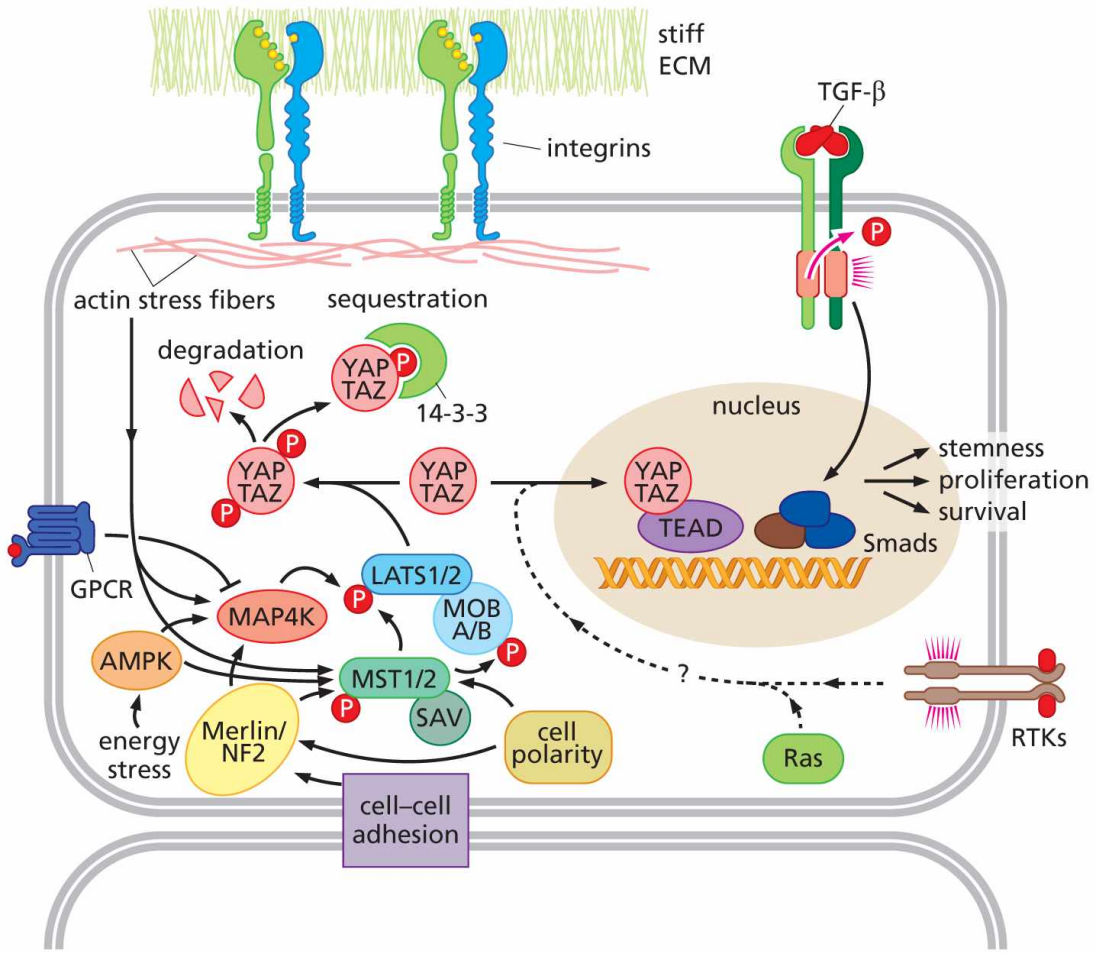
cell fate
: The entrance of a less-differentiated cell into a specific differentiation lineage and eventual differentiated state, often determined by a cell long before such a cell manifests specific markers of such a state.

OceanofPDF.com

6.13 The Hippo signaling circuit integrates diverse inputs to govern diverse cell phenotypes

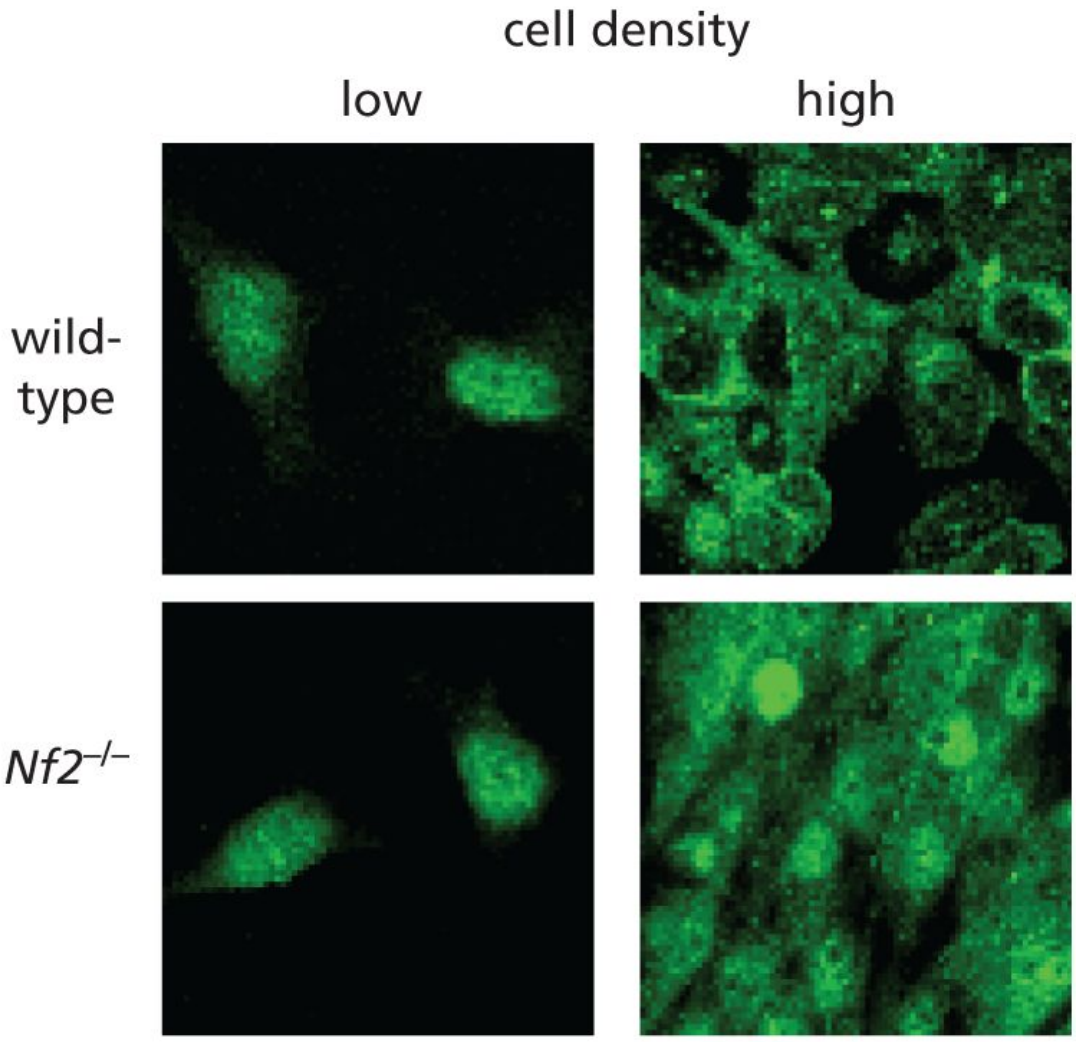
Virtually all of the discussions of signaling in this chapter have been motivated by a simple paradigm: an extracellular signal, conveyed by a soluble or insoluble protein, activates a cell surface receptor, which then proceeds through a dedicated signaling cascade to evoke multiple downstream cell-biological responses in a cell. While fruitful and accessible, such discussions ignore other types of signal-processing circuits that are not dedicated to serving specific cell surface receptors. Instead, these other types of circuits receive incoming (afferent) signals from diverse extracellular sources, integrate these signals with others of intracellular origin (for example, monitors of ATP levels), and only then proceed to effect key decisions in the life of a cell. One prominent example of such an intracellular control circuit is the cell-cycle clock, which is explored in detail in Chapter 8. Others involve the circuits that monitor genomic integrity, energy metabolism, and nutrient availability; some of these will be visited in future chapters.

The Hippo signaling circuit, involving prominently the YAP and TAZ transcription factors, represents one of the key intracellular circuit that responds to diverse afferent signals and merits our attention because of the roles that it plays in cancer pathogenesis. It was originally studied for its control of organ size, that is, the mechanisms governing how large individual organs become within a metazoan body, be they of a fly or a human. More recently, its role in governing the proliferation of normal and neoplastic mammalian cells has become apparent. Thus, the Hippo signaling circuit is a central element in the circuitry that processes a diverse set of inputs including the cell's localization within a tissue, its attachment to other cells, and the state of the surrounding extracellular matrix. Hence, unlike other extracellular signals described above, the YAP and TAZ paralogs monitor the overall tissue context of a cell, only some of which is defined by the presence in the surrounding space of discrete, soluble signaling molecules (**Figure 6.24A**). In response to the proper combinations of signals, YAP/TAZ will move into the nucleus (Figure 6.24B) and there encourage gene expression that favors cell proliferation, survival, and stemness. Of additional interest, YAP/TAZ is also a "dual-address" circuit like the six others described earlier, but one in which the modifying signal (protein phosphorylation) results in functional inactivation via sequestration or degradation in the cytoplasm and thus blockage of signals being dispatched to the transcriptional apparatus in the nucleus.



A diagram shows integrins with their ectodomains in a stiff extracellular matrix and their cytodomains connected to cytoplasmic actin stress fibers. These fibers are at the head of a signaling sequence that proceeds through many complex intermediate steps to the handling of Y A P and T A Z: either degradation, or sequestration, or translocation into the nucleus. The last of these three involves joining with T E A D to foster stemness, proliferation, and survival.

(A)



A two by two block of green-on-black images. The top two images show wild-type cells at low and high density. The bottom two images show N f 2 double minus cells at low and high density. In the high density images, the N f 2 cells have grown more densely packed than the wild-type cells.

(B)

Figure 6.24 YAP-TAZ signaling The YAP/TAZ signaling circuit is designed to integrate diverse inputs and, under the proper conditions, respond by fostering cell proliferation, acquisition of stemness properties, and suppression of apoptosis. (A) The key components are the closely related YAP and TAZ transcriptional co-activators which, when permitted to enter the nucleus, associate with a TEAD transcription factor (there are four in all) to evoke these various downstream responses. A key input is the Hippo pathway, which drives YAP/TAZ phosphorylation, ensuring that these two transcription factors are sequestered in

the cytoplasm and even destroyed in proteasomes (*not shown*); this inhibitory phosphorylation is driven by the actions of the LATS1/2 kinases. Upstream of LATS1/2 kinases are yet other regulators. MST1/2 kinases (termed Hippo in *Drosophila* genetics) phosphorylate and thereby activate the LATS1/2 kinases, a step that requires the tumor suppressor NF2, the formation of cell–cell contacts at adherens junctions (depicted in Figure 6.19A), and apico-basal polarity in epithelia (see Figure 2.4C). An overarching input controlling YAP/TAZ activity is cellular *mechanotransduction*, i.e., the ability of cells to sense the rigidity of the ECM around them as well as their own shape. These cues are regulated by the cell's attachment via focal adhesions to the ECM, the resulting tension transferred to the actin cytoskeleton, and the surrounding tissue architecture in which it is embedded. Both canonical and non-canonical Wnt signaling (see Figures 6.19 and 6.20) as well as the TGF-β pathway (see Figure 6.22D) also govern the outputs of this pathway. Finally, cellular metabolism influences this pathway through AMPK (AMP kinase), which monitors the level of AMP vs. ATP in cells. (B) Wild-type and *Nf2* mutant mouse Schwann cells were immunostained with anti-YAP antibody (*green*). In wild-type cells grown in monolayer culture, YAP, which acts as a transcription factor to promote cell proliferation, is enriched in the nucleus at low cell density but is preferentially localized in the cytosol at high cell density and thus effectively excluded from the nucleus; this may explain much of the phenomenon of contact inhibition described in Figure 3.4. However, in cells lacking the Merlin/NF2 tumor suppressor protein, which normally transduces signals from the cell surface to YAP/TAZ, the nuclear localization of YAP is unaffected by the density of cells in monolayer culture, ostensibly allowing cells to continue proliferating long after they have sensed contact with their neighbors. (A, adapted from S. Piccolo, S. Dupont and M. Cordenonsi, *Physiol. Rev*. 94:1287–1312. B, Courtesy of Duojia (DJ) Pan.)

The fact that nuclear YAP/TAZ favors cell proliferation already suggests that its actions are, with great likelihood, deregulated within various human tumors, and indeed this is the case. High-level expression of YAP or TAZ, especially when present in the nuclei of the carcinoma cells in a variety of human tumors, is, on its own, correlated with aggressive clinical behavior, including a tendency to spawn metastases and, in the case of certain breast cancers, a reduced tendency of involved tumors to respond to otherwise-effective therapies. Among carcinomas, ranging from liver and pancreatic tumors to those of lung and colon, these correlations have been documented repeatedly. Conversely, shutting down YAP/TAZ nuclear localization by overexpressing some of their negative regulators results in loss of proliferation and, in certain instances, tumor shrinkage. Unlike most of the signaling circuits discussed in this chapter, this one is still poorly understood because of the daunting complexity of

its inputs and the myriad cross-connections between this circuit and other regulatory circuits operating within cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

afferent
: Referring to incoming signals. *See also* **efferent**.

OceanofPDF.com

6.14 Well-designed signaling circuits require both negative and positive feedback controls

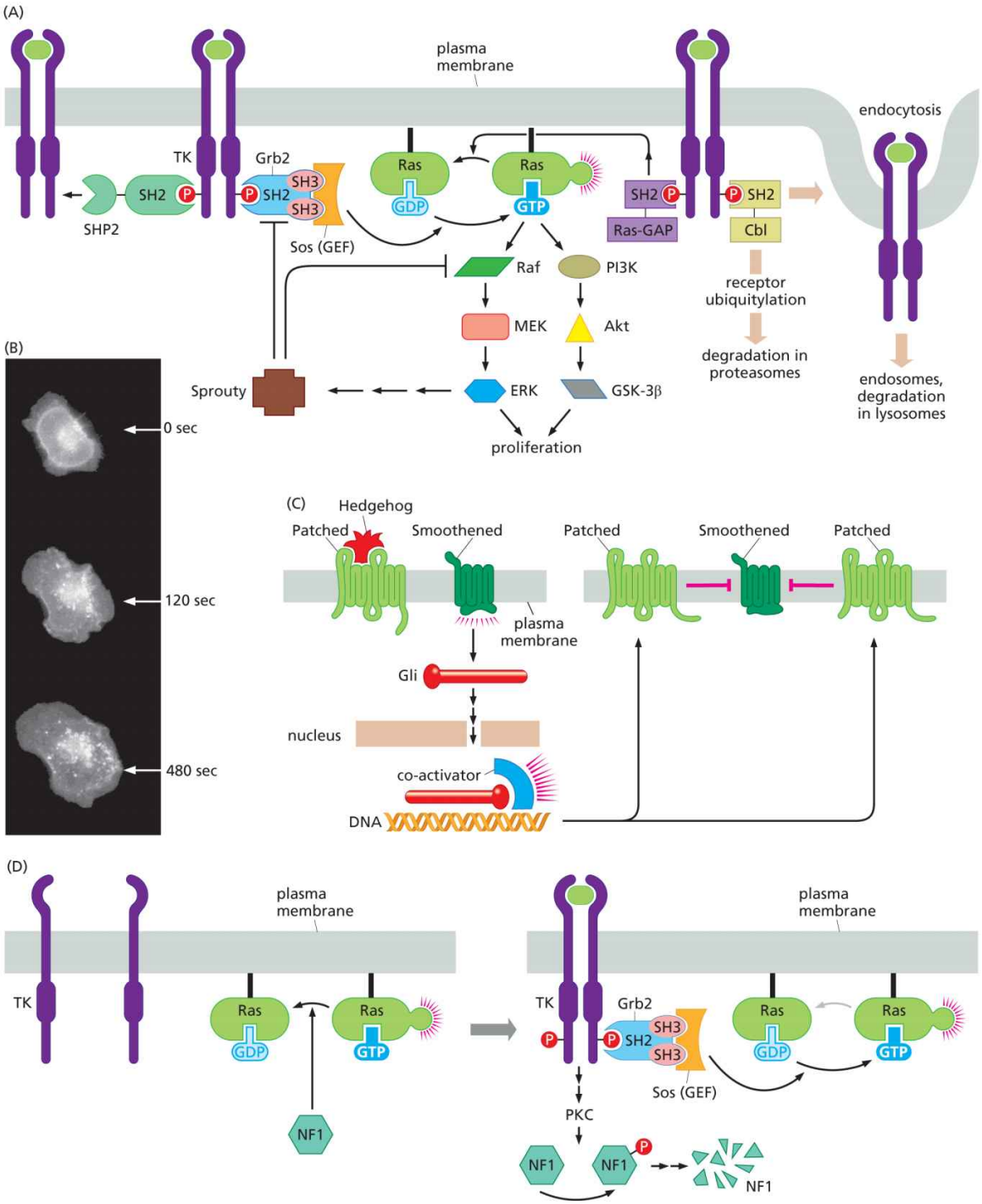
All well-designed regulatory circuits are fine-tuned by feedback controls that ensure that the flux of signaling through one or another pathway is at appropriate levels for optimal performance. Such well-regulated signal-processing circuits contain inhibitory components that counterbalance and modulate the behavior of other components that emit positive signals. Without these negative controls, positive signals, such as those that promote cell proliferation, may run rampant; in the case of mitogenic signals, this can lead to the runaway proliferation that we associate with neoplastic cells.

In principle, one effective strategy for constraining the signals flowing through the mitogenic signaling pathways that we have encountered could rely on limiting the amounts of growth factor molecules to which a cell is exposed. That way, even if this cell displayed abundant growth factor receptors on its surface, the limited number of available GF ligand molecules in the extracellular space would ensure only minimal firing by these receptors and therefore limited activation of downstream signaling pathways.

However, a more precisely targeted and effective strategy for regulating the flow of such mitogenic signals depends on modulating signal processing *within* the responding cell. Often, the inhibitory components operating in an intracellular signaling circuit are functionally inactive until the circuit becomes active; however, once signaling begins flowing through the circuit, the inhibitory proteins become activated sooner or later and proceed to block further signaling. This type of inducible inhibition is often termed negative feedback and is an important feature of many, possibly all, signal-processing circuits within cells.

Actually, without noting this feature explicitly in the last two chapters, we have encountered a number of proteins that are involved in negative-feedback loops. For example, when a GF receptor becomes activated by ligand binding and autophosphorylation, the SH2 domains of Ras-GAP (see Figure 5.24) allow this protein to bind to phosphotyrosines of the receptor. This places Ras-GAP in a position where it can trigger the GTPase function and resulting inactivation of

Ras (**Figure 6.25A**); the latter, which had recently been activated into its active, GTP-bound state, is now forced to shut down its signaling. This negative-feedback loop ensures the release of only a small burst of mitogenic signals by Ras. Yet other mechanisms involved in shutting down receptor signaling are depicted in Figure 6.25A, B, and C; in fact, dozens of such negative-feedback loops have been uncovered in various regulatory circuits operating within the cell, and far more are likely to be found in the future. As predicted from this scenario, the loss of various proteins that function as Ras-GAPs can contribute to runaway Ras signaling. For example, mutant *Ras* oncogenes are rarely found in human breast cancers; however, some especially aggressive breast tumors nonetheless acquire strong Ras signaling by inactivating key Ras-GAP proteins.



A four-part figure depicting negative and positive feedback controls on signaling. Part A shows negative feedback. A cascade begins when R a s-G D P is activated into R a s-G T P. This cascade leads to E R K but also signals Sprouty to block further R a s activation. At the same time, the binding of R a s-G A P via one or both of its S H 2 groups to a ligand-activated receptor drives G T P hydrolysis by R a s. Moreover, the binding of C b l to a receptor

via its S H 2 group results in ubiquitylation of the receptor and its destruction within proteasomes. Two more negative-feedback loops operate via the ligand induced endocytosis of an R T K, such as the E G F-R, and lead to its introduction either into endosomes or lysosomes, in which it is degraded. Finally, the binding of the S H P-2 phosphatase to the receptor removes the phosphates previously attached to tyrosine residues. Part B shows a sequence of three images of a single gray cell. In the first image, at 0 seconds, the cell has an oblong halo on its body. In the second image, at 120 seconds, the halo has begun to enlarge, break up, and become more granular. In the third image, at 480 seconds, the halo has disintegrated into bright granules distributed throughout the cell. In Part C, Patched is initially bound by a Hedgehog ligand, and so it does not inhibit Smoothened. Then G l i is not degraded, and it translocates to the nucleus, where it joins with a co-activator to promote D N A transcription. This creates new Patched copies that are not bound by Hedgehog. They inhibit Smoothened. Part D is an example of positive feedback. N F 1 initially deactivates R a s by converting it from R a s G T P to R a s G D P. However, when a G F-activated receptor begins to release signals, it activates a form of P K C (protein kinase C) that phosphorylates N F 1, causing its ubiquitylation and degradation, thereby enabling a rapid increase in firing by active, G T P-bound R a s molecules.

Figure 6.25 Negative and positive feedback controls on signaling An elaborate array of negative-feedback loops ensures that excessive signaling in normal cells is reduced to levels that are compatible with maintenance of normal cell behavior. (A) When RTKs bind their cognate ligands, the resulting activation of the Ras → Raf → MEK → ERK signaling cascade causes Sprouty (*brown, lower left*) to block binding of Grb2 to Sos (*light orange*), thereby shutting down further Ras activation. Sprouty also binds and inhibits the Raf kinase as well as other targets (*not shown*). Functioning concomitantly with this negative-feedback loop, the binding of Ras-GAP (*purple*; see also Figure 5.24) via one or both of its SH2 groups to a ligand-activated receptor drives GTP hydrolysis by Ras. Moreover, the binding of Cbl (*light beige*) to a receptor via its SH2 group results in ubiquitylation of the receptor and its destruction within proteasomes. Two more negative-feedback loops operate via the ligand-induced endocytosis of an RTK, such as the EGF-R, and lead to its introduction either into endosomes at low ligand-binding levels (from which it may continue to fire for a period) or into lysosomes (at high ligand-binding levels), in which it is degraded (*right*). Finally, the binding of the SHP-2 phosphatase to the receptor removes the phosphates previously attached to tyrosine residues (*left*). (Not shown is a second SH2 group carried by SHP-2.) See also Sidebar 5.2. (B) As illustrated

in part A, an important mechanism of shutting down RTK signaling involves the physical internalization of receptor molecules via endocytosis. When a cell is exposed to epidermal growth factor (EGF), introduced into the medium at the location shown (*white arrows*), the EGF initially causes the cell surface EGF receptor molecules, which were previously localized to the plasma membrane and in this case have been linked to a fluorescent dye, to release mitogenic signals into the cell (*not shown*). However, within 120 seconds, the fluorescing EGF-R molecules have been internalized into the cytosol on the side of the cell facing the EGF source; and by 480 seconds, they are found in internalized clusters throughout the cell, which are either endosomes or lysosomes. (C) Binding of Hedgehog to Patched (*top left*) permits signaling by Smoothened, one of the consequences of which is the activation, via Gli, of transcription of the Patched-encoding gene. The resulting increased numbers of Patched molecules then function to inhibit further signaling by Smoothened. (D) A positive-feedback mechanism is illustrated by the actions of NF1 (neurofibromin), which in resting cells ensures the hydrolysis of Ras-bound GTP and associated inactivation of signaling by Ras. However, when a GF-activated receptor begins to release signals, it activates a form of PKC (protein kinase C) that phosphorylates NF1, causing its ubiquitylation and degradation (see Supplementary Sidebar 7.5), thereby enabling a rapid increase in firing by active, GTP-bound Ras molecules (*right*). (B, from M. Bailly et al., *Mol. Biol. Cell* 11:3873–3883, 2000. With permission from American Society for Cell Biology.)

An alternative mechanism of signal regulation is embodied in positive-feedback loops, which function to further *amplify* initial signaling. For example, the neurofibromin (NF1) protein normally functions like Ras-GAP to induce GTP hydrolysis by Ras proteins (Figure 6.25D). Thus, in cells that are not experiencing mitogenic signaling, NF1 ensures that the level of GTP-loaded Ras is held very low. However, soon after mitogenic signaling is initiated by a ligand-bound GF receptor, a cell's pool of NF1 protein is quickly degraded, clearing the way for Ras to rapidly become activated. Here, this feedforward loop is exploited to accelerate the initial activation of the signaling event, allowing it to reach its maximum more quickly. (Later on, NF1 levels are restored by yet other regulators, ensuring eventual shutdown of Ras signaling.)

Alternatively, feedforward mechanisms can be used to *stabilize* a decision, such as a decision to *maintain* a certain state of differentiation. Thus, a cell in a certain differentiated state may produce a growth factor or cytokine that functions in an

autocrine manner to induce and thereby ensure continued maintenance of this state of differentiation. In Chapter 8, we will encounter yet other examples of positive-feedback loops exploited by cells that have executed a decision and use these loops to guarantee the *irreversibility* of this decision; for example, once a cell decides to advance into the next phase of the cell cycle, positive-feedback signaling loops reinforce and amplify this decision, preventing the cell from inadvertently slipping backward into an earlier phase of the cell cycle. Still, we need to remember that feedforward loops also represent a liability, at least in the case where mitogenic signaling is being regulated: since they allow signaling to become self-perpetuating, feedforward loops may lead to loss of the finely tuned control of cell proliferation that is central to the normal cell phenotype.

It turns out that some of the negative-feedback controls can have major effects on the successes or failures of targeted pharmacologic therapies, such as the one that is directed toward shutting down the B-Raf kinase, which is mutated in a majority of human melanomas and in a subset of colorectal carcinoma (CRC) cells. The inhibitory drug termed vemurafinib (discussed in greater detail in Chapter 17) is effective in shutting down the proliferation of the *B-Raf*–mutant melanoma cells but is unable to elicit the same response in the CRC cells. As it happens, a powerful negative-feedback loop operates in CRC cells: B-Raf signaling activates ERK, which in turn acts via a negative-feedback loop to suppress signaling by the EGF-R, which lies upstream in the signaling pathway (Figure 6.25A). However, when MEK is shut down (through B-Raf inhibition), the negative-feedback loop no longer operates and EGF-R quickly begins highly effective firing, now signaling via an alternative downstream pathway—the Ras–PI3K–Akt–GSK-3β cascade—to drive CRC proliferation; this circumvents the anti-mitogenic actions of the B-Raf inhibitor. Melanoma cells do not express significant levels of the EGF-R and therefore cannot compensate for B-Raf inhibition, explaining their sensitivity to B-Raf inhibition. This represents only one of myriad feedback pathways that can thwart the most carefully designed anti-cancer therapies.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

negative feedback
: A regulatory process whereby a stimulatory signal upstream in a signaling pathway activates a downstream target that proceeds to inhibit the source of the initial upstream signal, thereby reducing further overall signaling. *See also* **positive feedback**.

feedforward
: Alternative term for **positive feedback**.

positive-feedback
: A regulatory process whereby an upstream stimulatory signal provokes a downstream target that proceeds to sustain and/or amplify signaling by the initial stimulatory signal. *See also* **feedforward**, **negative feedback**.

OceanofPDF.com

6.15 Synopsis and prospects

The signaling pathways that we have described in this chapter represent only the bare bones of the complexity of signal processing that actually operates within mammalian cells. In describing these, we have overlooked many of the endless complexities, some of which are enumerated below. Stated simply, the signaling networks created by the interactions between hundreds of proteins acting in various combinations create a complexity that is vastly beyond our current abilities to assimilate, dooming our attempts at present to understand the behavior of an individual cell as a whole. Moreover, this complexity grows progressively—driven by increasingly powerful analytical tools, so that the overall cellular signaling circuitry can no longer be grasped by a single human mind. Instead, as the years go on, each of the pathways described here has attracted its own coterie of highly specialized researchers.

Why has evolution cobbled together so many different solutions to processing signals within cells and tissues? The answer can only come from appreciating the extraordinary complexity of the metazoan body and the mechanisms that make its normal development possible. Long after the fact, we are trying to tease apart the biochemical solutions that were developed, step-by-step, during the ~1.4 billion years between the emergence of eukaryotes (~2.1×10^9 years ago) and the development of complex metazoan bodies (~0.7×10^9 years ago).

The resulting complexity greatly complicates most current attempts at understanding this circuitry for the purpose of treating human tumors in the oncology clinic. Those researchers who have chosen to develop new anti-cancer therapies are forced to flee into corners of this now-vast field of research and embrace extreme reductionism, focusing as they do on a small number of signal-processing components while purposively ignoring the surrounding complexity; their reductionism is the only rational and pragmatic approach to making solid progress.

Importantly, this complexity has caused cancer researchers to develop new ways to navigate through these thickets. The advent of genome-wide screens (to be discussed in Chapter 17) has allowed the discovery of the vulnerabilities of cancer cells—the choke points in specific circuits that can be revealed even if the detailed operations of the surrounding signaling cascades remain poorly

understood. These powerful and incisive approaches to developing clinical treatments of cancer have begun to yield impressive fruit.

Signal transduction in cancer cells As described in this chapter, one of the hallmarks of cancer cells is their ability to generate their own mitogenic signals endogenously. These signals liberate cancer cells from dependence on external mitogenic signals, specifically those conveyed by growth factors. It is now clear that the mitogenic pathway of greatest importance to human cancer pathogenesis is the one that was initially discovered and has been discussed here in detail, that is:

GFs → RTKs → Grb2 → Sos → Ras → Raf → MEK → ERK

As described in Chapter 5 and in this one, a variety of molecular mechanisms cause the upstream portion of this signaling pathway to become continuously activated in cancer cells. Neoplastic cells may acquire the ability to make and release growth factors (GFs) that initiate autocrine signaling loops. Alternatively, the growth factor receptors (RTKs) may suffer significant structural alterations. Even more common are the human tumors whose cells display elevated levels of wild-type versions of receptors such as the EGF receptor or its close relative, ErbB2/HER2/Neu. It is clear that excessively high levels of these receptor molecules, often expressed by breast, brain, and stomach cancer cells, favor increased cell proliferation. Such receptor overexpression is often achieved through either deregulated transcription or amplification of the gene encoding the receptor. Reductions in the elimination via endocytosis from the cell surface of ligand-activated RTKs also seem to contribute frequently.

As we learn more about the regulation of cell signaling, it is becoming apparent that negative-feedback controls like those modulating the signaling in this particular pathway (see Figure 6.25A) operate in essentially all the intracellular signaling pathways, ensuring that signals stimulating cellular growth and division are released in carefully titered amounts to ensure proper homeostasis—the proper physiologic balance of cell birth and death that is so critical to tissue and thus organismic viability. We will revisit some of these negative-feedback controls in Chapter 17, since they play an important role in thwarting recently developed therapeutic agents that have been designed to shut down certain key signaling molecules.

Moving down the mitogenic pathway from the receptors, we note that few, if any, alterations in signal-transducing proteins have been documented in human tumors until we reach the Ras proteins. Recall that point mutations in the 12th, 13th, or

61st codon of the reading frames of encoding *ras* genes result in constitutively activated Ras oncoproteins. The power of these Ras oncoproteins comes directly from their ability to activate two major and critical mitogenic pathways—those involving Raf and PI3K. Moving further downstream in the RTK → Sos → Ras signaling cascade, we once again find a relative dearth of mutant proteins in human cancer cells. The B-Raf protein, a close cousin of the Raf kinase, is one exception. It is found in mutant form in about 8% of a large panel of human tumor lines. Most importantly, almost half of all human melanomas possess point-mutated versions of the *BRAF* gene, whose normal product, like Raf, requires Ras stimulation before it can fire. The resulting mutant B-Raf proteins have a greatly reduced dependence on interaction with Ras.

Another exception is provided by phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), which also operates immediately downstream of Ras. Recall that the PI3K enzyme is activated by Ras, by growth factor receptors, or by the two acting in concert (see Figures 6.12 to 6.14). Its product is phosphatidylinositol triphosphate (PIP3). By 2020, activating mutations in the PI3K gene (termed *PIK3CA*) had been documented in the genomes of about 10% of all human cancers, with almost one-third of certain cancer types, notably those of the breast and endometrium, harboring mutant, oncogenic *PIK3CA* alleles. Far more commonly, however, *inhibition* of this pathway is defective in cancer cells: levels of PIP3, the product of PI3K, are normally held down by the actions of the PTEN phosphatase, which is lost in a wide variety of cancers. Almost 30% of all human tumors suffer loss of *PTEN* gene function, caused by either mutational inactivation or transcriptional repression. The resulting loss of PTEN function may be as effective for increasing PIP3 levels as the hyperactivity of the PI3K that is induced by Ras oncoproteins. In both cases, the increased PIP3 levels drive activation of Akt/PKB, which in turn has widespread effects on cell survival, growth, and proliferation.

In theory, future research may reveal that other pathways, some mentioned in this chapter (involving GPCRs, Patched, Notch, NF-κB, and Hippo), rival the importance of the RTK → Ras pathway in providing the mitogenic signals that drive cell proliferation in certain types of human cancer cells. In reality, however, every year’s worth of newly published genomic studies seems to reinforce the primacy of the canonical RTK pathway in human cancer pathogenesis.

Organization of mitogenic signaling pathways Evolution might have constructed complex metazoa like ourselves by using a small number of cellular signaling pathways (or even a single one) to regulate the proliferation of individual cells in various tissues. As it happened, a quite different design plan

was cobbled together: each of our cells uses a number of distinct signaling pathways to control its proliferation (with one of these, involving tyrosine kinase receptors, playing an especially prominent role). In each type of cell, the signaling pathways work in a *combinatorial fashion* to ensure that proliferation occurs in the right place and at the right time during development and, in the adult, during tissue maintenance and repair. Moreover, different cell types use different combinations of pathways to regulate their growth and division. This helps to explain why the biochemistry of cancer, as described in this chapter, is so complex.

The signaling circuitry that was described in this chapter operates largely in the cytoplasm and receives inputs from cell surface receptors—those that bind either soluble extracellular ligands, notably growth factors, or insoluble matrix components (the integrins). Having received a complex mixture of afferent (incoming) signals from these receptors, this cytoplasmic circuitry emits signals to molecular targets in both the cytoplasm and the nucleus.

Included among the cytoplasmic targets are the regulators of cell shape and motility, energy metabolism, protein synthesis, and the apoptotic machinery, which decides on the life or death of the cell. The remaining signals are transmitted to the nucleus, where they modulate the transcription of thousands of genes involved in the programming of cell growth and differentiation as well as cell cycle progression. We will return to some of these themes later. Thus, the regulation of the cell cycle and differentiation is described in Chapter 8, while the regulation of programmed cell death—apoptosis—will be presented in Chapter 9. The regulators of cell motility, which is critical to high-grade malignancy, will be described in outline in Chapter 14.

Certain major themes have recurred throughout this chapter. Most apparent are the three ways in which signals are transduced through the signaling pathways of normal and neoplastic cells. First, the *intrinsic activity* of signaling molecules may be modulated. This can be achieved by noncovalent modifications (for example, the binding of GTP by Ras) or receptor dimerization. Alternatively, a signaling molecule may be covalently modified; the phosphorylation of MEK by Raf, the phosphorylation of PIP2 by PI3K, and the proteolytic cleavage of Notch are three examples of this.

Second, the *concentration* of a signaling molecule may be modulated, often by orders of magnitude. Thus, the concentration of β-catenin is strongly reduced by

GSK-3β phosphorylation, and the concentration of PIP3 is regulated by PI3K (positively) as well as PTEN (negatively).

Third, the intracellular *localization* of signaling molecules can be regulated, which results in moving them from a site where they are inactive to a new site where they can do their work. The most dramatic examples of these derive from the phosphorylation of the C-terminal tails of receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) and the subsequent recruitment of multiple, distinct SH2-containing molecules to the resulting phosphotyrosines (see Figure 6.5). Once anchored to the receptors, many of these signal-transducing molecules are brought in close proximity with other molecules that are associated with the plasma membrane; examples of the latter are the Ras molecule (the target of Sos action) and PIP3 (the target of PI3K action).

The translocation of cytoplasmic molecules to the nucleus is another manifestation of this third class of regulatory mechanisms. For example, the "dual-address" transcription factors dwell in inactive form in the cytoplasm and may be dispatched as active transcription factors (or components thereof) to the nucleus. Examples of these include β-catenin, NF-κB, the Smads, Notch, Gli, YAP/TAZ, and the STATs.

The kinetics with which signals are transduced from one site to another within a cell may also vary enormously. One very rapid mechanism involves the actions of kinase cascades. Thus, the cytoplasmic MAP kinases (MAPKs), including ERKs lying at the bottom of these cascades, are activated almost immediately (in much less than a minute) following mitogen treatment of cells, and, following activation, the ERKs move into the nucleus essentially instantaneously. Once there, they proceed to phosphorylate and functionally activate a number of key transcription factors.

A slightly slower but nonetheless highly effective signaling route derives from the strategy, cited above, of activating dormant transcription factors in the cytoplasm and dispatching them in activated form to the nucleus. By far the slowest signaling mechanisms depend on modulating the *concentrations* of signaling proteins. This mode of regulation depends on changes in the rates of transcription of genes, the translation of their mRNAs, and the post-translational stabilization of their protein products.

The intracellular signaling circuitry encountered in this chapter appears to be organized similarly in various cell types throughout the body. This fact holds important implications for our understanding of cancer and its development.

More specifically, it suggests that the biochemical lessons learned from studying the neoplastic transformation of one cell type often prove to be applicable to a number of other cell types throughout the body. The ever-increasing body of information on the genetic aberrations of human cancer cells provides strong support for this notion.

The similar design of the intracellular growth-regulating circuitry in diverse cell types forces us to ask why different kinds of cells behave so differently in response to various external signals. Many of the answers will eventually come from understanding the spectrum of receptors that each cell type displays on its surface. In principle, knowledge of the cell type–specific display of cell surface receptors and of the largely invariant organization of the intracellular circuitry should enable us to predict the behaviors of various cell types following exposure to various mitogens and to growth-inhibitory factors like TGF-β. Similarly, by understanding the array of mutant alleles coexisting within the genome of a cancer cell, we should be able to predict how these alleles perturb behavior and how they conspire to program the neoplastic cell phenotype. In practice, we are still far from being able to do so for at least nine reasons:

1. We possess only a rudimentary knowledge of the layout of the circuit diagram—the map of intermolecular interactions that describe how different proteins and signaling molecules intercommunicate within a cell. One approach to describing this map involves determining all the binary protein–protein physical interactions operating within a single human cell—the sum of which represents the human interactome. Given the coding capacity of the human genome, approximately 200 million such binary interactions are theoretically possible. Of these, only about 64,000 binary physical interactions were validated experimentally by 2016. Nonetheless, even the most rigorous attempts at mapping the binary interactome are unlikely to reveal all of the signaling interactions between pairs of proteins, which often involve only transient, weak physical associations between interacting partner proteins, such as those between an enzyme and its substrate. In addition, physical interactions resulting in the formation of multiprotein complexes with more than two participating subunits are commonly overlooked in existing protein–protein interaction analyses. Such complexes are found everywhere throughout the signaling circuits operating in our cells.
2. In this chapter, we have described only the bare outlines of how these circuits operate and have consciously avoided many details. But such details are critical. For example, individual steps in these pathways are often

controlled by multiple, similarly acting paralogs, each of which transduces signals slightly differently from the others. Examples of this are the four structurally distinct Ras proteins; the three forms of Akt/PKB; Raf and its close cousins, A-Raf and B-Raf; and the nine similarly structured Src-family kinases (SFKs), which have partially overlapping functions. In most cases, we remain ignorant of the functional differences between the superficially similar proteins operating within a pathway, and therefore have only an incomplete understanding of how the pathway as a whole operates.

3. Complex negative-feedback and positive-feedback loops serve to dampen or amplify the signals fluxing through each of these pathways. While this chapter touched on these only briefly, negative-feedback loops are an indispensable feature of all signaling pathways, (Section 6.14). The feedback loops discovered to date surely represent only the tip of a vastly larger iceberg. For example, more than 100 phosphotyrosine phosphatase (PTP)–encoding genes have been found in the human genome. PTPs remove the phosphate groups attached by the 90 tyrosine kinases (TKs) present in our cells. We know almost nothing about the substrates of the phosphatase enzymes and how they are regulated in response to tyrosine phosphorylation events.
4. Each component in a signaling circuit acts as a complex signal-processing device that can amplify, attenuate, and/or integrate the upstream signals that it receives before passing them on to downstream targets. We have not begun to understand the quantitative parameters governing the efficiency of signal processing by individual signal-transducing proteins. As one example, the GTP-bound normal Ras protein exhibits different binding affinities to its three major downstream effectors, and these affinities change when amino acid substitutions block Ras-GTPase function and create Ras oncoproteins.
5. Calculations of diffusion times in cells indicate that efficient, rapid signal transduction is likely to occur only when interacting proteins are co-localized within microspaces within a cell. Only very fragmentary information is available about the intracellular localizations of most signaling proteins and, in some cases, the scaffolding proteins that bring them together with their interacting partners (see, for example, Figure 6.9B). The ability of proteins to transduce signals to one another is also affected by their localized intracellular concentrations; here, we have only begun to plumb the depths of this complexity. As one example, the four Ras proteins localize to various cytoplasmic membranes following their activation, where they have more or less access to their downstream effectors.
6. The phosphorylation of proteins has been discussed repeatedly in this chapter. These phosphorylation events, on their own, represent extraordinary

complexity: More than 50,000 distinct phosphopeptides have been cataloged in human cells; each of these is associated with one or another cellular protein and the effects of these modifications on protein function are generally not known. In fact, post-translational covalent modifications (PTMs) of proteins are vastly more varied and complex than these phosphorylation events. Proteins may become methylated, acetylated, lipidated, or ubiquitylated (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). There are also a variety of ubiquitin-like PTMs that are bound covalently to the amino acids constituting the primary structures of proteins. In almost all cases, the effects on protein function of these bulky PTMs are poorly understood; included among these modifying groups are NEDD8, ISG15, FAT10, MNSFβ, Ufm1, six Atg8 paralogs, Atg12, Urm1, Ubl5, and four SUMO paralogs. Beyond these at least 40 other types of distinct covalent modifications of proteins have been cataloged. In virtually all cases, the consequences on protein function of these PTMs are entirely obscure. In most cases, the PTMs are presumed to alter the functions of a modified protein, such as its catalytic activity or its interactions with other proteins or its levels within a cell. As one specific example, the highly modified histone H4 has been found to carry prominent acetylation, methylation, and phosphorylation PTMs on its various amino acid residues, yielding combinatorially a calculated 98,304 theoretical distinct proteoforms of this single cellular protein.

7. None of these intracellular pathways operates in isolation. Instead, each is influenced by cross-connections with other pathways. Understandably, the search for these cross-connections has been largely postponed until the operations of each primary pathway are elucidated. Once these cross-connections are added to the maps of these primary pathways, the drawings of signal transduction circuitry will likely resemble a weblike structure (see **Supplementary Sidebar 6.8**) rather than a series of parallel pathways that begin at the plasma membrane and extend linearly from there into the nucleus.
8. Distinct from these extensive cross-connections (such as those operating in the cytoplasm) there exists another dimension of combinatorial complexity: the most apparent endpoints of signaling—specific changes in cell phenotype achieved by transcriptional regulation of certain genes—are the results of interactions between multiple signaling pathways that converge in various combinations on specific gene promoters and their associated enhancers. Once again, this dimension of complexity continues to baffle us.
9. Our depiction of how signals are transmitted through a cell is likely to be fundamentally flawed. We have spoken here, time and again, about potent signaling pulses speeding along signal-transducing pathways and evoking, at

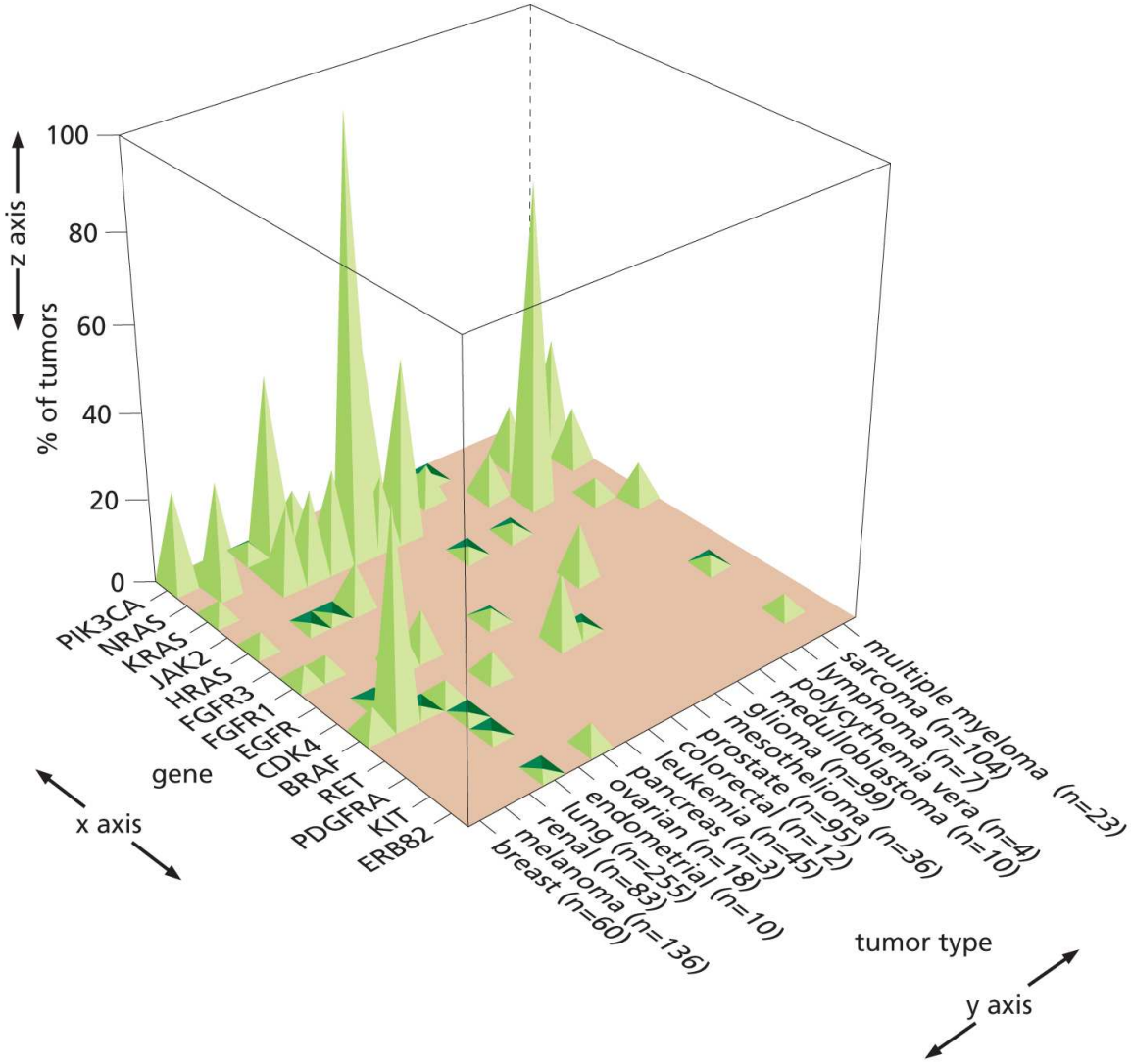
endpoints, strong and clearly defined responses within a cell. In reality, each signaling cascade is likely to operate in a finely tuned, dynamic equilibrium, where positive and negative regulators continuously counterbalance one another. Accordingly, a signaling input (for example, a mitogenic stimulus) may operate like the plucking of a fiber in one part of a spider web, which results in small reverberations at distant sites throughout the web. Here, neither our language nor our existing mathematical representations of signaling suffice to clarify our understanding.

Undaunted by these obstructions to understanding, some cancer researchers would like to be able to draw a complete and accurate wiring diagram of the cell —the scheme that depicts how these pathways are interconnected. This project will only be accomplished many years from now. One measure of the difficulties associated with this task comes from censuses of the various classes of genes in the human genome. According to one enumeration, there are 518 distinct genes specifying various types of protein kinases; 40% of these genes make alternatively spliced mRNAs encoding slightly different protein structures, leading to a collection of more than 1000 distinct kinase proteins that may be present in human cells. Of the 518 kinase genes, 90 encode tyrosine kinases, the remainder being serine/threonine kinases. Among the 90 tyrosine kinases, 58 function as the signaling domains of growth factor receptors. These numbers provide some measure of the complexity of the signaling circuitry that underlies one component of cancer pathogenesis, since many of these kinases are involved in regulating the proliferation and survival of cells.

Another dimension of complexity has come from more detailed burrowing into the details of individual signaling circuits. While we have portrayed Ras signaling as focused on three downstream effectors (see Figure 6.9A), directed biochemical analyses have indicated that the Ras proteins command additional effectors to do their work (**Supplementary Sidebar 6.9**). It remains unclear whether these additional pathways contribute in critical ways to the transforming powers of the corresponding oncoproteins.

The difficulties of explaining cell behavior in terms of the design of signal transduction circuitry underlie our current inability to understand another set of problems, these being related specifically to the genetics of cancer cell genomes: Why do various types of human tumors display highly specific types of genetic alterations (**Figure 6.26**)? Why do 90% of pancreatic carcinomas carry a mutant K-*ras* oncogene, while this mutation is seen in only a small proportion (~10%) of breast cancers? Why are amplifications of the EGF receptor and its cousin,

HER2/erbB2, encountered in more than a third of human breast cancers but seen uncommonly in certain other epithelial cancers, even though these receptors are widely displayed in many kinds of normal epithelia?



A three-dimensional histogram of frequencies of oncogene activation. The genes covered are P I K 3 C A, N RAS, K RAS, JAK2, H RAS, F G F R 3, F G F R 1, E G F R, C D K 4, B RAF, RET, P D G F R A, KIT, and E R B 82. The tumors covered are multiple myeloma (n=23), sarcoma (n=104), lymphoma (n=7), polycythemia vera (n=4), medulloblastoma (n=10), glioma (n=99), mesothelioma (n=36), prostate (n=95), colorectal (n=12), leukemia (n=45), pancreas (n=3), ovarian (n=18), endometrial (n=10), lung (n=255), renal (n=83), melanoma (n=136), and breast (n=60). Some genes are activated only rarely, in a single tumor type. F G F R 3 is only activated in a

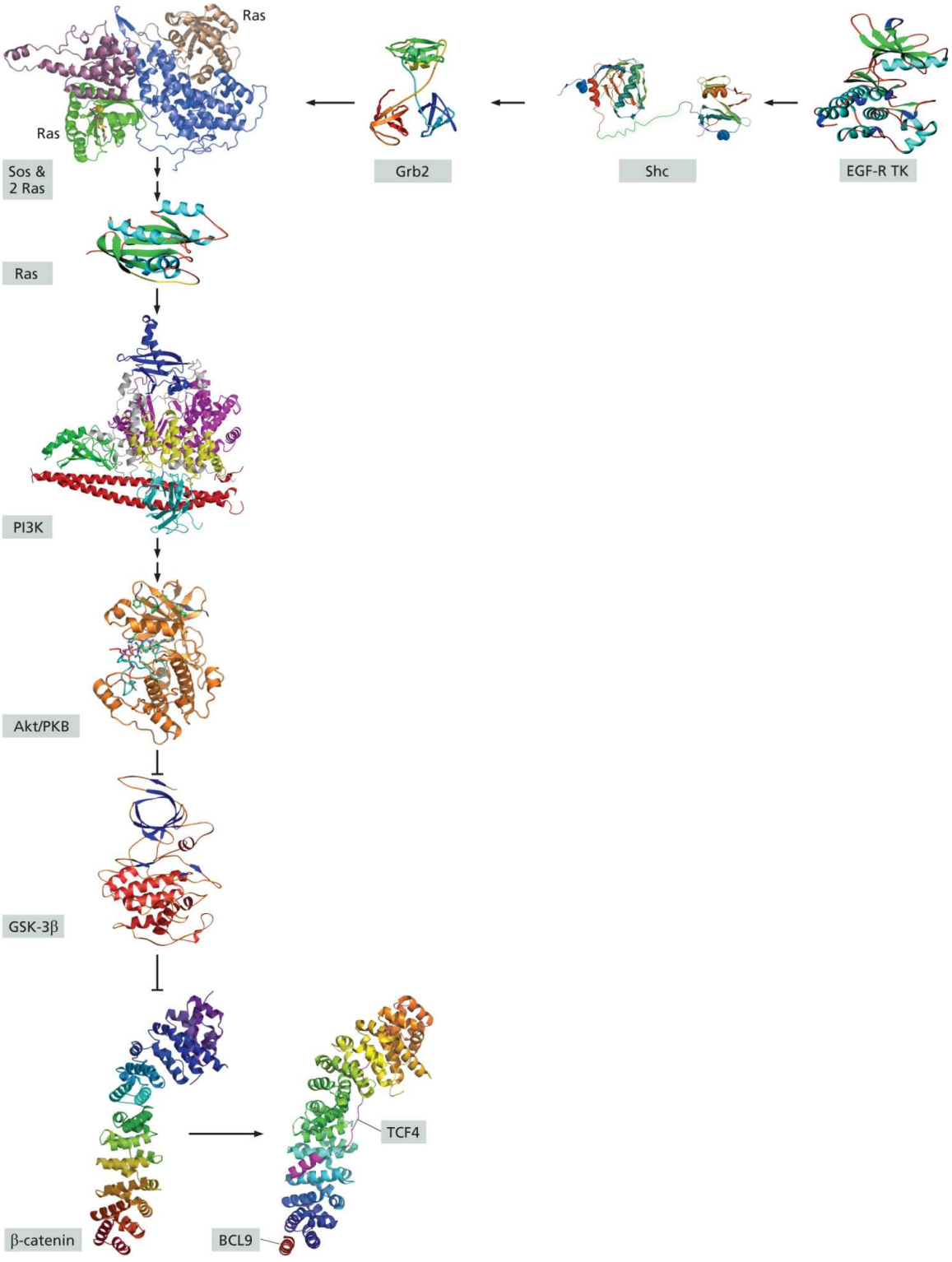
small percentage of multiple myeloma tumors, for instance, KIT is only activated in a small percentage of sarcomas, and R E T and P D G F R A are each activated only in a very small percentage of lung tumors. Other genes are activated often, in multiple cancer types. K RAS, notably, is activated at least some of the time in nine different tumor types. Rarely, however, is a particular gene activated in a majority of cases for any given tumor type. Most percentages in the histogram are in the 0 to 20 range.

Figure 6.26 Frequencies of oncogene activation in various human tumors This three-dimensional histogram illustrates the great variability with which various commonly studied human oncogenes are found in mutant, activated forms in the genomes of human tumors. The percentage (*z axis*) of tumors of a given type (*arrayed along y axis*) that harbor mutant forms of a given oncogene (*arrayed along x axis*) reveals great differences in the involvement of each of these oncogenes in human tumor pathogenesis; the underlying mechanisms that explain these strong variations between tumor types are largely obscure. (From R.S. Thomas et al., *Nat. Genet.* 39:347–351, 2007. With permission from Nature.)

Why do approximately 50% of colon carcinomas carry a mutant K-*ras* gene, and how do the remaining 50% of these tumors acquire a comparable mitogenic signal? Some of these other tumors have mutant B-Raf or PI3K proteins. Still, this leaves many cancers with no apparent alterations affecting either the Ras → Raf → MAPK signaling cascade or the parallel PI3K → Akt/PKB pathway (a question that we revisit in Chapter 11). Do these tumors harbor still-undiscovered genetic lesions that activate one or the other pathway? Or, alternatively, are the cells in these tumors able to proliferate uncontrollably because of mechanisms that have nothing to do with the operations of these particular pathways?

Finally, there remains a major problem in clinical oncology that remains far from being solved: Why do certain combinations of mutant alleles and protein expression patterns in cancer cells portend good or bad prognoses for patients? Many of the responses to this question will surely derive from our detailed precise understanding of the elusive signal-processing circuitry operating in the cytoplasm. At present, we are largely limited to noting correlations between these patterns and clinical outcomes. But correlations hardly reveal the chains of causality connecting the genomes of cancer cells with the behavior of the tumors that these cells create. Many years will likely pass before these and related mysteries are solved definitively.

Our ability to address some of these problems is being enhanced by rapid progress in the field of structural biology: use of artificial intelligence has made it routine to determine the detailed structures of protein molecules, including the signal-transducing proteins that play key roles in cancer pathogenesis. Since structure determines function, the elucidation of these structures will greatly enrich our understanding of how signal-transducing pathways actually operate inside cancer cells. In the future, the detailed structural information present in images such as **Figure 6.27** will provide critical clues for resolving major puzzles in cancer biology.



A signaling pathway, shown as a sequence of ribbon diagrams. E G F-R T K activates S h c, which activates G r b 2, which activates S O S and two R a s, which dissociate. An R a s activates P I 3 K, which activates A k t / P K B,

which inhibits G S K-3 beta, which inhibits beta catenin, which activates a complex containing a T C F 4 segment in the middle and a small B C L 9 segment at one end.

Figure 6.27 Structure of a signaling pathway The signaling pathway leading from EGF to the activation of signaling by β-catenin can now be depicted in terms of the detailed structures of the participating proteins, almost all of which have been determined by X-ray crystallography. The details of these structures will help our understanding of how signals flow through pathways like this one. Note that the structure of the central portion of Shc has not been determined and that the PI3K structure shown is of PI3Kγ, which is closely related to, but distinct from, the PI3Ks that are activated by receptor tyrosine kinases. (EGF-R TK, courtesy of R. Latek, from J. Stamos et al., *J. Biol. Chem*. 277:46265–46272, 2002. Shc, courtesy of K.S. Ravichandran. Grb2, from S. Maignan et al., *Science* 268:291–293, 1995. With permission from AAAS. Sos, adapted from S.M. Margarit et al., *Cell* 112:685–695, 2003. Ras, adapted from T. Schweins et al., *J. Mol. Biol*. 266:847–856, 1997. PI3K, from C.-H. Huang et al., *Science* 318:1744–1748, 2007. With permission from AAAS. Akt/PKB, from J. Yang et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 9:940–944, 2002. With permission from Nature. GSK-3β, adapted from J.A. Bertrand et al., *J. Mol. Biol*. 333:393–407, 2003. β-catenin, courtesy of H.J. Choi and W.I. Weis; BCL9+TCF4, courtesy of Wenqing Xu.)

This chapter has focused largely on the cytoplasmic signaling molecules that convey signals from cell surface receptors to the nucleus. This focus overlooks a critical path of oncogenic signaling that plays a key role in the development of common human cancers, specifically carcinomas of the breast, ovary, and prostate: steroid hormones leapfrog over this cytoplasmic circuitry by passing directly from the cell surface to the nucleus, where they bind nuclear receptors, notably the estrogen and androgen receptors (see Section 5.8 and **Sidebar 6.5**). Their central importance in the progression in the pathogenesis of certain common human carcinomas of the breast, prostate, and uterus is not reflected appropriately in the time that we have spent on them in this text.

Sidebar 6.5 The mysteries of breast and prostate cancer mitogenesis

Breast and prostate cancers are commonly occurring diseases in the West that have been the subjects of extensive research, yet we still have only a vague understanding at the molecular level of how the growth of the majority of these

tumors is controlled. A majority of breast cancers express the estrogen receptor (ER), while almost all prostate cancers express the androgen receptor (AR); both of these nuclear receptors act through mechanisms that are very different from those of the cell surface receptors we have studied (see Section 5.8). Like other "nuclear receptors," the ER binds its ligand, estrogen (more precisely, estradiol), and then proceeds to bind to specific DNA sequences in the promoters of certain target genes; this binding, followed by association with transcriptional co-regulators, leads to the transcription of these genes.

Estrogen acts as a critically important mitogen for ER-positive breast cancer cells. This is indicated by the fact that a number of "anti-estrogens" such as tamoxifen, which bind to the ER and block some of its transcription-activating powers, prevent the growth of ER-positive cells and tumors and can actually cause tumor regression. However, none of this seems to explain precisely how, at the biochemical level, estrogen and the ER drive the proliferation of ER-positive breast cancer cells. Some reports indicate that within minutes after estrogen is added to these cells, the Ras → MAPK signaling cascade is activated. This rapid response cannot be explained by the fact that ER acts as a nuclear transcription factor, since changes in nuclear gene transcription are not felt in the cytoplasm (in the form of proteins synthesized on newly formed mRNA templates) for at least half an hour.

One critical clue may come from the observation that some of the ligand-activated ER molecules are found to be tethered to cytoplasmic membranes rather than being localized to their usual sites of action in the nucleus; this association depends on the covalent modification of the ER via palmitoylation, much like the lipid tails attached to the C′-termini of Ras proteins. Following ligand binding, some of this cytoplasmic ER has been reported to be bound to Shc, the important SH2- and SH3-containing bridging protein that participates in Sos activation and Ras signaling (see Figure 6.7B); alternatively, some research reports physical association between the ER and either Src or RTKs in the cytoplasm depending on the epithelial versus mesenchymal phenotype of mammary cells. Moreover, in some cell types, nuclear ER via transcriptional regulation is key to estrogen-induced mitogenesis, whereas in others, the cytoplasmic palmitoylated form of ER appears to play a dominant role. This fragmentary description of a major mitogenic pathway is most unexpected, in light of the fact that breast cancer has, by now, been studied far more intensively than any other type of human malignancy.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

homeostasis
: (adj. **homeostatic**) The product of physiological control mechanisms that operate to maintain an optimal, often unchanging level of a certain signaling process, metabolic product, physiological function, or cell type.

interactome
: (1) The collection of all protein–protein interactions that operate within a cell. (2) The subset of these that can be determined experimentally.

proteoform
: A specific biochemical form of a protein that is defined by its primary amino acid residues together with a specific set of post-translational modifications. A single initially synthesized protein may be associated with multiple alternative proteoforms, each defined by its own combination of post-translational modifications.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Discovery of Src's three homology domains (SH1, 2, and 3) led to the following model of tyrosine kinase receptor (RTK) signaling cascades: ligand-induced transphosphorylation results in an RTK displaying on its cytoplasmic tail an array of phosphotyrosines, each of which attracts and binds a specific SH2-containing cytoplasmic protein. Such relocalization permits the SH2-containing proteins to interact with plasma membrane–associated proteins that can activate their own downstream targets or with other signal-transducing molecules that pass on activating signals to yet other targets.
- One such signal-transducing protein tethered to the plasma membrane is Ras. Linker proteins form a physical bridge between ligand-activated RTKs and Sos, the latter acting as a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF) that induces Ras to replace its bound GDP with GTP, thereby activating Ras signaling.
- Three major downstream signaling cascades emanate from activated Ras via binding of its effector loop with its main downstream signaling partners—Raf kinase, phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), and Ral-GEF. Yet other downstream effectors that bind to activated Ras appear to play secondary roles in Ras signaling.
- Raf phosphorylates residues on MEK, activating the latter. MEK then phosphorylates and activates the extracellular signal–regulated kinases 1 and 2 (ERK 1 and 2), which are classified as MAPKs (mitogen-activated protein kinases). The Raf signaling cascade, often called a MAPK pathway, is the foremost mitogenic pathway in mammalian cells, both normal and neoplastic.
- The phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway depends on kinases phosphorylating a membrane-embedded phosphatidylinositol, converting it to PIP3. Once formed, the latter attracts molecules (such as Akt) that carry a pleckstrin homology (PH) domain. The resulting activation of Akt activates a series of downstream proteins. PIP3 levels are normally kept low in cells by phosphatases, notably PTEN.
- In the third Ras-regulated pathway, Ras binds Ral-GEFs, causing localization of Ral-GEF near the inner surface of the plasma

membrane. Ral-GEF then induces nearby Ral to exchange its GDP for GTP, enabling Ral to activate downstream targets. This has multiple effects on the cell, including changes in the cytoskeleton and cellular motility.

- Cytokine receptors use noncovalently bonded TKs of the JAK class to phosphorylate STATs. The STATs form dimers that migrate to the nucleus, where they serve as transcription factors.
- Integrins bind components of the ECM, leading to the formation of focal adhesions and activation of focal adhesion kinase (FAK), which is associated with the integrin cytoplasmic tail. Transphosphorylation of FAK and its recruitment of SH2-containing molecules activates many of the same signaling pathways as RTKs.
- The pathway controlled by Wnt factors enables cells to remain in a relatively undifferentiated state—an important attribute of certain cancer cells. Wnt, acting via Frizzled receptors, prevents glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β) from tagging its substrates, including β-catenin, for destruction. The spared β-catenin moves into the nucleus, where it activates transcription of key mitogenic genes and contributes to stemness.
- Ligand-bound G-protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) activate cytoplasmic heterotrimeric G proteins whose α subunit responds by exchanging its GDP for GTP. The Gα subunit then dissociates from its partners (Gβ + Gγ) and affects a number of cytoplasmic enzymes, while the Gβ + Gγ dimer activates its own effectors, including PI3Kγ, Src, and Rho-GEFs.
- Among the pathways relying on dual-address proteins is the nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB) signaling system. It depends on liberation of cytoplasmic NF-κB homo- and heterodimers from sequestration by IκBs. Following migration of NF-κB subunits into the nucleus, these proteins function as transcription factors that activate expression of at least 150 genes, including cell proliferation and anti-apoptotic genes.
- The cleavage of Notch at two sites following ligand binding liberates a cytoplasmic fragment that migrates to the nucleus and functions as part of a transcription factor complex. Notch aberrations are seen in the majority of cervical carcinomas.
- When Hedgehog binds a Patched receptor, Smoothened is released from inhibition and emits signals that protect cytoplasmic Gli protein

from cleavage. The resulting intact Gli migrates to the nucleus, where it activates transcription, whereas cleaved Gli acts as a transcriptional repressor.

- The binding of TGF-β to its receptors causes phosphorylation of cytoplasmic Smad proteins and their dispatch to the nucleus, where they collaborate with other transcription factors to activate a large contingent of genes. This pathway plays a major role in the pathogenesis of many carcinomas, both in the early stages when TGF-β fails to arrest cell proliferation and later, when it contributes to tumor cell invasiveness.
- YAP/TAZ signaling represents a major intracellular hub for integrating a diverse array of signals, many of them affected by the physical surroundings of a cell. These transcription factors are normally phosphorylated and sequestered in the cytoplasm and when dephosphorylated migrate to the nucleus, where they drive, among other things, cell proliferation.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What molecular mechanisms have evolved to ensure that the signals coursing down a signaling cascade reach the proper endpoint targets rather than being broadcast nonspecifically to “unintended” targets in the cytoplasm?
2. How many distinct molecular mechanisms can you cite that lead to the conversion of a proto-oncogene into an active oncogene?
3. Why are point mutations in *ras* oncogenes confined so narrowly to a small number of nucleotides, while point mutations in genes encoding other cancer-related proteins are generally distributed far more broadly throughout the reading frames?
4. What factors determine the lifetime of the activated state of a Ras oncoprotein?
5. Treatment of cells with proteases that cleave the ectodomain of E-cadherin often result in rapid changes in gene expression. How might you rationalize this response, given what we know about this cell surface protein?
6. What mechanisms have we encountered that ensure that a signal initiated by a growth factor receptor can be greatly amplified as the signal is transduced down a signaling cascade in the cytoplasm? Conversely, what signaling cascade(s) strongly limit the possible amplification of a signal initiated at the cell surface?
7. What quantitative parameters describing individual signal-transducing proteins will need to be determined before the behavior of the signaling cascade formed by these proteins can be predicted through mathematical modeling?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Aebersold R, Agar JN, Amster IJ et al. (2018) How many human proteoforms are there? *Nature Chem. Biol.* 14, 206–214.

Alvarez-Garcia V, Tawil Y, Wise HM & Leslie NR (2019) Mechanisms of PTEN loss in cancer: it's all about diversity. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 59, 66–79.

Angers S & Moon RT (2009) Proximal events in Wnt signal transduction. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 10, 468–477.

Aster JC, Pear WS & Blacklow SC (2017) The varied roles of Notch in cancer. *Annu. Rev. Pathol.* 12, 245–275.

Avraham R & Yarden Y (2011) Feedback regulation of EGFR signalling: decision making by early and delayed loops. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 12, 104–117.

Bangs F & Anderson KV (2017) Primary cilia and mammalian Hedgehog signaling. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 9, a028175; doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a028175.

Bos JL, Rehmann H & Wittinghofer A (2007) GEFs and GAPs: critical elements in the control of small G proteins. *Cell* 129, 865–877.

Cadigan KM & Waterman ML (2012) TCF/LEFs and Wnt signaling in the nucleus. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 4, a007906.

Castellano E & Downward J (2011) RAS interaction with PI3K: more than just another effector pathway. *Genes Cancer* 2, 261–274.

Castellano E & Santos E (2011) Functional specificity of Ras isoforms: so similar but so different. *Genes Cancer* 2, 216–231.

Chalhoub N & Baker SJ (2009) PTEN and the PI3-kinase pathway in cancer. *Annu. Rev. Pathol.* 4, 127–150.

Clevers H, Loh KM & Nusse R (2014) Stem cell signaling. An integral program for tissue renewal and regeneration: Wnt signaling and stem cell control. *Science* 346, 1248012.

Clevers H & Nusse R (2012) Wnt/β-catenin signaling and disease. *Cell* 149, 1192–1205.

Colicelli J (2004) Human Ras superfamily and related GTPases. *Sci. STKE* 250, re 13; doi: 10.1126/stke.2502004re13.

Cooper J & Giancotti FG (2019) Integrin signaling in cancer: mechanotransduction, stemness, epithelial plasticity, and therapeutic resistance. *Cancer Cell* 35, 347–367.

Daulat AM & Borg JP (2017) Wnt/planar cell polarity signaling: new opportunities for cancer treatment. *Trends Cancer* 3, 113–125.

DiDonato JA, Mercurio F & Karin M (2012) NF-κB and the link between inflammation and cancer. *Immunol. Rev.* 246, 379–400.

Dobrokhotov O, Samsonov M, Sokabe M & Hirata H (2018) Mechanoregulation and pathology of YAP/TAZ via Hippo and non-Hippo mechanisms. *Clin. Transl. Med.* 7, 23–36.

Endicott JA, Noble MEM & Johnson LN (2012) The structural basis for control of eukaryotic protein kinases. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 81, 587–613.

Fey D, Matallanas D, Rauch J et al. (2016) The complexities and versatility of the RAS-to-ERK signalling system in normal and cancer cells. *Semin. Cell Dev. Biol.* 58, 96–107.

Fleuren EDG, Zhang L, Wu J & Daly RJ (2016) The kinome ‘at large’ in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 16, 83–98.

Fortini ME (2009) Notch signaling: the core pathway and its posttranslational regulation. *Dev. Cell* 26, 633–647.

Frodyma D, Neilsen B, Costanzo-Garvey D et al. (2017) Coordinating ERK signaling via the molecular scaffold kinase suppressor of Ras. *F1000Res.* 6,

11895; doi: 10.12688/f1000research.11895.

Gentry LR, Martin TD, Reiner DJ & Der CJ (2014) Ral small GTPase signaling and oncogenesis: more than just 15 minutes of fame. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1843, 2976–2988.

Good MC, Zalatan JG & Lim WA (2011) Scaffold proteins: hubs for controlling the flow of cellular information. *Science* 332, 680–686.

Green J, Nusse R & van Amerongen R (2014) The role of Ryk and Ror receptor tyrosine kinases in Wnt signal transduction. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 6, a009175.

Guo X & Wang XF (2009) Signaling cross-talk between TGF-β/BMP and other pathways. *Cell Res.* 19, 71–88.

Hatakeyama M (2017) Structure and function of *Helicobacter pylori* CagA, the first identified bacterial protein involved in human cancer. *Proc. Jpn. Acad. Ser.* B 93, 196–219.

Hayden MS & Ghosh S (2012) NF-κB, the first quarter-century: remarkable progress and outstanding questions. *Genes Dev.* 26, 203–234.

Hayden MS & Ghosh S (2014) Regulation of NF-κB by TNF cytokines. *Semin. Immunol.* 26, 253–266.

Hennig A, Markwart R, Esparza-Franco M et al. (2015) Ras activation revisited: role of GEF and GAP systems. *Biol. Chem.* 396, 831–848.

Hill CS (2016) Transcriptional control by the SMADs. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 8, a22079.

Hori K, Sen A & Artavanis-Tsakonas S (2013) Notch signaling at a glance. *J. Cell Sci.* 126, 2135–2140.

Hun HD, Kim DH, Jeong H-S & Park HW (2019) Regulation of TEAD transcription factors in cancer biology. *Cells* 8, 600–621.

Iqbal J, Sun L & Zaidi M (2010) Complexity in signal transduction. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 1192, 238–244.

Kar S, Deb M, Sengupta D et al. (2012) Intricacies of hedgehog signaling pathways: a perspective in tumorigenesis. *Exp. Cell Res.* 318, 1959–1972.

Kashatus DF (2013) Ral GTPases in tumorigenesis: emerging from the shadows. *Exp. Cell Res.* 319, 2337–2342.

Katoh M (2017) Canonical and non-canonical WNT signaling in cancer stem cells and their niches: cellular heterogeneity, omics reprogramming, targeted therapy and tumor plasticity. *Int. J. Oncol.* 51, 1357–1369.

Lau AW, Fukushima H & Wei W (2012) The Fbw7 and beta-TRCP E3 ubiquitin ligases and their roles in tumorigenesis. *Front. Biosci.* 17, 2197–2212.

Lavoie H & Therrien M (2015) Regulation of RAF protein kinases in ERK signalling. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 16, 281–298.

Lawson CD & Ridley AJ (2018) Rho GTPase signaling complexes in cell migration and invasion. *J. Cell Biol.* 217, 447–457.

Lazzara MJ & Lauffenburger DA (2009) Quantitative modeling perspectives on the ErbB system of cell regulatory processes. *Exp. Cell Res.* 315, 717–725.

Lee M & Yaffe M (2016) Protein regulation in signal transduction. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 7, a005918.

Lie EC, Dibble CC & Toker A (2017) PI3K signaling in cancer: beyond AKT. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 45, 62–71.

Liu T, Zhang L, Joo D & Sun S-C (2017) NF-κB signaling in inflammation. *Signal Transduct. Target. Ther.* 2, 17023.

Lloyd AC (2013) The regulation of cell size. *Cell* 154, 1194–1205.

Misra JR & Irvine KD (2018) The Hippo signaling network and its biological functions. *Annu. Rev. Genet.* 52, 65–87.

Mattila PK & Lappalainen P (2008) Filopodia: molecular architecture and cellular functions. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 9, 446–454.

Neben CL, Lo M, Jura N & Klein OD (2017) Feedback regulation of RTK signaling in development. *Dev. Biol.* 447, 71–89.

Neilsen BK, Frodyma DE, Roberts RE & Fisher KW (2017) KSR as a therapeutic target for Ras-dependent cancers. *Expert Opin. Ther. Targets* 21, 499–509.

Nieto Gutierrez A & McDonald PH (2018) GPCRs: emerging anti-cancer drug targets. *Cell Signal.* 41, 65–74.

Nusse R & Clevers H (2017) Wnt/β-catenin signaling, disease and emerging therapeutic modalities. *Cell* 169, 985–999.

O'Hayre M, Degese MS & Gutkind JS (2014) Novel insights into G protein and G protein-couple receptor signaling in cancer. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 27, 126–135.

O'Hayre M, Vázquez-Prado J, Kufareva I et al. (2013) The emerging mutational landscape of G proteins and G-protein-coupled receptors in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 13, 412–424.

Ranganathan P, Weaver KL & Capobianco AJ (2011) Notch signalling in solid tumors: a little bit of everything but not all the time. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 338–351.

Roberts PJ & Der CJ (2007) Targeting the Raf-MEK-ERK mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade for the treatment of cancers. *Oncogene* 26, 3291–3310.

Roy JR, Halford MM & Stacker SA (2018) The biochemistry, signaling and disease relevance of RYK and other WNT-binding receptor tyrosine kinases. *Growth Factors* 36, 15–40.

Saxton RA & Sabatini DM (2017) mTOR signaling in growth, metabolism and disease. *Cell* 168, 960–976.

Sever R & Brugge JS (2014) Signaling in cancer. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 5: A006098.

Shi Y & Massagué J (2003) Mechanisms of TGF-β signaling from cell membrane to the nucleus. *Cell* 113, 685–700.

Shirakawa R & Horiuchi H (2015) Ral GTPases: crucial mediators of exocytosis and tumourigenesis. *J. Biochem.* 157, 285–299.

Shostak K & Chariot A (2015) EGFR and NF-κB: partners in cancer. *Trends Mol. Med.* 21, 385–393.

Simanshu DK, Nissley DV & McCormick F (2017) Ras proteins and their regulators in human disease. *Cell* 170, 17–33.

Stark GR, Cheon H & Wang Y (2018) Responses to cytokines and interferons that depend upon JAKs and STATs. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 10, a028555.

Stephen AG, Esposito D, Bagni RK & McCormick F (2014) Dragging Ras back in the ring. *Cancer Cell* 25, 272–281.

Stricker S, Rauschenberger V & Schambony A (2017) ROR-family receptor tyrosine kinases. *Curr. Top. Dev. Biol.* 123, 105–142.

Thorpe LM, Yuzugullu H & Zhao JJ (2015) PI3K in cancer: divergent roles of isoforms, modes of activation and therapeutic targeting. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 15, 7–24.

Vidal M (2016) How much of the human protein interactome remains to be mapped? *Sci. Signal.* 9, eg7.

Volinsky N & Kholodenko BN (2013) Complexity of receptor tyrosine kinase signal processing. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* A009043.

Wagner MJ, Stacey MM, Liu BA & Pawson T (2013) Molecular mechanisms of SH2- and PTB-domain-containing proteins in receptor tyrosine kinase signaling. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* A008987.

Wennerberg K, Rossman KL & Der CJ (2005) The Ras superfamily at a glance. *J. Cell Sci.* 118, 843–846.

Worby CA & Dixon JE (2014) PTEN. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 83, 641–649.

Xia Y, Shen S & Verma IM (2014) NF-κB, an active player in human cancers. *Cancer Immunol. Res.* 2, 823–830.

Yan K, Kuti M & Zhou MM (2002) PTB or not PTB—that is the question. *FEBS Lett.* 513, 67–70.

Yu F-X, Zhao B & Guan K-L (2015) Hippo pathway in organ size control, tissue homeostasis, and cancer. *Cell* 163, 811–828.

Yu H, Lee H, Herrmann A et al. (2014) Revisiting STAT3 signalling in cancer: new and unexpected biological functions. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 14, 736–746.

Zanconato F, Cordenonsi M & Piccolo S (2016) YAP/TAZ at the roots of cancer. *Cancer Cell* 29, 783–803.

Zhang Q, Lenardo MJ & Baltimore D (2017) 30 years of NF-κB: a blossoming of relevance to human pathobiology. *Cell* 168, 37–57.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 6.1 Effects of serum stimulation on the cytoskeleton

In addition to inducing the expression of a number of mRNAs encoding proliferation-related proteins, the addition of serum to serum-starved cells evokes rapid changes in the cytoskeleton of a cell that are ostensibly preparatory to its eventual growth and division

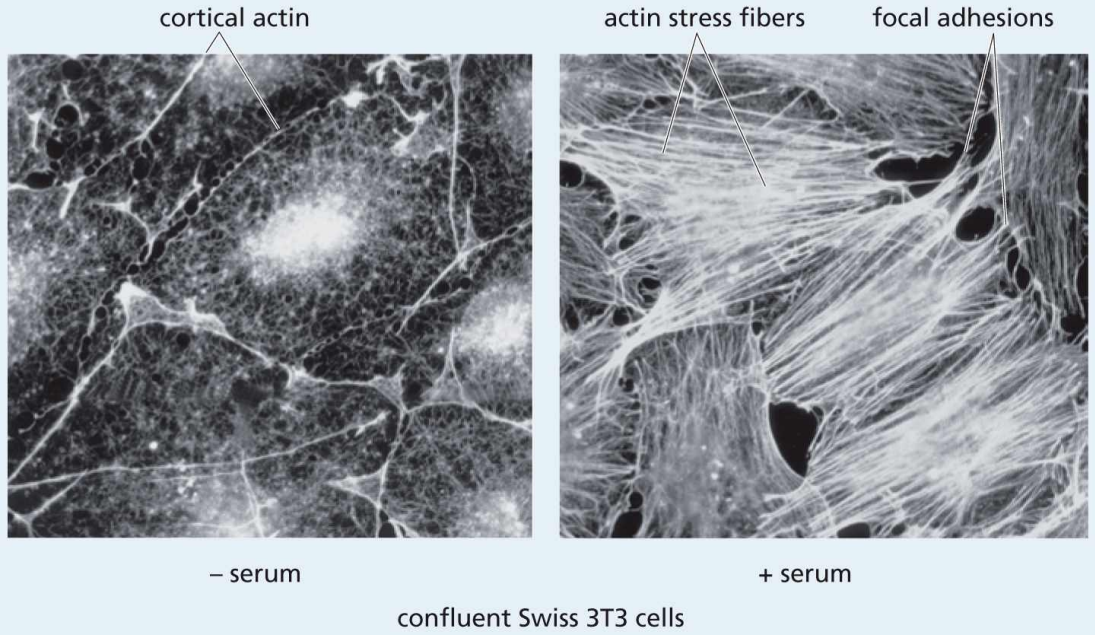


Figure S6.1 Serum-induced alterations of cell shape Like many other cell types, serum-starved mouse Swiss 3T3 cells undergo profound changes in their actin cytoskeleton following serum stimulation. Under serum-starved conditions, most of the polymerized actin is found in a layer beneath the plasma membrane termed cortical actin, whereas within ten minutes of serum addition, focal adhesions are formed by integrins (see Figure 5.22) that are linked to actin *stress fibers* that stretch across the cell. In addition, the serum stimulation, much of it mediated by platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), induces greatly increased cell motility (*not shown*). (Courtesy of C. Nobes.)

Supplementary Sidebar 6.2 The complexities of understanding RTK signaling

One goal of research into the biochemistry of signal transduction is to generate mathematical models that explain why and how cells respond to signals from specific ligand-activated growth factor receptors (RTKs), such as the EGF and PDGF receptors. Such models must, by necessity, take into account the behavior of individual signal-transducing proteins that lie downstream of these receptors and are responsible for processing receptor-initiated signals and mediating eventual cell-biological responses. This goal is far from being realized because of the large number of biochemical parameters that affect responses to ligand-activated receptors. Included among these are

1. The diverse array of receptor tyrosine kinases (58 in all) that are displayed in various combinations on the surfaces of various cell types
2. The concentrations of each of these receptors on the surface of a given cell type
3. The functional interactions of these diverse RTKs in fostering signaling by one another and in competing for limiting amounts of downstream signal-transducing proteins
4. The actual physiologic concentrations of various growth factor ligands in the extracellular spaces
5. The influences on receptor function of other cell-surface proteins (for example, integrins) that potentiate or limit receptor activation
6. The intensity of tyrosine phosphorylation on various phosphotyrosine residues following ligand binding by receptors
7. The expression in differentiated cell types of various combinations of the 103 signal-transducing cytoplasmic partner proteins possessing one or more SH2 domains and 42 with one or more PTB-containing domains, these proteins binding to the phosphotyrosines (pYs) created in the cytoplasmic tails of ligand-activated receptors
8. The functional interactions between these partner proteins in enhancing or blocking each other’s binding to ligand-activated receptors
9. The binding affinities of the various SH2- and PTB-containing partner proteins to the various receptor-associated phosphotyrosines (see Figure S6.2)
10. The lifetimes of these phosphotyrosines (that is, the period between the initial formation of each pY and its destruction by a phosphotyrosine phosphatase)
11. Various other negative-feedback controls on individual receptors, such as ligand-induced endocytosis, that are designed to delimit their signaling lifetimes (for example, see Figure 6.25B)
12. Parameters governing the signal-transducing efficiencies of downstream signal-transducing partner proteins that govern their cross-communicating interactions with one another

Together, these parameters interact in myriad ways to create a complexity that is vastly beyond our current abilities to analyze and to exploit in order to generate truly predictive models of cell-biological responses to growth factor stimulation.

Supplementary Sidebar 6.3 Protein:protein interaction motifs

The SH2 and SH3 domains described in Figures 6.4 and 6.5 represent only a small subset of the domains that have evolved during prokaryotic and eukaryotic cell evolution and are employed in order to enable interactions between functionally interacting proteins to occur specifically and with high efficiency; in addition, the "ligands" of some of these domains—the latter acting as intracellular "receptors"—also include a number of low–molecular-weight molecules such as phospholipids. As seen in Figure S6.2, a large number of these have been cataloged over the past few decades, and there are plausibly yet other such domains that will be added to this roster.

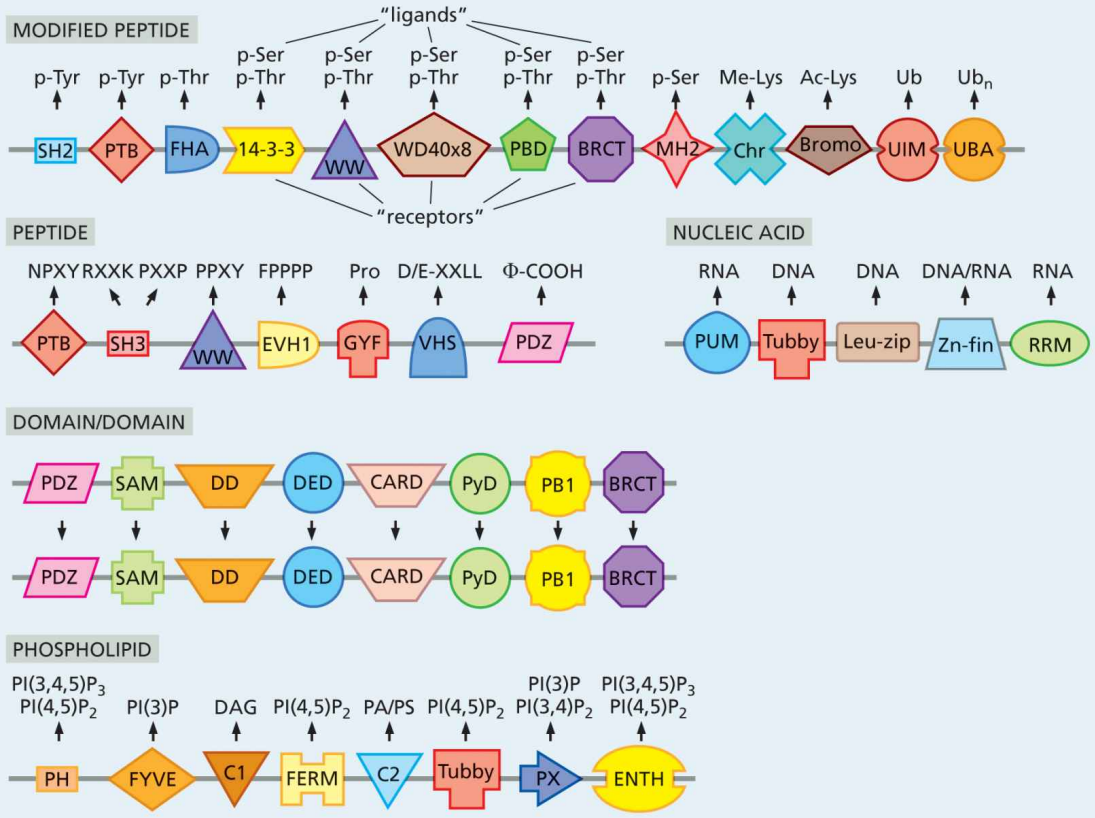


Figure S6.2 Diverse protein domains enable specific intermolecular interactions The spectrum of molecular "ligands" that can be bound by complementary "receptor" domains in order to form intermolecular complexes is far larger than indicated in Figure 6.5C. As shown, a variety of modified amino acid residues, peptide sequences, nucleic acids, and phospholipids can serve as ligands of the indicated domains. In addition, certain domains ("domain/domain") favor the homodimerization of two protein molecules. (From T. Pawson and P. Nash, *Science* 300:445–452, 2003. With permission from AAAS.)

Supplementary Sidebar 6.4 Subtleties of Ras signaling

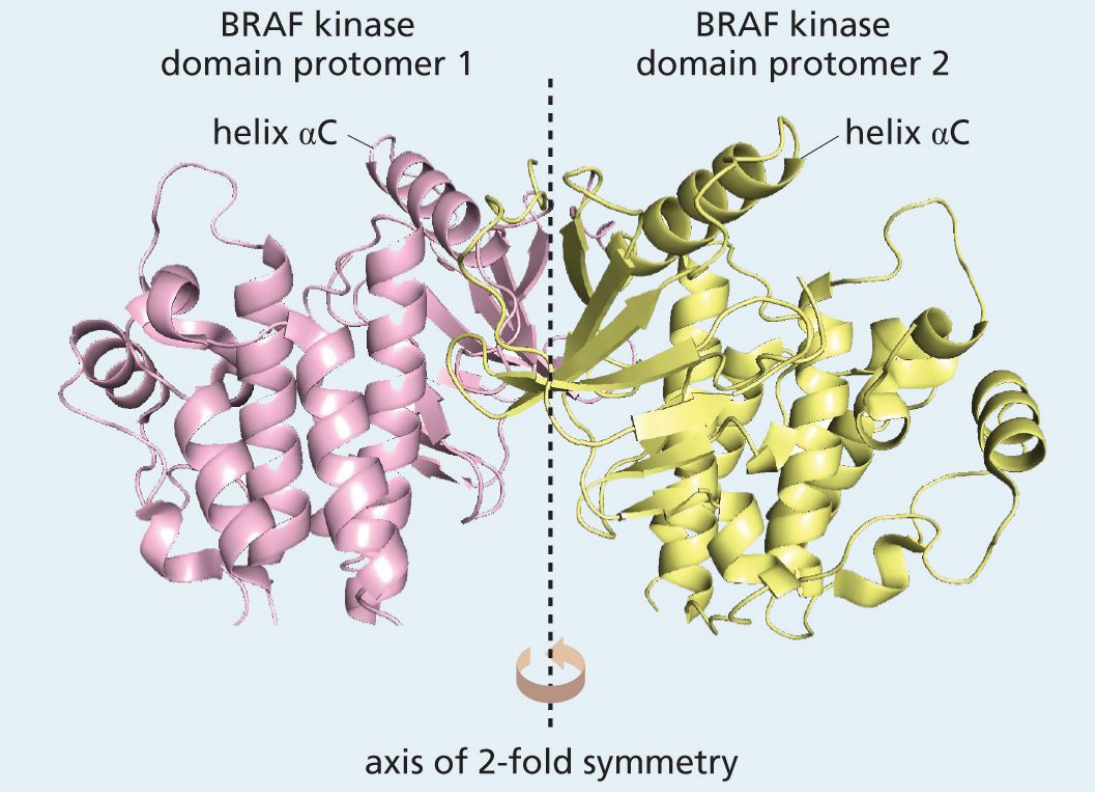
At one level, the three Ras oncoproteins (H-, N-, and K-) would seem to function identically to one another. They all carry mutations that compromise GTPase activity, they elicit similar if not identical cell-biological responses when expressed in cells, and it is highly unusual for two of these to be present concomitantly in a single spontaneously arising human tumor—the last observation testifying to their functional redundancy. Moreover, replacement of the chromosomal K-*ras* protein-coding sequence by that of H-*ras* yields cells and tissues that respond identically to subsequent carcinogen exposure. Still, there are hints that they do indeed exhibit subtle differences in function. For example, the K-Ras oncoprotein, but not its H-ras counterpart, suppresses non-canonical Wnt signaling, doing so by binding a key intermediate in calcium signaling termed calmodulin, which functions via a succession of signals to enhance K-Ras–mediated cell transformation. Moreover, K-Ras seems more capable of generating tumor-initiating cancer stem cells (discussed in Chapters 11 and 16).

In addition, the C-terminal tails that tether the various Ras proteins to intracellular membranes hint at the existence of multiple alternative membrane associations of Ras proteins, which in turn may influence the interactions of Ras proteins with their downstream effectors, which themselves are found in distinct intracytoplasmic sites. For example, in its GDP-bound state, the H-Ras protein preferentially associates with cholesterol-rich patches of the plasma membrane, while the binding of GTP causes it to associate alternatively with cholesterol-poor patches. The N-Ras protein, with its distinct set of C-terminal lipid anchoring tails, behaves in an opposite way, migrating from cholesterol-poor to cholesterol-rich plasma membrane patches following GTP binding. The association of 6 to 8 individual Ras molecules within a patch of membrane results in a “nanocluster” of these molecules, which is especially effective in activating the downstream effectors of GTP-bound Ras, in contrast to individual unclustered Ras proteins, which fail to do so effectively. Moreover, several of the Ras isoforms have been found to release downstream signals far more effectively when they form homodimers, as discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 6.5**. Behavior like this complicates our ability to elucidate the interactions of Ras with its downstream effectors, since such subtle differences in localization are difficult to recapitulate outside of living cells.

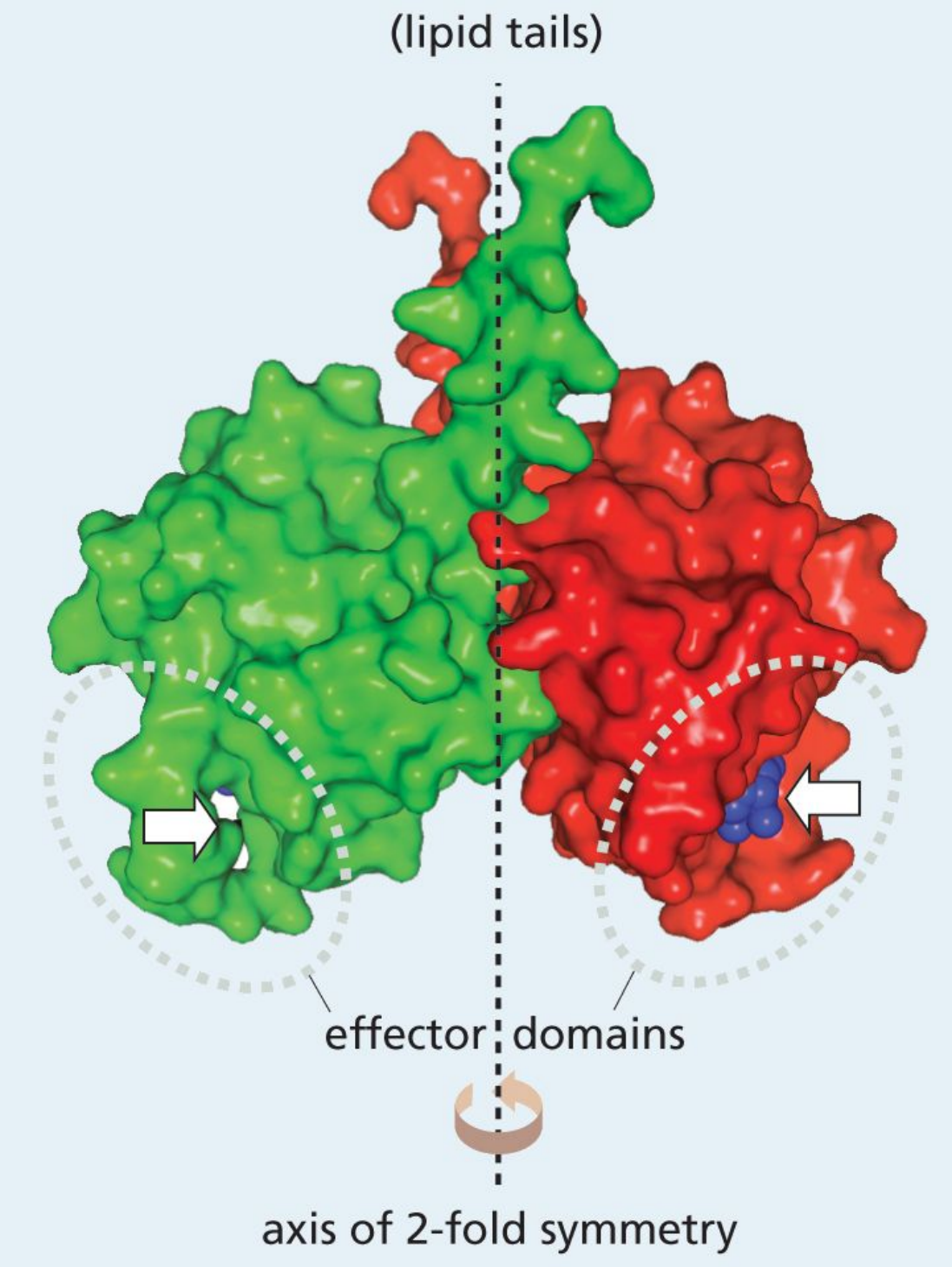
Supplementary Sidebar 6.5 Dimerization of protein kinases and Ras

Extensive evidence has been accumulated that a number of kinases undergo dimerization in association with their signaling. This process has been best

characterized in the context of signaling by the Raf and B-Raf proteins and is also strongly suggested in the context of the kinase domains of a number of growth factor receptors. Indeed, it is plausible that the shared, common stereochemistry of the tyrosine and serine/threonine kinases—those involved in oligopeptide phosphorylation—has included a dimerization function, which may facilitate the activation of their associated catalytic clefts (**Figure S6.3A**). Such kinase:kinase dimerization may explain the mysterious phenomenon that pseudokinase domains of certain growth factor receptors have been highly conserved evolutionarily (suggesting critically important function), in spite of the fact that these domains lack detectable enzymatic activity and carry amino acid replacements in the presumed catalytic cleft that are incompatible with the transfer of phosphate groups from ATP to protein substrates. Accordingly, these pseudokinase domains may serve to heterodimerize with and thereby help activate the catalytic functions of related catalytically competent kinase domains, doing so by inducing stereochemical shifts in these partners; such effects are sometimes termed allosteric, to indicate a shift in the stereochemistry of a protein that is induced in one region of the protein but affects another region (such as a catalytic domain).



(A)



(B)

Figure S6.3 Dimerization of Ras and Raf Both Ras and Raf have been found to undergo dimerization under certain conditions, and there is strong evidence that such dimerization is critical to the ability of the normal Raf kinase protein to emit

signals. (A) The crystal structure of B-Raf, the paralog of Raf, shows a head-to-head dimerization function. In the region of association between the two kinases, there are presumably interactions that enable each kinase subunit to activate via induced allosteric shifts the catalytic activity of its partner subunit. (B) Similar head-to-head dimerization has been documented for Ras proteins, with the C-terminal tails of the subunits within the K-Ras4B dimer shown here (*above*) both presumably being anchored within an adjacent lipid bilayer membrane via lipid tails (*not shown*) whereas the GTPase and the domains important for its interaction with its three major effectors are indicated (*below*; see also Figure 6.8A). Some work indicates that Ras dimerization is dependent on GTP loading. The two *white arrows* indicate the sites of guanine nucleotide (*blue*) binding. (A, courtesy of M. Therrien; see also T. Rajakulendran et al., *Nature* 461:542–545, 2009. B, Courtesy of K.D. Westover; see also S. Muratcioglu et al., *Structure* 23:1325–1335, 2015.)

As an example, both the EGF-R (= HER1) and HER2 receptors can form potent signaling heterodimers with HER3. HER1 and HER2 can each phosphorylate the C-terminal domain of HER3, allowing the latter to attract a number of SH2-containing effectors (see, as examples, Figure 6.5A and B). This does not explain, however, why the sequences of the HER3 kinase domain, which is enzymatically silent, have been highly conserved during evolution. X-ray crystallography has made it clear that HER3, when forming complexes with the tyrosine kinase domains of HER1 and of HER2, is able to help activate the catalytic functions of their kinase domains, in each case acting by causing allosteric shifts in these domains. Hence, the evolutionary conservation of the HER3 pseudokinase domain appears to be due to the role that it plays in such allosteric activation of partner kinase domains. The JAK3 kinase (see Figure 5.14) contains one catalytically active kinase domain and one pseudokinase, that is, a domain that has the overall structure of a catalytically active protein kinase but is clearly enzymatically inactive; in this instance the pseudokinase domain is thought to interact with the active domain to regulate, via allosteric shifts, the activity of the latter. Yet another example of such kinase:pseudokinase heterodimerization comes from study of the KSR scaffolding protein (see Figure 6.9B), which employs a kinase-like domain to heterodimerize with one of its partners, B-Raf. These observations of dimerization of kinase molecules (or of kinase domains) may also affect our interpretation of the term “autophosphorylation,” since observations of this process, with the implication of a single kinase molecule phosphorylating itself, may in fact have reflected the phosphorylation by dimerized kinase subunits of one another.

Even more unexpected have been the discoveries that the Ras proteins undergo dimerization for reasons that are not entirely clear in terms of signaling function (Figure S6.3B). One rationale might derive from the possibility that a dimerized Ras protein is required to properly regulate the dimerized Raf protein, and indeed

experiments have been reported indicating that dimerized Ras is needed to activate the Raf → MEK → ERK signaling cascade, apparently because dimerized Ras increases the intrinsic tendency of Raf (or B-Raf) molecules to dimerize and thus form an actively signaling kinase complex. Moreover, overexpression of Ras proteins leads to the formation of higher-order clusters of Ras proteins ("nanoclusters") tethered to the plasma membrane; these nanoclusters appear to be critical to high-level signaling by Ras proteins. Of additional interest, Rag proteins are small G proteins (like Ras and Ral) that regulate the functions of mTORC1; these also have been found to dimerize in head-to-head dimers. Indeed, the far larger mTORC1 also forms dimers.

Supplementary Sidebar 6.6 Akt and the control of cell growth

Cell growth is often assumed to imply cell proliferation, but in fact the two processes are quite distinct, with cell growth indicating an increase in the mass and thus overall size of a cell. This growth is a product of increased biosynthesis, largely of a cell's macromolecules, which is controlled in turn by a number of master regulators, such a mTORC1, which is regulated in turn by a variety of governors including, importantly, Akt (**Figure S6.4**).

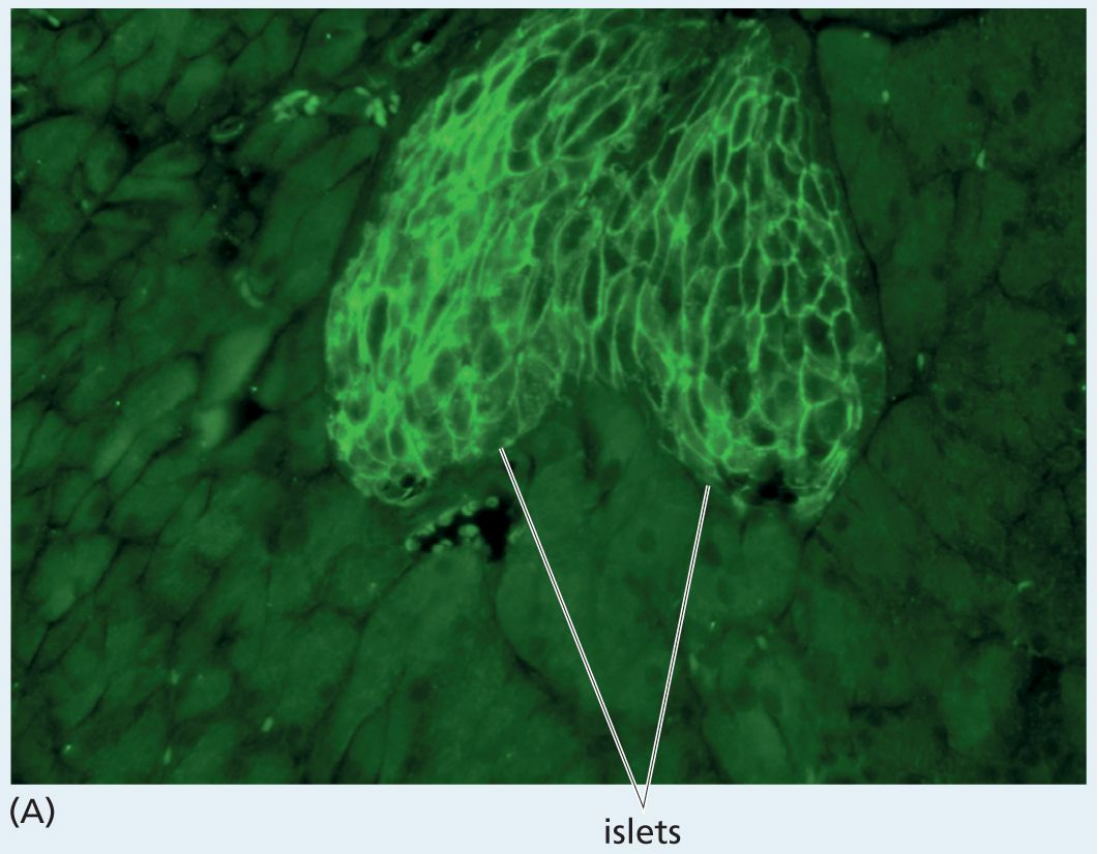
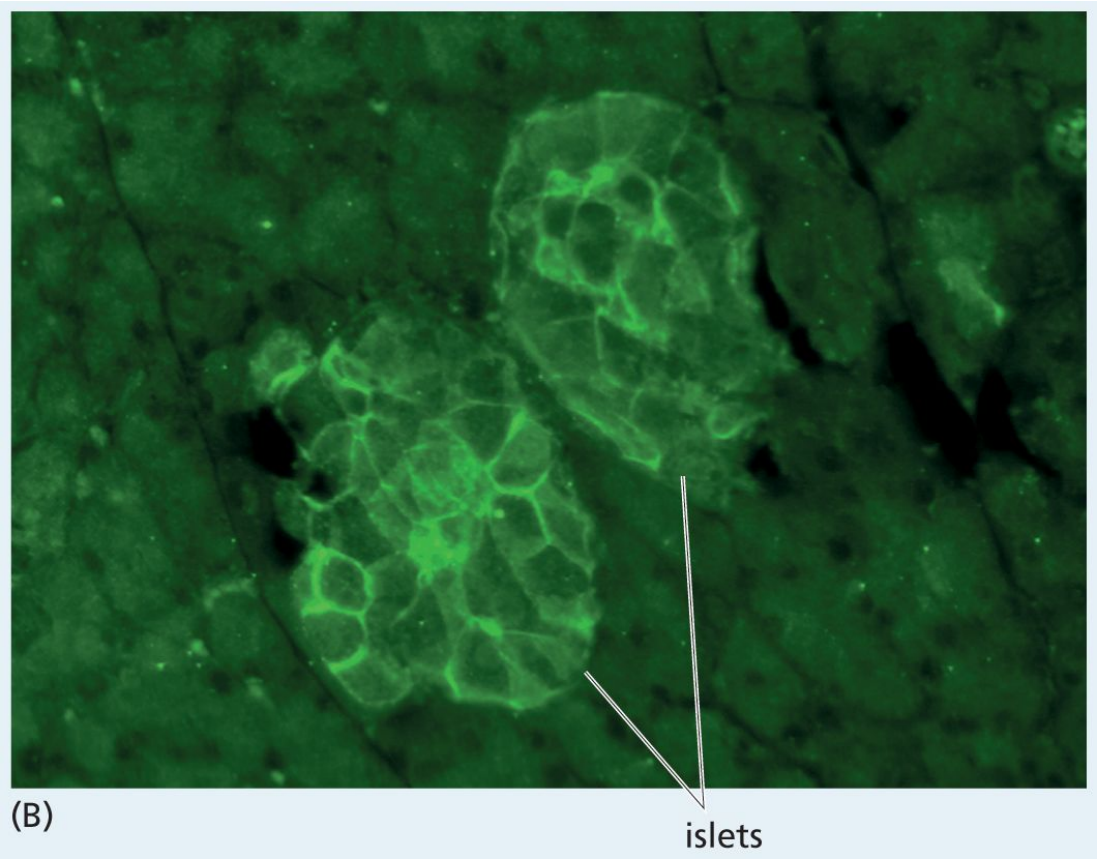
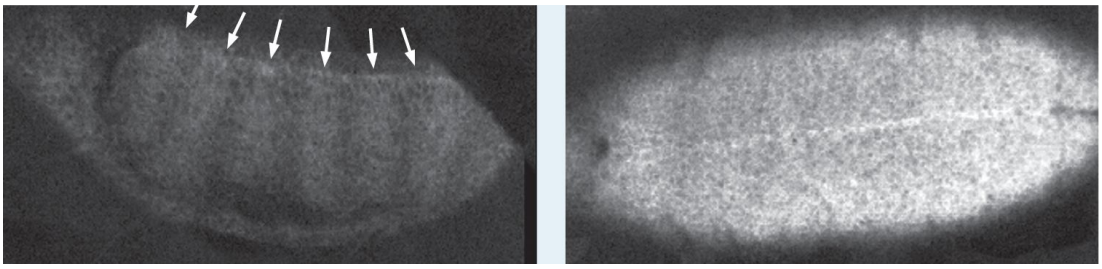


Figure S6.4 Akt and the control of cell growth As mentioned earlier, there is a distinction between cell "growth" and cell "proliferation," where the former yields increases in cell size whereas the latter yields increases in cell number. The endocrine β cells located in the pancreatic islets are normally responsible for secreting insulin in response to elevated concentrations of blood glucose. (A) A micrograph of a normal pancreatic islet. (B) If a constitutively active Akt/PKB kinase is expressed selectively in β cells, they grow to volumes that are as much as fourfold larger than normal. (From R.L. Tuttle et al., *Nat. Med*. 7:1133–1137, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

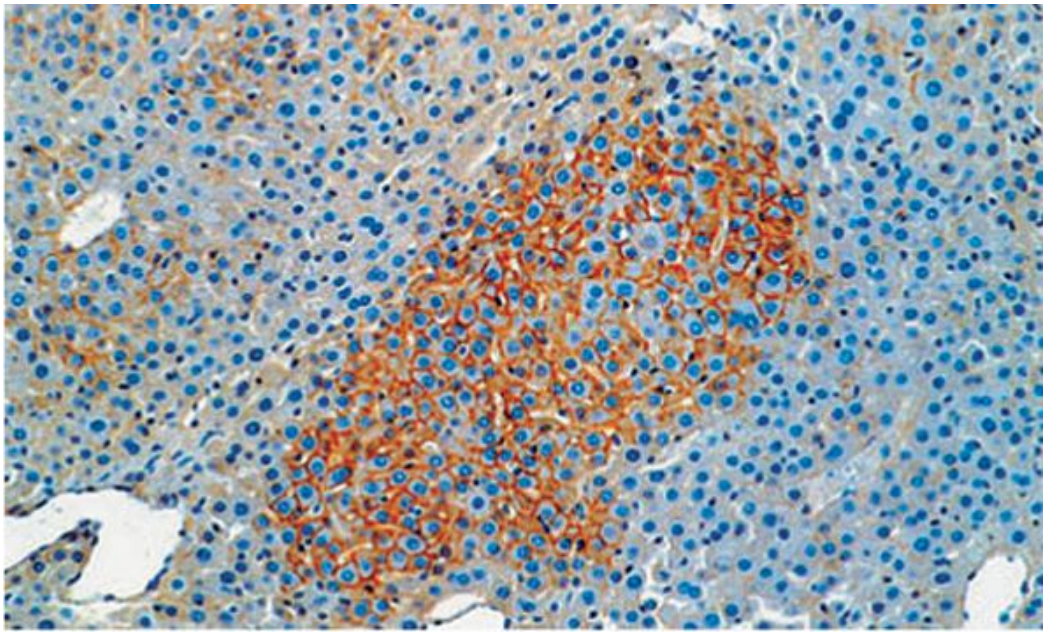


Supplementary Sidebar 6.7 Diverse mechanisms regulating β-catenin function

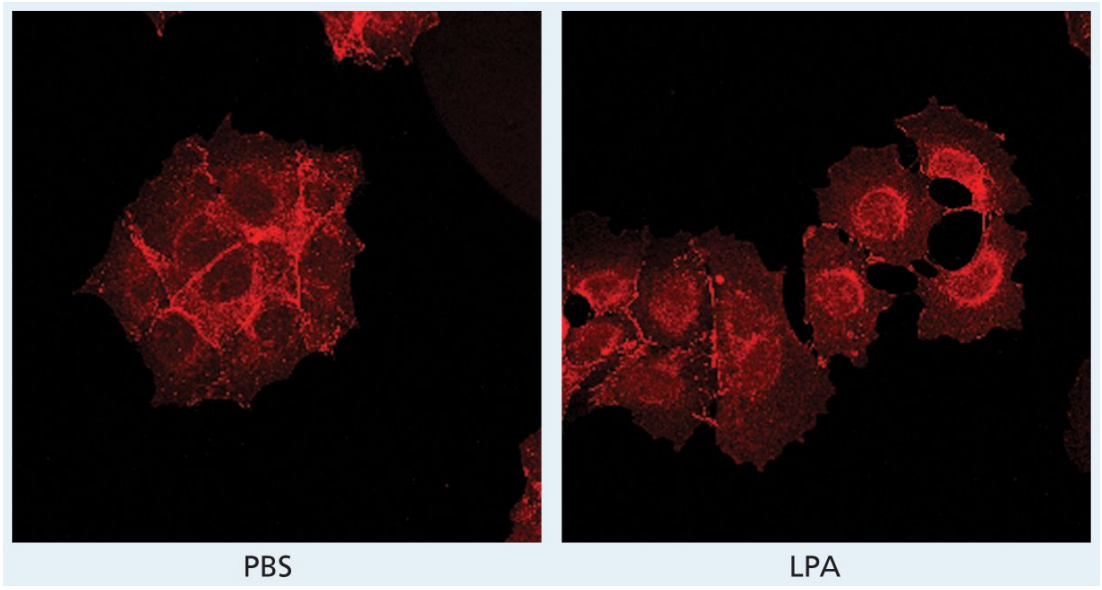
The diagrams of the regulation of β-catenin function in Figure 6.19 provide only the outlines of its operations in cells. Its key role in modulating the connection between the cell surface (via E-cadherin association) and its function in the nucleus as a key transcription factor involved in mitogenesis and stem-cell function (see Figure 6.19C) have dictated multiple layers of additional control on its activity. Some of the controls and biological functions in normal and neoplastic cells are illustrated in **Figure S6.5**.



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S6.5 Regulation of β-catenin signaling Increases in β-catenin levels and signaling are achieved through diverse mechanisms. (A) *Drosophila* embryos usually express β-catenin in a striped pattern (*arrows*, *left*). However, when the gene encoding GSK-3β is inactivated, high levels of β-catenin accumulate uniformly throughout the embryo (*right*). (B) Mice exposed to certain liver carcinogens develop hepatocellular carcinomas (hepatomas) in which β-catenin levels rise dramatically because the protein is mutant, enabling it to resist phosphorylation by GSK-3β and resulting degradation. The resulting cytoplasmic accumulation of β-catenin (*brown*) in this focus of premalignant hepatocytes is a prelude to increased levels of nuclear β-catenin that drive cell proliferation through association with Tcf/Lef transcription factors. (C) The dynamic interaction between the β-catenin sequestered in the adherens junctions and the form of this protein that conveys Wnt-dependent signals to the nucleus is illustrated here. When A431 human epidermoid carcinoma cells are propagated in monolayer culture and placed briefly in phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), β-catenin (*red*) is largely localized to the adherens junctions between adjacent cells (*left*). However, when these junctions are dissolved following brief exposure of the cells to lysophosphatidic acid (LPA), both E-cadherin and β-catenin are internalized and β-catenin is relocalized to perinuclear sites (*right*), where it now becomes available for activation and nuclear translocation by signals emanating from Frizzled receptors that have bound Wnt ligands (*not shown*; see Figure 6.19B). (A, courtesy of E.F. Wieschaus. B, from T.R. Devereux et al., *Oncogene* 18:4726–4733, 1999. With permission from Nature. C, from Y. Kam and V. Quaranta, *PloS One* 4:e4580, 2009. © 2009 Kam et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License.)

Supplementary Sidebar 6.8 Cross connections between canonical pathways

The signaling cascades that historically are studied first are often termed “canonical” and therefore, implicitly, are the most important ones operating within cells. However, as the biochemical complexities of cells are uncovered in ever-greater detail, it becomes clear that all of these canonical pathways are connected to one another via numerous cross connections, a small portion of which are shown, for the sake of illustration, in **Figure S6.6**. As these networks are plotted out as seen in the figure, the usually depicted one-dimensional canonical signaling cascades begin to merge into complex two-dimensional webs, which ultimately can be properly depicted only in three dimensions, given the actual organization of these networks and the difficulty of depicting three-dimensional networks in two-dimensional space.

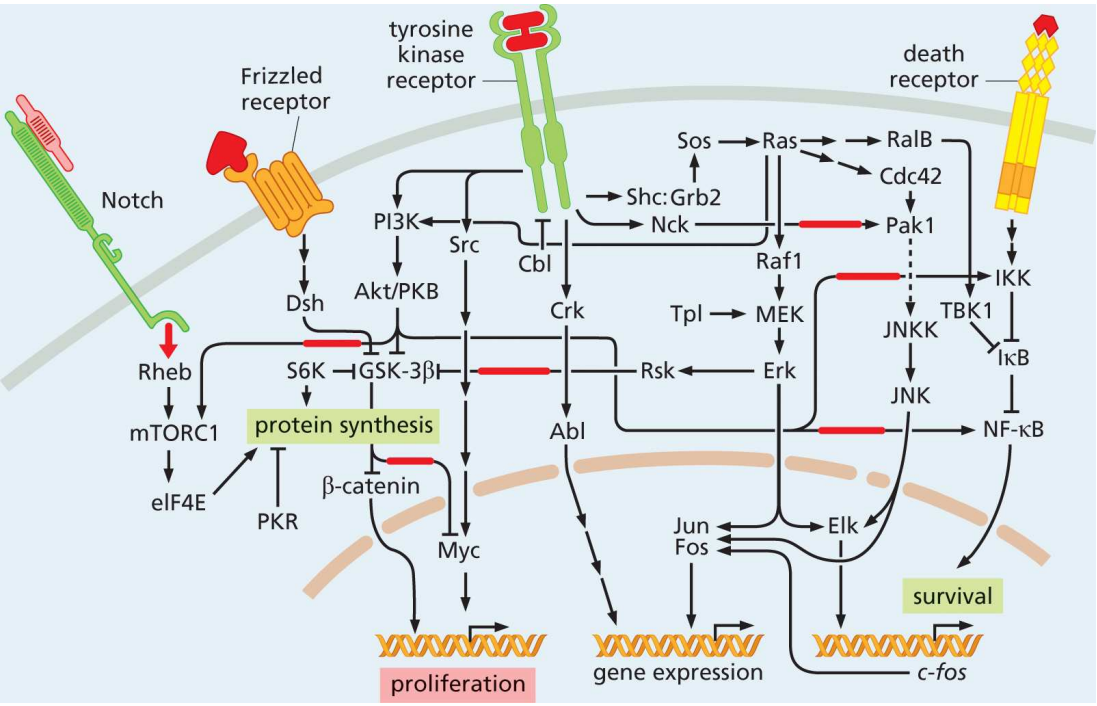


Figure S6.6 Two-dimensional signaling maps While we have depicted signaling pathways as linear cascades reaching from the plasma membrane to the nucleus with occasional lateral branch points, a rapidly growing body of research reveals that these pathways interact via numerous lateral cross connections and points of convergence. A small subset of these are highlighted by a *red thickening* of the depicted cross connection. Note, for example, that GSK-3β, which plays a central role in the Wnt–β-catenin pathway, is also regulated by signaling proteins lying downstream of tyrosine kinase receptors. (We will encounter the death receptors in Chapter 9.) Importantly, as more and more of these cross connections are uncovered, two-dimensional maps will need to be replaced by three-dimensional depictions to accommodate them. (Adapted from T. Hunter, *Cell* 88:333–346, 1997. With permission from Elsevier.)

Supplementary Sidebar 6.9 The actual Ras effector circuit

The effector pathways of Ras, as laid out in Figure 6.9A and subsequent figures in Chapter 6, appear to represent only the most important and apparent of the Ras downstream signaling channels. More detailed analyses indicate that Ras proteins, including Ras oncoproteins, appear to employ additional downstream effectors to induce changes in cell phenotype (**Figure S6.7**). As this figure implies, a number of cell-biological phenotypes associated with the transformed cell state may be influenced in part by some of these other effectors. Importantly, however, while these additional Ras effectors have been found to form physical complexes with GTP-bound

Ras, their precise contributions to the transformed cell phenotype have not been documented.

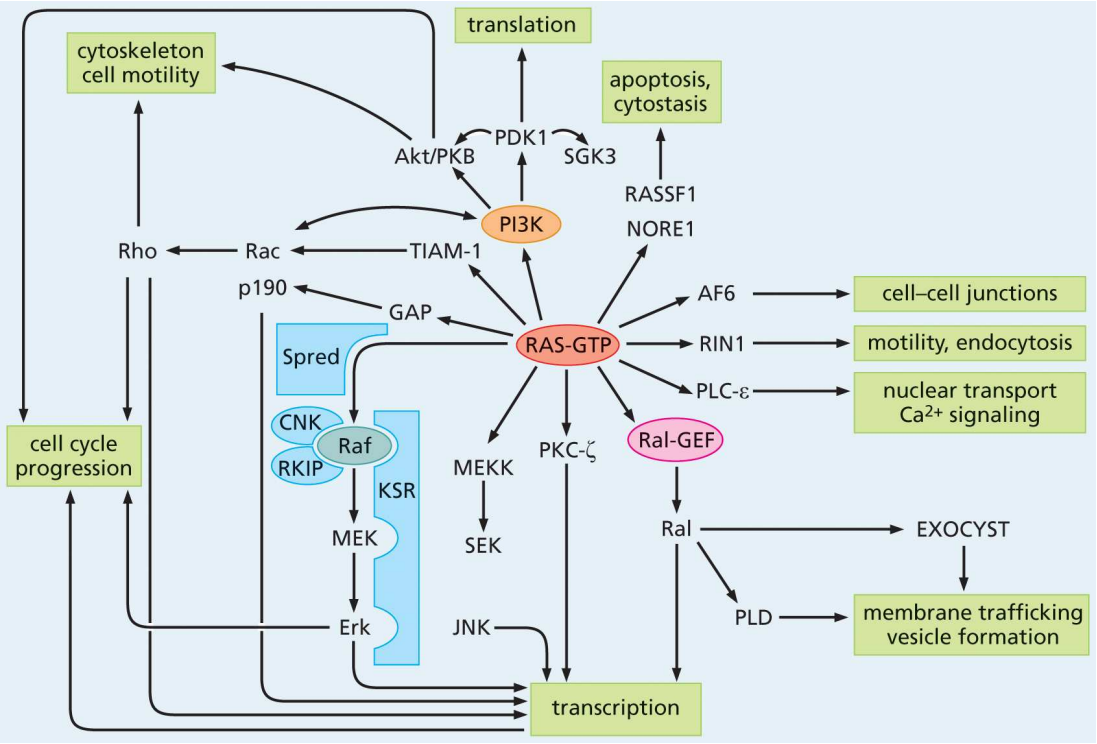


Figure S6.7 Ras effector pathways Detailed biochemical analyses of the GTP-bound, activated form of the Ras proteins indicate that these proteins bind to far more than the three major effectors of Ras signaling—Raf, PI3 kinase (PI3K), and Ral-GEF, as illustrated in Figures 6.9A, 6.10, and 6.15, respectively. As shown here, at least eight additional Ras-interacting proteins have been uncovered, most of which are known or suspected to play key roles in relaying Ras signals to specialized downstream signaling circuits involved in functions as diverse as transcription, membrane trafficking, endocytosis, and translation. (Adapted from M. Malumbres and M. Barbacid, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3:459–465, 2003. With permission from Nature.)

Even this diagram does not begin to indicate some important biochemical subtleties. The four different Ras proteins (including the two alternative K-Ras isoforms) interact in slightly different ways with their various canonical effectors (see Figure 6.9A), influenced in part by (1) the distinct homodimerization abilities of the various Ras proteins; (2) their distinct types of lipidation; (3) the binding affinities of the different effectors, each via its Ras-binding domain (RBD); and (4) whether normal or oncogenic forms of Ras proteins are involved. A further dimension of complexity derives from the fact that some of the Ras-binding domains of these candidate and

validated Ras effectors can also bind to other small G proteins that are distantly related to Ras proteins and execute very different functions.

OceanofPDF.com

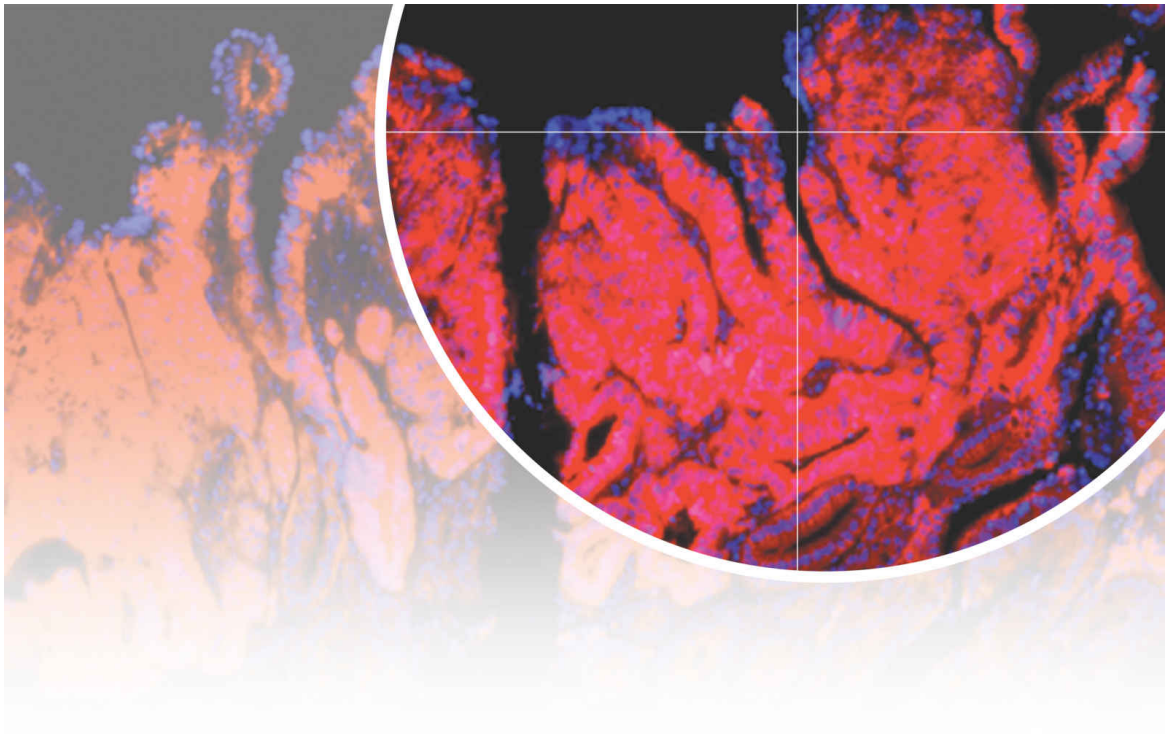
Glossary

allosteric
: Referring to a mechanism for regulating the activity of a protein, notably an enzyme, in which its activity or function is modulated by changes in its three-dimensional structure; the change results from binding of a regulatory molecule at a site within the protein that is distant from the functionally important site, such as, in the case of enzymes, from its catalytic cleft.

pseudokinase
: A protein domain that exhibits many of the structural features of a bona fide kinase and is a paralog of bona fide kinases but that lacks the catalytic activity of the latter because of amino acid replacements in the catalytic cleft.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 7
Tumor Suppressor Genes



A fluorescence microscopy image of adenoma cells, stained bright pink, overlying normal cells in which blue nuclei are visible.

> Let me add . . . a consideration of the inheritance of tumors. . . . In order that a tumor may arise in such cases, the homologous elements in both series of chromosomes must be weakened in the same way.
>
> Theodor Boveri, pathologist, 1914

The discovery of proto-oncogenes and oncogenes, as described in Chapter 6, provided a simple and powerful explanation of how the proliferation of cells is driven. The proteins encoded by proto-oncogenes participate in various ways in receiving and processing growth-stimulating signals that originate in the extracellular environment. When these genes suffer mutation, the flow of these growth-promoting signals becomes deregulated. Instead of emitting them in

carefully controlled bursts, oncoproteins release a steady stream of growth-stimulating signals, resulting in the unrelenting proliferation associated with cancer cells.

The logic underlying well-designed control systems dictates, however, that the components promoting a process must be counterbalanced by others that oppose this process. Biological systems seem to follow this logic as well, which leads us to conclude that the growth-promoting genes we have discussed until now provide only part of the story of cellular growth control.

In the 1970s and early 1980s, certain pieces of experimental evidence about cancer cell genetics began to accumulate that were hard to reconcile with the known properties of oncogenes. This evidence hinted at the existence of a second, fundamentally different type of growth-controlling gene—one that operates to constrain or suppress cell proliferation. These antigrowth genes came to be called tumor suppressor genes (TSGs). Their involvement in tumor formation seemed to happen when the genes were inactivated or lost, thereby liberating affected cells from their growth-suppressing effects.

Now, more than four decades later, we have come to realize that the inactivation of TSGs plays a role in cancer pathogenesis that is as important to cancer as the activation of oncogenes. Indeed, the inactivation of these growth-suppressing genes may be even more important than oncogene activation for the formation of many kinds of human cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tumor suppressor gene

(1) A gene whose partial or complete inactivation, occurring in either the germ line or the genome of a somatic cell, leads to an increased likelihood of cancer development. (2) Such a gene that is responsible for constraining cell proliferation. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

OceanofPDF.com

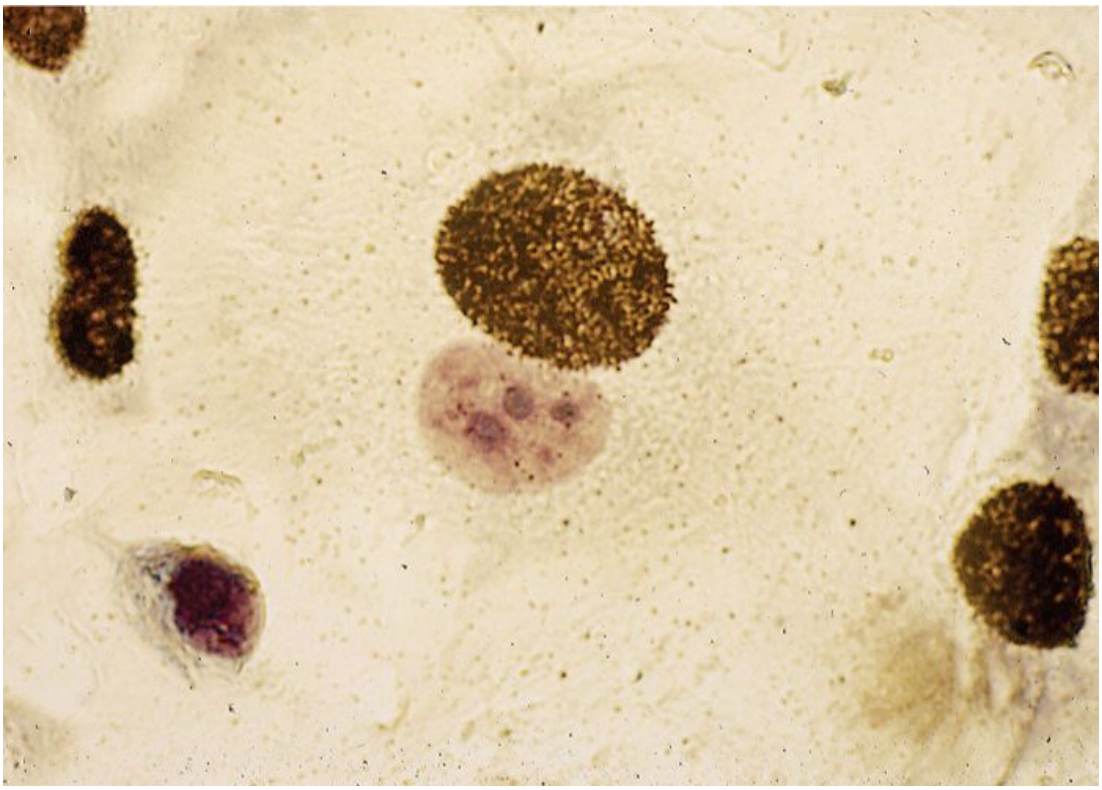
7.1 Cell fusion experiments indicate that the cancer phenotype is recessive

The study of tumor viruses in the 1970s revealed that these infectious agents carried a number of cancer-inducing genes, specifically viral oncogenes, which acted in a dominant fashion when viral genomes were introduced into previously normal cells (see Chapter 3). In particular, the introduction of a tumor virus genome into a normal cell would result in transformation of that cell. This response meant that viral oncogenes could dictate cell behavior in spite of the continued presence and expression of opposing cellular genes within the virus-infected cell that usually functioned to ensure controlled, appropriate cell proliferation. Because the viral oncogenes could overrule these cellular genes, by definition the viral genes displayed a *dominant* phenotype—they were bringing about cellular transformation. This observation suggested, by extension, that cancerous cell growth was a dominant phenotype when compared to normal (wild-type) cell growth, which was therefore considered to be *recessive* (see Section 1.1).

However, as was suspected at the time, and reinforced by research in the 1980s, most human cancers do not seem to arise as consequences of tumor virus infections. Thus, the lessons learned from studying such viruses might well be irrelevant to understanding how human tumors arise. Hence, this issue needed to be revisited, making it possible that human cancer cells might even exhibit a recessive phenotype.

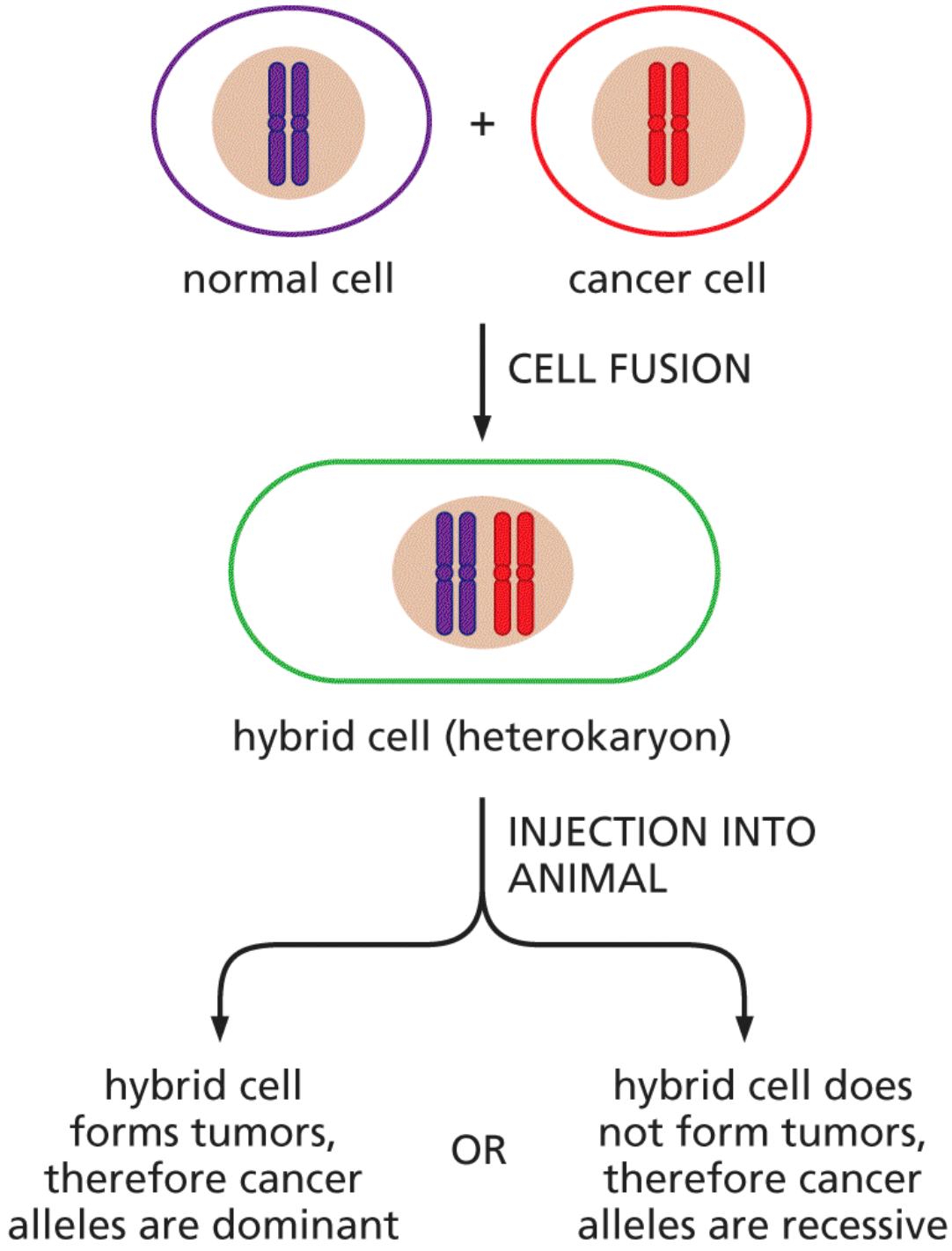
An initial hint of the importance of such recessive cancer-inducing alleles came from experiments undertaken initially at Oxford University in Great Britain. Based on the principles of Mendelian genetics, when an allele that specifies a dominant phenotype is juxtaposed with an allele specifying a recessive phenotype, the dominant allele, by definition, wins out and the cell will display the phenotype associated with the dominant allele. Such battles for phenotypic domination, it turns out, can be engineered experimentally by a technique called *cell fusion*. In this procedure, cells of two different phenotypes—for example, normal cells and cancer cells—are cultured together in a Petri dish. An agent is then used to induce fusion of the plasma membranes of cells that happen to be growing near one another. The result of such treatment is a large cell with a single cytoplasm and multiple nuclei, often termed a syncytium. Because these fusing agents act indiscriminately, they could join together cells of the same type—a pair of normal cells, for example—or cells of different types. If the participating cells happen to be of different origins, then the resulting hybrid cell

is termed a heterokaryon (**Figure 7.1A**), to indicate that it carries genetically distinct nuclei. Genetic techniques can then be used to select for a fused cell that has acquired two genetically distinct nuclei and, at the same time, to eliminate cells that have failed to fuse or happen to carry two identical nuclei. For example, each type of cell may carry a genetic marker that allows it to resist being killed by a particular antibiotic agent to which it would normally be sensitive; heterokaryons would therefore be resistant to killing by a mixture of the two antibiotics.



A micrograph image of a cell with a large, dark nucleus that looks like a prickly seed pod and a somewhat smaller, paler nucleus beside it. Other cytoplasmic structures are visible at the periphery of the image.

(A)



A diagram in which a normal cell and a cancer cell undergo cell fusion to form a hybrid cell (heterokaryon). When this is injected into an animal, either the hybrid cell forms tumors, meaning that the cancer alleles are dominant, or else the hybrid cell does not form tumors, in which case the cancer alleles are recessive.

(B)

Figure 7.1 Experimental fusion of cells (A) When cells growing adjacent to one another in culture are exposed to a *fusogenic* agent, such as the chemical polyethylene glycol (PEG) or a viral protein that triggers membrane fusion, they initially form a heterokaryon with multiple nuclei. In this experiment, radiolabeled mouse NIH 3T3 cells have been fused (using an inactivated Sendai virus) with monkey kidney cells. The resulting hybrid cell contains two distinct nuclei. The larger mouse nucleus is identified by the silver grains that were formed during subsequent autoradiography. The membrane surrounding this heterokaryon cannot be seen. (B) The use of cell fusion to test the dominance or recessiveness of the cancer cell phenotype can, in theory, yield two different outcomes: tumorigenic or non-tumorigenic hybrid cells. In fact, when cancer cells derived from most kinds of non-virus-induced human tumors (or from chemically induced rodent tumors) were used in these fusions, the hybrid cells were non-tumorigenic. In contrast, when the cancer cell derived from a virus-induced tumor, the hybrids were usually tumorigenic. (A, courtesy of S. Rozenblatt.)

Cells having large numbers of nuclei are generally inviable, whereas cells having only two nuclei are often viable and will proceed to grow. When these cells divide, the two nuclear membranes will break down, the two sets of chromosomes will intermingle, and each resulting daughter cell will receive a single nucleus with chromosome complements originating from both parental cell types.

Using this cell fusion technique, hybrid cells of disparate origins, including even chicken–human hybrids, could be made. Such hybrids were used to address many interesting biological questions. For our purposes, however, the results of only one type of experiment are of special interest: How did normal + cancer cell hybrids grow in culture and were they capable of forming tumors (Figure 7.1B)?

The smart money at the time bet that cancer, a potent, dominating phenotype, would come out on top when forced into a competition with the normal cell growth phenotype. However, in a number of experiments in which tumor cells were fused with normal cells, the hybrid cells that initially formed were found to have lost the ability to form tumors when injected into an appropriate host animal. This unexpected observation was interpreted to mean that the malignant, cancer cell phenotype was recessive to the phenotype of normal, wild-type growth. Alternative explanations could be proposed to explain this result: perhaps the dominant oncogene from the tumor cell failed to be expressed in the hybrid cell, or the hybrid cell might have been eliminated by the immune system of the host animal. Nevertheless, these early experiments were very influential in introducing the concept that the malignant phenotype might behave as a recessive trait.

There was, however, one notable exception to these observations: when the parental cancer cell in the two-cell hybrid had been transformed by tumor virus infection, the malignant phenotype would dominate (see Figure 7.1B). This behavior makes sense, given that tumor viruses are able to deploy the virus-associated oncogenes to transform normal cells. Such viral oncogenes are able, in a variety of ways, to dominate the behavior of the cells that they have infected and thereby act as dominant alleles (with respect to normal host cell genes that regulate related cell functions).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

syncytium
: Cell formed when the plasma membranes of two or more cells fuse, initially resulting in a multi-nucleated cell.

heterokaryon
: Cell carrying two (or more) genetically distinct nuclei, often arising from the experimental fusion of two cells.

OceanofPDF.com

7.2 The recessive nature of the cancer cell phenotype requires a genetic explanation

The results of the cell-fusion experiments led to the notion that normal cells carry functional alleles of genes that inhibit malignant growth and that these growth-inhibitory genes are somehow inactivated or lost in cancer cells.

Because human cells are diploid, normal cells would carry two copies of each of these genes, which help constrain or suppress their proliferation. During the development of a tumor, an evolving cancer cell would have to discard or otherwise inactivate both copies of one or more of these genes. Once these growth-suppressing genes were lost, the proliferation of the cancer cells would likely accelerate. However, re-introducing intact versions of these genes by cell fusion would restore their growth-inhibitory functions and cause the hybrid cells to slow or halt proliferation.

Because the wild-type versions of these (hypothetical) genes antagonize the cancer cell phenotype, they came to be called “tumor suppressor genes.” There were arguments both in favor of and against the existence of TSGs. The argument in their favor was that it is far easier to inactivate a gene by various mutational mechanisms than it is to hyperactivate its protein product through a mutation. For example, a *Ras* proto-oncogene can be converted into its hyperactivated oncogenic form only by a point mutation that affects certain specific codons, such as the 12th, 13th, or 61st (Section 4.3 and Figure 4.6). In contrast, a TSG—or, for that matter, any other gene—can readily be inactivated by point mutations that strike at many different sites in its protein-coding sequences, by insertions or deletions that alter its reading frame, or by large-scale chromosomal deletions.

The logical case against the existence of TSGs derived from the diploid state of the mammalian cell genome. If inactivation of TSGs really did play a role in enabling the growth of cancer cells, and if these inactive alleles

were recessive, an incipient tumor cell would seemingly reap no benefit from inactivating only one of its two copies of a TSG because a dominant, wild-type copy would remain. Hence, it seemed that both copies of a given TSG would need to be eliminated to produce a malignant phenotype.

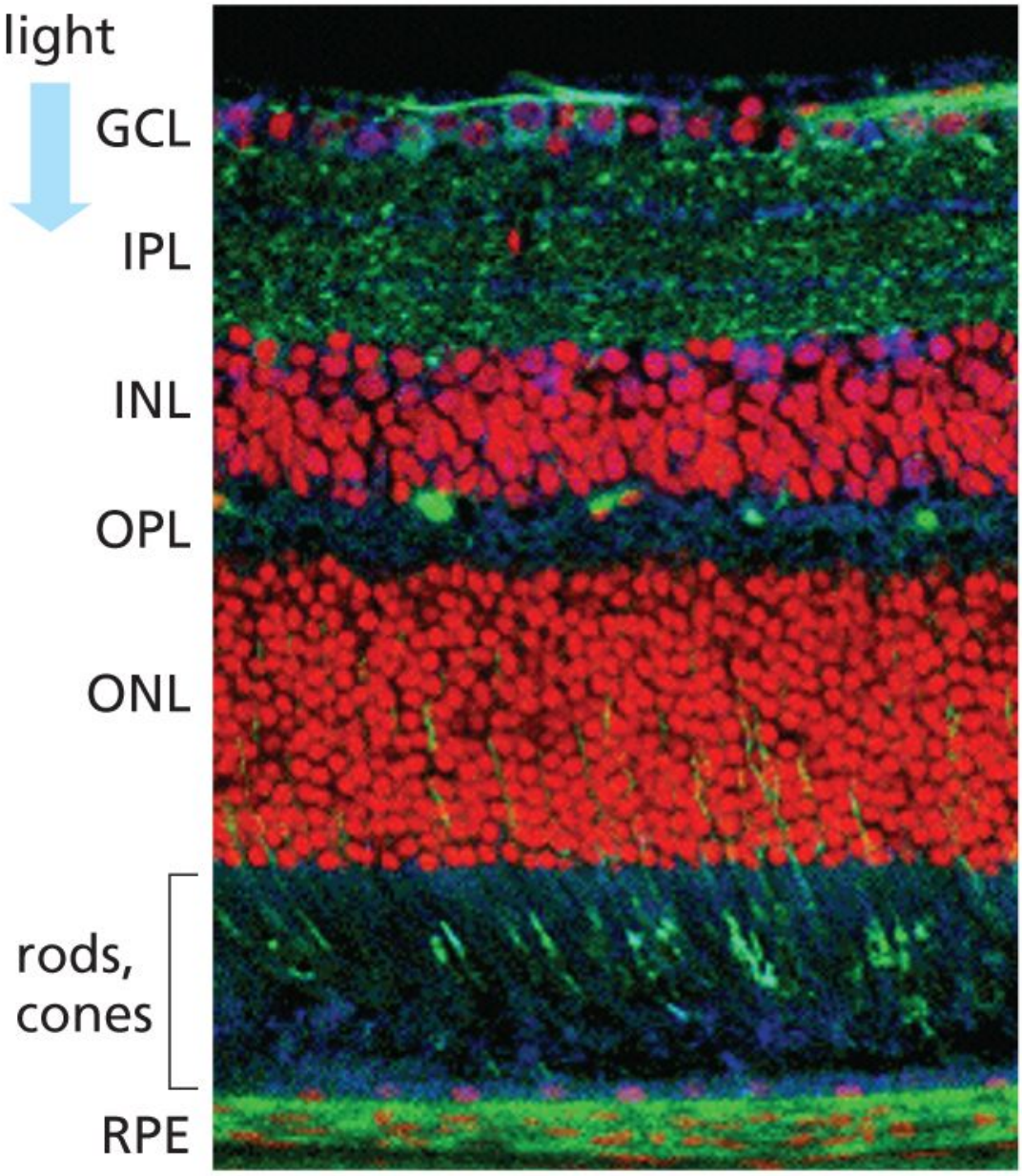
This requirement for two separate genetic alterations to the same gene seemed too complex and unwieldy and too improbable to occur during the lifetime of a cell. Because the likelihood of two mutations occurring is the square of the probability of a single mutation, this made it seem highly unlikely that TSGs could be fully inactivated in the time required for tumors to form. For example, if the probability of inactivating a single gene copy by mutation is on the order of 10^{-6} per cell generation, the probability of silencing both copies would be on the order of 10^{-12} per cell generation—exceedingly unlikely to occur in the early phases of tumor development.

OceanofPDF.com

7.3 The retinoblastoma tumor provides a solution to the genetic puzzle of TSGs

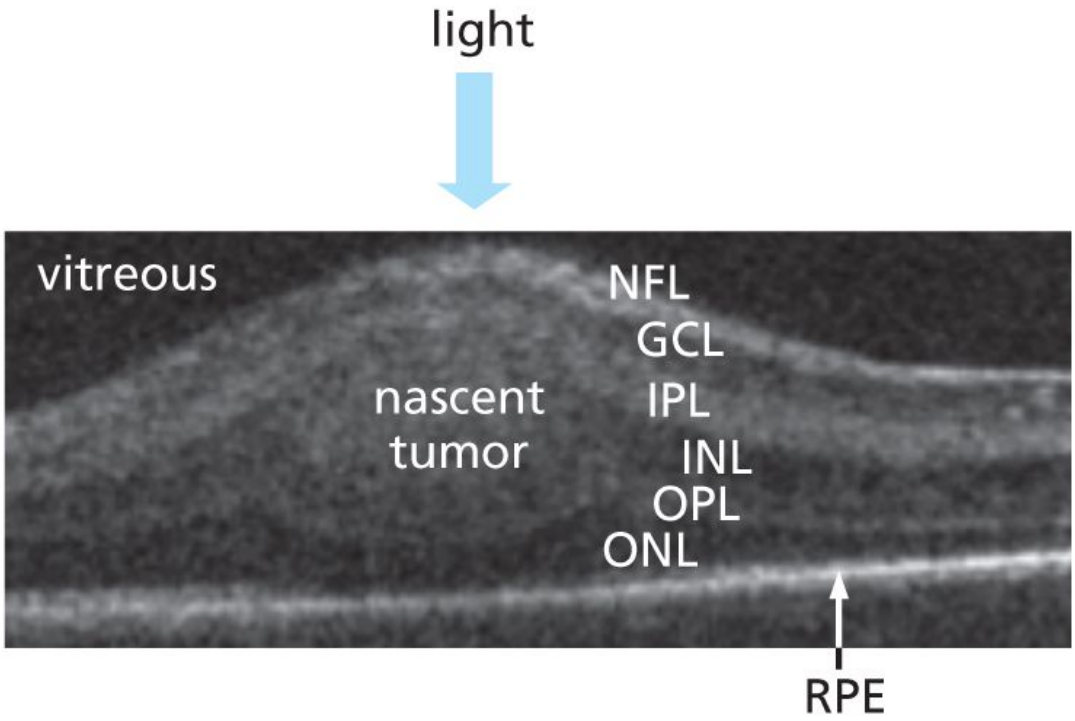
The arguments for and against the involvement of TSGs in tumor development could never be settled by the cell fusion technique. For one thing, this experimental strategy, on its own, offered little prospect of finding and isolating specific genes whose properties could be studied and used to support the TSG hypothesis. In the end, the important insights came from studying a rare childhood eye tumor, retinoblastoma.

Observed in about 1 in 20,000 children, this tumor of the retina arises in the precursors of photoreceptor cells (**Figure 7.2**). It is diagnosed anytime from birth to ages 6 to 8 years, after which the disease is rarely encountered. Retinoblastoma appears in two forms. Children who are born into families with no history of the disease present in the clinic with a single tumor in one eye, a condition termed unilateral retinoblastoma. If this tumor is eliminated—by radiation, cryoablation, or by removal of the affected eye—then the child usually has no further risk of retinoblastoma and no elevated risk of tumors elsewhere in the body. This form of retinoblastoma is considered sporadic.



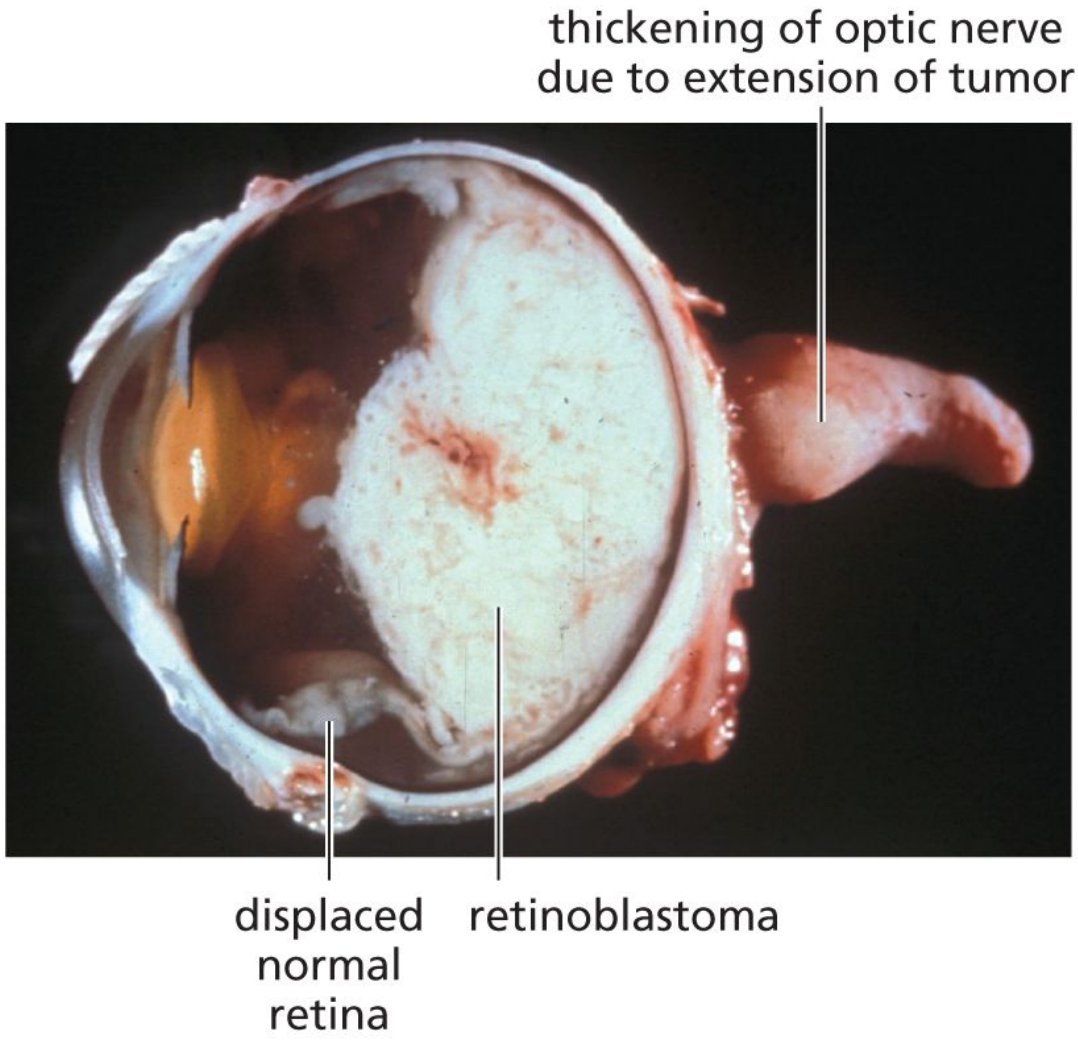
An enhanced color image showing a normal retina in cross section. Incoming light encounters tissue layers labeled G C L, I P L, I N L, O P L, O N L, rods and cones, and finally R P E.

(A)



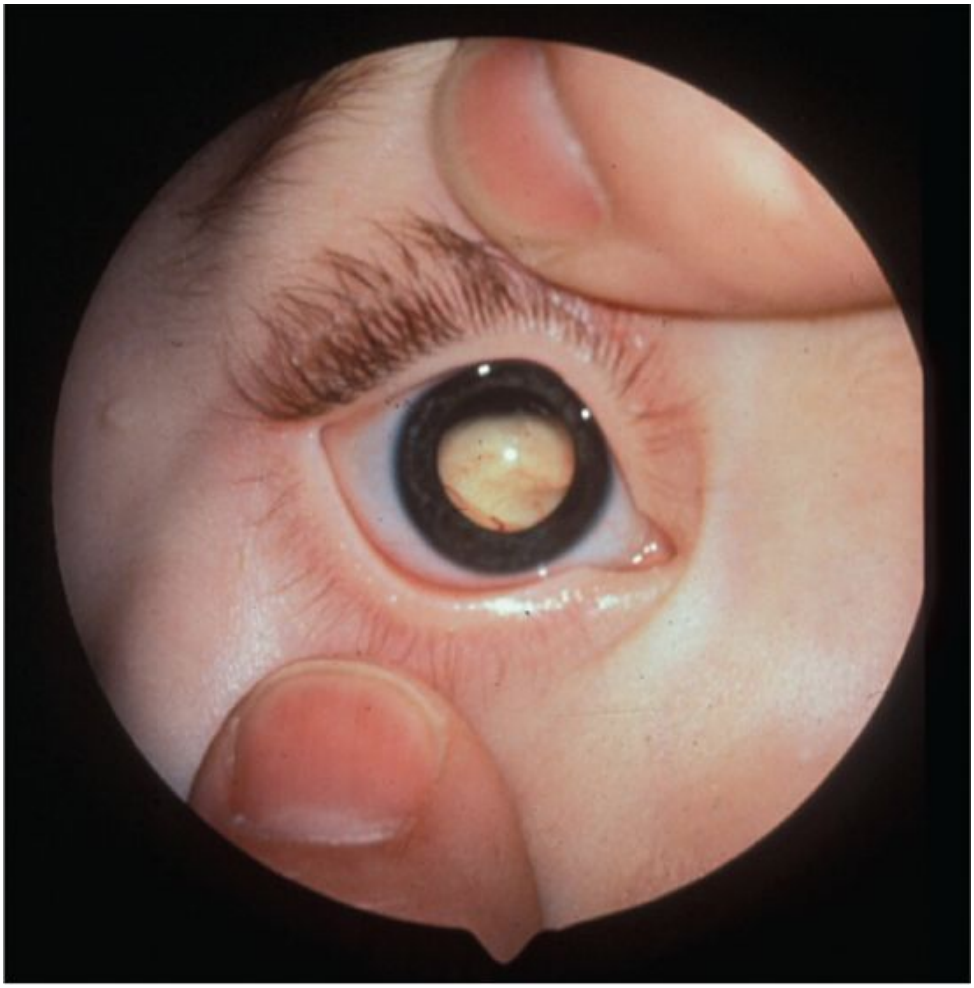
A black-and-white image of a nascent retinal tumor, growing within the layers named in Part A but also with an N F L layer above the G C L layer.

(B)



A color photo of a cross-sectioned eyeball in side view, showing a massive retinoblastoma, looking like a lump of cooked egg white in the back of the eyeball that has displaced the retina forward and has also caused thickening of the optic nerve that extends out the back of the eyeball.

(C)



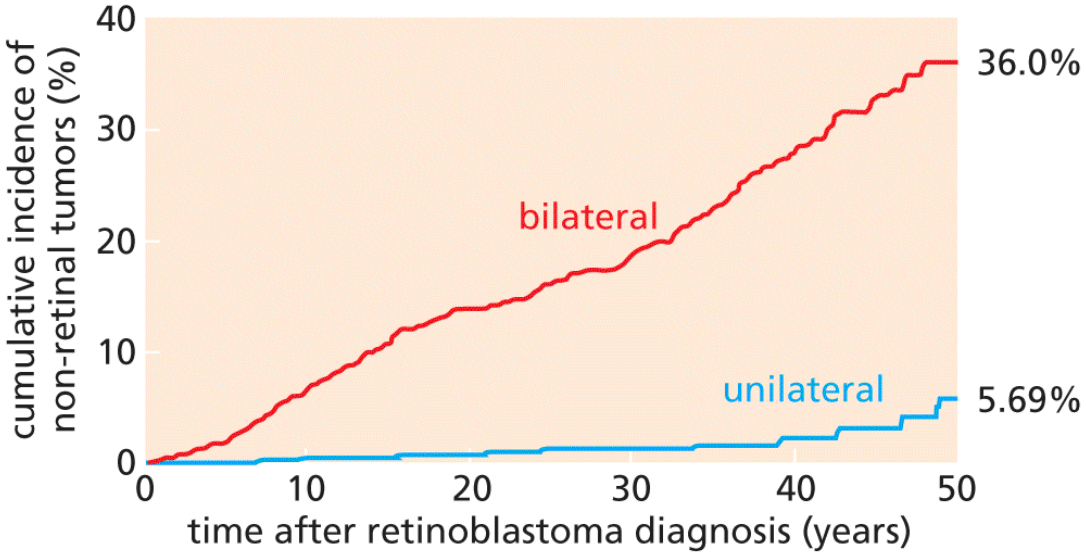
A frontal photograph of the eye of a living person suffering from a retinoblastoma. The highly dilated pupil appears shiny pale yellow instead of being dark.

(D)

Figure 7.2 Pediatric retinoblastomas Although the *Rb* gene regulates cell proliferation in most cell types throughout the body, inactivation of this TSG leads preferentially to the formation of pediatric tumors in the retina—a small, highly specialized tissue (A). The tumors arise from a stem cell precursor of the cone cells. In this micrograph, which shows a cross section of the retina, the nuclei of the rods and cones (*red*) are located in the outer nuclear layer (ONL), and their cell bodies (*dark green*) extend downward toward the retinal pigmented epithelium (RPE). Closer to the front of the eye are the outer plexiform layer (OPL), inner nuclear layer (INL), inner plexiform layer (IPL), and ganglion cell layer (GCL). (B) Created using Fourier domain optical coherence tomography, this image shows a nascent retinoblastoma in the eye of an $Rb^{+/-}$ infant. The

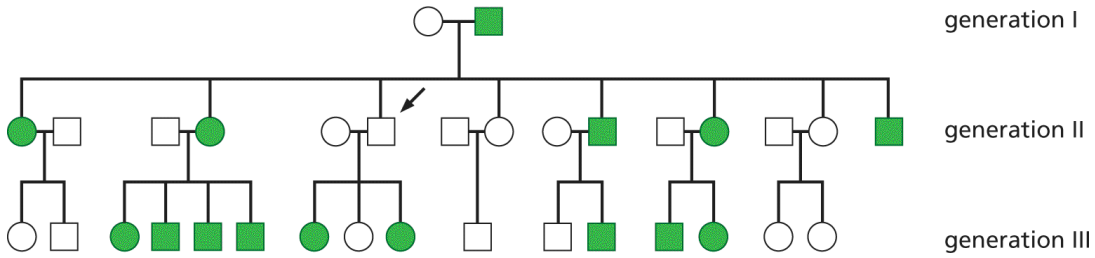
developing tumor appears to be emerging from the INL of the retina. NFL, nerve fiber layer. (C) A section of an eye in which a large retinoblastoma has developed and begun to invade the optic nerve. (D) A retinoblastoma may often initially present in the clinic as an opacity that obscures the retina. (A, from S.W. Wang et al., *Development* 129:467–477, 2002. With permission from the Company of Biologists. B, courtesy of A. Mallipatna, C. Vandenhoven, B.L. Gallie and E. Heon. C and D, courtesy of T.P. Dryja.)

A familial form of retinoblastoma occurs in children with a parent who also suffered from and was cured of the disease early in life. These children usually experience tumors arising in multiple sites in both eyes, a condition called *bilateral* retinoblastoma. Removal of these tumors does not protect these children from a greatly increased risk (more than 500 times above normal) of bone cancers (osteosarcomas) during adolescence and an elevated susceptibility to developing yet other, nonretinal tumors later in life (**Figure 7.3A**). Those who survive these tumors and grow to adulthood are usually able to reproduce; in half of their offspring, the familial form of retinoblastoma again rears its head (Figure 7.3B).



A line graph with two lines, with time after retinoblastoma diagnosis on the horizontal axis and cumulative incidence of non-retinal tumors in percent on the vertical axis. The line for unilateral rises very slowly for 40 years and then somewhat faster for 10 years to end at 5.69 percent after 50 years. The line for bilateral rises more steadily and faster, ending at 36.0 percent after 50 years.

(A)

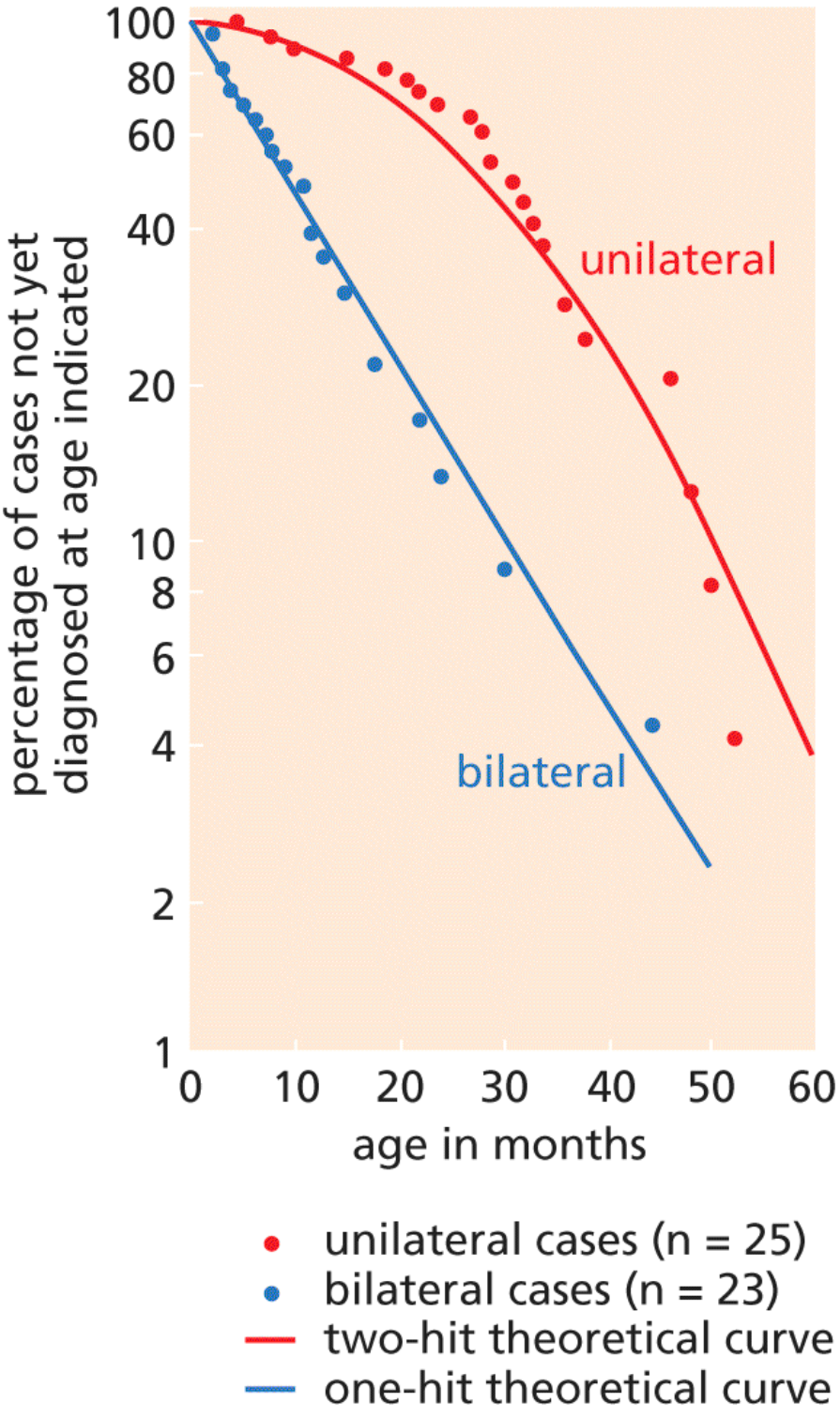


A family pedigree tree with three generations. he first generation is a single couple in which the male is affected by retinoblastoma. The second generation contains 3 affected and 2 unaffected female offspring and 1 unaffected and 2 affected male offspring. All married unaffected individuals except 1 affected male who did not marry. Of the females, only 2, both affected, passed the condition on to the third generation, and each of these two passed the condition on to all their offspring. Both married males passed the condition on to some of their offspring but not all, even though one of the married males did not manifest the condition himself.

(B)

Figure 7.3 Unilateral versus bilateral retinoblastoma (A) This graph shows the clinical courses of 1601 retinoblastoma patients who had been diagnosed between 1914 and 1984. Children diagnosed with bilateral tumors—those with familial retinoblastoma (*red line*)—have a dramatically higher risk of subsequently developing tumors in a variety of organ sites than those with unilateral tumors, who most often have the sporadic form of the disease (*blue line*). (A portion of this elevated risk is attributable to tumors that arose in the vicinity of the eyes because of the *radiotherapy* that was used to eliminate the retinoblastomas when these individuals were young.) (B) This pedigree shows multiple generations of a family with familial retinoblastoma. Males (*squares*), females (*circles*), affected individuals (*green*), unaffected individuals (*hollow shapes*). In one lineage, tumor development skipped a generation (*arrow*); this represents an example of *incomplete penetrance*, in which an individual carrying the mutant allele fails, for complex biological reasons, to develop retinoblastoma. (We can conclude that the indicated man carried the mutant allele because two of his daughters developed the disease.) Multi-generation pedigrees like this one were rarely observed before the advent of modern medicine, which allowed affected children to be cured of the disease, reach reproductive age, and transmit mutant alleles to the next generation. (A, from R.A. Kleinerman et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 23:2272–2279, 2005. With permission from the American Society of Clinical Oncology. B, courtesy of T.P. Dryja.)

Upon studying the kinetics with which retinal tumors appeared in children affected by both forms of the disease, Alfred Knudson concluded in 1971 that the rate of appearance of familial tumors was consistent with a single random event, whereas the sporadic tumors behaved as if two random events were required for their formation. These postulates have become known as Knudson's "one-hit" and "two-hit" hypotheses (**Figure 7.4**).

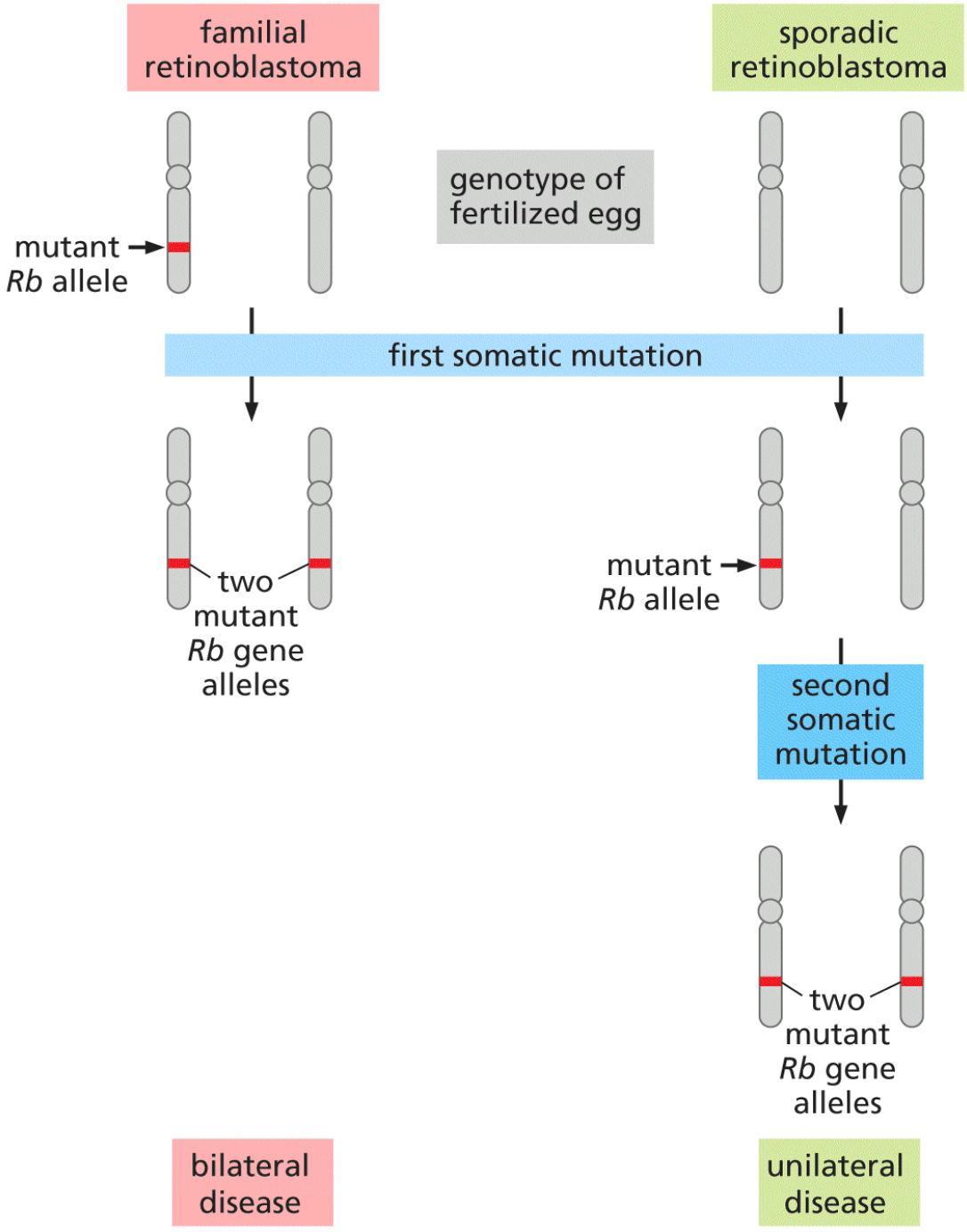


A line graph with two lines, with age on the horizontal axis and percentage of cases not yet diagnosed at age indicated on the vertical axis. The vertical scale is logarithmic, with 100 percent at the top and 10 percent halfway up. The so-called one-hit theoretical curve for bilateral retinoblastoma is a straight line sloping

steeply downward, from 100 percent at age 0 to about 20 percent at 20 months, to just over 2 percent at age 50 months. The two-hit curve for unilateral retinoblastoma is fairly level at first, so that at 20 months over 60 percent of cases are still undiagnosed. The curve bends downward, however, so that at 60 months only about 4 percent of cases remain undiagnosed. Real-world data points–23 for bilateral and 25 for unilateral–fit the theoretical curves fairly closely.

Figure 7.4 Kinetics of appearance of unilateral and bilateral retinoblastomas in children Knudson calculated that the bilateral tumors arose with one-hit kinetics (*blue*), whereas the unilateral tumors arose with two-hit kinetics (*blue red*). Each of these hits was presumed to represent a somatic mutation. It was realized only later that these two "hits" inactivated two copies of the same gene—*Rb*. (From A.G. Knudson Jr., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 68:820–823, 1971. With permission from the author.)

The kinetics of tumor formation led to the deduction (or speculation, to be honest) that the development of retinoblastoma depended on the full loss of function of a TSG, which became known as the retinoblastoma gene or *Rb*. For children who inherit a defective allele of the *Rb* gene from one parent, a mutant version of the *Rb* gene will be present in all of the cells of the developing embryo, including the cells of the retina (**Figure 7.5**). Any one of these retinal cells needs to sustain only a single (somatic) mutation to inactivate the remaining wild-type allele; such cells, fully lacking this TSG function, could then spawn a retinoblastoma. Given the need for only one somatic mutational event and the large number of vulnerable retinal cells, children with the familial form of the disease typically develop multiple tumors usually affecting both eyes, that is, the bilateral form of the disease.



A diagram of the dynamics of retinoblastoma formation. In familial retinoblastoma, the genotype of a fertilized egg already contains a single mutant R b allele on one of the two chromosomes. Then a single somatic mutation is sufficient to introduce a mutant R b allele on the other chromosome. The typical consequence is bilateral disease. By contrast, in sporadic retinoblastoma, one somatic mutation produces a mutant R b allele on one of the two chromosomes,

and a second somatic mutation is required to produce a mutant R b allele on the other chromosome. The typical consequence is unilateral disease.

Figure 7.5 Dynamics of retinoblastoma formation In familial retinoblastoma (*left*), the fertilized egg from which a child develops carries one defective copy of the *Rb* gene; all of this child's retinal cells will therefore carry only a single functional *Rb* gene copy. If this surviving copy of the *Rb* gene is eliminated in a retinal cell by a somatic mutation, that particular cell will lack all *Rb* gene function and will be poised to proliferate into a mass of tumor cells. In sporadic retinoblastoma (*right*), the fertilized egg is genetically wild type at the *Rb* locus, and retinoblastoma development therefore will require two successive somatic mutations striking the two copies of the *Rb* gene carried by a lineage of retinal precursor cells. Because only a single somatic mutation is needed to eliminate *Rb* function in familial cases, multiple cells in both eyes are typically affected. However, the convergence of two somatic mutations—each a rare event—on a single cell, thus its descendants, is mathematically unlikely, explaining why children with sporadic retinoblastoma generally develop only a single tumor, that is, unilateral disease.

Of note, some children with no family history of the disease also develop bilateral retinoblastoma and other cancers characteristic of the familial syndrome. In these cases, a mutation must have arisen during the formation of a parental germ cell. The child would thus inherit a defective allele that would be present in all cells of the body and, like the children with the familial form of the disease, have a higher risk of tumor development.

The dynamics differ for children with the sporadic form of the disease. In these cases, both copies of the *Rb* gene must be inactivated independently, one after the other, before a retinal cell can reach the uncontrolled proliferation that eventually results in a tumor (see Figure 7.5). Because this chain of events is expected to be rare, affected children tend to have just a solitary tumor affecting one eye (unilateral retinoblastoma).

Strikingly, this depiction of *Rb* gene behavior corresponded exactly to the recessive attributes of TSGs whose existence had been postulated from results of the cell fusion studies (see Figure 7.1). Still, all this remained no more than an attractive hypothesis, because the *Rb* gene had not yet been cloned and no molecular evidence was available demonstrating that *Rb* gene copies had been rendered inactive by mutation. This behavior seemed to create a puzzle: although the inherited, TSG-inactivating mutations associated with retinoblastoma are *recessive* when it comes to the phenotype of a cell, the familial form of the disorder is passed from one generation to the next in a fashion that conforms to the behavior of a Mendelian *dominant* allele. This apparent conundrum is discussed in detail in **Sidebar 7.1**.

Sidebar 7.1 Mutant *Rb* alleles are both dominant and recessive

Although we have not yet presented the molecular underpinnings of retinoblastoma, our discussion has already raised an apparent contradiction. At the level of the whole organism, an individual who inherits a mutant, defective allele of *Rb* is almost certain to develop retinoblastoma at some point in childhood, usually multiple tumors affecting both eyes. Hence, the disease-causing *Rb* allele is considered to act dominantly at the level of the *whole organism*. However, if we were to study the behavior of the mutant allele *within a cell* from this individual, we would conclude that the mutant allele acts recessively, because a cell carrying a mutant and a wild-type *Rb* gene copy would behave normally. How can we explain this genetic paradox?

The dominant behavior of the mutant *Rb* allele at the organismic level is determined by the likelihood that one or more cells in the retina of a person who inherits a mutant allele of *Rb* (hence has the genotype $Rb^{+/-}$) will lose the remaining wild-type *Rb* allele and become $Rb^{-/-}$. The likelihood that such a loss will take place depends on the size of the target cell population in the developing retina. For example, if the average retina contains 5×10^6 cells that are susceptible to transformation, and if the rate of loss of the surviving wild-type allele in the cells of an $Rb^{+/-}$ heterozygous individual is 1 per 10^6 cells, then on average 5 cells in each of this individual's eyes will lose the surviving *Rb* allele and therefore all *Rb* gene function. Each of these $Rb^{-/-}$ cells will then be primed to spawn a retinoblastoma, producing multiple ($\sim$5) tumors in each eye. Hence the inheritance of a defective *Rb* allele, which produces heterozygous cells in both retinas, virtually preordains disease development.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

retinoblastoma
: Pediatric tumor of the oligopotential stem cells of the retina.

cryoablation
: The elimination of a tissue or a group of cells by directed localized freezing.

sporadic
: Describing a disease or condition that appears to occur randomly in a large population without any apparent inborn predisposition.

familial
: Referring to an organismic trait or a syndrome that is heritable and therefore found in clusters in certain families.

OceanofPDF.com

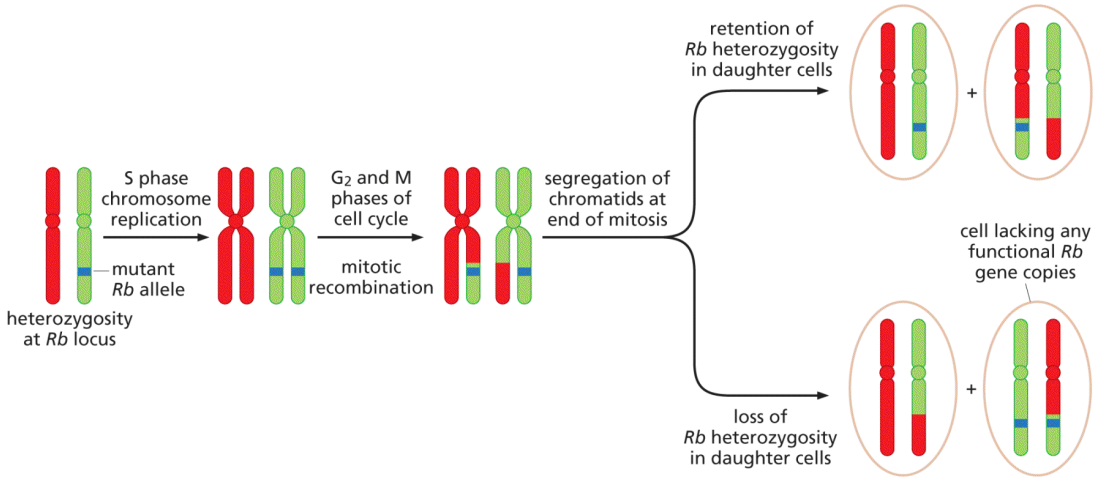
7.4 Incipient cancer cells eliminate wild-type copies of TSGs by a variety of mechanisms

The findings with retinoblastoma reinforced the notion that anti-proliferative genes, like the proposed *Rb* gene, might be important regulators of tumorigenesis. Still, for the sporadic form of the disease, the vexing question of how single cells could acquire the necessary “two hits” remained. A solution to this dilemma is provided by a broader look at how gene function can be lost.

Imagine a cell in which one of the two *Rb* gene copies had been inactivated by some type of mutational event that occurs with a frequency comparable to that associated with most mutational events—about 10^{-6} per cell generation. A cell with this mutation would now be in a heterozygous configuration, having one wild-type and one defective gene copy, that is, $Rb^{+/-}$. Because the mutant *Rb* allele is recessive at the cellular level, this heterozygous cell would continue to exhibit a wild-type phenotype. Now, what if the second, wild-type gene copy of *Rb* were inactivated by a mechanism that did not depend on its being struck directly by a second, independent, rare mutational event? Instead, perhaps some exchange of genetic information took place between homologous chromosomes, one of which carried the wild-type *Rb* allele, whereas the other carried the mutant, inactive allele. Such recombination takes place during meiosis, when sperm and eggs are formed. It can also occur in actively proliferating cells as they prepare their chromosomes for division—a form of genetic exchange called mitotic recombination.

In this fashion, the chromosomal arm carrying the wild-type *Rb* allele might be replaced with a chromosomal arm carrying the mutant allele derived from the paired homologous chromosome. Because this process depends upon reciprocal exchange of genetic information between chromosomal arms, the participating chromosomes would both remain full-length and therefore indistinguishable from their normal counterparts when viewed in the microscope. However, at the genetic and molecular level, one of the cells emerging from this recombination event would have replaced its remaining wild-type *Rb* allele and would therefore have become $Rb^{-/-}$. Importantly, such mitotic recombination is found to occur at a frequency of 10^{-5} to 10^{-4} per cell generation; it therefore provides a far more probable way for a cell to rid itself of the remaining wild-type copy of the *Rb* gene than direct mutational inactivation.

Prior to undergoing mitotic recombination, two homologous chromosomes (in the case of the *Rb* gene, the two human Chromosomes 13) will contain many different alleles, leading them to be heterozygous at many genetic loci (**Supplementary Sidebar 7.1**). However, following the mitotic recombination that leads to homozygosity at the *Rb* locus (with the resulting homologous chromosomes within a daughter cell possessing either an $Rb^{-/-}$ or an $Rb^{+/+}$ genotype), a number of the alleles of genes that are physically close to *Rb* on Chromosome 13 will be carried along during the exchange, and thus will also become homozygous. This genetic alteration of a gene or an extended chromosomal region is usually termed loss of heterozygosity, or simply LOH (**Figure 7.6**).

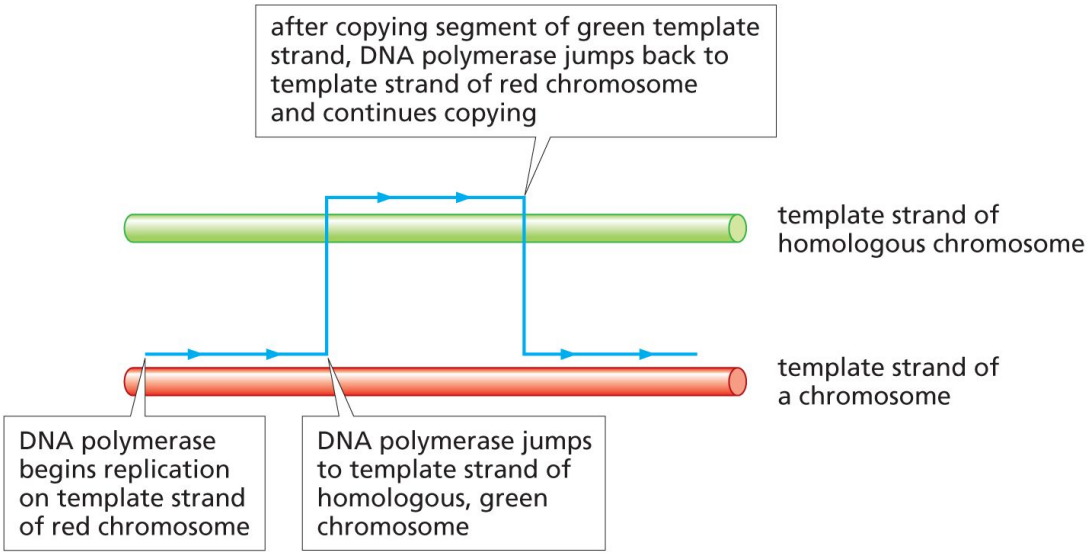


A diagram illustrating the elimination of wild-type R b gene copies. Initially, only one of two paired chromosomes has a mutant R b allele. This is heterozygosity at the R b locus. In S phase chromosome replication, each chromosome doubles up, so now there is an X-shaped chromosome with no mutant allele on either chromatid and an X-shaped chromosome with a mutant allele on each chromatid. Mitotic recombination during the G 2 and M phases of the cell cycle causes the two chromosomes to end up each with a wild-type allele one chromatid and a mutant allele on the other. Depending on how the four chromatids pair up during segregation at the end of mitosis, one of two outcomes is will result. First, there may be two pairs of chromosomes each with a wild-type allele on one chromosome and a mutant allele on the other. This is retention of R b heterozygosity in daughter cells. Second, one pair of chromosomes may have a mutant allele on each chromosome and the other pair only wild-type alleles. This is loss of R b heterozygosity in daughter cells.

Figure 7.6 Elimination of wild-type *Rb*gene copies Mitotic recombination can lead to loss of heterozygosity (LOH) of a gene such as *Rb*. During the G2 phase of the cell cycle, genetic material can be exchanged between the chromatids of two

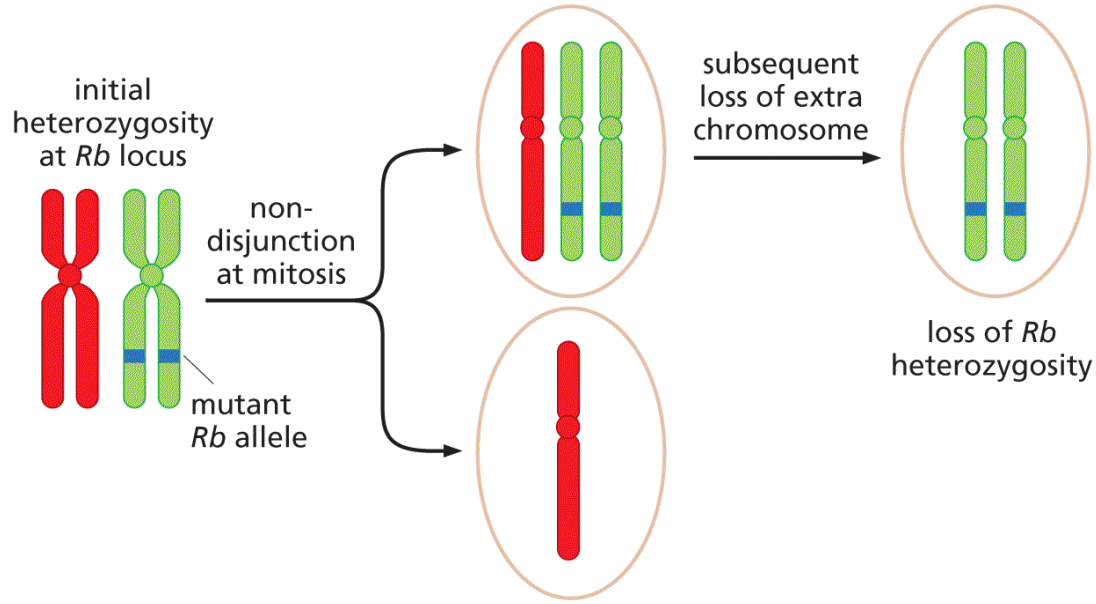
homologous chromosomes (for example, the two Chromosomes 13) through the process of genetic crossing over. The subsequent segregation of chromatids may yield a pair of daughter cells that both retain heterozygosity at the *Rb* locus. (The mutant *Rb* allele is indicated here as a *blue line*.) With equal probability, the process could alternatively yield two daughter cells that have undergone LOH at the *Rb* locus (and other nearby loci on the same chromosomal arm). One of these cells will be homozygous for the wild-type *Rb* gene, and the other will be homozygous for the mutant *Rb*.

LOH and the elimination of TSGs such as *Rb* can be achieved in many other ways. One of these derives from the process of gene conversion (**Figure 7.7A**). In this mechanism, the enzyme replicating a DNA strand on one chromosome temporarily switches templates and begins to replicate the DNA strand belonging to the homologous chromosome. After progressing some distance along this strand, it disentangles and reverts to using the template strand on which it started (a mechanism sometimes termed copy choice). In this manner, this newly synthesized strand of DNA will now contain DNA sequences identical to a stretch on the homologous chromosome, again resulting in LOH. Such gene conversion is known to occur even more frequently per cell generation than mitotic recombination.



A template strand of a chromosome is shown in red and a template strand of a homologous chromosome is shown in green. D N A polymerase begins replication on the red template strand. Then D N A polymerase jumps to the green, homologous template strand. After copying a segment of the green strand, D N A polymerase jumps back to the red template strand and continues copying.

(A)



A diagram that begins with two X-shaped chromosomes after S phase chromosome replication, one of which has the mutant R b allele on both chromatids. Following non-disjunction at mitosis, one of the daughter cells ends up with three chromatids instead of two, including both chromatids with the mutant alleles. The other daughter cell receives just one chromatid. If the daughter cell with three chromosomes loses the one without the mutation, it is left with two chromosomes that both have the mutation. Then loss of R b heterozygosity has occurred.

(B)

Figure 7.7 Loss of heterozygosity via gene conversion and chromosomal nondisjunction (A) During the process of gene conversion, a DNA polymerase initially begins to use a DNA strand on one chromosome (*red*) as a template for the synthesis of a new daughter strand (*blue*). After advancing some distance down this template strand, the polymerase jumps to the other (homologous) chromosome (*green*) and uses one of its strands as a template for further elongation of the nascent daughter strand. After progressing some distance down this strand, the polymerase may jump back to the originally used template strand and continue replication. In this manner, a mutant TSG allele, such as a mutant allele of *Rb*, may be transmitted from one chromosome (*green*) to its homolog (*red*), replacing the wild-type TSG allele that was previously residing there. (B) LOH can occur through the mis-segregation of chromosomes during mitosis. When such chromosomal nondisjunction takes place, one daughter cell will retain

both chromatids of a chromosome rather than the usual allotment of a single chromatid. The resulting triploidy of this chromosome in one daughter cell (*top*) may be disadvantageous, so descendants of this cell may shed an extra chromosome and revert to a diploid state. Because the chromosome to be lost will likely be selected at random, this reversion to diploidy may result in homozygosity for the Rb^{-} chromosome and loss of the wild-type allele (carried by the *red* chromosome).

LOH can also be achieved by large chromosomal deletions or by simply breaking off and discarding an entire chromosomal region without replacing it with a copy derived from the other homologous chromosome. These events result in hemizygosity of the chromosomal region, in which now all the genes on this chromosomal arm or segment are present in only a single copy rather than the usual two copies per cell. (Cells can survive with only one copy of certain chromosomal regions, but the loss of a single copy of other chromosomal regions seems to put cells at a distinct biological disadvantage.) Such hemizygosity is counted as an LOH, because only one allelic version of a gene in this chromosomal region can be detected.

In many tumors, LOH is achieved through the loss of an entire chromosome as a result of inaccurate chromosomal segregation at mitosis, a process called nondisjunction (Figure 7.7B). In the descendant cell that incorrectly receives three chromosomes, one may subsequently be shed, leaving two identical copies of one of the homologous chromosomes behind.

A detailed examination of chromosomal complements in human colon carcinoma cells has shown that, at least in these cancers, LOH is frequently achieved via genetic alterations that change the overall structure of chromosomes—an event that can be observed in the karyotype of the affected cells. Many of these events appear to be translocations, in that they involve recombination between chromosomal arms on nonhomologous chromosomes. Such recombination events might be triggered by double-stranded DNA breaks followed by fusion of the resulting ends with DNA sequences originating in other chromosomes. In this fashion, some genetic regions may be duplicated and others lost altogether. In Chapter 10 (see Section 10.4) we will discuss in greater detail one specific molecular mechanism in which such nonhomologous recombination events may occur during the development of a tumor.

Because LOH is thought to occur at a far higher frequency than mutational alteration of genes in cells that are $Rb^{+/-}$, the second, surviving wild-type copy of the *Rb* gene would be far more likely to be lost through LOH than through a mutation directly striking this gene copy (**Supplementary Sidebar 7.2**). Consequently, most retinoblastoma tumor cells would be predicted to show LOH at the *Rb* locus and at genetic markers that reside nearby on Chromosome 13; conversely, the cells in only a

small minority of tumors would be predicted to carry two distinct mutant alleles of *Rb*, each inactivated by an independent mutational event.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mitotic recombination
: Recombination between homologous chromosomal arms occurring during somatic cell proliferation, often during the G2 phase of the cell cycle (rather than during mitosis).

loss of heterozygosity
: A genetic event in which one of two alleles at a heterozygous locus is lost; the lost allele may simply be discarded or be replaced with a duplicated copy of the surviving allele. *See also* **allelic deletion**.

gene conversion
: Process whereby the genetic information on one chromosome is transferred to the homologous chromosome without genetic recombination or crossing over occurring between the two chromosomes.

copy choice
: Genetic recombination mechanism whereby, during the replication of DNA on one chromosome, the replication machinery switches to using the DNA sequences on another chromosome as template.

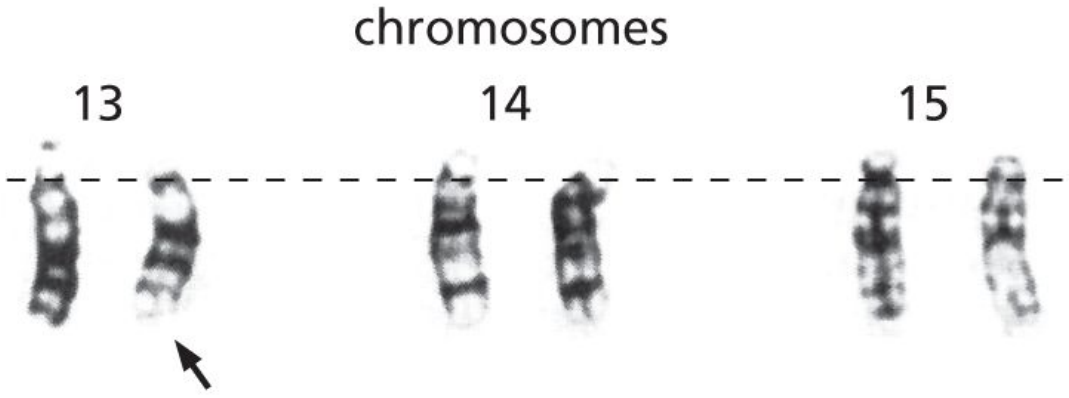
hemizygosity
: Presence of only one copy of an autosomal gene per cell.

nondisjunction
: (1) Failure of two chromatids to separate from one another during mitosis or two homologous chromosomes to separate from one another during meiosis. (2) State created by this failure of separation.

OceanofPDF.com

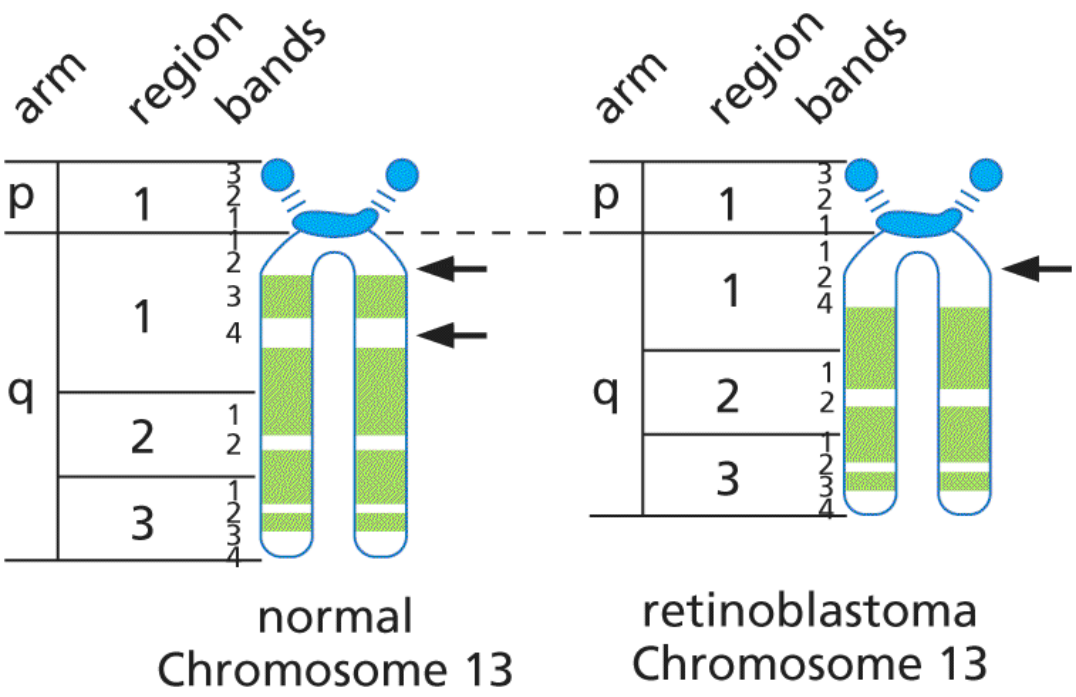
7.5 The Rb gene often undergoes loss of heterozygosity in tumors

In 1978, the chromosomal localization of the *Rb* gene was determined by examining the chromosomes present in retinoblastomas. In a small number of retinal tumors, careful analysis of chromosomal karyotypes (see Sidebar 1.2) revealed interstitial deletions within the long arm (q) of Chromosome 13. Even though each of these deletions began and ended at different sites within this chromosomal arm, they shared in common the loss of chromosomal material in the 4th band within the 1st region of this chromosomal arm, that is, 13q14 (**Figure 7.8**). These interstitial deletions eliminated many hundreds, often thousands, of kilobases of DNA, indicating that a number of genes in this region had been jettisoned simultaneously by the developing retinal tumor cells. These changes involved the *loss* of genetic information, providing evidence that the *Rb* gene, which was imagined to lie somewhere in this chromosomal region, had been discarded—precisely the outcome predicted by the tumor suppressor gene theory. (Such large-scale deletions are actually rare. In most retinoblastomas, the mutations that knock out the *Rb* gene affect far smaller segments of chromosomal DNA and are therefore submicroscopic, that is, invisible upon microscopic analysis of metaphase chromosome spreads.)



Human chromosome pairs 13, 14 and 15, stained. They look like maggots with irregular dark banding. In pair 13, the right chromosome is shorter than the left one and is missing a dark band.

(A)



A diagram showing the precise difference between normal Chromosome 13 and retinoblastoma Chromosome 13. On both chromatids, the normal chromosome has bands 3, 2 and 1 in region 1 of the short p arm. In the long q arm, it has bands 1 through 4 in region 1, bands 1 and 2 in region 2, and bands 1 through 4 in region 3. The retinoblastoma chromosome is missing band 3 in q arm region 1.

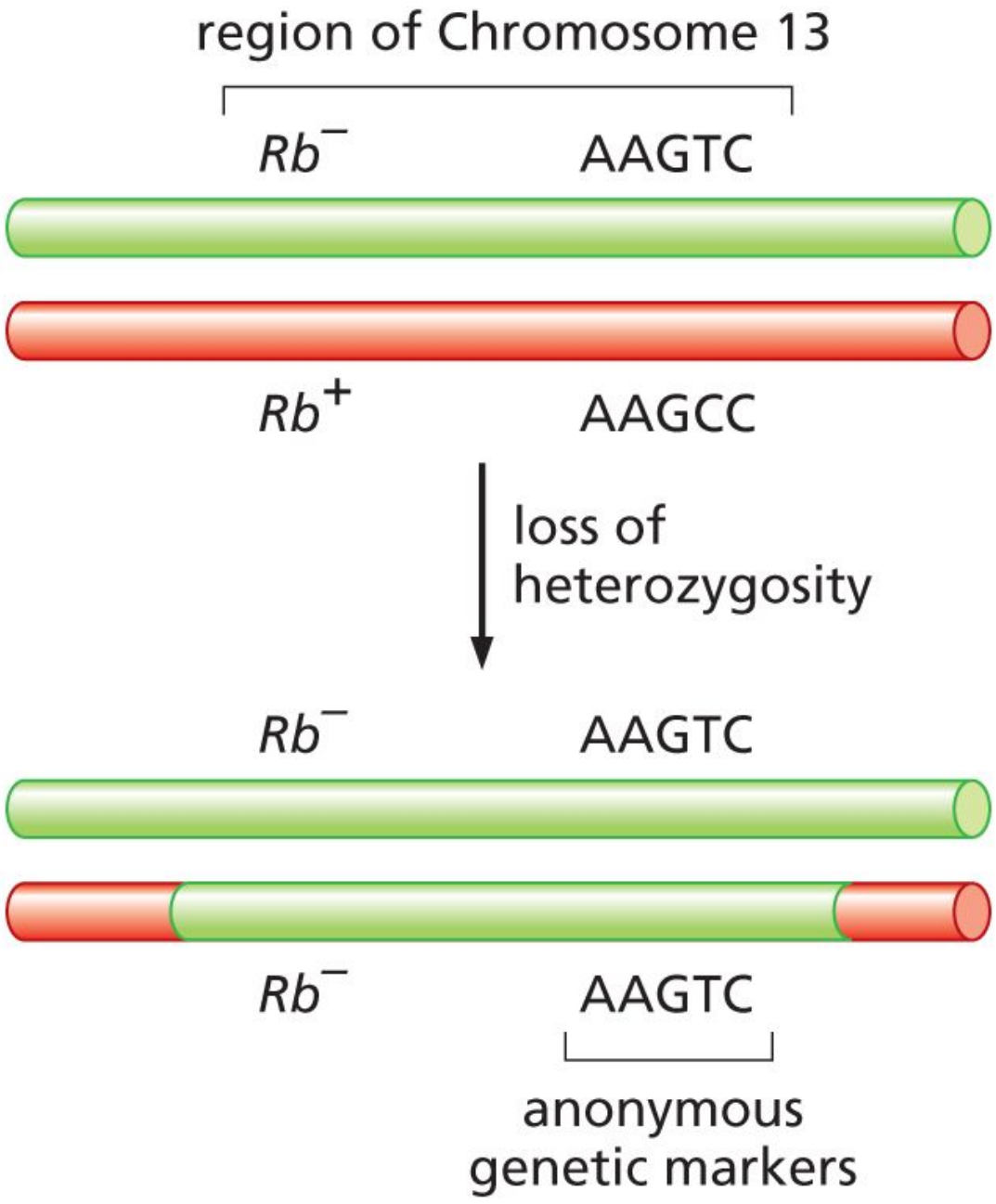
(B)

Figure 7.8 Chromosomal localization of the *Rb* locus (A) The characteristic darkly staining bands of each human chromosome delineate that chromosome's specific subregions. In this case, careful study of the karyotype of retinoblastoma cells, performed on the condensed mitotic chromosomes, revealed a deletion in the long arm (q) of Chromosome 13 in a 6-year-old child with retinoblastoma (*arrow*). Note that while the loss of the darkly staining band at 13q13 (*green*) is easily observed, a significant portion of 13q14 (where *Rb* is present) is also lost. For comparison, Chromosomes 14 and 15 in the same cell appeared normal. (B) Careful cytogenetic analysis revealed that the deletion was localized between bands 13q12 and 13q14, that is, between the 2nd and 4th bands of the 1st region of the long arm of Chromosome 13. (A, from U. Francke, *Cytogenet. Cell Genet.* 16:131–134, 1976. With permission from Karger.)

Through good fortune, a second gene lying in the 13q14 chromosomal region had already been reasonably well characterized. This gene, which encodes the enzyme esterase D, is represented in the human gene pool by two distinct alleles whose protein products migrate at different rates in gel electrophoresis. The esterase D locus thus presented geneticists with a golden opportunity to test the LOH theory. Recall that when LOH occurs, an entire chromosomal region is usually affected. Because the esterase D locus had been mapped close to the *Rb* gene locus on the long arm of Chromosome 13, if the *Rb* locus suffered LOH during tumor development, then the esterase D locus should frequently suffer the same fate. In effect, the esterase D locus could act as a surrogate marker for the still-mysterious, yet-to-be-cloned *Rb* gene.

Indeed, when researchers scrutinized the cells of several children afflicted with retinoblastoma who were born heterozygous at the esterase D locus (having inherited two distinct esterase D alleles from their parents), they found that their tumor cells had lost the protein product of one esterase D allele and thus must have undergone LOH. This finding suggested that the closely linked *Rb* gene had also undergone LOH. Such a change conformed to the theorized behavior ascribed to a growth-suppressing gene, both of whose wild-type alleles needed to be jettisoned before a cell could proliferate uncontrollably.

In a more general sense, the swapping of information between two chromosomes was likely to involve not only the *Rb* gene but also, as argued above, a large number of genes and genetic markers flanking the *Rb* locus on both sides. Such genetic markers might be short nucleotide base sequences that are not themselves components of any gene. For example, a genetic marker sequence in a neighboring region of Chromosome 13 that was initially AAGCC/AAGTC (hence heterozygous) might now become either AAGCC/AAGCC or AAGTC/AAGTC (and therefore homozygous; **Figure 7.9**). Like the esterase D gene, this neighboring oligonucleotide segment has been “carried along for the ride” with the nearby *Rb* gene during the swapping of sequences between the two homologous chromosomes. Indeed, precisely this type of analysis was performed in 1982, and the results reinforced the conclusion reached from analysis of the esterase D locus. Note, by the way, that such genetic marker sequences could lie many kilobases distant from the *Rb* locus in an intergenic region of Chromosome 13q14. Because they are not known to be associated with any biological function, these marker sequences are termed anonymous, and their conversion from a heterozygous to a homozygous configuration needs to be determined by nucleotide sequencing or by hybridization with an appropriate sequence-specific DNA probe (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.1**).

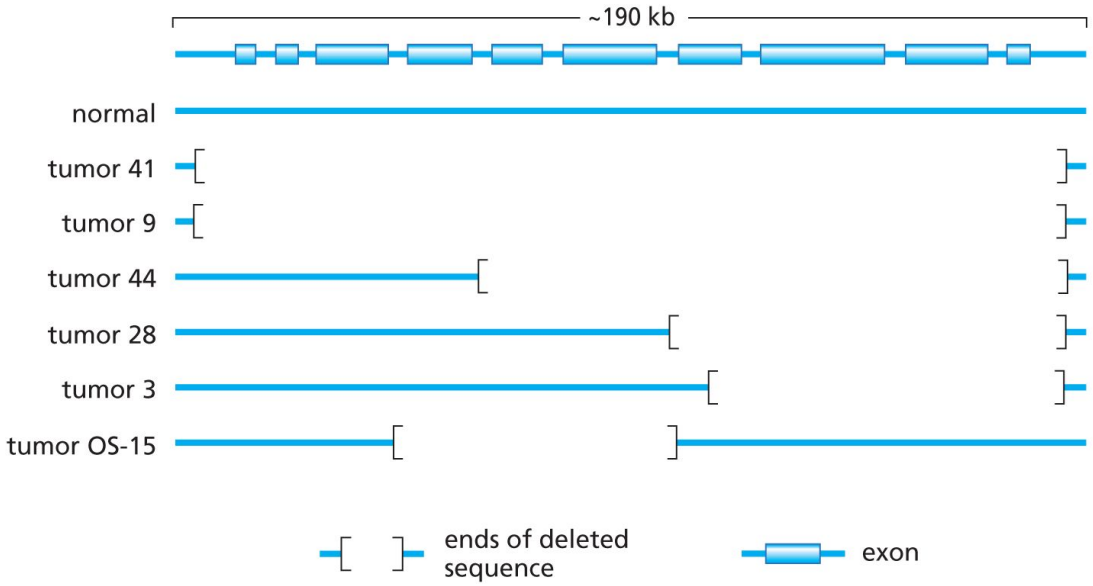


An illustration of tracking loss of R b heterozygosity. Initially, one copy of chromosome 13 is R b positive and in the same segment there is a base sequence A A G C C, while the other copy is R b negative and the nearby base sequence is A A G T C. The base sequences are anonymous genetic markers. After loss of heterozygosity, both copies are R b negative and with base sequence is A A G T C.

Figure 7.9 Demonstrations of loss of heterozygosity at the *Rb* locus A genetic marker sequence, which is linked to the *Rb* locus but is not part of any known gene,

can also be used to follow changes in this chromosomal region. The pentanucleotide shown here may initially be in a heterozygous configuration (*top*) and during the process that leads to LOH at the *Rb* locus may also undergo LOH.

In 1986 the *Rb* gene was cloned with the aid of a DNA probe that recognized an anonymous genomic sequence that turned out to be located within the *Rb* gene itself. Additional DNA probes derived from different portions of the cloned gene revealed, as was previously speculated, that the *Rb* gene in retinoblastomas suffered mutations that resulted in its inactivation (**Figure 7.10**). In some retinoblastomas, these mutations involve large deletions within the *Rb* gene and its flanking DNA sequences. Analysis of the DNA from these tumors by Southern blotting (**Supplementary Sidebar 4.3**) revealed that the mutant *Rb* allele resulting from these deletions was usually present in homozygous configuration. This meant that after the creation of an inactive or null allele of *Rb* on one chromosome, the corresponding region on the other, homologous chromosome was discarded or replaced, leading to hemizygosity or LOH at this locus. These data directly validated many of the predictions of the theoretical models that had been proposed to explain how TSGs behave during the development of cancers.



Six mutations of the R b gene. The normal gene contains ten protein-coding segments containing a total of about 190 kilobases. In the tumor 41 and tumor 9 mutations, all ten segments are deleted. In the tumor 44 mutation, segments 5 through 10 are deleted. In the tumor 28 mutation, segments 7 through 10 are deleted. In the tumor 3 mutation, segments 8 through 10 are deleted, along with part of segment 7. In the tumor O S-15 mutation, segments 4 through 6 are deleted.

Figure 7.10 Mutations of the *Rb* gene A cloned *Rb* cDNA was used as a probe in a Southern blot analyses of genomic DNAs from a variety of retinoblastomas and an osteosarcoma. Shown are the 10 protein-coding segments (exons) of the *Rb* gene (*blue cylinders*). The normal version of the gene encompasses a chromosomal region of approximately 190 kb. However, analysis of a subset of retinoblastoma DNAs indicated that significant portions of this gene had undergone homozygous deletion (the segments within each pair of brackets). Thus, tumors 41 and 9 lost the entire *Rb* gene, apparently together with flanking chromosomal DNA segments on both sides. Tumors 44, 28, and 3 lost, to differing extents, the right half of the gene together with rightward-lying chromosomal segments. The fact that an osteosarcoma (OS-15) lost a portion of this gene that was contained entirely within the left and right boundaries of the gene argued strongly that this 190-kb chromosomal DNA segment, and not leftward- or rightward-lying DNA segments, was the repeated target of mutational inactivation occurring during the development of these tumors. (From S.H. Friend et al., *Nature* 323:643–646, 1986. With permission from Nature.)

As mentioned earlier, children who inherit a defective *Rb* gene copy are also predisposed to osteosarcomas (bone tumors) as adolescents. With an *Rb* gene probe in hand, it became possible to demonstrate that certain osteosarcomas also carried structurally altered *Rb* genes (see Figure 7.10). At the same time, these findings highlighted a puzzle that remains largely unsolved to this day: Why does inheritance of an inactive mutant gene such as *Rb*, which encodes a protein that operates in a wide variety of cell types and tissues throughout the body (as we will learn in Chapter 8), predispose individuals predominantly to retinal and bone tumors? Why are not all tissues at equal risk? One answer to this question is that mutation of *Rb* appears to be sufficient to initiate the development of tumors in the cells that give rise to retinoblastoma. In other tissues, multiple mutational events are required to form tumors (as we discuss in Chapter 11). Interestingly, we now know that *Rb* is widely inactivated in human cancers, although in each tumor it is typically mutated along with other unrelated genes located elsewhere in the genome. Thus, in such settings, *Rb* mutation is not sufficient, on its own, to trigger tumor development.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

interstitial deletion
: Genetic alteration, often observed through analysis of karyotype, that causes deletion of an internal segment of a chromosomal arm.

submicroscopic
: Too small to be seen through the light microscope.

surrogate marker
: A measurable parameter, often a diagnostic parameter, that serves to indicate the behavior of another process or agent whose behavior it parallels and reflects.

anonymous (marker)
: Referring to a segment of genomic DNA that is not affiliated with any known gene or biological function.

null allele
: An allele of a gene that lacks all normal functions of the gene. *See also* **hypomorphic**.

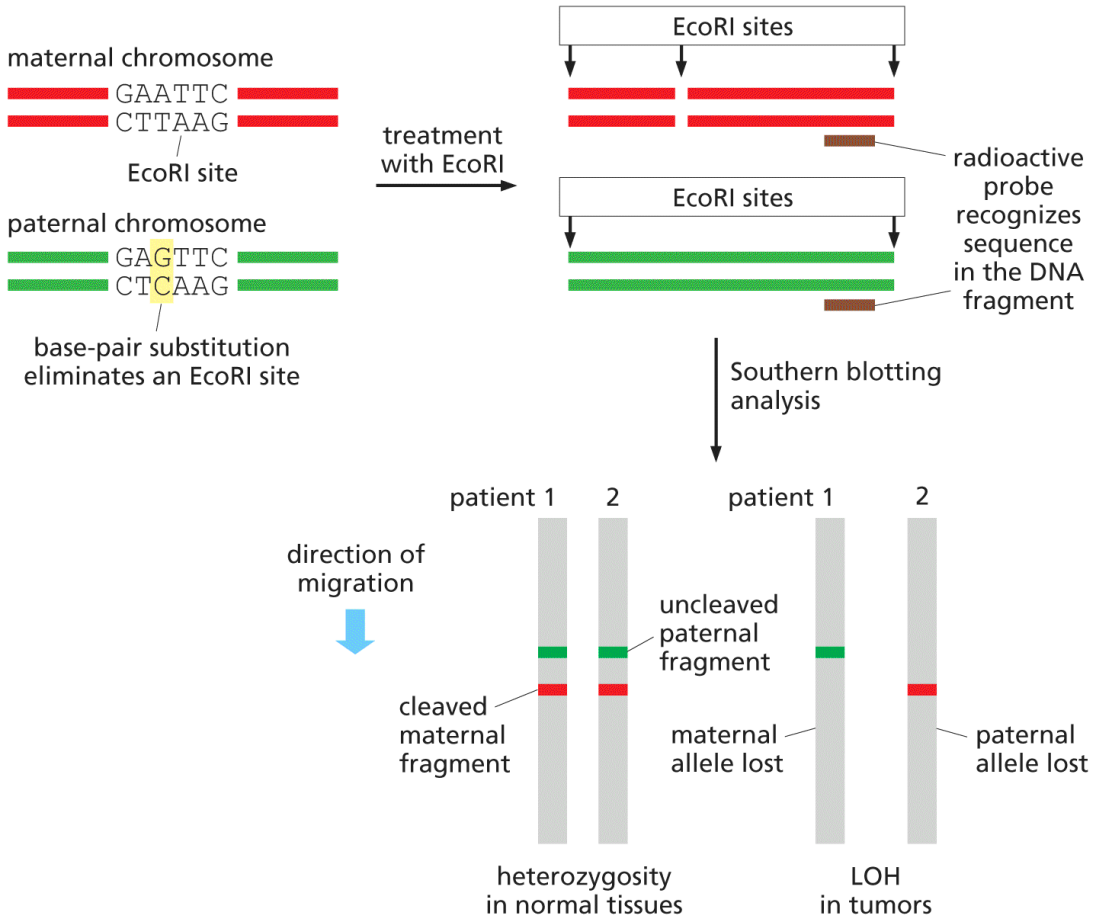
OceanofPDF.com

7.6 Loss-of-heterozygosity events can be used to find TSGs

Numerous TSGs that operate like the *Rb* gene were presumed to lie scattered around the human genome and to play a role in the pathogenesis of many types of human tumors. In the late 1980s, researchers interested in finding these genes were confronted with an experimental quandary: How could one find genes whose existence is most apparent when they are missing from a cell's genome? Dominantly acting oncogenes could be detected readily through their ability to transform normal cells in a transfection-focus assay (see Figure 4.1) or through their presence in a retrovirus genome or within a chromosomal segment that repeatedly underwent gene amplification in a number of independently arising tumors.

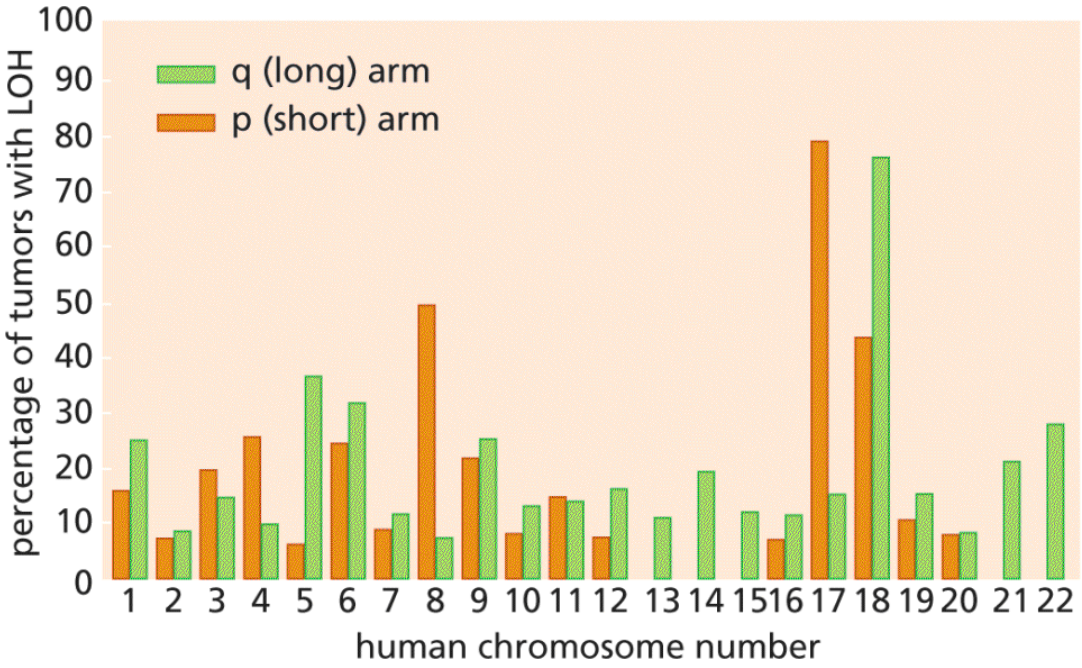
To locate TSGs, however, researchers needed a more generalizable strategy—one that did not depend on the chance observation of interstitial chromosomal deletions or the presence of a known gene (for example, esterase D) that, through good fortune, lay near a TSG on a chromosome.

The tendency of TSGs to undergo LOH during tumor development provided cancer researchers with a novel genetic strategy for tracking these genes down. Because the chromosomal region flanking a TSG often experienced LOH along with the TSG itself, investigators should be able to detect the existence of a still-unknown TSG by searching for anonymous genetic markers that repeatedly undergo LOH during the development of a specific type of human tumor. This strategy, which was used to follow the behavior of the *Rb* gene (see Figure 7.9), could be generalized by exploiting DNA segments that were mapped to sites throughout the human genome. Once again, these DNA segments had no obvious affiliations with specific genes. In some cases, one version of the segment contained a nucleotide sequence that could be recognized by a restriction enzyme, whereas another variant possessed a single base-pair substitution that eliminated this sequence, rendering the surrounding DNA segment resistant to cleavage (**Figure 7.11A**). Because such sequence variability occurs as a consequence of normal genetic variability in the human gene pool, such sites were said to represent polymorphic genetic markers (see Section 1.2). When the allelic versions of such polymorphic sequences either permit or disallow cleavage by a restriction enzyme, the marker is called a restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP).



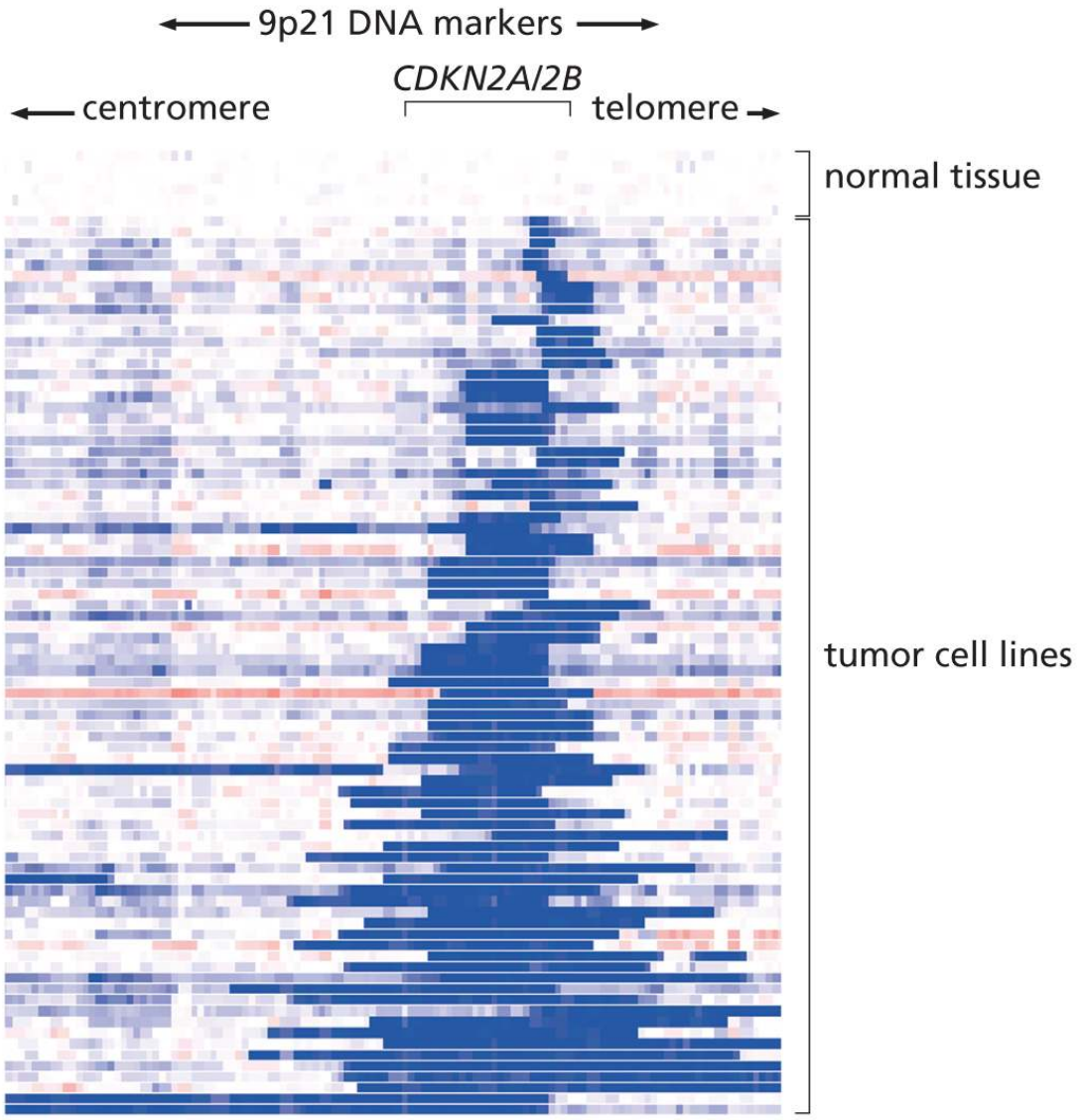
A maternal chromosome segment has an Eco R I site in the middle consisting of the base sequence G A A T T C on one strand and the paired sequence C T T A A G on the other. Also shown is a corresponding paternal chromosome segment in which the second A T pair has been replaced by G C. This base-pair substitution eliminates the middle Eco R I site. The two ends of each chromosome segment are also Eco R I sites. Treatment with Eco R I produces one long paternal segment and two shorter maternal segments. One end of the paternal segment and one end of one of the material segments contains a sequence that is recognized by a radioactive probe. When southern blotting analysis is performed on two cancer patients, heterozygosity in normal tissue results in display of both the cleaved maternal fragment and the uncleaved paternal fragment. L O H in tumors, by contrast, results in display of only the uncleaved paternal fragment in Patient 1 and only the cleaved maternal fragment in Patient 2. The other alleles have been lost.

(A)



A histogram with human chromosome number on the horizontal axis and percentage of tumors with L O H on the vertical axis. Over 70 percent of tumors have a mutation on the short p arm of chromosome 17, and over 70 percent of tumors have a mutation on the long q arm of chromosome 18. Chromosomes 13, 14, 15, 21 and 22 never have a mutation on the short arm. Other locations vary from 5 to 50 percent.

(B)



A map of deletions in various tumor cell lines, listed vertically. The horizontal axis represents 9 p 21 D N A markers between the centromere on the left and the telomere on the right. A section down the middle is labeled C D K N 2 A slash 2 B. This section contains dark blue bands that get increasingly wider toward the bottom of the map.

(C)

Figure 7.11 Localization of TSGs (A) Genetic markers that are defined by the presence or absence of a restriction endonuclease cleavage site can be used to analyze chromosomal regions. In this illustration, the DNA segment in the chromosome of maternal origin (*red*) can be cleaved by the enzyme EcoRI, while the homologous, paternally derived segment (*green*), contains a single base-pair

substitution that renders it resistant to cleavage. This variation represents a restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), and a radioactive probe that recognizes the right end of both DNA fragments can be used in Southern blot analysis to determine whether cleavage has occurred (*below*). The presence or absence of a cleavage fragment makes it possible, in turn, to track the inheritance of DNA sequences that behave genetically like Mendelian alleles. In this example, the DNAs from the normal tissues of two cancer patients (1 and 2) both show heterozygosity in this chromosomal region. However, loss of heterozygosity (LOH) has occurred in their tumor DNAs, with patient 1 showing loss of the maternal allele and patient 2 shows loss of the paternal allele. ((B) RFLP analysis was used to survey the LOH in entire chromosomal arms in a series of human colon cancers. The long (q) and short (p) arms of the chromosomes are indicated by *green bars* and *orange bars*, respectively. The “allelic deletions” indicated on the ordinate are equivalent to LOH. Although these analyses were imprecise, because very few probes were available at the time to gauge the extent of LOH, Chromosomes 17 and 18 were nevertheless obvious targets of LOH and thus likely to harbor TSGs. Chromosome 8p is also a target of LOH, but its TSG has never been identified. Another TSG inactivated in almost all colorectal cancers, *Apc*, is located on Chromosome 5q. Because this gene is so large (creating a large target of random mutations), both copies are often lost through independent, random mutation, rather than mutation followed by LOH; thus, its importance in the development of colorectal cancer is underestimated in this analysis. The short arms of Chromosomes 13, 14, 15, 21, and 22 contain only ribosomal genes and thus were not included in this analysis. (C) The locations of deleted chromosomal segments reveal the locations of TSGs. Thus, another strategy for localizing and identifying TSGs depends on mapping overlapping regions of relatively small deletions that affect a chromosomal arm. In this analysis, DNAs of 80 tumor cell lines (arrayed top to bottom, names deleted) were analyzed for the presence or absence of sequences recognized by 250,000 probes, present at an average density of one per 12 kb across the genome. Short homozygous deletions (*dark blue bars*) frequently eliminate one or both copies of *CDKN2A* and *CDKN2B*, an adjacent pair of TSGs that map to Chromosome 9p21. In contrast, nearby chromosomal sequences to the right and left are rarely affected by either significant amplification (*light red squares*) or deletions (*light blue squares*). (B, from B. Vogelstein et al., *Science* 244:207–211, 1989. With permission from AAAS. C, from S.M. Rothenberg et al., *Cancer Res.* 70:2158–2164, 2010. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Cancer geneticists used RFLP markers to determine whether various chromosomal regions frequently underwent LOH during the development of certain types of tumors. Figure 7.11B shows the results of using RFLPs to search for regions of LOH arising in

a group of human colorectal tumors, that is, carcinomas of the colon and rectum. In this case, the long and short arms of most chromosomes were represented by at least one RFLP marker, allowing investigators to track their fate. The results indicate that the short (p) arm of Chromosome 17 and the long (q) arm of Chromosome 18 suffered unusually high rates of LOH in this series of tumors—rising far above the background level of the 15–20% LOH that befell most of the remaining chromosomal arms in the cells of these tumors. (This background level of LOH reveals that all chromosomal regions within developing tumors have some tendency to undergo LOH at a certain rate. However, if the LOH happens to occur in a region harboring a TSG, the proliferation or survival of the cells in which this has occurred may be favored, leading to high numbers of tumors carrying this particular LOH.) The fact that specific arms of Chromosomes 17 and 18 frequently underwent LOH in tumors provided strong evidence that both arms harbored still-unknown TSGs. Thus, this genetic localization provided the investigators with a clear indication of where in the genome they should search for the culprit TSGs.

Another strategy to identify regions of LOH and suspected TSGs depends on the detection of single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs, pronounced “snips”) in normal and cancer cell genomes. These SNPs are detected by DNA sequencing or by other methods, such as using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) primers that are complementary to one or the other polymorphic allele (**Supplementary Sidebar 7.3**). Based on large-scale genome sequencing of the human population, we now know of more that 100 million SNPs in the human genome, which represent a significant fraction of the genetic variation that exists in our species.

Of course, these SNP markers are useful for LOH analyses only if a significant proportion of individuals are heterozygous at these marker loci in their normal tissues. Because about 1 in 10 known SNPs has an allele frequency of greater than 5% across human populations, the average person’s genome is likely to harbor a SNP marker in heterozygous configuration every few kilobases of DNA. Such greatly increased density, compared with that of the earlier RFLP markers, allows regions of LOH to be localized far more precisely to chromosomal segments that may contain a relatively small number of genes, greatly facilitating the identification of candidate TSGs within these regions. Nonetheless, even prior to the introduction of these and other more powerful mapping techniques, LOH analyses allowed the identification and subsequent cloning of more than 30 TSGs.

SNP-based analysis of collections of tumors has identified many regions of frequent deletion across cancer genomes, indicative of TSG loss. The fruits of one such study can be seen in Figure 7.11C, in which relatively small deletions of a region of human Chromosome 9 were frequently detected in the genomes of 80 cancer cell lines. The relatively short chromosomal DNA segment that was targeted, time after time, by these

deletions is known from other work to encode two well-studied TSGs, *CDKN2A*, and *CDKN2B*, which will be discussed in detail in Chapters 8 and 9.

In the current era of genomics, in which cancer cell genomes can be rapidly sequenced and compared with the genome sequences of normal tissues, the identification of candidate TSGs is more straightforward. Such sequencing studies not only reveal regions of chromosomal deletion or LOH, but they can be used to tentatively identify TSGs based on the observation of frequent loss-of-function mutations in these genes across multiple patients with a given cancer type (as discussed in Chapter 12). As an example, the connection to cancer of *Keap1*, a TSG that we will discuss shortly, was revealed by direct DNA sequencing.

Together, these various techniques have uncovered at least two hundred TSGs in the human genome. A representative handful of these TSGs, which have been found on almost every chromosome, is presented in **Table 7.1**. As shown, several of these TSGs are also responsible for important familial cancer syndromes through mutation in the germ line of affected individuals.

Table 7.1 Examples of human tumor suppressor genes

Name of gene	Chromosomal location	Familial cancer syndrome	Sporadic cancer	Function of gene product
CHD5	1p36.31	cutaneous melanoma	many types	histone reader, transcriptional inducer
FH	1q42.3	familial leiomyomatosis[a]	—	fumarate hydratase
BAP1	3p21.1	mesothelioma, melanoma	mesothelioma, uveal melanoma	ubiquitin hydrolase
RASSF1A	3p21.3	—	many types	multiple functions

Name of gene	Chromosomal location	Familial cancer syndrome	Sporadic cancer	Function of gene product
TGFB2	3p2.2	HNPCC	colon, gastric, pancreatic carcinomas	TGF-β receptor
VHL	3p25–26	von Hippel–Lindau syndrome	renal cell carcinoma	ubiquitylation of HIF
hCDC4	4q32	—	endometrial carcinoma	ubiquitin ligase
APC	5q21–22	familial adenomatous polyposis coli	colorectal, pancreatic, and stomach carcinomas; prostate carcinoma	β-catenin degradation
miR-124a[b]	8p23.1	—	many types	suppresses CDK6
p16^{INK4A}[c]	9p21	familial melanoma	many types	CDK inhibitor
p14^{ARF}[d]	9p21	—	all types	p53 stabilizer
PTC	9q22.3	nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome	medulloblastomas	receptor for hedgehog GF

Name of gene	Chromosomal location	Familial cancer syndrome	Sporadic cancer	Function of gene product
TSC1	9q34	tuberous sclerosis	—	inhibitor of mTOR[e]
PTEN[f]	10q23.3	Cowden's disease, breast, and gastrointestinal carcinomas	glioblastoma; prostate, breast, and thyroid carcinomas	PIP_3 phosphatase
WT1	11p13.5–6	Wilms tumor	Wilms tumor	TF
MEN1	11p13	multiple endocrine neoplasia	—	histone modification, transcriptional repressor
BWS/CDKN1C	11p15.5	Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome	—	$p57^{Kip2}$ CDK inhibitor
CBL	11q23.3	juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia	adult myelomonocytic leukemia	SH2-containing ubiquitin ligase
RB	13q14.2	retinoblastoma, osteosarcoma	retinoblastoma; sarcomas; bladder, breast, esophageal, and lung carcinomas	transcriptional repression; control of E2Fs

Name of gene	Chromosomal location	Familial cancer syndrome	Sporadic cancer	Function of gene product
miR-15a/16-1	13q14.3	—	B-cell lymphoma	suppresses Bcl-2, Mcl-1, cyclin D1, Wnt3a
miR-127	14q32.31	—	many types	suppresses Bcl-6
TSC2	16p13.3	tuberous sclerosis	—	inhibitor of mTOR[e]
CBP	16p13.3	Rubinstein–Taybi syndrome	AML[g]	TF co-activator
CYLD	16q12–13	cylindromatosis	—	deubiquitinating enzyme
CDH1	16q22.1	familial gastric carcinoma	invasive cancers	cell–cell adhesion
BHD/FLCN	17p11.2	Birt–Hogg–Dube syndrome	kidney carcinomas, hamartomas	regulator of mTOR[e]
TP53	17p13.1	Li–Fraumeni syndrome	many types	TF
NF1	17q11.2	neurofibromatosis type 1	colon carcinoma, astrocytoma, acute	Ras-GAP

Name of gene	Chromosomal location	Familial cancer syndrome	Sporadic cancer	Function of gene product
			myelogenous leukemia	
DPC4[h]	18q21.1	juvenile polyposis	pancreatic and colon carcinomas	TGF-β TF
KEAP1	19p13.2	—	many types	suppresses anti-oxidant response
LKB1/STK11	19p13.3	Peutz–Jegher syndrome	hamartomatous colonic polyps	serine/threonine kinase
RUNX1	21q22.12	familial platelet disorder	AML	TF
SNF5 [i]	22q11.2	rhabdoid predisposition syndrome	malignant rhabdoid tumors	chromosome remodeling
NF2	22q12.2	neurofibroma-predisposition syndrome	schwannoma, meningioma; ependymoma	cytoskeleton–membrane linkage
WTX	Xq11.1	—	Wilms tumor	β-catenin degradation

Adapted in part from E.R. Fearon, *Science* 278:1043–1050, 1997; and in part from D.J. Marsh and R.T. Zori, *Cancer Lett.* 181:125–164, 2002.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

restriction fragment length polymorphism
: Variation in DNA sequence that can be detected through its effect of allowing or preventing cleavage of a chromosomal DNA segment by a restriction enzyme.

polymorphism
: A variant genetic allele or phenotype that does not appear to be associated with any pathology and, by implication, is a reflection of normal intraspecies variability and thus normal function.

colorectal
: Referring to the lower gastrointestinal tract including the colon and rectum.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aFamilial leiomyomatosis includes multiple fibroids, cutaneous leiomyomas, and renal cell carcinoma. The gene product is a component of the tricarboxylic cycle.Return to reference a
- b*miR124a-1* genes are also located at 8q12.3 and 20q13.33l.Return to reference b
- cAlso known as *MTS1*, *CDKN2*, and *p16*.Return to reference c
- dThe human homolog of the murine $p19^{ARF}$ gene.Return to reference d
- emTOR is a serine/threonine kinase that controls, among other processes, the rate of translation and activation of Akt/PKB, TSC1 (hamartin), and TSC2 (tuberin), thereby controlling both cell size and cell proliferation.Return to reference e
- emTOR is a serine/threonine kinase that controls, among other processes, the rate of translation and activation of Akt/PKB, TSC1 (hamartin), and TSC2 (tuberin), thereby controlling both cell size and cell proliferation.Return to reference e
- fAlso called *MMAC* or *TEP1*.Return to reference f
- gThe *CBP* gene is involved in chromosomal translocations associated with AML. These translocations may reveal a role of a segment of CBP as an oncogene rather than a tumor suppressor gene.Return to reference g
- hEncodes the Smad4 TF associated with TGF-β signaling; also known as *MADH4* and *SMAD4*.Return to reference h
- iThe human SNF5 protein is a component of the large Swi/Snf complex that is responsible for remodeling chromatin in a way that leads to transcriptional repression through the actions of histone deacetylases. The rhabdoid predisposition syndrome involves susceptibility to atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumors, choroid plexus carcinomas, medulloblastomas, and extra-renal rhabdoid tumors.Return to reference i

OceanofPDF.com

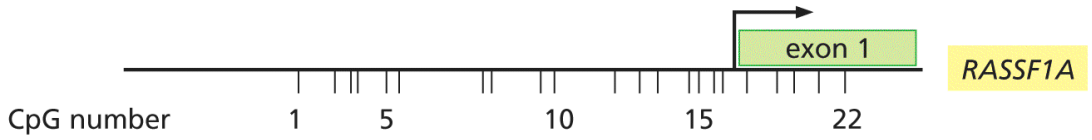
7.7 Promoter methylation represents an important mechanism for inactivating TSGs

DNA molecules can be altered covalently by the attachment of methyl groups to cytosine bases (as described in Section 1.8). In mammalian cells, this methylation is found only when cytosine bases are located in a position that is 5′ to guanosines, that is, in the sequence CpG. This modification is often termed “methylated CpG” (meCpG), even though only the cytosine is methylated. When CpG methylation occurs in the vicinity of a gene promoter, it can cause repression of transcription of the associated gene, and conversely, when methyl groups are removed, transcription of the gene is often de-repressed. The means by which this modification influences gene expression is an active area of research, but it appears that methylation attracts proteins that control the packaging of DNA (as discussed in Section 1.8). In any case, extensive research indicates that the methylation of CpGs and the accessibility of promoter DNA are as important as are mutations in shutting down TSGs.

During the development of all animal species, decisions concerning the transcriptional state of many genes are made early in embryogenesis. Once made, these decisions must be passed on to the descendant cells in various parts of the growing embryo. Because CpG methylation can be transmitted from cell to cell heritably (see Section 1.8), it represents a highly effective way to ensure that descendant cells, many cell generations removed from an early embryo, continue to respect and enforce the methylation decisions made by their embryonic ancestors.

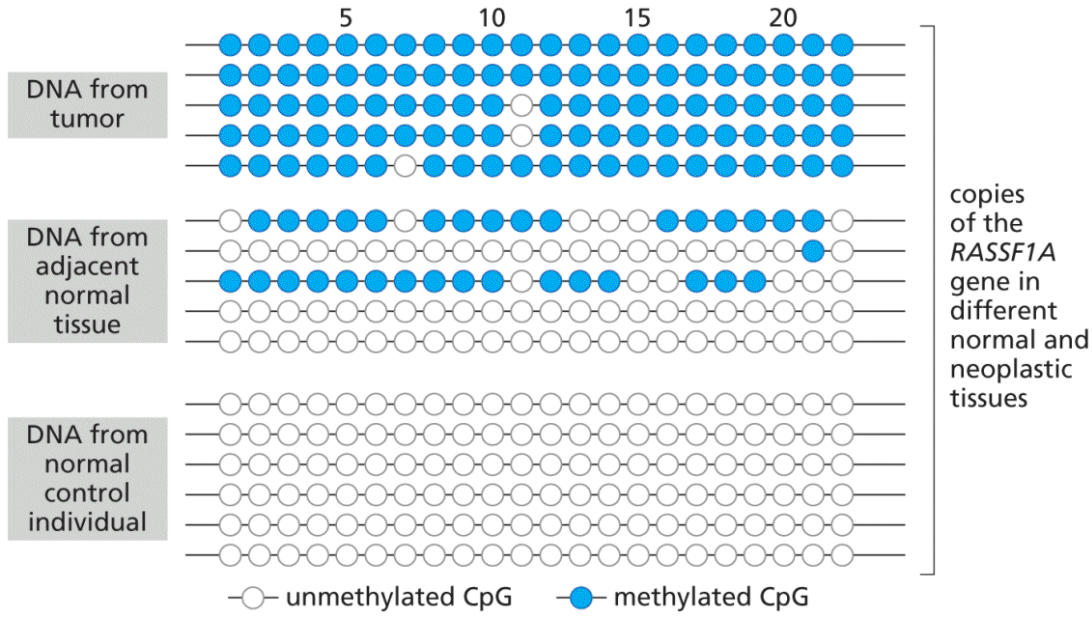
The enzymes that are responsible for methylating CpGs—called DNA methyltransferases—are themselves altered in cancer, as are the enzymes involved in regulating the removal of this 5′ methyl group. The end result is that the methylation state of cancer genomes differs from that of the corresponding normal cell. Indeed, in developing cancers, DNA methylation is altered in two opposing directions. In the early stages of tumor development, methylation throughout the cancer cell genome is often found to decrease progressively (as determined by the technique described in **Supplementary Sidebar 7.4**). This decline could result from the failure of DNA methyltransferases to maintain methylation levels or to an active process of demethylation. Much of this “global hypomethylation” takes place within highly repeated DNA sequences that do not specify biological functions; although such hypomethylation is correlated with chromosomal instability, it remains unclear whether it directly causes this instability.

Apart from this global hypomethylation, there are also localized regions of DNA—segments with a high density of CpGs called “CpG islands”—that become excessively methylated in the genomes of cancer cells. These CpG islands are often associated with the promoters of genes (**Figure 7.12**), and their methylation by DNA methyltransferases silences transcription, resulting in the shutdown of gene expression. (A recent survey indicated that 60–70% of all genes in the human genome have CpG islands affiliated with their promoters, yielding a total of 12,000 to 14,000 genes that are, in principle, vulnerable to inappropriate shutdown by methylation.)



A map of the R A S S F 1 A promoter region, showing the locations of C p G dinucleotides numbered 1 through 22 from left to right. Exon 1 starts between numbers 17 and 18 and runs rightward to the end of the region.

(A)



A diagram shows the methylation state of each C p G in 16 different normal and neoplastic tissue samples, 5 of which are from a tumor, 5 of which are from adjacent normal tissue, and 6 of which are from a normal control individual. In the tumor D N A, all or all but one of the C p Gees are methylated. In adjacent normal tissue, the number of methylated C p Gees is highly variable–anywhere from 0 to 16. In the control individual, none of the C p Gees are ever methylated.

(B)

Figure 7.12 Methylation of the *RASSF1A* promoter (A) A map of the structure of the *RASSF1A* promoter region shows the location of the CpG dinucleotides (ticks) in the CpG island in which the promoter is embedded. (B) A diagram depicts the state of methylation of each CpG dinucleotide (circle) in this island. Filled circles (*blue*) indicate that a CpG has been found to be methylated, whereas open circles indicate that it is unmethylated. Analyses of five DNA samples from a prostate tumor indicate methylation at almost all CpG sites in the *RASSF1A* CpG island; this CpG island is unmethylated in most, but not all, samples of adjacent, ostensibly normal tissue. Analyses of control DNA from a normal individual indicate the absence of any methylation of the CpGs in this CpG island. (These data suggest the presence of some abnormal cells with methylated DNA in the ostensibly normal tissue adjacent to tumor 232.) Analysis was performed by bisulfite sequencing (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.4**). (Courtesy of W.A. Schulz and A.R. Florl.)

CpG methylation is effective in shutting down the expression of a gene only if it occurs within the promoter or other regulatory sequences of the gene; conversely, methylation of DNA sequences in the body of the gene, including exonic sequences, seems to have little if any effect on the level of transcription. Because promoter methylation can silence a gene as effectively as a mutation of its nucleotide sequences, we might predict that methylation plays a role in the silencing of TSGs that occurs during tumor progression. In fact, this has proven to be the case. More than half of the TSGs that are inactivated by germ-line mutations in familial cancer syndromes have been found to be silenced in sporadic cancers by promoter methylation. For example, when the TSG *Rb* is mutated in the germ line, it leads to familial retinoblastoma. In sporadic retinoblastomas, however, *Rb* is inactivated either by somatic mutations or by promoter methylation. In addition, the promoters of a variety of other genes that are known or thought to inhibit tumor formation have been found in a methylated state (**Table 7.2**).

Table 7.2 Examples of hypermethylated genes found in human tumor cell genomes

Name of gene	Nature of protein function	Type of tumor
AR	androgen receptor signaling	prostate

Name of gene	Nature of protein function	Type of tumor
RARβ2	nuclear receptor for differentiation	breast, lung
$p57^{Kip2}$	CDK inhibitor	gastric, pancreatic, hepatic; AML
IGFBP	sequesters IGF-1 factor	diverse tumors
BRCA1	DNA damage response	breast, ovarian
$CDKN2A/p16^{INK4A}$	inhibitor of CDK4/6	diverse tumors
$CDKN2B/p15^{INK4B}$	inhibitor of CDK4/6	diverse tumors
APC	inducer of β-catenin degradation	colon carcinomas
miR-200s	inhibitor of epithelial-mesenchymal transition	colon, bladder, squamous cell carcinoma
ESR1	estrogen receptor signaling	breast
p73	aids p53 to trigger apoptosis	diverse tumors
GSTP1	mutagen inactivator	breast, liver, prostate

Name of gene	Nature of protein function	Type of tumor
MGMT	DNA repair enzyme	colorectal
CDH1	cell–cell adhesion receptor	bladder, breast, colon, gastric
DKK1	Wnt inhibitor	colon
MLH1	DNA mismatch repair enzyme	colon, endometrial, gastric
PTEN	degrades PIP_3	diverse tumors
TGFBR2	TGF-β receptor	colon, gastric, small-cell lung
VHL	ubiquitin ligase	kidney, hemangioblastoma
RB	cell cycle regulator	retinoblastoma
CASP8	apoptotic caspase	neuroblastoma, SCLC
APAF1	pro-apoptotic cascade	melanoma

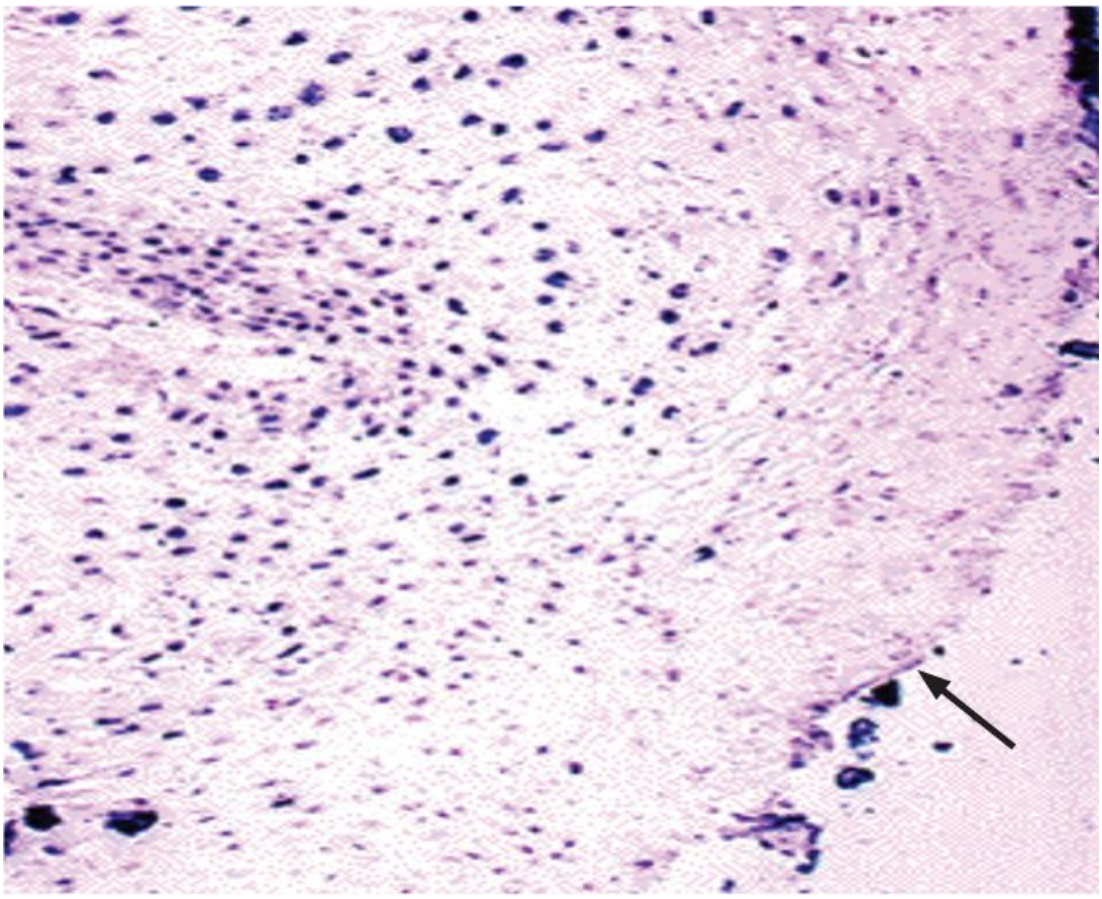
Adapted from H. Heyn and M. Esteller, *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 13:679–692, 2012.

The extent of CpG island methylation varies greatly from one tumor genome to the next. In some tumors, the hypermethylation is so extensive that such tumors are said to exhibit the “CpG island methylator phenotype” (CIMP). In the cells of these tumors, as many as 5% of the genes (that is, about 1000 genes) may possess hypermethylated

CpG islands. The molecular mechanisms driving this runaway CpG methylation remain under active investigation.

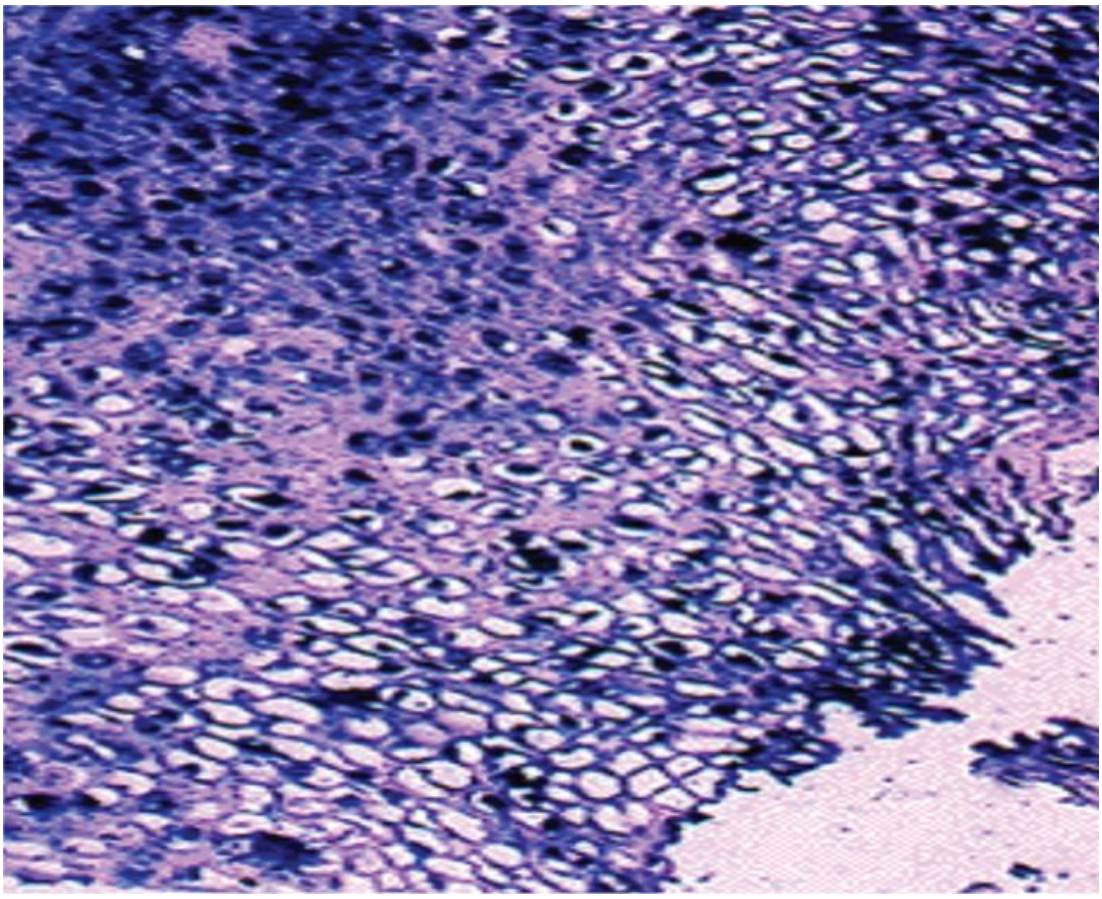
Some candidate TSGs are rarely inactivated by somatic mutations, and their involvement in creating cancer is suggested only by the finding that their promoters are methylated in large numbers of independently arising tumors. The absence of defined mutations makes it challenging to verify that inactivation of a candidate TSG actually contributes causally to cancer formation. Nevertheless, even in the absence of direct evidence of mutational inactivation, the recurring functional silencing of these genes by CpG methylation is now well accepted as proof of their roles as TSGs.

The elimination of TSG function by promoter methylation might, in principle, occur through either of two routes. Both copies of a TSG might be methylated independently of one another. Alternatively, one copy might be methylated and the second might then suffer an LOH accompanied by a duplication of the already-methylated TSG copy. Actually, this second mechanism seems to operate quite frequently. For example, one study found that a TSG called $p16^{INK4A}$ (which will be described in Section 8.4) was methylated in 44% of the (ostensibly) normal lung epithelial cells cultured from current and former smokers and not at all in the comparable cells prepared from those who had never smoked. LOH in this chromosomal region was found in 71 to 73% of the two smoking populations and in 1.5 to 1.7% of nonsmokers. This study also teaches us a second lesson: methylation of critical growth-controlling genes often occurs early in the complex, multi-step process of tumor formation—long before histological changes are apparent in a tissue. These populations of outwardly normal cells presumably provide a fertile soil for the eventual eruption of premalignant and malignant growths. This point is borne out in other tissues as well, such as the histologically normal breast tissues analyzed in **Figure 7.13**.



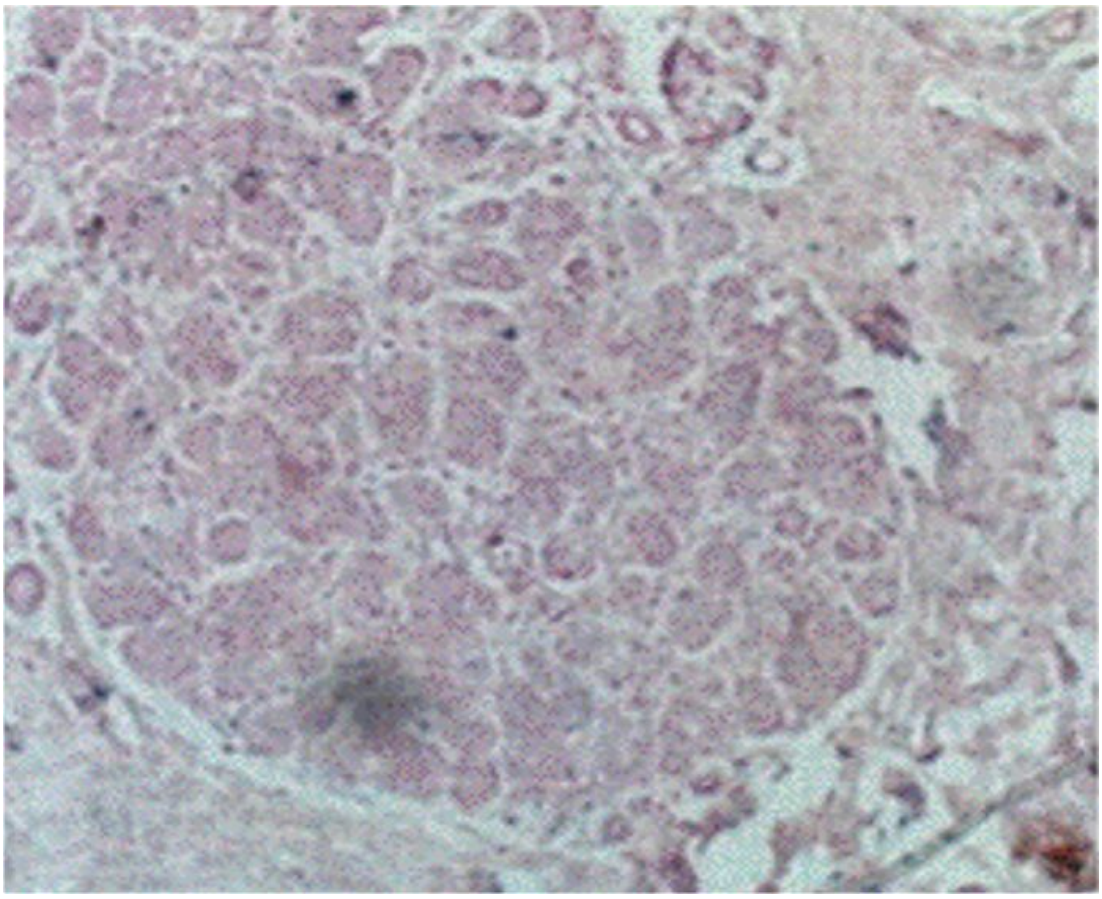
A tissue sample in which the cells are generally light in color and in some, near the edge of the sample (as marked by an arrow), the nuclei are hardly visible.

(A)



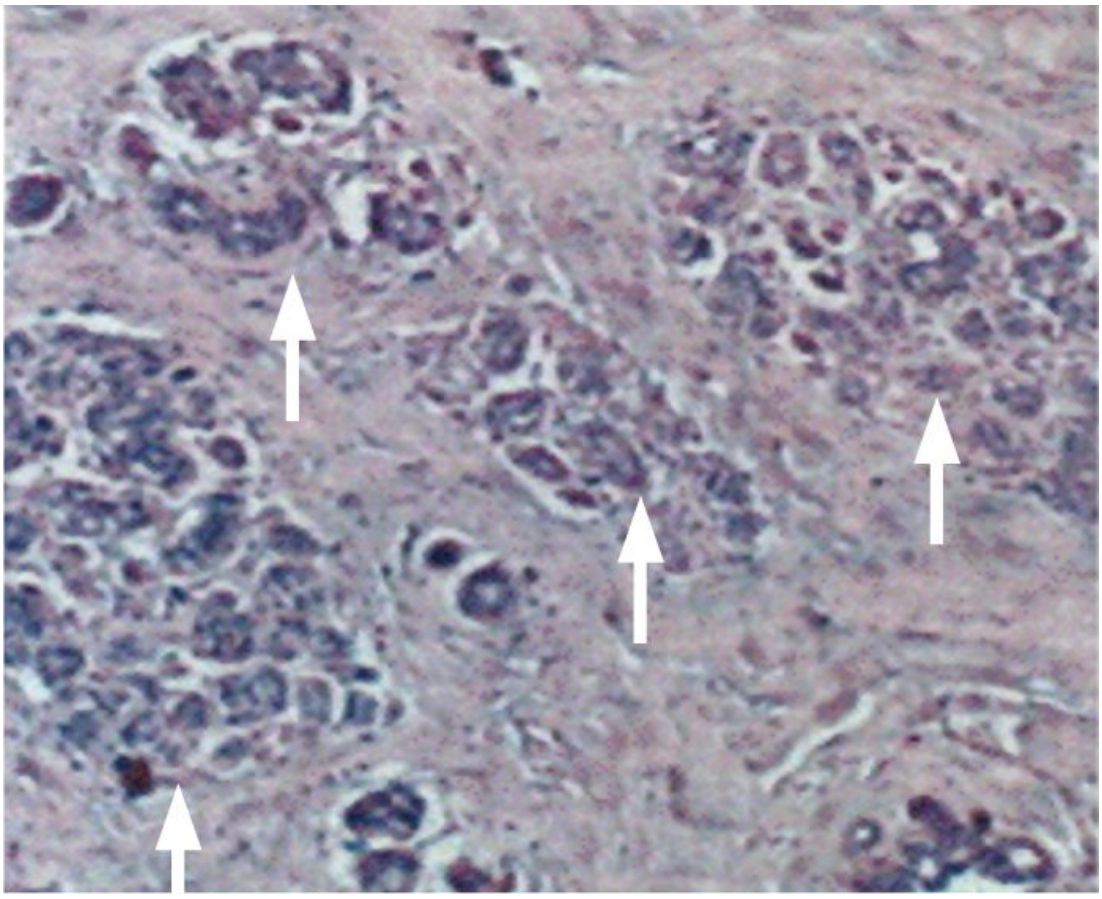
A tissue sample in which all the cells are dark blue.

(B)



A tissue sample that is generally pale.

(C)



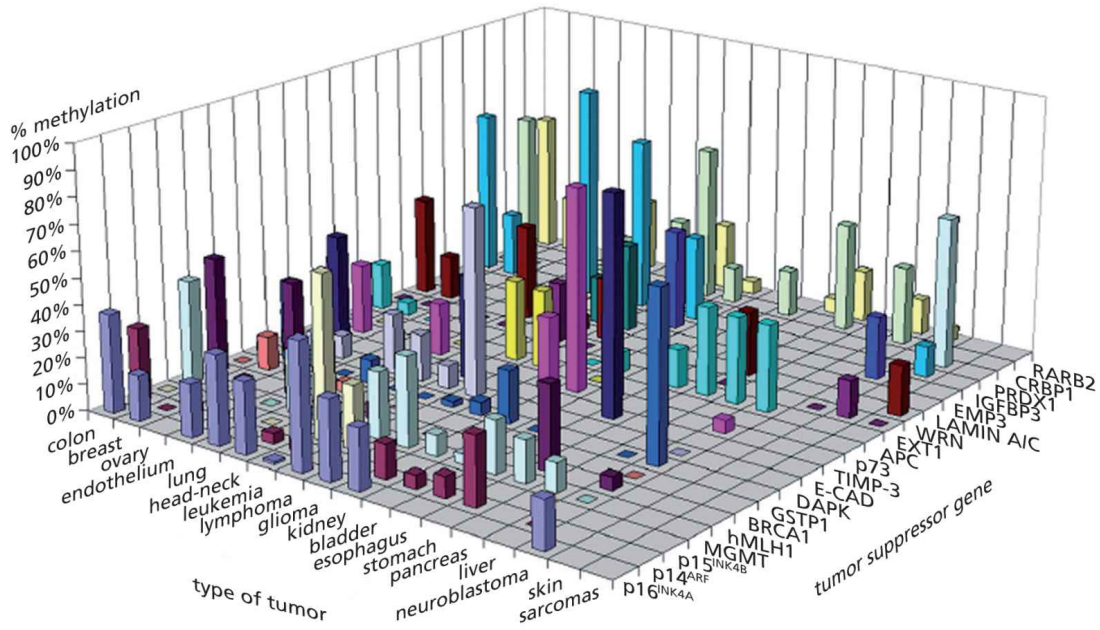
A tissue sample with nodules of darker tissue indicated by arrows surrounded by lighter colored cells.

(D)

Figure 7.13 *In situ* measurements of DNA methylation The presence or absence of methylation at specific sites in the genomes of cells can be determined in tissue sections that are fixed to a microscope slide using *in situ* hybridization. In these images, the methylation status of the promoter of the TSG $p16^{INK4A}$ is analyzed with a methylation-specific probe, which yields dark staining in areas where this gene promoter is methylated. (A) In a low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion of the cervix (*left*), nuclei of cells located some distance from the uterine surface show promoter methylation, whereas those near the surface (*arrow*) do not. (B) However, in an adjacent high-grade lesion, which is poised to progress to a cervical carcinoma (*right*), all the cells show promoter methylation. (C, D) In these micrographs of normal breast tissue, some histologically normal lobules show no promoter methylation (C), whereas others (*arrows*) show uniform promoter methylation (D). This suggests that the mammary epithelial cells in such outwardly normal lobules have already undergone a critical initiating step in

cancer progression. (A and B, from G.J. Nuovo et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 96:12754–12759, 1999. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. C and D, from C.R. Holst et al., *Cancer Res.* 63:1596–1601, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Genome-wide methylation analysis (**Supplementary Sidebar 7.4**) has allowed for comprehensive characterization of the methylation status of nearly all known TSGs. As illustrated in **Figure 7.14**, the frequency of methylation of a specific TSG varies dramatically from one type of human tumor to the next. However, the data clearly reinforce the pervasiveness of promoter methylation during the development of a wide variety of human cancers.



A 3 D bar graph with type of tumor on one horizontal axis, tumor suppressor gene on the other horizontal axis, and percent methylation on the vertical axis. The 18 tumor types range from colon, breast and ovary through glima, kidney and bladder to liver, neuroblastoma, and skin sarcomas and have a wide range of methylation. Most genes are rarely if ever methylated in skin sarcomas.

Figure 7.14 Methylation of multiple genes within tumor cell genomes This three-dimensional bar graph summarizes measurements of the methylation state of the CpG islands associated with 20 different genes that are known or presumed to play an important role in suppressing the development of human tumors. Methylation status of each was determined for 18 different tumor types. The height of each bar indicates the proportion of tumors of a given type in which a specific promoter has undergone methylation. All of these promoters are

unmethylated (or methylated to an insignificant extent) in normal tissues. The data indicate that the hypermethylation profiles vary by tumor type: several genes are hypermethylated in cancers of the colon, for example, whereas less methylation of these genes takes place in sarcomas. (Adapted from M. Esteller, *Hum. Mol. Genet.* 16:R50–R59, 2001. With permission from Oxford University Press.)

Beyond the biological significance of hypermethylation as a mechanism for the silencing of cancer-related genes, the overall state of DNA methylation in neoplastic tissue compared to normal tissue can have implications for disease diagnosis, prognosis, and therapy. For several cancer types, the overall changes in DNA methylation patterns correlate with the severity of the disease and the response to therapy, both of which affect patient survival after diagnosis. In addition, there is a growing list of cancer therapies that are directed at the enzymes that are responsible for DNA methylation and histone modifications.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

methyltransferase
: An enzyme that attaches methyl groups covalently to substrates, such as the cytosine bases of DNA or lysine residues of histones.

OceanofPDF.com

7.8 TSGs and their encoded proteins function in diverse ways

Even a cursory examination of Table 7.1 makes it clear that TSGs specify a diverse array of proteins that operate in many different intracellular sites to reduce the risk of cancer. Indeed, an anti-cancer function is the only property that is shared in common by these otherwise unrelated genes.

Some function to directly suppress the proliferation of cells in response to a variety of signals that inhibit growth and induce differentiation. Others are components of the cellular control circuitry that inhibits proliferation in response to metabolic imbalances and genomic damage.

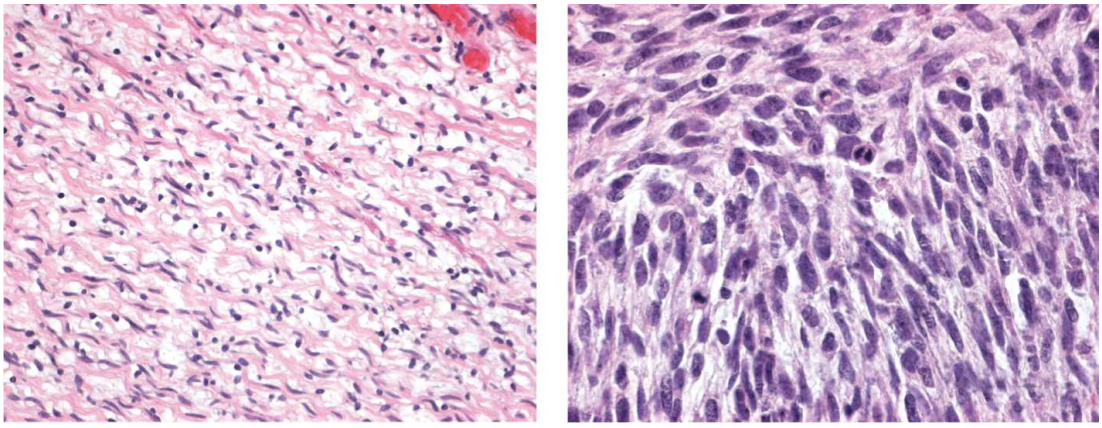
The first two TSGs that were studied intensively—the *Rb* gene discussed earlier and another called *p53* (or sometimes *Trp53* or *TP53*)—also happen to be two of the more frequently altered TSGs in human cancers. The protein encoded by the *Rb* gene, pRb, governs progress through the growth-and-division cycles of a wide variety of cells, and the growth control imposed by the *Rb* circuit appears to be disrupted in most and perhaps all human tumors. Because of its central importance, we will devote an entire chapter to *Rb* and its function (Chapter 8). The TSG *p53* and its product, p53, play an equally central role in the development of cancers and, consequently, we devote an additional chapter to an extended description of p53 and its cellular functions (Chapter 9). Several of the proteins encoded by the TSGs listed in Table 7.1 happen to be components of the *Rb* and *p53* pathways; included in these circuits are the $p16^{INK4A}$, $p15^{INK4B}$, and $p19^{ARF}$ genes, and so discussion of these will be postponed until Chapters 8 and 9 as well. Of note, several tumor viruses encode proteins that disrupt the function of pRB and p53. This explains the observations discussed earlier in this chapter showing that cancer cells transformed by infection with certain tumor viruses, unlike cancer cells lacking viral genomes, exhibit a dominant phenotype when fused with normal cells (see Figure 7.1B).

The remaining TSGs that have been discovered to date encode gene products that operate in diverse ways to suppress cell proliferation or tumor progression. These proteins interact with virtually all of the control circuits that are responsible for governing cell proliferation and survival. Some of their functions are well understood, but the actions of others remain to be fully elucidated. In the remainder of this chapter, we will focus on three TSGs that reflect the diversity of the mechanisms that cells deploy to control proliferation—and reveal how disruption of their function enhances the fitness of cancer cells. Although these mechanisms do not encompass all the ways that TSGs function, each represents an approach to regulating cell growth that is shared by many other TSGs—from those that constrain proliferation and are thus lost early in tumor initiation to those that allow malignant cells to adapt to cellular stresses and detoxify chemicals, thereby promoting their continued survival and acquired resistance to treatment.

OceanofPDF.com

7.9 The NF1 protein acts as a negative regulator of Ras signaling

The disease neurofibromatosis was first described by Friedrich von Recklinghausen in 1862. We now know that neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF1)—sometimes called von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis—is a relatively common familial cancer syndrome, with 1 in 3500 individuals affected on average worldwide. The primary feature of this disease is the development of benign tumors, called neurofibromas, in the sheaths surrounding nerves of the peripheral nervous system. On occasion, a subclass of these tumors, termed *plexiform neurofibromas*, progress to malignant tumors called neurofibrosarcomas or malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors (MPNSTs) (**Figure 7.15A**). Patients suffering from NF1 also have greatly increased risk of gliomas (tumors of the astrocyte lineage in the brain; see Figure 2.8A), pheochromocytomas (arising from the adrenal glands), and myelogenous leukemias (see Figure 2.7B). This collection of tumors involves cell types arising from diverse embryonic lineages. Neurofibromatosis type 2, which we do not discuss in detail, has distinct clinical features and arises from mutations in a completely unrelated TSG (see Table 7.1).



Two histology images. In the first image, cells and their nuclei appear small and spaced apart. In the second image, they appear large and crowded together.

(A)

A photo of a patient’s back, showing many nodules that look like acne bumps, and also two large, pale tan patches.

(B)

A portion of a human iris, with small nodules visible. They look like brown skin tags.

(C)

Figure 7.15 Neurofibromatosis Neurofibromatosis type 1 is considered a *syndrome* because a number of distinct conditions and phenotypes are associated with a single genetic state. (A) Histological observation of afflicted tissues indicates the benign neurofibromas (*left*), which occasionally progress to malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors (MPNSTs, *right*). Whereas benign neurofibromas contain multiple distinct cell types and abundant extracellular matrix material—giving them a more diffuse appearance—malignant MPNSTs consist of a more uniform collection of densely packed cancer cells. The

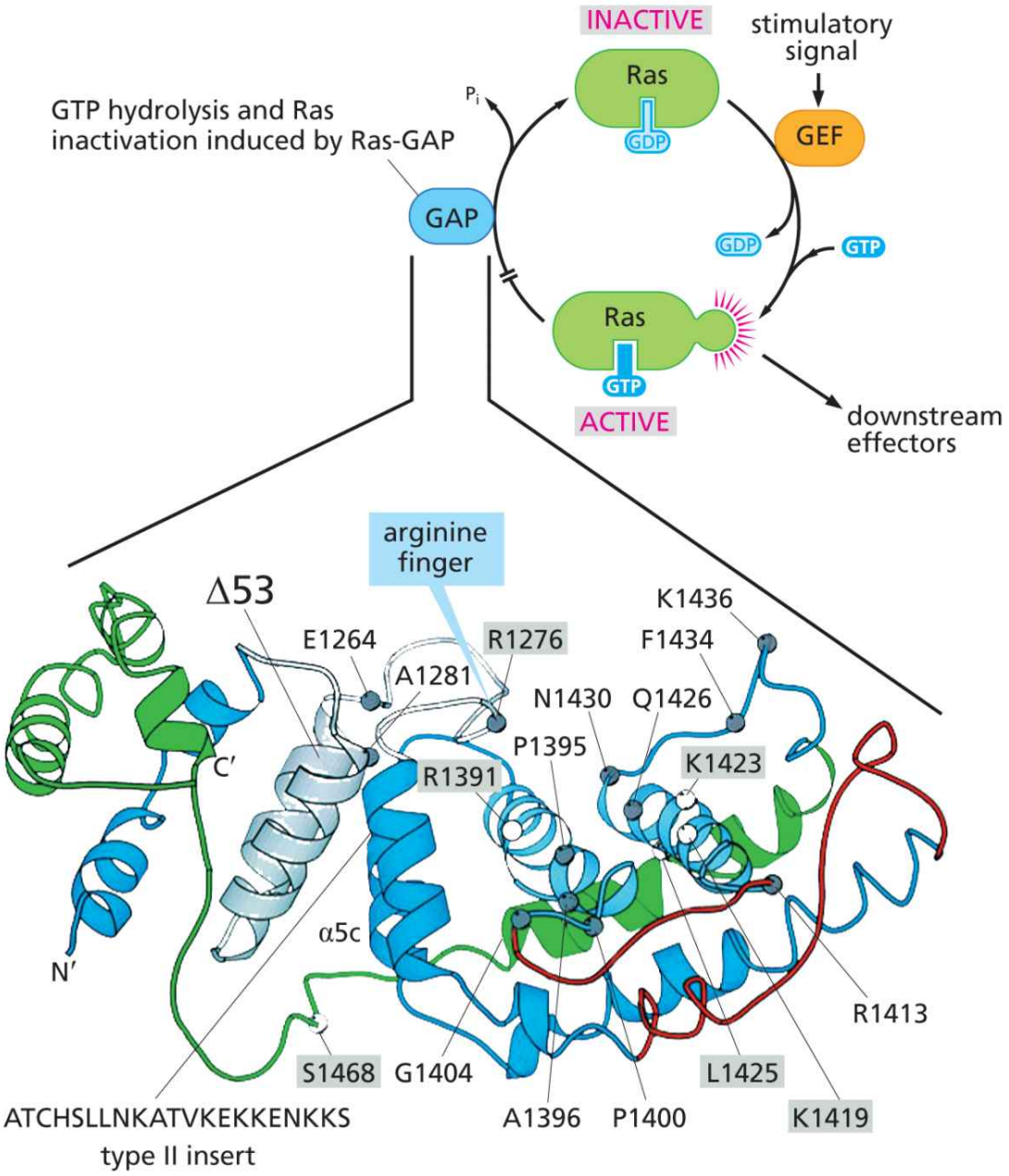
histological complexity of the neurofibromas greatly complicated the identification of the progenitors of these growths, which are now thought to be the precursors of the Schwann cells that wrap around peripheral axons. (B) Notable among the conditions associated with this syndrome are the numerous small, subcutaneous nodules (that is, neurofibromas) and the light brown *café au lait spots* (*arrows*) seen here on the back of a patient. (C) In addition, Lisch nodules are often observed in the iris of the eyes. (A, courtesy of S. Carroll. B, courtesy of B.R. Korf. C, from B.R. Korf, *Postgrad. Res.* 61:3225–3229, 1988 and courtesy of J. Kivlin.)

Patients with NF1 often suffer from additional abnormalities that involve still other cell types. Among these are café au lait spots (Figure 7.15B), which are areas of hyperpigmentation in the skin; subtle alterations in the morphology of the cells in the skin and long bones; cognitive deficits; and benign lesions of the iris called "Lisch nodules" (Figure 7.15C). The risk of developing these additional manifestations is strongly influenced by the patient's genetic background (that is, the array of all other genetic alleles in an individual's genome), because siblings inheriting the same mutant allele of the responsible TSG, called *Nf1*, often exhibit dramatically different disease phenotypes. Such variation in the clinical presentation of a genetic disease is referred to as variable expressivity.

The *Nf1* gene was cloned in 1990. The genetics of the *Nf1* gene parallels closely that of the *Rb* gene. Thus, mutant, inactivated alleles of the *Nf1* gene transmitted through the germ line act in a dominant fashion to create disease phenotypes. At the cellular level, the originally heterozygous configuration of the gene ($Nf1^{+/-}$) is converted to a homozygous state ($Nf1^{-/-}$) in tumor cells through LOH. Finally, as many as half of the patients with NF1 lack a family history of the disease, indicating that the mutant allele that they carry is the consequence of a *de novo* mutation in the germ line. More than 80% of such *de novo* mutations usually occur during spermatogenesis in the fathers of afflicted patients, a pattern also seen with *de novo* germ-line mutations of the *Rb* gene (see Sidebar 7.2).

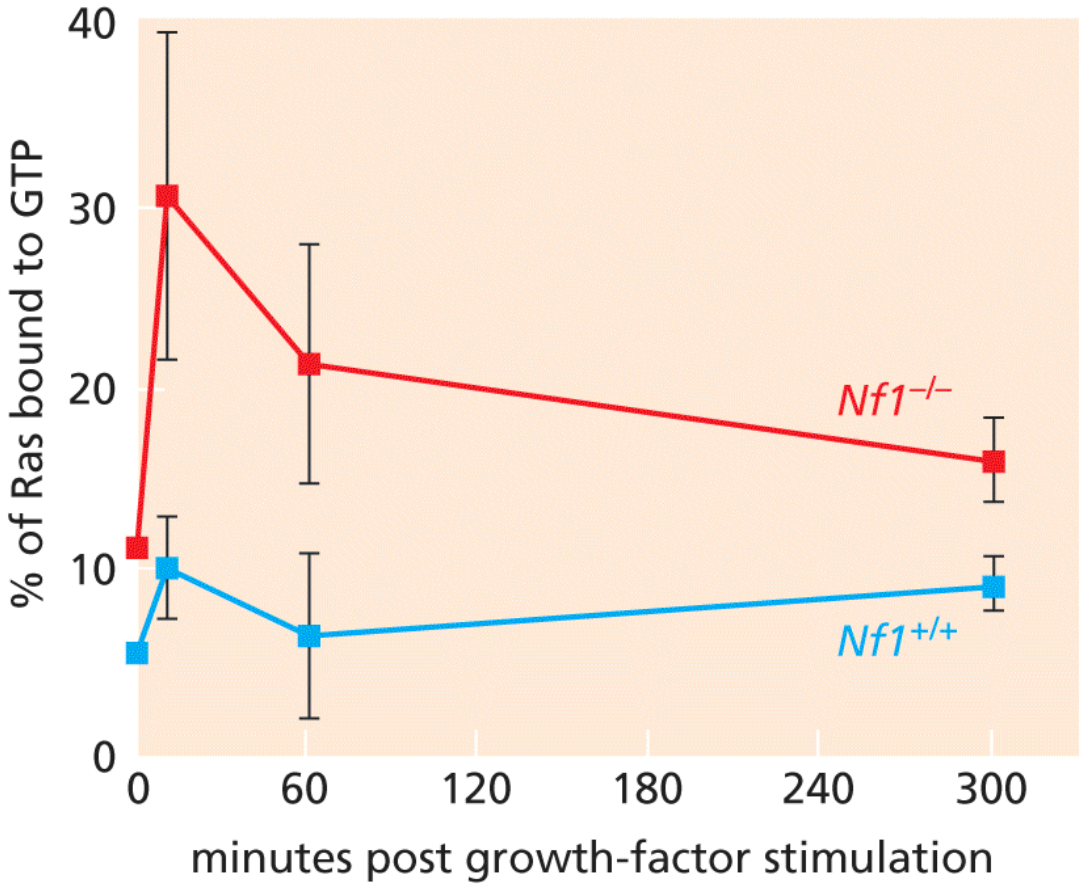
Once the cloned *Nf1* gene was sequenced, researchers were able to assign a function to its encoded protein neurofibromin: the amino acid sequence of neurofibromin shows extensive relatedness to that of proteins that function as GTPase-activating proteins for Ras (Ras-GAPs; see Figure 5.24). Eukaryotic cells use Ras proteins to regulate important aspects of their metabolism and proliferation, and Ras-GAPs negatively control the state of Ras activation. These regulatory proteins do so by inducing Ras to activate its intrinsic GTPase activity, thereby forcing Ras to convert itself from its activated GTP-bound form to its inactive, GDP-bound form (**Figure 7.16A**). Indeed, a

Ras-GAP may even ambush activated Ras before the latter has had a chance to stimulate its coterie of downstream effectors (see Section 5.10).



The cycle the R a s protein passes through. Inactive R a s G D P is activated by a G E F that promotes the release of G D P and binding of G T P. The activated R a s signals to downstream effectors. The R a s is inactivated by an R a s-G A P that induces G T P hydrolysis. A detail of the image shows the structure of the G A P as a ribbon diagram. A point near the center is labeled R1276 and is the arginine finger.

(A)



A line graph with minutes post growth-factor stimulation, 0 to 300, on the horizontal axis and percent of R a s bound to G T P on the vertical axis. The line for wild-type N f 1 plus plus mice stays below 10 percent, whereas the line for N f 1 minus minus mice jumps to 30 percent within 10 minutes before settling between 10 and 20 percent after 300 minutes.

(B)

Figure 7.16 Neurofibromin and the Ras signaling cycle (A) As shown at the top, the Ras protein passes through a cycle in which it is activated by a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF), promoting the release of GDP and binding of GTP, and inactivated by a GTPase-activating protein (Ras-GAP). One of the main Ras-GAPs is neurofibromin, which can stimulate the GTPase activity of Ras more than 1000-fold. The structure of the neurofibromin domain that interacts with Ras is illustrated here. A subdomain of neurofibromin, termed the “arginine finger” (*blue box*), carries a critical arginine (R1276) that is inserted into the GTPase cleft of Ras and actively contributes to the hydrolysis of GTP to GDP by Ras.

Mutations that cause replacement of this critical arginine residue with another amino acid decrease the GTPase-stimulating activity of neurofibromin by 1000-fold. In this diagram, mutant forms of neurofibromin, which carry amino acid substitutions observed in neurofibromatosis patients, are indicated by *white spheres* that are labeled by *gray boxes*; experimentally generated mutations that produce amino acid substitutions (*gray spheres without boxed labels*) also compromise neurofibromin's GTPase activity. The *white sphere with boxed label* (R1391) indicates a mutation that arose through both routes. In addition, a large-scale deletion (Δ53) and an insertion ("type II insert") found in patients are shown; both are also disease-associated. (B) When myeloid cells of wild-type $Nf1^{+/+}$ mice are stimulated with the growth factor GM-CSF, the ligand-activated receptor causes GTP-bound Ras levels to rise rapidly and then decrease slightly over the next five hours (*blue line*). In contrast, in $Nf1^{-/-}$ myeloid cells, the basal level of GTP-bound Ras is already elevated, and in response to GM-CSF stimulation, levels of this active form of Ras rise threefold further and remain elevated over this time period (*red line*). (A, from K. Scheffzek et al., *EMBO J.* 17:4313–4327, 1998. With permission from John Wiley and Sons. B, from D. Largaespada et al., *Nat. Genet.* 12:137–143, 1996. With permission from Nature.)

This initial insight into *Nf1* function inspired a simple scheme of how defective forms of neurofibromin create disease phenotypes. *Nf1* is expressed widely throughout the body, with especially high concentrations of neurofibromin found in the adult peripheral and central nervous systems. In normal cells, stimulation by growth factors would initially trigger a degradation of neurofibromin, enabling Ras signaling to continue without interference by this negative regulator. However, after 60 to 90 minutes, neurofibromin levels would return to normal, allowing the accumulation of this inhibitory protein to help shut down further Ras signaling—a form of negative-feedback control (see Figure 6.25). In cells that lack *Nf1* function, Ras proteins are predicted to persist in their activated, GTP-bound state for longer-than-normal periods of time. In fact, in myeloid cells (a class of cells in bone marrow) that have been genetically engineered to be $Nf1^{-/-}$, the basal (that is, unstimulated) levels of GTP-bound activated Ras are higher than normal and respond to growth factor stimulation by increasing rapidly to far higher levels before declining gradually (Figure 7.16B). Consequently, the loss of *Nf1* function in a cell can mimic functionally the hyperactivation of Ras proteins created by mutant *Ras* oncogenes (see Section 5.10).

The histological complexity of neurofibromas has made it very difficult to identify the normal cell type that yields the bulk of the cells in these growths. Microscopic analyses (see Figure 7.15A) reveal that these tumors are composed of a mixture of cell types, including Schwann cells (which wrap around and insulate nerve axons), neurons, perineurial cells (which seem to surround and protect the axon–Schwann cell

complexes), fibroblasts, and mast cells, the latter being a type of granulocyte and originating in the bone marrow. In some of these benign tumors, Schwann cells are clearly the prevailing cell type, whereas in others it seems that fibroblasts or perineurial cells may dominate.

The weight of evidence indicates that (1) primitive, undifferentiated neural crest-derived cells related to Schwann cell precursors are the primary targets of *Nf1* LOH leading to neurofibromas, and (2) once these cells have lost all *Nf1* function, they initiate the development of these histologically complex growths by inducing the co-proliferation of a variety of other cell types via paracrine signaling (see Section 5.5). This co-proliferation raises an interesting and still-unanswered question, however: Because these other cell types, including those in neighboring tissues and in the bone marrow are heterozygous for *Nf1*—and carry only half the normal dose of functional neurofibromin—might they be hyper-responsive to any growth-stimulatory, paracrine signals released by the neoplastic $Nf1^{-/-}$ cells? This hypothesis is borne out by detailed studies of neurofibromatosis formation in a genetically engineered mouse model of the disease. This approach to producing mouse models of cancer via targeted gene deletion is outlined in **Sidebar 7.2** and in **Figure 7.17**.

Sidebar 7.2 Targeted gene deletion can produce mouse models of cancer

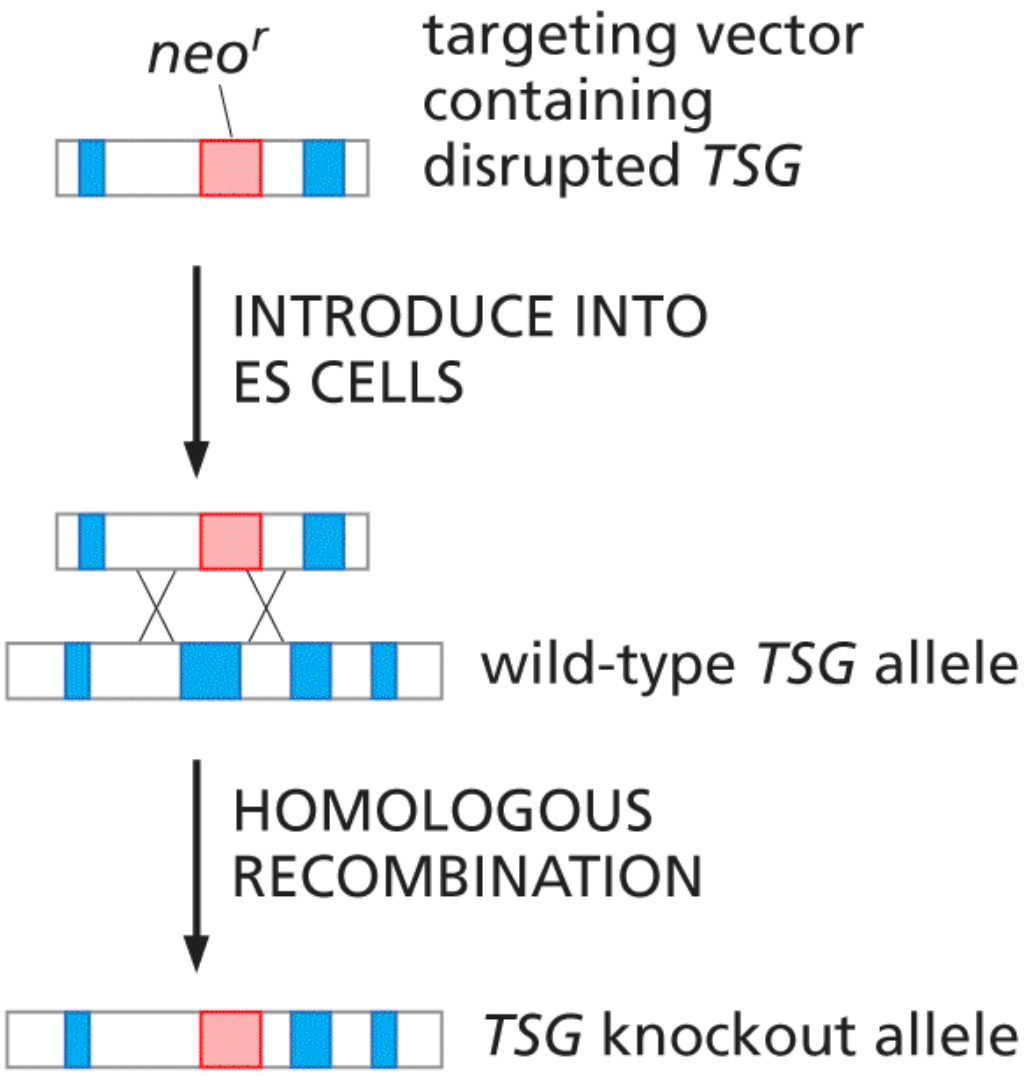
The natural process of homologous recombination can be exploited to introduce well-defined genetic changes into the mouse germ line in order to mutate an endogenous gene. This technology has been instrumental in the study of TSG function in the whole organism and for the development of mouse models of human cancer involving this class of genes. The process begins by manipulating the genome of a mouse embryonic stem (ES) cell. A cloned gene fragment that is introduced by electroporation into an ES cell is able to recombine, with a low but significant frequency, with homologous DNA sequences residing in the chromosomal DNA of this cell. Selectable markers—for example, neo^r (a gene that confers resistance to neomycin)—can be exploited to identify those cells that have integrated the exogenous DNA into the ES cell genome. Additional screening methods can then be used to identify the rare cells in which the cloned gene fragment, with its selectable marker, has disrupted one copy of the endogenous TSG by homologous recombination, thus creating an inactivating (or "knockout") mutation. These ES cells are thus heterozygous for the mutation in the targeted TSG (or $TSG^{+/-}$) (Figure 7.17A). A similar approach can be used to replace endogenous sequences with a gene whose activity has been altered more subtly, thereby creating a "knock-in" mutation.

$TSG^{+/-}$ ES cells can then be introduced via micro-injection into the blastocoel cavity of a mouse blastocyst (an early embryo), and the embryo transferred into a

pseudopregnant female for further development (Figure 7.17C). Because ES cells are pluripotent (able to differentiate into all cell types in the body), the descendants of the injected cells can insert themselves (chimerize) into any tissues within the developing embryo, including the germ line. Such germ-line chimeras can be bred with wild-type animals to transmit the inactivated TSG allele to their offspring, creating mice that are constitutionally $TSG^{+/-}$ in all of their cells. These animals are genetic analogs of humans with a familial cancer syndrome caused by an inherited mutation in the TSG, and they can be studied for tumor predisposition and other aspects of tumor biology. In addition, two animals that are $TSG^{+/-}$ can be bred and their $TSG^{-/-}$ offspring can be used to assess the effects of homozygosity for a given TSG mutation (Figure 7.17D). For most TSGs, this condition results in embryonic lethality, indicating the requirement for the TSG in one or more aspects of normal development. Genes required for embryonic development are often referred to as essential genes.

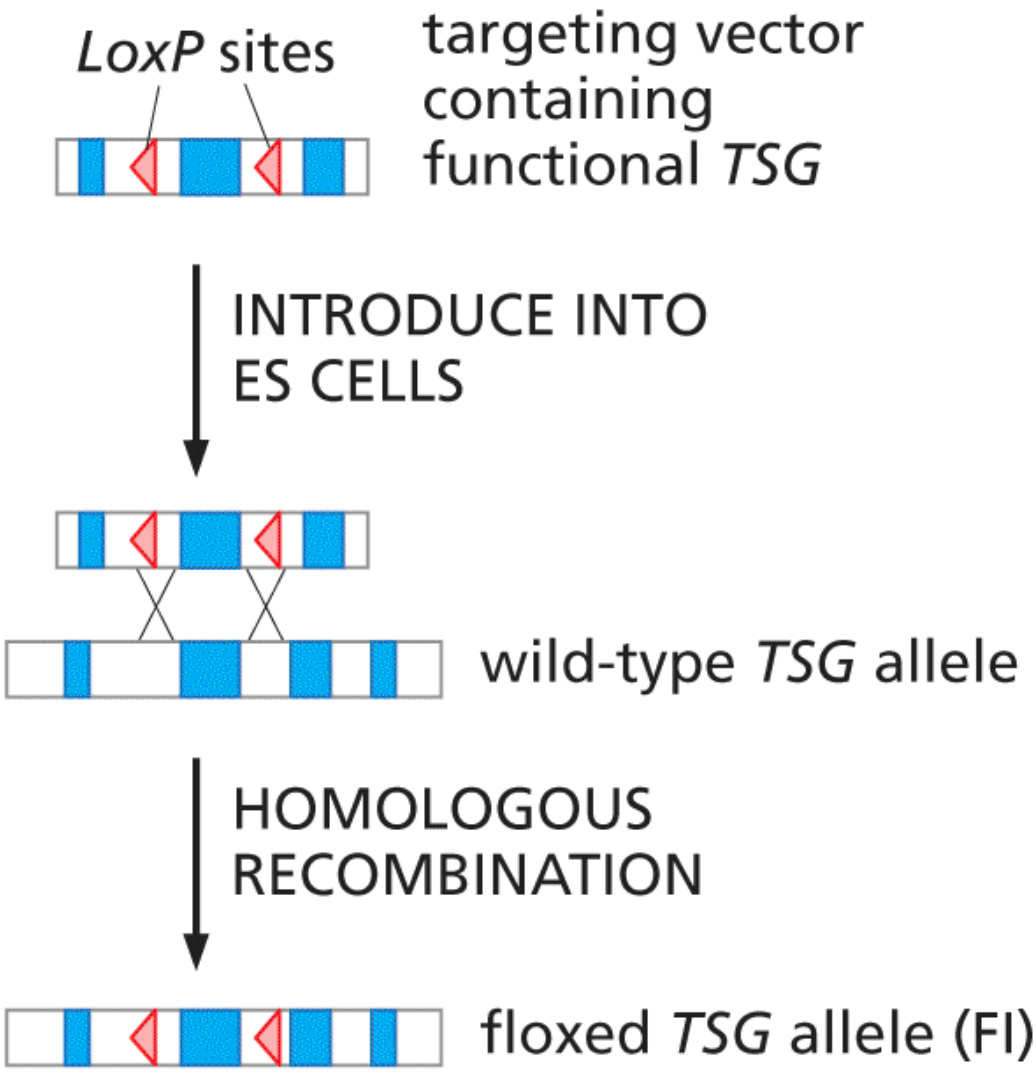
To examine the effects of inactivating an essential TSG in adult tissues, researchers have developed strategies to knockout the gene *conditionally*—in a subset of tissues or at a particular time. In this approach, homologous recombination is used in ES cells to flank a functionally important region of the target gene with a pair of short DNA sequences that serve as the recognition sequences for a site-specific recombinase (Figure 7.17B). The most frequently used system involves the use of *LoxP* sites and the recombinase Cre, which were initially derived from bacteriophage P1. Because the *LoxP* sites are inserted in such a way that they do not disrupt the function of the target gene, the alleles carrying flanking *LoxP* sites (or “floxed” alleles) remain functional and can be carried in a homozygous configuration. However, in cells in which Cre is expressed—for example, through the use of a cell type- or tissue-specific transcriptional promoter—the recombinase can catalyze the deletion of the sequences between the *LoxP* sites in both floxed alleles, leading to complete disruption of gene function (see Figure 7.17B).

These approaches can greatly facilitate the development of mouse models involving loss-of-function mutations in TSGs in different tissues in the body. The system can be further engineered so that the elimination of TSG activity can be induced by treating the animal with a drug. For example, the Cre recombinase molecule can be fused to a mutant form of estrogen receptor (ER) that can be activated by the drug tamoxifen, a ligand of this receptor (Figure 7.17E). When this hybrid Cre-ER is initially synthesized, it will be confined to the cytoplasm and will only gain access to the nucleus—where the floxed TSG alleles reside—when tamoxifen is provided. This allows for temporal control of gene deletion.



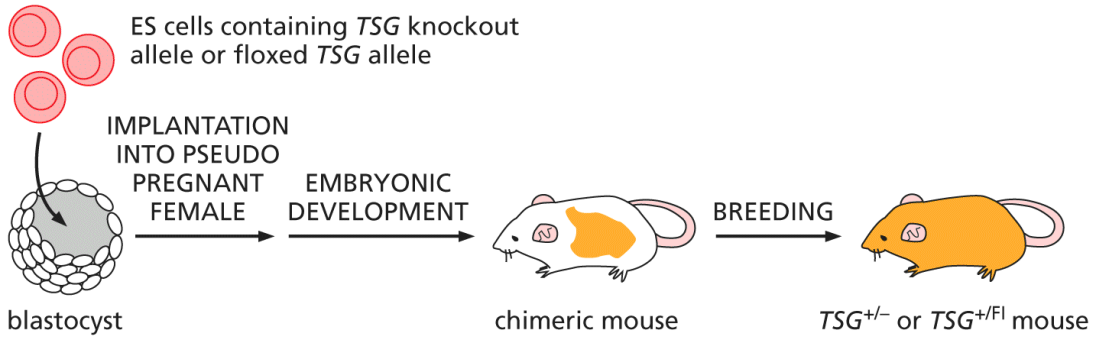
A targeting vector contains T S G disrupted by a neo-r gene. This targeting vector is then introduced into E S cells, where it encounters the wild-type T S G allele. Homologous recombination then produces a T S G knockout allele.

(A)



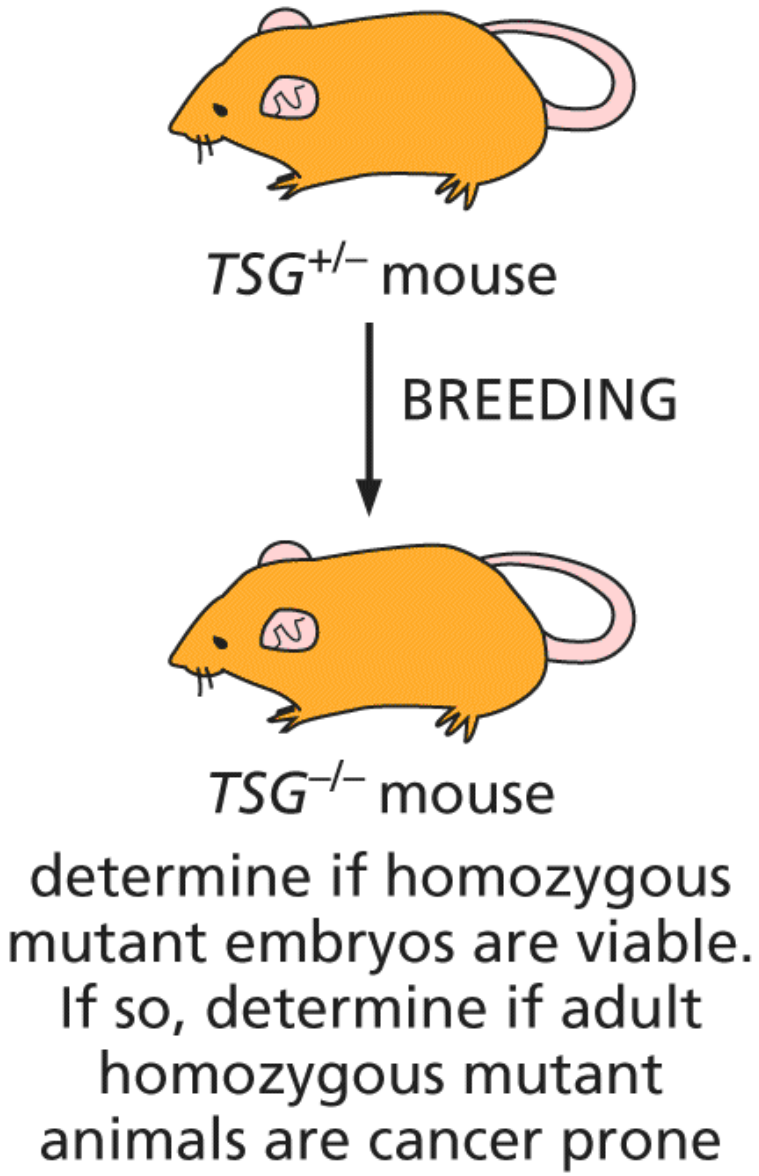
A targeting vector has two Lox-p sites. This targeting vector is introduced into E S cells, where it encounters the wild-type T S G allele. Homologous recombination then produces a floxed T S G allele.

(B)



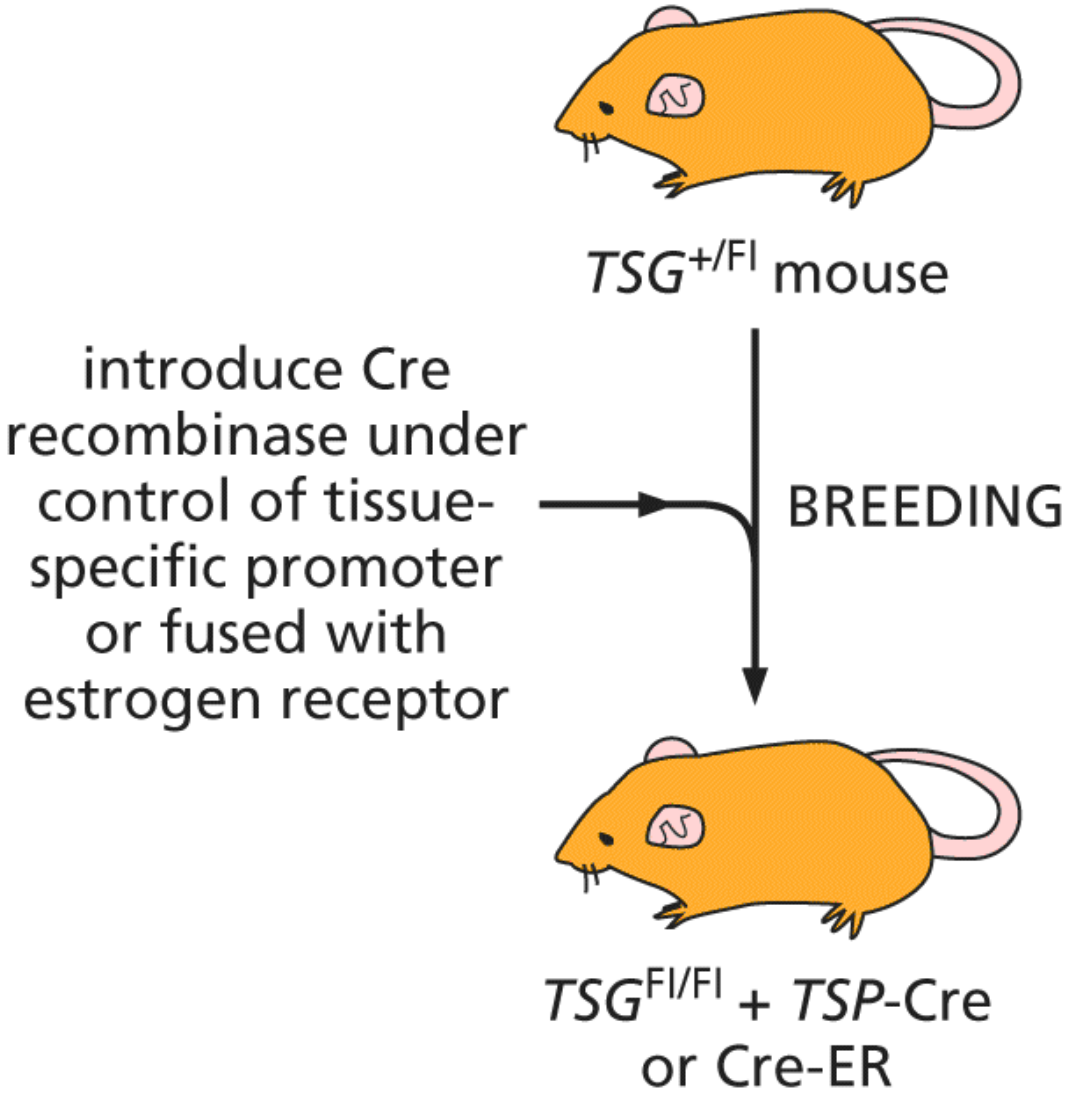
E S cells containing T S G knockout allele or floxed T S G allele are injected into a blastocyst. When this is implanted in a pseudopregnant female, the embryo develops into a chimeric mouse. If it is bred, its offspring may be heterozygous knockout or floxed mice.

(C)



Heterozygous knockout mice are bred, resulting in some offspring that are homozygous knockout. If the homozygous mutant embryos are viable, the adult homozygous mutants can be examined for cancer proneness.

(D)



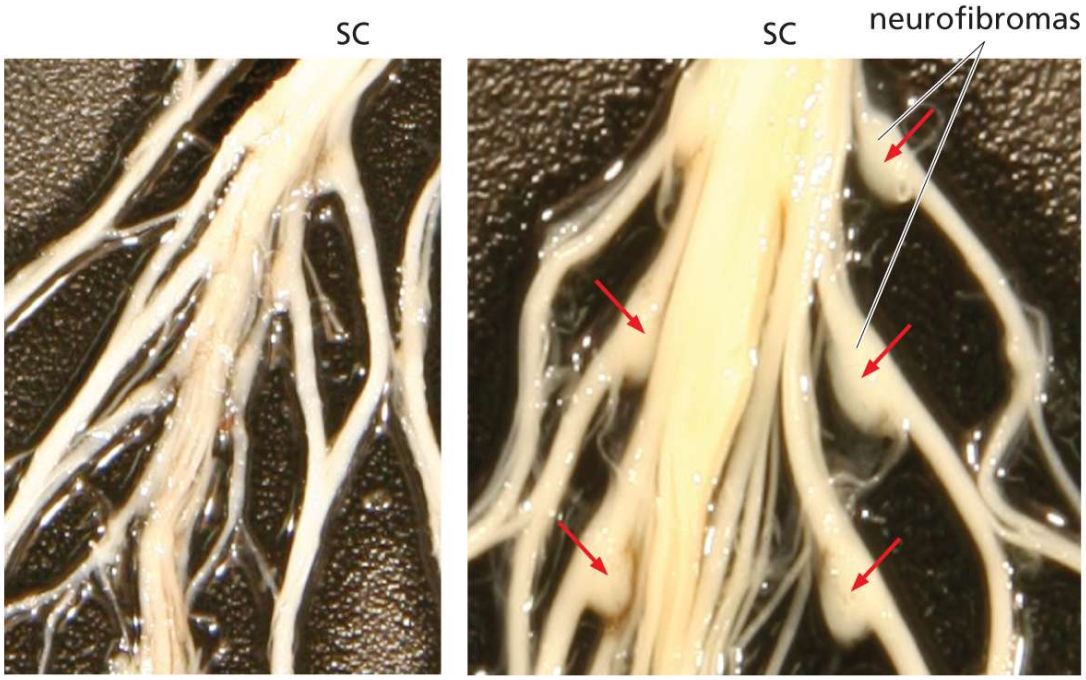
Heterozygous floxed mice are bred, with the introduction of C r e recombinase under control of tissue specific promoter or fused with estrogen receptor. The result may be homozygous floxed offspring with T S P C r e or with C r e E R.

(E)

Figure 7.17 Homologous recombination can be used to produce TSG knockout or conditional knockout mice (A) Using recombinant DNA techniques, a targeting vector is constructed that contains a cloned mouse TSG in which the *neo*^{r} gene disrupts or replaces a functionally important segment of the gene. This targeting vector is then introduced via *electroporation* into mouse embryonic stem (ES) cells, and drug selection and genetic screening are performed to identify those ES cells that have undergone homologous

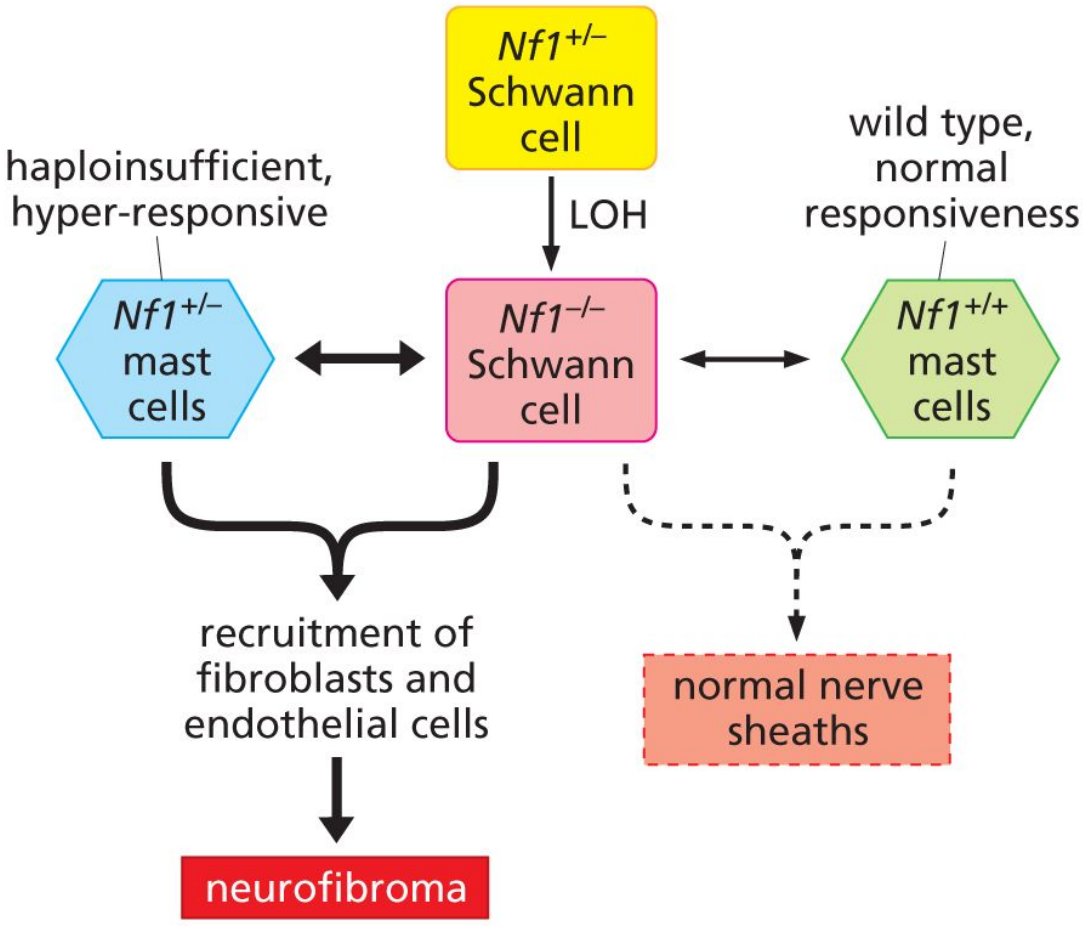
recombination between the targeting vector and one allele of the TSG; this recombination creates a “knockout” allele. (B) It is also possible to conditionally knock out a TSG. This begins with a targeting vector carries *LoxP* sites, which function as target sequences for the site-specific recombinase Cre; pairs of *LoxP* sites are used to create a “floxed” allele of the TSG following their insertion into the genome via homologous recombination. Here, the *LoxP* sites do not, on their own, disrupt TSG function and will only do so following Cre-driven recombination (see E below). (C) ES cells carrying properly integrated knockout or floxed alleles (either $TSG^{+/-}$ or $TSG^{+/Fl}$) are injected into wild-type mouse blastocysts, whereupon their progeny may become incorporated into the tissues of the resulting embryo. The embryos are implanted into pseudo-pregnant females and, following their development, some of the newborn chimeric mice may carry the altered allele in their germ cells, that is, sperm or eggs; these germ-line chimeras, when bred, enable the germ-line transmission of this DNA fragment to their descendants. (D) $TSG^{+/-}$ mice can be studied for tumor predisposition. They can also be bred with one another to determine if homozygosity for the TSG mutation leads to embryonic lethality. If $TSG^{-/-}$ animals survive to adulthood, they too can be studied for tumor predisposition. (E) Mice that are bred to be homozygous for a floxed allele of a TSG ($TSG^{Fl/Fl}$) can be made to carry an allele of *Cre* expressed from a tissue-specific promoter (TSP); these mice are used to determine the effects of conditional deletion of the TSG in a given tissue or cell type. Alternatively, a mutant estrogen-receptor fusion of *Cre* (*CreER*) that is activatable by a ligand of the ER can be used to control the timing of Cre activation through the addition of the drug tamoxifen (an estrogen analog and thus ER ligand). Adapted from H. Lodish et al., Molecular Cell Biology, 5th ed. New York: Freeman, 2004 and from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 7th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2022.

Studies of such mice reveal that recruitment of mast cells into incipient neurofibromas is critical to the formation of these histopathologically complex tumors. In mouse models of NF1 in which Schwann cells are engineered to become $Nf^{-/-}$ and the remaining cells—including the cells of the hematopoietic system—are $Nf1^{+/-}$, tumors termed *plexiform* neurofibromas form with high frequency at the roots of nerves emerging from the spinal cord. However, if the hematopoietic system (including the mast cells) of such mice is replaced with cells that are wild type (that is, $Nf1^{+/+}$), these cells are not as responsive to signals released by the $Nf1^{-/-}$ Schwann cells and are no longer recruited in large numbers to developing neurofibromas. The result is a drastic decrease in the numbers of these tumors (**Figure 7.18**). Such collaborations between multiple cell types in forming a tumor will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 13.



Two images of dissected spinal cords from mice with N f 1 minus minus Schwann cells. The spinal cord on the left is from a mouse with N f 1 plus plus mast cells. The cord appears normal. The spinal cord on the right is from a mouse with N f 1 plus minus mast cells. The central column of the spinal cord is thickened, and five branching nerves have lumpy grows, neurofibromas, at the base.

(A)



A flowchart that begins with an N f 1 plus minus Schwann cell that undergoes loss of heterozygosity to become an N f 1 minus minus. If this is paired with wild type N f 1 plus plus mast cells that have normal responsiveness, the result is normal nerve sheaths. On the other hand, if the N f 1 minus minus Schwann cell is paired with haploinsufficient, hyper-responsive N f 1 plus minus mast cells, the result is recruitment of fibroblasts and endothelial cells, leading to formation of neurofibromas.

(B)

Figure 7.18 Contribution of genotype of surrounding tissue to neurofibroma development (A) In *Nf1*$^{+/+}$ mice in which the Schwann cells have specifically been rendered *Nf1*$^{-/-}$, the nerve roots emerging from the spinal cord (SC) exhibit a relatively normal morphology (*left*); hence, loss of all *Nf1* function in the target cells—the Schwann cells—does not suffice to allow abnormal neurofibromas to form. However, if, in addition, mast cells originating in the bone marrow are rendered *Nf1*$^{+/-}$, both a thickened spinal cord and plexiform neurofibromas (*arrows*) are readily apparent (*right*). Hence, a partial loss of *Nf1* function in mast

cells must cooperate with total loss of *Nf1* function in the Schwann cells to generate these growths. (B) The observations in panel A suggest that mast cells originating in the bone marrow are normally recruited to the developing spinal cord, where they contribute to normal morphogenesis. However, when these mast cells are $Nf1^{+/-}$—and thus are deprived of half of their neurofibromin protein—they and their progeny that are recruited to the developing spinal cord behave abnormally and become hyper-responsive to certain signals released by homozygous mutant $Nf1^{-/-}$ Schwann cells. This in turn causes the mast cells to trigger aberrant morphogenesis by collaborating with the Schwann cells to recruit yet other cell types, such as fibroblasts and endothelial cells, thereby generating the histopathologically complex neurofibromas. In patients who are born with an $Nf1^{+/-}$ genotype, some $Nf1^{+/-}$ Schwann cells may undergo LOH, generating $Nf1^{-/-}$ derivatives that recruit heterozygous ($Nf1^{+/-}$) mast cells from the bone marrow and resulting in the formation of neurofibromas. In fact, other work suggests that the $Nf1^{-/-}$ Schwann cells release elevated levels of stem cell factor (SCF), to which the $Nf1^{+/-}$ mast cells are hyper-responsive because the intracellular signaling pathway downstream of their SCF receptor is hyperactive as a consequence of hyperactive Ras protein. (A, from F.C. Yang et al., *Cell* 135:437–448, 2008. With permission from Elsevier.)

The observation that a half-normal dose of neurofibromin in the mast cells (or their immediate precursors) results in a clear and aberrant cellular phenotype raises a more general point about TSGs: although the full phenotypic changes associated with inactivation of these genes may only be felt when both gene copies are lost, a half-dosage of their encoded proteins (which is often observed in cells having a $TSG^{+/-}$ genotype) can in some instances yield subtle but functionally important changes in cell phenotype. Such behavior is a manifestation of haploinsufficiency, a state in which the presence of only a single functional copy of a gene yields a mutant or partially mutant phenotype (**Sidebar 7.3**).

Sidebar 7.3 Haploinsufficiency: when half a loaf is not much better than none

The Knudson paradigm of TSG inactivation postulates that mutant alleles are recessive at the cellular level. Hence, cells that are heterozygous for a TSG (that is, $TSG^{+/-}$) should be phenotypically normal. This is the case for individuals who inherit a mutant, inactive *Rb* gene, who only develop pathologies in cell populations that have lost the remaining wild-type *Rb* gene copy, usually by LOH, rendering these cells $Rb^{-/-}$; the remaining $Rb^{+/-}$ tissues throughout the body seem to develop normally and exhibit normal function.

However, there are perfectly good biochemical reasons to predict that cells expressing half the normal amount of a TSG protein might have a phenotype that deviates significantly from the wild type, and several clear examples of such haploinsufficiency have been observed. Mice carrying only one copy of the gene encoding the Smad4 transcription factor, which is used by TGF-β to inhibit cell proliferation (as we will see in Section 8.10), are predisposed to developing polyps in the stomach and small intestine, and the cells in these tumors continue to carry single copies of the wild-type allele of this gene. Mice that are heterozygous for the TSG $p27^{Kip1}$ are similarly prone to forming tumors, without indication of LOH in tumor cells; this gene encodes an important inhibitor of cell cycle progression (see Section 8.4). A third example is provided by mice that are heterozygous for the gene encoding the tumor suppressor protein PTEN (see Section 6.6), where a clear acceleration of prostate cancer tumorigenesis is created by the presence of only a single copy of this TSG. Finally, deletion of one copy of the *Dmp1* gene, which encodes a transcription factor that induces expression of the $p19^{ARF}$ TSG (see Section 9.7), leads once again to increased tumor susceptibility without loss of the wild-type gene copy in tumor cells. Analysis of cancer genomes has suggested there are many genes that could contribute to tumor formation through haploinsufficiency.

Given their role in regulating signaling through the Ras pathway, inactivation of neurofibromin or other Ras-GAPs might also be expected to occur sporadically in human cancers. Indeed, large-scale genome sequence analyses of human cancer specimens (as discussed in Section 12.12) have revealed somatic mutations in *Nf1* in a wide variety of human cancers, most notably in glioblastoma (a malignant tumor of the brain), lung cancer, and melanoma. Moreover, several other of the 13 documented Ras-GAPs encoded in the human genome have been shown to undergo mutation or epigenetic silencing in cancers (**Table 7.3**).

Table 7.3 Examples of Ras-GAPs mutated or silenced in human cancers

Gene	Ras-GAP protein	Cancers	Mechanism of inactivation
NF1	neurofibromin	neurofibromas, neurofibrosarcomas, glioblastomas, pheochromocytomas, lung cancer, melanoma, myelogenous leukemias	mutation

Gene	Ras-GAP protein	Cancers	Mechanism of inactivation
RASA1	p120 Ras-GAP	lung cancer, melanoma	mutation
RASA2	Ras p21 protein activator 2	range of cancers	mutation
DAB2IP	Disabled homolog 2-interacting protein	malignant progression in breast and prostate cancers	epigenetic silencing
RASAL2	Ras protein activator like 2	breast cancer	mutation and epigenetic silencing

Adapted from D. Simanshu et al., *Cell* 170:17–33, 2017.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

neurofibroma
: Benign tumor of cells forming the sheath around nerve axons.

neurofibrosarcoma
: Malignant tumor of cells forming the sheath around nerve axons.

malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor
: A tumor, usually displaying mesenchymal traits, that often arises from a neurofibroma and derives from cells that form the cellular sheaths protecting peripheral nerves.

pheochromocytoma
: Tumor of the neural crest-derived cells of the adrenal glands that secrete elevated levels of certain hormones through which they may instigate a number of abnormal clinical symptoms.

café au lait spots
: Coffee-with-milk–colored spots on the skin that are seen characteristically in patients suffering the neurofibromatosis type 1 syndrome.

genetic background
: The entire array of alleles carried in a cell or organismic genome with the exception of a gene or a small number of genes that are the subject of study.

expressivity
: The quantitative extent to which a measurable or observable phenotype is expressed by an individual or cell carrying a specific allele or gene. *See also* **penetrance**.

myeloid
: (1) Referring to the lineages of hematopoietic cells that yield cells that are not lymphocytes and includes erythrocytes, platelets, granulocytes, monocytes, mast cells, and their derivatives. (2) Pertaining to or resembling bone marrow; often used as a synonym for myelogenous. *Compare* **lymphoid**.

neural crest
: Dorsal region of the early chordate embryo that contains cells serving as precursors of various specialized tissue and cell types, including

certain cells of the peripheral nervous system, bones of the face, melanocytes, and several types of neurosecretory cells.

blastocoel

Inner cavity present in a blastocyst.

blastocyst

An early stage of vertebrate embryogenesis in which the embryo consists largely of an outer layer of cells enclosing an inner cavity that contains a cell mass destined to form the embryo.

pseudopregnant

Referring to a female that has been placed in a physiological state that closely resembles that of pregnancy, achieved through exposure to certain hormones.

pluripotent

Referring to the ability of a stem cell to generate progeny that can participate in the formation of all of the tissues of an embryo except the extraembryonic membranes. *See also* **multipotent**, **totipotent**.

germ-line chimera

An organism in which the germ cells derive from more than one genetic background.

essential genes

The collection of genes that is required for normal organismic development and viability or for normal cellular viability or behavior. *See also* **essentialome**.

haploinsufficiency

Genetic condition in which the presence of only a single functional copy of a gene yields a mutant or partially mutant phenotype.

chimerized

(1) Referring to the protein product of a re-engineered gene in which two portions of the protein derive from two distinct sources, such as two distinct species. (2) Describing an antibody molecule whose constant (C) region amino acid sequences have been replaced by the homologous sequences from another species, e.g., one in which a mouse C region is replaced by a human C region.

OceanofPDF.com

7.10 APC facilitates egress of cells from colonic crypts

Although the great majority (>95%) of colon cancers appear to be sporadic, a small group arises as a consequence of inherited alleles that create substantial lifelong risk for this disease. One form of familial colon cancer, referred to as hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) or Lynch syndrome, is caused by inherited mutations in a class of DNA repair genes. We will discuss HNPCC further in Chapter 12. Here we focus on the other major familial colon cancer syndrome, termed adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) or, more commonly, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP). At relatively young ages, patients with FAP develop hundreds or thousands of growths or polyps in the colon (**Figure 7.19**). Although these polyps are themselves nonmalignant, they are prone to develop into carcinomas at a low but predictable frequency. FAP is responsible for a bit less than 1% of all colon cancers in the West.

Two images of a colon wall. The one on the left is pink and has the normal folded texture. The one on the right is more orange and is covered with tiny polyps.

Figure 7.19 Familial adenomatous polyposis The wall of a normal colon is convoluted but smooth (*left*); in an individual afflicted with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), the colon wall is often carpeted with hundreds of small polyps (*right*). The structure of one type of colonic polyp is shown in Figure 2.14A. (Courtesy of A. Wyllie and M. Arends.)

The *Apc* gene, which is inherited in mutant form in FAP patients, was cloned in 1991 following a series of genetic mapping studies that pinpointed its location on Chromosome 5 (**Sidebar 7.4**). As in the case of the *Rb* gene, *Apc* follows a classic

TSG cancer-associated mutation pattern. In FAP, patients inherit one mutant allele of the gene and accumulate mutations or LOH to inactivate the remaining wild-type allele. In sporadic colon cancer, in which *Apc* gene mutation occurs in ~90% of cases, the complete loss of *Apc* function occurs through two sequential steps, another example of the Knudson “two hit” mechanism (see Figure 7.4). Characterization of the wild-type *Apc* gene product (also called APC) has led to new insights into the control of intestinal stem cells and the normal maintenance of epithelial tissues. As we discuss in greater detail in later chapters, the epithelia in the colon and duodenum are organized in a fashion that is typical of a number of epithelia throughout the body. In these tissues, groups of relatively undifferentiated stem cells yield two distinct daughter cells when they divide: one daughter remains a stem cell, thereby ensuring that the number of stem cells in the tissue remains constant; however, the other daughter cell and its descendants become committed to differentiate.

Sidebar 7.4 Special human populations facilitate the detection of heritable cancer syndromes and the isolation of responsible genes

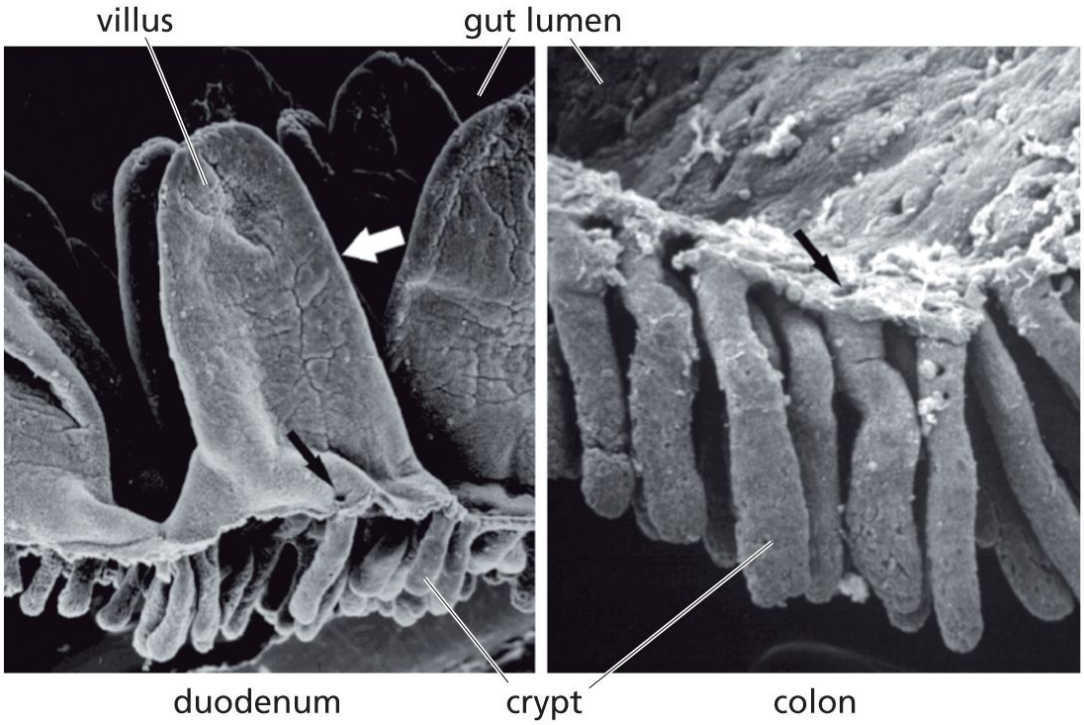
The Mormons in the state of Utah represent a population that provides a golden opportunity to understand the genetics of various types of heritable human diseases. A substantial proportion of these individuals can trace their ancestry back to a relatively small group of founding settlers who arrived in Utah in the mid-nineteenth century. Mormon couples have traditionally had large numbers of children and have reproduced relatively early in life, leading to large, multigenerational families—ideal subjects of genetic research.

In addition, the Mormon church maintains the world’s largest genealogical archive in Salt Lake City, which facilitates the assembly of multigenerational pedigrees. Such extensive pedigrees enabled geneticists to trace with precision how the mutant allele of a gene predisposing a person to familial adenomatous polyposis is transmitted through multiple generations of a single large family and how this allele operates in a dominant fashion to increase the susceptibility to colonic polyps and risk of colon cancer.

The use of linkage analysis, in which the genetic transmission of this predisposing allele was connected to anonymous genetic markers on various human chromosomes, revealed that this allele was repeatedly co-transmitted from one generation to the next together with genetic markers on the long arm of human Chromosome 5. This localization, together with more detailed LOH analyses, eventually made possible the molecular cloning of the *Apc* gene in 1991.

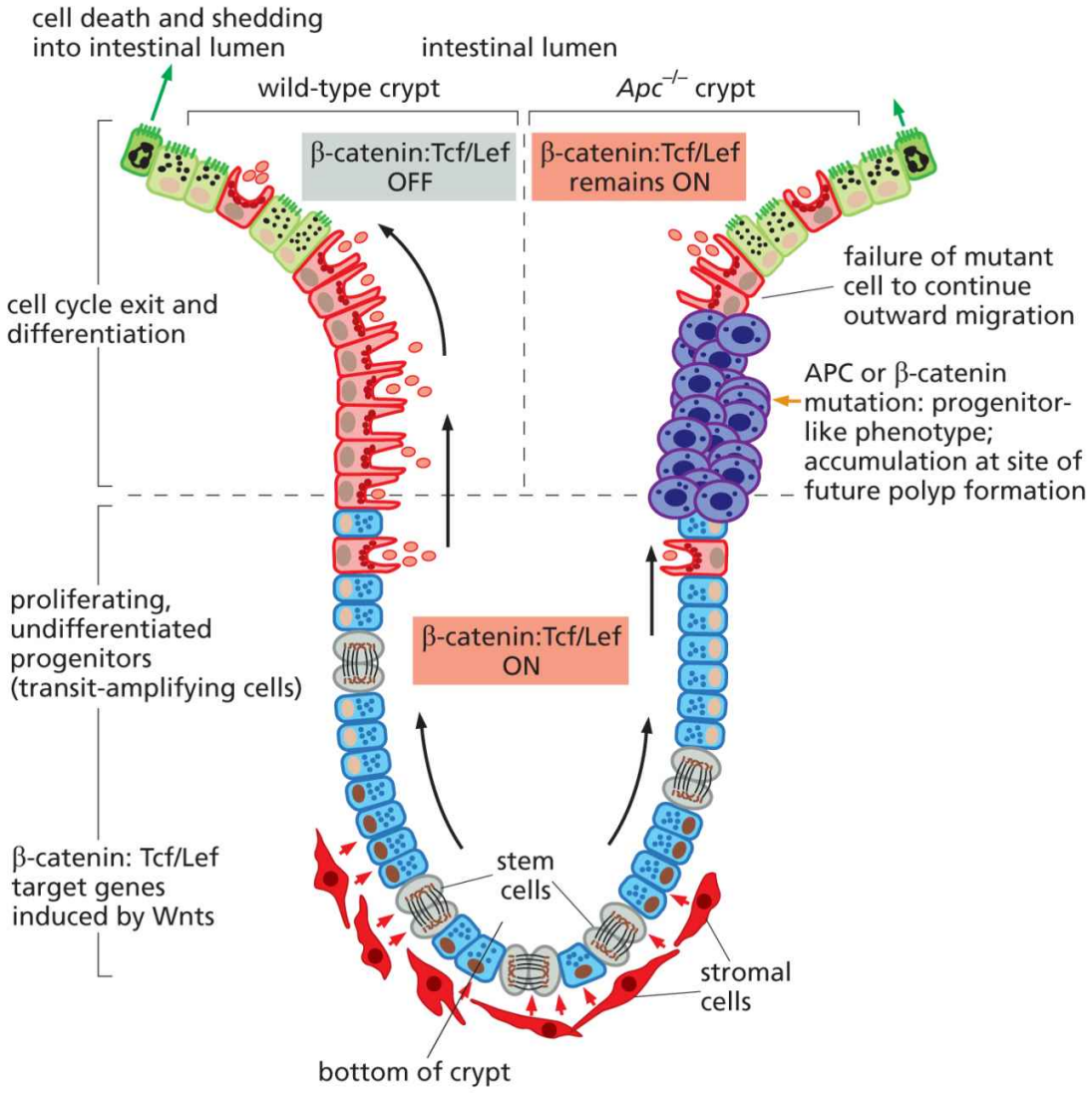
In the small intestine, some of these differentiated epithelial cells participate in absorbing nutrients from the lumen and transferring these nutrients into the circulation;

in the colon, many of them absorb water from the lumen. Yet other specialized epithelial cells secrete mucin (a mucus-like material) that helps to protect the colonic epithelium from the contents of the lumen. In the gastrointestinal tract, these various epithelial cells are termed enterocytes. In both parts of the intestine, enterocytes are born in deep, mucin-filled cavities termed crypts, which initially shield them from the contents of the intestine (**Figure 7.20A**).



Two scanning electron micrographs. The left image shows large villi rising up in the duodenum, each surrounded by many small crypts hanging down. The right image shows a relatively flat intestinal wall with many many small crypts hanging down.

(A)



A diagram of the structure of a single colonic crypt. At the bottom of the crypt, stem cells replicate under the influence of W n tees from stromal cells that surround the crypt. Proliferating, undifferentiated offspring cells migrate up the sides of the crypt, toward the lumen above. In this lower part of the crypt, beta catenin T c f L e f is on and targets certain genes. Higher up, with normal, wild-type development beta catenin T c f L e f switches off. This is the part of the crypt where cell cycle exit and differentiation occurs. At the top of the crypt, cell death and shedding into the intestinal lumen occurs. On the other hand, when the A P C protein is defective, beta-catenin T c f L e f remains on. APC or beta-catenin mutation leads to cells with a progenitor-like phenotype. These still-undifferentiated cells fail to continue outward migration, accumulate within crypts, and may ultimately generate an adenomatous polyp.

(B)

Figure 7.20 β-Catenin and the biology of colonic crypts (A) As seen in these scanning electron micrographs, the linings of the small (*left*) and large (*right*) intestines are organized similarly, with deep crypts in which stem cells reside; new enterocytes produced in these crypts migrate up toward the lumen of the gut, differentiate, and emerge, via small openings (*narrow black arrows*). In the duodenum, however, these newly born cells continue their upward migration along the sides of the fingerlike villi that protrude into the lumen (*broad white arrow*). (B) At the bottom of the colonic crypt, replicating stem cells (*gray*) receive paracrine Wnt signals (*red arrows*) from neighboring stromal cells (*red*), which keeps their levels of β-catenin high. Within individual enterocytes at the bottoms of the crypts, the β-catenin molecules migrate to the nucleus and associate with Tcf/Lef transcription factors; this complex activates genes that enhance proliferation of these cells and prevents their differentiation. In the normal intestine (*left side of crypt*), many of the progeny of these stem cells migrate upward toward the lumen (*above*). As they do so, stimulation by Wnts decreases and intracellular levels of APC increase; these two changes together lead to increased degradation of β-catenin, which results in cessation of proliferation and increased differentiation as these cells approach the lumen; ultimately, the cells undergo apoptosis and are shed into the lumen (*small green arrow*). In contrast, when the APC protein is defective (*right side of crypt*), β-catenin levels remain high, even in the absence of intense Wnt signaling, and proliferating, still-undifferentiated cells (*purple*) fail to migrate upward, accumulate within crypts, and may ultimately generate an adenomatous polyp. (A, from M. Bjerknes and H. Cheng, *Methods Enzymol.* 419:337–383, 2006. B, from M. van de Wetering et al., *Cell* 111:251–263, 2002. Both with permission from Elsevier.)

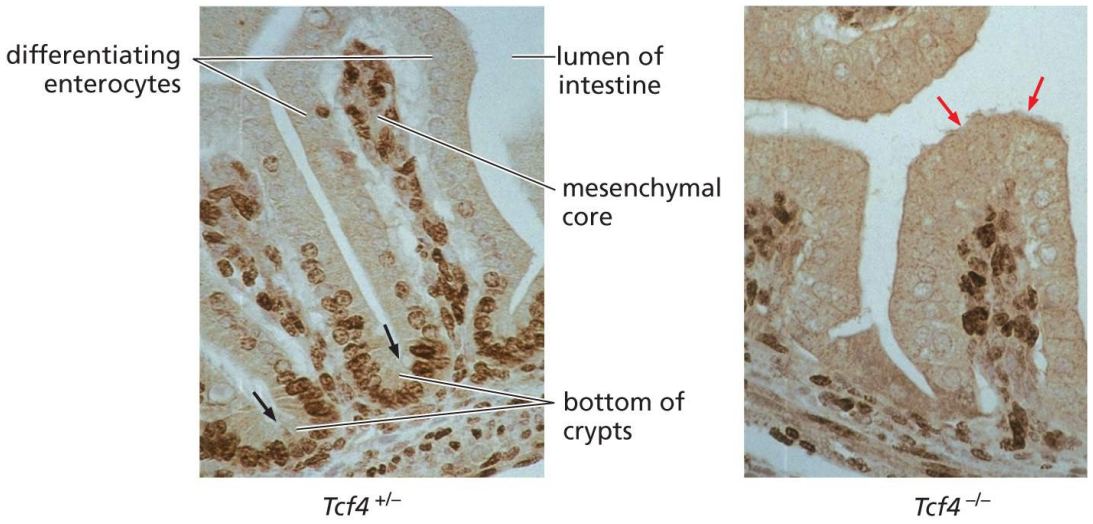
The locations of the stem cells and more differentiated cells in a colon crypt are illustrated in (Figure 7.20B). Although some of the progeny of these stem cells stay behind to maintain a constant number of stem cells, others are dispatched upward and out of the crypts toward the luminal surface of the epithelium, where they will function briefly to form the epithelial lining of the gut; they subsequently die by apoptosis and are shed into the colonic lumen. In the human colon, this entire process of out-migration and death takes only 3 to 4 days.

The scheme depicted in Figure 7.20B represents a highly effective defense mechanism against the development of colon cancer, because almost all cells that may have sustained mutations while on duty protecting the colonic wall are doomed to die within days after they have been formed. By this logic, the only type of mutations that could lead to the development of a cancer would be those mutations (and resulting mutant alleles) that block both the out-migration of colonic epithelial cells from the crypts and

the cell death that follows soon thereafter. Should a colonic enterocyte acquire such a mutation, this cell and its descendants could accumulate in the crypt, and any additional mutant alleles acquired subsequently by their progeny would be similarly retained in the crypt, rather than being rapidly lost through out-migration and apoptosis. Such additional mutations might include, for example, genes that push the progeny toward a neoplastic growth state.

The protein called β-catenin governs much of this out-migration behavior. As described in Section 6.10, levels of soluble β-catenin in the cytoplasm are controlled by the Wnt family of growth factors and other accessory proteins. When Wnts bind cell surface receptors, β-catenin is saved from destruction; the protein then accumulates and migrates to the nucleus, where it associates with a group of DNA-binding proteins termed Tcf/Lef (see Figure 6.19B). The resulting heterodimeric transcription factor complexes ultimately activate expression of a series of target genes that program (in the case of enterocytes) the stem cell phenotype.

In the context of the intestinal crypts, enterocyte stem cells encounter Wnt factors that are released by neighboring Paneth cells in the small intestine and mesechymal stromal cells in the colon, located near the bottom of the crypt, leading to high β-catenin levels in the stem cells (see Figure 7.20B). Indeed, the β-catenin:Tcf4/Lef transcription factor complex is required for the formation of these stem cells (**Figure 7.21**). However, as the progeny of these stem cells begin their upward migration, they leave the Wnt signaling zone and their intracellular β-catenin levels fall precipitously. As a consequence, these cells lose their stem cell phenotype, exit the cell cycle, and differentiate into functional enterocytes.



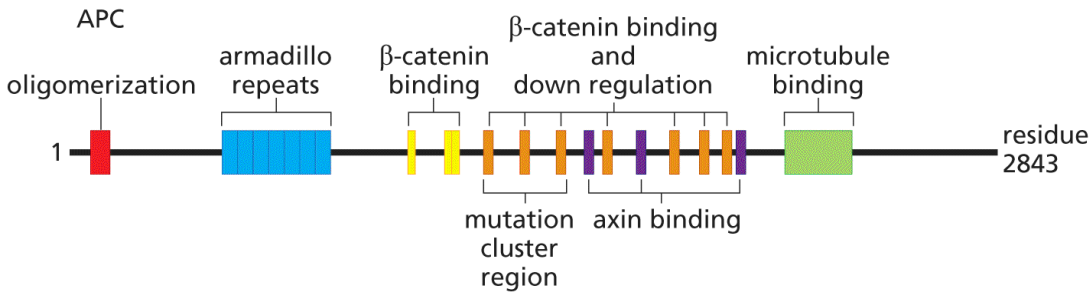
Two histology images. In the one on the left, crypts in the intestinal tissue of T c f 4 plus minus mice are dense with large nuclei. So, unrelatedly, are cells in the mesenchymal cores of nearby villi. Differentiating enterocytes, on the other hand,

have few visible nuclei. In the right image, crypts in the intestinal tissue of T c f 4 minus minus mice, the curved pockets of proliferating stem cells at the bottoms of crypts are absent.

Figure 7.21 The Tcf4 transcription factor and crypt development The formation of the stem cell compartment near the bottoms of small intestinal crypts depends critically on high levels of β-catenin and on its ability to associate with the TCF4 protein in the nucleus to form an active transcription factor complex. As seen in this figure, epithelial cells in the bottoms of the crypts of the small intestine of *Tcf4*$^{+/-}$ mice (*black arrows, left panel*) are highly proliferative, as evidenced by the staining for Ki67, a marker of cell proliferation (*dark brown nuclei*). As they move out of the crypt up the sides of the villi, they lose proliferative potential. (Although the mesenchymal cells in the core of each villus are also highly proliferative, their behavior is unrelated to that of the epithelial enterocytes.) In *Tcf4*$^{-/-}$ mice (*right panel*), in contrast, a layer of enterocytes is initially formed (*red arrows*), but there are no proliferating stem cells at the bottom of the crypts; therefore, new enterocytes are not continually formed to replace those lost by apoptosis and sloughing into the intestinal lumen. (From V. Korinek et al., *Nat. Genet.* 19:379–383, 1998. With permission from Nature.)

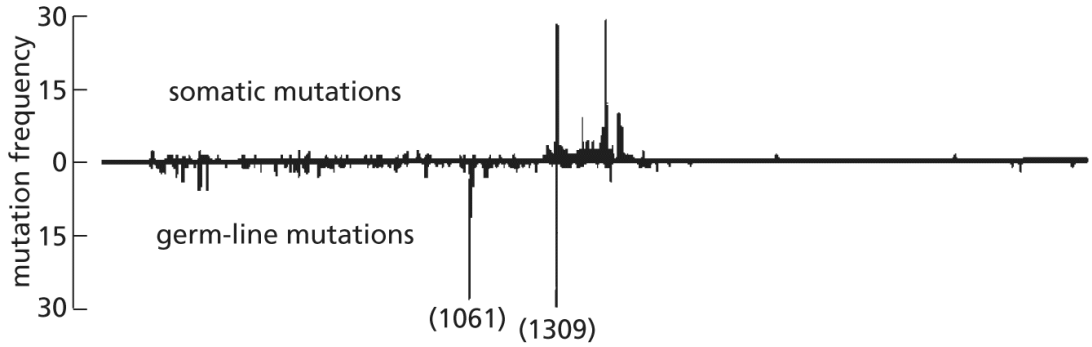
The APC protein is normally responsible for negatively controlling the levels of β-catenin in the cytosol. In stem cells, the action of APC is inhibited through the effects of Wnt signaling, allowing β-catenin to accumulate. However, as cells begin to move out of the crypts, the declining concentration of Wnts and other factors, plus the increased levels of *Apc* expression in these cells, leads to a significant decline in intracellular levels of β-catenin cited above and thus the levels of nuclear β-catenin:Tcf/Lef transcription factor complexes.

The molecular mechanism of action of APC helps to explain these declining levels of intracellular β-catenin: APC is a large protein of 2843 amino acid residues that can associate with β-catenin (**Figure 7.22A**). Together with scaffolding proteins, APC forms a multiprotein complex that brings together glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β) and β-catenin (see Figure 6.19B). This association enables GSK-3β to phosphorylate four amino-terminal residues of β-catenin, an event that leads to the degradation of β-catenin via the ubiquitin–proteasome pathway (**Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). APC is thus essential for triggering the degradation of β-catenin; in its absence, β-catenin levels accumulate to high levels within cells.



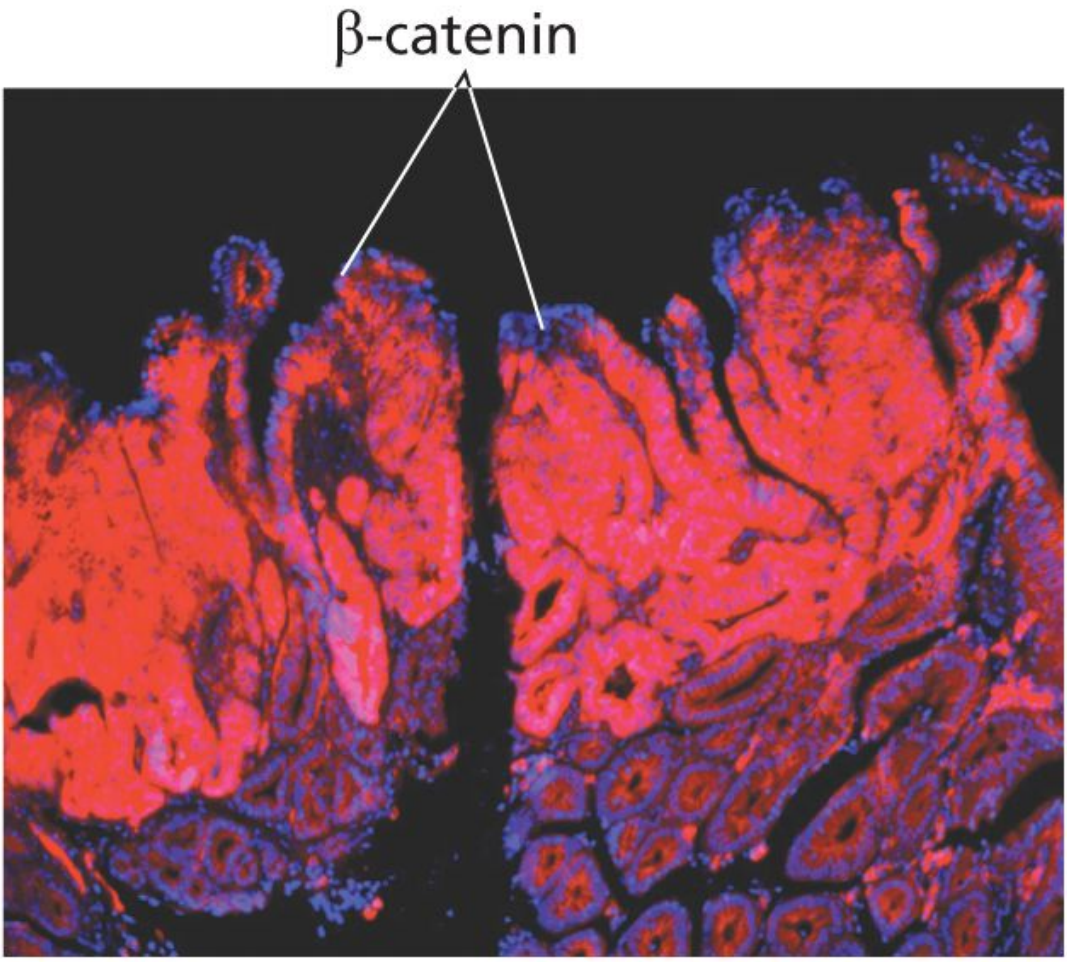
The multidomain structure of the protein A P C. The left end is labeled 1, the right end is labeled residue 2 8 4 3. In between, from left to right, are segments labeled oligomerization, armadillo repeats, beta catenin binding, beta catenin binding and down regulation with sub-parts labeled mutation cluster region and axin binding, and microtubule binding.

(A)



The frequencies of somatic and germ-line mutations along the A P C protein. The vast majority of Germ-line mutations occur either in the beta catenin binding region or the mutation cluster region. The vast majority of somatic mutations occur in the mutation cluster region.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image of adenoma cells, stained bright pink, overlying normal cells in which blue nuclei are visible.

(C)

Figure 7.22 *Apc* mutations andβ-catenin (A) This diagram outlines the multidomain structure of APC. The interactions of the microtubule-binding domain (*light green*) are important for proper regulation of cell motility and mitosis (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.6**). (B) This plot shows the spectrum of *Apc* mutations and where they occur with relation to the domains outlined in (A). As can be seen, the mutations that occur with high frequency tend to affect APC's ability to bind to β-catenin. (C) In the Min mouse model of familial polyposis, an inactivating point mutation was introduced into the *Apc* gene by the actions of a mutagenic chemical. The chromosomal region carrying this mutant allele undergoes LOH in some cells within intestinal crypts. In these cells, which lack all APC activity, β-catenin is no longer degraded, accumulates to high levels, and enters the cell nuclei, where it collaborates with Tcf/Lef transcription factors to

drive expression of growth-promoting genes and prevent the usual exit of cells from the crypt. The result is a clonal outgrowth within the crypt, such as the adenoma seen here, in which the β-catenin is visualized by immunostaining (*pink*, *above*). The nuclei in all cells, including those of the normal crypts (*below*), are seen in *blue*. (A and B, from P. Polakis, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1332:F127–F147, 1997, and adapted from R. Fodde et al., *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 1:55–67, 2001. With permission from Elsevier. C, courtesy of K.M. Haigis and T. Jacks.)

With this mechanism in mind, we can see a clear role for the mutation of *Apc* in colon cancer, whether it is inherited, as in FAP patients, or occurs via two independent mutational events, as in the high percentage of cases of the sporadic form of the disease. Cataloging the spectrum of *Apc* mutations found in human colon cancers reveals many mutations that cause premature termination of translation of the APC protein, thereby removing domains that are important for its ability to associate with β-catenin and the scaffolding protein axin and for the resulting degradation of β-catenin (Figure 7.22B).

The accumulation of β-catenin (Figure 7.22C) is clearly the most important consequence of *Apc* inactivation. One can draw this conclusion from studying the minority of sporadic colon carcinomas (approximately 10%) that carry wild-type *Apc* alleles. In some of these, the *Apc* gene promoter is hypermethylated and rendered inactive. In others, the gene encoding β-catenin carries point mutations, and the resulting mutant β-catenin molecules lose the amino acid residues that are normally phosphorylated by GSK-3β. Because they cannot be properly phosphorylated, these mutant β-catenin molecules escape proteasomal degradation and accumulate—precisely the outcome that is seen when APC is missing.

When β-catenin accumulates in enterocyte precursors—as a result of APC inactivation or alternative mechanisms—the affected cells retain a progenitor cell-like phenotype, which prevents them from migrating out of the crypts. This retention leads, in turn, to the accumulation of large numbers of relatively undifferentiated cells in the colonic crypt (see Figure 7.20B), which eventually form adenomatous polyps. Equally important, these accumulating cells can later sustain additional mutations that enable them to form more advanced polyps and, following even more mutations, carcinomas.

This model explains the sequence of mutations that, over time, leads to the formation of human colon carcinoma cells. The first of these mutations invariably involves inactivation of *Apc* function (or the functionally equivalent changes mentioned above). The resulting cells, now trapped in the crypts, may then suffer mutations in a number of other genes—such as K-*ras* (see Chapter 4) and *p53* (see Chapter 9)—which cause the cells to proliferate more aggressively. Importantly, alterations of the APC–β-

catenin pathway nearly always come first, whereas the order of the subsequent genetic changes is more variable.

Many important insights into the function of this pathway in cancer came from the study of mouse models of colorectal cancer. In the early days, such models were generated by random, chemically induced mutagenesis followed by selection for the phenotype of interest—in this case, the appearance of intestinal adenomas in the mutant animals. One of the earliest models of colon cancer, dubbed the *Min* mouse (for its multiple intestinal neoplasias), was developed in this manner. These animals, which can develop 100 polyps in the small intestine in addition to colon tumors, were later found to contain heterozygous point mutations in the *Apc* gene. Tumor cells in these mice were shown to undergo LOH to eliminate the remaining wild-type *Apc* allele.

As discussed above, today biologists have access to more sophisticated genetic tools for inactivating or "knocking out" specific genes in a more targeted fashion—including genes suspected of being TSGs (see Sidebar 7.2 and Figure 7.17). Like *Min* mice, mice engineered to have one inactive *Apc* allele ($Apc^{+/-}$) are predisposed to develop intestinal tumors. Using a conditional knockout strategy (see Figure 7.17) to mutate the *Apc* gene specifically in intestinal stem cells, researchers discovered that this targeted inactivation fueled the growth of microscopic tumors at the base of the crypts. These microadenomas then expanded unimpeded, forming adenomas within a matter of weeks. In contrast, elimination of *Apc* function in the short-lived transit-amplifying cells triggered the formation of microadenomas whose growth rapidly fizzled out; full-blown adenomas were rarely found in these mutant mice. These observations reinforce the notion that loss of *Apc* in stem cells is the event that drives colon cancer.

Another form of conditional inhibition of *Apc* function relies on the use of inducible expression of short hairpin RNAs (shRNAs), which target the gene for inactivation through the RNA interference (RNAi) pathway, as will be discussed in Chapter 12. In these experiments, suppressing *Apc* function with an *Apc*-targeted shRNA generates tumors in mice, as would be expected. What is surprising, however, is that shutting off the shRNA—which restores the expression of *Apc*—leads to rapid tumor regression, even in highly advanced tumors. Hence, as discussed later in Chapter 11, the mutant allele that initiated the multi-step development of a tumor continues to be critical to its ongoing growth long after additional mutant alleles have been acquired by the cancer cells. Conditional knockouts and conditional RNAi approaches are now being used widely to interrogate TSG function.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

enterocyte
: Epithelial cell lining the luminal wall of the gastrointestinal tract or associated structures such as villi.

crypt
: A deep cavity in the wall of the small or large intestine in which enterocyte stem cell proliferation and initial differentiation occur.

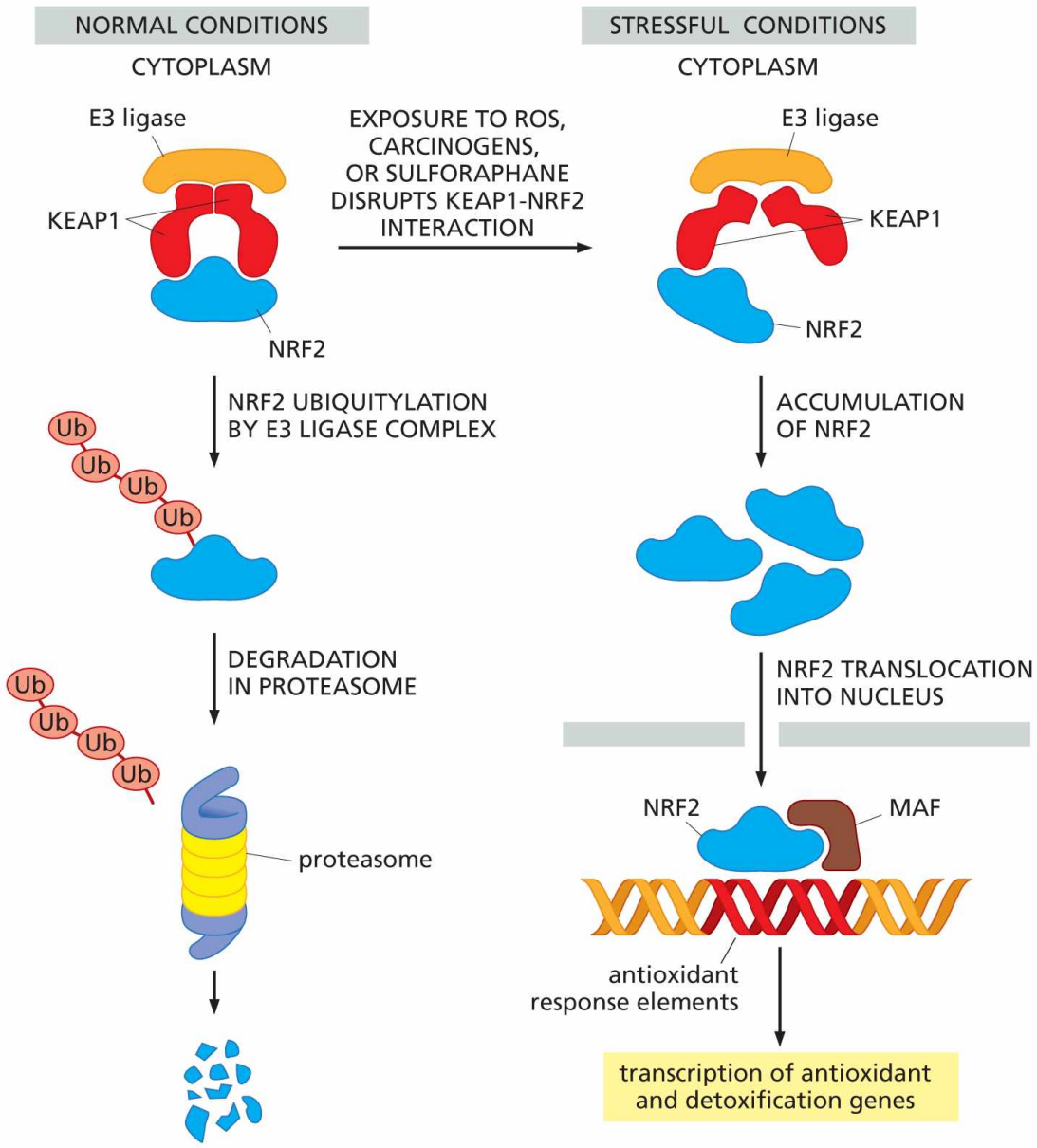
OceanofPDF.com

7.11 KEAP1 regulates cellular response to oxidative stress

Thus far, we have focused mainly on TSGs whose primary function is related to constraining cell proliferation. Mutation of these genes would be expected to liberate a developing cancer cell from a variety of growth-inhibitory mechanisms and allow increased, inappropriate proliferation. Consistent with this role in proliferation control, mutations in such genes typically occur in the early stages of tumorigenesis and can serve as the initiating events for certain cancer types. However, TSGs can also control processes linked to disease progression—that is, the acquisition of more aggressive phenotypes that occurs later in the multi-step process of tumorigenesis. Mutant alleles of these types of genes would be selected for only at later stages of tumorigenesis. One prominent example of such a TSG is *Keap1*, a gene that encodes the protein KEAP1 (Kelch-like ECH-associated protein 1), which is mutated in a significant percentage of lung and other cancers.

In normal cells, KEAP1 acts as a sensor for a variety of chemical and environmental stresses—from the carcinogens in cigarette smoke and the phytochemicals produced by the plants we eat to the reactive oxygen species (ROS) generated by cells as a by-product of oxidative metabolism and intracellular signaling pathways. When detected by KEAP1, such chemically reactive, toxic compounds activate a cellular response program that directs the expression of a suite of genes encoding various cellular antioxidants and detoxification enzymes. This defensive response relies on the interaction of KEAP1 and the transcription factor called NRF2.

In the absence of oxidative stress, KEAP1 sequesters NRF2 in the cytoplasm and targets this protein for ubiquitylation and degradation; as a result, this protein has a lifetime of only 20 minutes (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). This ongoing targeted destruction of NRF2 minimizes the activity of the antioxidant response pathway under normal conditions (**Figure 7.23**). However, when cells are exposed to ROS or other toxic molecules, these chemicals react with key cysteine residues in KEAP1, which causes KEAP1 to release NRF2. Once liberated from KEAP1, NRF2 is free to translocate to the nucleus, where it joins with members of the MAF transcription factor family as well as other transcription factors and binds to genes whose promoters include antioxidant responsive element (ARE) sequences. In this way, NRF2 orchestrates the activation of a series of genes involved in cellular detoxification (see Figure 7.23). Once the reactive compounds have been cleared, the chemical modifications to the KEAP1 cysteines are reversed, allowing the protein to again sequester NRF2 and trigger its degradation in the cytoplasm.



Two diagrams show K E A P 1-N R F 2 interaction under normal conditions and stressful conditions. Under normal conditions, two copies of K E A P 1 bind to one copy of N R F 2 and one copy of E3 ligase. N R F 2 undergoes ubiquitylation by the E3 ligase complex, resulting in it being released with a chain of you bees attached. It then undergoes degradation in a proteasome. Under stressful conditions, such as exposure to R O S, carcinogens, or sulforaphane, the binding between K E A P 1, N R F 2, and E3 ligase is not completed. Instead of undergoing ubiquitylation and degradation, N R F 2 accumulates in the cytoplasm, translocates into the nucleus, and together with M A F binds to the antioxidant response elements in a gene. This prompts transcription of antioxidant and detoxification genes.

Figure 7.23 KEAP1, NRF2, and the cellular antioxidant response In normal cells, the KEAP1–NRF2 pathway monitors the cellular environment and, upon exposure to ROS, carcinogens, or other chemically reactive compounds, activates an elaborate transcriptional program that boosts the production of cellular antioxidants and detoxifying enzymes. Under normal conditions, in the absence of these reactive chemicals, KEAP1 sequesters NRF2 in the cytoplasm (*left*). This interaction brings NRF2 in contact with a protein complex containing an E3 ligase—an enzyme that recognizes NRF2 and tags it with a polyubiquitin (Ub) chain. Polyubiquitylated NRF2 is then degraded in a proteasome (as described in Supplementary Sidebar 7.5). This destruction of NRF2 keeps the activity of the antioxidant response pathway low. Exposure to chemically reactive compounds disrupts the binding of KEAP1 and NRF2 (*right*). Once released from KEAP1, NRF2 accumulates and enters the nucleus, where it couples with a MAF transcription factor and activates expression of genes containing an antioxidant-reactive element (ARE) in their promoters. These genes encode a variety of proteins that act as antioxidants and detoxifying enzymes.

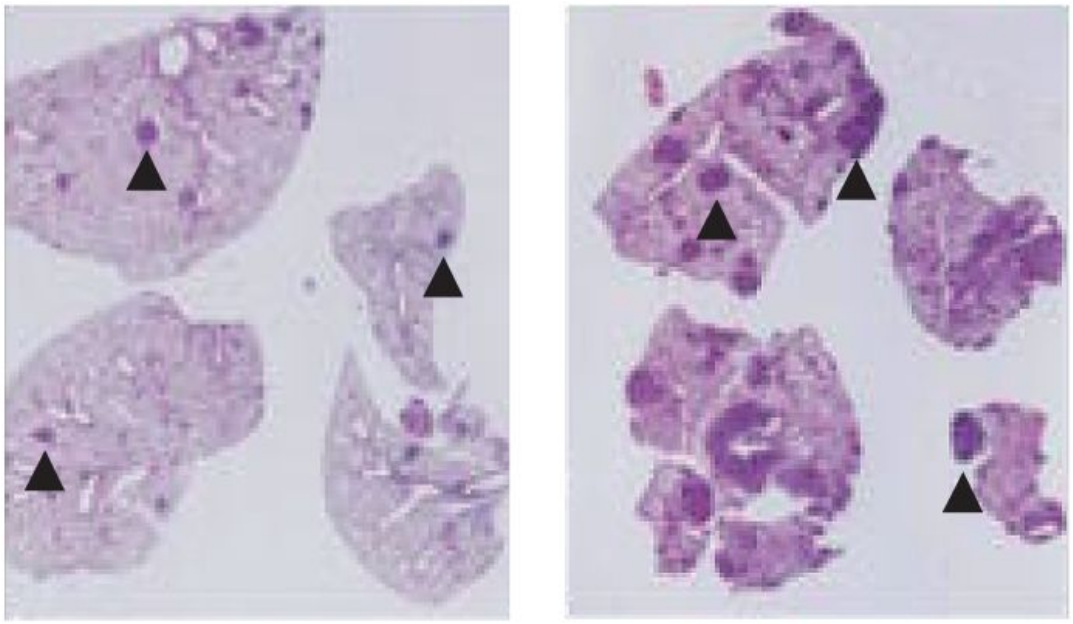
By eliminating carcinogens and disarming ROS that could otherwise damage DNA and other cellular constituents, this cellular detoxification program can prevent cancer initiation and progression. However, in cells that are already malignant, activation of this pathway can provide a selective advantage, both by thwarting chemotherapies and allowing cells to survive and grow under conditions of higher levels of oxidative stress. Indeed, changes in their metabolism often cause cancer cells to produce high concentrations of ROS. Under these conditions, cancer cells that boost their detoxification ability may have a marked selective advantage.

Some cancers achieve this detoxification boost by mutating *Keap1*. Loss-of-function mutations in *Keap1* can chronically upregulate the NRF2-dependent detoxification pathway. In one study, inactivating mutations in *Keap1* were found in the genomes of half of the lung cancer cell lines examined. These mutations included missense mutations (which cause an amino acid substitution in the protein), deletions, frameshift mutations, and nonsense mutations (which cause premature truncation of the protein)—all of which are characteristic of the types of loss-of-function mutations associated with other TSGs. Subsequent large-scale cancer genome sequencing studies (as described in Chapter 12) extended these findings to large numbers of primary cancer specimens. Among the numerous human cancers profiled, adenocarcinomas and squamous cell cancers of the lung were found to have the highest frequency of *Keap1* mutations (17 and 12%, respectively), although *Keap1* mutations were also observed in other cancer types at significant frequency. The same studies also found that the chromosomal region around *Keap1* is a frequent target of LOH in lung cancers and other cancer types. In addition, many cancers—particularly those of lung and prostate

—show hypermethylation of the *Keap1* promoter, another common means of functionally inactivating TSGs, as discussed earlier in this chapter.

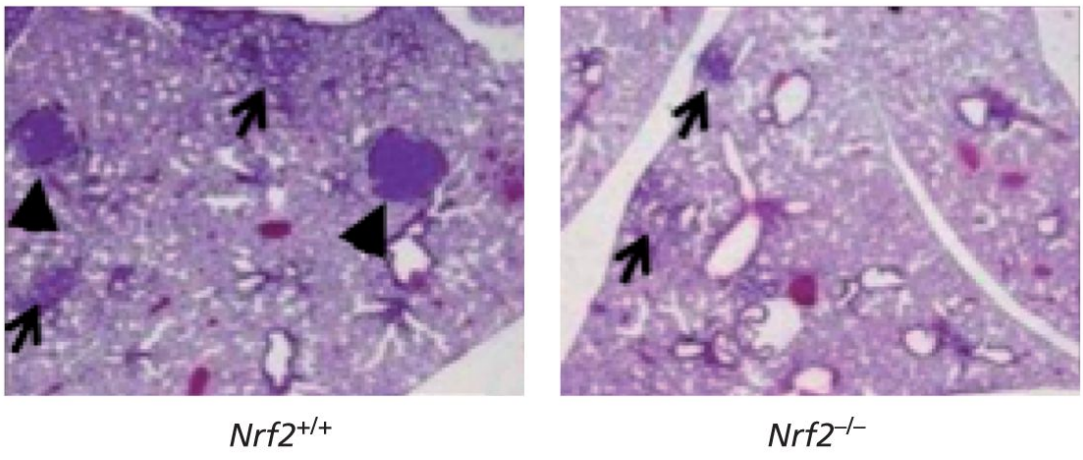
As an alternative to inactivating mutations in *Keap1*, the KEAP1–NRF2 pathway can also be made constitutively active by mutations in the *Nrf2* gene. In contrast to those seen in *Keap1*—which affect a variety of amino acids throughout the KEAP1 sequence—the cancer-associated mutations in *Nrf2* are narrowly targeted to the sequences encoding the amino acid residues that mediate NRF2 binding to KEAP1. These gain-of-function mutations prevent KEAP1-mediated degradation of NRF2 while preserving its ability to activate antioxidant-responsive genes. Hence, both the inactivating *Keap1* mutations and the gain-of-function *Nrf2* mutations lead to constitutive activation of the pathway. Analogous to the cancer-causing mutations that affect either the APC or the β-catenin genes within a given colorectal carcinoma genome (see Section 7.10), those cancers that carry mutations activating the antioxidant response pathway affect either *Keap1* or *Nrf2* but not both genes.

Functional studies in mice have confirmed the importance of the KEAP1–NRF2 pathway in tumor progression. For example, targeted inactivation of *Keap1* in a mouse model of lung adenocarcinoma using CRISPR-Cas9—a powerful gene editing technique described in Sidebar 12.11—led to accelerated growth and a significant expansion in the volume of primary tumors (**Figure 7.24A**). These tumors exhibited increased levels of nuclear NRF2 as well as increased expression of NRF2 target genes. Interestingly, *Keap1*-deficient tumors and cell lines also show altered metabolic requirements, which may suggest novel targets for cancer therapy. In other mouse models of lung and pancreatic cancer, inactivation of *Nrf2* significantly inhibited tumor development (Figure 7.24B). These animal studies provide strong evidence for the pro-tumorigenic effect of constitutive activation of the antioxidant pathway, as driven by inactivation of KEAP1. The loss of KEAP1 thus creates an intracellular environment that enables evolving neoplastic cells to tolerate a variety of tumor-promoting alterations.



Two histology images, comparing K e a p plus plus to K e a p minus minus. Dark lumps within the tissue samples are larger and darker in the K e a p minus minus image.

(A)



Two histology images, comparing N r f 2 plus plus to N r f 2 minus minus. Dark lumps within the tissue samples are smaller and lighter in the N r f 2 minus minus image.

(B)

Figure 7.24 Effects of inactivating mutations in the *Keap1* and *Nrf2* genes on lung tumor development (A) Inactivation of the *Keap1* gene in a mouse model of lung adenocarcinoma leads to larger and more advanced tumors. The left panel shows hematoxylin plus eosin (H&E) staining of lungs containing adenomas (*black arrowheads*) formed in a genetically engineered mouse model of lung cancer in which *Keap1* is wild type. CRISPR-Cas9–mediated deletion of *Keap1* in this model (*right panel*) results in larger, more advanced tumors (*black arrowheads*). (B) In a related model of lung cancer, germ-line deletion of *Nrf2* (*right panel*) causes a reduction in the size of hyperplasias (*black arrows*) and adenomas (*black arrowheads*) compared to those seen in mice with wild-type *Nrf2* (left panel). Note that images in (B) are taken at higher magnification than those in (A). A, from R. Romero et al. *Nature Medicine* 23(11):1362-1368, 2017. Reprinted with permission from Springer Nature. B, from G. DeNicola et al., *Nature* 475:106-109, 2011. Reprinted with permission from Springer Nature.)

Finally, because the KEAP1–NRF2 pathway is important for detoxifying mutagenic carcinogens, mutations in *Keap1* and *Nrf2* can affect the potency of certain chemical carcinogens, at least in animal studies. Mutations in *Keap1* that lead to pathway activation in the mouse can inhibit tumorigenesis induced experimentally by mutagenic carcinogens, presumably because these chemicals are more effectively detoxified. Interestingly, mutations that inactivate *Nrf2* can *enhance* cancer initiation in response to such mutagenic agents but *reduce* the subsequent progression of these cancers to full-fledged malignancy (because they are less capable of coping with the oxidative stress conditions found in highly malignant cells). This observation reflects the differing roles that can be played by the antioxidant response at different stages of multi-step tumor progression.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ubiquitylation
: Process by which one or more ubiquitin molecules are attached covalently to a protein substrate molecule, which often results in the degradation of the tagged protein in a proteasome, *alternatively termed* **ubiquitination**.

OceanofPDF.com

7.12 Not all familial cancers can be explained by inheritance of mutant TSGs

Many of the cloned TSGs listed in Table 7.1—and indeed, many of the TSGs we have discussed in this chapter—are involved in both familial and sporadic cancers. Generally speaking, this means that inheritance of defective copies of these genes creates a greatly increased risk of developing one or another specific type of cancer, often a type of tumor that is otherwise relatively rare in the human population.

However, not all familial cancer syndromes can be traced back to an inherited TSG allele. As we will discuss in Chapter 12, mutant germ-line alleles of a second class of genes also cause cancer predisposition. These other genes are normally responsible for maintaining the cellular genome and thus act to reduce the likelihood of mutations and chromosomal abnormalities will accumulate. Because cancer pathogenesis depends on the accumulation by individual cells of multiple somatic mutations, genes that reduce the mutation rate, such as these genome maintenance genes, are highly effective in suppressing cancer onset. Conversely, defects in genome maintenance often lead to a significant increase in cancer risk because they increase the overall mutation rate of a cell.

Thus, there are really two distinct classes of familial cancer genes: the TSGs described in this chapter and the genome maintenance genes described in Chapter 12. We can rationalize the distinction between the two classes of genes as follows. The TSGs function to directly control the biology of cells by affecting how they proliferate, differentiate, or die; genes functioning in this way are sometimes called gatekeepers to indicate their role in allowing or disallowing cells to progress through cycles of growth and division. The DNA maintenance genes affect cancer cell biology only indirectly by controlling the rate at which cells accumulate mutant genes; these genes have been termed caretakers to reflect their role

in the maintenance of cellular genomes. Unlike mutant gatekeeper and caretaker alleles, mutant, functionally activated versions of proto-oncogenes are rarely transmitted through the germ line and are thus not commonly associated with familial cancer syndromes (**Sidebar 7.5**).

Sidebar 7.5 Why are mutant tumor suppressor genes transmitted through the germ line, whereas mutant proto-oncogenes are usually not?

A number of familial cancer syndromes have been associated with the inheritance of mutant alleles of TSGs (see Table 7.1). Very few cancer syndromes, however, are associated with inherited mutant alleles of proto-oncogenes (that is, activated oncogenes). These include Costello syndrome (H-*ras*); familial gastrointestinal stromal tumors (*Kit* and *PDGFR-A*); hereditary papillary renal cell cancer (*Met*); multiple endocrine neoplasia (*Ret*); Noonan syndrome (*PTPN11*, K-*ras*, and *SOS*); and familial neuroblastoma (*ALK*). How can we explain this dramatic difference in the heritability of mutant TSGs and mutant proto-oncogenes?

Mutations that yield activated oncogenes, like those that eliminate the activity of TSGs, are likely to arise with some frequency during gametogenesis—the processes that form sperm and egg. Thus, they are likely to be transmitted to fertilized eggs. However, because oncogenes act at the cellular level as dominant alleles, these mutant alleles are likely to perturb the behavior of individual cells in the developing embryo and therefore to disrupt normal tissue development. Consequently, embryos carrying these mutant oncogenic alleles are unlikely to develop to term, and these mutant alleles will disappear from the germ line of a family and thus from the gene pool of the species. (For example, experiments reported in 2004 indicate that mouse embryos arising from sperm carrying a mutant, activated K-*ras* oncogene develop only to mid-gestation; the mutant germ-line alleles of the H-*ras* and K-*ras* genes that cause Costello and Noonan syndromes in humans carry mutations that are much weaker in their transforming powers than those somatically mutated alleles responsible for creating the *Ras* oncogenes that underlie many types of cancer.)

Mutant germ-line alleles of TSGs behave much differently, however. Because these alleles are generally recessive at the cellular level, their presence in most cells of an embryo will not be apparent. For this reason, the presence of inherited mutant TSGs will often be compatible with normal embryonic development, and the cancer phenotypes that they create will become apparent only in a small number of cells and after great delay, allowing an individual carrying these alleles to develop normally and, as is often the case, to survive through much of adulthood.

Still, if mutant TSGs undergo LOH in 1 out of 10^4 or 10^5 cells, and if an adult human has many more than 10^{13} cells, why doesn't a person who inherits a mutant TSG develop tens of thousands, even millions of tumors? The answer stems from the fact that, for most types of cancer, tumorigenesis is a multi-step process (as we discuss in Chapter 11). This means that a mutant gene (whether it be an oncogene or a TSG) may be necessary for tumor formation but will not, on its own, be sufficient. Hence, many cells in an individual heterozygous for a mutant TSG may well undergo LOH of this gene, but only a tiny minority of these cells will ever acquire the additional genetic changes needed to make a clinically detectable tumor. For other, rare cancers—including retinoblastoma—the inactivation of a single gene (*Rb*) may be sufficient to initiate tumor formation, at least in fetal retinal cells. This explains why individuals with the Rb^+/Rb^- genotype are predisposed to this tumor type.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

gatekeeper

(1) An oligopeptide domain that controls access by small molecules to the catalytic cleft of an enzyme such as a kinase. (2) A gene that operates to regulate cell proliferation or to regulate cell number by controlling cell differentiation or cell death. Loss of a gatekeeper gene removes an impediment to cell proliferation and thus to the appearance of populations of neoplastic cells. *Compare* **caretaker**, **tumor suppressor gene**.

caretaker

A gene that encodes a protein that maintains the integrity of the genome and thereby prevents the accumulation of mutations and, in turn, the formation of neoplastic cells. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

gametogenesis

Processes that yield gametes, i.e., sperm or eggs.

OceanofPDF.com

7.13 Synopsis and prospects

TSGs constitute a large group of genes having only one shared attribute: in one way or another, each of these genes normally functions to reduce the likelihood that a clinically detectable tumor will appear in one of the body's tissues. Some TSGs function to decrease the likelihood that early steps of multi-step tumor progression will occur, whereas others operate specifically to suppress completion of the later steps of tumor progression. The dynamics governing these complex processes are the subject of Chapter 11. We therefore should expand the definition of TSGs to include genes that operate to suppress initial benign tumor formation, as well as those that constrain subsequent malignant progression. A further refinement of definitions has come from the demonstration that some TSGs encode microRNAs rather than proteins; the pleiotropic powers of many microRNAs makes them potent regulators of complex cellular phenotypes, including neoplastic transformation (see Table 7.1). Hence, proteins are not the only macromolecules that can control runaway cell growth.

The discovery of TSGs helped to explain one of the major mysteries of human cancer biology—that of familial cancer syndromes. As we discussed in this chapter, inheritance of a defective allele of one of these genes is often compatible with normal embryonic development. The phenotypic effects of this genetic defect may only become apparent with great delay, sometimes in midlife, when its presence is revealed by the loss of the surviving wild-type allele and the outgrowth of a particular type of tumor. Elimination of these wild-type alleles often involves LOH events, and the repeatedly observed LOH in a certain chromosomal region among a group of tumors can serve, on its own, as a clear indication of the presence of a still-unidentified TSG lurking in this region.

The diverse behaviors of these genes highlight an ongoing difficulty in this area of cancer research: What criteria can be used to define a TSG? For our purposes, we have included in the family of TSGs only those genes whose products operate in some dynamic fashion to constrain cell proliferation, survival, or malignant progression. Other genes that function indirectly to

prevent cancer through their abilities to maintain the genome and suppress mutations are described in Chapter 12. From the perspective of a geneticist, this division—the dichotomy between the "gatekeepers" and the "caretakers"—is an artificial one, because the wild-type versions of both classes of genes are often found to be eliminated or inactivated in the genomes of cancer cells. Moreover, the patterns of inheritance of the cancer syndromes associated with defective caretaker genes are formally identical to the mechanisms described in this chapter. Still, for those who would like to understand the biological mechanisms of cancer formation, the distinction between TSGs (the gatekeepers) and genome maintenance genes (the caretakers) is a highly useful one and is therefore widely embraced.

In the years since the first TSGs (*p53* and *Rb*) were cloned, numerous other genes have been touted as "candidate" TSGs because their expression was depressed or absent in cancer cells, while being readily detectable in corresponding normal cells. This criterion for membership in the TSG family was soon realized to be flawed, in no small part because it is often impossible to identify the normal precursor of a cancer cell under study. Certain kinds of tumor cells may not express a particular gene because of a gene expression program that is played out during normal differentiation of the tissue in which these tumor cells have arisen. Hence, the absence of expression of this gene in a cancer cell may reflect only the actions of a normal differentiation program rather than a pathological loss. So, this criterion—absence of gene expression—is not definitive.

In certain instances, expression of a candidate TSG may be present in the clearly identified normal precursors of a group of tumor cells and absent in the tumor cells themselves. This would appear to provide slightly stronger support for the candidacy of this gene. But even this type of evidence is not conclusive, because the absence of gene expression in a cancer cell may often be one of the myriad *consequences* of the transformation process rather than one of its root *causes*. Thus, inactivation of this gene may have played no role whatsoever in the formation of the tumorigenic cell.

Responding to these criticisms, researchers have undertaken to functionally test candidate TSGs. The process involves introducing cloned wild-type versions of candidate genes into cancer cells that lack any detectable

expression of these genes. The goal here has been to show that once the wild-type TSG function is restored in these cancer cells, they revert partially or completely to a normal growth phenotype, or they may even enter into apoptosis (as discussed in Chapter 9). However, the results of such experiments are often difficult to interpret, because the expression of genes at unnaturally elevated levels—and in cells or locations where they do not normally belong (termed ectopic expression)—often makes cells quite unhappy and causes them to stop growing or even to die. Such responses are often observed following introduction of a variety of genes that would never be considered TSGs.

The ambiguities of these functional tests have necessitated the introduction of genetic criteria to validate the candidacy of many putative TSGs. If a gene repeatedly undergoes LOH in tumor cell genomes, for example, then surely its candidacy becomes far more credible. But here too ambiguity reigns. After all, genes that repeatedly suffer LOH may only be closely linked on a chromosome to a bona fide TSG that is the true target of elimination during tumor development.

These various considerations have led to an even stricter genetic definition of a TSG: a gene can be safely called a TSG only if it undergoes LOH in many tumor cell genomes *and* if the resulting homozygous alleles bear clear and obvious inactivating mutations. (This latter criterion should allow an investigator to discount any bystander genes that happen to be closely linked to bona fide TSGs on human chromosomes.) Recent advances in large-scale genomic sequencing, which we will discuss in Chapter 12, have now revealed more than 200 human genes that meet these criteria.

Not surprisingly, even these quite rigid genetic and molecular criteria have proven to be flawed, because they exclude from consideration certain genes that are likely to be genuine TSGs. The activity of many TSGs can be eliminated by promoter methylation (see Section 7.7), which explains why mutant alleles of a bona fide TSG might rarely be encountered in tumor cell genomes, even though effective silencing of the gene has occurred and contributed, in turn, to tumor outgrowth.

The ability to knock out or otherwise modify the functions of candidate TSGs through manipulation of the mouse genome line (see Sidebar 7.5)

provides yet another powerful tool for validating their role in tumorigenesis. Although the biology of mice and humans differs in many respects, the shared, fundamental features of mammalian biology make these genetically altered mice extraordinarily useful for accurately modeling many aspects of human tumor biology.

Many of the genes that are listed in Table 7.1 have been knocked out in the germ line of mice. For the most part, resulting heterozygotes have been found to exhibit increased susceptibility to one or another type of cancer. In many instances, the particular tissue that is affected differs from that observed in humans. For example, *Rb*-heterozygous mice (that is, $Rb^{+/-}$) tend to develop pituitary and thyroid tumors rather than the retinoblastomas observed in humans. Still, the development of any type of tumor at an elevated frequency in such genetically altered mice adds persuasive evidence to support the candidacy of a gene as a TSG.

All this explains why multiple criteria are now brought to bear when evaluating nominees for membership in this exclusive gene club. For us, perhaps the most compelling criterion is a functional one: Can the tumor-suppressing ability of a candidate TSG be rationalized in terms of the biochemical activities of its encoded protein and the known position of this protein in a cell's regulatory circuitry?

In the end, these many complications in validating candidate TSGs have one attribute in common: the very existence of a TSG becomes apparent only when it is absent. This fact sets the stage for all the difficulties that have bedeviled TSG research, and it underscores the difficulties that will continue to impede the validation of new TSGs in the future.

With all these reservations in mind, we can nevertheless distill some generalizations about TSGs that will likely stand the test of time. To begin, the name that we apply to these genes is, in one sense, a misnomer. The normal roles of many are to suppress inappropriate increases in cell number, either by suppressing proliferation or by triggering apoptosis in normal tissues. The participation of these genes in cancer formation only becomes apparent in their absence. Thus, in the absence of these genes, cells survive and proliferate at times and in places where their survival and proliferation

are inappropriate. Beyond the resulting effects on cell number are the important roles of some of these genes, as highlighted here, in constraining malignant progression of already-initiated tumors.

Another generalization is also obvious, even without knowing the identities of all TSGs: their protein products do not form any single, integrated signaling network. Instead, these proteins crop up here and there in the wiring diagrams of various regulatory subcircuits operating in different parts of the cell. This diversity is explained by the simple and obvious rationale with which we began this chapter: all well-designed control systems have both positive and negative regulatory components that counterbalance one another. Thus, for every type of positive signal, such as those signals that flow through mitogenic signaling pathways, there must be negative controllers ensuring that these signaling fluxes are kept within proper limits. Perhaps cancer biologists should have deduced this from first principles, long before they launched their studies of TSGs.

Even after the full repertoire of TSGs are cataloged and characterized, the pRb and p53 proteins will continue to be recognized as the products of TSGs that are of preeminent importance in human tumor pathogenesis. The reasons for this will become apparent in the next two chapters. Although all the pieces of evidence are not yet in hand, it seems increasingly likely that the two signaling pathways controlled by pRb and p53 are deregulated in the great majority of human cancers. Almost all of the remaining TSGs (see Table 7.1) are involved in the development of more circumscribed sets of human tumors.

The fact that certain TSGs are missing from the expressed genes within cancer cells has prompted many to propose the obvious: if only we could replace or repair the missing TSGs in cancer cells, these cells would revert partially or totally to a normal cell phenotype and the problem of cancer would be largely solved. Such “gene therapy” strategies have the additional attraction that the occasional, inadvertent introduction of a TSG into a normal cell should have little if any negative effect if the gene is expressed at an appropriate, physiological level; this reduces the risk of undesired side-effect toxicity to normal tissues.

As attractive as such gene therapy strategies are in concept, they have been extremely difficult to implement in practice. The viral vectors that form the core of most of these procedures are inefficient in delivering intact, wild-type copies of TSGs to the neoplastic cells within tumor masses. Unfortunately, efficient transfer is essential for curative anti-tumor therapies: if significant numbers of cancer cells within a tumor under treatment fail to acquire a vector-borne wild-type TSG, these cells will serve as the progenitors of a reborn tumor mass. Similar concerns about the efficiency of gene delivery lessen enthusiasm for using CRISPR-based genome editing techniques to repair defective TSGs in cancer cell genomes. For these reasons, although TSGs are profoundly important to our understanding of cancer formation, in most cases, transformation of this knowledge into therapeutic practice is still largely beyond our reach.

Given the challenges associated with restoring TSG function as a therapeutic strategy, an alternative approach is to target signaling pathways that are activated following TSG loss. For example, loss of the *PTEN* TSG leads to hyperactivity of the kinase Akt/PKB, on which some types of cancer cells come to depend for their continued viability. This dependence explains why drugs that shut down an essential upstream co-activator of Akt/PKB, termed mTOR, hold promise as therapeutic agents against tumors, such as glioblastomas and prostate carcinomas, in which PTEN activity has been lost.

The loss of a TSG may render a cell more susceptible to other types of intervention. For example, using CRISPR-based methods (see Sidebar 12.11), it is now possible to perform genetic screens to systematically identify genes and pathways that cancer cells lacking the function of a TSG have come to depend on for their continued growth or survival. This strategy is often termed a "synthetic lethal screen," simply because elimination of a gene identified in such a screen is only injurious to a cell when accompanied by the presence of a mutant TSG allele located elsewhere in the genome of a cancer cell. This approach holds the promise of identifying drug targets for the treatment of cancers with particular TSG mutations. At present, we confront a rapidly expanding roster of TSGs and a rudimentary understanding of how most of them work to forestall cancer,

which explains why we cannot begin to forecast the clinical ramifications of this work that will be realized only over the coming decades.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ectopic

(1) Referring to the expression of a gene or protein in a location or physiological situation where it normally would not be expressed. (2) Referring to the presence of cells or tissues in an anatomical site where they would not naturally be found in the body. *See also* **orthotopic**.

synthetic lethal screen

A screen of a large number of genes, often those present in an entire genome, in which the cells introduced into the screen bear one or another mutation; the subsequent screen is designed to detect, in an unbiased fashion, other genes that, when disrupted, lead to lethality in these cells but not in wild-type cells lacking the mutation.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- At the cellular level, the neoplastic phenotype of human cancer cells is usually recessive, because expression of this phenotype depends, in part, on the inactivation of tumor suppressor genes (TSGs). This indicates that the loss of genetic information is critical for the development of most if not all human tumors.
- Much of the loss of functionally important genetic information during the formation of tumors is demonstrated by TSGs, which are often present in the genomes of cancer cells as inactive, null alleles.
- TSG loss usually affects cell phenotype only when both copies of such a gene are lost in a cell. This means that null alleles of TSGs may be present in a heterozygous state in many cells throughout the body without affecting cell and tissue phenotype.
- The loss of TSG function can occur either through genetic mutation or the epigenetic silencing of genes via promoter methylation.
- Inactivation (by mutation or methylation) of one copy of a TSG may be followed by other mechanisms that facilitate loss of the other gene copy; these mechanisms often depend on loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at the TSG locus and may involve mitotic recombination, loss of a chromosomal region that harbors the gene, inappropriate chromosomal segregation (nondisjunction), or gene conversion stemming from a switch in template strand during DNA replication.
- LOH events usually occur more frequently per cell generation than mutations or promoter methylation, and they occur with different frequencies in different genes.
- Repeated LOH occurring in a given chromosomal region in a number of independently arising tumors often indicates the presence of a TSG in that region.
- In certain instances, the absence of a single functional copy of a TSG leads to changes in cell or tissue behavior—the state of haploinsufficiency.
- When mutant, defective copies of a TSG are inherited in the germ line, the result is often greatly increased susceptibility to one or another specific type of cancer.

- The loss of TSGs occurs far more frequently during the development of a tumor than the activation of proto-oncogenes into oncogenes, and individual tumor cell genomes usually harbor multiple inactivated TSGs.
- TSGs regulate cell proliferation through many biochemical mechanisms. The only theme that unites them is that the loss of any one of them increases the likelihood that a cell will undergo neoplastic transformation or progression to a highly malignant state.
- TSGs are often called “gatekeepers” to signify their involvement in governing the dynamics of cell proliferation and to distinguish them from a second class of genes, the “caretakers,” which also increase cancer risk when inherited in defective form but function entirely differently, working to maintain the integrity of the cell genome.
- Replacing or repairing a TSG as a therapeutic strategy for cancer is challenging because of limitations in the efficiency of gene delivery technologies; targeting pathways that become activated upon TSG loss is a promising alternative strategy.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Why is the inheritance of mutant, activated oncogenes responsible for only a small proportion of familial cancer syndromes, whereas the inheritance of defective tumor suppressor genes (TSGs) is responsible for the lion's share of these diseases?
2. What factors may determine whether the inactivation of a TSG occurs at a frequency per cell generation higher than the activation of an oncogene?
3. How might the loss of TSG function yield an outcome that is, at the cell-biological level, indistinguishable from the acquisition of an active oncogene?
4. Some TSGs undergo LOH in fewer than 20% of tumors of a given type. Why and how do such low rates of LOH complicate the identification and molecular isolation of such genes?
5. What criteria need to be satisfied before you would be comfortable in categorizing a gene as a TSG?
6. What factors might influence the identities of the tissues affected by an inherited, defective allele of a TSG?
7. What methods could be used to identify genes or pathways that cancer cells harboring a particular TSG mutation become dependent on for growth or survival?
8. What evidence might be produced to demonstrate that a group of candidate TSGs function in the same regulatory pathway within normal cells?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Baylin SB & Jones PA (2016) Epigenetic determinants of cancer. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 8:a019505.

Berdasco M & Esteller M (2010) Aberrant epigenetic landscape of cancer: how cellular identity goes awry. *Dev. Cell* 19, 698–711.

Brahimi-Horn MC, Chiche J & Pouysségur J (2007) Hypoxia and cancer. *J. Mol. Med. (Berl.)* 85, 1301–1307.

Comings DE (1973) A general theory of carcinogenesis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 70, 3324–3328.

Esteller M (2007) Cancer epigenomics: DNA methylomes and histone-modification maps. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 8, 286–298.

Esteller M (2009) Epigenetics in cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 358, 1148–1159.

Foulkes WD (2008) Inherited susceptibility to common cancers. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 359, 2143–2153.

Gregorieff A & Clevers H (2005) Wnt signaling in the intestinal epithelium: from endoderm to cancer. *Genes Dev.* 19, 877–890.

Herman JG & Baylin SB (2003) Gene silencing in cancer in association with promoter hypermethylation. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 349, 2042–2054.

Hershko A, Ciechanover A & Varshavsky A (2000) The ubiquitin system. *Nat. Med.* 6, 1073–1081.

Humphries A & Wright NA (2008) Colonic crypt organization and tumorigenesis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 415–424.

Jiang F & Doudna JA (2017) CRISPR-Cas9 structures and mechanisms. *Annu. Rev. Biophys.* 45, 505–529.

Jones PA, Issa JP & Baylin S (2016) Targeting the cancer epigenome for therapy. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 17:630–641.

Kaelin WG Jr (2008) The von Hippel–Lindau tumour suppressor protein: O2 sensing and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 865–873.

Krausova M & Korinek V (2014) Wnt signaling in adult intestinal stem cells and cancer. *Cell Signal*. 2014 Mar;26(3):570–579.

Lock R &. Cichowski K (2015) Loss of negative regulators amplifies RAS signaling. *Nat. Genet.* 47:426–427.

Maertens O & Cichowski K (2014) An expanding role for RAS GTPase activating proteins (RAS GAPs) in cancer. *Adv. Biol. Regul.* 55:1–14.

Radtke F & Clevers H (2005) Self-renewal and cancer of the gut: two sides of a coin. *Science* 307, 1904–1907.

Sharma S, Kelly TK & Jones PA (2010) Epigenetics in cancer. *Carcinogenesis* 31, 27–36.

Sherr CJ (2004) Principles of tumor suppression. *Cell* 116, 235–246.

Staser K, Yang FC & Clapp DW (2010) Mast cells and the neurofibroma microenvironment. *Blood* 116, 157–164.

Taguchi K & Yamamoto M (2017) The KEAP1-NRF2 system in cancer. *Front. Oncol.* 7:85.

Ting A, McGarvey KM & Baylin SB (2006) The cancer epigenome: components and functional correlates. *Genes Dev.* 20, 3215–3231.

Varshavsky A (2005) Regulated protein degradation. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 30, 283–286.

Wang LH, Wu CF, Rajasekaran N & Shin YK (2018) Loss of tumor suppressor gene function in human cancer: an overview. *Cell Physiol. Biochem.* 51(6):2647–2693.

Zhu H, Wang G & Qian J (2016) Transcription factors as readers and effectors of DNA methylation. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 17:551–565.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tumor suppressor gene

(1) A gene whose partial or complete inactivation, occurring in either the germ line or the genome of a somatic cell, leads to an increased likelihood of cancer development. (2) Such a gene that is responsible for constraining cell proliferation. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 7.1 Heterozygosity in the human gene pool

The human gene pool carries millions of small variations in DNA sequence, which ensure that at many genetic loci, the gene copy we receive from one parent is subtly different from the gene copy we inherit from the other. This heterogeneity is often called *genetic polymorphism* (see Section 1.2, Figure 1.5). Recall that this term refers to a genetic variability in DNA sequence that may have no effect on the functioning of a gene or its encoded protein product and therefore no effect on cell or organismic phenotype.

In the case of two nonidentical gene copies, these sequence polymorphisms will create, in a molecular-biological sense, two distinct allelic variants of a gene. (For a molecular biologist, a gene cannot be considered homozygous unless its two copies have nucleotide sequences that are 100% identical.) Because such sequence polymorphisms may not affect phenotype, their behavior cannot be faithfully tracked by the classical procedures of Mendelian genetics.

In the intergenic regions on a chromosome, there are often polymorphisms that distinguish the paternal from the maternal copy of a sequence. Though these DNA sequence segments cannot be considered to be alleles of a gene (because they are far removed from any gene on the chromosome), they nonetheless behave just like Mendelian alleles; that is, they are transmitted in a Mendelian fashion from parent to offspring. Hence, the sequence AAGCC in one chromosome and its counterpart AAGGC in the homologous chromosome will be transmitted like Mendelian alleles from generation to generation. Because these sequence variants are not expected to affect phenotype, their existence and patterns of transmission must be gauged through biochemical analyses of DNA, such as DNA sequencing. These sequences, because they have no affiliation with known genes, are sometimes termed “anonymous” sequence markers.

We humans descend from a small population (fewer than several thousand) of founding ancestors who lived 100,000 to 150,000 years ago. We might imagine that during the 6000 to 10,000 generations that have intervened between then and now, a variety of additional mutations, often deriving from DNA copying errors, have accumulated in human genomes, resulting in a progressive increase in the amount of polymorphism that can be detected in the now-large human gene pool. In truth, on an evolutionary time scale, this time period has been too short for large numbers of

additional polymorphisms to accumulate in human genomes, and so we basically own the same genes and DNA sequences that our early ancestors carried during the founding of our species. Hence, the great bulk of polymorphisms in the contemporary human population were already present in the gene pool of this founder population.

Supplementary Sidebar 7.2 Which is more likely: LOH or secondary, independent mutations?

The logic of LOH would seem to indicate that this mechanism, rather than an independent mutational event striking the second, still-intact copy of a TSG, is invariably responsible for the loss of the surviving wild-type allele during tumor development. In truth, it is very difficult to predict the relative probabilities of these two alternative mechanisms, which vary from one gene to another. For example, the probability of a TSG suffering LOH through mitotic recombination (see Figure 7.6) is roughly proportional to the distance of this TSG from the centromere of a chromosome. Hence, TSGs that map close to centromeres lose heterozygosity only infrequently through mitotic recombination. Moreover, the likelihood that this recombination will occur is affected by the nuclear environment, which varies from one cell type to another and seems to influence whether the two homologous chromosomes will be in constant, close proximity to one another within the nucleus and therefore poised to recombine.

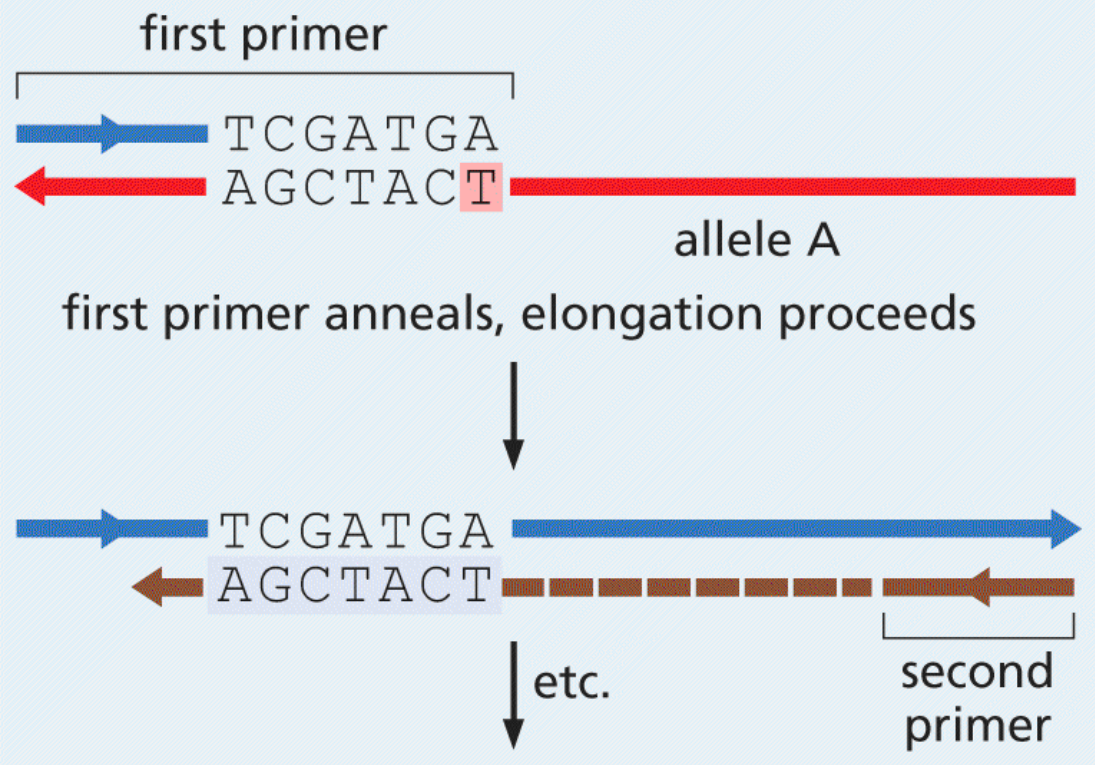
The chances of losing the second, wild-type gene copy through independent mutation are also affected by other variables. Large genes encompassing many tens of kilobases of DNA are more vulnerable to being struck and inactivated by a mutation than are small, compact genes. Genes that have large numbers of CpG sequences (in which the cytosine can be subjected to methylation) are also more vulnerable, because the methyl-CpG is susceptible to a spontaneous chemical conversion into thymine, resulting in the replacement of a CpG sequence by a TpG (see Section 12.4). Yet other factors—including whether or not a gene is being actively transcribed in a particular cell type (notably germ cells)—may also affect the likelihood of its accumulating mutations that can be transmitted through the germline.

Together, these factors make it very difficult to predict precisely how much LOH is favored over genetic mutation as the mechanism for eliminating the second, still-intact copies of TSGs. To cite a specific example, in one study of 158 retinoblastomas, 101 (64%) were found to have undergone LOH at the *Rb* locus; the remaining 57 tumors presumably suffered independent mutations that struck the second *Rb* gene copy or else underwent promoter methylation to silence the wild-type allele (see Section 7.7). Of those that underwent LOH, 94 showed true homozygosity in the chromosomal region surrounding the *Rb* gene, and 7 showed hemizygosity due to total deletion of the chromosomal region that included the second *Rb* gene copy. Consequently, these 7

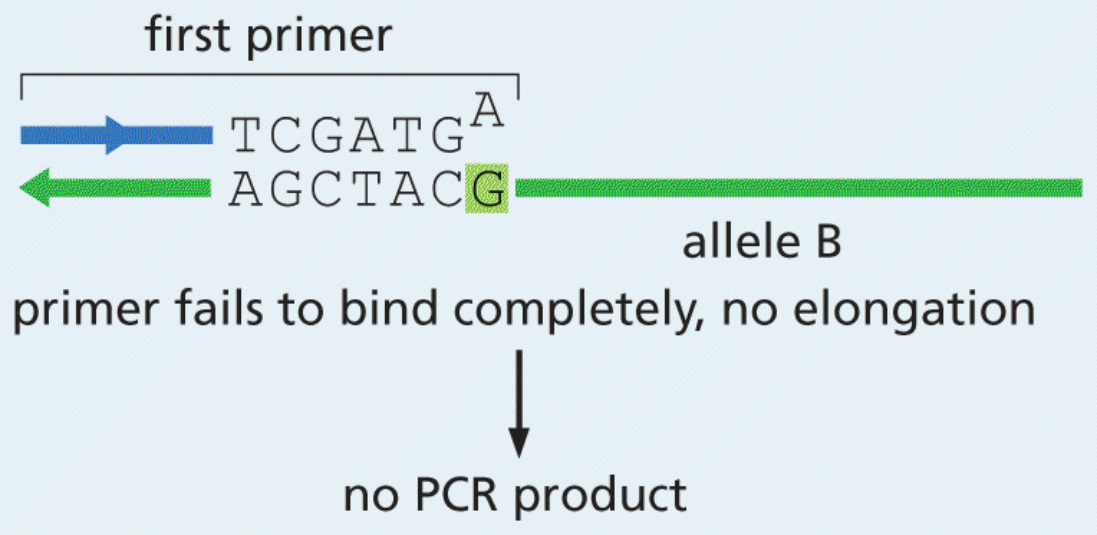
tumors also suffered independent, secondary mutations—in these cases massive deletions of an entire chromosomal region.

Supplementary Sidebar 7.3 The polymerase chain reaction makes it possible to genetically map tumor suppressor genes rapidly

In recent years, the use of RFLPs (see Figure 7.11A) has been replaced by markers that can be detected using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to amplify specific chromosomal segments. In a simple form of this LOH analysis, one of the two DNA primers in a PCR reaction may be complementary to one allelic version of a DNA sequence that is polymorphic in the human gene pool; the other primer binds to a sequence on the complementary strand that is invariant in the human gene pool. The ability of the first primer to bind to one allelic version of the sequence and not to another can be used to determine whether or not the particular allele is present in a DNA preparation (**Figure S7.1**). The ability to perform multiple PCRs simultaneously enables geneticists to survey the configuration of many polymorphic markers at the same time; this application of PCR analysis has facilitated the discovery of thousands of these markers scattered throughout the genome. The vastly increased density of markers along each chromosomal arm has made it possible to localize tumor suppressor genes far more precisely than the use of the very rough mapping strategy illustrated in Figure 7.11A and B.



(A)



(B)

Figure S7.1 Use of the polymerase chain reaction to determine sequence polymorphisms The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can be used to determine the presence or absence of a single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP)—a polymorphism in which the two alleles differ by only a single nucleotide. (A) In one version of this procedure, the first primer (*blue*) is perfectly complementary to the nucleotide sequence of allele A (*red strand*), and therefore the rightward-moving primer extension reaction (*blue line*) proceeds normally, thereby generating a template for the leftward-moving elongation from the second primer (*brown dashed line*). (B) However, if the first primer is not perfectly complementary to the sequence present in allele B, which contains a SNP that changes a T to a G (*light green*), the rightward-moving primer extension reaction will fail and no PCR product will be made. Hence, the presence or absence of a SNP can be ascertained by the presence or absence of the resulting PCR products, which will accumulate to millions of copies in one set of reactions and will be absent in the other. The arrowheads indicate the 5′ to 3′ polarity of the DNA strands.

Supplementary Sidebar 7.4 Bisulfite sequencing makes it possible to gauge methylation status of promoters

Treatment of genomic DNA with sodium bisulfite under alkaline conditions converts unmethylated cytosines (C's) to uracils (U's), while leaving methylated cytosines untouched. Amplification of this treated DNA—or of a specific segment of interest—

by PCR will produce DNA copies in which the U's have been replaced by T's and the methylated cytosines will remain as C's (**Figure S7.2**). When this amplified DNA is sequenced, the C's that appear in the sequence represent sites at which the cytosine in the original sample had been methylated, whereas the C's that are replaced by T's are presumed to have been unmethylated in the original sample.

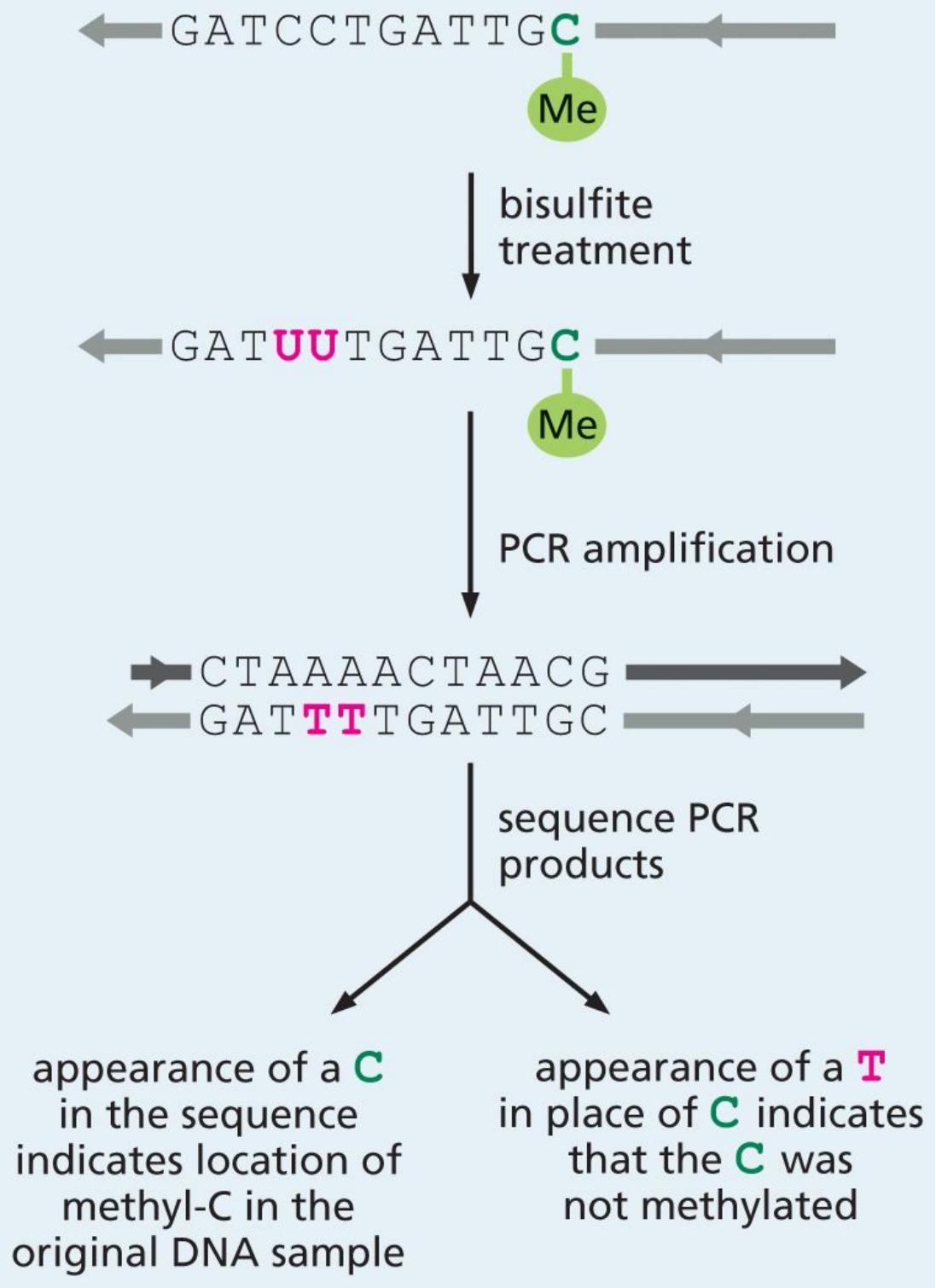


Figure S7.2 Bisulfite sequencing This method for the detection of methylcytosines depends on the fact that the treatment of cellular DNA with sodium bisulfite causes the conversion of all existing cytosine residues to uracil residues; methylcytosines, in contrast, remain unchanged. Hence, DNA can be

treated with bisulfite and then amplified by PCR—which will replace the uracils with thymines and the methylcytosines with (unmodified) cytosines. When this amplified PCR product is then sequenced, the appearance of a C in the sequence readout indicates the location of a methylcytosine in the original DNA sample.

Supplementary Sidebar 7.5 Ubiquitylation tags cellular proteins for destruction in proteasomes

The concentrations of many cellular proteins must be tightly controlled in response to a variety of physiological signals. Much of this control is achieved through the selective degradation of these proteins by the ubiquitin–proteasome system (**Table S7.1**).

Table S7.1 Advantages of ubiquitin-regulated proteolysis

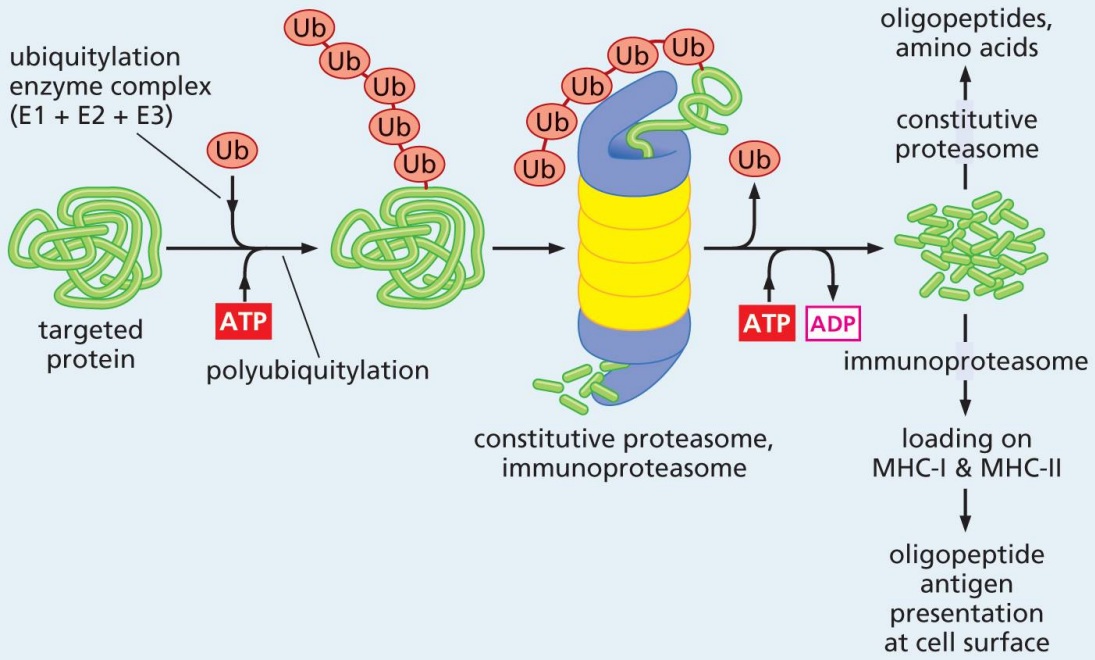
A. Unidirectional—unlike phosphorylation and other post-translational modifications of proteins, degradation cannot be rapidly reversed
B. Rapid—a large number of protein molecules can be eliminated in a regulated fashion in a matter of minutes
C. Fine-tuning—provides another way to finely adjust the levels of critical regulatory proteins
D. Localized—can be confined to specific subcellular compartments
E. Specific—a small set of proteins can be degraded without any effect on all other proteins

Courtesy of M. Pagano.

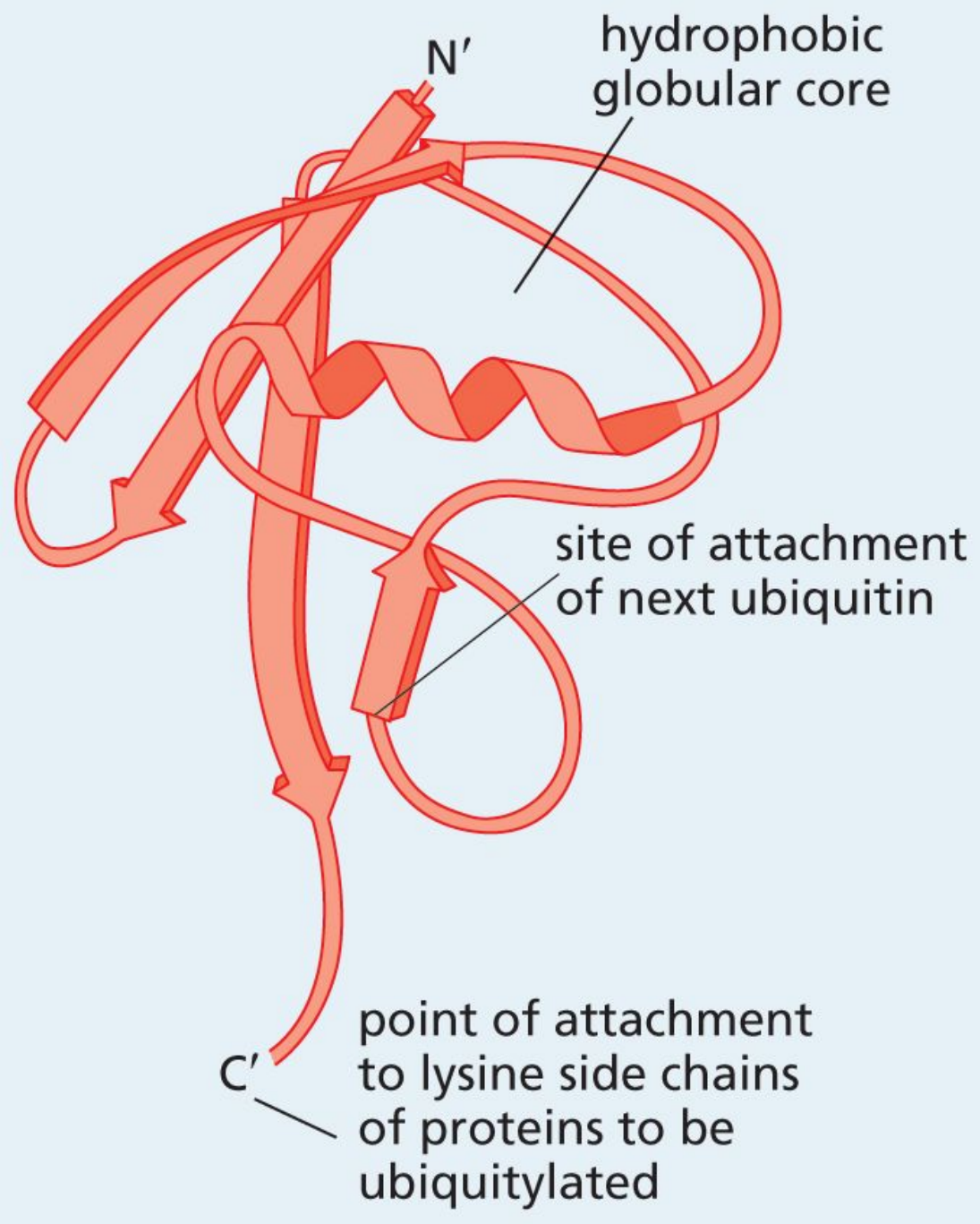
For many proteins, phosphorylation of specific amino acids by a cellular kinase marks them for degradation. The resulting phosphoamino acid, in the context of neighboring amino acid residues, attracts a complex of enzymes that covalently attaches a ubiquitin molecule to the protein—a process called ubiquitylation (or sometimes ubiquitination). In other cases, the exposure of a normally hidden subdomain—as a result of protein

misfolding or damage—attracts the attention of a ubiquitylation enzyme complex. Alternatively, the ubiquitin enzyme complexes that act on specific protein targets are only active under certain states or conditions.

Ubiquitin is a small (76-residue) protein whose sequence is highly conserved between single-cell eukaryotes and mammalian cells; only 3 of 76 amino acid residues differ between the yeast and human versions of this protein. (Its ubiquitous presence in the biosphere inspired its name.) During the ubiquitylation reaction, the first ubiquitin molecule is attached, via its C-terminal glycine, to the side chain of a lysine present in the target protein; a second ubiquitin molecule may then be linked to a lysine within the first ubiquitin; this process can be repeated a number of times, yielding a polyubiquitin chain. This tagging and polyubiquitylation are carried out by a complex of proteins dubbed E1, E2, and E3 (**Figure S7.3**). A protein molecule tagged in this fashion is eventually recognized by a proteasome in the nucleus or cytoplasm. There, the marked protein is digested into oligopeptides that are released for further degradation. A specialized proteasome, termed the immunoproteasome, is employed to degrade cellular proteins into oligopeptides that are loaded in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) onto MHC-I or MHC-II molecules for subsequent presentation as potential antigens at the cell surface. The levels of immunoproteasomes are increased in a cell following viral infection or in response to inflammation.



(A)



(B)

Figure S7.3 Ubiquitylation and proteasomes Much of protein degradation in the mammalian cell is carried out by the ubiquitin–proteasome pathway. (A) A complex of three proteins (E1, E2, and E3) recognizes a protein destined for degradation and tags this target protein with a chain of ubiquitins (Ub). Following polyubiquitylation, the target protein is conveyed to a proteasome (see Figure

S7.4), sometimes termed a constitutive proteasome, where it is de-ubiquitylated and digested into oligopeptides that can be further degraded into amino acids. A specialized proteasome, termed the immunoproteasome, is induced under conditions of viral infection and inflammation and employed for oligopeptide antigen presentation at the cell surface following oligopeptide binding to nascent MHC-I and MHC-II molecules in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum; see Section 15.7. (B) Ubiquitin itself is a relatively short protein of 76 amino acid residues, whose amino acid sequence and structure are almost totally conserved among all eukaryotic cells. Its structure is indicated here in this ribbon diagram determined by X-ray crystallography.

Proteasomes are cellular factories dedicated to the degradation of proteins that are presented to them. The proteasome is a large, hollow, cylindrical complex of multiple protein subunits, which uses ATP to unfold a protein prior to degrading this protein in the cylinder's interior (**Figure S7.4**). Polyubiquitylated proteins that are introduced into the proteasome are first de-ubiquitylated and then digested into short peptide fragments ranging in size from 3 to 25 amino acid residues. The latter are then degraded by cytosolic proteases. An immunoproteasome is a slightly altered version of the regularly present proteasome, sometimes termed the constitutive proteasome, and is used to generate the oligopeptides that are presented at the cell surface by MHC-I molecules, a topic that is discussed at length in Section 15.7.

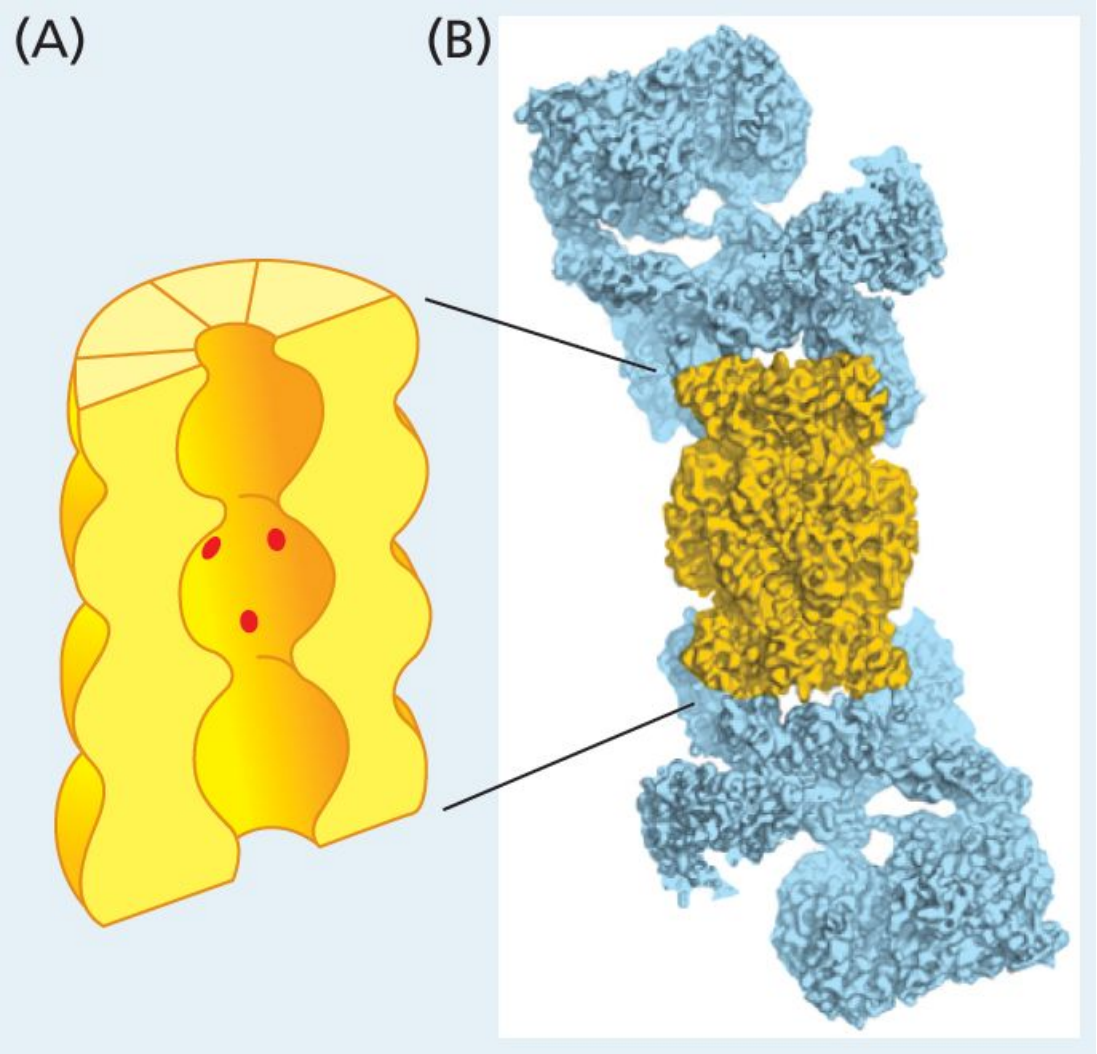


Figure S7.4 The proteasome The proteasome is a complex of about 2.5 megadaltons assembled from more than 30 distinct protein species. (A) A schematic diagram of a cross section of the central barrel of the proteasome indicates the region (*red dots*) where the actual proteolysis takes place. (B) The structure of the entire proteasome, which was determined by X-ray crystallography, includes two "cap" regions (*blue*), where ubiquitylated proteins are bound, de-ubiquitylated, and then introduced into the centrally located barrel region (*yellow*), in which they are processed by proteolytic degradation into oligopeptides or amino acid residues. (B, from P.C.A. da Fonseca et al., *Mol. Cell* 46:54–66, 2012. With permission from Elsevier.)

Polyubiquitylation is known to be responsible for the degradation of many short-lived growth-regulating proteins such as Myc, p53, Jun, and certain cyclins (described in Chapter 8). Altogether, more than 80% of the proteins in mammalian cells, some far

more long-lived, are degraded in proteasomes. Polyubiquitylation marks proteins for destruction, whereas the function of mono-ubiquitylation (in which only a single ubiquitin is attached) is complex and less well understood. There are clear indications that mono-ubiquitylation is used in certain cellular contexts for regulating endocytosis, protein sorting, trafficking of proteins within the nucleus, and even regulating gene expression. For example, mono-ubiquitylation of the p53 tumor suppressor protein tags it for export from the nucleus; subsequent polyubiquitylation can then mark p53 for destruction in proteasomes. Mono-ubiquitylated growth factor receptors are marked for endocytosis.

There are several additional dimensions of complexity in this form of post-translational modification of proteins. To begin, ubiquitin contains seven internal lysines. Of these, linkage via Lys48 is used to generate the polyubiquitin chains that are described above, which tag proteins for destruction in proteasomes. An alternative linkage can be forged via Lys63 residues of ubiquitin, and these polyubiquitin chains confer certain positive effects on the modified protein rather than marking them for destruction. End-to-end linkage of ubiquitin molecules also occurs with yet other consequences for the modified protein. Another dimension of complexity derives from the fact that ubiquitin is only one of a group of as many as 10 distinct marker proteins (for example, the ubiquitin-like Sumo and NEDD8 proteins) that are used to tag various proteins, marking them for a variety of metabolic fates other than proteolysis.

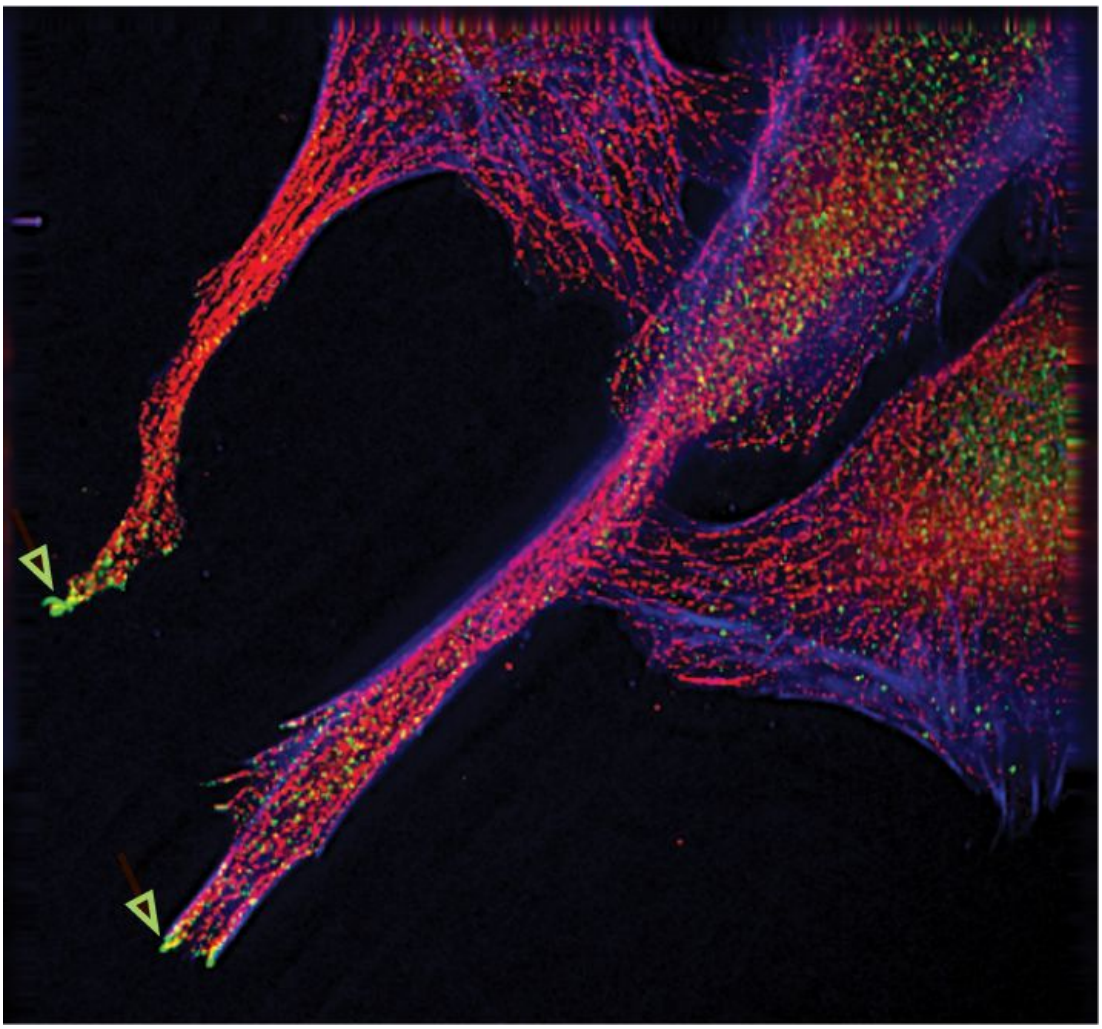
The widespread importance of ubiquitylation is evident from sequence analysis indicating that at least 630 of the approximately 20,000 genes in the human genome appear to encode E3 ubiquitin ligases—the proteins responsible for initially recognizing substrate proteins that are to be targeted for ubiquitylation and destruction.

Supplementary Sidebar 7.6 APC and microtubules

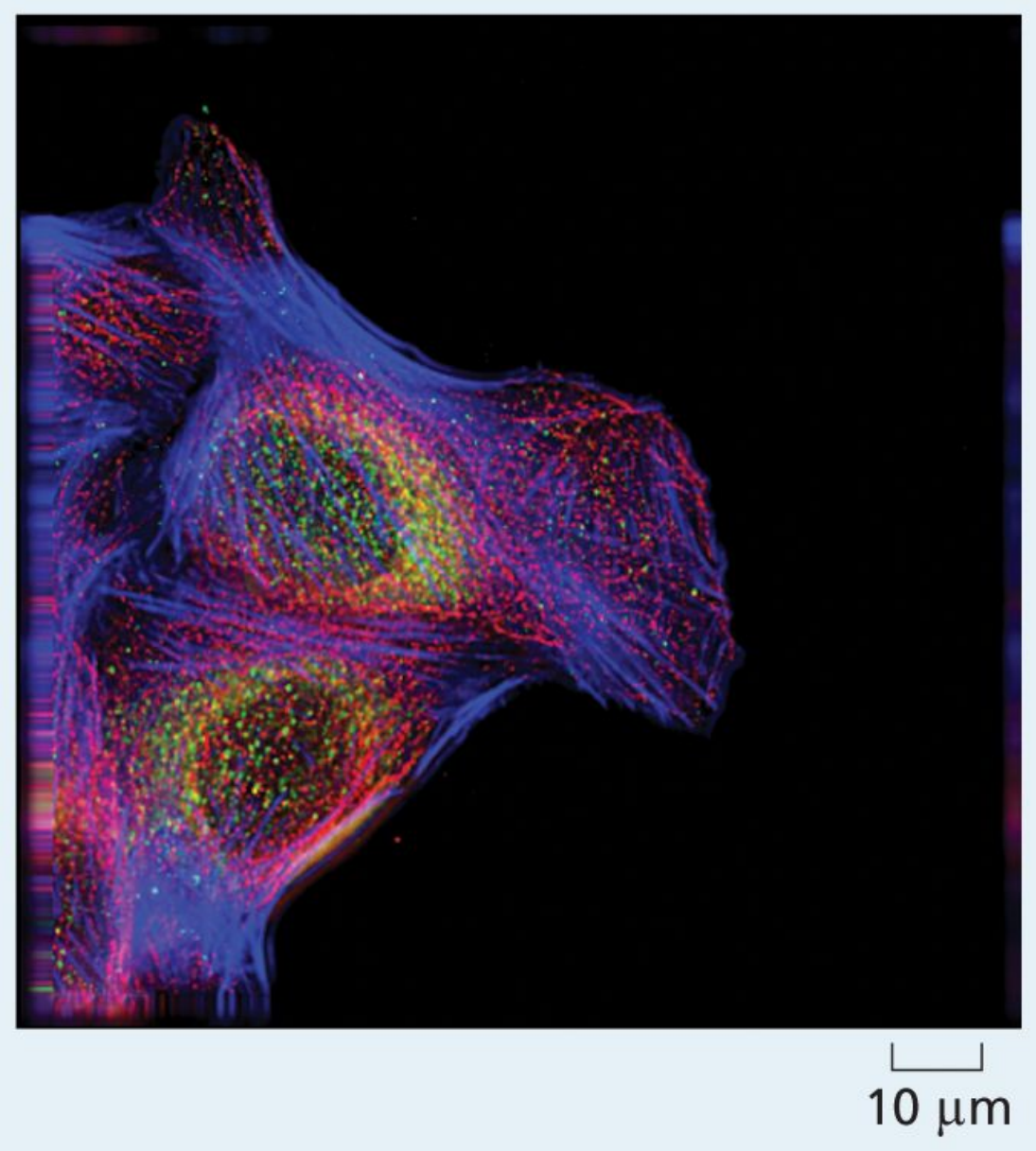
Recent research has turned up other, fully unexpected consequences of APC loss: the protein is involved in still-unclear ways in regulating the microtubules that form the mitotic spindles and part of the cytoskeleton. Cells lacking APC function have been found to exhibit a marked increase in chromosomal instability (CIN), which results in increases and decreases in chromosome number, usually because of inappropriate segregation of chromosomes during mitosis. Some APC-negative cells even accumulate tetraploid (or nearly tetraploid) karyotypes, in which most chromosomes are represented in four copies rather than the usual two. This defect seems to occur because APC molecules localize to components of the microtubule arrays that form the mitotic spindle and are responsible for segregating chromosomes during anaphase and telophase of mitosis. The aneuploidy that results from these chromosomal segregation defects alters the relative numbers of critical growth-promoting and growth-inhibiting genes. These changes, in turn, may well facilitate tumorigenesis by accelerating the

rate with which premalignant cells acquire advantageous genotypes and thus phenotypes.

In addition, APC regulates cell motility, in part through its role in enabling the formation of cytoplasmic protrusions; cells lacking these protrusions show significantly reduced motility (**Figure S7.5**). This may help to explain the inability of *APC*-mutant enterocyte precursors to migrate out of the colonic crypts toward the lumen, as illustrated in Figure 7.20B. It is unclear why evolution has invested this single tumor suppressor protein with these seemingly unrelated functions.



(A)



(B)

Figure S7.5 APC and the cytoskeleton The microtubule-binding domain of APC (see Figure 7.22A) enables this protein to regulate the cytoskeleton and several key aspects of cell physiology, including chromosomal segregation by the microtubule-containing spindle fibers during mitosis. (During mitosis, APC molecules can be found at the kinetochores, cytoplasmic cortex, and centrosomes, and loss of APC leads to chromosomal instability.) The morphology and motility of the human osteosarcoma cells studied here are affected by APC. (A) In the presence of APC, these cells develop large protrusions, at the tips of which APC molecules (*green arrows*) congregate. Microtubules (*red*) are in the core of these

protrusions, and cortical actin (*blue*) is found below the plasma membrane. These protrusions are critical to the motility of these cells. (B) When *APC* expression is suppressed experimentally through use of an siRNA (*s*mall *i*nterfering *RNA*), these protrusions disappear and the microtubules that are usually apparent in cells (panel A) are either absent or reorganized, as is the actin cytoskeleton. Loss of these protrusions is correlated with a significant decrease in cell motility. (Courtesy of K. Kroboth and I. Näthke.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

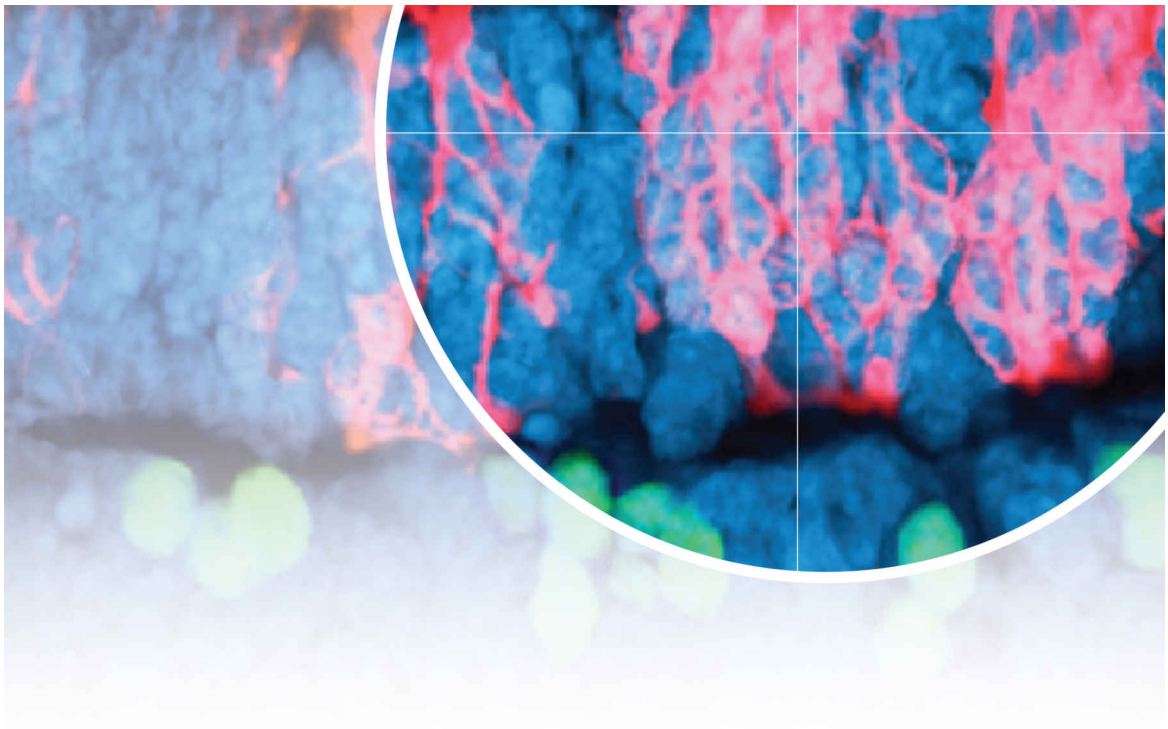
ubiquitylation
: Process by which one or more ubiquitin molecules are attached covalently to a protein substrate molecule, which often results in the degradation of the tagged protein in a proteasome, *alternatively termed* **ubiquitination**.

constitutive proteasome
: Term used to describe the proteasome that is present in a wide variety of cell types and is responsible for the degradation of most cellular proteins; this class of proteasomes is distinguished from immunoproteasomes that degrade intracellular proteins in order to generate the oligopeptides that are loaded onto Class I MHC/HLA proteins and presented on the cell surface. *See also* **proteasome**, **immunoproteasome**.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 8

pRb and Control of the Cell Cycle Clock



A close-up of cells in a mouse retina. Rhodopsin glows red, contrasting dramatically with surrounding dark blue material.

The dream of every cell is to become two cells.

François Jacob, molecular biologist, quoted in 1971

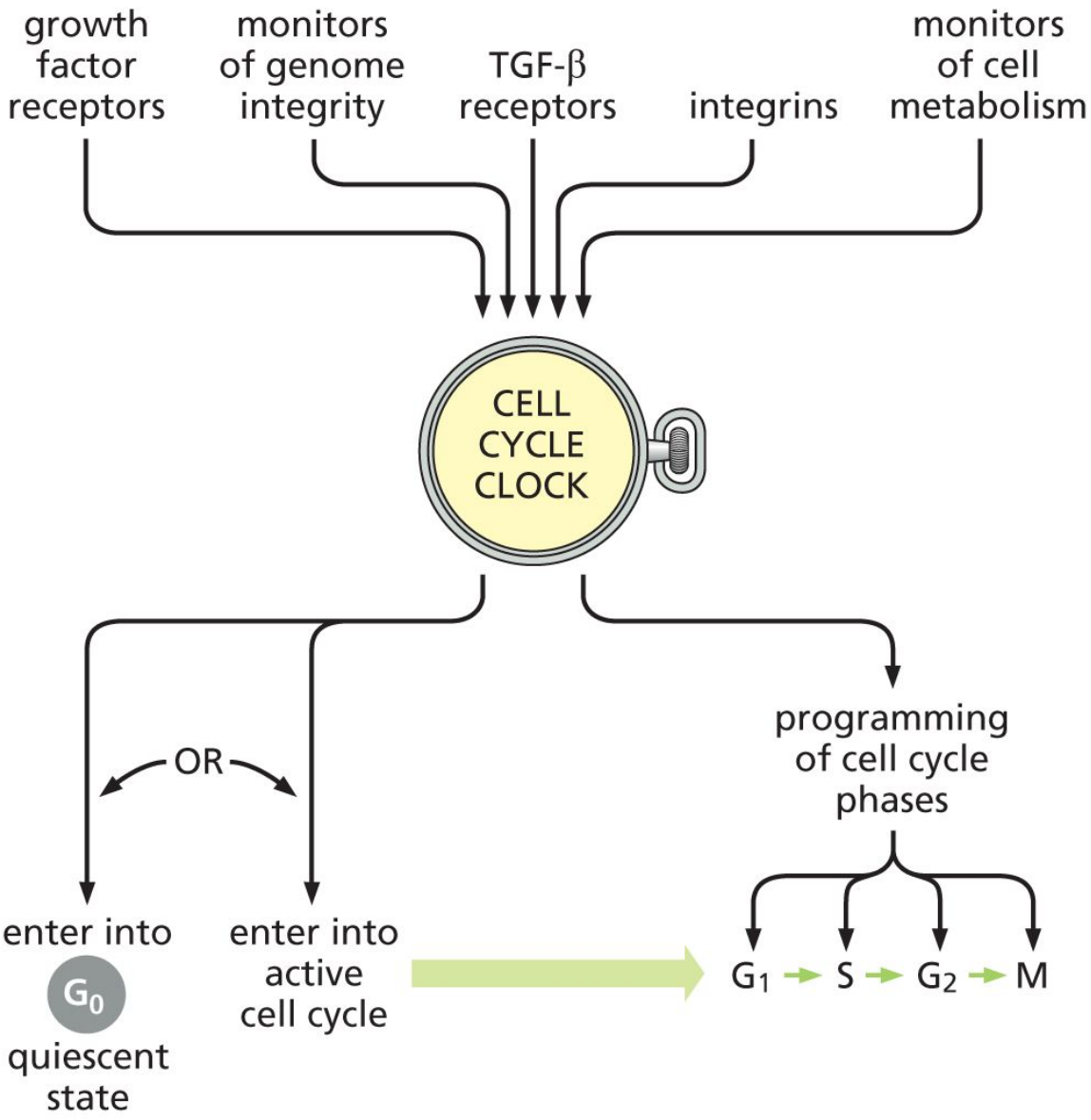
This immediately leads one to ask, if the [hypothetical cellular transformation] loci can get into so much mischief, why keep them around? The logical answer is that they have some necessary function during some stage of the cell cycle, or some stage of embryogenesis.

David E. Comings, geneticist, 1973

The fate of individual cells throughout the body is dictated by the signals that each receives from its surroundings—a point made repeatedly in earlier chapters. Thus, almost all types of normal cells will not proliferate unless prompted to do so by mitogenic growth factors released largely by their neighbors within a tissue. Yet other signaling proteins, notably transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), may overrule the messages conveyed by mitogenic factors and force a halt to proliferation. In addition, extracellular signals may persuade a cell to enter into a *post-mitotic*, differentiated state from which it will never re-emerge to resume proliferation.

These disparate signals are collected by dozens of distinct cell surface receptors and then funneled into the complex signal-processing circuitry that operates largely in the cell cytoplasm. In some way, this mixture of signals must be processed, integrated, and ultimately distilled down to some simple, binary decisions made by the cell as to whether it should proliferate or become quiescent, and whether, as a quiescent cell, it will or will not differentiate. These behaviors suggest the existence of some centrally acting governor that operates inside the cell—a master clearinghouse that receives a wide variety of incoming signals and makes major decisions concerning the fate of the cell.

This master governor has been identified. It is the cell cycle clock, which operates in the cell nucleus. Its name is really a misnomer, because this clock is hardly a device for counting the passage of time. Nonetheless, we will use this term here for want of a better one. Rather than counting elapsed time, the cell cycle clock is a network of interacting proteins—a signal-processing circuit—that receives signals from various sources both outside and inside the cell, integrates them, and then decides the cell's fate. Should the cell cycle clock decide in favor of proliferation, it proceeds to orchestrate the complex transitions that together constitute the cell's cycle of growth and division; during this cycle, the expression of at least 1000 genes needs to be modulated in highly regulated ways. Should it decide in favor of quiescence, it will use its agents to impose this nonproliferative state on the cell (**Figure 8.1**).



A diagram centered on a cell cycle clock. Inputs include growth factor receptors, monitors of genome integrity, T G F beta receptors, integrins, and monitors of cell metabolism. Depending on the inputs, the cell clock may direct the cell to enter quiescent state G zero, or it may direct the cell to enter an active cell cycle characterized by programmed phases G 1, S, G 2, and M.

Figure 8.1 The central governor of growth and proliferation The term "cell cycle clock" denotes a molecular circuitry operating in the cell nucleus that processes and integrates a variety of afferent (incoming) signals originating from outside and inside the cell and decides whether or not the cell should enter into the active cell cycle or retreat into a nonproliferating

state. In the event that active proliferation is decided upon, this circuitry proceeds to program the complex sequence of biochemical changes in a cell that enable it to double its contents and to divide into two daughter cells. The alternative decision to withdraw from the active cell cycle may allow a cell to retain the option to re-enter into the growth-and-division cycle later or enter into post-mitotic states involving acquisition of differentiated characteristics (*not shown*).

The proliferative behavior of cancer cells indicates that the master governor of the cell's fate is influenced not only by normal proteins but also by oncogene-encoded proteins that insert themselves into various signaling pathways and disrupt normal control mechanisms. Similarly, the deletion of key tumor suppressor proteins evokes equally profound changes in the control circuitry and thus is equally influential in perturbing decision-making by the cell cycle clock. Consequently, sooner or later, the molecular actions of most oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes must be explained in terms of their effects on the cell cycle clock. To this end, we will devote the first half of this chapter to a description of how this molecular machine normally operates and then proceed to study how it is perturbed in human cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cell cycle clock

Network of signaling proteins in the nucleus that regulate and orchestrate progression of the cell through its growth-and-division cycle. *See also* **cell cycle**.

OceanofPDF.com

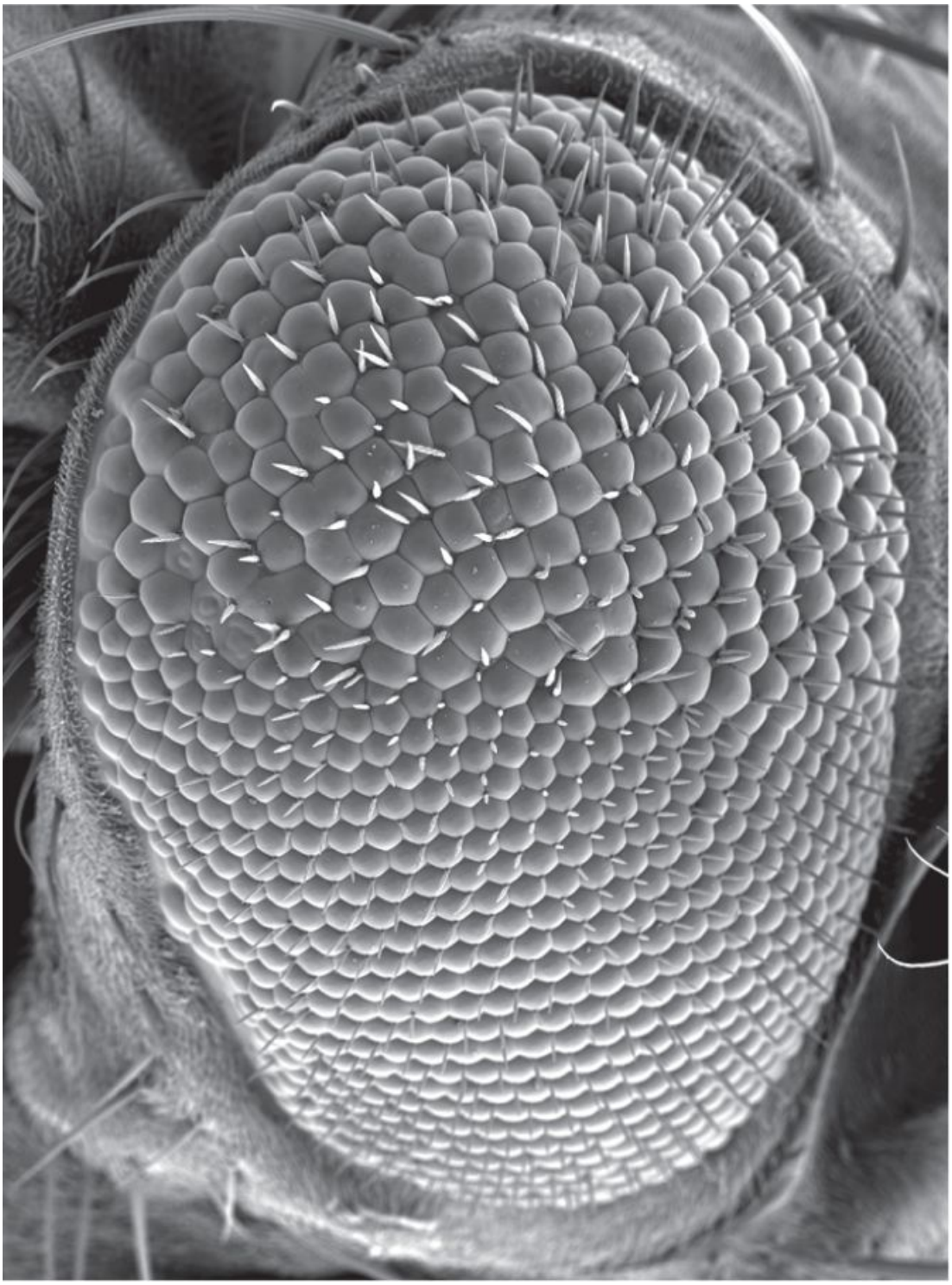
8.1 Cell growth and division is coordinated by a complex array of regulators

When placed into culture under conditions that encourage exponential multiplication, mammalian cells exhibit a complex cycle of growth and division that is usually referred to as the cell cycle. A cell that has recently been formed by the processes of cell division—mitosis and cytokinesis—must decide soon thereafter whether it will once again initiate a new round of active growth and division or retreat into the nongrowing state that we previously termed G_0. As described earlier (Sections 5.1 and 6.1), this decision is strongly influenced by mitogenic growth factors in the cell's surroundings. Their presence in sufficient concentration will encourage a cell recently formed by mitosis to remain in the active growth-and-division cycle; their absence will trigger the default decision to proceed from mitosis into the G_0, quiescent state.

Withdrawal from the cell cycle may be actively encouraged by the presence of growth-inhibitory factors in the medium. Prominent among these anti-mitogenic factors is transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β). Withdrawal from the cell cycle into the G_0, quiescent state, whether caused by the absence of mitogenic growth factors or the presence of anti-mitogens such as TGF-β, is often reversible, in that an encounter by a quiescent cell with mitogenic growth factors on some later occasion may induce this cell to re-enter into active growth and division. However, some cells leaving the active cell cycle may do so irreversibly, thereby giving up all option of ever re-initiating active growth and division, in which case they are said to have become post-mitotic. Many types of neurons in the brain, for example, are widely assumed to fall into this category.

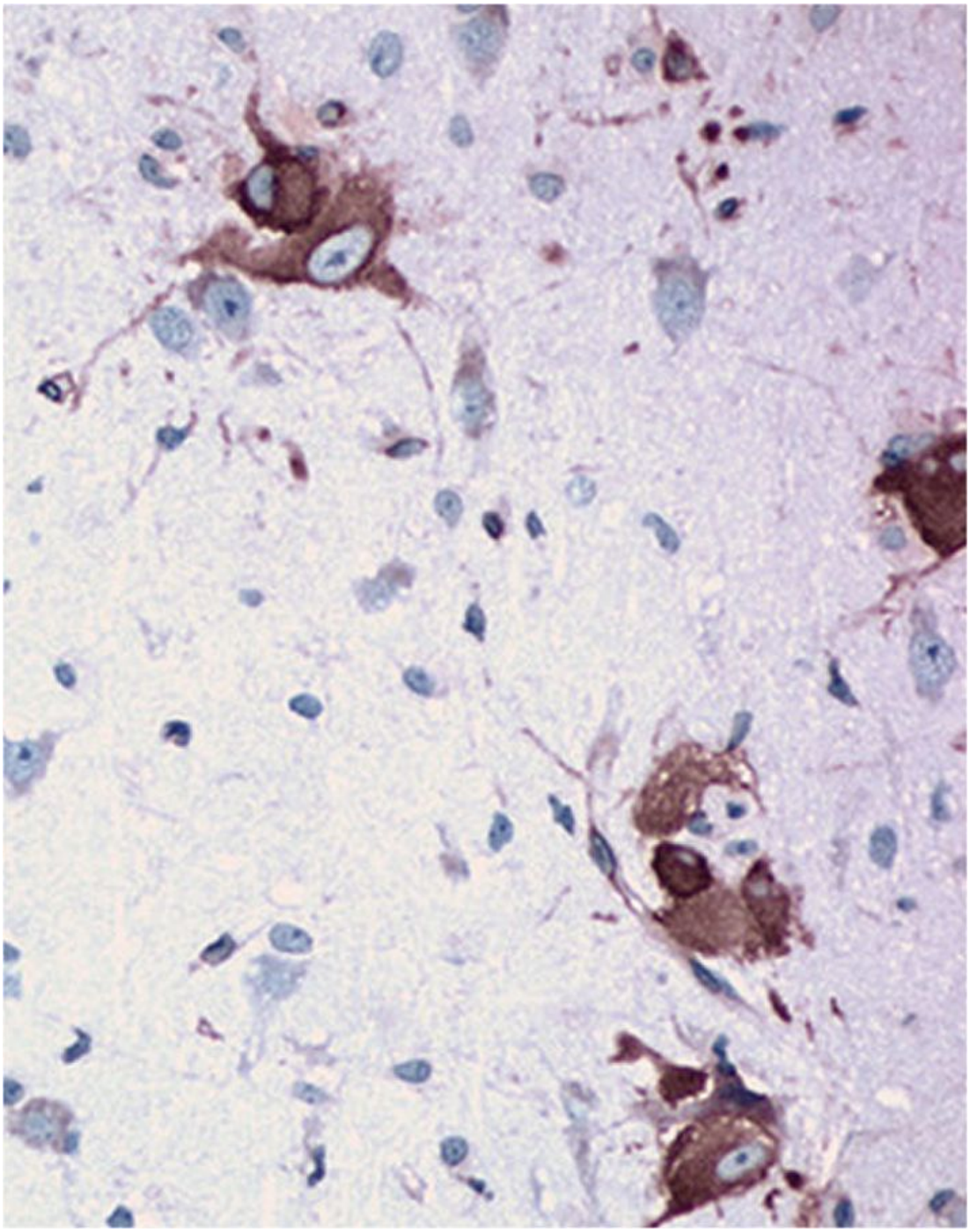
The decision by a cell recently formed by cell division to remain in the active growth-and-division cycle requires that this cell immediately begin to prepare for the next division. Such preparations entail, among other things, the doubling of the cell's macromolecular constituents and organelles to ensure that the two daughter cells resulting from the next round of cell division will each receive an adequate endowment of them. This accumulation of cellular constituents, which drives an increase in cell size, is termed cell *growth* to distinguish it from the process of cell *division*, which yields, via mitosis and cytokinesis, two daughter cells from a mother cell (**Figure 8.2**). However, in the more common usage and throughout this book, the

term “cell growth” implies both the accumulation of cell constituents and the subsequent cell division, that is, the two processes that together yield cell proliferation.



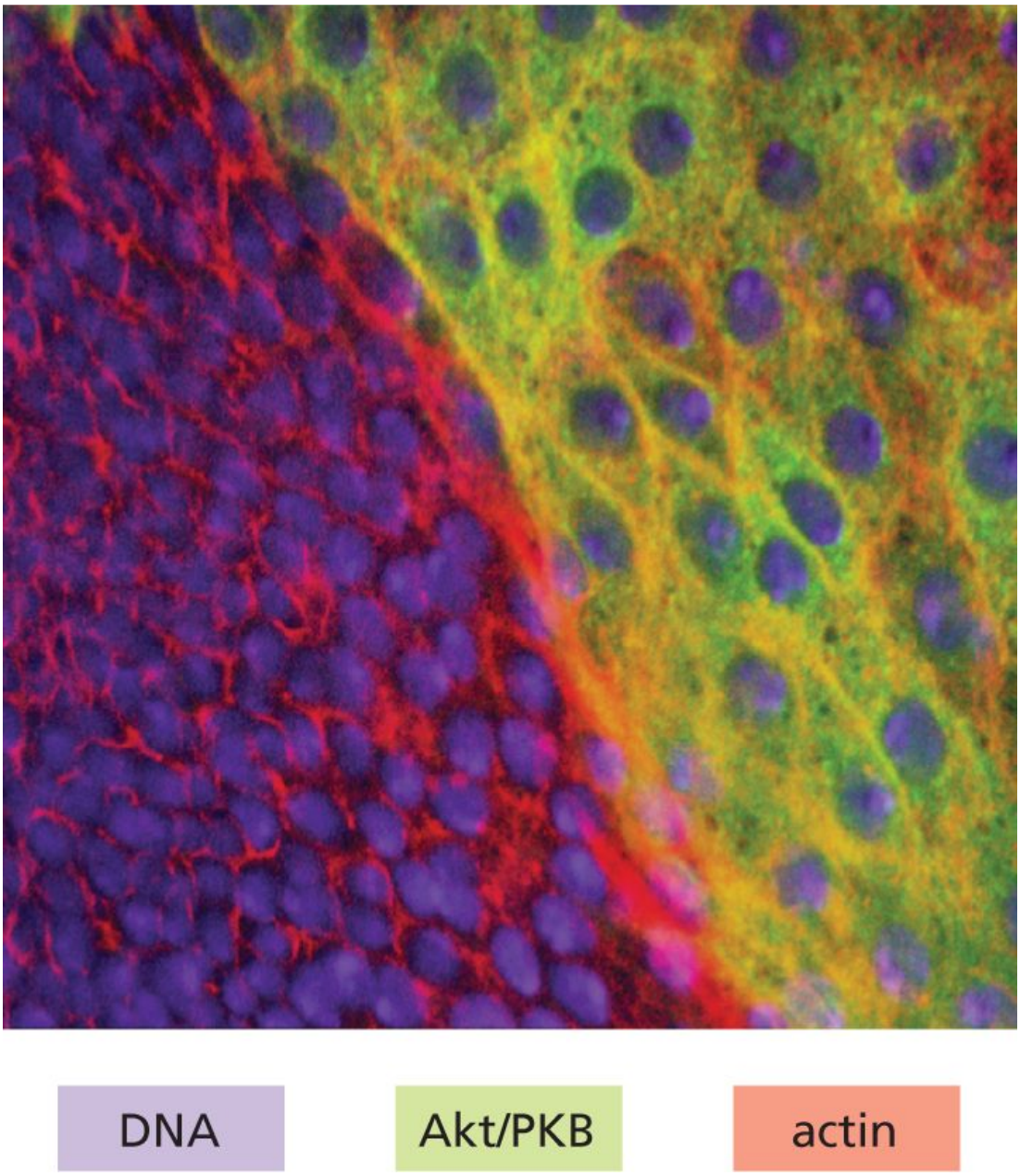
A scanning electron micrograph of a fruit fly’s eye. The light sensing units in the upper part are larger and less regularly arranged than those in the lower

part.
(A)



A histology image in which a few amorphous brown cells appear in a field of otherwise pale pink cells.

(B)



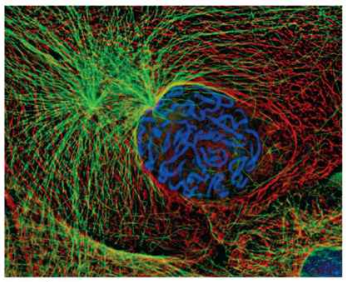
A fluorescent stain image in which the lower left portion shows tightly packed blue nuclei surrounded by cytoplasm in which actin appears in red, and the upper right portion shows much more loosely packed blue nuclei surrounded by cytoplasm in which A k t slash P K B appear in green.

(C)

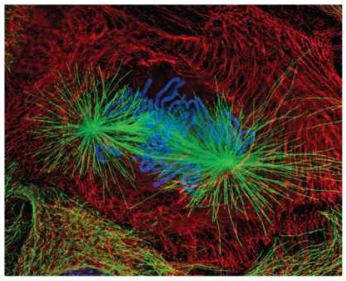
Figure 8.2 Growth vs. proliferation Alterations of certain signaling proteins, such as the one encoded by the *TSC1* tumor suppressor gene, allow the processes of cell growth and division to be uncoupled from one another, enabling cells to

grow in size without concomitant proliferation. (A) In this scanning electron micrograph of a *Drosophila* eye, the ommatidial cells in the upper portion of the eye have been deprived of the fly ortholog of *TSC1*; these cells are physically larger than the wild-type cells shown (*below*), because they have grown more during the cell cycles that led to their formation. (B) The same behavior can be seen in the brains of patients suffering from tuberous sclerosis, in which *TSC1* function has been lost through a germ-line mutation and subsequent somatic loss of heterozygosity. Seen here are the giant cells present in a benign growth (a "tuber"). The giant cells (*brown*) are labeled with an antibody against phosphorylated S6, a ribosomal protein important in regulating protein synthesis and thus cell growth; S6 phosphorylation and functional activation is deregulated in cells lacking *TSC1* function. (C) The Akt/PKB protein is frequently hyperactivated in human cancers. In an imaginal disc of a developing *Drosophila* larva, Akt/PKB (*green*) that has been hyperactivated in a portion of cells (*upper right*) causes a great increase in nuclear and overall cell size relative to cells with normal Akt/PKB (*lower left*), as revealed by the spacing of the nuclei (*blue*) in these two sectors; similar increases in mammalian cells are also observed in response to hyperactive Akt/PKB. (A, from X. Gao and D. Pan, *Genes Dev.* 15:1383–1392, 2001. With permission of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. B, courtesy of J.A. Chan and D.J. Kwiatkowski. C, from J. Verdu et al., *Nat. Cell Biol.* 1:500–506, 1999. With permission from Nature.)

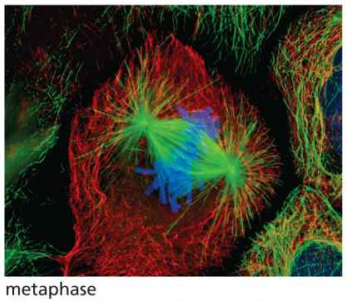
The accumulation of a cell's macromolecules involves, among many other molecules, the duplication of the cell's genome. In many prokaryotic cells, this duplication—the process of DNA replication—begins immediately after daughter cells are formed by cell division. But in most mammalian cells, the overall program of macromolecular synthesis is organized quite differently. Although the accumulation of RNA and proteins is initiated immediately after cell division and proceeds continuously until the next cell division, the task of replicating the DNA is deferred for a number of hours (often as many as 12 to 15) after emergence of new daughter cells from mitosis and cytokinesis. During this period between the birth of a daughter cell and the subsequent onset of DNA synthesis, which is termed the G_1 (first gap) phase of the cell cycle (**Figure 8.3**), cells make critical decisions about growth versus quiescence, and whether, as quiescent cells, they will differentiate.



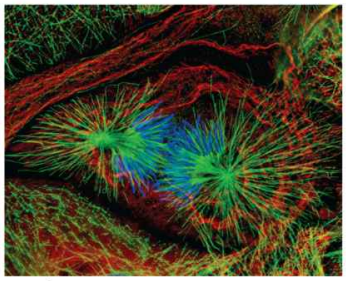
prophase



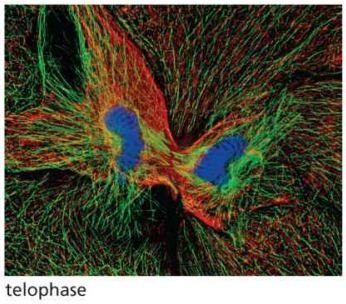
prometaphase



metaphase



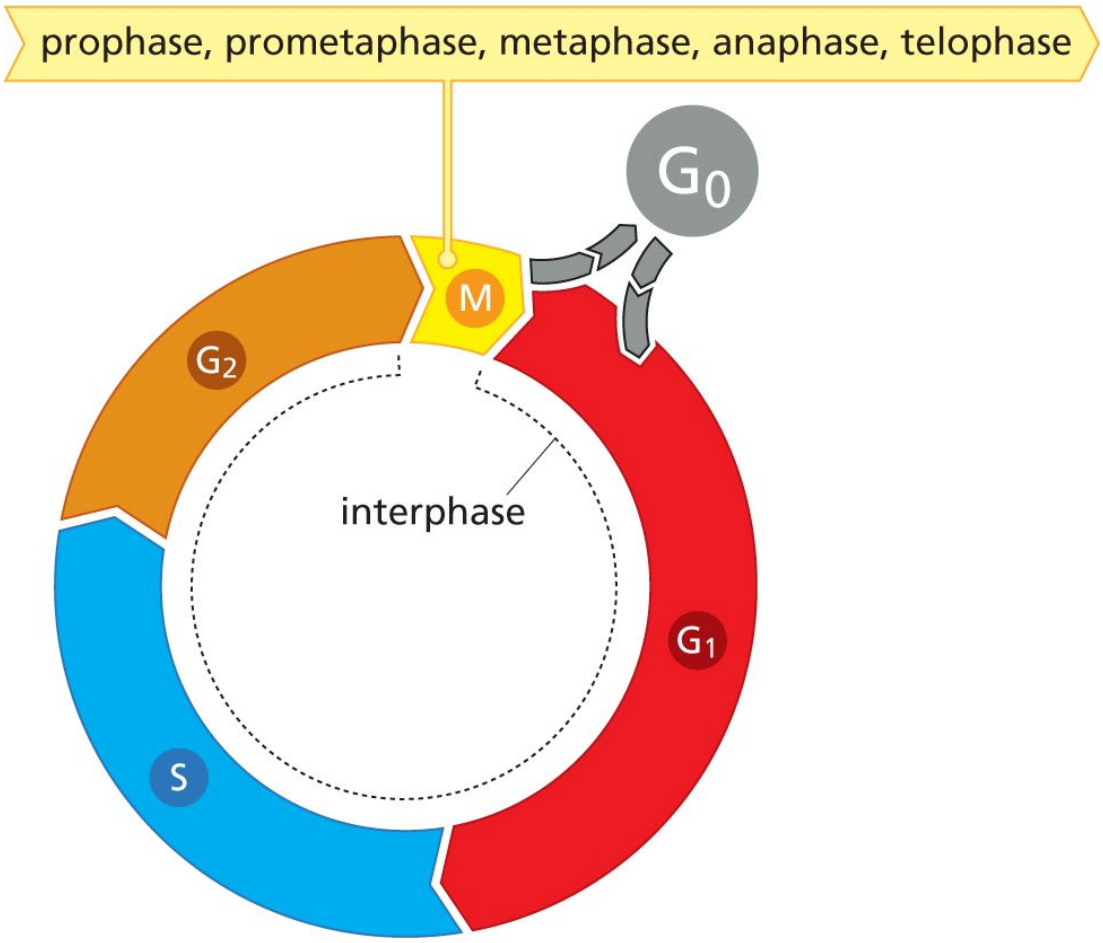
anaphase



telophase

A sequence of five fluorescent stain images showing substages of mitosis: prophase, prometaphase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase. In prophase, blue chromosomes are visible in the nucleus. The green mitotic spindle extends outwards from central points. In prometaphase, the mitotic spindle starts to attach

to the chromosomes. In metaphase, the centrosomes are opposite of each other and the mitotic spindle is more organised. In anaphase, two groupings of chromatids start to separate. In telophase, the cell starts to divide in half and the chromatids cluster together in each half.
(A)



A diagram shows that mitosis and its five substages are a small part of a cycle that also includes G 1, S, and G 2 phases. These three are collectively known as the interphase. There is also a G zero state that a cell may enter after the M phase, instead of or before passing through the G 1 phase. The five substages of mitosis are prophasem prometaphase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase.

(B)

Figure 8.3 The vertebrate cell cycle (A) Immunofluorescence is used here to illustrate the five distinct subphases of mitosis (M phase) in newt lung cells (*top to bottom*). During the *prophase* of mitosis, the chromosomes (*blue*), which were

invisible microscopically during *interphase* (the period encompassing G_1 through S and G_2), begin to condense and become visible, while the centrosomes (*light green radiating bodies*) at the poles of the cell begin to assemble (*top image*). During *prometaphase*, the nuclear membrane disappears (*second image*). During *metaphase*, the chromosomes align along a plane that bisects the cell and become attached to the microtubule fibers of the mitotic spindle (*light green, third image*). During *anaphase*, the two halves of each chromosome—the chromatids—are pulled apart by the mitotic spindle (i.e., they segregate) to the two opposite poles of the cell (*fourth image*). During *telophase*, shortly after the chromatids cluster into the two sets seen here (*bottom image*), the chromatids de-condense and a new nuclear membrane forms around each set of chromatids (now called chromosomes). At the same time, during the process of *cytokinesis*, the cytoplasm of the mother cell divides, yielding two daughter cells (*not shown*). Actin fibers are labeled in *red*. (B) The mammalian growth-and-division cycle is divided into four phases—G_1, S (during which DNA is replicated), G_2, and M (mitosis). A fifth state, G_0 (G zero), denotes the resting, nonproliferating state of cells that have withdrawn from the active cell cycle. Although exit from the active cell cycle into G_0 is depicted here as occurring in early G_1, it is unclear when during G_1 this actually occurs. (Some evidence suggests that cells exiting mitosis decide whether or not to enter G_0 on the basis of signals experienced during the preceding G_2.) (A, photomicrographs by Dr. Conly L. Rieder, Wadsworth Center, Albany, New York 12201-0509.)

In many types of cultured mammalian cells, the DNA synthesis that follows G_1 often requires 6 to 8 hours to reach completion. This period of DNA synthesis is termed the S (synthetic) phase, and its length is determined in part by the enormous amount of cellular DNA ($\sim 6.4 \times 10^9$ bp per diploid genome) that must be replicated with fidelity during this time. The actual length of S phase varies greatly among different kinds of cells, being much shorter in certain cell types, such as rapidly dividing embryonic cells and lymphocytes.

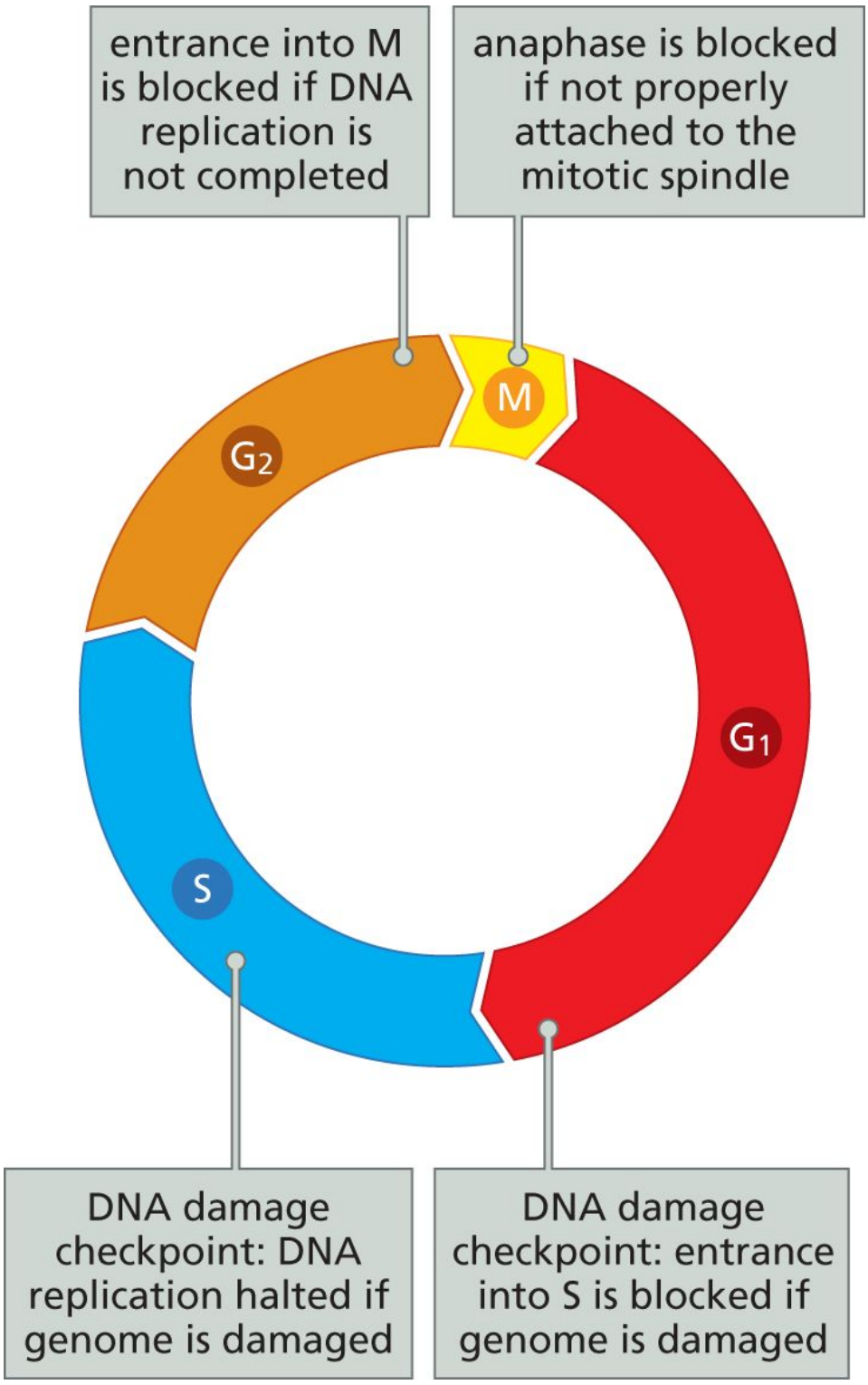
Having passed through S phase, a cell might be thought fit to enter directly into mitosis (M phase). However, most mammalian cells spend 3 to 5 hours in a second gap phase, termed G_2, preparing themselves, in some still-poorly understood fashion, for entrance into M phase and cell division. M phase itself usually encompasses an hour or so, and includes five distinct subphases—prophase, prometaphase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase; this culminates in cytokinesis, the division of the cytoplasm that allows the formation of two new cells (see Figure 8.3A). Although these times are commonly observed when studying mammalian cells in culture, they do not reflect the behavior of all cell types under all conditions. For example, actively proliferating

lymphocytes may double in 5 to 6 hours, and some cells in the early embryos of certain organisms may do so in as little as 15 minutes, where the G_1 and G_2 phases are essentially absent and all the materials needed to generate the newly formed daughter cells are already present in the fertilized egg.

As is the case with S phase, M phase must proceed with great precision. M phase begins with the two recently duplicated DNA helices within each chromosome; these are carried in the sister chromatids of the chromosome, which are aligned adjacent to one another in the nucleus. The allocation during mitosis of the duplicated chromatids to the two future daughter cells must occur flawlessly to ensure that each daughter receives exactly one diploid complement of chromatids—no more and no less. Once present within the nuclei of recently separated daughter cells, these chromatids become the chromosomes of the newly born cells.

Consequently, the endowment of one genome's worth of genetic material to each daughter cell depends on the precise execution of two processes—the faithful replication of a cell's genome during S phase and the proper allocation of the resulting duplicated DNAs to daughter cells during M phase. As will be discussed later in Chapter 12, defects in either of these processes can have disastrous consequences for the cell and the organism, one of which is the disease of cancer.

Like virtually all machinery, the machine that executes the various steps of the cell cycle is subject to malfunction. This fallibility contrasts with the stringent requirement of the cell that the various phases of the cell cycle are completed flawlessly. For this reason, the cell deploys a series of surveillance mechanisms that monitor each step in cell cycle progression and permit the cell to proceed to the next step in the cycle only if a preceding step has been completed successfully. Thus, if specific steps in the execution of a preceding process go awry, these monitors rapidly call a halt to further advance through the cell cycle until these problems have been successfully addressed. Yet other monitors ensure that once a particular step of the cell cycle has been completed, it is not repeated until the cell passes through the next cell cycle. These monitoring mechanisms are termed variously checkpoints or checkpoint controls (**Figure 8.4**).



A diagram shows some checkpoints in the cell cycle, which contains the four stages G 1, S, and G 2, and M. M is the shortest, G 1 is the longest. At the end of G 1, there is a D N A damage checkpoint: entrance into S is blocked if the genome is damaged. Near the middle of S, there is another D N A damage checkpoint: D N

A replication is halted if the genome is damaged. At the end of G 2, entrance into M is blocked if D N A replication is not completed. In the middle of M, the anaphase is blocked if not properly attached to the mitotic spindle.

Figure 8.4 Examples of checkpoints in the cell cycle Checkpoints impose quality control to ensure that a cell has properly completed all the requisite steps of one phase of the cell cycle before it is allowed to advance into the next phase. A cell will not be permitted to enter into S phase until all the steps of G_1 have been completed. It will be blocked from entering G_2 until all of its chromosomal DNA has been properly replicated during S phase. Similarly, a cell is not permitted to enter into anaphase (when the paired chromatids are pulled apart) until all of its chromosomes are properly assembled on the mitotic spindle during metaphase. In addition, a cell is not allowed to advance into S or M if its DNA has been damaged and not yet repaired. Other controls (*not shown*) ensure that once a specific step in the cell cycle has been completed, it is not repeated until the next cell cycle.

One checkpoint ensures that a cell cannot advance from G_1 into S if the genome is in need of repair. Another, operating in S phase, will slow or pause DNA replication in response to DNA damage. (In mammalian cells, this may cause a doubling of the time required to complete DNA synthesis.) A third will not permit the cell to proceed through G_2 to M until the DNA replication of S phase has been completed. DNA damage will trigger another checkpoint control that blocks entrance into M phase. During M phase, highly efficient checkpoint controls block entrance into anaphase; these blocks are only removed once all the chromosomes have been properly attached to the mitotic spindle. Yet other checkpoint controls, not cited here, have been reported. For example, a decatenation checkpoint in late G_2 prevents entrance into M until the pair of DNA helices replicated in the previous S phase have been disentangled from one another, a step that requires the active involvement of type II topoisomerases. Defects in some of these checkpoint controls can be observed because of their effects on cells' chromosomes (see Figure 1.9B and **Supplementary Sidebar 8.1**).

The operations of these checkpoints also influence the formation of cancers. As tumor development (often called tumor progression, discussed in Chapter 11) proceeds, incipient cancer cells benefit from experimenting with various combinations and permutations of mutant alleles, retaining those that will afford them the greatest proliferative advantage. An increased mutability of their genomes accelerates the rate at which these cells can acquire advantageous combinations of alleles and thus hastens the overall pace of tumor progression. Such mutability and resulting genomic instability are incompatible with normal cell cycle progression, because checkpoint controls usually block advance of the cell through its cycle if its DNA has been damaged or its chromosomes are in disarray. So, in addition to acquiring altered

growth-controlling genes (that is, activated oncogenes and inactivated tumor suppressor genes), many types of cancer cells have inactivated one or more of their checkpoint controls. With these controls relaxed, incipient cancer cells can more rapidly accumulate the mutant genes and altered karyotypes that propel their neoplastic growth. The breakdown of the controls responsible for maintaining the cellular genome in an intact state is one of the main subjects of Chapter 12.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cell cycle
: The sequence of changes in a cell from the moment when it is created by cell division, continuing through a period in which its contents including chromosomal DNA are doubled, and ending with the subsequent cell division and formation of two daughter cells.

mitosis
: (1) Nuclear division, composed of the four steps of prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase, the last including cytokinesis. (2) Process by which a single cell separates its complement of chromosomes into two equal sets in preparation for the division of the cell into two daughter cells achieved by cytokinesis.

cytokinesis
: The late step of mitosis involving the separation of the two daughter cell cytoplasms from one another.

post-mitotic
: Describing a nonproliferating cell that has given up the option of ever again re-entering into an active growth-and-division cycle.

prophase
: First phase of mitosis in which chromosomes begin to condense and centrosomes begin to assemble.

prometaphase
: The phase of mitosis in the early part of metaphase when the nuclear membrane breaks down and the chromosomes form kinetochores. *See* **metaphase, kinetochore**.

metaphase
: Second major phase of mitosis, during which chromosomes complete condensation and attach to the mitotic spindle after the nuclear membrane disappears; chromosomes are now readily observed in the light microscope following appropriate staining.

anaphase
: Third subphase of mitosis, during which the paired chromatids are segregated to the two opposite poles of the cell.

telophase

Fourth subphase of mitosis, during which chromosomes de-condense and the nuclear membranes reassemble in anticipation of separation of the two daughter cells.

chromatid

A half chromosome that exists after S phase and before M phase; paired chromatids are separated at M phase, whereupon each becomes a chromosome.

checkpoint

(1) Control mechanism that ensures that the next step in a process does not proceed until a series of prerequisites and conditions have been fulfilled. Such prerequisites may include, as examples, the successful completion of all previous steps during cell-cycle progression or the integrity of the cell genome. (2) Control mechanism that limits or constrains the immune-mediated attack on targeted cells. *See also* **immune checkpoint**.

checkpoint

(1) Control mechanism that ensures that the next step in a process does not proceed until a series of prerequisites and conditions have been fulfilled. Such prerequisites may include, as examples, the successful completion of all previous steps during cell-cycle progression or the integrity of the cell genome. (2) Control mechanism that limits or constrains the immune-mediated attack on targeted cells. *See also* **immune checkpoint**.

decatenation

Untangling and separation of topologically intertwined circular dsDNA molecules from one another, often accomplished by the topoisomerase II enzyme. *See also* **topoisomerase**.

progression

(1) The process whereby cells evolve progressively from a normal state to a state that enables them to form a high-grade malignancy. (2) The evolution of benign cancer cells to malignant derivatives. (3) The evolution of an initiated cell that is dependent on continued exposure to a tumor-promoting agent for its further proliferation into one that continues to proliferate in the absence of further exposure to the promoter. *See also* **initiation**, **promotion**.

OceanofPDF.com

8.2 Cells make decisions about growth and quiescence during a specific period in the G_1 phase

As mentioned earlier, virtually all normal cell types in the body require external signals, such as those conveyed by mitogenic growth factors, before they undertake growth and division. The only exceptions to this rule appear to be very early embryonic cells, which seem able to proliferate without receiving growth-stimulating signals from elsewhere (**Sidebar 8.1**). The rationale for the contrasting behavior of the normal differentiated cells throughout our tissues is a simple one: because these cells participate in the formation of precisely structured tissues, their proliferation must, by necessity, be coordinated with neighboring cells in those tissues. Put differently, the body cannot give each of its almost 10^{14} component cells the license to decide on its own whether to grow and divide. To do so would invite chaos.

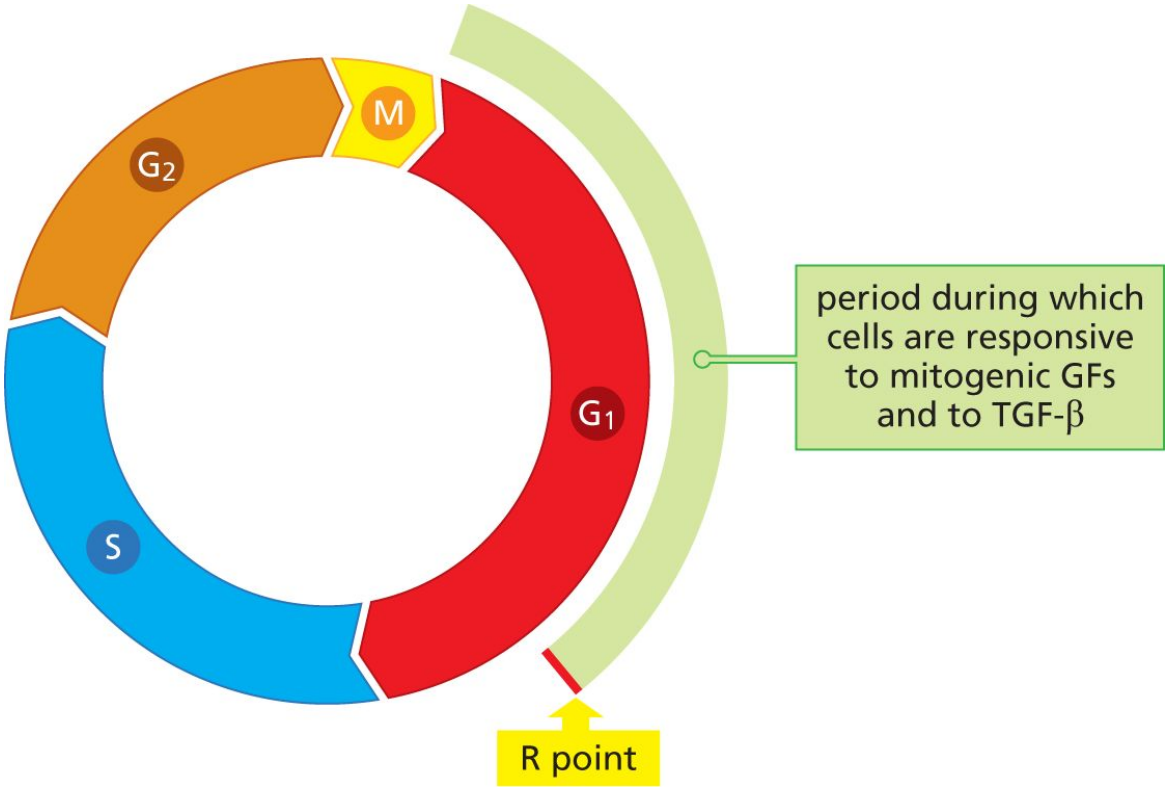
Sidebar 8.1 Embryonic stem (ES) cells show highly autonomous behavior

Our perceptions about the behavior of normal mammalian cells have been conditioned by decades of work with a wide variety of somatic cells present in embryonic and adult tissues. However, cells in the very early embryo clearly operate under a very different set of rules. The pRb pathway and the cell cycle clock machinery to be described in this chapter appear to operate in one form or another in virtually all types of adult cells. In contrast, a variety of experiments indicate that pRb-imposed growth control (to be described in Section 8.5) is not functional in early embryonic cells, including their cultured derivatives, embryonic stem (ES) cells. The same can be said about the p53 pathway (see Chapter 9).

ES cells seem to preserve some of the cell-autonomous behavior that we associate with the single-cell ancestors of metazoa, that is, the behavior of cells that have not yet become dependent on their neighbors for signals controlling growth and survival. The most stunning indication of their extreme autonomy is their ability to form benign tumors (teratomas) when introduced into many anatomical sites in

an adult organism (see Figure 2.10). Because these cells are genetically wild type, they represent the only example of a wild-type cell that is tumorigenic.

Evidence accumulated over the past three decades indicates that cells consult their extracellular environment and its growth-regulating signals during a discrete window of time in the active cell cycle, namely from the onset of G_1 phase until an hour or two before the G_1-to-S transition (**Figure 8.5**). The operations of the G_1 decision-making machinery are indicated by the responses of cultured cells to extracellular signals. If we were to remove serum and thus growth factors from cells before they had completed 80 to 90% of G_1, they would fail to proceed further into the cell cycle and would, with great likelihood, revert to the G_0 state. However, once these cells had moved through this G_1 decision-making period and advanced into the final hours of G_1 (the remaining 10 to 20% of G_1), the removal of serum would no longer affect their progress and they would proceed through the remainder of G_1 and onward through the S, G_2, and M phases. Similarly, anti-mitogenic factors, such as TGF-β, are able to impose their growth-inhibitory effects only during this period in the early and mid-G_1 phase. Once a cell has entered into late G_1, it seems to be oblivious to the presence of this negative factor in its surroundings. (There are isolated reports of the effects of TGF-β at the G_1/S boundary and the G_2/M boundary, but their role in regulating overall cell cycle progression remains unclear.)



A diagram shows when responsiveness to extracellular signals occurs during the cell cycle. The period during which cells are responsive to mitogenic G Fs and to T G F-beta runs from the start of the G 1 phase to a point near the end of the G 1 phase, labeled the R point.

Figure 8.5 Responsiveness to extracellular signals during the cell cycle
Cells respond to extracellular mitogens and inhibitory factors (such as TGF-β) only in a discrete window of time that begins at the onset of G_1 and ends just before the end of G_1. The end of this time window is often designated as the restriction (R) point, which denotes the point in time when the cell must make the commitment to advance through the remainder of the cell cycle through M phase, to remain in G_1, or to retreat from the active cell cycle into G_0.

This schedule of total dependence on extracellular signals followed by entrance in late G_1 into a state of relative independence indicates that a weighty decision must be made toward the end of G_1. Precisely at this point, a cell must make up its mind whether it will remain in G_1, retreat from the active cycle into G_0, or

advance into late G_1 and thereafter into the remaining phases of the cell cycle. This critical decision is made at a transition that has been called the restriction point or R point (see Figure 8.5). In most mammalian cells studied to date, the R point occurs several hours before the G_1/S phase transition.

If a cell should decide at the R point to continue advancing through its growth-and-division cycle, it commits itself to proceed beyond G_1 into S phase and then to complete a rigidly programmed series of events (the entire S, G_2, and M phases) that enable it to divide into two daughter cells. This decision will be respected even if growth factors are no longer present in the extracellular space during these remaining phases of the cell cycle. We know that this series of later steps (S, G_2, and M phases) proceeds on a fixed schedule, because a cell that enters S will, in the absence of a major disaster, invariably complete S and, having done so, enter into G_2 and then advance into M phase.

For those interested specifically in understanding the deregulated proliferation of cancer cells, this fixed program holds relatively little interest, because the late $G_1 \rightarrow S \rightarrow G_2 \rightarrow M$ progression proceeds similarly in normal cells and cancer cells. Students of cancer therefore focus largely on the G_0/G_1 transition and on the one period in the life of an actively growing cell—the time window encompassing most of G_1—when a cell is given the license to make decisions about its fate.

The commitment to advance through the R point and continue all the way to M phase is, as hinted, not an absolute one. Metabolic, genetic, or physical disasters may intervene during S, G_2, or M and force the cell to call a halt, often temporary, to its further advance through the cell cycle until these conditions have been addressed. Still, in the great majority of cases, cells in living tissues seem to succeed in avoiding these various disasters. This leaves the R-point decision as the critical determinant of whether cells will grow or not. An increasingly large body of evidence indicates that deregulation of the R-point decision-making machinery accompanies the formation of most if not all types of cancer cells.

If a cell does not enjoy the proper attachment to the extracellular matrix (ECM), much of it mediated by integrins (see Section 5.9), it will halt further advance through the cell cycle until proper tethering has been achieved. Alternatively, if it has lost all attachment to the ECM, it may activate anoikis, a form of the apoptotic cell suicide program described in the next chapter.

When grown in monolayer culture in Petri dishes, normal cells achieve the required attachment by adhering to ECM that they have deposited on the glass or plastic surfaces of these dishes. This requirement for attachment reflects the phenotype of anchorage dependence (see Section 3.5). Tumorigenic cells, which almost always have lost this dependence and have therefore become anchorage-independent, have inactivated or lost this late G_1 checkpoint. In some fashion, still poorly understood, oncoproteins like Ras and Src are able to mislead a cell into thinking that it has achieved extensive anchorage (see, for example, Section 6.9) when, in fact, none may exist at all.

Yet other, still-fragmentary evidence suggests additional environment-sensing checkpoints that operate before and after the R point. For example, one important checkpoint control operating between the R point and the onset of S phase gauges whether a cell has access to adequate levels of nutrients and halts cell cycle progression until such nutrients become available; another appears to determine whether reactive oxygen species (which in other contexts are thought to be toxic for the cell) are present in adequately high levels before progression is permitted. Such findings suggest that successful advance through late G_1 depends on passing through a succession of checkpoints in addition to the R point described here, not all of which have been well characterized.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

teratoma
: Benign tumor formed by embryonic stem cells in which a wide variety of differentiated cell types are formed.

restriction point
: Decision-making point in the late G_1 phase of the cell cycle at which a cell commits itself to either completing the remaining phases of the cell cycle, remaining in G_1, or exiting the active cell cycle and entering into G_0.

R point
: Decision-making point in the late G_1 phase of the cell cycle at which a cell commits itself to either completing the remaining phases of the cell cycle, remaining in G_1, or exiting the active cell cycle and entering into G_0.

anoikis
: Form of apoptosis that is triggered by the failure of a cell to establish anchorage to a solid substrate, such as the extracellular matrix, or by loss of such anchorage.

reactive oxygen species
: A chemically reactive, oxidizing molecule that results from the incomplete reduction of oxygen, including notably superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radical; these reactive oxygen species damage a wide range of molecules in the cell, requiring compensatory anti-oxidant defenses to prevent or reverse this damage.

anchorage independence
: Ability of a cell to proliferate without attachment to a solid substrate.

OceanofPDF.com

8.3 Cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases constitute the core components of the cell cycle clock

The existence of the R point leaves us with two major questions that we will spend much of this chapter answering. First, what is the nature of the molecular machinery that decides whether or not a cell in G_1 will continue to advance through the R point and the remainder of the cell cycle or will exit into a nongrowing state? Second, how does this machinery, which we call the cell cycle clock, implement these decisions once they have been made? We begin with the second question and will return later to the first.

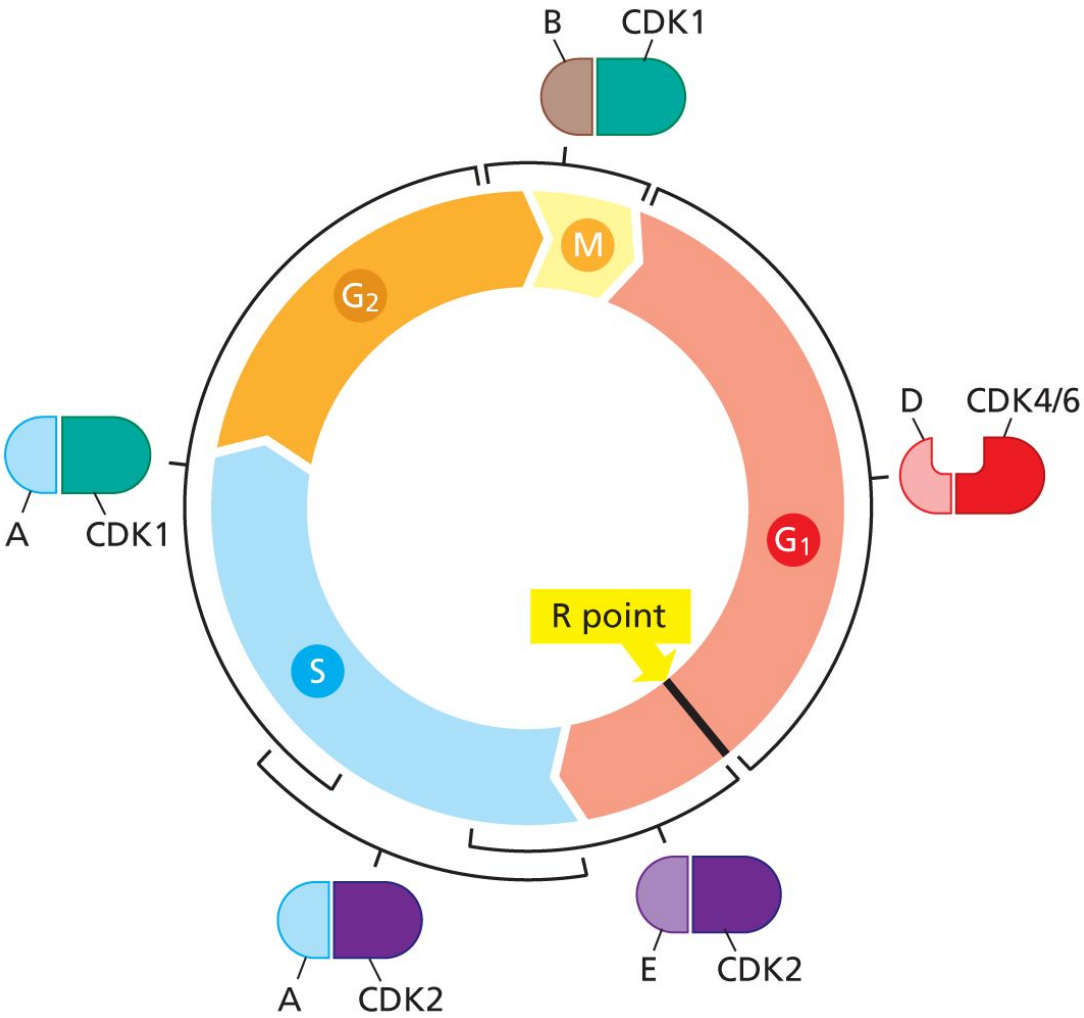
As described earlier (Chapters 5 and 6) by phosphorylating multiple distinct substrates, a single kinase enzyme can create covalent modifications that serve to switch on or off various activities inherent in these substrate proteins. In fact, the cell cycle clock also uses a group of protein kinases to execute the various steps of cell cycle progression. As examples, phosphorylation by these kinases of centrosome-associated proteins at the G_1/S boundary allows their duplication in preparation for M phase. Phosphorylation of other proteins prior to S phase enables DNA replication sites along the chromosomes to be activated. Phosphorylation of histone proteins in anticipation of S and M phases places the chromatin in configurations that permit these two phases to proceed normally. And the phosphorylation of proteins forming the nuclear membrane (sometimes called the *nuclear envelope*), such as lamin and nucleoporins, causes their dissociation and the dissolution of this membrane early in M phase.

The kinases deployed by the cell cycle machinery are called collectively cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs) to indicate that these enzymes never act on their own; instead, they depend on associated regulatory subunits, the cyclin proteins, for proper functioning. Bimolecular complexes of CDKs and their cyclin partners are responsible for dispatching signals from the cell cycle clock to hundreds of effector molecules that carry out the actual work of moving the cell through its growth-and-division cycle. (A number of structurally related CDKs involved in other cellular processes, such as control of transcription, are not discussed further here.)

The CDKs are serine/threonine kinases, in contrast to the tyrosine kinase activities that are associated with growth factor receptors and with nonreceptor kinase molecules like Src. The CDKs show about 40% amino acid sequence identity with one another and therefore are considered to form a distinct subfamily within the large (approximately

430) throng of Ser/Thr kinases encoded by the human genome (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.7**). The cyclins associated reversibly with their CDK partners activate the catalytic activity of these partners (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.2**). (In the well-studied example of the binding of cyclin A to CDK2, the association of the two proteins increases the enzymatic activity of CDK2 a staggering 400,000-fold!) At the same time, the cyclins serve as guide dogs for the CDKs by helping the cyclin–CDK complexes recognize appropriate protein substrates in the cell. The cyclins, for their part, also constitute a distinct family of cellular proteins that share in common a domain of approximately 100 amino acid residues that is involved in the binding and functional activation of CDKs.

It is actually cyclin–CDK complexes that constitute the engine of the cell cycle clock machinery. During much of the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, two similarly acting CDKs —CDK4 and CDK6—are guided by and depend upon their association with one of a trio of related cyclins (D1, D2, and D3) that collectively are called the D-type cyclins (**Figure 8.6**). After the R point in late G_1, the E-type cyclins (E1 and E2) associate with CDK2 to enable the phosphorylation of appropriate substrates required for entry into S phase. As cells enter into S phase, the A-type cyclins (A1 and A2) replace E cyclins as the partners of CDK2 and thereby enable S phase to progress (see Figure 8.6). Later in S phase, the A-type cyclins switch partners, leaving CDK2 and associating instead with another CDK called either CDC2 or CDK1. (We will use CDK1 here.) As the cell moves further into G_2 phase, the A-type cyclins are replaced as CDK1 partners by the B-type cyclins (B1 and B2). Finally, at the onset of M phase, the complexes of CDK1 with the B-type cyclins trigger many of the events of the prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase that together constitute the complex program of mitosis.

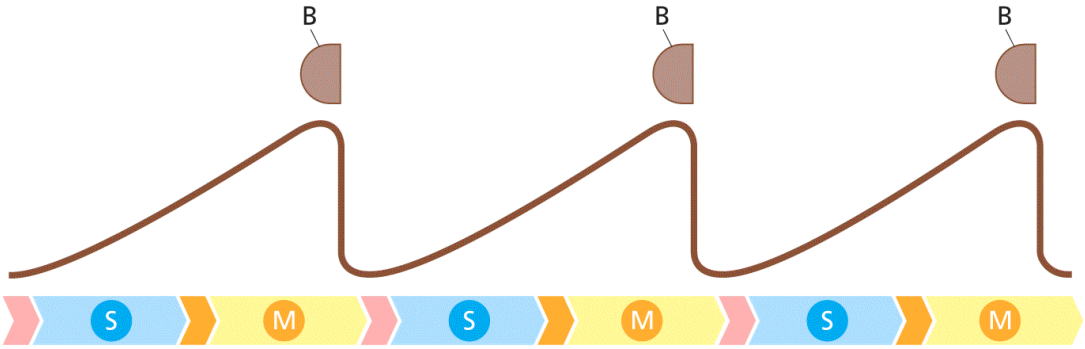


A diagram shows pairings of cyclins with cyclin-dependent kinases during different parts of the cell cycle. From the start of the G 1 phase to the R point, D-type cyclins bind C D K 4 or 6. After the R point and a short distance into the S phase, E-type cyclins bind C D K 2. During the first half of the S phase and nearly all of the G 2 phase, A-type cyclins bind C D K 2. During the last two-thirds of the S phase, A-type cyclins bind C D K 1. During the very end of the G 2 phase and all of the M phase, B-type cyclins bind C D K 1.

Figure 8.6 Pairing of cyclins with cyclin-dependent kinases Each type of cyclin pairs with a specific cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) or set of CDKs. The D-type cyclins (D1, D2, and D3) bind CDK4 or CDK6, the E-type cyclins (E1 and E2) bind CDK2, the A-type cyclins (A1 and A2) bind CDK2 or CDK1, and the B-type cyclins (B1 and B2) bind CDK1. The brackets indicate the periods during the cell cycle when these various cyclin–CDK complexes are active.

As is the case with all well-regulated systems, the activities of the various cyclin–CDK complexes must be modulated in order to impose control on specific steps in the cell cycle. The most important way of achieving this regulation depends upon changing the levels and availability of cyclins during various phases of the cell cycle. In contrast, the levels of most CDKs vary only minimally.

The first insights into cyclin–CDK control came from studies of the governors of mitosis in early frog and sea urchin embryos. As these experiments showed, levels of B-type cyclins increase strongly in anticipation of mitosis, allowing B cyclins and CDK1 to form complexes that initiate entrance into M phase. At the end of M phase, cyclin B levels plummet because of the scheduled degradation of this protein. Early in the next cell cycle, cyclin B is virtually undetectable in cells, and it accumulates gradually later in this cycle in preparation of the next M phase. Because the growth-and-division cycles of all of the cells in these early embryos are synchronous (that is, take place coordinately), all cells in the embryo go through S and M at the same time. This behavior results in repeated rounds of cycling of the levels of these cyclin proteins—the behavior that inspired their name (**Figure 8.7**).

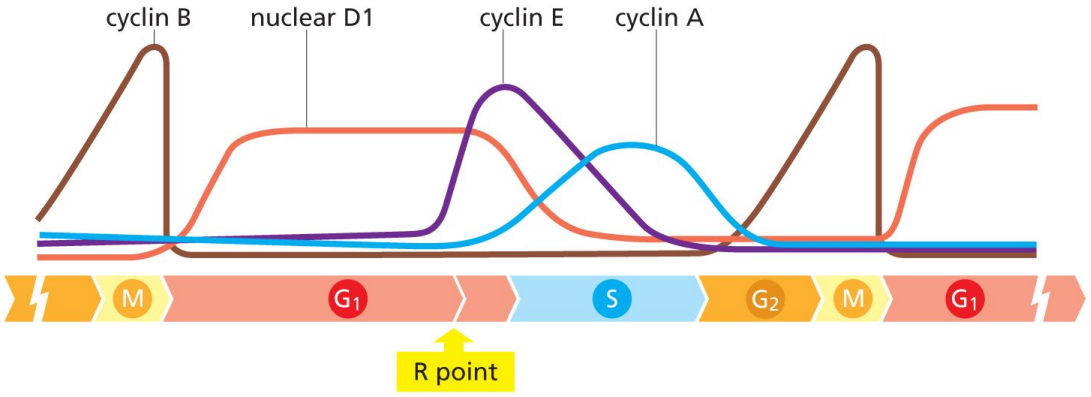


A linear sequence of cell cycle phases, with associated cyclin B levels. The G 1 and G2 phases are very short and the S and M phases are long. A line above the sequence indicates that cyclin B levels are lowest during G 1 and rise steadily through S and G 2 to the end of M before dropping down to repeat the cycle. This repeats three times.

Figure 8.7 Cell cycle–dependent fluctuations in cyclin B levels The cyclic fluctuations in the levels of cyclin B in early frog and sea urchin embryos gave cyclins their name. These fluctuations were noticeable because the cell cycles in these early embryos are synchronous, i.e., all cells in an embryo enter into M phase simultaneously. In these early embryos, the G_1 and G_2 phases of the cell cycle (*orange–pink chevrons*) are virtually absent and the cells, in effect, alternate between M and S phases. (Although cyclin B levels are already substantial prior to

the onset of M phase, cyclin B molecules are unable to form catalytically active B–CDK1 (also termed CDC2) complexes until the G_2-to-M transition.)

This theme of dramatic cell cycle phase–dependent changes in the levels of cyclin B is repeated by other cyclins as well. Cyclin E levels are low throughout most of G_1, rise abruptly after a cell has progressed through the R point, and collapse as the cell enters S phase (**Figure 8.8**), while cyclin A increases in concert with the cell's entrance into S phase. (Although there are at least two subtypes of cyclin A, cyclin B, and cyclin E, we will refer to these simply as cyclins A, B, and E, respectively, because the two subtypes of each of these cyclins appear to operate identically.)

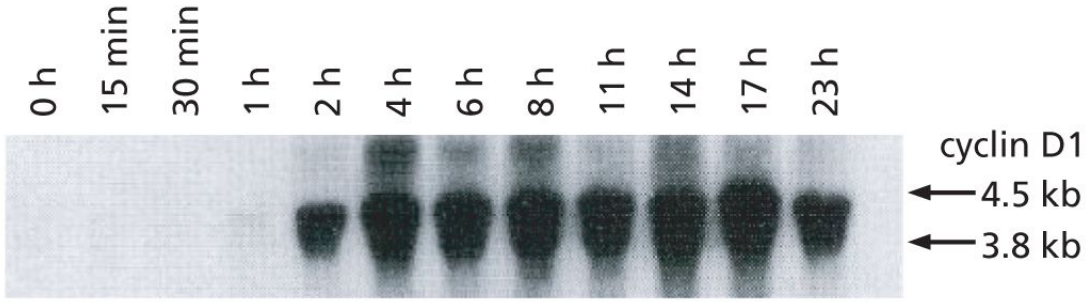


A linear sequence of cell cycle phases, with associated cyclin A, B and E levels. The G 1 phase is longest and M phase is shortest. The S phase and G 2 phases are intermediate. Lines above the sequence indicate cyclin levels. Cyclin A levels are low during M and G 1, rise during S, and fall at the end of S and into G 2. Cyclin B levels are low during G 1 and S, rise steadily during G 2 and M, and drop abruptly at the end of M. Cyclin E levels are low during G 2, M and G 1 up to the R point, rise steeply after the R point, and drop back down during S.

Figure 8.8 Fluctuation of cyclin levels during the cell cycle The levels of most of the mammalian cyclins fluctuate dramatically as cells progress through the cell cycle. For most of these cyclins, these fluctuations are tightly coordinated with the schedule of advances through the various cell cycle phases. However, in the case of the D-type cyclins, extracellular signals, notably those conveyed by growth factors, strongly influence their levels. (Although cyclin D1—and possibly other D-type cyclins—is present in other cell cycle phases besides G_1, following the G_1/S transition it is exported from the nucleus into the cytoplasm, where it can no longer influence cell cycle progression. The precise time point at which cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes lose activity is not well defined.)

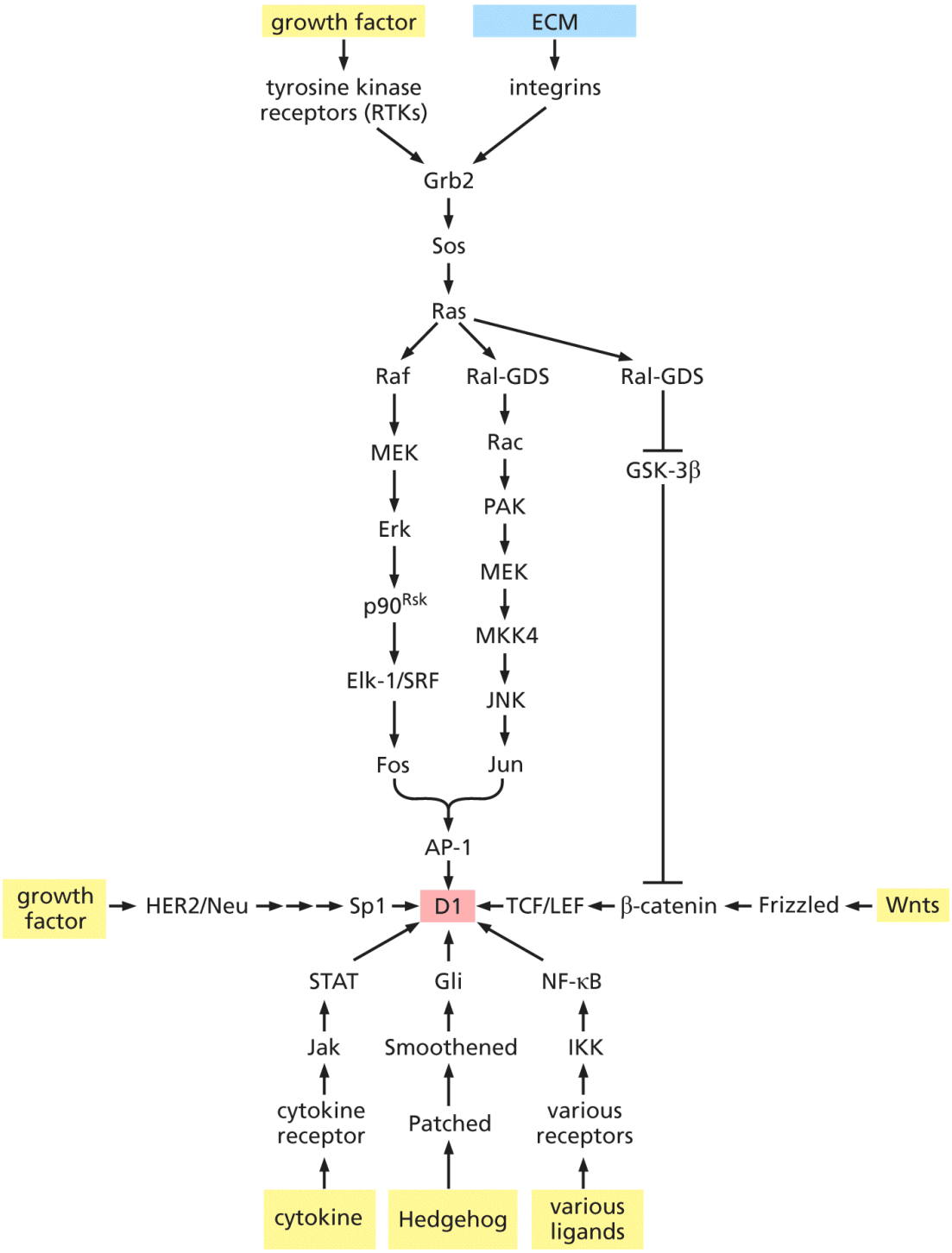
The collapse of various cyclin species as cells advance from one cell cycle phase to the next results from their rapid degradation, which is triggered by the actions of highly coordinated ubiquitin ligases. The ubiquitin ligases attach polyubiquitin chains to these cyclins (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). This polyubiquitylation leads to proteolytic breakdown within the proteasomes. The gradual accumulation of cyclins followed by their rapid destruction has an important functional consequence for the cell cycle, because it dictates that the cell cycle clock can move in only one direction, much like a ratchet. This behavior ensures, for example, that cells that have exited one M phase cannot inadvertently slip backward into another one, but instead must advance through G_1, S, and G_2 until they have once again accumulated the B cyclins required for entrance into M phase.

The D-type cyclins present the sole exception to these well-programmed fluctuations in the levels of cyclins. The levels of these three, similarly structured cyclins are not found to vary dramatically as a cell advances through the various phases of its growth-and-division cycle. Instead, the levels of D-type cyclins are controlled largely by extracellular signals, specifically those conveyed by a variety of mitogenic growth factors. In the case of cyclin D1—the best-studied of the three D-type cyclins—growth factor activation of tyrosine kinase receptors and the resulting stimulation of several downstream signaling cascades results in rapid accumulation of cyclin D1 (**Figure 8.9**). Conversely, removal of growth factors from a cell's medium results in an equally rapid collapse of its cyclin D1 levels with a half-life of about 30 minutes.



A series of blots over time. There are no blots at times 0, 15 seconds and 30 seconds. There is a very faint blot at 1 hour. There are pronounced blots at 2, 4, 6, 8, 11, 14, 17 and 23 hours. In each case, the darkest blot is for cyclin D 1 lying between 3.8 and 4.5 kilobases.

(A)



A signal transduction cascade with six separate starting points. One signaling sequence begins with growth factor which leads to R T Ks and E C M which leads to integrins. Those paths combine at pass throguh several more proteins before reaching A P 1 and then D 1. A second cascade begins with growth factor. The other four begin with W n tees, cytokine, hedgehog, and various

ligands, respectively. These have much shorter cascades. All six sequences converge on D 1.
(B)

Figure 8.9 Control of cyclin D1 levels (A) Cyclin D1 was discovered as a protein whose levels are strongly induced by exposure of macrophages to the mitogen CSF-1 (colony-stimulating factor-1). Here, macrophages that had been starved of CSF-1 were exposed to fresh CSF-1 and the amounts of cyclin D1 mRNA at subsequent times thereafter were determined by RNA (Northern) blotting. (B) The control of cyclin D1 levels by extracellular mitogens can be explained, in part, by a signal transduction cascade that leads from growth factor receptors (RTKs) to the AP-1 transcription factor (TF), one of a number of factors that modulate the transcription of the *cyclin D1* gene. (AP-1 is a heterodimeric TF formed from Fos and Jun subunits, each encoded by a proto-oncogene.) In addition, a number of other signaling cascades converge on the promoter of this gene, not all of which are illustrated in this figure. (A, from H. Matsushime et al., *Cell* 65:701–713, 1991. With permission from Elsevier.)

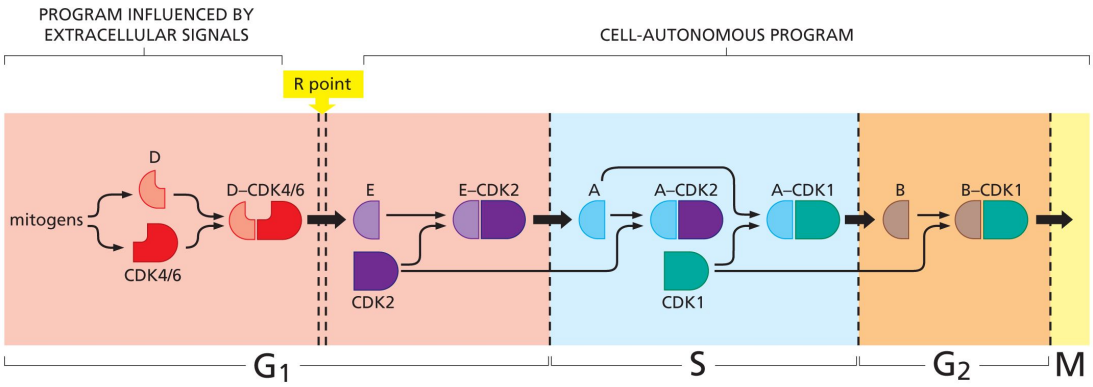
The distinctive behavior of the D-type cyclins has been rationalized as follows: They serve to convey signals from the extracellular environment to the cell cycle clock operating in the cell nucleus. Because the levels of D-type cyclins fluctuate together with the levels of extracellular mitogens, D-type cyclins continuously inform the cell cycle clock of current conditions in the environment around the cell.

After D-type cyclins are synthesized in the cytoplasm and migrate to the nucleus, they assemble in complexes with their two alternative CDK partners, CDK4 and CDK6. Because these two CDKs operate so similarly to one another within the cell cycle machinery, we will refer to them hereafter as CDK4/6. (CDK6 has several distinct functions not shared with its CDK4 cousin, being overexpressed in certain leukemias and lymphoma and capable of phosphorylating glycolytic enzymes, thereby affecting energy metabolism.) In general, the cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes seem to have similar enzymatic activities and substrate specificities, independent of whether they contain cyclin D1, D2, or D3. This raises the question of why mammalian cells employ three distinct D-type cyclins to push cells through the G_1 phase of their cell cycles (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.3**). Moreover, each of the cyclins has additional functions unrelated to the cell cycle (**Sidebar 8.2**) and is regulated by an elaborate series of transcriptional and post-transcriptional controllers (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.4**).

Sidebar 8.2 Cyclins have other jobs besides cell cycle control

Over three decades of cell cycle research have created the impression that cell cycle control is the sole function of cyclins. In fact, cyclin D1 has been shown to associate with both the estrogen receptor (ER) and the transcription factor C/EBPβ. By binding the ER, cyclin D1 may mimic the normal ligand of this receptor—estrogen—in stimulating the receptor's transcriptional activities. The great majority (>70%) of breast cancers express the ER, and its expression explains the mitogenic effects that estrogen has on the cells in these tumors. Because cyclin D1 is overexpressed in most of these tumors and can also activate this receptor, the D1–ER complexes may also play an important role in driving the proliferation of cells in these tumors. The association of cyclin D1 with C/EBPβ results in activation of this transcription factor, which is thought to play a key role in programming the differentiation of a variety of cell types. Knockout of cyclin D1 in the mouse germ line results in viable mice that have severely underdeveloped mammary glands. This effect can be reversed by providing the mammary glands with a mutant cyclin D1 that can bind C/EBPβ but cannot activate CDK4/6. Hence, in this case, the non-CDK-associated functions of this cyclin are far more important than its effects on CDK4/6 activation. More globally, the use of chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP) has revealed at least 700 sites in the genome, most affiliated with gene promoters, to which cyclin D1 is bound, indicating that the two associations of cyclin D1 with transcription factors, as cited above, are likely only the tips of a far larger iceberg.

Once they are formed, the cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes are capable of ushering a cell all the way from the beginning of the G_1 phase up to and perhaps through the R-point gate. After the cell has moved through the R point, the remaining cyclins—E, A, and B—behave in a pre-programmed fashion, executing the fixed program that begins at the R point and extends all the way to the end of M phase (**Figure 8.10**). Indeed, once the cell has passed through its R point, its cell cycle machinery takes on a life of its own that is quite autonomous and apparently no longer responsive to extracellular signals. (As cells enter into S phase, D-type cyclins are exported to the cytoplasm, where they can no longer influence cell cycle advance.)



External and cell-autonomous control of pairings of cyclins with C D Kays during different parts of the cell cycle. From the start of the G 1 phase to the R point, mitogens induce D-type cyclins to bind C D K 4 or 6. This program is influenced by extracellular signals, namely the mitogens. The rest of the program is a cell autonomous program. After the R point, E-type cyclins bind C D K 2. During the S phase, A-type cyclins bind first C D K 2 and then C D K 1. During the G 2 and M phases, B-type cyclins bind C D K 1.

Figure 8.10 Control of cyclin levels during the cell cycle Although extracellular signals strongly influence the levels of D-type cyclins during most of the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, the levels of the remaining cyclins are controlled by intracellular signaling and precisely coordinated with cell cycle advance. Thus, after cells pass through the R point and cyclin E–CDK2 complexes are activated, the activation of the remaining cyclin–CDK complexes occurs on a predictable schedule that appears to be independent of extracellular physiologic signals. In part, this coordination is achieved because the cyclin–CDK complexes in one phase of the cell cycle are responsible for activating those in the subsequent phase (*indicated here*) and for shutting down those that were active in the previous phase (*not shown*).

In ways that remain poorly understood, cyclin–CDK complexes in later phases suppress the activities of the cyclin–CDK complexes that have preceded them in earlier phases of the cell cycle. For example, when cyclin A is activated by the actions of cyclin E–CDK2 complexes during the G_1/S transition, the activities of cyclin A–CDK2 result in, among other things, the inactivation of the transcription factor that served previously during the R-point transition to induce cyclin E expression. In late S and early G_2 phases, the cyclin A–CDK1 complex begins to prepare for the activation of cyclin B–CDK1 complexes that are required later for entrance into mitosis. Once the latter complexes are activated, they seem to cause a shutdown of cyclin A synthesis, and so forth. Although the program depicted in Figure 8.10 has been validated in a number of cultured cell types, it may not apply to all cells, as indicated by studies of genetically modified mice (see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.5**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

centrosome
: A body in the cytoplasm containing a pair of centrioles, ancillary proteins, and outward radiating microtubules that functions to organize one-half of a mitotic spindle. *See also* **centriole**, **spindle**.

cyclin
: A protein that associates with a cyclin-dependent kinase and serves as a regulatory subunit of this kinase by activating its catalytic activity and directing it to appropriate substrates. *See also* **cyclin-dependent kinase**.

synchronous
: (1) Occurring at the same time; i.e., in a temporally coordinated fashion. (2) Referring to a population of cells that enter a specific phase of the cell cycle at the same time. *See also* **asynchronous**.

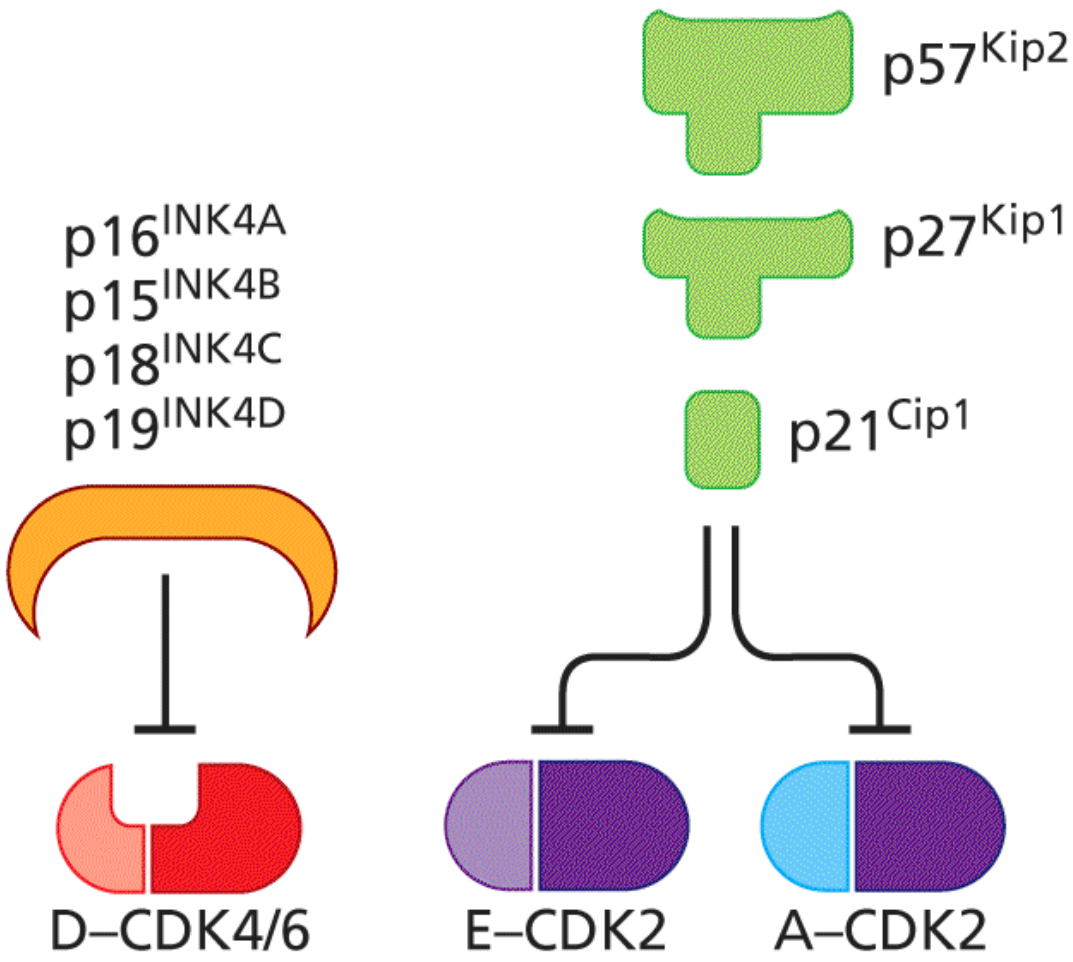
cyclin-dependent kinase
: Type of serine/threonine kinase deployed by the cell cycle machinery that depends on an associated cyclin protein for proper functioning. *See also* **cyclin**.

OceanofPDF.com

8.4 Cyclin–CDK complexes are also regulated by CDK inhibitors

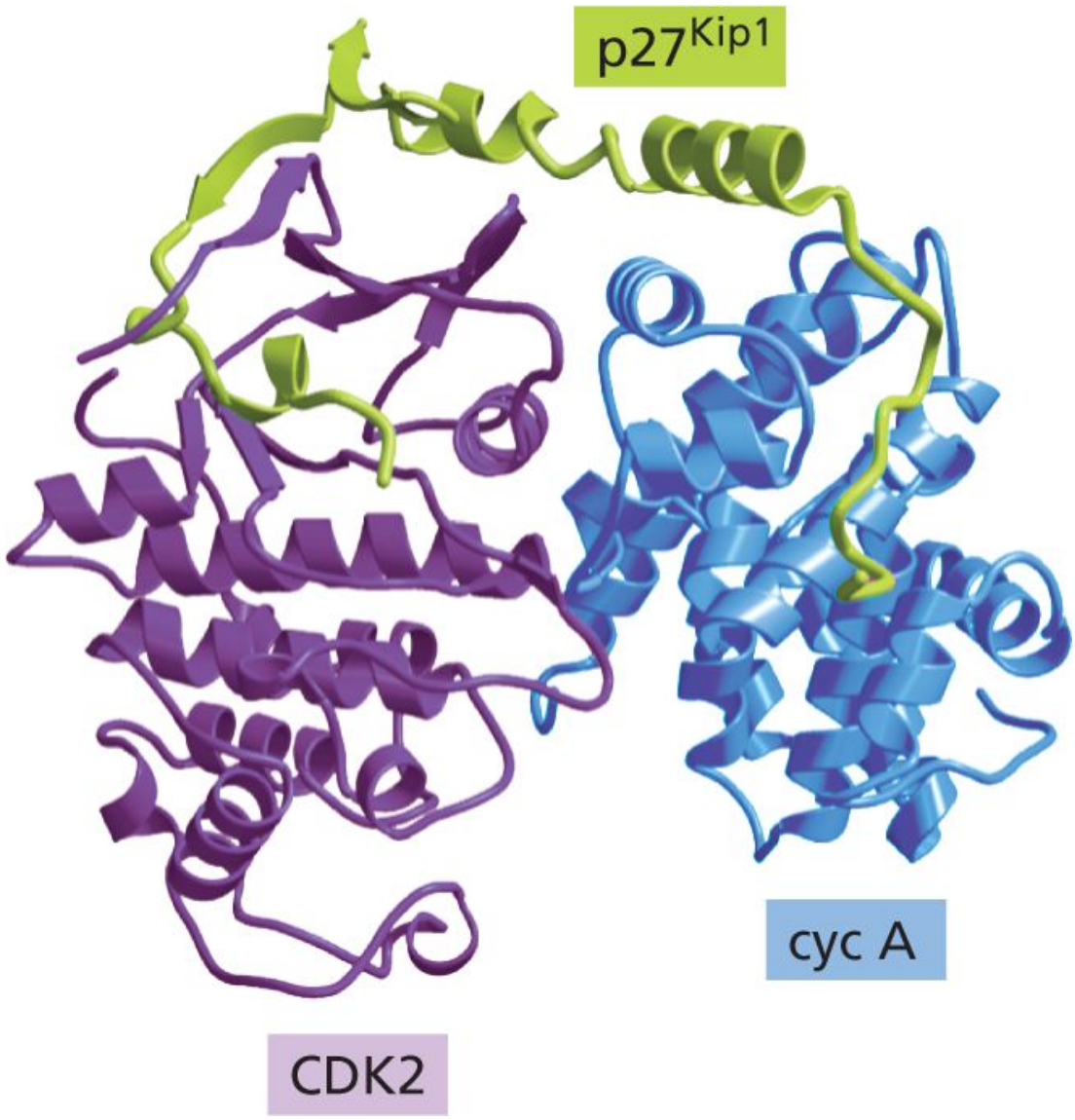
The scheme of cell cycle progression laid out above implies that physiological signals are able to influence the activity of the cell cycle clock only through their modulation of cyclin levels. In truth, there are several other layers of control that modulate the activity of the cyclin–CDK complexes and thereby regulate advance through the cell cycle.

The most important of these additional controls is imposed by a class of proteins referred to generically as CDK inhibitors or simply CKIs. To date, seven of these proteins have been found that are able to antagonize the activities of the cyclin–CDK complexes. A group of four of these, the INK4 proteins (named originally as **in**hibitors of CD**K4**), target specifically the CDK4 and CDK6 complexes; they have no effect on CDK1 and CDK2. These inhibitors are $p16^{INK4A}$, $p15^{INK4B}$, $p18^{INK4C}$, and $p19^{INK4D}$. The three remaining CDK inhibitors, $p21^{Cip1}$ (sometimes termed $p21^{Waf1}$), $p27^{Kip1}$, and $p57^{Kip2}$ (encoded by the human *CDKN1A*, *CDKN1B*, and *CDKN1C* genes, respectively) are more widely acting, being able to inhibit the cyclin–CDK complexes that function in G1/S (E–CDK2) or S (A–CDK2) phases of the cell cycle (**Figure 8.11**). (Each one of this trio of CKIs has been found to affect other specific processes unrelated to cell cycle progression, including transcriptional regulation, apoptosis, cell fate determination, cell migration, and cytoskeletal organization; however, because these other functions appear to play relatively minor roles in cancer development, we will not discuss them further.) $p57^{Kip2}$ plays a key role in certain tissues by imposing quiescence on stem cells but a minor role in cancer development; for this reason, our discussion will focus on its two cousins, $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$.



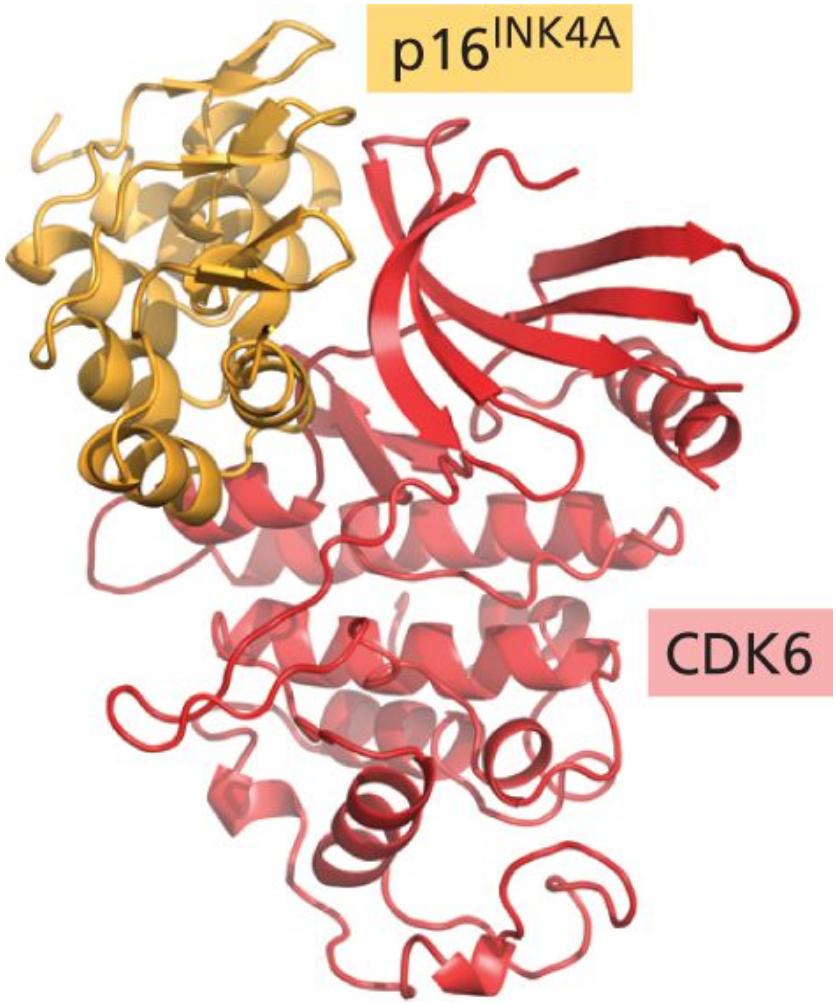
A schematic showing that p16 INK4A, p15 INK4B, p18 INK4C, and p19 INK4D all inhibit the action of the D-C D K 4 and D-C D K 6 complexes, and that p57 Kip2, p27 Kip1 and p21Cip1 all inhibit the action of both E–C D K 2 and A–C D K 2.

(A)



A ribbon diagram of p27 Kip 1 bound to cyclin A–C D K 2.

(B)



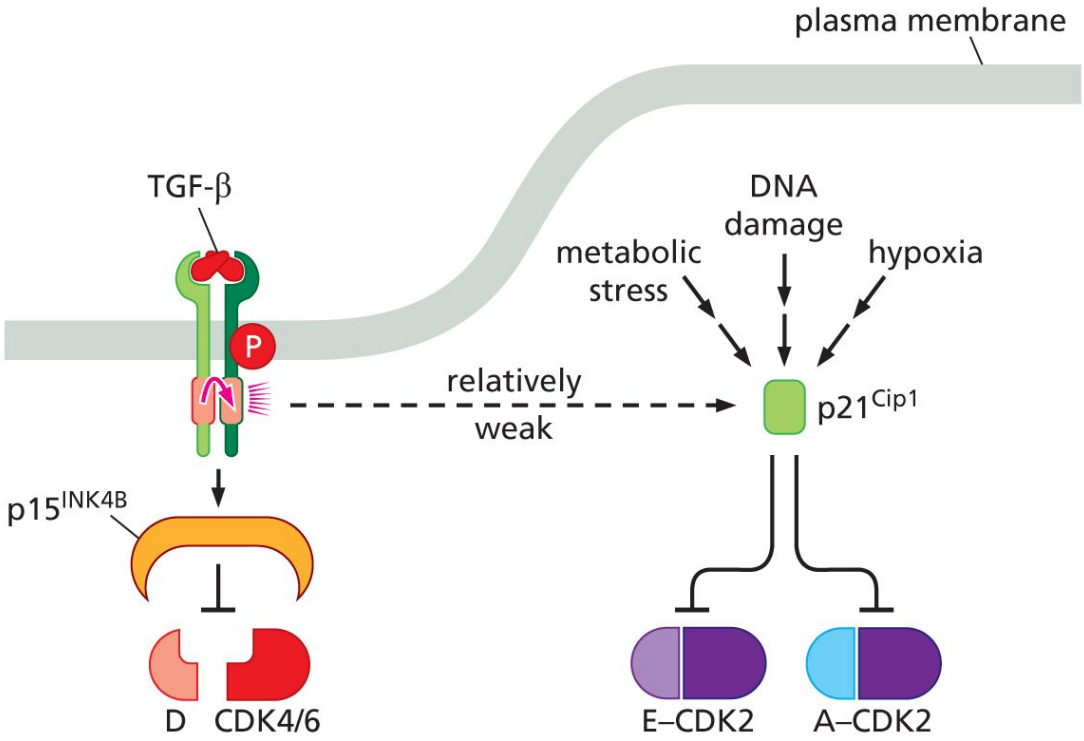
A ribbon diagram of p16 INK4A bound to C D K 6.

(C)

Figure 8.11 Actions of CDK inhibitors (A) The CDK inhibitors block the actions of CDKs at various points in the cell cycle. The four INK4 proteins ($p16^{INK4A}$, $p15^{INK4B}$, $p18^{INK4C}$, and $p19^{INK4D}$) are specialized to inhibit the D–CDK4 and D–CDK6 complexes that are active in early and mid-G_1. Conversely, the three Cip/Kip CKIs ($p21^{Cip1}$, $p27^{Kip1}$, and $p57^{Kip2}$) can inhibit E–CDK2 and A–CDK2, cyclin–CDK complexes that are active in the G1/S and S phases of the cell cycle. Under certain conditions, signals originating within the cell (e.g., signals indicating damage to the cell's DNA) can halt advance through the cell cycle by blocking the actions of cyclin/CDK complexes that are active in the S and G_2 phases of the cell cycle. Paradoxically, $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ are known to *promote* formation and catalytic activity of D–CDK4/6 complexes during the G_1 phase (see Figure 8.14). (B) This depiction illustrates how one domain of $p27^{Kip1}$ (*light*

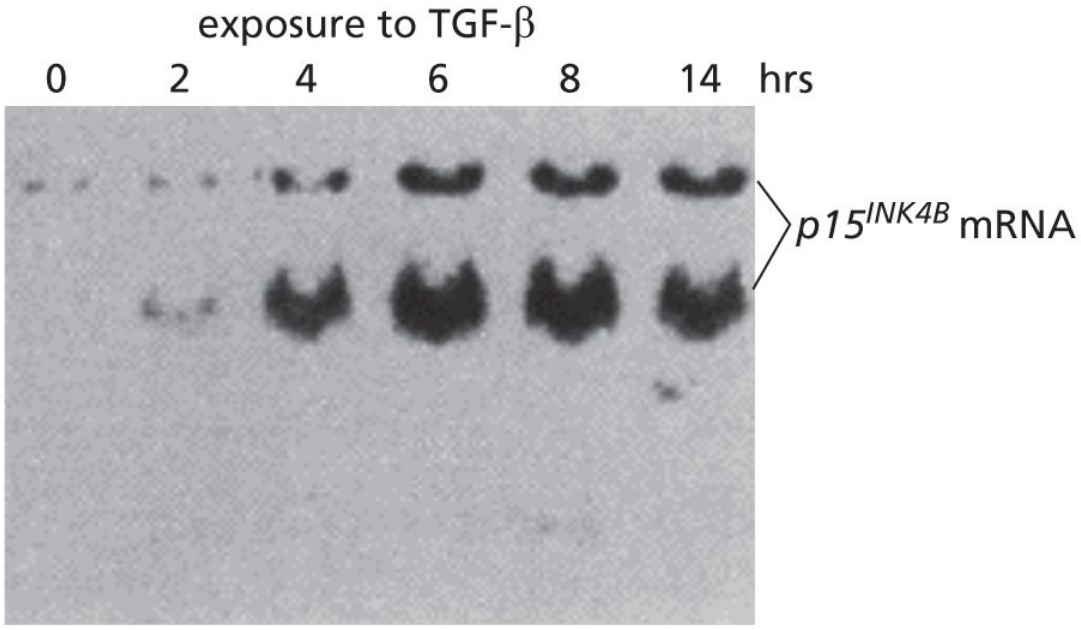
green) blocks cyclin A–CDK2 function by obstructing the ATP-binding site in the catalytic cleft of the CDK. (C) Inhibitors of the INK4 class, such as $p16^{INK4A}$ shown here (*brown*), bind to CDK6 (*reddish*) and to CDK4 (*not shown*). These CDK inhibitors distort the cyclin-binding site of CDK6, reducing its affinity for D-type cyclins. At the same time, they distort the ATP-binding site and thereby compromise catalytic activity. Identical interactions likely characterize the responses of CDK4 to $p16^{INK4A}$ binding. (B, from A.A. Russo et al., *Nature* 382:325–331, 1996. C, from A.A. Russo et al., *Nature* 395:237–243, 1998. Both with permission from Nature.)

The actions of these two classes of CDK inhibitors are nicely illustrated by $p15^{INK4B}$ and the pair $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$. When TGF-β is applied to epithelial cells, it elicits a number of downstream responses that antagonize cell proliferation. Among these are substantial increases in the levels of $p15^{INK4B}$, which proceeds to block the formation of cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes (**Figure 8.12**) and to inhibit those that have already formed. Without active D–CDK4/6 complexes, the cell is unable to advance through early and mid-G_1 and reach the R point. Once a cell has passed through the R point, the actions of the D–CDK4/6 complexes seem to become unnecessary. This behavior may explain why TGF-β inhibits growth during early and mid-G_1 and loses most (perhaps all) of its growth-inhibitory powers after a cell has passed through the R point.



A diagram showing that when a receptor in the plasma membrane is bound by T G F beta and activates through transphosphorylation, it strongly promotes p15 INK 4 Bees inhibition of the joining of D-type kinase to C D K 4 or 6. It also, more weakly, is one of several factors that promote the inhibition of E–C D K 2 and A–C D K 2 by p21 Cip1. The other factors are metabolic stress, D N A damage, and hypoxia.

(A)



A series of blots showing the results of exposure to T G F-beta after 0, 2, 4, 6, 8 and 14 hours. Each blot has a small upper part and a larger lower part. The blots get progressively darker from 0 to 6 hours. They indicate the growing presence of p15 INK4B m R N A.

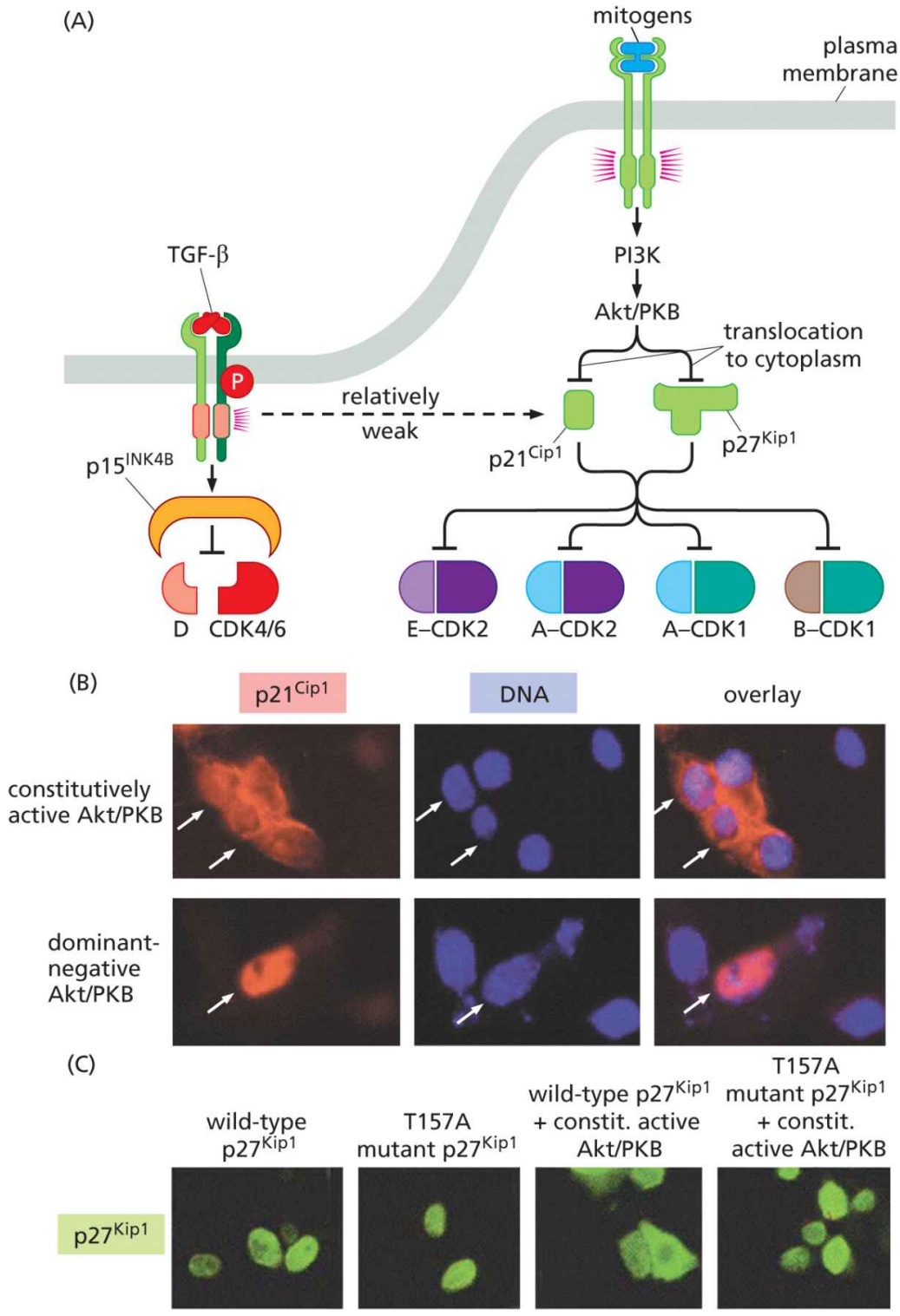
(B)

Figure 8.12 Control of cell cycle progression by TGF-β (A) TGF-β (*top left*) controls the cell cycle machinery in part through its ability to modulate the levels of CDK inhibitors. It acts to strongly induce increased expression of $p15^{INK4B}$ and, weakly, of $p21^{Cip1}$. The former can block the actions of cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes, whereas the latter can block the actions of the E–CDK2 and A–CDK2 complexes. Independent of this, damage to cellular DNA causes strong, rapid increases in $p21^{Cip1}$, which in turn can shut down the cyclin–CDK complexes that are active in the phases of the cell cycle after the cell has passed through the R point in the late G_1 phase. (B) When TGF-β is applied to human keratinocytes, it

evokes a dramatic 30-fold induction of *p15*^{INK4B} mRNA synthesis as demonstrated here by RNA (Northern) blotting analysis. These cells were exposed to TGF-β for the time periods (in hours) indicated. (B, from G.J. Hannon and D. Beach, *Nature* 371:257–261, 1994. With permission from Nature.)

$p21^{Cip1}$, a more widely acting CDK inhibitor, is also induced by TGF-β, albeit weakly. Far more important are increases in the levels of $p21^{Cip1}$ that occur in response to various physiological stresses (see Figure 8.12A); once present at significant levels, $p21^{Cip1}$ can act throughout much of the cell cycle to stop a cell in its tracks. Prominent among these stresses is damage to the cell's genome. As long as the genomic DNA remains in an unrepaired state, the $p21^{Cip1}$ that has been induced in response will shut down the activity of already-formed cyclin–CDK complexes—such as E–CDK2 and A–CDK2—that happened to be active when this damage was first incurred; once the damage is repaired, the block imposed by $p21^{Cip1}$ may then be relieved. Such a strategy makes special sense in G_1: if a cell's genome becomes damaged during this period through the actions of various mutagenic agents, $p21^{Cip1}$ will block advance through the R point (by inhibiting E–CDK2 complexes) until the damage has been repaired, ensuring that the cell does not stumble into S phase and inadvertently copy still-damaged DNA sequences. In addition, $p21^{Cip1}$ can inhibit the functions of a key component of the cell's DNA replication apparatus, termed PCNA (proliferating cell nuclear antigen), ensuring that already-initiated DNA synthesis is halted until DNA repair has been completed. We will return to the mechanisms controlling $p21^{Cip1}$ expression in the next chapter.

Although DNA damage and, to a much lesser extent, TGF-β can elicit increases in the levels of $p21^{Cip1}$ (thereby blocking cell cycle advance), mitogens act in an opposing fashion to mute the actions of this CDK inhibitor and in this way favor cell cycle advance. One mechanism by which they do so depends on the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway (see Section 6.6), which is activated directly or indirectly by the mitogens that stimulate many receptor tyrosine kinases (**Figure 8.13A**). Akt/PKB, the important kinase activated downstream of mitogen-activated PI3K, phosphorylates $p21^{Cip1}$ molecules located in the nucleus, thereby causing them to be exported into the cytoplasm, where they can no longer engage and inhibit cyclin–CDK complexes (Figure 8.13B). Similarly, Akt/PKB phosphorylates $p27^{Kip1}$ (which functions much like $p21^{Cip1}$) and prevents its export from its cytoplasmic site of synthesis into the nucleus, where it normally does its critical work (Figure 8.13C and **Supplementary Sidebar 8.6**). Taken together, these signaling responses illustrate how extracellular growth-inhibitory signals (conveyed by TGF-β) impede the advance of the cell cycle clock, while growth-promoting signals promote its forward progress.



A three-part figure depicting the control of cell cycle advance by extracellular signals. Part A is a diagram showing that when a receptor in the plasma membrane is bound by T G F beta and phosphorylates and activates, it strongly promotes p15 INK 4 Bees inhibition of the joining of D-type kinase to C D K 4 or 6. It also,

more weakly, promotes the inhibition of E–C D K 2, A–C D K 2, A–C D K 1 and B–C D K 1 by p21 Cip1 and p27 Kip1. In doing so, T G F beta partly counteracts the effects of mitogens that bind to receptors and, via PI3K and A k t slash P K B translocated to the cytoplasm, inhibit the actions of p21 Cip1 and p27 Kip1. Part B is a two by three array of fluorescent stain images. The top row is for constitutively active A k t slash P K B, while the bottom row is for dominant negative A k t slash P K B. In both cases, the left image shows the localization of p21 Cip1, the middle image shows the locations of nuclear D N A, and the right image superimposes the two images. With constitutively active A k t slash P K B, p21 Cip1 is localized in cytoplasm; by contrast, with dominant negative A k t slash P K B, p21 Cip1 is localized in a nucleus. Part C is a sequence of four images showing the localization of p27 Kip1. Wild-type p27 Kip1 is localized to nuclei, and so is T157A mutant p27 Kip1. By contrast, wild-type p27 Kip1 with constitutively active A k t slash P K B is localized to cytoplasm. However, T157A mutant p27 Kip1 with constitutively active A k t slash P K B is localized to nuclei.

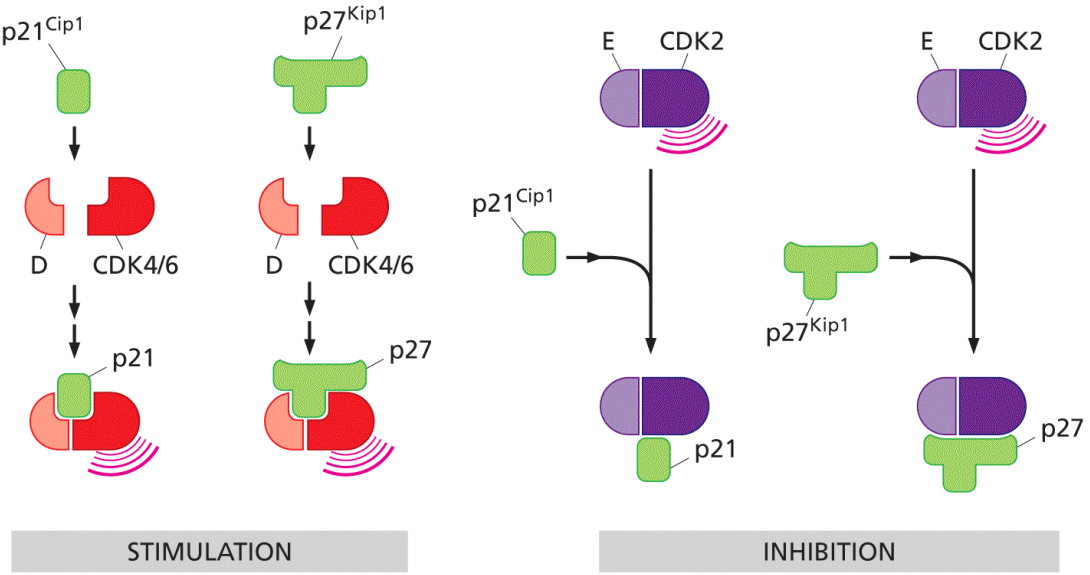
Figure 8.13 Control of cell cycle advance by extracellular signals

Countervailing extracellular signals influence the cell cycle machinery, in part through their ability to control the levels and intracellular localization of CDK inhibitors. (A) During the G_1 phase, TGF-β induces $p15^{INK4B}$ and (weakly) $p21^{Cip1}$ expression, negatively affecting the D–CDK4/6 and E–CDK2 complexes, respectively (see also Figure 8.12). Conversely, mitogens, acting through Akt/PKB, cause the phosphorylation and cytoplasmic localization of both $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$, which prevents these CDK inhibitors from entering the nucleus and blocking the activities of various cyclin–CDK complexes operating there. (The growth factor receptors can also reduce the levels of the two CKIs depicted here, $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$; these CKIs can inhibit, in turn, cyclin–CDK complexes active in late G_1 and S. It is unclear, however, whether these cyclin–CDK complexes are actually affected by mitogens in the later phases of the cell cycle.) (B) Ectopic expression of a constitutively active Akt/PKB (*upper row*) causes $p21^{Cip1}$ (*orange, left*) to be localized largely in the cytoplasm. Compare its localization with that of the cell nuclei (*blue, middle*); the overlap of these two images is also seen (*right*). Conversely, expression of a dominant-negative Akt/PKB (*lower row*), which interferes with ongoing Akt/PKB function, allows $p21^{Cip1}$ to localize to the cell nucleus, where it can interact with cyclin–CDK complexes and inhibit cell cycle progression. (C) In normal cells (*first panel*), ectopically expressed wild-type $p27^{Kip1}$ (*green*) is found to be exclusively nuclear. This localization is not changed if a $p27^{Kip1}$ mutant is expressed that lacks the threonine residue normally phosphorylated by Akt/PKB (*second panel*). (The T157A mutant carries an alanine in place of this threonine.) If a mutant, constitutively active Akt/PKB is expressed, however, much of wild-type $p27^{Kip1}$ is now seen in the cytoplasm (*third panel*). But if the $p27^{Kip1}$ mutant that cannot be

phosphorylated by Akt/PKB is expressed, it resists the actions of constitutively activated Akt/PKB and remains in the nucleus (*fourth panel*), where it can continue to influence cell cycle advance. (B, from B. Zhou et al., *Nat. Cell Biol.* 3:245–252, 2001. C, from G. Viglietto et al., *Nat. Med.* 8:1136–1144, 2002. Both with permission from Nature.)

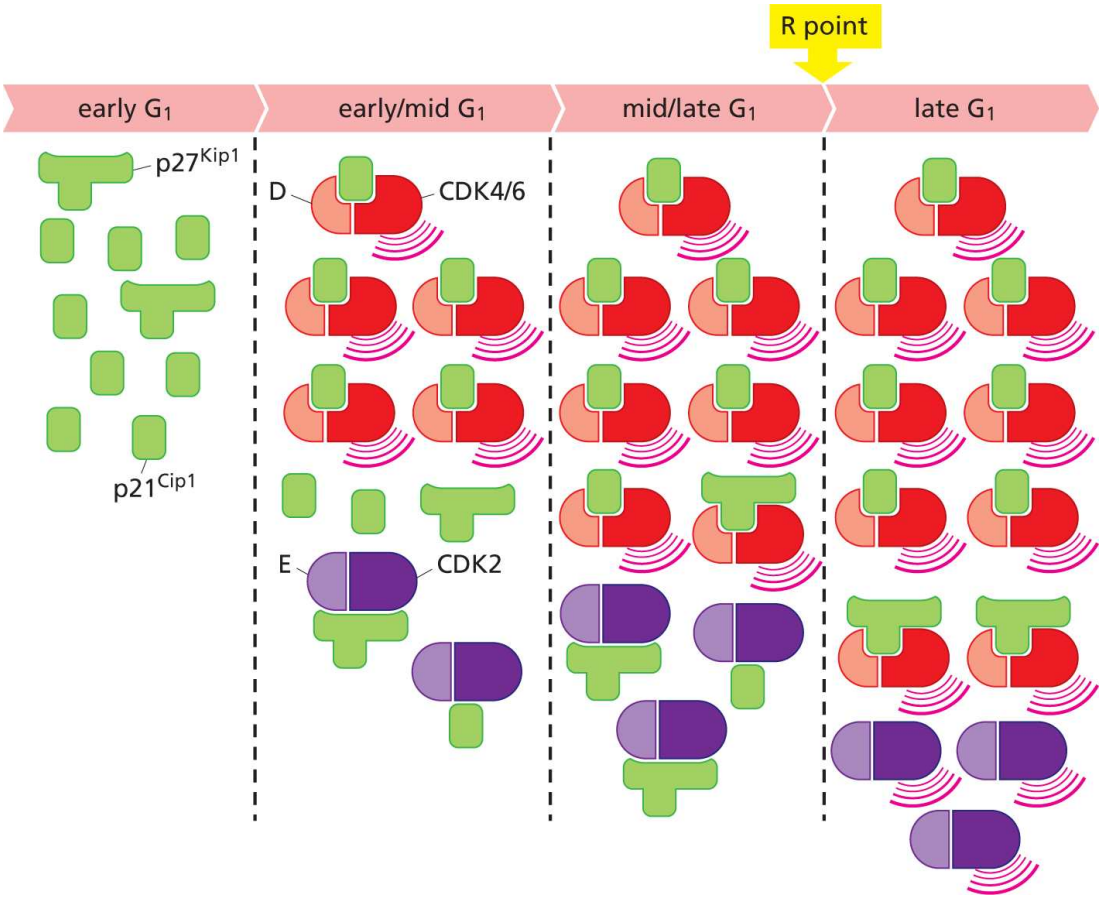
These effects on intracellular localization appear to have clinical consequences. For example, in low-grade (that is, less advanced) human mammary carcinomas, levels of activated Akt/PKB are low and $p27^{Kip1}$ is able to carry out its anti-proliferative functions in the cell nucleus. In high-grade tumors, however, activated Akt/PKB is abundant and much of $p27^{Kip1}$ is now found in the cell cytoplasm, where it does not have access to the cell cycle machinery. This intracellular localization is correlated with, and likely causally linked to, the progression of these cancers to fatal endpoints (see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.6**).

One aspect of the behavior of $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ seems quite paradoxical. Although they inhibit the actions of cyclin E–CDK2 and cyclin A–CDK2, they actually *stimulate* the formation of active cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes (**Figure 8.14A**). Moreover, once a ternary (three-part) complex has formed between D–CDK4/6 and either of these CDK inhibitors, this cyclin–CDK complex can still phosphorylate its normal substrates. So the term "CDK inhibitor" is in fact a misnomer: the two proteins ($p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$) act on most cyclin–CDK complexes in an inhibitory manner and on the cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes in a stimulatory fashion.



Two examples of stimulation, namely p21 Cip1 and p27 Kip1 each bringing together D-kinase and C D K 4 or 6 to form a complex. Part A also gives two

examples of inhibition, namely p21 Cip1 and p27 Kip1 each binding to E-C D K 2.
(A)



A sequences of events within the G 1 phase of the cell cycle. In early G 1, p21 Cip1 and p27 Kip1 are present and not bound to anything. In early to mid G 1, p21 Cip ones have started to form D-C D K 4 slash 6 complexes and p27 Kip ones have started to attach to E-C D K twos. In mid to late G 1, these processes are complete. The D-C D K 4 slash sixes are signaling, while the E-C D K twos are silent. After the R-point, in late G 1, the p27 Kip ones on the E-C D K twos have disappeared and the E-C D K twos are also signaling.

(B)

Figure 8.14 Interactions of CDK inhibitors with cyclin–CDK complexes (A) The various CDK inhibitors affect cyclin–CDK complexes in different ways. The CDK inhibitors of the $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ family, while inhibiting the cyclin–CDK complexes active in late G_1 and S phases (involving CDK2); only E–CDK2 is shown here, *right*), actually stimulate the formation of the D–CDK4/6

complexes that are active in the early and mid-G_1 phase and nevertheless permit these complexes to be catalytically active (*left*; see also Figure 8.11). (B) Cells in early G_1 often have substantial concentrations of $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules (*green; left*). As cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes (*pink/red*) accumulate throughout early to mid-G_1 (being induced by extracellular mitogens), they bind and thereby sequester an ever-increasing proportion of the $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules, both those molecules that are present in soluble pools (unbound to any cyclin–CDK complexes) as well as those that are associated with the small number of cyclin E–CDK2 complexes that are present in G_1 (*light, dark purple*). The binding by D–CDK4/6 complexes of these two CDK inhibitors does not negatively affect their catalytic activity (see panel A). However, as this process continues, the D–CDK4/6 complexes succeed in abstracting most of the $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules away from E–CDK2 complexes (*purple*) in late G_1 (*right*). This finally liberates the E–CDK2 complexes from control by $p27^{Kip1}$ (*bottom right*), permitting these complexes to hyperphosphorylate pRb, thereby triggering the R-point transition. At the same time, the rapid increase in active E–CDK2 complexes drives the phosphorylation and subsequent degradation of $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules (see Figure 8.20), ensuring that cells advance irreversibly through the R point and into S phase.

Although $p27^{Kip1}$ functions similarly to $p21^{Cip1}$ in many ways, it has its own, highly interesting behavior. When cells are in the G_0 quiescent state, $p27^{Kip1}$ is present in high concentrations, and therefore binds to and suppresses the activity of the few cyclin E–CDK2 complexes that happen to be present in the cell. When cells are exposed to growth factors, cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes accumulate, because these mitogens cause an increase in the levels of the D-type cyclins. Each time a new cyclin D–CDK4/6 complex forms, it captures and binds another molecule of free $p27^{Kip1}$; consequently, the pool of free $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules in the cell dwindles as they become progressively sequestered by cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes. Once a small portion of cyclin E–CDK2:$p27^{Kip1}$ complexes are liberated from the inhibitory effects of $p27^{Kip1}$, these complexes are free to begin triggering passage of the cell through the R point (Figure 8.14B). This means that the *timing* of the R point during G_1 is dictated by the rates at which cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes accumulate in the cell during G_1; stated differently, by encouraging the formation of these complexes, mitogens govern the length of time during G_1 required for a cell to activate its R point transition.

In the context of cancer development, the overexpression of D-type cyclins, which occurs in a variety of tumors, leads to premature sequestration of $p27^{Kip1}$ and attendant R-point activation, whereas the inactivation of CDK4/6 by pharmacological inhibitors,

some of which are employed clinically (see Chapter 17), prevents $p27^{Kip1}$ sequestration and thereby obstructs activation of the R-point transition. In addition to these dynamic changes in CKIs, they also act in a static fashion to impose post-mitotic states on differentiated normal cells (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.7**). In fact, yet another level of control of cyclin–CDK complexes is imposed by covalent modifications of the CDK molecules themselves (**Sidebar 8.3**).

Sidebar 8.3 Phosphorylation of CDK molecules also controls their activity

An additional level of control placed on the cell cycle clock machinery can be traced to the covalent modifications of the CDK molecules themselves. More specifically, CDKs must be phosphorylated at specific amino acid residues in order to be active. At the same time, inhibitory phosphorylations of other amino acid residues must be removed. The stimulatory phosphorylations are imparted by a serine/threonine kinase termed CAK (for CDK-activating kinase). CAK itself operates as a component of a cyclin–CDK complex, which phosphorylates the activation loops (often called T-loops) of CDKs (see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.2**), causing them to swing out of the way of the catalytic clefts of these serine/threonine kinases which they would otherwise obstruct.

Equally important are the effects of *inhibitory* phosphorylations affecting CDK1 and CDK2, which are removed by a class of phosphatases called CDC25A, -B, and -C. Although the effects of these enzymes in G_1, S, and G_2 are poorly understood, it is clear that they play critical roles in triggering the G_2/M transition. Thus, cyclin B, which has lingered during G_2 in the cytoplasm, moves into the nucleus just before the G_2/M transition; phosphorylation of a threonine residue and a tyrosine residue that are located near the ATP-binding site of CDK1 and inhibit kinase activity are then removed by CDC25B and CDC25C phosphatases, enabling the rapid activation of B–CDK1 complexes that proceed to trigger entrance into M phase. The activities of CDC25A are focused on the G_1 and S phases of the cell cycle. CDC25A and CDC25B are overexpressed in some cancers, and there is evidence from mouse models of cancer development that their overexpression can lead to acceleration of tumor development.

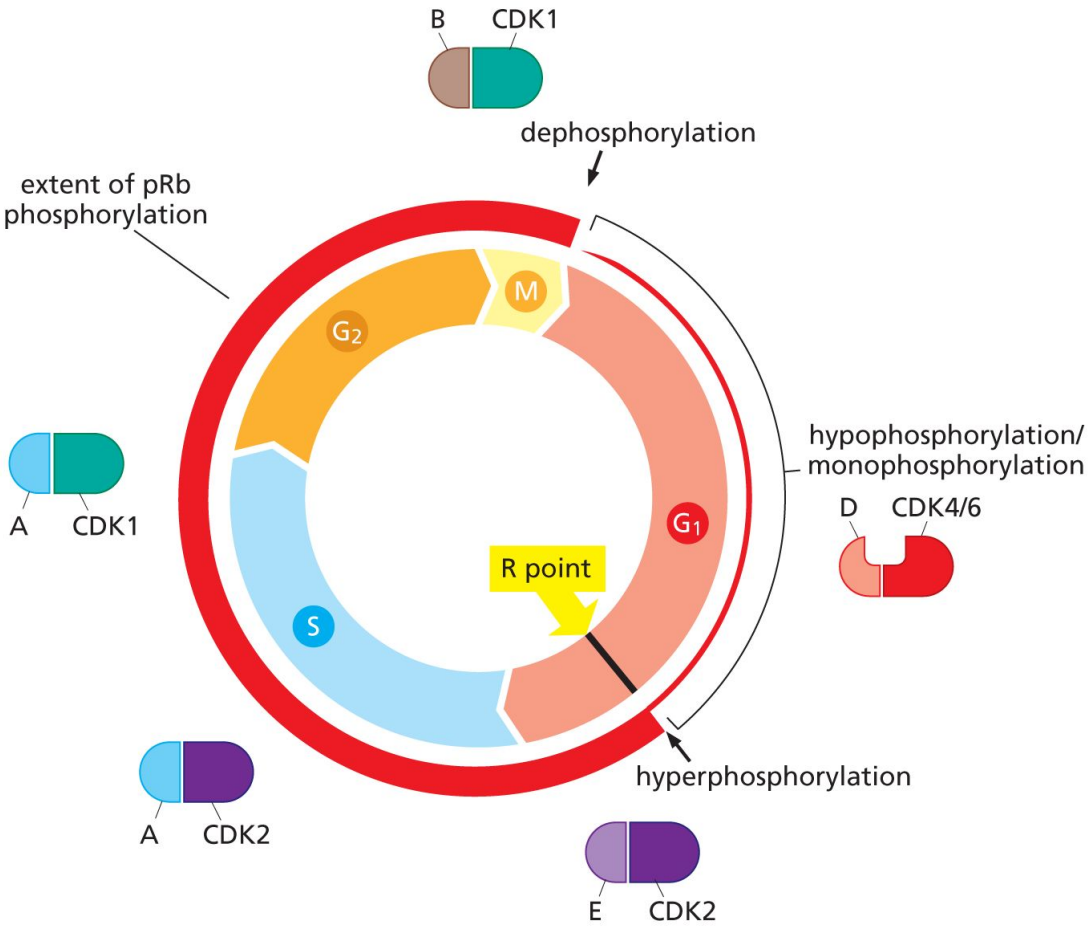
OceanofPDF.com

8.5 Viral oncoproteins reveal how pRb blocks advance through the cell cycle

We have viewed the cell cycle from several angles here, including its clearly delineated G_1, S, G_2, and M phases and the cyclins and CDKs that orchestrate advances through these phases. In addition, we have traced these advances back to the extracellular signals that persuade the cell to enter into the active cell cycle and to progress through the restriction (R) point gate. These descriptions, however, fail to reveal precisely how the R-point transition is executed at the molecular level.

The solution to this puzzle was provided by the isolation of the *Rb* tumor suppressor gene, defective versions of which are involved in the pathogenesis of retinoblastomas, sarcomas, and small-cell lung carcinomas as well as other tumors (see Table 7.1). Soon after the *Rb* gene was isolated in 1986, it became apparent that it encodes a nuclear phosphoprotein of a mass of about 105 kD. This protein, called variously pRb or RB, was found to be absent, or present in a defective form, in the cells of many of the above-named tumor types.

Initial experiments with pRb revealed that it undergoes phosphorylation in concert with the advance of cells through their cell cycle. More specifically, pRb is essentially unphosphorylated immediately after cells exit mitosis or when they are in G_0; becomes weakly phosphorylated (hypophosphorylated) on serine and threonine residues after entrance into G_1; and becomes extensively phosphorylated (hyperphosphorylated) on a much larger number (~14 in all) of serine and threonine residues in concert with advance of cells through the R point (**Figure 8.15**). Once cells have passed through the R point, pRb usually remains hyperphosphorylated throughout the remainder of the cell cycle. After cells exit mitosis, the phosphate groups on pRb are stripped off by the enzyme termed protein phosphatase type 1 (PP1). This removal of phosphate groups, in turn, sets the stage for the next cell cycle and thus for a new cycle of pRb phosphorylation.

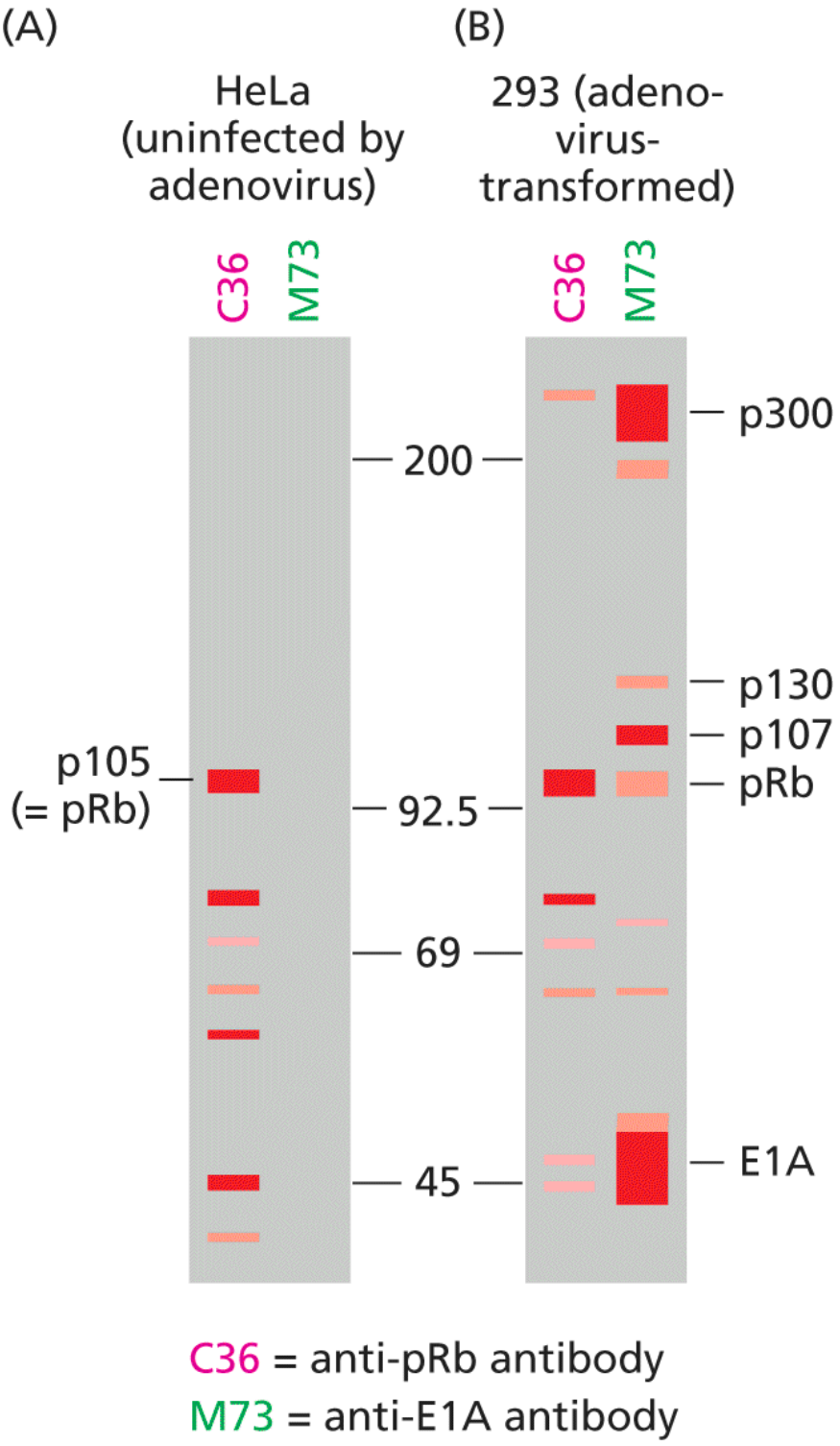


A diagram shows cell cycle–dependent phosphorylation of p R b. In the G 1 phase up to the R point, monophosphorylation is performed by D-C D K 4 or 6. After the R point, hyperphosphorylation is accomplished by E-C D K 2 and then, during the S, G2 and M phases, by A-C D K 2, A-C D K 1, and B-C D K 1. Dephosphorylation is abrupt, at the end of the M phase.

Figure 8.15 Cell cycle–dependent phosphorylation of pRb The phosphorylation state of pRb (*red circle*) is closely coordinated with cell cycle advance. As cells pass through the M/G_1 transition, virtually all of the existing phosphate groups are stripped off pRb by phosphatase PP1, leaving it in an *unphosphorylated* configuration. As cells progress through G_1, a single phosphate group is attached as any one of ~14 distinct phosphorylation sites (by cyclin D-CDK4/6 complexes), yielding *hypophosphorylated* (more precisely *monophosphorylated*) pRb. Later, when cells pass through the restriction (R) point (*yellow arrow*), cyclin E–CDK2 complexes phosphorylate pRb on at least 12 more sites in this group of 14, placing it in a *hyperphosphorylated* state. Throughout the remainder of the cell cycle, the extent of pRb phosphorylation remains constant or increases slightly until cells enter into M phase.

The fact that pRb hyperphosphorylation occurs in concert with passage through the R point provided the first hint that this protein is the molecular governor of the R-point transition. An additional, critical clue came from discoveries in 1988 of physical interactions between DNA tumor virus–encoded oncoproteins and pRb. Recall that DNA tumor viruses are able to transform cells and do so through the use of virus-encoded oncoproteins. Unlike the oncoproteins of RNA tumor viruses such as RSV, the DNA tumor viruses employ oncoproteins that have little if any resemblance to proteins that exist naturally within uninfected cells (see Sections 3.4 and 3.6).

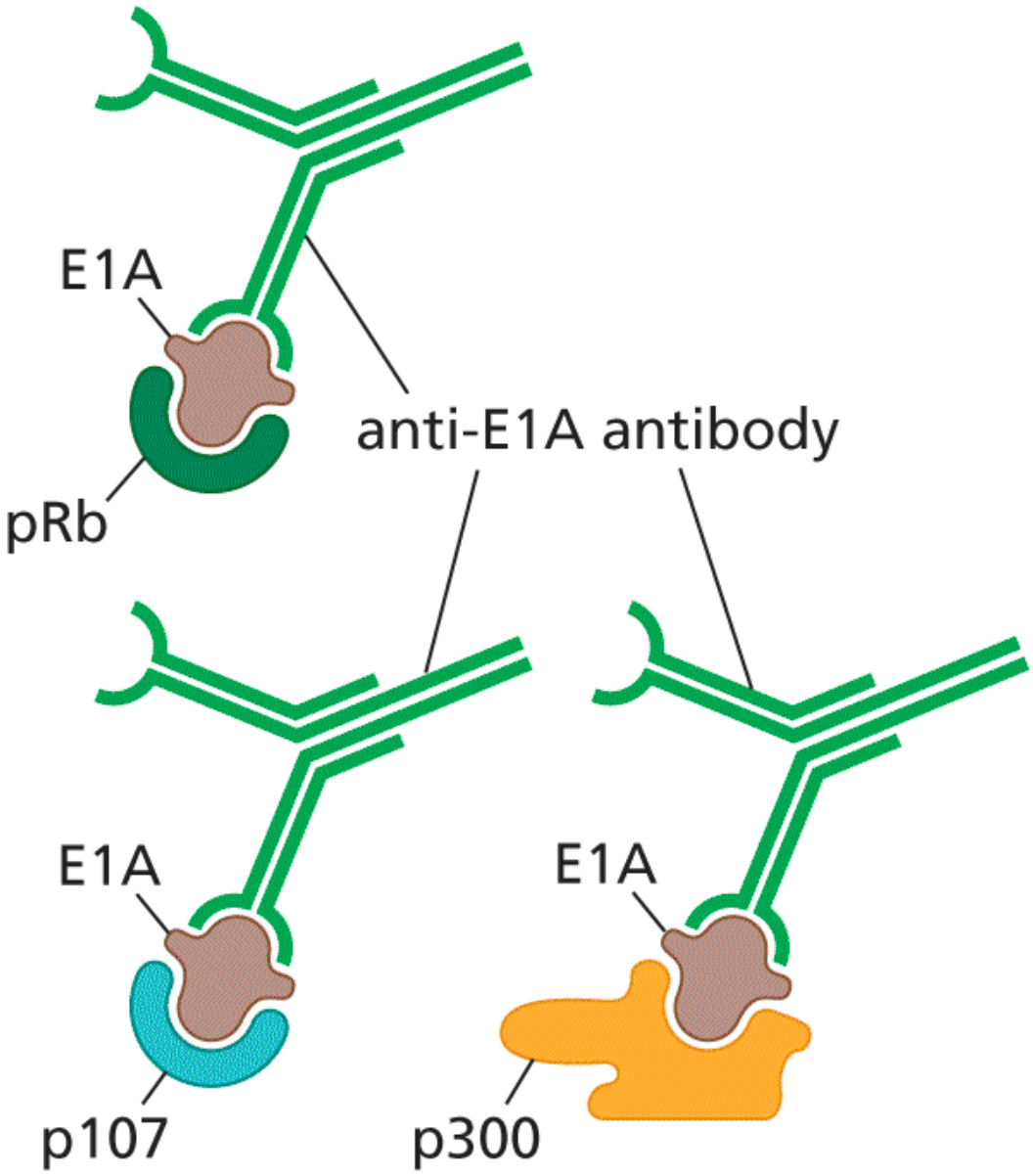
The 1988 work revealed one important mechanism whereby a DNA tumor virus–encoded oncoprotein can disrupt the cellular growth-regulating circuitry: biochemical characterization of the oncoprotein made by the E1A oncogene of human adenovirus type 5 showed that in adenovirus-transformed cells, this oncoprotein is tightly bound to a number of cellular proteins, among them pRb (**Figure 8.16**; **Sidebar 8.4**). Soon thereafter, the SV40 virus–encoded large T oncoprotein and the E7 oncoprotein of certain strains of human papillomavirus (HPV) implicated in causing human cervical carcinoma were also found capable of forming physical complexes with pRb in virus-transformed cells.



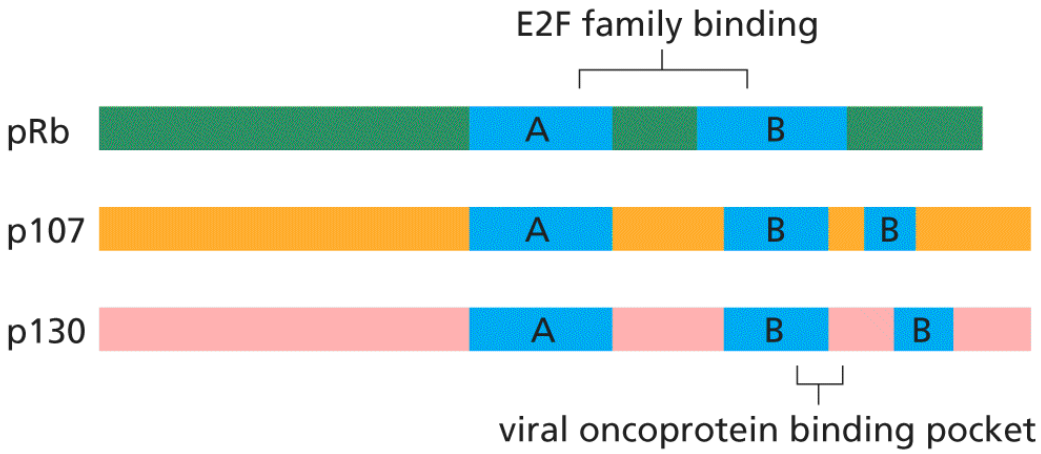
A schematic of a gel image for HeLa cells, uninfected by adenovirus. In the C36 channel, for the anti-p R b antibody, there is a line at 105 k D corresponding to p R b. There are other lines further down. There are no lines in the M73 channel, for the anti-E1A antibody.

A schematic of a gel image for 293 cells, which are adenovirus-transformed. In both the C36 channel and the M37 channel there are lines corresponding to p R b and other lines above and below. In the M37 channel, there are lines above p R b for p107, p130 and, high up, above 200 k D, a thick line for p300 There is also a thick line for E1A at about 45 k D.
(D)

(C)



Three anti-E1A antibodies with E1A attached at one of the antigen binding sites. p R b, p107 and p300 can each attach to E1A, so that E1A forms a bridge enabling the host-cell proteins to attach to the antibody.



The structures of p R b, p107 and p300. p R b has an A domain and a B domain. p107 and p300 each have an A domain and two smaller B domains. The A and B domains are for E2F family binding. A viral oncoprotein binding pocket is also indicated.

Figure 8.16 Co-precipitation of cellular proteins with adenovirus E1A (A) Incubation of the C36 anti-pRb monoclonal antibody with a lysate of HeLa cells revealed that pRb migrated with the mobility of a protein of ~105 kD, with more rapidly migrating cleavage fragments evident below it (*left channel*). Use of the M73 antibody reactive with the adenovirus E1A oncoprotein revealed no reactive proteins in these cells, which lack adenovirus genomes. This also indicated that this antibody did not have undesired cross-reactions with cellular proteins. (B) Incubation of the anti-pRb antibody with lysates of adenovirus-transformed 293 cells revealed once again the presence of pRb and some lower–molecular-weight fragments. However, when the M73 anti-E1A antibody was used, it precipitated not only the adenovirus E1A protein but also a series of host-cell proteins, including pRb, p107, p130, and p300. (C) Because the anti-E1A antibody had no reactivity with host-cell proteins (see panel A), E1A must have formed a bridge between the antibody molecules and a number of host-cell proteins with which it was physically complexed in virus-transformed cells. (D) pRb is one of three structurally related proteins that together are often called “pocket proteins.” All three are bound by viral oncoproteins, such as adenovirus E1A (see panel B), SV40 large T, and human papillomavirus E7. All three pocket proteins are phosphorylated by cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes, and each binds its own subset of E2F transcription factors, as discussed later. The “pocket” that interacts with both viral oncoproteins and cellular E2F transcription factors is composed of A and B domains (*blue*). (A, B, Adapted from P. Whyte et al., *Nature* 334:124–129, 1988.)

Sidebar 8.4 Adenovirus deploys a single viral oncoprotein to bind and sequester multiple cellular proteins

As seen in Figure 8.16, when a lysate of adenovirus-transformed cells is incubated with an anti-E1A monoclonal antibody, the resulting immunoprecipitate contains the E1A oncoprotein plus a number of other proteins. These other proteins are not bound directly by the antibody; instead, in each case, the E1A oncoprotein acts as a bridge to link the antibody molecule to a second protein, indicating that within adenovirus-transformed cells the E1A protein had previously formed physical complexes with each of these other cellular proteins. (Before the immunoprecipitates were analyzed by gel electrophoresis and autoradiography, these multiprotein complexes were treated with a strong detergent to dissociate the component proteins from one another.)

The first of these associated proteins to be identified was pRb, with two other cellular proteins, termed p107 and p130, being characterized soon thereafter; these two are paralogous cousins of pRb. These observations indicated that during the course of its evolution, adenovirus has configured the E1A protein in a way that enables it to bind these three cellular proteins, ostensibly in order to sequester or inactivate them. pRb and its two cousins are often called generically pocket proteins (Figure 8.16D), because each carries a cavity into which viral oncoproteins such as E1A can insert. Later, a higher–molecular-weight cellular partner protein, termed p300, was also characterized, and a number of other cellular targets remain to be characterized.

The rationale for why adenovirus deploys its oncoprotein to sequester these four proteins must be understood in terms of the viral replication cycle. A virus needs to reconfigure the regulatory circuitry of an infected cell in order to create an intracellular environment that supports various steps of viral replication. Most important is its requirement for viral DNA replication, which can apparently occur efficiently only if the virus is able to liberate an infected cell from its quiescent pre-restriction point state by functionally inactivating the cellular proteins that are holding it in that state; this liberation permits the infected cell, in turn, to advance into S phase, where the cellular DNA replication machinery is now active and can be exploited by the virus.

These three different DNA tumor virus oncoproteins (E1A, large T antigen, and E7) are structurally unrelated to one another, yet all of them target a common cellular protein—pRb. Moreover, the molecular biology of adenovirus replication cycles otherwise shows no resemblance to those of SV40 and HPV. This suggests that convergent evolution led to the development of viral oncoproteins capable of perturbing cellular pRb. Stated differently, because evolution selects for viruses that can multiply more effectively, these discoveries suggested that sequestration or functional inactivation of pRb by the three viral oncoproteins is necessary for optimal viral replication in infected cells. Finally, to state the obvious, DNA tumor viruses use

an entirely different genetic strategy to transform cells than do tumorigenic retroviruses: rather than acquiring and exploiting host-cell proto-oncogenes, the DNA tumor viruses have evolved proteins that interfere with the actions of host-cell tumor suppressor genes, that is, the proteins encoded by these genes. As it turned out, these viral oncoproteins could also bind and ostensibly inactivate two paralogs of pRB—p107 and p130—that exert cell cycle controls complementary to that of pRB (see Figure 8.16B).

The discoveries of these viral–host protein complexes had profound effects on our understanding of how DNA tumor viruses succeed in transforming the cells that they infect. The speculation went like this: Within a normal cell, the *Rb* gene was known to function as a tumor suppressor gene. Hence, the *Rb* gene, acting through its protein product, pRb, must inhibit cell proliferation in some fashion. DNA tumor viruses can sabotage the activities of pRb by dispatching viral oncoproteins that seek out and bind pRb, sequestering and apparently inactivating it. This sequestration removes pRb from the regulatory circuitry of the cell, yielding the same outcome as when a cell loses the two copies of its chromosomal Rb gene through mutations (see Figure 7.5). This suggested, furthermore, that the DNA tumor viruses succeed in transforming cells through their ability to disable this key cellular growth-inhibitory protein, thereby liberating the virus-infected cell from the growth suppression that pRb normally imposes. (In fact, the HPV E7 protein goes beyond simple sequestration of pRb, because it also tags pRb for ubiquitylation and thus proteolytic degradation; see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**.)

Another clue to pRb function was provided by the discovery that the oncoproteins of the DNA tumor viruses bind preferentially to the hypophosphorylated forms of pRb, that is, the forms of pRb that are present in the cell through most of the G_1 phase (see Figure 8.15). Conversely, the hyperphosphorylated pRb forms that are present in late G_1 and in the subsequent phases of the cell cycle are ignored by the viral oncoproteins. This observation led to yet another speculation: tumor virus oncoproteins focus their attention on sequestering—and thereby inactivating—the only forms of pRb in the cell that are worthy of their attention, these being the growth-inhibitory forms of pRb found in early and mid-G_1. Conversely, the viral oncoproteins ignore those forms of pRb that are already inactivated by another mechanism, phosphorylation.

Such logic indicated that the hypophosphorylated forms of pRb present in early and mid-G_1 cells are actively growth-inhibitory, whereas the hyperphosphorylated forms found after the R point have lost their growth-inhibitory powers, having been functionally inactivated by this phosphorylation. This meant that the R-point transition, which is defined by a physiological criterion (acquisition of growth factor independence), is accompanied by a biochemical alteration of pRb that converts it

from a growth-inhibitory protein to one that is functionally inert. These speculations were soon validated by various types of experiments.

In addition, further research has revealed that the control of pRb phosphorylation is more reversible than is indicated by the diagram in Figure 8.15. Thus, if a cell should experience serious physiological stresses while in S phase or G_2, pRb phosphorylation can be reversed by phosphatases such as PP1, thereby returning pRb to its actively growth-inhibitory state. These stresses include, for example, hypoxia, DNA damage, and disruption of the mitotic spindle. Such reactivation of pRb-mediated growth inhibition is presumably only transient and is reversed once the physiological stresses or damage have been resolved.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

hypophosphorylated
: Referring to relatively low level of phosphorylation (of a protein).

hyperphosphorylated
: Referring to the elevated phosphorylation state (e.g., of a protein).

pocket protein
: Term referring to pRb and two related proteins, p107 and p130.

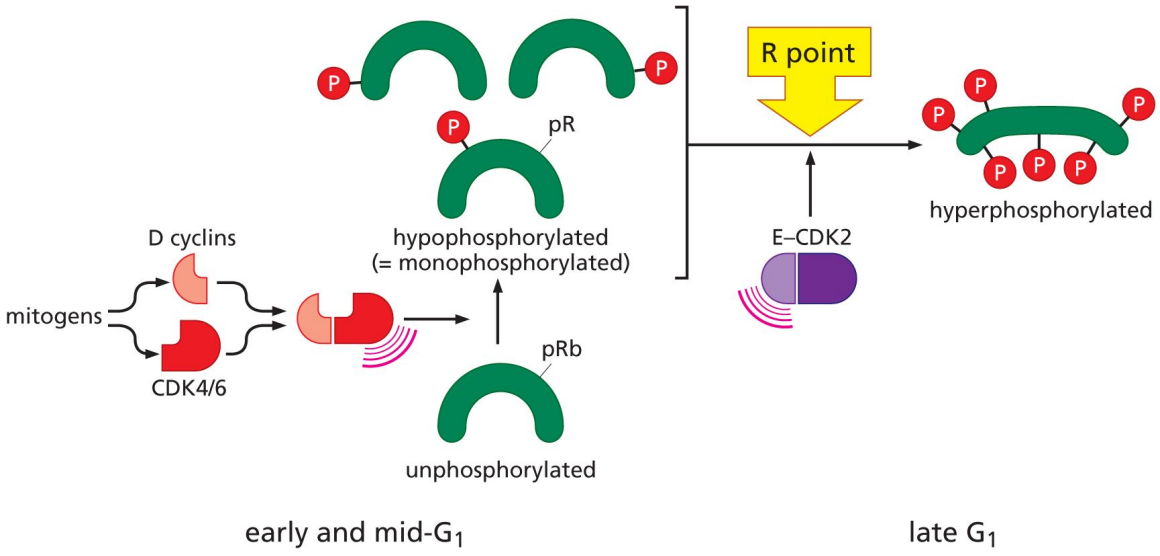
convergent evolution
: The independent development by multiple species of a common trait during the course of evolution.

OceanofPDF.com

8.6 pRb is deployed by the cell cycle clock to serve as a guardian of the restriction-point gate

As described above, various lines of evidence converge on the conclusion that pRb, which inhibits growth through early to mid-G_1 phase, becomes inactivated by extensive phosphorylation when the cell passes through the R-point gate and thereafter is largely or completely inert as a growth suppressor. In effect, pRb serves as a guardian at this gate, holding it shut unless and until it becomes hyperphosphorylated, in which case pRb loses its growth-inhibitory powers, opens the gate, and permits the cell to enter into late G_1 and advance thereafter into the remaining phases of the cell cycle.

Because pRb is the ultimate arbiter of growth versus nongrowth, its phosphorylation must be carefully controlled. Not unexpectedly, its phosphorylation is governed by components of the cell cycle clock. In early and mid-G_1, D-type cyclins together with their CDK4/6 kinase partners are responsible for initiating pRb phosphorylation, leading to its hypophosphorylation. In fact, the “hypophosphorylated pRb” cited above is actually a collection of various *mono*phosphorylated pRb species, each of which carries a single phosphate on one or another of its serine or threonine residues. (Why and how cyclin D—CDK4/6 complexes attach only a single phosphate to each pRb molecule but not more than one remains a mystery.) Because the levels of D-type cyclins appear to be controlled largely by extracellular signals, notably mitogenic growth factors, we can now plot out a direct line of signaling: growth factors induce the expression of D-type cyclins; D-type cyclins, collaborating with their CDK4/6 partners, initiate pRb phosphorylation (**Figure 8.17**).



A schematic shows the control of the restriction point transition by mitogens. In the early and mid-G1 phases of the cell cycle, mitogens bring D cyclin and CDK4 or 6 together to form activated complexes that cause unphosphorylated p R b to become hypophosphorylated–that is, monophosphorylated. At the R-point, E–C D K 2 then completes the phosphorylation, leading to a hyperphosphorylated p R b.

Figure 8.17 Control of the restriction-point transition by mitogens The levels of D-type cyclins are controlled largely by extracellular signals (mitogens, *left*). The D-type cyclins, acting with their CDK4 and CDK6 partners, are able to drive monophosphorylation at multiple alternative serine and threonine residues of pRb. Eventually, accumulation of D-CDK4/6 complexes leads to the abstraction of $p27^{Kip1}$ away from its association with E-CDK2 complexes (see Figure 8.14B) and the resulting activation of E-CDK2 complexes. Cyclin E–CDK2 complexes then assume the work of decommissioning pRb by placing it in a hyperphosphorylated state, causing a >10-fold increase in its phosphorylation that results in the complete functional inactivation of pRb.

During a normal cell cycle, this initial hypophosphorylation of pRb on single amino acid residues is not sufficient for the subsequent functional inactivation of pRb at the R point, which requires its hyperphosphorylation on multiple residues. In fact, cyclin E levels increase dramatically at the R point. The cyclin E then associates with its CDK2 partner, and this complex drives pRb phosphorylation to completion, leaving pRb in its *hyperphosphorylated*, functionally inactive state

(see Figure 8.17). The phosphorylation and functional inactivation of pRb's cousins, p107 and p130, are also under the control of cyclin D–CDK4/6 and cyclin E–CDK2 complexes. The roles of these pRb cousins in cancer pathogenesis is unclear and, for this reason, they will not be discussed further here.

Once the cell advances through the R point, the continued hyperphosphorylation and functional inactivation of pRb is apparently maintained and further increased by CDK complexes carrying cyclin E, then cyclin A, and finally cyclin B, none of which is responsive to extracellular signals—precisely the properties of the cell cycle clock machinery that, we imagine, operates after the R-point transition and guarantees execution of the rigidly programmed series of transitions in S, G_2, and M phases.

This scheme reveals why pRb is such a critical player in the regulation of cell proliferation. If its services are lost from the cell (through mutation of the chromosomal *Rb* gene copies, methylation of the *Rb* gene promoter, or the actions of DNA tumor virus oncoproteins), then this protein can no longer stand as the guardian of the R-point gate. Moreover, as we will see, in some cancer cells, pRb phosphorylation is deregulated, resulting in inappropriately phosphorylated and thus functionally inactivated pRb. In certain other cancer cells, there is evidence that the dephosphorylation (and attendant activation) of pRb, which normally happens at the M/G_1 transition through the action of the PP1 phosphatase, never occurs, leaving pRb in its hyperphosphorylated, inactivated state throughout the entire growth-and-division cycle of these cells. Without pRb on watch, cells move through G_1 into S phase without being subjected to the usual controls that are designed to ensure that cell cycle advance can proceed only when certain preconditions have been satisfied. Indeed, as we will see, the deregulation of pRb phosphorylation is so widespread that one begins to think that this important signaling pathway is perturbed in virtually all human tumors.

The activities of pRb seem to overlap with those of its cousins, p107 and p130, raising the question why pRb is the only one of these three pocket proteins to play a clear and obvious role in cancer pathogenesis. A definitive answer to this puzzle is still elusive. It may come from the specific times in the cell cycle when these two pRb-related proteins are active. Whereas p130 is specialized to suppress cell proliferation while a cell resides in G_0, p107 appears to be most active in the late G_1 and S phases. Only pRb is well positioned to control the transition at the R point from mitogen-dependent to mitogen-independent growth. (Yet another

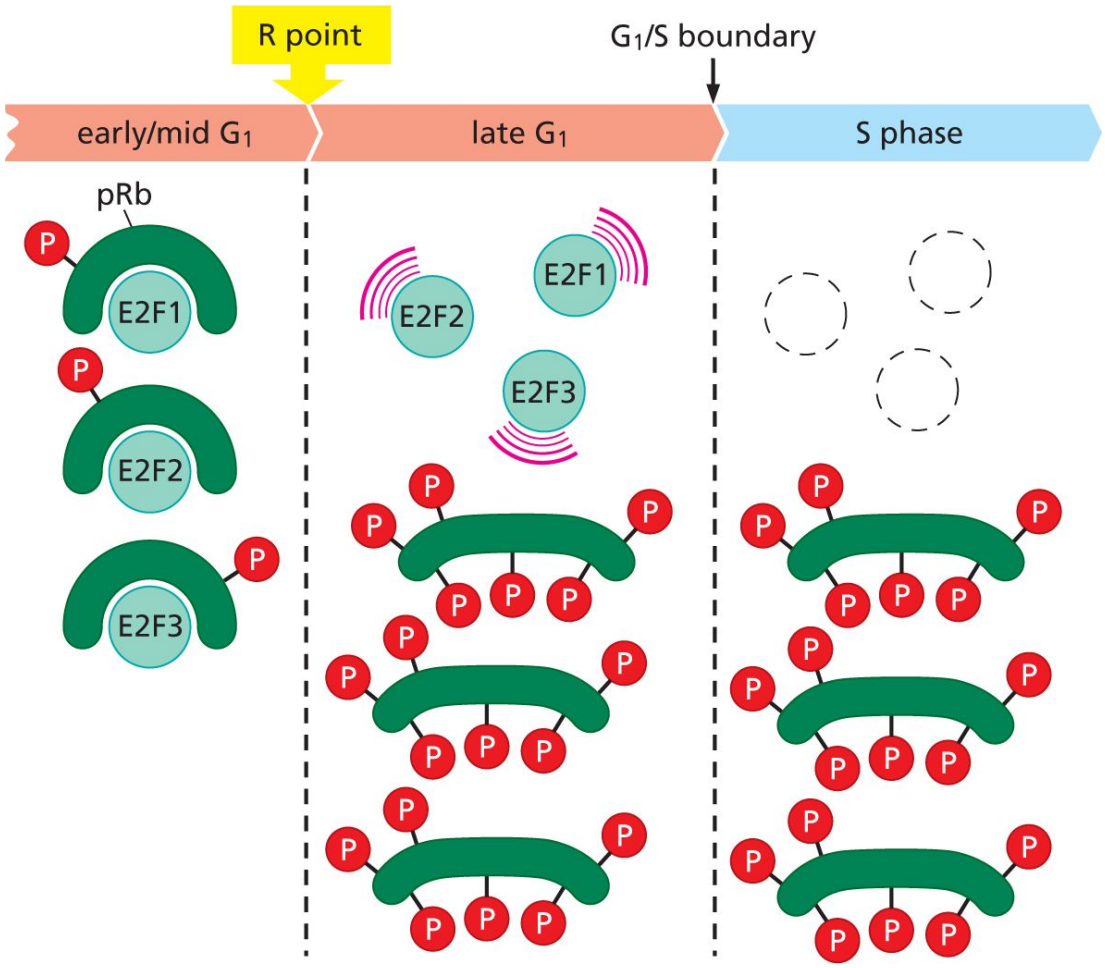
physical complex of important regulatory proteins operates at the late G_2/M transition to enable the complicated molecular events associated with mitosis; we focus in this chapter on late G_1 and the R point, simply because it is here that the decisions of cell proliferation versus quiescence are made that are so critical to cancer pathogenesis.)

OceanofPDF.com

8.7 E2F transcription factors enable pRb to implement growth-versus-quiescence decisions

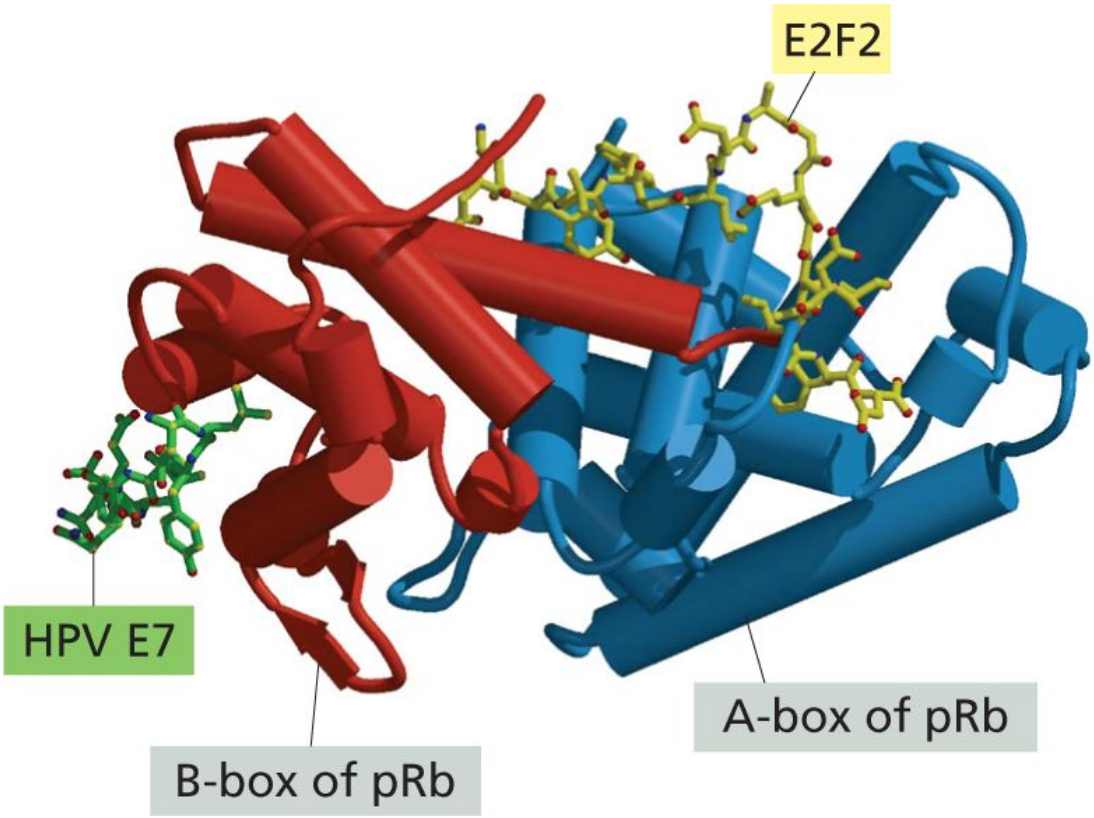
As described above, a number of lines of evidence indicate that hypophosphorylated pRb is active in suppressing G_1 advance and loses this ability when it becomes hyperphosphorylated. Still, this behavior provides no clue as to precisely how pRb succeeds in *imposing* this control. Research conducted in the early 1990s indicated that pRb exercises much of this control through its effects on a group of transcription factors termed E2Fs.

When pRb (and its two cousins, p107 and p130) are in their unphosphorylated or hypophosphorylated state, they bind E2Fs, including E2Fs that are already bound to DNA; however, when hyperphosphorylated (see Figure 8.15), pRb and its cousins dissociate from the E2Fs (**Figure 8.18A**). This suggested a simple model of how pRb is able to control cell cycle advance. In the early and middle parts of G_1, E2Fs are associated with the promoters of a number of genes under their control. At the same time, these transcription factors are bound by pocket proteins (pRb, p107, p130). This pocket protein association prevents the E2Fs from acting as stimulators of transcription. Accordingly, during much of the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, genes that depend on E2Fs for their expression remain repressed. However, when the pocket proteins (most importantly, pRb) undergo hyperphosphorylation at the R point in late G_1, they release their grip on the E2Fs, permitting the E2Fs to stimulate transcription of their clientele of genes. The products of these genes, in turn, usher the cell from late G_1 into S phase. Similarly, when viral oncoproteins are present, they mimic pRb hyperphosphorylation by preventing pRb from binding E2Fs, doing so throughout the cell cycle (Figure 8.18B).



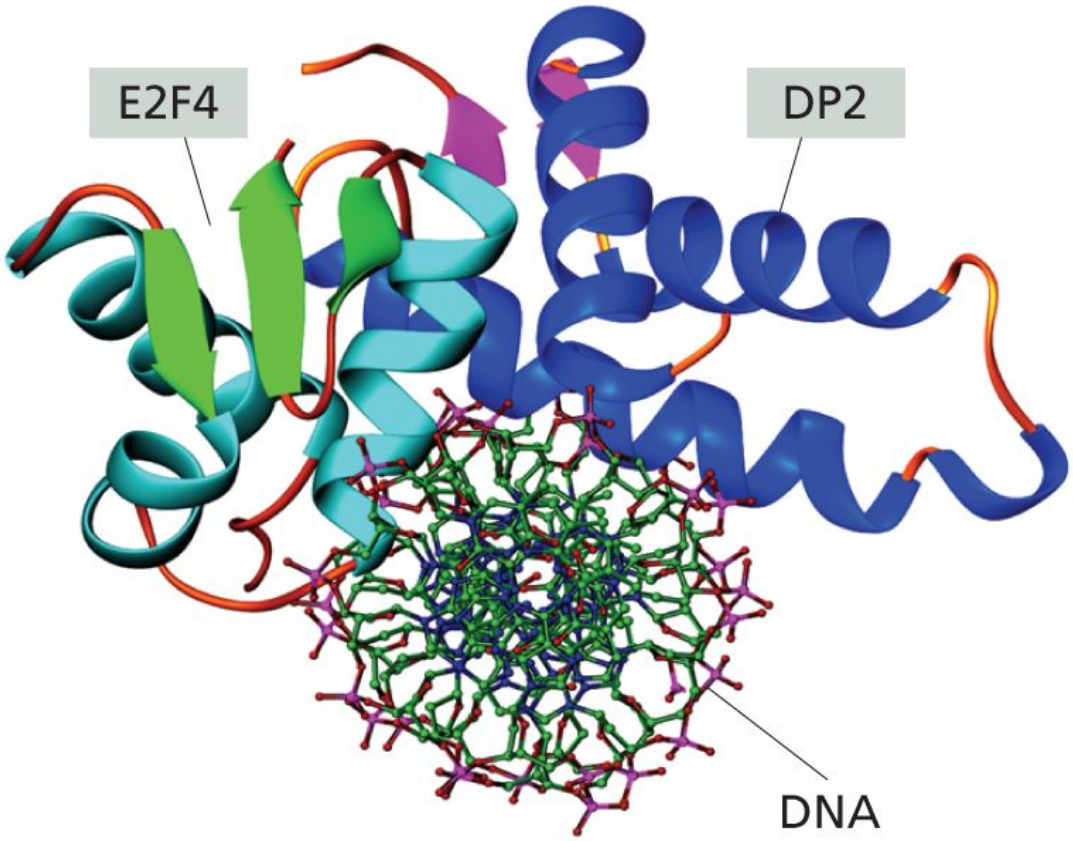
The early-mid G1, late G1, and S phases of the cell cycle. In early-mid G1, before the R point, E 2 effs 1, 2 and 3 each bind with a monophosphorylated p R b. In early-mid G1, before the R point, E 2 effs 1, 2 and 3 each bind with a monophosphorylated p R b. In late G1, the p R bees are hyperphosphorylated and the E 2 effs are free-floating and signaling. In S phase, the E 2 effs are no longer present.

(A)



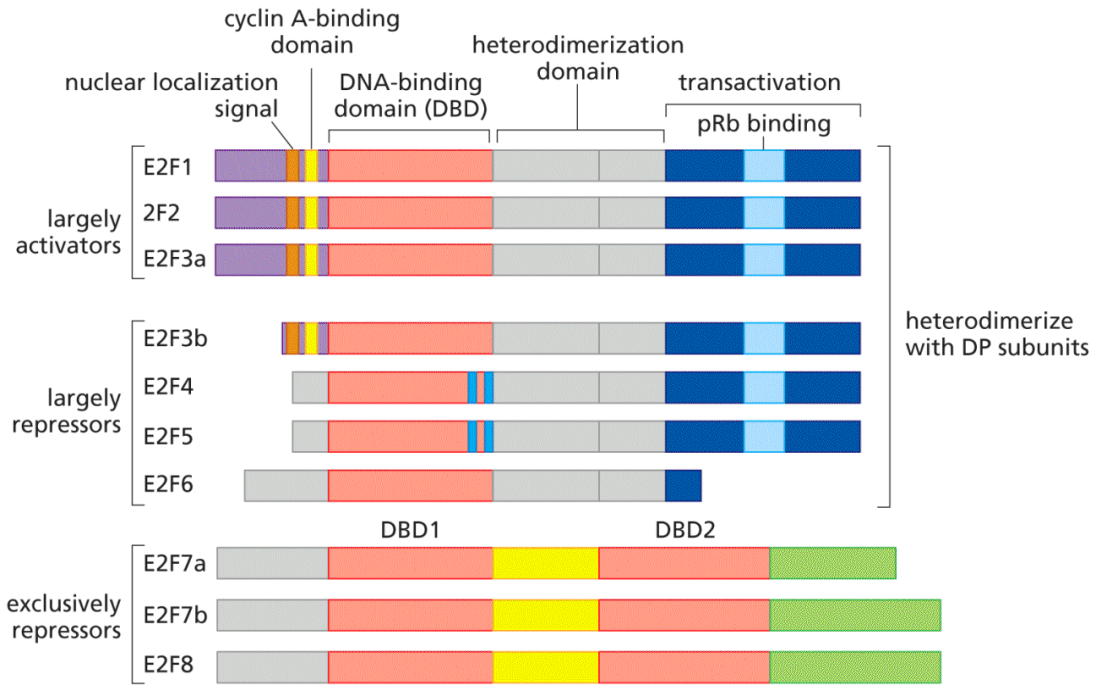
A combination ball and stick and ribbon diagram in which H P V E7 and E2F2 bind to the A- and B-boxes of p R b.

(B)



A combination ball and stick and ribbon diagram in which D N A binds to E2F4 and D P2.

(C)



An overview of the structures of ten E2 effs. E 2 effs 1, 2 and 3a are largely activators. On the left they each have a nuclear localization signal followed by a short cyclin A binding domain. Then comes a longer D N A binding domain, a heterodimerization domain, and a transactivation domain with a p R b binding domain in the middle. E 2 effs 3b, 4, 5 and 6 are largely repressors. Except for E2F3b, they lack the nuclear localization signal and short cyclin A binding domain. E2F sixes transactivation domain is short and lacks a p R b binding domain within it. E2 effs 1 through 6 heterodimerize with D P subunits. E2 effs 7a, 7b and 8 are exclusively repressors. Their structure is different from that of E2 effs 1 through 6, in that their main feature is not 1 but 2 D N A binding domains, D B D1 and D B D2.

(D)

Figure 8.18 E2Fs and their interactions (A) By binding various DNA-bound E2F transcription factors, the three related pocket proteins, pRb, p107, and p130, modulate the expression of E2F-responsive genes in various phases of the cell cycle. When pRb binds to E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 (*left*), it blocks their transcription-activating domains; other proteins that serve to modify chromatin and repress transcription (*not shown*) are attracted to the pRb–E2F complexes. Because they are bound to the promoters of certain genes via the E2Fs, these multiprotein complexes repress the expression of such genes, doing so by attracting chromatin-modifying proteins such as histone methyltransferases and deacetylases. (The behavior of p107 and p130, *not shown*, is similar to that of pRb.) After being

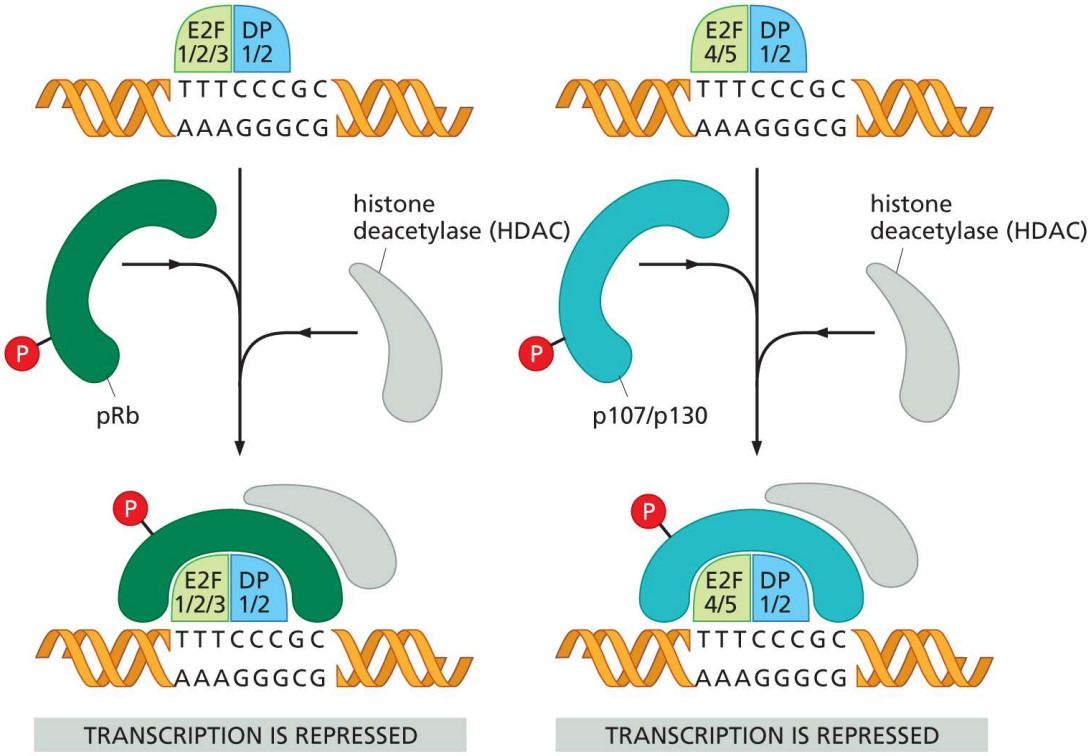
hyperphosphorylated at the R point, the pocket proteins release their grip on the E2Fs, allowing the latter to activate transcription of those genes (late G_1, *middle*). However, because E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 induce expression of E2F7 and E2F8, which function as transcriptional repressors (see panel D), the ability of these three E2Fs to activate signaling is curtailed toward the end of G_1. Moreover, as cells enter into S phase (*right*), E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 are inactivated or degraded. Hence, E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 appear to function as active inducers of transcription only in the narrow window of time in late G_1 phase that begins at the R point (*yellow arrow*) and ends as cells enter S phase. (B) The binding of E2Fs, such as E2F2 (*yellow stick figure*) by pRb (*red and blue*), is prevented by several DNA tumor virus oncoproteins. Here we see in a crystallographic structure how a segment of the human papillomavirus (HPV) E7 oncoprotein (*green stick figure, left*) binds to a shallow groove of pRb; this binding, together with other secondary binding sites, perturbs the pocket cavity formed by the B- and A-boxes of pRb, thereby precluding the binding of the C-terminal, transcription-activating domain of E2F2 (*yellow*) to this pocket. This loss of E2F binding effectively neutralizes the ability of pRb to inhibit cell cycle advance (*cylinders* = α-helices). (C) With the exception of E2F7 and E2F8, each of the E2F transcription factors binds DNA as a heterodimeric complex formed by an E2F subunit together with a DP partner. Shown is the binding of an E2F4–DP2 complex (*ribbon diagram*) to the DNA double helix (*stick figure*), as revealed by X-ray crystallography. (D) Because of the existence of variant forms of several E2Fs, they are actually represented by at least 10 distinct protein species. E2Fs 1, 2, and 3a represent transcription-activating E2Fs, whereas E2F3b, E2F4, E2F5, and E2F6 are largely or exclusively involved in transcriptional repression. E2Fs 7a, 7b, and 8 are atypical E2Fs, in that each has a duplicated DNA-binding domain (DBD) that enables DNA binding in the absence of a DP subunit as partner (see Panel C); these particular E2Fs are involved exclusively in repression. E2F1, 2, and 3 induce their expression, suggesting the operation of a negative-feedback loop designed to shut down E2F1, 2, and 3 signaling. Overall, E2Fs 4 and 5 are involved in repression in early/mid-G_1, whereas E2Fs 7 and 8 are involved in repression in late G_1 at the G_1/S transition. (B, courtesy of Y. Cho, from C. Lee et al., *Genes Dev.* 16:3199–3212, 2002. C, courtesy of R. Latek, from N. Zheng et al., *Genes Dev.* 13:666–674, 1999. Both with permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. D, adapted from H.-Z. Chen et al., *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 9:785–797, 2009. With permission from Nature.)

Although the above scheme is correct in outline, the details are more interesting and complex. The term “E2F” is now known to include a family of proteins composed of eight members—E2F1 through E2F8; the first six of these can bind to either a DP1 or a DP2 subunit to form heterodimeric transcription factors (Figure 8.18C and D); the

two others—E2F7 and E2F8—have two DNA-binding domains (DBDs), allowing each to bind DNA without an associated DP1/2 subunit. (In the discussions that follow, we focus on the behavior of the various E2F subunits, with association to their DP1 or DP2 partner subunits being assumed.) Once assembled, E2F–DP complexes recognize and bind to a sequence motif in the promoters of various genes that seems to be TTTCCCGC or slight variations of this sequence.

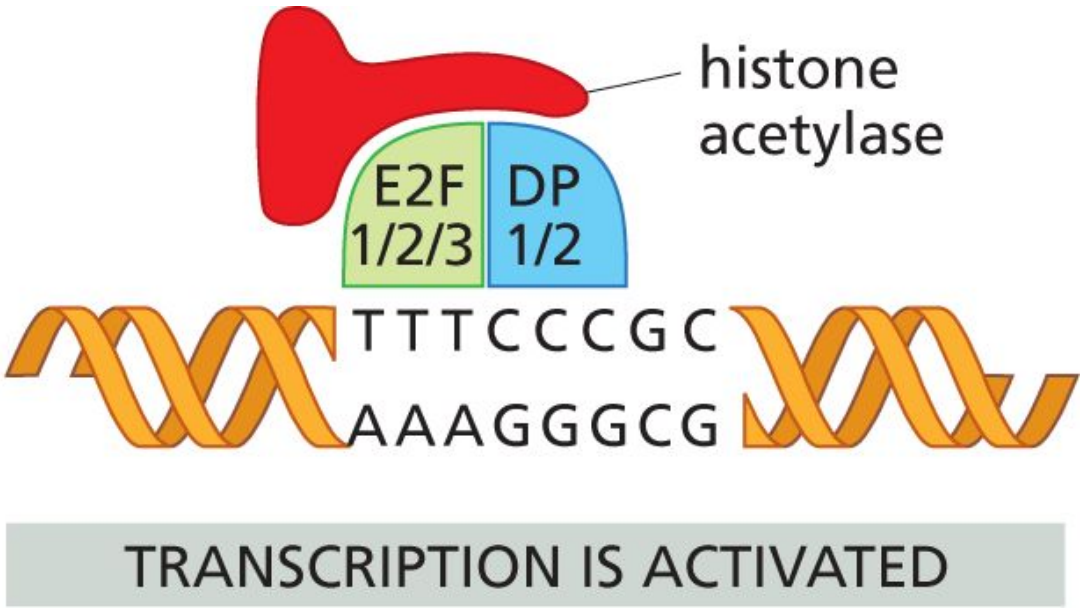
Throughout this book, we have portrayed transcription factors as proteins that bind to the promoters of genes and then proceed to activate transcription. In fact, transcription factors operating like E2Fs can exert two opposing effects on transcriptional control. When bound to the promoters of genes in the absence of any associated pocket proteins (that is, pRb, p107, or p130), E2Fs such as E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 can indeed trigger gene expression by attracting other proteins—such as histone acetylases—that function to remodel the nearby chromatin and recruit RNA polymerase to initiate transcription.

However, when pRb is hypophosphorylated, it physically associates with its E2F partners, which themselves are already sitting on the promoters of various genes and remain so after pRb binds to them. Once bound to these E2Fs, hypophosphorylated pRb molecules block the transactivation domains of the E2Fs that they employ to activate transcription (see Figure 8.18C). At the same time, pRb recruits other proteins that actively repress transcription. One important means of doing so, but hardly the only one, is to recruit a histone deacetylase (HDAC) to this complex (see Section 1.8); by removing acetyl groups from nearby histone molecules, an HDAC remodels the nearby chromatin into a configuration that is incompatible with active transcription (**Figure 8.19A**).



A complex consisting of E2F 1, 2 or 3 and D P 1 or 2 is attached to D N A. Then a pocket-shaped, singly phosphorylated p R b attracts a histone deacetylase (H D A C), and the resulting complex attaches onto the back of the E2F D P complex. When this happens, the transcription is repressed. A second flowchart shows the exact same process, but with E2F 4 or 5 taking the place of E2F 1, 2, or 3, and p107 or 130 taking the place of p R b. Transcription is repressed in this scenario as well.

(A)



Histone acetylase attaches to the back of a complex consisting of E2F 1, 2 or 3 and D P 1 or 2. This causes D N A transcription to be activated.

(B)

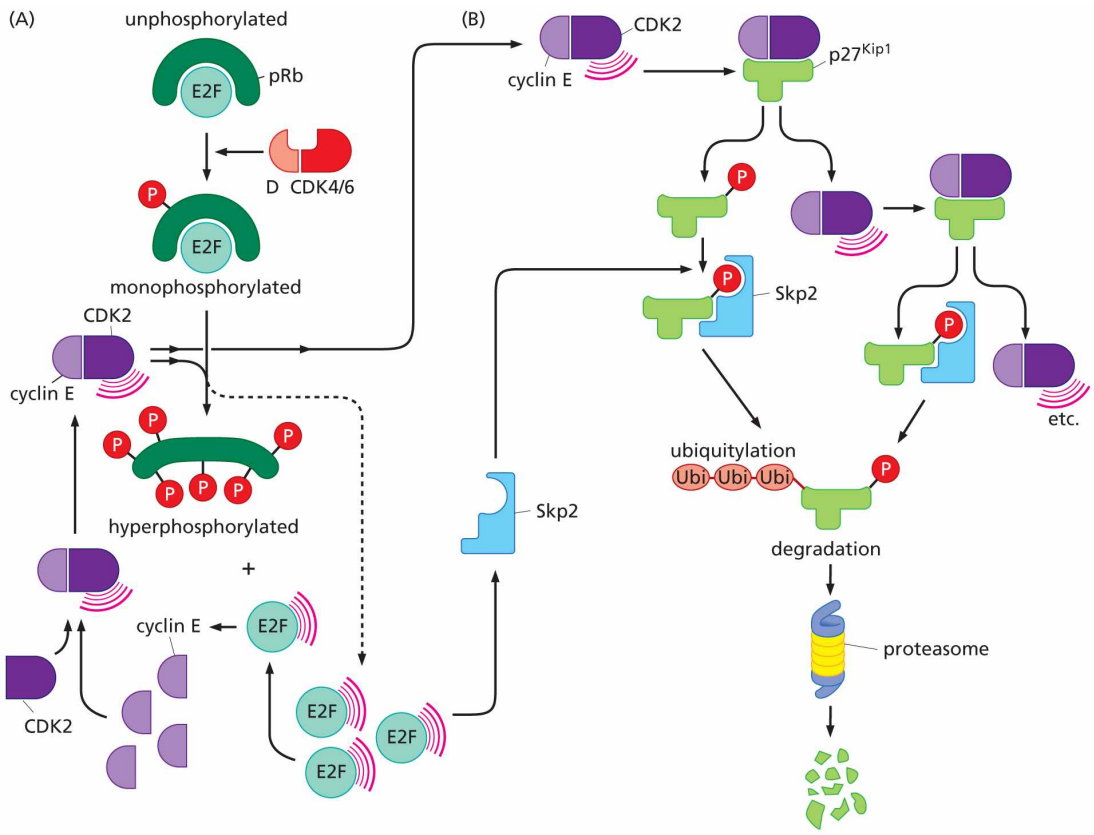
Figure 8.19 Modification of chromatin by pocket proteins (A) Hypophosphorylated pRb (*dark green*) discourages transcription by attracting histone deacetylase (HDAC) enzymes (*gray*) to pRb–E2F complexes that are bound, in turn, to gene promoters (*left*); these enzymes prevent transcription by removing acetyl groups from nearby histones, causing the latter to shift into a configuration that is incompatible with the progression of RNA polymerase through the chromatin. A similar repressive role is exercised by the pRb-related p107 and p130 (*right*), which bind E2F4/5; the latter appear to never be involved in induction of active transcription. (B) When the E2Fs 1/2/3 are not complexed with pRb after the latter undergoes hyperphosphorylation, they attract histone acetylases (*red*), which place chromatin in a configuration that is conducive for transcription, which occurs largely in late G_1.

This means that, in addition to occluding (physically blocking) the transactivation domains of E2Fs, pRb actively functions as a transcriptional repressor. E2Fs 4 and 5 seem to be involved primarily in the repression of genes and act largely through associated p107 and p130 proteins to attract repressors of transcription to promoters and thereby shut down gene expression. E2Fs 6, 7, and 8, which do not associate with pocket proteins, appear to act exclusively as transcriptional repressors.

In quiescent G_0 cells, for example, E2F4 and E2F5 are present in abundance (and are associated largely with p130), whereas E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 are hardly present at all, being expressed largely in proliferating cells. Moreover, cells that have been genetically deprived of E2F4 and E2F5 have lost responsiveness to the growth-inhibitory effects of the $p16^{INK4A}$ CDK inhibitor. This implies that the lion's share of the downstream effects that result from inhibiting the cyclin D–CDK4/6 complexes and thus blocking the hyperphosphorylation of pocket proteins is mediated via the binding of p107 and p130 to these two E2Fs. Ultimately, this binding results in the repression of a constituency of genes that carry TTTCCCGC sequences in their promoters (see Figure 8.19A).

Once hyperphosphorylated, pRb releases its grip on E2F1, 2, and 3 complexes, and these E2Fs can then attract transcription-activating proteins, including histone acetylases, which convert the chromatin into a configuration that encourages transcription (Figure 8.19B). A series of genes that are expressed specifically in late G_1 and are known or assumed to be important for S-phase entry has been found to contain binding sites in their promoters for E2Fs. Included among these are some genes encoding proteins involved in synthesizing DNA precursor nucleotides (such as dihydrofolate synthetase and thymidine kinase), as well other genes involved directly in DNA replication, such as that encoding DNA polymerase α. Yet other target genes are involved in activating certain aspects of energy metabolism. (One survey indicates that at least 500 genes are direct targets of transcriptional activation by E2Fs.)

Prominent among the E2F-activated genes are the genes encoding cyclin E and E2F1. Consequently, the levels of cyclin E and E2F1 mRNAs rise quickly after passage through the R point and the levels of their protein products increase shortly thereafter. Recall that cyclin E, for its part, is responsible, together with CDK2, for driving the hyperphosphorylation of pRb. Hence initial pRb inactivation leads to increases in cyclin E levels, and cyclin E, once formed, drives further pRb inactivation (**Figure 8.20**). These relationships enable the operations of a powerful, self-amplifying positive-feedback loop that is triggered as cells pass through the R point. (Such regulation can also be termed a "feed-forward loop.")



A two-part figure showing a sequence of events that begins with and unphosphorylated E2F p R b complex. In Part A, under the influence of D C D K4 or 6, this complex becomes monophosphorylated. Small numbers of recently liberated, signaling E–C D K2 molecules then drive hyperphosphorylation of p R b, which liberates small numbers of E2F transcription factors from p R b control. They trigger increased transcription of the cyclin E gene, leading in turn to the synthesis of more cyclin E protein and the formation of more E–C D K2 molecules, which drive more p R b hyperphosphorylation. Two outputs of this cycle are a large number of E–C D K2 signaling molecules and the activation of S k p 2. In Part B, E–C D K2 repeatedly monophosphorylates p 27 Kip1, after which the latter binds to S k p 2, undergoes ubiquilation, and then is degraded in a proteasome.

Figure 8.20 Positive-feedback loops and the irreversibility of cell cycle advance The irreversibility of certain key steps in cell cycle progression and the rapidity of their execution is ensured, in part, by the activation of certain interconnected, self-amplifying positive-feedback loops, such as those illustrated here that operate at the R point. This cascade of events is triggered when small numbers of E-CDK2 molecules are liberated from inhibition by $p27^{Kip1}$, as shown in Figure 8.14B. (A) When the liberated E–CDK2 complexes drive pRb hyperphosphorylation, this liberates small numbers of E2F transcription factors

(specifically E2F1/2/3, *below*) from pRb control, enabling the E2Fs to trigger increased transcription of the cyclin E gene, leading in turn to the synthesis of more cyclin E protein and the formation of more E–CDK2 complexes, which then function to drive more pRb hyperphosphorylation. At the same time, the newly liberated E2F proteins drive expression of E2F1 itself, further amplifying E2F activity (*not shown*). Also not shown here is the interaction of monophosphorylated pRb with Skp2, which blocks the ability of the latter to drive $p27^{Kip1}$ degradation, leading to $p27^{Kip1}$ accumulation through much of the G_1 phase of the cell cycle; hence, monophosphorylated pRb can also halt cell proliferation via an E2F-independent mechanism. (The active E2F transcription factors shown are actually heterodimers of E2F subunits plus DP subunits, as shown in Figure 8.19B). (B) The initial activation of a small number of active E–CDK2 complexes enables the latter to phosphorylate $p27^{Kip1}$, marking it for recognition and binding by Skp2, ubiquitylation and destruction in proteasomes. Yet another positive-feedback loop leads to E2F-mediated increased transcription of the *Skp2* gene (as seen in panel A), whose protein product drives ubiquitylation and thus degradation of $p27^{Kip1}$; this liberates even more E-CDK2 complexes from inhibition by the $p27^{Kip1}$ CKI.

Yet another positive-feedback loop is activated simultaneously at the R point through the following mechanism: cyclin E–CDK2 complexes phosphorylate $p27^{Kip1}$, and the latter, once phosphorylated, is ubiquitylated and rapidly degraded (Figure 8.20B). The destruction of $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules, which normally inhibit E–CDK2 firing, liberates additional cyclin E–CDK2 complexes that proceed to phosphorylate and thereby inactivate even more $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules. Such positive-feedback mechanisms operate in many control circuits to guarantee the rapid execution of a decision once that decision has been made. Equally important, they ensure that the decision, once made, is essentially irreversible—a situation that corresponds precisely with the behavior of cells advancing through the R point.

The period of active transcriptional promotion by E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 appears to be rather short-lived (see Figure 8.18A). This time window begins at the R point when pRb becomes hyperphosphorylated and liberates these E2Fs. The three E2Fs then proceed to induce expression of critical late G_1 genes, the products of which are required to prepare the cell for entrance into S phase, as described above. Soon thereafter, as the cell traverses the G_1/S transition into S phase, cyclin A becomes activated and, acting together with its CDK2 partner, phosphorylates both the E2F and DP subunits of these heterodimeric transcription factors; this results in the dissociation of the E2F–DP complexes and in the attendant loss of their transcription-activating abilities. At the same time, E2F1 (and possibly other E2Fs) are tagged for proteasome-mediated

degradation by ubiquitylation, and E2F7 and E2F8, which seem to function largely to antagonize E2F-mediated gene activation, are expressed and appear to block any residual E2F-dependent expression that persists after cells have entered S phase. Together, these changes effectively shut down further transcriptional activation by the E2F factors, whose brief moment of glory as active transcription factors will come again only during the end of the G_1 phase of the next cell cycle.

pRb has been reported to bind to a variety of transcription factors, and these might, in principle, be controlled by pRb and its state of phosphorylation. In the great majority of cases, however, detailed functional analyses of their interactions with pRb have not been undertaken. There is a compelling reason to believe that, among all of the transcription factor clients of pRb, the E2Fs are of preeminent importance in controlling cell cycle advance: when E2F1 protein molecules are micro-injected into certain types of serum-starved, quiescent cells (which are therefore in G_0), these transcription factor molecules, acting on their own, are able to induce these cells to enter G_1 and advance all the way into S phase; E2F2 and E2F3 have similar powers.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

transactivation domain
: Domain of a transcription factor that serves to activate the transcription of genes, usually by attracting other transcription-regulating proteins.

OceanofPDF.com

8.8 A variety of mitogenic signaling pathways control the phosphorylation state of pRb

It is worthwhile at this point to step back and summarize briefly the ways in which these various mitogenic signals regulate distinct components of the cell cycle clock. Prominent among the signals impinging on this nuclear regulatory machinery are those conveyed by the mitogenic signaling pathways, as we saw in Figure 8.9B. Because excessive signals flow through these pathways in virtually all types of cancer cells, the connections between these pathways and the cell cycle clock are critical to our understanding of cell transformation and tumor pathogenesis.

Mitogenic signals transduced via Ras result in the mono- and eventual hyperphosphorylation of pRb. This phosphorylation is initiated by inducing the expression of genes encoding the D-type cyclins, notably cyclin D1. When Ras signaling is blocked (through the introduction of a dominant-negative mutant Ras protein), cell proliferation is blocked in wild-type cells exposed to serum, whereas mutant $Rb^{-/-}$ cells lacking Ras function enter S phase quite normally. This demonstrates dramatically that the main function of Ras during the G_1 phase is to ensure that the mitogenic signals released by ligand-activated growth factor receptors succeed in causing the phosphorylation and functional inactivation of pRb. Moreover, the block to S-phase entrance imposed by the dominant-negative Ras protein can be circumvented by ectopically expressing either cyclin E or E2F1 genes in cells. Together, these observations suggest a linear chain-of-command of the following sort:

growth factors → growth factor receptors → Ras → cyclins D1 and E → inactivation of pRb → activation of E2Fs → S-phase entrance.

There are yet other mechanisms, still poorly characterized, that enable mitogenic growth factors to energize the cell cycle apparatus. For instance,

the physical association of D-type cyclins with CDK4 also depends, for unknown reasons, on mitogenic signaling. The elucidation of this and other connections between growth-promoting signals and the cell cycle clock will surely come from future research.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

dominant-negative
: Referring to a mutant allele of a gene that, when co-expressed with the wild-type allele of the gene, is able to interfere with the functioning of the latter. *Also termed* **dominant-interfering**.

OceanofPDF.com

8.9 The Myc protein governs decisions to proliferate or differentiate

As we have read, pRb function is compromised in neoplastic human cells through multiple mechanisms, including mutation of the *Rb* gene and its functional inactivation through hyperphosphorylation. A functionally similar outcome can be observed in cells that have been infected and transformed by human papillomavirus (HPV); thus, pRb binding by the viral E7 oncoprotein (see Figures 8.16D and 8.18B) plays a key role in the development of the great majority (>99.7%) of cervical carcinomas, which occur in large numbers throughout the world.

In fact, human cancer cells devise a diverse array of alternative molecular strategies to derail the normal control of cell cycle progression. We begin with the Myc protein which, when expressed in a deregulated fashion, operates as an oncoprotein. More than 70% of human tumors overexpress either Myc (often termed c-Myc) or one of its two close cousins—N-Myc and L-Myc. The Myc family oncoproteins function very differently from most of the oncoproteins that we encountered in Chapters 4, 5, and 6. These others, notably Ras and Src, operate in close proximity to cytoplasmic membranes and trigger complex signaling cascades that activate cytoplasmic signal-transducing proteins and, ultimately, nuclear transcription factors. Myc and its cousins are found, by contrast, in the nucleus, where they function directly as growth-promoting transcription factors (**Sidebar 8.5**).

Sidebar 8.5 Many oncoproteins function as transcription factors

Myc is only one of a large group of transcription factors that can function as oncoproteins (**Table 8.1**). We first encountered oncoproteins of this type in our discussion of the immediate early genes *myc*, *fos*, and *jun* (see Section 6.1), each of which encodes a transcription factor that can function as an oncoprotein. Later, we read about STAT proteins (Section 6.8), NF-κB, Notch, and Gli (Section 6.12), which also can play these dual roles. These various transcription factors act on a variety of target genes to induce a subset of the phenotypes that we associate with transformed cells.

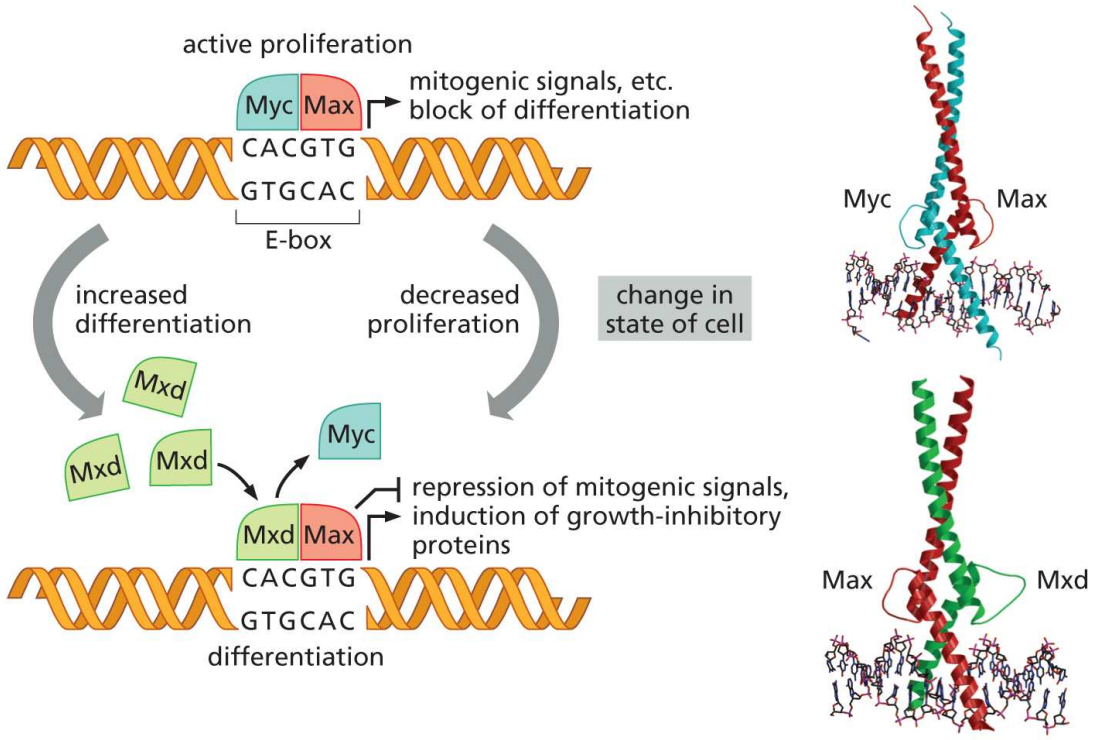
Table 8.1 Representatives of the classes of genes encoding TFs that act as oncoproteins[a]

Transcription factor	**Representative genes**
leucine zipper + basic DNA-binding domain	*fos* and *jun*
helix + loop + helix (bHLH)	*myc, N-myc, L-myc, tal,* and *sci*
zinc finger	*myl/RARa, erbA, evi-1,* and *gli-1*
homeobox	*pbx* and *Hoxb8*
others	*myb, rel, ets-1, ets-2, fli-1, spi-1, ski*

Adapted from T. Hunter, *Cell* 64:249–270, 1991. With permission from Elsevier.

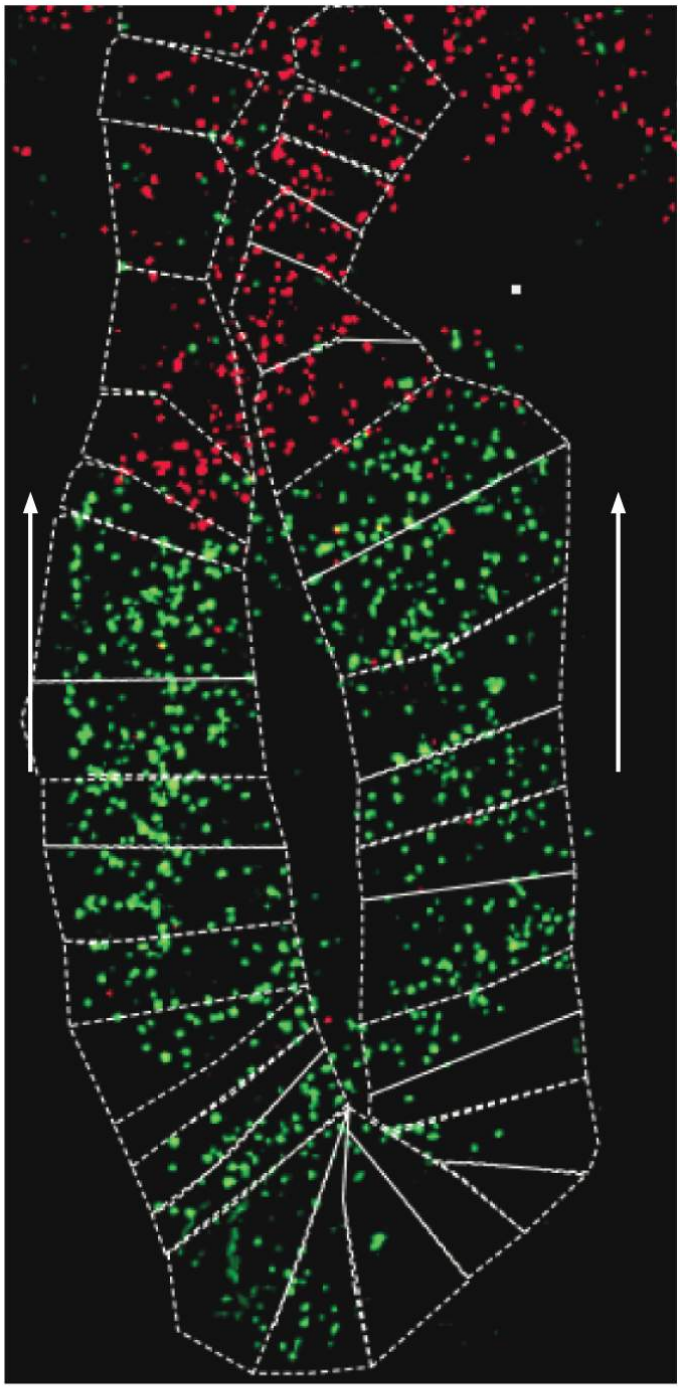
The constituency of target genes that are acted upon by each of these transcription factors (TFs) remains poorly defined. This lack of information is explained largely by the fact that at the experimental level, it has been challenging to determine the identities of the genes that are directly activated or repressed by various TFs. Even with the determination that various TFs bind to certain chromosomal segments does not, on its own, guarantee that the TF actually regulates the expression of a gene associated with this segment. Indeed, for many TFs, only a relatively small proportion (for example, 20% or 30%) of the binding sites can actually be validated as functionally important sites of TF action.

These three Myc family proteins are only three of a very large (>100 members) family of bHLH transcription factors. They were named after their shared three-dimensional structures, which include a **b**asic DNA-binding domain followed by amino acid sequences forming an α-**h**elix, a **l**oop, and a second α-**h**elix. Members of this transcription factor family form homo- and heterodimers with themselves and with other members of the family. Such dimeric complexes then associate with specific regulatory sequences, termed E-boxes (composed minimally of the consensus sequence CANNTG, where N can be any nucleotide), which are found in the promoters of target genes that they regulate (**Figure 8.21A**).



Active proliferation occurs when an M y c–Max complex, shown on the right as a ribbon diagram, binds to the E box sequence of a gene. This generates mitogenic signals, etc., and differentiation is blocked. When the cell changes state, differentiation increases, associated with the production of many M x dees. At the same time, proliferation decreases. One of the M x dees displaces the M y c to form an M x d-Max complex, also shown on the right as a ribbon diagram. Now repression of mitogenic signals occurs, along with induction of growth-inhibitory proteins.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a single crypt in the intestine of a mouse. The crypt is U shaped and the background is black. The bottom of the crypt features many green dots, revealing the presence of K i 67, associated with

proliferation. The upper, narrower part features many red dots, revealing the presence of Creb 3L3, associated with differentiation.
(B)

Figure 8.21 Proliferation vs. differentiation (A) Myc belongs to a family of bHLH (basic helix–loop–helix) transcription factors that act as heterodimers to modulate the transcription of a large cohort of target genes possessing E-box sequences (*left*). Myc–Max complexes act at enhancers like many other transcription factors and, in addition, promote elongation of nascent transcripts by releasing RNA polymerase II complexes from pause sites located immediately downstream of transcription start sites, allowing polymerase II to proceed with transcription and thus to the synthesis of full-length pre-mRNA transcripts; Mxd–Max complexes prevent this release. As cells differentiate, Mad levels increase progressively and Myc is displaced by Mxd, resulting in the disappearance of Myc–Max complexes, which otherwise would block differentiation (*left*). The actual molecular structures of these complexes sitting astride DNA (*right*) reveal why these proteins are termed basic helix–loop–helix transcription factors. (B) The opposition of proliferation vs. differentiation can be observed in various tissues. Here, a highly sensitive fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) technique has been used to detect individual mRNA molecules in the individual cells (*outlined in dashed lines*) lining a crypt in the mouse small intestine (see Figure 7.20. The *green dots* reveal mRNA molecules encoding Ki67 (indicating active proliferation), and the *red dots* reveal mRNA molecules encoding Creb3L3 (indicating enterocyte differentiation). The expression of these two mRNAs is mutually exclusive and the implied transition from one cell state to another occurs abruptly as cells migrate upward (*white arrows*) from one cell position to the next, apparently within an hour. (The involvement of Myc and its partners in this particular switch has not yet been demonstrated.) (A, right, from S.K. Nair and S.K. Burley, *Cell* 112:193–205, 2003. With permission from Elsevier. B, from S. Itzkovitz et al., *Nat. Cell Biol.* 14:106–114, 2011. With permission from Nature.)

In the particular case of Myc, its actions are determined by its own levels as well as by its associations with partner bHLH proteins that either enhance or suppress its function as a transcription-activating factor. Phosphorylation of the Myc protein also modulates its functioning and stability. When Myc associates with Max, one of its bHLH partners that enhance its transcription-activating powers, the resulting Myc–Max heterodimeric transcription factor drives the expression of a large cohort of target genes, possibly more than one thousand (**Sidebar 8.6**). The products of many of these genes, in turn, have potent effects on the cell cycle, favoring cell proliferation.

Sidebar 8.6 Myc can operate in a way that differs from that of most transcription factors

Recent research indicates that Myc can function quite differently than the other transcription factors discussed throughout this book. The others seem to be involved specifically in regulating transcriptional *initiation* (see Figure 1.18), that is, the formation of multiprotein complexes including RNA polymerase II at sites of initiation. In addition to initiating transcription, Myc has another role: in myriad genes, after RNA polymerase II (pol II) has initiated transcription, it halts at a pausing site ~50 bp downstream of the transcription start site. A Myc–Max heterodimer, bound to DNA, then interacts with the paused pol II complex and releases it from its pause site, allowing it to continue transcribing the bulk of the gene, that is, to *elongate* the RNA transcript; without this intervention by Myc–Max, the pol II that has begun the transcription of many genes is likely to sit at the pause site indefinitely. In one survey, 70% of actively transcribed genes were found to have Myc–Max heterodimers bound to these pause sites. (This number raises an interesting and unresolved paradox: in an actively growing cell, the number of genes found to bind Myc exceeds the absolute number of Myc molecules measured in such cells!) Stated differently, when acting as an anti-pausing factor, Myc serves to *amplify* the expression of genes that have already been activated, by other TFs. This, on its own, has important implications for Myc function: rather than having its own fixed constituency of responder genes that it regulates, many of Myc's targets are determined on a cell-type-specific basis, being governed by the actions of other TFs.

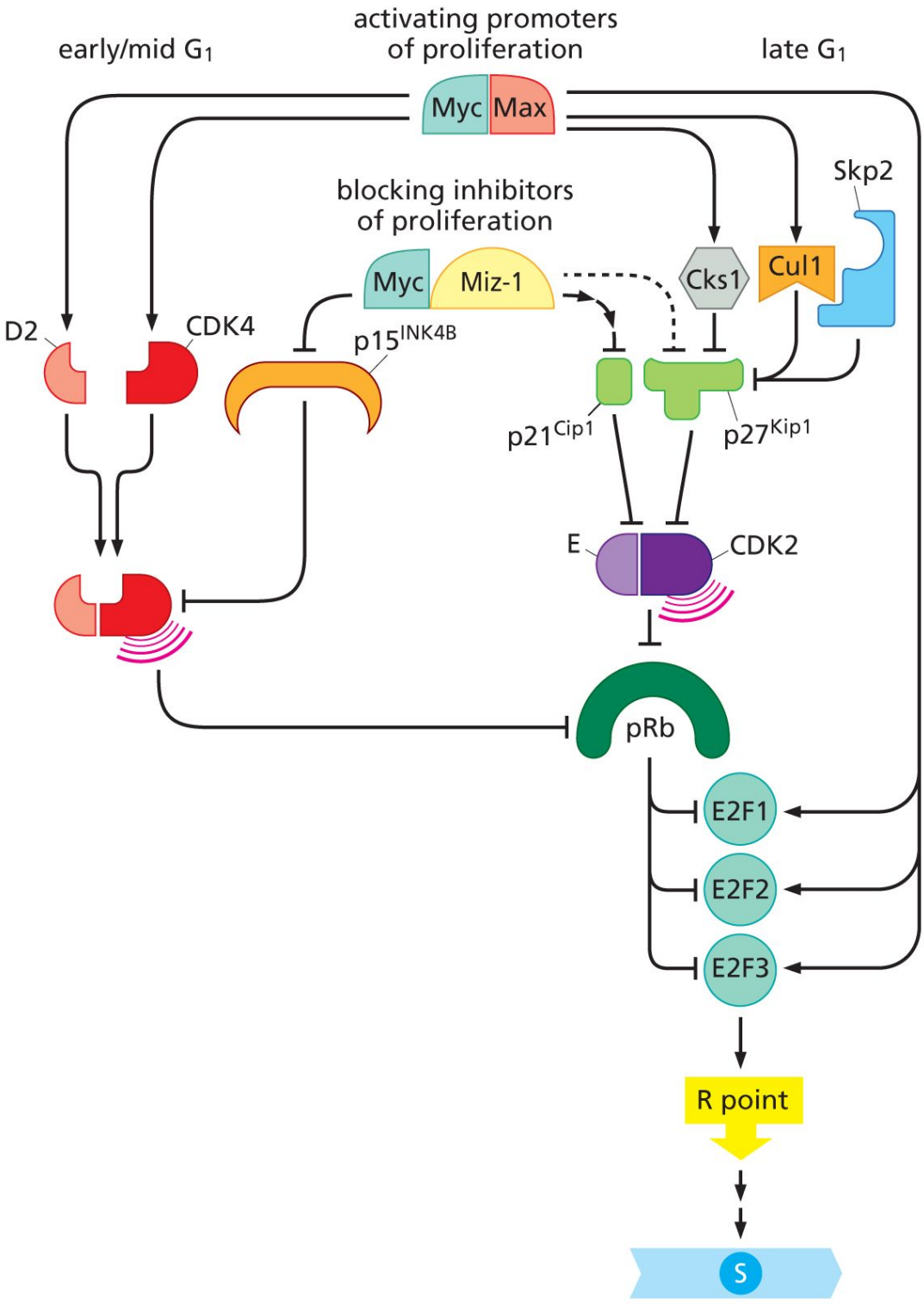
Whereas Myc levels are strongly influenced by mitogenic signals, the levels of Max are kept relatively constant within cells. Accordingly, when normal cells are cultured in the presence of serum mitogens, Myc accumulates to substantial levels; conversely, Myc levels collapse when serum mitogens are withdrawn. This means that the levels of the Myc–Max heterodimer are continuously controlled by the flux of mitogenic signals that normal cells are receiving.

A diverse array of transcription factors belonging to the same bHLH family as Myc are involved in orchestrating tissue-specific differentiation programs. Acting through intermediaries, Myc can prevent these other bHLH transcription factors from executing various differentiation programs. Consequently, Myc can simultaneously promote cell proliferation and block cell differentiation; this is precisely the biological behavior that is associated with actively growing cells that have not yet entered into post-mitotic, differentiated states (Figure 8.21B). However, as cells slow their proliferation and become differentiated, the Myc–Max complexes disappear, because increasing levels of Mxd protein (another bHLH partner formerly known as Mad) displace Myc from existing Myc–Max complexes (see Figure 8.21A). The resulting

Mxd–Max complexes then lose the ability to stimulate transcription, permitting cells in many human tissues to enter into post-mitotic differentiated states.

Myc interacts closely with the cell cycle machinery. Perhaps the first indication of this came from observations in which pairs of oncogenes were found to collaborate with one another in transforming rodent cells to a tumorigenic state. We will revisit oncogene collaboration later in Chapter 11. For the moment, suffice it to say that the *ras* and *myc* oncogenes were found to be highly effective collaborators in cell transformation, implying that each made its own unique contribution to this process. Similarly, a *ras* oncogene was found to collaborate with the adenovirus E1A oncogene in cell transformation. Together, these observations indicated that the *myc* and E1A oncogenes functioned analogously in this particular experimental setting. Precisely how they did so was a mystery.

The fact that the E1A oncoprotein binds and inactivates pRb and its p107 and p130 cousins (see Sidebar 8.4) suggested that the Myc protein could have similar effects on these vital cellular proteins, especially pRb. However, a direct association between Myc and pRb could not be established. Instead, we have come to realize that Myc induces the expression of other critical components of the cell cycle clock that operate to favor progression through the cell cycle (**Figure 8.22**). When expression of these components is driven by the abnormally high levels of Myc present in cells carrying *myc* oncogenes, the result is a physiological state similar to that seen in cells lacking pRb function. Both changes deprive a cell of the normal control of progression through the G_1 phase of its cell cycle and deregulate passage through the R point. This helps to explain the ostensibly analogous mechanisms-of-action of the adenovirus E1A oncoprotein and Myc, as mentioned above: both converge on incapacitating pRb, doing so in very different ways.



A diagram of the Actions of M y c on the cell cycle clock. During the early mid G 1 phase, M y c acts in conjunction with Max to activate promoters of proliferation by, for example, bringing D2 C D K4 together. At the same time, M y c acts in conjunction with M i z 1 to block inhibitors of proliferation such as p15 I N K4B,

which is an inhibitor of D2 C D K4. D2 C D K4 inhibits p R b, blocking it from inhibiting E2F 1, 2 and 3, thereby driving the cell cycle forward through the R point. During the late G1 phase, M y c Max directly activates the E 2 effs. It also, through intermediates C k s1 and C u l1 and with the help of S k p2, inhibits p27 Kip 1. M y c M i z 1 also inhibits p27 Kip 1, and p21 Cip1, as well. These inhibited proteins are thus prevented from blocking E C D K twos inhibition of p R b, which again promotes E2F 1, 2 and 3 driving the cell cycle forward through the R point.

Figure 8.22 Actions of Myc on the cell cycle clock The Myc protein, acting with its Max partner (*top*), induces expression of a number of positive regulators of cell cycle advance, thereby driving cells through the R-point transition. For example, the Myc–Max heterodimer is able to induce expression of the growth-promoting proteins cyclin D2 and CDK4 (*left*), which can promote advance through early G_1; it also contributes to the expression of cyclin E (*not shown*). At the same time, by increasing the expression of Cks1, Cul1, and Skp2 (which are responsible for degrading the $p27^{Kip1}$ CDK inhibitor, *upper right*; see Figure 8.20B) as well as E2Fs 1, 2, and 3 (*below right*), the Myc-Max complex favors advance into S phase. In addition, Myc, acting with its Miz-1 partner, represses directly or indirectly expression of the $p15^{INK4B}$, $p21^{Cip1}$, and $p27^{Kip1}$ CDK inhibitors; once again, effects are felt both in early/mid and in late G_1. Also not shown are the actions of active E-CDK2 complexes in phosphorylating $p27^{Kip1}$, leading to its degradation (see Figure 8.20B).

Among the many targets of Myc is the cyclin D2 gene (see Figure 8.22), whose elevated expression leads, in turn, to the monophosphorylation of pRb (see Figure 8.17). Myc also drives expression of the CDK4 gene; the resulting increased levels of CDK4 drive the formation of the cyclin D–CDK4 complexes that sequester the $p27^{Kip1}$ CDK inhibitor, thereby liberating cyclin E–CDK2 complexes from inhibition (see Figure 8.14B). Myc also drives expression of the Cul1 protein, which plays a central role in driving the degradation of the $p27^{Kip1}$ CDK inhibitor through ubiquitylation. In one way or another, these Myc-driven gene expression changes serve to push the cell through the G_1 phase of its cell cycle.

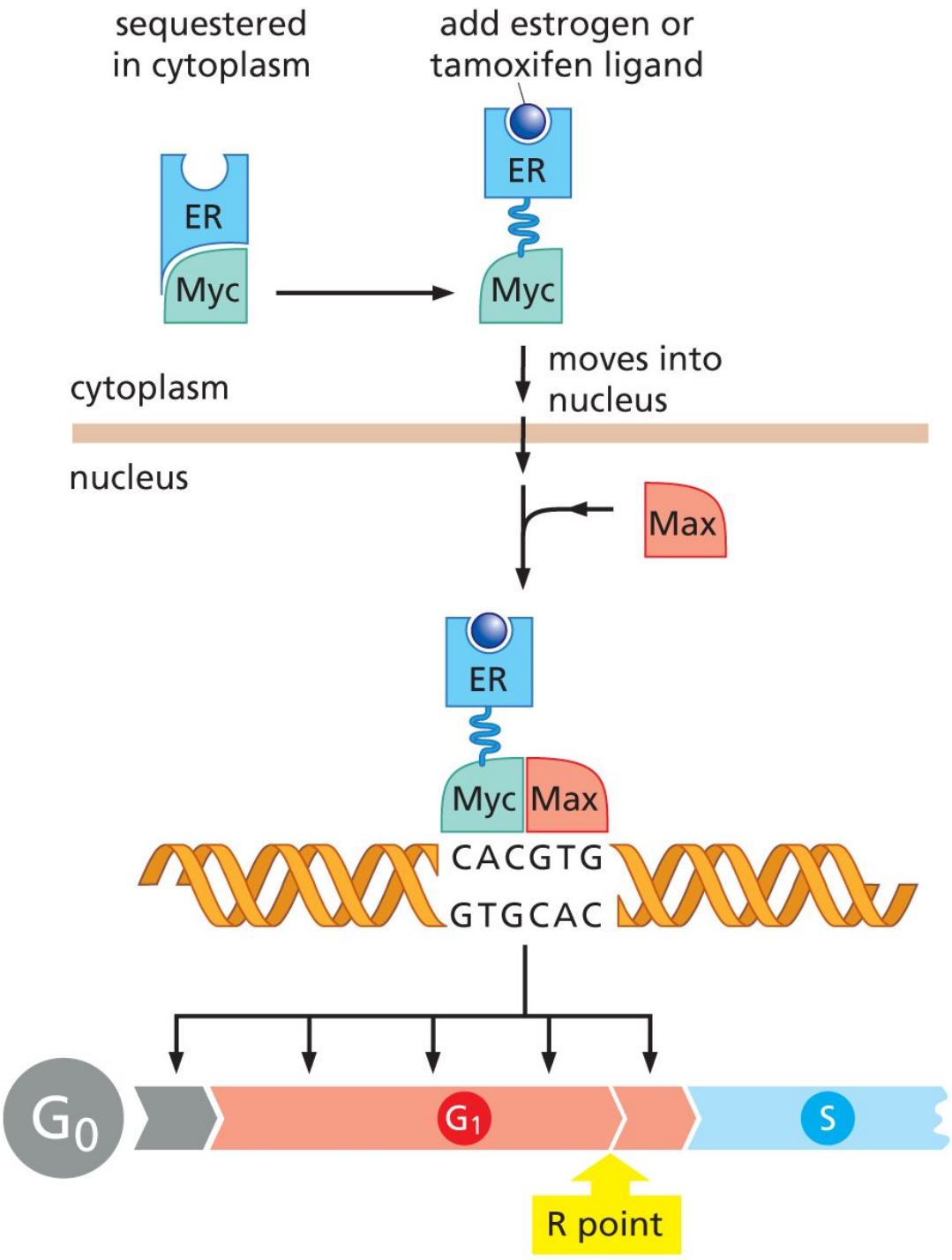
By associating with a second transcription factor named Miz-1, Myc can also function as a transcriptional repressor (see Figure 8.22). In this role, Myc can repress expression of the genes encoding the $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ CDK inhibitors, which shut down the actions of CDK4/6 and CDK2, respectively. In fact, as we will read later, TGF-β uses these two CDK inhibitors to block progression through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle. Hence, by preventing the expression of these two CDK inhibitors, Myc confers resistance to the growth-inhibitory actions of TGF-β. This represents an

important means by which cancer cells can continue to multiply under conditions (for example, the presence of TGF-β in their surroundings) that would normally preclude their proliferation.

Finally, Myc is able to induce the expression of the genes encoding the E2F1, E2F2, and E2F3 transcription factor proteins (see Figure 8.22). As we read earlier, pRb and its two cousins inhibit the transcription-activating powers of these transcription factors. By causing these growth-promoting transcription factors to accumulate to higher levels within a cell, Myc once again tips the balance in favor of cell proliferation.

Now, we begin to understand how the Myc oncoprotein can function so effectively to deregulate cell proliferation. It reaches in and pulls multiple regulatory levers within the cell cycle clock. The resulting changes in levels of key proteins shift the balance of proliferation-promoting versus -inhibiting mechanisms, strongly favoring pRb inactivation and cell growth.

Perhaps the most graphic demonstration of the potent mitogenic powers of Myc has come from an experiment in which Myc is engineered to be expressed at high, constant levels but as a protein that is fused with the estrogen receptor (ER). In the absence of an estrogen receptor ligand, such as estrogen or tamoxifen, the Myc–ER fusion protein is sequestered in a functionally inactive state in the cytoplasm (see Section 5.8). However, upon addition of ligand, this fusion protein is liberated from sequestration, rushes into the nucleus, and operates like the normal Myc transcription factor. When quiescent, serum-starved cells (in the G_0 state) expressing the Myc–ER fusion protein are treated with either estrogen or tamoxifen (but left in serum-deprived medium), these cells are induced to enter into the G_1 phase and progress to S phase (**Figure 8.23**). This illustrates that Myc, acting on its own and in the absence of serum-associated mitogens, is able to relieve all of the constraints on proliferation that have held these cells in G_0 and is able to shepherd them all the way through G_1—an advance that usually requires substantial, extended stimulation by growth factors. In addition to Myc, a number of other transcription factors display the wide-ranging powers of oncoproteins (see Table 8.1).



A diagram showing the action of the M y c oncoprotein in the cell nucleus. Initially, M y c is fused with E R, which has an open binding site, and the complex is sequestered in the cytoplasm. When the E R binding site is occupied by an estrogen or a tamoxifen ligand, the M y c E R complex elongates and moves into the nucleus, where Max joins to M y c. This complex can bind to M y c target

genes and drive the cell cycle forward at a number of points in the G zero and G1 phases, including after the R point.

Figure 8.23 Powers of the Myc oncoprotein The wide-ranging effects of the Myc protein are illustrated by an experiment in which the Myc protein has been fused to the estrogen receptor (ER) protein (*blue*), achieved by fusion of the two encoding genes. In the absence of ER ligands, such as estrogen or tamoxifen, the Myc–ER protein is trapped in the cytoplasm (through association with heat shock proteins, *not shown*). When estrogen or tamoxifen ligands are added to cells, the Myc–ER protein migrates into the nucleus, associates with Max, and activates Myc target genes within minutes. Such activation, when induced in serum-starved cells in the G_0 phase, enables them to enter the active cell cycle and advance all the way through G_1 into the S phase, indicating that Myc can act at multiple points in G_0 and G_1 to drive cell cycle progression.

In addition to promoting cell cycle progression, Myc is also able to positively regulate fundamental biosynthetic processes, such as ribosome biogenesis, general transcription, protein synthesis and, more generally, anabolism (the synthesis of complex biomolecules). Therefore, we can conclude that Myc acts as an important master regulator that operates to coordinate overall biosynthesis with a cell's advance through the cell cycle, thereby ensuring that a cell that is committed to pass through M phase has acquired the requisite biomass that is needed to generate two healthy daughter cells. Moreover, as might be expected from these multiple effects on the cell around it, a Myc oncoprotein can also perturb the interactions of this cell with others in its surroundings, that is, the neighboring cells that form its tissue microenvironment. Included here are, among other processes, neovascularization, the process of generating new blood vessels, a topic described in some detail in Chapter 13. Finally, elevated Myc expression can induce high levels of ID proteins (see Figure 8.85C), which are direct antagonists of many of the bHLH transcription factors that orchestrate differentiation programs in diverse tissues; indeed, one of these (ID2) is able to bind pRb directly and antagonize the proliferation-inhibiting powers of the latter (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.8**.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

anabolism

(adj., **anabolic**) Processes by which new biological molecules are assembled via biosynthetic reactions. *See also* **catabolism**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aGenes are grouped according to the structural features of the encoded proteins.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

8.10 TGF-β prevents phosphorylation of pRb and thereby blocks cell cycle progression

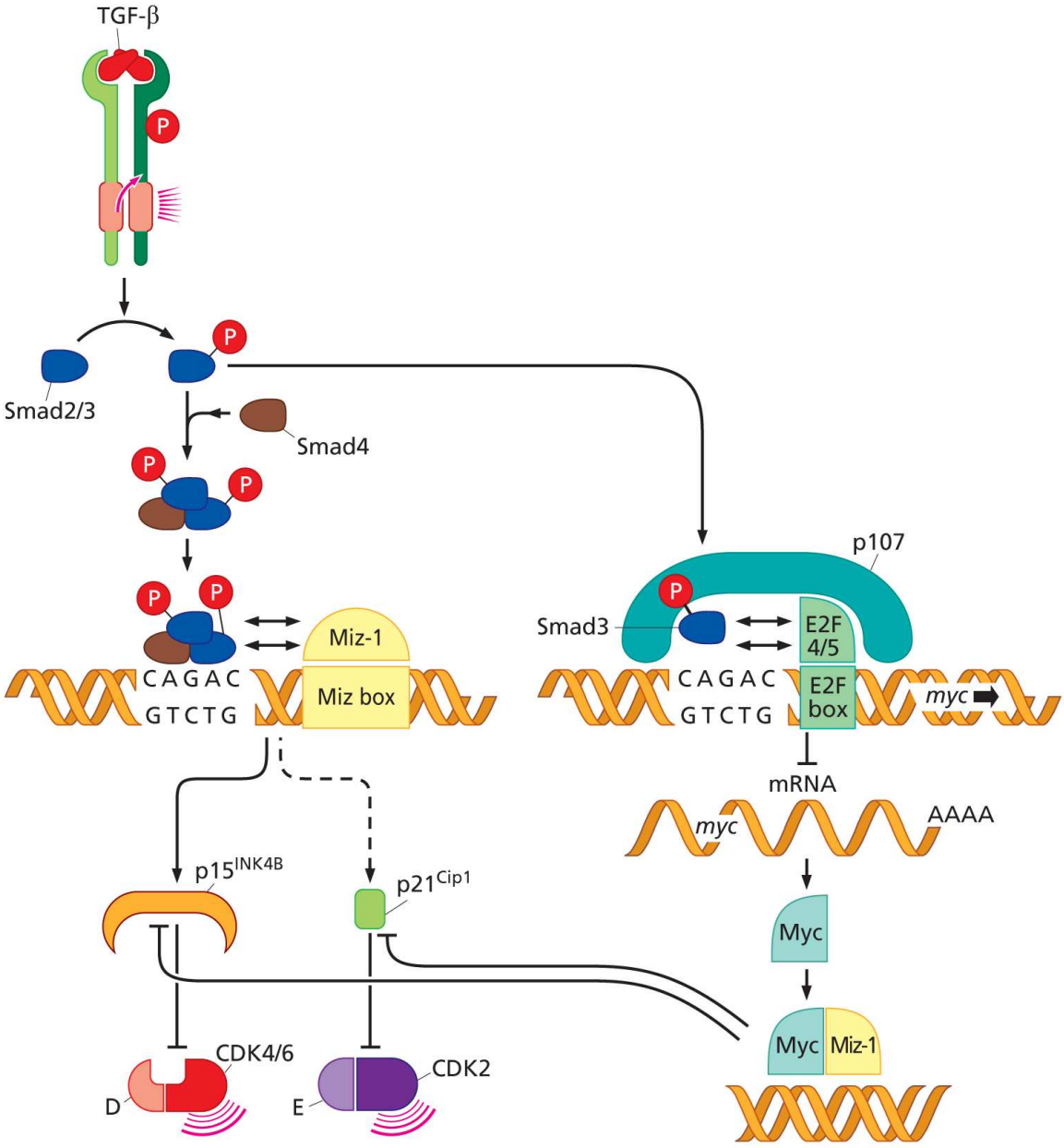
TGF-β represents a major growth-inhibitory signal that normal cells, especially epithelial cells, must learn to evade in order to become cancer cells. As we will learn later in Chapters 13 and 14, TGF-β also exerts other, quite distinct effects on cells, by forcing them to change their differentiation programs. Often the resulting changes in cell phenotype actually favor tumor progression, as some of these phenotypic changes enable cancer cells to become anchorage-independent, angiogenic, and even invasive.

These two major effects of TGF-β—one antagonizing, the other favoring tumor progression—are clearly in direct conflict with one another. Cancer cells often resolve this dilemma by learning how to evade the cytostatic effects of TGF-β while leaving intact other responses, such as those favoring tumor cell invasiveness. Not surprisingly, the cytostatic actions of TGF-β derive from its direct and indirect effects on pRb, the central controller that determines whether or not a cell will proliferate.

We previously learned that TGF-β has its own, quite unique cell surface receptor, which uses serine/threonine kinases in its cytoplasmic domains (rather than tyrosine kinases) to emit signals. The primary targets of these signals documented to date are proteins of the Smad transcription factor family. Once phosphorylated in the cytoplasm by a TGF-β receptor, a pair of Smad2 (or Smad3) protein molecules associates with a Smad4 protein (which is not a substrate for phosphorylation by the receptor), and the resulting heterotrimeric protein complexes migrate to the nucleus, where they function as transcription factors (see Figure 6.22D).

As we read earlier (Section 8.4), in the context of cell cycle control, the most important targets of action by TGF-β are the genes encoding the two CDK inhibitors $p15^{INK4B}$ and, to a lesser extent, $p21^{Cip1}$ (see Figures 8.12 and 8.13).

Each has a CAGAC sequence in its promoter that attracts a heterotrimeric Smad3–Smad4 transcription factor complex. On its own, such a Smad complex cannot activate transcription of these genes because of its intrinsically weak binding to DNA. Instead, it collaborates with yet another transcription factor—the Miz-1 factor mentioned in the last section—that binds to adjacent DNA sequences, allowing side-to-side association of these two transcription factors, cooperative stable binding of this complex to the promoters of target genes, and activation of transcription of such genes, in this case those encoding $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ (**Figure 8.24**, *left*).



A diagram illustrating how T G F-beta slows progress through the G1 phase of the cell cycle. There are two paths by which T G F-beta promotes the production of p15 I N K 4B, which inhibits D-C D K 4 slash 6, and the production of p21 Cip1, which inhibits E-C D K 2. Both paths begin with T G F-beta binding to a receptor that transphosphorylates and then phosphorylates S m a d 2 slash 3. In one path, two phosphorylated S m a d 2 slash threes combine with an S m a d 4. The resulting complex binds to a C A G A C sequence on a gene, immediately beside a Miz-1 bound to a Miz box. The result of this action is production of p15 I N K 4B which can inhibit D C D K 4 and 6 complex signalling and production of p21 Cip1 which can inhibit E C D K 2 complex signalling. In the other path, a phosphorylated S m a d 3 forms a complex with p107 and E2F 4 or 5. This complex binds to a C A G A C sequence and an immediately adjacent E2F box. This suppresses transcription of the m y c gene and thereby limits the formation of M y c Miz 1 protein complexes that would inhibit the production of p15 I N K 4B and p21 Cip1.

Figure 8.24 Antagonistic effects of TGF-b and Myc on cell cycle progression As shown here, TGF-β and Myc oppose one another in regulating advance through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle. TGF-β induces expression of the $p15^{INK4B}$ CKI and, to a lesser extent, the $p21^{Cip1}$ CKI, by causing TGF-β-activated phospho-Smads to bind to the CAGAC canonical Smad-binding sequence in promoters adjacent to the binding of Miz-1 transcription factor to its own, quite extended sequence binding site, termed here a Miz box (*left*). Together this complex of physically associated TFs causes expression of the genes encoding the two CKIs, thereby slowing or preventing advance through the G_1 phase up to the R point. At the same time, TGF-β-activated phospho-Smad3 associates physically with E2F4 or E2F5. (The *double-headed arrows* indicate physical interaction.) The E2F box represents the sequence TTTCCCGC. The resulting complexes of p107, E2F4/5, and Smad3 repress transcription of the *myc* gene. The resulting decrease of Myc-Miz-1 complexes (*lower right*) leads to less repression of the genes encoding the $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ CKIs and a slowdown of advance through G_1.

We also noted earlier that the Myc oncoprotein, acting in the opposite direction, can block the induction of these two CDK inhibitors, doing so through its ability to associate with Miz-1. By repressing expression of the genes encoding $p15^{INK4B}$

and $p21^{Cip1}$, Myc removes two major obstacles standing in the way of cell cycle progression (see Figure 8.22). Stated differently, the constitutively high levels of Myc protein made by *myc* oncogenes ensure that expression of these two CDK inhibitors is strongly repressed, thereby paving the way for vigorous cell cycle advance.

In contrast to its powers in cancer cells, TGF-β needs to have the last word in determining whether or not normal cells proliferate. In order to do so, TGF-β must overrule any conflicting signals that Myc might be releasing. To guarantee success in this endeavor, TGF-β must ensure that Myc does not thwart its scheme to activate expression of the $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ CDK inhibitors. So, in normal cells, TGF-β keeps Myc away from the promoters of these genes by shutting down expression of the *myc* proto-oncogene (see Figure 8.24, *right*). By forming a tripartite complex with E2F4/5 plus p107, Smad3 ensures the shutdown of *myc* transcription, thereby eliminating the growth-promoting effects of the Myc protein from the cell's regulatory circuitry. Once TGF-β has succeeded in removing Myc from the scene—from the promoters of the $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ CDK inhibitors—TGF-β can then deploy its Smad3–Smad4 complexes, working together with Miz-1, to activate the promoters of these two CDK inhibitors, thereby erecting major obstacles to the advance of a cell through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle (see Figure 8.24, *left*).

Many types of incipient cancer cells must evade TGF-β–imposed growth inhibition if they are to thrive. More specifically, such cancer cells depend on high levels of the Myc transcription factor to drive their proliferation and therefore must liberate *myc* transcription from the repressive actions of TGF-β. This explains why, for example, in a series of 12 human breast carcinomas, *myc* expression in all 12 of these tumors was no longer responsive to TGF-β–imposed shutdown even though many other TGF-β–induced responses were found to be intact in 11 of these tumors. (Because the *myc* gene itself was apparently in a wild-type configuration in these tumors, deregulation of some of the transcription factors controlling its transcription appeared to be responsible for the observed vigorous expression of this gene.) Once protected from the threat of this TGF-β–mediated repression, the *myc* oncogene, more specifically, its Myc product, proceeds to hold expression of the two CDK inhibitors (that is, $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$) at a very low level and does so indefinitely. This helps, in turn, to create a condition in the cell permitting rapid, unimpeded proliferation.

In a more general sense, cancer cells place a high premium on escaping the growth-inhibitory influences of TGF-β while leaving other, potentially useful

TGF-β responses intact. Often this evasion of TGF-β–mediated growth inhibition is achieved through inactivation of the pRb signaling pathway. In effect, in normal cells pRb operates as the brake lining that calls a halt to cell proliferation in response to TGF-β–initiated signals. Accordingly, if the pRb protein is eliminated from the regulatory circuitry through one of the various mechanisms described earlier, then the ability of TGF-β to impose growth arrest is greatly compromised because the $p15^{INK4B}$ induced by TGF-β now fails to effectively block cell cycle advance.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

angiogenesis

angiogenesis: Process by which new blood vessels are formed by sprouting from existing vessels.

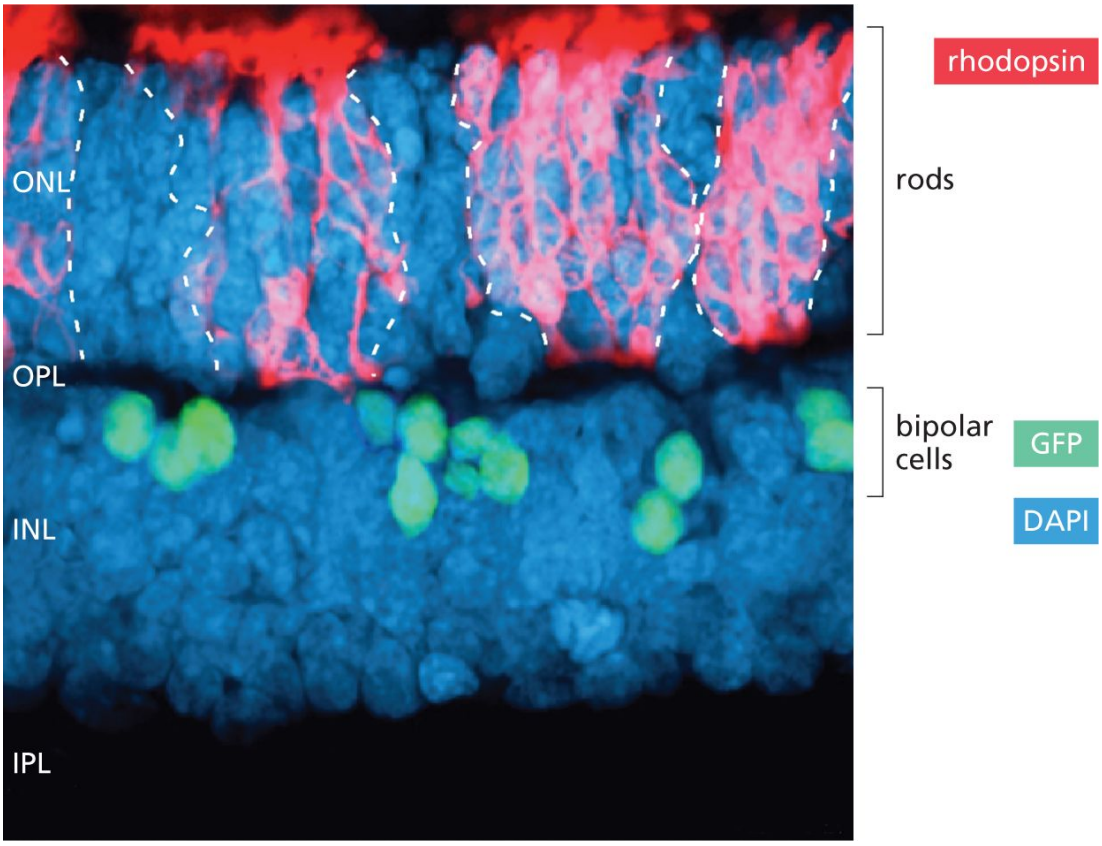
OceanofPDF.com

8.11 pRb function and the controls of differentiation are closely linked

Cell differentiation is a process of crucial importance to cancer pathogenesis and, as such, is mentioned repeatedly in this text. For the moment, we can imagine—a bit simplistically— that cells throughout the body can exist in either of two alternative growth states. They may be found in a relatively undifferentiated state in which they retain the option to divide in the event that mitogenic signals call for their proliferation; this is essentially the behavior of stem cells. Alternatively, cells leave this state and enter into a more differentiated state, whereupon they give up the option of ever proliferating again and thus become post-mitotic. The decisions that govern these fundamental changes in cell biology must be explainable in terms of the molecular controls that determine whether a cell remains in the active growth-and-division cycle, exits reversibly into G_0, or exits irreversibly from this cycle into a post-mitotic, differentiated state.

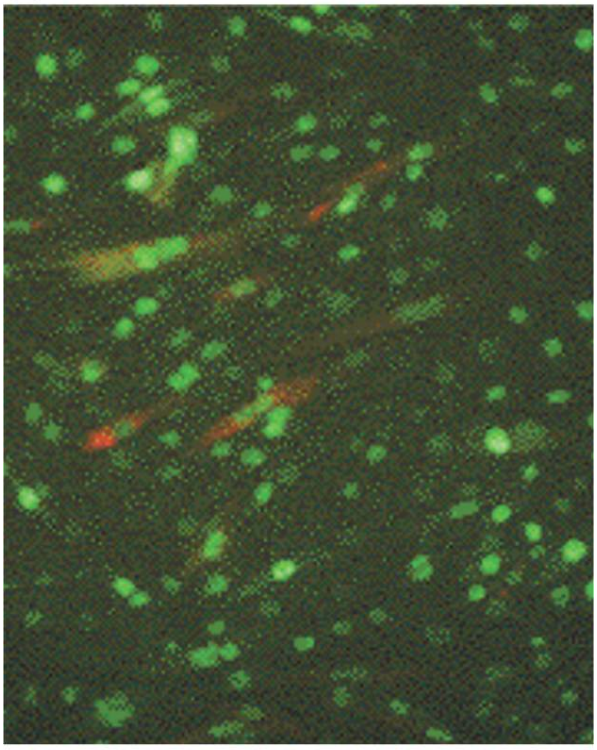
The opposition between cell proliferation and differentiation is seen most clearly in the formation of most types of cancer cells in which differentiation is partially or, more rarely, completely blocked. Knowing this, we might ask whether two independent changes in the cellular control circuitry must be made during the formation of a cancer cell—one that deregulates control of proliferation and another that blocks differentiation. The alternative is simpler: might certain alterations, in a single stroke, deregulate proliferation and prevent differentiation?

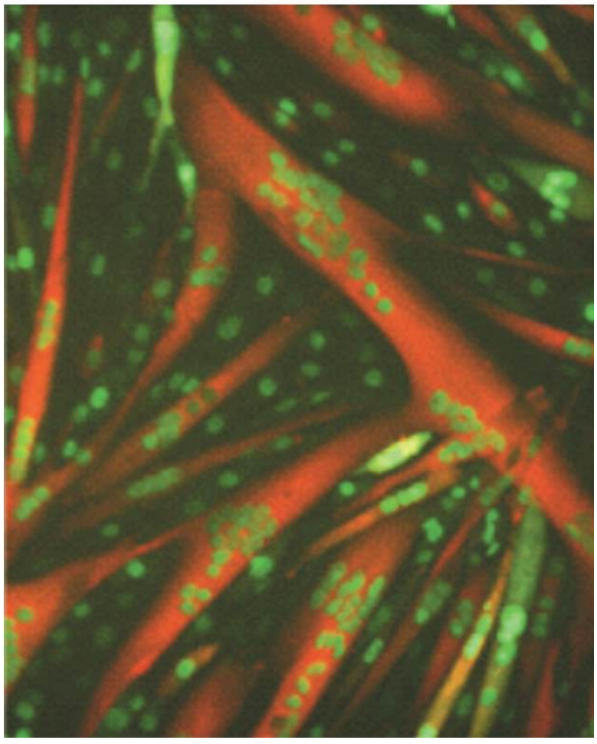
Evidence supporting the latter idea, which implies a close coupling between the mechanisms controlling these two processes, has been forthcoming from studies of retinal development *in vivo* and muscle cell differentiation *in vitro*. In the case of the retina, the absence of pRb function in retinal precursor cells prevents the proper differentiation of the rod photoreceptor cells (**Figure 8.25A**). In this micrograph, the *Rb* gene was inactivated sporadically in retinal precursor cells, resulting in patches of cells where subsequent rod development was defective (in which negative regulation of cell proliferation was also presumably lost).



A close-up of cell layers in a mouse retina. In the layer associated with rod cells, Rhodopsin glows red, contrasting dramatically with surrounding tissue stained dark blue by D A P I. Directly below in the next layer are bipolar cells that glow green due to the presence of G F P. There is no rhodopsin in this section.

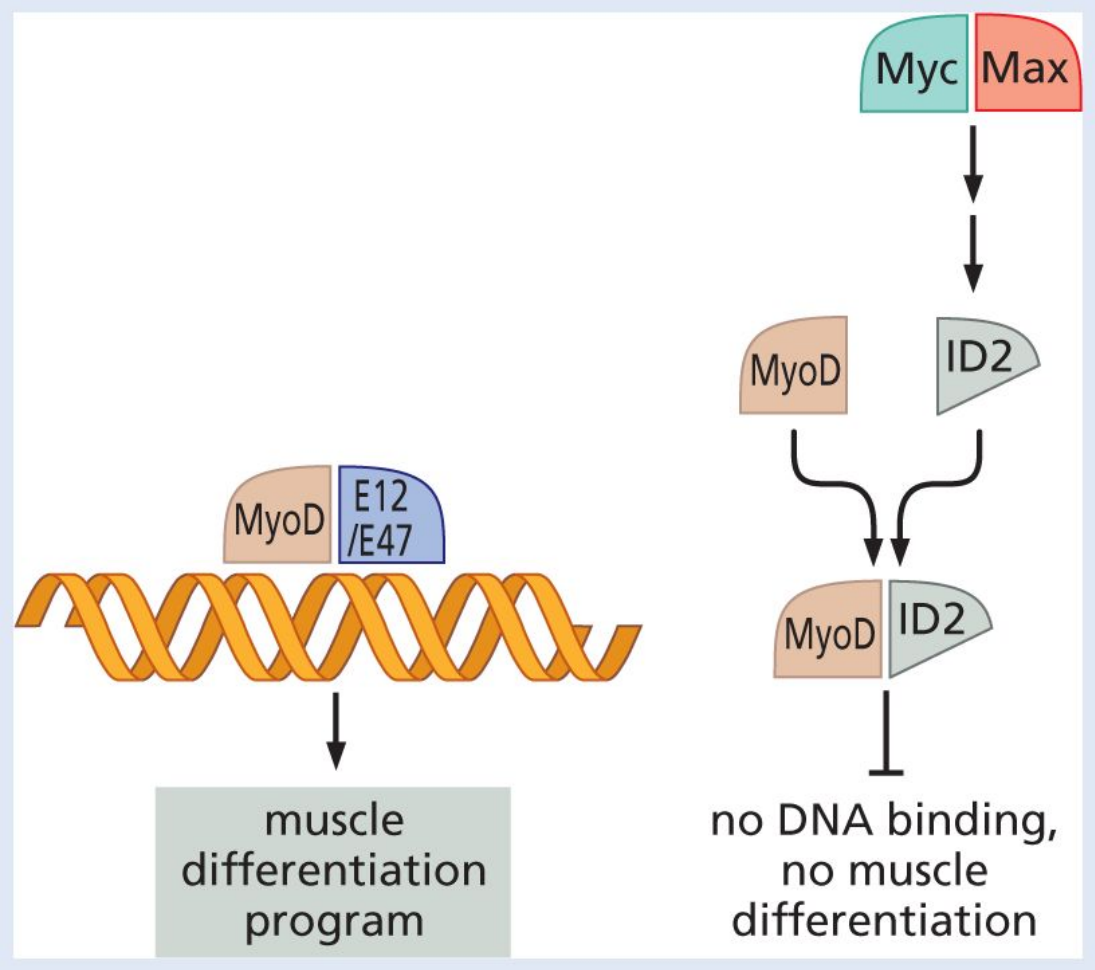
(A)





Two fluorescent color images. The upper one features many scattered green dots and a few faint reddish fibers. The bottom images features many thick, crisscrossing red fibers. There are also still quite a few green dots, scattered and also gathered in clumps on the red fibers.

(B)



A Myo D and E12 or 47 complex attached to a gene segment. This begins the complex muscle differentiation program. Also shown is an M y c Max complex that leads to production of I D 2, which forms a complex with Myo D whose presence inhibits muscle differentiation due to the absence of D N A binding.

(C)

Figure 8.25 Differentiation of retinal cells, and muscle cells (A) The proper differentiation of retinal cells (see Figure 7.2A) depends on the presence of pRb. During normal development, retinal progenitor cells move upward and differentiate into various specialized cell types. In the eyes of 2-week-old mice in an engineered transgenic mouse model, rod cells that successfully differentiated express the rhodopsin photoreceptor protein (*red*), whereas those that failed to do so (*between dashed white lines*) are represented only by the DAPI stain that marks their DNA (*blue*). The latter cells sit directly above GFP-labeled bipolar cells

(*green*) that mark the locations where progenitor cells had previously been forced to excise their only copy of their *Rb* gene (through the actions of a tissue-specific Cre-Lox system, see Sidebar 7.2) prior to migrating upward, showing directly that in the absence of pRb, progenitor cells differentiate incompletely and spawn rhodopsin-negative rod cells. (B) Myoblasts, the less differentiated precursors of muscle cells (myocytes), can be cultured *in vitro* and remain in the undifferentiated state (*upper panel*). However, various types of physiologic signals can induce them to differentiate into myocytes, whereupon they fuse to form muscle fibers (*red, lower panel*). For example, removal of serum (and its associated growth factors) from the culture medium leads to such differentiation. Numerous experiments have shown that differentiation can be prevented by forcing pRb phosphorylation and inactivation. Conversely, signals that prevent pRb phosphorylation favor and often induce differentiation. (C) MyoD is a bHLH transcription factor that serves as the master regulator, together with its E12/E47 partner, of the muscle differentiation program. Myc, for its part, acts to antagonize differentiation, in part through its ability to induce synthesis of ID2, an ID protein that has the bHLH structure but lacks DNA-binding ability; by forming heterodimers with MyoD, ID2 can act as a dominant-negative inhibitor of MyoD, because the heterodimer between MyoD and ID2 cannot bind DNA properly. (A, from S.L. Donovan and M.A. Dyer, *Vision Res.* 44:3323–3333, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. B, from E.M. Wilson et al., *Mol. Biol. Cell* 15:497–505, 2004. With permission from American Society for Cell Biology.)

Yet another line of evidence indicating a coupling between differentiation and the cell cycle machinery comes from research on the biochemistry of the Myc protein. As mentioned earlier (see Section 8.9), the Myc protein shifts the balance between proliferation and post-mitotic differentiation in favor of proliferation. A dramatic demonstration of the opposition between the Myc oncoprotein and cell differentiation has come from a mouse model of liver cancer pathogenesis, which depends on the targeted expression of a *myc* transgene in hepatocytes. Large hepatocellular carcinomas form, and these will regress whenever the *myc* transgene is shut down subsequently. At the same time, many of the carcinoma cells, which previously lacked most of the traits of normal hepatocytes, rapidly differentiate into liver cells that appear normal and assemble to reconstruct many of the histological features of the normal liver. Simi-lar dynamics operate during muscle differentiation (see Figure 8.25B and C). Moreover, the differentiation of a variety of cell types is favored by the G_1 CDK inhibitors, notably $p27^{Kip1}$. Finally, tissue-specific, differentiation-inducing transcription factors often antagonize cyclin:CDK function and, conversely, cyclin:CDK complexes can antagonize these transcription factors; the resulting double-negative feedback loops create bi-stable controls, in which cells either proliferate or enter into nonproliferative, differentiated states. These various controls

on cell differentiation, involving pRb, Myc, and other regulatory proteins, clearly have effects on the formation and development of various types of cancer, because tumors formed by more differentiated cells are usually less aggressive, whereas those composed of poorly differentiated cells tend to be far more aggressive and carry a worse prognosis for the patient. These observations are only a small part of a growing body of work demonstrating the opposition between active cell cycle progression and entrance into differentiated growth states (**Sidebar 8.7** and **Supplementary Sidebar 8.9**).

Sidebar 8.7 Blocked differentiation can accompany the advance of tumor progression

Some hematopoietic malignancies, specifically, leukemias, come in two forms—chronic and acute. The chronic diseases, such as chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), are typified by more mature, differentiated cells and can proceed for years without becoming life-threatening. In the case of CML, after a period of 3 to 5 years, suddenly there is an eruption of a more malignant, aggressive form of the disease that is termed "blast crisis." The cells present in blast crisis clearly originate from the same cell clone that initiated the chronic phase of the disease. However, they are less differentiated and multiply ceaselessly, creating a life-threatening disease that is difficult to treat. It seems that the cells in the chronic phase are derived from a mutant self-renewing stem cell, but this disease remains relatively benign, because the differentiation of these mutant cells into post-mitotic neutrophils proceeds quite normally. The moment that such differentiation is blocked (by some still-poorly understood genetic changes), cells in this population are trapped in a less differentiated stem cell compartment (of either erythroid or myeloid type) and proliferate without a compensating exit of their progeny into more differentiated, post-mitotic compartments.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

blast crisis

Clinical state occurring when a hematopoietic tumor that has been under therapeutic control relapses into a highly aggressive stage of disease progression in which the erupting tumor cells are in a primitive state of differentiation. *See* **blast**.

OceanofPDF.com

8.12 Control of pRb function is perturbed in most if not all human cancers

Deregulation of the pRb pathway yields an outcome that is an integral part of the cancer cell phenotype—unconstrained proliferation. This explains why normal regulation of the R-point transition, as embodied in pRb phosphorylation, is likely to be disrupted in most if not all types of human tumor cells (**Table 8.2** and **Table 8.3**). These disruptive mechanisms are summarized in **Figure 8.26**. We are already familiar with the most direct mechanism for deregulating advance through the R point—inactivation of the *Rb* gene through mutation. In some tumors, an equivalent outcome is achieved through methylation of the *Rb* gene promoter. In others, pRb, though synthesized in normal amounts, may be functionally inactivated by viral oncoproteins, such as the HPV E7 protein, which prevent pRb from binding and regulating E2Fs.

Table 8.2 Molecular changes in human cancers leading to deregulation of the cell cycle clock

Specific alteration	**Clinical result**
Alterations of pRb	
Inactivation of the *Rb* gene by mutation	retinoblastoma, osteosarcoma, small-cell lung carcinoma
Methylation of *Rb* gene promoter	brain tumors, diverse others

Specific alteration	**Clinical result**
Sequestration of pRb by ID1, ID2	diverse carcinomas, neuroblastoma, melanoma
Sequestration of pRb by the HPV E7 viral oncoprotein	cervical carcinoma
Alteration of cyclins	
Cyclin D1 overexpression through amplification of *cyclin D1* gene	breast carcinoma, leukemias
Cyclin D1 overexpression caused by hyperactivity of *cyclin D1* gene promoter driven by upstream mitogenic pathways	diverse tumors
Cyclin D1 overexpression caused by reduced degradation of cyclin D1 because of depressed activity of GSK-3β	diverse tumors
Cyclin D3 overexpression caused by hyperactivity of *cyclin D3* gene	hematopoietic malignancies
Cyclin E overexpression	breast carcinoma
Defective degradation of cyclin E protein from loss of hCDC4	endometrial, breast, and ovarian carcinomas

Specific alteration	**Clinical result**
Alteration of cyclin-dependent kinases	
CDC25A overexpression	breast cancers
CDK4 structural mutation	melanoma
Alteration of CDK inhibitors	
Deletion of *p15*^{INK4B} gene	diverse tumors
Deletion of *p16*^{INK4A} gene	diverse tumors
Methylation of *p16*^{INK4A} gene promoter	melanoma, diverse tumors
Decreased transcription of *p27*^{Kip1} gene because of action of Akt/PKB on Forkhead transcription factor	diverse tumors
Increased degradation of p27^{Kip1} protein because of Skp2 overexpression	breast, colorectal, and lung carcinomas, and lymphomas
Cytoplasmic localization of p27^{Kip1} protein due to Akt/PKB action	breast, esophagus, colon, thyroid carcinomas

Specific alteration	**Clinical result**
Cytoplasmic localization of $p21^{Cip1}$ protein due to Akt/PKB action	diverse tumors
Multiple concomitant alterations by Myc, N-myc, or L-myc	
Increased expression of ID1, ID2 leading to pRb sequestration	diverse tumors
Increased expression of cyclin D2 leading to pRb phosphorylation	diverse tumors
Increased expression of E2F1, E2F2, E2F3 leading to expression of cyclin E	diverse tumors
Increased expression of CDK4 leading to pRb phosphorylation	diverse tumors
Increased expression of Cul1 leading to $p27^{Kip1}$ degradation	diverse tumors
Repression of $p15^{INK4B}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ expression allowing pRb phosphorylation	diverse tumors

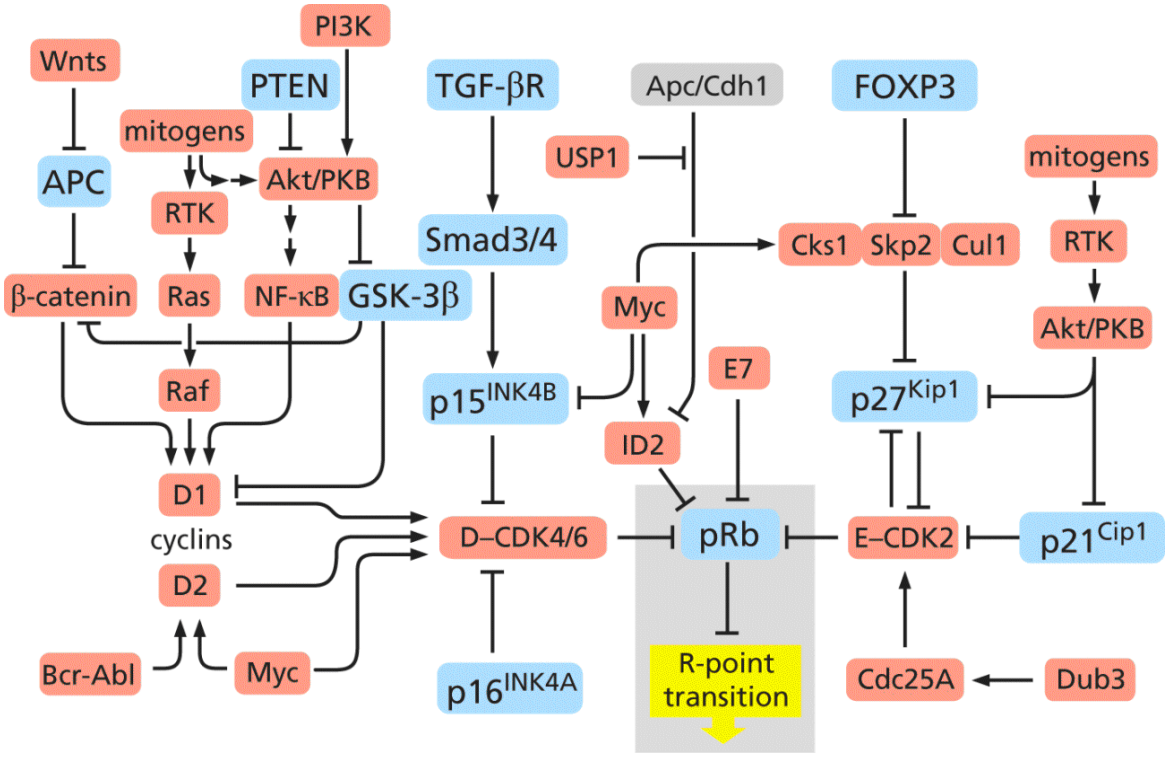
Table 8.3 Alteration of the cell cycle clock in human tumors A plus sign indicates that this gene or gene product is altered in at least 10% of tumors analyzed. Alteration of gene product can include abnormal absence or overexpression. Alteration of gene can include mutation and promoter

methylation. More than one of the indicated alterations may be found in a given tumor.

Gene product or gene							
Tumor type	**Rb**	**Cyclin E1**	**Cyclin D1**	**$p16^{INK4A}$**	**$p27^{Kip1}$**	**CDK4/6**	**% of tumors with 1 or more changes**
glioblastoma	+	+		+	+	+/+	>80
mammary carcinoma	+	+	+	+	+	+/	>80
lung carcinoma	+	+	+	+	+	+/	>90
pancreatic carcinoma			[a]		+		>80
gastrointestinal carcinoma	+	+	+ [b]	+	+	+/ [c]	>80
endometrial carcinoma	+	+	+	+	+	+/	>80
bladder carcinoma	+	+	+	+	+		>70

Gene product or gene							
Tumor type	**Rb**	**Cyclin E1**	**Cyclin D1**	**p16^{INK4A}**	**p27^{Kip1}**	**CDK4/6**	**% of tumors with 1 or more changes**
leukemia	+	+	+	+ [d]	+	+/	>90
head-and-neck carcinomas	+		+	+	+	+/	>90
lymphoma	+	+	+ [e]	+ [d]	+	/+	>90
melanoma		+	+	+	+	+/	>20
hepatoma	+	+	+	+ [d]	+	+/ [c]	>90
prostate carcinoma	+	+	+	+	+		>70
testis/ovary carcinomas	+	+	+ [b]	+	+	+/	>90
osteosarcoma		+		+		+/	>80
other sarcomas		+	+	+	+	/+	>90

Adapted from M. Malumbres and M. Barbacid, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 1:222–231, 2001.

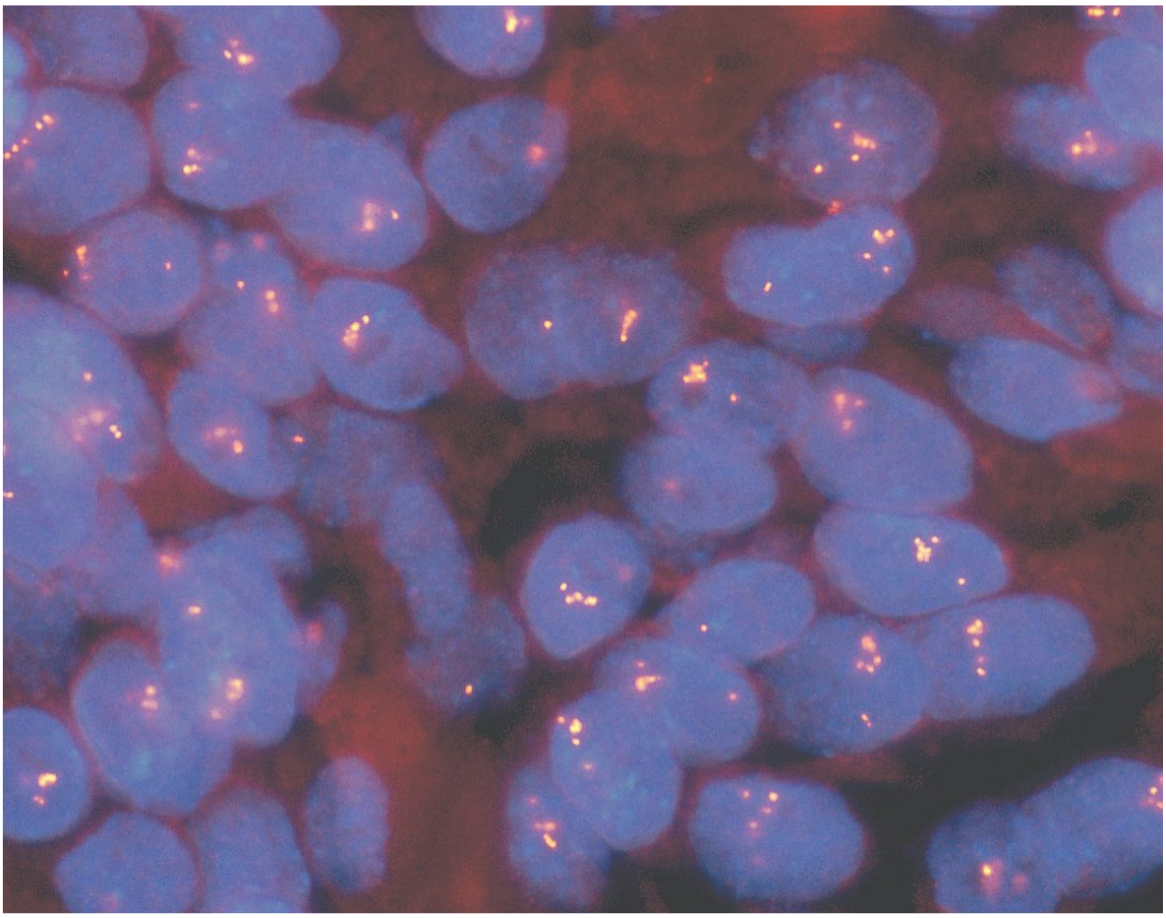


A complex network of activation and inhibition relationships among over three dozen genes and proteins. The many chains of interaction converge on D–C D K 4 slash 6, E–C D K2, and other inhibitors of p R b, which inhibits the R-point transition.

Figure 8.26 Perturbation of the R-point transition in human tumors The decision to advance through the R-point transition (*yellow, middle, bottom*) can be perturbed in a variety of ways in human tumors. Elements that favor advance through the R point are drawn in *red*, whereas those that block this advance are shown in *blue*. Almost all human tumors show either a hyperactivity of one or more of the agents favoring this advance (*red*) or an inactivation of the agents blocking this advance (*blue*). Proteins whose expression levels or activities are not known to change during the process of tumor formation are shown in *gray*.

Yet another strategy used by cancer cells to inactivate pRb function is indicated by the presence of very high levels of cyclin D1 in a variety of human tumor cells; the resulting D1–CDK4/6 complexes sequester $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules (see

Figure 8.14B), freeing E–CDK2 complexes to drive hyperphosphorylation and inactivation of pRb. This dynamic is most widely documented in breast cancer cells, in which as many as half of the tumors have been reported to show elevated levels of this G_1 cyclin. In these and other carcinomas, the overexpression is sometimes achieved by increases in the copy number of the cyclin D1 genes (that is, gene amplification; **Figure 8.27**). More frequently, however, breast cancer cells acquire excessive cyclin D1 by altering the upstream signaling pathways (see Section 8.8) that are normally responsible for controlling expression of the cyclin D1 gene.



A microscopy image showing many stained nuclei, looking like dark violet fish eggs. Within each nucleus there are clumps of bright spots, like tiny electric lights. Not all nuclei have the same number of bright spots.

Figure 8.27 Amplification of the cyclin D1 gene The use of fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH) makes it possible to detect the copy number of specific genes in histological sections. Here is the result of using a probe for *CCND1*, the human gene encoding cyclin D1, to determine the copy number

of this gene in the cells of a head-and-neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC). Each bright spot represents a single copy of this gene. Individual HNSCC nuclei are stained *purple*. Hence, *CCND1* is amplified to various extents here, being present in three to five copies per cell in this tumor. More generally, *CCND1* is found to be amplified in about one-third of HNSCC tumors, leading to corresponding increases in cyclin D1 expression and resulting loss of proper control of pRb phosphorylation. Similar observations (*not shown*) can be made with human breast cancer cells. (From K. Freier et al., *Cancer Res*. 61:1179–1182, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

A more devious ploy is frequently exploited by cancer cells to disable the pRb machinery: they shut down expression of their $p16^{INK4A}$ tumor suppressor protein. Recall that the $p16^{INK4A}$ protein, like its $p15^{INK4B}$ cousin, inhibits the cyclin D–CDK4/6 responsible for initiating pRb phosphorylation. In the absence of the $p16^{INK4A}$ protein, pRb phosphorylation operates without an important braking mechanism, resulting in excessive cyclin D–CDK4/6 kinase activity, $p27^{Kip1}$ sequestration, pRb hyperphosphorylation, and associated inappropriate inactivation of pRb (see Figure 8.26). Individuals suffering from one form of familial melanoma inherit defective versions of the $p16^{INK4A}$ gene. It is unclear why loss of this particular CDK inhibitor, which seems to operate in all cell types throughout the body, should affect specifically the melanocytes in the skin that are the normal precursors of melanoma cells. In sporadic (that is, nonfamilial) tumors arising in various tissues, cancer cells resort far more frequently to another strategy to shed $p16^{INK4A}$ function—they methylate the CpG sequences present in the promoter of the $p16^{INK4A}$ gene (see Section 7.7), thereby shutting down transcription of this gene

Evidence of an even more cunning strategy for destabilizing this control circuit has been found in the genomes of a small number of both sporadic and familial melanomas. In these cancers, a point mutation in the CDK4 gene (the R24C mutation) creates CDK4 molecules that are no longer susceptible to inhibition by the family of INK4 molecules (that is, p15, p16, p18, and p19). Although these various CDK inhibitors may be perfectly intact and functional in such tumor cells, their normally responsive CDK4 target now eludes them. Once again, this permits CDK4, together with its cyclin D partners, to drive the initial steps of pRb phosphorylation and sequestration of $p27^{Kip1}$ (see Figure 8.14B) in a deregulated fashion, driving cells through the R point in the late G_1 phase of the cell cycle.

[Because the R24C mutation creates a dominant allele of CDK4 (at the cellular level), only one of the two copies of the gene encoding this CDK needs to be mutated in order for a cancer cell to derive proliferative benefit. Mice carrying one or two copies of this R24C allele develop a diverse variety of tumors, including those affecting mesenchymal, epithelial, and hematopoietic cell types.]

The most critical CDK inhibitor involved in cancer pathogenesis may well be $p27^{Kip1}$. As mentioned earlier, $p27^{Kip1}$ is involved largely in inhibiting the activity of cyclin E–CDK2 complexes (for example, see Figure 8.14B). As cells exit the cell cycle into the G_0 quiescent state, $p27^{Kip1}$ levels rise (see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.8**). Conversely, as cells re-enter the cell cycle and advance through its G_1 phase, the levels of free $p27^{Kip1}$ are reduced progressively throughout early and mid-G_1 through cyclin D:CDK4/6 sequestration. Beginning at the R point, $p27^{Kip1}$ levels fall precipitously by the actions of cyclin E–CDK2 complexes. In more detail, during progressive sequestration of $p27^{Kip1}$ protein by cyclin D:CDK4/6, a small number of E–CDK2 molecules are freed from the inhibitory effects of bound $p27^{Kip1}$ protein. The now-active E–CDK2 molecules can phosphorylate $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules (on their threonine 187 residue) that are still bound to E–CDK2 complexes, causing the resulting phosphoproteins to be recognized and bound by Skp2, which directs them to ubiquitylation and rapid degradation in the proteasomes. This rapidly self-amplifying regulatory loop (see Figure 8.20) results in the explosive elimination of the remaining $p27^{Kip1}$ molecules and the rapid activation of E–CDK2 complexes and pRb hyperphosphorylation. Indeed, the declining levels of Skp2 explain the observed increases in $p27^{Kip1}$ as cells enter into G_0. Interestingly, a very similarly structured complex is involved in the programmed degradation of cyclin E later on as cells pass through the G_1/S transition (see Figures 8.8 and 8.10).

The inverse relationship between $p27^{Kip1}$ levels and those of Skp2 is especially apparent in various human cancers such as mammary and oral carcinomas, as well as lymphomas (see, for example, **Supplementary Sidebar 8.8**), with higher levels of Skp2 portending shorter patient survival. Moreover, when the levels of $p27^{Kip1}$ are measured in the cells of human esophageal, breast, colorectal, and lung carcinomas, poor patient survival is correlated with low levels of this CDK inhibitor. In all of these tumors, Skp2 seems to act as a proliferation-promoting oncoprotein by forcing the degradation of the critical $p27^{Kip1}$ CDK inhibitor. One clue to the ultimate source of elevated Skp2 levels comes from research

indicating that the Notch protein (see Section 6.12), which is hyperactive in many types of human cancer, increases transcription of the gene encoding Skp2.

We have read repeatedly about the hyperactive state of the Akt/PKB kinase in many human tumors, which is caused by a variety of molecular defects, including hyperactive growth factor receptors, loss of the PTEN tumor suppressor protein, and mutations in the PI3K gene (see Section 6.6). It, too, has effects on the cell cycle clock in cancer cells by reducing the effective levels of important CDK inhibitors (see Figure 8.13). By phosphorylating $p21^{Cip1}$ and $p27^{Kip1}$, Akt/PKB ensures the cytoplasmic localization of these two critical antagonists of cell cycle advance, thereby marginalizing them. At the same time, Akt/PKB can suppress expression of the gene encoding $p27^{Kip1}$ by phosphorylating a transcription factor of the Forkhead family, which serves to further reduce the overall concentrations of $p27^{Kip1}$ in the cell. As if this were not enough, Akt/PKB ambushes $p27^{Kip1}$ in a third way: by phosphorylating Skp2, Akt/PKB activates the latter, enhancing its ability to bind $p27^{Kip1}$, resulting thereafter in the increased ubiquitylation and degradation of $p27^{Kip1}$ (see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.8**).

The diverse genetic and biochemical strategies shown in Figure 8.26 are all focused on one common goal—that of overwhelming and deregulating pRb function, thereby destroying the tight control that it normally imposes on the R-point transition. Darwinian selection, occurring in the microcosm of living tissues, favors the outgrowth of cells that, by hook or by crook, have succeeded in inactivating the critical pRb braking system and thus deregulating the R-point transition.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aCyclin D3 (not cyclin D1) is present and is up-regulated in some tumors.Return to reference a
- bCyclin D2 also is up-regulated in some tumors.Return to reference b
- bCyclin D2 also is up-regulated in some tumors.Return to reference b
- cCDK2 is also found to be up-regulated in some tumors.Return to reference c
- cCDK2 is also found to be up-regulated in some tumors.Return to reference c
- $dp15^{INK4B}$ is also found to be absent in some tumors.Return to reference d
- $dp15^{INK4B}$ is also found to be absent in some tumors.Return to reference d
- $dp15^{INK4B}$ is also found to be absent in some tumors.Return to reference d
- eCyclin D2 and D3 are also found up-regulated in some lymphomas.Return to reference e

OceanofPDF.com

8.13 Synopsis and prospects

All of the physiological signals and signaling pathways affecting cell proliferation must, sooner or later, be connected in some fashion to the operations of the cell cycle clock. It represents the brain of the cell—the central signal processor that receives afferent signals from diverse sources, integrates them, and makes the final decisions concerning growth versus quiescence, and in the case of the growth-versus-quiescence decision, whether or not the exit from the active cell cycle will be reversible. Connected with the latter decision are the mechanisms governing entrance into tissue-specific differentiation programs.

The core components of the cell cycle clock are already present in clearly recognizable form in single-cell eukaryotes, including the much-studied baker's yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Single-cell organisms such as this one respond to a far smaller range of external signals than do metazoan cells residing within complex tissues. These simple organisms lack the hundred and more distinct types of growth factor receptors that vertebrate cells display on their surfaces, as well as other receptors, such as integrins, that our cells use to sense and control attachment to the extracellular matrix. Yeast cells also lack the growth-inhibitory receptors, such as the TGF-β receptors, that play such a critical role in the economy of mammalian tissues.

All this explains why the peripheral wiring that regulates the core cell cycle machinery of animal cells has been added relatively recently in the history of life on this planet—perhaps 600 million years ago when metazoa may first have appeared. The need to respond to a wide variety of afferent signals explains why so many distinct layers of regulation have been imposed on the core machinery. Without these additional regulators, notably the CDK inhibitors, the core machinery could not be made responsive to the diverse array of signals that impinge on individual metazoan cells and modulate their proliferation within complex tissues.

While these connections between the cell exterior and the cell cycle clock were being forged, other critical regulators became integrated into this complex circuitry. As might be anticipated, similarly constructed pRb- and E2F-like proteins are present in worms and flies, indicating their presence in early metazoans. Actually, the invention of the key governors of G_1 progression—pRb and its two cousins, p107 and p130—seems to have occurred well before the rise of metazoa: a pRb–E2F signaling pathway involved in cell cycle control is already present in flowering plants and, indeed, orthologs of these proteins can be found in *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*, a single-cell alga that is related to the ancestors of land plants.

pRb may not have been the first of these three pocket proteins to have evolved, but during the ascendance of mammals, it surpassed the others in its ability to govern the critical decision made at the R point. These three proteins preside over various aspects of the growth-versus-quiescence decision of the cell and in this sense lie *upstream* of the cell cycle clock. At the same time, by affecting gene transcription, these proteins create a coupling between the cell cycle clock and the *downstream* circuits that must be activated in order for cells to execute the complex biochemical changes that enable them to enter into S phase. A partially unresolved question is: if pRb controls cell proliferation in many cell types throughout the body, why does germline heterozygosity at the RB locus predispose humans specifically to develop retinal tumors and osteosarcomas (**Supplementary Sidebar 8.10**)?

Some aspects of the neoplastic growth state can be explained by the workings of the cell cycle clock. We can explain the deregulated proliferation of cancer cells in terms of the operations of pRb and the molecules that control its state of phosphorylation. Without pRb at the helm, the requirement for the growth-promoting actions of oncoproteins such as Ras is greatly reduced, and cells advance through G_1 without fulfilling many of the prerequisites that normally determine whether or not passage through the R-point transition will proceed. The coupling between proliferation and blocked differentiation, still incompletely understood, seems to be traceable to the operations of pRb and to proteins such as Myc, which simultaneously drives the cell cycle clock forward through G_1 and antagonizes some of the master regulators of differentiation programs.

Perhaps surprisingly, one important aspect of the proliferative control of cells operates independently of the cell cycle clock. As we will learn in detail in Chapter 10, normal cells can replicate only a limited number of times before they lose the ability to proliferate further; cancer cells have an unlimited proliferative capacity—the phenotype of replicative immortality. The molecular devices within cells that tally the number of successive replicative generations through which a cell lineage has passed are embedded in the chromosomal DNA, and these devices do not seem to be controlled by the cyclin–CDK complexes regulating cell cycle advance.

Yet other aspects of the malignant growth program are not controlled by the cell cycle clock. Cells respond to severe, essentially irreparable genomic damage by activating their cell suicide program—apoptosis; this response does not seem to be connected directly to the cell cycle machinery. This program will be the subject of much of our discussions in the next chapter.

Many other peculiarities of the cancer cell phenotype are largely the purview of cytoplasmic oncoproteins such as Ras. Included here are phenotypes of cell motility, changes in cell shape, anchorage independence, alterations in energy metabolism, and

invasiveness. These behaviors are also not controlled by the cell cycle clock, which does its work in the nucleus.

In spite of significant alterations that the cell cycle clock suffers in cancer cells, we recognize that the effects of these changes are felt largely during the G_1 phase of the cell cycle. We can understand this by noting that the R-point transition occurring toward the end of G_1 represents a critical decision point in the life of a cell; this decision must be deregulated if cancer cells are to gain proliferative advantage. However, once a cell has moved past the R point and reached the G_1/S transition, the remaining steps of the cell cycle proceed in an essentially automatic, pre-programmed fashion. Accordingly, the S, G_2, and M phases of cancer cells, which together represent an extraordinarily complex program of biochemical and cell-biological steps, closely resemble the comparable cell cycle phases of normal cells. This similarity helps to explain an often-noted aspect of cancer cells: their growth-and-division cycles are not necessarily shorter than those of many normal cells in the body. Instead, cancer cells continue to enter into these cycles and thus continue to proliferate under conditions that would force normal cells to halt proliferation. The importance of the G_1 machinery in cancer cell proliferation is highlighted by clinical work reported in 2016 in which the Progression-Free Survival (PFS) of a class of breast cancer patients was increased from 14.5 months to 24.8 months by the addition of a CDK4/6 inhibitor to their treatment protocol.

Although the effects of deregulating the cell cycle clock are felt largely in late G_1, there are more subtle changes that extend into later phases of the cell cycle. For example, pRb–E2F1 complexes also seem to regulate the expression of genes that play key roles in organizing the complex steps of mitosis; the products of these genes contribute to chromosome condensation (during metaphase), centromere function, and general chromosomal stability. These more recent discoveries now indicate that cells that have lost pRb function suffer from chromosome instability (CIN) in addition to deregulation of the R-point transition, suggesting that in pRb-negative cells, CIN conspires with deregulation of the G_1/S transition to accelerate multi-step tumor progression. Finally, scattered research reports describe effects of TGF-β on the advance of cells through the G_2 phase of the cell cycle, indicating that, contrary to a depiction earlier in this chapter, this cytokine does not entirely lose its effects on a cell after its passage through the R point.

In addition to the critical regulators of G_1 progression and chromosomal stability, the only other components of the cell cycle clock that seem to be affected in the malignant growth state are the small cohort of proteins that serve as checkpoint controls during the G_1/S transition, during S phase, and during M phase. Their inactivation, which occurs in some cancers, is not directed toward the immediate goal of deregulating

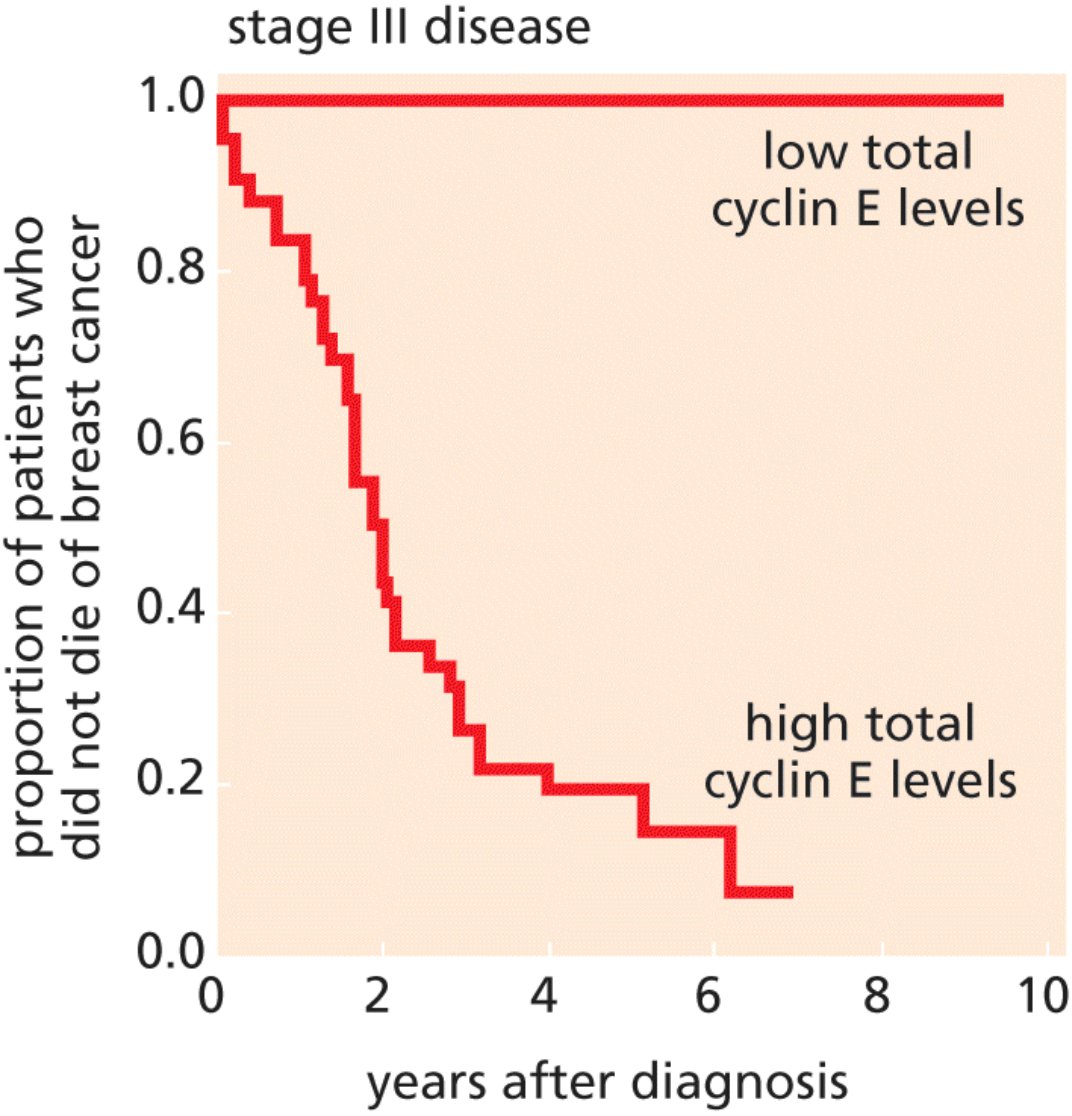
proliferation. Rather, the inactivation of these checkpoint controls serves to destabilize the cellular genome, enabling incipient cancer cells to generate a wide variety of permutations of the normal human genome. These cells and their descendants then test the resulting novel genetic configurations, searching for those that are particularly advantageous for neoplastic growth. We will return to the theme of genomic destabilization in Chapter 12.

Large gaps in this scenario remain to be filled in. We do not understand how the proliferation-versus-differentiation decision is made in most of the body's cell types. Moreover, many of the currently embraced models about the operations of the cell cycle clock, as described in this chapter, may one day require substantial revision.

For example, mutant mouse embryos that have been deprived of both copies of each of the three D-type cyclin genes (that is, with a $D1^{-/-}$ $D2^{-/-}$ $D3^{-/-}$ genotype) are able to pass through most stages of embryonic development, some dying as late as embryonic day 16 (out of the ~20 days of full-term gestation). How do the cells of these embryos succeed in advancing through many cycles of growth and division without D-type cyclins driving their advance through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle? Similarly, mouse embryos lacking both copies of each of the two cyclin E genes (that is, with an $E1^{-/-}$ $E2^{-/-}$ genotype) develop until mid-gestation, at which point they die because of placental defects; if these are circumvented, then the embryos can develop to term, whereupon they die. The existing models provide no insight into how the cells of these embryos are able to complete the last steps of the G_1 phase and initiate the S phase of the cell cycle. These startling results might suggest the operations of a normally latent cell cycle clock, possibly inherited from our protozoan ancestors, that is able to assume control when the more modern, metazoan cell cycle machinery fails to do its job.

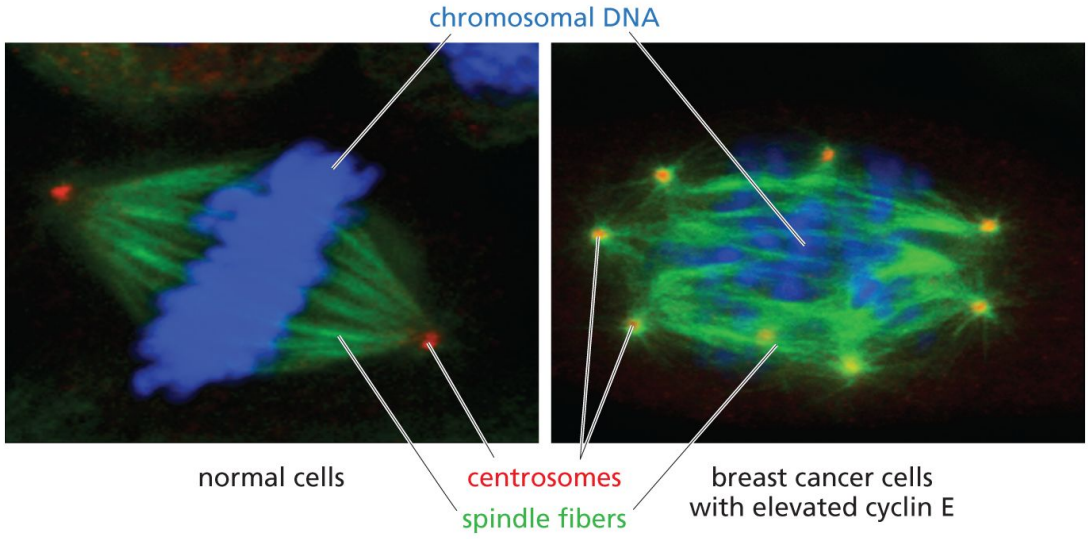
We have read about the details of cell cycle control and the various ways by which it is disrupted in many types of cancer cells, but the ultimate motivation behind these discussions is a need to understand clinical disease: How do these changes actually affect tumor progression and patient outcome? In fact, losses of pRb function can have particularly striking effects on the behavior of cancer cells and thus tumors. For example, as indicated in **Figure 8.28A**, abnormally high levels of cyclin E in the cancer cells of breast carcinoma patients are strongly predictive of aggressive malignancy and poor patient outcome, whereas low levels indicate long-term, disease-free survival. In this case, expression of the cyclin E mRNA may be elevated, and the degradative mechanisms that are normally responsible for reducing cyclin E levels are likely to be compromised. The resulting excessively high levels of cyclin E drive deregulated pRb phosphorylation and inactivation. Observations like these provide compelling indications that the cell cycle clock is, in its normal state, an important

deterrent to cancer development and, when deranged by various lesions, a potent agent for promoting cancer progression.



A graph showing the proportion, as time goes on, of Stage 3 breast-cancer patients who have not died of the disease. Low total cyclin E levels are associated with 100 percent non-mortality even out to ten years. With high total cyclin E levels, the outcomes are much worse. Half of the patients have died of the disease by the 2-year mark, and over 90 percent have died by the 6-year mark.

(A)



The effects of breast cancer on cell mitosis, seen in two contrasting fluorescence microscopy images. On the left, normal mitosis shows a band of D N A in blue with two red centromeres and two sets of green spindle fibers on either side in the usual orderly arrangement. On the right, green spindle fibers surround the blue D N A, and eight centromeres encircle the spindle fibers.

(B)

Figure 8.28 Cyclin E and breast cancer progression (A) This Kaplan–Meier plot presents the clinical progression of disease in women with stage III breast cancer, that is, those having relatively large primary tumors and cancer cells in regional lymph nodes but lacking observable metastases at distant anatomical sites. Plotted is the fraction of patients (*ordinate*) who had not died from their disease at the indicated times after initial diagnosis (*abscissa*). Total cyclin E includes both the high– and low–molecular-weight forms of this cyclin. (B) During normal mitosis, bipolar spindles are observed (*left*). However, in aggressive breast cancers, low–molecular-weight forms of cyclin E accumulate in the cytoplasm of the associated carcinoma cells, where they drive the formation of multiple extra centrosomes and resulting multipolar spindles; eight are visible here (*right*). These changes lead, in turn, to karyotypic chaos and the acceleration of tumor progression. (A, adapted from K. Keyomarsi et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 347:1566–1575, 2002. B, from R. Bagheri-Yarmand et al., *Cancer Res.* 70:5074–5084, 2010. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Our discussions of pRb and cell cycle control would suggest the preeminent importance of this protein among all the many products of tumor suppressor genes. In

fact, pRb shares this position with a second protein, p53, which plays an equally important role in normal cell physiology and in cancer development. In essence, the pRb circuitry deals with the relations between the cell and the outside world. The p53 circuitry has a very different function, because it monitors the *internal well-being* of the cell and permits cell proliferation and cell survival only if all the vital operating systems within the cell are functioning properly. As we will see in the next chapter, the inactivation of this p53 signaling pathway is as important to developing cancer cells as the deregulation of the controls governing pRb and the R-point transition.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

replicative immortality
: Trait of a cell or population of cells that reflects the ability of these cells and their descendants to proliferate indefinitely, usually observed in cell culture.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- The cell cycle is a precisely programmed series of events that enables a cell to duplicate its contents and to divide into two daughter cells. This series of events is controlled by the machinery that is often termed the cell cycle clock.
- Specific steps of the cell cycle are controlled by changing the levels and availability of cyclins. Cyclins function by activating the catalytic function of their partners—the cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs), a family of serine/threonine protein kinases. Additional control of the cell cycle is provided by CDK inhibitors, which antagonize the activities of cyclin-CDK complexes.
- Although the levels of the D cyclins are controlled primarily through extracellular signals, the remaining cyclins operate on a preordained schedule, once the decision to advance into the late G_1 phase has been made; the gradual accumulation of these other cyclins followed by their rapid destruction ensures that the cell cycle clock can move in only one direction.
- Checkpoint controls operating throughout the cell cycle ensure that a new step in cell cycle progression is not undertaken before the preceding step is properly completed and that cell cycle progression cannot proceed if a cell's genome is damaged. Many types of cancer cells have inactivated one or more of these checkpoint controls, thereby allowing them to more rapidly accumulate the mutant genes and altered karyotypes that propel their neoplastic growth.
- The critical decisions concerning growth versus quiescence and entrance into post-mitotic differentiated states are made in the G_1 phase of the cell cycle. In normal cells, the decision to grow and replicate requires signals from the external environment (hence the dependence of D-cyclin levels on mitogenic signals). Thereafter, advance through the other phases of the cell cycle is relatively independent of external signals.
- The restriction point (R point) represents a point at which the cell commits itself, essentially irrevocably, to complete the remainder of

the cell cycle or, alternatively, to remain in G_1 and possibly retreat from the active cell cycle into the G_0, quiescent state. Deregulation of the R-point decision-making machinery accompanies the formation of most types of cancer cells, because it leads to unconstrained cell proliferation.

- Decisions concerning growth versus quiescence are governed by the state of phosphorylation of the three pocket proteins—pRb, p107, and p130—which in turn is controlled by the D cyclins and cyclin E. pRb, the retinoblastoma protein, controls passage through the R point. Hypophosphorylated pRb blocks passage through the R point, whereas hyperphosphorylated pRb permits this passage.
- pRb's phosphorylation is carefully controlled. Growth factors induce expression of D-type cyclins, which initiate pRb inactivation by monophosphorylating it. The resulting hypophosphorylation of pRb leaves it in a growth-inhibitory state, which appears to be a prerequisite for its hyperphosphorylation (and consequent inactivation) by cyclin E–CDK2 complexes.
- pRb acts by binding or releasing E2F transcription factors associated with promoters of genes that usher the cell from late G_1 into S phase. Hypophosphorylated pRb binds E2Fs, whereas hyperphosphorylated pRb releases them. When viral oncoproteins are present, they mimic pRb hyperphosphorylation by preventing pRB from binding and inactivating E2Fs.
- In cancer cells, a number of alternative mechanisms operate to ensure that cell proliferation is not constrained by pRb. Many of these cause pRb hyperphosphorylation and result in its functional inactivation.
- pRb function can be lost in a variety of ways, including excessive mitogenic signals (because these lead to elevated levels of D cyclins); mutation of the *Rb* gene; binding of pRb by a viral oncoprotein (for example, HPV E7); and the actions of cellular oncoproteins (for example, Myc) that deregulate pRb phosphorylation or directly affect pRb activity.
- The control of cell differentiation is coupled to the regulation of cell cycle progression. Hypophosphorylated pRB is needed to halt the proliferation of cells and to facilitate their differentiation. Conversely, other regulatory proteins, such as Myc and the IDs, work to inhibit cell differentiation.

- In most types of cancer, differentiation is partially or completely blocked. In general, the more differentiated the cells are that form a tumor, the less aggressive is the disease of cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Why is pRb function compromised in human tumors through mutations of its encoding gene, whereas the genes encoding its two cousins, p107 and p130, have virtually never been found to suffer mutations in the genomes of cancer cells?
2. Why have DNA tumor viruses evolved the ability to inactivate pRb function?
3. How might loss of a CDK inhibitor's function affect the control of cell cycle advance?
4. What molecular mechanisms operate to ensure that once the decision to advance through the restriction point has been made, this leads to an essentially irreversible commitment to complete the remaining phases of the cell cycle through M phase?
5. How are the decisions of cell growth versus quiescence coupled mechanistically with the decisions governing cell differentiation? Why must these two processes be tightly coupled?
6. How do cells ensure that the transcription-activating functions of the E2F transcription factors are limited to a narrow window of time in the cell cycle? What might occur if E2F function were allowed to continue throughout the cell cycle?
7. In what ways does the Myc oncoprotein deregulate cell proliferation and differentiation?
8. Why is it important that the cell cycle clock never runs backward?
9. What kinds of experiments suggest that the cell cycle clock may be organized differently in certain cell types or stages of embryonic development?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Adhikary S & Eilers M (2005) Transcriptional regulation and transformation by Myc proteins. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 6, 635–645.

Barbacid M, Ortega S, Sotillo R et al. (2005) Cell cycle and cancer: genetic analysis of the role of cyclin-dependent kinases. *Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol.* 70, 233–240.

Bashir T & Pagano M (2003) Aberrant ubiquitin-mediated proteolysis of cell cycle regulatory proteins and oncogenesis. *Adv. Cancer Res.* 65, 101–144.

Blais A & Dynlacht BD (2004) Hitting their targets: an emerging picture of E2F and cell cycle control. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 14, 527–532.

Bretones G, Delgado MD and Leon J (2015) Myc and cell cycle control. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1849:506-516.

Bucher N & Britten CD (2008) G2 checkpoint abrogation and checkpoint kinase-1 targeting in the treatment of cancer. *Br. J. Cancer* 98, 523–528.

Chen HZ, Tsai S-Y & Leone G (2009) Emerging roles of E2Fs in cancer: an exit from cell cycle control. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 9, 785–797.

Classon M & Dyson N (2001) p107 and p130: versatile proteins with interesting pockets. *Exp. Cell Res.* 264, 135–147.

Classon M & Harlow E (2002) The retinoblastoma tumour suppressor in development and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 910–917.

Coletta RD, Jedlicka P, Gutierrez-Hartmann A & Ford HL (2004) Transcriptional control of the cell cycle in mammary gland development and tumorigenesis. *J. Mammary Gland Biol. Neoplasia* 9, 39–53.

Diolaiti D, McFerrin L, Carroll PA & Eisenman RN (2015) Functional interactions among members of the MAX and MLX transcriptional network

during oncogenesis. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1849:484–500.

Duronio RJ & Xiong Y (2013) Signaling pathways that control cell proliferation. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 5:a008904.

Eilers M & Eisenman R (2008) Myc's broad reach. *Genes Dev.* 22, 2755–2766.

Ewen ME & Lamb J (2004) The activities of cyclin D1 that drive tumorigenesis. *Trends Mol. Med.* 10, 158–162.

Foster DA, Yellen P, Xu L & Saqcena M (2011) Regulation of G1 cell cycle progression: distinguishing the restriction point from a nutrient-sensing cell growth checkpoint. *Genes Cancer* 1, 1124–1131.

Frescas D & Pagano M (2009) Deregulated proteolysis by the F-box proteins SKP2 and β-TrCP: tipping the scales of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 438–449.

Gabay M, Li Y and Felsher DW (2014) MYC activation is a hallmark of cancer initiation and maintenance. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 4:a014241.

Gil J & Peters G (2006) Regulation of the INK4b–ARF–INK4a tumour suppressor locus: all for one or one for all. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 7, 667–677.

Hartl M (2016) The quest for targets executing MYC-dependent cell transformation. *Front. Oncol*. 6:132.

Hochegger H, Takeda S & Hunt T (2008) Cyclin-dependent kinases and cell-cycle transitions: does one fit all? *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 9, 910–916.

Iaquinta PJ & Lees JA (2007) Life and death decisions by the E2F transcription factors. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 19, 649–657.

Iavarone A & Lasorella A (2006) ID proteins in cancer and in neurobiology. *Trends Mol. Med.* 12, 588–594.

Kent LN & Leone G (2019) The broken cycle: E2F dysfunction in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 19:326–338.

Kim WY & Sharpless NE (2006) The regulation of INK4/ARF in cancer and aging. *Cell* 127, 265–275.

Lammens T, Li J, Leone G & De Veylder L (2009) Atypical E2Fs: new players in the E2F transcription factor family. *Trends Cell Biol.* 19, 111–118.

Lasorella A, Benezra R & Iavarone A (2014) The ID proteins: master regulators of cancer stem cells and tumour aggressiveness. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 14, 77-91.

Lim S & Kaldis P (2013) Cdks, cyclins and CKIs: roles beyond cell cycle regulation. *Development* 140:3079–3093.

Lindquist A, Rodríguez-Bravo V & Medema RH (2009) The decision to enter mitosis: feedback and redundancy in the mitotic entry network. *J. Cell Biol.* 185, 193–202.

Liu H, Dibling B, Spike B et al. (2004) New roles for the RB tumor suppressor protein. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 14, 55–64.

Macaluso M, Montanari M & Giordana A (2006) Rb family proteins as modulators of gene expression and new aspects regarding the interaction with chromatin remodeling enzymes. *Oncogene* 25, 5263–5267.

Malumbres M & Barbacid M (2001) To cycle or not to cycle: a critical decision in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 1, 222–231.

Massagué J (2004) G1 cell-cycle control and cancer. *Nature* 432, 298–307.

Massari ME & Murre C (2000) Helix-loop-helix proteins: regulators of transcription in eucaryotic organisms. *Mol. Cell Biol.* 20, 429–440.

Morgan DO (2007) The Cell Cycle: Principles of Control. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates.

Perk J, Iavarone A & Benezra R (2005) Id family of helix-loop-helix proteins in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 603–614.

Reed S (2003) Ratchets and clocks: the cell cycle, ubiquitylation and protein turnover. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 4, 855–864.

Sherr CJ (2001) The INK4a/ARF network in tumour suppression. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 2, 731–737.

Sherr CJ & McCormick F (2002) The RB and p53 pathways in cancer. *Cancer Cell* 2, 103–112.

Sherr CJ & Roberts JM (2004) Living with or without cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases. *Genes Dev.* 18, 2699–2711.

Sherr CH (2019) Surprising regulation of cell cycle entry. *Science* 366, 1315–1316.

Siegel PM & Massagué J (2003) Cytostatic and apoptotic actions of TGF-β in homeostasis and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3, 807–820.

Varlakhanova NV & Knoepfler PS (2009) Acting locally and globally: Myc's ever-expanding roles on chromatin. *Cancer Res.* 69, 7487–7490.

Whitfield ML, George LK, Grant GD & Perou CM (2006) Common markers of proliferation. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 99–106.

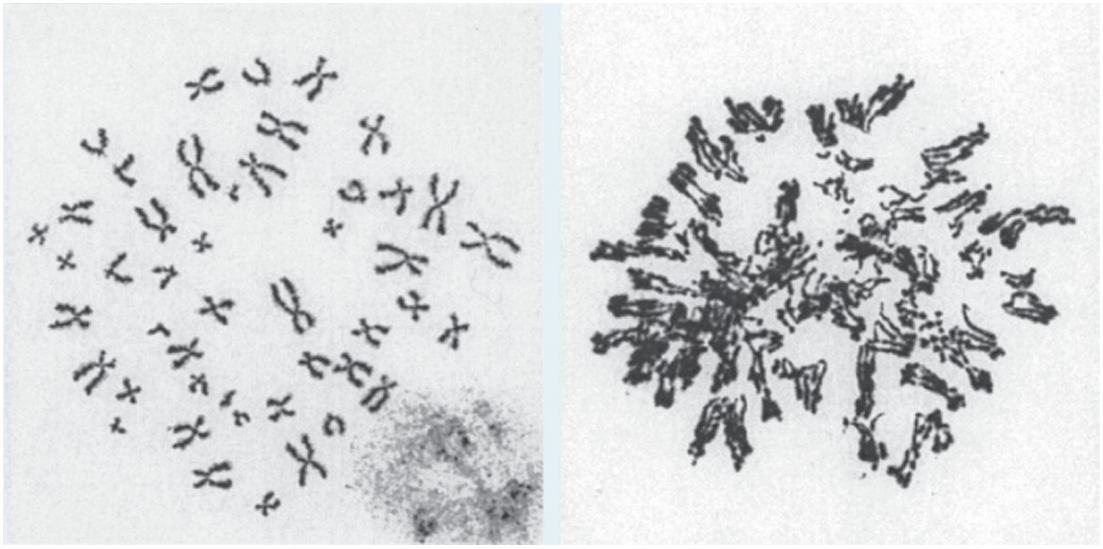
Yamasaki L & Pagano M (2004) Cell cycle, proteolysis and cancer. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 16, 623–628.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

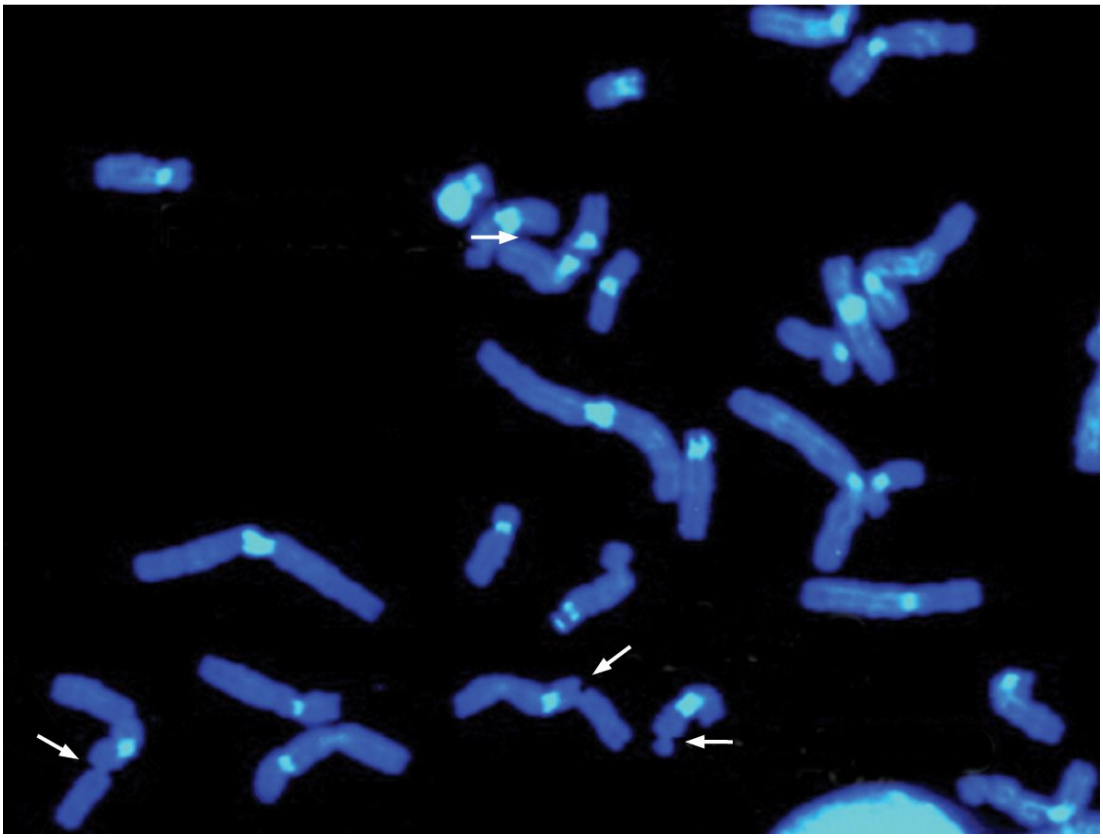
Supplementary Sidebar 8.1 Effects of breakdown of mitotic checkpoints

The checkpoint controls are imposed to ensure that (1) chromosomes replicate and segregate properly, (2) individual chromosomes remain intact, and (3) inadvertent re-replication of already-replicated DNA does not occur. These controls are often defective in cancer cells, leading to karyotypes that deviate from that seen in normal cells (**Figure S8.1**).



(A)

(B)

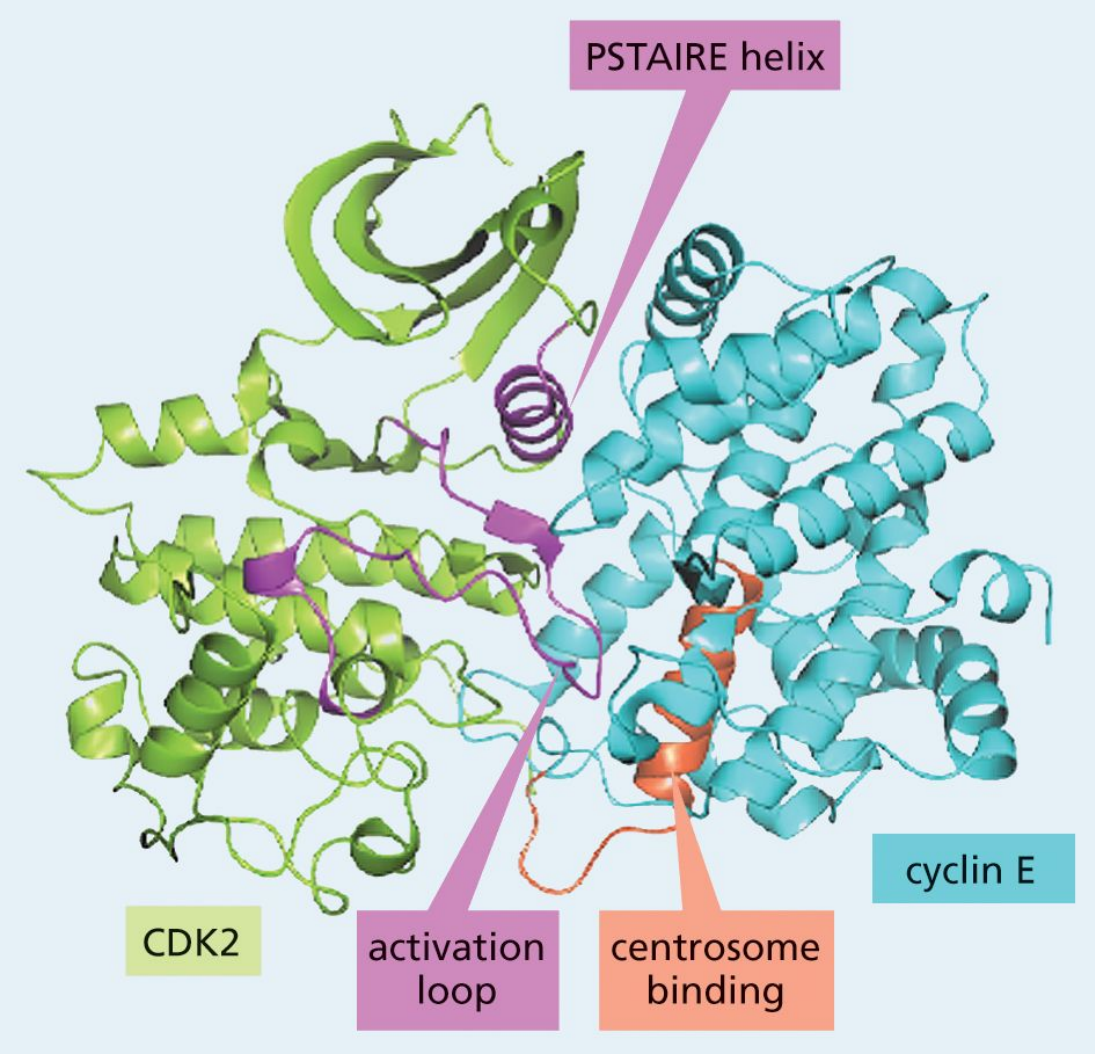


(C)

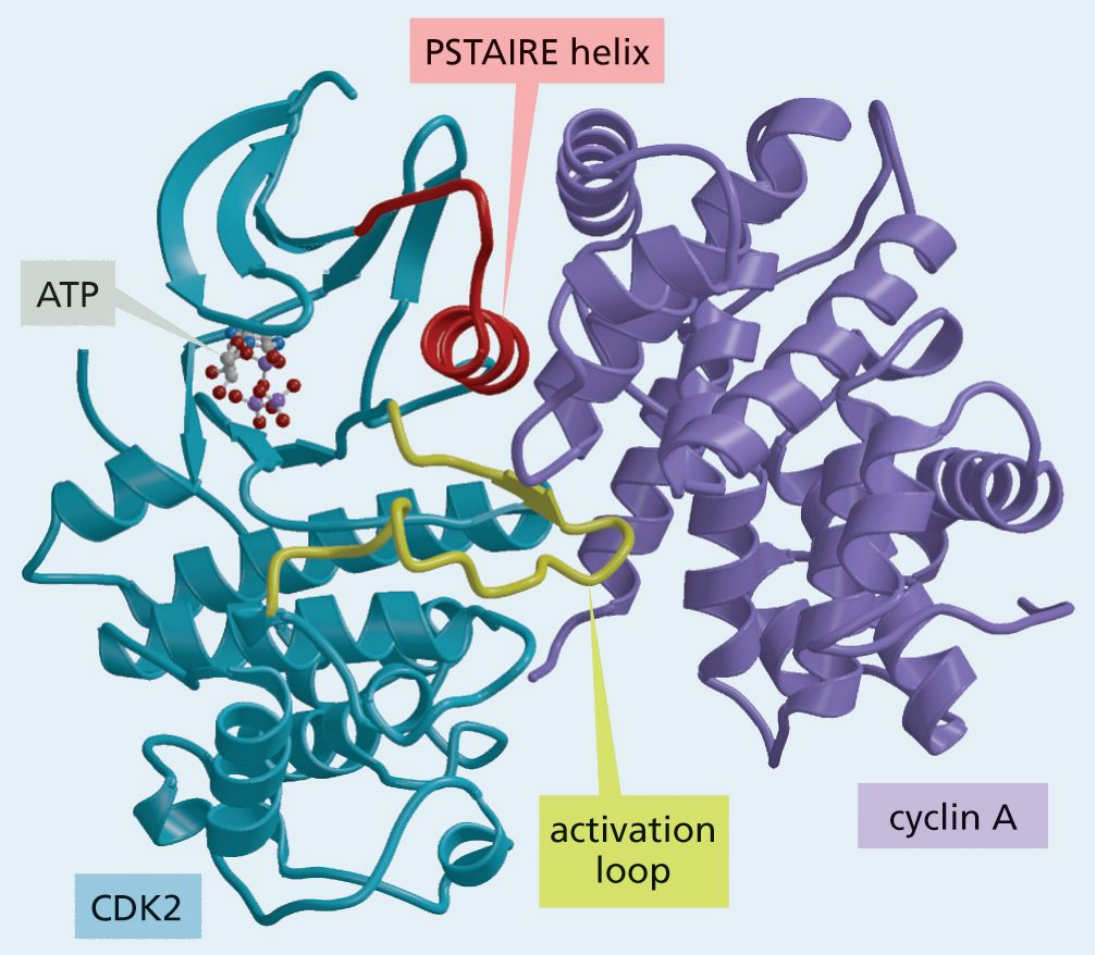
Figure S8.1 Consequences of loss of checkpoint controls Loss of critical cell cycle checkpoint control mechanisms is often manifested as an altered karyotype. (A) The normal human karyotype (*left*) is contrasted with that of a cell that has been deprived of the Rad17 checkpoint protein (*right*), which is responsible for preventing inadvertent re-replication of already-replicated chromosomal DNA, resulting in *endoreduplication* and increases in the *ploidy* of the cell. (B) The Bub1 protein normally prevents segregation of chromosomes in the event that one or more chromosomal pairs are not properly aligned on the metaphase plate. In its absence, cells gain or lose chromosomes, as seen in this spectral karyotyping (SKY) analysis, which indicates that this human cell has only one Chromosome 1 (*yellow, arrow, right*) and one Chromosome 6 (*red, arrow, left*). (Several other red-colored chromosomes are evident but can be identified as belonging to other chromosome pairs by their size and shading.) (C) The ATR (ataxia telangiectasia and Rad3 related) protein kinase is responsible for, among other functions, halting further DNA replication until stalled replication forks are repaired. In its absence, *fragile sites*—sites in the chromosome prone to breakage—become visible upon karyotypic analysis. Here, fragile sites on human Chromosomes 3 and 16 (*white arrows*) are apparent in cells lacking ATR function. (A, from X. Wang et al., *Genes Dev.* 17:965–970, 2003. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. B, from A. Musio et al., *Cancer Res.* 63:2855–2863, 2003. With permission from the American Association for Cancer Research. C, from A.M. Casper et al., *Am. J. Hum. Genet.* 75:654–660, 2004. With permission from Elsevier.)

Supplementary Sidebar 8.2 Structures of cyclin:CDK complexes

The structures of cyclin-CDK complexes provides some insights into how the cyclins control the catalytic activity and substrate specificity of these complexes (**Figure S8.2**). Not shown here are corresponding complexes of D-CDK4/6 complexes that play key roles in G_1 phase progression. In fact, there is a large cohort of distinct cyclin-CDK complexes that are involved in various processes not directly connected with cell cycle control and are not described in this book because of their apparent lack of direct involvement in cancer pathogenesis.


PSTAIRE helix
cyclin E
CDK2
activation loop
centrosome binding

(A)



(B)

Figure S8.2Cyclin–CDK complexes X-ray crystallographic analyses have revealed the structures of cyclin–cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) complexes, such as these formed by CDK2 with two of its alternative partners, cyclins A and E. In each case, the cyclin activates the CDK molecule through stereochemical shifts of the CDK catalytic site and directs the resulting activated complex to appropriate substrates for phosphorylation. (A) During the late G_1 phase of the cell cycle, cyclin E directs CDK2 to substrate proteins that must be phosphorylated in preparation for entrance into S phase. Another segment (*orange*) is involved with cyclin E's association with centrosomes. The PSTAIRE α-helix is present in all CDKs and is essential for the binding of cyclins and contributes to the catalytic site of the CDK. The activation loop, sometimes termed a T-loop, must be phosphorylated on a threonine residue by a CDK-activating kinase (CAK) in order for the catalytic function of a CDK to become activated (see also Figures S5.7B and 6.6B and C). (B) During the course of S phase, cyclin A replaces cyclin E and directs CDK2 to substrates that must be phosphorylated in order for S phase to

proceed. (A, from R. Honda et al., *EMBO J.* 24:452–463, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. B, from P.D. Jeffrey et al., *Nature* 376:313–320, 1995. With permission from Nature.)

Supplementary Sidebar 8.3 Why do mammalian cells employ three D-type cyclins?

The three D-type cyclins seem to have very similar functional powers in forming complexes with CDKs 4 and 6 in driving the monophosphorylation of pRB (see Section 8.6) and in driving the progressive sequestration of $p27^{Kip1}$ (see Figure 8.14B); the latter process appears to be the most important mechanism for determining the timing of the activation of the R point transition in late G_1. These similarities provoke the question of why mammalian cells express three apparently redundant cyclins.

One major clue comes from a description provided in Section 8.3 of their unique role: unlike all of the other cyclins associated with the cell cycle clock, the expression of D-type cyclins is controlled in large part by extracellular signals, specifically those triggering the firing of cell-surface receptors such as the tyrosine kinase-bearing growth factor receptors. The expression of the remaining cyclins is governed by intracellular signals that are intrinsic components of the cell cycle machinery and are not responsive to extracellular signals. This unique functional role positions D-type cyclins as molecular messengers that inform the cell cycle machinery about the extracellular signaling environment of the cell, specifically the incoming signals that determine whether or not a cell should proliferate in a specific tissue microenvironment.

These extracellular mitogenic signals impinge on the transcriptional promoters of the three genes encoding D-type cyclins. In fact, a diverse array of signals is experienced in various combinations by the hundreds of distinct differentiated cell types during embryonic development and adult tissue homeostasis. This demanded the development during metazoan evolution of D-type cyclins that could respond to a diversity of afferent signals impinging on a cell. What appears to be a redundancy actually offers the cell refined sensory input and enhanced flexibility of response. The promoter of each of the three encoding genes is under the control of a different set of signaling pathways and thus under the control of a different set of cell-surface receptors (**Table S8.1**). For example, the promoter of the *cyclin D1* gene (properly termed, in humans, as *CCND1*) carries sites for binding by at least six distinct transcription factors (see Figure 8.9B), which in turn are activated by a variety of growth factor receptors. In contrast, the *cyclin D2* promoter is responsive to activation by the Myc transcription factor and to extracellular signals that stimulate increases in the concentration of intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). The *cyclin D3* gene has been

found to be responsive to STAT3 and STAT5 transcription factors, and these in turn often respond to interleukin receptors active in various types of hematopoietic cells; the E2A transcription factor, which is active in programming the differentiation of lymphocytes, also controls *cyclin D3* expression. These arrangements enable a diverse set of extracellular signals to influence, often in combination, the levels of its various D-type cyclins, the activities of CDK4/6, and thus the advance of the cell cycle clock through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle.

Table S8.1 Induction of D-type cyclin expression by extracellular signals

Source of signal	**Signaling intermediaries**	**Type of cyclin**
RANK receptor	NF-κB pathway	D1
prolactin receptor	Jak/STAT	D1
estrogen receptor	AP-1 TF	D1
focal adhesion kinase		D1
HER2/Neu receptor	E2F and Sp1 TFs	D1
Wnts–Frizzled receptor	β-catenin and *TCF/LEF*	D1
Bcr/Abl		D2
FSH receptor	cyclic AMP	D2
various mitogens	Myc	D2
interleukin-4, 7 receptor		D2

Source of signal	Signaling intermediaries	Type of cyclin
interleukin-5 receptor	STAT3/5	D3
mitogens	E2A TF	D3

Abbreviations: RANK, receptor activator of NF-κB; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone.

Supplementary Sidebar 8.4 Mitogenic signals affect cyclin D1 levels in complex ways

The mitogenic signals flowing through the Ras proteins affect cyclin D1 levels in conflicting ways. Thus, the signaling pathways operating downstream of Ras proteins (see Figure 6.9) act in countervailing ways to regulate cyclin D1 protein levels (**Figure S8.3**). The best studied of these signals flow via the Ras → Raf → MAPK pathway (see Section 6.5). For example, members of the Fos family of transcription factors, which lie at the bottom of this signaling cascade (see Table 6.1), create the heterodimeric AP-1 transcription factors by forming complexes with Jun proteins. (Individual members of both sets of proteins are capable of functioning on their own as oncoproteins.) These AP-1 complexes are known to be powerful activators of cyclin D1 gene transcription. In addition, a variety of cytoplasmic signal-transducing proteins impinge on the cyclin D1 promoter in ways that are poorly understood.

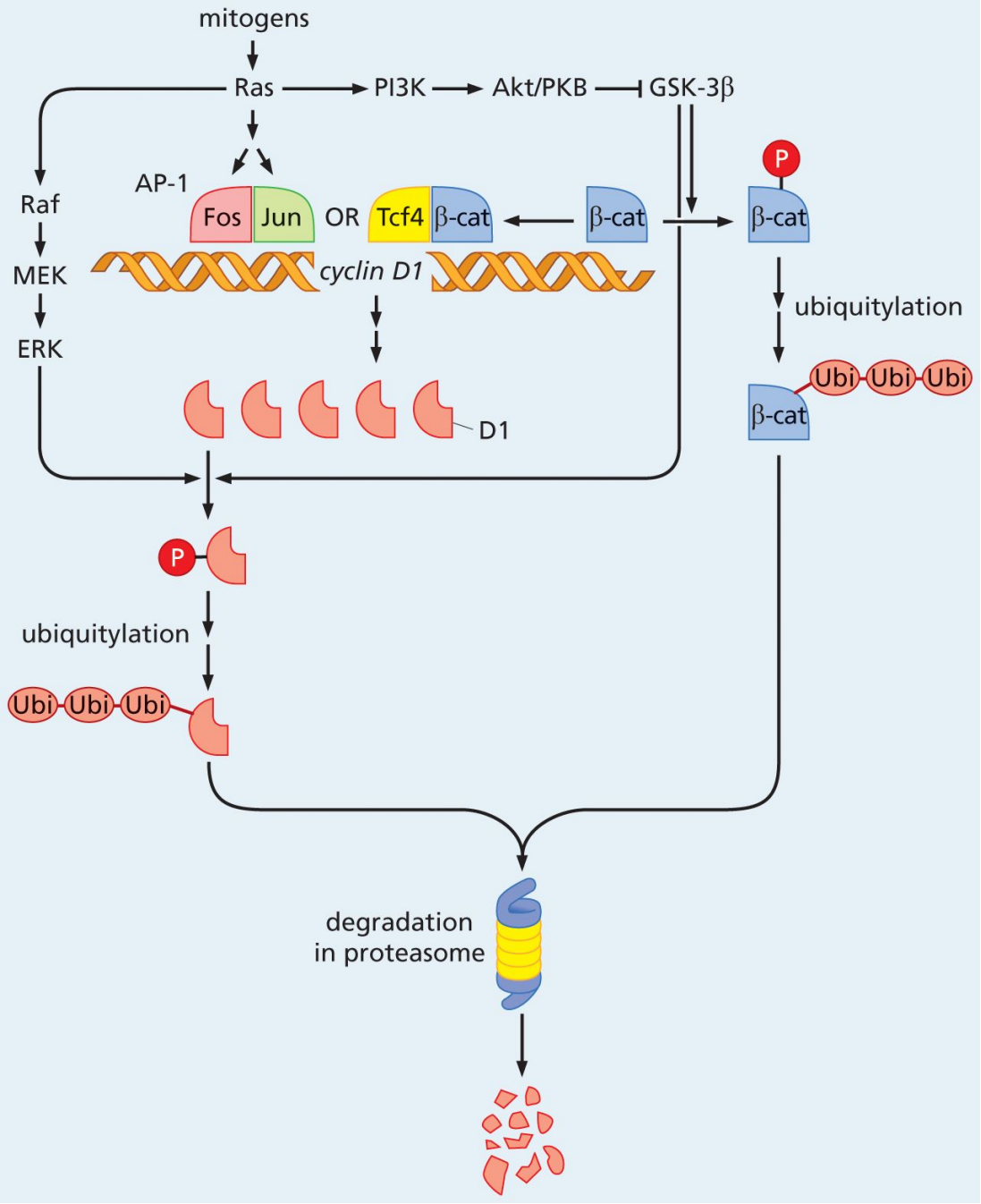


Figure S8.3 Countervailing controls on cyclin D1 levels A variety of intracellular signaling pathways transducing mitogenic signals modulate the levels of cyclin D1, doing so in at least four ways that operate downstream of the Ras proteins. First, the AP-1 transcription factor acts on the *cyclin D1* promoter, yielding increased levels of the cyclin D1 mRNA; AP-1 is composed of Fos–Jun heterodimers, both of which are increased in amount or functionally activated by mitogenic signals flowing through Ras (see Figure 8.9B). Second, by activating PI3 kinase and thus Akt/PKB, Ras proteins are able to inhibit the actions of GSK-

3β (glycogen synthase kinase-3β). This, in turn, spares β-catenin (β-cat) from phosphorylation by GSK-3β, ubiquitylation, and degradation, allowing it to partner with the Tcf4 transcription factor to induce *cyclin D1* transcription. Third, such inhibition of GSK-3β also spares the cyclin D1 protein from phosphorylation by this GSK-3β kinase and subsequent degradation following ubiquitylation. Fourth, operating in the opposing direction is ERK, which lies at the bottom of the Ras → Raf → MEK → ERK kinase cascade (see Section 6.5). Cyclin D1 is phosphorylated by ERK and thereby marked for ubiquitylation and degradation in proteasomes. Overall, Ras favors cyclin D1 accumulation, because the powers of the Ras pathway to increase cyclin D1 levels seem to greatly exceed its effects in causing cyclin D1 degradation.

Activation of the Ras signaling pathway also leads, via phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), to activation of the Akt/PKB kinase; the latter proceeds to phosphorylate and inactivate glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β; see Section 6.10). This inactivation has several benefits for growth promotion. Normally, GSK-3β targets β-catenin molecules for destruction by phosphorylating them; this phosphorylation then results in the ubiquitylation of β-catenin molecules and their destruction in proteasomes. However, when GSK-3β is inactivated by PKB/Akt phosphorylation, β-catenin can accumulate and migrate to the nucleus, where it forms transcription factor complexes with TCF/LEF that stimulate production of the cyclin D1 mRNA. Because GSK-3β phosphorylation also targets the cyclin D1 protein for destruction, its inactivation further increases cyclin D1 levels. It is also possible that the Wnt growth factors (see Section 6.10), by suppressing GSK-3β activity, have similar effects on the cell cycle clock.

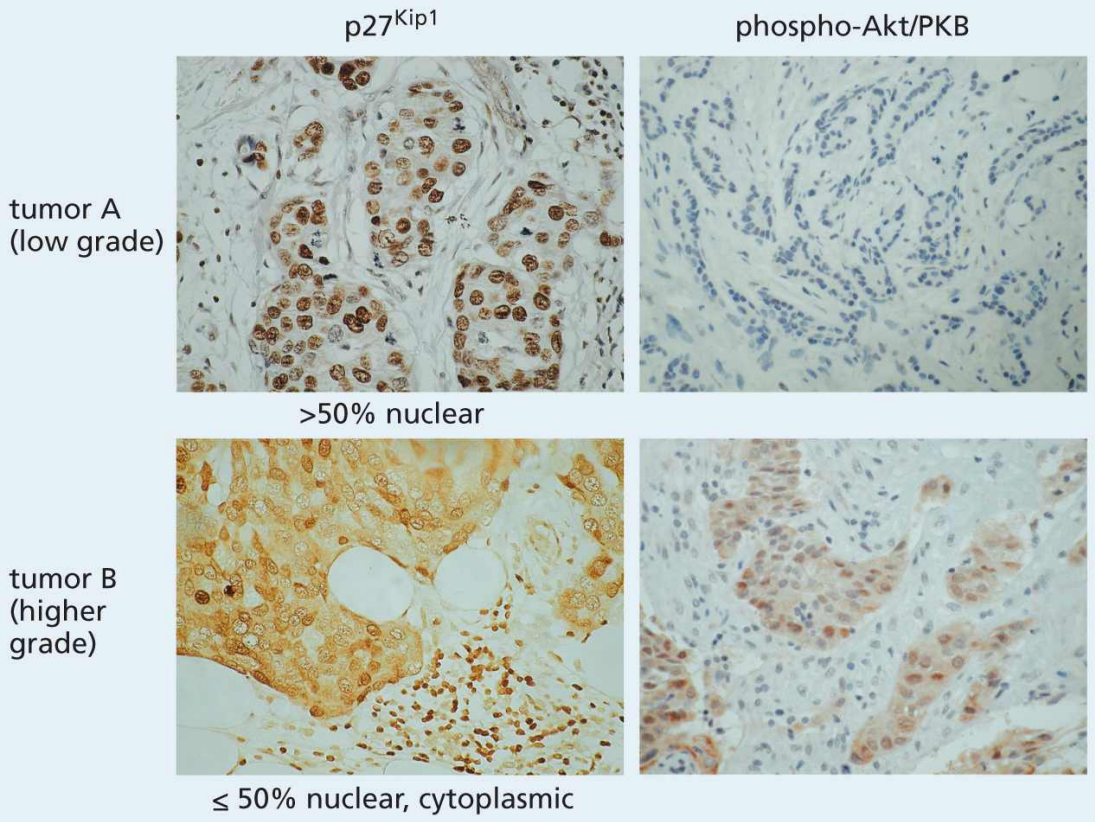
Supplementary Sidebar 8.5 Plasticity of the cell cycle clock

Although the portrayal in Section 8.3 of the normal workings of the cell cycle clock is reasonably accurate, the functions of the clock and its various cyclin–CDK complexes can be reconfigured in major ways, as indicated by experiments in which the genes encoding various component parts are inactivated, that is, knocked out, in the mouse germ-line; see Figure 7.17). For example, mice lacking either CDK 4, 6, or 2 are viable. When the genes encoding CDK4 and CDK6 are both knocked out, D-type cyclins can associate with and activate CDK2, allowing cultured cells to proliferate; mouse embryos lacking these two CDKs are viable through mid-gestation. Mice lacking CDK2 survive for two years—an essentially normal life span—but are sterile, whereas those lacking both CDK2 and CDK4 complete embryonic development but die at full term. The extreme case has come from study of embryonic stem (ES) cells; as a 2017 report demonstrated, these cells can advance through G_1 phase without any

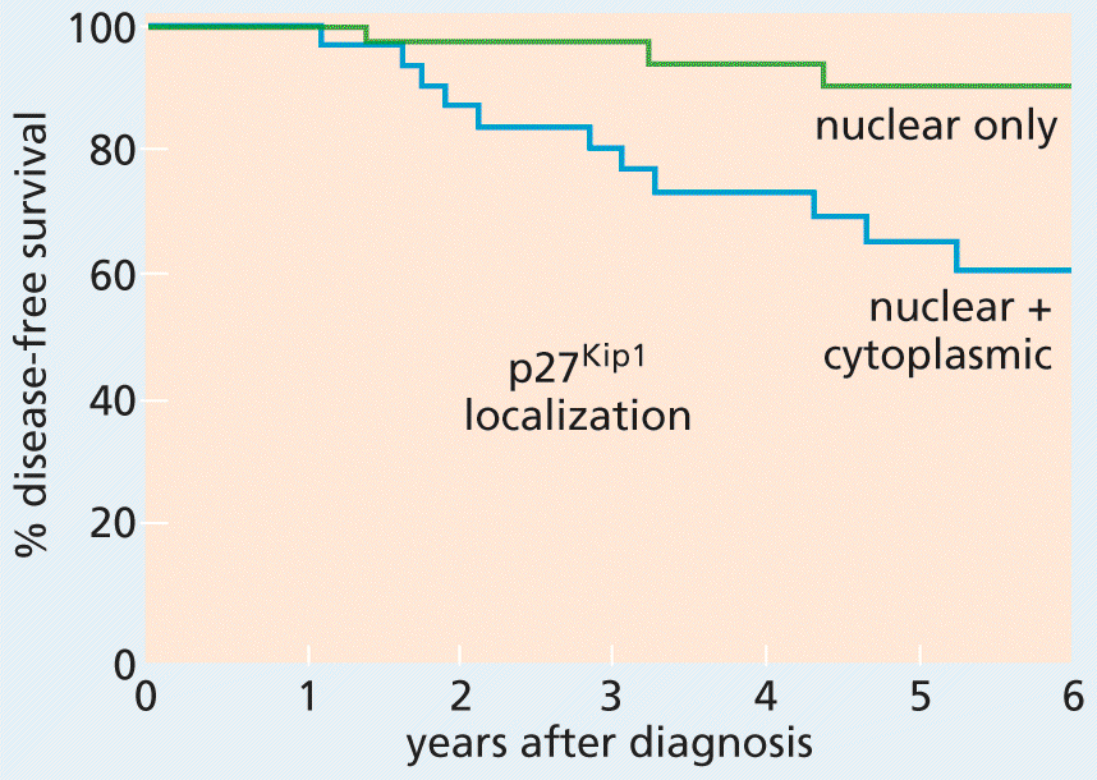
of the three D-type cyclins and two E-type (E1 and E2) cyclins. However, the moment these cells undergo differentiation into a specific adult cell type, such as fibroblasts, they require at least a single G_1 cyclin, in this case cyclin E1, in order to proliferate. Experiments like these indicate great functional redundancy and plasticity in the cell cycle machinery. Moreover, they suggest that in certain cell types and at certain stages of embryonic development, the organization of this machinery may be quite different from that depicted in this chapter.

Supplementary Sidebar 8.6 Cytoplasmic versus nuclear localization of p27

Akt/PKB (see Section 6.6) is a strongly anti-apoptotic, cell growth-promoting and proliferative agent. It favors proliferation in various ways. Thus, it can phosphorylate and inactivate GSK-3β, which in its unphosphorylated state is strongly anti-proliferative because when active it phosphorylates cyclin D1 and b-catenin, leading to the degradation of both (see Figure S8.3). At the same time, Akt/PKB reaches into the cell cycle machinery by phosphorylating $p27^{Kip1}$, which drives this key CDK inhibitor into the cytoplasm, where it can no longer exert its function in blocking G_1 phase cell cycle advance (**Figure S8.4**).



(A)



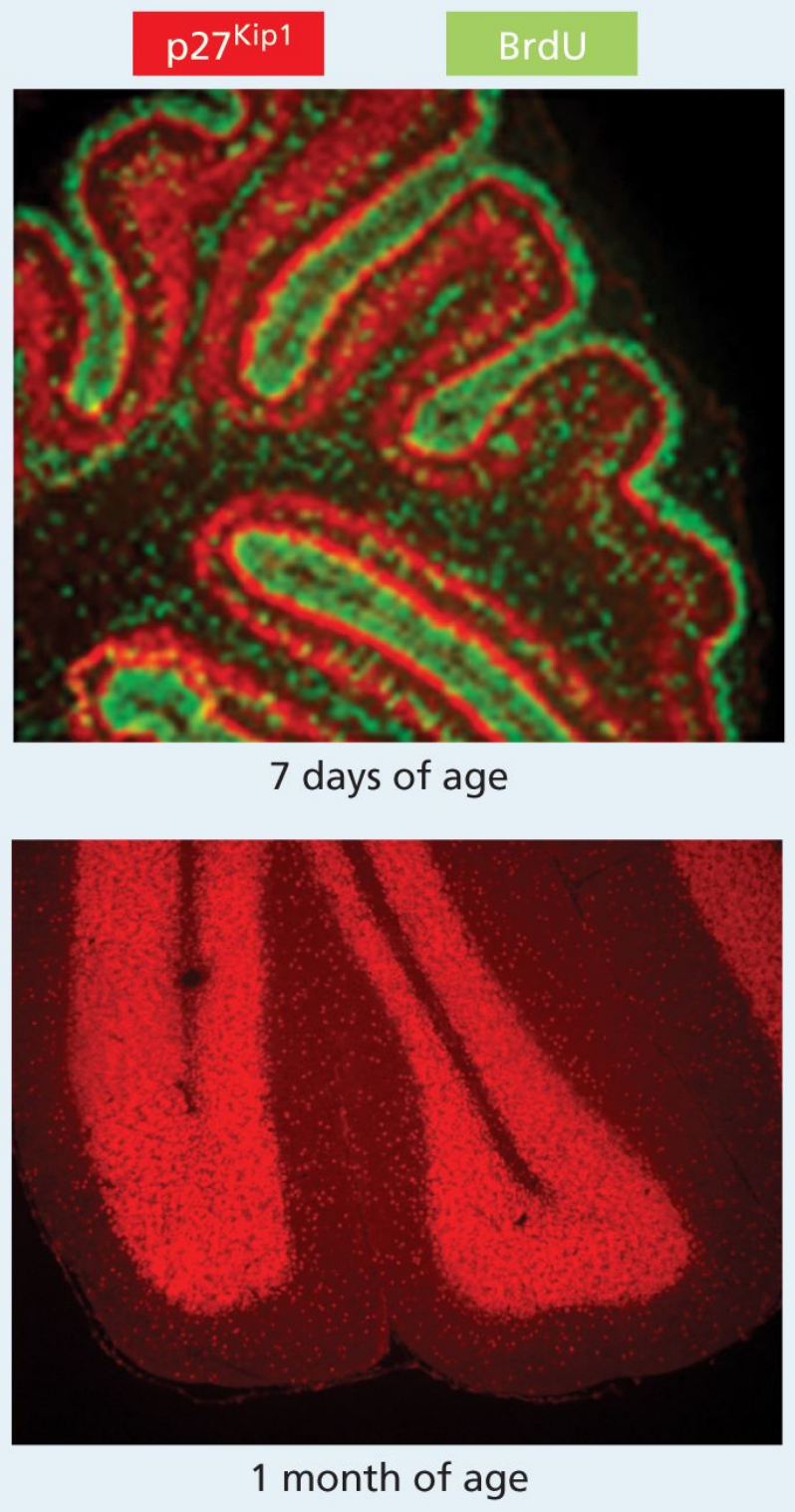
(B)

Figure S8.4 Suppression of $p27^{Kip1}$ function by Akt/PKB in human breast cancers Various breast cancers show differing intracellular locations of $p27^{Kip1}$ that reflect the activation state of Akt/PKB; the latter can be gauged by using an antibody that specifically recognizes the phosphorylated, functionally activated form of this kinase. (A) In some low-grade primary breast cancers (e.g., tumor A), $p27^{Kip1}$ is exclusively nuclear and is clearly present in more than 50% of nuclei (*brown staining, upper left*); functionally activated phospho-Akt/PKB cannot, however, be detected in these cells (*upper right*). Conversely, in higher-grade tumors (e.g., tumor B, *lower left*), $p27^{Kip1}$ is found (*yellow brown staining*) in less than 50% of the nuclei but is also found in significant quantities throughout the cytoplasm, where it cannot block cell proliferation; in these tumors, activated phospho-Akt/PKB can be readily detected (*light brown staining, lower right*). (B) This Kaplan–Meier graph indicates that those patients bearing primary breast tumors with largely nuclear $p27^{Kip1}$ (*green curve*) have a relatively good prospect of long-term, disease-free survival over a period of six years following initial diagnosis and treatment. In contrast, patients whose tumors show $p27^{Kip1}$ staining in both nuclei and cytoplasm (*blue curve*) suffer significant relapses over this time period, many of which lead to death. (Importantly, this correlation with clinical outcome does not prove causation, i.e., that $p27^{Kip1}$ mislocalization causes clinical

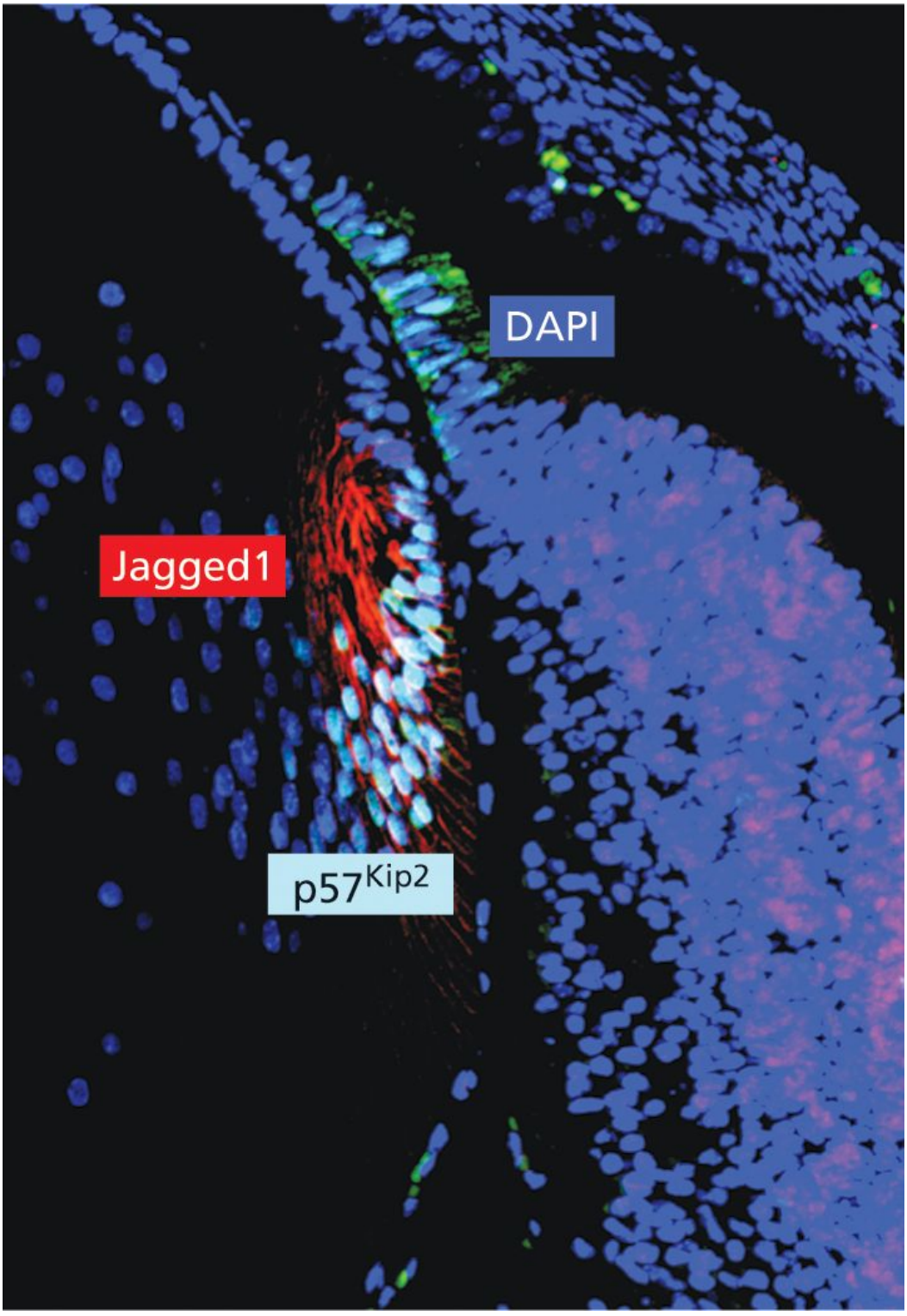
progression.) (A, courtesy of J. Zubovitz and J.M. Slingerland. B, from J. Liang et al., *Nat. Med.* 8:1153–1160, 2002. With permission from Nature.)

Supplementary Sidebar 8.7 CDK inhibitors (CKIs) help to maintain the post-mitotic states of differentiated cells

A diverse array of observations is revealing the key roles of CKIs in the differentiation process operating in various tissues, including the maintenance of the post-mitotic state of many differentiated cell types. For example, as shown in **Figure S8.5A**, in the developing cerebellum of a mouse, the cell layers that have become post-mitotic maintain high levels of $p27^{Kip1}$, whereas those that are still in active cycle lack this CDK inhibitor. Moreover, once this tissue is formed in the days after birth, the cells of this part of the brain are held in a post-mitotic state by the $p27^{Kip1}$, which they express at a high and constant level throughout adulthood. $p27^{Kip1}$ seems to play similar roles in curtailing proliferation in other tissues as well: mice deprived of both copies of its encoding gene show a ~30% increase in overall body size together with hyperplasia in multiple organs. During normal development, the expression of $p57^{Kip2}$, the cousin of $p27^{Kip1}$, is curtailed when cells need to continue proliferating for proper tissue formation to occur (Figure S8.5B).



(A)



(B)

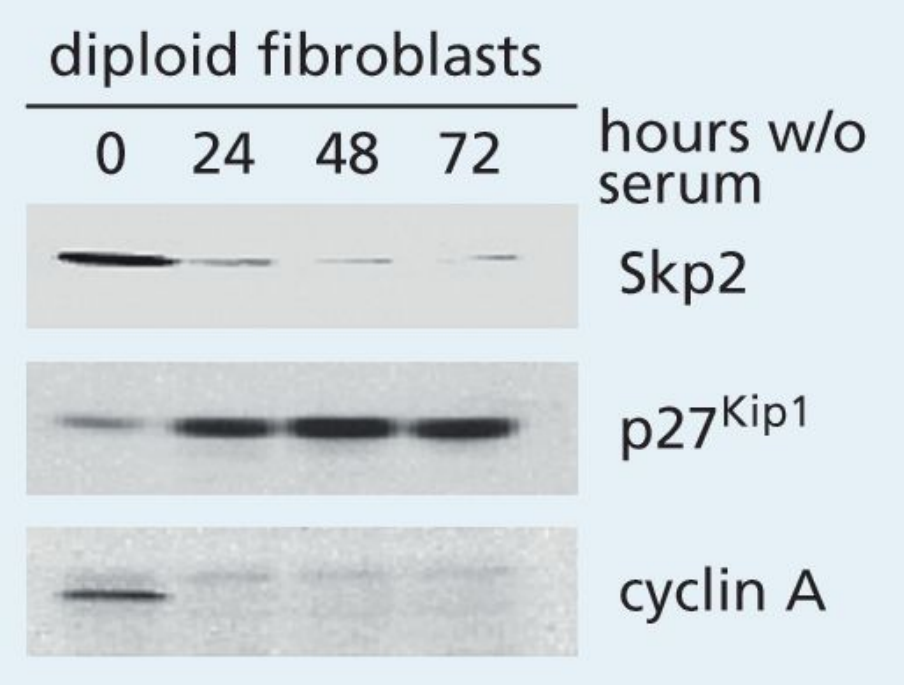
Figure S8.5CKIs and the control of differentiation The development of tissues depends on the differentiation of embryonic cells and the imposition of post-

mitotic states by the $p27^{Kip1}$ and $p57^{Kip2}$ CKIs. (A) Much of cerebellar development in mammals occurs postnatally as cells differentiate and enter into a post-mitotic state. During the course of cerebellar development in the mouse, proliferating cells can be detected through their incorporation of bromodeoxyuridine (BrdU), a thymidine analog; they are revealed here at postnatal day 7 by immunofluorescence using an antibody that recognizes BrdU-containing DNA (*green*). The levels of $p27^{Kip1}$ have been gauged by use of a fluorescence-tagged antibody that recognizes it in the same section (*red*). As is apparent, $p27^{Kip1}$ accumulates in cells that have ceased proliferating (*above*). By one month of age, cerebellar development is complete (*below*), and the levels of $p27^{Kip1}$ (*red*) are maintained at high levels throughout adulthood, ostensibly to hold these cells in a post-mitotic state. (B) The Notch signaling pathway (see Figure 6.22B) is involved in many tissues in blocking the entrance of cells into post-mitotic differentiated states, thereby allowing such cells to continue active proliferation. In the developing ocular lens of the mouse (day 17.5 of gestation), the Notch ligand Jagged1 (*red*) induces expression of a transcriptional repressor, Herp2 (*not shown*), which in turn represses expression of $p57^{Kip2}$ (*light blue*). By suppressing $p57^{Kip2}$ expression, Jagged1, acting via a Notch receptor, can ensure that cells remain in an actively proliferating state until the developing lens grows to an appropriate size, after which $p57^{Kip2}$ expression is then permitted, allowing it to impose a post-mitotic state. Cell nuclei are revealed by the DAPI dye (*dark blue*). (A, above, from T. Uziel, F. Zindy, S. Xie et al., *Genes Dev.* 19:2656–2667, 2005; with permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. Below, courtesy of A. Forget, F. Zindy and M.F. Roussel, St. Jude Children's Research Hospital. B, from J. Jia et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 27:7236–7247, 2007. With permission from American Society for Microbiology.)

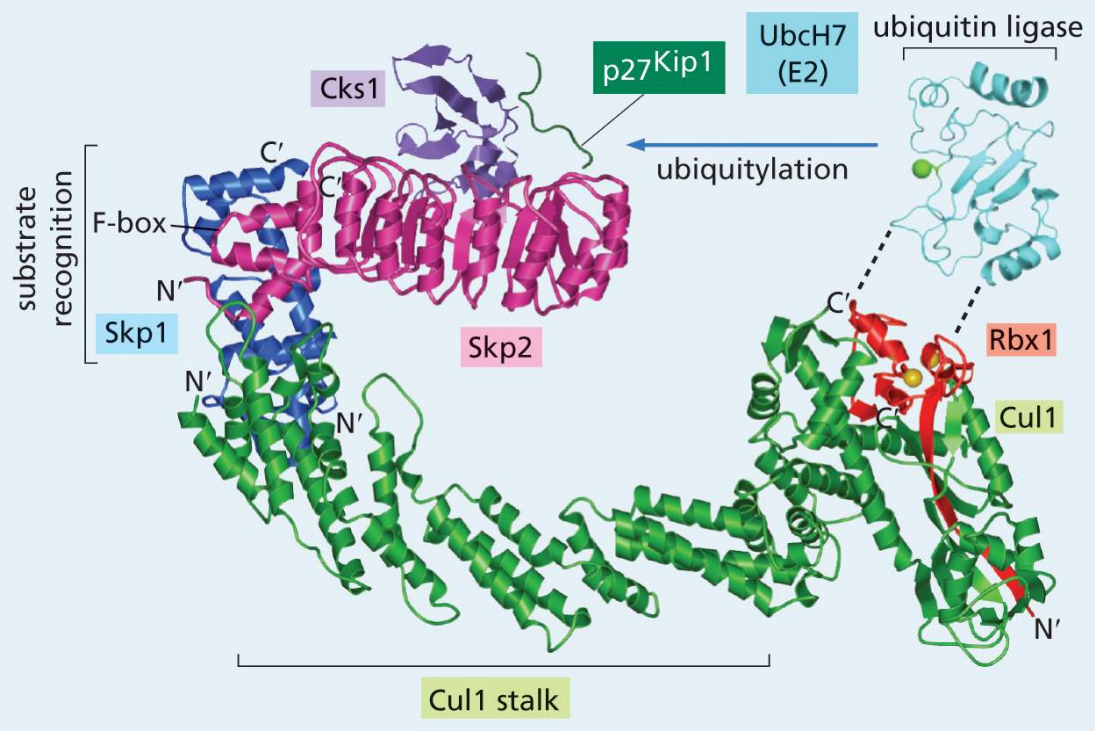
An experimental model of muscle development is equally revealing about the connection between cell cycle progression and differentiation. Relatively undifferentiated myoblasts can be induced *in vitro* to differentiate into myocytes (muscle cells). An enforced block in the G_1 phase of the myoblast cell cycle, achieved experimentally by introducing genes encoding elevated levels of either the $p16^{INK4A}$ or the $p21^{Cip1}$ CDK inhibitor (CKI), causes the myoblasts to differentiate under conditions (for example, high levels of growth factors in the medium) in which such differentiation would otherwise not occur (see Figure 8.25B).

Supplementary Sidebar 8.8 Specific targeting of cell cycle and differentiation regulators by E3 ubiquitin ligases and de-ubiquitylating enzymes

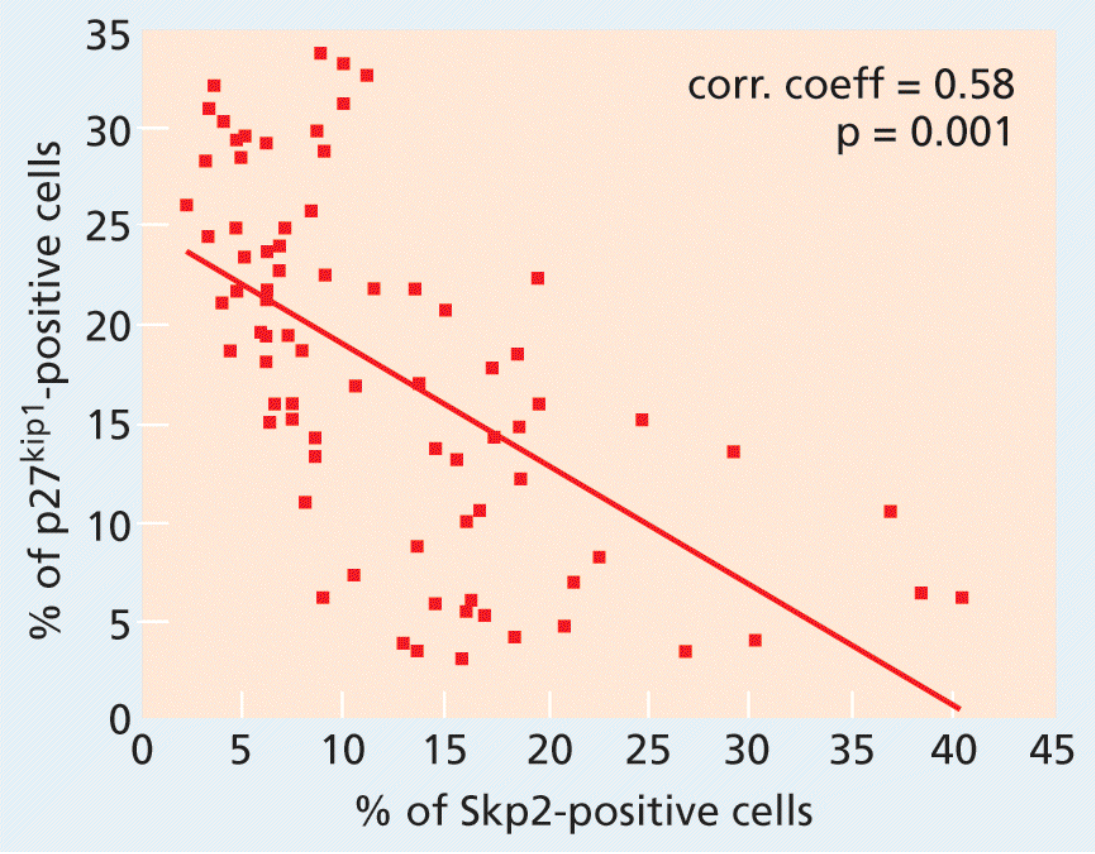
Much of the regulation of protein function during cell cycle progression is dependent on controlling the levels of key regulatory proteins achieved by controlling their levels post-translationally; this control is achieved, in turn, by modulating the levels and activities of specific ubiquitin ligase complexes (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). The specific recognition of the protein substrate that is to be ubiquitylated is achieved by the E3 subunits of the multi-subunit ligase complex. In the case of cyclin E, its ubiquitylation and resulting degradation in proteasomes occurs at the G_1/S boundary and the beginning of S phase (see Figure 8.8). Earlier at the R point, the formation of small numbers of cyclin E–CDK2 complexes allows the phosphorylation of, among other substrates, $p27^{Kip1}$ (see Figure 8.20). This phosphorylation results in the recognition of the phosphorylated $p27^{Kip1}$ by a ubiquitin ligase complex involving the Skp2, Cks1, and Cul1 proteins (**Figure S8.6**). A very similar multi-subunit complex operates later at the G_1/S boundary (Figure S8.6D). In this case, however, the E3 subunit involved in the recognition of the cyclin E substrate contains an Fbw7 subunit.



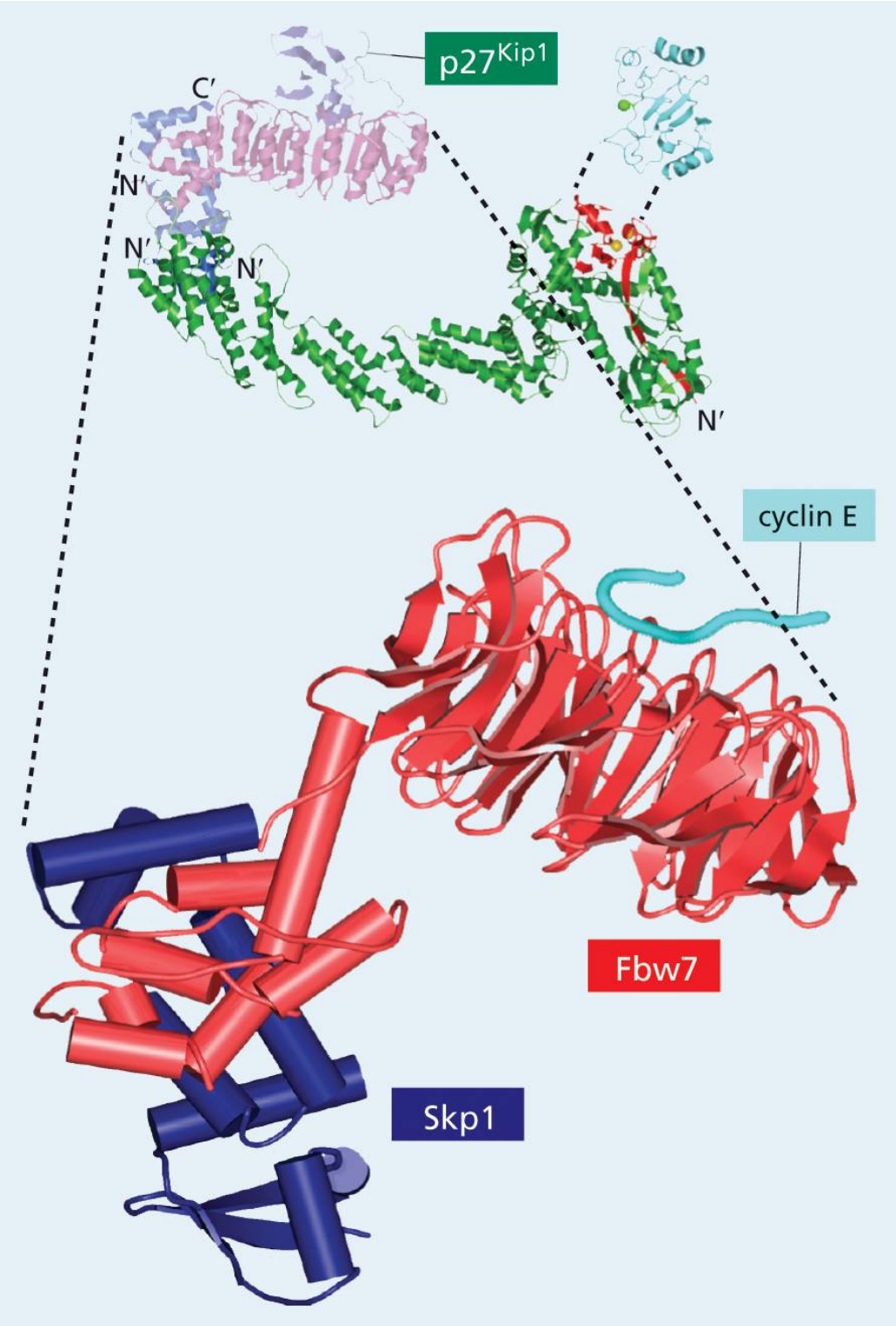
(A)


Cks1
p27Kip1
UbcH7
(E2)
ubiquitin ligase
ubiquitylation
substrate
recognition
F-box
Skp1
Skp2
Rbx1
Cul1
Cul1 stalk
C′
N′

(B)


corr. coeff = 0.58
p = 0.001
% of p27kip1-positive cells
% of Skp2-positive cells
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45

(C)



(D)

Figure S8.6Suppression of $p27^{Kip1}$ and cyclin E levels by ubiquitin ligases
Levels of $p27^{Kip1}$and cyclin E are controlled by, among other factors, the activities of ubiquitin ligases. In the case of $p27^{Kip1}$, the Skp2 component of the ubiquitylating complex is responsible for directing the ubiquitylating machinery to $p27^{Kip1}$, thereby tagging it for degradation in proteasomes. (A) As normal human cells enter into the G_0 quiescent state, in this case because they are deprived of serum mitogens, Skp2 levels fall, allowing the accumulation of $p27^{Kip1}$; the latter, in turn, is responsible for blocking the actions of CDK2. The loss of cyclin A confirms that cells have retreated from the active cell cycle, because this cyclin is responsible for pushing cells through the late G_1 and S phases of the cell cycle. (B) After $p27^{Kip1}$ is phosphorylated by cyclin E–CDK2 (see Figure 8.20B), it is recognized and bound by a large multiprotein complex that ubiquitylates it, thereby targeting it for destruction in proteasomes. The phosphorylated domain of $p27^{Kip1}$ (*dark green*, *above*) associates with the Cks1 adaptor protein (*purple*) and the "palm" of Skp2 (*dark pink*). This complex is connected to the ubiquitylating complex via the Cul1 stalk (*green*), which holds the E2 enzyme (*right*, *light blue*) 100 angstroms away from its $p27^{Kip1}$ substrate. Covalent modifications of the Cul1 stock cause it to bend, allowing the E2 ubiquitin ligase to access its $p27^{Kip1}$ substrate. Myc fosters cell cycle progression, in part by inducing expression of Cul1, Csk1, and Skp2, which proceed to ubiquitylate $p27^{Kip1}$, thereby driving its degradation. (The UbcH7 E2 shown here is used to represent the structurally related E2 ubiquitin ligase that actually functions in this complex.) (C) The inverse relationship between Skp2 levels and those of $p27^{Kip1}$ is plotted here for a large number of oral epithelial dysplasias and carcinomas. (Similar relationships, *not shown*, are seen in lymphomas and colorectal carcinomas.) (D) A very similar multiprotein complex to the one that is assembled at the R point in order to ubiquitylate $p27^{Kip1}$ (see Panel B) operates soon thereafter at the G_1/S transition to trigger the degradation of cyclin E. As seen in the expanded image (*below*), the F-box protein Fbw7 (*red*) recognizes and binds a domain of cyclin E (*aquamarine*), driving its ubiquitylation and destruction. (The phosphorylated form of cyclin E that arises at the G_1/S boundary, *not shown*, is bound by this ubiquitylation complex.) The remainder of the Fbw7-associated complex (*lower magnification*, *above*) is composed of Skp1, Cul1, and Rbx1—precisely the same multi-subunit assembly that forms the complex driving $p27^{Kip1}$ ubiquitylation shown *above* and in Panel B. The complexes differ in their respective subunits involved in substrate recognition: the complex driving $p27^{Kip1}$ degradation contains Skp2 + Cks1 instead of the Fbw7 seen here. (A, from T. Bashir et al., *Nature* 428:190–193, 2004. B, from N. Zheng et al., *Nature* 416:703–709, 2002. Both with permission from Nature. C, from M. Gstaiger, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 98:5043–5048, 2001. With permission from National Academy of Sciences U.S.A. D, *above*,

adapted from B. Schulman et al., *Nature* 408:381–386, 2000; *below,* from B. Hao et al., *Mol. Cell* 26:131–143, 2007. With permission from Elsevier.)

At the same time, the regulation of protein levels by de-ubiquitylating enzymes (DUBs) plays a critical role in key cell biological processes such as differentiation. For example, the ID proteins are known to block both differentiation and senescence, both of which are blocked when the IDs accumulate to high concentrations. The block of differentiation is achieved largely, and perhaps entirely, by their ability to associate with and inhibit various bHLH proteins that are important master regulators of specific differentiation programs (see Figure 8.25C). (The ID proteins are able to function as dominant-negative inhibitors of these bHLH TFs, because they form heterodimers with these TFs via their HLH domains. However, they lack a basic DNA-binding domain; such heterodimers block the ability of the bHLH master regulators to form stable, high-affinity associations with gene enhancers, which requires two DNA-binding bHLH TFs, usually as heterodimers, to recognize and stably bind cognate recognition sequences in the DNA.)

The ID1, ID2, and ID3 proteins are usually turned over rapidly, with half-lives estimated to be between 2 and 20 minutes, whereas the turnover of ID4 is slower, resulting in a half-life of more than an hour. Of note, the concentrations of the IDs are high in rapidly dividing tissues, and the concentrations of several of these (for example, ID2) are markedly elevated in a broad range of malignancies.

The modulation in steady-state levels of certain IDs suggests a finely tuned regulatory apparatus that governs the synthesis and degradation of the first three ID proteins. Indeed, soon after being synthesized, they usually are rapidly ubiquitylated by a complex involving an E3 ubiquitin ligase identified as APC (anaphase promoting complex)/Cdh1. Equally important are de-ubiquitylases (DUBs), which strip polyubiquitin chains from ubiquitylated proteins, such as the IDs, before these proteins are transported to proteasomes for degradation; removal of the polyubiquitin chains by DUBs spares these proteins, allowing their accumulation to higher steady-state levels. These dynamics suggest that the elevated levels of ID proteins found in many tumors may be consequences of a suppression of the ubiquitylase enzymes or an overexpression of the responsible DUB, which has been identified as USP1.

In fact, in a number of tumors, the expression of both ID2 and the USP1 DUB have been found to be coordinately up-regulated. This correlation supports the idea that the elevated levels of USP1 are responsible for the increased accumulation of ID2, a notion that has been supported by direct experimentation. This suggests that an important means of deregulating the Rb circuitry in human tumors depends on increasing levels of this DUB, which results in higher concentrations of IDs that can, in turn, antagonize Rb function.

The important role of ID proteins in blocking differentiation has been directly tested in an osteosarcoma cell line in which ID2 is overexpressed. Reducing the concentrations of the USP1 DUB (achieved through an introduced shRNA directed against its mRNA) resulted in marked reduction in ID2 levels, cessation of cell proliferation, and the osteogenic differentiation of the osteosarcoma cells into osteoblasts. This experiment reveals how critical this particular ID protein is in blocking differentiation, thereby holding the osteosarcoma cells in an actively proliferating, undifferentiated state. Moreover, one of the IDs (ID2) has been found to bind directly to pRb and antagonize its ability to halt proliferation, whereas two other IDs (ID1 and ID3) are unable to do so. This behavior suggests a scenario in which ID2 helps to block differentiation and at the same time encourages active cell proliferation.

Supplementary Sidebar 8.9 Other connections between cell cycle progression and entrance into a differentiated state

While CKIs such as $p27^{Kip1}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ play an important role in differentiation (also see **Supplementary Sidebar 8.7**), that depends on the cellular context. For example, genetically altered mouse myoblasts that lack both *Rb* gene copies, and therefore express no pRb, are unresponsive to the differentiation-inducing influences of the introduced genes that encode $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$. Additionally, overexpression of cyclin D1 in myoblasts (which drives pRb phosphorylation and inactivation) blocks the differentiation that is normally seen when growth factors are removed from their culture medium. These experiments indicate that hypophosphorylated pRb is needed for two ostensibly unrelated functions—halting the proliferation of myoblasts and facilitating the differentiation of these cells into myocytes.

The converging effects on differentiation of these various regulators is illustrated most dramatically by the behavior of granulocytes that have been deprived of both $p27^{Kip1}$ and Mxd: $p27^{Kip1}$ cannot be mustered to halt G_1 cell cycle progression, and the differentiation-blocking effects of Myc cannot be reversed by its prime antagonist, Mxd. The result is a profound failure of differentiation (see also Figure 8.21).

Yet other molecular connections between cell cycle control and differentiation have been uncovered. Thus, experimentally enforced expression of CDK inhibitors, such as $p21^{Cip1}$ or $p27^{Kip1}$, is able to induce differentiation of neuroblastoma cells, primary neurons (in frogs), and myelomonocytic leukemia cells, and enforced expression of E2F4 (a repressive E2F; see Section 8.7) induces the differentiation of neuronal precursor cells. Mice that are genetically deprived of this transcription factor (and thus have an $E2f4^{-/-}$ genotype) die in gestation because of defective differentiation of their erythrocytes. The C/EBPβ transcription factor associates with pRb to induce the differentiation of adipocytes (fat cells), and the CBFA1/Runx2 transcription factor has

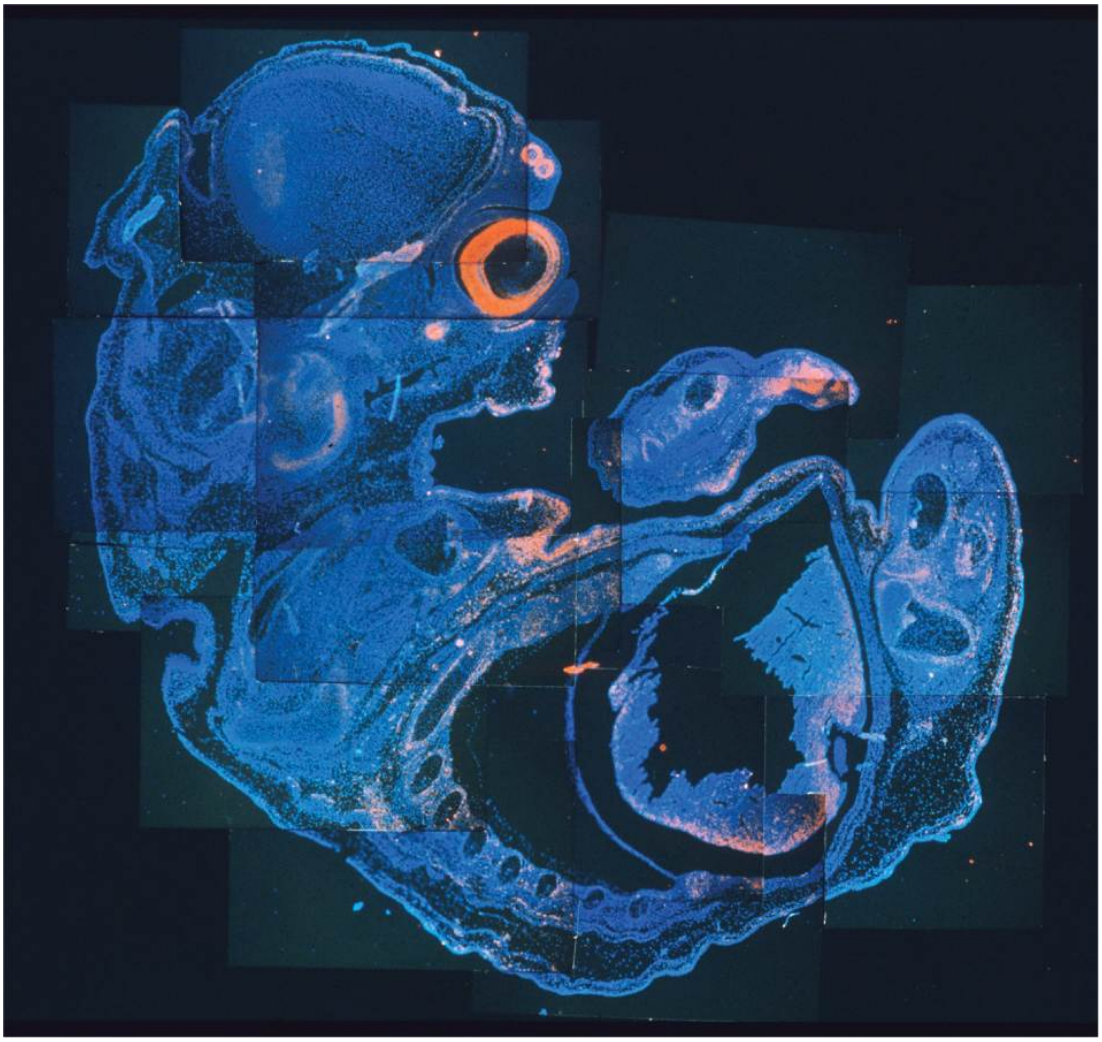
been found to bind pRb and collaborate with the latter to program osteoblast differentiation. Expression of $p27^{Kip1}$'s cousin, $p57^{Kip2}$, is important for stabilizing MyoD, a transcription factor that helps to program muscle differentiation. Finally, retinoic acid induces the differentiation of acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) cells, in part through its ability to trigger degradation of cyclin D1.

These diverse experimental observations indicate that the machinery controlling the phosphorylation state of pRb and its cousins is also an active participant in the differentiation process, at least in the well-studied biological systems described above. More specifically, signals favoring the hyperphosphorylation (and thus functional inactivation) of the three pocket proteins (pRb, p107, and p130) operate to block differentiation, whereas those that prevent pRb hyperphosphorylation favor differentiation. This mechanistic linkage, still poorly documented for most cell types, suggests another idea that remains largely speculative: when a cell decides to leave the active cell cycle in order to differentiate, it exits the cycle sometime during the G_1 phase, precisely when pRb is active in controlling the fate of the cell.

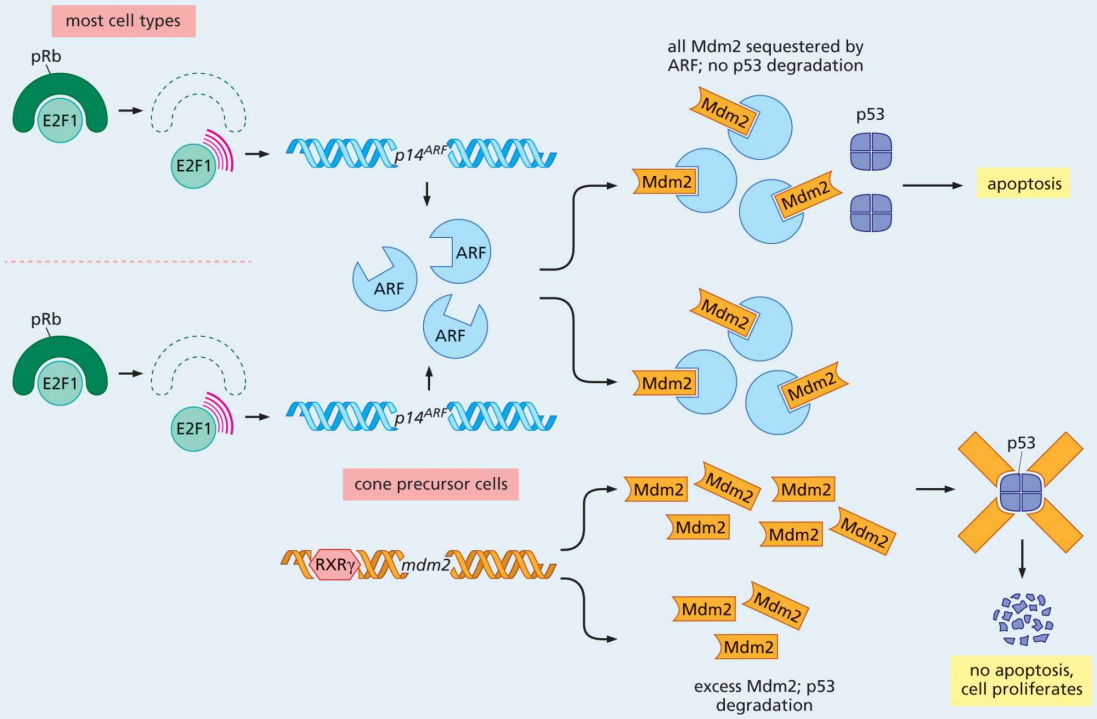
Supplementary Sidebar 8.10 The major puzzle surrounding the *RB* gene: retinoblastomas

pRb clearly plays a role in governing cell cycle progression in a wide array of cell types throughout the body, and its loss in cells early in life leads, peculiarly, to retinal tumors. The retina (see Figure 7.2A) is a relatively tiny organ compared with other tissues throughout the body. This only heightens the mystery, because the absolute numbers of cells in an organ should provide some indication of its intrinsic vulnerability to spawn tumors: tissues with large numbers of cells should be more susceptible to develop cancers, because they represent a far larger target size for the accidental triggering of a tumorigenic event. Some clues to the resolution of this puzzle have come to light in recent years, although a coherent mechanistic explanation is still lacking.

To begin, cyclin D1 is expressed at extraordinarily high levels in the developing mouse retina, as much as two orders of magnitude higher than in other organs at this stage of development (**Figure S8.7A**). Although not yet documented, it is presumed that comparable levels of high expression are present in other mammalian embryos, including those of humans. Cyclin D1 operates as a major antagonist to drive partial phosphorylation and functional inactivation of pRb (see Figure 8.17) and sequestration of the CDK2 antagonist $p27^{Kip1}$ (see Figure 8.14B); this would seem to make developing retinal cells especially dependent on the functioning of pRb in order to constrain their own proliferation.



(A)



(B)

Figure S8.7 Why does loss of pRb lead preferentially to retinal tumors? Retinoblastomas appear to arise from a cell type that is closely related to the precursors of the cone cells in the eye that give us color vision. The reason *Rb* gene inactivation leads specifically to retinal tumors in young children has been elusive, because this gene and its encoded protein are responsible for regulating cell cycle progression in many cell types throughout the body, possibly almost all of them. Multiple factors may contribute to the special sensitivity of the developing retina to pRb loss. (A) Use of *in situ* hybridization reveals that cyclin D1 mRNA (*red*) is expressed in the developing retina of a 14.5-day mouse embryo at levels that are as much as 100-fold higher than in most other organs of the embryo. (A series of *in situ* hybridizations of sections of the same embryo have been joined together to reveal the expression of the mRNA in the entire embryo.) Although not yet demonstrated directly, comparable elevated levels of expression are likely to be present in the developing retinas of other mammals, including humans. This high-level expression may, in ways that remain unclear, contribute to the special susceptibility of the retina to tumor formation in the absence of pRb function. (B) Another important contributing factor derives from the responses that many cell types throughout the body mount following inactivation of the *Rb* gene or its product, pRb. As described in Sections 9.8 and 9.9, the resulting deregulated activation of the E2F transcription factors (E2F1 is shown here) often leads to expression of $p14^{ARF}$ ($p19^{ARF}$ in mice). $p14^{ARF}$ then sequesters Mdm2,

allowing p53 to escape Mdm2-driven degradation and to accumulate to high levels and trigger apoptosis. In cone cell precursors, the first steps of this process proceed identically, i.e., *Rb* gene inactivation leads, as before, to loss of pRb and to the production of $p14^{ARF}$. However, in these cone precursor cells, a relative of the retinoic acid receptor, specifically another nuclear receptor (see Section 5.8) termed RXRγ, drives high levels of *Mdm2* transcription, leading to high concentrations of Mdm2 protein. These high levels of Mdm2 overwhelm the limited amount of available $p14^{ARF}$ in these cells, and thus succeed in triggering p53 degradation, allowing these retinal cells to evade p53-initiated apoptosis. As a consequence, *Rb* nullizygous retinal cells apparently can survive and proliferate under the influence of active E2F1, leading to retinal tumors. (A, from P. Sicinski et al., *Cell* 82:621–630, 1995. With permission from Elsevier.)

A second contributing factor appears to derive from the responses of many cells to loss of pRb function. The immediate effect is hyperactivity of the E2F1 transcription factor, which induces, in turn, expression of $p14^{ARF}$ ($p19^{ARF}$ in mice); the latter sequesters and thereby inhibits Mdm2, thus permitting high levels of p53 to accumulate (to be described in Chapter 9). Hence, loss of pRb results, through this chain of events, in increases in the pro-apoptotic p53 protein and the associated triggering of apoptosis. This response to pRb loss seems to represent a naturally implanted safeguard against cancer development, because it causes the elimination by apoptosis of cells that have, for one reason or another, been deprived of pRb function (see Figure S8.7B).

This safeguard mechanism is thwarted in retinal cells, specifically, cone precursor cells, in which Mdm2 levels are naturally very high. These Mdm2 proteins apparently succeed in suppressing p53 function, even when pRb is lost in these cells. Accordingly, such cone precursor cells, which appear to be closely related to the cells from which retinoblastomas arise, are particularly tolerant of pRb loss, because the apoptotic elimination process that operates in many cell types elsewhere in the body is rendered inoperative by the high Mdm2 levels. Following this logic, an $Rb^{+/-}$ heterozygous child may lose the remaining wild-type *Rb* gene copy in many cells throughout their body, but those cells will never spawn tumors because they are eliminated by apoptosis. Only nullizygous ($Rb^{-/-}$) retinal cells will therefore have a chance of surviving and generating tumors. (One clear exception to this rule is the bone-forming osteoblasts, which spawn the osteosarcomas that occur at greatly elevated rates in $Rb^{+/-}$ heterozygous children.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

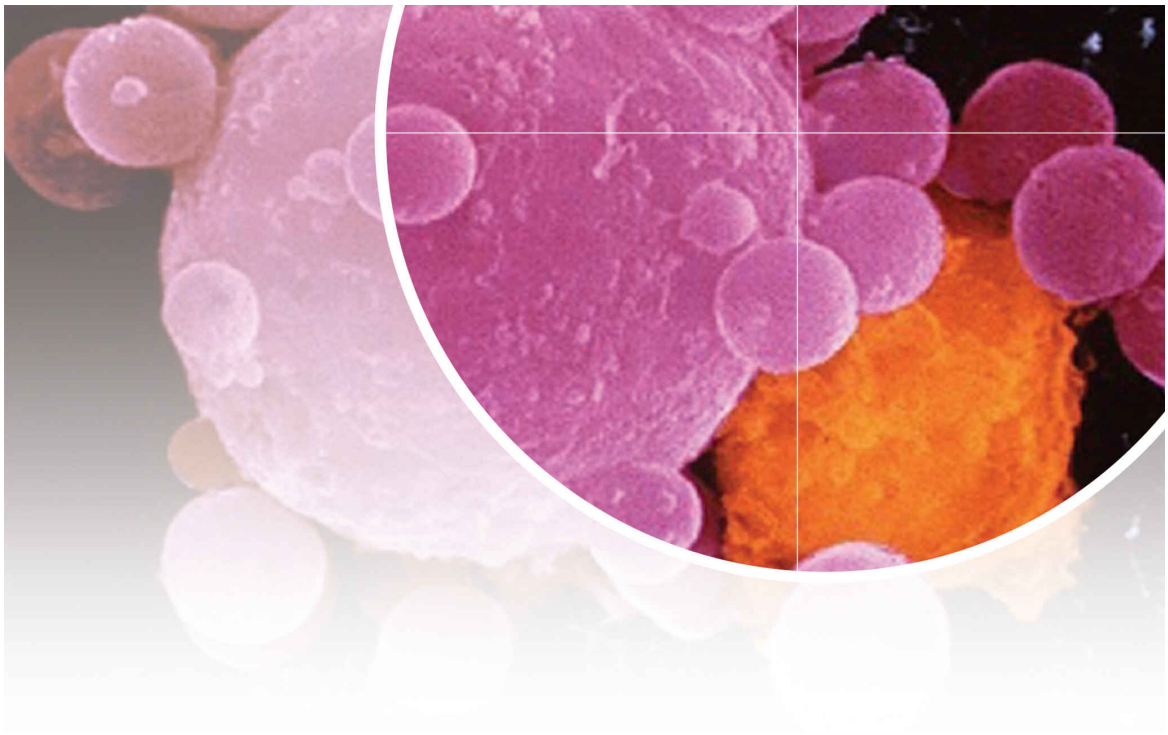
myoblasts
: The undifferentiated precursors of the myocytes present in differentiated muscle. *See also* **myocytes**.

myocytes
: The individual contractile cells that assemble to form functional muscles. *See also* **myoblasts**.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 9

p53: Master Guardian and Executioner



A scanning electron micrograph of a cytotoxic T lymphocyte attacking a cancer cell that is covered with spherical blisters.

There cannot however be the least doubt, that the higher organisms, as they are now constructed, contain within themselves the germs of death.

August Weissmann, philosopher of biology, 1889

To examine the causes of life, we must first have recourse to death.

Mary Shelley, *Frankenstein*, 1831

Multicellular animals have a vital interest in limiting the effects of defective or malfunctioning cells in their tissues. To accomplish this goal, organisms have within their cells the p53 protein. This loyal sentinel serves as a local representative of the organism's interests and is present on-site to ensure that every cell keeps its own household in order.

If p53 receives information indicating a cell is experiencing genetic corruption or metabolic disarray, the protein may arrest the progress through the cell's growth-and-division cycle and, at the same time, orchestrate localized responses to facilitate the repair of damage in that cell. In other circumstances, including situations in which damage is too extensive to be repaired, p53 can emit signals that awaken the cell's normally latent suicide program—apoptosis. The consequence of this summons is the rapid death of the cell. Such drastic measures eliminate cells whose continued growth and division might otherwise pose a threat to the overall health and viability of the organism.

The apoptotic program that can be activated by p53 is built into the control circuitry of most cells throughout the body. Apoptosis consists of a series of distinctive molecular changes that function to ensure the disappearance of all traces of a cell, often within an hour of its initial activation. The continued presence of this latent but intact suicide machinery represents an ongoing threat to incipient cancer cells, because this program is poised to eliminate cells that are en route to becoming neoplastic. The role of p53 in orchestrating cell cycle arrest, apoptosis, and a range of other functions, explains why this gene becomes disabled in a high percentage of human tumors. Without a clear description of the many functions of p53, we cannot fully appreciate the processes that limit the creation of virtually all types of human cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

apoptosis

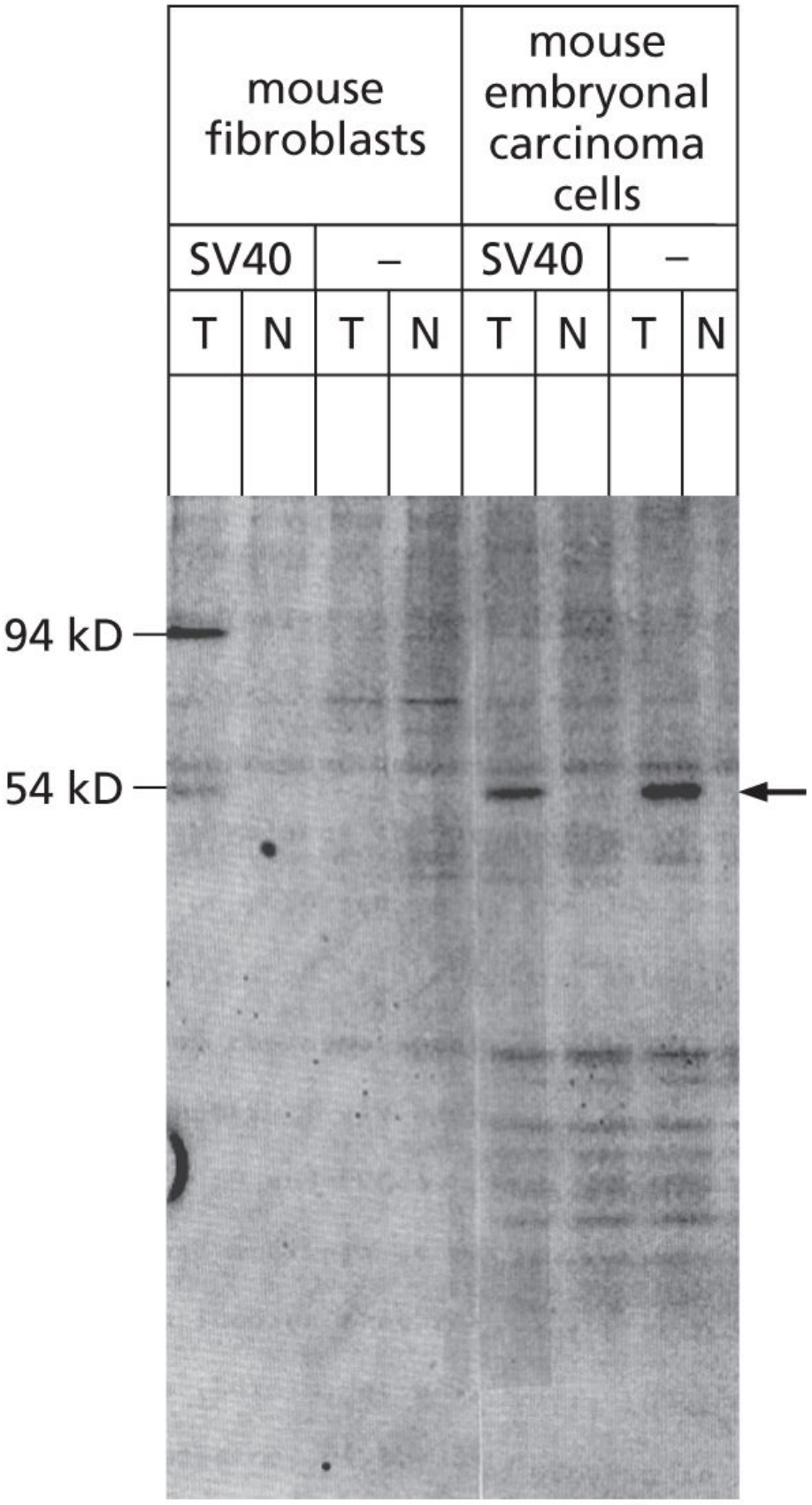
Complex program of cellular self-destruction, triggered by a variety of stimuli and involving the activation of caspase enzymes, which drive rapid fragmentation of diverse cellular structures and elimination of all breakdown products of a cell and phagocytosis of resulting cell fragments by neighboring cells or macrophages. *See also* **ferroptosis**, **necroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

OceanofPDF.com

9.1 DNA tumor viruses lead to the discovery of p53

When murine cells that have been transformed by the SV40 DNA tumor virus are injected into a mouse of identical genetic background (that is, a syngeneic host), the immune system of the host reacts by mounting a strong response. The antibodies produced react with a protein that is present in the virus-transformed cells but is otherwise undetectable in normal mouse cells. This protein, the large tumor (large T or LT) antigen, is encoded by a region of the viral genome that is also expressed when this virus infects and multiplies within monkey cells—the host cells that permit a full infectious cycle to proceed to completion, unlike infected murine cells, which do not permit this cycle to proceed but can be transformed by the virus (see Section 3.4).

Antisera collected from mice and hamsters bearing SV40-induced tumors were used in 1979 to analyze the proteins in SV40-transformed cells. The samples contained antibodies that recognized both large T and an associated protein that exhibited an apparent molecular weight of 53 to 54 kD (**Figure 9.1**). Antisera reactive with the latter, smaller protein could also detect that protein in mouse embryonal carcinoma cells and, later on, in a variety of human and rodent tumor cells—including those that had never been infected by SV40. Monoclonal antibodies directed specifically against large T could also immunoprecipitate the 53- to 54-kD protein—but only in SV40-infected cells.


mouse fibroblasts
mouse embryonal carcinoma cells
SV40
–
SV40
–
T
N
T
N
T
N
T
N
94 kD
54 kD

An autoradiograph matrix of proteins run through a gel. On the left are four mouse fibroblast channels, namely a T and an N with S V 40 and a T and an N without S V 40. On the right are four mouse embryonal carcinoma cell channels, again a T and an N with S V 40 and a T and an N without S V 40. In the first channel, for S V 40 infected fibroblasts with T, there are visible markers at 94 k D and, more faintly, just below 54 k D. The same marker just below 54 k D is present, and more pronounced, in the two T channels for embryonal carcinoma cells.

Figure 9.1 The discovery of p53 and its association with SV40 large T Normal mouse fibroblasts (3T3 cells) and mouse embryonal carcinoma cells (F9 cells) were infected by SV40. Cell lysates prepared from both infected (SV40) and uninfected (−) cells were labeled with ^{35}S-methionine and incubated with either normal hamster serum (N) or with antiserum prepared against SV40-transformed hamster cells (T). In the virus-infected fibroblasts, the anti-tumor serum immunoprecipitated a protein of 94 kD (large T), as well as a second protein that runs slightly ahead of the 54-kD marker. This same smaller protein is immunoprecipitated from the embryonal carcinoma cells, whether or not they had been exposed to SV40 (*arrow*). Although these data, on their own, did not prove a physical association between large T and p53, they did show that p53 was present in elevated amounts in two types of transformed cells, one of which had no association with a tumor virus. (From D.I. Linzer and A.J. Levine, *Cell* 17:43–52, 1979. With permission from Elsevier.)

Taken together, these observations indicated that the large T protein expressed in SV40-transformed cells was tightly bound to a novel protein, which came to be called p53. The observation that p53 could also be detected in certain uninfected cells, such as the mouse embryonal carcinoma cells analyzed in Figure 9.1, indicated that p53 was of cellular rather than viral origin. This conclusion was reinforced by a report in the same year that mouse cells transformed by exposure to a chemical carcinogen also harbored detectable p53.

These various lines of evidence suggested that the viral large T oncoprotein functions, at least in part, by targeting host-cell proteins. (The discovery that large T antigen is also able to bind pRb would come seven years later.) In the years since these discoveries, a number of other DNA viruses and at least one RNA virus have been found to specify oncoproteins that associate with p53 or perturb its function (**Table 9.1**). As is apparent from this table, these viruses also target pRb and function to block apoptosis, an observation that we return to later in this chapter.

Table 9.1 Tumor viruses that perturb pRb, p53, and/or apoptotic function

Virus	**Viral protein targeting pRb**	**Viral protein targeting p53**	**Viral protein targeting apoptosis**
SV40	large T[a]	large T [a]	
Adenovirus	E1A	E1B55K	E1B19K [b]
HPV	E7	E6	
Polyomavirus	large T	large T?	middle T (MT) [c]
Herpesvirus saimiri	V cyclin [d]		v-Bcl-2 [e]
HHV-8 (KSHV)	K cyclin [d]	LANA-2	v-Bcl-2, [e] v-FLIP [f]

Virus	Viral protein targeting pRb	Viral protein targeting p53	Viral protein targeting apoptosis
Human cytomegalovirus (HCMV)	IE72 [g]	IE86	vICA, [h] pUL37 [i]
HTLV-I	Tax[j]	Tax	
Epstein–Barr	EBNA3C	EBNA-1 [k]	LMP1 [k]

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

syngeneic

(1) Referring to two organisms that share the identical genetic background, such as two members of an inbred strain of mice. (2) Describing the relationship between two sets of cells or tissues, or between a set of cells and an organism, deriving from identical genetic backgrounds.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

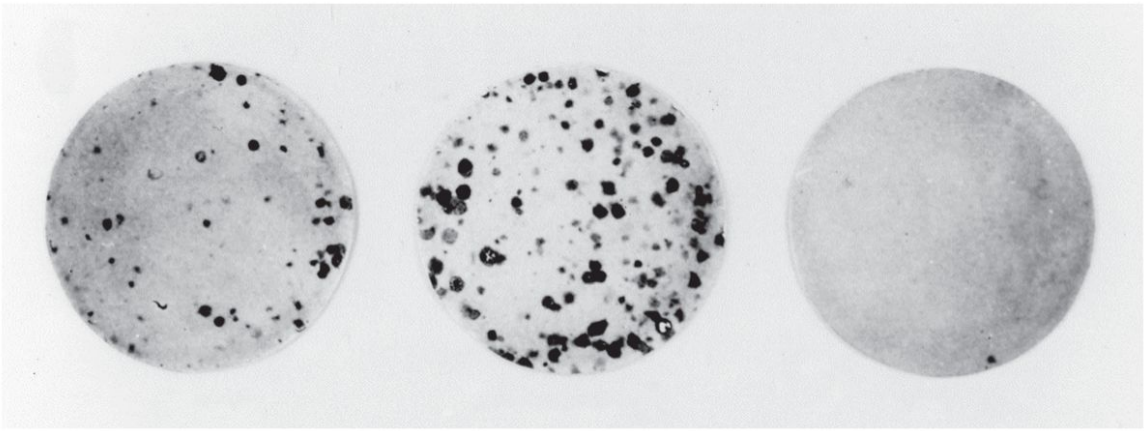
- aSV40 large T also binds a number of other cellular proteins, including p300, CBP, Cul7, IRS1, Bub1, Nbs1, and Fbw7, thereby perturbing a variety of other regulatory pathways.Return to reference a
- aSV40 large T also binds a number of other cellular proteins, including p300, CBP, Cul7, IRS1, Bub1, Nbs1, and Fbw7, thereby perturbing a variety of other regulatory pathways.Return to reference a
- bFunctions like Bcl-2 to block apoptosis.Return to reference b
- cActivates PI3K and thus Akt/PKB.Return to reference c
- dRelated to D-type cyclins.Return to reference d
- dRelated to D-type cyclins.Return to reference d
- eRelated to cellular Bcl-2 anti-apoptotic protein.Return to reference e
- eRelated to cellular Bcl-2 anti-apoptotic protein.Return to reference e
- fViral caspase 8 (FLICE) inhibitory protein; blocks an early step in the extrinsic apoptotic cascade.Return to reference f
- gInteracts with and inhibits p107 and possibly p130; may also target pRb for degradation in proteasomes.Return to reference g
- hBinds and inhibits procaspase 8.Return to reference h
- iInhibits the apoptotic pathway below caspase 8 and before cytochrome *c* release.Return to reference i
- jInduces synthesis of cyclin D2 and binds and inactivates $p16^{INK4A}$.Return to reference j
- kLMP1 facilitates p52 NF-κB activation and thereby induces expression of Bcl-2; EBNA-1 acts via a cellular protein, USP7/HAUSP, to reduce p53 levels. EBNA3C interferes with p53 function.Return to reference k
- kLMP1 facilitates p52 NF-κB activation and thereby induces expression of Bcl-2; EBNA-1 acts via a cellular protein, USP7/HAUSP, to reduce p53 levels. EBNA3C interferes with p53 function.Return to reference k

OceanofPDF.com

9.2*p53* is discovered to be a tumor suppressor gene

The path to our understanding of p53's function began with a substantial scientific detour: early studies in which a cDNA encoding p53 was transfected into rat embryo fibroblasts revealed that this cDNA, in collaboration with a co-introduced *ras* oncogene, could transform the rodent cells. Such activity suggested that the *p53* gene (which is sometimes termed *Trp53* in mice and *TP53* in humans) could operate as an oncogene—much like the *myc* oncogene, which had previously been shown to collaborate with the *ras* oncogene in rodent cell transformation (see Section 11.8). Like *myc*, the introduced *p53* cDNA seemed to contribute certain growth-inducing signals that resulted in cell transformation in the presence of a co-expressed *ras* oncogene.

But appearances turned out to be deceiving. As later became apparent, the *p53* cDNA used in these experiments had been synthesized from a template mRNA extracted from tumor cells (rather than normal cells). This mRNA was later shown to carry a mutant form of *p53*. Subsequent use of a *p53* cDNA cloned instead from the mRNA of normal cells revealed that this wild-type *p53* cDNA clone, rather than favoring cell transformation, actually *suppressed* it (**Figure 9.2**). Comparison of the sequences of the two cDNAs revealed that they differed by a single base substitution—a point mutation—that caused an amino acid substitution in the p53 protein.



deletion of *p53* at 37.5° + *myc* + *ras*

val-135 p53 at 37.5° (= point mutated *p53*) + *myc* + *ras*

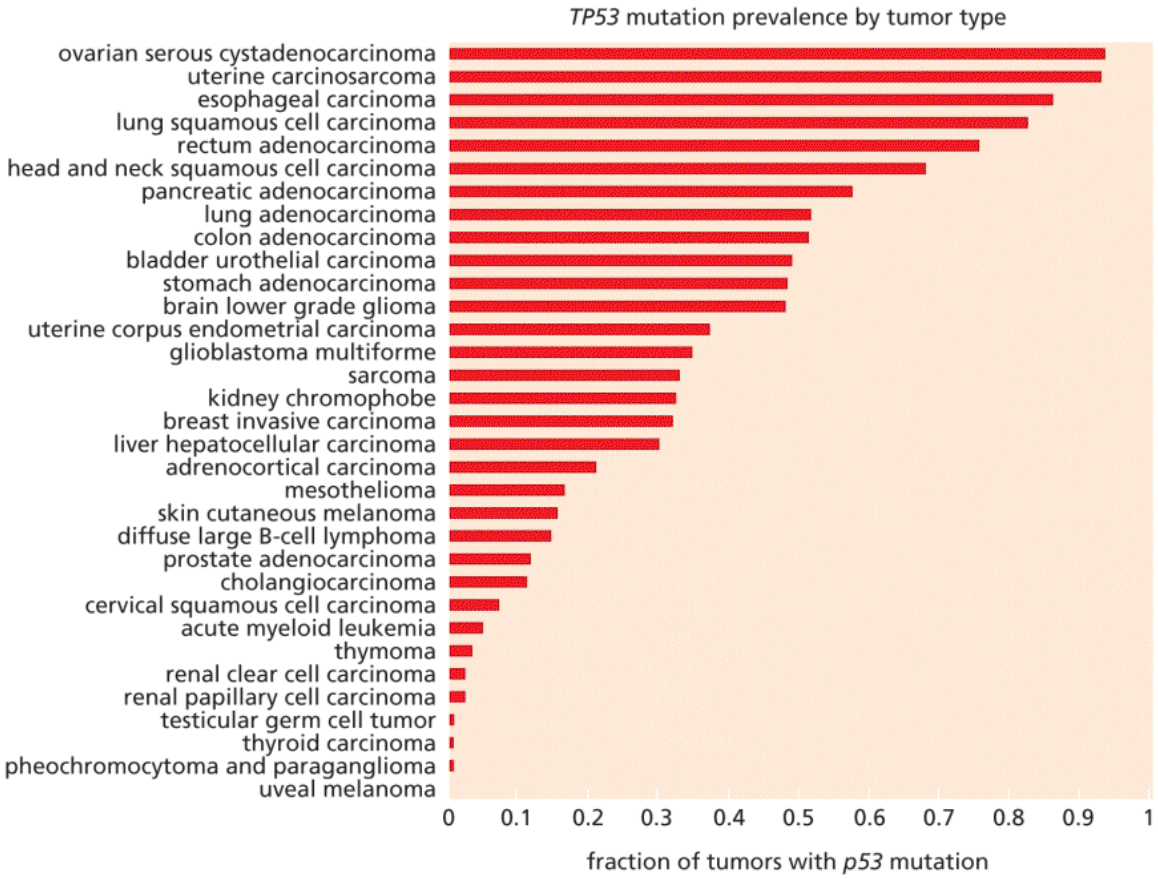
val-135 p53 at 32.5° (= wt *p53*) + *myc* + *ras*

Photos of three Petri dishes. In the first, labeled deletion of p53 at 3 7.5 degrees plus m y c plus r a s, there is a modest number of dark foci, mostly near the perimeter. In the second dish, labeled val-135 p53 at 37.5 degrees (= point mutated p53) plus m y c plus r a s, there are many dark foci. In the third dish, labeled val-135 p53 at 32.5 degrees (= w t p53) plus m y c plus r a s, there is only one dark focus, at the edge.

Figure 9.2 Effects of p53 on cell transformation A cDNA encoding a *ras* oncogene was co-transfected with several alternative forms of a *p53* cDNA into rat embryo fibroblasts. In the presence of a mutant vector that contains an almost complete deletion of the *p53* reading frame (*left*), a small number of transformed foci appeared. In the presence of a *p53* gene that carries a point mutation (*middle*), a large number of robust foci were formed, which is explained by the dominant-negative effects of the point mutant p53 protein (see Section 9.4). However, in the presence of a *p53* wild-type clone (*right*), almost no foci were formed. The experiment demonstrated that wild-type *p53* is effective at suppressing *ras*-induced transformation, whereas this mutant version appeared to facilitate transformation. (Courtesy of M. Oren; from D. Michalovitz et al., *Cell* 62:671–680, 1990. With permission from Elsevier.)

These results suggested that, in normal cells, the wild-type allele of *p53* functions to suppress cell proliferation, and that *p53* only acquires powers that promote growth when it sustains a mutation. Because of this discovery, the *p53* gene was eventually categorized as a tumor suppressor gene (TSG).

By 1987 it became apparent that *p53* alleles carrying a point mutation are common in the genomes of a wide variety of human tumor cells. Data accumulated from diverse studies indicate that the *p53* gene is mutated to varying degrees in human cancers, and may cause more than 90% of some types of cancer (**Figure 9.3**). Indeed, among all the genes examined to date in human cancer cell genomes, *p53* is the gene found to be most frequently mutated.



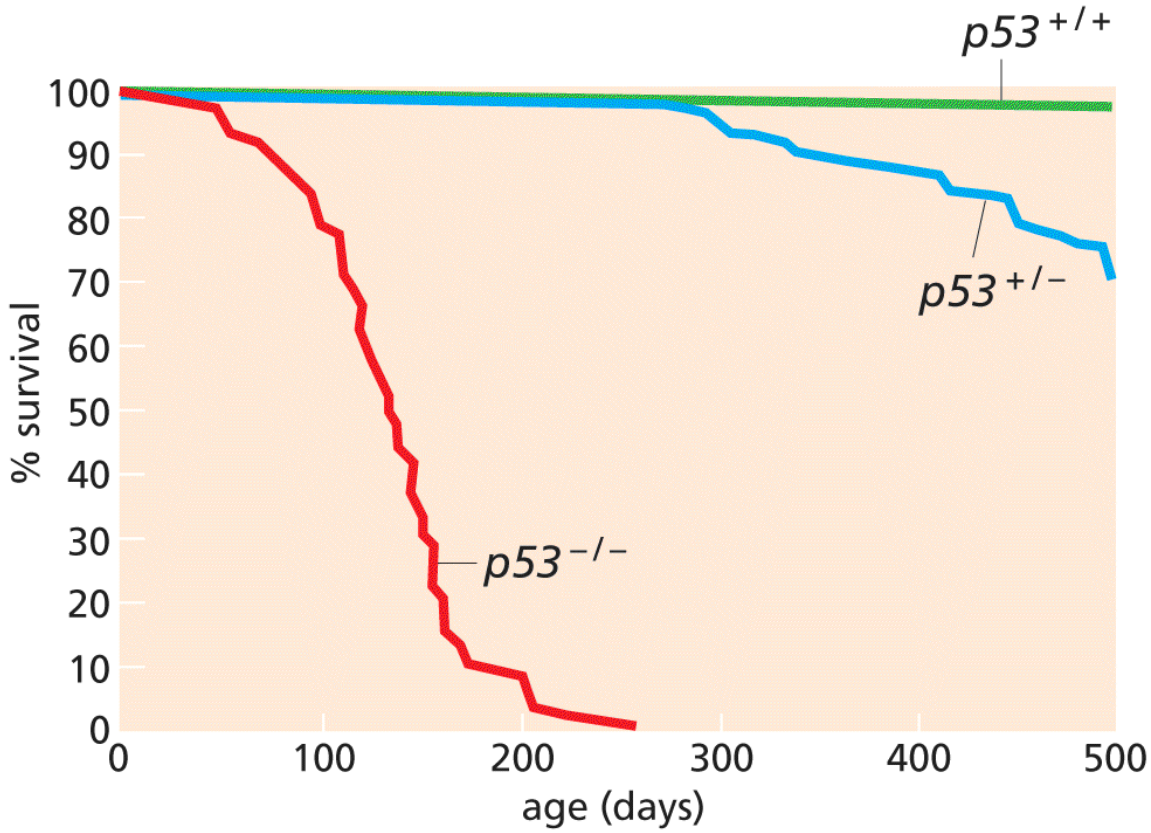
A horizontal bar graph showing the fraction of tumors with the T P 53 mutation, for different tumor types. At the upper extreme, the prevalence is above 90 percent for ovarian serous cystadenocarcinoma and uterine carcinosarcoma. At the lower extreme, the prevalence is at or near zero for testicular germ cell tumor, thyroid carcinoma, pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma, and uveal melanoma.

Figure 9.3 Frequency of mutant *p53* alleles in human tumor cell genomes As indicated in this bar graph, mutant alleles of *p53* are found frequently in human tumors. Sequences were obtained from more than 10,000 patients with 32 different cancer types. The bars indicate the percentage of each tumor type

found to carry a mutant *p53* allele. Note that greater than 90 percent of ovarian serous carcinomas and uterine carcinosarcomas carry mutant *p53* alleles. (Adapted from L. Donehower et al., *Cell Rep.* 28:1370–1384, 2019.)

Further functional analyses of *p53*, conducted much later, made it clear that *p53* is not a typical TSG. For most members of this class of cancer genes, homozygous inactivation in the mouse germ line (using the strategy of targeted gene "knockouts" described in Sidebar 7.2) causes a disruption of embryonic development caused by deregulated morphogenesis in one or more tissues. These TSGs appear to function as negative regulators of proliferation in a variety of cell types, and their removal from the regulatory circuitry of cells leads to disruption of normal development.

In stark contrast, deletion of both copies of *p53* from the mouse germ line has no significant effect on the development of the great majority of $p53^{-/-}$ embryos. Therefore, *p53* cannot be considered to be a simple negative regulator of cell proliferation during normal development. Still, *p53* is clearly a TSG, because mice lacking both germ-line copies of the *p53* gene have a short life span (about 5 months) and often die from lymphomas and sarcomas (**Figure 9.4**). This behavior provided the first hints that the p53 protein is not involved in the regulation of normal cell proliferation. Instead, p53 seemed to be specialized in preventing the appearance of abnormal cells, specifically, those that might be capable of spawning tumors.



A line graph shows the survival percentage over time of three different types of mice. Of mice with no functioning p 53 alleles, less than 30 percent remain alive after 150 days, and zero remain alive after 250 days. Of mice with one functioning p 53 allele, nearly all remain alive after 300 days and 70 percent remain alive after 500 days. Of mice with two functioning p 53 alleles, nearly all remain alive after 500 days.

Figure 9.4 Effects of mutant *p53* alleles in the mouse germ line This plot shows the survival of mice with or without functional *p53* alleles. Although the absence of p53 function in the mice carrying two *p53* null alleles ($p53^{-/-}$) had relatively little effect on their embryonic development and viability at birth, it resulted in a greatly increased mortality relatively early in life. This effect was caused by the development of cancer, particularly lymphoma. All $p53^{-/-}$ homozygotes succumbed to malignancies by about 250 days of age (*red line*), and even $p53^{+/-}$ heterozygotes (*blue line*) began to develop tumors at this time; wild-type ($p53^{+/+}$) mice (*green line*) showed virtually no mortality until almost 500 days of age. (Adapted from T. Jacks et al., *Curr. Biol.* 4:1–7, 1994. With permission from Elsevier.)

OceanofPDF.com

9.3 Inherited mutations affecting *p53* predispose individuals to a variety of tumors

Inherited mutations in tumor suppressor genes underlie a number of human familial cancer syndromes (as we read in Chapter 7). And germ-line mutations in *p53* are likewise associated with significantly increased cancer risk. In 1982, a group of families was identified that displayed a greatly increased susceptibility to a variety of different tumors, including glioblastoma; leukemias; carcinomas of the breast, lung and pancreas; Wilms tumor; and soft-tissue sarcomas. In some families, as many as half of the members were afflicted with one or another of these cancers, and two-thirds developed some type of cancer by the time they reached age 22. Some family members were even afflicted with several types of cancer concurrently. This familial cancer syndrome, termed Li–Fraumeni after the two human geneticists who first identified and characterized it, was notable because of the wide range of tumor types involved (see Table 7.1).

Eight years after the Li–Fraumeni syndrome was first described, researchers discovered that many of the cases arose from a mutant allele at a locus on human Chromosome 17p13—precisely where the *p53* gene is located. In about 70% of these families, mutant alleles of *p53* were found to be transmitted in a Mendelian fashion. Individuals who inherited a single mutant *p53* allele had a high probability of developing some form of malignancy, often early in life, although the age of onset for these various malignancies was found to be quite variable: about 5 years of age for adrenocortical carcinomas, 16 years for sarcomas, 25 years for brain tumors, 37 years for breast cancer, and almost 50 years for lung cancer. In light of the multiple roles that *p53* would be discovered to play in suppressing cancer throughout the body, it seems reasonable that mutant

germ-line alleles of this gene should predispose a person to such a diverse group of malignancies.

We now know that the mutant *p53* alleles that are transmitted through the germ lines of Li–Fraumeni families carry a variety of point mutations that are scattered across the *p53* coding sequence. These germ-line mutations, which have been characterized in nearly 900 families, display a distribution reminiscent of that shown by the somatic mutations that have been documented in the genomes of more than 30,000 sporadic human tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

9.4 Mutant versions of *p53* interfere with normal p53 function

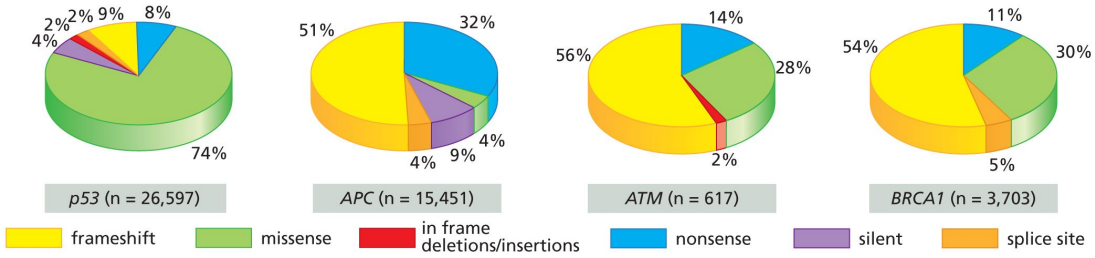
The observations of frequent mutations in the *p53* gene in familial cancer syndromes and in a large percentage of the genomes present in sporadic (nonfamilial) tumors suggested that, for many incipient cancer cells, perturbation or elimination of p53 function enhances their ability to survive. This notion raised the question of precisely how these cells succeed in shedding p53 function. Investigators researching this question encountered another puzzle: the *p53* gene did not seem to obey Knudson's hypothesis for the two-hit elimination of TSGs (see Section 7.3).

According to the Knudson scheme, an evolving premalignant cell can reap substantial benefit only after it has lost both functional copies of a TSG that has been holding back its proliferation. In the Knudson model, such loss of function is caused by mutations that create inactive—or null—alleles, which are therefore recessive. Hence, a premalignant cell that inactivates only one copy of a TSG will gain minimal benefit —due to the halving of effective gene function—or none at all, if the residual activity specified by the surviving wild-type gene copy is sufficient to mediate normal function. As we learned in Chapter 7, substantial change in cell phenotype usually occurs only when the function of a suppressor gene is eliminated through two successive inactivating mutations or through a combination of an inactivating mutation plus a loss-of-heterozygosity (LOH) event (see Section 7.4).

Knudson's model was hard to reconcile with the observed behavior of the mutant *p53* cDNA introduced into rat embryo fibroblasts (see Figure 9.2). The mutant *p53* cDNAs clearly altered cell phenotype, even though these embryo fibroblast cells continued to harbor their own pair of wild-type *p53* gene copies. This meant that the introduced mutant *p53* cDNA could not be functioning as an inactive, recessive allele. It seemed, instead, that the point-mutated *p53* allele was actively exerting some type of dominant function when introduced into these rat embryo cells.

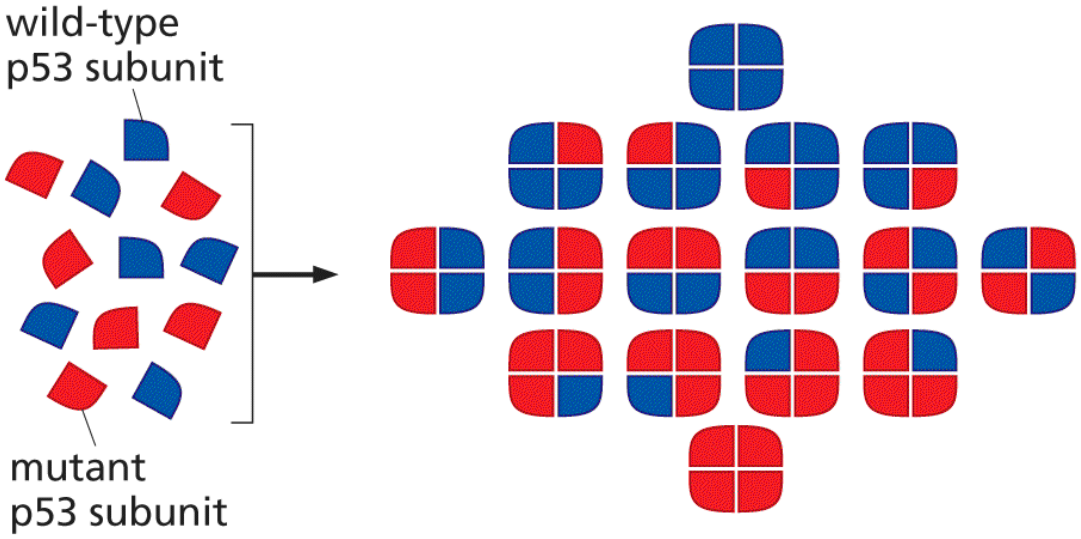
A solution to the genetic puzzle of how mutant *p53* alleles might foster tumor cell formation arose from three lines of research. First, studies in the area of yeast genetics indicated that, for certain genes, mutations can do more than compromise the normal functioning of the encoded gene product; they can confer on the mutant allele (and its protein product) the ability to interfere with or obstruct the ongoing activities of the surviving wild-type copy of the gene. Alleles that show this behavior are termed dominant-interfering or dominant-negative alleles.

A second telling clue came from analysis of the mutant alleles of the *p53* gene in cancer cells (**Figure 9.5A**). These analyses indicated that most tumor-associated, mutant *p53* alleles carry point mutations in their reading frames that create missense codons (resulting in amino acid substitutions) rather than nonsense codons (which cause premature termination of the growing polypeptide chain and, quite often, degradation of the resulting truncated protein). Furthermore, larger deletions within the coding sequence of the *p53* gene were found to be relatively uncommon. Consequently, researchers came to the inescapable conclusion that tumor cells can derive more benefit from the presence of a slightly altered p53 protein than from its complete elimination through the creation of null alleles by nonsense mutations or by the outright deletion of significant portions of the *p53* gene. These slightly altered p53 proteins—so the thinking went—could somehow function in a dominant-interfering manner to compromise the function of any wild-type p53 protein that might be present in a cell.



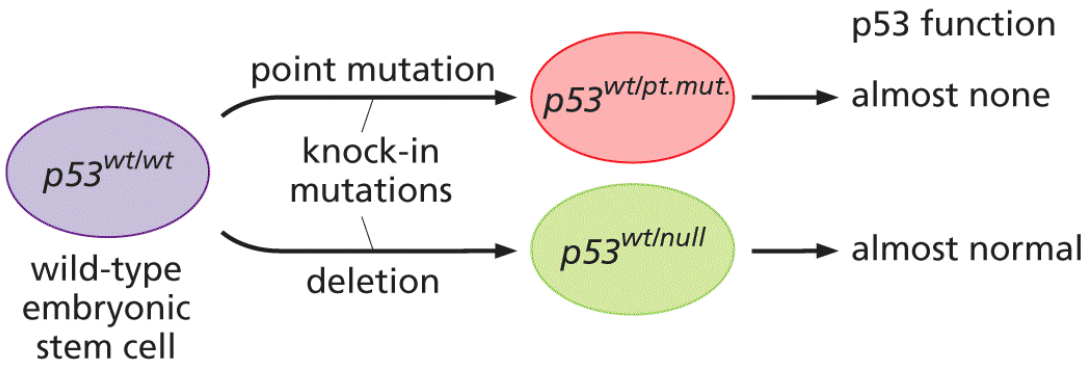
Four pie charts, each for a different gene, describing the relative frequencies of different types of mutation. Of 26,597 mutations in the p53 gene, 74 percent were found to be missense mutations. Of 15,451 mutations in the A P C gene, 51 percent were frameshift mutations and another 32 percent were nonsense mutations. Of 617 mutations in the A T M gene, 56 percent were frameshift mutations, 28 percent were missense mutations, and 14 percent were nonsense mutations. And of 3,703 mutations in the B R C A 1 gene, 54 percent were frameshift mutations, 30 percent were missense mutations, and 11 percent were nonsense mutations. In frame deletions and insertions, splice site mutations, and silent mutations each never accounted for more than 9 percent.

(A)



An illustration of the 16 different ways four p53 subunits can be assembled into a 2 by 2 block when choosing from a mix of wild-type and mutant subunits.

(B)



The effect of knock-in mutations on an embryonic stem cell that is wild-type respect to p53. When the mutation replaces one of the two wild-type gene copies with a point mutation, p53 function is almost completely lost. By contrast, when the mutation deletes one of the two wild-type gene copies, p53 function remains almost completely normal.

(C)

Figure 9.5 *p53* functions as a dominant-negative allele (A) As indicated in these pie charts, missense mutations that lead to amino acid substitutions (*green*) affect the great majority of the mutant *p53* alleles found in the 30,000 human tumor genomes analyzed here; other types of mutations are seen relatively infrequently

in *p53*. In contrast, the mutations striking other well-studied tumor suppressor genes (such as *APC*) or "caretaker" genes involved in maintenance of the genome (*ATM*, *BRCA1*) and described in Chapter 12 are more often frameshift mutations (*yellow*) or nonsense codons (*blue*); both of these types of mutation disrupt protein structure, usually by creating truncated versions of proteins that are often degraded rapidly in cells, and thus create effectively null alleles. (B) In cells bearing a single mutant *p53* and a single wild-type allele, the mutant protein usually retains its ability to form tetramers but loses its ability to function normally because of a defective DNA binding domain. Consequently, mixed tetramers composed of differing proportions of wild-type (*blue*) and mutant (*red*) p53 subunits may form, and the presence of even a single mutant protein subunit may compromise the functioning of the entire tetramer. Therefore, in a cell that is heterozygous at the *p53* locus, fifteen-sixteenths of the p53 tetramers may lack fully normal function. (C) Perhaps the most direct demonstration of the dominant-negative mode of *p53* action has come from "knocking in" (see Sidebar 7.5) mutant *p53* alleles into the genome of mouse embryonal stem (ES) cells. In cells in which a point mutation in the DNA-binding domain was knocked into one *p53* gene copy, almost all p53 function was lost. In contrast, when one *p53* gene copy was completely inactivated (yielding a null allele), p53 function was almost normal. (A, from International Agency for Research on Cancer, TP53 genetic variations in human cancer, IARC release R14, 2009; and A.I. Robles et al., *Oncogene* 21:6898–6907, 2002. With permission from Nature.)

The third and final clue to the p53 puzzle came from biochemical and structural analyses of its encoded protein, which revealed that p53 is a DNA-binding transcription factor that normally exists in the cell as a homotetramer, that is, an assembly of four identical polypeptide subunits. This observed tetrameric state suggested a plausible mechanism through which a dominant-negative mutant allele of *p53* could actively interfere with the continued functioning of a wild-type *p53* allele being expressed in the same cell.

Assume that a mutant *p53* allele found in a human cancer cell encodes a form of the p53 protein that has lost most of its normal function but has retained the ability to participate in tetramer formation (Figure 9.5B). If one such mutant allele were to coexist with a wild-type allele in this cell, the p53 tetramers assembled in such a cell would contain mixtures of mutant and wild-type proteins in various proportions. In fact, statistically speaking, if the mutant and wild-type proteins were expressed at equal levels, 15 out of the 16 equally possible combinations of mutant and wild-type p53 monomers would contain at least one mutant p53 subunit (Figure 9.5B). If the presence of even a single mutant p53 protein in a tetramer could interfere with the functioning of the complex as a whole, these mixed tetramers might therefore lack some or all of the activity associated with their fully wild-type counterpart.

Consequently, only one-sixteenth of the p53 tetramers assembled in a heterozygous cell (which carries one mutant and one wild-type *p53* gene copy) would be formed purely from wild-type p53 subunits and thus retain full wild-type function. This scheme would also explain why slightly altered versions of p53 were far more effective in driving cancer progression than the absence of p53 protein, that is, the state in which mutant null alleles of *p53* arose in the genome of an evolving, pre-neoplastic cell. Experiments in genetically altered embryonic stem (ES) cells have since provided direct evidence for p53's dominant-negative mode of action (Figure 9.5C).

In an experimental situation in which a mutant *p53* cDNA clone is introduced via an engineered expression vector into cells carrying a pair of wild-type *p53* alleles (see Figure 9.2), the expression of this introduced allele is usually greater than that of the native *p53* gene copies. As a consequence, in such transfected cells, the amount of mutant p53 protein present will be vastly higher than the amount of wild-type protein. Hence, far fewer than one-sixteenth of the p53 tetramers in such cells will be formed purely from wild-type p53 subunits. The relative abundance of the mutant p53 protein explains how introducing a mutant *p53* allele might compromise virtually all p53 function in such cells.

The above logic suggests that many incipient human tumor cells would benefit from carrying one wild-type and one co-existing mutant *p53* allele. However, in most human tumor cells that are mutant at the *p53* locus, a subsequent LOH event eliminates the wild-type allele, producing a cell with either two mutant *p53* alleles or only one allele that is mutant. Again, this observation at first seems puzzling. If a mutation that creates a dominant-negative allele can eliminate much of a cell's p53 function (see Figure 9.5B), why should the loss of the surviving wild-type *p53* allele be necessary? The answer, it seems, is that even a fraction of fully normal *p53* gene function is disadvantageous to a cancer cell. So, the most opportunistic cancers eventually evolve to shed the remaining wild-type *p53* allele.

In addition, many experiments demonstrate that point-mutant p53 proteins can also display a "gain-of-function" activity that contributes to tumorigenesis, doing so in the absence of wild-type p53 (**Sidebar 9.1**). This behavior, on its own, indicates that mutant p53 interacts with a variety of other nuclear proteins beyond wild-type p53 subunits and in various ways perturbs their function. Of additional interest are the sites of *p53*-associated point mutations. As seen in **Figure 9.6A**, almost all of them affect the DNA-binding site of p53, preventing this protein from participating in its normal function as a transcriptional regulator (Figure 9.6B), which in turn holds strong implications for how p53 functions in more than half of human cancers.

Sidebar 9.1 Missense mutant p53 proteins can display gain-of-function activities

As discussed in Section 9.4, most mutant *p53* alleles found in human cancers carry missense mutations that result in an amino acid substitution in the protein. These missense mutant p53 proteins act in a dominant-negative fashion by forming nonfunctional mixed tetramers with wild-type p53 (see Figure 9.5B). This association allows for the mutation of a single *p53* allele to largely abrogate cellular p53 function.

In addition to this dominant-negative activity, many missense p53 mutants have also been shown to actively *promote* cellular transformation in culture or tumor progression in mouse cancer models, even in the absence of wild-type p53. These so-called dominant gain-of-function (or neomorphic) activities cannot be ascribed to an inhibition of normal p53 function, because they can manifest their effects when the wild-type protein is absent. Instead, it is thought that missense mutant p53 proteins can interact with other cellular proteins and alter their function in a manner that promotes transformation and tumorigenesis. For example, point-mutant p53 proteins have been shown to selectively engage with, and inhibit the activities of, the p53-related proteins p63 and p73 (see Sidebar 9.5). A number of pathways involved in mitogenic signaling, transcription, and metabolism have also been shown to be affected by the expression of missense p53 proteins, and multiple additional cellular proteins have been implicated as specific binding partners of mutant p53 to mediate these effects.

Making matters more complex is that it is likely that different missense mutations in p53 affect the formation of these aberrant protein–protein interactions differently and thus have distinct gain-of-function activities. Moreover, different tumor types may be more or less sensitive to these effects: for some cancers, the dominant-negative activity may be the *raison d'etre* behind the selection for the missense mutant *p53* allele, whereas for other cancers, a combination of dominant-negative and gain-of-function activities might be more advantageous. Ironically, as discussed early in this chapter, *p53* was initially classified as an oncogene rather than a TSG based on the inadvertent use of a point-mutant *p53* allele in early co-transfection assays (see Section 9.2). Given that these missense alleles can also have gain-of-function activity, perhaps the proper classification of *p53* should be that it is both an oncogene and a TSG!

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

sporadic
: Describing a disease or condition that appears to occur randomly in a large population without any apparent inborn predisposition.

dominant-interfering
: Referring to a mutant allele of a gene that, when co-expressed with the wild-type allele of the gene, is able to interfere with the functioning of the latter. *Also termed* **dominant-negative**.

dominant-negative
: Referring to a mutant allele of a gene that, when co-expressed with the wild-type allele of the gene, is able to interfere with the functioning of the latter. *Also termed* **dominant-interfering**.

null allele
: An allele of a gene that lacks all normal functions of the gene. *See also* **hypomorphic**.

homotetramer
: An assembly of four identical subunits, usually referring to proteins.

neomorphic
: Referring to a mutation that confers a novel function on a gene and encoded protein.

missense codon
: A triplet codon in the genetic code, often created by a point mutation, that specifies an amino acid residue different from that specified by the codon that it replaces. *See also* **nonsense codon**.

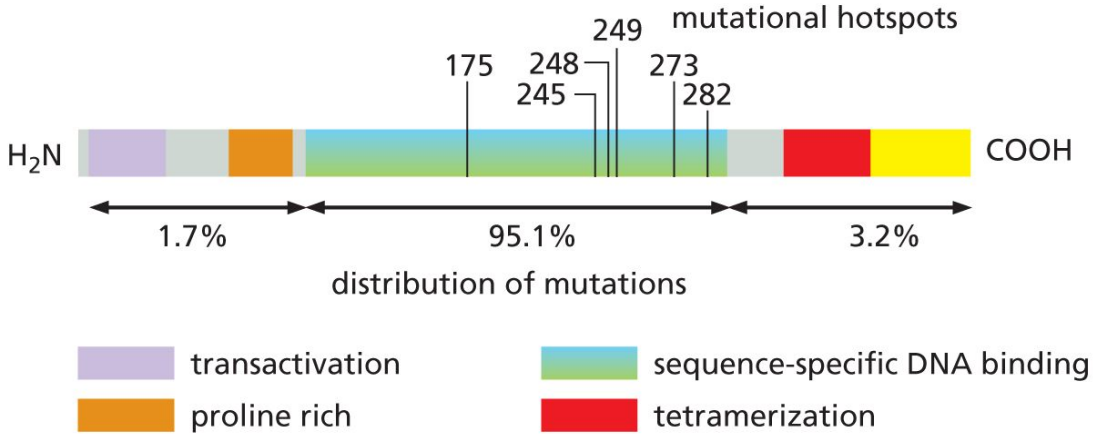
nonsense codon
: A triplet codon in the genetic code that specifies termination of the growing polypeptide chain; nonsense codons generated by point mutations within reading frames cause premature termination of translation and resulting formation of truncated proteins. *See also* **missense codon**.

OceanofPDF.com

9.5 p53 protein molecules usually have short lifetimes

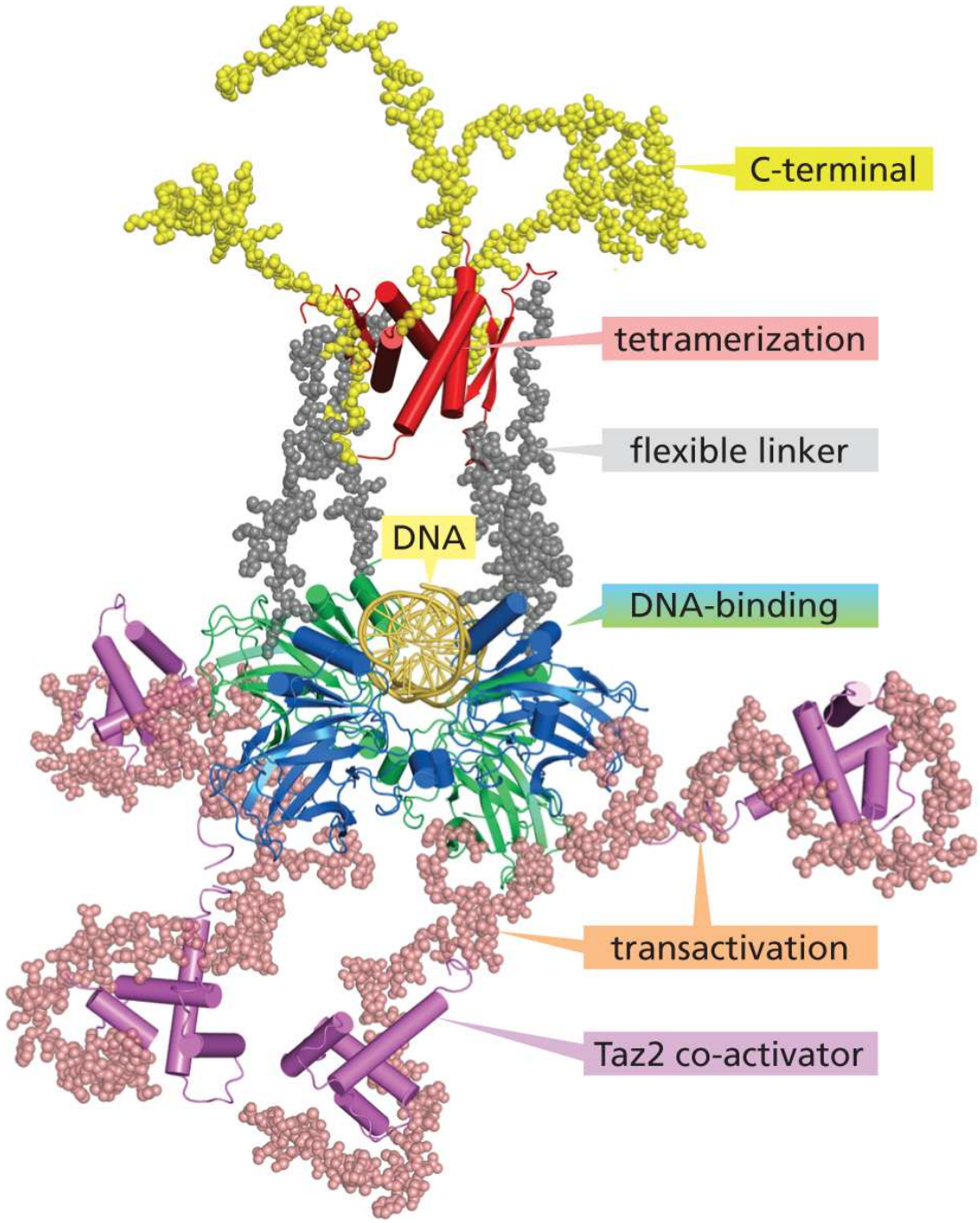
Long before p53 was discovered to bind to DNA, the nuclear localization of this protein in many normal and neoplastic cells suggested that it might function as a transcription factor. In general, there are at least three mechanisms that can regulate the activity of transcription factors: (1) modulation of their nuclear concentrations; (2) alteration of their intrinsic activity by covalent modification; (3) variation in the concentrations of transcription factors with which they collaborate. In some instances, all three mechanisms cooperate. For *p53*, the first mechanism—changes in the concentration of the p53 protein—was initially implicated. Measurement of p53 protein levels indicated that they could vary drastically from one cell type to another and, provocatively, would increase rapidly when cells were exposed to certain types of physiological stress.

These observations raised the question of how cells control the concentration of p53. Many protein molecules, once synthesized, persist for tens or even hundreds of hours. Yet other proteins are highly unstable and are degraded almost as soon as they are assembled. One way to measure the half-life of proteins is to treat cells with cycloheximide, a drug that blocks ongoing protein synthesis. When such an experiment was performed in cells with wild-type *p53* alleles, the p53 protein disappeared with a half-life of only 20 minutes, leading to the conclusion that p53 is usually a highly unstable protein and one that is broken down by proteolysis soon after it is synthesized.



The locations of the point mutations that cause amino acid substitutions in p53. 1.7 percent of mutations occur in a short section at the H2N end of the

gene, where the transactivation and proline-rich domains are located. 3.2 percent of mutations occur in another short section, at the C O O H end of the gene, where the tetramerization domain is located. 95.1 percent of mutations occur in the long middle section that consists mostly of the sequence-specific D N A binding domain. Mutational hotspots in this domain are labeled with protein residue numbers 175, 245, 248, 249, 273, and 282.
(A)



A model of tetramerized p53, with four C domains, four tightly joined tetramerization domains, flexible linkers, four D N A binding domains, four transactivation domains, and four Taz2 co-activators. A D N A shaped into a ball sits in the middle of the D N A binding domains.

(B)

Figure 9.6 Nature of *p53* mutations (A) The locations of the point mutations that cause amino acid substitutions in the p53 protein are shown. Most *p53* mutations (95.1%) affect the DNA-binding domain of the p53 protein. The numbers above the structure indicate the residue numbers of the amino acids that are subject to frequent substitution in human tumors. The transactivation domain enables p53 to interact physically with a number of alternative nuclear partner proteins, including the transcriptional co-activator p300/CBP and the p53 antagonist Mdm2. (B) The overall structure of the DNA-bound p53 tetramer. The four DNA-binding domains are shown in *green* and *blue*, and the four tetramerization domains are seen as *red* and *dark red* α-helices. The DNA double helix (*center*) is shown in *yellow.* Each of the four DNA-binding domains associates with half of a binding site in the DNA; two copies of the binding site are present in the DNA with a small number of base pairs separating them (see Figure 9.15). Each of the four transactivating domains (*dark pink)* is shown interacting with the Taz2 domain of the p300 co-activator (*light purple*), which functions to stimulate transcription through its ability to acetylate histones and p53 itself. The C-terminal domain (*yellow*) plays important roles in regulating transcription. (A, from K.H. Vousden and X. Lu, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2:594–604, 2002; and A.C. Joerger and A.R. Fersht, *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 77:557–582, 2008. With permission from Nature. B, from A.C. Joerger and A.R. Fersht, *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 2:000919, 2010. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Such rapid degradation might seem highly wasteful. Why should a cell invest substantial energy and synthetic capacity in making a protein molecule, only to destroy it almost as soon as it has been created? Similar behaviors have been associated with other cellular proteins such as Myc (see Section 6.1).

The rationale underlying this ostensibly “futile cycle” of rapid protein turnover is a simple one: a cell may need to rapidly increase or decrease the concentration of a protein in response to certain physiological signals. In principle, such modulation could be achieved by regulating the level of its encoding mRNA or the rate with which this mRNA is translated. However, far more rapid changes in the levels of a critical protein can be achieved simply by stabilizing or destabilizing the protein itself. In the case of p53, a cell can double the concentration of p53 protein in 20 minutes simply by blocking its degradation.

Under normal conditions, a cell will continuously synthesize p53 molecules at a high rate and subsequently degrade them at an equally high rate. The net result of this rapid turnover is a very low “steady-state” level of the protein within this cell. In response to certain physiological signals, however, the degradation of p53 is inhibited, resulting in a rapid increase of p53 levels in the cell. Why would a normal cell need to rapidly modulate p53 levels, and what types of signals would cause a cell to halt p53 degradation and instead allow the protein to accumulate?

OceanofPDF.com

9.6 Various signals cause p53 induction

In the early 1990s, a variety of agents were found to induce rapid increases in p53 protein levels. These inducers included X-rays, ultraviolet (UV) radiation, certain chemotherapeutic drugs that damage DNA, and inhibitors of DNA synthesis. Within minutes of exposing cells to some of these agents, p53 levels rapidly increased. This rapid induction occurred in the absence of any marked changes in *p53* mRNA levels and hence did not result from increased transcription of the *p53* gene. Instead, it soon became apparent that this collection of agents boosts the concentration of p53 by stabilizing post-translationally the otherwise labile p53 protein.

In the years that followed, an even greater diversity of physiological signals were found capable of triggering increases in p53 levels. Among these were low oxygen tension (hypoxia), which is experienced by cells—both normal and malignant—that lack adequate access to the circulation and thus to oxygen borne by the blood. Still later, introduction of the adenovirus *E1A* or the cellular *Myc* oncogene (see Sections 8.5 and 8.9) into cells was also found to be capable of causing increases in p53 levels.

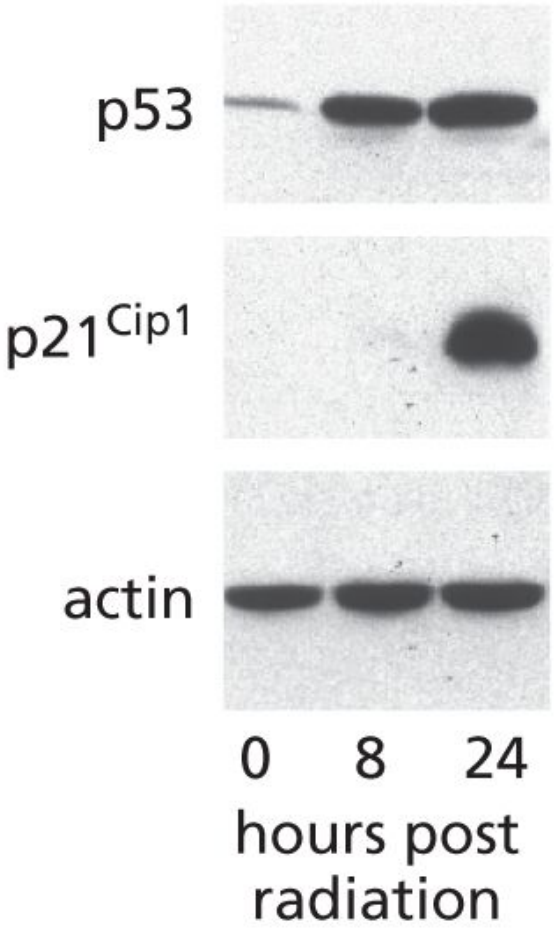
By now, the list of stimuli that elevate p53 levels has grown even longer. Expression of higher-than-normal concentrations of active E2F1 transcription factor (see Figure 8.18), widespread demethylation of chromosomal DNA (see Section 7.7), deficits in the nucleotide precursors of DNA, and increases in intracellular reactive oxygen species (ROS) all elicit p53 accumulation. Exposure of cells to nitrous oxide or to an acidified growth medium, depletion of the intracellular pool of ribonucleotides, and blockage of either RNA or DNA synthesis drive increases of p53 levels as well.

This extensive list of triggers made it clear that a diverse array of sensors is responsible for monitoring the integrity and functioning of various cellular systems. When these sensors detect damage or aberrant functioning, they send signals to p53 and its regulators, resulting in a rapid increase in p53 levels within a cell and the subsequent induction of a variety of downstream responses.

The same physiological signals and DNA-damaging—or genotoxic—agents that provoke p53 increases were already known from other work to trigger cell cycle arrest (sometimes referred to as “growth arrest”). In some cases, these stresses could even induce a more permanent form of arrest known as cellular senescence (see Section 9.11). In yet other situations, some of these stressful signals might trigger activation of the apoptotic cell suicide program (see Section 9.13). These observations, when taken

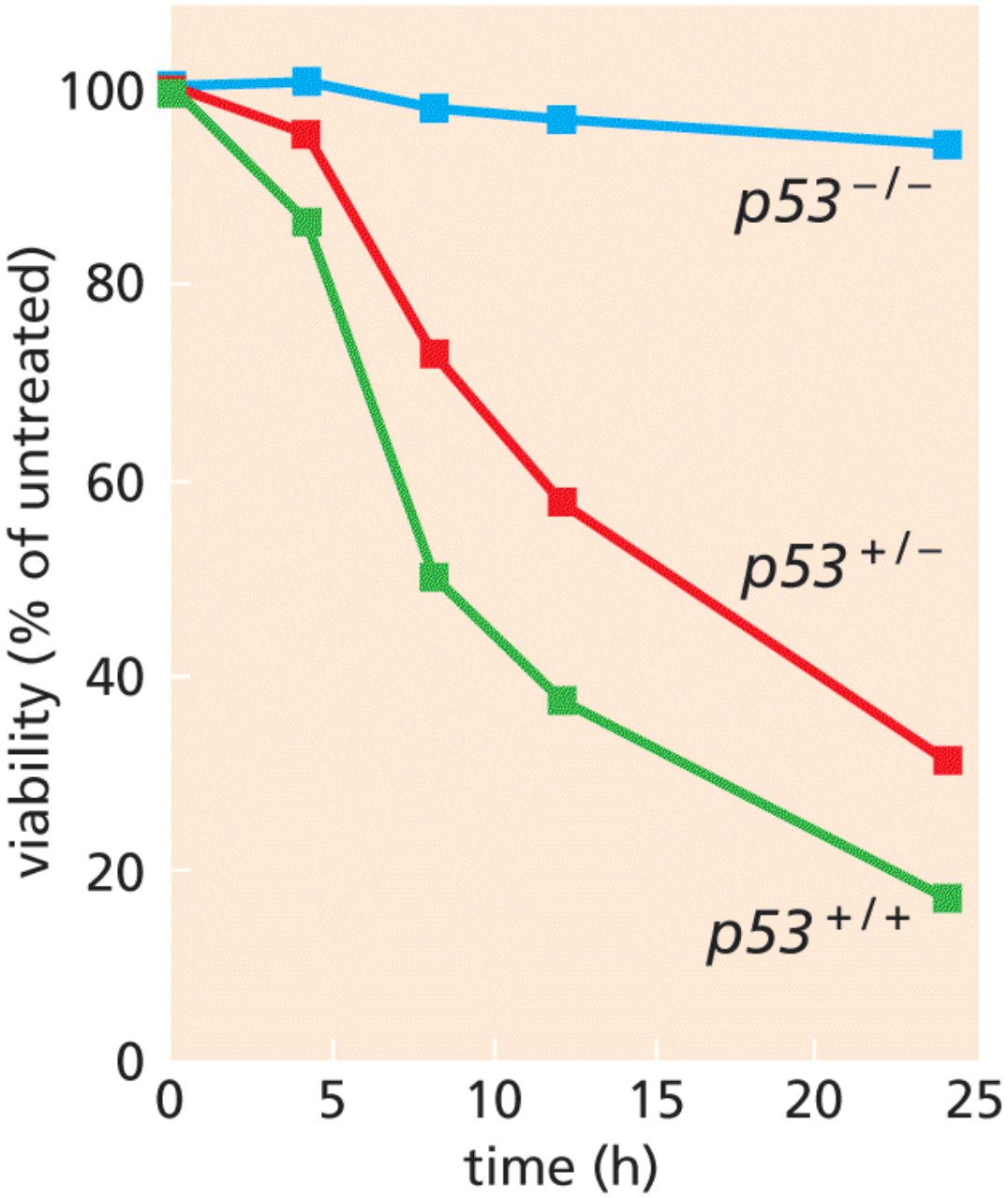
together, showed a striking parallel: toxic agents that induce cell cycle arrest, senescence, or apoptosis are also capable of inducing increases in p53 levels. Because such observations were initially only correlations, they did not prove that p53 somehow *caused* cells to arrest their growth or trigger apoptosis following exposure to toxic or stressful stimuli.

The definitive demonstrations of causality came from more detailed examinations of the effects of elevating p53. For example, the rise in cellular p53 levels that is triggered by treatment with genotoxic agents, such as X-rays, is followed by a subsequent increase in the levels of the mRNA encoding the CDK inhibitor $p21^{Cip1}$ (see Section 8.4); this induction is absent in cells expressing mutant p53 protein. The observation suggests that in some cell types, such as fibroblasts, p53 can halt cell cycle progression by inducing expression of this widely acting CDK inhibitor (**Figure 9.7A**, see also Figure 8.12). Indeed, the long-term biological responses to irradiation are often affected by the state of a cell's *p53* gene. For example, mouse embryo fibroblasts carrying two defective *p53* alleles show a greatly decreased tendency to enter into cell cycle arrest following irradiation. Likewise, in cell types such as T lymphocytes, which undergo apoptosis when exposed to radiation, a functional p53 is required to launch this cell's suicide response (Figure 9.7B).



Autoradiographs for three proteins, showing that following radiation exposure, p53 goes from a minimal presence to a major one within 8 hours, p21 Cip1 goes from no presence at all even after 8 hours to an abundance in 24 hours, and actin increases slightly after 8 hours. Actin bands are always present.

(A)

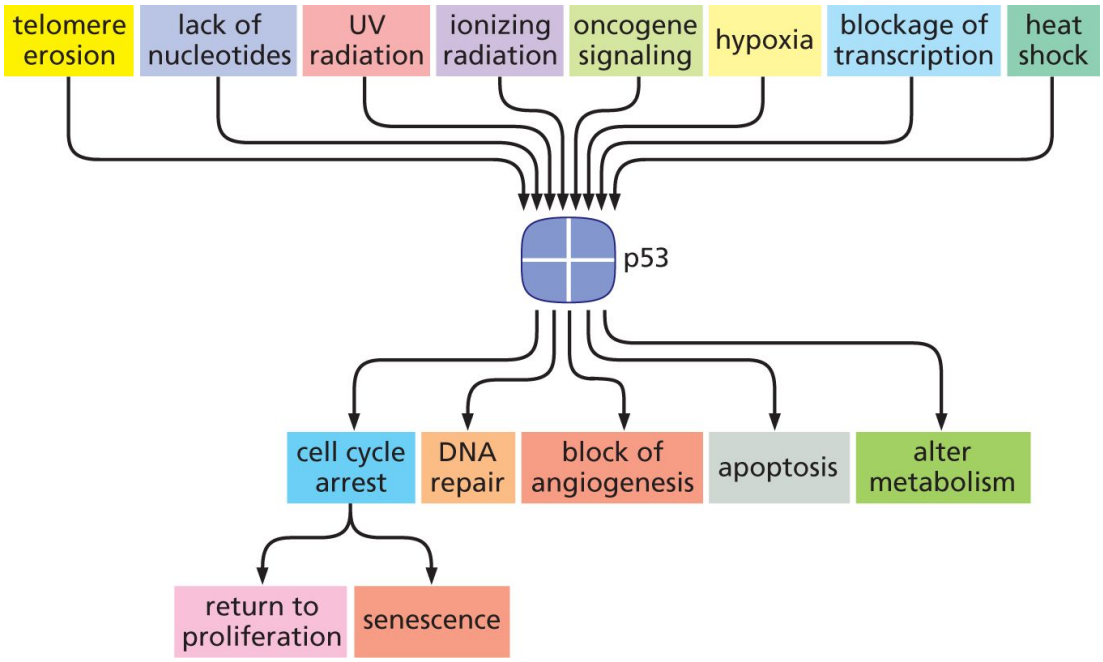


A line graph showing decreasing viability over time, measured as percent of untreated, for three genotypes. The wild-type genotype with two wild-type p53 alleles decreases rapidly, from 100 percent viability initially to just under 50 percent after 8 hours and under 20 percent after 25 hours. The genotype with just one wild-type allele decreases less rapidly, from 100 percent initially to about 60 percent after 10 hours and 30 percent after 25 hours. The genotype with no wild-type alleles decreases least rapidly, staying above 95 percent viability even after 25 hours.

(B)

Figure 9.7 p53 and the radiation response Exposure of cells to X-rays strongly increases p53 levels. (A) Once p53 is present in higher concentrations and is functionally activated via various covalent modifications (*not measured here*), it induces expression of the $p21^{Cip1}$ protein (see Section 8.4). $p21^{Cip1}$ acts as a potent CDK inhibitor of the cyclin–CDK complexes that are active in late G_1, S, G_2, and M phases and can thereby halt further cell proliferation at any of these phases of the cell cycle. The actin protein is included in all three samples as a "loading control" to ensure that equal amounts of protein were added to each lane of the gel prior to electrophoresis. (B) Thymocytes (leukocytes derived from the thymus) of wild-type ($p53^{+/+}$) mice show an 80% loss of viability relative to untreated control cells during the 25 hours following X-irradiation (*green*), and thymocytes from $p53^{+/-}$ heterozygous mice (with one wild-type and one null allele) show almost as much loss of viability (*red*). In contrast, thymocytes prepared from $p53^{-/-}$ homozygous mutant mice exhibit less than a 5% loss of viability during this time period (*blue*). In all cases, the loss of viability was attributable to apoptosis (*not shown*). (A, courtesy of K.H. Vousden. B, from S.W. Lowe et al., *Nature* 362:847–849, 1993. With permission from Nature.)

These various observations can be incorporated into a simple, unifying mechanistic model: a diverse array of cellular surveillance systems relay information to p53, which then triggers appropriate physiological responses: halting cell proliferation, activating DNA repair systems, adjusting metabolism, blocking angiogenesis (the growth of new blood vessels), or engaging the apoptotic suicide program described later (**Figure 9.8**). In fact, a number of stresses—including hypoxia, genomic damage, and imbalances in the signaling pathways governing cell proliferation—are commonly experienced by cancer cells during various stages of tumor development. Consequently, p53 activity must be blunted or even fully eliminated in these cells if they are to survive and prosper. In the same manner, normal cells must also avoid excessive p53 activity, because it threatens to cause their arrest or death, thereby affecting normal bodily functions (**Supplementary Sidebar 9.1**).



A diagram showing the signals that activate p53 and also the activated protein's downstream effects. The activating signals are telomere erosion, lack of nucleotides, U V radiation, ionizing radiation, oncogene signaling, hypoxia, blockage of transcription, and heat shock. The downstream effects are cell cycle arrest leading to return to proliferation or else to senescence, D N A repair, block of angiogenesis, apoptosis, and altered metabolism.

Figure 9.8 p53-activating signals and p53's downstream effects Studies of p53 function have revealed that a variety of cell-physiological stresses can cause a rapid rise in p53 level. The resulting accumulated p53 protein then undergoes post-translational modifications and proceeds to induce a number of responses. A cytostatic response ("cell cycle arrest," often called "growth arrest") can be either irreversible ("senescence") or reversible ("return to proliferation"). DNA repair proteins may be mobilized as well as proteins that alter metabolism or antagonize blood vessel formation ("block of angiogenesis"). As an alternative, in certain circumstances, p53 may trigger apoptosis.

OceanofPDF.com

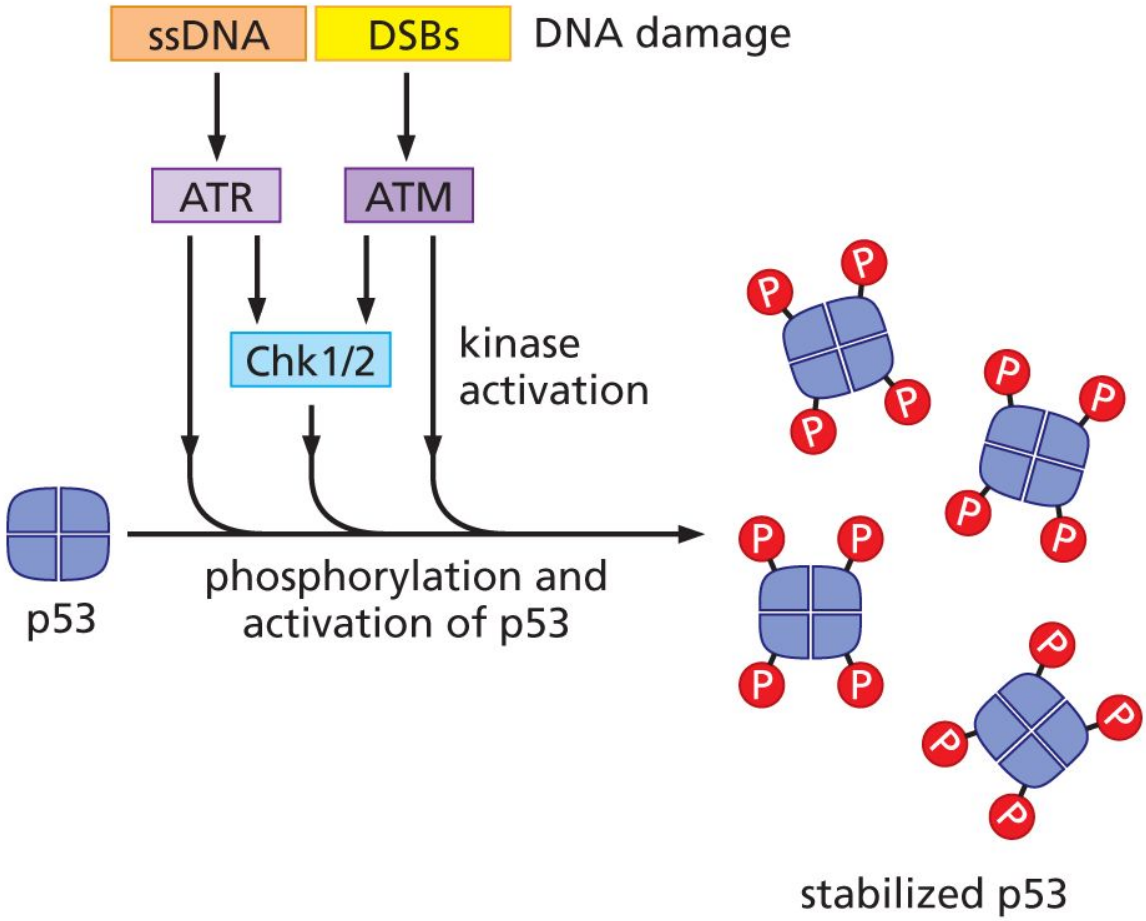
Glossary

genotoxic
: Referring to an agent or mechanism that is capable of damaging a genome, i.e., is mutagenic.

OceanofPDF.com

9.7 DNA damage and deregulated growth signals cause p53 stabilization

Three well-studied systems send alarm signals to p53 in the event that they detect damage or signaling imbalances. The first monitors chromosomal DNA for double-strand breaks (DSBs), including those that are created by ionizing radiation such as X-rays. Indeed, in some cell types, even a single DSB anywhere in the genome appears to be sufficient to induce a measurable increase in p53 levels. Many of the proteins that detect such breaks have been discovered; they act through a kinase called ATM. Not only does ATM phosphorylate p53 directly, but it also activates another kinase, Chk2, that proceeds to phosphorylate p53 as well (**Figure 9.9**). This phosphorylation stabilizes the p53 protein and protects it from destruction orchestrated by the protein Mdm2, as discussed in the next section. A deficiency of ATM—the cause of the disease ataxia telangiectasia—leads to a hypersensitivity of cells to X-irradiation (as described in Chapter 12). Thus, without ATM on the job, p53 fails to be properly stabilized and activated by DNA damage; in the absence of p53, cells will lose the ability to rapidly mount their DNA repair program, leading to DNA breaks that can impair their survival.



A diagram showing the Control of p53 levels by various kinases. D N A damage may take the form of single-stranded D N A or double-strand D N A breaks, called D S Bees. The former activate A T R, while the latter activate A T M. These two kinases phosphorylate p53 either directly or via C h k1 and C h k2. The output of this phosphorylation and activation of p53 is stabilized p thirty fives each with four phosphate groups.

Figure 9.9 Control of p53 levels by various kinases The cycle of p53 synthesis and destruction is modulated by a series of regulators. Extensive ssDNA regions and double-strand DNA breaks (DSBs) activate two kinases, ATR and ATM, respectively. These kinases can phosphorylate p53 directly, or indirectly via Chk1 and Chk2, in all cases in its N-terminal domain (see Figure 9.11B). This phosphorylation prevents the binding of the p53 antagonist Mdm2 (see Figure 9.10).

A second signaling pathway is activated by the presence of single-strand DNA. Single-strand DNA tends to persist at replication forks that have stalled, often because DNA polymerases have encountered nucleotides that have been altered by any one of a wide variety of DNA-damaging agents, including UV radiation and certain chemotherapeutic drugs. Proteins that detect single-strand DNA activate a kinase called ATR. Like ATM, this kinase both directly phosphorylates p53 and activates an additional kinase—in this case Chk1—which also phosphorylates p53 (see Figure 9.9).

A third pathway leading to p53 activation is triggered by aberrant growth signals, notably those that perturb the pRb–E2F cell cycle control pathway (see Section 8.7). As we will see shortly, this pathway does not depend on activation of intermediary kinases to induce increases in p53 levels and signaling. The mechanisms by which other physiological stresses or imbalances, such as hypoxia, trigger increases in p53 levels remain an active area of investigation.

These converging signaling pathways reveal a profound vulnerability of the mammalian cell. Through the course of evolution, a single protein—p53—has become entrusted with the task of receiving signals from lookouts that monitor a wide variety of important physiological and biochemical intracellular systems (see Figure 9.8). The funneling of these diverse signals to a single protein would seem to represent an elegant and economic design of the cellular signaling circuitry. But it also puts cells at significant risk, because loss of this single protein from a cell's regulatory circuitry will cause a catastrophic loss of the cell's ability to monitor its own well-being and respond with appropriate countermeasures in the event that certain operating systems malfunction.

In one stroke (or two strokes, if we consider the successive inactivation of both copies of the *p53* gene), a cell can become unresponsive to signals that arise from its own internal defects. Thus, a cell lacking intact p53 will continue to blunder on, continuing to proliferate under circumstances that would normally cause it to stop dividing or to enter into apoptotic death. In addition, as we will learn shortly, loss of the DNA repair and genome-stabilizing functions promoted by p53 make descendants of a $p53^{-/-}$ cell more likely to acquire further mutations and advance more rapidly down the road of malignancy (**Sidebar 9.2**, **Supplementary Sidebar 9.2**).

Sidebar 9.2 Sunlight, p53, and skin cancer

The p53 protein stands as an important guardian against skin cancer induced by sunlight. When the genome of a keratinocyte in the skin suffers extensive damage from ultraviolet-B (UV-B) radiation, p53 can rapidly trigger its apoptotic death. One manifestation of this reaction is the extensive scaling of skin several days after a sunburn. At the same time, UV-B exposure can induce the mutation and functional inactivation of *p53*. Indeed, *p53* alleles in human squamous cell carcinomas of the skin often harbor mutations at dipyrimidine sites—precisely the sites at which UV-B rays induce the formation of pyrimidine–pyrimidine cross-links (see Section 12.6). Such mutant *p53* alleles can also be found in outwardly normal skin that has suffered chronic sun damage. Once p53 function is compromised by these mutations, keratinocytes may be able to survive subsequent extensive exposures to UV-B irradiation, because apoptosis will no longer be triggered by their p53 protein. Moreover, loss of p53 results in a diminished ability to repair subsequent UV-B–induced DNA lesions. Hence, *p53*-mutant cells may subsequently acquire additional mutant alleles that enable them, together with the mutant *p53* alleles, to form a squamous cell carcinoma.

Human papillomaviruses (HPVs) are increasingly implicated as co-factors in many of these squamous cell carcinomas; a key function of the virus-encoded E6 oncoprotein may explain the synergistic actions of UV-B radiation and HPV in these relatively common tumors: E6 tags p53 for destruction by ubiquitylation and degradation in proteasomes, thereby phenocopying mutational inactivation of the *p53* gene (**Supplementary Sidebar 9.2**). Interestingly, mice that lack functional *p53* gene copies respond to UV-B exposure by developing uveal melanomas—tumors of pigmented cells in the front of the eye; similar tumors are suspected to be caused in humans by UV exposure.

Of additional interest, p53 in keratinocytes has another totally unrelated effect that illustrates its diverse functions: in response to the DNA damage created by UV radiation, p53 causes these cells to release melanocyte-stimulating hormone (αMSH); this hormone stimulates nearby skin melanocytes to produce the melanin pigment to protect against further sunlight-induced damage and, more productively, generate a suntan!

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

keratinocyte

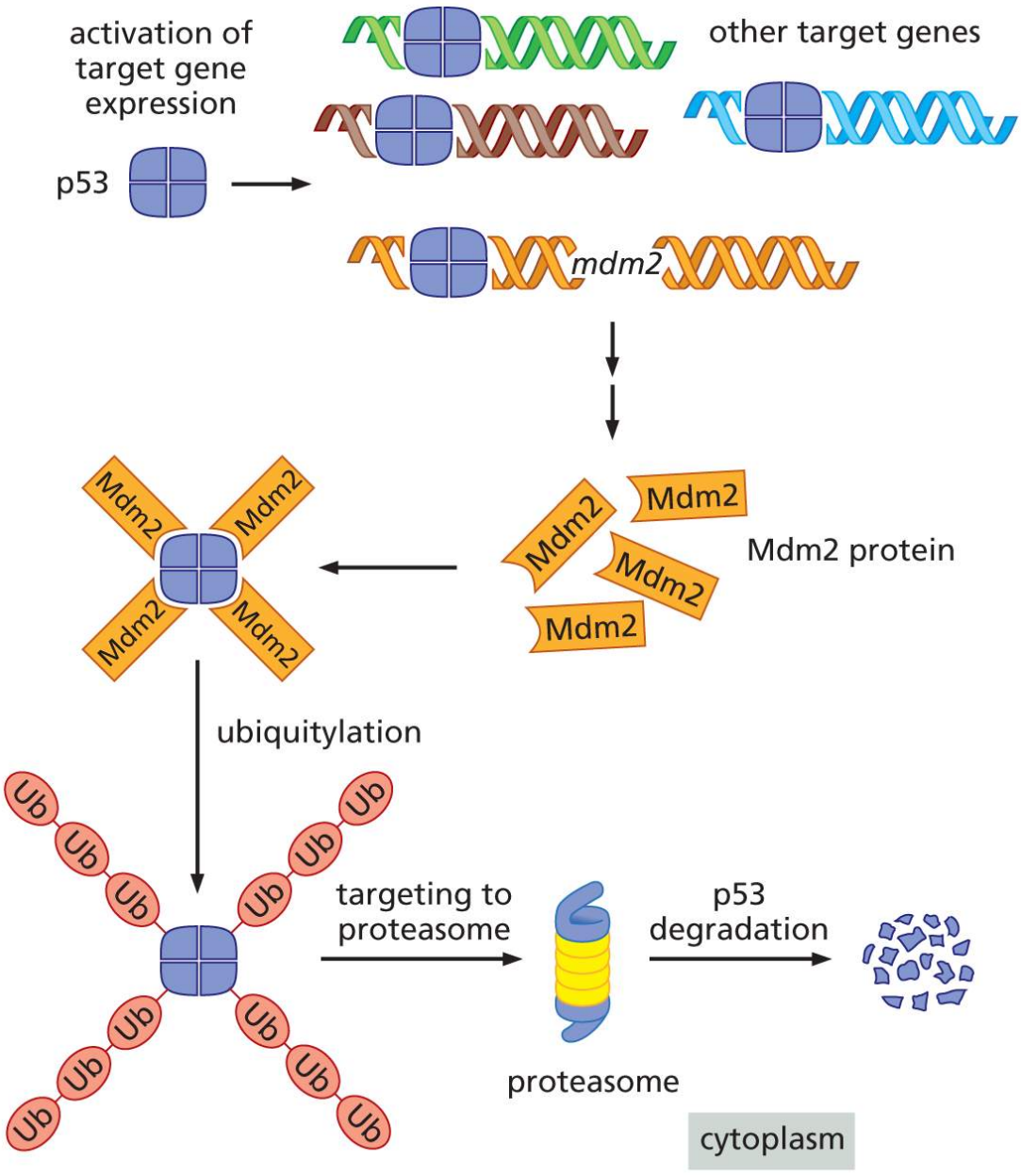
Epithelial cell type found in a variety of epithelial tissues, notably the skin. These cells are named after the cytokeratins that they express, which form key components of the cytoskeleton of these cells. *See also* **cytokeratin.**

OceanofPDF.com

9.8 Mdm2 destroys its own creator

The diverse alarm signals that converge on p53 produce a common result: a rapid increase in the levels of the p53 protein. This response is achieved by a mechanism that we have discussed in previous chapters, specifically the regulation of protein stability by the ubiquitin–proteasome system (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). Proteins that are destined to be degraded by this system are initially tagged by the covalent attachment of polyubiquitin side chains, which direct the proteins to proteasomes, where they are digested into oligopeptides. The critical control point in this process is the initial tagging process.

In normal, unperturbed cells, the degradation of p53 is regulated by a protein cited earlier, the ubiquitin ligase termed Mdm2 in mouse cells and MDM2 or HDM2 in human cells. This protein recognizes p53 as a target for ubiquitylation shortly after its synthesis and thereby marks p53 for rapid destruction (**Figure 9.10**). As a consequence, the steady-state concentration of p53 is kept at a low level.



A diagram showing how M d m2 controls p53 levels. p53 binds to various target genes, including M d m2, and activates their expression. The M d m2 gene produces M d m2 proteins. Four of these bind to p53, one at each corner of the tetramer. Each M d m2 is then replaced by a ubiquilation chain. In the cytoplasm the ubuiquilated p53 is then targeted to a proteasome, within which it is degraded.

Figure 9.10 Control of p53 levels by Mdm2 After p53 concentrations increase in response to certain physiological signals (*not shown*), the p53 tetramers bind to the promoters of a large constituency of target genes whose transcription they induce (*above*); these target genes include the gene encoding the p53 antagonist Mdm2.

Mdm2 molecules then proceed to bind the p53 protein subunits and initiate their ubiquitylation, resulting in their export to the cytoplasm, further ubiquitylation, and, ultimately, degradation in proteasomes. This negative-feedback loop ensures that p53 concentrations eventually fall after danger signals, such as those shown in Figure 9.8, cease; such regulation ensures that p53 concentration will thereafter return to its normally low level.

Surprisingly, an opposing control also operates: the expression of Mdm2 in cells is regulated by p53. As mentioned earlier, p53 functions as a transcription factor and the *Mdm2* gene is one of its targets. This relationship between p53 and Mdm2 creates an autoregulatory loop in which p53 induces the synthesis of the protein that drives its own destruction (see Figure 9.10).

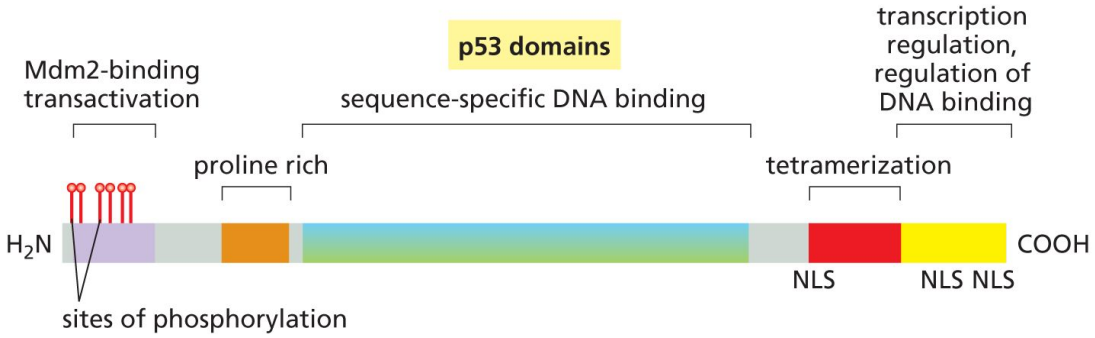
The *Mdm2* gene was initially identified because in murine sarcoma cells it is present in multiple copies on extrachromosomal fragments called double minute chromosomes (hence, **m**ouse **d**ouble **m**inutes). These derive from segments that break free from their original chromosomes and are replicated repeatedly (see Figure 1.9B). Subsequently, the human homolog of the *Mdm2* gene was discovered to be frequently amplified in sarcomas as well as in other tumor types. In certain other tumor types (e.g., lung carcinomas), the gene is overexpressed through mechanisms that remain unclear. As is the case with other oncogenes, it seemed at first that amplification of the *Mdm2* gene in mouse sarcoma cells afforded the cells some direct, immediate proliferative advantage. Only long after the Mdm2 protein was first identified did its role as the agent of p53 destruction become apparent.

In fact, Mdm2 has an additional effect on the activity of p53. By binding to p53, Mdm2 immediately blocks p53's ability to act as a transcription factor by preventing the protein's interaction with transcriptional co-factors, such as acetyltransferases and histone methyltransferases (see Section 1.8). After it exerts these direct effects on p53's function as a transcription factor, Mdm2 orchestrates the attachment of a ubiquitin moiety to p53 as well as its export from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. There, polyubiquitylation of p53 ensures its rapid degradation in cytoplasmic proteasomes (see Figure 9.10). The continuous, highly efficient actions of Mdm2 ensure the short, 20-minute half-life of p53 in normal, unstressed cells.

Although the present discussion and Figure 9.10 represent Mdm2 as a monomeric protein, it actually often forms heterodimeric complexes with its close cousin, MdmX (also called Mdm4). This complex may be responsible for much of the ubiquitylation activity that drives p53 degradation. Indeed, there is evidence that without the presence of MdmX, Mdm2 loses the ability to drive p53 degradation. When expressed on its own, however, MdmX seems to be limited to blocking p53-mediated transcriptional

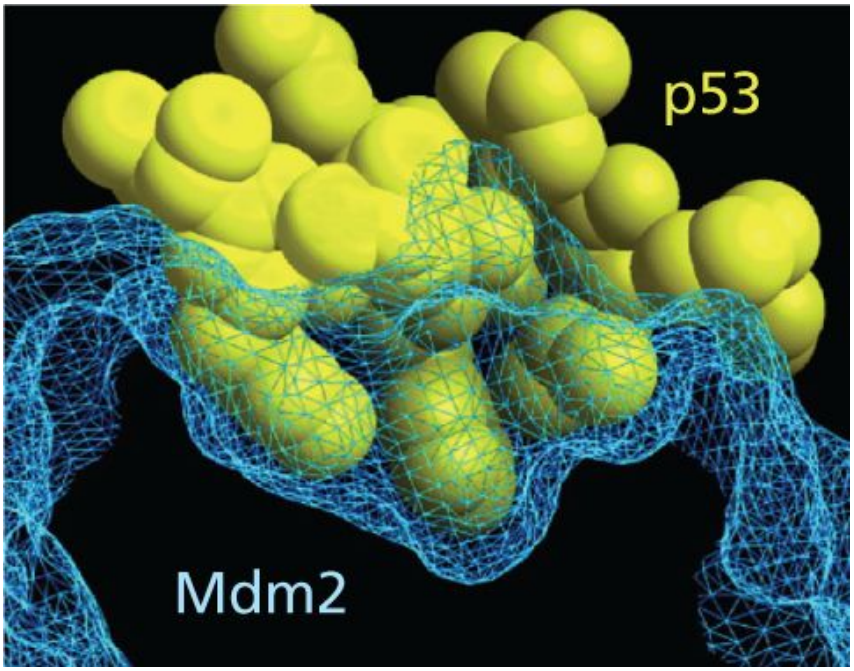
activation. Like *Mdm2*, the *MdmX* gene is a transcriptional target of p53, and it thus participates in the elaborate negative-feedback loop that controls p53 levels.

When cells suffer certain types of stress or damage, p53 protein molecules must be protected from their Mdm2/MdmX executioners (hereafter simply Mdm2) so that they can accumulate to functionally significant levels in the cell. This protection is often achieved by the phosphorylation of p53 described above (see Figure 9.9). The phosphorylation sites—recognized by kinases such as ATM, ATR, Chk1, and Chk2—lie in the N-terminal region of p53 in a domain that is normally recognized and bound by Mdm2 (**Figure 9.11A**). Thus, phosphorylation of p53 blocks the binding of Mdm2 and subsequent ubiquitylation (Figure 9.11B). At the same time, ATM kinase also phosphorylates Mdm2, causing its functional inactivation and destabilization (**Figure 9.12**). As a consequence of the phosphorylation of both p53 and Mdm2, p53 escapes destruction and its concentrations in the cell increase rapidly. Once p53 has accumulated in substantial amounts, the protein is then poised to evoke a series of downstream responses (see Figure 9.8). These responses will be discussed in detail below.



A schematic of p53, with the H2N end on the left and the C O O H end on the right. From left to right, the domains are the M d m2-binding transactivation domain, with six specific phosphorylation sites shown; a proline-rich domain; a long sequence-specific D N A binding domain; a tetramerization domain; and a domain for regulating transcription and D N A binding. The latter two domains have associated nuclear localization signals.

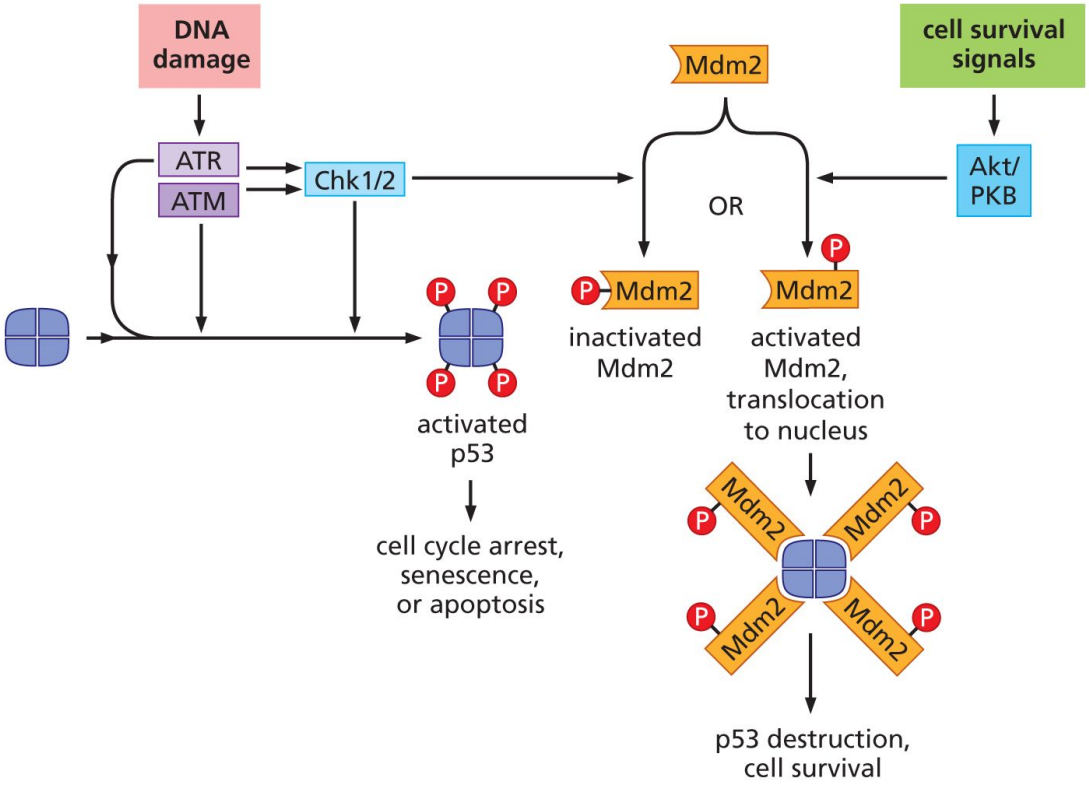
(A)



A model of p53 and M d m2 nestled against each other. p53 is shown as a space-filling model, M d m2 as a wire mesh. p 53 fits perfectly in the grooves of M d m2.

(B)

Figure 9.11 Specialized domains of p53 (A) The interaction of p53 with Mdm2 occurs in a small domain near its N-terminus, where the transactivation domain of p53 is also located. The phosphorylation of p53 amino acid residues in this region (*red lollipops; not all are indicated*) blocks Mdm2 binding and thus saves p53 from ubiquitylation and degradation. The nearby proline-rich domain (*salmon*) contributes to p53's pro-apoptotic functions. Its tetramerization domain is located toward its C-terminus. Nearby are nuclear localization signals (NLS), which allow import of recently synthesized p53 into the nucleus, as well as amino acid sequences that regulate its DNA binding. (B) The structure of the interface where p53 and Mdm2 interact has been revealed by X-ray crystallography. The interacting domain of p53 is shown as a yellow space-filling model that includes p53 residues 18 through 27, and the surface of the complementary pocket of Mdm2 is shown as a blue wire mesh. (A, from M. Ashcroft and K.H. Vousden in D.E. Fisher, ed., *Tumor Suppressor Genes in Human Cancer*. Totowa, NJ, Humana Press, 2000. With permission from Springer. B, from P.H. Kussie et al., *Science* 274:948–953, 1996. With permission from AAAS.)



A diagram showing how the activity of M d m2 is regulated by phosphorylation. On the left, D N A damage in the form of s s D N A and D S Bees activates A T R and A T M. These two phosphorylate p53 either directly or via C h k1 and C h k2. But C h k1 and C h k2 also phosphorylate M d m2 at the site where M d m2 would bind to p53. Then that binding is prevented as the M d m2 is inactivated. Then the phosphorylated, activated p53 accumulates, leading to cell cycle arrest, senescence, or apoptosis. On the other hand, cell survival signals prompt A k t / T K B to phosphorylate M d m2 at a different site, activating it and leaving it free to translocation to the nucleus and to attach, four at at time, to the p53 tetramer, which then undergoes destruction, which promotes cell survival.

Figure 9.12 The activity of Mdm2 is also regulated by phosphorylation The same DNA damage that induces phosphorylation of p53 by ATM and other kinases (resulting in “activated p53” in this figure) also stimulates phosphorylation of Mdm2. This phosphorylation inactivates and destabilizes Mdm2, preventing its binding to p53, resulting in accumulation of the latter. Mdm2 can also be phosphorylated at a different site by kinases, such as Akt/PKB, which are, in turn, activated by cell growth and survival signals. This phosphorylation promotes translocation of Mdm2 to the nucleus, where it can bind to p53, marking it for destruction, thereby reducing the likelihood of p53-triggered apoptosis.

Note that Mdm2 operates here as an oncoprotein, but one whose mechanism of action is very different from those of the various oncoproteins that we encountered in Chapters 4, 5, and 6. The latter function as components of mitogenic signal cascades and thereby induce cell proliferation by mimicking the signals normally triggered by the binding of growth factors to their receptors. Mdm2, in contrast, operates by antagonizing p53 and thereby prevents entrance of a cell into cell cycle arrest, senescence, or into the apoptotic suicide program. The final outcome is, however, the same: the actions of traditional oncoproteins and Mdm2 all favor increases in cell number. Of note, inherited genetic polymorphisms that in humans lead to increased Mdm2 expression—or otherwise disable the p53 alarm system—are also associated with familial cancer susceptibility (**Sidebar 9.3**).

Sidebar 9.3 Familial cancer susceptibility can arise from defects in other components of the p53 pathway

A familial cancer syndrome in which individuals inherit mutant, defective forms of the Chk2 kinase behaves very much like the Li–Fraumeni syndrome caused by mutations in the *p53* gene. Chk2 kinase is responsible for phosphorylating p53, saving it from destruction and thereby activating the p53 alarm machinery (see Figure 9.9). A mutant germ-line allele of the *Chk2* gene is present in 1.1 to 1.4% of Western populations, and in higher percentages (as much as 5%) in cohorts of breast cancer patients. This prevalence suggests that inheritance of a mutant *Chk2* allele confers a measurably increased risk of developing this malignancy.

Yet another related cancer predisposition syndrome derives from a single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) in the promoter of the *MDM2* gene. This region of the human gene contains enhancer sequences that enable *MDM2* gene transcription to respond to signals coming from p53 and the Ras signaling pathway. The polymorphism, a T-to-G substitution termed *SNP309*, is quite common, being present in homozygous configuration in about 12% of the American population. Cells from individuals homozygous for this polymorphism express as much as eightfold higher levels of *MDM2* RNA and greater than threefold higher levels of Mdm2 protein; because of the resulting attenuated p53 response, these cells are far more resistant to apoptosis induced by DNA damage.

The *SNP309* polymorphism exacerbates the cancer susceptibility of individuals in Li–Fraumeni families. Li–Fraumeni individuals carrying this polymorphism experience their first cancer at an average age of 22 years, compared with the 27-year age of those who lack this base substitution. The cancer risks are more dramatic for specific tumor types. For example, if Li–Fraumeni patients develop a soft-tissue sarcoma, these tumors appear, on average, at the age of 2 among those who are homozygous for the polymorphism, whereas they appear at the age of 12 among those who carry the more

prevalent allele. Moreover, this polymorphism increases the number of independently arising tumors in Li–Fraumeni patients carrying it in either a heterozygous or a homozygous configuration.

SNP309 homozygotes in the general population exhibit a markedly increased risk of developing soft-tissue sarcomas. In addition, female homozygotes who develop breast cancer do so at age 45, on average, rather than the 57-year average age of onset seen among those who do not carry this allele. In one meta-analysis, individuals who were homozygous at the *SNP309* locus and carried two *Pro/Pro* alleles of p53 (see **Supplementary Sidebar 9.1**) exhibited a greater than threefold increased overall risk for developing cancer. These observations demonstrate how relatively common genetic variant sequences can have profound effects on cancer susceptibility. And they raise the question whether the responsible base changes can be truly called "polymorphisms," because the term usually implies genetic variability that has no significant biological consequences.

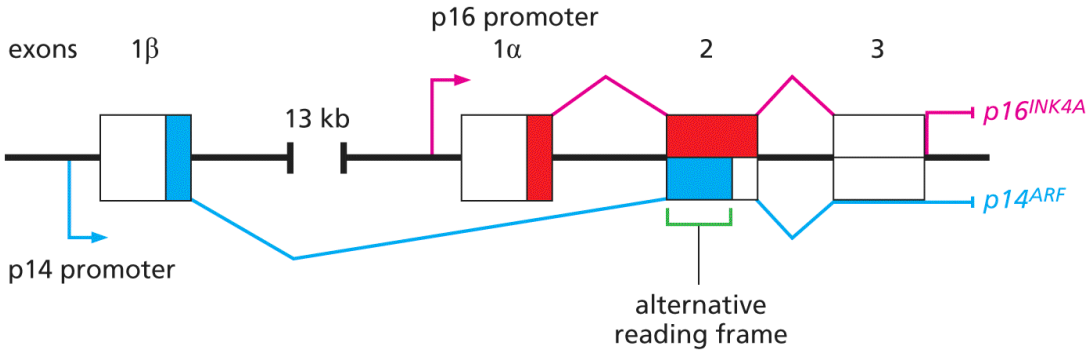
The activity and levels of the Mdm2 protein are affected by yet other positive and negative signals. The signaling pathway that favors cell survival through activation of the PI3 kinase (PI3K) pathway (see Section 6.6) leads, via the Akt/PKB kinase, to Mdm2 phosphorylation (at a site different from that altered by the ATM kinase described above). This phosphorylation results in the translocation of Mdm2 from the cytoplasm to the nucleus, where it is well-positioned to bind to and modify p53 (see Figure 9.12). Because PI3K itself is activated by Ras and growth factor receptors, it becomes clear that this mitogenic signaling pathway influences Mdm2 and, indirectly, p53.

In normal, unstressed cells, Mdm2 must be allowed to perform its normal role of keeping p53 levels very low, as is highlighted by the results of inactivating both *Mdm2* gene copies in the genomes of mouse embryos: these embryos die very early in development, because p53 levels increase to physiologically intolerable levels, preventing the normal proliferation of embryonic cells or causing them to die. These profoundly disruptive effects of *Mdm2* gene inactivation are attributed specifically to runaway p53 activity, as is made clear by studies in which both of these genes in a mouse embryo harbor homozygous inactivating mutations, yielding the $Mdm2^{-/-}$; $p53^{-/-}$ genotype. Once p53 is eliminated from the embryonic cells, the loss of Mdm2 becomes tolerable and embryonic development proceeds normally!

Yet another important mechanism that controls Mdm2 has been revealed through the discovery of a protein termed $p19^{ARF}$ in mouse cells and $p14^{ARF}$ in human cells. Astute sequence analysis led to the discovery of ARF, as we call it hereafter. Its gene was originally uncovered in mouse cells as one whose coding sequence overlaps the

gene that encodes $p16^{INK4A}$, an important CDK inhibitor involved in regulating the activation of pRb (see Section 8.4).

Transcription of the ARF-encoding gene is directed by a promoter located 13 kb upstream of the $p16^{INK4A}$ promoter; alternative splicing of the resulting transcript produces an mRNA that encodes—in an **a**lternative **r**eading **f**rame relative to that used to encode $p16^{INK4A}$—the ARF protein (**Figure 9.13**). Forced expression of an ARF-encoding cDNA in wild-type rodent cells was found to cause a strong inhibition of proliferation. However, this inhibition was not observed when the ARF cDNA was introduced into cells that lacked wild-type p53 function. This result indicates that the growth-inhibitory powers of ARF depend absolutely on the presence of functional p53.

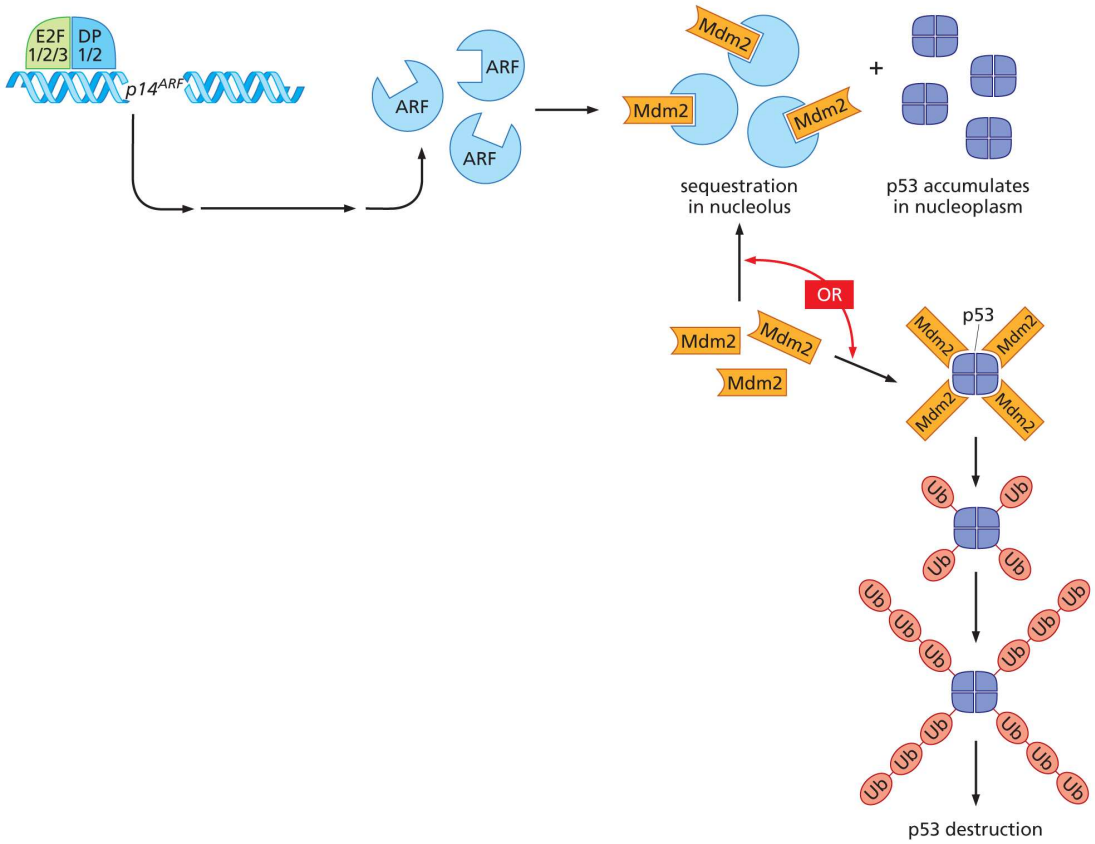


The structure of the gene encoding p16 INK 4A and p14 slash p19 A R F. The genes encoding p16 INK 4A and p14 slash p19 A R F are shown to each consist of three exons, with the second and third exon the same for both. The p14 promoter starts just before 1 beta, which contains the first of two reading frames associated with p14. More than 13 kilobases downstream is the p16 promoter, followed by exon 1 alpha, which contains the first of two reading frames associated with p16. This exon is joined to exon 2, which contains the second of the two reading frames associated with p14, labeled as the alternative reading frame. Coinciding with that reading frame but slightly longer is the second of the two reading frames associated with p16. This exon is joined to exon 3, the third exon for both p14 A R F and p16 INK 4A.

Figure 9.13 The gene encoding $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p14/p19^{ARF}$ Analysis of the *p16INK4A* gene (*red*) has revealed that it shares its second exon with a gene encoding a 19-kD protein in mice and a 14-kD protein in humans. The *p14/p19* gene uses an alternative transcriptional start site (*blue arrow, left*) located more than 13 kb upstream of the one used by *p16INK4A* (*red arrow, center*). Because translation of its mRNA uses an *a*lternative *r*eading *f*rame (*green bracket*) in exon 2 (*red, blue*), the resulting protein and thus gene came to be called $p19^{ARF}$ (or in humans $p14^{ARF}$). The patterns of RNA splicing are indicated by the carets

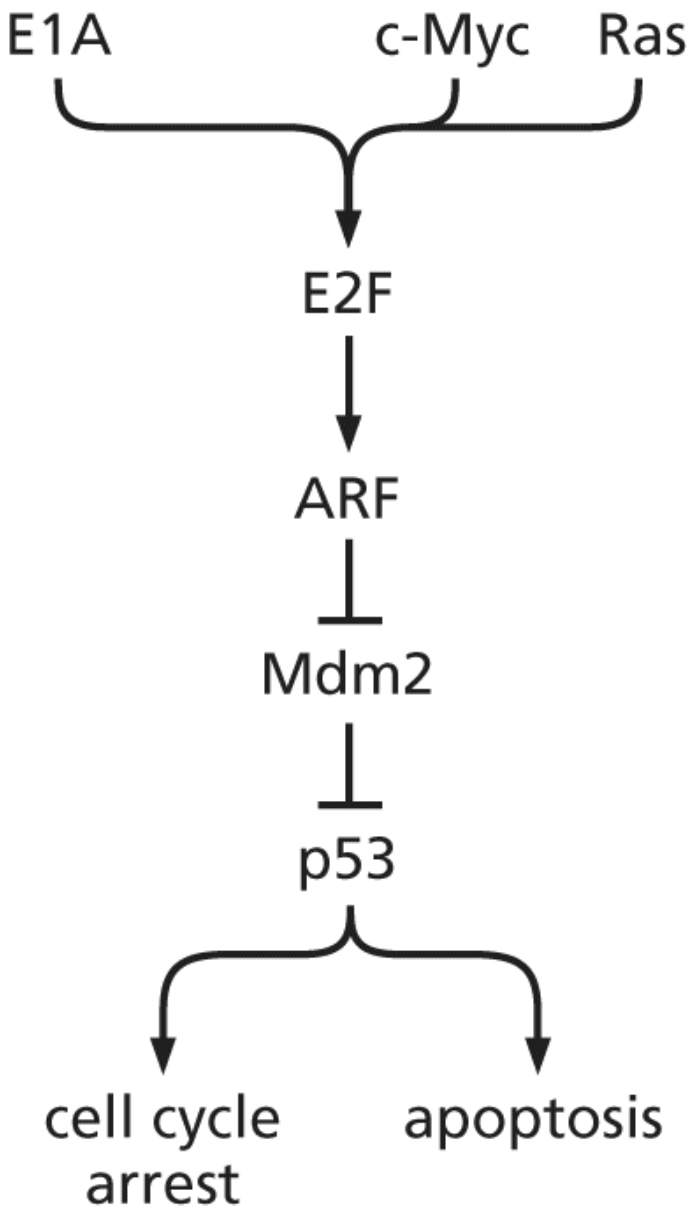
connecting the various exons of the two intertwined genes. The boxes indicate exons, and the filled areas within each exon indicate reading frames. Other research indicates the presence of four E2F-binding sites (*not shown here*) in the promoter region of the gene encoding $p14^{ARF}$, three upstream of the transcriptional start site and one downstream. (From C. Sherr, *Genes Dev.* 12:2984–2991, 1998. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Further investigation revealed that in wild-type cells, the expression of ARF causes a rapid increase in p53 levels. We now understand the molecular mechanisms that underlie this response: ARF binds to Mdm2 and prevents its further action by driving its localization from the nucleoplasm to the nucleolus where it is sequestered; recall that the nucleolus is the nuclear organelle that is largely devoted to manufacturing ribosomal subunits (**Figure 9.14A**). Once Mdm2 is diverted from interacting with p53, the latter escapes Mdm2-mediated ubiquitylation and therefore accumulates rapidly to high levels in the nucleoplasm, where it is poised to activate expression of its constituency of target genes. The enemy of an enemy is a friend: ARF can induce rapid increases in p53 levels because it kidnaps and inhibits p53's destroyer, Mdm2.



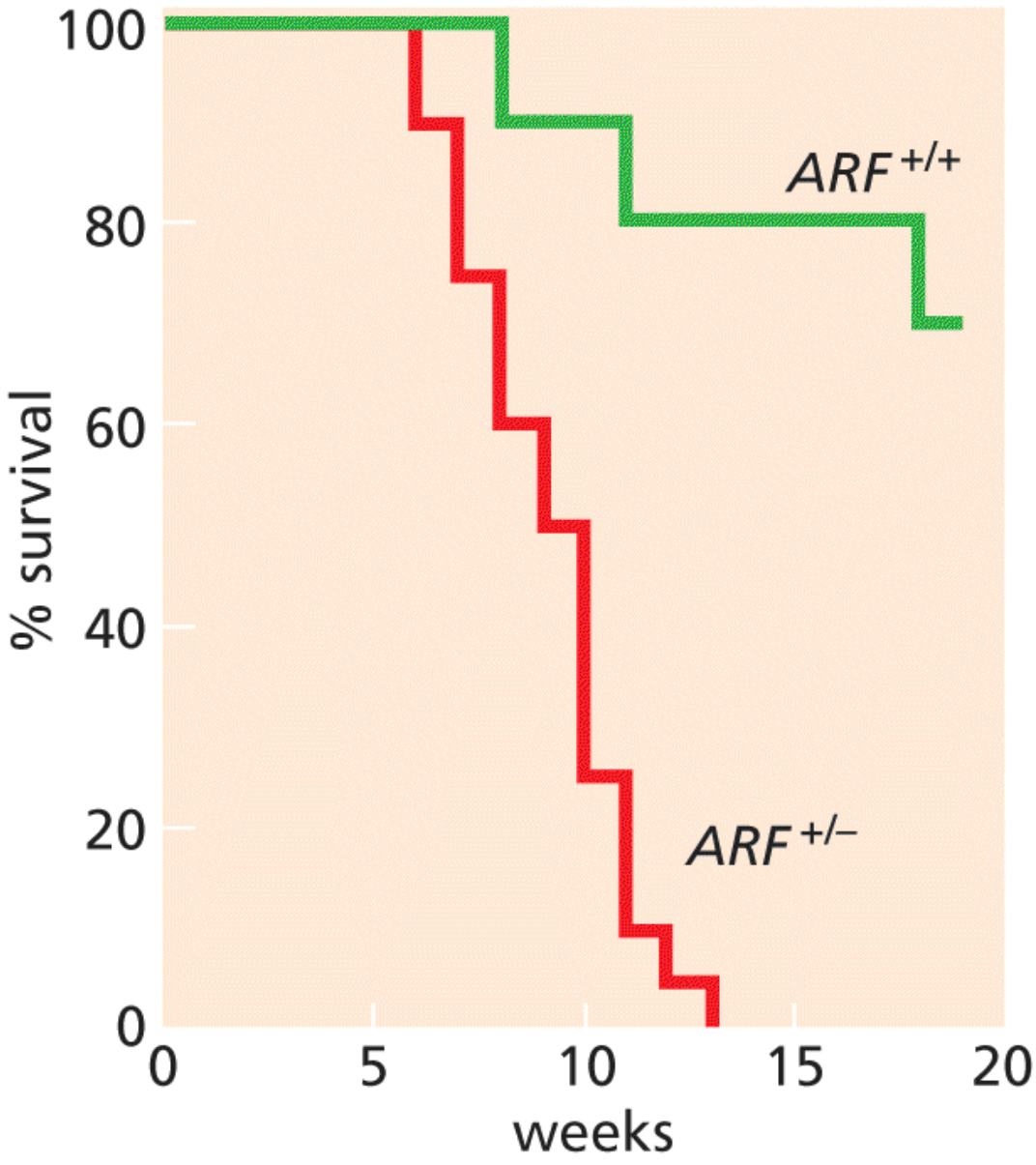
A sequence in which one of two things happens to M d m2. One possibility is that it binds, four at a time, to p53, after which the M d m twos are replaced by ubiquilation chains and the p53 is destroyed. The other possibility is that p14 A R effs produced through transcription initiated by E2F 1 2 3 D P 1 2 bind to the M d m twos and sequester them in the nucleolus. This leads to accumulation of p53 in the nucleoplasm.

(A)



A cascade in which E1A, c-M y c and R a s each activate E2F, which activates A R F, which inhibits M d m2, which inhibits p53, which promotes both cell

cycle arrest and apoptosis.
(B)



A line graph with percent survival on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. Of wild-type mice, 100 percent survive 7 or 8 weeks. After that, the percentage drops in steps, to about 70 percent at 19 or 20 weeks. Of mice carrying an E mu m y c transgene known to cause B-cell lymphomas, 100 percent survive 6 weeks. After that, the percentage drops steeply, to zero by 13 weeks.

(C)

Figure 9.14 Control of apoptosis by ARF (A) The human $p14^{ARF}$ protein ($p19^{ARF}$ in mice), termed ARF in the figure (*light blue*), associates with and drags Mdm2 (*gold*) into the nucleolus, where it is sequestered. Once it is neutralized, Mdm2 can no longer tag p53 for destruction. Hence, elevated ARF levels cause increases in the levels of p53. [ARF can also add the ubiquitin-related SUMO groups to Mdm2 in the nucleolus (*not shown*).] (B) Transcription of the $p14^{ARF}$ gene is driven by E2F transcription factors composed of E2F1/2/3 and their DP1/2 partners (see also Figure 8.18). Various oncogenic signals favor apoptosis through their ability to induce E2F activity (see Sections 8.7 and 8.8), which leads, in turn, to increased ARF expression. Among these are the adenovirus E1A, and the Myc (c-Myc) and Ras oncoproteins. Thus, this signaling pathway seems to have evolved to eliminate cells with hyperactive E2F signaling driven by a variety of overly active mitogenic signals, specifically those released by various oncoproteins. (C) Mice that were engineered to be heterozygous for the *p19* gene ($ARF^{+/-}$) and wild-type mice ($ARF^{+/+}$) were mated with mice carrying an Eμ-*myc* transgene known to cause B-cell lymphomas (also described in Figure 9.20). The $ARF^{+/-}$ Eμ-*myc* mice (*red line*) developed fatal tumors far more rapidly than mice carrying only the Eμ-*myc* transgene (*green line*), and cells in these tumors shed their remaining wild-type *ARF* allele. Hence, in the absence of ARF function, the pro-apoptotic effects of a *Myc* oncogene (indicated in B) are largely lost, allowing survival of lymphoma cells and the proliferative effects of *Myc* to dominate and drive tumor formation. (B, from P.J. Iaquinta, A. Alanian, and J.A. Lees, *Cold Spring Harb. Symp. Quant. Biol*. 70:309-316, 2005. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. C, from F. Zindy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:15930–15935, 2003. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

Given the alliance between ARF and p53, one might predict that ARF, like p53, acts as a tumor suppressor. Indeed, inactivation of the $p16^{INK4A}/p14^{ARF}$ locus by genetic mutation or epigenetic promoter methylation (see Section 7.7) has been detected in many human tumors. Once a cell has lost ARF activity, it loses much of its ability to block Mdm2 function. As a consequence, Mdm2 is given a free hand to drive p53 degradation, and the cell is deprived of the services of p53 because the latter can never accumulate to functionally significant levels.

Because ARF has a central role in increasing p53 levels in many cellular contexts, the $p14^{ARF}$ gene is an extremely important TSG. Moreover, it seems likely that many of the human cancer cells that retain wild-type *p53* gene copies have eliminated p53 function by inactivating their two copies of the gene encoding ARF. We should note that the co-localization of the $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p14^{ARF}$ genes in the mammalian genome (see Figure 9.13) would seem to represent another dangerous concentration of power

leading to significant vulnerability for normal cells to oncogenic transformation (**Sidebar 9.4**).

Sidebar 9.4 Have mammalian cells placed too many eggs in one basket?

The discovery of the *p16*^{INK4A}/*p14*^{ARF} genetic locus, which is inactivated through one mechanism or another in about half of all human tumors, raises a provocative question: Why have mammalian cells invested a single chromosomal locus with the power to encode two proteins regulating the two most important tumor suppressor pathways, those of pRb and p53? Deletion of this single locus results in the simultaneous loss of normal regulation of both pathways. As was the case with *p53* itself, enormous power has been concentrated in a single genetic locus.

Placing two such vital eggs in a single genetic basket seems foolhardy for the mammalian cell, as it causes the cell to be vulnerable to two types of deregulation through loss of a single gene. To make matters even worse, the gene encoding p15^{INK4B}, another important regulator of pRb phosphorylation (see Section 8.4), is closely linked to the *p16*^{INK4A}/*p14*^{ARF} locus, indeed so close that all of these genetic elements are often lost through the deletion of only about 40 kb of chromosomal DNA. We have yet to discern the underlying rationale of this genetic arrangement. Maybe there is none, and perhaps mammalian evolution has produced a less-than-optimal design of its control circuitry.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

nucleoplasm
: The unstructured portion of the nucleus that does not include the nucleoli and chromosomes.

double-minute
: A chromosomal segment that becomes separated from the chromosome in which it normally resides and is able to perpetuate itself as an extrachromosomal particle unlinked to a centromere, so termed because it is visualized at metaphase as small spots that are doubled like the chromatids prior to anaphase.

negative feedback
: A regulatory process whereby a stimulatory signal upstream in a signaling pathway activates a downstream target that proceeds to inhibit the source of the initial upstream signal, thereby reducing further overall signaling. *See also* **positive feedback**.

OceanofPDF.com

9.9 ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis protect against cancer by monitoring intracellular signaling

The influential role ARF plays in increasing p53 levels raises the question of how ARF itself is regulated. The response to this question relates to our discussion of the pRb pathway in Chapter 8, and to the fact that mammalian cells are very sensitive to higher-than-normal levels of E2F1 activity. Indeed, cells seem to monitor the activity level of this particular transcription factor (together with that of E2F2 and E2F3) as a means of detecting whether their pRb circuitry is functioning properly: excessively high levels of active E2F transcription factors are a telltale sign that pRb function has gone awry and that entrance into senescence or apoptosis must quickly be triggered for the benefit of the tissue and organism.

It turns out that the $p14^{ARF}$ gene carries at least four E2F-binding sequences in its promoter (see Figure 9.13), and high levels of E2F1, E2F2, or E2F3A activity indeed induce production of $p14^{ARF}$ mRNA. When the ARF protein appears on the scene, it blocks Mdm2 action and p53 accumulates as described earlier. The elevated levels of p53 then trigger apoptosis. The signaling cascade is configured like this:

pRB —| E2F → ARF —| Mdm2 —| p53 → apoptosis

In fact, evolution has devised yet other ways to eliminate cells that carry too much E2F activity and, by implication, have lost proper pRb control. Runaway E2F1 activity drives expression of a number of genes that encode proteins that participate directly in the apoptotic program (to be described below). Included among these genes are those encoding several caspases (types 3, 7, 8, and 9), pro-apoptotic Bcl-2–related proteins (Bim, Noxa,

PUMA), Apaf-1, and p53's cousin, p73; these proteins collaborate to drive cells into apoptosis. We will learn more about them later.

These various mechanisms conspire to ensure triggering of the p53-dependent apoptotic program in response to excessive E2F activity. As an example, such E2F-initiated apoptosis contributes to lethality in mouse embryos that have been deprived of both copies of their *Rb* gene. These mice die in mid-gestation from the excessive proliferation and concomitant apoptosis of certain critical cell types, including those involved in erythropoiesis (formation of red blood cells) and in placental function.

Some of the effects of the *E1A* and *Myc* oncogenes are related to this mechanism as well. Both deregulate pRb control and are highly effective in inducing apoptosis. The adenovirus E1A oncoprotein binds and effectively sequesters pRb and its cousins, whereas Myc, for its part, induces changes in cell cycle control machinery that ensure that pRb is inactivated through phosphorylation (see Sections 8.5 and 8.8).

Many studies of *Myc* oncogene function indicate that this gene has both potent mitogenic and pro-apoptotic functions. Indeed, the pro-apoptotic effects of *Myc* are so strong that it is highly likely that most cells that happen to acquire an activating *Myc* mutation are rapidly eliminated through apoptosis. Only when the pro-apoptotic program of Myc is blunted or inactivated do its mitogenic actions become apparent.

As an example, when a *Myc* oncogene becomes activated in the lymphoid tissues of a mouse, it prompts a substantial increase in cell proliferation. However, there is no net increase in cell number because the newly formed cells are rapidly lost through apoptosis. If one of the *Myc* oncogene–bearing cells happens subsequently to inactivate its *p53* gene copies, then *Myc*-induced apoptosis is diminished and the cell proliferation driven by the oncogene leads to a net increase in the pool of mutant lymphoid cells. As might be expected from the organization of the pathway shown in Figure 9.14B, a similar effect occurs when one allele of the gene encoding ARF has been knocked out (Figure 9.14C). Loss of the remaining, wild-type *ARF* allele disrupts the pathway linking *Myc* over-expression to p53-dependent apoptosis, resulting in the development of lymphoma.

Although we have focused here on the role of the pRb–E2F axis in activating ARF, at least one other major oncogenic signaling pathway can also contribute significantly to increased ARF expression and thus to p53 activation: the signaling pathway downstream of Ras (see Figure 9.14B). Hyperactive signaling by Ras or its immediate downstream partners, Raf or B-Raf (see Figure 6.9A), drives increased ARF expression and p53 activation. The induction of p53 imposes great selective pressure on incipient cancer cells that experience intense Ras oncoprotein signaling, forcing them to either neutralize p53 function or to confront rapid elimination by p53-dependent apoptosis or senescence.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

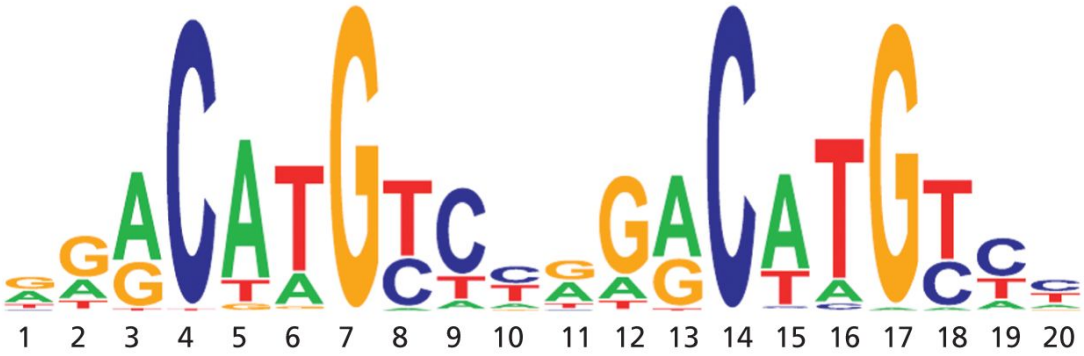
caspase
: A protease that contains cysteine in its catalytic site and cleaves substrate proteins after aspartic acid residues. *See also* **apoptosome**.

erythropoiesis
: Process by which red blood cells are formed.

OceanofPDF.com

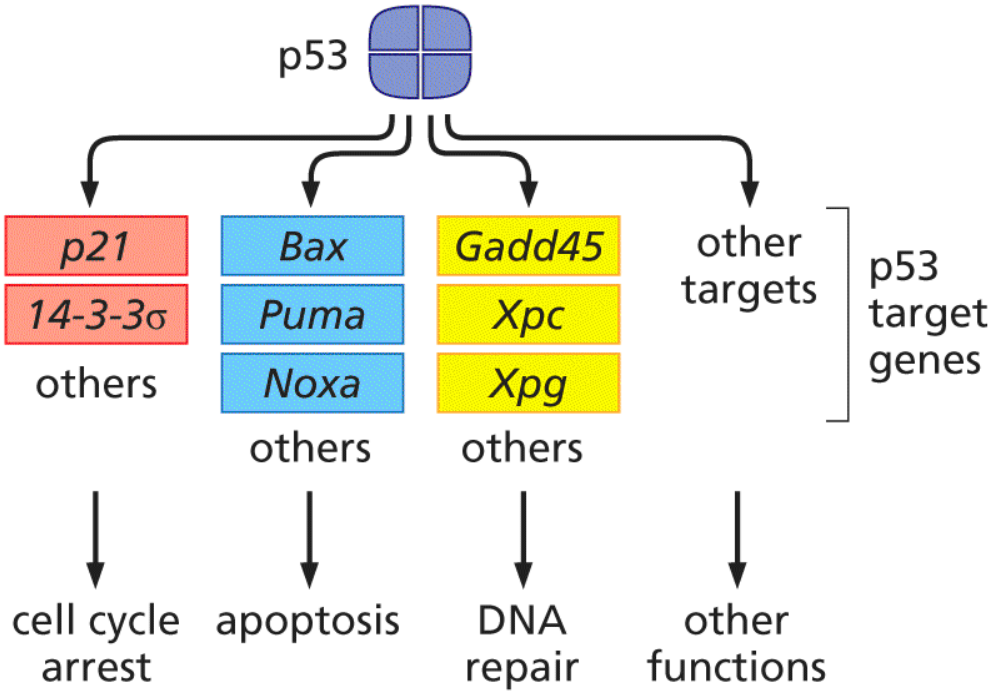
9.10 p53 functions as a transcription factor that halts cell cycle advance in response to DNA damage and attempts to aid in the repair process

The p53 protein functions by activating the expression of a diverse set of target genes. Its DNA-binding domain consists of a recognition sequence composed of 10 nucleotides repeated twice in tandem, separated by up to 20 nucleotides of random sequence (**Figure 9.15A**). This recognition sequence is present in the promoters or initial introns of dozens of p53 target genes, which collectively control the various downstream functions of p53 (Figure 9.15B). The great majority (>90%) of the mutant *p53* alleles found in human tumor cell genomes contain amino acid substitutions in the DNA-binding domain of p53 (see Figure 9.6). These mutations eliminate p53's ability to bind to its recognition sequences, thereby rendering the mutant protein unable to exert most of its multiple functions. Furthermore, as discussed above, p53 tetramers that contain even one mutant p53 subunit appear to have a reduced ability to bind DNA.



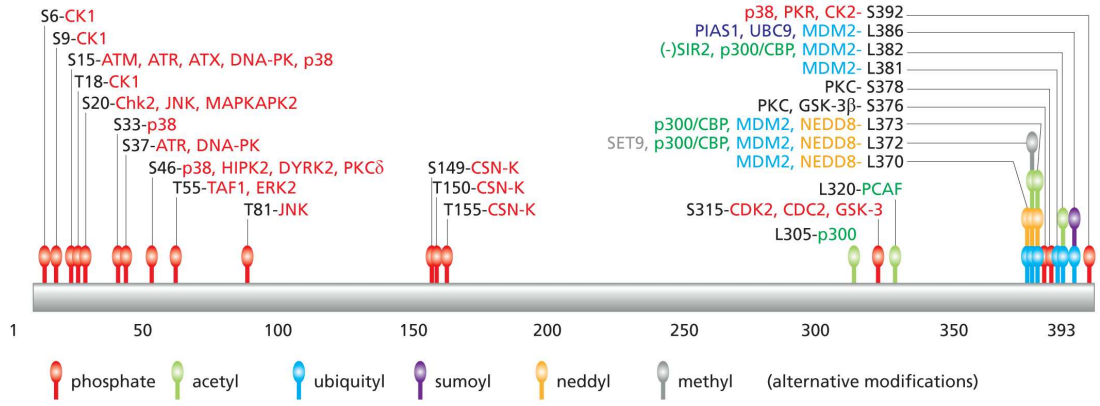
A consensus oligonucleotide sequence that is 20 nucleotides long. Position 4 has a large C, position 7 has a large G, position 14 has a large C, and position 17 has a large G, indicating at these positions, cytosine and guanine have very high frequencies of occurrence. Positions 5 and 6 and positions 15 and 16 each have medium sized ayze and tees, indicating less consensus but high likelihood of adenine or thymine. Other positions have smaller letters, indicating less consensus during sequencing.

(A)



A diagram showing some of the many target genes in which p53 induces expression. These include p21, 14 3 3 sigma, and others that trigger cell cycle arrest; Bax, Puma, Noxa and others that trigger apoptosis, Gadd 45, X p c, X p g, and others that trigger D N A repair, and other genes with other functions.

(B)



A detailed chart of post-translational modifications of p35, distributed over 393 numbered amino acid residues. There are many points of phosphate group attachment at positions 1 through 155, and points of attachment for groups of different types from position 300 on. The different group types are phosphate, acetyl, ubiquityl, sumoyl, neddyl, and methyl.

(C)

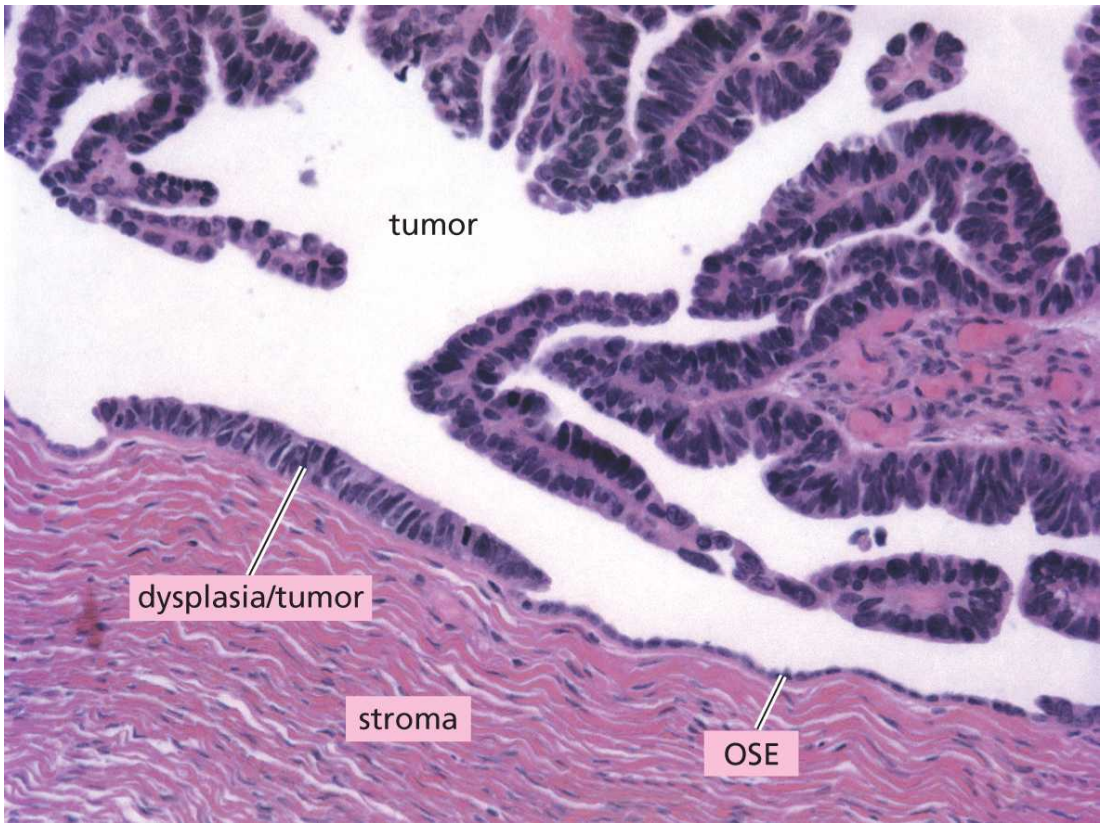
Figure 9.15 p53 functions as a transcription factor (A) The consensus oligonucleotide sequence recognized by p53. The sequence was determined by immunoprecipitation of p53–DNA complexes in human cells stressed by exposure to the drug actinomycin, a potent inhibitor of transcription and thus inducer of increased p53 levels. In more detail, the chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP) procedure employed anti-p53 antibodies to isolate p53–DNA complexes present in the chromatin of these actinomycin-treated cells. The DNA fragments in the immunoprecipitates were subsequently sequenced, which led to the identification of 1546 sites in the human genome to which p53 is bound; nucleotides that recurred frequently at a particular position in the immunoprecipitated DNA fragments are indicated in *large font* letters, and those that recurred less frequently are indicated by *smaller font* letters. As is apparent, p53 tetramers appear to bind to two similar octanucleotide sequences that are separated from one another by (in this case) two intervening nucleotides; far more intervening nucleotides may separate the two octanucleotide binding sites in other promoters. Interestingly, the majority of these 1546 sites were also recognized and bound by p53's cousins, p63 and p73, also discussed in this chapter. (B) p53 induces expression of a variety of genes involved in growth arrest, apoptosis, and DNA repair. Examples of genes involved in each response are shown, although many more are known. (C) The phosphorylation of p53 by various kinases (see Figure 9.9) represents only one type of post-translational modification (PTM) that is important to its functioning. In addition to the attachment of phosphate groups (*red*), other enzymes modify the protein by attaching acetyl (*green*), ubiquityl (*blue*), sumoyl (*purple*), neddyl (*yellow*), and methyl (*gray*) groups at the indicated amino acid residues and residue numbers (*black type*). The identities of the modifying enzymes are indicated (*various font colors*) next to the amino acid residue numbers. Only a small portion of these PTMs have been linked to specific p53 functions. Moreover and as an example, one of these PTMs, phosphorylation of serine 46, is accomplished by any of four distinct kinases and activates the pro-apoptotic functions of p53. Both neddyl and sumoyl groups are similar to ubiquityl groups but have very different effects on the proteins to which they become attached. A 2014 proteomics report describes as many as 150 distinct PTMs of p53. The functional consequences of these PTMs are largely unknown. (A, from L. Smeenk et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 36:3639–3654, 2008. With permission from Oxford University Press. C, Courtesy of K.P. Olive and T. Jacks.)

In addition to binding to its recognition sequence, p53 must interact with other factors that modulate its transcriptional functions. These interactions are governed by a complex array of covalent modifications to the p53 protein, including acetylation, glycosylation, methylation, phosphorylation, ribosylation, and sumoylation—

involving the attachment of, respectively, acetyl, sugar, methyl, phosphate, ribose, and sumo groups (the latter being a ubiquitin-like peptide that appears to target proteins for localization to specific intracellular sites, often in the nucleus; Figure 9.15C). Phosphorylation of p53's N-terminal transactivation domain (see Figure 9.6B), for example, can increase the protein's ability to bind the p300 co-activator as well as other transcription co-activators. Recruitment of p300 contributes to transcriptional activation by acetylating nearby histones H3 and H4 as well as p53 itself. Indeed, it is highly likely that combinatorial interactions of p53 with other transcription factors determine the identities of the specific target genes that are activated in various circumstances by p53.

In addition to functioning as a transcriptional activator, it is now clear that p53 can repress the expression of certain genes as well. However, the mechanisms underlying p53's transcriptional repression functions are less well understood. We therefore focus our attention on p53's ability to activate the expression of target genes.

One key target of the p53 transcription factor, as discussed earlier, is the *Mdm2* gene, the induction of which leads to a negative-feedback loop that functions to ensure the very low steady-state levels of p53 protein observed in normal, unperturbed cells. The operation of this p53–Mdm2 feedback loop explains a curious aspect of p53 behavior: in human cancer cells that carry mutant, defective *p53* alleles, the p53 protein is almost invariably present in high concentrations (**Figure 9.16**). At first glance, this might appear paradoxical, because high levels of a growth-suppressing protein like p53 would seem to be incompatible with malignant cell proliferation. However, because mutant p53 is unable to induce the expression of Mdm2 (among its other downstream target genes), this mutant, functionally inactive protein escapes Mdm2-driven degradation and accumulates to very high levels. This logic explains why the presence of readily detectable p53 in a population of tumor cells, usually revealed by immunostaining (see Figure 9.16), is a telltale sign of the presence of a mutant *p53* allele in the genome of these cells. (Such a conclusion cannot be drawn, however, from analyzing human tissue that has recently been irradiated because radiation can also evoke the widespread expression of p53 throughout a tissue for days, even weeks after radiotherapy.) The large amounts of p53 protein in SV40-infected or SV40-transformed cells can be explained analogously: in this case, sequestration of p53 by the viral large T antigen prevents p53-induced expression of the *Mdm2* gene and resulting p53 degradation. According to one measurement, when large T is expressed in previously normal cells, the half-life of p53 increases from 20 minutes to 24 hours. Alternatively, in cancer cells carrying wild-type *p53* alleles, the presence of chronic DNA damage signals as well as oncogene-induced stress signals may also contribute to the high levels of the p53 protein.



A histology image showing the accumulation of the p53 protein in p53-mutant cells. Across the bottom of the image is a relatively smooth, continuous mass of normal, pink stroma cells bordered by ovarian surface epithelium, or O S E. One part of the border of the stroma tissue, however, is made up of a thick band of cells stained dark blue; these are labeled dysplasia slash tumor. The upper part of the image is filled with irregular masses of dark-stained tissue, looking like many islands in a bay. This part of the image is labeled tumor.

Figure 9.16 Accumulation of p53 in *p53*-mutant cells This microscope section of ovarian tissue has been stained with an anti-p53 antibody coupled to the peroxidase enzyme, resulting in the blackened nuclei seen here. Large patches of epithelial cells in an ovarian carcinoma (*above*) are composed of cells that have high levels of p53; a patch of dysplasia (*left middle*) is also p53-positive. This staining pattern is an indication that relatively early in the course of tumor progression, the dysplastic precursors to this carcinoma already sustained a *p53* somatic mutation. Stromal cells (*small black nuclei, pink matrix, below*) are unstained, as is a patch of normal ovarian surface epithelium (OSE, *below, right*). (Courtesy of R. Drapkin and D.M. Livingston.)

Mdm2 is only one of a large cohort of genes whose expression is induced by p53. As mentioned earlier, another highly important target gene is *p21^{Cip1}* (sometimes called *Cdkn1a* in the mouse), which is key to p53's ability to arrest progression through the cell cycle. In fact, the gene encoding p21^{Cip1} was originally discovered in an effort to uncover genes whose expression is increased by p53. Soon after its discovery, it became apparent that p21^{Cip1} functions as an important inhibitor of a number of the cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs). The ability of p21^{Cip1} to inhibit two CDKs—CDK2 and CDK1/CDC2—that are active in the late G_1, S, G_2, and M phases of the cell cycle (see Figures 8.6 and 8.11A) explains how p53 is able to block forward progress at multiple points in this cycle.

The consequences of p53 activation can differ at different points in the cell cycle (see Figures 8.6 and 8.11A). For example, if a cell suffers DNA damage during the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, p53 will become activated and will induce p21^{Cip1} synthesis; p21^{Cip1}, in turn, will halt further cell proliferation. At the same time, components of the cellular DNA repair machinery will be mobilized to repair the damage. The genes encoding some of these repair proteins are directly induced by p53. As such, cells lacking functional p53 are unable to efficiently repair the DNA lesions caused by agents such as benzo[*a*]pyrene (a potent carcinogen present in tars) or the cyclobutane pyrimidine dimers caused by ultraviolet (UV) radiation (described in Chapter 12). In addition, DNA polymerase β, which plays a critical role in reconstructing DNA strands after chemically altered bases have been excised by DNA repair proteins, is much less active in p53-negative cells than in their wild-type counterparts. We will return to these DNA repair proteins and their mechanisms of action in Chapter 12. In the event that the DNA is successfully repaired, the signals that have protected p53 from destruction (see Figure 9.12) will disappear and the concentrations of p53 and, in turn, of p21^{Cip1}, will fall. In the absence of p21^{Cip1}, cell cycle progression will resume, enabling cells to enter S phase, where replication of the now-repaired DNA can proceed.

The rationale for this series of steps is a simple one: by halting cell cycle progression in G_1, p53 prevents a cell from entering S phase and inadvertently copying still-unrepaired DNA, which could be passed on to daughter cells. The importance of these cytostatic actions of p21^{Cip1} can be seen from the phenotype of genetically altered mice in which both germ-line copies of the *p21^{Cip1}* gene have been inactivated. Although not as tumor-prone as p53-null mice, they show an increased incidence of tumors late in life.

If, alternatively, a cell suffering DNA damage has already advanced into S phase and is therefore in the midst of actively replicating its DNA, the p21^{Cip1} induced by p53 can engage the DNA polymerase machinery at the replication forks and halt its further

advance along the DNA template molecules. It does so by binding PCNA (proliferating-cell nuclear antigen), which interacts, in turn, with the key DNA polymerases δ and ε, thereby blocking further advance of replication forks along the DNA. Once again, the effect here is to hold DNA replication in abeyance until DNA damage has been successfully repaired.

In addition, the p53 protein uses yet other genes and proteins to halt further cell cycle advance. For example, p53 induces the expression of 14-3-3σ(see Figure 9.15B), which helps to govern the G_2/M transition. The 14-3-3σ protein, for its part, sequesters the cyclin B–CDC2 complex in the cytoplasm, thereby preventing it from moving into the nucleus, where its actions are required to drive the cell into mitosis; a similar mechanism allows 14-3-3σ to bind and sequester the Cdc25A, Cdc25B, and Cdc25C phosphatases, whose actions are also required for entry into mitosis. This mechanism delays mitosis until the chromosomal DNA is determined to be in good repair.

These extensive actions of p53 have caused some to portray this protein as the "guardian of the genome." By preventing cell cycle advance and DNA replication while chromosomal DNA is damaged and by inducing expression of DNA repair enzymes, p53 can reduce the rate at which mutations accumulate in cellular genomes. Moreover, in the event that severe DNA damage has been sustained (for example, damage that exceeds a cell's ability to repair DNA), p53 may trigger apoptosis, thereby eliminating mutant cells and their damaged genomes. This outcome contrasts with the behavior of cells that have lost p53 function: they may replicate their damaged, still-unrepaired DNA, and this can cause them to exhibit relatively mutable genomes—that is, genomes that accumulate mutations at an abnormally high rate per cell generation.

In one particularly illustrative experiment, pregnant $p53^{+/-}$ mice that had been bred with $p53^{+/-}$ males were treated with the highly mutagenic carcinogen ethylnitrosourea (ENU). Of the pups that were subsequently born with the $p53^{-/-}$genotype, 70% developed brain tumors; only 3.6% of the $p53^{+/-}$ pups developed similar tumors, whereas none of those that were $p53^{+/+}$ did. Hence, in the absence of p53 function, fetal cells that had been mutated by ENU could survive and spawn the progeny forming these lethal tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

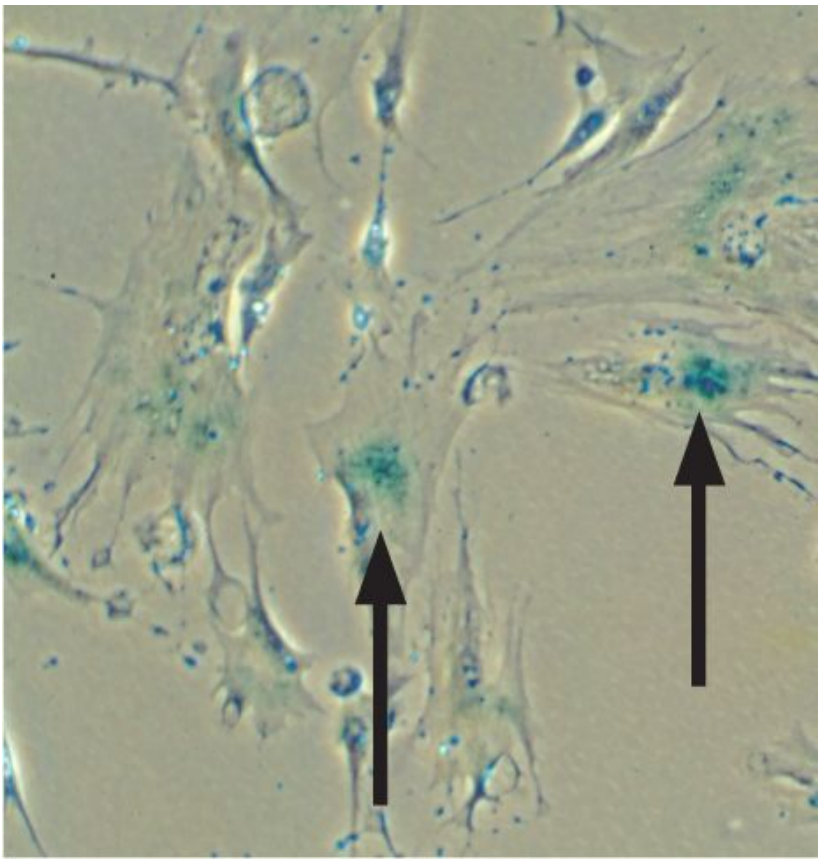
immunostaining
: The use of antigen-specific antibodies linked directly or indirectly to fluorophores or dye-activating enzymes to reveal specific cells or subcellular structures present in histological sections.

mutable
: Referring to an entity that is subject to change, notably a genome subject to genetic mutation.

OceanofPDF.com

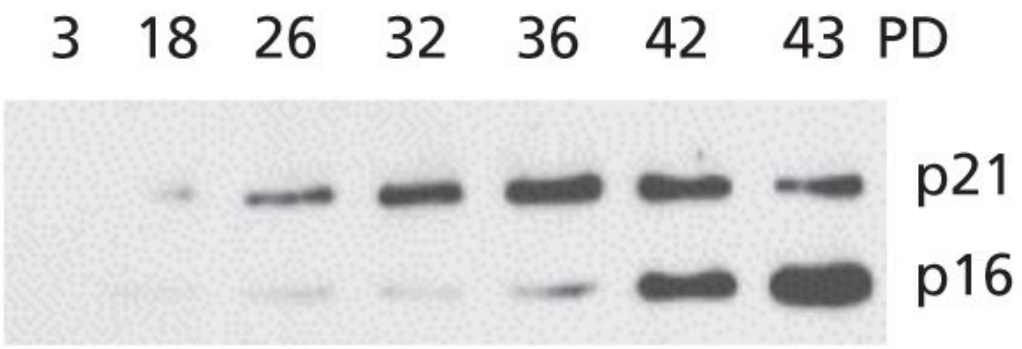
9.11 Prolonged DNA damage and oncogene activation can induce p53-dependent senescence

As described above, p53 can orchestrate entrance into apoptosis or impose a temporary cell cycle arrest. In fact, as part of its anti-neoplastic functions, p53 can also induce a more permanent form of cell cycle arrest cited above and termed senescence. First observed in experiments performed in the mid-1960s using cells prepared from rodent or human embryos, one form of senescence, “replicative senescence” was associated with limiting the life span of cells growing in tissue culture. Thus, after a certain number of population doublings, the cells would undergo an irreversible cell cycle arrest, accompanied by an enlarged surface area and a “fried egg” appearance (**Figure 9.17A**). Although metabolically active (sometimes for months), these senescent cells would no longer divide, even when presented with adequate nutrients and growth factors.



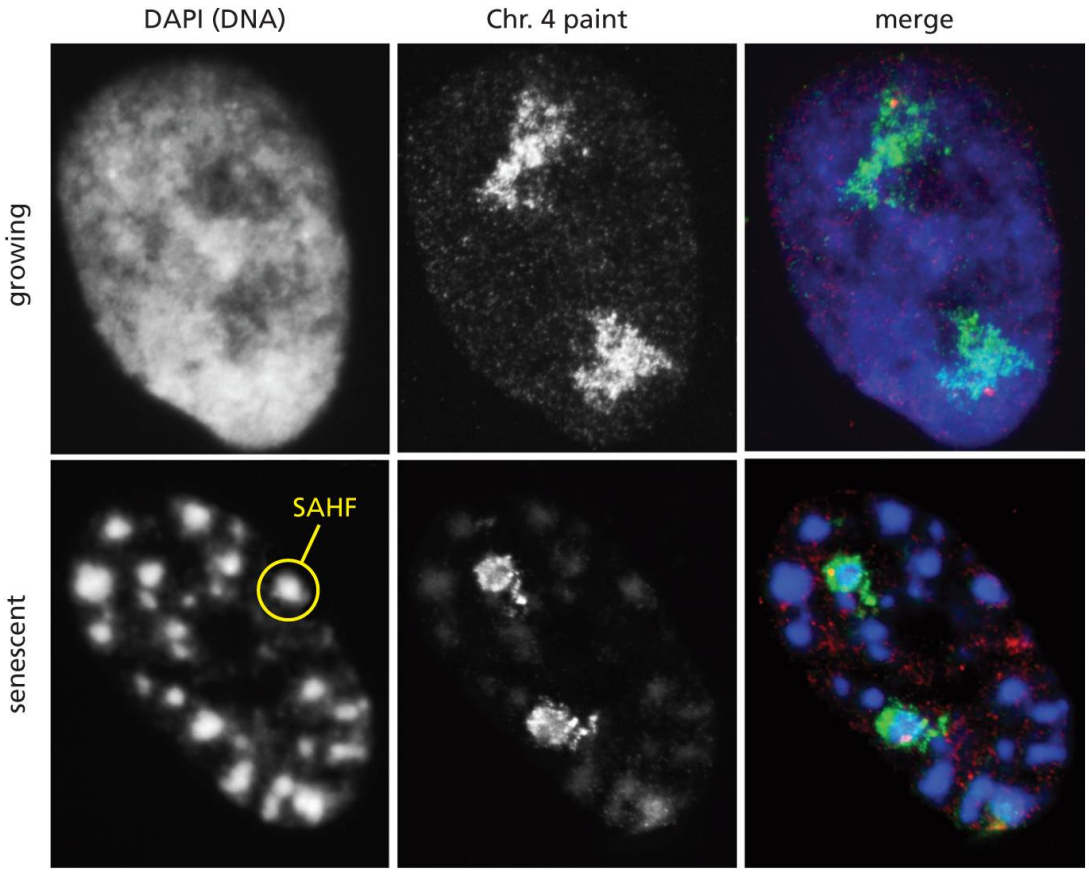
A micrograph of senescent cells, with arrows indicating blue patches in two of them.

(A)



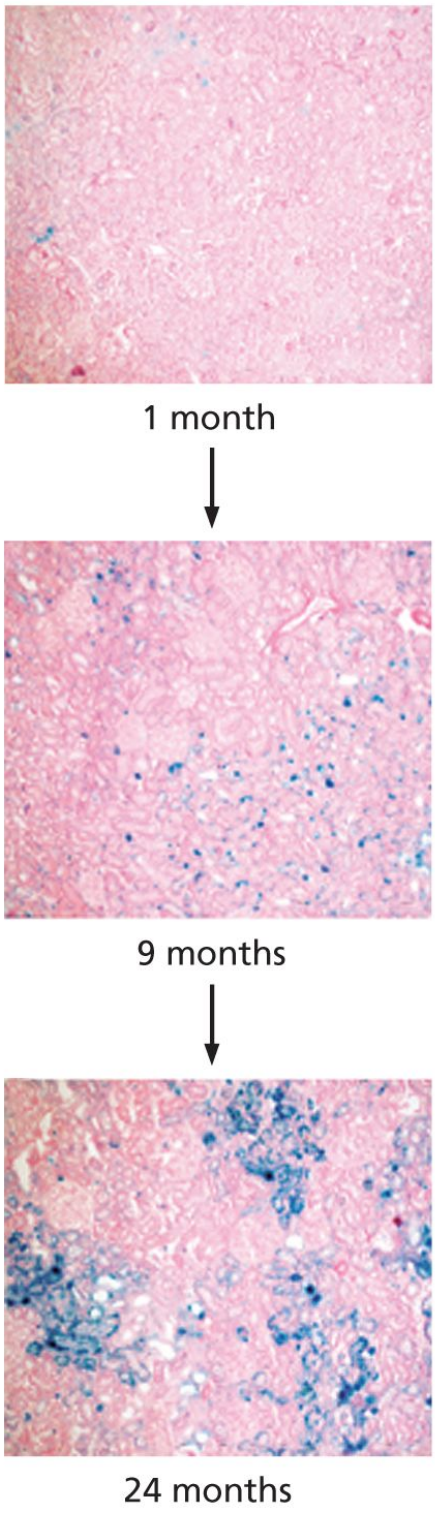
An autoradiograph for p21 and p16, showing cells at 3, 18, 26, 32, 36, 42 and 43 population doublings. For p21, the signature is strongest at 36 doublings; for p16, it is strongest at 43 doublings.

(B)



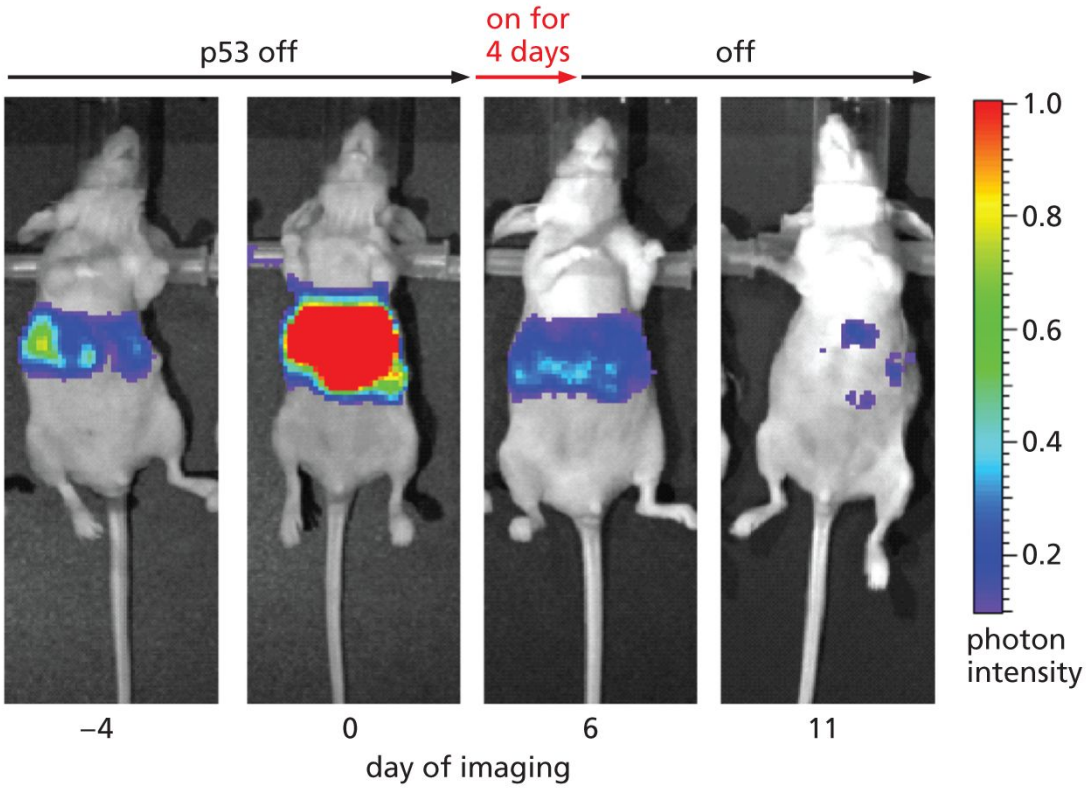
A 2 by 3 array of 6 images of a cell nucleus. In the left two images, D A P I staining shows chromosomal D N A distributed more or less evenly throughout the nucleus of a proliferating cell but congealed into clumps, Senescence-associated heterochromatin foci, in a senescent cell. In the middle two images, a paint specifically of chromosome 4 reveals two large areas in a proliferating cell and two much smaller, brighter areas in a senescent cell. The right two images are color composites merging the two preceding images for each type of cell.

(C)



Three stains in which proliferating cells appear pink and senescent cells appear blue. At age 1 month there are almost no senescent cells, at 9 months there are many specks of senescent cells, and at 24 months there are large patches of senescent cells.

(D)



Imaging of liver tumors in a mouse shows the tumors being allowed to grow for 4 days by shutting off p53 expression. The tumors shrink after p53 expression is turned on for 4 days, and they continue to shrink up to day 11, 7 days after p53 expression has been turned back off.

(E)

Figure 9.17 Senescent cells arise *in vitro* and *in vivo* (A) Cells that enter into senescence cease proliferating but remain viable. Many develop extremely large cytoplasms, giving them a “fried egg” appearance. Senescent cells also characteristically express acidic β-galactosidase enzyme, which can be detected by supplying them with a substrate that turns *blue* upon cleavage by this enzyme (*arrows*). (B) When adult human endometrial fibroblasts are propagated *in vitro*, expression of both the $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$ CDK inhibitors (see Section 8.4) is induced, albeit with different kinetics. These cells have an expected life span of 40 to 43 population doublings (PD) in culture, whereupon they enter into senescence. Much of this senescence may reflect a response to the stresses suffered by cells being propagated under sub-optimal conditions of culture. (C) Senescence-associated heterochromatin foci (SAHF) arise during senescence and derive from covalent modifications of the N- and C-terminal tails of histones within the

nucleosomes (see Section 1.8). Human fibroblasts were induced to enter senescence through introduction of an activated *ras* oncogene (*lower row*). In the nuclei of control cells that continued active growth (*upper row*), the chromosomal DNA was dispersed throughout the nucleus, as indicated by the DAPI stain (*white*). In contrast, the DNA of the senescent cells was concentrated in a number of discrete foci—SAHFs. The use of *in situ* hybridization with a DNA probe specific for Chromosome 4 (Chr. 4 paint) revealed that the Chromosome 4 DNA was far more dispersed in the nuclei of growing cells than in the senescent cells. The overlap between these two imaging procedures (merge, *green*) shows that the DNA of each Chromosome 4 has coalesced into a single SAHF within a senescent cell. (The behavior of Chromosome 4 is presumed to be representative of the behavior of all other chromosomes, which were not analyzed here.) Other studies indicate that SAHFs represent chromosomal regions in which transcription is irreversibly repressed. (D) Kidney tissue from rats of the indicated ages was stained for the presence of senescence-associated β-galactosidase (SA-β-gal; *blue*). Observations like these indicate that normal aging is accompanied by increasing numbers of senescent cells within tissues. (E) In a mouse model of liver cancer pathogenesis, an activated H-*ras* oncogene was introduced into cultured hepatoblasts in which p53 expression was suppressed by an inducible siRNA vector construct (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.5**). The cells were injected into the spleens of host mice, leading to their subsequent implantation in the liver. The resulting tumors were allowed to grow to a significant size (day 0), at which point expression of the siRNA construct was shut down for 4 days, permitting p53 function to return; p53 expression was then shut down once again for the remaining time of the experiment. By day 6, tumors were markedly smaller, and by day 11, they were almost undetectable. Because the tumors continued to shrink long after p53 expression was suppressed, the brief (4-day-long) period of p53 expression seems to have forced tumor cells to enter irreversibly into the post-mitotic senescence state, and the senescent cells were ostensibly cleared by cells of the innate immune system, such as the macrophages described in Chapter 15. Tumors were imaged *in vivo* through light released by a luciferase gene borne by the tumor cells. (A, courtesy of C. Scheel. B, from S. Brookes et al., *Exp. Cell Res*. 298:549–559, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. C, from R. Zhang, W. Chen, and P.D. Adams, *Mol. Cell Biol.* 27:2343–2358, 2007. With permission from American Society for Microbiology. D, from A. Melk et al., *Kidney Int.* 63:2134–2143, 2003. With permission from International Society of Nephrology. E, from W. Xue et al., *Nature* 445:656–660, 2007. With permission from Nature.)

We now know that senescence can be caused by a number of stimuli, including telomere shortening (which can induce a DNA damage response; see Section 10.4), exposure to high levels of reactive oxygen species (ROS), or other forms of chronic

DNA damage. Experiments that showed delayed induction of senescence following expression of the SV40 large T antigen—which inactivates both p53 and the pRB family of proteins (see Sections 8.5 and 9.1)—helped to establish that both of these tumor suppressor pathways are required for the induction of senescence.

Cells that are approaching senescence show increased levels of p53 as well as $p21^{Cip1}$. The cyclin kinase inhibitor $p16^{Ink4a}$ is also strongly induced in senescent cells, which causes pRB to be maintained in a hypo-phosphorylated state (see Section 8.5), contributing to the prolonged cell cycle arrest (Figure 9.17B). Under some conditions, senescent cells undergo pronounced changes in their chromatin, including trimethylation of histone 3 at lysine 9. This modification resembles that present in heterochromatin and likely contributes to the irreversibility of the senescent state. Indeed, nuclear regions of senescence-associated heterochromatin foci (SAHF) are used as a marker for cells that have undergone senescence rather than temporary cell cycle arrest (Figure 9.17C; see also **Supplementary Sidebar 10.3**).

Senescent cells can also be characterized by their secretion of a variety of pro-inflammatory cytokines, including several interleukins, IGFBPs, and TGF-β. The cytokines that are released as part of this senescence-associated secretory phenotype (SASP) include those that act in an autocrine fashion to promote senescence and those that act in a paracrine fashion to recruit pro-inflammatory cells of the innate immune system. Another commonly used marker of senescence is a senescence-associated isoform of β-galactosidase (SAβ-gal), which we already encountered in Figure 9.17A. Although this enzyme is not mechanistically required for senescence, it is frequently found to be upregulated in senescent cells and can be easily detected by incubating cells with the substrate X-gal at pH 6 (see Figure 9.17A).

If cellular senescence can limit the reproductive life span of cells in the body, as it does in tissue culture, this mechanism could represent a powerful form of tumor suppression. Indeed, as we discuss in greater detail in Chapter 10, overcoming senescence—and thereby achieving cellular immortality—is one of the commonly observed hallmark changes that transformed cells undergo on the path leading to the formation of advanced tumors. Cancer cells frequently mutate one or more of the tumor suppressor genes implicated in triggering senescence, suggesting that diversion of cells into this state may act as an effective barrier to tumorigenesis; still, the same genes and encoded proteins are also involved in regulating reversible growth arrest and apoptosis (see Figure 9.17B), which suggests alternative explanations for their inactivation that is observed in cells en route to high-grade malignancy.

There is accumulating evidence that cellular senescence does indeed occur in living tissues, including the detection of increasing numbers of cells that stain for SAβ-gal activity in aged mice and humans (Figure 9.17D). However, it remains to be determined whether senescence associated with aging, telomere shortening, or chronic

DNA damage is an effective anti-tumor mechanism in humans. In fact, there is a growing body of research literature demonstrating that an increase in inflammation, such as that caused by the SASP response, can actually create a pro-tumorigenic microenvironment (see Section 11.15). As such, in some settings, senescent cells in aging animals may actually *promote* cancer development.

Cellular senescence can also be induced in response to inappropriate oncogene expression, as first demonstrated by experiments examining the effects of introducing multiple copies of a *ras* oncogene into wild-type fibroblasts. Rather than driving unrestrained proliferation, the expression of this potent oncogene was found to cause the cells to undergo irreversible cell cycle arrest, accompanied by a rise in SA-β-gal expression and other markers of senescence. The central role of p53 in this response was shown by the finding that oncogenic Ras expression in p53-deficient fibroblasts failed to induce senescence and led instead to cellular transformation. Hence, a *ras* oncogene could collaborate with a mutant *p53* gene in generating transformed cells, illustrating the ability of multiple mutant genes within a cell genome to create neoplastic cells, a theme that we will explore in detail in Chapter 11.

Examples of **o**ncogene-**i**nduced **s**enescence (OIS) have been shown to limit the further development of the pre-neoplastic lesions in animal models as well as in human tissues. For example, in humans, melanomas can arise at low frequency from benign tumors called nevi (or moles), which can otherwise remain in a growth-arrested state for decades. Nevi frequently harbor mutations in the B-Raf oncogene but lack the additional mutations that are required for full melanoma development. These pre-neoplastic lesions have been shown to upregulate expression of the $p16^{Ink4a}$ gene and to induce SA-β-gal activity; expression of the oncogenic B-Raf protein in normal human or mouse melanocytes in culture likewise causes cell cycle arrest and multiple markers of senescence. Finally, using genetically engineered mouse models of cancer in which *p53* alleles can be switched on and off, researchers have observed that restoring p53 function can induce cellular senescence and profound tumor regression in certain mouse models of tumor development, the latter resulting from the actions of immune cells in clearing the senescent cancer cells created by the restored p53 function (Figure 9.17E). These data strongly support the notion that OIS is a hardwired cellular response mechanism designed to eliminate cells that have activated certain oncogenes. Accordingly, OIS can operate as an important tumor-suppressive mechanism and the accumulation of inactivating mutations in *p53* and in genes specifying other mediators of the senescence program may be required in order for incipient cancer cells to circumvent this fate.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

heterochromatin
: Chromatin that contains transcriptionally inactive genes or no genes at all and is condensed and stains darkly. *See also* **euchromatin**.

senescence-associated heterochromatin foci
: Domains of heterochromatin that form in senescent cells and contribute to the silencing of proliferation-promoting genes in such cells.

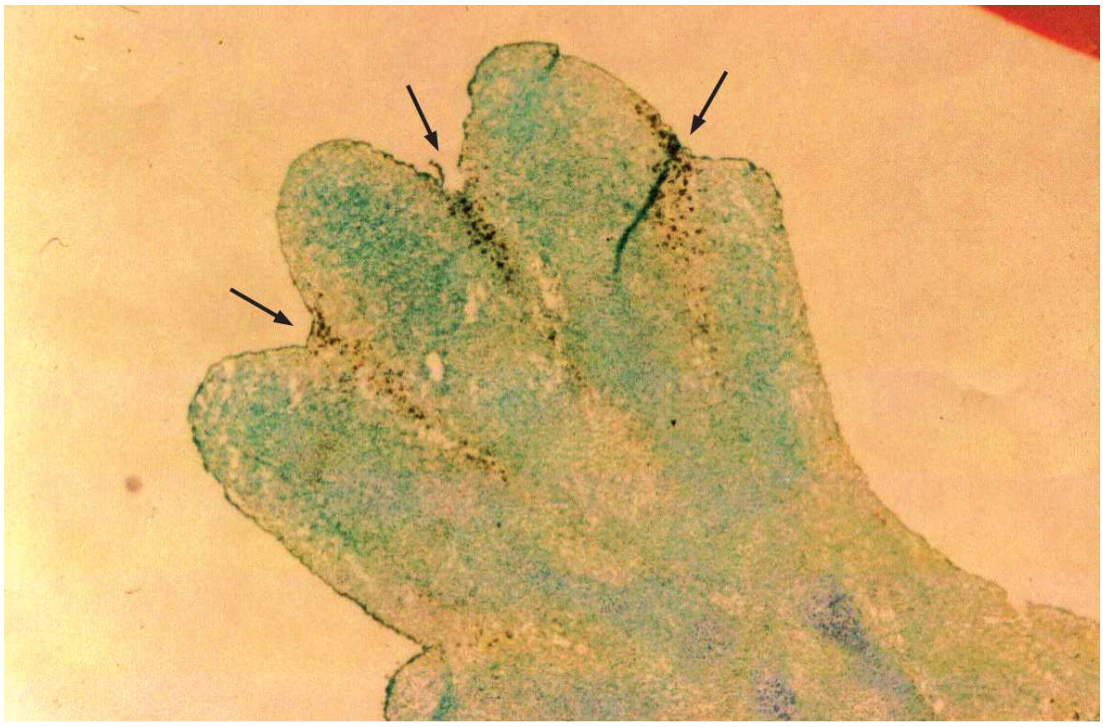
senescence-associated secretory phenotype
: A condition observed in some cells undergoing senescence that is associated with the secretion of certain pro-inflammatory cytokines, immune modulators, proteases, and growth factors.

nevus
: (pl., **nevi**) A benign growth of melanocytes in the skin yielding moles or collections of pigmented cells that may, at low probability, progress into a melanoma.

OceanofPDF.com

9.12 The apoptosis program participates in normal tissue development and maintenance

We have introduced the role of p53 in inducing apoptosis as a protective mechanism for eliminating damaged or pre-cancerous cells. However, this cell suicide program has a larger role in the organism beyond the removal of cells that teeter on the brink of malignancy. Apoptosis is used routinely during normal morphogenesis to chisel away unneeded cell populations during the sculpting of well-formed, functional tissues and organs (**Figure 9.18**). Mice that have been genetically deprived of various key components of the apoptotic machinery show a characteristic set of developmental defects, including excess neurons in the brain, facial abnormalities, delayed removal of the webbing between digits, and abnormalities in the palate and lens. In the case of the developing brain, more than half of all initially formed neurons are normally eliminated by apoptosis during formation of various neural circuits.



An embryonic mouse paw appears green. Between the nubs that will develop into digits, tiny streaks of black grains are visible, as indicated by arrows.

Figure 9.18 Apoptosis and normal morphogenesis The webs of tissue between the future toes of a mouse paw are still in evidence in this embryonic paw. They were preferentially labeled, as indicated by the numerous dark dots (*arrows*), using the TUNEL assay (see Supplementary Sidebar 9.3). As in humans, the apoptosis of cells forming the webs ultimately results in the formation of digits that are joined by webs only near the palm. (Courtesy of Z. Zakeri.)

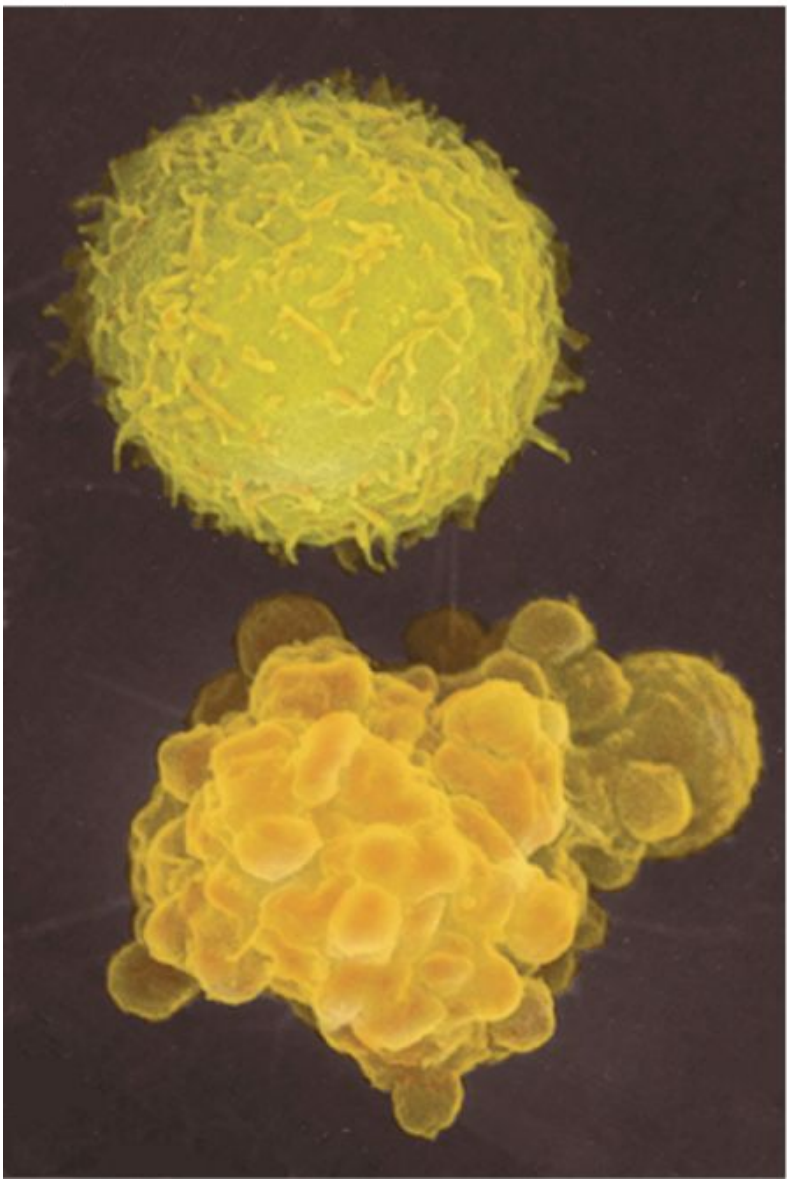
Apoptosis also plays an important role in normal adult tissue physiology. In the small intestine, for example, epithelial cells are continually being eliminated by apoptosis after a four- or five-day journey from the bottom of intestinal crypts to the tips of the villi that protrude into the lumen (see Section 7.10). During the development of red blood cells (the process of erythropoiesis), more than 95% of the erythroblasts—the precursors of mature red cells—are destroyed as part of the routine operations of the bone marrow. However, in the event that the rate of oxygen transport by the blood falls below a certain threshold level—as a result of hemorrhage, various types of anemia, or low oxygen tension in the surrounding air—a rapid rise in the concentration of the blood-forming hormone erythropoietin (EPO; see Section 5.7) blocks apoptosis of these erythrocyte precursors, enabling their maturation into functional red blood cells. This mechanism yields a rapid increase in the levels of these cells in the blood.

The regression of the cells in the mammary gland following the weaning of offspring is a particularly dramatic example of the contribution of apoptosis to normal physiology. As many as 90% of the epithelial cells in the mammary gland, which have accumulated in large numbers during pregnancy to produce milk for the newborn, die via apoptosis during this regression, which is usually termed involution.

In a more general sense, apoptosis is used to maintain appropriate numbers of different cell types in a wide variety of human tissues. The importance of this process is indicated by the turnover of cells—the number that are newly formed and the equal number that are eliminated in each year of our lives—which exceeds by a factor of ~4 the total number of cells ($\sim 3 \times 10^{13}$) present in the adult body at any one time. Most of these discarded cells appear to be eliminated by apoptosis.

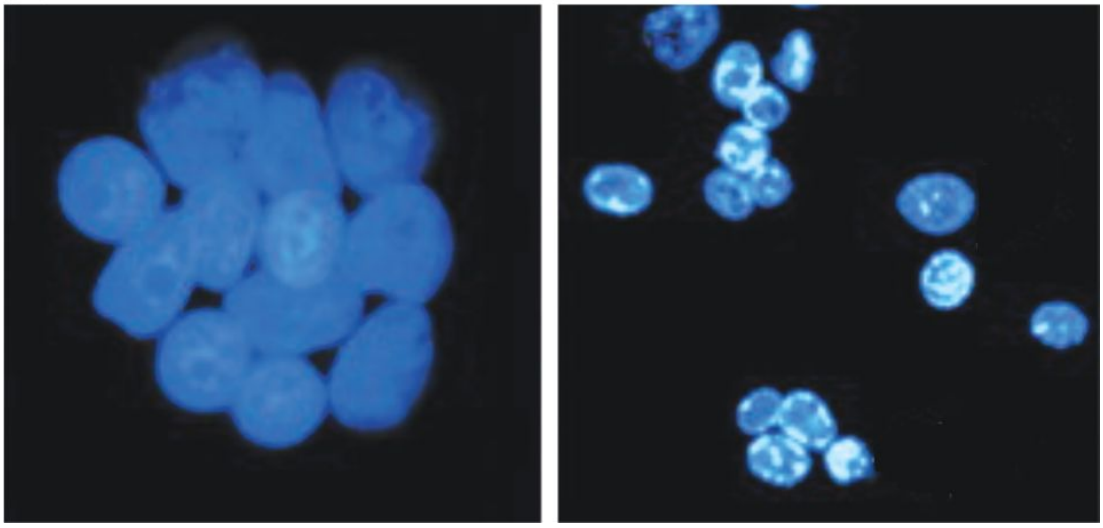
As observed through the microscope, the cellular changes that constitute the apoptotic program proceed according to a precisely coordinated schedule. Within minutes, patches of the plasma membrane herniate to form structures known as blebs; indeed, in time-lapse movies, the cell surface appears to be boiling. The nucleus collapses into a dense structure—a state termed pyknosis—and fragments, as the chromosomal DNA is cleaved into small segments. Ultimately, usually within an hour, the apoptotic cell breaks up into small pieces, sometimes called *apoptotic bodies*, which are rapidly ingested by neighboring cells in the tissue or by itinerant macrophages, thereby

removing all traces of what had recently been a living cell. These changes are illustrated in **Figure 9.19**.



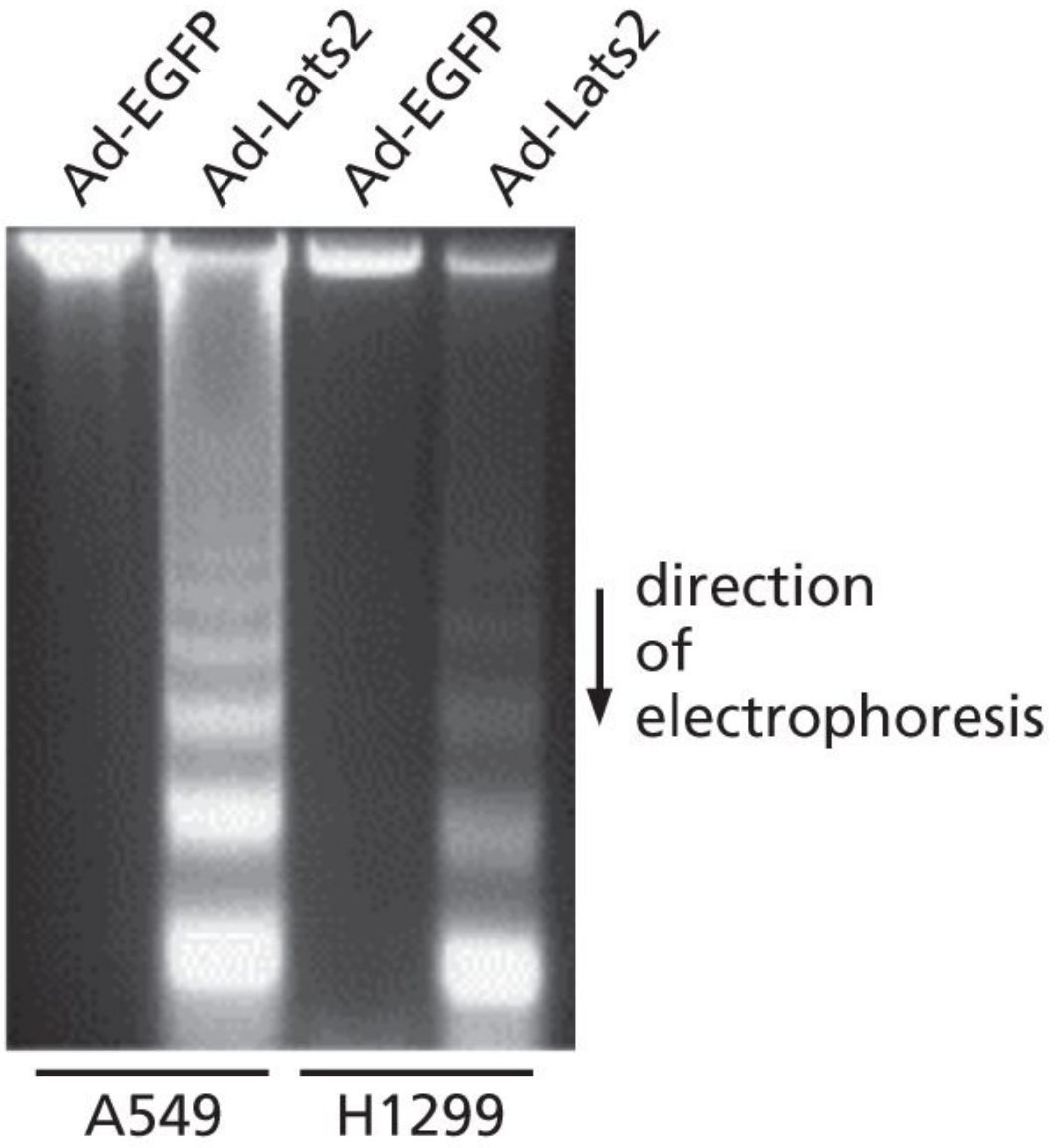
Two lymphocytes shown in yellow. The upper one is round and fuzzy, while the lower one is irregular in shape and lumpy in texture.

(A)



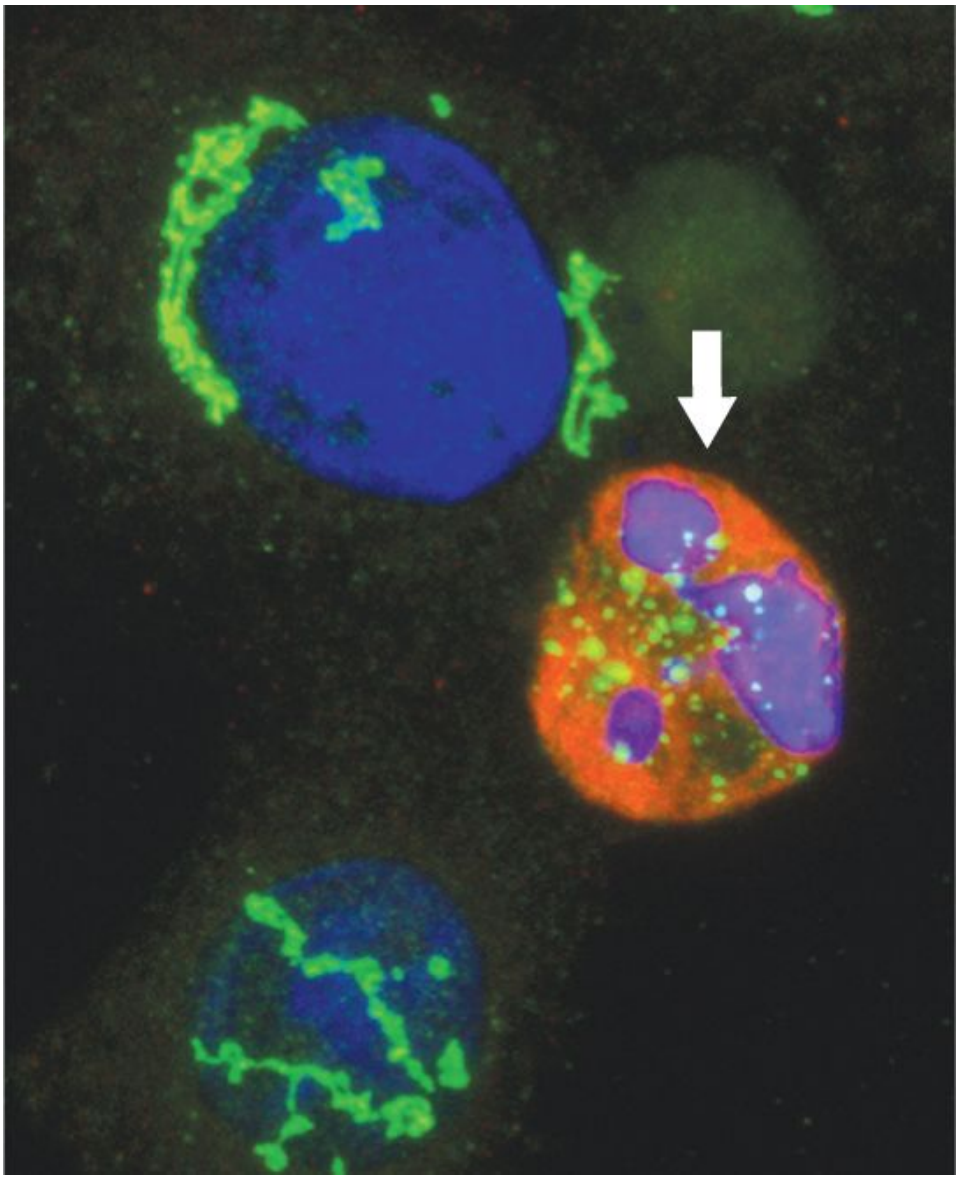
A cluster of plump, blue stained nuclei looking like a bowl of grapes, and beside it an image of scattered nuclei, some mottled white, looking like moldy blue raisins.

(B)



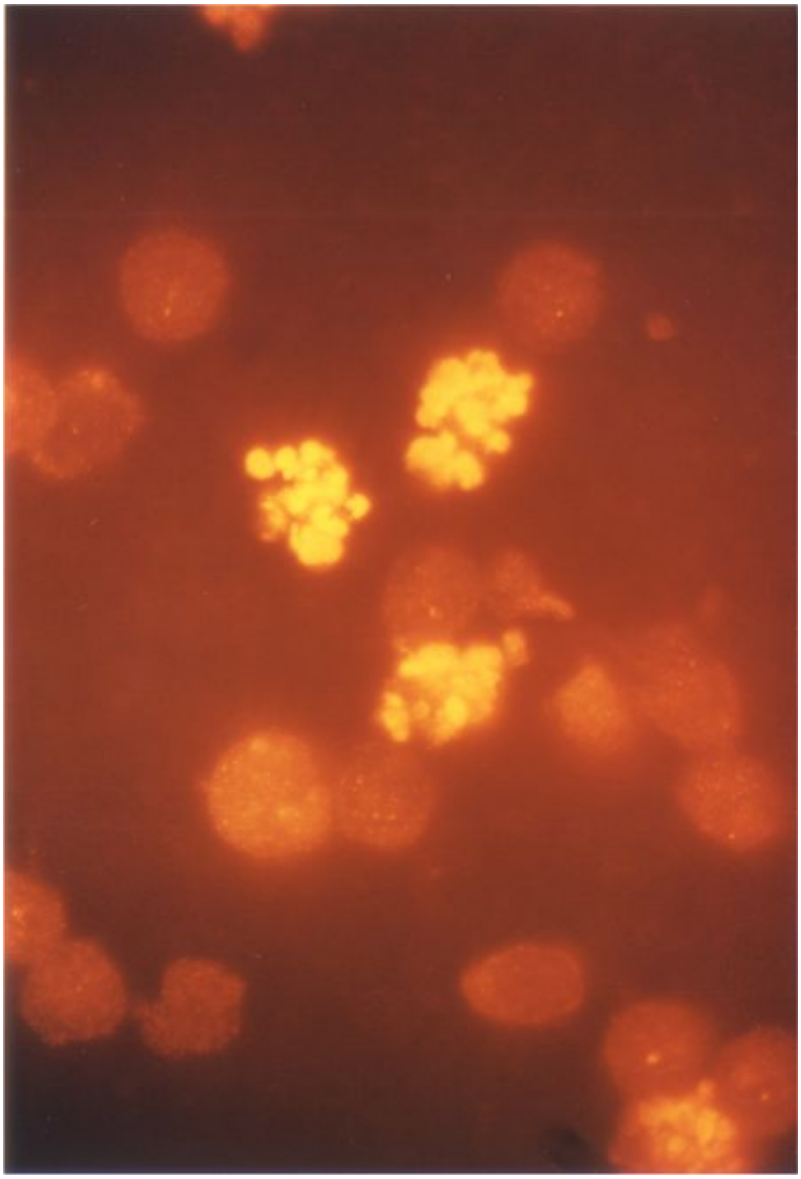
The results of gel electrophoresis, with the direction being down, with A549 in lanes 1 and 2 and H1299 in lanes 3 and 4. Lanes 1 and 3, for treatment with A d-E G F P, are dark. Lanes 2 and 4, for treatment with A d-L a t s 2, show banding that gets brighter toward the bottom. Lane 2 is brighter than lane 4.

(C)



Two cells with blue nuclei and large extended green Golgi bodies near the nucleus are on the left, and a red nucleus with many small green specks appears on the right. In Part E, many nuclei appear in orange-red. Most are uniform in color and not bright, but three or four of them appear brighter and highly granulated.

(D)



Many nuclei appear in orange-red. Most are uniform in color and not bright, but three or four of them appear brighter and highly granulated.

(E)

A cluster of plump, blue stained nuclei looking like a bowl of grapes, and beside it an image of scattered nuclei, some mottled white, looking like moldy blue raisins.

(F)

Figure 9.19 Diverse manifestations of the apoptotic program (A) The upper of these two lymphocytes, visualized by scanning electron microscopy (SEM), is healthy, whereas the lower one has entered into apoptosis, resulting in the numerous blebs protruding from its surface. (B) HeLa cells—a line of human cervical carcinoma cells—have been fused, forming a syncytium (*left*). Prior to fusion, some of these cells were treated with staurosporine, an apoptosis-inducing drug. As a consequence, the nuclei of these cells, which are normally quite large (*left*), have undergone *pyknosis* (*right*), a process that accompanies apoptosis and involves condensation of chromatin (*white*) and collapse of nuclear structure. Fragmentation of nuclei (*not shown*) typically follows soon thereafter. (C) Apoptosis causes the cleavage of a cell's chromosomal DNA into low–molecular-weight fragments that appear as a "DNA ladder" on gel electrophoresis. Cell lines A549 and H1299 were treated with the pro-apoptotic protein Lats2 (*2nd and 4th lanes*), which was introduced via an adenovirus (Ad) vector; cells infected with the vector alone (Ad-EGFP) were included as controls (*1st and 3rd lanes*). (D) The Golgi bodies (*green*) are usually found in perinuclear locations in a normal

cell (*upper left*); in an apoptotic cell (*arrow*), the Golgi bodies have become fragmented. Chromatin is stained *blue*, and an antibody specific for cleaved PARP [poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase], which is degraded during apoptosis, reveals this form of the protein (*red*) in the nucleus of an apoptotic cell. (E) Here, an antibody that specifically reacts with histone 2B molecules (in the chromatin) that are phosphorylated on their serine 14 residues during apoptosis was used to stain apoptotic nuclei (which are already undergoing fragmentation). (F) The end result of apoptosis is the phagocytosis of apoptotic bodies—the fragmented remains of apoptotic cells—by neighboring cells or by macrophages. In this image, the pyknotic nuclear fragments of a phagocytosed apoptotic cell are seen above (*white arrows*) and contrast with the normal nucleus of the phagocytosing macrophage (*below*). (A, courtesy of K.G. Murti. B, from K. Andreau et al., *J. Cell Sci.* 117:5643–5653, 2004. With permission of The Company of Biologists. C, from H. Ke et al., *Exp. Cell Res.* 298:329–338, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. D, from J.D. Lane et al., *J. Cell Biol.* 156:495–509, 2002. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. E, from W.L. Cheung et al., *Cell* 113:507–517, 2003. With permission from Elsevier. F, courtesy of G.I. Evan.)

The phagocytosis by neighboring cells and macrophages depends on the display of a specialized “eat-me” signal on the surfaces of cells entering apoptosis. Normal cells contain phosphatidylserine (PS) molecules only in the inner leaflet (facing the cytoplasm) of the lipid bilayer forming the plasma membrane. This asymmetric distribution is lost, however, during the fragmentation of apoptosis. As a result, PS is displayed on the exterior face of an apoptotic cell, where it is recognized by a specialized annexin receptor on the surface of phagocytic cells. The resulting binding of neighboring cells or specialized phagocytes (that is, macrophages) to the apoptotic cell surface triggers phagocytosis. A related annexin protein, when coupled to a fluorescent dye, can be used to stain cells that have initiated apoptosis and flipped many of their PS molecules to the outer cell surface. This approach—and other procedures that can be used to detect apoptotic cells within a tissue or in culture—are outlined in **Supplementary Sidebar 9.3**.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

involution
: Regression or disappearance of a tissue, notably, the regression of the mammary epithelium upon weaning.

bleb
: A small, bubble-like herniation through a membrane such as the plasma membrane.

pyknosis
: (also **pycnosis**) Chromatin condensation and shrinkage of nuclei creating small, densely staining structures observed as products of apoptosis and necrosis.

annexin V
: A cellular protein that has strong affinity for binding of phosphatidylserine (PS); binding of this protein to the surface of intact cells indicates that the usual segregation of PS to the inner leaflet of the bilayered plasma membrane has been disrupted, as occurs during apoptosis and other forms of cell death.

OceanofPDF.com

9.13 Apoptosis is a complex biochemical program that often depends on mitochondria

Although the apoptotic program had been recognized as a normal biological phenomenon in animal tissues by nineteenth-century histologists, it was rediscovered and described with far greater precision in 1972. Prior to this rediscovery, cells in metazoan tissues were thought to be eliminated solely by necrosis. As indicated in **Table 9.2**, necrosis and apoptosis are actually quite different. By the late 1980s, genetic research on the worm *Caenorhabditis elegans* revealed that apoptosis is exploited to eliminate various cell types as part of the normal developmental program of these tiny animals (see also Figure 10.1). This research led to the recognition that apoptosis is a basic, genetically driven biological process that is common to all metazoa.

Table 9.2 Apoptosis versus necrosis

	Apoptosis	**Necrosis**
Provoking stimuli		
	programmed tissue remodeling	metabolic stresses
	maintenance of cell pool size	absence of nutrients
	genomic damage	changes in pH, temperature
	metabolic derangement	hypoxia, anoxia
	hypoxia	

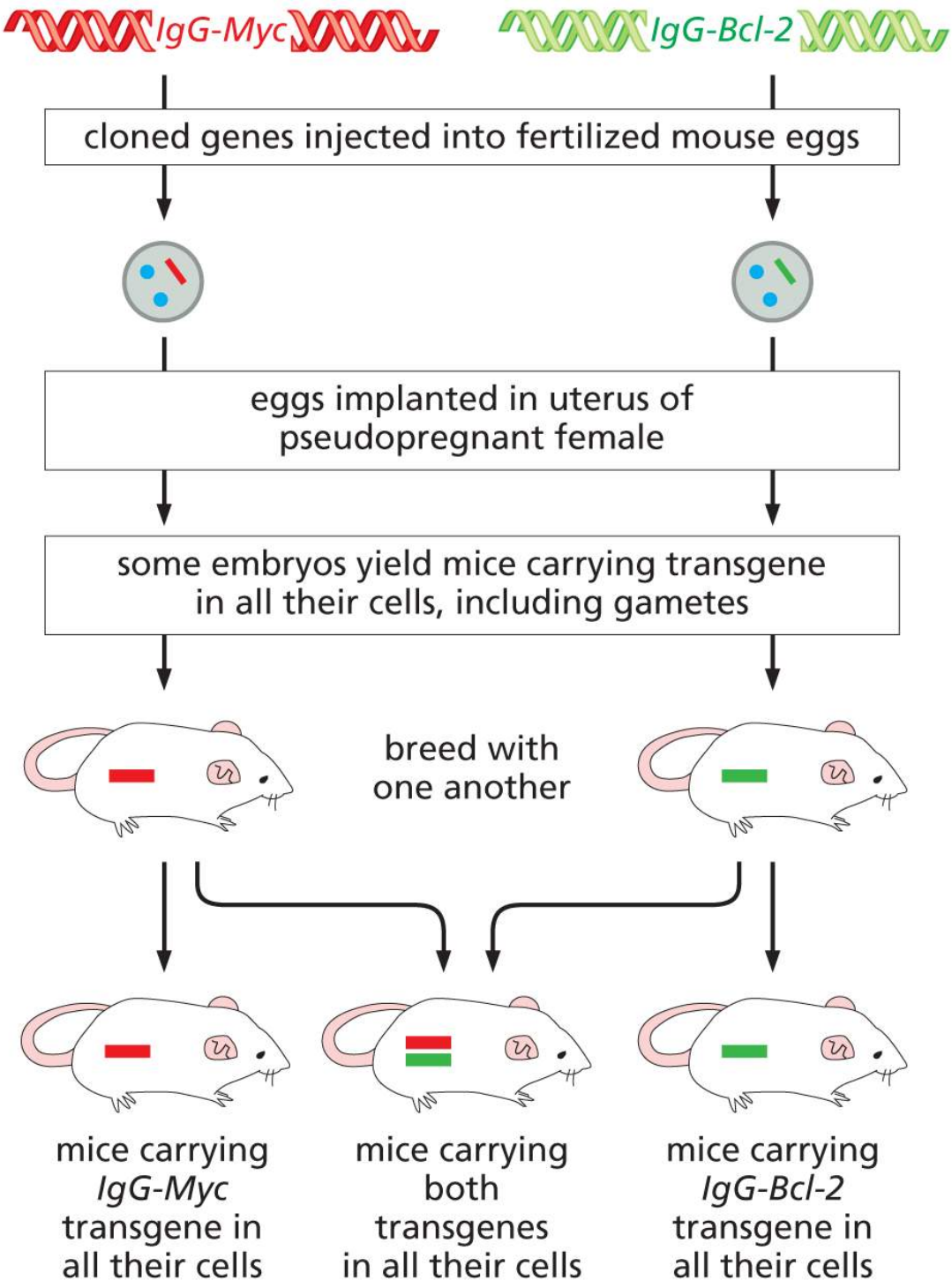
	Apoptosis	**Necrosis**
	imbalances in signaling pathways	
Morphological changes		
Affected cells	individual cells	groups of cells
Cell volume	decreased	increased
Chromatin	condensed	fragmented
Lysosomes	unaffected	abnormal
Mitochondria	morphologically normal initially	morphologically aberrant
Inflammatory response	none	marked
Cell fate	apoptotic bodies consumed by neighboring cells	lysis
Molecular changes		
Gene activity	required for program	not needed

	Apoptosis	**Necrosis**
Chromosomal DNA	cleaved at specific sites	random cleavage
Intracellular calcium	increased	unaffected
Ion pumps	continue to function	lost

Adapted from R.J.B. King, Cancer Biology, 2nd ed. Harlow, UK: Pearson Education, 2000.

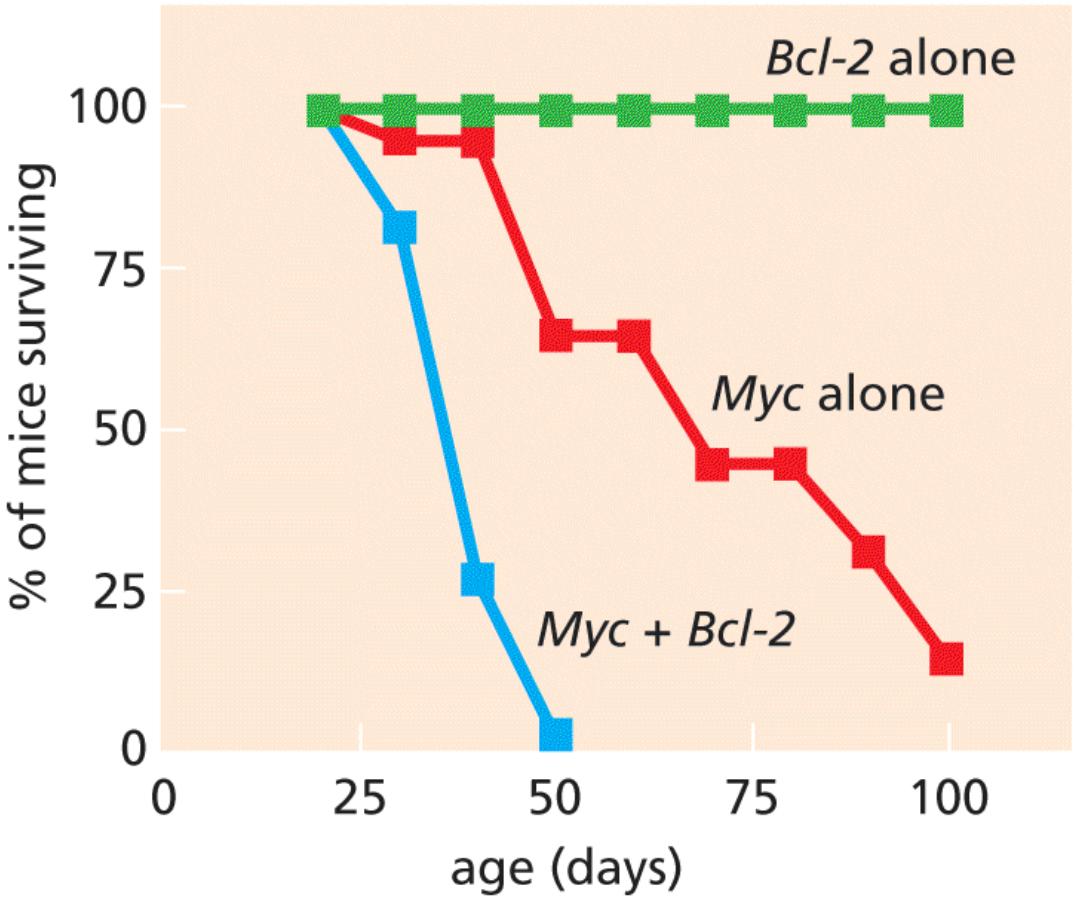
The first indication that cancer-associated proteins contribute to the regulation of apoptosis came from an exploration of the functioning of the *Bcl-2* (B-cell lymphoma gene-2) oncogene. The oncogenic version of the *Bcl-2* gene is formed through reciprocal chromosomal translocations occurring during the formation of human follicular B-cell lymphomas. These events—which result in the exchange of portions of the arms of human Chromosomes 14 and 18 observed in these tumors—place the reading frame of the *Bcl-2* gene under the control of a promoter that drives its high, constitutive expression.

When such a *Bcl-2* oncogene was inserted into the germ line of mice under conditions that ensured its expression in lymphocyte precursor cells, there was no observable effect on the animals' long-term survival (**Figure 9.20A and B**). In contrast, expression of an oncogenic *Myc* transgene in these cells led to lymphomas and to the death of half the mice within two months of birth. However, when both oncogenes were expressed simultaneously (by breeding *Bcl-2* transgenic mice with *Myc* transgenic mice), the offspring fared even worse: virtually all of the mice died less than two months after birth.



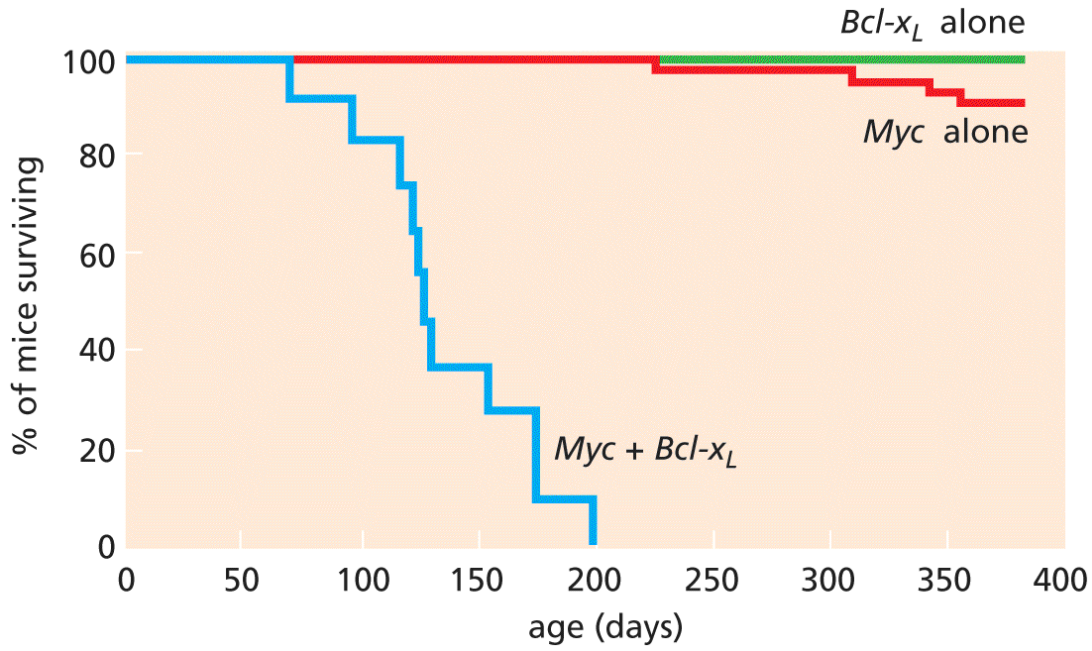
The process for conducting an experiment. First, cloned I g G-M y c genes are injected into fertilized mouse eggs. Next, the eggs are implanted in the uterus of a pseudopregnant female. Some embryos yield mice that carry the transgene in all their cells, including gametes. At the same time as all this is being done with I g G-M y c genes, the same process is carried out with I g G-

B c l-2 genes. The two types of mice with the transgene in all their cells are then cross-bred. Some of the offspring mice carry both of the transgenes in all their cells, some carry just the one, and some carry just the other.
(A)



A line graph showing percent survival as a function of age for the three types of offspring mice, starting with 25 day-old mice. 100 percent of the B c l-2 alone mice survive past age 100 days. Of the M y c alone mice, less than 50 percent survive to age 75 days and less than 15 percent survive to age 100 days. Of the mice with both genes, none survive past age 50 days.

(B)



A line graph showing percent survival as a function of age for the three types of mice, starting with newborn mice. 100 percent of B c l-x L alone mice survive a full year. Of M y c alone mice, 100 percent survive 10 months and about 90 percent survive a full year. Of the mice with both genes, none survive past age 200 days.

(C)

Figure 9.20 Synergy of *Bcl-2*-like genes with *Myc* (A) Clones of the *Myc* and the *Bcl-2* genes were engineered to be expressed under the control of an antibody gene transcriptional promoter (*IgG*). This promoter ensures that both genes will be expressed specifically in cells of the B lymphocyte lineage. The engineered clones are then injected into eggs and, with a certain frequency, the DNA becomes integrated via nonhomologous recombination into a chromosomal site. Southern blotting was subsequently used to verify the presence of the integrated sequences in the cells of the resulting mice and in their progeny. Such a heritable inserted gene is termed a *transgene*. (B) Mice bearing the *IgG–Bcl-2* transgene experienced no increased mortality (*green squares*). In contrast, the *IgG-Myc* transgene led to a greatly increased mortality from lymphomas, with almost all of the mice dying from this disease by 100 days of age (*red squares*). However, when both *Bcl-2* and *Myc* transgenes are present, lymphomagenesis was greatly accelerated and virtually all mice succumbed to lymphomas by 50 days of age (*blue squares*). (C) An even more dramatic outcome was observed when two strains of transgenic mice were developed that expressed the *Myc* or the *Bcl-x_L* oncogenes specifically in the plasma cell (antibody-secreting) lymphocytes of the

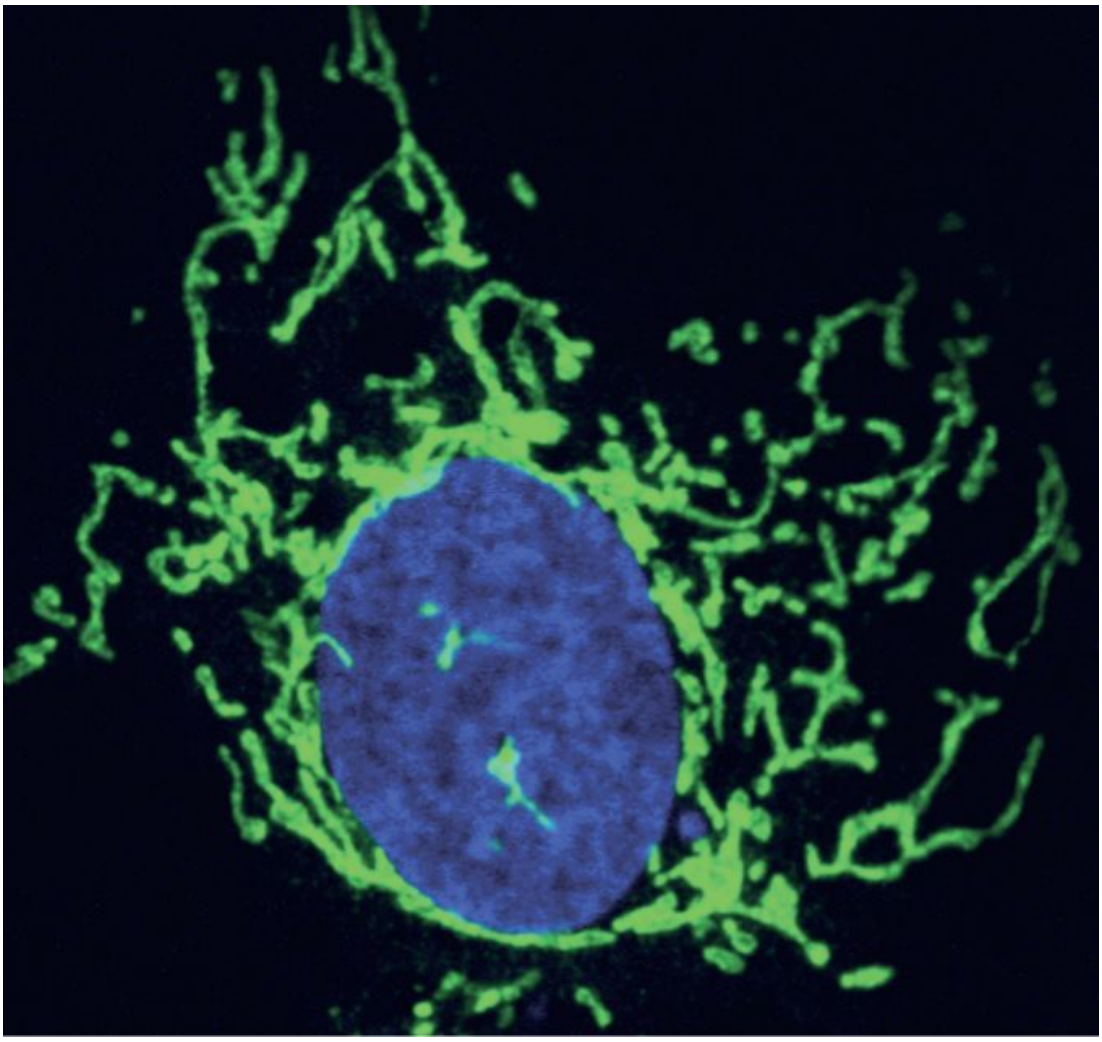
immune system. (*Bcl-x_L* is a cousin of *Bcl-2* and functions in a very similar fashion.) Normal mice and transgenic mice carrying only the *Bcl-x_L* transgene all survived for more than a year without any tumor development (*green line*); similarly, mice expressing a *Myc* transgene were largely healthy until about 10 months of age, when a small number of them developed plasma cell tumors. However, when the two strains of mice were bred, the double-transgenic progeny developed plasma cell tumors rapidly, beginning at about 75 days of age; all died from these tumors by 200 days of age. (B, adapted from A. Strasser et al., *Nature* 348:331–333, 1990. C, from W.C. Cheung et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 113:1763–1773, 2004. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation.)

The inability of *Bcl-2*, on its own, to trigger tumor formation argued against its acting as a typical oncogene, such as *Myc*, which emits potent growth-promoting signals. Careful study of the lymphocytes in mice carrying only the *Bcl-2* transgene indicated that the effects of this gene on cells were actually quite different from those of *Myc* or *Ras*: *Bcl-2 prolonged the lives* of lymphocytes that were otherwise destined to die rapidly. Indeed, when B lymphoid cells from these transgenic mice were cultured *in vitro*, they showed a remarkable extension of life span. *In vivo*, the lymphocytes in which *Bcl-2* was being expressed accumulated in amounts several-fold above normal; however, these cells were not actively proliferating, which explains the absence of hematopoietic tumors in mice carrying only the *Bcl-2* transgene.

The *Myc* oncogene, when present on its own, acted as a potent mitogen, but its growth-stimulatory powers were attenuated by its apoptosis-inducing effects (see Section 9.9). However, when *Myc* and *Bcl-2* acted collaboratively, they created an aggressive malignancy of the B-lymphocyte lineage; *Myc* would drive rapid cell proliferation, and its accompanying death-inducing effects were neutralized by the life-prolonging actions of *Bcl-2*. Because these were early experiments, even more dramatic examples of synergy between *Myc* and *Bcl-2*-like oncogenes, such as that shown in Figure 9.20C, have been reported. These dynamics parallel the situation we discussed in Section 9.9, in which the death-inducing effects of *Myc* were blunted by inactivation of the *p53* gene.

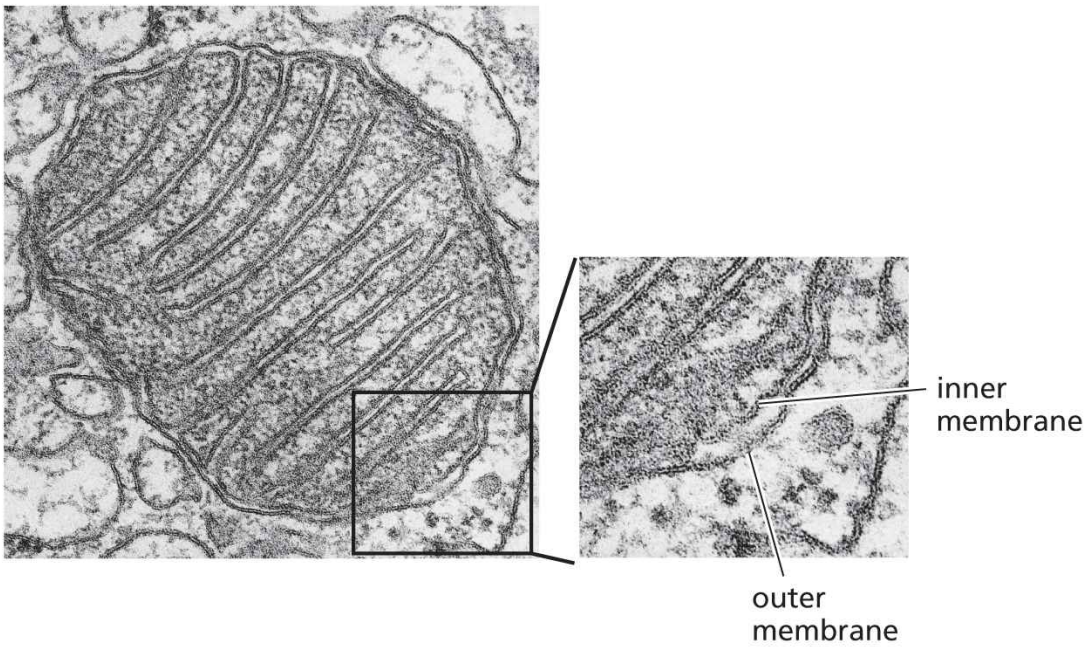
Once the details of the apoptotic program were clearly understood, the role of Bcl-2 in cancer pathogenesis became apparent. This oncoprotein operates as an anti-apoptotic agent rather than as a mitogen. Hence, Bcl-2 acts in a fashion precisely opposite to that of p53. Whereas p53 promotes apoptosis, Bcl-2 blocks it. Stated in genetic terms, activation of the *Bcl-2* oncogene and inactivation of the *p53* tumor suppressor gene confer similar (but not identical) benefits on cancer cells, in that both reduce the likelihood of inducing the apoptotic program.

Careful biochemical and cell-biological sleuthing eventually revealed the surprising site of Bcl-2 action: the outer membrane of the mitochondrion (**Figure 9.21**). At first, this discovery made little sense. Mitochondria were thought to be specialized for metabolic tasks, namely, generating energy in the form of ATP for the cell. As a by-product of this energy production, mitochondria were also known to make metabolites of glucose that are used in the biosynthesis of some of the cell's diverse biochemical species.



A fluorescence microscopy image in which a dark blue nucleus is surrounded by bright green structures that look like short, thick filaments.

(A)



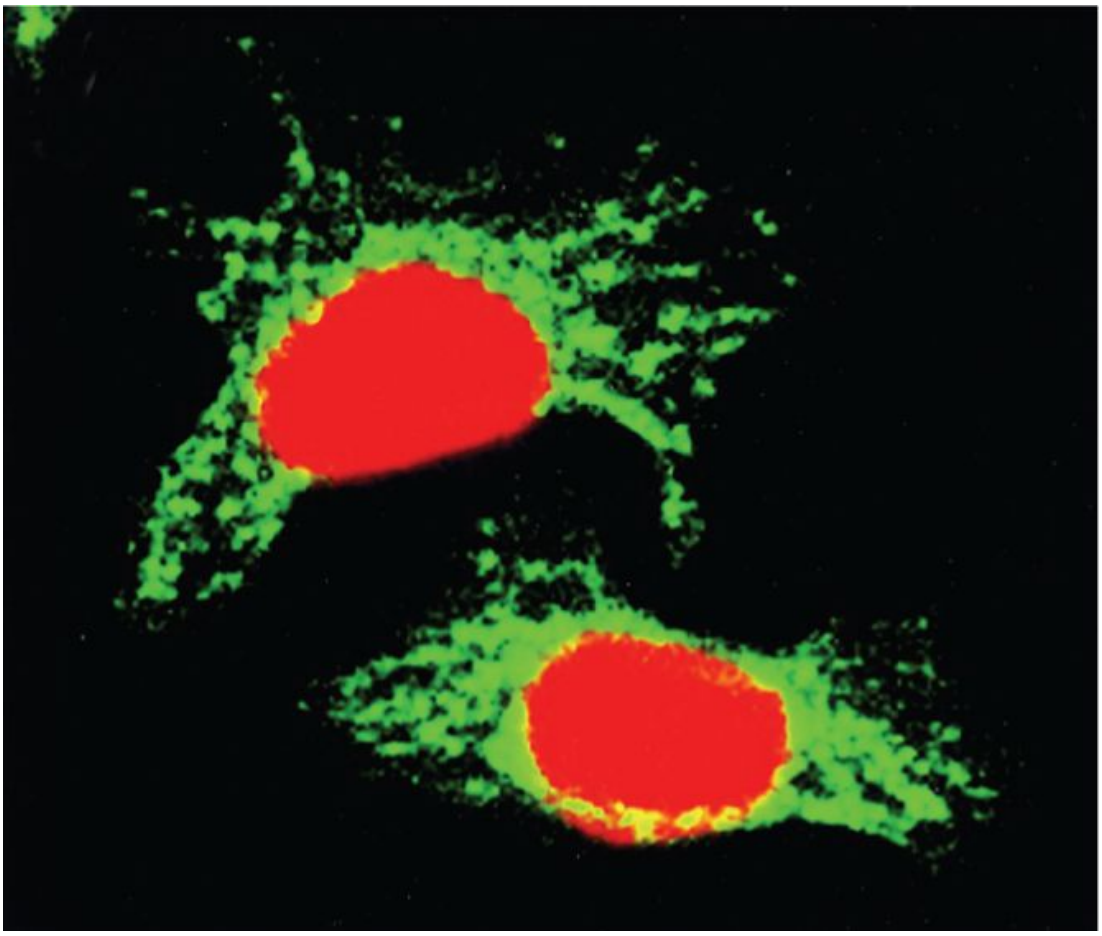
An electron micrograph of a mitochondrion. A magnified detail labels the inner membrane and the outer membrane. The inner membrane has many folds.

(B)

Figure 9.21 Mitochondria (A) Mitochondria (*green*), stained here in the cytoplasm of a human liver cell, were once regarded only as the sites of oxidative phosphorylation and biosynthesis of certain key metabolites. The discovery of their ability to regulate apoptosis through cytochrome *c* release forced a major rethinking of their role in the life of a cell. (B) Cytochrome *c* is stored in the space between the outer mitochondrial membrane and the inner membrane, where it normally plays a key role in electron transport. When this outer membrane is breached (a condition called mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization, or MOMP), cytochrome *c* escapes into the cytosol. (A, courtesy of Althea Bock-Hughes and Kay Macleod. B, courtesy of D.S. Friend.)

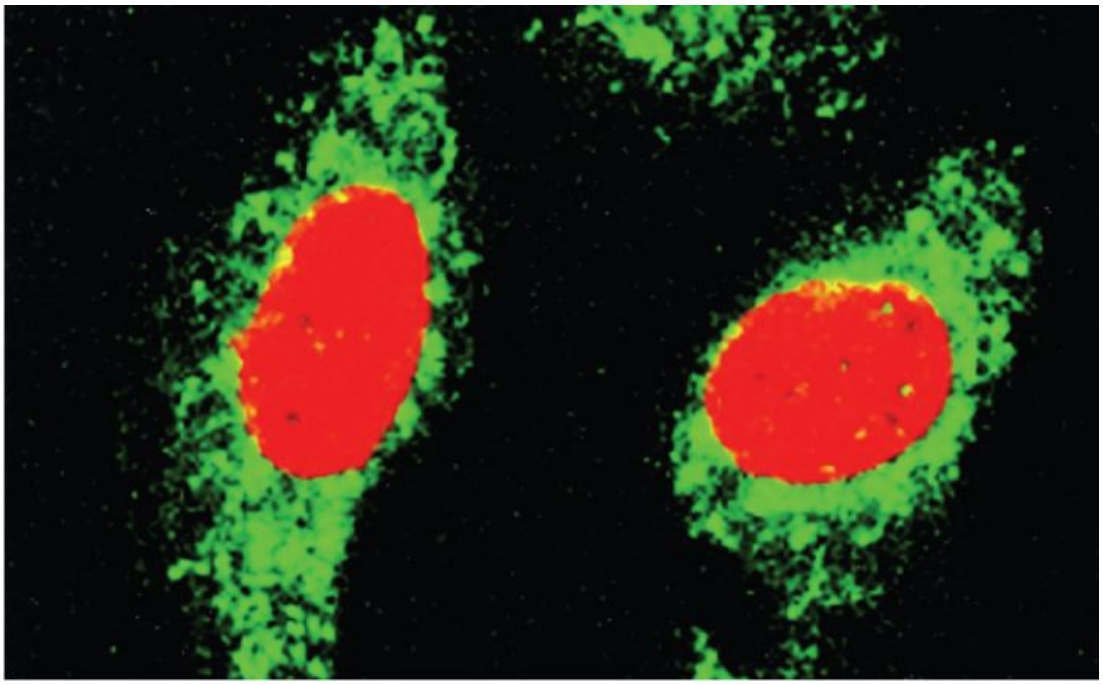
Soon, however, the role of mitochondria in the apoptotic program was clarified. Cytochrome *c*, the central actor in this process, normally resides in the space between the inner and outer mitochondrial membranes (see Figure 9.21B), where it functions to transfer electrons as part of oxidative phosphorylation, the main energy-generating reaction in our cells. However, when certain signals trigger the initiation of apoptosis, pores form in the mitochondrial outer membrane creating a condition known as MOMP (**m**itochondrial **o**uter **m**embrane **p**ermeabilization). Cytochrome *c* then spills

out of the organelle and into the surrounding cytosol (**Figure 9.22**). Once present in the cytosol, cytochrome *c* associates with other proteins to trigger a cascade of events that together yield apoptotic death, as discussed below. Smac/DIABLO, another mitochondrial protein that escapes during MOMP, also has a direct role in the induction of apoptosis. Yet other proteins are released from mitochondria during apoptosis, but the evidence supporting their role in regulating the process is less clear.



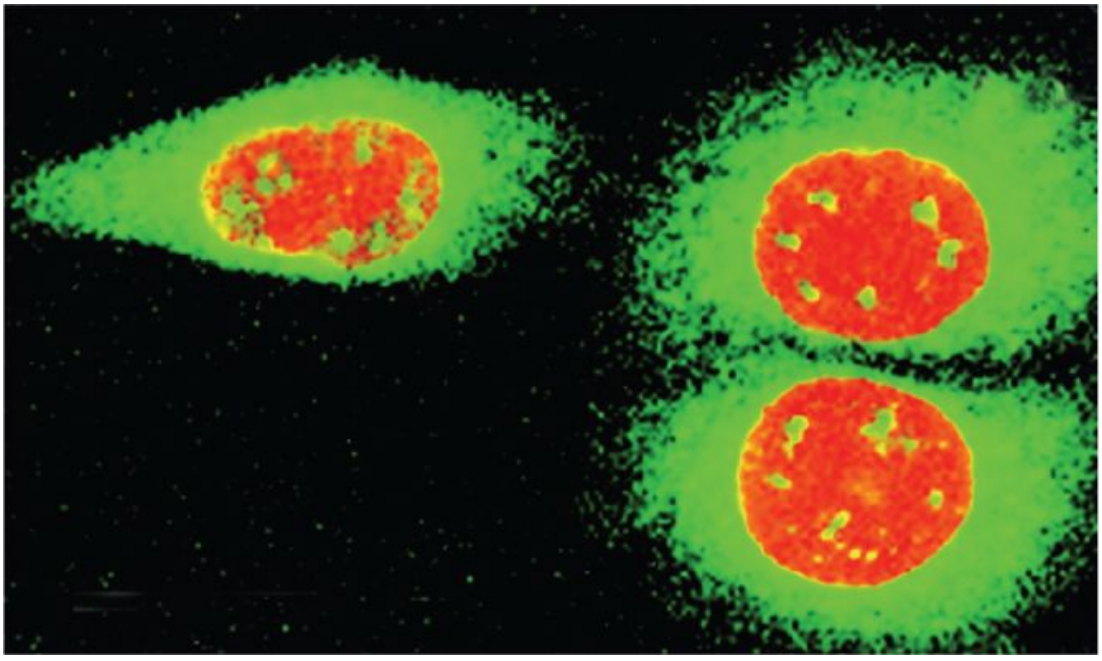
Two nuclei in red are surrounded by mitochondria looking like thick green fibers.

(A)



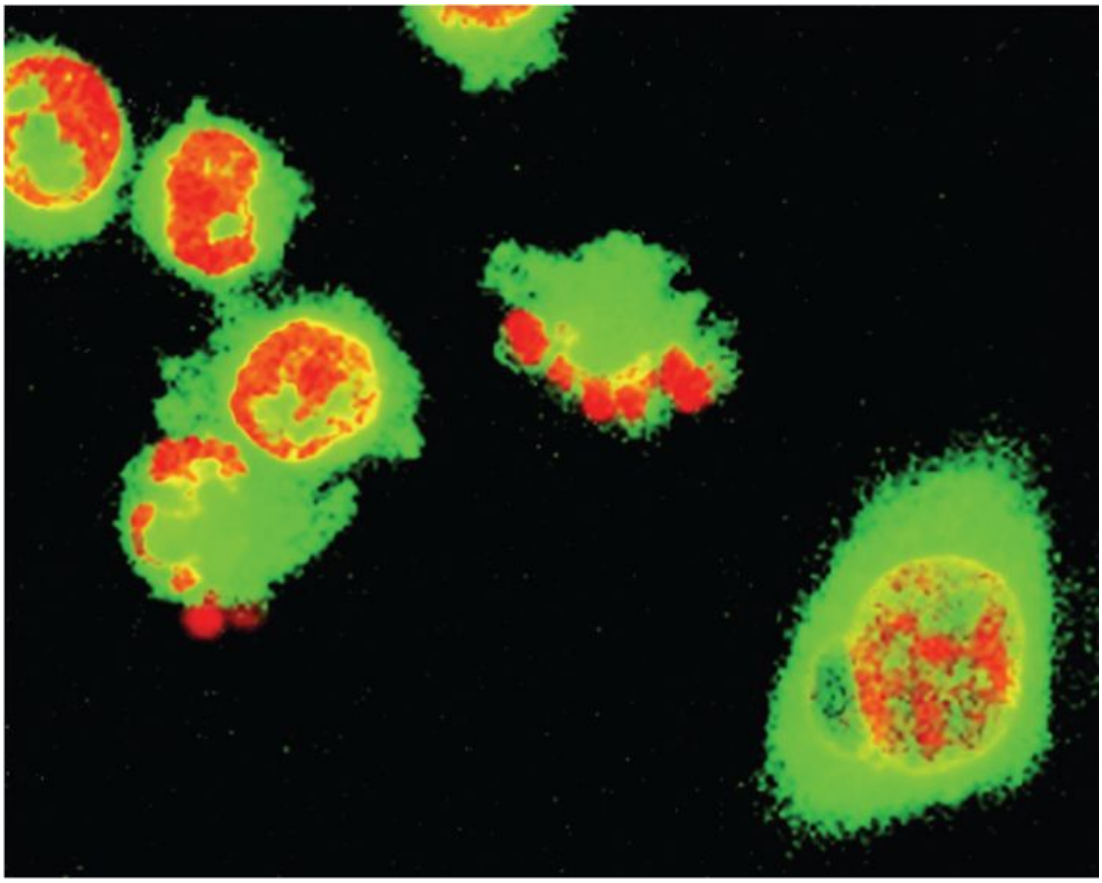
The green mitochondria have started to blur, and a few green specks have infiltrated the nuclei.

(B)



The nuclei are surrounded by blurry green halos, and green infiltration has started to make the nuclei look like tomato slices.

(C)



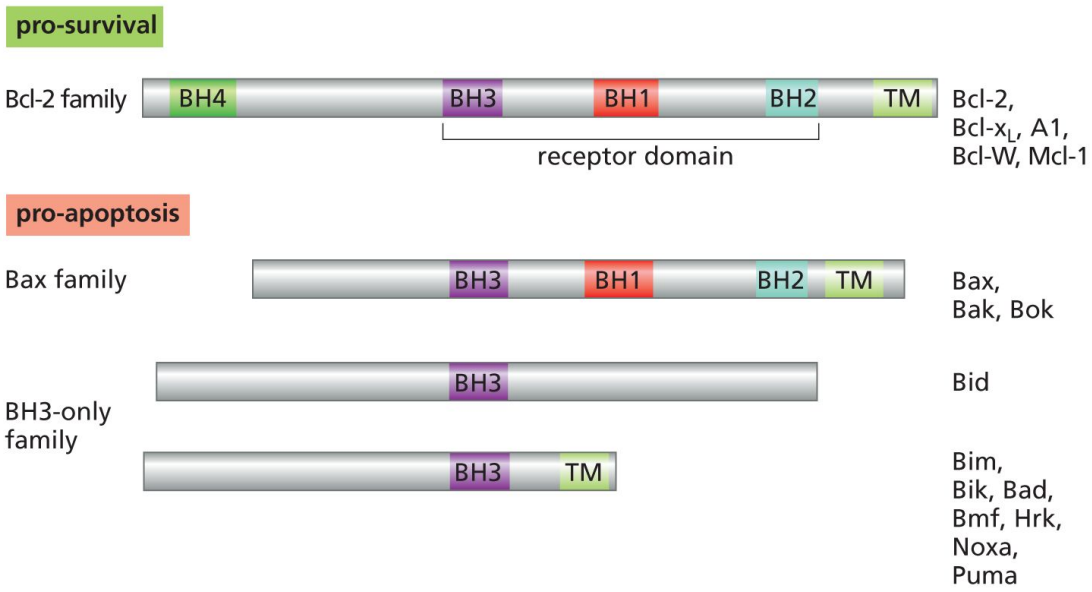
The nuclei have started to disintegrate and are blotchy with green stain.

(D)

Figure 9.22 Release of cytochrome *c* from mitochondria into the cytosol The presence of cytochrome *c* can be detected by staining with a specific fluorescence-labeled antibody (*green*), which contrasts with the dye-labeled nuclei (*red orange*). (A) Initially, the distribution of cytochrome *c* coincides with the distribution of mitochondria in the cytoplasm (see Figure 9.21A). As apoptosis proceeds, however (B, C, D), cytochrome *c* staining becomes increasingly uniform in the cytoplasm as this protein is released from the mitochondria into the cytosol. At the same time, some nuclei give evidence of the fragmentation that is associated with apoptosis (C, D). (From E. Bossy-Wetzel et al., *EMBO J.* 17:37–49, 1998. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

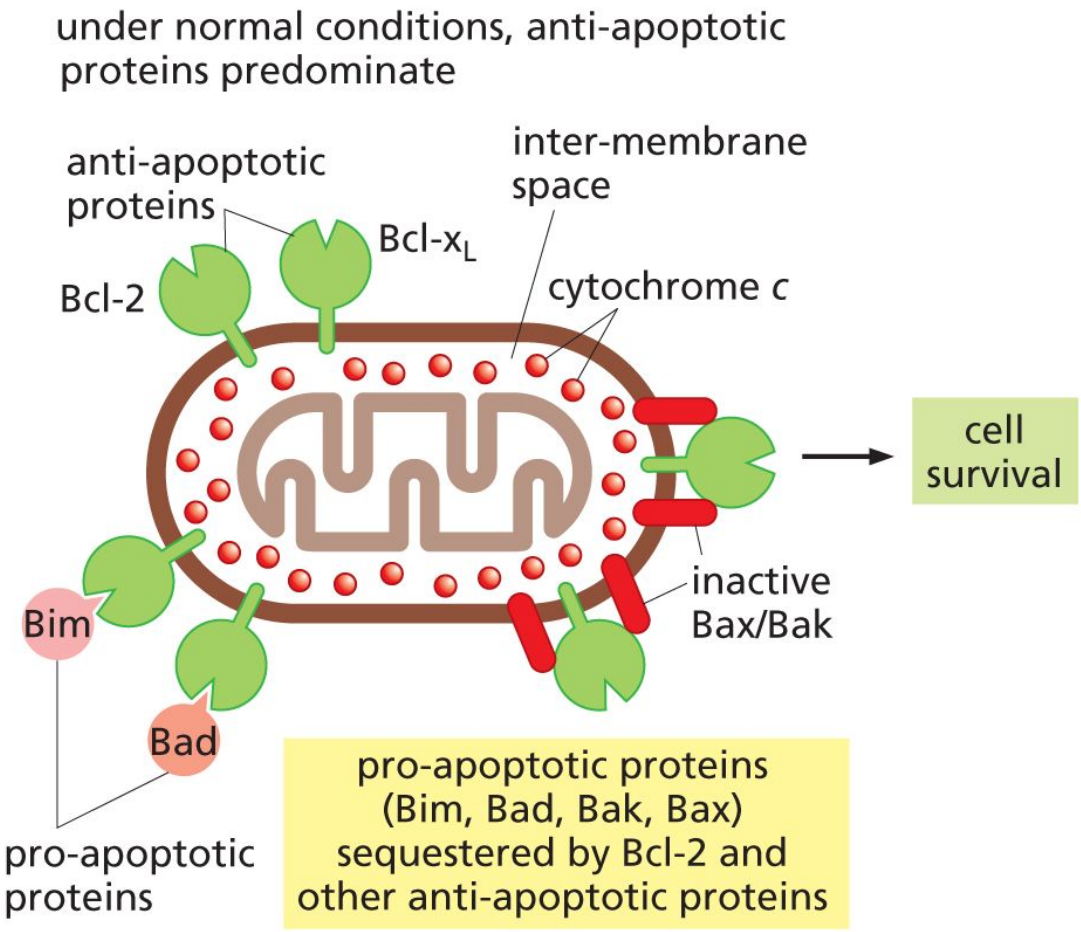
We now know that the Bcl-2 protein is a member of a large and complex family of proteins, which consists of at least 24 members expressed in different patterns

depending on cell and tissue type (**Figure 9.23A**). They have in common one or more protein domains, which are referred to as **B**cl-2 **h**omology (or BH) domains. By acting through a series of physical associations, the Bcl-2 family of proteins collectively controls the formation and function of the mitochondrial outer membrane pores and therefore MOMP. The pores themselves contain homo-oligomers of two of the pro-apoptotic members of the Bcl-2 family: Bax and Bak. Anti-apoptotic members of the family—such as Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, and Mcl1—form heterodimers with these pore-forming proteins, resulting in inhibition of MOMP (Figure 9.23B).



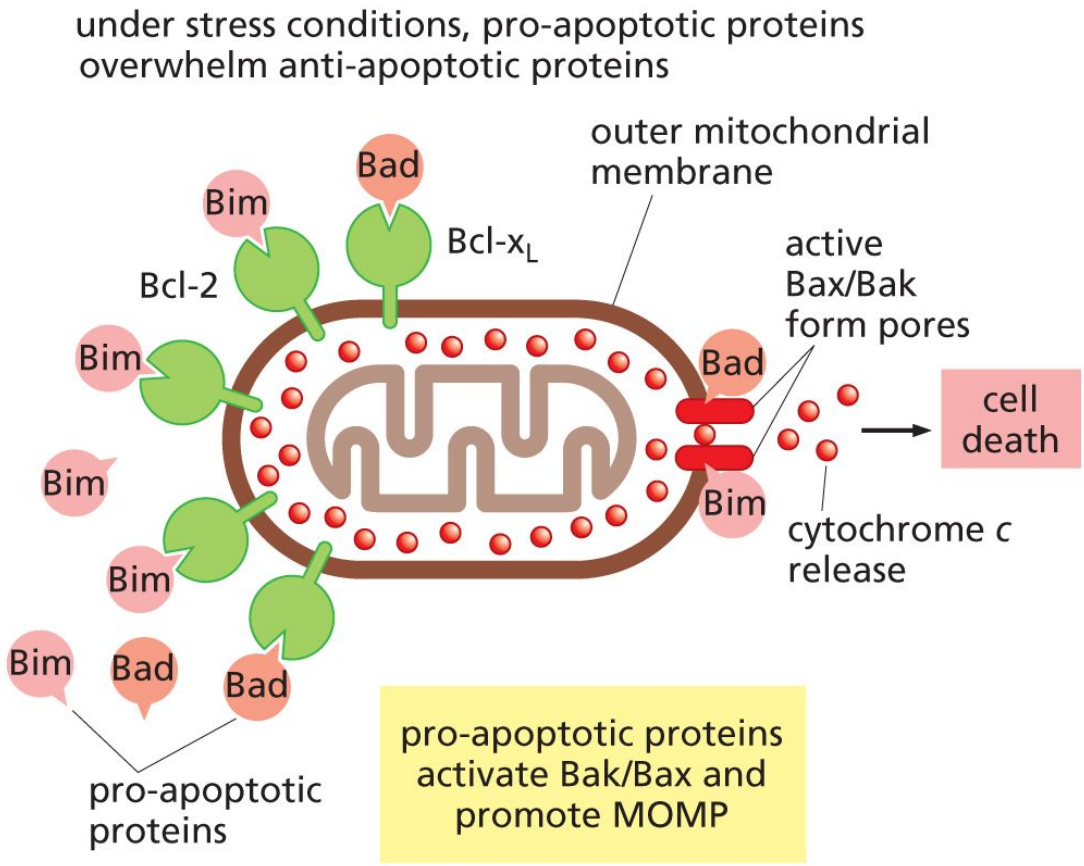
Schematic diagrams for the structures of pro-survival and pro-apoptosis proteins. The pro-survival category is represented by the B c l-2 family, which includes B c l-2, B c l-x L, A1, B c l-W, and M c l-1. There is a B H 4 domain near the left and a T M domain at the right end. In between there are, left to right, B H 3, B H 1, and B H 2 domains that together constitute the receptor domain. The pro-apoptosis category is represented by Bax family and the B H 3-only family. The Bax family includes Bax, and Bak, and Bok. These have B H 3, B H 1, and B H 2 domains in the middle and a T M domain near the right end. The B H 3-only family includes Bid, Bim, Bik, Bad, B m f, H r k, Noxa, and Puma. These have B H 3, B H 1, and B H 2 domains in the middle and a T M domain near the right end. These have a B H 3 domain in the middle and a T M domain near the right end, except for Bid, which only has the B H 3 domain.

(A)



A mitochondrion under normal conditions, where anti-apoptotic proteins predominate. The inter-membrane space between the inner and outer membranes contains many cytochrome sees. Many Bcl-2 and B c l-x L anti-apoptotic proteins are attached to the outside of the mitochondrion. A couple of these have pro-apoptotic proteins Bad or Bim attached to the free end. A couple more anti-apoptotic proteins have inactive Bax or Bak attached at the sides and attached to the mitochondrion, like tethers. Thus the pro-apoptotic proteins (Bim, Bad, Bak, and Bax) are sequestered by B c l-2 and other anti-apoptotic proteins.

(B)



A mitochondrion under stress conditions, where pro-apoptotic proteins overwhelm anti-apoptotic proteins. The Bcl-2 and B c l-x L anti-apoptotic proteins attached to the outside of the mitochondrion all have pro-apoptotic proteins Bad or Bim attached to the free end. Other Bads and Bims float free. One Bad and one Bim have combined with two Baxes or Baks to open a pore in the outer membrane, allowing cytochrome sees to escape into the cytoplasm, where they cause cell death. So the pro-apoptotic proteins activate Bak and Bax and promote mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization.

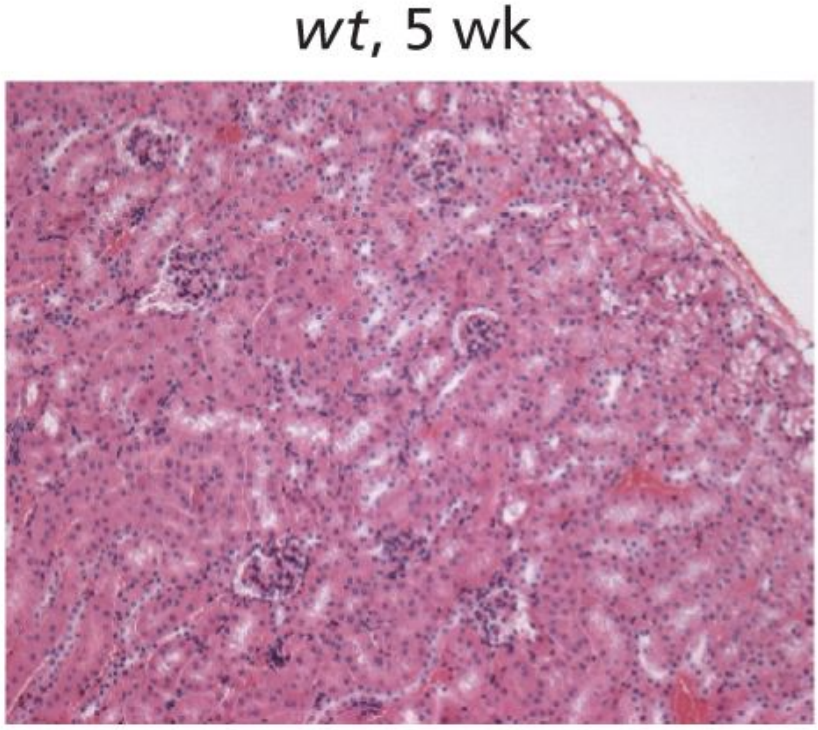
(C)

Figure 9.23 Bcl-2 and related proteins and the control of apoptosis. (A) Bcl-2 is a member of a large family of proteins involved both in preventing (*top*) and promoting (*bottom*) apoptosis. Each of these proteins possesses one or more Bcl-2-homology (BH) domains. All have a BH3 domain (*purple*), and some, like Bcl-2 itself, also have BH1 and BH2 domains (*red*, *aquamarine*). Several also have transmembrane (TM) domains (*light green*), used for membrane anchorage, and BH4 domains (*darker green*), which inhibit apoptosis, in part by blocking release of calcium ions from the endoplasmic reticulum. The pro-apoptotic proteins are subgrouped into the “Bax” family and have several domains that are homologous

to domains of Bcl-2; in contrast, the “BH3-only” proteins have only the BH3 domain in common with Bcl-2. Members of the Bax family normally reside in inactive form in the outer mitochondrial membrane or in the cytosol, whereas inactive members of the BH3-only family normally are limited to the cytosol; both classes of proteins are activated and/or translocated to the mitochondria by pro-apoptotic signals. (B) When anti-apoptotic proteins, such as Bcl-2, are present in sufficient concentrations, they can sequester pro-apoptotic BH3-only proteins and thereby inhibit apoptosis. (C) When pro-apoptotic BH3-only proteins are in relative abundance, they stimulate the homo-oligomerization of the pore-forming proteins Bax and Bak. This association promotes MOMP and thereby triggers apoptosis. (A, from S. Cory and J.M. Adams, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2:647–656, 2002. With permission from Nature. B and C, adapted from R. Singh, A. Letai, and K. Sarosiek, *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol*. 20: 175–193, 2019.)

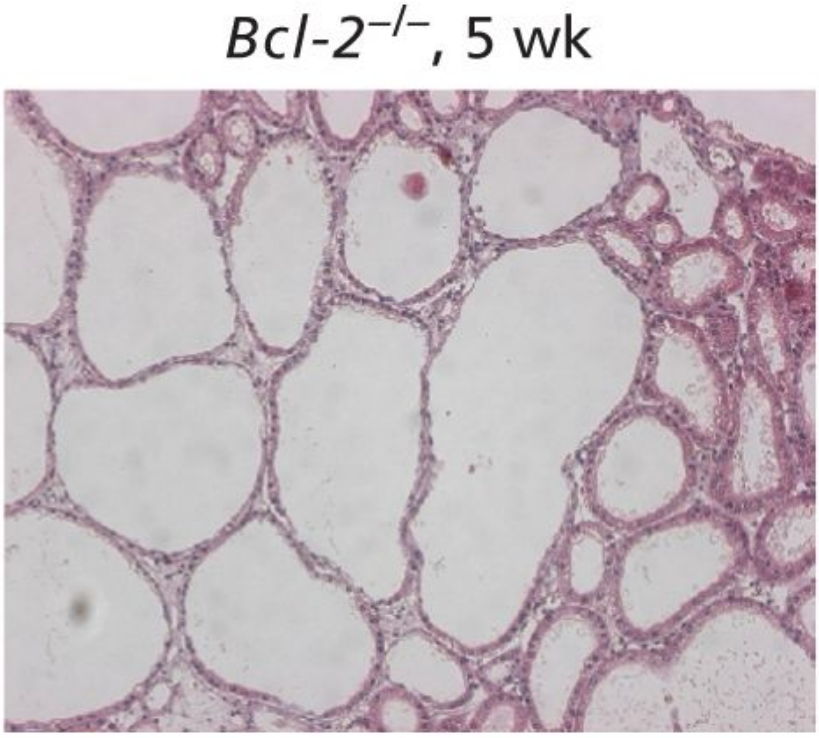
By contrast, the so-called “BH3-only” members of the family (so named because they carry just one of the four conserved BH domains present in Bcl-2; see Figure 9.23A) *promote* MOMP, and thus apoptosis. The BH-3 only proteins—which include Bid, Bim, Noxa, Bad, and PUMA—act either by binding to the pore-forming proteins directly and stimulating homo-oligomerization or by binding to and inhibiting anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members (Figure 9.23C). Interestingly, several pro- and anti-apoptotic members of the Bcl-2 family of proteins also associate with the endoplasmic reticulum, where they modulate release of calcium ions from this organelle, which also affects regulation of apoptosis.

The relative levels of the pro- and anti-apoptotic proteins ultimately determine whether MOMP will occur, cytochrome *c* will spill out, and apoptosis will ensue (see Figure 9.23B, C). In this fashion, MOMP determines the life and death of a cell. For example, mice that have been deprived of both germ-line copies of the anti-apoptotic *Bcl-2* gene suffer from kidney failure and immune collapse as a result of widespread apoptotic death of cells in these tissues; these lethal phenotypes can be avoided through the additional deletion from their germ line of just one copy of *Bim*, one of the pro-apoptotic cousins of *Bcl-2* (**Figure 9.24**). These results illustrate how, in tissues like these, the delicate balance between pro- and anti-apoptotic Bcl-2-like proteins governs the fate of individual cells.



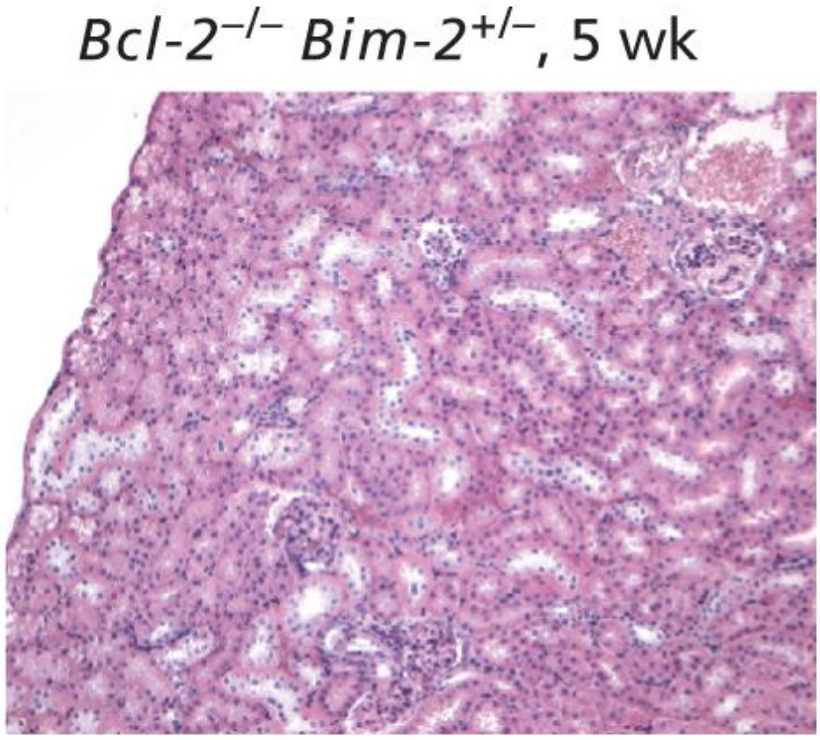
Wild-type mouse kidney tissue at 5 weeks of age. It is pink, smooth, and dense.

(A)



Kidney tissue from a B c l-2 minus minus mouse at 5 weeks. The tissue consists almost entirely of large white cysts.

(B)



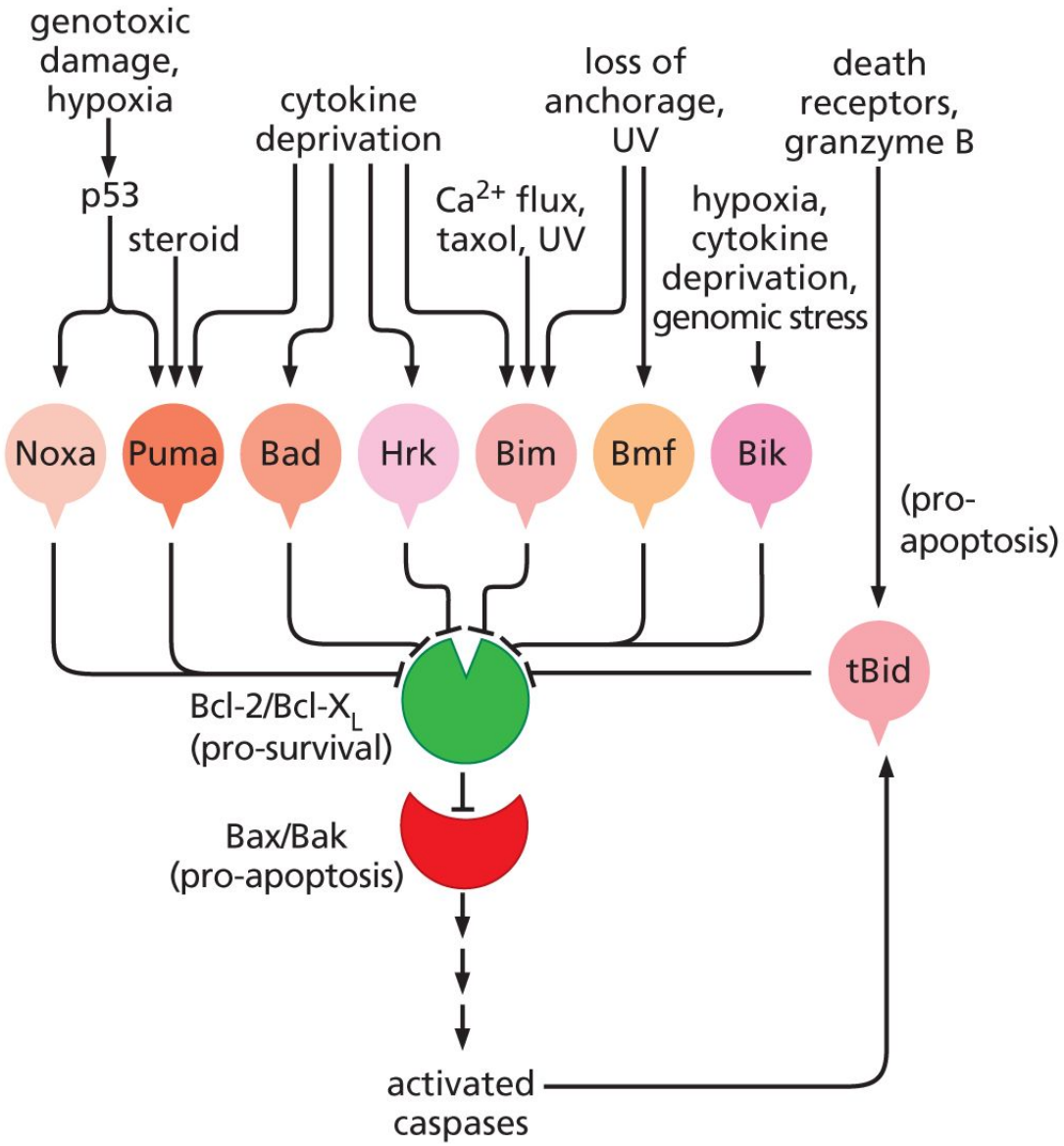
Kidney tissue from a B c l-2 minus minus, Bim-2 plus minus mouse at 5 weeks. The tissue is nearly as healthy and uniform looking as the tissue in Par A.

(C)

Figure 9.24 The delicate balance between pro- and anti-apoptotic proteins (A) The wild-type mouse kidney is a well-consolidated tissue at 5 weeks of age. (B) However, deletion of both germ-line copies of the anti-apoptotic *Bcl-2* gene (resulting in the *Bcl-2*$^{-/-}$ genotype) results in widespread apoptosis and polycystic kidney disease at this age. (C) These effects can be largely reversed if one copy of the pro-apoptotic *Bim* gene is also deleted from the germ line (yielding the *Bcl-2*$^{-/-}$*Bim*$^{+/-}$ genotype). (From P. Bouillet et al., *Dev. Cell* 1:645–654, 2001. With permission from Elsevier.)

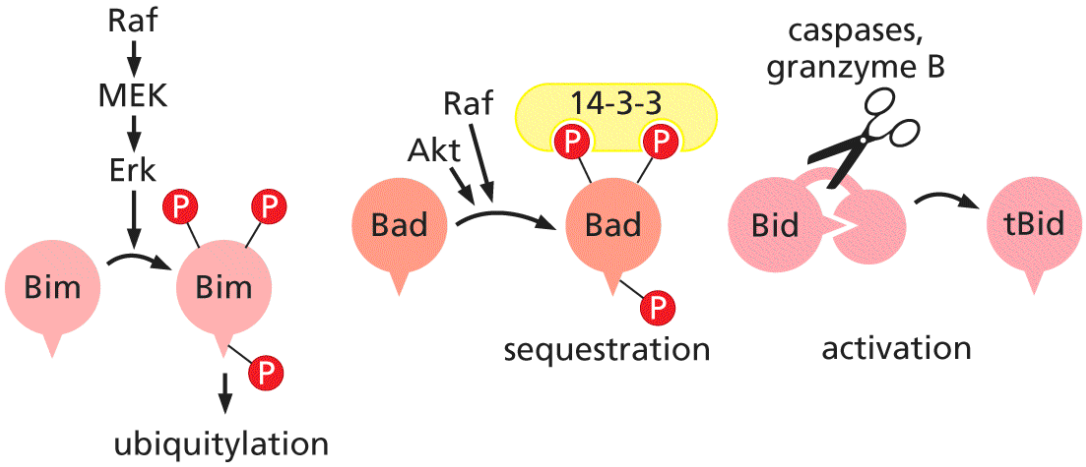
A large number of cell-physiological stimuli and signaling pathways converge on the cell death decision, and this complexity is reflected in the plethora of Bcl-2-related proteins that control this process. As an example, the form of apoptosis called anoikis, which occurs when epithelial cells undergo detachment from a substratum (also termed loss of anchorage), is dependent on the BH3-only protein Bim. By contrast,

p53 induces the expression of the BH3-only proteins PUMA and Noxa, whereas other stimuli act by regulating distinct members of the family (**Figure 9.25A**).



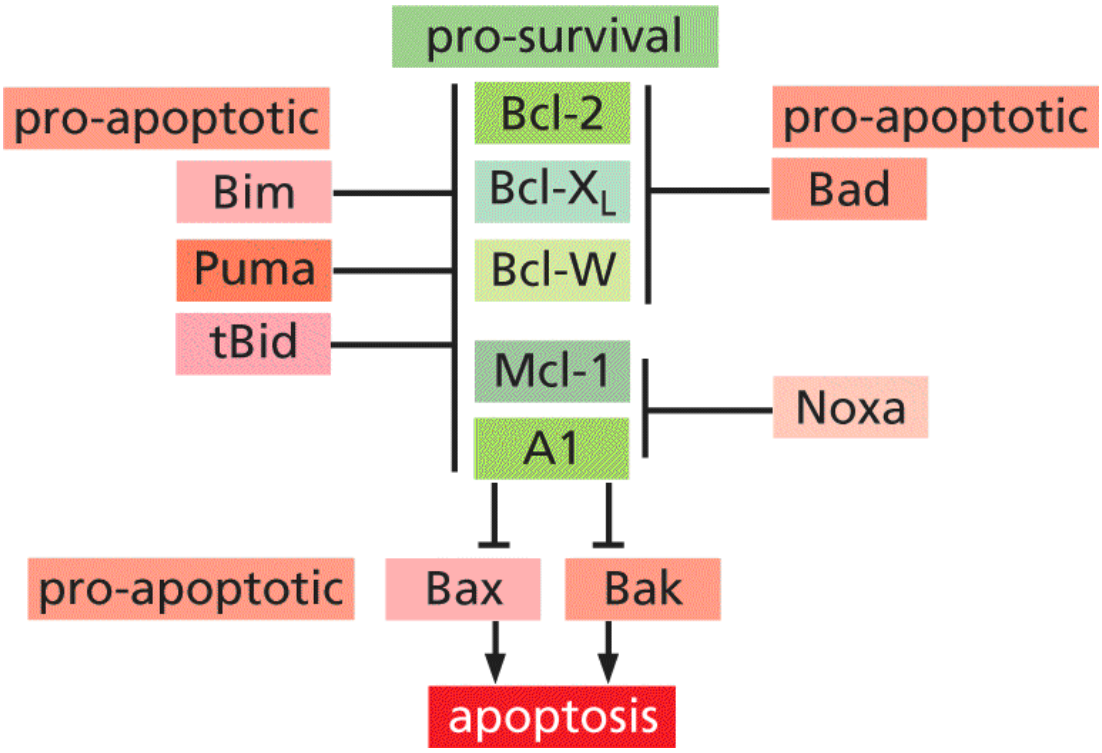
A diagram in which various cell-physiological stresses each activate certain pro-apoptotic proteins. The stresses are genotoxic damage, hypoxia, steroids, cytokine deprivation, calcium plus 2 flux, taxol, loss of anchorage, U V radiation, genomic stress, death receptors, and granzyme B. The pro-apoptotic proteins are Noxa, Puma, Bad, H r k, Bim, B m f, Bik, and t Bid. Each stress activates between 1 and 4 of the proteins. Each of the proteins, in turn, inhibits the pro-survival proteins B c l-2 and B c l-X L and thereby prevents them from inhibiting the pro-apoptosis proteins Bax and Bak. An activation cascade

from Bax and Bak leads to activated caspases, which in a feedback loop activate t Bid, one of the pro-apoptotic proteins.
(A)



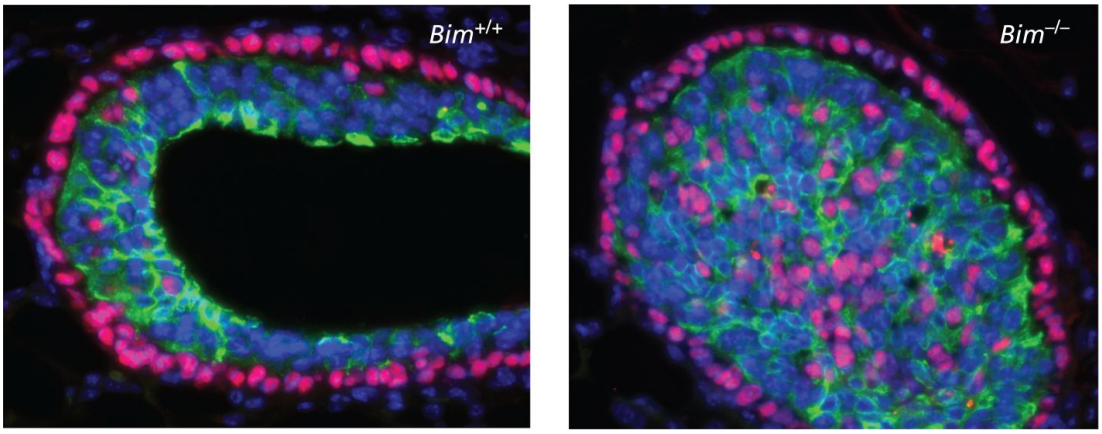
Some of the ways in which the activities of pro-apoptotic proteins are controlled. Bim is phosphorylated when R a f activates M E K, which then activates E r k. Ubiquilation Bim follows. Bad is phosphorylated by R a f and A k t, and then sequestered by 14-3-3 binding to two of the phosphate groups. t Bid is produced when a caspase or granzyme B removes the inhibitory domain from Bid.

(B)



A schematic in which pro-apoptotic proteins Bim, Puma, t Bid, Bad and Noxa inhibit pro-survival proteins B c l 2, B c l X L, B c l W, M c l 1, and A 1, preventing them from inhibiting pro-apoptotic proteins Bax and Bak. The end result is apoptosis.

(C)



Two fluorescence microscopy images. In the left one, cells in a wild-type Bim plus plus mouse organize into a C-shaped structure, with red cells around the outer edge and blue and green cells elsewhere. In the right image, cells in a

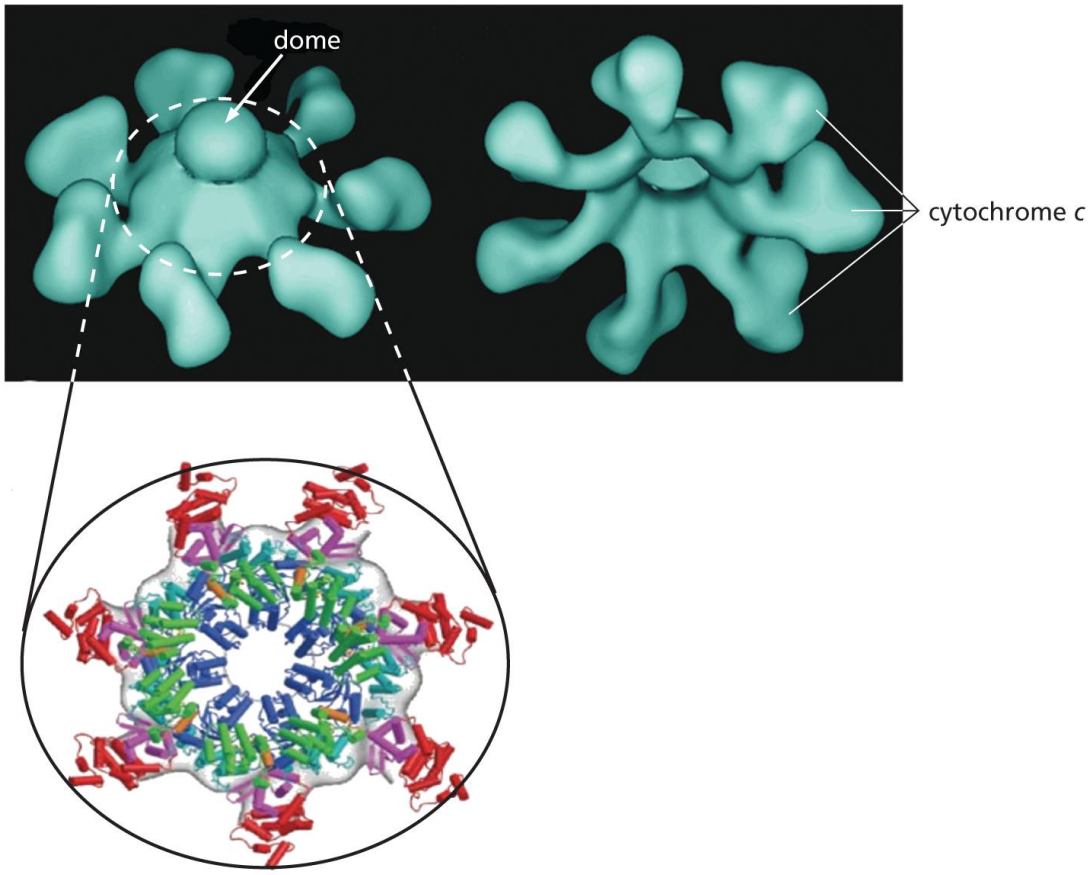
Bim minus minus mouse form an egg-shaped structure, with red cells around the outer edge but also scattered around the interior.
(D)

Figure 9.25 Pro-apoptotic signals acting through various Bcl-2–related proteins (A) The rationale for the multiplicity of Bcl-2–like proteins is that various cell-physiological stresses operate through different pro-apoptotic proteins to antagonize anti-apoptotic proteins such as Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L (*green*). The latter are thereby prevented from neutralizing Bax and Bak (*red*), the dominant pro-apoptotic proteins that function to release cytochrome *c* from the mitochondrial membrane. The caspases that are activated downstream in the apoptotic pathway (see Figure 9.27) can also activate the pro-apoptotic function of Bid by proteolysis (cleaving it to truncated Bid, or tBid). This action amplifies the apoptotic response, as indicated in panel B. (B) The activities of pro-apoptotic BH3-only proteins are controlled in multiple ways. Bim is regulated at the transcriptional level (*not shown*) and post-translationally via phosphorylation by Erk, which results in its ubiquitylation and degradation. Phosphorylation of Bad by anti-apoptotic kinases, such as Akt/PKB and Raf, leads to its sequestration by the 14-3-3 protein and loss of its ability to bind the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L proteins. The pro-apoptotic Bid protein is liberated from its inhibitory domain by the actions of proteases, such as caspases that are activated downstream in the apoptotic cascade and the granzymes released by cytotoxic cells, the latter described in Chapter 15. (C) Each member of the Bcl-2 family of proteins has its own set of opposing partners. At the center of this network lie the anti-apoptotic (i.e. pro-survival) proteins Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, Bcl-W, Mcl-1, and A1 (*green rectangles*). Each has its own set of antagonistic, pro-apoptotic partners (*pink rectangles*). For example, Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, and Bcl-W are opposed by the pro-apoptotic Bad protein. At the bottom of this network lie the pro-apoptotic Bax and Bak proteins; if unopposed, they will promote apoptosis by opening the mitochondrial outer membrane channel. Not all members of the Bcl-2 family of proteins (see Figure 9.23A) are indicated here. (D) In wild-type ($Bim^{+/+}$) mice, a cavity is excavated in the solid tip (terminal end bud) of an elongating mammary duct in order to form the lumen of the future duct (*left*). However, in $Bim^{-/-}$ mice, mammary epithelial cells persist, preventing normal lumen formation (*right*) and suggesting that lumen formation normally depends on anoikis of cells that failed to establish anchorage to the basement membrane that lies immediately outside of the myoepithelial cells (*not visualized*). p63, marker of basal myoepithelial cells (*red*); mucin1, marker of secretory luminal cells (*green*); cell nuclei (*blue*). (A, courtesy of J. Adams; adapted from S. Cory et al., *Oncogene* 22:8590–8607, 2003. With permission from Nature. B, adapted from S. Cory and J.M. Adams, *Nat. Rev.*

Cancer 2:647–656, 2002. C, courtesy of D.C.S. Huang. D, from A.A. Mailleux et al., *Dev. Cell* 12:221–234, 2007. With permission from Elsevier.)

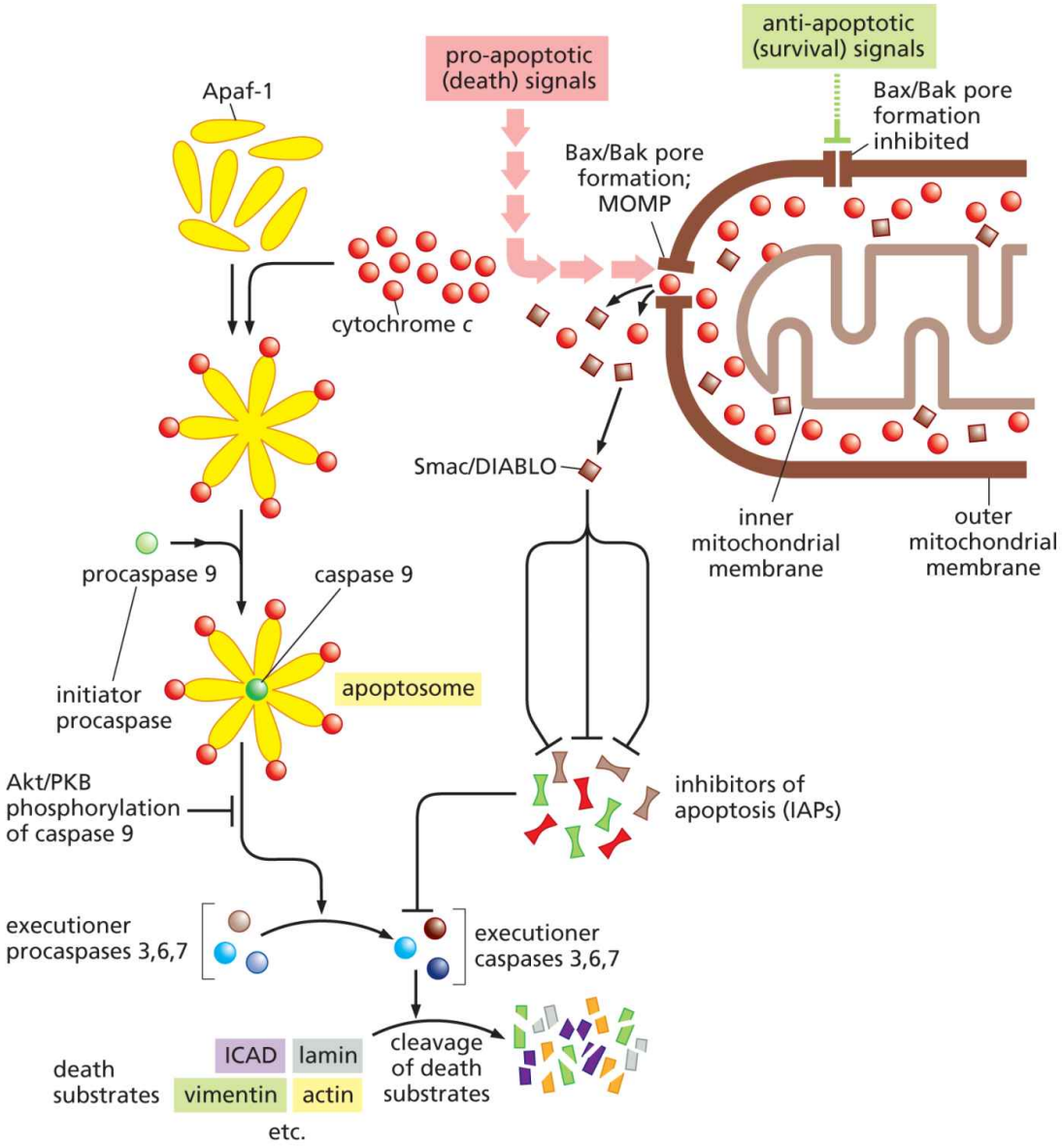
In addition, the various pro- and anti-apoptotic members of the Bcl-2 family of proteins each has its own opposing partner or partners (Figure 9.25C). Each of these proteins also functions to trigger apoptosis in specific cell types; for example, Figure 9.25D shows the key role that Bim-dependent anoikis plays in eliminating cells in the developing mammary gland, allowing lumina to form in the ducts. Finally, these Bcl-2–related proteins can be regulated in different, complex ways: the actions of the BH3-only proteins of the Bcl-2 family (see Figure 9.23A), for example, can be controlled by modulating their expression, their intracellular localization, proteolytic cleavage, or phosphorylation (Figure 9.25B).

Once individual cytochrome *c* molecules have leaked out of mitochondria into the cytoplasm, they associate with seven copies of the Apaf-1 protein with which they form the structure called the apoptosome (**Figure 9.26** and **Figure 9.27**). The resulting apoptosome complexes then proceed to activate a normally latent cytoplasmic protease termed procaspase 9, converting it into active caspase 9, which has catalytic activity that is at least one thousand-fold higher than the procaspase (see Figure 9.27). Caspase 9 is just one member of a family of **c**ysteine **asp**artyl–specific prote**ases**; the human genome carries 12 genes that encode members of this protease family.



Two views of the wheel of death. An apoptosome looks like a flower with seven lumpy petals and a bulbous dome at the point where the flower would connect to the stem. At the tip of each petal is a cytochrome c. A ribbon diagram is also shown.

Figure 9.26 The wheel of death The apoptosome—essentially a wheel of death—is assembled in the cytosol when cytochrome *c* molecules are released from mitochondria and associate with Apaf-1 monomers. Cytochrome c molecules and Apaf-1 monomers assemble to form the assembly of a seven-spoked wheel, in which Apaf-1 monomers form the spokes and cytochrome *c* molecules form the tips of the spokes (*above*), visualized here by electron cryomicroscopy. Procaspase 9 is attracted to the hub of the wheel ("dome"), where it is converted into active caspase 9. The more detailed structure of the inner circle of the apoptosome (*below*), formed from seven Apaf-1 subunits, is illustrated in the molecular model determined by X-ray crystallography. The *blue* helices in the center interact with procaspase 9 to convert it into caspase 9, which then triggers the apoptotic cascade. (Top, from D. Acehan et al., *Mol. Cell* 9:423–432, 2002. With permission from Elsevier. Bottom, from S.J. Riedl et al., *Nature* 434:926–933, 2005. With permission from Nature.)



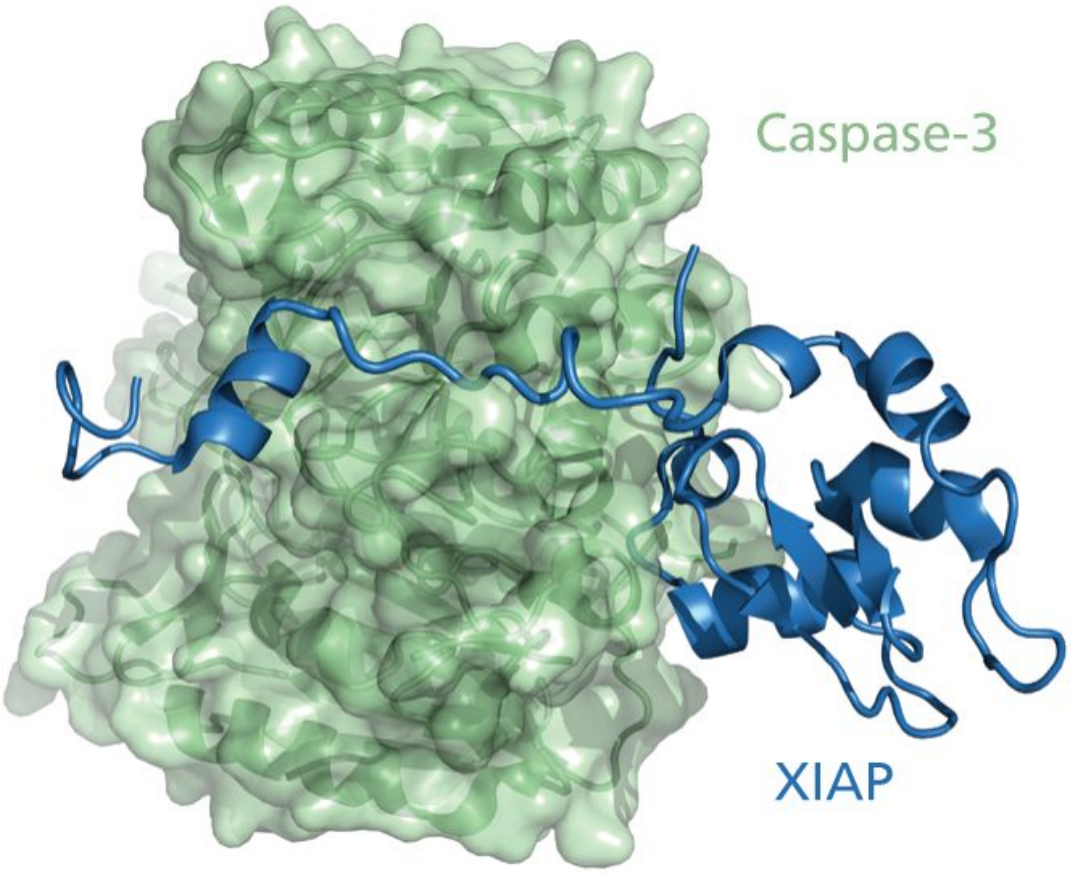
The apoptotic caspase cascade. So long as anti-apoptotic (survival) signals inhibit Bax Bak pore formation in the outer membrane of a mitochondrion, cytochrome c molecules and S m a c DIABLO molecules remain contained between the inner and outer membranes. But when pro-apoptotic (death) signals promote pore formation–that is, mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization–cytochrome c and S m a c DIABLO molecules leak out into the cytoplasm. Seven cytochrome sees join with seven Apaf ones to form the spokes of an apoptosome. An initiator procaspase, procaspase 9, attaches to the center of the structure as caspase 9 to complete the apoptosome. Unless inhibited by A k t P K B phosphorylation of caspase 9, the apoptosome facilitates the transformation of executioner procaspases 3, 6, and 7 into executioner caspases 3, 6, and 7. With S m a c DIABLO blocking inhibitors of apoptosis that would interfere with the action of

the executioner caspases, the executioner caspases engage in cleavage of death substrates such as I C A D, lamin, vimentin and actin.

Figure 9.27 The apoptotic caspase cascade Various anti-apoptotic signals promote MOMP (see Figure 9.23). Important mitochondrial molecules that may be released into the cytosol by MOMP are cytochrome *c* (*red circles*) and Smac/DIABLO (*brown squares*). Cytochrome *c* molecules proceed to aggregate with Apaf-1 to form the seven-spoked apoptosome (*left*; see Figure 9.26). Once assembled, the apoptosome attracts and converts procaspase 9 into active caspase 9 (*green circle*), which in turn cleaves and activates procaspases 3, 6, and 7 (*bottom left*), converting them into executioner caspases, which then cleave various "death substrates" whose products create the apoptotic cell phenotype. Normally, a number of inhibitors of apoptosis (IAPs; *lower right*) attach to and inactivate caspases. However, the Smac/DIABLO that is also released from mitochondria during the triggering of apoptosis antagonizes these IAPs, thereby protecting caspases from IAP inhibition and setting the stage for full activation of the apoptosis program. Acting in the opposite direction, as part of its anti-apoptotic actions, the Akt/PKB kinase can phosphorylate and thereby inactivate already-activated caspase 9 (*lower left*).

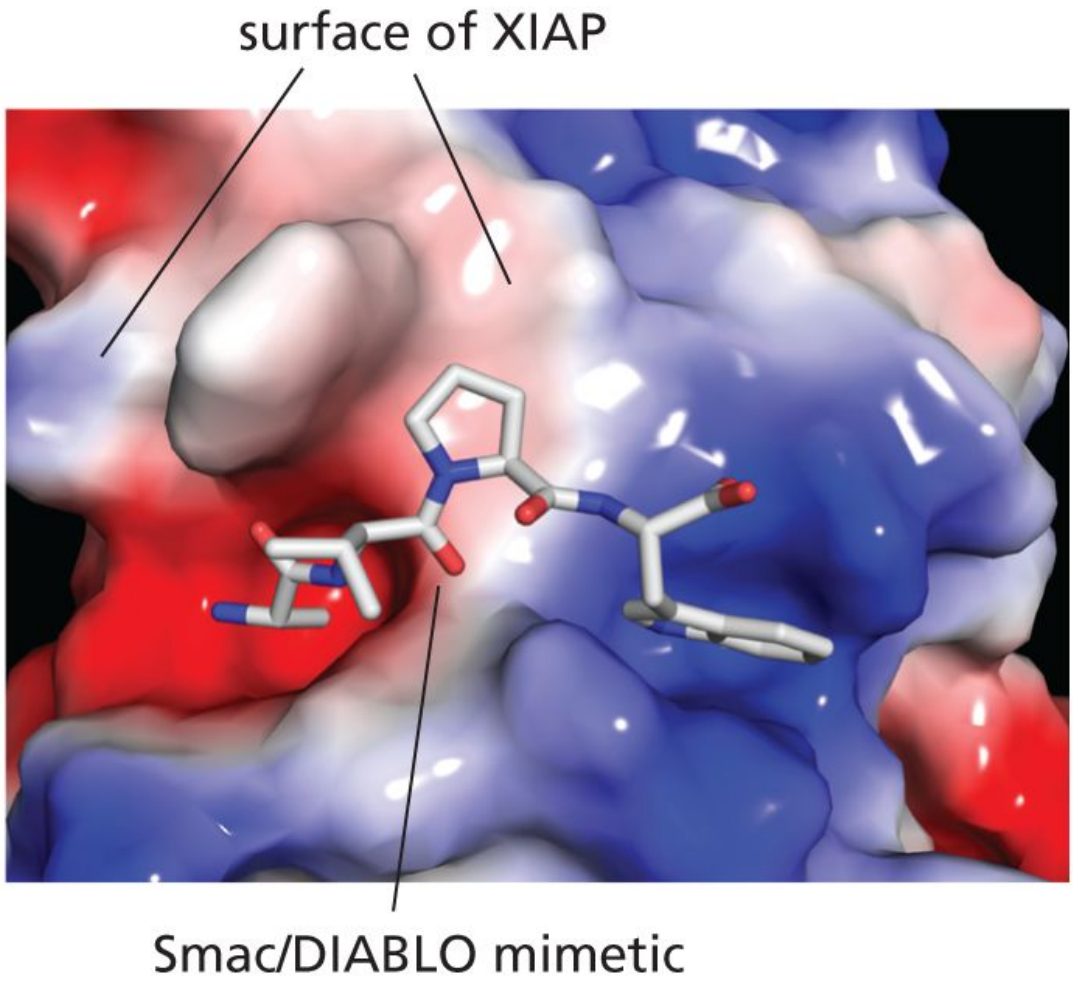
Having been converted into an active protease by the apoptosome, caspase 9 then cleaves procaspase 3, thereby activating yet another related protease; caspase 3 then proceeds to cleave and activate yet another procaspase, and so on down the line (see Figure 9.27). This sequence of cleavages constitutes a signaling cascade in which one protease activates the next one in the series by cleaving it. Such behavior is reminiscent of the organization of kinase cascades that we read about earlier (see Section 6.5), in which a group of Ser/Thr kinases activate one another in a linear sequence. Because each of these caspases acts catalytically, a relatively minor initiating signal at the top of the cascade can be amplified to yield a large number of activated caspases at the bottom. Interestingly, one of the functionally important proteins phosphorylated by the anti-apoptotic Akt/PKB kinase is caspase 9. As might be anticipated from the role that Akt/PKB has in inhibiting apoptosis, the phosphorylation of caspase 9 inhibits this protease.

At the same time as cytochrome *c* in the cytosol serves to activate the caspases, Smac/DIABLO—another protein that is released from mitochondria together with cytochrome *c*—inactivates a group of anti-apoptotic proteins termed IAPs (inhibitors of apoptosis proteins; see Figure 9.27). These IAPs normally block caspase action in two ways: first, they bind to caspases directly and thereby inhibit their proteolytic activity (**Figure 9.28**); in certain cases, they can also mark caspases for ubiquitylation and degradation. Once the restraining influences of IAPs have been minimized, caspases are free to initiate the proteolytic cleavages that result ultimately in apoptosis.



A space-filling surface model of caspase 3 combined with a ribbon diagram of X I A P.

(A)



An S m a c DIABLO mimetic in stick model form attached to a space filling surface model of X I A P.

(B)

Figure 9.28 Structure and function of an inhibitor of apoptosis IAPs function by binding and inhibiting various caspase molecules, thereby preventing inadvertent activation of the caspase cascade and the triggering of apoptosis. (A) Shown here is the molecular structure of the complex formed by the BIR3 domain of the IAP molecule termed XIAP with caspase 3. The peptide backbone of XIAP is shown (*blue*) in contrast to the space-filling surface model of caspase 3 (*light green*). The BIR3 domain of XIAP binds to the substrate-binding groove of the caspase, thereby blocking its function. (B) Like the naturally occurring Smac/DIABLO molecule, chemically synthesized Smac/DIABLO mimetics can promote apoptosis by keeping IAP molecules from inhibiting caspase action. Here a tetrapeptide Smac/DIABLO mimic is shown binding to the groove in the surface of XIAP that normally binds Smac/DIABLO. Chemical derivatives of this

tetrapeptide function as potent apoptosis-inducing drugs. Negatively charged surface (*red*); positively charged surface (*blue*). (A, from P.D. Mace, S. Shirley and C.L. Day, *Cell Death Differ.* 17:46–53, 2010. With permission from Nature. B, from K. Zobel et al., *ACS Chem. Biol.* 1:525–533, 2006. With permission from American Chemical Society.)

The cascade of caspase activations, once initiated, proceeds until the final caspases in the cascade cleave "death substrates," that is, proteins whose degradation creates the diverse cellular changes that one associates with the apoptotic death program (see Figure 9.27). The specialized roles of these various caspases have led to their classification into two functional groups: the initiator caspases, which trigger the onset of apoptosis by activating the caspase cascade, and the downstream executioner caspases, which undertake the actual work of destroying critical components of the cell.

A number of key cellular components are cleaved by caspases 3, 6, and 7, which function as the executioner caspases. The degradation of these components causes the profound morphological transformations that accompany the death throes of apoptotic cells. Cleavage of lamins on the inner surface of the nuclear membrane is involved in some fashion in the observed chromatin condensation and nuclear shrinkage, or pyknosis, that is characteristic of the apoptotic program. Cleavage of the inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase (ICAD) liberates this nuclease, which then fragments the chromosomal DNA. Caspase-mediated cleavage of cytoskeletal proteins such as actin, plectin, vimentin, and gelsolin leads to collapse of the cytoskeleton, the formation of blebs protruding from the plasma membrane, and the production of apoptotic bodies—the condensed hulks of cells that remain after all this destruction has occurred (see Figure 9.19).

The executioner caspases even extend their reach back to the mitochondria, where the apoptotic program is initiated: one of their substrates is a protein that is part of the mitochondrial electron transport chain. Its cleavage by caspases leads to disruption of electron transport, loss of ATP production, release of reactive oxygen species (ROS) from the mitochondria, and the loss of mitochondrial structural integrity, thereby amplifying an already-initiated apoptotic program. In addition, as cytochrome *c* and other components of the mitochondrial intermembrane space leak out into the cytoplasm, a variety of mitochondrial functions are severely compromised.

The efficient execution of many of the steps of the apoptotic program is also enabled by changes in signaling that further amplify the signals initiating apoptosis. For example, cleavage of the Rel subunit of NF-κB—a transcription factor driving expression of anti-apoptotic genes such as *Bcl-2* (see Figure 6.22A) —shifts the regulatory balance further in favor of apoptosis. Some researchers estimate that 400 to

1000 distinct cellular proteins undergo cleavage during apoptosis, but it remains unclear how many of these are active participants in the apoptotic program and how many are victims of the collateral damage that occurs as cells are disassembled from within.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

necrosis
: A non-programmed form of cell death triggered by the collapse of cellular energy production, involving the breakdown of a cell's constituents through steps that are distinct from those in the neocroptosis and apoptotic death programs. *See* **necroptosis**, **apoptosis**.

oxidative phosphorylation
: The process of generating ATP from ADP driven by electron gradients in the mitochondrion.

anoikis
: Form of apoptosis that is triggered by the failure of a cell to establish anchorage to a solid substrate, such as the extracellular matrix, or by loss of such anchorage.

apoptosome
: Multiprotein complex that consists of cytochrome *c* molecules and Apaf-1 and helps to initiate apoptosis by activating procaspase 9 into caspase 9. *See also* **caspase**.

initiator caspases
: A family of proteases (including caspase 2, 8, 9, and 10) that become activated by upstream activating signals in the apoptotic pathway and functions to activate other downstream members of the caspase family (so-called executioner caspases), which proteolytically cleave a number of cellular target proteins. *See also* **caspase**.

executioner caspases
: A family of proteases (including caspases 3, 6, and 7) that become activated by initiator caspases through proteolytic cleavage and subsequently cleave a number of cellular target proteins, leading to cell death. *See also* **caspase**.

OceanofPDF.com

9.14 Both intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic programs can lead to cell death

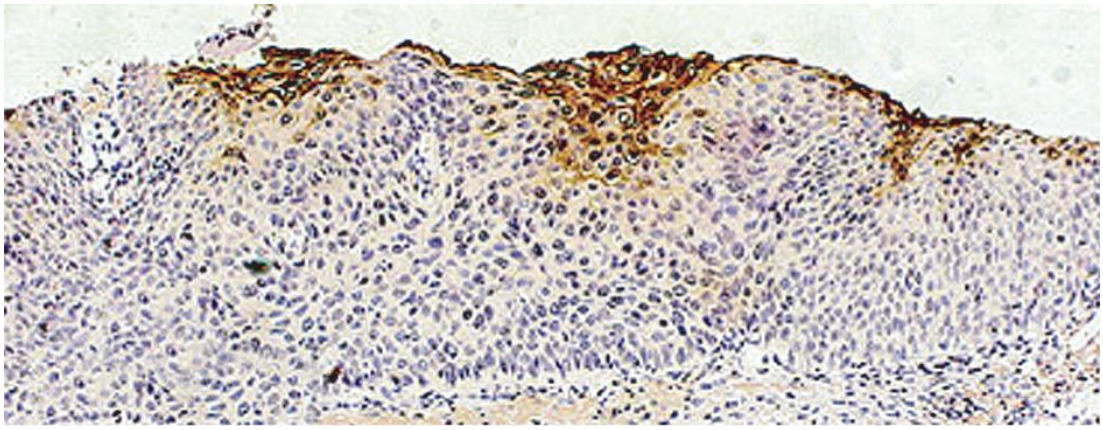
This series of events described above is sometimes termed the *intrinsic apoptotic program*, because the signals that trigger it originate within the cell; it is also known as the *stress-activated* apoptotic pathway. While p53 often plays a prominent role in triggering the intrinsic apoptosis program, other types of intracellular signals can also cause the mitochondria to release cytochrome *c* without involving p53 (see Figure 9.25A). Included in this category are stresses such as a buildup of calcium within the cell, excessive oxidants, certain types of DNA-damaging agents, and agents that disrupt the microtubules—key components of the cytoskeleton and mitotic spindle. Infections by various tumor viruses may also trigger apoptosis. Interestingly, these viruses generally take great pains to ensure that the intrinsic apoptotic program is not initiated, lest their cellular hosts die before their infectious cycles reach completion (**Sidebar 9.5**).

Sidebar 9.5 Why do DNA tumor viruses seek to inactivate p53?

As described previously (see Section 8.5), a diverse group of DNA tumor viruses specify oncoproteins that are designed to inactivate pRb. In addition, they undertake to inactivate p53 activity (see Table 9.1), raising the question why both host-cell proteins must be inactivated by these viruses. Because these agents are called “tumor viruses,” we might conclude that they must create tumors in order to propagate themselves and that pRb and p53 inactivation is central to this goal. However, careful examination of the life cycles of these viruses indicates that cell transformation is only an inadvertent side effect of their replication. Like all other viruses, these viruses have evolved to optimize only one outcome—their efficient multiplication in tissues of infected hosts. This realization forces a restatement of the question: Why is inactivation of both tumor suppressor proteins critical to viral replication?

DNA tumor viruses parasitize the host-cell DNA replication machinery to replicate their own genomes; this machinery is available only in the late G_1 and S phases of the cell cycle. Consequently, these viruses must inactivate pRb, as well as the two pRb-related proteins p107 and p130, to allow initially quiescent, infected host cells to advance into S phase. (Certain herpesviruses achieve the same end by expressing potent virus-encoded D-type cyclins.) The situation is slightly different in the case of

human papillomaviruses (HPVs): they infect replicating cells in the cervical epithelium and block the normally occurring exit from the active cell cycle into a post-mitotic state that takes place as these cells differentiate (**Figure 9.30**).



A histology image of cervical epithelium. Most of the tissue is the usual pink with blue nuclei, but parts of the surface of the tissue are stained rust brown.

Figure 9.30 Human papillomavirus and the pathogenesis of cervical carcinomas This histological section of cervical epithelium infected with a human papillomavirus (HPV) reveals, through immunostaining with an anti-HPV antibody stain (*brown*), clusters of HPV-infected cells in dysplastic areas of the epithelium, termed high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSILs). The dysplastic cells arise, in large part, from the ability of the HPV E7 oncoprotein to inactivate pRb and thereby block their entrance into a post-mitotic state and the ability of the viral E6 oncoprotein, which targets the cells' p53 protein for destruction, to suppress apoptosis. The resulting lesions progress with a low but significant frequency to cervical carcinomas. Unlike epithelial cells in normal cervical epithelium, these virus-infected cell populations harbor a significant proportion of proliferating, Ki67-positive cells (*not shown*). (From K. Middleton et al., *J. Virol.* 77:10186–10201, 2003. With permission from American Society for Microbiology.)

The cells infected by these various viruses respond to pRb inactivation by activating their p53 alarm systems. This response occurs due to the excessive activity of E2Fs that results from the functional inactivation of pRb (see Figure 9.14B); in addition, other, poorly understood virus-induced changes in cells may trigger p53 activation. Such p53 activation threatens to kill the infected host cells through apoptosis long before the viruses have had a chance to multiply and produce progeny. So these viruses proceed to eliminate p53 function. The SV40 large T antigen binds and sequesters p53 (in addition to binding pRb); HPV uses its E6 protein, which functions

like Mdm2 to mark p53 for destruction via ubiquitylation (see Figure 9.14A). Adenovirus uses one of its E1B proteins to bind to p53 and pRb, and it deploys a second E1B-encoded protein, which is related to Bcl-2, to antagonize two important pro-apoptotic proteins, Bax and Bak (see Figure 9.25A).

Interestingly, at least one human RNA tumor virus—the HTLV-I retrovirus—takes the trouble to inactivate many of the same host-cell pathways. Perhaps the active transcriptional machinery of rapidly dividing cells confers some advantage on this virus, whose multiplication does not depend on the DNA replication of its host (see Figure 3.12).

In fact, these diverse intracellular stressors, when taken together, still do not encompass all of the triggers of apoptosis, since this death program can also be triggered through an alternative route—one that is initiated *outside* the cell. This pathway operates in part via the activation of pro-apoptotic cell surface receptors. These transmembrane proteins are often termed death receptors to reflect their ability to activate the apoptotic program. Thus, after binding their cognate ligands in the extracellular space, the death receptors activate a cytoplasmic caspase cascade that converges rapidly on the intrinsic apoptotic pathway described above, thereby triggering an apoptotic response similar to the one seen following activation of the intrinsic apoptotic program (see Figure 9.27). Because the signals that activate the death receptors originate from outside the cell, the apoptotic program initiated by these receptors has been called either the *extrinsic apoptotic* program or the *receptor-activated* apoptotic pathway.

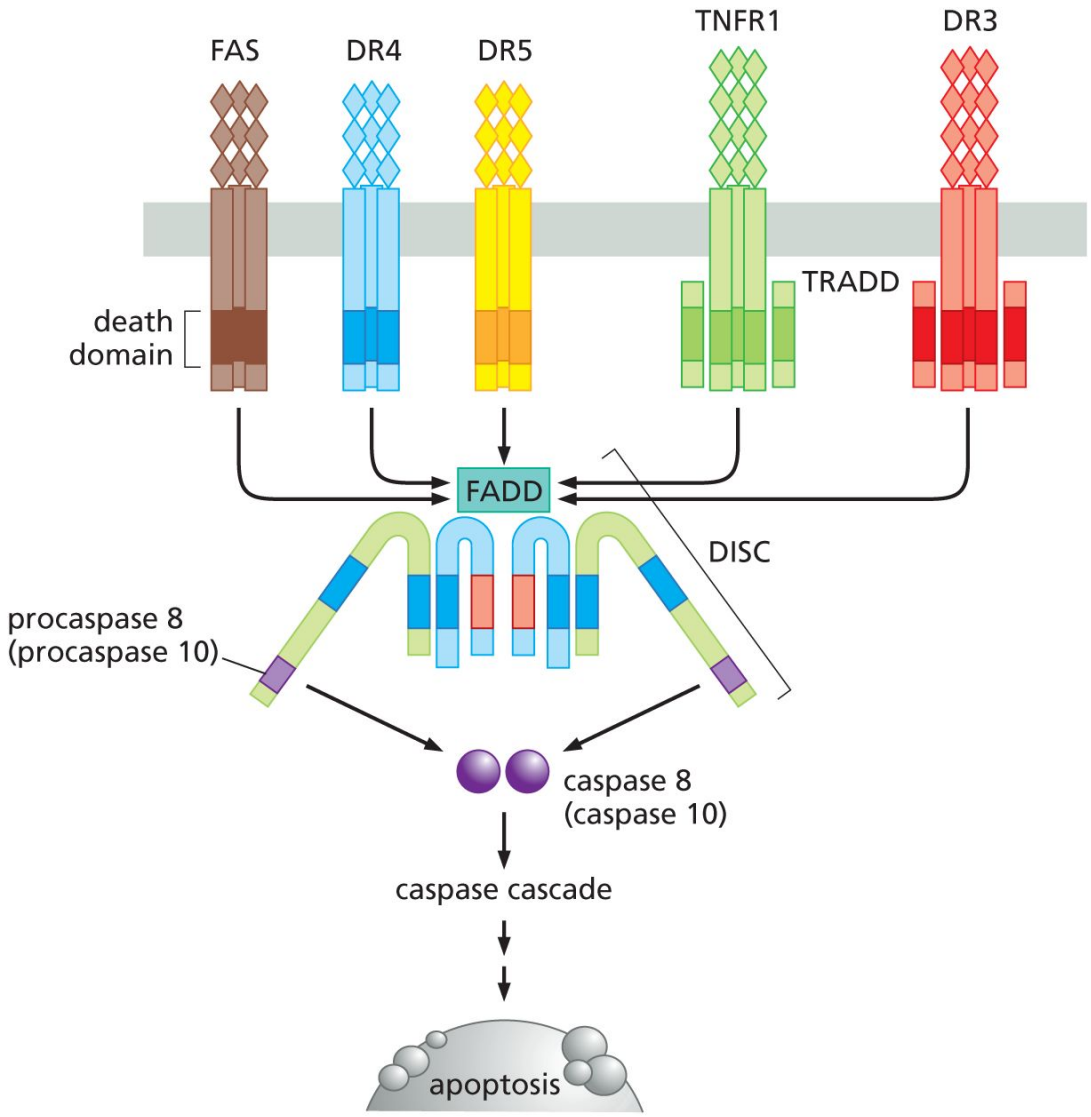
The ligands of the death receptors are members of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) family of proteins. TNF-α was first identified and studied because of its ability to cause the death of cancer cells. Subsequently, this group of protein ligands was found capable of causing the death of a wide variety of normal cell types that display appropriate receptors on their surfaces. Similar to growth factors and their receptors, each of these TNF-like proteins binds to its own cognate death receptor (**Table 9.3**). Six members of a superfamily of TNF-like receptors are involved in triggering apoptosis.

Table 9.3 Death receptors and their ligands

Alternative names of receptors	**Alternative names of ligands**
FAS/APO-1/CD95	FasL/CD95L

Alternative names of receptors	Alternative names of ligands
TNFR1	TNF-α
DR3/APO-3/SWL-1/TRAMP	APO3L
DR4/TRAIL-R1	APO2L/TRAIL
DR5/TRAIL-R2/KILLER	APO2L/TRAIL

Once activated by ligand binding, members of the death receptor family assemble a death-inducing signaling complex (DISC) that triggers the cleavage and activation of caspases 8 and 10 (**Figure 9.29A**). These initiator caspases then cleave and activate the executioner caspases 3, 6, and 7, thereby converging on the signaling pathway through which the intrinsic apoptotic program operates (see Figure 9.27). Caspase 3 can also cleave and activate the Bcl-2–related protein Bid (see Figure 9.23A), which then initiates MOMP, further amplifying the pro-apoptotic signals of the extrinsic apoptotic program by recruiting elements of the intrinsic program into the process (**Figure 9.31**). In addition, as this figure illustrates, the attack and killing of cancer cells by cytotoxic cells of the immune system, such as the CD8 and NK lymphocytes described in Chapter 15, can be provoked through their ability to inject the granzyme B protease into the cytoplasm; once in the cytosol, the injected protease then proceeds to cleave and activate executioner caspases.



A diagram with five different receptors across the top, all traversing a plasma membrane. From left to right, they are F A S, D R4, D R5, T N F R1, and D R3. The first three have a domain labeled death domain on the cytoplasmic side. The last two have more complex tails with domains labeled T R A D D. All five tails act via the F A D D-associated death domain protein to assemble a death-inducing signaling complex with two arms that each have procaspase 8 or 10 at the end, which is released as caspase 8 or 10, which begins a caspase cascade that leads to apoptosis.

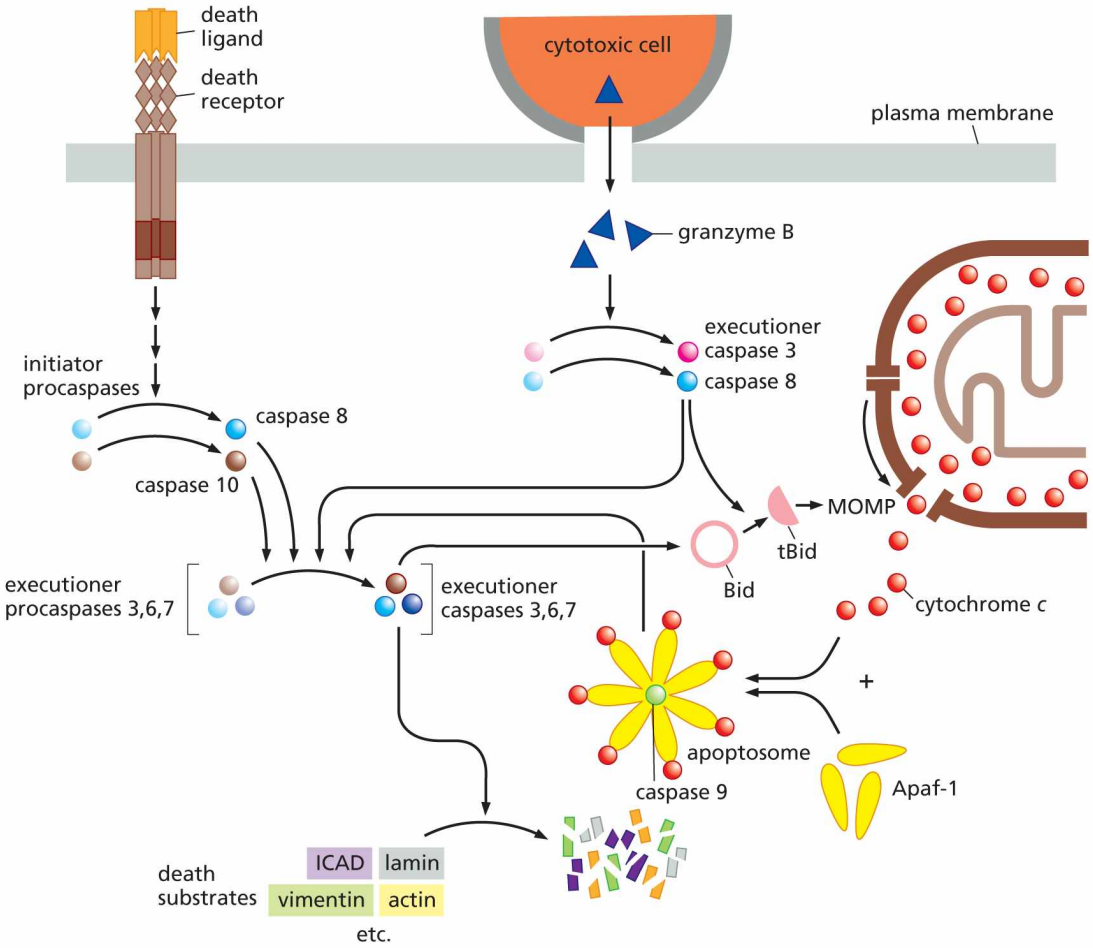
(A)

An electron micrograph of a cytotoxic T lymphocyte attacking a cancer cell that is covered with spherical blisters.

(B)

Figure 9.29 Death receptors (A) Five families of “death receptor” proteins are displayed on the surfaces of various types of mammalian cells. For example, the FasL and APO2L/TRAIL ligands bind to the FAS, DR4, and DR5 death receptors

(*top left*). The cytoplasmic tails of these receptors act via the FAS-associated death domain (FADD) protein to assemble a death-inducing signaling complex (DISC), and the latter proceeds to convert procaspases 8 and 10 into their respective active caspases. These then converge on the caspase cascade that is activated through the intrinsic apoptotic program. A similar sequence of events occurs following the activation of the TNFR1 and DR3 receptors (*top right*). These death receptors differ from receptor tyrosine kinases (and their ligand-induced dimerization) in that the ligand complexes, sometimes called “death ligands,” are homotrimers and appear to work by causing receptor trimerization. [Compare these ligands with the ligands of growth factor receptors (see Figure 5.11A), which drive receptor dimerization.] (B) Death receptor ligands, notably FasL, are frequently used by cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) to kill cancer cells, which display the FAS receptor on their surfaces. (In addition, granzymes may be injected by CTLs into target cells; see Figure 9.31.) In this colorized scanning electron micrograph, a CTL (*orange*) is attacking a cancer cell, which is in the throes of apoptosis, as evidenced by the numerous blebs on its surface. (A, adapted from A. Ashkenazi, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2:420–430, 2002. With permission from Nature. B, from Dr. Andrejs Liepins /Science Source.)

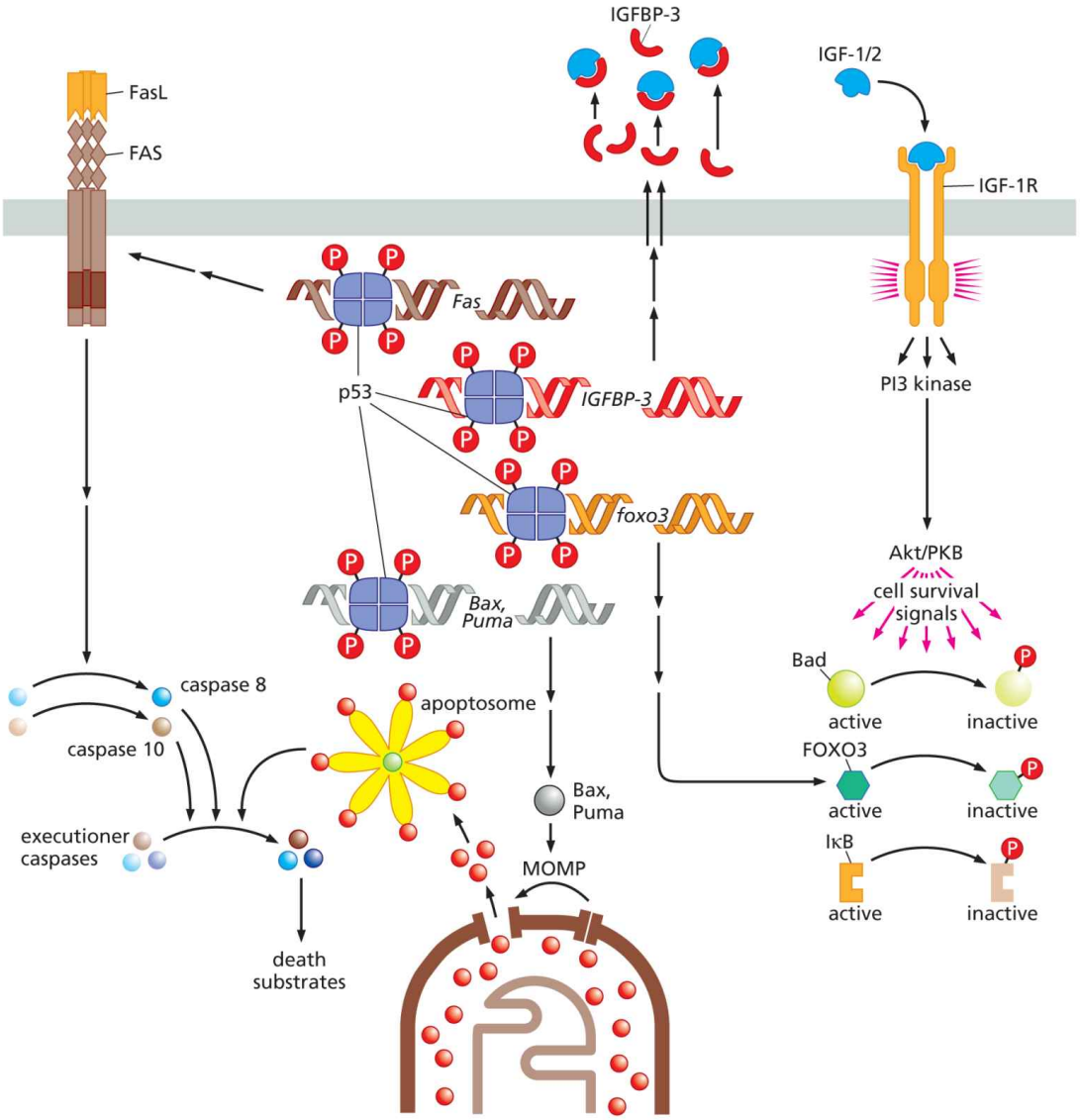


A cascade that begins with two things happening in parallel. In one pathway, a death ligand binding to a death receptor in a cell's plasma membrane causes initiator procaspases in the cytoplasm to become caspases 8 and 10. In the other pathway, another cell, which is cytotoxic, to inject granzyme B through the plasma membrane, which causes initiator procaspases in the cytoplasm to become caspase 8 and executioner caspase 3. These two caspases produce t Bid from Bid. The t Bid initiates M O M P on a mitochondrion, releasing cytochrome sees. These combine with Apaf 1 and caspase 9 to form apoptosomes. The apoptosome, caspase 8 and caspase 10 all contribute to the conversion of executioner procaspases 3, 6 and 7 into executioner caspases 3, 6 and 7. These, finally, cleave and degrade death substrates such as I CAD, lamin, vimentin, and actin.

Figure 9.31 Convergence of intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic pathways After a death receptor activates procaspase 8 or 10, or both, into the corresponding active caspases (*top left*), the latter converge on the intrinsic apoptotic cascade by cleaving and activating the executioner caspases (*middle left*). In addition, after procaspases 3 and 8 have been activated into caspases 3 and 8, the latter cleave and activate Bid, a Bcl-2–related protein (*center, pink circle*). The resulting

activated tBid moves from its cytosolic location to the mitochondrion, where it initiates MOMP, further amplifying the apoptotic cascade by promoting the formation of new, activated apoptosomes (*lower right center*). A second, alternative form of the extrinsic apoptotic pathway is initiated by cytotoxic cells that are dispatched by the immune system (*top middle*) and attach to the surfaces of targeted cells, into which they introduce granzyme B molecules; these cleave and thereby activate procaspases 3 and 8 (see also Figure 9.25).

Mapping the intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic cascades has enriched our understanding of how p53 succeeds in evoking apoptosis (**Figure 9.32**). To begin, p53 induces expression of the genes encoding Bax and PUMA proteins (see Figure 9.25A) that are directly involved in MOMP and the initiation of apoptosis at the mitochondrial membrane. In addition, p53 activates expression of the death receptor FAS and a protein called IGFBP-3. The FAS receptor, once expressed at the cell surface, increases a cell's responsiveness to extracellular death ligands, specifically the Fas Ligand (FasL). IGFBP-3, an IGF-binding protein, when released from the cell, sequesters IGF-1/2 (insulin-like growth factors-1/2), growth factors that provide cells with trophic (survival) signals. Because many cells depend on continuous exposure to trophic signals to remain viable, reducing the survival signals induced by IGF-1 places them in grave danger of succumbing to apoptosis, a process that has been called "death by neglect." This explains why many cancer cells find ways of maintaining high concentrations of IGFs in the microenvironments that surround them. Apart from simply secreting abnormally high amounts of IGF-1 or the related IGF-2, cancer cells may reduce the levels of IGFBPs—either by methylating *IGFBP* gene promoters or by increasing the synthesis and secretion of matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) that cleave and thereby inactivate IGFBP molecules.



A diagram shows the activation of apoptosis by p53, via a complex, interconnected set of pathways. Phosphorylated p53 induces expression of the F a s gene which promotes display of the F A S receptor on the cell's surface. When this binds with the F a s L ligand, it causes initiator procaspases in the cytoplasm to become caspases 8 and 10. At the same time, p53 induces expression of the Bax and Puma genes, which initiative M O M P on a mitochondrion, releasing cytochrome sees. These go to form apoptosomes. The apoptosomes, caspase 8 and caspase 10 all contribute to the conversion of executioner procaspases into executioner caspases that act on the death substrates. Separately from all this, p53 induces expression of the I G F B P 3 and foxo 3 genes. The foxo 3 protein is pro-apoptotic, along with Bad and I kappa B. At the same time, the I G F B P 3 protein passes through the plasma membrane and, outside the cell, binds I G F-1 slash 2, preventing the latter from binding to the I G F-1R receptor whose P I 3 kinase tail

would otherwise trigger A k t P K B produced cell-survival signals that phosphorylated and thereby deactivated foxo 3, Bad and I kappa B.
Figure 9.32 Activation of apoptosis by p53 p53 employs multiple signaling pathways in order to activate the apoptotic program. By inducing expression of the gene encoding the FAS receptor, p53 promotes display of this death receptor at the cell surface (*brown*, *top left*), thereby sensitizing the cell to any Fas ligand (FasL) that may be present in the extracellular space. Activated p53 also drives expression of the FOXO3 pro-apoptotic transcription factor, as well as Bax (*center*), the pro-apoptotic, Bcl-2–related protein; Bax homo-oligomerization triggers MOMP, promoting the release of cytochrome *c* and other pro-apoptotic proteins from the mitochondria (*bottom center*). In addition, p53 induces expression of IGF-binding protein-3 (IGFBP-3, *red*); when this protein is released into the extracellular space, it binds and sequesters IGF-1 and IGF-2 (*blue*, *top center*), the pro-survival, anti-apoptotic ligands of the IGF-1 receptor (IGF-1R). In the absence of IGFBP-3, IGF-1 would bind to its receptor (*top right*), causing the activation of PI3 kinase and the subsequent generation of anti-apoptotic signals in the cell, including those leading to the inactivation of the pro-apoptotic proteins Bad (related to Bcl-2), FOXO3, and IκB (antagonist of NF-κB). However, the sequestration of IGF-1/2 by IGFBP-3 prevents it from exerting its critical anti-apoptotic functions (*right*). p53 also inactivates several other anti-apoptotic agents (*not shown*).

We will return to the extrinsic apoptotic program in Chapters 15 and 16, because it can play two important roles in the complex interactions between cancer cells and the immune system. On the immune front, cells of the immune system may release death ligands (such as FasL) in an attempt to trigger apoptosis in cancer cells that they have targeted for elimination (Figure 9.29B). Working in the opposite direction, cancer cells may display or release death ligands that they deploy to kill immune cells that have approached too closely and threaten their survival.

The complexity of the signals flowing through apoptotic pathways underscores the fact that the decision for or against apoptosis is achieved by altering the *balance* of complex arrays of pro- and anti-apoptotic proteins that influence the ultimate decision whether or not to flip the “apoptotic master switch.”

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

death receptor
: A family of mammalian transmembrane receptors that function at the cell surface to initiate apoptosis through the extrinsic apoptotic program following binding of their cognate ligands. Examples of death receptors are TNFR1, FAS, DR3, DR4, and DR5.

trophic
: Aiding in or supporting cell growth, proliferation, or survival.

OceanofPDF.com

9.15 Cancer cells deploy numerous ways to inactivate their apoptotic machinery

As emphasized earlier, cells advancing down the long road toward neoplasia encounter a number of physiological stressors that threaten their existence. Each of these stressors has the ability to trigger apoptosis, which explains why most, if not all, types of cancer cells inactivate key components of their apoptosis-inducing machinery (**Table 9.4**). We can also view these changes from the perspective of the organism as a whole: virtually all human cancer cells employ anti-apoptotic strategies, which suggests that the apoptotic machinery integrated into all normal cells is held in active reserve as an anti-neoplastic mechanism that can be rapidly deployed, when needed, to obstruct tumor progression.

Table 9.4 Examples of anti-apoptotic alterations found in human tumor cells

Alteration	**Mechanism of anti-apoptotic action**	**Types of tumors**
CASP8 promoter methylation	inactivation of extrinsic cascade	SCLC, pediatric tumors
CASP3 repression	inactivation of executioner caspase	breast carcinomas
Survivin overexpression[a]	caspase inhibitor	mesotheliomas, many carcinomas
ERK activation	repression of caspase 8 expression	many types

Alteration	**Mechanism of anti-apoptotic action**	**Types of tumors**
ERK activation	protection of Bcl-2 from degradation	many types
Raf activation	sequestration of Bad by 14-3-3 proteins	many types
PI3K mutation/activation	activation of Akt/PKB	gastrointestinal
NF-κB constitutive activation[b]	induction of anti-apoptotic genes	many types
p53 mutation	loss of ability to induce pro-apoptotic genes	many types
p14^{ARF} gene inactivation	suppression of p53 levels	many types
Mdm2 overexpression	suppression of p53 levels	sarcomas
IAP-1 gene amplification	antagonist of caspases 3 and 7	esophageal, cervical
APAF1 methylation	loss of caspase 9 activation by cytochrome *c*	melanomas

Alteration	**Mechanism of anti-apoptotic action**	**Types of tumors**
BAX mutation	loss of pro-apoptotic protein	colon carcinomas
Bcl-2 overexpression	closes mitochondrial channel	~½ of human tumors
PTEN inactivation	hyperactivity of Akt/PKB kinase	glioblastoma, prostate carcinoma, endometrial carcinoma
IGF-1/2 overexpression	activates PI3K	many types
IGFBP repression	loss of anti-apoptotic IGF-1/2 antagonist	many types
Casein kinase II overexpression	activation of NF-κB	many types
TNFR1 methylation	repressed expression of death receptor	Wilms tumor
FLIP overexpression	inhibition of caspase 8 activation by death receptors	melanomas, many others

Alteration	Mechanism of anti-apoptotic action	Types of tumors
Akt/PKB activation	phosphorylation and inactivation of pro-apoptotic Bcl-2-like proteins	many types
USP9X overexpression	deubiquitylates Mcl-1	lymphomas
STAT3 activation	induces expression of Bcl-X_L	several types
TRAIL-R1 repression	loss of responsiveness to death ligand	small-cell lung carcinoma
FAP-1 overexpression	inhibition of FAS receptor signaling	pancreatic carcinoma
XAF1 methylation[c]	loss of inhibition of anti-apoptotic XIAP	gastric carcinoma
Wip1 overexpression[d]	suppression of p53 activation	breast and ovarian carcinomas, neuroblastoma

Arguably the most important and widely exploited strategy has already been noted: inactivation of the p53 pathway. The *p53* gene is altered in almost half of all human cancer cell genomes, and in a substantial proportion of others, ARF is no longer expressed. This repression is often achieved through outright deletion of the ARF-encoding gene or by promoter methylation, the latter resulting in the

silencing of transcription (see Section 1.8). A small percentage of human tumors (mostly sarcomas) will overexpress Mdm2. All of these mechanisms affecting ARF or Mdm2 expression serve to drive down levels of p53 protein in cells. Finally, in some human tumor cells, p53 appears to be inappropriately localized, that is, it is sequestered in the cytoplasm, where it cannot carry out its main task, transcriptional activation.

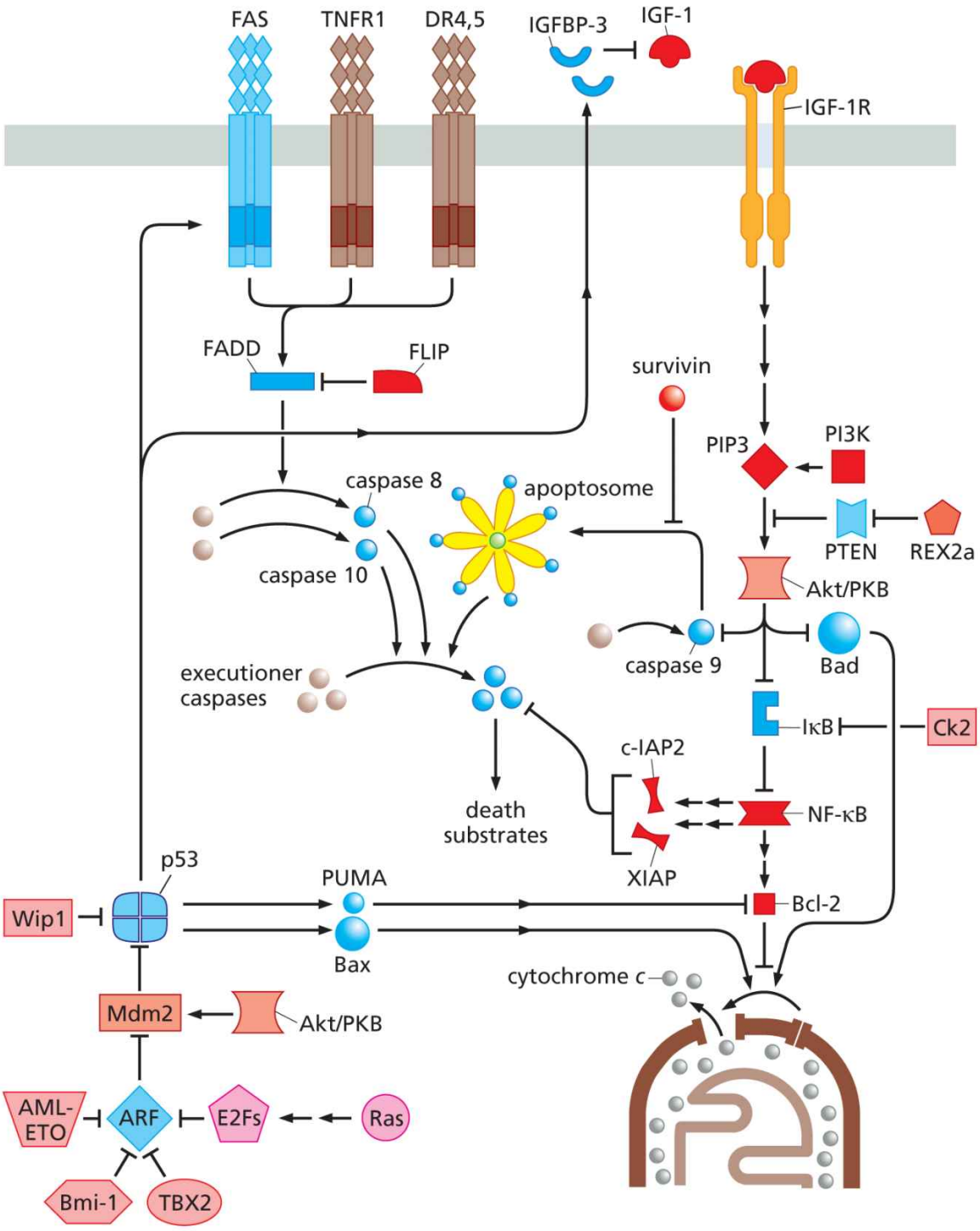
Still, this elimination of p53 function does not seem to suffice for many types of human tumors, which strive to subvert additional components of the apoptotic machinery. For example, many melanoma cells exhibit methylation and thus functional inactivation of the promoter of the *APAF1* gene, which encodes the cytosolic protein that assembles with released cytochrome *c* to form the apoptosome and activate caspase 9 (see Figure 9.27). The pro-apoptotic *Bax* gene (see Table 9.4) is inactivated by mutation in more than half the colon cancers that show microsatellite instability as described in Chapter 12. Deregulated overexpression of *BCL2* (the human version of *Bcl-2*) is found in follicular B-cell lymphomas, and *BCL2* expression is elevated in large numbers of human tumors of diverse tissue origins; by some estimates, at least half of all human tumors show elevated *BCL2* expression.

Yet another highly effective strategy for acquiring resistance to apoptosis derives from hyperactivation of the PI3K → Akt/PKB pathway (see Section 6.6). Activation of this pathway can be achieved through the collaborative actions of tyrosine kinase receptors and the Ras oncoprotein, both of which activate PI3K; the result is an increased level of PIP3 and activation of Akt/PKB (see Figure 6.14A). Inactivation of the gene encoding PTEN, the phosphatase that breaks down PIP3, has a similar effect. Once Akt/PKB has been activated by the accumulated PIP3, it can phosphorylate and thereby inhibit pro-apoptotic proteins such as Bad and caspase 9, and at the same time phosphorylate and activate Mdm2, the key antagonist of p53.

A diverse collection of cancer cell types, ranging from leukemias to colon carcinomas, have been found to resort to yet another mechanism to protect themselves against apoptosis: they activate expression of NF-κB. This transcription factor is usually sequestered in an inactive form in the cytoplasm and, in response to certain physiological signals, is liberated and translocates to the nucleus, where it activates a large constituency of target genes (see Section 6.12). A number of these genes are involved in pro-inflammatory and angiogenic functions, and a significant cohort function as apoptosis antagonists, blocking both the intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic programs. The list of NF-κB targets is

expanding rapidly, and it is likely that the overexpression of some of these anti-apoptotic genes (and encoded proteins) seen in many types of human cancer cells will be traced directly to activation of NF-κB.

Yet another strategy for avoiding apoptosis is evident in childhood neuroblastomas, in which amplification of the N-*myc* gene normally indicates aggressive tumor growth and short life expectancy. On its own, this amplification actually *threatens* the proliferation of neuroblastoma cells because, as mentioned earlier, the actions of the *Myc* oncogene (and those of its N-*myc* cousin) release potent mitogenic signals, but at the same time are strongly pro-apoptotic. Many neuroblastoma cells that have overexpressed N-*myc* through gene amplification seem to solve this problem, at least in part, by inactivating the gene encoding caspase 8 (**Figure 9.33**), doing so through methylation or deletion.



A pathway diagram of Anti-apoptotic strategies used by cancer cells. In the lower left corner, several proteins inhibit the pro-apoptotic action of p53. Wip 1 and M d m2 do this directly, and A k t P K B enhances the action of M d m 2. In addition, A M L E T O, Bmi-1, T B X2, and E2 effs promoted by R a s inhibit A R F, blocking it from inhibiting M d m 2. Elsewhere, F L I P inhibits

F A D D, blocking it from setting off the chain of caspase production that leads to the degradation of death substrates. c-I A P2 and X I A P also inhibit the action of those caspases. These last two proteins are the products of a long pathway that begins with the binding of an I G F-1R receptor by a I G F-1 ligand.

Figure 9.33 Anti-apoptotic strategies used by cancer cells Cancer cells resort to numerous strategies in order to decrease the likelihood of apoptosis. This diagram indicates that in various cancer cell types, the levels or activity of important pro-apoptotic proteins are decreased (*blue*). Conversely, the levels or activity of certain anti-apoptotic proteins may be increased (*red*). (Some of these, because they are downstream of master regulators that are known to be altered in cancer cells, are affected by known changes in their upstream regulators.)

The involvement of caspase 8, as cited above, reveals that the actions of the extrinsic apoptosis-inducing pathway are also relevant for the evolution of certain types of cancer cells. Others deploy a protein termed FLIP (FLICE-inhibitory protein) that can interfere with the activation of the extrinsic apoptotic cascade by binding to the death domain proteins that associate with death receptors, thereby blocking the activation of the initiator caspase 8. Yet other tumor cells suppress expression of their TNF receptors by methylating the promoter of the encoding *TNFR1* gene. A selection of the mechanisms that disable apoptosis is outlined in Figure 9.33.

These maneuvers provide clear evidence that cancer cells can gain survival advantage by inactivating the extrinsic pathway. This observation leads, in turn, to the speculation that cells of the immune system often besiege cancer cells and attempt to kill them through the release of TNF-like factors that can initiate the extrinsic apoptotic program. Given the complex wiring diagram of the circuitry controlling apoptosis, it is virtually certain that many additional anti-apoptotic strategies will be uncovered in various types of human cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aSurvivin is an inhibitor of apoptosis (IAP) in gastric, lung, and bladder cancer and melanoma, in addition to the mesotheliomas indicated here. The expression of a number of IAP genes is directly induced by the NF-κB TFs.Return to reference a
- bInduces synthesis of c-IAPs, XIAP, Bcl-X_L, and other anti-apoptotic proteins.Return to reference b
- cXAF1 (XIAP-associated factor 1) normally binds and blocks the anti-apoptotic actions of XIAP, the most potent of the IAPs.Return to reference c
- dWip1 is a phosphatase that inactivates p38 MAPK, which otherwise would phosphorylate and stimulate the pro-apoptotic actions of p53.Return to reference d

OceanofPDF.com

9.16 p53 inactivation provides an advantage to incipient cancer cells at a number of steps in tumor progression

As we will learn in Chapter 11, the formation of a malignant human cell involves more than half a dozen distinct steps that usually occur over many years' time. An early step in the formation of a cancer cell often involves activation of an oncogene through some type of mutation. Such oncogene activation can put a cell at great risk of p53-induced senescence or apoptosis. Recall, for example, that a *Myc* oncogene can, on its own, trigger p53-dependent apoptosis. Hence, cells that have acquired such an oncogene can accrue additional growth advantage by shedding p53 function.

Later in tumor development, a growing population of tumor cells may experience hypoxia because cells toward the center of a developing tumor may lack an adequate network of vessels to provide access to blood-borne oxygen. Although normal cells would die from oxygen deprivation, tumor cells may survive because their ancestors managed to inactivate the *p53* gene during an earlier stage of tumor development (having done so initially for a quite different reason). Hypoxia itself could provide a sufficient stress to select for p53-mutant cells.

During much of this long, multi-step process of tumor progression, the absence of p53-triggered responses to genetic damage will permit the survival of cells that are accumulating mutations at a greater-than-normal rate. Such increased mutability increases the rate at which oncogenes become activated and tumor suppressor genes become inactivated; the overall rate of evolution of premalignant cells to a malignant state is thereby accelerated. Telomere collapse, another danger faced by evolving, premalignant cells (see Chapter 10), also selects for the outgrowth of those cells that have lost their p53-dependent DNA damage response.

The advantages to the incipient tumor cell of shedding p53 function do not stop there. One of the important target genes whose expression is increased by p53 is the *TSP-1* gene, which specifies thrombospondin-1. As we will see in Chapter 13, Tsp-1 is a secreted protein that functions in the extracellular space to block the development of new blood vessels. Consequently, a reduction of Tsp-1 expression following p53 loss removes an obstacle that otherwise would prevent clusters of cancer cells from developing an adequate blood supply during the early stages of tumor development. Loss of p53 can also affect major metabolic pathways in cells, stimulate changes in the tumor microenvironment, and promote cell motility and invasion—all of which can favor tumor progression.

Together, these diverse consequences of p53 pathway inactivation illustrate, once again, how the malfunctioning of a small number of key components of the alarm response circuitry permits cancer cells to acquire multiple alterations and survive under conditions that usually lead to the death of normal cells. These multiple benefits accruing to cancer cells explain why the p53 pathway is disrupted in most if not all types of human tumors.

In almost half of these tumors (see Figure 9.3), functioning of the p53 protein itself is compromised by mutations in the *p53* gene on numerous occasions as cited earlier. In many of the remaining tumors, the ARF protein is missing or the Mdm2 or MdmX proteins are overexpressed. In addition, p53 function may be compromised by defects in the complex signaling network in which p53 and its antagonist, Mdm2, are embedded. This network includes the *p53*-related genes *p63* and *p73*, which carry distinct but overlapping functions with p53 (**Sidebar 9.6**). There are reasons to suspect that other, still-undiscovered genetic mechanisms subvert p53 function. Although the organism as a whole benefits greatly from the p53 being stationed in its myriad cells, it suffers grievously once p53 function is lost in some of them, because the resulting p53-negative cells are now free to begin the long, multi-step march toward malignancy.

Sidebar 9.6 p53 has interesting cousins

As is often the case with important regulatory proteins, both p53 and Mdm2 have relatives in the cell; we have already encountered Mdm2’s cousin,

Mdm4 (also known as MdmX; see Section 9.8). In many situations, the ability of Mdm2 to drive down p53 concentrations may depend on its ability to do so as part of multi-protein complexes formed with Mdm4.

p53, for its part, actually has two cousins, p63 and p73. These two have quite different functions in cells. For example, although *p53*-null mice (created by germ-line gene inactivation; see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.2**) are largely normal at birth, *p63*-null mice have severe developmental defects involving epithelial cell differentiation and die shortly after birth. *p73*-null mice show yet other developmental abnormalities that affect primarily the nervous and secretory tissues. Moreover, like $p53^{+/-}$ mice, $p63^{+/-}$ and $p73^{+/-}$ heterozygous mice show predispositions to cancer, although these phenotypes are not as strongly penetrant as those of *p53* mutants.

These two cousins are important for p53-dependent apoptosis, because mouse embryo fibroblasts that have been deprived of both copies of both genes (that is, are of a $p63^{-/-}p73^{-/-}$ genotype) are no longer able to induce expression of many pro-apoptotic genes and fail to execute p53-dependent apoptosis. The tendency of excessive E2F1 to trigger apoptosis, as described in Section 9.9, may result in part from its ability to induce expression of p73, which then functions as a pro-apoptotic partner of p53. Loss of the *p63* and *p73* genes does not, however, affect the ability of p53 to inhibit proliferation (mediated by $p21^{Cip1}$ induction) or p53's ability to induce Mdm2 expression.

A final dimension of complexity comes from naturally occurring variant forms of these proteins. For example, full-length p63 and p73 function with p53 to promote apoptosis, whereas shorter, N-terminally truncated versions of p63 and p73—both products of alternative splicing—inhibit p53-induced apoptosis. Nonetheless, inactivation of either the *p63* or the *p73* gene in the mouse germ line leads to increased tumor incidence and places these two genes squarely in the camp of TSGs.

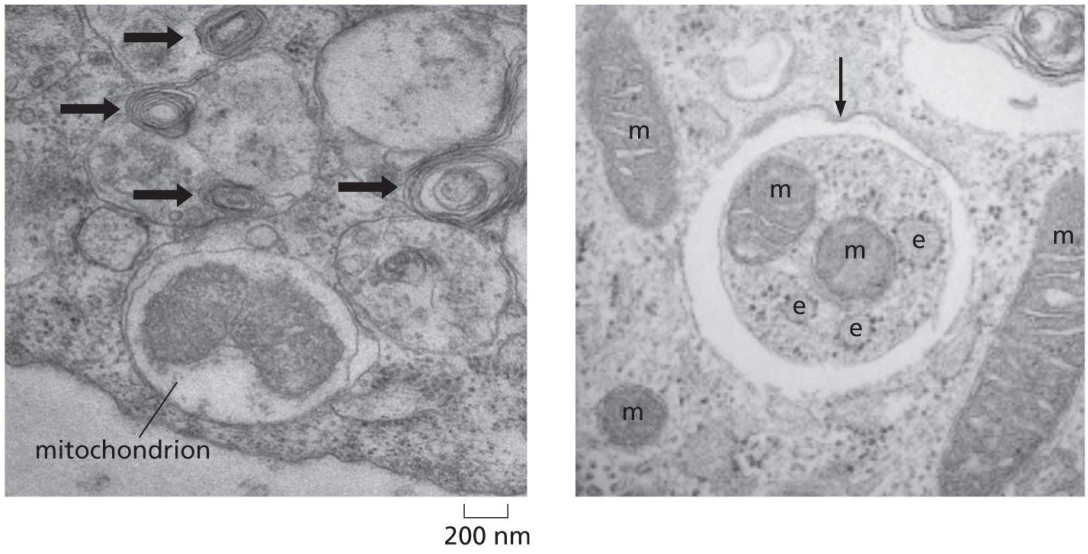
OceanofPDF.com

9.17 Additional forms of cell death may limit the survival of cancer cells

Although much of this chapter has focused on apoptosis as a major obstacle to cancer cell survival, alternative fates may befall a cell en route to full-fledged neoplastic growth. One such fate has already been mentioned, albeit in passing: necrosis. In complex metazoa like ourselves, the cells within our tissues are usually guaranteed access to reasonably constant levels of essential nutrients, such as glucose and amino acids. Cancer cells, however, often lack such access. In the early stages of tumor growth, tumor-directed angiogenesis—the formation of new blood vessels—is not fully activated, as we discuss in Chapter 13. Later in tumor progression, many vessels are malformed. In both cases, cancer cells may become nutrient- and oxygen-starved. This ischemia can trigger bioenergetic collapse and necrosis. The necrotic cores of many tumors are testimonials to the important role of necrosis in limiting tumor growth. Although the overall size of a tumor often yields the impression of a large and actively growing mass, the bulk of most tumors is actually inert, necrotic tissue that has never been eliminated.

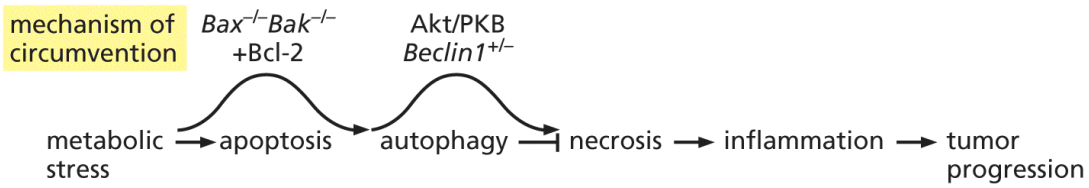
As indicated in Table 9.2, necrotic cell death differs in many respects from apoptosis and results in the lysis of the cells rather than the production of apoptotic bodies. The resulting cell lysis can trigger localized inflammation, as the surrounding tissues become exposed to the intracellular contents of the necrotic cell. Interestingly, if the apoptotic response is blocked through one of the mechanisms described earlier, exposing the cell to a death receptor ligand may instead trigger necrosis.

Before nutrient starvation drives a cancer cell into necrosis, the cell may resort to an alternative strategy to stave off the irreversible collapse of metabolism that triggers necrotic cell death: it may activate a program called autophagy, which allows it to cannibalize its own organelles as a means of recycling their contents (**Figure 9.34A**). The recycled molecules can then be used to generate the energy and intermediary metabolites that are required to maintain cell viability, permitting the nutrient-starved cell to survive for an extended period of time.



Two electron micrographs. The one on the left shows a mitochondrion enclosed within a round structure. Above it, indicated by arrows, are four structures with concentric layers, like an onion. The electron micrograph on the right shows a white ring-like structure. Within the structure are two generally round structures labeled m and three smaller round structures labeled e. Outside the ring are three more structures labeled m. Two of them are elongated and are obviously mitochondria.

(A)

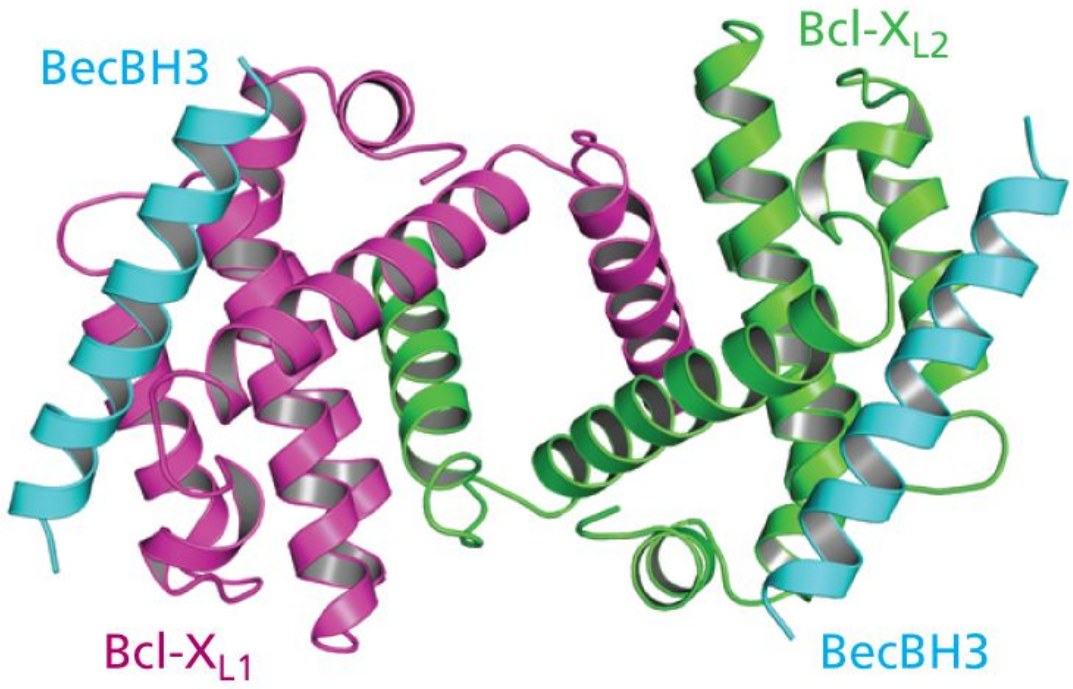


Several possible sequences of events in a single diagram. Metabolic stress normally leads to apoptosis. However, this can be circumvented, by a mechanism that involves Bax minus minus and Bak minus minus, plus B c l-2. Then the natural result is autophagy, which would normally block necrosis. However, this, too, can be circumvented, by a mechanism that involves A k t P K B and Beclin1 plus minus. Then the result is necrosis, which leads to inflammation, which leads to tumor progression.

(B)

A micrograph in which gray-blue necrotic cells are surrounded by yellow healthy stroma, and in between the two is a layer of dark brown cells.

(C)



A ribbon diagram showing Bec B H3 bound to B c l-X L1 and Bec B H3 bound to Bcl-XL2.

(D)

Figure 9.34 Autophagy and necrosis (A) In a cell undergoing autophagy, an entire mitochondrion has been engulfed in a digestive compartment called an autophagosome (electron micrograph, *left*); the *arrows* indicate structures that have the multilayered appearance of autophagosomes. The *right* panel shows an autophagosome (*arrow*) surrounding mitochondria (m) and fragments of endoplasmic reticulum (e). (B) Under some circumstances, cancer cells may respond to metabolic stress, such as nutrient deprivation, by activating apoptosis. If apoptosis is circumvented experimentally (*curved arrow*) by inactivating pro-apoptotic genes *(Bax* and *Bak*) and by expressing an anti-apoptotic protein (Bcl-2), these cells may activate autophagy. If autophagy is then inhibited by expressing the Akt/PKB kinase (which blocks autophagy) plus inactivating one of the two copies of the *Beclin* gene (whose protein product is a master regulator of autophagy), such cells will enter into necrosis. Necrosis may in turn promote localized inflammation, which often serves to promote tumor progression, as discussed in Chapter 11. (C) A subtype of ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) of the breast, termed comedo carcinoma, shows a rim of viable cells (C) that are expressing high levels of Beclin-1 (*brown*), the master regulator of autophagy, surrounding a central core of necrotic cells (N, *light blue*). The *Beclin*$^{+}$ cells have activated autophagy, apparently in response to the limited nutrients available to

them from the nearby surrounding stroma (S). Of note, this subtype of DCIS has a worse prognosis than the more common subtypes, in which intraductal necrosis is not seen; indeed, the *Beclin*$^{+}$ cancer cells seen here are close to becoming actively invasive. (D) The complex interactions between the apoptosis and autophagy programs are highlighted by the fact that Beclin can be bound directly by either Bcl-2 or Bcl-X_L, two potent anti-apoptotic proteins; this binding prevents Beclin from causing autophagy. Seen here is a crystallographic structure of a complex of two molecules of the BH3 domain of Beclin bound to two molecules of the BH3 domain of Bcl-X_L. (A, left, courtesy of E.M. Haley, B.A. Lund, M.E. Bisher and H.A. Coller; right, from N. Mizushima and B. Levine, *Nat. Cell Biol.* 12:823–830, 2010. With permission from Nature. B, from K. Degenhardt et al., *Cancer Cell* 10:51–64, 2006. With permission from Elsevier. C, from V. Espina and L.A. Liotta, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11:68–75, 2011. With permission from Nature. D, from A. Oberstein, P.D. Jeffrey and Y. Shi, *J. Biol. Chem*. 282:13123–13132, 2007. © 2007 ASBMB. This article is available under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 license.)

In the case of cancer cells, this survival may allow them to avoid necrosis altogether if they subsequently succeed in obtaining access to nutrients (Figure 9.34B–D). Under conditions of nutrient deprivation, some cancer cells have been seen to consume two-thirds of their own mass and still remain viable, retaining the ability to return to full size and to a state of active proliferation once nutrients are eventually procured. Importantly, excessive, deregulated autophagy may lead a cell to cannibalize too many of its own constituents, leading to its death by specialized death program termed autophagic cell death.

In recent years, a number of additional forms of regulated cell death have been described. They can be distinguished by a combination of the morphological changes that accompany the death process and by the genetic and biochemical pathways that are implicated in their execution. One of these, necroptosis, exhibits certain morphological features of necrosis (for example, cell lysis), but unlike necrosis, this form of cell death is orchestrated by specific biochemical pathways. In particular, death receptors, such as the TNF receptor, and the kinases RIPK3 and RIPK1 are implicated in necroptosis. Following activation of this pathway by upstream signals, the protein MLKL is phosphorylated by RIPK3 and undergoes oligomerization and translocation to the plasma membrane, leading to membrane rupture and cell lysis. The importance of the MLKL executioner in this pathway has been confirmed via mouse knockout experiments. Thus, although *Mlkl*$^{-/-}$ mice survive and show no obvious defects, their cells are resistant to the induction of necroptosis.

Pyroptosis derives its name from a form of cell death that is associated with inflammation. Indeed, pyroptosis operates in the context of infection of cells by intracellular pathogens, including viruses and bacteria. In the context of cancer, this program can be induced by exposure of cancer cells to a variety of cytotoxic therapeutic drugs. Once activated, the programmed release of a variety of pro-inflammatory cytokines together with the rupture of the plasma membrane results in the recruitment of several types of cells of the innate immune system, amplifying the host response to these various noxious agents. It is thought that induction of pyroptosis involves several caspases, including caspase 1, which activates the pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-1β, as well as the pore-forming protein gasdermin D (GSDMD). Cleavage of the latter by caspase 1 or other inflammatory caspases leads to the release of its N-terminal domain, which forms pores in the cell membrane and induces cell lysis. These processes explain why cells lacking GSDMD are protected against pyroptosis provoked by certain agents.

Finally, a form of regulated cell death known as ferroptosis is associated with iron availability and intracellular lipid peroxidation. Ferroptosis is inhibited by the lipid peroxidase GPX4, and inhibition of this enzyme can lead to induction of this death program. Because ferroptosis depends on iron, various iron chelators also inhibit ferroptosis. This program may be important in the cellular response to certain anti-cancer agents. In addition, carcinoma cells that have moved from an epithelial to a more mesenchymal phenotype (as described in Chapter 14) exhibit a significantly increased susceptibility to induced ferroptosis. Interestingly, recent evidence points to p53 as a positive regulator of ferroptosis, adding to the list of its potential tumor-suppressing mechanisms.

As is true for apoptosis, the genes and pathways that control these other forms of cell death may be the target of mutation or silencing during tumor development, enabling cancer cells to survive in the face of multiple insults and challenges. As an example, expression levels of the genes encoding RIPK and MLKL are lower in certain cancers compared with corresponding normal tissues, implicating suppression of necroptosis as a pro-tumorigenic strategy. Moreover, investigations of these various cell death pathways, undertaken in order to reveal new strategies for eliminating neoplastic cells, represents an active area of investigation.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ischemia
: State within a tissue caused by inadequate access to circulating blood, resulting in hypoxia, decreased pH, and inadequate supply of nutrients.

autophagy
: A catabolic process whereby selected intracellular organelles and molecules are degraded by engulfment in autophagosomes that proceed to fuse with lysosomes in which degradation occurs, yielding metabolites that can be recycled for biosynthetic reactions.

autophagic cell death
: A form of cell death associated with autophagy in which dying cells sequester large portions of their cytoplasmic contents in autophagosomes. This form of cell death lacks the characteristic chromatin condensation seen in apoptosis. *See* **autophagosome, autophagy**.

necroptosis
: A programmed form of necrosis that leads to cell death and the release of cellular debris that may persist and trigger local tissue inflammation. *See also* **apoptosis**, **ferroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

pyroptosis
: A cell death program that is often provoked by infection by intracellular pathogens and results in cell death and the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Pyroptosis can also be induced following exposure to certain chemotherapeutic agents.

ferroptosis
: A form of programmed cell death that depends on iron and the formation of lipid peroxides and is distinct from other forms of cell death such as apoptosis. *See also* **apoptosis, necroptosis, pyroptosis**.

OceanofPDF.com

9.18 Synopsis and prospects

In the early chapters of this book, we concentrated on the molecular mechanisms that propel cell proliferation forward or hold it back. Most of these regulators—the products of (proto-) oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes—manage the extracellular mitogenic and anti-mitogenic signals that impinge upon the cell cycle machinery from outside the cell. These signals are processed within individual cells to enable them to converge on the final decisions that determine whether they advance through the active growth-and-division cycle, retreat reversibly into quiescence, or enter irreversibly into a post-mitotic, differentiated state.

In this chapter, we have focused on entirely different cell-physiological processes, most of which are responsible for monitoring the internal well-being of cells. The monitoring apparatus conducts continuous surveillance of vital cell systems, including access to oxygen and nutrients, the physical state of the genome, and the balance of signals flowing through a cell's growth-regulating circuits. If such monitors determine that a vital system is damaged or malfunctioning within a cell, an alarm is sounded and growth is halted or, more drastically, the cell is induced to enter into senescence or activate its previously latent apoptotic program.

These monitors create barriers to tumor formation that incipient cancer cells must override in order to complete the complex, multi-step agenda that leads eventually to the formation of malignant cancers. Thus, as cells evolve from normalcy to a state of high-grade neoplasia, many of their subcellular systems malfunction in one way or another, leading to the risks of cytostasis, senescence, apoptosis, necroptosis, ferroptosis, pyroptosis, or other fates that threaten to derail tumor development.

Any one of these traps can halt further progress down the long road to malignancy. Indeed, attempts by most would-be cancer cells to evade these pitfalls usually fail, as reflected in the high attrition of the cells in premalignant cell populations. The multiple sources of cell attrition also help to explain one of the mysteries of human cancer pathogenesis: even

though each of us experiences ~10^{16} cell divisions in a lifetime, each one of which threatens to create a seed of cancer, most of us will not develop life-threatening malignancies, a testament to the effectiveness of the multiple mechanisms that trigger cell death.

p53 is a central player in many of these responses because elimination of its function is one frequent means of avoiding apoptosis, growth arrest, and senescence, the last representing a permanent exit from the cell cycle (see Section 10.1). The *p53* gene and encoded protein have been the subject of more than 100,000 research reports since the discovery of the p53 protein in 1979. This extraordinary focus on a single gene and protein reflects both the central role that this protein plays in cancer pathogenesis and the frequent presence of mutant *p53* alleles in the genomes of human cancer cells. Still unanswered, however, is the most perplexing puzzle surrounding this protein: Why would cells entrust so many vital alarm functions to a single protein? Once a cell has lost p53 function, it becomes oblivious, in a single stroke, to a range of conditions that would normally call a halt to its proliferation or trigger entrance into the apoptotic program.

As we will see in Chapter 11, the complex, multi-step process that drives tumor development involves changes in multiple cellular control circuits. Because p53 receives signals from so many distinct sensors of damage or cell-physiological distress, the loss of p53 function plays a role in many of these steps. For example, early in the development of bladder, breast, lung, and colon carcinomas, when premalignant growths are present, DNA damage signaling is already active, as indicated by the presence of phosphorylated, functionally active ATM and Chk2 kinases. In addition, the p53 substrate of these kinases is also phosphorylated and apparently active, because the *p53* gene is often still in its wild-type configuration at this stage of tumor progression. This indicates that DNA lesions are widespread in the cells of these growths, even at this early stage of tumorigenesis, and suggests that p53 is striving to constrain the proliferation of the cells in these growths and may even induce with some frequency their elimination by apoptosis. Consequently, these premalignant cells stand to benefit greatly by shedding p53 function, thereby liberating themselves from its cytostatic and pro-apoptotic effects.

At these early stages of tumor development, cells that succeed in eliminating p53 function may also gain special advantage because they have a better chance of avoiding the apoptosis that is triggered by p53 in response to severe hypoxia. Thus, early premalignant growths generally have not yet developed adequate access to the circulation and the oxygen that it brings (via the process of angiogenesis to be described in Chapter 13). In addition, because p53 induces expression of the potently anti-angiogenic molecule thrombospondin (Tsp-1), p53 inactivation can accelerate the development of nearby capillary networks that can cure the hypoxia.

Later in tumor progression, when malignant carcinomas develop, the absence of p53 function will compromise some of the DNA repair systems of the cell and, at the same time, allow cells carrying damaged genomes greater survival advantage; the result is an increased rate of genomic alteration and an associated acceleration in the rate of multi-step tumor development as described in Chapter 11. Additionally, the absence of p53 function may enable these tumor cells to survive the pro-apoptotic side effects of oncogenes such as *Myc*. This short list reveals how truly catastrophic the loss of p53 function can be for a tissue and, ultimately, for the organism as a whole.

The effects of p53 loss may also be manifested even later, in the event that the *p53*-mutant tumor cells become clinically apparent and targeted for chemotherapy and radiation. The success of most existing anti-cancer therapies is predicated on their ability to damage the genomes of tumor cells, thereby provoking the death of these cells by apoptosis. In some cases, the loss of p53 function renders these cancer cells far less responsive to many of these therapeutic strategies (see Figure 9.7B as an example). In other cases, the absence of the p53-dependent cell cycle arrest response allows cells treated with chemotherapeutic agents to progress into the cell cycle with damaged genomes, which can actually *sensitize* them to p53-independent forms of cell death. Hence, the effects of p53 mutation of cancer therapy are highly context dependent.

Our understanding of the p53 protein remains incomplete, in spite of the vast research literature that describes it. One indication of how much more

needs to be learned has come from attempts at systematically cataloging the myriad post-translational modifications of p53. As we have seen, some of these modifications affect p53's stability and thus intracellular concentration. In addition, they also affect the interactions of p53 with other nuclear transcription regulators that control the genes targeted by p53 action. The number of enzymes that modify p53—as evidenced by the variety of modifications shown in Figure 9.15C—is likely to reflect the number of distinct signaling pathways that impinge on p53 and regulate its functioning. Thus, each of the post-translational modifications illustrated in this figure is likely to affect the physical interaction of p53 with another partner protein in the cell, often a signaling protein.

In the case of the apoptotic response, loss of p53 function is only one of many strategies that cancer cells employ to protect themselves against this form of cell death. Alternative strategies include perturbing the expression of death receptors, their ability to activate caspases, and the activities of the caspases themselves. Yet other defensive maneuvers undertaken by cancer cells help to prevent mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization (MOMP). These diverse strategies (see Figure 9.33) illustrate that the apoptotic machinery, like all well-regulated machines, operates through the balanced actions of mutually antagonistic elements. Cancer cells exploit preexisting anti-apoptotic components of this machinery by increasing their levels or activities, thereby nudging the balance away from apoptosis. These changes in specific components of the apoptotic machinery may compound the effects of p53 loss, further increasing the resistance of cancer cells to a variety of signals that usually succeed in provoking cell death.

Later, in Chapter 17, we will learn about novel forms of therapy that are designed to mobilize components of the pro-apoptotic machinery that remain intact in cancer cells. The hope is that at some time in the not-too-distant future, the circuitry governing apoptosis will be understood with sufficient precision so that we will be able to predict its behavior with accuracy and manipulate it at will within cancer cells.

These discussions of the mechanisms governing apoptotic cell death, which seem to be far removed from the real world, may soon be brought to bear on a major puzzle about human cancer: Why does obesity, as gauged by

body-mass index (BMI), represent a major factor determining cancer incidence? In the United States, obesity represents the second greatest risk factor for developing cancer after tobacco consumption and will soon outpace tobacco as the leading risk factor for developing cancer. An attractive but still-unproven model proposes that obesity increases cancer incidence by protecting incipient cancer cells from death by apoptosis. If this thinking is substantiated, then apoptosis research will soon assume a major role in explaining the onset of cancer as well as the successes that we have in preventing and treating this disease.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Organisms attempt to block the development of cancer through the actions of the p53 protein, which can cause cells to enter cell cycle arrest, undergo senescence, or experience apoptosis in the event that the machinery regulating cell proliferation is malfunctioning or the cells are exposed to various types of physiological stress.
- p53 is a nuclear protein that normally exists as a tetramer and functions as a transcription factor.
- The mutant p53 proteins found in many human tumors often carry amino acid substitutions in their DNA-binding domain. When a mutant p53 subunit forms tetrameric complexes with wild-type p53 subunits, it compromises the normal functions of the wild-type subunits and thus with functions of the tetramer as a whole.
- p53 can impose cell cycle arrest through its ability to induce expression of $p21^{Cip1}$ and apoptosis through its ability to promote the expression of a variety of pro-apoptotic proteins.
- p53 normally turns over rapidly. This turnover is blocked when various signals indicate cell-physiological stress, including anoxia, damage to the genome, and signaling imbalances in the intracellular growth-regulating machinery.
- p53 becomes functionally activated when its normally rapid degradation is blocked. In addition, covalent modifications of the resulting accumulated p53 protein modulate its activity as a transcription factor, directing it to activate the expression of the large constituency of genes involved in various cellular responses, notably apoptosis, cytostasis, and senescence.
- p53 levels are controlled by two critical upstream regulators, Mdm2 and $p14^{ARF}$. Mdm2 works to destroy p53, and ARF prevents Mdm2 from driving p53 degradation.
- The apoptotic caspase cascade can be triggered through the induction of mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization (MOMP), which releases several pro-apoptotic proteins, most importantly cytochrome *c*.

- MOMP is determined by the relative levels of Bcl-2–related anti-apoptotic and pro-apoptotic proteins.
- Apoptosis involves the activation of a cascade of caspases that results in the destruction of a cell, usually within an hour. Apoptosis can be activated by p53 as well as by signals impinging on the cell from the outside, notably those transduced by cell surface death receptors.
- Loss of apoptotic functions allows cancer cells to survive a variety of cell-physiological stresses, including anoxia, signaling imbalances, DNA damage, and loss of anchorage.
- Cancer cells invent numerous ways to inactivate the apoptotic machinery in order to survive and thrive. Included among these are activation of Akt/PKB firing, increase in the levels of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2–related proteins, inactivation of p53 through changes in the *p53* gene or the upstream regulators of p53, methylation of the promoters of a variety of pro-apoptotic genes, interference with cytochrome *c* release from mitochondria, and inhibition of caspases.
- Apoptosis is only one of several forms of regulated cell death that threaten the survival of pre-neoplastic cells. Others include necroptosis, pyroptosis, and ferroptosis.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Considering that DNA tumor viruses must suppress the apoptosis of infected cells in order to multiply, what molecular strategies are available for them to do so?
2. What types of factors influence the decision of p53 to act in a cytostatic versus a pro-apoptotic fashion?
3. How can anti-cancer therapeutics be successful in treating cancer cells that have inactivated components of their apoptotic machinery? Given the physiological stresses that are known to activate p53-induced apoptosis, what types of anti-cancer therapeutic drugs might be created to treat cancer cells?
4. What side effects would you predict could result from a general inhibition of apoptosis in all tissues of the body?
5. How might the loss of components of the apoptosis machinery render cancer cells more susceptible than normal cells to certain types of cell death?
6. Enumerate the range of physiological stresses that induce apoptosis that cancer cells must confront and circumvent during the course of tumor development.

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Ashkenazi A (2002) Targeting death and decoy receptors of the tumour-necrosis factor superfamily. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 410–430.

Baehrecke EH (2002) How death shapes life during development. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 3, 779–787.

Bargonetti J and Prives C (2019) Gain-of-function mutant p53: history and speculation. *J. Mol. Cell Biol.* 11, 605–609.

Bartek J, Bartkova J & Lukas J (2007) DNA damage signalling guards against activated oncogenes and tumor progression. *Oncogene* 26, 7773–7779.

Baserga R, Peruzzi F & Reiss K (2003) The IGF-1 receptor in cancer biology. *Int. J. Cancer* 107, 873–877.

Belyi VA, Ak P, Markert E et al. (2010) The origins and evolution of the p53 family of genes. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 2, a001198.

Blattner C (2008) Regulation of p53. *Cell Cycle* 7, 3149–3153.

Bouaoun L, Sonkin D, Ardin M et al. (2016) TP53 Variations in Human Cancers: New Lessons from the IARC TP53 Database and Genomics Data. *Hum. Mutat.* 9, 865–876.

Brosh R & Rotter V (2010) When mutants gain new powers: news from the mutant p53 field. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 9, 701–713.

Bursch W (2001) The autophagosomal-lysosomal compartment in programmed cell death. *Cell Death Differ.* 8, 569–581.

Calle EE & Kakas R (2004) Overweight, obesity, and cancer: epidemiological evidence and proposed mechanisms. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4, 579–591.

Chandeck C & Mooi WJ (2010) Oncogene-induced senescence. *Adv. Anat. Pathol.* 17, 42–48.

Cichowski K & Hahn WC (2008) Unexpected pieces to the senescence puzzle. *Cell* 133, 958–961.

Collado M & Serrano M (2010) Senescence in tumours: evidence from mice and humans. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 51–57.

Coutts AS & La Thangue NB (2007) Mdm2 widens its repertoire. *Cell Cycle* 6, 827–829.

Eisenberg-Lerner A, Bialik S, Simon H-U & Kimchi A (2009) Life and death partners: apoptosis, autophagy and the cross-talk between them. *Cell Death Differ.* 16, 966–975.

El-Deiry WS (2003) The role of p53 in chemosensitivity and radiosensitivity. *Oncogene* 22, 7486–7495.

Faget DV, Ren O & Stewart SA (2019) Unmasking senescence: context-dependent effects of SASP in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 19, 439–453.

Fulda S and Kögel D (2015) Cell death by autophagy: emerging mechanisms and implications for cancer therapy. *Oncogene* 34, 5105-5113.

Fürstenberger G & Senn H-G (2002) Insulin-like growth factors and cancer. *Lancet Oncol.* 3, 298–302.

Gencel-Augusto J & Lozano G (2020) p53 tetramerization: at the center of the dominant-negative effect of mutant p53. *Genes Dev.* 34, 1128–1146.

Gil J & Peters G (2006) Regulation of the INK4b–ARF–INK4a tumour suppressor locus: all for one or one for all. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 7, 667–677.

Green DR (2019) The coming decade of cell death research: five riddles. *Cell* 177, 1094–1107.

Gyrd-Hansen M & Meier P (2010) IAPs: from caspase inhibitors to modulators of NF-κB, inflammation and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 561–574.

Hampton TJ & Vousden KH (2016) Regulation of cellular metabolism and hypoxia by p53. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 6, a026146.

Hippert MM, O'Toole PS & Thorburn A (2006) Autophagy in cancer: good, bad, or both? *Cancer Res.* 66, 9349–9351.

Hursting SD, DiGiovanni J, Dannenberg AJ et al. (2012) Obesity, energy balance, and cancer: new opportunities for prevention. *Cancer Prev. Res. (Phila.)* 5, 1260–1272.

Joerger AC & Fersht AR (2008) Structural biology of the tumor suppressor p53. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 77, 557–582.

Kaiser AM & Attardi LD (2018) Deconstructing networks of p53-mediated tumor suppression in vivo. *Cell Death Differ*. 25, 93–103.

Kale J, Osterlund EJ & Andrews DW (2018) BCL-2 family proteins: changing partners in the dance towards death *Cell Death Differ.* 25, 65–80.

Kalkavan H & Green DR (2018) MOMP, cell suicide as a BCL-2 family business. *Cell Death Differ.* 25, 46–55.

Karin M & Lin A (2002) NF-κB at the crossroads of life and death. *Nat. Immunol.* 3, 221–227.

Kastenhuber ER & Lowe SW (2017) Putting p53 in Context. *Cell* 170, 1062–1078.

Kroemer G & White E (2010) Autophagy for the avoidance of degenerative, inflammatory, infectious and neoplastic disease. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 22, 121–123.

Kuilman T, Michaloglou C, Mooi WJ & Peeper DS (2010) The essence of senescence. *Genes Dev.* 24, 2463–2479.

Larsson O, Girnita A & Girnita L (2005) Role of insulin-like growth factor I receptor in signaling in cancer. *Brit. J. Cancer* 92, 2097–2101.

Levine AJ (2009) The common mechanisms of transformation by small DNA tumor viruses: the inactivation of tumor suppressor gene products: p53. *Virology* 384, 285–293.

Levine AJ, Feng Z, Mak TW et al. (2006) Coordination and communication between the p53 and IGF1–AKT–TOR signal transduction pathways. *Genes. Dev.* 20, 267–275.

Levine AJ, Hu W & Feng Z (2006) The p53 pathway: what questions remain to be explored*? Cell Death Differ*. 13, 1027–1036.

Levine B & Kroemer G (2008) Autophagy in the pathogenesis of disease. *Cell* 132, 27–42.

Lim YP, Lim TT, Chan YL et al. (2007) The p53 knowledgebase: an integrated information resource for p53 research. *Oncogene* 26, 1517–1521.

Lomonosova E & Chinnadurai G (2009) BH3-only proteins in apoptosis and beyond: an overview. *Oncogene* Suppl. 1, S2–S19.

Maiuri MC, Zaickvar E, Kimchi A & Kroemer G (2007) Self-eating and self-killing: crosstalk between autophagy and apoptosis. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 8, 741–752.

Matheu A, Maraver A & Serrano M (2008) The Arf/p53 pathway in cancer and aging. *Cancer Res.* 68, 6031–6034.

Mathew R & White E (2011) Autophagy in tumorigenesis and energy metabolism: friend by day, foe by night. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 21, 113–119.

Meek DW (2015) Regulation of the p53 response and its relationship to cancer. *Biochem. J.* 469, 325–346.

Meek DW & Anderson CW (2009) Posttranslational modification of p53: Cooperative integrators of function. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.*

a000950.

Meulmeester E, Pereg Y, Shiloh Y & Jochemsen AG (2005) ATM-mediated phosphorylations inhibit Mdmx/Mdm2 stabilization by HAUSP in favor of p53 activation. *Cell Cycle* 4, 1166–1170.

Mooi WJ & Peeper DS (2006) Oncogene-induced cell senescence: halting on the road to cancer. *New Engl. J. Med.* 355, 1037–1045.

Oren M & Rotter V (2010) Mutant p53 gain-of-function in cancer. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* a001107.

Ow Y-LP, Green DR, Hao Z & Mak T (2008) Cytochrome: functions beyond respiration. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 9, 532–542.

Paluvai H, Di Giorgio E & Brancolini C (2020) The histone code of senescence. *Cells* 9, 466.

Perry ME (2010) The regulation of the p53-mediated stress response by MDM2 and MDM4. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 2, 968.

Pflaum J, Schlosser S & Müller M (2014) p53 family and cellular stress responses in cancer. *Front. Oncol.* 4, 1–15.

Plati J, Bucur O & Khosravi-Far R (2008) Dysregulation of apoptotic signaling in cancer: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic opportunities. *J. Cell. Biochem.* 104, 1124–1149.

Pollak M (2008) Insulin and insulin-like growth factor signaling in neoplasia. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 915–928.

Proskuryakov SY & Gabai VL (2010) Mechanisms of tumor cell necrosis. *Curr. Pharm. Des.* 16, 56–68.

Rodier F & Campisi J (2011) Four faces of cellular senescence. *J. Cell Biol.* 192, 547–556.

Sharpless NE & Sherr CJ (2015) Forging a signature of in vivo senescence. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 15, 397–408.

Siegmund D, Lang I & Wajant H (2017) Cell death-independent activities of the death receptors CD95, TRAILR1, and TRAILR2. *FEBS J.* 284:1131–1159.

Singh R, Letai A & Sarosiek K (2019) Regulation of apoptosis in health and disease: the balancing act of BCL-2 family proteins. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol*. 20, 175–193.

Sinha S & Levine B (2009) The autophagy effector Beclin 1: a novel BH3-only protein. *Oncogene* 27, S137–S148.

Tang D, Kang R, Berghe TV et al. (2019) The molecular machinery of regulated cell death. *Cell Res.* 29, 347–364.

Varley JM (2003) Germline TP53 mutations and Li-Fraumeni syndrome. *Hum. Mutat.* 21, 313–320.

Wang, Y-Y, Liu X-L & Zhao R (2019) Induction of pyroptosis and its implications for cancer management. *Front. Oncol.* 9, 1–10.

Williams AB & Schumacher B (2016) p53 in the DNA-damage-repair process. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 6, 1–15

White E & DiPaola RS (2009) The double-edged sword of autophagy modulation in cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 15, 5308–5316.

Xie Z & Klionsky DJ (2007) Autophagosome formation: core machinery and adaptations. *Nat. Cell Biol.* 9, 1102–1109.

Zong WX & Thompson CB (2006) Necrotic death as a cell fate. *Genes Dev.* 20, 1–15.

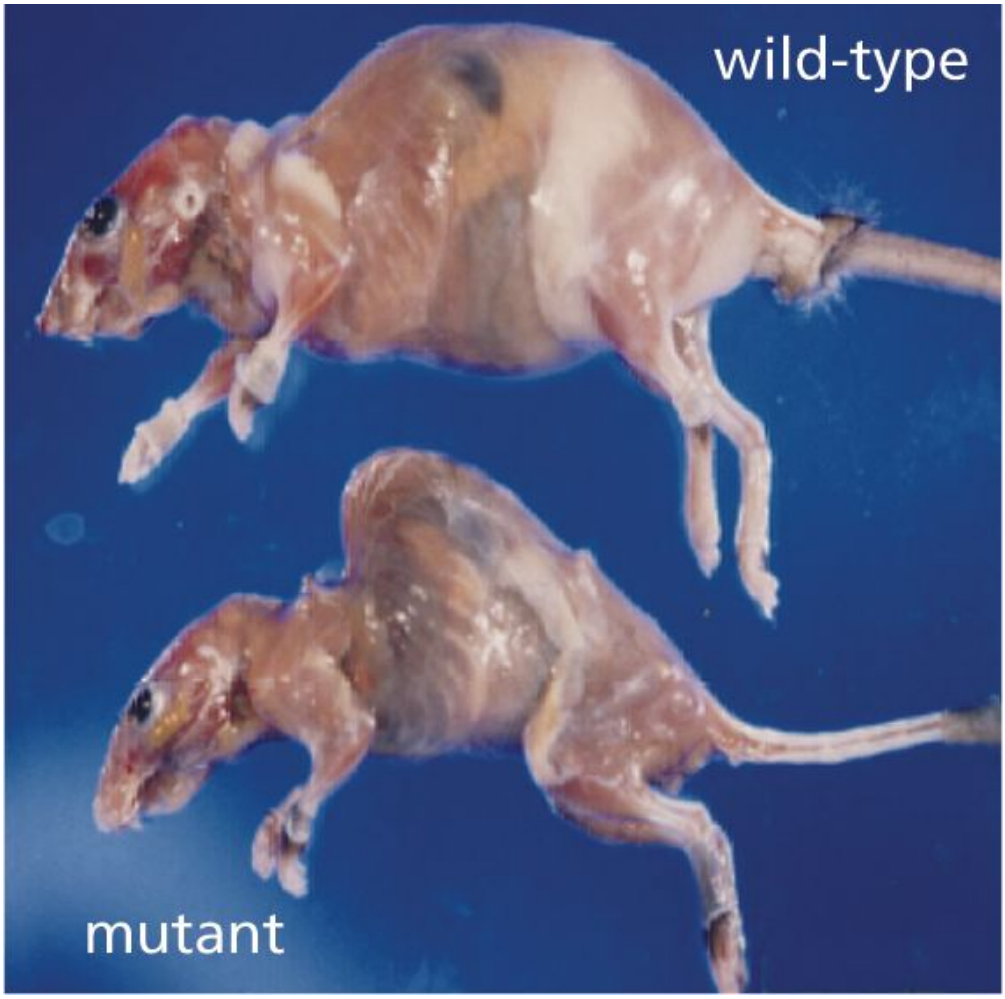
OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

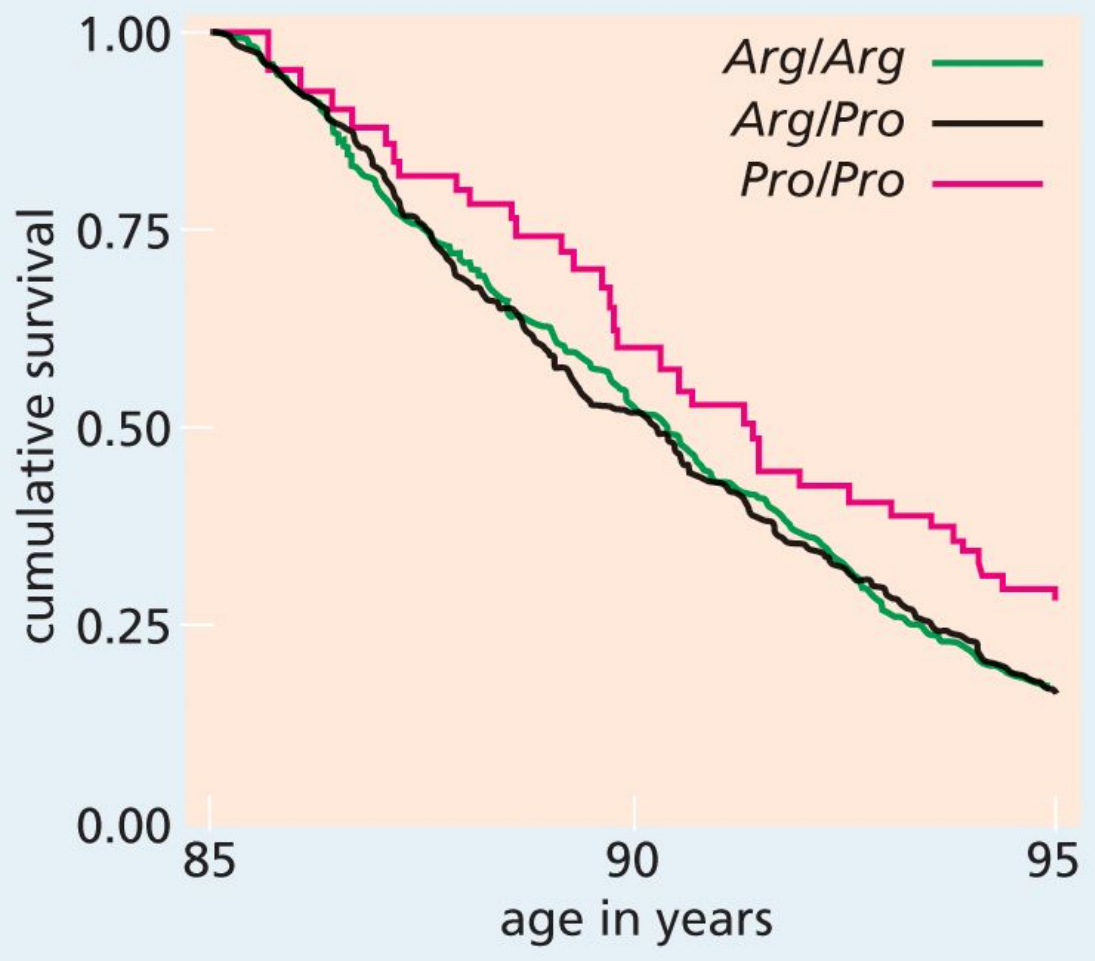
Supplementary Sidebar 9.1 Too much of a good thing: a hyperactive p53 protein causes premature aging

The descriptions of p53 actions in this chapter include ample evidence that the p53 alarm, once activated, provides important protection against the development of cancer. What would happen if a *p53* allele that encodes a constitutively active form of the protein were inserted into the mouse germ line? This has occurred through an experimental accident, in which the first six exons of the *p53* gene were inadvertently deleted during attempts to replace a germ-line wild-type *p53* allele with a point-mutated allele. The p53 protein encoded by this truncated allele behaves as if it were continuously active, even without the alarm signals that are normally required to activate it. Mice heterozygous for this allele are totally protected from the lymphomas, osteosarcomas, and soft-tissue (non-bone) sarcomas that commonly afflict wild-type mice late in life. And fibroblasts from these mice are more resistant than their wild-type counterparts to transformation by a *ras* oncogene introduced *in vitro*. These outcomes, among many others, show that p53 activity does indeed protect tissues from spawning tumors, ostensibly by eliminating cancerous cells before they have had a chance to proliferate into tumors of a significant size.

However, rather than living longer lives, these “cancer-resistant” mice showed a premature aging syndrome, their life span being reduced by some 20%. The accelerated aging included changes frequently observed in aged humans, such as development of a hunched spine, retarded wound healing, reduced replacement of lost white blood cells, plus losses of weight, vigor, muscle mass, bone density, and hair (**Figure S9.1A**). In many tissues, there was a widespread depletion of cells, suggesting a loss of self-renewing stem cells.



(A)



(B)

Figure S9.1 Premature aging induced by an overly active p53 The p53 protein may afford protection against cancer and at the same time accelerate the aging process. (A) A mouse expressing a constitutively active p53 protein (*below*) shows many of the attributes of aging seen in humans, including muscle atrophy and a hunching of the back, when compared with a wild-type mouse of a similar age (*above*); both mice were skinned to reveal the muscle phenotype. These p53 mutant mice also exhibited osteoporosis, atrophy of numerous organs, and diminished tolerance to stress. (B) A prospective study followed the survival of 1226 subjects in the Netherlands beginning at the age of 85. As is apparent from this plot, those with a *Pro*/*Pro* allele (affecting residue 72 of p53) exhibited a markedly improved survival over the course of a decade compared with heterozygotes or those with an *Arg*/*Arg* allele. Although consistent with a key role of *p53* in governing longevity, this striking and statistically significant association does not definitively prove such a role, because it remains formally possible that these alleles are tightly linked with other loci on Chromosome 17 that are the

actual determinants of longevity. (A, from S.D. Tyner et al., *Nature* 415:45–53, 2002. With permission from Nature. B, from D. van Heemst et al., *Exp*. *Gerontol*. 40:11–15, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

These phenotypes are consistent with the idea that p53 plays a role in the aging process, but they hardly prove it. An experiment of nature seems to address these issues more directly: a naturally occurring polymorphism in the human gene pool places a proline residue in place of an arginine in residue 72 of p53. *In vitro* experiments show that the Arg^{72} protein is as much as fivefold more effective in triggering apoptosis than the Pro^{72} form of the protein. An epidemiologic study carried out in the Netherlands of a population over 85 years of age demonstrated that those with a $p53^{Pro/Pro}$ genotype had a 2.54-fold increased risk of cancer (compared with those of a $p53^{Arg/Arg}$ genotype). However, those with a $p53^{Pro/Pro}$ genotype showed an overall 41% greater survival during the period studied (Figure S9.1B). Moreover, deaths from general exhaustion and frailty were observed in 21% of the *Arg/Arg* subjects but in only 6% of the *Pro/Pro* individuals. Observations like these add weight to the notion that increased activity of p53 affords greater protection against cancer but at the same time accelerates the age-dependent deterioration of tissues. Hence, too much vigilance by p53 may impose a heavy price on the organism as a whole.

Supplementary Sidebar 9.2 UV-B radiation, HPV, and cutaneous squamous cell carcinomas

Squamous cell carcinomas (SCCs) of the skin occur with a relatively low frequency in the general population, often in light-skinned individuals, and with a greatly increased frequency in organ transplant recipients, who are immunosuppressed in order to prevent organ graft rejection as described in Chapter 15. These tumors are more threatening than the far more common basal cell carcinomas of the skin, which rarely if ever metastasize. Several human papillomavirus (HPV) types have been found in these lesions, although the etiologic role of these has not yet been firmly established.

Recent evidence provides some insights into the mechanisms by which HPV, acting through its E6 protein, might act synergistically with UV-B radiation from the sun to enable the survival of heavily irradiated skin cells, thereby allowing any UV-mutated cells to persist in the skin and serve, over the long term, as the progenitors of SSC skin tumors. In effect, HPV, acting through its encoded E6 oncoprotein, is able to neutralize p53, thereby creating a phenocopy of the state seen in keratinocytes in which the chromosomal *p53* gene has been mutated and rendered inactive.

Normally, in response to DNA damage, HIPK2 (homeodomain-interacting protein kinase 2) phosphorylates p53 on its serine 46 residue, thereby placing p53 in an configuration that promotes apoptosis (**Figure S9.2**). (In fact, this phosphorylation may prove to be a key determinant of whether p53, acting as a transcription factor, induces expression of pro-apoptotic genes rather than, for example, genes that lead to cell senescence.) Such HIPK2-mediated phosphorylation of p53 occurs not only in response to UV-induced DNA damage, but also following genotoxic damage inflicted by a variety of other agents, including cisplatin and doxorubicin, two commonly used chemotherapeutic drugs.

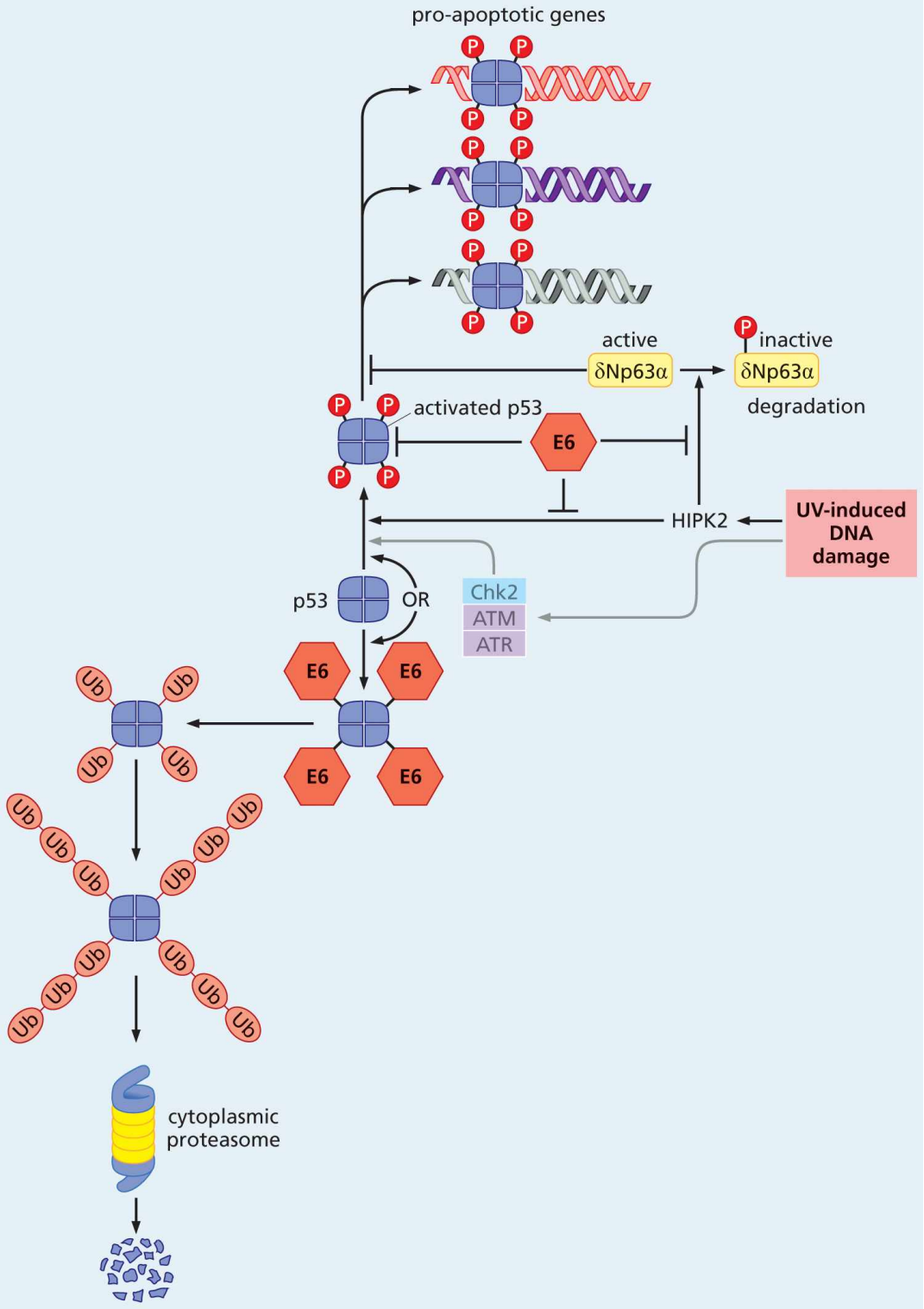


Figure S9.2 HIPK2, HPV E6, and the inactivation of p53 pro-apoptotic functions The HIPK2 kinase is activated in response to severe DNA damage. Once activated, it phosphorylates p53 on its serine 46, thereby converting p53 into a pro-apoptotic transcription factor. [This site of p53 phosphorylation is distinct

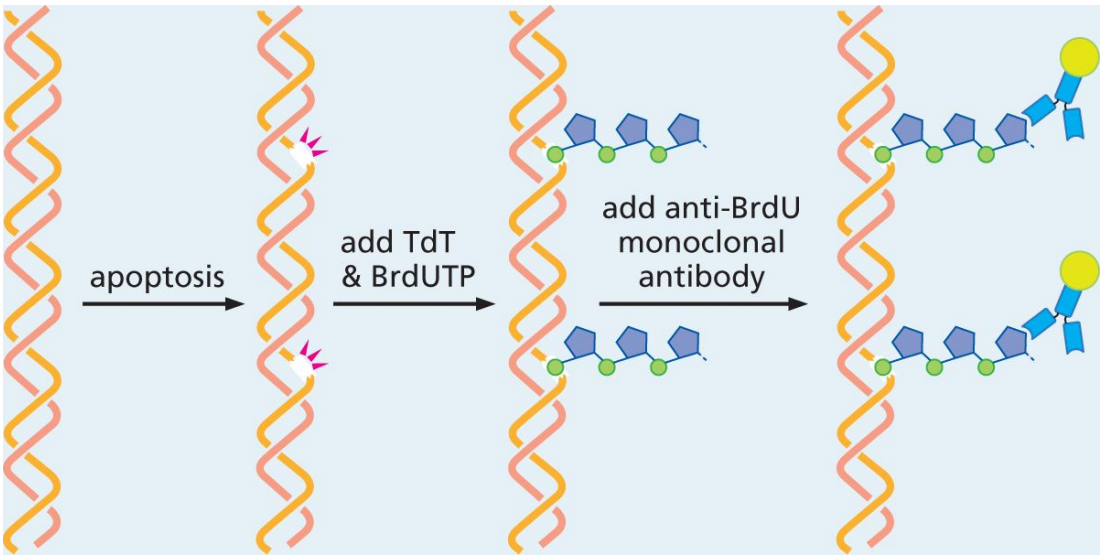
from the sites of ATM phosphorylation (serine 15) and of p53 phosphorylation by Chk2 (serine 20) that are described in Figure 9.15C. Each modification has a distinct effect on p53 function in response to DNA damage.] In addition, the E6 oncoprotein of human papillomavirus (HPV) is deployed by this class of DNA tumor viruses in order to tag p53 for ubiquitylation and destruction in proteasomes (see Table 9.1). Moreover, HPV E6 operates to block the interaction of HIPK2 with p53, thereby preventing p53's conversion, via phosphorylation by HIPK2, into a pro-apoptotic transcription factor. Thus, HPV E6 blocks p53 function via at least two distinct mechanisms, which may provide a mechanistic explanation of how UV radiation and cutaneous HPV types function synergistically to trigger the outgrowth of cutaneous SCCs in humans.

In addition, HIPK2 phosphorylates and inactivates δNp63α, a truncated form of p63, the cousin of p53. δNp63α usually acts as a dominant-negative inhibitor of p53, preventing it from triggering apoptosis. (Its high expression in rapidly proliferating epithelial cells helps to ensure the survival of these cells.)

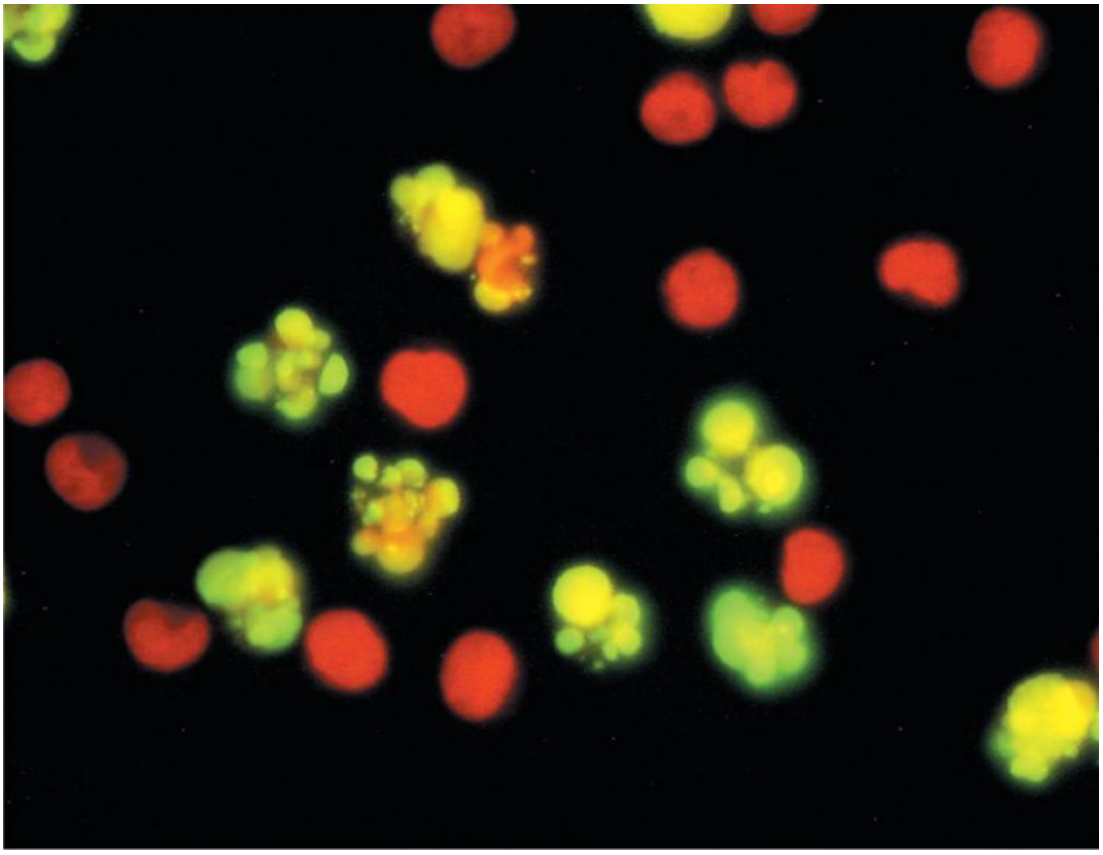
The E6 oncoprotein made by HPV23—a strain of this virus that is commonly associated with skin cancers—is able to bind HIPK2 and prevent this kinase from phosphorylating p53, thereby blocking the signal released by HIPK2 that activates apoptosis. Moreover, by inactivating HIPK2, HPV E6 protects δNp63α from phosphorylation and resulting degradation; δNp63α can then continue to inhibit the pro-apoptotic functions of p53. In addition, E6 blocks p53 function directly; acting together with E6AP, a ubiquitin ligase of cellular origin, E6 tags p53 with polyubiquitin (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**), thereby marking p53 for rapid destruction in proteasomes. In this way, the inactivation of the *p53* gene resulting from UV-B–induced mutations in keratinocytes can be functionally replaced by an HPV23 infection, which acts via two mechanisms to neutralize p53 protein function. Indeed, because the HPV23 E6 protein is able, in principle, to inactivate all of the HIPK2 in a cell, viral infection may be a far more effective way to prevent p53-induced apoptosis than UV-induced somatic mutations of the *p53* gene. This protection of virus-infected keratinocytes allows these skin cells to survive and accumulate additional UV-induced somatic mutations in other genes; the resulting multiply altered cells (carrying both the viral E6 oncogene and mutated cell genes) may then spawn a squamous cell carcinoma of the skin.

Supplementary Sidebar 9.3 The molecular changes that characterized apoptotic cells can be detected by a variety of assays

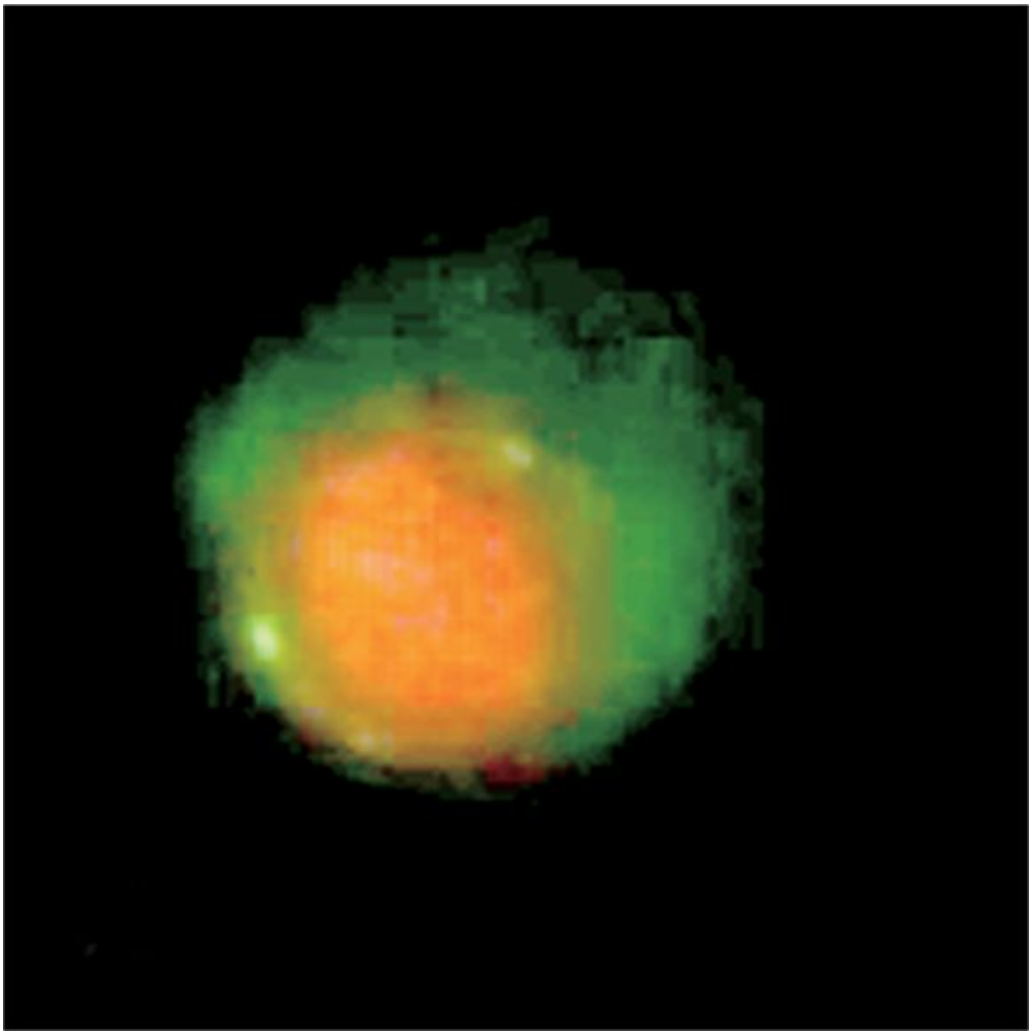
Because apoptosis affects a multitude of cellular components (see Figure 9.19), there are multiple alternative ways by which apoptosis can be measured (**Figure S9.3**).


apoptosis
add TdT
& BrdUTP
add anti-BrdU
monoclonal
antibody

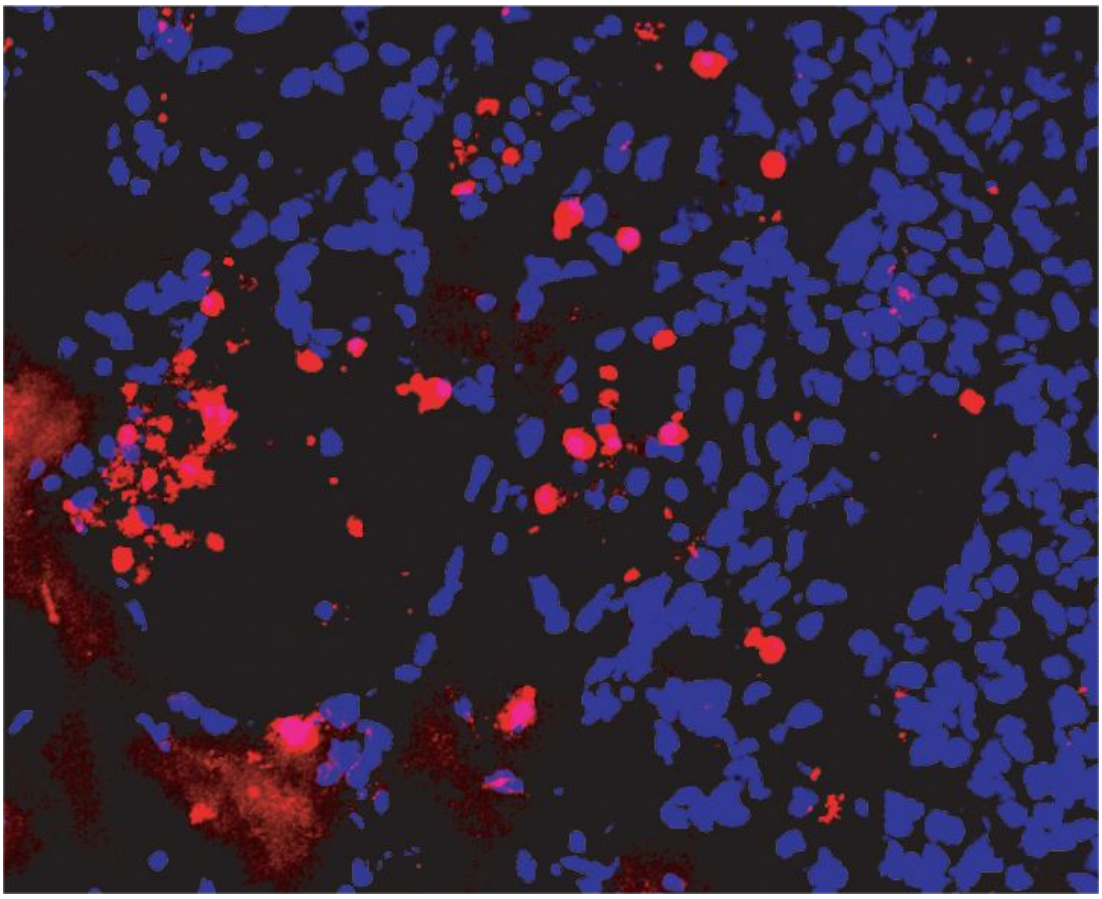
(A)



(B)



(C)



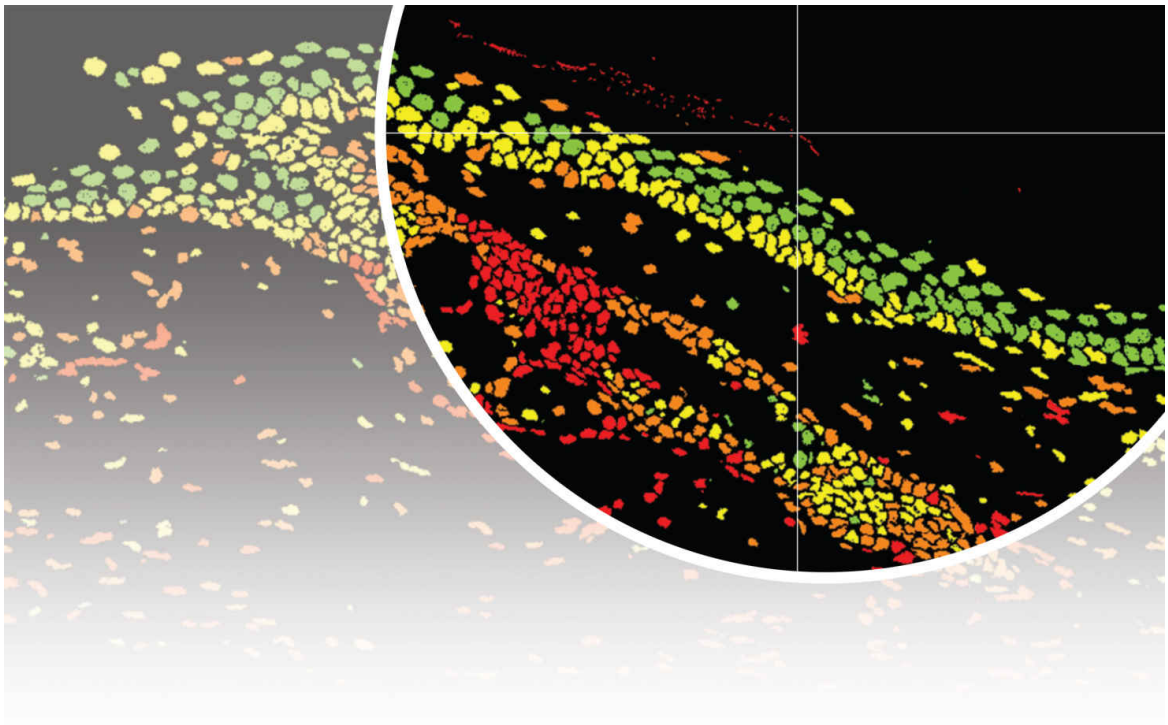
(D)

Figure S9.3 Detecting apoptotic cells (A) Apoptotic cells can be detected because their chromosomal DNA has become fragmented, exposing 3′-OH DNA ends. In the TUNEL assay, these ends are extended by the enzyme terminal deoxyribonucleotide transferase (TdT) using bromodeoxyuridine triphosphate (BrdUTP) as substrate. The resulting BrdU-incorporated oligonucleotide tails can be detected with an anti-BrdU monoclonal antibody that has been coupled to a dye molecule (*yellow-green*). (B) In addition to the apoptotic cells stained by the TUNEL assay (*yellow-green*), cells in this population that have become *necrotic* are revealed through the use of propidium iodide dye (*red*), which is unable to enter cells with an intact plasma membrane but is able to enter freely into such necrotic cells, which lack an intact plasma membrane, and bind nuclear DNA. (C) Early in the apoptotic program, phosphatidylserine (PS) molecules, which are normally exposed on the inner surface of the lipid-bilayer plasma membrane, are flipped and therefore become exposed on its outer surface. PS is bound by the annexin V protein, which here has been coupled to a fluorescent dye and used to detect exposed, cell-surface PS (*green*). Because the cell in this image has advanced to a later stage of apoptosis, its plasma membrane has become

permeable to propidium iodide dye (*yellow-orange*), allowing staining of its nucleus as well. (D) A fluorescent dye–tagged antibody for cleaved (and therefore activated) caspase 3 (*red*), reveals an active apoptotic program (see Section 9.13), and the DAPI stain has been used to stain cell nuclei (*blue*) in cells of an MMTV-Neu transgenic mouse breast adenocarcinoma. (The cancer cells are entering anoikis/apoptosis because they express a dominant-negative integrin β1.) Note that an area of apoptotic carcinoma cells (*left*) contrasts with an area of normal stromal cells (*right*) in which apoptosis is rare. (B, courtesy of Thermo Fisher Scientific. C, from J. Yamamoto et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 12:7132–7139, 2006. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of W. Guo and F. Giancotti.)

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 10
Eternal Life: Cell Immortalization and Tumorigenesis



A false-color image of a human hair follicle in cross-section, with individual cells appearing red, yellow and green against a black background.

Chapter opener photo: From I. Flores et al., *Genes Dev*. 22:654–667, 2008. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.

Death takes place because a worn-out tissue cannot forever renew itself, and because a capacity for increase by means of cell division is not everlasting but finite.

August Weissmann, biologist, 1881

In previous chapters, we read about a number of distinctive traits displayed by cancer cells. In some instances, these traits are acquired through the actions of activated oncogenes; in others, cancer cell–specific traits can be traced back to the loss of tumor suppressor genes. As we will discuss in Chapter 11, the acquisition by human cells of these neoplastic traits (and thus the development of clinically apparent human tumors) usually requires several decades' time.

During this extended period of development, populations of human cells pass through a long succession of growth-and-division cycles as they evolve toward the neoplastic growth state. Such extensive proliferation, however, conflicts with a fundamental property of normal human cells: they are endowed with an ability to replicate only a far smaller number of times. Once normal human cell populations have exhausted their allotment of allowed doublings, the cells in these populations cease proliferating and may even enter senescence or apoptosis.

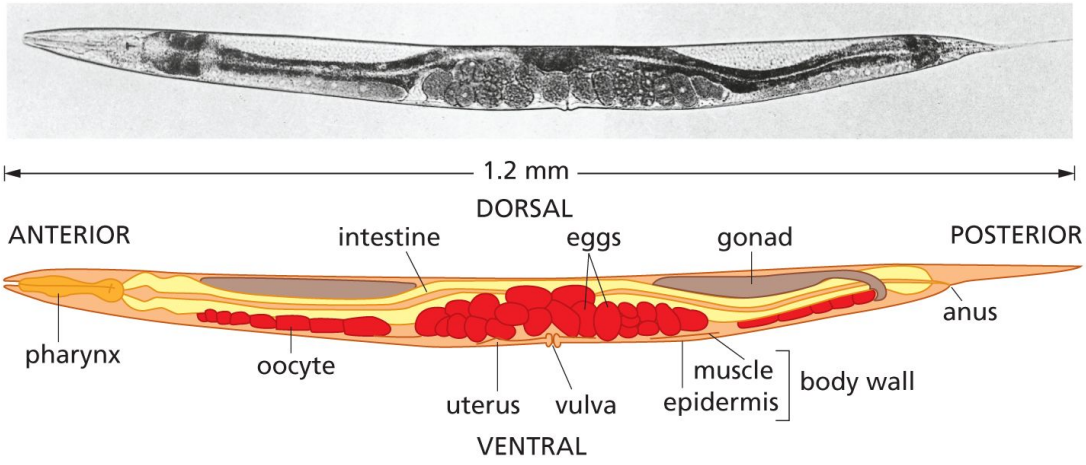
These facts lead us to a simple, inescapable conclusion: in order to form tumors, incipient cancer cells must breach the barrier that normally limits their proliferative potential. Somehow, they must acquire the ability to multiply for an abnormally large number of growth-and-division cycles, so that they can successfully complete the multiple steps of tumor development.

In this chapter, we explore the nature of the regulatory machinery that limits cell proliferation and will see how it must be neutralized in order for cells to become fully neoplastic and form clinically detectable tumors. By neutralizing this machinery, cells gain the ability to proliferate indefinitely—the phenotype of cell immortality. This immortality is a critical component of the neoplastic growth program of many if not all types of tumor cells.

OceanofPDF.com

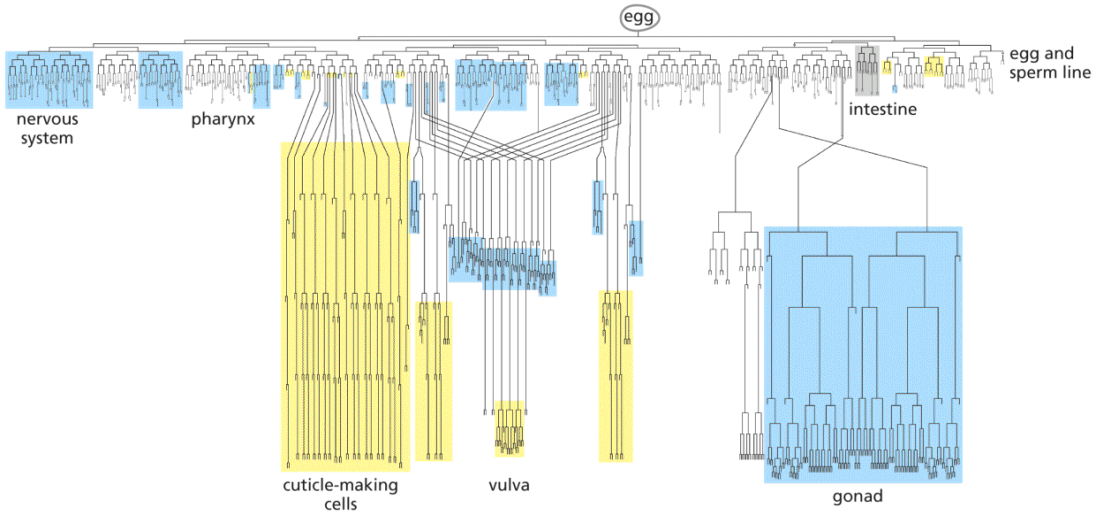
10.1 Normal cell populations appear to register the number of cell generations separating them from their ancestors in the early embryo

In multicellular (metazoan) animals such as ourselves, the origin of each cell can, in principle, be traced through multiple cell generations back to a single ancestor—the fertilized egg. Looking in the other direction, the sequence of cell divisions that stretches from an ancestral cell that existed in the embryo to a descendant cell that exists many cell generations later is often termed a cell lineage. Indeed, in a relatively simple metazoan—the worm *Caenorhabditis elegans*—the lineages of all 959 somatic cells in the adult body have been traced and can be depicted as a pedigree (**Figure 10.1**).



A photo of the transparent worm, which is 1.2 millimeters long. Below the photo is a diagram of the worm's anatomy. It shows, from head to tail, the pharynx, a line of oocytes, intestine, uterus, vulva, eggs, gonad, muscle and epidermis forming the body wall, and the anus.

(A)



A tree diagram showing cell proliferation and differentiation, starting with an egg and producing cells for the nervous system, the pharynx, cuticle-making cells, the vulva, the gonad, the intestine, and egg and sperm line. Many individual branches of the tree terminate early on while others continue.

(B)

Figure 10.1 The pedigree of cells in the body of a worm (A) The adult worm *Caenorhabditis elegans* is composed of 959 somatic cells, and the lines of descent of all cells in this worm have been traced with precision back to the fertilized egg. (B) As is apparent, many of the cell lineages end abruptly because cells stop proliferating or are discarded (usually by apoptosis). The cells in each of the major branches are destined to form a specific tissue. For example, cells in the major, multigenerational branch on the right are destined to form the gonads, whereas those in a small branch at the far left will form the nervous system. (A, from J.E. Sulston and H.R. Horvitz, *Dev. Biol.* 56:110–156, 1977. With permission from Elsevier. B, from A. Chisholm and Y. Jin, eLS, 2003. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

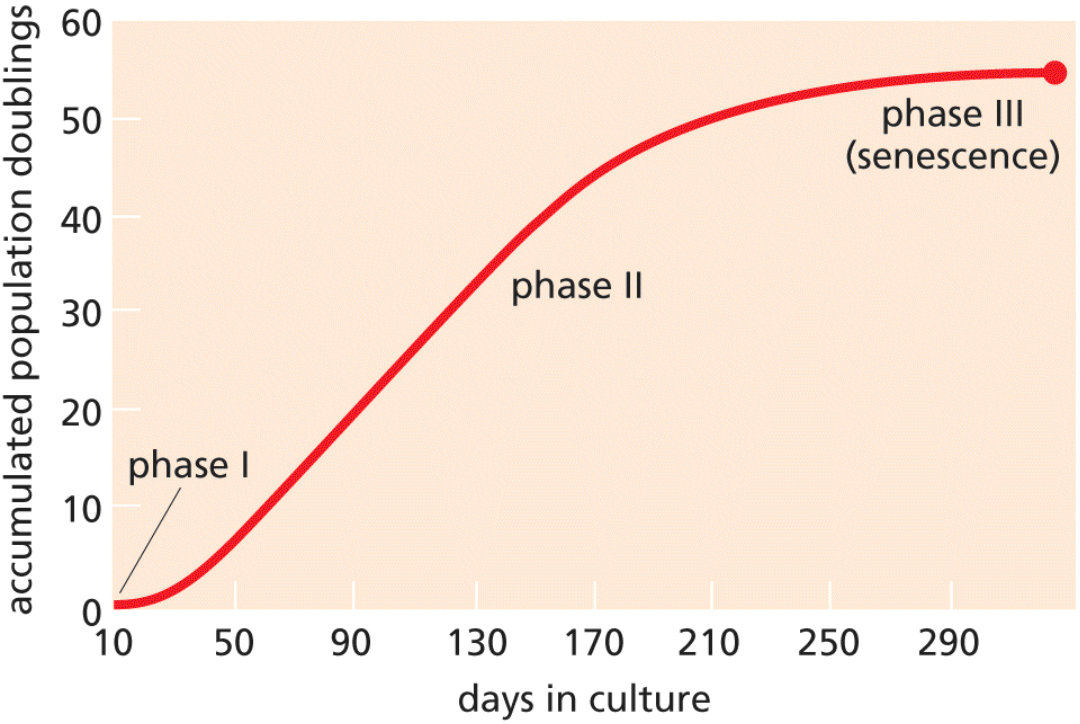
In large, complex mammals, however, the assembling of a comparable pedigree will never happen, because the total number of cell divisions is astronomical: the adult human body, for example, comprises almost 10^{14} cells, and the organism as a whole undergoes as many as 10^{16} cell divisions in a lifetime. Still, we can imagine that for each human body such a cell pedigree must exist, if only as a theoretical construct.

As is the case with *C. elegans*, during the course of human development, early embryonic cells become the founders of specific cell lineages that are committed to assuming various tissue-specific cellular phenotypes, that is, to differentiating (see

Section 8.11). Indeed, the science of developmental biology focuses much of its attention on how individual cells in various cell lineages acquire the information that causes them to enter into one or another program of differentiation. However, developmental biologists do not address a question of great relevance to tumor development: Are there specific controls that determine the number of cell generations through which the cells belonging to a particular cell lineage can pass during the lifetime of an organism? Can each branch and twig of the cell pedigree grow indefinitely, or is the number of replicative generations in each cell lineage predetermined and limited?

To be sure, some cell populations proliferate often in normal tissues, whereas others proliferate hardly at all, further complicating calculations of cell generations (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.1**). Currently available techniques do not allow us to determine with any precision how many times the cells within specific normal cellular lineages within the human or mouse body pass through successive growth-and-division cycles. However, a crude measure of the replicative capacity of a cell lineage can be undertaken by culturing cells of interest *in vitro*. For example, one can prepare fibroblasts from living tissue, introduce them into a Petri dish, and determine how many times these cells will double. (In practice, such experiments require serial passaging, in which a portion of the cells that have filled one dish are removed and introduced into a second dish and allowed to proliferate, after which some of their number are introduced into a third dish, and so forth.)

As first demonstrated in the mid-1960s, primary cells (that is, cells prepared from living tissues and introduced directly into tissue culture) from rodent or human embryos exhibit a limited number of successive replicative cycles in culture. The work of Leonard Hayflick showed that cells would stop growing after a certain, apparently predetermined number of divisions and enter into the state that came to be called replicative senescence (**Figure 10.2**), which closely resembles the senescent state discussed in Section 9.11. As previously described, senescent cells remain metabolically active but seem to have lost irreversibly the ability to re-enter the active cell cycle. Such cells will spread out in monolayer culture, acquire a large cytoplasm, and persist for weeks if not months, as long as they are given adequate nutrients and growth factors; such cells are often described as taking on the appearance of a fried egg (see Figure 9.17). The supplied growth factors help to sustain the viability of the senescent cells, but they are unable to elicit the usual proliferative response observed when the same factors are applied to healthy, nonsenescent cells. Correlated with the unusual appearance of senescent cells are a number of biochemical alterations within these cells.



A line graph showing accumulated population doublings as a function of time. In phase 1, the curve begins at 0 doublings after 10 days in culture. During phase 2, the curve rises to 25 percent after 10 days; this is the steepest point. In phase 3, called senescence, the curve levels out at 55 percent after about 325 days.

Figure 10.2 The proliferative capacity of cells passaged extensively in culture The ability of human fibroblasts to proliferate in culture was gauged in Leonard Hayflick's work by counting the number of times that the population of cells had doubled (*ordinate*). As is apparent, these cells, beginning soon after explantation from living tissue into culture (phase I), were able to proliferate robustly for about 60 doublings (phase II) before entering into senescence (phase III), in which state they could remain viable but nonproliferating; such senescent cells could remain viable for as long as a year. (From J.W. Shay and W.E. Wright, *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 1:72–76, 2000. With permission from Nature.)

The precise number of replicative doublings exhibited by cultured cells before they reach senescence depends on the species from which the cells were prepared, on the tissue of origin, and on the age of the donor organism. Some experiments with human cells indicate that cells prepared from newborns are able to double in culture a greater number of times than comparable cells taken from middle-aged or elderly adults (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.2**). Such behavior suggests that cells from older

individuals have already used up part of their allotment of replicative doublings prior to being introduced into tissue culture.

Although this is the simplest explanation, other explanations are equally plausible. For example, lineages of nondividing cells within a living tissue may sustain damage from, say, long-term exposure to reactive oxygen species (ROS) leaking from their mitochondria. In this case, the subsequently observed loss of proliferative capacity *in vitro* may be proportional to the *elapsed time* since these cells were first formed and may be unconnected directly with the *number of successive cell generations* their lineage has passed through. In fact, certain experiments have raised the question of whether replicative senescence, as defined by Hayflick, is a physiological process operating in living tissues or a reflection of the shortcomings of *in vitro* tissue culture techniques (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.3**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

serial passaging
: Practice of transferring a cell population or viral population from one culture vessel or host cell to another, taking the products of this initial passage, and transferring a portion of them to yet another host cell or culture vessel to allow a new cycle of proliferation, doing so serially and repeatedly. *See* **passaging**.

primary cells
: (1) Literally, cells that have been recently explanted from living tissue into culture vessels and have not been propagated thereafter in culture. (2) More commonly, cells that have been explanted from living tissue into culture dishes and have been subjected to a relatively small number of successive *in vitro* passages thereafter.

replicative senescence
: The cell state entered when chromosomal telomeres have undergone erosion or, more commonly, when cells have experienced cumulative physiological stress over multiple cell generations in culture due to suboptimal conditions of propagation. *See* **senescence**.

OceanofPDF.com

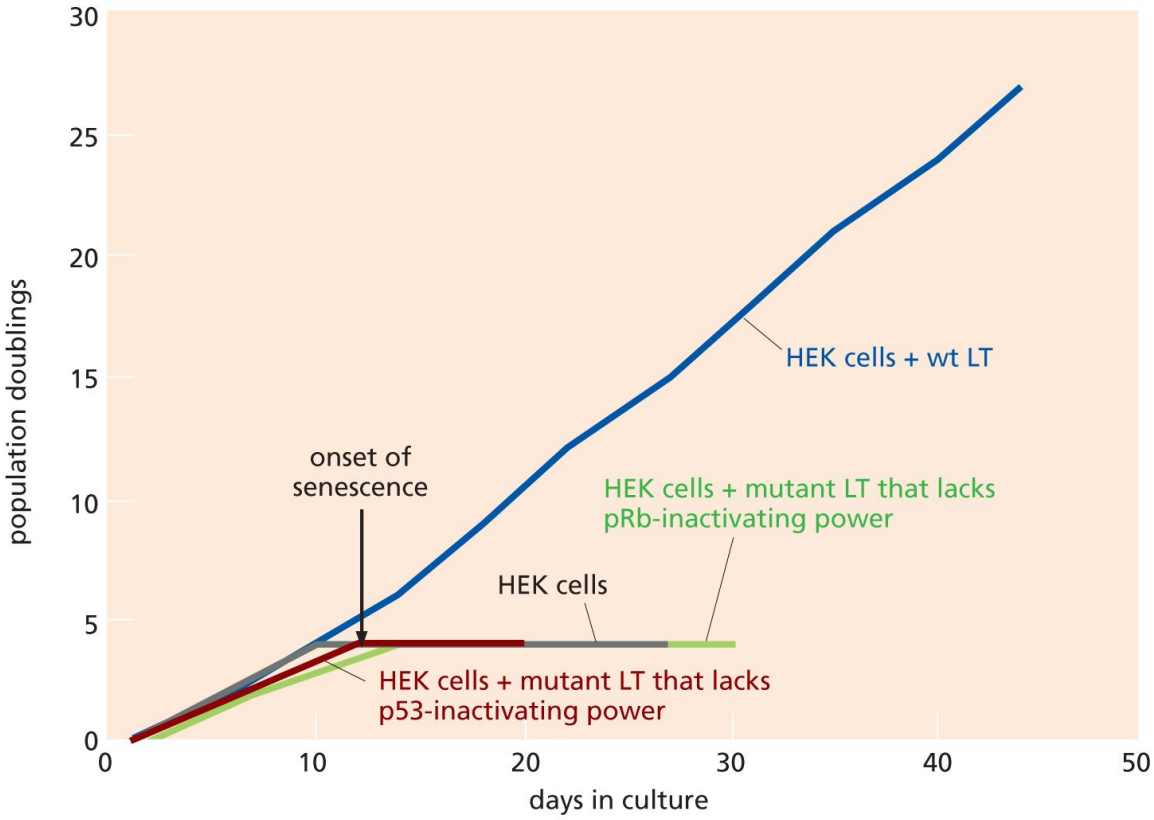
10.2 Cells need to become immortalized in order to form a cell line

Whether or not replicative senescence is a tissue culture artifact, it stands in the way of propagating cell populations over long periods of time using standard tissue culture techniques. Thus, following their extraction from living tissues and introduction into tissue culture, cells almost invariably enter senescence and halt proliferation after an almost-predictable number of cell doublings. This represents a major obstacle for those investigators who would like to propagate cell populations indefinitely *in vitro*, which requires that the cells in these populations have undergone the process of immortalization.

The onset of replicative senescence is accompanied by increasing expression of the two key CDK inhibitors, $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$. As discussed earlier (see Section 8.4), these CDK inhibitors are capable of halting cell cycle advance and driving a cell into a nongrowing state. Taken together, such evidence suggests that these two proteins may actually be responsible for imposing the senescent state on cultured cells. This notion is supported by forcing expression of $p16^{INK4A}$ in cells, which on its own suffices to create a cell-biological state that is similar if not identical to senescence. To complete this logic, various types of cell-physiological stress (including stresses experienced in tissue culture) activate expression of $p16^{INK4A}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$, which proceed to shut down cell proliferation and induce the cell phenotypes associated with senescence.

The prominent role of $p16^{INK4A}$ in triggering senescence is supported by other kinds of experiments: variants of human keratinocytes that succeed in escaping the fate of early senescence *in vitro* are often found to carry inactivated copies of the gene encoding the $p16^{INK4A}$ tumor suppressor protein; by shutting down $p16^{INK4A}$ expression, these cells can ostensibly avoid entrance into a post-mitotic senescent state. Moreover, the early senescence of cultured human keratinocytes can be circumvented by experimentally forced over-expression in these cells of high levels of CDK4; recall that this cyclin-dependent kinase can bind and thus sequester $p16^{INK4A}$ (see Figure 8.11), thereby preventing it from halting cell proliferation.

Imagine that the environment experienced by pre-neoplastic and neoplastic cells within living tissues forces them to cope with a variety of physiological stresses similar to those experienced by cells in culture. One suggestion of this comes from experiments showing that the senescence of cultured normal primary human cells can be avoided by ectopic expression of the SV40 large T antigen (**Figure 10.3**). Large T is able to bind and sequester both pRb and p53 (see Table 9.1) and its ability to do so is critical for circumventing entrance into this state (see Figure 10.3). Recall that (1) the pathways controlled by these two tumor suppressor proteins are also found to be inactivated in the great majority of human tumors, as we read in Chapters 8 and 9, and (2) pRb and p53 serve as the key downstream effectors of the two proteins—$p16^{INK4A}$ and $p21^{Cip1}$—that are induced as cells enter replicative senescence. Accordingly, when cancer cells are extracted from human tumors and placed into tissue culture, the previous inactivation of their pRb and p53 pathways that occurred *in vivo* (mimicking the actions of the SV40 large T antigen introduced experimentally *in vitro*) is likely to help these cells resist many of the stresses imposed by *in vitro* culture conditions and thereby to avoid senescence.



A line graph showing population doublings as a function of time for four different cell types. On the y axis is days in culture from 0 to 50. All cell

types start along the same trajectory. H E K cells, H E K cells plus mutant LT that lacks p R b-inactivating power, and H E K cells plus mutant LT that lacks p53-inactivating power reach onset of senescence after 10 to 12 doublings and the line plateaus. H E K cells plus w t L T continue past 25 doublings along a positive almost linear slope.

Figure 10.3 Role of large T antigen in circumventing senescence
Experiments with a variety of human cell types indicate that both pRb and p53 must be functionally inactivated to ensure that these cells do not senesce in culture. This can be achieved through the expression of the SV40 large T antigen (LT) in these cells. As seen here, human embryonic kidney (HEK) cells senesce after 10 to 12 population doublings in culture (*gray line*). However, if they express the wild-type LT protein (*blue line*), they circumvent senescence and continue to proliferate for an extended period of time. Mutants of LT that have lost the ability to sequester either p53 (*brown line*) or pRb (*light green line*) fail to prevent senescence. Importantly, such cells that have bypassed senescence will eventually enter into crisis, which the expression of LT does not prevent. (Adapted from W.C. Hahn et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol*. 22:2111–2123, 2002.)

This reasoning suggests that avoidance of senescence is critical to the progression and survival of neoplastic cells *in vivo* and that, as a consequence, senescence is indeed a physiological process (rather than being simply an artifact of *in vitro* cell culture). Indeed, diverse observations indicate that a variety of other cell-physiological stresses besides extended *in vitro* propagation can also induce a cellular state that is indistinguishable from replicative senescence. Included among these are hyperoxia (that is, supranormal oxygen tensions leading to intracellular oxidative stress), DNA damage created by endogenously generated reactive oxygen species, X-rays, chemotherapeutic drugs, dysfunctional telomeres (see below), and aberrant signaling by certain oncoproteins, as discussed in Section 9.11. Nonetheless, even when tissue culture conditions are optimized and the SV40 large T oncoprotein is deployed to circumvent replicative senescence, as seen in Figure 10.3, cells will still not possess unlimited proliferative ability and instead will eventually be forced to halt proliferation by a process that is discussed in some detail below and is termed crisis. Hence, a second obstacle to unlimited proliferation (that is, entrance into an immortalized growth state) operates even after the initial obstacle of senescence has been surmounted. Unlike senescence, the obstacle erected by crisis does indeed seem to count the number of successive replicative doublings through which lineages of cells have passed since their origins in the early embryo.

There are, in fact, naturally occurring cells with unlimited proliferative potential *in vitro*: embryonic stem (ES) cells, which are prepared from the inner cell mass of very early mammalian embryos, retain the ability, under the proper conditions, to seed all the differentiated lineages in the body. When provided with the proper culture media, the ES cells show unlimited replicative potential in culture and are thus said to be immortal. (The term is a bit misleading, because it is really a *lineage* of ES cells in culture that is immortal rather than individual ES cells.)

These various observations convey the notion that very early in embryogenesis, cells have an unlimited replicative capacity. However, as specific lineages of differentiated cells in the developing organism (for example, dermal fibroblasts, neurons, mammary epithelial cells) are formed, each seems to be allocated a predetermined number of subsequent postembryonic doublings. This limited proliferative power of the normal differentiated cell lineages contrasts with the replicative behavior of a variety of cancer cells, which resembles, at least superficially, that of ES cells.

This immortalized behavior of cancer cells is illustrated dramatically by HeLa cells. Over the past half century, these cultured cells have been the human cell type most frequently used to study the molecular biology of human cells. They were derived in 1951 from an unusual, particularly aggressive cervical adenocarcinoma discovered in Henrietta Lacks, a young woman from Baltimore, Maryland, who soon died from the complications of this tumor. Ever since that time, these cells have proliferated in culture in hundreds of laboratories across the world, dividing approximately once a day. HeLa cells constitute a cell line, in that they have become established in culture and can be passaged indefinitely, in contrast to many cell populations that have a limited replicative ability after being removed from living tissue. Even more impressive is the history of the cells forming the canine transmissible venereal tumor, one of several cancers that is spread during sexual intercourse from a tumor-bearing host to other members of its species via transmission of neoplastic cells. Sequencing of the genomes of these tumors, borne by dogs throughout the world, trace the origins of these tumors to a single progenitor cell and tumor that first arose more than 6000 years ago, whose direct descendants have been transmitted via mating ever since. (These tumors thrive even though they are not syngeneic with the hosts that carry them.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immortalization
: Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

crisis
: (1) Cellular state arising when cells lose telomeres of a length that is required to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA, resulting in the end-to-end fusion of chromosomes, karyotypic chaos, and widespread cell death by apoptosis. (2) Clinical state when patients whose tumors have been under therapeutic control relapse into a highly aggressive phase of disease.

immortal
: Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

cell line
: Strain of cells that has been adapted for indefinite propagation in culture.

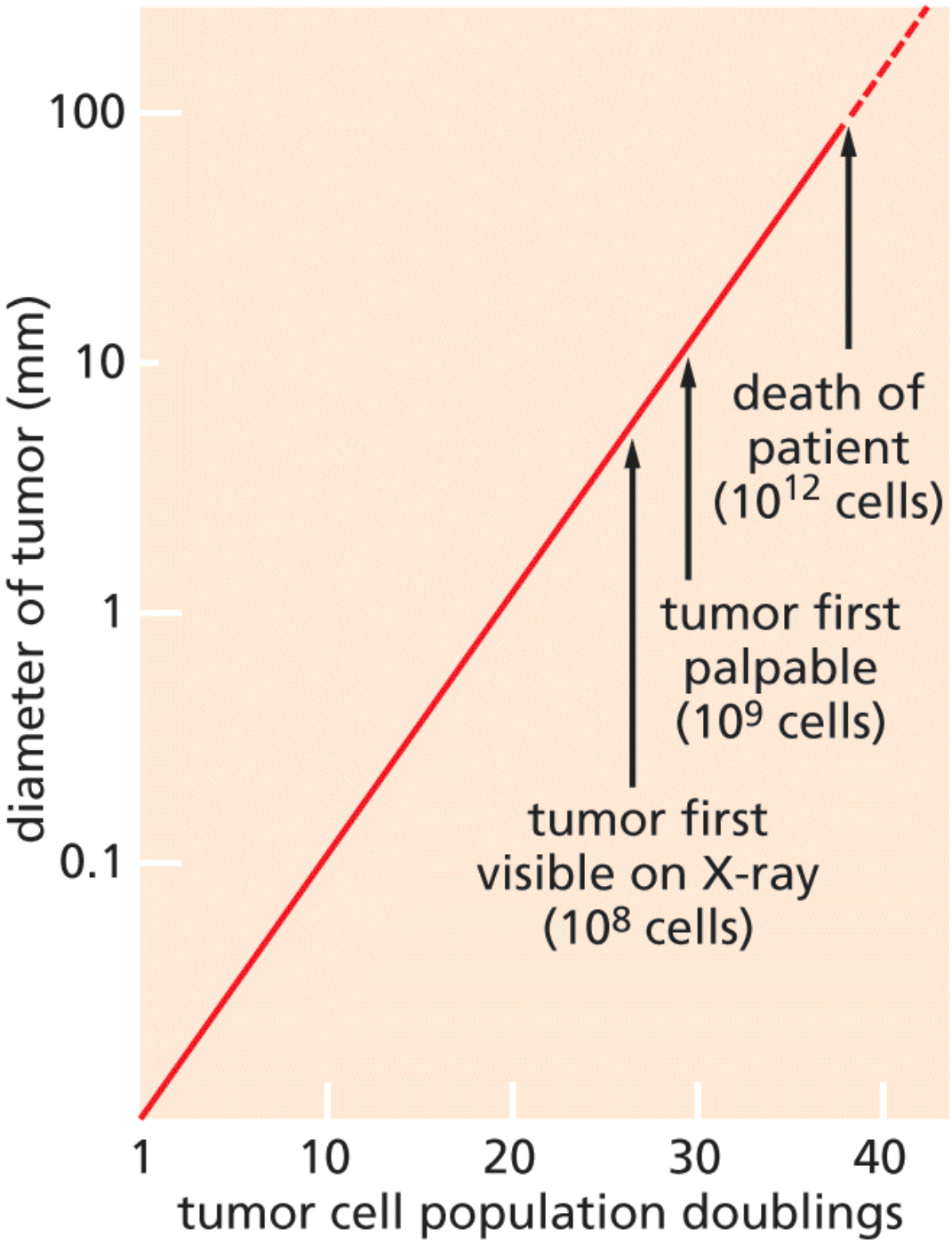
supranormal
: Higher than normal physiological levels.

OceanofPDF.com

10.3 Cancer cells need to become immortal in order to form tumors

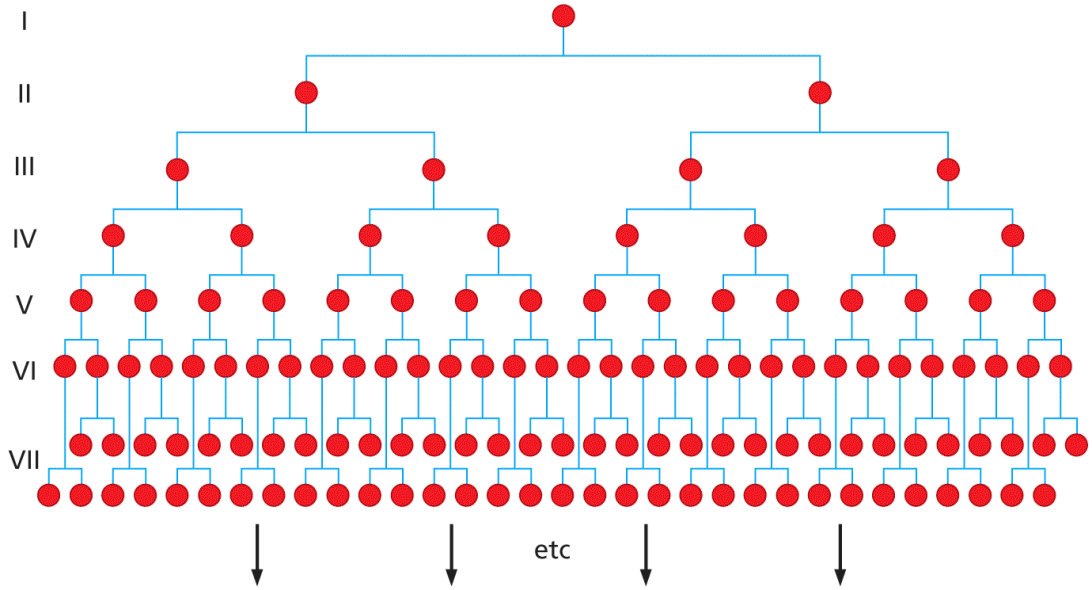
The observation that cancer cells, once adapted to growth in tissue culture, are often found to be immortal strongly suggests that immortalization is an integral component of the cancer cells' transformation to a neoplastic growth state. That is, cancer cells are immortal because they need to be in order to form a tumor. Why, conversely, are lineages of normal cells deprived of immortalized growth properties? Perhaps the body endows its normal cells with only a limited number of replicative generations as an anti-cancer defense mechanism. For example, if one or another cell in the body were to accidentally acquire certain oncogenes and shed critical tumor suppressor genes, its descendants would begin to proliferate uncontrollably, and the population of these tumor cells might well increase exponentially. However, if endowed with only a limited replicative potential, these cells might exhaust their allotment of cell doublings long before they succeeded in forming a life-threatening tumor mass; as a consequence, tumor development would grind to a halt.

The credibility of this model depends on some critical numbers. Specifically, we need to know how many successive cell generations are required to make a clinically detectable human tumor (**Figure 10.4A**) and how many generations are granted to normal cell lineages throughout the body. We know that human tumors are clonal, in the sense that all the neoplastic cells in the tumor mass descend from a common ancestral cell that underwent transformation at one point in time (see Section 2.5). With this fact in mind, we can ask how many cell generations separate the neoplastic cells forming a large human tumor from their common progenitor.



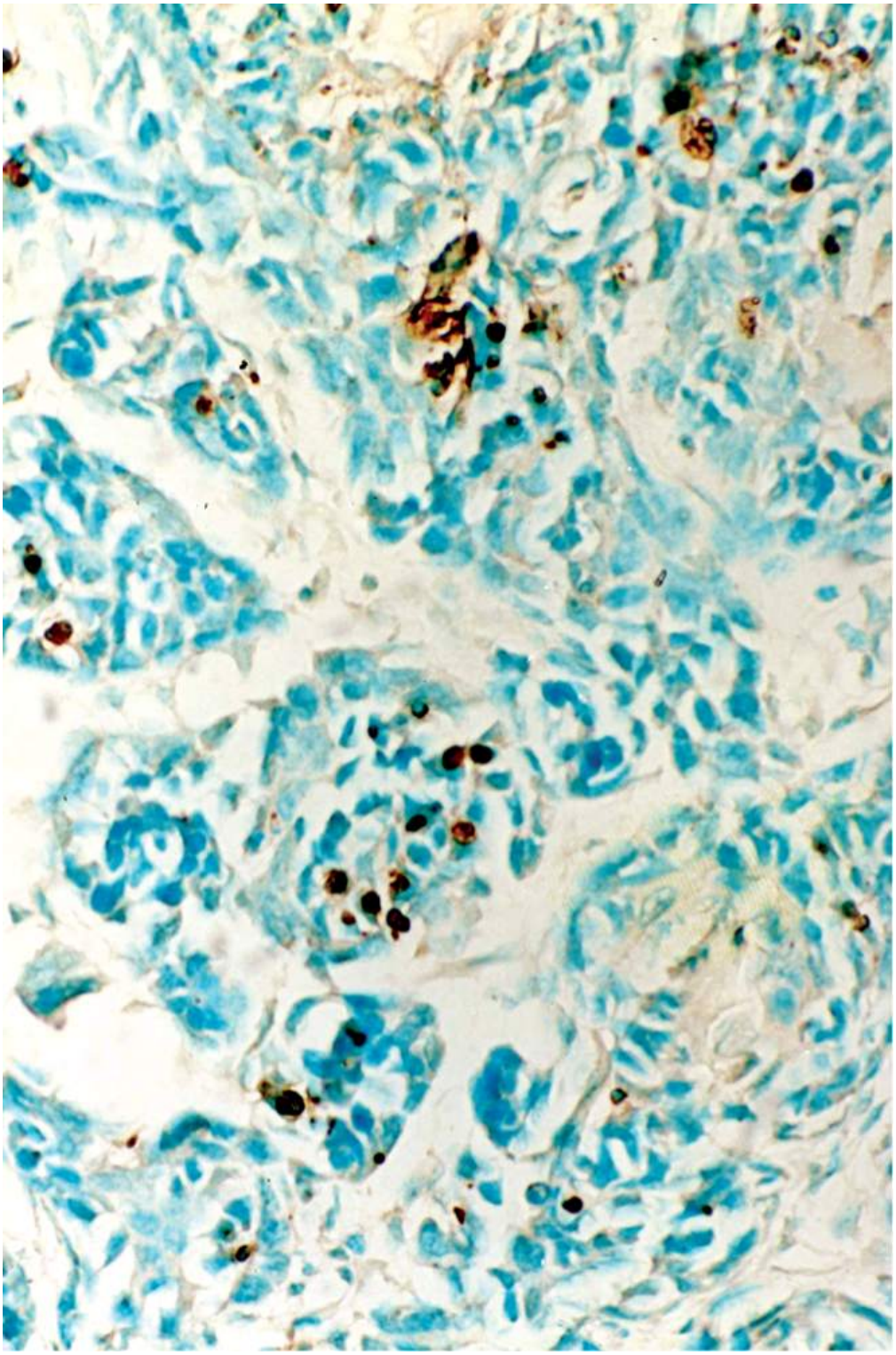
A line graph with tumor cell population doublings on the horizontal axis and tumor diameter in millimeters, logarithmically scaled, on the vertical axis. A straight line runs from 0.01 millimeters after 1 doubling up through 100 millimeters after 40 doublings. Labeled points along the line include tumor first visible on X-ray (10 to the eighth power cells) after 27 doublings, tumor

first palpable (10 to the ninth cells) after 30 doublings, and death of patient (10 to the twelfth cells).
(A)



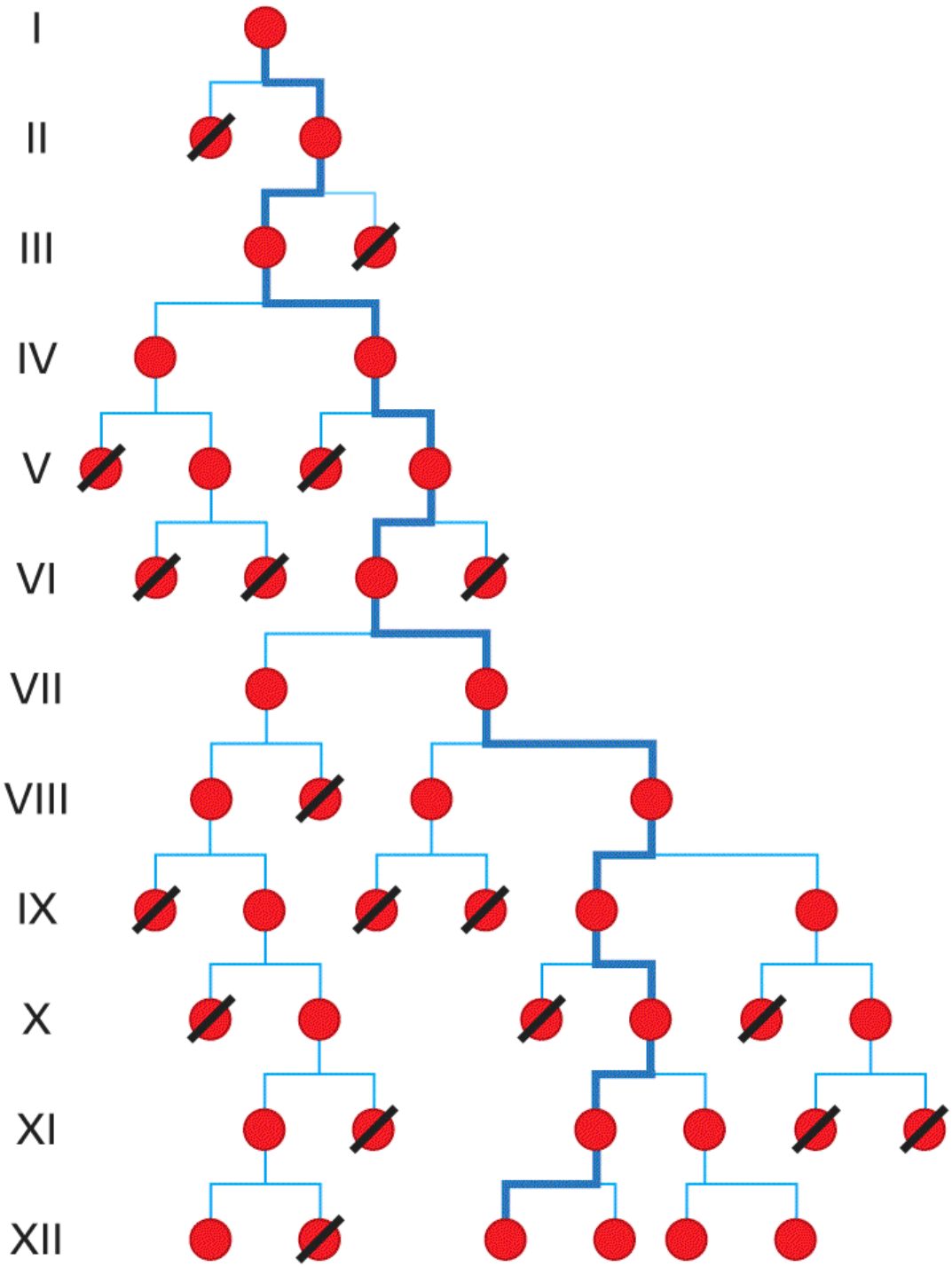
An idealized tree diagram showing successive generations produced by perfect doubling: one cell in generation 1, two cells in generation 2, four cells in generation 3, and so on.

(B)



A histology image in which most of the cells are turquoise blue but a few are coffee brown.

(C)



A realistic tree diagram showing successive generations in which many lines go extinct, so that in generation 12 there are only 5 cells instead of 2 to the eleventh power.

(D)

Figure 10.4 Generations of cells forming a tumor mass (A) The growth of a human tumor—from detectable to palpable to life-threatening size—can be related to the minimum number of cell population doublings of the tumor-associated cancer cells. (B) The plot in panel A assumes that each time the cancer cells in a tumor divide, this cell population as a whole will double in size. (Only six doublings are shown here.) Consequently, the number of successive population doublings theoretically required to generate a lethal tumor from a single founding ancestral cell can be calculated from the graph in panel A to be about 40. (C) In reality, cell populations that are evolving toward the neoplastic state or are already neoplastic experience substantial attrition during each cell generation. This attrition is evident from the apoptotic cells—detected here by the *dark brown* staining of the TUNEL assay (see Figure 9.12)—in a mammary tumor that arose in a mouse carrying an oncogenic *Wnt-1* transgene in its germ line. In fact, this assay greatly underestimates the rate of apoptosis in each cell generation, because apoptotic cells persist only for an hour before they are consumed by neighboring cells and by macrophages. Moreover, cancer cells within a tumor may become senescent and thereby enter irreversibly into a post-mitotic state. (D) The high rate of attrition leads to loss of many cells in each cell generation (*diagonal slashes*). Accordingly, an ancestral founder cell that should have generated 2^{11} descendants leaves instead only five descendants in the 12th generation. The number of successive cell generations required to generate a tumor of life-threatening size is therefore far larger and, in the absence of precise knowledge of attrition rates, incalculable. Also shown is the *lineage* of a cell in the 12th generation (*thick blue line*). (A, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 6th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2015. C, courtesy of L.D. Attardi and T. Jacks.)

The arithmetic works out like this. The volume of a cubic centimeter (cm^3) within a tumor cell mass contains about 10^9 cells, and a life-threatening human tumor has a size, say, of 10^3 cm^3. We can calculate that these 10^{12} cells seem to have arisen following 40 cycles of exponential growth and division (Figure 10.4B)—that is, 40 cell generations separate the founding cell from its descendants in the end-stage, highly aggressive tumor ($10^3 \approx 2^{10}$; hence $10^{12} \approx 2^{40}$).

In fact, some types of normal human cells are known to pass through 50 or 60 cycles of growth and division in culture before they stop growing. According to the arithmetic above, and assuming that these numbers shed light on the proliferative potential of normal cells *in vivo*, these 50 or 60 cell generations of exponential growth are far more than are required in order for a founding cell to spawn enough descendants to constitute a life-threatening tumor mass. Indeed, 60 cell doublings suffice to create a tumor mass of 10^{15} to 10^{18} cells $\approx 10^9$ $cm^3 \approx 10^6$ kilograms. Something is drastically wrong with these numbers!

The error in our calculations lies in a flawed premise: they assume an exponential expansion of populations of cancer cells (see Figure 10.4B). The biological reality of tumor growth is much different. Thus, a number of defense mechanisms built into the body's cells and tissues (for example, see Chapters 7 and 8) make life very difficult for incipient cancer cells, indeed, so difficult that in each cell generation, a significant number of these cells die off (Figure 10.4C). Early in tumor development, the defense mechanisms deployed by the tissues around them include depriving tumor cells of growth factors, of adequate oxygen, and of the ability to eliminate metabolic wastes via the vasculature. Moreover, a number of the anti-tumor cell defense mechanisms operating in the hard-wired regulatory circuitry of cells operate to weed out aberrantly behaving, premalignant cells (as described in Chapter 9). As a consequence of the resulting attrition in each cell generation, the pedigree of cells in a tumor mass actually looks quite different (Figure 10.4D). Many branches of the tree are continually being pruned by the high death rate of tumor cells in each generation.

This ongoing attrition (**Sidebar 10.1**) means that the number of cell generations required to form a tumor mass of a given size is vastly greater than would be predicted by simple exponential growth kinetics. For example, a clonal population of 10^3 tumor cells might be thought, on the basis of its size, to have gone through 10 successive cycles of exponential growth and division since its founding by an ancestral cell; in reality, 20 or 30 or more cell generations may have been required to accumulate this many cells. (Figure 10.4D illustrates as well the *lineage* of a cell in a population of descendant cells.) Yet other calculations provide strong indication of extensive attrition of cells during neoplastic progression (**Sidebar 10.2**).

Sidebar 10.1 A key cause of attrition: a poisonous dose of Ras

A *ras* oncogene has been found to induce cell senescence when introduced into cultured cells by a viral vector, suggesting paradoxically that this potent transforming gene acts more to halt cell proliferation than to foster it. This result on its own created a puzzle, in that it suggested that virtually all cells that acquire a *ras* oncogene by somatic mutation were shunted immediately into the post-mitotic senescent state rather than becoming precursors of vigorously growing tumors.

Some years later, researchers explored these effects by using a different experimental strategy to establish a *ras* oncogene in cells: this strategy relied on activating an endogenous, chromosomal *ras* proto-oncogene in a genetically modified strain of mice (see Sidebar 7.5). This activation could be targeted to a specific tissue and induced by an experimental stimulus. Under these conditions, *ras* activation in the lungs and in the gastrointestinal tract resulted in hyperplasias (rather than senescence). Similar results could be observed in the pancreas and in the myeloid compartment of the bone marrow.

The critical difference here could be traced to how the *ras* oncogene was being expressed: in the earlier *in vitro* experiments, its expression was driven by a highly active transcriptional promoter present within a recombinant viral vector (see **Supplementary Sidebar 3.9**), whereas in the later mouse experiments, the oncogene was present in single copy number per cell and was being driven by its own native transcriptional promoter. This later experimental strategy recapitulated the state of cells that have acquired a *ras* oncogene through the process of point mutation. Hence, the critical difference came from the *level* of expression, which suggested that *ras* oncogenes created by somatic mutations can "fly under the radar" of the surveillance system that is designed to immediately weed out mutant, potentially neoplastic cells through the induction of senescence.

Interestingly, as tumor progression proceeded in the lung cancer model, the *ras* oncogene, initially present in single copy number in premalignant lung adenomas, underwent amplification. Prior to this time, the presence or absence of a functional *p53* gene had little if any effect on these early-stage lung adenomas; however, once the *ras* oncogene underwent amplification, elimination of p53 function became critical to permit the survival and continued expansion of the cells in the resulting, more aggressive adenocarcinomas. (Such p53 inactivation ostensibly allowed the evolving tumor cells to avoid the senescence that would otherwise be provoked by higher levels of Ras signaling; the elevated levels of Ras oncoprotein, for its part, appeared to provide these cells with increased mitogenic stimulation and thus enhanced proliferation.) Of note, this mouse model of lung cancer development reflects the behavior of many human tumors, in which mutant *ras* oncogenes undergo amplification as tumor progression proceeds. As the sixteenth-century alchemist Paracelsus put it, "the dose makes the poison."

Sidebar 10.2 Ongoing attrition makes the numbers add up

The profound effects of continual cell attrition are highlighted by observations of the genomes of the carcinoma cells forming human colorectal primary carcinomas and metastases. By measuring the frequency of randomly acquired point mutations present throughout these genomes, which accumulate at a predictable rate per cell generation together with other metrics of cumulative successive cell generations, investigators have estimated that in some of these tumors, many hundreds of cell generations intervene between the founding neoplastic cell and those cells present in a surgically resected tumor. In the absence of frequent, ongoing attrition, the founding cell would have spawned, as an example, $\sim 2^{500} = \sim 10^{150}$ cells, and such cells would weigh, in aggregate, ~1012 kilograms =~10 billion times the weight of a (large) human body.

These revised calculations provide credible support for the notion that the human body endows its cell lineages with only a limited number of growth-and-division cycles in order to protect itself against the development of tumors. For example, if cell populations must pass through a succession of 100 replicative generations in order to form a clinically detectable human tumor, it is plausible that most incipient tumor cell populations will exhaust their normal allotment of 50 or 60 cell divisions long before they succeed in creating such a mass.

Having accepted, at least for the moment, this argument and its conclusions, we are now left with some major puzzles: How can normal cells throughout the body possibly remember their replicative history? And how can aspiring cancer cells erase the memory of this history and acquire the ability to proliferate indefinitely, or at least as long as is required to form a macroscopic, clinically detectable tumor?

A solution to the problem of replicative history must, sooner or later, be spelled out in terms of the actions of specific molecules within cells. Whatever its nature, the solution is hardly an obvious one. Organisms as complex as humans possess no innate biological clock for counting the number of (organismic) generations that separate each of us from ancestors who lived 100 or 1000 years ago. When we humans wish to learn the number of these generations over extended periods of time, we usually hire genealogists to chart them for us. No biological counting device inside our bodies can provide us with such answers. How, then, can far simpler biological entities—individual human cells—keep track of their generations?

In addition, this generational counting mechanism is likely to be, in the language of developmental biologists, cell-autonomous; that is, it must be intrinsic to a cell and not influenced by the ongoing interactions of the cell with its neighbors and with the body as a whole. Recall the contrasting situation of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. The products of most of these genes perturb the pathways responsible for processing the signals received by cells from their surroundings—*non-cell-autonomous* processes. Finally, the hypothesized generation-counting device must be relatively stable biochemically, because it needs to store a record of the past history of a cell lineage in a form that survives over extended periods of time, often many decades.

In principle, the counting processes of this “generational clock” (which measures elapsed cell generations rather than elapsed time) might depend on the concentrations of some intracellular molecule that (1) is synthesized early in development and not thereafter, (2) is present in high concentrations in the embryonic cells that are the ancestors to various lineages, and (3) undergoes progressive dilution by a factor of 2 each time a cell in the lineage divides. Senescence might then be triggered after the levels of this compound fall below some threshold level. Though plausible to mathematicians, this arrangement cannot work in the real world of biology.

Biochemistry dictates that no molecule can be present in a cell over a concentration range of 2^{50} or 2^{60}.

This realization forced researchers to look elsewhere for the molecular embodiments of the generational clock. They came upon two regulatory mechanisms that govern the replicative capacity of cells growing *in vitro* and possibly *in vivo*. The first of these appears to measure the cumulative physiological stress that lineages of cells experience over extended periods of time and halts further proliferation once that damage exceeds a certain threshold; this yields the senescence discussed above (see Section 10.1).

The second regulator measures how many replicative generations a cell lineage has passed through and sounds an even more drastic alarm once the allowed quota has been used up; this alarm leads to the state termed crisis, which results in the apoptotic death of almost all cells in a population in culture. Crisis, as discussed below, represents a process and mechanism that can operate to constrain cell proliferation and abort the formation of tumors and, in other settings, paradoxically fosters tumor progression.

OceanofPDF.com

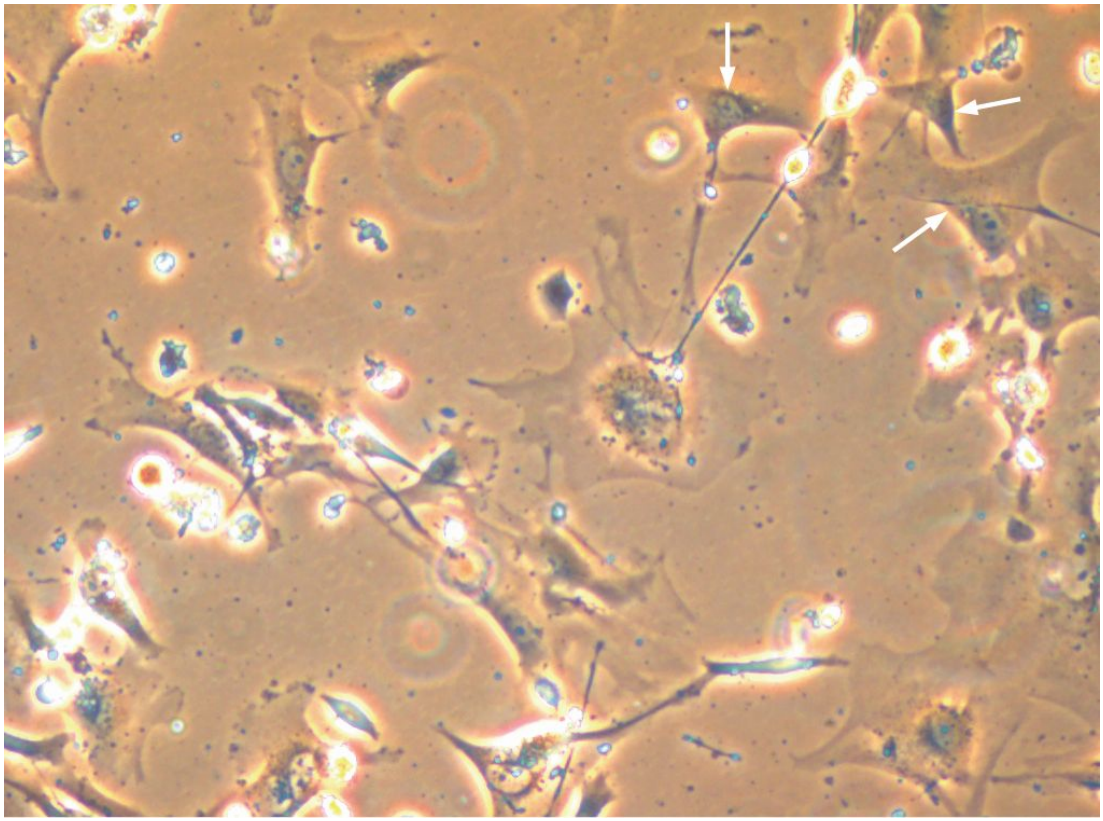
Glossary

cell-autonomous
: Referring to a trait or behavior of a cell that is governed by its own genome and internal physiology and not by its ongoing interactions with other cells and its tissue microenvironment.

OceanofPDF.com

10.4 The proliferation of cultured cells is also limited by the telomeres of their chromosomes

Primary cells, as mentioned above, confront two obstacles to their continued long-term proliferation in culture. The first of these is entrance into a state of replicative senescence and the second, subsequent one involves crisis. To contrast the two, senescence represents a halt in cell proliferation with retention of cell viability over extended periods of time, whereas crisis involves death by apoptosis (see Section 9.13; **Figure 10.5**). Senescent cells seem to have a reasonably (but not totally) stable karyotype, whereas cells in crisis show widespread karyotypic disarray. Moreover, experimental evidence indicates clearly that senescence is more than a tissue culture artifact, but instead operates in a variety of biological states *in vivo* to limit or circumscribe further cell proliferation (see Section 9.). In the case of human embryonic kidney (HEK) cells propagated *in vitro*, expression of the SV40 large T oncoprotein enables bypass of the first hurdle—senescence (see Figure 10.3)—but it will fail, on its own, to immortalize these cells. Thus, after an additional number of cell generations—sometimes 10 to 20—beyond the time when they would usually senesce, cell populations enter into crisis and exhibit widespread apoptosis. The SV40 large T antigen, even with its potent p53-inactivating ability, clearly does not protect against the apoptotic death associated with crisis.



A microscope photo with dark, irregular patches, identified by arrows as normal cells, and bright round flecks, which represent fragments of disintegrated cells.

Figure 10.5 Apoptosis associated with cell populations in crisis Cell populations in crisis show widespread apoptosis, with a high percentage of cells in the midst of disintegrating and numerous cell fragments (*white refractile spots*). Because populations of cells enter into crisis asynchronously, some of the cells in such populations still appear relatively normal (*arrows, top right*). (Courtesy of S.A. Stewart.)

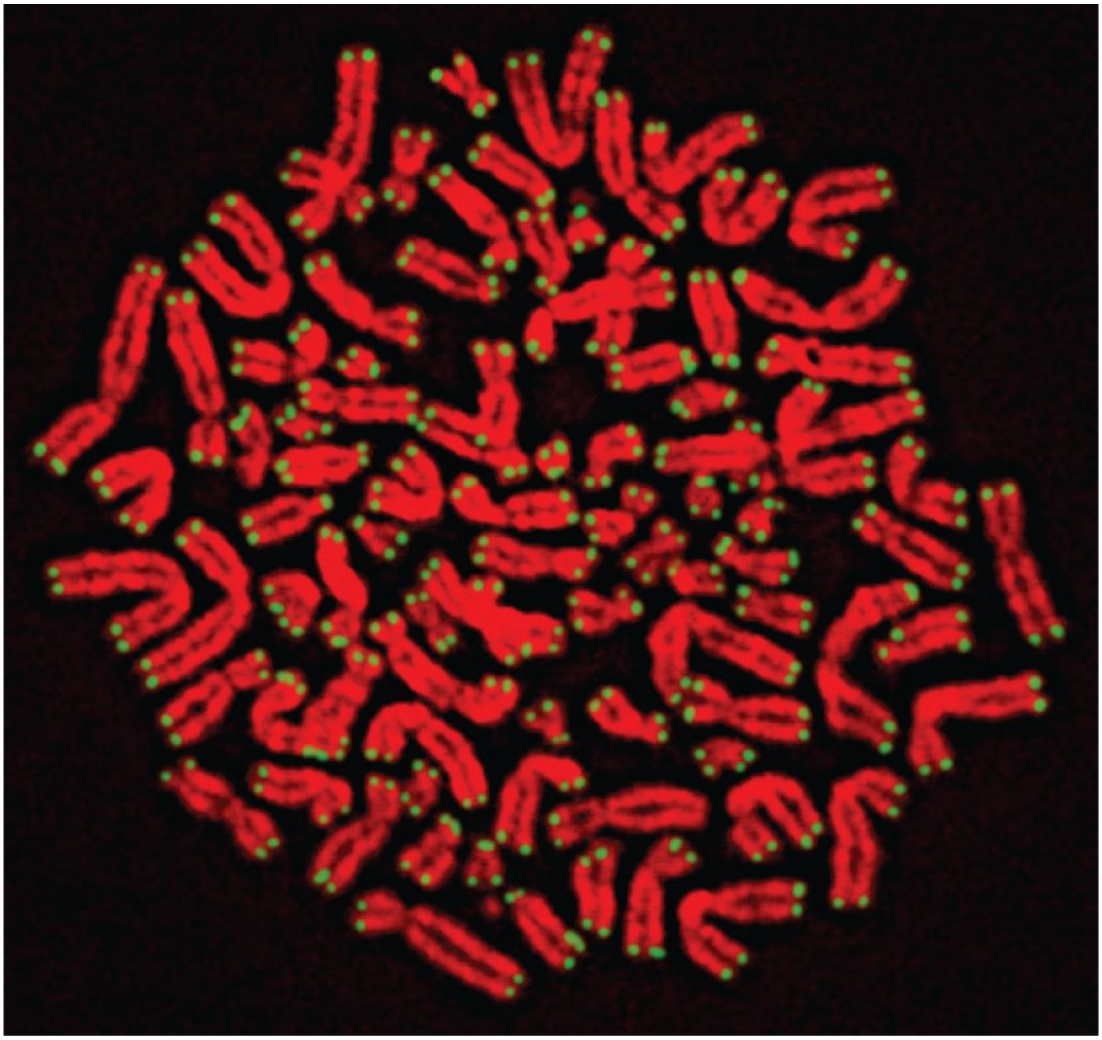
The timing of crisis and the appearance of cells in crisis suggest the involvement of a second mechanism, one operating independently of the mechanisms triggering senescence described above. The workings of this second mechanism have been traced back to the chromosomal DNA of cells. Unlike the mechanisms leading to senescence, the molecular apparatus that initiates crisis is truly a functional counting device that tallies how many successive growth-and-division cycles cell lineages have passed through since their founding in the early embryo.

At first glance, the chromosomal DNA would seem to be an unlikely site for mammalian cells to construct such a “generational clock.” We know that the structure

of chromosomal DNA is highly stable and therefore should be unchanged from one cell generation to the next. A generational clock, in contrast, must depend on some progressive molecular change that is noted and recorded during each cell generation. How can chromosomal DNA molecules, which seem to be so immutable, register an additional cell generation each time a cell passes through a growth-and-division cycle?

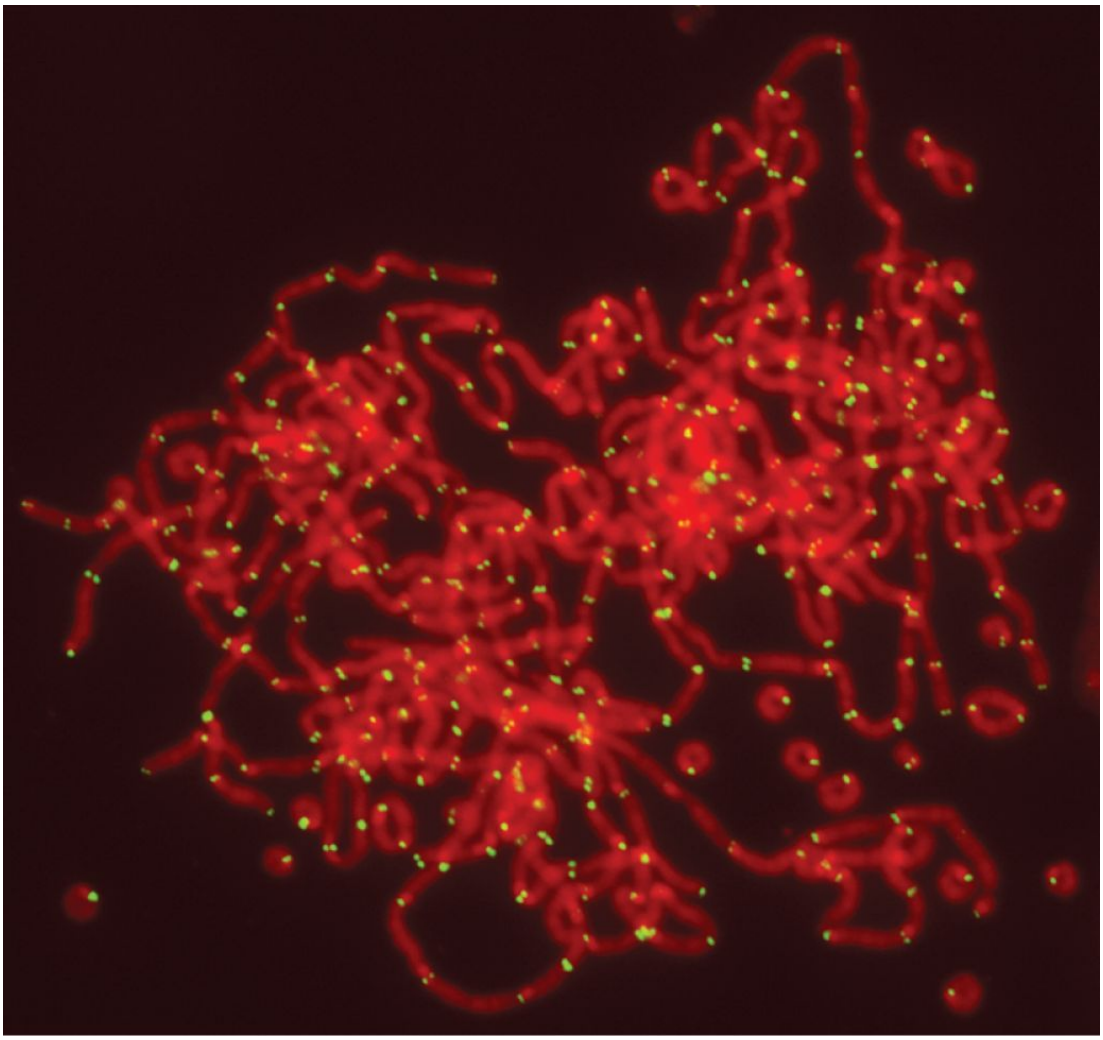
The key lies in the structure of chromosomal DNA: each mammalian chromosome carries a single, extremely long DNA molecule (ranging from ~247 mb for Chromosome 1 to ~47 mb for Chromosome 21). As it turns out, the two ends of this linear DNA molecule create a serious problem for the cell—a problem dramatically revealed by the experimental technique of DNA transfection (see Section 4.1). After entering cells, transfected linear DNA molecules are rapidly fused end-to-end through the actions of a variety of nucleases and DNA ligases that are active in most if not all mammalian cell types. Hence, linear DNA molecules are intrinsically unstable in our cells, yet the linear DNA molecules forming the backbones of chromosomes clearly persist.

The telomeres located at the ends of the chromosomes (**Figure 10.6**) explain how these linear DNA molecules can stably coexist with the cell's various DNA-modifying enzymes. Telomeres act to prevent the end-to-end fusion of chromosomal DNA molecules and, hence, the fusion of chromosomes with one another. In effect, telomeres serve as protective shields for the chromosomal ends, much like the aglets safeguarding the tips of shoelaces. As we will see, the catastrophic events of crisis are triggered when cells lose functional telomeres from their chromosomes.



A fluorescence microscopy image in which a large number of condensed human chromosomes appear in red, each with four green ends.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image with a single, massive strand of chromosomal D N A appearing in red. Pairs of green dots appear at many points along its length.

(B)

Figure 10.6 Telomeres detected by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization
Telomeres can be detected by the technique of fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH), in which a DNA probe that recognizes the repeated sequence present in telomeric DNA is coupled with a fluorescent label. (A) In this micrograph, human cells have been trapped in metaphase using a microtubule antagonist. The telomeres of the resulting condensed chromosomes (*red*) are then visualized through a probe that labels the telomeric DNA (*yellow green dots*). Each chromatid carries telomeres at both its ends. Because these cells are in metaphase, the paired, recently replicated chromatids have not yet separated. (B) The karyotype seen in panel A can be compared with that of cells that have been

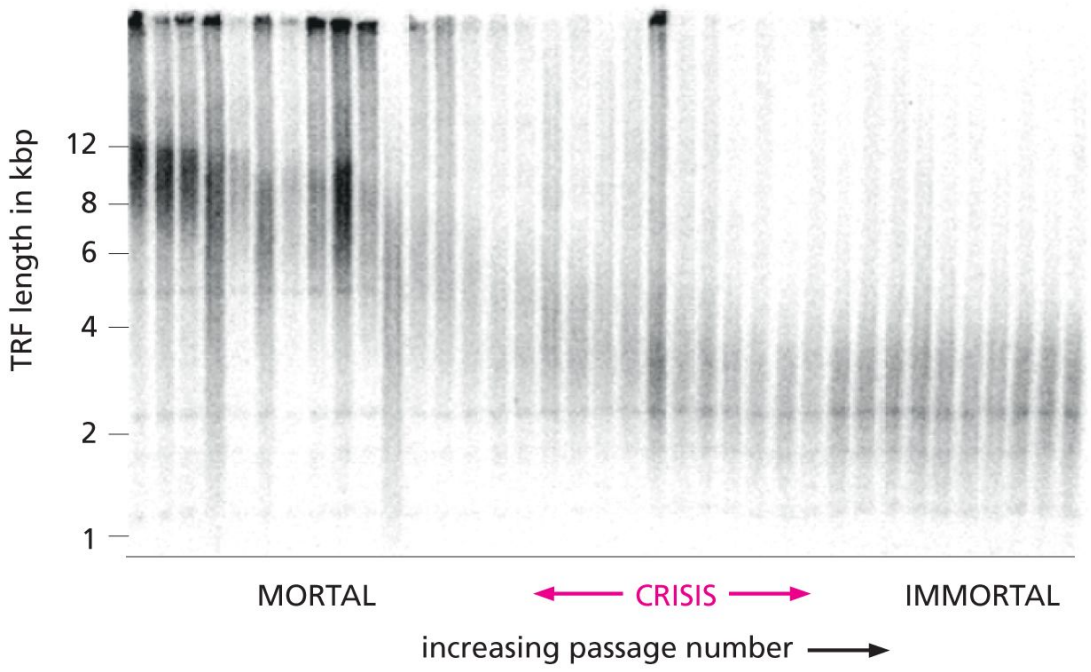
deprived of TRF2, a key protein in maintaining normal telomere structure (see Sidebar 10.4). In these cells, the telomeres lose their protective function (although telomeric DNA remains), resulting in dozens of end-to-end fusions involving all of the chromosomes in a cell and yielding one huge chromosome. (A, courtesy of J. Karlseder and T. de Lange. B, from G.B. Celli and T. de Lange, *Nat. Cell Biol.* 7:712–718, 2005. With permission from Nature.)

Discoveries reported in 1941 by Barbara McClintock (**Figure 10.7**) concerning her studies of the chromosomes of corn first revealed that chromosomes that have lost functional telomeres at their ends soon fuse, end-to-end, with one another. The resulting megachromosomes possess two or more centromeres, the specialized chromosomal structures that become attached during mitosis to the fibers of the mitotic spindle. An extreme form of this fusion is shown in Figure 10.6B, in which virtually all the chromosomes of a cell have fused into one giant chromosome after they all have been deprived of functional telomeres.

A black and white photo of Barbara McClintock, examining a lab sample. A large microscope sits to her left.

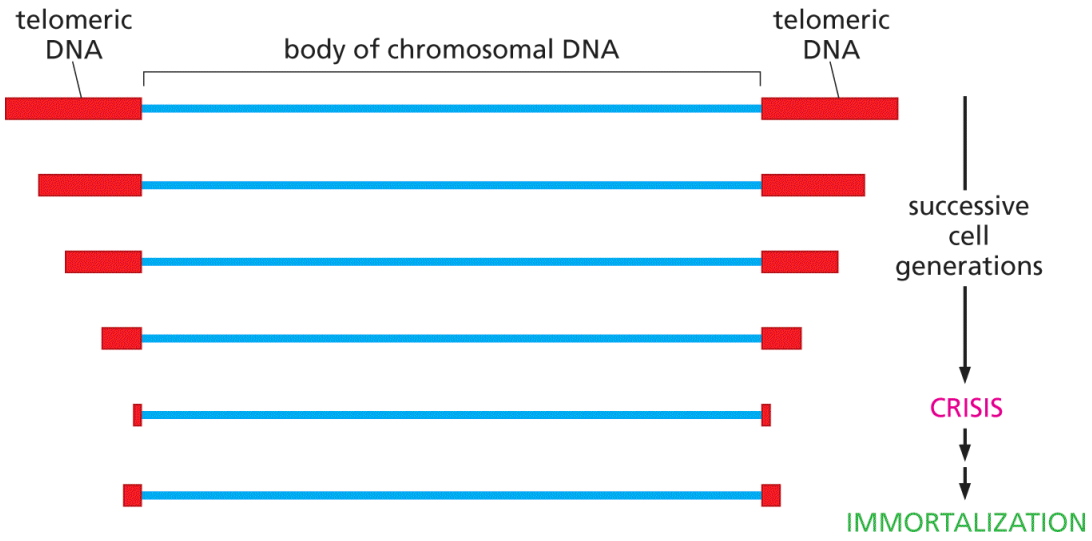
Figure 10.7 Barbara McClintock Barbara McClintock's detailed studies of the chromosomes of corn (maize) revealed specialized structures at the ends of chromosomes—the telomeres—that protected them from end-to-end fusions. This work, and her demonstration of movable genetic elements in the corn genome, later called transposons, earned her the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine in 1983. (Courtesy of American Philosophical Society.)

As discussed in greater detail below, the DNA component of each telomere in our cells is composed of the 5′-TTAGGG-3′ hexanucleotide sequence, which is tandemly repeated thousands of times; these repeated sequences, together with associated proteins, form the functional telomere. The telomeric DNA (and thus the telomeres) of normal human cells proliferating in culture shorten progressively during each growth-and-division cycle, doing so until they become so short that they can no longer effectively protect the ends of chromosomes (**Figure 10.8**). At this point, crisis occurs, chromosomal DNA ends fuse with one another, and widespread apoptotic death is observable. Hence, in such cells, it is *telomere shortening* that functions to register the number of cell generations through which cell populations have passed since their origin in the early embryo.



An image shows the results of passaging a culture of human lymphocytes. Increasing passage number is on the horizontal axis, transitioning from mortal on the left, through crisis, to immortal on the right. T R F length in kilobase pairs is on the vertical axis. The predominant T R K length is initially 8 to 12

kilobase pairs but during crisis shortens to 3 kilobase pairs, after which it stabilizes at about 2 and a half kilobase pairs.
(A)



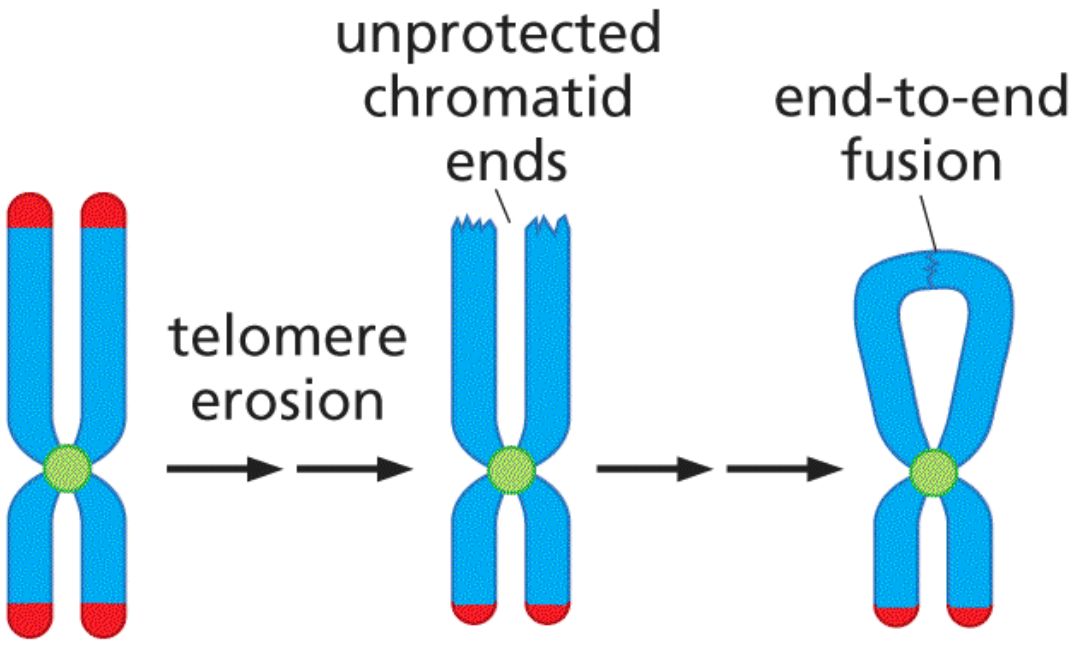
A schematic depiction of what happens to telomeres over successive generations. A chromosome has a long body of chromosomal D N A in the middle and a segment of telomeric D N A at each end. Over successive cell generations, the telomeric segmentss shorten, until during crisis they have nearly disappeared. But then in immortalization they become slightly longer.

(B)

Figure 10.8 Shortening of telomeric DNA in concert with cell proliferation (A) Here, a culture of human lymphocytes that had circumvented culture-induced senescence following infection by Epstein–Barr virus was passaged, and a portion of each culture was set aside for analysis of the cells' telomeric DNA. Each passage represented three to six population doublings. The length of telomeres was measured by treating genomic DNA with several restriction enzymes that do not cleave within the repeating TTAGGG sequence that constitutes telomeric DNA but do cleave frequently throughout the rest of the chromosomal DNA. The only high–molecular-weight genomic fragments such treatment leaves behind are the telomeric restriction fragments (TRFs). Their lengths can then be determined by gel electrophoresis followed by Southern blotting analysis using a probe that recognizes the TTAGGG sequence. Because the telomeres within a given cell vary in length and the extent of telomeric DNA shortening differs from one cell to another, the size distribution of telomeric DNA in each sample is heterogeneous. In the analysis shown, the TRFs of mortal (i.e., non-immortalized) human lymphocytes grew shorter with every successive passaging by 50 to 100 bp per

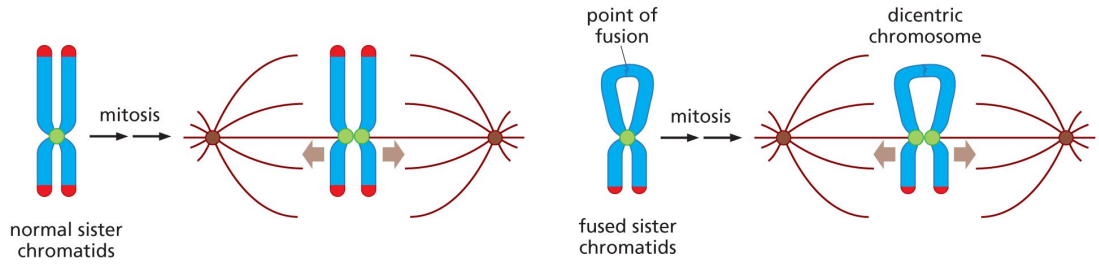
cell generation. When the TRFs became less than about 3 kbp long, cells entered crisis. Later, when cells emerged spontaneously from crisis (and became immortalized), they maintained their telomeric DNA at slightly longer sizes than those seen in crisis. (B) Such observations have led to the model shown, in which telomeric DNA (*red*) shortens progressively each time a cell passes through a growth-and-division cycle until the telomeres are so eroded that they can no longer protect the ends of chromosomal DNA. This telomere collapse provokes a cell to enter into crisis. [In fact, the TRFs of panel A include both pure TTAGGG repeats at the terminus of each telomere and long stretches of TTAGGG-like sequences located at the internal (centromeric) end of each telomere; the latter may not be functional in protecting the chromosomal ends. Telomeres may lose their protective function when their regions of pure TTAGGG repeats have eroded down to a length of ~12 repeats.] In most tumors, crisis is ended when cells acquire the expression of hTERT, resulting in slightly longer telomeres that succeed in protecting the ends of the telomeres and thus of the chromosomal DNA. Note that this drawing is not to scale: telomeric DNA is usually 5 to 10 kbp long, whereas the body of chromosomal DNA (*blue*) is tens to hundreds of megabase pairs (Mbp) long. (A, from C.M. Counter et al., *J. Virol*. 68:3410–3414, 1994. With permission of American Society for Microbiology.)

In human cells entering crisis, the initial end-to-end fusion events often occur between the eroded telomeric ends of the two sister chromatids that form the two halves of the same chromosome (**Figure 10.9A**). Recall that paired chromatids exist during the G_2 phase of the cell cycle—a period after S phase has created two chromatids from a parental chromosome and before M phase, when these two sister chromatids are destined to be separated from one another (see Figure 8.3). Such fusions between the ends of sister chromatids (rather than between the ends of two unrelated chromosomes) are favored for at least two reasons. First, the two chromatids, and thus their ends, are held in close proximity through their joined centromeres. Second, for unknown reasons, telomeres shorten at different rates on different chromosomal arms. Consequently, the two homologous telomeric DNAs (for example, the pair of telomeres at the ends of the long arms of the chromatids of human Chromosome 9), having just been generated anew by DNA replication, possess virtually identical molecular structures. Therefore, if the telomeric end of one chromatid has become shortened, frayed, and vulnerable to fusion, its counterpart on the other paired chromatid is likely to be in the same state.



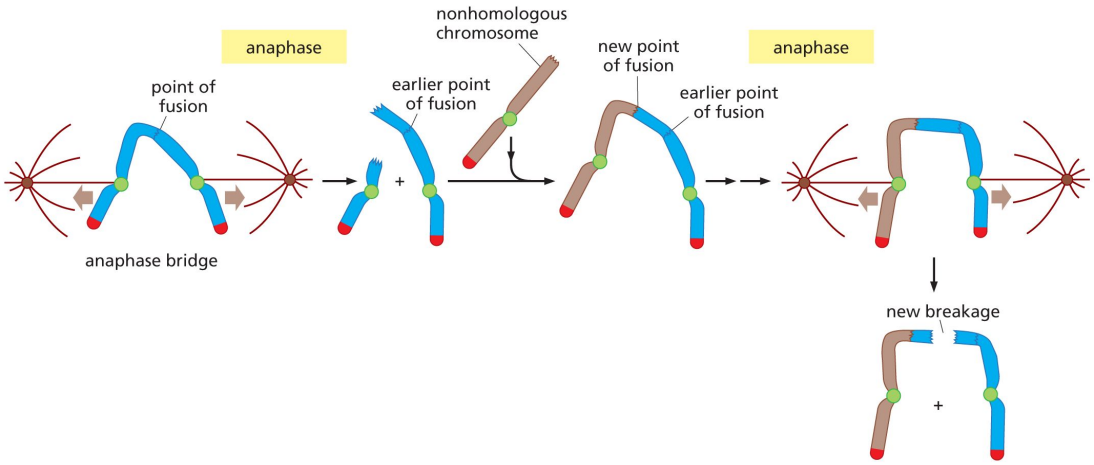
An X-shaped chromosome with two long ends and two short ends. Telomere erosion shortens the telomeres on the short ends and completely removes the telomeres on the long ends, which then fuse to each other, joining the sister chromatids end-to-end.

(A)



A normal chromosome and a fused one each undergoing mitosis and the mitotic spindle attaching.

(B)



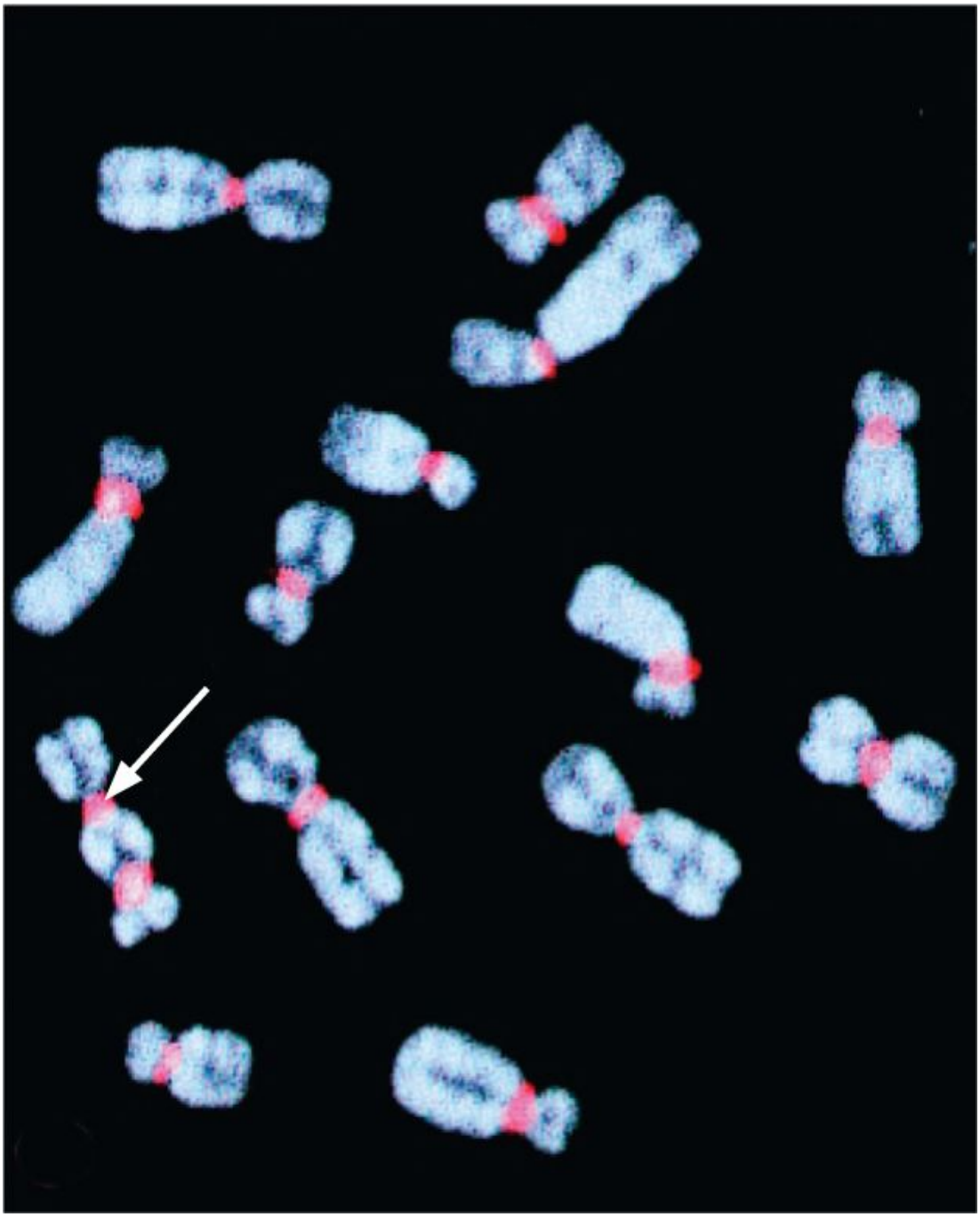
A diagram shows what happens to the fused, dicentric chromosome during anaphase. When the centromere is pulled apart, the chromosome forms an anaphase bridge. When this bridge then tears in two at a point different from the original fusion point, the opportunity arises for another, nonhomologous chromosome with a broken end of its own to fuse to one of the original fragments, forming a new bridge. Eventually there will be yet another breakage at a new point, distinct from the first two fusion points.

(C)

Figure 10.9 Mechanisms of breakage–fusion–bridge cycles (A) Chromosomal breakage, fusion, and bridge formation occur when telomeres (*red*) have become too short to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA. Pictured here is the configuration of a chromosome in the G_2 phase of the cell cycle. During this phase of the cell cycle, its two chromatids remain attached to one another by their shared centromere (*green*). (In fact, it is the multi-subunit centromere-associated protein complex known as the kinetochore, *not shown*, that associates with the centromeric DNA and is responsible during the G_2 phase for holding the two chromatids together and during mitosis for binding the chromosome to microtubules of the mitotic spindle.) As shown, the telomeres on the long arms of this *blue* chromosome have eroded before those of the short arms. Both ends of the long arms are equally eroded since they have recently been duplicated during the previous S phase. The ends of these two arms, held in close proximity by the shared centromere, now fuse with one another, leading to a *dicentric* chromatid, which contains two telomeres and two half-centromeres. (B) During a normal mitosis (*left*), the two sister chromatids will be pulled apart to opposite centrosomes located at the two polar ends of the mitotic spindle (*left*). Likewise, the mitotic spindle will pull the centromeres (*green*) of a dicentric chromosome in opposite directions, unaware that these two chromatids are joined via their long arms. (C) Unlike normally configured chromatid pairs, which will separate cleanly

and segregate in groups near the two centrosomes, the dicentric chromosome described in (B) will be unable to do so and will instead create a temporary bridge between the two poles of the mitotic spindle during the anaphase of mitosis, explaining the term anaphase bridge. Eventually, the dicentric chromosome will be ripped apart at some weak point. During the next cell cycle, the larger fragment lacking a telomere at one end (*blue*) may fuse with another atelomeric chromosome (*beige*), creating a new dicentric chromosome, which itself will be pulled apart during a subsequent mitosis, resulting once again in a breakage–fusion–bridge cycle. (The fate of the shorter chromatid fragment generated by the first cycle of breakage is not shown.)

When these fused chromatids participate in the mitosis that follows, their two centromeres will be pulled in opposite directions by the mitotic spindle (Figure 10.9B), creating the dramatic *anaphase bridges* that are often seen following extensive telomere erosion (**Figure 10.10**). Sooner or later, the mitotic apparatus that is pulling on such a dicentric chromatid (that is, one with two centromeres) will succeed in ripping it apart at some random site between the two centromeres (Figure 10.9C). This yields two new chromosomal ends, neither of which possesses a telomere. Such unprotected ends may fuse with one another or with the unprotected ends of other, nonhomologous chromosomal DNA molecules. (In the event that a dicentric chromosome is not actually ripped apart during anaphase, the nuclei formed during the ensuing telophase will be joined by the anaphase bridges seen in Figure 10.10.)

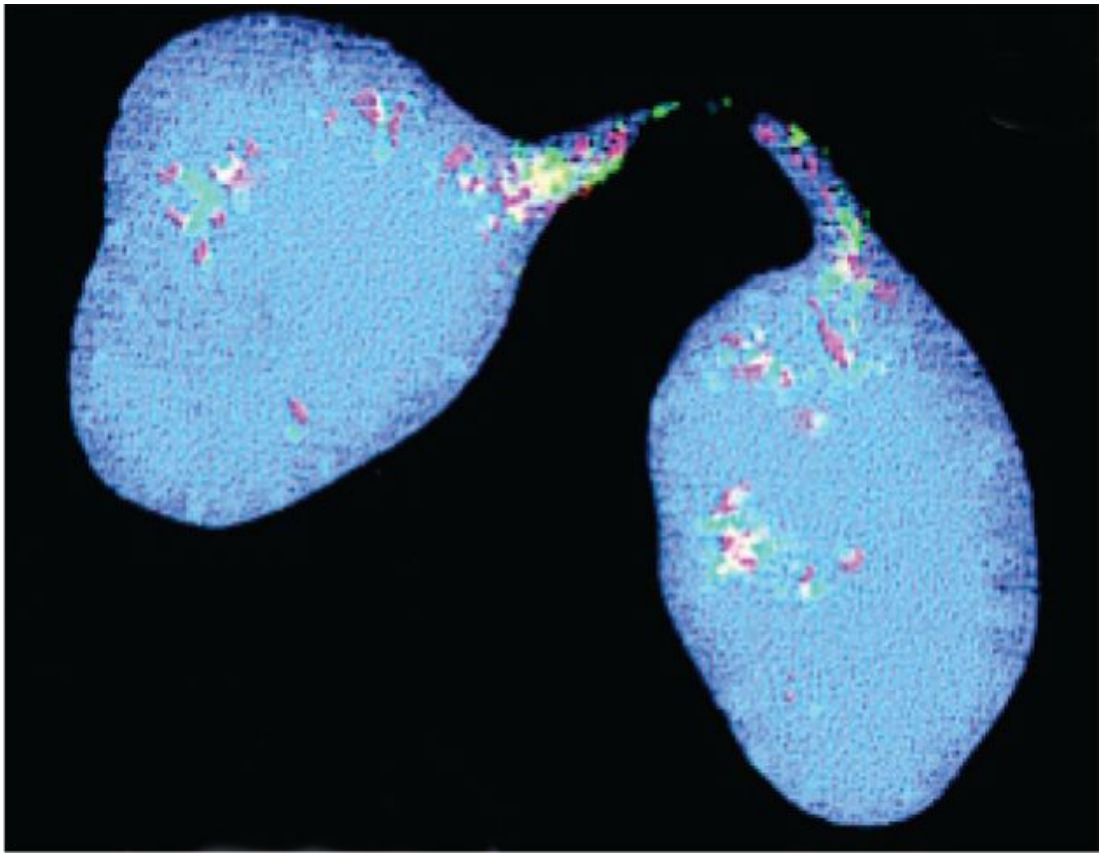


14 chromosomes in metaphase, with the centromeres stained pink. One chromosome has two centromeres, which join the chromatids at two different points.

(A)

Two masses of chromosomes shown as dark bundles, one above and one below, connected by several chromosome bridges.

(B)



Two nuclei connected by a thin bridge.

(C)

Figure 10.10 Dicentric chromosomes, anaphase bridges, and internuclear bridges (A) A dicentric chromosome is seen (*white arrow*) in a metaphase spread of cells from a human pancreatic carcinoma cell line. Centromeric regions have been stained *pink*. (B) Such dicentric chromosomes often result in the formation of anaphase bridges, several of which are seen in a cell of a human malignant fibrous histiocytoma. The two opposing groups of chromosomes are unable to separate properly from one another because they are still connected by multiple anaphase bridges. Observation of such anaphase bridges provides strong evidence that chromosomes within such cells are participating in breakage–fusion–bridge cycles because they no longer possess adequate telomeres. (C) Although most anaphase bridges are broken during telophase or cytokinesis, some may persist in the resulting interphase cells, causing, for example, the nuclei of two daughter cells *(light blue)* of a human lipomatous tumor cell to be linked by a chromatin bridge. (From D. Gisselsson et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 97:5357–5362, 2000. With permission of National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

In the event that the resulting defective, nontelomeric end of a chromosome fuses with the end of an unrelated (nonhomologous) chromosome, the fate of the resulting new, dicentric chromatid during the next mitosis is more ambiguous (see Figure 10.9C). Half of the time, on average, the two centromeres will be pulled in the same direction toward the centrosome that nucleates one of the two soon-to-be-born daughter cells, and no breakage will occur. The other half of the time, the two centromeres of a dicentric chromatid will become attached to the two opposing spindle bodies, as shown, and thus to the two centrosomes located at opposite sides of the mitotic cell (see Figure 10.9C). When chromatids are separated during the anaphase of mitosis, this second configuration (like the earlier one between sister chromatids) will once again prove to be disastrous because it will involve the tearing apart of a chromatid and the generation of ends that are, as before, unprotected by telomeres.

These newly created chromosomal ends will once again attempt to fuse with yet other chromosomes, yielding more dicentric chromosomes and a new cycle of chromosome breakage. This sequence of events is termed the *breakage–fusion–bridge* (BFB) *cycle* because it involves the initial *breakage* of dicentric chromatids in anaphase, the subsequent *fusion* of the resulting atelomeric DNA ends with yet other chromatids, and the formation once again of anaphase bridges by the new dicentric chromosomes resulting from these fusions (see Figure 10.10). While they are occurring, these BFB cycles create karyotypic chaos that has the potential to affect many chromosomes within a cell, as proposed in 1941 by McClintock.

Cells that have entered crisis provide a clear indication that the molecular machinery triggering crisis resides in the telomeres because those cells show precisely the type of karyotypic disarray that is observed when chromosomes lose their telomeres. Moreover, the chromosomes that are fusing within these cells possess especially short telomeres, or none at all. Note that the karyotypic instability occurring during crisis, which has been termed “genetic catastrophe,” is so severe that apoptosis often occurs even in the absence of p53 function.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ligase
: An enzyme that covalently joins two molecules together; in the context of DNA, ligases join the 3′ end of one ssDNA to the 5′ end of another other via a phosphodiester linkage.

telomere
: Nucleoprotein structure at the end of a eukaryotic chromosome that protects this end from degradation and from fusion with the ends of other chromosomes.

centromere
: Region of a chromosome that holds the two chromatids together and that binds, via a kinetochore, with mitotic or meiotic spindle fibers.

dicentric
: Referring to a chromosome or chromatid that bears two distinct centromeres.

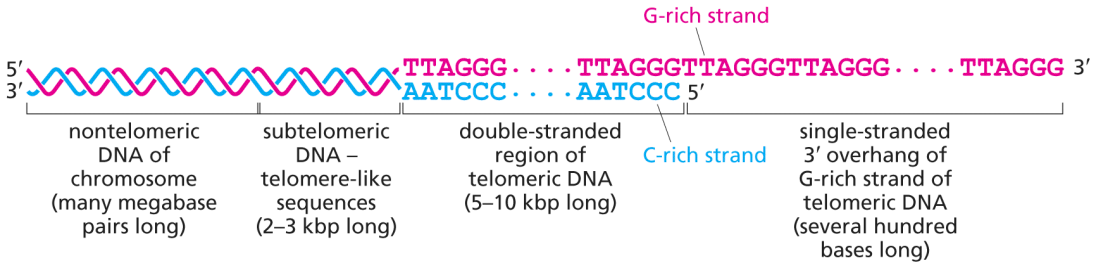
atelomeric
: Lacking a telomere.

OceanofPDF.com

10.5 Telomeres are complex molecular structures that are not easily replicated

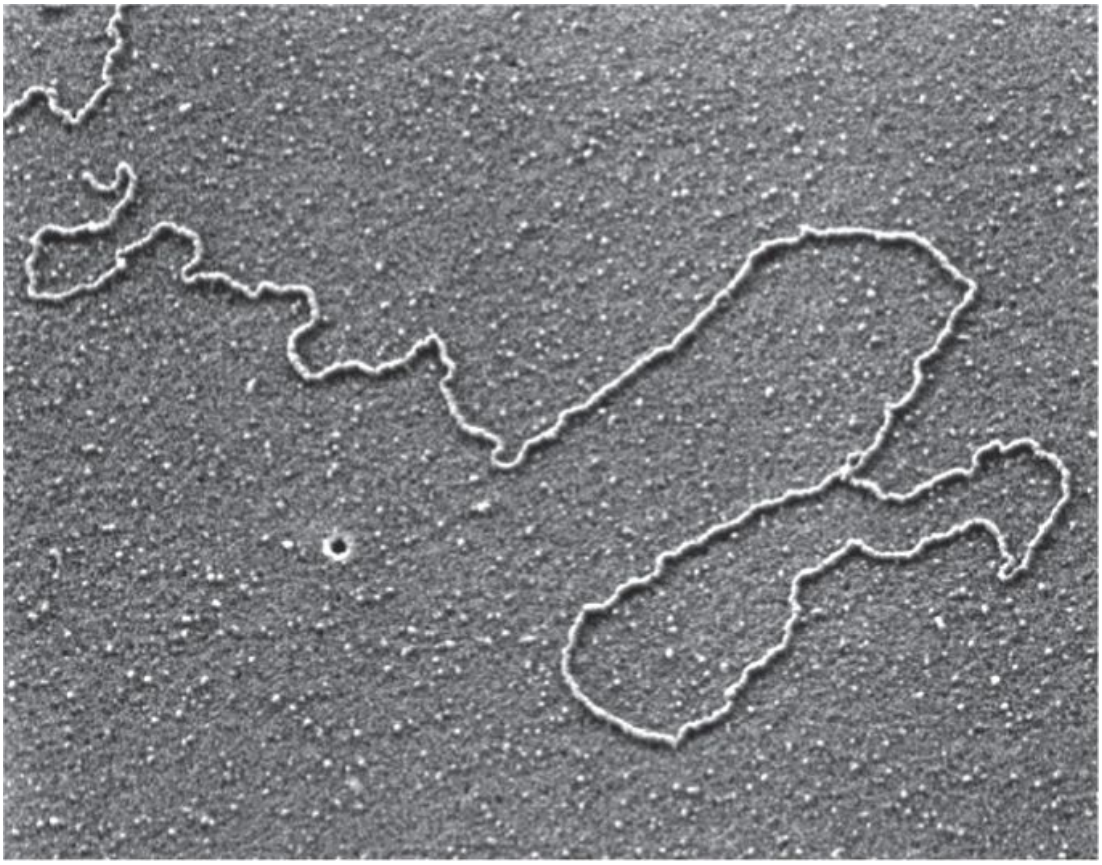
Research conducted since the mid-1980s has revealed the molecular structure of telomeres and their DNA. To begin, and as cited earlier, the telomeric DNA of mammalian cells (as well as the cells of many other metazoa) is formed from the repeating hexanucleotide sequence 5′-TTAGGG-3′ in one strand (the “G-rich” strand) and the complementary 5′-CCCTAA-3′ in the other (the “C-rich” strand). In normal human cells, telomeric DNA is formed from several thousand of these hexanucleotide sequences, resulting in 5- to 15-kbp-long stretches of such repeating sequences at the ends of all human chromosomes.

The telomeric DNA of mammalian cells, and possibly the cells of all higher eukaryotes (metazoa and metaphyta), possesses an additional, distinctive feature: its G-rich strand is longer than its C-rich strand by one hundred to several hundred nucleotides, resulting in a long 3′ single-strand overhang (**Figure 10.11A**). This overhanging strand is often found in a most unusual molecular configuration termed the t-loop. It was discovered in the late 1990s, when electron microscopy showed the ends of telomeric DNA to be configured in a loop, in effect a lariat (Figure 10.11B). This structure has been interpreted to depend on the formation of a three-stranded complex of DNA (Figure 10.11C). The t-loop may be present at the ends of all telomeres, although it has been observed in only a subset of those viewed, probably because of the technical difficulties associated with preserving and visualizing this structure in the electron microscope. The t-loop clearly helps to protect the ends of linear DNA molecules, because the end of the single-stranded overhanging region is tucked into a double-stranded region, out of harm’s way.



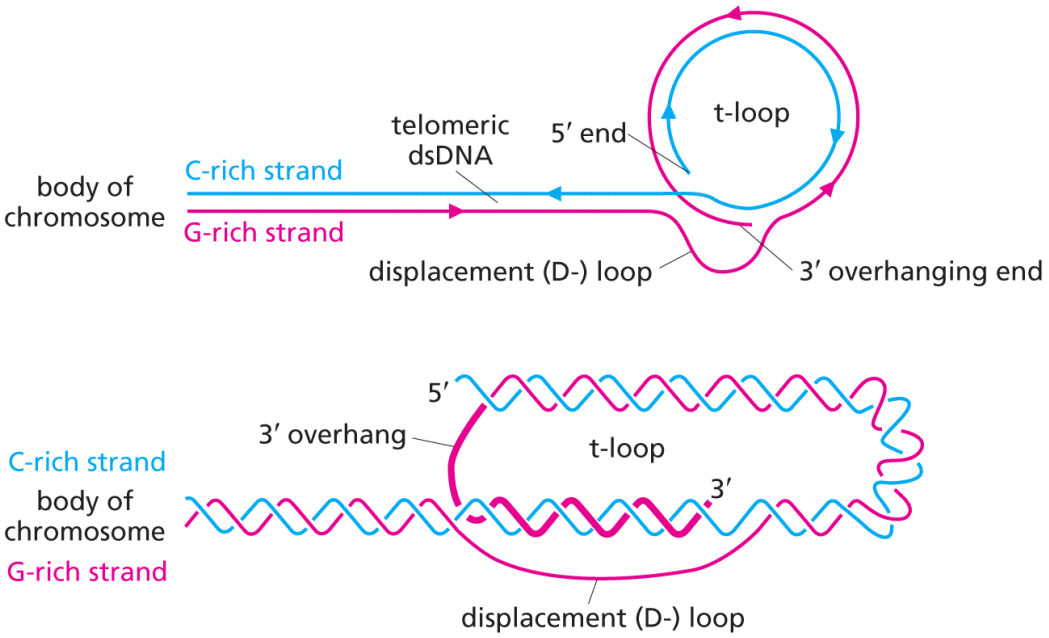
A D N A molecule, with one strand in red and the other in blue. At the left end, the red 5 prime and blue 3 prime ends align. This is the start of a region

of nontelomeric D N A of chromosome that is many megabase pairs long. Then comes a region of subtelomeric D N A–telomere-like sequences that is 2 to 3 kilobase pairs long. The double strand ends with a region of telomeric DNA that is 5 to 10 kilobase pairs long. The blue 5 prime side of this region is C rich. The red 3 prime region is G rich and continues past the 5 prime end as single-stranded overhang of G-rich telomeric D N A for another several hundred base pairs.
(A)



An electron micrograph of a piece of D N A in the form of a lasso, with a large loop at one end.

(B)



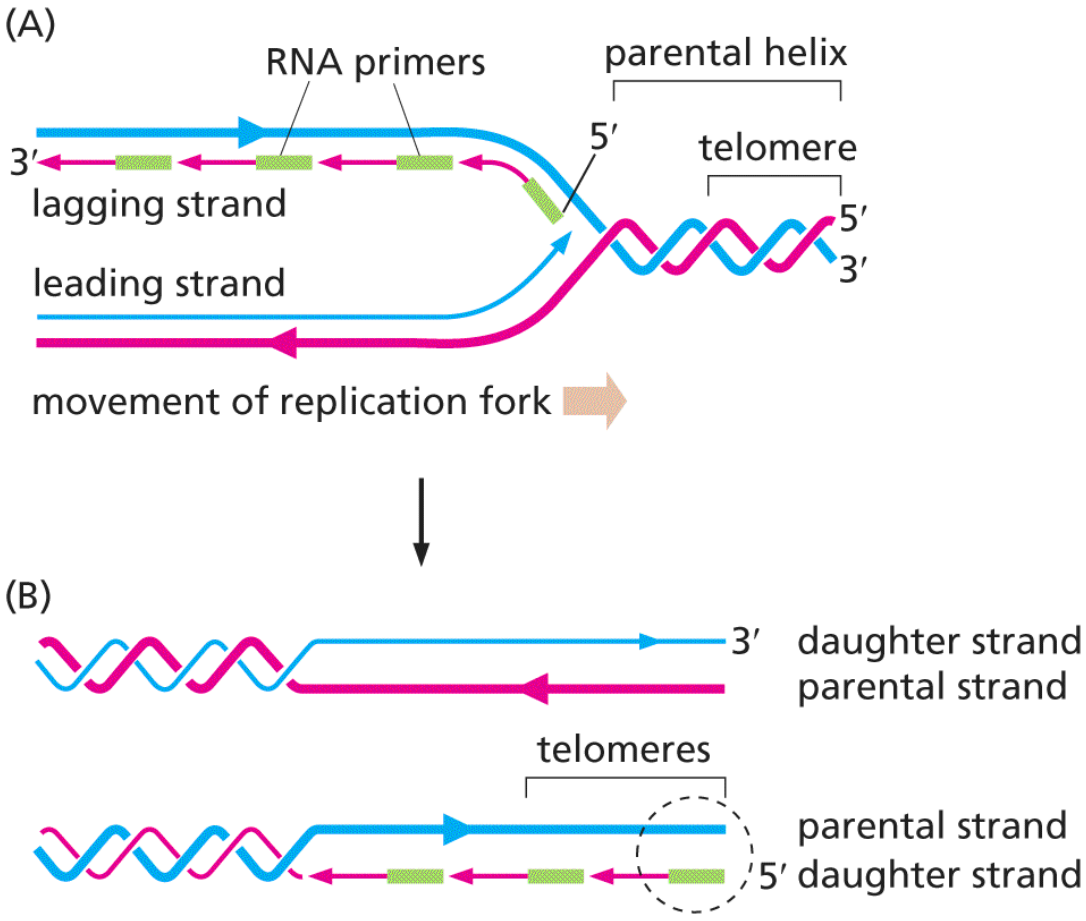
Two diagrams show, first very schematically and then in more detail, how the lasso-like t loop is formed when the 3 prime overhanging end displaces an earlier section of the same G rich strand in attaching the C rich strand. The displaced section of G rich strand is called the D-loop.

(C)

Figure 10.11 The 3′ overhang of telomeric DNA and the t-loop (A) The G-rich strand of telomeric DNA (*pink*) extends beyond the C-rich strand (*blue*). This creates a 3′ overhang (*right*) that is often several hundred nucleotides long. This overhang is far shorter than the double-stranded portion of telomeric DNA (*middle*), which is often 5 to 10 kbp long and is not drawn to scale. In addition, a subtelomeric region of DNA lies between the functional telomeric DNA (*middle*) and the nontelomeric chromosomal DNA (*far left*). This subtelomeric DNA contains imperfect copies of the TTAGGG sequence and does not function to protect the end of the chromosome. However, it is usually included in the telomere restriction fragments (TRFs; see Figure 10.8A) because of its telomere-like sequence content. (B) Purification of telomeric DNA from mouse cells (following stabilization of double-stranded structures through chemical cross-linking) reveals, upon electron microscopy, lariats, called *t-loops*, at the ends of chromosomal DNA. (C) The t-loop is illustrated with the double helices drawn and the 3′ overhanging end emphasized in a *heavier pink line*. Although this figure depicts the t-loop as being formed by the overhanging end of one of the two strands, there is evidence that the other strand can also occasionally form t-loops. (B, from J.D. Griffith et al., *Cell* 97:503–514, 1999. With permission from Elsevier.)

Both the relatively long double-stranded telomeric DNA and the short overhanging end are bound by specific proteins. As might be expected, some of the proteins possess domains that specifically recognize and bind to the hexanucleotide sequence present in the double- and the single-stranded regions of telomeric DNA (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.4**). Together, these telomere-binding proteins, yet other associated proteins that remain to be identified, and the telomeric DNA form the nucleoprotein complexes that function as telomeres.

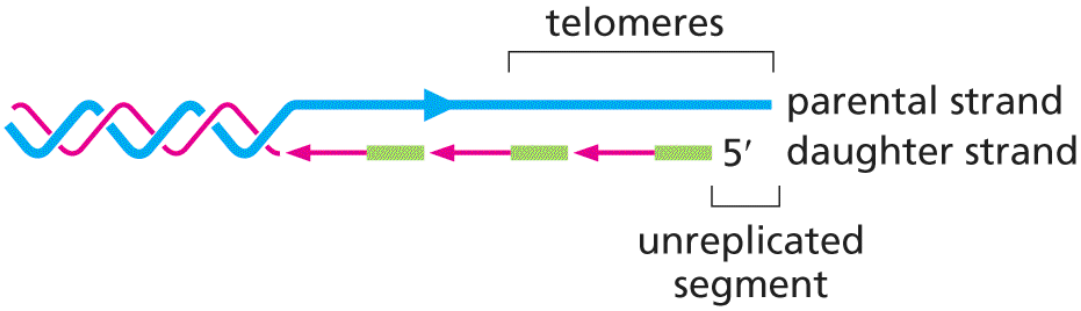
Although the replication machinery that operates during the S phase of the cell cycle is highly effective at copying the sequences in the middle of linear DNA molecules, such as those in the body of each of our chromosomes, this machinery has great difficulty faithfully copying sequences at the very ends of these molecules. The difficulty can be traced to the requirement that the synthesis of all DNA strands during DNA replication must be initiated at the 3′-hydroxyl end of an existing DNA or RNA strand, which serves as a primer to nucleate DNA strand elongation; alternatively, in the absence of an available DNA primer, the 3′ end of a short RNA molecule, can serve as a primer for DNA synthesis (**Figure 10.12**).



A double-stranded D N A is unwound on the left end and wound on the right end, where the last end segment is labeled telomere. The two strands of the parental helix are a red strand with its 5 prime end on the right and a blue strand with its 3 prime end on the right. On the left, replication is proceeding by the creation of two daughter strands. A blue daughter strand, labeled the leading strand, is being replicated directly and continuously off the red parent strand. At the time same time, a red daughter strand, labeled lagging strand, is being replicated of the blue parent strand, but this is being done in short segments, each with an R N A primer at the right end, the 5 prime end of the daughter segment.

The replication process is nearing completion. The parental helix is completely unwound, on the left the two parent-daughter pairs have wound together, and on the right the replication of the daughter strands has arrived at the telomere.

(C)



The effects of underreplication in the lagging daughter strand, the one where R N A primers were involved. A short, final segment of the parental strand has no corresponding segment on the daughter strand.

Figure 10.12 Primers and the initiation of DNA synthesis (A) During normal DNA replication, the parental DNA double-helix (*right*) is unwound by a helicase enzyme (*not shown*), creating two template strands (*left*) and allowing the replication process as a whole to progress in a rightward direction (*light brown arrow*). Elongation of the *leading* daughter strand (*thin blue line*) can occur continuously, because its 5′-to-3′ synthesis proceeds in the same direction as the replication fork. In contrast, synthesis of the new *lagging* daughter strand (*thin pink line*) proceeds in a direction opposite to that of the progress of the replication fork, because DNA strand synthesis must occur in a 5′-to-3′ direction. This necessitates the involvement of short RNA primer segments (*green segments*) that are laid down at intervals of several hundred nucleotides by the *primase* enzyme. The 3′-hydroxyl ends of these short RNA primers serve as sites of initiation of

newly made daughter-strand segments, which are termed Okazaki fragments prior to the removal of the RNA primers, the filling in by DNA polymerases of the resulting gaps, and the joining of these fragments by a DNA ligase (*not shown*). (B) For these reasons, the leading-strand synthesis (*thin blue line, above)* will proceed all the way to the end of the telomere (*right*) and thereby generate a faithful copy of the telomeric DNA sequences in one of the two new daughter helices. However, the lagging-strand synthesis (*thin red line, below*) will require an RNA primer near the end of the telomeric DNA (*circled*). (C) Because this RNA primer will subsequently be removed and because it may not be deposited precisely at the end of the parental template strand *(thick blue line)*, sequences complementary to the 3′ end of the parental strand will not be present in the ultimately synthesized DNA molecule. Consequently, there is under-replication of the parental strand of DNA and loss of a limited stretch of telomeric DNA sequences from the chromosome of a daughter cell. (In addition, certain exonucleases degrade this specific stretch of DNA, compounding the effects of the under-replication.) The 5′-to-3′ orientation of each strand is indicated by the arrowheads. The parental DNA strands are drawn more thickly than the newly synthesized daughter strands.

If the primase enzyme, which is responsible for laying down short RNA primers, happens to deposit a primer at some distance from the 3′ terminus of a template strand on which “lagging-strand synthesis” is occurring (see Figure 10.12), a DNA polymerase will initiate synthesis of a new DNA strand that lacks a substantial number of the bases complementary to the very 3′ end of this template strand. (Even if the primase sits down and constructs an RNA primer at the very end of the template strand, the sequences corresponding to the approximately 10 nucleotides of the RNA primer will not be present in the newly synthesized daughter strand, because the RNA primer will be degraded after it has served its purpose of initiating DNA strand elongation.) The end result is that the nucleotide sequences at the very tip of one of the two template strands of DNA will not be properly replicated.

This end-replication problem provides a molecular explanation for the observed shortening of telomeric DNA each time a normal human cell passes through a cell cycle. In addition to the under-replication of telomeric DNA ends, there are exonucleases within cells that chew on the ends of telomeric DNA in order to maintain the t-loops described above and are likely to contribute significantly to telomere erosion. For whatever reason, in many types of normal human cells, telomeres lose 50 to 100 bp of DNA during each cell generation (see Figure 10.8). This progressive erosion of telomeric DNA represents a simple molecular device that limits how many generations of descendant progeny a cell can spawn and solves the problems, enumerated in Section 10.3, of how to construct a stable, long-lived generation-counting device.

We can imagine, for example, that in human embryonic cells, the telomeric DNA begins rather long, perhaps 8 to 10 kb in length. As various lineages of descendant cells throughout the developing body proceed through their repeated cycles of growth and division, the telomeres in these cells grow progressively shorter. Ultimately, in some cells, the telomeric DNA erodes down to a size that is so short that it can no longer perform its intended function of protecting the ends of the chromosomal DNA, the result being the breakage–fusion–bridge cycles and chromosomal translocations that are illustrated in Figure 10.9. Indeed, it is plausible that the aging of certain tissues derives from the loss by individual cells of replicative potential, and that this loss is attributable, in turn, to telomere erosion.

Although the supporting evidence is still indirect, it is highly likely that telomere shortening, by limiting the replicative potential of cell lineages, creates an obstacle to the accumulation of large populations of cancer cells. Thus, as argued earlier, should a clone of cells acquire oncogenic mutations (involving oncogene activation and tumor suppressor gene inactivation), the ability of this clone to expand to a large, clinically detectable size is likely to be constrained by its eroded telomeres.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

t-loop
: Lasso-like structure at the end of a telomere that serves to protect the termini of a chromosomal DNA molecule from end-to-end fusions and degradation by exonucleases.

primer
: A DNA or RNA molecule whose 3′ end serves as the initiation point of DNA synthesis by a DNA polymerase.

primase
: An enzyme that initiates DNA synthesis by laying down a short RNA segment on the template strand; the 3′-hydroxyl end of this RNA primer then serves as the site for attachment of the initial deoxyribonucleotide by a DNA polymerase. *See also* **primer**.

end-replication problem
: Inability of the main DNA replication machinery to completely copy the end of one of two DNA strands being replicated, specifically the strand bearing a 3’ nucleotide at its end.

OceanofPDF.com

10.6 Incipient cancer cells can escape crisis by expressing telomerase

The detailed behavior of pre-neoplastic cell clones *in vivo* is difficult to study, and so we are largely forced to extrapolate from observations of cultured cells, such as human fibroblasts. As mentioned earlier, if these cells are allowed to circumvent senescence through the expression of the SV40 large T oncoprotein, they will continue to replicate another 10 to 20 cell generations and then enter crisis. On rare occasion, a small group of cells will emerge spontaneously from the vast throng of cells in the midst of crisis. These variant cell clones—arising perhaps from a single cell among 10 million cells in crisis—proceed to proliferate and continue to do so indefinitely (for example, see Figure 10.8A). They have become immortalized, seemingly as the consequence of some random event.

This transition, observed with cultured cells *in vitro*, seems to recapitulate the behavior of premalignant cell populations *in vivo*. Thus, both cell populations enter crisis sooner or later, having passed through large numbers of replicative generations and suffered extensive erosion of their telomeres. Both are capable of spawning rare immortalized variants that have apparently solved the problem of telomere collapse, but how?

At first glance, telomere collapse and crisis would appear to be irreversible processes from which cells can never escape. As it turns out, the route to immortality is simple and, in retrospect, obvious: cells can emerge from crisis by regenerating their telomeres, thereby erasing the molecular record (their shortened telomeres) that previously blocked their proliferation and drove them into crisis.

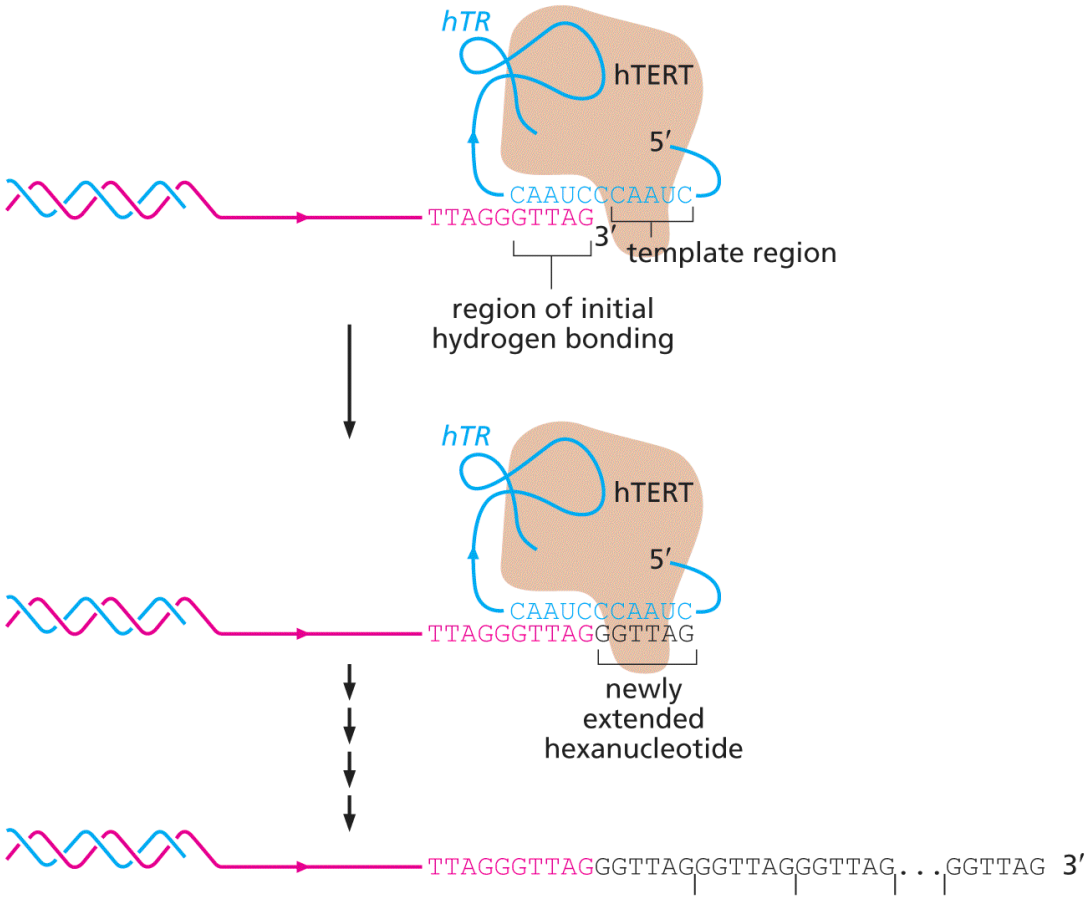
Telomere regeneration can be accomplished through the actions of the telomerase enzyme, which functions specifically to elongate telomeric DNA. A striking finding is that telomerase activity is clearly detectable in 85 to 90% of human tumor cell samples, and is present at very low levels in the lysates of most types of normal human cells, as measured by the TRAP assay (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.5**). Although these low levels of telomerase activity may enable some type of minimal maintenance of the ends of telomeric DNA (such as repair or regeneration of the t-loop), they are clearly unable to prevent the progressive erosion of the double-stranded region of telomeres that accompanies passage of normal human cells through each cell cycle.

In adult humans, there are actually several known exceptions to the generally observed low levels of telomerase activity in normal cells. For example, substantial enzyme activity is present in the germ cells of the testes, and lymphocytes express a burst of telomerase activity when they become functionally activated.

The available evidence indicates that strong expression of the telomerase enzyme is present early in embryogenesis and is largely lost during the cellular differentiation that produces most of the body's tissues. Thus, during the course of early mouse and cow embryogenesis, telomerase is strongly expressed in embryonic cells in the time between the morula and blastocyst stages and seems to disappear thereafter; a similar control of telomerase expression is likely to operate during human embryonic development. Accordingly, most normal human somatic cells, which carry the full complement of genes specifying the multi-subunit telomerase holoenzyme, are denied the services of this enzyme because they do not *express* all of the encoding genes at significant levels.

Among the large populations of cultured cells in crisis, however, rare variants find a way to de-repress the gene or genes encoding telomerase and thereby acquire high levels of constitutively expressed enzyme. This enables them to extend their telomeric DNA to a length that permits further proliferation. Indeed, as long as their descendants continue to express this enzyme, such cells will continue to proliferate and thus will be considered to be immortalized. A similar sequence of events is presumed to occur *in vivo* when populations of pre-neoplastic cells enter into crisis and, on rare occasion, generate immortalized variants that become the progenitors of large neoplastic cell populations.

The telomerase enzyme was developed early in eukaryotic cell evolution and is present in the cells of almost all descendant organisms, both protozoan and metazoan. Its presence in single-cell eukaryotes afforded its initial detection and characterization, first in baker's yeast using genetic analyses and in a ciliate through biochemical purification. It is a complex enzyme composed of a number of distinct subunits, not all of which have been characterized. At the core of the mammalian telomerase holoenzyme are two subunits. One subunit is a DNA polymerase, more specifically a reverse transcriptase, which functions, like the related enzymes made by retroviruses (see Section 3.7) and a variety of other viruses and transposable elements, to synthesize DNA from an RNA template. (**Figure 10.13**). However, unlike these other reverse transcriptases (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.6**), the telomerase holoenzyme cleverly packs its own RNA template—the second essential subunit. A short segment of this 451-nucleotide-long RNA molecule serves as the template that instructs the reverse transcriptase activity of the holoenzyme.



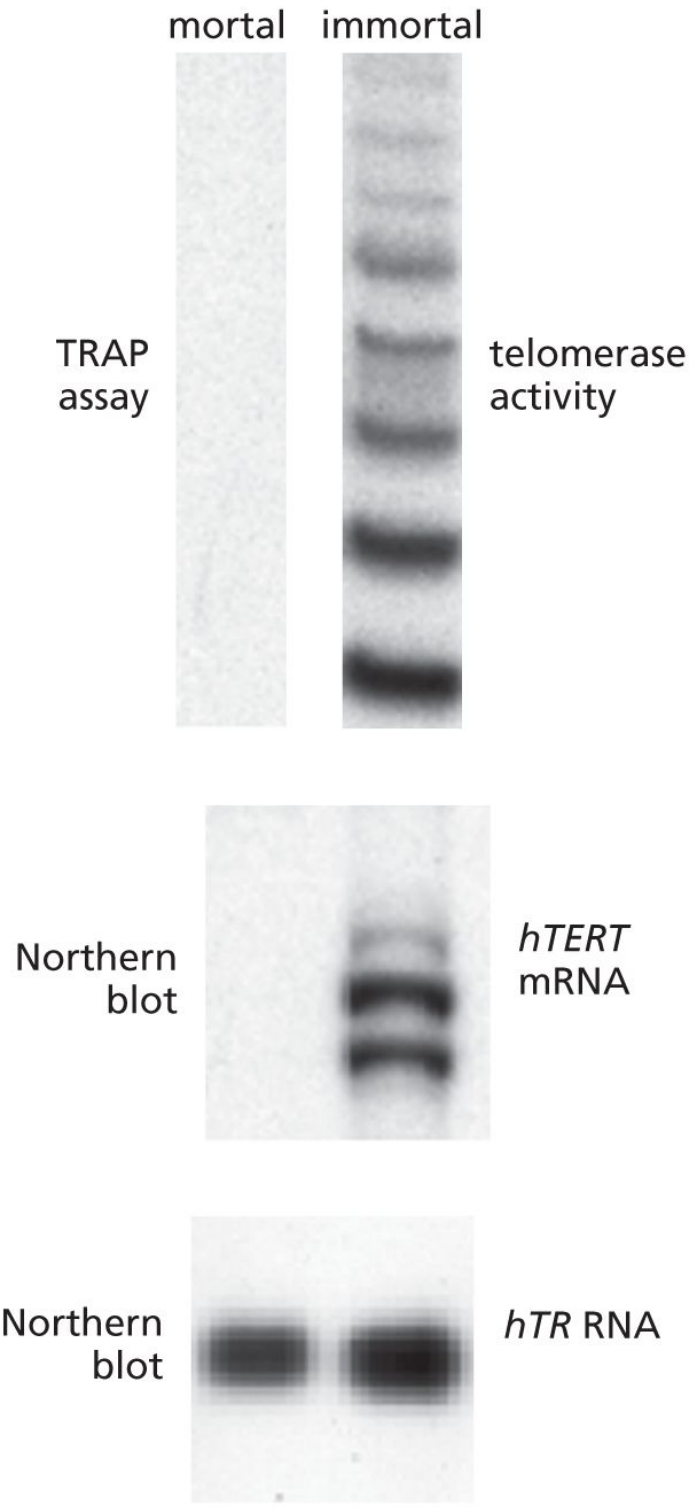
Telomere extension by human telomerase holoenzyme. The holoenyme has a large h TERT subunit that acts as a catalyst and an h R T R N A strand in which the base sequence C C A A U C, in the 3 prime to 5 prime direction, is the six-base template region. h TERT copies this region onto the telomere end of a single D N A strand in the 5 prime to 3 prime direction as the sequence G G T T A G. The newly extended hexanucleotide lengthens the telomere six bases at a time.

Figure 10.13 Core subunits of the human telomerase holoenzyme The human telomerase holoenzyme is composed of two core subunits, the hTERT catalytic subunit (*light brown*) and the associated *hTR* RNA subunit (*blue*); its mouse counterparts are termed mTERT and *mTR*. (Five other proteins, some present in two copies, are required to form a functional holoenzyme.) The holoenzyme attaches to the 3′ end of the G-rich strand overhang (*pink*), doing so in part through the hydrogen bonding of *hTR* to the last five nucleotides of the G-rich strand. Subsequently, by reverse transcription of sequences in the *hTR* subunit, hTERT is able to extend the G-rich strand by six nucleotides (*black*). By repeating this process in hexanucleotide increments (*ticks*), the enzyme can extend the G-rich strand by hundreds, even thousands of nucleotides, doing so in a *processive* fashion. Arrowheads indicate the 5′-to-3′ orientation of the nucleic acids. Upon

completion of this elongation, a conventional DNA polymerase can fill in the complementary (*blue*) strand after RNA primer molecules have been laid down by a primase enzyme (*not shown*).

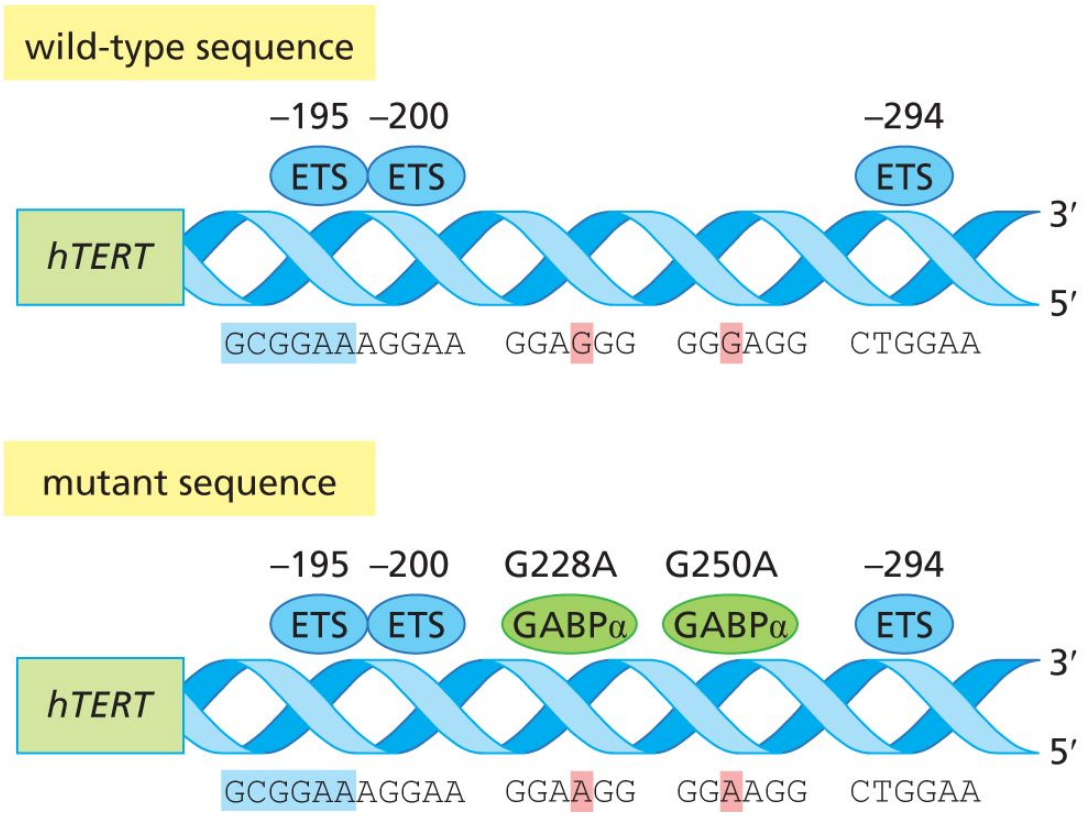
Isolation of substantial quantities of telomerase protein from the ciliate *Euplotes aediculatus* (see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.6**) allowed determination of the amino acid sequence of its catalytic subunit and, in turn, cloning of the gene encoding the ciliate enzyme as well as the homologous human gene. In human cells, this catalytic subunit, termed hTERT (for **h**uman **te**lomerase **r**everse **t**ranscriptase), synthesizes a DNA molecule that is complementary to six nucleotides present in the telomerase-associated RNA molecule (*hTR*; its encoding gene is sometimes called *TERC*), attaching these nucleotides to the G-rich 3′ overhanging end of the preexisting telomeric DNA (see Figure 10.13). The complementary strand of the telomeric DNA is then presumably synthesized by conventional DNA polymerases.

As would be predicted from the scenario described earlier, before entering crisis, human cells are essentially telomerase-negative and do not express appreciable levels of the *hTERT* mRNA. However, should a rare immortalized variant emerge from a population of cells in crisis, its descendants usually express significant levels of *hTERT* mRNA and exhibit substantial levels of telomerase enzyme activity (**Figure 10.14A**). This observation demonstrates directly that de-repression of *hTERT* gene expression accompanies the escape of these cells from crisis.



A TRAP assay for telomerase activity records none in mortal cells but significant activity in immortal ones. Similarly, a Northern blot for h TERT m R N A records none in mortal cells but a great deal of it in immortal ones. By

contrast, a Northern blot for h T R R N A records a significant amount in mortal cells and only a little more in immortal ones.
(A)



Two diagrams of double stranded D N A with an h TERT unit attached on the left. The upper D N A is a normal wild-type sequence, with E T esses attaching at bases minus 195, minus 200, and minus 294. Between the latter two, there are two hexanucleotide sequences each with a G highlighted. The lower D N A is a mutant sequence in which the aze have been replaced by jeeze. At each of those two sites, a G A B P alpha has attached. The left one is labeled G228A, the right G250A.

(B)

Figure 10.14 Spontaneous activation of telomerase (A) Individual B lymphocytes can escape at low frequency from a cell population in crisis and begin to grow robustly, thereby becoming immortalized (see Figure 10.8A). The pre-crisis “mortal” cells lack telomerase activity, as measured by the TRAP assay (see Sidebar 10.5), whereas the spontaneously immortalized (“immortal”) cells show abundant activity (*top*). The *hTERT* mRNA, which encodes the catalytic subunit of the telomerase holoenzyme, is essentially absent in the pre-crisis cells

but clearly present in the immortalized cells (*middle*). However, levels of the *hTR* RNA, which functions as a template for hTERT during telomeric DNA elongation (see Figure 10.13), are increased only slightly (*bottom*), suggesting that levels of hTERT expression determine the levels of enzyme activity in the cell. (B) Point mutations in the *hTERT* promoter have been documented in the genomes of numerous human tumors. The strong localization of the recurring point mutations indicates the significant survival advantage that evolving pre-neoplastic cells acquire by significantly elevating hTERT expression levels. Each of the two mutually exclusively occurring point mutations (at bases −228 and −250 from the start site of transcription) adds a binding site for the GABPα ETS-type transcription factor, substantially increasing *hTERT* transcription. These two mutations have been observed in the genomes of 83% of primary glioblastomas, 66% of bladder carcinomas, and 71% of human melanomas. [Indeed, the presence of these recurring mutations at a small number of sites in the *hTERT* promoter echoes the highly localized, recurring mutations affecting the reading frame of the promoters of the *ras* oncogenes in human tumors (see Figure 4.6).] (A, from M. Meyerson et al., *Cell* 90:785–795, 1997. With permission from Elsevier. B, adapted from G.M. Sizemore et al. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 17:337–351, 2017. With permission from Nature.)

Unanswered by this work are the mechanisms that enable the induction of hTERT expression in cells that previously failed to express it at significant levels. For many years, the prevailing view was that one or more transcription factors capable of driving transcription of the *hTERT* gene become expressed or overexpressed spontaneously in cells in crisis, driving in turn its sudden expression. The Myc oncoprotein, which is overexpressed in many types of human cancer cells, figures importantly here through its ability to directly drive expression of this gene (**Sidebar 10.3**). More recently, a number of reports have documented point mutations in the promoter of the *hTERT* gene that create binding sites for Ets transcription factors, resulting in elevated *hTERT* transcription (Figure 10.14B). [Indeed, the strong localization of sites within the *hTERT* promoter of these recurring point mutations is reminiscent of the behavior of the point mutations responsible for activation of *Ras* oncogenes, the latter affecting the reading frames of the *Ras* proto-oncogenes (see Figure 4.6)!]

Sidebar 10.3 Oncoproteins and tumor suppressor proteins play critical roles in governing *hTERT* expression

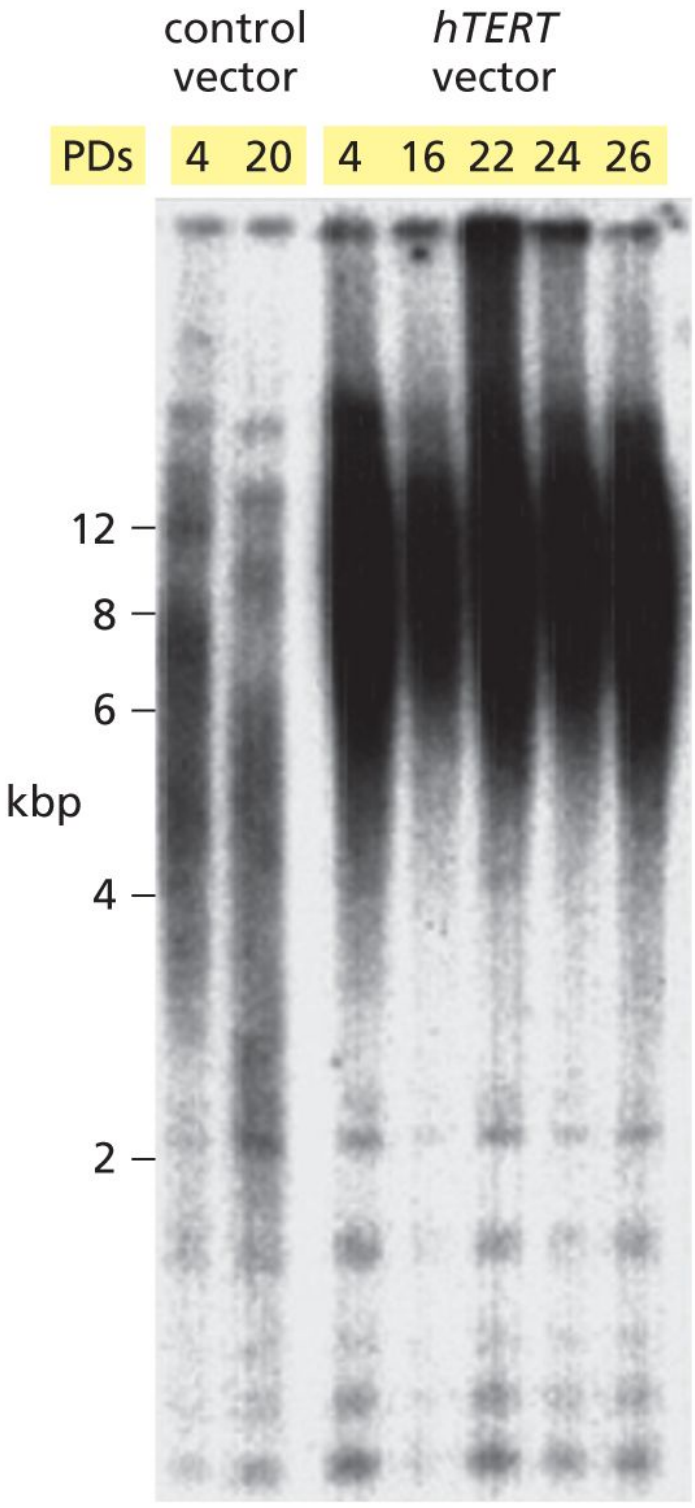
The mechanisms that lead to the de-repression of *hTERT* transcription during tumor progression in humans are complex and still quite obscure. Multiple transcription factors appear to collaborate to activate the *hTERT* promoter. Once expressed, the resulting *hTERT* transcripts allow the synthesis of substantial amounts of hTERT

protein; the latter, by complexing with other subunits of the telomerase holoenzyme, suffices to generate high levels of telomerase activity. The Myc protein, which acts as a transcription factor that controls the cell cycle clock and thousands of genes involved in other aspects of cell physiology (see Section 8.9), also contributes to *hTERT* transcription. There are at least two recognition sequences for bHLH transcription factors like Myc in the promoters of the mouse and human *TERT* genes.

The connection between Myc and *hTERT* expression can also be demonstrated by biological experiments. For example, cells from a human melanoma cell line have been isolated that express high levels of Myc and are tumorigenic. Three clonal variant subpopulations of this cell line have been isolated that exhibit as much as an eightfold reduction in Myc expression and have lost tumorigenicity. Their tumorigenic growth could be restored if they were supplied with an hTERT->expressing gene construct. Hence, in these cells, the loss of tumorigenicity following reduction of Myc expression levels could be attributed largely, if not exclusively, to an associated loss of *hTERT* gene expression.

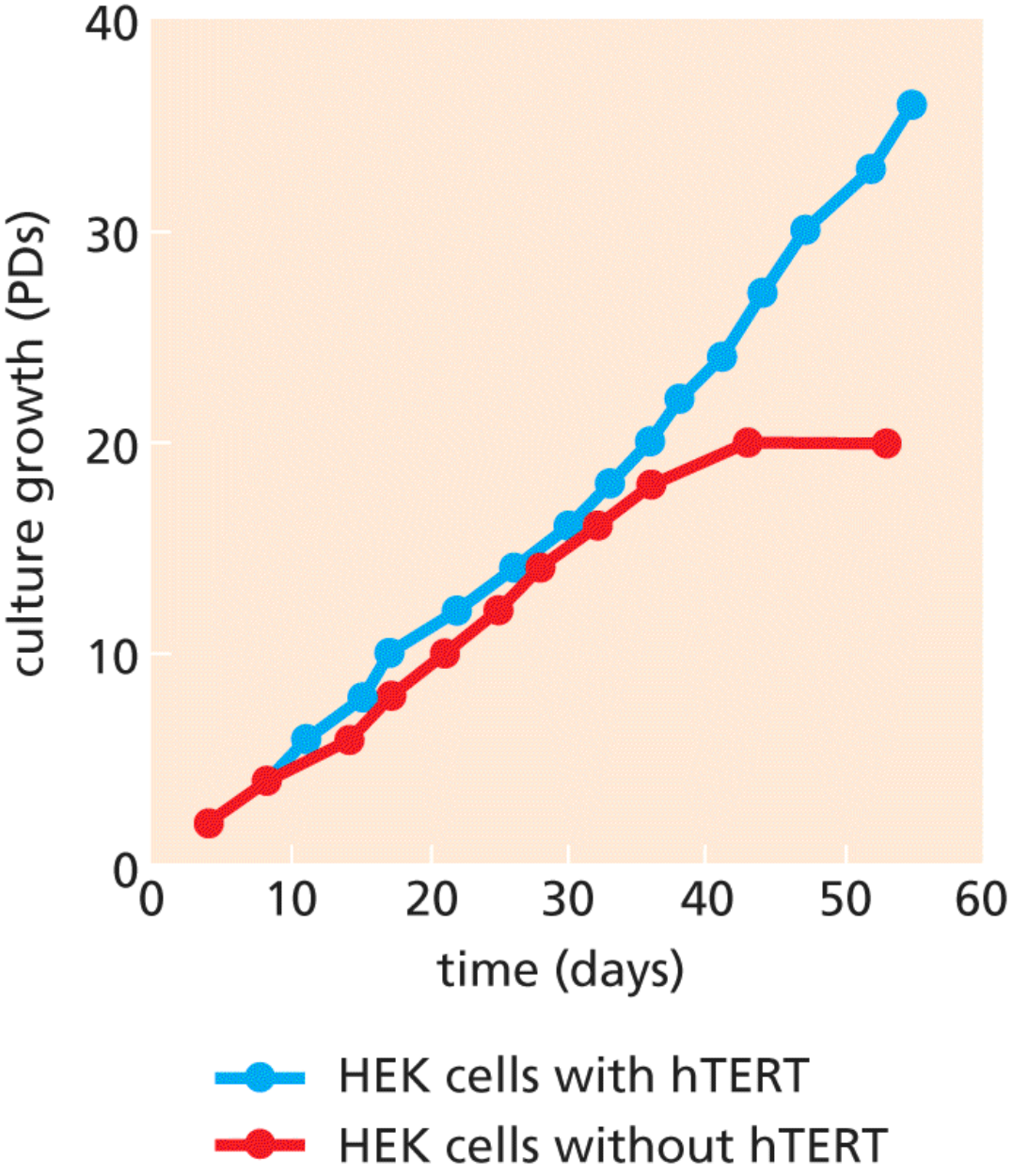
In addition to Myc, the E6 oncoprotein of HPV (see Side-bar 9.6) and the ER81 transcription factor, which is activated by the Ras–MAPK pathway, stimulate *hTERT* transcription. Working in the opposite direction, Menin—the product of the *MEN1* tumor suppressor gene (see Table 7.1)—associates with the *hTERT* promoter and represses *hTERT* transcription. A similar repressive role has been attributed to p53, Mxd (see Figure 8.21A), the WT1 tumor suppressor protein, and the Sp1 transcription factor, whose expression is induced by TGF-β.

Cancer cells use other molecular strategies to de-repress *hTERT* expression to acquire high levels of telomerase activity (see Sidebar 10.3). The sudden acquisition of telomerase activity might be only a *correlate* of escape from crisis rather than a *cause*. This ambiguity can be resolved by a simple experiment: a cDNA version of the *hTERT* gene can be introduced into cells just before they are destined to enter crisis. The introduced *hTERT* cDNA confers telomerase activity on these cells, causes elongation of their greatly shortened telomeres, prevents entrance into crisis, and enables such cells to grow indefinitely (**Figure 10.15**).



A Southern blot with seven channels. The first two are for a control vector. They show that telomere length decreased, from mostly in the 4 to 12 kilobase pair range after 4 population doublings to mostly in the 2 to 8 range after 20 doublings. The other five channels show that for the h TERT vector, telomere

length remained in the 6 to 15 kilobase pair range from 4 population doublings all the way up to 26 doublings.
(A)



A line graph with time on the horizontal axis and culture growth in population doublings on the vertical axis. For H E K cells with h TERT, the line rises steadily to about 37 doublings after 55 days. For H E K cells without h TERT, the line levels off at 20 doublings after 42 days.

(B)

Figure 10.15 Prevention of crisis by expression of telomerase (A) This Southern blot reveals the lengths of telomeric DNAs that were generated by cleaving genomic DNA with a restriction enzyme that does not cut within the repeating hexanucleotide sequence of telomeres, followed by hybridization to a DNA probe that recognizes this same sequence. As is seen, telomerase-negative human embryonic kidney (HEK) cells infected with a control retroviral vector that specifies no protein carry telomeres that decrease in size between the 4th and 20th population doublings (PDs; *left two channels*). However, infection of such cells with a retroviral vector specifying hTERT causes the telomeres to substantially increase in length, maintaining their sizes through the 26th population doubling (*right channels*). (Because these telomeres are much longer, they generate a stronger signal upon Southern blotting.) The size markers are given in kilobase pairs. (B) This population of human embryonic kidney (HEK) cells was destined to enter crisis by 40 days, which is the equivalent of roughly 20 population doublings (PDs; *red line*). However, when hTERT was ectopically expressed in these cells (*blue line*), they gained the ability to proliferate indefinitely. (From C.M. Counter, W.C. Hahn, W. Wei et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 95:14723-14728, 1998. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

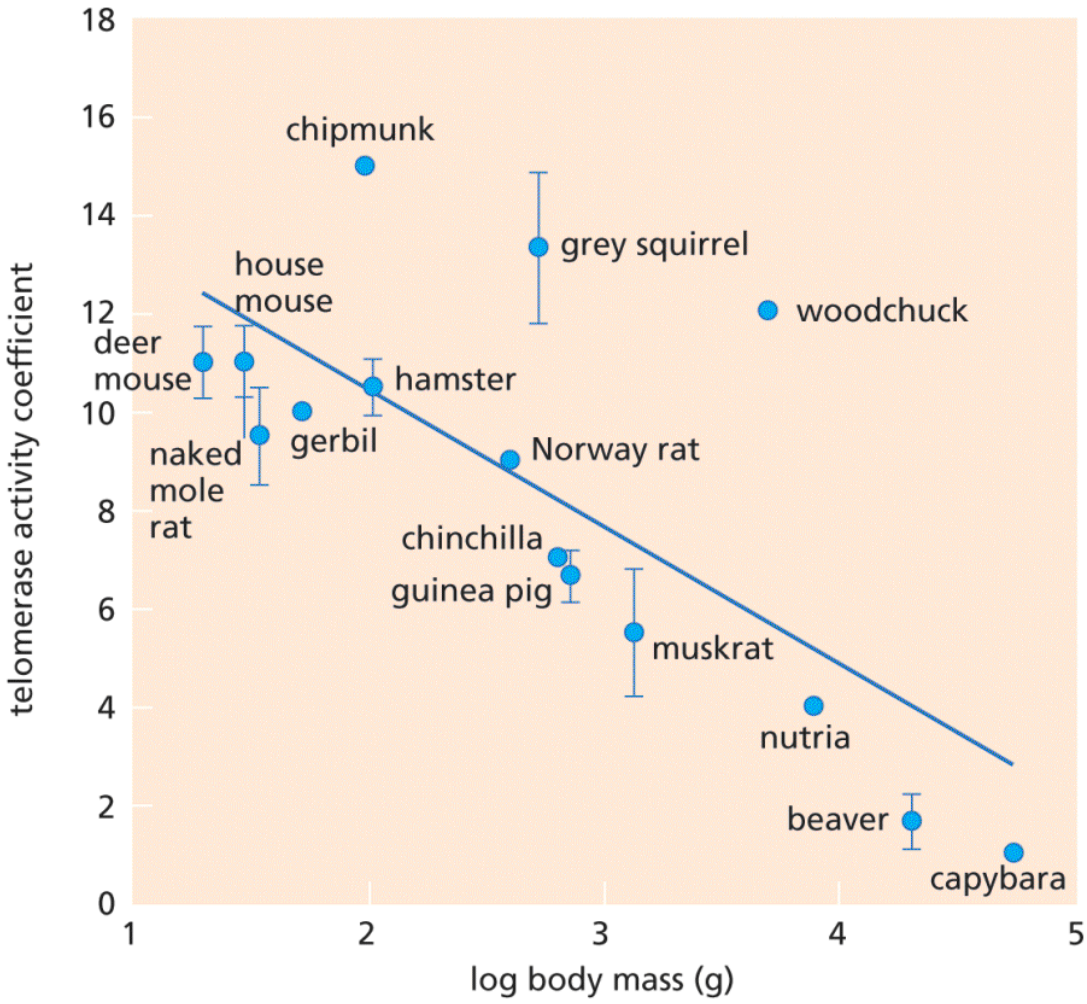
The outcomes of this experiment and similar experiments actually prove three related points. First, although the telomerase holoenzyme may be composed of multiple, distinct subunits, the only subunit missing from normal, pre-crisis human cells is the catalytic subunit encoded by the *hTERT* gene; the remaining subunits of the telomerase holoenzyme, including the *hTR* telomerase-associated RNA molecule, seem to be present in adequate amounts in pre-crisis cells. Second, because expression of telomerase (rather than another enzyme) allows cells to avoid crisis, and because telomerase acts specifically on telomeric DNA, these observations demonstrate that one cause of crisis must indeed be critically shortened telomeres. Third, this experiment shows that the acquisition of telomerase activity, which can be achieved spontaneously by rare variant cells scattered amid a population of cells in crisis, is sufficient to enable cells to escape crisis and generate descendants that can grow in an immortalized fashion.

We can conclude further that telomerase succeeds in allowing cells to circumvent crisis because it subverts the operations of the generational clock. When telomerase is expressed at significant levels, telomeres are maintained at lengths that are compatible with unlimited further replication. In effect, the generational clock that depends on progressive telomere shortening is rendered inoperative.

With these insights in mind, the normal biological roles of telomerase now become clearer. In single-cell eukaryotic species, such as ciliates and yeast, the exponential growth of cells requires the continuous presence of high levels of telomerase activity

to ensure that telomeres are maintained indefinitely at a length that is compatible with chromosomal stability. By elongating telomeric DNA, the telomerase in these protozoan cells is able to compensate for the continued erosion of telomeric DNA due to the under-replication of DNA termini by the bulk DNA replication machinery as well as degradation by certain exonucleases (see Figure 10.12). Being single-celled, these eukaryotes have no need to fear cancer.

Expression of telomerase activity is programmed differently in complex metazoans, notably humans. Because telomerase expression is largely repressed in postembryonic cell lineages, these lineages are granted only limited postembryonic replicative potential before they enter crisis. This limitation seems to represent one component of the human body's anti-cancer defenses. Thus, the repression of TERT activity has been found to be regulated as a function of the number of cell divisions experienced in an organism's lifetime, supporting the notions that (1) the risk of developing tumors is correlated with the number of cell divisions that an organism experiences in an average life span and (2) one mechanism for reducing cancer risk is to limit the access of normal somatic cells to TERT activity (**Figure 10.16**).



A scatter plot with telomerase activity coefficient from 0 to 18 on the vertical axis and log body mass in grams from 1 to 5 on the horizontal axis. The 15 mammals represented include, from smallest to largest, deer mouse, house mouse, naked mole rat, gerbil, chipmunk, hamster, Norway rat, gray squirrel, chinchilla, guinea pig, muskrat, woodchuck, nutria, beaver, and capybara. The trend line for the plot runs from 13 on the vertical axis down to extrapolated 6 on the horizontal axis. Most of the mammals lie fairly close to the line, but chipmunk, gray squirrel, and woodchuck are outliers, having much higher telomerase activity coefficients than their body masses would predict.

Figure 10.16 Repression of TERT expression as a function of body mass The notion that repression of TERT activity in mammals represents a tumor-suppressing mechanism has been tested by examining the activity of the enzyme in the tissues of a diverse array of rodents whose body sizes vary over almost three orders of magnitude. Given that the sizes of individual proliferating cells appear to be equivalent among these species, body mass measurements are likely to serve as

one metric of the cumulative number of cell divisions that an organism experiences in its lifetime. Thus, more cell divisions are required to generate and maintain various tissues in larger organisms, an effect that is compounded because larger mammals generally have longer lifespans. Also, as described in Chapter 12, cell divisions represent a significant source of the somatic mutations that contribute to tumor pathogenesis. Consequently, during the course of their evolution, large, long-lived mammals must have developed increased anti-neoplastic mechanisms to compensate for their intrinsically increased risk of developing cancers. One such mechanism might be to limit TERT activity in somatic tissues, a notion that is supported by this study of TERT activity and body mass among a group of 15 species, all of which are members of a single mammalian order—Rodentia. Rodent body mass varies from 20 g to 55 kg. In this case, the TRAP enzyme assay (see Sidebar 10.5) was used to gauge TERT activity in various differentiated cells of rodents. (From A. Seluanov et al., *Aging Cell* 6:45–52, 2007 and V. Gorbunova et al., *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 15:531–540, 2014. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Another perspective on this problem comes from attempting to compare the relative numbers of cell divisions in the lives of laboratory mice relative to humans: mice may experience ~10^{11} cell divisions in a lifetime, whereas humans are thought to undergo about 10^{16}, suggesting that there is a roughly 100,000-fold difference in the risk of acquiring cancer-causing somatic mutations deriving from errors in DNA replication occurring during cell division. Indeed, studies of telomerase activity in a variety of rodents indicates an inverse relationship between body mass and basal telomerase activity (see Figure 10.16). This finding provides further support for the notion that limiting telomerase activity represents one mechanism evolved to compensate for the large number of cell divisions and associated risk of somatic mutations in a variety of mammals.

This mechanistic model also provides a compelling explanation of how human cells can escape from crisis and become immortalized. It fails, however, to address another long-standing mystery: How does experimentally induced expression of telomerase enable certain types of cultured cells to avoid senescence (**Sidebar 10.4**, **Figure 10.17**)?

Sidebar 10.4 The puzzle of senescence and telomeres

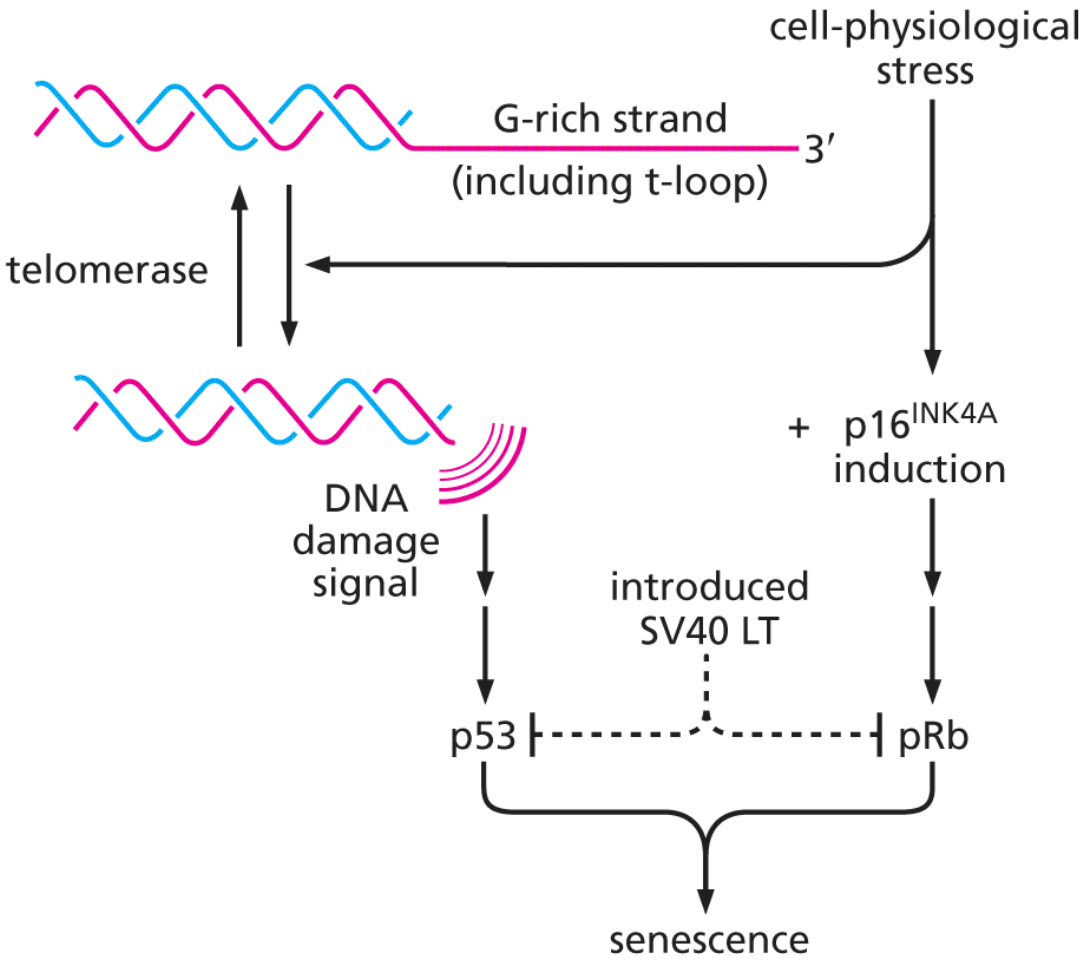
As described here, a diverse array of experimental data have converged on the conclusion that cells enter senescence in response to a variety of cell-physiological stresses, some sustained over extended periods of time. These include various types of

genetic damage, oncogene signaling, oxidative stress, and even metabolic stress. Replicative senescence—manifested by many cell types in response to being introduced into tissue culture—is largely and possibly entirely explained by the stresses that cells suffer from sub-optimal conditions of culture; this is underscored by observations indicating that replicative senescence can be delayed by improving the conditions of culture (see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.3**).

Once cells have entered into senescence, which is generally an irreversible step, they manifest DNA lesions that seem, for one reason or another, to be irreparable. Indeed, many of the stressors that induce senescence appear to function, directly or indirectly, to induce DNA damage, and the resulting unrepaired lesions seem to be responsible for emitting signals that induce senescence, thereby stably maintaining the cells around them in the senescent state. In human (but not in laboratory mouse) cells, the senescence-associated heterochromatic foci (SAHFs; see Figure 9.17) indicate a massive shutdown of the expression of thousands of genes, many of which are apparently essential for cell proliferation.

This scheme is difficult to reconcile with other solid observations demonstrating that in certain human cell types, senescence can be circumvented by forced expression of hTERT. Because such hTERT expression also allows a cell subsequently to circumvent crisis, this treatment effectively immortalizes cells. These observations have been incorporated into a scheme suggesting that when telomeres are eroded after short-term culture, some of the shortest telomeres have already eroded enough to lose their ability to protect the ends of telomeric DNA; these shortened telomeres release signals that induce senescence. In the event that senescence is circumvented, cells will then proceed to crisis, where far greater telomere erosion triggers the breakage–fusion–bridge cycles and the widespread apoptosis associated with crisis. Accordingly, telomere shortening acts as a clocking device to trigger both senescence and, later on, crisis.

These two mechanistic models are incompatible with one another: either the timing of senescence is triggered by telomere erosion or it is triggered by cell-physiological stress. A scheme to reconcile these two alternative mechanistic models is not obvious. One possible mechanism is the following (see Figure 10.17): when cells experience certain types of physiological stress, they actively degrade the ends of some or all of their telomeres; the resulting dysfunctional telomeres release a DNA damage signal that in turn triggers senescence. In the event that hTERT is present in significant amounts, such telomere degradation and resulting entrance into senescence is avoided. Yet other mechanisms by which hTERT acts independently of telomeres to prevent entrance into senescence have been proposed.



A sequence of events that begins with cell-physiological stress and proceeds along two pathways. In one pathway, the added induction of p16 INK 4A promotes the activation of p R b. In the other pathway, an overhanging single, G-rich strand, including the T-loop type, is degraded, leading to the emission of a D N A damage signal by the blunted double strand that remains. This signal activates p53. p R b and p53 Both promote senescence. However, telomerase can block the second pathway by reversing the effects of cell-physiological stress. It converts blunted double strand D N A into double-strand D N A with an overhanging single, G-rich strand. Also shown is the fact that although p R b and p53 normally promote senescence, the introduction of S V 40 L T inhibits the two proteins from doing so.

Figure 10.17 Replicative senescence and the actions of telomerase This diagram presents a speculative mechanistic model of how and why telomerase expression (achieved by ectopic expression of the hTERT catalytic subunit) can prevent human cells from entering into replicative senescence. The t-loop of the telomeric DNA (see Figure 10.11) is not illustrated here. The G-rich overhanging strand of telomeric DNA (*pink*, *top*), which forms the t-loop, has been found in

some studies to be largely degraded in cells that have entered replicative senescence. This loss may be triggered by certain cell-physiological stresses. The resulting blunted telomeric DNA may then emit a DNA damage signal that activates p53. Together with $p16^{INK4A}$ expression (see Section 8.4), which is activated by various cell-physiological stresses, this may impose a senescent state. By reversing this loss of the G-rich overhang (and a possible partial degradation of the dsDNA portion of telomeric DNA), the experimentally introduced telomerase prevents certain cell types, such as human fibroblasts, from entering into senescence. Of note, the demonstrated ability of SV40 large T antigen to circumvent senescence depends on its ability to sequester both pRB and p53, thereby neutralizing the cytostatic effects of increased expression of $p16^{INK4A}$ and p53 (see Figure 10.3).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

telomerase
: An enzyme specialized to extend telomeric DNA; those telomerases characterized to date carry an RNA subunit and a reverse transcriptase-like catalytic subunit. *See also* **telomere**.

holoenzyme
: A multi-subunit complex containing an enzyme and associated protein subunits that collaborate to mediate and regulate enzymatic activity.

OceanofPDF.com

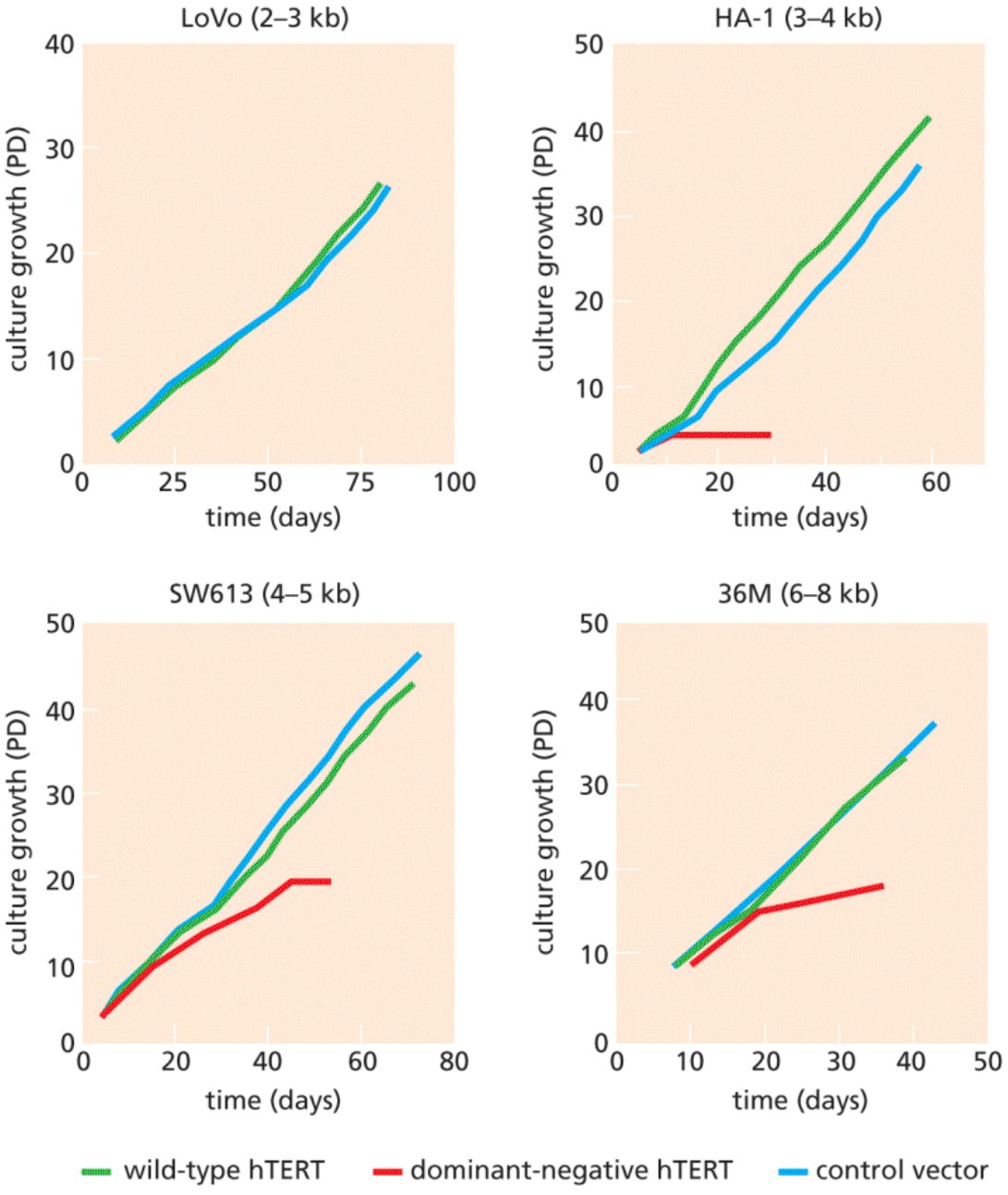
10.7 Telomerase plays a key role in the proliferation of human cancer cells

The experiments described above using pre-crisis human cells in culture suggest that the telomerase activity detectable in the great majority of human cancer cells plays a causal role in their immortalization and that such immortalization is a key component of the neoplastic growth state. This mechanistic model has been tested experimentally by suppressing the telomerase activity in cancer cells and following their subsequent responses. Telomerase activity can be reduced through the expression of antisense RNA in the telomerase-positive cells. For example, an RNA that is complementary in sequence to the *hTR* RNA subunit of the telomerase holoenzyme (see Figure 10.13) can be introduced experimentally into telomerase-positive human cancer cells. Such an antisense molecule is presumed to anneal to the *hTR* molecule, forming an RNA–RNA double helix, thereby blocking the ability of the *hTR* subunit to participate in the synthesis of telomeric DNA. In fact, it is difficult to achieve total inhibition of hTR function using this strategy. Nonetheless, such an antisense experiment performed with HeLa cells (from the line of human cervical carcinoma cells cited earlier) caused them to stop growing 23 to 26 days after they were initially exposed to the antisense RNA.

An alternative experimental strategy that is more effective derives from the use of a mutant hTERT enzyme carrying amino acid substitutions in its catalytic cleft; these alterations yield a catalytically inactive enzyme. When overexpressed in telomerase-positive cells, the mutant hTERT protein can act in a dominant-negative fashion (dn; see Section 9.4) to interfere with the existing endogenous telomerase activity of these cells. The dn hTERT, which can be expressed at levels vastly higher than the endogenous hTERT protein, is likely to associate with and thereby monopolize the other subunits that normally assemble to form the telomerase holoenzyme. As a consequence, when these other telomerase subunits associate with the dn hTERT protein, they become recruited into unproductive holoenzyme complexes.

Expression of the dn hTERT subunit in a number of different telomerase-positive human tumor cell lines causes them to lose all detectable telomerase activity and, with some delay, to enter crisis. The crisis occurs with a lag time from 5 to 25 days, depending on the length of the telomeric DNA in these cells at the time when the dn hTERT subunit was first introduced. Cells with telomeres that initially were 2 to 3 kb in length enter crisis almost immediately, whereas those with telomeres that were initially 4 to 5 kb in length require 30 days of further passaging in culture before

entering crisis (**Figure 10.18**). These delayed reactions suggest that after the dn hTERT is expressed in cancer cells, telomeres shorten progressively, and that crisis ensues after the initially present telomeric DNA erodes down to some threshold length that is incompatible with protecting the ends of chromosomal DNA.



Four line graphs, each with time in days on the horizontal axis and culture growth measured in population doublings on the vertical axis. The upper left graph, for the Lo Vo cancer cell line (2 to 3 kilobases) shows a blue line and a green one rising steadily from 2 doublings after 10 days to 80 doublings after 28 days. The

upper right graph, for the H A-1 line, 3 to 4 kilobases, shows a green line rising from 1 doubling after 5 days to 41 doublings after 58 days, a blue line rising from 1 doubling after 5 days to 35 doublings after 57 days, and a red line that starts at 1 doubling after 5 days and levels off at 2 doublings after 10 days before ending after 30 days. The lower left graph, for the S W 6 13 line, 4 to 5 kilobases, shows a blue line rising from 2 doublings after 4 days to 47 doublings after 70 days, a green line rising from 2 doublings after 4 days to 42 doublings after 70 days, and a red line that starts at 2 doublings after 4 days and levels off at 20 doublings after 42 days before ending after 52 days. The lower right graph, for the 36 M line, 6 to 8 kilobases, shows a blue line rising from 9 doublings after 9 days to 37 doublings after 42 days, a green line rising from 9 doublings after 9 days to 33 doublings after 39 days, and a red line that starts at 9 doublings after 10 days, rises to 14 doublings after 19 days, and then ends at 18 doublings after 35 days.

Figure 10.18 Suppression of telomerase activity and resulting loss of the neoplastic growth program Expression vectors specifying a mutant dominant-negative (dn) hTERT protein (*red lines*), a wild-type hTERT enzyme (*green lines*), or an empty control vector (*blue lines*) have dramatically different effects on four different human cancer cell lines. The respective lengths of their telomeric DNAs, as determined by TRF Southern blots (see Figure 10.8A) at the onset of the experiment, are indicated in kilobases (kb). The empty control vector and the hTERT-expressing vector permit the continued proliferation of these cells, as measured in population doublings (PD). However, introduction of the dn hTERT enzyme, which differs from the wild-type enzyme by a single amino acid substitution in its catalytic cleft and is presumed to shut down endogenous hTERT function, causes these cells to stop growing, doing so with various lag times (in days). Microscopic examination revealed that the cells that ceased proliferating entered into crisis and showed widespread apoptosis. Cells of the LoVo cell line (*top left*) entered crisis immediately after expressing the dn hTERT enzyme, and therefore no cells were available to count. (Because the TRFs also contain nonfunctional subtelomeric DNA that carries imperfect hexanucleotide repeats, the lengths of functional telomeric sequences are much shorter than the observed lengths of the TRFs.) (From W.C. Hahn et al., *Nat. Med.* 5:1164–1170, 1999. With permission from Nature.)

Importantly, the dn hTERT enzyme has no observable effect on the growth of telomerase-positive cells up to the point when they reach crisis. This rules out an alternative explanation: that the mutant enzyme is intrinsically cytotoxic and that its effects on the cell are attributable to some nonspecific toxicity. Taken together, such experiments lead to the conclusion that the continued activities of the telomerase enzyme are as important to the proliferation of these cancer cells as the actions of oncogenes and the inaction of tumor suppressor genes. This conclusion is strengthened

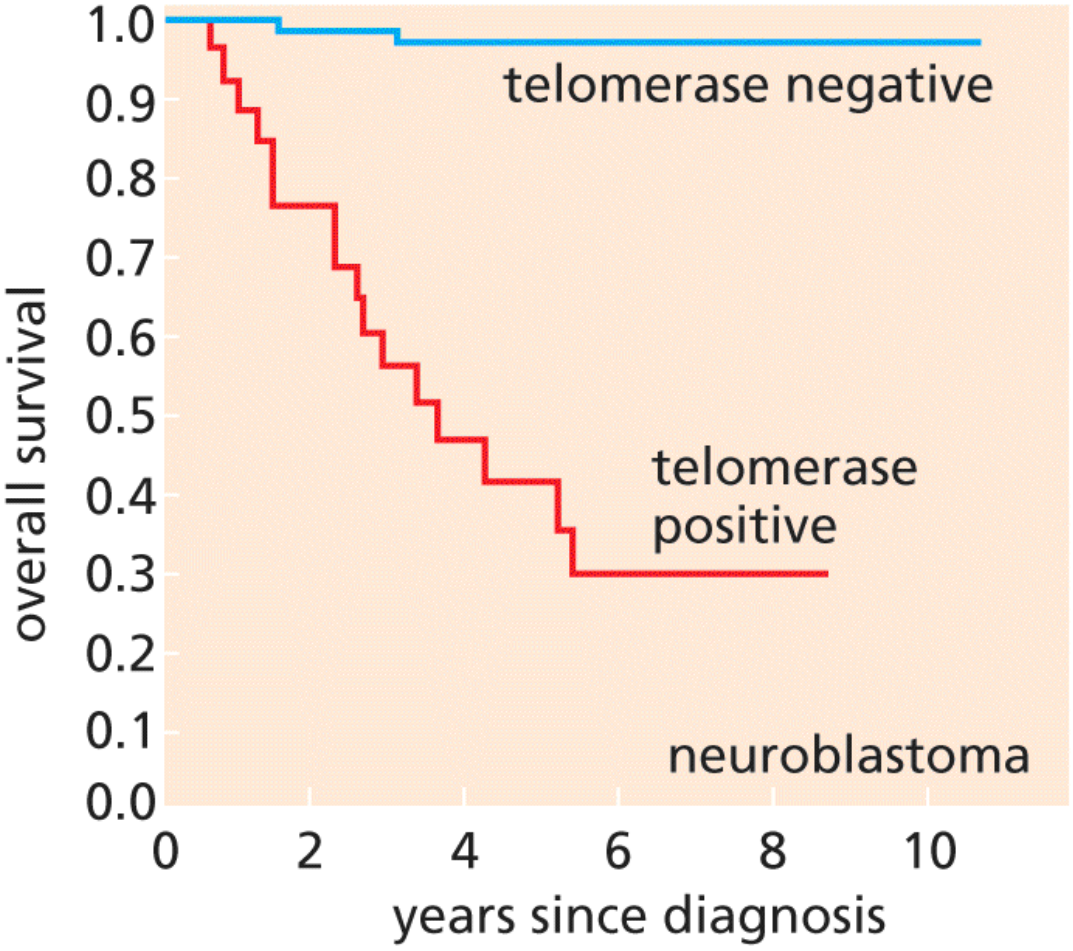
by the dramatic outcomes of studies of certain human pediatric tumors (**Sidebar 10.5**, **Figure 10.19**).

Sidebar 10.5 Telomerase fuels the growth of some pediatric tumors

Neuroblastomas are tumors of cells in the peripheral (sympathetic) nervous system and are usually encountered in very young children. These tumors have highly variable outcomes, with some regressing spontaneously and others progressing into invasive, metastatic tumors that ultimately prove fatal. As described in Section 4.4, the N-*myc* gene often undergoes amplification in these tumors, and greater copy numbers of N-*myc* indicate a worse prognosis for the patient. In fact, telomerase activity is an even more useful indicator of the eventual outcome of the disease. As shown in Figure 10.19A, children whose neuroblastomas are telomerase-negative (as judged by the TRAP assay; see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.5**) do very well in response to therapy, whereas those whose tumors are telomerase-positive do poorly. Expression of these two genes—N-*myc* and the telomerase-encoding *hTERT* gene—is likely to be functionally linked because N-*myc*'s cousin, *myc*, is already known to be a strong inducer of *hTERT* transcription (see Sidebar 10.3). Similar dynamics operate in another childhood

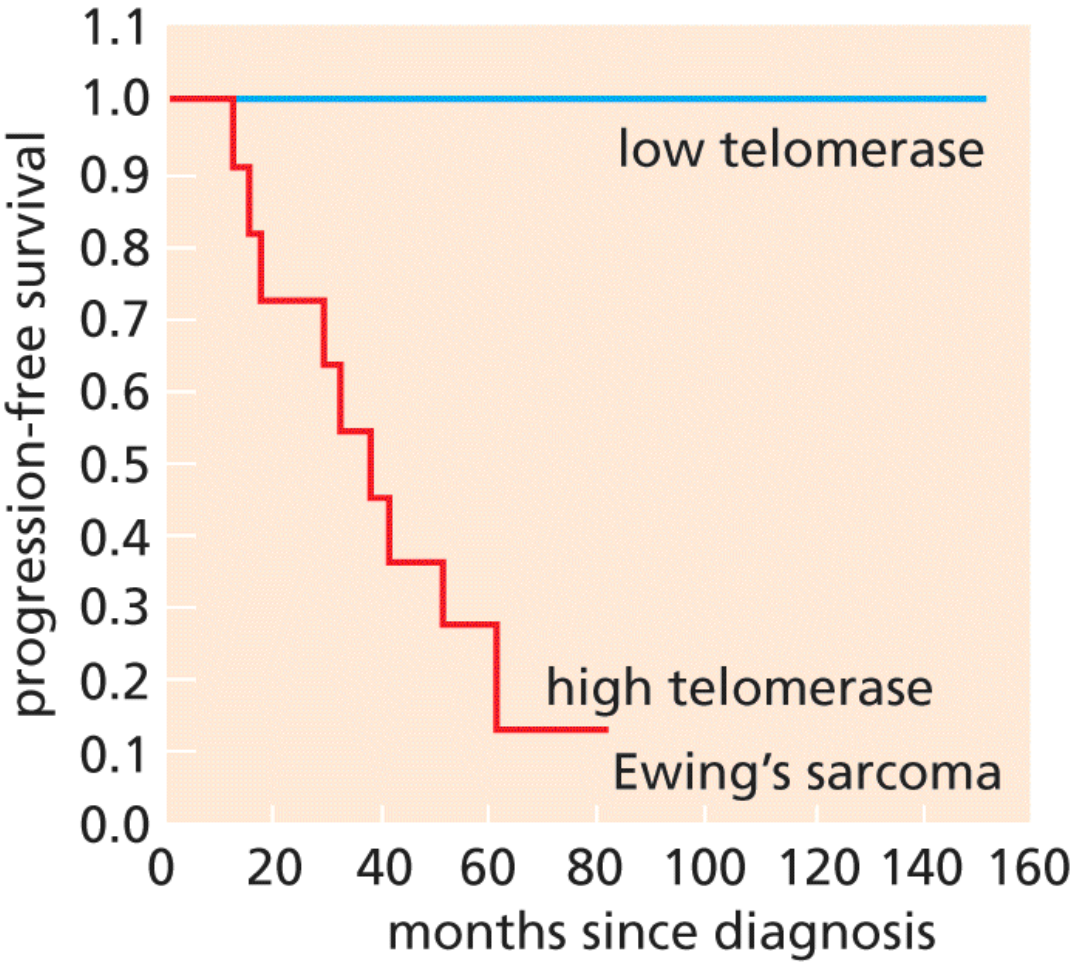
tumor—Ewing's sarcoma—which may arise from mesenchymal stem cells (Figure 10.19B).

Some pathologists argue that neuroblastomas are extremely common in children under the age of one year, and that almost all of these regress spontaneously and never become clinically apparent. The causes of this regression and the benign outcomes of many clinically detected neuroblastomas that respond well to treatment may now have found a molecular explanation: without significant hTERT expression, neuroblastoma cells lose telomeres and progress into crisis, from which they fail to emerge.



A line graph describing the overall survival rate of neuroblastoma patients as a function of time. About 95 percent of telomerase negative patients are still alive 10 years after diagnosis, whereas only about 30 percent of telomerase positive patients are alive after 6 years.

(A)



A line graph describing the overall survival rate of Ewing's sarcoma patients as a function of time. 100 percent of low telomerase patients are still alive 150 months after diagnosis, whereas only about 10 percent of high telomerase patients are alive after 60 months.

(B)

Figure 10.19 Telomerase activity and the prognosis of pediatric tumors (A) This Kaplan–Meier plot illustrates the survival of a group of pediatric neuroblastoma patients who had received no cytotoxic chemotherapy treatment and who were tracked for the time spans indicated (*abscissa*) following diagnosis. These patients were segregated into two groups—those whose tumors were telomerase activity–positive (*red*), and those whose tumors appeared to lack this activity (*blue*). The ordinate indicates overall survival, i.e., the proportion of patients who remained alive at various times after initial diagnosis. (B) A similar study of children with Ewing's sarcoma was undertaken, in which the patients were segregated into two groups, depending on whether their tumors had high

(*red*) or low (*blue*) telomerase activity. In this case, the ordinate indicates the proportion of children who experienced *progression-free survival,* i.e., those whose tumors had not advanced beyond the stage initially encountered in the clinic. (A, from C. Poremba et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 18:2582–2592, 2000. B, from A. Ohali et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 21:3836–3843, 2003. Both with permission from the American Society of Clinical Oncology.)

The key role of hTERT in human cell transformation is revealed by other data as well. Thus, as described in the next chapter, the experimental transformation of primary human cells into tumorigenic cells requires, among other introduced genes, the introduction of a vector expressing hTERT constitutively. Responding to these various discoveries, some researchers have used an automotive analogy to illustrate the growth of human cancer cells: activated oncogenes are said to be akin to accelerator pedals that are stuck to the floor; inactivated tumor suppressor genes are compared to defective braking systems; and telomerase is likened to an agent that ensures that the runaway car has an endless, self-replenishing supply of gasoline in its tank.

OceanofPDF.com

10.8 Some immortalized cells can maintain telomeres without telomerase

As noted earlier, 85 to 90% of human tumors have been found to be telomerase-positive. The remaining 10 to 15% lack readily detectable enzyme activity, yet the cells within this second group of tumors are presumably faced with the need to maintain their telomeres above some minimum length in order to proliferate indefinitely. In fact, many of these cells have learned to maintain their telomeric DNA using a mechanism that does not depend on the actions of telomerase.

This non-telomerase-based mechanism was first discovered in the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* following inactivation of one of the several yeast genes encoding subunits of its telomerase holoenzyme. Resulting mutant yeast cells soon entered into a state that is analogous to crisis in mammalian cells. The vast majority of the cells died, but rare variants emerged from these populations of dying cells that used the ALT (alternative lengthening of telomeres) mechanism, which is telomerase-independent, to construct and maintain their telomeres. The minority of human tumor cells that lack significant telomerase activity also use the ALT mechanism.

Details of the molecular mechanisms that ALT-positive human cells use to maintain their telomeres are poorly understood. An important clue, however, comes from an experiment in which a traceable molecular marker —a neomycin resistance gene—was introduced into the midst of the telomere repeat sequence of one chromosome carried by a mammalian cell in the ALT state. When the telomeric DNAs were examined in the descendants of this cell, copies of this molecular marker were found in a number of other telomeres as well. Hence, sequence information appears to be exchanged between the telomeres of cells in the ALT state. Some of the enzymes that are used by ALT-positive human cancer cells to maintain their telomeres have been identified while others remain elusive. For example,

certain enzymes involved in DNA mismatch repair, described in part in Chapter 12, appear to contribute to telomere maintenance in human ALT cells.

The existence of the ALT mechanism emphasizes that all types of human cancer cells must develop ways to maintain their telomeres above a certain threshold length in order to proliferate in an immortalized fashion. To summarize, most human cancer cells de-repress expression of the *hTERT* gene, but a small minority of incipient cancer cells find a way to activate the ALT mechanism.

The ALT state is associated preferentially with a specific subset of the tumors encountered in oncology clinics. These include perhaps half of osteosarcomas and soft-tissue sarcomas as well as one-quarter of glioblastomas, but only rarely carcinomas. Perhaps these correlations may one day be explained by the characteristic expression of a group of genes in mesenchymal cells that are also associated with repression of the *hTERT* gene, forcing the cancer cells that arise from these cell types to rely on ALT as a more accessible route to immortalization. Additional clues to understanding the origin of this mechanism may also come from observations that the ALT state operates in certain subclasses of normal lymphocytes.

At the moment, the precise reasons why one mechanism (involving hTERT) is usually favored over the other (ALT) remain obscure. Equally unclear are the mechanisms that cause the telomeric DNA of human cells in the ALT state to grow to heterogeneous lengths (often >30 kb) far greater than those usually seen in telomerase-positive cells (5–10 kb). Importantly, the dominant-negative hTERT enzyme (see Figure 10.18), which induces crisis in a number of telomerase-positive human cancer cell lines, fails to do so in a human ALT-positive tumor cell line, providing further support of the notions that (1) ALT-positive cells do not depend on telomerase for their growth, and (2) the dn hTERT enzyme is not intrinsically cytotoxic.

Of note, most of the telomeres in the ALT-positive cells are able to form the t-loops/lariats (see Figure 10.11) in the absence of telomerase function. These structures explain how these telomeres are protected from end-to-end fusion and BFB cycles. At the same time, it illustrates that these t-loops

form spontaneously and are directed to do so by the DNA sequences and associated proteins (see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.4**) found in human cells lacking hTERT function.

hTERT is a very attractive target for researchers who are intent on developing novel types of anti-cancer therapeutics. As we will learn in Chapter 17, the catalytic clefts of enzymes such as hTERT can often be blocked by highly specific therapeutic drug molecules. Significantly, hTERT is a distant relative of the reverse transcriptase of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV; see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.6**), against which effective drug inhibitors have been successfully developed. These existing successes increase the likelihood that anti-hTERT compounds will one day be produced as well. In addition, this enzyme is expressed in the great majority of human cancers, but is not present at significant levels in normal tissue. This offers the prospect of drug selectivity—being able to affect cancer cells, while leaving cells in normal tissues untouched. However, for reasons that remain unclear, the hTERT enzyme has proven time and again to be a formidable enemy, in that repeated screens for low–molecular-weight inhibitors of this enzyme have failed to yield attractive drug candidates.

The ALT state holds important implications for such drug development. Imagine that an inhibitor of hTERT were indeed developed. It is already clear that as many as 10% of human tumors will never respond to such an anti-telomerase drug, because they are ALT-positive and therefore do not depend on this enzyme for their continued proliferation. The remaining 90% of human tumors, which do indeed exhibit robust telomerase activity, may initially be susceptible to killing by this drug, but sooner or later may spawn variants that have activated the ALT mechanism of telomere maintenance. This might allow the newly arising ALT variants to evade the killing actions of the anti-telomerase drug. In this case, a back-up therapeutic strategy might come from the discovery that inhibitors of the ATR enzyme (see Section 9.7), which participates in DNA replication, recombination and repair, are highly effective in killing ALT cancer cells but not those that express high levels of hTERT.

OceanofPDF.com

10.9 Telomeres play different roles in the cells of laboratory mice and in human cells

Our descriptions of telomerase expression repeatedly refer to its actions in human cells, with good reason. Rodent cells, specifically those of laboratory mouse strains, control telomerase expression in a totally different way. These mice do not strongly repress mTERT expression, which seems to explain why the double-stranded region of telomeric DNA in laboratory mice is as much as 30 to 40 kb long—about five times longer than corresponding human telomeric DNA. In fact, laboratory mouse telomeres are so long that they are never in danger of eroding down to critically short lengths during the lifetime of a mouse, even when expression of mouse telomerase is suppressed experimentally.

The lengths of mouse telomeres permit cell lineages to pass through a far larger number of replicative generations than would seem to be required for tumor formation. This finding suggests that laboratory mice do not rely on telomere length to limit the replicative capacity of their normal cell lineages and that telomere erosion cannot serve as a mechanism for constraining tumor development in these rodents (see also Figure 10.16). Moreover, telomerase activity is detectable in the stem cells of certain tissues in the mouse, providing further indication of the absence of global repression of TERT activity in these animals.

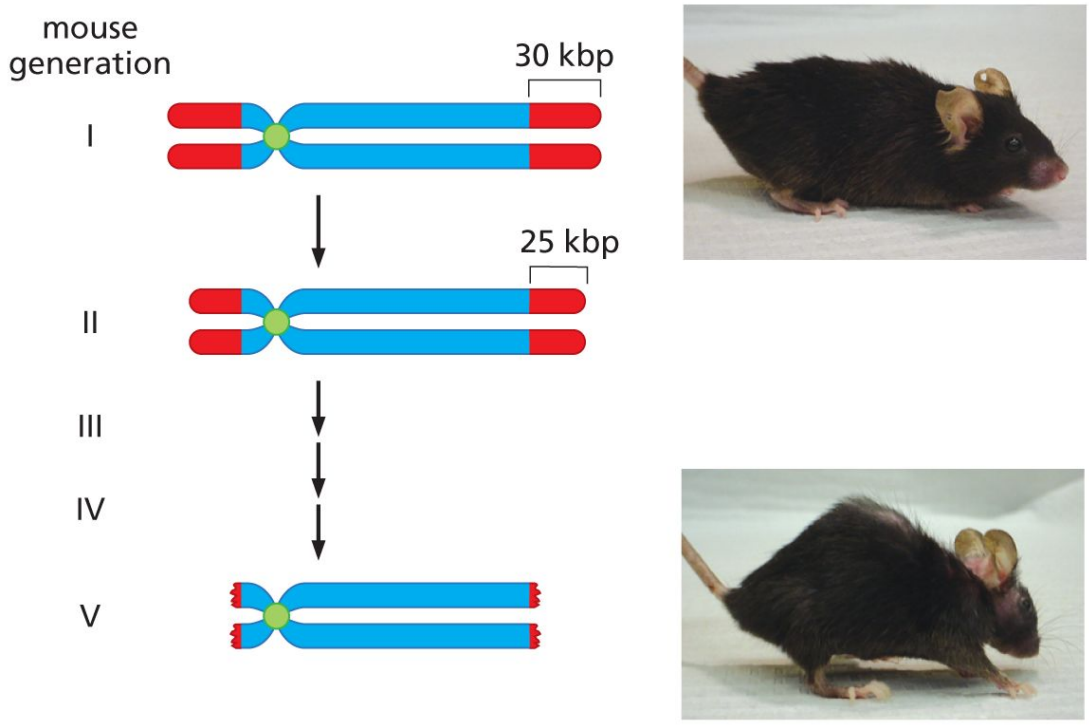
The long telomeres of laboratory mice hold additional implications: to the extent that cells derived from these mice show limited replicative ability *in vitro*, that ability is never determined by telomere shortening. In fact, mouse cells can be immortalized relatively easily following propagation in culture (which selects for cells that have avoided senescence and are spontaneously immortalized *in vitro*). Human cells, in contrast to their mouse counterparts, require the introduction of both the SV40 *large T* oncogene (to avoid senescence; see Figure 10.3) and the *hTERT* gene (to avoid crisis). As an aside, one reason for the reduced tendency of mouse cells to become senescent during *in vitro* culture may be that they fail to develop senescence-associated heterochromatic foci (SAHFs; see Section 9.11) in culture, whereas their human counterparts do so readily.

The role of telomeres in the lives of mice has been revealed dramatically by researchers who have inactivated the gene encoding the *mTR* RNA subunit of telomerase holoenzyme in the mouse germ line. As expected, the homozygous mutant

offspring of initially created heterozygous mice carrying the mutant *mTR* allele exhibit no telomerase activity in any of their cells. During their lifetimes, the telomeres of these telomerase-negative mice may shorten from approximately 30 kb down to about 25 kb; the latter length is still far longer than is required to protect chromosomal ends.

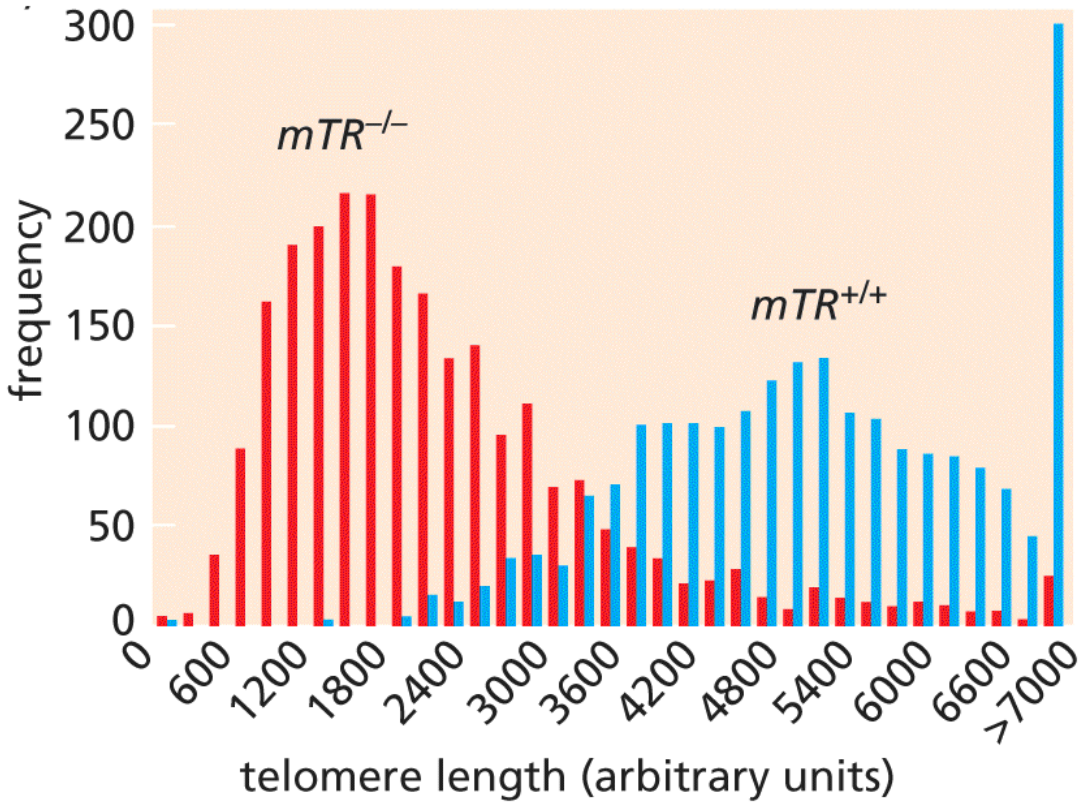
These *mTR*-negative mice are superficially indistinguishable phenotypically from wild-type mice. This absence of any readily observable mutant phenotype suggests that the telomerase holoenzyme plays no essential role in the tissues of these mammals beyond its task of maintaining telomeres. (However, detailed characterization of genetically altered mice that continue to express *mTR* but have been deprived of *mTERT* expression reveals a subtle morphogenetic defect—the conversion of a thoracic to a lumbar vertebra. This change may be caused by the association of the mTERT protein with other cellular proteins whose functions are totally unrelated to its actions on telomeres; one of these is, as an example, the complex of transcription factors that allow β-catenin to activate gene expression in response to Wnt signaling; see Figure 6.19B. The same association presumably holds true for hTERT.) Beyond this, there are several reports describing the actions of hTERT in protecting neurons against oxidative stress.

The homozygous telomerase-negative (that is, $mTR^{-/-}$) mice can be bred with one another through at least three more organismic generations without showing any discernible phenotype. Finally, however, in the fifth generation, telomerase-negative mice begin to show distinctive phenotypes—an indication that after five organismic generations without telomerase, their telomeres have eroded down to dangerously short lengths (**Figure 10.20**). These fifth-generation $mTR^{-/-}$ mice and, even more so, their progeny in the sixth generation are sickly and show a diminished capacity to heal wounds, indicative of the inability of their cells to respond properly to mitogenic signals. The sixth-generation $mTR^{-/-}$ mice suffer also from substantially reduced fertility.



An illustration of telomere shortening. In the first generation, all four telomeres on a chromosome are 30 kilobase pairs long. A normal looking mouse is shown. In the second generation, they are only 25 kilobase pairs long. By the fifth generation, they have shrunken to stubs. A hunchbacked mouse is shown.

(A)



Two overlapping frequency histograms, on a horizontal axis with telomere length ranging from 0 to 7000 in arbitrary units. Frequency ranges from 0 to 300. In wild-type mice, which are homozygous telomerase-positive, the most common telomere length is 5000 to 5200 units and there is a somewhat normal ditribution around that. In homozygous telomerase-negative mice, the most common telomere length is 1600 to 1800 units and the distribution is skewed to the right.

(B)

Figure 10.20 Erosion of telomeres over multiple generations in populations of *mTR*$^{-/-}$ mice (A) During the lifetimes of the first *mTR*$^{-/-}$ mouse generation, their telomeres, which are initially 30 kbp long (*red*), are reduced in size by about 5 kbp (*left*). These mice (*top*, *right*) are phenotypically normal, as are their descendants in the second and third generations. However, by the fifth organismic generation, the telomeres in their cells have eroded to the extent that they can no longer protect the ends of chromosomes; the tissues of these mice begin to lose their ability to renew themselves and heal wounds, and these mice begin to show symptoms of premature aging, including wasting away of muscle tissues and a hunched back (*bottom*, *right*). The relative sizes of the telomeres in these images have been exaggerated 1000-fold for the sake of illustration. (B) Telomere length

can be gauged by fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH) using a probe that is specific for the telomere repeat sequence. Here the mTR^{-} allele has been bred into a strain of wild mice that normally have very short telomeres. Already in the first generation, the resulting homozygous $mTR^{-/-}$ mice (*red*) have far shorter telomeric DNA than their wild-type ($mTR^{+/+}$) counterparts (*blue*). These measurements also reveal the heterogeneous lengths of telomeric DNA within each population of mice, mirroring comparable heterogeneity within the individual cells of a mouse. Lengths are in arbitrary units. All telomeres longer than 7000 units are represented by a single bar (*far right*). (A, courtesy of R.S. Maser and R.A. DePinho. B, from L.-Y. Hao et al., *Cell* 123:1121–1131, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

The $mTR^{-/-}$ mice in this sixth generation already exhibit very short telomeres at birth, and their inability to subsequently maintain these telomeres, particularly in mitotically active tissues, results in widespread cell death and loss of tissue function. For example, highly proliferative tissues, such as the gastrointestinal epithelium, the hematopoietic system, and the testes, show substantial atrophy (loss of cells). These observations are striking and without parallel in the field of mouse genetics, because they demonstrate organismic phenotypes that only become manifest five or six organismic generations after a mutation has been introduced into the germ line of these animals.

Moreover, such observations dramatically demonstrate the differences between the telomeres of human cells and those of these mutant laboratory mice. Human telomeres begin relatively short, and loss of telomerase activity can lead, already in the *first* organismic generation, to severe organismic phenotypes (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.7**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

atrophy
: Shrinkage of a tissue, often caused by loss of viability of its component cells and resulting loss of normal cell numbers.

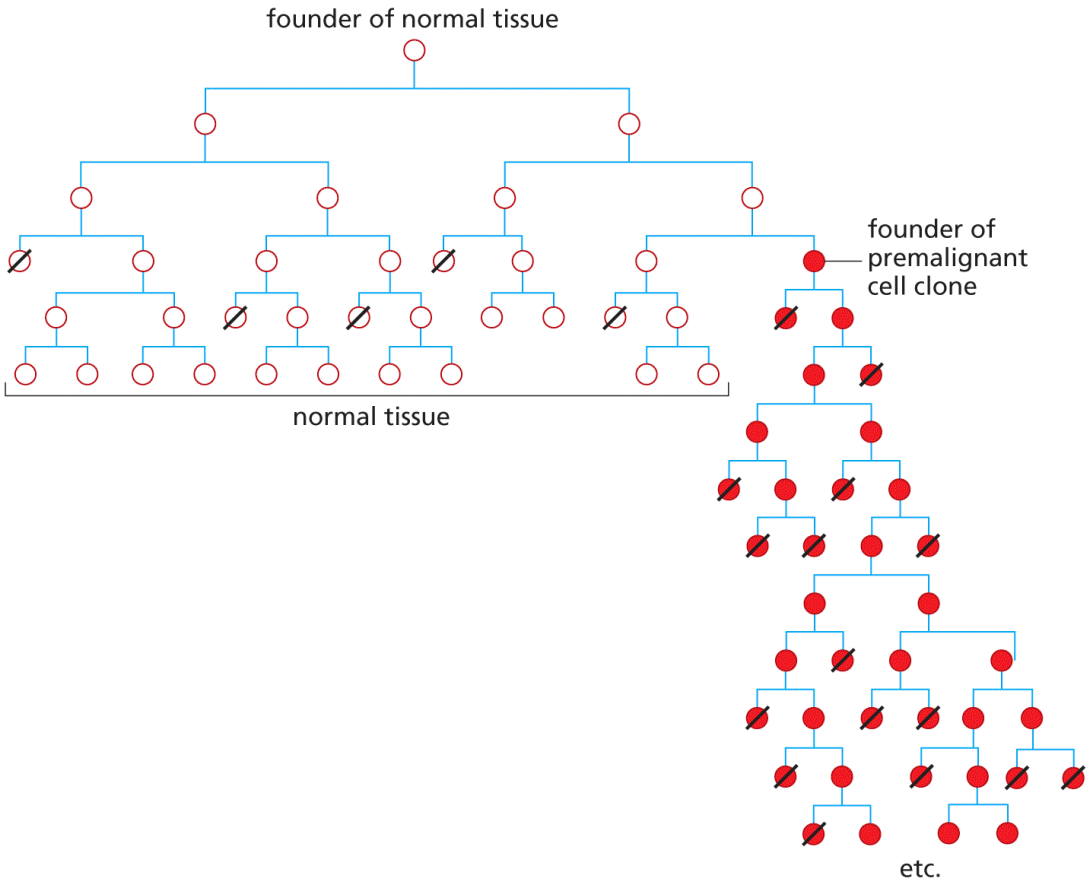
OceanofPDF.com

10.10 Telomerase-negative mice show both decreased and increased cancer susceptibility

Laboratory mice are susceptible to spontaneous cancers, largely lymphomas and leukemias. This background of susceptibility can be increased by experimentally introducing specific mutations into the mouse germ line that cause activation of proto-oncogenes or inactivation of tumor suppressor genes. These facts, when taken together, raise an interesting question: To what extent do the critically short telomeres in fifth- and sixth-generation telomerase-negative mice also affect the cancer rate in these animals?

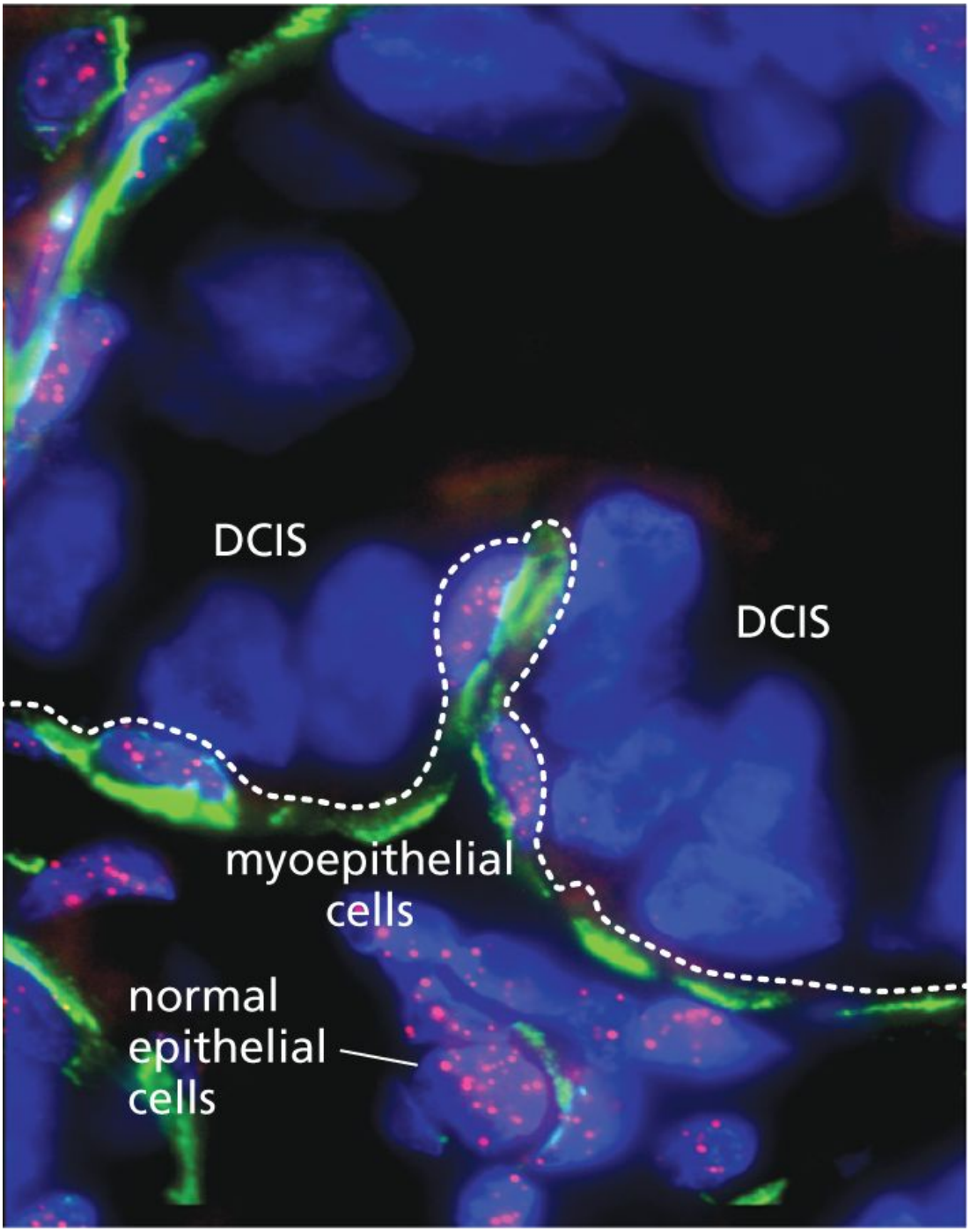
The response to this question would seem to be straightforward. We can imagine that the deterioration of cells in these *mTR*$^{-/-}$ mice leaves a barely adequate number of healthy cells to sustain tissue and organismic viability. Stem cells charged with the task of replenishing the pools of differentiated cells in these tissues will likely have great difficulty doing so.

Because the normal cells in these tissues are barely able to maintain themselves, incipient cancer cells should, by all rights, have an even more difficult time. The process of tumor development requires that clones of premalignant cells evolving toward malignancy must pass through a large number of growth-and-division cycles—a number substantially greater than those experienced by nearby normal cells (**Figure 10.21A**). Consequently, any tumor development that is successfully initiated by these cell clones is likely to be aborted long before it has reached completion (Figure 10.21B and C).



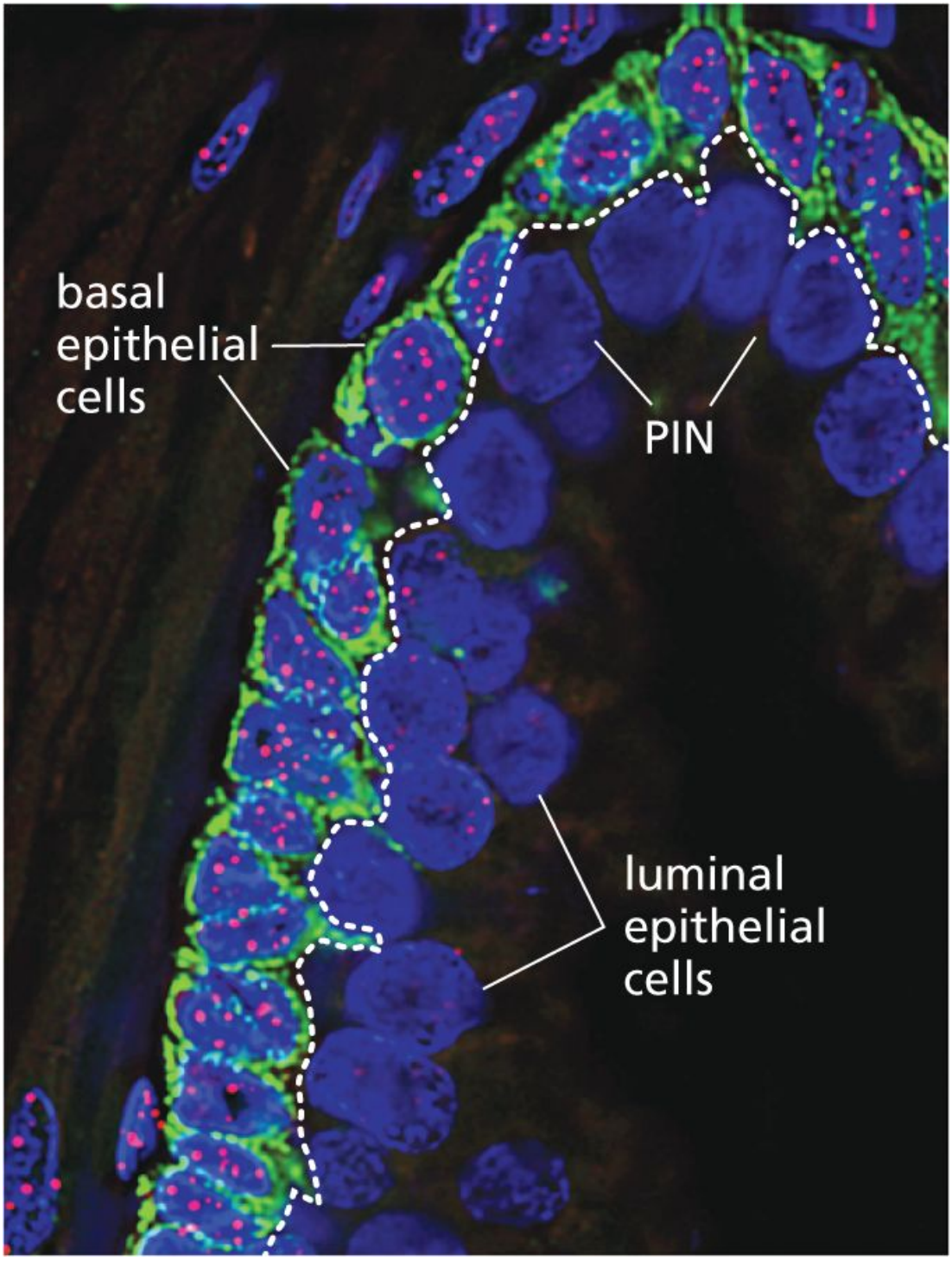
A pedigree chart that begins with a single normal-tissue founder cell. Five generations later, and with attrition, this cell has produced ten normal cells. The founder also produced, after three generations, a mutant cell that is the founder of a premalignant line. Ten generations later, and with a great deal of attrition, this mutant cell founder has produced three surviving premalignant cells.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image with a white dashed line undulating across it. Above the line, the only visible features are dark blue cell nuclei. This region is labeled D C I S. Below the line and running along it, bands of bright green are accompanied by many small pink dots; these bands are labeled myoepithelial cells. Farther below the dashed line is an area of pink dots without the green. This area is labeled normal epithelial cells.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image, with a white dashed line arcing through it. Below the line, inside the arc, the only visible features are dark blue cell nuclei, except for a few isolated green dots and pink dots. This region is

labeled P I N and also luminal epithelial cells. Above the line and following its arc is a layer of cells labeled basal epithelial cells. Each of these cells has bright green around the perimeter, enclosing a region of dark blue with many pink dots.
(C)

Figure 10.21 Normal and neoplastic cell lineages in *mTR*$^{-/-}$ mice and in humans (A) This diagram indicates the pedigree of normal cells (*open circles*) in a small patch of tissue. A founder cell in the embryo becomes the ancestor of all the cells in this tissue, e.g., all the epithelial cells. At one point, one of these epithelial cells suffers changes that make it the ancestor of the cells (*closed red circles*) that develop into a precancerous cell clone. This clone of cells must pass through many more replicative generations in order to eventually form a tumor mass. Slashes indicate the substantial attrition of cells through apoptosis or necrosis that occurs in almost every cell generation. (B) The large number of cell generations through which premalignant cells must pass en route to neoplasia results in considerable telomere erosion. In these images, telomeres are revealed by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH, *pink dots*). In normal human mammary ducts (*not shown*), telomeres are apparent in both the luminal epithelial cells and the myoepithelial cells. However, in ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS), the luminal epithelial cells, which constitute the neoplastic cell population (*above dotted line*), have lost all detectable telomeric DNA, whereas the nearby normal myoepithelial cells (*below dotted line*), which have been stained for α-smooth muscle actin (*green*), still carry strongly staining telomeres. Similar behavior is seen in the normal epithelial cells (*lower left*). (In all cases, cell nuclei are stained *blue*.) (C) Similar dynamics apply in the case of prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN)—a precursor lesion to prostatic carcinoma—in which many of the luminal epithelial cells lining ducts (*below dotted line*) have lost telomeric DNA staining, while the keratin-positive (*green, above dotted line*) basal epithelial cells continue to display a strong telomeric DNA signal. (B and C, courtesy of A.K. Meeker; see also A.K. Meeker et al., *Cancer Res*. 62:6405–6409, 2002.)

In order to test these predictions, mice were first made cancer-prone by inactivating tumor suppressor genes in their germ line, in this case the locus encoding both the p16^{INK4A} and p19^{ARF} tumor suppressor proteins (see Sections 8.4 and 9.8). Such mice, as might be expected, are highly susceptible to cancer; indeed, they frequently develop lymphomas and fibrosarcomas relatively early in life. This susceptibility is manifested even more dramatically when they are exposed to carcinogens. In one set of experiments, sequential exposure to dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene (DMBA), a potent carcinogen, followed by repeated exposures to ultraviolet-B (UV-B) radiation, led after

20 weeks to a 90% tumor incidence in the ($p16^{INK4A}$/$p19^{ARF}$-negative) mutant mice, whereas a control group of similarly treated wild-type mice had no tumors.

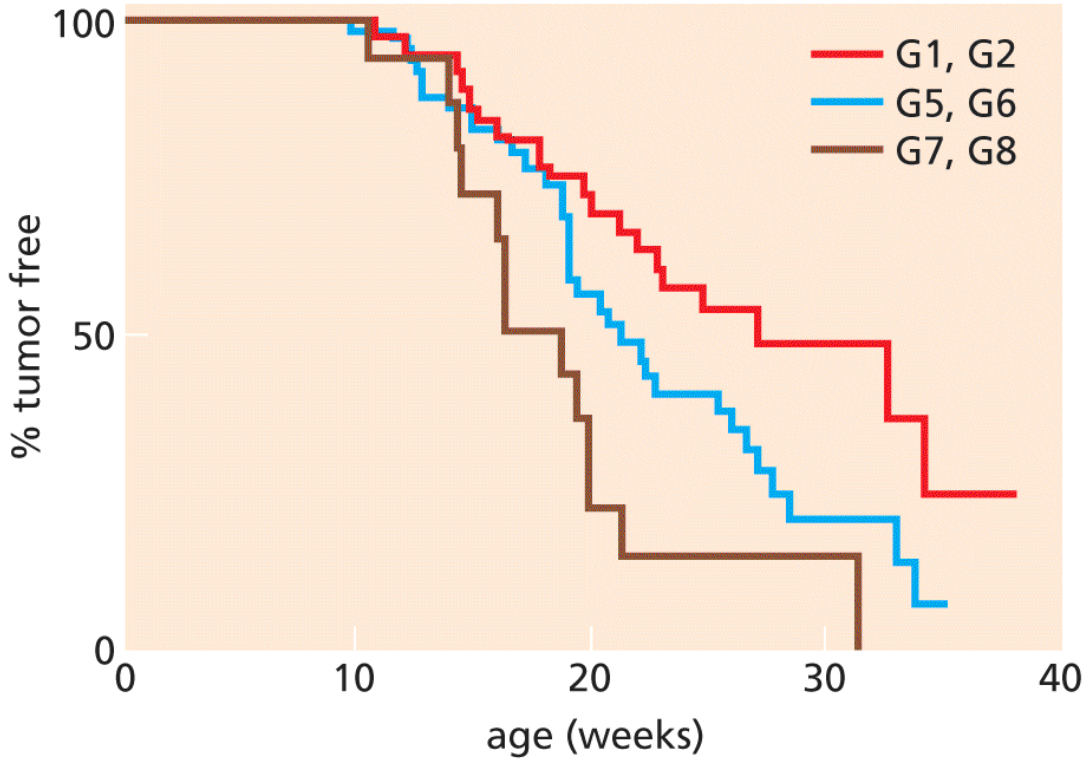
This experiment was extended by introducing the $p16^{INK4A}$/$p19^{ARF}$ germ-line inactivation into mice that also lacked *mTR*, the gene that is the counterpart of human *hTR* and therefore encodes the RNA subunit of the mouse telomerase holoenzyme (see Figure 10.13). The results were that 64% of control, telomerase-positive, $p16^{INK4A}$/$p19^{ARF}$-negative mice contracted tumors, whereas only 31% of the generation 4 and 5 $mTR^{-/-}$ $p16^{INK4A}$/$p19^{ARF}$-negative mice developed tumors. These results were even more dramatic when survival of mice after 16 weeks was measured: 88% of the telomerase-positive mice had been lost to cancer, whereas only 46% of the fifth-generation telomerase-negative mice had been lost to this disease.

This reduced rate of cancer in telomerase-negative mice fulfills the prediction that the normal tissues of $mTR^{-/-}$ mice have exhausted most of their endowment of replicative generations even before tumorigenesis has begun (see Figure 10.20B). Once tumors are initiated in these mice, incipient tumor cell populations must pass through many additional doublings before they can create macroscopic tumors. However, relatively early during the course of tumor formation, these aspiring cancer cells will be driven into crisis by telomere collapse and their agenda of forming tumors will be aborted. Indeed, in human tissues, premalignant cells that are poised to become fully neoplastic already show drastically truncated telomeres; this truncation ostensibly arises because these cell populations have passed through many more successive cell cycles than nearby normal cells (see Figure 10.21B and C).

A very different and ultimately far more interesting outcome was seen when mice were used that instead had been deprived of *p53* gene copies in their germ line (that is, rather than having had their $p16^{INK4A}$/$p19^{ARF}$ locus inactivated). Ordinarily, germ-line inactivation of the *p53* gene in mice leads, on its own, to an increased tumor incidence and resulting mortality, mirroring aspects of the Li–Fraumeni syndrome of humans (see Section 9.3). The mutant *mTR* locus was then introduced into the $p53^{+/-}$ genetic background of these mice. [The $p53^{+/-}$ genotype was used to forestall the early-onset sarcomas and leukemias that are known to arise in $p53^{-/-}$ mice; hence, loss-of-heterozygosity (LOH) and resulting conversion into the $p53^{-/-}$ genotype could be postponed for multiple organismic generations.]

When the $p53^{+/-}$ genotype was present in the genomes of fifth- and sixth-generation telomerase-negative $mTR^{-/-}$ mice, something totally unexpected was observed: the rate of cancer formation was significantly *increased* above that created by the $p53^{-/-}$ genotype alone. In addition, the spectrum of tumors, namely, lymphomas and angiosarcomas, which are commonly seen in $p53^{-/-}$ mice, was shifted in favor of

carcinomas—just the types of tumors commonly seen in humans. These trends became even more apparent in the seventh and eighth generation of telomerase-negative mice (**Figure 10.22**).



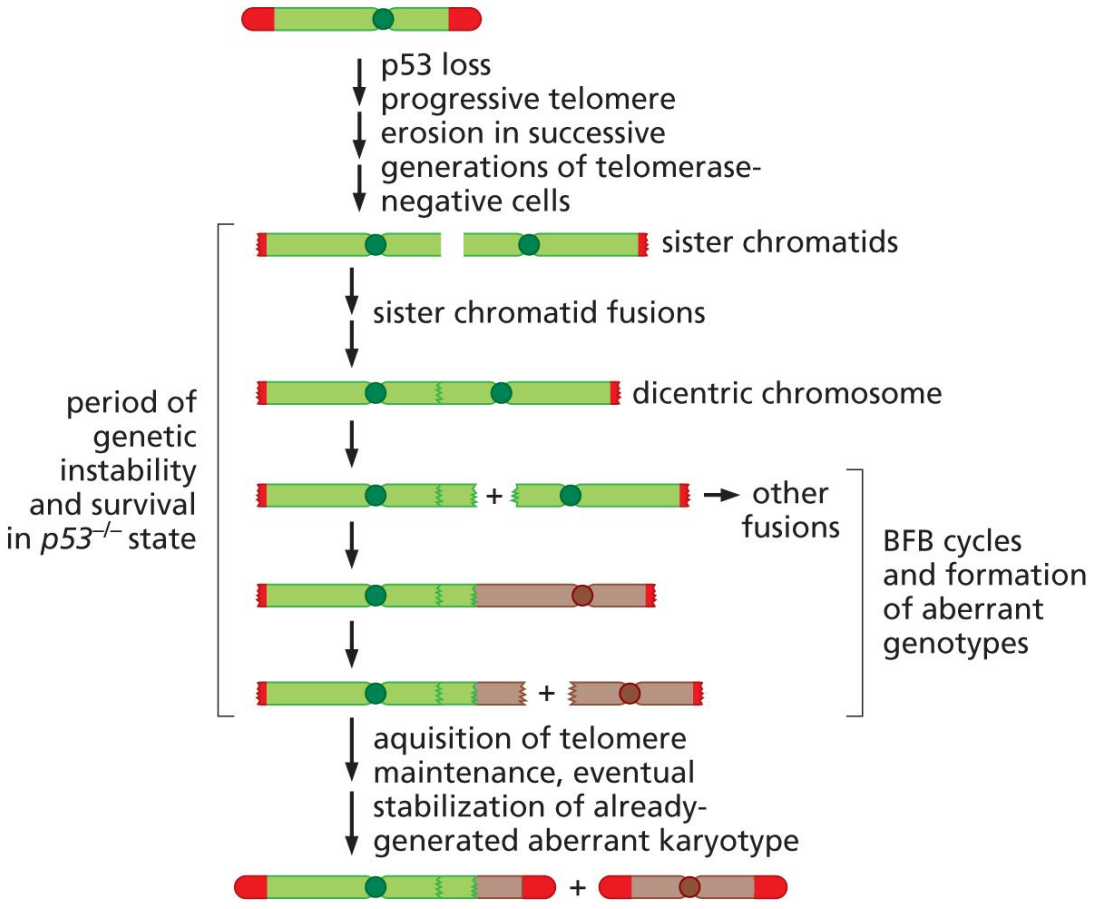
A line graph depicting percent tumor free as a function of time for three different generational cohorts of mice. In all three cohorts, tumors start to appear at age 10 weeks, but the lines descend at different rates. The time required for the line to drop to 50 percent is 17 weeks for generations 7 and 8, 20 weeks for generations 5 and 6, and 24 weeks for generations 1 and 2.

Figure 10.22 Rate of tumor formation in cancer-prone *mTR*$^{-/-}$ *p53*$^{-/-}$ mice These Kaplan–Meier plots reveal that tumor incidence actually increases with increasing organismic generation (G) in mice that lack both the *p53*- and *mTR*-encoding genes in their germ line. In generations 1 and 2 (*red*), about 50% of the mice had readily detectable tumors by the age of 24 weeks, but in generations 5 and 6 (*blue*), the mice developed tumors more rapidly. In generation 7 or 8 (*brown*), about 50% of the mice already exhibited tumors by the age of 17 weeks. (Adapted from L. Chin et al., *Cell* 97:527–538, 1999.)

How can these intriguing results be explained? We can imagine that as fifth- and sixth-generation mice exhaust their telomeres, their cells will begin to experience

chromosomal breakage–fusion–bridge (BFB) cycles (see Figures 10.9 and 10.10) and thus crisis. We already know that double-strand DNA breaks, which are formed in BFB cycles, can provoke apoptosis through a p53-dependent pathway (see Section 9.10). Hence, cells that carry functional *p53* genes and experience BFB cycles are likely to be rapidly eliminated from tissues.

As cells of fifth- and sixth-generation $mTR^{-/-}$ $p53^{-/-}$ mice experience BFB cycles, they may well struggle to stay alive because of the repeated breakage of their chromosomal DNA. However, many of these cells may manage nevertheless to survive, because a key component of their pro-apoptotic response machinery—p53—is missing. These cells will now limp through a number of growth-and-division cycles in spite of the ongoing karyotypic chaos that afflicts their genomes. All the while, their chromosomes will participate in multiple successive BFB cycles (**Figure 10.23**).



A model of how breakage-fusion-bridge cycles might promote carcinoma formation. p53 loss and progressive telomere erosion in successive generations of telomerase negative cells produce chromosomes in which each of two sister chromatids is entirely missing a telomere at one end. This begins a period of genetic instability and survival in the homozygous p53-negative state. The sister

chromatids fuse end-to-end to form a dicentric chromosome. They then break apart at a different point, and one of the parts fuses to a different broken chromatid to form a new dicentric chromosome. Again there is a break at a fresh point, leading to the B F B cycle and formation of aberrant genotypes. Finally, there is acquisition of telomere maintenance, and eventual stabilization of the already generated aberrant karyotype.

Figure 10.23 A mechanistic model of how BFB cycles promote human carcinoma formation During the early steps of tumor progression, inactivation of the *p53* tumor suppressor gene is often favored, because it allows incipient cancer cells to escape apoptotic death from oncogene activation, insufficient trophic signals, anoxia, and poisoning by metabolic wastes caused by inadequate vascularization. As tumor progression proceeds, the telomeric DNA (*red*) of evolving premalignant cell populations eventually erodes below the level needed to protect chromosomal ends. Breakage–fusion–bridge (BFB) cycles (see Figure 10.9) ensue, leading to increasing chromosomal rearrangements and the amplification and deletion of chromosomal segments adjacent to breakpoints (*not shown*); only one BFB cycle is shown here. Centromeres are *dark green* and *dark brown.* Cells undergoing BFB cycles would normally be eliminated by p53-induced apoptosis. In the absence of p53 function, however, such cells may survive, albeit with scrambled karyotypes that slow their proliferation. Emerging from such cell populations will be variants that have learned how to regenerate telomeres and thereby stabilize their karyotype; such cells can once again grow rapidly. In cells of the mutant $mTR^{-/-}$ mice, this stabilization may be achieved through the activation of the ALT telomere maintenance system, whereas in wild-type (e.g., $mTR^{+/+}$) organisms (including human cancer patients), de-repression of hTERT expression allows reconstruction of telomeres to proper length. Once telomeres have been regenerated in all chromosomes, further karyotypic disorder resulting from BFB cycles will be halted. However, any karyotypic aberrations generated previously will be perpetuated in descendant cell populations.

These cycles may continue for many cell generations because p53 will not be on watch to trigger apoptosis and eliminate these cells. As a consequence, the genomes of such cells will become increasingly scrambled by the nonreciprocal chromosomal translocations generated by the BFB cycles. In addition, and perhaps even more important, there is evidence that dsDNA breaks lead to the amplification or deletion of the chromosomal regions adjacent to these breaks. Thus, the areas of densely concentrated genomic damage termed chromothripsis and nearby focal areas of point mutations termed kataegis (see Section 12.11) have been ascribed to the localized breakdown of genomic order triggered by anaphase bridges.

Although these BFB cycles will not prove to be immediately fatal for the p53-negative cells, the cycles will surely compromise their proliferative ability. As a result, individual cells in these populations will be under great selective pressure to escape these BFB cycles and to reacquire karyotypic stability; once they do so, they will be able to grow more rapidly. In these mouse cells, however, the acquisition of telomerase activity is not an option (because of the germ-line knockout of both *mTR* gene copies). For this reason, they will be forced to resort to activating the ALT telomere maintenance system (see Section 10.8). Having done so, these cells will stabilize whatever aberrant karyotypes arose since the time when their ancestors first lost functional telomeres and will begin to grow robustly again.

Clearly, the scrambled karyotypes that these cells have acquired generate novel combinations of genes (including many translocated, deleted, and amplified genes), and among the novel genotypes that are created, there will likely be some that fortuitously *favor* neoplastic proliferation. Stated differently, the period of genetic instability appears to *increase* the probability that cancer-promoting genetic configurations will be produced. Such reasoning explains how collapsing telomeres in a p53-negative background can actually promote the development of tumors (see Figure 10.23).

These $mTR^{-/-}$ mice have human counterparts: as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 10.7**, patients suffering the dyskeratosis congenita syndrome involving germ-line mutations in one or another gene involved in telomere maintenance often go on to develop cancer once their collapsing hematopoietic systems have been successfully reconstructed by bone marrow transplantation. Some develop hematopoietic malignancies (myelodysplasia and acute myelogenous leukemia) or carcinomas of the gastrointestinal tract. These neoplasias arise in those tissues that undergo constant, intense proliferation—precisely the sites where telomeres might become rapidly eroded in the absence of telomerase activity, resulting in repeated breakage–fusion–bridge cycles.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

chromothripsis
: The presence of multiple chromosomal rearrangements usually limited to a single chromosomal region and suggesting the involvement of an initial catastrophic shattering of a chromosomal domain followed by rejoining of the fragmented segments in random order and orientation. *See also* **kataegis**.

kataegis
: Localized areas of point mutations arising near sites of chromothripsis and affecting preferentially cytidine and guanine nucleotides. *See* **chromothripsis**.

OceanofPDF.com

10.11 The mechanisms underlying cancer pathogenesis in telomerase-negative mice may also operate during the development of human tumors

These observations of genetically altered mice, when taken together, lead us to consider a most interesting mechanistic model (see Figure 10.23) that explains why aneuploidy is seen in the great majority of human carcinomas. Imagine that relatively early in the long process of human tumor development, cells in premalignant cell populations are able to jettison their *p53* gene copies. The selective pressure favoring this particular genetic loss might occur, for example, because cells in the early premalignant cell populations experience anoxia and, in turn, suffer from p53-induced apoptosis. Alternatively, *p53* gene copies may have been shed by incipient cancer cells in order to escape oncogene-triggered apoptosis.

Some time after the loss of p53 function, as tumor progression proceeds, cells in these premalignant populations will begin to experience substantial telomere erosion (see Figure 10.21) and eventually telomere collapse because, like most types of normal human cells, they lack significant levels of telomerase activity. Repeated BFB cycles will ensue and result in aneuploidy. However, because these cells also lack functional p53, they will be able to survive and even continue to proliferate, albeit slowly.

Sooner or later, in this population of cells suffering BFB cycles, a cell will emerge that has acquired the ability to de-repress *hTERT* gene expression and, having done so, has gained the ability to prevent further BFB cycles, thereby stabilizing whatever karyotype it acquired during the BFB cycles. With telomerase on hand, we can imagine that this cell will repair the frayed ends of its chromosomal DNA molecules and once again enjoy robust growth. Of course, the belated appearance of telomerase on the scene cannot unscramble the considerable aneuploidy that accumulated during the time window that began with telomere collapse and ended with the acquisition of *hTERT* expression. (The same arguments will apply in the event that the ALT mechanism, rather than telomerase activation, is exploited to protect the genomes of these cells from further BFB cycles.)

Observations of human pancreatic cancer progression provide support for this model. Relatively early in the long, multi-step process of tumorigenesis in the pancreas (see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.3**), the mitotic cells in low-grade adenomas have few of the anaphase bridges that are characteristic of BFB cycles. However, more advanced, highly dysplastic adenomas show large numbers of these bridges. Still later, the even more advanced, *in situ* carcinomas once again exhibit lower levels of anaphase bridges. This behavior reinforces the model, described above, that proposes that BFB cycles and associated chromosomal instability are found only in a defined window of time during the course of multi-step tumor progression.

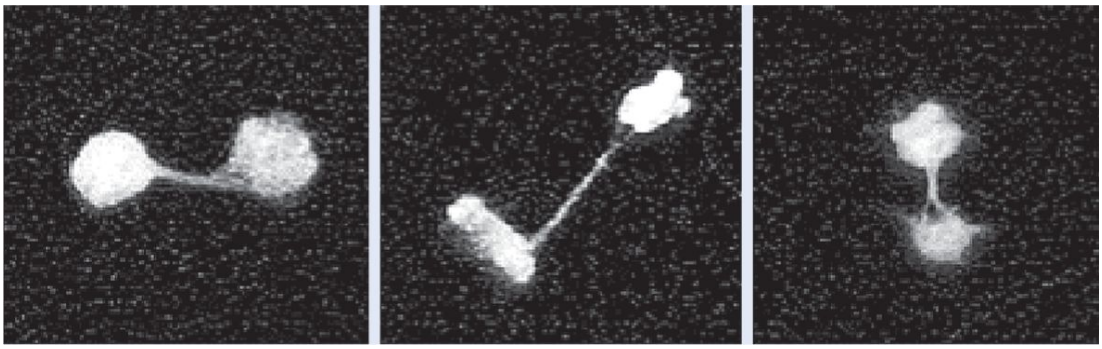
Additional support for this model comes from a study of human carcinomas of the esophagus, colon, and breast. In each case, tumors possessing relatively short telomeres are strongly associated with poor long-term prognosis, whereas tumors carrying long telomeres are associated with a far better prognosis, including greater long-term survival. Here, once again, we can imagine that the chromosomes of cancer cells with sub-optimal telomere lengths undergo relatively frequent breakage–fusion–bridge cycles, perhaps because they express hTERT at levels that are barely adequate to maintain telomeric DNA. These BFB cycles will create an ongoing chromosomal instability that continues throughout the life of the tumor to generate novel, scrambled genotypes, some of which may happen to favor advantageous phenotypes, such as more rapid proliferation and increasing aggressiveness. Certain human chronic inflammatory conditions, which are associated with increased risks of cancer, may also be attributable to eroded telomeres and BFB cycles (**Sidebar 10.6**).

Sidebar 10.6 Telomere collapse may contribute to cancer in organs affected by chronic inflammation

In Chapter 11, we will read about a number of human tumors arising in tissues that suffer continuous loss of cells resulting from chronic infections or inflammation. Such ongoing attrition of cells, which may occur over a period of decades, occurs in tissues affected by, for example, ulcerative colitis, Barrett's esophagus, and hepatitis B or C virus infection. In response to losses of differentiated cells, the stem cells in these tissues are continually producing replacements to ensure maintenance of tissue functions. These stem cells are therefore forced to pass through many more cycles of growth and division than are the corresponding stem cells of normal tissues. The resulting repeated cell cycles may tax the regenerative powers of the stem cell pools and lead eventually to telomere collapse, to the triggering of breakage–fusion–bridge cycles, and to the generation of karyotypes that favor neoplastic cell proliferation.

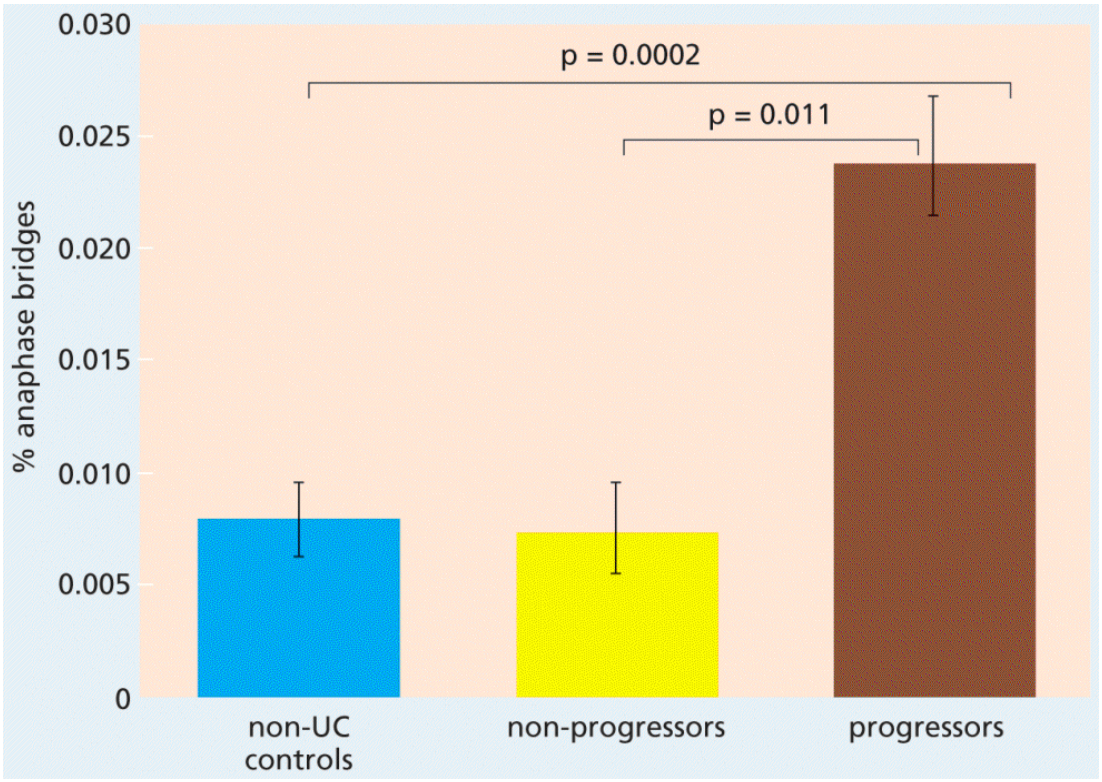
Such a mechanism may well account for the observed high rates of cancer in individuals suffering from these inflammatory and infectious diseases. In fact, in the intestinal epithelial cells of individuals suffering from ulcerative colitis, one can often

find the anaphase bridges that are telltale signs of BFB cycles and hence of telomere collapse—precisely what we would expect if telomere collapse were contributing to the formation of the colon carcinomas seen in these patients (**Figure 10.24**). Similarly, anaphase bridges have been documented in the cells of Barrett's esophagus (see Figure 2.12), a condition in which the reflux of stomach acid causes a high turnover of esophageal epithelial cells that leads, with significant frequency, to esophageal carcinomas.



Three images of cell pairs connected by thin anaphase bridges.

(A)



A bar graph showing the percent with anaphase bridges for three types of cells. For the non-U C control cells, the percent is 0.008. For non-progressors, it is 0.0075. For progressors, it is 0.024, with a p value of 0.002 compared to non-U C controls and a p value of 0.011 compared to non-progressors.

(B)

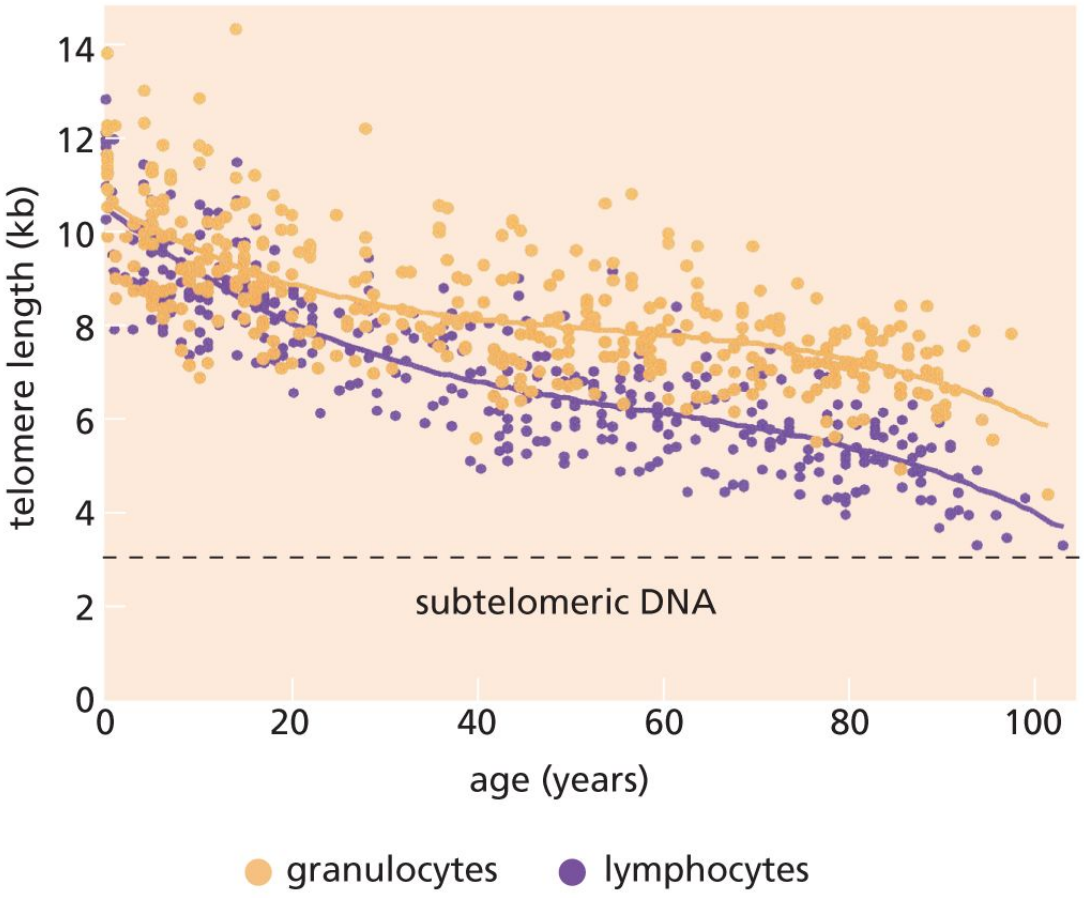
Figure 10.24 Ulcerative colitis and anaphase bridges Ulcerative colitis (UC) involves chronic irritation and inflammation of the colonic epithelium. These provoke ongoing turnover of colonic epithelial cells that can continue for several decades. UC leads, with significant frequency, to the development of colon carcinomas. (A) UC patients can be separated into “progressors,” whose colitis has led to the appearance of one or more carcinomas, and “non-progressors,” who show no evidence of intestinal tumors. The colonic epithelial cells of progressors frequently display the anaphase bridges characteristic of BFB cycles seen here (see also Figure 10.10), as well as extensive shortening of telomeres and numerous karyotypic aberrations (*not shown*). (B) Colon tissue samples from normal control individuals and UC non-progressors show relatively few anaphase bridges, but much greater numbers are found in the inflamed epithelium of the progressors. This indicates a correlation between the occurrence of anaphase bridges and the onset of tumor development. The p values indicate the probability of these differences arising by chance. (From J.N. O’Sullivan et al., *Nat. Genet.* 32:280–284, 2002. With permission from Nature.)

This model provides an attractive mechanism that explains how many types of human tumor cells acquire highly aneuploid karyotypes. Although not directly demonstrated, it is widely assumed that the resulting aneuploid genomes confer growth advantages on these cells by creating novel oncogenes through translocations, by increasing the dosage of growth-promoting proto-oncogenes, and by eliminating tumor suppressor genes that have been holding back cell proliferation. Hence, these BFB cycles may be instrumental in accelerating tumor progression because they increase genomic mutability and allow evolving, premalignant cells to explore a multitude of novel, potentially advantageous genotypes.

Yet other observations are consistent with this thinking but hardly prove it. For example, the leukemia cells in about two-thirds of acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) patients exhibit a normal karyotype, whereas cells from the remainder exhibit various types of karyotypic disarray. Those AML tumors with normal karyotype exhibit significantly longer telomeres than do those with a scrambled karyotype, consistent with the notion that eroded telomeres are associated with and possibly responsible for the derangement of normal karyotype. Of additional interest, a hypomorphic allele of *hTERT*—one that specifies reduced enzyme function—is

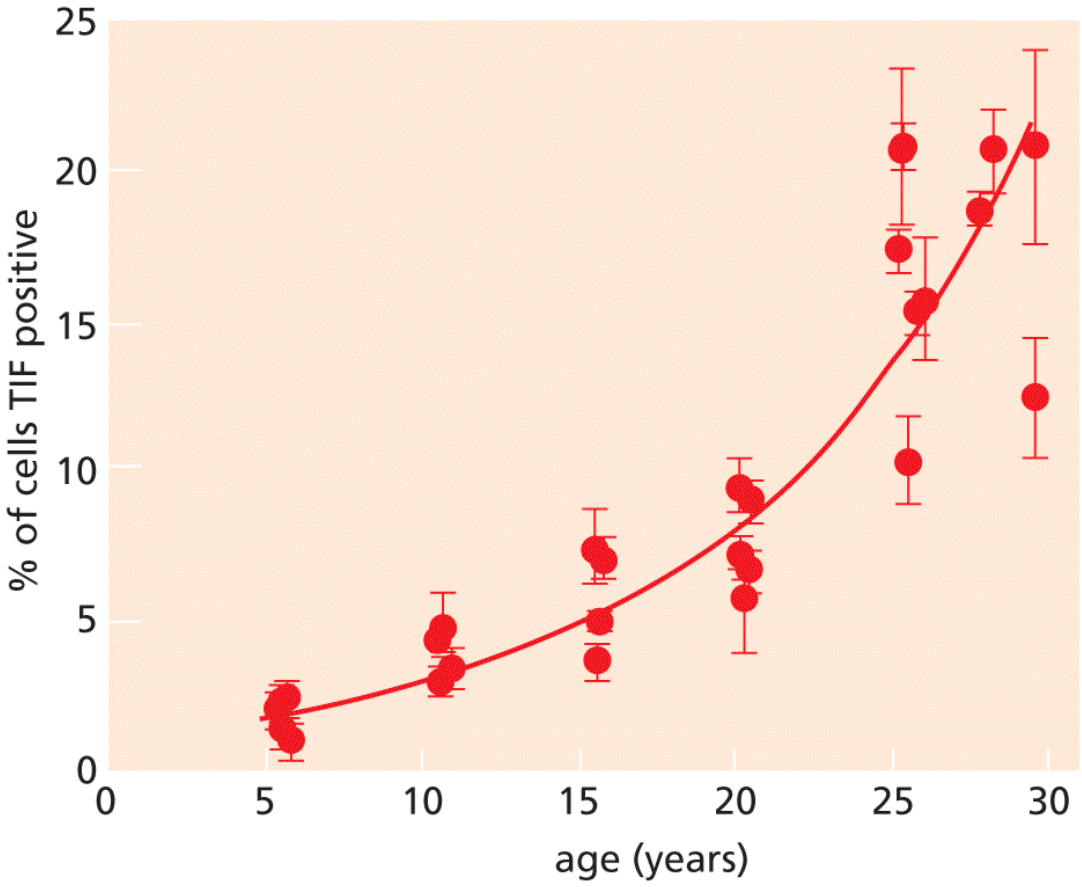
carried by as many as 1% of individuals in the general population. Significantly, individuals inheriting this allele—which confers only 60% of normal hTERT function—are overrepresented by a factor of 3 among AML patients. This finding suggests that normal cells throughout the bodies of these patients have a reduced ability to maintain normal telomere lengths, which in turn may predispose these people to the development of this form of leukemia. Indeed, those afflicted with dyskeratosis congenita (see **Supplementary Sidebar 10.7**) have a greatly increased risk of developing myelodysplastic syndrome, which in turn leads, with significant frequency, to AML.

These observations of premature, pathological shortening of telomeres lead to another question: Is the significantly increased cancer-associated incidence and mortality among the elderly (see Figure 11.1) attributable, at least in part, to *normal* telomere shortening? Exhaustive measurements of telomere lengths in normal humans do indeed indicate marked telomere erosion with increasing age. The data from measurements, such as those provided in **Figure 10.25A**, yield three conclusions: (1) In some (and perhaps most) human tissues, telomeres shorten progressively with increasing age. (2) The rate of shortening differs in different tissues, ostensibly because of differing mitotic activity in the cell lineages and differing expression of telomerase function in various stem cell compartments. (3) The scatter on each curve indicates substantial inter-individual variability in the lengths of telomeric DNA early in life or rates of telomere shortening during a lifetime. (In addition, the telomeres within a single cell exhibit differing, chromosome-specific lengths.)



A line graph depicting telomere length as a function of time. At birth, the average telomere length in both granulocytes and lymphocytes is about 10 kilobase pairs. This number immediately begins to decline, although it levels off somewhat in middle age, at roughly 8 k b p in granulocytes and 6 k b p in lymphocytes. Decline accelerates again in later life, so that at age 100, telomere length averages roughly 6 k b p in granulocytes and 4 k b p in lymphocytes. A dashed line runs across the bottom of the graph at about 3 k b p. This line is labeled subtelomeric D N A.

(A)



A line graph depicting percent of cells that are T I F positive as a function of time. The concave-up curve starts at around 2 percent at age 5 and rises past 20 percent by age 30.

(B)

Figure 10.25 Telomere shortening, aging, and cancer (A) Telomeric DNA lengths were measured in the lymphocytes and granulocytes of 400 individuals. As is apparent, the length of telomeres decreased progressively with increasing age in both human cell types. Inaccuracy in measuring telomere lengths is ±0.5 kb. The horizontal line (*dashed*) represents the threshold length below which telomeric DNA can no longer protect chromosomal ends from end-to-end fusions. (B) TIFs (telomere dysfunction–induced foci) were scored in dermal fibroblasts from baboons of various ages. These TIFs were scored wherever there was a congruence within a cell between γ-H2AX, a marker of double-strand DNA breaks (see Chapter 12), and telomeric DNA; they represent unrepaired and ostensibly irreparable dsDNA breaks. Their accumulation suggests that telomere erosion (and resulting cell senescence) represents one force in driving the aging process in certain tissues and, quite possibly, an important source of the age-

related increase in cancer incidence in older humans. (A, courtesy of G.M. Baerlocher and P. Lansdorp. B, from U. Herbig et al., *Science* 311:1257, 2006. With permission from AAAS.)

Other research, not described here in detail, yields a highly relevant observation: individuals whose normal circulating lymphocytes exhibit relatively short telomeres are overrepresented in cohorts of patients suffering from head-and-neck, bladder, lung, and renal carcinomas. In this case, the lymphocytes are presumed to be representative of normal cells throughout the body, suggesting that short telomeres in one's normal tissues represent a lifelong increased risk for developing various types of carcinomas. This also raises the question of whether the behavior of $mTR^{-/-}$ mice described above is applicable to that of aged humans, or more specifically, whether it contributes to the greatly elevated cancer incidence observed in older humans (Figure 10.25B).

These speculations still do not address an issue raised by some observations cited earlier: the repeated BFB cycles in $mTR^{-/-}$ $p53^{-/-}$ mice affect the *types* of tumors that these mice exhibit, causing them to develop carcinomas, which are common in humans, rather than hematopoietic and mesenchymal malignancies, which are frequently seen in mice. Precisely how does telomere biology possibly help to explain why cancers tend to arise in some tissues and not others?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

hypomorphic

Referring to an allele that specifies reduced gene function while not eliminating it entirely. *See also* **null allele**.

OceanofPDF.com

10.12 Synopsis and prospects

Telomeres are now known to be major determinants of the ability of cells to multiply for a limited number of growth-and-division cycles before halting proliferation and entering into crisis. The resulting circumscribed proliferative potential of normal human cells appears to operate as an important barrier to the development of cancers by limiting the proliferation of pre-neoplastic cell clones. This mechanistic model of cell immortalization and cancer pathogenesis is elegant, if only because it is so simple. Still, the simplicity of this model should not obscure the fact that much of telomere structure and function remains poorly understood, and some of the conclusions described in this chapter may one day require substantial revision.

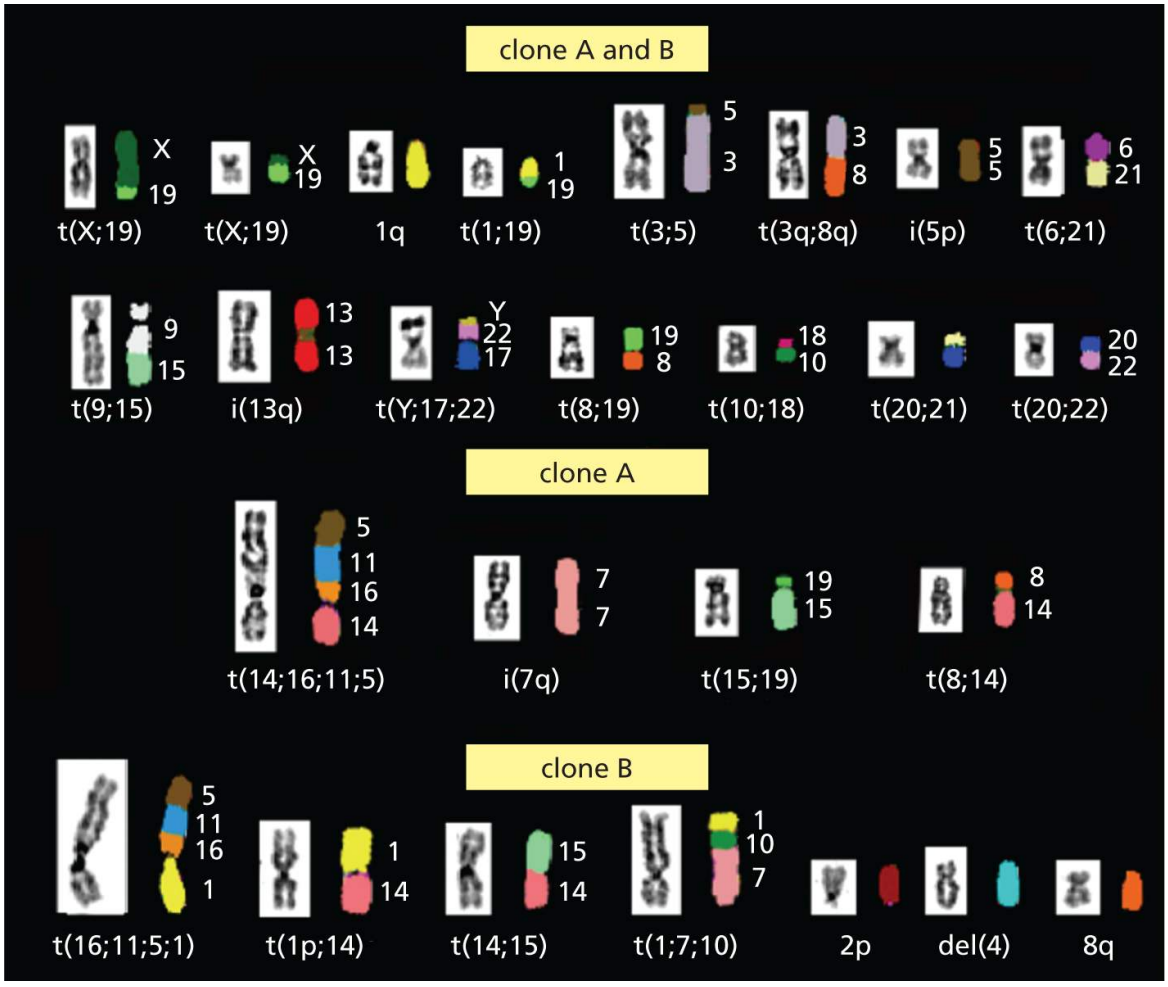
Among the many unresolved issues are the connections between the findings described in this chapter and a major problem of biomedical research: Does age-related telomere shortening contribute to the dramatically increased rates of cancer in the elderly? In the next chapter, we will examine the multi-step process of tumor formation and observe that each requisite step often takes years to complete; these kinetics, on their own, can be invoked to explain the age-related onset of cancer. However, now we may need to invoke an additional mechanism to explain the onset of tumors in aged individuals: perhaps their significantly eroded telomeres occasionally trigger the BFB cycles and genetic instability that fuels the formation of tumors.

These questions inevitably return to a focus on the telomerase enzyme and its function. Interestingly, during the earliest stages of development, specifically soon after egg fertilization, telomeres may be relatively short soon after fertilization. However, in the cleavage-stage embryo, a telomerase-independent, interchromosomal recombination mechanism similar to ALT generates the long telomeres that are present in the soon-to-be-formed blastocysts. Thereafter, telomerase is expressed in tissue-specific stem cells (which are committed to one or another differentiation lineage) and at very low levels in more differentiated cells (**Supplementary Sidebar 10.8**).

Although several types of stem cells have been found to express readily detectable levels of telomerase, this activity is apparently unable to maintain telomeres at a constant size. Evidence for this comes from the progressively shortening telomeres that are seen with increased life span. (Because the

differentiated cells that make up the great majority of cells in most tissues are generally a small number of cell generations removed from the stem cells within their respective tissues, the progressive telomere shortening seen in these differentiated cells must reflect the status of telomeres in the corresponding stem cell precursor.)

The experiments with the telomerase-negative mice described here underscore the consequences associated with the absence of telomerase and critically shortened telomeric DNA: in the presence of functional p53, such cells will enter crisis and die in large numbers—a mechanism that serves to obstruct the further expansion of clones of pre-neoplastic cells. However, without p53 on the job, critically shortened telomeres fail to trigger crisis and instead may lead the cell into multiple breakage–fusion–bridge cycles that create widespread genetic instability (**Figure 10.26**); this increased mutability can accelerate the progression of incipient tumors.



Three groups of chromosomes, shown in color beside their black and white micrograph images. The top group, containing 15 chromosomes, is labeled clones A and B. Below that, a group labeled clone A contains 4 chromosomes, and below that a group labeled clone B contains 7 chromosomes. Most of the chromosomes are shown in more than one color, indicating that parts from two different normal chromosomes have fused. The few chromosomes shown in a single color are the result either of truncation of a normal chromosome or the fusing of two copies of the same original part.

Figure 10.26 Karyotypic chaos Here, use of the SKY technique to "paint" each chromosome its own characteristic color revealed that numerous chromosomes belonging to two subclones (A and B) of a human bladder carcinoma cell line have participated in translocations. The translocations are indicated by the many chromosomes that carry segments originating from two or more normal human chromosomes. Each translocation is identified by a "t" followed by the number of each parental chromosome from which these arms derive. An "i" indicates an isochromosome, in which a single arm of a chromosome has been duplicated. The notation "p" and "q" indicates the short and long arms of normal human chromosomes, respectively; "del" indicates that a chromosomal segment has been deleted. The label "clone A and B" indicates aberrant chromosomes shared by the two subclones, while "clone A" and "clone B" indicate chromosomes that are present uniquely in one or another of these subclones. The translocations shared in common by the two subclones are likely to have occurred before these cells were introduced into culture, whereas those present in either one subclone or the other indicate ongoing chromosomal instability in culture. Comparable degrees of aneuploidy can be observed in cancer cells that have recently been introduced into culture. (From H.M. Padilla-Nash et al., *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 25:53–59, 1999.)

There are still many puzzles associated with hTERT and telomeres that require clarification. Ectopic hTERT expression can operate to protect certain types of cells against p53-induced apoptosis. Provocatively, this protection is also afforded by a mutant of hTERT that lacks catalytic activity. Similarly, in zebrafish, knockdown of the *zTERT* gene results in compromised hematopoiesis (formation of various blood cells); this effect can be reversed by a mutant of zTERT that lacks the TERC-binding domain and therefore lacks bona fide telomerase activity. In addition, overexpression of a TERT mutant lacking reverse transcriptase activity stimulates hair growth in mice. Multiple reports indicate that hTERT

lacking its *hTR* subunit can be found in mitochondria, where it appears to have a role in conferring resistance to death triggered by reactive oxygen species (ROS). Yet another mystery is created by the discovery of TERRA (telomere repeat-containing RNA), a long noncoding RNA (lncRNA) of heterogeneous size that is transcribed from the C-rich strand of telomeric DNA and participates in some important fashion in the maintenance of the telomere-associated chromatin.

Certain non-telomerase-associated functions of hTERT may one day be associated with another biochemical activity of hTERT: it associates in the nucleus with the Brg-1 protein, a chromatin-modifying enzyme, and thereby amplifies Wnt-β-catenin–stimulated transcription. This function may explain why the use of immunofluorescence to localize hTERT protein demonstrates that it is distributed along the lengths of chromosomes rather than being concentrated at telomeres.

Cells that have been deprived of hTERT activity by siRNA-mediated knockdown have a markedly decreased ability to repair their DNA following exposure to several types of mutagens. This effect also cannot be easily related to any effects of hTERT on telomeric DNA. Recall as well that certain cells maintaining their telomeres via the ALT mechanism (which generates very long telomeres) cannot be readily transformed by an introduced *ras* oncogene but can readily be transformed if they are supplied with an ectopically expressed hTERT. Diverse observations like these indicate that maintenance of telomere length is only one facet of the function of the apparently multi-talented hTERT protein.

Replicative senescence, as controlled by telomere erosion, has been portrayed as one mechanism whereby the unlimited replicative power of cell lineages is constrained. In recent years, this thinking has been challenged by two types of findings. First, the onset of this process can be affected, sometimes dramatically, by altering conditions of *in vitro* cell cultures. From this perspective, the timing of replicative senescence can no longer be viewed as a cell-autonomous process that counts the number of cell generations separating cells from their ancestors in the early embryo. Second, as cited above, various lines of research indicate that hTERT has multiple functions that are clearly distinct from telomere maintenance. Taken together, these findings raise the question of whether the ability of the hTERT protein to allow cells to circumvent senescence is tied to one of its functions that is unrelated to elongating telomeric DNA.

Importantly, these findings do not jeopardize another key concept: that severe telomere erosion triggers crisis in human cells and that ectopic expression of

hTERT can prevent or allow escape from the ensuing, almost-certain death. Moreover, whether or not replicative senescence, as originally defined with cultured cells, is a real phenomenon, it is clear that certain forms of senescence (for example, oncogene-induced senescence) operate in living tissues, where they seem to serve as an impediment to the forward march of pre-neoplastic cells, as discussed in Chapter 9.

Arguably the most direct and compelling proof of the importance of telomeres and telomerase in cancer pathogenesis comes from experiments that will be described in detail in the next chapter: a clone of the *hTERT* gene has been found to be an essential ingredient in the cocktail of introduced genes that are used experimentally to transform normal human cells into tumorigenic derivatives. Without the presence of *hTERT*, experimental human cell transformation fails.

The central role of telomerase in fueling the growth of cancer cells has long suggested a novel, highly effective strategy of anti-cancer therapy. Telomerase inhibitors should prove to be potent in killing cancer cells that carry relatively short telomeres—the situation observed in many telomerase-positive human tumor cells. Such drugs, if developed, should at the same time have little if any effect on normal cells throughout the body, which express relatively low levels of telomerase and then only transiently during S phase. Although attractive in concept, this plan may be derailed by certain realities. First, attempts by a number of pharmaceutical companies to develop novel low–molecular-weight inhibitors of hTERT catalytic function have repeatedly failed to yield potent, highly specific drug molecules. The reasons for these failures are still obscure. Second, no one knows whether the relatively low levels of telomerase enzyme detectable in certain types of normal cells throughout the human body play a significant role in the proliferative capacity and viability of these cells. Consequently, the side effects of anti-telomerase drugs, should these agents be developed, are unpredictable.

The failures to generate drug-like inhibitors of hTERT function have led some to embrace an alternative strategy—the construction of a chemically modified 13-nucleotide-long RNA molecule that is complementary to the template region of the *hTR* RNA subunit of the holoenzyme (see Figure 10.13). This potent inhibitor of the telomerase holoenzyme yields rapid responses in telomerase-positive cancer cells propagated in culture, reducing detectable telomerase activity by 90 to 95%; the testing of its clinical efficacy is under way. Nonetheless, the therapeutic utility of this very promising agent, specifically its ability to elicit durable clinical responses, may be frustrated by one of the realities of telomere

biology cited above: short-term decreases in tumor burden may be followed by the emergence of cancer cells and thus tumors that have switched to the ALT state of telomere maintenance, thereby becoming hTERT-independent. Accordingly, the goal of exploiting the widespread expression of hTERT in human tumors to generate novel, cancer-specific therapeutics may continue to prove elusive.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

development
: The processes of growth, differentiation, and morphogenesis that enable a zygote to develop into a fully formed embryo and thereafter a newborn.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Two barriers prevent cultured cells from replicating indefinitely in culture—senescence and crisis.
- Senescence involves the long-term residence of cells in a nongrowing but viable state; crisis involves the apoptotic death of cells.
- Senescence is provoked by a variety of physiological stresses that cells experience *in vitro* and also *in vivo*, where it seems to play a significant role in constraining neoplastic progression.
- Crisis is provoked by the erosion of telomeres, which results in widespread end-to-end chromosomal fusions, karyotypic chaos, and cell death.
- Most premalignant cells escape from crisis by activating expression of hTERT, the telomerase enzyme, which is specialized to elongate telomeric DNA by extending it in hexanucleotide increments.
- A minority of incipient cancer cells escape crisis by regenerating their telomeric DNA through the ALT mechanism.
- Cells that have stabilized their telomeres through the actions of telomerase or the ALT mechanism can then proliferate indefinitely and are therefore said to be immortalized.
- Cell immortalization is a step that appears to be a prerequisite to the development of all human cancers.
- The end-to-end chromosomal fusions that accompany crisis lead to repeated breakage–fusion–bridge (BFB) cycles, which appear to be responsible for much of the aneuploidy associated with the karyotypes of many kinds of solid human tumors.
- These BFB cycles may prove to be an important means by which incipient cancer cells acquire mutant alleles, thereby expediting the formation of fully neoplastic cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Why is the acquisition of an immortalized proliferative potential so important for human tumors?
2. What types of evidence connect telomeres and telomerase to enter into the senescent state, and what alternative mechanisms are responsible for entrance into this state?
3. What complications and side effects might result from the shutdown of telomerase activity by anti-cancer drugs that may be developed in the future and function as specific inhibitors of this enzyme?
4. How does the molecular configuration of the t-loop protect the ends of telomeric DNA?
5. How does the telomerase-associated *hTR* RNA molecule facilitate the maintenance of telomeric DNA by the hTERT enzyme?
6. Precisely how do breakage–fusion–bridge cycles confer an advantage on populations of premalignant cells?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Artandi SE & DePinho RA (2010) Telomeres and telomerase in cancer. *Carcinogenesis* 31:9–18.

Bizard AH & Hickson ID (2018) Anaphase: a fortune-teller of genomic instability. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol*. 52:112–119.

Boehm JS & Hahn WC (2004) Immortalized cells as experimental models to study cancer. *Cytotechnology* 45,47–59.

Blackburn EH & Collins K (2010) Telomerase: an RNP enzyme synthesizes DNA. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol*. a003558.

Campisi J (2013) Aging, cellular senescence, and cancer. *Annu. Rev. Physiol.* 75:685–705.

Campisi J & d'Adda di Fagagna F (2007) Cellular senescence: when bad things happen to good cells. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol*. 8:729–740.

Cesare AJ & Reddel RR (2010) Alternative lengthening of telomeres: models, mechanisms and implications. *Nature Rev. Genet.* 11:319–330.

Coppé JP, Desprez PY, Krtolica A et al. (2010) The senescence-associated secretory phenotype: the dark side of tumor suppression. *Annu. Rev. Pathol. Mech. Dis.* 5:99–118.

de Lange T (2018) Shelterin-mediated telomere protection. *Annu. Rev. Genet.* 52:223–247.

Diman A & Decottignies A (2018) Genomic origin and nuclear localization of TERRA telomeric repeat-containing RNA: from darkness to dawn. *FEBS J.* 285:1389–1398.

Guterres AN & Villanueva J (2020) Targeting telomerase for cancer therapy. *Oncogene* 39:5811–5824.

Huang FW, Hodis E, Xu MJ et al. (2013) Highly recurrent TERT promoter mutations in human melanoma. *Science* 339:957–959.

Jäger K & Walter M (2016) Therapeutic targeting of telomerase. *Genes (Basel)* 7:39–53.

Maciejowski J & de Lange T (2017) Telomeres in cancer: tumour suppression and genome instability. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 18:175–186.

Min J & Shay, JW (2016) *TERT* promoter mutations enhance telomerase activation by long-range chromatin interactions. *Cancer Discov.* 6:1212–1214.

Martinez P & Blasco MA (2011) Telomeric and extra-telomeric roles for telomerase and the telomere-binding proteins. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 161–176.

Martinez P & Blasco MA (2017) Telomere-driven diseases and telomere-targeting therapies. *J Cell Biol.* 216:875–887.

Murnane JP (2010) Telomere loss as a mechanism of chromosome instability in human cancer. *Cancer Res.* 70:4255–4259.

Pickett HA & Reddel RR (2015) Molecular mechanisms of activity and derepression of alternative lengthening of telomeres. *Nat. Struct. Mol. Biol.* 22:875–880.

Podlevsky JD & Chen JJ-L (2016) Evolutionary perspectives of telomerase RNA structure and function. *RNA Biol.* 13:720–732.

Roake CM & Artandi SE (2017) Control of cellular aging, tissue function, and cancer by p53 downstream of telomeres. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 7:a026088.

Roake CM & Artandi SE (2017) Approaching TERRA firma: Genomic functions of telomeric noncoding RNA. *Cell* 170:8–9.

Schmutz I & de Lange T (2016) Shelterin. *Curr. Biol.* 26:R397–R399.

Shay JW & Wright WE (2011) Role of telomeres and telomerase in cancer. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 21:349–353.

Zhou J, Ding D, Wang M & Cong Y-S (2014) Telomerase reverse transcriptase in the regulation of gene expression. *BMB Rep.* 47:8–14.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 10.1 Differentiated cell lineages pass through dramatically different numbers of cell generations

All the cells in the body trace their ancestry back to a fertilized egg. In principle, these cells are members of cell lineages that exhibit diverse differentiation programs but nonetheless have all passed through comparable numbers of cell generations since their origins in the early embryo. Metazoan biology complicates this scheme, because the functions of some differentiated tissues require continual cell divisions (to replace ongoing attrition of cells), whereas other tissues or cell types do not require continuous replacement and therefore pass through a relatively small number of cell cycles during a human lifetime; neurons in the brain are examples of such cells that are largely quiescent during a human lifetime. These differences in proliferation can be gauged through various techniques, one of which is illustrated in **Figure S10.1**.

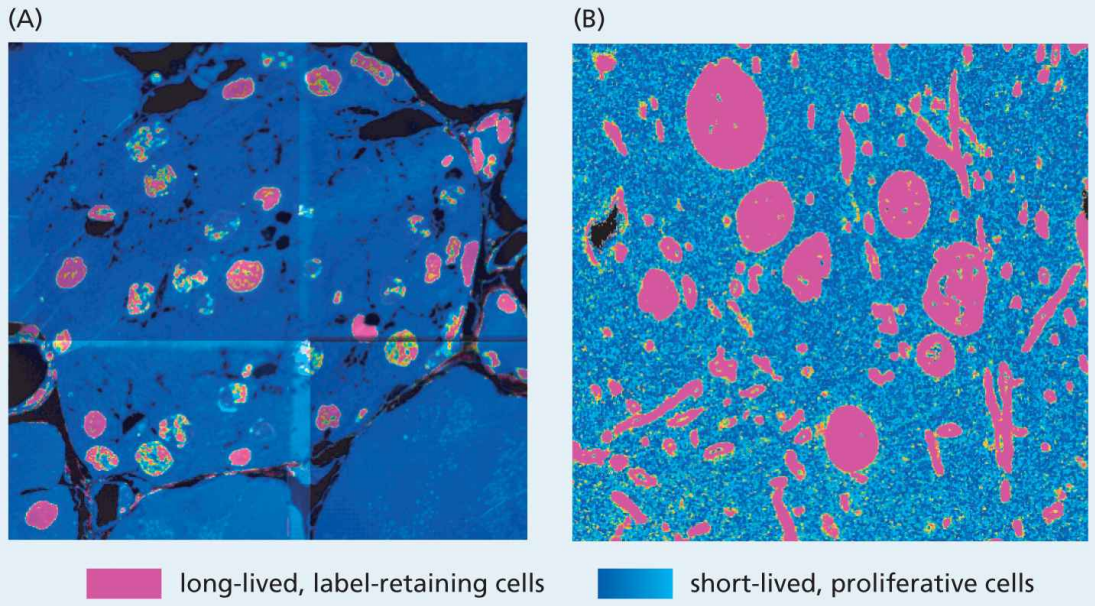


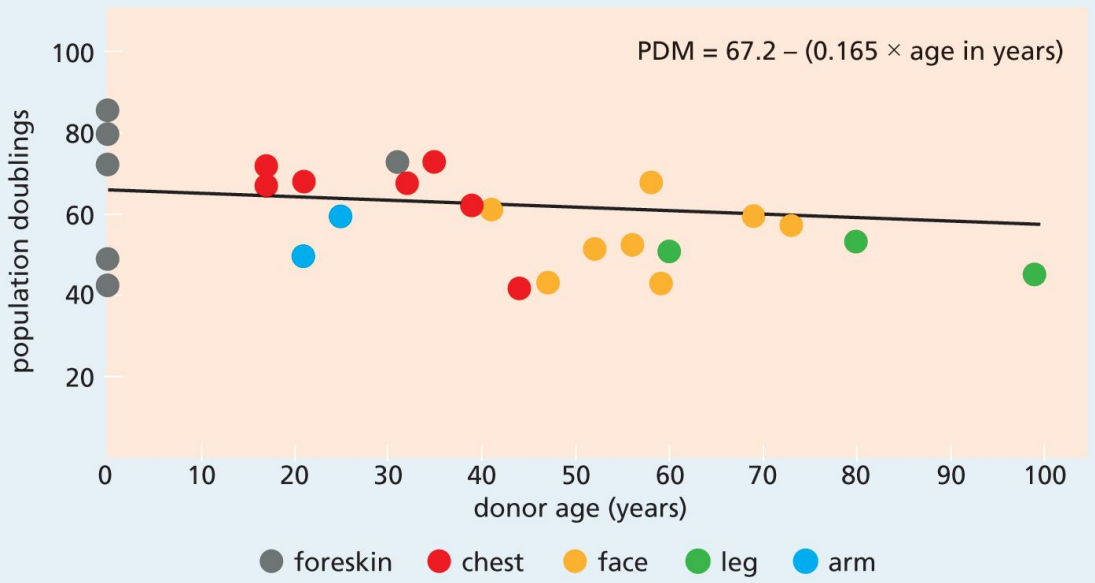
Figure S10.1 Differences in cell turnover within individual tissues The turnover of cells within living mouse tissues can be estimated by exposing mice to feed containing ^{15}N isotope for a period of time, halting such exposure after a period of time, and examining the ratio of ^{15}N vs. ^{14}N (the more abundant N isotope) in cells many months after the isotopic labeling was initially performed. Cells that retain a high ratio of $^{15}N/^{14}N$ are those that have not proliferated significantly since the initial labeling and therefore have not diluted the initially

incorporated ^{15}N label. These cells and their ratios can be monitored and visualized using the techniques of scanning electron microscopy and multi-isotope imaging mass spectrometry. (A) Cells in the pancreatic islets of Langerhans of a mouse exposed to ^{15}N label for the first 45 days of life (a "pulse" label) followed by 18 months without further isotope labeling (a "chase"). (B) Neuronal cells in the mouse cortex of a mouse exposed for the first 45 days of life to ^{15}N isotope followed by 6 months without further isotope labeling. *Pink* indicates a high $^{15}N/^{14}N$ ratio indicating retention of ^{15}N label over extended periods of time and thus absence of extensive proliferation, whereas *blue* indicates a low $^{15}N/^{14}N$ ratio, indicating extensive proliferation and loss of ^{15}N label. (Reprinted from *Cell Metabolism*, Volume 30, Arrojo e Drigo, et al., Age Mosaicism across Multiple Scales in Adult Tissues, Fig. 3, Copyright 2019 with permission from Elsevier.)

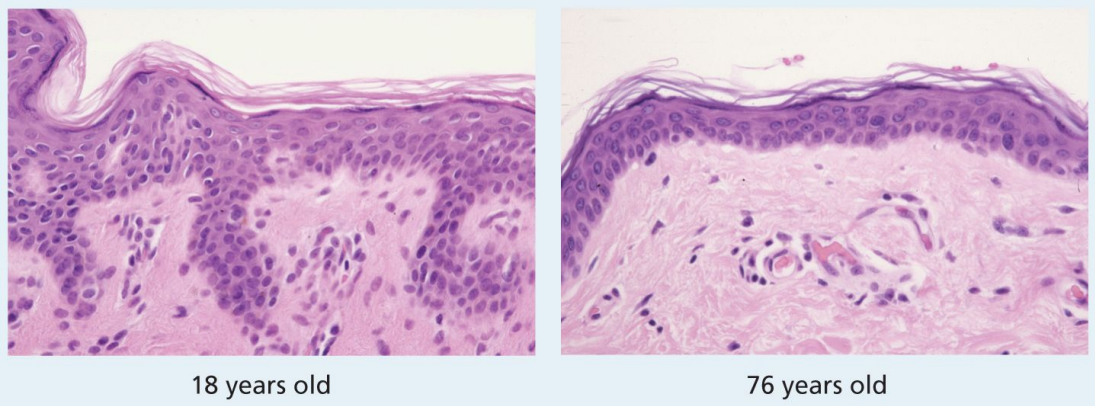
The profound differences in proliferation hold important implications for the development of cancer. Thus, certain types of differentiated cells that are effectively post-mitotic during a lifetime are unlikely or less likely to be the sources of tumors because (1) they may have developed, during the course of their differentiation, powerful regulatory controls that effectively preclude their entrance into the active growth-and-division cycle as discussed in Chapter 8, and (2) in the absence of proliferation, they are far less likely to acquire the somatic mutations that are critical to drive tumor formation forward. Arguably the most dramatic example of this phenomenon is provided by the epidemiology of retinoblastoma, which rarely occurs after the age of five; the end of the time window for disease diagnosis appears to occur relatively early in life, when most cells in the retina enter irreversibly into a post-mitotic state.

Supplementary Sidebar 10.2 The proliferative capacity of cells in aging tissues

As illustrated in **Figure S10.2A**, the proliferative ability *in vitro* of cells taken from humans is influenced in part by the age of the donor from whom the cells were prepared. The causes of this may be complex. Among them may be the cumulative genetic damage that lineages of cells have sustained over the course of many decades of time and cumulative oxidative damage to other critical cell constituents. Yet other mechanistic explanations can be entertained, including the main topics of this chapter —telomere and telomere shortening. In addition, as seen in Figure S10.2B, the cellular composition of the human skin changes, with the loss of the keratinocyte-regenerating stem cell niche, contributing to the outer appearance of the skin associated with aging.



(A)



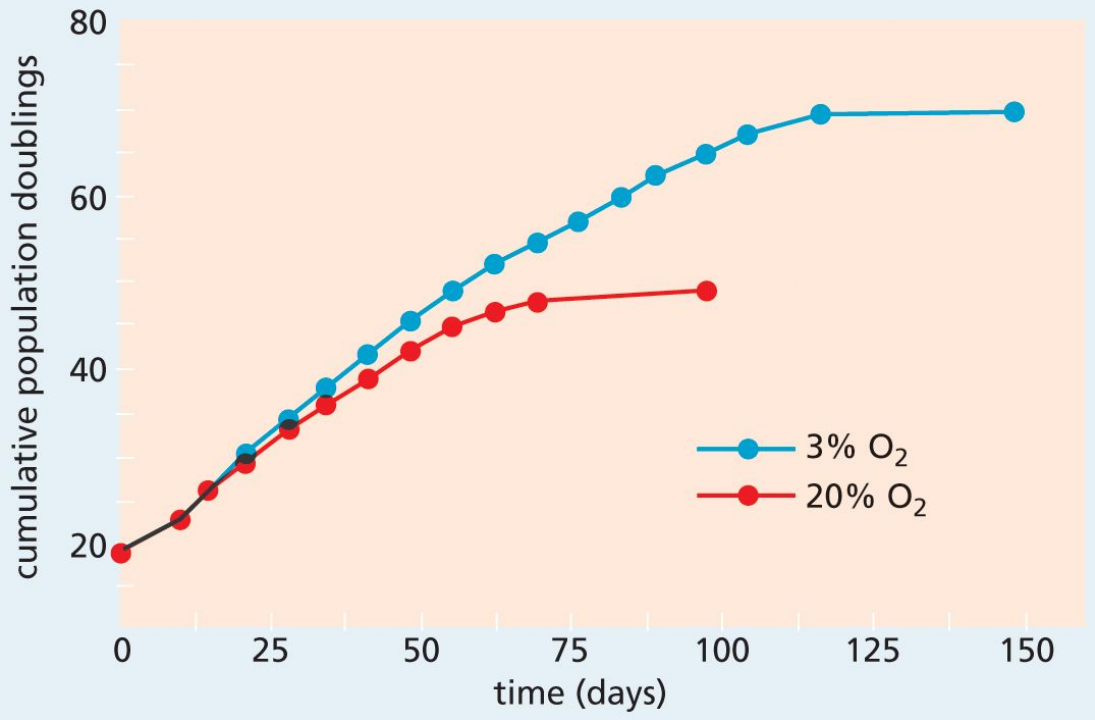
(B)

Figure S10.2 Loss of proliferative capacity with age (A) The proliferative capacity of cells can be gauged by determining the number of times they will double in culture (mean population doublings, PDM). Here, doublings of dermal fibroblasts from various anatomical sites were measured as a function of the age of the donors. (Because of inter-individual variability in cell proliferative capacity, the data points show substantial scatter around the mean at each age.) (B) As the keratinocyte stem cells in the skin lose proliferative capacity with increasing age, the overall ability of the skin to regenerate itself declines, leading to a thinning of the keratinocyte layer of the skin (*dark pink*) and a loss of the ridge architecture seen in the younger skin. The sun-protected skin of an 18-year-old female (*left*) is compared here with that of a 76-year-old female (*right*). (A, courtesy of J.G. Rheinwald and T.M. O'Connell-Willstaedt. B, courtesy of T. Brenn.)

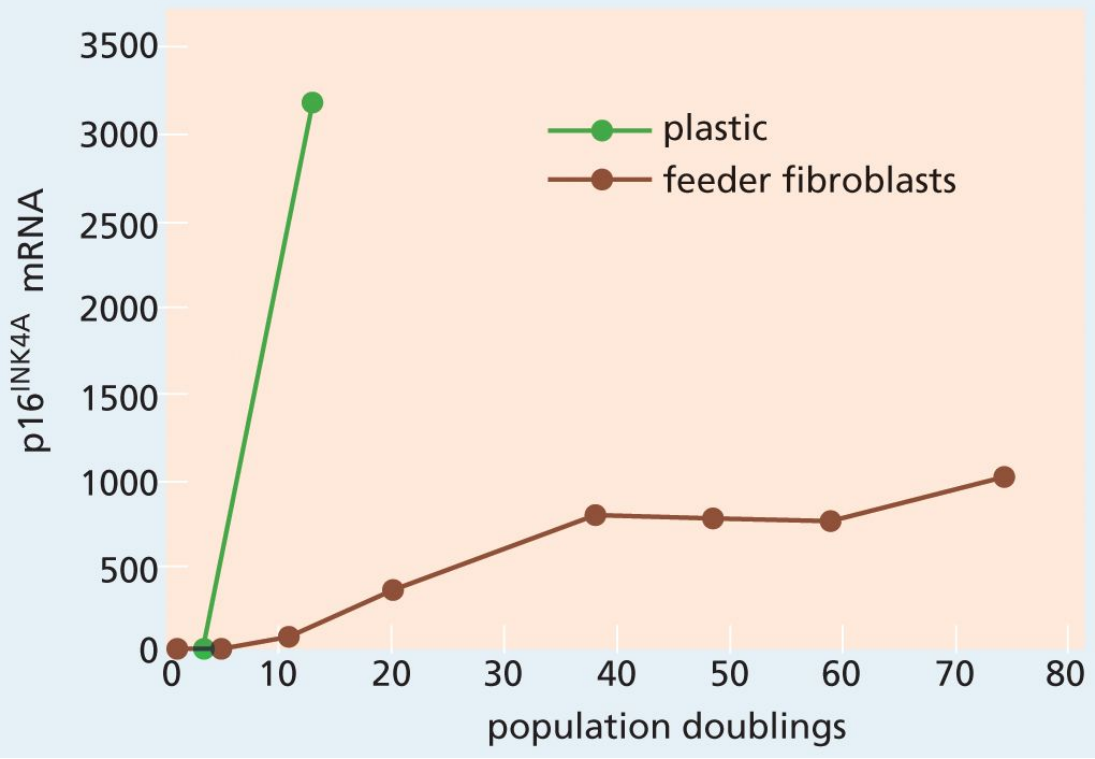
Supplementary Sidebar 10.3 Replicative senescence—a tissue culture artifact?

The phenomenon of replicative senescence has been portrayed as a physiological mechanism whose purpose is to limit the number of successive cell generations that a cell lineage can pass through. According to this logic, this cap on the number of cell generations should constrain and block the further expansion of cell populations beyond the normal needs for tissue assembly and maintenance, stopping their proliferation long before they have had the opportunity to grow into large, life-threatening tumors. Indeed, as the work of Leonard Hayflick (see Figure 10.2) showed in the 1960s, normal cells propagated in tissue culture halt their proliferation after 40 to 60 doublings, entering into a state that he termed "senescence"; the resulting senescent cells remain viable but lose the ability to ever re-enter the active growth-and-division cycles described in Chapter 8.

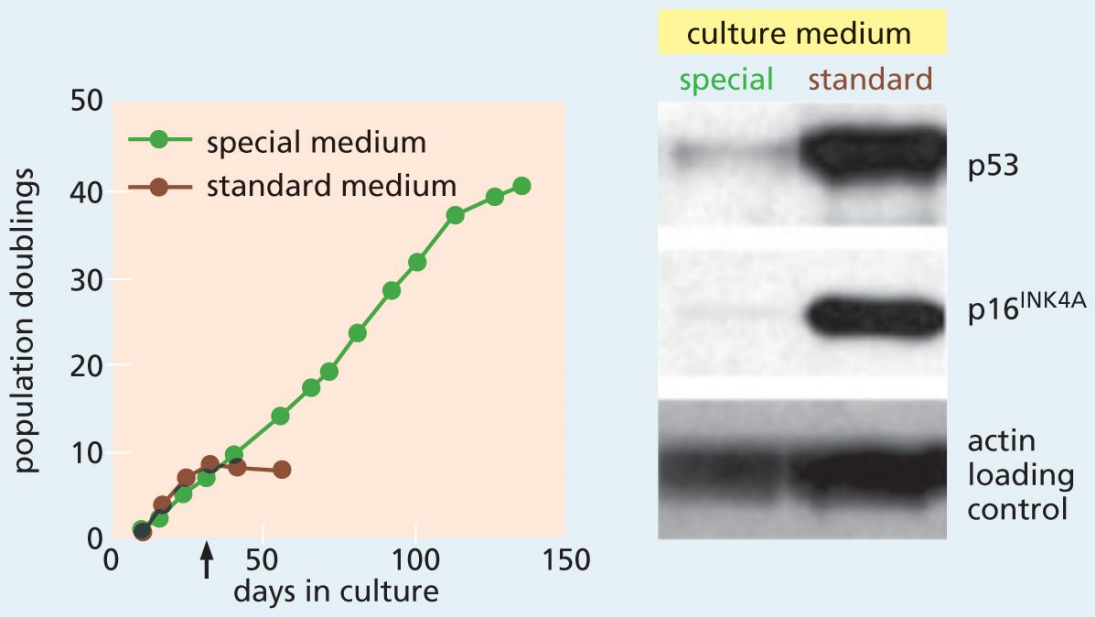
However, as tissue culture conditions have improved in the half-century since Hayflick's pioneering studies, the relevance of replicative senescence to the proliferative abilities of cells in living tissues has come into question. Thus, several lines of research have indicated that changes in growing conditions in Petri dishes can have profound effects on the timing of replicative senescence. As an example, some experimenters have altered the ambient oxygen tension to which cultured cells are exposed by reducing from ~21% (the ambient level of O_2 that is present both in the general atmosphere and in most tissue culture incubators) to the 1–3% O_2 that is more representative of the physiologic oxygen tensions encountered in living tissues; this change results in a substantial increase in the replicative life span *in vitro*. In one set of experiments, cells passed through 50% more doublings when cultured in 3% rather than 21% O_2 (**Figure S10.3A**). Thus, these lower oxygen tensions more closely reflect those that most cells experience in living tissues, rather than the ambient tension that is most conveniently provided to cells growing in a tissue culture incubator.


80
60
40
20
cumulative population doublings
0
25
50
75
100
125
150
time (days)
3% O_2
20% O_2

(A)


3500
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
$p16^{INK4A}$ mRNA
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
population doublings
plastic
feeder fibroblasts

(B)



(C)

Figure S10.3 Influence of culture conditions on the onset of senescence (A) The proliferative capacity of cell populations (*ordinate*) has been measured here when they are exposed in culture to either 3% or 20% O_2. The 3% oxygen concentration is far more physiological, because it reflects the oxygen concentration that many cells actually experience in living tissues. (B) The normal dependence of epithelial cells in living tissues on stromal support creates stresses when such cells are propagated *in vitro*. When grown as pure cultures directly on the bottom plastic surface of a tissue culture dish, human foreskin keratinocytes rapidly induce expression of the $p16^{INK4A}$ tumor suppressor protein (*green line*), which imposes growth arrest and senescence on these cells. However, when these epithelial cells are grown above a feeder layer of fibroblasts (*brown line*), they can proliferate for an extended period of time without experiencing a strong induction of $p16^{INK4A}$ and resulting senescence. (C) The composition of both tissue culture medium and tissue culture plates can also have a dramatic effect on the longevity of cell populations in culture. The graph shows a population of human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) propagated either in the standard medium for human MECs (*brown line*) and in a standard plastic culture dish or in a specially devised medium (*green line*) on a special plastic surface. After 21 d in culture (*arrow*), $p16^{INK4A}$ and p53 levels were monitored by immunoblotting (*right panel*). Growth under standard conditions led to strong induction of these two growth-suppressing proteins, whereas cells in the special medium continued to proliferate without giving evidence of such induction. (A, from Q. Chen et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 92:4337–4341, 1995. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. B, from B. Fu, J. Quintero and C.C. Baker, *Cancer Res.* 63:7815–7824,

2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, from T. Ince et al., *Cancer Cell* 12:160–170, 2007. With permission from Elsevier.)

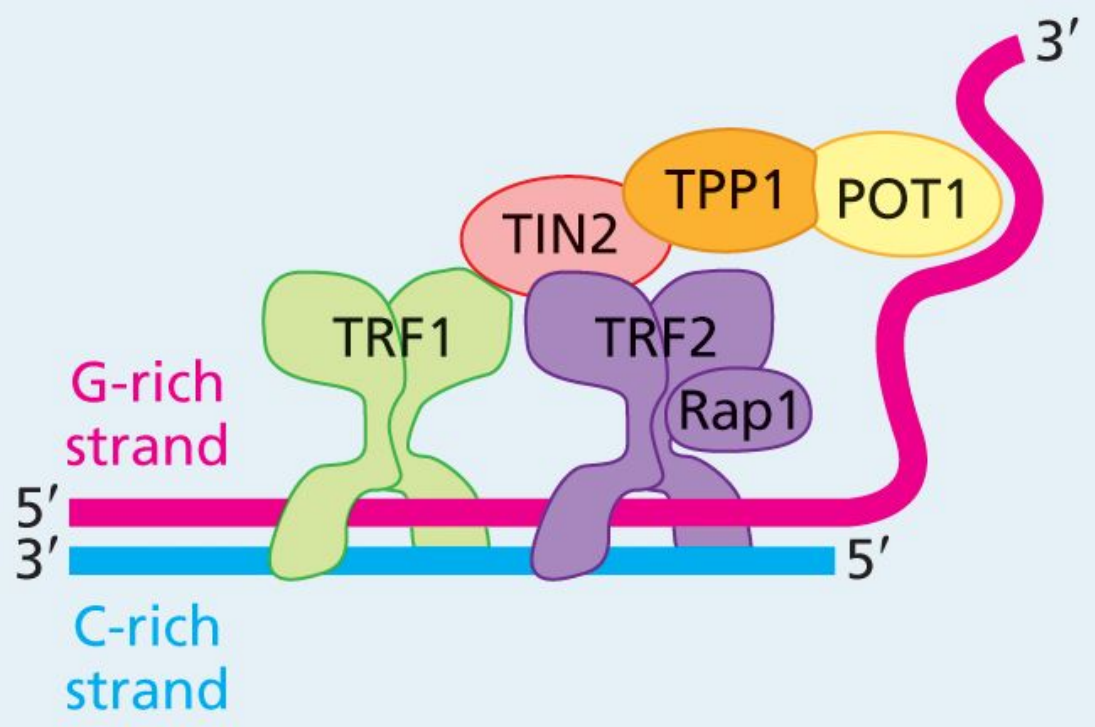
Yet other conditions of culture also have strong effects on the longevity of cell populations. In the case of epithelial cells, the presence of an underlying stromal feeder layer has profound effects on the ability of these cells to survive and proliferate in culture (Figure S10.3B). As discussed in Chapter 13, the normal epithelial cells within living tissues rely on continuous biological support from adjacent underlying stromal cells of various types; attempting to propagate such cells as pure epithelial populations in a Petri dish deprives them of this normal source of critical support. The composition of the medium in which cells are cultured also appears to be an important determinant of the schedule of induction of $p16^{INK4A}$ and p53 expression, which impose cell-cycle arrest once expressed (Figure S10.3C). When human mammary epithelial cells are propagated in a standard medium, they soon become senescent. However, if they are placed in a specially devised medium, the induction of $p16^{INK4A}$ and p53 and entrance into the senescent state can be postponed for many weeks (see Figure S10.3C). Indeed, as researchers have devised cell culture conditions that more closely approach the conditions experienced by cells within tissues, the life span of cell lineages in culture has increased progressively and senescence *in vitro* can be delayed and, in certain cases, avoided altogether. Hence, "replicative senescence" may only reflect stress that cells have sustained because of sub-optimal conditions of culture.

Experiments like these yield an important conclusion: the term "senescence" is actually misleading. Although originally invoked to imply the *aging* of cells in culture, entrance into this state may often have little to do with elapsed time or number of successive cell doublings. This raises the issue of whether replicative senescence is nothing more than an artifact of *in vitro* culture and thus whether it ever occurs *in vivo*. One response to this comes from discussions of another form of senescence that we already encountered in Section 9.11.

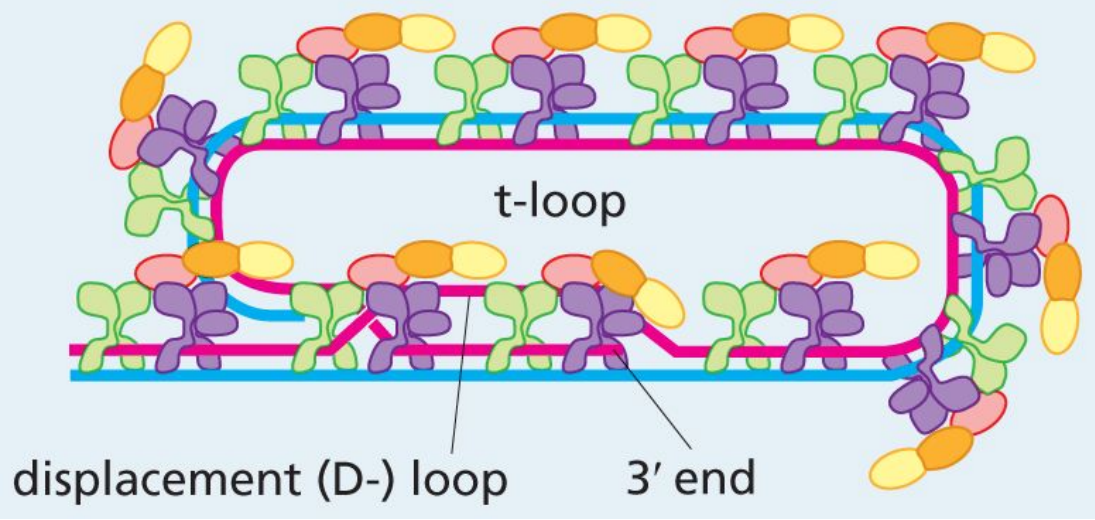
Supplementary Sidebar 10.4 Telomere-associated proteins

A complex of six proteins, which together has been termed shelterin, associates with telomeric DNA and is critical to the ability of telomeres to resist end-to-end fusions with other DNA molecules (**Figure S10.4**). Loss of one of these —TRF2— led to the single giant chromosome seen in Figure 10.6B. Importantly, the shelterin complex is found to be associated with the long telomeric DNAs present in cells that maintain their telomeres via the ALT complex (see Section 10.8), indicating that the intervention of telomerase is not critical for the association of shelterin proteins with telomeric

DNA. Moreover, the t-loops formed by telomeric DNA can also be found in ALT cells, indicating that their formation also does not depend on the actions of telomerase.



(A)



(B)

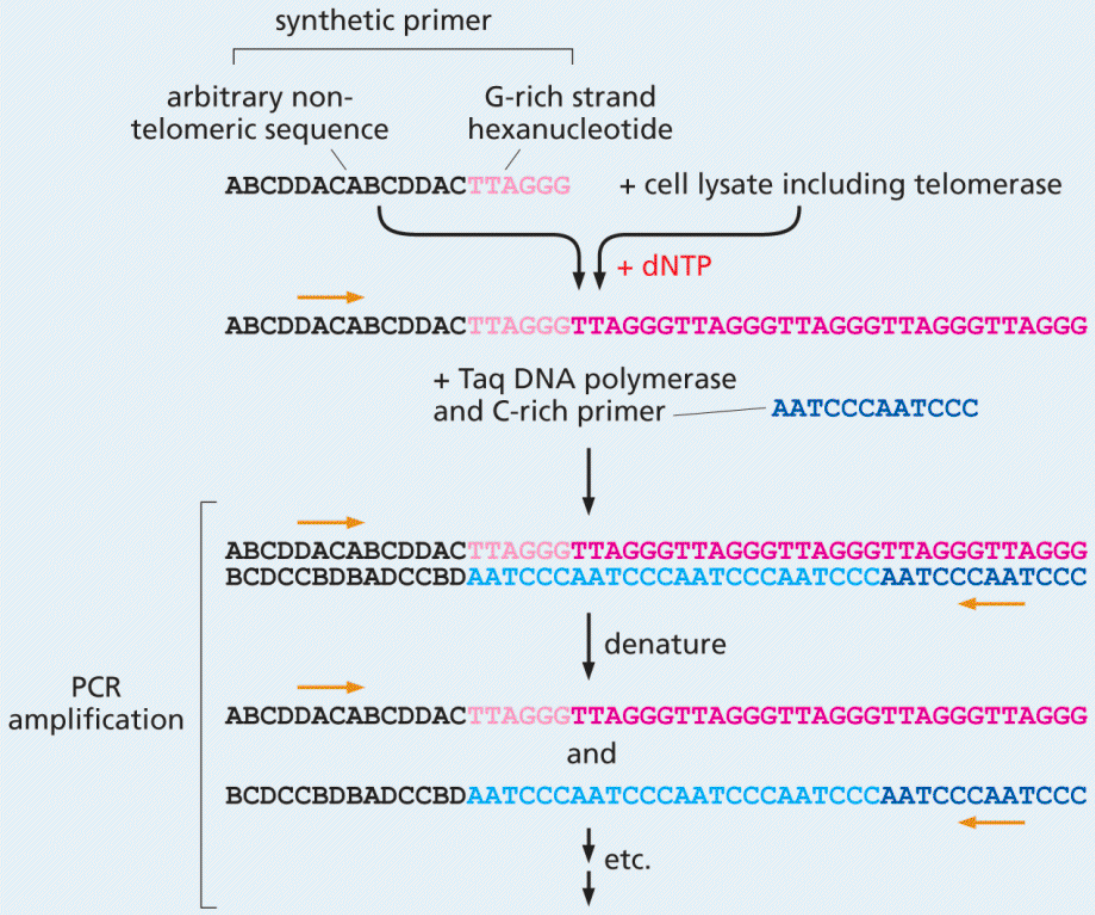
Figure S10.4 Multiple telomere-specific proteins bound to telomeric DNA (A) In addition to its complex structure (see Figure 10.11), telomeric DNA is protected from degradation by a group of physically associated proteins that constitute the

shelterin complex. Two of the latter's proteins—TRF1 and TRF2—bind to the double-stranded DNA portion of telomeres, and a third protein—POT1—binds to both the single-stranded 3′ overhang created by the G-rich strand and the ssDNA in the displacement (D-) loop. (B) The shelterin complex is present in multiple copies per telomere and is responsible, in part, for maintaining the structure of the t-loop. As is indicated here, by binding to the D-loop, POT1 is able to stabilize this structure and thus the structure of the t-loop as a whole. (A and B, from T. de Lange, *Science* 326:948–952, 2009. With permission from AAAS.)

Supplementary Sidebar 10.5 TRAP assay for quantifying telomerase activity

The levels of hTERT in normal and neoplastic cells are relatively low, ostensibly reflecting the low amounts of the enzyme needed to service the small number (92) of substrate molecules per human cell. This complicated the development of assays for quantifying telomerase

activity and led, in turn, to the invention of an assay, termed the Telomeric Repeat Amplification Protocol, which depends on the actions of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to greatly amplify the signal through use of a telomeric DNA-derived primer and a second primer of arbitrary sequence (**Figure S10.5**).


synthetic primer
arbitrary non-telomeric sequence
G-rich strand hexanucleotide
ABCDDACABCDDACTTAGGG
+ cell lysate including telomerase
+ dNTP
ABCDDACABCDDACTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGG
+ Taq DNA polymerase and C-rich primer
AATCCCAATCCC
ABCDDACABCDDACTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGG
BCDCCBDBADCCBDAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCC
denature
PCR amplification
ABCDDACABCDDACTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGGTTAGGG
and
BCDCCBDBADCCBDAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCCAATCCC
etc.

(A)

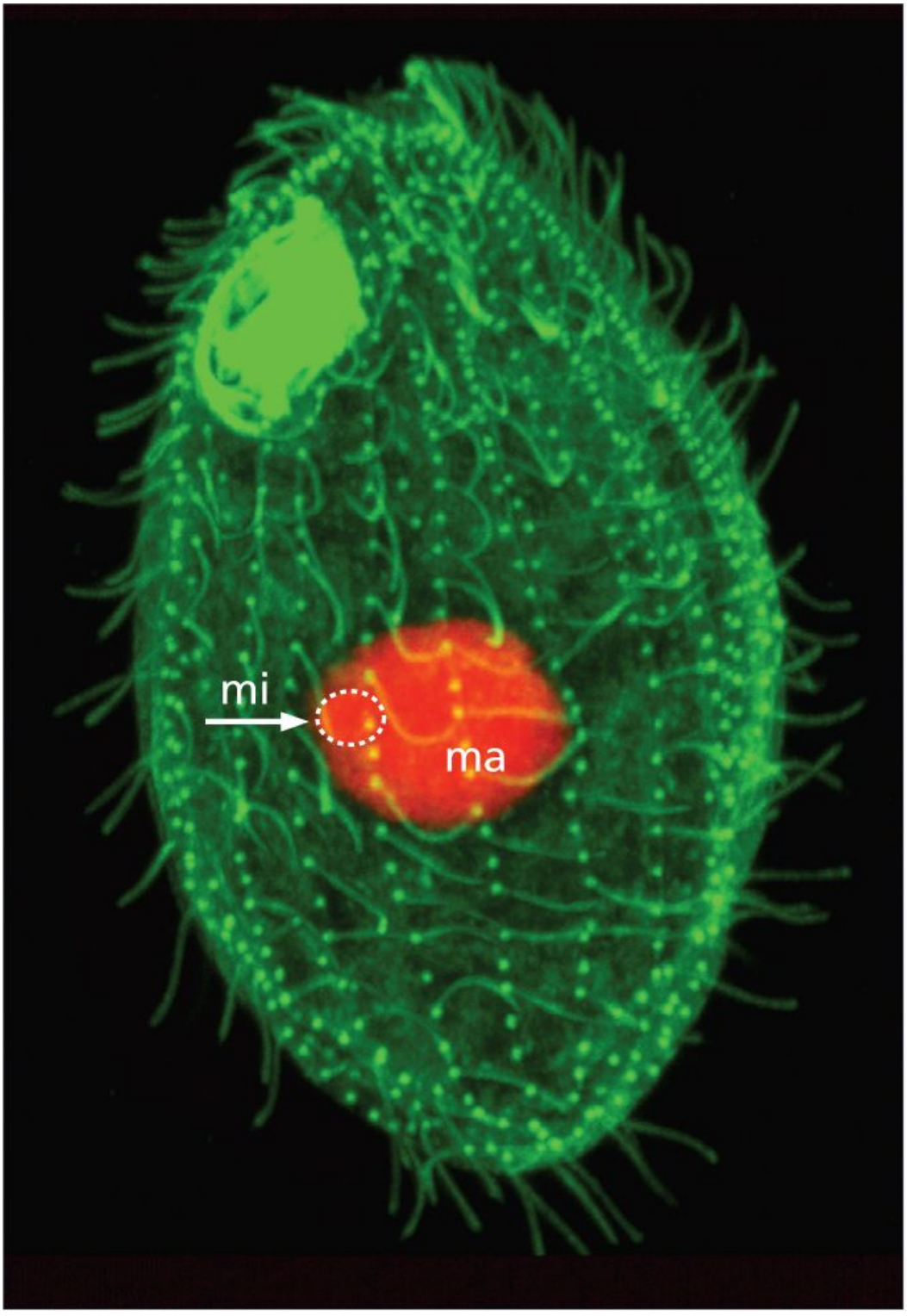
(B)

Figure S10.5 Detecting telomerase activity (A) The telomeric repeat amplification protocol (TRAP) assay permits detection of minute levels of

telomerase activity in cell lysates by relying on the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to amplify the products of the telomerase enzyme. A primer consisting of arbitrary nontelomeric sequences (*black*) and telomeric hexanucleotide sequences (from the G-rich strand; *light pink*) is added to a cell lysate in the presence of deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates. This primer is extended (*darker pink*) by any telomerase that may be present in a cell lysate. The thermostable Taq polymerase is then added together with a primer from the C-rich strand (*dark blue*), and the second strand is elongated (*light blue*). These two DNA strands are then denatured and recopied repeatedly by the PCR in the presence of appropriate primers. (B) The products of the TRAP reaction are analyzed by gel electrophoresis to resolve DNA molecules differing in size by hexanucleotide increments. As a negative control, brief heat treatment of a portion of the lysate is used at the beginning of the reaction to denature and inactivate any telomerase that may be present (*1st channel*); this heat treatment is done to determine whether any heat-resistant DNA polymerases are present in the lysate in addition to the telomerase itself. In this experiment, pre-crisis cells were infected with an expression vector that specifies hTERT, the catalytic subunit of the telomerase holoenzyme, thereby inducing high levels of telomerase activity that are readily detectable when both high (*2nd channel*) and low levels (*3rd channel*) of cell extract are tested. (B, from C. Counter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 95*: 14723-14728, 1998. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

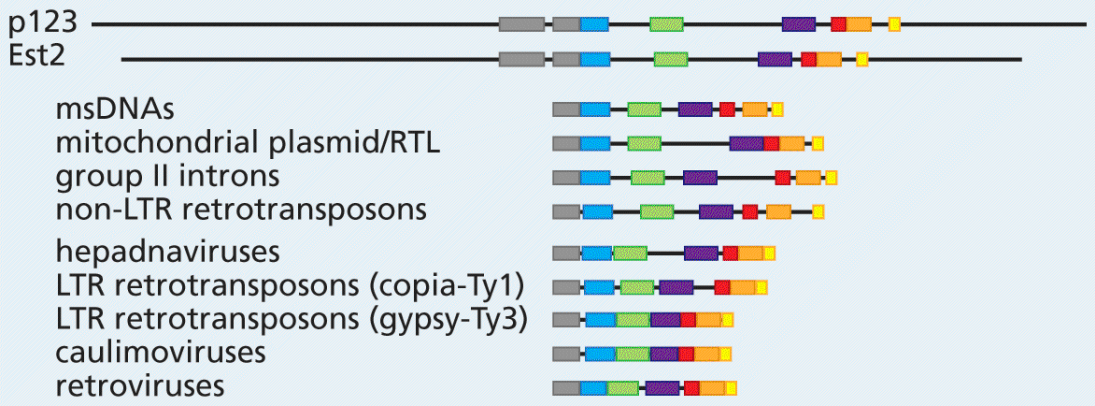
Supplementary Sidebar 10.6 Ciliates are a rich source of telomerase

Ciliates are unicellular eukaryotes that belong phylogenetically to the diverse kingdom of Protozoa. Ciliates are very large cells, as such cells go, so they require proportionately greater gene expression in order to generate the large quantities of cellular components needed for cell doubling. Ciliates solve this problem by forming two nuclei. The micronucleus carries the entire genome in a diploid (2*N*) configuration, the state seen in the somatic cells of metazoa including mammals; this micronucleus is responsible for storing the genetic information of the ciliate cell and transmitting it to daughter cells (**Figure S10.6A**).

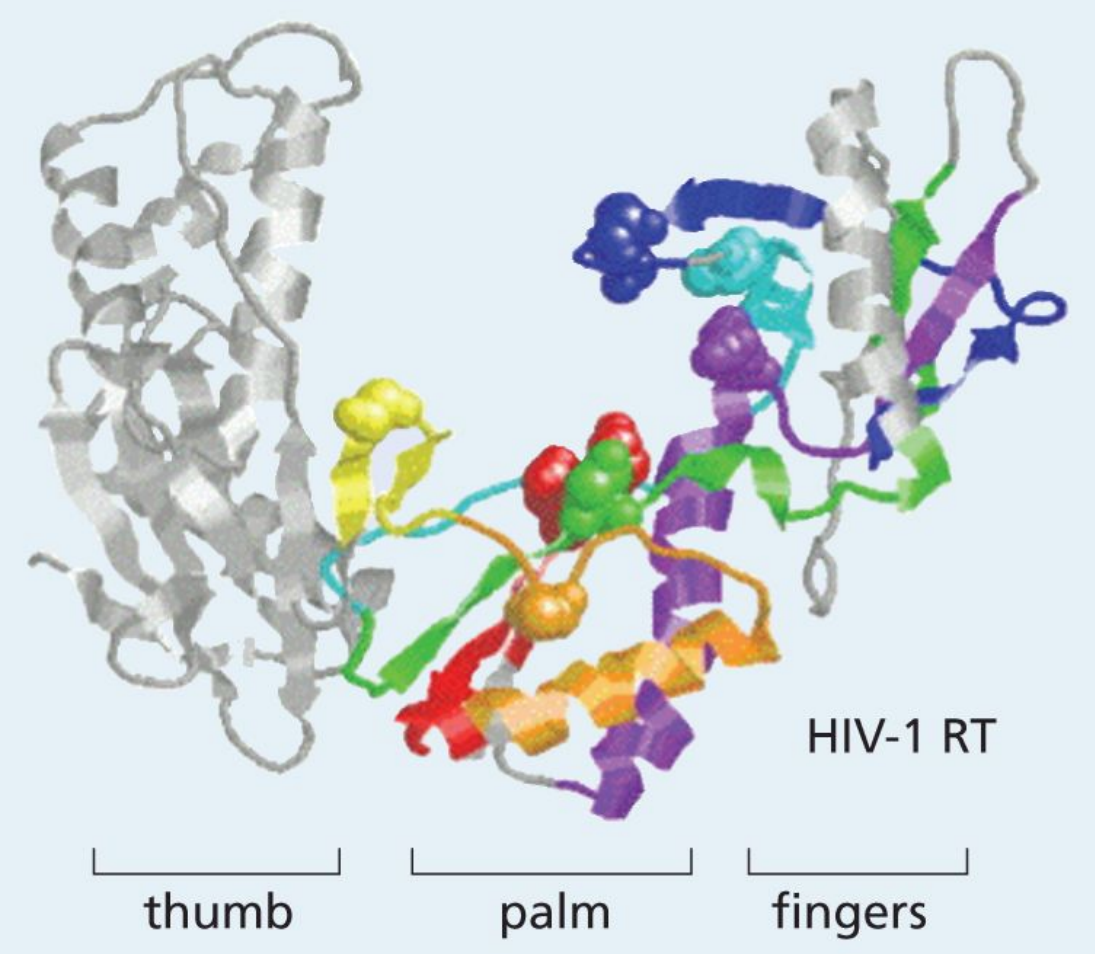


(A)

(B)



(C)



(D)

Figure S10.6 Isolation and origins of the telomerase enzyme (A) Ciliates of the hypotrichous class have a large macronucleus and a small micronucleus. The former carries genes required for the maintenance of biosynthesis of these large

cells, and the latter carries the germ-line copies of the genome. Shown here is a confocal immunofluorescent image of *Tetrahymena pyriformis*, a close relative of *T. thermophila*, in which the telomerase enzyme was first discovered and characterized. The microtubules of the cytoskeleton are revealed by anti-tubulin antibody (*green*), and the nuclei are stained *orange*. The micronucleus (mi, *dashed line*) is seen here as a small oval beneath the macronucleus (ma). (B) This micrograph reveals the appearance of *Euplotes aediculatus*, from which the telomerase catalytic subunit was purified; this purification allowed the determination of its amino acid sequence and in turn the cloning of the encoding *p123* gene. (C) This *p123* gene was found to be homologous to the gene encoding the catalytic subunit of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (yeast) telomerase holoenzyme, termed *Est2* (ever-shorter telomeres). Further analysis revealed extensive sequence relatedness of the two catalytic subunits to the catalytic clefts of reverse transcriptases (RTs) specified by a variety of retrotransposons and by retroviruses such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). (D) The regions of homology are mapped in corresponding colors on the three-dimensional structure of the HIV reverse transcriptase (HIV-1 RT). (A, courtesy of D. Wloga and J. Gaertig. B, courtesy of A. Fleury-Aubusson. C, D from T.M. Nakamura et al., *Science* 277:955–959, 1997. With permission from AAAS.)

The macronucleus, in contrast, carries a polyploid genome; that of *Tetrahymena thermophila*, for example, carries the equivalent of approximately 45*N* copies of genomic DNA, and many genomic regions may be present in 1000 copies per macronucleus. The resulting increased gene dosage makes possible the large-scale biosynthesis required to form and maintain these cells. In addition, among the group of ciliates known as hypotrichs, the chromosomal DNA in the macronucleus is cleaved into relatively short, linear fragments, each of which carries a complete, functional gene. The ends of these gene-sized DNA molecules, like the ends of normal eukaryotic chromosomes, must be protected by telomeres. Consequently, a single hypotrichous ciliate cell, such as that of *Euplotes aediculatus* (from which the telomerase enzyme was purified and subjected to sequencing), may carry hundreds of thousands of telomeres instead of, for example, the mere 92 telomeres present in most human cells (Figure S10.6B). As might be expected, such ciliates must carry a proportionately high concentration of telomerase enzyme to service their abundant telomeres. This explains why ciliates were used for the biochemical purification of an enzyme that is otherwise present in vanishingly low amounts in the cells of metazoa.

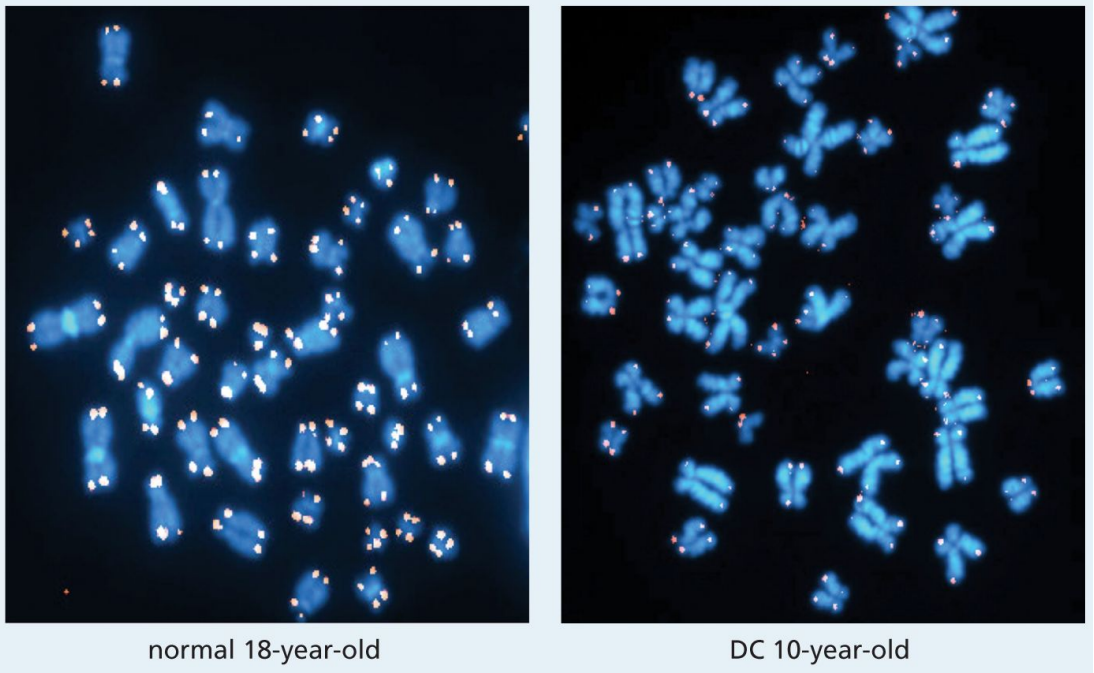
Analyses of the sequences of the ciliate and yeast catalytic subunits of telomerase enzymes revealed a clear homology, albeit distant, with a variety of known reverse transcriptases (Figure S10.6C and D). This pointed, in turn, to a possible evolutionary

origin of these telomerase subunits, specifically from a preexisting retrotransposon-encoded reverse transcriptase enzyme.

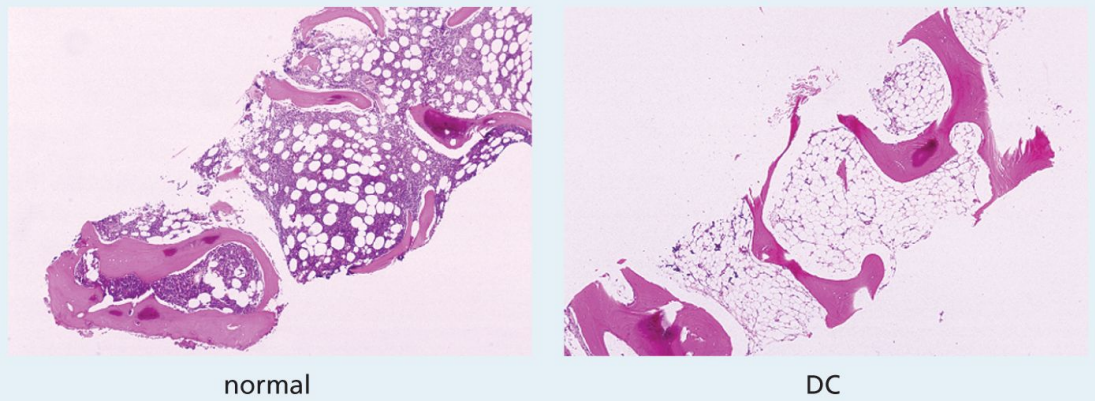
Supplementary Sidebar 10.7 Defective telomerase function explains a rare human familial syndrome

Humans suffering from the inherited condition known as dyskeratosis congenita (DC) exhibit defects in highly regenerative tissues, such as skin and bone marrow, as well as reduced chromosomal stability. In the X-linked form of the disease, a protein known as dyskerin is absent or malfunctioning. Dyskerin associates with the telomerase-associated RNA subunit (*hTR*) and helps *hTR* to assemble in the telomerase holoenzyme complex (see Figure 10.13). Autosomal dominant forms of the same disease

can be caused by the inheritance of mutant alleles of the *hTR*- and hTERT-encoding genes. Cells in proliferating tissues of affected individuals (**Figure S10.7**) exhibit dicentric chromosomes, which are indicative of interchromosomal fusions. Some affected individuals succumb to a collapse of their hematopoietic system due to the loss of regenerative capacity of the stem cells in their bone marrow; some of these patients may ultimately develop leukemia because of telomere collapse, similar to the mice described in Section 10.9.



(A)

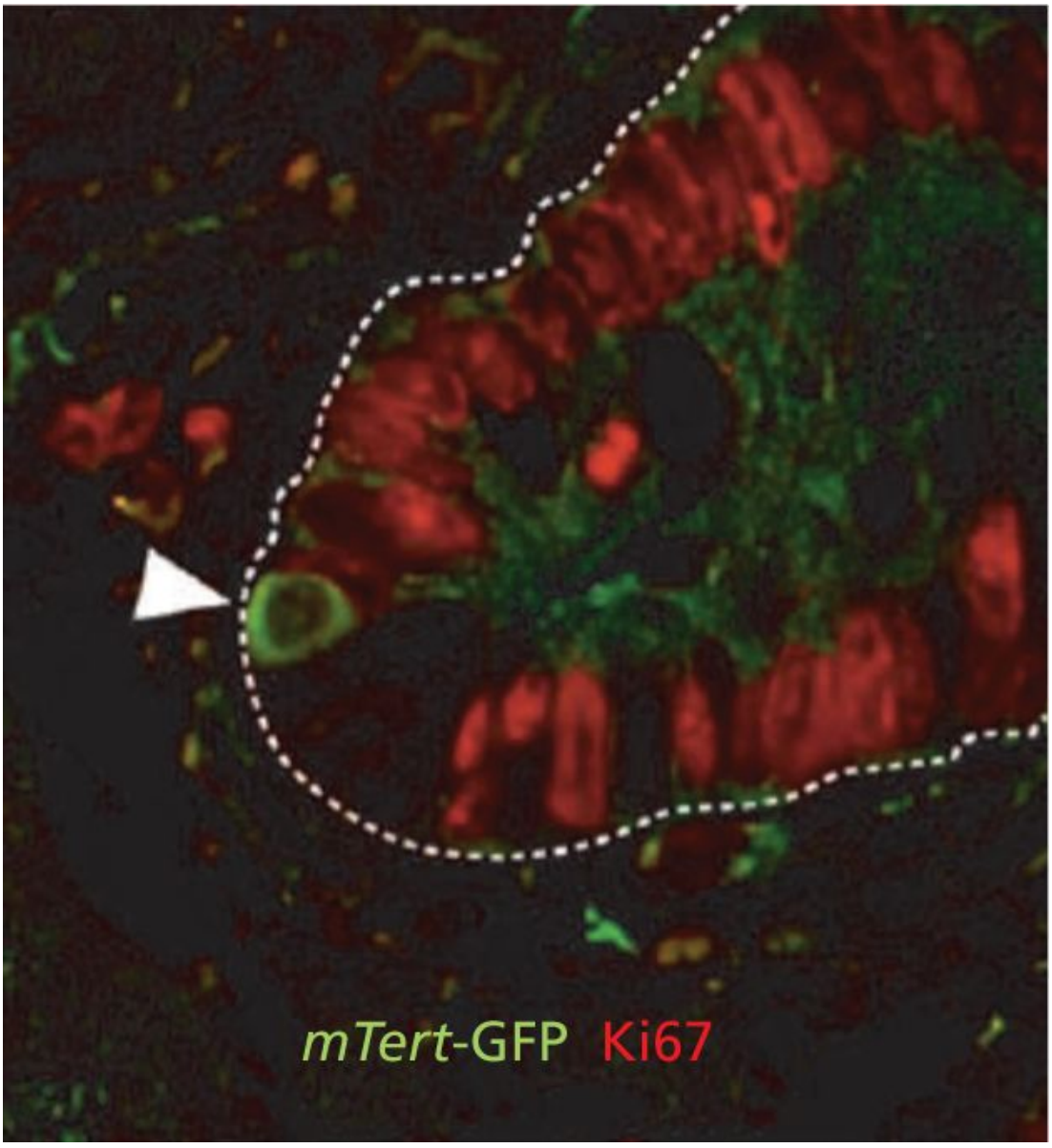


(B)

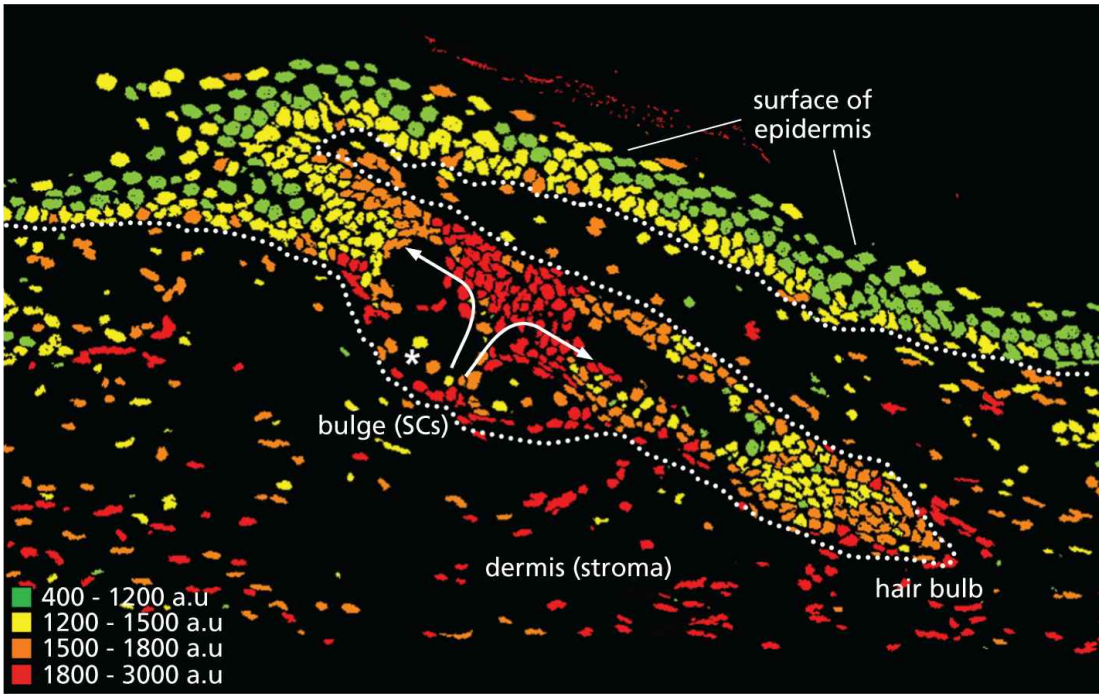
Figure S10.7 Telomere and bone marrow collapse of dyskeratosis congenita patients Humans suffering from dyskeratosis congenita (DC) experience atrophy of a number of tissues, which is traceable to the absence of functional telomerase and to the catastrophic collapse of their telomeres. (A) Fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) was used to detect the telomeres of metaphase chromosomes in a cell of a normal 18-year-old (*left*) as well as in a cell of a 10-year-old suffering from DC (*right*). Many of the chromosomes in the latter cell have telomeres that are so short that they are no longer detectable by FISH. (B) The most life-threatening tissue atrophy of DC patients occurs among the rapidly proliferating cells of the bone marrow. As indicated here, in normal bone (*left panel*), regions between mineralized bone (*pink*) are filled with hematopoietic cells of the marrow (*purple*). However, the marrow of a dyskeratosis patient suffering germ-line mutations in the *hTR* gene (*right panel*) is almost totally devoid of cells because the stem cells have lost the ability to maintain the various lineages of hematopoietic cells. (A, courtesy of S. Kulkarni and M. Bessler. B, courtesy of M. Bessler.)

Supplementary Sidebar 10.8 Evidence of telomerase activity in the normal stem cells of laboratory mice

The presence of telomerase-positive stem cells in mouse tissues helps to explain the long telomeric DNA in normal mouse tissues relative to the homologous sequences present at the ends of human chromosomes. In addition, telomerase activity (that is, that mediated by the mTERT enzyme) is detectable in a number of more differentiated cells of mouse tissues, whereas the activity of significant enzyme activity cannot be detected in corresponding human cells (**Figure S10.8**). The presence of hTERT activity in various types of stem cells in adult human tissues remains unclear.



(A)



(B)

Figure S10.8 mTERT function may be confined largely to adult stem cells
Most of the mTERT activity in adult mice may be traceable to its expression in the stem cells of various tissues; a similar dynamic may operate in the stem cells of humans, in which, however, such expression is poorly resolved. Two lines of evidence suggest this limited expression pattern in murine stem cells. (A) Transgenic mice were constructed in which the promoter of the *mTERT* gene drives expression of green fluorescent protein (GFP). In addition, cells in the crypts of the small intestine (see Figure 7.20) of these mice were immunostained with an antibody that recognizes Ki67, a marker of cells in the active growth-and-division cycle (*red*). This analysis indicates that the long-lived, slowly cycling cells in the crypt, which are located in the positions of stem cells (*arrowhead*), express readily detectable levels of mTERT, whereas their more differentiated, rapidly proliferating progeny do not. (B) Fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) using a probe that is specific for telomeric DNA reveals that telomeres are longer in the stem cells than in their more differentiated progeny. In this case, the telomeres in various locations in the hair root of the tail skin of a rat were measured; the intensity of hybridization to telomeric DNA is presented in arbitrary units (a.u.). These measurements translate to an average telomere length of ~43.9 ± 5.8 kb in the bulge region (in which stem cells, SCs, are concentrated) to 34.1 ± 3.2 kb in the interfollicular epidermis, i.e., the surface of the skin between hair roots. The arrows indicate the downward migration of the progenitor products of stem cells into the hair bulb, in which a hair shaft is produced, and, following

wounding, upward cell migration into the skin. In each case, migration is accompanied by increased differentiation and shortening of telomeres. (A, from R.K. Montgomery et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 108:179–184, 2011. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. B, from I. Flores et al., *Genes Dev.* 22:654–667, 2008. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

feeder layer
: A population of cells, usually grown as a monolayer, that continuously secretes factors that benefit the growth and survival of a second cell population that is propagated above this monolayer.

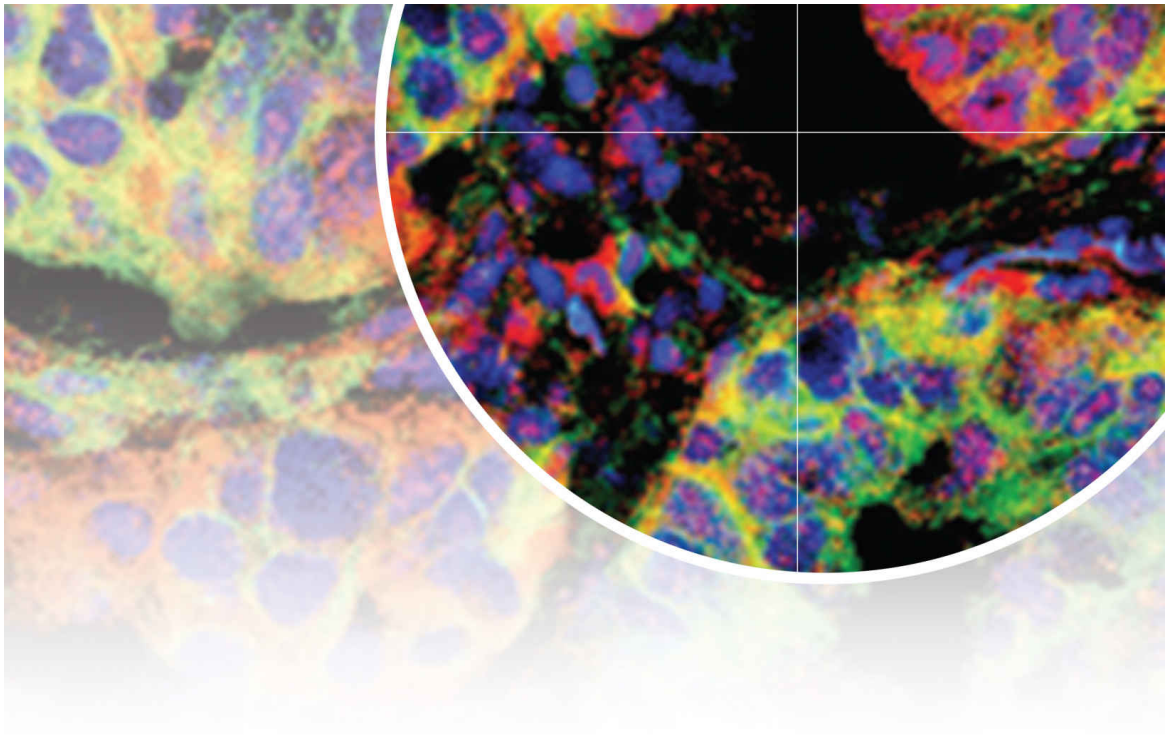
shelterin
: A complex of at least six proteins that binds to the ssDNA and dsDNA regions of telomeres and functions together with the telomeric DNA to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA from end-to-end fusions.

micronucleus
: (1) A small fragment of a nucleus that has its own nuclear membrane and results from certain aberrations in cell division or from damage inflicted on a cell; micronuclei often carry only a single chromosome and arise when this chromosome fails to be incorporated into the previously formed mitotic spindle, thereby escaping inclusion in the normal karyotypic array of a daughter cell. (2) Smaller of the two nuclei in many ciliate cells, which is used to carry and transmit the ciliate genome to progeny cells.

macronucleus
: Larger of the two nuclei in many ciliate cells, which carries multiple copies of each gene and is used for the production of mRNAs.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 11
Multi-Step Tumorigenesis



Cancer cells glow green, red and yellow in an immunofluorescence image.

In the survival of favoured individuals and races, during the constantly-recurring struggle for existence, we see a powerful and ever-acting form of selection.

Charles Darwin, biologist, 1859

Nothing in biology makes sense except in the light of evolution.

Theodosius Dobzhansky, geneticist, 1973

In the evolutionary diversification of mammals, enormous changes in cellular susceptibility to oncogenes have developed.

Richard Peto, epidemiologist, 1977

The chapter that follows is the longest of this book because it attempts to draw together diverse lines of evidence in order to create an overarching conceptual framework for understanding of human cancer formation. It draws on the contents of all preceding chapters and is worthwhile digesting in segments rather than swallowing the contents whole.

The formation of a human tumor is a complex process that usually proceeds over a period of decades. Normal cells evolve into cells with increasingly neoplastic phenotypes through a process termed tumor progression. This process takes place at myriad sites throughout the normal human body, advancing further and further as we get older. Rarely does it proceed far enough at any single site to make us aware of its end product, a clinically detectable tumor mass.

Tumor progression is driven by a sequence of randomly occurring mutations, epigenetic alterations of DNA, and epigenetically controlled cell-biological programs that affect the genes governing cell proliferation, survival, and other traits associated with the malignant cell phenotype. The complexity of this process reflects the work of evolution, which has erected a series of barriers between normal cells and their highly neoplastic derivatives. Accordingly, completion of each step of multi-step tumor progression within a tissue can be viewed as the successful breaching of yet another barrier that has been impeding the progress of a clone of normal cells toward the fully malignant state.

One might think that these barriers are the handiwork of relatively recent evolutionary processes. Perhaps, we might imagine, the forces of evolution initially worked to design the architecture and physiology of complex metazoan bodies and, having completed this task, then proceeded to tinker with these plans in order to reduce the risk of cancer.

An alternative scenario is far more likely, however: the risk of uncontrolled cell proliferation has been a constant companion of metazoans from their very beginnings, roughly 600 million years ago. By granting individual cells within their tissues the license to proliferate under certain conditions, even simple metazoans ran the risk that one or another of their constituent cells would turn into a renegade and trigger the disruptive, runaway cell multiplication that we call cancer. Consequently, the erection of multiple defenses against cancer must have accompanied, hand-in-hand, the evolution of organismic size and complexity.

Most of the preceding chapters have addressed one or another of the individual cellular control systems that defend against cancer and are subverted during the process of tumorigenesis. Now, we will begin tying these individual threads together and examine how alterations in these systems contribute to the end product—the formation of a primary tumor. We start by attempting to gauge the scope of the problem at hand: How many different sequential changes are actually required in cells and tissues in order to create a human cancer and how long do these processes take to reach completion?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

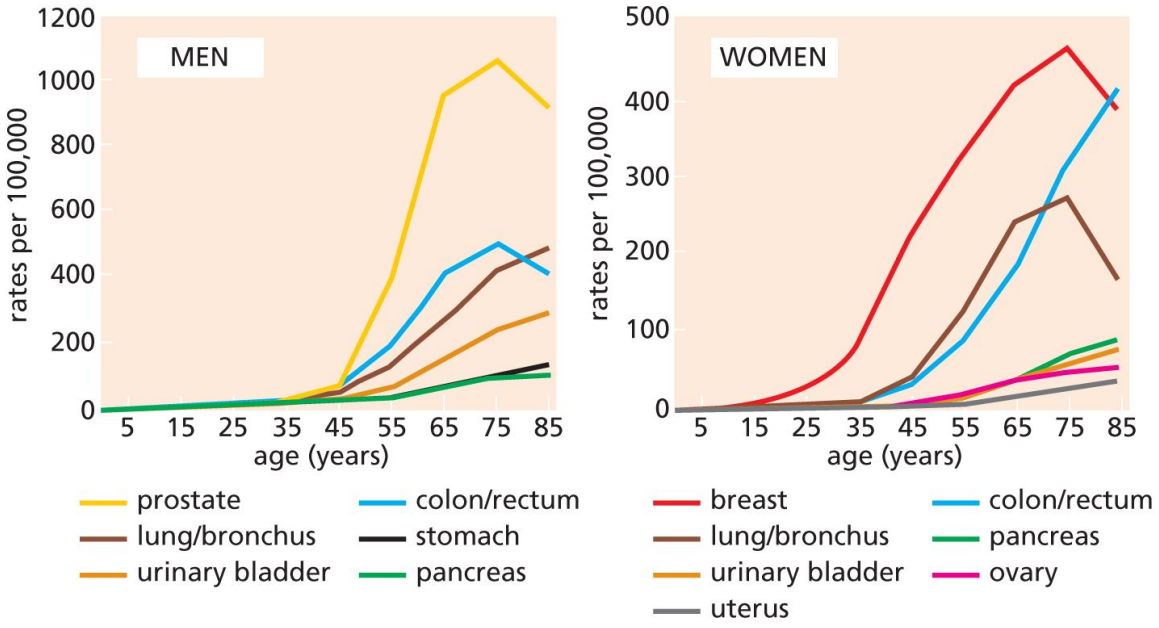
tumor progression

(1) Process of multi-step evolution of a normal cell into a fully neoplastic, malignant tumor cell. (2) Evolution of a benign into a malignant cancer cell or growth. (3) Evolution of a premalignant cell from a promoter-dependent to a promoter-independent state.

OceanofPDF.com

11.1 Most human cancers develop over many decades of time

Epidemiologic studies have shown that age is a surprisingly large factor in the incidence of cancer. In the United States, the risk of dying from colon cancer is as much as 1000 times greater in a 70-year-old man than in a 10-year-old boy. This fact, on its own, suggests that this type of cancer and, by extension, many other cancers common in adults (**Figure 11.1**), require years if not decades to develop (**Sidebar 11.1**).

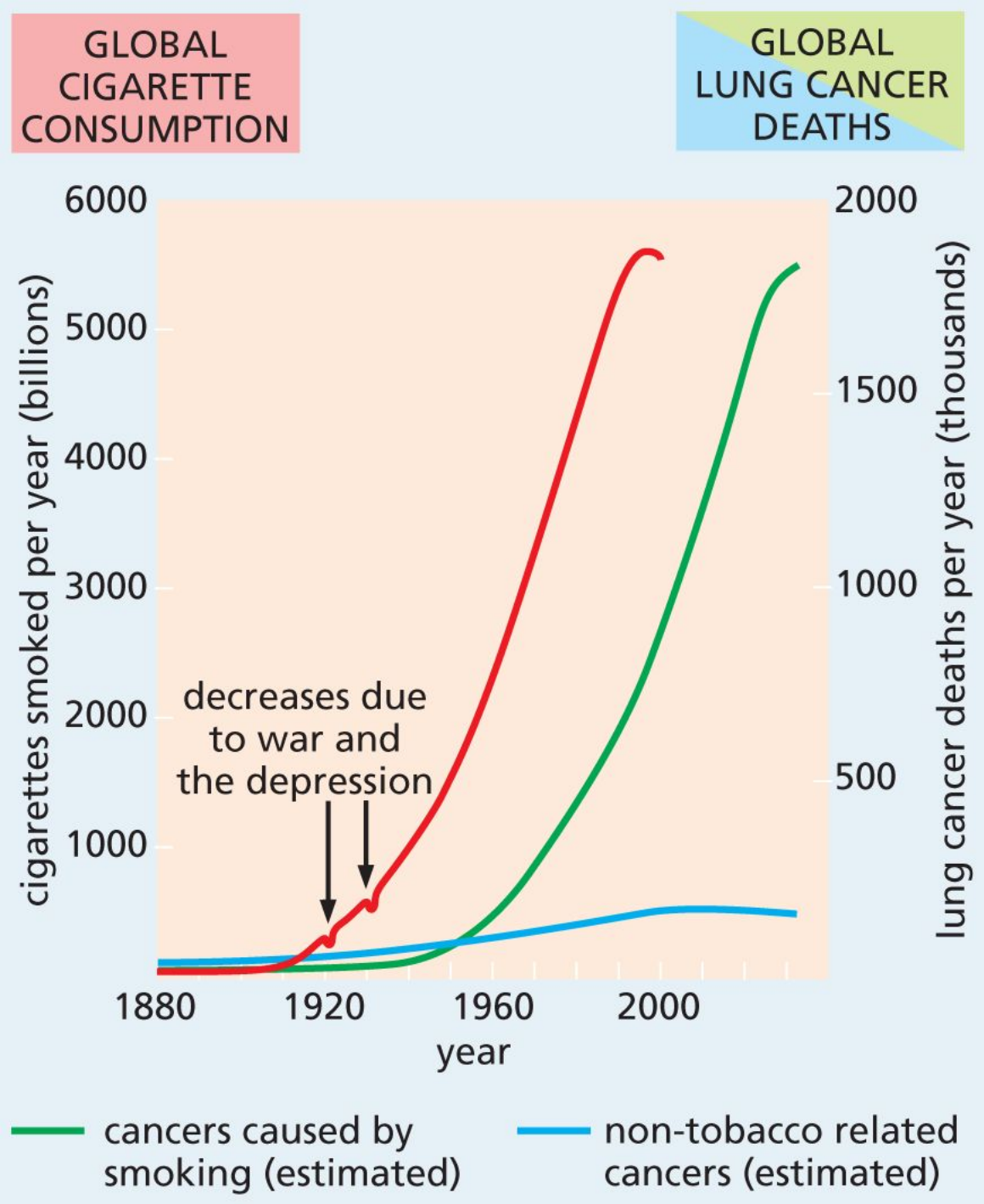


Two line graphs. The first one shows rates of various cancers per one hundred thousand of population as a function of age for men. The second does the same for women. Among men, cancer rates are low until age 45 and then rise steeply, especially for prostate cancer. Colorectal cancer is the next-most-frequent type, followed by lung and bronchial cancer. Among women, breast cancer rates start to rise fairly early life, at age 15, and breast cancer remains the most frequent cancer type into a woman's eighties, although it is about half as frequent as prostate cancer in men. Lung and bronchial cancer rates and colorectal cancer rates in women start to rise at about age 35.

Figure 11.1 Cancer incidence at various ages These graphs of diagnoses of various types of epithelial cancers show a steeply rising incidence with increasing age, indicating that the process of tumor formation generally requires decades to reach completion. (Courtesy of W.K. Hong, compiled from *SEER Cancer Statistics Review.*)

Sidebar 11.1 Estimates of time required for tumor development in humans

Attempts to gauge the latency of cancer development—the time window between initial exposure to a carcinogen and the eventual diagnosis of disease—are complicated by our inability in the case of most cancers to identify the timing of exposure to a known carcinogen and the time of subsequent diagnosis of disease. One compelling measurement comes from measures of the incidence of lung cancers among males in the United States. Cigarette smoking was relatively uncommon among this group until World War II, when large numbers of men first acquired the habit, encouraged in part by the cigarettes they received as part of their rations while serving in the U.S. armed forces. Thirty years later, in the mid-1970s, the rate of lung cancer began to climb steeply with kinetics that closely paralleled the increase in size of the smoking population in the U.S. (**Figure 11.2**). Another comparable measurement comes from the development of mesothelioma among British shipyard workers who were exposed to asbestos used in ship construction; in this case, the lag in cancer development could be gauged to be about 40 years after first exposure. In general, however, to the extent that many human cancers derive from chronic exposure to low levels of carcinogen over extended periods of time, it is impossible to estimate the lag period between exposure and disease development.



A line graph illustrating the relationship between cigarette smoking and lung cancer. One line displays the number of cigarettes smoked per year, worldwide. The line rises from practically zero in 1880 to about 5.6 trillion in the late 1990s. A curve of the exact same shape, but shifted forward by about 40 years, shows annual estimated deaths from smoking-caused lung cancer rising from practically zero in 1920 to about 1.8 million in the 2030s. A third

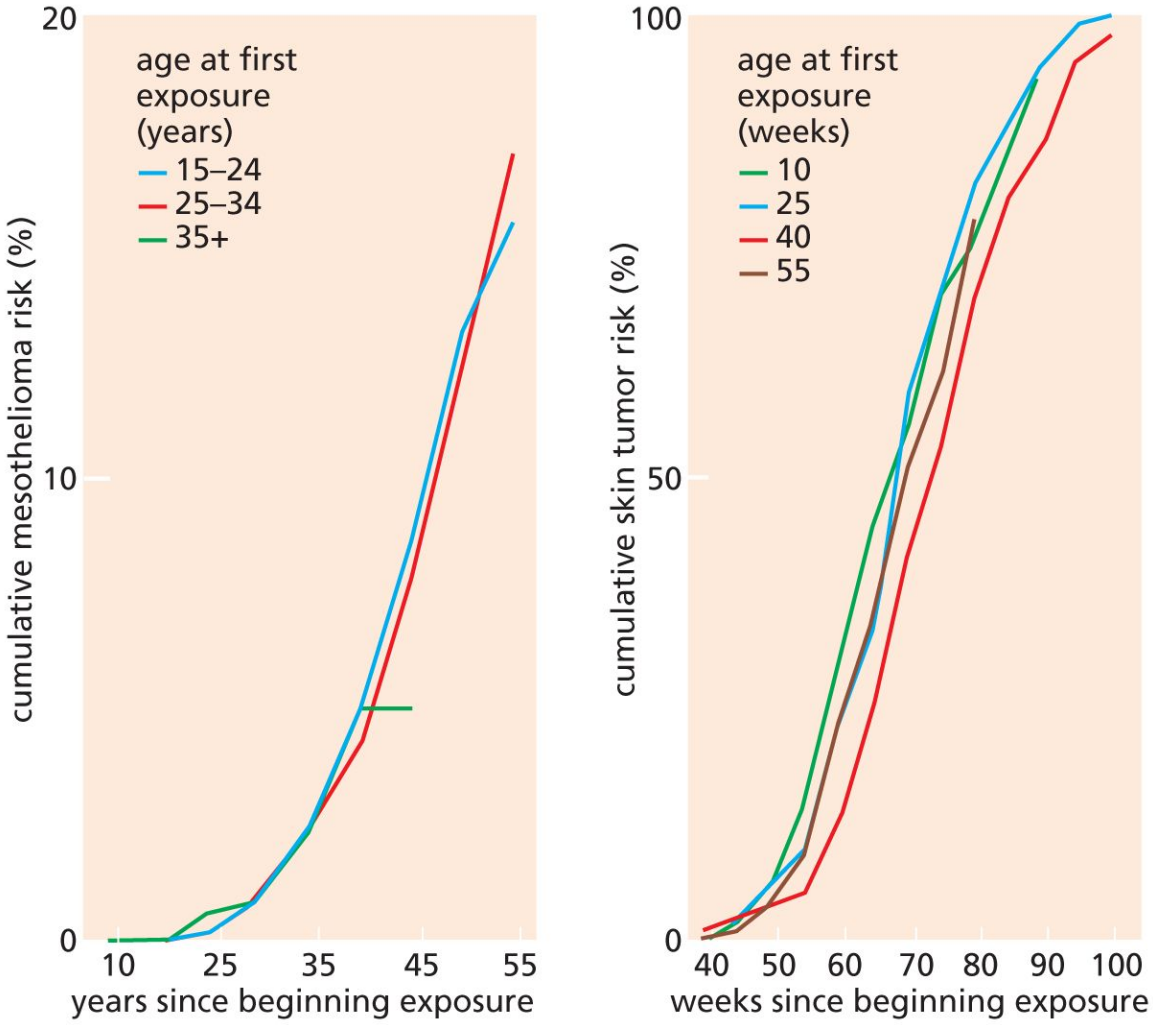
curve shows annual estimated deaths from non-tobacco-related cancers rising steadily over the years and peaking at about 200 thousand in the year 2000.
Figure 11.2 Cigarette consumption and lung cancer These curves compare the annual global consumption of cigarettes (*red curve*) with the recorded and predicted annual worldwide mortality from lung cancer (*green curve*). Annual mortality from tobacco-induced lung cancer (in thousands) is estimated to peak sometime in the fourth or fifth decade of the twenty-first century. During the twentieth century, there was an increase in what is judged to be "non-tobacco-related" lung cancer mortality (*blue curve*). The precise number of these cases is unclear, and there is some debate about how many of them are attributable to secondhand tobacco smoke. (From R.N. Proctor, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 1:82–86, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

The various frequencies of cancers in diverse populations have led to a number of calculations that shed light on the complex processes of cancer formation (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.1**). In many cases, simple algebraic formulas, a^5 or a^6, may roughly predict cancer incidence as a function of elapsed lifetime (where a = years lived). Such dynamics imply a sequence of random, independent events that occur at comparable frequencies over extended periods of time. Such calculations can only be made when cancer incidence and age-of-onset of disease are averaged over a large human population. These independent events are likely to be rate-limiting, and their probability of occurring per unit of time may vary dramatically from one individual to another, being affected by inherited predisposition, diet, and lifestyle, among other variables. Independent of the measurements of event probability is the conclusion that cancer development is a multi-step process for most kinds of human cancer. (These calculations have limited utility for pediatric cancers, whose dynamics do not conform to this model of disease pathogenesis, as discussed later in this chapter.)

The conclusion that tumorigenesis is a multi-step process hints at another interesting idea. Assume that (1) a sequence of unlikely events is required in order for a tumor to appear and (2) many of these events happen at comparable frequencies in all of us. Together, these assumptions indicate that as we grow older, virtually all of us will carry populations of cells in many locations throughout the body that have completed some but not all of the steps of tumor progression. Because most of us will not live long enough for the full schedule of requisite events to be completed (because we will succeed in dying from accidents or other diseases), we will never realize that any of these tumor progressions had been initiated at various sites within our bodies. Indeed,

autopsies reveal that by life's end, 60 to 70% of individuals carry undiagnosed tumors, independent of the cause of death; these autopsies provide minimum estimates of the actual number of minor pre-neoplastic growths in the body. Viewed from this perspective, cancer is an inevitability; if we succeeded in avoiding the death traps set by all the other usual diseases and conditions, sooner or later most of us would become victims of cancer. Interestingly, the late onset of most human cancers dictates that curing all cancers will have relatively minor effects on overall life span (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.2**).

Epidemiology provides us with another important insight into the multi-step nature of tumorigenesis. If we examine the frequencies of mesothelioma in humans (caused largely by asbestos exposure plus increased incidence from cigarette smoking) and skin cancer in mice (induced by repeated benzo[*a*]pyrene painting), it becomes apparent that the formation of each of these tumors requires an extended period of repeated exposure to carcinogens and that it is the *duration* of this exposure (rather than the absolute *age* of exposed individuals or the age when exposure began) that determines the timing of the onset of detectable disease (**Figure 11.3**). In these particular cases, tumors are created by the actions of exogenous carcinogens rather than by processes operating entirely within the body's various tissues; these carcinogens increase the rate of tumor development, often by many orders-of-magnitude above the spontaneous background rate. The lion's share of the background rates of human cancers that seem to be formed spontaneously appear to result from the actions of *endogenou*s carcinogenic processes, notably (1) errors in DNA replication and repair, (2) accidents occurring during various steps of cell division, and (3) actions of mutagenic molecular species that are by-products of metabolism, notably energy metabolism in the mitochondria.

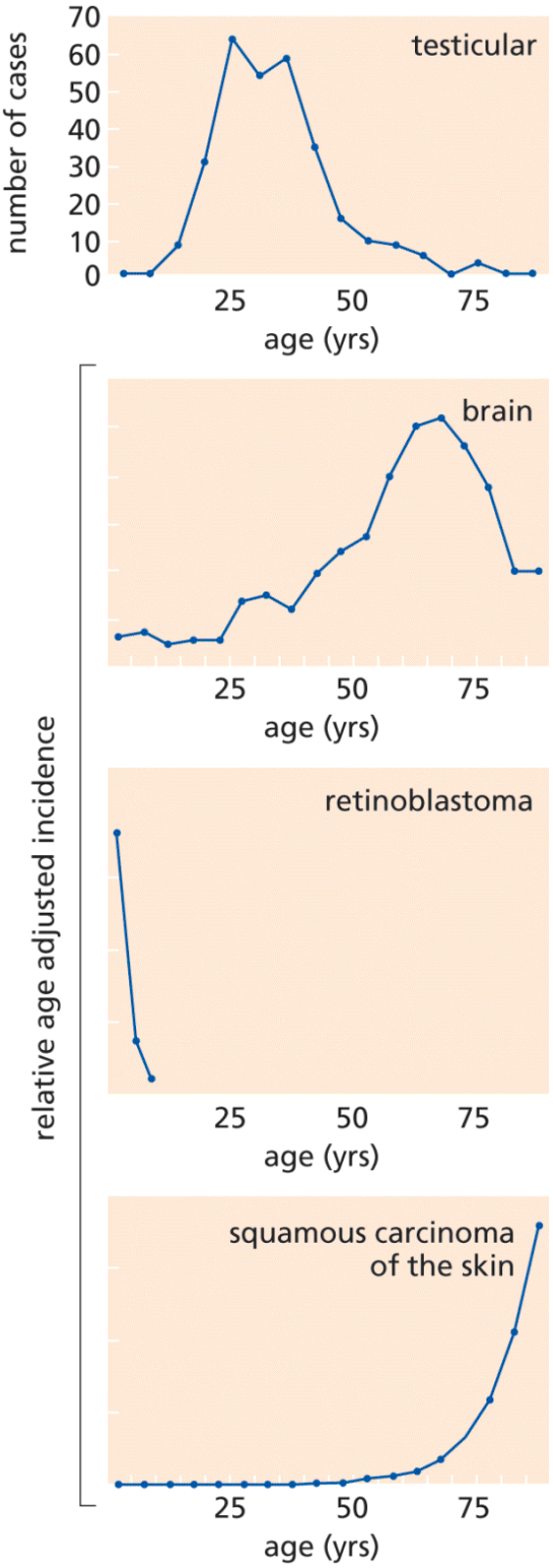


Two graphs each showing cumulative risk of cancer in percent, as a function of years since beginning exposure. The first graph, for mesothelioma, shows curves for three different ages at first exposure, namely 15 to 24 years, 25 to 34, and 35 and older. All three curves follow the same basic trajectory, from 0 at 17 or 18 years after first exposure, up to 10 percent at 45 years, up to 16 percent after about 55 years. The second graph, for skin tumors, shows graphs show curves for four different ages at first exposure, namely 10, 20, 45 and 55 weeks. All four curves follow the same basic trajectory, from 0 at 40 weeks since first exposure, up to 50 percent at 65 weeks, up to 100 percent after about 95 weeks.

Figure 11.3 Cancer incidence and duration of carcinogen exposure These graphs indicate that cumulative exposure to a carcinogenic stimulus, rather than the age at which this exposure began, determines the likelihood of developing a detectable tumor. The left graph presents the cumulative risk of

developing mesothelioma (a tumor of the mesodermal lining of the abdominal organs and the lungs) among insulation workers in the United States, many of whom were occupationally exposed to asbestos. The right graph presents the cumulative risk of developing a skin tumor among mice treated in an experimental protocol for inducing squamous cell carcinomas of the skin. (From J. Peto, *Nature* 411:390–395, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

These generalizations about cancer formation tend to overlook cancers in a minority of adults that occur at ages that do not conform to a simplified algebraic formula of multi-step tumorigenesis as described above. As we see in **Figure 11.4**, a pediatric cancer strikes only early in life, whereas testicular cancer strikes in early adult life. Kinetics like these demonstrate that biological forces operating in certain differentiated tissues may ultimately determine cancer onset, a point made as well in Figure 11.1 by examining the kinetics of breast cancer onset.


number of cases
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
testicular
25
50
75
age (yrs)
brain
25
50
75
age (yrs)
retinoblastoma
25
50
75
age (yrs)
squamous carcinoma
of the skin
25
50
75
age (yrs)
relative age adjusted incidence

Four graphs showing Cancer incidence as a function of age for four different cancers. Testicular cancer typically appears at a fairly young age, most commonly in men in their late twenties and early thirties. The incidence of brain cancer rises steadily until about age 70 and then declines steeply. The incidence of retinoblastoma is high at birth and plummets to essentially zero by age 10. The incidence of squamous skin carcinoma rises exponentially throughout one's lifetime.

Figure 11.4 Cancer incidence as a function of age These graphs show age-dependent incidence rates in a subset of cancers. The rates vary dramatically from the kinetics of appearance of most common cancers. With the exception of testicular cancer, the ordinates in all cases represent incidence relative to the highest incidence rate. Squamous cell skin carcinoma is included to illustrate the incidence kinetics of a cancer that is more typical of adult-onset neoplasias. (Courtesy of B. Westermark; from J. Li et al., *Pediatrics* 121:e1470–e1477, 2008.)

OceanofPDF.com

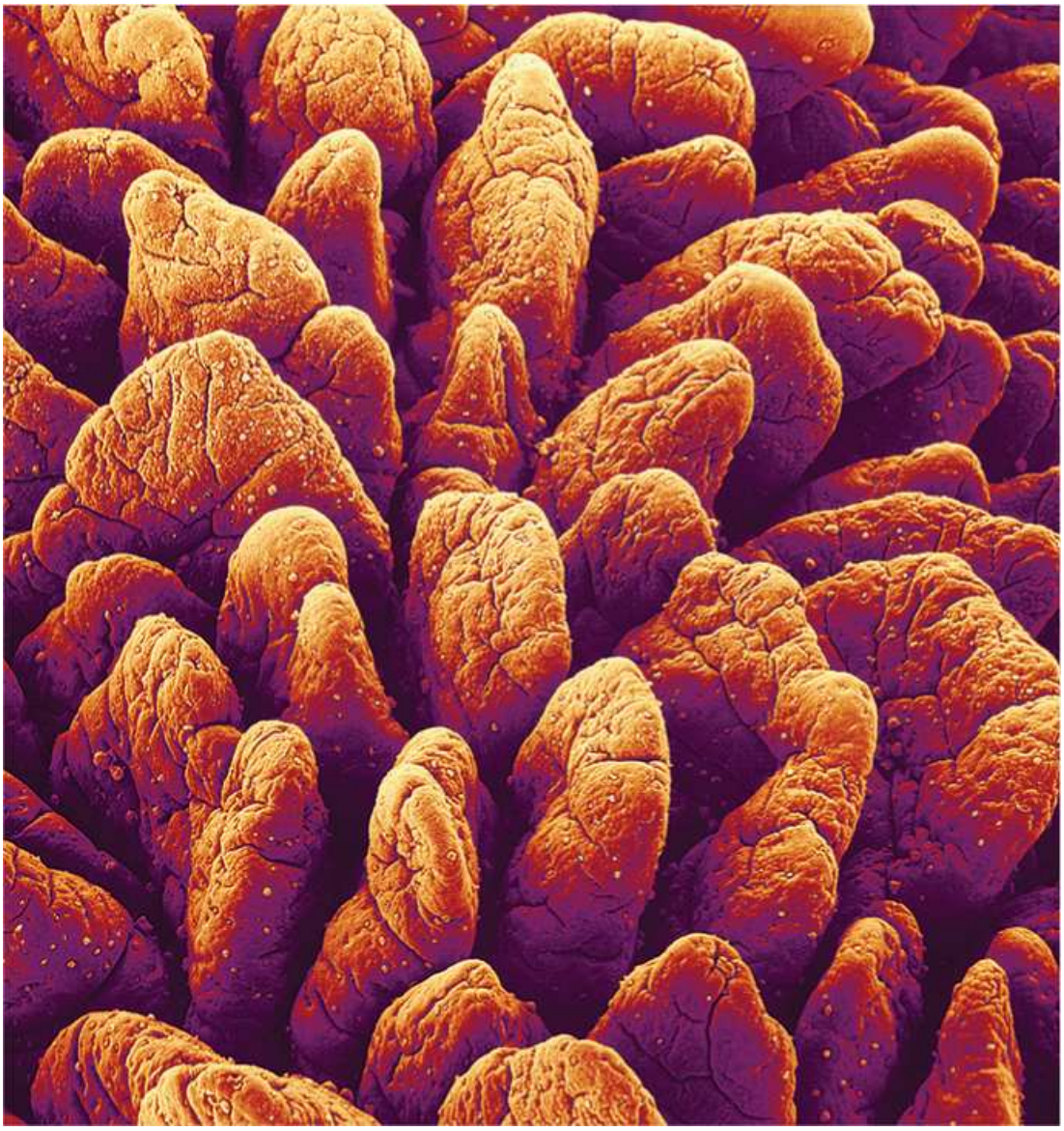
Glossary

rate-limiting
: Referring to a step in a multi-step process that governs the overall rate at which the process as a whole reaches completion because this particular step is kinetically slower than all other steps.

OceanofPDF.com

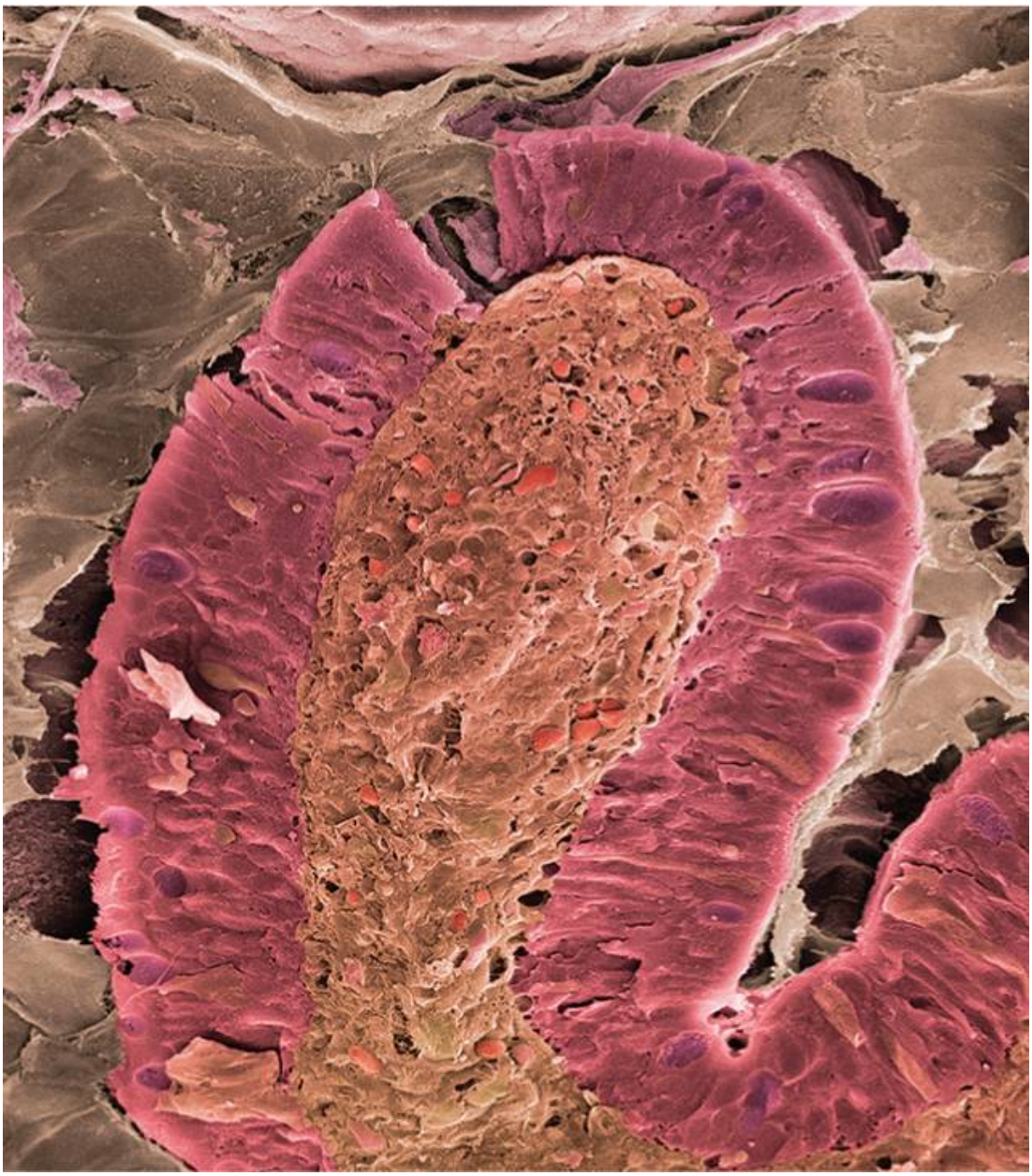
11.2 Histopathology provides evidence of multi-step tumor formation

The notion of human tumor development as a multi-step process has been histologically documented most clearly in the epithelium of the intestine. The intestinal epithelial cells, which face the interior cavity (lumen) of the gastrointestinal tract, form a layer that is only one cell thick in many places (**Figure 11.5**). These epithelial cell populations are in constant flux. Each minute, 20 to 50 million cells in the human duodenum and a tenth as many in the colon die and an equal number of newly minted cells replace them! These epithelial cells, rather than underlying mesenchymal cells, are the sources of cancers arising in the intestine.



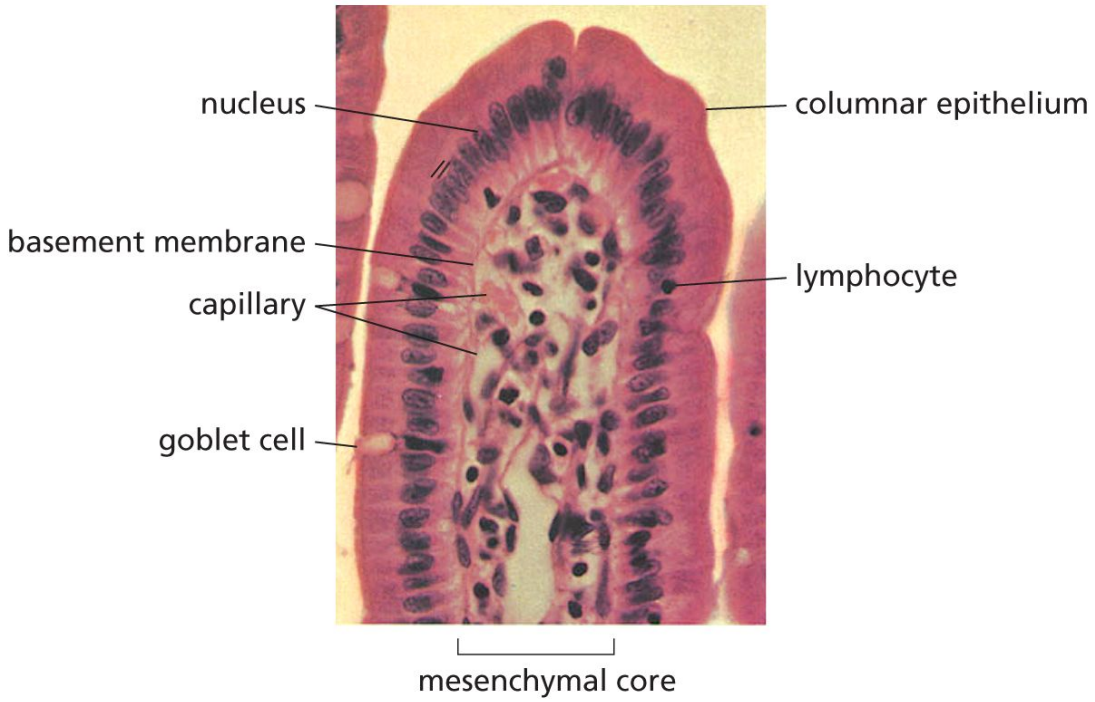
An electron micrograph of two or three dozen intestinal villi projecting upward. The image has been colorized to red and they look somewhat like chicken nuggets.

(A)



An electron micrograph of a single villum in cross section. The outer layer consists of columnar epithelial cells. The core is spongy in texture.

(B)



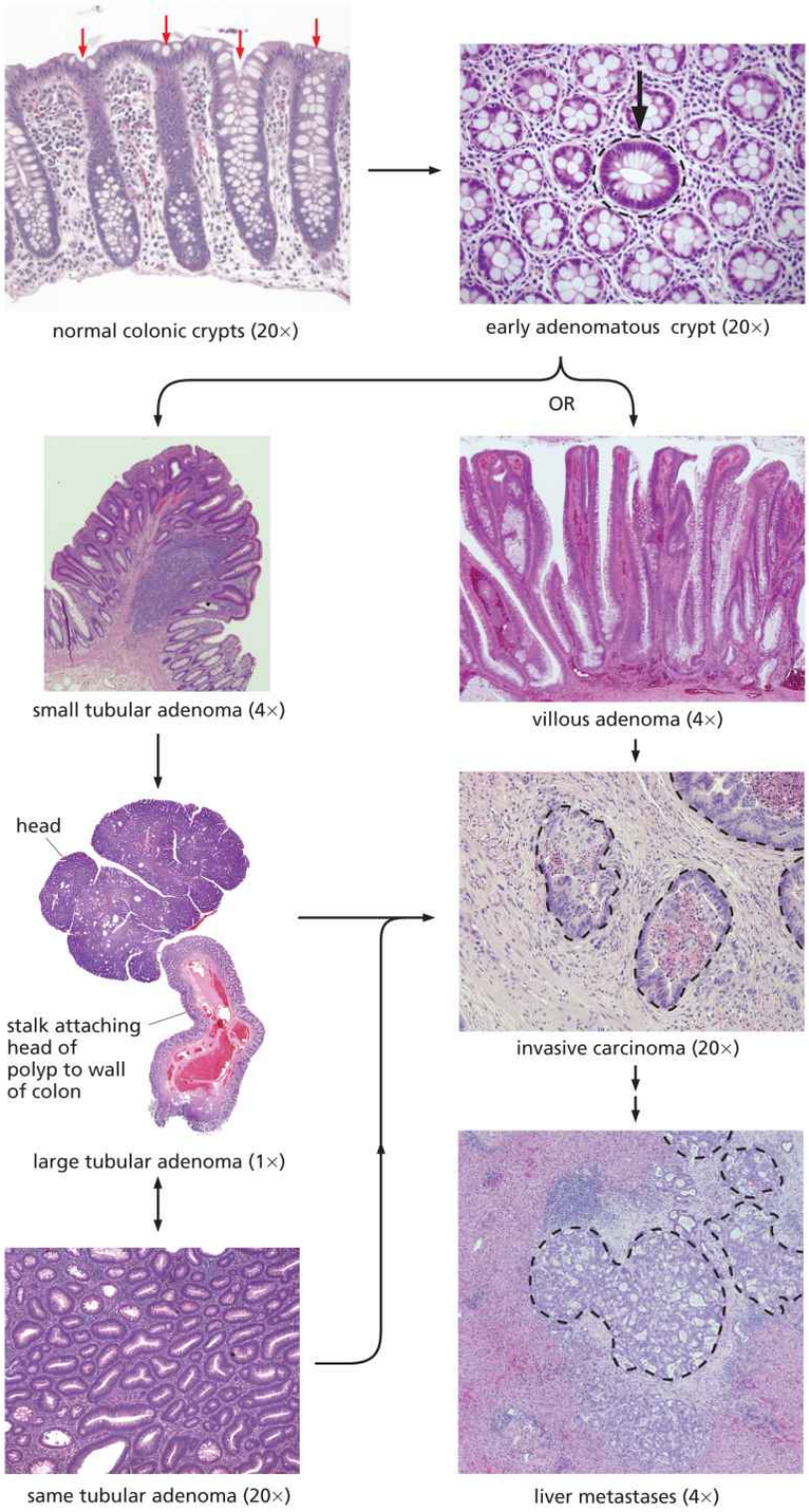
A histology image of a single villum in cross section. The outer layer consists of columnar epithelial cells. Their nuclei are stained dark and appear side by side in orderly progression. Within the epithelial layer, lymphocytes and goblet cells make an occasional appearance. The mesenchymal core is shown to contain capillaries.

(C)

Figure 11.5 Microanatomy of the normal intestinal wall The epithelial cells lining the small intestine and those lining the large intestine (colon) have a similar organization. However, the protruding villi visualized here are present only in the small intestine. (A) This scanning electron micrograph of epithelium of the small intestine shows villi (fingers) of the intestinal mucosa extending into the lumen at regular intervals. (B) Each villus is covered with a layer of epithelial cells. (C) The core of each villus, which is separated from the overlying epithelium by a basement membrane, is composed of various types of mesenchymal cells, including fibroblasts, endothelial cells, pericytes, and various cells of the immune system (*not indicated*). (A, © Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source. B, © SPL/Science Source. C, from University of Iowa Virtual Hospital, Atlas of Microscopic Anatomy, Plate 194.)

Analyses of human colonic biopsies have revealed a variety of tissue states, with degrees of abnormality that range from mildly deviant tissue, which is barely

distinguishable from the structure of the normal intestinal mucosa (the epithelial lining of the colonic lumen), to the chaotic jumble of cells that form highly malignant tissue (**Figure 11.6**). Like the normal intestinal lining, these growths are composed of various distinct cell types, indeed almost all of the cell types found in the normal tissue.



A sequence of histology images that shows the progression of cancer beginning in the colon. The first image is of normal colonic crypts in side view. The next image is of an early adenomatous crypt seen from above. The walls are thicker and contain many more cells than in a normal crypt. This crypt may develop into

either a villous adenoma, shown in side view with thick walls and irregular structure, or a tubular adenoma, shown first small, then large with a bulbous head at one end and at the other end a stalk that attaches to the colon wall. Either type of adenoma can develop into an invasive carcinoma that forms large sections of uneven tissue within the normal tissue. Eventually, as shown in the last image, the cancer can metastasize to the liver. The cancerous tissue is circles and is much less uniform, with more gaps than the surrounding tissue.

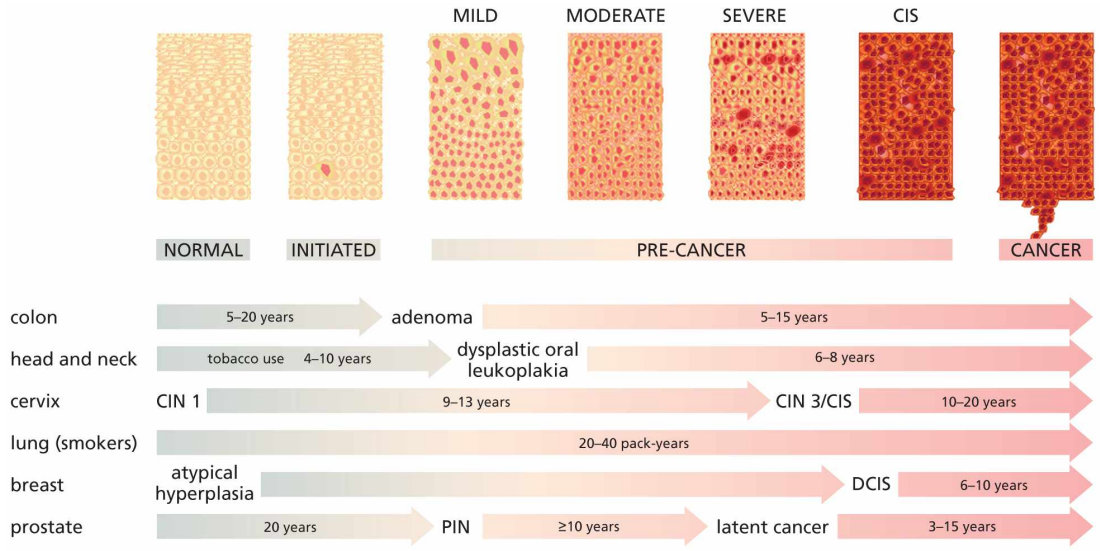
Figure 11.6 Histopathological alterations of the human colon The various types of abnormal tissues revealed by histopathological analyses of the human colon can be arrayed in a succession of ever-increasing abnormality. Normal colonic crypts are seen here in longitudinal section (*top left*). (Very similar crypts are found in the small intestine around the base of each villus.) A small adenomatous crypt (*arrow, circled*) is shown, together with normal crypts, in cross section (*top right*). The cells in this abnormal crypt are presumed to have the ability to develop into at least two distinct types of adenomas—tubular and villous. A small tubular adenoma is shown (*left, middle*). The larger tubular adenoma (*below*) is sometimes termed *pedunculated*, indicating its attachment via a stalk to the colonic wall. These two types of adenomas have the ability to evolve into a locally invasive carcinoma, whose presence here is indicated by small islands of carcinoma cells (*circled*) surrounded by extensive stroma (*right, lower middle*). Dissemination of these cells, usually to the liver (*bottom right*), can lead to metastases (*circled*), which are surrounded here by layers of recruited stromal cells. The histopathological progression indicated here would seem to be the most logical way by which normal tissue, in this case the colonic epithelium, is transformed through a series of intermediate steps into carcinomas and ultimately spawns metastatic growths. However, the evidence for most of these precursor–product relationships is actually quite fragmentary. (Courtesy of C. Iacobuzio-Donahue and B. Vogelstein.)

Some growths that are classified as hyperplastic exhibit an almost-normal histology, in that the individual cells within these growths have a normal appearance. However, it is clear that in these areas of hyperplasia, the rate of epithelial cell division is unusually high, yielding thicker-than-normal epithelia, often composed of multiple cell layers in an epithelium that is normally only one-cell-layer thick. Yet other growths show abnormal histology, with the individual epithelial cells no longer forming the well-ordered cell layer of the normal colonic mucosa and exhibiting a morphology that deviates in subtle ways from that of normal cells; these growths are said to be dysplastic (see Figure 2.13). A much larger and more deviant growth that has dysplastic cells and marked thickening is termed a polyp or an adenoma (see Figures 2.14A and 11.6). In the colon, several distinct types of polyps are encountered; some grow along the wall of the colon, whereas others are tethered to the colonic wall by a

stalk. Importantly, these growths are considered benign, in that none has broken through the basement membrane (see Figure 2.15A) and invaded underlying stromal tissue.

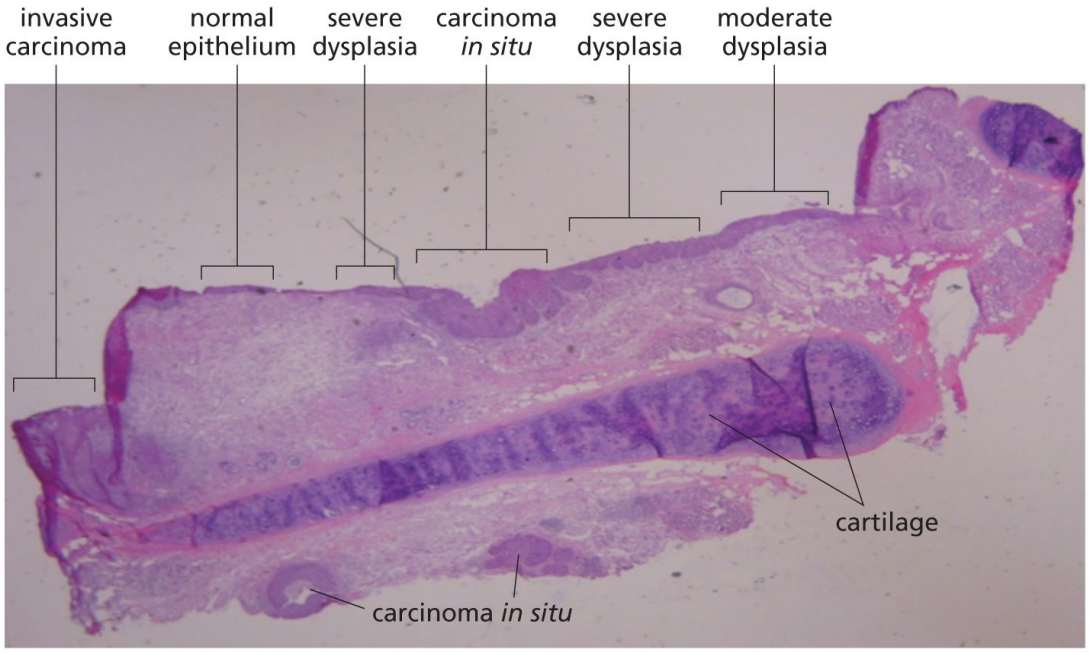
The more abnormal growths that have indeed invaded through the basement membrane and beyond have progressed from a previously benign to a malignant state. There are distinctions among these more aggressive colon carcinomas and associated cancer cells, depending on whether they have penetrated deeply into the stromal layers and smooth muscle and whether cells from these growths have migrated—metastasized—to nearby lymph nodes and anatomically distant sites in the body, where they may have succeeded in founding new tumor cell colonies.

Having arrayed these growths in a succession of tissue phenotypes that advance from the normal to the aggressively malignant (see Figure 11.6), we might imagine that this succession depicts with some accuracy the course of tumor development as it actually occurs in the human colon. In truth, the evidence supporting this scheme is quite indirect. Some tumors may well develop through a succession of intermediate growths, such as those arrayed here. Alternatively, it is possible that some of the tissue types depicted as intermediates in this sequence represent dead ends rather than stepping stones to more advanced tumors. In certain cases of colon cancer, it is also possible that the development of the tumor depends on the ability of early growths to leapfrog over intermediate steps, allowing them to arrive at highly malignant endpoints far more quickly than is suggested by this succession of steps. Similar successions have been proposed for various other epithelial cancers (**Figure 11.7A**). On rare occasions, one can actually find a tissue in which multiple stages of cancer progression coexist (Figure 11.7B); however, observations like these provide no direct evidence of precursor–product relationships between the various types of histologically abnormal growths.



A series of seven images across the top illustrates normal tissue; tumorigenesis initiated; pre-cancerous growth in mild, moderate, severe, and cancer in situ stages; and finally cancer, marked by escape of proliferating tissue from the site of initiation. Below that progression, the development of six types of cancer is described in more detail. Colon cancer takes 5 to 20 years to reach the mild pre-cancerous adenoma stage, and another 5 to 15 years to reach the cancerous stage. Head and neck cancer take, with tobacco use, 4 to 10 years to reach the mild to moderate pre-cancerous dysplastic oral leukoplakia stage. It takes another 6 to 8 years to reach the cancerous stage. Cervical cancer takes 9 to 13 years to reach the severe pre-cancerous carcinoma in situ stage, and another 10 to 20 years to reach the cancer stage. Lung cancer, in smokers, takes 20 to 40 pack-years to reach the cancer stage. After breast cancer, starting with atypical hyperplasia, reaches the ductal carcinoma in situ stage, it takes another 6 to 10 years to reach the cancer stage. Prostate cancer takes 10 years to reach the mild pre-cancerous prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia stage, another 10 or more years to reach the severe pre-cancerous latent cancer stage, and finally another 6 to 10 years to reach the cancer stage.

(A)

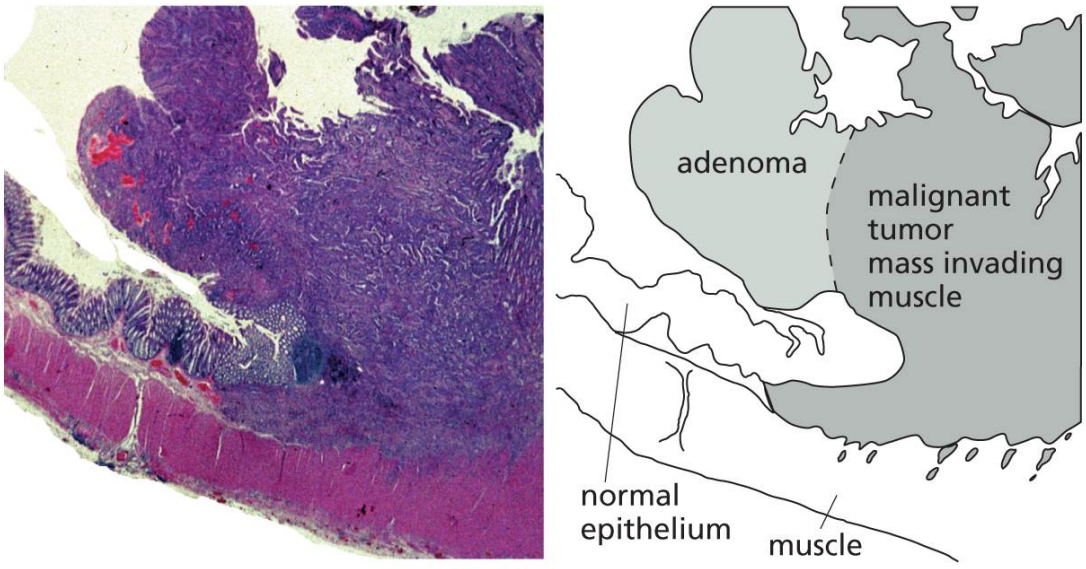


An image of a sample of stained lung cancer tissue. Along the upper edge, one can see, left to right, invasive carcinoma cells, normal epithelium, severe dysplasia, a carcinoma in situ, severe dysplasia, and moderate dysplasia. Two

more carcinomas in situ are visible at the bottom, and a shaft of cartilage tissue runs across the middle.
(B)

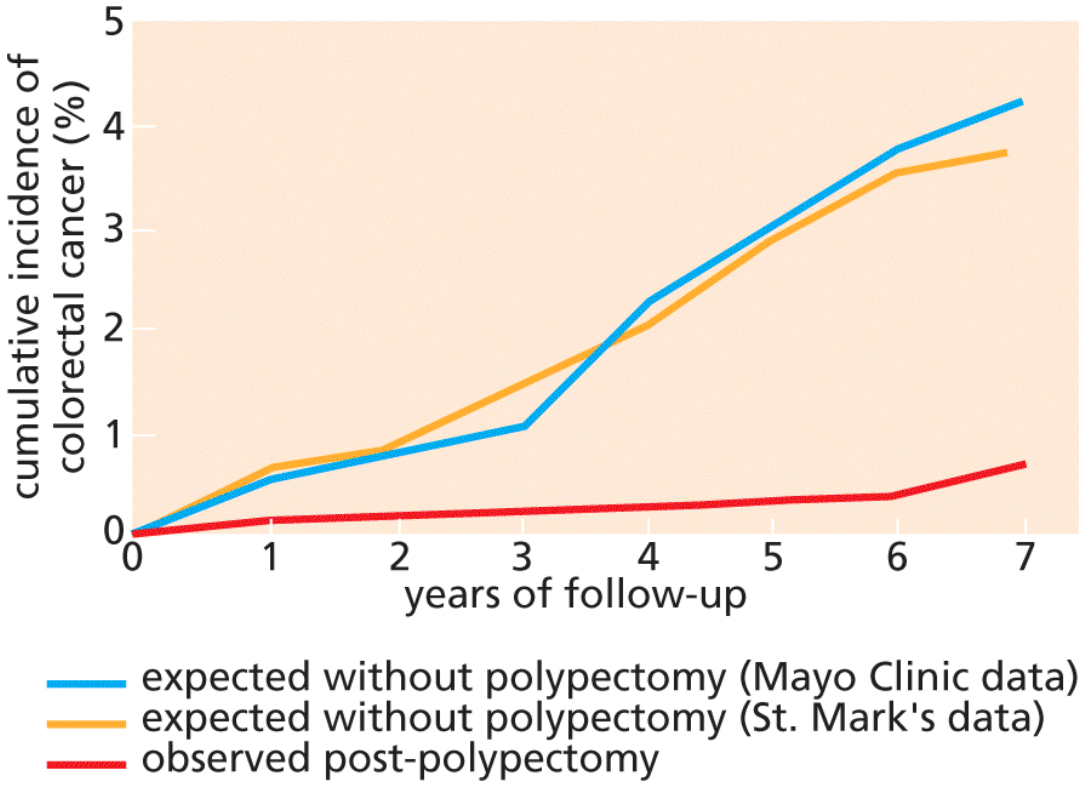
Figure 11.7 Multi-step tumorigenesis in a variety of organ sites (A) The pathogenesis of carcinomas is thought to be governed by very similar biological mechanisms operating in a variety of epithelial tissues. Accordingly, multi-step tumorigenesis involving similar histological entities has been proposed to progress along parallel paths in these various organ sites. These similarities are obscured because the nomenclature is quite variable from one tissue to another. CIS, carcinoma *in situ*; CIN, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia; DCIS, ductal carcinoma *in situ*; PIN, prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia. (B) Because more aggressive growths often overgrow their more benign precursors, it is rare to see the multiple states of tumor progression coexisting in close proximity, as is the case in this lung carcinoma. Importantly, although the close juxtaposition of the aberrant growths suggests some relationship among them, an image like this provides no definitive evidence of precursor–product relationships between these various abnormal tissues. (A, courtesy of W.K. Hong and adapted from J.A. O'Shaughnessy et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 8:314–316, 2002. With permission from the American Association for Cancer Research. B, courtesy of A. Gonzalez and P.P. Massion.)

In the case of colorectal tumors, at least three types of evidence strongly support the precursor–product relationship between adenomas and carcinomas. First, on rare occasions, one can actually observe a carcinoma growing directly out from an adenomatous polyp (**Figure 11.8A**). We can surmise that outgrowths like these occur routinely during the development of virtually all colon carcinomas and that, more often than not, the rapid expansion of the carcinoma soon overgrows and obliterates the adenoma from which it arose.



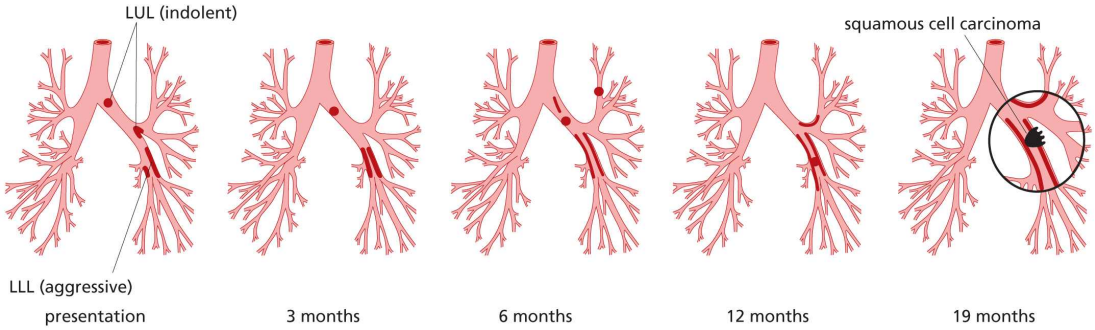
A histology image and beside it a diagram explaining what the image shows, namely a malignant tumor mass that is larger than the adenoma it is attached to, and is sending offshoots into nearby muscle tissue.

(A)



A graph with time on the horizontal axis and cumulative incidence of colorectal cancer on the vertical axis. Studies by the Mayo clinic and by Saint Mark's both suggest that with no polypectomy, the cumulative cancer incidence rises linearly from 0 at the time of the initial visit to about 4 percent 7 years later, and that with a polypectomy, the cumulative incidence remains remains very low for 6 years and remains below 1 percent even after a rise in year 7.

(B)



Five diagrams depicting lung cancer progression. The cancer begins as two indolent regions in the patient's left upper lobe and one aggressive lesion in the left lower lobe. Diagrams for 3, 6, 12 and 19 months show the indolent lesions disappearing and the aggressive lesion growing bigger and eventually sprouting a squamous cell carcinoma.

(C)

Figure 11.8 Evidence for adenoma-to-carcinoma progression The evidence for precursor–product relationships between premalignant growths (adenomas and *in situ* carcinomas) and frank carcinomas comes from at least three types of clinical observations. (A) On occasion, carcinomas are observed to be growing directly out of adenomas. As seen here, the demarcation between the two can sometimes be drawn with some precision. (B) A second line of evidence derives from clinical studies in which colonoscopy is used to screen large cohorts of patients. Any polyps that are discovered are removed by *polypectomy* (i.e., surgically). As seen in the graph, two independent studies (*yellow-orange, blue lines*) predict a certain expected number of carcinomas in such cohorts on the basis of historical experience. However, in patients who have undergone polypectomy, the number of colorectal cancers diagnosed in subsequent years has been reduced by more than 80% (*red line*). (A more conservative estimate of reduced risks gives the extent of reduction at 60%.) (C) As diagrammed here, three apparently significant premalignant carcinomas *in situ* were detected by *bronchoscopy* in the lungs of a patient upon initial clinical presentation. By 19 months, the lesion in the left lower

lobe (LLL; the left side of the lung is depicted here as might be seen from the front of the patient and is located from this perspective in the right side of the lung) had developed into a frank squamous cell carcinoma (*circle*), whereas the two indolent lesions in the left upper lobe (LUL) were no longer apparent. Interestingly, the three initially characterized lesions bore the same relatively rare *p53* mutation, indicating a common origin in spite of their physical separation; this mutation was also present in the subsequently arising carcinoma. (A, courtesy of Paul Edwards. B, courtesy of W.K. Hong, data from S. Winawer et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 329:1977–1981, 1993. C, from N.A. Foster et al., *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 44:65–75, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Second, clinical studies have been performed on large cohorts of patients who have undergone colonoscopy, which is performed routinely to survey the colon for occasional adenomatous polyps and to remove any that are detected (see also Figure 7.19). At present, it is estimated that those patients whose polyps are removed experience, in subsequent years, more than a 60% reduction in the incidence of colon carcinomas (Figure 11.8B). This finding indicates that in this patient population, conservatively, at least 60% of colon carcinomas derive from preexisting, readily detectable adenomas; because colonoscopy often misses polyps, especially those in the right side of the colon, the actual proportion may be higher. (These observations still do not prove that every single colon carcinoma arising in humans must arise from a preexisting adenoma.)

A third type of evidence supporting precursor–product relationships between premalignant and frankly malignant growths comes from longitudinal studies of individual patients over a period of time. This is occasionally possible in patients developing sporadic tumors in organs that are accessible to repeated surveillance, such as the skin, colon, and lungs (Figure 11.8C). Familial cancer syndromes also offer a demonstration of such progression in individual patients. Recall, for example, the disease of familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP; see Section 7.10), in which an individual inheriting a mutant form of the *APC* tumor suppressor gene is prone to develop anywhere from dozens to more than a thousand polyps in the intestine (see Figure 7.19). With a certain low but measurable frequency, one or another of these polyps will progress spontaneously into a carcinoma. (The multiplicity of polyps in these patients and the low conversion rate of individual polyps to carcinomas—estimated to be ~2.5 events per 1000 polyps per year—effectively preclude association of a carcinoma with a particular precursor polyp.). This evidence has been garnered through studies of the colon and its proclivity to generate the relatively common intestinal tumors. Indeed, these studies appear to indicate comparable processes operating in a variety of epithelial tissues throughout the body (**Sidebar 11.2**).

Sidebar 11.2 Parallel multi-step pathogenesis in multiple tissues

The development of carcinomas in other organ sites throughout the body is thought to resemble, at least in outline, the multi-step progression observed in the colon (see, for example, Figure 11.7A). Many of these other tissues, such as the breast, stomach, lungs, prostate, and pancreas, also exhibit growths that can be called hyperplastic, dysplastic, and adenomatous, and these growths would seem to be the benign precursors of the carcinomas that arise in these organs. However, the histopathological evidence supporting multi-step tumor progression in these tissues is, for the most part, less well developed than for the colon—a consequence of the accessibility of the colon through colonoscopy and the relative inaccessibility of these other tissues. (An exception to this rule is tumor formation in the pancreas, discussed below.) In the case of nonepithelial tissues, including components of the nervous system, the connective tissues, and the hematopoietic system, the histopathological evidence supporting multi-step tumor progression is even more fragmentary.

Importantly, and as we will discuss again later in this book, the early stages of progression in a tissue do not inevitably progress to later stages, and certain subtypes of early-stage tumors are unlikely to ever evolve into later, more aggressive stages. This has profound implications for clinical medicine and diagnostic screening, because many patients bearing early-stage tumors may be treated unnecessarily.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mucosa
: Epithelial cell layer that secretes a mucus-like substance that forms a protective layer above the secreting cells.

hyperplasia
: (adj., - **plastic**) (1) Accumulation of excessive numbers of normal-appearing cells within an otherwise normal-appearing tissue. (2) An increase in the size of a tissue or organ, usually due to increased cell number rather than increased size of constituent cells.

hyperplasia
: (adj., - **plastic**) (1) Accumulation of excessive numbers of normal-appearing cells within an otherwise normal-appearing tissue. (2) An increase in the size of a tissue or organ, usually due to increased cell number rather than increased size of constituent cells.

polyp
: A tumor, usually presumed to be premalignant, protruding into the lumen of an organ, such as gut or bladder, often equated with an adenoma. *See also* **adenoma, polyposis**.

adenoma
: (adj., - **omatous**) Any of a series of premalignant, noninvasive growths in various epithelial tissues, many of which have the potential to progress further to carcinomas. *See also* **polyp**.

benign
: (1) Describing a growth that is confined to a specific site within a tissue and gives no evidence of invading adjacent tissue. (2) Referring to an epithelial growth that has not penetrated through the basement membrane.

malignant
: Describing a growth that shows evidence of being locally invasive and possibly even metastatic.

colonoscopy
: Clinical procedure used to visually survey the wall of the colon via insertion of an optical tube through the rectum, employed used to detect previously undiagnosed polyps.

longitudinal

Referring to the repeated, successive monitoring of a single patient or a group of patients over an extended period of time.

dysplasia

(adj., - **plastic**) A premalignant tissue composed of abnormally appearing cells forming a tissue architecture that deviates from normal.

metastasis

(pl., - **es**; adj., **metastatic**; v. **metastasize**) A neoplastic growth forming at one site in the body, the cells of which derive from a malignancy located elsewhere in the body, such as the site of primary tumor formation. (2) The process leading to the formation of metastases. *See also* **primary tumor**.

OceanofPDF.com

11.3 Cells accumulate genetic and epigenetic alterations as tumor progression proceeds

The forces driving tumor progression in various tissues are hardly obvious from the histopathological descriptions cited above. The progressive changes in cell and tissue phenotypes observed as a tumor develops may arise entirely from changes in various gene expression programs. For example, some or possibly all of the steps in tumor progression might recapitulate specific changes in cell behavior that occur during normal embryogenesis. Because such cell-biological changes are known to depend on changes in gene expression programs rather than alterations in genomic sequences, they are considered to be epigenetic in origin. However, the logic of cancer pathogenesis dictates that somatic mutations, that is, genetic changes, must be involved in important ways as major rate-limiting determinants of the formation of most human tumors (**Sidebar 11.3**).

Sidebar 11.3 Our large size and long lives has forced the erection in our cells of barriers to cancer formation

Given the huge number of cell growth-and-division cycles in an average human lifetime ($\sim 10^{16}$) and the opportunity during each of these cycles for disaster, our own species and indeed all large, long-lived animal species have needed to evolve robust defense mechanisms in order compensate for the countless genetic and epigenetic accidents that inevitably occur in tissues during a normal life span. These randomly occurring changes inevitably lead to progressive degradation of the genomes and epigenomes of the cells in these tissues, the latter referring to the entire set of the epigenetic mechanisms that govern the lives of individual cells. Among the consequences of increasing disorder is, inevitably, the runaway proliferation of neoplastic cells.

As argued earlier, we might propose that each of the discrete steps of multi-step tumor pathogenesis represents the successful breaching of one or another functional barrier that has been installed in our cells and designed specifically to impede the forward march of cancer progression. In fact, ever-increasing numbers of such barriers seem to have been needed as our metazoan ancestors evolved from small, short-lived organisms to contemporary long-lived, large animals like ourselves.

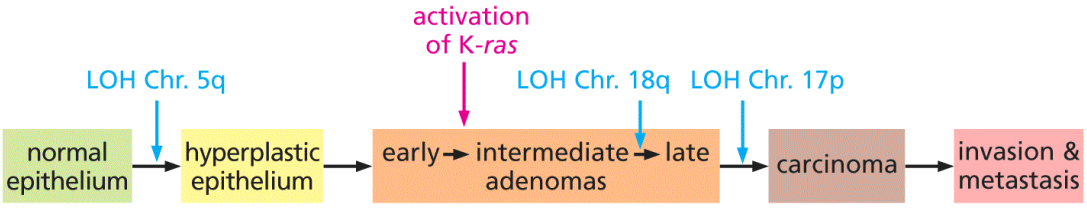
This logic dictates that the successful breaching of each functional barrier must have been rendered as improbable as possible, that is, such barriers, once erected, are as resistant to change as possible. In fact, the barriers that are most capable of resisting changes inflicted by random accidents are present in the nucleotide sequences of the genomes of our cells. Thus, the somatic mutations that corrupt cellular genomes occur with extraordinarily low probability per cell generation. This very low rate of accumulated mutations ($\sim 10^{-9}$ per base pair per cell cycle) testifies to the high fidelity of DNA replication and to the efficiency of the DNA repair apparatus that subsequently erases any mistakes that are made during initial replication (both of which we will encounter in Chapter 12).

Stated differently, the strategy of entrusting anti-neoplastic defense mechanisms to highly stable DNA sequences would seem to reduce the likelihood of frequent, spontaneous breakdowns of these defenses and resulting neoplastic cell transformation. This explains why mutations seem to be required to liberate incipient cancer cells from the constraints imposed by these genome-based defense mechanisms. (In contrast, the breaching of anti-neoplastic barriers established by various *epigenetic* defense mechanisms would seem to occur far more often per cell cycle, given the phenotypic plasticity that many cells exhibit, as discussed below.) Taken together, this logic helps to explain why successful tumorigenesis in various adult human tissues generally requires, at a minimum, a significant number of somatic mutations and resulting mutant alleles (perhaps four to six), and why epigenetic changes, on their own, rarely succeed in creating robustly growing adult tumors.

This parallel between the histopathological progression of neoplastic tissues and genetic evolution was initially documented for human colorectal carcinomas (CRCs). Thus, in 1989 researchers at Johns Hopkins Medical School in Baltimore, Maryland recognized the existing evidence that mutant alleles of genes such as *ras* and *p53* can contribute to cell transformation under experimental conditions *in vitro*. They therefore sought to determine whether they could find *in vivo* correlates of this genetically driven transformation by examining the genomes of sizable groups of small colonic adenomas, mid-sized adenomas, large adenomas, and frank colorectal carcinomas. It was plausible that as colonic tissues advanced progressively from normalcy to high-grade malignancy, the epithelial cells in these various tissues would accumulate increasing numbers of somatic mutations in various cancer-causing genes.

This is just what these scientists discovered (**Figure 11.9**). The genes that they examined included the K-*ras* oncogene and a number of tumor suppressor genes (TSGs). In fact, the identities of the TSGs that participate in colon cancer pathogenesis were not known when they began their work, so they searched instead for chromosomal regions that suffered loss of heterozygosity (LOH) during tumor progression. Recall that a high rate of LOH in a particular chromosomal region

provides strong indication that this region harbors a TSG, and that developing cancer cells exploit the LOH mechanism as a means of shedding the still-functional (that is, actively expressed) wild-type alleles of such a TSG (see Section 7.4).



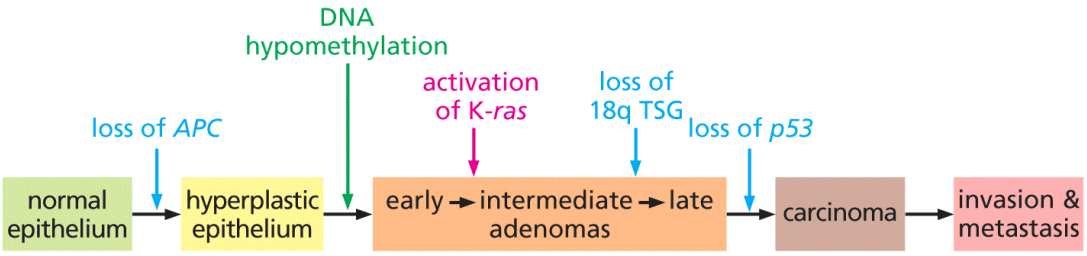
Events during colon tumor progression. Loss of heterozygosity in chromosome 5 q occurs during the transition from normal epithelium to hyperplastic epithelium. Activation of K-ras occurs during the transition from early adenoma to intermediate adenoma. Loss of heterozygosity in chromosome 18 q occurs during the transition from intermediate adenoma to late adenoma. Loss of heterozygosity in chromosome 17 p occurs during the transition from late adenoma to carcinoma. Invasion and metastasis follow.

Figure 11.9 Colon tumor progression and loss of heterozygosity in various chromosomal arms DNA from tissue samples representing various stages of colon cancer progression was analyzed for loss of heterozygosity (LOH) by examining the behavior of chromosomal markers present on the long and short arms of most chromosomes, as described in Figure 7.11B. In general, each chromosomal arm was represented by one or more genetic loci that existed in heterozygous form in the normal tissue of a patient. As tumor progression proceeded, the involved colonic epithelial cells exhibited increasing numbers of chromosomal arms that had lost heterozygosity. Certain chromosomal regions (*blue lettering*) suffered especially high rates of LOH, suggesting that they carried tumor suppressor genes that were being inactivated, in part, through the LOH mechanism. Analyses of K-*ras* oncogene activation (*pink lettering*) indicated additional changes in the genomes of evolving premalignant cells. (Adapted from B. Vogelstein et al., *Science* 244:207–211, 1989.)

This research demonstrated that early-stage adenomas often showed loss of heterozygosity in the long arm of Chromosome 5 (that is, 5q). Almost half of slightly larger adenomas carried, in addition, a mutant K-*ras* oncogene. Even larger adenomas also tended to have high rates of LOH on the long arm of Chromosome 18 (that is, 18q); about half of all carcinomas showed, in addition, an LOH on the short arm of Chromosome 17 (that is, 17p); (see also Figure 7.11B and Table 7.1).

These observations provided strong support for the idea that as epithelial cells acquire increasingly neoplastic phenotypes during the course of tumor progression, their genomes show a corresponding increase in the number of altered genetic loci. Equally important, these changes involve both the activation of a proto-oncogene into an oncogene (for example, K-*ras*) and the apparent inactivation of at least three distinct TSGs. This was the first suggestion of a phenomenon that is now recognized to be quite common: the number of inactivated TSGs present in a human cancer cell genome often greatly exceeds the number of activated oncogenes within this genome.

The identities of the genetic loci on Chromosomes 5 and 17 were revealed soon after this genetic progression was laid out (**Figure 11.10**). The Chromosome 5q21 gene that is often the target of LOH was found to be the *APC* (adenomatous polyposis coli) tumor suppressor gene (see Section 7.11), and the Chromosome 17p13 gene was identified as the *p53* tumor suppressor gene (see Chapter 9). The identity of the gene or genes on Chromosome 18q that are inactivated during colon carcinoma pathogenesis remains unclear to this day. Of additional importance, tumors that carry a mutant *ras* allele rarely acquire in addition a mutant *PI3K* allele. This suggests that an evolving premalignant cell will acquire an advantageous set of phenotypes from one of these mutations (for example, *ras*) and that descendants of this cell acquire no additional benefit from mutating a second gene conferring a redundant cell-biological function. This sequence of changes, as laid out in Figure 11.10, raises the question of whether these mutations are acquired in a specific or at least preferred sequence during the course of tumor pathogenesis (**Sidebar 11.4**). A more detailed accounting of these genetic changes and those occurring during pancreatic carcinoma development is given in **Supplementary Sidebar 11.3**.



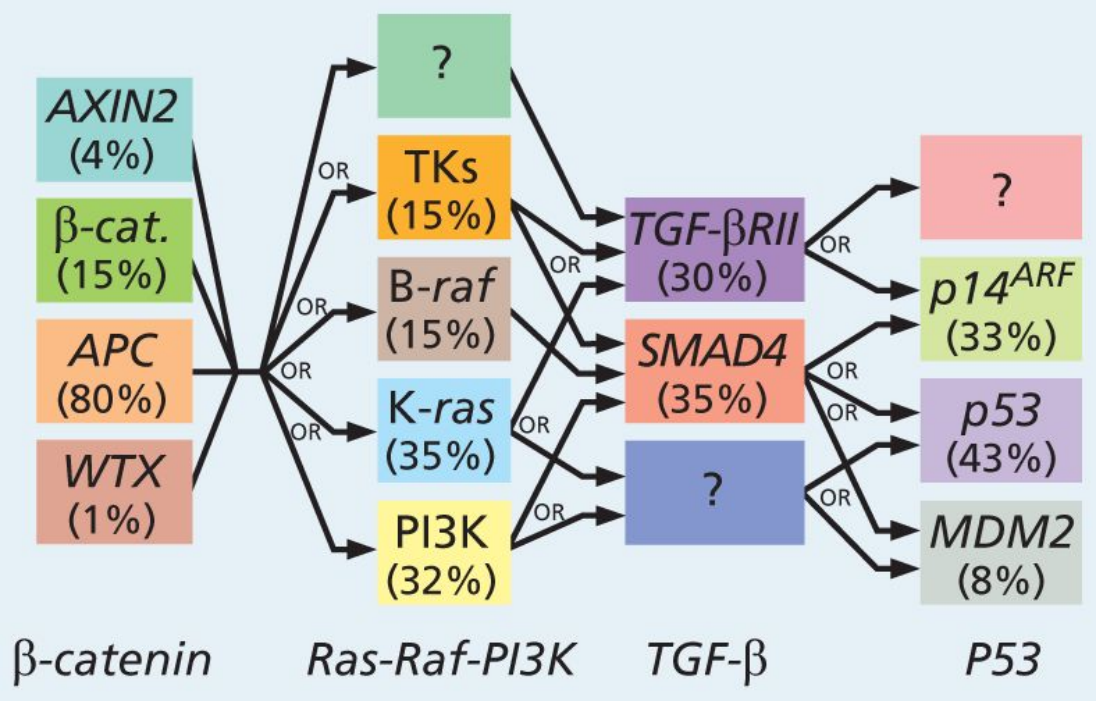
More events during colon tumor progression. Loss of A P C occurs during the transition from normal epithelium to hyperplastic epithelium. D N A hypomethylation occurs during the transition from hyperplastic epithelium to early adenoma. Activation of K-ras occurs during the transition from early adenoma to intermediate adenoma. Loss of the 18 q tumor suppressor gene occurs during the transition from intermediate adenoma to late adenoma. Loss of p53 occurs during the transition from late adenoma to carcinoma. Invasion and metastasis follow.

Figure 11.10 Tumor suppressor genes and colon carcinoma progression Each of the inactivated TSG(s) on Chromosome 18q remains unclear. About half of colon carcinomas also had mutant, activated alleles of the K-*ras* gene (*pink lettering*), and the genomes of most evolving, pre-neoplastic growths were found to suffer widespread hypomethylation (loss of methylated CpGs; *green lettering*). The precise contribution of DNA hypomethylation to tumor progression remains unclear; some evidence suggests that it creates chromosomal instability.

Sidebar 11.4 Is there a fixed order of somatic mutations during multi-step tumor progression?

The most obvious way to rationalize the steps in colon cancer development involves an ordered succession of genetic changes that strike the genomes of colonic epithelial cells as they evolve progressively toward malignancy, as illustrated in Figure 11.10. Indeed, the order of acquisition of mutant alleles affects in a major way the efficiency and speed with which tumors are formed. It turns out the most efficient route to primary carcinoma formation involves mutations of the *APC* gene, then in K-*ras*, then *Smad4*, and finally *p53*.

To be more precise, mutation of each of the genes indicates the deregulation of a specific signaling pathway. Hence, the order of disrupting these *pathways* is the ultimate determinant of the rapidity of tumor progression, and the nature of each pathway (rather than the specific identity of a specifically mutated gene) is the critical determinant of ultimate biological effects (**Figure 11.11**). Thus, mutations in the gene encoding β-catenin can substitute for mutant *Apc* alleles, whereas mutations of the *B-Raf* or the gene specifying PI3 kinase can replace a mutant *Ras* allele. Moreover, promoter methylation and shut down of the gene specifying the Type I TGF-β receptor can replace *Smad 4* mutant alleles, and so forth. This theme of preferred order is echoed in other tumor types as well.



A diagram showing many alternative paths during cancer progression. The diagram lists four pathways, left to right, and for each pathway lists several genes whose mutation would advance the progression. For the beta catenin pathway, the possible gene mutations and their frequencies are AXIN 2, 4 percent; beta catenin, 15 percent; A P C, 80 percent; and W T X, 1 percent. For the R a s R a f P I 3 K pathway, the possible gene mutations and their frequencies are T K s, 15 percent; B r a f, 15 percent; K r a s, 35 percent; P I 3 K, 32 percent; and an unknown fifth gene. Any of these may follow the beta catenin mutation. For the T G F beta pathway, the possible gene mutations and their frequencies are T G F beta R I I, 30 percent; S M A D 4, 35 percent; and an unknown third gene. Each of these may follow two or three of the R a s R a f P I 3 K mutations. Finally, for the P53 pathway, the possible gene mutations and their frequencies are p14 A R F, 33 percent; p53, 43 percent; M D M 2, 8 percent; and an unknown fourth gene. Each of known genes may follow two of the T G F beta mutations.

Figure 11.11 Alternative paths during cancer progression The genetic alterations shown in Figure 11.10 do not accurately represent an invariant program of genetic alterations acquired by pre-neoplastic cells during the progression of all colorectal carcinomas. In actual human tumors, both the *combination* of mutated genes and the *temporal order* in which the responsible mutations are acquired vary greatly. (Only the combinations of mutant genes are depicted in this figure.) Loss of APC function (or functionally equivalent alterations, *left column*) represents a starting point that is common to almost all human colon carcinomas, ostensibly because the resulting mutant cells are trapped in the colonic crypts rather than

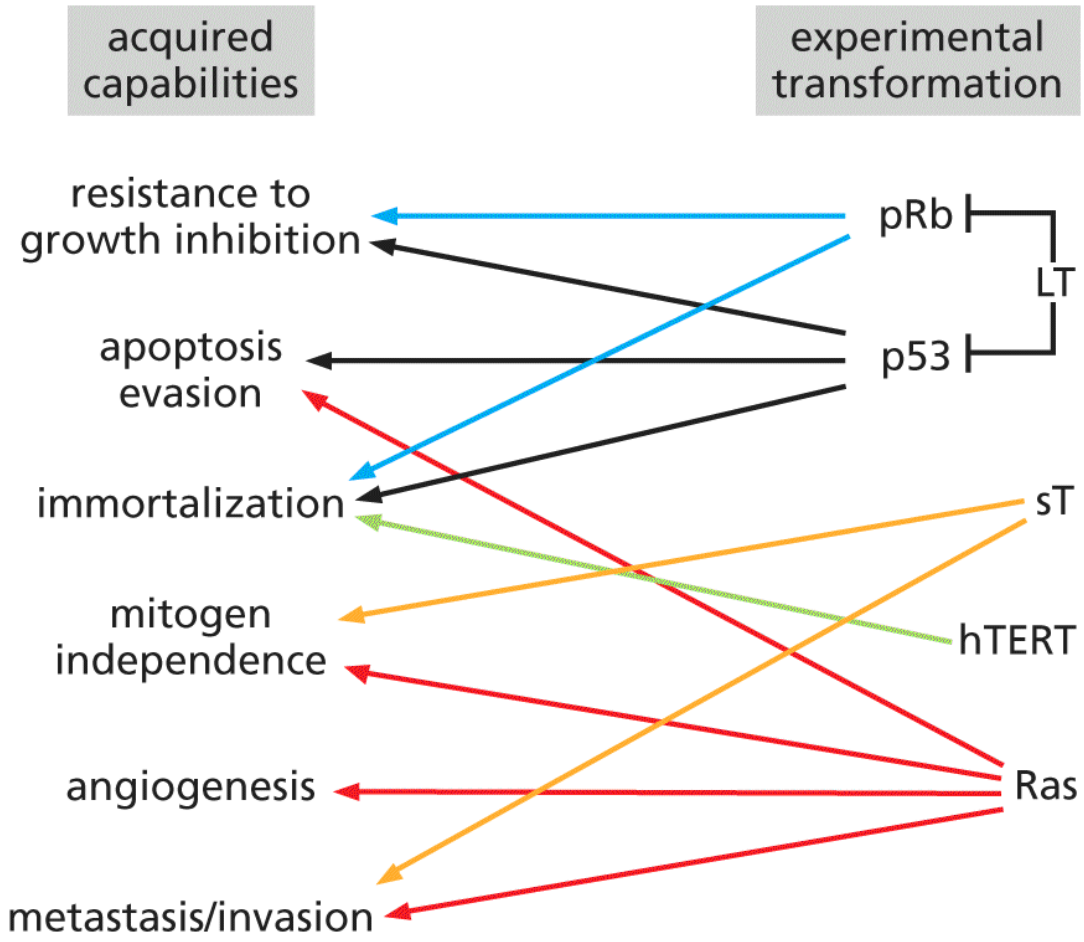
migrating up and out; all of these changes seem to potentiate β-catenin function and to generate the clusters of aberrant crypts (see Figures 7.20 and 11.24B) encountered in colonoscopy. However, the identities of the genes altered in subsequent steps are variable, as is the precise order of these changes. (For the sake of clarity, the gene names given here reflect the names of their respective protein products.) Alterations in the Ras–Raf–PI3K pathway is shown as the second step, as these changes are often found in adenomas prior to the formation of frank carcinomas. These changes have been grouped functionally (so that the *second column* shows the Ras pathway; the *third column*, the TGF-β pathway; and the *fourth column*, the p53 pathway). Mutations in the *p53* gene are usually seen in carcinomas but not adenomas, indicating that its loss represents a relatively late step. Importantly, the precise number of genetic steps and epigenetic steps (notably promoter methylation) occurring during human colon cancer pathogenesis is not known. Moreover, there is only indirect evidence that all four of these pathways must be altered in order for a human colorectal carcinoma to form. The percentages indicate the proportion of colorectal carcinomas that exhibit a change in the gene in question, including activating mutations in proto-oncogenes and inactivating changes in tumor suppressor genes. (Courtesy of Y. Niitsu.)

As an example, in mice bearing germ-line mutant alleles of the *p53* gene, mutations of *PTEN* are the favored initial somatic mutations during the pathogenesis of thymic lymphomas, followed later by amplification of the cyclin D1-encoding gene and then mutations in the *Ikaros* gene, which encodes a zinc finger transcription factor. The well-documented order of these acquired somatic mutations suggests that, in the case of each developing tumor, an earlier mutation sets the stage for the actions of the subsequently acquired mutant alleles. Further support for the essentiality of specific chronological orders of events comes from individuals who inherit mutant germ-line alleles of the *p53* gene and suffer from Li–Fraumeni syndrome (see Section 9.3). Although mutant *p53* alleles frequently occur as one of the later steps of colorectal carcinoma pathogenesis, these individuals rarely develop colorectal tumors and instead develop them elsewhere throughout the body, revealing the unique role of germ-line mutant *Apc* alleles in initiating multi-step colon cancer pathogenesis.

As discussed in the previous chapters and in this one, incipient cancer cells must undergo a set of fundamental cell-biological changes in order to progress to the state of cells found in high-grade malignancies. These changes in cell-biological behavior, that is, cancer cell phenotypes, have been enumerated and proposed to be shared in common by a wide range of malignant cells and are termed "Hallmarks of Cancer." As initially proposed, they include, minimally, the acquired traits of (1) autonomously driven proliferation, (2) resistance to the anti-proliferative effects of certain signals

received from the tissue microenvironment, (3) an elevated resistance to several forms of cell death, (4) an ability to induce the in-growth of new blood vessels (neo-angiogenesis), (5) an ability to proliferate indefinitely, that is, cell immortalization, (6) an ability in the case of solid tumors to disseminate and seed new tumor colonies, that is, the process of metastasis. Two more traits have subsequently been added to this list of traits shared by diverse types of cancer cells: (7) an ability to resist and evade elimination by the immune system and (8) a deregulation of cellular energy metabolism.

Having agreed, at least tentatively, upon a set of these widely exhibited cancer-associated cellular traits, we confront the observations that each of these traits can be acquired through multiple alternative genetic or biochemical solutions. As an example, signals that drive proliferation can be acquired by structural alteration of growth factor receptors, their overexpression, the acquired ability to produce and constitutively secrete the cognate ligand of a receptor (leading to autocrine signaling), or the structural alteration of signal-transducing proteins lying downstream of the receptors as components of the complex mitogenic signaling pathway. In addition, there is no one-to-one correspondence between the actions of most somatically mutated genes and acquisition of critical cell-biological phenotypes such as the Hallmarks of Cancer cited above (**Figure 11.12**).



A diagram listing acquired cell capabilities on the left and the corresponding experimental transformations on the right. Immortalization and resistance to growth inhibition can be elicited by using L T to inhibit p R b or p53. Using L T to inhibit p53 also elicits apotosis evasion. Immortalization can also be elicited by transforming h TERT. Transforming s T elicits mitogen independence and metastasis slash invasion. Transforming R a s elicits apotosis evasion, mitogen independence, angiogenesis, and metastasis slash invasion.

Figure 11.12 Cancer cell genotypes vs. phenotypes During the course of tumor progression, human cells acquire a number of distinct cancer-associated phenotypes, such as the Hallmarks of Cancer cited here. Independent of this, genetic analyses of human tumors and laboratory experiments reveal that a number of distinct genes must be acquired by or introduced into human cells in order to transform them to a tumorigenic state. How then, does each of these introduced genes contribute to the cell phenotypes associated with tumorigenicity? As indicated here, genes such as that encoding hTERT, the catalytic subunit of telomerase, affect only the phenotype of immortalization, whereas other genes, such as the one encoding SV40 large T (LT), used experimentally to neutralize

both p53 and pRb, disrupt two distinct cellular signaling pathways and affect multiple phenotypes. For example, by inactivating p53, LT elicits at least three changes in cell phenotype—resistance to growth inhibition, evasion of apoptosis, and immortalization; by neutralizing pRb, LT also affects two of these phenotypes. The most widely acting protein is likely to be Ras, which affects susceptibility to apoptosis, dependence on exogenous mitogens, angiogenesis, and invasiveness and metastatic ability. Hence, a one-to-one mapping between genes and cancer-associated phenotypes is not possible. (Because hTERT has been found to be physically associated with the β-catenin–TCF/LEF transcription factor complex, its actions may extend beyond cell immortalization.)

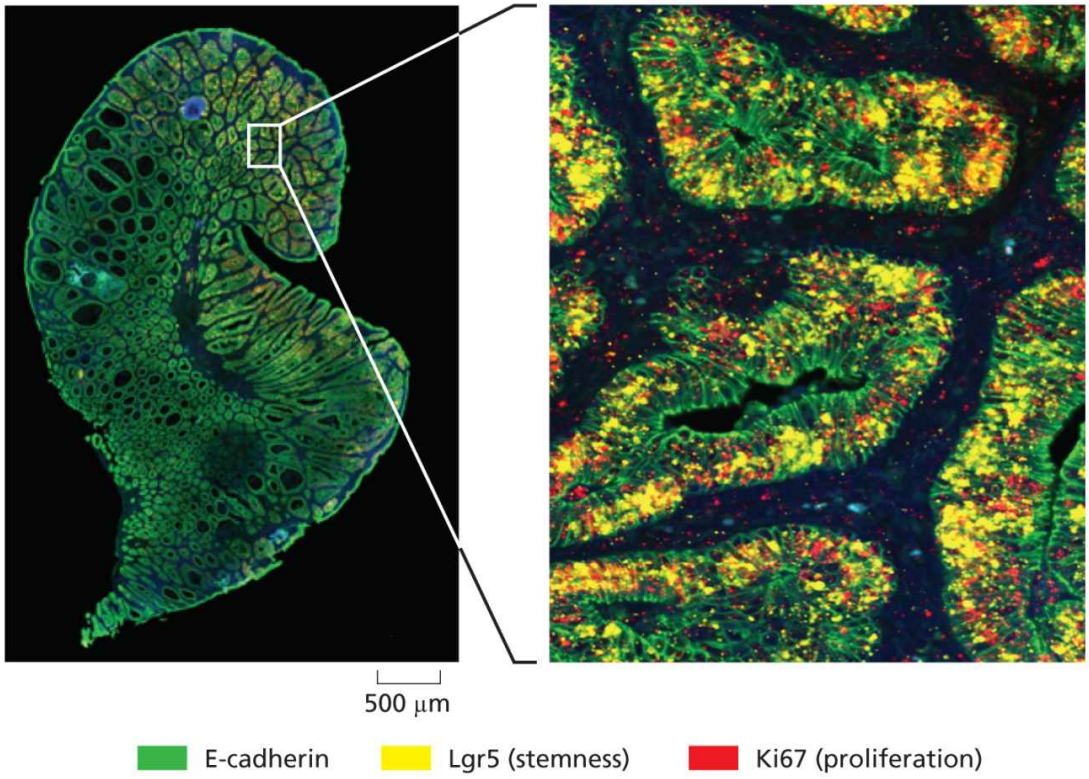
Finally, we should note that these various genetic and epigenetic changes do not represent an upper limit to the number of alterations that contribute in essential ways to colon cancer progression. For example, the type of genetic analysis used to identify this particular series of four chromosomal regions registered only those loss-of-heterozygosity (LOH) events in tumor suppressor genes that occurred at a significant frequency above the general background rate of LOH associated with all chromosomal arms in advanced tumor cells (see Figure 7.11B). Accordingly, LOH events that occur with a relatively low frequency (that is, those present in 20% or fewer of the tumors analyzed) would not be registered in such an analysis, even though these events might lead to the elimination from the genome of an incipient cancer cell of functionally important tumor suppressor genes. Similarly, changes in gene copy number, such as amplification of mutant oncogenes, were also not registered in this early work.

Epigenetic events, including the repression of certain genes through promoter methylation (see Section 7.7) and the de-repression of others through demethylation, may also contribute importantly to tumor progression. Recently, evidence has accumulated that hypomethylation (that is, demethylation of normally CpG methylated DNA sequences), such as that observed in early adenomas (see Figure 11.10), has a functional consequence that is independent of its possible effects on gene transcription: widespread chromosomal instability, which presumably favors tumor progression. How precisely it does so is unclear; a de-repression of usually-silent transposable elements in the cell genome may contribute to this genomic destabilization.

The publication of this “genetic biography” of colon cancer tumorigenesis, as depicted in Figure 11.10 (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 11.3**), should ideally have been followed by similar descriptions of a wide variety of other tumor types, with each of such biographies involving alterations of its own particular set of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes as accompaniments of specific histopathological states. Unfortunately, only a handful of such descriptions have actually been reported in detail. At present, therefore, we cannot cite lists of genetic alterations in tumor cell

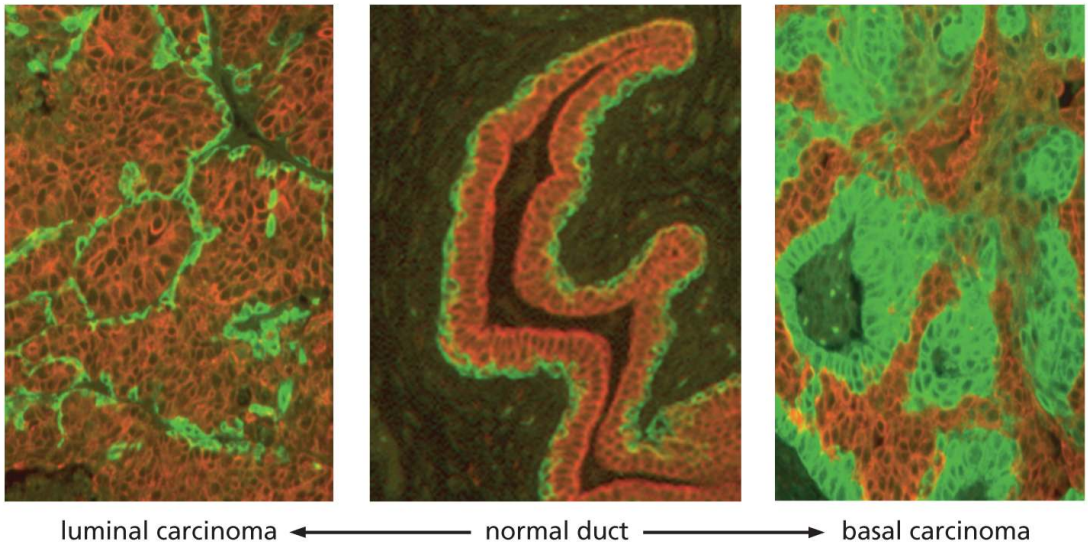
genomes to illustrate the molecular underpinnings of the multi-step nature of cancer progression in most organs. However, with the availability of large-scale, whole-genome sequencing technologies, these biographies will surely be described in the near-term future.

The accumulations of multiple genetic and epigenetic changes during tumor formation might suggest that the final cellular end-products of tumorigenesis bear little resemblance to their most recent, fully normal ancestors—the normal cells-of-origin. In fact, it seems increasingly likely that many of the differentiation programs of normal cells-of-origin persist in their neoplastic descendants years if not decades later (**Figure 11.13**). One indication of this at the molecular level is the extensive retention of sequence-specific CpG methylation sites present in the genomes of the normal cells-of-origin within the genomes of derived neoplastic cells; these methylated CpG play critical roles in the cell-heritable transmission of differentiation programs. Accordingly, even though certain oncogenic changes in tumor cell genomes (for example, loss of pRB function and gain of Myc function; see Section 8.9) tend to cause loss of differentiated characteristics, this loss is incomplete; that is, these genetic changes fail to eradicate all traces of the differentiation program that preexists in the normal tissue. Indeed, the retention of differentiated traits—distinctive morphologies and protein markers—in most (~95%) tumors allows pathologists to classify these growths into different subgroups with reasonable accuracy.



A carcinoma on the left, roughly 4 millimeters long, and on the right a small portion greatly magnified. The magnified portion contains a mixture of red and yellow across mostly geen cells

(A)



Three images, with a normal duct in the middle, having a narrow band of red and an even thinner border of green along it. On the left is a luminal carcinoma, appearing as a mass of red cells with veins of green running through it. On the right is a basal carcinoma, appearing as a mass of green and red cells, with green predominating.

(B)

Figure 11.13 Retention of differentiated characteristic in human tumors (A) The tumors arising in a transgenic mouse model of colorectal carcinoma pathogenesis (*left*) would seem to have little if any resemblance to the histology of the normal colon. At higher magnification (*right*), the cells are seen to form ductal structures with clear evidence of their epithelial origin (evidenced by E-cadherin expression, significant levels of cell proliferation, and stemness). (B) The ducts in the normal mammary gland (*middle*) are composed of two major types of epithelial cells: luminal cells that form the lining of ducts (*red-orange*) and underlying basal cells (*green*) that provide various types of physiological support to the luminal cells. These cell types can be distinguished by immunofluorescence staining using antibodies that are specific for the cytokeratin molecules that these cells express: cytokeratins 8 and 18 are expressed characteristically in luminal cells, whereas cytokeratin 5 is expressed in basal cells. These markers can be used to classify breast carcinomas into two major histological classes—luminal (*left*)

and basal (*right*)—and the resulting classifications hold strong implication for the prognosis of breast cancer patients. However, some evidence indicates that these classifications may not properly reveal the identities of the respective normal cells of origin, and suggests, for example, that certain basal breast carcinomas may actually originate from luminal progenitors. (A, L. Caplan and J. Roper, courtesy of The Broad Institute, Inc. B, from J.I. Herschkowitz et al., *Genome Biol.* 8:R76, 2007. With permission from Springer Nature.)

These findings, on their own, raise another issue that complicates our understanding of cancer biology and remains poorly resolved: Precisely how do the differentiation programs of normal cells-of-origin interact with and influence the phenotypes of derived cancer cells bearing various sets of somatically mutated cancer-forming genes?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

epigenetic
: (1) Referring to a process that affects phenotype without the involvement of heritable changes in the nucleotide sequence of the genome. (2) Referring to a mechanism enabling the transmission of a heritable trait from a cell or organism to its progeny that does not depend directly on changes of specific nucleotide sequences in its genome. (3) Referring to a mechanism that creates a cell-heritable trait, as in (2), and maintains expression of this trait in the absence of ongoing exposure to the stimulus that initially induced the expression of this trait. *See also* **epigenetics**, **genetic**.

epigenome
: The entire ensemble of modifications of a genome that do not affect its nucleotide sequences, such as methylation of CpG dinucleotides in the DNA and modifications of chromatin-associated proteins, notably histones. The epigenome is presumed to dictate the transcriptome of a cell, that is, the pattern of expression of a cell's repertoire of genes. *See also* **transcriptome**.

zinc finger
: A protein structural domain that binds and is stabilized by one or more zinc ions. Zinc fingers are employed by certain transcription factors to recognize and bind specific oligonucleotide sequences in DNA.

Hallmarks of Cancer
: A set of cell-biological traits that are shared in common by the neoplastic cells forming a wide range of distinct types of tumors, are required for expression of the neoplastic cell phenotype, and distinguish such cells from the traits of corresponding normal cells.

cell-of-origin
: The fully normal cell that serves as the ancestor of all the neoplastic cells within a tumor, i.e., their last common normal ancestor.

OceanofPDF.com

11.4 Cancer development seems to follow the rules of Darwinian evolution

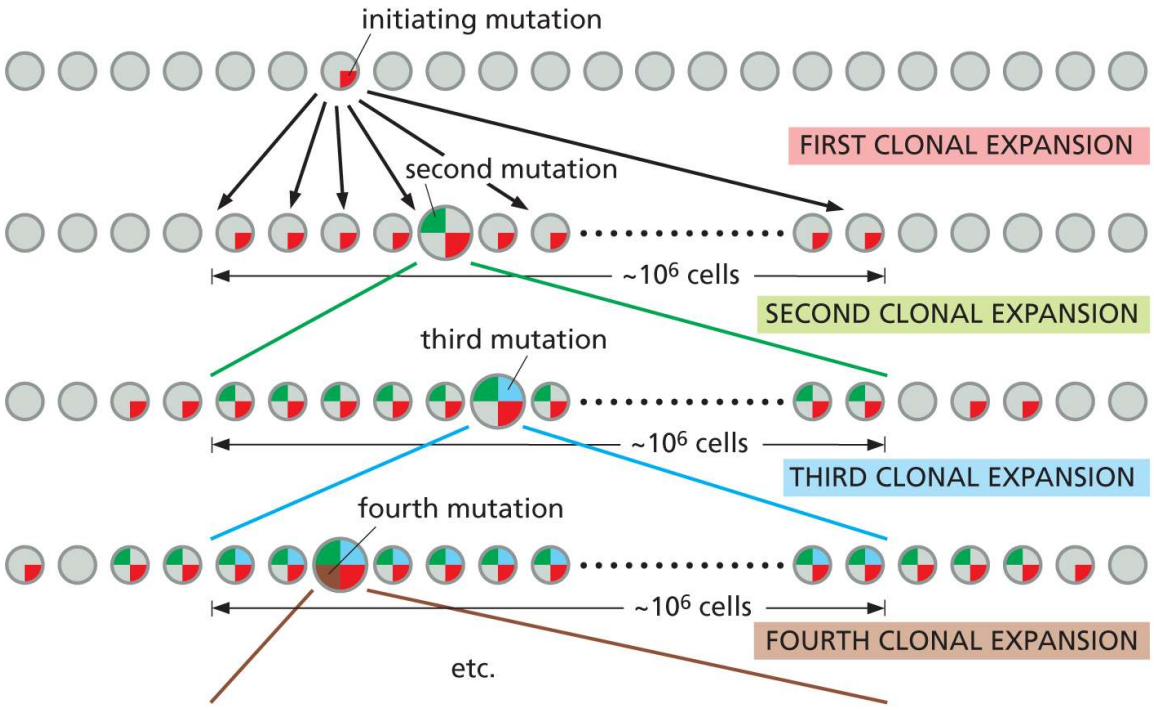
The observations about colorectal cancer made at Johns Hopkins University demonstrated that the histopathological changes occurring during tumor progression (see Figure 11.10) were *correlated* with genetic changes in cells of the colonic mucosa. More important, however, it became plausible that these genetic changes were actually *causing* the phenotypic progression of these cells and the tissues they form.

Years earlier, in the mid-1970s, researchers had speculated that tumor development could be understood in terms of a biological process that resembles Darwinian evolution. The results of the genetic analyses of human colorectal cancer progression could be mustered to provide further support for this model. (Although Darwin himself knew virtually nothing about genes and genetics, the "modern synthesis" of Darwinian theory introduces Mendelian and population genetics into the evolutionary processes that Darwin first postulated.)

In the case of cancer development, the evolving units are individual cells competing with one another in a population of cells, rather than individual organisms competing with one another within a species. Like the modern depiction of Darwinian evolution, random mutations are presumed to create genetic and thus phenotypic variability in a cell population. Once a genetically heterogeneous cell population has been generated through stochastic genetic and epigenetic events, the forces of selection may then favor the outgrowth of individual cells (and their lineal descendants) that happen to be endowed with mutant alleles and cell-heritable epigenetic alterations conferring advantageous traits, notably traits that favor proliferation and survival in the microenvironment of a living tissue. In the language of evolutionary biologists, such favored cells are said to exhibit increased fitness.

Combining Darwinian theory with the assumptions of multi-step tumor progression, researchers could now depict tumorigenesis as a succession of clonal expansions, (where the term "clonal" indicates a cell population all of whose members descend from a single, common ancestor) (**Figure 11.14**). The scheme

goes like this: a random mutation creates a cell having particularly advantageous proliferative or survival traits. This cell and its descendants then proliferate more effectively than their neighbors, eventually yielding a large clonal population of descendants that dominates the tissue and crowds out phenotypically less favored neighbors. Sooner or later, this particular cell clone will reach a large enough size (for example, 10^6 cells) that yet another advantageous mutation, which strikes randomly with a probability of about one per 10^6 cell generations, becomes mathematically possible, striking one or another cell within this now-expanded clonal population.



A sequence of clonal expansions. In the first clonal expansion, an initiating mutation in one of many cells is replicated into perhaps 1 million offspring cells. In the second clonal expansion, one of these offspring cells undergods a second mutation that is than passed on to a new set of 1 million offspring cells. This process is repeated in a third and a fourth clonal expansion, and so on.

Figure 11.14 Darwinian evolution and clonal successions Darwinian evolution involves the increase in number of organisms that are endowed with advantageous genotypes and thus phenotypes; a formally similar scheme seems to describe how tumor progression occurs. One cell amid a large cell population sustains an initiating mutation (*red sector, top*) that confers on it a

proliferative and/or survival advantage over the other cells. Eventually, the clonal descendants of this mutant cell dominate in a localized area by displacing the cells that lack this mutation, resulting in the first clonal expansion. When this clone expands to a large enough size (e.g., 10^6 cells), a second mutation—one that strikes with a frequency of $\sim 10^{-6}$ per cell generation—may occur (*green sector*), resulting in a doubly mutated cell that has even greater proliferative and/or survival advantage. The process of clonal expansion then repeats itself, and the newly mutated population displaces ("succeeds") the previously formed one, yielding a process that is termed *clonal succession*. This results once again in a large descendant population, in which a third mutation (*blue sector*) occurs, and so forth. Although classical Darwinian evolution is thought to depend on mutations in the genomes of organisms, it is highly likely that other heritable changes in cell populations, notably promoter methylation events (see Section 7.7), can play an equally prominent role in multi-step tumor progression. Importantly, this scheme does not take into account that clonal successions may require greatly different time intervals to reach completion. For example, later successions are likely to proceed far more rapidly than earlier ones because the participating cells, having acquired oncogenic mutations, may proliferate more rapidly and have more mutable genomes.

Importantly, this new, secondary mutation alters a gene and encoded protein so that it is functionally *complementary* to the actions of the earlier mutation in the ways that it affects tumor cell proliferation and survival. For example, in the case of colorectal cancer (CRC), if the first mutated gene is *APC,* the subsequently mutated allele, such as K-*ras,* will *collaborate* with one or more mutant *APC* alleles to favor cell outgrowth and survival rather than *duplicating* the actions of the existing mutant *APC* allele (see Figure 11.10). (In the discussion here, advantageous cell-heritable epigenetic alterations are, for the sake of this argument, included under the rubric of genetic mutations.)

Implicit in this scheme is a simple conclusion: in order to operate in a way that is functionally complementary to the actions of previously acquired mutant alleles, a newly acquired mutant allele must provide additional proliferative and/or survival advantage. Conversely, a newly generated allele that is functionally redundant with existing mutant alleles is unlikely to confer such additional advantage, and its retention in the descendants of this cells will accordingly not be favored by the forces of selection.

To be sure, a strict Darwinian model of cancer progression, which involves a series of clonal successions, is simplistic. For example, it must be amended to respond to the discoveries that cell-heritable epigenetic alterations of genes, such as promoter methylation and demethylation events (see Section 7.7 and Figure 11.10), play an important role in eliminating the activities of some genes (notably tumor suppressor genes as well as genes involved in the maintenance of the cell genome) and activating others. Here, we encounter a major discordance between tumor progression and Darwinian evolution because heritable epigenetic alterations, such as DNA methylation events, have not been shown to drive the evolution of species.

This scheme is simplistic in other respects as well. Thus, the number of distinct steps in tumor progression, each represented by a clonal expansion, may be underrepresented by counting the number of genetic loci that are altered during this process. As discussed in Chapter 7, the inactivation of a TSG is, almost always, a two-step process. First, one gene copy is mutated (or methylated) to inactivity. Thereafter, the surviving, still-intact gene copy is eliminated, usually through loss of heterozygosity (LOH). Knowing this and the fact that elimination of TSGs often represents the majority of the genomic changes occurring during tumor progression, we conclude that the number of distinct genetic alterations taking place during tumor progression may be almost twice as many as the number of loci that are involved.

In addition, the number of successive clonal expansions is difficult to quantify by studying the *dynamics* of multi-step tumor formation. Thus, certain genetic and epigenetic accidents may occur only infrequently, thereby creating rate-limiting events that slow down the progress of the entire process, whereas other events may happen very quickly, triggering clonal expansions that do not register as rate-limiting events when calculating the multiplicity of events as discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 11.1**. Of equal importance, we know rather little about the time intervals between successive clonal expansions. The time elapsed between these expansions is actually critical to human health, as long intervals may effectively preclude the appearance of a tumor within a human life span, whereas short intervals may dictate the appearance of a tumor that requires attention in the oncology clinic, possibly even in mid-life.

Because an infrequently occurring genetic or epigenetic alteration (or a pair of alterations, in the case of TSGs) triggers each of these clonal expansions, the expansions are likely to be spaced far apart in time. During the development of sporadic colorectal cancers, a decade or more may separate one critical genetic

alteration from the next, and in many individuals, the process as a whole may stretch over a century. (For example, one of the key steps—the evolution from polyp to invasive cancer—has been estimated to take as long as 17 years, depending on the degree of dysplasia present in the precursor polyp.) Still, it is clear that some people develop sporadic colon carcinomas in far less time, and so this schedule must be compressed in the colons of these individuals. Moreover, there is no reason to think that each clonal expansion requires an interval of time that is comparable to the time required for other such expansions. As an example, for various molecular reasons, the formation of a mutant K-*ras* allele via point mutation may occur more slowly than the elimination of *APC* function through losses of both copies of this gene.

We know almost nothing about the physiological mechanisms that govern the lengths of the time intervals between successive clonal expansions. In the case of the disease of colon cancer, we know that the incidence of this disease varies by as much as twentyfold internationally and that environmental factors, specifically foodstuffs (rather than genetic susceptibility) are responsible for these dramatic differences. (As Figure 2.18 shows, a population migrating from one country to another exhibits a colon and prostate incidence rates typical of its new host country within a generation or two, ruling out genetics as the key determinant of cancer risk in the great majority of these cancer cases.) It is highly likely that certain constituents of diet greatly increase the rate at which clonal successions occur, that is, compress the time intervals between these successions. This might occur through two alternative mechanisms. Mutation rates may increase progressively during the course of multi-step tumorigenesis due to acquired defects in the genes tasked with maintaining genomic integrity, as described in the next chapter. In addition, non-genetic mechanisms, specifically the tumor promoters to be described in Section 11.11 may accelerate the rate of clonal expansions, acting exclusively through nongenetic mechanisms. Perhaps in individuals who consume certain foodstuffs, 5 or fewer years intervene between successive clonal expansions rather than the usual 10 or 20. As a consequence, a disease process that usually requires a century to reach completion may reach its neoplastic endpoint in 30 or 40 years — well within a human life span. Finally, individuals who bear mutations in DNA repair genes that are inherited through the germ line may experience increases in the rapidity of clonal expansions. In the context once again of the gut, such people may suffer from greatly accelerated rate of formation of premalignant and malignant growths in the colon—the syndrome of hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC).

In fact, there is another dimension of complexity that we have not yet confronted. Specifically, the tissue microenvironment (TME) in which normal and pre-neoplastic cells find themselves. There is clear evidence that this TME, which is represented by the stroma of normal and neoplastic epithelial cells, changes progressively with age, and that aged tissue microenvironments can be more hospitable to the inception and outgrowth of pre-neoplastic and frankly neoplastic cell clones. Hence, part of the increasing incidence of cancer with age may not derive exclusively from cell-autonomous processes (that is, those operating entirely within the precursors of carcinoma cells) that govern the dynamics of clonal expansion. Instead, tumors may occur more frequently in older people in part because the microenvironments within their aging tissues increasingly favor the eruption of tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

fitness

(1) Term to reflect the likelihood that, during the course of evolution, an organism will leave more descendants within a species as a consequence of its increased adaptation to the environment in which it exists or elevated ability to compete successfully with other similar individual organisms within the species. (2) Similar dynamics applying to the ability of an individual cancer cell or group of cancer cells to outcompete other such cells within a tumor.

clonal succession

Process by which one clonal population of cells displaces and thus succeeds a preexisting clonal population of cells; by implication, the displacing cell population has acquired a more advantageous phenotype relative to that of the cell population that is being displaced. *See also* **clonal expansion**.

tumor promoter

(1) An agent that furthers the progression of multi-step tumorigenesis by nongenetic mechanisms, notably those involving inflammation and/or mitogenesis, sometimes termed promoting agent. Tumor promoters are presumed to work by accelerating the rate of clonal expansion of already-mutated cells. (2) The DNA sequence associated with a gene that controls its transcription. *See also* **promotion**.

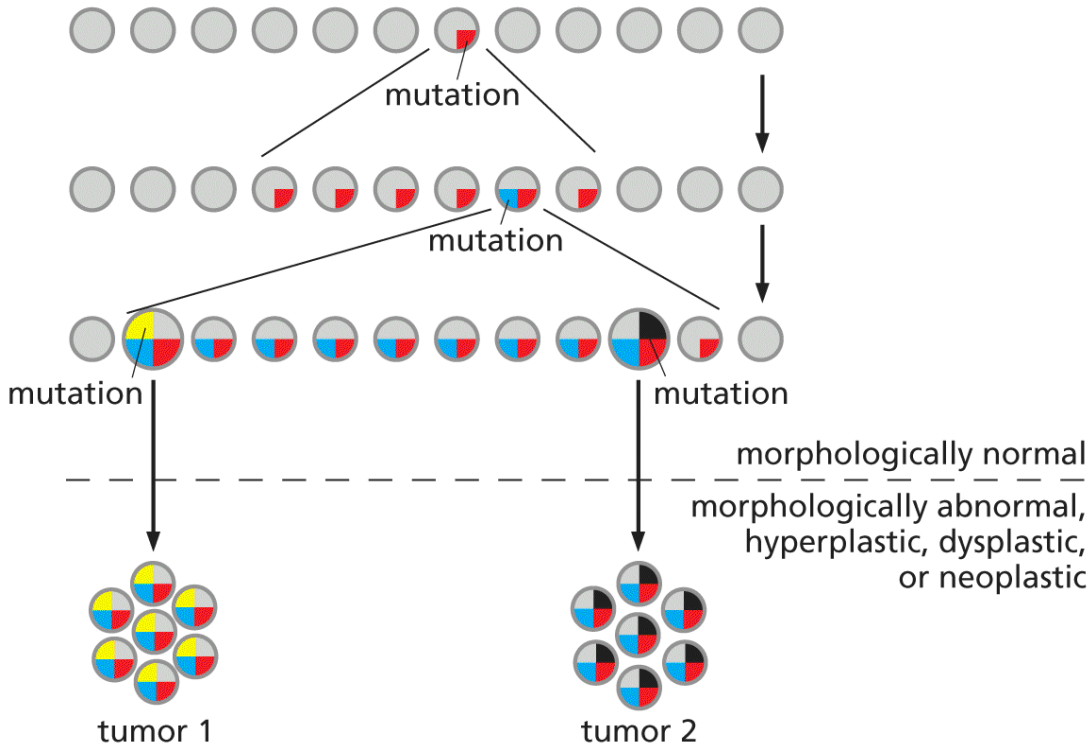
OceanofPDF.com

11.5 Multi-step tumor progression helps to explain familial polyposis and field cancerization

As described in the previous section, the first step in the development of the great majority of *sporadic* colon carcinomas (that is, those not driven by an inherited mutant gene) involves the inactivation of the *APC* gene—precisely the same gene that is inherited in mutant form by individuals suffering from the *familial* polyposis syndrome (Section 7.10). Now, in the context of multi-step tumorigenesis, we can understand why inheritance of a mutant *APC* allele results in polyposis and colon cancer: the first step in colon cancer progression, which involves the inactivation of an *APC* gene copy, has already occurred in all of the colonic epithelial cells of an individual suffering from familial polyposis. That is, each of their cells, including those in the colon, is $APC^{+/-}$ (rather than $APC^{+/+}$).

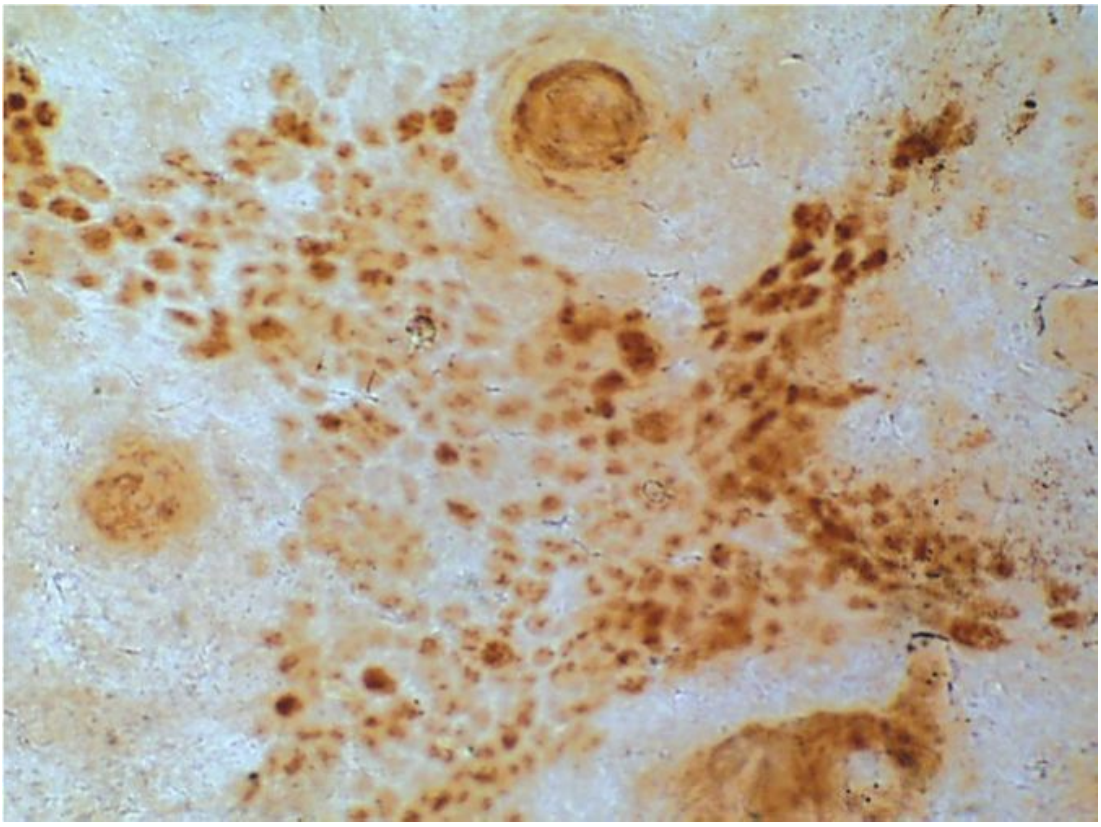
Consequently, a common mechanism of inborn susceptibility yielding familial cancers involves an acceleration of a critical rate-limiting step; in the case of the gut, this step involves elimination of the two copies of the *APC* gene in one or another cell. Thus, one of the two steps in this process no longer depends on infrequently occurring somatic mutations (because it has already occurred and affected the inherited germ-line genome and therefore all of the cells throughout the body of an afflicted individual).

This model of multiple clonal expansions also bears on another important issue in tumorigenesis: tissues affected by sporadic tumors occasionally sprout multiple tumors that arise at similar times in different sites in the tissue and seem to be formed independently of one another. This phenomenon is often called field cancerization. Thus, as an example, two or more premalignant or frankly malignant growths may erupt suddenly in an epithelial tissue, separated from one another by many centimeters of apparently normal epithelium. Because the appearance of any single sporadic (that is, nonfamilial) neoplasm is, on its own, a highly improbable event, the simultaneous appearance of two or more seemingly independent sporadic growths would seem to be extremely unlikely. Our understanding of multi-step tumorigenesis provides a key insight into the underlying processes at work here (**Figure 11.15**).



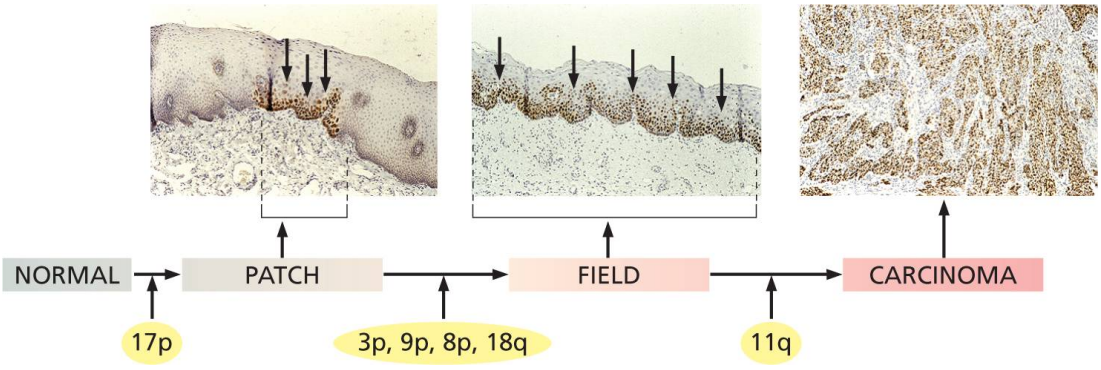
Two successive mutations produce a large number of cells that carry two mutations but remain morphologically normal. One of these then undergoes a third mutation to produce tumor 1, while another cell undergoes a different third mutation to produce tumor 2. Tumors 1 and 2 are both morphologically abnormal, hyperplastic, dysplastic, or neoplastic.

(A)



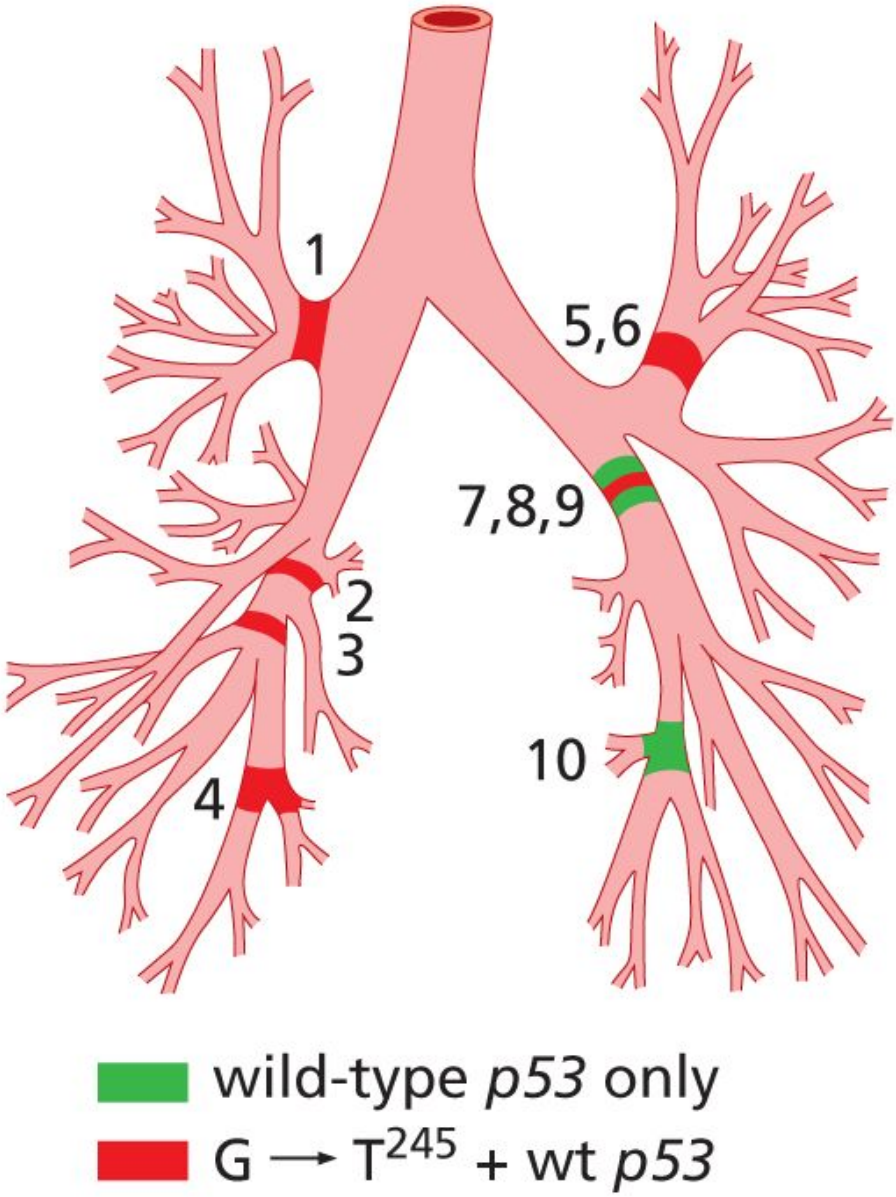
A histology image with many rust red nuclei and a few larger larger areas of similar color appearing against a pale background.

(B)



A cancerization progression. The progression from normal to patch, marked by a 17p mutation, is seen histologically as a small area of brown flecks in a layer of cells. Progression from patch to field is marked by 3p, 9p, 8p and 18q mutations, and is seen histologically as a larger area of brown flecks. Progression to carcinoma is marked by an 11q mutation.

(C)



A diagram of the bronchial tree of a deceased lung cancer patient. Four distinct sites in the patient's right lung and three sites in the patient's left lung contain a G T245 mutation plus wild type p53. Three sites in the right lung contain wild type p53 only.

(D)

Figure 11.15 Field cancerization A large area of histologically normal but genetically altered epithelium can sprout multiple, apparently independent foci of

neoplastic cells, all of which carry the one or more mutations common to this area as well as subsequently acquired mutants that are unique to each focus. (A) According to one model of field cancerization, one cell sustains an initiating mutation (*red sector, top middle*). Following extensive proliferation, some of its clonal descendants may subsequently acquire a second mutant allele (*blue sector*), and the doubly mutated "initiated" cells may then proliferate and eventually occupy a large patch of epithelium. Although these cells have already undergone several of the early steps of multi-step tumor progression, they continue to form an epithelium that is histologically normal. Subsequently, two cells located at different sites within this large patch of initiated cells may independently acquire additional mutations (*yellow sector left; black sector right*); both of these cells will now advance over the boundary (*dashed line*) to acquire a histologically abnormal appearance, spawning hyperplastic, dysplastic, even neoplastic growths. These two tumors will appear to have arisen independently even though they derive from the same clone of initiated cells. (B) Histologically normal patches of p53-mutant keratinocytes, detected here by immunostaining, can be found in sun-exposed human skin and may contain as many as 3000 cells. Such patches appear to represent fertile ground for the inception of basal cell carcinomas. (C) p53-positive (i.e., *p53*-mutant; see Section 9.9) cells, detected by immunostaining, are initially found in small, histologically normal patches of the oral epithelium early in the progression of squamous cell carcinomas in the oral cavity (*left image, brown spots*). As tumor progression proceeds, large fields of *p53*-mutant cells can be found that remain quite normal histologically, although they have often undergone loss of heterozygosity (LOH) of markers on the indicated chromosomal arms (*middle*). Eventually, after additional genetic changes, including LOH of the long arm of Chromosome 11, several of the cells in a field may progress independently to squamous cell carcinomas (*right*). (D) An extreme case of field cancerization can be seen here in lungs of a patient examined upon autopsy. Cells within widely scattered areas in both lobes of the lungs were found to share the same rare *p53* somatic mutation (present either in homozygous or heterozygous configuration, *red*), indicating their common genetic origin (see also Figure 11.8C). Although these areas did indeed exhibit mild squamous metaplasia, no carcinomas could be detected; hence, none of these widely dispersed fields had spawned a carcinoma by the time of the patient's death. (B, courtesy of D.E. Brash. C, from B.J.M. Braakhuis et al., *Cancer Res.* 63:1727–1730, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. D, from W.A. Franklin et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 100:2133–2137, 1997. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation.)

Imagine that a clone of cells undergoes some of the initial genetic alterations that launch these cells partway down the road toward full-fledged neoplasia; these

alterations confer a proliferative or survival advantage on these cells but have no outward effect on the histopathological appearance of the tissue in which these cells arise. In the eyes of a pathologist, this tissue will appear entirely normal. Nonetheless, these alterations poise these cells to progress further toward neoplasia.

After many years, this clone of mutant cells, because its constituent cells possess slightly elevated proliferative or survival potential, may have expanded to form a large patch of outwardly normal epithelium. Thereafter, two cells, located far from one another within this patch (that is, “field”) and sharing the same set of somatic mutations, may then suffer new oncogenic mutations independently of one another, and each of the resulting multiply-mutated cells may spawn a papilloma or carcinoma (see Figure 11.15A). Indeed, at the experimental level, genetic analyses of apparently normal bladder epithelium, oral mucosa, and skin, as well as of esophageal and lung epithelia, have revealed large patches of cells, some many centimeters wide, that are morphologically normal but already carry a mutant gene, often a mutant allele of *p53* (see Figure 11.15B); alternatively, widely dispersed patches of dysplastic tissue having a common genetic origin can be documented (Figure 11.15C and D).

Strikingly, similar processes operate in the hematopoietic system. Thus, as many individuals age, subpopulations of lymphoid cells in the circulation can be found that share common oncogenic mutations; such subpopulations occur in individuals in which there are no clinical signs of incipient cancers, that is, either lymphomas or leukemias. The common origin of the cells and their association with a specific clonal subpopulation of cells is indicated by the otherwise-rare, highly specific mutation(s) that the cells within one of these subpopulations share, indicating that each of these subpopulations represents a genetically homogeneous cell population descended from a common ancestor in which the mutation first arose. For this reason, the presence of such subpopulations is considered a manifestation of the process of clonal hematopoiesis. Of note, individuals harboring such clonal subpopulations in their blood or bone marrow exhibit an elevated risk of eventually developing a hematopoietic malignancy, once again indicating a field effect albeit in a liquid tumor. Hence, the development with increasing age of pre-neoplastic cell populations appears to occur in diverse tissues governed by very different types of regulatory mechanisms.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

field cancerization

Phenomenon in which an outwardly normal region of an organ or tissue produces multiple, ostensibly independently arising premalignant growths or frank neoplasms that actually share a common clonal origin and share a common set of abnormalities, including somatic mutations. Field cancerization is presumed to reflect the proliferative and survival advantage of somatic mutations (or heritable changes in the epigenome) that are not manifested in the outward behavior of the affected cells, but were already widely dispersed in this region prior to the appearance of these clearly preneoplastic or frankly neoplastic outgrowths. *See also* **clonal hematopoiesis**.

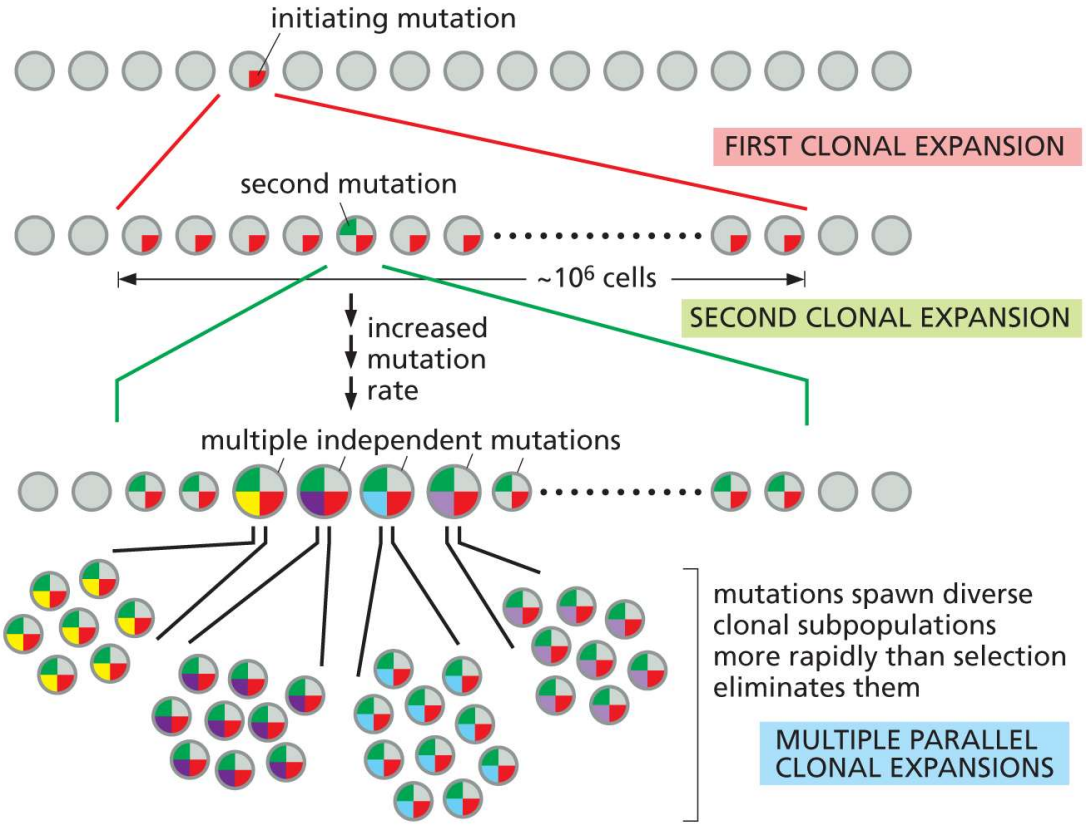
clonal hematopoiesis

Development in hematopoietic cell lineages of clonal populations of cells in which the constituent cells share a common somatic mutation or set of mutations that appears to favor their preferential clonal expansion in the hematopoietic system; such cells have nonetheless not developed a frankly neoplastic phenotype although they may be poised to do so.

OceanofPDF.com

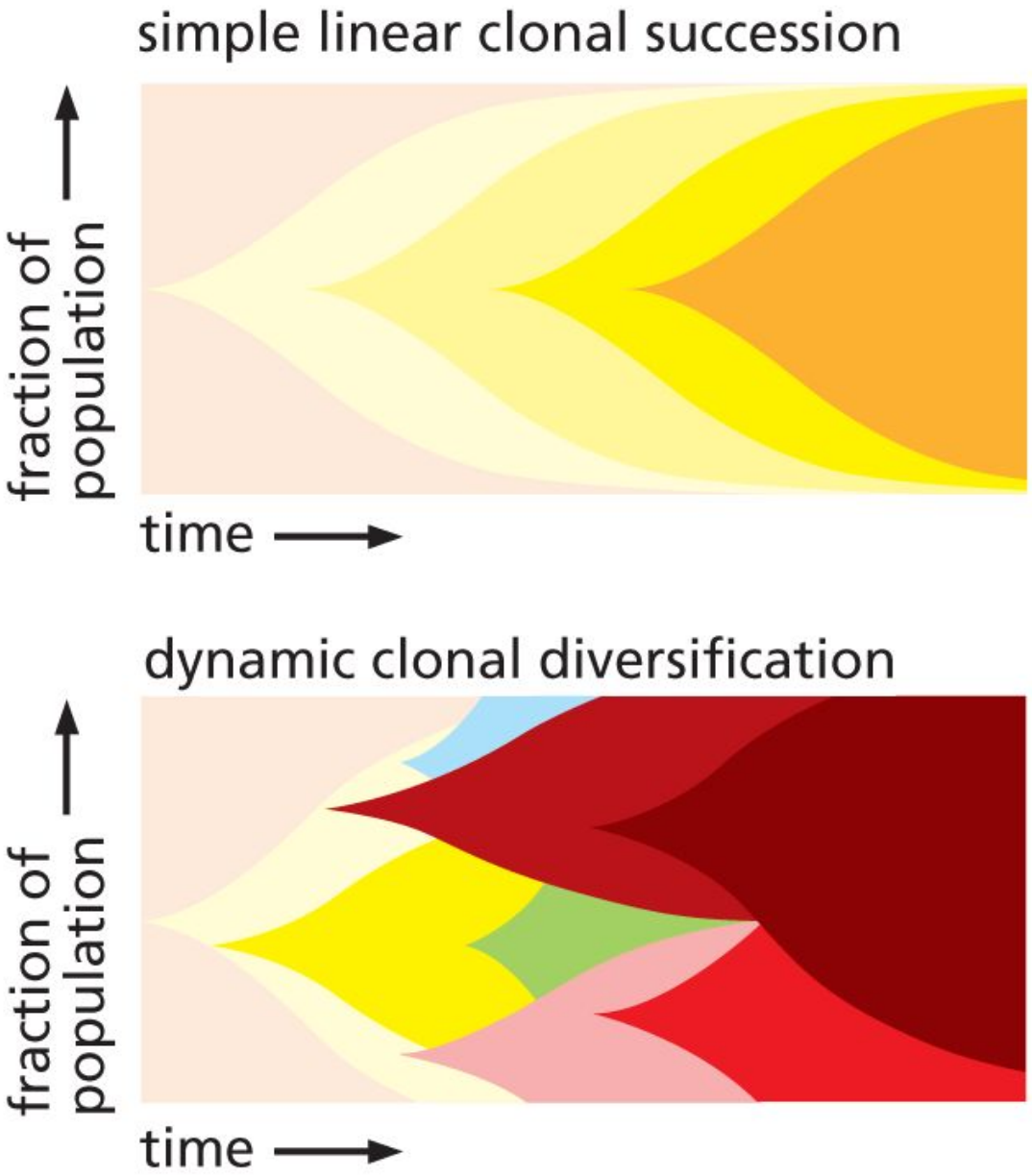
11.6 Intra-tumor diversification can outrun Darwinian selection

As multi-step tumor progression proceeds, the genomes and epigenomes of cancer cells become increasingly destabilized. Hence, the rates at which genetic and epigenetic changes accumulate increasingly *outpace* the rate at which Darwinian selection can eliminate less-fit variant subpopulations of cells. As a consequence, with each successive step, the populations of cells within a tumor become increasingly diverse at the genetic or epigenetic levels. This increased intra-tumoral heterogeneity can be best documented by isolating multiple single-cell-derived cell clones from a tumor. Such clonal populations originating from the same tumor often differ markedly in their rates of proliferation, susceptibility to apoptosis, tendency to invade and metastasize, and organization of intracellular metabolism (**Figure 11.16 A and B**).



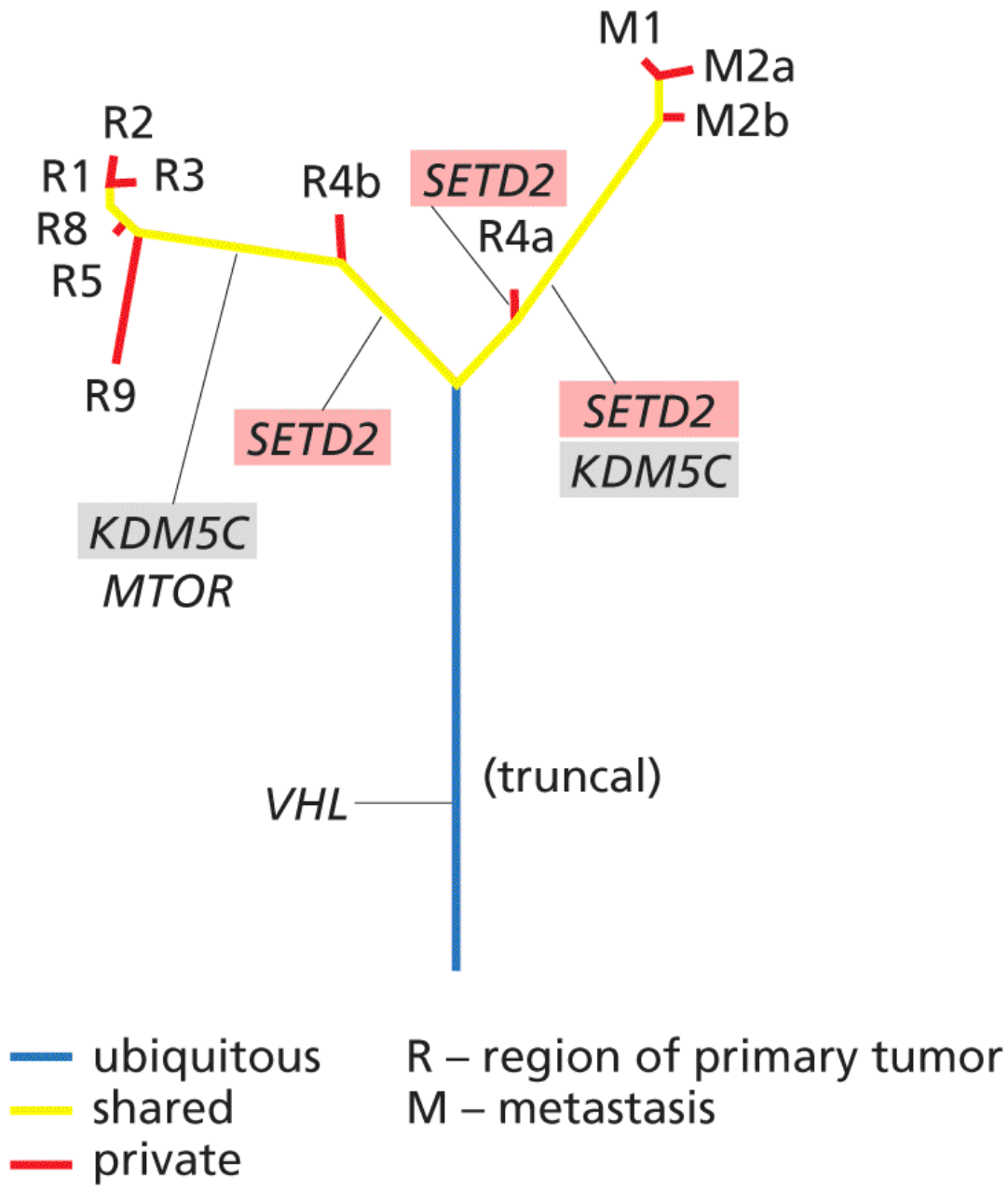
A succession of cycles of mutation and clonal expansion is followed by an increased mutation rate and multiple independent mutations with associated

clonal expansions occurring in parallel, as mutations spawn diverse clonal subpopulations more rapidly than selection eliminates them.
(A)



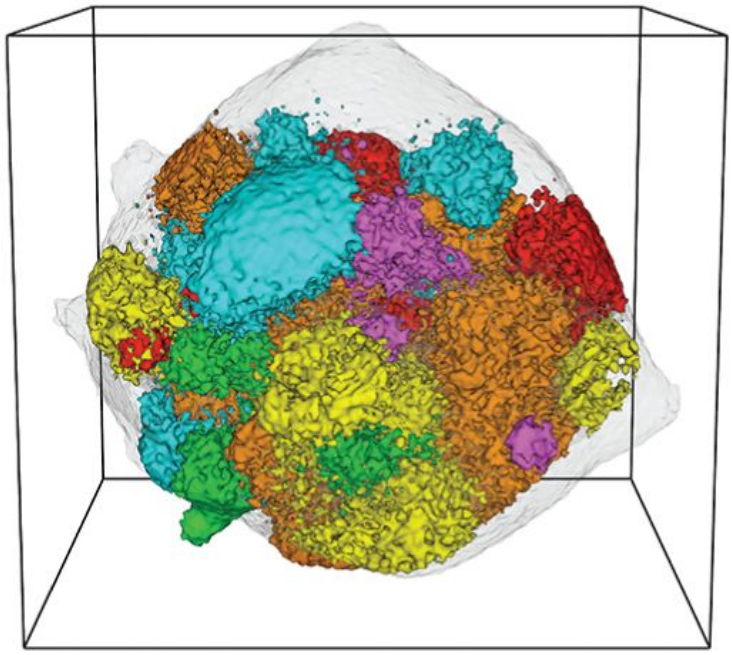
An illustration of the difference between simple linear clonal succession and dynamic clonal diversification. In simple linear clonal succession, one mutation at a time establishes itself and is on the way to taking over the entire population but then begins to give way to another mutation that does the same. In dynamic clonal diversification, mutations occur quickly enough that at any given time, multiple clonal populations coexist and none is on the way to dominance.

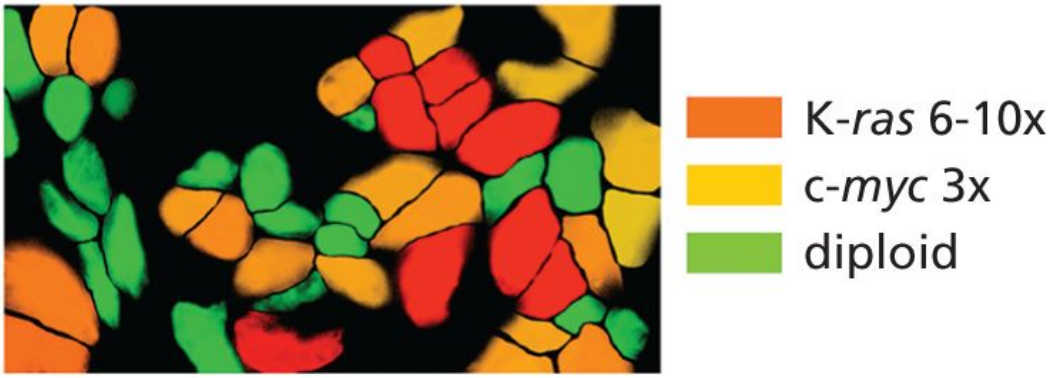
(B)



The results of a detailed sequencing analysis of a renal tumor. The first mutation, in the V H L gene, is shared by all cells in the tumor. This mutation is represented by the trunk of a tree diagram. Branches on the left and right then indicate mutations found only in some part or other of the tumor. The main branches are designated as shared, while the branch tips are designated as private. The left branches of the diagram correspond to various cell lines in

the primary tumor. The rightmost part of the right branch corresponds to metastatic tissue.
(C)





A comparison of the theoretical prediction of how clonal populations are distributed inside a tumor with the observed distribution. In theory, each clonal population should be concentrated in a different part of the tumor. A fluorescence microscopy image of a real tumor, however, shows that K-ras, c m y c, and diploid cells are heavily intermingled.

(D)

Figure 11.16 Clonal diversification caused by high mutation rates (A) As tumor progression proceeds, the genomes of tumor cells often become

increasingly unstable. As this occurs, the rate at which new mutant alleles are generated may exceed the rate at which Darwinian selection can eliminate phenotypically less-fit clones. Consequently, the tumor mass develops an increasing number of sectors, each dominated by a genetically distinct subclone of cells. (B) Recent surveys of both genetic and epigenetic (CpG methylation) heterogeneity within individual tumors have provided experimental support for the extensive diversification of distinct clonal populations within a tumor. Thus, the simple linear model of clonal succession (*above*) should be replaced, at least in late-stage tumors, by the dynamic changes depicted *below* in which multiple distinct subpopulations of cancer cells coexist within a tumor. (C) Detailed sequencing analyses of a primary human renal cell carcinoma and derived metastases provide some indication of the genetic diversification that occurs during tumor progression. As seen here, mutation of the *VHL* gene occurred early and was ultimately transmitted to all resulting neoplastic cells in this tumor; the shape of this tree reveals why this is termed a "truncal" mutation. Regions of the tumor (designated as R) indicate a diversification of an early population into two major branches, one of which spawned metastases (*right*), whereas the other did not (*left*). Multiple mutations of the *SETD2* and *KDM5C* genes occurred independently in distinct regions of the tumor, suggesting convergent evolution. Additional mutations were accumulated in derived metastases (*top right*). (D) Although the schemes of A and B imply the coexistence of distinct subclones within a tumor, they do not necessarily indicate the topological localization of these clones and their constituent cells. A computationally based model of how a tumor should develop predicts discrete sectors in which genetically (and epigenetically) distinct, individual subclones are localized in a tumor composed of 2 million cells. In contrast, use of fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) in a section of an actual tumor (*below*), such as the human breast cancer analyzed here, reveals the extensive physical intermingling of the individual cells deriving, in this case, from three major, genetically distinct subclones coexisting within this tumor. The three clones involve those with apparent diploid genomes, those with 3 copies of c-*myc*, and those with 6–10 copies of K-*ras* and a closely linked gene. (It is unclear which of these two topological patterns is more common in actual tumors.) (B, from A. Marusyk and K. Polyak, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1805:105–117, 2010. With permission from Elsevier. C, from M. Gerlinger, A.J. Rowan, S. Horswell et al. *NEJM* 366:888-892, 2012. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society. D, from A. Sottoriva et al., *PLoS Comput. Biol.* 7:e1001132, 2011, courtesy of A. Sottoriva; and N. Navin et al., *Genome Res.* 20:68–80, 2010. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

This heterogeneity present in highly progressed tumors contrasts starkly with the cellular products of selection that operated earlier during tumor progression at a time

when less-fit cells and subpopulations were successfully eliminated. Such efficient elimination is often termed purifying selection, in which only the most fit cells survive to yield homogeneous, clonal cell populations whose constituents are genetically and epigenetically identical to one another. As described later in Chapter 17, the intensive diversification of cells occurring within certain tumors and the resulting phenotypic heterogeneity of subpopulations of the cancer cells within such tumors greatly complicate anti-cancer therapies. Thus, some applied therapies may be highly effective in eliminating certain subpopulations of neoplastic cells within a tumor, while other co-existing subpopulations that happen to be resistant to therapy can emerge and create clinical relapses.

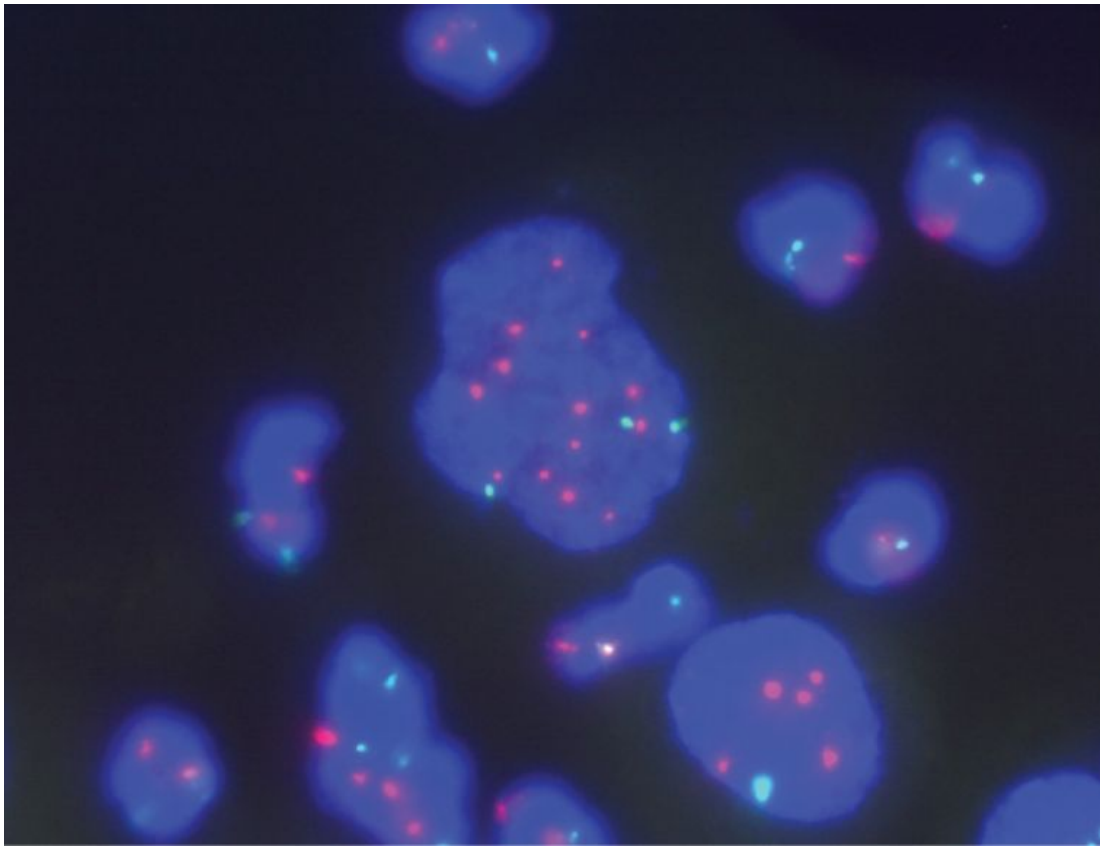
As a consequence, rather than looking like a linear series of clonal successions, actual tumor progression in many tumor masses is likely to resemble the highly branched scheme shown in Figure 11.16C, in which multiple genetically distinct subclones of cells coexist within a single tumor mass. Indeed, the dynamic nature of the expansion of some clonal subpopulations and the obliteration of others is suggested by Figure 11.16B.

Demonstrations of the genetic diversification of cells within a tumor cell population can be obtained by tracking the state of individual genes of interest within various cells of a primary tumor and derived metastases. For example, in a human pancreatic carcinoma, detailed genome sequence analysis of different sectors of the tumor revealed genetically distinct subclones, each of which was estimated to comprise at least 100 million cells. Interestingly, several of these subclones each spawned its own set of genetically related metastases found at distant sites in the body of the cancer patient—a topic that we will pursue in greater depth in Chapter 14. An illustration of these processes operating during the formation of a renal cell carcinoma is provided by Figure 11.16C, in which an initial, commonly shared mutation (often termed truncal) is inherited by derived clonal subpopulations and metastases.

Of note, in Figure 11.16C, the relative *lengths* of the branches were gauged by the number of neutral mutations accumulated throughout the genomes of the cells under analysis. Such functionally silent neutral mutations are often termed passenger mutations because they are carried along with driver mutations, the latter affecting genes whose alteration is assumed to be functionally important and capable of conferring selective advantage on the cells bearing them. Almost invariably, the passenger mutations are far more numerous than driver mutations and are reflective of widespread genetic instability within tumor cells. The genes affected by driver mutations, as discussed in the next chapter, are often identified because they are repeatedly found in mutant form in the genomes of multiple independently arising tumors, suggesting that mutant alleles of these genes confer a strong phenotypic advantage on those cells that happen to acquire them.

The precise localization of individual subclones and associated cells within a tumor is itself unclear. A computer-based modeling of how such subclones arise (distinguished from one another by heritable differences in DNA sequence or CpG methylation) predicts large sectors occupied by individual subclones, which may indeed represent the configuration of many tumors. However, analysis of individual carcinoma cells within a tumor may well reveal a more complex situation, in which the cells of various subclonal populations become intermingled (Figure 11.16D).

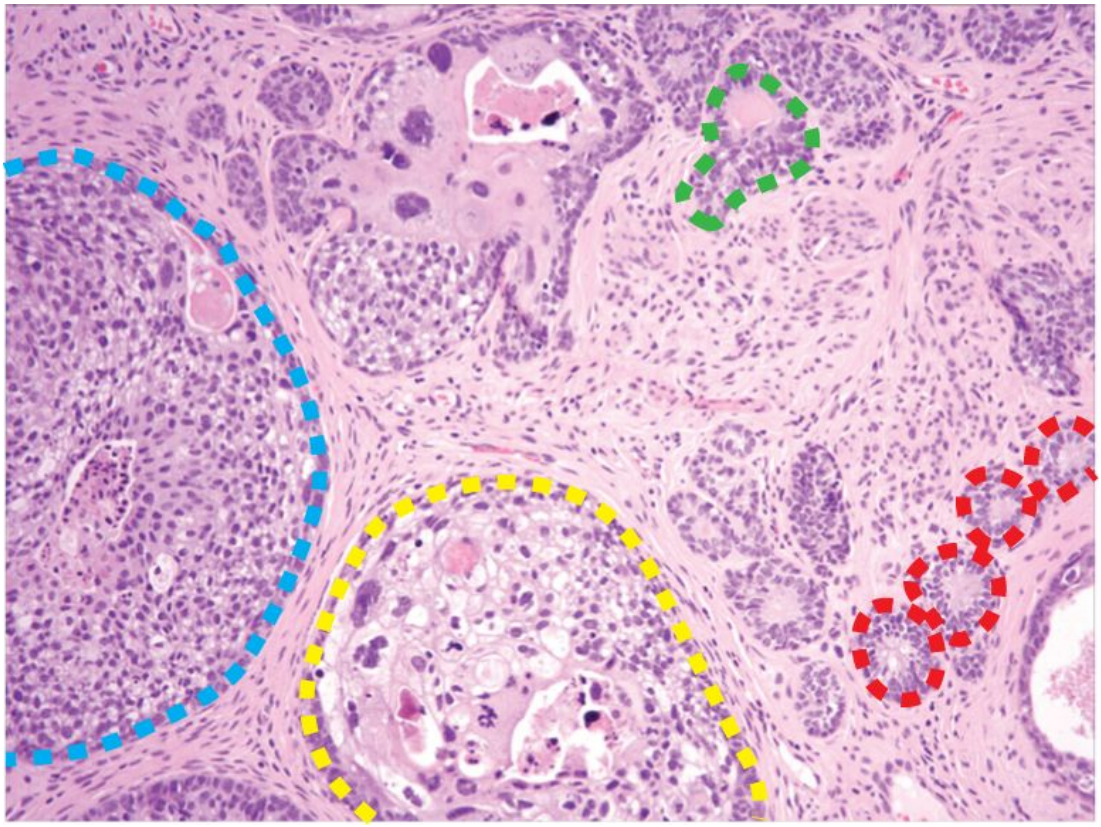
A vivid example of genetic instability and resulting genetic diversification is shown in **Figure 11.17**, in which the FISH (fluorescence *in situ* hybridization) technique was used to determine the copy number of Chromosomes 11 and 17 in individual cells deriving from a human lung carcinoma. As is apparent, the copy number of Chromosome 17 (which carries the gene specifying cyclin D1) varies enormously from one cell to another, whereas the copy number of Chromosome 11 is relatively stable. Such variability indicates that the tumor cell genomes being analyzed here are quite plastic, possibly changing each time the cells pass through a cycle of growth and division. These fluctuations seem to occur almost randomly and at a rate that vastly exceeds the ability of (Darwinian) selection to eliminate less-fit variants.



A fluorescence microscopy image. Multiple dark blue nuclei are visible, unusually variable in size and shape. All contain both red and green dots, typically far more

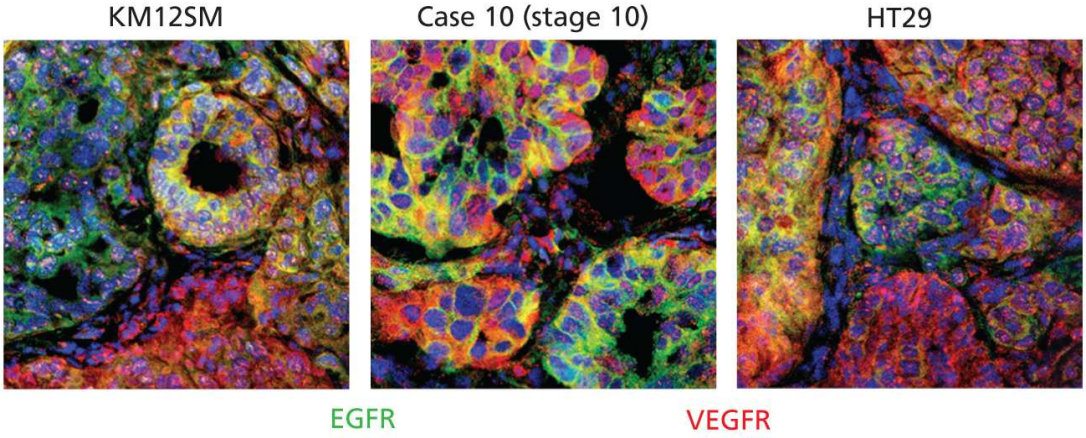
of the red ones, but the large nuclei contain far more dots than the small ones.
Figure 11.17 Frequent variations in chromosome number in tumors In high-grade tumors, the numbers of chromosomes often fluctuate wildly from one cell to another, indicative of great cell-to-cell genetic heterogeneity. In this image, the use of FISH revealed the copy numbers of Chromosomes 11 (*green*) and 17 (*pink*) in cells from a *pleural effusion* in a non-small-cell lung carcinoma patient. In addition to fluctuations in chromosome number, highly polyploid giant nuclei are apparent. (From M. Fiegl et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 22:474–483, 2004. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology.)

Yet another source of diversification has not even been addressed here: epigenetic mechanisms may profoundly shift the transcriptomes and thus the phenotypes of cancer cells without any underlying changes in the cancer cell genomes (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.4**); such epigenetic plasticity would not be registered in the genetic analyses described in Figure 11.16. The resulting phenotypic diversification may be apparent at the histopathological level (**Figure 11.18A**). Alternatively, surveys of protein expression in tumor sections using immunofluorescence provide dramatic testimony to the diversification of small, discrete subpopulations of cancer cells within a tumor (Figure 11.18B). In principle, the variability in the expression of the EGF and VEGF receptors shown in this figure might well result from genetic diversification. Far more likely, however, are epigenetic mechanisms—localized, frequent fluctuations in cell-to-cell signaling in the tumor microenvironment yielding phenotypic diversity that does not directly reflect underlying, slowly occurring genetic diversification. Finally, reversible shifts in cell phenotype make it almost impossible to map with precision the developmental histories of individual tumors (**Sidebar 11.5**).



A histology image in the usual pink and purple colors but with regions outline in dashed colored lines. On right are four small red circles in a row. In the lower center is a large region outlined in yellow. Above is a small, irregular region outlined in green. To the left is a large area with more densely packed nuclei outlined in blue.

(A)



Three immunofluorescence images of cancer cells glowing green, red and yellow. Left to right, the images are labeled K M12S M, Case 10 (stage 10), and H T29. Below the images, the letters E G F R appear in green, and the letters V E G F R appear in red.

(B)

Figure 11.18 Phenotypic diversification within a tumor cell population
Independent of the genetic diversification of subpopulations of cells within a tumor (see Figure 11.16) is the ability of tumor cells to enter into new phenotypic states by activating epigenetic programs associated with alternative states of differentiation. (A) An adenoid basal carcinoma (ABC) of the cervix from a 94-year-old woman demonstrates heterogeneous cytologic features. To the far right, a row of small basaloid islands infiltrates the cervical stroma (*red circles*). Above them (*top right*) is an area of columnar cell differentiation within such a nest of basaloid cells (*green circle*). In the center and left are two large nests of neoplastic squamoid cells (*yellow, blue*) exhibiting various degrees of *atypia*. In both cases, the large nests are surrounded by rims of basal cell layers, findings characteristic of ABC. ABC is typically associated with a conventional high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (*not shown*) and HPV infection; this case was positive for HPV type 16. The high frequency of these variant morphologies in this particular subtype of carcinoma strongly suggests that these islands of cells represent distinct differentiation programs activated by the various carcinoma cells rather than genetic diversification. (B) Use of immunofluorescence with antibodies that react with the EGF (*green*) and VEGF (*red*) receptors reveals great phenotypic diversity even within small sectors of these tumor xenografts; cells co-expressing both receptors are seen as *yellow*. Tumors analyzed in the *left* and *right* panels derive from cancer cell lines, and the tumor in the *center* panel derives from a surgical specimen. (A, courtesy of M. Hirsch and M. Loda. B, from T. Kuwai et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 172:358–366, 2008. With permission from American Society for Investigative Pathology.)

Sidebar 11.5 Transient shifts in phenotype complicate the biographies of individual tumors

Almost all of the cell-intrinsic changes in cancer cell phenotype described here—whether genetic or epigenetic—are by definition cell-heritable and thus impose stable markings on the clones of evolving premalignant cells and their direct descendants. There are, however, certain changes in cells that may be critically important in influencing or directing the trajectory of an evolving cell population but are not memorialized by permanent, cell-heritable marks, simply because this class of changes

are reversible and thus may be present only transiently during one period of the developmental history of a given tumor and lost thereafter. Examples of these might be periods of genomic stress (described in Chapter 12), oxidative stress, and activation of EMT programs (described in Chapter 14). The transient involvement of these stressors and cell-biological programs in tumor pathogenesis reminds us that the cell-heritable features of highly progressed tumor cells represent an incomplete record of the biological events that shaped their development, often being experienced by cells only during a brief window of time *en route* to the formation of full-fledged aggressive tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

purifying selection
: Process occurring during Darwinian evolution in which negative selection eliminates less-fit variants, leaving behind a population of cells or organisms that is most fit.

truncal
: Referring to a genetic alteration that is present in the genomes of all of the otherwise-heterogeneous neoplastic cells within a tumor and is indicative of their shared descent from a common ancestral cell; such mutations are associated with the trunk of a branched tree drawn to depict graphically the evolutionary history of these cells from their common ancestor.

passenger mutation
: Mutation that confers no selective advantage on a cell carrying it but whose presence in a population of cells is increased because it resides in the same genome as other mutant alleles that do indeed confer advantage; sometimes termed bystander mutation. *Compare* **driver mutation**.

driver mutation
: Mutation creating an allele of a gene that is advantageous for the cell that sustains it and results in clonal expansion of the progeny bearing mutant alleles of this gene. *See also* **driver gene**, **passenger gene**.

OceanofPDF.com

11.7 Tumor stem cells further complicate the Darwinian model of clonal succession and tumor progression

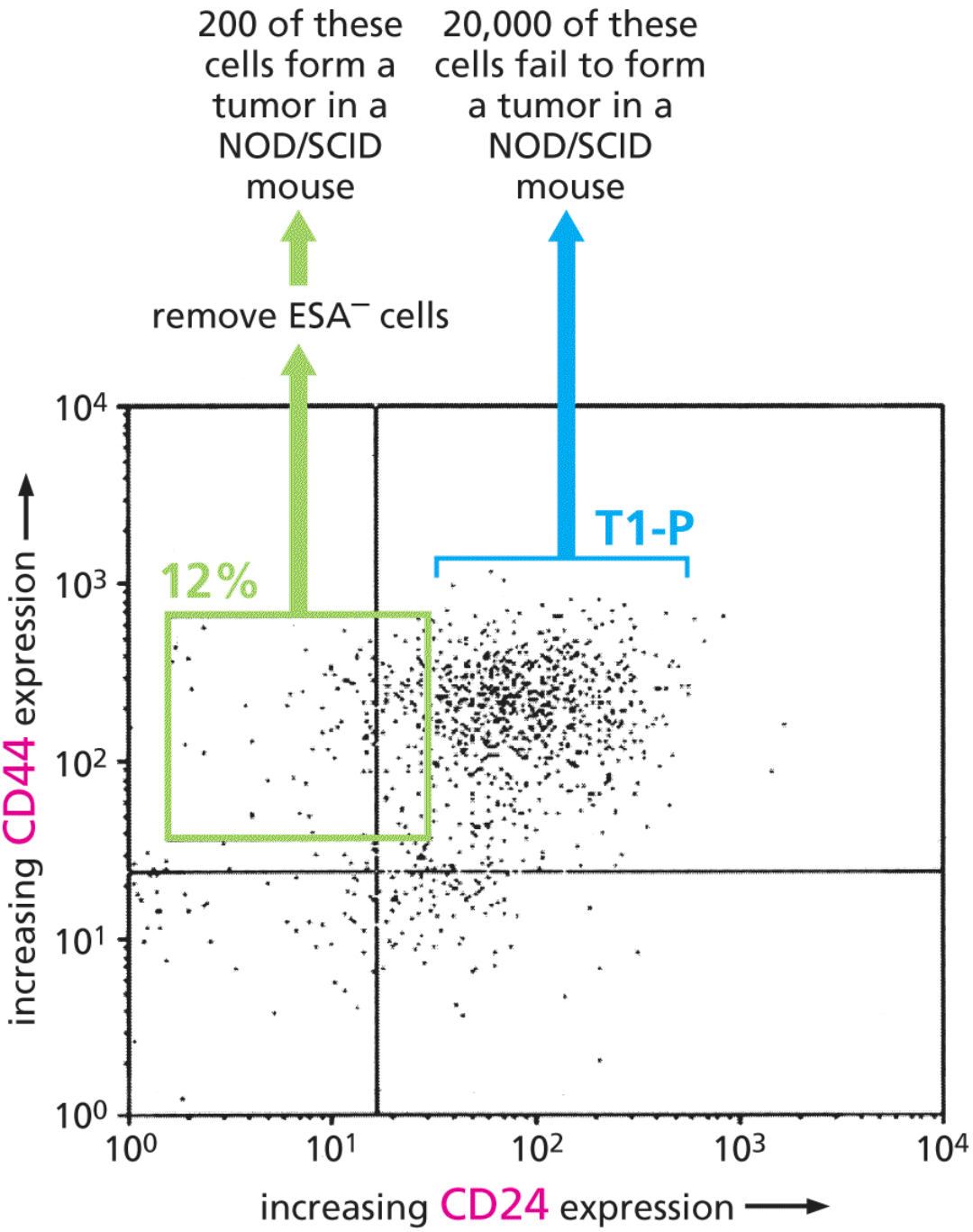
As depicted above, the clonal succession model proposes that a mutant cell spawns a large flock of descendants and that among these numerous descendants, a new mutational event (or heritable epigenetic alteration) will confer a novel, advantageous phenotype and thereby trigger yet another wave of clonal expansion. (For the sake of simplicity, we return for the moment to the model of Figure 11.14, which dictates that each clonal expansion generates a genetically homogeneous cell population.) In fact, many experiments have forced a revision of the notion that all of the cells within a genetically homogeneous cell clone are biologically equivalent to one another and therefore equally capable of becoming ancestors of new, more-progressed, successor populations of cells.

These insights came from attempts to resolve and fractionate tumor cell populations that were ostensibly genetically homogeneous into subpopulations that might, in spite of their common genetic identity, differ from one another phenotypically. In initial experiments, the cancer cells within a specific human tumor were separated into distinct subclasses. These separations took advantage of distinct sets of cell-surface proteins displayed by the different subpopulations. In particular, the technique of fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) was used to fractionate living cancer cells after labeling them (via their cell-surface proteins) with monoclonal antibodies linked to fluorescent dyes (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.5**). Importantly, cells separated by this procedure can be recovered in viable form and used thereafter in biological experiments, including tests of their ability to seed tumors following injection into host mice.

Use of the FACS technique initially enabled researchers to segregate populations of acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) cells into majority and minority populations; in one such experiment, the latter represented less than 1% of the neoplastic cells in the overall leukemia cell population. As few as 5000 cells in the minority subpopulation were able to produce new tumors upon injection into host mice and were therefore deemed to be “tumorigenic”; in contrast, as many as 500,000 AML cells from the majority subpopulation were unable to seed a tumor. In fact, the leukemia cells in this majority subpopulation exhibited many of the attributes of differentiated granulocytes

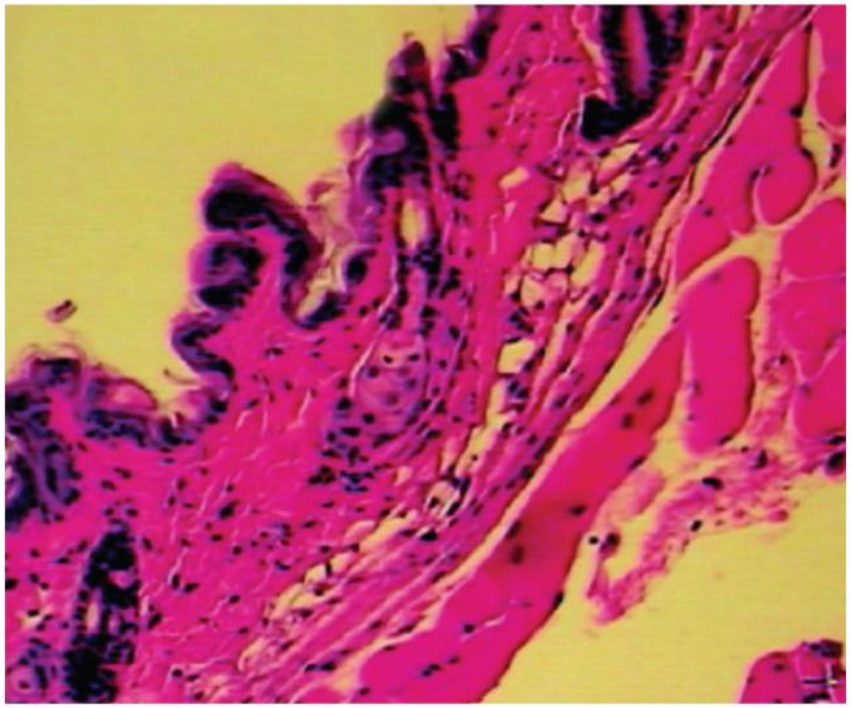
or monocytes, and these cells had limited ability to proliferate. These observations provided compelling evidence that the AML tumors were composed of small populations of self-renewing, tumorigenic cells and large populations of more differentiated cells that had little, if any, ability to serve as founders of new cell populations and thus new leukemias.

Subsequent experiments extended these results to human breast cancer cells prepared by culturing cells extracted directly from tumors. In these later experiments, the minority tumorigenic cell population within a tumor represented only about 2% of the overall neoplastic cell population. When implanted in a host mouse, 200 of these minority cells could seed a new tumor, but as many as 20,000 cells from the majority cell population failed to do so (**Figure 11.19**). Of note, the majority and minority breast cancer cell subpopulations both contained comparable proportions of cells in the active growth-and-division cycle, and both subpopulations were purified away from contaminating nonmalignant cells (such as stromal cells) that were present in the original tumor masses. Also, later genomic analyses confirmed that these two cell populations did not differ from one another genetically.

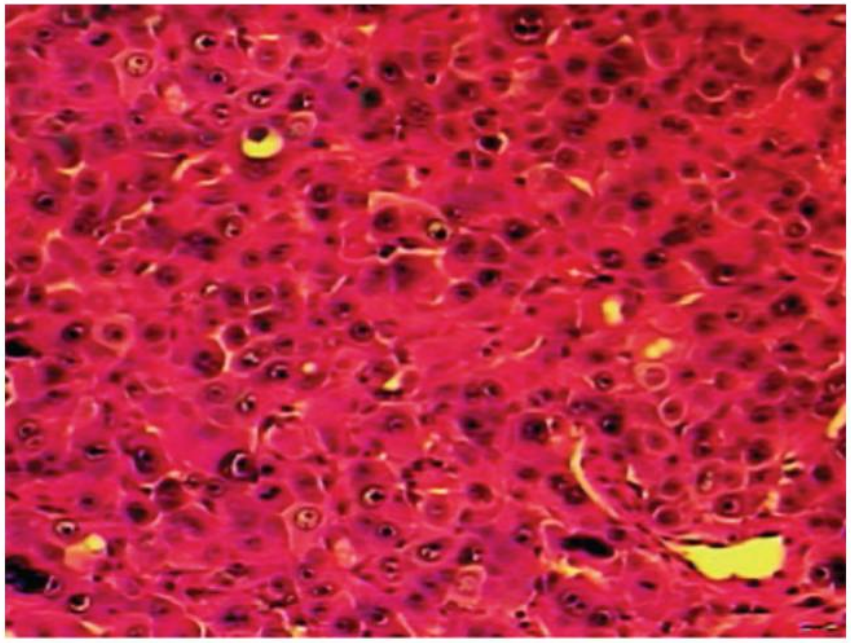


A scatter plot with increasing C D 24 expression on the horizontal axis and increasing C D 44 expression on the vertical axis. Each dot represents a single cell. A square of cells with low C D 24 expression and high C D 44 expressior is noted has having had cells removed that did not express E S A. 200 of the remaining cells formed a tumor in a N O D slash S C I D mouse. By contrast, 20,000 cells with high C D 24 expression and high C D 44 expression formed no such tumor.

(A)



implanted CD24 high cells



implanted CD24 low cells

Two color micrographs. The upper one, from a site where C D 24 high cells were implanted, shows normal skin and muscle tissue. The lower image, from

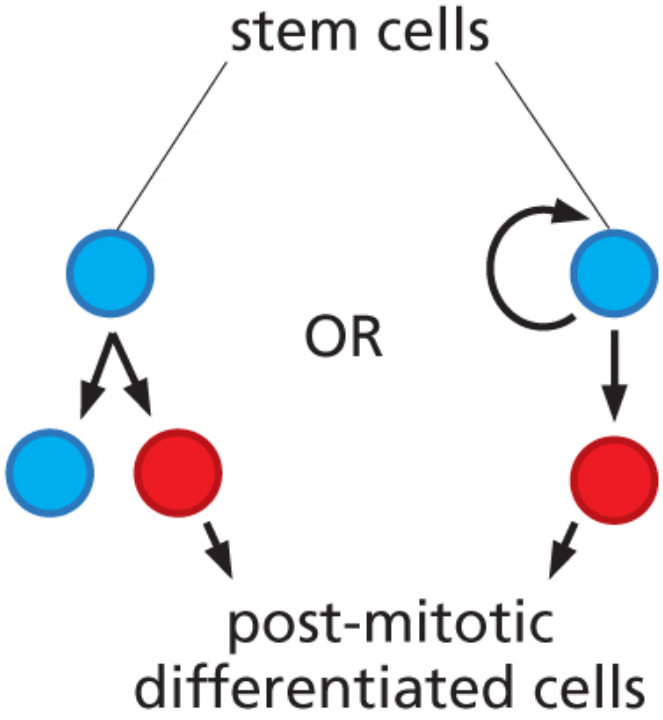
a site where C D 24 low cells were implanted, shows cancerous tissue. (B)

Figure 11.19 Enrichment of breast cancer stem cells (A) Metastatic human breast carcinoma cells were freed of contaminating noncancerous (stromal) cells and separated from one another (using FACS; see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.5**). The expression of two distinct cell surface antigens—CD24 and CD44—was gauged simultaneously, each being detected with a specific monoclonal antibody linked to a distinct fluorescent dye. The intensity of staining is plotted logarithmically on each axis. Each black dot in the graph represents the detection of a single cell. In this experiment, a 12% subpopulation of cells that expressed low CD24 and high CD44 antigen staining (*green box*) was separated from cells (T1-P) that showed high CD24 expression and high CD44 expression (*blue bracket*). (B) The cells in the 12% minority population were further enriched by sorting for those that expressed epithelial surface antigen (ESA), which resulted in the elimination of contaminating stromal cells that did not express this antigen. Following injection into a NOD/SCID immunocompromised mouse, 200 of the $CD24^{low}$ $CD44^{high}$ ESA^{+} cells were able to form a tumor, whereas 20,000 of the $CD24^{high}$ $CD44^{high}$ cells failed to do so. The *upper* micrograph shows a section through the subcutaneous site of implantation of $CD24^{high}$ cells, in which only relatively normal skin and underlying muscle wall can be seen (*above left*); the *lower* micrograph shows a section through the tumor that formed following injection of the $CD24^{low}$ cells. (From M. Al-Hajj et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:3983–3988, 2003. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

The tumors that eventually arose from the implanted minority cells were once again composed of minority and majority cell populations that showed, as before, vast differences in their ability to seed a new group of tumors, that is, in their relative tumorigenicity. In subsequent years, subpopulations of tumor-initiating cells (TICs) have been demonstrated in a wide spectrum of other solid tumors, such as neuroectodermal, pancreatic, colorectal, and hepatocellular carcinomas, as well as certain hematopoietic malignancies.

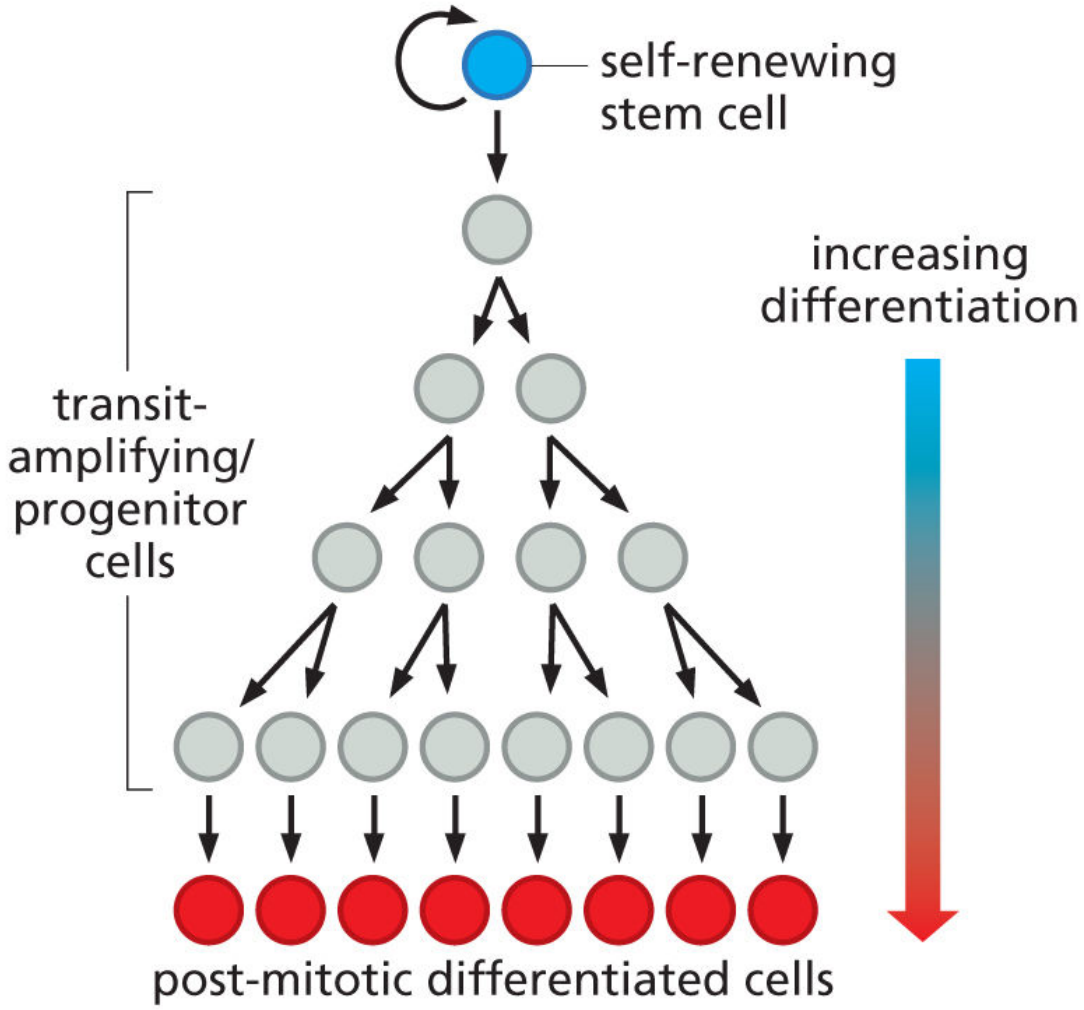
Taken together, these experiments indicate that the neoplastic cell populations originating in a variety of tissues are organized much like most normal epithelial tissues (**Figure 11.20**), in which relatively small pools of self-renewing stem cells are able to spawn large majority populations of descendant cells that have only a limited proliferative potential *in vivo*. In each of the experiments shown here, the tumorigenic minority cells expressed a set of antigenic markers on their surfaces that were distinct from those exhibited by cells in the majority populations. These experiments provided

further indication that two cancer cell subpopulations can coexist within the same tumor in alternative phenotypic states even though they are genetically identical (**Sidebar 11.6**).



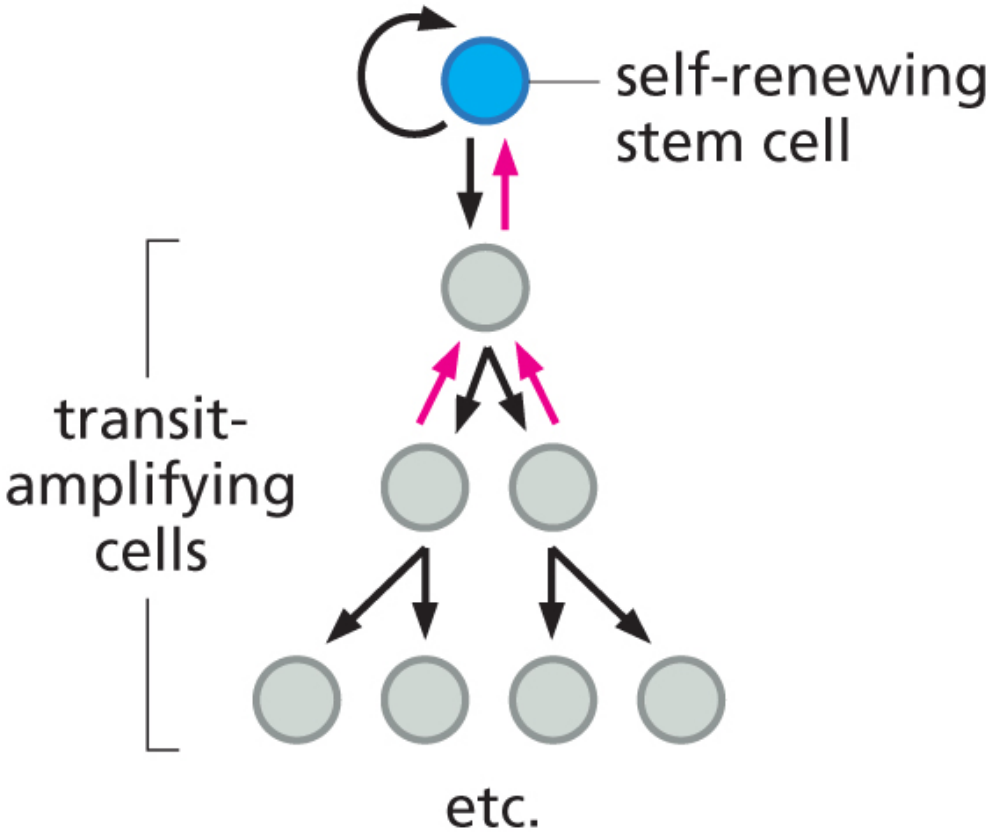
Two ways of graphically representing mitosis of a stem cell that produces one stem cell and one differentiated cell. One convention looks like normal cell reproduction with a parent cell and two daughter cells. The other convention shows just one parent and one daughter but with an additional arrow circling from the parent back to itself. Either way, the end result is post-mitotic differentiated cells.

(A)



A self-replicating stem cell produces one transit-amplifying progenitor cell, which produces two transit-amplifying progenitor cells, which each produce two transit-amplifying progenitor cells, and so on in a process of increasing differentiation that eventually produces post-mitotic differentiated cells.

(B)



A self-replicating stem cell produces one transit-amplifying progenitor cell, which produces two such cells, which each produce two cells, etc., but the process is reversible: cells can de-differentiate.

(C)

Figure 11.20 Stem cells and their progeny (A) The simplest organization of stem cell behavior involves an asymmetric cell division of a stem cell (*blue*), in which one of the daughter cells becomes a stem cell like its mother, whereas the other daughter (*red*) exits the stem cell state and may initiate a program of differentiation. This can be depicted in two graphic conventions, both of which are shown here. (B) In many tissues, a more complex scheme appears to operate. As in panel A, one of the daughters of a dividing stem cell becomes a stem cell. However, the other becomes a “transit-amplifying cell” (sometimes termed a “progenitor cell”; *gray*), which is committed to enter a differentiation pathway but does not yet participate in end-stage differentiation. Instead, this cell and its progeny undergo a series of symmetric cell divisions before its descendants eventually enter into a fully differentiated, post-mitotic state (*red*). Because a single stem cell can spawn dozens if not hundreds of differentiated descendants that carry out the work of a tissue, this cell does not need to proliferate frequently.

Moreover, if the differentiated cells within a tissue cease dividing (and become *post-mitotic*), the great bulk of the cell proliferation within such a tissue is associated with transit-amplifying/progenitor cells. (C) A variation on the scheme shown in panel B recognizes that diverse lines of evidence indicate the reversibility of the processes leading toward increased differentiation (*red arrows*). Such evidence indicates the possibility of dedifferentiation both in normal and neoplastic tissues.

Sidebar 11.6 Organization of stem cell hierarchies

In normal tissues, the cells are organized in a hierarchy, such as that depicted in Figure 11.20B. At the apex of the hierarchy is a stem cell, one of whose daughters remains a stem cell, while the other daughter exits the stem cell state and initiates a program of differentiation. (Because this particular cell division yields two phenotypically distinct daughters, it is often termed *asymmetrical*, in contrast to most cell divisions, which generate two phenotypically identical daughters and are therefore termed *symmetrical*.) The daughter cell that is formed directly by division of the stem cell and has exited the stem cell state is often termed a transit-amplifying cell, also termed a progenitor cell (see Figure 11.20B). Such cells are present in many normal tissues and represent intermediates between stem cells and their fully differentiated descendants. In addition, in certain tissues, transit-amplifying/progenitor cells may pass through a large succession of symmetrical cell divisions before their descendants eventually become fully differentiated. Hence, the initially formed transit-amplifying/progenitor cell can spawn dozens if not hundreds of differentiated progeny, which means that (1) the stem cell needs to divide only once in order to generate a large flock of fully differentiated descendants; (2) the stem cell may therefore divide only periodically rather than continually, even in a tissue in which differentiated cells are continually being lost and replenished; and (3) the great majority of ongoing cell divisions within a tissue are associated with the mitotically active transit-amplifying cells and not the stem cells.

This scheme of normal tissue organization has been appropriated by researchers attempting to understand the organization of the neoplastic cells within a tumor. Thus, the tumor-initiating cell (TIC, that is, one capable of seeding the outgrowth of a tumor), often termed a cancer stem cell (CSC), is self-renewing and has the ability to generate the countless neoplastic progeny that together constitute a tumor. Although the CSC and its progeny are genetically identical, the progeny cells have also lost tumor-initiating ability during the course of their initial differentiation. Indeed, as the details of the cellular programs that govern the CSC state are elucidated, it becomes increasingly apparent that these CSC programs are organized in a fashion that is similar to those operating in the corresponding normal tissues, that is, tumors do not

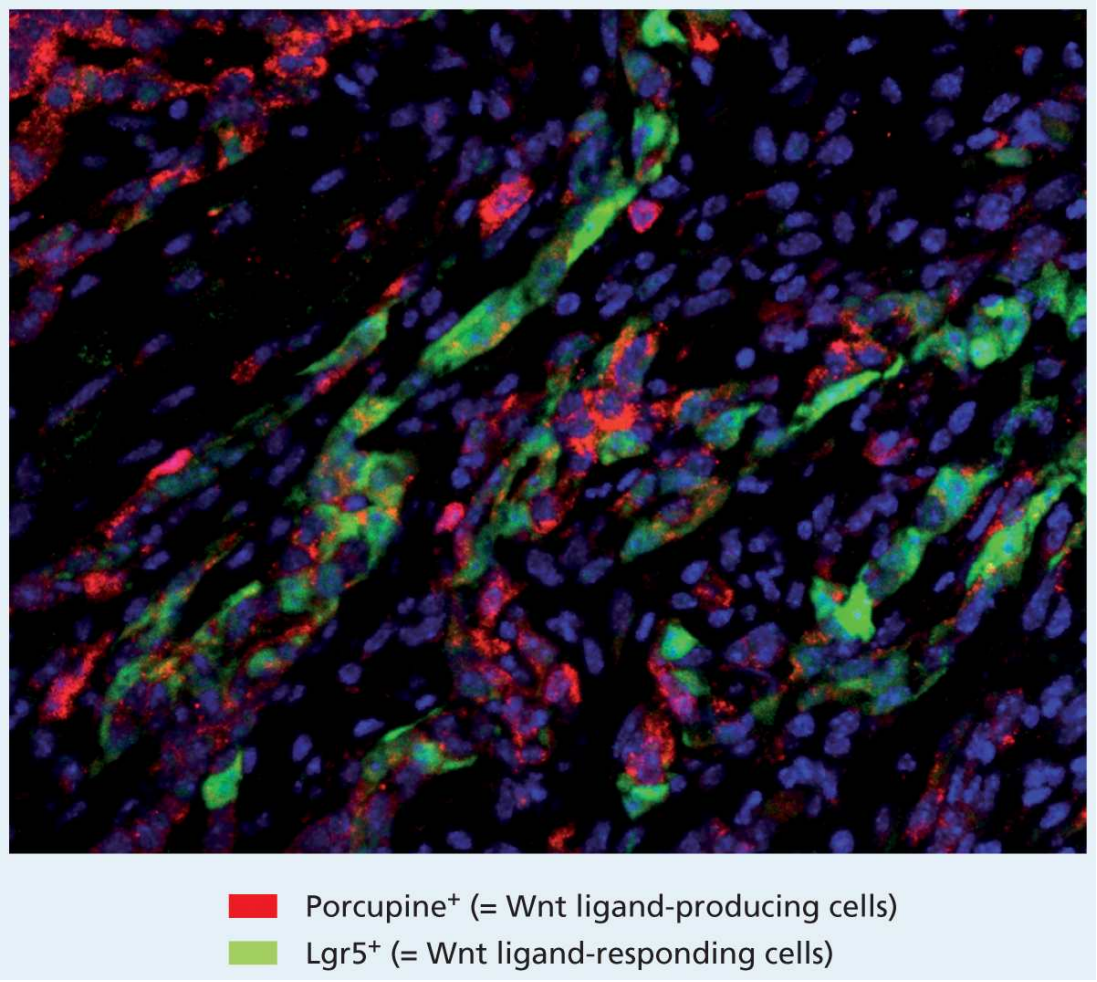
invent new stem cell programs but simply appropriate or modify ones operating in their corresponding normal tissues-of-origin.

The hierarchical scheme depicted in Figure 11.20B must surely be amended to reflect what is known and not known about the cell types that co-exist within individual tumors. For example, the existence of transit-amplifying/progenitor populations within populations of neoplastic cells is not documented. Similarly, the entrance of more differentiated neoplastic progeny into post-mitotic states remains a matter of speculation. Finally, there is evidence that the SC program operating in normal epithelial tissues is modified in derived carcinomas into a SC program that is operative in such tissues during the course of wound repair (**Sidebar 11.7**).

Sidebar 11.7 Conditions required for stem cell maintenance

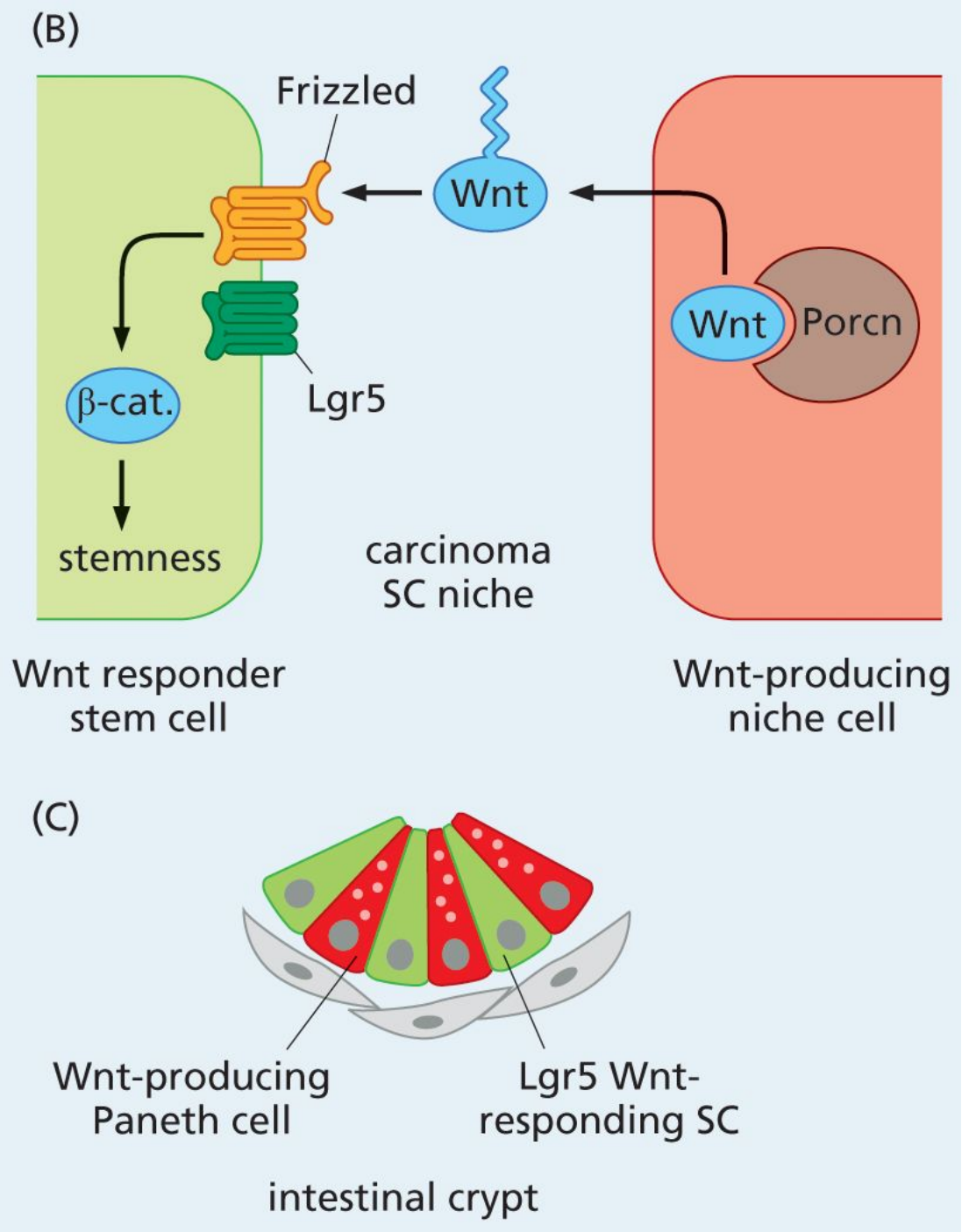
The continued residence of normal stem cells in the SC state generally depends on their continued localization in specialized tissue microcompartments, termed stem cell niches, in which the niche-forming cells, acting together with specialized extracellular matrix (ECM), provide paracrine signals to support and sustain the SCs in the SC state; such niche-forming cells represent cell types that are distinct from those of the SCs. In the context of the normal intestinal crypts, as an example (see Figure 7.20B), the SCs reside side by side with Paneth cells, which provide them with some of the paracrine signals required for continued residence in the SC state. Most important among these are Wnt3 ligands (see Figure 5.18).

It is less clear how the neoplastic CSCs maintain their residence in the SC state; one possible mechanism derives from the actions of autocrine signaling of the sort first illustrated in Figure 5.8C. Such signaling affords the continuous maintenance of a phenotypic state through the actions of self-sustaining, positive-feedback loops. An alternative scenario has become even more likely in light of work completed in recent years studying a mouse model of lung adenocarcinoma. In these tumors, it is clear that progenitor carcinoma cells can assume two distinct functional states. One cell type displays the cell-surface Frizzled (Fzd) proteins that operate as receptors for canonical Wnt ligands, which have long been known to be critical for SC function (see Figure 5.18). These Fzd receptors operate together with LRP5/6 co-receptor proteins and the ancillary Lgr5 cell-surface protein that amplifies Wnt binding signaling; indeed, display of Lgr5 seems closely tied to the SC state and serves as a specific marker of various types of epithelial SCs. A second type of carcinoma cell displays intracellular Porcupine protein, which functions to attach lipid tails post-translationally to recently synthesized Wnt proteins, thereby preparing them for secretion into the extracellular space. These two cell types (displaying either the Lgr5 or Porcupine marker) reside in close juxtaposition in the lung adenocarcinomas (**Figure 11.21A**).



A fluorescence microscopy image. It shows many dark blue nuclei but also several bands of bright red and green running at an angle through the image.

(A)



A diagram of a W n t responder stem cell and a nearby W n t producing niche cell. Within the niche cell, a W n t detaches from Porcupine and makes its way out of the cell, sprouts a zigzaggy extension, and then binds to a Frizzled receptor on the stem cell in the presence of L g r 5. The activated receptor promotes beta catenin, which promotes continued stemness.

The bottom of an intestinal crypt, where w n t producing paneth cells and L g 5 responding stem cells alternate in an upside down fan pattern.

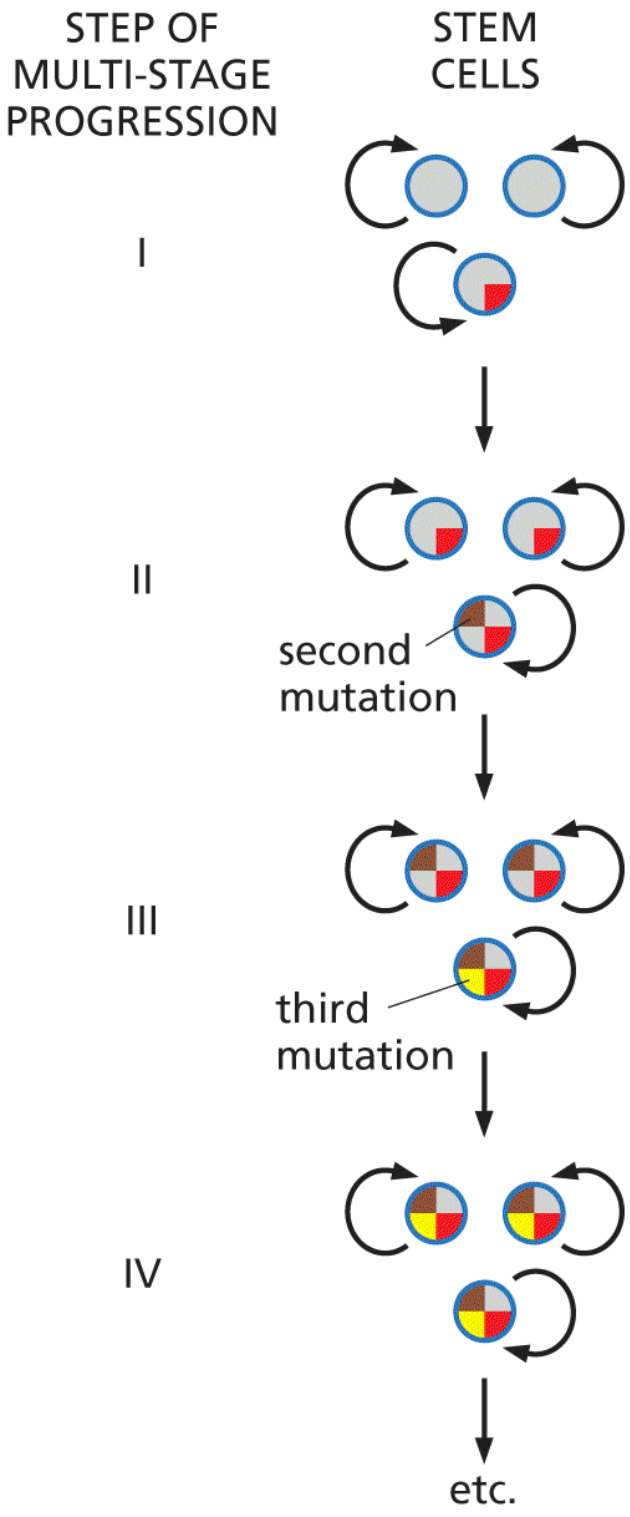
Figure 11.21Tumors may deploy niche-forming cells to sustain the cancer stem cells (A) The carcinoma cells formed in a transgenic mouse model of lung adenocarcinoma were analyzed for their expression of the Lgr5 epithelial stem-cell marker (*green*) or, alternatively, for expression of the Porcupine enzyme (*red*), which indicates the presence of cells synthesizing and releasing Wnt proteins. Because normal stem cells reside in a niche that is created, in part, by cells secreting canonical Wnt proteins and such stem cells depend on Wnt proteins to sustain their residence in the stem-cell state, such a niche-stem cell interaction is presumed to operate as well in the adenocarcinomas being analyzed here and illustrated in panel B. (C) The close juxtaposition of normal stem cells and niche-forming cells operates as well in the intestinal crypts (see Figure 6.19C). In the latter case, the Wnt-secreting niche-forming cells are Paneth cells, which exert other functions as well in these crypts. β cat.—β-catenin; Porcn— porcupine. (A and B, adapted from T. Tammela, F.J. Sanchez-Rivera, N.M. Cetinbas et al. *Nature* 545:355–359, 2017. With permission from Nature.)

To summarize, Porcupine serves as a good marker for niche-forming, Wnt-secreting cells, whereas Lgr5 functions as a good marker of the SCs that depend on the secreted Wnt protein for their stemness. Moreover, it is clear that oligopotent progenitor cells in these tumors differentiate to generate both the SC niche-forming cells as well as the CSCs that reside in these niches (Figure 11.21B). This is strikingly reminiscent of the situation operating in the normal intestinal crypt (Figure 11.21C) where a common progenitor cell generates both the Paneth cells that operate as niche-forming cells as well as the SCs that depend on residing in the Paneth-generated niches (see Figure 7.20B).

An additional dimension of complexity derives from observations made in both normal and neoplastic epithelial cells that the hierarchy depicted in Figure 11.20B does not operate in a rigid fashion. Thus, there is clear evidence in both normal epithelial tissues and in their neoplastic derivatives that non-SCs, such as transit-amplifying cells, can *dedifferentiate* backward into SCs under certain conditions (see Figure 11.20C, *red arrows*). This holds implications for the identities of cellular genomes that are objects of mutation during multi-step tumor development (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.6**). In normal tissues, this dedifferentiation may be triggered by the depletion of cells from the normal SC compartment, resulting in the upward pointing arrow in this figure and the replenishment of missing SCs. Precisely how such dedifferentiation processes are regulated is poorly understood. These phenomena suggest an additional notion that is yet to be documented: that epithelial cell populations, independent of their state of neoplastic transformation, spontaneously

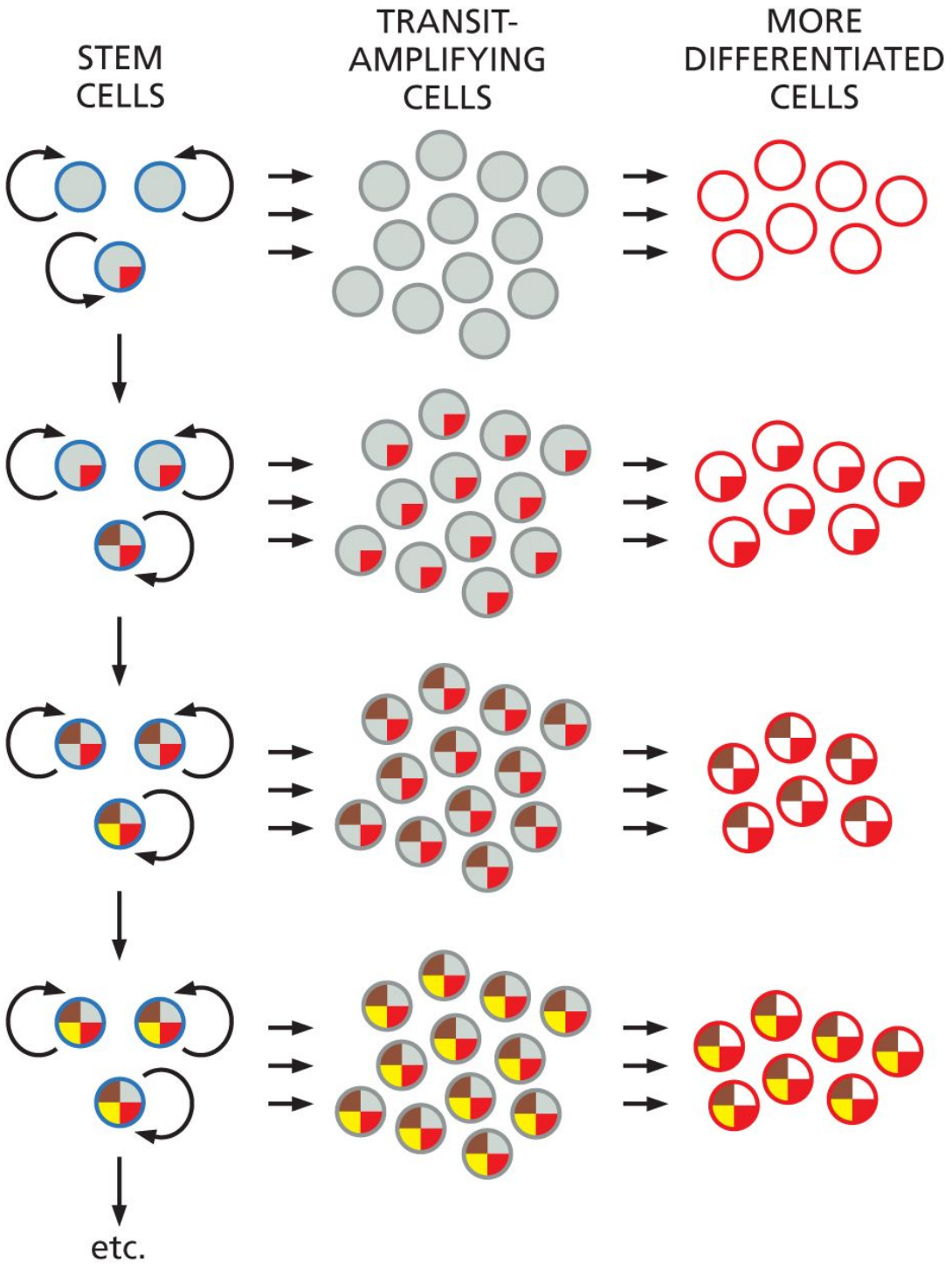
organize themselves into hierarchies of the sort depicted in Figure 11.20B and that phenotypic plasticity (that is, an ability to transition between alternative phenotypic states) is essential to create and maintain such hierarchies.

The existence of these hierarchies creates a new dimension of complexity within individual tumors. If virtually all epithelial cell populations organize themselves in this fashion, as speculated here (see Sidebar 11.7), it becomes likely that stem cell hierarchies are established within each of the cell populations that are formed during each of the multiple phases of multi-step tumor progression. Previously, we drew a linear, one-dimensional progression from a normal cell to a tumor cell (**Figure 11.22A**). Now, with this newer information in hand, it seems more appropriate to describe multi-step tumor progression in the form of a two-dimensional map, with the SCs formed at each stage of tumor progression spawning multiple distinct subpopulations of more and less differentiated cells (Figure 11.22B).



Four numbered steps in the multi-stage progression of a tumor. In step 1, a single mutation arises during stem cell reproduction. In step 2, a second mutation arises in one of several cells that all carry the first mutation. In step

3, a third mutation arises in one of several cells that all carry the first two mutations. In step 4, many stem cells now carry all three mutations.
(A)



The same four steps as in Part A, but additionally at each step many transit-amplifying cells are created, carrying no mutations, one mutation, two mutations, or all three mutations. Each group of transit-amplifying cells produces more differentiated cells carrying the corresponding number of mutations.

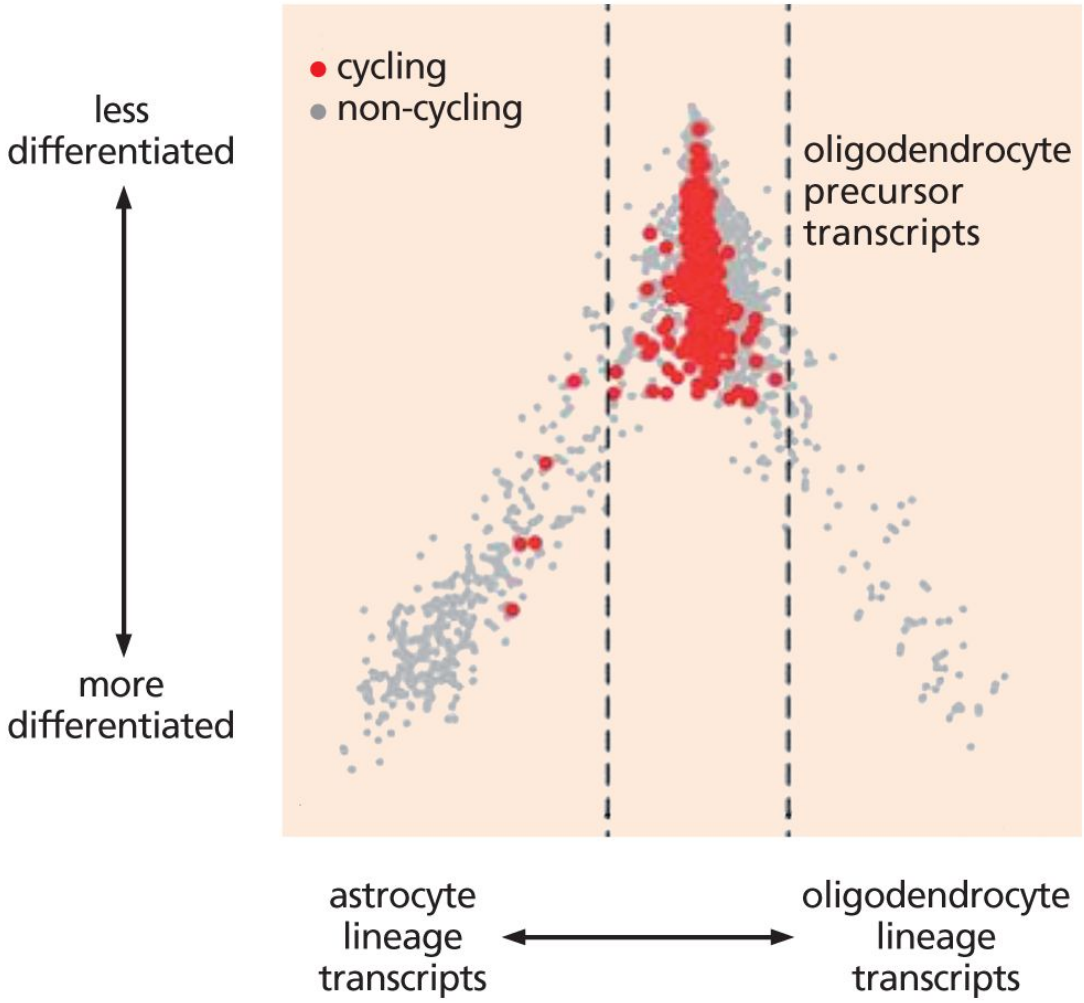
(B)

Figure 11.22 Multiple alternative phenotypic states at different stages of tumor progression (A) The scheme of multi-step evolution operating during tumor progression depicted in Figure 11.14 can be simplified graphically to indicate a linear succession of cell populations that succeed one another during this progression. Each of these states is defined by a distinct set of genetic and cell-heritable epigenetic alterations. (B) However, if epithelial cell populations (in the case of carcinomas) tend to spontaneously organize in a hierarchical fashion, as illustrated in Figure 11.20B, then the cell populations constituting *each stage* of tumor progression are also likely to self-organize into a similar hierarchical fashion. (This notion is further supported by the fact that fully normal and fully neoplastic epithelial cell populations both have stem cell subpopulations, providing strong indication that all of the intermediate cell populations formed during multi-step tumor progression will also contain subpopulations of stem cells.)

The existence of cancer stem cells is of more than academic interest. Because they may reside in a more mesenchymal phenotypic state, they are often more resistant to conventional chemo- and radiotherapies, as described in Chapter 17, and to more recently developed checkpoint immunotherapies, as described in Chapters 15 and 16. As a consequence, these cells may survive initial treatment, persist, and ultimately generate the new tumors whose appearance signals clinical relapse. In addition, there is clear evidence indicating that the cells that seed metastases at distant sites in the body must also possess tumor-initiating function, that is, they must operate as cancer stem cells (described in Chapter 14).

In fact, the involvement of CSCs in tumor pathogenesis suggests yet another dimension of complexity that we have not yet mentioned, even in passing: like normal SCs, CSCs may exhibit an ability to launch cells into multiple distinct differentiation lineages, that is, they may function like oligopotent stem cells. Such phenotypic diversification, if it occurs, should operate entirely independently of the genetic diversification that accompanies high-grade tumor progression and illustrated in Figure 11.16.

Recent observations using single-cell RNA sequencing techniques have indeed demonstrated that CSCs within individual tumors can indeed reside in hierarchies that lead, via phenotypic branching to generate multiple, phenotypically distinct subpopulations of cancer cells (**Figure 11.23**). As seen in this image, cells within a pediatric glioma could be resolved using single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq) into three populations—a highly proliferative stem-like cell subpopulation and two distinct subpopulations that were generated by the stem cells and contained cells expressing transcriptomes typical of one or another differentiated normal cell lineage of the central nervous system; these more differentiated cells were nonproliferative and ostensibly post-mitotic. Such depictions of CSC differentiation have been extended by compelling demonstrations of the role of SCs in the formation and growth of skin papillomas (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.7**).



An image somewhat like a scatter plot. In the vertical direction, cells are more differentiated at the bottom and less differentiated at the top. The horizontal direction represents a continuum with astrocyte lineage transcripts on the left and

oligodendrocyte lineage transcripts on the right. In the middle is a zone characterized by oligodendrocyte precursor transcripts. The dots form an inverted vee pattern, with gray dots predominating at the left and right ends, representing non-cycling cells, and red dots predominating in the central peak, representing cycling cells.

Figure 11.23 Glioma stem-like cells spawn cells that enter into distinct differentiation states The transcripts present in the cells of a subtype of glioma that are formed in the central nervous systems of young children have been analyzed by single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq). These cells fell into three distinct subpopulations based on their expression of a series of cell-specific transcripts. These included stem-like cells that exhibited transcripts characteristic of oligodendrocyte precursors, as well subpopulations that expressed, to differing extents, transcriptomes that were typical of differentiated cells of either the astrocyte or the oligodendrocyte lineage. Increased expression of these lineage-specific transcriptomes is plotted as increasing horizontal distances, *rightward or leftward*, from the less-differentiated precursors. Cells with less-differentiated transcriptomes are localized between the two dashed lines. Actively proliferating cells are indicated as *red dots*, whereas nonproliferating cells are indicated as *gray dots*. (From M.G. Filbin, I. Tirosh, V. Hovestadt et al., *Science* 360:331–335, 2018. With permission from AAAS.)

Moreover, as discussed in great detail in Chapters 13 and 14, the cell-biological program termed the epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) operates epigenetically to drive carcinoma cells into a mixture of cell states that can be arrayed along a spectrum that ranges from highly epithelial to highly mesenchymal phenotypes. Here, once again, we see an example of a nongenetic program that profoundly affects the behavior of cancer cells but is not reflected in the "genetic biographies" discussed in Section 11.3. When taken together, these various considerations tell us that truly accurate depictions of multi-stage tumor pathogenesis will need to be mapped in a multi-dimensional space encompassing both genetically and epigenetically governed traits. In addition, as discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 11.8**, the Darwinian model, on which many of the arguments in this section are based, remains unproven in many of its aspects.

A final complication has not even been explored here: recently acquired experimental evidence indicates clearly that within an individual tumor, different clonal subpopulations of tumor cells actively *collaborate* with one another rather than *compete*. Such collaboration flies in the face of the traditional model of Darwinian evolution, which is firmly grounded on mechanisms of competition between individual members of a species which allow more fit subpopulations to outgrow and eventually eliminate closely related, less-fit subpopulations. At present it remains unclear how

often such interclonal competition dictates the growth and lethality of various types of human tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tumorigenic
: (1) Referring to the ability of cells to form tumors when introduced into appropriate animal hosts. (2) Less commonly, pertaining to an agent such as a tumor virus that imparts this ability to cells.

tumorigenicity
: The ability of cells to serve as founders of new tumors, often gauged experimentally by transplanting cells into appropriate hosts.

transit-amplifying cell
: A relatively undifferentiated cell that is initially generated by division of a stem cell and is capable of exponential proliferation for a limited number of successive cell generations before spawning highly differentiated progeny, which in many tissues become post-mitotic. *See also* **progenitor**.

progenitor cell
: A cell derived from a stem cell whose descendants undergo a limited number of proliferative divisions before undergoing end-stage differentiation. *Also termed* **transit-amplifying cell**.

cancer stem cell
: A neoplastic cell that resides within a tumor, is able to both self-renew and generate non-stem-cell progeny, and can be defined experimentally by its ability to seed a tumor when implanted in a suitable host such as a mouse. *Also termed* **tumor-initiating cell**.

niche
: A functional locale that supports the survival and proliferation of specialized cells. Specific niches support the proliferation and survival of stem cells in normal tissues and, quite possibly, cancer stem cells in tumors.

Paneth cell
: Secretory cells that reside in the bottom of intestinal crypts and also help to create a stem-cell niche for adjacent intestinal stem cells. *See also* **niche**.

oligopotent
: Referring to the ability of a less differentiated cell, such as a stem cell, to differentiate into two more distinct progeny.

plasticity

Describing an ability to readily transit between alternative states, such as distinct phenotypic states.

OceanofPDF.com

11.8 Multiple lines of evidence reveal that normal cells are resistant to transformation by a single mutated gene

The description of multi-step tumorigenesis presented in Figure 11.10 is satisfying because it seems to provide a clear and definitive rationale of how multi-step tumor pathogenesis proceeds. In truth, however, it fails in at least two important ways. First, it describes genetic alterations as *correlates* of histopathological changes without proving *causality*; that is, it fails to demonstrate that the accumulated mutant alleles are actually responsible driving tumorigenesis forward. And second, it provides no explanation of why so many mutant genes are required for tumorigenesis to reach completion.

In the end, these shortcomings could only be addressed by intervening experimentally in the process of tumorigenesis, more specifically, by reconstructing it in detail in the laboratory. To begin, the introduction of well-defined genetic alterations into previously fully normal cells offered the prospect of revealing with precision how specific changes in cell genotype function to create the neoplastic cell phenotype.

In fact, certain early experiments (described in Chapter 4) seemed to indicate that the genetic rules governing the transformation of normal mammalian cells into tumorigenic cells are actually extremely simple. Recall, for example, the experiment in which a mutant, activated H-*ras* oncogene from a human bladder carcinoma was introduced via transfection into previously normal NIH 3T3 mouse fibroblasts (see Section 4.1 and Figure 4.1). Having acquired the mutant *ras* oncogene, these cells became fully transformed, to the point that they were capable of seeding tumors in appropriate host mice.

This behavior of the *ras*-transformed NIH 3T3 cells indicated that the requirements for transforming these cells were quite minimal. A single genetic alteration of these cells —the acquisition of a *ras* oncogene—sufficed to convert them to a transformed, tumorigenic state. Moreover, the mutation that originally created the *ras* oncogene was itself a simple point mutation. Taken together, these findings suggested that a point mutation affecting one of the NIH 3T3 cells' own native H-*ras* proto-oncogenes would yield the identical outcome—full transformation to a neoplastic state. In one stroke, a point mutation should transform a normal cell into a tumor cell.

We know from our earlier discussions of human tumor cell genetics that this conclusion—at least in the case of human cells—cannot be correct. We can verify this conclusion with a simple calculation. Given the rate at which specific point mutations occur randomly in the human genome, the number of point mutations accumulated per cell division, and the number of cell divisions occurring each day in the body ($\sim 3 \times 10^{11}$), some have estimated that several thousand new, point-mutated *ras* oncogenes are created accidentally every day throughout the human body and that the total body burden of cells carrying *ras* oncogenes must number in the millions. Clearly, human beings are not afflicted with a comparable number of new tumors each day.

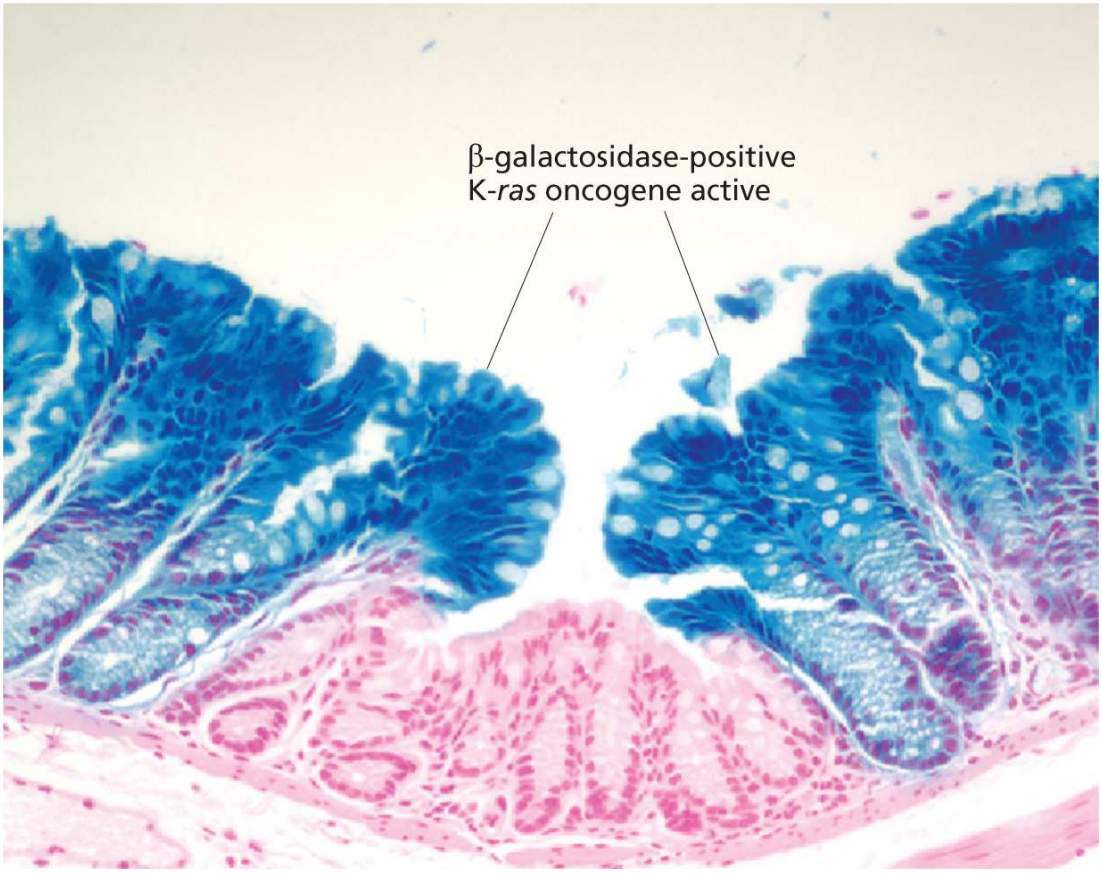
Something is terribly wrong here, either in these calculations or in the transfection experiments that were relied upon to gauge the genetic complexity of the transformation process. In the end, the flaw in in these calculations could be found in the design of the particular experiments, specifically in the "normal" cells that were used in the transformation assay. The NIH 3T3 cells, as it turns out, are not truly normal, because they constitute a cell line—a population of cells that has been adapted to grow in culture and can be propagated indefinitely (see Section 10.1). This history implies that these cells at some point underwent one or more genetic or epigenetic alterations that enabled them to grow in culture and to proliferate in an immortalized fashion (see Chapter 10).

As a consequence, investigators began in the early 1980s to examine the consequences of introducing a *ras* oncogene into truly normal cells—those from rat, mouse, or hamster embryos that had been recently explanted from living tissues and propagated *in vitro* for only a short period of time before being used in gene transfer experiments. Such cells—sometimes termed primary cells—were unlikely to have undergone the alterations that seem to have affected NIH 3T3 cells during their many-months-long adaptation to tissue culture and attendant immortalization.

The results obtained with primary rat and hamster cells differed from those observed previously with NIH 3T3 cells: These primary cells were not susceptible to *ras*-induced transformation. Control experiments left no doubt that these cells had indeed acquired the transfected oncogene and were able to express the encoded Ras oncoprotein, but somehow they did not respond by undergoing transformation and forming foci in the Petri dish. These observations provided the first evidence that the act of adapting rodent cells to culture conditions and selecting for those that have undergone immortalization yields cells that, in a fully unanticipated fashion, also become responsive to transformation by a single introduced gene, in this case an introduced *ras* oncogene.

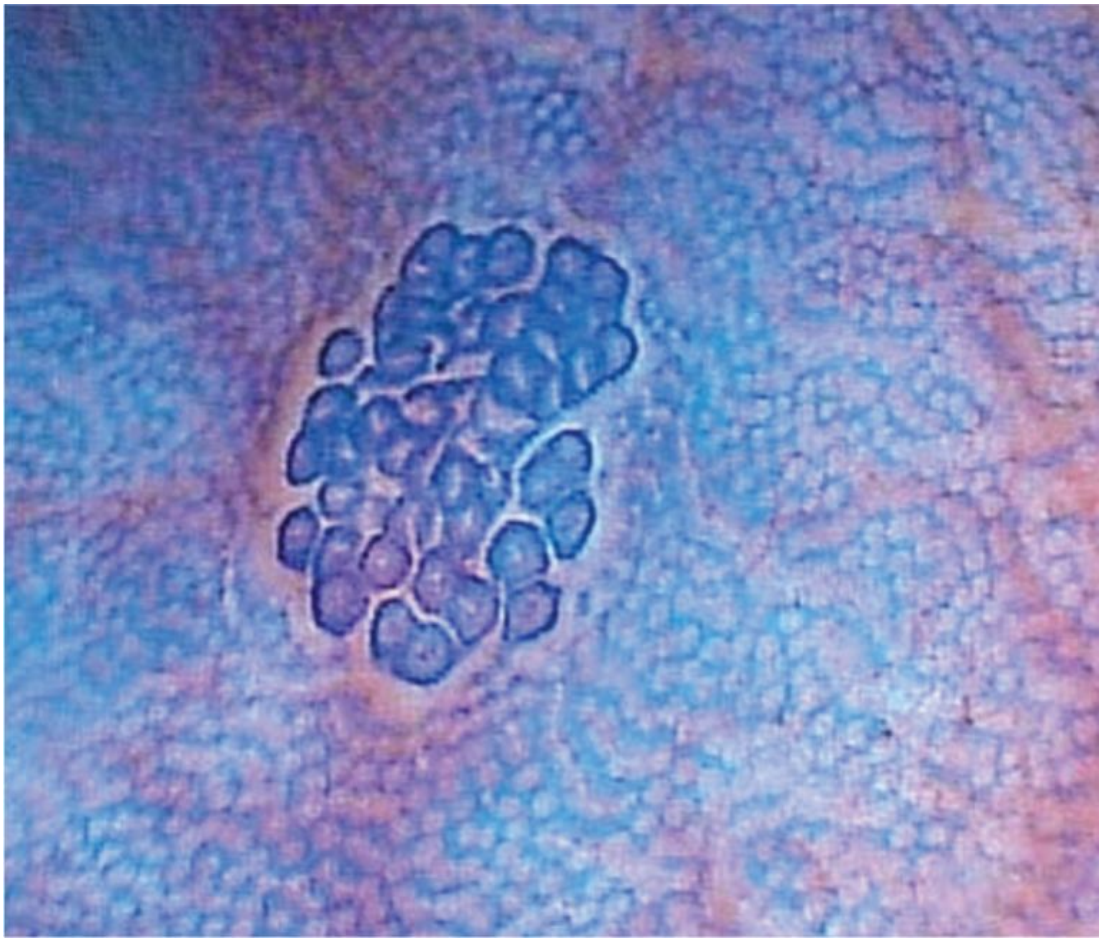
These *in vitro* experiments with primary cells have been extended by introducing activated *ras* oncogenes into the colonic epithelial cells of mice. The resulting *ras* oncogene–expressing cells create nothing more than hyperplastic epithelia, that is,

cells that are present in excessive numbers but are, in other respects, essentially normal (**Figure 11.24A**). Moreover, in a mouse model of skin carcinogenesis described later in Section 11.11, treatment with a mutagenic carcinogen can create H-*ras* oncogene–bearing cells that are detectable within a week, yet the skin remains morphologically normal for another year. In the human colon, clusters of cells bearing both the *ras* oncogene and inactivated copies of the *Apc* tumor suppressor gene form hyperplasias that are, in spite of these two alterations, incapable of forming adenomatous crypts (Figure 11.24B and **Sidebar 11.8**).



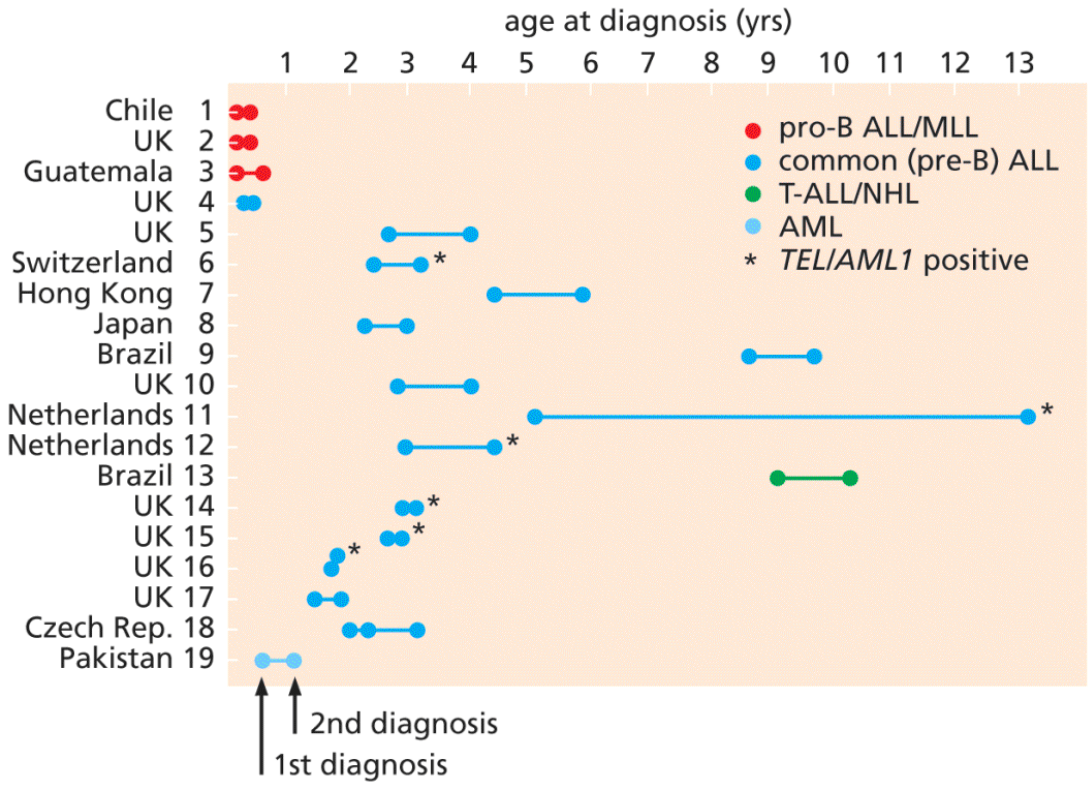
A histology image of colonic epithelial cells stained blue and pink. The blue ones are much larger, especially at the tops, but retain their normal orderly structure and arrangement.

(A)



An image of colon crypts seen from above, stained mostly blue with veins of pink. A cluster of three dozen or so crypts appear darker, with dark outlines.

(B)



A summary of data from 19 sets of twins in the U K and nine other nations who were both diagnosed with leukemia. Dots indicate the ages at which the each of the twins were diagnosed. In three twin pairs with a pro B, A L L slash M L L mutation, both diagnoses always came before age 1. In the 15 pairs with a common, pre B A L L mutation, age at first diagnosis was highly variable and the time between the first and second twin's diagnosis was variable but generally less than 2 years. Also shown are one pair sharing a T A L L slash N H L mutation, both diagnosed between ages 9 and 11, and one pair sharing an A M L mutation, both diagnosed around age 1, a few months apart. Six of the pairs have a twin that is TEL slash A M L 1 positive.

(C)

Figure 11.24 One or two oncogenic lesions do not suffice to generate full-blown tumors (A) A mouse germ line was re-engineered to create colonic epithelial cells in which both a mutant K-*ras* oncogene and the β-galactosidase gene could be activated in scattered cells by an infecting adenovirus. As indicated here, colonic epithelial cells in which both β-galactosidase (*blue*) and the K-*ras* oncogene (*not visible*) have become expressed create localized regions of hyperplasia in which the epithelial cells are otherwise normal, indicating that the *ras* oncogene on its own does not suffice to transform these cells into a tumorigenic state. (B) A cluster of aberrant crypt foci (ACFs) in the human colon

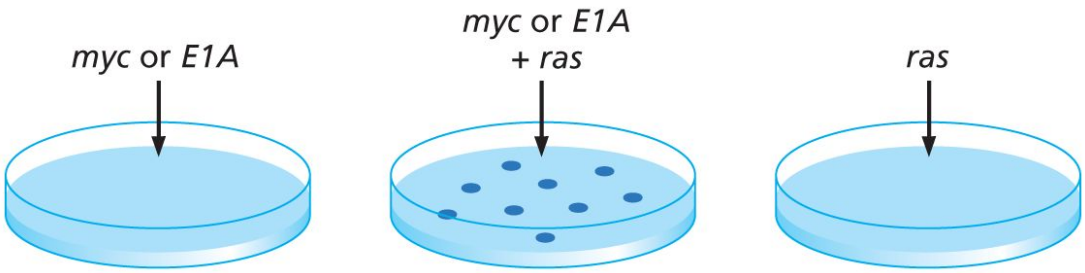
are clearly revealed by colonoscopy. ACFs like this one frequently carry an inactivated *APC* tumor suppressor gene together with an activated K-*ras* oncogene; they may eventually progress into adenomatous polyps, which themselves are still not full-fledged colon carcinomas. Hence, even two oncogenic genetic lesions, acting together, generate human cells that are still several steps short of being fully transformed. (C) Monozygotic (identical) twin pairs have been documented throughout the world in which both twins develop the same type of leukemia. The leukemias invariably share a common chromosomal marker or mutation, indicating that they derive from the same clone of initiated cells that somehow became shared between the twins. Although many of these leukemias are diagnosed at quite different postnatal ages (*dots*), these initiating somatic mutations, which occurred *in utero*, were not, on their own, sufficient to trigger the formation of a clinically apparent leukemia. The labels (*top right*) and the associated colors denote different subtypes of leukemia identified by distinctive gene markers. (A, courtesy of K.M. Haigis and T. Jacks. B, courtesy of Y. Niitsu. C, from M.G. Greaves et al., *Blood* 102:2321–2333, 2003. With permission from American Society of Hematology.)

Sidebar 11.8 Inborn oncogenes may predispose to cancer but do not suffice to create it

Certain “experiments of nature” also support the notion that single mutations in human cells are not sufficient for the development of cancers. For example, some individuals are born carrying a germ-line mutation of the gene encoding the Kit growth factor receptor; such mutations create a constitutively active, ligand-independent Kit receptor, which functions as a potent oncoprotein. These individuals are at high risk for developing gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), but these tumors only become apparent several decades after birth, even though a constitutively active Kit oncoprotein has been functioning in many of their cells since birth (see also Sidebar 5.6). Similarly, some individuals have been documented who carry mutant H-*ras* alleles in their germ lines yet usually develop tumors only after several decades. Early childhood leukemias in monozygotic (that is, identical) twins provide equally dramatic examples of the inability of single mutations, acting on their own, to create clinically apparent tumors (Figure 11.24C).

The resistance of fully normal, primary rodent cells to *ras*-induced transformation led to an interesting question: Were there yet other oncogenes that could render these cells susceptible to transformation by *ras?* In fact, a line of human promyelocytic leukemia cells had been reported to carry both an activated N-*ras* and an activated *myc* oncogene. This finding suggested the possibility that these two cellular oncogenes were cooperating with one another to create the malignant phenotype of the leukemia

cells. Indeed, when a *myc* oncogene was introduced together with an H-*ras* oncogene into primary rat embryo fibroblasts (REFs), the cells responded by becoming morphologically transformed (**Figure 11.25**) and, more important, tumorigenic; neither of these oncogenes, on its own, could create such transformed cells. An adenovirus *E1A* oncogene could be used in place of *myc* in these transformation assays.



Three petri dishes. The left one, labeled m y c or E1A, is empty. So is the right one, labeled r a s. The middle one, labeled m y c or E1A plus r a s, has generated nine foci.

Figure 11.25 Oncogene collaboration in rodent cells *in vitro* Cultures of early-passage rat embryo fibroblasts or baby hamster kidney cells were exposed to cloned DNAs via the calcium phosphate gene transfection procedure (see Figure 4.1). Introduction of a *myc* or adenovirus *E1A* oncogene into these cells (*left*), on its own, did not yield foci of transformants, although the introduced oncogenes did facilitate the establishment of these early-passage cells in long-term culture. Introduction of an H-*ras* oncogene via transfection (*right*) also did not yield foci of transformed cells, although it did allow significant numbers of these cells to form anchorage-independent colonies when they were introduced into a semi-solid medium such as dilute agar. However, the simultaneous introduction of *ras*+*myc* or, alternatively, *ras*+*E1A* did generate foci of transformed cells that were able to form tumors when injected into syngeneic or immunocompromised hosts.

This result yielded several interesting conclusions. These two cellular oncogenes clearly affected the phenotype of rodent cells in quite different ways, because they were able to complement one another in eliciting cell transformation. Each seemed to be specialized to evoke a subset of the cellular phenotypes associated with the transformed state. For example, *ras* was able to elicit anchorage independence, a rounded, refractile appearance in the phase microscope, and loss of contact inhibition, whereas *myc* helped the cells to become immortalized and reduced somewhat their dependence on growth factors. In subsequent years it became apparent that there were yet other complementary functions of the two. Thus, the Ras oncoprotein could supplant mitogenic signals normally supplied by growth factors, re-program cell

metabolism, and suppress apoptosis. Myc, for its part, could cooperate in driving cell proliferation, and promote various phenotypes only apparent *in vivo*, notably angiogenesis, invasiveness and metastasis (described in Chapters 13 and 14).

These oncogene collaboration experiments could be extended by demonstrating other pairs of collaborating oncogenes, some of which operated *in vivo* (**Table 11.1**). Together, such observations suggested a rationale for the complex genetic steps that accompany and cause tumor formation: each of the genetic changes provides the nascent tumor cell with one or more of the cell-biological traits needed in order to become tumorigenic (**Table 11.2**). These unique contributions seem to derive from the ability of each of these oncogenes to perturb a specific regulatory circuit or set of regulatory circuits within a cell. (Adenovirus E1A oncoprotein could supplant a Myc oncoprotein of entirely different structure and biochemical function, suggesting that these two proteins impinged on a common intracellular signaling circuit rather than on a common target protein within a cell; see Section 8.9.) Moreover, these experiments provided indication that cell proliferation and cell survival are governed by two or more distinct intracellular regulatory circuits, all of which must be perturbed before the cell will become tumorigenic. In the decade that followed, other pairs of collaborating oncogenes became apparent through research in a variety of experimental models (see Table 11.1).

Table 11.1 Examples of collaborating oncogenes *in vitro* and in *vivo*

"*ras*-like" oncogene[a]	**"*myc*-like" oncogene**[a]	**Target cell or organ**
***In vitro* transformation**		
Ras	*myc*	transfected rat embryo fibroblasts (REFs)
Ras	*E1A*	transfected rat kidney cells
Ras	SV40 *large T*	transfected REFs
Notch-1	*E1A*	transfected rat kidney cells

"*ras*-like" oncogene[a]	**"*myc*-like" oncogene**[a]	**Target cell or organ**
***In vivo* tumorigenesis**		
middle T	*large T*	polyomavirus-induced murine tumors
mil (=*raf*)	*myc*	MH2 avian leukemia virus chicken tumors
erbB	*erbA*	avian erythroblastosis virus chicken tumors
pim1	*myc*	mouse leukemia virus tumors
abl	*myc*	mouse leukemia virus tumors
Notch-1/2	*myc*	thymomas in transgenic mice
bcl-2	*myc*	follicular lymphomas in transgenic mice

Table 11.2 Physiological mechanisms of oncogene collaboration[a]

Oncogene pair	**Cell type**	**Mechanisms of action**
ras + SV40 *large T*	rat Schwann cells	*ras*: proliferation + proliferation arrest

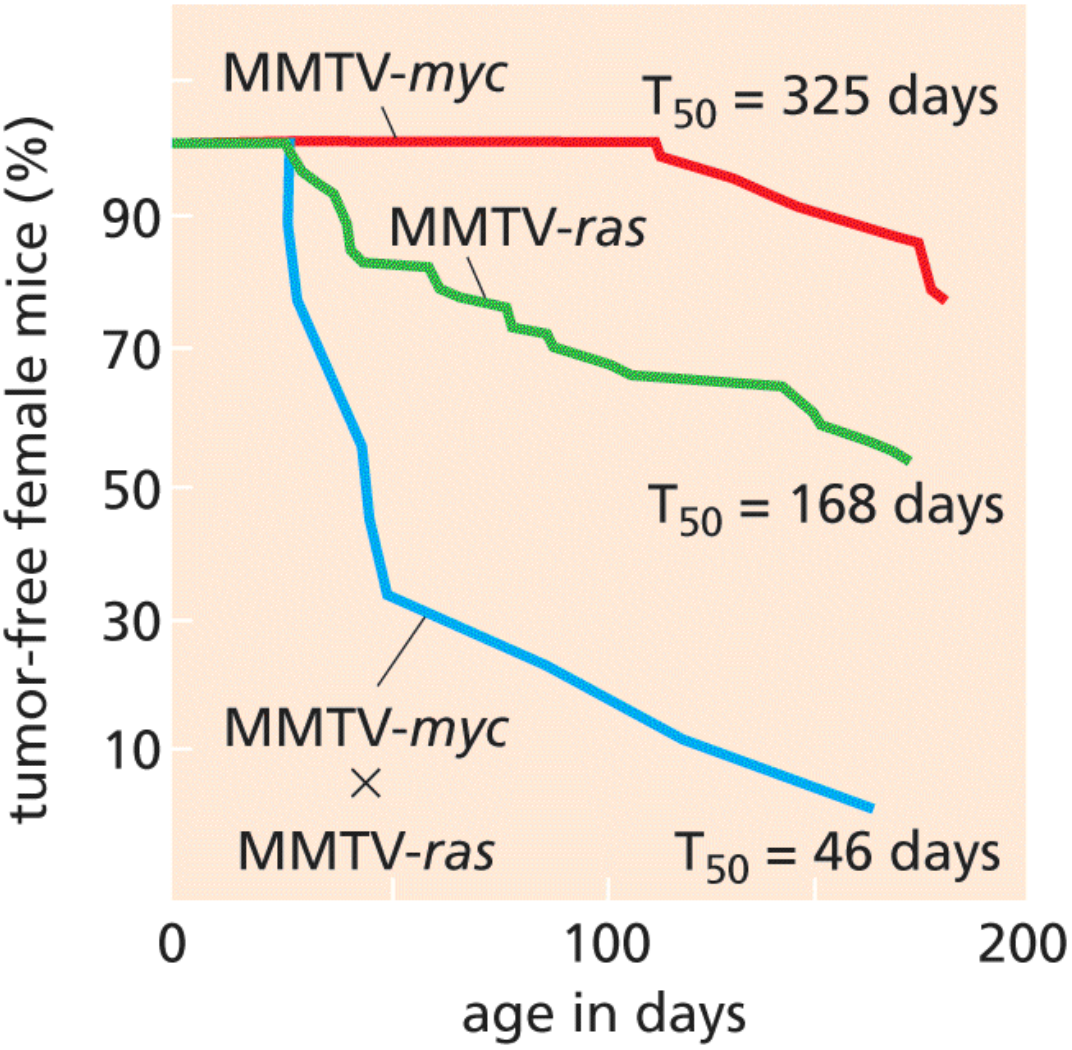
Oncogene pair	**Cell type**	**Mechanisms of action**
		large T: prevents proliferation arrest and reduces mitogen requirement
ras + *E1A*	mouse embryo fibroblasts	*ras*: proliferation and senescence
		E1A: prevents senescence
erbB + *erbA*	chicken erythroblasts	*erbB*: induces GF-independent proliferation
		erbA: blocks differentiation
TGF-α + *myc*	mouse mammary epithelial cells	*TGF*-α: induces proliferation and blocks apoptosis
		myc: induces proliferation and apoptosis
v-*sea* + v-*ski*	avian erythroblasts	v-*sea*: induces proliferation
		v-*ski*: blocks differentiation
bcl-2 + *myc*	rat fibroblasts	*bcl-2*: blocks apoptosis
		myc: induces proliferation and apoptosis

Oncogene pair	**Cell type**	**Mechanisms of action**
ras + *myc*	rat fibroblasts	*ras*: induces anchorage independence
		myc: induces immortalization
raf + *myc*	chicken macrophages	*raf*: induces growth factor secretion
		myc: stimulates proliferation
src + *myc*	rat adrenocortical cells	*src*: induces anchorage and serum independence
		myc: prolongs proliferation

These demonstrations of oncogene collaboration *in vitro* required extension and confirmation through *in vivo* studies involving mouse models of cancer pathogenesis. In many rodent models of cancer pathogenesis, tumors can be triggered by exposure of an animal to a mutagenic carcinogen, which acts in a random (sometimes termed stochastic) fashion to generate the mutant cellular alleles leading to cancer (as an example, see Section 11.11). An alternative to such experimental protocols can be achieved through the insertion of an already-mutant, activated oncogene into the germ line of a laboratory mouse, thereby guaranteeing expression of this transgene in some of its tissues. In practice, the expression of this oncogenic allele must be confined to a small subset of tissues in the mouse, using a tissue-specific transcriptional promoter to drive transgene expression. (If its expression were allowed, alternatively, in all tissues, including those of the developing embryo, it is likely that embryogenesis would be so profoundly disrupted that the developing fetus would die long before the end of gestation.)

An early version of this strategy for creating cancer-prone, transgenic mice (see, for example, Section 9.13) involved the insertion of oncogenic alleles of the *ras* and the

myc genes into the mouse germ line (**Figure 11.26**). In one influential set of experiments, expression of a *ras* oncogene and a *myc* oncogene were each placed under the control of the transcriptional promoter of mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV), a retrovirus that specifically targets mammary tissues. Such hybrid genes could then be inserted into the mouse germ line, each becoming a transgene whose MMTV promoter ensured expression at significant levels only in mammary glands.



A line graph with percent of female mice that are tumor-free on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. Three mutant mice strains are shown. All three remain 100 percent tumor free for about 30 days. After that, the percentage of tumor free M M T V m y c cross M M T V r a s mice plummets, to 50 percent in just 46 days. After that the curve continues to decline, but less steeply. The percentage of tumor free M M T V r a s mice falls less rapidly, reaching the 50 percent mark at 168 days. M M T V m y c mice remain tumor free much longer

than the other two strains, out past 100 days. After that, the curve drops but does not hit 50 percent until 325 days.

Figure 11.26 Oncogene collaboration in transgenic, cancer-prone mice The ability to create transgenic mice (see Figure 9.20A) made it possible to determine whether the *myc* and *ras* oncogenes are able to collaborate *in vivo* as well as *in vitro* (see Figure 11.25). Use of the MMTV (mouse mammary tumor virus) transcriptional promoter to drive expression of each oncogene ensured expression of both transgenes largely in the mammary glands. Transgenic mice carrying the MMTV-*myc* and the MMTV-*ras* transgene were bred to create double-transgenic mice carrying both transgenes. The incidence of mammary carcinomas in the three strains of mice—those carrying the MMTV-*myc* transgene only (*red curve*), the MMTV-*ras* transgene only (*green curve*), or both transgenes (*blue curve*)—was tracked over many months. The percentage of tumor-free mice (*ordinate*) is plotted vs. the age of the various strains of mice. "T_{50}" indicates the number of days required for one-half of the mice of a particular genotype to develop detectable mammary carcinomas. (From E. Sinn et al., *Cell* 49:465–475, 1987. With permission from Elsevier.)

As anticipated, the presence of either one of these oncogenic transgenes in the mouse germ line predisposed mice to eventual development of breast cancer. However, in spite of the expression of either a *ras* or a *myc* oncogene in most if not all of the mammary epithelial cells of these mice, their mammary glands showed either minimal morphologic changes (in the case of the *myc* transgene) or at most hyperplasia (in the case of the *ras* transgene). Moreover, breast tumors were observed only beginning at 4 weeks of age (for the MMTV-*ras* mice) and 12 weeks (for the MMTV-*myc* mice)—significantly long latency periods (see Figure 11.26). This confirmed that the presence of a single oncogene within a normal cell in living tissue was not, on its own, sufficient to transform this cell into a tumor cell. Instead, the kinetics of breast cancer formation in these mice pointed to the necessary involvement of one or more additional stochastic events before either the *ras* or *myc* oncogene–bearing mammary cells could progress to a tumorigenic state.

Double-transgenic mice that carried both MMTV-*ras* and MMTV-*myc* transgenes were created through mating between the two transgenic strains described above. These double-transgenic mice contracted tumors at a greatly accelerated rate and at high frequency compared with mice inheriting only one of these transgenes (see Figure 11.26). Therefore, the two oncogenic transgenes could collaborate *in vivo* to generate tumors, paralleling and corroborating the conclusions of the *in vitro* experiments described above.

Interestingly, even with two mutant oncogenes expressed in the great majority of mammary cells from early in development, tumors did not appear in these double-transgenic mice soon after birth but instead were seen with significant delay. Hence, the concomitant expression of two powerful oncogenes was still not sufficient to fully transform mouse mammary epithelial cells (MECs); instead, these cells clearly required at least one additional stochastic event, ostensibly a somatic mutation, before they would proliferate like full-blown cancer cells. (A hint about the identity of this third, stochastic event has come from careful analysis of rat cells that have been transformed *in vitro* by the *ras* + *myc* protocol; sooner or later, such cells usually acquire a mutation or a promoter methylation that leads to inactivation of the p53 tumor suppressor pathway; see Chapter 9.)

Note that the collaborative actions of transgenic oncogenes were already mentioned earlier, when we read of the synergistic actions of *myc* and *bcl-2* transgenic oncogenes in promoting lymphomagenesis (see Figure 9.20). In this case, the benefit of *bcl-2* (and its *bcl-*x_L cousin) derives largely from its anti-apoptotic effects. This work illustrates that oncogenes can collaborate through a variety of cell-physiological mechanisms to promote tumor formation, the point made in Table 11.2.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

primary cells
: (1) Literally, cells that have been recently explanted from living tissue into culture vessels and have not been propagated thereafter in culture. (2) More commonly, cells that have been explanted from living tissue into culture dishes and have been subjected to a relatively small number of successive *in vitro* passages thereafter.

stochastic
: Referring to an event that occurs randomly with a certain probability rather than in a precisely predetermined fashion.

transgene
: (1) A cloned gene that has been inserted experimentally into the germ line of an animal, often that of a laboratory mouse. (2) Less commonly, any experimentally altered gene in the germ line.

transgenic
: (1) Referring to an animal or breed of animal whose germ line has been experimentally altered, usually through the insertion of a cloned gene. (2) Less commonly, referring to an animal or breed of animal whose germ line has been altered through any of a variety of genetic manipulations, including the addition of a cloned gene or the alteration of a resident gene through homologous recombination or other procedure.

transgene
: (1) A cloned gene that has been inserted experimentally into the germ line of an animal, often that of a laboratory mouse. (2) Less commonly, any experimentally altered gene in the germ line.

latency
: The time period that defines the delay before a process reaches completion and becomes manifest or apparent.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aThe terms “*ras*-like” and “*myc*-like” refer to functional classes rather than genes encoding components of a common signaling pathway. “*ras*-like” oncogenes tend to encode components of cytoplasmic signaling cascades, whereas “*myc*-like” oncogenes tend to encode nuclear proteins.Return to reference a
- aThe terms “*ras*-like” and “*myc*-like” refer to functional classes rather than genes encoding components of a common signaling pathway. “*ras*-like” oncogenes tend to encode components of cytoplasmic signaling cascades, whereas “*myc*-like” oncogenes tend to encode nuclear proteins.Return to reference a
- aIn each pair, the first oncogene encodes a cytoplasmic oncoprotein, whereas the second oncogene encodes a nuclear oncoprotein.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

11.9 Human cells are constructed to be highly resistant to immortalization and transformation

The biological lessons derived from studying mice and rats are usually directly transferable to understanding various aspects of human biology. Even though 80 million years may separate us from the most recent common ancestor we share with rodents, the great majority of biological and biochemical attributes of these distant cousins are present in very similar, if not identical, form in humans. The genomes of humans and rodents also seem very similar: essentially all of the roughly 20,000 protein-encoding genes discovered in the human genome have been found to have mouse orthologs. It stands to reason that the cell-biological processes of immortalization and neoplastic transformation should also be essentially identical in rodent and human cells.

The biological reality is, however, quite different. It is easy to immortalize rodent cells simply by propagating them through a relatively small number of passages *in vitro*. Spontaneously immortalized cells arise frequently and become the progenitors of cell lines, such as the NIH 3T3 cells discussed earlier (see Section 11.8). In contrast, human cells rarely, if ever, become immortalized following extended serial passaging in culture (see Chapter 10). Eventually, cultured human cells stop growing and become senescent, and spontaneously immortalized cell clones do not emerge. Moreover, attempts over a period of 15 years to experimentally transform human cells via transfected oncogenes consistently failed. These failures led to the notion that human cells were impregnable, that is, they simply could not be transformed experimentally. In fact, any human cells emerging from such failed transfection experiments were not even immortalized and therefore senesced sooner or later.

These repeated failures at experimental transformation of human cells prevented researchers from addressing a simple yet fundamental problem in cancer biology: How many intracellular regulatory circuits need to be perturbed in order to transform a normal human cell into a cancer cell? In the end, a solution to these failures was inspired by experience with cultured rodent cells, which indicated that once cells were immortalized in culture, they became responsive to transformation by a *ras* oncogene. The stark differences in the telomere biology of rodent and human cells (see Section 10.9) seemed to explain at least part of the difficulty of immortalizing human cells and thus their very different responses to introduced oncogenes. Recall that the cells of laboratory mice usually carry extremely long telomeric DNA (as long as 40 kb),

whereas normal human cells have far shorter telomeres. In addition, telomerase activity seems to be regulated differently in cells of the two species, that is, it is constitutively high in murine cells and almost absent in corresponding human cells. Accordingly, the immortalization problem related to human cells might be solved by adding the *hTERT* gene (encoding the catalytic subunit of the human telomerase holoenzyme) to other immortalizing oncogenes introduced into these cells.

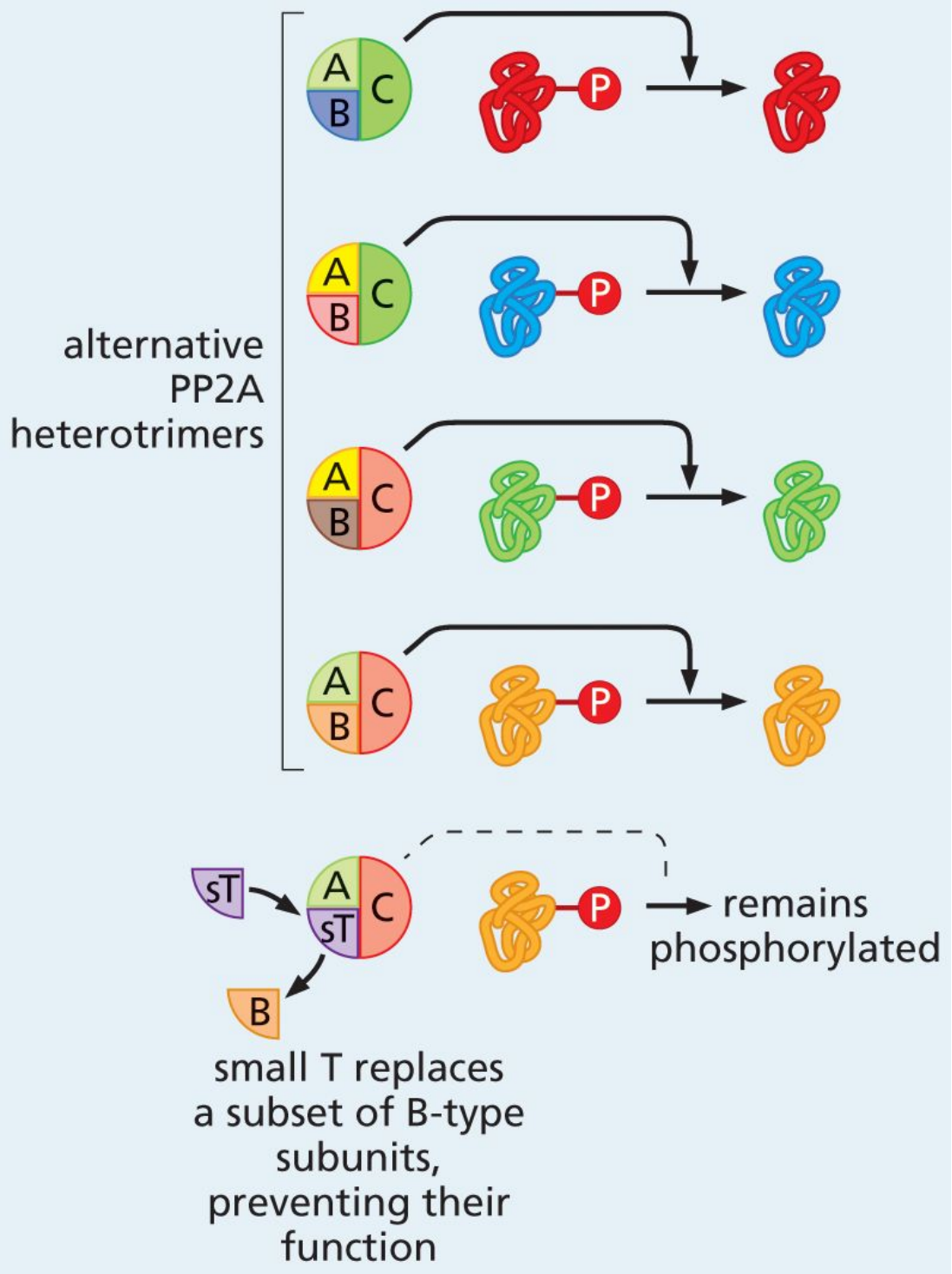
As it turned out, introduction of an *hTERT* gene in addition to the SV40 *large T* oncogene (whose product inactivates both pRb and p53 tumor suppressor proteins) did indeed yield immortalized human cells. (Alternative means of inactivating both pRb and p53, such as introduction of human papillomavirus *E6* and *E7* oncogenes, succeeded as well.) And once immortalization was achieved through these multiple changes, the resulting human cells, so the logic went, could then be transformed morphologically in the culture dish by introduction of an activated *ras* oncogene.

However, these morphologically transformed human cells were still not fully transformed, as indicated by their inability to form tumors when implanted in immunocompromised mouse hosts. (Recall that the faulty immune systems of such mice ensure that tissues of foreign origin, such as human tumors, are not eliminated by immunological attack.) In fact, these cells still required one more alteration, this one achieved by introduction of the gene encoding the SV40 small t oncoprotein. Small t perturbs a subset of the functions of the abundant cellular enzyme termed protein phosphatase 2A, notably PP2A enzyme complexes containing the B56γ subunit (PP2A; **Sidebar 11.9**).

Sidebar 11.9 The elusive fifth signaling pathway

It remains unresolved whether, in addition to the deregulation of the four signaling pathways described here, the fifth alteration—deregulation of the actions of PP2A—commonly occurs during the formation of most human cancers. PP2A is a phosphoserine/phosphothreonine phosphatase composed of multiple alternative regulatory subunits, a scaffolding subunit, and a catalytic subunit; altogether as many as 30 heterotrimeric forms of PP2A are thought to exist, each being defined by its complement of regulatory subunits, which in turn has been implicated in substrate recognition by the heterotrimeric holoenzyme complexes (**Figure 11.27**). In a number of cancers, the PR65α regulatory subunit of PP2A has been found in mutant form. And two cellular proteins, termed CIP2A and SET, are over-expressed in many human cancers and operate like the SV40 small T oncoprotein to protect the Myc protein from dephosphorylation by PP2A; the resulting preservation of phosphorylated Myc saves it from degradation. At the same time, CIP2A and SET protect kinases of the Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK pathway (see Section 6.5) from dephosphorylation, which would shut down the activation of this key mitogenic pathway achieved by actively signaling Ras

oncoproteins and as well as upstream mitogenic signaling proteins such as growth factor receptors. Yet other endogenous cellular inhibitors of PP2A have also been uncovered. Among the effects in transformation mediated by various combinations of PP2A subunits, the most important may well be the dephosphorylation of Myc, because a nonphosphorylatable mutant of Myc can replace SV40 small t oncoprotein in *in vitro* human cell transformation assays.



A diagram shows four different P P 2 A heterotrimers, each containing a small A unit, a small B unit, and a large C unit. Two A units are green, the other two yellow. The B units are four different colors. The C units are green or red. Each heterotrimer de-phosphorylates a particular cellular phosphoprotein. However,

when a small T subunit replaces a B subunit in an A B C complex, the corresponding protein remains phosphorylated.

Figure 11.27 Protein phosphatase 2A The PP2A holoenzyme is composed of A, B, and C subunits. There are 2 types of both A and C subunits, and 18 types of B subunit. The C subunits carry the catalytic activity of the holoenzyme and the B subunits direct the holoenzyme to specific substrates; the A subunits act as scaffolding to assemble B and C subunits into holoenzyme complexes. The various holoenzymes are responsible for dephosphorylating cellular phosphoproteins bearing either phosphoserine or phosphothreonine residues. The small T (sT) oncoprotein of SV40 can associate with the A and C subunits (*bottom*) and thereby prevent the association of certain B-type subunits with A + C. In so doing, sT prevents PP2A from dephosphorylating a subset of its normal constituency of substrates. This action contributes in an incompletely understood fashion to the experimental transformation of human cells. (Adapted from S. Colella et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 93:798–804, 2001.)

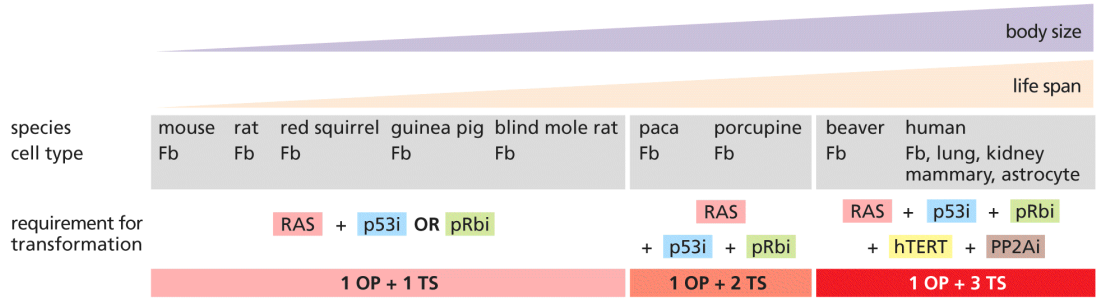
Taken together, these experiments demonstrated that *five* distinct cellular regulatory circuits needed to be altered experimentally before human cells can grow as tumor cells in immunocompromised mice (**Figure 11.28A**). These changes involve: (1) the mitogenic signaling pathway controlled by Ras (see Chapter 6); (2) the cell cycle checkpoint controlled by pRb (see Chapter 8); (3) the alarm pathway controlled by p53 (see Chapter 9); (4) the telomere maintenance pathway controlled by hTERT (see Chapter 10); and (5) the signaling pathways controlled by protein phosphatase 2A (PP2A); the latter include effects modulating the activity of a wide spectrum of ser/thr-phosphorylated proteins, among them those controlling the Ras, mTOR, Myc, β-catenin, and PKB/Akt signaling proteins (see Sidebar 11.9). (It remains possible that perturbation of alternative cellular signaling pathways quite distinct from the five listed here might also permit the experimental transformation of human cells.)

human cell transformation

pathway	Ras	pRb	p53	telomeres	PP2A
alternative genes/ molecules used to deregulate pathway	***ras***, *MEK+ Akt/PKB*, *MEK+IKBKε*, *PAK1+ Akt/PKB*	**SV40 *LT***, *CDK4 + D1*, HPV *E7*, *Rb shRNA*	**SV40 *LT***, DN *p53*, HPV *E6*, *p53 shRNA*	***hTERT***, *myc* + SV40 *LT*	**SV40 *sT*** in some cells: *myc* *Akt/PKB+Rac1*, *PI3K*, *B56 shRNA*

A table listing different pathways and the alternative genes or molecules to deregulate each pathway. The R a s pathway can be deregulated by r a s, M E K plus A k t slash P K B, M E K plus l K B K epsilon, or P A K 1 plus A k t slash P K B. The p R b pathway can be deregulated by S V 40 L T, C D K 4

plus D1, H P V E7, or R b s h R N A. The p53 pathway can be deregulated by S V 40 L T, D N p53, H P V E6, or p53 s h R N A. The P P 2 A pathway can be deregulated by S V 49 s T and in some cells by m y c, A k t slash P K B plus R a c 1, P I 3 K, or B56 s h R N A.
(A)



A listing of different mammalian species in order of increasing body size and lifespan: mouse, rat, red squirrel, guinea pig, blind mole rat, paca, porcupine, beaver, and human. Also listed are cell types: Fibroblasts for every species, and for humans additionally lung, kidney, mammary, and astrocyte. Across the bottom are listed gene and protein requirements for transformation. For the smallest species, up through blind mole rat, the requirement is 1 oncoprotein plus 1 tumor suppressor gene, or more specifically R A S plus p53i or p R b i. For the paca and porcupine, the requirement is 1 oncoprotein plus 2 tumor suppressor genes, or more specifically R A S plus p53i plus p R b i. For the beaver and human, the requirement is 1 oncoprotein plus 3 tumor suppressor genes, or more specifically R A S plus p53i plus p R b i plus h TERT plus P P 2 A i.

(B)

Figure 11.28 Intracellular pathways involved in mammalian cell transformation (A) The experimental transformation of human cells has been achieved through the insertion of various combinations of cloned genes into cells. Initially, a combination of three genes encoding the SV40 early region [which specifies both the large T (LT) and small T (sT) oncoproteins], the hTERT telomerase enzyme, and a *ras* oncogene was found to suffice for the transformation of a variety of normal human cell types to a tumorigenic state (*bolded*). These introduced genes were found to deregulate five distinct regulatory pathways involving (1) Ras mitogenic signaling, (2) pRb-mediated G_1 cell cycle control, (3) p53, (4) telomere maintenance, and (5) protein phosphatase 2A (PP2A). Subsequent work has found that other combinations of cloned genes suffice as well. For example, activation of the Ras signaling pathway can be mimicked by introducing a combination of constitutively active alleles of *MEK*

(*MEK*^{DD}) and *Akt/PKB.* Further dissection of these pathways has also revealed that a combination of *MEK*^{DD} with *IKBK*ε or *PAK1* with *Akt/PKB* also suffices to replace *ras* as an oncogenic activator. The disruption of pRb function can be achieved by a combination of ectopically expressed, CDK inhibitor–resistant CDK4 + cyclin D1 or a short hairpin construct (shRNA) directed against the *Rb* gene; p53 can be disrupted by an introduced dominant-negative *p53* allele or an shRNA directed against the *p53* gene; telomeres can be maintained by activating endogenous *hTERT* expression through a combination of introduced SV40 *LT+myc*; and PP2A function can be disrupted by an shRNA that inhibits the synthesis of the B56 subunit of PP2A. It is unknown whether these five pathways are required for the experimental transformation of all human cell types and whether deregulation of all of these five pathways occurs in all spontaneously arising human tumors. A comma in figure indicates "or." (B) The requirements for cell transformation differ in terms of the number of introduced genes needed to have full transformation. Indicated here are the cultured cells of a number of mammalian species (mostly rodents) that have been examined experimentally by introducing oncoproteins targeting or supplying the indicated cellular proteins. The indicated human cell types include fibroblasts, three epithelial cell types and astrocytes. Fb—fibroblast; i—inhibitor; OP — oncoprotein; TS —product of tumor suppressor gene; Rb—pRb. (B, courtesy of J. Westermarck.)

Experiments like these indicate why adult human cells are highly resistant to transformation. At the same time, it remains unclear whether the steps required to experimentally transform human cells *in vitro* accurately reflect the changes that normal cells must undergo within human tissues in order to acquire the attributes of cancer cells. In fact, four of these changes (involving Ras and hTERT activation, and pRb and p53 inactivation) are commonly seen in the cells of human tumors. For example, in a recent genetic survey of glioblastomas, 74% carried changes in the three critical pathways involving the pRb, p53, and Ras–MAPK proteins, and virtually all of these tumors exhibited elevated expression of hTERT as well. Of additional interest, a series of studies involving large-scale sequencing of 2658 cancer cell genomes derived from 38 distinct types of human cancer reported that, on average, these tumors carried four to five driver gene mutations per genome.

Extensions of such work, reported in 2014 and 2015, demonstrated that the targeted alteration of four genes (encoding the Apr, p53, K-ras, and Smad4 proteins) in the genomes of human Lgr5+ colonic crypt stem cells yielded tumorigenic cells with the features of invasive colorectal carcinomas; because these experiments employed cells that developed into colonic organoids in three-dimensional culture, they approached far more closely the conditions operating in human tissues *in vivo* (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.9**). In these experiments, each of the mutations introduced into the

genomes of the Lgr5+ stem cells replaced one of four protein factors (Wnt, R-spondin, EGF, Noggin) that was usually present in the culture medium and required to generate proper crypt morphogenesis *in vitro*. This work showed several things: It provided an independent accounting of how many genes needed to undergo mutation in order to create tumorigenic cells, that is, four instead of the five enumerated in Figure 11.28A. In addition, it showed that each of the requisite mutations rendered these colorectal cells independent of one or another specific extracellular signal.

These various lines of investigation seem to be converging on a number, possibly half a dozen, of the critical rate-limiting events involved in the formation of many human solid tumors. Nevertheless, it is likely that some normal human cells require a greater or lesser number of changes in order to undergo neoplastic transformation and the number of required changes differ between species (Figure 11.28B). Each of these requisite changes seems to reflect the need to deregulate or perturb a distinct signaling circuit operating within human cells (see Figure 11.28).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

organoid

An experimentally created model of a normal adult tissue, usually generated through incubation of organ-specific stemlike cells suspended in a three-dimensional gelatinous matrix containing a cocktail of factors designed to induce a tissue-specific differentiation program in the organoid.

OceanofPDF.com

11.10 Mammalian evolution contributed to the complexity of human cell transformation

At this stage, we need to revisit the profound interspecies differences in the behavior of mouse versus human cells with respect to transformation. In particular, these differences require some type of biological rationale. We could begin here with noting that, in principle, the risk of tumor development in an organism is likely to be proportional to the cumulative number of cell divisions experienced by that organism during its lifetime; such cell divisions encompass both those needed to build up tissue mass during development as well as those involved in replacing cells that have been lost through physiologically programmed cell turnover. The complexity of the mammalian cell cycle, as laid out in Chapter 8, offers many opportunities for genetic disaster during the course of DNA replication and mitosis and thus during each of the myriad cell cycles occurring in a human body during a lifetime.

Changes wrought by evolution would seem to be essential to compensate, wherever possible, for the increased risk that, for example, large bodied, long-lived organisms like ourselves confront during an average life span. Thus, the cells in a mouse's body may pass through about 10^{11} mitoses in a mouse lifetime, whereas those in a human body pass through about 10^{16} cell cycles in a human lifetime. These numbers derive from the relative masses of the two organisms (which reflects cell number) times the average organismic life span. Such calculations are in one sense simplistic, because they do not account for other critical parameters, such as differing metabolic rates (which can affect mutation rates, as described in Chapter 12) as well as DNA repair capacity. (It remains to be seen how bowhead whales, which may weigh in at 100 tons and live up to 200 years, cope with the challenge of cancer development, which would seem to be 10,000 times higher than our own lifetime risks of cancer development. Provocatively, a

2021 genomics analysis provided clear evidence of accelerated evolution among whale species of genes involved in holding back cancer development including a number of tumor suppressor genes!)

These numbers, on their own, reveal the enormously increased risk of cancer development that is intrinsic to our biology relative to that of the mouse. Yet a human is not more prone to developing cancer than a mouse, creating a puzzle that is known as Peto's paradox. This logic suggests, in turn, that in response to the extreme peril created by our large bodies and long life spans, our bodies and tissues developed compensatory anti-neoplastic mechanisms. In principle, these heightened defenses—progressively erected as our mammalian ancestors evolved to increasingly larger sizes and longer life spans—depended on changes in our systemic physiology, such as defenses mounted by the immune system (as described in Chapters 15 and 16). In practice, however, many of these defenses were hardwired into our individual cells, rendering them far more resistant to transformation.

In the transformation experiments studies described here, these hardwired defenses might be reflected in the number of barriers placed to impede neoplastic cell transformation, each of these barriers being manifested by an additional requirement for transformation, that is, the need for an additional gene mutation. This logic, on its own, provides one rationale for why our cells have been evolved to be far more resistant to neoplastic transformation than have those of mice. Additional support for this thinking comes from the data presented in Figure 11.28B, which shows the positive correlation between the size/life span of mammalian species and number of introduced oncogenes required to transform their cells. Even more dramatic correlations come from measurements of constitutive TERT (telomerase) expression levels in normal somatic cells as they relate to the size of various rodents (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.10**). In this case the correlations are made entirely within one mammalian order and show inverse correlation—reflecting an apparent strategy of limiting telomerase activity as a way of constraining the outgrowth of neoplastic cells.

The measurement of telomerase levels reveals an anti-neoplastic mechanism that operates quite differently from those depending on

requirements for multiple genetic mutations as illustrated in Figure 11.28. In fact, there are likely to be dozens of other still-undiscovered anti-neoplastic mechanisms, whose existence can be deduced directly from the history of mammalian evolution: at least 10 mammalian orders, all descended from a ~25 gram common ancestor, independently invented large body sizes over the past 100 million years. Each of these developments must have required the compensatory co-evolution of highly effective defenses against cancer pathogenesis, many reflected in the hard-wiring of individual cells. This historical zoology yields insights that are of more than passing interest to experimental cancer researchers, simply because they dictate that attempts to develop many animal models of human cancer pathogenesis will often be hobbled because the cells of other mammals are organized differently from our own, at least in the molecular circuitry governing cell proliferation and survival.

Actually, independent of the intrinsic limitations of the cells of other mammalian species, there are cells of many humans that seem to break all of the rules of transformation that were described in Section 11.9. More specifically, the cells of human embryos and fetuses seem to be organized much differently from those present in adult tissues. Thus, a variety of pediatric cancers occur so early in life—some even arising prenatally—that it is difficult to imagine how the cells in these tumors could have had sufficient time to accumulate the cohort of mutations (and epigenetic changes) that seem to be required for the formation of adult malignancies.

This notion, really a speculation, is corroborated by genomic sequencing the genomes of a variety of pediatric tumors. As an example, a report in 2012 described the discovery of dozens to hundreds of mutations in the genomes of individual adult tumors, while the same research team had difficulty finding more than a single recurring mutation in early childhood rhabdoid tumors, similar to the unusually simple mutational spectrum present in the genomes of another important pediatric tumor type—retinoblastoma (see Chapter 8). This suggests the possibility that some pediatric cancers arise directly from certain embryonic cell types, and that such embryonic cells may be more readily transformed (that is, through far fewer alterations) than the cells that serve in various adult tissues as the

precursors of adult tumors. In fact, it is hard to imagine how or why this could not be the case.

The extreme case of this simplified genetic route to transformation derives from study of embryonic stem (ES) cells, which can be extracted from very early embryos. ES cells are, by all measurement, genetically wild type, yet are tumorigenic (yielding teratomas) when implanted in syngeneic hosts. They seem to be the only example of genetically wild-type cells that are tumorigenic. This suggests that, in order to become tumorigenic, certain cells within later embryos require a number of genetic changes that are *intermediate* between the number needed by ES cells (zero) and the number required by adult human cells (as an example, five). Here we may be encountering a replay of our ancient, billion-year-old evolutionary history that led single-cell protozoa to evolve into the first metazoa and then into ourselves (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.11**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

Peto’s paradox
: The discrepancy, first noted by Richard Peto, that large bodied, long-lived organisms do not confront greater cancer incidence than corresponding smaller, short-lived animals in spite of vast differences in cumulative cell divisions experienced during an average lifetime.

OceanofPDF.com

11.11 Nonmutagenic agents, including those favoring cell proliferation, make important contributions to tumorigenesis

The clinical observations and experimental results that we have read about in this chapter provide us with a crude picture of the genetic and epigenetic changes needed to form a human cancer cell. They fail, however, to reveal precisely how these changes are actually acquired during the course of tumor progression. So now, we turn to these issues—the processes occurring *in vivo* that enable cells to accumulate the multiple alterations needed for tumor formation.

As detailed above, a succession of somatic mutations provides much of the force that drives forward tumor progression. Because many of these changes are caused by the actions of mutagens, this implies that cancer progression is fueled largely and perhaps entirely by the genetic hits inflicted by mutagenic carcinogens. This notion was tested by the development and use of the Ames test and led to the conclusion, illustrated in Figure 2.21, that mutagens are carcinogens, and quite possibly, that carcinogens are mutagens.

In fact, attempts to use the Ames test to search for carcinogenic agents that play significant roles in human cancer causation, doing so through their mutagenicity, have repeatedly failed over the past half century. With the exception of tobacco smoke, ultraviolet radiation, aflatoxin-B1, and ethanol (which becomes mutagenic following its rapid conversion in the liver into acetaldehyde), almost all of the myriad other types of human cancer cannot be associated with prior exposure to specific mutagenic agents (**Sidebar 11.10**).

Sidebar 11.10 The misleading lessons of the Ames test

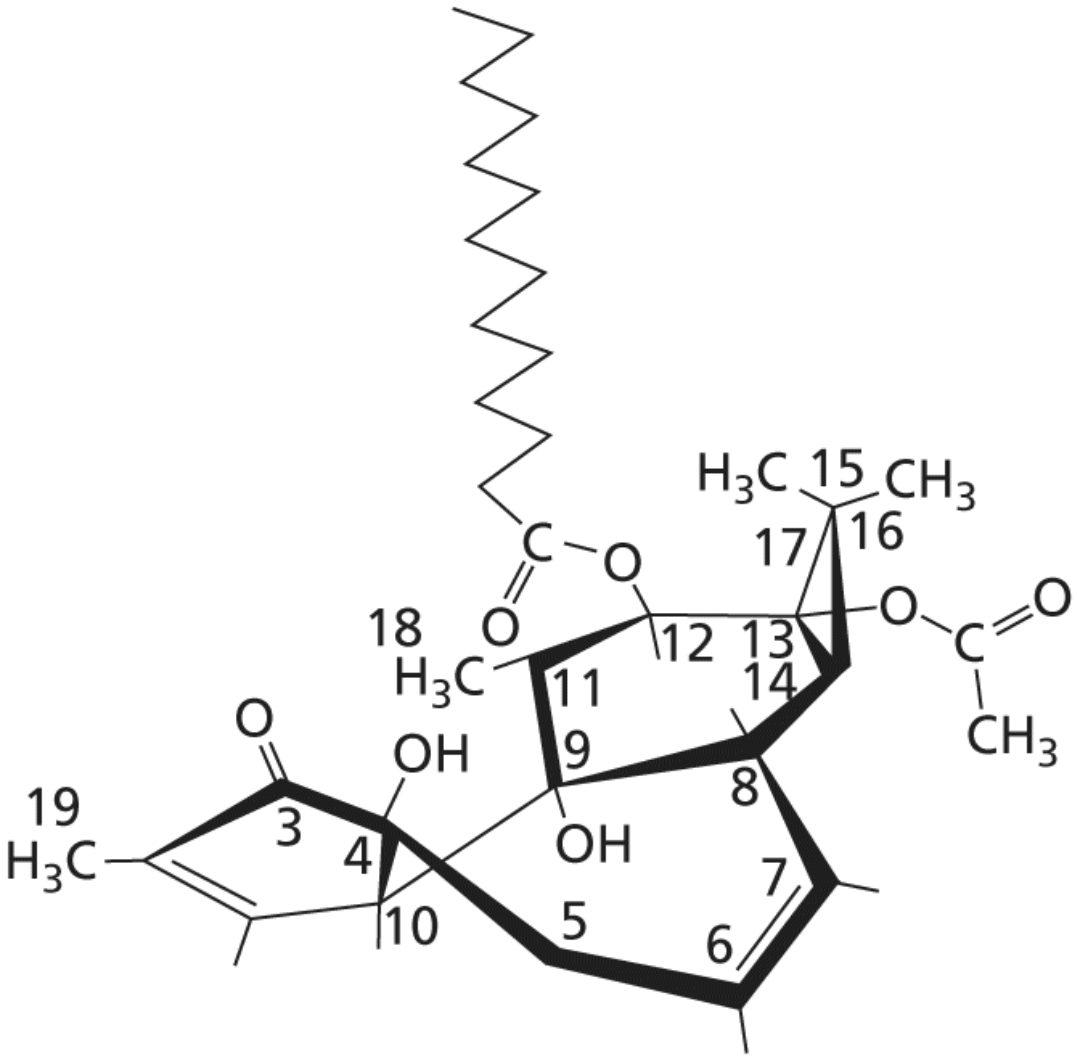
The profound differences in cancer incidence in different human populations (see Table 2.5) provoked extensive searches, many employing the Ames test, to find causative agents in the environment or lifestyle practices. Although Bruce Ames' research that carcinogens act through their mutagenic powers clearly stimulated scientific thinking in the 1970s about the origins of cancer, this thinking has proven to be simplistic in trying to understand human cancer causation. Thus, the failures to

demonstrate mutagenic agents that function as significant causes of common human cancers have provided one indication that human cancer formation is driven by mechanisms other than mutagenic agents experienced during our lifetimes.

Perhaps the most graphic demonstration of this discordance between carcinogens and mutagens has come from an extensive series of experiments in which 20 environmental chemicals known or suspected to be human carcinogens were tested for their carcinogenicity in laboratory mice. All of these chemicals were indeed found to be capable of inducing tumors in mice. However, detailed sequence analyses of the genomes of 188 resulting mouse tumors revealed that 3 chemicals caused significantly elevated mutational burden and were therefore clearly mutagenic, whereas the genomes of tumors induced by the remaining 17 carcinogens gave no indication of increased rates of mutation. Hence, 17 of the tested agents are highly likely to have facilitated tumor development through nongenotoxic mechanisms, as described below. This has left us with the generalization that most, if not all, mutagens can be carcinogenic, but the converse is not true: many—possibly most—human carcinogens are not mutagenic.

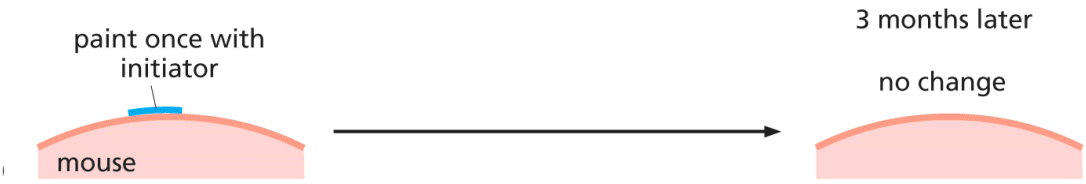
Indications of the importance of nongenotoxic carcinogens first came from attempts in the early 1940s to develop effective experimental methods for inducing skin cancers in mice. The experimental model used in this research depended on exposing mouse skin to highly carcinogenic tar constituents, such as benzo[*a*]pyrene (BP), 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene (DMBA), or 3-methylcholanthrene (3-MC; see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.7**), these being coal tar constituents that were already known or suspected to be highly carcinogenic. For example, mice subjected to daily painting of DMBA on a patch of skin would eventually develop skin carcinomas after several months of this treatment. These echoed decades earlier experiments showing that repeated painting of rabbit ears yielded the same outcome.

But another experimental protocol proved to be even more revealing. Following a single painting with an agent like DMBA, the same patch of skin could be treated on a weekly basis with a second agent, termed TPA (12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate; **Figure 11.29**), a potent skin irritant prepared from the seeds of the croton plant. (Another often-used term for TPA is PMA, for phorbol-12-myristate-13-acetate.) Repeated painting of a DMBA-exposed skin area with TPA resulted in the appearance of papillomas after 4 to 8 weeks, depending on the strain of mice being used (**Figure 11.30**). (These papillomas are in many ways analogous to the adenomas observed in early-stage colon cancer progression; see Figure 11.6.)



The chemical structure of 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate. The core structure consists of three six-carbon rings, two of which share two carbons and the third of which shares a single carbon with one of the other two. The O-tetradecanoylphorbol group on carbon 12 is like an acetyl group but with a 13-carbon chain instead of a simple methyl group.

Figure 11.29 TPA, an important promoter of skin tumorigenesis The stereochemical structure of 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate (TPA), also known as phorbol-12-myristate-13-acetate (PMA), is shown here. TPA is extracted from the seeds of the croton plant, specifically *Croton tiglium*. Its main target in cells is protein kinase C-α (PKC-α), which it activates.

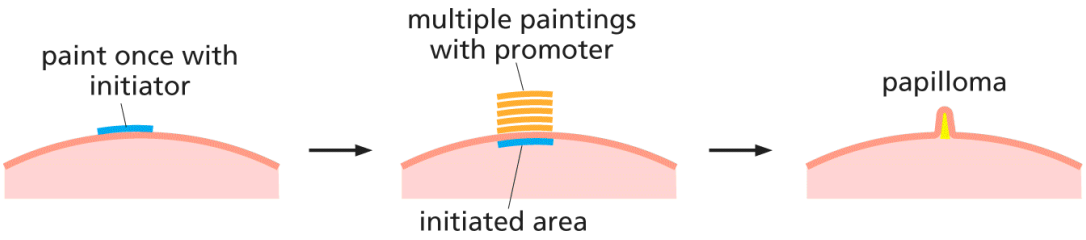


A mouse is painted once with an initiator. After 3 months there is no change.

(A)

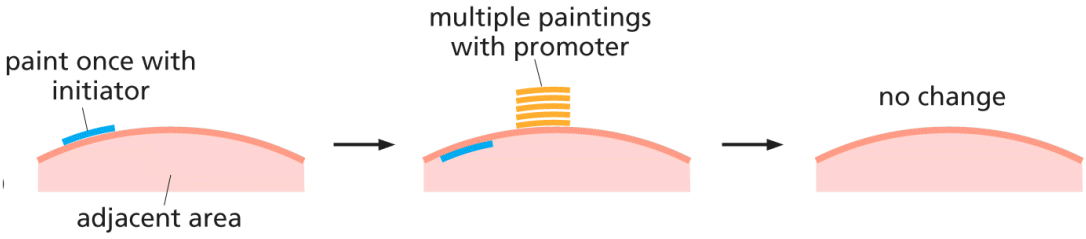
A mouse receives multiple paintings with a promoter. After 3 months there is no change.

(B)



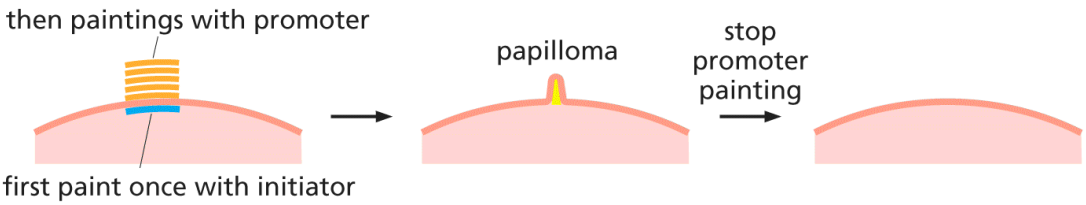
A mouse is painted once with an initiator and then later receives multiple paintings with a promoter over the initiated area. After 3 months there is a papilloma.

(C)



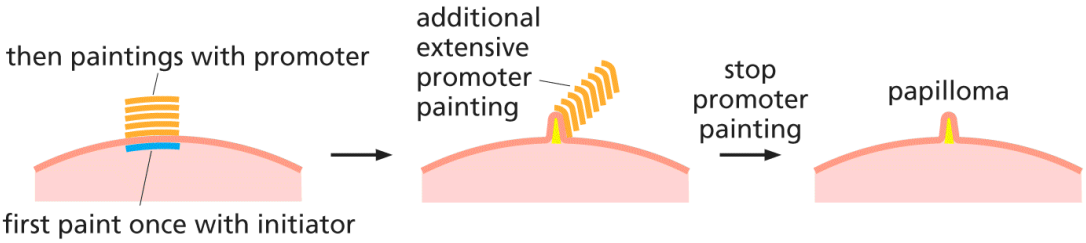
A mouse is painted once with an initiator and then later receives multiple paintings with a promoter adjacent to the initiated area. After 3 months there

is a no change.
(D)



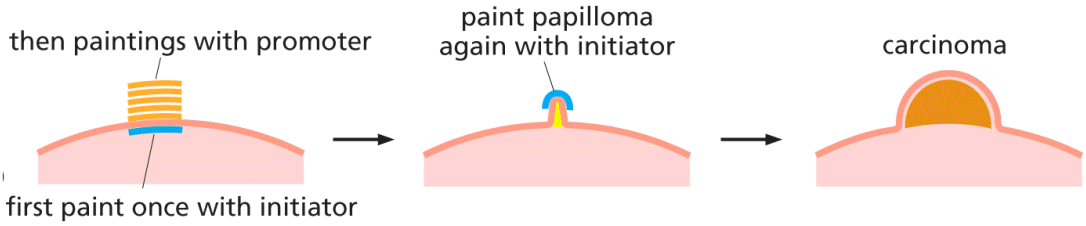
A mouse is painted once with an initiator and then promptly receives multiple paintings with a promoter over the initiated area. Soon, before the three-month mark, there is a papilloma. When the promoter painting is discontinued, after 3 months the papilloma has disappeared.

(E)



A mouse is painted once with an initiator and then promptly receives multiple paintings with a promoter over the initiated area. Soon, before the three-month mark, there is a papilloma. The promoter painting is continued with extensive additional treatments. After three months, the papilloma remains.

(F)



A mouse is painted once with an initiator and then promptly receives multiple paintings with a promoter over the initiated area. Soon, before the three-month mark, there is a papilloma. A second round of initiator is applied, to the papilloma. After three months, the papilloma has developed in to a carcinoma.

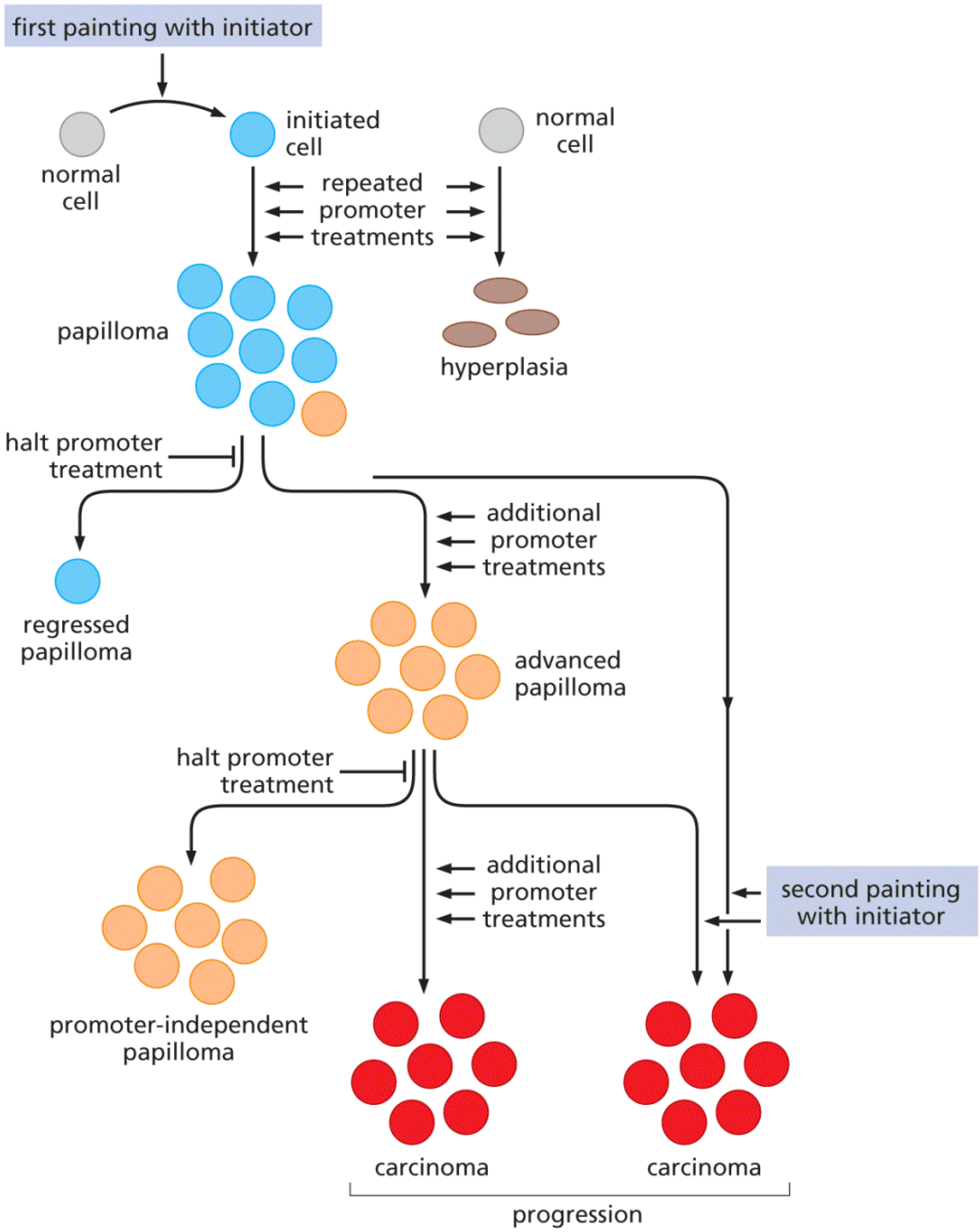
(G)

Figure 11.30 Protocols for inducing skin carcinomas in mice The induction of skin carcinomas by painting carcinogens on the backs of mice requires certain combinations of treatments with initiators and promoters. (A) A single treatment *(blue line*) with an initiating carcinogen, such as DMBA (dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene), leads to no skin carcinomas 3 months later. (B) Multiple treatments (*orange lines*) with promoting agents, such as TPA (see Figure 11.29), also do not lead to significant numbers of tumors. (C) If an area of skin is painted once with an initiating agent followed by repeated paintings with a promoting agent, a papilloma will often appear several months later. If several months intervene between treatment with the initiating agent and subsequent promoter treatment, papillomas will also appear, indicating that the initiating agent permanently marked an area of the skin. (D) If an area of skin is painted once with an initiating agent and a promoting agent is then used to repeatedly paint another nearby but non-overlapping patch of skin, no papillomas will be seen 3 months later. (E) In a variation of the protocol depicted in panel C, an initiator such as DMBA is applied followed by repeated TPA treatments, which lead to papillomas. However, if repeated painting with the TPA tumor-promoting agent is halted soon after the papillomas appear, they regress, indicating that they are dependent on ongoing promoter stimulation. (F) In another variation of the protocol depicted in panel C, TPA promoter painting is continued for several months after papillomas first appear before being halted. Under these conditions, some of the papillomas will persist, indicating that they have become independent of continued promoter stimulation. (G) If a papilloma is produced by the protocols of panels C or F and the papilloma is then treated with an initiating agent, a carcinoma may appear, even in the absence of further promoter treatment.

At first, the survival and growth of these skin papillomas depended upon continued TPA paintings, because cessation of TPA treatments caused the papillomas to regress (see Figure 11.30E). However, if TPA painting was continued for many weeks, TPA-independent papillomas eventually emerged, which would not regress after cessation of TPA painting and instead persisted for extended periods of time (see Figure 11.30F). Some of these TPA-independent papillomas might, with low probability, eventually evolve further into malignant squamous cell carcinomas of the skin after about 6 months.

Importantly, in the absence of prior DMBA treatment, repeated painting with TPA alone failed to provoke either papillomas or carcinomas (see Figure 11.30B). Even more interesting, an area of skin could be treated once with DMBA and then left to rest for a year, giving no outward indication of having been treated. If this particular patch of skin was then treated with a series of TPA paintings (as in Figure 11.30C), it would “remember” that it had been exposed previously to DMBA and respond by forming a papilloma.

These phenomena could be rationalized as follows (**Figure 11.31**). A single treatment by an initiating agent (or initiator) like DMBA left a stable, long-lived mark on a cell or cluster of cells; this mark was apparently some type of genetic alteration. Subsequent repeated exposures of these "initiated" cells to TPA (termed the promoting agent or simply the promoter) allowed these cells to proliferate vigorously while having no comparable effect on nearby cells that had not experienced prior DMBA painting and were therefore considered to be uninitiated. (Note that use of the word "promoter" in this context is unconnected with its other meaning—namely, the DNA sequences controlling the transcription of a gene.) The localized proliferation of initiated cells that was encouraged by the promoter would eventually produce a papilloma. However, as mentioned above, if TPA painting was halted after several months, many papillomas would disappear, indicating that the effects of the promoter were reversible and therefore likely to impose a *nongenetic* effect on the cells in the papillomas. Clearly, this nongenetic effect, whatever its nature, could collaborate with the apparent genetic alteration previously created by the initiator to drive the proliferation of cells, causing them to form a papilloma.



The scheme of initiation and promotion of epidermal carcinomas in mice. The first painting with initiator converts a normal cell into an initiated cell. Repeated promoter treatments then stimulate repeated growth and division cycles that result in a papilloma in which a few cells have a heightened proclivity toward further progression. In a normal cell, repeated promoter treatments would have only produced hyperplasia. If promoter treatment is now simply halted, the papilloma cells will regress. On the other hand, a second painting with initiator will advance

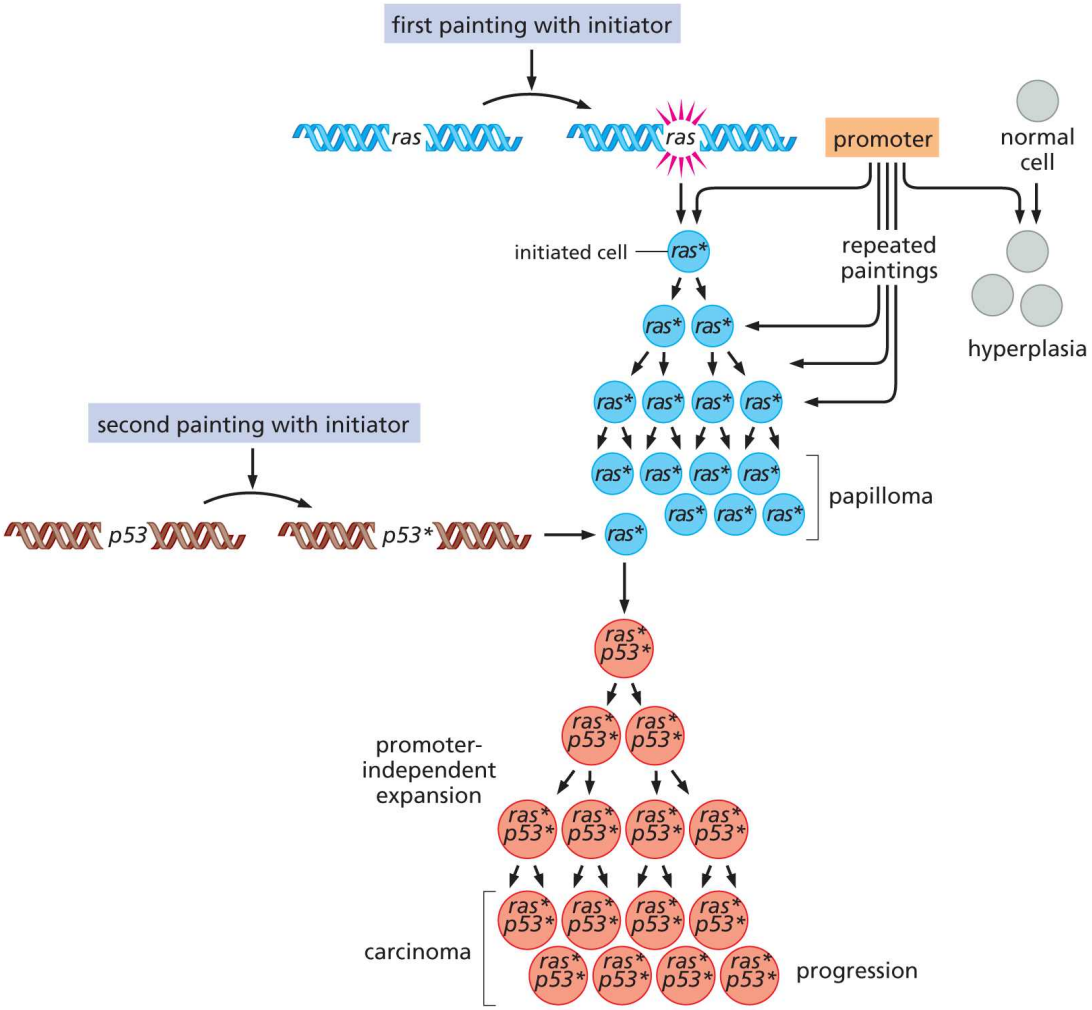
the papilloma to the carcinoma stage. But thirdly, repeated treatment with promoter may simply be continued until most or all cells in the papilloma are of the kind that has a heightened progression proclivity. Now if promoter treatment is simply halted, the papilloma will become promoter-independent. But if yet more repeated promoter treatments are applied, or if a second painting of initiator is applied, the papilloma will progress and become a carcinoma.

Figure 11.31 Scheme of initiation and promotion of epidermal carcinomas in mice The observations of Figure 11.30 can be rationalized as depicted here. The initiating agent converts a normal cell (*gray, top left*) into a mutant, initiated cell (*blue*). Repeated treatment of the initiated cell with the TPA promoter generates a papilloma (*cluster of blue cells*); among these papilloma cells may be ones with a heightened proclivity to progress further (*orange cell*). TPA treatment of normal, adjacent cells (*gray, top right*) may create localized hyperplasia, but papillomas are not formed. Further treatment of the initially formed papilloma can be halted (*middle left*), in which case most papillomas regress (*not shown*) but a subset may persist as promoter-independent papillomas (*bottom left*). Further repeated treatment of this more progressed papilloma with TPA eventually yields, with low frequency, a carcinoma (*bottom middle, red cells*). Alternatively, exposure of the initially formed papilloma to a second treatment by the initiating agent yields, with much higher frequency, cells that form a carcinoma (*bottom right, red cells*).

As we read above, if the initiated cells were treated with the TPA promoter for many months' time, eventually some papillomas would evolve to become TPA-independent; in this case, even after TPA withdrawal, the papillomas continued to increase in size and some eventually developed into skin carcinomas. This permanent change in cell behavior seemed to reflect, once again, the actions of a second, independent, cell-heritable alteration, that is, an apparent second mutation. Indeed, this evolution to a carcinomatous state could be strongly accelerated by treating a papilloma with a second dose of the initiating agent, already suspected to be a mutagen (see Figure 11.30G). This third step in tumorigenesis (coming after initiation and promotion) is termed progression; this term is used more generally, throughout this chapter and elsewhere, to indicate the stepwise evolution of cells to an increasingly malignant growth state.

Four decades after the mouse skin cancer induction protocol was first developed, the identities of the genes and proteins that are the main actors in this skin tumorigenesis model were discovered (**Figure 11.32**). As long suspected, the DMBA used as the initiating agent is indeed a potent mutagen in the context of skin carcinogenesis. Because it is a randomly acting mutagen, DMBA creates an almost-limitless number of mutations throughout the genomes of exposed cells. However, the skin tumors that emerge invariably bear point-mutated H-*ras* oncogenes (see Section 4.3), indicating that this particular mutant allele (among the hundreds of millions of mutant alleles

created by DMBA) confers some uniquely powerful selective advantage on keratinocytes in the skin.



A diagram of genes and proteins involved in mouse skin carcinogenesis. The first painting with initiator converts an r a s proto-oncogene into an active r a s oncogene. Repeated paintings with promoter then stimulate repeated growth and division cycles that start with a single initiated cell carrying the mutated r a s allele and end with a papilloma formed of such cells. In a normal cell, repeated promoter applications would only produce hyperplasia. A second painting with the initiator then causes mutation of the p53 allele. A cell containing both the mutant r a s allele and the mutant p53 allele now begins repeated growth and division cycles without any application of promoter. Eventually the resulting cells form a carcinoma.

Figure 11.32 Genes and proteins involved in mouse skin carcinogenesis The phenomena of initiation and promotion (see Figures 11.30 and 11.31) can be

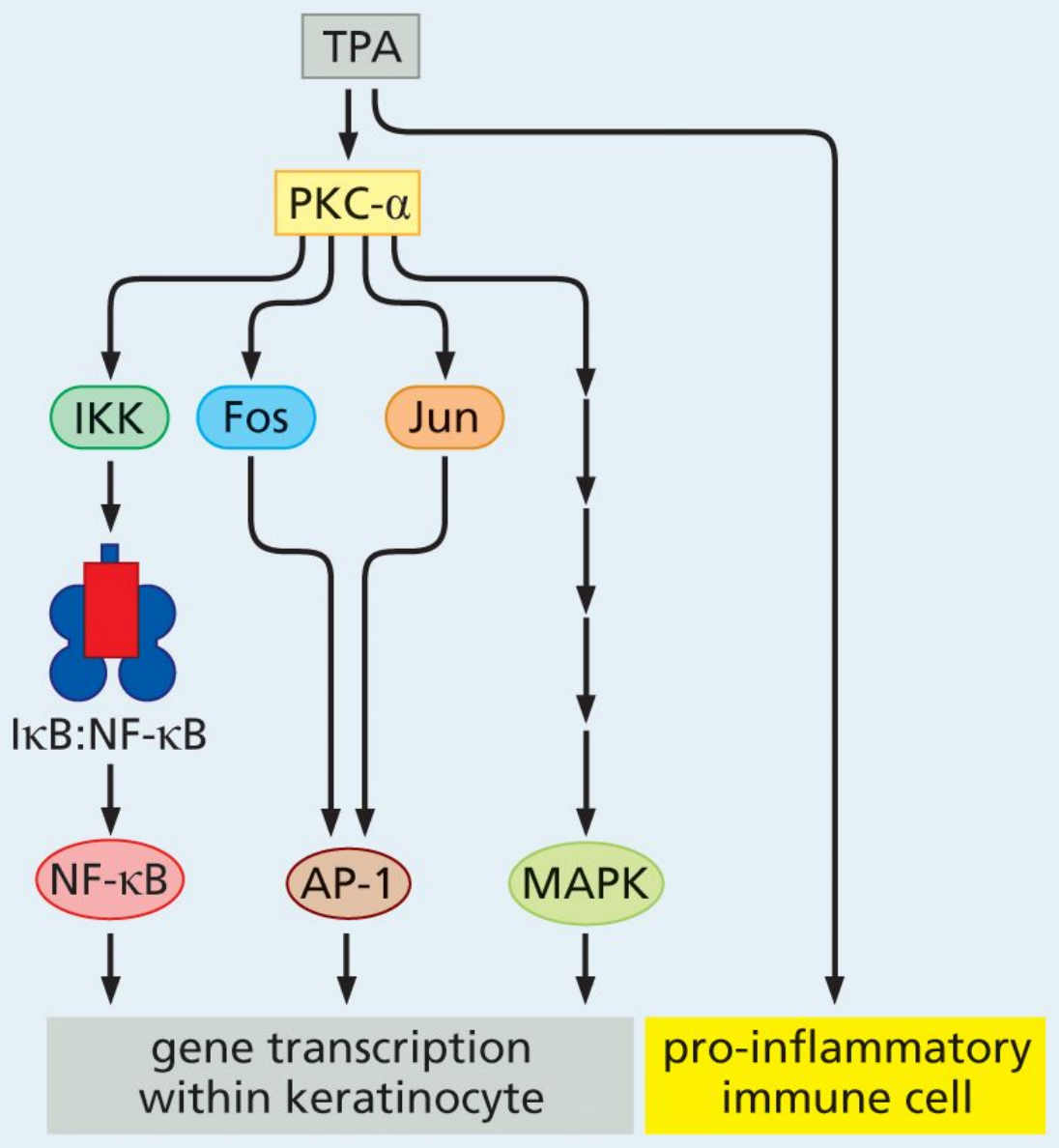
understood at the genetic level in the manner illustrated here. The initiating agent acts as a mutagen to convert a *ras* proto-oncogene into an active *ras* oncogene (*top left*). This initiation, on its own, has little apparent effect on the behavior of the keratinocyte bearing this mutant allele. However, in the presence of repeated stimulation by a promoting agent (*top right*), the *ras*-bearing cell is induced to pass through repeated growth-and-division cycles, leading to the formation of a papilloma (*blue cells*). Conversely, a cell lacking a *ras* oncogene (*gray, top right*) is not stimulated by the promoting agent and may only generate a localized hyperplasia in response to repeated exposure to this agent. If the papilloma is exposed a second time to a mutagenic initiating agent (*left*), a second genetic lesion, often involving the mutation of the *p53* tumor suppressor gene, is created. This mutant *p53* allele (*p53**) collaborates with the *ras* oncogene to create a population of cells (*red-orange*) that no longer depend on the promoter and are capable of forming a carcinoma. Not shown here is the amplification of the *ras* oncogene, which also occurs as tumor progression proceeds.

Moreover, the subsequent repeated treatments with TPA, the promoting agent, act to reversibly activate a kinase (see Sidebar 11.11), which functions synergistically with the already-activated H-*ras* oncogenes to drive the proliferation of initiated, oncogene-bearing cells, yielding a papilloma. Treatment of the papilloma with TPA over an extended period of time may generate a papilloma that can persist even after TPA treatment is halted. Alternatively, if cells in a papilloma are exposed, once again, to an initiating agent like DMBA, this papilloma may progress into a carcinoma, whose cells now carry, in addition to the H-*ras* oncogene, a mutant *p53* gene. Accordingly, the eventual emergence of a promoter-independent, autonomously growing carcinoma depends on the actions of a *second mutational event* that occurred either spontaneously or through the actions of an experimentally applied mutagen (**Sidebar 11.11**).

Sidebar 11.11 Signaling biochemistry of initiation and promotion

If we were to describe these phenomena at the level of signal-transduction biochemistry (**Figure 11.33**), we would say that the TPA promoter functions as a potent stimulator of cell proliferation through its ability to activate the cellular serine/threonine kinase known as protein kinase C-α (PKC-α), which we encountered briefly in the context of cytoplasmic signal transduction (see Section 6.6). More specifically, TPA acts as a functional mimic of diacylglycerol (DAG), the molecule that cells generate endogenously (see Figure 6.11B) as a means of activating protein kinase C (PKC). The downstream effectors of PKC-α collaborate with the H-*ras* oncogene, in still-poorly understood ways, to drive proliferation of initiated keratinocytes whose descendants form papillomas and, on rare occasion, progress to carcinomas. In fact, TPA is only one example of a diverse spectrum of tumor-

promoting agents to be described here. In the case of mouse skin carcinogenesis, these observations leave us with the conclusion that tumor promoters like TPA, which do not directly alter the genomes of cells, are nevertheless important in propelling multi-step tumorigenesis forward. Moreover, they impress upon us the notion that an agent that contributes to cancer formation—a carcinogen—need not be a mutagen.



Proliferation of keratinocytes driven by T P A activated protein kinase. Besides directly activating pro-inflammatory immune cells, T P A also activates P K C-alpha, which in turn activates I K K, F o s, Jun, and through a series of steps not shown, also activates M A P K. I K K activates the I kappa B N F-kappa B complex, which activates N F-kappa B. F o s and Jun both activate A P 1. N F-kappa B, A P 1, and M A P K all promote gene transcription within keratinocyte.

Figure 11.33 Activation of Fos, Jun, and NF-κB by PKC-α The precise mechanism by which an activated *ras* oncogene acts synergistically with TPA-activated protein kinase C-α (PKC-α) to drive the proliferation of keratinocytes is poorly understood. It is clear that once PKC-α is activated by binding TPA, it is able to stimulate transcription via several distinct signaling pathways, including those involving the NF-κB and AP-1 transcription factors and the ERK/MAPK enzyme. This depiction of intracellular, cell-intrinsic signaling within a keratinocyte does not address what are likely to be even more important effects of TPA and similar promoters on the tissue microenvironment around the keratinocyte, notably the cellular components of inflammatory immune cells that congregate in areas of promoter-exposed skin. These various promoter-induced responses, then taken together, have not yet yielded a coherent explanation of why TPA stimulates the proliferation of *ras* oncogene-bearing, initiated keratinocyte, while having minimal effect on nearby wild-type keratinocytes.

Actually, the processes depicted in Figure 11.30 and Figure 11.31 reveal that tumor promoters can act in two distinct mechanistic ways. They may drive the preferential proliferation and clonal expansion of already-initiated, mutant cells, making it possible that—sooner or later—low probability events, such as random mutations of certain genes, may strike the large cell populations of cells produced by this initial clonal expansion. (Because these random events occur with a low probability per cell generation, a large, expanded cell population is required before such a secondary mutational event is likely to occur in one or another cell.) Ostensibly, these later mutational events enable descendant cells to acquire a critical second mutant allele that *collaborates* with the initial, primary mutation created by the initiating agent; more specifically, this new mutation can collaborate with the initially sustained mutation to drive neoplastic proliferation, yielding tumor outgrowth.

Independent of this function of driving preferential clonal expansion of already-mutated cells, some promoters can act in an alternative fashion to favor tumorigenesis simply by driving endless rounds of cell proliferation, doing so even in cell populations that lack previously acquired, oncogenic initiation events. Because passage through a cell cycle, on its own, results in mutations at a low but measurable frequency per cell generation (as described in the next chapter), this mitogenic effect is itself indirectly mutagenic and thus carcinogenic.

Finally, it is essential for us to integrate the phenomenon of tumor promotion with the scheme depicted in Figure 11.14. More specifically, it is clear that tumor promoters can increase the *rate of clonal expansion* of already-mutated cells; the resulting expansion rate may be the critical, rate-limiting determinant that governs the time intervals between successive clonal expansions. Consequently, in the context of human tumor pathogenesis, the incidence of various tumors may be determined by whether or

not such clonal expansions occur rapidly enough to generate full-blown tumors within an average human life span. Recent work shows that the accumulation of random mutations occurs at similar rates in various tissues that nevertheless spawn cancers at vastly different frequencies; this suggests, once again, that nongenetic processes often represent rate-limiting determinants of tumor formation, doing so by governing the rapidity of tumor formation and thus, during a lifetime, the incidence of cancer in various human tissues.

These realizations forced a reinterpretation of how diet and lifestyle factors (found by epidemiologists to be important determinants of human cancer incidence) actually work. Rather than exposing the body's tissues to potent mutagens, many if not most of these factors, seem to act through their ability to drive forward certain clonal expansions that elicit nonmutagenic, tumor-promoting mechanisms.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

initiator

Agent that triggers the first step in multi-step tumorigenesis. *See also* **initiation**.

initiator

Agent that triggers the first step in multi-step tumorigenesis. *See also* **initiation**.

promoter

(1) An agent that furthers the progression of multi-step tumorigenesis by nongenetic mechanisms, notably those involving inflammation and/or mitogenesis, sometimes termed promoting agent. Tumor promoters are presumed to work by accelerating the rate of clonal expansion of already-mutated cells. (2) The DNA sequence associated with a gene that controls its transcription. *See also* **promotion**.

promoter

(1) An agent that furthers the progression of multi-step tumorigenesis by nongenetic mechanisms, notably those involving inflammation and/or mitogenesis, sometimes termed promoting agent. Tumor promoters are presumed to work by accelerating the rate of clonal expansion of already-mutated cells. (2) The DNA sequence associated with a gene that controls its transcription. *See also* **promotion**.

progression

(1) The process whereby cells evolve progressively from a normal state to a state that enables them to form a high-grade malignancy. (2) The evolution of benign cancer cells to malignant derivatives. (3) The evolution of an initiated cell that is dependent on continued exposure to a tumor-promoting agent for its further proliferation into one that continues to proliferate in the absence of further exposure to the promoter. *See also* **initiation**, **promotion**.

OceanofPDF.com

11.12 Mitogenic agents, key governors of human cancer incidence, can act as tumor promoters

The experimental model of mouse skin carcinogenesis, as described above in some detail, is not used today by many researchers to study the dynamics of tumorigenesis. Nevertheless, at the conceptual level, it proved highly useful decades ago in revealing the role of nongenotoxic carcinogens in fostering carcinoma progression, and more specifically for its powers in illustrating the principles of tumor initiation, promotion, and progression. This scheme was a revelation to many, in that it demonstrated that cancer formation cannot be attributed simply to mutagens that either enter the body from outside or are generated by endogenous metabolic processes that damage the genomes of human cells (as described in Chapter 12). Still, the experimental model of mouse skin carcinogenesis tells us almost nothing about how analogous tumor-promoting mechanisms actually operate within the human body to create cancer.

In fact, a diverse array of biochemical and biological mechanisms appear to be responsible for the tumor promotion that leads to human cancers, complicating attempts at experimental modeling in laboratory mice. (**Sidebar 11.12**). As we learned in Chapter 2, the incidence rates of various types of human cancer vary dramatically between different human populations globally, indicating that exposure to carcinogenic agents experienced in different environments exerts enormous influence on the development of various types of cancer (see Table 2.5). However, as mentioned above, searches for environmental carcinogens that are mutagenic, including agents present in the human food chain, have been most frustrating, and researchers attempting these identifications have, for the most part, emerged empty-handed. Hence, the variability in cancer incidence (and resulting mortality) must be traced, in large part, to

nonmutagenic carcinogens. (The role of nonmutagenic factors is emphasized by the fact that, with the exception of cigarette smoke and UV radiation, most lifestyle factors identified in Figure 2.19 as important factors in cancer causation have no obvious mutagenic function.)

Sidebar 11.12 Limitations of GEMMs

In Sections 7.10 and 11.8 we read about the powers of transgenic mouse models of human cancer pathogenesis (often termed genetically engineered mouse models or GEMMs) to shed light on how tumors may develop in the human body. At the same time, the discussions in the present chapter reveal certain profound limitations of these models that are not readily addressed by experimentally introduced modifications of the germ-line genomes of these laboratory mammals. One obstacle to successful modeling comes from the observations, as described in Section 11.10, that far fewer introduced genes are required to transform an adult mouse cell than to transform a corresponding human cell. This indicates, on its own, that the wiring of the intracellular signaling circuitry of mice is organized in slightly different ways in mice than it is humans.

A second significant difficulty arises from the fact that certain critical determinants of cancer development are often not genotoxic processes, that is, processes creating mutant alleles, but instead nongenotoxic mechanisms, specifically those that serve to promote clonal expansions, such as those described here. In many cases, the nature of the tumor-promoting mechanisms that govern human cancer incidence remain elusive. And in many others, even when their identities are known, such mechanisms cannot be easily recapitulated in mice because of the complex differences between mouse and human physiology. For example, if chronic inflammation within a tissue represents an important tumor-promoting mechanism, it is challenging to re-create an inflamed tissue microenvironment in a mouse that accurately echoes the corresponding state in a human tissue. These considerations represent significant limitations to GEMMs that may or may not be addressed by future research.

Among known human tumor promoters, arguably the most intensively studied are those involved in breast cancer pathogenesis. Of central importance are the steroid hormones—estrogen, progesterone, and testosterone. In the female body, for example, estrogen and progesterone are involved in programming the proliferation of cells in reproductive tissues. The monthly menstrual cycles of women between menarche and menopause result in the proliferation and then regression of the cells forming the epithelia of the ducts in the mammary gland. The endometrial lining of the uterus undergoes similar cycles of proliferation and regression.

Epidemiology makes it clear that the more menstrual cycles a woman experiences in a lifetime, the proportionately higher is her risk of developing breast cancer. By one estimate, lifetime breast cancer risk decreases by 20% for each year that menarche is delayed during adolescence. [The most compelling illustration of the importance of the timing of menarche has come from studies of identical (monozygotic) twins, both of whom eventually developed breast cancer; the twin whose menarche occurred earlier had a 5.4-fold greater risk of being the first to be diagnosed with this disease.] Women who stop menstruating before age 45 have only about one-half the risk of breast cancer of those who continue to menstruate to age 55 or beyond.

Removal of the ovaries—the primary source of estrogen in the female body—causes breast cancer risk to plummet. A dramatic example comes from the results of a Dutch study, which has shown that women who enter menopause before the age of 36 due to the side effects of chemotherapy for Hodgkin's lymphoma have a 90% decreased risk of subsequently developing breast cancer. Conversely, postmenopausal women who contract breast cancer have on average a 15% higher level of circulating estrogen than unaffected women.

The effects of estrogen on breast cancer are surely complex, and it appears that this hormone acts on other cells in the mammary gland besides the epithelial cells. Still, it is evident that estrogen, and perhaps other hormones such as progesterone and even prolactin, periodically induce cell proliferation in a way that ultimately enables the progression of initiated mammary epithelial cells (MECs) into the carcinoma cells found in the

various subtypes of breast cancers. (Some have argued that metabolites of estrogen are mutagenic, and that these metabolites contribute to breast cancer development; if so, estrogen's mutagenic effects on breast cancer development are surely dwarfed by its power to promote the proliferation of MECs.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

menarche
: Timing in life of the first menstrual cycle. *See also* **menopause**.

monozygotic
: Referring to two or more organisms derived from a single fertilized egg, thereby referring to identical twins, triplets, or multiple births involving higher numbers of genetically identical newborns.

OceanofPDF.com

11.13 Chronic inflammation often serves to promote tumor progression in mice and humans

Tumor promoters work in diverse ways to expedite multi-step cancer progression. They share the ability to drive the clonal expansion of initiated cells, positioning these cells to acquire additional cell-heritable changes (including mutations and shifts in epigenetic state). Their diversity derives from the various biochemical and cellular mechanisms of action that enable them to expedite tumor formation. The steroid hormones cited above may act largely as pure mitogens directly driving the proliferation of potentially neoplastic epithelial cells. More common, however, are tumor-promoting mechanisms that do not impinge directly on the progenitors of future neoplastic cells, but instead perturb the tissue microenvironment surrounding such cells.

This other class of tumor-promoting mechanisms often acts by creating various forms of inflammation, thereby assembling a supportive tissue microenvironment for the clonal expansion of initiated tumor cells. And in contrast to the steroid hormones described above, the mechanisms-of-action of these inflammatory states do indeed draw on the lessons taught by the mouse skin carcinogenesis protocols in Section 11.11. More specifically, the TPA promoter that was employed experimentally in mouse skin carcinogenesis was initially chosen because it is a potent irritant of mouse skin and thus an inducer of localized inflammation, including the recruitment of large numbers of neutrophils into promoter-treated skin. Moreover, experimental strategies that inhibit inflammation also block or significantly reduce TPA's tumor-promoting powers in the skin. Some forms of inflammation may operate chronically over extended periods of time, whereas others, being integral components of wound-healing programs, may act only transiently as tissues undertake to heal themselves following various types of damage. (Thus, wounding of the skin is at least as effective as TPA painting in promoting papilloma formation.)

Various types of experiments can be cited to reveal the key role inflammation plays in tumor promotion. As one illustrative example, when cells of a human colonic adenoma cell line were implanted subcutaneously into immunocompromised Nude mice, they were found to be non-tumorigenic. However, when they were introduced into these mice together with an attached fragment of plastic, localized stromal inflammation was induced by the plastic and the adenoma cells grew out to eventually form tumors. The tumorigenic phenotype of these cells persisted even after they were subsequently

transplanted (without the plastic) to another host animal, indicating that their neoplastic proliferation was now driven by certain cell-heritable genetic or epigenetic alterations or both. Yet other experimental strategies can illustrate this point, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 11.12**.

Chronic localized inflammation plays a clear role in the pathogenesis of a diverse array of human carcinomas (**Table 11.3**). For example, those arising in the gallbladder are usually associated with a decades-long history of gallstones and resulting inflammation of the epithelial lining of the gallbladder (**Figure 11.34A**). Similarly, hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs), which are common in East Asia, are associated with chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections and accompanying inflammation of the liver (Figure 11.34B, left panel). In many infected individuals, HBV infection is well established in the liver early in life and continues in a chronically active form for decades. The resulting hepatitis may have relatively few outward effects on the individual, because the ongoing HBV-induced killing of hepatocytes (the cells forming the bulk of the liver) is compensated by an equal proliferation of surviving cells. Nevertheless, these chronic infections yield chronic localized inflammation incurred as the immune systems of the infected individuals attempt unsuccessfully to eliminate the virus, and the dying and dead cells killed by the virus release molecules that provoke further inflammation.

Table 11.3 Inflammatory conditions and tumor development

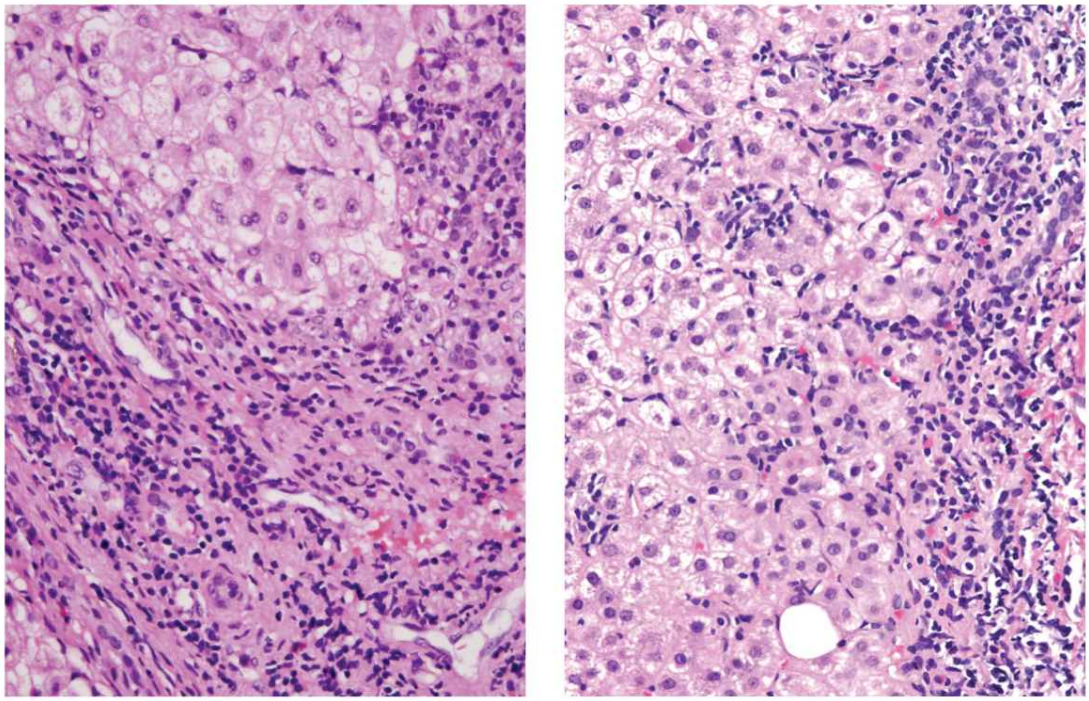
Human tumor	**Inflammatory condition or inflammation-provoking agent**
bladder carcinoma	schistosomiasis, chronic cystitis
gastric carcinoma	*H. pylori*–induced gastritis
hepatocellular carcinoma	hepatitis B/C virus
bronchial carcinoma	silica, cigarette smoke
mesothelioma	asbestos

Human tumor	**Inflammatory condition or inflammation-provoking agent**
ovarian carcinoma	endometriosis
colorectal carcinoma	inflammatory bowel disease
esophageal carcinoma	chronic acid reflux
papillary thyroid carcinoma	thyroiditis
prostate carcinoma	prostatitis
lung carcinoma	chronic bronchitis
gallbladder carcinoma	chronic cholecystitis

Adapted from F. Balkwill, K.A. Charles and A. Mantovani, *Cancer Cell* 7:211–217, 2005.

A photograph of a dissected gallbladder, showing the lower duct cut open to display a column of masses that look like brown pebbles.

(A)



A comparison of two histology images of liver tissue, infected with chronic hepatitis B on the left and with chronic hepatitis C on the right. The two images are very similar with areas of densely packed nuclei and areas that are less dense.

(B)

Figure 11.34 Chronic inflammation leading to cancer (A) A graphic demonstration of chronic inflammation leading to cancer is provided by carcinomas of the epithelial lining of the gallbladder (*white mass, above*), which are commonly associated with the formation of gallstones arising as precipitates from the bile (*brown masses, below*). (B) Chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection creates continual cell death of hepatocytes together with chronic inflammation, as indicated by the numerous lymphocytes (*small dense nuclei, left panel*). Over a period of decades, these processes can lead to an almost 100-fold increased risk of liver cancer. The inflammation in the liver of someone suffering from chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is strikingly similar (*right panel*). The inflammatory cells are largely in the right part of this micrograph. These two inflammatory conditions are similar histologically and lead to comparably increased risks of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), suggesting that the inflammatory states, rather than some specific aspect of viral function, are responsible for the appearance of HCC in patients infected with either of these viruses. (A, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia:

Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier. B, left, courtesy of A. Perez-Atayde; right, courtesy of A.K. Bhan.)

Recent research has made it clear that chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections act in a similar way to increase liver cancer rates. Although the two viruses (HBV and HCV) are totally unrelated to one another with respect to genome structure and replication cycles, they evoke very similar biological outcomes through their shared ability to create chronic infections, cytotoxicity, and inflammation in the liver (see Figure 11.34B). (Significantly, a variety of other types of chronic liver injury, including that inflicted by alcoholism, are also associated with increased incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma, although the relative risks are vastly less than those associated with lifelong HBV infection.)

HBV, acting as a tumor promoter, can also function synergistically with aflatoxin-B1, a potently mutagenic compound that is made by *Aspergillus* fungi that proliferate on moldy peanuts, nuts, and corn stored under conditions of high humidity (see Figure 2.21). This combination of HBV infection plus aflatoxin exposure proves to be deadly. In one, relatively small prospective epidemiologic study carried out in Shanghai, infection with HBV increased the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma about 7-fold, whereas exposure to aflatoxin-B1–contaminated food yielded about a 3-fold increased risk. When an individual had experienced both agents, the risk of liver cancer increased about 60-fold. A less dramatic but nonetheless compelling parallel came from a 2021 study of the effects of cigarette smoking on those afflicted with inflammatory bowel disease: those who smoked had an almost 2-fold elevated risk of developing colorectal cancer, revealing once again the synergistic effects of initiators (tobacco-derived mutagens) and promoters (long-term inflammation). The parallels between the pathogenesis of these human carcinomas and the actions of initiators and promoters of mouse skin cancer are striking.

OceanofPDF.com

11.14 Inflammation-dependent tumor promotion operates through defined signaling pathways

Table 11.4 lists the diverse array of pro-inflammatory processes that favor tumor formation. The conclusions drawn from this table are reinforced by large-scale studies of populations of adults who took anti-inflammatory drugs, such as aspirin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) daily over multi-year periods, usually five years. Their rates of cancer development were compared in each case with the rates of cancer development anticipated in the general population as controls. One such study reported such individuals were 46% less likely to develop pancreatic carcinomas, a second reported a ∼30% reduced risk of colorectal carcinomas, and a third reported a 25% reduced risk of developing breast cancer. Two studies have shown that regular use of aspirin (or another NSAID) resulted in about a 40% reduction of stomach cancer (in the region of the stomach outside of the cardia) in individuals who were infected with *Helicobacter pylori*, a bacterium that often inhabits the human stomach; stomach cancer rates in uninfected individuals were not reduced by aspirin usage. Yet other studies indicate reduced death rates associated with ovarian, bladder, and prostate carcinomas in individuals taking daily NSAIDs, largely aspirin. (These outcomes might suggest that NSAIDs, which can also reduce deaths from certain types of cardiovascular disease, should be used routinely as disease preventatives in the general population. However, a note of caution comes from another public health statistic: in 1998, 16,550 deaths in the United States could be attributed to NSAID-induced gastrointestinal bleeding and the death rate remained at this level in the decade that followed.)

Table 11.4 Links between inflammation and cancer pathogenesis

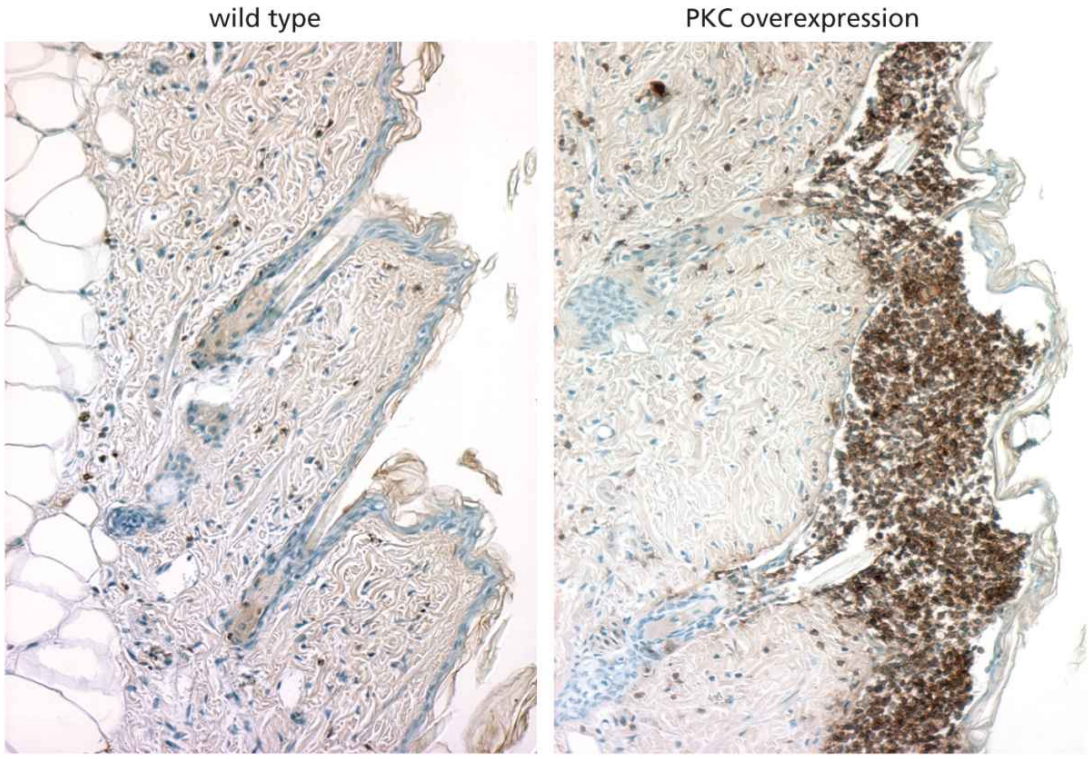
Many inflammatory conditions predispose to cancer
Cancers arise at sites of chronic inflammation
Functional polymorphisms of cytokine genes are associated with cancer susceptibility and severity

Distinct populations of inflammatory cells are detected in many cancers
Extent of tumor-associated macrophage infiltrate correlates with prognosis
Inflammatory cytokines are detected in many cancers; high levels are associated with poor prognosis
Chemokines are detected in many cancers; they are associated with inflammatory infiltrate and cell motility
Deletion of cytokines and chemokines protects against carcinogens, experimental metastases, and lymphoproliferative syndrome
Inflammatory cytokines are implicated in the action of nongenotoxic liver carcinogens
The inflammatory cytokine tumor necrosis factor is directly transforming *in vitro*
Long-term NSAID use decreases mortality from colorectal cancer

From F. Balkwill and A. Mantovani, *Lancet* 357:539–545, 2001. (With permission from Elsevier.)

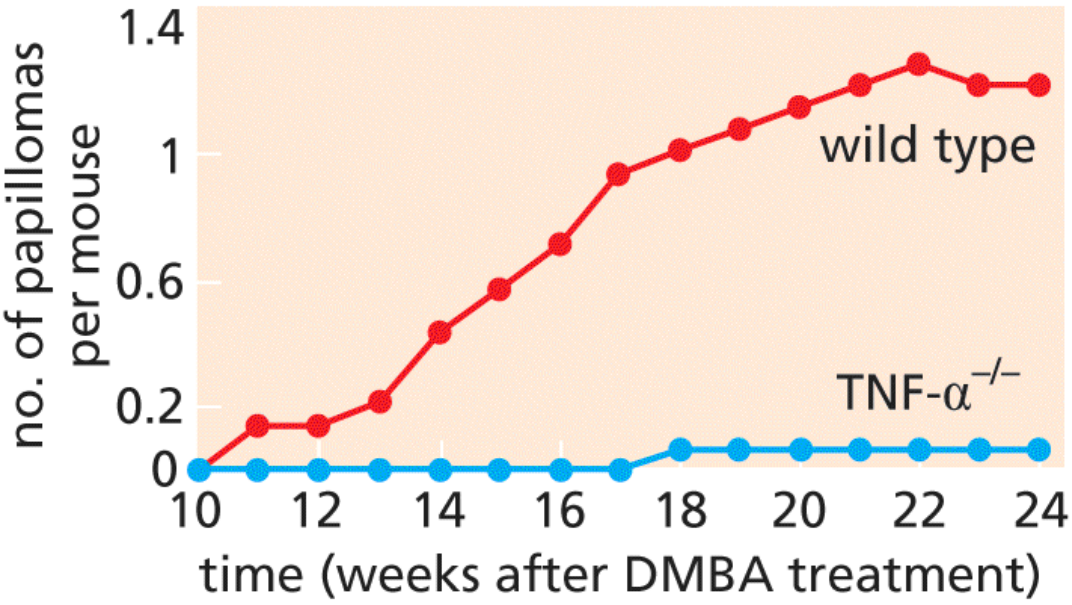
In principle, these diverse epidemiologic observations linking long-term NSAID use with reduced cancer incidence, together with the experiments in mouse skin and liver carcinogenesis, should lead us to the biochemical and cell-biological mechanisms that are responsible for tumor promotion in many tissues. Actually, at the level of signalling biochemistry, our understanding of inflammation and tumor promotion is still fragmentary. In the mouse skin carcinogenesis model, one key clue has come from the identification model of the downstream cellular target of TPA—protein kinase C-α (PKC-α, see Sidebar 11.11). A dramatic functional demonstration of the central role of this enzyme in mediating TPA-induced skin inflammation is provided by mouse skin keratinocytes that are forced to overexpress it: exposure of the genetically altered skin

to TPA results in an inundation of neutrophils in the exposed tissue, these being cells that function as prime instigators of inflammation (**Figure 11.35A**).



A comparison of two histology images of mouse skin tissue. The image on the left is wild type tissue. The image on the right, shows P K C overexpression. Unlike the one on the left, features a thick surface layer of dark cells that look like caraway seeds.

(A)



A line graph with number of papillomas per mouse on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. Wild mice start at zero and climb steadily to about 1.2 papillomas per mouse 22 weeks after D M B A treatment. Homozygous T N F alpha negative mice remain at a very low level, no more than 0.1 papillomas per mouse even 24 weeks after D M B A treatment.

(B)

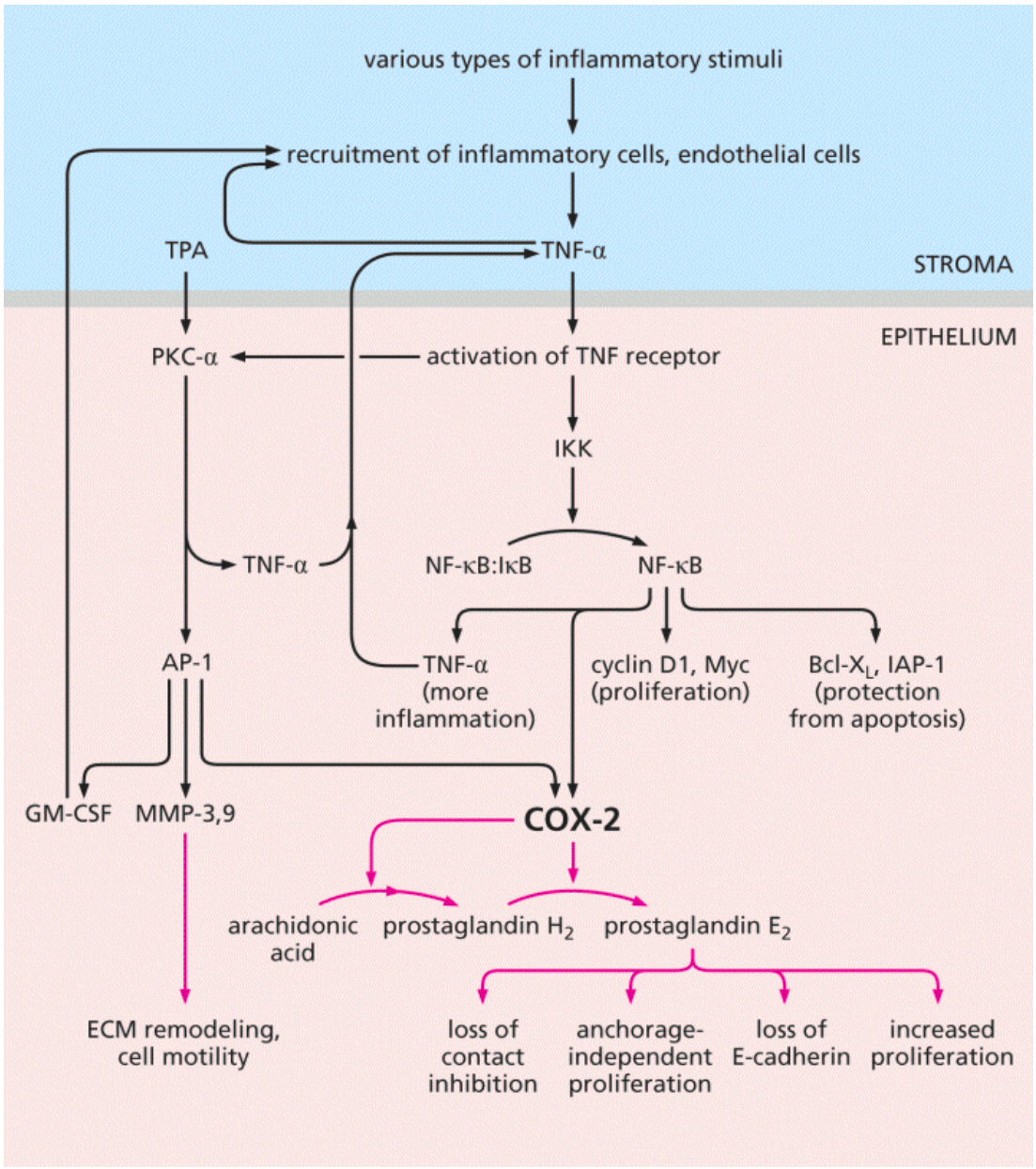
Figure 11.35 Critical regulators of mouse skin induction (A) TPA acts through an intracellular serine/threonine kinase–protein kinase C-α (PKC-α). The inflammatory powers of TPA are revealed in exaggerated form in transgenic mice that overexpress this kinase in their keratinocytes. (This genotype is achieved by constructing a transgene in which PKC-α expression is driven by a keratin 5 transcriptional promoter, which is active specifically in the skin.) Eighteen hours after wild-type or transgenic mice have been treated with TPA, the skin of wild-type mice (*left*) shows relatively few neutrophils (*dark spots*), which are important immune mediators of inflammation. In contrast, the skin of the transgenic mice (*right*) shows extensive neutrophil infiltration. Neutrophils were detected through use of an antibody that recognizes a neutrophil-specific antigen. (B) Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), which is made in both epithelial and stromal cells of the mouse, is a critical mediator of the TPA-initiated inflammatory response. In mice in which both copies of the gene encoding TNF-α have been deleted in the germ line (and thus deleted from the genomes of all cells), the usually observed induction of skin papillomas—the precursors of skin carcinomas—is almost totally lost. In this experiment, mouse skin was painted once with the DMBA initiator and thereafter at twice-weekly intervals with TPA for the next 15 weeks.

(A, from C. Cataisson et al., *J. Immunol.* 171:2703–2713, 2003. With permission from American Association of Immunologists. B, from R.J. Moore et al., *Nature Med.* 5:828–831, 1999. With permission from Nature.)

TNF-α is a critical mediator of TPA-induced inflammation; thus, TPA-exposed keratinocytes in the mouse skin release this protein, which serves in turn to recruit a variety of pro-inflammatory immune cells to the site of treatment. Mice lacking functional copies of the TNF-α gene respond to a skin carcinogenesis protocol (involving, as before, the DMBA initiator and the TPA promoter) by developing 5 to 10% as many skin carcinomas as wild-type mice (see Figure 11.35B). In the latter animals, TPA treatment elicited TNF-α production in the epidermal keratinocytes, which then induced inflammation in the underlying stromal cells of the dermis. Together, these various observations suggest the following pathway:

TPA → PKC-α→ → IKK → IκB → NF-κB → TNF-α→ inflammation

None of this explains how NSAIDs, such as aspirin, ibuprofen, and sulindac, succeed in blocking tumor promotion and thus tumor progression, including these processes occurring in the *Mdr*$^{-/-}$ mouse model of liver carcinogenesis (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.13**). These drugs and yet other NSAIDs have as their common target the enzyme cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2; **Figure 11.36**), which is responsible for the biosynthesis of prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2), a potent low–molecular-weight pro-inflammatory molecule. Actually, the *Cox-2* gene is yet another gene that is strongly induced by TNF-α. Indeed, many of the pro-inflammatory effects of TNF-α enumerated above depend on its ability to induce COX-2 expression and, in turn, strong increases in PGE_2 production. **Supplementary Sidebar 11.14** describes multiple lines of evidence supporting the scheme depicted in Figure 11.36.



A model of epithelial inflammation and tumor promotion. In the stroma, various types of inflammatory stimuli promote the recruitment of inflammatory cells and endothelial cells. These release T N F alpha, which activates the T N F receptor, initiating a cascade within the epithelium that results in E C M remodeling, cell motility, loss of contact inhibition, anchorage-independent proliferation, loss of E-cadherin, and increased proliferation. T N F alpha plays a role at multiple points.

Figure 11.36 A model of epithelial inflammation and tumor promotion The information from skin and liver tumor promotion, as illustrated in Figures 11.32 and 11.34B, can be integrated into a more general model. Inflammatory stimuli, including chronic viral infections, organ injury, irritants (e.g., tobacco smoke), cell

necrosis, and senescence, result in recruitment of a variety of inflammatory cells into areas of inflammation. These cells, as well as endothelial cells in the vicinity, release TNF-α (a key actor in multiple types of tumor promotion) and various cytokines that together activate the NF-κ B pathway in epithelial cells. This activation results in the production of more TNF-α, anti-apoptotic proteins (e.g., Bcl-X_L, IAP-1, and IAP-2), and mitogenic proteins (Myc, cyclin D1), as well as COX-2. Prostaglandins synthesized by COX-2 (*pink arrows*) induce multiple cancer cell phenotypes, including loss of contact inhibition, increased proliferation rate, and anchorage-independent growth. The TPA skin tumor promoter (*left*) converges on this pathway through the activation of PKC-α; in addition, TPA-activated PKC-α can induce mitogenic signals by activating the Fos, Jun, and thus AP-1 transcription factors (see Section 6.5). Not illustrated here is the production of prostaglandin E_2 by a variety of stromal cells. Together, these actions of inflammatory cells and of TPA create phenotypic states in epithelial cells that closely resemble those induced by many oncoproteins, enabling initiated cells to launch clonal expansions that eventually result in the acquisition of additional mutant alleles by their descendants.

Taken together, these diverse observations suggest that in initiated cells (e.g., Figure 11.30), tumor-promoting mechanisms can collaborate with an already-acquired, activated oncogene in a way that resembles the collaboration between two oncogenes (see Section 11.8). Thus, initiated tumor cells may rely on this form of collaboration until their descendants eventually acquire additional oncogenes and therefore no longer depend on the readily reversible effects of tumor promoters for their continued proliferation and survival. Finally, it seems increasingly likely that the diverse mechanisms of tumor promotion share in common the ability to activate tissue wound-healing programs that are hardwired in the regulatory circuitry of individual cells, much like the actions of certain oncogenes. Because transient inflammation is an intrinsic component of these programs, this focuses further attention on various pro-inflammatory mechanisms as critical components of human tumor formation.

A wide variety of agents have, by now, been classified as human tumor promoters (**Table 11.5**). All are presumably able to promote expansion of initiated clones. Some carcinogenic agents, such as the benzo[*a*]pyrene (BP) described earlier, when applied to laboratory animals as single agents, are able on their own to induce tumor formation after repeated applications. They thereby appear to function as both initiators and promoters of tumorigenesis and consequently have been called complete carcinogens. We can imagine, for example, that certain mutagenic agents are also cytotoxic at high concentrations and thus able to act as tumor promoters by killing cells, thereby inducing the compensatory proliferation of surviving cells in a target tissue. However, such agents are likely to play minor roles in human carcinogenesis. Most genotoxic

carcinogens enter into human tissues at concentrations that are far too low to evoke cytotoxic effects. Hence, the tumors incited by these agents seem to depend heavily for their formation on other substances that function as pure tumor promoters.

Table 11.5 Known or suspected human tumor promoters and their sites of action

Agent or process	**Cancer site**
Hormones	
Estrogen	endometrium
Estrogen and progesterone	breast
Ovulation	ovary
Testosterone	prostate
Drugs	
Oral contraceptives, anabolic steroids	liver
Analgesics	renal pelvis
Diuretics	kidney
Infectious agents	
Hepatitis B/C viruses	liver
Schistosoma haematobium—blood fluke	bladder

Agent or process	**Cancer site**
Schistosoma japonicum—blood fluke	colon
Clonorchis sinensis—liver fluke	biliary tract
Helicobacter pylori—bacterium	stomach
Malarial parasites	B cell
Tuberculosis bacillus	lung
Chemical agents	
Betel nut, lime	oral cavity
Chewing tobacco	oral cavity
Bile	small intestine
Salt	stomach
Acid reflux	esophagus
Physical or mechanical trauma	
Asbestos	mesothelium, lung
Gallstones	gallbladder

Agent or process	Cancer site
Coarsely ground corn	stomach
Head injury	meninges
Chronic irritation or inflammation	
Tropical ulcers[a]	skin
Chronic ulcerative colitis	colon
Chronic cystitis	bladder
Chronic pancreatitis	pancreas

Adapted in part from S. Preston-Martin et al., *Cancer Res.* 50:7415–7421, 1990. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.

The recognition that tumor promotion plays a major role in human cancer incidence has major implications for identifying human carcinogens. To begin, there are no laboratory tests comparable to the Ames test that can readily detect tumor-promoting mechanisms and quantify the potency of these mechanisms in order to assess their contributions to human cancer burden. Even the use of mouse models of disease offers little insight, because most mechanisms of tumor promotion differ dramatically between mice and humans as a consequence of diverged metabolisms and physiologies (see Sidebar 11.12). On the rare occasions when tumor-promoting actions can be identified through use of laboratory mice, it has become clear that it is difficult to generate dose-response curves that are translatable into actual disease-causing potential. Thus, although the Ames test has revealed a largely linear relationship between the dose of a mutagenic chemical and the risk of disease, there is no reason to believe that such linearity governs the behavior of tumor-promoting mechanisms, where threshold effects are likely to operate, resulting biological effects above a certain concentration or dose but essentially no effects at concentrations/doses 10- or

100-fold lower. Accordingly, agents or exposures that evoke clear biological responses in laboratory mice when applied at high concentrations to these animals may well have no significant biological responses at the vastly lower concentrations to which humans are routinely exposed.

These difficulties have had profound implications for the risk assessments of various agents to which humans are routinely exposed, and have led to the banning of certain substances that are highly unlikely to ever have contributed to the formation of even a single human tumor. These difficulties have left only one strategy that is likely to generate useful risk assessments of human exposures: epidemiological studies that correlate disease incidence with estimated exposure, the latter often extending over decades of time.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cardia
: Region of the stomach adjacent to its junction with the esophagus.

dermis
: (adj., **dermal**) Thick layer of stromal cells, largely fibroblasts, found beneath the epidermal keratinocyte layer of the skin.

epidermis
: (adj., **-dermal**) The epithelial layer of the skin, composed largely of keratinocytes at various stages of differentiation.

complete carcinogen
: An agent that can act as both an initiator and a promoter of tumor progression. *See* **initiation, promotion**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aTropical ulcers are caused by chronic infections of the skin, usually of bacterial origin, that do not heal and are associated with poor nutrition and lack of sanitation.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

11.15 Metabolism is the elusive heart of the cancer process

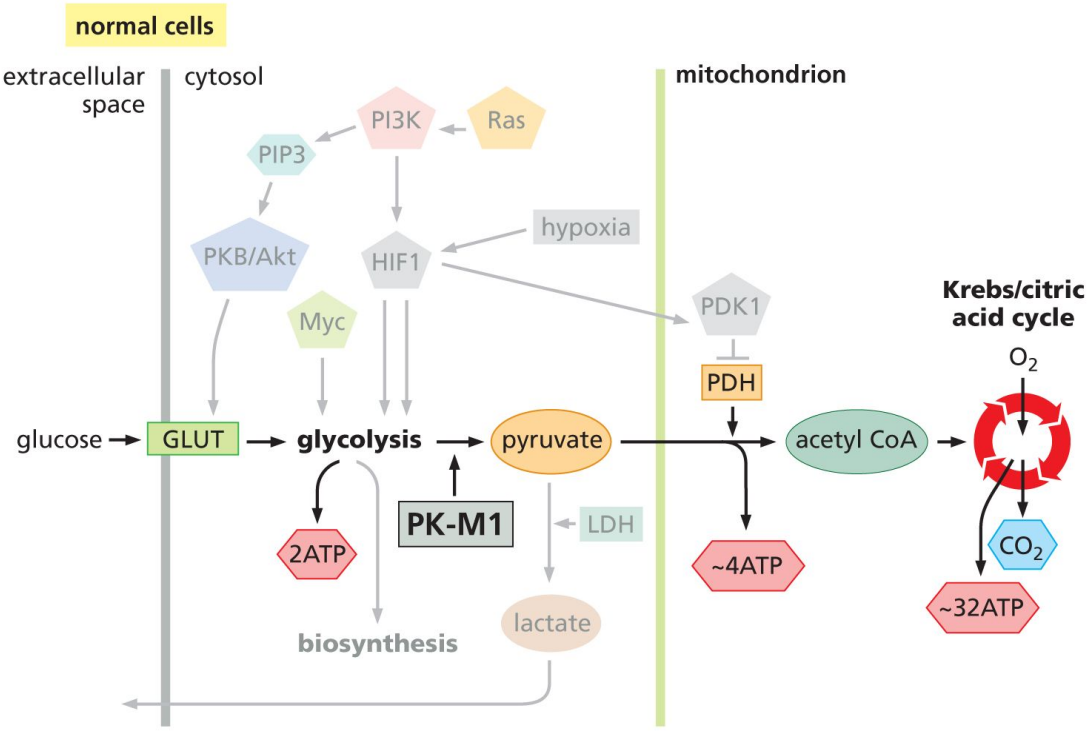
Throughout this chapter we encountered the various steps through which normal cells pass en route from normalcy to full-fledged neoplasia, acquiring a series of cell-biological phenotypes along the way. There is, in addition, one aspect of the neoplastic cell phenotype that threads its way through all of these stages and affects them in myriad ways. Only now do we confront this common thread: cancer cells exhibit altered metabolism from the earliest to the last stages of multi-step tumor progression. Indeed, as these cells evolve progressively toward high-grade neoplasia, their internal biochemistry—involving both energy metabolism and the intermediary metabolism of biosynthesis—shifts in concert.

Here, we encounter a fundamental ambiguity that has dogged the field of cancer metabolism research since its inception. Do changes in metabolism represent a fundamental, intrinsic component of the neoplastic cell state that drives cancer cell behavior or, alternatively, is the altered metabolism of cancer cells simply one of the myriad downstream consequences of the neoplastic state? Given the pleiotropic consequences of cell transformation, are these well-documented metabolic shifts, as described below, *causes* or *consequences* of the growth state of cancer cells?

In fact, the peculiarity of tumor cell biochemistry was already appreciated a century ago: the energy metabolism of most cancer cells differs markedly from that of normal cells, as first reported in 1924 by Otto Warburg, who was later honored with a Nobel Prize for discovering the respiratory enzyme now known as cytochrome *c* oxidase. By then, it was already apparent that in the absence of adequate oxygen (hypoxia), mammalian cells would resort to glycolysis in contrast to the process that we now term oxidative phosphorylation, which operates during normoxic conditions. Glycolysis occurs in the cytosol, whereas oxidative phosphorylation is confined to the mitochondria.

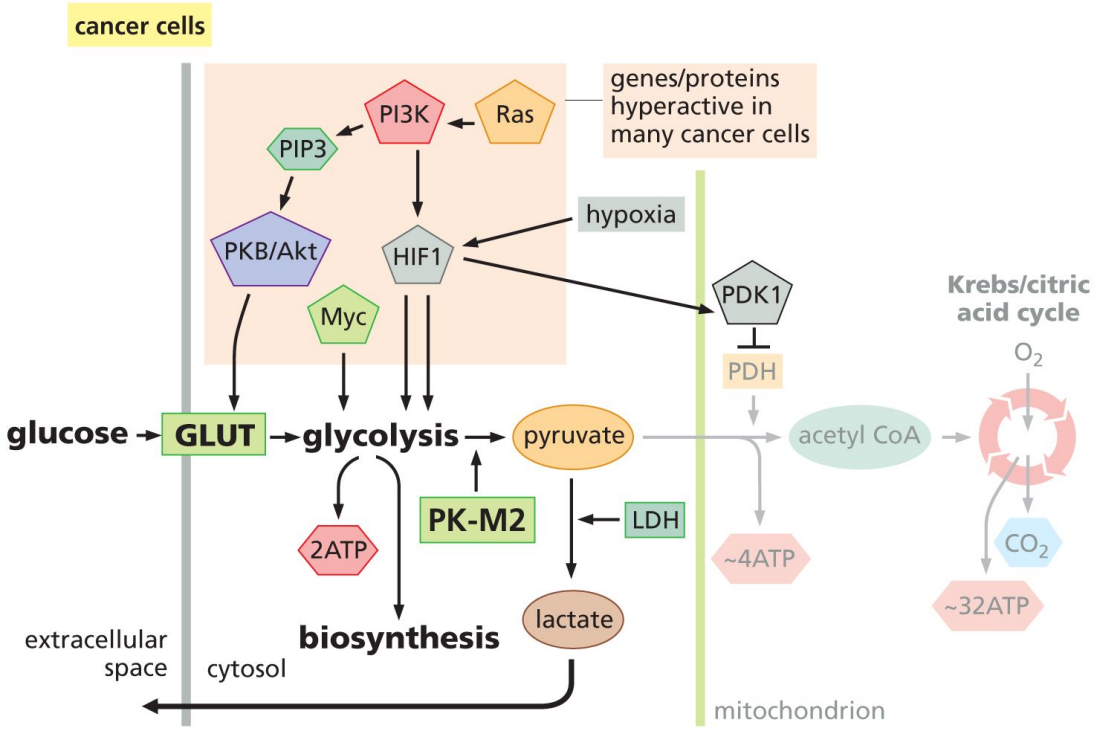
As was more thoroughly documented in the decades that followed, normal cells that experience aerobic, normoxic conditions break down glucose into pyruvate in the cytosol through the process of glycolysis and then dispatch the pyruvate into mitochondria, where it is broken down further into carbon dioxide in the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle (also known as the Krebs cycle and the citric acid cycle; **Figure 11.37**). Under anaerobic or hypoxic (low oxygen tension) conditions, however, normal cells are limited to using only glycolysis, generating pyruvate that is reduced to lactate, which is then secreted from cells. Warburg discovered that even when exposed to

ample oxygen, many types of cancer cells appeared to rely largely on glycolysis, generating lactate as the breakdown product of glucose (Figure 11.37) and secreting it into the extracellular space.



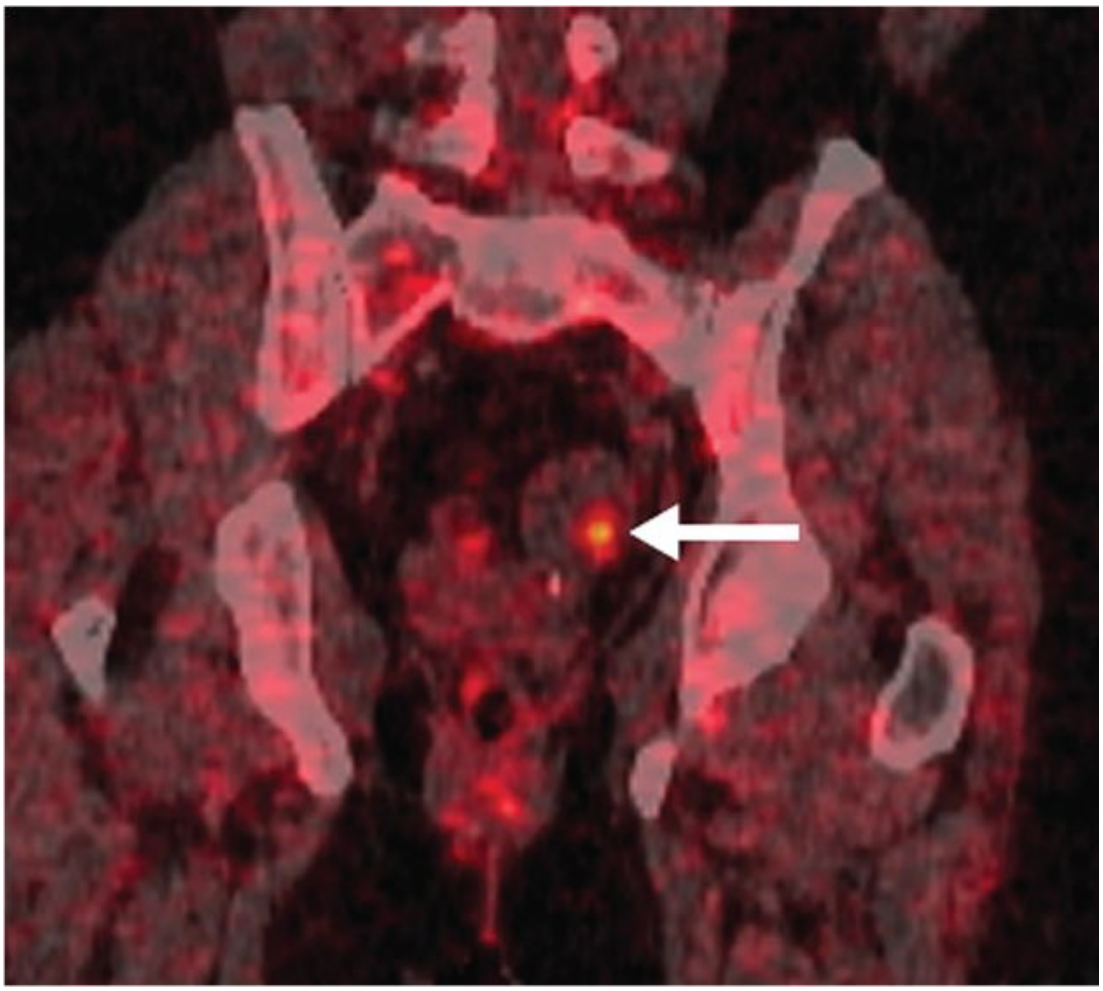
A diagram shows that in normal cells, glucose entering the cytosol undergoes glycolysis and 2 A T P are released. In the last step, P K M 1 produces pyruvate that enters the mitochondria. P D H converts it to acetyl Co A which generates about 4 A T P. Acetyl Co A enters the Krebs or citric acid cycle and there generates approximately 32 A T pees.

(A)



A diagram shows that in cancer cells, glucose entering the cytosol undergoes glycolysis, but in the last step, P K M 2 produces pyruvate that is converted into lactate, which ultimately is ejected from the cell.

(B)



A tomography image of internal that is mostly red but contains a few bright orange spots. The largest of these has a white arrow pointing to it and is located in the center between two bones.

(C)

Figure 11.37 Deregulation of energy metabolism during the course of neoplastic transformation (A) In most normal nonproliferating cells having access to adequate oxygen, glucose is imported into the cells by glucose transporters (GLUTs) and then broken down by glycolysis and the citric acid cycle. During the last step of glycolysis, pyruvate kinase form M1 (PK-M1) ensures that its product, pyruvate, is imported into the mitochondria, where it is oxidized by pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) into acetyl CoA for processing in the citric acid cycle. Altogether, the mitochondria can generate as much as 36 ATP molecules per glucose molecule. (B) In cancer cells, including those with access to ample oxygen, the GLUT glucose transporters import large amounts of glucose into the cytosol, where it is processed by glycolysis. However, as the last step of

glycolysis, pyruvate kinase M2 (PK-M2) causes its pyruvate product to be diverted to lactate dehydrogenase (LDH-A), yielding the lactate that is secreted in abundance by cancer cells. Because relatively little of the initially imported glucose is metabolized by the mitochondria, as few as 2 ATPs are generated per glucose molecule. Moreover, many of the intermediates generated during glycolysis are diverted toward biosynthetic uses. This mode of metabolic regulation resembles the metabolic state of normal, rapidly dividing cells, which also divert a significant portion of their glycolytic intermediates to biosynthetic pathways. Enzymes are in rectangles, glucose metabolites are in ovals, low–molecular-weight compounds are in hexagons, regulatory proteins are in pentagons. (C) 2-Deoxy-2-(^{18}F)fluoro-D-glucose positron-emission tomography (FGD-PET) makes it possible to visualize tumors in the body that have concentrated large amounts of glucose because of the hyperactivity of the GLUT1 transporter in the associated cancer cells. In the case shown here, FDG-PET revealed a small tumor (bright orange; arrow) in the region near an ovary of a woman who was under treatment for breast cancer but was otherwise without symptoms. X-ray-computed tomography (CT) was used at the same time to image the outlines of the tissues of this patient. This highly sensitive technology provided the first indication of an incipient ovarian cancer in this patient. (C, from R.A. Milam, M.R. Milam and R.B. Iyer, *J. Clin. Oncol*. 25:5657–5658, 2007. With permission from Wolters Kluwer.)

The use by cancer cells of "aerobic glycolysis," as Warburg called it, would seem to make little sense energetically, because the breakdown of one molecule of glucose yields only two molecules of ATP through glycolysis. In contrast, when under aerobic conditions glycolysis is followed by oxidation of pyruvate in the citric acid cycle, which allows 33 to 36 ATPs to be harvested from the breakdown products of a single glucose molecule. Actually, most types of normal cells in the body have continuous access to O_2 conveyed by the blood and therefore metabolize glucose through this energetically far more efficient route. The tendency of cancer cells to apparently limit themselves largely to glycolysis, even when provided with adequate oxygen, stood out as exceedingly unusual behavior.

In the 1950s, Warburg proposed that this altered energy metabolism was the central driving force in the formation of cancer cells, a notion that was discredited in the decades that followed, as described repeatedly in the preceding chapters of this book. Nonetheless, the process of aerobic glycolysis that he uncovered has stood the test of time, being found to operate in a wide variety of human cancer cells. Indeed, it is now thought to represent one of the many characteristics directly associated with cell transformation.

This aerobic glycolysis, sometimes called the Warburg effect, remains a subject of much contention, as its rationale in cancer cell biology has never been fully resolved: Why do as many as 80% of cancer cells metabolize most of their glucose via glycolysis when completion of glucose degradation in mitochondria by the citric acid cycle would afford them vastly more ATP to fuel their own growth and proliferation? Is aerobic glycolysis required for maintenance of the cancer cell phenotype, or does it represent nothing more than a side effect of cell transformation that plays no causal role in cell transformation and tumor growth? At least one more of Warburg's claims was refuted in recent decades: he claimed that the Krebs/TCA cycle (which we now know operates within the mitochondria) was essentially shut down in cancer cells experiencing normoxia, but this turned out not to be the case. Although glycolysis is clearly a dominant metabolic force in many types of cancer cells, the mitochondria and their Krebs/TCA cycles function quite well in most types of cancer cells.

One explanation of aerobic glycolysis comes from the observation that the cancer cells within a tumor often have inadequate access to oxygen, as we will discuss in detail in Chapter 13. The resulting hypoxic state limits cancer cells to glycolysis and thus to inefficient ATP production—just as normal cells would be limited under these conditions. Because of the Warburg effect, cancer cells would seem to be well adapted to this oxygen starvation, because glycolysis operates normally under hypoxic conditions. Still, this fails to explain why cancer cells, even when provided with abundant oxygen, do not take advantage of this oxygen to generate ATP in far larger quantities but instead continue to funnel much of their glucose through glycolysis without dispatching the end products of glycolysis into the mitochondria, as would occur in normal cells operating under normoxic conditions.

Many cancer cells also exhibit a second, associated abnormality: they import an enormous amount of glucose from the extracellular space. This behavior is observed in many types of cancer cells, including both carcinomas and hematopoietic tumors; they express greatly elevated levels of glucose transporters, particularly GLUT1, which span the plasma membrane and drive the high rates of glucose uptake by these cells. High levels of GLUT1 gene expression have been found to be driven by now-familiar oncogenes, notably *myc*, *ras*, and *src*, as well as the hypoxia-inducible HIF-1α transcription factor. Radiologists take advantage of this elevated glucose uptake by injecting into the circulation radiolabeled glucose [2-deoxy-2-(^{18}F)fluoro-D-glucose, FDG] and observing its rapid concentration in tumors through positron emission tomography (PET; see Figure 11.37). The import of large amounts of glucose by the GLUT1 and other transporter proteins offers cancer cells one clear biological advantage when they are residing within tumors. While glucose is present in abundance in tissue culture media, it is scarce in tissues throughout the body's normal tissues. This scarcity imposes a major constraint on the proliferation of many normal cell types that cancer cells can, however, overcome through their ongoing efficient

importation of large amounts of this carbohydrate. Thus, many types of oncogene-transformed cell enjoy only a minimal growth advantage (relative to normal cells) *in vitro*; only when such transformed cells are growing *in vivo* as components of tumors does their growth advantage, specifically the advantage afforded by their expression and utilization of GLUT1, become apparent.

One compelling rationale for the use of aerobic glycolysis derives from the fact that glycolysis actually serves a second role independent of ATP generation: the intermediates in the glycolytic pathway function as precursors of many molecules involved in cell growth, including the biosynthesis of nucleotides and lipids. By blocking the last step of glycolysis, cancer cells ensure the accumulation of earlier intermediates via feedback reactions in this pathway. These glycolytic intermediates can then be diverted into critically important biosynthetic reactions, such as those leading to the formation of macromolecules and lipids whose high-level production is clearly central to successful rapid cell proliferation. This behavior contrasts with that of normal cells, which are generally not actively proliferating, do not require large-scale biosynthetic reactions, and depend largely on ATP to sustain their metabolic activity. (By some estimates, normal cells use more than 30% of their imported glucose to make ATP, whereas cancer cells use only ∼1% of their glucose for this purpose—a striking contrast in metabolic organization.)

A complete rationale for why cancer cells use aerobic glycolysis is still not in hand. However, independent of how this question is resolved, there is yet another: how do cancer cells actually manage to avoid mitochondrial processing of glucose metabolites? Pyruvate kinase (PK) catalyzes the last step of glycolysis—the conversion of phosphoenolpyruvate to pyruvate. As noted above, this end product of glycolysis is normally destined for import into the mitochondria, where it is broken down in the citric acid cycle (see Figure 11.37). The M1 isoform of PK typically is expressed in most differentiated adult tissues, whereas the M2 isoform is expressed by early embryonic cells, rapidly growing normal cells, and cancer cells. For reasons that are still poorly understood mechanistically, the commonly expressed M1 isoform of PK ensures that its product, pyruvate, is dispatched from the cytosol directly into the mitochondria, whereas the M2 isoform that is expressed instead in cancer cells causes its pyruvate product to be diverted away from the mitochondria, reduced to lactate in the cytosol, and ultimately secreted. Of interest to cancer cell biology, the M2 isoform of PK that predominates in cancer cells can interact physically with proteins containing phosphotyrosine residues that are abundant in cancer cells (see Sections 5.2 to 5.6). This interaction causes a shutdown of the catalytic activity of this PK, resulting in turn in the accumulation of glycolytic intermediates that are then diverted into various biosynthetic pathways, the latter being termed anabolic reactions. Relative to the M1 form of PK, the M2 enzyme has a very slow turnover number, which contributes to the backup of glycolytic intermediates and their diversion into biosynthetic pathways. Also, the low catalytic activity of the M2 isoform of PK favors

the formation of lactate rather than pyruvate, explaining the high levels of lactate secretion by cancer cells.

Experimental evidence indicates that the growth of tumors actually depends on the expression of the M2 form of PK and on the elevated expression of both the glucose importer GLUT1 and lactate dehydrogenase-A (LDH-A) enzyme, the latter being involved in reducing pyruvate to lactate, which is then secreted (see Figure 11.37B). When any one of these is inhibited, tumor growth slows down, sometimes dramatically. Observations like these provide the first indications that the unusual glucose metabolism of cancer cells creates a physiological state on which cancer cell growth and proliferation depend.

We should also note one other characteristic of cancer cell metabolism—the important role of glutamine. It serves as a critical source of nitrogen for various types of cells and a precursor of the nitrogenous bases that form both RNA and DNA. Moreover, once deamidated, the resulting glutamate molecules are then employed in the biosynthesis of various other amino acids. In fact, glutamine is considered a "nonessential amino acid," because normal cells are perfectly capable of synthesizing it on their own (rather than depending absolutely on the import of this amino acid from various nutrient sources). It turns out, however, that import of large amounts of glutamine from extracellular sources is critically important to the proliferation of normal cells and, even more so, neoplastic cells. This requirement for large amounts of imported glutamine is far more than might be predicted from the use of this amino acid in assembling proteins. This peculiarity already featured in the formulation of tissue culture media more than half a century ago, where high concentrations of glutamine in the media were found to be critical to the robust proliferation of both normal and neoplastic cells *in vitro*.

To conclude, it is important to emphasize that the expression of the Warburg-like, aerobic glycolysis is not an invention of neoplastic cells, as was thought at one point. Instead, it is very clear that highly proliferative normal cells also exhibit the complex metabolic shifts described above that have been associated with cancer cells. From the perspective of signal transduction biochemistry, this similarity makes sense, because exposure of normal cells to various mitogenic growth factors (as described in Chapter 5) triggers dramatic increases in the import of glucose via the GLUT1 transporter as well as a number of the changes in glycolysis that are also associated with cancer cell metabolism.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

hypoxia
: (adj., **hypoxic**) State of lower-than-normal oxygen tension. *See also* **normoxia**.

hypoxia
: (adj., **hypoxic**) State of lower-than-normal oxygen tension. *See also* **normoxia**.

aerobic glycolysis
: The use by cancer cells of glycolysis as a major source of energy production under aerobic conditions that would normally favor use of the far more efficient Krebs/citric acid cycle; *also termed* **Warburg effect**.

Warburg effect
: The use by cancer cells of glycolysis as a major source of energy production under aerobic conditions that would normally favor use of the far more efficient Krebs/citric acid cycle; *also termed* **Warburg effect**.

turnover number
: The rate with which an enzyme processes its substrate, usually presented as the number of enzymatic reactions catalyzed per second by a single enzyme molecule.

normoxia
: A level of oxygen that corresponds to that normally experienced by cells in a specific tissue environment. *See also* **hypoxia**.

anabolism
: (adj., **anabolic** Processes by which new biological molecules are assembled via biosynthetic reactions. *See also* **catabolism**.

OceanofPDF.com

11.16 Synopsis and prospects

This chapter returns time and again to the theme that the development (that is, the pathogenesis) of a human tumor is a process involving a succession of distinct steps occurring one after the other, each making cells progressively more aggressive. The end product of this succession is a human cell that is altered in multiple distinct ways that together constitute the phenotype of a neoplastic cell. This phenotype is created by deregulation of multiple cellular control systems, including deregulation of cell proliferation, evasion of anti-proliferative signals, the ability to escape detection and elimination by the immune system, a heightened resistance to cell-death programs such as apoptosis, shifts in glucose metabolism, and an ability to multiply without any limits to the number of successive cell generations—the last trait representing the state of immortalization.

The complexity of this process is a direct reflection of the development of multiple anti-neoplastic mechanisms that have been hardwired into the circuitry of our cells and tissues. Many of these mechanisms were developed as our small, short-lived mammalian ancestors evolved progressively over the course of 100 million years into the long-lived, large organisms that we have become. In our own species, such evolution created organisms that experience 10^{16} cell divisions in a lifetime, each of which represents an opportunity for genetic and epigenetic disasters, notably mutations and disruption of normal differentiation programs. This greatly increased risk of biological chaos necessitated the co-evolution of anti-neoplastic mechanisms at both the cellular and organismic level, that is, the erection of multiple concentric lines of defense against cancer. These multiple barriers represent the foundation of the present chapter, because the completion of each of the steps of multi-step tumor pathogenesis reflects the successful breaching of one or another of these multiple anti-neoplastic barriers.

As argued here, each of these steps of multi-step progression involves the clonal expansion of the descendants of a cell that has acquired one or another advantageous phenotype, doing so as a direct consequence of a somatic mutation or a cell-heritable shift in epigenetic state. According to this model, each of these clonal expansions continues until one or another cell in the now-expanded population acquires yet another heritable shift in phenotype that renders this particular cell even more capable of surviving and proliferating than its neighbors in the expanded clonal cell population (see Figure 11.14).

Ideally, this scheme of a succession of multiple clonal expansions should yield a logical framework with which to understand the complexity of human cancer pathogenesis. However, this framework, as compelling as it might be, still does not allow us to truly understand the daunting complexity of human cancer pathogenesis. The scope of this problem is illustrated by the recently expanded powers of genomic sequencing, which have generated a bewildering array of germ-line mutations and somatically mutated human genes. The largest repository of this information, named COSMIC, reported in 2020 that mutant alleles of more than 1% of the genes in the human genome (and therefore more than 200 genes) have been implicated in various ways in cancer causation. More than 90% of these are involved via somatic mutations and 20% are borne as mutant cancer-predisposing genes in the germ line, with half of the latter being involved via both genetic mechanisms of cancer causation. Importantly, these genomic analyses do not even include the considerable contributions of epigenetic alterations to the acquired phenotypes of human cancer cells; recall that such nongenetic controls may even be responsible for display of the *majority* of the distinct phenotypes of cancer cells.

Given the possible combinatorial interactions of these various mutant genes (beyond calculation), the various distinct differentiated cell types involved (far more than 200), and the participation of a multitude of epigenetic programs in driving tumor progression forward (a number entirely unknown), how can we possibly distill these various factors into a simple, accessible, and compelling depiction of how human cancers are formed?

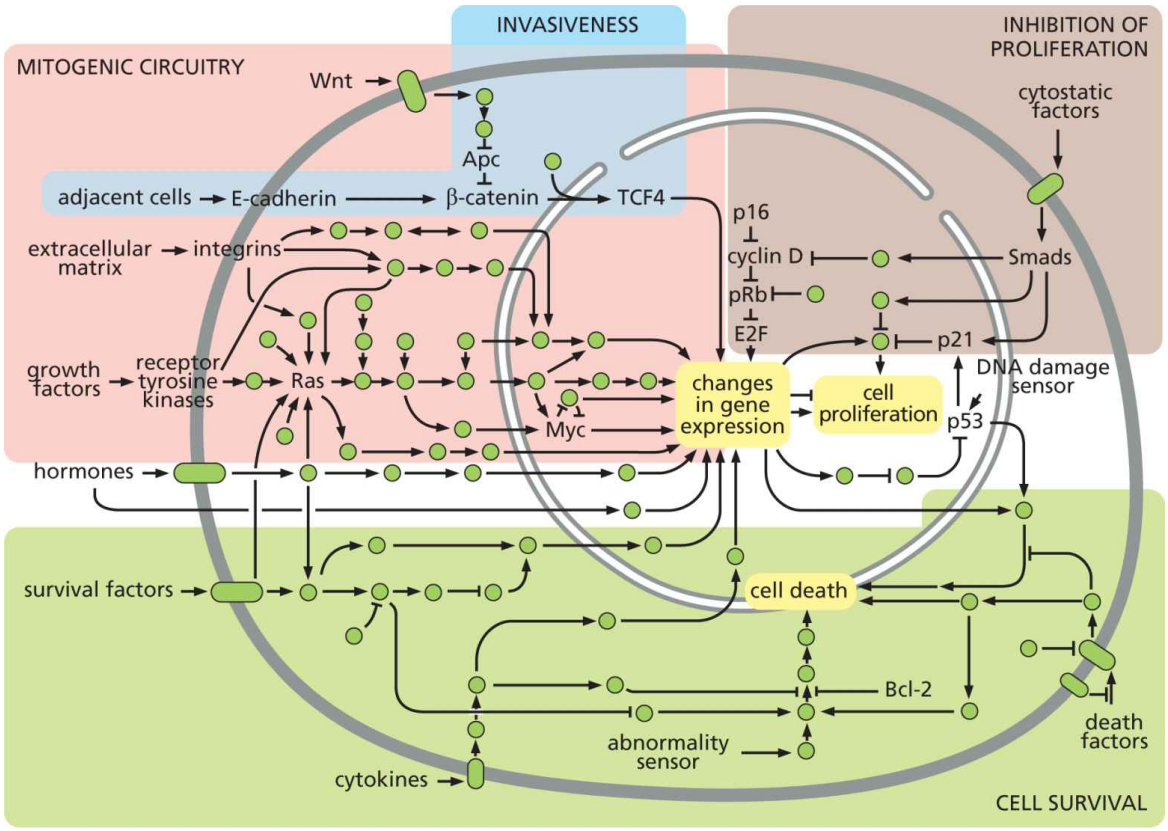
In fact, in this chapter we have come across two approaches to begin to address this seemingly intractable problem. In the first, the experimental transformation of human cells through various introduced genes suggests the operations of a limited number of intracellular signaling circuits that must be perturbed in order for a fully normal human cell to grow as a malignant cell; four to five such pathways appear to be critical, at least in the cells of human solid tumors (see Figure 11.28). An entirely different approach is to define instead a limited number of cell-biological *phenotypes* that are commonly shared by a diverse array of human cancer cell types; such phenotypes have been termed “cancer hallmarks” and help us to understand cancer cell biology in terms of cell physiology (**Sidebar 11.13**).

Sidebar 11.13 Cancer hallmarks—the distinguishable phenotypes of cancer cells

Attempts at enumerating the cell-biological traits shared in common by a diverse array of human cancer cell types has yielded a relatively short list of cellular phenotypes, most having been long-recognized. These are: (1) a reduced dependence on exogenous mitogenic growth factors (see Chapters 5 and 6); (2) an acquired resistance to proliferation-inhibitory signals, such as those conveyed by TGF-β (see Chapter 8); (3) the ability to multiply indefinitely, that is, immortalized cell proliferation (see Chapter 10); (4) a reduced susceptibility to apoptosis (see Chapter 9); (5) the ability to generate new blood vessels—angiogenesis (see Chapter 13); (6) the acquisition of invasiveness and metastatic ability (see Chapter 14); and a seventh whose universality remains less well documented but increasingly seems to be observed among human solid tumors: (7) the ability to evade elimination by the immune system (see Chapters 15 and 16). In addition, (8) the role of aerobic glycolysis, as described in Section 11.15 increasingly seems intrinsic to the pathogenesis of many types of cancer.

Beyond these, two other processes have been cited that, although not intrinsic to the biology of cancer cells themselves, are nevertheless important for the *acquisition* of the eight hallmark phenotypes. Thus, our discussion of clonal evolution and succession concluded that in order for these events to occur at reasonable frequency, mutation rates within evolving pre-neoplastic cell populations must be abnormally high (as described in the next chapter). In the absence of such increased mutability, clonal populations of these cells may not have sufficient time to accumulate the multiple genetic alterations that are required in aggregate for cancer formation. Yet another enabling process featured prominently in this chapter: inflammation increasingly seems to play a role in creating tissue microenvironments that are favorable for tumor promotion, which accelerates the completion of individual steps multi-step tumorigenesis, allowing the process as a whole to reach completion in a human life span.

In principle, these two very different ways to approach cancer cell biology may one day be interconnected, specifically by assigning distinct cancer cell traits to “subcircuits” of the type that are depicted in **Figure 11.38**. If so, perhaps we will be able to portray tumor progression as the progressive deregulation of a number of distinct subcircuits within the cell. Nonetheless, it is clear that an overarching synthesis of these two analytical approaches is still elusive, indicating that the development of a unifying “theory of cancer” still lies in the distant future.



A detailed schematic of the signaling circuitry within a single cell. A complex network of influences is shown connecting receptors in the plasma membrane to proteins within the cytoplasm and within the nucleus. Sectors of the network are shaded in different colors to indicate what they control: cell survival, mitogenesis, invasiveness, or inhibition of proliferation. External influences on the network include death factors, survival factors and cytokines as inputs to the cell survival circuitry; growth factors, adjacent cells, the extracellular matrix, and W n t as inputs to the mitogenic circuitry; and cytostatic factors that relate to inhibition of proliferation. Centrally important activities, associated with the nucleus, include cell survival, cell proliferation, and changes in gene expression.

Figure 11.38 The intracellular signaling circuitry and collaboration between cancer-associated genes The design of the signal-transduction circuitry of mammalian cells has been uncovered, piece by piece, over the past four decades. The diagram here indicates only a portion of the proteins *(green circles)* that play critical roles in modulating the flow of signals through the various circuits operating within our cells. As indicated here by the various shadings, growth-promoting, mitogenic circuit (*light red*), the circuit governing growth-inhibitory signals (*light brown*), the circuit

governing apoptosis (*light green*), and the circuit governing invasiveness and metastasis (*light blue*) can be assigned to distinct regions in the map of the master circuitry of the mammalian cell. (Note that the circuit governing mitogenesis/proliferation overlaps in part with that governing cancer cell invasiveness, indicating that a common set of proteins mediates both biological responses.) In principle, each of the distinct stages of multi-step tumor progression and each driver gene mutation can be mapped to one of these subcircuits. In practice, this remains challenging because of numerous cross-connections between individual subcircuits, our still-incomplete enumeration of functionally critical signaling proteins, and our fragmentary understanding of how individual signaling proteins operate and interact with one another. Moreover, additional subcircuits still need to be mapped out. By implication, all of these subcircuits need to be perturbed or deregulated in order for a normal human cell to become transformed into a tumorigenic derivative. (Adapted from D. Hanahan and R.A. Weinberg, *Cell* 100:57–70, 2000. With permission from Elsevier.)

Among the multiple obstacles to progress is the realization that the Darwinian model of tumor progression is hard to validate in detail. We are hard-pressed, at least at present, in measuring the time intervals between clonal expansions. Some may occur far more rapidly than others and may be influenced by the biology of the individual in which these processes occur, including factors such as inborn genetic susceptibility and various aspects of lifestyle, obesity, and diet. Such time intervals are surely crucial to cancer formation because, by necessity, they govern the time-to-completion of the process as a whole and thereby determine whether or not it creates clinical disease in a human life span.

In Sections 11.13 and 11.14, we read that the great majority of human carcinogens are likely to drive cancer formation through their ability to *accelerate the rates* of multi-step tumor progression rather than through direct effects on the genomes of cells in various target organs. These accelerating mechanisms were portrayed here as acting via their powers to act as non-genotoxic tumor promoters rather than the initiators defined by the mouse skin carcinogenesis model (see Figure 11.30). Indeed, many types of human tumors seem to arise entirely without the contributions of identifiable mutagens originating outside the human body. In such tumors, the genetic damage that is essential to multi-step tumor pathogenesis would, by necessity, be generated entirely by endogenous processes, a topic that we will visit in great depth in the next chapter. Stated differently, in most human tissues, the numbers of endogenously generated mutations (that is, those created

entirely by mechanisms operating entirely within an affected cell) are likely to dwarf those of exogenous origin, (that is, those created by genotoxic substances that enter into the human body and its cells from outside).

As described in this chapter, some of the clearly validated tumor-promoting mechanisms operate in a purely mitogenic fashion; the actions of steroid hormones come to mind. Far more numerous and likely influential, however, are the tumor-promoting mechanisms that derive from various types of localized tissue inflammation. Thus, chronic or “smoldering” inflammation in the stromal microenvironment of a tissue seems to provide future neoplastic cell populations with the mitogenic signals needed to drive their clonal expansion.

In the case of human tumors, the apparently central roles of tumor promoting mechanisms have left us with two major quandaries. First, we do not have assays for detecting human tumor promoters, which may be present in low, limiting amounts in our tissues. Second, we are unable to quantify the concentrations of these agents, which represent critical numbers in judging their contributions to cancer pathogenesis and the importance of eliminating them from our environment. This depiction of the key roles of tumor promotion and localized inflammation within a tissue ultimately bears directly on the agendas of public health campaigns organized to reduce cancer incidence (and resulting cancer-associated mortality). However, nongenotoxic, tumor-promoting mechanisms are, at least at present, very difficult to recapitulate in the research laboratory. Lacking this ability, we still understand relatively little about these nongenetic mechanisms that are so deeply involved in cancer pathogenesis and thus tumor incidence.

Still, in the case of a defined subset of common human cancers pro-inflammatory mechanisms can be traced directly back to clearly identified causal agents. Their identities of these do indeed suggest effective strategies for reducing cancer incidence. On a worldwide scale, it is estimated that 9% of all cancer deaths arise because chronic infections of the stomach by the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* often lead to gastric carcinomas, and that 6% of all cancer deaths are associated with liver cancers, most of which are caused by chronic infections by hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses. The chronic infection of the cervical epithelium caused by human papillomaviruses, notably strains 16, 18, and 45, leads in some women to the cervical carcinomas that account for 5% of worldwide cancer mortality. (The chronic inflammatory effects of these papillomavirus infections may be compounded by certain viral oncogenes.) The identification of these etiologic agents presents an enormous opportunity for reducing worldwide cancer

incidence and mortality: infectious diseases are ultimately far easier to control and prevent (through immunization, antibiotics, and antiviral drugs) than the effects of foodstuffs that we ingest and the tobacco products that we inhale. By some estimates, 450 million people worldwide are infected chronically with HBV, and 200 million are long-term HCV carriers.

This recognition of the widespread influence of pro-inflammatory processes in cancer pathogenesis offers another opportunity. More specifically, future anti-cancer drugs may derive from the recent advances in elucidating the biochemical details of inflammation and its specific contributions to tumor promotion. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) is clearly at the center of this process, and a number of anti-inflammatory agents (largely NSAIDs) targeting this enzyme are known to be effective in decreasing the incidence of various types of cancer. Ultimately, successes in reducing inflammation pharmacologically may provide the most effective route to reducing human cancer incidence and thus, in the longer term, mortality. At present, however, the ability to directly target anti-inflammatory agents to specific tissues or organs is limited, leaving us with agents that often carry unacceptable side effects.

There are yet other issues encountered in this chapter that bear on attempts to reduce cancer mortality. Here is one question raised by the research we discussed: Do full-blown, multiply mutated tumors continue to depend on the mutant alleles that were created decades earlier by initiating mutagens? Or do these initially acquired mutant alleles become irrelevant later, when subsequently acquired mutant alleles take over the job of programming cancer cell proliferation?

The logic developed in this chapter seems to provide a clear and direct answer: Mutant alleles acquired late in multi-step progression should never be functionally redundant with those acquired earlier, simply because these late alleles do not confer advantageous phenotypes beyond those that cancer cells have already developed earlier. Accordingly, early mutations and mutant alleles should not be obviated by later ones, and these early mutations remain critical to ongoing robust tumor growth. Transgenic mice shed some light here. In some of these mouse models, the initiating transgenic oncogenes, such as *myc* and *ras* (see Section 11.8), have been inactivated by a variety of experimental tricks long after substantial tumors have formed. As it turns out, the effects on tumor growth that have been observed to date are conflicting. More often than not, these tumors collapse rapidly when deprived of the initiating oncogenes that led originally to their formation. Hence, in these cases, the mutant oncogenic alleles continued to be critically important both for the initiation of the neoplastic cell state as well as

the maintenance of this state long afterward. Stated differently, the mutant alleles that were acquired in later steps of multi-step tumorigenesis did not render the earlier ones unnecessary. However, in several research reports, shutdown of the initiating *neu*, *myc*, or *wnt* oncogenes long after tumors had formed led, after short remissions, to the regrowth of these tumors. In these cases, the initiating oncogenes were clearly no longer needed for the expansion of the relapsing tumors.

These observations would seem to hold important implications for the development of new types of anti-cancer therapeutics, a topic that we will return to in Chapter 17. For example, if a mutant *ras* allele is found in a human tumor cell genome, can this tumor be cured by drugs targeted to the Ras oncoprotein, or has this oncoprotein, which almost certainly played a key role in the early steps of tumor formation, become irrelevant, later on, to the continued proliferation and survival of the cells in this tumor?

In spite of our rapidly expanding understanding of cancer pathogenesis, as described in this chapter, we still do not have the means to impose control on most kinds of aggressive human cancers. The images in Figure 11.16 reveal starkly the major difficulty of current anti-cancer therapy—the fact that the extensive diversification of cell populations within individual tumors seems, almost inevitably, to yield therapy-resistant subpopulations of cells that erupt and drive clinical relapses in patients whose tumors previously responded to therapy. We still lack the means to compensate for the rapid pace of this intra-tumoral evolutionary diversification and therefore lack the ability to deliver the definitive cures that so many seek. So, this chapter does not end on a high note, but that is where we are and may be for a long time to come.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- The process of tumor formation is complex, with multiple steps involving multiple alterations of cells and their physiological control mechanisms.
- The complexity of this process is reflected in the long time periods required for most human cancers to develop.
- These changes involve both the activation of oncogenes and the inactivation of tumor suppressor genes.
- The number of steps required to experimentally transform human cells is larger than is needed to transform cells of laboratory mice.
- These alterations affect multiple distinct regulatory circuits within cells and function in a complementary fashion to create the neoplastic cell phenotype.
- Some of these changes occur as the direct result of the actions of exogenous mutagens, and exposure to such mutagens may represent a “rate-limiting” determinant of tumor progression.
- In most instances, however, the rate of tumor progression may be governed by the actions of nonmutagenic tumor-promoting agents, which may determine the rate of expansion of mutant cell clones.
- In many human cancers, these critical nonmutagenic, tumor-promoting stimuli include chronic mitogenic stimulation and inflammation.
- The multiplicity of steps required for human cancers to arise is not known, in part because certain changes may occur rapidly and therefore may not be “rate-limiting,” whereas others may require a decade or more to complete.
- Multi-step tumor progression can be depicted as a form of Darwinian evolution occurring within tissues. However, because some of the critical changes occurring during tumorigenesis are epigenetic, and because the rate of genetic diversification can occur very rapidly, the classic depictions of linear Darwinian evolution must be modified.
- In most, but not all, transgenic models of tumorigenesis, the initiating changes continue to be required for continued survival of a tumor, long after the process of tumor progression has reached completion.

- The number of genetic changes found in the genomes of human cancer cells vastly exceeds the number required for tumorigenesis to reach completion, complicating identification of the critical genetic changes that affect driver genes and are causally important in tumor formation.
- The discovery of cancer stem cells greatly changes our concepts about the mechanisms of multi-step tumorigenesis, because these self-renewing cells (or closely related progenitor cells), rather than the bulk populations of cancer cells, may be the objects of genetic alteration and clonal selection.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. Knowing the various genetic and epigenetic changes that occur during multi-step tumorigenesis, which would be likely to be readily uncovered and which may be difficult to identify? Describe the reasons for these assignments.
2. Some tumor suppressor genes inactivated during multi-step tumorigenesis may be readily identified because of LOH in the chromosomal region carrying them, whereas others may be difficult to identify in this way. Describe the factors that allow or complicate this identification.
3. What arguments favor the notion that all of us carry myriad clones of initiated premalignant cells throughout the body?
4. What arguments can be mustered that favor the notion that most human carcinogens act as promoters rather than initiators of tumorigenesis?
5. What different approaches can be used to estimate the number of steps in multi-step tumor progression, and how is each of these approaches flawed?
6. How does the current available information about multi-step tumor progression provide insights into strategies for the prevention of clinically detectable cancers?
7. What mechanisms enable chronic viral infections to exert a carcinogenic influence on a tissue?
8. Describe the various mechanisms of tumor promotion and the features that they share in common and those that distinguish them from one another.

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Adekola, K, Rosen ST & Shanmugam M (2012) Glucose transporters in cancer metabolism. *Curr. Opin. Oncol.* 24, 650–654.

Al-Hajj M & Clarke ME (2004) Self-renewal and solid tumor stem cells. *Oncogene* 23, 7274–7282.

Albuquerque TAF, do Val LD, Doherty A et al. (2018) From humans to hydra: patterns of cancer across the tree of life. *Biol. Rev.* 93,1715–1734.

Alison MR & Islam S (2009) Attributes of adult stem cells. *J. Pathol.* 217, 144–160.

Altrock PM, Liu LL & Michor F (2015) The mathematics of cancer: integrating quantitative models. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 15, 730–745.

Armitage P & Doll R (1954) The age distribution of cancer and a multistage theory of carcinogenesis. *Br. J. Cancer* 8, 1–12.

Arwert E, Hoste E & Watt FM (2012) Epithelial stem cells, wound healing and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 12, 170–180.

Balkwill F, Charles KA & Mantovani A (2005) Smoldering and polarized inflammation in the initiation and promotion of malignant disease. *Cancer Cell* 7, 211–217.

Balkwill F & Mantovani A (2010) Cancer and inflammation: implications for pharmacology and therapeutics. *Clin. Pharmacol. Ther.* 87, 401–406.

Blanpain C & Fuchs E (2006) Epidermal stem cells of the skin. *Annu. Rev. Cell Dev. Biol.* 22, 339–373.

Borovski T, De Sousa e Melo F, Vermeulen L & Medema JP (2011) Cancer stem cell niche: the place to be. *Cancer Res.* 71, 634–639.

Braakhuis BJM, Tabor MP, Kummer JA et al. (2003) A genetic explanation of Slaughter's concept of field cancerization: evidence and clinical implications. *Cancer Res*. 63, 1727–1730.

Brabletz S, Schmalhofer O & Brabletz T (2009) Gastrointestinal stem cells in development and cancer. *J. Pathol.* 217, 307–317.

Cairns J (1975) Mutation, selection and the natural history of cancer. *Nature* 255, 197–200.

Cairns RA, Harris IS & Mak, TW (2011) Regulation of cancer cell metabolism. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 85–95.

Caldas C (2012) Cancer sequencing unravels clonal evolution. *Nature Biotech.* 30, 408–410.

Cheng J, DeCaprio JA, Fluck MM & Schaffhausen BS (2009) Cellular transformation by simian virus 40 and murine polyoma virus T antigens. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 19, 218–228.

Cho RW & Clarke MF (2008) Recent advances in cancer stem cells. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 18, 1–6.

Crusz S & Balkwill FR (2015) Inflammation and cancer: advances and new agents. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol* 12, 584–596.

Damsky WE & Bosenberg M (2017) Melanocytic nevi and melanoma: unraveling a complex relationship. *Oncogene* 36, 5771–5792.

DeBerardinis RJ & Chandel NS (2016) Fundamentals of cancer metabolism. *Sci. Adv.* 2, e1600200.

de Magalhaes JP (2013) How ageing processes influence cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 13, 357–365.

Deng T, Lyon CJ, Bergin S et al. (2016) Obesity, inflammation and cancer. *Annu. Rev. Pathol. Mech. Dis.* 11, 421–449.

Dotto GP (2014) Multifocal epithelial tumors and field cancerization: stroma as a primary determinant. *J. Clin. Invest.* 145, 1446–1453.

Eichhorn PJA, Creyghton MP & Bernards R (2009) Protein phosphatase 2A regulatory subunits and cancer. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1795, 1–15.

Garcia SD, Park HS, Novelli M & Wright NA (1999) Field cancerization, clonality, and epithelial stem cells: the spread of mutated clones in epithelial sheets. *J. Pathol.* 187, 61–81.

Gerlinger M, McGranahan N, Dewhurst M et al. (2014) Cancer: evolution within a lifetime. *Annu. Rev. Genet.* 48, 215–236.

Gold LS, Ames BN & Slone TH (2002) Misconceptions about the causes of cancer. In Human and Environmental Risk Assessment: Theory and Practice (D Paustenbach ed), pp 1415–1460. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons.

Gonda TA, Tu S & Wang TC (2009) Chronic inflammation, the tumor microenvironment and cancer. *Cell Cycle* 8, 2005–2013.

Gorbunova V, Seluanov A, Zhang Z et al. (2014) Comparative genetics of longevity and cancer: insights from long-lived rodents. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 15, 531–540.

Greaves M (2015) Evolutionary determinants of cancer. *Cancer Discov.* 5, 806–820.

Griner EM & Kazanietz MG (2007) Protein kinase C and other diacylglycerol effectors in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 7, 281–293.

Grivennikov SI, Greten FR & Karin M (2010) Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. *Cell* 140, 883–899.

Haber DA & Settleman J (2007) Cancer: drivers and passengers. *Nature* 446, 145–146.

Hahn WC & Weinberg RA (2002) Modelling the molecular circuitry of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 331–341.

Hanahan D & Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. *Cell* 144, 646–674.

Hansel DE, Kern SE & Hruban RH (2003) Molecular pathogenesis of pancreatic cancer. *Annu. Rev. Genomics Hum. Genet*. 4, 237–256.

Henderson BE & Feigelson HS (2000) Hormonal carcinogenesis. *Carcinogenesis* 21, 427–433.

Hirschey MD, DeBerardinis RJ, Diehl AME et al. (2015) Dysregulated metabolism contributes to oncogenesis. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 35, S129–S150.

Hoxhaj G & Manning BD (2020) The PI3K-AKT network at the interface of oncogenic signalling and cancer metabolism. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 20, 74–88.

Humphries A & Wright NA (2008) Colonic crypt organization and tumorigenesis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 415–424.

Karin M & Greten FR (2005) NF-κB: linking inflammation and immunity to cancer development and progression. *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 5, 749–759.

Kemp CJ (2005) Multistep skin cancer in mice as a model to study the evolution of cancer cells. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 15, 460–473.

Levine AJ, Jenkins NA & Copeland NG (2019) The roles of initiating truncal mutations in human carcinomas: the order of mutations and tumor cell type matters. *Cancer Cell* 35, 10–15.

Loeb LA & Harris CC (2008) Advances in chemical carcinogenesis: a historical review and prospective. *Cancer Res.* 68, 6863–6872.

Maley CC, Aktipis A, Graham TA et al. (2017) Classifying the evolutionary and ecological features of neoplasms. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 17, 605–619.

Markowitz SD & Bertagnolli MM (2009) Molecular basis of colorectal cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 361, 2449–2460.

Martincorena I & Campbell PJ (2015) Somatic mutations in cancer and normal cells. *Science* 349, 1483–1489.

Marusyk A, Almendro V & Polyak K (2012) Intra-tumor heterogeneity: a looking glass for cancer? *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 12, 323–334.

McGranahan N & Swanton C (2017) Clonal heterogeneity and tumor evolution: past, present and the future. *Cell* 168, 613–628.

Merlo LMF, Pepper JW, Reid BJ & Maley CC (2006) Cancer as an evolutionary and ecological process. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 924–935.

Miller EC (1978) Some current perspectives on chemical carcinogenesis in humans and experimental animals: presidential address. *Cancer Res.* 38, 1479–1496.

Navin NE & Hicks J (2010) Tracing the tumor lineage. *Mol. Oncol.* 4, 267–283.

Nowell PC (1976) The clonal evolution of tumor cell populations. *Science* 194, 23–28.

Parsonnet J (ed) (1999) Microbes and Malignancy: Infection as a Cause of Human Cancers. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Peto R, Roe FJC, Lee PN et al. (1975) Cancer and ageing in mice and men. *Brit. J. Cancer* 32, 411–426.

Potter M, Newport E & Morten KJ (2016) The Warburg effect: 80 years on. *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 44, 1499–1505.

Reich BJ, Li X, Galipeau PC & Vaughan TL (2010) Barrett’s oesophagus and oesophageal adenocarcinoma: time for a new synthesis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 87–101.

Renan MJ (1997) How many mutations are required for tumorigenesis? Implications from human cancer data. *Mol. Carcinogen.* 7, 139–146.

Sanchez-Vega F, Mina M, Armenia J et al. (2018) Oncogenic signaling pathways in the Cancer Genome Atlas. *Cell* 173, 321–337.

Schedin P (2006) Pregnancy-associated breast cancer and metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 281–291.

Shackleton M, Quintana E, Fearon ER & Morrison SJ (2009) Heterogeneity in cancer: cancer stem cells versus clonal evolution. *Cell* 138, 822–829.

Singh A & Settleman J (2010) EMT, cancer stem cells and drug resistance: an emerging axis of evil in the war on cancer. *Oncogene* 29, 4741–4751.

Stiles CD & Rowitch DH (2008) Glioma stem cells: a midterm exam. *Neuron* 58, 832–846.

Stratton MR, Campbell PJ & Futreal PA (2009) The cancer genome. *Nature* 458, 719–724.

Sullivan LB, Gui DY & Vander Heiden MG (2016) Altered metabolite levels in cancer: implications for tumour biology and cancer therapy. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 16, 680–693.

Suva ML & Tirosh I (2020) The glioma stem cell model in the era of single-cell genomics. *Cancer Cell* 37, 630–636.

Tabassum DP & Polyak K (2015) Tumorigenesis: it takes a village. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 15, 473–483.

Thompson PA, Khatami M, Baglole CJ et al. (2015) Environmental immune disruptors, inflammation, and cancer risk. (2015) *Carcinogenesis* 36, S232–S253.

Thun MJ, Henley SJ & Calle EE (2002) Tobacco use and cancer: an epidemiologic perspective for geneticists. *Oncogene* 21, 7307–7325.

Tomatis L, Aitio A, Wilbourn J & Shuker L (1989) Human carcinogens so far identified. *Jpn. J. Cancer Res.* 80, 795–807.

Trichopoulos D, Adama H-O, Ekborn A et al. (2007) Early life events and conditions and breast cancer risk: from epidemiology to etiology. *Int. J. Cancer* 122, 481–485.

Turajlic S, Sottoriva A, Graham T & Swanton C (2019) Resolving genetic heterogeneity in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Genet.* 20:404–416.

Vander Heiden MG, Cantley LC & Thompson CB (2010) Understanding the Warburg effect: The metabolic requirements of cell proliferation. *Science* 324, 1029–1033.

Visvader JE (2011) Cells of origin in cancer. *Nature* 469, 314–322.

Visvader JE & Lindeman GJ (2008) Cancer stem cells in solid tumours: accumulating evidence and unresolved questions. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 755–768.

Visvader JE & Smith GH (2010) Murine mammary epithelial stem cells: discovery, function and current status. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 4, a004879, Oct. 6.

Wang D & DuBois RN (2010) Eicosanoids and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 10, 181–193.

Wang D & DuBois RN (2010) The role of COX-2 in intestinal inflammation and colorectal cancer. *Oncogene* 29, 781–788.

Westermarck J & Hahn WC (2008) Multiple pathways regulated by the tumor suppressor PP2A in transformation. *Trends Mol. Med.* 14, 152–160.

Wild CP, Weiderpass E, Stewart BW (eds) (2020). World Cancer Report: Cancer Research for Cancer Prevention. Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer. Available from: http://publications.iarc.fr/586.

Yap T, Gerlinger M, Futreal PA et al. (2012) Intratumor heterogeneity: seeing the wood for the trees. *Sci. Transl. Med.* 4, 127–130.

Zhao JJ, Roberts TM & Hahn WC (2004) Functional genetics and experimental models of human cancer. *Trends Mol. Med.* 10, 344–350.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 11.1 Mathematics of multi-step tumor formation

Epidemiologists have developed formulas to predict the frequency of various cancers as a function of age. These formulas indicate that, depending upon the cancer type, disease incidence (the rate at which the disease is diagnosed) and mortality rates occur as a function of a^4 to a^7, where a represents the age of patients at initial diagnosis. For epithelial cancers as a whole, the risk of death from cancers increases approximately as the fifth or sixth power of elapsed lifetime (**Figure S11.1**). Algebraic functions like these are interpreted quite simply. If the probability of an outcome is indicated by a^n, then $n+1$ independent events, each occurring randomly and with comparable probability per unit of time, must take place before the ultimate outcome—in this case a diagnosed tumor—is achieved. The incidence of a disease like colon cancer begins to shoot upward only in the seventh and eighth decades of life, indicating that each of these events occurs with a very low probability each year. More specifically, each event is likely to occur on average once every 10 to 15 years, and the entire succession of events may usually require 40 to 60 years to reach completion.

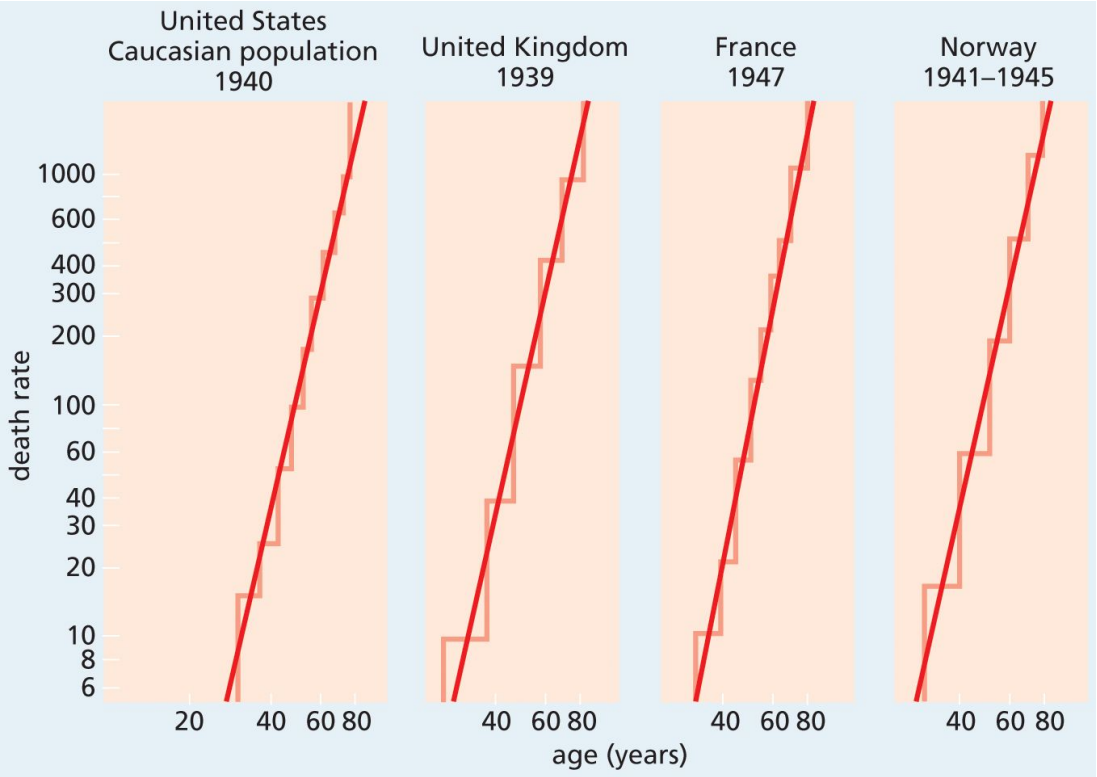


Figure S11.1 Kinetics of tumor formation in different countries: age at death from various epithelial cancers The graphs indicate the general mortality from cancer from 1939 to 1947 in four countries where public health statistics were kept with some precision. These log–log plots of male cancer death rates (deaths per 100,000 population, *ordinate*) at different ages (*abscissa*) have a slope indicating that completion of five or six rate-limiting events is required to produce a lethal cancer. For example, a slope of 5 indicates six rate-limiting events, whose nature is not revealed by these analyses. Interestingly, these slopes are remarkably similar among different countries. The slopes differ slightly with different types of cancer (*not shown*). (From A.G. Knudson, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 1:157–162, 2001; reproduced from C.O. Nordling, *Br. J. Cancer* 7:68–72, 1953. With permission from Nature.)

These calculations provide us with only a very rough estimate of the complexity of multi-step tumor progression. In fact, some critical steps may occur far more rapidly than others but not register in these calculations of the kinetics of tumor progression, which reflect only the influence of the slowest, *"rate-limiting"* steps. For this reason, it seems likely that the actual number of events required to form most tumors is actually higher than is predicted by use of this a^n formula. [Consider the notion that later steps in multi-step tumor progression require less time to complete than earlier steps because (1) the cells in later growths, having acquired multiple oncogenic mutations, have learned how to proliferate faster, decreasing the time of each clonal expansion, and (2) the genomes of cells are likely to have become more mutable (as discussed in Chapter 12).]

Additionally, the strong age dependence of almost all cancers forces epidemiologists to calculate *age-adjusted incidence*, which corrects for the fact that the age distributions of different human populations differ markedly. A calculated age-adjusted incidence can tell us, for instance, what the probability is of a 60-year-old woman in the United States contracting breast cancer during the course of a year compared with the risk experienced by a woman of the same age living in Egypt, Kazakhstan, or Portugal. At the same time, age-adjusted incidence measurements enable us to make meaningful comparisons in a specific population over an extended period of time—for example, the age-adjusted colon cancer risk of the U.S. population in 1930 compared with that of the successor population in 1990.

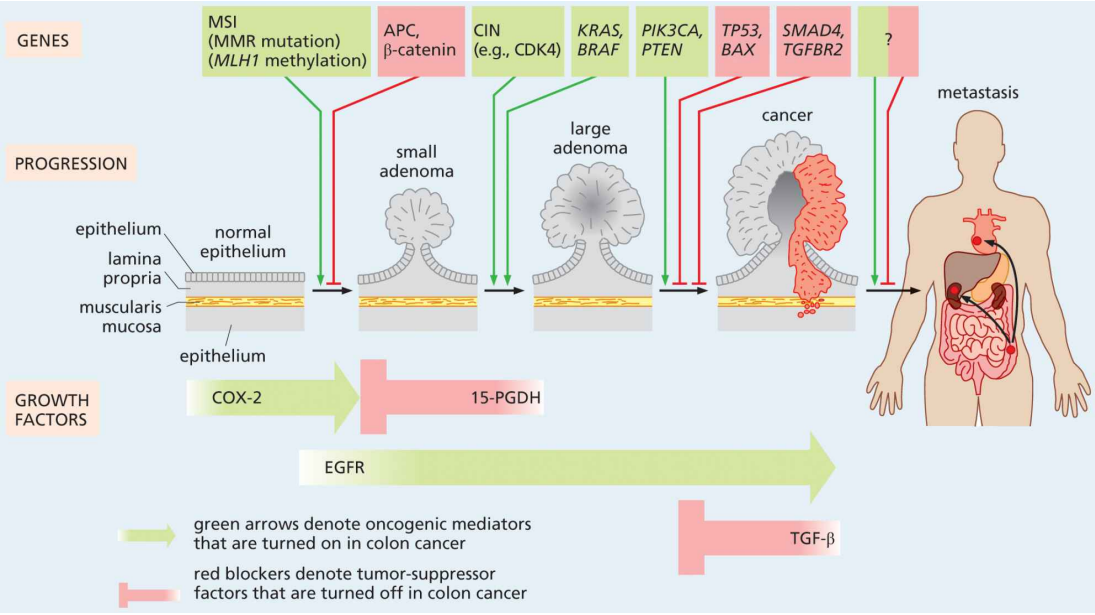
Supplementary Sidebar 11.2 Will curing cancer extend human life span?

The long timetable of tumor formation and cancer-induced deaths helps to explain the late onset of most cancers. This timing has an important and unexpected public health

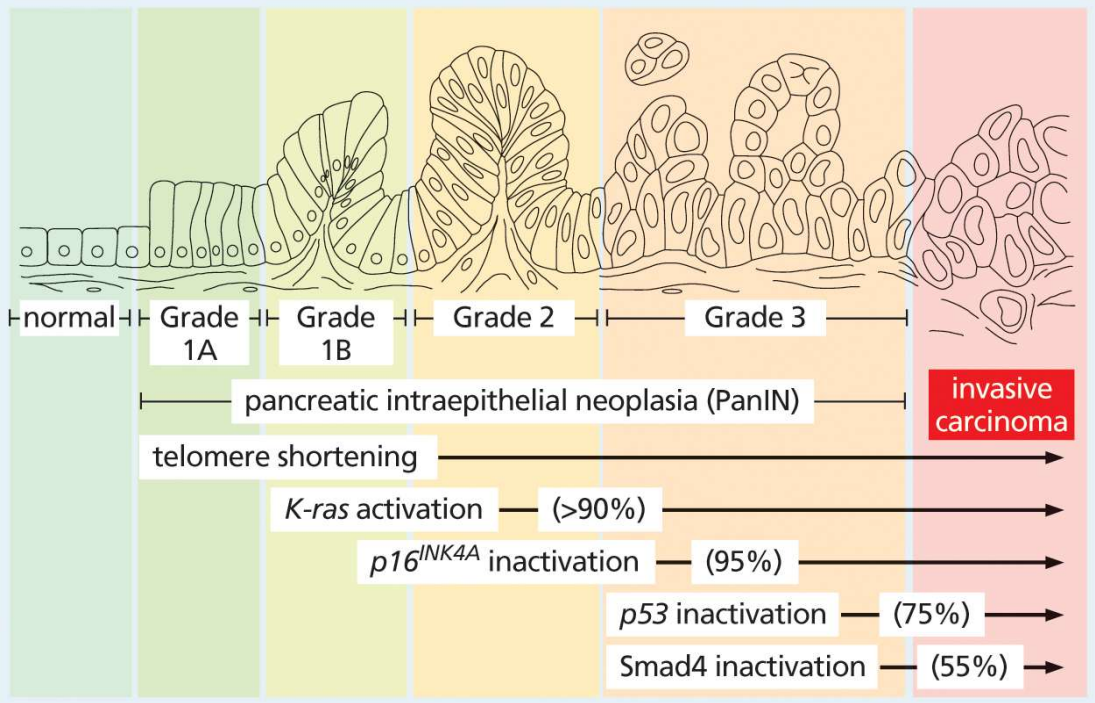
implication: curing all cancers will have a relatively small effect on expected life span. A decade or more before most individuals have lived long enough to contract cancer, they often succumb to other maladies, such as heart disease. A calculation based on cancer-related deaths in the Netherlands in 1990 indicated that if all such deaths were eliminated, this would extend life expectancy only 3.83 years for men and 3.38 years for women.

Supplementary Sidebar 11.3 A more detailed accounting of the somatic mutations driving colorectal and pancreatic cancer formation

In the two decades time after the initial depiction of the genetic progression of colorectal carcinomas was first published, a more detailed accounting of the genetic changes was produced through the sequencing of colorectal tissues that progressed to various extents toward the state of high-grade malignancy (**Figure S11.2A**). In addition, a detailed "genetic biography" of human pancreatic carcinomas is presented in Figure S11.2B.



(A)



(B)

Figure S11.2 Detailed genetic biographies of colorectal and pancreatic carcinomas The advent of high-speed genomic sequencing made it possible to map out the genetic biographies of various human tumors. The most detailed information has come from analyses of colorectal and pancreatic carcinomas. (A) As seen here, there is a preferential sequence in the mutations and epigenetic alterations acquired by colorectal cells in their long march toward high-grade malignancy. The involvement of changes in the APC and β-catenin pathway occurs almost universally in these tumors as the initial step, in large part because these changes compromise the outward migration of enterocytes from the crypts, which traps cells in these crypts and allows their progeny to acquire additional mutations that eventually lead to an aggressive primary carcinoma, labeled here as "cancer." One of these changes, "CIN," involves chromosome instability, which also contributes to the genetic chaos accumulated in the carcinoma cells of high-grade tumors. Of note, a subset of these changes involves promoter methylation rather than changes in nucleotide sequence, in which changes are epigenetic rather than genetic. Moreover, changes in the APC/β-catenin pathway are almost always mutually exclusive. Thus, if the gene encoding APC is mutated, mutations affecting the structure of β-catenin are rarely seen; this indicates that the two types of mutations are functionally redundant, and that the mutation of one of these genes obviates the need of the other to undergo mutation. Similarly, the functional redundancy of the *KRAS* (= K-*ras*) and *BRAF* (= B-*raf*) genes is explained by the organization of the shared signaling pathway as illustrated in Figure 6.9. Of note,

it is increasingly unlikely that additional somatic mutations are required in order for the cells forming a primary colorectal carcinoma cell (here labeled “cancer”, *pink*) to invade locally and disseminate to distant tissues; these subsequent changes are often, if not always, achieved by non-genetic programs that are discussed in detail in Chapter 14. (B) The most orderly succession of genetic and epigenetic changes documented to date occurs during the development of common adenocarcinomas of the pancreas; that is, as these growths progress through increasingly high histologic grades, almost all acquire an activated K-*ras* oncogene early in tumor progression, followed thereafter by loss of *p16*INK4A and then *p53* tumor suppressor gene function. Of note, the great majority of the key changes driving pancreatic carcinoma progression occur before the precursor lesions (pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasias; PanINs) undergo conversion into invasive carcinomas. (A, from S.D. Markowitz and M.M. Bertagnolli, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 361(25):2449–2460, 2009. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society. B, courtesy of R. Hruban.)

Supplementary Sidebar 11.4 Profound transdifferention in glioblastomas

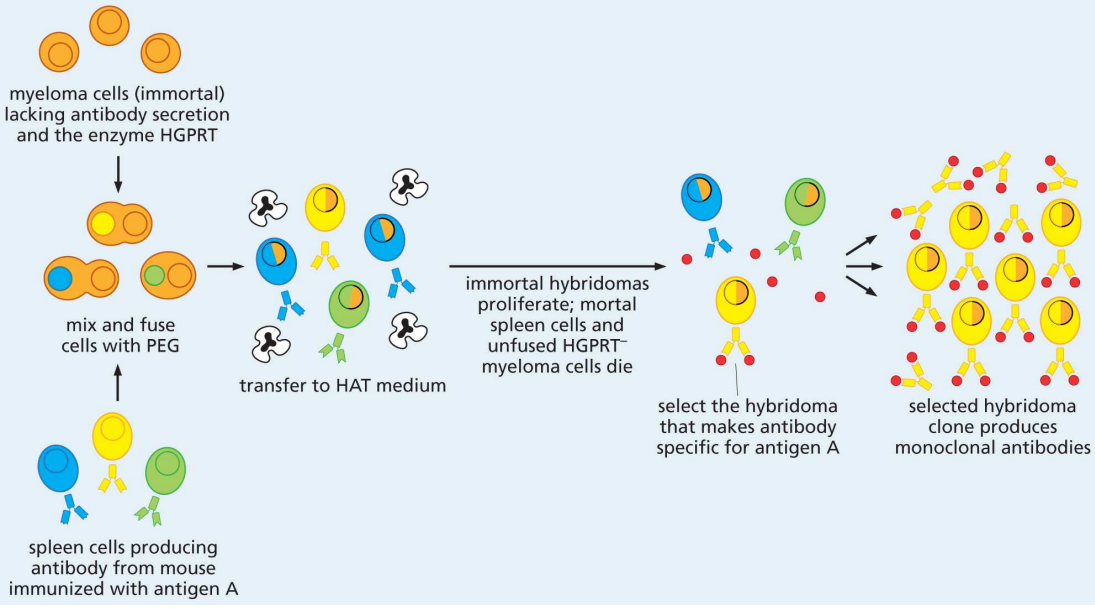
The common glioblastomas brain tumors are termed more properly glioblastoma multiforme to indicate that these tumors typically include a variety of morphologically distinct neuroectodermal cell types (see Figure 2.8)—almost certainly the reflection of oligopotent stem-like cells within an individual tumor differentiating into a number of distinct cell types (see Figure 11.23). The most extreme example of this apparent epigenetic plasticity is illustrated by the strategy that many glioblastomas employ to generate their own microvasculature: rather than recruiting normal endothelial cells (which form capillaries) from the tumor-bearing host (discussed in Chapter 13), the neoplastic cells transdifferentiate into endothelial-like cells (reflecting a process sometimes called vasculogenic mimicry), the latter normally originating in an entirely unrelated embryonic cell lineage. Once formed, the transdifferentiated cells collaborate with the normal endothelial cells of host origin to assemble capillaries, thereby expediting tumor-associated angiogenesis and thus tumor growth. Observations like these suggest another interesting possibility: Might two phenotypically distinct subpopulations of cells within a tumor act symbiotically, each supporting the growth and survival of the other, rather than directly competing with one another? Recent observations of the phenotypic state of two metabolically distinct subpopulations coexisting within an individual tumor provide support for precisely this notion. (This situation might occur when two distinct neoplastic cell subpopulations that share a common genotype adopt distinct phenotypes in order to help one another adapt most effectively to the tumor microenvironment.)

Supplementary Sidebar 11.5 Monoclonal antibodies and fluorescence-activated cell sorting

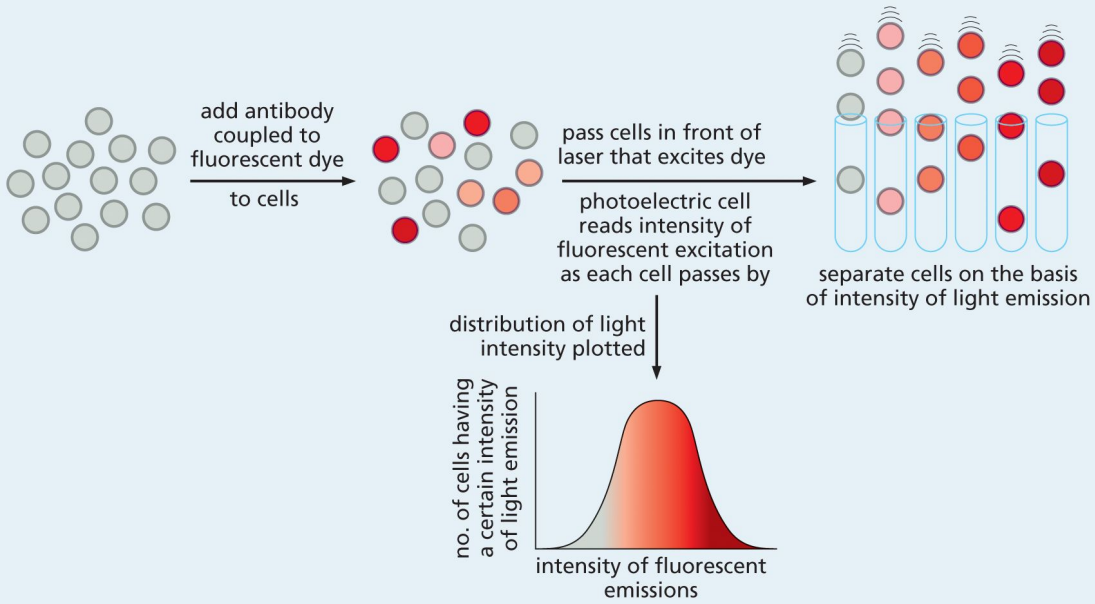
The procedures for analyzing and fractionating cell populations by sorting them according to their display of cell surface proteins depend on the technologies for producing monoclonal antibodies and the instruments of fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS; **Figure S11.3**).

The motivation for producing a monoclonal antibody (MoAb) is to generate a pure and homogeneous solution of antibody molecules, all of which are identical to one another and therefore recognize the same antigen with identical avidity. Such a MoAb contrasts with the antibodies that are usually produced by the immune system of an animal in response to immunization with an antigen of interest, usually a protein; these antibodies constitute a complex mixture of antibody species that bind to different epitopes (antigen sites) on the immunizing protein, with differing avidities (binding strengths) and with differing specificities, in that some antibodies may be totally specific for the antigen of interest, whereas others may recognize and bind unrelated proteins and are therefore termed *cross-reactive*.

The serum of an immunized animal may be used to recognize the antigen of interest even though it contains a diverse array of other functionally unrelated antibody molecules; alternatively, the antibody molecules of interest may be greatly enriched through their ability to bind to the antigen of interest followed by their elution from this antigen. In both cases, this complex mixture is considered to be a polyclonal antibody.



(A)



(B)

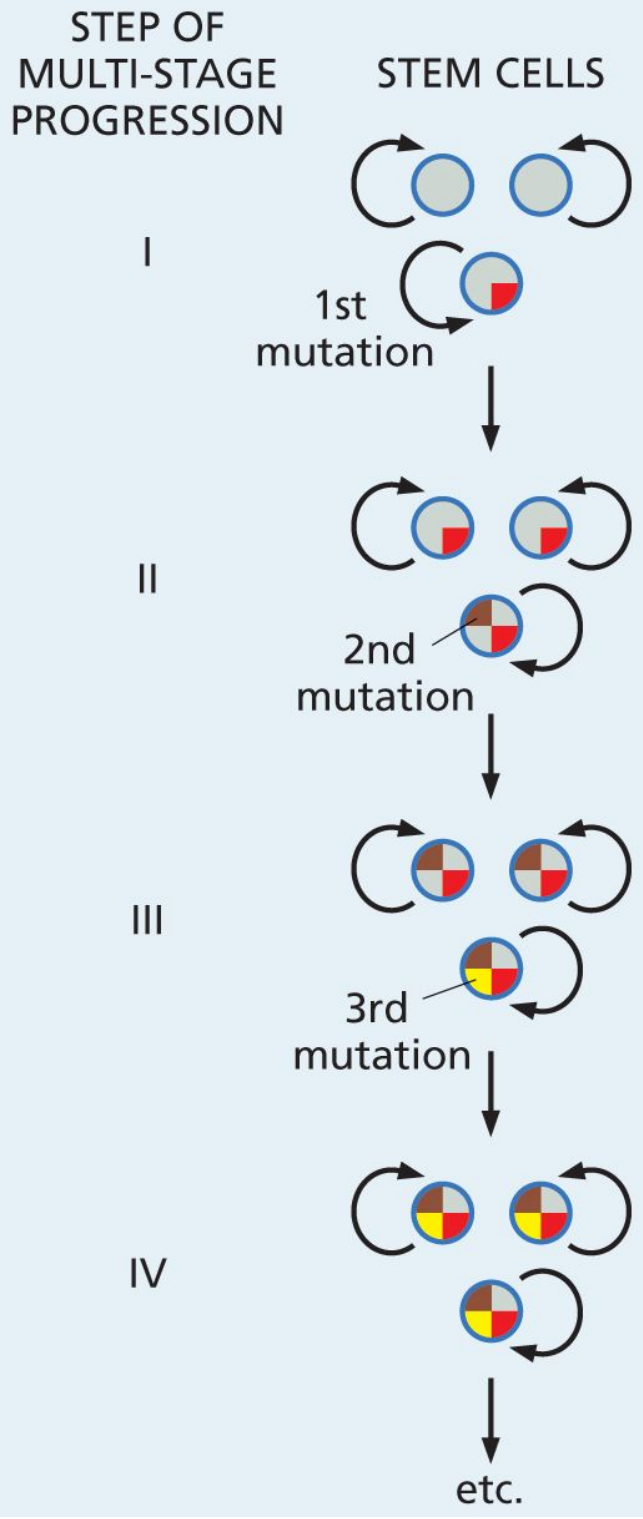
Figure S11.3 Monoclonal antibodies and fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) (A) A mammal is immunized (usually repeatedly) to expand the number of B cells in its spleen that produce antibodies that specifically recognize the immunizing antigen. (Each of these B cells is known to produce a discrete and specific antibody species.) A mixture of B cells (*lower left*) is then prepared from the spleen of this immunized animal and each of these cells is fused using polyethylene glycol (PEG) with a myeloma cell belonging to a special myeloma cell line (*upper left*), whose cells contain dominantly acting oncogenes but lack the ability to make both their own antibodies and the HGPRT enzyme. As a consequence, each of the resulting hybrid cells (*left middle*) contains a genome that (from the B-cell parent) specifies the production of a specific antibody and (from the myeloma parent) confers the ability to proliferate indefinitely in culture. These cells are transferred to a special medium termed HAT (hypoxanthine–aminopterin–thymidine), which selects for the outgrowth of cells that contain both parental genomes. The surviving hybrid cells are then introduced into microtiter plates at such high dilutions that each well of the plate contains at most a single cell (*not shown*). Each founding cell within a well should proliferate and its progeny should secrete antibody into the supernatant culture medium in the well. The medium from each of the wells is screened for the presence of antibody molecules that bind the original immunizing antigen (*middle right*). The cells from a well producing an antibody of interest are retrieved and expanded and constitute a *hybridoma*, i.e., a neoplastic hybrid cell line that produces a single, discrete antibody species, ideally with the desired specificity and antigen-binding affinity termed avidity (*far right*). The antibody produced by this hybridoma cell

population is termed a monoclonal antibody. (B) Cells are treated with a monoclonal antibody that recognizes and binds a cell surface antigen displayed by some but not all of the cells in a population; alternatively, as shown, all of the cells may display this antigen but to differing extents. This antibody is usually coupled with a fluorescent dye, resulting in staining of the antigen-positive cells. Hence, among the cells being analyzed, some express the antigen at higher levels and therefore are stained more strongly by the antibody (*darker red*), whereas others are stained weakly (*pink*) or not at all (*gray*). This mixture of cells, placed in suspension, is then passed in single file past a laser beam that excites the dye (and causes it to emit light) and a photoelectric cell that measures the intensity of fluorescence emission by the dye molecules staining each cell. These measurements may then be integrated and plotted as a distribution of signals, in which case this procedure is often termed "flow cytometry" (*below*). Alternatively, if the labeling procedure has not damaged these cells, they can be separated from one another on the basis of their fluorescence intensity (e.g., through use of an electrical field), which allows the biological properties of these cells to be gauged through other tests (*right*). Often, staining by two different antibodies, each bearing a distinct fluorescent dye, allows the simultaneous measurement of intensities of two different antigens, in which case a different graphing convention is used, as shown in Figure 11.19A. Measurements of fluorescence intensity obtained in this way are usually plotted on a logarithmic scale. More recent innovations of FACS have allowed more than two antigens to be monitored simultaneously (*not shown here*) and the permeabilization of cells to allow access of antibody molecules to intracellular antigens. (A, from K. Murphy et al., Immunobiology, 8th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2011.)

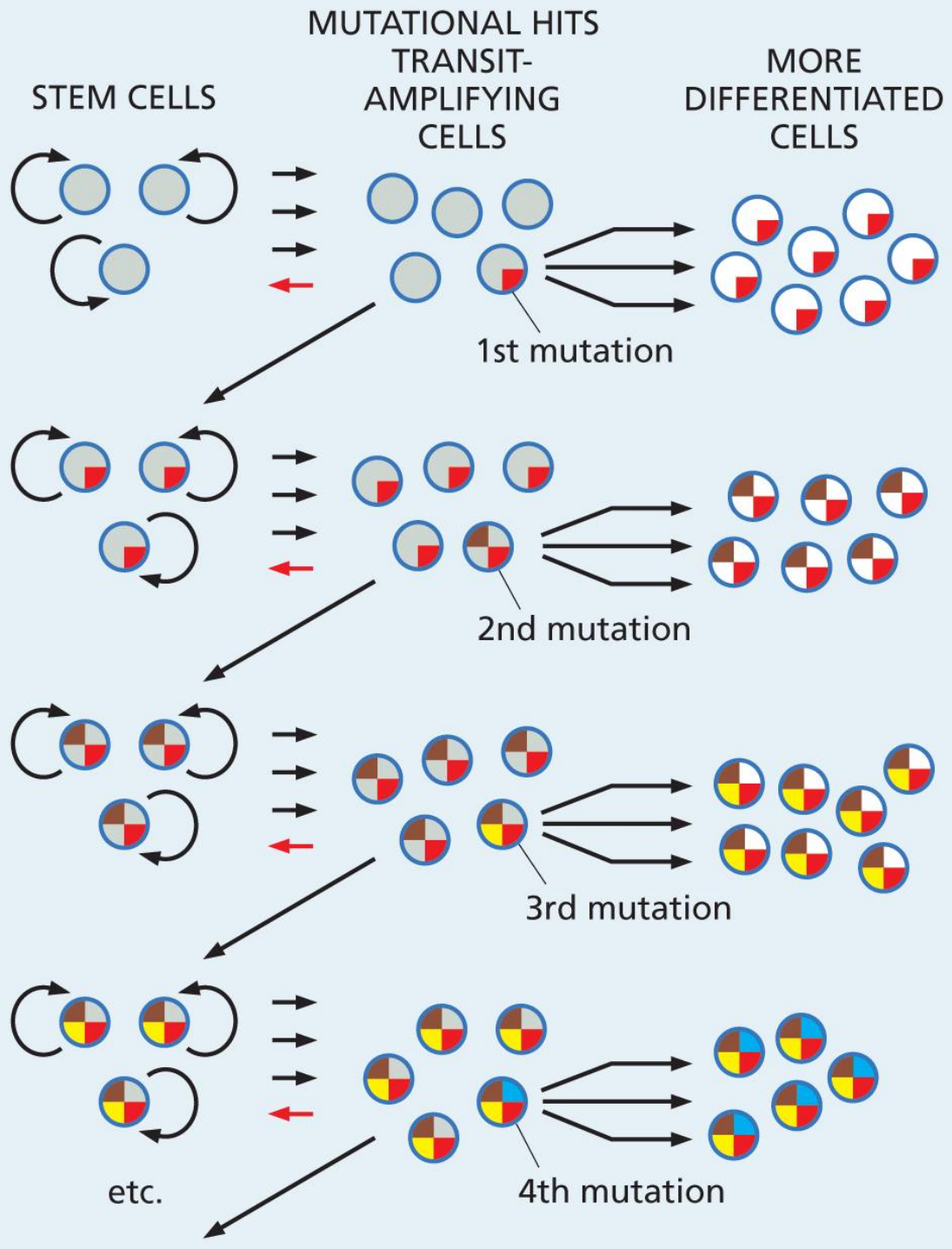
Supplementary Sidebar 11.6 How does multi-step tumor progression actually take place?

The scheme of multi-step tumor progression presented in Figure 11.14 indicates that a normal cell sustains an initiating mutation, which in turn spawns by clonal expansion a new cell population in which all cells carry this initiating mutation. One of these descendant cells will thereafter acquire a second mutation, resulting in a second clonal expansion, and so forth. However, with the discovery of the hierarchical organization of neoplastic tissues (see Figure 11.20B), this scheme must be revised to include cancer stem cells and transit-amplifying/progenitor cells (see Figure 11.22). Because normal epithelial tissues are organized in a hierarchical fashion (involving stem cells, transit-amplifying/progenitor cells, and more differentiated cells) and because the cells within derived fully neoplastic carcinomas appear to be organized in a very similar fashion, it is highly likely that each of the cell populations present in the intermediate stages of multi-step tumor progression is also organized in a hierarchical fashion.

Accordingly, in the simplest version of the revised scheme involving cancer stem cells, an initiating mutation strikes a normal stem cell and the resulting singly mutated stem cells subsequently sustain a second mutation, generating doubly mutated stem cells, which in turn develop into triply mutated stem cells, and so forth. Each of these stem cells generates its own cohort of transit-amplifying and more differentiated descendants. In essence, one stem cell population evolves directly into another, as depicted in **Figure S11.4A**.


STEP OF MULTI-STAGE PROGRESSION
STEM CELLS
I
1st mutation
II
2nd mutation
III
3rd mutation
IV
etc.

(A)



(B)

Figure S11.4 Cancer stem cells, spontaneous dedifferentiation, and the actual course of multi-step tumor progression Cancer stem cells (CSCs) must be incorporated into the schemes of multi-step tumor pathogenesis described in this chapter and illustrated in Figure 11.14. (A) The simplest scheme depicts fully

normal stem cells (SCs) evolving directly into initiated SCs that have acquired an initiating mutation (*red sector*). The latter SCs now proliferate and acquire a second lesion (*brown sector*) and evolve directly into a third SC population, and so forth. The more-differentiated derivatives of each of these SC populations, including transit-amplifying and more-differentiated cells, are not depicted here. (B) The scheme shown in panel A, although attractive and plausible because of its simplicity, is complicated by three important considerations: (1) There are generally far fewer SCs than transit-amplifying/progenitor cells in a normal tissue; the likelihood of a mutation occurring is proportional to the number of target cells in a population, implying a far smaller likelihood of cancer-causing mutations being acquired by SCs relative to those arising in the transit-amplifying population. (2) Mutations occur far more commonly in actively proliferating cells, such as those in the transit-amplifying compartment; this contrasts with the state of cells in normal SC compartments, which proliferate only infrequently. (3) Advantageous effects of mutant alleles that confer selective advantage may not be manifest in undifferentiated stem cells. Taken together, these three considerations make the transit-amplifying cells into far more attractive candidates as the cells that sustain mutational hits and thereby acquire advantageous, novel mutant oncogenic alleles. Unexplained by this scheme is the problem of how such advantageous alleles are *fixed* in the genome of the tumor as a whole rather than being lost with the deaths of transit-amplifying/progenitor cells. In fact, this problem is addressed by the observations that non-SCs can dedifferentiate into SCs (*red arrows*), thereby transferring advantageous alleles from the progenitor cell population back into the SC cell pool (see Figure 11.20C). The resulting SCs may then spawn transit-amplifying cells, in one of which a second mutation (*brown sector*) strikes; this cell and its descendants may dedifferentiate into a successor SC population, and so forth. Such back-and-forth alternation between SC and transit-amplifying states appears to address the problems arising from the scheme depicted in panel A.

Although this scheme is logical, it holds several inherent difficulties that cannot be readily reconciled with real-world biology. To begin, it implies that the targets of mutation are, at each stage of tumor progression, individual cells within the stem cell subpopulation. Experience to date indicates that, in general, stem cells represent only a small proportion of the overall cells within a tissue, normal or neoplastic. Because mutations occur at a low rate per cell generation (for example, 1 per 10^6 cell divisions), tumor-promoting mutations are mathematically relatively unlikely to strike this cell population because the *absolute size* of this cell population is small. (In the colonic crypt of the mouse, ∼16 stem cells usually coexist with more than 500 transit-amplifying/progenitor cells.)

A second major difficulty stems from the process of mutation. Mutations generally occur in actively dividing cells and in part are associated with mistakes in DNA replication of one sort or another, as will be discussed in Chapter 12; in rapidly proliferating cells yet other mutations arise from the replication of still-unrepaired DNA. If stem cells divide relatively infrequently, this also decreases the likelihood that they represent the targets of mutation. Taken together, these two factors argue against stem cells as always being the direct targets of the mutations that drive multi-step tumor progression.

A solution to this problem derives from the discovery that the hierarchical scheme depicted in Figure 11.20B requires revision: non-stem cells can, with a certain frequency, dedifferentiate into stem cells. Accordingly, this hierarchical scheme now needs to be redrawn (see Figure 11.20C). This dedifferentiation can occur in both immortalized epithelial cell populations and in their transformed derivatives, both *in vitro* and *in vivo*; it may also occur in fully normal epithelial cell populations.

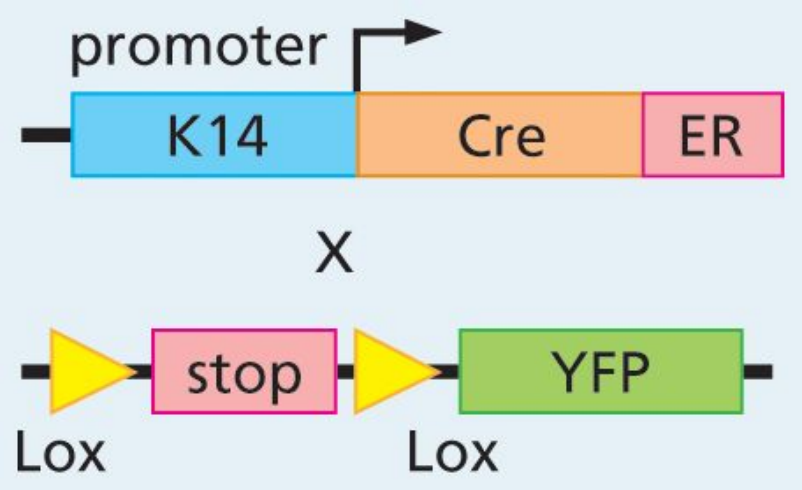
The altered scheme depicted in Figure 11.20C now makes it attractive to embrace a model of how multi-step tumor progression actually proceeds (Figure S11.4B). In particular, mutations strike a cell in the transit-amplifying/progenitor cell populations, which are both far larger than the stem cell populations and are actively dividing, making the occurrence of such a mutation far more probable (relative to a mutation striking a member of the stem cell population). Thus, as the scheme of Figure S11.4B indicates, once a mutation hits a transit-amplifying cell, the dedifferentiation of this cell into a stem cell ensures that the new mutation can now be introduced into the stem cell pool and safeguarded by the cells in that pool; moreover, the mutant cell with this new mutation can now generate transit-amplifying and more-differentiated cells carrying this new mutation. A second mutation that may trigger a subsequent round of clonal expansion will, as before, strike a cell in the newly formed pool of transit-amplifying cells and once again will be introduced into the stem cell pool via dedifferentiation. Experimental validation of this scheme is still required.

Supplementary Sidebar 11.7 Stem cells driving papilloma growth closely echo the behavior of normal stem cells of the skin

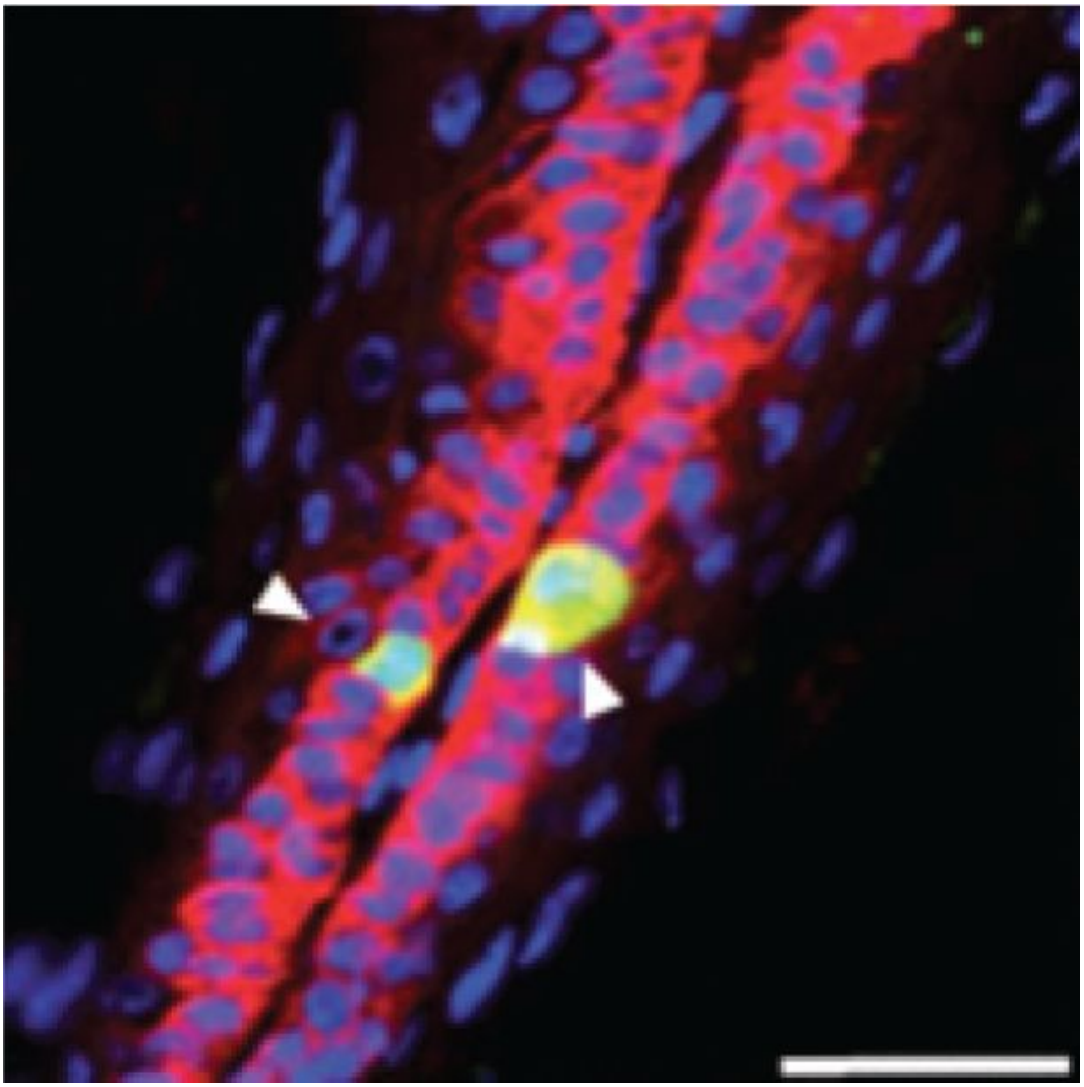
One strategy for demonstrating the validity of the cancer stem cell model derives from the ability to label putative stem cells within a neoplasm and demonstrate that their lineal progeny enter into a variety of states, some more differentiated than that of the putative stem cells. This was undertaken in a mouse model of chemically induced skin papillomas, which is discussed in detail in Section 11.11 and illustrated in Figures 11.30, 11.31, and 11.32. In short, a combination of a mutagenic “initiator” compound can be painted on an area of skin of the mouse followed by repeated paintings with a “promoter” compound. The result is, after a period of time, the formation of a skin

papilloma, which is analogous to an adenomatous polyp in the intestine and is poised to become a malignant skin tumor.

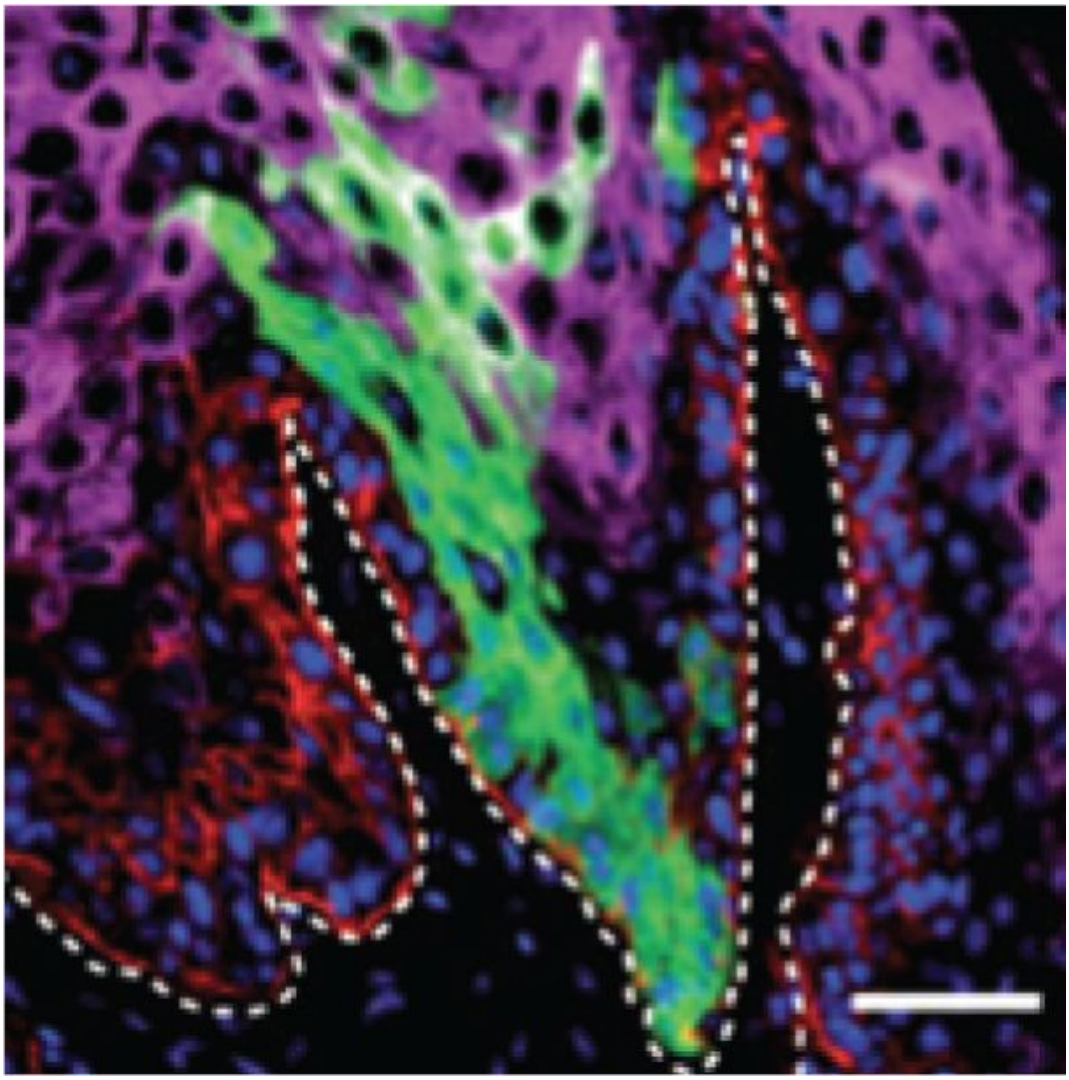
This skin carcinogenesis model was used to determine whether self-renewing stem-like cells in the papilloma generate more differentiated progeny, much like the normal stem cells in the skin. To do so, a labeling strategy was used (**Figure S11.5A**) in which scattered basal cells were labeled through the activation of a YFP reporter (Figure S11.5B), the expression of which could be perpetuated in the descendants of this cell. Two weeks later, labeled descendants of the initially labeled basal cells could be found in a series of intermediate phenotypic states that included the most differentiated keratinocytes in the skin, which undergo cornification—dying and hardening that is part of normal skin development and maintenance (Figure S11.5C). The clear and close resemblance between the observed hierarchy of cell states in the papillomas and in the normal skin provides compelling evidence that there are cells in these neoplastic papillomas that strongly resemble in their properties the behavior of bona fide stem cells in the normal skin. As **Figure S11.6** illustrates, a variety of experimental strategies has been used to localize the stem-like cells within various types of tumors.



(A)



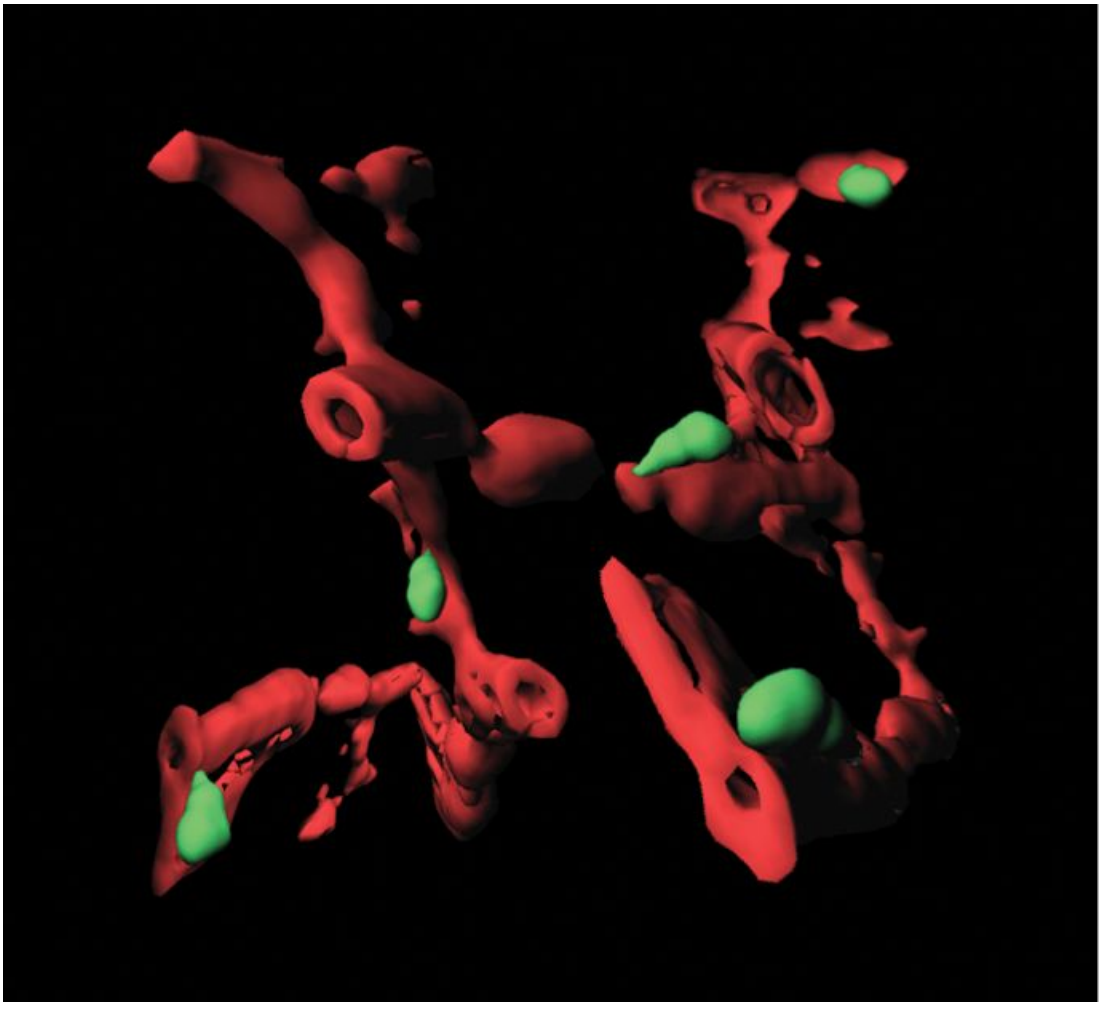
(B)



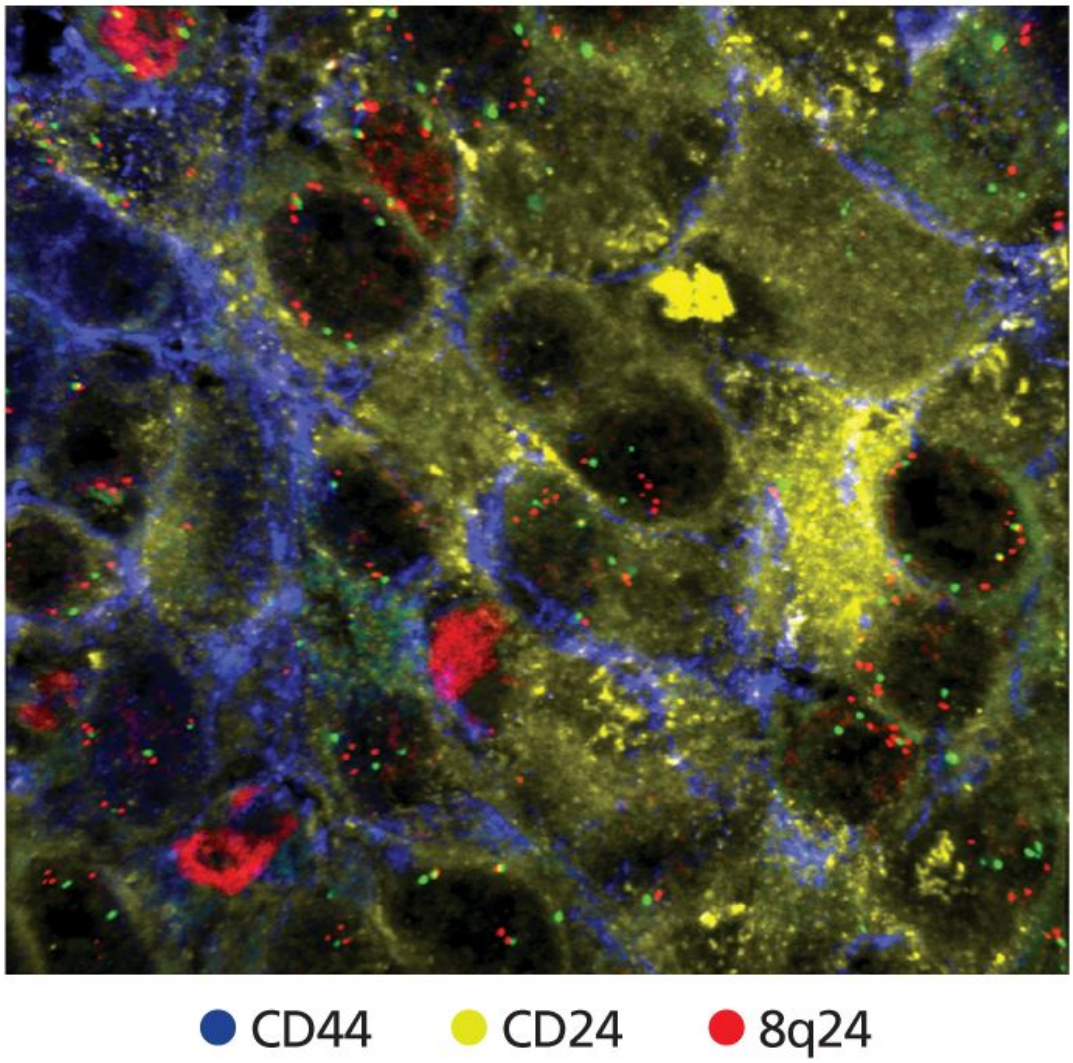
(C)

Figure S11.5 Demonstration of papilloma stem cells and derived differentiated cells As described in Section 11.11, papillomas and carcinomas can be induced in the mouse skin through the application of mutagenic initiators followed by tumor promoters, such as TPA. (A) The expression of a YFP reporter could be induced via an expression construct that confined all expression to the basal cells of the skin using the K14 (keratin 14) transcriptional promoter. This promoter drove expression of a Cre recombinase protein, which itself was generally functionally inactive because of its fusion with a tamoxifen-activatable ER (estrogen receptor). Transient application of tamoxifen would therefore transiently activate the Cre recombinase in basal keratinocytes, which would act, in turn, on a second construct encoding YFP (yellow fluorescent protein). This expression of YFP was usually blocked by an in-frame stop codon that prevented its translation. However, this stop codon could be excised via the transient

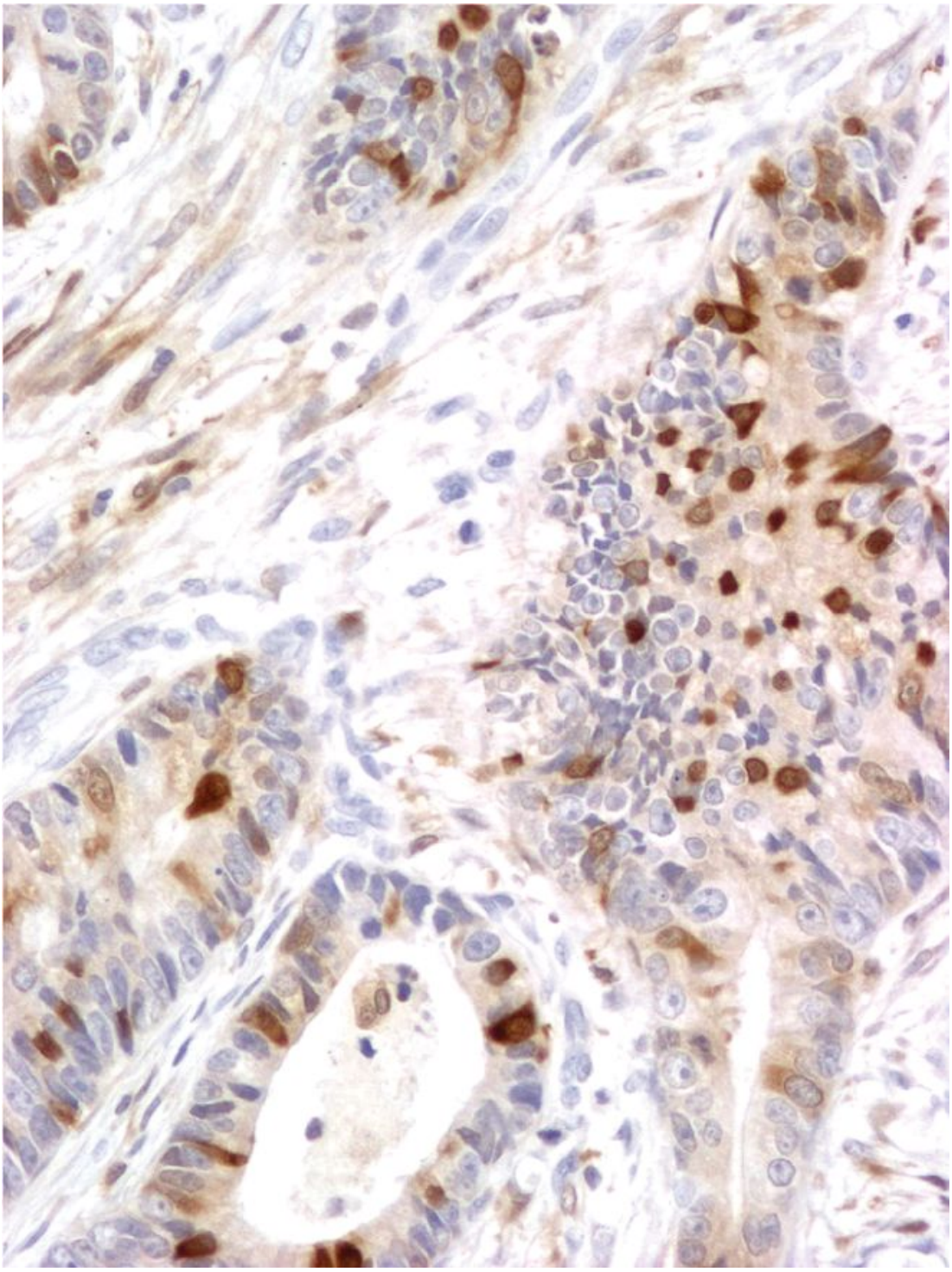
activation of the Cre recombinase protein in a basal cell, resulting in the permanent expression of YFP in that cell and in its lineal descendants. (B) Brief exposure of the basal keratinocytes in intact skin to limiting concentrations of tamoxifen resulted in the sporadic activation of YFP in scattered basal keratinocyte cells (*yellow-green*)—a cell population in which skin stem cells are known to reside. (C) Fourteen days after transient exposure to tamoxifen, YFP expression was detected in the skin through use of an anti-YFP antibody, that is, via immunofluorescence. As seen here, lineal descendants of the basal YFP-positive cells were capable of generating all cell types present in the papilloma, including the terminally differentiated, cornified cells that are present in these growths (*green*). (From G. Driessens, B. Beck, A. Caauwe et al. *Nature* 488, 527–530, 2012. With permission from Nature.)



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S11.6 Localization of cancer stem cells within tumors (A) In human gliomas, cancer cells that express nestin, a marker of normal neural stem cells (*green*), exhibit tumor-initiating ability when implanted in host mice and are

therefore termed cancer stem cells (CSCs). These nestin-positive cells are frequently localized near capillaries within these tumors, which express CD34, an endothelial cell marker (*red*). This 3-dimensional image was produced by digitally integrating the microscopic images from a succession of 50μm thick tumor sections. (B) In a lung metastasis of a human breast cancer, the CD44-high cells (*blue*), which are enriched in cancer stem cells (CSCs), are located in different subdomains from the CD24-high cells (*yellow*) that generally have low proportions of CSCs. [A probe for the 8q24 chromosomal region revealed extensive amplification of this region in a subset of these metastatic cells (*red*).] (C) Aldehyde dehydrogenase isoform 1 (ALDH1) has been found to be a useful marker for identifying a variety of normal and neoplastic stem cells. Here, an anti-ALDH1 antibody has been used to localize cells in a primary colon carcinoma that express high levels of this stem cell marker (*dark brown*). (A, from C. Calabrese et al., *Cancer Cell* 11:69–82, 2007. With permission from Elsevier. B, courtesy of H.-J. Kim and K. Polyak. C, from S. Deng et al., *PLoS One* 5:e10277, 2010. © 2010 Deng et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License.)

Supplementary Sidebar 11.8 The Darwinian model of tumor development is difficult to validate experimentally

Although the Darwinian model of tumor development, as depicted schematically in Figure 11.14 is attractive in concept, it remains little more than a theoretical construct. The outlines of this model are undoubtedly true, but its details are very difficult to validate for a number of reasons. To begin, a convincing validation of the Darwinian model would require an identification of the key genetic and epigenetic alterations of cell genomes that are responsible for each clonal expansion and thus for each step of multi-step tumorigenesis. However, the vast number of these alterations accumulated in the genomes of tumors (see Section 11.6) greatly exceeds the number of *clonal successions* that drive tumor progression (see Figure 11.14). Consequently, sequence analyses of the genomes of cells at different states of tumor progression may not converge directly on the critical genetic changes that are responsible for triggering many clonal expansions.

A clear view of this Darwinian model also requires some knowledge of the *kinetics* of each step of the multi-step progression—that is, how long does each step take? Some of these steps, such as the point mutations that activate *ras* oncogenes, may occur with a frequency of 10^{-6} to 10^{-7} per cell generation, although other critical steps, such as loss of heterozygosity (LOH), seem to occur with frequencies 100- to 1000-fold higher. We still do not know with any precision the frequency per cell generation of other critical events, including promoter methylation (estimated by some to be as

frequent as 10^{-4} per cell generation), gene amplification, gene deletion, and losses of entire chromosomes. Hence, some steps of tumor progression may occur so rapidly (compared with others) that they will never be registered as “rate-limiting” steps, discussed in Section 11.1.

With rare exception, these phenomena make it almost impossible to measure the kinetics of individual steps of tumor progression, which in turn makes an enumeration of all the individual steps difficult if not impossible. In principle, the sequencing of entire cancer cell genomes, which has now become routine, offers the prospect of determining at least one key parameter with some precision: the minimum number of somatic mutations required to create a human cancer cell. Recall that driver mutations are by definition critical participants in tumor progression and can be identified because they affect genes that are the objects of recurrent mutations (see Section 11.6); each of these drivers would seem to represent a mutation that was followed by a clonal expansion of the resulting mutant cell and its progeny. With this in mind, one can use whole-genome sequencing to enumerate the number of driver mutations that coexist with the genome of a human cancer cell. Individual lung and colorectal carcinomas often carry five or six such mutations, suggesting this number of mutations as the minimum required for neoplastic growth. Unfortunately, some breast cancer genomes, sequenced in parallel, may give no sign of carrying such multiply mutated genomes. Moreover, the several dozen karyotypic alterations often found in some of these carcinomas represent another confounding element in these calculations. So, even the most advanced technologies do not offer the means to resolve definitively the dynamics of multi-step tumor progression.

Supplementary Sidebar 11.9 Organoids enable the reconstruction of intestinal crypt formation in culture

The invention of organoid culture has made it possible to generate more than a dozen distinct human tissue types on a microscopic scale in three-dimensional culture often with a gelatinous suspension medium including Matrigel, which contains the basement membrane extracellular matrix. In the case of the intestinal crypts, one can observe the morphogenesis of these structures *in vitro* that recapitulate the overall topology of these crypts, including the presence of Lgr+ stem cells and Paneth cells at the bottom and rapidly dividing transit-amplifying cells (**Figure S11.7**). Indeed, these complex structures can be formed from Lgr5+ stem cells that differentiate into the multiple distinct cell types that, in aggregate, are needed to construct these crypts *in vitro.* Because they approximate much more closely actual crypts formed *in vivo* (see Figure 7.20) than do cell culture models in two-dimensional spaces (that is, the bottom of Petri dishes), they can be used to test the requirements of transformation under

conditions that are likely to closely reflect the conditions operative during the formation of colorectal carcinomas.

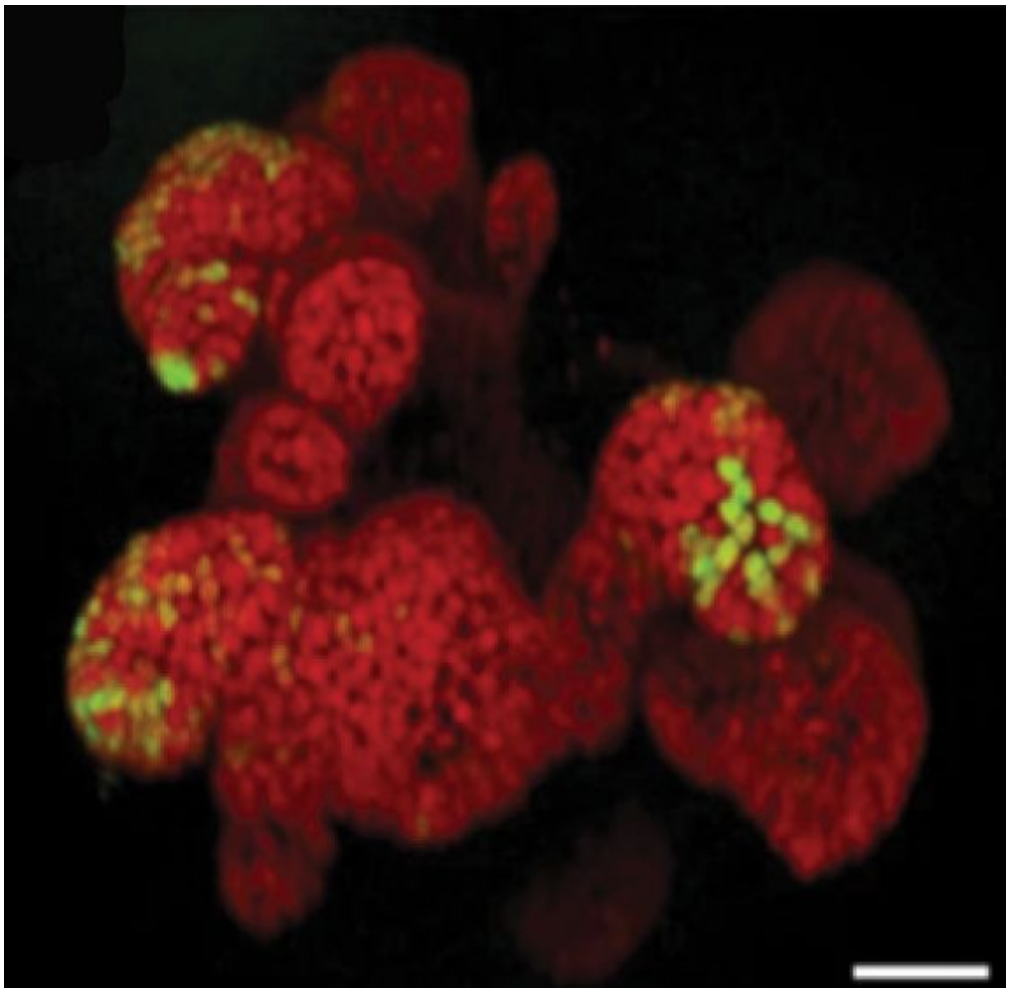
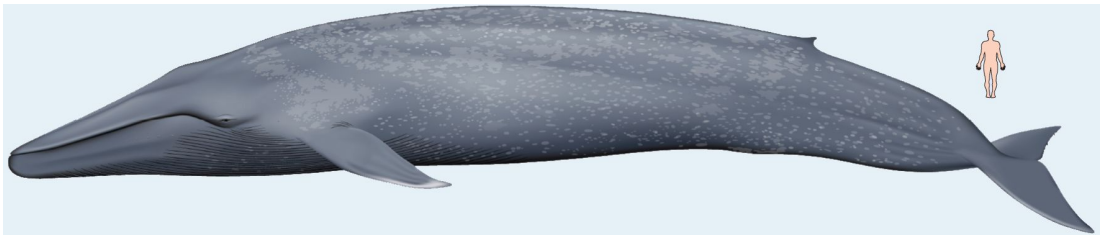


Figure S11.7 Morphogenesis of intestinal crypts from Lgr+ stem cells in organoid culture Structures that closely resemble the crypts found in the small and large intestine can be formed in organoid culture, involving special media in 3-dimensional culture *in vitro*. Such crypts contain the same cell types found in naturally arising crypts *in vivo* and can be used to study, among other processes, the requirements for transformation via mechanisms that are likely to recapitulate such requirements during colorectal carcinogenesis *in vivo*. As seen here, Lgr+ stem cells are labeled with green fluorescent protein (*green*), while all cells are labeled with a To-Pro counterstain (specific for nucleic acids) that renders them *red*. The Paneth cells and rapidly dividing transit-amplifying cells are not specifically labeled here. (From T. Sato et al., *Nature* 459:262–265, 2009. With permission from Nature.)

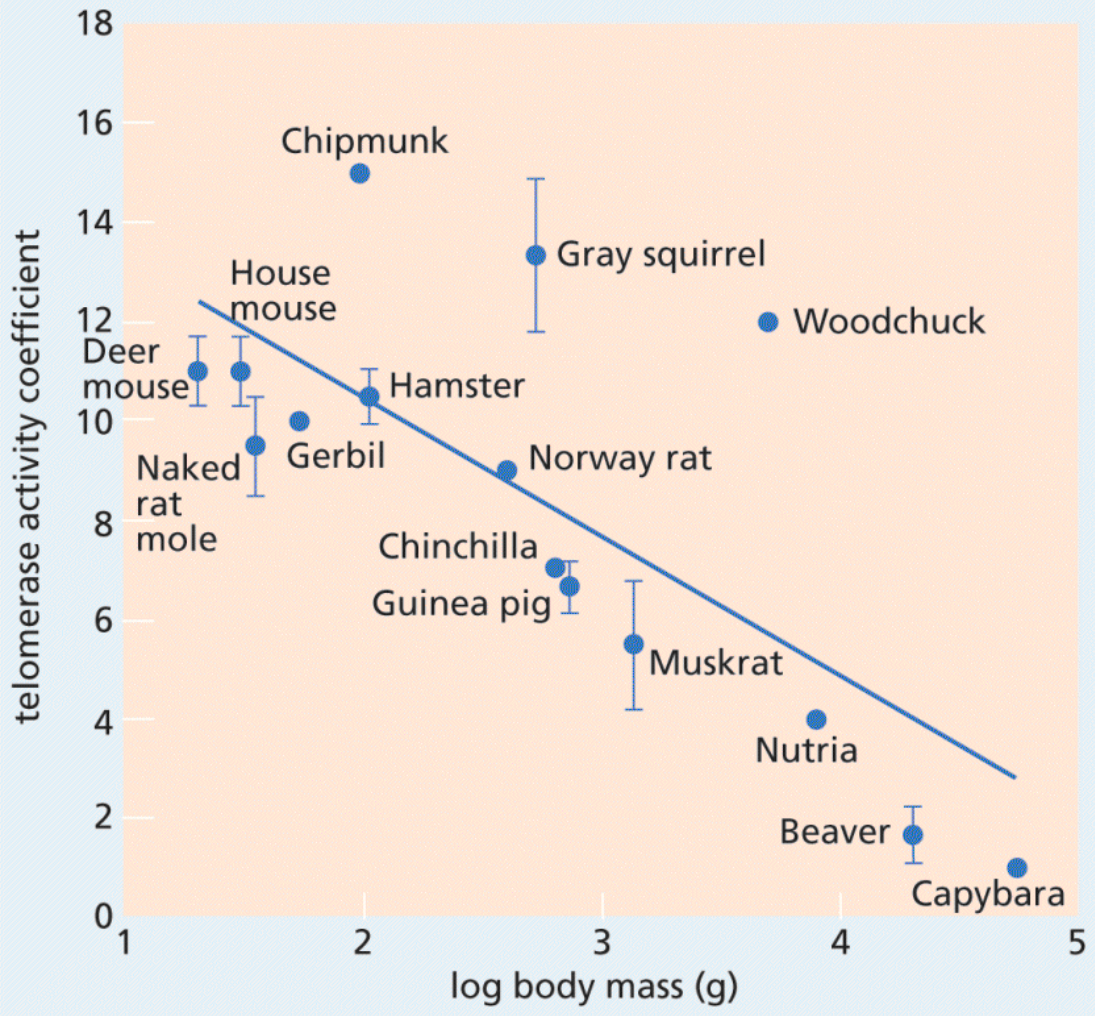
Supplementary Sidebar 11.10 Mammalian cells appear to reduce constitutive telomerase expression in order to forestall tumor outgrowth

The association between body size, longevity and constitutive telomerase expression levels first became apparent when examining telomere configuration in the cells of laboratory mice and humans, where striking disparities immediately became apparent. The normal cells of laboratory mice sport telomeres that may be as much as ten times longer than those of normal human cells and the murine cells express readily detectable levels of the telomerase holoenzyme which is virtually undetectable in corresponding normal cells (see Section 10.9). The differences in constitutive telomere lengths may be attributable to the level of the telomerase enzyme that is normally available to maintain them (although differing mechanisms of telomere degradation may also intervene). These associations deal only with two distantly related mammalian species and may not, on their own, convincingly demonstrate that limiting constitutive telomerase expression in somatic cells represents a mechanism enabling mammals to reduce the spontaneous eruption of tumors. The correlations shown in **Figure S11.8**, however, provide a more convincing case that this strategy has been employed repeatedly over the last 100 million years during the evolution and diversification of members of the order Rodentia, which are very similar to one another in overall body plan, but vary enormously in body size, ranging from mice that may have a mass of 20 g to capybara, which can weight 55 kg—a 2500-fold difference!

(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S11.8 Mammalian body size, lifespan, and relative risk of cell transformation Although the sizes of individual cells are comparable in various mammalian species, the overall body mass and thus cell number vary enormously. Moreover, individuals in larger species generally live longer than those in smaller species. Because passage through each cell cycle creates the danger of genome alterations, the risks of cancer can vary enormously from one species to the next. (A) The bumblebee bat of Thailand (*top*), said to be the smallest mammal, weighs just 1.5 g, a bit less than the Etruscan shrew (*bottom*); the life span of the bumblebee bat is unknown, whereas that of the Etruscan shrew is thought to be ~2 years. Etruscan shrews reach reproductive age by 3–4 weeks (in contrast to ~12–15 years in humans). (B) The blue whale has a body weight of about 1.3×10^8 g, reaches sexual maturity in 5–10 years and has a life span of about 80 years, much like that of humans (*lower right*). The eight-orders-of-magnitude difference in mass (and therefore cell number) between the bat and the whale together with

the approximately 40-fold difference in lifespan suggests a difference of more than 10^9 in the number of cell divisions that the two organisms experience in a lifetime. (Because the metabolic rate of the small mammals may be as much as 10^3 times higher than the whale's, and because much of the mutational burden of the cell genome derives from by-products of oxidative metabolism, the blue whale may experience only a 10^6-fold in higher intrinsic cancer risk of cancer than the bat.) (C) The relative activity levels of telomerase have been measured as seen here in the normal cells of 14 different rodent species. The clearly observed negative correlation between basal telomerase rate in normal cells and overall body mass adds evidence to the argument that limitations in telomerase activity represent one mechanism in a mammal to reduce the likelihood of cancers arising in its tissues. (A, MerlinTuttle.org/Science Source, and © Dr. Carleton Ray/Science Source. B, courtesy of Uko Gorter. C, from V. Gorbunova, A. Seluanov, Z. Zhang et al., *Nature Rev. Genet.* 15, 531–540, 2014. With permission from Nature.)

Supplementary Sidebar 11.11 Why do pediatric tumors carry so few mutant driver genes?

The documented simplicity of the spectrum of mutant driver genes present in individual pediatric cancers requires explanation, much like the documented differences between mouse and human cell transformation (see Section 11.8). One explanation is that the tissues that develop into pediatric tumors contain small numbers of target cells compared to the corresponding adult tissues and these tumors develop quickly relative to the decades-long development of many adult tumors, that is, they simply do not have the time to accumulate a significant cohort of mutant driver genes. In addition, another argument echoes the logic of why the cells of various mammalian species are more or less readily transformed by introduced oncogenes (see Figure 11.28). Imagine that (1) the small mass of the human fetus averaged over the course of gestation relative to the mass of a fully grown adult (possibly two orders-of-magnitude fewer cells) and (2) the shorter overall elapsed lifetime of the fetus (also two orders-of-magnitude lower), predicts as much as a 10,000-fold smaller cumulative number of fetal cell divisions and a proportionately lower intrinsic risk of cancer development. This "back of the envelope" calculation would dictate, in turn, that fewer layers of anti-cancer biological defenses established in fetal cells should suffice to ward off cancer during the course of gestation. This logic might be invoked to explain the successful formation of pediatric tumors (which are often initiated in fetal cells) bearing only very low numbers of mutationally activated driver genes in their genomes. If so, the mechanisms developed over the course of mammalian evolution to cope with prenatal cancer risk prenatally in mammals may actually have been quite different from those mechanisms that developed to protect adult mammals. One

prediction of this logic, which may have never been tested, is that transfection experiments of the sort used to measure the complexity of transformation (see Figure 11.28) have never been applied to cultured embryonic or fetal cells.

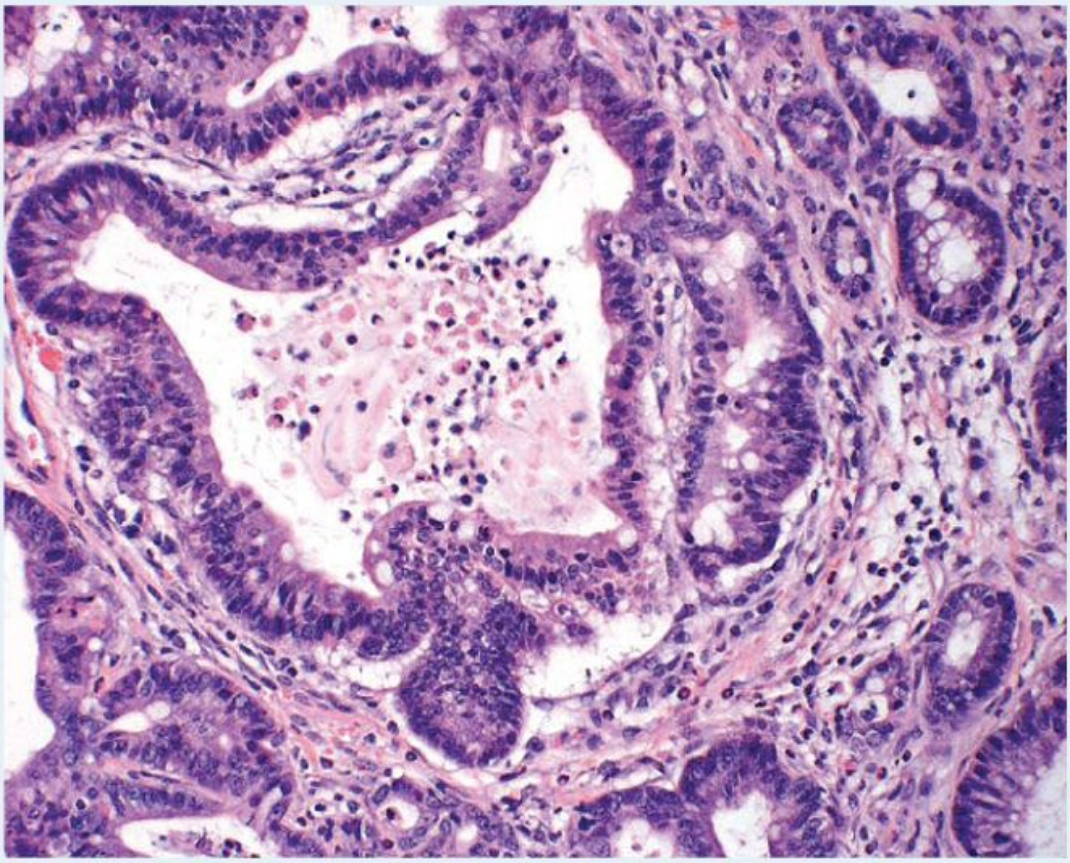
There is, actually, another perspective that may shed light on the conundrum created by pediatric tumors, this one coming from the notion that "ontogeny recapitulates phylogeny." This maxim was coined in the middle of the nineteenth century, being inspired at the time by the observation that the embryos and fetuses of diverse but evolutionarily related species share many morphological features, ostensibly residues of their common evolutionary ancestry. (Although parts of this notion have survived, the study of the details of embryonic development has revealed many deviations from its predictions.) Thus, there appears to be a parallel between the genetic requirements for tumorigenicity and the evolution of metazoan complexity starting with (1) the smallest common ancestor of metazoa (a single-cell eukaryote) and its possible analog in mammals, the ES cell (zero mutant alleles required for tumorigenesis); proceeding to (2) the small, short-lived mammals from which we descend (mutant alleles of two genes being required); and further to (3) adult humans (five mutant genes or signaling pathways needed). In this sense, quite possibly, the echoes of our evolution toward increasing size, life span, and organismic complexity over the past 1.5 billion years seem to be reflected in the increasing numbers of genes required to transform our cells during the course of our own development from an early embryo to a fetus to a newborn child and, eventually, to an adult.

Supplementary Sidebar 11.12 The gut microbiome functions as a tumor-promoting mechanism

An illustration of the prominent role that inflammation plays in colon carcinoma formation has come from the study of mutant mice that lack the ability to make TGF-β1 (which acts, among its diverse functions, to keep various types of immune cells under control, doing so in part through its ability to stimulate formation of the critically important immunosuppressive regulatory T-cells described in Chapters 15 and 16). Such mutant mice tend to develop a lethal autoimmune disease, which results in their death several weeks after birth. In order to spare these mice an early death, their immune systems were crippled by germ-line inactivation of their *Rag2* gene copies, a loss that prevents the formation of the antigen-specific lymphocytes that trigger autoimmune disease as described in Chapter 15. The doubly mutant mice ($Tgfb1^{-/-}Rag2^{-/-}$) now survived far longer but developed areas of inflammation in the colon, as well as colonic adenomas and frank adenocarcinomas, at between 3 and 6 months of age. However, if these doubly mutant mice were reared in a germ-free environment (which yields colons free of the usual bacterial populations), no colonic inflammation was seen and neither adenomas nor adenocarcinomas developed. In a

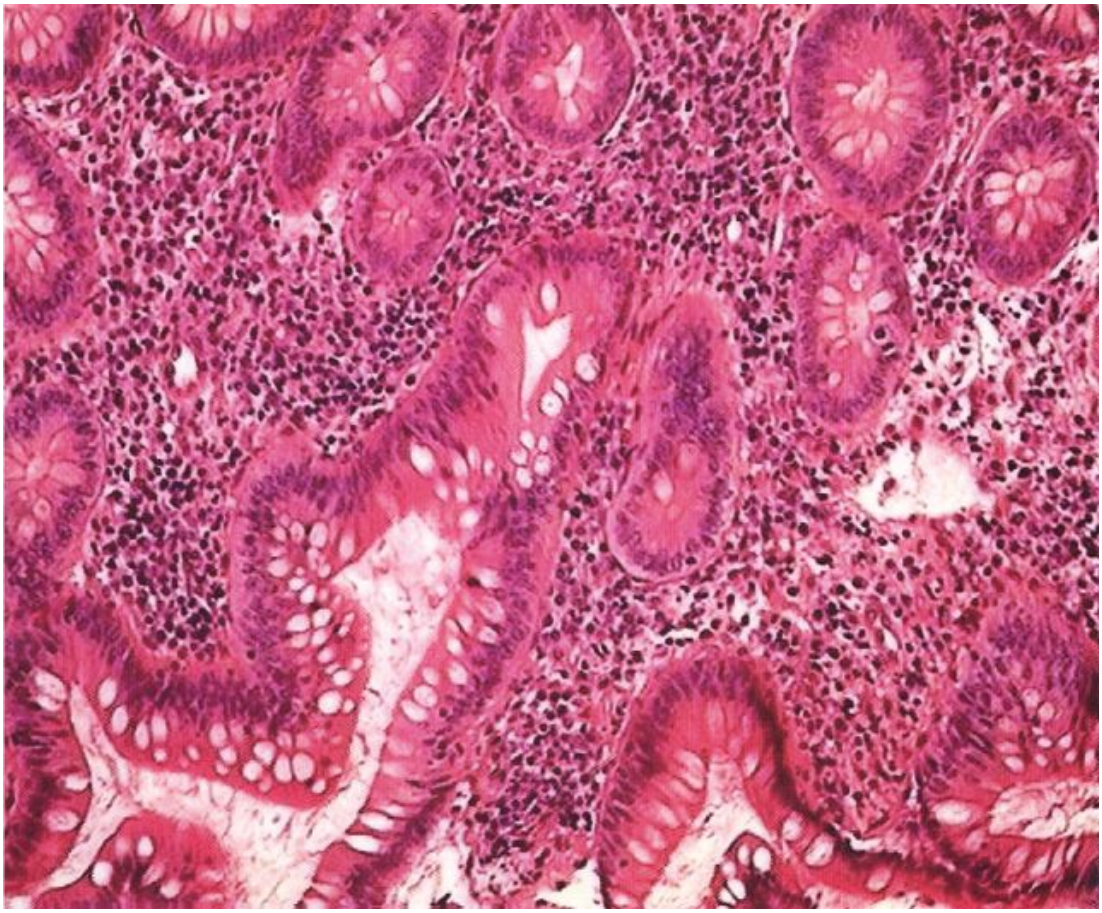
control experiment, when such germ-free mice were introduced into animal quarters harboring *Helicobacter hepaticus* (a bacterium often present in the mouse gut that induces inflammation), once again polyps and carcinomas formed in their colons (**Figure S11.9A and B**). Observations like these indicate that bacterial flora in the gut contribute importantly to inflammation, such as the condition observed in humans suffering from ulcerative colitis, an inflammatory condition that predisposes to colon cancer (for example, Figure S11.9C). Moreover, they suggest but hardly prove that localized areas of colonic inflammation in otherwise-normal individuals contribute to the formation of adenomatous polyps that can eventually progress to carcinomas.

(A)



infected with *Helicobacter hepaticus*

(B)



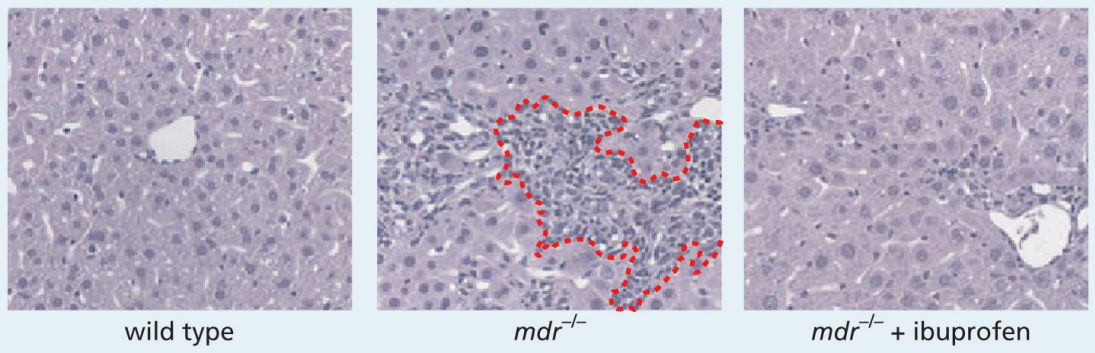
(C)

Figure S11.9 Colonic inflammation and tumor promotion The development of adenomas and carcinomas in the colon depends strongly on chronic inflammation occurring in this organ. Thus, genetically altered mice that lack the ability to make TGF-β1 (which acts to suppress certain types of immune reactions) succumb early in life to overwhelming autoimmune disease. (A) However, if their immune system is crippled through the inactivation in their germ line of the gene encoding the Rag-2 enzyme, which is required for generating functional antibody and T-cell receptor genes (see Chapter 15), these mice survive when they are housed in a germ-free (that is, sterile) facility. Under such conditions, their intestinal epithelium is quite normal histologically. (B) In contrast, if these doubly mutant mice are housed in a facility in which *Helicobacter hepaticus* bacteria are present, their colons become infected with these bacteria and they develop adenomas and carcinomas. This indicates that the chronic inflammation created by these intestinal bacteria is essential to the formation of the observed colonic lesions. (C) Human ulcerative colitis involves chronic inflammation of regions of the colonic mucosa, which leads after many years to substantially increased risk of colon carcinoma. In this condition, the stromal areas between the colonic crypts are

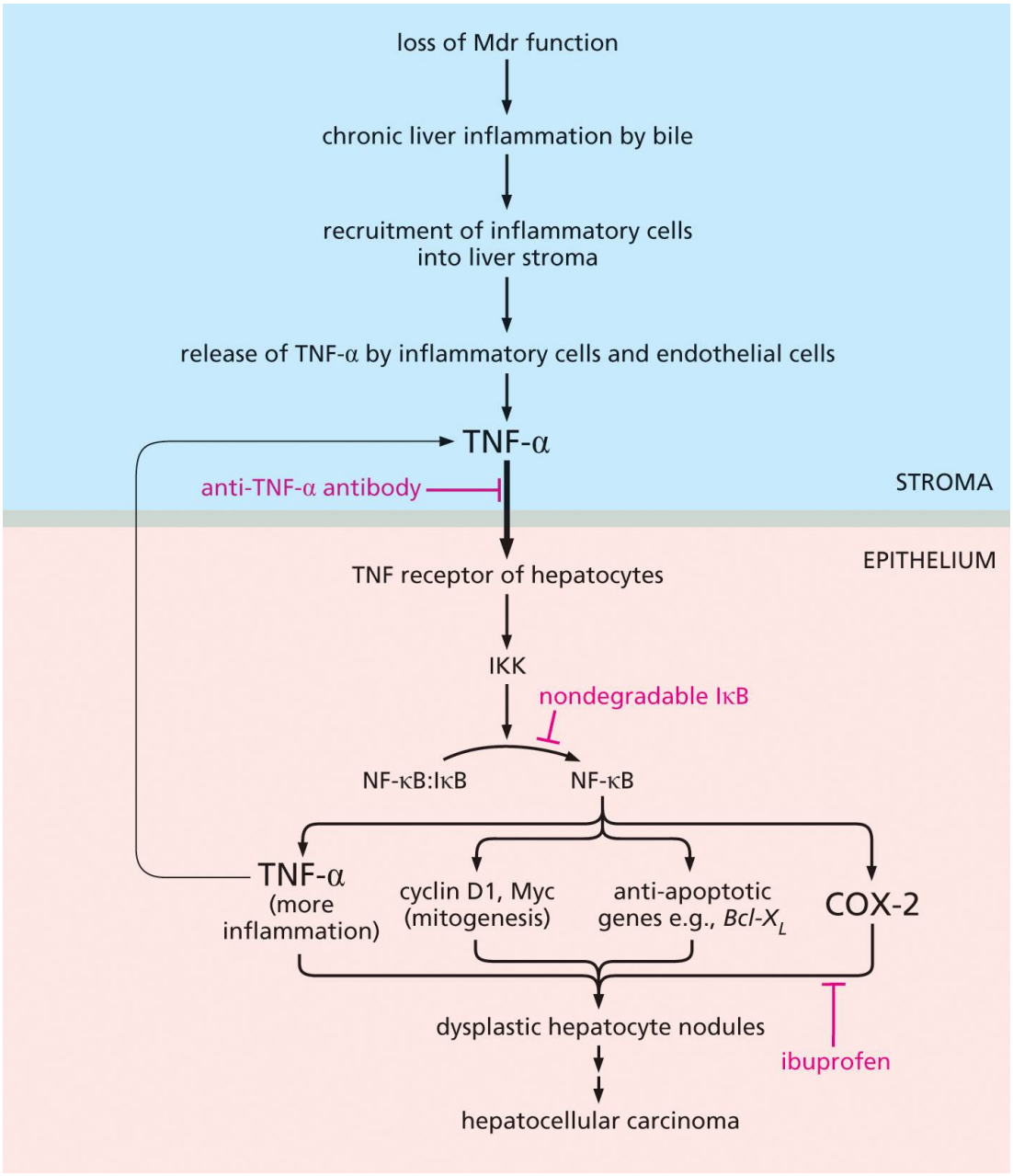
infiltrated with large numbers of lymphocytes, which are associated with inflammation (*small, dark purple nuclei*). (A and B, from S.J. Engle et al., *Cancer Res.* 62:6362–6366, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of D. Lamarque.)

Supplementary Sidebar 11.13 Experimentally induced inflammation in the liver drives tumorigenesis

In another illustrative mouse tumor model, liver carcinogenesis was provoked through deletion of the *Mdr* (multi-drug resistance) gene in the mouse germ line; loss of this gene and its encoded product leads to accumulation of toxic bile acids in the liver and resulting chronic liver inflammation. Affected mice develop nodules of dysplastic hepatocytes, localized hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs), and eventually metastatic HCCs (**Figure S11.10A**).



(A)



(B)

Figure S11.10 Experimentally induced inflammation acts via NF-KB to induce hepatocellular carcinomas In one mouse model of liver carcinogenesis, deletion of the *mdr* (multi-drug resistance) gene causes chronic liver inflammation, which generates dysplastic foci among the hepatocytes, some of which progress to form hepatocellular carcinomas. (A) An infiltrate of inflammatory cells in the liver of an *mdr*$^{-/-}$ mouse (*outlined*, *center panel*) contrasts with cells in the normal liver (*left panel*) and the liver of an *mdr*$^{-/-}$ mouse that has been treated with a potent anti-inflammatory drug, ibuprofen (*right*

panel). Such areas of inflammatory infiltrate appear to be critical to the formation of dysplastic foci and thus to the subsequent formation of hepatic carcinomas. (B) This diagram summarizes the sequence of changes that appear to generate hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs) in this mouse model. Loss of the *mdr* gene leads to an accumulation of bile acids that induce a state of chronic liver inflammation; this attracts inflammatory cells to the liver stroma that proceed to release TNF-α. This ligand impinges on the TNF receptors (see Figure 9.29) displayed by hepatocytes within the liver's epithelial compartment. The TNF receptors respond by activating IKK, which induces NF-κB signaling, which then drives expression of anti-apoptotic genes (such as *bcl-*x_L), proliferative genes (such as the one encoding cyclin D1), and the gene specifying TNF-α; expression of additional TNF-α leads to amplification of the inflammatory response. Together, the proteins encoded by these genes facilitate the progression of the dysplastic nodules to hepatocellular carcinomas. This progression can be blocked by antibodies reactive with TNF-α as well as a dominant-negative, nondegradable IκB. (The precise identities of the inflammatory cells that are recruited to the stroma and that are responsible for signaling to the hepatocytes are unclear, in part because they represent a complex mixture of macrophages; T cells, including NKT cells, cytotoxic T cells, and T_{regs}; NK cells; myofibroblasts; and, frequently, B cells, neutrophils, and plasma cells.) (A, from E. Pikarsky et al., *Nature* 431:461–466, 2004. With permission from Nature.)

In the livers of these mice, TNF-α is initially produced by inflamed endothelial cells as well as infiltrating inflammatory immune cells, such as neutrophils and macrophages, in the stroma. The released TNF-α acts in a paracrine manner on nearby hepatocytes, which display receptors for TNF-α. Like PKC-α in keratinocytes, the ligand-activated TNF-α receptor of these hepatocytes funnels signals through the NF-κB pathway (see Section 6.12). As described above, NF-κB is dispatched to the nucleus, where it activates anti-apoptotic genes and genes favoring proliferation including, in this case, the TNF-α gene. The resulting TNF-α, once released by hepatocytes, attracts more inflammatory cells through *paracrine* signaling and amplifies hepatocyte NF-κB signaling through *autocrine* signaling.

When NF-κB signaling was blocked in the hepatocytes of the $mdr^{-/-}$ mice through treatment with a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (see Figure S11.10A), tumor incidence was strongly suppressed. This inhibition of signaling could also be achieved through the introduction of an anti-TNF-α antibody into the $mdr^{-/-}$ mice (which blocked the paracrine signaling between inflammatory stromal cells and hepatocytes) or by expressing a nondegradable IκB in the hepatocytes (which inhibited NF-κB activation). In both cases, loss of NF-κB signaling resulted in greatly increased rates of apoptosis in the pre-neoplastic hepatocytes (see also Figure 11.36).

Indeed, prevention of apoptosis likely explains much of the tumor-promoting effect of inflammation in this mouse model. Interestingly, shutdown of NF-κB signaling in hepatocytes did not prevent the early steps of liver tumor progression—hepatitis, tumor initiation, and the development of dysplasia—but the subsequent progression of dysplastic tissue to hepatocellular carcinoma was blocked. Hence, in this experimental model, TNF-α and NF-κB are involved in promotion and not in the earlier stages of initiation.

A similar conclusion was reached in studies of a mouse model of colitis-associated colon cancer: inactivation of IKK signaling led to greatly increased rates of apoptosis in pre-cancerous enterocytes—the epithelial cells lining the colon. Without NF-κB signaling, these cells failed to express elevated levels of the potently anti-apoptotic Bcl-X_L (see Figure 9.23C) and instead produced high levels of the pro-apoptotic Bax and Bak proteins. Once again, some of the tumor-promoting effects of NF-κB could be traced to its ability to protect initiated epithelial cells from apoptosis.

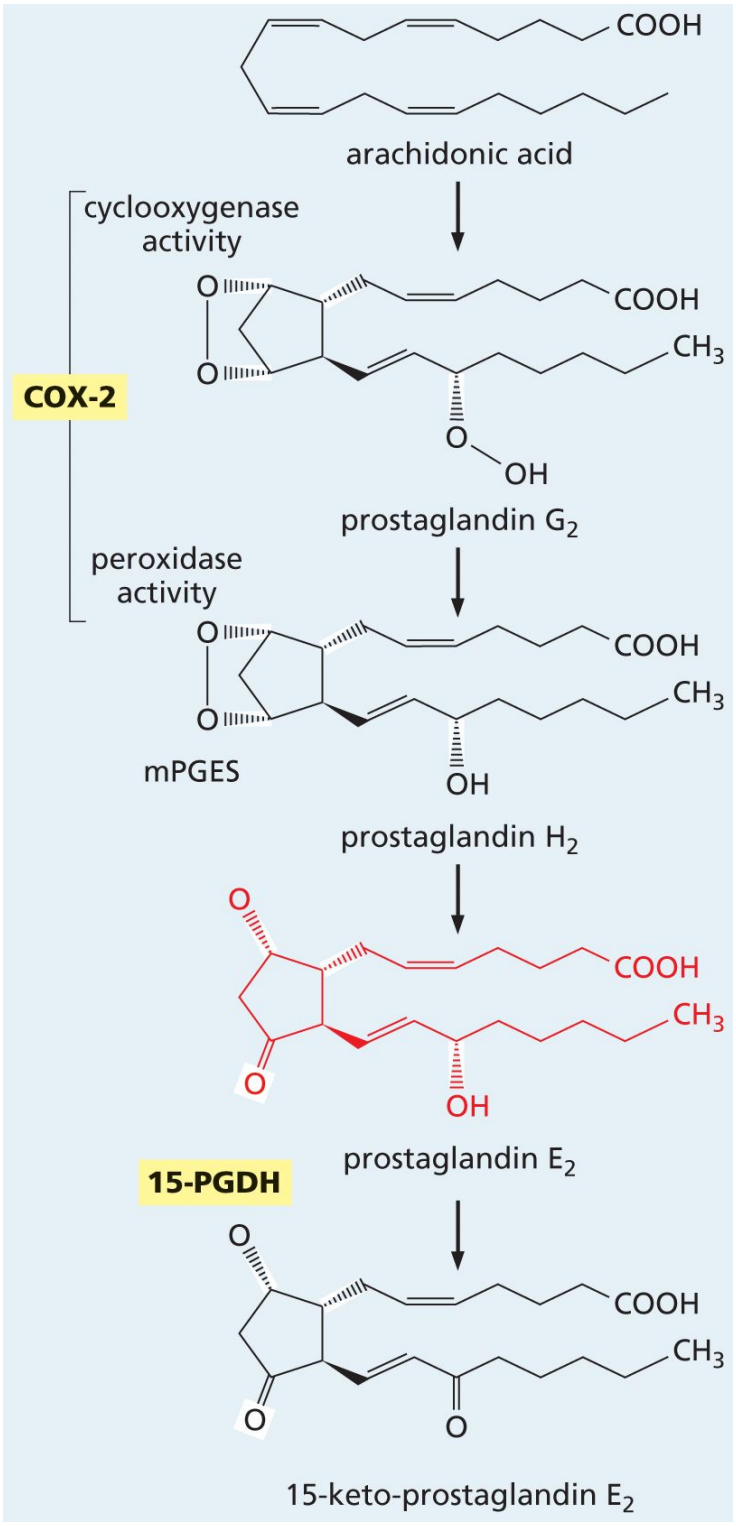
These descriptions indicate that NF-κB signaling is highly active in the epithelial cells of inflamed tissues (for example, hepatocytes in the liver or enterocytes in the colon). The inflammation is created by inflammatory cells of the immune system (notably macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils, mast cells, and lymphocytes) that are recruited into the stromal compartments of these tissues, where they release pro-inflammatory signals. Importantly, the NF-κB pathway also operates within these stromal immune cells, enabling them to release pro-inflammatory signals such as TNF-α. These interactions operating in the liver are summarized in Figure S11.10B). Moreover, in the above-cited model of colitis and colorectal cancer, shutdown of IKK signaling in the inflammatory immune cells of the intestinal stroma also led to a significant suppression of colorectal tumor formation.

Supplementary Sidebar 11.14 Evidence supporting the key role of COX-2 and PGE2 in the tumor-promoting inflammatory response

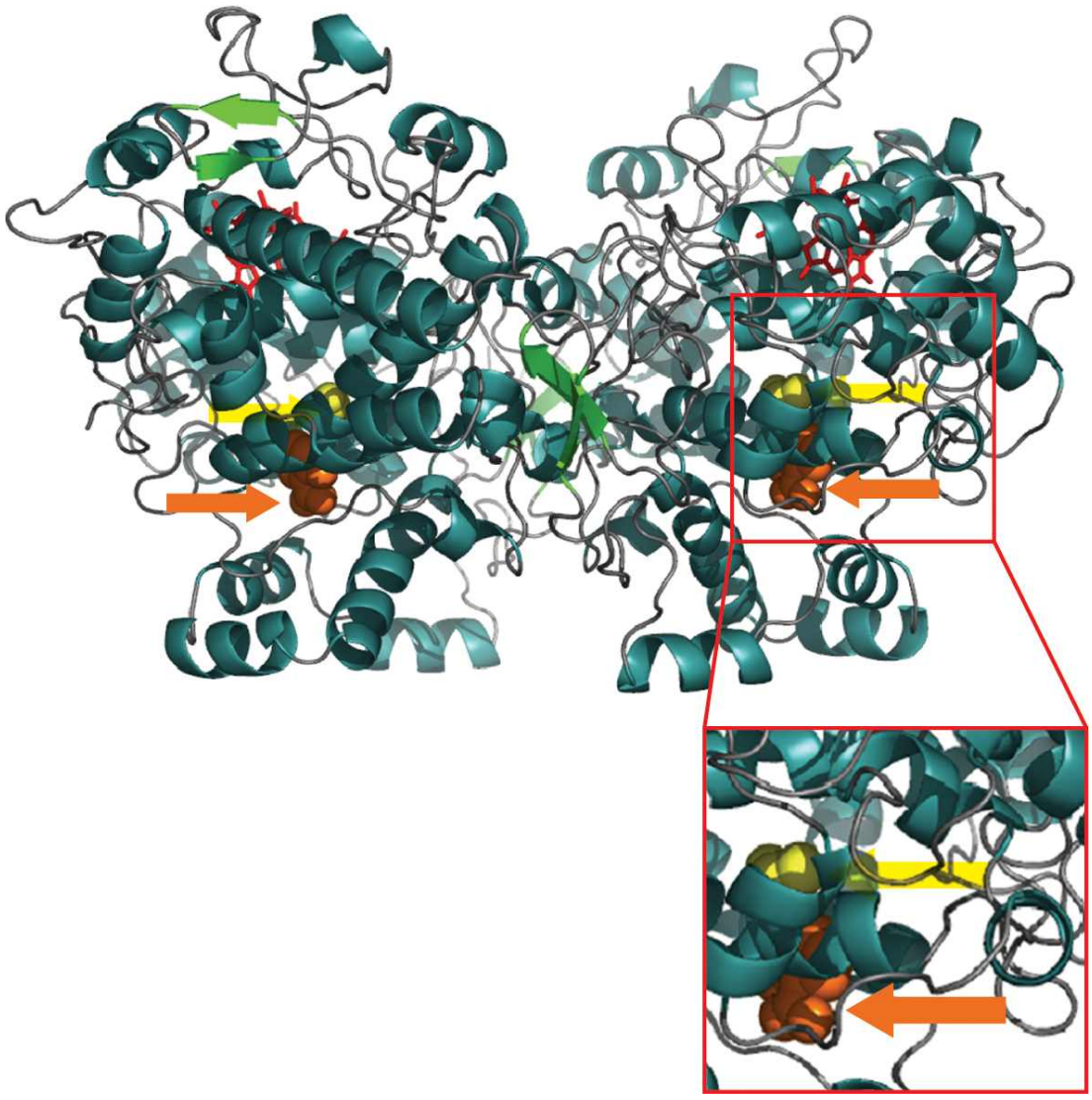
The observations that reduction of incidence of multiple cancer types through use of NSAIDs (non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs) requires explanation because these responses represent some of the most compelling demonstrations of the role of inflammation in cancer pathogenesis and, at the same time, appear to suggest a future strategy designed to develop drugs to prevent certain types of cancer.

The signaling pathways illustrated in Figure S11.10B provide no clue to the biochemical actions of the most commonly used NSAID, acetylsalicylic acid, that is, aspirin. Insight here requires discussion of its protein target, the enzyme cyclooxygenase-2, its mechanism-of-action, and the role of aspirin in inhibiting this enzyme. The substrates of COX-2 are two prostaglandins that are generated through

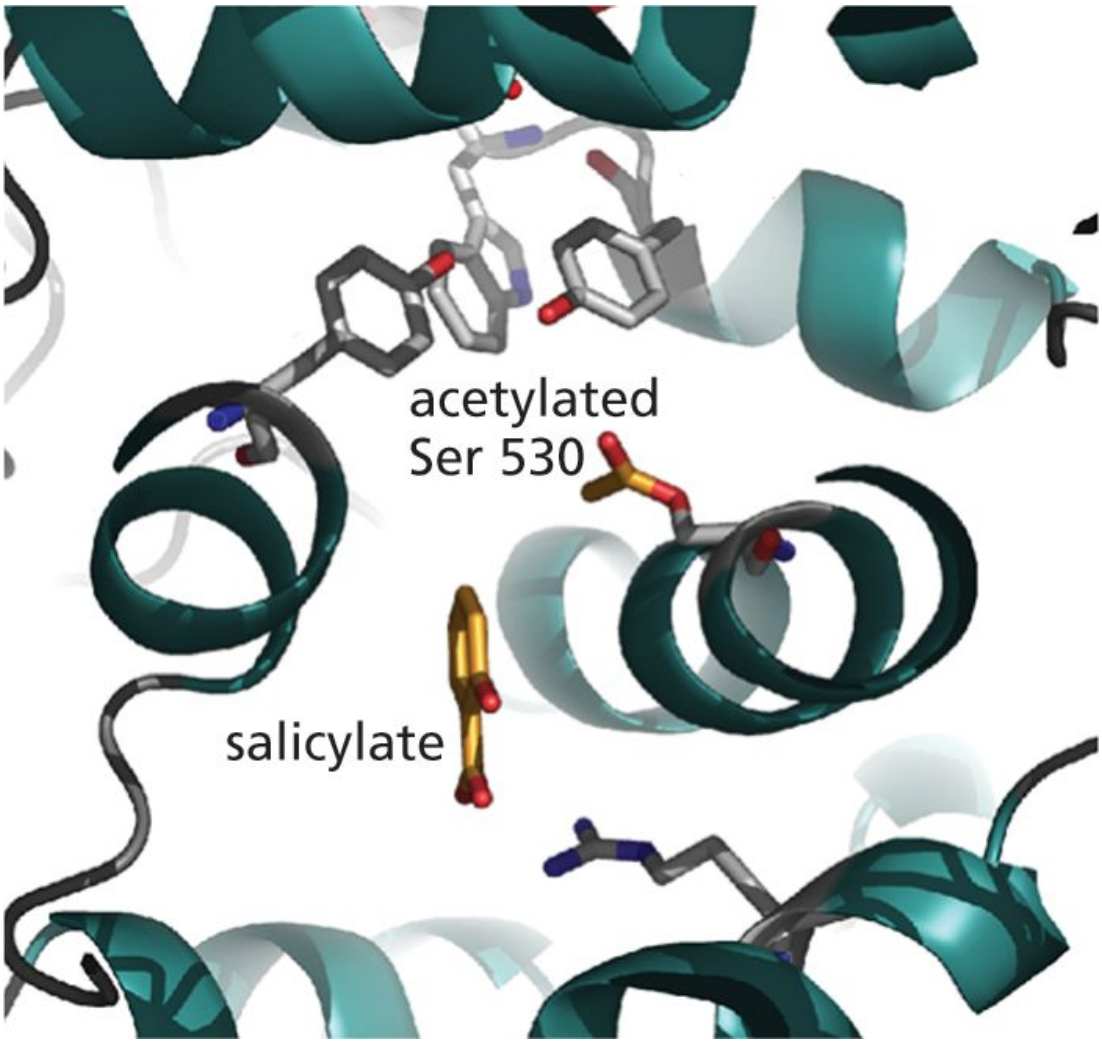
the metabolism of arachidonic acid (**Figure S11.11A**). The overall molecular structure of the COX-2 enzyme indicates a homodimeric enzyme with well-localized sites of action (Figure S11.11B). The catalytic clefts of the enzyme are obstructed by acetylation of a critical serine residue lining this cleft and triggered by hydrolysis of aspirin/acetylsalicylic acid (Figure S11.11C). (Not shown here is the action of another commonly used NSAID, ibuprofen, which also acts by inhibiting COX-2; being less selective than aspirin, ibuprofen also inhibits COX-1.)


COOH
arachidonic acid
cyclooxygenase activity
COX-2
COOH
CH3
O
O
OH
prostaglandin G2
peroxidase activity
mPGES
prostaglandin H2
prostaglandin E2
15-PGDH
15-keto-prostaglandin E2

(A)



(B)

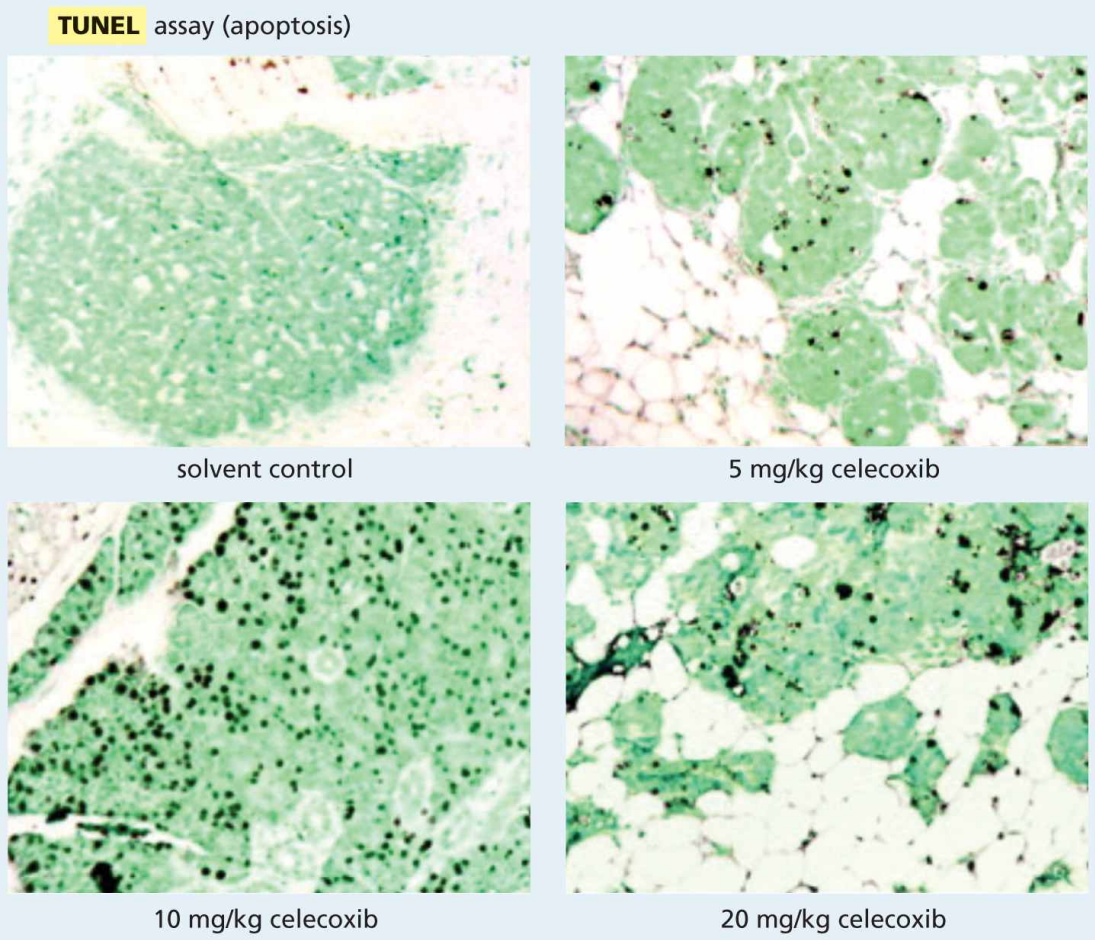


(C)

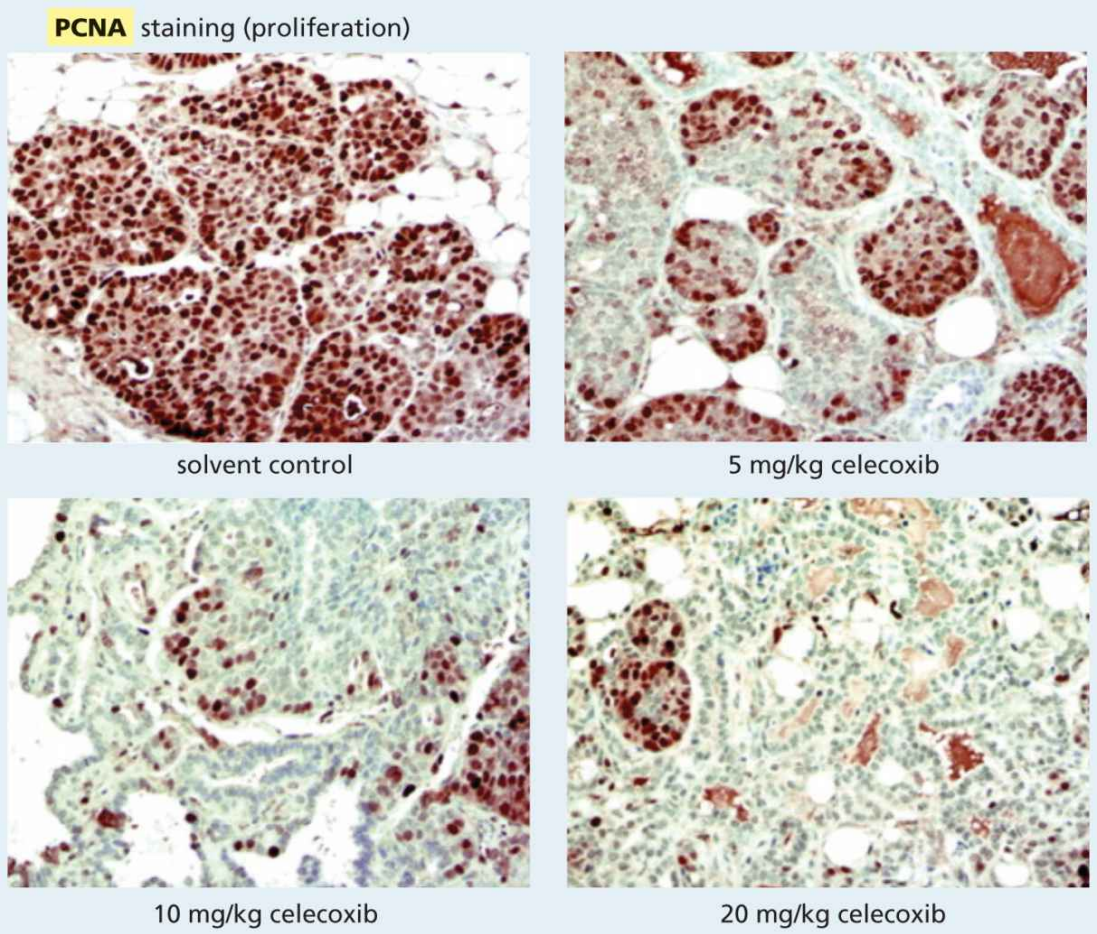
Figure S11.11 Prostaglandin metabolism and the actions of anti-inflammatory drugs The profound effects of anti-inflammatory drugs in suppressing the incidence of a variety of commonly occurring carcinomas result from their ability to inhibit the catalytic activity of the cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) enzyme (sometimes called prostaglandin H_2 synthase), see Figure 11.36. COX-2 is induced in many tissues in response to inflammatory stimuli. (A) Prostaglandins derive from the metabolism of arachidonic acid, which itself is generated through the actions of phospholipase A2, which liberates it from the plasma membrane into the cytosol. The two distinct catalytic activities of COX-2 involve its participation in two sequential steps in this pathway that result in the conversion of arachidonic acid into prostaglandin H_2. The latter is metabolized to prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2; *red*), which evokes many of the tumor-promoting, pro-inflammatory responses described here. The PGDH (15-hydroxyprostaglandin

dehydrogenase) enzyme (also termed hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase, HPGD) degrades PGE_2 into 15-keto-prostaglandin E_2, which is presumed to be inactive. (B) The catalytic sites of COX-2, a homodimer, that convert arachidonic acid to prostaglandin G_2, are largely inactivated by the most commonly used anti-inflammatory drug—aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid)—which acetylates (*yellow balls* and *arrows*) serine 530 of COX-2 and leaves the salicylate moiety weakly bound in the catalytic cleft (*orange balls* and *arrows*). α-helices (*teal*), inter-helix loops (*gray*), β-pleated sheets (*light green*), heme group (*red*). (C) In more detail, the acetylation of serine 530 by aspirin obstructs the catalytic cleft and thus the enzymatic activity of COX-2, which is responsible for converting arachidonic acid to the precursor of all prostanoids, prostaglandin G_2; the latter is then converted further to prostaglandin H_2 by a second site in the COX-2 enzyme. (B and C, courtesy of R.M. Garavito.)

The biological function of celecoxib, another NSAID that inhibits COX-2, is revealed dramatically by its effects on the development of mammary carcinomas in a transgenic mouse model that drives cancer formation through the actions of a transgene-encoded polyomavirus middle T oncoprotein; this oncoprotein functions to transform cells through its ability to bind and activate, among other cellular proteins, the c-Src tyrosine kinase enzyme described in Chapter 3. As indicated, acetylsalicylic acid exposure triggers apoptosis of carcinoma cells (**Figure S11.12A**) and concomitantly inhibits their proliferation (Figure S11.12B). The modulation of the pro-inflammatory PGE_2 molecule is achieved in significant part through changes in the levels of the PGE_2-degrading enzyme termed PGDH (**Figure S11.13A and B**). Reduced levels of PGDH can result in greatly increased intracellular levels of PGE_2, which in turn can evoke a variety of dramatic biological responses, one of which is revealed here in a mouse model of the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) syndrome described in Section 7.10 (Figure S11.13C).


TUNEL assay (apoptosis)
solvent control
5 mg/kg celecoxib
10 mg/kg celecoxib
20 mg/kg celecoxib

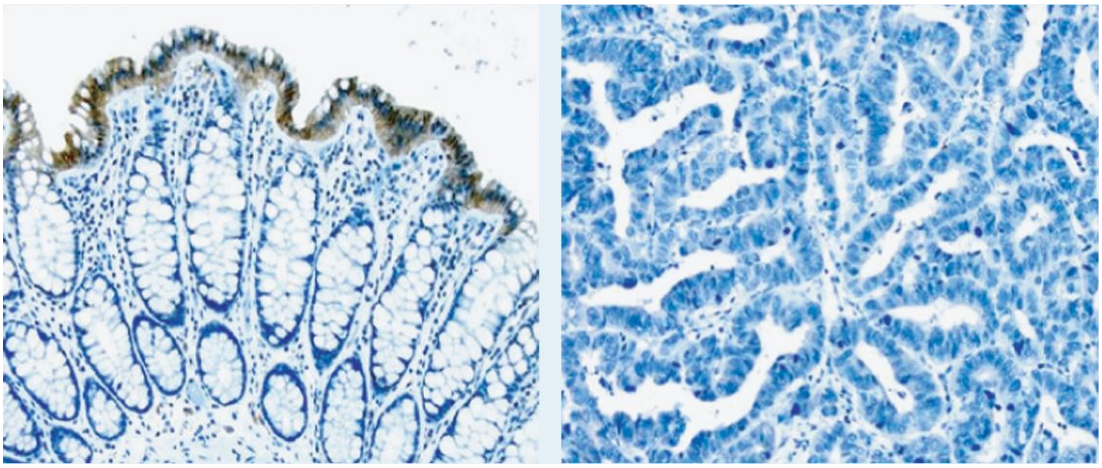
(A)



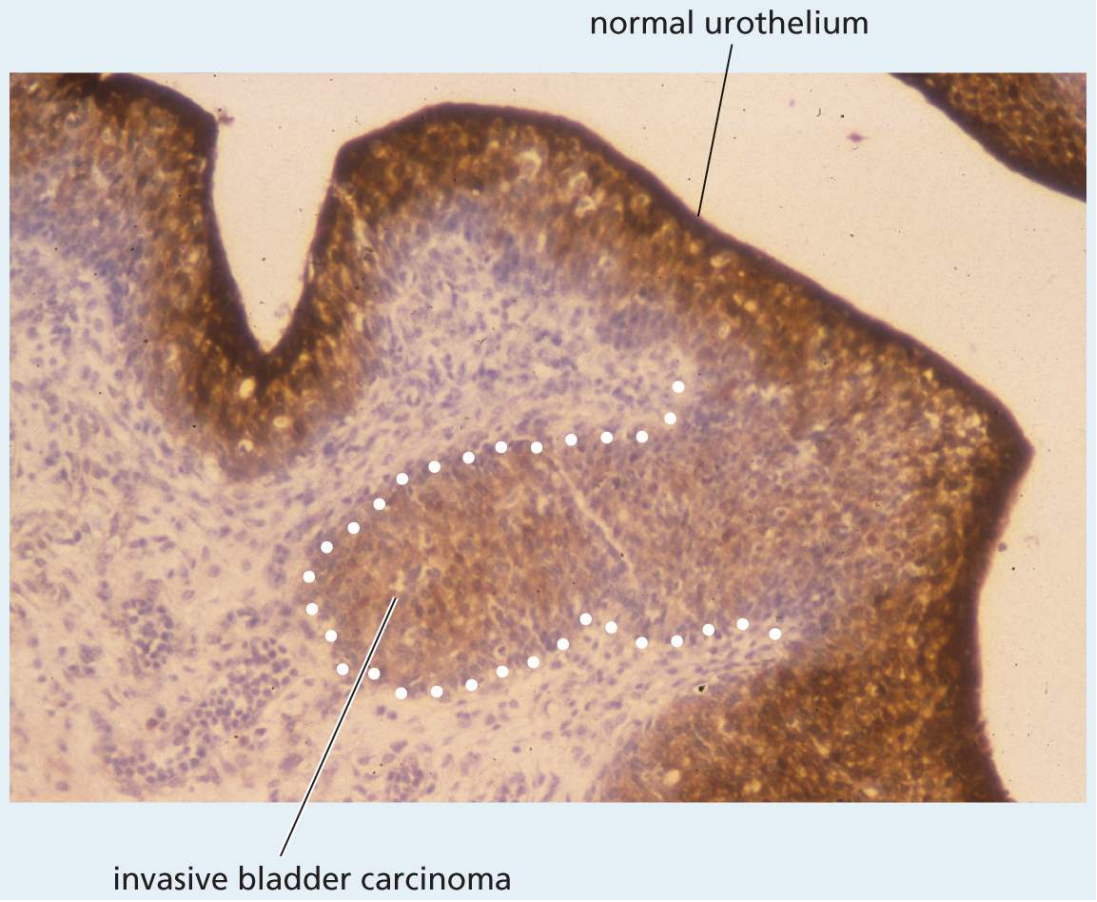
(B)

Figure S11.12 COX-2 inhibition in mammary carcinomas of tumor-prone transgenic mice In a transgenic mouse model of mammary carcinoma pathogenesis, the development of tumors is driven by the transgene-encoded polyomavirus middle T oncoprotein. Tumor formation is strongly reduced by treatment with celecoxib, another NSAID that is a potent and selective inhibitor of cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2). It acts in two complementary ways by inducing increased apoptosis and reducing cell proliferation. (A) As indicated here, increasing doses of this drug generate progressively higher numbers of tumor cells (*light green*) that stain with the TUNEL assay (*dark brown spots*; see Figure 9.18), which marks cells in the midst of apoptosis. In this case, the proportion of tumor cells that are TUNEL-positive provides an indication of the extent of apoptosis induction. (B) Acting in a complementary fashion, increasing concentrations of celecoxib lead to decreasing cell proliferation, as revealed by staining (*dark red*) for PCNA (proliferating-cell nuclear antigen), a marker of cell cycle progression. Celecoxib doses are presented as milligrams of drug per kilogram of body weight.

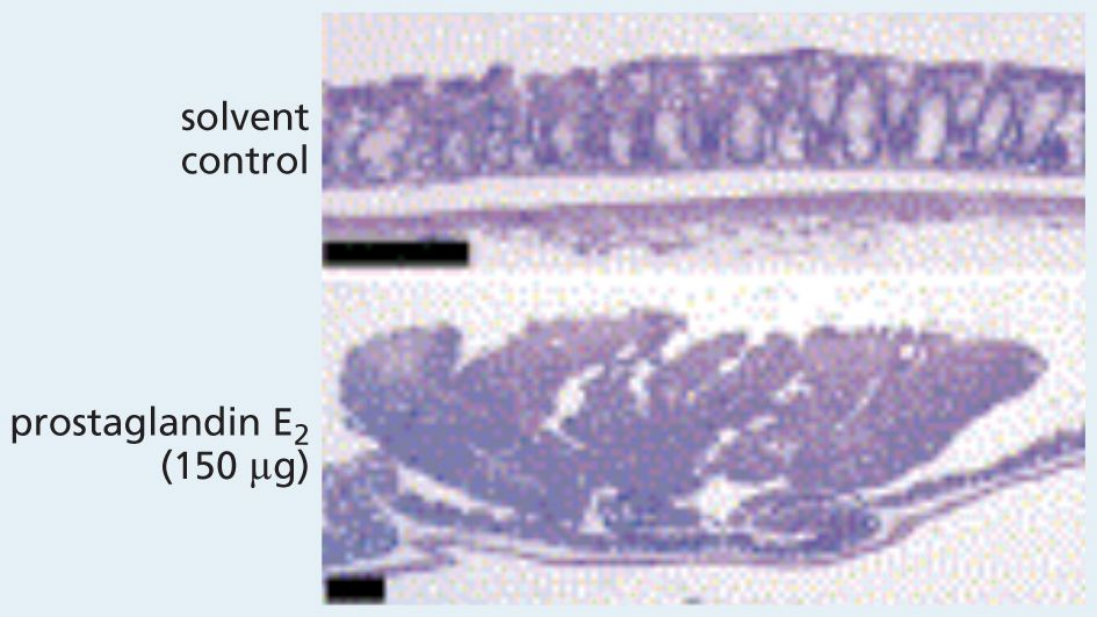
(From G.D. Basu et al., *Mol. Cancer Res.* 2:632–642, 2004. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S11.13 Biological effects of elevated prostaglandin E_2 levels and regulation of these levels by the PGDH PGE_2-degrading enzyme The levels of PGE_2 can be modulated in various ways, resulting in increased rates of tumor progression. (A) In general, these levels are dictated by the rates of its synthesis by COX-2 and its degradation by PGDH (see Figure S11.11A). In many carcinomas, increased COX-2 levels in the stroma and epithelium are complemented by reduced levels of the PGDH—the PGE_2-degrading enzyme—in the epithelial compartment. Indeed, PGDH expression is depressed in the majority of lung, colon, breast, and bladder carcinomas. As seen here, PGDH (*dark stain*) is strongly expressed in the normal enterocytes facing the lumen of the colon (*left*) while being undetectable in a colon carcinoma that arose nearby (*right*). (B) Similarly, the intense expression of PGDH (*dark brown*) in the normal urothelium (the epithelial lining of the bladder) contrasts with the almost-total loss of this PGE_2-degrading enzyme in a tongue of invasive carcinoma cells. (C) Increases in PGE_2 levels can be achieved experimentally by feeding this prostaglandin to mice of the *Apc* mutant strain (see Section 7.10). This causes a dramatic increase in the number of colonic polyps (*below*) compared with those seen in control *Apc* mutant mice (*above*). The size bars indicate the relative magnification of the two panels. (A, from M. Yan et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101:17468–17473, 2004. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. B, from S. Tseng-Rogenski et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 176:1462–1468, 2010. With permission from American Society for Investigative Pathology. C, from D. Wang et al., *Cancer Cell* 6:285–295, 2004. With permission from Elsevier.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

incidence
: Frequency with which a condition or a disease occurs or is diagnosed in a population.

rate-limiting
: Referring to a step in a multi-step process that governs the overall rate at which the process as a whole reaches completion because this particular step is kinetically slower than all other steps.

vasculogenic mimicry
: The process that enables the neoplastic cells within a tumor to assemble into blood-carrying microvessels without these cells becoming *bona fide* endothelial cells.

Matrigel
: A preparation of ECM components, largely of basement membrane origin, that is secreted by mouse sarcoma cells and is often used as a gelatinous matrix in which to suspend cells in three-dimensional culture.

prenatal
: Occurring before birth. *See also* **natal**.

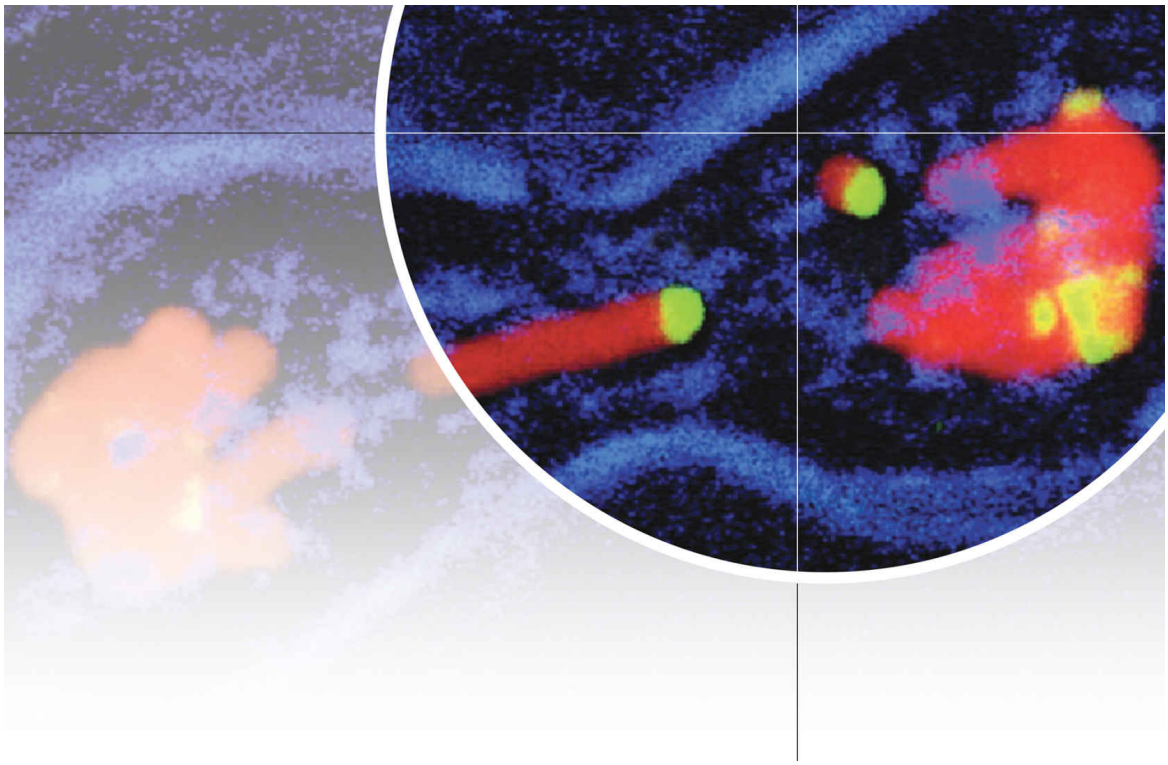
ontogeny
: The developmental history of an individual organism.

phylogeny
: The evolutionary history and development of a species.

celecoxib
: A clinically employed nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug that strongly inhibits the COX-2 enzyme.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 12
Shaping and Characterizing the Cancer Genome



A fluorescence microscopy image of loose D N A fragments in a cell approaching the end of the cell division process.

> The capacity to blunder slightly is the real marvel of DNA. Without this special attribute, we would still be anaerobic bacteria and there would be no music.
>
> Lewis Thomas, biologist, 1979

The fact that human tumor formation is a complex, multi-step process reflects the multiple lines of defense against cancer that have been established within our cells, each maintained by the hard-wiring of a complex regulatory circuit. The

human body—actually, its individual cells—entrusts the maintenance of these anti-cancer defenses to its most stable, reliable constituents: DNA molecules. Over extended periods of time, DNA sequences are the most fixed, unchangeable components of cells; most of their other parts are in constant flux, being created and broken down continuously. Despite the inherent stability of DNA, however, the lifelong requirement for DNA replication provides ample opportunity for DNA damage and the accumulation of cancer-associated mutations that drive tumorigenesis.

By current estimates, an adult human has approximately 4×10^{13} cells. In some tissues, such as the brain, there is relatively little cellular turnover and thus relatively little need for cell division. However, in highly regenerative tissues such as the intestine, the skin, or the blood, our bodies are producing cells at a remarkable rate. Indeed, by one estimate we produce approximately 80 billion new cells every hour of every day. Prior to each division, the mother cell is charged with faithfully duplicating its chromosomal DNA in the S phase of the cell cycle and accurately segregating it to the daughter cells in M phase. Given that the total length of the decondensed chromosomes of a single cell is about 2 meters, every hour we make an aggregate of approximately 160 billion meters of DNA! This is enough DNA to wrap around the circumference of the Earth a staggering 4000 times.

This prodigious rate of replication is why the mechanisms that govern DNA synthesis and chromosomal segregation must function at high fidelity in order to minimize the likelihood that cells will acquire faulty genomes. Adding to this challenge is that throughout our lifetimes our cells are exposed to a series of endogenously produced mutagenic chemical species as well as mutagens of exogenous origin that can increase the mutation rate significantly. With more mutations, there is an increased chance that a proto-oncogene or tumor suppressor gene will be altered by cancer-promoting mutations. Multiple mutant alleles of these genes must be acquired before adult tumors erupt, and so the rate of formation of these alleles is a critical-rate limiting determinant of cancer formation.

In this chapter, we consider the various mutagenic processes that impinge on normal cells as well as incipient cancer cells and that ultimately shape the cancer genome. Guarding against the effects of these mutagenic events are a battery of DNA repair and genome maintenance pathways that function to restore genomic order. As we discussed in Chapter 7, loss-of-function mutations in many of the genes that function in these pathways (so-called caretaker genes) are frequently

themselves mutated in cancer cells, leading to increased mutation frequency and genomic instability.

Over the past decade, the development of high-throughput genomic sequencing technologies has enabled the extensive analysis of cancer genomes from many human cancer types. The emerging data from this new era of cancer genomics underscore the fact that the march from cellular normalcy to malignancy is typically accompanied and indeed driven by widespread genomic alterations. These broad-based cancer genome characterization efforts have provided insights into the mutational landscape of human cancer as well as the mutagenic processes that drive it.

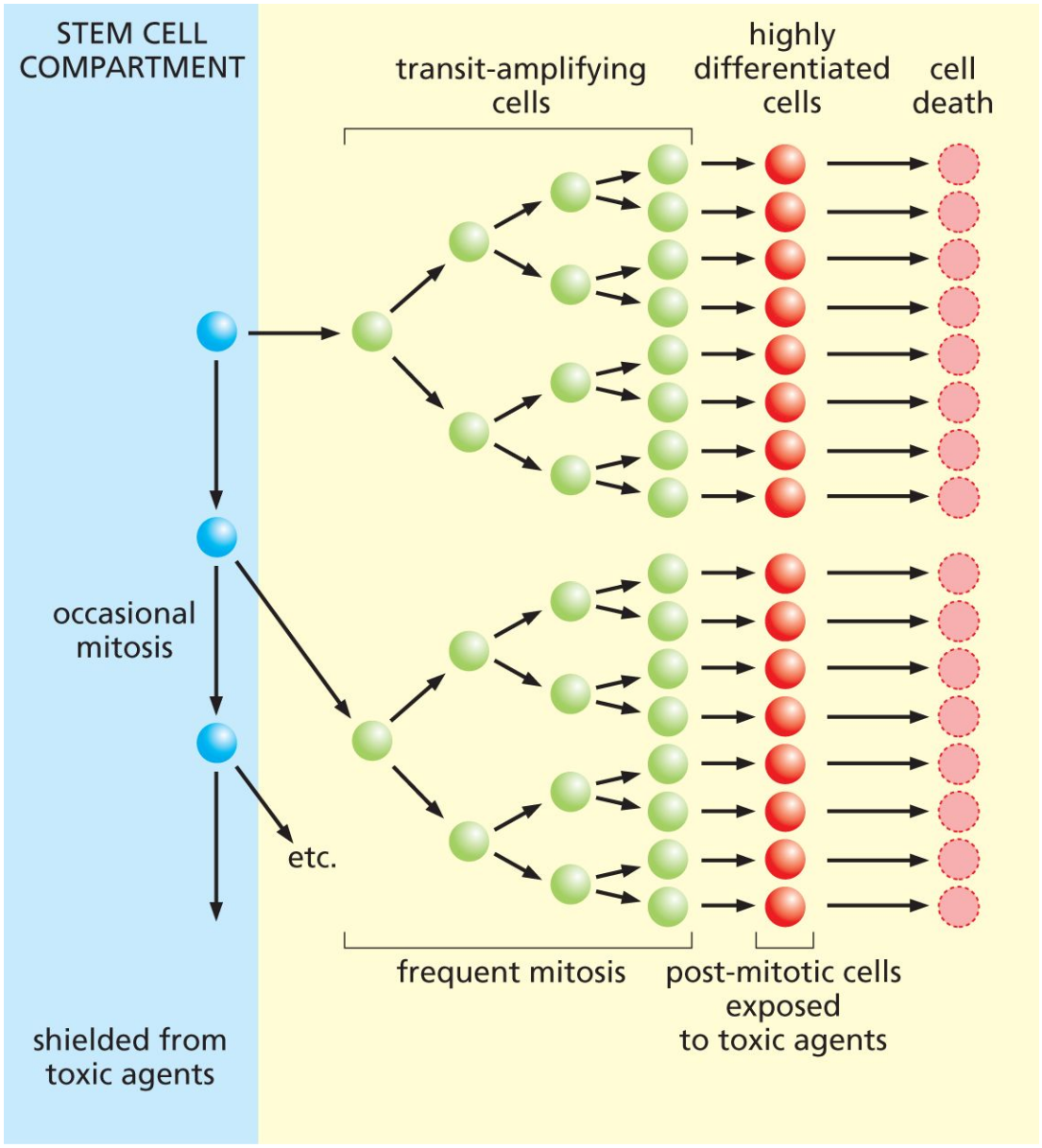
OceanofPDF.com

12.1 Tissues are organized to minimize the progressive accumulation of mutations

On several occasions throughout this book, we have described the effects of carcinogens and tumor promoters on target cells throughout the body. However, the specific biological identities of these target cells have never been spelled out. As it turns out, knowledge of the nature of these cells is critical to understanding how genome integrity is maintained and how it breaks down. To explore the topic of genome integrity, we need to delve into the organization of tissues and the types of cells that form them. Their biological behavior furnishes us with insights into the strategies that tissues and cells exploit to minimize the accumulation of genetic lesions.

As described earlier (see Section 11.7), a common scheme seems to explain the construction and maintenance of many tissues throughout the body. Within each tissue, a relatively small number of cells populate its stem cell compartment. These self-renewing cells may constitute a minute fraction of the entire cell population within a tissue, sometimes as few as 0.1 to 1% of the total. In truth, in most tissues these numbers represent nothing more than poorly informed guesses. Because stem cells are present in very small numbers, are not particularly distinctive in appearance, and are often scattered among other cell types within tissues, they can be difficult to identify and study. Consequently, much of what is described below rests on inference rather than on direct observation of stem cells and their properties.

As is the case with stem cells of tumors (see Section 11.7), the stem cells in a normal tissue are self-renewing, because at least one of the two daughters of a dividing stem cell will retain the phenotype exhibited by the mother cell prior to cell division (see Figure 11.20). In many tissues, the second daughter cell and its transit-amplifying descendants will pass through a substantial number of cell divisions before entering into a post-mitotic, highly differentiated state (see Sidebar 11.6). These actively dividing cells, which serve as intermediates between a stem cell and its differentiated descendants, generate large flocks of differentiated descendants of the second daughter cell that will be discarded sooner or later, only to be replaced by newly minted differentiated cells (**Figure 12.1**). Implicit in what follows is a simple idea: because the lineage of stem cells represents the only stable repository of genetic information within a tissue, the genomes of stem cells must be protected as much as possible from corruption.



An illustration of how the stem cell genome remains protected. A stem cell is shown undergoing occasional division, each time producing a daughter stem cell that remains within the stem cell compartment and a transit-amplifying cell that leaves it. The transit-amplifying cells multiply through frequent mitosis, eventually producing highly differentiated cells that are exposed to toxic agents post-mitosis, causing cell death. All the while, the line of stem cells continues and remains within the stem cell compartment, where it is shielded from toxic agents.

Figure 12.1 Tissue organization and protection of the stem cell genome The organization of many epithelial tissues seems to conform to the scheme shown here. Each stem cell (*blue*) divides only occasionally in an asymmetric fashion to

generate a new stem cell daughter and a transit-amplifying daughter. These stem cells are often shielded anatomically from toxic agents. The transit-amplifying cells (*green*) undergo repeated rounds of growth and division, expanding their populations exponentially. Eventually, the products of these cell divisions undergo further differentiation into post-mitotic, highly differentiated cells (*red*). The highly differentiated cells, which are often in direct contact with various toxic agents, are shed with some frequency; hence, any mutant alleles that arise in these cells will be lost, sooner or later, from the tissue. This means that the genomes of stem cells are often protected through two mechanisms: infrequent cell division and an anatomical barrier that blocks noxious, potentially mutagenic influences.

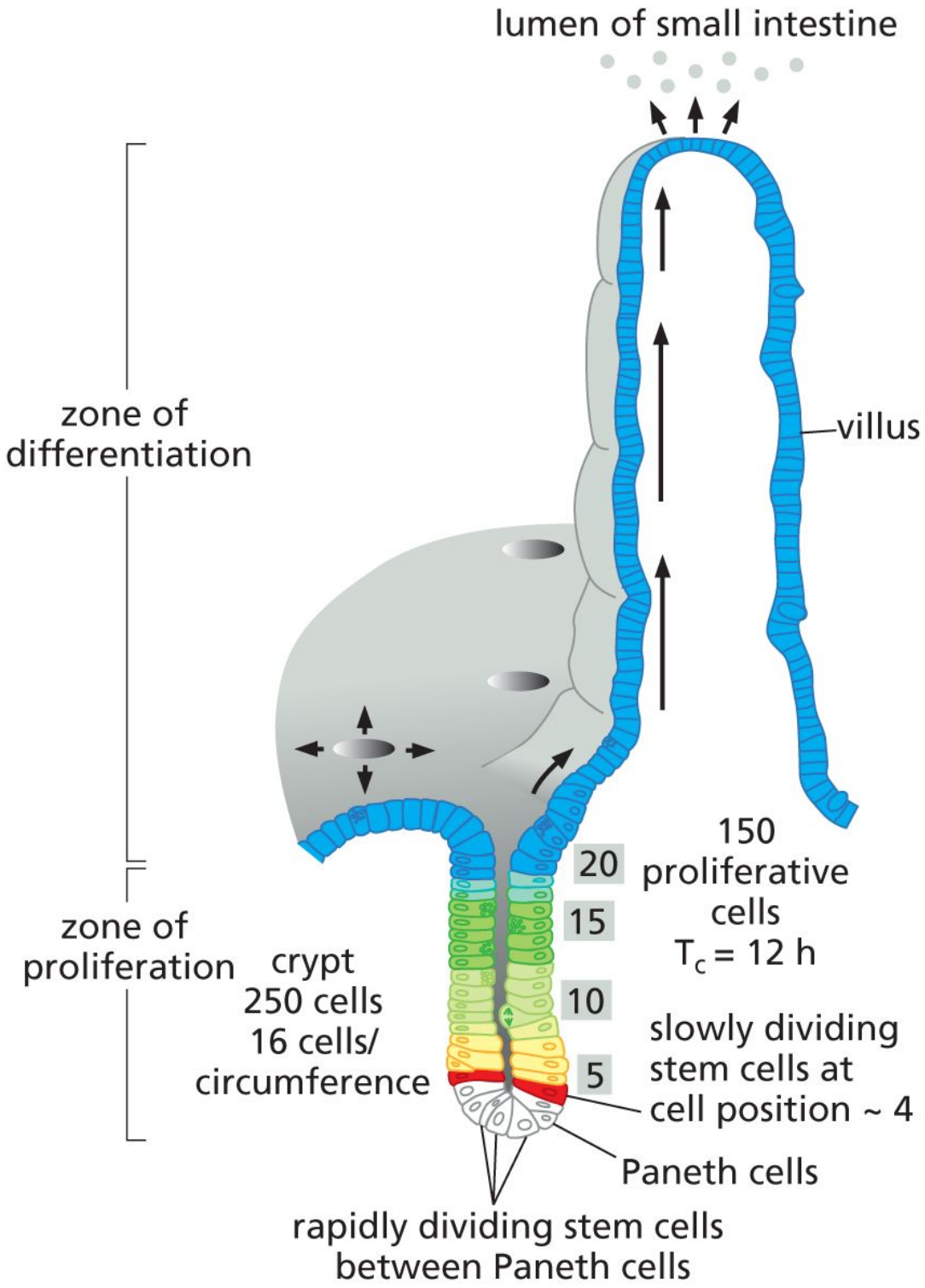
The exponential increase in the number of transit-amplifying cells prior to end-stage differentiation means that a stem cell needs to divide only on rare occasion in order to maintain a large pool of end-stage, highly differentiated cells in a tissue. In the colonic crypts, for example, it is estimated that a single stem cell division ultimately results in the formation of as many as 32 differentiated enterocytes (see Figure 7.21). Therefore, while one might think that stem cells participate in continual cycles of growth and division, the reality is usually much different: the transit-amplifying cells create the great bulk of mitotic activity in highly proliferative tissues. Because the DNA replication occurring during each cell cycle is inherently prone to making errors, this scheme reduces the risk that mutations will accumulate in the genomes of the long-lived cells within a tissue, that is, its stem cells. Conversely, although the mitotically active transit-amplifying cells may indeed accumulate mutations, their mutant descendants will be discarded sooner or later, reducing the accumulation of mutant cells in the tissue as a whole.

In many epithelial tissues, the differentiated epithelial cells are especially vulnerable to genetic damage of a different origin, because they form cell sheets that line the walls of various ducts and cavities that often contain toxic substances. In the cases of the colon and the bile duct, the epithelial cells confront fecal contents and highly corrosive bile, respectively. The cells lining the alveoli in the lungs cope every day with particulates and pollutants in the air. The keratinocytes in our skin are exposed directly to the outside world and hence are susceptible to sustaining several types of damage, including those inflicted by ultraviolet radiation and various toxic chemicals.

The differentiated end-stage cells (see Figure 12.1) in these and other tissues have, as stated, a finite lifetime and are discarded sooner or later. The epithelial cells in the colon live for 5 to 7 days before they are induced to enter apoptosis and are sloughed off into the lumen of the intestine. The keratinocytes in our skin die within 20 to 30 days of being formed and are shed continually in small flakes of dead skin (see, for example, Figure 2.5A). Once again, any genetic damage they have sustained will disappear with them. (To be sure, some cell types are shed for a different reason: they

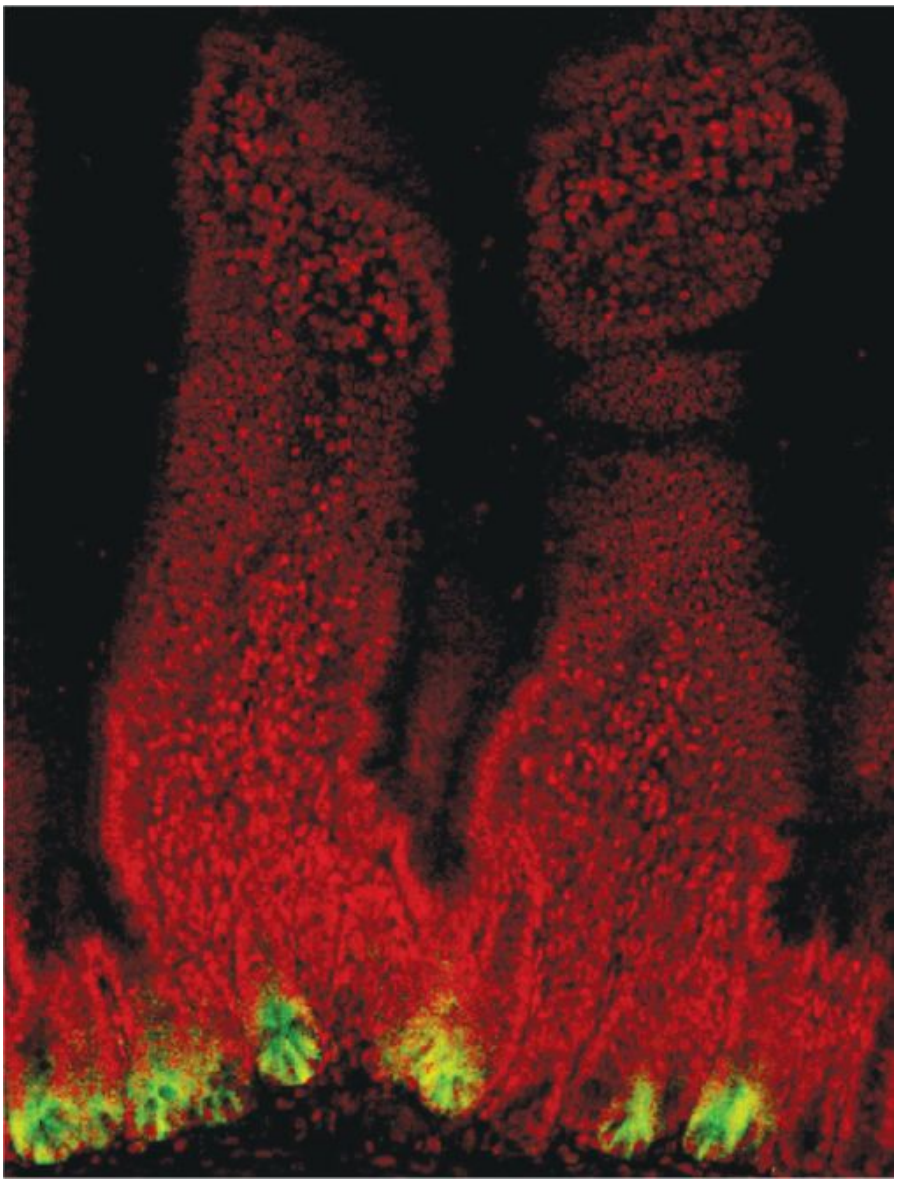
may simply age and lose their viability, being worn out from carrying out the active business of the tissue. For example, red blood cells have an average lifetime of approximately 120 days, after which they are scavenged by the spleen, broken down, and their contents recycled or excreted.)

These schemes explain why, in the context of intestinal function, loss of the ability of a tissue to discard its more differentiated cells can create the seeds of future malignancy (see Section 7.10). In fact, the genomes of stem cells in the small intestine and the colon are also protected in an entirely different biological strategy. Recall that the stem cells in the gut are embedded deep within the crypts (**Figure 12.2A and B**). There they are well out of harm's way, being shielded from the mutagenic contents of the intestinal lumen by a thick layer of mucus secreted by other cells in the crypt. This mucus, which is formed from highly glycosylated proteins termed mucins, creates a jelly-like barrier that prevents the contents of the intestinal lumen from penetrating deep into the crypt and illustrates yet another evolutionary strategy for minimizing mutations in stem cells, namely, anatomically shielding them from the actions of toxins, including carcinogens. (Indeed, mice that have been genetically deprived of the gene encoding Muc2, the most abundant gastrointestinal mucin, are prone to develop adenomas in the small intestine, many of which progress to adenocarcinomas.) This physical barrier confers further protection on the genomes of stem cells, complementing the dynamics described above, which ensures that enterocytes that may have sustained mutations are continuously flushed out of the crypts and eliminated in less than a week (Figure 12.2C).



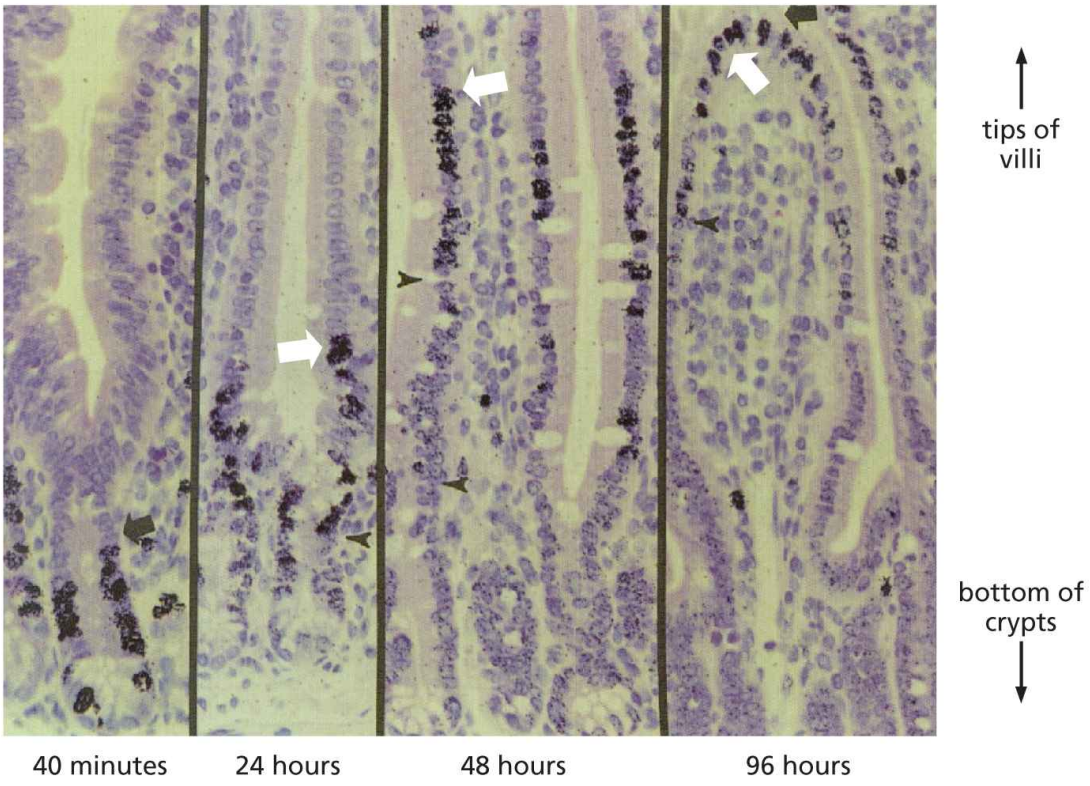
A diagram of a piece of small intestine, showing one crypt and an adjacent villus in cross section. The crypt contains about 250 cells total and is 16 cells in circumference. At the bottom are rapidly dividing stem cells between Paneth cells. At the base of the side wall, approximately at cell position 4, are

slowly dividing stem cells. Cell positions 5 through 15 are occupied by highly proliferative cells that have a doubling time of roughly 12 hours. From the bottom of the crypt to the top of these cells is called the zone of proliferation. Above that is the zone of differentiation. It includes the hollow, thin-walled villus, which rises up toward the small intestinal lumen. Cells are constantly migrating upward in the villus and being shed off the top.
(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image of villi appearing like deep red plumes of smoke rising up from a bed of yellow green flames. The spots of yellow green are clusters of stem cells.

(B)



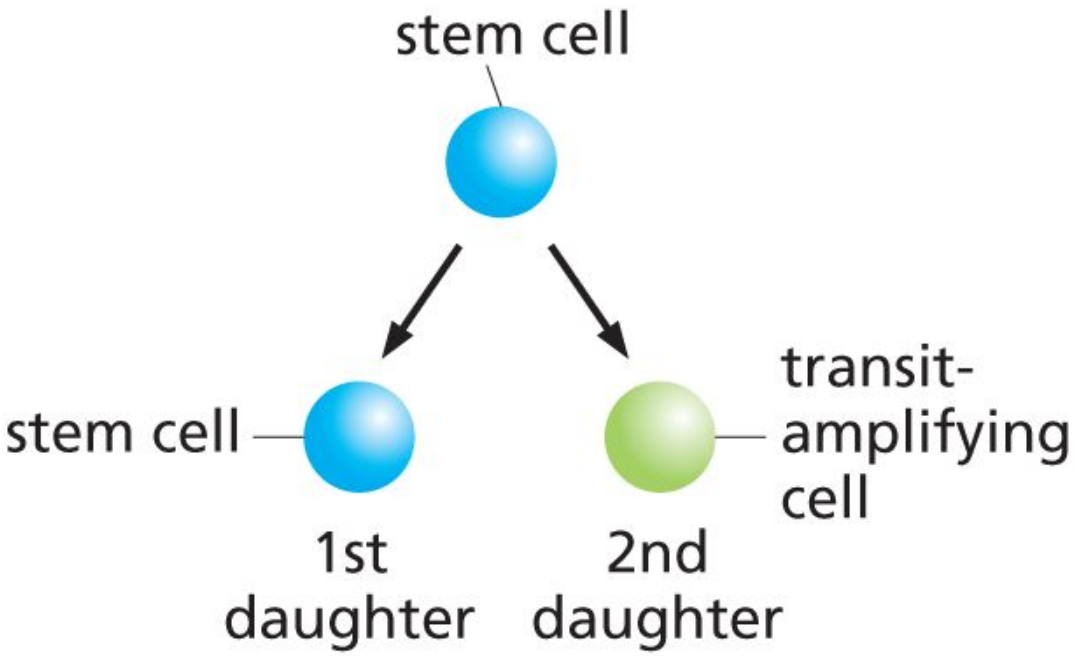
Four autoradiography images, capturing different moments in time: 40 minutes, 24 hours, 48 hours, and 96 hours. They all show villi in side view and document the transit-amplifying cells as dark grains migrating from the bottoms of villi to the tops.

(C)

Figure 12.2 Stem cells and the organization of gastrointestinal crypts (A) Boxed numbers indicate the position of individual enterocytes counting in cell diameters from the bottom of the crypt. Four to six very slowly cycling stem cells (*red*) are located 4–5 cell diameters from the bottom of the crypts. In addition, more rapidly cycling stem cells are found interspersed among the Paneth cells at the bottom of the crypts (*not shown*). Both groups of stem cells are shielded from the contents of the small intestine by their location and by mucus that prevents fluids in the intestinal lumen from entering the crypt. The stem cells spawn a large number (~150) of highly proliferative transit-amplifying cells (*yellow, green*), which divide every 12 hours or so. Their division eventually yields approximately 3500 enterocytes (*blue*), which cover the finger-like villus. The enterocytes are continuously migrating toward the tip of the villus, where they undergo apoptosis and are shed into the lumen of the small intestine (*gray*). (B) The Lgr5 protein has

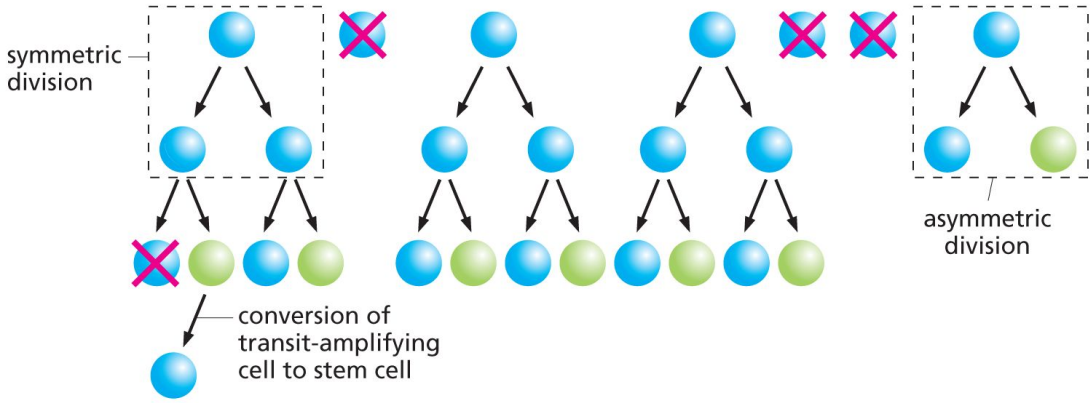
been found to be a highly useful marker for identifying stem cells in a number of tissues. Located in the bottoms of the crypts of the mouse small intestine (duodenum), these cells are labeled here by a transgene that fuses the coding region of the Lgr5 gene with a sequence encoding green fluorescent protein (GFP, *green*). Other evidence, not shown here, points to the presence of a second stem cell population located at 4 cell diameters (from the crypt bottom) that is normally relatively quiescent but becomes mitotically active in response to tissue injury that requires replacement of the $Lgr5^+$ cells. (C) The emigration of transit-amplifying cells from the crypts of the small intestine can be tracked by injecting a dose of ^{3}H-thymidine into a mouse and following the incorporation of this radiolabel into DNA by autoradiography; radioactive decay is indicated by dark silver grains. Seen here are the cells in the crypts of the duodenum of the mouse at the indicated times after injection of the ^{3}H-thymidine. Cells that multiplied only a small number of times after initial incorporation of ^{3}H-thymidine remain heavily labeled (*broad arrows*), while the great majority underwent multiple additional divisions and therefore exhibit diluted radiolabeling. After four days, virtually all cells carrying genomes that were synthesized at the beginning of the experiment have moved out of the crypts to the tips of the villi. (A, courtesy of C.S. Potten. B, courtesy of N. Barker and H. Clevers. C, from C.S. Potten, *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci.* 353:821–830, 1998. With permission from the Royal Society.)

In theory, the stem cell compartment within a tissue has an inexhaustible ability to generate differentiated progeny without ever suffering depletion. However, almost inevitably, a stem cell will be lost through one or another mishap. This gap in the ranks must be filled by other stem cells. More specifically, both daughters of a surviving stem cell will need to retain the phenotype of their mother, which therefore undergoes a symmetrical division (**Figure 12.3**). Alternatively, in certain tissues, loss of critical stem cells may trigger the dedifferentiation of transit-amplifying cells, which reverse their earlier exit from the stem cell compartment (see Figure 11.20C).



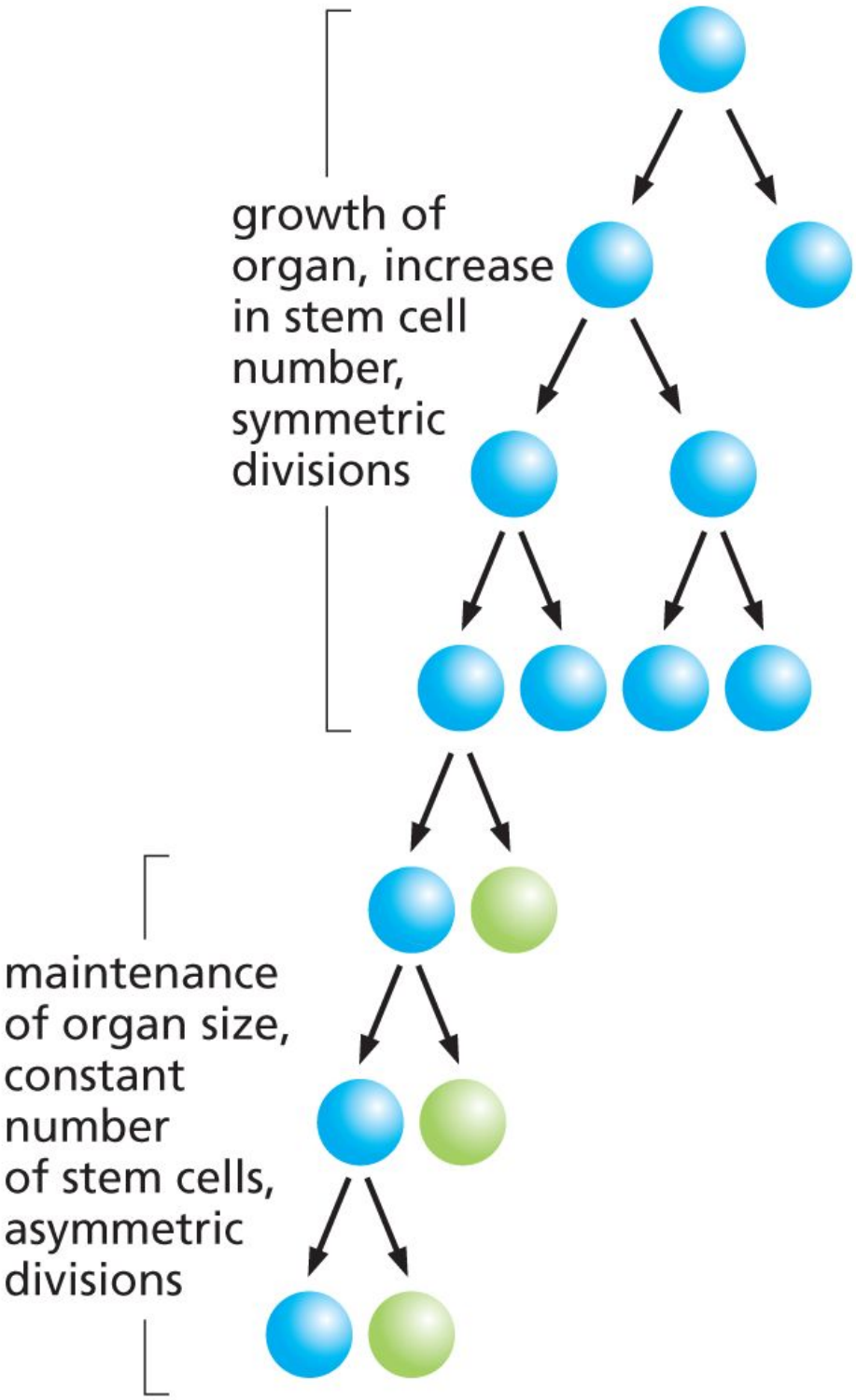
Asymmetric division of a stem cell. The first daughter cell is also a stem cell. The second daughter cell is a transit-amplifying cell.

(A)



Three generations of cells. The first consists of 7 stem cells, of which 3 die without reproducing. Of the 4 that reproduce, 1 undergoes asymmetric division to produce one stem cell and one transit-amplifying cell in the second generation, while the other 3 under symmetric division to produce 2 stem cells in the second generation, creating 7 stems cells and 1 transit-amplifying cell. All 7 stem cells of the second generation survive. 6 of the 7 stem cells in this generation divide asymmetrically to each produce one stem cell and one transit-amplifying cell in the third generation. One of the stem cells in the

third generation dies. Its sister cell, initially a transit-amplifying cell, converts into a stem cell.
(B)



A series of cell divisions, beginning with a single stem cell, divided into two phases: organ growth and size maintenance. In organ growth, cells divide symmetrically, producing more stem cells. In this example, it lasts four generations. This is followed by size maintenance, in which three generations of stem cells divide asymmetrically, producing one stem cell and one transit-amplifying cell each. The number of stem cells remains constant and the organ is maintained in size.

(C)

Figure 12.3 Asymmetric and symmetric divisions of stem cells (A) In general, during normal tissue function, it appears that a stem cell will usually divide asymmetrically, with one of its daughters remaining a stem cell (*blue*) and the other (*green*) proceeding to spawn a flock of transit-amplifying cells (*not shown*; see Figure 12.1). (B) In the event that several stem cells in a tissue are lost, some of the surviving stem cells may divide symmetrically in order to re-populate the stem cell pool. As seen here, three stem cells have been lost (*red crosses, top row*) from a pool of seven. The subsequent symmetric divisions undertaken by the surviving stem cells regenerate the original population size of the stem cell pool. Alternatively, the loss of a stem cell (*red cross, third row*) may cause its transit-amplifying sister to revert back to a stem cell (*bottom*). (C) Similarly, when an organ is growing, the number of stem cells must increase proportionately, requiring some stem cells to undergo symmetric divisions.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

compartment
: Physical or virtual functional space that contains all cells of a given type within a tissue, e.g., a stem cell compartment.

enterocyte
: Epithelial cell lining the luminal wall of the gastrointestinal tract or associated structures such as villi.

mucin
: Member of a family of heavily glycosylated glycoproteins that are secreted by luminal cells in a variety of epithelial tissues and form gel-like aggregates in order to lubricate or erect barriers to protect the luminal and underlying epithelial cell layers.

OceanofPDF.com

12.2 The properties of stem cells make them good candidates to be cells-of-origin of cancer

The properties of the intestinal cells (see Figure 12.2) also provide important clues about the identities of the cells that are common targets of carcinogenesis. Actually, we already have come across evidence that points to the central role of long-lived cells in the process of carcinogenesis. In Section 11.11, we read about experimental protocols used to induce skin cancer in mice. One such protocol involved painting a patch of skin with an initiating agent, allowing the patch to remain untouched for some months, and then painting it repeatedly with TPA, a potent skin tumor promoter. Cells that had been exposed to the initiating carcinogen “remembered” the earlier exposure one year later by undergoing proliferation and forming a skin papilloma in the presence of the promoter. In the skin, as in many other epithelial tissues, the long-lived cells are those in the stem cell compartment.

Provocatively, the number of skin papillomas and carcinomas induced by the mouse skin carcinogenesis protocol (see Figure 11.30) is not reduced if the mouse skin is treated with 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) shortly after being exposed to a mutagenic initiating agent. Because 5-FU selectively kills actively cycling cells, this indicates that the cell targeted by carcinogenic mutagens during initiation is not in the active cell cycle at the time of initiation and shortly thereafter, lending weight to the notion that the target for initiation is a cell type that divides only occasionally.

Analyses of several types of leukemia suggest that the initial targets of carcinogenesis in the hematopoietic system are also stem cells. The most dramatic example is provided by chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). As described earlier, the Philadelphia (Ph^1) chromosome, which results from a

reciprocal chromosomal translocation that fuses the *BCR* and *ABL* genes (see Section 4.5), is observed in almost all cases of CML. Extensive evidence points to this particular translocation as the genetic lesion that initiates this disease.

A number of distinct hematopoietic cell types within a CML patient may carry the Ph^1 chromosome. Included are lymphoid cells (both B and T lymphocytes), as well as cells of the myeloid lineage (including neutrophils, granulocytes, the megakaryocyte precursors of platelets, and erythrocytes). This finding provides compelling evidence that the cell type in which the translocation is harbored is the common progenitor of all of these hematopoietic cell lineages, specifically the pluripotent stem cell that serves as the precursor for many types of hematopoietic cells (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.1**). Like a variety of other stem cells, this hematopoietic stem cell (HSC) is thought to have a very long lifetime in the hematopoietic system, more specifically in the bone marrow. In the particular case of CML, a stem cell that has suffered a critical mutation—formation of the Ph^1 chromosome—retains the option to dispatch its progeny into a number of distinct hematopoietic cell lineages. Yet other indications that stem cells are targets for tumor formation come from other types of hematopoietic disorders (**Sidebar 12.1**). Although stem cells play an important role in the origins of many cancers, current evidence supports the candidacy of other cells within tissues as also being important players in tumor initiation (**Sidebar 12.2**).

Sidebar 12.1 Blocked differentiation is a frequent theme in the development of hematopoietic malignancies

Studies of human cancer have revealed dozens of examples of malignancies in which inhibition of differentiation favors the appearance of neoplasia. Possibly the first to be defined genetically involved the avian erythroblastosis virus, a retrovirus that encodes two oncoproteins: its erbB oncogene specifies a constitutively active version of the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor (see Section 5.4), which drives the proliferation of erythroblasts (precursors of red blood cells), and its erbA oncogene encodes a nuclear receptor (a homolog of the thyroid hormone receptor), which

inhibits differentiation of the hyperproliferating erythroblasts created by erbB. Similarly, in human acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), a large variety of genetic lesions found in the leukemic cells have been assigned to two functional classes: those that are required to drive the proliferation of the myeloid precursor cells, and others that are required in the same cells to block subsequent differentiation.

In the megakaryoblastic leukemias (a malignancy of platelet precursor cells) encountered with some frequency in Down syndrome patients, the gene encoding the GATA1 transcription factor is frequently found to be mutated, preventing the proper maturation and differentiation of these precursors of platelets. These few examples point to the notion that the exit of cells from stem cell compartments must be impeded in order for tumorigenesis to succeed.

Not addressed by these observations are the precise identities of the cellular targets of transformation. In many cases, the target is not likely to be the pluripotent hematopoietic stem cell, but instead one of its derivatives that is already committed to one or another lineage of differentiation. Such "committed progenitors" (see **Supplementary Sidebar 12.1**) normally may have significant (but limited) self-renewal capacity and are not yet fully differentiated, and thereby can be considered stem cells. Their transformation from normal to tumor stem cells involves, among other changes, an acquisition of unlimited self-renewal capability.

Compelling observations of the role of stem cells in cancer derive from transgenic mice in which the expression of an activated *ras* oncogene is limited to either the keratinocyte stem cells in the skin (which in this case are located in hair follicles) or the keratinocytes that have begun to enter into a terminally differentiated state. When the transgene directs expression of the *ras* oncogene in the stem cells, the mice develop malignant carcinomas. In contrast, when the same oncogene is expressed in the differentiating keratinocytes, benign papillomas are formed and these tend to regress.

Sidebar 12.2 An alternative target of cancer-driving mutations

Most current evidence points clearly to stem cells as being direct targets of the mutations driving tumor initiation and progression. There is, however, an alternative mechanistic model and an alternative set of cells that may often serve as the cellular targets of cancer-forming mutations. This newer thinking comes from extensive evidence that transit-amplifying/progenitor cells can dedifferentiate under certain circumstance and thus re-enter the stem cell pool as mentioned above and as is illustrated in Figure 11.20C. Such dedifferentiation may be triggered, for example, if the pool of stem cells within a stem-cell niche has been depleted for various reasons, requiring replenishment, which can accomplished by dedifferentiation. This notion was explored briefly in Sidebar 11.7. In fact, there are several reasons that transit-amplifying cells are more attractive candidates for sustaining mutations than are stem cells, simply because there are usually far more of them in a tissue, increasing proportionately the chance that a mutation will hit their compartment rather than that of the stem cell. In addition, the transit-amplifying cells, because of their high rate of proliferation, often generate the lion's share of the mitotic activity; if errors in cell proliferation cause mutational events, they are more likely to target these cells, rather than stem cells. Importantly, by dedifferentiating, a mutant transit-amplifying cell can introduce a mutant allele back into the stem cell pool, thereby ensuring the perpetuation of its recently acquired mutation back in the stem cell niche. Indeed, it may be that many of the reported experimental demonstrations of stem cells as direct targets of oncogenic mutations may have ignored the bidirectional interconversions between stem cells and transit-amplifying cells and thus the possibility of this alternative source of cancer-associated mutant genomes. In many tissues, these two alternative mechanisms of cancer-driving mutagenesis remain unresolved experimentally.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

pluripotent

Referring to the ability of a stem cell to generate progeny that can participate in the formation of all of the tissues of an embryo except the extraembryonic membranes. *See also* **multipotent**, **totipotent**.

OceanofPDF.com

12.3 Apoptosis, drug pumps, and DNA replication quality control mechanisms offer tissues a way to minimize the accumulation of mutant preneoplastic cells

The important role played by normal stem cells as targets for transformation requires that the genomes of these cells must be protected by whatever biological and biochemical strategies these cells and the tissues around them can muster. We have already come across two such strategies: the relatively infrequent replication of stem cell DNA and the placement of stem cells in anatomically protected sites. Still, these mechanisms do not seem to suffice, so organisms have developed yet other strategies.

One protective mechanism is suggested by the responses of stem cells in the crypts to massive genetic damage. In the intestinal crypts of the mouse, stem cells that have suffered genetic damage inflicted by X-rays will rapidly initiate apoptosis rather than halt their proliferation and attempt to repair the damage. The motive here seems to be associated with the less-than-perfect nature of DNA repair. As we will learn later, the DNA repair apparatus is highly efficient but hardly perfect, and therefore a residue of unrepaired or incorrectly repaired lesions may remain in the chromosomal DNA. If the DNA replication machinery encounters such lesions, damaged DNA sequences may be copied and passed on as mutations to daughter cells, including those that will themselves become stem cells. So, rather than risk this outcome, stem cells in the mouse crypts are primed to activate apoptosis in response to DNA damage.

Yet another mechanism is suggested by a commonly used technique for separating stem cells from the bulk of cells in a tissue via fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS; see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.5**). Stem cells efficiently pump out certain fluorescent dye molecules, whereas these cells' differentiated derivatives do so much less actively. As a consequence, after exposure of cell populations to such dyes, the stem cells fluoresce much more weakly than all other cells in these populations. The active excretion of these fluorescent dye molecules results from the actions of a plasma membrane protein termed Mdr1 (multi-drug resistance 1), which was discovered because many cancer cells exploit it to pump out, and therefore acquire resistance to, chemotherapeutic drug molecules (see Figure 17.26). The unusually high levels of Mdr1 expressed by many types of stem cells seem to represent a strategy that

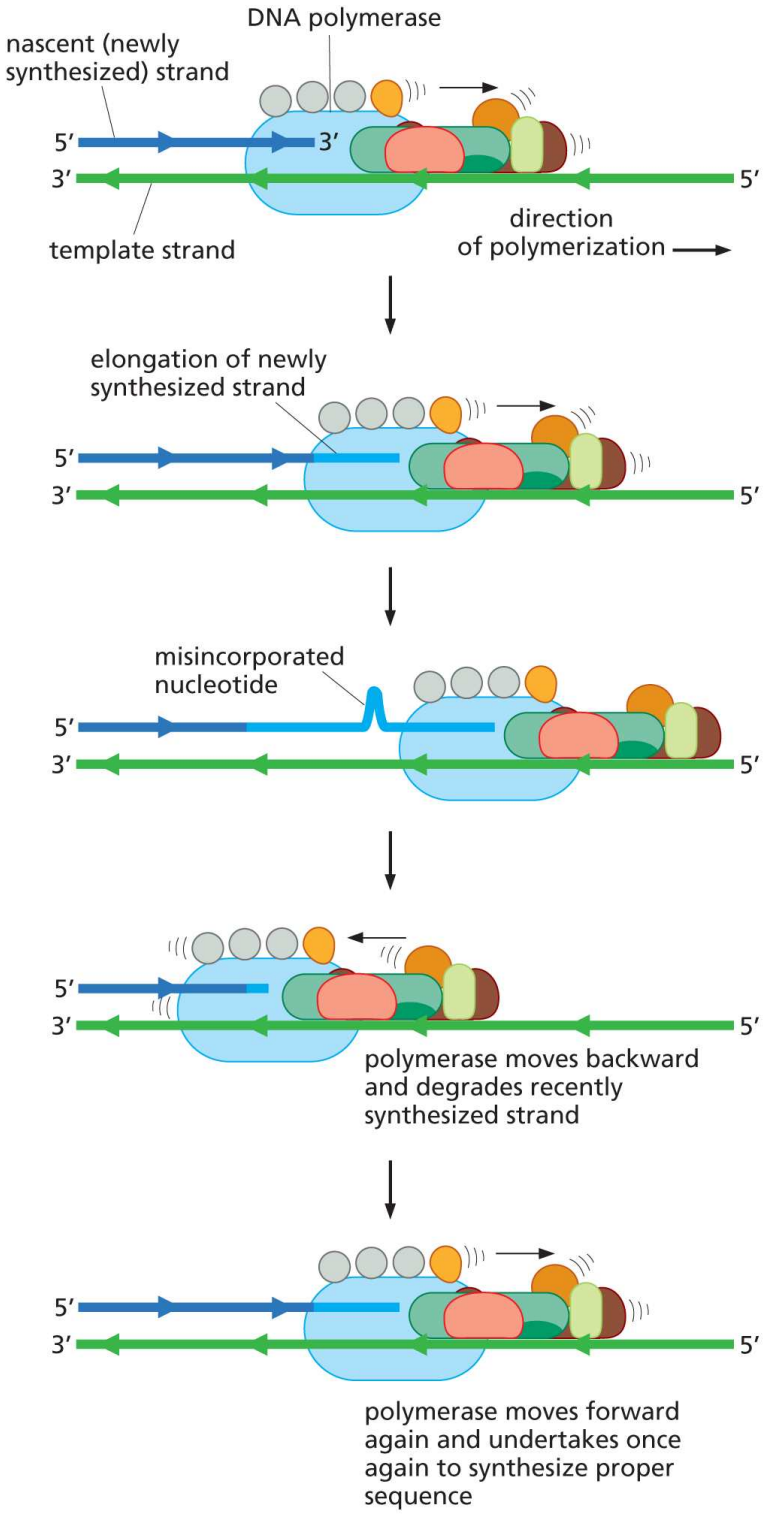
they use to protect their genomes from potentially mutagenic compounds that may have entered them from outside.

The design of stem cell compartments and the behavior of individual stem cells illustrate several biological strategies used by tissues to reduce the burden of accumulated somatic mutations. Importantly, these strategies represent only the first line of defense against genomic damage. The next line of defense, which is relevant to all cells in the body, is a biochemical one that depends on the ability of their various expressed proteins to recognize and repair damaged DNA molecules.

In fact, DNA molecules are under constant attack by a variety of agents and processes. For the sake of simplicity, we can place these mutagenic processes in three categories. First, the replication of DNA sequences by DNA polymerases during the S phase of the cell cycle is subject to a low but nonetheless significant level of error. Included among these errors are those generated when chemically altered nucleotide precursors are inadvertently incorporated into DNA in place of their normal counterparts. Second, even in the absence of misincorporation of such altered nucleotides, those that have already been incorporated into DNA molecules undergo chemical changes spontaneously; these changes often alter the base sequence and thus the information content of the DNA. Finally, DNA molecules may be attacked by various mutagenic agents, including those molecules generated endogenously by normal cell metabolism as well as agents of exogenous origin—chemical species and physical mutagens (X-rays and UV rays) that enter the body from outside. We will return to the latter two processes in the next sections.

The molecular machinery that is responsible for replicating almost all chromosomal DNA sequences has a remarkably low rate of error. The basic replication machinery in the cell nucleus is powered by the actions of three polymerases, pol-α, pol-δ, and pol-ε. (In all, at least 14 distinct DNA polymerase genes have been cataloged in the human genome; as will be apparent later, most of these are not involved in DNA replication per se but rather in the repair of damaged DNA molecules.)

A cell has two major strategies for detecting and removing the miscopied nucleotides arising during DNA replication. The first strategy rests with the DNA polymerases themselves, which are structurally complex assemblies composed of a number of distinct protein subunits. While they are advancing down single-strand DNA templates and extending nascent DNA strands in a 5′-to-3′ direction, DNA polymerases, such as pol-δ, continuously look backward, scanning the stretch of DNA that they have just polymerized; such monitoring is often called proofreading. Should a polymerase detect a copying error, it will use its associated 3′-to-5′ exonuclease activity to move backward and digest the DNA segment that it has just synthesized and then copy this segment once again, with the hope of a better outcome the second time (**Figure 12.4**).

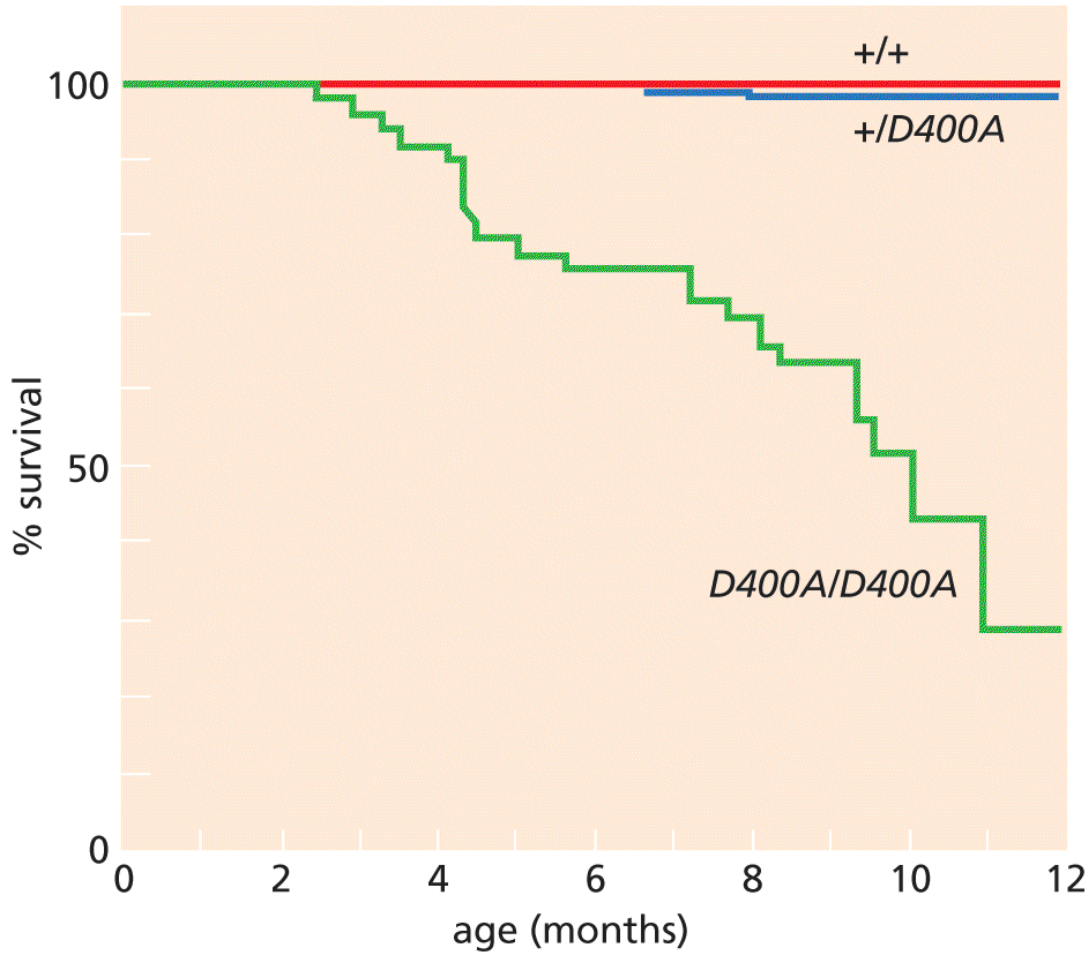


A five-step diagram depicting proofreading during D N A polymerization. In step 1, D N A polymerase is reading a template strand in the 3 prime to 5 prime direction and synthesizing a new strand in the 5 prime to 3 prime direction. In step 2, the newly synthesized strand is being elongated. In step 3, the newly added

segment has a misinterpreted nucleotide, resulting in a loop that does not properly attach to the template strand. In step 4, the polymerase moves backward and degrades the recently synthesized strand. In step 5, the polymerase moves forward again and undertakes once again to synthesize the proper sequence.

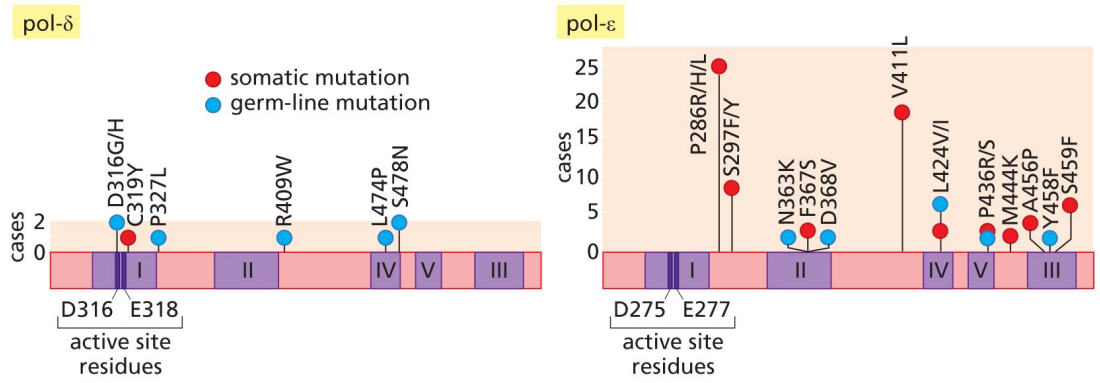
Figure 12.4 Proofreading by DNA polymerases A number of DNA polymerases have a proofreading ability that allows them to minimize the number of bases that are misincorporated and retained in the recently synthesized DNA strand. Thus, as a DNA polymerase extends a nascent strand (*dark blue*) in a 5′-to-3′ direction (moving rightward), it will use the existing 3′-OH of the nascent strand as the primer for further elongation (*light blue*). However, if a base has been misincorporated (*third drawing*), the DNA polymerase, which is continuously looking backward to check whether it has incorporated the correct bases in the growing DNA strand, can degrade in a 3′-to-5′ (leftward) direction the recently elongated strand (*fourth drawing*) and undertake once again to synthesize this stretch of nascent strand (*bottom drawing*).

The importance of this proofreading mechanism for the prevention of cancer has been illustrated dramatically by the creation of a mouse strain whose germ-line pol-δ–encoding gene has been subtly altered (by a point mutation encoding a single amino acid substitution). The resulting mutant pol-δ retains its ability to carry out lagging-strand DNA synthesis at the replication fork but has lost its 3′-to-5′ exonuclease activity; this loss eliminates its proofreading function. In a cohort of mice carrying the mutant *PolD* allele in a homozygous configuration, nearly half developed tumors by one year of age, whereas no tumors developed in a group consisting of twice as many heterozygous mice (**Figure 12.5A**). As discussed in Section 12.8, humans with germ-line mutations affecting the proofreading domains of pol-δ or pol-ε (responsible for leading-strand synthesis at the replication fork) are cancer prone (Figure 12.5B). Somatic mutations affecting the proofreading domains of these polymerases are observed in certain human cancers as well (see Figure 12.5B).



A line graph showing percent survival as a function of time. 100 percent of homozygous wild-type mice survived to age 12 months. Some heterozygous wild-type slash D400A mutation mice died, starting at 6 months, but over 95 percent survived to 12 months. Homozygous mutant mice began to die before 3 months, and continued dying steadily. Only about 30 percent survived to 12 months.

(A)



Two schematic of genes. The polymerase delta gene schematic shows five sites of germ-line mutations, one or two cases each, and one site of a single case of a somatic mutation. The polymerase epsilon gene schematic shows five sites of germ-line mutations, one occurring in 5 cases, and nine sites of somatic mutations, including one occurring in 25 cases and another occurring in 18 cases.

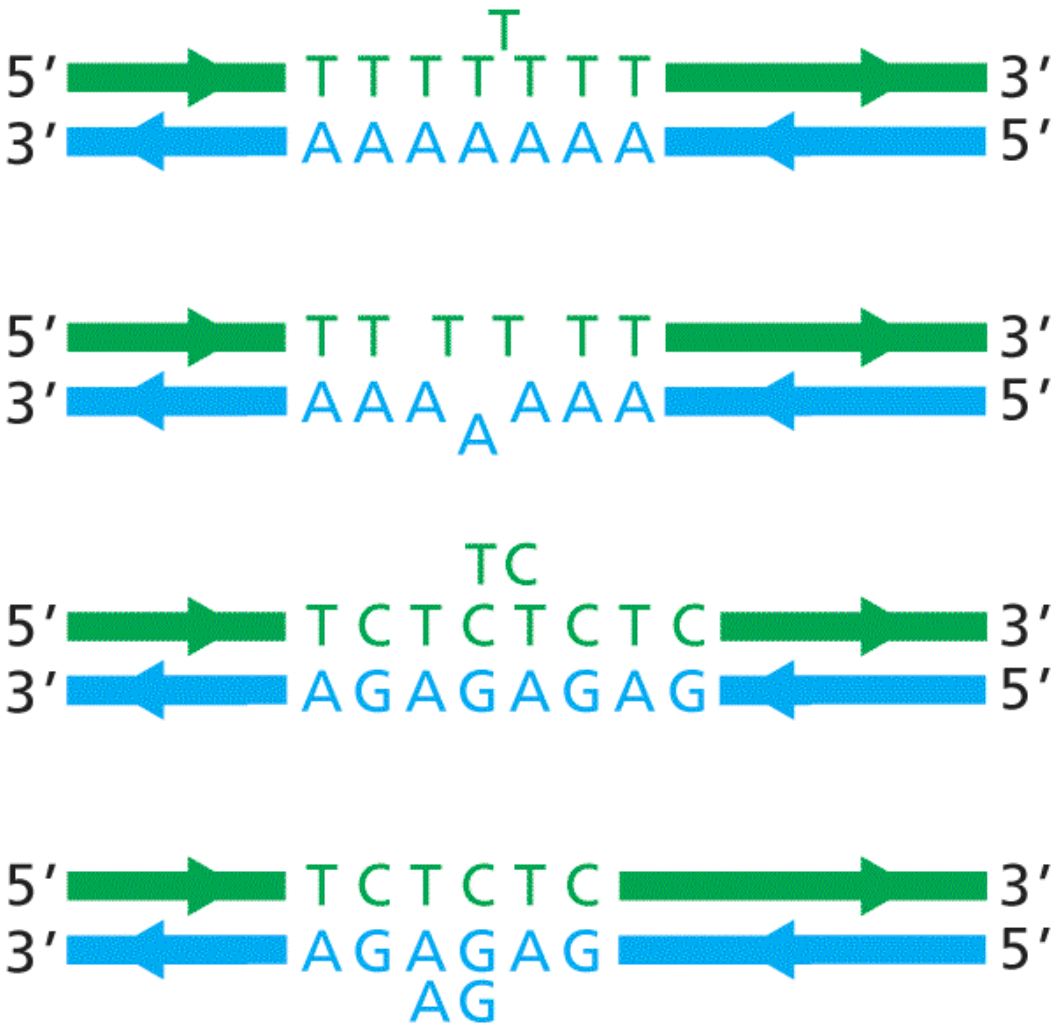
(B)

Figure 12.5 Mutations inproofreading domains of DNA polymerases promote cancer (A) A point mutation was introduced into the germ-line copy of the mouse gene encoding DNA polymerase δ (pol-δ), the mammalian DNA polymerase that is responsible for most lagging-strand synthesis. This mutation, termed D400A, alters the amino acid sequence in the proofreading domain of the polymerase by specifying the replacement of an aspartic acid by an alanine at residue position 400 of the polymerase molecule; the synthetic activity of the polymerase is unaffected by this mutation. Shown here is the fate of 53 wild-type mice (+/+), 97 heterozygotes (+/D400A), and 49 homozygous mutants (D400A/D400A). Deaths of the mutant homozygotes were all a result of malignancies; these included lymphomas, squamous cell carcinomas of the skin, lung carcinomas, and several other types of cancer that occurred less frequently. Two of the heterozygotes died from causes that were unrelated to cancer, whereas the homozygous wild-type mice all survived to the age of one year. (The cooperating partner of pol-δ, called pol-ε, carries out leading-strand synthesis and proofreading; when it is similarly mutated, mice develop largely carcinomas of the small intestine.) (B) Mutations in the human pol-δ and pol-ε genes occur both in the germline in individuals with inherited cancer predispositions and somatically in certain cancer types. The exonuclease domains of both polymerases are shown with the five conserved exonuclease motifs marked by Roman numerals (I–V) along with key active site residues. Residues found mutated in the germ line (denoted by *blue circles*) or somatically (*red circles*) are indicated. In each of the indicated point mutations, the letter indicating the wild-type amino acid precedes the codon number and the

altered residue follows it. As indicated by the number of reported cases shown, pol-ε mutations are more common. Germ line and somatic mutations in the proofreading domains of these polymerases are associated with colon and endometrial cancers as well as other cancers at lower frequency. Tumors harboring these mutations exhibit “ultra-mutated” genomes with more than 100 mutations detected per megabase of DNA sequenced. (A, from R.E. Goldsby et al., *Nat. Med.* 7:638–639, 2001. B, from E. Rayner et al., *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 16: 71–81, 2016. Both with permission from Nature.)

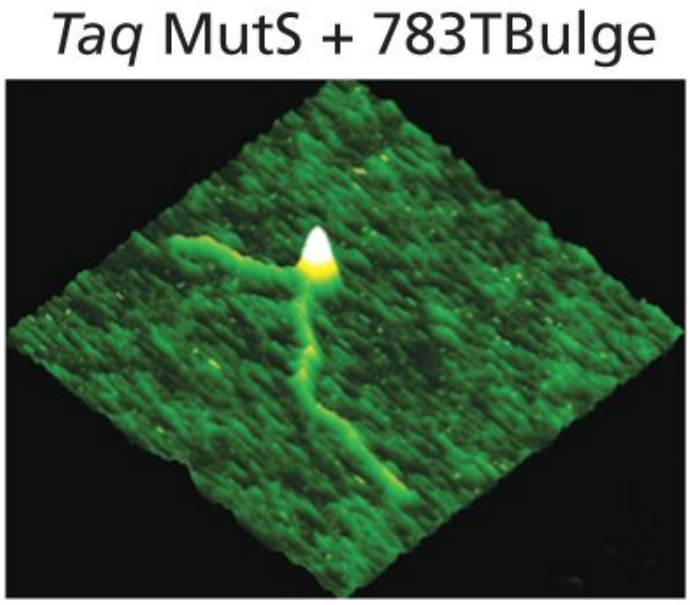
These observations demonstrate that the maintenance of wild-type genomic sequences, in this case by two DNA polymerases, represents a critical line of defense against the onset of cancer. Moreover, for us, these observations are the first of many indications that the mutations leading to cancer may arise through endogenous processes associated with normal cellular proliferation rather than being triggered exclusively by exposure to exogenous carcinogenic agents.

Augmenting the DNA polymerases and their proofreading activities is a complex set of mismatch repair (MMR) enzymes. These enzymes monitor recently synthesized DNA in order to detect miscopied DNA sequences that have been overlooked by the proofreading mechanisms of the DNA polymerases described above. The actions of the MMR system become especially critical in regions of the DNA that carry repeated sequences. These sequence blocks include simple mononucleotide repeats (such as AAAAAAA), dinucleotide repeats (such as AGAGAGAG), and repeats of greater sequence complexity. In instances of strand slippage, which occurs in the replication fork when the parental and nascent strands slip out of proper alignment, DNA polymerases appear to occasionally “stutter” while copying these repeats, resulting in incorporation of longer or shorter versions of the repeats into the newly formed daughter strands (**Figure 12.6**). Thus, the sequence AAAAAAA, that is, A_7, might well cause a polymerase to synthesize a T_6 or T_8 sequence in the complementary strand. The resulting insertions or deletions may elude detection by the proofreading components of the DNA polymerases, making them prime targets for recognition and repair by the MMR machinery.



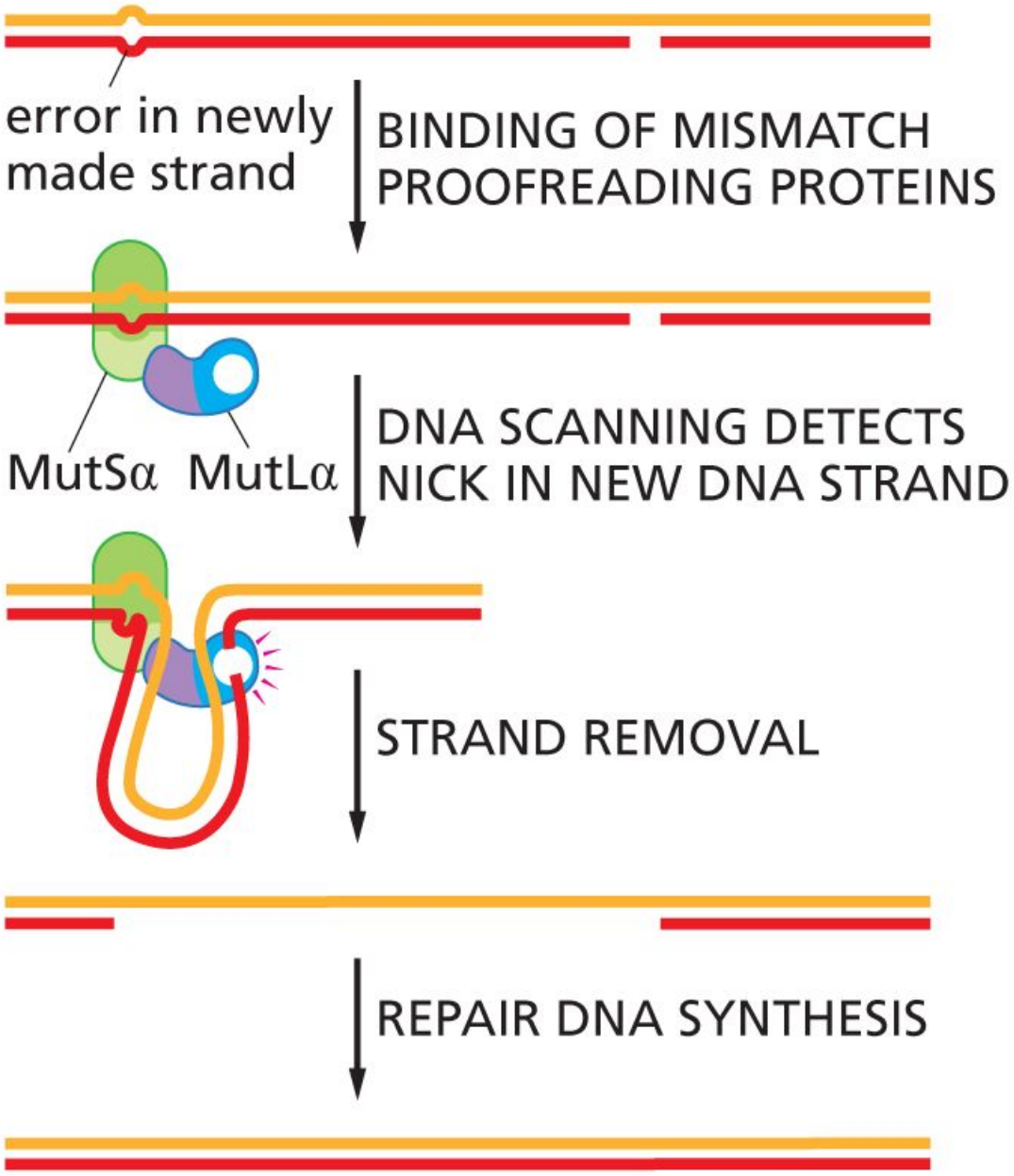
Illustrations of four copying errors. First, a string of 7 ayze may get copied as a string of 8 tees, with an extra tee that forms an unattached loop. Second, a string of 7 ayze may get copied as a string of 6 tees, leaving one extra “A” in the template strand as an unattached loop. The third and fourth examples are similar, but the sequence to be copied is alternating ayze and jeeze, and the errors involve either an extra tee see or an extra see gee.

(A)



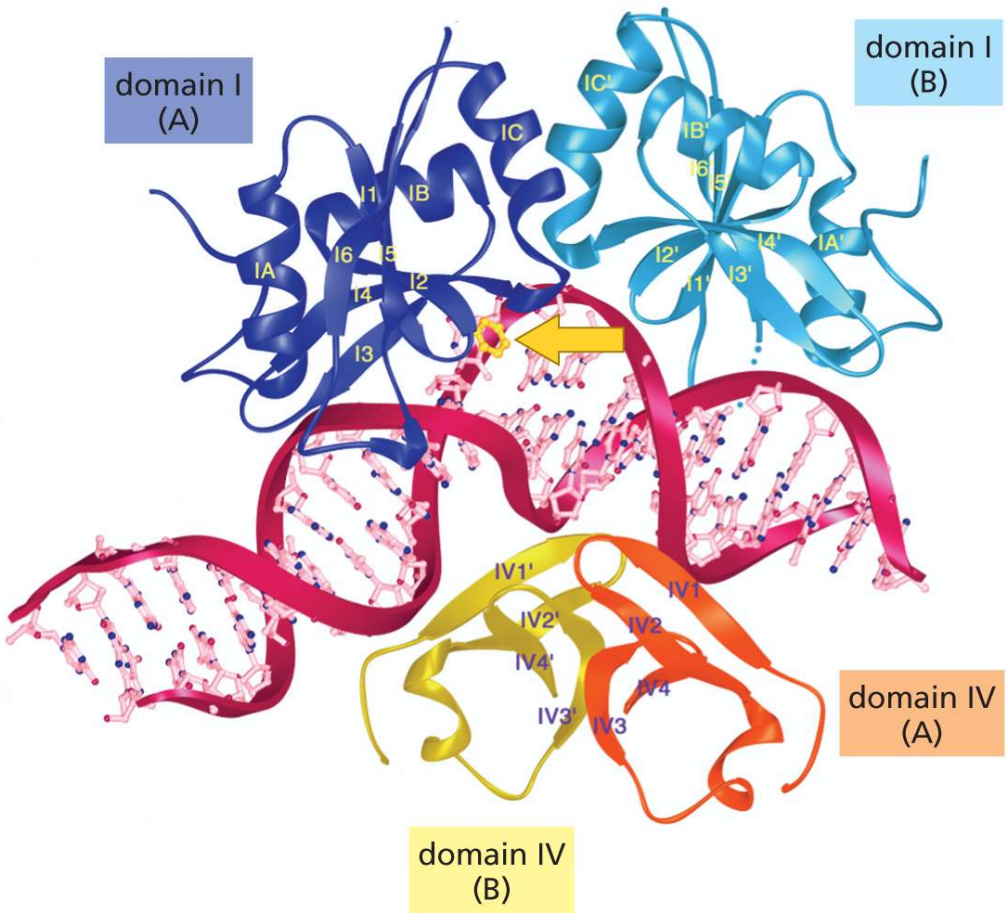
A micrograph showing a segment of double-stranded D N A from which a white toothlike spur appears to jut upward.

(B)



A five-step diagram. Step 1 shows an error in a newly made double strand, where an error has produced a location where the two strands do not attach. Also visible, to the right, is a short break in the newly made strand. After BINDING OF the MISMATCH site by the PROOFREADING PROTEIN M u t S alpha, the associated protein M u t L alpha removes the strand segment from the break back to the mismatch site. A new strand segment is then synthesized to repair this stretch of the D N A.

(C)



A partial ribbon diagram of an M u t S protein. Subunits A and B, each with a domain 1 and a domain 4, overlie each other in an X shape across a section of misformed double stranded D N A.

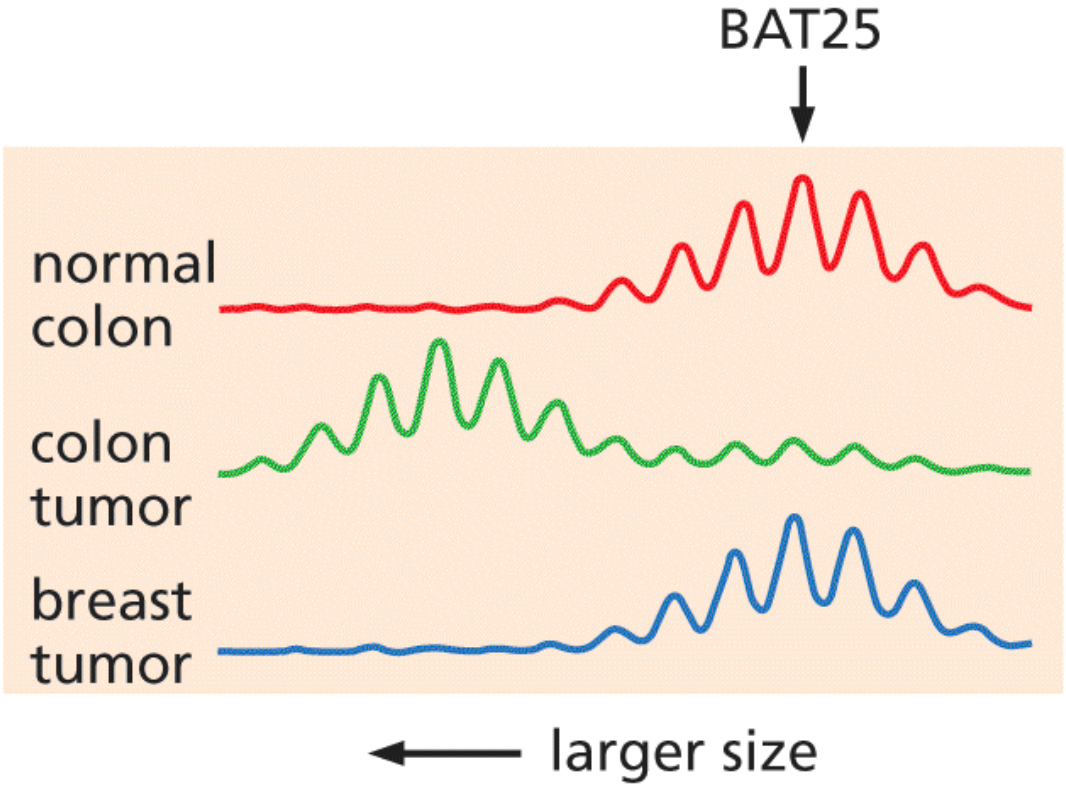
(D)

Figure 12.6 DNA polymerase errors and mismatch repair (A) The DNA polymerases, notably pol-δ, occasionally "stutter," or skip a base when copying a repeating sequence of DNA (e.g., a microsatellite sequence) in the template strand (*blue*). As a consequence, the newly synthesized strand (*green*) either may acquire an extra base that increases the length of the repeating sequence or may lack a base (*top two images*). Identical dynamics may cause similar changes in microsatellite sequences where the repeat unit is a TC dinucleotide segment (*bottom two images*), or a more complex repeating sequence (*not shown*). (B) Mismatch repair (MMR) proteins recognize and repair the mistakes made by DNA polymerases, including misincorporated bases and inaccurate replication of microsatellite sequences. Here, use of atomic-force microscopy reveals the behavior of the MutS MMR protein, a bacterial homolog (from *Thermus aquaticus*) of a number of mammalian MMR proteins. MutS is seen binding to a

DNA fragment into which a mismatch has been introduced at a specific nucleotide site. MutS kinks the DNA double helix as it scans for and ultimately finds regions of mismatch (793T Bulge), where it binds in a stable fashion, seen here as a white pyramid. (C) In eukaryotic cells, two components of the MMR apparatus, MutSα and MutLα, collaborate to initiate repair of mismatched DNA. After MutSα (a heterodimer of MSH6 and MSH2) scans the DNA and locates a mismatch, MutLα (a heterodimer of MLH1 and PMS2) scans the DNA for single-strand nicks, which identify the strand that has recently been synthesized (*red*). In addition, the under-methylation of the recently synthesized strand may aid in this identification (*not shown*). MutLα then triggers degradation of this strand back through the detected mismatch, allowing for repair DNA synthesis to follow. (D) Part of the structure of the *T. aquaticus* MutS homodimeric protein in complex with a mismatched helix (*red*) . In addition, is shown. Domains I and IV of subunit A are in *dark blue* and *orange*, and the corresponding domains of subunit B are in *light blue* and *yellow.* An arrow (*yellow*) indicates where phenylalanine residue 39 of domain I of subunit A is associated with an unpaired thymidine in one of the two DNA strands. Defects in the human homolog of this protein play a critical role in triggering hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), as discussed in Section 12.8. (B, from H. Wang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:14822–14827, 2003. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. C, adapted from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 7th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2022, D, from G. Obmolova et al., *Nature* 407:703–710, 2000. With permission from Nature.)

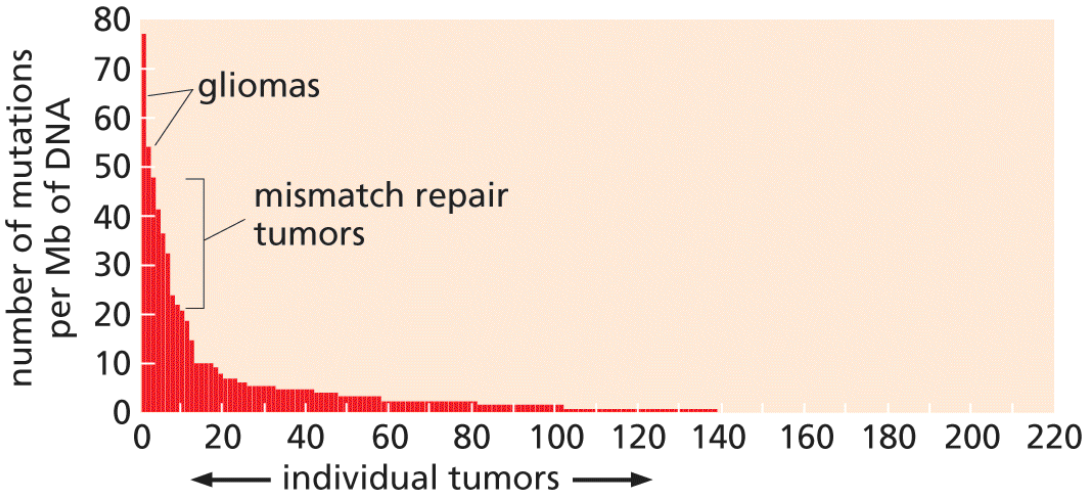
For historical reasons, highly repeated sequences in the genome, often carrying 100 or more nucleotides per repeat unit, have been called "satellite" sequences. Because the simple, far shorter sequences discussed here are also found in many places in the genome, they have been named microsatellites. A defective mismatch repair system that fails to detect and remove stuttering mistakes made by DNA polymerases when copying a microsatellite will result in the expansion or shrinkage of its sequences in progeny cells. This creates the genetic condition known as microsatellite instability (MIN; **Figure 12.7A**), which may ultimately involve changes in thousands of microsatellite sequences scattered throughout a cell genome. Importantly, as illustrated in Figure 12.7B, defects in MMR yield base substitutions even more frequently than expansions and contractions of microsatellite sequences; indeed, the genome is showered with point mutations in an MMR-defective cancer cell. These more subtle alterations may also be detected and erased by mismatch repair proteins, which are highly sensitive to bulges and loops in the double helix caused by inappropriately incorporated nucleotides. Importantly, the mismatch repair machinery must be able to distinguish the recently synthesized DNA strand from the complementary "parental" strand that served as the template during DNA synthesis; in making this distinction, the

MMR apparatus is able to direct its attention to removing and then repairing the recently synthesized and therefore defective DNA strand (see Figure 12.6C). Like the proofreading function described above, mismatch repair involves the excision of the nucleotides that have created the mismatch and a new attempt at synthesis of this strand.



The results of comparing the length of the D N A sequence B A T 25 in breast and colon tumor tissue samples to a sample of normal colon tissue from the same patient. The measurement readout takes the form of a squiggly bell curve. The readout for the breast tumor sample is normal, indicating that there has been no change in the B A T 25 sequence. By contrast, the readout for the colon tumor sample is shifted left, indicating an expansion-type error in the sequence.

(A)



A histogram with number of mutations per megabase of D N A on the vertical axis and individual tumors, numbered 1 through 210, on the horizontal axis. The tumors are ordered by decreasing number of mutations. Tumors 1 and 2, both gliomas, both had more than 50 mutations per megabase. Tumors 3 through 8, all mismatch repair tumors, had between 20 and 50 mutations per megabase. The 72 tumors starting at number 138 had no mutations at all.

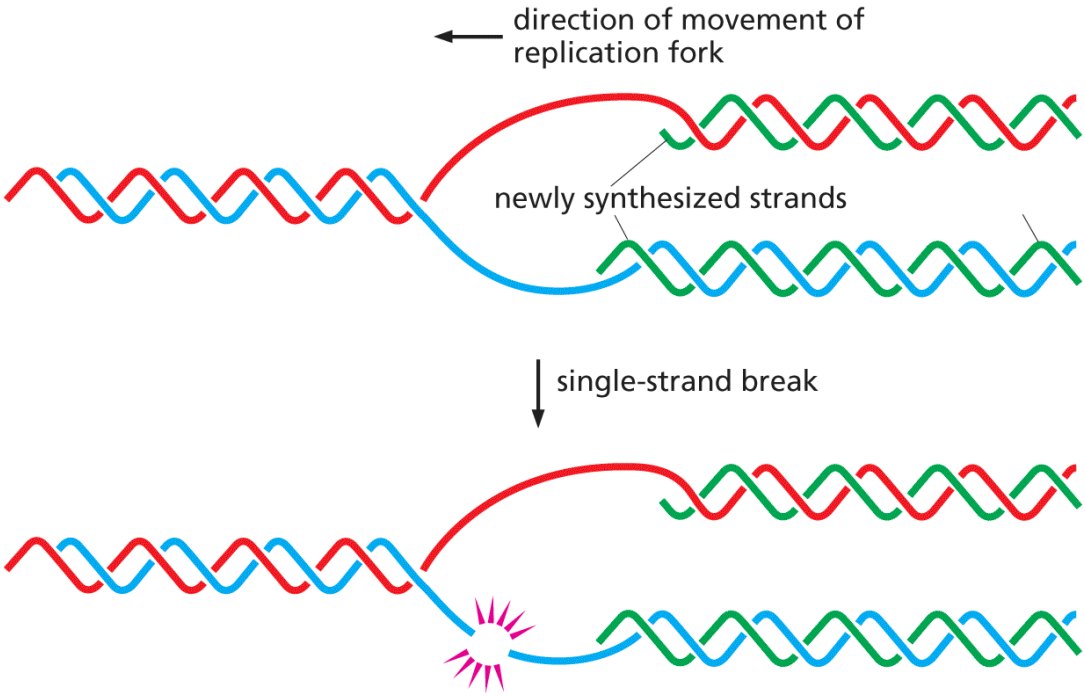
(B)

Figure 12.7 Detection of microsatellite instability Defects in mismatch repair (MMR) are responsible for the accumulation of a variety of mutations in the genome. (A) The most obvious type of these mutations is microsatellite instability (MIN), which causes an expansion or contraction of the size of a microsatellite repeat sequence. In the analysis shown here, the size of a mononucleotide repeat is analyzed in a woman suffering from HNPCC (hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer) and presenting in the clinic with both a colorectal and a breast carcinoma; analysis was performed using PCR (polymerase chain reaction). The BAT25 sequence, which is located on human Chromosome 4q12, consists of the sequence TTTTxTxTTTTxT7xxT25, where “x” indicates a nucleotide other than T. As a result of errors made by the polymerase used in the PCR reaction, the products of the PCR reactions show a Gaussian distribution of lengths grouped around the actual length of the genomic DNA segment being amplified. This analysis reveals a clear increase in size of the microsatellite repeat in the colon carcinoma (*leftward shift*), whereas the breast tumor exhibits a microsatellite repeat that is precisely the same as normal, control DNA. (This observation strongly suggests that the breast carcinoma, unlike the colon carcinoma, is unlikely to have been caused by MIN.) (B) The coding exons of 518 kinase-encoding genes in the genomes of 210 human tumors of diverse type were sequenced, revealing 1007 somatic mutations in all. As is apparent, the density of mutations (number per

megabase) of all types varied dramatically, with one-third of the tumor genomes showing no mutations at all (*rightward*). Two classes of tumors showed especially high densities of mutations in their genomes. Gliomas/glioblastomas, which had previously been exposed during the course of treatment to high doses of temozolomide, a mutagenic chemotherapeutic agent, exhibited an unusually high density of mutations. In addition, the genomes of a group of five MMR-deficient tumors showed an almost-equivalent density of mutations, consisting largely of base substitutions (14–40 per megabase) plus insertions/deletions of microsatellite repeats (5–12 per megabase). (A, from A. Müller et al., *Cancer Res*. 62:1014–1019, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B, from C. Greenman et al., *Nature* 446:153–158, 2007. With permission from Nature.)

Working together, these various error-correcting mechanisms yield extremely low rates of miscopied bases that survive to become mutant DNA sequences. To begin, DNA polymerases make copying mistakes in only about 1 out of 10^5 polymerized nucleotides. The $3' \rightarrow 5'$ proofreading by the polymerases overlooks only about 1 out of every 10^2 nucleotides initially miscopied by the polymerase, thereby reducing the error rate to about 1 in 10^7 nucleotides. After the DNA polymerase has passed through a stretch of DNA followed by polymerase-associated proofreading, the mismatch repair proteins check the recently synthesized DNA strand a second time. The mismatch repair enzymes fail to correct only about 1 miscopied base out of 100 that have escaped the proofreading actions of the DNA polymerase. Together, this yields a stunningly low mutation rate of only about 1 nucleotide per 10^9 that have been synthesized during DNA replication, yielding only several miscopied bases per haploid genome following each cycle of cell growth and division. As we will see, defects in these error-correcting mechanisms can lead to both familial and sporadic human cancers.

Finally, DNA replication holds yet other dangers for the genome. Some measurements indicate that as many 10 double-strand (ds) DNA breaks occur per cell genome each time a cell passes through S phase. These breaks appear to occur near replication forks, ostensibly because the single-strand DNA at the unwound but not-yet-replicated portion of the parental DNA is susceptible to inadvertent breakage (**Figure 12.8**). Cells have well-developed mechanisms for dealing with such dsDNA breaks, as we will see later. Failure to repair such breaks properly can lead to disastrous consequences, including chromosomal breaks and translocations.



An illustration of a break at the replication fork during the replication of double-strand D N A. In the upper part of the figure, the original double strand of D N A is on the left, and two parallel double strands are on the right, each containing one strand from the original D N A and one newly synthesized strand. Replication is proceeding from right to left. In the lower part of the figure, a single-strand break has occurred in one of the two original D N A strands, at a point where it has been unwound from its partner strand but synthesis of the new strand has not yet occurred.

Figure 12.8 Double-strand DNA breaks at replication forks During DNA replication, the DNA molecules are especially vulnerable to breakage in the single-stranded portions near the replication fork that have not yet undergone replication. Such breaks often occur because of the chemical alteration of a base (discussed later in this chapter) that causes the DNA polymerase to stall, being unable to recognize this altered base; polymerase stalling results in a region of single-stranded DNA that may persist for an extended period of time before it is finally protected by successful replication and thus formation of a complementary strand. The breakage of such a single-stranded region (sometimes termed a “collapsed” replication fork) is functionally equivalent to a double-strand break occurring in an already-formed double helix, in that the break leaves two helices unconnected by either strand.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

proofreading
: Process by which a DNA polymerase scans the deoxyribonucleotide segment that it has just synthesized in order to ensure that the sequence of this segment was properly synthesized and thus is precisely complementary to that of the template strand. *See also* **mismatch repair**.

mismatch repair
: Class of DNA repair processes that depend on proofreading a recently synthesized segment of DNA and removing any misincorporated bases that may have escaped previous correction by DNA polymerase-associated proofreading functions. Defects in mismatch repair lead to microsatellite instability. *See also* **microsatellite instability**, **proofreading.**

satellite
: Highly repetitive sequences present in genomic DNA. These sequences often have a different composition of bases compared to that of the bulk of the genomic DNA and thus form separate “satellite” bands that can be resolved upon isopycnic density centrifugation. *See also* **isopycnic**, **microsatellite**.

microsatellite
: A DNA relatively short oligonucleotide segment of simple sequence that resides within a cell genome and is repeated hundreds, even thousands of times in this genome, often at sites scattered though this genome. *See also* **satellite**.

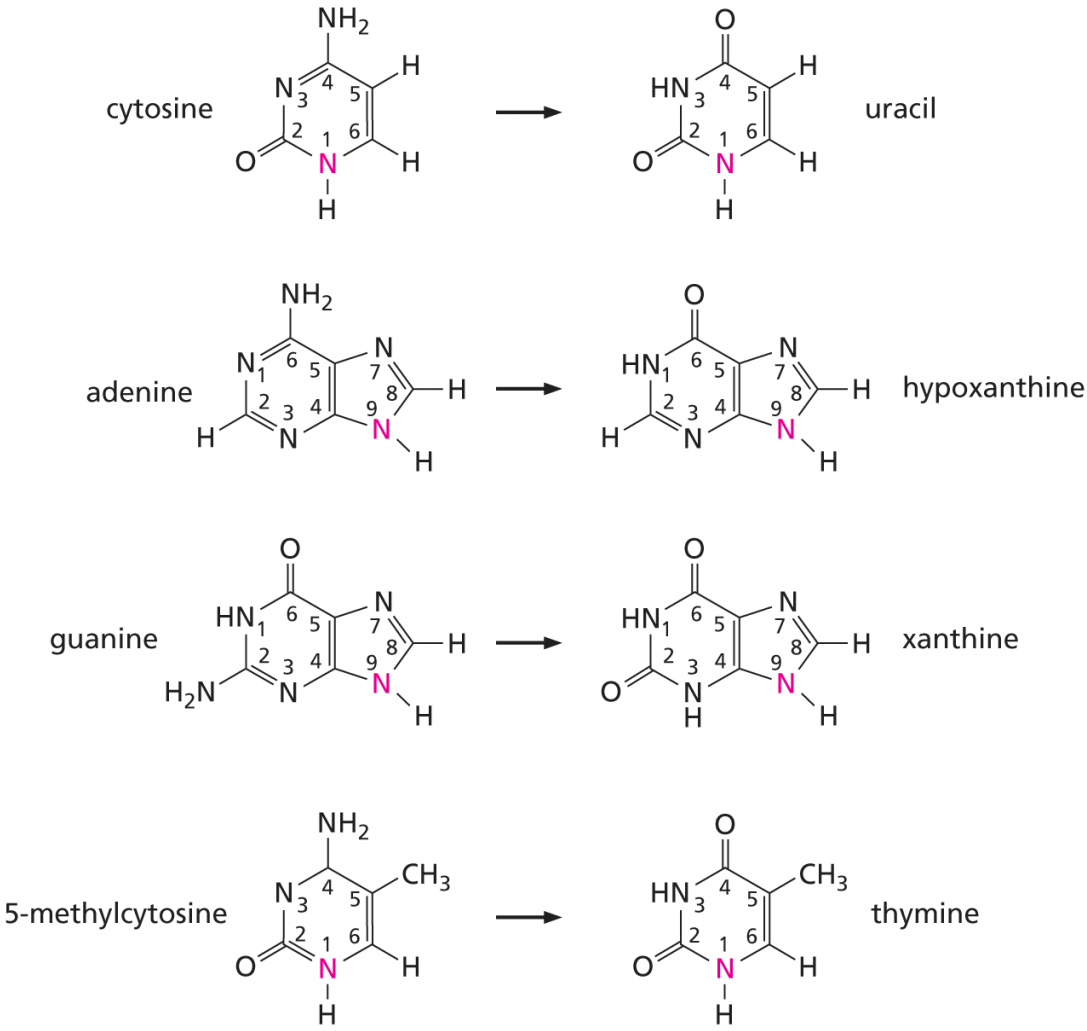
microsatellite instability
: A condition caused by mutations in genes involved in DNA mismatch repair that is manifested when microsatellite sequences undergo frequent expansion or shrinkage in length. *See also* **microsatellite**, **mismatch repair**.

OceanofPDF.com

12.4 Cell genomes are under constant attack from endogenous biochemical processes

Most accounts of the origins of contemporary cancer research contain a strong emphasis on the actions of carcinogenic agents that enter the body through various routes, attack DNA molecules within cells, and create mutant cell genomes that occasionally cause the formation of cancer cells (see Section 11.11). Unrecognized by these models are the mutagens and mutagenic mechanisms of endogenous origin. In recent decades, however, analytical techniques of greatly improved sensitivity have allowed researchers to detect altered bases and nucleotides in the DNA of normal cells that have not been exposed to exogenous mutagens. The results of these analyses have caused a profound shift in thinking about the origins of most of the mutant genes present in the genomes of human cells, because they have shown that endogenous biochemical processes usually make far greater contributions to genome mutation than do exogenous mutagens. Because mutagenic events, independent of their origin, are potentially carcinogenic, there has been a rethinking of the cause of many human cancers.

An important contributor of these endogenous mutational processes is deamination, in which the amine groups that protrude from cytosine, adenine, and guanine rings of the bases are lost. This deamination leads respectively to uracil, hypoxanthine, and xanthine (**Figure 12.9**). The uracil, for instance, may be read as a thymine during subsequent DNA replication, thereby causing a C-to-T (C>T) point mutation, known as a transition mutation, in which one pyrimidine replaces another. The bases generated by deamination are all foreign to normal DNA, and consequently can be recognized as such and removed by specialized DNA repair enzymes. However, any such altered bases that escape detection and removal represent potential sources of point mutations.

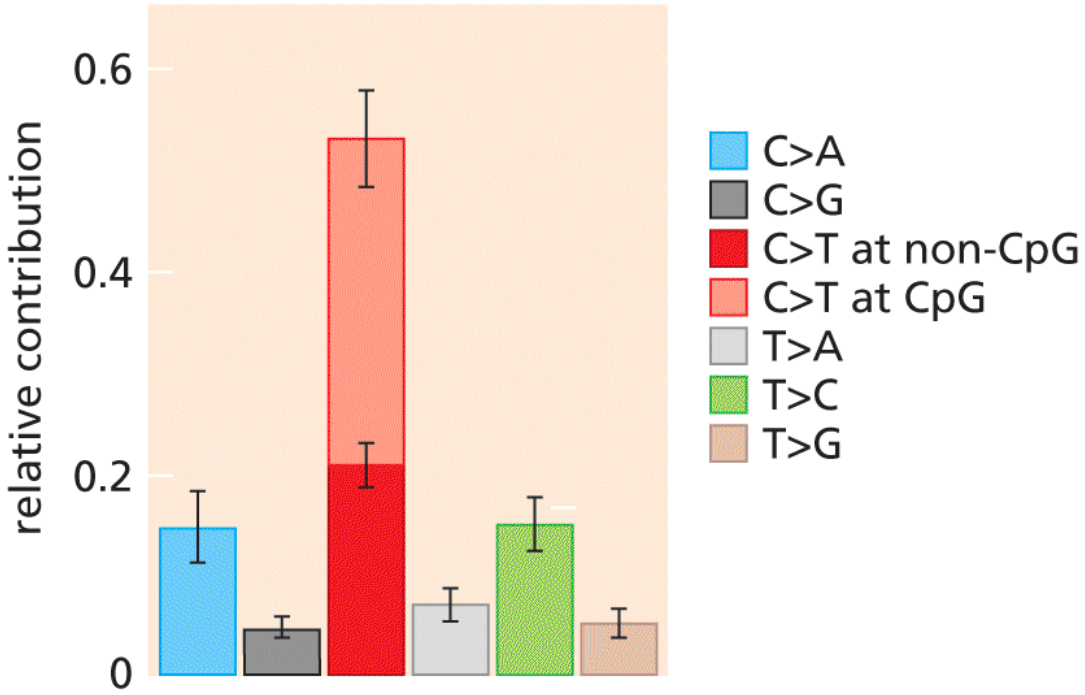


Base deamination. In deamination, an amino group on a carbon in a carbon-nitrogen ring is replaced with a double-bonded oxygen, and an adjacent nitrogen in the ring loses a bond and gains a hydrogen. This process turns cytosine into uracil, adenine into hypoxanthine, guanine into xanthine, and 5-methyl cytosine into thymine.

Figure 12.9 Base deamination The deamination reactions affecting purine and pyrimidine bases, which occur spontaneously at various rates at neutral pH, lead to changes in nucleotide sequences unless they are repaired. The deamination of 5-methylcytosine yields thymine (*bottom*); because this base is naturally present in DNA, the repair machinery does not always recognized it as being aberrant, explaining the frequent mutations at sites bearing this methylated base. (In each case, the nitrogen atom in red participates in the formation of a glycosidic bond with the 1-carbon of deoxyribose.) (Adapted from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 7th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2022.)

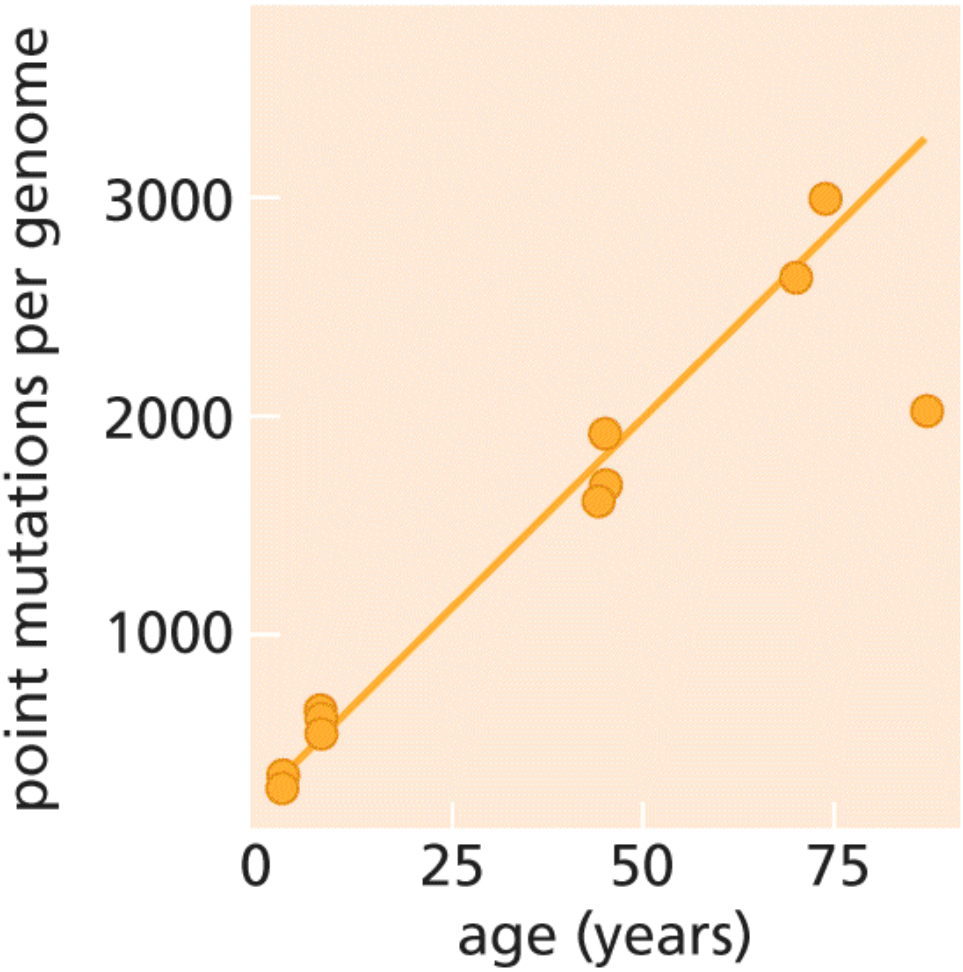
The rate of spontaneous deamination of the 5-methylcytosine base—the methylated form of the cytosine in CpG dinucleotides that we encountered earlier (see Section 7.7)—is even higher, yielding thymine (see Figure 12.9). This creates a significant problem for the DNA repair apparatus, because thymine (unlike the other three products of deamination described above) is a component of normal DNA, and the T:G base pair may therefore escape detection, survive, and ultimately serve as template during a subsequent cycle of DNA replication, leading to a C>T point mutation.

In fact, this deamination of 5-methylcytosine represents a major source of point mutations in human DNA, including in cancer genomes as well as the genomes of otherwise-normal cells as individuals age. As discussed in greater detail in Section 12.13, with the advent of high-throughput DNA sequencing methods, it is now possible to obtain comprehensive DNA sequence information from any number of genomic sources. These analyses have clearly demonstrated that the mutation of CpG sequences to TpG is the highest frequency, spontaneous mutational event in the genomes of many cell types in the human body, including different types of stem cells (**Figure 12.10A**). These mutations accumulate progressively in our tissues as we age (Figure 12.10B). Because most of them do not have any phenotypic consequences for the cell and thus for the tissue around them, these mutations are tolerated and simply serve as markers of the proliferative history of a stem cell over extended periods of time. Indeed, the accumulation of these mutations can be read out as a type of molecular clock of organismal aging. Likewise, CpG>TpG transition mutations are found frequently in cancer cell genomes, reflecting in part the mutations that preexisted in the cell-of-origin of a tumor and in part the ongoing methyl-cytosine deamination events occurring during the course of multi-step tumorigenesis. In cancers that are not the product of environmental exposure to highly mutagenic carcinogens (for example, smoking-associated lung cancers or UV-induced melanomas of the skin; see Section 12.13), these CpG>TpG mutations rank among the most common types of genetic change.



A bar graph comparing the relative contributions of different base substitution mutations. C to G, T to A, and T to G are all relatively rare. C to A and T to C are more common but the relative contribution of each is still less than 20 percent. By far the most common are C to T, with a relative contribution of about 55 percent, of which over half occur in C p G sequences.

(A)



A scatterplot correlating point mutations per genome with age in years, for about a dozen human donors. All points lie very close to a trendline that runs from the origin up to about 3000 mutations at age 75, except for one outlier donor who had only about 2000 mutations at age 90.

(B)

Figure 12.10 Age-associated accumulation of somatic point mutations in human intestinal stem cells Single normal human stem cells were isolated from the small intestines of individuals of different ages, expanded as organoid cultures, and then subjected to whole-genome sequencing (see Section 12.13) to determine the pattern and frequency of mutations as a function of age. Normal blood samples were sequenced from the same individuals for reference. (A) The relative contribution of genome-wide mutations of the pyrimidine bases of base pairs to the three alternative bases is shown for all samples according to the color scheme in the key. Note that C>T mutations occur at the highest frequency, with the majority of these occurring at CpG dinucleotide sequences. This pattern is

explained by high frequency of spontaneous deamination of 5-methylcytosine at CpG sites, leading to thymine (see Figure 12.09). (B) Correlation of the number of somatic point mutations in each stem cell sample as a function of the age of the donor. Each data point represents a single small intestinal stem cell sample. The accumulation of CpG to TpG mutations can be considered a type of mutational clock that correlates with organismal age. (From F. Blokzijl et al. *Nature* 538:260–264, 2016. With permission from Nature.)

The spontaneous breakage of the chemical bond linking a purine or pyrimidine base to its deoxyribose sugar in DNA, termed depurination and depyrimidination, respectively, also occurs remarkably frequently. By some estimates as many as 10,000 purine bases are lost by depurination each day in a mammalian cell. Depyrimidination occurs at a 20- to 100-fold lower rate, but still results in as many as 500 cytosine and thymine bases lost per cell per day. Estimates of the steady-state level of base-free nucleotides present in a single human genome range from 4000 to 50,000. If not effectively repaired, these events can also lead to mutation.

The intracellular environment holds yet other dangers for the chromosomal DNA. The greatest of these comes from the processes of oxidation, which may inflict far more damage on DNA than the reactions mentioned above. Most important here are the reactions that occur in the mitochondria and generate a variety of intermediates as oxygen is progressively reduced to water:

$$O_2 + e^- \rightarrow O_2^{\cdot -} + e^- \rightarrow H_2O_2 + e^- \rightarrow {}^{\cdot}OH + e^- \rightarrow H_2O$$

superoxide ion | hydrogen peroxide | hydroxyl radical

Some of these incompletely reduced intermediates—the so-called reactive oxygen species (ROS)—may leak out of the mitochondria into the cytosol and thence into the rest of the cell. Among them are the superoxide ion, hydrogen peroxide, and the hydroxyl radical—the intermediates in the reactions listed above. (By one estimate, in normal cells 1–2% of oxygen molecules consumed by mitochondria end up as ROS; these levels may increase after mitochondria become more leaky following cell transformation.) Other oxidants arise as by-products of various oxygen-utilizing enzymes, including those in peroxisomes (cytoplasmic organelles that are involved in the oxidative breakdown of various cellular constituents, notably lipids); yet others are formed by the spontaneous oxidation of lipids, which results in their peroxidation. Inflammation also provides an important source of the oxidants that favor mutagenesis and therefore carcinogenesis (**Sidebar 12.3**).

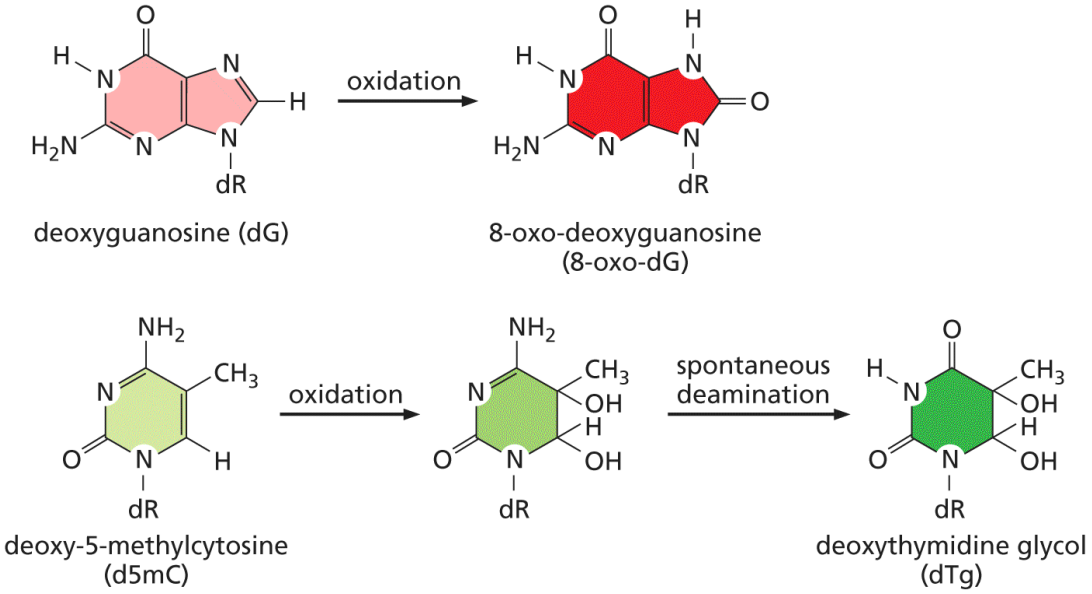
Sidebar 12.3 Inflammation can have both mitogenic and mutagenic consequences

Chronic inflammation of tissues is often provoked by infectious agents, such as hepatitis B and C virus infections of the liver, *Helicobacter* infection of the gastric epithelium, and human papillomavirus (HPV) infection of the cervical epithelium (see Sections 11.13 and 11.16). These infections often lead to cell death and resulting compensatory proliferation of the surviving cells—a type of tumor promotion discussed in the previous chapter.

In addition, infected cells attract the attentions of a variety of cells from the innate and adaptive immune systems, as discussed in Chapter 15. Among them are macrophages and neutrophils that are dispatched to sites of infection; there they create localized inflammatory responses, which may be accompanied by mutagenic consequences. For example, phagocytes kill infected cells in part by releasing bursts of a powerful mix of oxidants, including nitric oxide (NO), superoxide ion ($O_2^{\cdot -}$), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), and hypochlorite (OCl^-). Such highly reactive chemical species are deployed to kill the intended target cells but, in addition, may cause collateral damage by leaving behind survivors whose genomes they have also damaged. Like the by-products of normal oxidative metabolism, these oxidants act as mutagens on the genomes of nearby bystander cells through their ability to generate chemically modified bases via nitration, oxidation, deamination, and halogenation. Indeed, the DNAs of inflamed and neoplastic tissues have been found to carry substantially increased concentrations of 8-oxo-dG (see Figure 12.11), one of the primary products of DNA oxidation. (As examples, the total daily excretion of oxidized bases by smokers can be as much as 50% higher than by nonsmokers, ostensibly from the chronic inflammation in their lungs, and the urine of those suffering a chronic flatworm infection in Thailand has even higher concentrations of 8-oxo-dG.) The increased mutation rate resulting from base oxidation helps to explain why chronic inflammation in many tissues favors tumor progression.

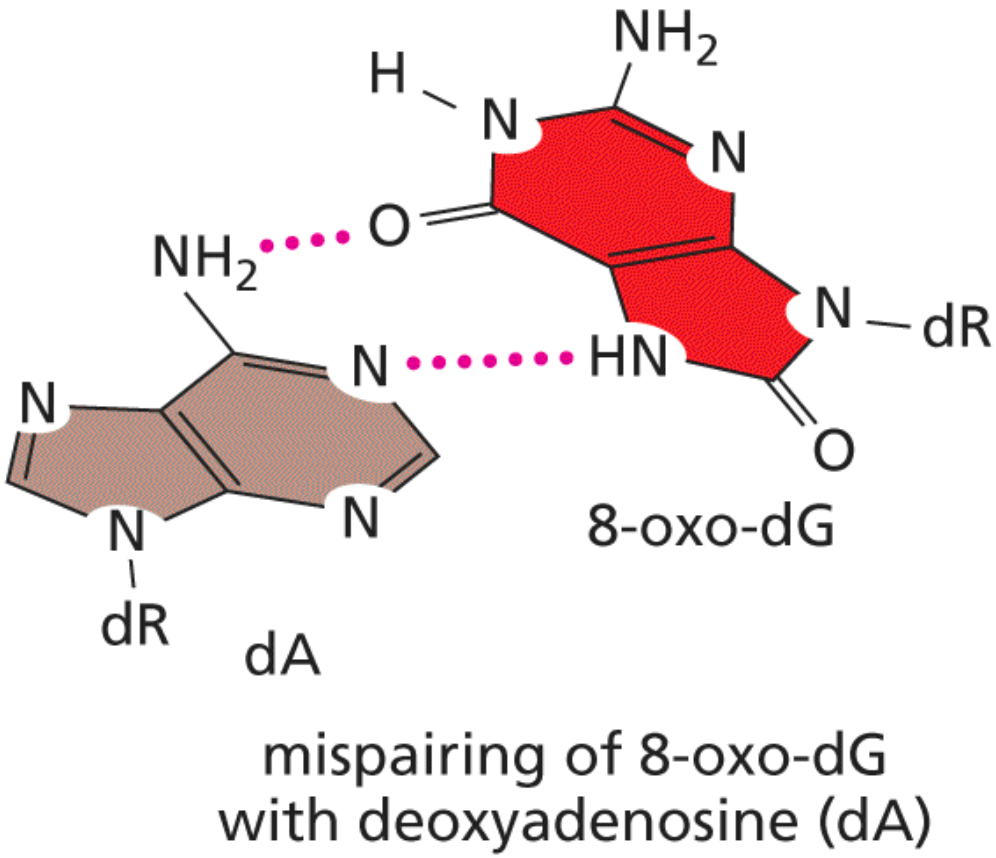
The highly reactive molecules produced by these various processes proceed, usually within seconds, to form covalent bonds with many other molecular species in the cell. Among the many targets of ROS attack are the bases within DNA, including both purines and pyrimidines (**Figure 12.11A**). In addition, reactive oxygen species can induce single- and double-stranded DNA breaks, apurinic and apyrimidinic sites (together known as abasic sites), in which bases are cleaved from deoxyribose, as well as DNA–protein cross-links. As described below, many of the resulting altered bases are recognized by specialized components of the DNA repair machinery that proceed to excise them from the DNA. Some of the excised bases, including thymine glycol, which derives from deoxythymidine glycol, and 8-oxoguanine, which derives from 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (8-oxo-dG), can be detected and quantified in the urine of

mammals, providing some indication of the rate at which they are produced throughout the body (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.2**).



The acquisition of a single double-bonded oxygen turns deoxyguanosine into 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine. The acquisition of two single-bonded oxygens, followed by spontaneous deamination, turns deoxy-5-methylcytosine into deoxythymidine glycol.

(A)



8-oxo-deoxyguanosine mis-paired with deoxyadenosine.

(B)

Figure 12.11 Oxidation of bases in the DNA The oxidation of DNA bases, which often results from the actions of reactive oxygen species (ROS), can be mutagenic in the absence of subsequent DNA repair reactions. (A) Two frequent oxidation reactions involve deoxyguanosine (dG), which is oxidized to 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (8-oxo-dG), and deoxy-5-methylcytosine (d5mC), the nucleotide that is present in methylated CpG sequences. Upon oxidation, the latter initially forms an unstable base that rapidly deaminates, yielding deoxythymidine glycol (dTg). (B) The 8-oxo-dG, which arises from the oxidation of dG, can mispair with deoxyadenosine (dA) rather than form a normal base pair with deoxycytosine (dC). Hence, if 8-oxo-dG is not removed from a double helix, the DNA replication machinery may inappropriately incorporate a dA rather than a dC opposite it, resulting in a C>A point mutation. The notation “dR” signifies deoxyribose in all cases. The purines are shown in various shades of red and brown, and the pyrimidines are shown in various shades of green.

Some experiments have shown that the yield of these compounds is directly proportional to the rate of oxidative metabolism in various species. The formation of 8-oxo-dG creates a danger of mutation, as one conformation of this altered base can readily pair with A. This mispairing of bases during DNA replication can lead, in turn, to the replacement of a G:C base pair, via G:A pairing, to a T:A base pair (see Figure 12.11B). Such a G → T replacement of a purine by a pyrimidine (or the opposite) is often termed a transversion. Taken together, the continuing hail of damage from oxidation, depurination, deamination, and methylation, which together may alter as many as 100,000 bases per cell genome each day, greatly exceeds the amount of damage created by exogenous mutagenic agents in almost all tissues.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

transition
: Point mutation in which one purine base replaces another, or in which one pyrimidine base replaces another. *See also* **transversion**.

depurination
: Breakage of the glycosidic bond that links purine bases to the deoxyribose or ribose of DNA or RNA, respectively.

depyrimidination
: Breakage of the glycosidic bond that links pyrimidine bases to the deoxyribose or ribose of DNA or RNA, respectively.

peroxisome
: A cytoplasmic vesicular organelle that is involved in the oxidation of various substrates, notably lipids.

phagocyte
: , (adj. **phagocytic**) Cell of the immune system—e.g., a macrophage or dendritic cell—that is specialized to engulf and destroy other cells, cellular fragments, and other debris.

apurinic
: Referring to the product of depurination, in which the glycosidic bond linking a deoxyribose or ribose to a purine base is broken, leaving behind only the deoxyribose or ribose in the DNA or RNA, respectively. *See also* **depurination**.

apyrimidinic
: Referring to the product of depyrimidination, in which the glycosidic bond linking a deoxyribose or ribose to a pyrimidine base is broken, leaving behind only the deoxyribose or ribose in the DNA or RNA, respectively. *See also* **depyrimidination**.

abasic
: Referring to a nucleotide that has lost its purine or pyrimidine base. *See also* **apurinic**; **apyrimidinic**.

transversion
: Point mutation in which a purine base replaces a pyrimidine or vice versa. *See also* **transition**.

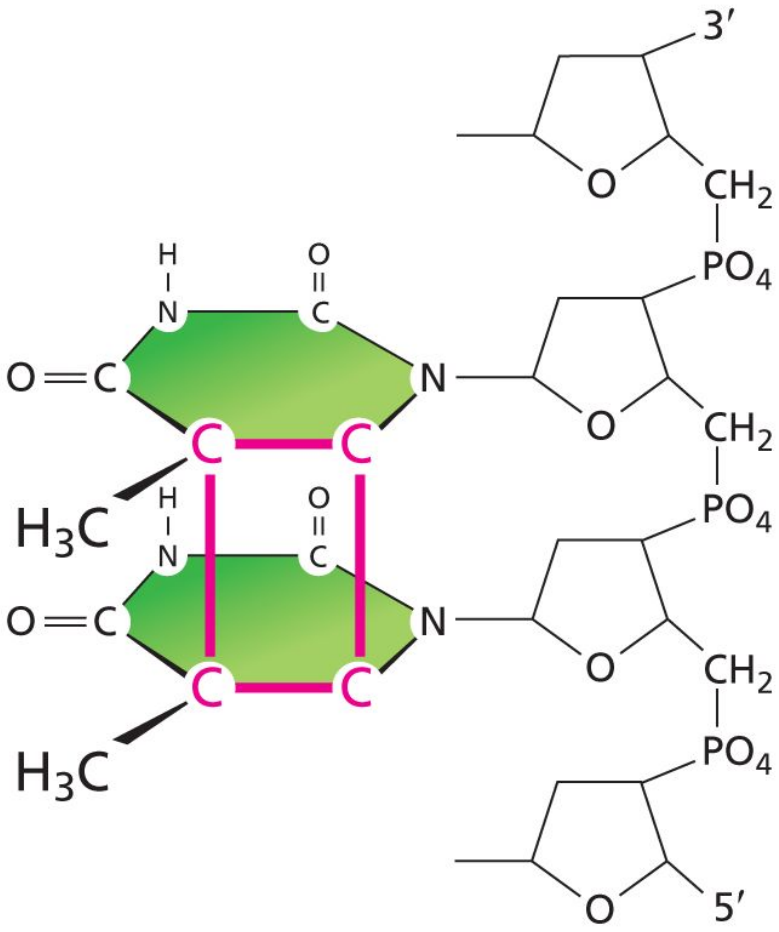
OceanofPDF.com

12.5 Cell genomes are under occasional attack from exogenous mutagens and their metabolites

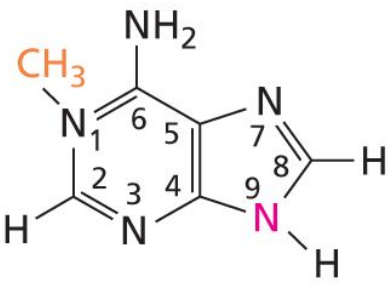
As we have discussed repeatedly in Chapter 11, cellular genomes are also damaged by exogenous carcinogens, including various types of radiation as well as molecules that enter the body via the food we eat and the air we breathe. Among the best studied of the exogenous carcinogens are X-rays, often termed ionizing radiation because of the ionized, chemically reactive molecules that this form of electromagnetic energy creates within cells. As much as 80% of the energy deposited in cells by X-rays is thought to be expended in stripping electrons from water molecules. The resulting free radicals proceed to generate ROS that create single- and double-strand breaks in the DNA double helix. As discussed later, these double-strand breaks (DSBs) are often difficult to repair and may, on occasion, generate breaks in a chromosome that are visible microscopically during metaphase.

Ultraviolet (UV) radiation from the sun is a far more common source of environmental radiation than X-rays. Living organisms have had to contend with UV radiation since life first formed on this planet some 3.5 billion years ago. Once oxygen accumulated to high levels in the atmosphere about 0.6 billion years ago, the ozone formed from atmospheric oxygen provided a protective shield that significantly attenuated the flux of UV radiation striking the Earth's surface. Nonetheless, a significant amount of UV still succeeds in penetrating the ozone shield and reaching the biosphere.

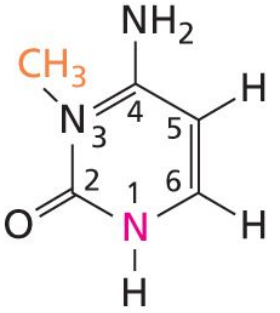
Should UV photons strike a DNA molecule in one of our skin cells, a frequent outcome is the formation of pyrimidine dimers—that is, covalent bonds form between two adjacent pyrimidines in the same strand of DNA. In principle, these can form between two adjacent C's, two adjacent T's, or a C and an adjacent T. In mammals, where the percentages of A's, C's, G's, and T's are similar, more than 60% of the pyrimidine dimers are TT and perhaps 30% are CT dimers, with the remaining dipyrimidines being CC dimers. As seen in **Figure 12.12A**, a pair of covalent bonds forms between adjacent pyrimidines, resulting in the creation of a 4-carbon (cyclobutane) ring. Another, less common class of DNA photoproducts, termed pyrimidine (6–4) pyrimidinone, also involves covalent linkage between two adjacent pyrimidines (Figure 12.12B). Once formed, pyrimidine dimers are very stable and can persist for extended periods unless DNA repair enzymes recognize and remove them.



(C)



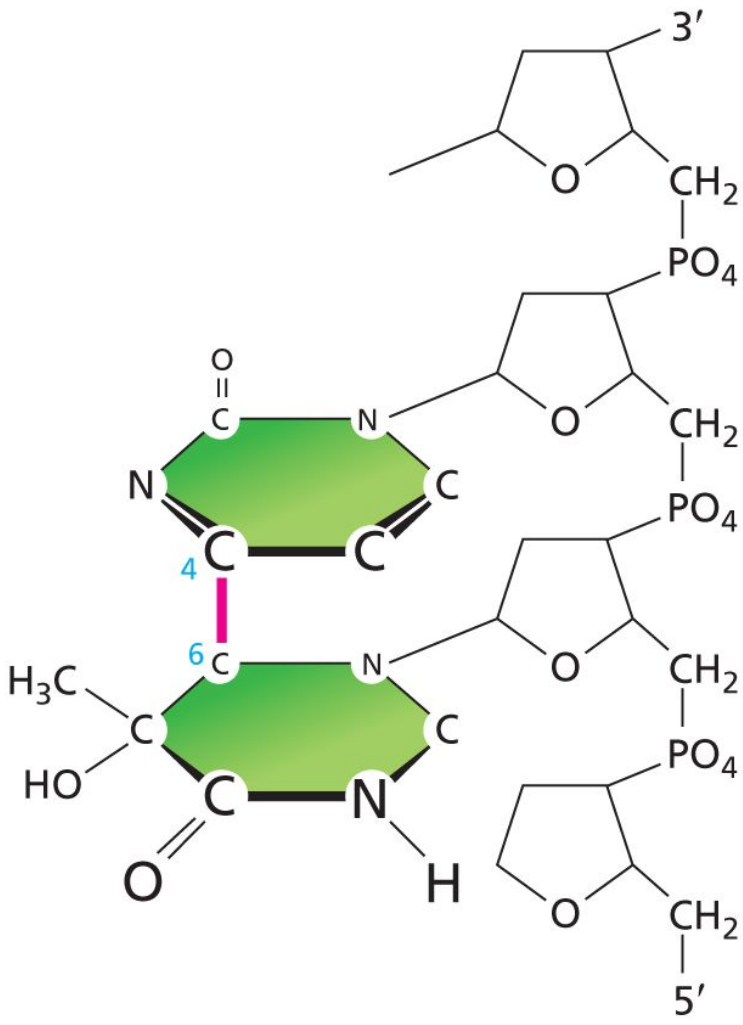
1-methyladenine

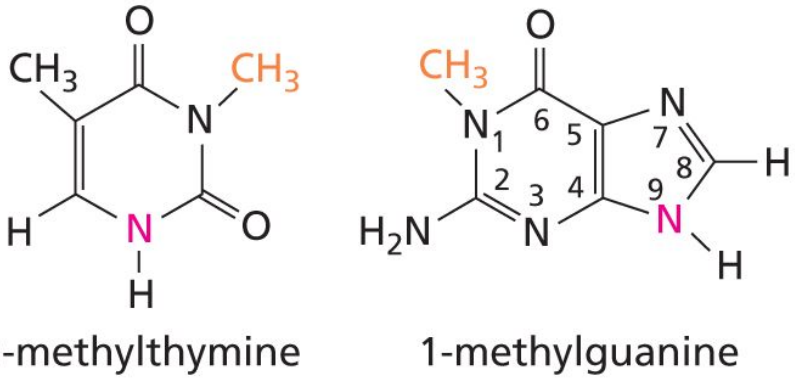


3-methylcytosine

Two hexagonal carbon-nitrogen rings are joined by covalent cross-links from adjacent carbons on one ring to corresponding adjacent carbons on the other ring. The four carbons can be considered a cyclobutane ring, which is highlighted.

(A)



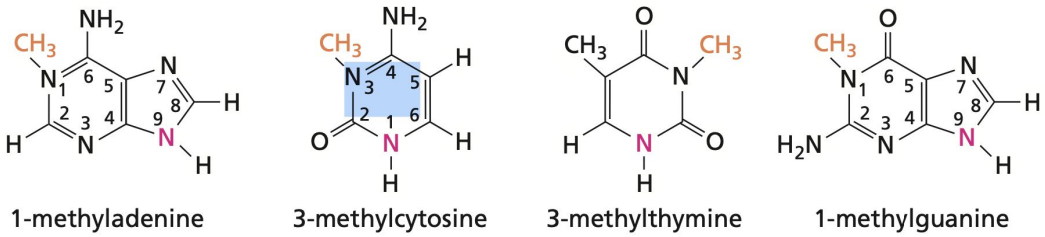


3-methylthymine 1-methylguanine

Two hexagonal carbon-nitrogen rings are joined by a single covalent cross-link between carbons.

(B)

(C)



The four familiar D N A bases, but each with an added methyl group: 1-methyladenine, 3-methylcytosine, 3-methylthymine, and 1-methylguanine.

(C)

Figure 12.12 Products of UV irradiation and alkylation of DNA Ultraviolet (UV) radiation produces covalent cross-links between adjacent pyrimidine bases in the DNA. These structures are relatively stable chemically and must be removed by transcription-coupled repair and global genomic repair (described in Section 12.7). (A) When purified DNA is irradiated with 254-nm photons, 71% of the photoproducts are cyclobutane pyrimidine dimers (CPD). The cyclobutane ring of a CPD is highlighted in *red*. (B) About 24% of the photoproducts generated from this irradiation are pyrimidine (6–4) pyrimidinone (6–4 PP). The covalent bond linking the 6-position of one pyrimidine to the 4-position of the adjacent pyrimidine is highlighted in *red*. (C) Alkylating agents of exogenous origin can covalently alter DNA bases by the attachment of alkyl groups, such as the methyl groups (*orange*) shown here. Many of these methyl groups may also be generated endogenously by the inadvertent actions of S-adenosyl methionine, which carries a highly reactive methyl that plays a key role in many normal biosynthetic reactions. The nitrogens that form glycosidic linkages with deoxyribose are shown in *pink*.

The pattern of mutations observed in genome sequencing studies of melanomas of the skin, as well as basal and squamous skin cancers, demonstrates dramatically that these pyrimidine dimers are mutagenic. In these cancers, the genomes are littered with dipyrimidine substitutions. Although the TT dimer is the one most frequently formed by UV radiation, it is only weakly mutagenic because various DNA repair and replication enzymes, to be discussed in Section 12.7, are able to deal with it effectively. The efficient repair of TT dimers explains why CC>TT substitutions, which arise from CC (rather than TT) dimers, are the most common sources of UV

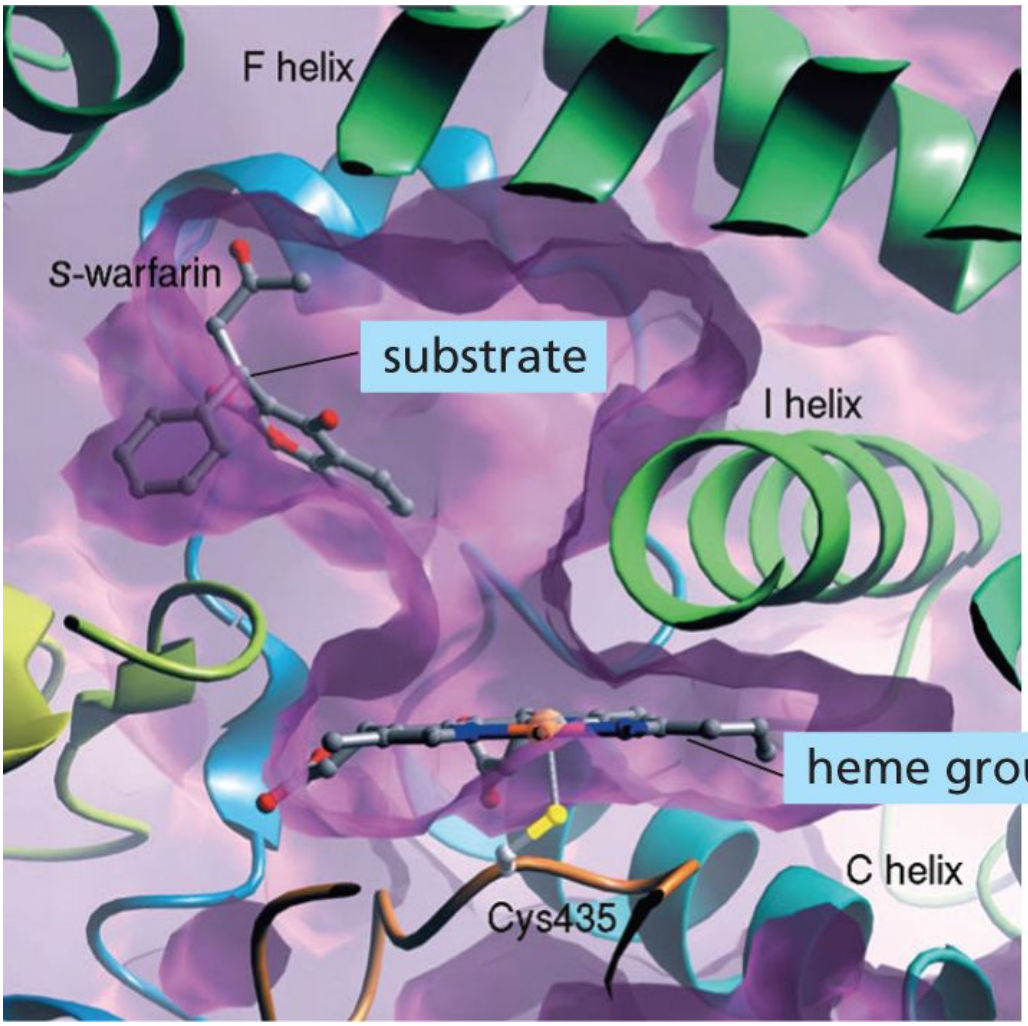
light mutagenesis found in UV-induced cancers. UV photons characteristically cause this mutation, providing further support for the notion that UV rays are directly mutagenic and carcinogenic for the human skin. Interestingly, melanomas that arise in non-sun exposed areas of the body (for example, the soles of the feet) do not show this signature of UV exposure. Other evidence for a direct mutagenic role of UV radiation comes from the observed incidence of squamous cell skin carcinomas in the human population, which doubles with each 10-degree decline in latitude, reaching its peak at the equator where cumulative UV exposure is highest.

A variety of chemical species can enter the body from outside, undergo chemical modification (see Figure 2.21), and then proceed to react with the macromolecules within cells, among them the DNA. Many of these modified chemical species are electrophilic, that is, they seek out and attack electron-rich regions of target molecules. Among the most potent mutagens are alkylating agents, chemicals that are capable of attaching alkyl groups covalently to the DNA bases (see Figure 12.12C).

The alkylation of a base may destabilize its covalent bond to deoxyribose, resulting in the loss of the purine or pyrimidine base from the DNA. Alternatively, the DNA polymerase machinery may misread the alkylated bases during DNA replication. Because of their potent mutagenicity, alkylating agents are often used experimentally to induce various types of tumors in laboratory animals.

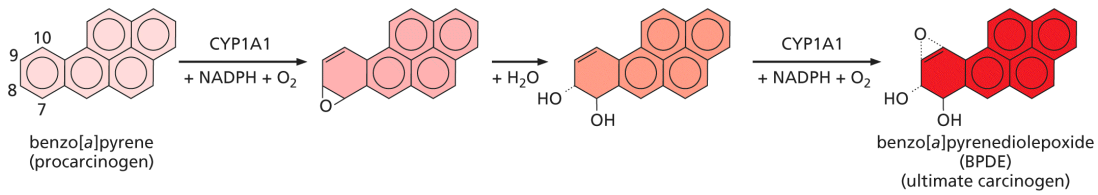
A number of potent mutagens are formed when ingested or inhaled compounds become altered by cellular metabolic processes (see Section 2.9). Take, as an example, benzo[*a*]pyrene (BP), a potent carcinogen that falls in the class of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), that is, molecules carrying multiple benzene rings fused together in various combinations (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.7**). Experiments conducted in Britain in the late 1920s indicated that this compound is a prominent carcinogen found amid the complex mixture of compounds in coal tar.

An elaborate array of cytochrome P450 enzymes (CYPs) are dispatched by cells largely in the liver to oxidize xenobiotic compounds, such as these polycyclic hydrocarbons. (The genes for 57 distinct P450s have been uncovered in the human genome.) The intended function of these enzymes is the detoxification of foreign chemical species, converting them by oxidation into molecules that are soluble and can be readily excreted (**Figure 12.13A**). However, an inadvertent outcome of this detoxification is often the creation of chemical species that are highly reactive with the DNA and are therefore actively mutagenic (Figure 12.13B). As a consequence, chemically inert, unreactive procarcinogens are converted into highly reactive ultimate carcinogens that can attack DNA molecules directly through their ability to form covalent bonds with various bases (see Section 2.9). The chemical entity formed after reaction of a carcinogen with a DNA base is often termed a DNA adduct (**Figure 12.14**).



A diagram of multiple molecules, with ribbon diagrams of an F helix, an I helix, and a C helix, plus ball and stick models of a heme group and the substrate S warfarin.

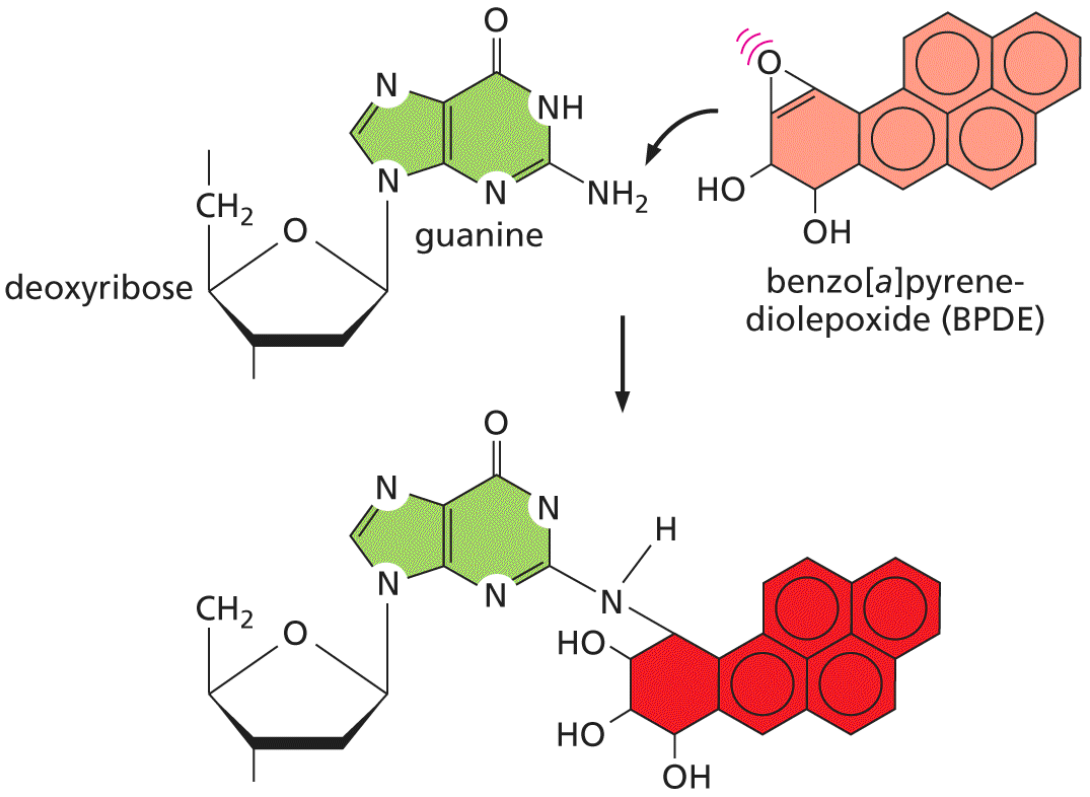
(A)



A multi-step chemical reaction involving a sequence of molecules each consisting of multiple interlocking carbon rings. The addition of C Y P 1 A 1, N A D P H and oxygen converts benzo [a] pyrene, a procarcinogen, into an intermediate molecule, which the addition of water converts into another

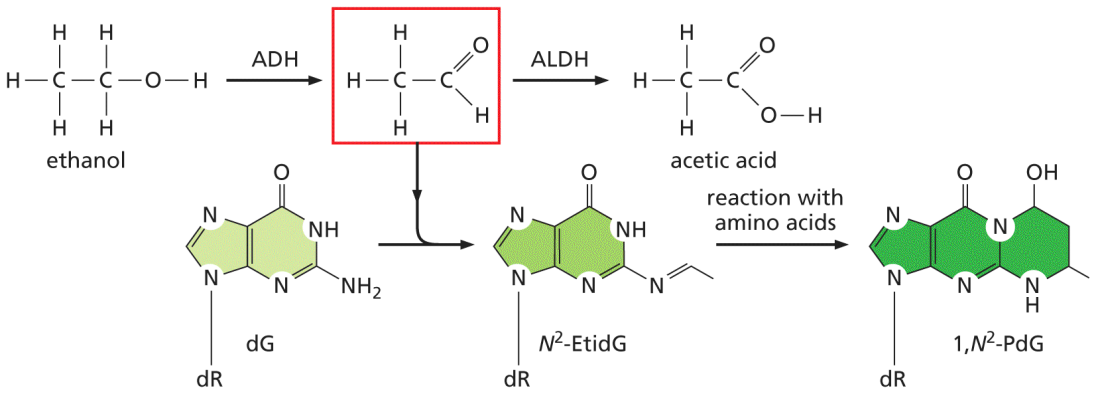
intermediate molecule, which a second addition of C Y P 1 A 1, N A D P H and oxygen converts into benzo [a] pyrenediolepoxide, an ultimate carcinogen.
(B)

Figure 12.13 Actions of cytochromes on procarcinogens (A) Cytochrome P450s (CYPs) are involved in the biosynthesis of a variety of metabolites such as steroid hormones, cholesterol, and bile acids as well as in the degradation of compounds such as fatty acids and steroids. In addition, they aid in the oxidation and associated detoxification of xenobiotics (compounds originating outside the body), such as drugs and carcinogens. The substrate-binding cavity of human CYP2C9, shown here, carries a molecule of a xenobiotic substrate, in this case warfarin (used both as an anticoagulant drug and as a rat poison). The heme ring detoxifies the warfarin by oxidizing it. The large substrate-binding cavities of CYPs allow them to accommodate a wide range of substrates, most of which are quite hydrophobic. (B) Among the xenobiotic compounds entering the body are a variety of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) that derive from tobacco smoke, broiled foods, and polluted environments. A common PAH is benzo[*a*]pyrene (BP, *far left*), which, following two successive oxidation reactions mediated by cytochrome P450 enzymes (largely CYP1A1), is converted to benzo[*a*]pyrenediolepoxide (BPDE; *far right*). This highly reactive molecule is termed an ultimate carcinogen (Section 2.9) because, unlike its BP precursor, it is able to directly attack and form covalent adducts with DNA bases, which may then generate oncogenic mutations. Importantly, exposure of a cell to PAHs increases synthesis of CYP1A1, thereby accelerating these reactions. (A, from P.A. Williams et al., *Nature* 424:464–468, 2003. With permission from Nature. B, from E.C. Miller, *Cancer Res*. 38:1479–1496, 1978. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)



A benzo[a]pyrene-diolepoxide, or B P D E, attaches to a guanine base by displacing one of the hydrogens on guanine's amino group.

(A)



Ethanol is shown being converted into acetaldehyde by alcohol dehydrogenase, or A D H. Eventually that will be converted into acetic acid by aldehyde dehydrogenase, or A L D H, but in the meantime the acetaldehyde is available to convert deoxyguanosine, or d G, into N2-ethylidene-d G. This, in reaction with amino acids, produces 1,N2-propano-2 prime-deoxyguanosine.

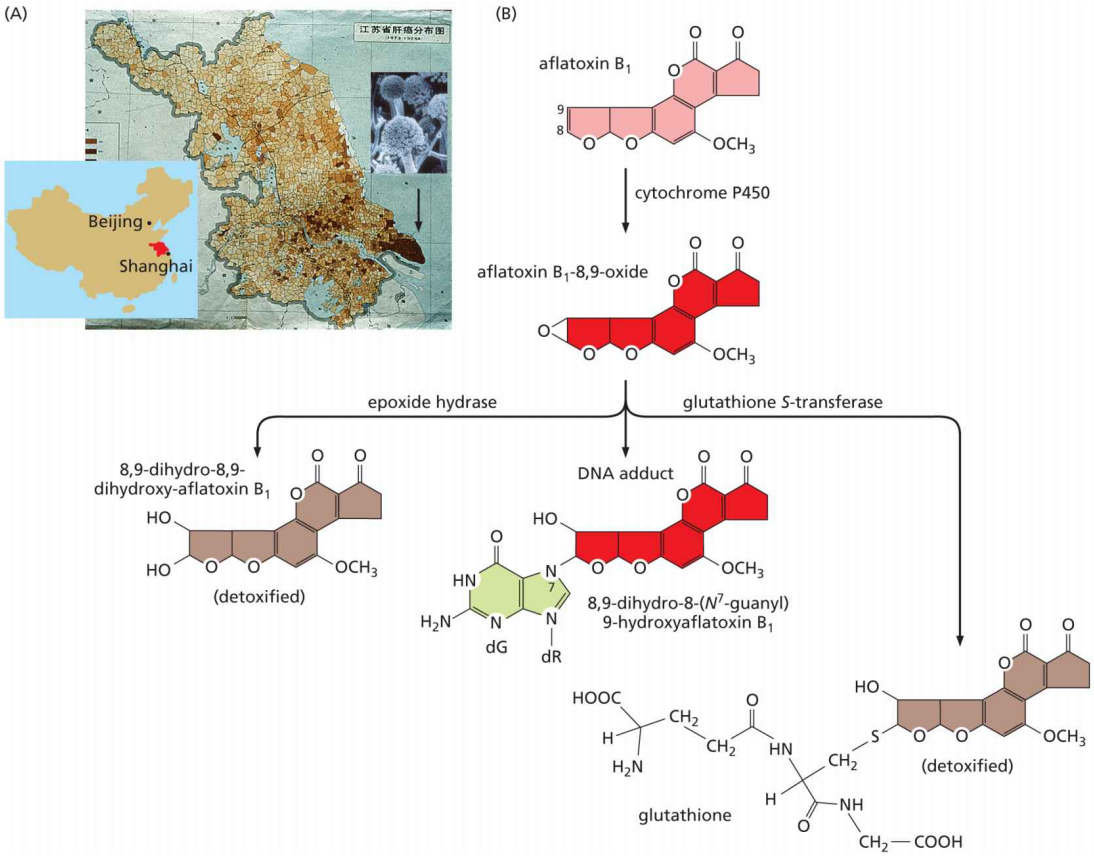
(B)

Figure 12.14 DNA adducts (A) The chemically reactive epoxide group of benzo[*a*]pyrenediolepoxide (BPDE; see Figure 12.13B) can attack a number of chemical sites in DNA, including the extracyclic amine of guanine (shown here), as well as the two ring nitrogens and the O^6 of this base. Because the cell may remove these various adducts with different efficiencies, the O^6 adduct of benzo[*a*]pyrene (BP) may be more potently mutagenic than the more frequently formed adduct shown here. Even though polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and BP have been studied for more than half a century, their precise contributions to human cancer development remain a matter of debate. (B) Ethanol, which is consumed in large quantities by many people, is converted by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) to acetaldehyde (*red box*), which has been classified as a mutagen because of its reactivity with DNA. The most abundant DNA adduct resulting from the reaction of acetaldehyde with deoxyguanosine (dG) is N^2-ethylidene-dG (N^2-EtidG), a relatively weak mutagen. A more complex adduct that is quite mutagenic is 1,N^2-propano-2′-deoxyguanosine (1,N^2-PdG), which forms from the reaction of N^2-EtidG with amino acids. Heavy drinkers with inborn alleles leading to either highly active ADH or slow acetaldehyde breakdown (via aldehyde dehydrogenase, ALDH) exhibit an especially elevated risk of developing oral and esophageal carcinomas.

In most cases, chemically reactive, ultimate carcinogens attack other molecules almost immediately after being formed. Consequently, they have lifetimes as free molecules that are measured in seconds, and consequently many of the genetic lesions they create arise in the same cells where these molecules underwent initial metabolic activation. For example, BP (benzo[*a*]pyrene), which is a prominent carcinogenic component of tobacco smoke, is often activated in the first cells that it enters—the epithelial cells (pneumocytes) in the lungs of smokers. Once formed, the activated derivative, benzo[*a*]pyrenediolepoxide (BPDE), proceeds directly to form adducts with the guanosine residues in the DNA of these epithelial cells (see Figure 12.14A). Likewise, the immediate downstream product of ethanol metabolism, acetaldehyde, is highly reactive with deoxyguanosine, forming several distinct DNA adducts that are much smaller than the bulky adduct generated by BP (see Figure 12.14B).

Among the most potent exogenous carcinogens is aflatoxin B1 (AFB1; see Figure 2.21B), which is produced by molds belonging to the *Aspergillus* genus. These molds grow on improperly stored peanuts, nuts, corn, and grains. As cited in Section 11.13, people living in areas where AFB1 exposure is high run a 3-fold elevated risk of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), whereas those carrying a chronic hepatitis B viral

infection have a 7-fold increased risk of this disease. Individuals with both risk factors run a 60-fold increased risk of contracting liver cancer (**Figure 12.15A**).



A two-part figure describing the role of Aflatoxin in liver carcinogenesis. Part A is a map of China's Jiangsu province, which lies northwest of the city of Shanghai. Within the province, a peninsula directly north of Shanghai is colored a uniform dark brown. As distance from the peninsula increases, the coloration of county-sized geographic areas becomes progressively lighter, with a few scattered dark spots. Also appearing on the map is an electron micrograph of fungal spores. Part B is a diagram of how the carcinogenic properties of aflatoxin B1 may be altered. Cytochrome P 4 50 turns aflatoxin B1 into aflatoxin B1-8,9-oxide. This can be detoxified either by converting it into 8,9-dihydro-8,9-dihydroxy-aflatoxin B1 by means of epoxide hydrase or by binding it to glutathione using glutathione S-transferase. If aflatoxin B1-8,9-oxide binds to the guanosine in D N A, however, it becomes the highly toxic 8,9-dihydro-8-(N7-guanyl) 9-hydroxyaflatoxin B1.

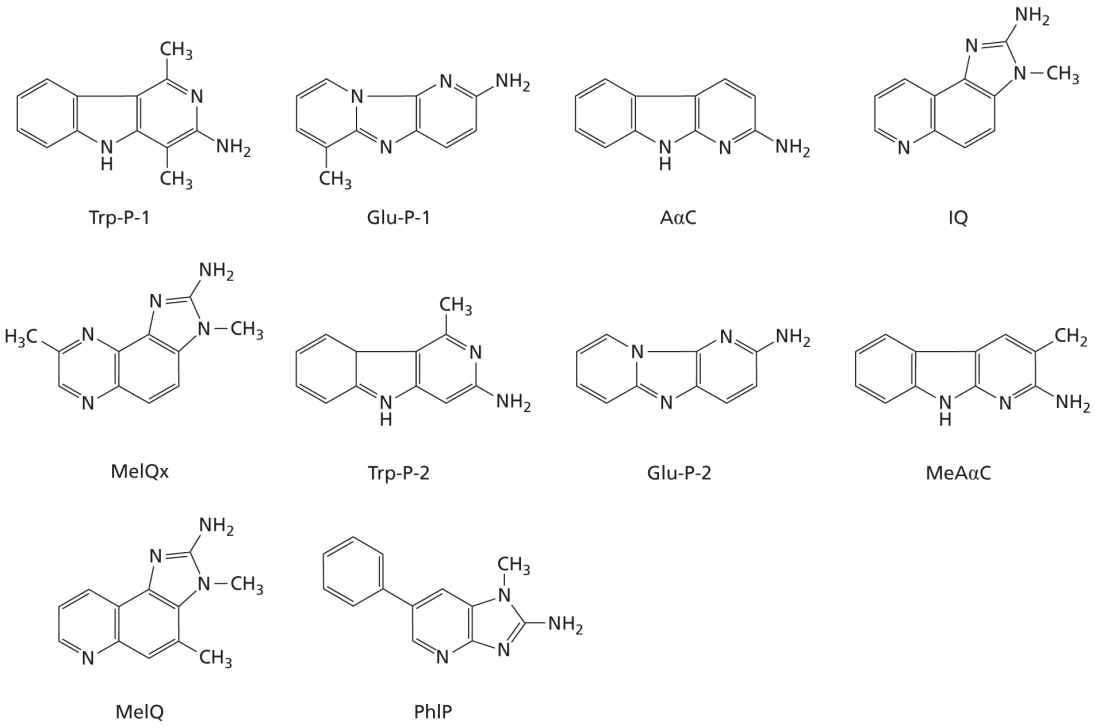
Figure 12.15 Aflatoxin and liver carcinogenesis (A) The fungal toxin aflatoxin B_1 (AFB1) is made by molds, largely *Aspergillus flavus* (*inset*), that grow on peanuts and grains that have been stored improperly, notably in areas of high rainfall and humidity; it is one of the most potently mutagenic substances known

(see Figure 2.21B). Within the Jiangsu province of eastern China, the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) cases (*brown dots*) is 8-fold higher in the very humid southeastern Qidong peninsula (*arrow*) than in the northwestern parts of the province. The incidence of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection—a critical co-carcinogen in HCC pathogenesis (see Section 11.13)—is relatively constant across the province. (B) Activation of AFB1 (*pink*) by cytochrome P450s results in formation of the highly reactive 8,9-oxide form (*red*). This form may be detoxified through several side reactions (*bottom left, right*), or it can react directly with DNA, forming a covalent adduct with the N^7 atom of guanosine (*light green*) that is highly mutagenic. Indeed, the liver carcinomas of individuals living in areas of high AFB1 exposure often carry mutant p53 alleles with a characteristic G-to-T transversion in codon 249—precisely the type of mutation that would be expected from the known reactivity of AFB1. (A, from T.W. Kensler et al., *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3:321–329, 2003. With permission from Nature. Inset, courtesy of CABI.org, UK. B, from J.D. Groopman and L.G. Cain, in C.S. Cooper and P.L. Grover, eds., Interactions of Fungal and Plant Toxins with DNA in Chemical Carcinogenesis and Mutagenesis. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1990. With permission from Springer.)

Once AFB1 is activated by CYPs in the liver, the resulting metabolite can attack guanine and form a DNA adduct by becoming covalently linked to this base (see Figure 12.15B). AFB1 causes a characteristic G>T mutation in DNA. Such point mutations, where the sequence AGG has been converted to AGT, are found at codon 249 of the *p53* tumor suppressor gene in about half of the hepatocellular carcinomas occurring in individuals exposed to this carcinogen. These characteristic changes in the DNA provide compelling evidence of the direct interaction of this mutagenic carcinogen with bases in the DNA. (These conclusions are important, because in the absence of such evidence, it becomes possible that a carcinogenic agent is actually functioning as a non-mutagenic tumor promoter rather than an “initiating carcinogen”; see Section 11.11).

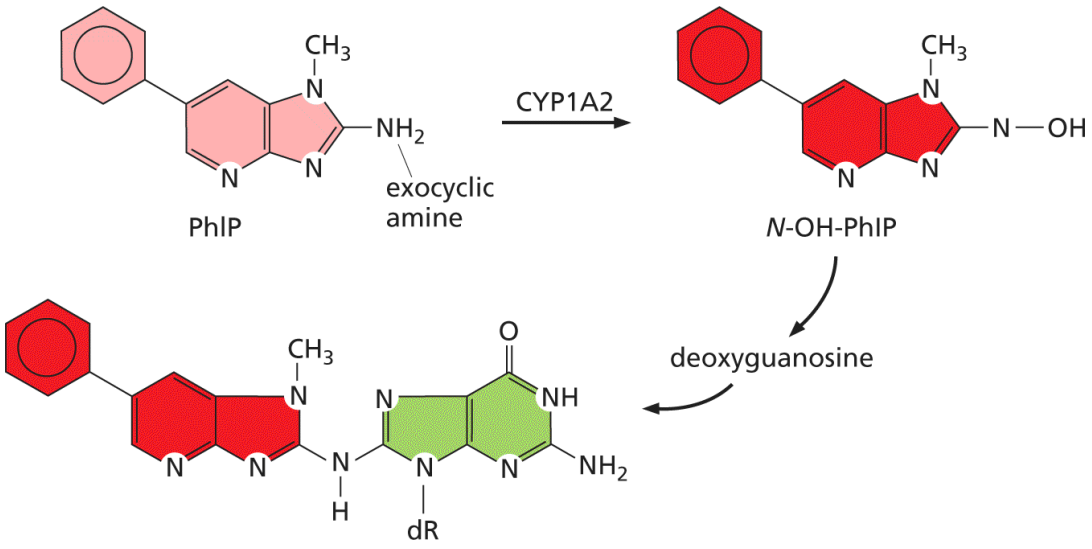
Another widely studied example of carcinogens of exogenous origin involves the heterocyclic amines (HCAs), a class of molecules that are formed in large amounts when meats of various sorts are cooked at high temperatures (**Figure 12.16A**). These compounds arise through the chemical reactions that take place between naturally occurring molecular species in cells, notably creatine, glucose phosphates, dipeptides, and free amino acids. The HCAs are undoubtedly carcinogenic. For example, the most abundant of these compounds in meats cooked at high temperature—2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine (PhIP)—is capable of inducing colon and breast carcinomas in rats and lymphomas in mice. PhIP is recognized as being the principal HCA in the human diet. Nonetheless, these and other observations still do not prove that these chemical species are actual causal agents of significant numbers of

human tumors, and alternative mechanistic models of meat-induced carcinogenesis have been proposed (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.3**).



The ten Heterocyclic amines. Six of these have the same basic structure, namely: At the center is a five-ring containing four carbons and a nitrogen. The two carbons on the left are also part of a six-carbon ring, while the two carbons on the right of the five-ring are also part of a six ring that contains five carbons and one nitrogen. The six amines with this structure are labeled T r p-P-1, Glue P 1, A alpha C, T r p-P-2, Glue P-2, and M e A alpha C. They differ in the assortment of methyl and amino groups attached to the rings at various points. Three amines have a different basic structure, namely: At the center is a six-carbon ring. The two carbons on the left are also part of a six-ring containing one or two nitrogens, while the two carbons on the upper right of the middle six-ring are also part of a five-ring that contains three carbons and two nitrogens. The three amines with this structure are labeled I Q, Mel Q x, and Mel Q. Again, they differ in their assortment of attached methyl and amino groups. Finally, one Heterocyclic amine has a unique basic structure, namely: at the center is a six-ring containing one carbon. The two carbons on the right are also part of a five-ring that contains three carbons and two nitrogens. One carbon on the left of the central six-ring has an attached phenyl group. This amine is labeled P h l P.

(A)



P h l P is converted by C Y P1A2 into N-O H-P h I P, which then combines with deoxyguanosine to form a mutagenic adduct.

(B)

Figure 12.16 Heterocyclic amines (A) The 10 heterocyclic amines (HCAs) shown here are the most common HCAs to which humans are exposed. This class of compounds derives its name from being composed of multiple fused rings, which are generally formed from both carbon and nitrogen and bear one or more exocyclic amine groups protruding from the ring structure. HCAs arise through cooking foods, notably red meats, at high temperature. PhIP has been estimated to constitute two-thirds of the total dietary intake of HCAs among Americans. (B) The oxidation of the exocyclic amine of PhIP (2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; *pink*) by CYP1A2, a cytochrome P450, leads to the highly reactive compound *N*-OH-PhIP (*red*). It can react with the 8-C of deoxyguanosine (*green*) to form a mutagenic adduct (*lower left*). (A, from T. Sugimura, *Carcinogenesis* 21:387–395, 2000. With permission from Oxford University Press. B, adapted from M. Nagao and T. Sugimura, eds., Food-Borne Carcinogens. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2000.)

Once heterocyclic amines have entered into cells, CYPs are employed by the cells to oxidize these molecules. Some CYPs will oxidize the rings of heterocyclic amines, whereas others will oxidize the exocyclic amine groups, that is, those that protrude from the rings. Ring oxidation by CYPs leads to successful detoxification; amine group oxidation, however, leads to the formation of highly reactive compounds that can readily form covalent bonds with proteins and DNA (Figure 12.16B). Although these and other chemical conversions of HCAs are largely achieved in the liver, the

resulting reactive molecules often survive long enough to pass via the circulation into other organs where they may exercise their mutagenic activity. These various examples, only a few among many that could be cited here, illustrate how the detoxifying enzymes in our tissues, often present in high concentration in liver cells, yield genotoxic compounds rather than the end products intended by evolution—harmless, readily excretable chemical species. This discussion also raises questions about exposure to potentially mutagenic synthetic compounds and their role in human carcinogenesis (**Sidebar 12.4**).

Sidebar 12.4 Do synthetic chemicals contribute to human cancer burden?

The discussions of xenobiotic activation and inactivation lead inevitably to another question: What are the origins and the actual daily burdens of these compounds that our various tissues must routinely contend with? And among the xenobiotics, do synthetic carcinogens, such as the much-feared pesticides, contribute substantially to this burden?

Bruce Ames, of the Ames test (see Figure 2.21), has estimated that, by eating naturally occurring foodstuffs, humans are exposed on a daily basis to between 5000 and 10,000 distinct natural chemical compounds and their metabolic breakdown products. Included among these are about 2000 mg of burnt material (the products of cooking food at high temperatures) and 1500 mg of naturally occurring pesticides (manufactured by plants to protect themselves against insect predators). In contrast, the average daily exposure to all synthetic pesticide residues contaminating the food chain is about 0.1 mg.

About half of the naturally occurring plant pesticides are found to be carcinogenic when tested in laboratory rodents using standard protocols. Because (1) synthetic pesticides are as likely to register as carcinogens in rodent tests as are randomly chosen compounds of natural (that is, plant) origin, because (2) plant-derived compounds, such as those in the vegetables we eat, are generally presumed to be safe, and because (3) concentrations of synthetic pollutants in the food chain are many orders of magnitude below the natural (and equivalently carcinogenic) plant compounds, it is questionable whether synthetic pesticides are ever responsible for significant numbers of human cancers in Western populations. It may well be that the contributions of xenobiotic chemical species to human cancer formation (with the exception of tobacco combustion products and the products of cooking food at high temperature) are limited largely to those chemicals that are encountered repeatedly and at very high concentrations in certain occupations, such as agricultural workers who handle large quantities of pesticides routinely.

As discussed in Section 12.13, the patterns of mutations documented in cancer cell genomes by DNA sequencing analyses often provide clues about the identity of the responsible mutagenic agent, because many of the mutagenic processes described above leave behind characteristic mutational signatures, such as the dipyrimidine mutations associated with UV radiation.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ionizing radiation
: A type of high-energy radiation that has enough energy to remove an electron from an atom or molecule, causing it to become ionized.

electrophilic
: Referring to a molecule that seeks out and reacts with electron-rich substrates or molecular partners.

alkylating
: Capable of attaching covalently an alkyl group or similarly structured organic chemical group to a substrate such as a DNA base, usually resulting in the replacement of a proton in the substrate with the organic group, thereby forming a covalent bond.

xenobiotic
: (n., adj.) A chemical species that originates outside of the body of an organism and is foreign to its normal metabolism.

procarcinogen
: A chemical compound that is relatively nonreactive chemically, but can be converted into a highly reactive carcinogen, usually through metabolic processes. *See also* **ultimate carcinogen**.

ultimate carcinogen
: A chemical compound that is able to directly contribute to the induction of cancer without further chemical modification, usually by direct chemical interaction with DNA, thereby altering the chemical structure of the latter. *See also* **procarcinogen**.

adduct
: Product of covalently linking a chemically reactive molecule to a targeted substrate molecule, such as the addition of a reactive mutagenic molecule to a base in the DNA.

pneumocyte
: Epithelial cell lining the alveoli of the lungs that is responsible for gas exchange with the blood and the secretion of surfactant protein.

heterocyclic amine
: Any of various carcinogenic amines formed when creatine or creatinine reacts with free amino acids and sugars in meat cooked at high temperatures.

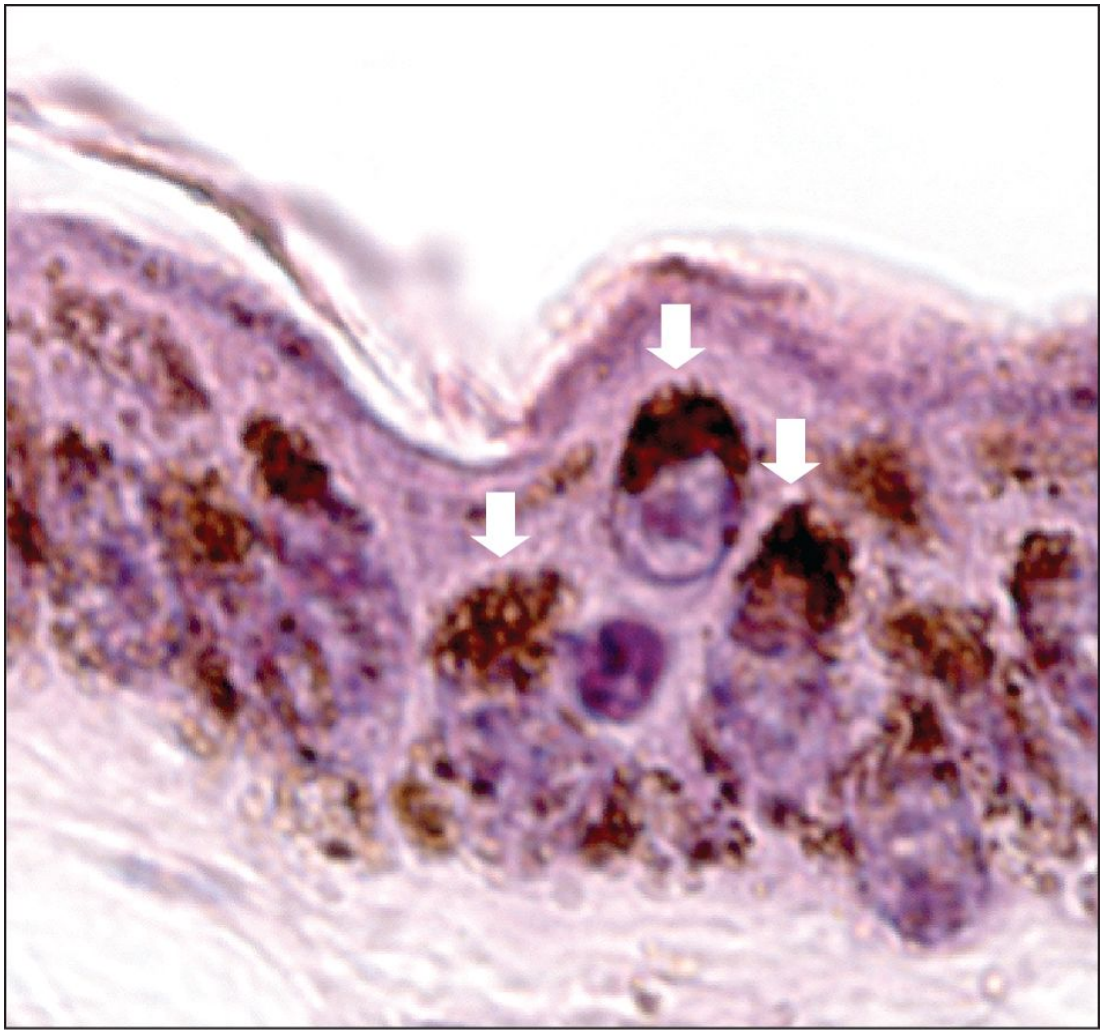
exocyclic
: Referring to a chemical group that protrudes from the ring moiety of a molecule such as a DNA base.

cytochrome P450 enzymes
: A family of enzymes that function to oxidize steroids, fatty acids, and xenobiotics, and thereby aid in the clearance of various compounds.

OceanofPDF.com

12.6 Cells deploy a variety of defenses to protect DNA molecules from attack by mutagens

The most effective way for a cell to defend its genome from disruption by mutagenic agents is to *physically* shield its DNA molecules from direct attack. In the case of ultraviolet rays from the sun, these penetrate poorly into the body's tissues, leaving the cells of the skin and pigmented cells in the retina as the only vulnerable targets of mutation. The skin shields itself from UV radiation using the melanin pigment that is transferred by melanocytes to keratinocytes located in the basal region of the epidermis (the epithelial layer of the skin; **Figure 12.17**).



A stained sample of human skin tissue, seen in cross section. White arrows indicate nuclei with dark protective caps on the side facing the skin surface.

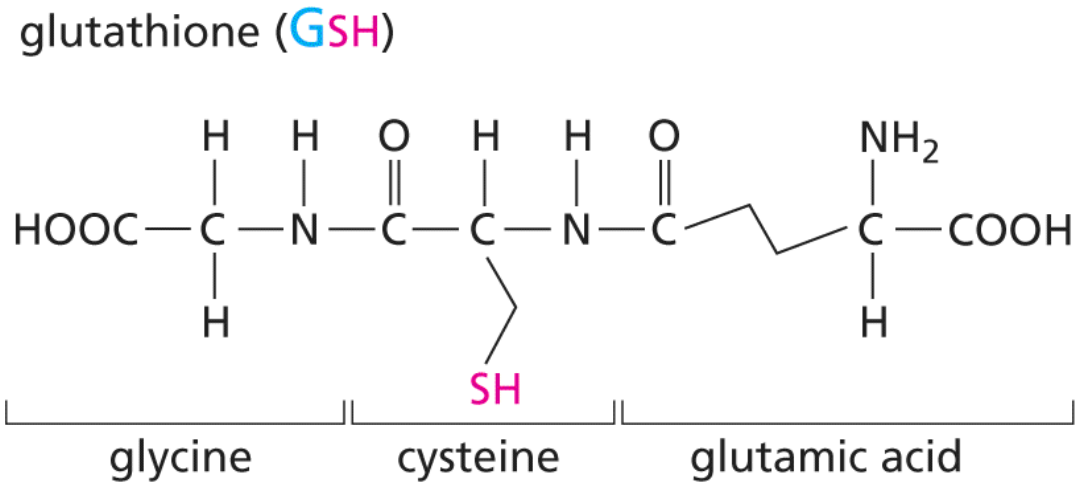
Figure 12.17 Physical shielding of keratinocyte nuclei from ultraviolet radiation The main protection that keratinocytes in the skin have from ultraviolet (UV) radiation, notably UVB photons, derives from the melanosomes—vesicles carrying melanin pigment that have been transferred from melanocytes into keratinocytes in the basal layers of the epidermis. As seen here, once the melanosomes are acquired by the keratinocytes, they are assembled into tiny sun umbrellas (sometimes called supranuclear caps) that sit above keratinocyte nuclei (*arrows*) and shield them from visible and, more importantly, UVB radiation. Keratinocyte nuclei that lack these umbrellas sustain as much as fourfold more UV-induced DNA damage than those that carry them. Moreover, redheads, who produce little or no black eumelanin pigment in their hair and skin (but do make the red/yellow pheomelanin), have an almost fourfold increased risk of developing melanoma relative to those with dark brown or black hair. (Courtesy of D.E. Fisher.)

Skin color in humans is determined by the types and amounts of melanin that are donated by the melanocytes to the keratinocytes. The role of this pigmentation in cancer pathogenesis is highlighted by the oft-cited case of skin cancers in Australia. There, a high flux of UV radiation (because of proximity to the equator) and a lightly pigmented population (deriving until recently largely from the British Isles) combine to create the world's highest incidence of these diseases. In Africa, in contrast, the darkly pigmented human populations living at similar latitudes rarely experience skin cancers. In the case of X-rays and cosmic radiation, by contrast, no effective physical shielding can be erected by the body because these types of radiation can penetrate easily through all biological substances.

These options for protection against physical carcinogens contrast with the large number of mechanisms that cells can deploy to intercept *chemical* carcinogens before they have had the opportunity to damage the cellular genome. The ambushing of ROS and free radicals is the job of a variety of enzymes, including superoxide dismutase and catalase; they collaborate to detoxify an ROS into unreactive forms of oxygen. The ROS may also be intercepted by a series of free-radical scavengers, including vitamin C, α-tocopherol (vitamin E), bilirubin, and urate. These molecules react chemically with the ROS, thereby detoxifying them.

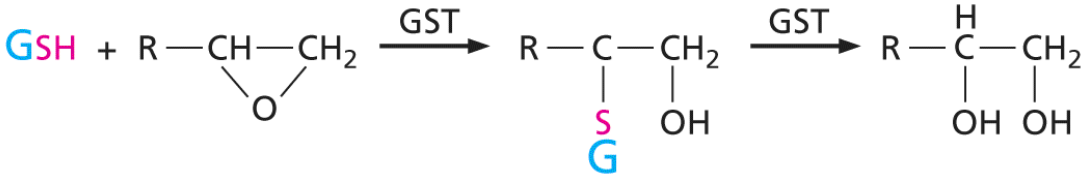
Yet another important line of defense is erected by enzymes of the class termed glutathione ***S***-transferases (GSTs), which function to covalently link electrophilic compounds, and thus many carcinogens, with glutathione, thereby detoxifying these compounds and preparing them for further metabolism and excretion (**Figure 12.18A**

and B). Significantly, as many as 90% of human prostate adenocarcinomas exhibit a shutdown of glutathione *S*-transferase-π (GST-π) expression as a result of methylation of the promoter of the *GSTP* gene (Figure 12.18C; see Section 7.7). Frequent inactivation of this gene has been reported as well in a number of other human carcinomas. This loss of GST-π expression, which often occurs relatively early in tumor progression, suggests that premalignant prostate tumor cells acquire a distinct advantage by inactivating this gene, thereby increasing the mutability of their genomes. Thus, without this enzyme to defuse certain carcinogens, the genomes of these prostate epithelial cells are attacked more often by actively mutagenic carcinogens; the resulting increased rate of mutagenesis likely accelerates the forward march of tumor progression. Another connection between GSTs and other genes involved in carcinogen metabolism and cancer is discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 12.4**.



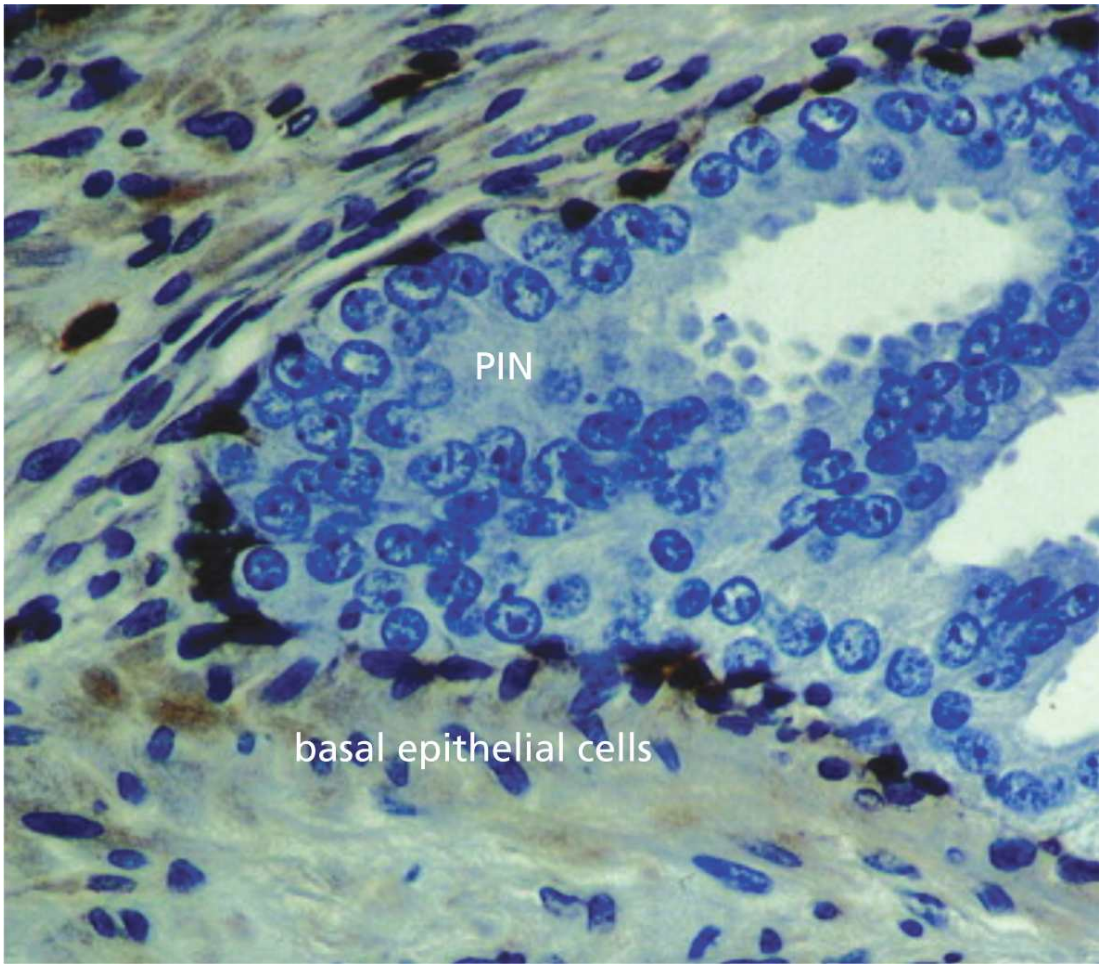
The chemical structure of glutathione. It consists of three amino acids chained together in a row: glycine, cysteine, and glutamic acid.

(A)



A two-step reaction in which Glutathione in the presence of G S T combines with an epoxide and then is replaced by a hydroxy group.

(B)



A histology image of a prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia, or P I N, surrounded by basal epithelial cells. The nuclei in the P I N are larger and rounder than those in the epithelial cells.

(C)

Figure 12.18 Glutathione *S*-transferase and its loss from tumors (A) Glutathione (GSH) is an unusual tripeptide in which a glutamic acid is attached to the amino group of cysteine via the carboxyl side chain of the glutamic acid. (B) Glutathione *S*-transferase (GST) enzymes use the sulfhydryl (SH; *pink*) group of glutathione's cysteine residue to detoxify a number of reactive compounds before the latter are able to react with cellular target molecules, such as DNA. Shown here is a typical reaction mediated by a GST in which the SH group of glutathione is used to disrupt the highly reactive epoxide group of a compound that has suffered oxidation (where R can be any of a variety of chemical groups). (C) As many as 90% of prostate carcinomas show the loss of expression of an important glutathione *S*-transferase, GST-π; this deprives the tumor cells of the means to detoxify many electrophilic mutagens. In many of these cases, loss of GST-π

expression is traceable to methylation of the GSTP1 promoter. In the premalignant PIN (prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia) lesion—a benign precursor of prostate carcinoma—shown here, use of an antibody reactive with GST-π demonstrates the presence of GST-π in the basal epithelial cells (*dark brown, left side*) but the loss of all GST-π expression in the luminal epithelial cells forming the PIN (*light blue, right side*). The luminal epithelial cells are revealed by DAPI, a stain that is specific for DNA (*blue*). (C, from C. Jeronimo et al., *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev*. 11:445–450, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

melanin
: A brown-black or red-brown pigment that is synthesized by melanocytes and, in the skin, transferred to basal keratinocytes, thereby creating pigmentation of the skin; alternatively, pigment is transferred to cells within the iris of the eye.

melanocyte
: Cell of neural crest origin that creates pigmentation of the skin and iris.

superoxide dismutase
: An enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of 2 superoxide molecules into one diatomic oxygen molecule (O_2) and one hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) molecule. *See also* **superoxide**.

catalase
: An enzyme that catalyzes the reaction by which hydrogen peroxide is decomposed to water and oxygen.

glutathione-
: *S* -**transferase** A family of enzymes that catalyze the conjugation of the reduced form of glutathione (GSH) to xenobiotic compounds for the purpose of detoxification.

OceanofPDF.com

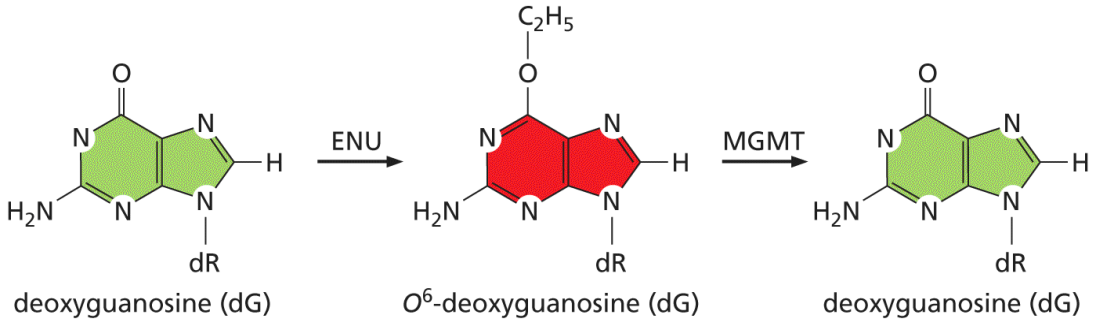
12.7 Repair enzymes fix DNA that has been altered by mutagens

If genotoxic chemicals are not intercepted before they attack DNA, mammalian cells have a backup strategy for minimizing the genetic damage caused by these potential carcinogens. An elaborate DNA repair system exists to continuously monitor the integrity of the genome, to remove inappropriate bases or nucleotides created by chemical or physical attack, and to replace them with the bases/nucleotides that occupied those sites in the DNA prior to the attack. Components of this system also work to stitch together double helices that have been broken by genotoxic agents or by accident during replication. Altogether, mammalian cells depend on more than 160 distinct proteins to ensure that damage to DNA is unlikely to result in this damage being transmitted in the form of a mutation to daughter cells. Some of these DNA repair proteins figure large in the process of human carcinogenesis, because defects in these proteins result in increased rates of mutation, thereby accelerating the overall rate of tumor progression.

Cells deploy a wide variety of enzymes to accomplish the very challenging task of restoring normal DNA structure. Importantly, these functions differ from the mismatch repair (MMR) enzymes described above (see Section 12.3), because the MMR enzymes are largely focused on detecting nucleotides of normal structure that have recently been incorporated by DNA polymerases into the wrong positions, whereas the repair mechanisms discussed in this section detect nucleotides of abnormal chemical structure independent of their origin or location in the genome.

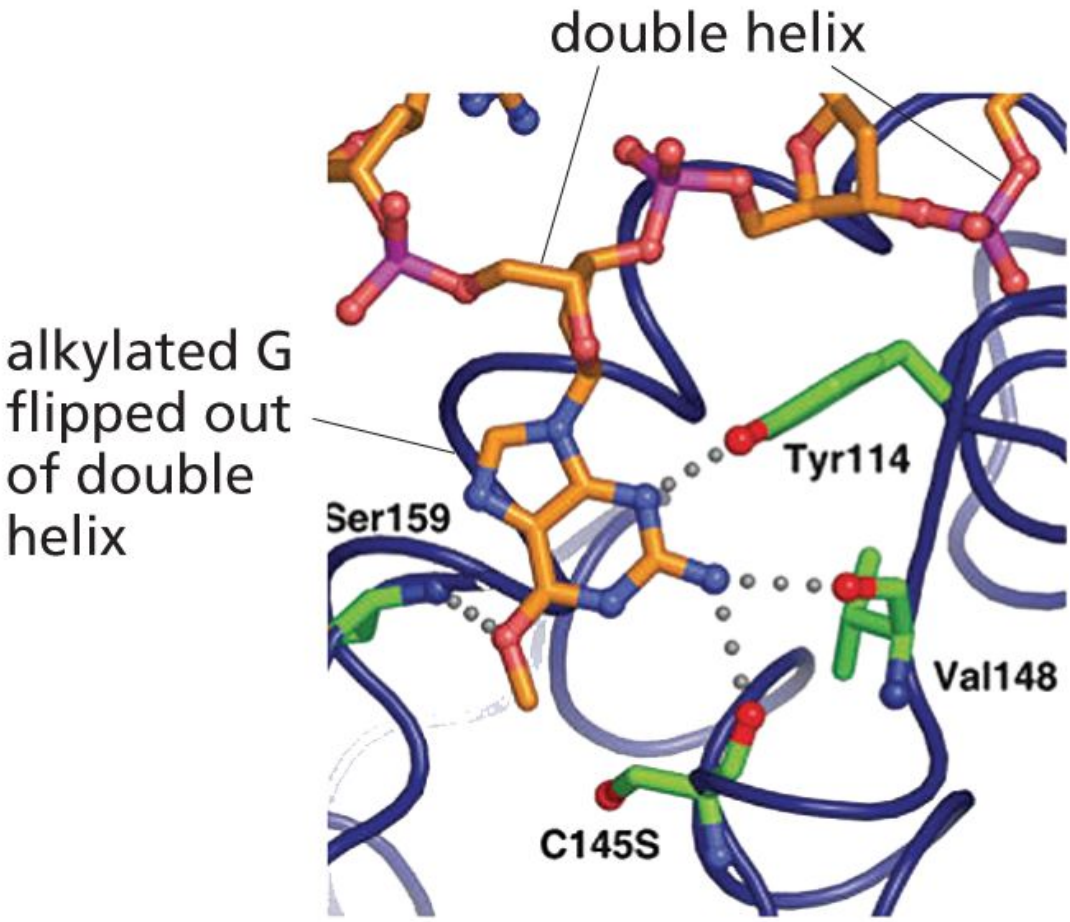
The simplest strategy for restoring the structure of chemically altered DNA involves an enzyme-catalyzed reversal of the chemical reaction that initially created the altered base. For example, one type of DNA alkyltransferase removes methyl and ethyl adducts from the O^6 position of guanine, thereby restoring the structure of the normal base (**Figure 12.19A and B**). The importance of this enzyme [O^6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase (MGMT), often referred to simply as DNA alkyltransferase] in the development of certain kinds of human tumors is suggested by observations that the *MGMT* gene is silenced by promoter methylation in as many as 40% of gliomas and colorectal tumors and in about 25% of non-small-cell carcinomas, lymphomas, and head-and-neck carcinomas. (In contrast, methylation of its promoter is not detected in a large cohort of other tumor types.) As was the case with detoxifying genes, such as the glutathione *S*-transferase-encoding *GST* alleles discussed earlier, we can imagine that the loss of MGMT's DNA repair function in certain tissues favors increased rates of mutation and hence accelerated tumor progression. (Conversely, when the *MGMT*

gene, in the form of a transgene, is experimentally overexpressed in the mouse mammary gland or thymus, such expression renders these tissues quite resistant to the otherwise potently carcinogenic effects of methylnitrosourea, a widely used alkylating mutagen; see, for example, Figure 12.19C).



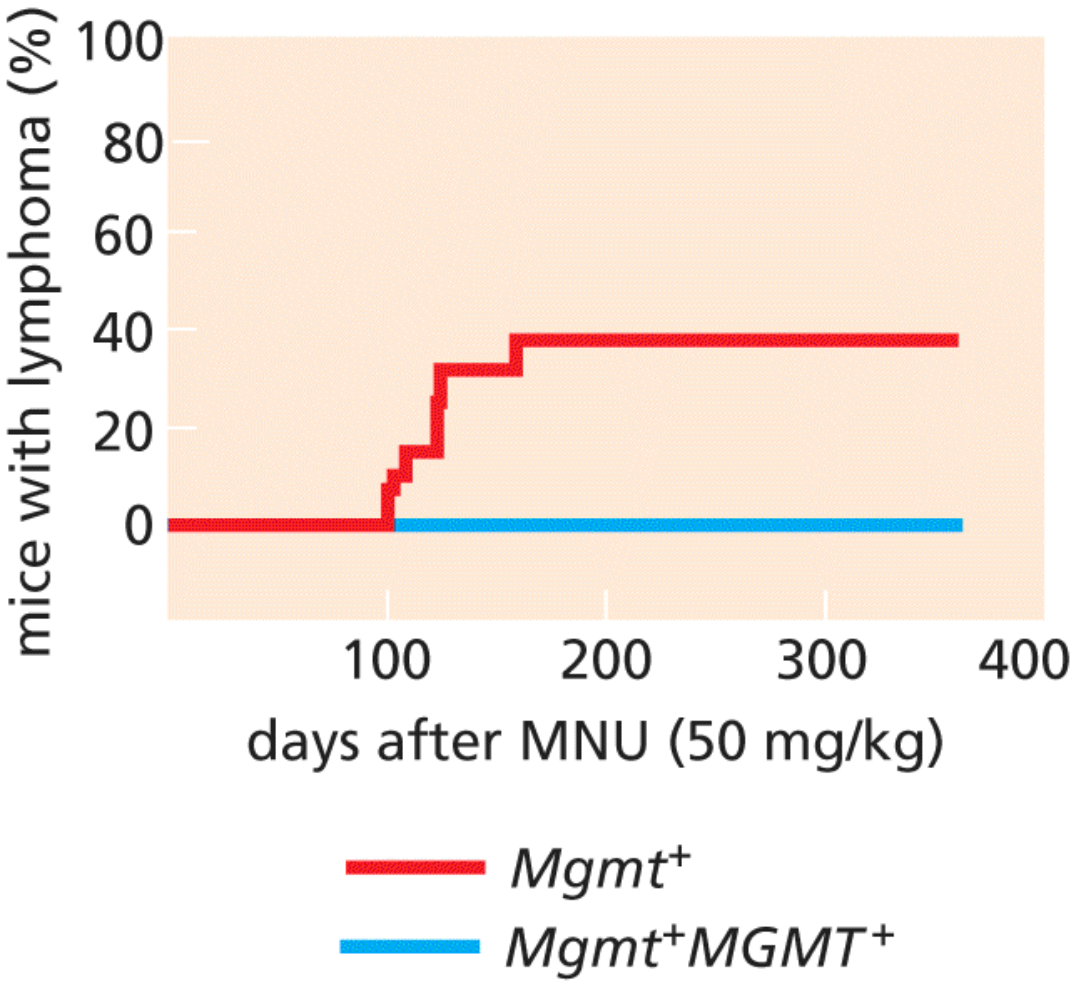
Deoxyguanosine is converted by E N U into O6-deoxyguanosine, which has an ethyl group attached to the exocyclic oxygen of deoxyguanosine. M G M T converts this back to deoxyguanosine.

(A)



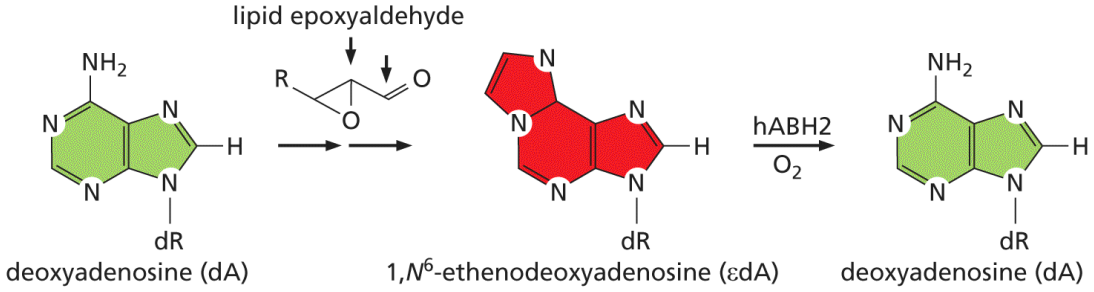
A molecular model showing M G M T at work removing the alkyl group from O6-deoxyguanosine. Four sites on M G M T play a role; they are labeled T y r 1 14, V “a” l 1 48, C 1 45 S, and S e r 1 59. The alkylated guanosine is flipped out of the double helix.

(B)



A line graph showing the percentage of mice with lymphoma as a function of time. Two types of mice were exposed to M N U, 50 milligrams per kilogram of body weight. Mice forced to overexpress the MGMT enzyme remained at 0 percent lymphoma for a full year, whereas wild-type mice began to develop lymphoma about 100 days after M N U exposure. The percentage eventually rose to 40 percent after just before 200 days and then leveled off.

(C)



A lipid epoxyaldehyde converts deoxyadenosine into 1,N6-ethenodeoxyadenosine. h A B H2 and oxygen convert this back to deoxyadenosine.

(D)

Figure 12.19 Restoration of normal base structure by dealkylating repair enzymes (A) The O^6 position of guanosine is especially vulnerable to alkylation by agents such as ethylnitrosourea (ENU). Unlike many DNA repair enzymes, which respond to altered bases by excising them or the entire nucleotide containing them from the DNA, the enzyme O^6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase (MGMT; also known as O^6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase, AGT) restores an altered deoxyguanosine to its normal structure. It does so by removing the alkyl group from the O^6 atom of guanine. In the absence of such repair, the alkylated deoxyguanosine often leads to a G>A transition mutation. (B) Structural analyses of DNA repair proteins have revealed much about how they function. In the case of the MGMT protein, this enzyme (*below, light and dark blue*) works by flipping the damaged base out of the double helix before removing the alkyl group. Moreover, the reaction between enzyme and substrate is stoichiometric, in that the cysteine 145 (C145S) residue (*below*, *red and green*) in the enzyme's active site becomes irreversibly alkylated following restoration of normal guanine structure; hence, each enzyme molecule is able to dealkylate only a single alkylated deoxyguanosine. (C) The effects of MGMT ectopic expression are shown for mice that were exposed to the alkylating carcinogen methylnitrosourea (MNU), which attaches methyl groups to guanosine. Wild-type mice ($Mgmt^+$) were highly susceptible to the induction of thymic lymphomas (*red curve*), whereas transgenic mice that were forced to overexpress the MGMT enzyme because of a transgene in their germ line ($Mgmt^+$ $MGMT^+$, *blue line*) were protected from developing these tumors. (D) Highly reactive lipid epoxyaldehydes (*shown here*) and peroxides (*not shown*), which are common in inflamed tissues, can attack and modify deoxyadenosine (*shown here*) as well as other DNA bases (*not shown*). The AlkB enzyme of bacteria can remove the resulting adducts as well as simpler methyl adducts, such as those shown in Figure 12.12C; a mammalian homolog of AlkB, hABH2 (*indicated here*), acts similarly in human cells. (A, adapted from S.L. Gerson, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4:296–307, 2004. B, from D.S. Daniels et al., *Nat. Struct. Mol. Biol*. 11:714–720, 2004. With permission from Nature. C, from L.L. Dumenco et al., *Science* 259:219–222, 1993. With permission from AAAS.)

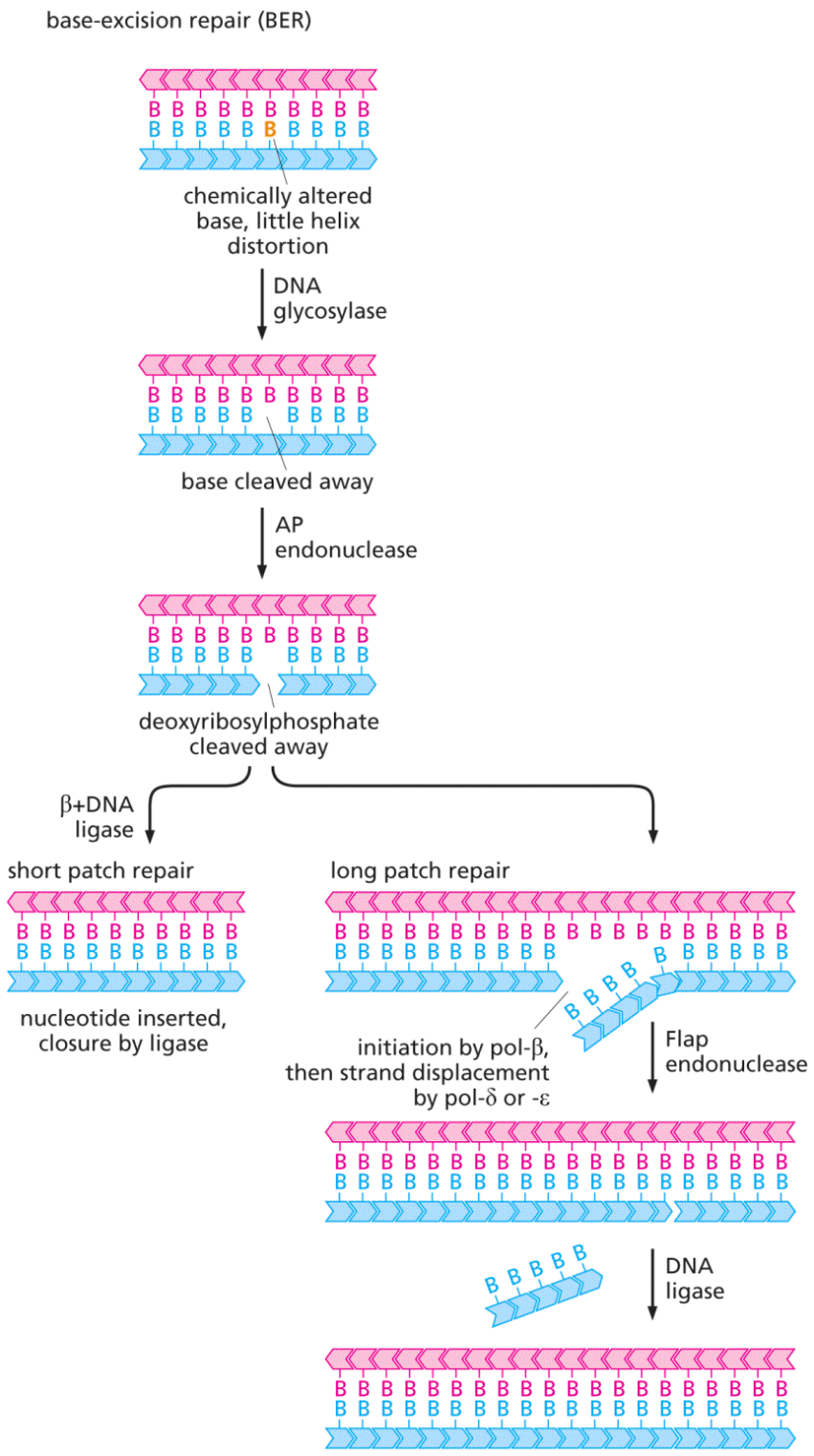
Expression of this and other repair enzymes can also influence the *types* of tumors caused by certain carcinogens in animal models of cancer, and quite possibly in

humans (**Sidebar 12.5**). Moreover, these DNA repair enzymes can influence responses to therapy. In one instance, after a group of glioblastoma patients whose tumors expressed normal levels of the MGMT enzyme were treated with temozolomide, an alkylating chemotherapeutic agent, they survived for another 12 months. Other patients in the same cohort, whose cancer cells expressed only very low levels of MGMT (from repression of the *MGMT* gene through promoter methylation), survived for 22 months after therapy—almost twice as long. This observation, subsequently extended in a number of other clinical studies, indicates that normally expressed levels of the MGMT enzyme are very effective in removing the methyl groups attached to DNA by the chemotherapeutic drug, thereby blunting its cytotoxic effects. Cells also use other mechanisms to deal with methylated bases (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.5**).

Sidebar 12.5 Expression patterns of repair enzymes explain certain tissue-specific susceptibilities to cancer

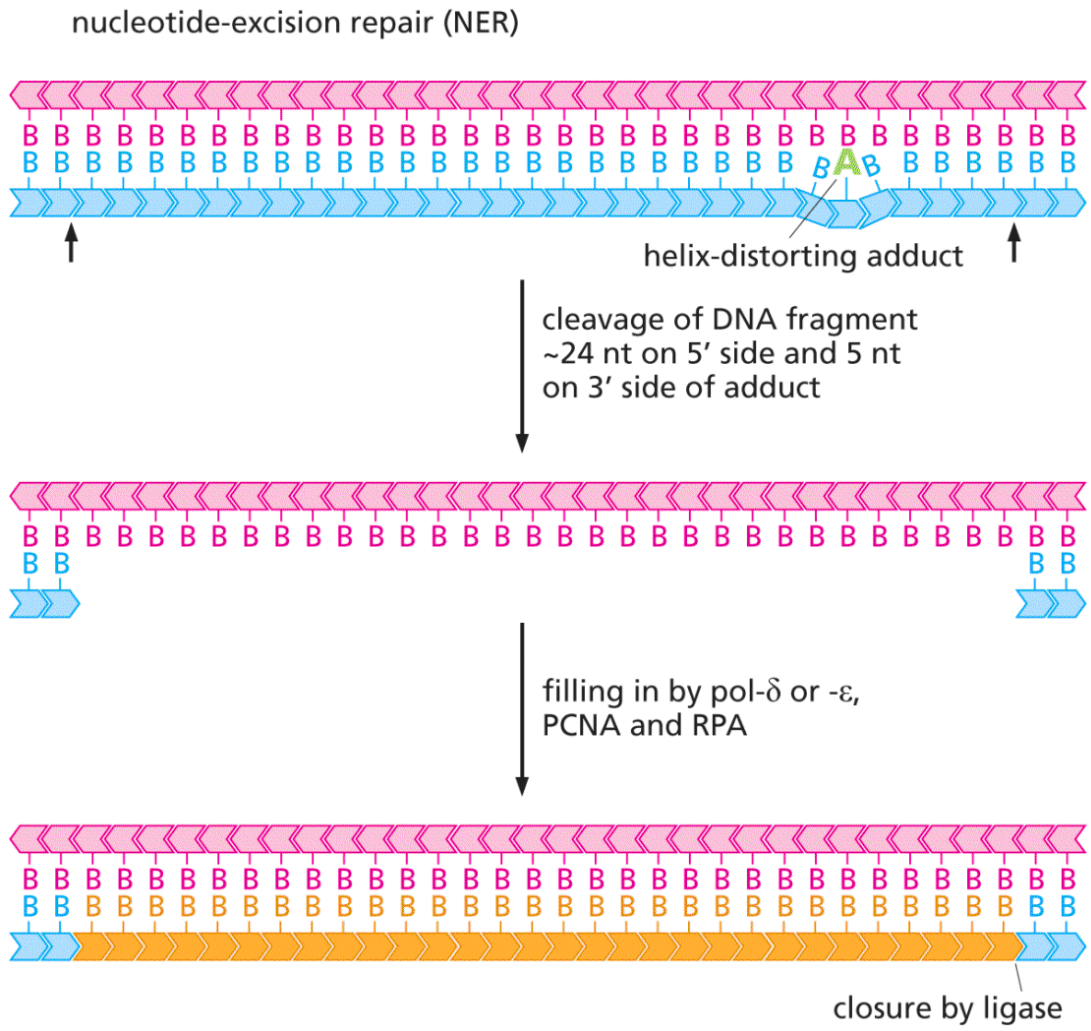
Mammalian cells seem to express only a single MGMT enzyme. The importance of this activity in influencing carcinogenesis is indicated by experiments in which pregnant rats are exposed to the carcinogen *N*-ethylnitrosourea (ENU) during the fifteenth day of gestation. Virtually all the rat pups that are born succumb to neuroectodermal tumors arising in the central nervous system several months after birth. The MGMT enzyme is expressed at significant levels throughout the bodies of developing embryos and newborns but is only minimally expressed in the central nervous system, which explains the peculiar ability of ENU to preferentially induce these tumors. Consequently, alkylated guanine residues that are formed in the cells of the nervous system persist rather than being quickly removed and are ultimately able to generate the point mutations that are responsible for the creation of the oncogenes in the resulting tumors. In one experiment conducted with newborn rats that had been exposed *in utero* to ENU or the related alkylating agent MNU (*N*-methylnitrosourea), the levels of O^6-alkylguanine adducts surviving in unrepaired form a week after exposure to these carcinogens were 20-fold (ENU) and 90-fold (MNU) higher in brain DNA than in liver DNA.

Far more important than these dealkylating enzymes, however, are the numerous cellular enzymes that recognize chemically altered bases in the DNA and respond in two other ways, depending on the specific modifications of the DNA. In some cases, specialized enzymes will cleave the bond linking a modified base to the deoxyribose sugar, the process of base-excision repair (BER; **Figure 12.20A**). In other cases, the entire nucleotide containing both the base and associated deoxyribose will be cut out, this being the process termed nucleotide-excision repair (NER; see Figure 12.20B).



Base-excision repair, or B E R. A chemically altered base produces little helix distortion. D N A glycosylase cleaves away the base. A P endonuclease then cleaves away the deoxyribosylphosphate to which the base was attached. From here, the repair may be either short-patch or long-patch. In short-patch

repair, polymerase beta and D N A ligase perform nucleotide insertion and close the gap. In long-patch repair, polymerase beta initiates the repair, and a D N A polymerase delta or epsilon displaces a longer strand at the repair site. Flap endonuclease removes the displaced strand, and a ligase seals the site. (A)



Nucleotide-excision repair, or N E R. This is necessary in the case of a helix-distorting adduct. Repair begins with cleavage of a D N A fragment that is about 24 nucleotides long on the 5 prime side of the adduct and 5 nucleotides long on the 3 prime side. The gap is filled by polymerase alpha or beta, as well as P C N A and R P A. The repair site is finally closed by a ligase.

(B)

Figure 12.20 Base- and nucleotide-excision repair (A) Base-excision repair (BER) is achieved by enzymes that recognize chemically altered bases having

minimal helix-distorting effect. These DNA N-glycosylase enzymes cleave the glycosyl bond linking the altered base (*yellow*) and the deoxyribose. The base-free deoxyribosylphosphate is then excised by an enzyme—apurinic/apyrimidinic endonuclease (APE)—specialized to remove base-free sugars. The resulting single nucleotide gap is filled by DNA polymerase β and sealed by a DNA ligase. In fact, there are two forms of BER. A single nucleotide may be excised and the gap may be filled in by a DNA polymerase (pol-β) and ligated (short patch repair). Alternatively, a strand-displacing DNA polymerase (δ or ε) may, following excision by APE and the addition, as before, of a single base by pol-β, extend the 3′ strand by several nucleotides beyond the original gap. The resulting displaced strand is removed by a Flap endonuclease and the remaining lesion is sealed by a ligase (long patch repair). (B) Nucleotide-excision repair (NER) is accomplished by enzymes that recognize bulky, helix-distorting lesions and cleave the flanking oligonucleotide sequences at sites approximately 24 nucleotides (nt) on the 5′ side and about 5 nucleotides on the 3′ side. The resulting approximately 29-nt single-strand gap in the DNA is then filled by DNA polymerase δ or ε, acting together with PCNA (proliferating-cell nuclear antigen) and RPA (which binds to single-strand DNA), and is finally sealed by a DNA ligase. The chevrons represent deoxyribose nucleotides, all pointing in a 5′-to-3′ direction.

Base-excision repair (BER) tends to repair lesions in the DNA that derive from endogenous sources, such as those attributed to the reactive oxygen species (ROS) and depurination events described earlier (Section 12.4). Nucleotide-excision repair (NER), in contrast, largely repairs lesions created by exogenous agents, such as UV photons and chemical carcinogens (for example, see Figures 12.12 and 12.14). BER seems to concentrate on fixing lesions that do not create structural distortions of the DNA double helix, whereas NER directs its attention to bulky, helix-distorting alterations.

BER is initiated by a group of DNA glycosylases, each specialized to recognize an abnormal base and cleave its covalent bond to deoxyribose. For example, a uracil base in the DNA is recognized readily by the proteins responsible for BER because U is not normally present in DNA. U is removed by the enzyme uracil-DNA glycosylase and soon replaced, usually with a C. (Figure 12.9 shows how uracil can arise in DNA through the spontaneous deamination of cytosine.) However, the presence of an inappropriately located thymine in DNA presents a quandary for these repair enzymes because T is a normal constituent of DNA. As we have read, 5-methyl-C occasionally undergoes spontaneous deamination, leading to a T, and thus to T:G base pairs (see Figure 12.9). In fact, evolution has responded to this problem by implanting a T:G glycosylase enzyme in our cells, which is designed specifically to excise T’s that happen to arise opposite G’s. Nonetheless, it is clear that the T:G base pairs formed by this deamination occasionally escape detection by this enzyme and persist to yield

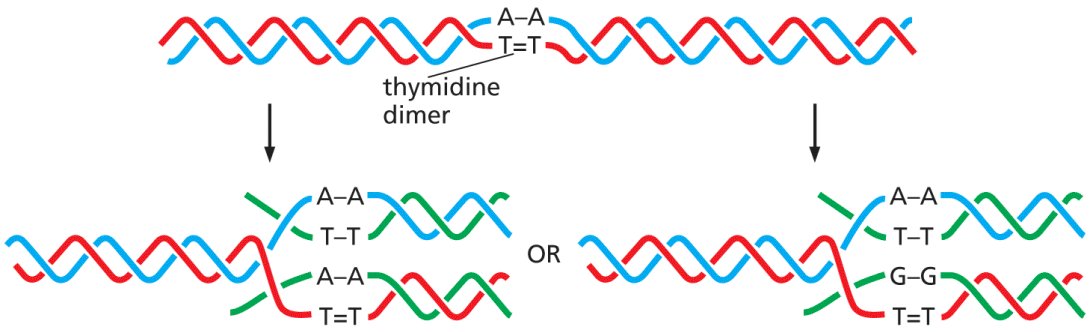
point mutations. In all of these examples, after an aberrant base is removed by a DNA glycosylase, a specialized repair system is used to restore the proper base pair (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.6**).

Nucleotide-excision repair (NER; see Figure 12.20B) is accomplished by a large multiprotein complex composed of almost two dozen subunits. This complex seems to require two distinct changes in DNA before it will initiate repair: significant distortion of the normal Watson–Crick structure of the double helix plus the presence of a chemically altered base. Once this large complex recognizes the problem, it proceeds to cleave the damaged strand upstream and downstream of the damaged base, yielding a single-strand fragment of 25 to 30 nucleotides in length, which is then removed. DNA polymerases that are specialized to fill in the resulting gap in the DNA (using the complementary, undamaged strand as a template) then take over, followed by a DNA ligase, which erases the final trace of the damage.

Included among the NER enzymes are those that can recognize and remove structures resulting from the formation of bulky base adducts (that is, those composed of complex molecular structures covalently bound to bases) created by certain exogenous mutagens, such as polycyclic hydrocarbons, heterocyclic amines, and aflatoxin B1, as well as the pyrimidine dimers formed by UV radiation (see Figure 12.12). For example, following exposure to UV radiation, cultured human cells can repair approximately 80% of their pyrimidine dimers within 24 hours. The NER apparatus active here will remove 5 nucleotides on the 3′ side of the photoproduct (the pyrimidine dimer) and 24 nucleotides on the 5′ side.

The various reactions that constitute NER can actually be divided into two subtypes. The first of these is focused specifically on the template strand of actively transcribed genes and is coupled to the actions of RNA polymerase molecules that are proceeding down the template strand during transcription; these actions are termed transcription-coupled repair (TCR). This form of specialized repair is ostensibly designed to reduce the likelihood that an RNA polymerase is stalled and thus trapped by a DNA adduct present on the strand that it is in the midst of transcribing. The second subtype of NER addresses the remainder of the genome, including the nontemplate strand of transcribed genes as well as the nontranscribed regions of the genome. This type of NER is sometimes termed global genomic repair (GGR). The p53 tumor suppressor protein activates expression of several genes encoding NER proteins involved in GGR, explaining the defectiveness of GGR in *p53*-mutant cells; in contrast, transcription-coupled repair is intact in these cells. This defect in GGR holds profound implications for the maintenance of cell genomes in the half of all human tumors in which the *p53* gene is mutant and in many of the remaining tumors in which it is compromised through various alternative mechanisms (see Figure 9.12).

As implied by much of the above discussion, the mechanisms designed to ensure genomic integrity strive to restore DNA molecules prior to their replication in S phase, lest persisting damage in template strands cause the copying of these still-mutant strands and the resulting introduction of mutations into the genomes of daughter cells and their descendants. Beyond these mechanisms, cells have yet another alternative strategy to cope with damaged DNA. This alternative—actually an act of desperation—involves DNA replication of a still-unrepaired stretch of template-strand DNA occurring in a cell that has already entered S phase. This process is termed *error-prone* DNA replication, because the replication apparatus involved must often "guess" which of the four nucleotides is appropriate for incorporation into the growing DNA strand when it encounters a still-damaged base or set of bases; these guesses are not always correct, leading quite frequently to misincorporated bases and mutant gene sequences (**Figure 12.21**).



An illustration of error during D N A repair. Initially, a double-stranded D N A has two successive adenines on one strand and, corresponding to them on the opposite strand, a defect in the form of a thymidine dimer. As the strands unwind during replication and a new strand forms on each template strand, the adenine-adenine sequence will produce a correct, error-free thymine-thymine sequence on the new strand. In most cases, the thymidine dimer will produce an adenine-adenine sequence on the new strand to match the original double-helix. However, it may instead produce an incorrect guanine-guanine sequence.

Figure 12.21 Error-prone repair Error-prone DNA synthesis occurs when an advancing DNA replication fork encounters a still-unrepaired DNA lesion, such as the thymidine dimer shown here. In most cases (left), the error-prone DNA polymerase (sometimes called a bypass polymerase) responds to this lesion in the damaged template strand (*red*) by inserting the appropriate bases (in this instance, an A–A dinucleotide) in the growing DNA strand (*green*). However, in several percent of these encounters (*right*), the error-prone polymerase will fail to properly "guess" the structure of the lesion in the template strand and will instead incorporate a G–G dinucleotide opposite the thymidine dimer.

To date, at least nine distinct mammalian error-prone human DNA polymerases have been discovered. Some of these can add a nucleotide to a growing strand even when a base in the complementary template strand is missing. Yet others can extend a nascent DNA strand, using as primer a nucleotide that has been misincorporated by another DNA polymerase. A third type can incorporate a base when the corresponding base in the complementary strand carries a bulky, covalently attached DNA adduct that has not yet been removed by nucleotide-excision repair. One of these enzymes, encoded by the *XPV* gene, is highly specialized, being able to recognize the TT thymine dimers created by UV radiation and insert two A's on the opposite strand (see Figure 12.21). Another "bypass polymerase," pol-κ, can also replicate past bulky adducts in the template strand and, in addition, advance through templates containing the much less bulky 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (see Figure 12.11A); pol-κ incorporates an A more often than a C opposite the 8-oxo-dG, helping to explain the mutagenic effects of this common product of base oxidation. Whereas the DNA polymerases responsible for the bulk of DNA synthesis in a cell have error rates as low as 10^{-5}, these error-prone polymerases generally have error rates as high as 1 misincorporated base per 100 bases replicated.

The mistakes made by the error-prone polymerases would seem to generate unacceptably high rates of mutation in cell genomes. Still, the price paid for accumulating such mutations should be balanced against the alternative: the risk of imminent death confronted by a cell whose DNA replication forks are stalled indefinitely because of difficult-to-copy lesions in its DNA.

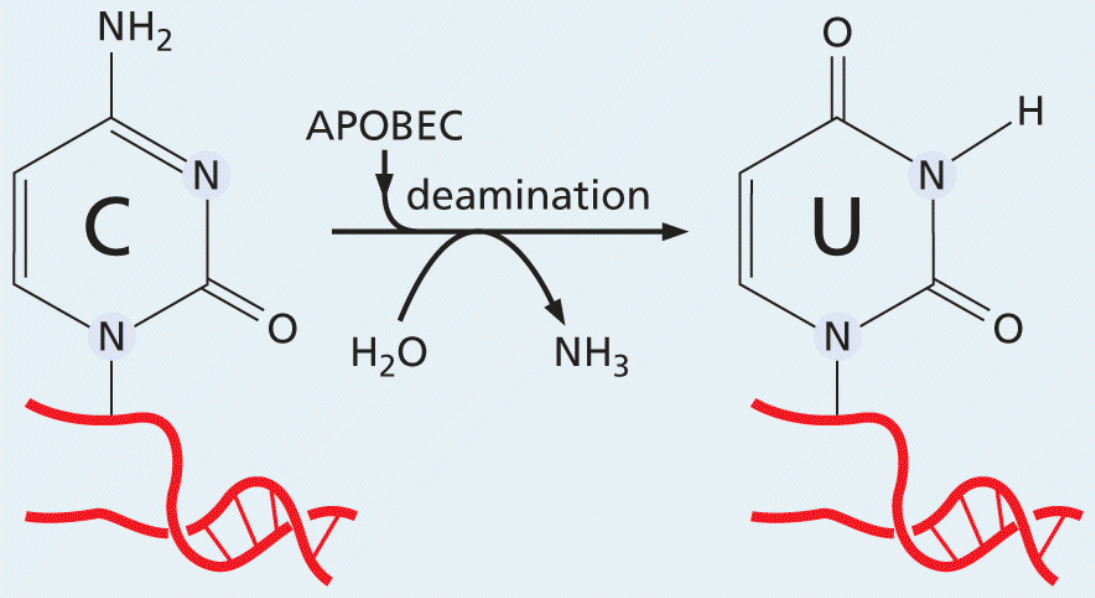
DNA polymerase β (pol-β) is error-prone for another reason: This relatively small polymerase molecule lacks the proofreading capabilities of the larger polymerase enzymes (see Section 12.3), which may explain much of its error-prone DNA replication activities. It is usually involved in replacing the nucleotides that have been removed because of BER. In a variety of ovarian carcinoma cell lines, this enzyme has been found to be overexpressed by as much as a factor of 10. The overexpression of the error-prone DNA polymerase β may represent an effective strategy that these cancer cells use to increase the mutability of their genes and hence accelerate the rate of tumor progression. In support of this idea, the forced overexpression of polymerase β in cultured human fibroblasts has been found to encourage microsatellite instability and to increase overall mutation rates as much as threefold.

Although not involved in DNA repair, the APOBEC family of cytosine deaminases is responsible for inserting mutations into the genome of normal and cancer cells. As described in **Sidebar 12.6**, these enzymes are involved in the cellular response to viral infection as well as the hypermutation of immunoglobulin genes during B-cell development. The documentation of APOBEC-mediated mutagenesis is currently increasing rapidly.

Sidebar 12.6 Normal and cancer cells may intentionally inflict damage on their own genomes

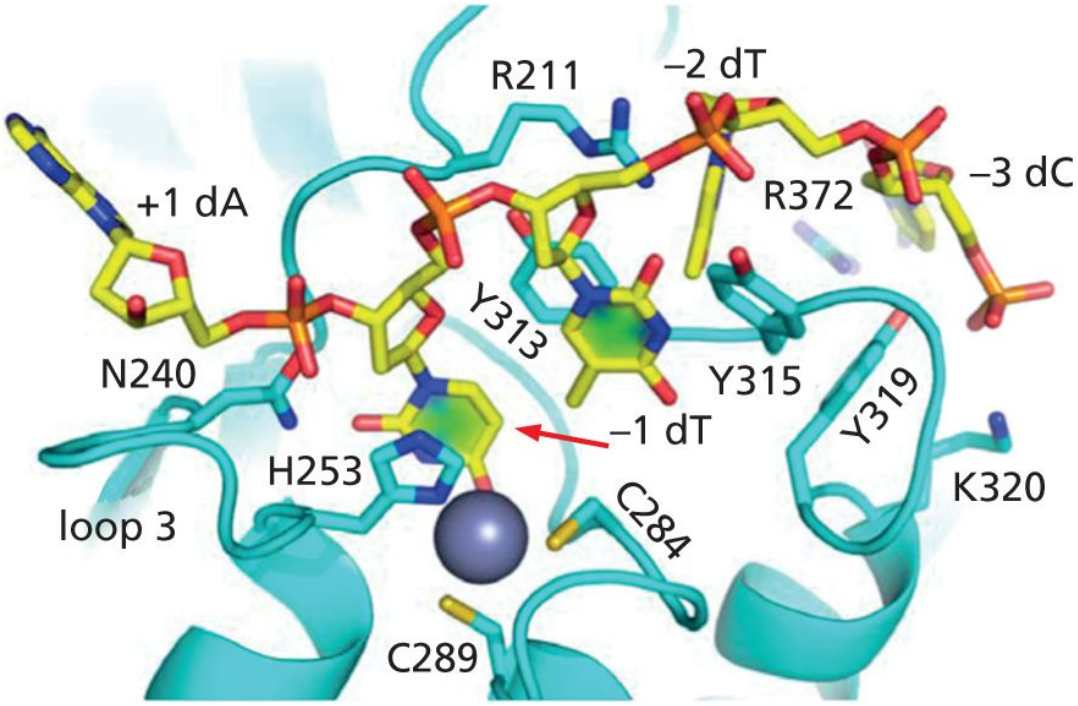
Much of the discussion in this chapter is centered around agents of exogenous origin that enter cells and inflict damage on cell genomes through a diversity of chemical and physical mechanisms. However, an unexpected source of mutagenesis is of endogenous origin and quite intentional. It derives from the APOBEC family of enzymes, which function to promote the promutagenic process of cytosine deamination. These enzymes seem to have originated in cellular defenses aimed at protecting cells against infecting RNA and DNA viruses, whose genomes could be inactivated by mutation via these enzymes; however, early in vertebrate evolution, at least one of these enzymes became specialized to diversify the genomic sequences that specify the antigen-combining sites of antibodies, a process discussed in detail in Chapter 15.

The best studied of the APOBECs is the **a**ctivation- **i**nduced cytidine **d**eaminase (AID) enzyme, which is normally responsible for deaminating cytidine bases in the 3-kb span downstream of the start site for transcription of the genes specifying antibodies and several other proteins. By stochastically converting cytidine to uridine residues in defined genomic regions (**Figure 12.22**), the APOBEC enzymes effectively insert C-to-T point mutations in the genome; in the case of immunoglobulin (antibody) genes, the resulting "somatic hypermutation" causes diversification of the antigen-binding sites of the encoded antibody molecules, enabling the immune system to develop antibodies of ever-increasing avidity for their antigen ligands. The AID enzyme seems to run amok in some human lymphomas, inserting point mutations in genes that are not its normally intended targets. And when the *AID* gene is ectopically expressed as a transgene in many tissues of the mouse, it causes high rates of T-cell lymphomas, many of which exhibit large numbers of genes, such as *myc*, with point mutations throughout their reading frames. APOBEC3B and other members of the APOBEC family have also been found to be overexpressed in solid cancers, including breast, head and neck, and lung carcinomas. As discussed below in Section 12.13, a number of cancer genome sequencing studies have implicated dysregulated APOBEC gene function in greatly increasing mutation rates in cancer.



A reaction begins with a cytosine base, part of a single strand of unwound double-stranded D N A. A P O B E C catalyzes a reaction in which H2O reacts with the cytosine to produce uracil and N H 3. This is called deamination, because the conversion of cytosine into uracil involves the amino group on the carbon-nitrogen 6 ring being replaced with a double-bonded oxygen.

(A)



A combination ribbon model and ball and stick model showing an enzyme in turquoise, a single-stranded D N A in yellow and orange, and a zinc atom as a blue sphere. A carbon-nitrogen 5 ring on the enzyme is labeled H 2 53. It lies up against the carbon-nitrogen 6 ring of cytosine in the D N A strand.

(B)

Figure 12.22 APOBEC enzymes induce mutations (A) The APOBEC family of cytosine deaminases catalyzes the deamination of cytosine residues in single-stranded DNA, producing uracil. Failure to repair these uracil residues results in C>T mutations. In addition, DNA repair intermediates such as abasic sites can also lead to C>G mutations and other outcomes. Certain APOBEC enzymes also deaminate cytosine residues in RNA. (B) Model of the active site of APOBEC3B bound to a ssDNA oligonucleotide. The target cytosine base (*red arrow*) can be seen in close proximity to the sidechain of the histidine residue at amino acid 253 (H253). H253 also coordinates a zinc atom (*blue sphere*), which is required for catalysis. (A, from C. Swanton et al., *Cancer Discov*. 5:704–712, 2015. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B, from K. Shi et al., *J. Biol. Chem*. 290:28120–28130, 2015. © 2015 ASBMB. This article is available under a Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY 4.0) license.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

temozolomide
: A chemotherapeutic drug used primarily in the treatment of certain brain tumors. It is a type of alkylating agent that causes direct DNA damage.

base-excision repair
: A form of DNA repair that initially involves cleavage by a repair enzyme of the glycosidic bond between a base and a deoxyribose, leaving behind an abasic nucleotide. *Compare* **nucleotide-excision repair**.

nucleotide-excision repair
: Type of DNA repair in which the initial step involves the excision of nucleotides (rather than bases). *Compare* **base-excision repair**.

glycosylase
: An enzyme that cleaves a glycosidic bond, such as that linking a purine or pyrimidine base to a ribose or deoxyribose sugar.

transcription-coupled repair
: A form of nucleotide excision repair (NER) in which transcribed regions of the genome are preferentially repaired. RNA polymerase stalled at DNA lesions mediates the recruitment of NER enzymes to the damage site, initiating transcription-coupled repair.

global genomic repair
: Form of nucleotide excision repair that operates on all parts of the genome.

OceanofPDF.com

12.8 Inherited defects in nucleotide-excision repair, base-excision repair, and mismatch repair lead to specific cancer susceptibility syndromes

In 1874, two Austro–Hungarian physicians, Ferdinand Hebra and Moritz Kaposi, described an unusual syndrome that involved high rates of the development of squamous and basal cell carcinomas of the skin. (Kaposi subsequently described the unusual sarcoma that bears his name; *see* Section 4.6.) As became apparent later, affected individuals have extreme sensitivity to UV radiation, and infants will often suffer severe burning of the skin after only minimal exposure to sunlight (**Sidebar 12.7**). These individuals show dry, parchment-like skin (xeroderma) and many freckles ("pigmentosum"; **Figure 12.23**). In aggregate, individuals suffering from the xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) syndrome have a 2000-fold increased risk of skin cancer before the age of 20 compared with the general population and about a 100,000-fold increased risk of squamous cell carcinoma of the tip of the tongue. Skin cancers appear in XP children with a median age of ~10 years, compared with ~60 years in the general population (**Figure 12.24**).

Sidebar 12.7 Degenerate genomes lead to sunlight sensitivity and the need for sunscreen

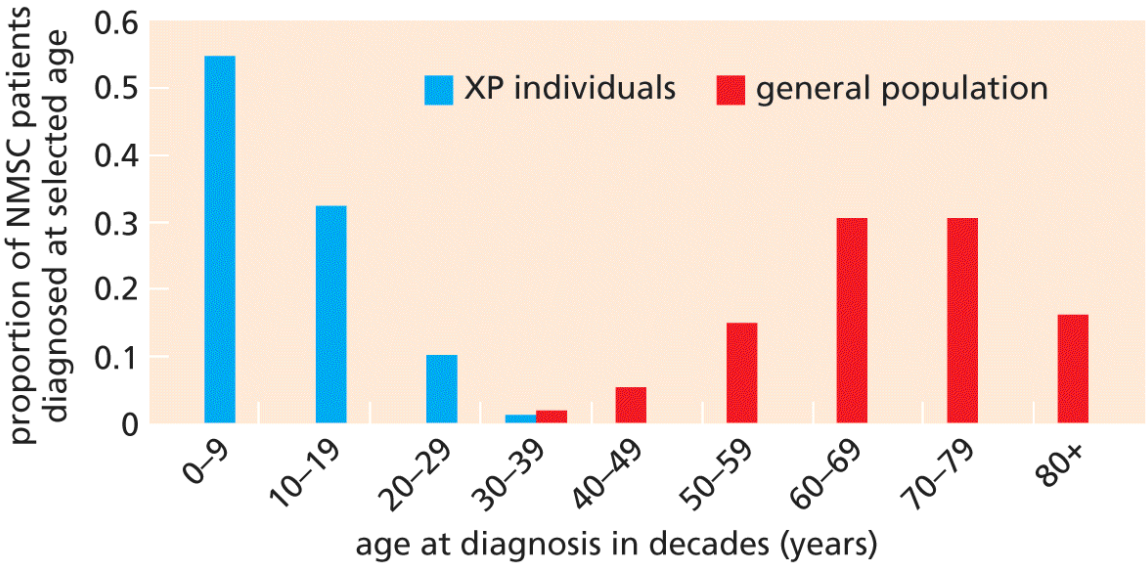
Humans as well as other placental mammals rely totally on the nucleotide-excision repair (NER) system to remove the highly mutagenic UV-induced pyrimidine dimers (see Figure 12.12). This situation contrasts with that seen in bacteria, lower eukaryotes, and plants, where redundant backup systems are in place to deal with these dimers if the first NER line of defense should fail. These simpler organisms, which may exhibit DNA repair capabilities mirroring those of our distant evolutionary ancestors, express (1) enzymes that can monomerize pyrimidine dimers (thereby directly reversing the UV-induced damage), (2)

glycosylases to cleave the dimerized bases from deoxyribose residues, and (3) nucleases to incise the DNA strand around the dimers.

It is possible that once our mammalian ancestors learned to grow coats of hair, the evolutionary pressures to retain these important backup DNA repair enzymes receded, and the encoding genes were lost through one or another genetic mechanism. Now, because of a quirk of recent primate evolution, we humans are left without protective coats of hair and, at the same time, without an ability to mobilize the backup repair systems to fix UV-damaged DNA in the event that our only remaining line of defense—the xeroderma pigmentosum genes and encoded proteins—fails to do this task. The lack of these extra layers of protection explains, in part, why the mutant XP phenotypes can be so devastating for those afflicted with this disease and why more light-complexioned people should make lavish use of sunscreen lotion when in the sun.

A close-up of the face of A xeroderma pigmentosum patient. The eyes are closed. The skin and lips are covered with scab-like crust that creates light and dark blotches. The nostrils appear partly eroded.

Figure 12.23 A xeroderma pigmentosum patient A patient suffering from xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) has severe and extensive lesions in all areas of sun-exposed skin. These lesions can develop into squamous and basal cell carcinomas as well as melanomas. The tumors develop at rates that are as much as 10,000-fold higher than in the general population. (Courtesy of K.H. Kraemer.)

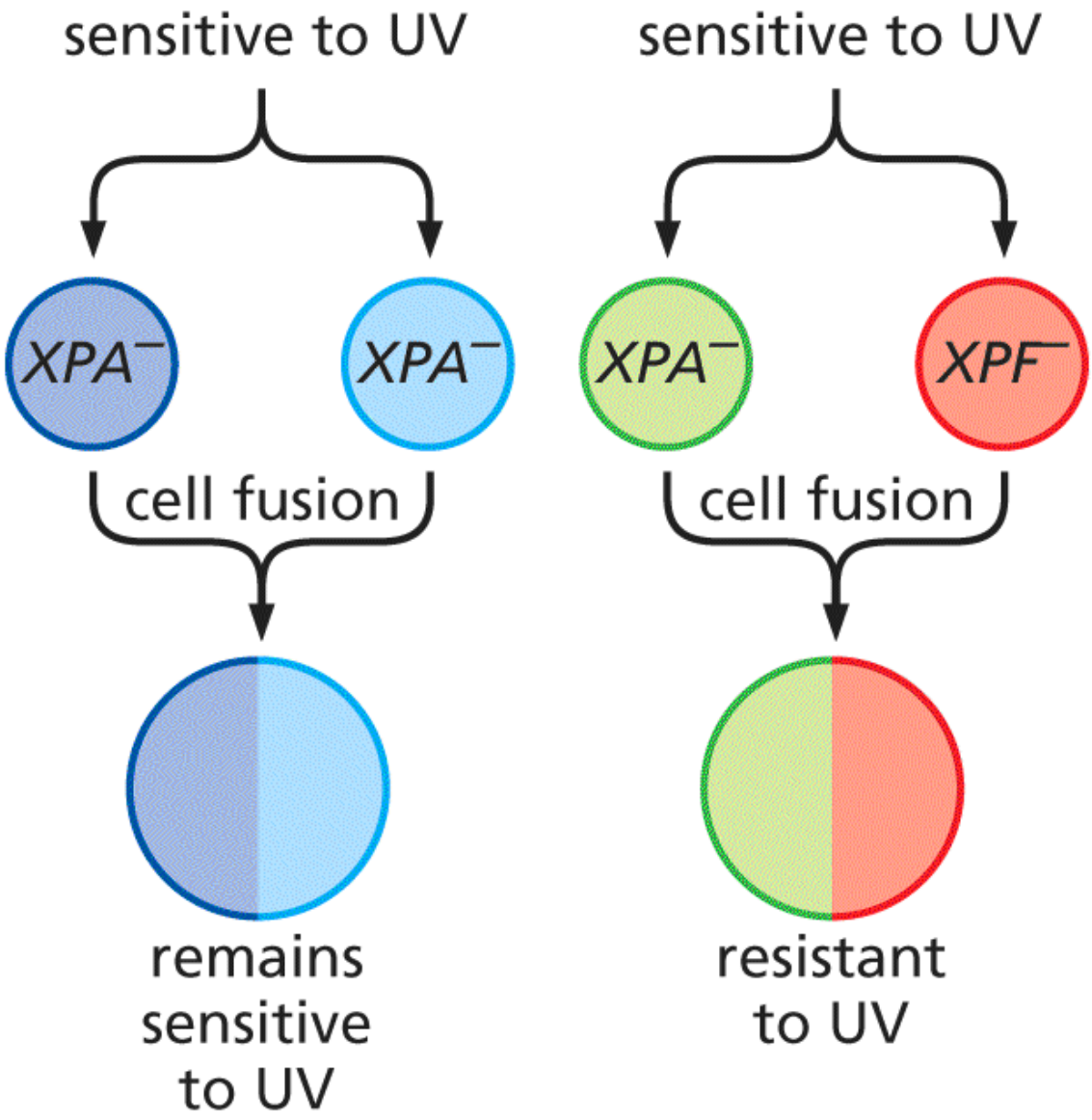


A histogram with age ranges across the bottom. Each vertical bar indicates the proportion of nonmelanoma skin cancer patients diagnosed while in a ten year age range. Over half of X P individuals were diagnosed with skin cancer between birth and age 9. All had been diagnosed with it by age 39. By contrast, in the general population, incredibly few people are diagnosed with skin cancer before age 30, and the most common ages at diagnosis are in the 60 to 79 range.

Figure 12.24 Significantly earlier onset skin cancers in individuals with xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) compared to the general population The graph shows the proportion of XP individuals (*blue bars*) and individuals in the general population (*red bars*) who were diagnosed with nonmelanoma skin cancer (NMSC) in different decades of life. The median age of diagnosis was 9 years for XP individuals and 67 years for individuals in the general

population. (From P.T. Bradford et al., *J. Med. Genet*. 48:168–176, 2011. With permission from BMJ.)

We now know that inherited defects in any one of eight genes can lead to xeroderma pigmentosum, but this number is arbitrary, as these genes overlap with other genes involved in NER and a variety of other syndromes resulting from defective DNA repair. The genetic complexity of the XP syndrome was first recognized through the use of somatic cell genetics. Thus, cells from two different XP patients were fused in culture in order to determine the repair phenotype of the resulting hybrid cells (**Figure 12.25**; see also Figure 7.1). On many occasions, the hybrids were found to repair DNA normally, indicating that the two parental cells carried defects in DNA repair that were associated with two distinct genes. For example, using nomenclature developed later, cells from an individual carrying a mutant *XPA* gene (and having a wild-type *XPC* gene) were able to repair DNA normally after being fused to cells from an individual carrying a mutant *XPC* gene (and having a wild-type *XPA* gene). Conversely, cells from two individuals, each carrying a mutant *XPA* allele, would continue to exhibit a DNA repair defect. Such collaboration, or "genetic complementation," (or lack thereof) led to the classification of XP-associated mutant alleles into eight complementation groups, each ostensibly defined by the identity of a responsible gene. Only years later were the responsible genes isolated by molecular cloning. Almost always, it has been possible to show that an affected individual has inherited two mutant, null alleles of a gene representing one or another XP complementation group. Thus, the pattern of inheritance of XP is autosomal recessive, in contrast to some of the other "caretaker" gene-associated familial cancer syndromes we have discussed in Chapter 7 and will return to below, which exhibit autosomal dominant patterns of inheritance at the organismic level.



A diagram describing two different outcomes of cell fusion experiments. The fusion of two U V sensitive X P A negative cells from different patients produces a cell that remains sensitive to U V. On the other hand, the fusion of a U V sensitive X P A negative cell from one patient with a U V sensitive X P F negative cell from another patient produces a cell that is U V resistant.

Figure 12.25 Discovery of XP complementation groups Cell fusion experiments using cultured cells from xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) patients have revealed that certain combinations of fibroblasts, each derived from a different patient (*dark blue, light blue, left*), when fused, yielded hybrid tetraploid cells that are as UV-sensitive as the two parental cell populations.

On other occasions, however (*right*), fusion of cells from two patients (*light green, light red*) yielded cell hybrids that are as resistant to UV-mediated killing as the cells from normal individuals. Such findings caused the pair of cells that did not complement one another's DNA repair defect (*dark blue, light blue*) to be assigned to the same complementation group, ostensibly because the two populations carried mutations in the same gene. Conversely, successful complementation by other pairs of cells (*light green, light red*) allowed the respective parental cell types to be assigned to two distinct complementation groups, indicating that mutant alleles of at least two distinct genes were involved in predisposing to XP. In this way, eight distinct XP complementation groups were eventually delineated; the responsible genes were isolated by gene cloning years later.

Seven of the eight XP-associated genes, termed *XPA* through *XPG*, encode components of the large, multiprotein nucleotide-excision repair (NER) complex. The eighth gene, *XPV*, specifies the error-prone DNA polymerase pol-ε that many cells use when their regular DNA polymerases (for example, pol-δ) are unable to copy over unrepaired DNA lesions in the template strand such as pyrimidine dimers. As mentioned in the last section, error-prone polymerases are able to copy a template strand of DNA containing the still-unrepaired TT dimers created by UV radiation, usually by incorporating two A's in the complementary strand. In general, pol-ε is thought to be so accurate that it incorporates AA nucleotides in the growing DNA strand opposite a TT dimer 95% of the time.

Individuals afflicted with XP also have some increased risk of other diseases, notably neurological problems, which are observed in about 18% of these patients. And mice that have been deprived of one of several XP genes suffer markedly increased susceptibility to tumors following exposure to chemical carcinogens. These two observations provide evidence that components of the nucleotide-excision repair system encoded by some of the XP genes are, not unexpectedly, responsible for repairing genetic damage created by other agents besides UV radiation. This finding raises the following question: Why does a human who lacks the function of one or another XP gene have relatively little increased risk of cancers in internal organs, even though an important component of the NER machinery is missing from all cells throughout this person's body? The simplest and possibly correct explanation is that UV rays are, by far, the most important environmental mutagen to which most humans are exposed, and thus the source of most of the lesions that require repair by the NER machinery. (By one estimate, strong sunlight can inflict as many as 100,000 DNA lesions per skin

cell per hour.) Accordingly, skin cancers represent the great majority of cancers in XP patients, with tumors of internal organs being greatly overshadowed and, quite possibly, never registered in these patients.

Several other inherited syndromes are also associated with defects in NER. For example, individuals suffering from Cockayne syndrome (CS) appear to be defective in one of two genes that are involved in transcription-coupled NER. Their cells have increased photosensitivity like those of XP patients. The median age of death of patients from this disease is 12 years of age. This disease is highly unusual, in that the significant defects in DNA repair are not associated with increased rates of cancer. Still unaddressed is the possibility that individuals who are *heterozygous* carriers for one of the XP- or Cockayne syndrome–associated mutant alleles have an elevated risk of developing certain types of cancer. (The fibroblasts of such carriers have been found to exhibit several-fold increased numbers of chromosomal breaks in response to X-irradiation.)

XP was only the first of many human cancer susceptibility syndromes that have been found to be caused by inherited defects in various types of DNA repair (**Table 12.1**). We will explore another one here—hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC; also referred to as Lynch syndrome). HNPCC is a familial cancer syndrome that represents a quite common cause of inherited predisposition to colon cancer, being responsible for 2 to 3% of all colon cancer cases. HNPCC is, as its name implies, distinct from the other type of hereditary colon cancer predisposition that we encountered previously—adenomatous polyposis coli (see Section 7.10). A subclass of HNPCC/Lynch syndrome patients, in addition to their 80% lifetime risk of developing colon carcinomas, have increased susceptibility to brain tumors as well as endometrial, stomach, ovarian, and urinary tract carcinomas.

Table 12.1 Human familial cancer syndromes arising from germ-line defects in DNA repair

Name of syndrome	Name of gene	Cancer phenotype	Enzyme or process affected
HNPCC/Lynch	(4–5 genes)[a]	colonic polyposis	mismatch repair enzymes

Name of syndrome	**Name of gene**	**Cancer phenotype**	**Enzyme or process affected**
XP[b]	(8 genes)[b]	UV-induced skin cancers	nucleotide-excision repair
ataxia telangiectasia (AT)[c]	ATM	leukemia, lymphoma	response to dsDNA breaks
AT-like disorder[c]	MRE11	lung, breast cancers	dsDNA repair by NHEJ
Familial breast, ovarian cancer	*BRCA1*, *BRCA2*,[d] *BACH1*, *RAD51C*	breast, ovarian, prostate carcinomas	homology-directed repair of dsDNA breaks
Werner	WRN	sarcomas, other cancers	exonuclease and DNA helicase,[e] replication
Bloom	BLM	leukemias, lymphomas, solid tumors	DNA helicase, replication
Fanconi anemia	(13 genes)[f]	AML, diverse carcinomas	repair of DNA cross-links and ds breaks

Name of syndrome	Name of gene	Cancer phenotype	Enzyme or process affected
Nijmegen breakage[g]	NBS	mostly lymphomas	processing of dsDNA breaks, NHEJ
Li–Fraumeni	TP53	multiple cancers	DNA damage alarm protein
Li–Fraumeni	CHK2	colon, breast carcinomas	kinase signaling DNA damage
Rothmund–Thomson	RECQL4	osteosarcoma	DNA helicase
Familial adenomatosis	MYH	colonic adenomas	base-excision repair
Familial breast cancer	PALB2	breast cancer	dsDNA repair by HR

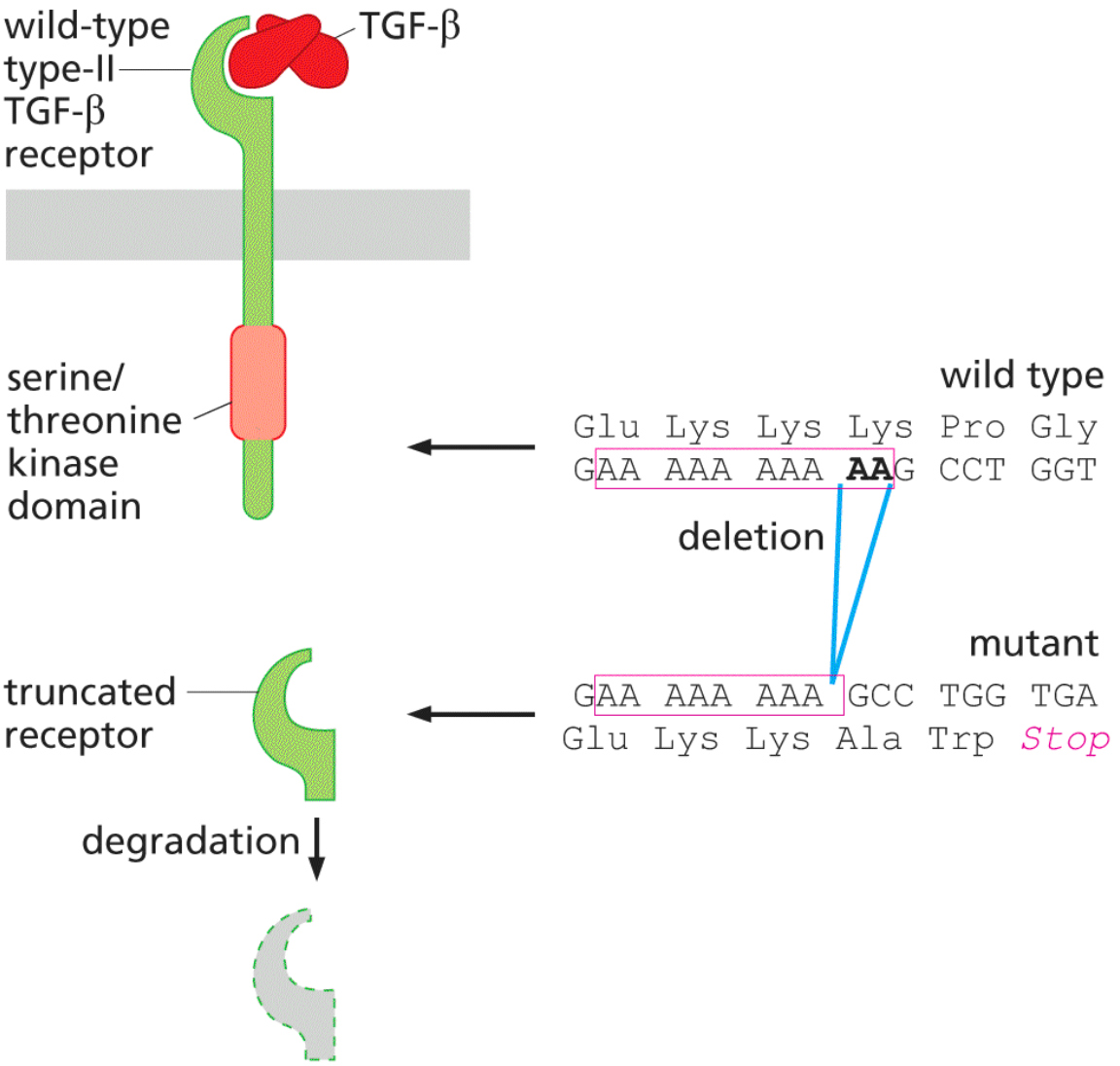
Adapted in part from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 7th ed. New York: WW Norton & Company, 2022. Also from E.R. Fearon, *Science* 278:1043–1050, 1997.

The increased colon cancer susceptibility of the HNPCC patients can be traced back to the accelerated rate with which tumor progression proceeds in their colons: although the adenoma-to-carcinoma progression is estimated to require more than a decade in the general population (see Section 11.4), the genetic instability afflicting the cells of HNPCC patients allows this step to occur in only

2 to 3 years. Indeed, because their adenomas progress so quickly to carcinomas, these premalignant growths have a relatively short lifetime and are therefore not found in significant numbers in the colons of these patients. The responsible genes were discovered through clever genetic sleuthing (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.7**).

The majority (85–90%) of HNPCC cases result from germ-line mutations in the genes encoding two important mismatch repair proteins, MSH2 and MLH1. Mutant germ-line alleles of two other MMR genes, *MSH6* and *PMS2*, are involved in a small proportion (~15%) of these cases; however, two other MMR genes (*PMS1*, *MSH3*), which have been found to play equally important roles in DNA repair, are rarely if ever transmitted as mutant alleles in the human germ line. Similar to the genetics of most tumor suppressor genes, patients inherit one defective allele of an MMR gene and the genomes present in tumor cells that arise almost always undergo a loss of heterozygosity (LOH) that results in the discarding of the surviving wild-type gene copy.

The resulting inability to properly detect and repair sequence mismatches leads to, among other consequences, high rates of mutations in genes that have microsatellite repeats nested in their sequences (see Figure 12.7) as well as a very high mutation rate overall. A dramatic and early illustration of the consequences of this repair defect came from study of a group of 11 colorectal cancer cell lines that showed microsatellite instability. In 9 of these cell lines, the gene encoding the type II TGF-β receptor (TGF-βRII) was found to be mutant. More specifically, the wild-type reading frame of this gene carries a stretch of 10 A's in a row (**Figure 12.26**). However, in these 9 tumor cell lines, the TGF-βRII gene was found to have lost 1 or 2 A's of the normally present homopolymeric stretch of 10 A's. These sequence changes forced the coding sequence of the TGF-βRII gene out of its normal reading frame and resulted in nonfunctional TGF-βRII proteins. We can imagine that once tumor cell precursors no longer express functional TGF-βRII, they can escape the inhibiting effects of proliferation of this anti-mitogenic signaling protein (see Section 8.4)—a highly advantageous trait if it is acquired early in tumor progression by epithelial cells. In a subsequent study of a series of 111 colon carcinomas exhibiting microsatellite instability, 100 were found to carry mutant, defective alleles of the TGF-βRII gene, with almost all mutant alleles being present in homozygous configuration. Hence, once one of the receptor-encoding genes suffers an inactivating mutation, the surviving wild-type allele is discarded through loss of heterozygosity.



A diagram of a T G F beta receptor. The wild-type type 2 T G F beta receptor binds to T G F beta. The tail contains a serine/threonine kinase domain. In this domain, the base sequence G A A A A A A A A A A G C C T G G T encodes for the wild type amino acid sequence Glutamic acid, Lysine, Lysine, Lysine, Proline, Glycine. The deletion of the last two ayze produces the sequence G A A A A A A A A A G C C T G G T G A, which encodes for the mutant amino acid sequence Glutamic acid, Lysine, Lysine, Alanine, Tryptophan, stop. The result is a truncated receptor that soon undergoes degradation.

Figure 12.26 A TGF-β receptor gene affected by microsatellite instability
The type II TGF-β receptor (TGF-βRII) is frequently inactivated in human colon cancers exhibiting microsatellite instability and therefore carrying

defects in mismatch repair (MMR) genes. In the particular colon cancer whose DNA was analyzed here, the last 2 of 10 adenines (*boldface*) were deleted from the reading frame of the receptor-encoding gene, ostensibly because of an MMR defect. This particular deletion ($A_{10} \rightarrow A_8$) resulted in a nonsense mutation that caused premature termination of translation of the nascent TGF-βRII protein and hence loss of functionally critical signaling domains in the C-terminus of the receptor. This loss, in turn, allowed the progenitors of the colon carcinoma cells to become resistant to the growth-inhibitory effects of TGF-β. Alterations of this tract of A's in the TGF-βRII gene were subsequently found in 100 of 111 colorectal carcinomas showing defective MMR, in which they caused translation of the TGF-βRII mRNA to yield polypeptides of either 129 or 161 amino acid residues (depending on how many A's were deleted) rather than the 565 amino acid residues in the wild-type receptor. (From C. Lengauer, K.W. Kinzler and B. Vogelstein, *Nature* 396:643–649, 1998. With permission from Nature.)

Later, yet other genes were found to have suffered similar mutations in mismatch repair–defective cancer cells (**Table 12.2**). In most cases, the MMR defect and resulting mutant alleles were discovered in sporadic (rather than familial) cancers. These observations suggested that in nonfamilial tumors, MMR genes, like tumor suppressor genes, can be rendered defective either by somatic mutation or, alternatively, by promoter methylation and resulting transcriptional silencing (see Section 7.7). In fact, the second mechanism is responsible for the lion's share of defective MMR in these tumors: about 15% of sporadic gastric, colorectal, and endometrial tumors show defective MMR, and in almost all of these, the observed microsatellite instability can be traced to the methylation and resulting silencing of the *MLH1* gene. Interestingly, in the histologically normal endometrial tissue directly adjacent to tumors with defective MMR, the *MLH1* gene is often found to be methylated, suggesting that this methylation is one of the earliest events of tumor progression in this tissue (**Figure 12.27**); this alteration would appear to be another manifestation of the field cancerization described in Section 11.5. As we discuss in Section 12.13, genomic analysis of a large number of colon cancers and other cancers carrying MMR gene mutations has revealed an extremely high mutation frequency, involving length changes of microsatellite sequences as well as base-pair substitutions outside of repetitive sequences. Thus, the genes shown in Table 12.2 represent only a small proportion of genes mutated in MMR-deficient tumors.

Table 12.2 Genes and proteins that have been inactivated in human cancer cell genomes because of mismatch repair defects

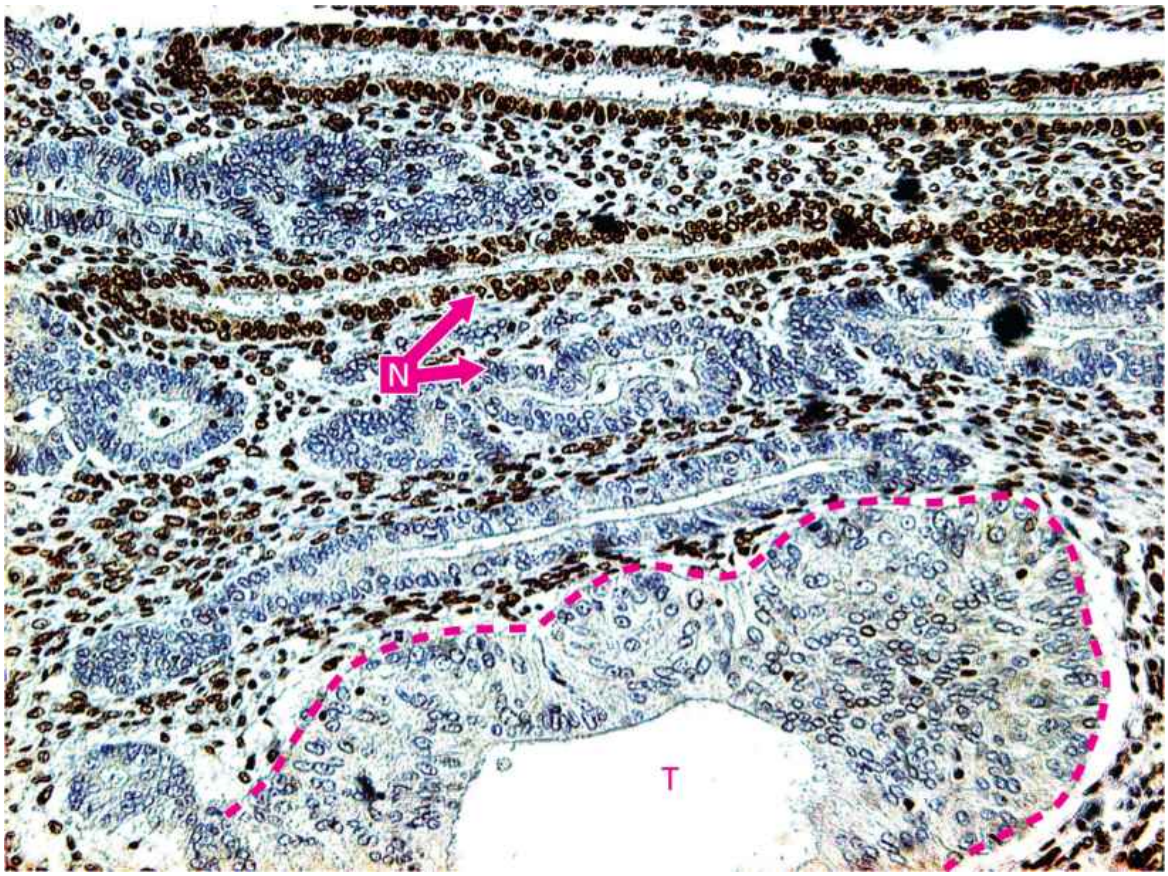
Gene	Function of encoded protein	Wild-type coding sequence	Colon	Stomach	Endometrium
ACTRII	GF receptor	A_8	X		
AIM2	interferon-inducible	A_{10}	X		
APAF1	pro-apoptotic factor	A_8	X	X	
AXIN-2	Wnt signaling	A_6, G_7, C_6	X		
BAX	pro-apoptotic factor	G_8	X	X	X
BCL-10	pro-apoptotic factor	A_8	X	X	X
BLM	DNA damage response	A_9	X	X	X
Caspase-5	pro-apoptotic factor	A_{10}	X	X	X

Gene	Function of encoded protein	Wild-type coding sequence	Colon	Stomach	Endometrium
CDX2	homeobox TF	G_7	X		
CHK1	DNA damage response	A_9	X		X
FAS	pro-apoptotic factor	T_7	X		X
GRB-14	signal transduction	A_9	X	X	
hG4-1	cell cycle	A_8	X		
IGRIIR	decoy GF receptor	G_8	X	X	X
KIAA0977	unknown	T_9	X		
MLH3	MMR	A_9	X		X
MSH3	MMR	A_8	X	X	X
MSH6	MMR	C_8	X	X	X

Gene	Function of encoded protein	Wild-type coding sequence	Colon	Stomach	Endometrium
NADH-UOB	electron transport	T_9	X		
OGT	glycosylation	T_{10}	X		
PTEN	pro-apoptotic	A_6	X		X
RAD50	DNA damage response	A_9	X	X	
RHAMM	cell motility	A_9	X		
RIZ	pro-apoptotic factor	A_8, A_9	X	X	X
SEC63	protein translocation into endoplasmic reticulum	A_9, A_{10}			X
SLC23A1	transporter	C_9	X		
TCF-4	transcription	A_{10}	X	X	X

Gene	Function of encoded protein	Wild-type coding sequence	Colon	Stomach	Endometrium
	factor				
TGF-βRII	TGF-β receptor	A_{10}	X	X	X
WISP-3	growth factor	A_9	X		

From A. Duval and R. Hamelin, *Cancer Res.* 62:2447–2454, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.
Abbreviations: GF, growth factor; MMR, mismatch repair; TF, transcription factor.



A histology image. The upper part of the image contains band-like regions where the nuclei are stained dark brown and other regions where the nuclei are stained a pale blue. The cells are generally well organized and uniformly stained, but a region at the bottom of the image contains disorganized cells with minimally stained nuclei.

Figure 12.27 Suppression of MLH1 activity in endometrial tissue Anti-hMLH1 antibody coupled to a peroxidase enzyme generates a dark brown spot wherever it binds MLH1 protein. Here, the normal endometrial tissue of an endometrial cancer patient shows areas of intense, dark brown staining, indicating high hMLH1 expression (N, *upper pink arrow*), and areas of weak staining (N, *lower pink arrow*) where cell nuclei have been stained light blue with DAPI (a DNA-specific stain) but little MLH1 staining is seen. The endometrial carcinoma tissue (*below, dashed pink line*, T) is virtually devoid of hMLH1 staining and exhibits only light staining of cell nuclei by DAPI. Molecular analysis (*not shown*) indicated that the promoter of the *hMLH1* gene in the carcinoma cells was strongly methylated. Expression of hMLH1 was reduced or absent in some of the histologically normal tissue adjacent to the tumor, indicating that loss of hMLH1 expression occurred relatively early

in tumor progression and preceded the histopathological alterations that led to the formation of this carcinoma. (From T. Kanaya et al., *Oncogene* 22:2352–2360, 2003. With permission from Nature.)

Although MMR gene mutations are associated with high mutational burden in cancers, an even higher mutation rate is observed in cancers with mutations in the proofreading domains of the replicative DNA polymerases pol-δ and pol-ε. As discussed in Section 12.3, the proofreading mechanism recognizes and removes misincorporated bases during DNA replication. Germ-line mutations in the human *PolD1* and *PolE* genes, which encode the catalytic domains of pol-δ and pol-ε, respectively, lead to predisposition to colon cancer and other malignancies (see Figure 12.5B). In functional studies in yeast, several of these mutations have been shown to affect proofreading function and raise the mutation rate. Moreover, somatic mutations in the proofreading-encoding domains of the *PolD1* and *PolE* genes have been observed in endometrial cancer, colon cancer and other tumor types (see Figure 12.5B). Tumors carrying these mutations exhibit what has been characterized as an "ultra-mutated" phenotype, which leads to as many as one million base substitutions in the genomes of certain tumors (see Section 12.13). In contrast to MMR-deficient tumors, these tumors do not exhibit microsatellite instability.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

xeroderma pigmentosum
: Syndrome resulting from an inherited inability to repair UV-induced DNA lesions in the skin, resulting in severe burning of the skin following exposure to sunlight and the development of skin cancers at a high rate.

complementation
: Ability of two mutant genotypes, when coexisting in the same cell or organism, to compensate for each other's defects and thereby create a wild-type phenotype, indicating that the two genotypes carry changes in distinct genes and therefore can be classified as belonging to distinct complementation groups. *See also* **complementation groups**.

Lynch syndrome
: A form of familial colorectal cancer caused by inherited mutations in one of several mismatch repair genes; also known as hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC). Beyond colorectal cancer, individuals with Lynch syndrome are also at increased risk of developing brain, stomach, and endometrial cancer as well as other cancer types. *See also* **hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer**.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aFive distinct MMR genes are transmitted as mutant alleles in the human germ line. Two MMR genes—*MSH2* and *MLH1*—are commonly involved in HNPCC; two other MMR genes—*MSH6* and *PMS2*—are involved in a small number of cases; in addition, there is elevated risk of developing tumors of the prostate, ureter, ovary, connective tissues, and brain; a fifth gene, *PMS1*, may also be involved in a small number of cases.Return to reference a
- bXeroderma pigmentosum; at least eight distinct genes, seven of which are involved in NER. The seven genes are named *XPA* through *XPG*. An eighth gene, *XPV*, encodes DNA polymerase ε.Return to reference b
- bXeroderma pigmentosum; at least eight distinct genes, seven of which are involved in NER. The seven genes are named *XPA* through *XPG*. An eighth gene, *XPV*, encodes DNA polymerase ε.Return to reference b
- cAtaxia telangiectasia, small number of cases.Return to reference c
- cAtaxia telangiectasia, small number of cases.Return to reference c
- dMutant germ-line alleles of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* together may account for ∼5% of all breast cancers and 10–20% of identifiable human familial breast cancers.Return to reference d
- eAn exonuclease digests DNA or RNA from one end inward; a DNA helicase unwinds double-stranded DNA molecules.Return to reference e
- fThirteen genes have been cloned and at least thirteen complementation groups have been demonstrated. Complementation group J encodes the BACH1 protein, the partner of BRCA1. A number of the products of the *FANC* genes form a complex that interacts with BRCA1 and its partners; BRCA2 associates with BRCA1 (and *FANCD1* = *BRCA2*). Homozygous absence of either the *RAD51C*, *FANCD1* (= *BRCA2*), *FANJ* (= *BACH1*), or *FANCN* (= *PALB2*) gene leads to Fanconi anemia, whereas lack of only one gene copy leads to breast cancer and/or susceptibility thereto.Return to reference f

- gThe NBS1 protein (termed nibrin) forms a physical complex with the RAD50 and Mre11 proteins; all three are involved in repair of dsDNA breaks. The phenotypes of patients with Nijmegen breakage syndrome are similar but not identical to those suffering from AT.Return to reference g

OceanofPDF.com

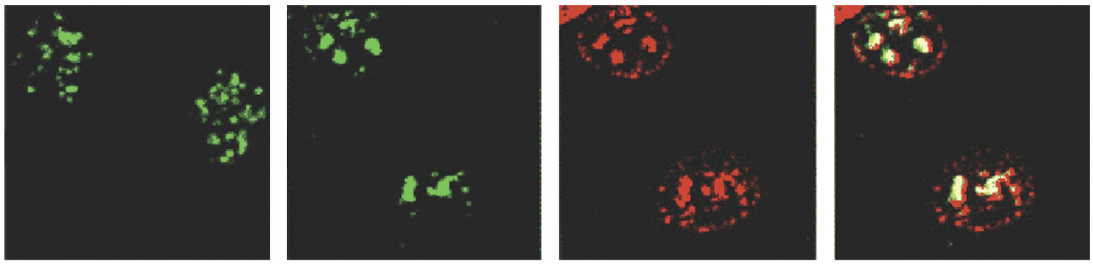
12.9 A variety of other DNA repair defects confer increased cancer susceptibility

By far the most notorious genes associated with cancer, at least in the mind of the public, are *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*. Mutant germ-line alleles of either of these genes confer an inborn susceptibility to breast and ovarian carcinomas. More specifically, almost half of all identified familial breast cancers involve germ-line transmission of a mutant *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* allele; by some estimates, 70 to 80% of all familial ovarian cancers result from mutant germ-line alleles of *BRCA1* or *BRCA2*. Stated differently, carriers of mutant germ-line *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* alleles have a 50–70% risk of developing breast cancer before the age of 70. Ovarian carcinoma risk is also high: 40–50% of *BRCA1* mutation carriers and 10–20% of *BRCA2* carriers develop disease before the age of 70. In addition, mutant *BRCA2* germ-line alleles have been associated in males with a >7-fold elevated risk of developing prostate cancer before the age of 65. Germ-line mutations in *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* increase the risk of pancreas cancer as well. Somatic loss of *BRCA1* function also appears to be important: 20–30% of sporadic (non-familial) ovarian carcinomas (that is, arising in women carrying wild-type *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* germ-line alleles) and almost as many sporadic breast cancers exhibit loss of function of one of these genes as a result of promoter methylation (see Section 7.7).

When these two genes were first discovered, it seemed that they should be included among the tumor suppressor genes, which are known to be involved in regulating the dynamics of cell proliferation, survival, and differentiation (see Chapter 7). But diverse lines of evidence built an increasingly persuasive case that these two genes are actually involved in the maintenance of genomic integrity and that their products therefore should be considered “caretakers” (DNA repair proteins) rather than “gatekeepers” (tumor suppressor proteins) (see Section 7.12).

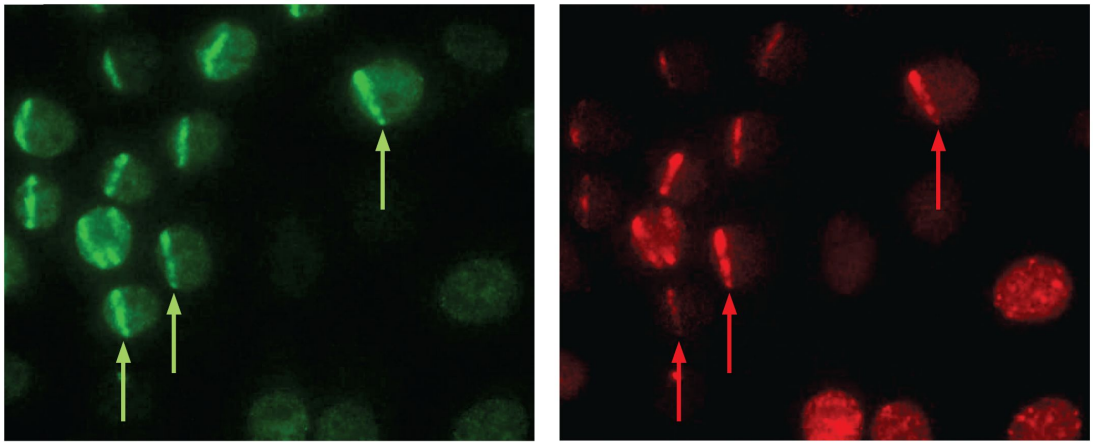
The case for the participation of BRCA1 and BRCA2 in genomic maintenance can be argued using guilt-by-association evidence. The BRCA1 and BRCA2 proteins are found in large multi-subunit complexes with one another and with a large number of other proteins in the cell nucleus. These massive complexes carry, among other components, both the RAD50/Mre11 and the RAD51 proteins—homologs of two proteins in yeast that were initially discovered because of the important roles they play in repairing DNA breaks caused by ionizing radiation (that is, X-rays). Mismatch repair proteins have been found in these complexes as well.

Quite dramatically, treatment of cells with hydroxyurea, which results in a stalling of replication forks during S phase, causes BRCA1 molecules to cluster at discrete sites in the nucleus. Many of these stalled forks are thought to be sites of dsDNA breakage caused by accidental breaks in the still-unreplicated single-stranded DNA at the forks (see Figure 12.8); the breaks are usually fixed by a mechanism that is variously termed homologous recombination–mediated repair or homology-directed repair (abbreviated HR or HDR). As visualized by immunofluorescent microscopy, BRCA1 molecules are normally distributed in a large number of tiny dots throughout the nucleus; hydroxyurea causes the BRCA1 molecules to leave these dots and flock together in a far smaller number of large, discrete spots, in which the proliferating-cell nuclear antigen (PCNA)—known to be localized to replication forks—is also found (**Figure 12.28A**). These spots have also been found to contain a number of other known DNA repair proteins, including RAD50 and RAD51. The BRCA2 protein is also found in these spots, providing additional presumptive evidence of its collaboration in DNA repair processes. Moreover, when dsDNA breaks are intentionally created in discrete areas within cell nuclei using a focused laser beam, the BRCA1 protein co-localizes in these areas together with γ-H2AX, a phosphorylated histone that is present in the chromatin flanking sites of dsDNA damage (Figure 12.28B). Altogether, 20 distinct cellular proteins, most known to be involved in DNA repair, have been found to be recruited to these areas of damage, and the list is growing.



Four fluorescence microscopy images. The first one is labeled B R C A 1 without hydroxyurea. Two nuclei each have many small green dots throughout. The second image is labeled B R C A 1 with hydroxyurea. Two nuclei have a few large green splotches in them. The third image is labeled P C N A with hydroxyurea. It shows the same two nuclei as the second image, with large and small red splotches. The fourth image is labeled B R C A 1 and P C N A overlap with hydroxyurea. It is a composite of the second and third images, with overlapping areas shown as yellow.

(A)



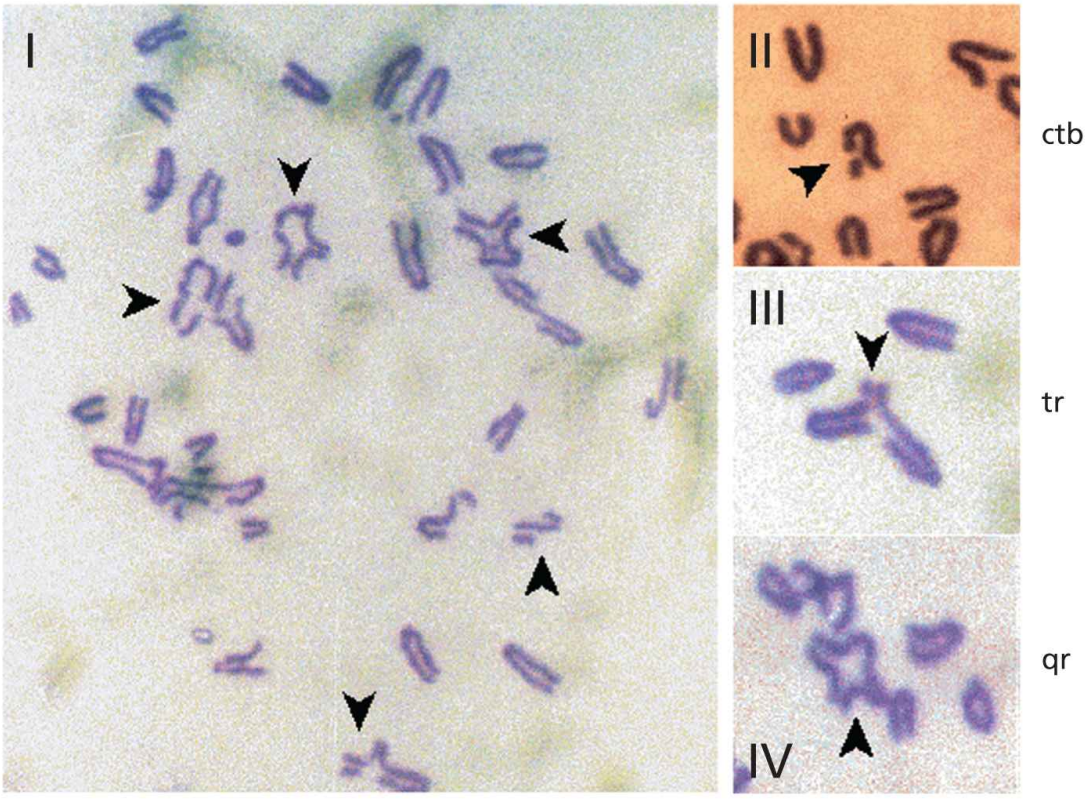
Two fluorescence microscopy images. The first one is labeled gamma H 2 A X. It shows ten nuclei in green, each with a bright stripe across it. The second image is labeled B R C A 1. It shows the same ten nuclei, with similarly positioned stripes, only the image is red instead of green.

(B)

Figure 12.28 BRCA1 and the response to DNA damage (A) The BRCA1 protein, which can be detected by fluorescence-labeled antibodies, is normally found during S phase in numerous discrete, small dots throughout the nucleus (*green, first panel*). However, when cells in S phase are treated with hydroxyurea, which stalls forward progress of the replication forks, the BRCA1 protein molecules leave these dots and congregate in a small number of quite large spots (*green, second panel*). A similar BRCA1 relocalization pattern can be observed with the proliferating-cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), which is known to be associated with replication forks (*red, third panel*). Substantial co-localization of the BRCA1 and PCNA proteins is indicated by the yellow spots (*fourth panel*); i.e., *red + green → yellow*. These stalled replication forks often are sites of double-strand (ds) DNA breaks caused by the accidental breakage of the still-unreplicated (and thus fragile) single-strand DNA (see Figure 12.8); these observations suggest that BRCA1 is recruited to sites of dsDNA breaks. (B) A 355-nm UV laser was used to paint narrow stripes across individual nuclei, which were then analyzed by immunostaining with antibodies reactive with either γ-H2AX (a phosphorylated histone that is known to localize to chromatin flanking dsDNA breaks; *green*) or BRCA1 (*red*). This co-localization indicates that BRCA1 is attracted to areas of dsDNA breaks. (A, from R. Scully et al., *Cell* 90:425–435, 1997. With permission from Elsevier. B, from R.A. Greenberg et al., *Genes Dev*. 20:34–46, 2006. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Mouse embryos carrying homozygous *BRCA1* mutations die at various stages of development, depending on the mutant allele. More revealing, however, are genetic strategies that limit the loss of BRCA1 function to specific, already-formed tissues after birth. Thus, conditional deletion (see Section 7.9) of segments of *BRCA1*, specifically in the developing mammary gland, leads to mammary tumors that appear after long latency. Interestingly, concomitant deletion of *p53* in these models shortens the latency considerably.

When taken together, these observations are consistent with a role for p53 in responding to the DNA damage caused by failed HDR in BRCA1-deficient cells. This response is likely to explain the long latency of *BRCA1*-mutant mice bearing wild-type *p53* alleles, in which ongoing p53 function appears to lead to significant attrition of incipient breast carcinoma cells. When p53 is also eliminated in such cells (yielding the $BRCA1^{-/-}p53^{-/-}$ genotype), they exhibit high levels of genomic instability, this being indicative of ongoing defects in DNA damage repair. In addition, mutant germ-line alleles of *BRCA2* that cause only partial loss of function result in susceptibility to lymphoid malignancies and unusual chromosomal aberrations. These aberrations have structures that suggest high rates of illegitimate recombination, that is, recombination events (or fusions) between two nonhomologous chromosomal arms (**Figure 12.29**). Such chromosomal structures result characteristically from improper repair of dsDNA breaks (DSBs), many of which may arise accidentally at replication forks during a typical S phase of the cell cycle.



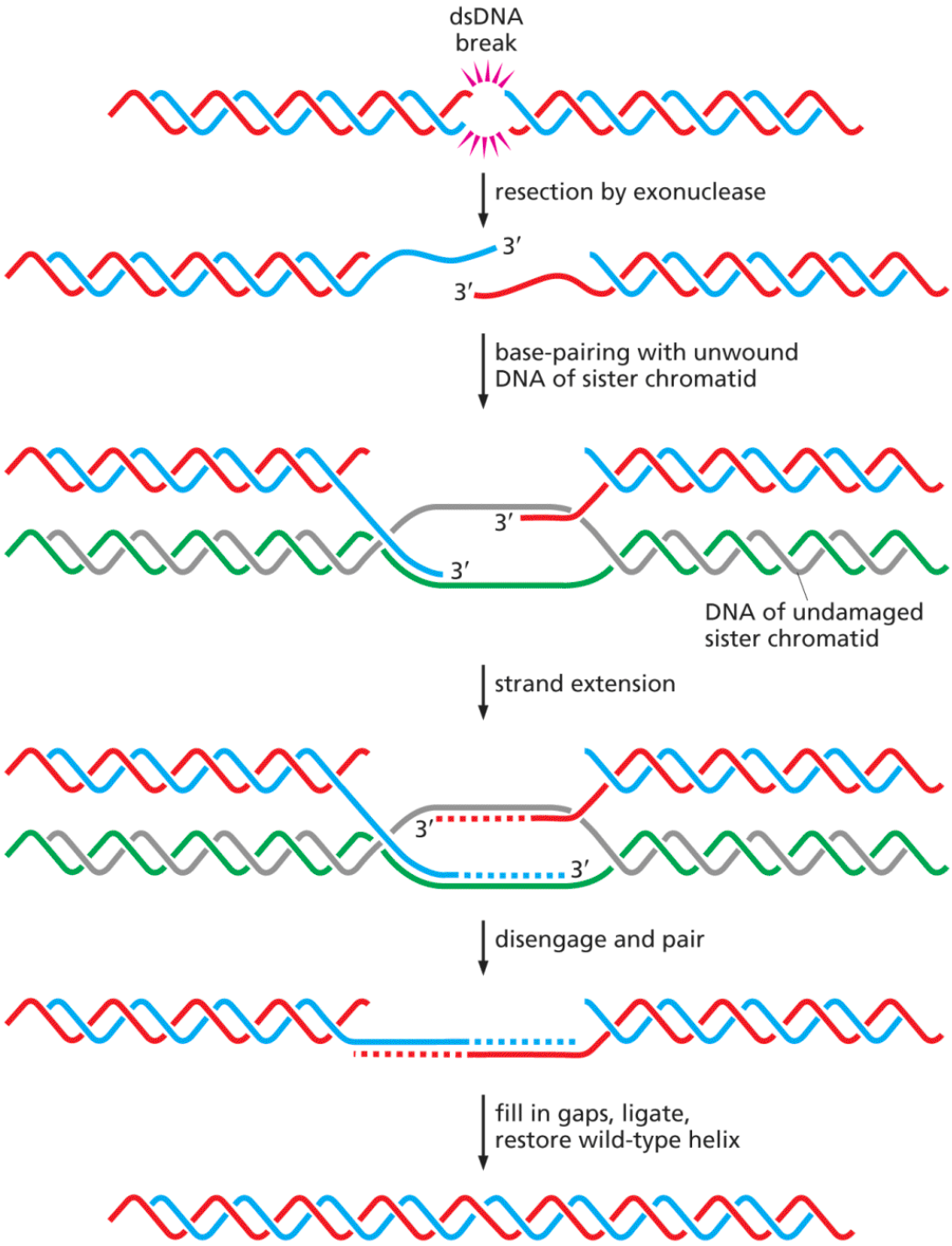
Four images of mouse chromosomes during mitosis metaphase. In image 1, which is larger than the others, many chromosomes are U shaped or Y shaped, but five, indicated by arrows, have more unusual shapes. In image 2, labeled c t b, an arrow indicates a U shaped chromosome in which one leg of the U is broken. In image 3, labeled t r, two U shaped chromosomes are attached on one side with their open ends facing each other. The two attached arms meet at a wide angle away from the two ewes. In image 4, labeled q r, four U shaped chromosomes join with their open ends facing the center, to form an X shape.

Figure 12.29 Karyotypic alterations from partial loss of BRCA2 function
Various karyotypic abnormalities (*arrowheads*) have been observed in cultured fibroblasts prepared from a mouse embryo that was homozygous for an allele encoding a truncated BRCA2 protein. These include fusions between chromosomal arms, resulting in chromosomal translocations that often manifest aberrant chromatid pairings at the metaphase of mitosis. The fusions are often caused by unrepaired or improperly repaired dsDNA breaks. When the hybrid chromatids resulting from such fusions pair with unaffected sister chromatids, structures such as those seen here are observed (*panel I*). Among the aberrations resulting from dsDNA breaks are chromatid breaks (ctb, *panel II*), triradial chromosomes (tr, *panel III*), and quadriradial chromosomes (qr, *panel IV*).

Chromatid pairings like these are rarely observed in wild-type cells. (From K.J. Patel et al., *Mol. Cell* 1:347–357, 1998. With permission from Elsevier.)

BRCA2 deficiency results additionally in deregulation of centrosome number, indicating defective functioning of the mitotic spindle, a condition that generates, in turn, aneuploidy. Cells that have reduced levels of BRCA2 also exhibit prolonged cytokinesis at the end of M phase (see Figure 8.3). Yet other indications of defective DSB repair in *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutant cells come from experiments that test the ability of cells to recover from DSBs introduced into their chromosomal DNA by X-rays. Cultured cells lacking the bulk of BRCA1 function show greatly increased sensitivity to killing by both X-rays and by chemotherapeutic drugs, such as cisplatin, that generate DSBs and inter-strand cross-links, respectively, in the DNA. As cited again in Section 17.3, the increased sensitivity of cells with defective homology-directed repair (such as *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*-mutant cells) to such DNA damaging agents has led to novel treatments for cancers carrying these mutations that take advantage of their reduced DNA repair capacity.

The repair of a DSB formed in one chromatid often depends on the ability of the repair apparatus to consult the undamaged, homologous DNA sequences in a sister chromatid and to use those sequences to instruct the repair apparatus on precisely how to reconstruct the broken double helix (**Figure 12.30**; see **Supplementary Sidebar 12.8** for a more detailed molecular description). Thus, such homology-directed repair (HDR) occurs largely during the late S and the G_2 phases of the cell cycle, when the double helix in a sister chromatid can provide the sequence information for repairing the damaged chromatid. Recall that during S phase, DNA replication results in the production of two identical chromatids that remain associated as part of a common chromosome until they are separated during the next mitosis (see Figure 8.3). HDR is also used if inter-strand covalent cross-links within a double helix should arise.

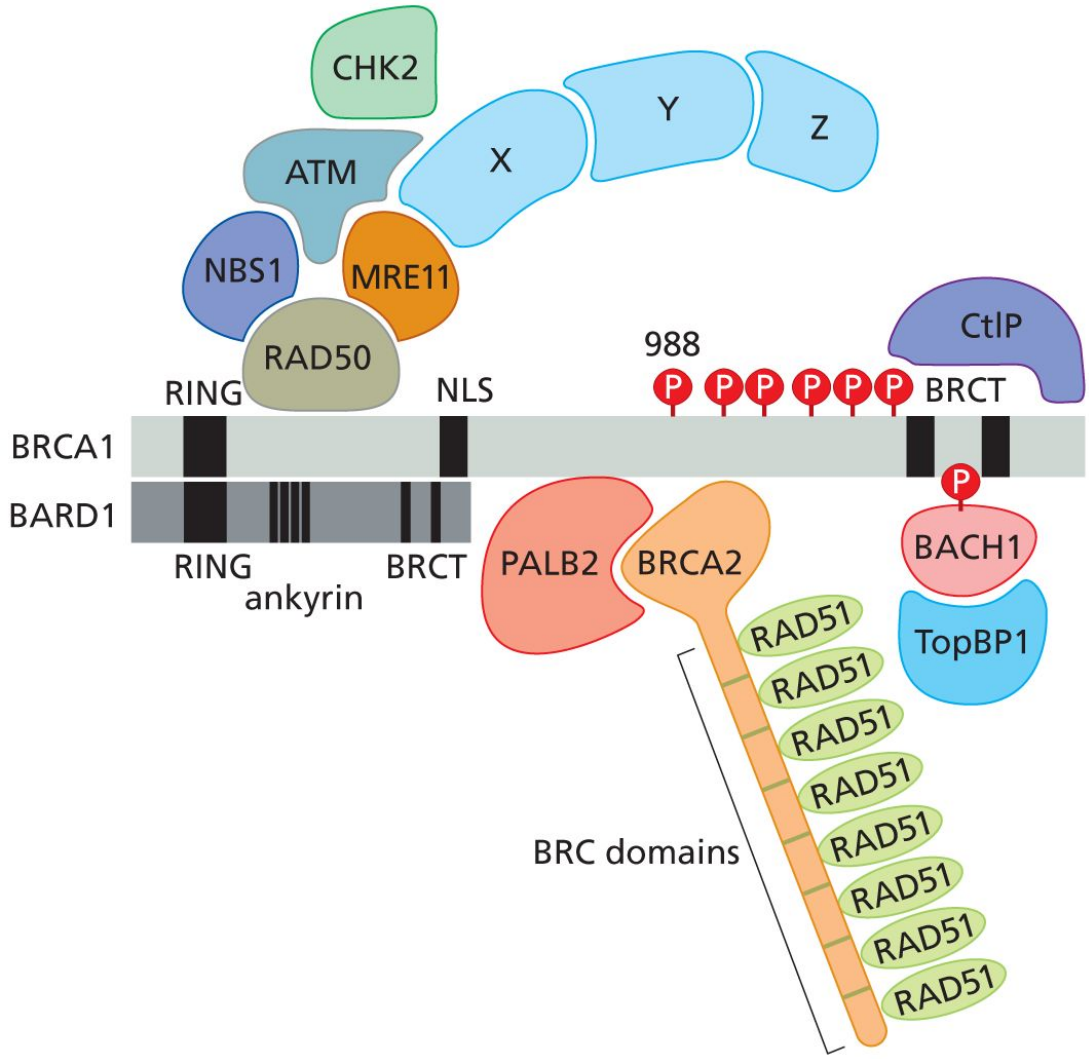


Homology-directed repair. It begins with a break in a double-stranded D N A. After resection of single strands by exonuclease, each side of the break has a longer 3 prime end than a 5 prime end. Base-pairing with the unwound D N A of a sister chromatid allows the strands of the undamaged sister chromatic to serve as templates for the repair of the damaged strands. The newly repaired D N A

disengages from the other chromatid, the two repaired strands pair up, gaps are filled in, ligation occurs, and the wild-type helix is restored.

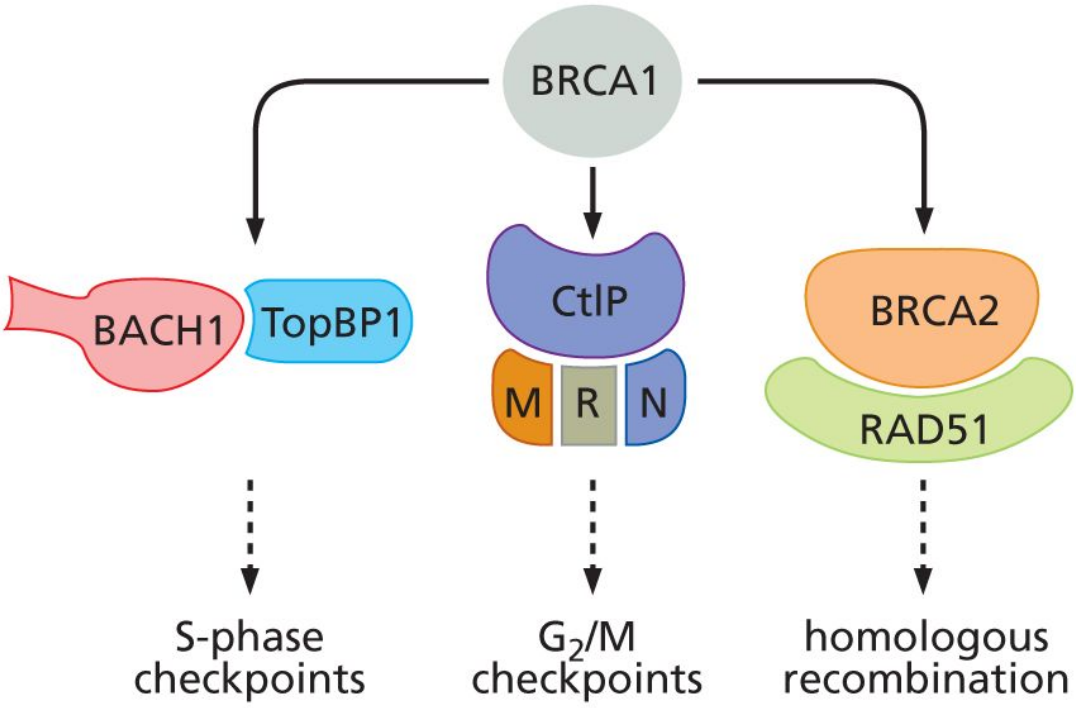
Figure 12.30 Homology-directed repair The repair of dsDNA breaks during the late S phase and G_2 phase of the cell cycle often depends on the ability of the repair apparatus to consult the sequences in the undamaged sister chromatid that was formed, together with the damaged chromatid, during the most recent S phase. Such homology-directed repair (HDR) begins (*top*) with the resection (removal) by an exonuclease of one of the two DNA strands at each of the ends formed by a dsDNA break. Each of the resulting ssDNA strands (*blue, red*) then invades the undamaged sister chromatid, whose double helix (*green, gray*) has been unwound by the repair apparatus in order to accommodate the pairing of the invading ssDNA strands with complementary sequences in the undamaged sister chromatid. The ssDNA strands from the damaged chromatid are then elongated in a 5′-to-3′ direction by a DNA polymerase, using the strands of the sister chromatid's DNA as templates. Thereafter, the extended ssDNA strands are released from the sister chromatid and caused to pair with one another, allowing further elongation by a DNA polymerase and a ligase, which together reconstruct a double helix possessing wild-type DNA sequences. Included among the DNA repair proteins known or thought to facilitate these complex steps of HR are RAD51, BRCA1, and BRCA2.

All types of HR are compromised in cells lacking either BRCA1 or BRCA2 function. This compromised function may be explained, in part, by the behavior of the RAD51 protein, with which BRCA1's partner, BRCA2, associates directly (**Figure 12.31A**). RAD51 is known to bind single-stranded DNA molecules, enabling them to invade (and thereby unwind) homologous double-strand helices, a process essential to initiating HDR (see Figure 12.30). [BRCA2 carries eight "BRC domains," each of which can, in principle, bind a RAD51 molecule, suggesting that BRCA2 assembles strings of RAD51 molecules that bind coordinately to an ssDNA strand.] In the absence of BRCA1 or BRCA2, RAD51 may not be properly recruited to sites of dsDNA breaks, and the subsequent steps of HR are unlikely to occur correctly. The triradial and quadriradial chromosomes that are encountered in the metaphase of *BRCA2*-mutant cells (see Figure 12.29) are manifestations of the inability of the repair apparatus in these cells to exploit HDR to fix dsDNA breaks.



A structural schematic of a protein complex. B R C A 1 forms the horizontal spine of the structure, with a RING domain, an N L S domain, and two B R C T domains. Alongside the B R C A 1, running from the RING domain to the N L S domain, is a B A R D 1, with its own RING domain, an ankyrin domain, and a B R C T domain. Attached to the B R C A 1 between the RING and N L S domains is a complex of ten proteins, namely RAD 50, N B S 1, M R E 11, A T M, C H K 2, X, Y, and Z. Attached to the B R C A 1 between the N L S domain and the first B R C T domain are a P A L B 2 and a B R C A 2. The latter has a long tail of B R C domains, each with a RAD 51 attached. Also attached to the B R C A 1 between the N L S domain and the first B R C T domain are a series of six phosphate groups, beginning at position 988. A seventh phosphate group is attached to the B R C A 1 between its two B R C T domains. Attached to this phosphate, in turn, is a B A C H 1 that has a Top B P 1 attached to it. Also attached directly to the B R C A 1 between its two B R C T domains is a C t l P protein.

(A)



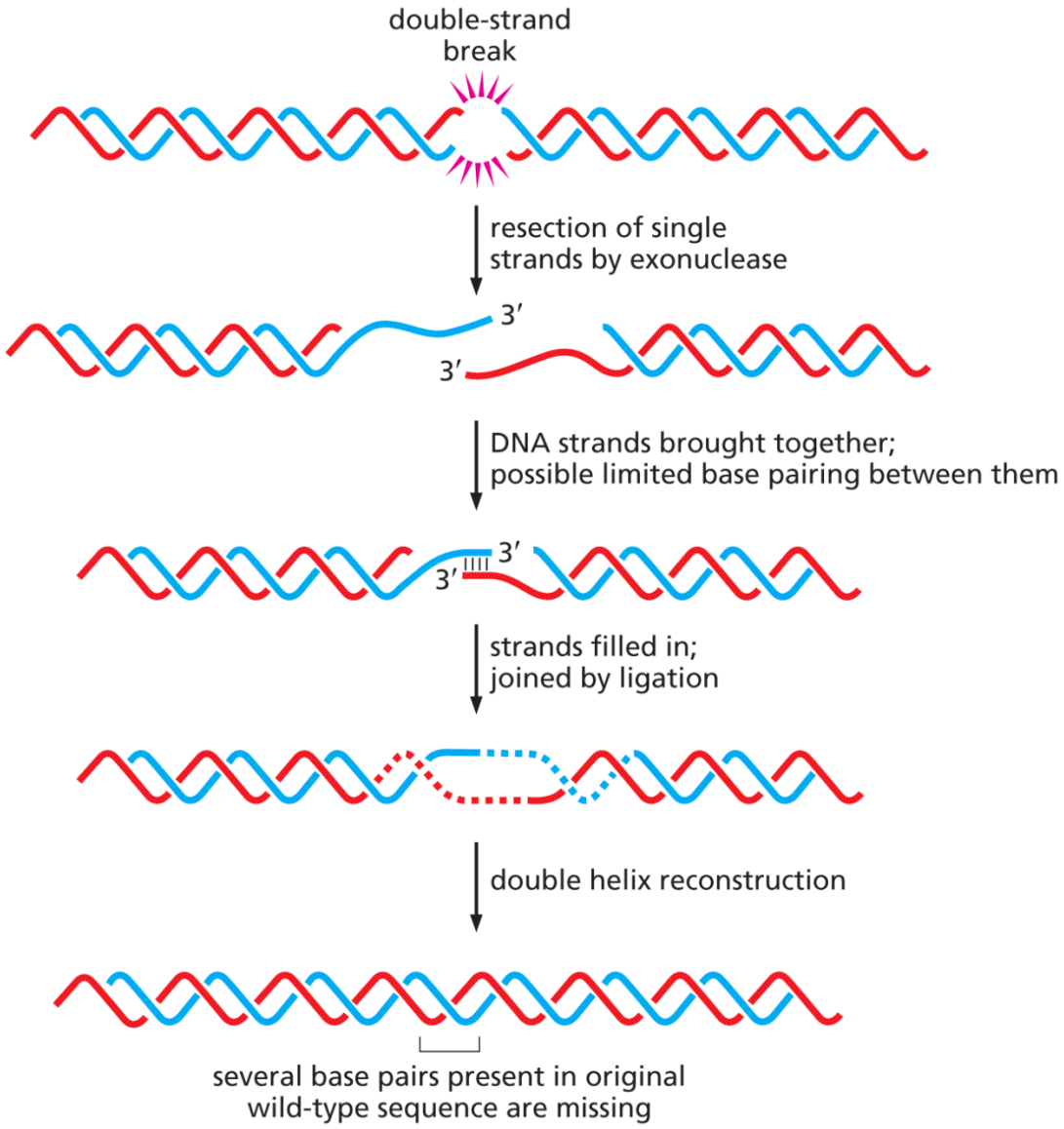
A diagram illustrating the central role of B R C A1. It interacts with the B A C H 1 Top B P 1 complex to regulate S-phase checkpoints; it interacts with a C t l P, RAD 50, N B S 1, and M R E 1 complex to regulate G2 slash M checkpoints; and it interacts with the B R C A 2 RAD 51 complex to regulate homologous recombination.

(B)

Figure 12.31 BRCA1, BRCA2, and their partners (A) The BRCA1 and BRCA2 proteins act, at least in part, as scaffolds to assemble a cohort of other DNA repair proteins into large physical complexes. Once assembled, these multiprotein complexes aid in the repair of dsDNA breaks, usually via homology-directed repair (HR). For example, one exon of the *BRCA2* gene encodes eight copies of a "BRC domain"; these aid in the recruitment of multiple RAD51 molecules, which form filaments and coat ssDNA strands as part of the HR process illustrated in Figure 12.30. The MRN complex, composed of MRE11, RAD50, and NBS1, appears to recognize the end created by a dsDNA break and to activate ATM kinase function in response. BRCA1 acts in different situations and locales (see panel B) as a scaffold for a variety of alternative partners, not all of which are concomitantly bound to BRCA1; for this reason, this image depicts a single complex that never exists in a living cell. Moreover, this image does not capture the full complexity of BRCA1-associated proteins. For example, in the

hydroxyurea-induced nuclear spots containing stalled replication forks (see Figure 12.28A), additional proteins have been discovered beyond those depicted, including MDC1, RPA32, γ-H2AX, RNF8, RNF168, 53BP1, FANCD2, and FANC1. (B) The loss of different partners of BRCA1 specifically affects different checkpoint controls in the cell cycle, in addition to compromising the processes of homologous recombination and homology-directed repair (HR). These interactions illustrate the central role that BRCA1 plays as a scaffolding for a diverse array of proteins mediating a variety of processes involving DNA function. The checkpoint controls ensure that a cell halts before either S or M phase of the cell cycle if its genome carries significant unrepaired lesions, such as DSBs (see Figure 8.4). (A and B, courtesy of R.A. Greenberg and D.M. Livingston.)

Homology-directed repair is also defective in patients suffering from Nijmegen breakage syndrome (see Table 12.1). Their cells, which lack the NBS1 protein (nibrin; see Figure 12.31A), fail to execute the initial steps of HDR and resort instead to fusing two dsDNA ends via the process termed nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ; **Figure 12.32**). NHEJ is inevitably an error-prone process, simply because the alignment between the two DNA segments being fused is not informed by the corresponding wild-type DNA sequences present in a sister chromatid. Consequently, the resulting end-to-end fusions generate mutant sequences at the site of joining, which appear to be responsible for the high rates of hematopoietic malignancies in patients suffering from Nijmegen breakage syndrome. Mice that are defective for one or another component of the NHEJ machinery and that also lack p53 function develop lymphomas at extremely high rates.



The process of Nonhomologous end joining. Initially there is a break in a double-stranded D N A. After resection of single strands by exonuclease, each side of the break has a longer 3 prime end than 5 prime end. The two 3 prime ends are brought together, possibly with limited base pairing between them. The gaps remaining in both strands are filled in and joined by ligation. Finally, the double helix is reconstructed. However, several base pairs present in the original wild-type sequence are now missing.

Figure 12.32 Nonhomologous end joining NHEJ is used to restore a DNA double helix following a double-strand break when the nucleotide sequences from a sister chromatid are not available to instruct the repair apparatus how these ends should be properly joined (see Figure 12.30). In NHEJ, the resection of single strands from both broken ends results in ssDNA overhangs that can then be joined

to one another, possibly by a limited degree of base pairing between them; three base pairs are shown here. The subsequent filling in of single-strand gaps and the ligation of any remaining ssDNA breaks results in the reconstruction of a double helix that lacks some of the base pairs that were present in the original undamaged DNA helix. (Adapted from M.R. Lieber et al., *DNA Repair (Amst.)* 3:817–826, 2004.)

Interestingly, NHEJ occurs largely in the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, when sister chromatids (formed during S phase and segregated to different daughter cells during mitosis) are not available to support HDR. NHEJ is virtually unique among the DNA repair processes because it plays a role in a normal, physiological function unrelated to repairing DNA damage, namely, the normal process of gene rearrangement that leads to the formation of functional antibodies and T-cell receptors. For example, the formation of the DNA sequences encoding antigen-binding domains depends on the rearrangement and fusion of chromosomal V, D, and J DNA segments (see Section 15.5). In the absence of the full complement of repair proteins needed for NHEJ, such DNA segment fusions cannot occur. This results in the inability to make proper immunoglobulin (antibody) molecules and T-cell receptors, compromising both the humoral and cellular arms of the adaptive immune system described in Chapter 15 and creating the syndrome of severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID).

To return to BRCA1/2, it is still unclear precisely how these two proteins contribute to the maintenance of normal chromosomal structure and thereby ward off cancer. Because BRCA1 and BRCA2 can bind to so many distinct nuclear proteins, many involved in DNA repair (see Figure 12.31A), it appears that these two act, at least in part, as a molecular scaffolding that helps to assemble large complexes of these other proteins and coordinate their actions. Once assembled, these various repair proteins presumably collaborate in fixing lesions, largely double-strand breaks, in the DNA. Altogether, as many as 215 distinct proteins have been found to associate with BRCA1 in multiple combinations and permutations, some of which are implicated in various aspects of DNA repair beyond its much-studied role in HR. For example, as Figure 12.31B illustrates, loss of BRCA1 can cripple certain cell cycle checkpoint controls that normally respond to damaged DNA and halt progress through this cycle until the damage is repaired.

We also do not know why inheritance of mutant alleles of the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes leads preferentially to cancers of the breast and ovary, or why somatic mutation of *BRCA2* is occasionally associated with prostate and colon carcinomas. In addition, the penetrance of *BRCA1*- and *BRCA2*-mutant germ-line alleles (that is, the degree to which each allele exerts an observable effect on phenotype) has also been difficult to quantify (**Sidebar 12.8**). Beyond their well-defined roles in DNA damage repair,

BRCA1 and BRCA2 have additional biochemical functions, the disruption of which contribute to tumor formation as well (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.9**).

Sidebar 12.8 Ethnic groups with unusual histories are valuable for studying the penetrance of mutant *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* germ-line alleles

The precise effects of mutant *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* germ-line alleles on cancer risk have been difficult to gauge because both of these genes are very large and the detection of germ-line mutations in their reading frames is made correspondingly difficult. Moreover, many hundreds of mutant germ-line alleles of these genes have been cataloged in the human population, each having its own penetrance, that is, its relative ability to induce clinical disease in a person carrying it in the germ line. Each of these variant alleles operates in the complex genetic background of an individual, and this background also influences disease development; together these two dimensions of variability (the particular *BRCA1/2* mutation and the genetic background) make it almost impossible to gauge with any precision the disease penetrance of most of these alleles.

Many of these mutant alleles are of ancient vintage, having entered into the human gene pool hundreds, even thousands of years ago. Once present, many have been retained in the gene pool because they usually induce disease long after reproduction has occurred and are therefore not rapidly eliminated by Darwinian selection.

The peculiar histories of certain ethnic groups often simplify these analyses. For example, Ashkenazic Jews, who derive from Central and Eastern Europe, descend from a Jewish population of several million that lived in the late Roman Empire. Genetic analyses suggest, however, that the modern population derives from a founding population of only several hundred or so individuals who lived during the last days of this period. This genetic history seems to explain why this population harbors essentially only three mutant *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* germ-line alleles, all of ancient origin, which in aggregate are carried by some 2.5% of contemporary Ashkenazim. These three "founder mutations" contrast with the situation in the general population, in which more than 1500 distinct inherited alleles of *BRCA1* have been reported (a small portion of which may be functionally neutral polymorphisms). Each of these other alleles has been detected by arduous sequence analysis.

These facts explain why the detection of mutant germ-line alleles of the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes in the Ashkenazic population is relatively simple: polymerase chain reaction (PCR)–based DNA primers can be designed that are focused specifically on the detection of only these three alleles, rather than on the countless others that have been reported to date. The most common Ashkenazic *BRCA1* allele, for example, is the *BRCA1 185delAG* allele, which, as its name indicates, involves the deletion of two

nucleotides; this mutant allele was found to be carried by 4.2% of women from this population who presented with invasive breast cancer in a New York City cancer clinic. Further studies revealed that the three mutant alleles conferred comparable risks of invasive breast cancer, which exceeded 80% by the time carriers of one or another of these alleles reached the age of 80.

Provocatively, the risk of developing breast cancer by the age of 50 among carriers of the *185delAG* mutation who were born before 1940 was 24%, whereas this risk was 67% among those carriers born after 1940. This indicates that nongenetic factors play a major role in cancer development, even in those born with a heritable DNA repair defect. (In the case of mutant alleles of *BRCA1*, changes over the past half century in nutrition and reproductive practices may have played major roles.) In addition, this type of epidemiology reveals the power of studying the biological effects of a single mutant allele operating in the context of variable genetic background and lifestyle changes.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

illegitimate recombination
: Process of recombination between two DNA molecules in which the two participating molecules do not share significant sequence identity. *Also called* **illegitimate recombination**.

nonhomologous end joining
: Type of DNA repair consisting of fusion of two dsDNA ends, in which the precise joining of the two ends is not informed or directed by sequences present in a normal sister chromatid or homologous chromosome.

penetrance
: Extent to which an allele of a gene can or cannot influence phenotype, e.g., the likelihood that a germ-line allele will or will not induce a clinical phenotype in a carrier of this allele. *See also* **expressivity, incomplete penetrance**.

conditional
: Referring to a phenotypic state or genetic change that only occurs under certain conditions, often in response to physiological signals or those induced experimentally. *See also* **constitutive**.

founder effect
: Phenomenon in which multiple individuals within a species, often not known to share any genealogical relationship with one another, are found to carry a common germ-line allele that testifies to their actual descent from a common ancestor that bore the allele.

OceanofPDF.com

12.10 The karyotype of cancer cells is often changed through alterations in chromosome structure

More than a century intervened between the discovery of aberrant karyotypes in cancer cells and the period when subtleties of DNA damage and repair, such as those described above, came to light. The triradial and quadriradial metaphase chromosomes seen in cells lacking BRCA1 or BRCA2 function are examples of these aberrations (see Figure 12.29). Stepping back for a moment from these particular aberrations, we can recognize that two distinct classes of karyotypic abnormalities can be seen in cancer cells: changes in the *structures* of individual chromosomes and changes in chromosome *number* that have no effect on chromosome structure.

One frequent deviation from the normal diploid karyotype involves an increase or decrease in the number of specific chromosomes. On occasion, through various accidents occurring during mitosis, cancer cells may acquire polyploid genomes, where an additional haploid complement of chromosomes is acquired (leading to a triploid state) or even an extra diploid complement of chromosomes is acquired (leading to a tetraploid state). Alternatively, extra copies of individual chromosomes may be present, or, less commonly, a chromosome copy may be missing.

The term aneuploidy is usually reserved for a deviation from a normal (or euploid) karyotype that involves changes in chromosome *number*. In recent years, however, use of the term aneuploid has occasionally been broadened to include changes in the *structures* of individual chromosomes, which are prevalent in cells of the great majority (>85%) of solid tumors; a more specific term is “chromosomal aberration,” which we will use here. These two major types of karyotypic alteration arise through fundamentally different mechanisms.

Changes in chromosome number are discussed in the next section. Here, we review the mechanisms responsible for changes in chromosome structure, some of which we have already encountered at various points in this text. For example, as we saw in the previous section, unrepaired dsDNA breaks, many of which occur accidentally at DNA replication forks, are thought to be a major source of chromosomal translocations.

In addition, far earlier (see Chapter 4) we learned of a class of cancer-associated chromosomal alterations as part of a discussion of the mechanisms leading to the creation of the *MYC* and *BCR-ABL* oncogenes. Recall the well-studied case of the

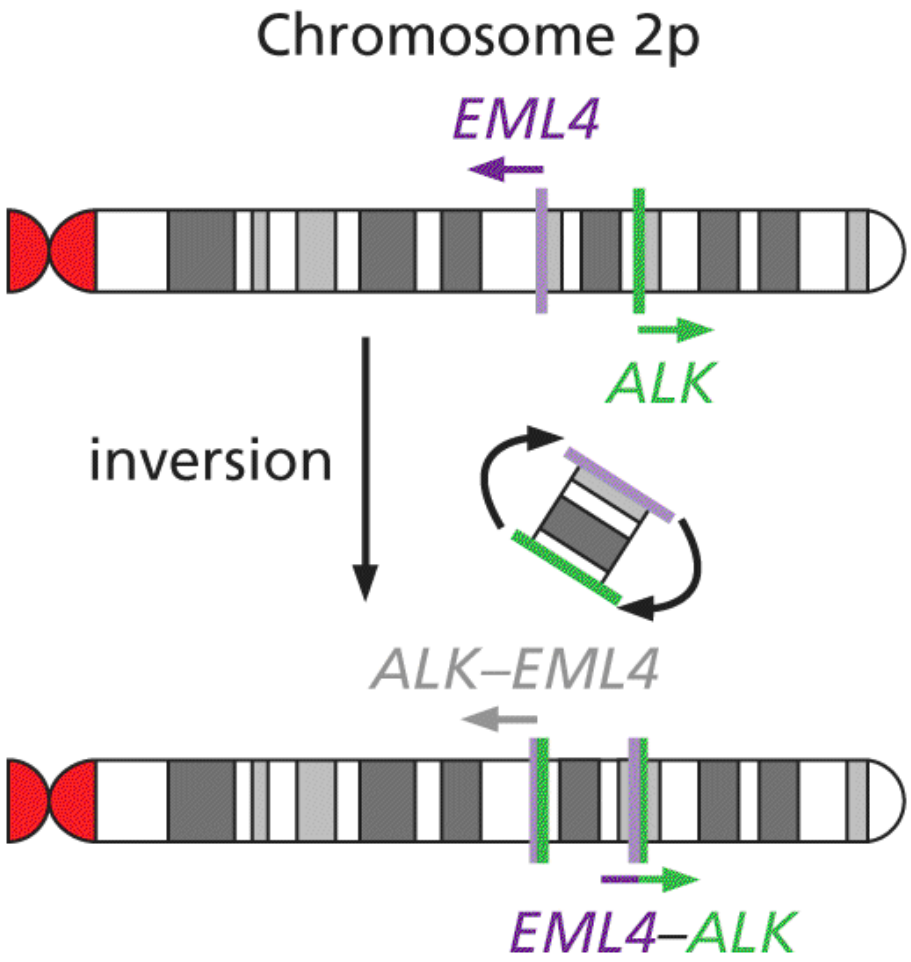
translocations that fuse the *myc* proto-oncogene to promoter/enhancer sequences deriving from one of three alternative immunoglobulin genes (see Section 4.4). In these and other lymphomas, it is likely that the complex machinery dedicated to rearranging the immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor (TCR) genes misfires. Instead of rearranging the immunoglobulin or TCR gene sequences (see Section 15.5), this machinery inadvertently catalyzes inappropriate interchromosomal recombination events that join the immunoglobulin genes promiscuously with sequences scattered throughout the genome, the *myc* gene being only one of them. Those rare translocations that happen to involve the *myc* proto-oncogene and deregulate its transcription seem to confer special proliferative advantage on cells, resulting in the appearance of cell clones and ultimately lymphomas that carry these very characteristic karyotypic alterations.

The first characterized translocations were documented in a variety of hematopoietic malignancies (see, for example, Tables 4.4 and 4.5), largely a result of the ease of carrying out karyotype analyses of cells derived from these tumors. Although many mechanisms likely contribute to the formation of structurally aberrant chromosomes, one well-studied mechanism was presented in Chapter 10, where we read about telomere collapse resulting in breakage–fusion–bridge (BFB) cycles (see Figure 10.9). These cycles create large-scale aberrations in the structures of individual chromosomes, apparently striking all chromosomes with comparable frequency. On occasion, translocations may generate fusion genes and other rearrangements that provide proliferative advantage to the cells carrying them, which one imagines results in the clonal outgrowth of these cells. Below we consider another disruptive process—chromothripsis (or chromosome shattering)—in which a limited stretch of a chromosome undergoes massive fragmentation with subsequent rejoining of the resulting fragments.

With the advent of high-throughput DNA sequencing technologies (see Section 12.12), genome-scale analyses of human cancers have increased dramatically. In addition to the discovery of more subtle mutations (base alterations or small insertions and deletions), many larger-scaled alterations have also been detected across virtually all cancer types. Many of these are termed recurrent because they have been seen on multiple occasions in a series of independently arising human tumors; as described in Section 11.6, these alterations are considered to be “driver mutations” and the affected genes “drivers.” By now, hundreds of these recurrent translocations have been cataloged in hematopoietic and solid tumors. Because recurrent translocations map to highly specific chromosomal sites, it would seem that the molecular mechanisms creating them are distinct from the breakage–fusion–bridge cycles cited above, which appear to act totally randomly via BFB cycles in generating fused chromosomal segments.

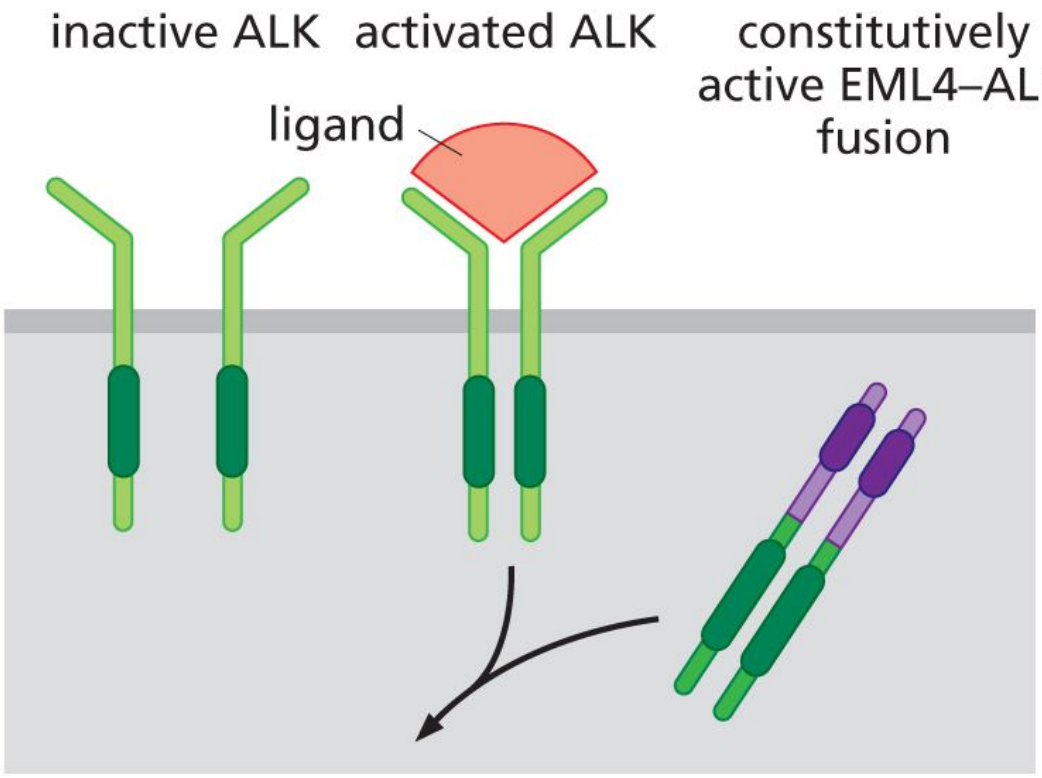
Chromosomal translocations were thought for many decades to be present uniquely in hematopoietic tumors, as discussed above. However, beginning in 2000, the availability of new DNA sequencing strategies, the resulting sequencing of the human genome, and new bioinformatics tools began to reveal chromosomal translocations and other chromosomal aberrations, some quite common, in solid tumors. For example, in 2005, a specific recurrent translocation, involving a gene encoding an androgen-regulated serine protease and an ETS transcription factor, was discovered. This particular translocation (*TMPR32/ERG*) is now known to be present in the tumors of ∼50% of the patients bearing localized prostate carcinomas, and translocations involving *TMPR32* and other *ERG*-related transcription factors bring the total to ∼70%. These discoveries in a commonly occurring human carcinoma triggered surveys of a variety of solid tumor genomes and a spate of additional discoveries, many of them driven by the powerful new genome sequencing technologies.

In another example, approximately 5% of non-small-cell lung adenocarcinomas express a fusion oncoprotein termed EML4-ALK, which is the product of an intrachromosomal inversion and fusion event. In particular, this inversion event fuses the EML4 protein's N-terminal domain to the tyrosine kinase domain of the ALK RTK, leading to constitutive activation of its kinase function and uncontrolled proliferative signaling (**Figure 12.33**). Like the fusion proteins described in Figure 5.12, this particular one causes constitutive receptor activation, in that the trimerization domain of EML4 drives formation of oligomerized ALK kinase domains. This chromosomal event also places the fusion gene under the control of the *EML4* promoter. In these lung carcinomas, this EML4-ALK fusion is seen to be mutually exclusive with activating mutations of the EGF receptor, indicating that it is likely to function similarly in the transformation process. Interestingly, the kinase function of ALK is also activated in several hematopoietic malignancies via chromosomal translocation events. More generally, comprehensive genomic analyses of many tumor types have revealed that chromosomal translocations and other aberrations occur at greatly differing frequencies among various solid tumors (**Figure 12.34**). The functional rationales that would explain these tissue-specific associations remain elusive.



A chromosome 2p with a long E M L 4 segment on the centromere side, a long A L K segment on the free end, and a short segment between the two. During chromosomal inversion, this short segment flips end over end and is reinserted in the same location. Now the segment on the centromere side is labeled A L K–E M L 4, and the segment on the free end is labeled E M L 4–A L K.

(A)

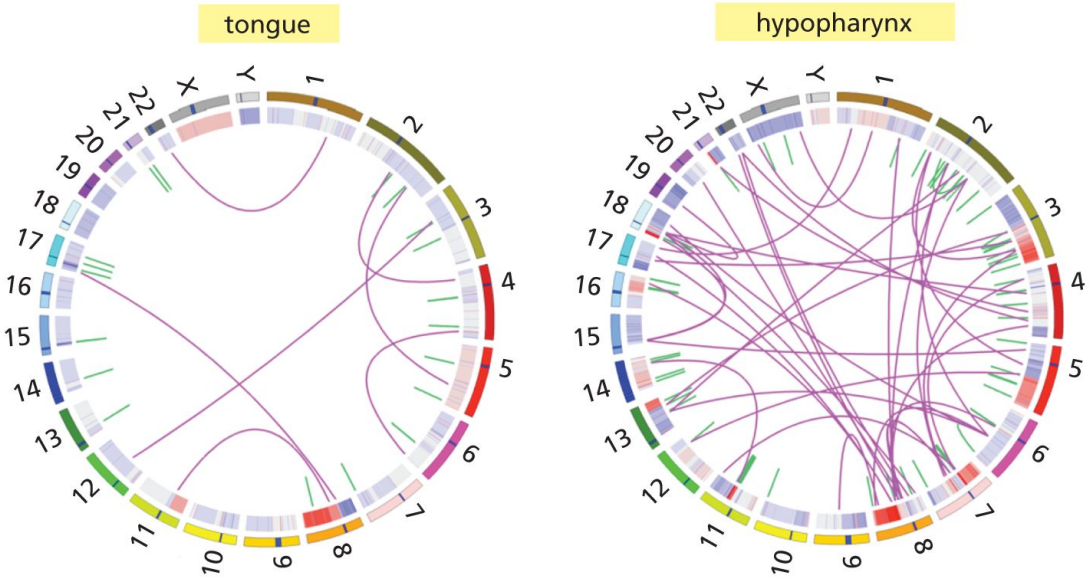


An initially inactive A L K receptor dimerizes when bound by a ligand and is now active. Also shown is a dimerized protein with two parallel green ends, similar to the A L K receptor's ends, and two parallel purple ends. This proteir is labeled constitutively active E M L 4–A L K fusion. This protein and the active A L K receptor both contribute to signal transduction, as shown by two black arrows that merge into one.

(B)

Figure 12.33 Chromosomal inversion produces a fusion oncogene A subset of lung adenocarcinomas carry the EML4–ALK fusion oncogene, which is formed by a chromosomal inversion event. (A) The *EML4* (*purple arrow*) and *ALK* (*green arrow*) genes are oriented in opposite directions on the p arm of Chromosome 2. Following the chromosomal inversion event, the promoter and 5′ exons of EML4 are fused to the 3′ exons of ALK, including exons encoding the kinase domain, forming the EML4-ALK fusion. (B) The wild-type ALK protein is a receptor tyrosine kinase that is normally expressed in cells of the nervous system and not in the adult lung. Binding to its ligand leads to homodimerization and activation of the kinase domain (*indicated by the dark green bars*), leading to signal transduction (*forked black arrow*). Under control of the *EML4* promoter, which is transcribed in the lung, the EML4-ALK fusion protein is expressed in lung cancer cells. The dimerization domain of the EML4 protein (*dark purple bars*) permits

unregulated dimerization of the tyrosine kinase domain of the fusion protein, constitutively activating downstream signaling pathways and contributing to oncogenesis. (From J.N. Rosenbaum et al., *Mod. Pathol.* 31: 791–808, 2018. With permission from Nature.)

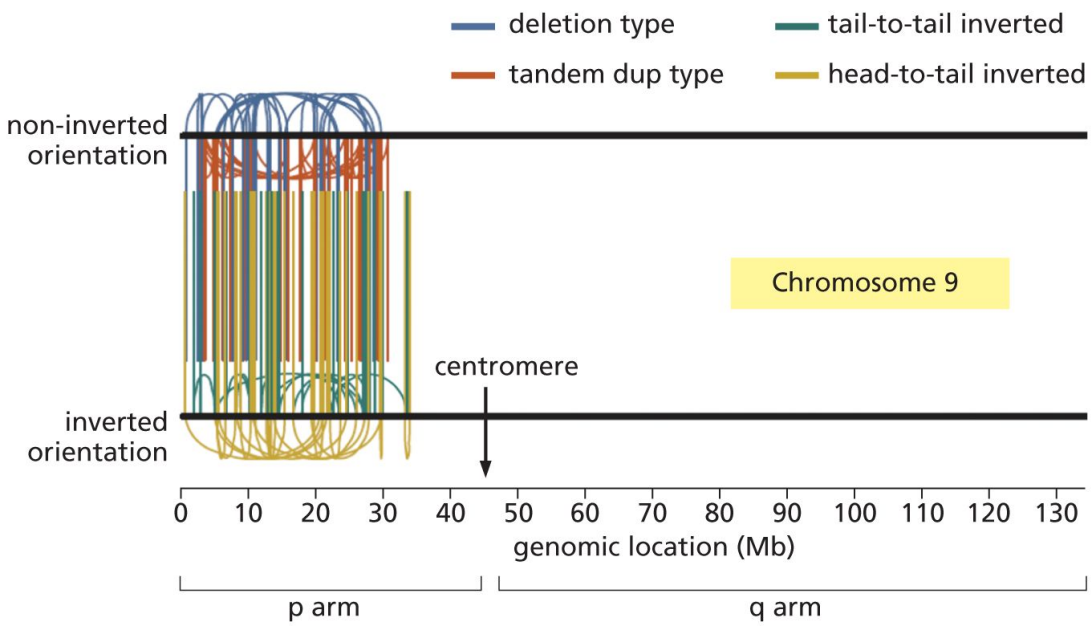


Two Circos plots, one for the tongue and one for the hypopharynx. Each plot is a circle with the human chromosomes listed clockwise around the outside, starting with 1 and ending with X and Y. The one for the tongue records seven translocations, including two each involving chromosomes 2, 4 and 8. This plot also records 19 local rearrangements, including 3 on chromosome 17. The plot for the hypopharynx records at least 30 translocations between chromosomes and roughly 50 local rearrangements. Chromosome 8 is especially susceptible to translocations.

Figure 12.34 Chromosomal translocations in head-and-neck carcinomas of smokers This graphic convention of depicting chromosomal translocations places the chromosomes around a circle according to their number or letter (sometimes termed a Circos plot) with fusions between previously unlinked chromosomal segments depicted by purple lines. Short green ticks pointing toward the center of the circle indicate regions of local intrachromosomal rearrangements, including translocations, small amplifications, deletions, and inversions. The genomes of two head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCCs) of smokers—a tongue and a hypopharyngeal carcinoma—are depicted here. None of these translocations were associated with a recurrent translocation documented in other similar tumors. (With permission from N. Stransky et al., *Science 333*:1157-1160, 2011. With permission from AAAS.)

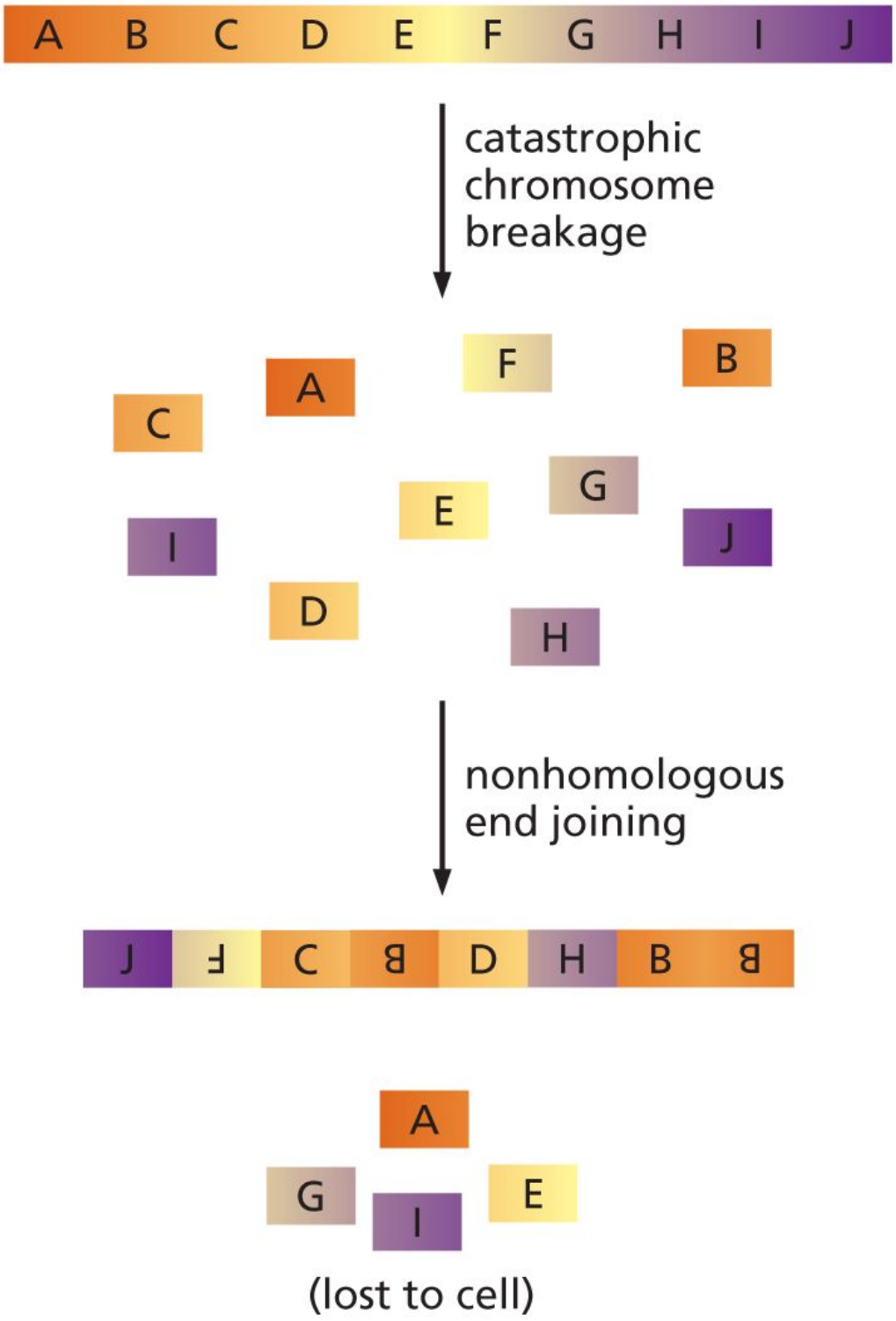
The enzymes involved in the rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes and T-cell receptor genes (see Section 15.5) are unlikely to be responsible for most of the commonly encountered translocations found in hematopoietic and non-hematopoietic tumors, simply because these enzymes are not expressed in the normal cells of origin of these diverse tumors. Hence, the molecular mechanisms responsible for these translocations are yet to be discovered. Sequence analyses of the DNA flanking translocation breakpoints have revealed duplications, deletions, and inversions of sequence blocs, findings that suggest but hardly prove the involvement of some type of "error-prone" DNA repair mechanism, such as the nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) discussed earlier (see Figure 12.32).

Implementation of new DNA sequencing technologies led in 2011 to discovery of a totally novel type of aberration in the genomes of ~25% of bone cancers and a significant fraction of cancers overall—the localized firestorms of chromosomal rearrangements representing the chromothripsis cited earlier. In the example shown in **Figure 12.35**, a single catastrophic event seems to have shattered a limited stretch of the genome, followed by multiple rejoining events between the resulting fragments in an apparently random set of configurations. The mutational mechanism underlying such chromothripsis is still under active investigation. In some instances, at least, it appears to be the product of improper chromosome segregation during mitosis, leading to the formation of micronuclei surrounding mis-segregated chromosomes that are initially stranded in the cytoplasm after mitosis. The defective nuclear envelope structure of these micronuclei may be insufficient to guard the chromosome housed within from endonucleases that initiate the damage that results in chromothripsis. Telomere dysfunction and resulting breakage–fusion–bridge events (see Figure 10.9) have also been associated with the development of chromothripsis.



Many local errors on the p arm of human chromosome 9, nearly all between genomic locations 0 and 30 megabases. The errors are of four types: deletion type, tandem dup type, tail-to-tail inverted, and head-to-tail inverted.

(A)



An orderly sequence of letters, A through J, undergoes catastrophic chromosome breakage into 10 individual parts. After the B is duplicated twice, all three bees and 5 of the other letters combine in random order, some

upside down and some right side up. Four letters, A E, I and J, are lost to the cell.
(B)

Figure 12.35 Localized firestorms of chromosomal rearrangement The development of high throughput DNA sequencing technologies has made it possible to discover certain types of chromosomal damage that previously eluded detection. (A) In the genome of a thyroid carcinoma, a cluster of 77 distinct chromosomal rearrangements affecting the short arm of Chromosome 9 (i.e., 9p) have been documented. Each of the lines indicates the direct fusion of two DNA segments that are normally located at some distance from one another in this chromosomal arm; these rearrangements involve four distinct types of changes in DNA configuration listed *above right.* (B) The scheme illustrated here provides one explanation of how such a focally localized set of chromosomal rearrangements, which has been termed chromothripsis, may have arisen. According to one attractive model, the formation of single-chromosome-containing micronuclei results in individual chromosomes undergoing extensive intrachromosomal rearrangement prior to becoming reassociated with the larger complement of chromosomes during a subsequent mitosis. (From P.J. Stephens et al., *Cell* 144:27–40, 2011. With permission from Elsevier.)

To conclude, chromosomal aberrations and chromothripsis leave us with two major puzzles: (1) Which components of the DNA repair machinery are normally on guard to prevent the formation of these aberrations? (2) How do most of these chromosomal abnormalities, once formed, contribute functionally to cancer formation?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

polyploid
: Referring to a genome in which the entire haploid array of chromosomes is represented in copy numbers larger than two. *See also* **haploid**, **diploid**.

triploid
: Describing a karyotype or a genetic state having precisely three haploid complements of a chromosome, chromosomal array, or copies of a gene.

tetraploid
: Describing a karyotype having precisely four haploid complements (or two diploid complements) of chromosomes.

euploid
: (1) Referring to a collection of chromosomes that corresponds precisely in number and structure to the array present in normal, wild-type cells. (2) Describing a karyotype having such a complement of chromosomes. *See also* **karyotype.**

chromothripsis
: The presence of multiple chromosomal rearrangements usually limited to a single chromosomal region and suggesting the involvement of an initial catastrophic shattering of a chromosomal domain followed by rejoining of the fragmented segments in random order and orientation. *See also* **kataegis**.

aneuploid
: (1) Describing a karyotype that deviates from diploid because of increases or decreases in the numbers of certain chromosomes. (2) Less commonly, describing a karyotype that carries structurally abnormal chromosomes.

micronucleus
: (1) A small fragment of a nucleus that has its own nuclear membrane and results from certain aberrations in cell division or from damage inflicted on a cell; micronuclei often carry only a single chromosome and arise when this chromosome fails to be incorporated into the previously formed mitotic spindle, thereby escaping inclusion in the normal karyotypic array of a daughter cell. (2) Smaller of the two

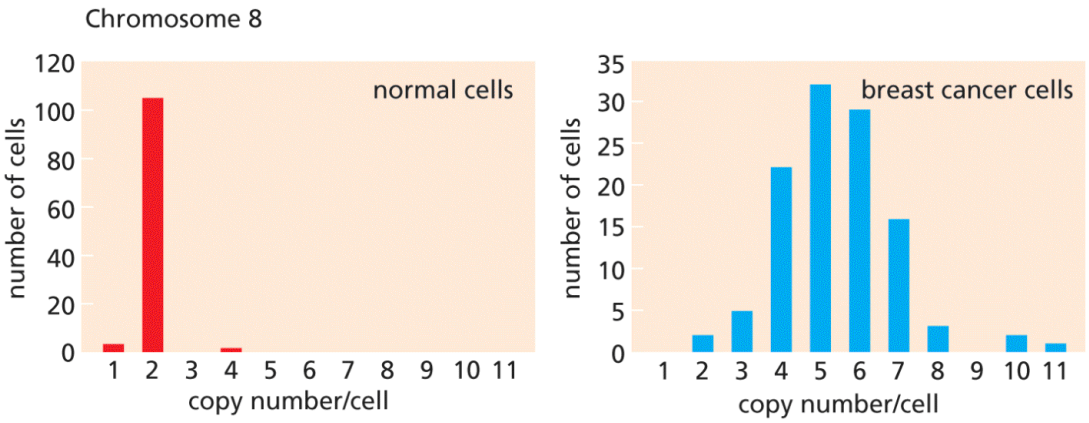
nuclei in many ciliate cells, which is used to carry and transmit the ciliate genome to progeny cells.

OceanofPDF.com

12.11 The karyotype of cancer cells is often changed through alterations in chromosome number

As stated earlier, some types of genetic instability affect karyotype by altering the *number* of individual chromosomes without affecting their structure. These changes create aneuploidy (in the usual sense of this term). Although the term “mutation” is often reserved for changes in DNA sequence (and thus includes changes in chromosome structure), we should recognize that alterations in chromosome number also represent significant changes in a genome that can have equally profound effects on cell behavior and are, strictly speaking, also a type of mutation. As discussed in Section 12.13 below, comprehensive cancer genome sequencing analysis has demonstrated that whole chromosome gains or losses are an almost-universal feature of solid tumors.

Changes in chromosome number are a feature of the carcinoma cells that are afflicted by the condition termed *chromosomal instability* (CIN). When CIN-positive cancer cells are removed from patients and propagated *in vitro*, the consequences of CIN become evident, for these cells continue to reshuffle their complement of chromosomes during subsequent propagation in the Petri dish. Such cancer cells were already quite aneuploid when they were removed from the patient, and their karyotypic instability seen *in vitro* is presumably only a continuation of the instability that existed *in vivo* during tumorigenesis (**Figure 12.36**).



Two histograms compare the number of copies of chromosome 8 in normal cells with the number in breast cancer cells. In the normal histogram, over 100 cells

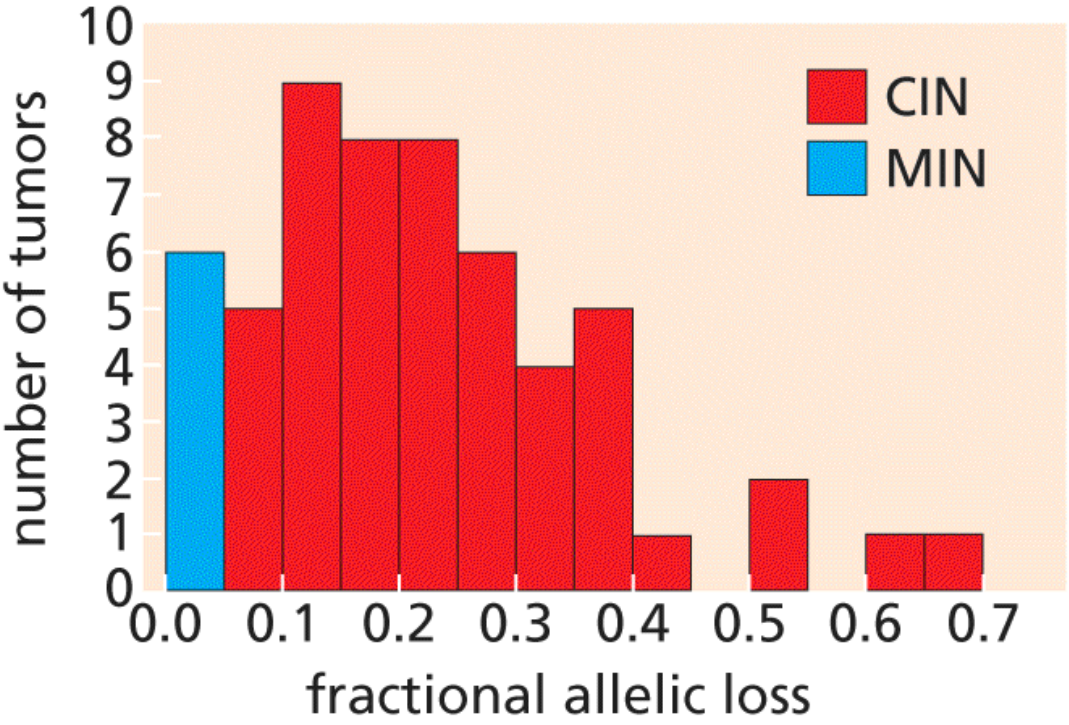
have 2 copies of chromosome 8, a few have just 1 copy, and even fewer have 4 copies. In the breast cancer histogram, the most common number of copies of chromosome 8 was 5, the number in over 30 cells. Just under 30 cells have 6 copies. The rest of the distribution tails downward like a bell curve. No cells have 9 copies, but there are a few that have 10 copies, outnumbering the cells with the normal 2 copies.

Figure 12.36 Chromosome instability in cultured cancer cells The copy number of Chromosome 8 was measured here using fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) in normal cells (*left*) and also in cultured breast cancer cells (*right*) that exhibited chromosomal instability (CIN). As indicated, almost all the normal cells had two copies of Chromosome 8, whereas the copy number of Chromosome 8 varied extensively in the cells with CIN. (An essentially identical distribution of chromosome copy number was observed upon study of a second, arbitrarily chosen chromosome.) This great cell-to-cell variability of chromosome number indicates that fluctuations of this number continue to occur frequently as these cancer cells are propagated in culture. (From G.A. Pihan et al., *Cancer Res*. 58:3974–3985, 1998. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

The aneuploid karyotypes of cancer cells can be interpreted in two ways. One point of view portrays aneuploidy as a *consequence* of the general chaos that progressively envelops cancer cells as they advance toward highly malignant states. The other point of view ascribes a *causal* importance to aneuploidy, arguing that it is an essential component of tumorigenesis. Thus, some contend that most cancer cells require chromosomal instability during their development in order to scramble their genomes and arrive at chromosomal configurations that are more favorable for neoplastic growth. According to this second line of thinking, in the absence of the increased mutability associated with aneuploidy, most clones of incipient cancer cells could never succeed in acquiring all the genetic alterations needed to complete multi-step tumorigenesis.

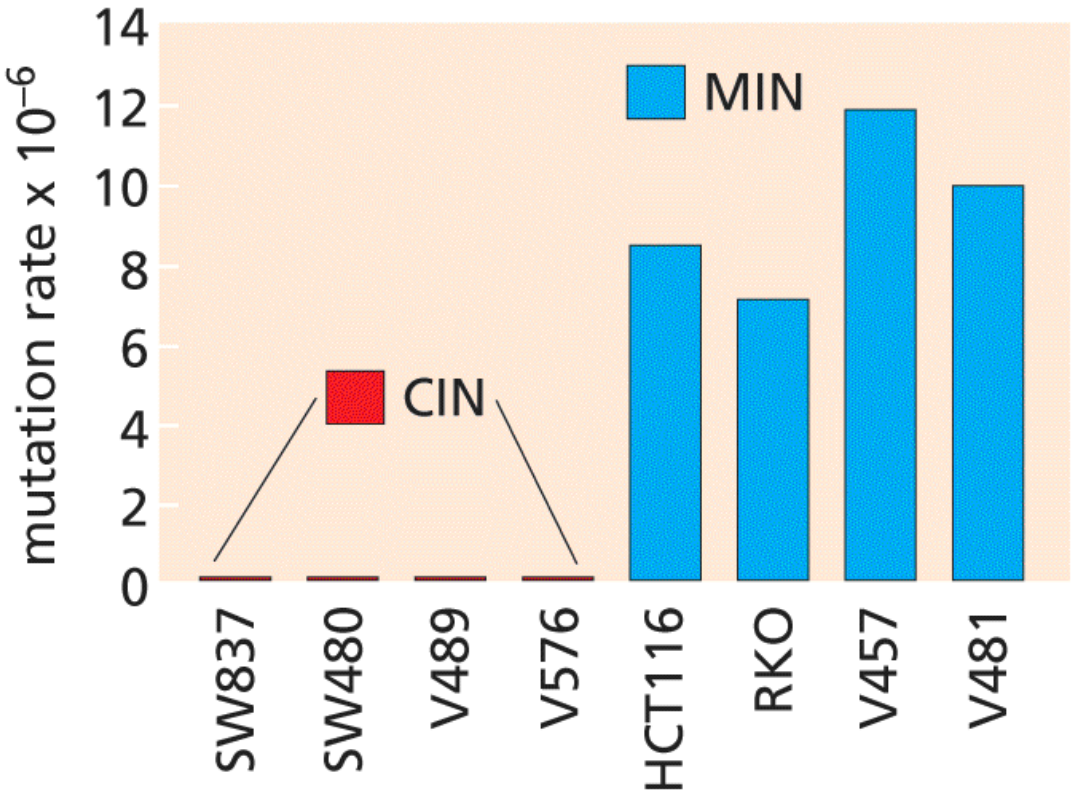
An important observation that will help settle this debate has come from the study of a series of human colon and rectal carcinomas. The few tumors that exhibit microsatellite instability (MIN) show relatively little aneuploidy and virtually no chromosomal instability (CIN). Conversely, the far more numerous tumors that have CIN are not prone to show nucleotide sequence alterations that are characteristic of MIN (**Figure 12.37**). Together, these observations suggest that, at least in the case of colorectal carcinomas, tumor cells must acquire increased mutability of their genomes and that either one or the other of these two mechanisms suffices to provide such mutability. This conclusion begins to persuade one that CIN, like MIN, is an effective mechanism for remodeling the cellular genome in a way that favors evolution toward neoplasia. (Of note, contrary to the depiction in Figure 12.37, CIN and MIN are not

always mutually exclusive states, and some tumors exhibit both types of instability concomitantly.)



A histogram that specifies the number of tumors exhibiting a fractional allelic loss, ranging from 0 to 0.7 in increments of 0.1. For all six M I N tumors, the fractional allelic loss is zero. All 50 C I N tumors exhibit some loss, ranging from 0.05 to 0.65. The most common allelic loss rate is 0.1, with 9 tumors.

(A)



A bar graph that specifies the mutation rate for 4 C I N cell lines and 4 M I N cell lines. The mutation rate is almost zero for the C I N cell lines, these being S W837, S W480, V489, and V576. The mutation rate is higher for the M I N cell lines, these being H C T116, R K O, V457 and V481. It ranges from 7 times 10 to the negative 6 to 12 times 10 to the negative 6.

(B)

Figure 12.37 Chromosomal instability vs. gene mutation The presence of chromosome instability (CIN) can be gauged by measuring the loss of alleles from chromosomal arms. (A) In the colorectal carcinomas studied here, analyses of a large number of tumors revealed that many lost heterozygosity (LOH; see Section 7.4) at a substantial number of chromosomal loci. On the *abscissa*, 0.3 allelic loss, for example, refers to tumors in which 30% of the loci that were previously heterozygous, as revealed by analyses of chromosomal markers, no longer exhibit heterozygosity (*red bars*). Most of this LOH is attributable to the loss of whole chromosomes. In contrast, among the tumors afflicted with microsatellite instability (MIN; *blue bar*), the loss of alleles and hence the loss of entire chromosomes is negligible. (B) In colorectal tumor cell lines that exhibit CIN, as gauged by the loss of chromosomal markers, the rate of inactivation of the HPRT (hypoxanthine phosphoribosyltransferase) gene is virtually zero (*first four bars*,

red). In contrast, in those that exhibit MIN, the rate of mutation of this gene is significant and is occasionally 100-fold higher than in CIN tumor cell lines (*last four bars*, *blue*). (A, from C. Lengauer, K.W. Kinzler and B. Vogelstein, *Nature* 396:643–649, 1998; and B. Vogelstein et al., *Science* 244:207–211, 1989. With permission from AAAS. B, from C. Lengauer, K.W. Kinzler and B. Vogelstein, *Nature* 396:643–649, 1998; and J.R. Eshleman et al., *Oncogene* 10:33–37, 1995. With permission from Nature.)

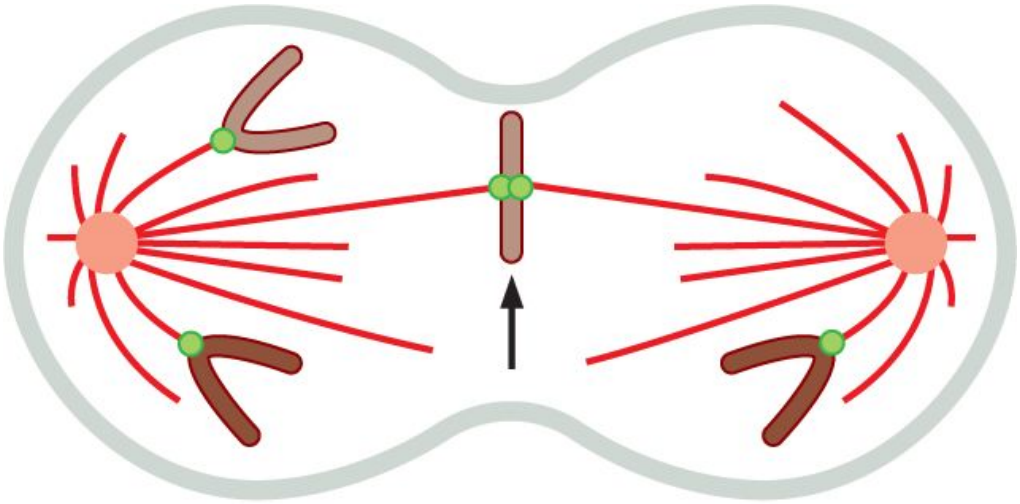
Whether this logic pertains as well to the genetic mechanisms creating hematopoietic malignancies remains unclear. Unlike carcinoma cells, which almost invariably exhibit widespread karyotypic chaos, hematopoietic tumor cells often exhibit karyotypes that are diploid, with the exception of one or two reciprocal translocations that seem to be responsible for initiating the cancer or triggering a specific step of tumor progression (for example, the one creating the *BCR-ABL* oncogene; see Section 4.5). Still, it is highly unlikely that the small number of observable karyotypic alterations found in most hematopoietic cancer cells suffice on their own to enable full neoplastic proliferation. (In one case—that of chronic myelogenous leukemia—the acquisition of the *BCR-ABL* oncogene is often followed during blast crisis relapse by the loss of p53 function; point mutations cause this loss, and they are, of course, karyotypically invisible.) Moreover, hematopoietic tumor cells have not been reported to suffer from microsatellite instability. It therefore remains unclear which genetic or epigenetic mechanisms enable hematopoietic cells to acquire the entire ensemble of neoplastic functions needed in order for them to proliferate as fully neoplastic cells. Indeed, we do not even know whether the formation of hematopoietic tumors requires as many genetic changes as those required for the formation of solid tumors (see Section 11.9).

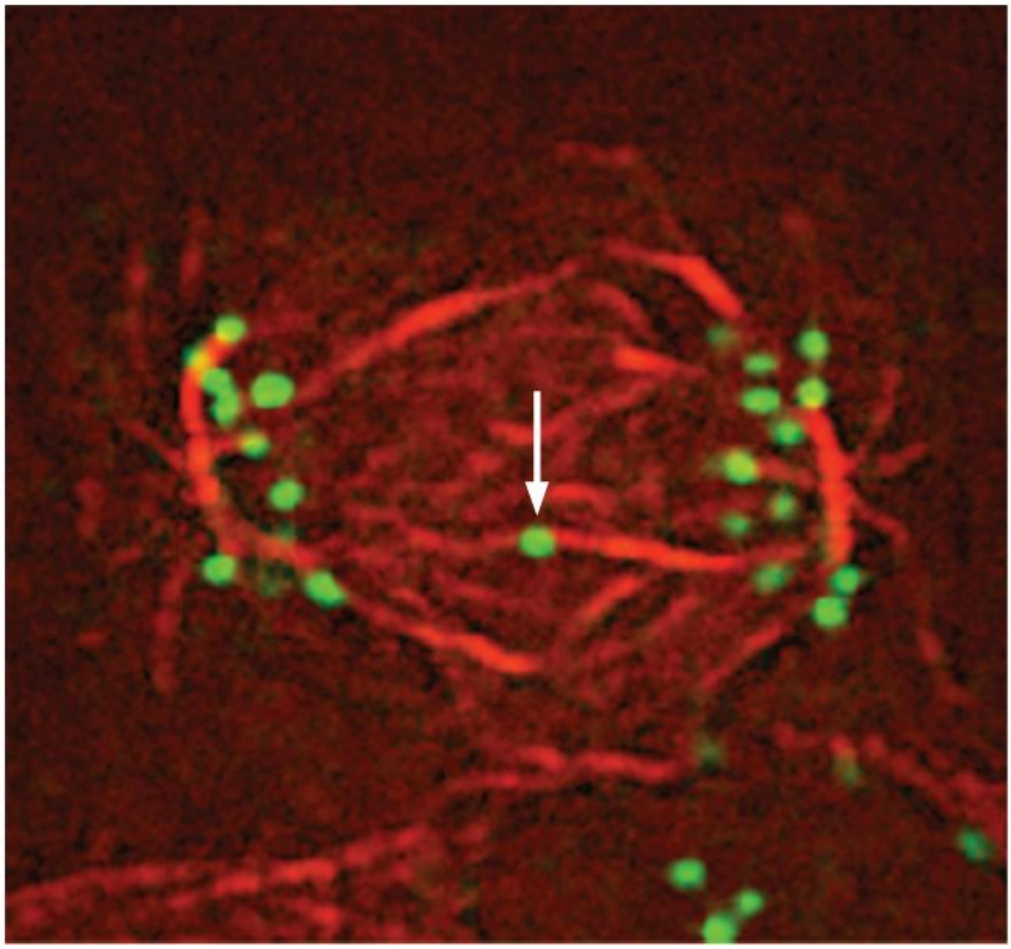
The changes in chromosome number that characterize chromosomal instability are usually (and perhaps always) the consequences of mis-segregation of chromosomes during mitosis. During the normal M phase of the cell cycle, the chromosomes line up in a plane, the metaphase plate, and associate with spindle fibers (see Figure 8.3A). The fibers together form a metaphase spindle, a bipolar structure in which each half spindle is constituted of microtubule fibers, many of which extend from the kinetochores on the chromosomes (the complex nucleoprotein bodies associated with the centromeric DNA segments of the chromosomes) back to the centrosomes; the latter are responsible for organizing the entire metaphase spindle structure. When this apparatus is working properly, the spindle fibers pull sister chromatid pairs apart, so that each chromatid moves toward one of the two centrosomes. This ensures that the two daughter cells that will eventually arise after cell division receive precisely equal allotments of chromosomes.

This complex process of chromosome segregation is monitored by a series of checkpoint controls, which ensure initially that precisely two centrosomes and two

half-spindles form; that each chromatid in a pair associates via its kinetochore with its own, distinct half-spindle; and that chromatid separation is not allowed to proceed unless and until all pairs of chromatids are properly aligned on the metaphase plate. When these checkpoint mechanisms fail to impose quality control on chromosomal segregation, both sister chromatids in a pair may be pulled to one or the other centrosome (the process of nondisjunction). As a consequence, one of the subsequently arising daughter cells may become haploid for this chromosome and the other triploid. Alternatively, a chromatid may fail to attach to a spindle fiber, may land in the cytoplasm of a daughter cell after the completion of M phase, and may nucleate the formation of a micronucleus as cited earlier; the single chromosome borne in the latter may rejoin the bulk of the chromosomes during the course of the next mitosis or, more frequently, disintegrate and thus fail to contribute to the chromosomal array of descendant cells.

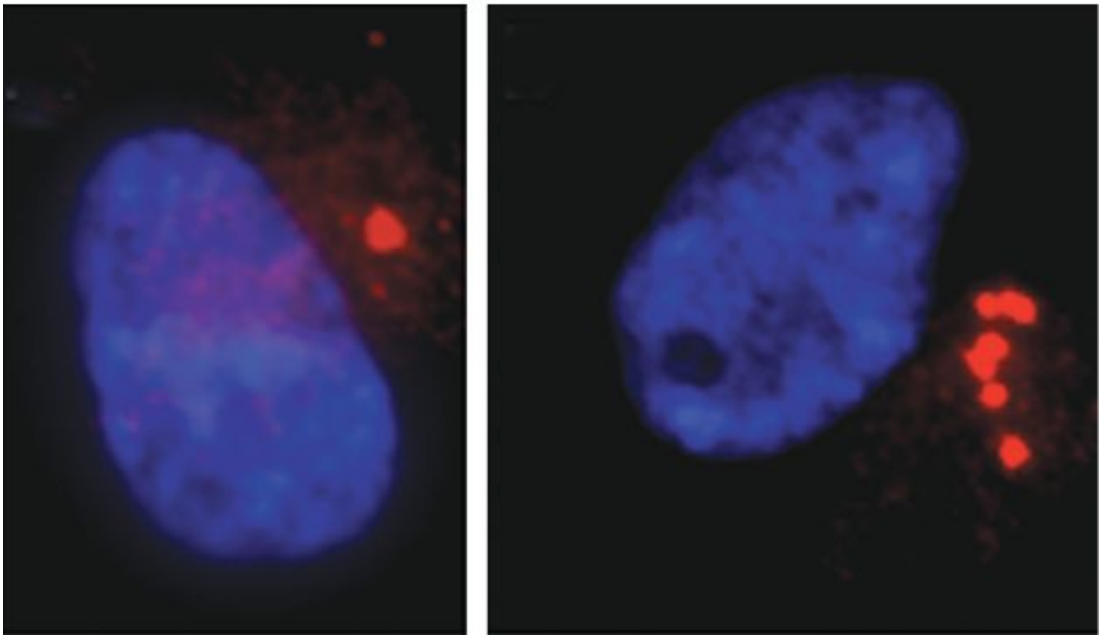
A possibly more important source of aneuploidy derives from malfunction of the complex machinery that normally ensures that each kinetochore is bound appropriately to its own set of 20–25 microtubules that form a spindle fiber; these attachments allow each pair of sister chromatids, initially linked by their paired kinetochores, to be pulled in opposite directions at anaphase. However, in many cancer cells, this control mechanism does not operate properly, and individual kinetochores become associated instead with *too many* spindle fibers. For example, merotely occurs when a kinetochore (belonging to a single chromatid) becomes attached simultaneously to two oppositely oriented sets of spindle fibers, which then proceed to engage in a microscopic tug-of-war; this competition is often unresolved by the end of mitosis, leaving the chromatid carrying this kinetochore stranded between the two groups of properly segregating chromatids (now called chromosomes; **Figure 12.38A**). The fate of this orphaned chromosome is unclear; it may be lost entirely or eventually associate with one or another daughter nucleus. A number of studies indicate that merotely represents the major source of CIN in cancer cells. As discussed above, the formation of micronuclei surrounding improperly segregated chromosomes can lead to chromothripsis.





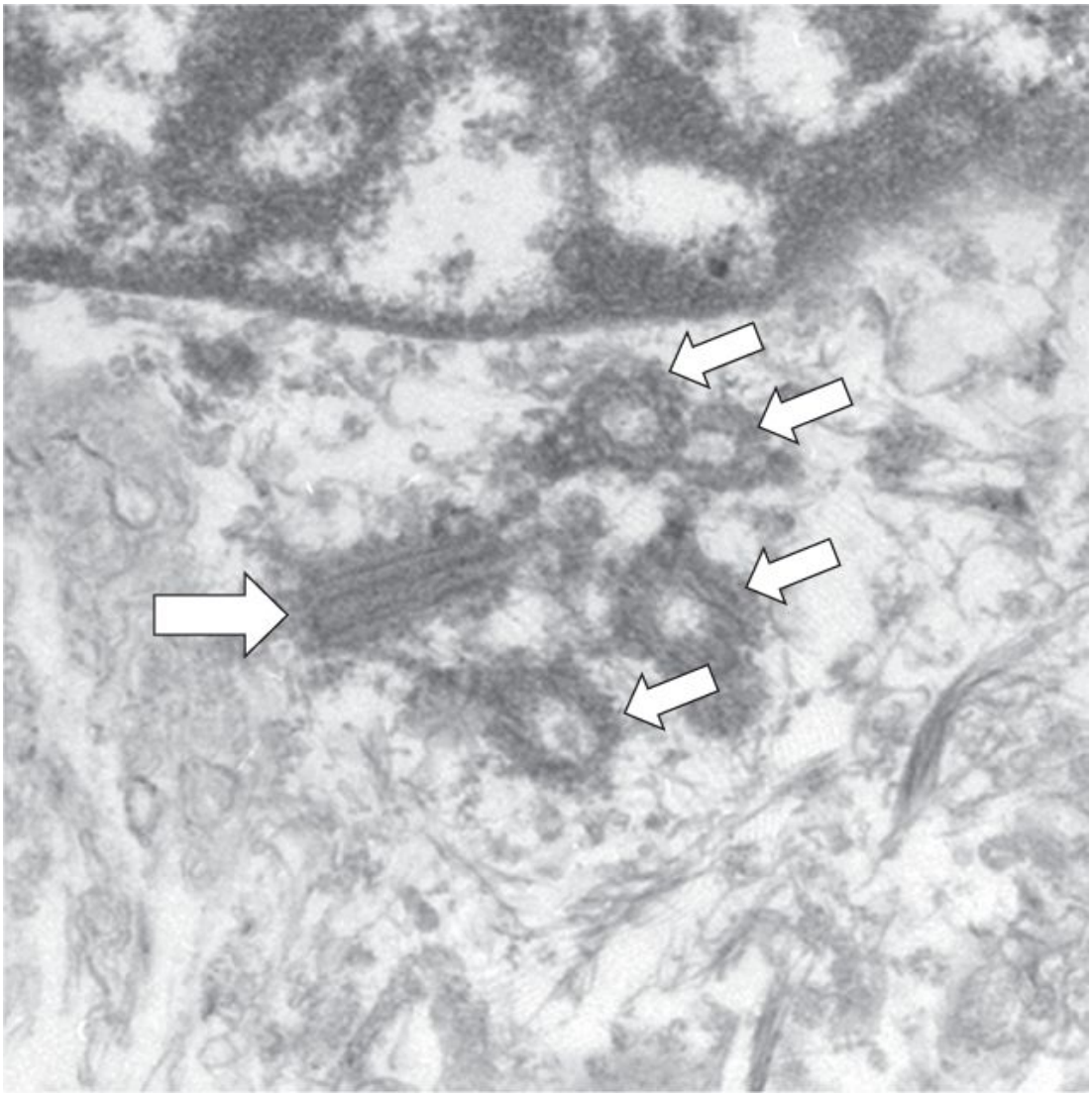
A diagram and a fluorescence microscopy image illustrate the phenomenon called merotely, in which a chromatid is caught in the middle of the two separating portions of a dividing cell and is pulled in two directions by opposing spindle fibers.

(A)



Two fluorescence microscopy images. The one on the left shows a blue nucleus and a single red dot beside it. The one on the right shows a blue nucleus with a cluster of seven red dots beside it.

(B)



A transmission electron microscopy image with four centrioles, shown in cross section, appearing as circles, and a fifth viewed from the side, appearing as a bar.

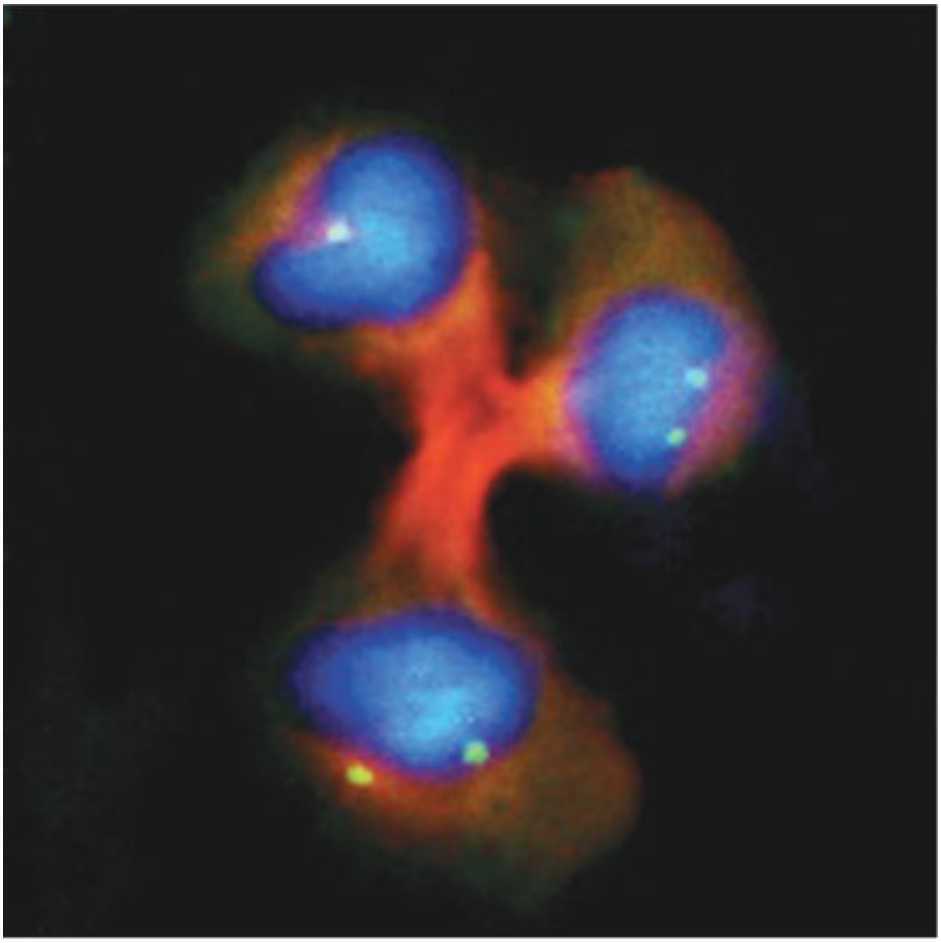
(C)

Figure 12.38 Centrosomes and the organization of the mitotic spindle
Centrosomes are responsible for organizing the microtubule spindle fibers at mitosis. (A) Above, the kinetochore (*green*) of an individual chromatid (*arrow*) may be connected inappropriately to two opposite spindle fibers (*red*) at the same time—the condition termed merotely—causing the spindle fibers to pull in opposite directions and, quite frequently, leave the chromatid stranded between the two properly segregated populations of chromatids (*left*, *right*), now called chromosomes. Below, in the micrograph, only the spindle fibers (*red*) and

kinetochores (*green*) are visualized by immunofluorescence. The isolated chromosome (*green dot, arrow*) in the middle, revealed only by its kinetochore, may not be incorporated into either of the soon-to-be-formed daughter nuclei (assembled around the kinetochore clusters, *left, right*) and may therefore be lost from descendant cells. More likely, however, it may become associated with one of the daughter nuclei. Association with the inappropriate daughter nucleus will result in aneuploidy. (B) In these immortalized but nonmalignant interphase cells (*left*), the presence of a single centrosome is discernible in the cytoplasm through use of an antibody that detects pericentrin, a centrosome-associated protein (*red*). In normal cells, a centrosome is duplicated at the G_1/S transition to generate the two centrosomes found at the poles of the mitotic spindle. In contrast, during interphase of human breast cancer cells (*right*), multiple centrosomes are often observed. These will frequently create multipolar spindles (see Figure 12.39) when such cells enter mitosis. (C) The pair of centrioles that forms the core of each centrosome can be best seen using transmission electron microscopy (TEM), in this case of a human colon carcinoma cell. Four centrioles are seen here in cross section (*small arrows*), while a side view of a fifth (*large arrow*) is apparent, together indicating a deregulation of centriole number. The nucleus is seen above. (A, above, adapted from D. Cimini, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1786:32–40, 2008; with permission from Elsevier; below, courtesy of D. Cimini and from W.T. Silkworth et al., *PloS ONE* 4:e6564, 2009. © 2009 Silkworth et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License. B, from G.A. Pihan et al., *Cancer Res*. 58:3974–3985, 1998. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of M.J. Difilippantonio and T. Ried.)

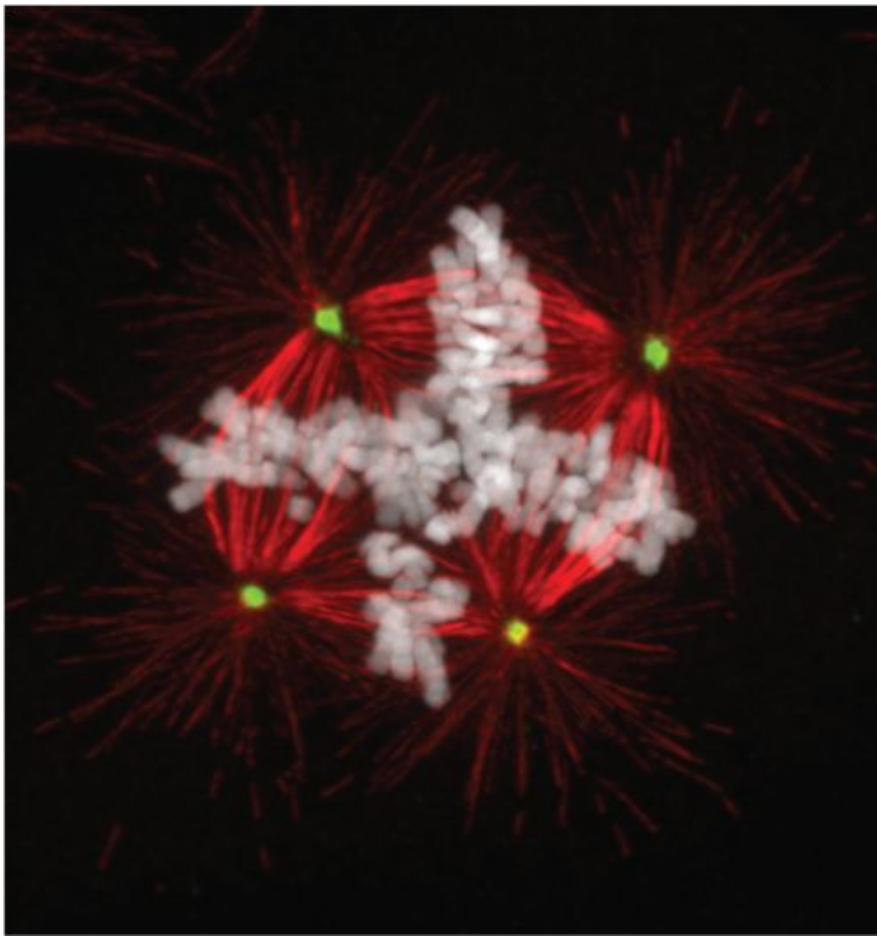
In normal cells, merotely is usually cured by the time cells advance through metaphase into anaphase (see Figure 8.3A). Such curing is critical to normal cells because merotelic chromosomes fail to trigger the spindle assembly checkpoint (SAC), which is designed to halt progress into anaphase in the event that spindle fibers are not properly attached to the kinetochores of all chromatids. (In normal cells, despite these elaborate corrective mechanisms, by some estimates about 1% of mitoses result in some type of mis-segregation; in cancer cells, in stark contrast, as many as one-half of mitoses may result in some form of mis-segregation.) Cancer cells seem to be more tolerant of merotely, which therefore can contribute to their aneuploid karyotypes. Indeed, cancer cells often exhibit defects in one or more of the fourteen distinct proteins that have been implicated in orchestrating the SAC. Of note here, mice that have been genetically engineered to express subnormal levels of certain SAC proteins exhibit elevated levels of spontaneous tumor formation.

More widespread karyotypic chaos may occur if the spindles themselves are not properly assembled. Aberrant mitoses, which result from inappropriate spindle organization, were noticed as early as 1890 and, in retrospect, represented the first clue that cancer cells are genetically abnormal. In normal interphase cells, a single centrosome can be visualized in the cytoplasm (Figure 12.38B); during mitosis, two centrosomes are arrayed at opposite poles within the cell. Cancer cells, however, often show marked defects in this organization, including multiple centrosomes at interphase (see Figure 12.38B and C). The result may be mitotic spindles that have multiple poles rather than the two seen in normal cells (**Figure 12.39A and B**). Often, supernumerary (extra) centrosomes coalesce into the normal set of two as cells proceed through mitosis; however, the spindle fibers that they initially generated may end up forming dysfunctional spindle–kinetochore attachments, such as that seen in Figure 12.38A. Alternatively, the extra centrosomes may persist, causing the chromosomal array to be divided among three or more daughter cells (see Figure 12.39C). The resulting mis-segregation of chromosomes into daughter cells may lead to wild fluctuations in chromosome number and overall karyotype. Strong evidence supporting a causal role for supernumerary centrosomes comes from studies in mice genetically engineered to overexpress the Plk4 serine/threonine kinase, which stimulates centrosome duplication. These mice develop aneuploidy and tumor formation in many tissues, and the tumors in these animals exhibit complex, abnormal karyotypes.



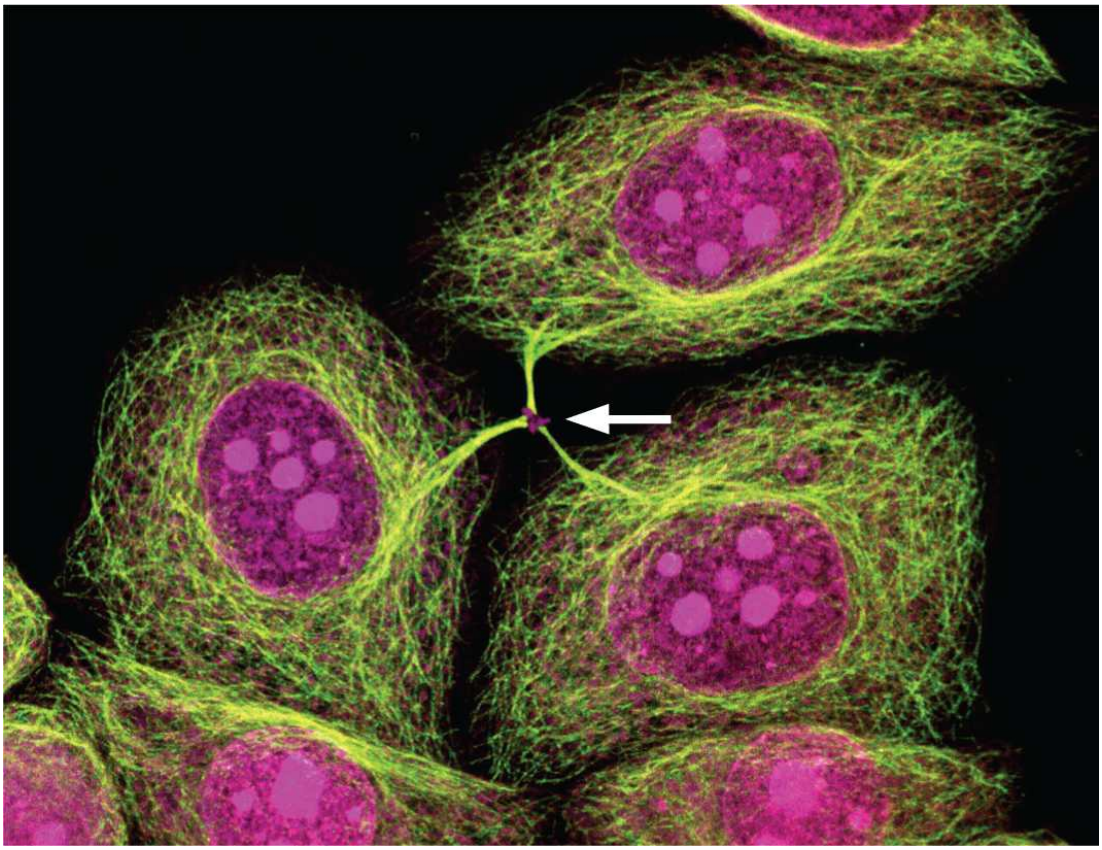
Three blue blobs, each with one or two green dots near the edge. The blobs are joined by thick arms of red fibers, forming a sort of Y shape.

(A)



White chromosomes during mitosis metaphase are arranged in an X instead of the usual line. There are four centrosomes, one within each angle of the X. Spindle fibers run from each centrosome to the nearest chromosomes.

(B)



Three cells look like bright green bird nests with large pink eggs at their centers. The three cells are joined by fibers that converge to a single point in the middle of the cell group. At the point where the fibers converge, there is a triangular purple structure.

(C)

Figure 12.39 Multipolar mitotic apparatuses In a normal mitotic metaphase of cultured cells, the spindle fibers, which are composed of microtubules, reach from the two centrosomes at the mitotic poles to the kinetochores—the multiprotein complexes that are associated with the centromeric DNA of each chromosome. (A) In this micrograph of *p53*$^{-/-}$ mouse embryo fibroblasts, the formation of multiple centrosomes has resulted in a triradial mitotic spindle array. The spindle fibers have been immunostained *red* with an antibody reactive with α- and β-tubulin, and the chromosomal clusters have been stained *blue* with DAPI, a DNA dye. The five centrosomes (immunostained with an antibody reactive with γ-tubulin) are seen as small light yellow or light green spots. Observations like these implicate p53 in the regulation of centrosome number (also see **Supplementary Sidebar 12.10**). (B) The four centrosomes in this quadriradial mitotic spindle array in a prometaphase human fibroblast have been stained *yellow-green*; the microtubules forming the spindle fibers, *red*; and the chromosomes, *white*. (C)

Here, just after cytokinesis, which follows directly after telophase (see Figure 8.3) three daughter cells of a human HeLa cervical carcinoma cell line have formed from a mother cell that ostensibly assembled a triradial spindle during mitosis; these daughters are trying to divide the maternal dowry of chromosomes in three ways rather than the usual two. Microtubules are stained *yellow*; DNA is stained *purple*. The abscission of these cells at the end of cytokinesis clearly did not proceed properly, leaving the cells connected to one another via a chromosomal fragment (*purple dot, arrow*). (A, from P. Tarapore and K. Fukasawa, *Oncogene* 21:6234–6240, 2002. B, from N.J. Ganem, S.A. Godinho and D. Pellman, *Nature* 460:278–282, 2009. Both with permission from Nature. C, from K.G. Murti, *Biotechniques*, Oct. 2004, cover. Courtesy of K.G. Murti.)

It seems that once the complex apparatus designed to ensure proper chromosomal segregation has been damaged, such damage is irreversible. For example, as was seen in Figure 12.36, the enormous cell-to-cell variability in the number of Chromosome 8 copies in certain breast cancer cells indicates that chromosome instability (CIN) persisted in these cells long after tumor progression had reached completion. In this respect, CIN differs from the breakage–fusion–bridge (BFB) cycles (see Section 10.4), which seem to plague the genomes of cancer cells for a limited window of time during tumor progression and then cease once these cells succeed in acquiring telomerase and thus the ability to stabilize their aberrant karyotypes.

In recent years, additional molecular defects that contribute to various types of chromosomal instability have come to light. Not surprisingly, the duplication of centrosomes is closely coordinated with cell cycle advance; it seems to occur at or near the G_1/S transition. Thus, an increasing body of evidence indicates that centrosome duplication is coordinated in some way by the cyclin E– and A–containing cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) complexes, which are master regulators of entrance into and progression through S phase (see Section 8.3). Defects in the regulation of these processes, including those triggered by cancer-associated viruses such as HBV and EBV, can lead to deregulation of centrosome number (**Supplementary Sidebar 12.10**).

The great complexity of mitosis causes us to consider how prone this process is to error and how many regulatory proteins, including checkpoint control proteins, are in place to monitor the progression of the various steps of M phase. Yeast genetic analyses have revealed as many as 100 distinct genes and proteins that are involved in the various steps of spindle assembly and dynamics, spindle attachment, and the separation of chromosomes during mitosis; mutation of many of these genes results in chromosome instability in yeast. Many of these proteins are highly conserved evolutionarily, and their homologs are likely to be components of the mammalian

mitotic machinery. As described in **Supplementary Sidebar 12.11**, to date only a small proportion of these genes have been found to be mutated at high frequency in human cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

mis-segregation
: The failure to properly segregate chromosomes during mitosis or meiosis.

metaphase plate
: A plane or region that is approximately equidistant from the two poles of a dividing cell at which chromosomes align prior to the anaphase portion of the cell cycle.

kinetochore
: Nucleoprotein complex that is associated with the centromeric DNA of a chromosome and is responsible during mitosis or meiosis for forming physical connections between the chromosome and the microtubules of the spindle fibers.

nondisjunction
: (1) Failure of two chromatids to separate from one another during mitosis or two homologous chromosomes to separate from one another during meiosis. (2) State created by this failure of separation.

merotely
: Condition established during the prophase of mitosis when a single kinetochore becomes linked simultaneously to two opposing spindle fibers.

spindle assembly checkpoint
: The complex mechanism that monitors proper attachment of spindle fibers to kinetochores and blocks entrance into the anaphase of mitosis and meiosis if these attachments are not properly formed.

supernumerary
: Referring to a greater-than-normal number of some object.

OceanofPDF.com

12.12 Advances in genome sequencing technologies have fueled a revolution in cancer genomics

In 1990, the Human Genome Project was launched as an international research effort to determine the complete sequence of the human genome. Over the course of more than a decade, this effort resulted in the publication in 2003 of a near-complete sequence of a “reference” human genome, that is, one that was purportedly typical of humans, although actually being a composite of genome segments from several volunteers. The full extent of the genetic polymorphisms (see Section 7.6) that exist between individual members of our species is not reflected in this reference genome. This reference sequence appears to contain the coding and regulatory information required to construct a human being. (Even now, however, the genetic information harbored in certain difficult-to-sequence segments of the genome remains elusive.)

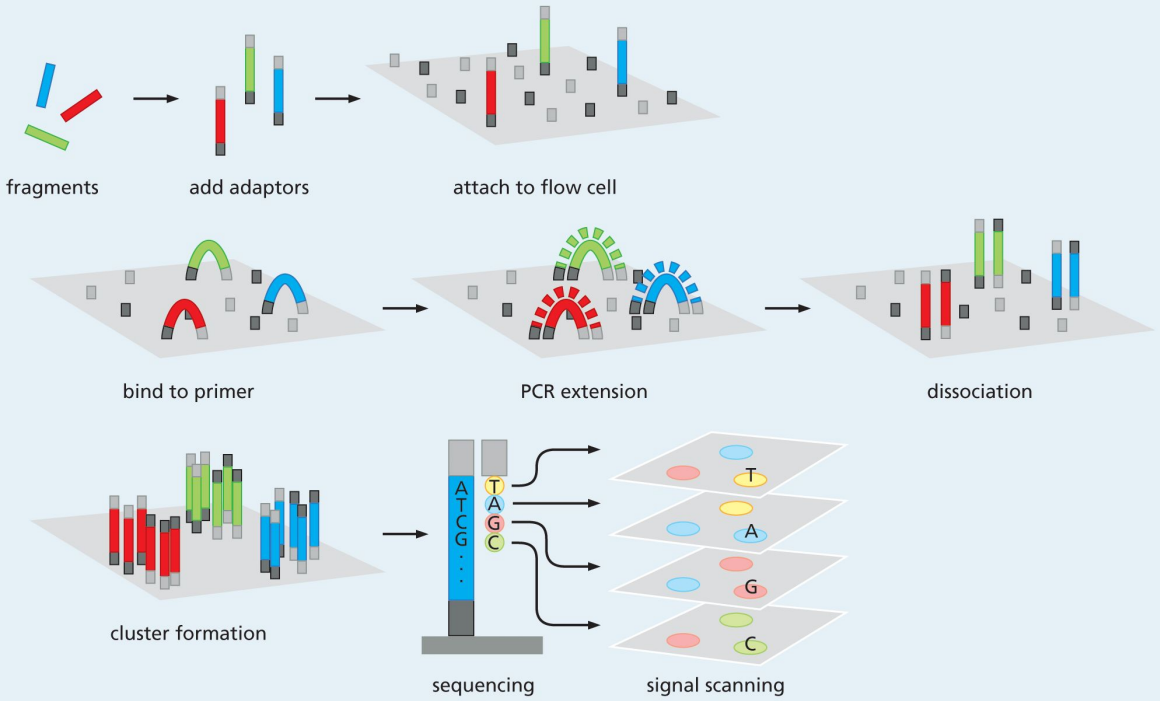
The importance of this milestone in human cancer biology cannot be exaggerated. Thus, the availability of the human genome sequence together with the genome sequences of a great many other species has greatly accelerated the pace of biological and biomedical research by providing ready access to the sequences of genes, regulatory regions, and other chromosomal elements. Today, it is straightforward to perform comparative genomic analyses between species and highlight differences computationally, to design oligonucleotide primers used to amplify a segment of genomic DNA of interest, and to undertake a diversity of other applications that depend in one way or another on genomic sequence information. Until recently, these procedures were laborious and highly time-consuming.

The opportunities enabled by the availability of the human genome sequence inspired the development of new DNA sequencing technologies that improved the speed and reduced the cost of genome sequence analysis. Within a decade of the publication of the first human genome sequence, a number of alternative technologies to traditional Sanger sequencing—referred to collectively as next-

generation sequencing (NGS) technologies—were developed, leading to progressively lower sequencing costs (**Sidebar 12.9**). Whereas the first human genome sequence was estimated to cost nearly $3 billion, the most advanced sequencing technologies available today have allowed the cost of the sequencing of an entire genome to fall well below $1000 (**Figure 12.40**).

Sidebar 12.9 "Next-generation," massively parallel DNA sequencing has enabled large-scale genomic studies

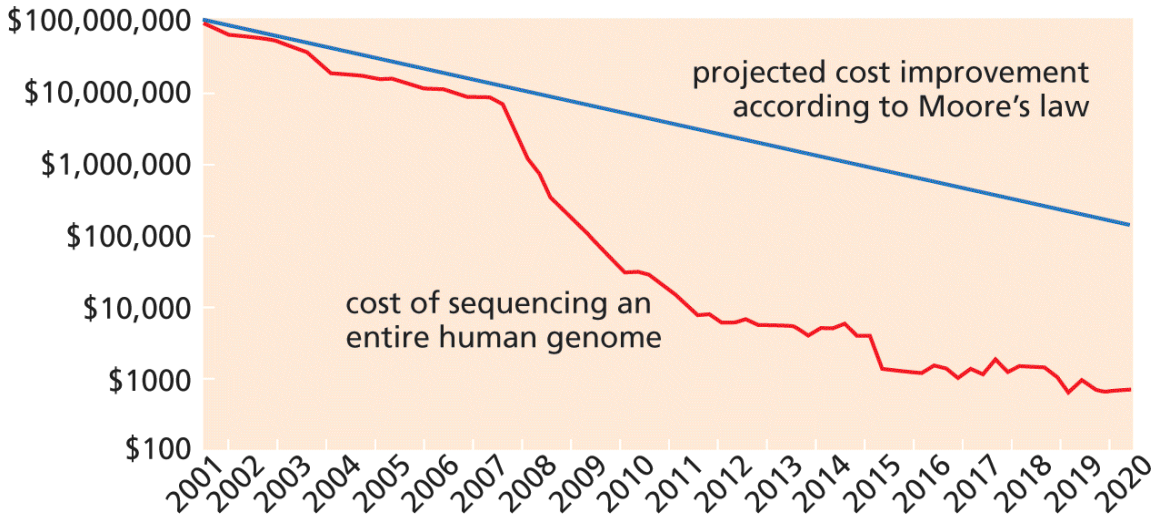
The genomics revolution has been fueled by advances in DNA sequencing technologies, which collectively allow for very high-throughput sequencing at a fraction of the cost of what was possible only a decade ago (see Figure 12.40). Today, the most widely adopted next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology has been a method termed "sequencing by synthesis," in which thousands of DNA templates are sequenced simultaneously on a glass slide through the repeated addition of fluorescently labeled chain-terminating nucleotides. With each round of nucleotide addition, the identity of the added bases in each reaction is determined by fluorescence imaging. Following removal of the chain-terminating moiety on the inserted nucleotides, the next round of sequencing can be undertaken in the same fashion. With sophisticated automation, hundreds of bases of sequence can be determined per template in only several hours (**Figure 12.41**). Although initially developed for whole-genome sequencing, this method (as well as other NGS methods), has been adapted to allow for sequencing only the exonic portions of the genome (called whole-exome sequencing), which has been used extensively in cancer genomics as described in Section 12.12. In addition, these methods can be used to rapidly sequence cDNA libraries for assessment of the mRNA content of cells or tissues; they can also be used to determine the DNA methylation pattern in genomic DNA as well as other applications.



The process for Massively parallel DNA sequencing. It begins with short D N A fragments. A very short adaptor sequence is added to each end of each fragment. The fragments are then attached to a flow cell–initially just at one end, but then the other end is bent down and attached as well. Polymerase chain reaction is then used to duplicate the strands along their lengths. After one end of each strand is dissociated from the flow cell surface, there are now twice as many strands as there were before, each attached at one end. This process is repeated to form clusters of strands. Sequencing and signal scanning can now proceed.

Figure 12.41 Massively parallel DNA sequencing Among several powerful methods for high-throughput DNA sequencing, the one commercialized by the company Illumina has been used most extensively in cancer genomics studies to date. In this method, DNA fragments to be sequenced are modified with short adaptor sequences. These adaptors enable attachment of single strands of the fragments to the surface of a reaction chamber (or flow cell) by hybridization to complementary nucleotides attached to the flow cell. Through a series of local binding, PCR amplification, and dissociation steps, each of the original fragments can be amplified into a cluster of identical molecules ready for sequencing. Sequencing is performed by the addition of a sequencing primer complementary to the adaptor sequence, DNA polymerase, and fluorescent nucleotides (with each nucleotide labeled with a different fluorophore). The addition of only one nucleotide per sequencing

round is controlled through the use of reversible chain-termination moieties on the fluorescent nucleotides. At the end of each round of sequencing, the flow cell is imaged to record the identity of the last nucleotide added at each cluster. The next round of sequencing follows the quenching of the fluorescent signal by the previously incorporated nucleotides and the removal of the chain termination moiety. The process is continued in this fashion until hundreds of bases of sequence are read out from each cluster. Computational analysis is then used to align the fragments into larger sequences, such as exomes or whole genomes. (From Y. Lu et al. in J.K. Kulski ed., Next Generation Sequencing - Advances, Applications and Challenges. London: IntechOpen, 2016. © 2016 The Author(s). With permission from the authors.)



A graph depicting the Falling cost of genome sequencing, with cost on the logarithmic vertical scale. According to Moore's law, the cost should have dropped steadily from about 1 hundred million dollars in 2001 to about 1 hundred thousand in 2020. In reality, the cost roughly followed Moore's law until about 2007, but then fell more rapidly. In 2020, the actual cost stood at about 1 thousand dollars.

Figure 12.40 Falling cost of genome sequencing. The graph illustrates the dramatic reduction in the cost of sequencing a human genome sample beginning in 2001, shortly after the first draft sequence of the human genome was released. With a series of technological improvements in conventional DNA sequencing technology, the costs of sequencing steadily declined over the next several years. With the advent of massively parallel sequencing technologies (described in Figure 12.41), genome sequencing costs dropped

precipitously beginning in 2007. Continued improvements have led to even more cost reductions, such that by 2021 the cost of sequencing of an entire human genome sample is well under $600. These cost reductions have fueled multiple large-scale cancer genomic studies as well as the widespread use of numerous other sequencing-based genomic technologies. For comparison, the projected decline in sequencing costs according to Moore's law is shown over this period. Moore's law was initially described in relation to the two-fold improvement in computing power observed in the computer hardware industry every two years, and is considered a mark of outstanding technological improvement. The falling cost of genome sequencing over this two-decade period has vastly outperformed Moore's law (Source: https://www.genome.gov/about-genomics/fact-sheets/DNA-Sequencing-Costs-Data).

This technological revolution has influenced many fields of biomedical research, but none more than cancer research. Through large-scale cancer genome and whole-exome sequencing efforts like The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) and the International Cancer Genome Consortium (ICGC), thousands of cancer specimens have been profiled at unprecedented "depths," that is, redundantly, to ensure maximal accuracy. Among the fruits of these labors are measurements of the prevalence of the specific mutations across multiple cancer types; such analyses include surveys of essentially all the cancer genes that we have discussed in this text. In addition, a large number of novel cancer-associated genes have been identified directly through these large-scale cancer genome studies by means of their recurrent involvement in multiple, independently arising tumors and cancer types. By current estimates, nearly 600 genes in the human genome have been found to be recurrently mutated in one or more types of cancer, among them oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes, as well as genes involved in DNA repair and related genome maintenance functions. The mutations that affect these genes range from missense mutations and nonsense mutations to large-scale structural rearrangements. Extensions of these procedures have also enabled analyses of the protein-encoding RNA segments of specific cell types via the process of whole-exome sequencing.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

next-generation sequencing
: A set of high-throughput methods used to determine a portion of the nucleotide sequence of DNA. These techniques utilize DNA sequencing technologies that are capable of determining multiple DNA sequences in parallel. *Also called* massively parallel sequencing.

chain-terminating nucleotide
: A nucleotide that lacks a 3′-OH group, which is required for the formation of a phosphodiester bond between two nucleotides. The insertion of a chain-terminating nucleotide causes DNA polymerase to cease extension due to the inability to form a new phosphodiester bond with an incoming nucleotide.

The Cancer Genome Atlas
: A project to identify the complete set of DNA changes in many different types of cancer, led by the U.S. National Cancer Institute and the U.S. National Human Genome Research Institute.

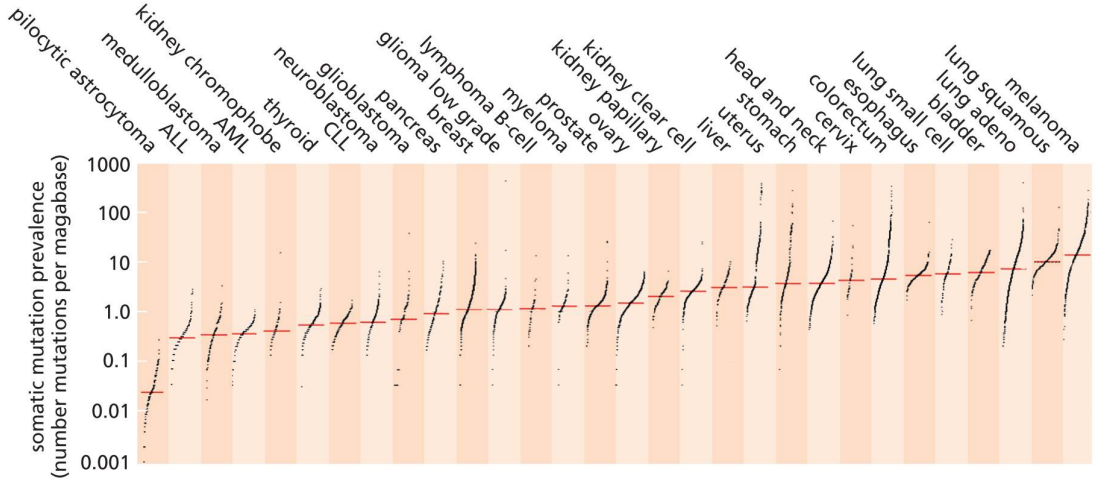
International Cancer Genome Consortium
: A multi-national effort to characterize the genetic changes in the genomes of multiple types of human cancer including multiple cases of specific cancer types. *See also* **The Cancer Genome Atlas**; **Sanger Cancer Genome Project.**

whole-exome sequencing
: Method used to determine the nucleotide sequence primarily of the exonic (including protein-encoding) regions of genomic DNA sample.

OceanofPDF.com

12.13 Genomic analysis reveals that human cancers differ with respect to mutational burden, patterns of mutations, and copy number gains and losses

A number of factors can influence the number of mutations present in the genomes of different types of cancer cells. In cancer genomics studies, tumor mutational burden (TMB) can be expressed either in terms of mutations detected per megabase of DNA sequenced or as the number of protein-altering (also called nonsynonymous) mutations per tumor genome. As shown in **Figure 12.42**, TMB can range from low in certain pediatric cancers with less than one mutation detected per megabase of DNA to very high in adult cancers associated with carcinogen exposure or in those carrying mutations in genes involved in DNA repair (between 10 and to well more than 100 mutations per megabase). The low TMB in cancers of children is likely explained by a combination of the relatively low number of cell divisions that the cell-of-origin of the cancer underwent prior to neoplastic transformation as well as the expected lower lifetime exposure to carcinogens in children compared to adults. (At the same time, it leaves unresolved the question of why pediatric tumors, in contrast to almost all adult tumors, require relatively few mutant driver genes to become neoplastic.)



A graphic listing the somatic mutation prevalence, in number of mutations per megabase, for each of 30 different tumor types. The prevalence is extremely low

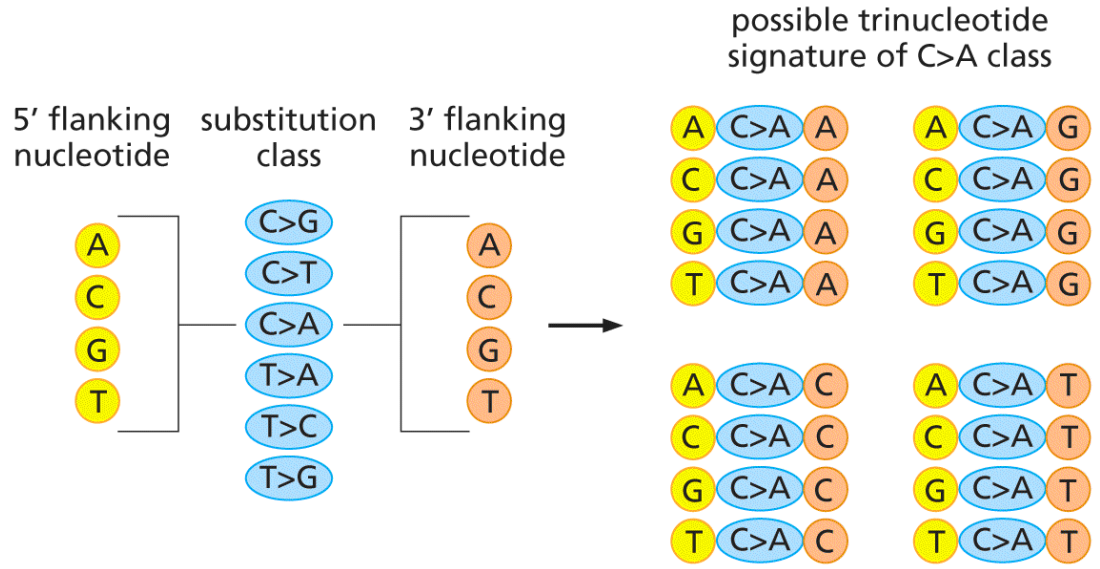
for pilocytic astrocytoma, less than 0.03 on average. For other tumor types, the prevalence ranges from 0.3 for A L L up to about 10 mutations per megabase for melanoma.

Figure 12.42 Large-scale genome sequencing reveals diverse patterns of mutagenesis The results of sequencing of more than 7000 cancer genomes show vastly differing densities of point mutations. These vary by greater than a factor of 1000 from pediatric tumors (pilocytic astrocytoma, *left*) to some of the solid tumors in adults (*right*) having documented exposure to known carcinogens (tobacco smoke and UV radiation), mutations in DNA repair genes, or overexpression of APOBEC enzymes. Each *black* point in the graph represents the number of point mutations per megabase (Mb) in a single cancer genome. The *red* horizontal lines are the median number of mutations in the respective cancer type. ALL, acute lymphoblastic leukemia; AML, acute myeloid leukemia; CLL, chronic lymphocytic leukemia. (From L.B. Alexandrov et al., *Nature* 500, 415–421, 2013. With permission from Nature.)

Underscoring the importance of carcinogen exposure in driving TMB are the mutations observed in smoking-associated adenocarcinoma of the lung, in which the average number of nonsynonymous mutations is approximately 175; in contrast, the genomes of lung adenocarcinomas in never-smokers bear on average approximately tenfold fewer mutations of this type. At the high end of the TMB spectrum are tumors that carry mutations in genes involved in the DNA repair pathways that we discussed above, including the mismatch repair genes, as well as mutations in the proofreading domains of DNA polymerases genes, *POLE* and *POLD*. For example, as mentioned earlier, colon and endometrial cancers that harbor mutations affecting the fidelity of the pol-δ and pol-ε replicative DNA polymerases have “ultra-mutated” genomes with well over 200 mutations per megabase of DNA sequenced. (As we will learn later in Chapter 15, the nonsynonymous mutations have implications for the immune responses to tumors, because these mutations encode, by definition, structurally altered proteins that may function as “neoantigens” capable of provoking robust immune responses.)

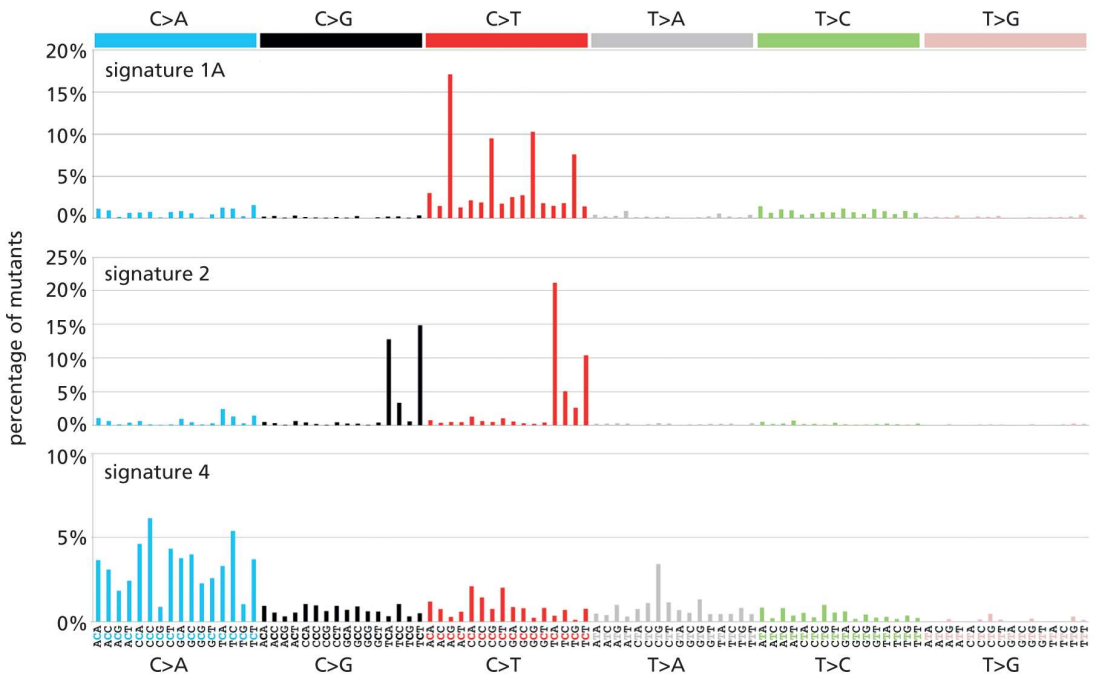
In addition to revealing the TMB in a given cancer or cancer type, in some cases the *patterns* of mutation in cancer genomes—whether they occur in genes or in noncoding regions—as well as the DNA sequence context in which those mutations arose, can be used to infer the nature of the mutagenic processes that were responsible for these mutations (**Figure 12.43**). A clear example of this can be seen in melanomas that arise in areas of sun-exposed areas of skin. Whole-genome or whole-exome sequencing of these cancers clearly shows a “signature” of UV-induced mutations (see Figure 12.43 for examples of mutational signatures), featuring C>T mutations in dipyrimidine sites. As discussed earlier in Section 12.5, these sequences are known to undergo UV-

induced intra-strand photo-cross-linking that, if not repaired, can lead to transition mutations at these sites.



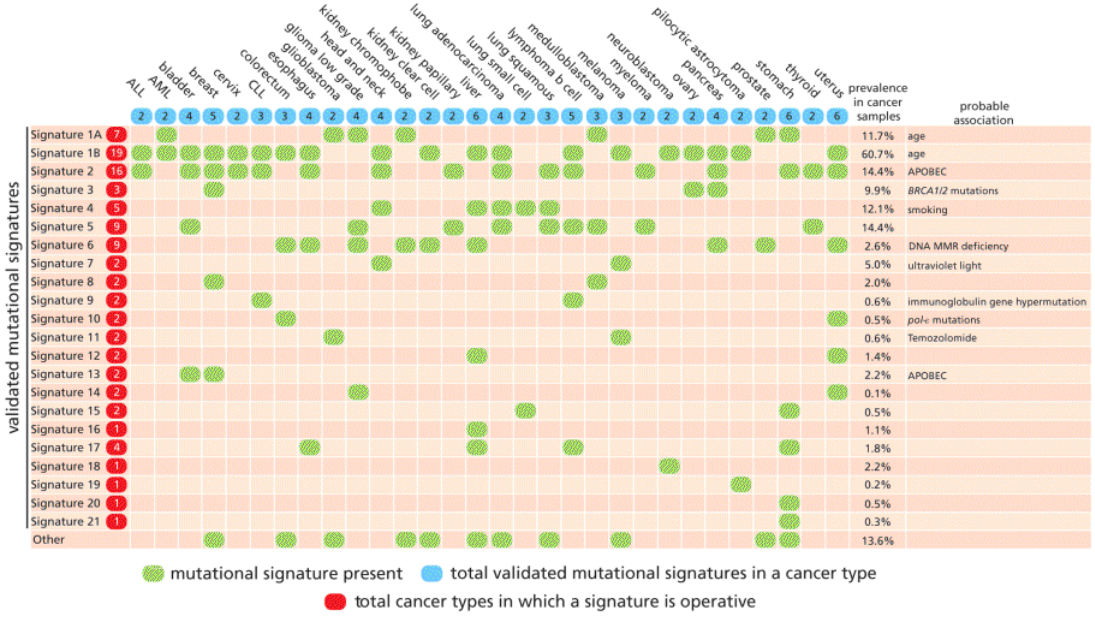
An illustration of the different ways of combining a 5 prime flanking nucleotide on one side and a 3 prime flanking nucleotide on the other side with a substitution class in the middle. Each of the flanking nucleotides can be A, C, G or T. The six substitution classes are C to G, C to T, C to A, T to A, T to C, and T to G. There are a total of 4 times 6 times 4 = 96 combinations; the 16 combinations with C to A in the middle are shown.

(A)



A list of three mutational signatures, named 1A, 2 and 4. A histogram for each one shows the percentage distribution over the 96 different combinations. Signature 1A is characterized by frequent C to T substitutions, especially with G as the 3 prime flanking nucleotide. Signature 2 is characterized by frequent C to T and also C to G substitutions with T as the 5 prime flanking nucleotide. Signature 4 is characterized by frequent C to A substitutions.

(B)



A table with validated mutational signatures listed down the left and different tumor types listed across the top. Cells are filled in or empty to indicate whether a mutational signature is present or absent in a given type of cancer. To the right is a column titled prevalence in cancer samples. Signature 1B, for example, is found in 60.7 percent of cancer samples. For other signatures the percentages are significantly lower. A final column lists probable associations for some signatures. Signatures 1A and 1B are associated with age, signature 4 is associated with smoking, and signature 7 is associated with ultraviolet light.

(C)

Figure 12.43 Mutational signatures in cancer genomes To discern patterns of mutations (mutational signatures) in cancer genomes, one can analyze the frequency of base changes in the context of the flanking 5′ and 3′ bases. (A) In the analysis seen here, only the pyrimidine bases (C,T) of the unmutated, wild-type sequence that were initially present were considered; each of these two initial pyrimidine bases has three possible alternative substitutions (C>A, C>G, C>T, T>A, T>C, T>G). Because there are four possible 5′ flanking bases and four possible 3′ flanking bases (that is, 16 combinations) in each case, there are 3 × 16 or 48 possible mutational signatures for each of these two initial pyrimidine nucleotides, making 96 in all. The 16 possible mutation types for the substitution class C>A are shown here. (B) From the analysis of several thousand cancer genomes, up to 30 mutational signatures have now been observed. This panel shows three signatures that are prominently observed in different types of human cancer. Signature 1A (*above*), which features C>T mutations in sequences where the mutated C residue is followed by a G residue are believed to be caused by the spontaneous deamination of 5-methylcytosine residues in CpG dinucleotides (see Section 12.4). Signature 2 (*middle*) is associated with increased expression of members of the APOBEC family of cytosine deaminases and is associated with a high prevalence of C>T and C>G mutations in particular sequence contexts. Signature 4, (*below*) which is marked by C>A mutations, is associated with exposure to cigarette smoke carcinogens. (C) Different human cancer types show contributions of the different mutational signatures (*green ovals*). The total validated number of distinct mutational signatures for each cancer type are shown in *blue ovals* and the number of cancers that show a particular identifiable signature are shown in *red ovals*. The probable or inferred causes of 11 of the mutational signatures are shown at the *right*. Note that for many of the signatures, the mutagenic mechanisms leading to their formation are not known at present. (From L.B. Alexandrov et al., *Nature* 500: 415–421, 2013. With permission from Nature.)

The genome-wide analyses have confirmed and extended earlier work that focused on sets of frequently mutated genes such as p53, which also showed a predominance of C>T mutations in cancers associated with UV light exposure. Yet another clear signature is seen from genome sequencing of the smoking-associated lung cancers. Here one finds clear evidence of exposure to the guanine alkylating agents that comprise some of the many carcinogens in tobacco products (see Section 12.5). These tumors have a mutagenic signature (Signature 4 in Figure 12.43B and C) featuring a high frequency of C>A transversion mutations. Other cancer types linked to tobacco use, such as squamous cell cancer of the head and neck, also show this mutational signature upon genomic analysis. Hence, mutational signatures in cancer genomes can provide clues to the nature of the etiological agents responsible for tumor development (**Sidebar 12.10**).

Sidebar 12.10 Mutational signatures reveal the likely environmental source of Romanian kidney cancers

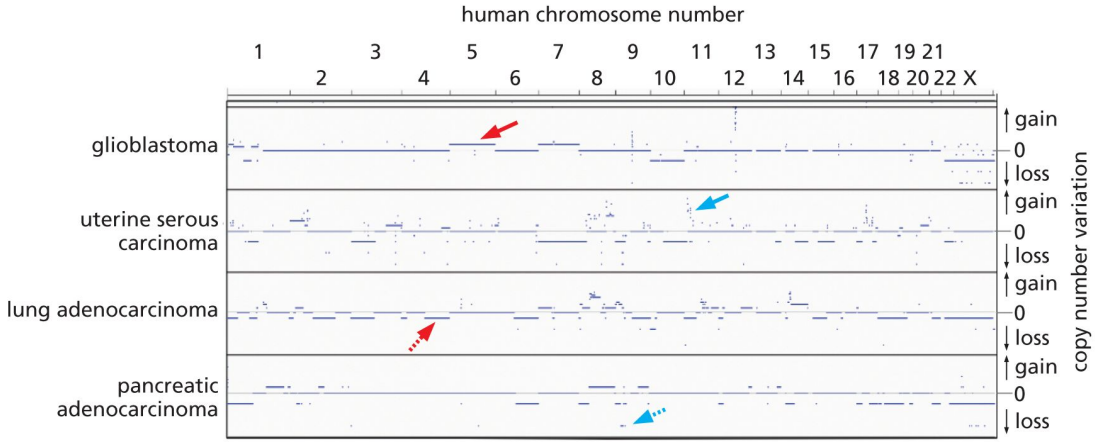
Searching the genomic sequence data from a particular cancer specimen or cancer type for mutational signatures can provide clues to the endogenous mutational processes or exogenous mutagens that might have contributed to tumor formation. A good example of the value of this approach comes from the genomic analysis of renal cell carcinomas (RCC, a form of kidney cancer) from different countries in Europe. Although the patterns of mutations present in these cancers from most countries were similar, a subset of the RCC specimens from Romania carried a distinctive mutational signature with a preponderance of A>T transversion mutations. Further signature analysis showed that these mutations occurred in the sequence C/TpApA/G. Interestingly, this same mutational signature had previously been found in urothelial cancers in parts of Asia, associated with exposure to aristolochic acid (AA), a known carcinogen present in plants from the genus *Aristolochia* used in herbal medicines.

These observations raised the possibility that AA exposure may have also contributed to RCC development in parts of Romania, where *Aristolochia* species endemic to the area may be inadvertently introduced in the food supply. Subsequent studies have shown that the DNA base adduct caused by a metabolic derivative of AA can be observed in the normal kidney of Romanian RCC patients, strongly supporting a causal role for this environmental mutagen in this form of cancer. Ongoing cancer genomic studies are attempting to use mutational signature analysis to identify environmental carcinogens that are responsible for cancers with unexpectedly high prevalence in certain geographic regions, that is, so-called “cancer clusters.”

Mutational signatures in cancer can also provide tell-tale signs of the failure of DNA repair in repair-deficient tumors or the hyperactivity of mutagenic enzymatic

processes. For example, the genome sequences of colon and endometrial cancers harboring mutant mismatch repair genes show numerous short insertion and deletion (indel) mutations in homopolymeric or simple repeat sequences. Breast and ovarian cancers with inactivating mutations in the *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* genes, which are involved in homology-directed repair (see Section 12.9), show high incidence of indel mutations throughout the genome, which likely result from these cancer cells needing to rely on error-prone nonhomologous end-joining (NHEJ) mechanisms to repair double-strand breaks in DNA. Overexpression of members of the APOBEC family of cytosine deaminases (see Sidebar 12.6) occurs in many cancers, including those of the lung and bladder. Their conversion of cytosine residues to uracil occurs preferentially in the sequence context TpCpA/T, leading to C>T and C>G mutations at these sites.

In addition to identifying base substitutions and indel mutations, cancer genome sequencing studies also highlight regions of copy number gain and loss, which are the products of amplifications or deletions of segments of a cancer genome. These so-called copy number variations (CNVs) are revealed by the number of sequence reads from a region of the genome relative to the value expected from a normal diploid (2*n*) genome. CNVs provide clues to the existence of possible oncogenes in regions of gain or tumor suppressor genes in regions of loss. Regions containing CNVs can be limited in length (termed “focal”), in which only one or a small number of genes is affected, or more extensive, in which as much as an entire chromosomal arm can be affected. Whole-chromosome gain or loss can also be recognized by CNV analysis. **Figure 12.44** shows examples of CNVs cancer genomes.



A graphic giving Copy number variations in four different types of cancer. The cancer types are listed down the left, and chromosome numbers are listed across the top, 1 through 22 plus X. For each cancer, a horizontal baseline represents the average number of copies. Deviations above or below the baseline represent copy counts above or below average. Glioblastomas have excess copies of two entire chromosomes, namely 5 and 7, and shortfall counts of chromosome 10. Lung

adenocarcinomas show loss of an entire arm of chromosome 4, as indicated by a continuous below-baseline line segment representing part of chromosome 4. Focal amplification in uterine serous carcinoma is indicated by an above-baseline cluster of dots at the left end of the chromosome 11 segment. Focal deletion in pancreatic adenocarcinoma is indicated by a below-baseline cluster of dots at the left end of the chromosome 9 segment.

Figure 12.44 Copy number variation in cancer Cancer genomes frequently carry regions of copy number variation (CNV), resulting from whole chromosome gain or loss or regional amplification or deletion within individual chromosomes. These CNVs can be detected using a number of methods, including the whole-genome sequencing (WGS) method employed here. WGS data from four different human cancers are depicted with the read counts plotted according to chromosomal location (*top*). The average read count per sample is considered the copy neutral region for this analysis (denoted 0). Regions of copy number gain have read counts greater than the copy neutral value, and regions of copy number loss have read counts less than the copy neutral value. Note that all four cancers have numerous areas of CNV, including whole chromosome gains (*solid red arrow*), loss of an entire chromosome arm (*dashed red arrow*), focal amplification (*solid blue arrow*), and focal deletion (*dashed blue arrow*). (From A. Cherniack and R. Beroukhim; data from https://portal.gdc.cancer.gov/.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tumor mutational burden
: The total number of mutations found in the genomic DNA of tumor sample, often presented as number per haploid genome or per megabase of genomic DNA.

nonsynonymous
: A nucleotide mutation that alters the amino acid sequence of an encoded protein. Nonsynonymous mutations differ from synonymous mutations, which do not alter amino acid sequences of encoded proteins. *See also* **synonymous**.

indel
: Insertion or deletion mutation.

copy number variation
: Alteration involving the number of copies of a gene or chromosomal region present in a genome, usually the genome of a neoplastic cell that has undergone somatic mutation.

OceanofPDF.com

12.14 Cancer genomes contain driver and passenger gene mutations

When familiar genes such as *Kras* or *p53* are found to be mutated in a cancer sample, there is no debate about their causal role in the process of tumor development. However, when a gene that has never been previously associated with cancer is discovered in mutant form in a cancer specimen, it is reasonable to ask whether the mutation was selected for during the development of that cancer (that is, the mutant gene functioned as a driver of tumorigenesis) or whether the mutation might simply have occurred coincidentally and been carried along for the ride together with a selectively advantageous driver mutation (that is, a passenger mutation; see Section 11.6).

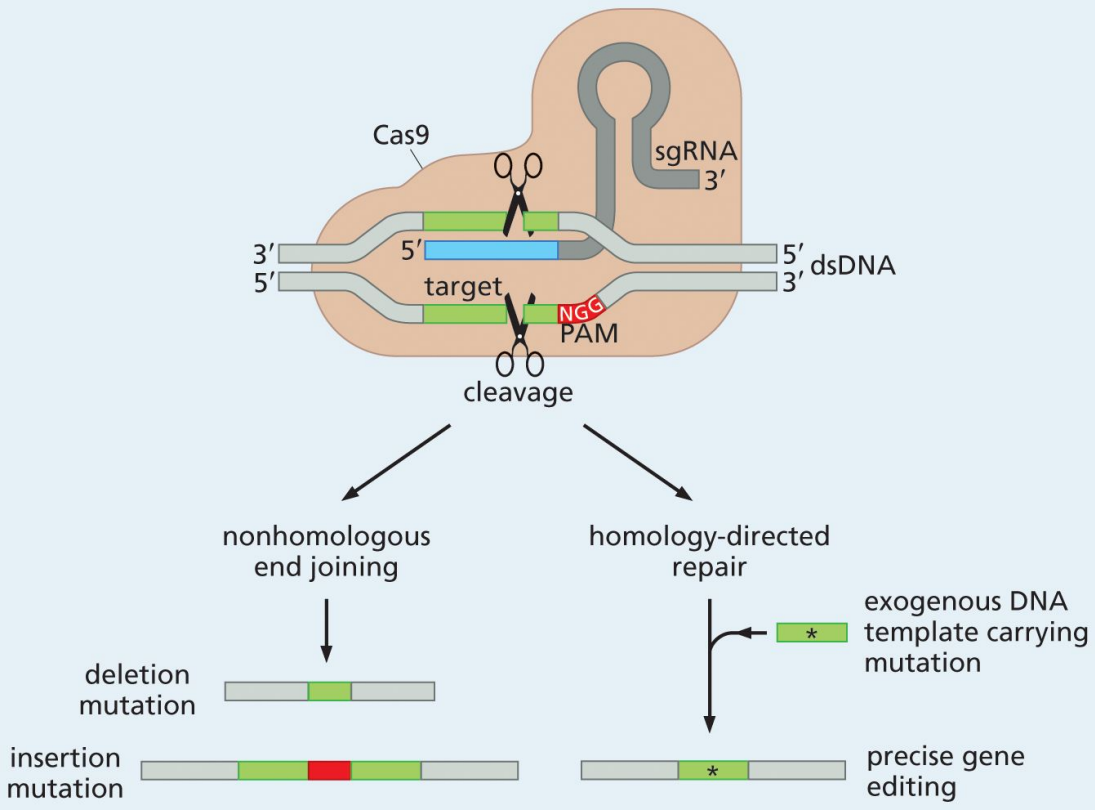
Several criteria can be applied to bolster the claim that a gene is a bone fide cancer driver. First, the frequency of mutation of a particular gene in multiple tumors of a given cancer type or across multiple cancer types can be an indication of direct involvement in the tumorigenic process. If such frequencies significantly exceed those expected simply by chance, one can reasonably conclude that the mutations were selectively advantageous. When calculating these expected frequencies, one must bear in mind that large genes will present a larger target for randomly occurring mutations than smaller ones.

In addition, the *pattern* of mutation in a gene might provide a clue. For example, if the gene in question is predicted to encode a kinase and the mutations detected in cancer specimens are analogous to known kinase-activating mutations in well-described oncogenes, then the case in favor of assigning driver mutation status would be strengthened. Likewise, a novel tumor suppressor gene might be identified based in part on a pattern of recurring loss-of-function mutations as well as evidence of mutations affecting both alleles of the gene in a series of cancer specimens. Ultimately, functional tests, either in cell culture transformation assays (see Sections 3.2 and 3.4.) or in whole animal cancer models (see Sidebar 7.2), are the most direct way to distinguish true cancer driver genes from passengers. The use of CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing methods has greatly accelerated cancer functional genomics (**Sidebar 12.11**). Although passenger mutations do not contribute to cellular transformation or tumor progression per se, they may still have an impact on tumor development by creating neoantigens, as mentioned earlier and discussed in detail in Chapter 15.

Sidebar 12.11 The CRISPR-Cas9 system has become an important tool in cancer research

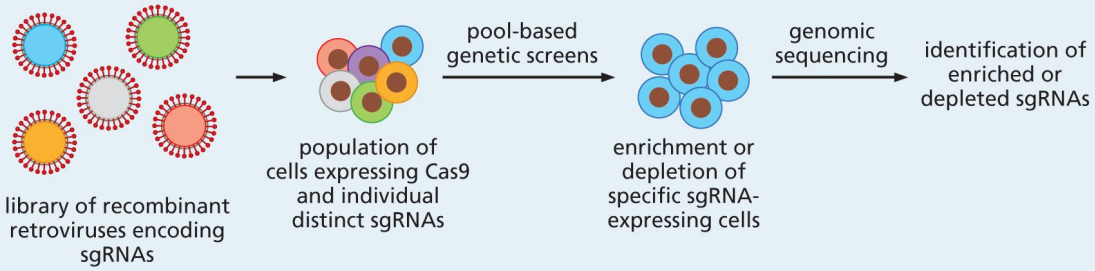
A powerful set of genome-editing tools has emerged in recent years through the application of CRISPR–Cas (clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats–CRISPR-associated systems). This novel technology has been derived from prokaryotic systems that evolved as an adaptive defense mechanism against bacteriophage infection and have now been redeployed to rapidly mutagenize the genomes of cells from a wide array of species; in addition, the CRISPR-Cas technology can now be used to functionally interrogate cancer genes.

The *Streptococcus pyogenes*-derived type II CRISPR–Cas9 system was the first to be modified for use in mammalian cells. This highly versatile system is composed of two components: an RNA-guided DNA endonuclease (Cas9) and a so-called single-guide RNA (sgRNA). The sgRNA molecule binds to the Cas9 enzyme and directs it to a genomic sequence of interest via base pairing to a predetermined target sequence (**Figure 12.45A**). Combining the expression of Cas9 with an sgRNA that is complementary to a target DNA sequence leads to high-efficiency cleavage of the target site in the genome, resulting in a double-strand DNA break. Subsequent repair by the error-prone NHEJ DNA repair pathway (see Section 12.9) can lead to insertion or deletion mutations at the target site, often causing loss of gene function.



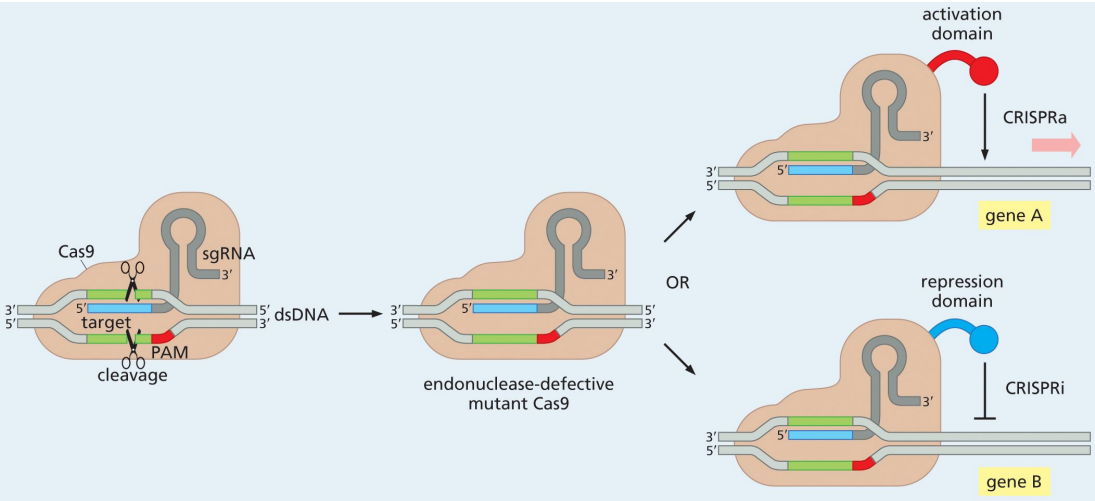
A complex labeled C a s 9 enfolds an s g R N A and also a section of unwound double-stranded D N A, namely a section that matches a section of the s g R N A. Both strands of the D N A are cleaved. One of the two strands is adjacent to a sequence shown as N G G and labeled P A M. If the cleavage is repaired using nonhomologous end joining, the result may be a deletion mutation or an insertion mutation. If the cleavage is repaired using homology-directed repair, the use of an exogenous D N A template carrying a mutation results in precise gene editing.

(A)



A process that begins with a library of recombinant retroviruses encoding s g R N Ayze. This produces a population of cells expressing C a s 9 and individual distinct s g R N Ayze. pool-based genetic screens are used to achieve enrichment or depletion of specific s g R N A expressing cells. Finally, genomic sequencing is used to identify enriched or depleted s g R N Ayze.

(B)



A mutation is introduced that renders C a s 9 endonuclease-defective. This is then shown augmented with an activation domain and affecting CRISPeR A-

mediated activation of gene A or, alternatively, augmented with a repression domain and affecting CRISPeR I-mediated inhibition of gene B.
(C)

Figure 12.45 CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing, genetic screens, and modulation of gene expression The versatile CRISPR/Cas9 system can be used to precisely modify genomes and broadly modulate gene expression. (A) The *S. pyogenes*-derived Cas9 DNA endonuclease can be localized to a specific DNA sequence through binding to a single-guide RNA (sgRNA) that also forms base pairs via a complementary sequence (*blue*) to a specific target sequence in the genome (*green*). The target sequence must be adjacent to a protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) sequence, a three-nucleotide sequence composed of any nucleotide (N) followed by two G residues (NGG). Cas9-mediated cleavage (*shown as scissors*) of both strands of the target sequence results in a double-strand DNA break. Repair of the break by the error-prone nonhomologous end joining pathway can produce deletion and insertion mutations, which typically cause loss of gene function. With the addition of an exogenous DNA template carrying a mutation (*asterisk*), homology-directed repair can transfer the mutation into (*continued*)the genome. (B) To perform CRISPR-based genetic screens, libraries of recombinant retroviruses are constructed, such that each virus carries a different sgRNA targeting a specific gene (depicted by different colors). These viruses are used to infect Cas9-expressing cells. Subsequent CRISPR/Cas9-mediated mutation leads to the generation of a population of cells with targeted loss-of-function mutations in the corresponding genes. Subjecting these cells to selective conditions causes enrichment or depletion of certain mutant cells. For enrichment-based screens, the identity of selected mutations can be determined following DNA sequencing of the sgRNA portions of the retroviral proviruses present in the remaining mutant cells. For depletion-based screens, one compares the representation of sgRNA sequences in the starting population of cells to that present following growth in the selective conditions; sgRNA sequences that are relatively underrepresented in the final population are indicative of genes in which mutation led to a fitness disadvantage. (C) Cas9 can be rendered endonuclease defective through specific mutations. Such endonuclease-defective mutant Cas9 proteins can still bind to sgRNAs and be targeted to specific sites in the genome. By fusing transcriptional activation or repression domains onto the endonuclease-defective Cas9 proteins and targeting them to the promoter regions of genes of interest via expression of the appropriate sgRNAs, one can affect CRISPR-mediated gene activation (CRISPRa) or inhibition (CRISPRi).

Co-introducing (via transfection) a cloned exogenous DNA template that carries a mutation of interest at the time of the CRISPR-Cas9 cleavage event can enable efficient transfer of the mutation into the genomic site by HDR (see Section 12.9),

thereby allowing the precise introduction of gain-of-function or other mutations into a cell's genome (see Figure 12.45A). In both cell-based models and whole-animal models, these methods have been used to functionally test candidate TSGs and oncogenes identified in various cancer genomic studies.

In addition to facilitating the targeting of mutations to individual genes, CRISPR-Cas9-based systems have also been used to carry out large-scale genetic studies in cell lines. These studies use libraries of sgRNAs (typically encoded by pools of recombinant retrovirus vectors), each of which targets a specific gene and, when used together, target hundreds or thousands of genes in populations of cells (Figure 12.45B). The introduction of these libraries into large populations of cultured cells allows the selective outgrowth of individual cells (and thus clonal populations) that have gained increased fitness in the population; this fitness is defined by certain selective conditions imposed on the populations as whole, such as ability to resist killing by a certain cytotoxic drug.

Mutant cell clones that grow out in these experiments can be isolated and their genomes interrogated by DNA sequencing of the sgRNA-encoding portion of the retroviral proviruses that have integrated into the genomes of the cells in these clones, thereby identifying the genes in which loss-of-function mutations provide a selective advantage under the experimental conditions imposed on these cell populations.

One can also use this method to identify those genes in which mutations lead to a selective *disadvantage* to cells. For example, genes required for cell growth in culture or upon transplantation into animals (termed "essential genes") can be identified in CRISPR-Cas9-based genetic screens by comparing the relative abundance of sgRNA coding sequences in the starting retroviral library to their relative abundance after introduction into cells and a period of passage in culture or growth following implantation *in vivo* (Figure 12.45B). These "drop-out" screens can also be applied to cancer cell lines in an effort to identify genes that are specifically required in the context of a particular cellular genotype (e.g., in the presence of a mutant oncogene or tumor suppressor gene; see Figure 12.45B). Sometimes termed "synthetic lethal" screens, these experiments can identify genetic vulnerabilities in cancer cells of a certain mutant genotype that have the potential to guide the subsequent development of anti-cancer therapeutic drugs.

The CRISPR-Cas9 system has been further modified to be used to *modulate* gene expression rather than cause genetic mutation. Mutant Cas9 proteins engineered to lack endonuclease activity (thus preventing DNA cleavage) have been fused to protein domains that either stimulate or repress transcription (Figure 12.45C). Here sgRNAs serve to guide the Cas9 fusion proteins to promoters of genes of interest in order to increase the transcription of targeted genes [CRISPR-mediated activation (CRISPRa)] or decrease their expression [CRISPR-mediated inhibition (CRISPR)]. As with

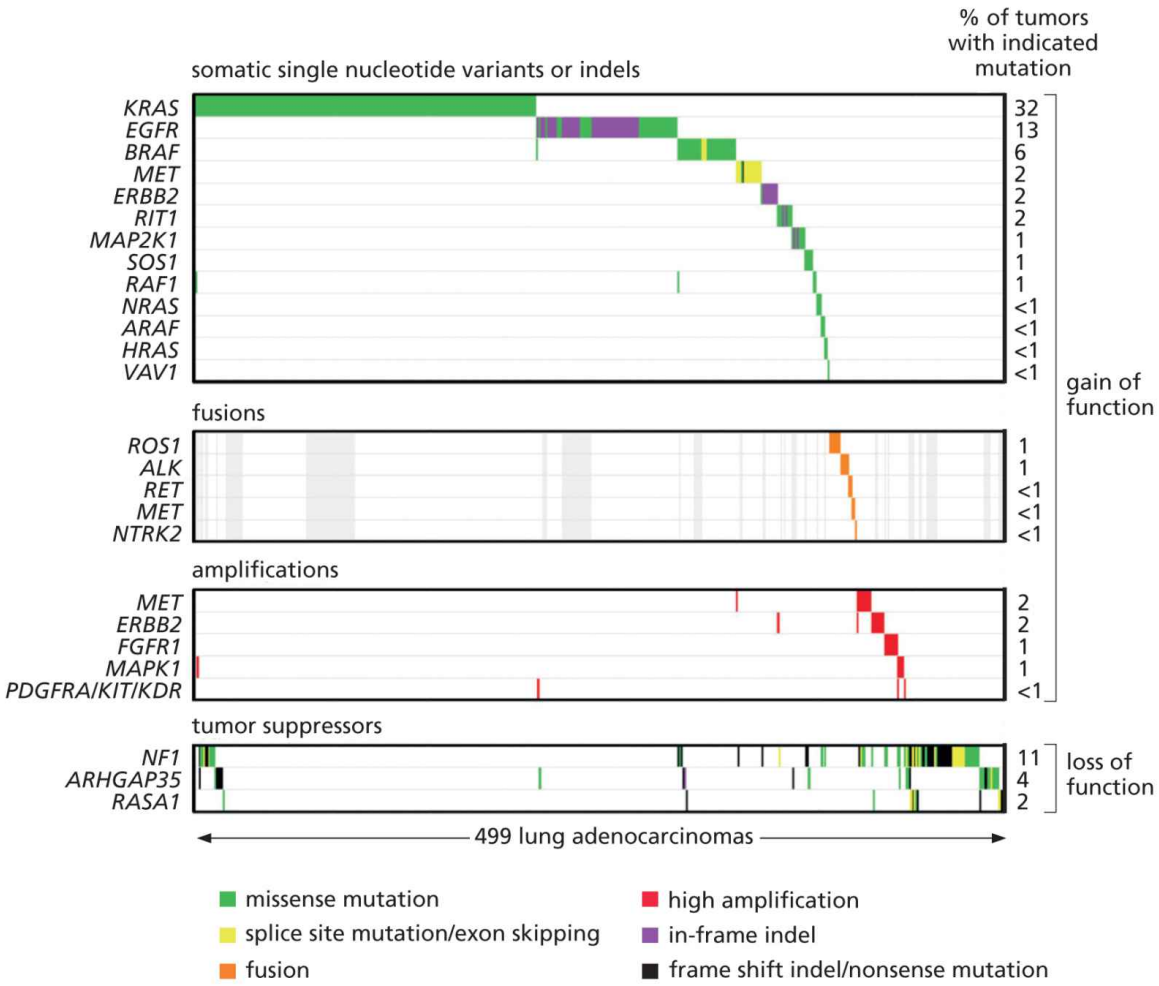
traditional CRISPR-Cas9 strategies described above, CRISPRa and CRISPRi can be used in studies focused on individual genes or in genome-wide screens using sgRNA libraries.

OceanofPDF.com

12.15 Cancer genomic studies reveal both inter-tumoral and intra-tumoral heterogeneity

Surveys of the genomes of multiple tumors of a given cancer type reveal considerable inter-tumoral heterogeneity, such that different tumors display different constellations of mutations of known or presumed driver genes. Some of this heterogeneity is explained by the number of alternative cellular signaling pathways that can be activated or inactivated to promote tumor formation and progression. Thus, “many roads lead to Rome” and different tumors may take somewhat different paths en route to full-fledged malignancy (see Figure 11.11).

As an example, recent studies that analyzed larger numbers of lung adenocarcinomas identified almost 40 genes that were mutated to a statistically significantly extent, including some that were found in just a handful of patients. Scanning the data from this and other large collections of tumors, one can conclude that very few tumors of a given type carry precisely the same combination of driver gene mutations and CNVs. At the mechanistic level, we can rationalize this inter-tumoral diversity by recognizing that within a given cellular regulatory pathway, there are multiple alternative genes that can be altered in order to yield the same pro-tumorigenic phenotype, as discussed in Section 11.3. For example, in the lung adenocarcinoma study cited above, genome sequencing revealed frequent mutation of components of the mitogenic signaling pathway that was described in Chapter 6, including those affecting the EGFR growth factor receptor gene, the K-Ras protein, and the GAP-related gene *NF1*. Because mutation of any one of these genes would be expected to activate this particular pathway, one might expect mutation of one, but not multiple, members of this group of genes within a given patient’s tumor genome. This type of mutual exclusivity of cancer gene mutations is evident in large-scale cancer genomics datasets (**Figure 12.46**), and indeed, these patterns of mutations can help investigators infer functional relationships between genes ostensibly operating in common signaling pathways.



A graphic describing Patterns of cancer gene mutations in 499 lung adenocarcinomas. The mutations are of four types, the first three of which involve gain of function and the last of which involves loss of function. The first type is somatic single nucleotide variants or insertions or deletions. These are mostly missense mutations, although in-frame insertions or deletions and splice site mutation or exon skipping also occur. Mutations of this type occur in the K R A S gene on 32 percent of tumors and progressively less often in 12 other genes. The second mutation type is fusion. This occurs in 5 genes. The third mutation type is high amplification. This occurs in a different set of 5 genes. The last mutation type, which involves loss of function rather than gain, is tumor suppressors. These occur in three genes and are a mix of missense mutations, splice site mutation or exon skipping, and frame shift insertion or deletion slash nonsense mutation.

Figure 12.46 Patterns of cancer gene mutations Large-scale cancer genomic studies often reveal pattens of cancer gene mutations displaying a

high degree of mutual exclusivity. This figure shows data from 499 lung adenocarcinomas, each of which carried an alteration in one or more of 26 genes encoding components of the mitogenic signaling pathway (*listed at left*); the different cancers samples are arrayed *left to right*. The presence of a mutation in a given gene is indicated by a *colored vertical line*. Different classes of mutations are shown in each of the 4 rectangles. The gain-of-function alleles are grouped in the *upper three rectangles*, which affect presumptive oncogenes, while the loss-of-function alleles, which affect presumptive tumor suppressor genes, are grouped in the *lower rectangle*. "Somatic single nucleotide variants" denotes point mutations, whereas "indels" indicates insertions or deletions. The specific types of mutation are denoted according to the color scheme at bottom. Within each rectangle the tumor samples with the most frequent mutant allele are arrayed to the *left* and the least frequent to the *right*. Note the high degree of mutual exclusivity involving mutations in this class of genes; that is, most tumors have only one mutation that activates oncogenes. Essentially all tumors lacking an identified oncogene-activating mutation carry instead a loss-of-function mutation in a tumor suppressor gene that normally negatively regulates the mitogenic signaling pathway (*lowest rectangle*). The mutual exclusivity is not absolute, however, as can be seen in the subset of tumors that have mutations in both an oncogene (*upper three rectangles*) and a tumor suppressor gene (*lowest rectangle*). (Adapted from J.D. Campbell et al., *Nature Genet.* 48:607–616, 2016. With permission from Nature.)

In addition to this inter-tumoral heterogeneity, genome sequencing studies have revealed extensive intra-tumoral heterogeneity, the product of clonal diversification occurring during the course of the multi-step formation of a single tumor, as we discussed in Section 11.6. By sampling distinct sectors of a tumor, cancer genome studies have revealed that some mutations are shared by most or all cells within the tumor. Such mutations are likely to have arisen early in disease progression and were under continued selective pressure to be maintained throughout the entire subsequent course of multi-stage tumorigenesis. These mutations are sometimes referred to as "truncal mutations" because they can be viewed as arising in the trunk of an evolutionary lineage tree that illustrates the genetic relationships of the cells forming the tumor. In contrast, some mutations can be found in only one sector of the tumor—an indication that they mark separate branches of an evolutionary tree (see Figures 2.17C and 11.16C). Moreover, the fine structure of such trees—the individual twigs—can also be

identified through the analysis of individual cancer cells isolated from tumors using single-cell DNA sequencing.

For an individual patient, the sequencing of their tumor DNA (taken from a surgical resection or even a biopsy) can identify mutated genes that may be appropriate for particular forms of targeted therapy. As discussed in Chapter 17, an increasing number of such therapies, involving both small-molecule drugs and monoclonal antibodies, have been developed to counteract the effects of specific mutant oncogenes. The use of these therapies can be tailored to those patients whose tumor carries a mutant form of a specific gene and sometimes even a particular mutation harbored by that gene. In all cases, drug targeting in response to the discovery of a truncal mutation and derived mutant gene product is most likely to yield a longer clinical response, whereas drug treatments that respond to one or another mutant branch are unlikely to elicit long-term responses, if any at all.

Another important application of cancer genomic studies is tracing the clonal origins of late-stage cancer colonies, that is, metastases, back to the primary tumor. This concept was introduced in Chapter 11, and we will return to it again in Chapters 14 and 17. For example, by comparing the genome or exome sequence of a series of metastatic lesions from a patient with the lineage information derived from the clonal architecture of their primary tumor, one can often identify a specific subclone within a primary tumor that seeded a given metastasis as well as the clonal relationships between distinct metastatic lesions present in the same patient. Some of the mutant alleles are present in one metastasis but not others and are therefore referred to as “private” (that is, not shared) mutations. Finally, similar cancer genomics-based analyses can be used to determine the clonal origins of a relapsed cancer following initial therapy. By comparing the sequence of a relapsed sample with the lineage information from an individual’s initially diagnosed primary tumor, it is often possible to identify the subpopulation of cells within the primary tumor that eventually gave rise to the cells that created the clinical relapse. We return to this subject in Chapter 17.

OceanofPDF.com

12.16 Synopsis and prospects

Genome instability has been inherent in life since the first cells appeared 3.5 billion years ago. In the intervening time, living organisms have continually struck a balance between too little and too much instability in their genomes. If they went too far in suppressing the rate at which mutations accumulated, Darwinian evolution, which depends directly on the continued generation of genetic diversity, would have ground to a halt. Conversely, if they allowed mutation rates to increase too much, their ability to reproduce and even their viability would have been seriously compromised. The relatively low level of genomic instability that operates in our cells—specifically those carrying the germ line—represents a compromise between these two conflicting needs.

This balance between too little and too much genetic instability does not need to be struck in the individual cells of our somatic tissues. In these, any genetic instability—mutability, as we have called it—is undesirable because it opens the door to neoplasia. The need to avoid neoplasia would seem to explain why evolution has worked hard to ensure that the genomes of our somatic cells are so stable.

Multiple layers of defense mechanisms operate to hold somatic mutation rates to extremely low levels. At the biological level, they are embodied in the organization of stem cells and their differentiated progeny. At the biochemical level, an array of enzymes and a variety of low–molecular-weight biochemical species are deployed to confront and neutralize mutagens before they succeed in striking the genome. And should damage be inflicted, either because mutagens have slipped through the outer defenses or because of errors in DNA replication, then a large group of DNA repair enzymes—the caretakers—lie in wait, always alert to structural aberrations in the double helix and its nucleotides. More often than not, these enzymes deal very effectively with incurred damage and succeed in restoring the DNA to its pristine state, erasing any sign that damage was ever sustained. In addition, a complex array of proteins ensures that mitosis and meiosis occur only when the chromosomes are aligned properly at the metaphase plate, thereby sustaining the euploid karyotype.

Our perception of DNA and its much-touted stability is changed by an understanding of these caretakers and their multiple roles in maintaining the genome. Previously, we depicted DNA as a rock-solid, unchanging entity within the cell, a unique island of stability sitting amid countless other molecules that are constantly forming and being degraded. Now, we realize that this portrayal was simplistic and an illusion. Like all other molecules in the cell, DNA is vulnerable to many types of damage. Its apparent stability reflects nothing more than a dynamic equilibrium, an ongoing battle between the forces of order and chaos. Any stability that chromosomal DNA does exhibit, and it

is considerable, represents a stunning testimonial to the elaborate array of caretakers that are always on watch, ready to fix even the most minor lesion in the double helix.

The implications of this dynamic equilibrium for cancer are simple and clear: if a breakdown of genomic integrity is an essential ingredient in forming human tumors, it can result most readily from weakening of the ever-vigilant repair machinery and its controllers.

Our initial encounter with the breakdown of genomic stability came in Chapter 9, where we learned that the p53 tumor suppressor protein is occasionally called the "guardian of the genome," because cells lacking p53 function acquire a variety of genetic defects at an elevated rate. In large part, this increased mutability, which includes alterations in DNA sequence as well as changes in karyotype, does not reflect p53's role in directly maintaining the genome. Instead, the loss of p53 function creates an environment that is permissive for the survival of mutant cells. In the present chapter, we changed our focus by posing a different question, one that goes beyond p53 inactivation: If p53 loss permits mutant (and highly mutable) cells to survive, how, precisely, do the mutations acquired by these cells arise in the first place?

These mutations occur frequently during tumor progression, and elevated mutability is increasingly accepted as an important element of cancer pathogenesis. As discussed in Section 11.4, a departure from DNA's highly stable state may be essential for the formation of human cancers. This notion derives from calculations of the rates at which mutations accumulate in normal cells and an estimate of the number of genetic alterations that are needed in order for tumor progression to reach completion.

Without such increased mutation rates—so the thinking goes—the time intervals between clonal successions (see Section 11.4) would be far too long. Actually, the readings from the last chapter and this one suggest at least two alternative ways by which clonal successions can be accelerated during multi-step tumor progression. Tumor promoters (including endogenous processes such as inflammation) can compress the time between clonal successions; alternatively, acceleration can be achieved by the destabilization of the genome, as described here. Because the two complex processes often work hand in hand, mathematical modeling of tumor progression becomes very difficult.

We now realize that mathematical analyses of multi-step tumor formation depend on so many quantitative assumptions that their major predictions represent little more than an inspired speculation. As is almost always the case in biology, observations of living systems speak more loudly than theorizing: recent high-throughput sequencing analyses of tumor cell genomes indicate enormous variability in the rates with which various types of tumors accumulate mutations as they pass through multi-step tumor progression. Although increased mutability clearly accelerates the rate of tumor

progression (thereby leading to increased tumor incidence), it is clear that certain tumors arise in the absence of large numbers of mutations, as discussed below.

Cancer stem cells (CSCs) are present in many and perhaps all tumors. Their presence complicates our understanding of how mutations accumulate within tumor cell genomes. Because of their ability to self-renew, the lineages of CSCs within tumors are likely to persist long after their more differentiated descendants have entered into post-mitotic states or died; accordingly, CSCs are likely to serve as the long-term repositories of the tumors' genetic information. Hence, advantageous mutations must sooner or later be introduced into the CSC pools in order to ensure transmission to future generations of cancer cells.

This scenario is complicated because SCs in general, and CSCs in particular, are present in relatively small numbers within normal and neoplastic tissues. Because the likelihood that a population of cells will sustain a mutation is directly proportional to the size of this population, pools of CSCs are relatively unlikely (mathematically) to directly acquire the mutations that drive tumor progression forward. This situation creates a dilemma that is at present unresolved: specialized, still-undiscovered mutagenic mechanisms may destabilize the genomes of CSCs. Alternatively, and more likely, most advantageous mutations strike the genomes of transit-amplifying/progenitor cells within tumors, and the latter cells then introduce their advantageous mutations back into the CSC pool by spontaneous dedifferentiation (**Supplementary Sidebar 11.6**).

Unfortunately, all discussions of cancer cell mutability rest on shaky foundations. Measurements of mutability—number of mutations sustained per cell generation—depend on knowledge of the number of successive cell generations through which a cell lineage has passed since its initiation. At present, we have only very limited information on this critically important parameter (see, for example Figure 10.21A), undermining any attempts at demonstrating heightened mutability definitively.

These discussions of mutation rates generally focus on the submicroscopic changes in genome structure created by defective BER and NER—lesions that are far too small to affect the karyotype of cancer cells. However, as we read in this chapter, cell genomes are also affected by changes occurring on a far larger scale—changes that scramble overall chromosome structure and thereby alter the karyotype of a cell. Such karyotypic alterations are found in the cancer cells from the great majority of solid tumors. In Section 10.4, we read that telomere erosion may be responsible for much of this instability through its ability to trigger breakage–fusion–bridge cycles. Surely, yet other molecular mechanisms will one day be found to contribute to the karyotypic chaos frequently encountered in cancer cells.

Between the minute lesions left behind by imperfect BER and NER and the large-scale rearrangements generated by telomere collapse are genomic changes resulting from the process of replication stress, in which the unbalanced mitogenic signals operating in many cancer cells cause uncoordinated firing of replication origins and frequent replication fork collapse of the sort depicted in Figure 12.8. The repair of these collapsed replication forks is often imperfect, providing an explanation for many of the local amplifications and deletions that are present in the genomes of solid tumors (see Figure 12.44). Strikingly, signs of replication stress, in the form of activated DNA repair proteins, are already apparent relatively early in multi-step tumor progression (for example, in dysplastic tissues), long before frankly neoplastic growths have emerged.

Although there seem to be common underlying biochemical principles governing how diverse types of human cells are transformed to a neoplastic state (see Section 11.9), the genetic routes taken by various cells throughout the body to reach this state bear little resemblance to one another, at least as gauged by measurements of copy number change.

Independent of its origins, increased mutability forces us to confront another reality: the resulting disruption of cancer cell genomes is a double-edged sword, because it places these cells at great risk. Frequent errors in DNA replication and in chromosomal segregation make these cells especially vulnerable to death because of lethal, unrepaired defects in their genomes. Indeed, it is possible that much of the attrition of cancer cells during each cell generation (see Figure 10.4D) occurs because of frequent genomic catastrophes that are incompatible with continued cell survival. Hence, cancer cells must weave a fine course between too much and too little mutability, and certain cancer cell types may actually benefit from maintaining their genomes in a relatively stable configuration.

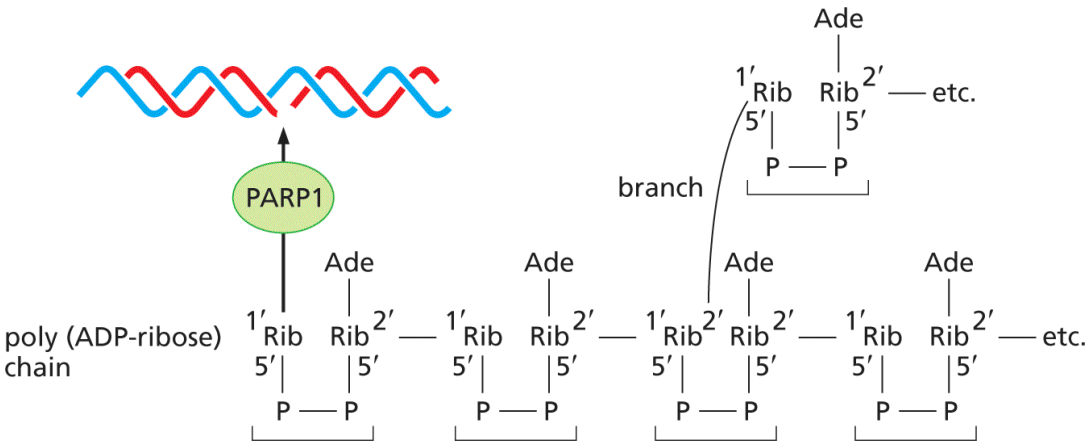
Actually, cancer cells may be exposed to a second danger because of their defective DNA repair apparatus: they may be especially susceptible to certain forms of chemotherapy. We already encountered one example of this in the vulnerability of many gliomas to killing by temozolomide, an alkylating chemotherapeutic. Those tumors that shut down expression of their *MGMT* gene during their initial formation, ostensibly because doing so increases mutability and accelerates tumor progression, pay a price later, because they have lost the ability to remove the toxic methyl groups added to their DNA by this drug (see Section 12.7).

Another example of such increased vulnerability comes from breast and ovarian tumors that have lost BRCA1 or BRCA2 function. The resulting loss of an ability to repair covalent inter-strand cross-links, which depends on homology-directed repair (HDR), makes certain ovarian carcinomas especially sensitive to killing by platinum-based chemotherapeutics (see Section 17.2). Consistent with this, ovarian cancer

patients carrying germ-line *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutations have longer progression-free survival following platinum therapy than do those identically treated patients with sporadic (that is, nonfamilial) tumors in which BRCA1/BRCA2 function is usually intact.

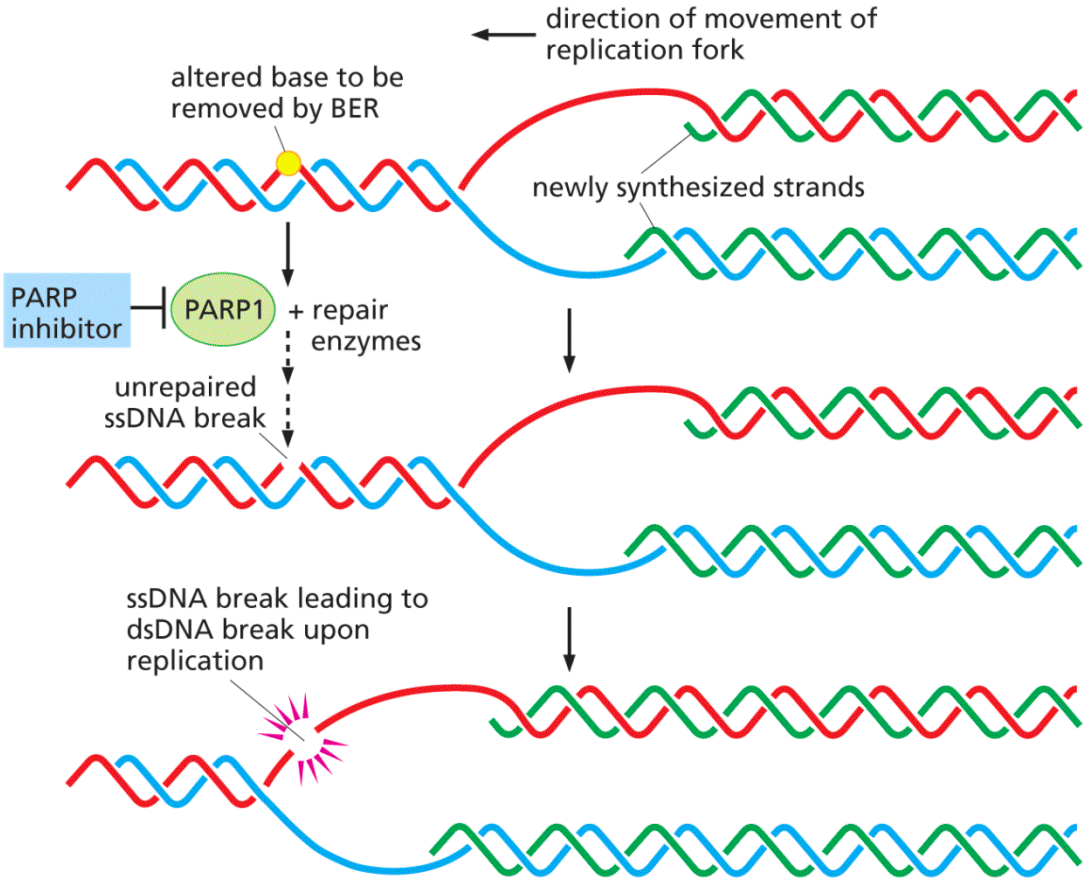
A more subtly crafted therapeutic strategy derives from examining in great detail the mechanisms of base-excision repair (BER) and homology-directed repair (HDR). As we learned earlier, a relatively small number of double-strand breaks (DSBs) occur in each cell cycle because of the fragility of the replication fork (see Figure 12.8); the repair of these lesions usually depends on HDR. In fact, an alternative and far greater threat comes from the thousands of mutant bases that are created every day by endogenous processes, notably oxidation; the resulting DNA lesions are healed by BER. As described earlier (see Figure 12.20A), BER generates single-nucleotide gaps (through both BER pathways) and thus single-strand breaks (SSBs) that must be filled by a DNA polymerase and then sealed by a DNA ligase.

DNA repair enzymes involved in BER are recruited to SSB sites by the actions of PARP1 [poly-(ADP ribose) polymerase-1]. This enzyme binds to these breaks and proceeds to ADP-ribosylate itself and possibly neighboring proteins as well; **Figure 12.47A**. The resulting poly-ADP tails thereafter serve as docking sites for recruiting the repair enzymes needed to fix the SSBs; hence, when the PARP1 enzyme is inhibited pharmacologically, SSBs persist. These unrepaired SSBs generate a far more serious problem—DSBs—when a replication fork passes through during a subsequent S phase (see Figure 12.47B).



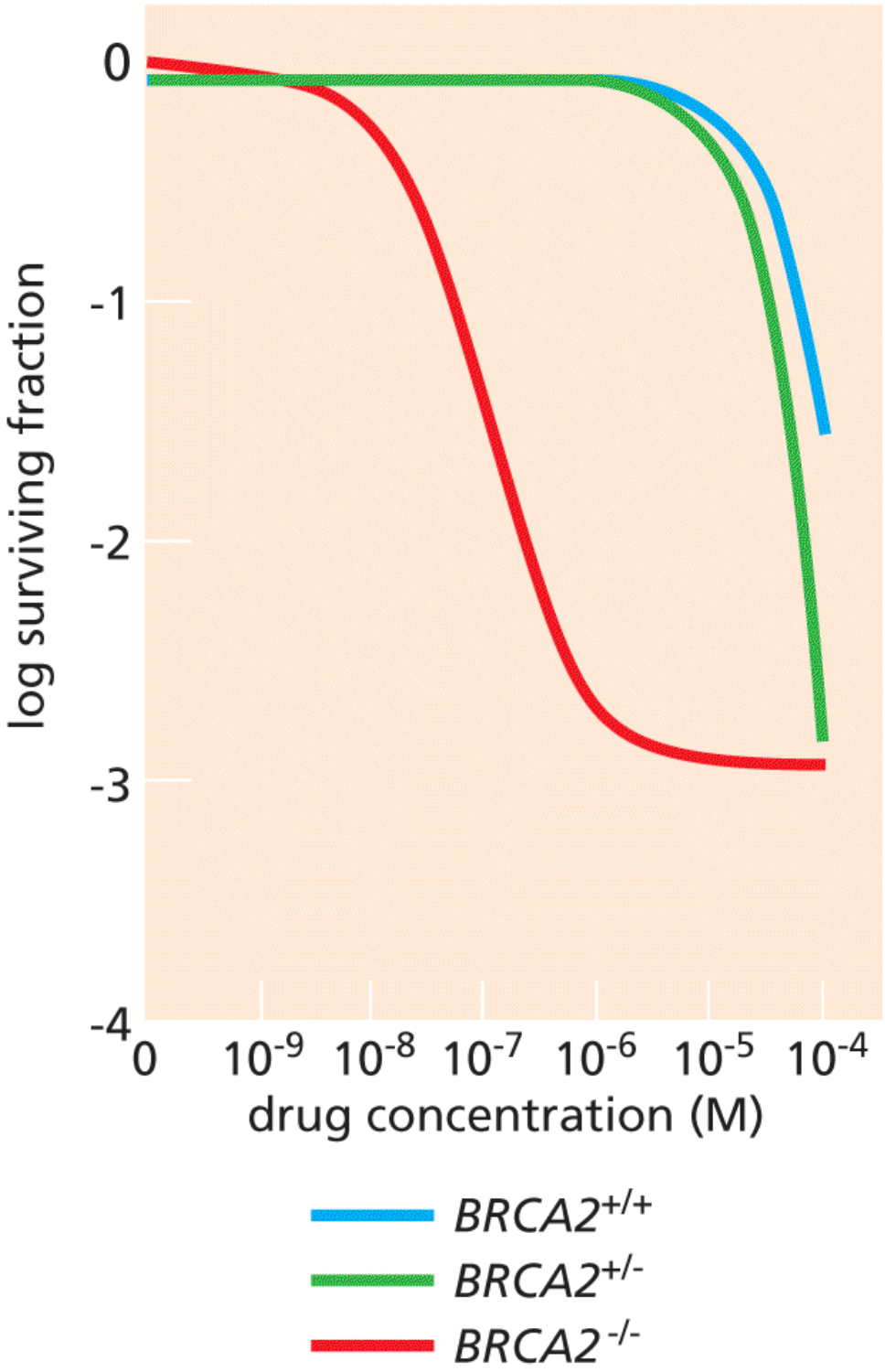
A PARP 1 attaches to a point where one strand of a double-stranded D N A has broken. Attached to back end of the PARP 1 is a chain of repeating A D P-ribose elements. Each A D P-ribose is a short chain consisting of a ribose with a 1 prime end and a 5 prime end, followed by a phosphate, followed by another phosphate, followed by a ribose with a 5 prime end and a 2 prime end

followed by an adenine. The 1 prime ribose end of each element attaches to the 2 prime ribose end of the element before. Through attachment to both the first and the second ribose of an element, branching may occur.
(A)



A replication fork in progress. On the part of the double-stranded original D N A that has yet to be unwound, there is an altered base to be removed by B E R A PARP inhibitor blocks the action of PARP 1 and repair enzymes that together would heal the resulting break, and so the break remains unrepaired. When the replication fork reaches the break in the single strand, the result is a break of double stranded D N A.

(B)



A line graph with surviving fraction on the logarithmically scaled vertical axis and increasing drug concentration on the logarithmically scaled horizontal axis. Three lines show that B R C A 2 plus plus and B R C A 2 plus minus cells only begin to die when the concentration exceeds 10 to the minus 6

moles per liter. By contrast, B R C A 2 minus minus cells begin to die as the concentration approaches 10 to the minus 8 moles per liter.
(C)

Figure 12.47 Killing of BRCA2-negative cells by an anti-PARP drug The reliance of BRCA1- and BRCA2-negative human breast cancer cells on a redundant HR pathway mediated by poly-(ADP ribose) polymerase-1 (PARP1) makes these cells especially vulnerable to killing by an anti-PARP drug. (A) PARPs constitute a family of related enzymes that act by generating repeating branched polymers of as many as 200 residues (*brackets*) each. These residues are attached both to the PARP enzymes themselves (*green oval*) and to other proteins involved in effecting biochemical responses (*not shown*); these chains may be branched as shown here. In the case of PARP1, it binds to ssDNA breaks (SSBs) and ADP-ribosylates itself; its poly-ADP chains then attract a series of repair enzymes that may be ADP-ribosylated by PARP1 and thereafter proceed to complete various steps of base excision repair (BER). (B) Such SSBs are created routinely by oxidized bases, which are usually removed by BER. Here, an oxidized base (*yellow*) should be excised and the DNA repaired through the actions of PARP1 and recruited repair enzymes. However, in the presence of a PARP1 inhibitor, these other enzymes are not recruited, BER cannot proceed to completion, and the resulting SSB will be converted to a double-strand DNA break (DSB) when a replication fork moves through during the next S phase. This break can be efficiently restored to a wild-type configuration only through homology-directed repair (HR), which is defective in BRCA1- and BRCA2-mutant cells. Failure to repair a DSB will often lead to cell death. (C) Cultured mouse ES (embryonic stem) cells of three genotypes were treated with KU0058948, a PARP1 inhibitor. The $BRCA2^{+/+}$ (*blue*) and $BRCA2^{+/-}$ (*green*) ES cells were killed only by very high drug concentrations, whereas the $BRCA2^{-/-}$ ES cells were killed by the drug at concentrations almost 1000-fold lower (*red*). (C, from H. Farmer et al., *Nature* 434:917–921, 2005. With permission from Nature.)

All this suggests an interesting therapy: shut down the PARP enzyme in *BRCA1*- or *BRCA2*-mutant cells with a pharmacological inhibitor. Resulting SSBs will be converted to DSBs during replication, and these DSBs, which are usually repaired by HDR, will not be repairable in cells lacking HDR function (from loss of BRCA1 or BRCA2 function; see Figure 12.47B). Lethal DSBs will then accumulate in large numbers, triggering cell death. Indeed, PARP1 inhibitors have been employed successfully in the clinic for patients with ovarian and breast cancers.

The scenario of acquired genetic instability seems to create a logical quandary: almost all the genetic alterations that occur during tumor progression appear to confer some

immediate growth or survival benefit on the cells that acquire them. Many of the earlier chapters in this book documented the specific growth advantages resulting from each of these alterations. As described in a previous chapter, these dynamics cause one to speculate that tumor progression is a process that is analogous to Darwinian evolution (see Section 11.4). However, unlike many traits acquired by cancer cells, the trait of increased genomic instability does not provide an immediate payoff—no marked advantage in proliferation or survival. Instead, acquisition of this trait represents a "long-term investment"; that is, a benefit will only be realized by the distant descendants of this cell.

We can understand this long-term advantage in the following way. Cell clones that have acquired some of the initial genetic alterations leading to cancer seem to arise with great frequency throughout the body's tissues. Nearly all remain in a dormant, premalignant state for an entire human lifetime, unobtrusive and unthreatening, because their stable genomes preclude the acquisition of the additional mutations that would render these cell clones truly dangerous. On rare occasions, however, a cell in one or another of these already-initiated clones acquires an alteration in one of its caretaker genes. Now, for the first time, this cell and its descendants have the opportunity to tinker with their genomes by testing new combinations of genetic elements and new sequences, some of which will allow them to resume their advance down the long road of tumor progression. By opening a floodgate of genetic changes, clones of would-be cancer cells are destined, over the long term, to prosper, while their brethren, lacking this instability, are likely to remain unchanged and indolent for decades.

As we learned in this chapter, a variety of familial cancer syndromes are attributable to the inheritance of mutant forms of genes specifying important components of the DNA repair apparatus. Genomic instability or a tendency toward genetic instability is already implanted in all the cells of such genetically afflicted individuals. In these cases, genetic instability is not an acquired attribute—unlike the situation operating in the most human cancers.

On some occasions, such as those arising in the many subtypes of xeroderma pigmentosum (XP), both copies of a critical DNA repair gene are inherited in defective form. This nullizygous state leaves all the cells in the skin without the means to cope with the UV-induced formation of pyrimidine dimers. In other cases, such as hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), an individual inherits a defective gene copy of a mismatch repair gene, and the remaining copy is then discarded in various somatic cells through a loss-of-heterozygosity (LOH) event.

The familial cancer syndromes that have been identified to date, including those involving heritable defects in DNA repair, reflect the actions of strongly penetrant germ-line alleles. Such alleles ensure that individuals carrying them will, with high

likelihood, manifest obvious disease at some point in their lifetimes. However, the known familial cancer syndromes may well represent only the small tip of a very large iceberg. Thus, a variety of less penetrant, mutant alleles of the genes involved in genome maintenance may be widespread in the human gene pool. Each of these alleles may confer only a slightly increased risk of cancer, but one that is not readily apparent when studying individual families and their susceptibilities to various types of cancer. Consequently, a significant portion of many commonly occurring types of human tumors, such as breast cancer (see, for example, **Supplementary Sidebar 12.12**), may be associated with inheritance of these still-unknown germ-line alleles.

Our thinking about the family cancer syndromes associated with inheritance of defective caretaker genes is confounded by one major mystery: the majority of these diseases involve only a very narrow subset of tissues in the body, even though we have every reason to believe that the services of affected caretakers are required ubiquitously. Why, for example, do inherited mismatch repair defects have such a strong preference for causing tumors in the intestinal tract? The puzzle is drawn even more starkly in the case of breast cancer. By one account, inherited defects in at least seven genes that are involved, directly or indirectly, in the maintenance of genomic integrity generate substantially increased risks of mammary tumors in humans. These include the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes, two genes encoding BRCA1-associated proteins (*BARD1* and *BACH1*), *CHK2*, *p53*, and *ATM* (which specifies one of the kinase sensors that activate the p53 alarm following DNA damage; see Section 9.7).

Of course, this is not the first time that we have encountered a puzzle of this sort. Recall, for example, the behavior of inherited mutant alleles of the retinoblastoma gene, *Rb*. This gene specifies a protein, pRb, that appears to function in almost every cell type in the body as the critical controller of advance through the cell cycle, yet children who inherit defective *Rb* alleles are predisposed peculiarly to a rare eye tumor when they are very young and to bone tumors as adolescents (see Sections 7.3–7.5).

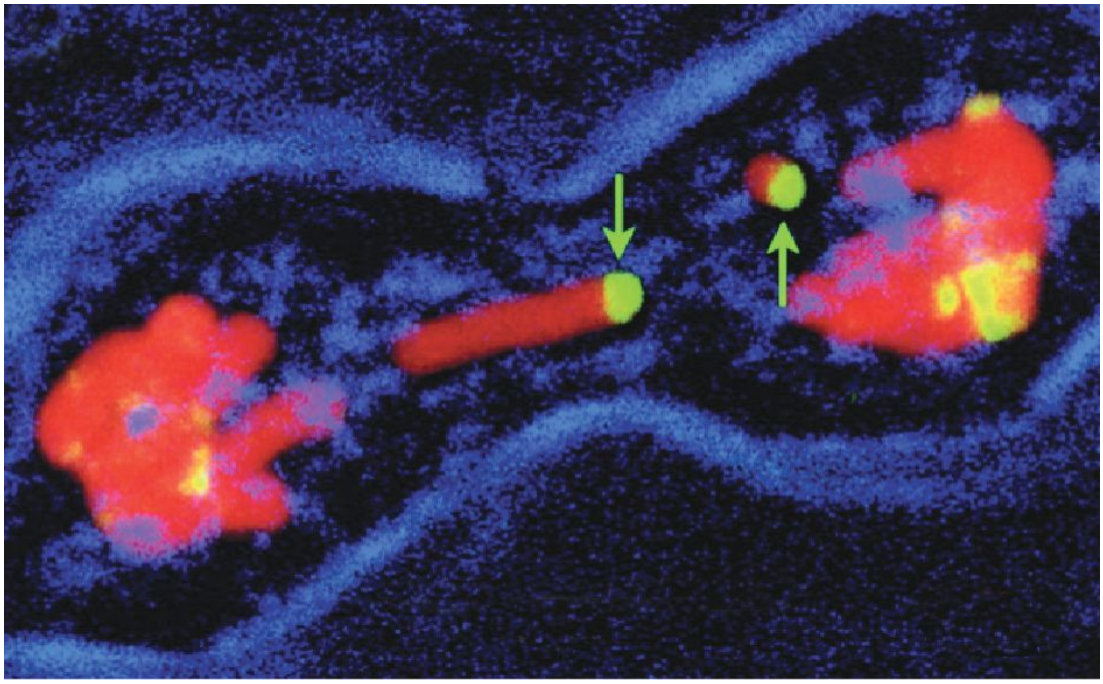
To date, our perceptions about the genes that are responsible for mammalian genome maintenance have been shaped largely by bacterial and yeast genetics. These disciplines have yielded a wealth of genes that are essential for genome maintenance in these microbes and, by extension, in our own genomes as well. For example, the resonance between yeast genetics and its harvest of mismatch repair genes and the HNPCC syndrome led to the rapid enumeration of six human genes and proteins that are responsible for this type of genome maintenance.

Importantly, microbial genetics may have netted only a portion of the genes in the human genome that are responsible for maintenance of its integrity. How large, then, is the universe of human caretaker genes and proteins? The sequencing of the yeast genome begins to give us a feeling for this number. Recent estimates indicate that this genome consists of approximately 5600 distinct genes. Of these, 153 are classified as

being involved in DNA replication and repair, and 88 seem to be involved exclusively with repair. Many of the genes encountered in this chapter are metazoan inventions, which suggests that the size of the cohort of human genes involved in these processes is likely to be much larger. Indeed, by 2001, more than 130 DNA repair genes had already been identified in the human genome; by 2004, the number approached 150, and it reached 176 in 2012. Hence, genes and proteins that play critical roles in the maintenance of the genome and thus in the suppression of cancer are being discovered continually, some in very unexpected places (**Sidebar 12.12**).

Sidebar 12.12 Histones function to reduce cancer risk

For many decades, histones and the nucleosomes that they form were depicted as static structural components of chromatin that serve to package and compact the chromosomal DNA. Beginning in the 1990s, it became clear that covalent modification of histones is critical in making regions of chromatin more or less hospitable for transcription (see Section 1.8). Even more recently, histones have been found to play a dynamic role in DNA repair. H2AX is a variant of the abundant H2A histone that is present in virtually all nucleosomes. H2AX constitutes about 15% of the H2A-like histones in cells and substitutes for H2A in some nucleosomes (see also Figure 1.16). When a double-strand break is sustained in chromosomal DNA, H2AX molecules (but not the other histones) become phosphorylated, primarily by the ATM and ATR kinases, on a specific serine residue located four amino acid residues from the carboxyl-terminal end; such phosphorylated H2AX is observed in a large chromosomal region (involving as much as 2 megabases of DNA) flanking the break (**Figure 12.48**). (These two kinases are also responsible for phosphorylating and thereby mobilizing p53; see Figure 9.12.) The phosphorylated H2AX (usually termed γ-H2AX) attracts DNA repair proteins, such as BRCA1 and NBS1, as well as at least four others that aid in the task of rejoining the DNA ends (see also Figures 12.28 and 12.31).



A fluorescence microscopy image of a cell approaching the end of the cell division process. The cell contains two widely separated nuclei, not yet fully self-contained, which appear bright red. As the cell's dark blue outline reveals, the cell is peanut-shaped due to a narrowing in the middle, where it is about to cleave in two. However, a loose fragment of thickened D N A lies across this cleavage zone. It is red but has a bright green end. Another, much shorter loose fragment of D N A also appears as red with a green end.

Figure 12.48 γ-H2AX and double-strand DNA breaks The creation of dsDNA breaks by various mechanisms results in the phosphorylation of H2AX histone (a variant form of histone H2A), yielding γ-H2AX. Like H2A, H2AX participates in the formation of nucleosomes. Chromosomal regions as large as two megabases that flank a dsDNA break are found to carry copies of γ-H2AX. In the absence of γ-H2AX , critical DNA repair proteins, including NBS1 and BRCA1 (see Figure 12.31), fail to be recruited to the site of dsDNA breaks. In the image shown here, cells of the Indian muntjac, used because of their small number of chromosomes, have been irradiated with a low dose (0.6 Gy) of X-rays. Late anaphase cells were then stained for γ-H2AX (*yellow-green, arrows*) and for chromosomal DNA (*red)*. The outlines of the dividing cell are seen in blue. Note the staining of γ-H2AX at the broken ends of a chromosome. (From E.P. Rogakou et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 146:905–916, 1999. With permission from Rockefeller University Press.)

Mice that have lost the H2AX gene (because of germ-line inactivation) are viable but stunted in growth. Their cells are unable to execute homology-directed repair (HDR;

see Section 12.9) and are prone to accumulate structurally abnormal chromosomes. Mice lacking both the H2AX and p53 proteins are highly prone to both hematopoietic and solid tumors. Even mice lacking one copy of the H2AX gene in the context of p53 deficiency show significantly increased rates of lymphomas.

These responses illustrate how highly complex the DNA repair process is, and how defects in any of its individual components—many still unidentified—open the door to the appearance of cancer. Provocatively, the human H2AX gene maps to a chromosomal region (11q23) that frequently undergoes loss of heterozygosity and/or deletion, creating the possibility that this gene and encoded histone are frequently shed by human cells en route to malignancy.

This area of cancer research is also having a profound effect on our understanding of another, seemingly unrelated biological process—aging. At least ten distinct premature aging syndromes—each a form of progeria—have been traced to inherited defects in one or another component of the DNA repair system. Individuals suffering from these syndromes often show many of the phenotypes of the aged by the time they reach adolescence. These clinical effects of defective DNA repair provide compelling indications that much of the normal aging process will one day be traced to genetic damage that we accumulate in our stem cells throughout life; their progressive attrition seems to lead to the inability of tissues to renew themselves, yielding precisely the changes observed in the aged. Consequently, cancer and aging may be found to share a common root—the progressive deterioration of our genomes as we get older. And both cancer development and aging may one day be forestalled by treatments and lifestyles that protect our genomes from the ongoing attacks that they suffer, decade after decade, deep within our cells.

The nature and pace of cancer research has changed markedly over the past decade as a result of a series of technological developments in the area of cancer genomics. We have discussed the importance of these approaches to developing comprehensive mutational landscapes of most types of human cancer, including single nucleotide mutations, small-scale indel mutations, larger-scale mutations, and copy number variation. Today, whole-exome and whole-genome analysis of cancer specimens from human patients and pre-clinical models are routinely performed, allowing a remarkably complete view of accumulated genomic alterations associated with tumor development. As discussed in this chapter, understanding the patterns of mutations across the genome in different types of cancer can provide important insights into the etiological factors that influence tumor development, including exposure to exogenous carcinogens as well as defects in DNA damage repair pathways. In Chapter 17, we discuss the use of human cancer genomic studies in guiding the use of specific therapies that are targeted against particular mutant genes. Increasingly, oncologists

order genome sequence analyses for their patients' cancers precisely for this purpose, and this practice is expected to become routine in the not-too-distant future.

Mutations in protein-coding genes—whether they be in cancer drivers or passengers—can produce neoantigens that distinguish the cancer cells bearing these mutations from normal cells, making them visible to components of the adaptive immune system and, in turn, possible targets for attack by various types of immunotherapy, as described in Chapter 16. This provides the rationale for ongoing, extensive efforts to use cancer genome analyses of a patient's tumor DNA to predict which mutations would be expected to yield "strong antigens" that are highly likely to attract the attention of the immune system and, in turn, might be exploited to produce therapeutic cancer vaccines. We will revisit some of these issues in Chapter 16. At the same time, the vulnerabilities of cancer cells arising from acquired defects in their genome maintenance machinery are being explored with the hope of spawning an entire new generation of anti-cancer therapeutic strategies.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

replication stress
: A physiological cell state that occurs when the normal coordination of DNA synthesis is perturbed, often in response to stalled replication forks, resulting in, among other consequences, the collapse of replication forks arising because of breakage of the persisting ssDNA and the resulting formation of dsDNA breaks. *See also* **replication fork**, **stalled replication fork**.

progeria
: Syndrome in which an individual undergoes premature or accelerated aging.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- The structural integrity and thus low mutability of DNA depends on a large and complex set of biological and biochemical mechanisms that work to ensure that somatic mutations accumulate in tissues at very low rates.
- Some of the mechanisms depend on the organization of tissues, in which the long-lived cells (the stem cells) are protected from genetic damage while the short-lived cells (the transit-amplifying and differentiated cells) are vulnerable to such damage but are soon discarded.
- Misincorporated bases generated by errors in DNA replication can contribute to the burden of accumulated mutations. The numbers of these alterations are held down by the low error rates of DNA polymerases together with an array of error-correcting proteins, such as those involved in mismatch repair. Inherited defects in mismatch repair proteins can lead to increased susceptibility to certain types of cancer, notably hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer.
- Cell genomes are under continuous attack by a variety of chemically reactive molecules, many of them deriving from the cellular process of oxidative phosphorylation and the resulting reactive oxygen species that are generated as by-products of this process. Cell genomes may also suffer spontaneous chemical alterations, which affect DNA bases at a low but significant rate.
- In addition, the genomic DNA of cells can be attacked by mutagenic molecules of foreign origin. Such xenobiotics and their chemically reactive derivatives may come from pollutants and, to a far greater extent, from commonly consumed foodstuffs.
- Cells attempt to detoxify many of these compounds before they can attack genomic DNA. However, the side products of these reactions may actually be more reactive and mutagenic than the initially introduced molecular species.
- If the attacking mutagenic agents succeed in damaging DNA, an elaborate array of proteins involved in base-excision and nucleotide-excision repair lies in wait in order to remove most damaged bases.

Inherited defects in base-excision repair proteins can lead to various types of cancer susceptibility.

- Other types of DNA damage include double-strand DNA breaks, which can be created by X-rays or, more commonly, by accidental DNA breakage at replication forks.
- Double-strand DNA breaks can be repaired in the G_1 phase of the cell cycle by nonhomologous end joining or in the S and G_2 phases by homology-dependent repair. Inherited defects in double-strand DNA repair can explain the breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility among patients inheriting mutant *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* germ-line alleles.
- Genomes may be scrambled by mechanisms that affect the karyotype of cells. One class of such alterations includes those that affect chromosomal structure, including the translocations that are created by the fusions of unrelated chromosomal arms to one another. Such fusions seem to be commonly triggered by eroded telomeres and collapsed replication forks, both of which generate double-strand DNA breaks.
- Changes in chromosome number are also common in cancer cell genomes and appear to facilitate the accumulation of genes in proportions that favor the proliferation and survival of these neoplastic cells. Many of these changes derive from defects in the mitotic apparatus and its regulators, notably the centrosomes and proteins involved in connecting spindle fibers with chromosomal kinetochores.
- The advent of high-throughput genome sequencing technologies has allowed in-depth analysis of cancer genomes and a comprehensive understanding of the array of mutations that contribute to tumor development.
- The specific nature of mutations in cancer genomes and the sequence context in which they occur can provide clues to possible carcinogen exposure or defects in DNA repair processes that contributed to tumor development.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What types of evidence suggest that karyotypic alterations of cell genomes are not absolutely essential for neoplastic transformation?
2. When calculating the rates of mutation required for multi-step tumor progression to reach completion, what parameters must one know in order for such a calculation to accurately describe the actual biological process?
3. How does our understanding of defective DNA repair processes in tumor cells make possible the development of new anti-cancer therapeutic strategies?
4. In which ways do the defectiveness of p53 function and resulting defects in apoptosis and DNA repair facilitate the forward march of tumor progression?
5. What evidence implicates mutagenic chemicals originating outside the body in the pathogenesis of human cancers? How can one gauge their contribution to human carcinogenesis compared with that of mutagens and mutagenic processes of endogenous origin?
6. How do defects in various cell cycle checkpoints allow for accelerated rates of the accumulation of mutations?
7. How do the biological properties of stem cells help to reduce the rate at which tissues accumulate mutant genes?
8. How does the existence of cancer stem cells affect the calculations of the rate at which mutations must be accumulated in order to allow multi-step tumor progression to advance?
9. How does the genetic heterogeneity in the human gene pool affect the functioning of various types of biological defenses that have been erected to prevent the accumulation of mutant alleles in human somatic cells?
10. How does mutual exclusivity in cancer gene mutations in a given cancer type inform the functional relationships between genes in a biological pathway?
11. What does the observation of extensive inter-tumoral heterogeneity in cancer gene mutations for a given cancer type imply with respect to the nature of the pathways required to cause oncogenic transformation?

12. How can cancer genomics allow scientists to investigate intra-tumoral heterogeneity in cancer?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Alexandrov LB, Kim J, Haradhvala NJ et al. (2020) The repertoire of mutational signatures in human cancer. *Nature* 578, 94–101.

Ames BN (1989) Endogenous DNA damage as related to cancer and aging. *Mutat. Res.* 214, 41–46.

Arias EA & Walter JC (2007) Strength in numbers: preventing rereplication via multiple mechanisms in eukaryotic cells. *Genes Dev.* 21, 497–518.

Barnes DE & Lindahl T (2004) Repair and genetic consequences of endogenous DNA base damage in mammalian cells. *Annu. Rev. Genet.* 38, 445–476.

Ben David U & Amon A (2020) Context is everything: aneuploidy in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Genet*. 21(1), 44–62.

Branzel D & Folani M (2008) Regulation of DNA repair throughout the cell cycle. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol*. 9, 297–308.

Brenner JC & Chinnaiyan AM (2009) Translocations in epithelial cancers. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1796, 201–215.

Brown JS, O'Carrigan B, Jackson SP & Yap TA (2017) Targeting DNA repair in cancer: Beyond PARP inhibitors. *Cancer Discov.* 7, 20–37.

Campbell BB, Light N, Fabrizio D et al. (2017) Comprehensive analysis of hypermutation in human cancer. *Cell* 171,1042–1056.

Christmann M & Kaina B (2019) Epigenetic regulation of DNA repair genes and implications for tumor therapy. *Mutat. Res.* 780, 15–28.

Cimini D (2008) Merotelic kinetochore orientation, aneuploidy, and cancer. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1786, 32–40.

Cleaver JE (2005) Cancer in xeroderma pigmentosum and related disorders of DNA repair. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 564–573.

Couch FJ, Shimelis H, Hu C et al. (2017) Associations between cancer predisposition testing panel genes and breast cancer. *JAMA Oncol.* 3,1190–1196.

D'Assoro AB, Lingle WL & Salisbury JL (2002) Centrosome amplification and the development of cancer. *Oncogene* 21, 6146–6153.

DiGiovanna DJ & Kraemer KH (2012) Shining a light on xeroderma pigmentosum. *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 132, 785–796.

Duensing S & Münger K (2002) Human papillomavirus and centrosome duplication errors: modeling the origins of chromosomal stability. *Oncogene* 21, 6241–6248.

Ferguson LR (2010) Dietary influences on mutagenesis: where is this field going? *Environ. Mol. Mutagen.* 51, 909–918.

Friedberg EC, Aguilera A, Gellert M et al. (2006) DNA repair: from molecular mechanism to human disease. *DNA Repair (Amst.)* 5, 986–996.

Gold LS, Ames BN & Slone TH (2002) Misconceptions about the causes of cancer. In Human and Environmental Risk Assessment: Theory and Practice (D Paustenbach ed), pp 1415–1460. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Halazonetis T, Gorgoulis VG & Bartek J (2008) An oncogene-induced DNA damage model for cancer development. *Science* 319, 1352–1356.

Harper JW & Elledge SJ (2007) The DNA damage response: ten years after. *Mol. Cell* 28, 739–745.

Harris RS & Dudley JP (2015) APOBECs and viral restriction. *Virology* 479–480, 131–145.

Hartlerode AJ & Scully R (2009) Mechanisms of double-strand break repair in somatic mammalian cells. *Biochem. J.* 423, 157–168.

Hoeijmakers JHJ (2009) DNA damage, aging and cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 361, 1475–1485.

Holland AJ & Cleveland DW (2009) Boveri revisited: chromosomal instability, aneuploidy and tumorigenesis. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 10, 478–487.

Hübscher U, Maga G & Spadari S (2002) Eukaryotic DNA polymerases. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 71, 133–163.

Huertas P (2010) DNA resection in eukaryotes: deciding how to fix the break. *Nat. Struct. Mol. Biol.* 17, 11–16.

Jachimowicz RD, Goergens J & Reinhardt HC (2019) DNA double-strand break repair pathway choice—from basic biology to clinical exploitation. *Cell Cycle* 18, 1423–1434.

Jiricny J (2006) The multifaceted mismatch-repair system. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 7, 335–346.

Kastan MB & Bartek J (2004) Cell cycle checkpoints and cancer. *Nature* 432, 316–323.

Kee Y & D'Andrea AD (2010) Expanded roles of the Fanconi anemia pathway in preserving genomic stability. *Genes Dev.* 24, 1680–1694.

Kim D & Guengerich FP (2005) Cytochrome P450 activation of arylamines and heterocyclic amines. *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol.* 45, 27–49.

Leibowitz ML, Zhang C-Z & Pellman D (2015) Chromothripsis: A new mechanism for rapid karyotype evolution. *Annu. Rev. Genet.* 49,183–211.

Lord CJ & Ashworth A (2017) PARP inhibitors: synthetic lethality in the clinic. *Science* 355, 1152–1158.

Loeb LA, Bielas JH & Beckman RA (2008) Cancer cells exhibit a mutator phenotype: clinical implications. *Cancer Res.* 68, 3551–3557.

Loeb LA, Loeb KR & Anderson JP (2003) Multiple mutations and cancer. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100, 776–781.

Lynch HT & de la Chapelle A (2003) Hereditary colorectal cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med*. 348, 919–932.

Marnett LJ & Plastaras JP (2001) Endogenous DNA damage and mutation. *Trends Genet.* 17, 214–221.

Maynard S, Schurman S, Harboe C et al. (2009) Base excision repair of oxidative DNA damage and association with cancer and aging. *Carcinogenesis* 30, 2–10.

Morris DS, Tomlins SA, Montie JE & Chinnaiyan AM (2008) The discovery and application of gene fusions in prostate cancer. *BJU Int.* 102, 276–282.

Nakabeppu Y, Tsuchimoto D, Ichinoe A et al. (2004) Biological significance of the defense mechanisms against oxidative damage in nucleic acids caused by reactive oxygen species: from mitochondria to nuclei. *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.* 1011, 101–111.

Navin NE & Hicks J (2010) Tracing the tumor lineage. *Mol. Oncol.* 4, 267–283.

Negrini S, Gorgoulis VG & Halazonetis TD (2010) Genomic instability: an evolving hallmark of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 11, 220–228.

Nigg EA (2006) Origins and consequences of centrosome aberrations in human cancers. *Int. J. Cancer* 119, 2717–2723.

O'Donovan PJ & Livingston DM (2010) BRCA1 and BRCA2: breast/ovarian cancer susceptibility gene products and participants in double-strand break repair. *Carcinogenesis* 31, 961–967.

Poirier MC (2004) Chemical-induced DNA damage and human cancer risk. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4, 630–637.

Rayner E, van Gool IC, Palles C et al. (2016) A panoply of errors: polymerase proofreading domain mutations in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 16, 71–81.

Reinhardt HC & Yaffe MB (2009) Kinases that control the cell cycle in response to DNA damage: Chk1, Chk2, and MK2. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 21, 245–255.

Ricke RM, van Ree JH & van Deursen JM (2008) Whole chromosome instability and cancer: a complex relationship. *Trends Genet.* 24, 457–466.

Sengupta S & Harris CC (2005) p53: traffic cop at the crossroads of DNA repair and recombination. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 6, 44–55.

Silver DP & Livingston DM (2012) Mechanisms of BRCA1 tumor suppression. *Cancer Disc.* 2, 679–684.

Singh MS & Michael M (2009) Role of xenobiotic metabolic enzymes in cancer epidemiology. *Methods Mol. Biol.* 472, 243–264.

Smith J, Tho LM, Xu N & Gillespie DA (2010) The ATM-Chk2 and ATR-Chk1 pathways in DNA damage signaling and cancer. *Adv. Cancer Res.* 108, 73–112.

Stolz A, Ertych N & Bastians H (2011) Tumor suppressor *CHK2*, regulator of DNA damage response and mediator of chromosomal stability. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 17, 401–405.

Sugimura T (2000) Nutrition and dietary carcinogens. *Carcinogenesis* 21, 387–395.

Thompson SL & Compton DA (2008) Examining the link between chromosomal instability and aneuploidy in human cells. *J. Cell Biol.* 180, 655–672.

Weinstock DM, Richardson CA, Elliott B & Jasin M (2006) Modeling oncogenic translocations: distinct roles for double-strand break repair

pathways in translocation formation in mammalian cells. *DNA Repair (Amst.)* 5, 1065–1074.

Wilch ES & Morton CC (2018) Historical and clinical perspectives on chromosome translocations. *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol*. l044, 1-14.

Wogan GN, Hecht SS, Felton JS et al. (2004) Environmental and chemical carcinogenesis. *Semin. Cancer Biol*. 14, 473–486.

Wood RD, Mitchell M & Lindahl T (2005) Human DNA repair genes, 2005. *Mutat. Res.* 577, 275–283.

Wu X, Zhao H, Suk R & Christiani DC (2004) Genetic susceptibility to tobacco-related cancer. *Oncogene* 23, 6500–6523.

Yang B, Li X, Lei L & Chen J (2017) APOBEC: From mutator to editor. *J. Genetics Genomics* 44, 423–437.

Zhao EY, Jones M & Jones SJM (2019) Whole-genome sequencing in cancer. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Med.* 9/3/a034579.

Zhao W, Wiese C, Kwon Y et al. (2019) The BRCA tumor suppressor network in chromosome damage repair by homologous recombination. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 88, 221–245.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 12.1 Hematopoiesis is a model for the organization of many kinds of tissues

Our understanding of the organization of a variety of self-renewing tissues derives in large part from the study of the organization of hematopoiesis (**Figure S12.1**). Experiments performed in the 1960s and 1970s led to a number of concepts that remain deeply embedded in our thinking to this day. Among them are the following:

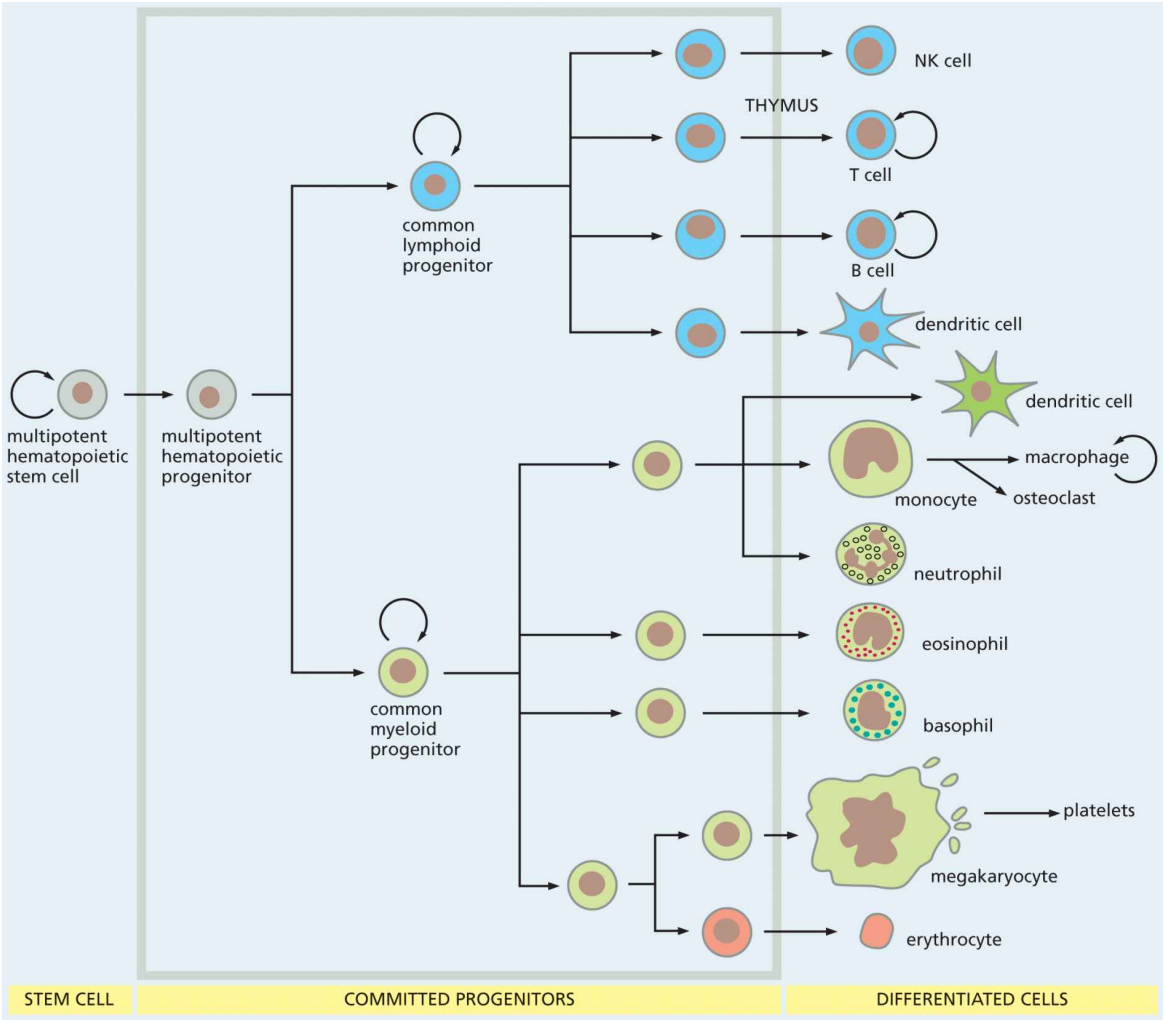


Figure S12.1 Hematopoietic differentiation Our current understanding of hematopoietic cell differentiation teaches a number of lessons. (1) It indicates that a single cell type—the multipotent hematopoietic stem cell (HSC; *left*)—is capable of generating virtually all of the cell types in the blood and in the immune system. (2) It shows that a single stem cell type can spawn multiple types of "committed" stem progenitor cells, in this case, the two stem cell types that are committed to generating lymphoid and myeloid cell types. (3) It shows that self-renewal ability (*curved arrows*) is not confined to a single stem cell type in a tissue; instead, in certain tissues such as this one, "committed progenitors" (i.e., the common lymphoid and myeloid progenitor cells shown here) assume the role of the stem cells in these two major hematopoietic lineages; note as well that some of their descendants have self-renewal capability. The fact that a patient suffering from CML (chronic myelogenous leukemia) often exhibits several distinct differentiated lymphoid and myeloid cell types carrying the Ph^1 chromosome (and a *BCR-ABL* translocation) provides strong indication that this abnormal chromosome was initially formed in some multipotent HSC or progenitor and that this mutant configuration was eventually introduced into the multipotent hematopoietic stem cell compartment. (From B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 7th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2022.)

---

1. A primitive, relatively undifferentiated cell type can spawn progeny that ultimately generate multiple distinct differentiated cell types.
2. These primitive cell types reside long-term within a tissue and, upon dividing, ensure that at least one of their daughters remains a stem cell, while the other may exit the stem cell state and begin a process of differentiation. The generation of two phenotypically distinct daughter cells is termed *asymmetric division*.
3. This generation of a daughter cell that is indistinguishable from its mother represents the process of *self-renewal*, guaranteeing that the pool of stem cells in a tissue is not depleted by such cell divisions.
4. The non-stem cell daughter that arises following division of a stem cell may not immediately undertake to differentiate, but instead may participate in a succession of symmetric cell divisions, generating more cells like itself. Such cells, which are often termed either *transit-amplifying* or *progenitor* cells, may increase exponentially, ensuring that a single cell division of the original mother cell—the stem cell—yields dozens if not hundreds of progenitor cell progeny. Therefore, the stem cell need only occasionally pass through a cycle of growth and division, minimizing the likelihood that the

genome of this cell and its stem cell descendants will be susceptible to the genetic accidents that accompany active cell division.

5. After a certain number of divisions, the progenitor cells may then generate fully differentiated progeny that undertake the work of the tissue. Because these differentiated cells often have entered into a post-mitotic state, most of the mitotic activity in a tissue is often associated with the transit-amplifying/progenitor cell population.

The model presented in Figure S12.1 was strongly supported by experiments in which a mouse that had been lethally irradiated, thereby depleting its hematopoietic cells, could be rescued from otherwise-inevitable death by implanting hematopoietic stem cells. These experiments demonstrated, among other things, that all the cells in the hematopoietic tissues of such a rescued mouse might derive from a single engrafted stem cell, proving that this stem cell was multipotent, in that its progeny could enter into multiple distinct states of differentiation and thereby generate multiple differentiated cell types.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.2 Oxidation products in urine provide an estimate of the rate of ongoing damage to the cellular genome

By recent estimates, the genomes of some human cells suffer as many as 10^3 oxidative hits a day, about tenfold less than the rate at which depurination of bases occurs. The resulting oxidized bases are largely but not totally removed and replaced with the appropriate normal bases. (Rat cells suffer about tenfold more oxidative hits per cell per day in their genomes than do human cells because they have about a sevenfold greater metabolic rate.) Any unrepaired oxidative lesions will accumulate with time, especially in the genomes of cells that are not mitotically active.

The most frequently observed nucleotide product of oxidative damage is 8-oxo-dG. It seems that the DNA repair apparatus fails to remove 1 to 2% of this oxidized nucleotide fails. Oxidants may oxidize the nucleotide precursor of dG prior to its incorporation into DNA and the resulting oxidized nucleoside triphosphate may then be incorporated instead of dGTP into the DNA. Alternatively, oxidants may attack the guanine base after its incorporation into DNA. The 8-oxo-dG excised from DNA is largely excreted in the urine.

The importance of oxidized dGTP (that is, 8-oxo-dG triphosphate) is indicated by the fact that a specialized enzyme—MTH1 (mammalian MutT homolog 1)—is

employed by mammalian cells to degrade this oxidized DNA precursor; mice lacking MTH1 develop tumors at a 3 to 4 times higher rate than their wild-type counterparts. Under standard conditions of tissue culture, early-passage human fibroblasts will usually proliferate for several dozen population doublings before entering senescence (see Section 10.1). However, when expression of the MTH1 enzyme was suppressed in these cells by expression of an shRNA (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.5**), almost all of them entered into senescence within a single population doubling (approximately one day). This indicated that these cells were poised under these conditions of culture to enter senescence rapidly and were saved from this fate by the continuous actions of this detoxifying enzyme. Interestingly, when these cells were propagated in an environment of 3% oxygen (rather than the 21% usually present in tissue culture incubators), then this rapid entrance into senescence was avoided. This lower oxygen tension more closely approximates the conditions experienced by cells within our tissues (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 10.3**).

Unfortunately, studies of the importance of DNA oxidation products have been subject to a number of artifacts, including the inadvertent oxidation of DNA and nucleosides *in vitro*. On one occasion, aliquots of one DNA preparation were sent to 21 laboratories in Europe for measurement of 8-oxo-dG content; the results yielded estimates ranging over a factor of more than 200. The estimates of the numbers of oxidized bases in cell genomes have fallen dramatically in recent years. Nonetheless, the newer, more conservative estimates place the steady-state number of 8-oxo-dG residues in the DNA isolated from an average human cell at about 3000. This steady-state level is comparable to the level of chemically altered bases that are formed in the DNA of target tissues of laboratory animals that have been exposed to high, carcinogenic doses of compounds such as aflatoxin and heterocyclic amines.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.3 How does red meat cause colon cancer?

A number of epidemiological studies have linked high red meat consumption to increased risk of colon, pancreatic, and rectal cancer (and, to a lesser extent, to cancers of the breast, lung, and urinary bladder). However, it has not been possible to associate these risks specifically with the heterocyclic amines (HCAs) that are generated by cooking meats at high temperatures (that is, by frying or grilling). Attempts to make such an association are complicated by inter-individual differences in the metabolism of HCAs, by complex metabolic conversions undertaken by bacterial flora (see below), and by the possibility that

other components of meat and fat, including other compounds generated by cooking, may play important contributory roles in the observed increased cancer risk.

It is clear, for example, that an HCA such as PhIP (see Figure 12.16A), which is produced in substantial amounts when cooking meats and fish at high temperatures, is capable of inducing G-to-T transversions and deletions of a single G from the sequence GGG—mutations of the sort that are found in many *p53* alleles carried by human colon cancer cells. However, such a correlation hardly proves causation, and the specific causes of these and other mutations in colon cancer genomes remain to be demonstrated. More recent work indicates as much as a twofold increased risk of prostate cancer in men who consumed large amounts of grilled or barbecued red meat. Consequently, although HCAs are clearly carcinogenic, their actual contributions to human cancer incidence are still the subject of great debate.

Complicating this analysis are the repeated observations that processed meats are especially carcinogenic and are associated with even higher incidence of colorectal cancer than red meats in general. These processed meats include bacon, various types of sausage and hot dogs, and packaged sandwich meat. Common to these various processed meats is the presence of sodium nitrite, which is added by meat companies as a preservative and to provide a bright red (and thus fresh) appearance to these meat products. Sodium nitrite can, in turn, generate nitrosamines. Thus, $NaNO_2$ + R_2NH (cellular amines) → $R_2N—N—O$ (nitrosamine) + heat → $R—N_2^+$ (diazonium ion) + DNA bases → DNA adducts. Importantly, the nitrite concentrations used to preserve red meats in the United States have decreased over the past three decades and ascorbic acid has been added to inhibit the first of the reactions described above (termed nitrosation), clearly lessening but not eliminating the carcinogenicity of nitrite preservatives. Once again, compelling evidence of a direct connection between an agent—nitrites—with human cancer incidence is lacking, even though the connection between processed meats and cancer drawn from epidemiology is clear and undeniable.

There are additional confounding effects that complicate our ability to establish direct connections between foodstuffs and cancer incidence because, by some estimates, between 500 and 1000 distinct bacterial species reside in the human colon. The mix of bacterial species varies from one individual to another, being affected by genetic background, by diet, and possibly even by immune state. Each of these microbial species has its own set of enzymes that convert chemical

species in the fecal matter, including xenobiotics (compounds that are not naturally produced in the body) such as HCAs, into a vastly complex collection of metabolites. Each of these metabolites, in turn, has its own particular set of chemical reactivities. Hence, the mechanisms of mutagenesis in the colon are extraordinarily complex and contrast starkly with the mechanisms operating in the skin, where many carcinogenic mutations can be traced directly and unequivocally to the actions of ultraviolet photons and the pyrimidine dimers that they generate. Finally, it is worth noting a totally independent and unrelated hypothesized mechanism of cancer induced by red meat, which involves the consumption of a particular sialic acid isoform. This isoform gets incorporated into glycoproteins expressed in various human tissues. Because the sialic acid isoform is perceived as foreign by the human immune system, it can induce low-level, continuous inflammation. Such inflammation, as described in Section 11.15, creates tissue microenvironments that favor the inception and outgrowth of various neoplasms.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.4 Allelic variation in genes encoding metabolic enzymes can affect cancer susceptibility and response to therapy

Alleles of many genes involved in the metabolism of carcinogens and procarcinogens have been linked to cancer risk. For example, a connection between the glutathione *S*-transferase enzymes and cancer susceptibility is suggested by epidemiologic studies. In one such study, the allelic configurations of two separate GST-encoding genes, termed *GSTT1* and *GSTM1*, were examined in a normal control population and in individuals suffering from myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), a hyperproliferative disorder of the bone marrow that often progresses to acute myelogenous leukemia (AML). Of the patients suffering from MDS, 46% carried two null alleles (which encode no enzyme) of *GSTT1*; this genetic state was present in only 16% of the control population. (In the case of the related *GSTM1* gene, homozygosity of the null allele was found in comparable proportions of the two populations.) Calculations indicated that individuals inheriting two null alleles of the *GSTT1* gene run more than a fourfold increased risk of myelodysplastic syndrome over those who carry at least one functional allele of the gene. These observations suggest that the T1 isoenzyme of glutathione *S*-transferase is involved in some way in detoxifying the compounds that provoke MDS. (An alternative interpretation, which is less likely but nonetheless difficult to exclude at present, is that the *GSTT1* gene is closely linked on the chromosome to a second gene that predisposes an individual to MDS.)

In fact, cells use a broad spectrum of enzymes to modify potential carcinogens in a variety of chemical ways, including the attachment of acetyl, glucuronic acid, glutathione, and sulfate groups; many of these chemical modifications aid in the detoxification and eventual excretion of these compounds. Because of heterogeneity in the human gene pool, the level of expression of many of the enzymes responsible for these detoxification reactions varies greatly among individuals. These differences may, in turn, strongly influence the biological responses of an individual to potentially carcinogenic compounds. For example, a study of 416 lung cancer patients and 446 healthy control individuals determined that persons of a certain genotype had a twofold increased risk of lung cancer; these susceptible individuals carried a particular allele of the cytochrome-encoding *Cyp1A1* gene and null alleles of the gene specifying glutathione *S*-transferase M1 (GSTM1).

Another study focused on breast adenomas among women who consumed more than 27 ng per day of the heterocyclic amine MeIQx (2-amino-3,8-dimethylimidazo[4,5-f]quinoxaline; see Figure 12.16A) by eating large quantities of burnt meat. Women who expressed high levels of *N*-acetyltransferase 1 (NAT1, an enzyme that can help to convert heterocyclic amines into active mutagens) were reported to experience a sixfold increased rate of adenomas, whereas those with much lower levels of NAT1 showed only a twofold increased risk. In both cases, adenoma frequency was compared with the incidence of adenomas in a third group of women who had low levels of MeIQx in their diet. These correlations suggest that enzymes can influence cancer incidence in two ways: some enzymes affect the rate at which a number of potentially mutagenic compounds are detoxified, whereas others (inadvertently) convert otherwise-nonreactive compounds into chemically reactive mutagens.

In fact, these enzymes intersect with the disease of cancer in yet another way, because they can also function to detoxify chemotherapeutic drugs, thereby blunting the effects of treatment. A particularly dramatic example of this effect was observed upon comparing the clinical responses of breast cancer patients who carried functional alleles of the *GSTM1* and *GSTT1* genes with those of a group of women who had only null alleles at both genetic loci. All of these women were treated with a combination chemotherapy regimen (involving cyclophosphamide, Adriamycin, and 5-fluorouracil) plus radiation. Of those women who had functional *GSTM1* and *GSTT1* alleles, almost all succumbed to their disease within six years of treatment. In contrast, of those women with a double-null genotype at both genetic loci, about two-thirds were still alive eight years after treatment. (This parallels the responses of glioblastoma patients to the

cytotoxic drug temozolomide as described in Section 12.7; their responsiveness to this chemotherapeutic agent is strongly influenced by the level of the MGMT repair enzyme that their cells express.)

In all of the cases cited in this sidebar, the different responses were correlated with specific alleles. It is important to remember, however, that these are only correlations and not proofs of causality. In each case, it is possible, in principle, that the alleles being studied are genetically closely linked to yet other alleles that are the true causes of the observed increased or decreased cancer incidence of patients.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.5 Oxidation removes methyl groups from DNA bases

Another mechanism cells use to deal with methylated bases involves homologs of the bacterial AlkB DNA repair protein, which work by oxidizing methyl groups that have become attached to bases. The oxidized methyl groups are then shed as formaldehyde molecules from the rings of all four DNA bases; similarly, AlkB enzymes also cause the larger ethyl group to be released as acetaldehyde. (Aficionados of DNA repair portray these enzymes as “burning off” the unwanted alkyl groups!) In fact, methylation of DNA bases may occur frequently during the lives of cells through the actions of *S*-adenosylmethionine, the methyl donor that participates in the biosynthesis of many molecules in the cell. Its highly reactive methyl group may accidentally become diverted to methylate a variety of cellular macromolecules, including the bases of DNA (see Figure 12.12C).

Bacterial AlkB (and quite possibly its mammalian homologs) has also been found to be capable of removing more complex base adducts. For example, the inadvertent oxidation of unsaturated lipids, yielding lipid epoxides and peroxides, occurs at high rates in inflamed tissues (see Sidebar 12.3); these highly reactive chemical groups can generate complex adducts with DNA bases (see Figure 12.19D) that are highly mutagenic. Indeed, such adducts have been found in tissues of patients with ulcerative colitis, a condition known to progress, with significant frequency, to carcinomas (cited in Table 11.5). A direct role in cancer pathogenesis of the human homologs of AlkB, termed hABH2 and hABH3, has not yet been demonstrated.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.6 Following base excision repair, DNA is restored by a series of steps

After an aberrant base is removed by a DNA glycosylase in the process of BER, the base-free sugar that results is then cleaved by a second enzyme, an endonuclease named APE (apurinic/apyrimidinic endonuclease) that is specialized to cut the strand carrying the base-free deoxyribose, doing so on the 5′ side of this sugar; a third enzyme, termed an AP lyase, then cleaves on the 3′ side, liberating the base-free sugar. The resulting single-strand gap in the DNA is repaired by a DNA polymerase, often polymerase β. The single-strand nick that results is finally closed by a DNA ligase, which rejoins adjacent nucleotides through the formation of phosphodiester bonds between them, thereby reconstructing the normal chemical structure of DNA. An occasionally used variant form of base excision repair, termed “long patch repair,” involves the excision of 4 to 7 nucleotides adjacent to the damaged base followed by a filling of the resulting gap.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.7 A convergence of bacterial, yeast, and human genetics led to the discovery of hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer genes

The route through which the genetic basis of HNPCC was discovered is quite fascinating. By following the co-inheritance of HNPCC susceptibility in a number of afflicted families and the inheritance of a set of chromosomal markers scattered throughout the human genome, geneticists discovered two distinct genetic regions that seemed to be associated with disease susceptibility. In some families, HNPCC susceptibility co-segregated with genetic markers from human Chromosome 2p16, whereas in a second set of families, this susceptibility seemed to be inherited together with markers from chromosomal region 3p21.

At the same time, astute observation of the types of genetic aberrations found in a subset of sporadic colon carcinomas noted that stretches of A’s (for example, A_7) often were expanded or compressed (that is, were replaced by A_6 or A_8) in the genomes of colon carcinoma cells; thereafter, more complex microsatellite sequences [for example, $(CA)_8$] were also found to undergo expansion or shrinkage (see Section 12.3). Such microsatellite instability (MIN) was found to be rampant in the cancer cells of individuals suffering from HNPCC.

Other researchers noted that these changes in DNA sequence were strikingly similar to the alterations that accumulated rapidly in *E. coli* that bore mutant versions of either of two genes—*mutS* or *mutL*—involved in mismatch repair (MMR; see Section 12.3); yeast carrying mutations in the homologous genes showed identical genome-wide aberrations. This similarity led some scientists to investigate whether human homologs of these or other known mismatch repair genes were affected in HNPCC patients, leading rapidly to the confirmation that, indeed, a human *mutS* homolog (named *hMSH2*) mapped to human Chromosome 2p16 and a human *mutL* homolog (*hMLH1*) mapped to 3p21. Eventually, members of one set of HNPCC families were found to transmit mutant germ-line alleles of *hMSH2*, whereas those belonging to a second set of HNPCC kindreds carried mutant germ-line alleles of *hMLH1*.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.8 Homology-directed repair requires a homologous sequence

Homology-directed repair (abbreviated HDR or simply HR) is thought to depend on the ability of a DNA helix suffering a double-strand break (DSB) to consult the related, still-intact homologous sequences present in another chromosome, doing so in order to reconstruct a repaired helix whose sequences are indistinguishable from those that existed prior to the DNA damage. In fact, the reference sequences are almost invariably carried by the other chromatid that arises following DNA replication during the S phase of the cell cycle. (This other helix carried in the other chromatid has presumably not suffered damage during this period.) This mechanism dictates that HDR is limited to those phases in the cell cycle—S and G_2—when replication has generated such a second reference helix. Conversely, HDR is thought not to occur in the G_1 phase of the cell cycle, a phase when such homologous chromatids are not yet present. The machinery that underlies HDR depends on a series of proteins (**Figure S12.2**), some of which are found in defective form (or are absent) in certain human cancers. This leads to the notion that defects in HDR, because they leave behind unrepaired, still-damaged DNA, are highly mutagenic and that this increased mutagenicity explains the increased cancer risks of women who, for example, bear mutant forms of either the BRCA1 or BRCA2 proteins. This conclusion is still not fully substantiated, because proteins like BRCA1 have multiple alternative functions, many not connected directly with DNA repair.

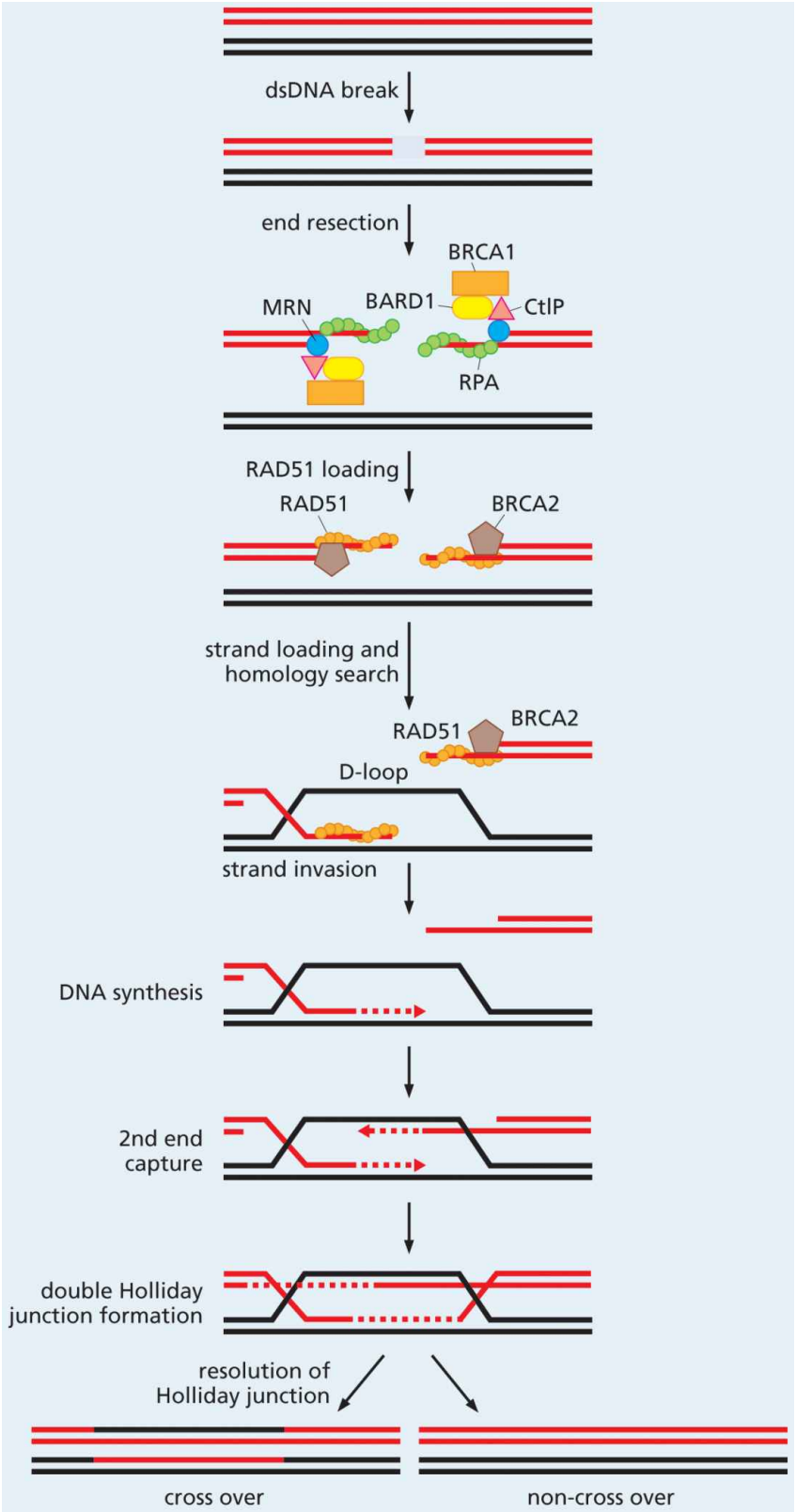

dsDNA break
end resection
BRCA1
MRN
BARD1
CtIP
RPA
RAD51 loading
RAD51
BRCA2
strand loading and
homology search
RAD51
BRCA2
D-loop
strand invasion
DNA synthesis
2nd end
capture
double Holliday
junction formation
resolution of
Holliday junction
cross over
non-cross over

Figure S12.2 Detailed roles of DNA repair proteins in homology-directed repair of double-strand DNA breaks After a double-strand break (DSB) occurs in DNA, this lesion is recognized and bound by the heterotrimeric MRN complex, composed of MRE11, RAD50, and NBS1 (also termed nibrin because of its involvement in Nijmegen breakage syndrome) (see Figure 12.31). This MRN complex recruits CtIP (CtPB-interacting protein) and, while acting in complex with BRCA1 and BARD1, undertakes exonuclease activity to generate two 3′-overhanging single-strand (ss) DNA ends. These ssDNA ends are rapidly coated by RPA (replication protein A; *green*). BRCA1, acting through PALB2, then recruits BRCA2, and the latter loads RAD51 (*orange*) onto the ssDNA, thereby displacing the previously bound RPA protein. This RAD51 protein acts as a recombinase and then facilitates strand invasion into the undamaged homologous region of the sister chromatid, which depends on unwinding the double-helical DNA of the sister chromatid; RAD51 also participates in the search for binding to the proper complementary sequence in the sister chromatid (termed a "homology search"). A displacement (D-) loop is produced when the 3′ ssDNA forms double-helical complexes with the DNA strands of the sister chromatid. This permits DNA polymerases to perform strand elongation from the 3′ ends of the inserted ssDNA by using the complementary ssDNA strands of the sister chromatid as templates. The result is the formation of a complex structure, termed a Holliday junction (HJ), between the two chromatids. The two HJs can be resolved in either of two ways, resulting in either cross over or lack-of-cross over when the two, now-intact sister chromatid helices separate from one another. Other variations of this basic scheme may operate in certain circumstances. (Adapted from P.J. O'Donovan and D.M. Livingston, *Carcinogenesis* 31:961–967, 2010. With permission from Oxford University Press.)

Supplementary Sidebar 12.9 BRCA1 has diverse functions

As BRCA1 function is studied in ever-increasing detail, its mechanisms of action become increasingly confusing, if only because additional distinct biochemical functions are ascribed to this very large protein and its physically associated partners. For example, BRCA1 associates with a number of transcriptional regulators, localizes to centrosomes during mitosis, and has been found at the outer edges of cultured cells growing in monolayer, where it helps to regulate cell motility. It is also clear that female cells lacking BRCA1 function are unable to properly inactivate one of the two X chromosomes in their somatic cells (see

Figure S1.1). We still do not understand how these other functions intersect with BRCA1's DNA repair functions and contribute to the strong tendency of mutant germ-line *BRCA1* (and *BRCA2*) alleles to generate almost exclusively female cancers.

In the eyes of some investigators, the contributions of BRCA1 loss to cancer development may be overshadowed by yet another of its activities unrelated to DNA repair: BRCA1 carries in one of its domains a function that leads to monoubiquitylation of histone H2A. (BRCA1 acts as an adaptor protein and thus as an E3 subunit of a ubiquitin ligase complex, in which an unknown E2 subunit performs the actual enzymatic modification of H2A; see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5** for additional details related to the enzymatic steps related to ubiquitin addition.) This H2A monoubiquitylation results in the formation of heterochromatin, notably the *constitutive heterochroma tin* that is shut down in virtually all somatic cell types. In the absence of this heterochromatinization, a variety of repeat sequences that are normally shut down now become expressed, leading to widespread genetic destabilization as a downstream effect. The relatively recent discovery of this BRCA1 function reveals how poorly we understand why and how BRCA1 loss leads to breast, ovarian, and prostate carcinoma development.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.10 HPV deregulates centrosome number and induces aneuploidy

Primary human cells (that is, those that have been propagated in culture for only a short period of time after removal from living tissue) in which the human papillomavirus (HPV) E7 oncoprotein is expressed show a deregulation of centrosome number, often leading to supernumerary centrosomes beyond the two that are normally present in cells poised to enter mitosis. Recall that the E7 oncoprotein binds to cellular pRb (the retinoblastoma protein), inactivates it functionally, and accelerates its degradation (see Section 8.5). Significantly, a mutant form of the HPV E7 oncoprotein that fails to bind to pRb also fails to induce the appearance of extra centrosomes. Together, these strands of evidence suggest that one of the consequences of loss of pRb function is a deregulation of centrosome duplication. Because the centrosomes play a central role in organizing the mitotic spindles, this deregulation may soon lead to dramatic fluctuations in chromosome number (see Figures 12.38 and 12.39). Indeed, precisely such chromosomal instability is observed in lines of human cervical

carcinoma cells, almost all of which express the early region of the HPV genome, which carries the genes encoding the viral E6 and E7 oncoproteins.

An equal contribution to aneuploidy may be made by the HPV E6 protein (see Sidebar 9.5) and other agents that disrupt p53 function, because cells lacking the services of this important tumor suppressor protein seem particularly susceptible to acquiring aneuploid genomes. Thus, the HPV E7 oncoprotein destabilizes centrosome number, whereas the E6 oncoprotein, through its actions on p53, causes cells to tolerate any centrosome abnormalities that may eventually arise. And in a large variety of other human cancers that are not caused by viral infection, cells that have lost p53 function through other mechanisms also show relatively high rates of instability in their chromosome number. The precise signaling connections between p53 function, mitotic checkpoint controls, and the monitoring of chromosomal number remain obscure.

Inactivation of pRb regulation may confer immediate proliferative advantage on an incipient, HPV-infected cancer cell by inactivating the control that governs passage through the R-point transition (see Section 8.2). In the longer term, additional advantages may accrue to the descendants of this cell because centrosome number will become destabilized, leading in turn to derangement of mitotic spindles and resulting in destabilization of karyotype. The changes in chromosome number that ensue may yield constellations of growth-promoting and growth-retarding genes in proportions that expedite tumor progression.

Supplementary Sidebar 12.11 Rare alterations in genes encoding chromatid assembly and separation proteins in tumorigenesis

To date, only a small proportion of human tumors have been found to carry mutations in the human homologs of yeast genes known to be involved in chromatid assembly and separation during mitosis. Some examples are provided in **Table S12.1**. Unlike the ATM gene, which is well documented because of its role in ataxia telangiectasia (see Table 12.1), mutant germ-line alleles of the genes in this table have rarely been found associated with increased cancer risk. The functions of some of these critical mitosis-regulating genes may be lost through methylation of their promoters (see Section 7.7), but this loss of function remains largely undocumented. In fact, only a small proportion of the large cohort of human genes involved in mitotic functions has been explored to determine whether the functioning of these genes is compromised during the course of tumor progression.

Table S12.1 Mutated, methylated, and overexpressed genes in cancer cells that perturb chromosomal stability

Gene/Complex	Function of gene product	Consequence of alteration in cancer cells
Bubr1/Bub1[a]	spindle assembly checkpoint	progress through mitosis, even in the presence of microtubule inhibitors[a]
Mad1[b]	spindle assembly checkpoint	large-scale aneuploidy
Mad2[, c]	spindle assembly checkpoint	premature entrance into anaphase,[d] aneuploidy
Securin	attachment of sister chromatids	nondisjunction of chromosomes[e]
cohesin complex	attachment of sister chromatids	aneuploidy
Aurora-A, -B	separation of chromatids at anaphase	premature entrance into anaphase[d]
Chfr[e]	spindle assembly checkpoint	nondisjunction[f], chromosome loss
14-3-3σ	DNA damage checkpoint	segregation of unrepaired chromosomes

Gene/Complex	Function of gene product	Consequence of alteration in cancer cells
Rb	cell-cycle regulator	aneuploidy
Apc[g]	regulation of proliferation	mitotic defects, cytokinesis failure

One example of such mitotic control genes is the gene encoding the CHFR (checkpoint with forkhead and RING finger domains) protein, which normally prevents advance from prophase into metaphase in the event that the spindle microtubules and centrosomes are not properly arrayed. The gene encoding this checkpoint protein, which is normally expressed ubiquitously in human cells, has been found to be fully repressed as a result of promoter methylation in 3 of 8 randomly chosen human cancer cell lines and in 7 out of 37 lung cancer biopsies. In mice, activated germ-line alleles of the *Chfr* gene collaborate with knocked-out *Mlh1* alleles (see Section 12.8) to generate dramatically increased tumor incidence rates.

Another key regulator of entrance into M phase is the 14-3-3σ protein. When genomic DNA is damaged, p53 induces synthesis of 14-3-3σ, which proceeds to trap cyclin B–Cdc2 complexes in the cytoplasm (see Section 9.10); by sequestering these cyclin–CDK complexes, 14-3-3σ succeeds in blocking entrance into M phase, thereby holding mitosis in abeyance until damaged chromosomal DNA has been repaired. The gene encoding 14-3-3σ has also been found to be frequently methylated in common cancers, including those of the lung, breast, stomach, and liver. The resulting loss of 14-3-3σ must surely contribute to the aneuploidy observed in these kinds of cancer cells.

These two examples, involving the CHFR and 14-3-3σ proteins, only begin to plumb the depths. There are clearly many other, undiscovered caretaker and checkpoint genes that play critical roles in stabilizing DNA sequences or ensuring normal karyotype and in this way determine whether or not tumor progression will proceed slowly or move ahead rapidly (see **Supplementary Sidebar 12.12**).

Supplementary Sidebar 12.12 Breast cancer studies indicate that common cancers are often caused by inherited defects in caretaker genes

We tend to think that cancers caused by inherited defects in certain genes represent a small fraction of the total cancer burden in the population. The breast cancer families afflicted with mutant BRCA1 or BRCA2 germ-line alleles come to mind here. In fact, the incidence of many commonly occurring cancers, such as breast cancer, may be greatly influenced by heritable genetic factors that strongly increase susceptibility to this disease. An epidemiologic study conducted in Britain of breast cancer incidence in sets of identical twins concluded that a significant proportion, and possibly the majority, of these tumors occur in women who are genetically predisposed to this disease. The genetic factors, whatever their nature, are complex and not strongly penetrant; that is, none, acting on its own, strongly affects disease frequency. Some of these factors could be alleles of DNA repair genes that yield sub-optimal function.

This suspicion comes from biological studies of the normal cells of breast cancer patients and their close relatives. Here is one tantalizing hint among many: in one research study, the lymphocytes of 40% of breast cancer patients showed an abnormally high tendency to develop aberrant karyotypes following exposure to X-rays; only 5 to 10% of individuals in the normal, control population showed this peculiar hypersensitivity. Significantly, the first-degree (close) relatives of the breast cancer patients were far more likely to have these hypersensitive lymphocytes than people in the general population (**Figure S12.3**). These relatives had no obvious disease phenotypes yet clearly carried alleles of caretaker genes that compromised genome maintenance; such still-unidentified genes are highly likely to have played major roles in causing the breast cancers in their families.

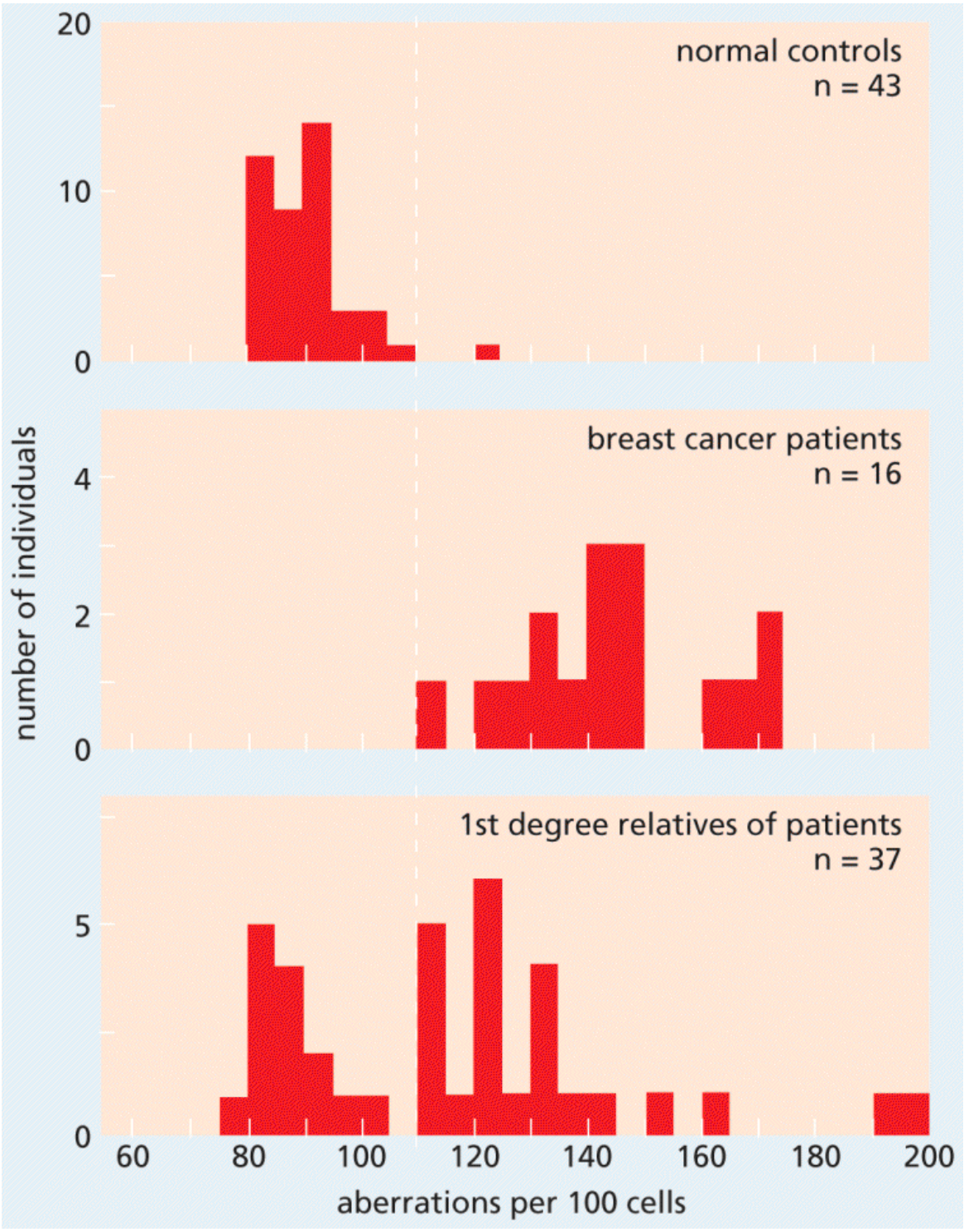


Figure S12.3 DNA repair in lymphocytes of breast cancer patients and their relatives The ability of the DNA repair system to respond to X-ray–induced damage by restoring normal karyotype is one measure of its functioning. In the experiments described here, cultured lymphocytes from

various individuals were exposed to a sublethal dose of radiation (0.5 Gy) and the number of karyotypic aberrations present in 100 irradiated lymphocytes was scored shortly thereafter by trapping cells in metaphase with Colcemid, a microtubule antagonist. (Because the lymphocytes were not associated with the breast cancers and not affected by the somatic mutations that culminated in breast carcinomas, their behavior presumably reflects the germ-line-inherited genetic determinants of DNA repair.) Lymphocytes from healthy individuals (normal controls) developed 80–100 aberrations per 100 irradiated cells, whereas the lymphocytes from breast cancer patients developed 110–165 aberrations per 100 cells. Significantly, the first-degree (close) relatives of these patients showed either normal or greatly reduced ability to repair these breaks, the latter indicating the effects of strongly penetrant alleles of fully unknown genes that are transmitted in the families of the breast cancer patients. (From S.A. Roberts et al., *Am. J. Hum. Genet.* 65:784–794, 1999. With permission from Elsevier.)

Another striking finding comes from a study of 1071 breast cancer patients who had a familial history of the disease but carried normal BRCA1/BRCA2 alleles; in this case, researchers looked at the configuration of another gene implicated in DNA repair but not known to contribute to inborn susceptibility to breast cancer —*CHK2*; this gene encodes a kinase that is activated after X-ray–induced DNA damage and is responsible for activating, in turn, p53, among other targets (see Section 9.7). The DNAs of these patients were compared with those of 1620 healthy controls. In the patient group, 5.1% of the women and 13.5% of the men (who suffered from male breast cancer, an especially aggressive disease) had inherited a faulty version of CHK2 compared with 1.1% of the individuals in the control group. Observations like these suggest that mutant alleles of a number of other genes involved in genome maintenance will one day be discovered to be influential in determining breast cancer susceptibility and, quite possibly, a tendency to develop other common types of cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

multipotent
: Referring to the ability of a stem cell to differentiate into multiple distinct cell types. *See also* **totipotent**, **pluripotent**.

xenobiotic
: (n., adj.) A chemical species that originates outside of the body of an organism and is foreign to its normal metabolism.

myelodysplastic syndrome
: Hyperproliferative condition of cells of the myeloid lineage in the bone marrow which often progresses to acute myelogenous leukemia.

ligase
: An enzyme that covalently joins two molecules together; in the context of DNA, ligases join the 3′ end of one ssDNA to the 5′ end of another other via a phosphodiester linkage.

heterochromatinization
: The process whereby euchromatin is converted to heterochromatin, notably that occurring during the process of X-chromosome inactivation.

OceanofPDF.com

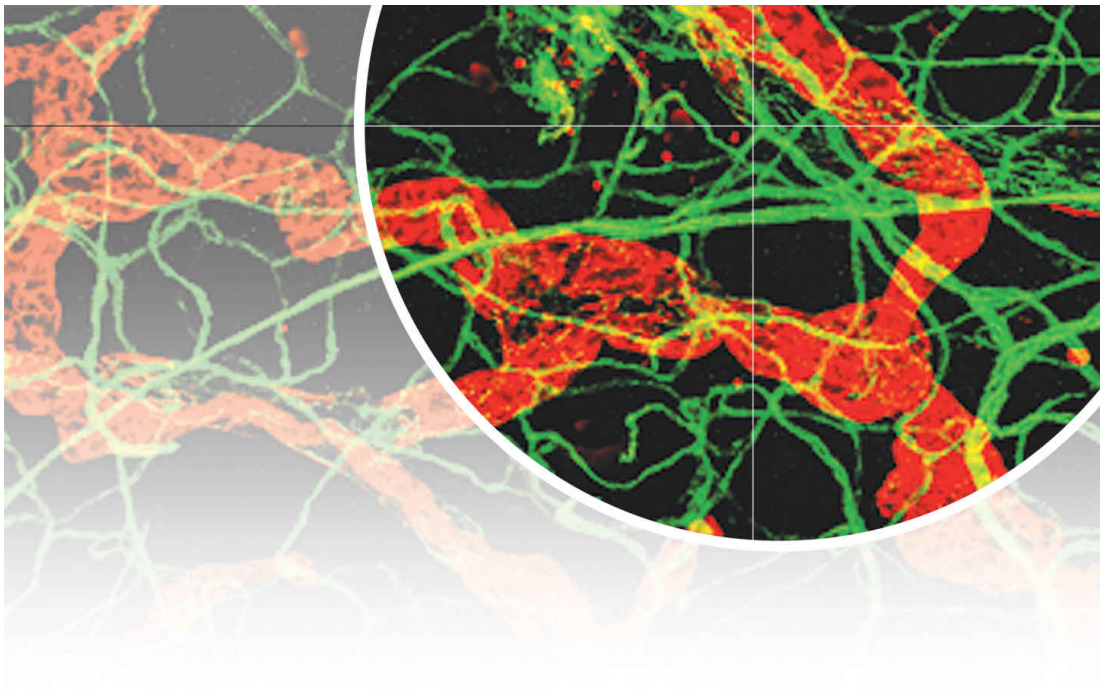
Footnotes

- aHumans with heritable compromised BUBR1 function suffer the cancer predisposition syndrome termed mosaic variegated aneuploidy. Mice with inherited BUB1 and BUBR1 insufficiency are also cancer prone under certain conditions.Return to reference a
- aHumans with heritable compromised BUBR1 function suffer the cancer predisposition syndrome termed mosaic variegated aneuploidy. Mice with inherited BUB1 and BUBR1 insufficiency are also cancer prone under certain conditions.Return to reference a
- bMAD1 and MAD2 form complexes at the kinetochore that prevent chromatid separation until complexes with spindle fibers have been properly formed. *MAD1*$^{+/-}$ mouse heterogyzotes develop a variety of tumors.Return to reference b
- bMAD1 and MAD2 form complexes at the kinetochore that prevent chromatid separation until complexes with spindle fibers have been properly formed. *MAD1*$^{+/-}$ mouse heterogyzotes develop a variety of tumors.Return to reference b
- cThe *Mad2* gene is transcriptionally repressed in a number of solid tumors and is frequently mutated in gastric carcinomas. Mice that are heterozygous at the *Mad2* locus (i.e., are *Mad2*$^{+/-}$) develop lung cancers as adults, whereas those that overexpress wild-type MAD2 protein develop a variety of malignancies.Return to reference c
- dPremature entrance into anaphase can lead to loss of entire chromosomes.Return to reference d
- dPremature entrance into anaphase can lead to loss of entire chromosomes.Return to reference d
- e*Chfr*$^{+/-}$ mice develop lymphomas early in life and carcinomas of the liver, lung, and gastrointestinal tract later in life.Return to reference e
- e*Chfr*$^{+/-}$ mice develop lymphomas early in life and carcinomas of the liver, lung, and gastrointestinal tract later in life.Return to reference e
- fNondisjunction is the failure of sister chromatids to separate at anaphase.Return to reference f
- gAnaphase-promoting complex.Return to reference g

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 13

Dialogue Replaces Monologue: Heterotypic Interactions and the Biology of Angiogenesis



A fluorescence microscopy image of blood capillaries, shown in green, and larger, less numerous lymph ducts, shown in red-orange.

Simple ideas are wrong. Complicated ideas are unattainable.

Paul Valéry, poet, 1942

Tumors: wounds that do not heal.

Harold Dvorak, 1986

A simple and powerful conceptual paradigm pervades most of the previous discussions in this book: cancer is a disease of cells, and the phenotypes of cancer cells can be

understood by examining the genes and proteins within them. The origins of this idea are clear, being traceable directly back to bacterial and yeast genetics. These two research specialties thrived because they were well served by the postulate that cell genotype determines all aspects of cell phenotype. Indeed, virtually all the attributes of individual bacterial and yeast cells could be shown to derive directly from the genes that these microorganisms carry in their genomes.

Applying this concept to metazoans and their tissues has had obvious advantages for biologists. Metazoan organisms are complex almost beyond measure, and this complexity has frequently prevented researchers from extracting simple and irrefutable truths about organismic function. In response, many researchers, notably molecular biologists, cell biologists, and biochemists, embraced the credo of reductionist science: when working with complex systems, the best way to arrive at solid and rigorous conclusions is to take apart these systems into simpler, more tractable components and study each separately. Although the lessons learned may relate only to small parts of very large systems, at least these lessons are solid and definitive and will not require substantial revision each time a new generation of researchers revisits these complex systems and their component parts.

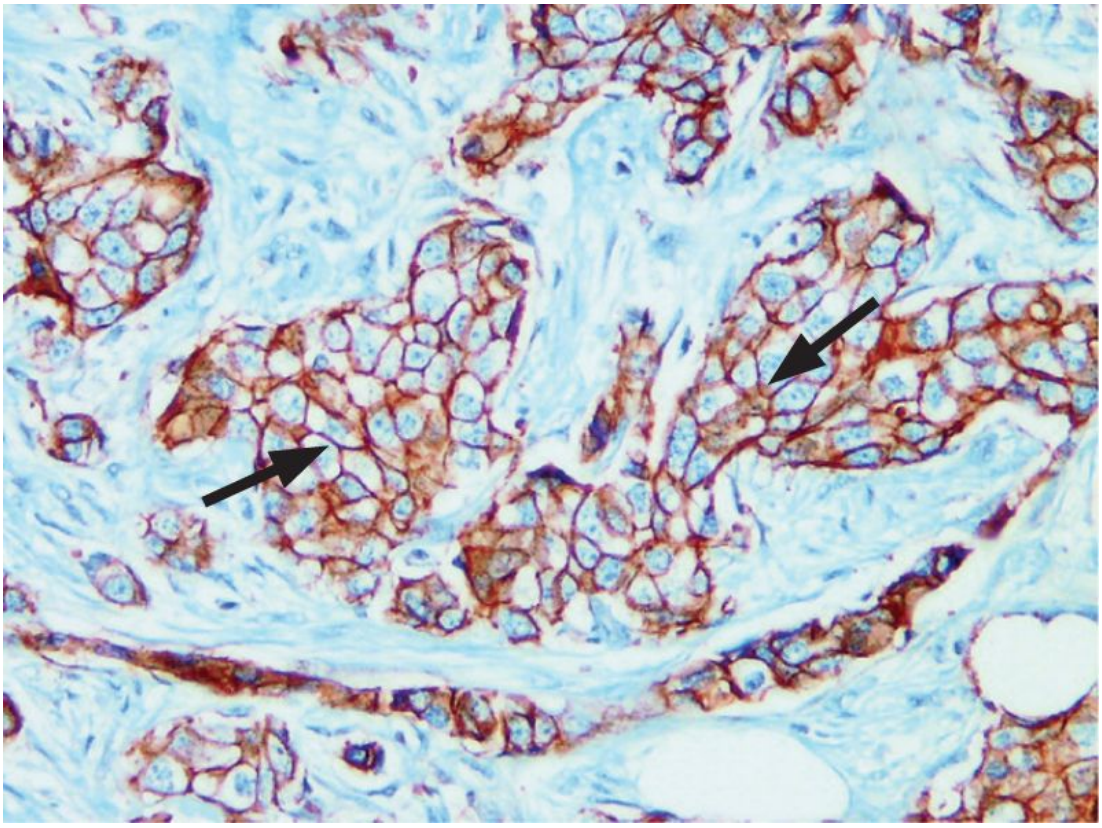
Such reductionism has allowed many areas of cancer research to thrive. Witness the progress described in the early chapters of this textbook: when the first proto-oncogene was discovered three-quarters of the way through the twentieth century (see Sections 3.8 and 3.9), almost nothing was known about the genetics and molecular biology of cancer. By the end of the century, information was available in abundance about how cancers begin and progress to highly aggressive, malignant states. Much of this avalanche of information came from taking the reductionist paradigm to its limits—disassembling normal and neoplastic tissues into component cells and the cells into component molecules.

In the case of cancer research, the reductionist pact was extended in another direction as well: all of the traits of a tumor can be traced directly back to the behavior of its constituent cancer cells. Their behavior, if well understood, could be used to deduce that of the tumor as a whole.

By the end of the twentieth century, it became increasingly clear that many of the traits of tumors could not in fact be traced directly back to individual cancer cells and the genes they carry. The grand simplifications agreed upon a generation earlier by cancer researchers had begun to lose their utility. Increasingly, evidence turned up that cancer is actually a disease of tissues, in particular, the complex tissues that we call tumors.

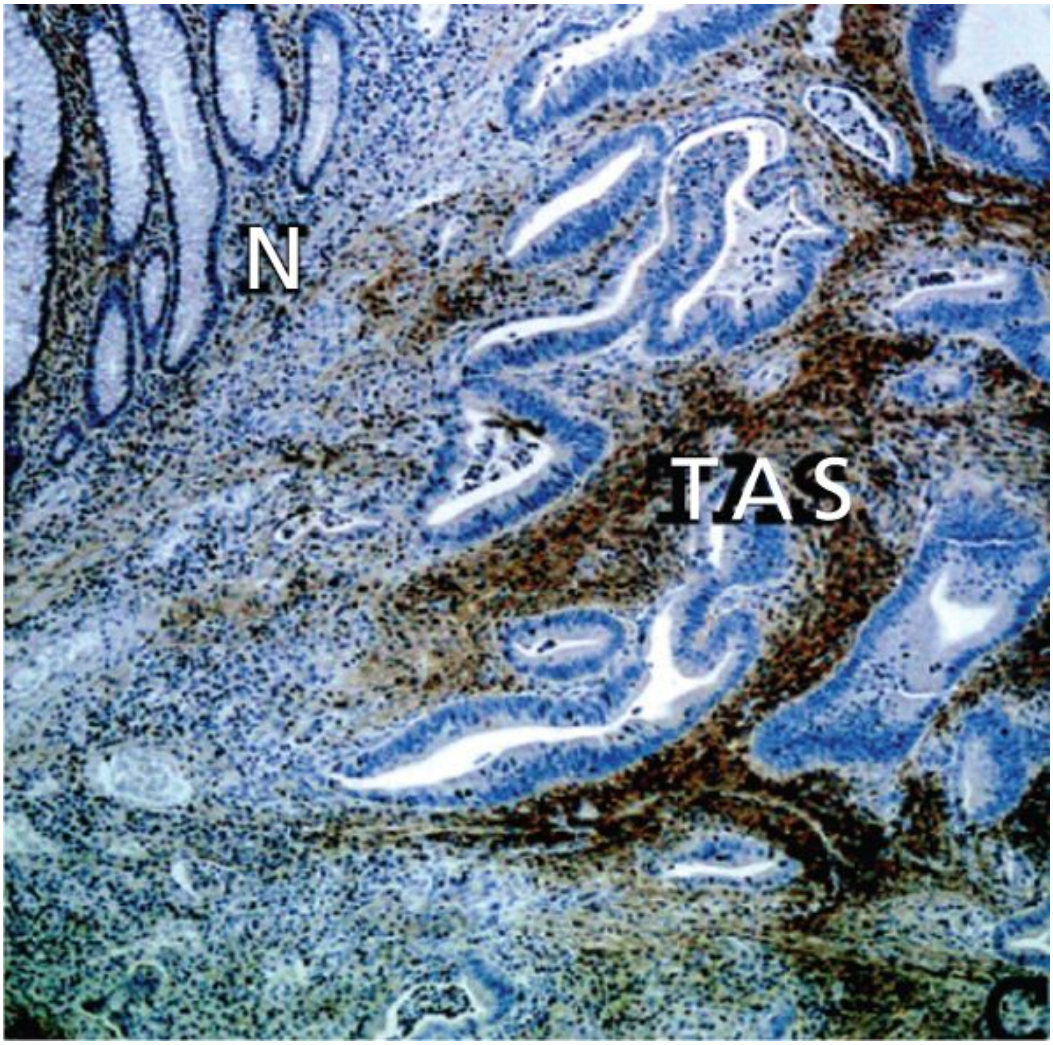
The reductionists' way of thinking had, all along, denied certain realities that clinical oncologists and pathologists confronted on a daily basis, namely, that carcinomas—which constitute more than 80% of the human cancer burden—derive from epithelial

tissues of very complex microscopic structure. Histopathological characterizations of these epithelial tumors reveal that they are composed of a number of distinct cell types (**Figure 13.1**).



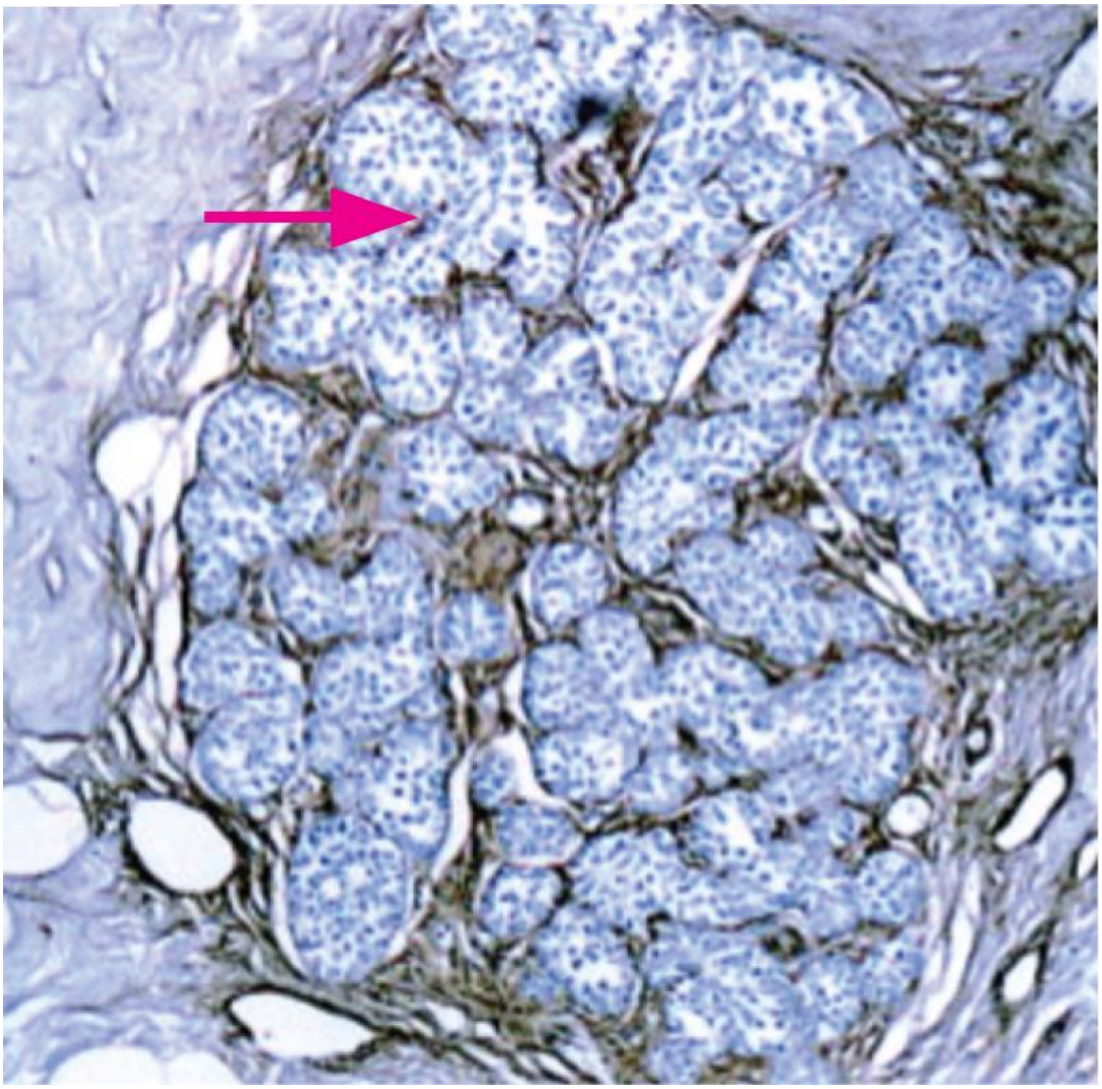
A histology image. Scattered clusters of brown cells with light blue nuclei are surrounded by light blue cells with light blue nuclei.

(A)



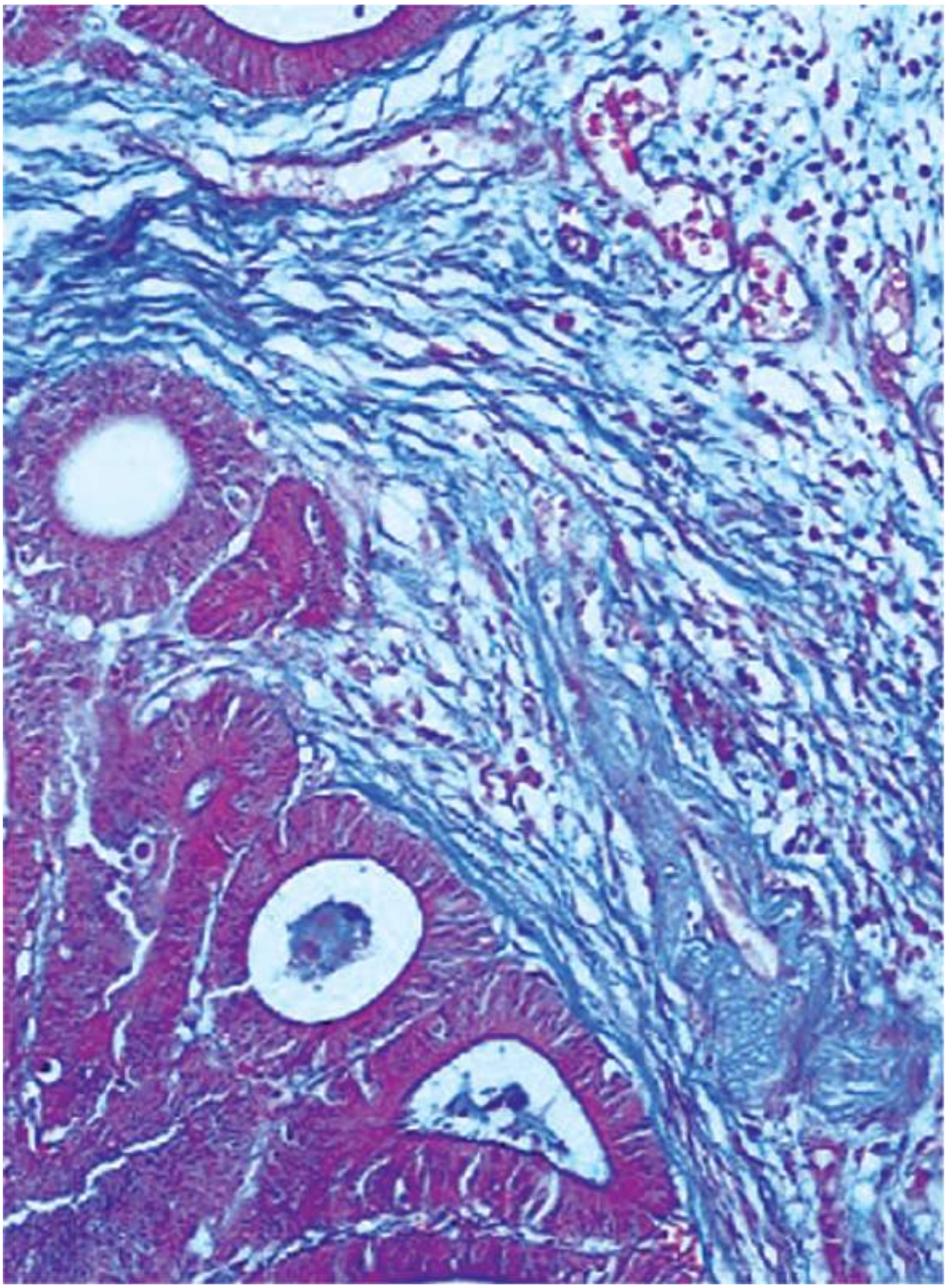
A histology image. The left part of the image, labeled N, is filled with cells stained medium blue and blue-green. On the right is a region labeled T A S, containing ducts lined with borders of cells stained deep blue. The cells between the ducts are stained dark brown.

(B)



A histology image. A mass of what looks like adipose tissue consists mostly of clumps of light blue and white cells. The thin spaces between the clumps are dark brown.

(C)



A histology image. There are large clumps of magenta cells with white centers in the bottom left, while the rest of the space is occupied by flowing light blue cells with small magenta dots.

(D)

Figure 13.1 Stromal components of several commonly occurring carcinomas
As is shown here, a variety of common carcinomas contain significant proportions of both epithelial cancer cells and recruited stromal cells. (A) A high-grade invasive ductal carcinoma of the breast, in which the membranes (*arrows*) of the epithelial cells are stained *brown*, and the nuclei of the stromal cells are *light blue*. (B) A colon carcinoma (*right side*) and normal colonic mucosa (N, *left side*), in which fibroblast-like cells in the tumor-associated stroma (TAS) are immunostained *dark brown* for PINCH (a protein associated with the cytoplasmic tails of integrins), and the nuclei of epithelial cancer cells lining ducts are *light blue*. (C) A lobular carcinoma *in situ* of the breast showing small clusters of cancer cells (*light blue nuclei*, arrow) surrounded by thin layers of stromal fibroblasts that have been immunostained for PINCH antigen (*dark brown*). (D) An adenocarcinoma of the stomach in which the cancer cells (*purple*, *lower left)* are adjacent to extensive stroma, which has been stained for collagen (*blue).* (A, from A. Gupta, C.G. Deshpande and S. Badve, *Cancer* 97:2341–2347, 2003. B and C, from J. Wang-Rodriguez et al., *Cancer* 95:1387–1395, 2002. D, from S. Ohno et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 97:770–774, 2002. All with permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

One's first instinct is to dismiss the non-neoplastic cells forming the tumor stroma as distracting contaminants that confound rather than illuminate one's understanding of the biology of tumors. To do so now seems increasingly unwise. Recent research results make it clear that non-neoplastic cells, notably the stromal cells of carcinomas, are active, indeed essential collaborators of the neoplastic epithelial cells within tumor masses, having been recruited and then exploited by the cancer cells. The biology of these recruited cells now appears to be almost as important as that of the neoplastic cells in enabling the growth of tumors.

Consequently, the disease of cancer is far more than cancer cells talking to themselves in endless monologues. We know, instead, that in most tumors, the neoplastic cells are in continuous communication with non-neoplastic host cells. In this chapter, we focus largely on these nearby signaling channels and explain how they affect the fate of incipient tumors and thus the course of clinical cancer development. At the same time, realizing the presence of non-neoplastic stromal cells in the life of a tumor, we can refine our vocabulary: "carcinoma cells" are neoplastic and cancerous, whereas "tumor cells" includes both the neoplastic and non-neoplastic cells within a mass (**Sidebar 13.1**).

Sidebar 13.1 Tumor cells assemble complex signaling networks

This depiction of the interactions of cancer cells with host tissues only responds to those interactions operating within the boundaries of individual tumors, that is, between the neoplastic cells and the nearby tumor-associated stroma. In fact, an equally important set of interactions should be included in these discussions: tumor cells often release signals that perturb distant tissues in the host, thereby leading to systemic changes in host physiology. (Accordingly, such signaling represents *endocrine* signaling channels rather than the *paracrine* signaling that operates between nearby cells within individual tissues.) By calling in host cells from various reservoirs in the body—largely the bone marrow—tumors can affect their own ability to invade and metastasize and even evade elimination by components of the host immune system, a topic that is covered in depth in Chapters 15 and 16.

Tumors can affect distant tissues, yielding a set of responses termed paraneoplastic syndromes. Thus, some neuroendocrine tumors release hormones that profoundly perturb normal systemic physiology. Other tumors carry antigens that provoke the synthesis of strong auto-reactive antibodies; once formed, the resulting antibodies can then attack a variety of tissues throughout the body, including the brain, yielding in the latter case diverse neurological symptoms. Indeed, these symptoms are often first indication of a previously undiagnosed tumor.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

reductionism
: A scientific philosophy and research strategy that involves the study of individual, relatively simple components or subsystems of complex systems rather than the systems as a whole.

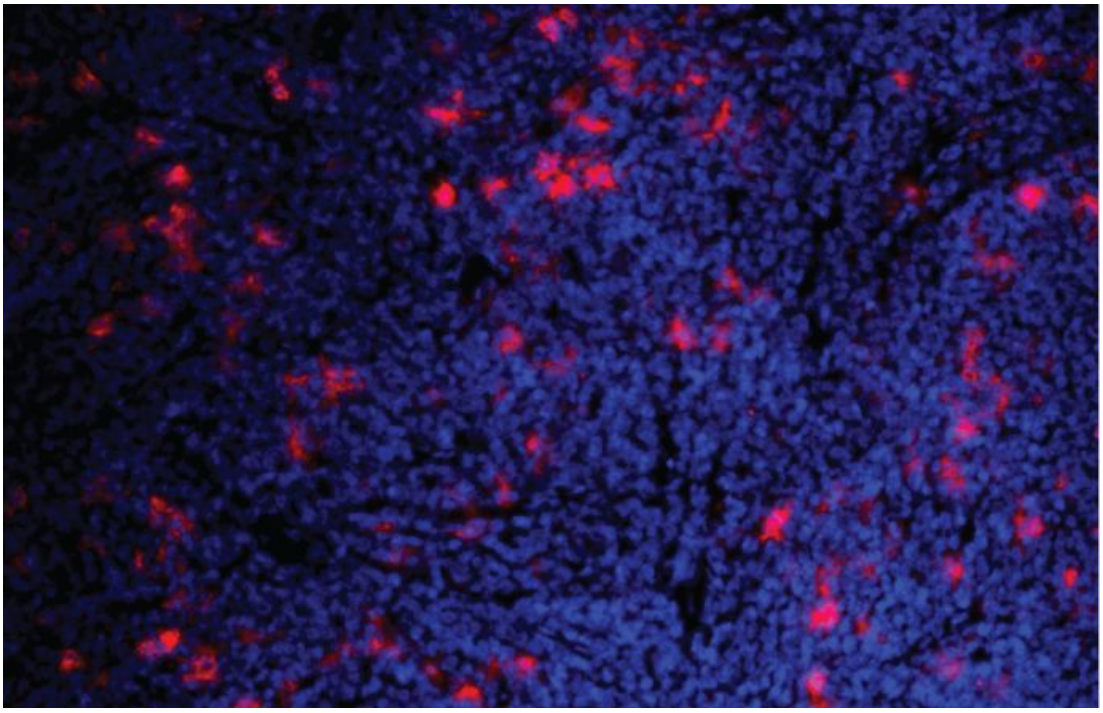
paraneoplastic
: Referring to a biological effect evoked in the body by a tumor at a site in the body that is located some distance from the tumor itself and is apparently not directly involved in the pathogenesis of the tumor.

OceanofPDF.com

13.1 Normal and neoplastic epithelial tissues are formed from interdependent cell types

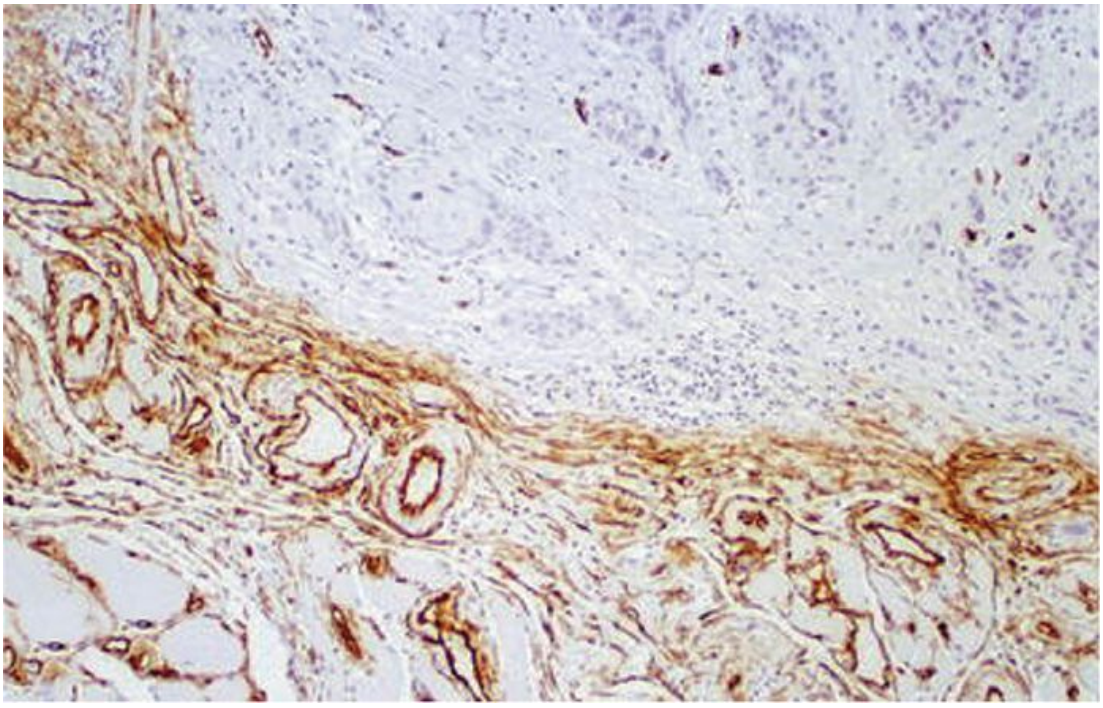
In fact, even cursory examinations under the microscope indicate that most carcinomas are as complex histologically as the normal epithelial tissues from which they have arisen. In some cases of commonly occurring carcinomas, such as those of the breast, colon, stomach, and pancreas, the non-neoplastic cells, which together constitute the tumor stroma, may account for as many as 90% of the cells within the tumor mass.

The true complexity of the stroma of epithelial cancers becomes apparent only at high magnification under the microscope **Figure 13.2**. In addition to the neoplastic epithelial (that is, carcinoma) cells, a number of stromal cell types populate the tumor. These stromal cells include fibroblasts, myofibroblasts, endothelial cells, pericytes, adipocytes, macrophages, lymphocytes, and mast cells; not shown are the extensions of neurons that thread their way through the bulk of tumor masses. Because most of these cell types constitute only a relatively small proportion of the stroma of many tumors, their presence, when viewed microscopically, becomes apparent only through use of immunostaining with antibodies that bind cell type–specific antigens. Use of immunostaining allows the localization of some of these cell types, as seen in Figure 13.2. Often the stroma of a tumor is depicted as the tumor microenvironment (TME, TMEN), with the implication that this collection of cells, having been recruited in various ways to the tumor-associated stroma, thereafter conditions the surroundings of the neoplastic cells and thereby influences growth of the tumor as a whole in various ways.



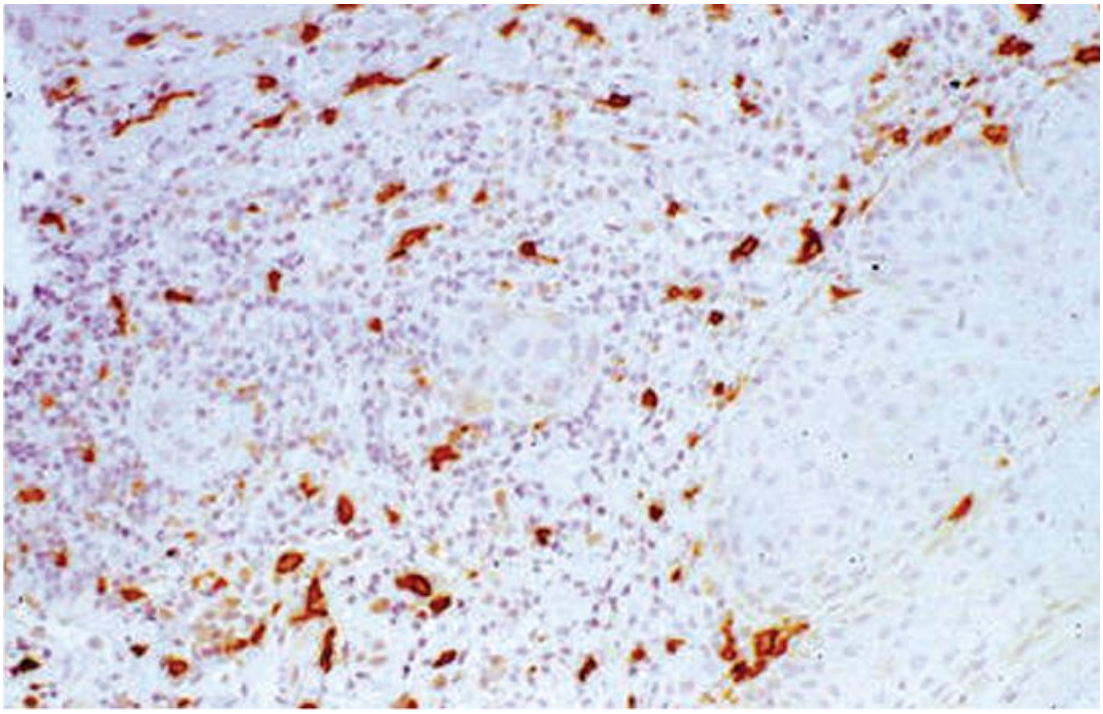
A fluorescence microscopy image. Interspersed among many densely packed dark blue patches are scattered bright red patches.

(A)



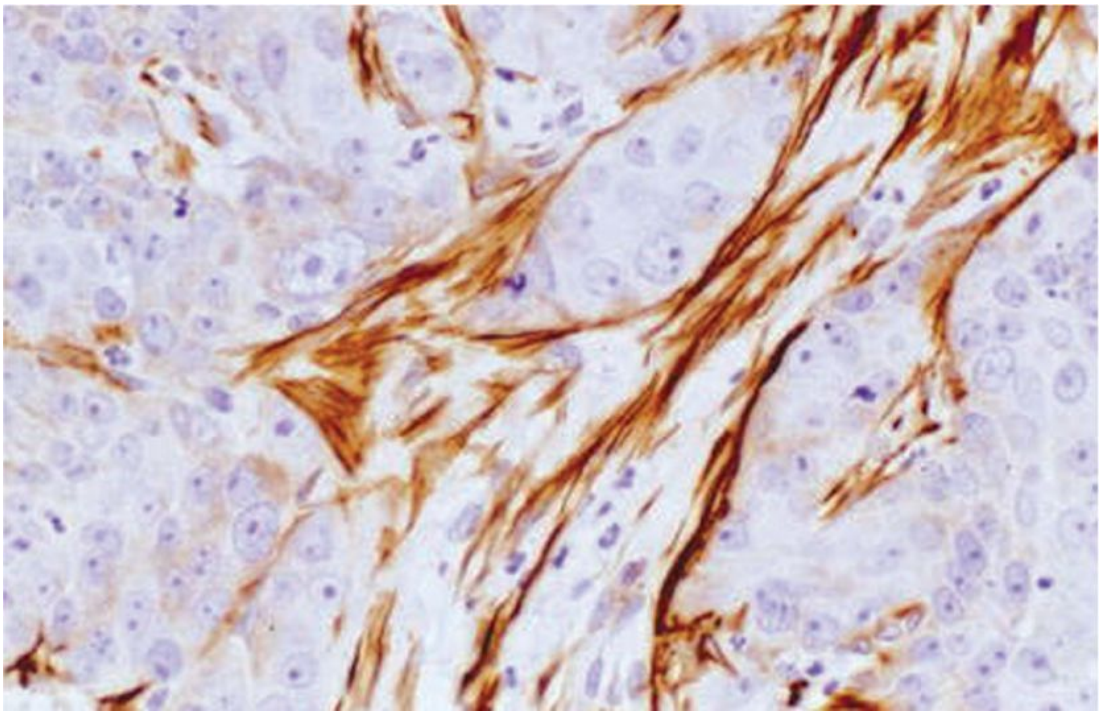
A histology stain. Cells in the lower part of the image have a brown, swirled pattern. Cells in the upper part of the image are pale blue and scattered.

(B)



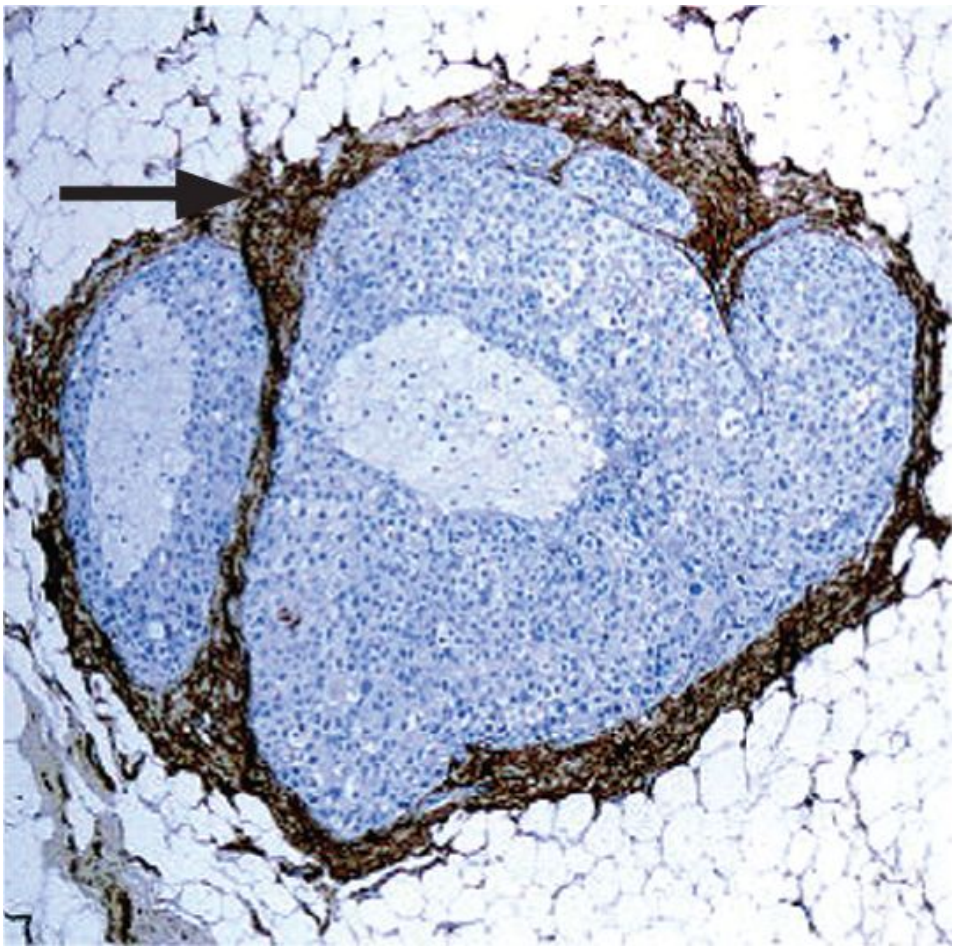
A histology stain. Most of the nuclei are stained a pale bluish pink, but dark brown flecks dot the image.

(C)



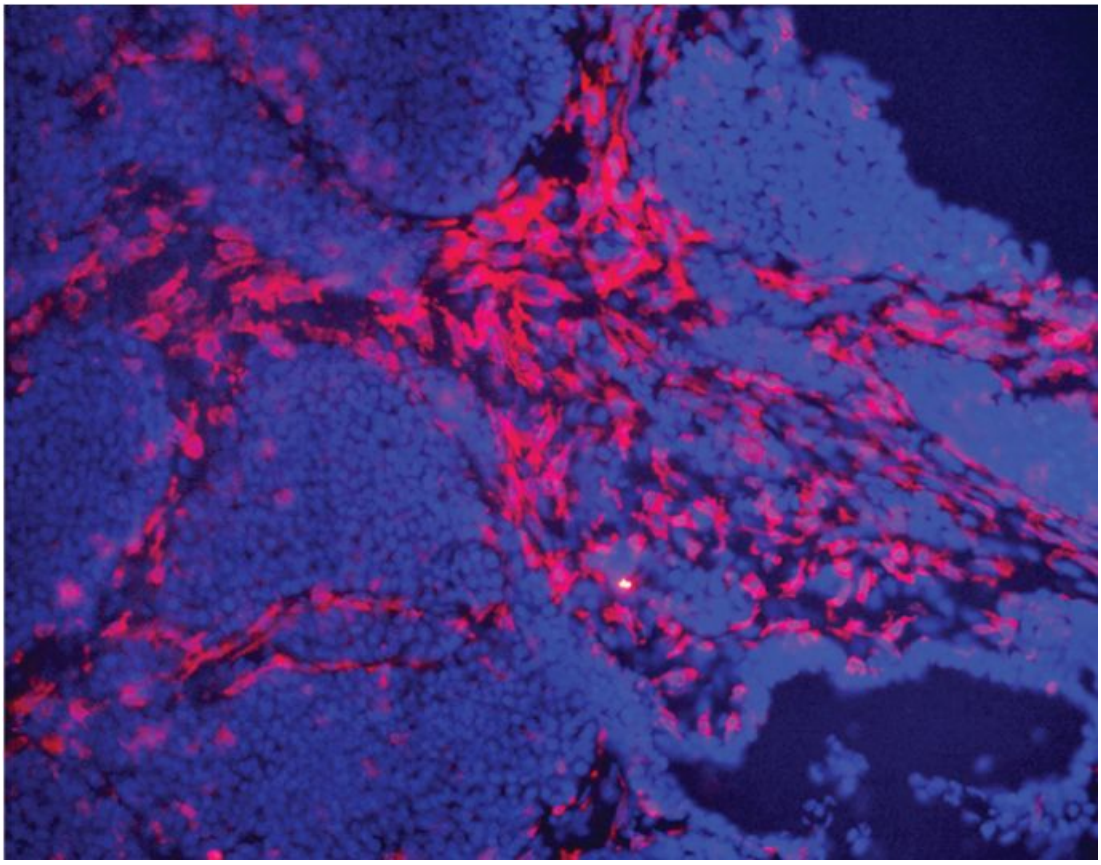
A histology stain. Most of the nuclei are stained a pale bluish pink, but dark brown streak-like fibers run diagonally across the image.

(D)



A histology stain. Two small regions of cells stained light blue are surrounded by larger regions of cells stained darker blue. These two larger regions, in turn, are encased as one in a sheath of cells stained gray-black. This clump of tissue is surrounded by large cells stained pale blue.

(E)



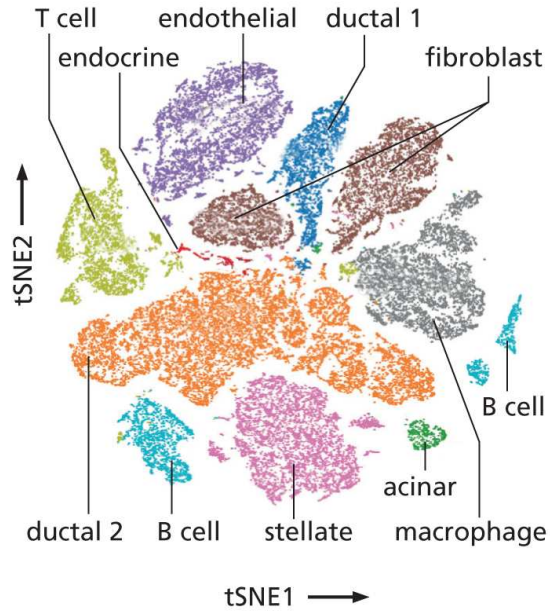
A fluorescence microscopy image. Clumps of dark blue and bright red streaks flow throughout the image in curved lines and patterns over a lighter blue background.

(F)

Figure 13.2 A variety of distinct cell types in the stroma of carcinomas Various antibodies can be used to immunostain specific mesenchymal cell types in the stroma of carcinomas. (A) CD4 antigen–positive T lymphocytes, often termed helper T cells (*red*), are scattered among mouse mammary carcinoma cells (*blue-purple nuclei*). The stroma of squamous cell carcinomas of the oral cavity, pharynx, and larynx may contain (B) CD34 antigen–positive fibrocytes (*brown*), (C) CD117 antigen–positive mast cells (*brown*), and (D) α-smooth muscle actin–positive myofibroblasts (*brown*). (E) The stroma of a ductal carcinoma *in situ* of the breast (DCIS) shows PINCH antigen–positive fibroblasts (*dark brown*; see Figure 13.1B) arrayed in a ring immediately around the carcinoma (*arrow*) and surrounded, in turn, by adipocytes (*light blue rims*). (F) Macrophages (*red*), which have been recruited to a mouse mammary carcinoma, play critical roles in tumor invasiveness and angiogenesis. (A and F, from D.G. DeNardo et al., *Cancer Cell* 16:91–102, 2009. With permission from Elsevier. B, C, and D, from P.J. Barth et

al., *Virchows Arch*. 444:231–234, 2004. With permission from Springer. E, from J. Wang-Rodriguez et al., *Cancer* 95:1387–1395, 2002. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

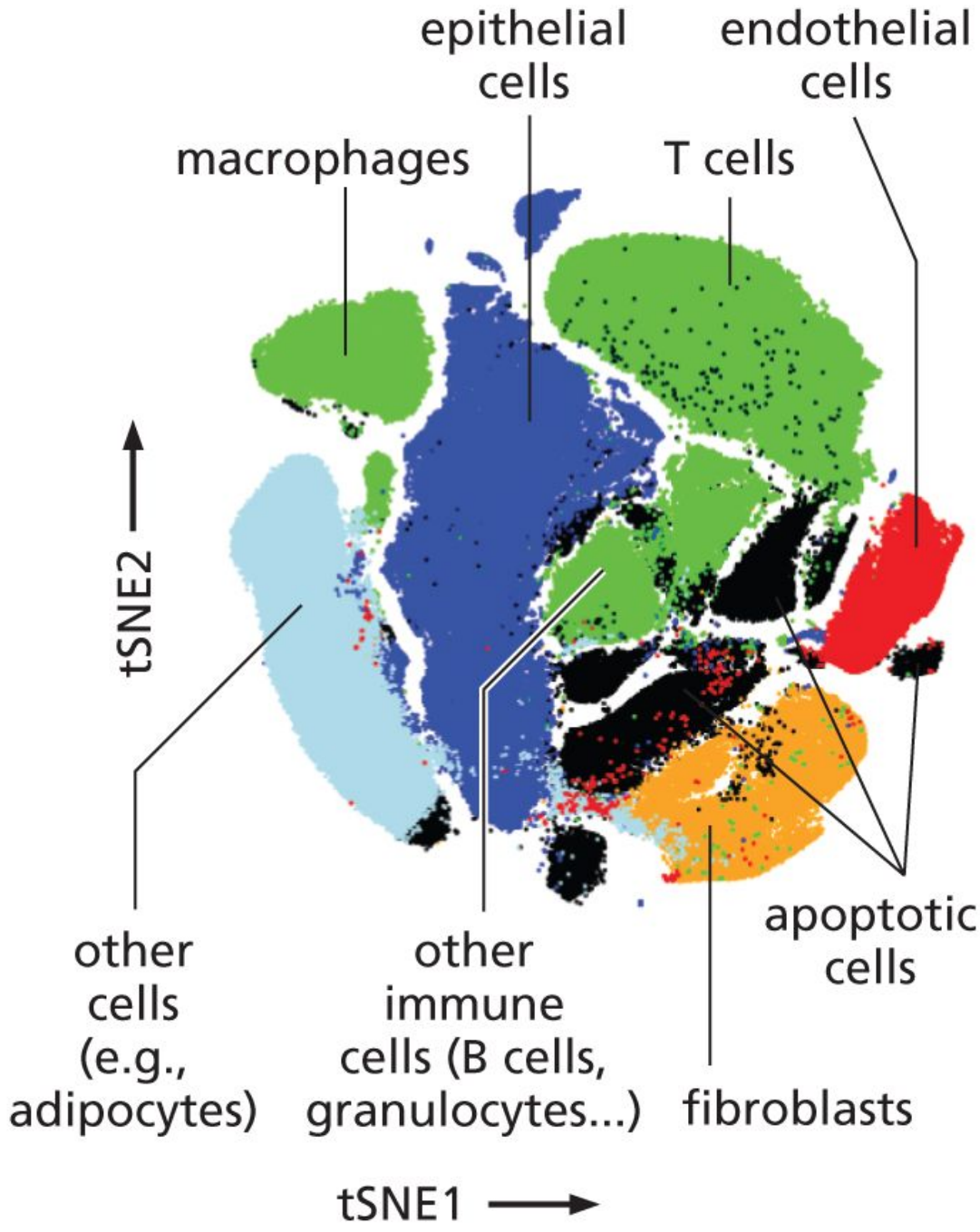
This impression of cellular complexity provided by Figure 13.2 is reinforced by the techniques of typing multiple antigens expressed in single cells as well as single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq) in which distinct cell types are identified by the antigens or the transcriptomes that they express (**Figure 13.3**).



cell type	no. of cells	percentage
ductal cell 1	2,646	6.30%
ductal cell 2	11,315	26.95%
acinar cell	512	1.22%
endocrine cell	459	1.09%
endothelial cell	5,134	12.23%
fibroblast	5,802	13.82%
stellate cell	5,282	12.59%
macrophage	4,802	11.44%
T cell	3,616	8.61%
B cell	2,416	5.75%

A two dimensional map of the different cell types within a tumor, with a horizontal t S N E 1 axis and a vertical t S N E 2 axis. At the center of the tumor is a large mass of ductal type 2 cells, representing about 27 percent of the tumor. Other cell types include ductal 1, acinar, endocrine, endothelial, fibroblast, stellate, macrophage, T cell, and B cell.

(A)



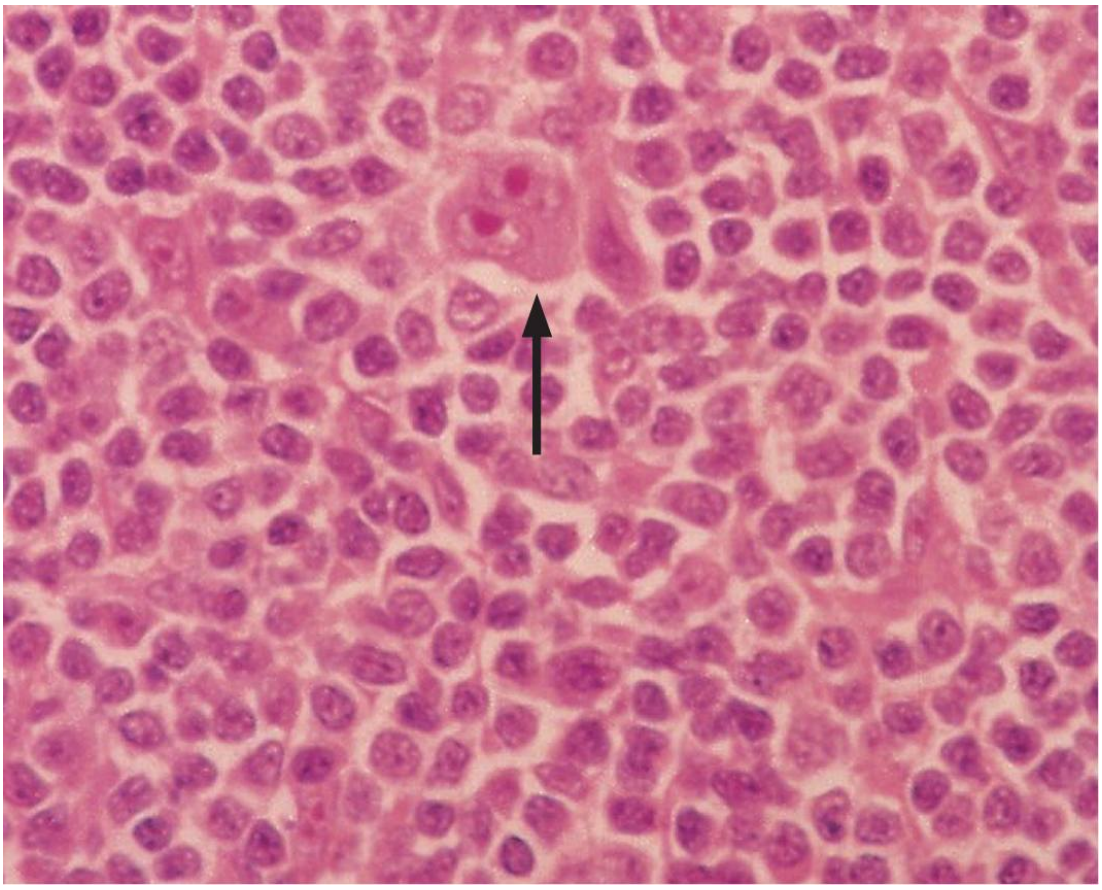
A two dimensional map of the different cell types within a tumor, with a horizontal t S N E 1 axis and a vertical t S N E 2 axis. Epithelial cells and T cells account for the largest percentages of the tumor. Other types include endothelial, macrophage, apoptotic, fibroblast, immune cells such as B cells and granulocytes, and other cells such as adipocytes.

(B)

Figure 13.3 Analyses of single cells enables surveys of the cellular complexity within tumors Techniques have been developed to analyze both the RNA and protein contents of single cells, making it possible to survey the entire contents of a tumor mass cell by cell. Results in both cases are plotted in 2 dimensions using the t-distributed stochastic neighbor embedding (t-SNE) algorithm, which allows multidimensional data to be plotted in 2 or 3 dimensions. (A) The intra-tumoral cellular heterogeneity has been surveyed here in a sample of a human malignant pancreatic adenocarcinoma, in this case from 57,530 individual cells whose RNA transcripts were analyzed by the procedure of single-cell RNA-seq (scRNAseq). In this analysis, two subtypes of pancreatic epithelial cells lining the ducts (ductal cells) are distinguished, as well as a class of acinar exocrine cells that are responsible for generating and secreting the digestive enzymes made by the pancreas. The endocrine cells include the components of the pancreatic islets that are described in a mouse model of pancreatic islet cells carcinogenesis in Figure 13.35. (B) The expression of 73 distinct protein species in 58,000 human breast tumor cells was examined by using cognate monoclonal antibodies to detect individual protein species followed by mass spectrometry to identify the representation of the individual antigen species that were assigned, in turn, to specific cell types. (A, J. Peng, B.F. Sun, C.Y. Chen et al. *Cell Res*. 29:725–738, 2019. With permission from Nature. B, from J. Wagner, M.A. Rapsomaniki, S. Chevrier et al. *Cell* 177:1330–1345, 2019. With permission from Elsevier.)

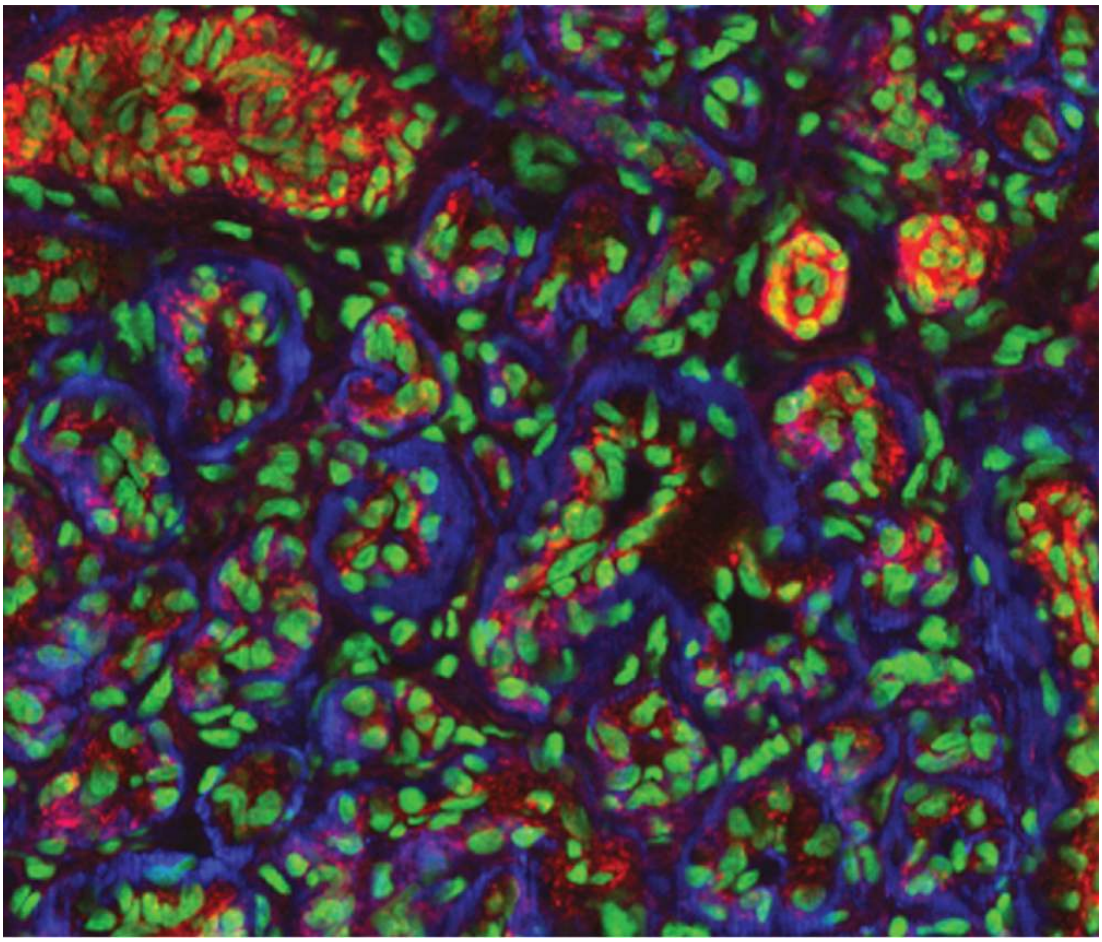
An additional dimension of complexity comes from the great variations in the proportions of various bone marrow–derived cell types within the stroma of different tumor types. As we will see in this chapter and the next, some of these cells are active participants in processes such as tumor cell invasiveness and metastatic spread; yet others may be dispatched by the immune system to eliminate tumor cells. In light of the important functions that these infiltrating cells can exert, we can imagine that they may contribute in major ways to the distinctive traits exhibited by various types of carcinomas.

[These examples fail to illustrate the great range of variations that are encountered in various types of non-carcinomatous human tumors. At one end of the spectrum is another solid tumor—Hodgkin's disease—a lymphoma in which non-neoplastic cells account for 99% of the cells in a tumor mass (**Figure 13.4A**). At the other end are tumors such as the hemangioma, a relatively common benign tumor of the endothelial cells (Figure 13.4B), in which neoplastic cells form the great bulk of the tumor mass. In what follows, we focus largely on carcinomas, in which the epithelial and stromal cells are often present in comparable numbers.]



A pink histology image in which a single, large abnormal cell is surrounded by several hundred smaller normal cells.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image in which hundreds of green nuclei appear against a background of blue and red.

(B)

Figure 13.4 Extreme variations in the ratio of neoplastic cells to stroma (A) In certain tumors, normal, non-neoplastic cells may constitute the great majority of living cells. An extreme form of this is illustrated here by Hodgkin's disease, a lymphoma in which as many as 99% of the cells are recruited normal lymphocytes, which surround a rare neoplastic Reed–Sternberg cell (*arrow*). (B) At the other end of the spectrum are tumors such as the benign hemangioma shown here, in which neoplastic endothelial cells (*green nuclei*) form the great bulk of the tumor mass, which is demarcated by basement membranes (*blue-purple*) and occasional capillaries (*red*). (A, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier. B, from M.R. Ritter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 99:7455–7460, 2002. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

Most of the diverse cell types forming the tumor-associated stroma are members of several mesodermal cell lineages that generate both connective tissue and various types of immunocytes in the blood and immune tissues, and therefore are biologically very different from the epithelial cells whose transformation drives the growth of carcinomas. (In the case of nonepithelial tumors such as sarcomas, where the cancer cells are themselves of mesodermal origin, the boundaries between the neoplastic cell compartment and the non-neoplastic cells within the tumor mass have never been clearly delineated.)

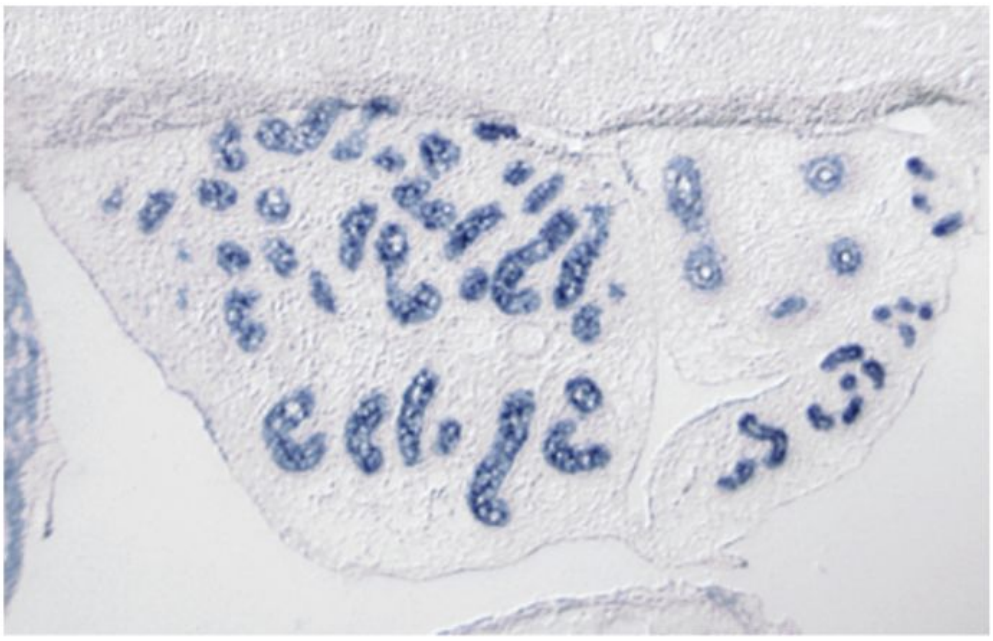
In the absence of other information, we might explain the presence of these various stromal cell types within a carcinoma in two ways. They might represent the remnants of cells that resided in the stroma of a tissue before tumor development began. During the subsequent expansion of the tumor cell population, groups of cancer cells may have inserted themselves between these preexisting normal stromal cell layers, thereby generating the richly textured tissues that are seen when most carcinomas are examined microscopically.

The alternative explanation for the presence of these numerous stromal cells is more intriguing and is likely to be the correct one for the great majority of tumors as suggested above. The rationale behind this second model depends on our current understanding of how normal, architecturally complex tissues develop and maintain their structure and function. In such tissues, the proper proportions of the various component cells must depend on the continuous intercommunication between them. These interactions involve multiple distinct cell types, each following its own particular differentiation program. Such communication between dissimilar cell types is termed heterotypic signaling and is used by each cell type to encourage or limit the proliferation of the other types of cells nearby.

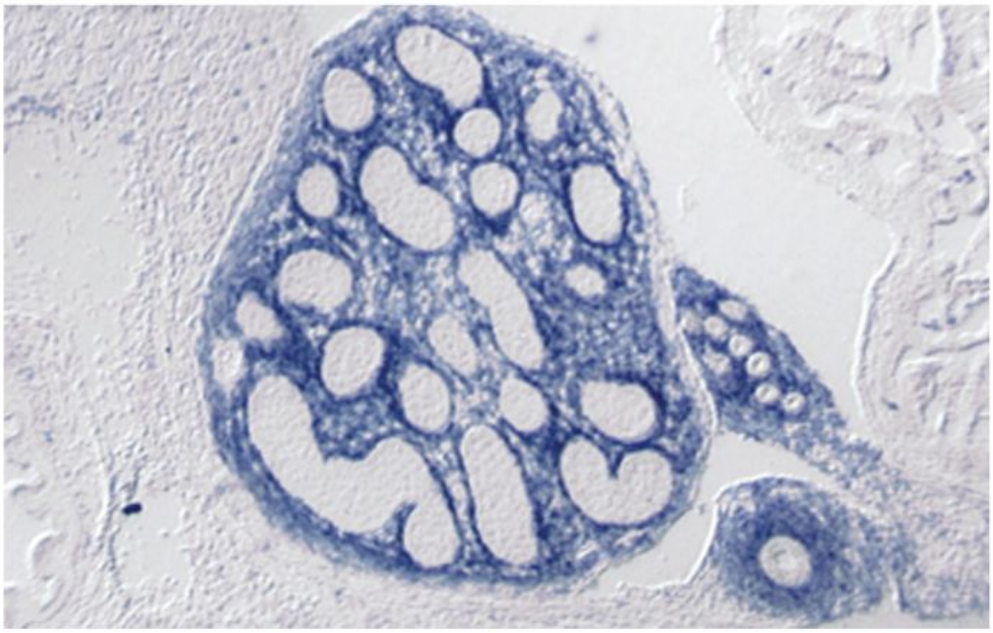
Extending this thinking, we might speculate that many of the heterotypic interactions operating in normal tissues continue to play important roles in the biology of the tumors arising in these tissues. This would suggest that, like normal epithelial cells, carcinoma cells continue to control the populations of stromal cells near them, perhaps by recruiting the latter from nearby normal tissues and distant bone marrow, and then encouraging their proliferation. Operating in the other direction, stromal cells also influence epithelial cell proliferation and survival in the tumor mass.

In normal tissues, these heterotypic signaling channels depend in large part on the exchange of (1) mitogenic growth factors, such as hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α), and platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); (2) growth-inhibitory signals, such as transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β); and (3) trophic factors, such as insulin-like growth factor-1 and -2 (IGF-1 and -2), which favor cell survival. Although these factors are secreted into the extracellular space, they usually act over short distances between nearby cells (**Figure 13.5**) and their

localization within the interstitial spaces between cells is likely to be critically important to their functions (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.1**).



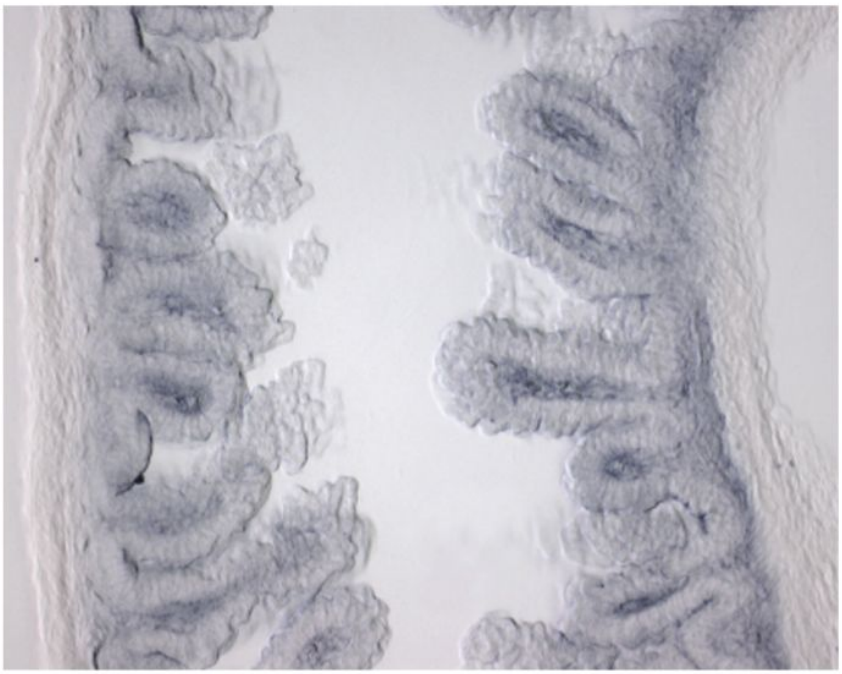
PDGF-A (ligand)



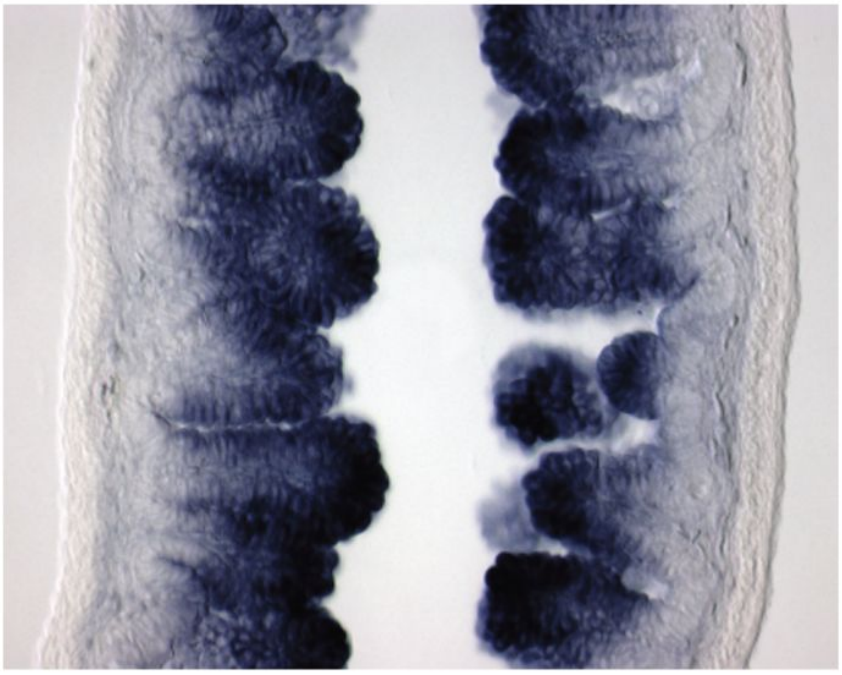
PDGF-Rα (receptor)

A micrograph, labeled P D G F-A (ligand), of a trapezoidal piece of white embryonic mouse testes tissue with blue, wormlike structures in the left portion and along the right edge. There are also rounded structures in the center right portion. Below that is a micrograph, labeled P D G F-R alpha (receptor), of a pear-shaped blue structure with many white holes.

(A)



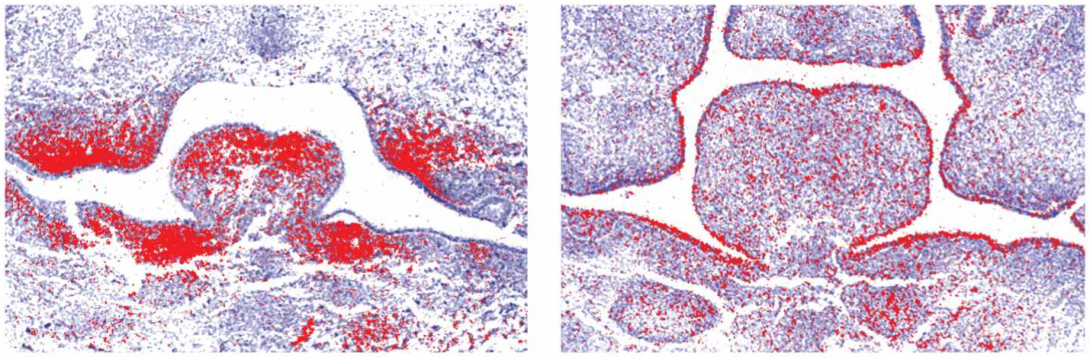
HGF/SF (ligand)



Met (receptor)

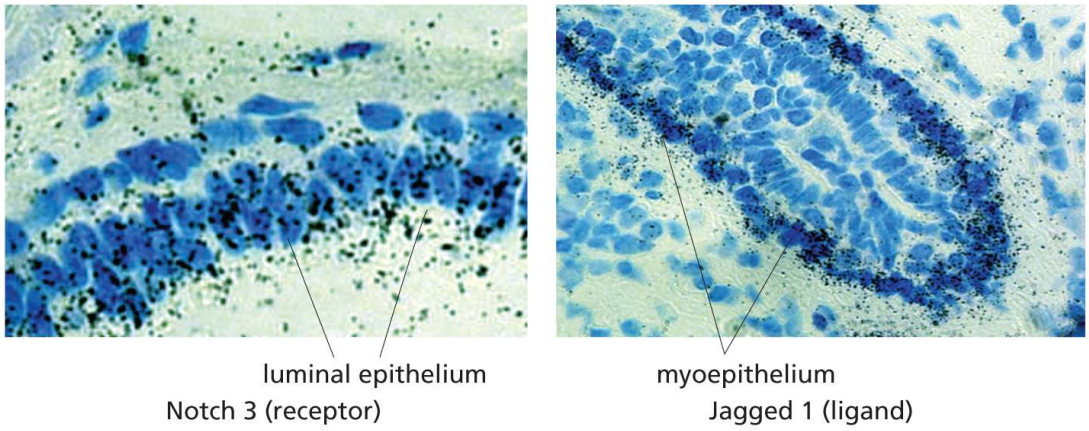
A micrograph, labeled H G F slash S F (ligand), of a section of embryonic mouse intestine. The villi are pale gray and border the left and right sides of the image. Below that is a micrograph, labeled Met (receptor), that is similar to the first one except that the villi are stained a deep indigo.

(B)



Two cross sections of a embryonic mouse's oral cavity. In the first image, labeled F G F10 (ligand), the deep tissues are bright red. In the second image, labeled F G F-R2b (receptor), the surface layer of tissue is bright red and the deep tissues are now light blue.

(C)



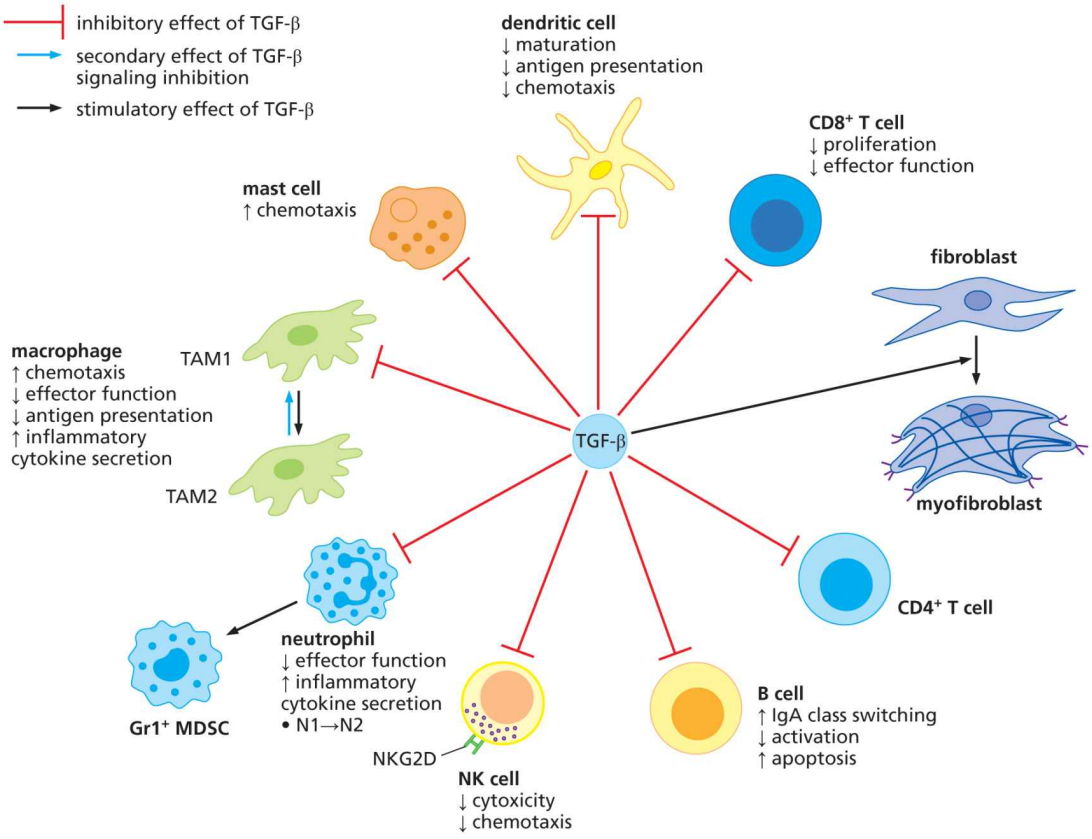
Two histology images of embryonic mouse mammary tissue. In the first image, labeled Notch 3 (receptor), blue luminal epithelial cells are littered with black dots. In the second image, labeled Jagged 1 (ligand), blue myoepithelial cells are littered with similar dots.

(D)

Figure 13.5 Heterotypic ligand–receptor signaling (A) In epithelial tissues, the synthesis of PDGF-A and its receptor (PDGF-Rα) is usually confined to distinct cell types. In the testis, expression of PDGF is confined to the cells of the tubular epithelium (*above*), while expression of its receptor is confined to the surrounding

mesenchymal cells (*below*). (B) The reciprocal expression of the Met receptor and its ligand, termed variously hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) or scatter factor (SF), is shown here in the embryonic mouse ileum (the lower section of the small intestine). In each fingerlike villus, seen in longitudinal section (see also Figure 11.5C), HGF/SF mRNA, detected by *in situ* hybridization, is made by the mesenchymal cells in the core of the villus (*above*), whereas Met is expressed by the epithelial cells coating the surface of the villus (*below*). (C) In the developing oral cavity of the mouse, the FGF10 ligand (*red*) is produced by the mesenchymal cells of the stroma of the developing palate (*left*), whereas its cognate receptor, FGF-R2b (*red*), is displayed by the overlying epithelial cells (*right*). Other work not shown here indicates that the epithelial cells respond to resulting ligand-mediated activation of their FGF-R2b by releasing Sonic Hedgehog (Shh), which signals back to Patched (Ptc) receptors displayed by mesenchymal cells in the stroma. (D) In the normal mouse mammary gland, use of antisense probes to detect mRNAs indicates that the Notch 3 receptor (*left)* is expressed (*black dots*) in the luminal epithelial cells, but its ligand, Jagged 1 (*right*), is expressed (*black dots*) in myoepithelial cells. (A, from L. Gnessi et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 149:1019–1026, 2000. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. B, courtesy of S. Britsch and C. Birchmeier. C, from R. Rice et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 113:1692–1700, 2004. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation. D, from M. Reedijk et al., *Cancer Res*. 65:8530–8537, 2005. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Within individual tumors the complexity that we will confront exists in at least three dimensions: To begin, there are multiple distinct cell types that are recruited to the stroma (see Figures 13.2 and 13.3). Second, multiple signals are exchanged between these distinct cell types; our focus here will be on bidirectional interactions between cancer cells and individual stromal cell types. Finally, each signal that is exchanged between neoplastic and recruited stromal cells evokes multiple distinct responses in the various cell types recruited to the tumor-associated stroma. Shown in **Figure 13.6** is one example of this complexity—the effects of a single type of released signal, TGF-β , on the various mesoderm-derived cell types present in the stroma of a carcinoma. [Not addressed by this figure is yet another target of TGF-β action—the carcinoma cells themselves. These are often induced by TGF-β to activate their previously latent cell-biological program termed the EMT (epithelial–mesenchymal transition), which confers on them higher degrees of aggressiveness and will be described later in this chapter.] The realities of heterotypic signaling dictate that we will only scratch the surface of its complexity in the present chapter, attempting to understand mechanistic principles rather than to enumerate systematically all of the cell–cell signaling pathways that operate within the confines of a single tumor.

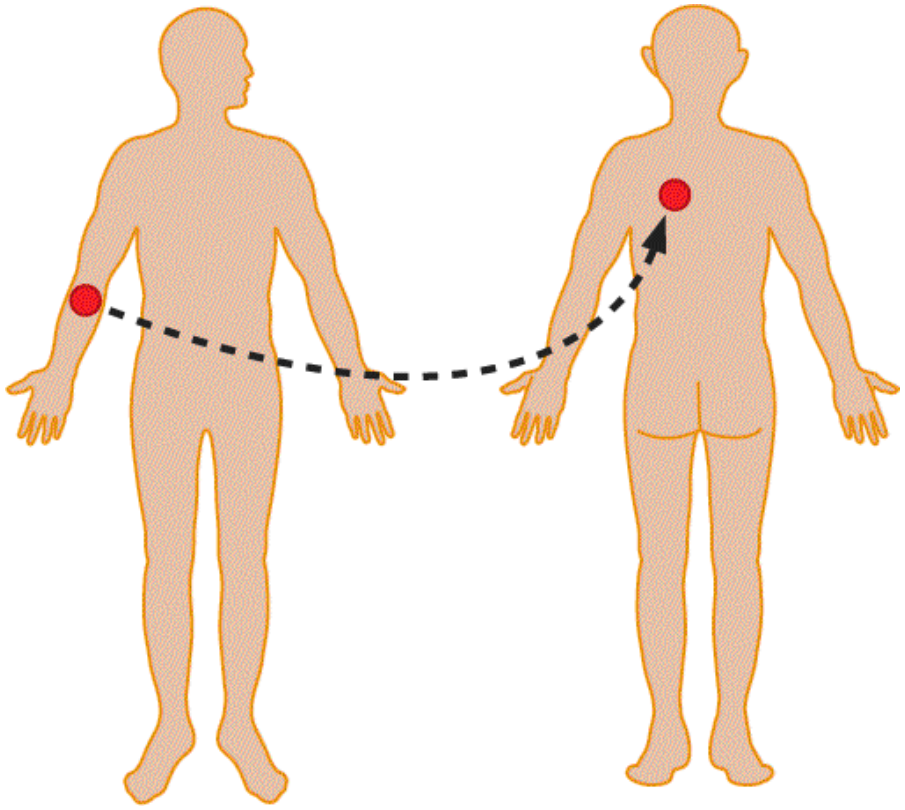


An illustration of the influences that T G F beta, shown in the center, has on various cell types, which are shown in a circle around T G F beta. In a dendritic cell, T G F beta decreases maturation, antigen presentation, and chemotaxis. In a C D8 plus T cell, T G F beta decreases proliferation and effector function. In a fibroblast, T G F beta increases conversion into a myofibroblast. T G F beta decreases the formation of C D 4 plus T cells. In a B cell, T G F beta decreases activation and increases I g A class switching and apoptosis. In an N K cell, shown with an attached N K G 2 D, T G F beta decreases cytoxicity and chemotaxis. In a neutrophil, T G F beta decreases effector function and increases inflammatory cytokine secretion of N1 to N2. The effects on neutrophils stimulate the production of G r 1 plus M D S C cells. In a macrophage, T G F beta decreases effector function and antigen presentation, and increases chemotaxis and inflammatory cytokine secretion. It stimulates conversion between tumor associated macrophages 1 and 2. Finally, in a mast cell, T G F beta increases chemotaxis.

Figure 13.6 Paracrine signaling: the case of TGF-β Various signaling molecules are exchanged between carcinoma cells and the nearby stroma. These molecules often operate similarly in corresponding normal epithelial tissues but their effects may be altered during the course of tumor progression. Among these paracrine signaling factors, the most widely acting is likely to be TGF-β, which perturbs the

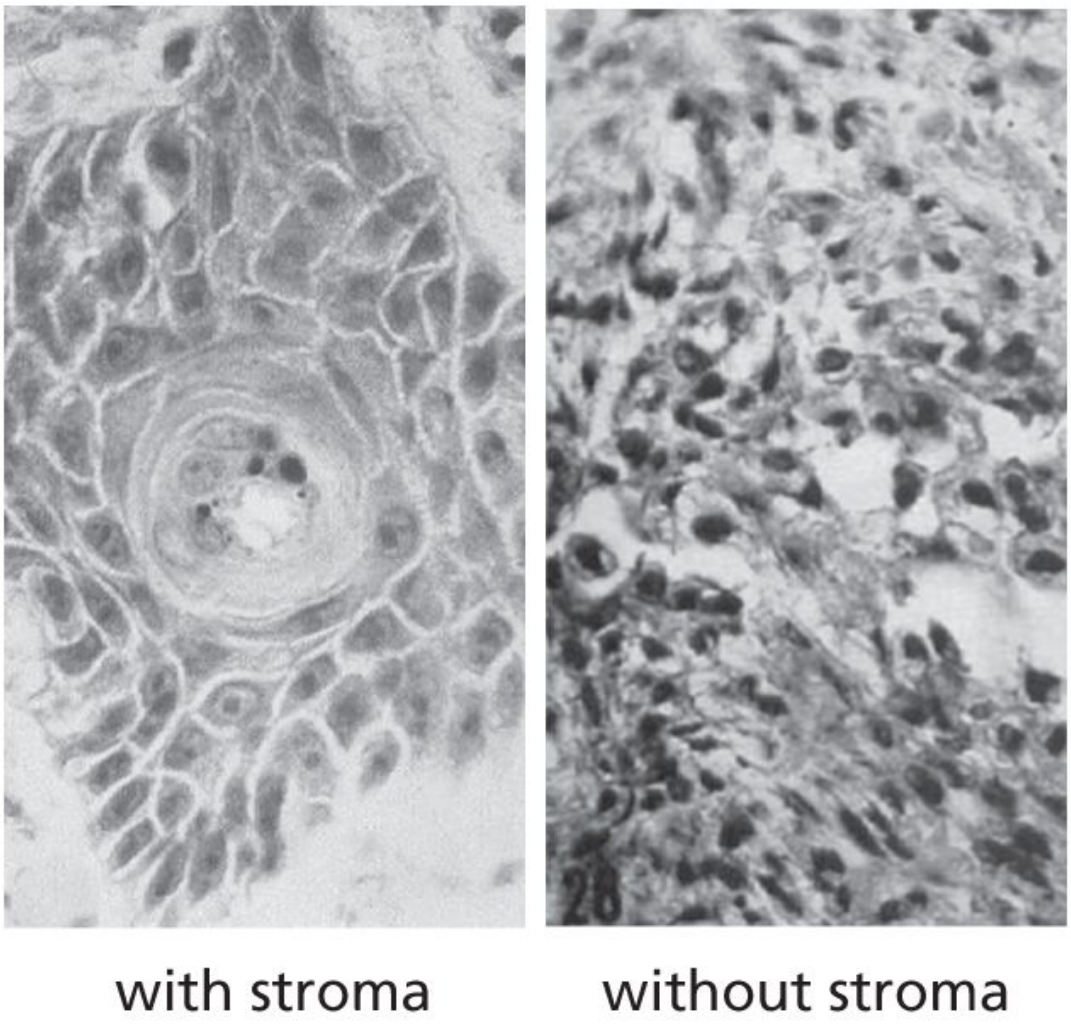
functions of a wide range of cell types that are recruited to the tumor-associated stroma, often termed the tumor microenvironment (TMEN). Most of the cell types that are illustrated here are components of the innate and adaptive immune systems that are described in detail in Chapter 15. In addition, TFG-β can induce stromal fibroblasts to become myofibroblasts that express α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA; *right*), which play critical roles in inflammation and wound healing. (Adapted from R. Derynck, S. Turley and R. Akhurst *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. 18, 9–34, 2021. With permission from Nature.)

Given these complex interactions within tissues, what evidence can we muster to support the notion that such heterotypic interactions are *functionally important* for tumor growth rather than representing vestiges—functionally irrelevant relicts—of normal tissue physiology? Until the mid-twentieth century, the role of stromal cells in supporting the growth of epithelial tumors was not appreciated. Experiments reported in 1961 provided some of the first evidence for the importance of these interactions in tumor biology; these were experiments of a sort that could not be repeated these days, given existing regulations on clinical testing of human subjects. Basal cell carcinomas of the skin were excised from patients and then reimplanted in normal areas of the skin elsewhere in the same patients (**Figure 13.7A**). Because these were autotransplantations, with each patient receiving a graft of his or her own cells, no immune rejection occurred (see Section 3.5). When the implanted cells included only groups of carcinoma cells, the grafts failed to grow; however, if these carcinoma grafts included both epithelial cancer cells and the underlying tumor-associated stroma, they became well established at the sites of implantation (Figure 13.7B). This experiment provided strong indication that the mesenchymal cells of the stroma are indeed essential to supporting the growth of the tumor as a whole.



A diagram showing the transplantation of tissue from the anterior surface of a person’s right forearm to the same person’s left upper back.

(A)



Two histology images. The one on the left, labeled with stroma, shows a large round nodule growing in a rectangular field of normal looking cells. The image on the right, labeled without stroma, shows many small, irregularly shaped and spottily colored cells, and no prominent nodule.

(B)

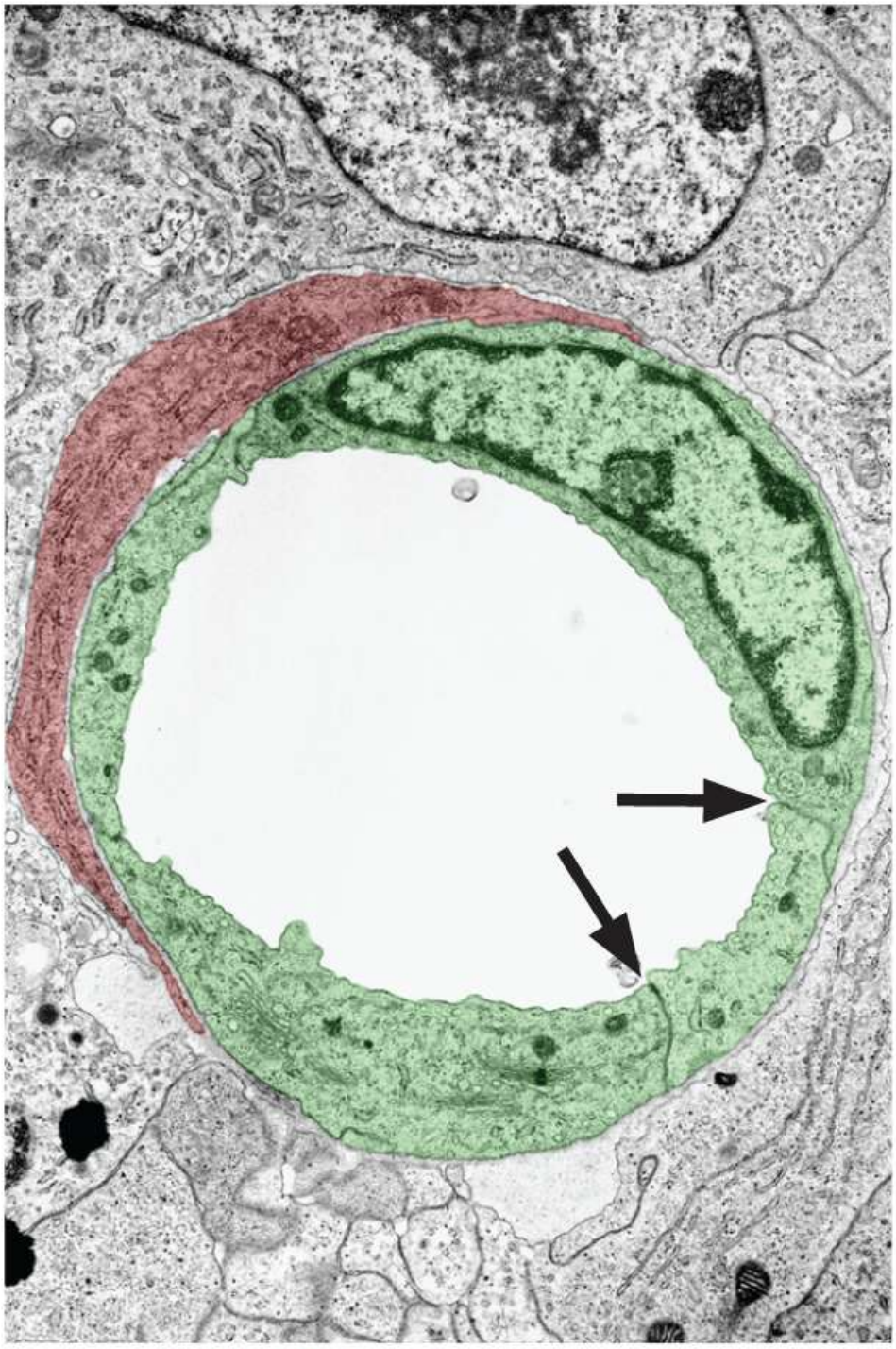
Figure 13.7 Autologous transplantation of skin tumors (A) Basal cell carcinomas of the skin were excised from patients and the carcinoma cells were reimplanted, either together with or without carcinoma-associated stromal cells, in distant anatomical sites on the skin of the back of the patients who had borne the original tumors. (B) The implanted tissues were excised 1 to 5 weeks later. Those that had been implanted together with stroma (*left*) yielded robustly growing carcinoma cells, whereas those that were implanted without concomitantly implanted stroma (*right*) failed to grow and yielded only vacuolated cells and cell

debris. (A, courtesy of S. McAllister. B, from E.J. Van Scott and R.P. Reinertson, *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 36, 109–131, 1961. With permission from Elsevier.)

Now, more than half a century later, the details of many stromal–epithelial heterotypic interactions and their roles in tumor progression have been elucidated in great detail. We now know that they play key roles in virtually all the stages of tumor progression (see Chapter 11), beginning with the initial formation of tumors. For example, carcinoma cells release growth factors, cytokines, and chemokines that recruit macrophages, neutrophils, and lymphocytes to the tumor-associated stroma; the recruited cells then orchestrate an inflammatory response that involves the release of TNF-α and prostaglandins, which proceed to stimulate the proliferation of nearby epithelial cells and the process of neoangiogenesis—the formation of blood vessels within the tumor stroma.

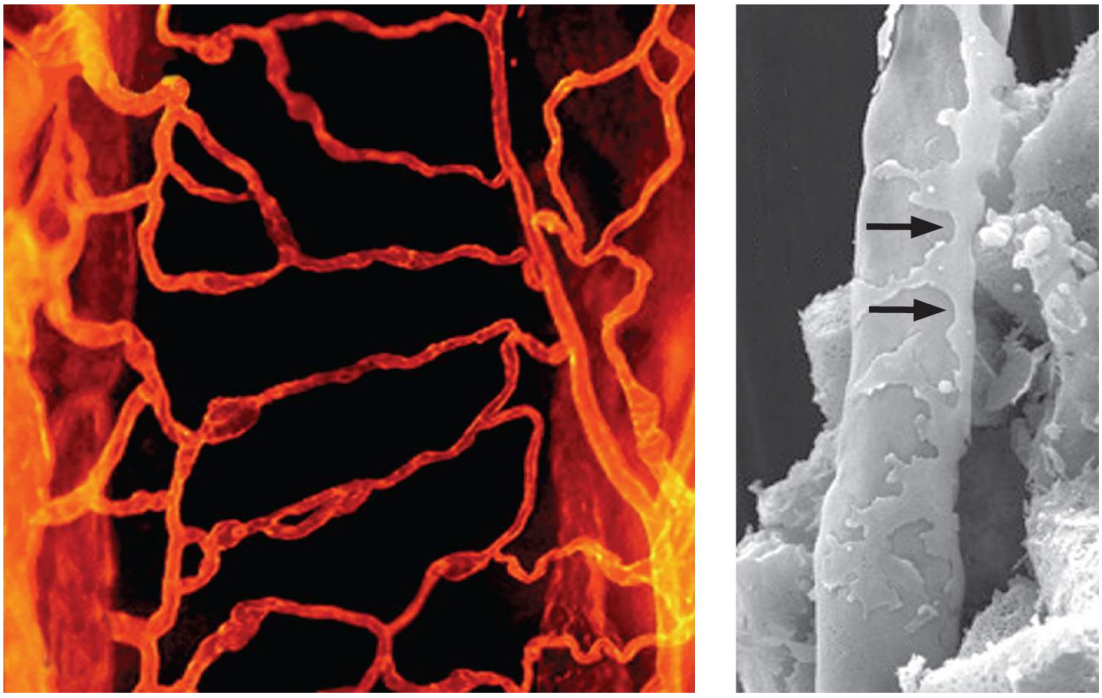
Many of these heterotypic interactions continue to operate after fully neoplastic tumors have been formed. To cite some examples, epithelial cells within a carcinoma often release PDGF, for which stromal cells—notably fibroblasts, myofibroblasts, and macrophages—possess receptors; the stromal cells reciprocate by releasing IGF-1 (insulin-like growth factor-1), which benefits the growth and survival of the nearby cancer cells. Similarly, the neoplastic cells within melanomas release PDGF, which elicits IGF-2 production from nearby stromal fibroblasts; this IGF-2 helps to maintain the viability of the melanoma cells. Stromal cells in breast cancers release the factor SDF-1/CXCL12 (a chemokine) and the HGF/SF growth factor, which stimulate the proliferation and survival of nearby epithelial cancer cells. More generally, by regulating each other's numbers and positions, epithelial and stromal cells ensure the optimal representation and localization of each cell type within both normal and neoplastic tissues. Additional examples are illustrated in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.2**.

The endothelial cells (**Figure 13.8A**), which assemble to form the linings of the walls of capillaries and larger blood vessels (Figure 13.8B) as well as lymphatic ducts (Figure 13.8C), represent vital components of the normal and neoplastic stroma. As discussed in greater detail later, proliferation of the endothelial cells forming capillaries is encouraged by other cells in both the epithelium and stroma in order to guarantee access by all of these cells to an adequate blood supply. Once capillaries are successfully assembled and become fully functional, they supply essential nutrients and oxygen to nearby tumor-associated cells; at the same time, they serve the equally important function of evacuating metabolic wastes and carbon dioxide from tissues including tumors.



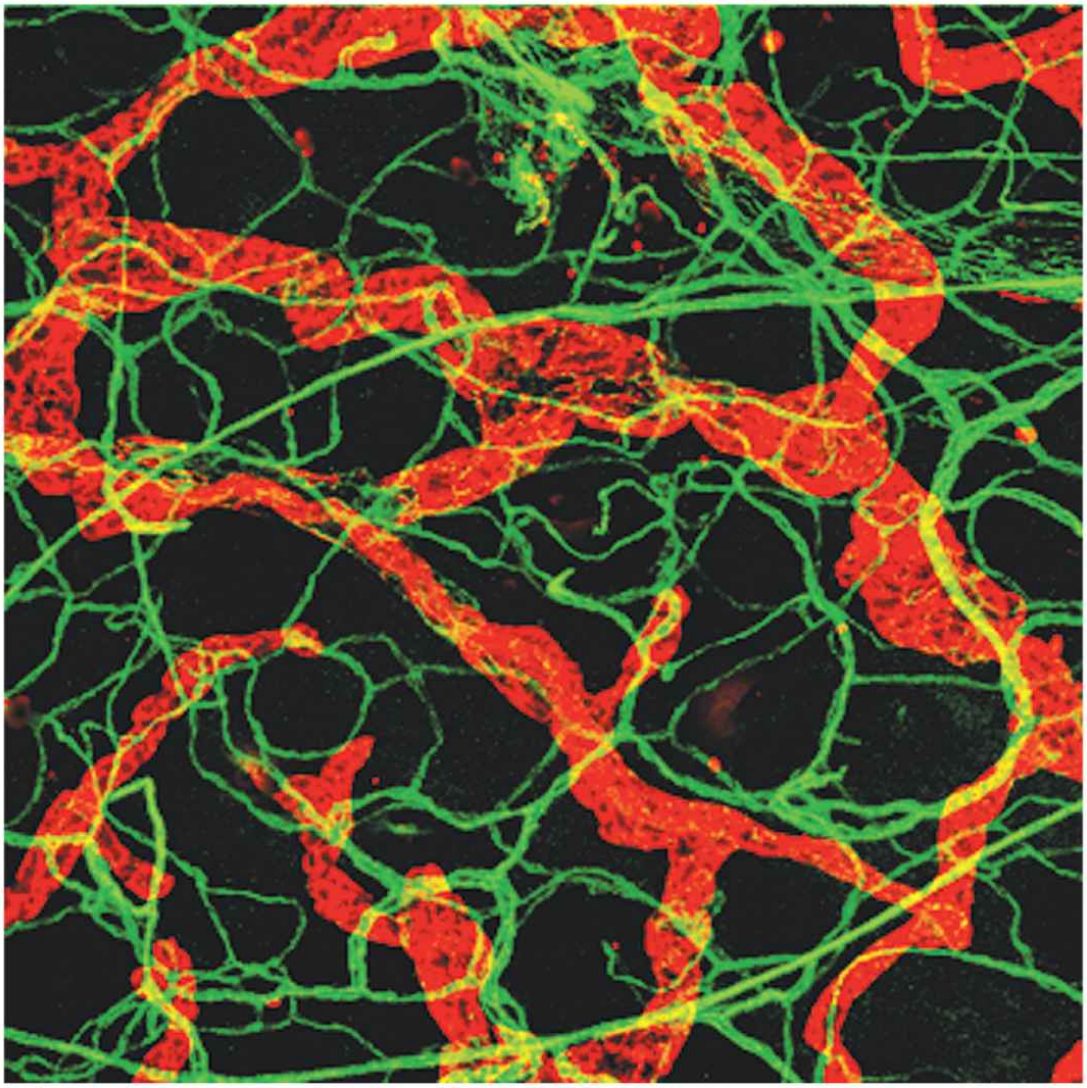
A transmission electron micrograph showing a cross section of a capillary. A cell shown in green forms nearly the entire capillary wall. A small section, also in green, represents another cell. A cell shown in red forms a kind of secondary semiperimeter around the green cell.

(A)



An Immunofluorescent microscopy image of capillaries, shown in red-orange, and a higher-magnification scanning electron microscopy image in which arrows point to an irregular layer of cells adhering to an otherwise smooth capillary.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image of blood capillaries, shown in green, and larger, less numerous lymph ducts, shown in red-orange.

(C)

Figure 13.8 Microvessels in normal tissues (A) This transmission electron micrograph presents a cross section of a capillary within the stroma of a tumor formed by mouse Lewis lung carcinoma cells. The endothelial cell and its nucleus have been colorized *green*, and the pericyte, which helps maintain capillary rigidity and intraluminal blood pressure, is colorized *red*. At least one additional endothelial cell has contributed to the formation of this section of the capillary, as indicated by the arrows at the joints between the cytoplasms of the two endothelial cells. (B) Immunofluorescent microscopy (*left*) of the capillaries in a normal

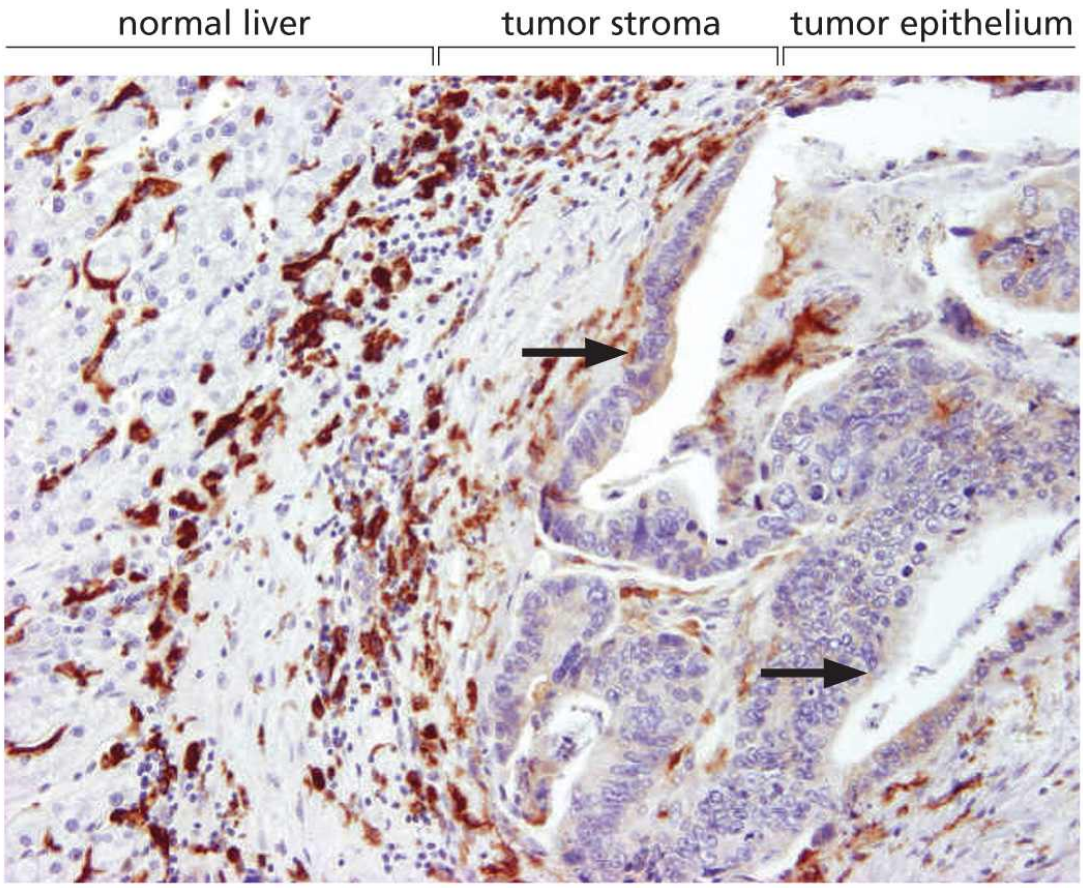
mouse trachea reveals (using an antibody that recognizes the endothelial cell–specific CD31 antigen) a well-organized network of microvessels. At the level of scanning electron microscopy (*right*), a capillary is seen to resemble a smooth-walled tube with pericytes (*arrows*) adhering to its outer surface. (C) Most normal tissues are interlaced with networks of capillaries (*green*) and lymphatic vessels (*red-orange*). As is apparent here, the diameters of lymphatic vessels are far larger than those of capillaries. Unlike capillaries, however, the endothelial cells of lymphatic vessels are not supported by underlying mural cells—pericytes and smooth muscle cells (*not shown*). (A, from B. Sennino et al., *Cancer Res.* 67:7358–7367, 2007. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B, from T. Inai et al., *Am. J. Pathol*. 165:35–52, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. C, courtesy of T. Tammela and K. Alitalo.)

While capillary formation is proceeding, the endothelial cells secrete growth factors that stimulate the proliferation of nearby nonendothelial cell types. Most important, endothelial cells release PDGF and HB-EGF (heparin-binding EGF), which enables them to attract (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.1**) the peri-endothelial cells called pericytes and the vascular smooth muscle cells that together create the outer cell layers of capillaries, sometimes called the mural cells to distinguish them from the luminal endothelial cells (see Figure 13.8A and B). Once in place, the pericytes (which closely resemble smooth muscle cells) reciprocate by releasing vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and angiopoietin-1 (Ang-1), which provide important survival signals to the endothelial cells that recruited them in the first place. In addition, these mural cells provide the endothelial tubes with structural stability and an ability to resist the forces exerted by the pressure of blood (see Figure 13.8B).

At present we are far from being able to enumerate all the key heterotypic interactions that operate within normal tissues and, by extension, in tumors. Because tumors rarely invent novel signaling mechanisms (rather than exploiting normal ones), a subset of the interactions operating in normal tissues must be operating in tumors, including those that underlie the support of carcinoma cells by nearby recruited stromal cells. Given the multiple distinct cell types present in normal tissues and tumors and the bidirectional intercommunications between different pairs of these cell types, the total number of these signaling channels, calculated combinatorially, is surely vast.

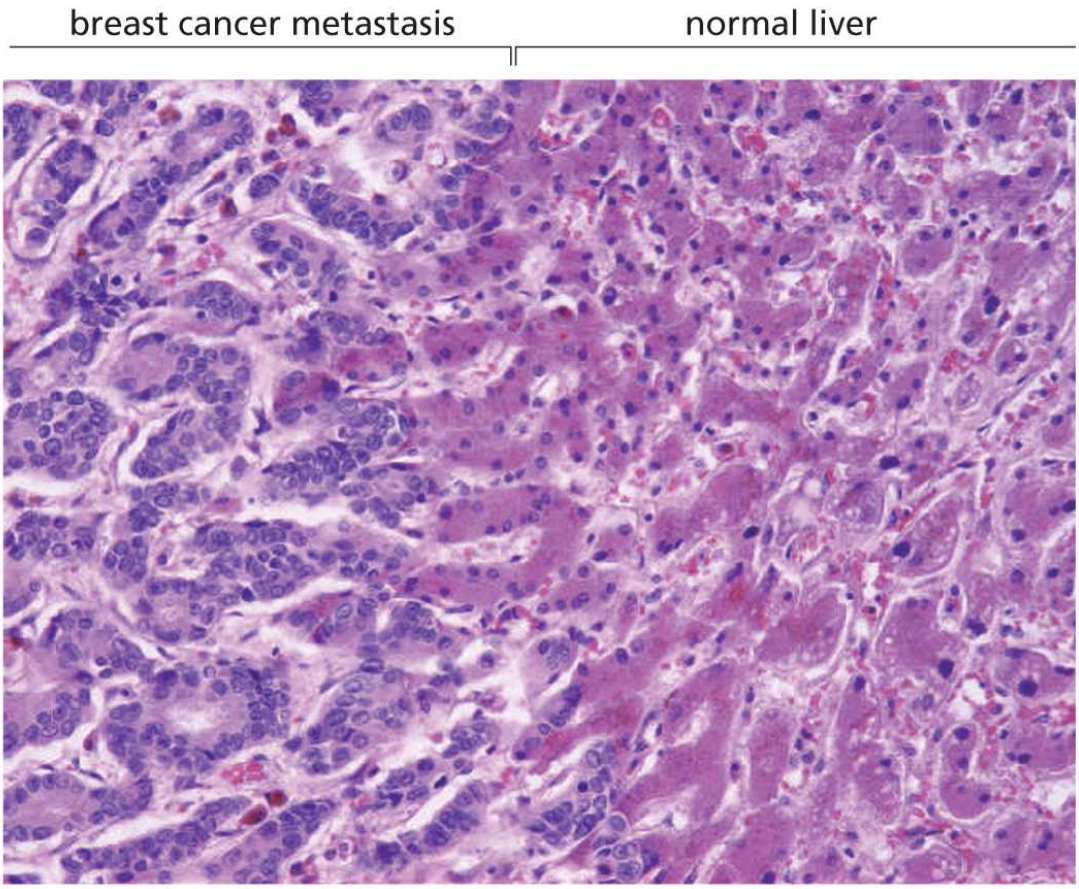
Stromal cells are often found to be layered between carcinoma cells in most metastases. This arrangement shows that even those cancer cells that are independent enough to disseminate from the primary tumor and to found new tumors at distant sites usually find it necessary to recruit stromal cells and encourage their proliferation (**Figure 13.9A**). On occasion, metastatic cells will insinuate themselves into the existing stroma of the tissue in which they have landed (Figure 13.9B), once again demonstrating their need to secure stromal support by one means or another. Finally,

we should note that an entire class of stromal cells—immunocytes—plays a critical role in the immunobiology of tumors, indeed a role so critical and far-reaching that we will devote two chapters to these cells and their implications for tumor growth and therapeutic elimination.



A histology image of liver tissue, on the left, being invaded from the right by tumor tissue. The leading edge of the advancing tumor is tumor stroma.

(A)



A histology image of normal liver tissue, on the right, being invaded from the left by breast cancer metastasis. There is no distinct region of stromal cancer tissue.

(B)

Figure 13.9 Metastasis and dependence on stroma (A) This micrograph of a metastasis originating from a primary colon carcinoma reveals that the metastasis found in the liver is as complex histologically as the primary tumors seen in Figure 13.1B. Here, we see that the carcinoma cells that have formed a metastasis (*light purple*, *right*) have constructed the same ductal structures (*arrows*) as are seen in primary adenocarcinomas of the colon. In addition, the carcinoma cells have recruited substantial stroma (*middle*), which includes macrophages (*dark brown*). (B) Most breast cancer metastases to the liver (*left*) behave quite differently from colon carcinoma metastases to this organ, in that the mammary carcinoma cells infiltrate into normal liver tissue (*right)* and displace resident hepatocytes, thereby taking advantage of the existing stroma, including its vasculature. These metastatic cells appear to be as dependent on stromal support as the colorectal carcinoma cells of (A) but acquire access to it in an entirely

different way. (From F. Stessels et al., *Br. J. Cancer* 90:1429–1436, 2004. With permission from Nature.)

Certain classes of metastases teach important overarching lessons about the roles of neoplastic cells in organizing their associated TME. For example, melanomas that have metastasized to the brain recruit abundant T lymphocytes to their stroma, whereas primary brain tumors growing in similar locations—gliomas and glioblastomas—although being rich in macrophages and microglia, attract hardly any of these immune cells. This these vignettes emphasize the role of the neoplastic cells in orchestrating the cellular composition of the TME.

In one extreme version of these scenarios, we might imagine that all heterotypic interactions needed to maintain normal tissue function continue to operate within carcinomas, being essential for the neoplastic cells to thrive and multiply within these tumors. However, such a depiction cannot be literally true, because many of the acquired traits that we associate with cancer cells (see Chapter 3), including a decreased dependence on mitogens, an increased resistance to apoptosis, and the acquisition of anchorage independence, are certain to affect the interactions between epithelial and stromal compartments and to lessen their interdependence. So, we conclude that these acquired traits generally *reduce* the dependence of epithelial cancer cells on stroma but do not seem to *eliminate* it. Finally, there are examples of outliers—cancer cells that appear to be almost totally independent of neighboring stromal cells and their signaling. Certain highly progressed carcinomas will generate free-floating cancer cells that accumulate in various body fluids—generating tumors known as ascitic tumors (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.3**). The ascites formed during ovarian carcinoma progression contain clumps of carcinoma cells—sometimes termed spheroids—that often seem to lack identifiable stromal cells.

Human cancer cell lines—there are several dozen in common use—are standard reagents used in many types of cancer research (**Sidebar 13.2**). Cells from virtually all of these can be implanted into immunocompromised host mice, where they proliferate, often vigorously, and form tumors termed xenografts (because they result from grafting the tissues of one species into a host animal of another). Mice of the Nude, NOD/SCID, and RAG1/2 strains, lacking fully functional immune systems (see Chapter 15), are used in these experiments because they tolerate the growth of introduced, genetically foreign cells. The resulting xenografts growing in these mice can then be tested for their responsiveness to anti-cancer drugs under development. The outcome of such experiments is not necessarily predictive of eventual clinical responses to these drugs (**Sidebar 13.3**).

Sidebar 13.2 Cancer cell lines and stromal support

The ongoing dependence of almost all types of carcinoma cells on stromal support explains the enormous difficulties that researchers have experienced when attempting to adapt tumor cells to *in vitro* culture conditions. Their goal has been to create cancer cell lines—populations of cancer cells that can be propagated in tissue culture indefinitely and can serve as experimental models of the cells encountered in the tumors of human cancer patients. To do so, cells are prepared directly from tumor biopsies and placed into culture, with the hope that colonies of vigorously growing cancer cells will eventually emerge. In most cases, however, such cell colonies do not appear, foiling attempts to generate carcinoma cell lines. More often than not, the cells that do thrive in culture are of stromal origin—specifically the fibroblasts whose growth is favored by the platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF; see Figure 5.8) that is present in abundance in the serum component of standard tissue culture medium.

It is clear that human carcinoma cells propagated under standard conditions of tissue culture are being forced to proliferate in environments that differ from those experienced by their precursors residing in the tumors of cancer patients. For example, the high concentration of serum present in most culture media is growth-inhibitory for many types of normal and neoplastic epithelial cells, which rarely experience large concentrations of the serum-associated factors *in vivo* except acutely after wounding. Even more important, carcinoma cells are being selected *in vitro* for their ability to proliferate without intimate contact with stroma, because the proper balance of epithelial and stromal cells present in tumors cannot be reproduced in the tissue culture dish.

On rare occasion, vigorously proliferating colonies of carcinoma cell populations have indeed emerged following extended culture of tumor fragments in the Petri dish. Because they have been selected *in vitro* for their ability to grow autonomously, and therefore independently of stromal support, such cancer cells have evolved beyond the stage of tumor progression that is reached *in vivo* by the neoplastic cells of most human tumors. In fact, many of the successes in establishing human tumor cell lines have depended on culturing cells from the few tumors that had already progressed *in vivo* to a stage where they no longer depended on stroma for their survival and proliferation (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.3**). For whatever reason, the cancer cell lines that are established for long-term growth in culture have, almost invariably, evolved to a biological state that is significantly different from that of the cells in corresponding human tumors.

Sidebar 13.3 The development of anti-cancer therapies has been imperfectly served by the use of existing human cancer cell lines

Human cancer cell lines, when grown as tumor xenografts in immunocompromised mice, often respond to the anti-proliferative effects of cytotoxic drugs under

development. However, the ability of these xenograft models to predict the clinical responses of patients to these drugs is limited. A 2001 retrospective study of 39 different anti-cancer drugs showed a weak correlation between the responses of xenografted tumors and comparable tumors borne by cancer patients to these drugs. For example, candidate drugs that were effective in halting the growth of more than one-third of a disparate collection of mouse tumor xenografts had only a 50% likelihood of showing any therapeutic activity (including halting tumor growth) in some human tumor types treated in the clinic. And drugs that affected smaller proportions of the mouse xenograft models had essentially no meaningful activity in the clinic.

These disappointing outcomes are not surprising, because the human tumor cell lines commonly used in such drug testing experiments bear little resemblance to cells in the tumors frequently encountered in the oncology clinic. These cell lines have been propagated *in vitro* under conditions that differ dramatically from their sites of origin in patients (see Figure 13.11), including (1) the absence of a supporting stroma, (2) the lack of similarity between existing tissue culture media and the composition of the fluid bathing cells in actual living tissues, (3) the often used two-dimensional culture (on the bottom of Petri dishes) that does not recapitulate the three-dimensional conditions of cells growing *in vivo*, (4) the selection of cancer cell lines that proliferate relatively rapidly in culture and, in that respect, do not correspond to cells growing *in vivo*, which may have vastly slower doubling times, and (5) the absence of components of the adaptive immune system in the mouse hosts in which human tumor xenografts are grown (as described in Chapter 15) that influence stromal composition and behavior. This helps to explain why the tumors implanted that these cell lines form often look quite different histologically from those routinely encountered in a clinical pathology laboratory (see Figure 13.11).

Yet another difficulty arises because cells of various human tumor cell lines are usually implanted in mice subcutaneously, which represents an ectopic site within the host that has little resemblance to the tissue in which the tumor originated. For example, pancreatic carcinoma cells may behave differently when growing under the skin than when they are implanted into the host animal's pancreas, their natural, orthotopic site, presumably because the stromal microenvironments in these two locations are so different.

One experimental response to these difficulties involves attempts at introducing fragments of tumors directly into immunocompromised mice without intervening propagation in tissue culture. These implanted tumor grafts contain both epithelial and stromal cells, which may co-proliferate to form histologically complex tumors in host mice that resemble the original tumors from which they derive. Unfortunately, like the cancer cells in actual human tumors, the cells in these xenografts usually proliferate very slowly, and their propagation involves labor-intensive transplantation from one

host animal to another. These properties preclude their routine use in the testing of anti-cancer drugs.

The inadequacies of currently available human tumor models and the resulting inability to accurately predict the clinical effectiveness of anti-cancer drugs under development cost the pharmaceutical industry hundreds of millions of dollars annually and therefore represent one of the major impediments to the development of new anti-cancer drugs.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

stroma

(pl., **stromata**; adj., **stromal**) (1) The mesenchymal components of normal epithelial and hematopoietic tissues, which may include fibroblasts, adipocytes, endothelial cells, and various immunocytes as well as associated extracellular matrix. (2) A spectrum of similar cell types that constitute the stromal cells within a tumor and are recruited into the tumor from host tissues and lack the somatic mutations born by the tumor cells. *See also* **reactive stroma**.

tumor microenvironment

The areas within a tumor that are populated by recruited non-neoplastic cells, including various types of immunocytes and inflammatory cells, often synonymous with stroma. *See also* **stroma**.

immunocyte

A cell associated with one of the multiple types of cells that form the functional arms of the immune system.

heterotypic

Referring to interactions between two or more distinct cell types. *See also* **homotypic**.

neoangiogenesis

Process by which new blood vessels are formed by sprouting from existing vessels; *also called* **neoangiogenesis** in certain circumstances. *Compare* **vasculogenesis**.

chemokine

(1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

lymphatic

Referring to vessels and nodes that drain interstitial fluid from tissues and eventually deposit this fluid in the venous circulation.

pericytes

Cells closely related to smooth muscle cells that surround capillaries and provide the capillary walls formed by endothelial cells with tensile

strength and contractility; pericytes also provide trophic signals to nearby endothelial cells. *See also* **trophic**.

mural

Referring to the outer cell layers of blood vessels, which are composed of pericytes and smooth muscle cells and surround the luminal endothelial cells.

spheroid

Small, sphere-shaped cluster of cells typically observed when cells are propagated *in vitro* in three-dimensional matrices.

xenograft

A normal or neoplastic tissue derived from one species that has been implanted into a host animal from another species.

ectopic

(1) Referring to the expression of a gene or protein in a location or physiological situation where it normally would not be expressed. (2) Referring to the presence of cells or tissues in an anatomical site where they would not naturally be found in the body. *See also* **orthotopic**.

orthotopic

Referring to an anatomically proper or native site. *See also* **ectopic**.

endothelial cells

(1) Mesenchymal cells that form the walls of capillaries or lymph ducts by assuming shapes that allow the assembly of tubelike structures. (2) Mesenchymal cells lining the luminal walls of larger blood vessels or lymph ducts.

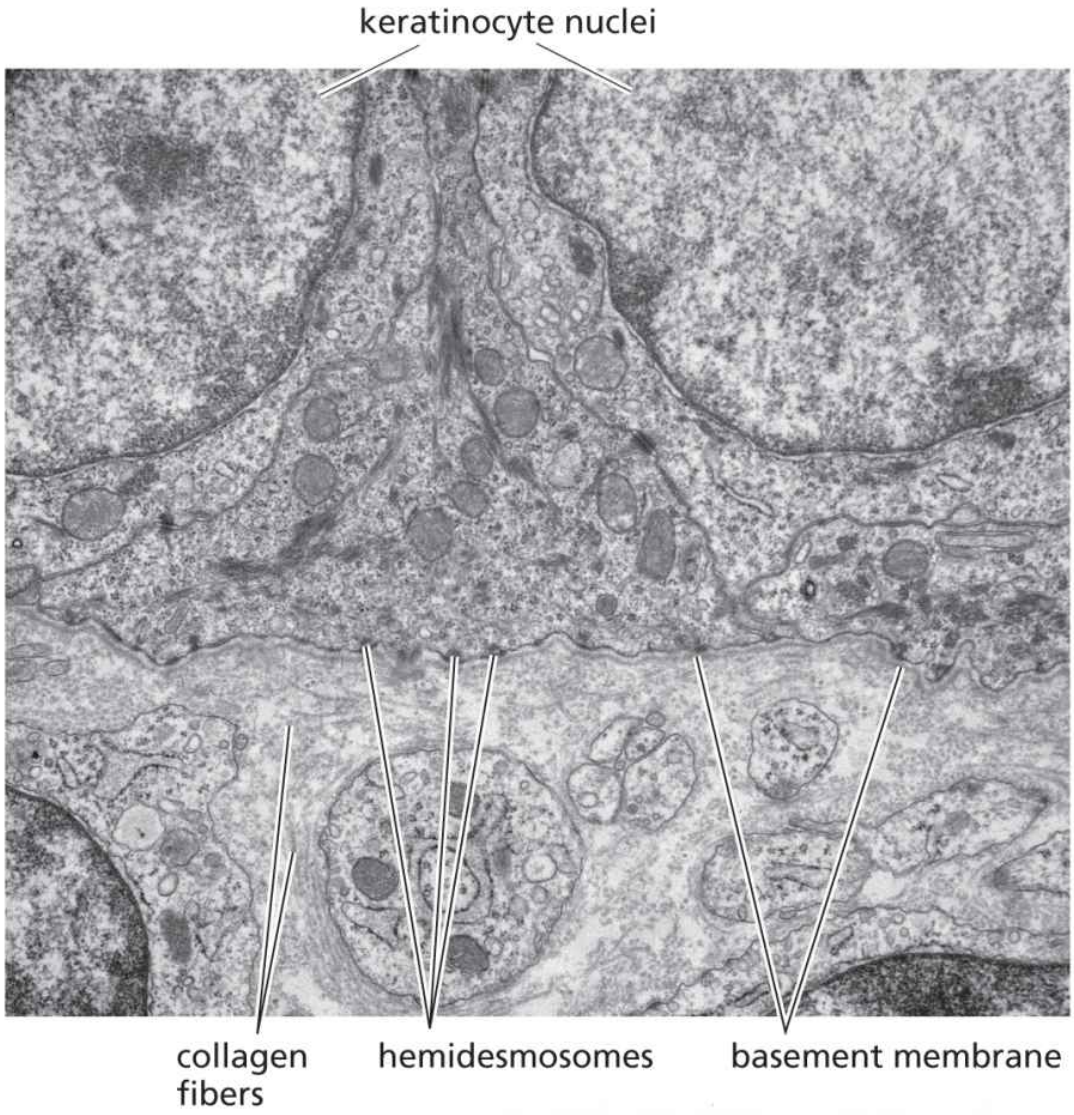
ascites

(adj., - **itic**) Fluid that accumulates in the peritoneal cavity of some cancer patients, often containing malignant cells.

OceanofPDF.com

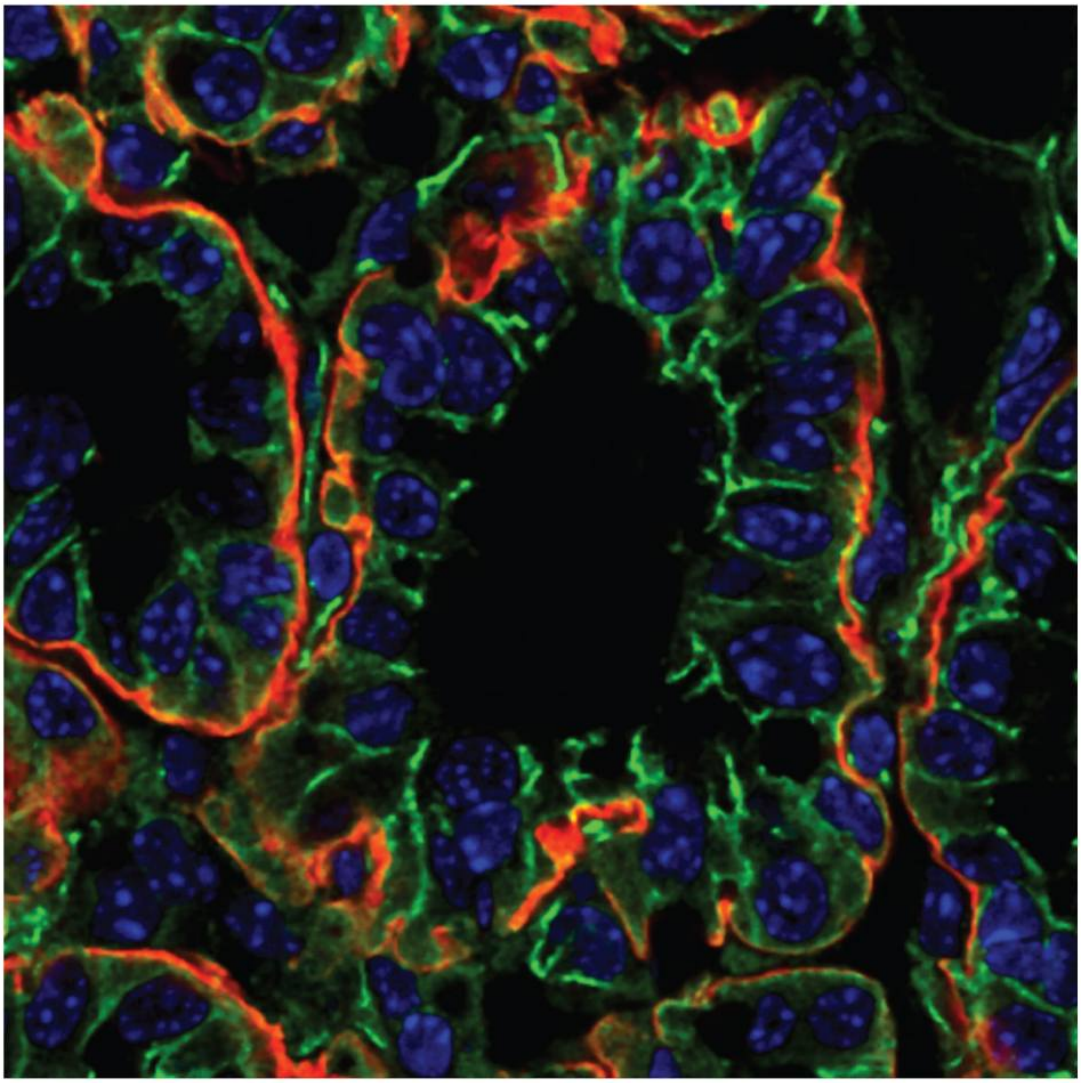
13.2 The extracellular matrix represents a critical component of the tumor microenvironment

Our overview of the tumor microenvironment (TME) must include, in addition to the stromal cell types described above, the complex extracellular matrix (ECM) that can be found between individual cells, sometimes termed the interstitial matrix (**Figure 13.10A**). We encountered its complexity earlier when we enumerated some of the cell-surface receptors, such as integrins, that epithelial cells deploy in order to physically tether themselves to the ECM and, equally important, to sense the presence of specific ECM components in their immediate surroundings (see Figures 5.21, 5.22, and **Supplementary Sidebar 5.9**).



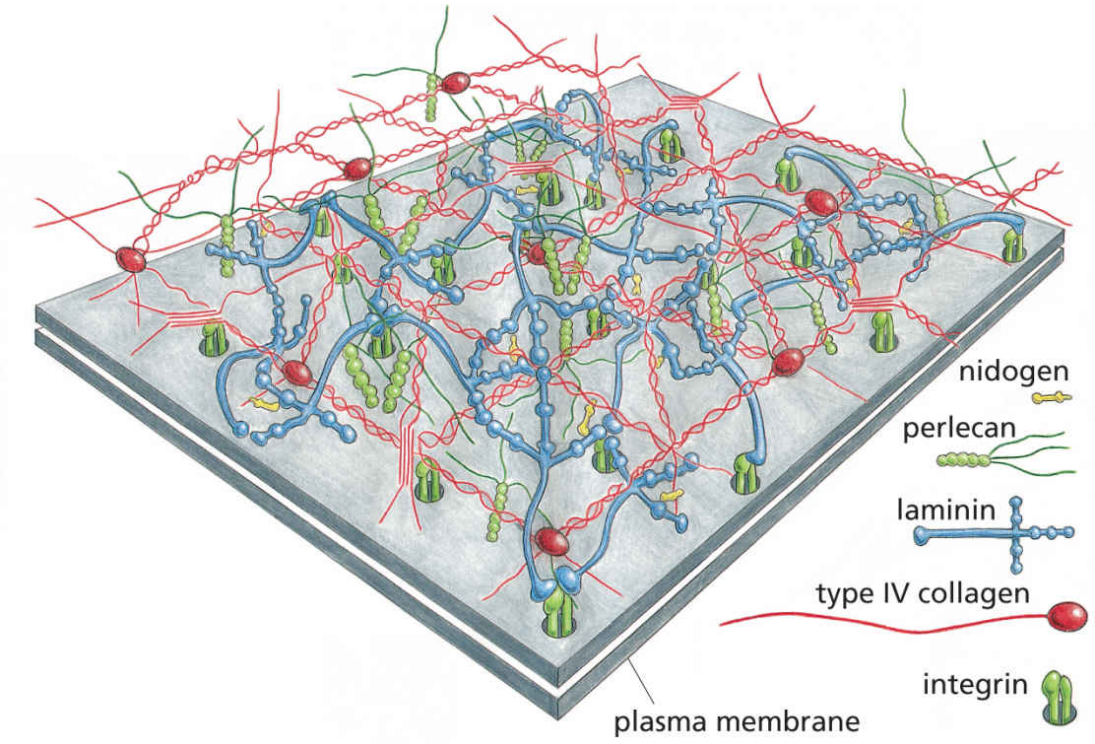
A transmission electron micrograph of the skin of a newborn mouse, seen in cross section. At the top of the image are two large keratinocyte nuclei. Running across the middle of the image is the basement membrane. Dark spots at intervals along the basement membrane are hemidesmosomes. Below the basement membrane is a space filled with collagen fibers.

(A)



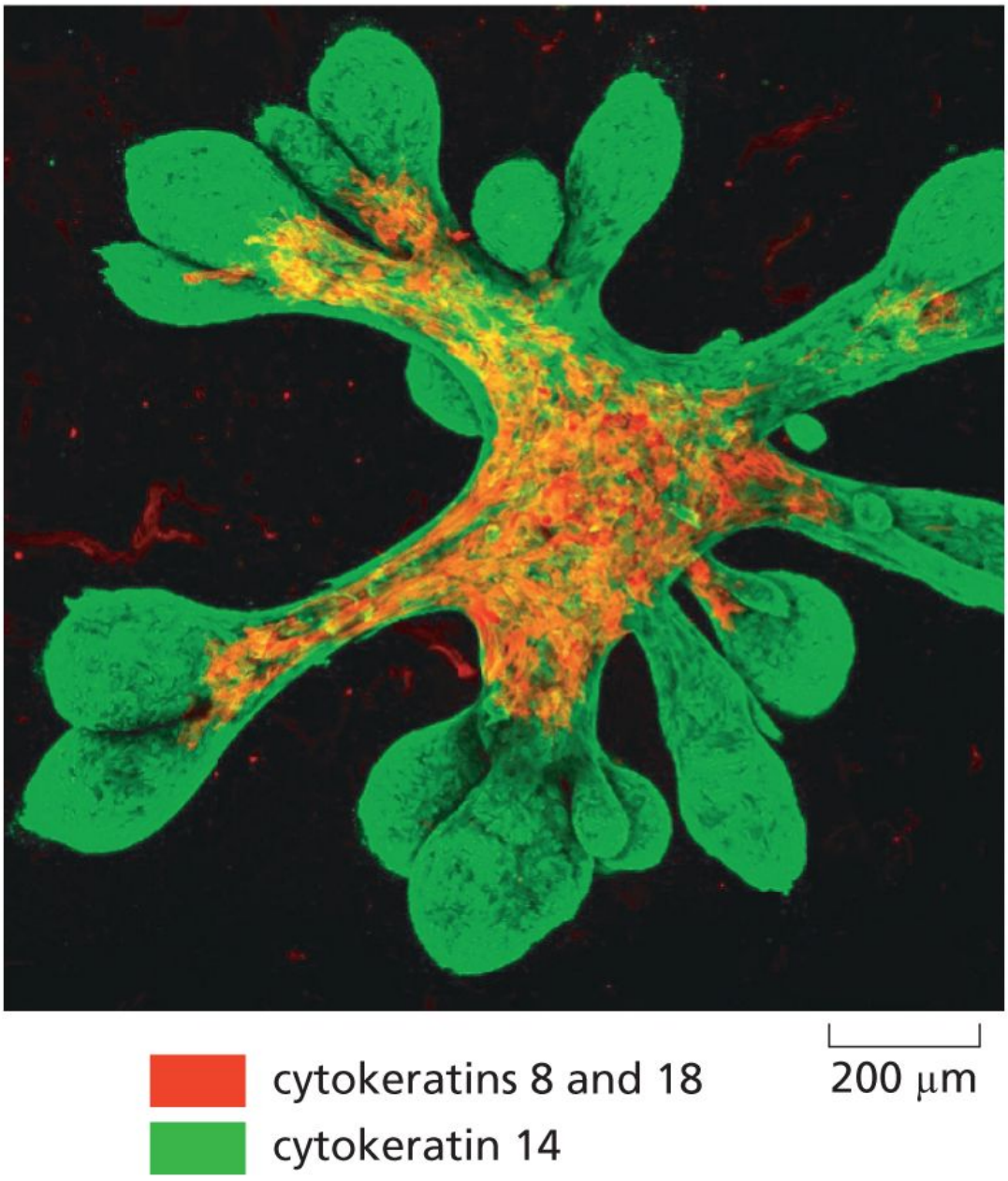
An immunofluorescence micrograph of a mouse mammary duct, showing basement membrane in orange, E-cadherin in green, and nuclei in blue, forming ring-like structures.

(B)



A schematic of the basement membrane. As shown, it lies over the top of a cellular plasma membrane and is a network of nidogen, perlecan, laminin, and type IV collagen fibers connected to integrins that rise up through the plasma membrane below.

(C)



An image of a multi-lobed or multi-petaled flower-like structure, roughly 1 millimeter across. It is mostly green, indicating the presence of cytokeratin 14 but in the central areas, it contains a heavy dusting of orange and red, indicating the presence of cytokeratins 8 and 18.

(D)

Figure 13.10 The extracellular matrix and its role in tissue development (A) In epithelial tissues, the specialized extracellular matrix (ECM) termed the basement membrane (BM) separates the epithelial cells (*above*) from the stroma

(*below*). As shown in this transmission electron micrograph of the skin of a newborn mouse, the epithelial cells of the skin (termed keratinocytes) are tethered to one side (*above*) of the BM, being anchored in part through structures termed hemidesmosomes, which are composed of clusters of integrins that bind BM proteins, notably laminin. Below the BM are collagen fibers, which represent important components of the interstitial matrix and the mesenchymal cells that constitute the stroma of the skin, i.e., the dermis. (B) This immunofluorescence micrograph of a mammary duct in a lactating mouse reveals the E-cadherin molecules (*green*) that form the lateral junctions tying together the mammary epithelial cells forming the lumen of the duct; the epithelial cells are underlain by a basement membrane, which is revealed here by the presence of laminin (*orange*). Outside of the BM are various types of stromal cells (*not shown*). (C) This schematic drawing indicates that the basement membrane is composed largely of four major ECM proteins, namely laminin, collagen type IV, perlecan, and nidogen. This highly permeable molecular meshwork allows a variety of molecules to pass through in both directions. A specialized BM, not shown here, underlies endothelial cells in capillaries. (D) Mammary epithelial cells were prepared from reduction mammoplasty-derived tissues and propagated in a 3-dimensional gel composed of ECM modeled after the interstitial matrix present in the normal mammary gland plus a series of defined growth factors in the absence of serum. No stromal cells were present in these cultured cells. Cytokeratin 14 is expressed by basal cells in the intact mammary gland, whereas cytokeratins 8 and 18 are expressed by luminal cells. (A, courtesy of H.A. Pasolli and E. Fuchs. B, courtesy of E. Lowe and C. Streuli; from J. Muschler and C. Streuli, *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 2:a003202, 2010. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. C, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 5th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2008, based on H. Colognato and P.D. Yurchenko, *Dev. Dyn*. 218:213–234, 2000. D, from E. Sokol, D.H. Miller, A. Breggia et al. *Breast Cancer. Res.* 18:19–32, 2016.)

In the case of the interface between normal epithelial and stromal cells, recall that it is created by the physical barrier established by the specialized ECM termed the basement membrane (BM) or basal lamina (see Figure 13.10A; see also Figure 2.3). In the case of the epithelial cells of the skin, as an example, the keratinocytes express genes specifying many of the major protein components of the basement membrane, including type IV collagen and laminins; the stromal cells also contribute to its construction, doing so in ways that have yet to be documented in detail. Certain proteoglycans in the basement membrane, such as perlecan, provide it with increased hydration and with sites to which growth factors can be attached for long-term storage (see Figure 13.10C). Continuous tethering to the basement membrane, mediated largely by integrins and the hemidesmosomes that they construct (see Section 5.9,

Figure 13.10A), is essential for the survival of many kinds of epithelial cells, and loss of this tethering often provokes anoikis, the form of apoptosis resulting from loss of anchorage to a solid substrate (see Section 9.13). In many carcinomas, the ECM constitutes as much as 25% of the total tumor-associated mass. In the extreme seen in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas, as much as 90% of the mass is formed by the ECM.

In its most simple depiction, we can imagine that the epithelial and stromal cells of normal and carcinomatous tissues collaborate to lay down the ECM. Once assembled, the ECM provides most of the instructive cues that the epithelial cells employ in order to organize themselves.

These cues are conveyed by the structural scaffolding of the ECM, by the various physical forces that influence epithelial cell biology (such as rigidity and tensile strength), and by the myriad mitogenic and survival factors that are attached to the ECM during its formation, creating a reservoir of signaling molecules that can be mobilized and, in solubilized form, stimulate the various receptors whose signals influence epithelial cell biology, as was described in Chapter 5.

Some have likened the role of the ECM (when acting as a reservoir of signaling proteins) to a “message board” that is consulted with frequency by epithelial cells, guiding various aspects of their behavior. The initial attachment of growth factors (GFs) to the ECM soon after their synthesis and release into the extracellular space obviously complicates our understanding of how these signaling molecules actually operate. Depictions of them floating in soluble form from GF-producing cells to cognate GF receptors displayed by recipient cells overly simplify the multiple steps that make them *available* to their partner receptors.

Careful curation of the genes in the human genomes has led to an enumeration of the proteins forming the “core matrisome,” that is, the proteins that form the essential structural scaffolding of ECMs. There are about 300 in mammals, and they are distinguished from the numerous proteins that are tethered reversibly to the ECM, such as the GFs cited above, as well as others, such as proteases, that are responsible for continuously modifying the core scaffolding.

The key biological role of the ECM in instructing morphogenesis can be illustrated most dramatically by its essentiality in tissue models constructed *in vitro*. As seen in Figure 13.10D, a hydrogel was assembled experimentally that incorporated many of the ECM proteins present in normal human breast tissue, together with a glycosoaminoglycan polysaccharide and three growth factors—insulin, EGF, hydrocortisone. This hydrogel was constructed to have a degree of elasticity comparable to that present in normal mammary ECM. Normal mammary epithelial cells (MECs) were introduced into this gel and their behavior monitored

microscopically. This arrangement provided a three-dimensional environment, which contrasted starkly with the highly unnatural two-dimensional environment created by the bottom surfaces of Petri dishes that were used almost universally since the mid-twentieth century to propagate cells in culture.

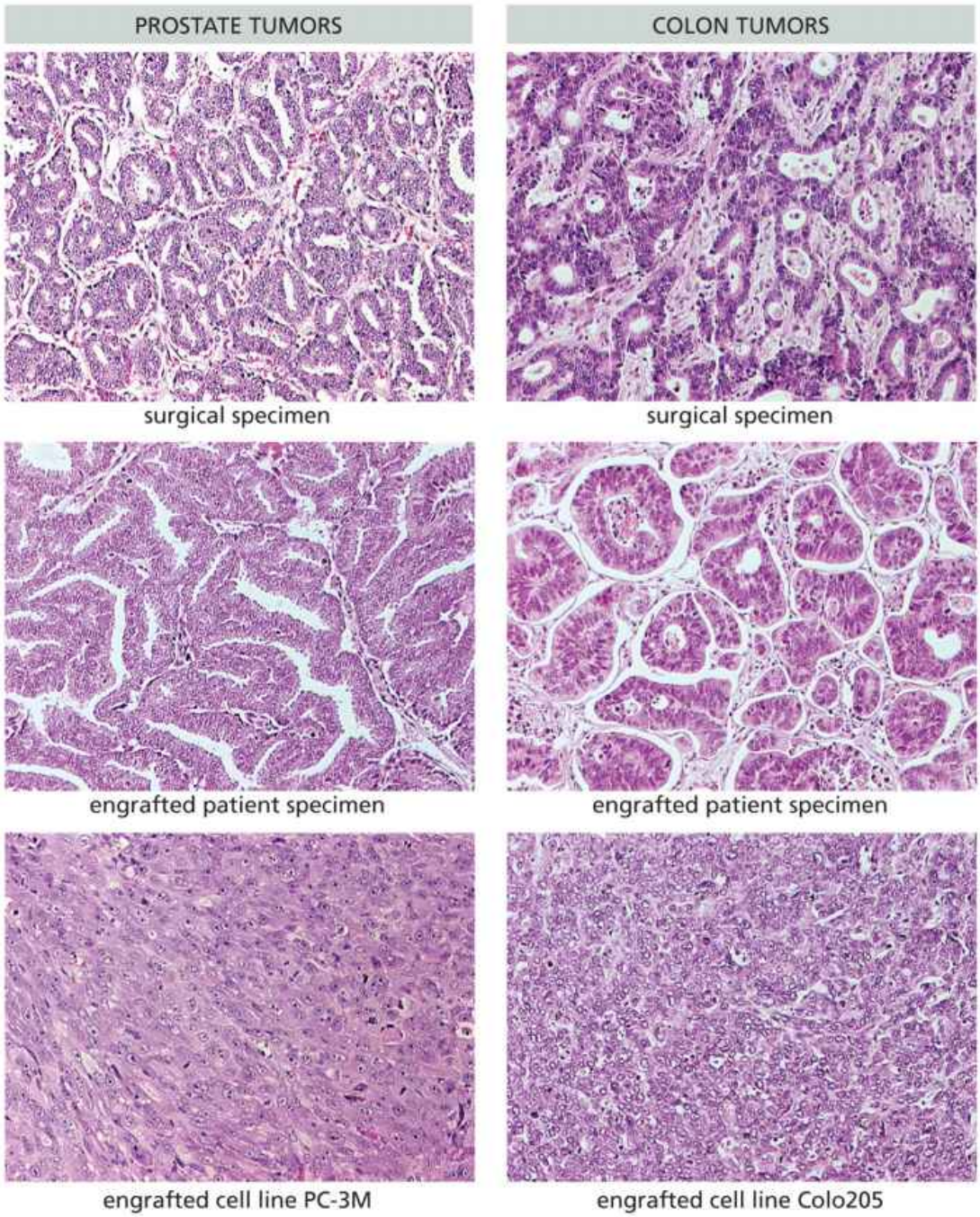
In this particular tissue culture model, the introduced normal human MECs formed lobules and ducts that closely resembled the ductal and lobular morphologies seen in developing human breast tissues. Gels formed instead exclusively from collagen did not work nor did ECM composed only of basement membrane proteins. Importantly, the alveoli that formed developed cytokeratin 8/18-positive luminal cells and cytokeratin 14-positive myoepithelial/basal cells, which reflected the composition of the two cell layers (that is, luminal and basal) forming normal mammary epithelium. About 5% of the mammary epithelial cells developed steroid hormone receptors—ER and PR—and these organoids responded to the steroid hormones by undergoing hollowing of the ducts and lobules. Application of the prolactin hormone caused the formation of lipid droplets in the lumina of the alveoli; such droplets are suggestive of the formation of milk components. Moreover, the myoepithelial/basal cells expressed the Slug and Sox9 transcription factors (see Chapter 14) that are known to be responsible for inducing the mammary stem cell state. Strikingly, this essentially normal morphogenesis proceeded in the presence of only ECM and thus in the absence of any admixed stromal cells, indicating that the contextual signals required for this particular morphogenetic program were provided entirely by ECM constituents and thus proceeded without dependence on stromal cells.

The continued dependence of most cancer cell populations on stromal support, including both the cells and the ECM that together form the stroma, has represented a major obstacle to understanding the biology of human tumors, given the inability of existing cancer cell lines to generate tumors that are encountered in the oncology clinic (see Sidebar 13.2). Nevertheless, an ability to grow human cancer cells that are prepared from patient tumor fragments and implanted directly into host mice represents a major step toward generating populations of human cancer cells that more closely resemble the cells living within actual human tumors. Thus, such patient-derived xenografts (PDXs), never experience the artificial environment of tissue culture. Presumably, the heterotypic interactions with recruited mouse stromal cells more closely mimic the stroma that was assembled in the original tumors within cancer patients (**Figure 13.11**). However, even the PDXs are associated with certain problems. Some of the heterotypic interactions that operate in human tumors may fail to do so in PDXs because of signaling incompatibilities between mouse growth factors and cytokines and the corresponding human receptors. Moreover, the use of immunocompromised mouse hosts dictates that certain cells responsible for creating an inflammatory stroma (see below) may be missing. Finally, PDX tumors usually grow very slowly, making them impractical for use in many types of experiments.

CONDITION	HUMAN TISSUE	HUMANIZED 3D CULTURE	2D CULTURE
oxygen:	0–5%	< 5%	21%
stiffness of ECM:	200–4000 Pa	<4000 Pa	$3x10^9$ Pa
pH:	acidic (<7)	acidic (<7)	buffered (7.2)
dimensionality:	3D	3D	2D
glucose availability:	limiting	limiting	not limiting
stroma:	present	absent	absent
growth factors:	human	rodent and human	bovine

A chart comparing various properties of HUMANIZED 3D CULTURE tumor cells to tumor cells in normal human tissue on the left and to 2D CULTURE cells on the right. With respect to the first six properties listed, HUMANIZED 3D CULTURE cells are like normal human cells: oxygen less than 5 percent, compared to 2D culture's 21 percent; stiffness of ECM less than 4000 Pascals, compared to 2D culture's 3 times 10 to the 9th Pascals; pH less than 7, compared to 2D culture's 7.2; dimensionality 3D instead of 2D; and glucose availability limiting, compared to 2D culture's not limiting. However, stroma is absent in HUMANIZED 3D CULTURE just as in the 2D culture. Finally, HUMANIZED 3D CULTURE has human and rodent growth factors, compared to only human in normal human and to bovine in 2D culture.

(A)



Six histology images that compare prostate tumors and colon tumors, showing in each case a surgical specimen, an engrafted patient specimen, and a grafted cell line–PC-3M in the case of prostate cancer and Colo 2 O 5 in the case of colon cancer. The engrafted patient specimens look generally similar to the surgical specimens, with a lumpy appearance, whereas the grafted cell line specimens look smoother in texture.

(B)

Figure 13.11 Tumors and derived xenografted tumor cell lines (A) The conditions under which human tumor cell lines are usually propagated (*red font*) differ drastically from those operating in an actual autochthonously arising human tumor, i.e., one that arose spontaneously in a living human tissue (*second column*). Attempts to remedy this by developing culture models that more closely resemble conditions in actual tumors (*third column*) address some but not all the shortcomings of existing means of propagating human tumor cells. (This figure does not indicate the differences in the chemical compositions of the fluids surrounding individual cells or the molecular compositions of the ECMs, which are likely to differ dramatically between the three conditions.) Pa, pascals, unit of pressure here denoting pressure, mechanical stress. (B) The histologies of a primary prostate carcinoma (*left*) and of a colon carcinoma (r*ight*) that were removed surgically from patients are shown in the top row. Below these (*middle row*) are the histologies arising from implantation of chunks of tumor derived from cancer surgery at subcutaneous sites in immunocompromised SCID mice; these implanted chunks, growing as patient-derived xenografts, contained both epithelial and stromal tumor components. Three to six months after implantation, these engrafted tumor samples, which have grown from a 2-mm to a 1-cm diameter, still retain the architecture of the primary tumors from which they derive. However, the tumors formed by a prostate and a colon cancer cell line (*bottom row*), which have been propagated extensively in tissue culture as pure cancer cell populations, bear little histological resemblance to the tumors typically encountered in the oncology clinic and shown above. (A, from E. Krausz et al., *J. Biomol. Scrren*. 18:54-66, 2013. With permission from Elsevier. B, courtesy of B.L. Hylander and E.A. Repasky.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

interstitial matrix
: Portion of the extracellular matrix that resides between cells and is not a component of the basement membrane.

proteoglycan
: Molecule with one or more glycosaminoglycan chains attached to a protein core. *See also* **glycosaminoglycan**.

matrisome
: The collection of molecular species that together form the extracellular matrix of a tissue or of cultured cells.

hydrogel
: A three-dimensional network of highly hydrophilic polymer molecules that can absorb 10- or even 100-fold its mass of water and can serve as an experimental model of natural matrices, such as the extracellular matrix.

prolactin
: A polypeptide hormone made largely by the pituitary gland that stimulates mammary gland growth and milk production among other functions.

patient-derived xenograft
: A population of cancer cells that is derived by implanting fragments of patients' tumors directly into immunocompromised mouse hosts, thereby avoiding initial *ex vivo* propagation of tumor cells in tissue culture.

alveolus (pl., **alveoli)**
: A small sac within a tissue that is connected to a duct, such as the sacs seen in the lung and in the mammary gland during pregnancy.

OceanofPDF.com

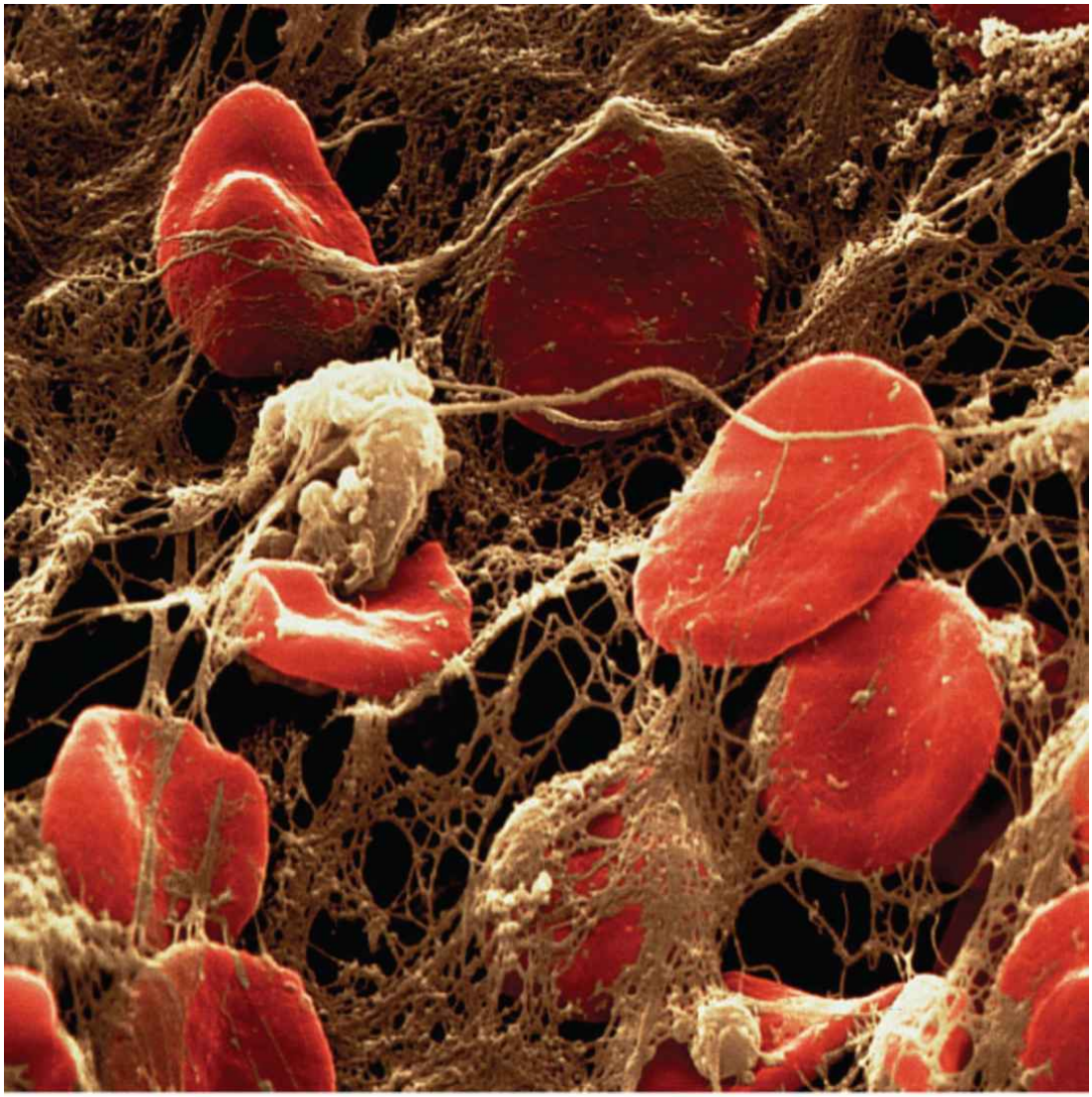
13.3 Tumors resemble wounded tissues that do not heal

As argued above, heterotypic signaling governs much of the biology of carcinomas, and experimental models of cancer that ignore this important process generate tumors that differ biologically from those found in cancer patients (see Figure 13.11). As mentioned above, the heterotypic interactions operating within tumors are highly complex and involve the exchange of dozens of distinct molecular species that mediate cell-to-cell signaling between the various cell types that together form these growths.

This complexity raises some fundamental questions: How do cancer cells develop the capacity to release and respond to an array of diverse heterotypic signals? Are the complex signaling programs and resulting biological responses invented anew, being cobbled together piece by piece, each time normal cells evolve progressively into cancer cells? Or do cancer cells exploit preexisting, multifaceted cell-biological programs that are normally used by tissues for other purposes?

One attractive solution to these questions has come from an insight gained in 1986. A researcher studying the histological appearance of both tumors and wound-healing sites noted the striking resemblance between many of the signaling processes involved in tumor progression and those that occur during wound healing. Indeed, these similarities have been extensively documented in the years since this notion was first proposed, yielding a clarifying explanation for the complex behavior of neoplastic tissues: they acquire aggressive behavior simply by activating a complex, normally latent cell-physiological program—wound healing—that is encoded in the normal genome. By accessing and exploiting this preexisting biological program, cancer cells are spared the task of re-inventing it anew each time a tumor arises.

Wound healing has been studied most extensively in the context of the skin. Following the formation of a superficial wound to the skin and underlying tissues, blood platelets aggregate and release granules containing, among other factors, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β). Wounding also causes release of vasoactive factors, which increase the permeability of blood vessels near the wound. This helps the wound site to acquire fibrinogen molecules from the blood plasma, which, when converted to fibrin, create the scaffolding of the blood clot (**Figure 13.12**). The resulting fibrin bundles, which become entwined around clumps of platelets, help to stanch further bleeding.

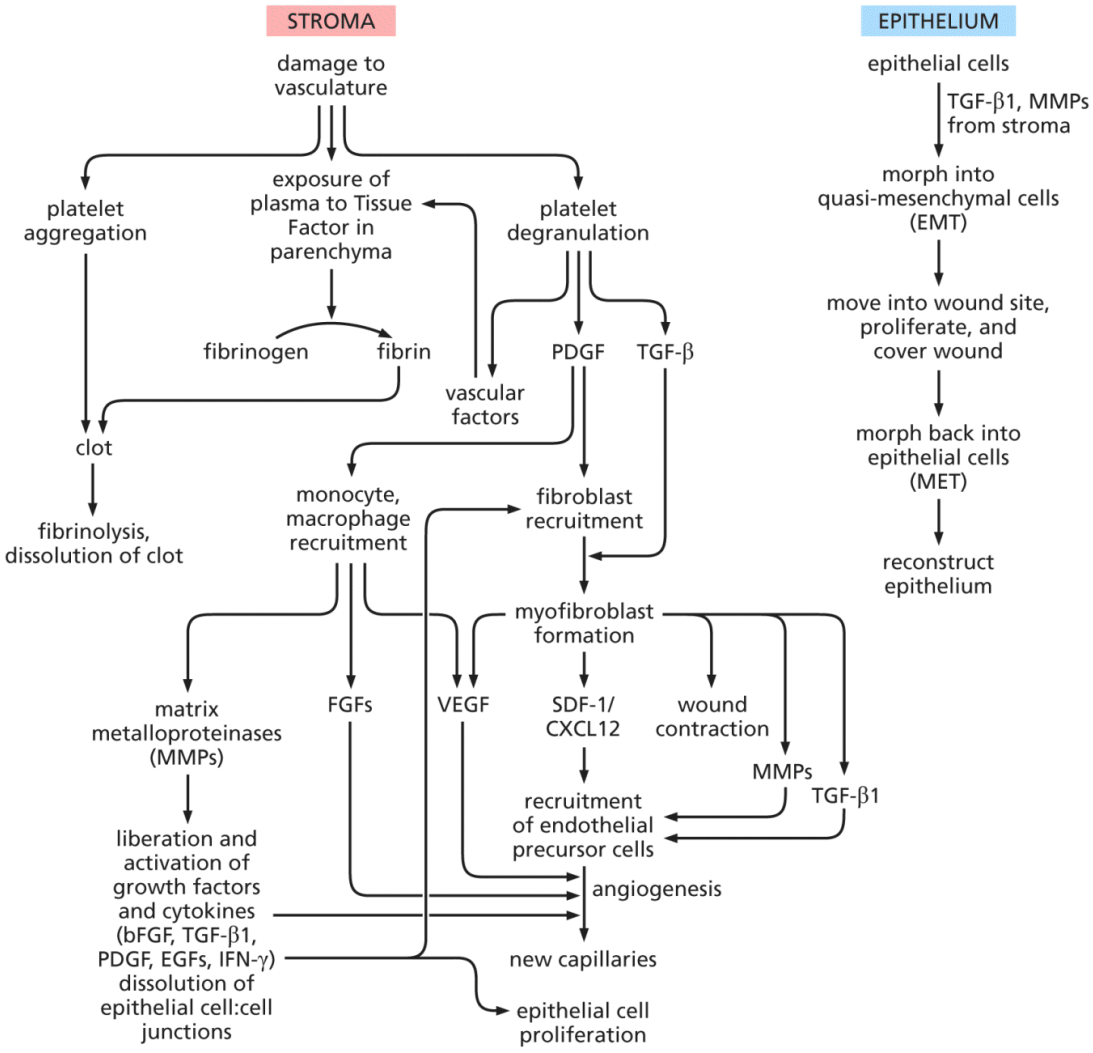


A scanning electron micrograph of a blood clot. Red blood cells are immobilized by thick mats of pale brown fibers.

Figure 13.12 Scanning EM of a blood clot This scanning electron micrograph, which has been colorized, shows that clots are composed of dense networks of fibrin fibers *(light brown*) that have trapped erythrocytes/red blood cells (*orange-red*). Prior to clotting, platelets undergo activation, which leads to the release of the granules seen in Figure S5.1. (Eye of Science/Science Source.)

The PDGF released by the platelets attracts fibroblasts and stimulates their proliferation (**Figure 13.13**). Thereafter, the platelet-derived TGF-β activates these fibroblasts, converting them into myofibroblasts, and induces the latter to release a class of secreted proteases termed matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs; **Table 13.1**),

which are also produced by macrophages that have been recruited in large numbers into the wound site. Unlike most secreted proteases, which have a serine in their catalytic clefts, MMPs carry zinc ions to aid in catalysis; indeed, these ions inspired their name. Activated fibroblasts also secrete mitogens, such as various fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), that can stimulate the proliferation of certain subtypes of epithelial cells.



Two flowcharts of wound healing. The first flowchart begins with damage to vasculature in the stroma. This leads to platelet aggregation, exposure of plasma to Tissue Factor in parenchyma, and platelet degranulation. The first two events lead to clot formation and eventually clot dissolution through fibrinolysis. Platelet degranulation leads to the recruitment of monocytes, macrophages, and fibroblasts, which eventually leads to epithelial cell proliferation and the formation of new capillaries. The second flowchart begins with epithelial cells, which under the influence of T G F-beta1 and M M Pees from the stroma

undertake epithelial-mesenchymal transition to morph into quasi-mesenchymal cells. These move into the wound site, proliferate, and cover the wound. They then undergo mesenchymal-to-epithelial transition to morph back into epithelial cells and reconstruct the epithelium.

Figure 13.13 Flowcharts of wound healing These flowcharts indicate many of the major events occurring after an epithelial tissue is wounded. Many of the changes occur in the stroma of the wounded tissue (*left*) and thereby provide a foundation for reconstructing the overlying epithelial cell layer (*right*). A short-term effect of wounding is the process of hemostasis—the stanching of further hemorrhage. It involves both the plugging of damaged vessels and the degranulation of platelets, which release several distinct growth factors (GFs), including importantly PDGF and TGF-β; in addition, the exposure of plasma and platelets to Tissue Factor (expressed on the surfaces of a wide variety of nonendothelial cell types) triggers the formation of fibrin and thus clot formation (see Figure 13.12). PDGF and TGF-β recruit and activate both macrophages and fibroblasts. Macrophages, in turn, produce a number of products that are critical to initiating wound healing, including MMPs (to remodel the extracellular matrix and liberate various GFs); this allows recruitment of more macrophages and stimulates the proliferation of epithelial cells. The fibroblasts are activated by the actions of TGF-β and CXCL12/SDF-1 and, functioning thereafter as myofibroblasts, produce more of these factors that function, together with macrophage products, to stimulate angiogenesis. The epithelial cells respond to these signals by activating EMT (epithelial–mesenchymal transition) programs (see Figure 13.15) that provide them with the ability to move into the wound site, proliferate, and eventually revert via an MET (mesenchymal–epithelia transition) program to the epithelial phenotypic state of the undamaged nearby epithelium.

Table 13.1 Some matrix metalloproteinases and their extracellular matrix substrates

Name of MMP[a]	**Alternative name of MMP**	**Major ECM substrates**[b]
MMP-1	collagenase-1	fibrillar collagens (collagen I, II, III)
MMP-2	gelatinase A	collagen IV, denatured collagens/gelatins

Name of MMP[a]	Alternative name of MMP	Major ECM substrates[b]
MMP-3	stromelysin-1	proteoglycans, glycoproteins (laminin, fibronectin, vitronectin)
MMP-7	matrilysin	similar to MMP-3
MMP-9	gelatinase B	similar to MMP-2
MMP-12	metalloelastase	elastin
MMP-14	MT1-MMP	fibrillar collagens, gelatins

Courtesy of L. Matrisian and B. Fingleton, adapted in part from information from K. Kessenbrock, V. Plaks and Z. Werb, *Cell* 141: 52–67, 2010.

Once released, the MMPs begin to degrade specific components of the extracellular matrix (ECM; see Table 13.1). This degradation has two major consequences. On the one hand, it allows for structural remodeling of the ECM, thereby carving out space for newly formed cells. On the other, it results, as cited above, in the release of a variety of growth factors that have been tethered in an inactive form to the proteoglycans of the ECM and now become solubilized and activated. Included among these are basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), TGF-β1, PDGF, several EGF-related factors, and interferon-γ (IFN-γ). (In addition, virtually every MMP has been found to act on a variety of non-ECM proteins in the extracellular space; among these substrates are the latent pro-enzyme forms of other proteases, which are converted into active enzymes following cleavage by MMPs.) These wound-healing associated factors appear to provide a compelling explanation for a phenomenon frequently observed in the oncology clinic (**Sidebar 13.4**).

Sidebar 13.4 Breast cancer surgery may lead to the stimulation of tumor growth

Epidemiological studies of breast cancer patients undergoing surgery (that is, partial or total mastectomy) for removal of their primary tumors have revealed a peak of

recurrence of breast cancers at the primary site as well as in distant anatomical sites about three years after surgery. The timing of these relapses suggests that the surgery is responsible for stimulating their formation. Examination of the fluids draining from the wound sites created by the surgery revealed the presence of potent mitogenic factors that are associated with the wound-healing process. Among these are mitogens for breast cancer cells, especially those cancer cells that overexpress the HER2/Neu receptor protein (see Figure 4.3). In addition, a burst of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) synthesis occurs following surgery; as discussed later in this chapter, VEGF is a potent stimulant of tumor angiogenesis. It is therefore plausible that surgery stimulates the proliferation of residual micrometastases (small deposits of metastatic cells) that are not detected and removed when the primary tumors are excised. Indeed, some have argued that the clinical relapses stimulated by surgery nullify much of the therapeutic benefit that should, by all rights, be achieved by the removal of primary tumors and nearby lymph nodes. The clinical importance of such surgery-stimulated tumor progression remains a matter of great contention.

Another clinical observation may eventually be found to bear on this issue: when Herceptin (a therapeutic monoclonal antibody to be described in Chapter 16 that blocks the action of the HER2/Neu receptor) is applied postoperatively in women who have borne relatively small, low-grade tumors, the rate of clinical relapse is reduced by as much as 50%. This stunning therapeutic success may, quite possibly, be associated with the ability of Herceptin to block stimulation of residual cancer cells by the growth factors elaborated during healing of the surgical wound site.

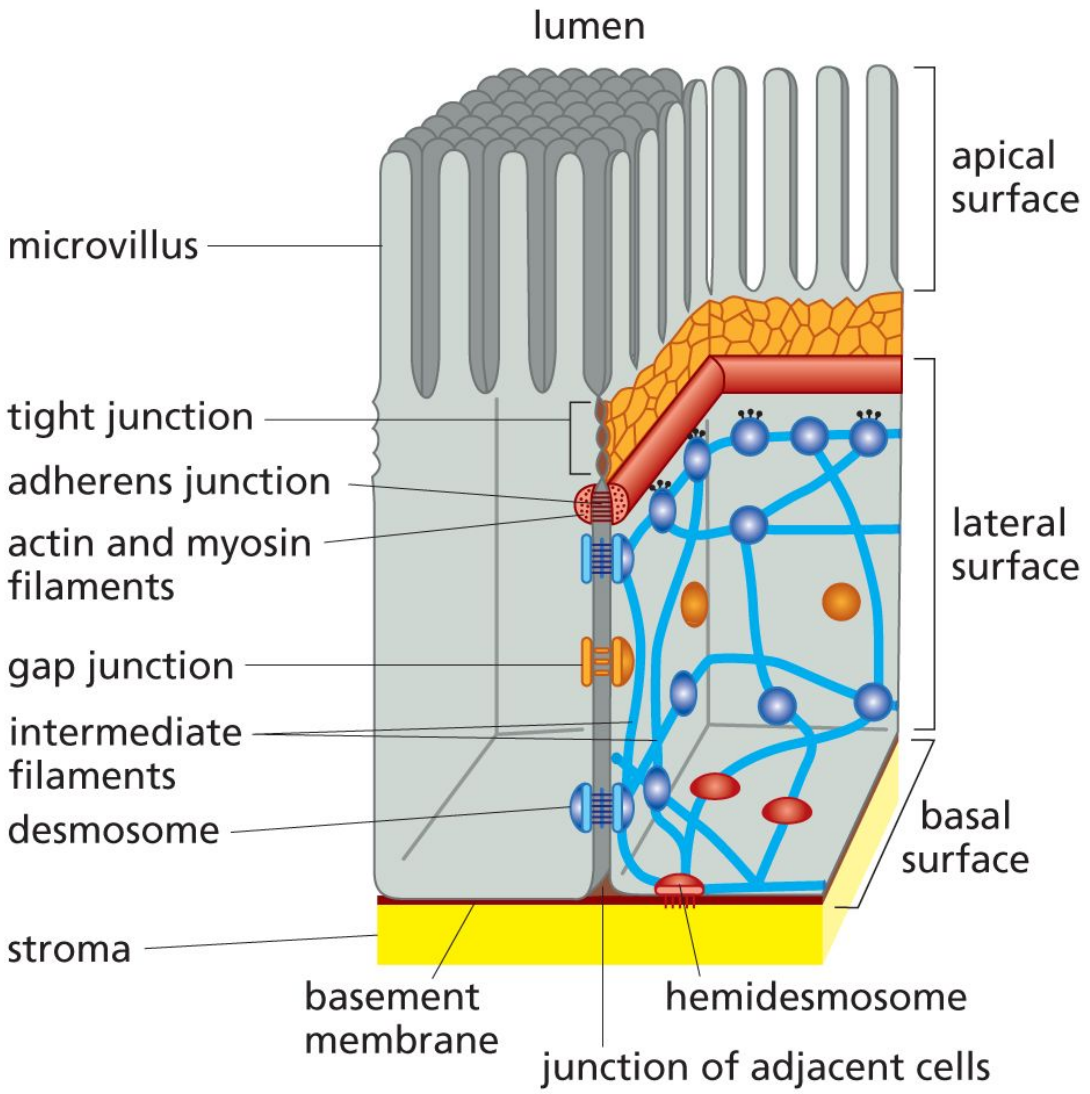
The growth factors released by platelets and those mobilized from the ECM then attract monocytes (which soon differentiate into several subtypes of macrophages) and another class of phagocytes, termed neutrophils, which infiltrate the wound site. (Yet other types of immune cells, including eosinophils, mast cells, and lymphocytes, are also recruited to this site.) These recruited cells scavenge and remove foreign matter, bacteria, and tissue debris from the wound site; at the same time, they release and activate mitogenic factors, such as fibroblast growth factors (FGFs) and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). Such factors proceed to stimulate endothelial cells in the vicinity to multiply and to construct new capillaries—the process of angiogenesis (sometimes termed neoangiogenesis). As we will see shortly, VEGF and its cognate receptors play multiple roles in angiogenesis and related hematopoietic processes (**Table 13.2**).

Table 13.2 Properties of VEGFs

capillary and lymph duct formation

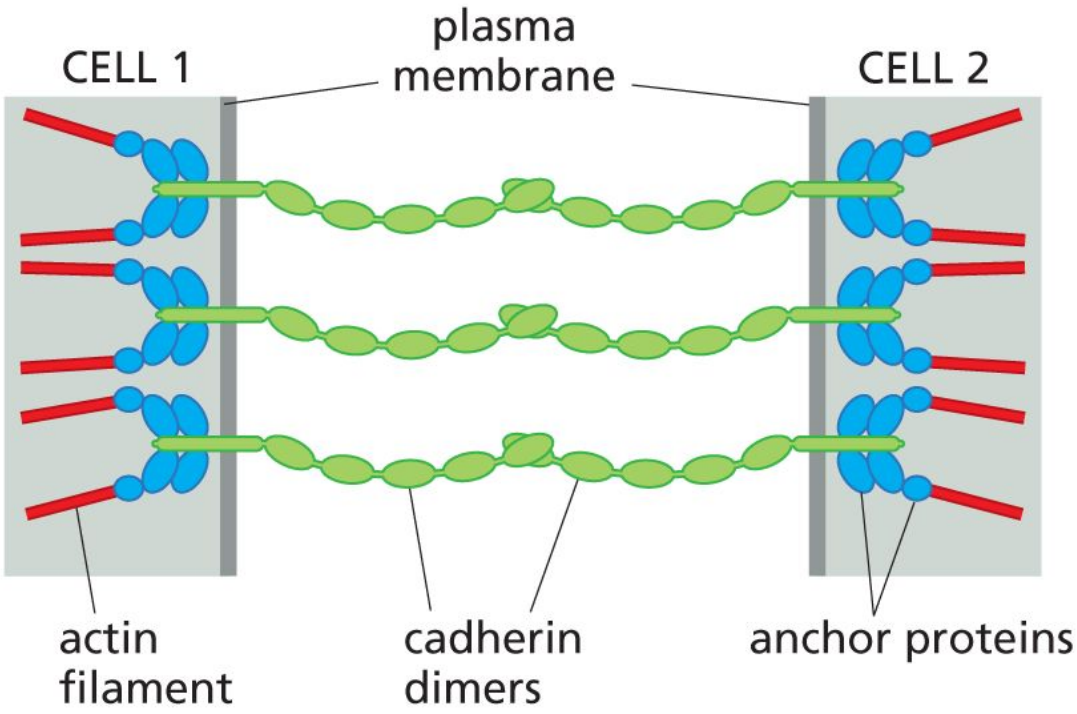
monocyte migration
hematopoiesis
recruitment of hematopoietic progenitor cells from the bone marrow
regulation of the endothelial cell pool during development
capillary permeability

While all this is occurring, largely in the stromal region of a wound site, the epithelial cells around the edges of the wound are undergoing their own alterations. Their goal is to reconstruct the epithelial sheet that existed prior to wounding. To do so, epithelial cells reduce their adhesion to the ECM, specifically to the basement membrane (see Section 2.2 and Figure 2.3) that separates them from the stromal compartment (**Figure 13.14A**). By severing these connections, the epithelial cells gain increased mobility.



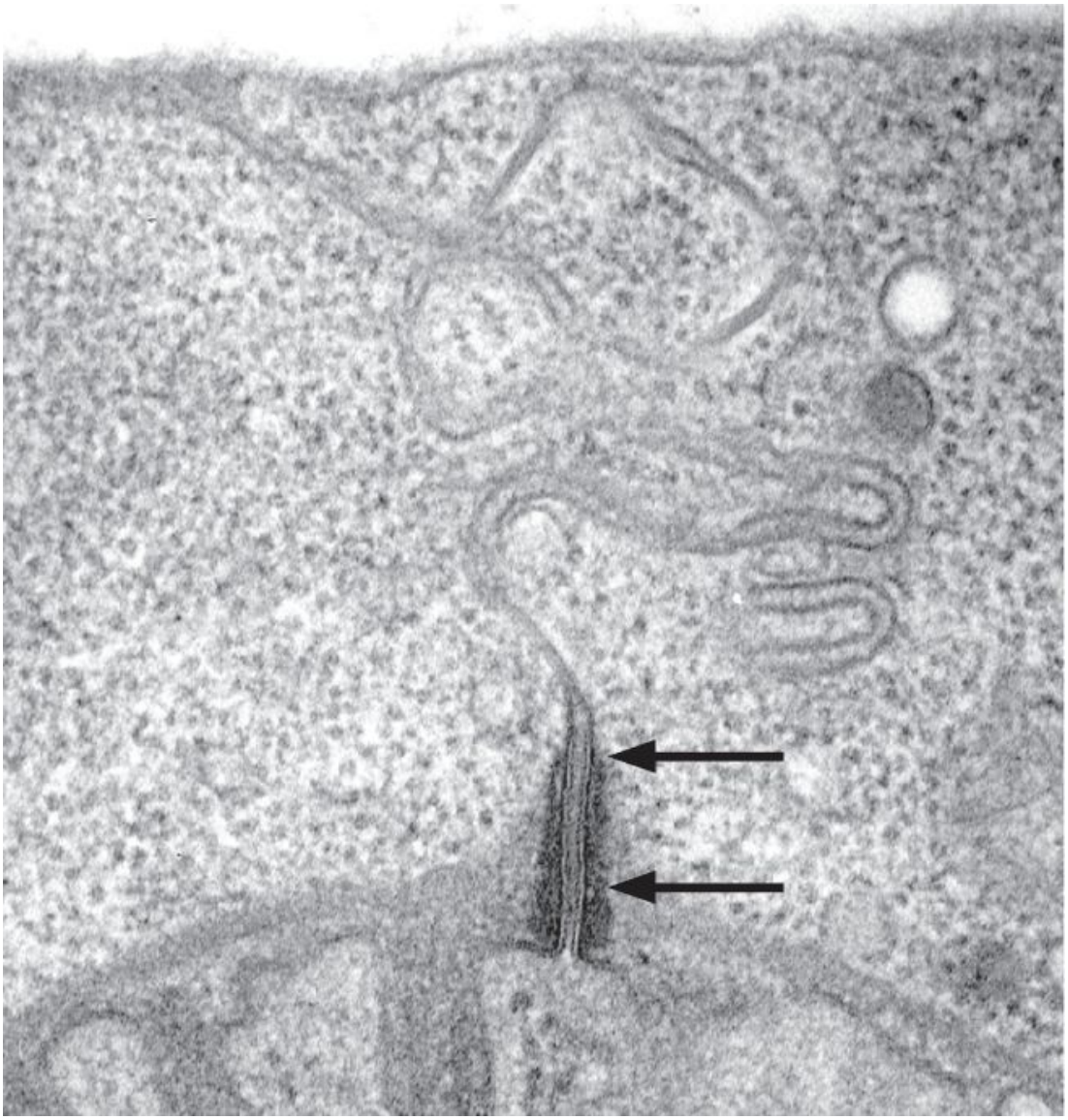
A diagrammatic cross section of intestinal epithelium. On top, covered with microvilli and facing the lumen, is the apical surface. At the bottom is the stroma, separated from the cells above it by the basement membrane. Parts of two cells are shown atop the basement membrane. Within the basal surface of one of those cells, a hemidesmosome penetrates down to the stroma. The rest of the cell contains intermediate filaments. The two cells have a vertical junction between them, where their two lateral surfaces meet. This junction contains, from top to bottom, a tight junction, an adherens junction, containing actin and myosin filaments, a gap junction, and a desmosome.

(A)



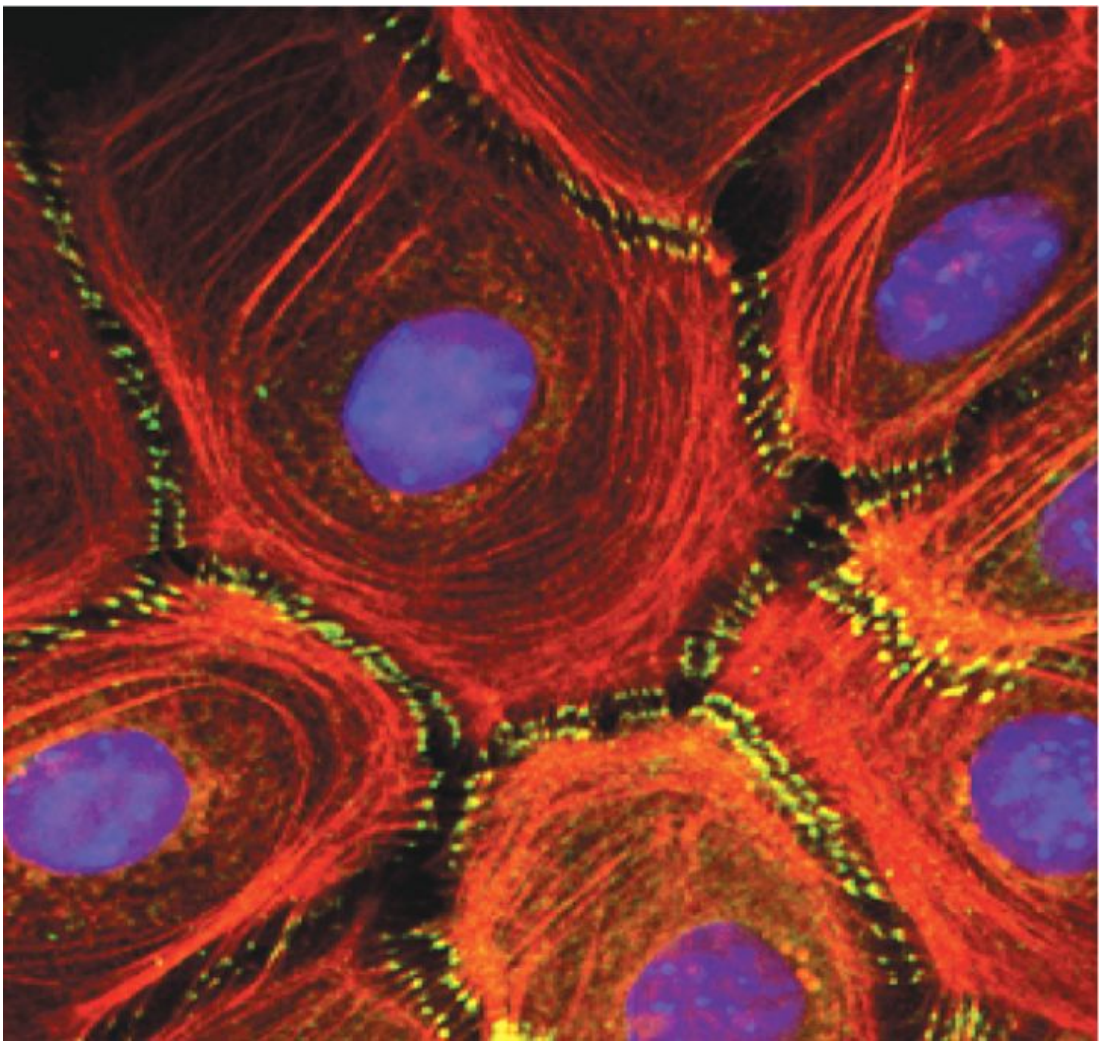
A diagram showing a gap between two cells bridged by a ladder of cadherin dimers linking up from either side. Each cadherin dimer is attached to its home cell by anchor proteins just inside the plasma membrane. These proteins, in turn, are tethered in place by actin filaments.

(B)



A transmission electron micrograph of epithelial tissue in cross section. Two arrows indicate a dark, tapered vertical streak near the bottom of the image.

(C)



An immunofluorescence micrograph of several cells, each with a blue-purple nucleus surrounded by many red fibrous rings. The cells crowd against each other, but running between the cells is a dark border filled with pairs of bright yellow dots.

(D)

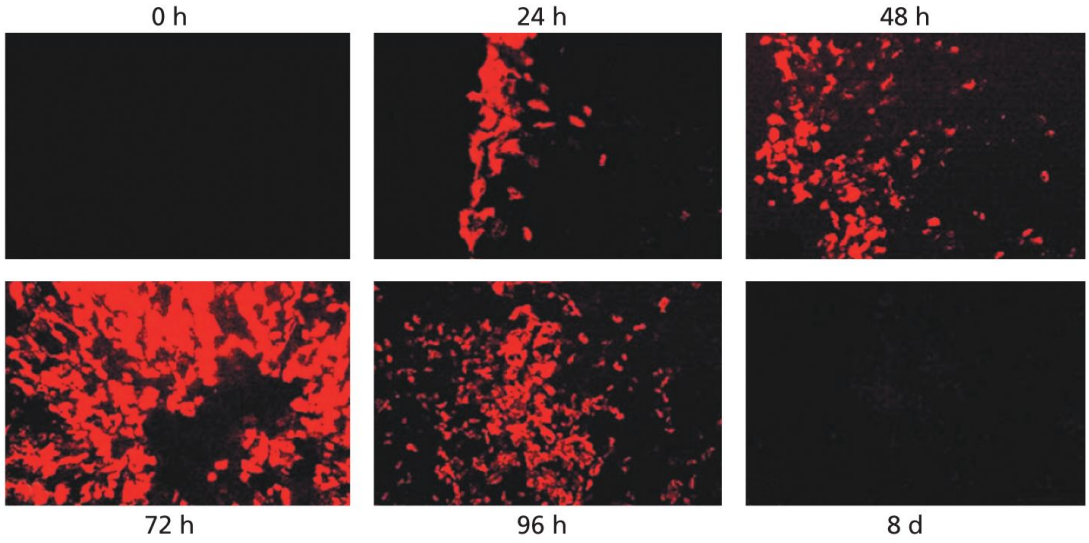
Figure 13.14 Attachments of epithelial cells to their neighbors and the basement membrane (A) Epithelial cells are anchored via hemidesmosomes on their basal surfaces to the underlying basement membrane (*yellow*) and via their lateral surfaces to adjacent epithelial cells (see also Figure 13.10A). These lateral connections include tight junctions (which create a fluid seal between the luminal and basolateral spaces, *light orange*), adherens junctions and desmosomes (which link the cytoskeletons of adjacent epithelial cells, *red*, *blue*), and gap junctions (which permit low–molecular-weight solutes to pass between adjacent cells, *light orange*). (B) The adherens junctions, which play a central role in regulating

epithelial cell behavior, depend on oligomerization between E-cadherin molecules (*light green*) displayed by two adjacent cells. The “anchor proteins” (*blue*), which include prominently α- and β-catenin and p120, form physical bridges between the cytoplasmic tails of E-cadherin proteins and the actin cytoskeleton (*red*; see also Figure 6.19A). As discussed in Section 7.10 and illustrated in Figure 6.19B, β-catenin has a second, quite independent function: when it is not sequestered in adherens junctions, it may move into the nucleus and serve as a subunit of a transcription factor complex that drives the expression of key genes. (C) This transmission electron micrograph shows the adherens junctions (*arrows*) between two closely apposed plasma membranes of adjacent epithelial cells, in this instance those creating the intestinal lining of the worm *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Virtually identical structures are seen in mammalian cells. (D) This immunofluorescence micrograph illustrates the interactions between the lateral surfaces of neighboring keratinocytes in 2-dimensional monolayer culture. E-cadherin “zippers” (y*ellow*) form adherens junctions between neighboring cells and are attached via their cytoplasmic domains and other intermediary proteins (*not shown*) to the actin cytoskeletons of these cells (*red*). Nuclei are stained *blue-purple.* Some of these interactions in actual epithelial tissues can be visualized via immunostaining of E-cadherin and laminin (a basement membrane protein). (A, from H. Lodish et al., Molecular Cell Biology, 6th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman, 2008. With permission from Macmillan. B, from B. Alberts et al., Molecular Biology of the Cell, 4th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2002. C, courtesy of D. Hall. D, from M. Perez-Moreno, C. Jamora and E. Fuchs, *Cell* 112:535–548, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

The epithelial cells also sever their attachments to one another. These side-by-side associations are stabilized in part by adherens junctions (Figure 13.14B–D), which are assembled as associations of E-cadherin molecules that are displayed by adjacent epithelial cells and tether the cells’ closely apposed plasma membranes to one another. Accordingly, E-cadherin expression is suppressed in the epithelial cells that are situated around the edges of a wound site and is often replaced by N-cadherin, another cell–cell adhesion molecule that is normally displayed by mesenchymal cells, notably fibroblasts. (These N-cadherin molecules, though related structurally to E-cadherin, do not reestablish adherens junctions between the epithelial cells, because they bind more weakly to one another.)

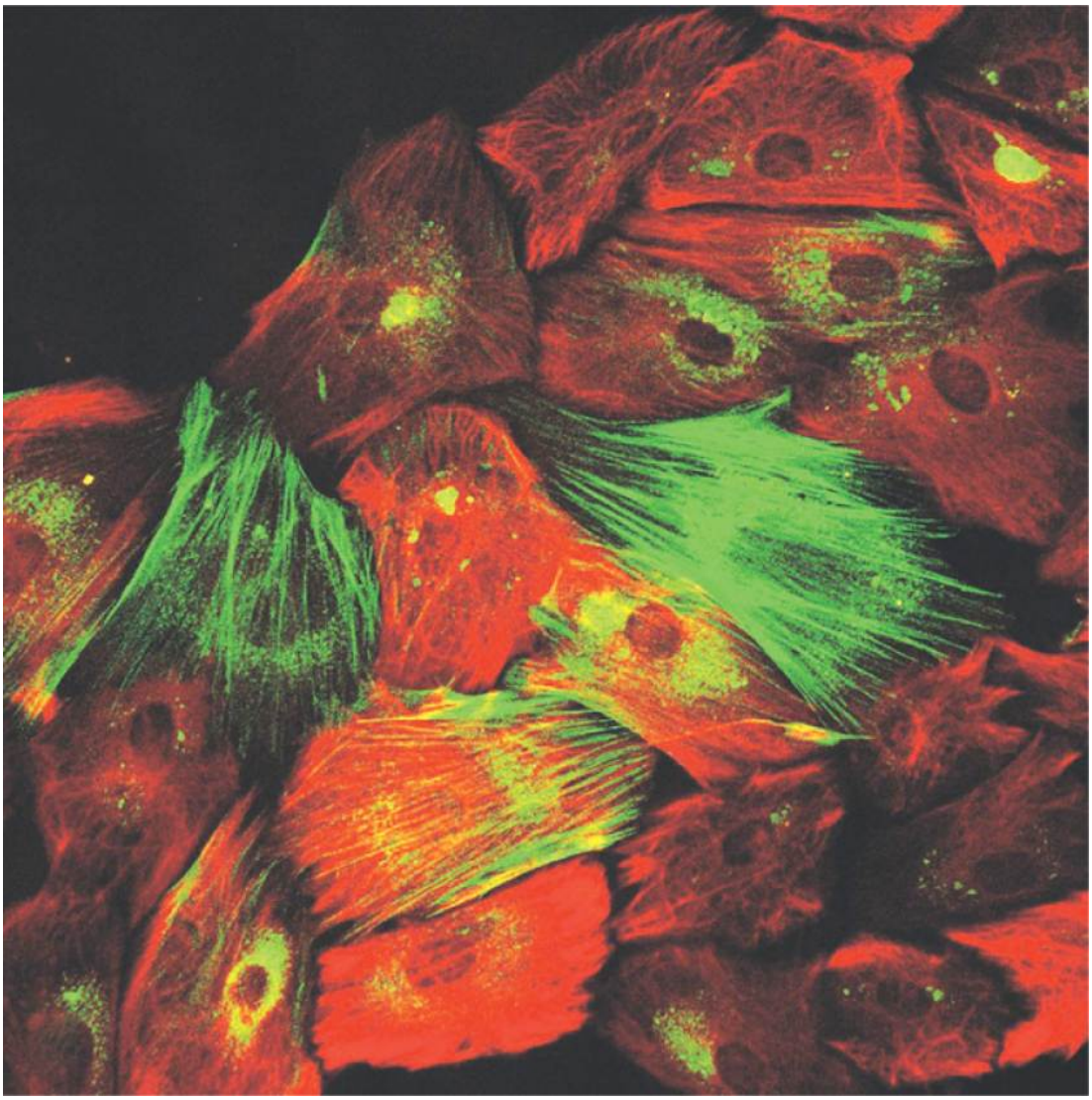
While shifting their display of cell-surface cadherins, the epithelial cells at the edge of a wound undergo a major change in phenotype, which causes them to assume, at least superficially, a fibroblastic appearance (**Figure 13.15**). This profound shift is termed an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT) and enables the epithelial cells to become motile and invasive. The EMT program that becomes activated in these cells involves profound changes in their biology beyond those apparent under the microscope. Thus,

induction of several hundred genes creates a cell-biological *program* that imparts a variety of mesenchymal traits, causing these cells to transit from a fully epithelial state into a mixed epithelial/mesenchymal (quasi-mesenchymal) phenotypic state. Having dissolved the adherens junctions that bound them on their lateral surfaces to one another (see Figure 2.4), the resulting quasi-mesenchymal cells are now freed to move into the wound site and fill in the gap in the epithelium previously created by wounding.



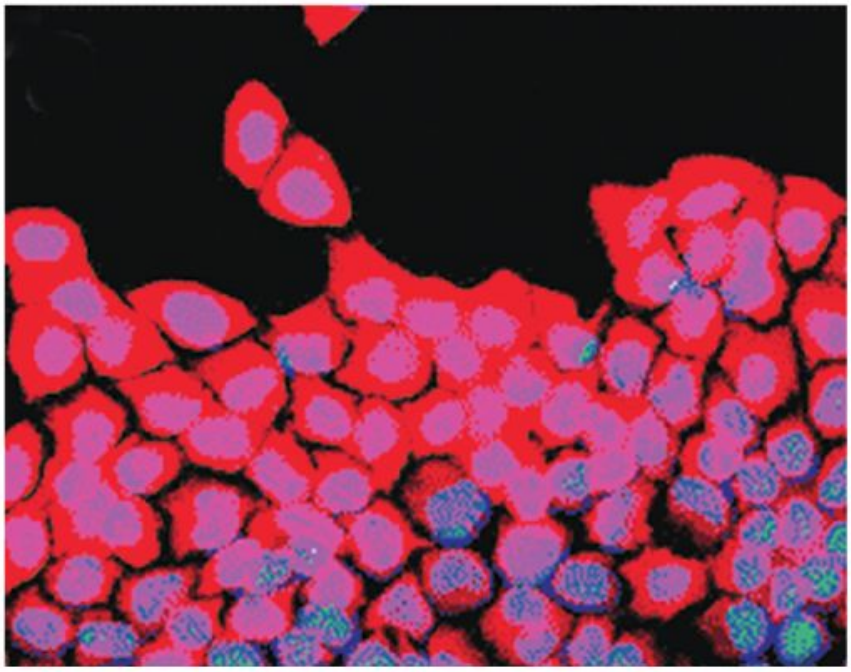
A series of six fluorescence microscopy images, each with a time stamp. The 0 hour image is black. The 24 hour image has an irregular streak of red splotches down the middle. Over the course of the 48, 72, and 96 hour images this streak explodes, so to speak, leftward and rightward, and then recedes. The 8 day image is black.

(A)

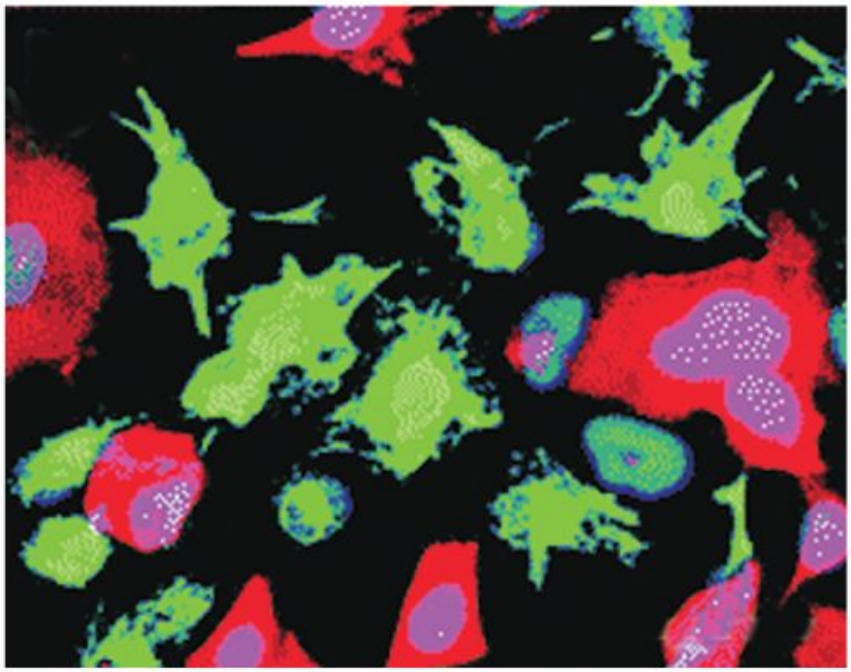


A fluorescence microscopy image of what looks like a heap of cells tightly bound together by fiber capsules or bundles. Most of the bundles are red with bits of green, but two are bright green.

(B)



control culture



+ MMP-3 for 3 days

Two fluorescence microscopy images. The upper one, labeled control culture, contains tightly packed cells with red borders that are mostly pink in the center, but in a few cases contain many small blue or blue-green dots. The lower image, labeled plus M M P-3 for 3 days, contains a loosely packed mix

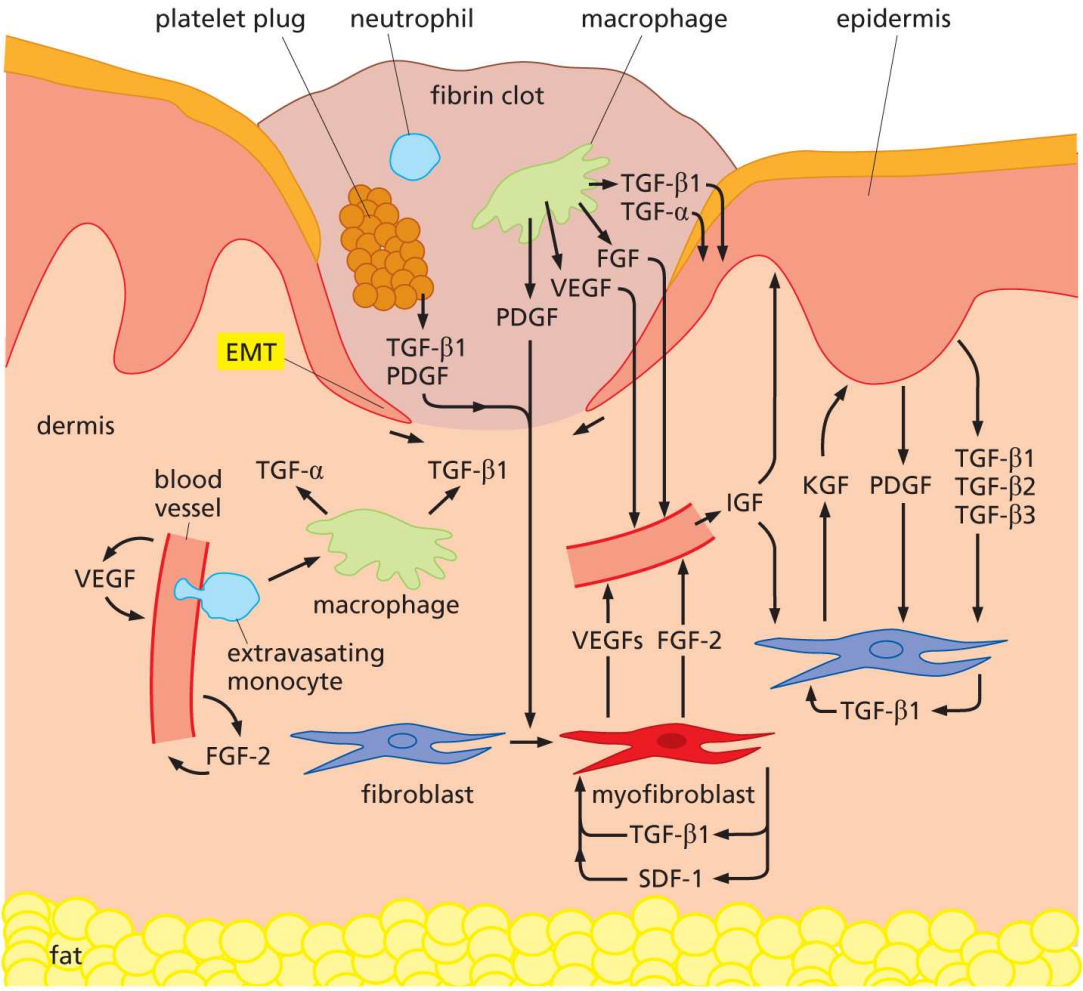
of irregularly shaped cells, some bright red with pink centers and others bright green.
(C)

Figure 13.15 The epithelial–mesenchymal transition Multiple signals and conditions trigger activation of EMT programs, including prominently the wounding of epithelial cell sheets studied here. (A) A confluent monolayer of MCF10A cells [a line of nontransformed, immortalized human mammary epithelial cells (MECs)], has been disturbed by removal of a patch of cells (*at left of each image*). Before wounding, no vimentin is expressed by these cells. However, soon after wounding, the epithelial cells at the edge of the wound undergo a partial epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), enter into a quasi-mesenchymal phenotypic state, express vimentin (characteristic of more mesenchymal cells; *red*), migrate into the wound site, proliferate, and fill the wound site. After 8 days, the cell monolayer has become confluent, and these cells revert to a fully epithelial phenotype and shut down vimentin expression [indicating a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET)], thereby reconstructing an intact epithelium. (B) In some cell types in culture, individual cells may spontaneously shift from an epithelial phenotype, indicated by cytokeratin expression (*red*), to a more mesenchymal phenotype, indicated by α-smooth muscle actin expression (*green*). This mirrors a phenotypic plasticity that is apparent in certain cells during early embryogenesis and tumorigenesis. (C) An EMT was provoked here by a 3-day-long exposure to matrix metalloproteinase-3 (MMP-3), which may trigger an EMT through its ability to degrade E-cadherin. Thus, some of the epithelial cells have shut down expression of many typical epithelial cell markers, such as cytokeratins (*dark pink*) and E-cadherin (*not shown*), and express instead mesenchymal proteins, such as vimentin (*green*), fibronectin, and N-cadherin (*not shown*). In addition, they change their typically polygonal shape (*top*) to a fibroblastic shape (*bottom*) and concomitantly acquire motility and invasiveness. (A, from C. Gilles et al., *J. Cell Sci.* 112:4615–4625, 1999. With permission from Company of Biologists. B, from O.W. Petersen et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 162:391–402, 2003. C, from M.D. Sternlicht et al., *Cell* 98:137–146, 1999. Both with permission from Elsevier.)

Although the EMT, as described above, can be observed in monolayers of cultured epithelial cells, within a living tissue, the triggering of this program is aided by stromal cells that underlie epithelia. The matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) secreted by stromal cells liberate and activate latent growth factors, such as TGF-β1, that have been stored in the extracellular matrix. In ways that are only partially understood, these released factors stimulate and reinforce expression of the EMT program in the epithelial cells. Importantly, the EMT is only a temporary shift in cell phenotype. After the migrating cells have moved into position, proliferated, and covered the wound site,

they reconstruct the epithelium by reverting to an epithelial state via the program termed the mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET; see Figure 13.15A). As a consequence, once wound healing is complete, the cells in the reconstituted epithelium show no trace of having passed transiently through a quasi-mesenchymal state. We will discuss the EMT program in much greater detail in the next chapter because it plays a key role in enabling carcinoma cells to acquire malignant traits. In fact, a complex array of heterotypic signals impinge on epithelial cells to encourage them to activate their previously silent EMT programs, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.4**.

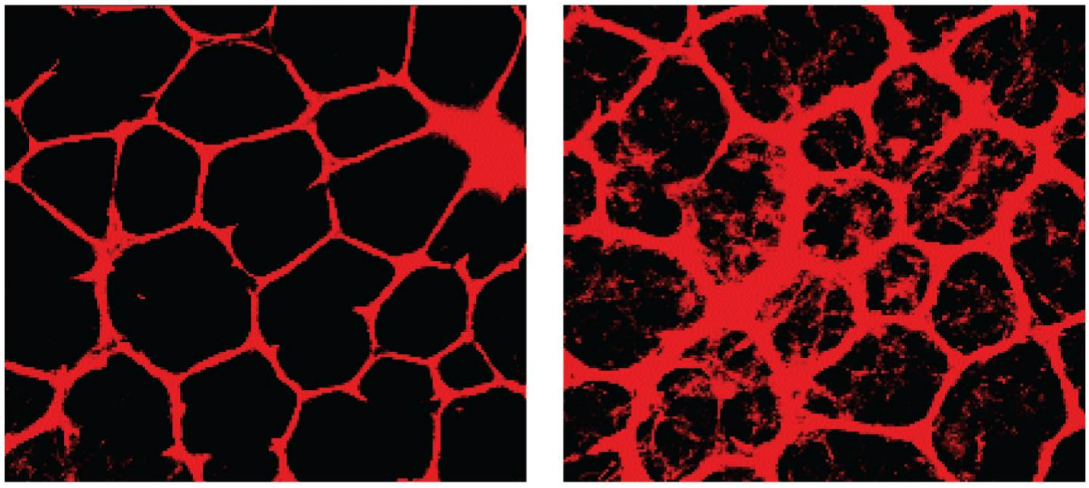
If we compare these processes (**Figure 13.16**) with the interactions of epithelial cancer cells and their stromal neighbors, we find striking parallels between wound healing and tumorigenesis. Among the similarities between the two is the presence of clumps of fibrin in the tumor-associated stroma. In the case of tumors, this does not derive from traumatic damage to blood vessels. Instead, the capillaries within tumors are constitutively leaky, unlike those in normal tissues (**Figure 13.17A**). Later, we will discuss the causes of this leakiness. For the moment, suffice it to say that the permeability of the capillary walls and venules (small veins) allows fibrinogen molecules from the plasma to come in direct contact with cancer cells; this provokes, through a series of intermediate reactions, the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin and the formation of large bundles of fibrin strands (Figure 13.17B and C).



An illustration of the pathways involved in wound healing. An epidermal puncture is plugged by a large, round fibrin clot. Shown within the clot are a platelet plug, a neutrophil, and a macrophage. The hole in the epidermis is growing shut beneath the clot, with the growing edge labeled E M T. The dermis lies beneath the epidermis and above a layer of fat. Within the epidermis, multiple proteins and cell types participate in the healing process, including the formation of new blood vessels.

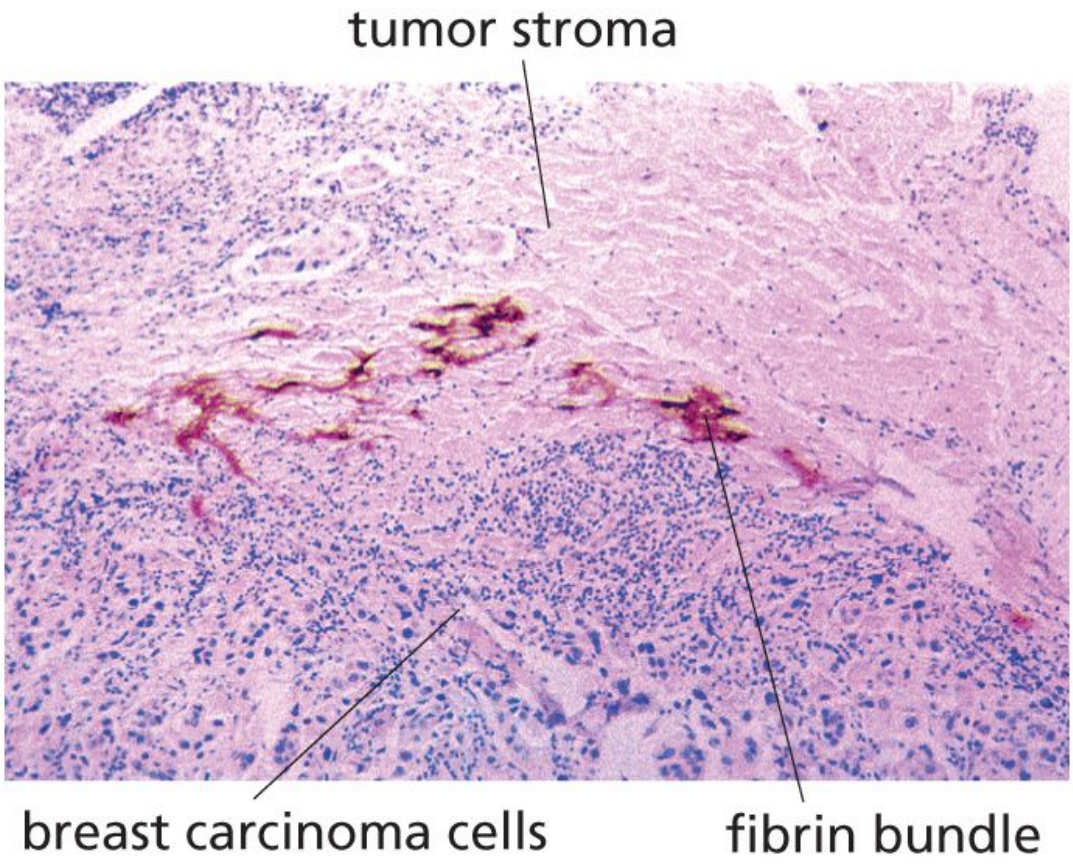
Figure 13.16 A program of epithelial wound healing This illustration depicts the heterotypic signaling occurring after the skin, a typical epithelial tissue, is wounded. A fibrin clot that carries platelets and red blood cells/erythrocytes (see Figure 13.12) initially fills the wound site. Day 3 of the wound-healing process is sometimes termed its inflammatory phase, because of the involvement of cell types that are associated with inflammation, notably neutrophils and monocytes; they are involved in removing cell debris, the clot, and invading bacteria. In addition, macrophages, which derive from differentiation of extravasated monocytes, release TGF-β1 and TGF-α; these factors stimulate the proliferation of

nearby epithelial cells from the epidermis and induce them to undergo an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT). Tongues of the resulting cells, now exhibiting mesenchymal behavior, invade under the clot from both sides in order to cover the wound site (see Figure 13.15A). At the same time, TGF-β1 and PDGF-A and -B, which were released by the platelets during initial clot formation, stimulate the proliferation of fibroblasts (*blue-purple*) in the underlying dermal stroma and induce them to convert into the activated fibroblasts termed myofibroblasts (*red*); because of their contractility, myofibroblasts will pull the sides of the wound together. Myofibroblasts also release angiogenic factors, notably VEGFs and FGF-2 (fibroblast growth factor-2), which stimulate the formation of new blood vessels in the stroma underlying the wound site. Keratinocyte growth factor (KGF), another isoform of FGF, is released by mesenchymal cells and stimulates epithelial cell proliferation. In addition, insulin-like growth factors (IGFs) provide survival signals to various cells in the wound-healing site. Finally, after the wounded stroma is covered, the quasi-mesenchymal cells that had undergone an EMT revert, via a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET), to an epithelial state, thereby reconstituting the epithelium (*not shown*). (Redrawn from A.J. Singer and R.A.F. Clark, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 341:738–746, 1999. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)



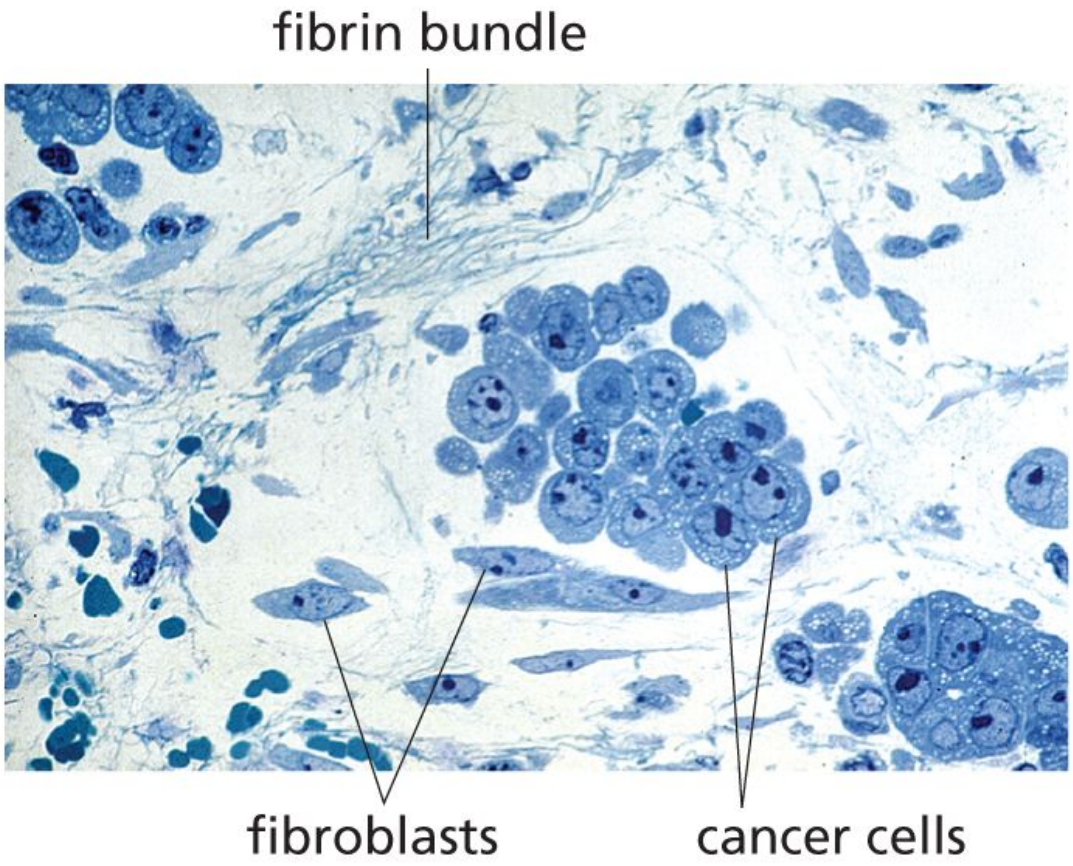
A comparison of the results of injecting red dye into normal microvasculature and into tumor-associated microvasculature. In normal tissue, the dye remains confined within the capillaries, whereas in tumor-associated tissue, it leaks into the surrounding parenchyma.

(A)



A histology image with breast cancer tissue, characterized by many blue nuclei at the bottom and more pinkish tumor stroma at top. The border between the two regions contains patches of brown fibrin bundles.

(B)



An image with a cluster of round cancer cells in the middle, a few horizontally elongated fibroblasts below, and a fibrin bundle above.

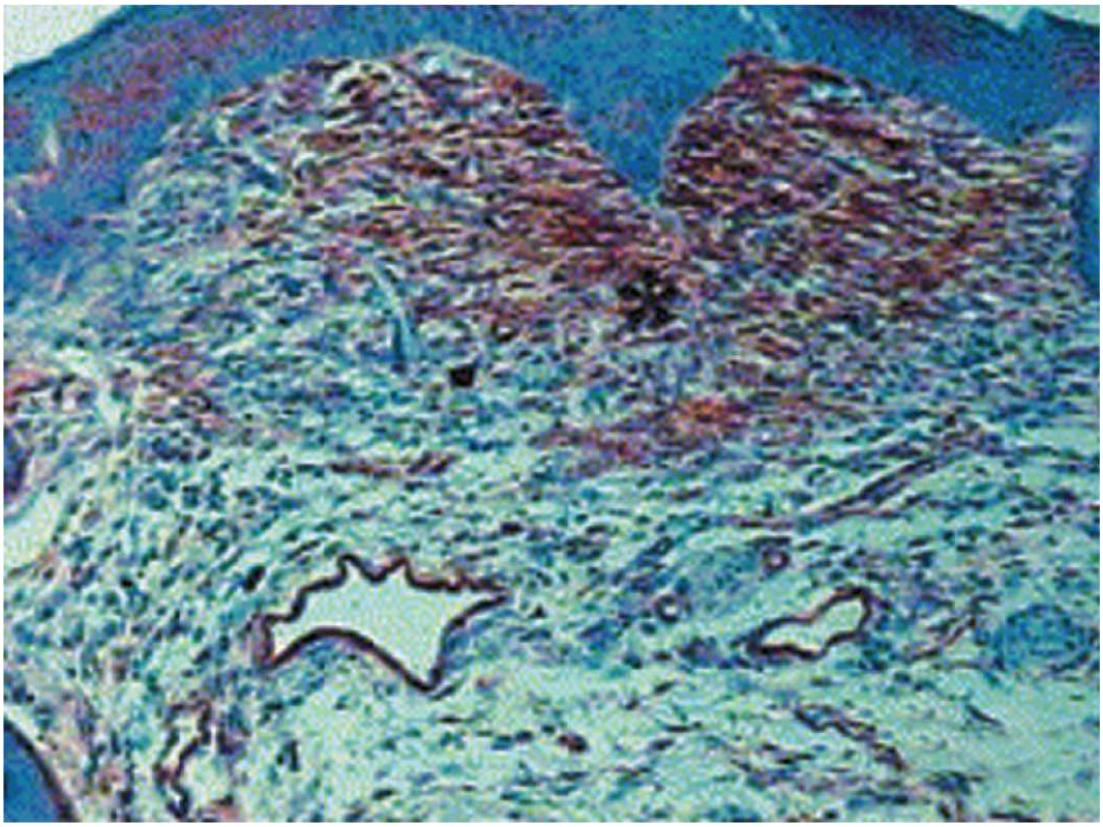
(C)

Figure 13.17 Capillary leakiness and deposition of fibrin bundles in the tumor-associated stroma(A) Injection of red dextran dye into normal microvasculature reveals that the walls of associated capillaries have relatively low permeability, as indicated by the sharply delineated profiles of these vessels (*left*). However, when injected into tumor-associated microvasculature, the dye leaks out of the capillaries and diffuses into the nearby parenchyma, yielding diffusely staining outlines of vessels (*right*). (B) The leakiness of tumor-associated microvasculature results in the continuous leaking of thrombin and fibrinogen molecules from the plasma into the parenchyma surrounding blood vessels. Tissue Factor, a protein displayed on the surface of cancer cells and many other nonendothelial cell types, activates plasma-derived thrombin upon contact, whereupon thrombin, functioning as a protease, converts fibrinogen into fibrin (see Figure 13.12). This results in the extensive network of fibrin bundles (*dark red*) seen here at the border between actively growing breast cancer cells (*below*) and the tumor stroma (*above*). (C) The fibrin bundles form an extracellular matrix

to which migrating cells, such as fibroblasts (*below cluster of cancer cells*) as well as endothelial cells (*not seen*), can attach, using it as a substrate on which they can move forward. In many tumors, such as this guinea pig liver carcinoma of bile duct origin, the fibrin matrix may eventually be dissolved by the process of *fibrinolysis* and replaced by a collagenous matrix. (A, courtesy of R. Muschel. B, from C.G. Colpaert et al., *Histopathology* 42:530–540, 2003. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C, from H.F. Dvorak, *Am. J. Pathol.* 162:1747–1757, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

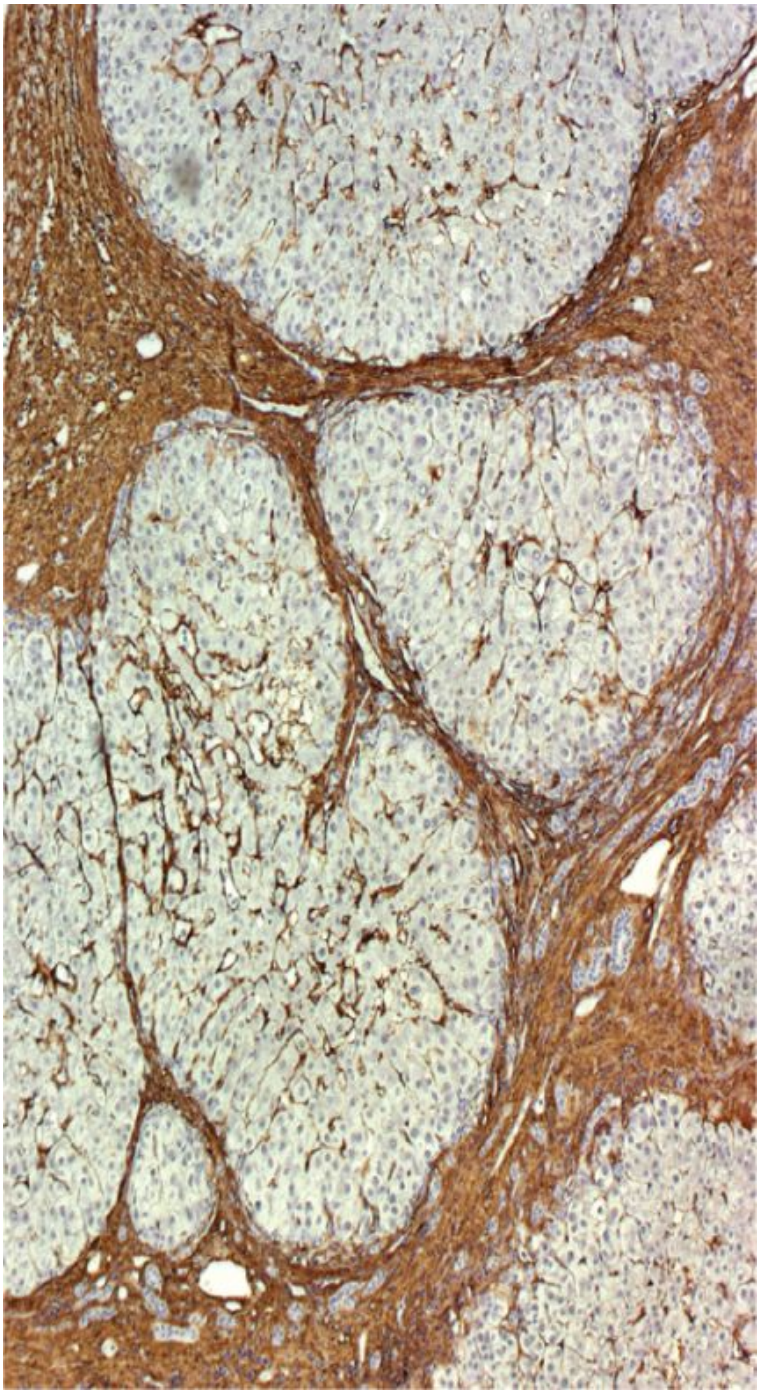
Many kinds of cancer cells, including those forming carcinomas of the breast, prostate, colon, and lung, continuously release significant levels of PDGF. This contrasts with the situation in wounds, in which PDGF is released in a brief burst by platelets as they form the initial blood clot (see Figure S5.1). As is the case in wound healing, the targets of the PDGF produced by cancer cells are mesenchymal cells in the stroma that display PDGF receptors, including smooth muscle cells, fibroblasts, and macrophages. PDGF functions here both as an attractant and as a mitogen for these stromal cells and appears to be the most important signaling molecule used by carcinoma cells to recruit and stimulate the proliferation of stromal cells. In breast cancers, for example, the level of PDGF expression generally increases with increased degree of tumor progression, which may explain the high proportions of stroma present in many advanced carcinomas; an extensive stroma, including high levels of collagens, is especially evident in adenocarcinomas of the pancreas. Indeed, in a variety of carcinomas, a high ratio of stromal to epithelial cells represents an unfavorable prognosis for the cancer patient.

The PDGF released by carcinoma cells initially succeeds in recruiting fibroblasts into the fibrin matrix. At the same time, the fibrin matrix (see Figure 13.17B and C) provides an important scaffolding that helps these recruited mesenchymal cells to attach, via integrins, and migrate. The invading stromal cells remodel this “provisional matrix” by degrading many of the initially formed fibrin molecules and replacing them with a more permanent matrix that is assembled from the collagen secreted by the myofibroblasts (**Figure 13.18**). This sequence of steps loosely parallels those occurring during wound healing.



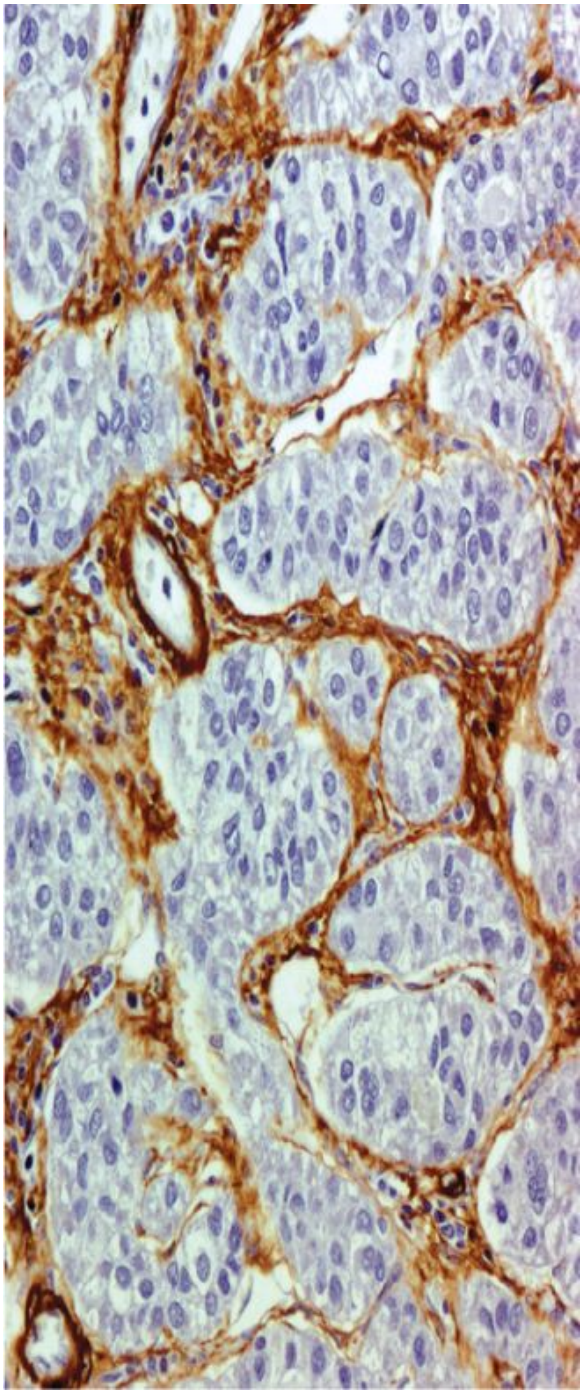
A mostly blue histology imagebut an area near what looks like an avulsed surface is brown.

(A)



A histology image of pale blobs and the spaces between them filled by a dense tangle of brown fibers.

(B)



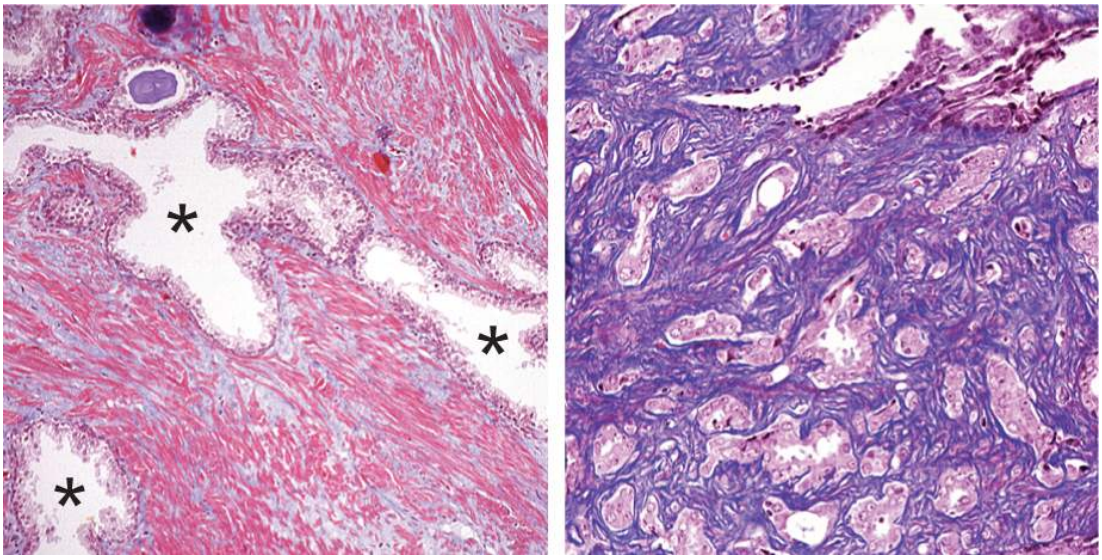
A histology image very similar to Part B, except that within the pale blobs blue nuclei are visible.

(C)

Figure 13.18 Myofibroblasts Myofibroblasts arise in sites of wound healing, during inflammation, and in tumor-associated stroma, in part through

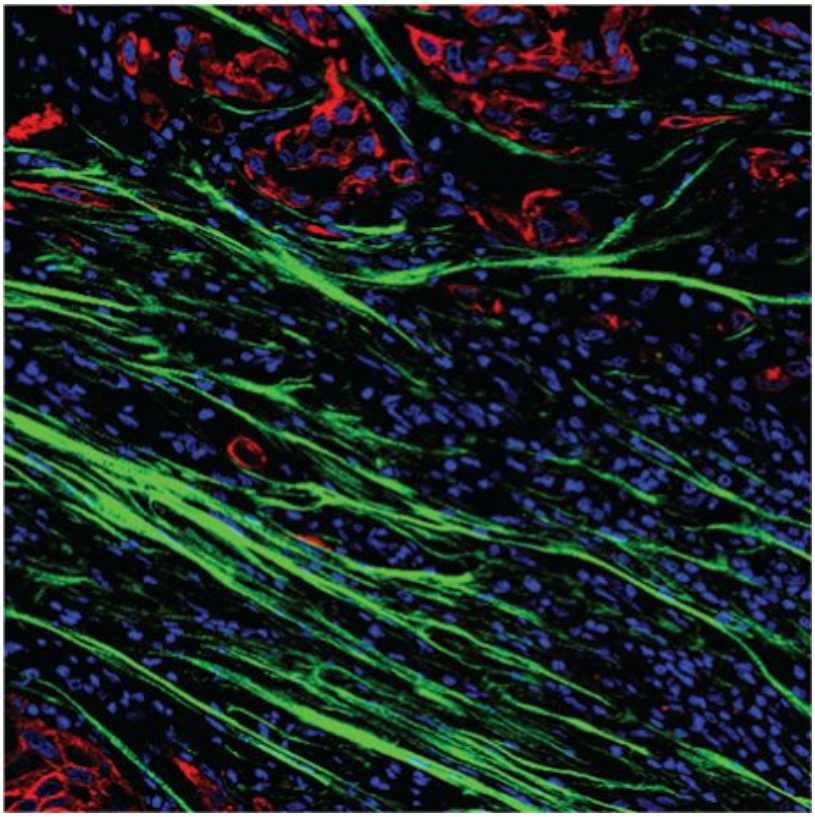
differentiation of stromal fibroblasts (see Figure 13.16) and recruitment of myofibroblast precursors, possibly fibrocytes and mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs), from the circulation. Their presence is revealed typically by their expression of α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA). (A) Staining for α-SMA–positive myofibroblasts (*reddish brown*) shows them present in abundance 3 days after the skin of a mouse has suffered a wound. (B) Chronically inflamed tissues acquire a fibrotic stroma, such as the cirrhotic liver seen here stained with anti-α-SMA antibody, which reveals the presence of masses of myofibroblasts (*brown*). (C) A hepatocellular carcinoma stained with anti-α-SMA antibody (*brown*) reveals the striking resemblance of the stroma of a chronically inflamed tissue (panel B) to the stroma of a carcinoma arising in that tissue. (A, from P. Martin et al., *Curr. Biol.* 13:1122–1128, 2003. With permission from Elsevier. B and C, from A. Desmouliere, A. Guyot and G. Gabbiani, *Int. J. Dev. Biol.* 48:509–517, 2004. With permission from UPV/EHU Press.)

Recent work has revealed the complexity of carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) (**Figure 13.19**). At least in the context of pancreatic adenocarcinoma, those that were near the carcinoma cells expressed α-smooth muscle acting (α-SMA), which is known to be induced by TGF-β released by carcinoma cells. These CAFs produced prodigious amounts of type I collagen, which eventually creates the desmoplastic (that is, fibrous, hard) stroma that is typical of this very aggressive tumor. (Quantitative physical measurements of the solid stresses, that is, the hardness of pancreatic carcinomas indicates that these tumors are 100 times harder than, for example, glioblastomas.) Yet other CAFs, situated further away from islands of carcinoma cells lack elevated α-SMA expression and instead released pro-inflammatory molecules, prominently interleukin-6 (IL6).



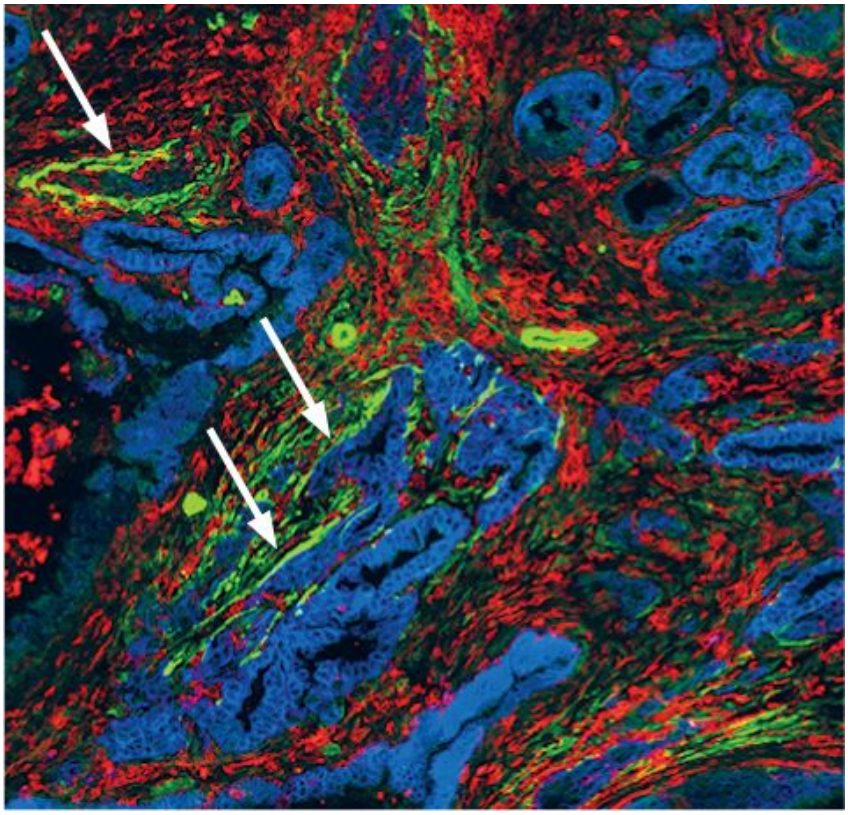
Two histology images. In the first one, smooth pink tissue is interrupted by white ducts marked by asterisks. In the second image, purplish tissue is more granular.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image in which many parallel green streaks run diagonally across a field of blue nuclei.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image dominated with swirls of red and blue, but there are a few streaks of green visible. Three of the longest green streaks have arrows pointing to them.

(C)

Figure 13.19 Micrograph of normal stroma and desmoplastic stroma The histologically complex stroma of normal tissue may eventually be replaced by the desmoplastic stroma of an advanced carcinoma. Here we see normal human prostate tissue (*left panel*) stained with Masson's trichrome stain, which reveals the extensive smooth muscle cells in the stroma as *pink*; normal ducts (*asterisks*) are scattered throughout this stroma. In contrast, an advanced prostate carcinoma (*right panel*), stained identically and viewed at the same magnification, reveals the extensive desmoplastic stroma, which is rich in extracellular matrix, notably collagen I (*blue-purple*). Islands of prostate carcinoma cells forming small ducts (*pink*) are scattered throughout this desmoplastic stroma, which lacks significant numbers of viable cells such as myofibroblasts and fibroblasts. (B) In this invasive ductal carcinoma of the breast, the deposition of parallel collagen fibers by fibroblasts and myofibroblasts (*green*; visualized here by 2-photon microscopy) creates a stiff extracellular matrix in the desmoplastic stroma that encourages epithelial–mesenchymal transitions (EMTs; described in Chapter 14) in nearby carcinoma cells (*red*). (C) A more complex stroma is seen in a mouse model of

pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDA). At this stage of tumor progression, the glandular carcinoma cells (stained for EpCam, *blue*), are greatly outnumbered by the immune cells that constitute the inflammatory and immunosuppressive components of the stroma (stained for CD45, *red*). The α-SMA-positive cells (*green*) are largely stromal myofibroblasts and, to a small extent, microvessel-associated pericytes (*arrows*). (A, from G. Ayala et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 9:4792–4801, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B, courtesy of S. Wei and J. Yang. C, from C. Feig, A. Gopinathan, A. Neesse et al. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 18, 4266-4276, 2012. Reprinted by permission from the American Association for Cancer Research.)

One of the tasks of the stromal cells in wound healing involves the physical contraction of the wound site in order to close wounds. This contraction is mediated by the specialized fibroblasts cited above to generate the mechanical tension needed for wound closure (see Figure 13.18A). These specialized fibroblasts are termed myofibroblasts (see Figure 13.16); these cells express α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA) and are capable of using the actin–myosin contractile system (related to the one operating in muscle cells). In addition to their major contribution to the populations of cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), myofibroblasts are also present in sites of chronic wounding, that is, continuously inflamed tissues (see Figure 13.18B). Provocatively, essentially identical α-SMA-positive fibroblasts are prominent components of the stroma present in most advanced carcinomas (for example, see Figure 13.18C). Of note, normal tissues, such as the prostate gland, may contain α-SMA-positive cells that, because they lack vimentin, can be identified as smooth muscle cells rather than the myofibroblasts present in sites of wound-healing, inflammation, and tumorigenesis (see Figure 13.19A). Myofibroblasts have been found to release a broad spectrum of growth factors, including HGF, CTGF, EGF, IGF, NGF, bFGF, Wnts, and cytokines (see Table 5.1); this list overlaps partially with key factors released by platelets upon clot formation.

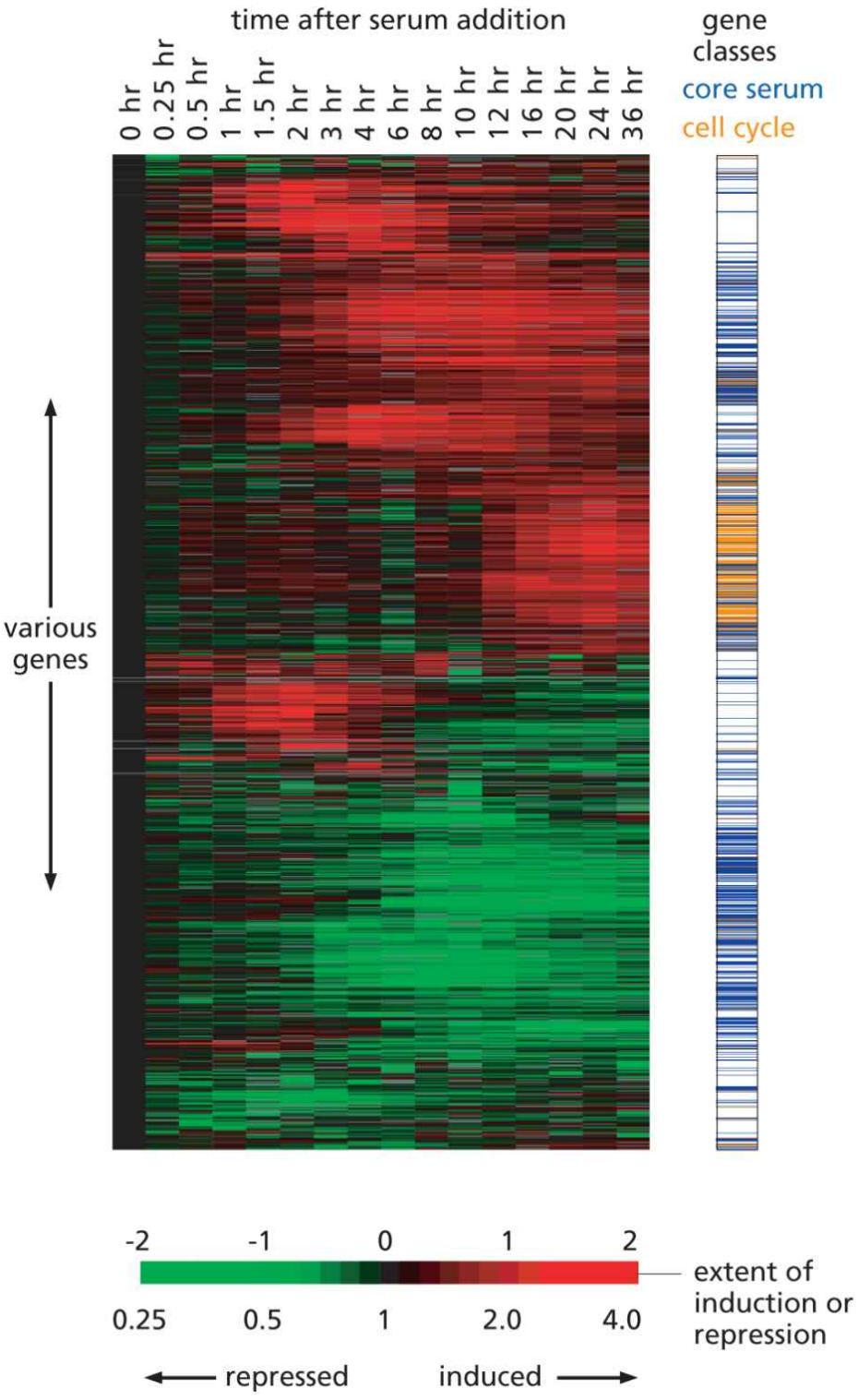
It remains unresolved precisely where most stromal fibroblasts and myofibroblasts originate. During wound healing, fibroblasts may initially be recruited from the stroma of adjacent unaffected tissues by the PDGF released by platelets participating in clot formation; myofibroblasts may then be produced through the TGF-β1–induced transdifferentiation of some of these recruited fibroblasts (see Figure 13.16). In fact, myofibroblasts can be produced *in vitro* simply by exposing normal fibroblasts to TGF-β1. This finding suggests that the TGF-β1 released by many types of carcinoma cells, especially those that have activated EMT programs, is a major factor responsible for the formation of myofibroblasts in the tumor-associated stroma.

Alternative sources of tumor-associated fibroblasts and fibroblasts have also been documented: they may arise from fibrocytes and mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) of

bone marrow origin. Both types of cells can be found in the circulation and are known to home to areas of tissue damage, where they can differentiate into myofibroblasts and, quite possibly, fibroblasts, thereby facilitating the rapid reconstruction of stroma. Such mechanisms ensure that large numbers of cells can be mobilized rapidly from sources outside a wound site in order to expedite reconstruction of damaged stroma.

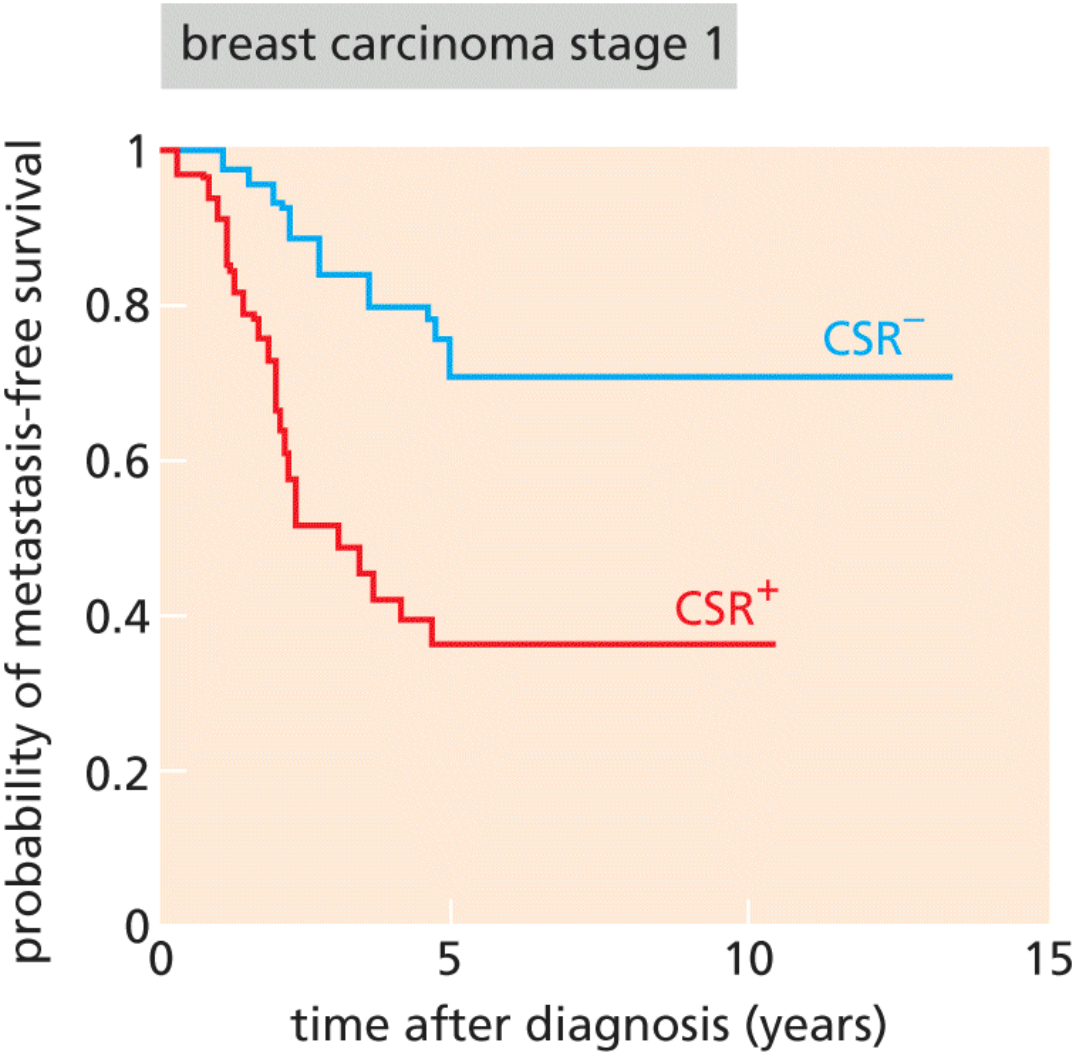
Yet another hint of parallels between wound healing and tumorigenesis comes from several studies indicating that agents known to inhibit tumor-associated angiogenesis also antagonize wound healing. Included among these agents are certain soluble inhibitors of the growth factor receptors that play key roles in angiogenesis, as well as an ECM component, termed thrombospondin-1 (Tsp-1), which is a potent anti-angiogenic molecule. The many common mechanisms shared by wound healing and by the epithelial–stromal interactions in tumors also have implications for clinical practice (see Sidebar 13.4).

The importance of various classes of fibroblasts in clinical progression has been illuminated by studies of serum-stimulated fibroblasts propagated *in vitro*, that is, fibroblasts that had been starved of serum and then exposed to high concentrations of fresh serum. This exposure re-creates the environment of fibroblasts during the initial stages of wound healing (a time when the various serum factors released by activated platelets act on stromal fibroblasts at the wound site, converting them, at least transiently, into myofibroblasts). A relatively small cohort of serum-induced and -repressed genes was extracted from these data and used to represent the characteristic “signature” of serum-stimulated fibroblasts (**Figure 13.20A**).



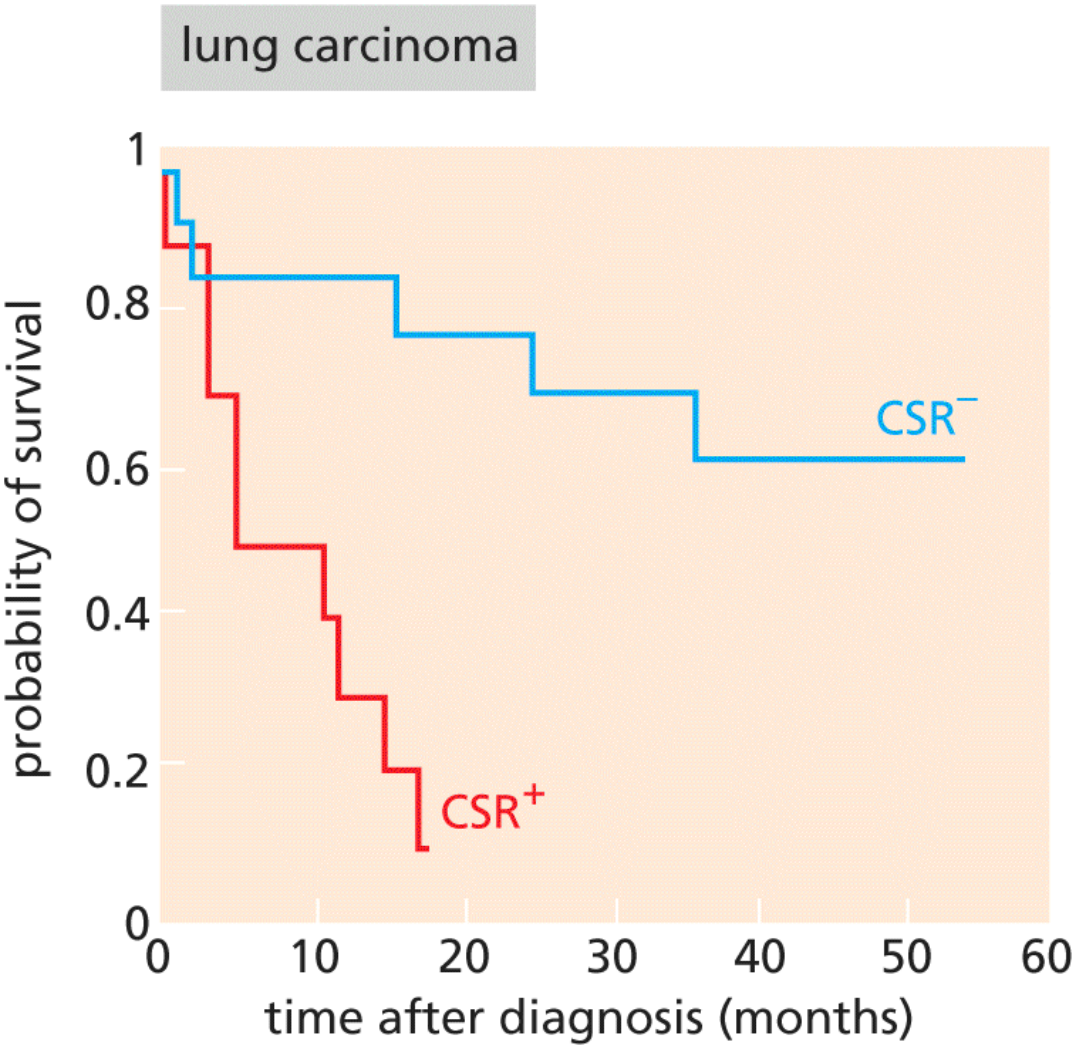
The results of a gene expression analysis with unnamed genes on the vertical axis and time after serum addition on the horizontal axis. Color coding indicates that the genes in the bottom half of the graphic are repressed over the full 36 hour period of observation. Genes in the top half of the graphic are

generally induced. A secondary graphic that identifies gene type shows that genes in the cell cycle class are induced starting at about 12 hours, while genes in the core serum class, or in neither class, are induced earlier, starting anywhere from 1 to 6 hours after serum addition.
(A)



A line graph titled breast carcinoma stage 1, with time on the horizontal axis and probability of metastasis-free survival on the vertical axis. The line for C S R negative declines from 100 percent at time 0 to 70 percent at 5 years, and is flat thereafter. The line for C S R positive declines from 100 percent at time 0 to about 35 percent at 5 years and is flat thereafter.

(B)



A line graph titled lung carcinoma, with time on the horizontal axis and probability of survival on the vertical axis. The line for C S R negative declines gradually from 100 percent at time 0 and is at 60 percent after 50 months. The line for C S R positive declines steeply from 100 percent at time 0 and is at 10 percent after less than 20 months.

(C)

Figure 13.20 Gene expression arrays of tumor-associated fibroblasts and serum-activated fibroblasts (A) In this gene expression analysis, the expression of cellular mRNAs was analyzed following the addition of fresh serum to previously quiescent, serum-starved human fibroblasts; this resulted in these cells' entering into the active cell cycle and the induction or repression of the expression of a large cohort of genes (see also Figure 8.9). Gene expression was measured at various times (*above*) after addition of serum. The cohort of genes analyzed (*not*

named) is arrayed vertically from *top to bottom*. Genes that were induced or repressed late after the addition of serum were classified as “cell cycle genes” (*orange lines*, *right vertical bar*), whereas genes that were induced or repressed early and did not fluctuate with the cell cycle phase were classified as “core serum response” (CSR) genes (*blue lines*, *right vertical bar*). The horizontal bar (*below*) is a key indicating the degree of induction (*red*) or repression (*green*) following serum addition, this being indicated logarithmically above the bar and in absolute numbers (limited to a 4-fold difference) below the bar. (B) The expression pattern of the CSR genes was analyzed in a series of tumors in women presenting with stage 1 (i.e., early-stage) breast cancer. As indicated here, those whose tumors expressed the CSR gene pattern (*red line*), which presumably reflected the states of stromal fibroblasts and related cell types within these tumors, showed a much greater probability for developing metastases in the years following initial treatment compared with those whose tumors did not show this gene expression pattern (*blue*). (C) Similarly, those patients whose lung adenocarcinomas (including all stages of tumor progression at the time of diagnosis) showed the CSR gene expression signature (*red line*) suffered dramatically higher mortality rates compared with those whose tumors did not show this gene expression signature (*blue line*). (From H.Y. Chang et al., *PLoS Biol.* 2:E7, 2004. © 2004 Chang et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License.)

The RNA expression patterns of a large group of human carcinomas were then analyzed to determine whether the tumors expressed the signature of serum-stimulated fibroblasts. (Because all the genes being analyzed are associated specifically with fibroblasts, these analyses, by necessity, reflected the RNA expression patterns of the CAFs present in each tumor.) Many carcinomas were indeed found to express the signature of serum-stimulated fibroblasts. Significantly, the carcinomas that expressed this signature more intensely were associated with a grimmer clinical prognosis (see Figure 13.18B and C). Similarly, tumors that contain higher proportions of myofibroblasts indicate shorter survival rates of the patients bearing these tumors (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.5**). This correlation suggests that the activated, myofibroblast-rich stroma represents a potent force driving aggressive tumor progression, that is, invasion and metastasis as discussed in the next chapter.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

vasoactive
: Referring to a regulator of vascular function, such as a regulator of vascular permeability or constriction.

myofibroblast
: A type of fibroblast that is normally involved in wound healing and inflammation and is often defined by its expression of α-smooth muscle actin which, together with myosin, imparts to it contractile powers.

matrix metalloproteinases
: Secreted proteases that employ zinc ions in their catalytic sites and degrade extracellular proteins, largely components of the extracellular matrix.

pro-enzyme
: Catalytically inactive precursor form of an enzyme that requires some type of alteration (often proteolytic cleavage) in order to become catalytically active.

monocyte
: Phagocytic leukocyte of bone marrow origin that circulates briefly in the blood before migrating into tissues, where it can differentiate into macrophages, osteoclasts, dendritic cells, Langerhans cells, and possibly other phagocytic cell types.

neutrophil
: An abundant granulocyte in the circulation that expresses Fc receptors and is responsible for multiple functions, including recognizing and engulfing various types of infectious agents and participating in various types of inflammation.

mast cell
: Granulocyte of bone marrow origin that displays Fc receptors for binding IgE antibody molecules and undergoes IgE-mediated degranulation following encounter with antigens bound by the associated IgE molecules.

lymphocytes
: Class of leukocytes that mediate humoral or cellular immunity, encompassing B cells, T cells, and NK cells and derivatives thereof.

adherens junction
: Lateral cell–cell junction between adjacent cells, notably epithelial cells, that is formed by cadherins displayed on the opposing surfaces of participating pairs of cells; these junctions include the cytoplasmic proteins that are physically associated with the cytoplasmic domains of both participating cadherins and serve to link these junctions, in turn, to the actin cytoskeletons of the two cells.

apposed
: Physical entity located directly adjacent to a second one.

epithelial–mesenchymal transition
: Cell-biological program enabling acquisition by epithelial cells of some of the phenotypes of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts. *Compare* **mesenchymal–epithelial transition**.

quasi-mesenchymal
: Referring to a phenotypic state between the fully epithelial and the fully mesenchymal states and involving the expression of a mixture of genes characteristic of both states.

mesenchymal–epithelial transition
: The reversal of the epithelial–mesenchymal transition program that converts phenotypically more-mesenchymal cells into more-epithelial derivatives. *Compare* **epithelial–mesenchymal transition**.

venule
: A small vein that conducts blood from capillaries to larger veins.

desmoplastic
: Referring to a hard extracellular matrix that is rich in collagen and myofibroblasts.

fibrocyte
: A relatively undifferentiated circulating cell derived from monocytes in the bone marrow that expresses collagen, adheres tightly to substrates when cultured *in vitro*, exhibits certain features usually associated with macrophages, and serves as the precursor of fibroblasts and/or myofibroblasts in tissues to which it has been recruited.

mesenchymal stem cell
: An oligopotent mesenchymal cell, often of bone marrow origin, that can be recruited to various tissues in which it can differentiate into chondrocytes, osteoblasts, adipocytes, and possibly other mesenchymal cell types.

macrometastasis

A metastatic tumor of a size that allows it to be detected by a variety of clinically used imaging procedures and thus does not require microscopy for its detection. *See also* **micrometastasis**.

eosinophil, eosinophile

A motile phagocytic granulocyte that can migrate from blood into tissue spaces, displays cell surface IgE receptors, and plays a role, among other functions, in eliminating parasitic and bacterial infectious organisms.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

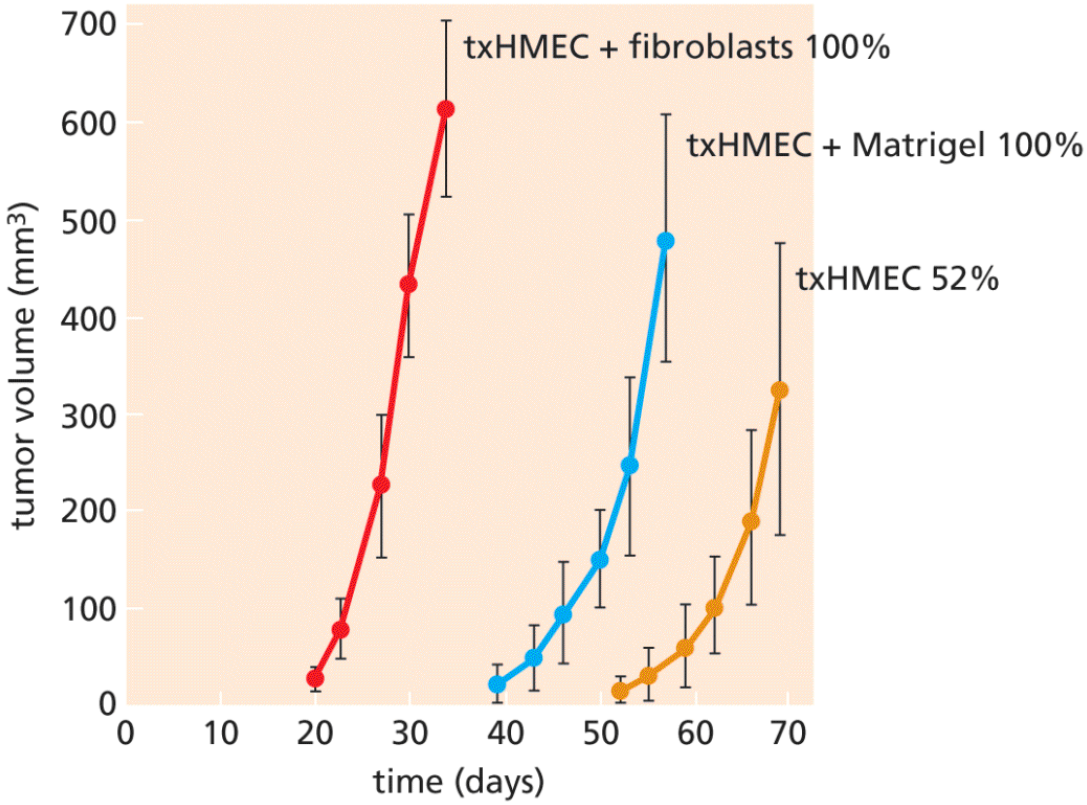
- aTwenty-three distinct MMPs have been documented in mammalian cells.Return to reference a
- bIn addition to ECM substrates, most of the MMPs also cleave other substrates that are present in the extracellular space and whose activities influence cancer progression. For example, MMP-2 processes the chemokine MCP-3; MMP-3 and MMP-7 cleave E-cadherin; MMP-9 releases VEGF and Kit-L; MMP-14 cleaves CD44. Also, the MMPs are part of a proteolytic cascade involving the conversion of plasminogen to plasmin and activation of latent pro-MMPs.Return to reference b

OceanofPDF.com

13.4 Experiments directly demonstrate that stromal cells are active contributors to tumorigenesis

Several biological experiments provide far more direct demonstrations of the profound influence that recruited stromal cells exert on epithelial cell tumorigenesis. In one study, previously non-tumorigenic, immortalized keratinocytes were forced to secrete PDGF at high levels (achieved through the introduction of a PDGF expression vector). The released growth factor had no effect on the proliferation of these epithelial cells *in vitro* because they do not display PDGF receptors on their surface. However, when these cells were implanted into host mice, they acquired the ability to form robustly growing tumors, clearly derived from the ability of the released PDGF to recruit and activate stromal cells. The stromal cells then reciprocated by driving the proliferation of the PDGF-secreting keratinocytes, eventually causing the latter to undergo malignant transformation.

The important role of stromal fibroblasts in supporting tumor growth can be demonstrated by yet another type of experiment: transformed, weakly tumorigenic human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) were found to require more than two months to form a tumor after being introduced into immunocompromised host mice (**Figure 13.21**). However, if these cancer cells were mixed with human mammary stromal fibroblasts (from normal breast tissue) prior to injection into hosts, the cells formed tumors in one-third the time. These admixed fibroblasts clearly obviated the need of the MECs to spend time recruiting fibroblasts from host mice—a process that usually requires many weeks’ time; in the absence of these fibroblasts, tumor growth could not take off.

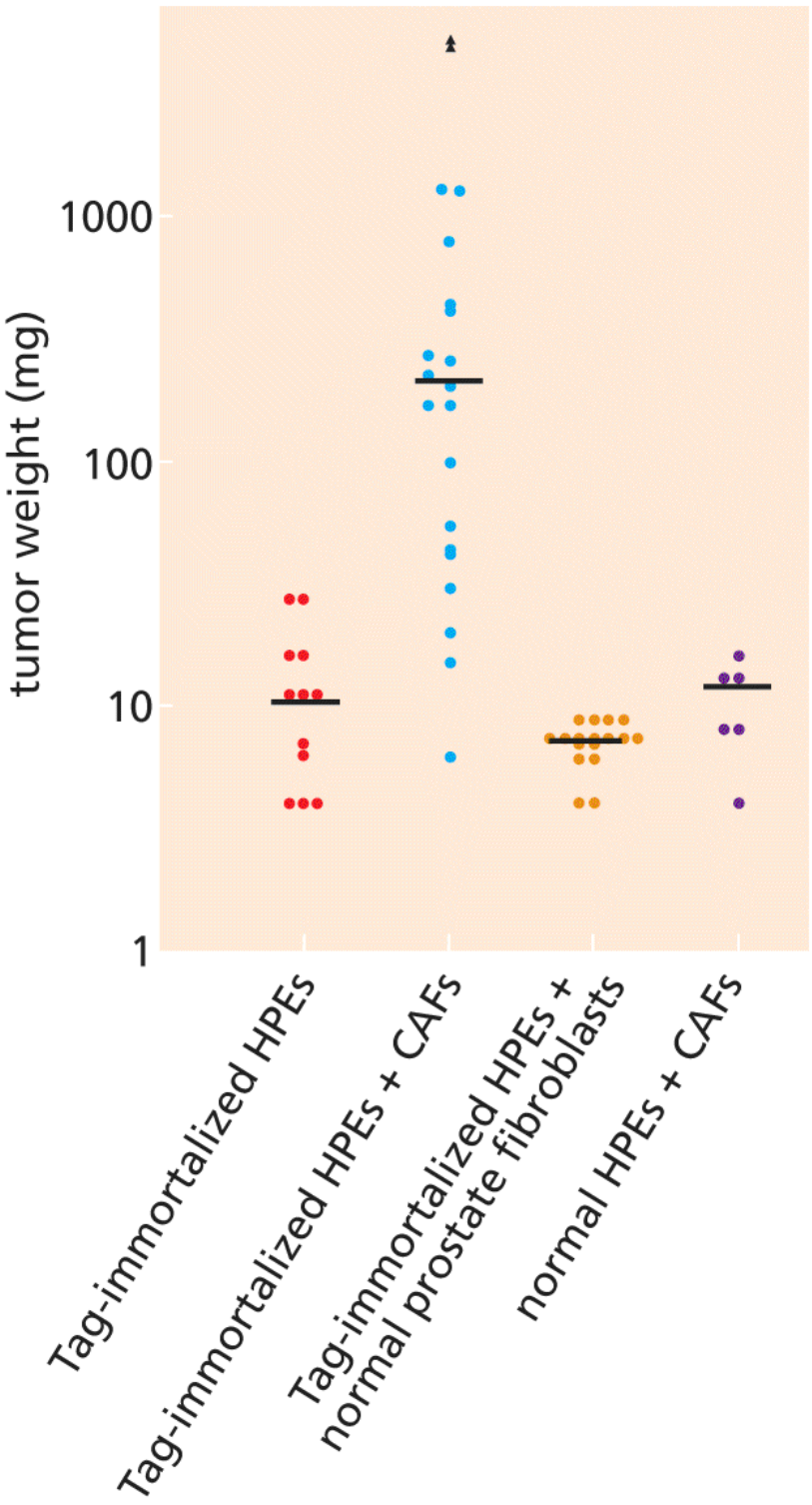


Experimental results, displayed as a line graph with tumor volume on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. There are three curves. The curve for t x H M E C plus fibroblasts 100% begins at 20 days, 10 cubic millimeters and rises to 34 days, 610 cubic millimeters. The curve for t x H M E C plus Matrigel 100% begins at 39 days, 8 cubic millimeters and rises to 58 days, 480 cubic millimeters. The curve for t x H M E C 52% begins at 52 days, 6 cubic millimeters and rises to 70 days, 320 cubic millimeters.

Figure 13.21 Admixed fibroblasts and tumor growth When human mammary epithelial cells (HMECs) were transformed through the introduction of the SV40 early region, the *hTERT* gene, and a weakly expressed *ras* oncogene (see Section 11.9), the resulting transformed HMECs (txHMECs) formed tumors, albeit with a long lag time after injection, and then only in about half of the mice into which they had been injected (*orange curve*). When a preparation of extracellular matrix (Matrigel) produced by mouse sarcoma cells was mixed with the txHMECs prior to introduction into host mice (*blue curve*), this slow development was accelerated a bit and tumor-forming efficiency was doubled. However, when mammary stromal fibroblasts from a normal human breast were admixed to the transformed human MECs prior to injection, the cancer cells formed tumors rapidly and with 100% efficiency (*red curve*). This experiment illustrated that the recruitment of stromal fibroblasts (or similarly functioning mesenchymal cells) is an important

rate-limiting step in tumor formation. (From B. Elenbaas et al., *Genes Dev.* 15:50–65, 2001. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

This experiment did not address the issue of whether the stromal cells of normal epithelial tissues can accelerate tumor formation as effectively as the stromal cells of carcinomas. This possibility was addressed by comparing the actions of stromal fibroblasts extracted from a normal epithelial tissue with the carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) prepared from carcinomas (in which myofibroblasts are abundant; for example, see Figure 13.18). In one set of experiments, fibroblasts were purified from the stroma of normal human prostate glands, and the CAFs were prepared from the stroma of human prostate carcinomas. Each cell population was then mixed with otherwise non-tumorigenic, SV40 large T antigen–immortalized human prostate epithelial cells and implanted in immunocompromised Nude mice. The results, summarized in **Figure 13.22**, showed dramatic differences in the growth of these mixed tissue grafts. In particular, the grafts containing CAFs plus immortalized prostate epithelial cells formed tumors that were as much as 500 times larger than those containing normal prostate fibroblasts plus immortalized prostate epithelial cells. (When injected alone, the CAFs formed no tumors at all.)

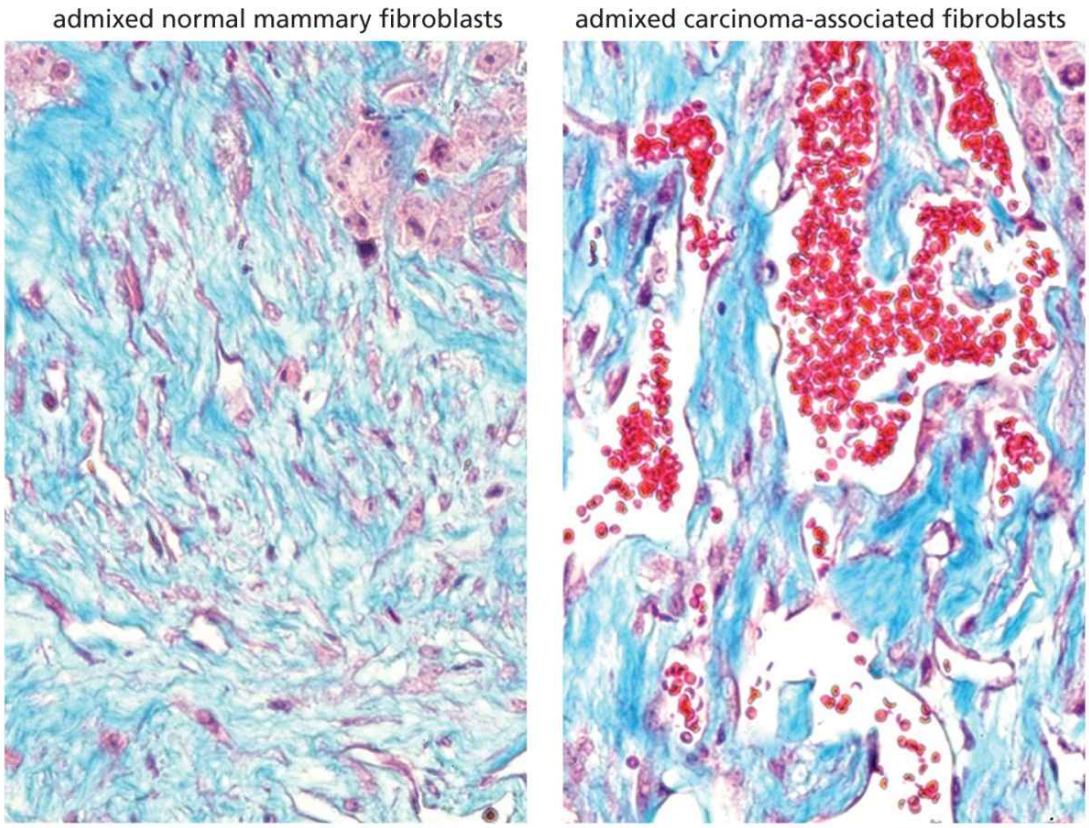


Data plot of tumor weights for four different cell types. For each type, there is a spread of weights. For Tag-immortalized H P E ease, Tag-immortalized H P ease plus normal prostate fibroblasts, and normal H P E ease plus C A effs, tumor weights range from 5 milligrams to 30, with 10 milligrams as a rough average. For

Tag-immortalized H P E ease plus C A effs, tumor weights range from 8 milligrams to over 1000, with 200 milligrams as a rough average.
Figure 13.22 Effects of prostatic stromal cells on immortalized prostatic epithelial cells When normal human prostate epithelial cells (HPEs) that had been immortalized by SV40 T antigen (Tag-immortalized HPEs) were introduced into Nude mice, they formed growths of ~10 mg after many weeks, not significantly larger than the initial inoculum (*red dots*), indicating that these cells were, when implanted on their own, non-tumorigenic. However, if these same cells were mixed with carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) prepared from a human prostate carcinoma, tumors arose whose median weight was 10 times larger (Tag-immortalized HPEs + CAFs, *blue dots*). In contrast, when these Tag-immortalized HPEs were mixed with stromal fibroblasts from a normal human prostate, the median weight of the resulting growth was ~7 mg, possibly even less than the starting inoculum (*orange dots*). And if CAFs were mixed with normal HPEs prior to inoculation, the median weight after many weeks was, once again, only ~10 mg (*purple dots*). (From A.F. Olumi et al., *Cancer Res.* 59:5002–5011, 1999. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

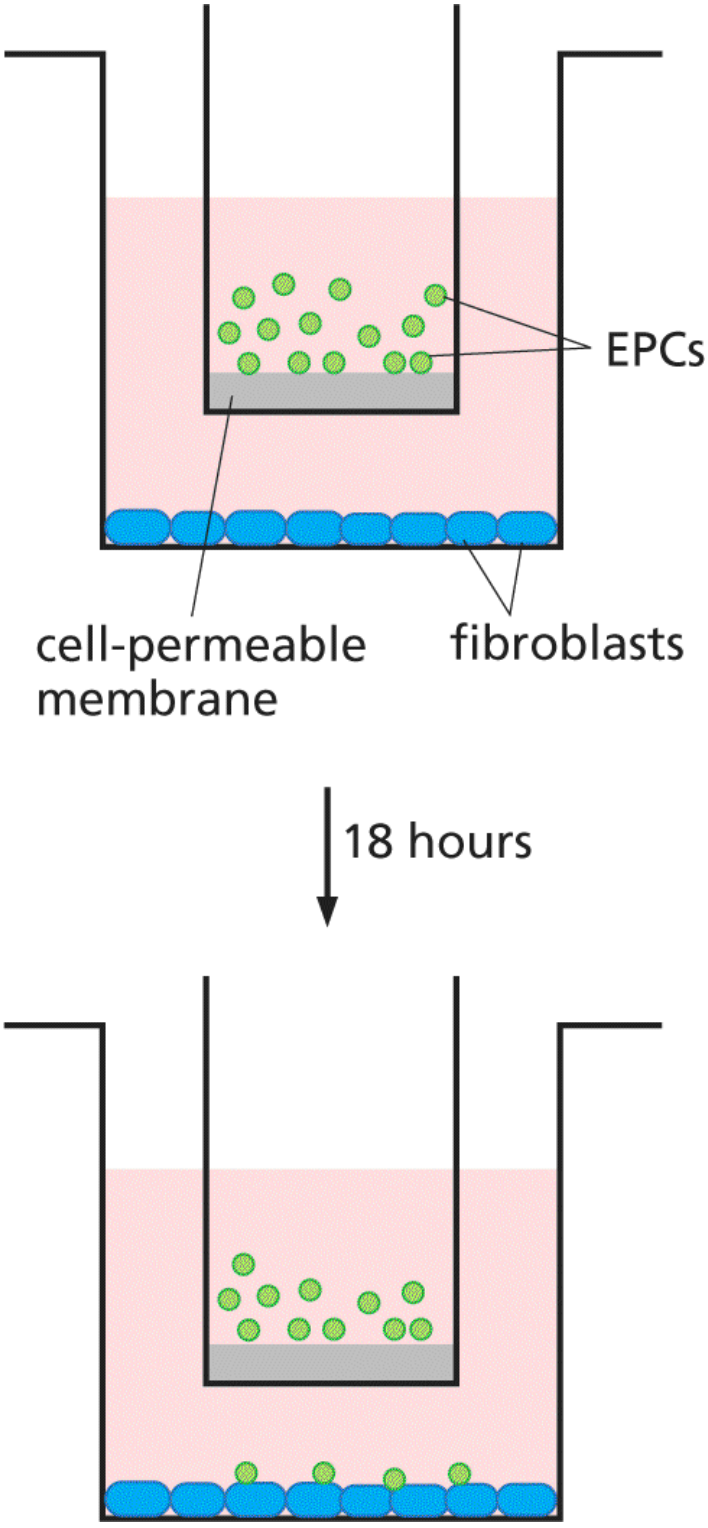
This experiment demonstrated that these CAFs were functionally very different from the stromal fibroblasts present in normal prostatic tissue. Stated differently, during the course of tumor progression, stromal cells become increasingly adept at helping their epithelial neighbors to survive and proliferate. Similar observations have since been made with CAFs extracted from human breast cancers.

Still, these experiments do not reveal precisely *how* the myofibroblast-rich CAF populations accelerate tumor growth. Once established within the tumor-associated stroma, the myofibroblasts, as mentioned earlier, confer multiple benefits on nearby epithelial cancer cells, the most important benefit possibly being angiogenesis. Myofibroblasts expedite angiogenesis through their ability to release stroma-derived factor-1 (SDF-1/CXCL12), a chemokine that recruits circulating endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) and other myeloid cell types into the tumor stroma (**Figure 13.23**). The VEGF secreted by myofibroblasts then helps to induce some of these recruits to differentiate into the endothelial cells that form the tumor neovasculature (see Figure 13.8A). Because angiogenesis is usually a rate-limiting step in tumor formation, the tumor-stimulating effects of admixed CAFs may result largely from their ability to accelerate tumor angiogenesis. The neovascularization of a tumor can often be solved through unconventional means, as described in **Sidebar 13.5**.



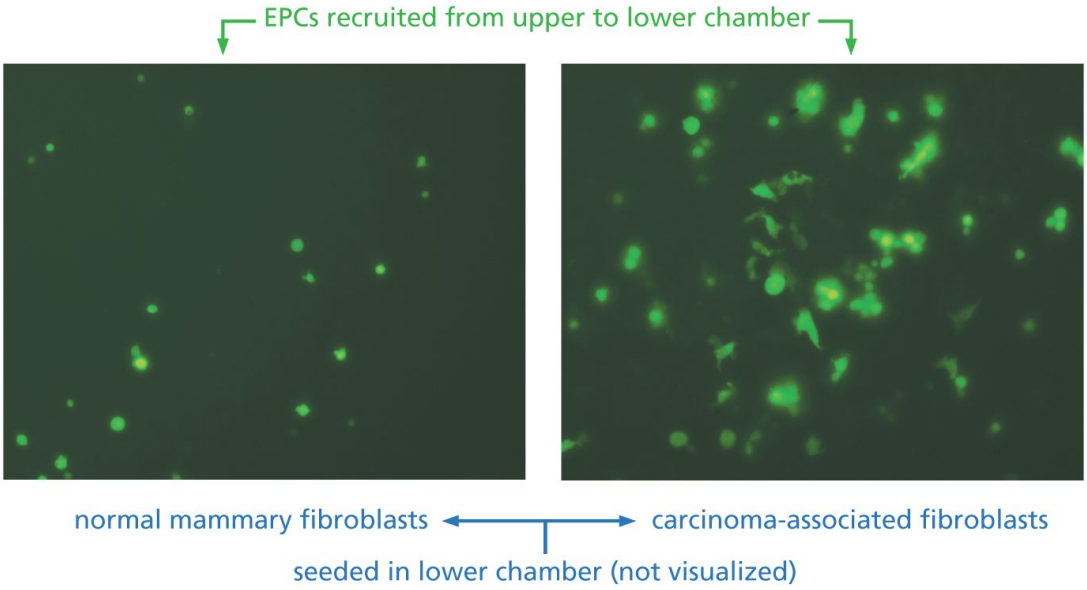
Two histology images. The left one, labeled admixed normal mammary fibroblasts, contains a mix of pink and blue cells. The right one, labeled admixed carcinoma-associated fibroblasts, looks similar but has voids occupied by clumps of round red cells.

(A)



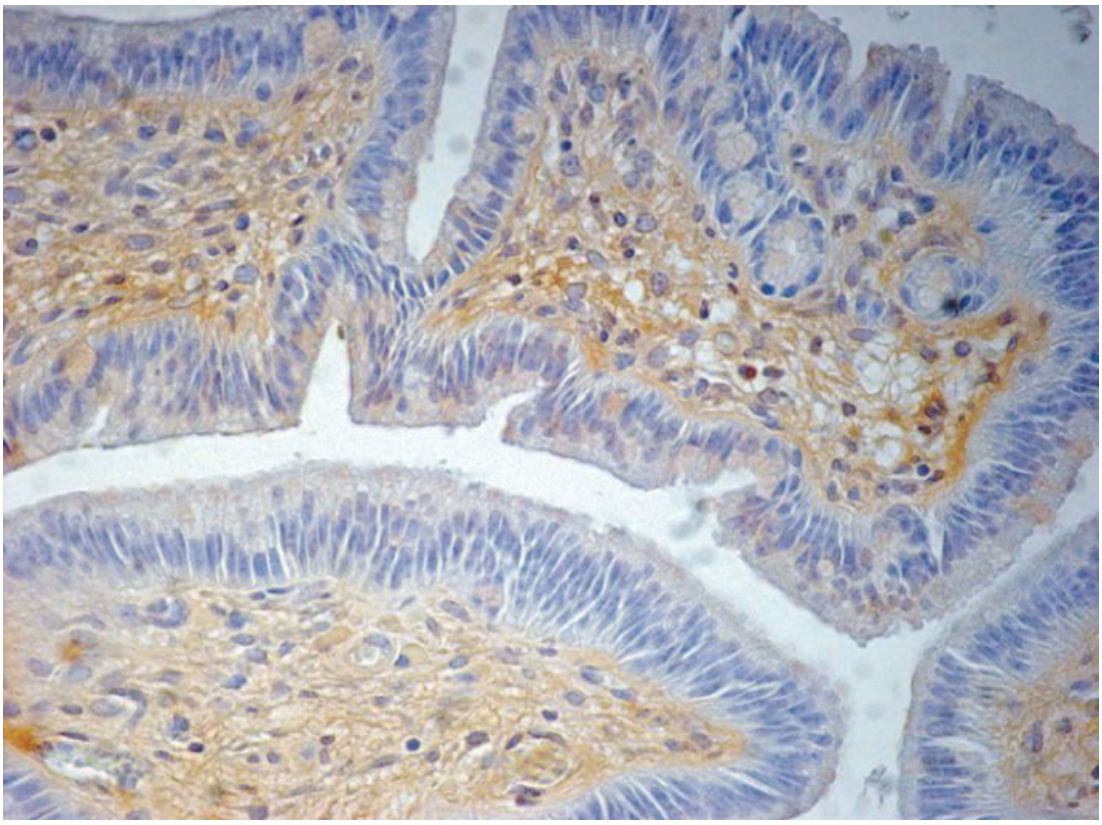
A diagram of an experiment. It begins with a chamber that has a layer of fibroblasts on the bottom and is filled with liquid. A second, smaller chamber, containing E P Sees, is lowered into the first one so that its bottom is submerged. This bottom is a cell-permeable membrane. After 18 hours, some

of the E P Sees have made their way out of the smaller chamber and lie among the fibroblasts at the bottom of the larger one.
(B)



Two images. The left one shows normal mammary fibroblasts as small, bright green dots. The right one shows carcinoma-associated fibroblasts as larger, more irregular bright green splotches. Both cell types are E P Sees recruited from the upper to the lower chamber and seeded in the lower chamber.

(C)



A histology image of gastric tumor tissue from a mouse. The purple epithelial cells surround tan stroma cells.

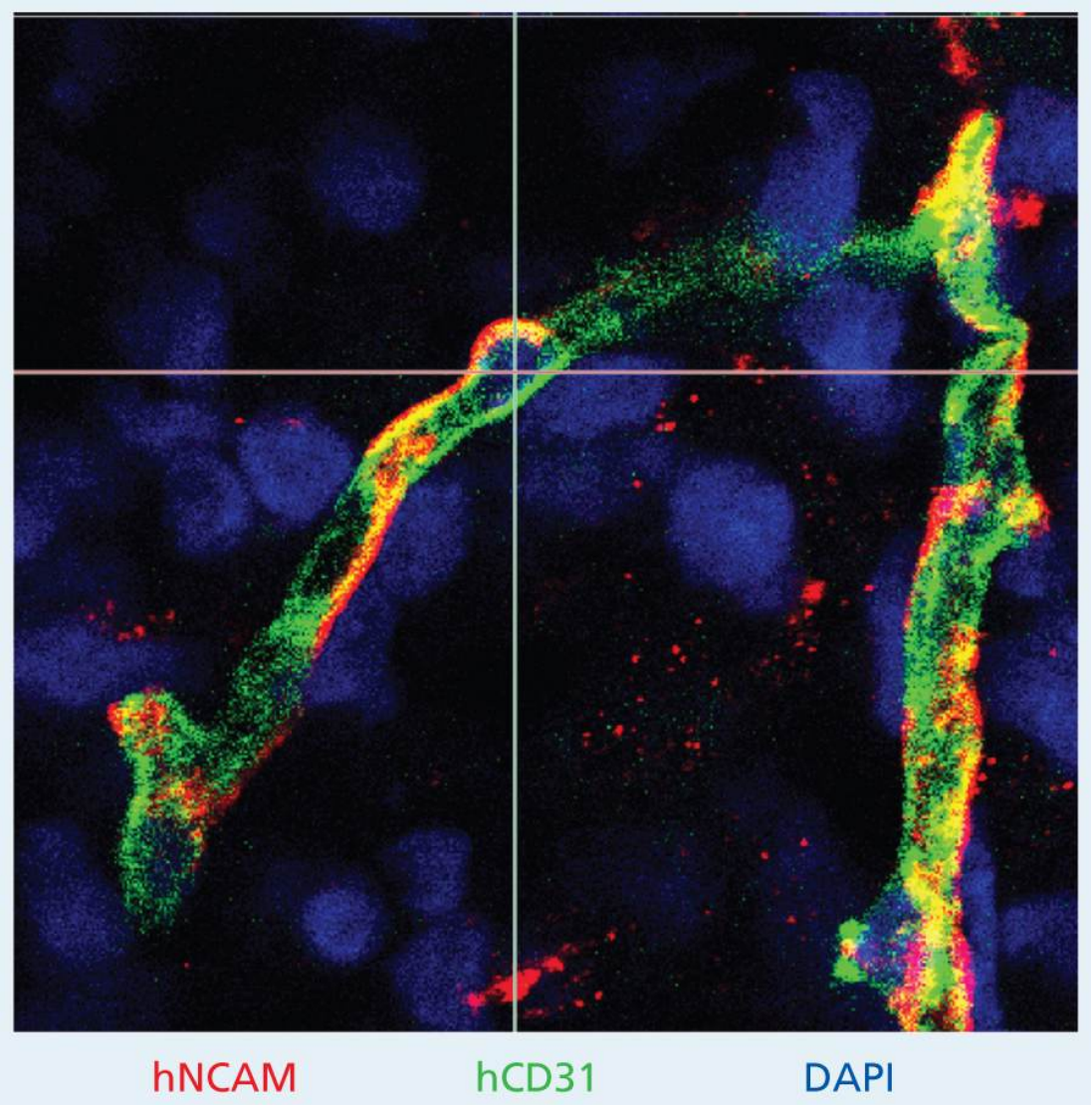
(D)

Figure 13.23 Recruitment of endothelial precursor cells and induction of their differentiation by CAFs (A) When normal human mammary stromal fibroblasts are admixed to cells of the human MCF7-ras breast cancer cell line (*left panel*), the resulting tumors show relatively small numbers of blood vessels (*pink-red*) amid the tumor-associated stroma (*blue*). However, admixture of carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs; *right panel*) results in highly vascularized tumors with large vessels and associated erythrocytes (*red*). The resulting access to the circulation is likely to greatly facilitate tumor growth. (B) The ability of the CAFs, which are largely myofibroblasts, to attract endothelial cells was demonstrated by an *in vitro* experiment, in which green fluorescent protein (GFP)–labeled bone marrow cells expressing surface antigens characteristic of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs; *green*) were placed above a cell-permeable membrane (*light gray*) in a Boyden chamber. Either normal mammary stromal fibroblasts or CAFs from a breast cancer (*blue*) were placed on the bottom surface of the lower chamber. After 18 hours, the number of EPCs that had migrated through the filter and had been recruited to the bottom of the lower chamber was gauged by fluorescence

microscopy. (C) Analysis of the cells attached to the lower chamber indicated that the CAFs (*right panel*) are able to attract far more GFP-labeled EPCs than the normal mammary stromal fibroblasts (*left panel*). This recruitment could be reduced by 60% by placing antiserum that neutralized the SDF-1/CXCL12 chemokine released by the CAFs in these chambers, indicating its important role in mediating this recruitment. (D) In a mouse model of gastric carcinoma development, the myofibroblasts of the tumor-associated stroma are seen, by immunostaining, to express high levels of VEGF-A (*brown*), which induces differentiation of EPCs and the proliferation of resulting endothelial cells. (A and C, from A. Orimo et al., *Cell* 121:335–348, 2005. With permission from Elsevier. D, from X. Guo et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 283:19864–19871, 2008. © 2008 ASBMB. This is an open access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution license.)

Sidebar 13.5 Alternative sources of tumor vascularization

The endothelial cells present in the tumor neovasculature have been widely assumed to derive from two sources—the proliferation of existing endothelial cells, including those present in adjacent normal tissue and, to a smaller extent, from the endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) that originate in the marrow and arrive via the circulation into the tumor stroma. In 2010, two groups simultaneously reported a fully unexpected finding: within human glioblastomas (and the xenografts derived from these tumors), a significant portion of the endothelial cells in the tumor-associated neovasculature descend from the genetically mutant tumor cells, more specifically arising via the differentiation of glioblastoma stem cells (see Section 11.7) that are present in these tumors (**Figure 13.24**). Indeed, the glioblastoma CSCs are known to exhibit an ability to spawn a diverse array of more differentiated progeny, which is reflected in their proper name—glioblastoma multiforme (see Figure 2.8A). This finding was most unanticipated, because glioblastomas derive from the embryonic neuroectoderm, whereas the endothelial cells arise ultimately from the mesoderm and thus are members of cell lineages very distant from those forming the bulk of the brain.



A fluorescence microscopy image. Two bright streaks, with green, red and yellow in them, intersect. Dark blue cell nuclei are visible behind them.

Figure 13.24 Transdifferentiation of glioblastoma stem cells into tumor-associated endothelial cells The characterization of the endothelial cells formed in the neovasculature of human glioblastomas (GBMs), including those that are grown as xenografts in immunocompromised host mice, has revealed that many of these cells, while expressing a human endothelial cell–specific marker (CD31, *green*), can also be stained with antibodies that are specifically reactive with human NCAM antigen (*red*), which indicates cells of neuroectodermal origin. Overlapping staining between these two colors is seen here as *yellow.* Moreover, these apparent endothelial cells can be shown to carry the same genomic alterations as are present in the bulk of the neoplastic cells in these GBMs and to derive from the differentiation of glioblastoma stem cells. Cell nuclei are stained

blue. (From R. Wang et al., *Nature* 468:829–833, 2010. With permission from Nature.)

In fact, there is a second alternative source of tumor-associated microvasculature that had been recognized years earlier and has been termed vasculogenic mimicry. Thus, collections of neoplastic cells can form microvessels through which blood passes. These channels have the superficial appearance of capillaries but clearly are not lined by endothelial cells as usually defined. They may, however, express at least one protein that is a critical component of the endothelial cell-associated, normal microvessels: vascular-endothelial–cadherin (VE-cadherin), a member of the family of adhesion proteins that includes the widely expressed E-cadherin that is so critical to knitting together epithelial cell sheets (see Figure 13.14). Similarly, VE-cadherin enables the side-by-side associations of the endothelial cells in fully formed vessels, thereby creating a continuous tight barrier between the blood and parenchyma outside of the vasculature.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

neovasculature
: Vasculature that is newly developed, often by a growing tumor. *See also* **vasculature**.

vasculogenic mimicry
: The process that enables the neoplastic cells within a tumor to assemble into blood-carrying microvessels without these cells becoming *bona fide* endothelial cells.

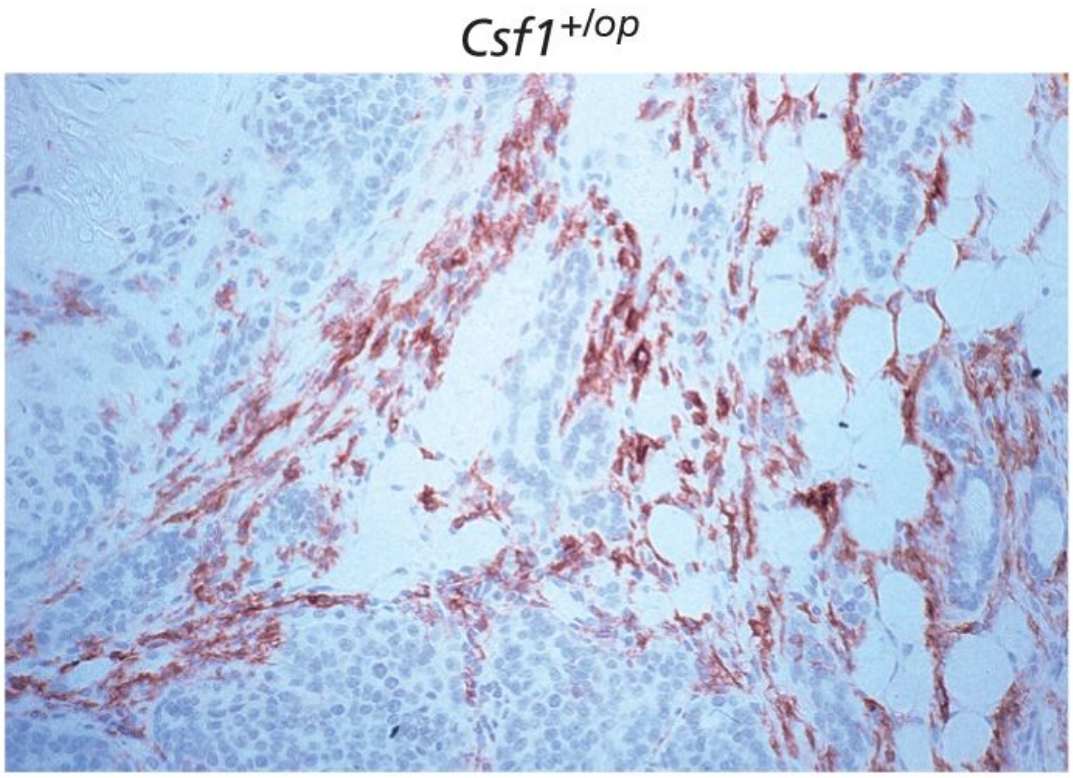
OceanofPDF.com

13.5 Macrophages and myeloid cells play important roles in activating the tumor-associated stroma

The active recruitment of macrophages into tumor masses would seem, at first glance, to be counterproductive for tumor formation, because macrophages are usually deployed by the immune system to scavenge and destroy infectious agents and abnormal cells, as we will explore in more detail in Chapter 15. However, increasing evidence indicates that these immune cells can also play important roles in *furthering* tumor development.

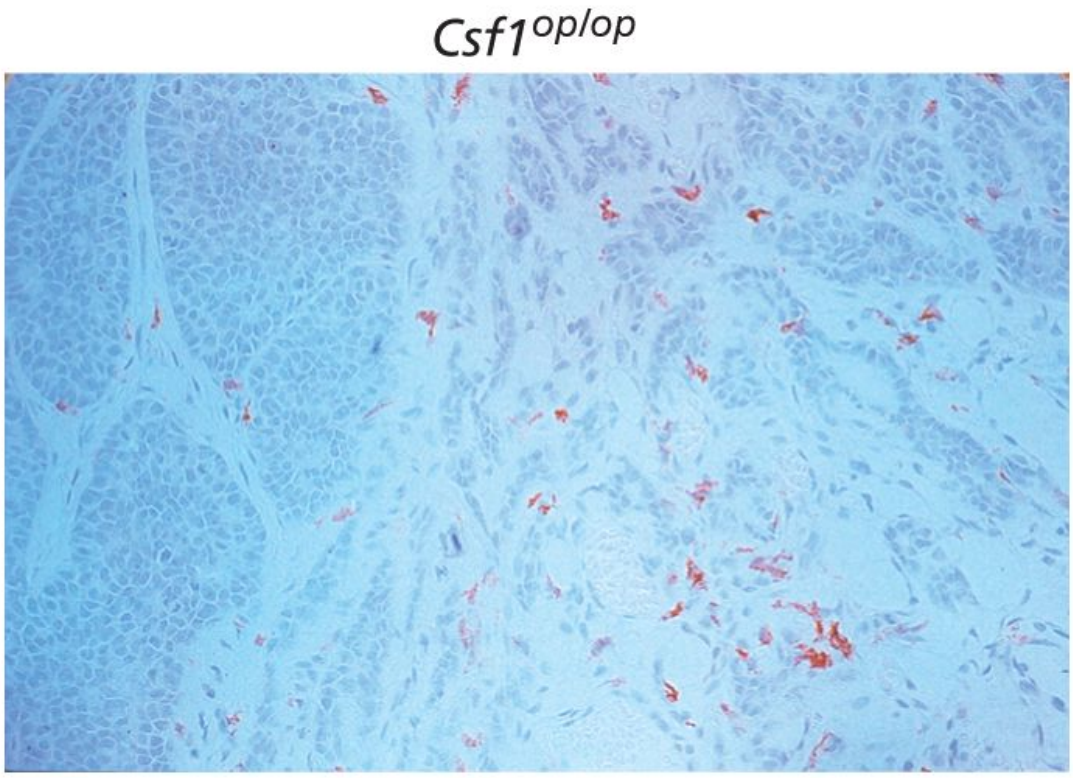
In more detail, monocytes from the myeloid lineage in the bone marrow enter into the general circulation, from which they are recruited by cancer cells into a tumor; once ensconced there, the monocytes are induced to differentiate into macrophages. This recruitment depends on attraction signals that are conveyed by chemotactic factors. By definition, these factors provide directional cues to motile cells rather than mitogenic stimulation. In the case of leukocytes (white blood cells such as monocytes), the relevant chemotactic factors are often called chemokines, that is, chemotactic cytokines.

The chemokine known as monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (sometimes called macrophage chemoattractant protein-1; MCP-1) is expressed in significant quantities by a wide range of neuroectodermal and epithelial cancer cell types. It appears to be a critical signal for attracting monocytes to some tumors and inducing their differentiation into macrophages. In other tumors, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1; often called M-CSF, macrophage colony-stimulating factor), and the PDGF released by tumor cells also seem to help in this recruitment, while CSF-1 aids in stimulating the subsequent monocyte-to-macrophage differentiation (**Figure 13.25**).



A histology image of cells carrying one copy of the C S F-1 encoding gene and one null allele. The image is mostly blue, but there are areas streaked with red.

(A)



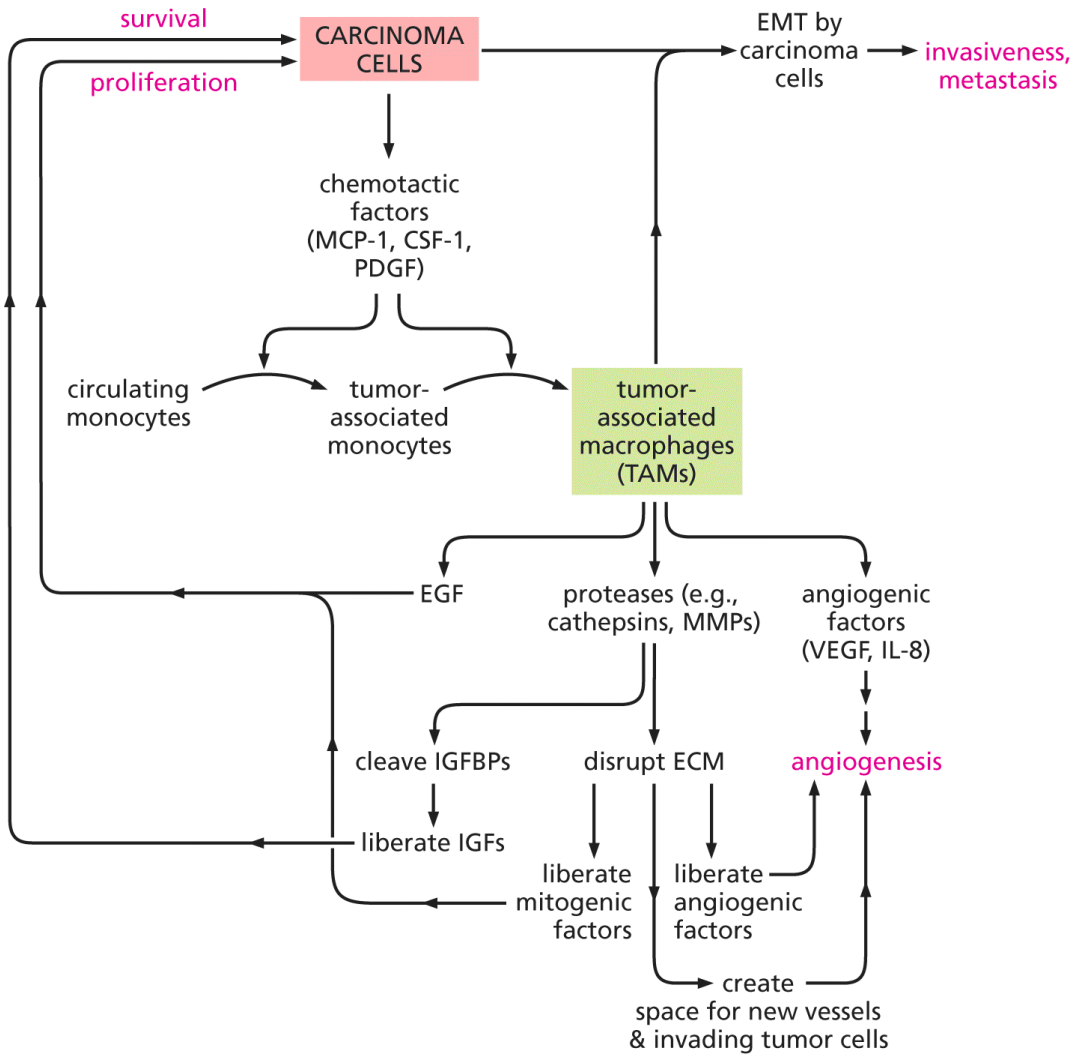
A histology image of cells carrying two null alleles. The image is blue, with hardly any red streaks–just a few flecks here and there.

(B)

Figure 13.25 Recruitment of macrophages by CSF-1 In some tumors, colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1) released by tumor cells serves as the key attractant for monocytes and thus macrophages. In the transgenic mice studied here, mammary tumorigenesis was driven by a transgene, which was constructed from an MMTV (mouse mammary tumor virus) transcriptional promoter that drives expression of the polyoma middle T (PyMT) oncogene, doing so almost exclusively in mammary epithelial cells. (A) The tumor analyzed here arose in a transgenic MMTV-PyMT mouse that was heterozygous at the *Csf1* locus, because it carried one null allele of the CSF-1–encoding gene, and was therefore labeled $Csf1^{+/op}$. The presence of macrophages in the stroma of a tumor is revealed by a monoclonal antibody that detects macrophages (*reddish brown*). (B) This tumor arose in an MMTV-PyMT transgenic mouse that was genetically $Csf1^{op/op}$ and therefore lacked all CSF-1 activity. Consequently, the tumor cells arising in this mouse were unable to release this chemoattractant, resulting in a mammary tumor in which the macrophages are barely detectable. The absence of macrophages did not affect the growth of the primary tumor but strongly suppressed progression to an invasive and metastatic state, implicating macrophages in such tumor

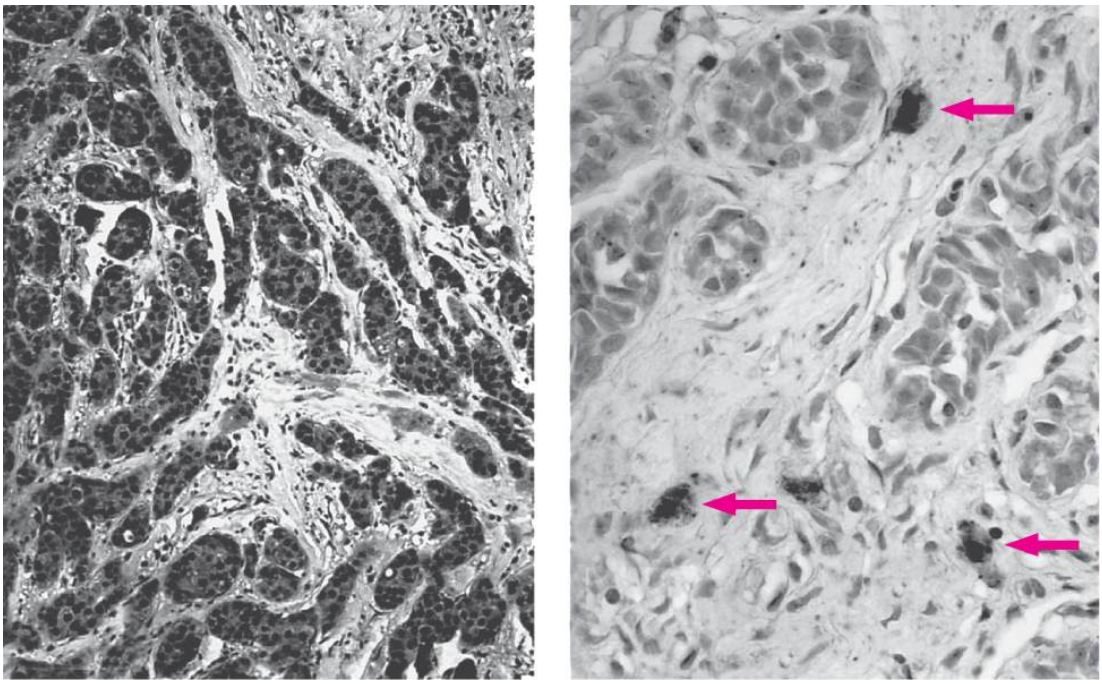
progression. (From E.Y. Lin et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 193:727–740, 2001. With permission from Rockefeller University Press.)

Once established in the tumor stroma, macrophages play important roles in stimulating angiogenesis (**Figure 13.26**). Thus, in some cancers, such as breast carcinomas, there is a direct correlation between the level of MCP-1 produced, the number of macrophages present, and the level of angiogenesis induced by the various tumors; in other tumors, the density of infiltrating tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) is correlated with microvessel density (see Figure 13.26D); this density is gauged by counting the number of capillaries per microscopic field in a tumor section. Numerous reports suggest that macrophages play a major role in driving tumor progression by demonstrating a direct correlation between the presence of a high density of macrophages in tumor masses and a poor prognosis for cancer patients. This correlation has been documented for gliomas and for carcinomas of the breast, ovary, prostate, cervix, bladder, and lung.



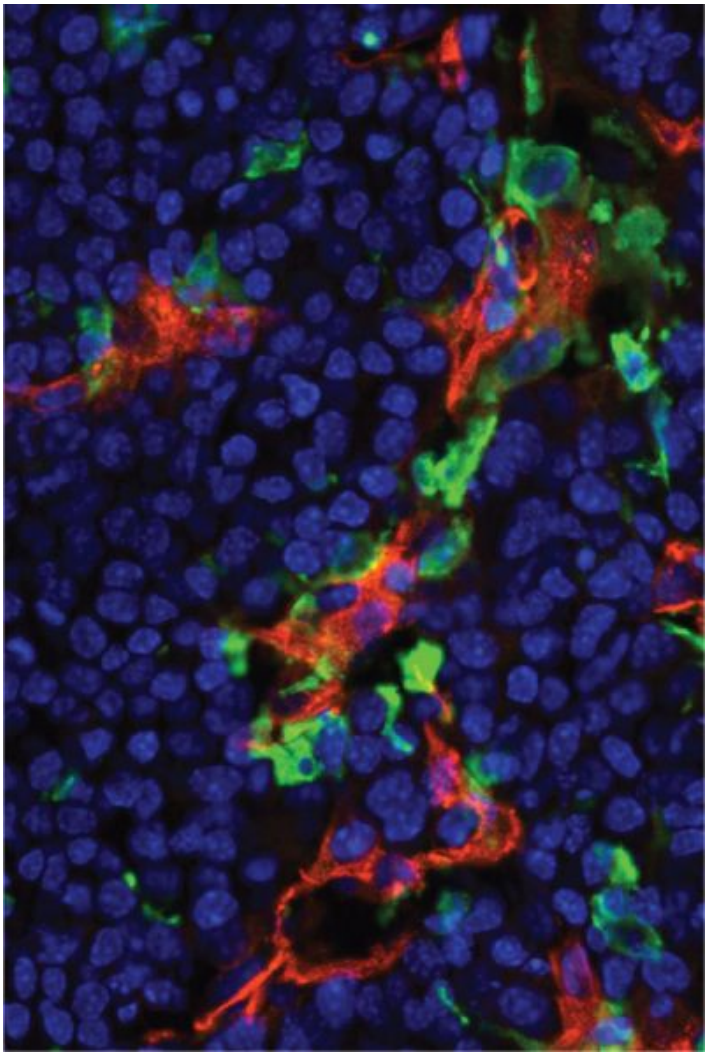
A flowchart showing how carcinoma cells and tumor-associated macrophages, or T A ems, coordinate to promote E M T by the carcinoma cells, leading to invasiveness and metastasis. Carcinoma cells use chemotactic factors (M C P-1, C S F-1, P D G F) to turn circulating monocytes into tumor-associated monocytes and then into T A ems. T A ems, in turn, initiate a complex series of events that result in angiogenesis and the survival and proliferation of the carcinoma cells.

(A)



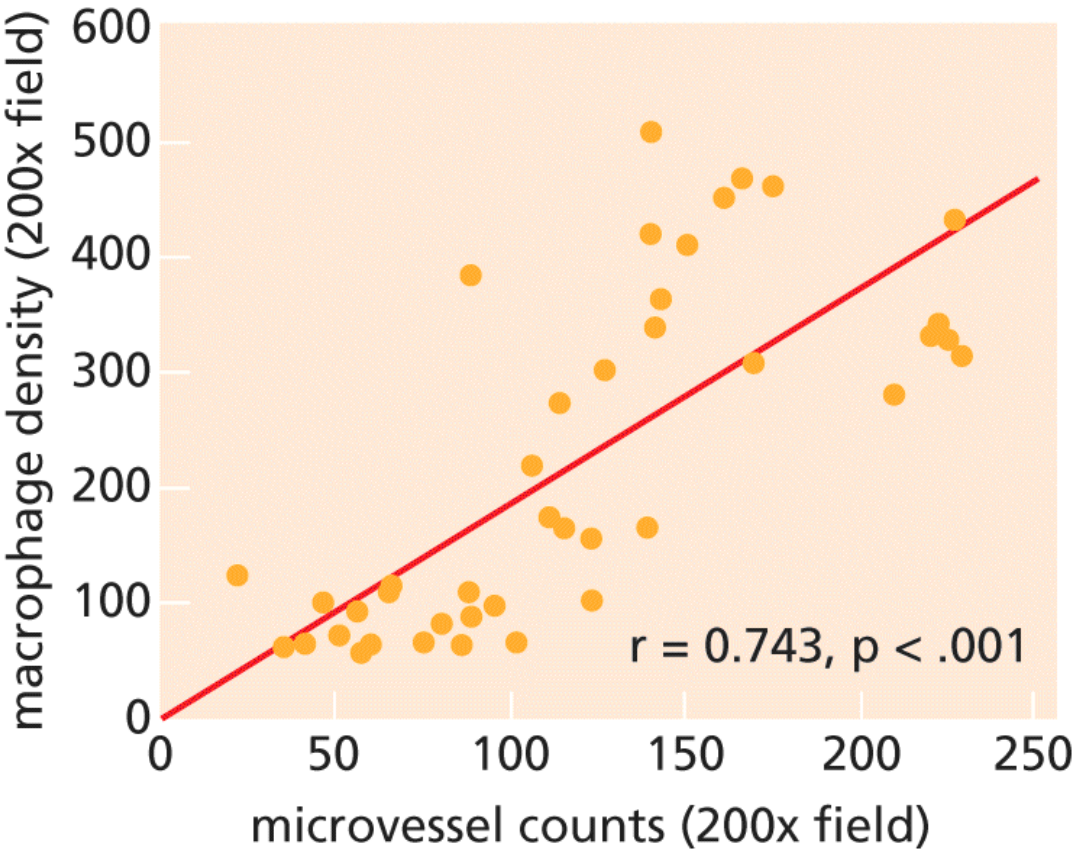
Two black and white images of tissue samples. In the left one there are many dark nodules, while in the right one there are only three dark spots, indicated by arrows.

(B)



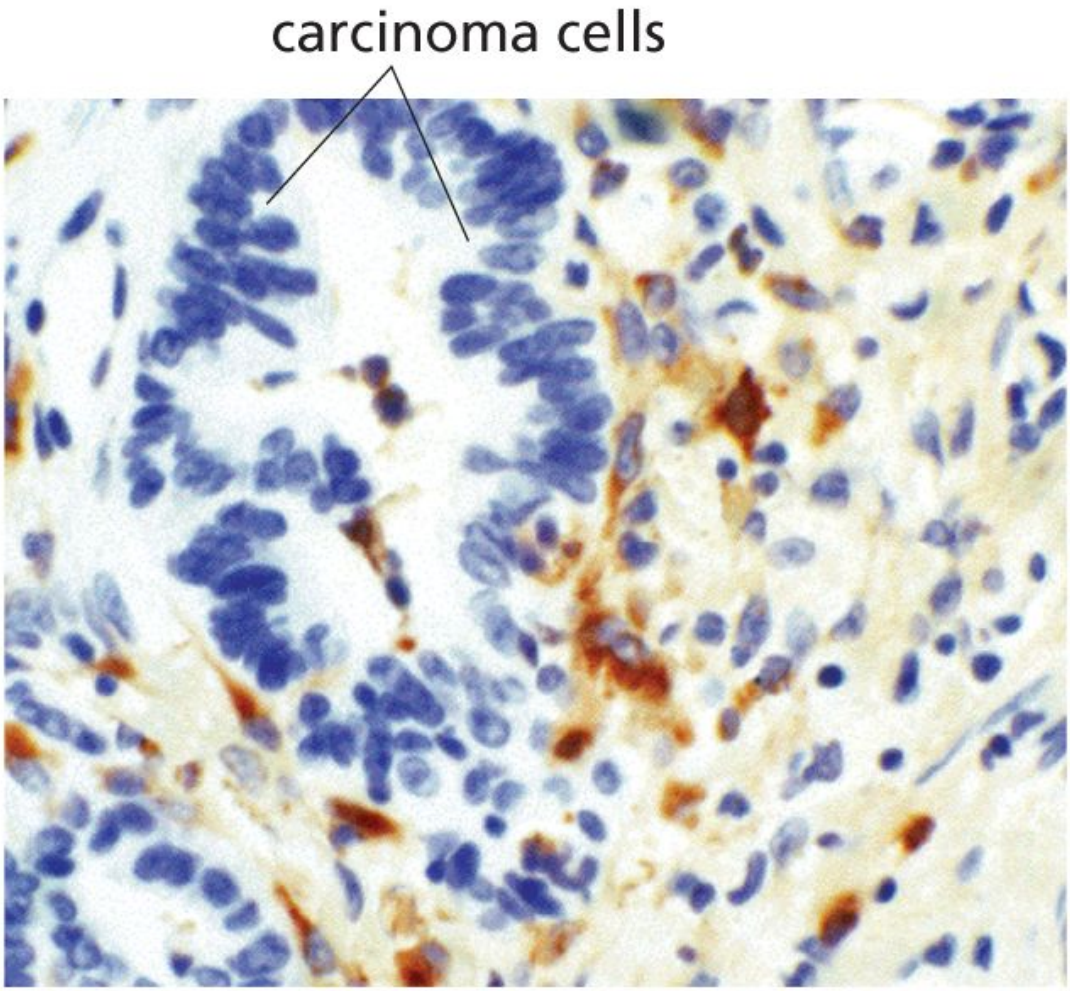
A fluorescence microscopy image with many dark blue nuclei, a few splotches of bright green, and a few streaks of red.

(C)



A scatter plot with macrophage density on the vertical axis and microvessel counts on the horizontal axis. The trendline runs from the origin up to the point 250, 470. The r statistic is 0.743. p is less than 0.001.

(D)



A histology image with blue nuclei and brown flecks appearing within otherwise white tissue. Cells that appear dark blue due to densely packed nuclei in a columnar cell arrangement are labeled carcinoma cells.

(E)

Figure 13.26 Macrophage involvement in angiogenesis (A) Macrophages play a major role in releasing mitogenic factors for carcinoma cells as well as reorganizing the tumor-associated stroma in order to facilitate angiogenesis and, in some tumors, carcinoma cell invasiveness. MMPs, matrix metalloproteinases. (B) In certain breast tumors (*left panel*), the cancer cells synthesize the potent angiogenic factor VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor), revealed here (*dark areas*) by staining with an anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody. However, in other breast tumors (*right panel*), VEGF production originates in isolated macrophages within the tumor-associated stroma (*red arrows*). (C) In a variety of tumor types, including the pancreatic islet tumors of Rip-Tag mice (see Figure 13.35) analyzed

here, macrophages (*green*) can be found in large numbers next to the tumor-associated neovasculature (*red*). Cell nuclei are stained *blue*. Yet other work (see Figure 13.36B) reveals that such macrophages, working together with recruited mast cells, contribute actively to the process of angiogenesis in the tumor stroma. (D) In a series of human non-small-cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) specimens, each represented here by a point on the graph, the density of tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) per microscope field has been plotted vs. the density of microvessels (i.e., capillaries). Such correlations add further weight to the notion that TAMs play a key role in fostering tumor-associated angiogenesis. (E) Macrophages in the stroma of a human colorectal adenocarcinoma produce matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP-9; *brown spots*), a key enzyme in angiogenesis that acts by liberating angiogenic factors from the ECM. (A, update courtesy of J. Joyce. B, from R.D. Leek et al., *J. Pathol.* 190:430–436, 2000. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C, courtesy of V. Gocheva and J. Joyce. D, from J.J.W. Chen et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 23:953–964, 2005. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology. E, from B.S. Nielsen et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 65:57–62, 1996. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Such evidence, however, is only *correlative*. More compelling evidence of the *causal* role of macrophages, at least in tumor angiogenesis, comes from experiments in which cancer cells are forced to express higher levels of MCP-1. The expression of this chemokine allows the cancer cells to attract more macrophages, which proceed to secrete important angiogenic factors, notably VEGF and interleukin-8 (IL-8), resulting in marked increases in angiogenic activity and the formation of more extensive tumor-associated neovasculature. In addition, when lung cancer cells are exposed *in vitro* to factors that have been secreted by cultured macrophages, the cancer cells respond by producing IL-8 and several other proteins that promote angiogenesis and cell invasiveness.

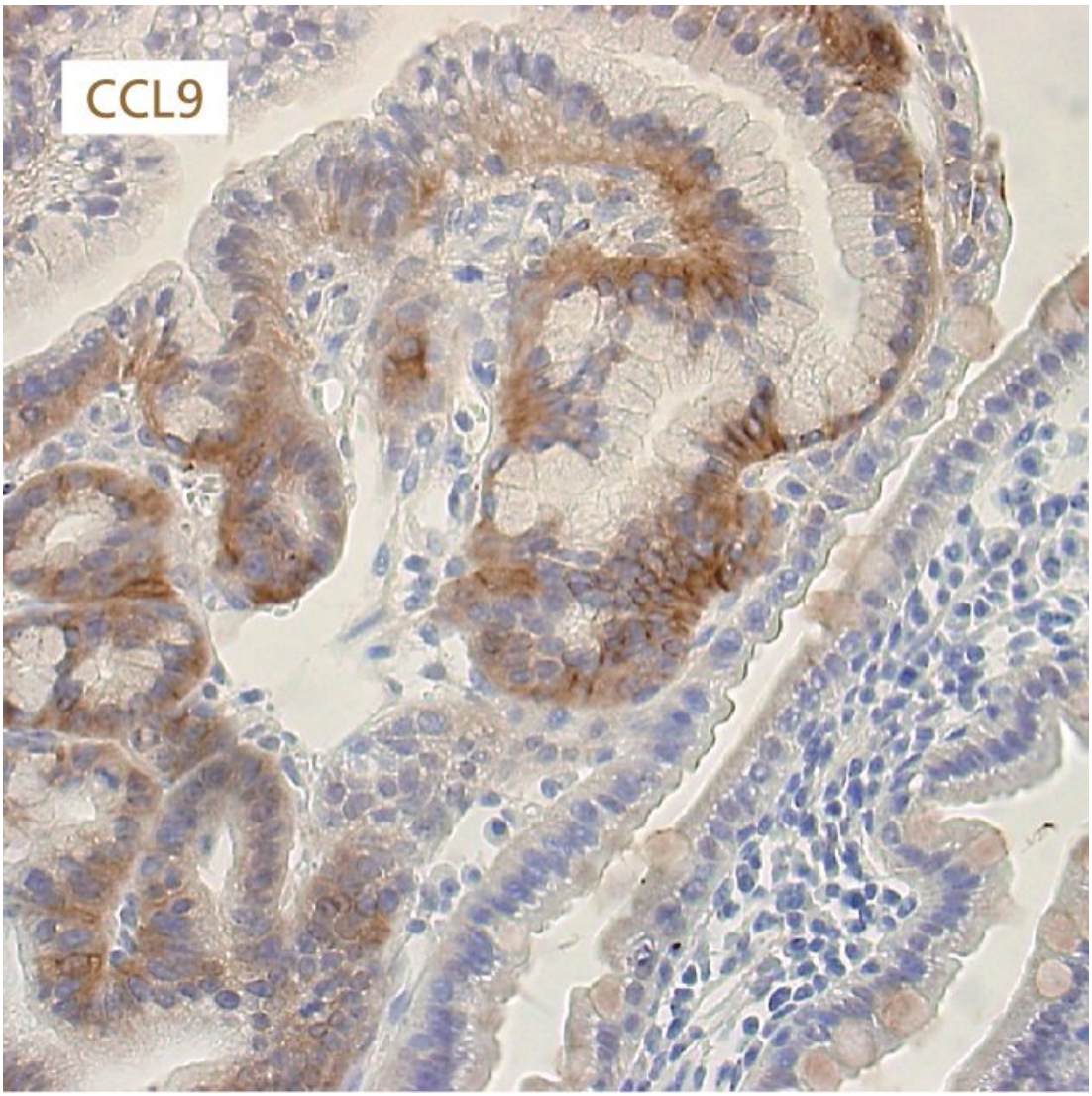
Hypoxic areas within tumors attract macrophages, which appear to tolerate hypoxia quite well. Once established in hypoxic regions of tumors, these inflammatory cells begin to secrete significant amounts of VEGF (see Figure 13.26A), which reduces the hypoxia by bringing in endothelial cells, capillaries, and thus oxygen-rich blood. Hypoxic areas of tumors often remain poorly vascularized, which indicates that the recruited macrophages, on their own, are unable to fully cure local defects in angiogenesis. Thus, in rapidly growing tumors, the macrophages and the vasculature that they induce cannot keep pace with the rate of tumor expansion, and large areas within a tumor mass eventually become necrotic (that is, filled with dead and dying cells) as a consequence (to be described in Section 13.6).

Like myofibroblasts, macrophages are adept at secreting matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs; see Table 13.1). MMP-9, prominently involved in cancer progression, is

produced by tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs; see Figure 13.26E) and, once activated, proceeds to cleave a number of important protein substrates in the extracellular space. In certain invasive carcinomas, including those of the breast, bladder, and ovary, TAMs have proven to be the major source of this enzyme. It contributes to tumor progression by enhancing angiogenesis, by disrupting existing tissue structure, thereby carving out space for expanding tumor masses, and by liberating critical mitogens that have been immobilized through tethering to proteoglycans of the ECM. MMP-9 can also cleave IGFBPs (insulin-like growth factor–binding proteins), which normally sequester IGF molecules in the extracellular space (see Section 9.14). This cleavage liberates the IGFs, notably IGF-1, which then provide survival signals to nearby cells, including cancer cells. In advanced breast cancers, TAMs are also able to help the carcinoma cells directly because they are the major source of the epidermal growth factor (EGF) that drives the proliferation of EGF-R–expressing carcinoma cells.

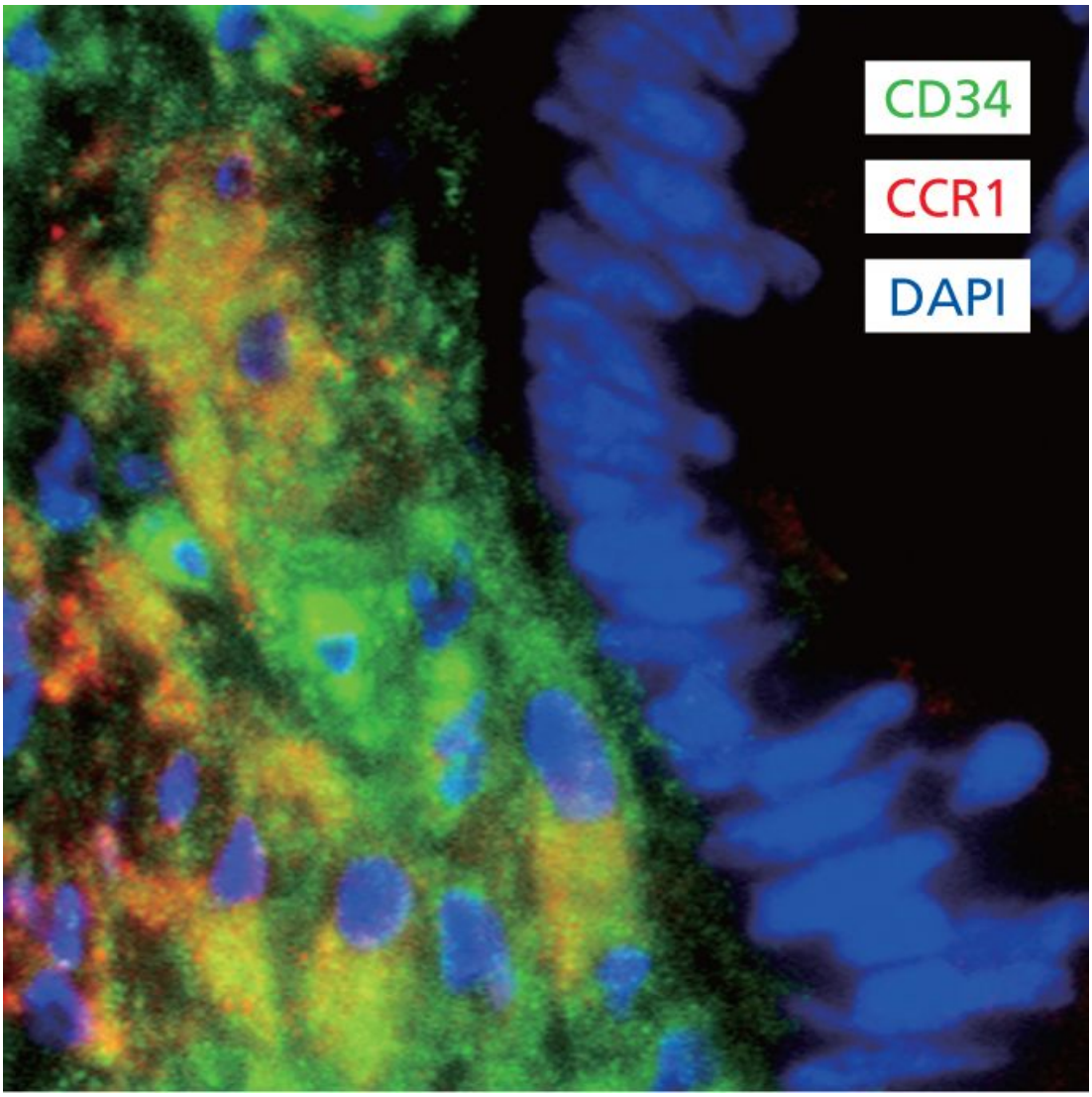
Although there is abundant evidence implicating some macrophages as active collaborators in tumor progression, it is also clear that another, distinct subset of macrophages, by acting as deputies of the immune system, can detect and kill cancer cells. Yet they clearly fail to do so in many types of tumors. Thus, some cancer cells acquire the ability to inactivate or blunt the tumoricidal (cancer-killing) actions of this second class of macrophages, while leaving intact the functions of the first type that are involved in aiding tumor progression. As we will learn in Chapters 15 and 16, these two classes of macrophages, termed M1 and M2, can either facilitate or blunt the immune attacks on tumors.

Yet another cell type in the myeloid lineage can also contribute to tumor invasiveness. *Immature myeloid cells* (iMCs) have been best characterized in mouse models of colorectal carcinogenesis. For example, when the genotype of human colorectal carcinomas is modeled in the mouse by inactivating both the *Apc* and *Smad4* genes (see Sections 7.10 and 11.3)—Smad4 being critical to TGF-β signal transduction (see Figure 6.22D)—the resulting adenoma and adenocarcinoma cells release the chemokine CCL9, which recruits iMCs originating in the bone marrow. The iMCs congregate at the invasive front of these tumors, secrete matrix metalloproteinases MMP-2 and MMP-9, and thereby facilitate invasion by the carcinoma cells into underlying tissue layers (**Figure 13.27**). Other research has shown that without MMP-2 and MMP-9, the iMCs cannot foster invasion and metastasis by the colorectal mouse tumors, and that the ability of cancer cells in the primary tumors to metastasize depends on recruitment of iMCs to these tumors.



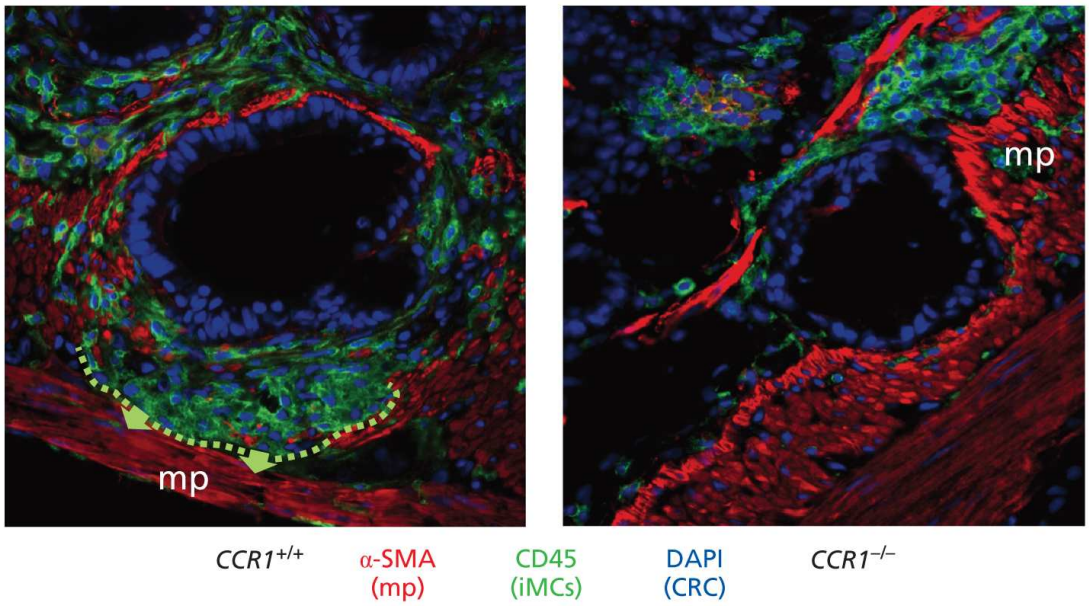
A histology image labeled C C L 9. It shows a clump of cells with pale blue nuclei and brown cytoplasms.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image, showing C D 34 in green, C C R 1 in red, and D A P I in blue. The left part of the image shows significant amounts of C D 34, with C C R 1 on the left edge, while the right side is dominated by D A P I.

(B)



Two fluorescence microscopy images, showing alpha S M A (m p) in red, C D 45 (i M Sees) in green, and D A P I (C R C) in blue. The left image, labeled C C R 1 homozygous positive, shows a front of green cells that form a semicircle around a round region of blue cells. The green cells are advancing into an area of red cells labeled M P. The right image, labeled C C R 1 homozygous negative, shows no such activity.

(C)

Figure 13.27 Immature myeloid cells promote colorectal carcinoma progression In a mouse model of colorectal (CRC) carcinogenesis, epithelial cells that have lost both Apc and Smad4 function—thereby mirroring the state of many human colorectal carcinomas (see Figure 11.11)—recruit a type of immature myeloid cell (iMC) of bone marrow origin into the tumor stroma. (A) The chemokine CCL9 (*brown*) is already released early in tumor progression by the cells in adenomas, which are precursors to frank carcinomas. Normal tissue, stained with DAPI (*light blue nuclei*), is seen in the *lower right*. CCL9 then acts as an attractant to recruit immature myeloid cells (iMCs) into the tumor stroma. (B) The cognate receptor of CCL9, termed CCR1 (*red-orange*), is displayed by many of the $CD34^+$ iMCs that are being recruited into the tumor stroma (*green*). DAPI (*blue*) stains all nuclei. (CD34 is a marker of hematopoietic precursor cells.) (C) When displaying the CCR1 receptor of CCL9 (*left panel*), large numbers of $CD45^+$ iMCs (*green*) congregate (*below*) near colorectal carcinoma cells (*blue nuclei*), and this mixed cell population begins to invade in a broad front (*green dotted line*) the underlying α-smooth muscle actin–expressing *muscularis propria* (mp, *red*). (CD45 is a marker of all types of hematopoietic cells.) However, when

the gene encoding the CCR1 receptor is knocked out in the genome of the tumor-bearing host (*right panel*), such $CD45^+$ iMCs are essentially absent and the depth of invasion is reduced 10-fold (*not shown*). The nature of the thin stripe of α-SMA-positive cells above the carcinoma cells is not known. (From T. Kitamura et al., *Nat. Genet.* 39:467–475, 2007. With permission from Nature.)

Interestingly, a certain class of immature myeloid cells have been shown to play an important role in tumor immunology, as discussed in Chapters 15 and 16. In that context, they are often termed myeloid derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) because of their strongly immunosuppressive powers that can be mustered by tumor cells to help protect themselves against various types of immune attack. As a class, immature myeloid cells represent a diverse and poorly characterized set of cell types whose precise contributions to tumor biology are still being explored.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

leukocyte
: A nonpigmented white blood cell such as a lymphocyte, monocyte, macrophage, neutrophil, or mast cell.

chemokine
: (1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

necrotic
: Referring to a region of a normal or neoplastic tissue in which the cells have died.

tumoricidal
: Able to kill cancer cells and/or destroy a tumor.

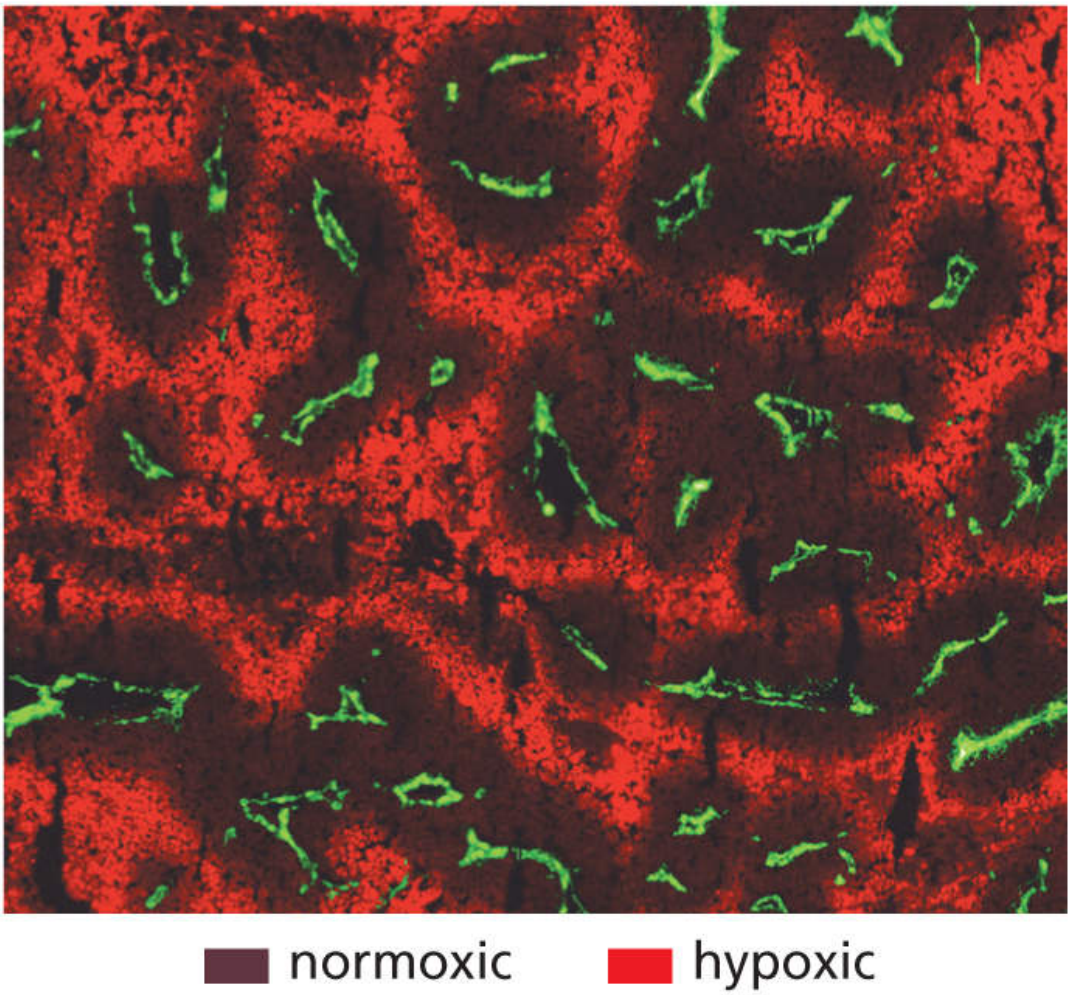
myeloid derived suppressor cell
: Relatively undifferentiated cell of myeloid origin, deriving from cells of the granulocytic or monocytic lineages, that exerts potent immunosuppressive functions on other immune cells of both the innate and adaptive arms of the immune system.

chemotaxis (adj., **-tactic**)
: Movement of a cell toward high concentrations of a soluble attractant such as a chemokine or growth factor. *See also* **chemokine**, **haptotaxis**.

OceanofPDF.com

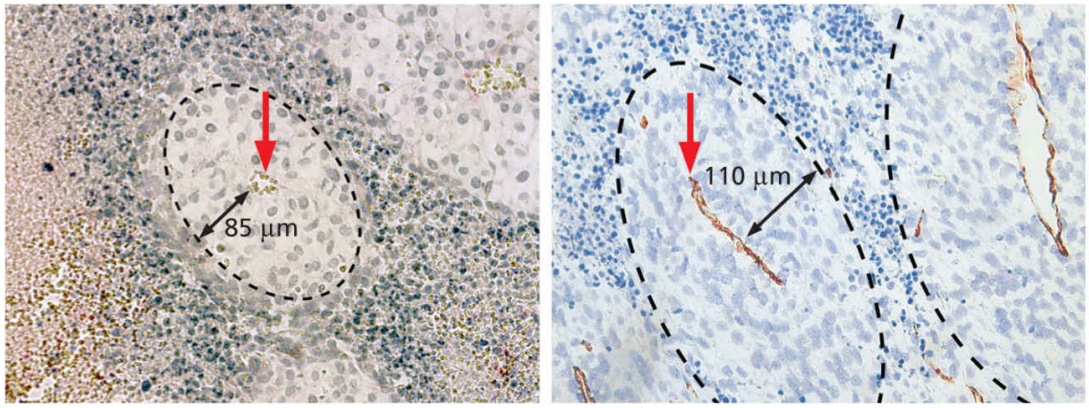
13.6 Endothelial cells and the vessels that they form ensure tumors adequate access to the circulation

The most obvious stromal support required by tumors has already been cited repeatedly in this chapter: like normal tissues, tumors require access to the circulation in order to grow and survive. As early as the mid-1950s, pathologists noted that cancer cells grew preferentially around blood vessels (**Figure 13.28A**). Those tumor cells that were located more than about 0.2 mm away from blood vessels were found to be nongrowing, and others even farther away were seen to be dying (Figure 13.28B).



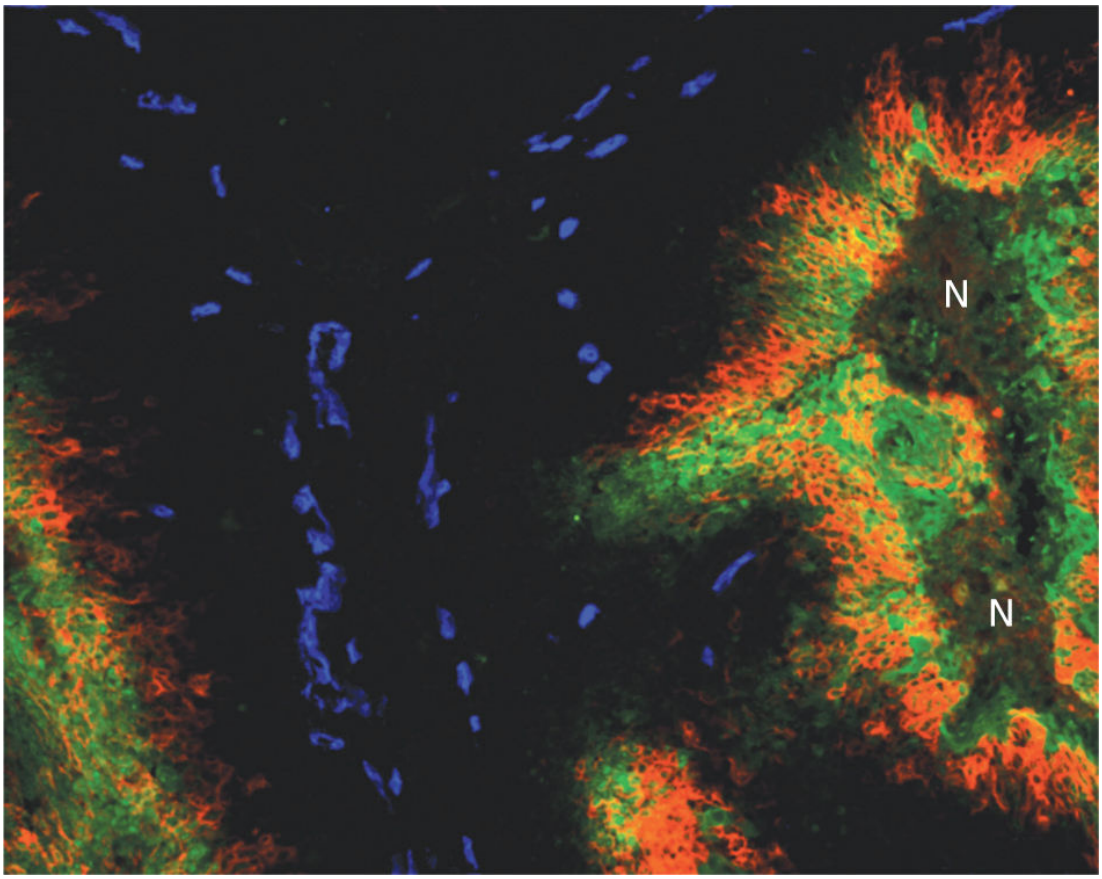
A fluorescence microscopy image. Islands of bright green dots are surrounded by dark cells which a legend identifies as normoxic. Between these islands are areas of bright red cells identified by the legend as hypoxic.

(A)



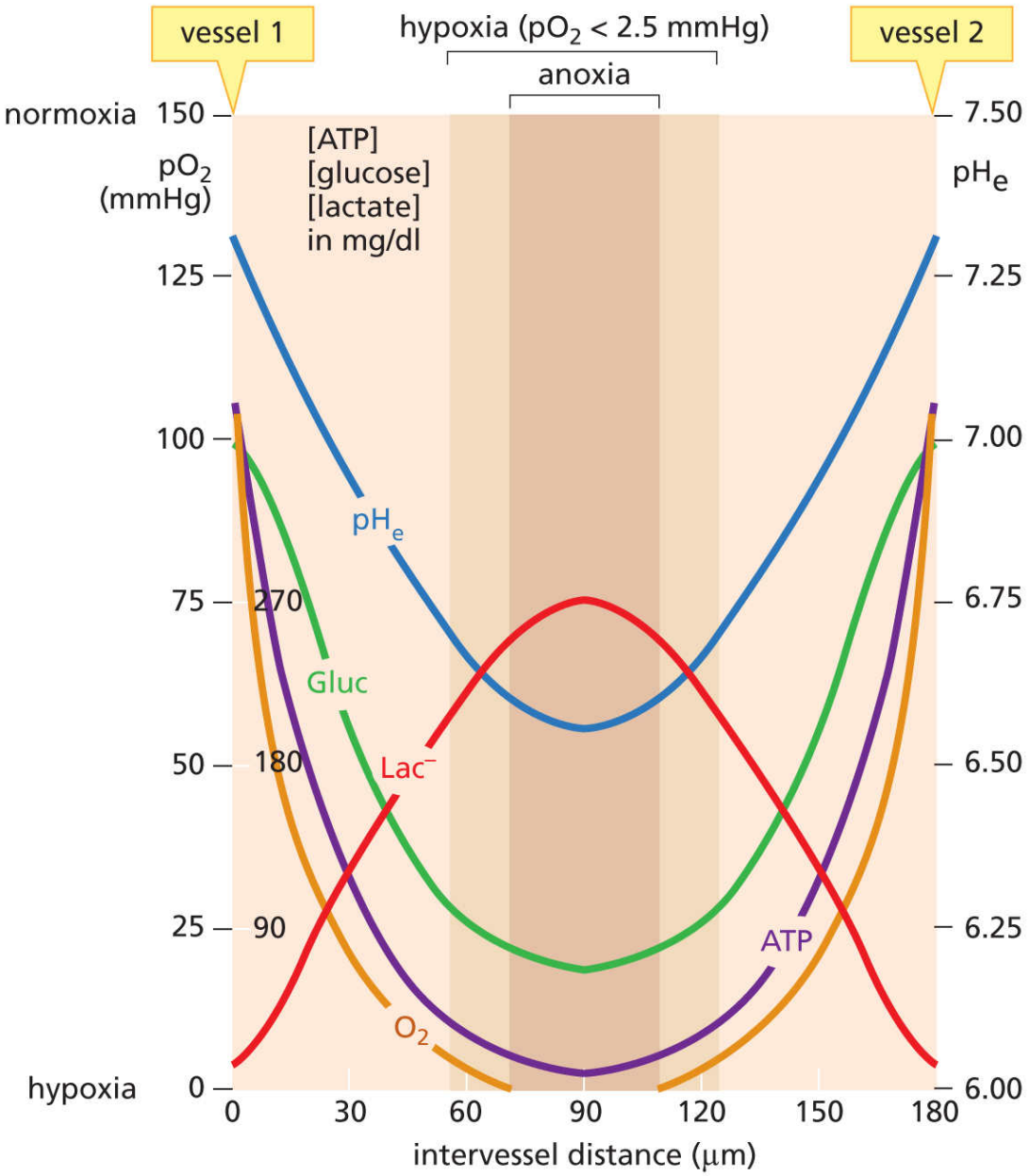
Two histology stain images. In the left one, a light colored area of human melanoma tissue is measured as having a radius of about 85 micrometers from a capillary; beyond that distance, the tissue is darker. In the right image, a light colored area of rat prostate cancer tissue is measured as having a radius of about 110 micrometers from a capillary; beyond that distance, the tissue is darker.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image containing regions of bright green, red and yellow to the left and right, and in the middle a dark region in which only blue nuclei are visible. The center of the brightly colored region on the right is darker and is marked n.

(C)

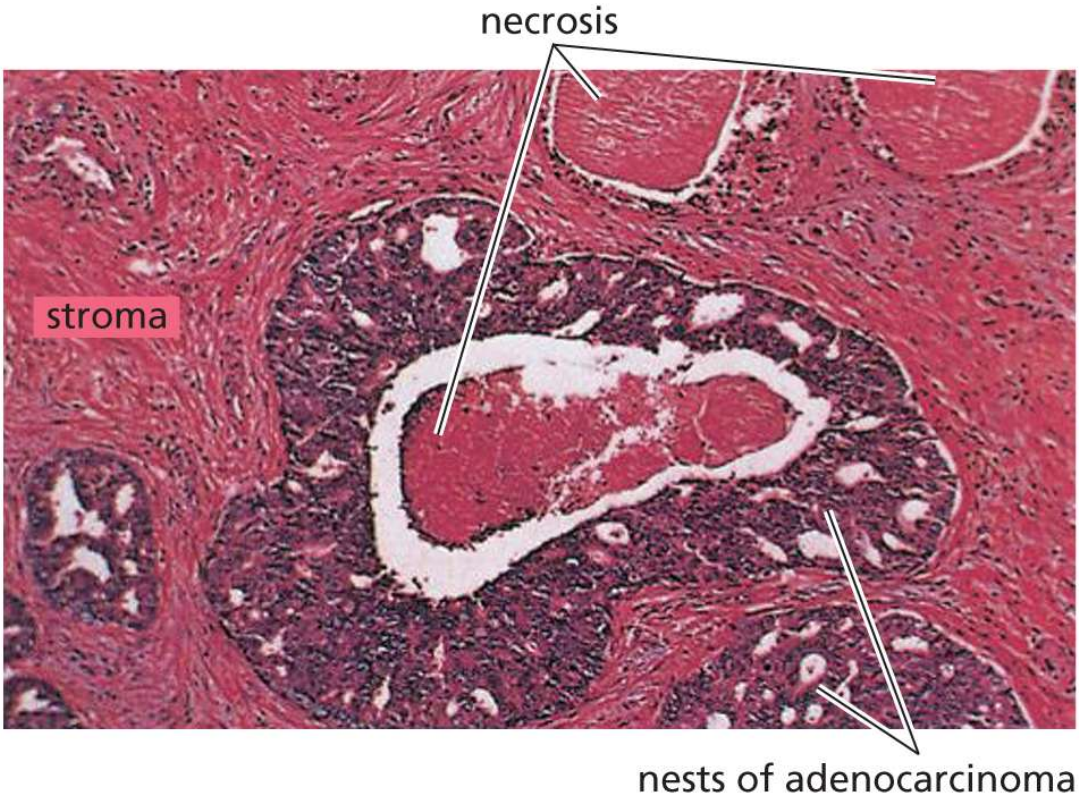


A graphic reporting the values of five parameters across a 180 micrometere gap between two blood vessels. p H e, glucose, A T P and oxygen concentrations are all high near each vessel and low in the middle of the gap

between them. The concentration of lactate, by contrast, is low near the vessels and high in the middle of the gap. The middle 40 micrometers or so of the gap are a region of anoxia. The middle 70 micrometers are a region of hypoxia, with Oxygen pressure less than 2.5 m m H g.
(D)

Figure 13.28 Hypoxia and necrosis of cells in poorly vascularized sections of tissues Various techniques have been used to demonstrate hypoxia and necrosis in regions of tissues surrounding capillaries. (A) This micrograph reveals capillaries (*green*) and the degrees of oxygenation in the surrounding tumor parenchyma. Immunostaining using an antibody reactive with EF5, a molecule that localizes to hypoxic regions of tissues, reveals hypoxic areas (*red*) at some distance from the capillaries, whereas those cells that are well oxygenated are unstained and therefore appear *dark brown*. (B) These sections of a human melanoma and a rat prostate carcinoma have been immunostained with an anti-CD31 antibody, which reveals capillaries (*red arrows*). Immediately around each capillary is a region of healthy cells (*inside the dashed line*), beyond which necrosis is apparent. The necrotic regions (*granular areas*) begin as close as 85 μm from the melanoma capillary (*left*) and 110 μm from the prostate carcinoma capillary (*right*). This necrosis reveals the limitations of diffusion in conveying oxygen and nutrients from capillaries to cells in the parenchyma of a tumor. (C) The dynamics of oxygenation on a larger scale are apparent in this human head-and-neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC). Where blood vessels (*blue spots*) provide good oxygenation, the tumor appears *black*. In contrast, in areas of poor vascularization and moderate hypoxia, a carbonic anhydrase enzyme is expressed (*red-orange*), whereas in areas of extreme hypoxia, the pimonidazole dye is detectable (*green*). Overlap between these two markers appears *orange*. Areas of necrosis, located even further away from the tumor vasculature, are indicated by “N.” (D) Measurements of five parameters indicate the dramatic changes that occur with increasing distance from microvessels within tumors. Parameters have been calculated from two arterioles running in parallel, 180 μm apart. pH_e represents the pH of extracellular fluid. These measurements in aggregate explain why cells that are situated at some distance from a microvessel experience a sub-optimal environment that often leads to their death by necrosis. (A, courtesy of B.M. Fenton. B, left, from C.M. Croce et al: Holland Frei Cancer Medicine, 9th ed. Hoboken, N.J.: John Wiley & Sons, 2017. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. B, right, from L. Hlatky, P. Hahnfeldt and J. Folkman, *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 94:883–893, 2002. With permission from Oxford University Press. C, from J.H. Kaanders et al., *Cancer Res.* 62:7066–7074, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. D, from P. Vaupel, *Semin. Radiat. Oncol.* 14:198–206, 2004. With permission from Elsevier.)

We now realize that this threshold of approximately 0.2 mm represents the distance that oxygen can effectively diffuse through living tissues. Cells located within this radius from a blood vessel can rely on diffusion to guarantee them oxygen; those situated further away suffer from moderate or severe hypoxia and low pH (see Figure 13.28B–D). Tissues suffering from hypoxia are in danger of becoming necrotic as illustrated in **Figure 13.29**, an alternative form of cell death that does not depend on apoptosis. Apoptotic death triggered by p53 also threatens hypoxic cells (see Chapter 9), and the inactivation of the p53 signaling system often enables cancer cells to survive beyond the small perimeter surrounding each capillary. Newly arising tumors must negotiate these constraints, doing so in the context of the rules that govern normal angiogenesis (Supplementary Sidebar S13.6).

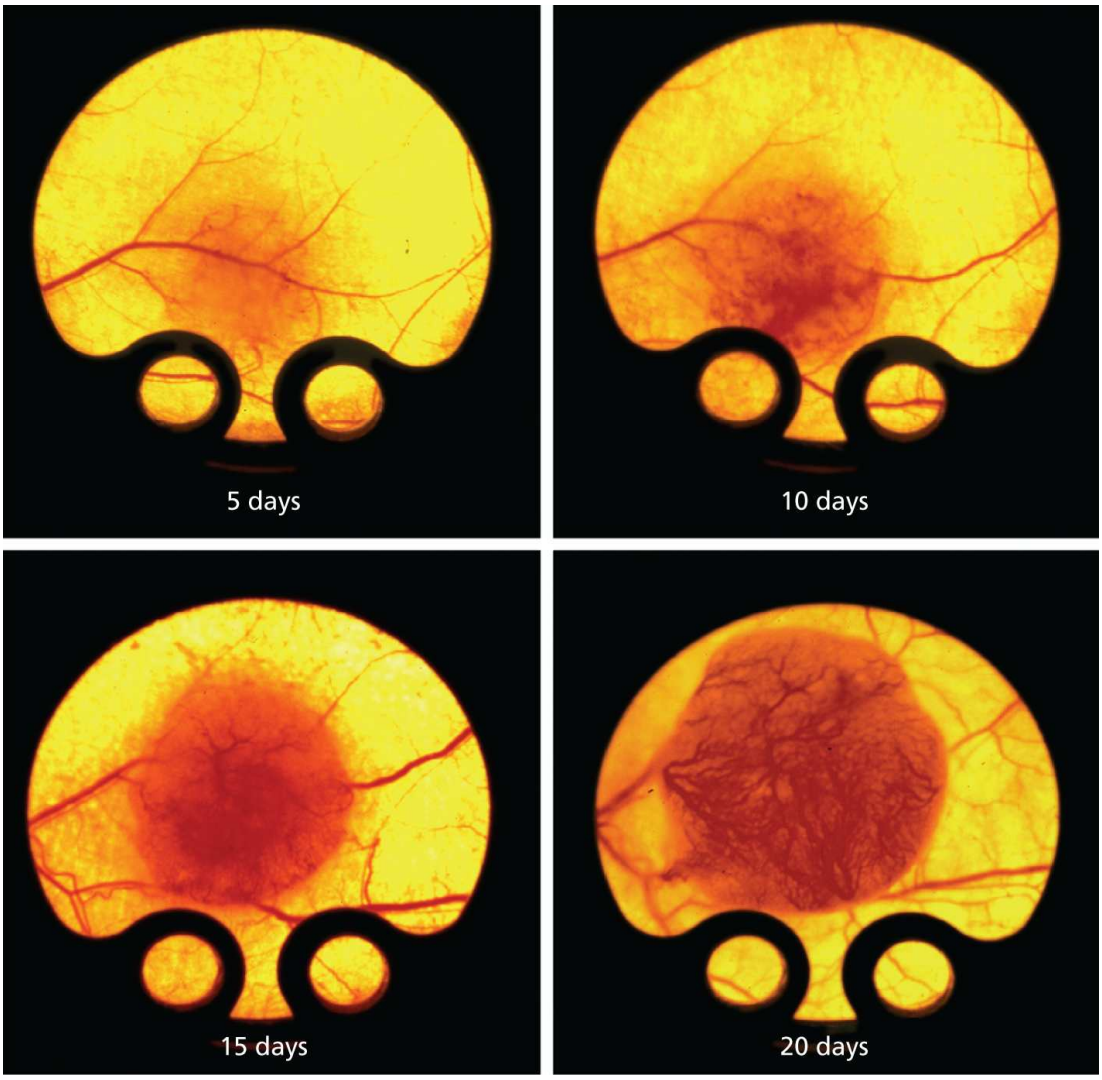


A histology image of prostate cancer. Nests of adenocarcinoma are surrounded by stroma. Three regions represent necrosis. One of these is at the center of an adenocarcinoma nest.

Figure 13.29 Large-scale necrosis within a tumor The inability of large sectors of a tumor to gain access to the vasculature in the stroma is evident in this high-grade adenocarcinoma of the prostate. As seen in the growth in the *center*, a nest of adenocarcinoma cells (*dark red*) is surrounded by extensive stroma (*light red*). In the middle of the nest of adenocarcinoma cells is a large clump of necrotic

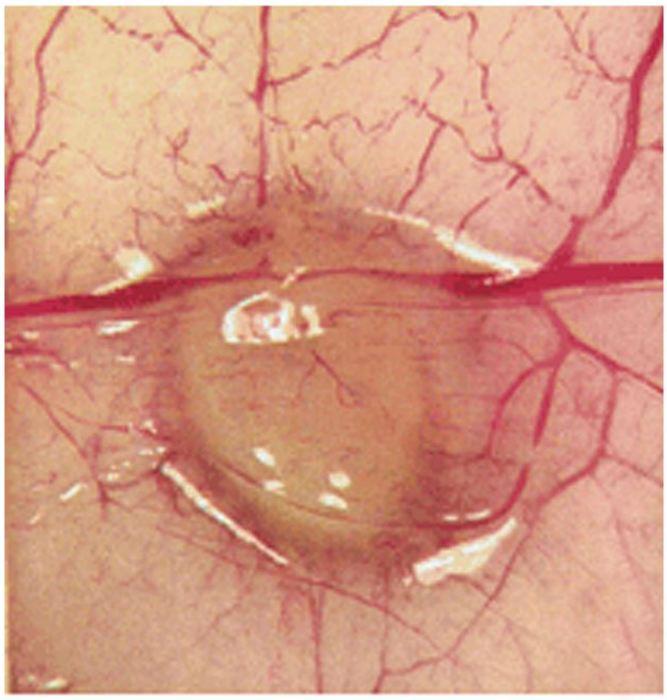
tissue (*light red*) that has shrunk away from the viable adenocarcinoma cells that surround it; the latter thrive because they have more direct access to the stroma and its associated vasculature. (From M.A. Weiss and S.E. Mills, Atlas of Genitourinary Tract Disorders, London: Gower Medical Publishing, Ltd., 1988. With permission from Elsevier.)

The existence and powers of angiogenic factors were first revealed by implanting small chunks of tumor on the cornea or the ears of laboratory animals such as rabbits. Within days, dense networks of capillaries and larger vessels were seen to emerge from preexisting capillary beds and to converge on the implanted tumor chunks. Images like these (**Figure 13.30**) have strongly influenced our thinking about the behavior of tumors and their vasculature, because they demonstrate so vividly that tumors actively recruit blood vessels into their midst.



Four images show the growth and increasingly thick vascularization of a tumor, with micrographs at 5, 10, 15, and 20 days.

(A)



control

+ VEGF-R2 inhibitor

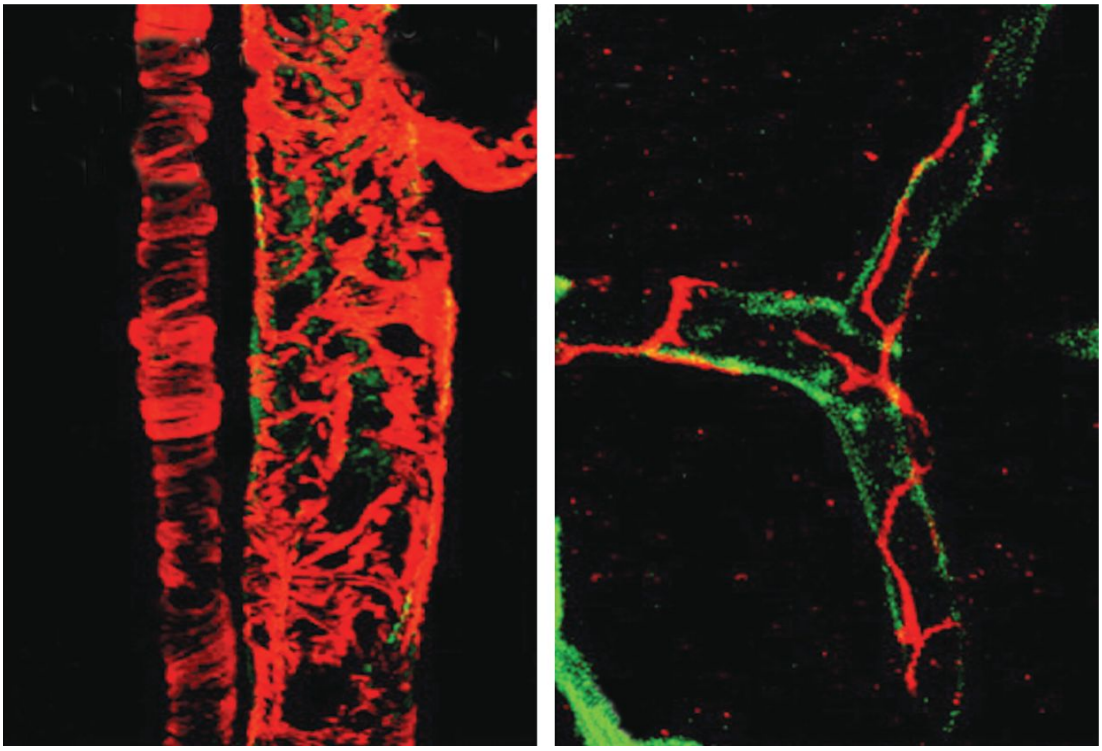
Two photographs. In the upper one, labeled control, a tumor appears covered with and surrounded by pink tissue and is fairly well vascularized. In the lower one, labeled plus V E G F-R 2 inhibitor, the tissue covering and surrounding the tumor is yellow, and the tumor is poorly vascularized.

(B)

Figure 13.30 Recruitment of capillaries by an implanted tumor (A) Shown is the growth of a small group of subcutaneously implanted human colorectal adenocarcinoma cells over a period of 20 days. The growth of the tumor-associated vessels (*red*) was observed through a window inserted above the tumor in the skin of the host mouse. (B) Such vascularization can be suppressed by antagonists of the VEGF receptor. Seen here are the effects of ZD6474 (also termed vandetanib), a low–molecular-weight inhibitor of the tyrosine kinase of the VEGF receptor-2, in mice bearing subcutaneously implanted human adenocarcinoma cell xenografts. The widespread *pink* background in the untreated control mouse is indicative of numerous capillaries, and the number of major vessels entering into a tumor mass (*above*) is strongly decreased in the presence of the drug (*below*). (A, from M. Leunig et al., *Cancer Res*. 52:6553–6560, 1992. B, from S.R. Wedge et al., *Cancer Res.* 62:4645–4655, 2002. Both with permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

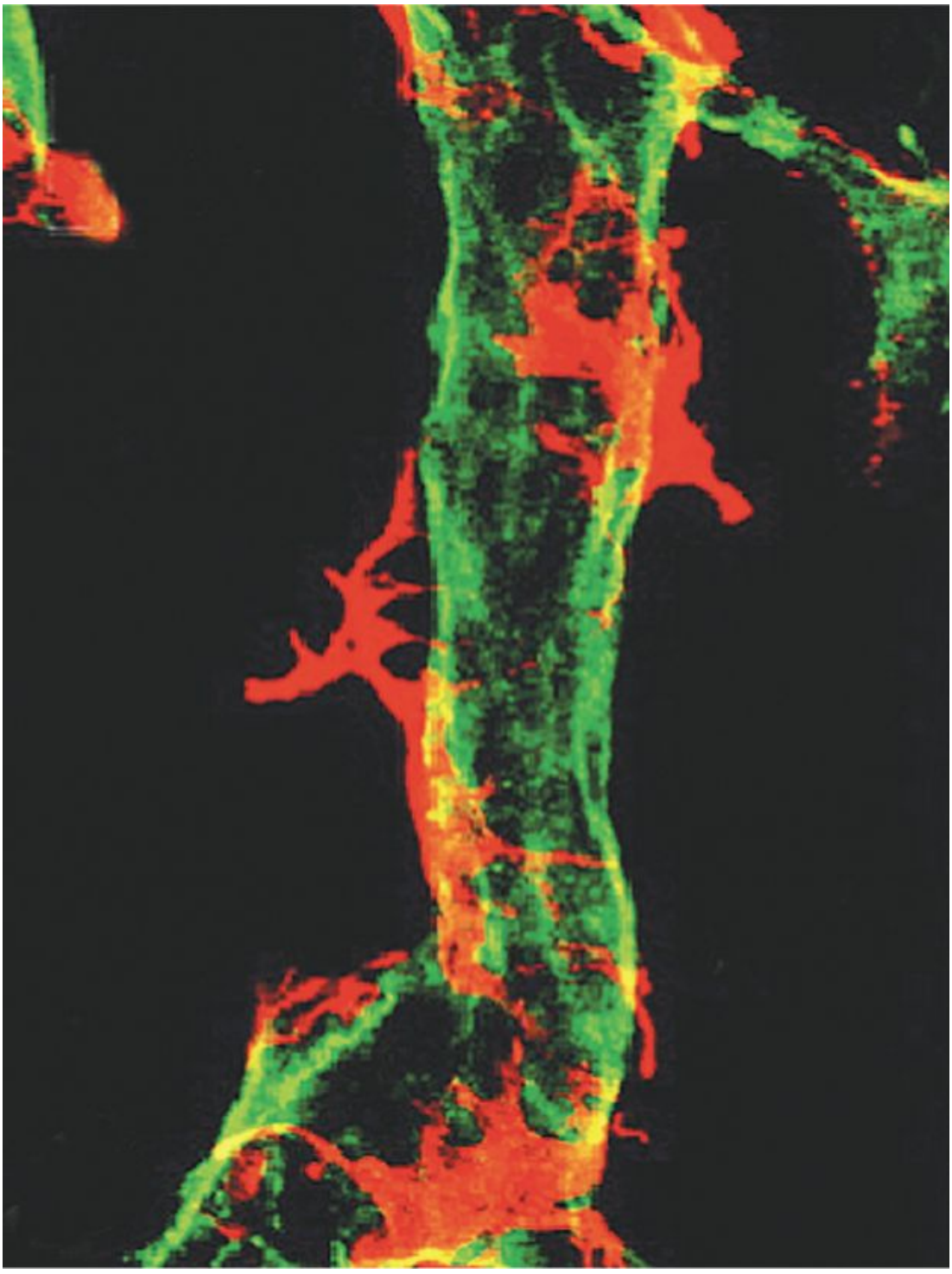
Angiogenesis is actually far more complicated than is suggested by the above discussion. Thus, this complex morphogenetic process involves many other factors in addition to the VEGFs, which clearly play a major role in attracting blood vessels to tumors. These other factors include several forms of TGF-β, basic fibroblast growth factors (notably FGF2), interleukin-8 (IL-8), angiopoietin, angiogenin, and PDGF. Also, several distinct cell types in addition to endothelial cells contribute to the construction of capillaries and larger vessels. Recall that the endothelial cells form the lumen of a capillary; these cells, in turn, are surrounded by the mural pericytes and vascular smooth muscle cells (see Figure 13.8A and B), which are absent from small lymph ducts.

The systematic covering of capillaries by pericytes seen in normal tissues can be contrasted with their chaotic dispersion near tumor-associated capillaries (**Figure 13.31**). Capillaries in tumors typically have diameters that are three times greater than their normal counterparts. In addition, the overall layout of blood vessels around and within tumor masses is quite chaotic (**Figure 13.32**). Often vessels stop abruptly in dead-end pouches or circle back and attach to themselves.



Two immunofluorescence micrographs. On the left, two medium-sized vessels, appearing in green, are almost entirely covered in tightly clinging red fibers. On the right, a capillary, again in green, has bits and pieces of red clinging tightly to its exterior.

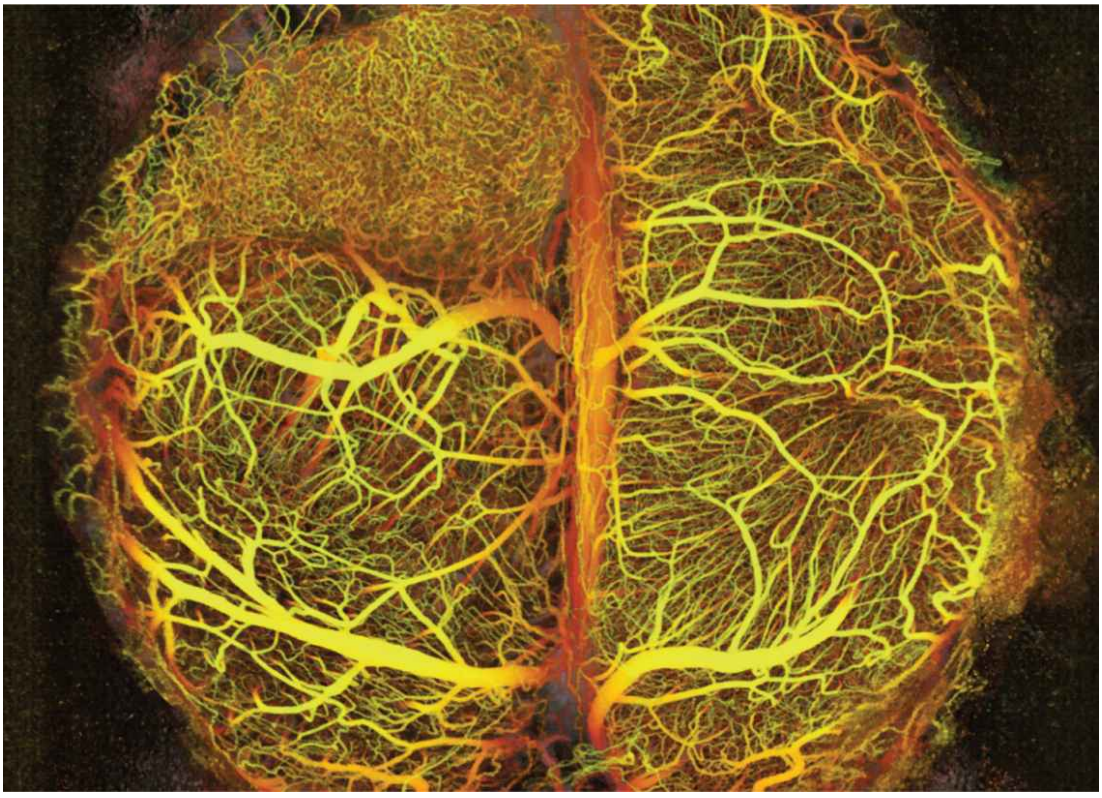
(A)



A capillary, in green, has chunks of red loosely attached to its exterior.

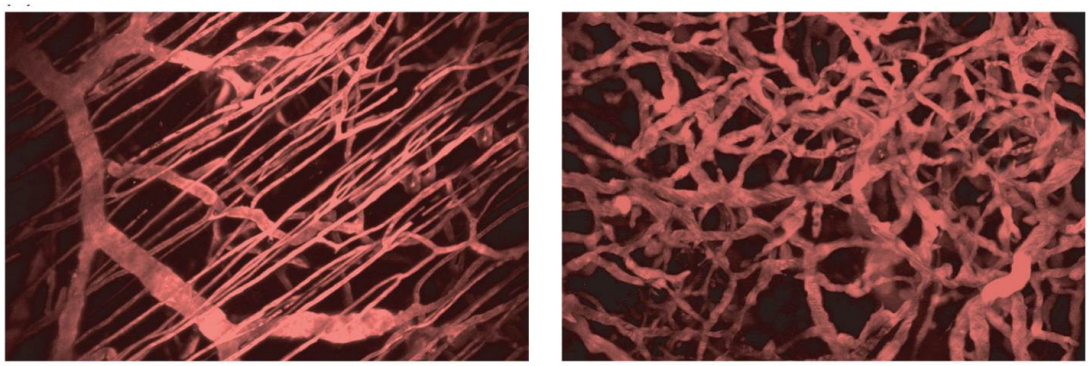
(B)

Figure 13.31 Pericytes in normal and tumor-associated vessels (A) This immunofluorescence micrograph shows that pericytes and smooth muscle cells (*both red-orange*) coat the outside of the tubes of endothelial cells (*green*), forming normally structured venules and arterioles (*left panel*). Pericytes and smooth muscle cells often cover these medium-sized vessels so completely that it is difficult to see the underlying endothelial cells. In contrast, in the smaller diameter capillaries (*right panel*), the pericytes are more sparsely disposed, but are nonetheless tightly attached to the endothelial cells. (B) This micrograph reveals the structure of a tumor-associated microvessel, in this case a vessel formed in a mouse by Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC) cells. The endothelial cells forming the lumen of this vessel (*green*) are only partially overlain by pericytes and smooth muscle cells (*red-orange*). The loose attachment of pericytes to the capillaries can be contrasted to their tight attachment seen in Figure 13.8A and B and panel A of this figure. (From S. Morikawa et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 160:985–1000, 2002. With permission from American Society for Investigative Pathology.)



An image of what looks like a giant red and yellow ball of roots, oddly spherical but otherwise such as might be found under a bush or tree. Vessels ir the upper left corner of the image are much smaller than the rest, giving the impression of finer-textured tissue.

(A)



Two images contrast the linearity and parallel orientation of fine vessels on the left with the randomness and comparative coarseness of vessels on the right.

(B)

Figure 13.32 The chaotic organization of tumor-associated vasculature
Different techniques of imaging vessels in living tissues (sometimes termed *intra-vital* imaging) reveal at different levels of resolution the starkly contrasting organization of normal and neoplastic vasculature. (A) Intra-vital multiphoton microscopy allows the imaging of living tissues at multiple depths, in this case, the microvasculature of an implanted human glioblastoma multiforme growing as a xenograft in the mouse brain (*upper left*). Note the absence of the well-organized hierarchy of major and minor vessels that is apparent in normal brain tissue. (B) Two-photon microscopy has generated this higher-resolution image of the detailed organization of normal vs. neoplastic microvessels. Note the differing overall organization of the microvascular beds in the normal versus tumor tissue as well as the increased diameters of the tumor-associated capillaries. (A, from B.J. Vakoc et al., *Nat. Med.* 15:1219–1223, 2009. B, from R.K. Jain, *Nat. Med.* 9:685–693, 2003. Both with permission from Nature.)

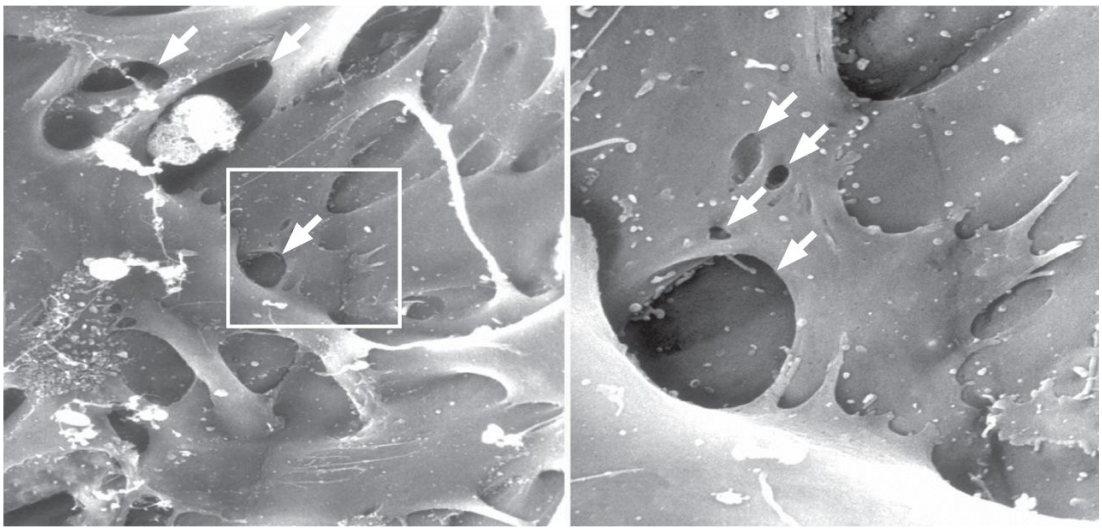
The precise reasons that capillaries and larger vessels within tumors are so haphazardly constructed are unclear. One possible factor is likely attributable to the imbalance between two mutually antagonistic growth factors, angiopoietin-1 and -2. Whereas VEGF is responsible for initiating the growth of capillaries by attracting and stimulating endothelial cells, a mix of angiopoietin-1 and -2 induces endothelial cells to recruit the pericytes and smooth muscle cells that enable newly formed capillaries to mature into properly assembled vessels containing appropriate proportions of these three cell types. An imbalance of these two angiopoietins, together with the greatly

elevated levels of VEGF within tumors, is suspected to be responsible for much of the defective construction of the vasculature within neoplasms. Indeed, some experiments indicate that most of the morphological abnormalities of tumor-associated microvessels can be mimicked simply by local overexpression of VEGF-A, the main pro-angiogenic factor.

At the submicroscopic level, it is also apparent that the capillaries in tumor masses are assembled haphazardly. This arrangement arises because the plasma membranes of adjacent endothelial cells do not contact one another to form a seamless lining around the capillary lumen but instead leave gaps, often several microns wide (**Figure 13.33A and B**), which allow direct access of the blood plasma to the cells surrounding the capillary. The resulting leakage (Figure 13.33C) seems to be responsible for the deposition of fibrin in the tumor parenchyma described earlier (see Figure 13.17).

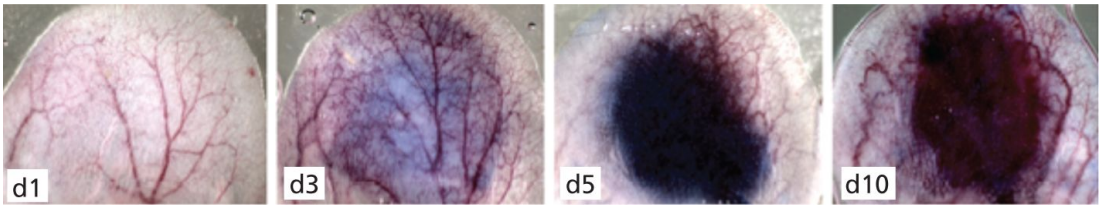
A scanning micrograph of a rippled, and sometimes bubbled, surface of cells tightly adhering to one another, without gaps.

(A)



Two scanning micrographs, the second a close-up of the first, showing a surface of cells tethered to one another haphazardly and with voids between, indicated by arrows.

(B)



A series of four photographs of a mouse’s ear, taken on day 1, day 3, day 5, day 10. On day 1, the ear looks fairly normal, pale with red veins. On day 3, it has a light purple bruise. And on days 5 and 10, it looks like one big, dark purple bruise.

(C)

Figure 13.33 Gaps in the tumor microvasculature and resulting leakage (A) This scanning micrograph reveals the tight seals between endothelial cells forming the luminal wall of this venule in a normal mouse mammary gland; these cell–cell junctions, indicated here by *white arrowheads*, do not overlap and block essentially all leakage of fluid from the lumen of the microvessel into the tissue parenchyma. The *black arrows* indicate bulges in the luminal surface deriving from underlying endothelial cell nuclei (see Figure 13.8A). (B) This scanning electron micrograph reveals that the sheets of endothelial cells fail to form a continuous uninterrupted surface in the wall of a capillary within a tumor. Instead, the tumor-associated endothelial cells overlap one another and, as indicated here

(*arrows*), show gaps of significant size between them. The box in the *left panel* is shown at higher magnification in the *right panel*. Such gaps permit the seepage of plasma fluids into the interstitial spaces between the cancer cells in the tumor parenchyma, contributing to the high hydrostatic pressure in these spaces. (C) The role of VEGF in inducing capillary permeability is illustrated here in an experiment in which an adenovirus gene expression vector encoding VEGF-A was infected into the ears of mice. At the indicated days thereafter, Evans Blue dye was injected into the general circulation of the mice and the ears were imaged 30 minutes later. With increasing time after initial VEGF-A expression, the microvessels became increasingly permeable, resulting in leakage of the dye molecules from the circulation into the parenchymal tissue of the ear. (A and B, from H. Hashizume et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 156:1363–1380, 2000. With permission from American Society for Investigative Pathology. C, from J.A. Nagy et al., *Lab. Invest.* 86:767–780, 2006. With permission from Nature.)

Quantitative measures indicate that the walls of capillaries in tumors are about 10 times more permeable than those of normal capillaries. Much of this leakiness is attributable to the defective assembly of capillary walls noted here, which seems, in turn, to result from the deregulated production of VEGF by cancer cells and by macrophages and fibroblasts in the tumor-associated stroma. We know this because when an antibody that neutralizes VEGF is introduced into the circulation of tumor-bearing mice, the permeability of the walls of the tumor-associated capillaries is substantially reduced. In fact, a mysterious extracellular factor—vascular permeability factor (VPF)—was first described in 1979, but its biochemical nature only became clear a decade later with the cloning of its gene, which was thereafter termed the VEGF. This permeability of tumor-associated microvessels can have dramatic effects on other processes, such as certain forms of anti-cancer therapy (**Sidebar 13.6**).

Sidebar 13.6 Vessel permeability governs one childhood cancer treatment

Medulloblastomas are childhood tumors of the cerebellum and are encountered in four forms in the pediatric oncology clinic, distinguished by various somatically mutated genes. Three forms are treated with various degrees of success, whereas the fourth type, termed WNT-medulloblastomas, is almost invariably curable. The cancer cells of this subtype, which exhibit hyperactive Wnt signaling caused by their expression of mutant β-catenin (see Figure 6.19B), secrete large amounts of Wnt inhibitors into the extracellular space. These inhibitors block normal Wnt signaling, which is critical for the proper formation of capillaries in the brain. Consequently, these tumors develop microvessels that carry many large gaps, termed fenestrations, that result in as much as a 300-fold increase in the transport of drugs from the circulation into the tumor parenchyma. This permeability of tumor-associated microvessels renders these tumors

highly curable, in that relatively low drug concentrations that have few toxic side effects on the treated children succeed in eliminating these tumors, while having little effect on the other three forms of medulloblastoma. (The four types of medulloblastoma cells are equally susceptible to killing by cytotoxic drugs when propagated in tissue culture.)

As mentioned, the leakiness of tumor-associated capillaries leads to the accumulation of substantial amounts of fluid in the interstitial spaces within a tumor. In normal tissues, these fluids are drained continuously by the lymphatic vessels (see Figure 13.8C), which eventually empty their contents into the venous circulation (**Sidebar 13.7**). However, within solid tumors, the ongoing expansion of cancer cell populations exerts physical pressure on those few lymphatic vessels that do succeed in forming, causing their collapse (**Figure 13.34**). (Blood capillaries are more capable of resisting this pressure because of their own significant internal hydrostatic pressure, which lymphatic vessels lack.) The resulting defective lymphatic drainage within the cores of solid tumors further exacerbates the elevated accumulation of fluid caused by capillary leakage, generating relatively high fluid pressure in the nonvascular parts of tumors.

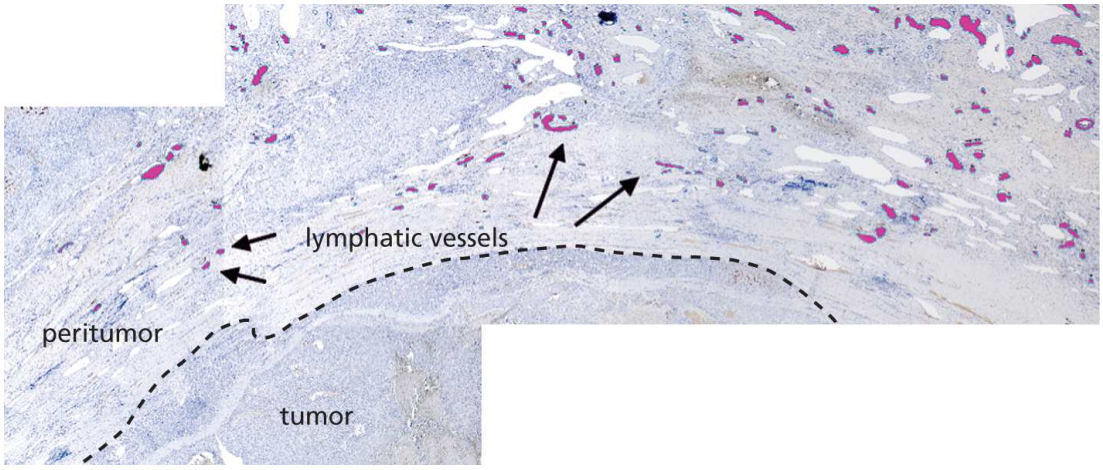
Sidebar 13.7 Endothelial cells also construct lymph ducts

Lymph ducts have two major functions in normal physiology. They drain fluid from the interstices between cells and empty this fluid into the venous circulation. In addition, they allow antigen-presenting cells of the immune system to convey antigens from various tissues to the lymph nodes, where immune responses are often initiated (to be described in Chapter 15).

Interestingly, lymph ducts are assembled from endothelial cells originating in the same embryonic stem cell population that yields the endothelial cells of capillaries and larger blood vessels. During embryonic development, lymphatic vessels can often be observed to bud from developing capillaries before they separate and construct their own parallel network of interconnecting vessels (see Figure 13.8C). In addition, the factors that stimulate lymphangiogenesis—vascular endothelial growth factors C and D (VEGF-C and VEGF-D)—are homologous to VEGF-A and -B, which play a major role in stimulating the angiogenesis that creates the blood vasculature.

As might be expected, the receptor for VEGF-C and VEGF-D displayed by lymphatic endothelial cells—VEGF receptor 3 (VEGF-R3)—is structurally related to the dominant VEGF receptor of blood capillaries, VEGF-R2. In addition, there is clear evidence that VEGF-D, which is mainly responsible for driving lymphangiogenesis, may also help stimulate angiogenesis by binding and activating VEGF-R2. So these two systems—the blood and lymphatic networks—derive from common evolutionary

roots, develop from common precursors in the embryo, and continue to interact with one another in complex ways within adult tissues. Of note, there are even more ancient evolutionary connections between the mechanisms guiding the growth of capillaries and those guiding nerve axon growth (to be described in Section 13.10.)



A histology image in which a tumor is surrounded by lighter-colored peritumor tissue. The peritumor tissue contains red specks representing lymphatic vessels. The tumor itself contains no red specks.

Figure 13.34 Absence of lymphatic vessels within solid tumors Analysis of a section of a hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC; liver cancer) reveals (via specific antibody staining) that lymph ducts (*dark red*) are present in the normal tissue above the tumor margin (*dotted line*) but are absent within the tumor mass itself. This absence may be attributed (1) to the lack of formation of these ducts during tumor growth or (2) to the collapse and degeneration of these ducts because of the high hydrostatic pressure within solid tumors; both mechanisms are likely to operate. (From C. Mouta Carreira et al., *Cancer Res.* 61:8079–8084, 2001. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Yet another mechanism conspires to maintain high hydrostatic pressure within tumors: the large amounts of PDGF that are released by many types of carcinoma cells induce contraction of stromal myofibroblasts, resulting in the squeezing out ("expression") of interstitial fluid. Hence, at least three mechanisms—lymphatic vessel collapse and resulting loss of fluid drainage, weeping by capillaries, and fibroblast contraction—contribute to high intra-tumoral hydrostatic pressure. This pressure, in turn, greatly complicates the administration of anti-cancer therapeutic drugs, because it prevents the formation of the steep pressure gradient leading from the capillary lumen down to the parenchyma that is needed for the efficient passive transfer of drugs from the circulation into the extravascular spaces of the tumor (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.7**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

fenestration
: An opening in a surface, such as one found in the wall of a blood vessel.

lymphangiogenesis
: The process of forming new lymphatic vessels.

expression
: (1) Transcription of an active gene or synthesis of a protein from its encoded mRNA. (2) Forced release of interstitial fluid from a tissue caused by contraction of cells and/or extracellular matrix in that tissue. *See also* **repression**.

interstitial
: (n. pl., **interstices**) (1) Referring to the space between an array of objects. (2) The space within a tissue that lies between cells.

OceanofPDF.com

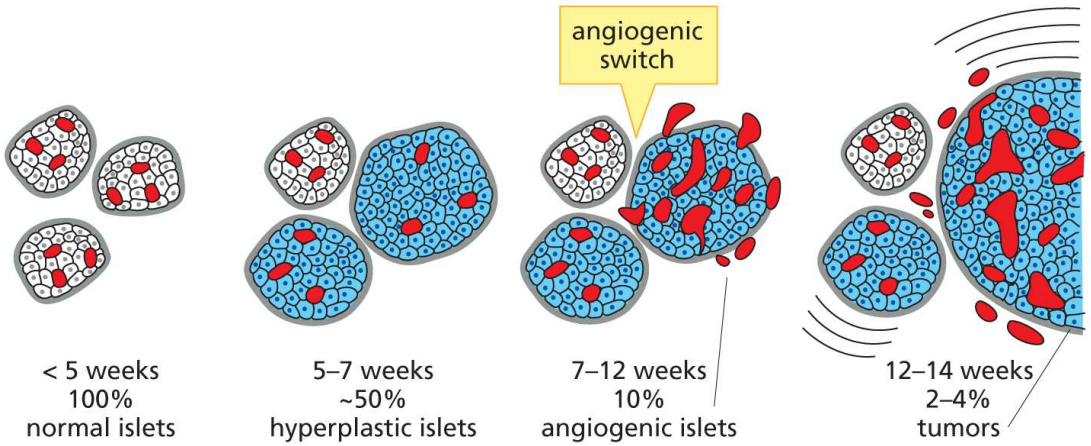
13.7 Tripping the angiogenic switch is essential for tumor expansion

The descriptions of angiogenesis given above would seem to suggest that the release of angiogenic factors is virtually automatic: whenever groups of cells, including cancer cells, suffer hypoxia, they release angiogenic factors and thereby provoke the growth of capillaries into their midst. This sequence of steps cures the hypoxia and results in an appropriate density of capillaries in the tissue harboring these cells.

In fact, the ability to attract blood vessels seems to be a trait that many tumor cell populations initially lack and must acquire as tumor progression proceeds. This idea was first suggested by the observation, cited above, that in certain tumors, cancer cells thrive near capillaries, but those that are located further than 0.2 mm from capillaries stop growing and may enter apoptosis or become necrotic (see Section 13.6). So, even though these cancer cells experience hypoxia, they lack the ability to induce the formation of nearby capillaries.

We know much about these dynamics from detailed study of experimental models of tumorigenesis. The most informative of these has been the Rip-Tag transgenic mouse. It carries a transgene in its germ line, in which the concomitant expression of the SV40 large T antigen (see Sections 8.5 and 9.1) and small T antigen (see Sidebar 11.9) is driven by the promoter of the insulin gene. This promoter ensures expression of these viral oncoproteins in the β cells that form the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas (in which insulin is normally produced).

Tumor progression in the 400 or so islets of the mouse pancreas can be easily followed, because these islets can readily be distinguished from the surrounding tissue of the exocrine pancreas, which is involved in manufacturing and secreting digestive enzymes. As many as half of these islets in a Rip-Tag mouse form hyperplastic nodules by 10 weeks of age, and 8 to 12% of the hyperplastic islets eventually progress to become angiogenic, that is, they acquire the ability to recruit new blood vessels. By 12 to 14 weeks, about 3% of the initially formed hyperplastic islets finally progress to form carcinomas (**Figure 13.35**).



An illustration of a progression, in four stages. Stage 1, labeled less than 5 weeks, 100 percent normal islets, shows three normal-sized islets, each containing three normal-sized capillaries. Stage 2, labeled 5 to 7 weeks, roughly 50 percent hyperplastic islets, shows two of the islets now oversized, but all capillaries still normal in size and number. Stage 3, labeled 7 to 12 weeks, 10 percent angiogenic islets, shows that the angiogenic switch has occurred in one of the two oversized islets. It now has a dozen capillaries, many irregular in shape and some lying outside the body of the islet. Stage 4, 12 to 14 weeks, 2 to 4 percent tumors, shows the angiogenic islet growing rapidly, with capillaries proliferating both inside and around it.

Figure 13.35 The Rip-Tag model of islet cell tumor progression Multi-step tumorigenesis in the Rip-Tag transgenic mouse model proceeds in distinct stages. Normal pancreatic islets (also known as islets of Langerhans; *left*) carry a small number of capillaries (*red*) to support, among their other cellular constituents, the β cells, which are responsible for synthesizing and secreting insulin into the circulation. By 5–7 weeks of age, about half of these islets become hyperplastic, but the density of blood vessels is not increased. At 7–12 weeks, about 10% of the hyperplastic islets become angiogenic, as indicated by the greatly increased density of capillaries in the surrounding, nearby exocrine pancreas. Finally, by 12–14 weeks of life, 2–4% of the initially formed hyperplastic islets have become invasive carcinomas that grow rapidly and invade the surrounding exocrine pancreas. The exocrine pancreas, in which these islets are embedded, is not illustrated here. (From D. Hanahan and J. Folkman, *Cell* 86:353–364, 1996. With permission from Elsevier.)

Early in tumor progression in the Rip-Tag mice, the hyperplastic pancreatic islets begin to expand slightly to a small diameter of about 0.1–0.2 mm and then halt their forward march (see Figure 13.35), at least for a while. In these small nests of tumor

cells, cell division continues unabated, being driven by the oncogenic SV40 transgene. However, the overall size of the tumor cell population within each islet remains constant because of a compensating attrition of cells occurring through apoptosis. This mouse model suggests that in humans, small tumor nests may also remain in such a dynamic but nongrowing state for many years, unable to break through the barriers that are holding them back.

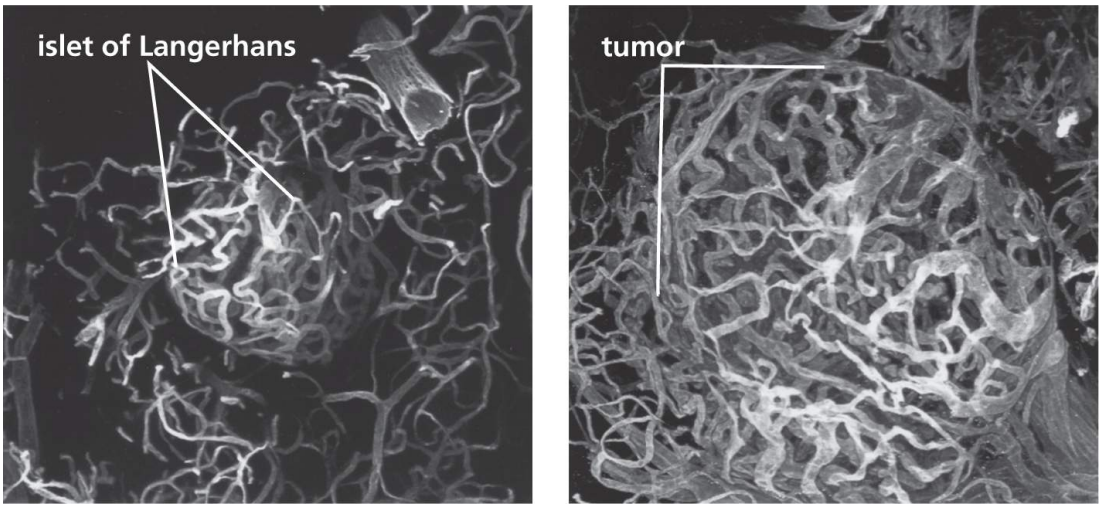
In principle, a critical barrier constraining the expansion of the tumor cell nests might be a physical one—lack of adequate space within the tissue for these cancer cells to multiply. But detailed histological analysis of these small nests of cancer cells reveals something quite different. Because these cells have not yet become angiogenic, they lack vasculature. The resulting hypoxia that they experience triggers apoptosis, which explains their high rate of attrition. (It is possible that other sub-optimal conditions within these poorly vascularized cell nests, including inadequate nutrient supply, high levels of carbon dioxide and metabolic wastes, and low pH caused by lactic acid accumulation, also contribute to the death of these cells; for example, see Figure 13.28D).

At some point in time, however, small clusters of these pre-neoplastic islet cells suddenly acquire the ability to provoke neoangiogenesis (see Figure 13.35). Once these cells learn how to induce capillaries to form nearby, they and their descendants seem to be liberated from the major constraint that has been holding back their multiplication. This sudden, dramatic change in the behavior of the small tumor masses is said to reflect the operations of the mechanism termed the angiogenic switch.

These phenomena suggest an interesting idea, really a speculation: the body purposefully denies its cells the ability to readily induce angiogenesis. By doing so, the body erects yet another impediment to block the development of large neoplasms. According to such thinking, the angiogenic switch—a clearly important step in tumor progression—represents the successful breaching of this defensive barrier and the acquisition by cancer cells of a forbidden fruit: the ability to induce blood vessel growth at will.

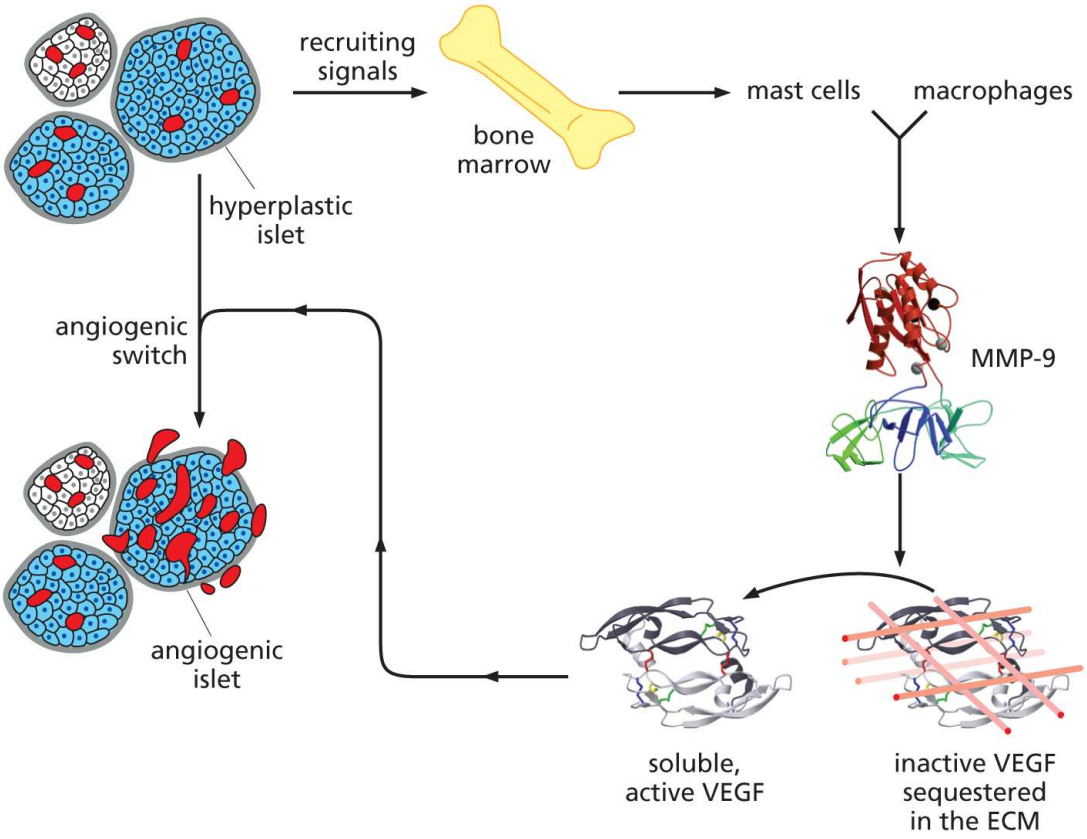
One might conclude that the angiogenic switch in these transgenic mice is driven by the premalignant β cells' suddenly acquiring the ability to express and release VEGFs. Actually, these cells have been making large amounts of VEGFs long before the angiogenic switch occurs, as do fully normal pancreatic islets. However, the VEGF molecules secreted by these β cells are efficiently sequestered by the surrounding extracellular matrix (ECM). As a consequence, the VEGF molecules are functionally inactive and thus unable to stimulate angiogenesis.

This sequestered state of the VEGF explains why the angiogenic switch in the Rip-Tag pancreatic islets is accompanied by the sudden appearance of substantial amounts of matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP-9; see Table 13.1). MMP-9 acts in a targeted fashion to cleave specific structural components of the ECM, thereby releasing VEGF for active signaling to nearby endothelial cells (**Figure 13.36**). This MMP-9 is synthesized and released by inflammatory cells—mast cells and macrophages—that have been attracted to the premalignant islets. Hence, in this particular tumor model, tripping of the angiogenic switch ultimately depends on an acquired ability to recruit inflammatory cells.



Two micrographs of blood vessels. The first is of a normal islet of Langerhans. The second is of one taken over by a tumor, which is significantly denser.

(A)



A flowchart. A hyperplastic islet of Langerhans sends recruiting signals that cause bone marrow to produce mast cells, which together with macrophages produce M M P-9, which convert inactive V E G F sequestered in the E C M into soluble, active V E G F. That trips the angiogenic switch, causing the hyperplastic islet to become an angiogenic islet.

(B)

Figure 13.36 The angiogenic switch and recruitment of inflammatory cells
(A) The normal islet of Langerhans (*oval area, center of left panel*) is poorly vascularized and is sustained largely through diffusion from the microvessels surrounding it. Following tripping of the angiogenic switch, there is an increase in the number of cells within the islet, caused by tumor expansion and, as seen here, a dramatic induction of vessel formation with vessels now threading their way through the islet (*right panel*). Imaging was achieved by whole-mount microscopy of lectin-perfused vessels. (B) According to the scheme presented here, a pre-angiogenic, hyperplastic islet sends signals to the bone marrow or circulation, or both (*not illustrated*), that lead to the recruitment of mast cells and macrophages. Once in the vicinity of the islet, these cells release metalloproteinases, notably MMP-9. MMP-9 then cleaves extracellular matrix (ECM) components (*light orange, orange, lower right*), liberating vascular endothelial growth factor

(VEGF) from its sequestered state. The solubilized VEGF proceeds to induce angiogenesis around the islet, thereby tripping the angiogenic switch. (A, courtesy of G. Bergers, D. Hanahan, and L.M. Coussens. See also G. Bergers, D. Hanahan and L.M. Coussens, *Int. J. Dev. Biol.* 42:995–1002, 1998. B, adapted from data in G. Bergers et al., *Nat. Cell Biol.* 2:737–744, 2000. Image of VEGF in B, from Y.A. Muller et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:7192–7197, 1997. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

If the gene encoding VEGF is selectively deleted from the islet cells through genetic engineering, the islets survive and the early steps of tumor progression still proceed normally, but the angiogenic switch is never tripped. This observation reinforces the conclusion that VEGF molecules of islet cell origin play a critical role in triggering the onset of angiogenesis and that recruited stromal cells cannot compensate for this absence of VEGF by bringing in some of their own.

This scenario (see Figure 13.36B) involves heterotypic interactions among three distinct cell types: (1) the release of still-unidentified signals from the premalignant islet cells that recruit mast cells (**Sidebar 13.8**) and, quite possibly, macrophages; (2) the release of MMP-9 by these inflammatory cells to activate previously latent VEGF made by the premalignant islet cells; and (3) the proliferative response of endothelial cells to the activated VEGF. In fact, yet other cell types are likely to be partners in islet cell neoangiogenesis. Thus, the cells creating the walls around microvessels (formed by pericytes and smooth muscle cells) may be formed by progenitor cells originating in the marrow.

Sidebar 13.8 A proof that mast cells from the bone marrow play a key role in the angiogenic switch

Rip-Tag mice carrying the insulin SV40 transgene in their germ line can be bred with others that lack the Kit growth factor receptor. Kit serves as the receptor for stem cell factor (SCF), an important growth factor that triggers the development of certain subclasses of hematopoietic cells. Among other deficits, $Kit^{-/-}$ mice lack the ability to form mast cells. In Rip-Tag mice lacking Kit receptor, islet cell tumors are initiated at rates routinely observed in standard Rip-Tag mice. However, these tumors never succeed in becoming angiogenic, and the rate of cell proliferation in these small growths is compensated by an equal rate of apoptotic death. Consequently, these tumors remain very small (0.1–0.2 mm diameter).

If these mice are provided with a bone marrow transplant containing wild-type hematopoietic precursor cells, which cures their mast cell deficit, angiogenesis is initiated in the pancreatic islets, tumor cells in the islets are no longer lost through

apoptosis, and large, life-threatening neoplasms appear soon thereafter. This outcome demonstrates that the ability to provoke angiogenesis in Rip-Tag tumors depends on the actions of at least one nonendothelial component of the tumor-associated stroma—the mast cells originating in the bone marrow.

Importantly, the Rip-Tag model does not typify the angiogenic mechanisms occurring during the formation of all types of tumors. For example, in some tumors, angiogenesis appears to increase progressively, as if a controlling rheostat is gradually being turned, which contrasts with the behavior described here, in which a binary, on–off switch seems to be tripped.

Other tumors may depend on different angiogenic factors to provoke angiogenesis. For example, when transformed mouse embryonic stem (ES) cells are deprived of both copies of the VEGF-A–encoding gene, they lose almost all their power to make malignant teratomas. In contrast, transformed adult mouse dermal fibroblasts remain highly tumorigenic after they have been deprived of both copies of this gene. And the sarcomas generated by these transformed fibroblasts continue to grow even when the mice bearing them have been treated with an antibody that binds and inactivates VEGF-R2 (the primary endothelial cell receptor that confers responsiveness to both VEGF-A and VEGF-B). This lack of response is likely explained by the fact that transformed dermal fibroblasts can make a complex *mixture* of angiogenic factors—including VEGF-B, acidic, and basic fibroblast growth factors (aFGFs and bFGFs), and transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α). More generally, the deployment of multiple angiogenic factors (**Table 13.3**), often observed in advanced human cancers, complicates the development of anti-angiogenesis cancer therapies. Moreover, certain classes of tumor-associated microvessels appear to arise independently of the VEGF-driven capillary formation.

Table 13.3 Important angiogenic factors

Name	**Mol. wt. (kD)**
vascular endothelial GFs (VEGFs)	40–45
basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF)	18
acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF)	16.4

Name	Mol. wt. (kD)
angiogenin	14.1
transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α)	5.5
transforming growth factor-β1 (TGF-β1)	25
tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α)	17
platelet-derived growth factor-B (PDGF-B)	45
granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)	17
placental growth factor	25
interleukin-8 (IL-8)	40
hepatocyte growth factor (HGF)	92
proliferin	35
angiopoietin	70
leptin	16

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

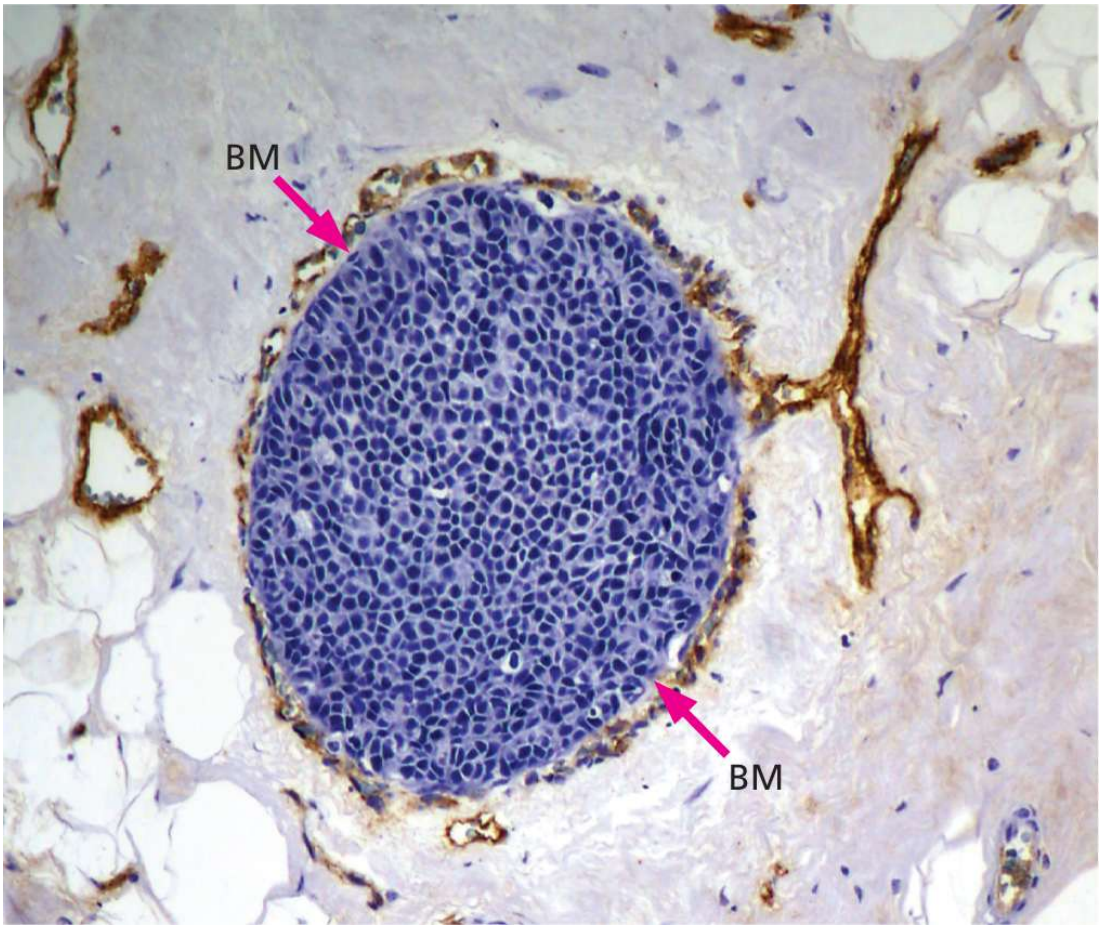
exocrine
: Referring to a gland that secretes fluids via a duct, often into the gastrointestinal tract or to the surface of the skin, rather than into the bloodstream. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine**, **intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

angiogenic switch
: Shift by a mass of tumor cells from a state in which they are unable to induce neovascularization to one in which they exhibit this ability.

OceanofPDF.com

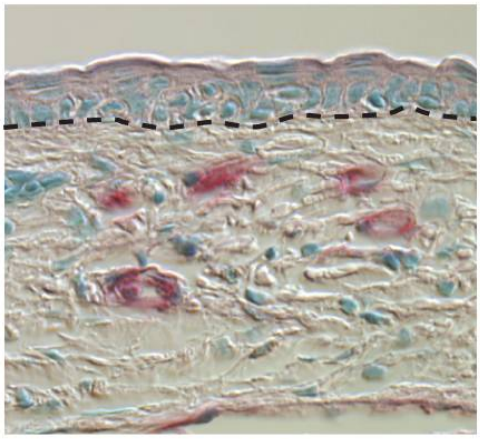
13.8 The angiogenic switch initiates a highly complex process

Angiogenesis begins in the stroma surrounding the Rip-Tag tumors long before the basement membrane has been broken down. This behavior typifies that of many tumors in both mice and humans (**Figure 13.37**). Somehow, angiogenic signals are dispatched by benign cancer cells through the porous basement membrane (BM) in order to encourage increased angiogenesis on the stromal side of this membrane. Nevertheless, this early angiogenesis is circumscribed, and it is clear that intense angiogenesis can begin only when cancer cells become invasive, penetrate the basement membrane, and acquire direct, intimate contact with stromal cells (**Figure 13.38**). This suggests that tumor invasiveness and intense angiogenesis are often tightly coupled processes. We will study tumor invasiveness in detail in the next chapter.

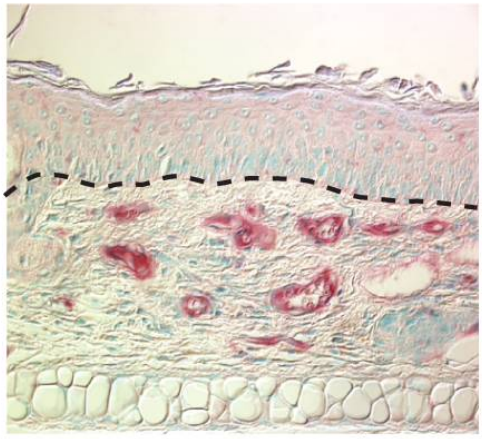


A histology image of a tumor, which is dark blue with densely packed nuclei. It is tightly contained within a basement membrane that separates the tumor from normal, lighter colored, surrounding tissue.

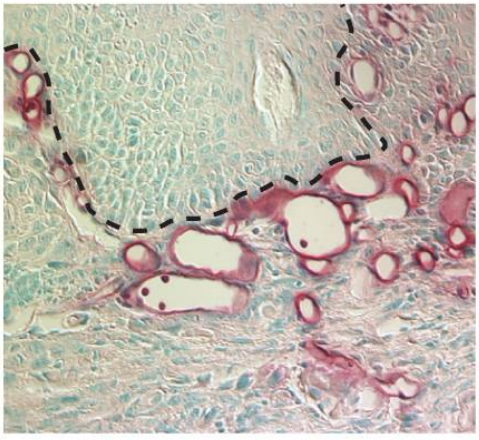
(A)



normal skin



hyperplasia

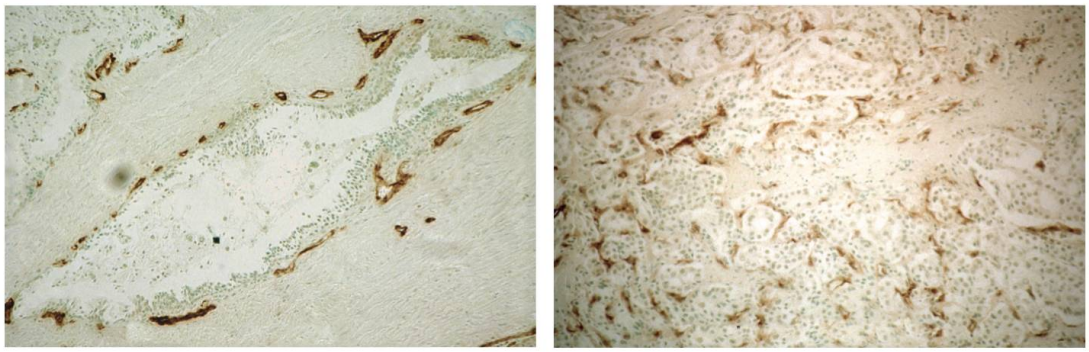


dysplasia

A sequence of histology images, labeled normal skin, hyperplasia, and dysplasia. In normal skin the epithelial layer is comparatively thin; in hyperplasia it is thickened, and in dysplasia it has become irregular, forcing the basement membrane to take on an irregular shape, as well.

(B)

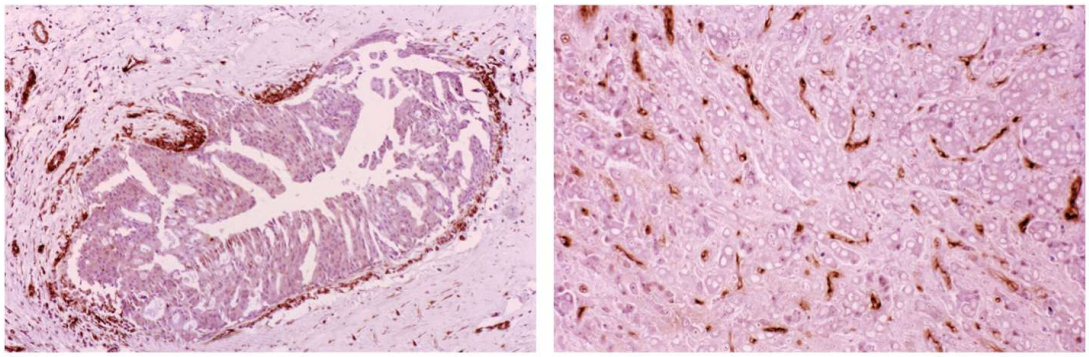
Figure 13.37 Signaling through the basement membrane early in tumor progression (A) A human ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) of the breast contains a collection of carcinoma cells (*purple-blue*) that are noninvasive and therefore have not yet breached the basement membrane (BM, *arrows*) that surrounds them and separates them from the mammary stroma. As is apparent, this DCIS has nonetheless succeeded in transmitting angiogenic signals through the BM into the nearby stroma that have resulted in the growth of a small vessel (*dark brown*) that surrounds the tumor mass but does not penetrate into the tumor itself because of the continued integrity of the BM. (B) In this transgenic mouse model of skin carcinogenesis, the oncoprotein-encoding human papillomavirus (HPV) 16 early region is expressed under the control of a keratin-14 gene promoter, which ensures its expression specifically in keratinocytes of the skin (*upper panel*). In the early hyperplastic stage of tumor progression (*middle panel*), the noninvasive carcinoma cells on the epithelial side of the BM (*above*) are able to transmit signals through the BM (*dashed line*) that provoke angiogenesis on the stromal side (*below*), as evidenced by the increased density of capillaries (*red*), detected in this case through their display of the CD31 antigen. Dysplastic tissue, in which the BM (*dashed line*) has not yet been breached, shows even more intensive angiogenesis in the nearby stroma. (A, courtesy of A.L. Harris. B, from L.M. Coussens et al., *Genes Dev.* 13:1382–1397, 1999. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)



in situ prostate cancer | invasive prostate cancer

Two histology images of prostate cancer–in situ on the left and invasive on the right.

(A)

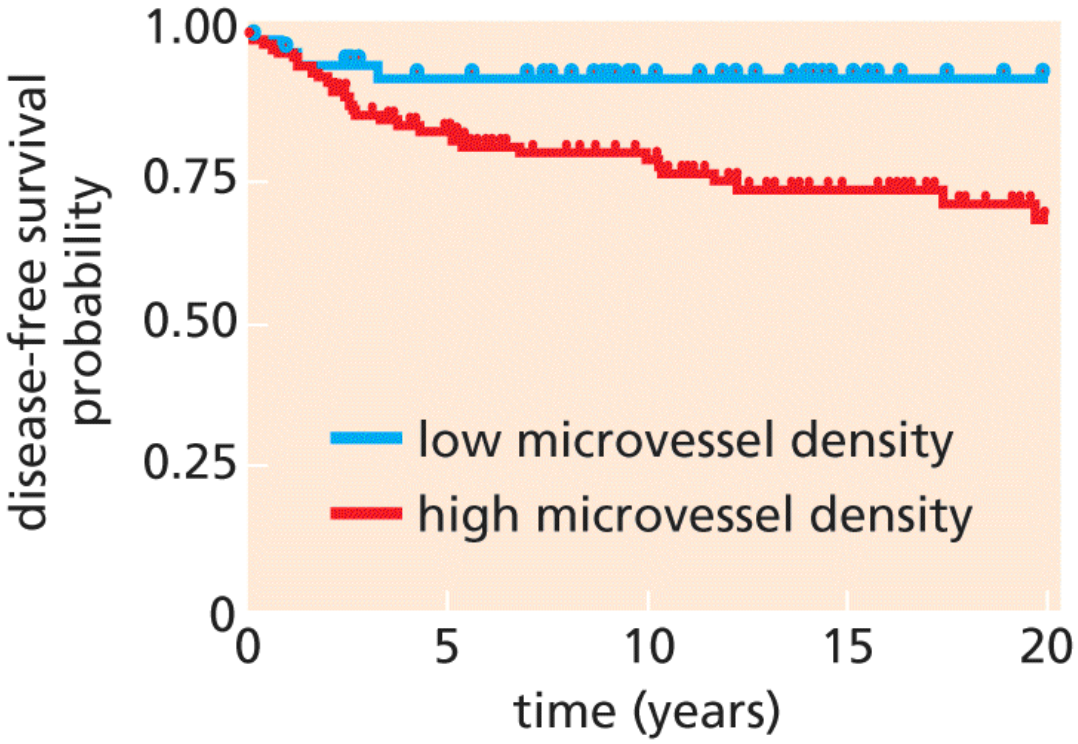


Two histology images of breast cancer–in situ on the left and invasive on the right.

(B)

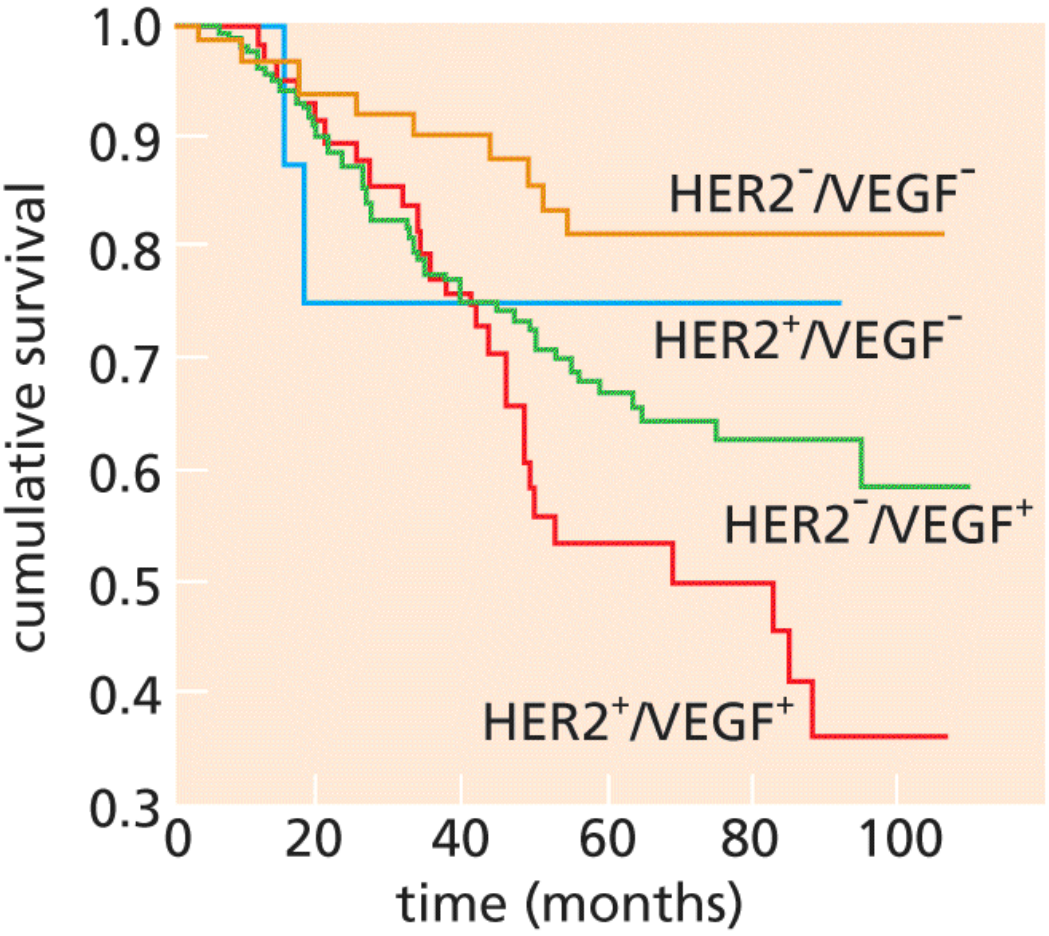
Figure 13.38 Angiogenesis before and after acquisition of invasiveness Tumor angiogenesis is circumscribed as long as human carcinomas remain benign. However, once they become invasive, the intensity of angiogenesis increases, leading to a higher density of capillaries (*brown*) threading their way through tumors. (A) The capillaries ringing a benign prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN) lesion (*left*) are far fewer than those in an invasive prostate carcinoma (*right*). (B) Similarly, those in a benign ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) of the human breast (*dark red, left panel*) are far fewer than those in an invasive ductal carcinoma (*right panel*). (Courtesy of J. Folkman.)

In many human tumor types, the density of capillaries per microscope field increases in lockstep with increasing degrees of malignancy. For example, among human breast carcinomas that have already grown to a considerable size, those that have managed to attract dense networks of capillaries into their midst are indicative, on average, of a far worse prognosis than those that are poorly vascularized (**Figure 13.39A**). Moreover, patients whose breast tumors that express large amounts of VEGF (in addition to HER2; see Figure 4.3) fare especially badly following initial diagnosis and treatment (Figure 13.39B). Altogether, these correlations suggest that the angiogenic switch is only the first of many shifts that enable tumors to become progressively more angiogenic and hence increasingly vascularized, enabling their highly aggressive behavior.



A graph of disease-free survival probability over time. With low microvessel density, the probability declines from 100% to 90% over 5 years and then remains at 90%. With high microvessel density, the probability declines from 100% to 75% within 10 years and continues to decline out to 20 years to abou 72%.

(A)



A graph of cumulative survival over time, with lines for four different genotypes that all start at 1 at time zero. The line for H E R 2 positive, V E G F negative drops abruptly from 1 to 0.75 just before the 20 month mark and then is level at 0.75. The other three lines drop more gradually. The line for H E R 2 negative, V E G F negative drops steadily to 0.8 at 50 months and then is level. The line for H E R 2 negative, V E G F positive drops steadily to less than 0.6 at 100 months. The line for H E R 2 positive, V E G F positive drops steadily to less than 0.4 at 100 months.

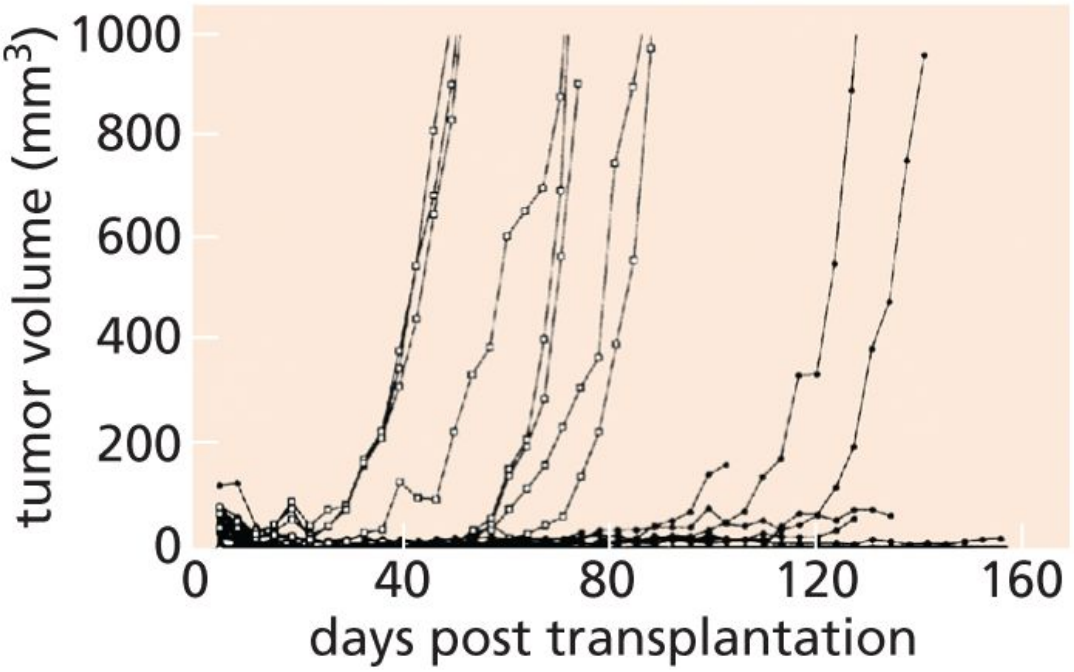
(B)

Figure 13.39 Clinical outcomes and the intensity of angiogenesis (A) Breast carcinomas were analyzed for the density of capillaries, which was determined as the number of microvessels per microscopic field. This Kaplan–Meier graph demonstrates that those patients whose tumors had a high microvessel count (*red curve*) had a markedly lower probability of disease-free survival in the 20 years following initial diagnosis than those whose tumors had a low microvessel count (*blue curve*). (B) As indicated earlier (see Figure 4.3), breast cancer patients

whose tumors overexpress HER2/Neu have a markedly poorer prognosis than those whose tumors do not. In the group analyzed here, all patients showed metastatic cancer cells in one or more of the lymph nodes draining the breast. The differences in survival are even more dramatic when the levels of VEGF produced by their tumors are also considered. In this relatively small clinical study, more than 80% of patients whose tumors expressed low, basal levels of both HER2/Neu and VEGF ($HER2^{-}$ $VEGF^{-}$) were alive 8 years after diagnosis; in contrast, only about 35% of the patients whose tumors expressed elevated levels of both HER2/Neu and VEGF ($HER2^{+}$ $VEGF^{+}$) survived this long. (A, from R. Heimann and S. Hellman, *J. Clin. Oncol.* 16:2686–2692, 1998. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology. B, from G.E. Konecny et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 10:1706–1716, 2004. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

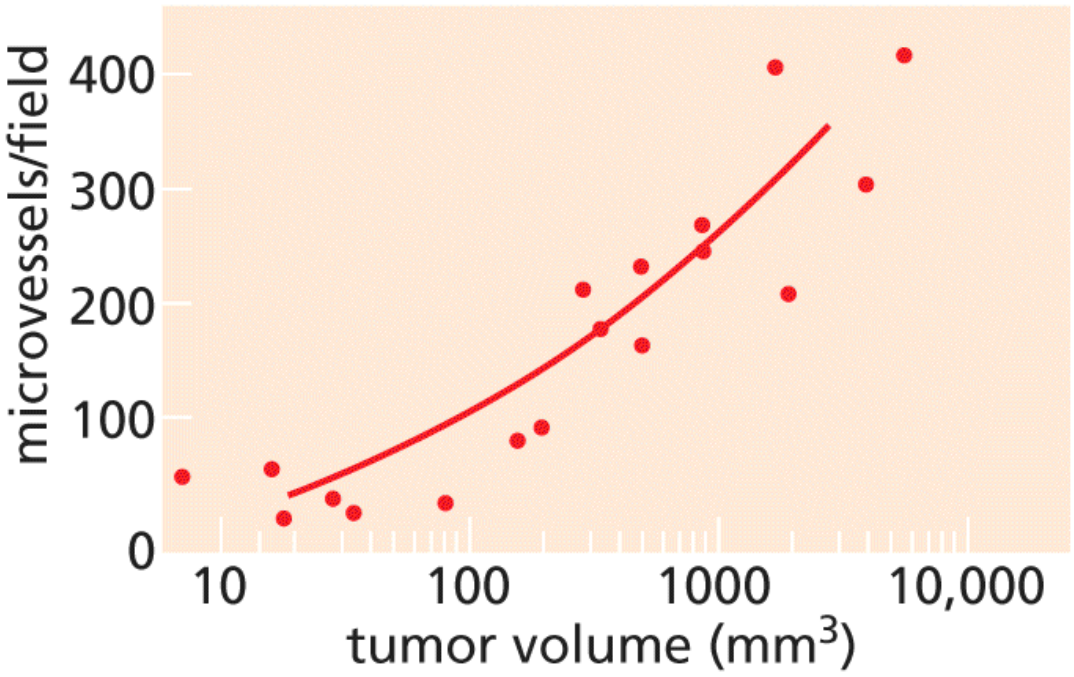
These striking correlations are actually susceptible to two alternative interpretations. It is possible that intense vascularization enables cancer cells to grow more aggressively, thereby leading to poor clinical outcomes. Alternatively, intense angiogenesis might be only a reflection of an underlying aggressive phenotype but not be causally involved in driving high-grade malignancy. Available clinical data do not allow a clear resolution between these alternatives.

We have spoken of the angiogenic switch without knowing which carcinoma cells within a tumor drive this shift; it might represent a concerted shift of all cells within a tumor or, alternatively, the actions of a small number of especially aggressive cells. In fact, analyses of cells isolated from explanted human tumors indicate great heterogeneity in the angiogenic powers of different subpopulations of cancer cells within a given tumor, with some cancer cells being highly angiogenic, whereas others are poorly so. Even within tumor cell lines, individual cancer cell subpopulations show greatly differing angiogenic and tumorigenic powers when engrafted *in vivo* (**Figure 13.40A**). The strong positive correlation between the microvessel density and tumor volume (Figure 13.40B) provides additional evidence, albeit of a correlative nature, that neoangiogenesis is a critical driving force in tumor growth. Also, these observations introduce yet another idea into our thinking: that within a tumor mass, long after the tripping of the angiogenic switch, the weakly angiogenic cancer cells rely on help from their friends—their strongly angiogenic neighbors—in order to acquire adequate microvasculature.



A graph with tumor volume in cubic millimeters on the vertical axis and days post-transplantation on the horizontal axis. Curves representing roughly exponential growth rise steeply at a range of times–as early as 40 days post-transplantation and as late as 130 days. Most of these curves achieve roughly 1000 cubic millimeters.

(A)



A scatter plot with microvessels per field on the vertical axis and tumor volume in cubic millimeters on the logarithmically scaled horizontal axis. The regression curve through the plotted points is slightly curved upward. It begins at the point 100, 100 and ends at the point 3000, 350.

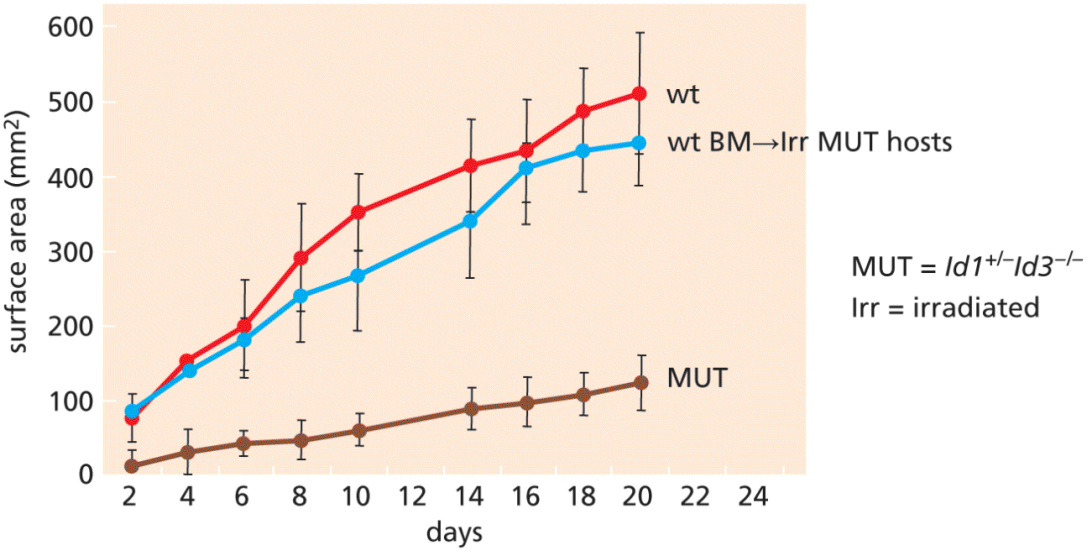
(B)

Figure 13.40 Heterogeneous degrees of vascularization within a tumor cell population (A) When a population of cells in a human liposarcoma cell line was subjected to single-cell cloning (in which all the cells in each resulting cell clone derive from a single common ancestor), the various cloned cell populations show greatly differing abilities to form tumors (*individual curves*) when implanted into immunocompromised host mice. (B) When the resulting tumors were analyzed for microvessel density (microvessels per microscopic field) and tumor volume, plotted logarithmically here, it appears that they have greatly differing angiogenic capabilities and that angiogenesis behaves as if it were a rate-limiting determinant of overall tumor growth. (From E.G. Achilles et al., *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 93:1075–1081, 2001. With permission from Oxford University Press.)

The angiogenic switch is associated with processes that extend far beyond the immediate vicinity of a tumor. Thus, as mentioned earlier, neovascularization relies in part on the recruitment of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) that originate in the marrow and travel via the circulation to the tumor. In fact, VEGF released into the

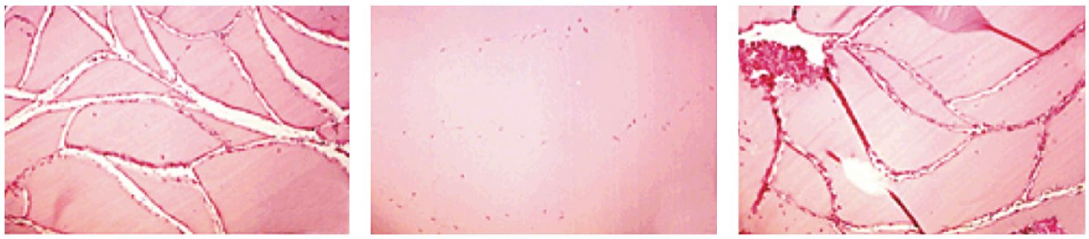
circulation by a tumor stimulates the production of EPCs in the bone marrow and their release into the general circulation; in addition, it helps to attract circulating EPCs to the tumor mass. Detailed analyses have shown that the proportion of endothelial cells derived from circulating EPCs (versus those arising from nearby capillaries) varies greatly from one type of tumor to another.

The importance of EPC recruitment is dramatically illustrated by the behavior of mice that lack one copy of the *Id1* gene and both copies of the *Id3* gene. These *Id* genes encode transcription factors regulating differentiation of a variety of cell types, often inhibiting development of tissue-specific differentiation programs (see Figure 8.25C). Many of these mutant mice survive to adulthood and show a very peculiar phenotype: they are defective in neoangiogenesis and will not permit several types of engrafted tumors to grow (**Figure 13.41A**).



A line graph describing surface area as a function of time in days for three different populations of mice. In wild-type mice, tumors grow from zero surface area at time zero to 500 square millimeters in 20 days. In mutant mice, tumors grow to only about 120 square millimeters in 20 days. In mutant mice with transplanted, wild-type mice bone marrow, tumors grow to about 450 square millimeters in 20 days.

(A)



A visual comparison of vascularization in three types of mice. In mutant mice there is no vascularization to be seen. In wild-type mice and in mutant mice with wild-type bone marrow, there is visible vascularization in the sample.

(B)

Figure 13.41 Defective tumor angiogenesis in *Id1*$^{+/-}$*Id3*$^{-/-}$ mice Mutant mice (Id MUT), which lack three of four *Id* gene copies (and have an *Id1*$^{+/-}$*Id3*$^{-/-}$ genotype), show impaired mobilization of endothelial precursor cells (EPCs) from the bone marrow and thus impaired recruitment of circulating EPCs into tumors that these mice may carry. (A) Wild-type (wt) mice bearing Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC) cells develop rapidly growing tumors (*red curve*), whereas those of the mutant strain (Id MUT) are unable to support vigorous tumor growth (*brown curve*). This defect is essentially reversed if the bone marrow (BM) of the mutant mice is eliminated by irradiation and replaced with transplanted wild-type bone marrow (*blue curve*, wt BM → Irr MUT), indicating that the recruitment of bone marrow–derived cells is defective in the mutant mice and is responsible for the inability of the tumor to grow in them. (B) This defective recruitment can be further localized by the use of plugs of Matrigel (an extracellular matrix material) that have been impregnated with VEGF and are then implanted subcutaneously. These plugs are able to recruit neovasculature when implanted in wild-type mice (*left*) but not in the mutant mice (*center*). However, if the mutant mice receive a graft of wild-type bone marrow cells, the defect is cured and now angiogenesis within these plugs is comparable to that seen in wild-type mice (*right*). (From D. Lyden et al., *Nat. Med.* 7:1194–1201, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

The defect in these *Id1*$^{+/-}$*Id3*$^{-/-}$ mice can be cured by transplanting wild-type hematopoietic stem cells into their bone marrow. Alternatively, the subset of bone marrow stem cells whose production is normally spurred by high levels of circulating VEGF can be harvested from a wild-type mouse and transplanted into the bone marrow of *Id1*$^{+/-}$*Id3*$^{-/-}$ mice. These mice soon generate large numbers of endothelial precursor cells (EPCs) in their circulation and, following implantation of cancer cells, develop rapidly growing tumors. Taken together, these observations indicate that these

tumors rely on VEGF to mobilize EPCs from the bone marrow (Figure 13.41B) and to recruit the resulting circulating cells into the tumor stroma. These findings, as well as others demonstrating the recruitment of myofibroblast precursors into tumor stroma (see Section 13.3), show that primary tumors can extend their reach throughout the body long before they metastasize.

OceanofPDF.com

13.9 Anti-angiogenesis therapies have been employed to treat cancer

In finely tuned physiological processes, the actions of positive effectors must be counterbalanced by negative regulators. We have read much about the positive effectors of angiogenesis, such as VEGF and bFGF, as well as a variety of others that conspire to promote the assembly of normal vasculature (see Table 13.3). However, their antagonists have remained offstage until now.

Anti-angiogenic mechanisms clearly play key roles in the creation and maintenance of the normal vasculature. During the process of wound healing, for instance, the burst of angiogenesis that is required to repair the wound site must be shut down once the newly formed capillaries have reached a density that suffices to support normal tissue function. This shutdown is achieved, at least in part, by reducing the ongoing hypoxia-induced production of VEGF. In addition to the decline of pro-angiogenic factors, there are also a host of naturally anti-angiogenic proteins that reside within normal tissue and aid in actively shutting down angiogenesis. Their origins and mechanisms of action are described in detail in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.8**. At least two dozen anti-angiogenic molecular species involved in regulating various steps of vascular morphogenesis have been identified, as described in this Supplementary Sidebar.

The equilibrium created by the counterbalancing pro- and anti-angiogenic factors in each tissue ensures that tissues are supplied with the proper density of microvessels required to sustain their physiological activities. For those researchers intent on developing new types of anti-cancer therapeutics by inhibiting neoangiogenesis, this complexity offers multiple targets for intervention. Thus, highly targeted therapies may be devised to inhibit the several cell types that participate in angiogenesis as well as the multiple signaling channels through which they intercommunicate. Because tumors depend absolutely on angiogenesis to grow above a certain size (~0.2 mm diameter; see Figure 13.28), any successes in blocking angiogenesis or in undoing the products of angiogenesis should represent a highly effective strategy for treating cancer. Microscopic tumors should be prevented from growing larger, and larger tumors should collapse once their already-established blood supply disintegrates.

In principle, anti-angiogenesis therapies have a major advantage over those directed at the neoplastic cells within tumors. As we will learn in Chapter 17, one of the great frustrations of anti-cancer drug development is that, sooner or later, tumors that initially respond to a drug treatment become refractory (resistant) to further treatment by the drug. Almost always, these relapses can be traced to the emergence of drug-

resistant genetic variants within tumor cell populations (see Figure 11.16); these variants arise at an almost-predictable frequency and proceed to proliferate and regenerate aggressively growing tumor masses. The emergence of these drug-resistant variants seems to be one of the consequences of the highly unstable genomes of cancer cells (described in Chapter 12) and their resulting ability to spawn mutants at high frequency.

In contrast, many anti-angiogenesis therapies are directed at killing the genetically *normal* cells that have been recruited into tumor masses and co-opted by the cancer cells to do their bidding. There is every reason to believe that the endothelial cells within tumors possess normal, stable genomes and are therefore stable phenotypically. Hence, drug therapies directed against these cells—attractive targets of anti-angiogenic therapies—are unlikely to select for the outgrowth of drug-resistant genetic variants, and tumors should not, in theory, become refractory to anti-angiogenic drug therapy.

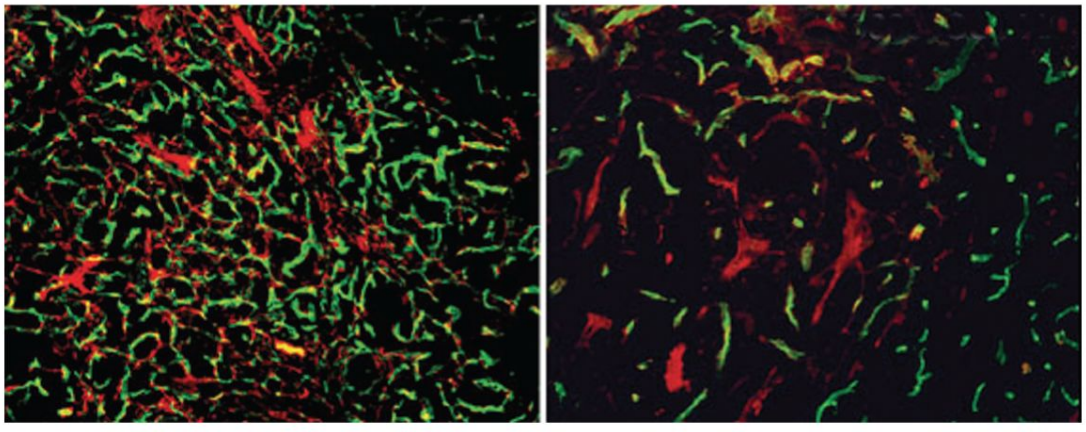
This interest in treating tumor-associated endothelial cells is further heightened by the peculiar biology of these cells. They are continually being formed and lost within tumor masses, with lifetimes measured as short as a week, whereas their counterparts that line normal blood vessels elsewhere in the body rarely divide and have lifetimes that are measured in hundreds of days, some being as long as seven years. Cycling cells (that is, cells racing around the active cell cycle) are, almost always, far more sensitive to drug-induced killing than are quiescent cells. For this reason, cytotoxic therapies directed against endothelial cells should have drastic effects on the tumor-associated neovasculature, while leaving blood vessels located elsewhere in the body unscathed.

An experiment reported in 1991 provided one of the earliest indications of the promise of another type of anti-angiogenic therapy. In this work, cancer cells were engineered to release a modified basic fibroblast growth factor, which greatly increased their tumorigenicity in mice, simply because this bFGF strongly enhanced the angiogenic powers of these cells. Use of a monoclonal antibody that specifically bound and neutralized this modified bFGF (but had no effect on the endogenous bFGF of the mouse) blocked the angiogenesis by tumor cells and led to a dramatic reduction in tumor volume. Within two years, a similar experiment was performed with an anti-human–VEGF monoclonal antibody. It succeeded in blocking the proliferation of two human sarcoma cell lines as well as a glioblastoma in Nude (immunocompromised) mouse hosts.

An even more effective version of this therapy came a decade later with the use of a monoclonal antibody that binds and neutralizes VEGF-A, which blocks new vessel formation and destabilizes recently formed ones. This antibody, termed variously Avastin or bevacizumab, showed significant efficacy in certain large-scale clinical trials. For example, patients with metastatic colon carcinoma who were treated with

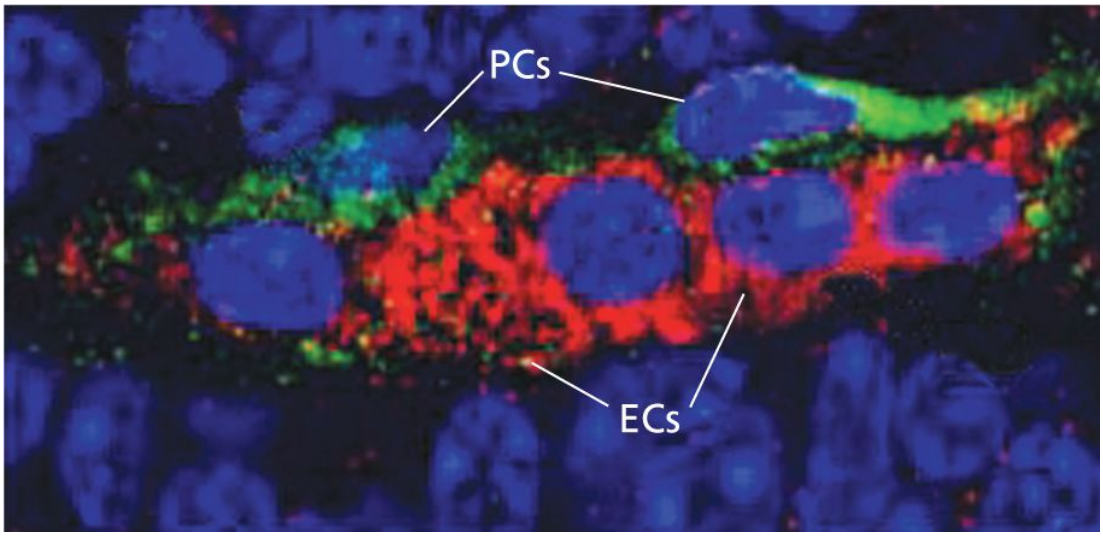
this antibody plus chemotherapy (the drug 5-fluorouracil) survived, on average, four months longer than patients treated with chemotherapy alone, and the addition of Avastin to conventional chemotherapy extended the survival of patients with non-small-cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) by about two months. Similarly, Avastin could retard the progression of renal cell carcinomas in patients, but in the end had no effect on their long-term survival. It is plausible that the widely observed synergistic effects of Avastin with conventional chemotherapeutic drugs derive from the ability of this VEGF-A inhibitor to normalize tumor-associated vasculature (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.7**), thereby greatly facilitating the delivery of drugs to the tumor parenchyma. By 2020, 3.5 million cancer patients worldwide had received this monoclonal antibody as part of their therapy, a stunning testimonial to its widely recognized powers in treating diverse types of human tumors. For many of the cancer types where it is currently being employed, addition of Avastin to existing approved chemotherapeutic regimens leads to a significant slowing of disease progression. It often extends survival, but it does not significantly increase overall survival.

The most informative preclinical studies of angiogenic inhibitors have come from using synthetic receptor inhibitors in the transgenic Rip-Tag model of pancreatic islet tumorigenesis described in Figure 13.35. Two types of low–molecular-weight synthetic compounds have been used in attempts to block various stages of islet tumor progression (**Figure 13.42**). One of these drugs is directed against the VEGF-R2, which is the main receptor driving angiogenesis. By inhibiting the tyrosine kinase of this RTK, the agent termed SU5416 should mimic the effects of Avastin, that is, both should be able to shut down VEGF signaling. Drugs of a second class, such as an agent termed SU6668, are directed primarily against the tyrosine kinase of the PDGF receptor. Recall from Section 13.1 that the role of PDGF in recruiting pericytes and smooth muscle cells to growing capillaries indicated that these mural cells are highly important for consolidating and strengthening recently formed capillaries.



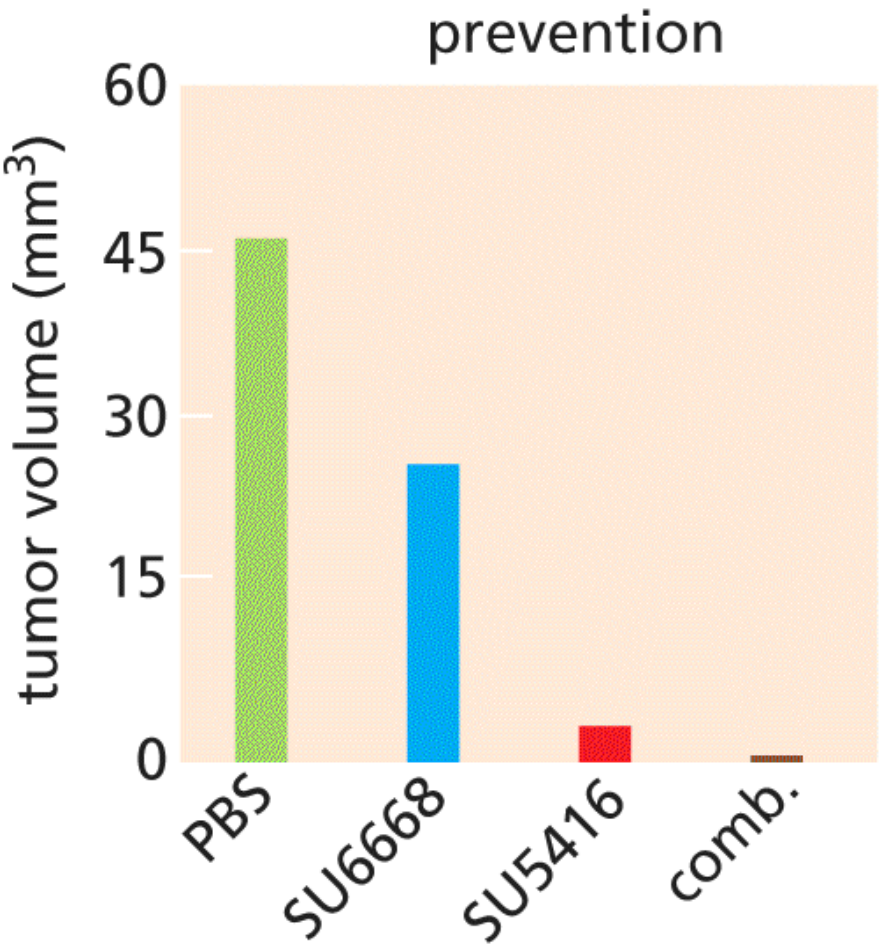
Two fluorescence microscopy images. The one on the left, labeled untreated control, contains more green patterning and red streaks than the one on the right, labeled S U 66 68 plus S U 54 16 treatment.

(A)



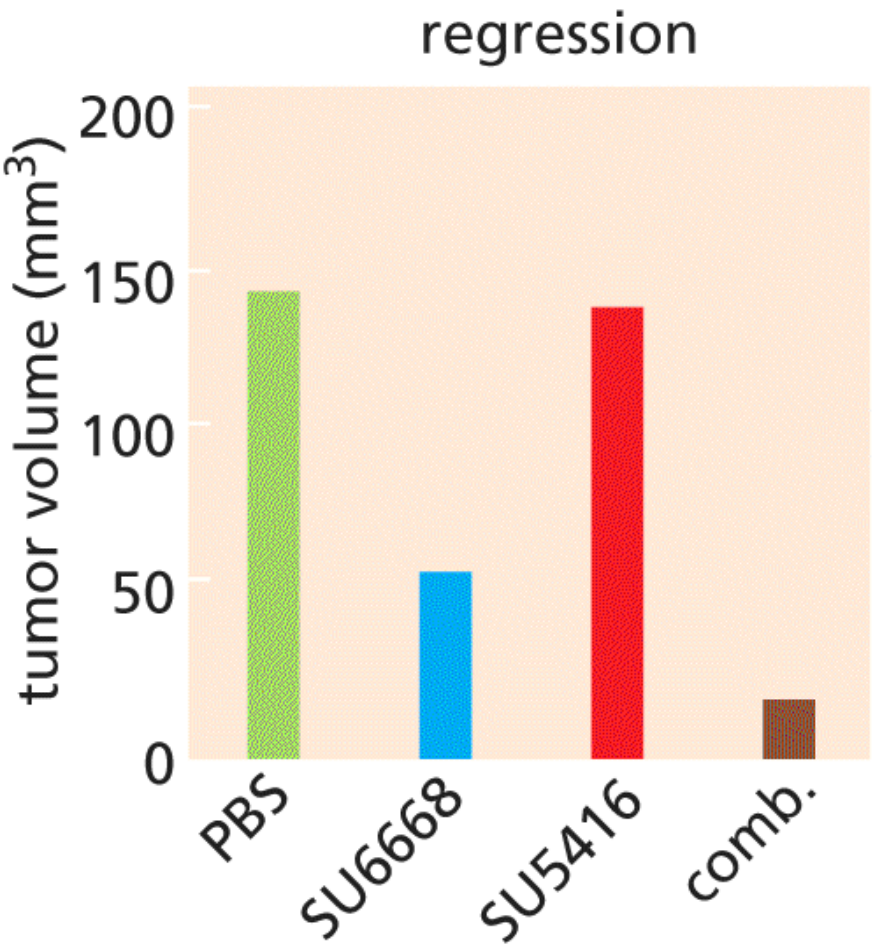
A fluorescence microscopy image showing two pericytes, which are green with blue nuclei, adhering to a row of four endothelial cells, which are red with blue nuclei.

(B)



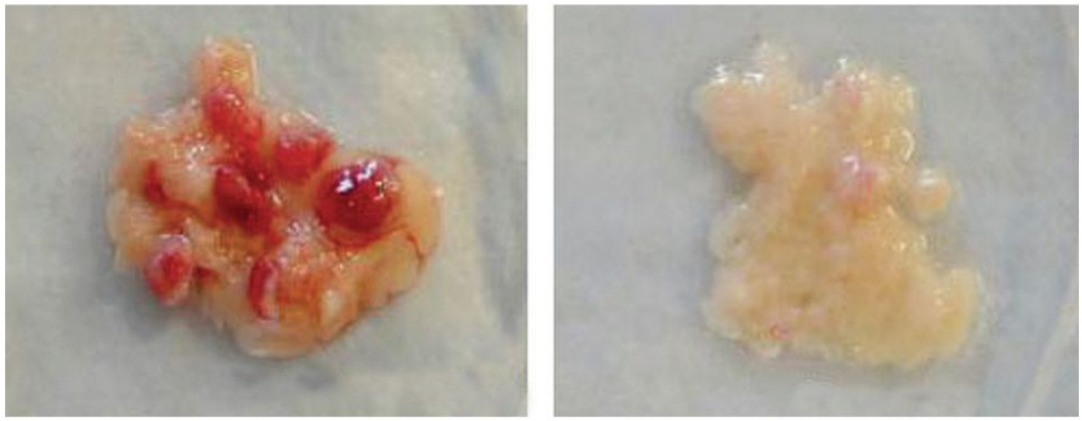
A bar graph labeled prevention that reports tumor volume under four different conditions: 46 cubic millimeters for P B S, 27 for S U 66 68, 3 for S U 54 16, and negligible size for combined.

(C)



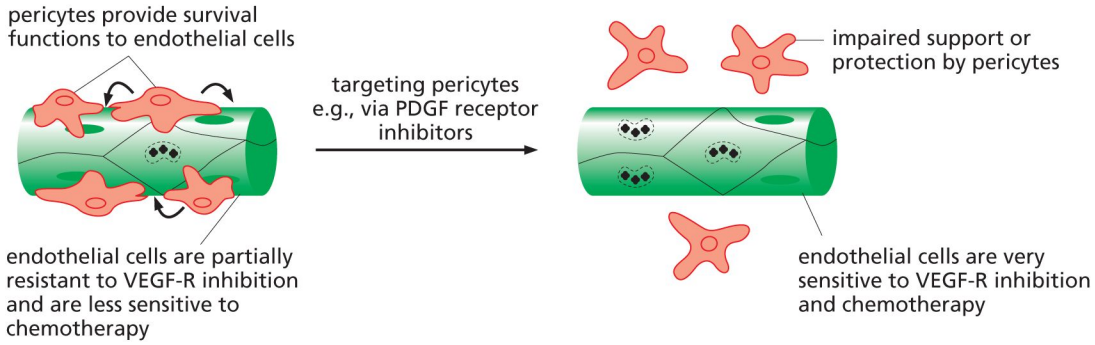
A bar graph labeled regression that reports tumor volume under four different conditions: 145 cubic millimeters for P B S, 50 for S U 66 68, 140 for S U 54 16, and 10 for combined.

(D)



Two photographs of a lab-grown tissue sample. In the first image, labeled tumors at 13.5 weeks, the sample is pink with many bright red tumors. In the second image, labeled plus 3.5 weeks treatment, the tumors have disappeared and only pale pink tissue remains.

(E)



A schematic summary of a process. Initially, pericytes are attached to endothelial cells that form the walls of a capillary. The pericytes provide survival functions to the endothelial cells, which are partially resistant to V E G F-R inhibition and are less sensitive to chemotherapy. After targeting of pericytes, for example, via P D G F receptor inhibitors, there is impaired support or protection by pericytes, which have detached from the endothelial cells. Now the endothelial cells are very sensitive to V E G F-R inhibition and chemotherapy.

(F)

Figure 13.42 Angiogenesis inhibitors as treatments of islet cell carcinogenesis
The Rip-Tag transgenic mouse model of pancreatic islet cell carcinogenesis (see

Figure 13.35) makes possible the testing of anti-angiogenic pharmacological inhibitors. (A) The treatment of mice bearing established angiogenic islet tumors (*left*) for 4 weeks with the PDGF receptor inhibitor SU6668 plus the VEGF-R inhibitor SU5416 results in regression of the vasculature (*right*). The lumina of the capillaries are labeled *light green* and the associated pericytes are labeled *red*. (B) The actions of the SU6668 PDGF-R inhibitor could be traced specifically to its effects on the pericytes, which act as support cells for the endothelial cells. In this image, an antibody reactive with the PDGF-R reveals that the only cells within the islets expressing this receptor (*green*) are the pericytes (PCs) that are closely associated with the endothelial cells (ECs, *red*). Nuclei are stained *blue*. (C) Although neither the SU6668 PDGF-R TK inhibitor (*blue bar*) nor the SU5416 VEGF receptor TK inhibitor (*red bar*) was able, on its own, to fully prevent the formation of such tumors (being applied before tumors became apparent), the two agents applied in concert (combined, *brown bar*) succeeded in doing so. PBS, phosphate-buffered saline control (*green*). (D) In an attempt to cause regression of already-formed tumors, SU5416 and SU6668 were introduced either singly or in combination into 12-week-old Rip-Tag mice and the size of tumors was measured 4 weeks later. Although the SU5416 VEGF-R antagonist on its own (*red bar*) showed only minimal reduction of tumor volume, the SU6668 PDGF-R antagonist showed greater effects (*blue bar*), and a combination of the two applied together (*brown bar*) functioned synergistically to reduce overall tumor volume by approximately 85%. This indicates, once again, that antagonists of the endothelial cells (which depend on the VEGF-R) together with antagonists of the supporting pericytes (which depend on the PDGF-R) can act synergistically in anti-angiogenic therapy. (E) When 13.5-week-old mice with substantial pancreatic islet tumors (*red growths*, *left*) are treated for another 3.5 weeks with this combination therapy, their tumors largely regress (*right*). (F) A schematic summary of these and other observations indicates that endothelial cells depend on closely apposed pericytes for various types of biological support. Inhibition of PDGF signaling causes dissociation of pericytes from endothelial cells and renders the latter sensitive to various types of subsequent therapy, including inhibition of VEGF-R function. This emphasizes that anti-angiogenesis therapy is most effective when two synergistically acting treatments are applied. (A, B, and E, from G. Bergers et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 111:1287–1295, 2003. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation. C and D, courtesy of D. Hanahan. F, from K. Pietras and D. Hanahan, *J. Clin. Oncol.* 23:939–952, 2005. With permission from American Society for Clinical Oncology.)

SU5416, the anti-VEGF-R agent, was able to block 90% of the early-stage, dysplastic islets from undergoing the angiogenic switch, thereby holding them to a small size and a noninvasive state (see Figure 13.42C). However, it had no effect on late-stage, well-

established tumors, which continued to progress despite its presence in equally high concentrations. Hence, in the early stages of angiogenesis, VEGF signaling plays a critical role, whereas later on, this process seems to become increasingly independent of VEGF.

The anti-PDGF receptor agent, SU6668, had a far weaker effect on preventing dysplastic islets from undergoing the angiogenic switch, reducing by about half the islets that did so (see Figure 13.42C). But it was far more potent than the anti-VEGF-R drug in treating the late-stage, advanced tumors, reducing their size by about half and substantially reducing their vascularity (see Figure 13.42D). Importantly, the only cells expressing PDGF-R in and near these tumors were the capillary-associated pericytes and related smooth muscle cells (see Figure 13.42B), indicating that these mural cells were the targets of SU6668 action. Indeed, microscopic examination confirmed that SU6668 had prevented these mural cells from associating with and reinforcing the capillary tubes formed by endothelial cells. Together, these experiments showed that the initial steps of angiogenesis could proceed reasonably well without PDGF receptor function, but that later in tumor progression, PDGF signaling, and thus the involvement of mural cells, became increasingly important to angiogenesis and growth of the tumor masses.

Combination therapy using the two agents proved to be a highly potent way of intervening at various stages of tumor formation (see Figure 13.42C and D). Thus, simultaneous inhibition of both VEGF and PDGF receptors prevented angiogenic switching, holding virtually all (>98%) islets at a pre-angiogenic stage. This drug combination blocked the further expansion of small, already-established angiogenic tumors by 90% and caused an approximately 80% regression of large tumors, as did another PDGF-R inhibitor, the drug Gleevec (discussed in Chapter 17). In some mice, these combination drug therapies held already-formed tumors to a small size for as long as two months (see Figure 13.42E).

These observations indicate that the most effective ways of inhibiting angiogenesis and thus blocking tumor progression are likely to depend on targeting several of the cell types that construct the tumor-associated vasculature (see Figure 13.42F). Indeed, targeting only the endothelial cells yielded only a temporary regression of microvessels: when anti-VEGF therapy is halted, these vessels rapidly regenerate, often growing back in the hollow sleeves formed by the basement membranes and pericytes that are left behind after endothelial cells have succumbed to anti-VEGF therapy.

Of additional interest, neither of the agents described above—neither SU5416 nor SU6668—is currently being used clinically, having been abandoned because of limited efficacy in phase II or phase III clinical trials and showing once again the limited powers of mouse models of cancer pathogenesis to predict human clinical responses.

Still, the very real clinical benefits afforded by Avastin treatment demonstrate unequivocally that tumor growth can be constrained by treating the tumor-associated stroma rather than the neoplastic cells themselves. Since these successes, a number of other anti-angiogenic therapies have been approved (**Table 13.5**). Moreover, the actions of some of the naturally occurring angiogenesis inhibitors described in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.8** have been tested in various pre-clinical and clinical research programs, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.9**. Of note, a number of the therapies listed in Table 13.5 have additional, alternative modes of action in addition to their demonstrated anti-angiogenic effects. In addition, it is worth noting that oncologists have unknowingly employed a treatment strategy—radiotherapy—whose clinical effects may have resulted from anti-angiogenic mechanisms (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.10**). As attractive as these anti-angiogenic strategies are, it is clear that tumors can develop strategies to resist these therapies and generate clinical relapses in patients whose neoplasms were initially responsive (**Sidebar 13.9**).

Table 13.5 Anti-angiogenic drugs approved for clinical use—2018[a]

Treatment	**Target/mechanism**	**Cancer type**
Avastin (Bevacizumab)	MoAb against VEGF	OvCa, CRC, RCC, BrCa, prost., NSCLC, GBM
EYLEA (Aflibercept)	VEGFR1/VEGR2 fusion	CRC, prost., NSCLC, SCLC
Erbitux (Cetuximab)	MoAb against EGFR	CRC, gastr., HNSCC
Endostar (endostatin)	endog. inhibitor	NSCLC, mel. NPC, CRC
Nexavar (Sorafenib)	inhib. of VEGFR, PDGFR, Raf	HCC, thyr., OvCa, RCC
Sunitinib/Sutent	inhib. of RTKs	RCC, NSCLC, HCC, prost.

Treatment	Target/mechanism	Cancer type
Sprycel (Dasatinib)	inhib. of Src TKs,Bcr/Abl	CML, mel., ACC
Iressa (gefitinib)	inhib. of EGFR	NSCLC, HNSCC, esoph.
Tarceva (Erlotinib)	inhib of EGFR	HCC, panc., NSCLC
Votrient (pazopanib)	inhib. of VEGFR, PDGFR, Kit	RCC, STS, OvCa, thyr.

Adapted from T. Li, G. Kang, T. Wang and H. Huang, *Oncol. Lett.* 16, 687–702, 2018. With permission from the authors.

Sidebar 13.9 Tumors may outsmart even the best anti-angiogenic therapies

Much of the allure of anti-angiogenic therapies comes from the likelihood that the cells being targeted, notably the endothelial cells, are unlikely to generate drug-resistant variants. The complexity of heterotypic signaling may, however, allow tumors to circumvent even the cleverest anti-angiogenic therapies. Imagine, for example, that we devise a strategy to block the VEGF signaling that is so critical for the formation of new vessels in a tumor and their subsequent maintenance (because VEGF is required for endothelial cell survival). A tumor treated in this way should rapidly collapse because its capillary beds will disintegrate. Indeed, just such a response has been observed in Rip-Tag mice (see Figure 13.42) that developed pancreatic islet tumors: when treated with an anti-VEGF-R2 antibody, their tumors regressed by more than 50%. However, the residual, surviving tumor cells responded by spawning variants that acquired the ability to produce elevated levels of fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), which are also potent angiogenic factors (see Table 13.3). These growth factors then supplanted VEGF as the main conveyor of signals from the islet tumor to the endothelial cells and succeeded in triggering the regeneration of vasculature and, in turn, the rebirth of vigorously growing tumors. Accordingly, truly effective anti-angiogenesis strategies will require the inhibition of multiple angiogenic pathways.

Anti-angiogenesis therapies are also attractive because of their potential selectivity for killing the proliferating endothelial cells within tumors, since many blood vessels in

these growths seem to be in a constant state of formation and collapse and are therefore susceptible to cytotoxic drugs that may leave the quiescent endothelial cells in normal tissues untouched. For example, dramatically contrasting growth states of normal and tumor-associated blood vessels can be seen in many mouse models of cancer, in which engrafted tumors expand rapidly. However, it is possible that many of the vessels in slowly growing human tumors may exist for years and therefore may have ample time to consolidate and mature into robust, well-structured vessels in which the endothelial cells turn over slowly. These tumor-associated vessels may then be as resistant to anti-angiogenic drugs as the normal blood vessels elsewhere in the body. Yet another possible source of resistance to existing anti-angiogenic therapies may derive from mechanisms that tumors have to assemble microvessels from cells other those used conventionally by tumors, as described in Sidebar 13.5. These and other mechanisms of acquired resistance to anti-angiogenesis therapies are summarized in **Table 13.4**.

Table 13.4 Alternative mechanisms of acquired resistance to anti-angiogenesis therapies

EC radioresistance: Hypoxic activation of HIF-1 renders ECs resistant to irradiation.
Vascular mimicry: A fraction of tumor vessels are lined by malignant cells and are thus unresponsive to anti-angiogenic agents. Similarly, certain types of tumor stem cells may differentiate into endothelial-like cells (see Figure 13.23).
Angiogenic switch: The outgrowth of tumor cell clones expressing elevated levels of certain angiogenic factors may be naturally favored at advanced stages of tumor progression or may emerge in response to anti-angiogenic treatment, e.g., upregulation of (1) PlGF, VEGF-C, or FGF-2 in response to VEGF inhibition; (2) VEGF after VEGF-R or EGF-R inhibition; and (3) IL-8 after HIF-1 inhibition.
Vascular independence: Mutant tumor cell clones (e.g., those lacking p53) are able to survive in hypoxic tumors.
Stromal cells: $VEGF^{-/-}$ tumors recruit pro-angiogenic stromal cells such as myofibroblasts via upregulation of PDGF-A and myeloid cells.

Mature, robust vessels: Preexisting vessels are covered by a full complement of supporting pericytes and are not readily pruned by anti-angiogenic treatments.
Bone marrow–derived cells: Tumors or ischemic tissues recruit pro-angiogenic endothelial cells and inflammatory cells independent of VEGF; the recruited cells may produce several pro-angiogenic molecules to rescue vascularization upon VEGF blockage.
RTK inhibitors: These may not synergize with chemotherapy, possibly because they do not block the actions of neuropilin-1.

Abbreviations/definitions: EC, endothelial cell; IL-8, interleukin-8, an angiogenic cytokine; neuropilin, an alternative VEGF receptor; PIGF, placental GF, an angiogenic factor related to VEGFs and a ligand of PIGF-R.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

refractory
: Unresponsive or resistant to some type of signal or therapeutic agent.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aACC, adenoid cystic carcinoma; BrCa, breast cancer; CML, chronic myelogenous leukemia; CRC, colorectal carcinoma; EGFR, EGF receptor; esoph., esophageal; GBM, glioblastoma; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HNSCC, head-and-neck squamous cell carcinoma; mel., melanoma; MoAb, monoclonal antibody against; NPC, nasopharyngeal carcinoma; NSCLC, non-small-cell lung carcinoma; OvCa, ovarian carcinoma; panc., pancreatic carcinoma; RCC, renal cell carcinoma; SCLC, small-cell lung carcinoma; STS, soft tissue sarcoma; thyr., thyroid carcinoma; VEGF, vascular endothelial growth factor.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

13.10 Nervous tissue contributes to tumor growth

During the second decade of the new millennium a new set of actors emerged on the tumor microenvironment stage: nervous tissue was found to contribute in significant ways to the progression of certain types of solid tumors. Until the arrival of these actors the TMEN was assumed to be formed entirely by cells of mesodermal origin, at least in carcinomas, that is, connective tissues cells of various types and derivatives of the various hematopoietic lineages spawned in the bone marrow.

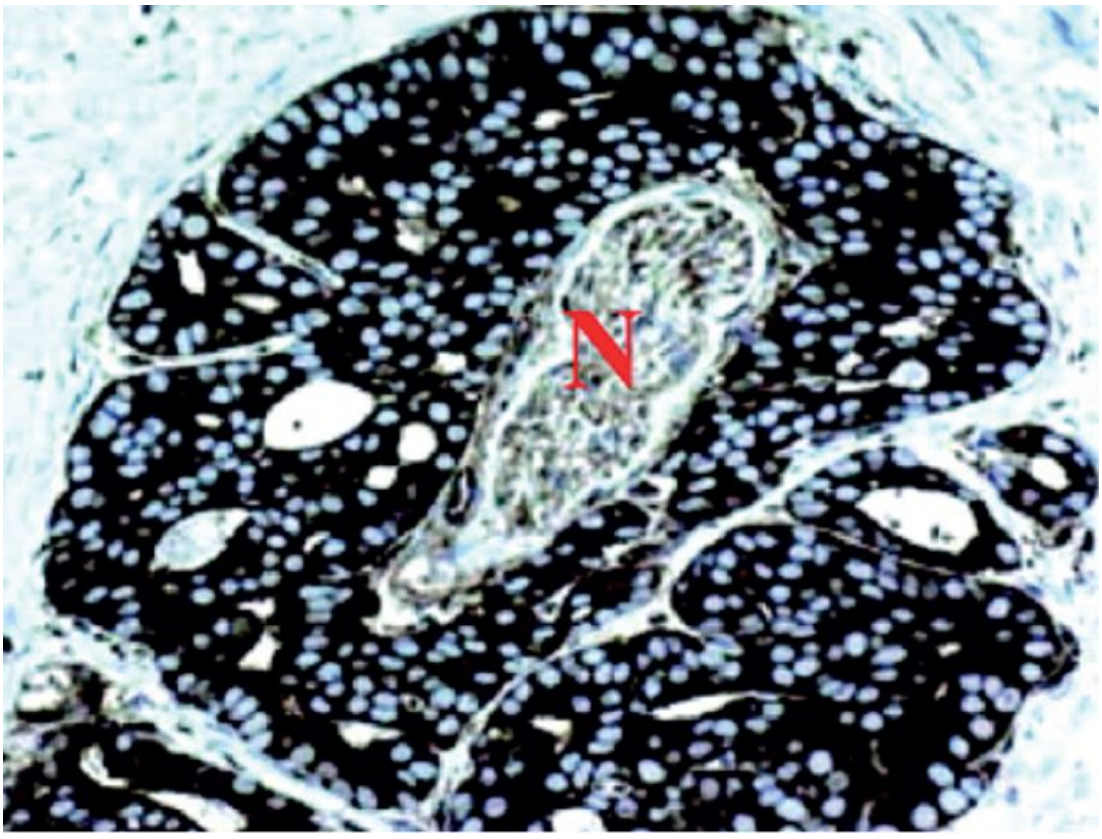
With the comfort of hindsight, it should have been clear that nervous tissue of various sorts must participate in various ways in the formation of neoplastic tissues. After all, tumors rely on the morphogenetic programs used to construct normal tissues for their own growth, and during the formation of almost all normal tissues, blood vessels and nerves grow in lockstep. Indeed, careful examination of the molecules that govern neurogenesis and angiogenesis reveal a clear common evolutionary origin and the use of homologous signaling systems to guide the growth of both types of tissue.

Thus, similar types of “tip cells” serve as the pioneers to guide both capillary growth and axon extension and use homologous proteins as guidance cues. In certain tissues, genetic disruption of genes and proteins involved in axonal guidance has also been found to disrupt the normal patterning of the vasculature morphogenesis. Hence, the deep evolutionary roots that indicate an ancient common origin of these two systems continue to influence a degree of interdependence during the morphogenesis of mammalian tissues.

Diverse observations, some quite recent, have suggested clear associations between innervation, on the one hand, and normal and neoplastic tissue development, on the other, doing so without providing detailed explanations of the underlying mechanisms. In the case of the prostate gland, as an example, this tissue does not develop normally if it is not innervated properly early in its development. Similarly, in a well-studied model of salivary gland development, mesenchymal cells in the mouse glands secrete factors such as growth nerve growth factor (NGF) together with several other neurotrophic factors, which recruit nerve axons that proceed to release acetylcholine, a key neuronal signaling molecule, which then induces branching of the developing salivary ducts. In the absence of these and other critical nerve cell-derived factors, salivary gland development fails to proceed normally. Similarly, in the developing pancreas, inability to produce NGF leads to disruption of glandular architecture.

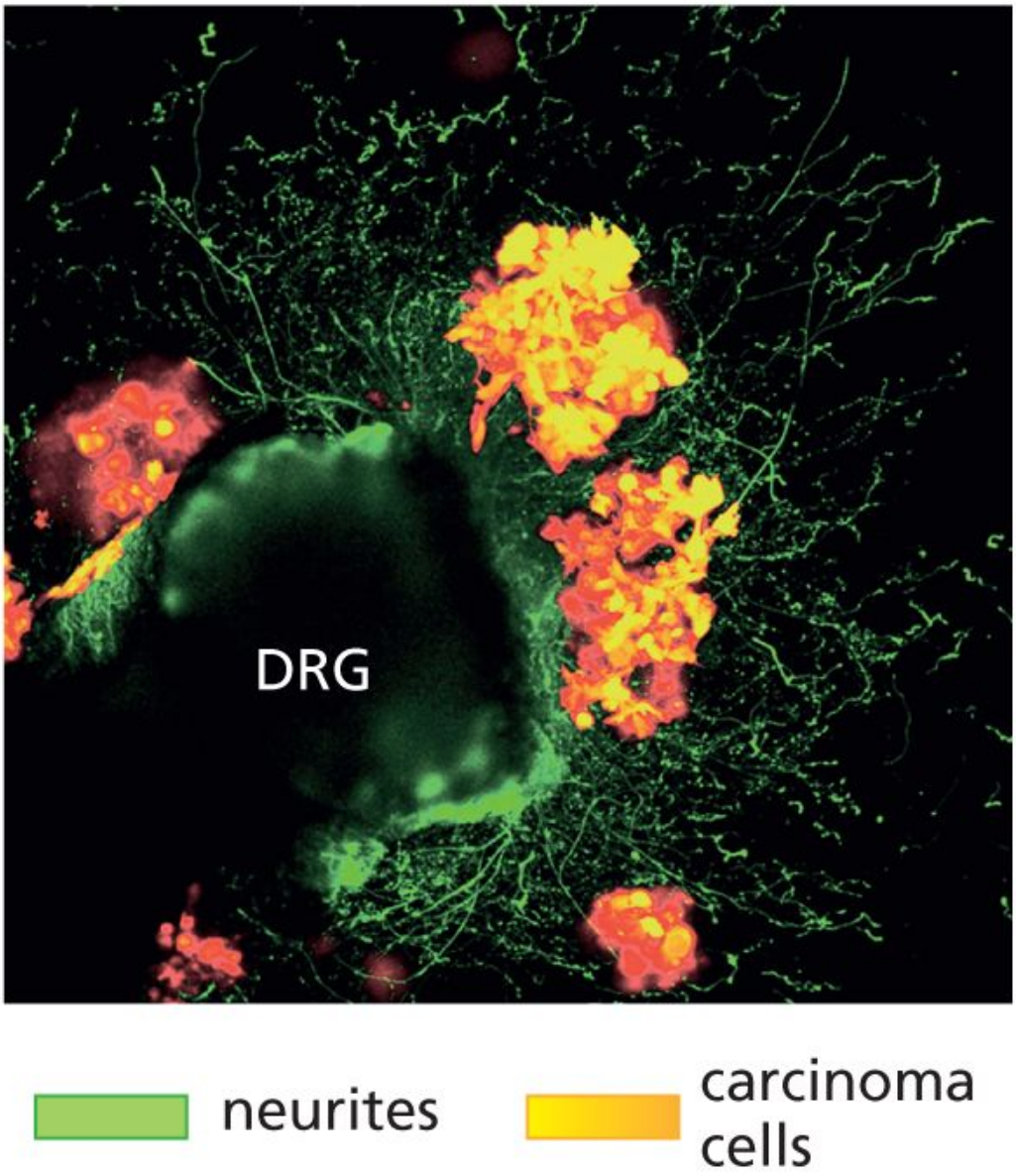
During the course of progression of certain carcinomas, the density of nervous tissue may even double in these tumors. As prostate cancer develops, carcinoma cells often invade adjacent to existing nerves, this representing the process termed perineural invasion (PNI), a process first reported by a histopathologist in 1905. Those carcinoma cells located adjacent to nerves exhibit lower rates of apoptosis and higher rates of proliferation. Moreover, surgical severing of the nerves innervating the prostate leads to regression of orthotopically implanted human prostate cancer cells in a mouse xenograft model of the disease. Reinforcing these observations are others demonstrating that severing of innervating nerves in autochthonously arising prostate carcinomas formed in a transgenic mouse model leads to inhibition of tumor outgrowth; similar observations have been made about mouse mammary and oral carcinomas. In a mouse transgenic model of pancreatic carcinoma, the efficacy of chemotherapy was enhanced when ganglia that generate the nerves innervating the pancreas were surgically removed.

In vitro assays have demonstrated that cancer cells release substances that stimulate neurite outgrowth, that is, the initial provisional protrusion of a neuron that has the potential to be stabilized and mature into a fully functional axon. In a number of tumor types, the density of nerves increases as progression proceeds, indicating that the ultimate drivers of such progression, specifically the carcinoma cells, release morphogenetic signals that incite neurite and axon outgrowth (**Figure 13.43**).



A round cluster of dark cells with pale nuclei growing around an elongated cluster of cells labeled N.

(A)



Neurites, shown in green, encircle a dark region labeled D R G and fan outward. Clumps of bright yellow-orange carcinoma cells adhere to the fan.

(B)

Figure 13.43 Interaction of neuronal tissue with carcinoma cells (A) This section of a human prostate carcinoma has been immunostained with an antibody

against NF-κB, which confers survival signals on carcinoma cells. The carcinoma cells (*black*) are seen growing around a cluster of neuronal tissue (*red* N). Cells in closer proximity to nerves show higher levels of NF-κB, higher rates of proliferation, and lower levels of apoptosis (*not shown*). (B) In this *in vitro* cell culture model, a portion of a mouse dorsal root ganglion (DRG), which represents a cluster of neuronal cell bodies that are associated with the spinal cord and relay inputs from sensory receptors (DRG, *black, lower left*) have been cultured together with cells of DU145 prostate carcinoma cell line (*red orange*) that had been transfected with the red fluorescent protein reporter gene. As is apparent, the presence of clusters of prostate cancer cells (*middle*) induces the DRG to extend numerous neurites (*green*), which are immature axon-like extensions of neurons. The prostate carcinoma cells respond reciprocally by growing toward the DRG, and in the presence of co-cultured stromal cells (*not shown*), initiate a model of perineural invasion. In human prostate carcinomas, the carcinoma cells stimulate the formation of new axons. (A, from G.E. Ayala, H. Dai, M. Ittmann et al. *Cancer Res.* 64:6082–6090, 2004. Reprinted by permission from the American Association for Cancer Research. B, Courtesy of Gustavo Ayala, M.D.)

When taken together, these various phenomena indicate clearly that in many types of tumors, nervous tissue qualifies as a functionally important component of the stroma that interacts in a bidirectional manner with nearby neoplastic cells. These interactions extend as well to those operating in metastatic colonies. For example, the outgrowth of carcinoma metastases to the brain can be fostered by glutamate released by a subset of neurons that impinge on specific types of glutamate receptors expressed by the carcinoma cells. This research on cancer:neuronal signaling is still in its infancy. Nonetheless, results reported to date already provide clear indications of critical heterotypic interactions appear to represent attractive targets for the development of various types of novel anti-cancer therapeutics.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

neurotrophic
: Referring to secreted factors that support the growth, survival, and differentiation of nervous tissue.

perineural invasion
: Invasion of cancer cells along tracts established by neurons and axons.

neurite
: A thin provisional protrusion from the cell body of a neuron that has the potential to develop into a fully formed, functional axon. *See also* **axon**, **neuron**.

axon
: Long slender protrusion from the cell body of a neuron through which nerve signals are transmitted, often to other neurons.

ganglion
: (pl., **ganglia**) Cluster of neuron cell bodies formed in various parts of the peripheral nervous system and, to a smaller extent, in the central nervous system.

OceanofPDF.com

13.11 Synopsis and prospects

Metazoan tissues are organized as condominiums of various cell types that are continuously communicating with one another. To the developmental biologist, the need for this organizational plan is self-evident: only through such interactions can the proper numbers and locations of each of these cell types be ensured. These heterotypic interactions continue to operate after embryogenesis has been completed in order to support the maintenance and repair of already-formed tissues.

As we have learned in this chapter, this organizational plan confers another, quite distinct benefit on the organism. By making its cells so interdependent, none is easily able to extricate itself from its complex web of interactions and go off on its own. Interdependence imposes the regimentation that wards off the chaos of neoplasia.

Earlier, we viewed multi-step cancer progression as the hurdling of successive barriers placed in the path of developing cancer cells (see Chapter 11). Each successfully completed step, whether achieved by genetic or epigenetic changes operating within incipient cancer cells, removes one of these obstacles and places the developing pre-neoplastic cell incrementally closer to full-fledged malignancy. Now we can revisit these barriers by confronting *non-cell-autonomous* mechanisms: as premalignant cells evolve toward malignancy, they progressively sever some of their ties with their neighbors and their dependence on support by nearby cells, often those residing within the tumor-associated stroma (see however **Sidebar 13.10**).

Sidebar 13.10 How truly autonomous are highly progressed cancer cells?

Work reported in 2012 has revealed how dependent the behavior of highly aggressive carcinoma cells is on their surrounding microenvironment. This research involved the admixture of small numbers of malignant human breast carcinoma cells with larger numbers of normal mouse mammary epithelial cells (MECs). When implanted on their own in mouse mammary stromal fat pads, the mouse MECs are able to generate entire functionally normal mammary glands within two months; the breast cancer cells, when implanted in multiple anatomical sites on their own (in immunocompromised mouse hosts), yield

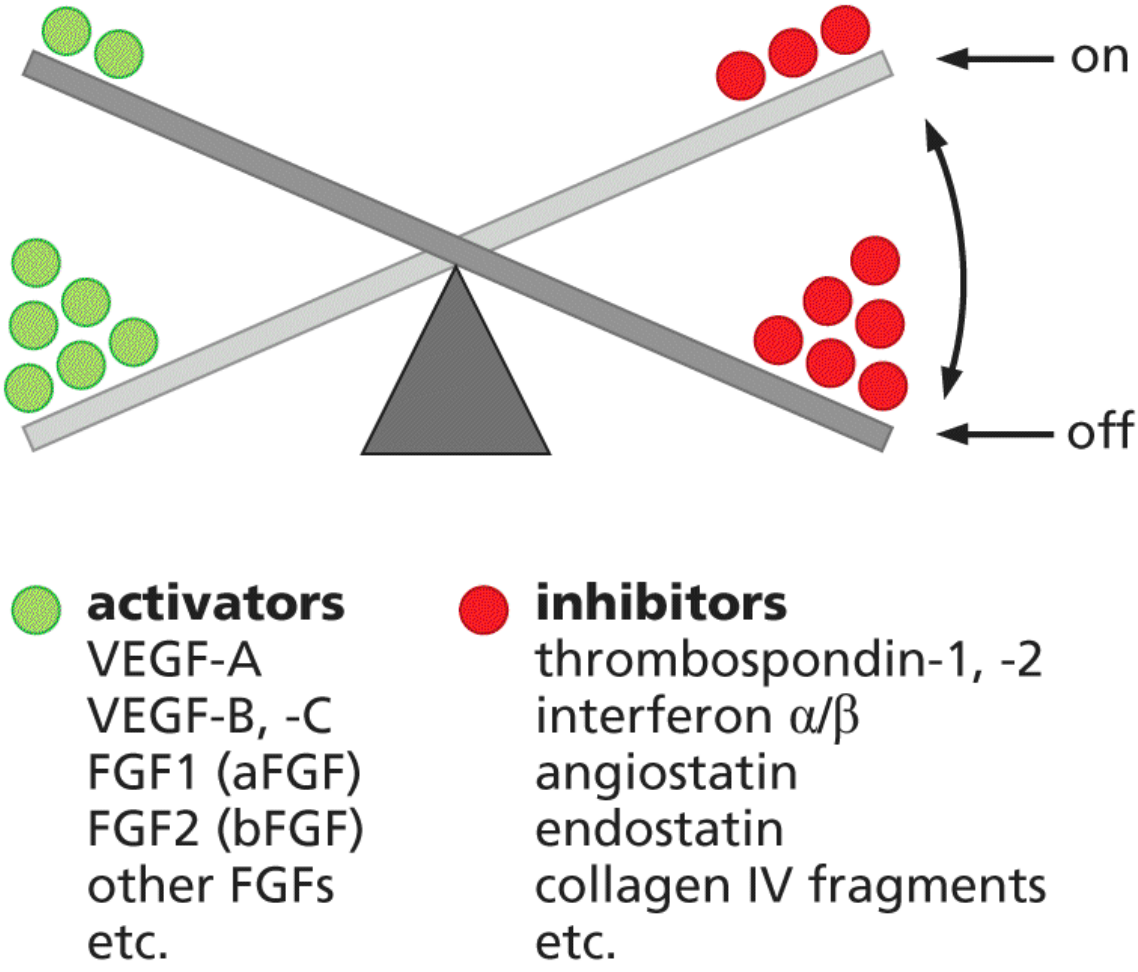
rapidly growing metastatic tumors. However, admixture of the small numbers of the human carcinoma cells with majority populations of mouse MECs prior to implantation in the stromal fat pads caused the human cells to integrate into the ducts being formed in the resulting developing mouse mammary glands, participating in normal duct formation and doing so without any evidence of tumor formation. Hence, the high degree of autonomy that we have ascribed to high-grade, multiply-mutated carcinoma cells is a mirage, in light of this demonstration of the profound influence of nearby epithelial and mesenchymal cells on cancer cell behavior.

Perhaps the biggest surprise is how dependent most cancer cells remain on stromal support despite having completed multiple steps of tumor progression. The epithelial cells residing in many carcinomas continue to rely on many of the physiological signals that sustained their precursors in normal tissues; equally elaborate heterotypic signaling may operate in other types of tumors as well. This conservatism is also suggested by microscopic examination of tumors. Thus, a well-trained pathologist can recognize the origins of perhaps 95% of the tumor samples viewed under the microscope, because most of the heterotypic interactions that govern normal morphology appear to be operative in the great majority of cancers.

The remaining approximately 5% of tumors present a challenge, because they are anaplastic and therefore often have minimal losses of the histologic traits that make identification of their tissue of origin possible. The cells in these anaplastic tumors have shed most forms of dependence that tied their precursors to normal neighboring cells. However, most anaplastic tumor cells have not progressed all the way to total independence because they still assemble to form solid tumors. The ultimate independence is achieved only by the cells in those cancers that have advanced so far that they can grow as pleural effusions or ascites (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.3**) and therefore have minimal or no contact with supporting cells and, apparently, with an extracellular matrix (ECM).

Even without detailed knowledge of heterotypic interactions, the dependence of most carcinoma cells on at least one form of stromal support could have been predicted from the known physiology of mammalian tissues: virtually all of them depend on a functional blood supply. Less predictable was the mechanism by which most tumors acquire their vasculature. Rather than invading normal tissue and expropriating existing capillary beds, most tumors actively recruit endothelial cells that proceed to construct capillaries and larger vessels within the tumors, usually by extending the vasculature of nearby normal tissues. They succeed in

this endeavor by orchestrating the expression of a complex array of signaling molecules that together ensure the formation of the tumor-associated neovasculature (**Figure 13.44**).



The angiogenic switch, visualized as a seesaw. Activators are listed on the left: V E G Effs A, B and C; F G F1 (a F G F); F G F 2 (b F G F); other F G Effs, etcetera. Inhibitors are listed on the right: thrombospondin 1 and 2, interferon alpha and beta, angiostatin, endostatin, collagen IV fragments, etcetera. When activators outweigh inhibitors, the switch is on. When inhibitors outweigh activators, the switch is off.

Figure 13.44 Balancing the angiogenic switch This diagram presents the major physiological regulators that work to promote or inhibit angiogenesis within tissues and indicates that it is the balance between these two countervailing groups of regulators that determines whether or not angiogenesis proceeds. Although the angiogenic switch has been described

here as an essentially on–off binary decision, in fact diagrams like this one suggest that the rate of neovasculature formation may change continuously within a tumor mass after the switch has been activated and often increases progressively, seemingly governed by a rheostat rather than a binary switch. (From D. Hanahan and J. Folkman, *Cell* 86:353–364, 1996. With permission from Elsevier.)

The sources of these endothelial cells could also not be deduced from first principles. The proliferation of endothelial cells originating in neighboring tissues seems to be the main mechanism for acquiring neovasculature soon after the angiogenic switch has been tripped (see Figure 13.44). However, in some tumors, the initially formed vessels may be constructed largely by endothelial precursor cells (EPCs) that originate in the bone marrow and then differentiate in the tumor stroma into functional endothelial cells. In fact, the relative contributions of EPCs are still unclear in most types of tumors.

Major aspects of angiogenesis are still poorly understood, even paradoxical. For example, it seems apparent that once tumors become angiogenic, they can launch into a prolonged phase of growth and expansion, and that tumors that are more angiogenic can grow even more rapidly than those that are less able to attract new vasculature. Indeed, as we have read, measurements of microvessel density—the number of capillaries per microscope field—correlate quite well with the likelihood that a primary tumor, such as a breast cancer, will progress to a highly malignant endpoint.

The paradox comes from the frequent observations that patients bearing highly hypoxic tumors also confront a poor prognosis. Indeed, hypoxic tumors, including those exposed to anti-angiogenesis therapies, are often more aggressive than their normoxic counterparts. This makes no sense, given that hypoxia should starve tumor cells and lead to their death through apoptosis and, on a larger scale, to extensive necrotic regions within tumors (see Figure 13.29). The paradox may one day be resolved by invoking the actions of the HIF-1 transcription factor, which becomes activated in hypoxic cells and induces production of a large number of other proteins besides VEGF. Indeed, a high level of HIF-1 expression is also an indicator of poor clinical prognosis. Included among the genes activated by HIF-1 are those specifying PDGF, TGF-α, TGF-β, and several matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), the latter being responsible for remodeling the extracellular matrix (ECM). As we have learned, several of these secreted

proteins act as potent mitogens that drive the proliferation of both epithelial cells and their stromal neighbors.

An additional HIF-1–induced gene encodes the Met protein, which functions as the receptor for the hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) ligand, also known as scatter factor (SF). HGF, for its part, seems to be widely available in many human tumors of both epithelial and mesenchymal origin. Consequently, HIF-1–mediated increases in expression of the Met RTK can sensitize tumor cells to HGF molecules that are present in their surroundings, having been released by nearby stromal cells. Once the Met receptor is activated by binding its HGF ligand, it activates a diverse set of responses within epithelial cells, including the epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), a cell-biological program that imparts increased motility and invasiveness (see Section 13.3 and Chapter 14). At the molecular level, the concentrations of two potent EMT-inducing transcription factors—Twist and Snail—are significantly increased in hypoxic cells; as we will see in the next chapter, carcinoma cells that have undergone an EMT acquire many of the phenotypes of the cells forming high-grade malignancies. These diverse products of HIF-1 action and tissue hypoxia help explain the poor prognosis attached to hypoxic tumors, which thrive despite great adversity and actually turn out to be more aggressive than their well-oxygenated counterparts (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 13.6**).

These paradoxical, indeed counterproductive responses to anti-angiogenesis therapies, together with the evasive maneuvers that tumors may take to circumvent these therapies (see Table 13.4), may explain the modest successes that most of these therapies have achieved in the oncology clinic. Thus, most clinical outcomes have fallen far short of anticipated outcomes. Still, some combinations of anti-angiogenesis therapy and chemotherapy have shown clear utility in terms of increasing progression-free survival (PFS) and even overall survival of cancer patients and thus are finding their way into standard clinical practice. In the longer term, more efficacious anti-angiogenesis therapies may derive from dosing schedules that serve to normalize the tumor-associated microvasculature, enabling more efficient drug delivery, while avoiding the complete vascular collapse that triggers tumor hypoxia and the induction of increased tumor aggressiveness.

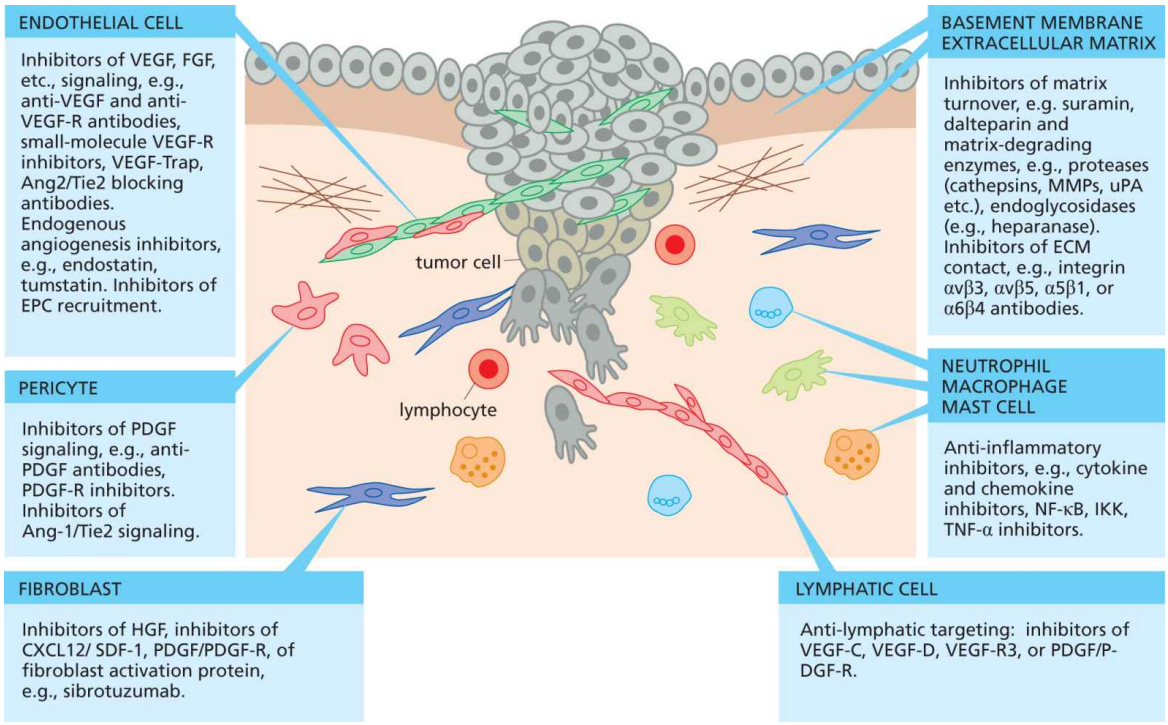
Certain recently discovered dynamic interactions between tumors and the bone marrow have been a surprise to most cancer researchers. In the absence of metastasis, most tumors have traditionally been considered to be localized diseases confined to one or another corner of the body. But the more we learn

about the cells of the stromal compartment, the more we come to realize that even localized tumors extend their reach far and wide throughout the body in order to recruit the cells that they need in order to support their own survival and proliferation programs. Besides the endothelial precursor cells (EPCs) cited above, carcinomas recruit mast cells and monocytes from the marrow, the latter differentiating on-site into various types of macrophages. Mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs and fibrocytes) of bone marrow origin are also recruited in large numbers to the stroma of many carcinomas; once present within these tumors, they may differentiate into fibroblasts and myofibroblasts, which then release signals favoring the survival and malignant progression of nearby cancer cells.

Throughout most of this chapter, we have focused on epithelial–stromal interactions within tumors and the heterotypic signals that they exchange via *paracrine* signaling channels. The presence of a variety of bone marrow–derived cells in the tumor stroma creates an additional dimension of complexity. Recognizing their existence and their potential contributions to tumor physiology, we now need to include interactions of cancer cells with the faraway bone marrow. Thus, tumors may communicate with the marrow to elicit the production and mobilization into the circulation of certain cell types that can then be recruited from the circulation into the tumor stroma. Such systemic interactions depend, by definition, on information conveyed by *endocrine* signals rather than the paracrine signals that have been a central focus of our discussions here.

Even if we confine our attention to the bidirectional exchanges of paracrine signals between the epithelial and stromal compartments operating within tumors, we confront extraordinary complexity. The tumor stroma is composed of almost a dozen distinct cell types (fibroblasts, myofibroblasts, MSCs, endothelial cells, pericytes, smooth muscle cells, mast cells, monocytes, macrophages, lymphocytes, nerve cells, and, in some tissues, adipocytes), each of which signals to the neoplastic epithelial cells as well as to other cellular components of the stroma. Physicists have struggled, so far unsuccessfully, with general solutions to the three-body problem. Here, we confront a world of a far larger number of distinct cell types, each of which is sending a complex mixture of signals to other types of cells. Examinations of only a single cell type—fibroblasts—reveal the heterogeneity of these cells and their ability to change dynamically in response to the contextual signals that they encounter within the tumor stroma (**Supplementary Sidebar 13.11**). We have only begun to scratch the surface of the complex epithelial–stromal interactions operating in neoplastic tissues and in their normal counterparts.

For more than half a century, the mindset of oncologists has been focused on eradicating the bulk of the cancer cells within solid tumors, with the hope of achieving the seemingly impossible—cures of common carcinomas that have traditionally been incurable. As we learned, first in Chapter 11 and now in this one, this focus needs to be radically redirected. First, the targets of anti-cancer therapies can no longer be confined to the bulk of neoplastic cells in a tumor, because these cells have limited self-renewal capacity; instead, we are likely to find that truly durable cures can come only from eradicating as well the still-elusive cancer stem cells (CSCs) that hide out, here and there, throughout tumor masses and represent their engines of self-renewal. Second, many of the useful anti-cancer therapies to be developed in the future will not come from targeting the cancer cells themselves. Instead, it may often be far more profitable to attack the cells that provide them with vital physiological support; by undermining the elaborate stromal support network on which most cancer cells depend, truly dramatic regressions of solid tumors may one day be achieved (**Figure 13.45**).



A graphic summarizing Heterotypic interactions as targets for therapeutic intervention. At the center is a clump of abnormal tissue, penetrating downward through basement membrane into the extracellular matrix. Tumor cells at the bottom of the clump are well on the way to becoming cancerous. Different cell and tissue types are labeled with a list of proteins and other substances. The label for basement membrane and extracellular matrix reads:

Inhibitors of matrix turnover, e.g. suramin, dalteparin and matrix-degrading enzymes, e.g., proteases (cathepsins, M M Pees, u P A, etcetera), endoglycosidases (e.g., heparanase). Inhibitors of E C M contact, e.g., integrin alpha v beta 3, alpha v beta 5, alpha 5 beta 1, or alpha 6 beta 4 antibodies. The label for NEUTROPHIL, MACROPHAGE, MAST CELL reads: Anti-inflammatory inhibitors, e.g., cytokine and chemokine inhibitors, N F-kappa B, I K K, T N F-alpha inhibitors. The label for LYMPHATIC CELL reads: Anti-lymphatic targeting: inhibitors of V E G F-C, V E G F-D, V E G F-R3, or P D G F slash P D G F-R. The label for FIBROBLAST reads: Inhibitors of H G F, inhibitors of C X C L 12 slash S D F-1, P D G F slash P D G F-R, of fibroblast activation protein, e.g., sibrotuzumab. The label for PERICYTE reads: Inhibitors of P D G F signaling, e.g., anti-P D G F antibodies, P D G F-R inhibitors. Inhibitors of Ang-1 slash Tie 2 signaling. The label for ENDOTHELIAL CELL reads, Inhibitors of V E G F, F G F, etcetera, signaling, e.g., anti-V E G F and anti-V E G F-R antibodies, small-molecule V E G F-R inhibitors, V E G F-Trap, Ang-2 slash Tie-2 blocking antibodies. Endogenous angiogenesis inhibitors, e.g., endostatin, tumstatin. Inhibitors of E P C recruitment.

Figure 13.45 Heterotypic interactions as targets for therapeutic intervention As described in this chapter, cancer cells depend on the nearby stromal microenvironment for a variety of cell-physiological supports. This dependence on heterotypic interactions has inspired development of new types of cancer therapy, some of which have been featured in this chapter. Instead of focusing on the intracellular signaling defects within cancer cells, this new class of therapies is directed toward interrupting heterotypic signaling, thereby depriving cancer cells of essential stromal support. This scheme indicates some of the anti-tumor therapies that are being developed or under consideration (*light blue boxes*). (From J.A. Joyce, *Cancer Cell* 7:513–520, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

The insight that tumors are “wounds that do not heal” extends and echoes our earlier discussions (see Sections 11.13 and 11.14), in which the critical role of chronic inflammation in promoting tumor formation was described in great depth. Inflammation and wound healing are intertwined processes, and the mechanisms of inflammation-driven tumor promotion, which lead to the initial formation of cancers, are extended and elaborated by the chronic wound healing that seems to best characterize the biology of the stroma of well-established tumors.

Here, too, there has been another surprise. Inflammatory cells, notably macrophages, have traditionally been depicted as the front-line soldiers of the immune response that deal effectively with infectious agents, such as bacteria, by consuming them and help guide the long-term immune response through antigen presentation, as we will see later in Chapter 15. Now we learn that macrophages can also function as key sources of tumor promotion by producing mitogenic growth factors, liberating angiogenic factors, and remodeling the extracellular matrix (ECM); the latter process is also critical for tumor invasion and metastasis, as we will see in Chapter 14.

So, the traditional job description assignments of various stromal cell types are being extended and blurred. Cells of the immune system, which are purportedly dispatched to protect us from infection and even cancer, are often active collaborators in tumor development. And the deletion of one or another cell type from the immune system, achieved in mice through germ-line re-engineering, often creates a host organism that is, paradoxically, less able to support tumorigenesis.

Normal, multifaceted morphogenetic programs that depend on epithelial–stromal interactions, such as wound healing and the EMT, are likely to explain how carcinoma cells are clever enough to acquire the complex cell phenotypes that they need in order to execute the later stages of malignant progression. In retrospect, this notion is not so surprising, because the more we learn about cancer cells, the more we realize how opportunistic they are in co-opting and exploiting normal biological processes in order to further their own ends. This insight leaves us with the last question of this chapter: Have we begun to truly understand the mechanistic complexity of heterotypic interactions, or is there an entire universe of undiscovered signaling pathways and behavioral programs lurking within tumors waiting, like intergalactic dark matter, to surprise us once again?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

pleural effusion
: Accumulation of cancer cells and fluid in the space between the lungs and the surrounding pleural membrane.

ascites
: (adj., - **itic**) Fluid that accumulates in the peritoneal cavity of some cancer patients, often containing malignant cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Tumors are complex tissues that depend on intercommunication between various cell types. Indeed, most tumors are as complex histologically as the normal tissues in which they arise.
- In carcinomas, these cell types can be separated into the neoplastic epithelial cells and recruited stromal cells, which include fibroblasts, myofibroblasts, and macrophages, other types of inflammatory cells, nervous tissue, as well as the various cell types that participate in the construction of the tumor-associated vasculature, specifically endothelial cells, pericytes, and smooth muscle cells.
- Most carcinomas depend absolutely on recruited stromal cells for various types of physiological support. This dependence is lost only in the small subset of tumors that progress to an extremely malignant state, notably some of the tumor cells growing in the ascites and pleural fluids of patients suffering advanced cancer.
- At the biochemical level, this interdependence is manifested by the exchange of various types of mitogenic and trophic factors. For example, carcinoma cells may release PDGF to recruit and activate stromal cells, whereas the latter respond by releasing IGFs that sustain the survival of the carcinoma cells.
- The formation of tumor-associated vasculature, formed by the process of neoangiogenesis, is a critical, rate-limiting determinant of the growth of all tumors larger in size than approximately 0.2 mm.
- In the case of carcinomas, the acquisition of tumor-associated stroma closely resembles the process of healing in wounded epithelial tissues. The genesis of stroma therefore relies on the same gene expression programs that are activated during wound healing.
- As tumor progression proceeds, the fibroblast-rich stroma is increasingly replaced by myofibroblasts, which eventually may generate collagen-rich, desmoplastic stroma.
- The recruitment of the cells that participate directly in the construction of the neovasculature of tumors involves the release of factors, such as VEGF, by both the tumor cells and inflammatory cells, notably macrophages.

- Neoangiogenesis represents an attractive target for the development of novel anti-cancer agents, in that the targeted cells are the various normal, genetically stable stromal cell types participating in angiogenesis rather than the ever-changing cancer cells.
- Anti-angiogenic therapies often provoke paradoxical responses in carcinomas, including progression to higher grade malignancy, tempering the enthusiasm for introducing some of these therapies into clinical practice.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What diverse lines of evidence prove directly that most carcinoma cells depend on stromal cell types for various types of physiological support?
2. How might anti-angiogenesis therapies improve (in some cases) or neutralize (in other cases) the efficacy of conventional chemotherapeutic agents?
3. How might macrophages facilitate or antagonize tumorigenesis?
4. Which lines of evidence persuade you that the generation of tumor-associated stroma depends on the same biological programs that are activated during wound healing?
5. Which biological forces cause the tumor-associated vasculature to be defective in so many respects?
6. Which types of anti-cancer therapeutic agents would you deploy in order to encourage the collapse of an established tumor by depriving it of vasculature support?
7. What biochemical strategies can tumor cells use to lessen their dependence on stromal support?
8. How might you determine what proportion of endothelial cells in the vasculature of a tumor derive from the expansion of adjacent vasculature and what proportion of these cells arise from circulating endothelial precursor cells?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Avramides CJ, Garmy-Susini B & Varner JA (2008) Integrins in angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 604–617.

Balkwill F, Charles KA & Mantovani A (2005) Smoldering and polarized inflammation in the initiation and promotion of malignant disease. *Cancer Cell* 7, 211–217.

Baluk P, Hashizume H & McDonald DM (2005) Cellular abnormalities of blood vessels as targets in cancer. *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 15, 102–111.

Battle E & Massagué J (2019) Transforming growth factor-β signaling in immunity and cancer. *Immunity* 50, 924–940.

Baum B & Georgiou M (2011) Dynamics of adherens junctions in epithelial establishment, maintenance, and remodeling. *J. Cell Biol.* 192, 907–917.

Bergers G & Hanahan D (2008) Modes of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 592–603.

Bierie B & Moses HL (2006) Tumour microenvironment: TGFβ, the molecular Jekyll and Hyde. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 506–520.

Brancato SK & Albina JE (2011) Wound macrophages as key regulators of repair. *Am. J. Pathol.* 178, 19–25.

Calon A, Tauriello DVF & Battle E (2014) TGF-beta in CAF-mediated tumor growth and metastasis. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 24, 15–22.

Carmeliet P & Jain RK (2011) Molecular mechanisms and clinical applications of angiogenesis. *Nature* 473, 298–307.

Carmeliet P & Tessier-Lavigne M (2005) Common mechanisms of nerve and blood vessel wiring. *Nature* 436, 193–200.

Cassetta L, Stamatina F, Sims AH et al. (2019) Human tumor-associated macrophage and monocyte transcriptional landscapes reveal cancer-specific reprogramming, biomarkers and therapeutic targets. *Cancer Cell* 35, 588–602.

De Visser KE, Eichten A & Coussens LM (2006) Paradoxical roles of the immune system during cancer development. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 24–37.

De Wever O, Demetter P, Mareel M & Bracke M (2008) Stromal myofibroblasts are drivers of invasive cancer growth. *Int. J. Cancer* 123, 2229–2238.

Dvorak HF (1986) Tumors: wounds that do not heal. *N. Engl. J. Med*. 315, 1650–1689.

Dvorak HF (2003) How tumors make bad blood vessels and stroma. *Am. J. Pathol.* 162, 1747–1757.

Ebos JML & Kerbel RS (2011) Antiangiogenic therapy: impact on invasion, disease progression, and metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 8, 210–221.

Egeblad M, Nakasone ES & Werb Z (2010) Tumors as organs: complex tissues that interface with the entire organism. *Dev. Cell* 18, 884–901.

Ehnman M, Chaabane W, Haglund F & Tsagkozis P (2019) The tumor microenvironment of pediatric sarcoma: mesenchymal mechanisms regulating cell migration and metastasis. *Curr. Oncol. Rep*. 21:90.

Ellis LM & Hicklin DJ (2008) VEGF-targeted therapy: mechanisms of anti-tumor activity. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 8, 579–591.

Fernandez-Cortes M, Delgado-Bellido D & Oliver FJ (2019) Vasculogenic mimicry: become an endothelial cell “but not so much.” *Front. Oncol.* 2019.00803.

Ferrara N, Hillan KJ, Gerber HP & Notovny W (2004) Discovery and development of bevacizumab, an anti-VEGF antibody for treating cancer. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 3, 391–400.

Franke WW (2009) Discovering the molecular components of intercellular junctions: a historical view. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 1, a003061.

Garcia J, Hurwitz HI, Sandler AB et al. (2020) Bevacizumab (Avastin®) in cancer treatment: a review of 15 years of clinical experience and future outlook. *Cancer Treat. Rev.* 86, 102017.

Gerhardt H & Semb H (2008) Pericytes: gatekeepers in tumour cell metastasis? *J. Mol. Med.* 86, 135–144.

Hanahan D & Coussens LM (2012) Accessories to the crime: functions of cells recruited to the tumor microenvironment. *Cancer Cell* 21, 309–322.

Hessmann E, Buchholz SM, Demir IE et al. (2020) Microenvironmental determinants of pancreatic cancer. *Physiol. Rev.* 100, 1707–1751.

Hinz B (2007) Formation and function of the myofibroblast during tissue repair. *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 127, 526–537.

Hynes RO (2012) The evolution of metazoan extracellular matrix. *J. Cell Biol.* 196, 671–679.

Hynes RO & Naba A (2012) Overview of the matrisome—an inventory of extracellular matrix constituents and functions. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 4, a004903.

Jain RK (2005) Normalization of tumor vasculature: an emerging concept in antiangiogenic therapy. *Science* 307, 58–62.

Jain RK, Di Tomaso E, Duda DG et al. (2007) Angiogenesis in brain tumors. *Nat. Rev. Neurosci*. 8, 610–622.

Jain RK (2014) Anti-angiogenesis strategies revised: From starving tumors to alleviating hypoxia. *Cancer Cell* 26, 605–622.

Kalluri R & Zeisberg M (2006) Fibroblasts in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 392–401.

Kessenbrock K, Plaka V & Werb Z (2010) Matrix metalloproteinases: regulators of the tumor microenvironment. *Cell* 141, 52–67.

Lewis CE & Pollard JW (2006) Distinct role of macrophages in different tumor microenvironments. *Cancer Res.* 124, 263–266.

Li Calzi S, Neu MB, Shaw LC et al. (2010) EPCs and pathological angiogenesis: when good cells go bad. *Microvasc. Res.* 79, 297–216.

Liebig C, Ayala G, Wilks JA et al. (2009) Perineural invasion in cancer. *Cancer* 115, 3379–3391.

Loges S, Mazzone M, Hohensinner P & Carmeliet P (2009) Silencing or fueling metastasis with VEGF inhibitors: antiangiogenesis revisited. *Cancer Cell* 15, 167–170.

Lu P, Weaver VM & Werb Z (2012) The extracellular matrix: a dynamic niche in cancer progression. *J. Cell Biol.* 196, 395–406.

Nagy JA, Chang SH, Dvorak AM & Dvorak HF (2009) Why are tumour blood vessels abnormal and why is it important to know? *Br. J. Cancer* 100, 865–859.

Neel NI, Karsdal M & Willumsen N (2019) Collagens and cancer associated fibroblasts in the reactive stroma and its relation to cancer biology. *J. Exp. Clin. Cancer Res.* 38:115.

Nia H, Munn LL & Jain RK (2020) Physical traits of cancer. *Science* 370, eaaz0868.

Öhlund D, Elyada E & Tuveson D (2014) Fibroblast heterogeneity in the cancer wound. *J. Exp. Med.* 211, 1503–1523.

Page-McCaw A, Ewald AJ & Werb Z (2007) Matrix metalloproteinases and the regulation of tissue remodeling. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 8, 221–233.

Quail DF & Joyce JA (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. *Nat. Med*. 19, 1423–1437.

Ribatti D, Nico B, Crivellato E et al. (2007) The history of the angiogenic switch concept. *Leukemia* 21, 44–52.

Rolfe D, Fleming JB & Gomer RH (2020) Fibrocytes in the tumor microenvironment. *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol* 1224, 79–85.

Sahai E, Astsaturov I, Cukierman E et al. (2020) A framework for advancing our understanding of cancer-associated fibroblasts. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 20, 174–186.

Santi A, Kugeratski FG & Zanivan S (2018) Cancer associated fibroblasts: the architects of stroma remodeling. *Proteomics* 18, e1700167.

Servais C & Erez N (2013) From sentinel cells to inflammatory culprits: cancer-associated fibroblasts in tumor-related inflammation. *J. Pathol.* 229, 198–297.

Shibuya M (2011) Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and its receptor (VEGFR) signaling in angiogenesis. *Genes Cancer* 2, 1097–1105.

Suva ML & Tirosh I (2019) Single-cell RNA sequencing in cancer: lessons learned and emerging challenges. *Mol. Cell* 75, 7–12.

Theunissen J-W & de Sauvage FJ (2009) Paracrine Hedgehog signaling in cancer. *Cancer Res.* 69, 6007–6010.

Thiery JP & Sleeman JP (2006) Complex networks orchestrate epithelial-mesenchymal transitions. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol* 7, 131–142.

Thiery JP, Acloque H, Huang RYG & Nieto MA (2009) Epithelial-mesenchymal transitions in development and disease. *Cell* 139, 871–890.

Tlsty TD & Coussens LM (2006) Tumor stroma and regulation of cancer development. *Annu. Rev. Pathol.* 1, 119–150.

Vaahtomeri K, Karaman S, Mäkinen T & Alitalo K (2017) Lymphangiogenesis guidance by paracrine and pericellular factors. *Genes Dev.* 31, 1615–1634.

Wendt MK, Tian M & Schiemann WP (2012) Deconstructing the mechanisms and consequences of TGF-β-induced EMT during cancer progression. *Cell Tissue Res.* 347, 85–101.

Werner S & Grose R (2003) Regulation of wound healing by growth factors and cytokines. *Physiol. Rev.* 83, 835–870.

Zahalka AH & Frenette PS (2020) Nerves in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 20, 143–157.

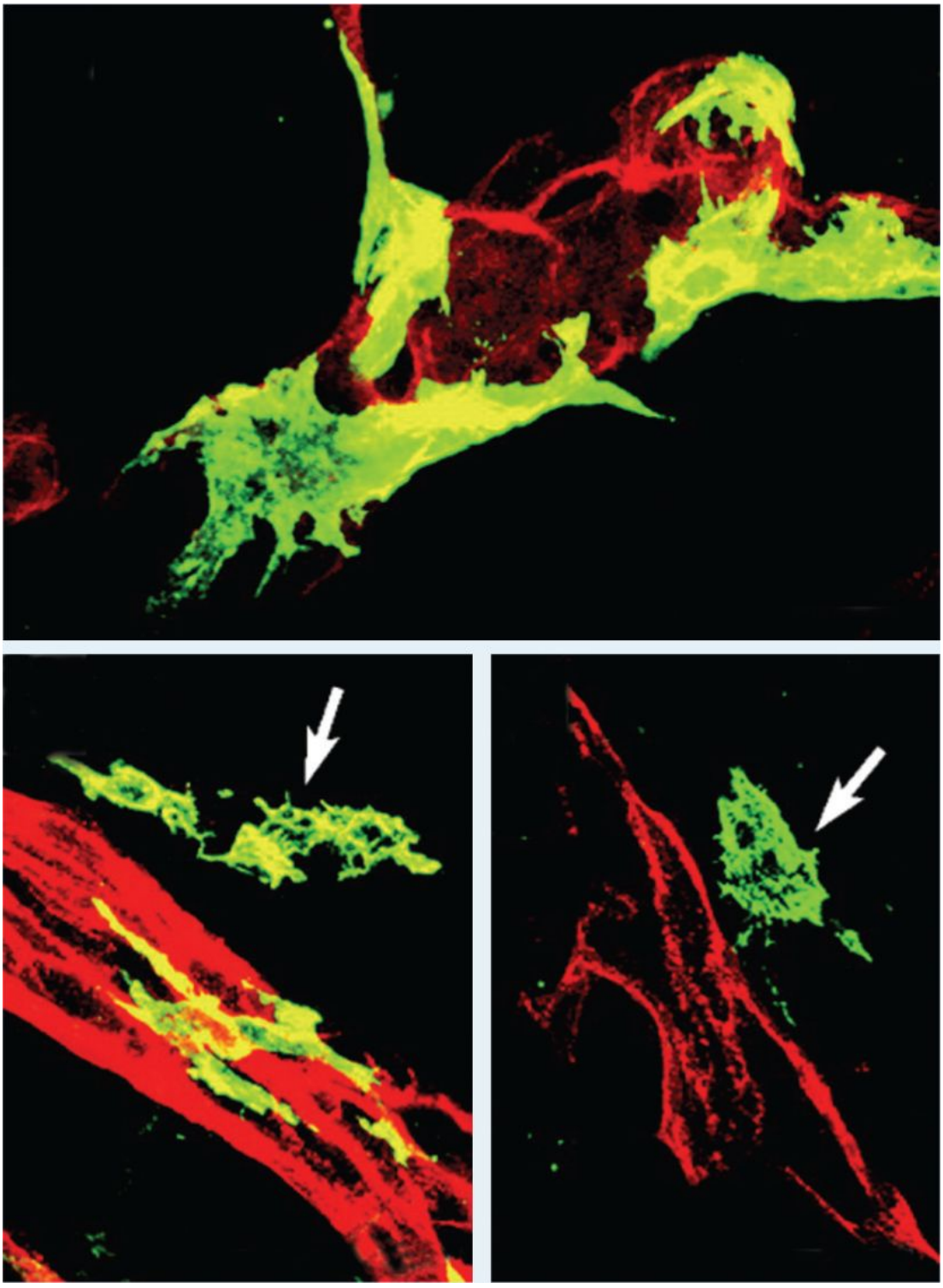
Zecchin A, Kalucka J, Dubois C & Carmeliet P (2017) How endothelial cells adapt their metabolism to form vessels in tumors. *Front Immunol.* 8, 1750.

OceanofPDF.com

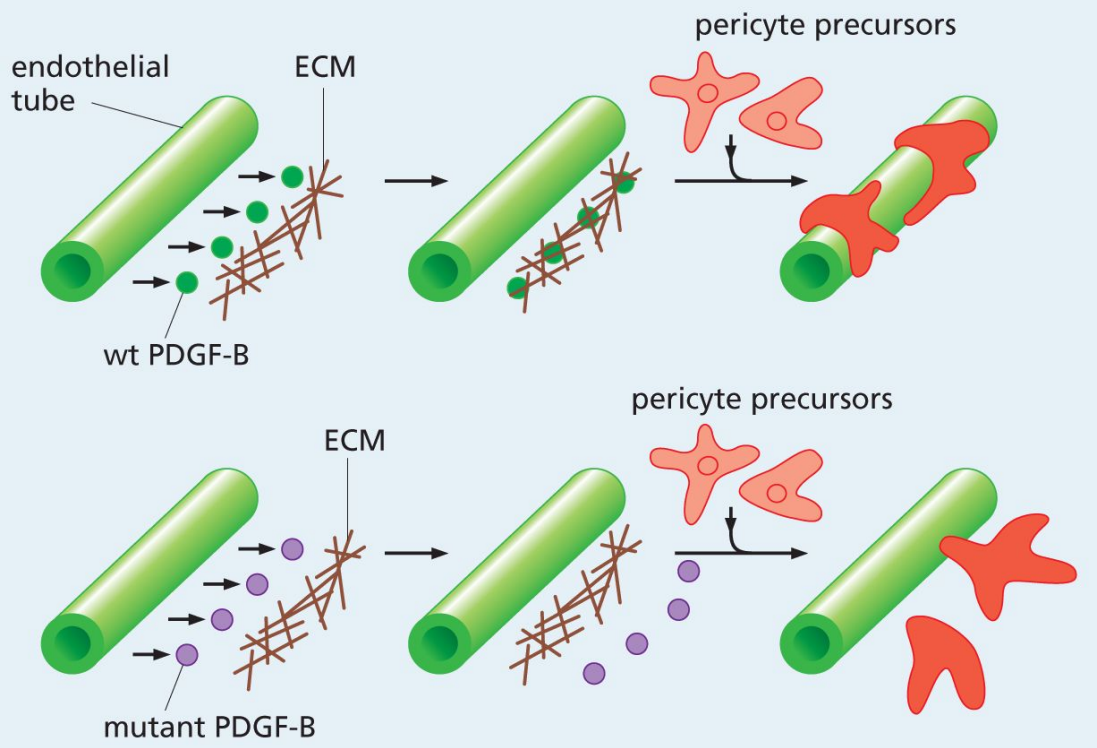
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 13.1 Localization of growth factors is important for proper heterotypic interactions

Paracrine signaling operates over short distances between nearby cells, rather than over long distances via the circulation, the latter being termed *endocrine* signaling. (Some paracrine signaling is termed *juxtacrine* to indicate signaling between immediately adjacent cells.) In the case of microvessel formation, highly localized concentrations of PDGF are needed to ensure that the pericytes recruited to the outer layers of capillaries become directly *apposed* to the endothelial cells rather than dispersed randomly some distance away (**Figure S13.1**). Like many other growth factors, the PDGF-B molecule—the specific form of PDGF that operates here—contains a "retention motif," which ensures its binding to proteoglycans in the extracellular matrix (ECM). Consequently, soon after PDGF-B molecules are secreted by endothelial cells into the space around capillaries, these molecules are trapped in the nearby ECM and therefore accumulate in high concentrations immediately next to the endothelial cells. Once liberated from this tethering by proteases, the resulting high local concentrations of activated PDGF-B molecules ensure the recruitment of pericytes to locations directly adjacent to the endothelial cells. However, in mice expressing a mutant PDGF-B that lacks this retention motif, the secreted PDGF-B molecules diffuse away from endothelial cells, causing the recruitment of pericytes to the general area of the endothelial cells but not directly apposed to them. These endothelial cells therefore lack the structural support afforded by the pericytes, as well as the VEGF supplied by the pericytes that is required for long-term endothelial cell survival.



(A)

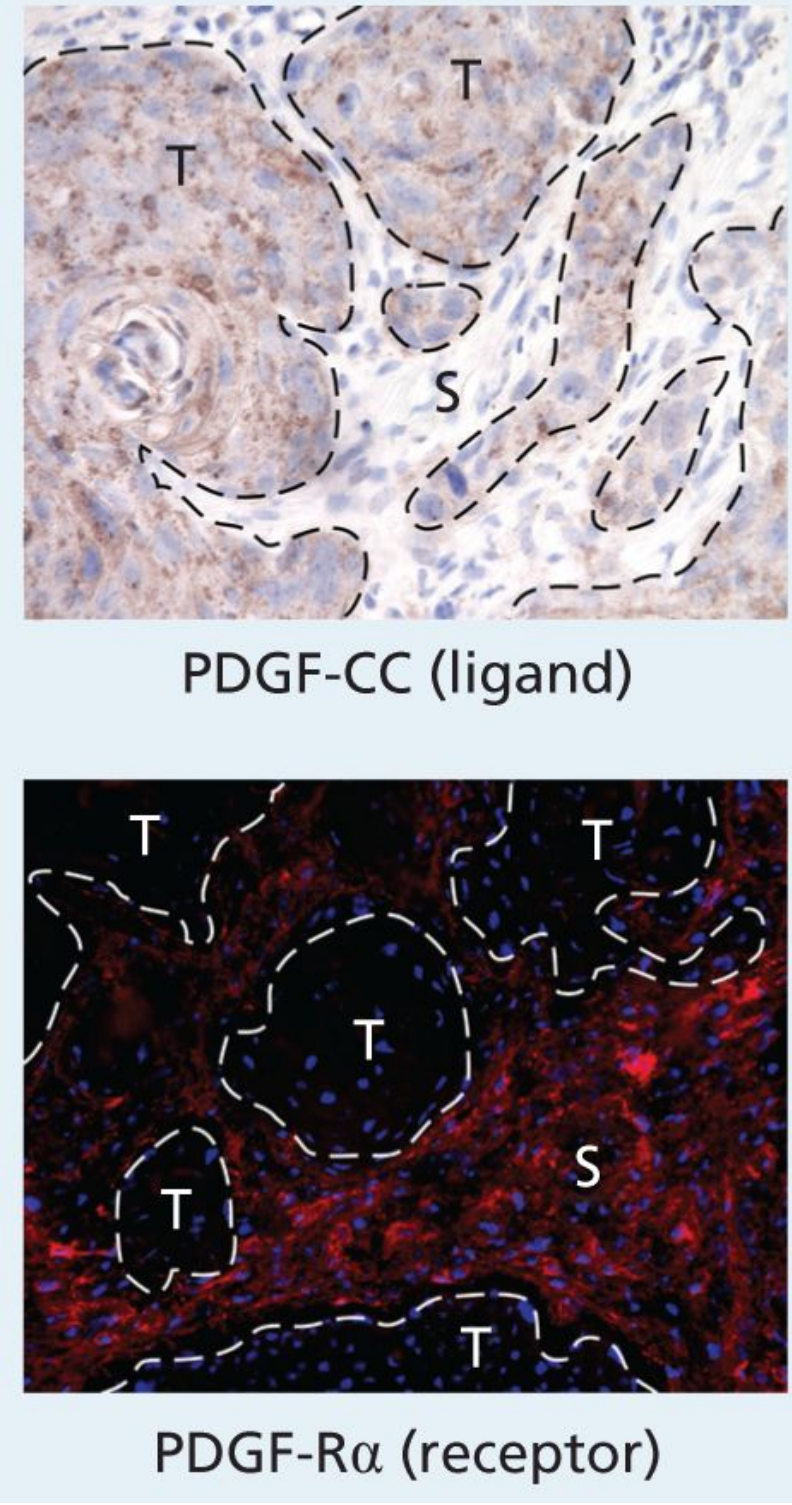


(B)

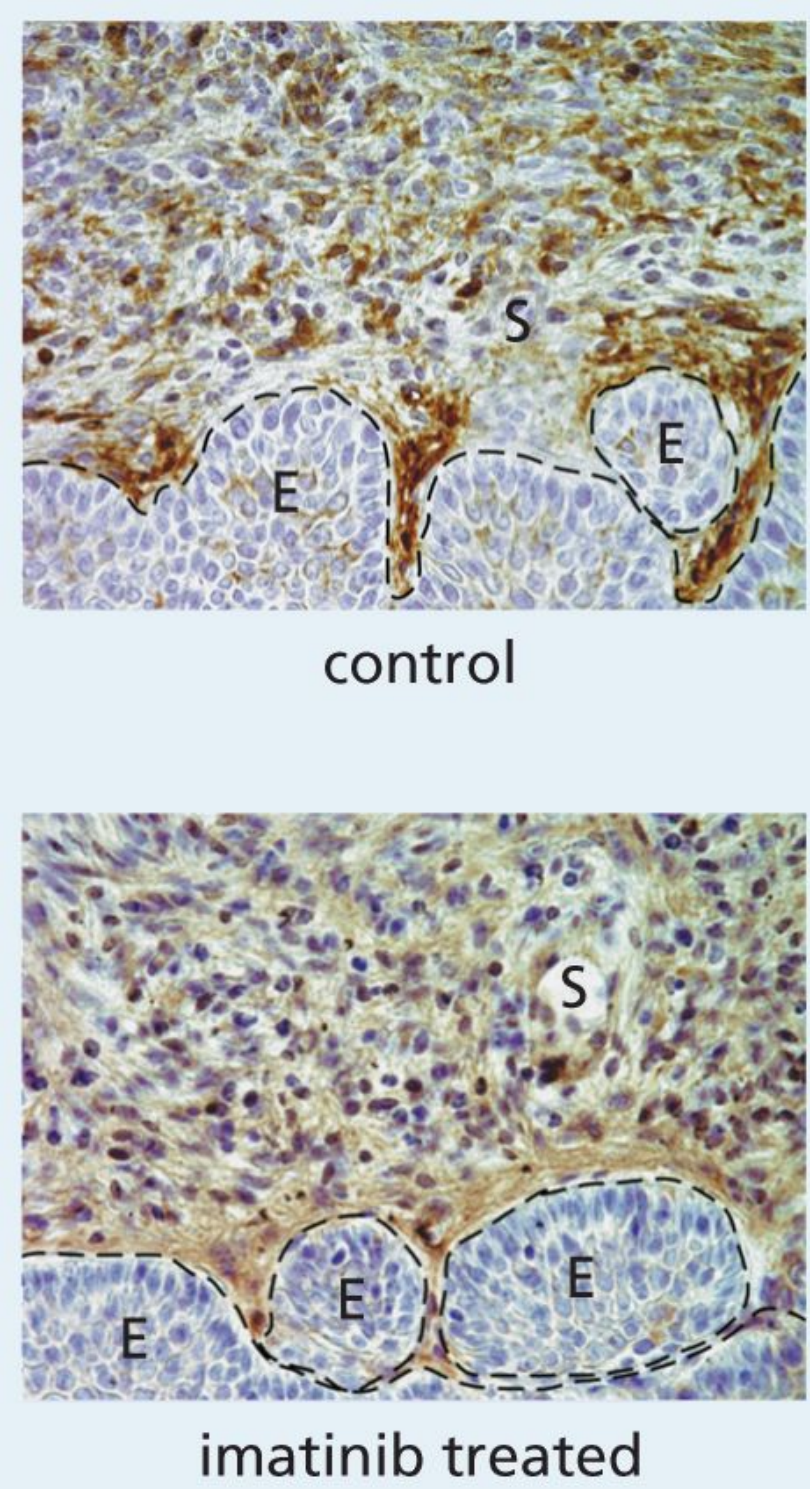
Figure S13.1 Role of PDGF in the recruitment of pericytes to capillaries (A) Normally, the pericytes (*yellow, green*) are tightly attached to capillaries (*red, upper panel*). However, in one strain of mice, the gene encoding PDGF-B has been altered to encode mutant PDGF-B molecules that cannot attach to the extracellular matrix and therefore diffuse away from the endothelial cells producing this growth factor. As a consequence, the pericytes are no longer attracted to the endothelial cells and lack intimate contact with the capillary tubes (*arrows, lower panels*). (B) This close juxtaposition of pericytes with the capillaries depends on the localization of PDGF-B, which is secreted by endothelial cells (*lighter green tubes*). Normally (*above*), this wild-type (wt) PDGF-B (*dark green*) is trapped immediately adjacent to the endothelial cells in the extracellular matrix (ECM, *brown*), where it serves to attract pericyte precursors (*pink*) that attach themselves (*red*) tightly to the capillary tubes formed by the endothelial cells. However (*below*), if PDGF-B is deprived of the amino acid sequences that normally tether it to the ECM (*purple*), as described in panel A, it diffuses away from the capillary tubes, and any pericytes that are recruited are found scattered at some distance from the capillaries. (A, from A. Abramsson, P. Lindblom and C. Betsholtz, *J. Clin. Invest.* 112:1142–1151, 2003. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation.)

Supplementary Sidebar 13.2 Heterotypic signaling in carcinomas is an ongoing process

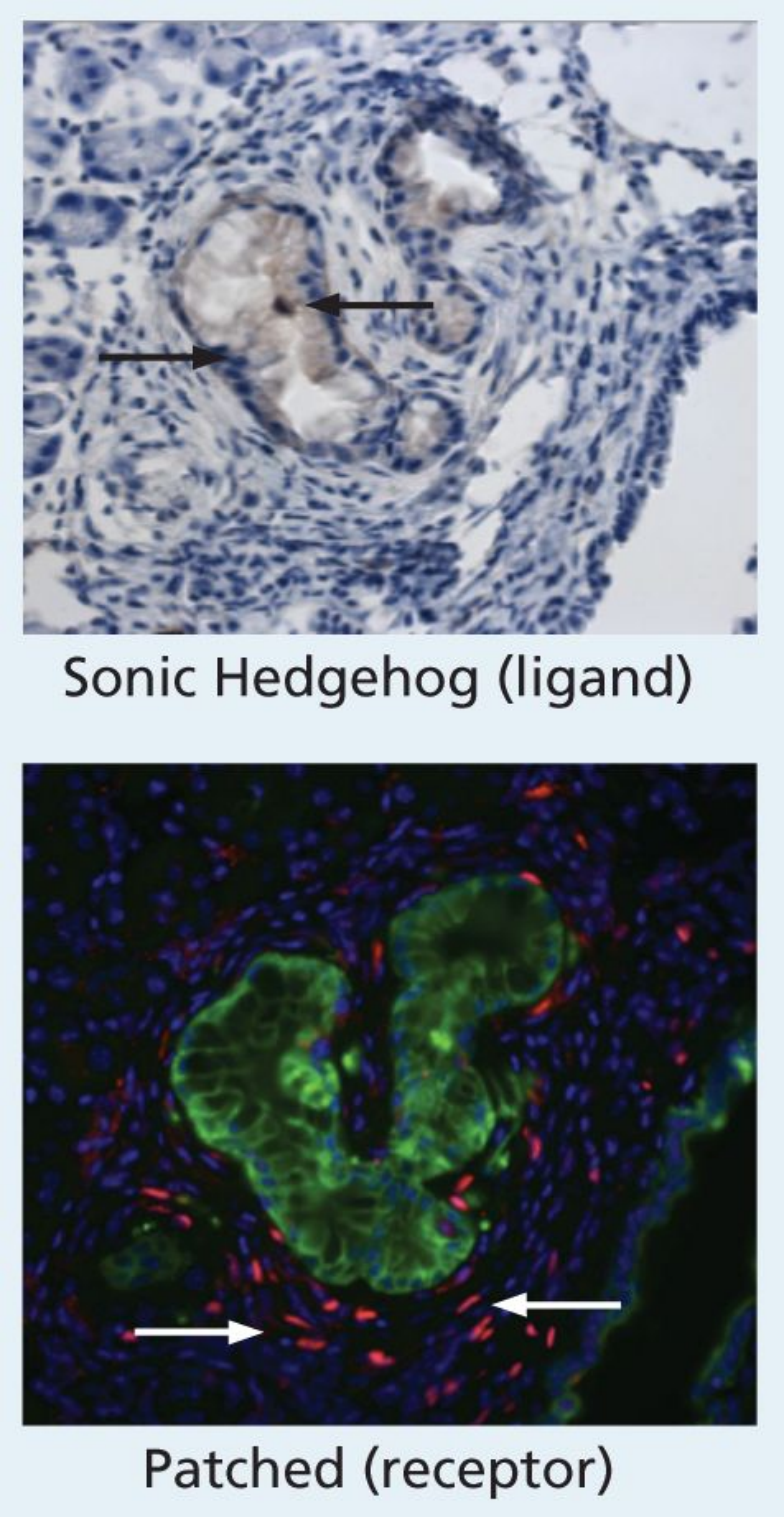
A variety of heterotypic signaling channels have been described in carcinomas involving signaling from the neoplastic epithelial cells to various cellular components of the stroma and in the reverse direction from stroma to the epithelial cells. Three examples are given in **Figure S13.2**.



(A)



(B)



(C)

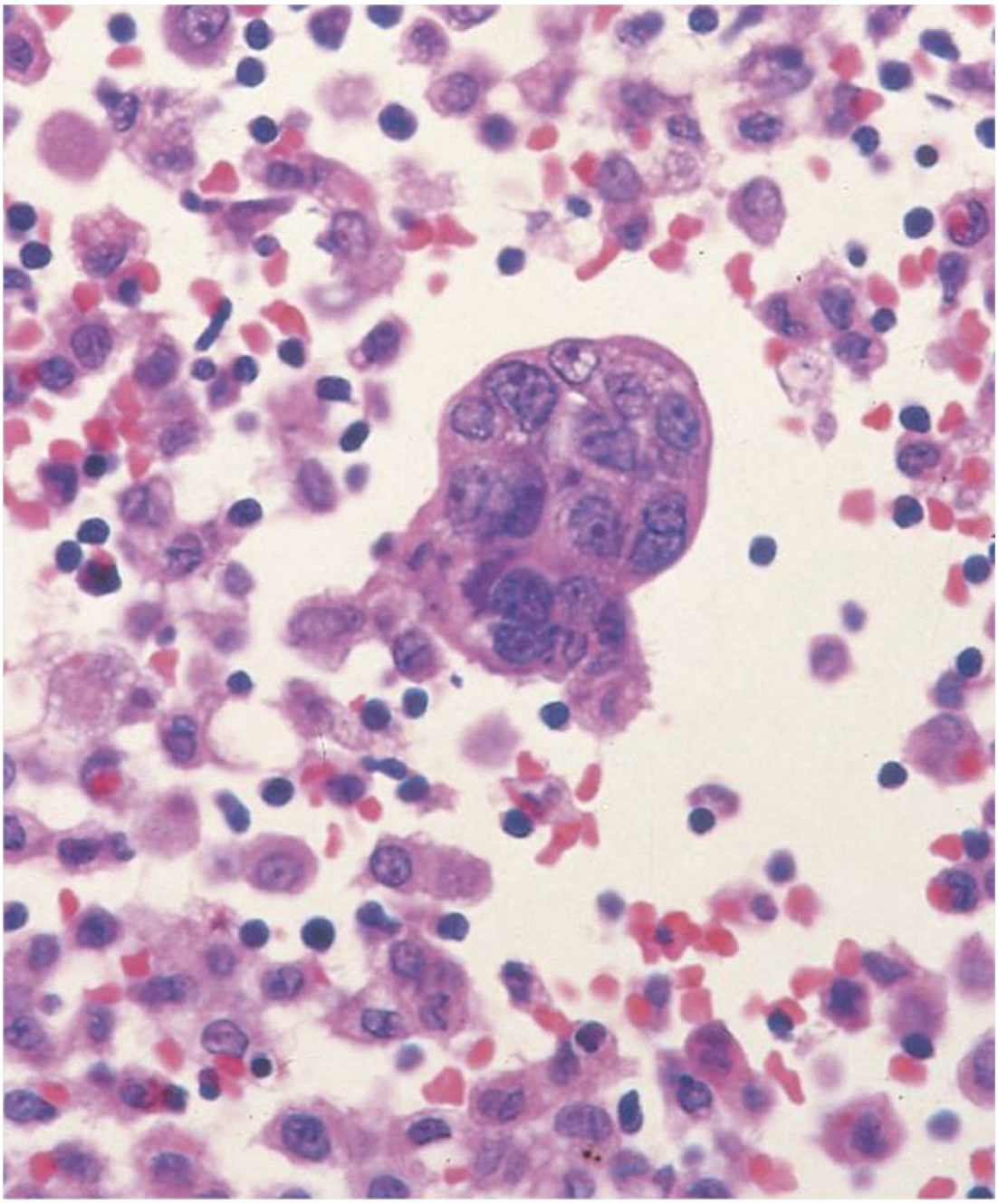
Figure S13.2 Heterotypic signaling between epithelium and stroma in carcinomas A variety of heterotypic signaling axes have been documented in

carcinomas in which the cells in one cell layer release a signaling ligand, while the cells in an adjacent cell layer display the cognate receptor, allowing them to respond to the released ligand. (A) In a mouse model of cervical carcinoma pathogenesis, the PDGF-CC ligand (*light brown*) is made by islands of carcinoma cells (T) and is absent from the surrounding stroma (S) (*upper panel*). Conversely, the cognate receptor—PDGF-Rα (*red*)—is displayed by the stromal cells (*lower panel*). (B) Binding of PDGF-CC by the stromal PDGF-Rα enables the stromal cells (S) to respond to PDGF *(not shown)* released by nearby carcinoma cells (E), doing so by secreting FGF-2 (*upper panel*, *brown*); the latter then signals back to and stimulates the epithelial carcinoma cells. When PDGF-R signaling is blocked in the stromal cells by treatment with imatinib/Gleevec (*lower panel*), production of FGF2 by the stromal fibroblasts is significantly attenuated. (C) In a mouse model of pancreatic carcinoma development, the Shh Hedgehog ligand (*upper panel*) is made by the pancreatic epithelial cells surrounding the ducts within the tumor (*light brown, arrows*), while cells in the stroma (*lower panel*) express the cognate Patched receptor (*red, arrows*). The ductal epithelial cells express a cytokeratin (*green*). (A and B, from K. Pietras et al., *PLoS Med.* 5:e19, 2008. © 2008 Pietras et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License. C, from H. Tian et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 106:4254–4259, 2009. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

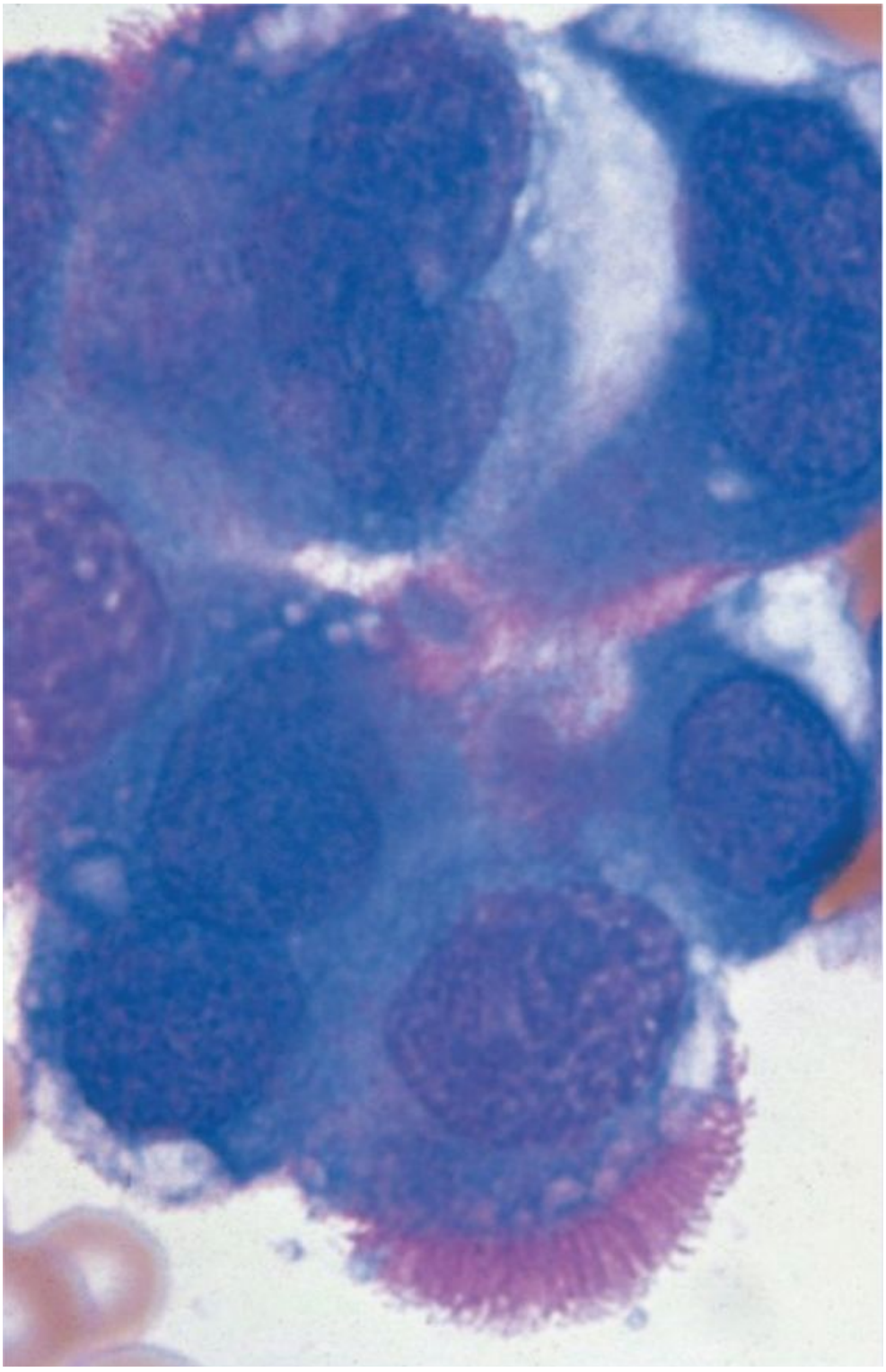
Supplementary Sidebar 13.3 Certain highly advanced tumors provide exceptions to the generally observed dependence of carcinoma cells on stroma

The cells in a small subset of carcinomas have evolved so far *in vivo* that they no longer require stromal support. Examples are provided by pleural and peritoneal effusions, that is, cancer cells that have left the primary solid tumor mass and acquired the ability to grow, essentially in suspension, in pleural fluid around the lung (**Figure S13.3A**) or in ascitic fluid in the abdominal cavity; the formation and accumulation of these fluids is driven in both cases by the cancer cells (Figure S13.3B). In these cases, there is no question that the cancer cells have become completely independent of direct support by other nearby cell types and instead seem to require only nutrients (and possibly soluble growth factors) for their support. Not unexpectedly, such highly progressed tumor cells adapt far more readily to tissue culture and have become the progenitors of many of the cancer cell lines used in laboratories. A prominent example here is provided by HeLa cells (see Section 10.2), which have proven to be a boon for the study of the molecular biology of human cells. These cells were readily adapted to tissue culture in 1951 because they derived from an unusually aggressive adenocarcinoma of the cervix that grew in suspension in ascites and has been propagated in culture since that time. Some evidence indicates that such highly

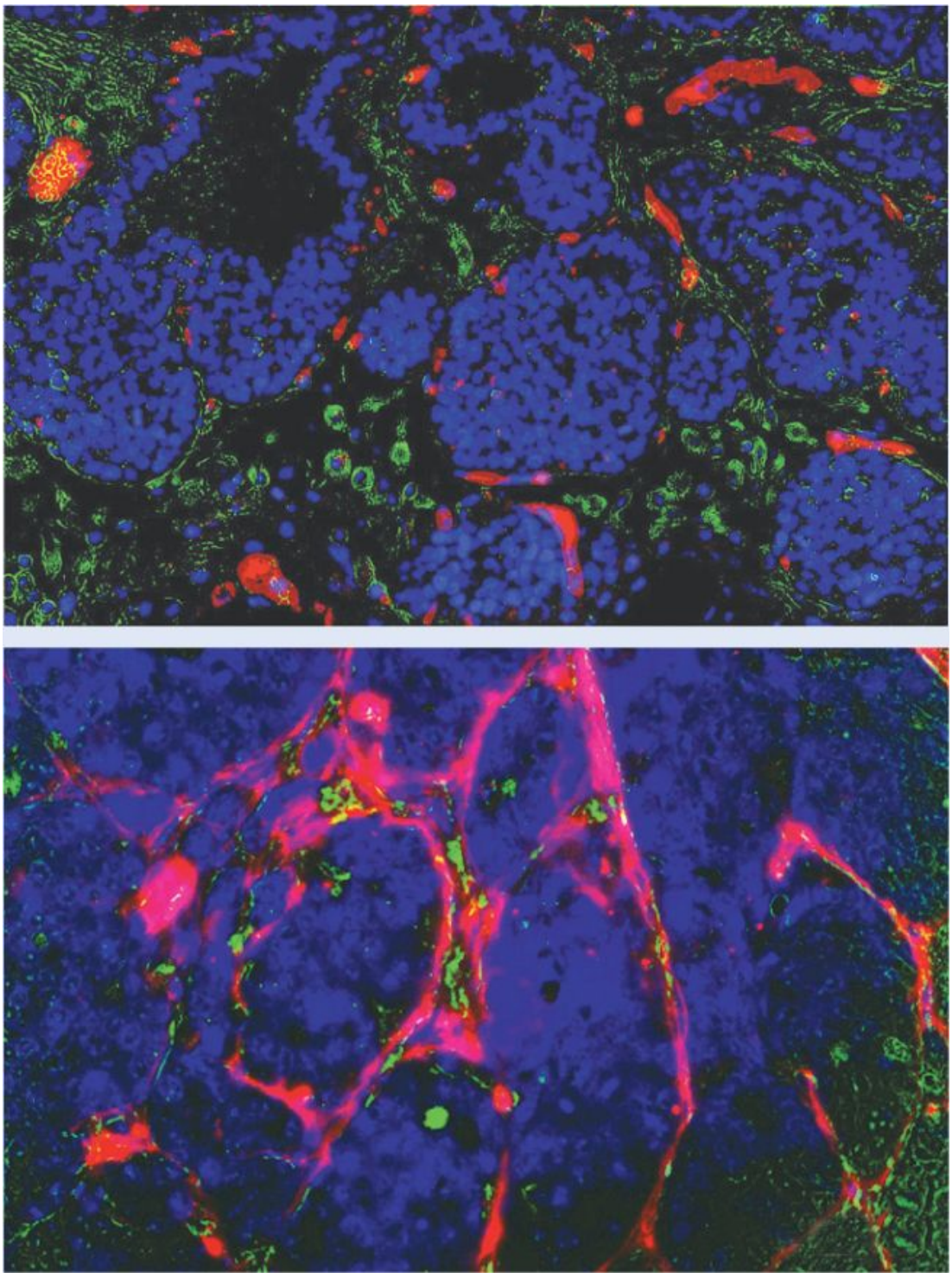
autonomous human tumor cells produce a variety of growth factors to which they can also respond; this enables them to stimulate their own proliferation and survival through autocrine signaling loops. Similarly, in the middle of a carcinoma that has become highly malignant, one can often observe cancer cells that appear to be almost as independent, in that they have virtually no stroma near them, with the exception of the tumor-associated vasculature (see Figure S13.3C).



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S13.3 Independence of cancer cells from stromal support (A) These cancer cells, found in the pleural fluid of a breast cancer patient, are growing essentially in suspension without any apparent contact with a supporting tumor

stroma. Such pleural effusions, or their abdominal counterparts, called ascites, are indications of the most advanced, aggressive stages of many types of solid tumors. A small clump of breast cancer cells is seen in the middle. (B) Ascites are often seen in patients with advanced tumors of abdominal organs, including carcinomas of ovary (*seen here*), pancreas, and colon. The tumor cells are often found growing as single cells or in small clumps in the ascitic fluid and can be best studied by concentrating them by centrifugation prior to examining them under the microscope, as was done here. Like many kinds of highly malignant cancer cells, these have unusually large nuclei. (C) In some solid tumors, such as these mouse mammary carcinomas, one can see sectors toward the periphery (*upper panel*) in which groups of carcinoma cells (*blue nuclei*) are layered between stromal cells, including macrophages (*green*) and those forming the neovasculature (*red*). In the same tumors, however, there are sectors (*lower panel*) where hardly any stroma is apparent besides the cells forming the neovasculature, indicating that the cells in the center have become independent of stromal support except that provided by this neovasculature. (A, courtesy of A. Lukacher. B, from A.T. Skarin, Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier. C, courtesy of E.Y. Lin and J.W. Pollard.)

Supplementary Sidebar 13.4 Heterotypic signals provoke an EMT

The descriptions of the signals that induce activation of an EMT program in epithelial cells, as described in Figure 13.15, only begin to reveal the complexity of the heterotypic signals that converge on epithelial cells in various physiological situations. A more thorough accounting is provided by the diagram of **Figure S13.4**. This diagram indicates that a variety of signals released by various cell types participating in wound healing and, by extension, in the progression of carcinomas, converge on an epithelial cell and conspire with one another in various combinations to induce an EMT.

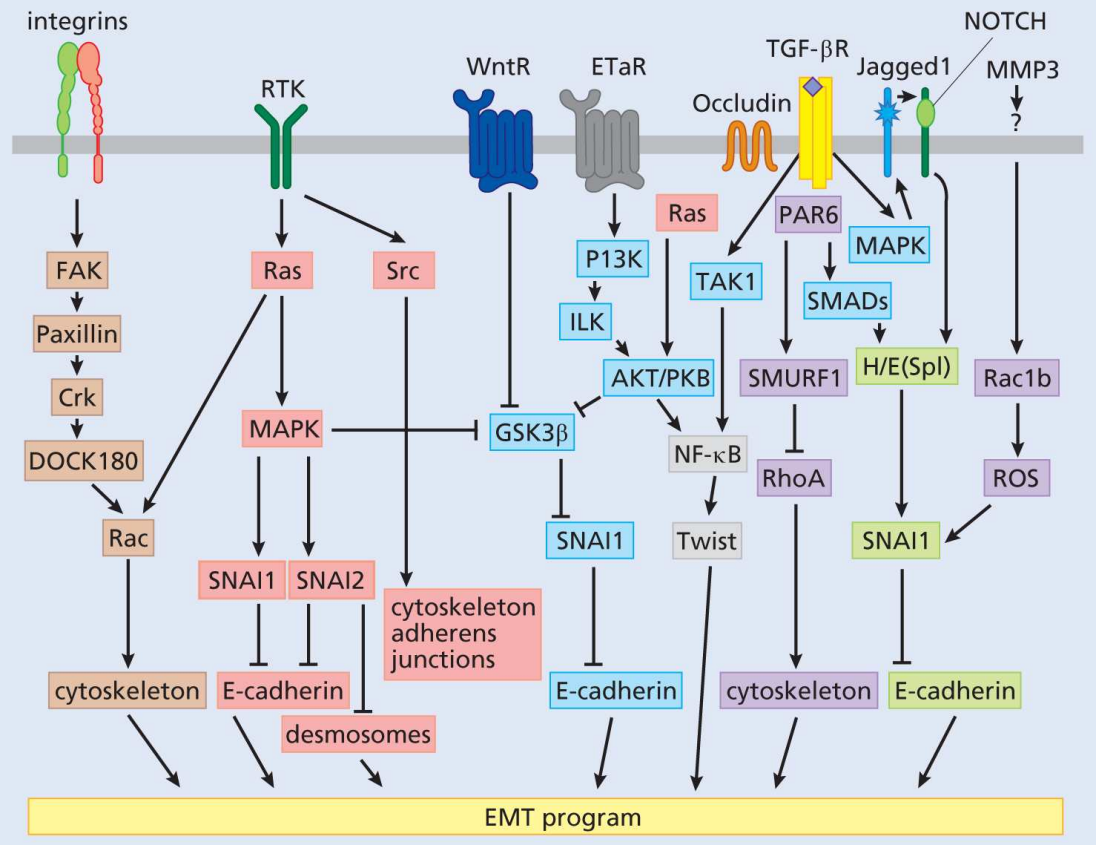
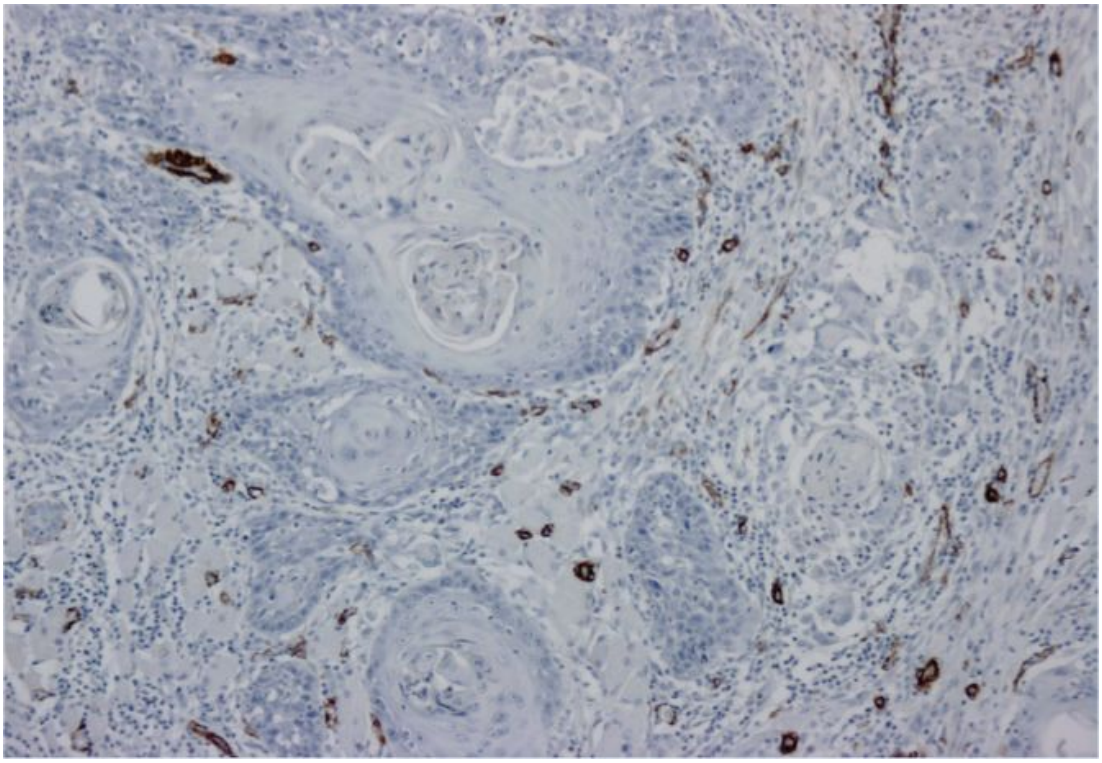


Figure S13.4 Cellular circuitry operating to trigger an EMT A diverse array of heterotypic signals converge on individual epithelial cells to induce an EMT in the latter. At present it is unclear which of these heterotypic signals and in which combinations are required in various biological situations and locations to induce expression of an EMT program. (From J.P. Thiery and J.P. Sleeman, *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 7, 131–142, 2006. With permission from Nature.)

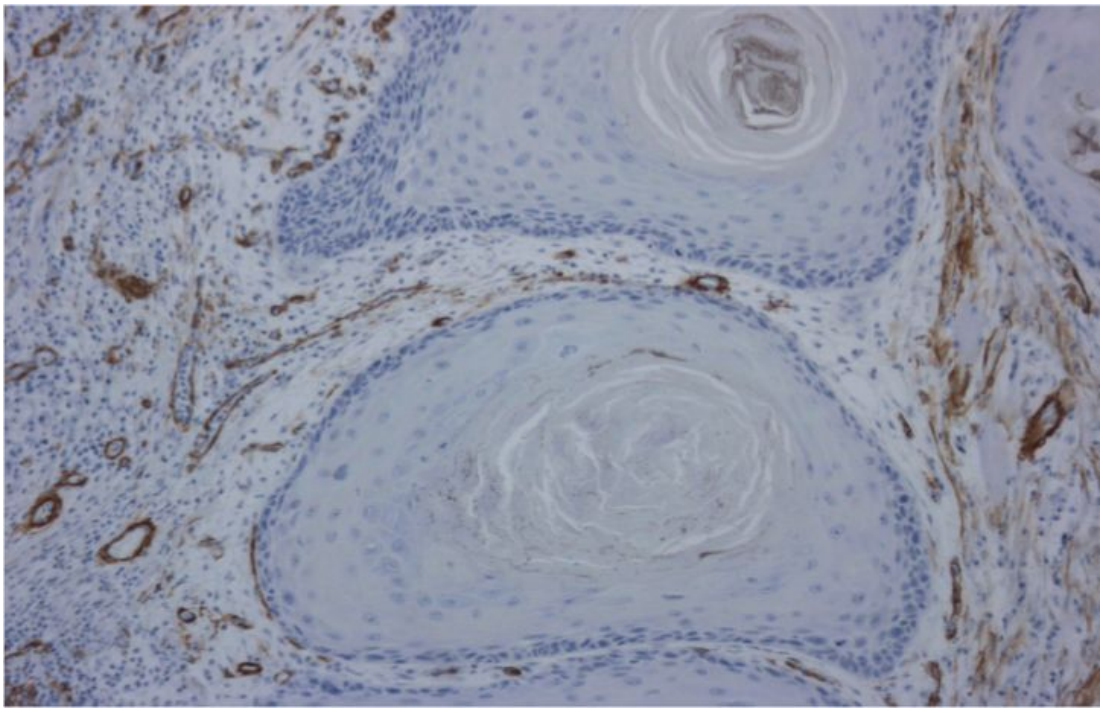
Supplementary Sidebar 13.5 Myofibroblasts predict clinical progression of cancer

A strong correlation can be observed between the predicted survival of a cancer patient and the content of myofibroblasts in the patient's tumor. As seen in this example of patients bearing squamous cell carcinomas of the mobile portion of the tongue (**Figure S13.5**), an increasing content of myofibroblasts in the stroma correlates with an increase in the rapidity with which these carcinomas progress to a fatal endpoint. Another study of oral carcinomas, published in the same year, reported that the most powerful prognostic marker for rapid progression to fatal disease could be found not in the islands of carcinoma cells but in the tumor-associated stroma, specifically in the quantity of α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA)–positive myofibroblasts; their presence in high numbers generated a greater than threefold increased risk of death, independent

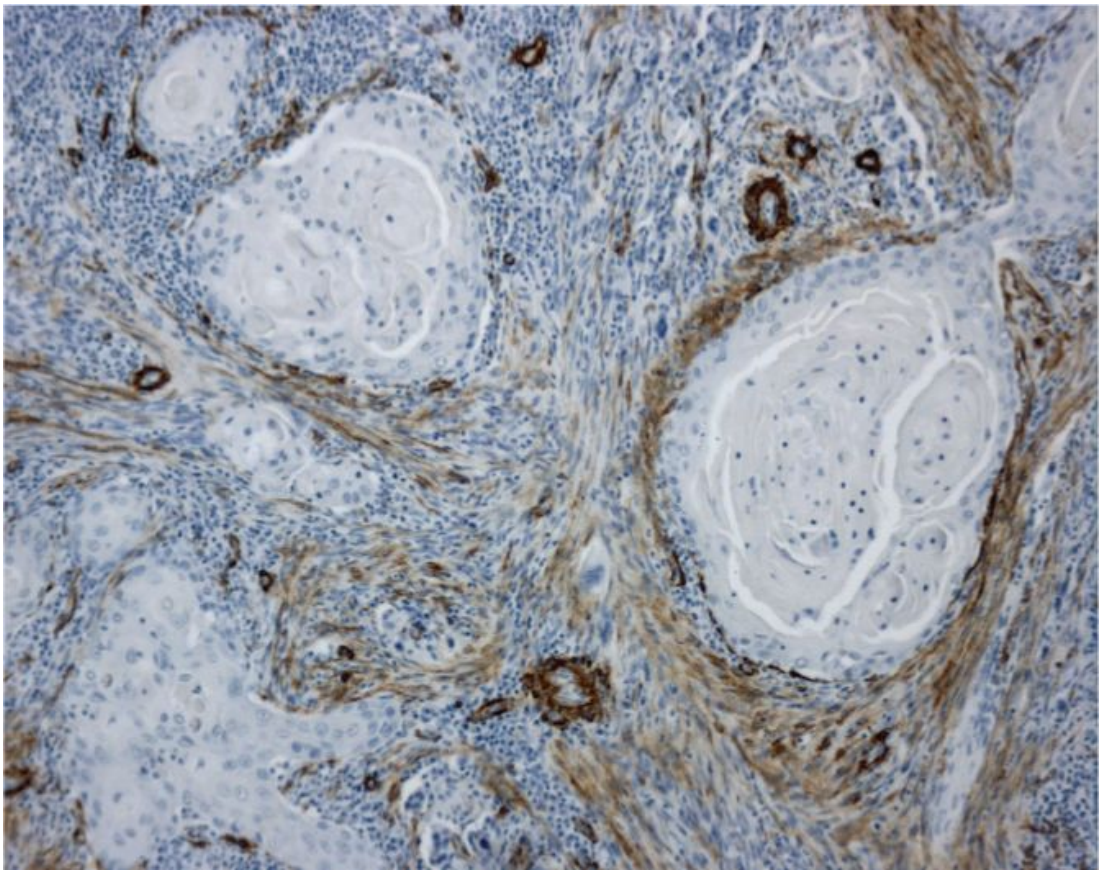
of other histopathological criteria. Importantly, the data from both studies represent correlations and thus do not on their own prove that myofibroblasts actually serve as causal forces driving tumor progression forward.



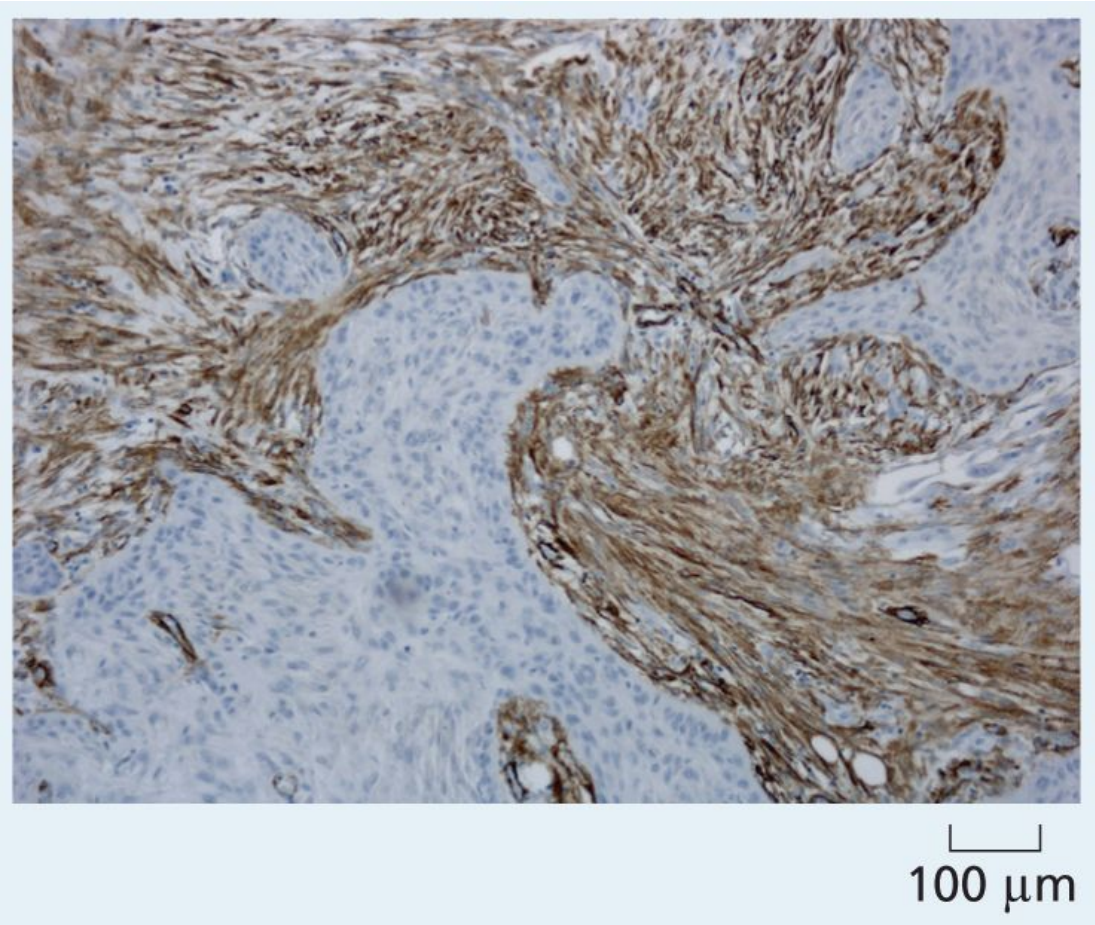
(A)



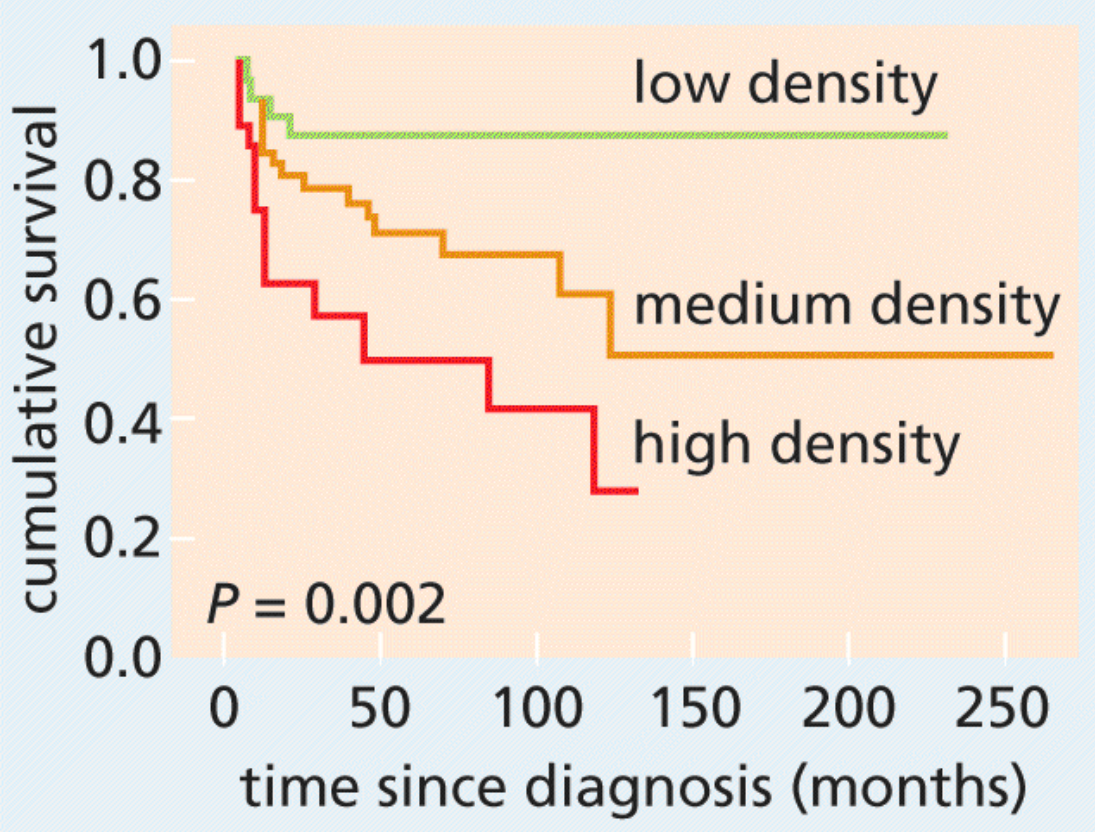
(B)



(C)



(D)



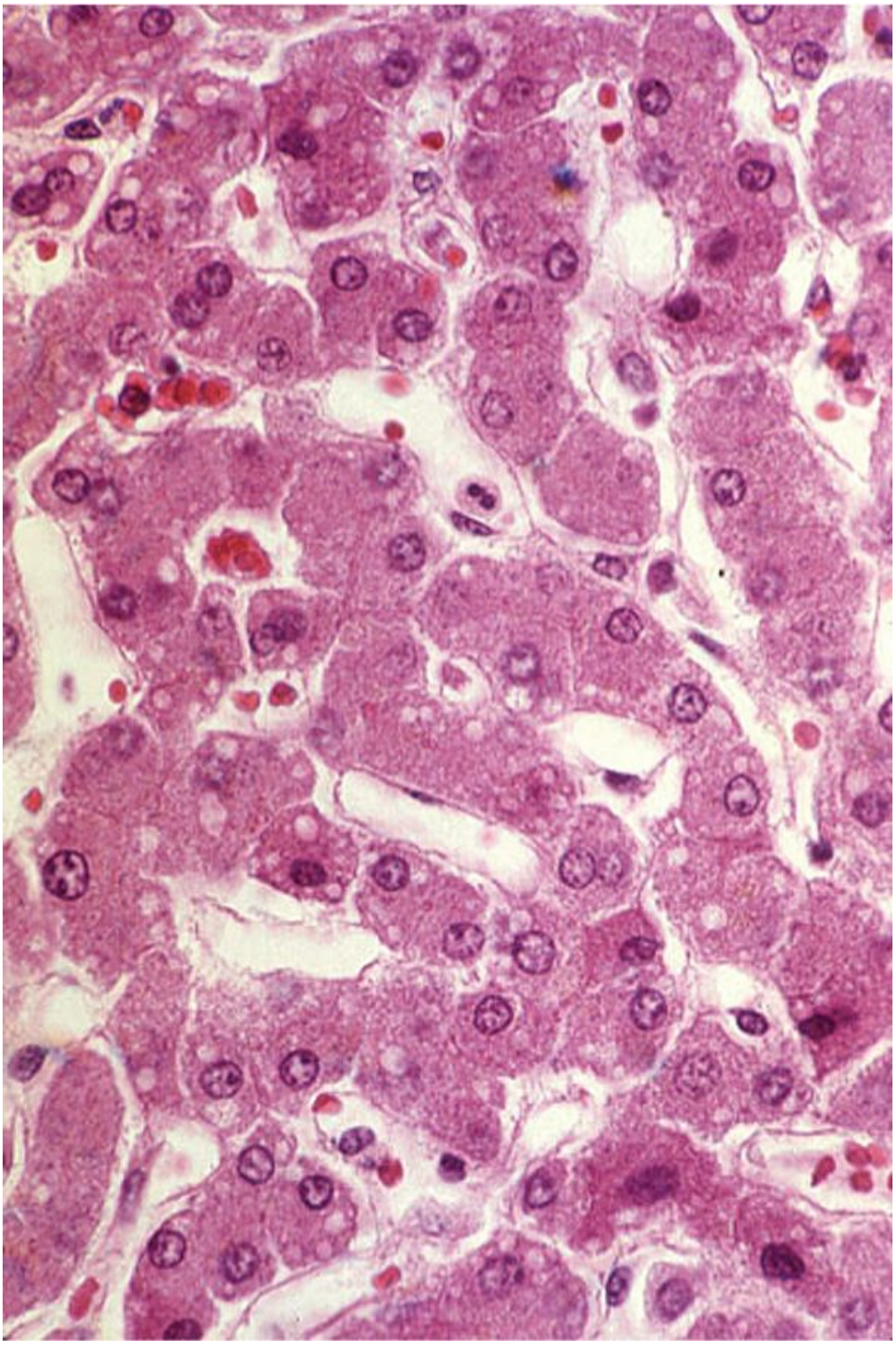
(E)

Figure S13.5 Content of myofibroblasts and clinical prognosis One strategy for determining prognosis—in this case long-term survival of a cancer patient—comes from measuring the content of α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA)–containing myofibroblasts in the tumor-associated stroma. This measurement provides striking correlations between the content of these cells in the stroma and the rapidity of tumor progression. In these squamous cell carcinomas of the mobile portion of the tongue, different densities of α-SMA–containing myofibroblasts can be observed: (A) low, (B and C) medium, and (D) high densities. (E) The densities of stromal myofibroblasts have been correlated with the proportion of patients surviving for various times after initial diagnosis. These data provide compelling evidence of the inverse relationship between stromal myofibroblast density and survival time of patients. (A–D, from I.O. Bello et al., *Oral Oncol.* 47:33–38, 2011. With permission from Elsevier.)

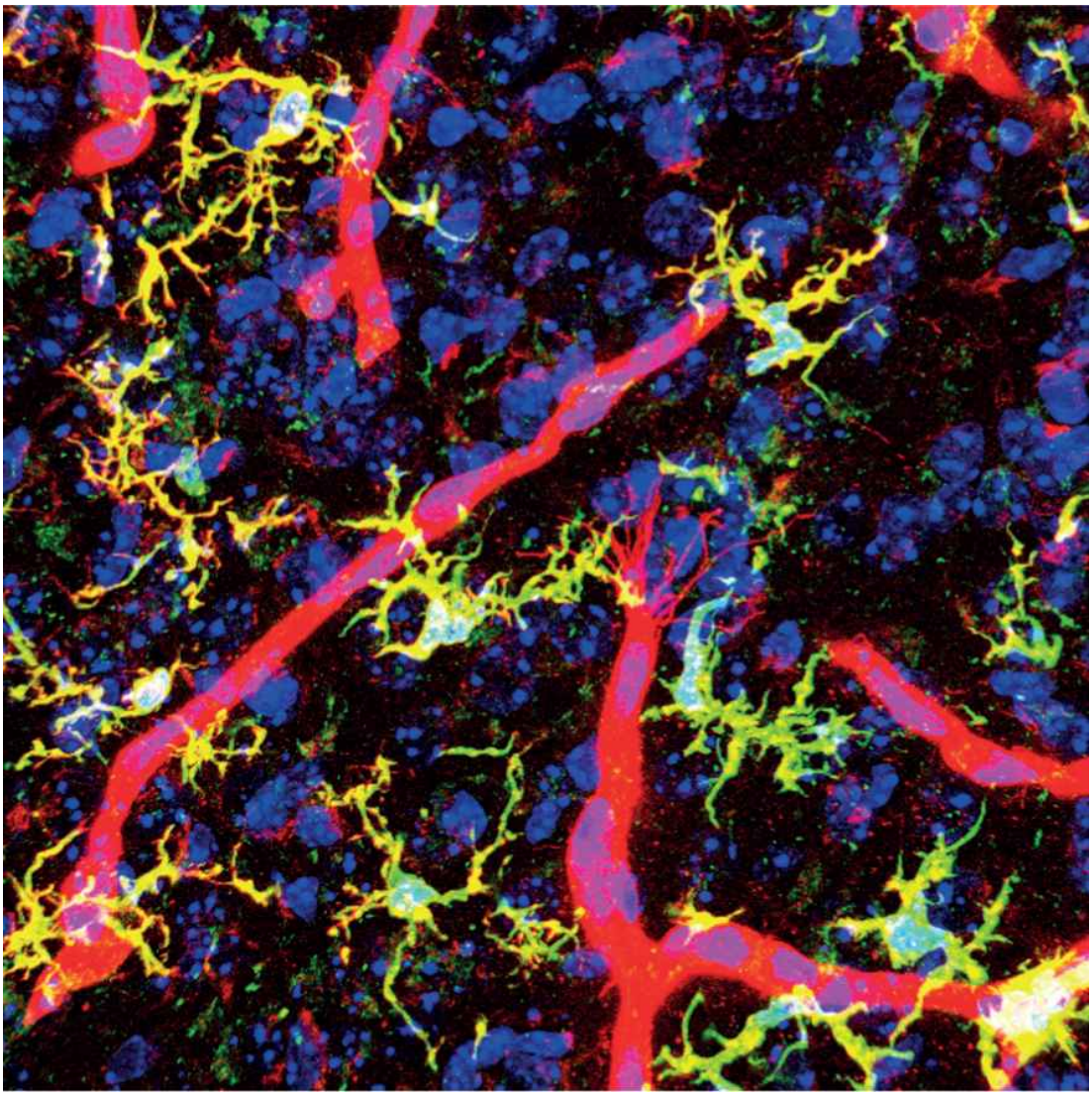
Supplementary Sidebar 13.6 Alternative mechanisms incite neoangiogenesis

Hypoxia is only one price that cells lacking close proximity to the circulatory system pay. Cells also require effective interactions with the vasculature in order to acquire

nutrients and to shed metabolic waste products and carbon dioxide. The capillary networks threading their way through many normal tissues are arrayed so densely that virtually all cells in a tissue are no more than several cell diameters away from the nearest capillary (**Figure S13.6**). In some normal tissues with an especially high metabolic activity, most cells enjoy direct contact with at least one capillary. This intimate association ensures that their access to oxygen and critical nutrients does not depend on the diffusion of these molecules over longer distances and through densely packed cell layers.



(A)



(B)

Figure S13.6 Dense microvasculature in normal liver and muscle Because of high metabolic rates, certain tissues develop an extremely high density of capillaries, ensuring almost every cell direct contact with endothelial cells and the capillaries that they form. (A) Virtually every hepatocyte in the liver is adjacent to a space, termed a *sinusoid*, that is lined with endothelial cells and serves as a capillary. (B) In the developing mouse brain, microglia (*yellow*) are seen to be closely juxtaposed with mature and growing capillaries (*pink*). Yet other nearby cell types are indicated by their DAPI-stained nuclei (*blue*). (A, courtesy of Loyola University Medical Education Network. B, from Wälchli, T., Mateos, J., Weinman, O. *et al*. Quantitative assessment of angiogenesis, perfused blood vessels and endothelial tip cells in the postnatal mouse brain. *Nat Protoc* 10, 53-74 (2015). With permission from Nature.)

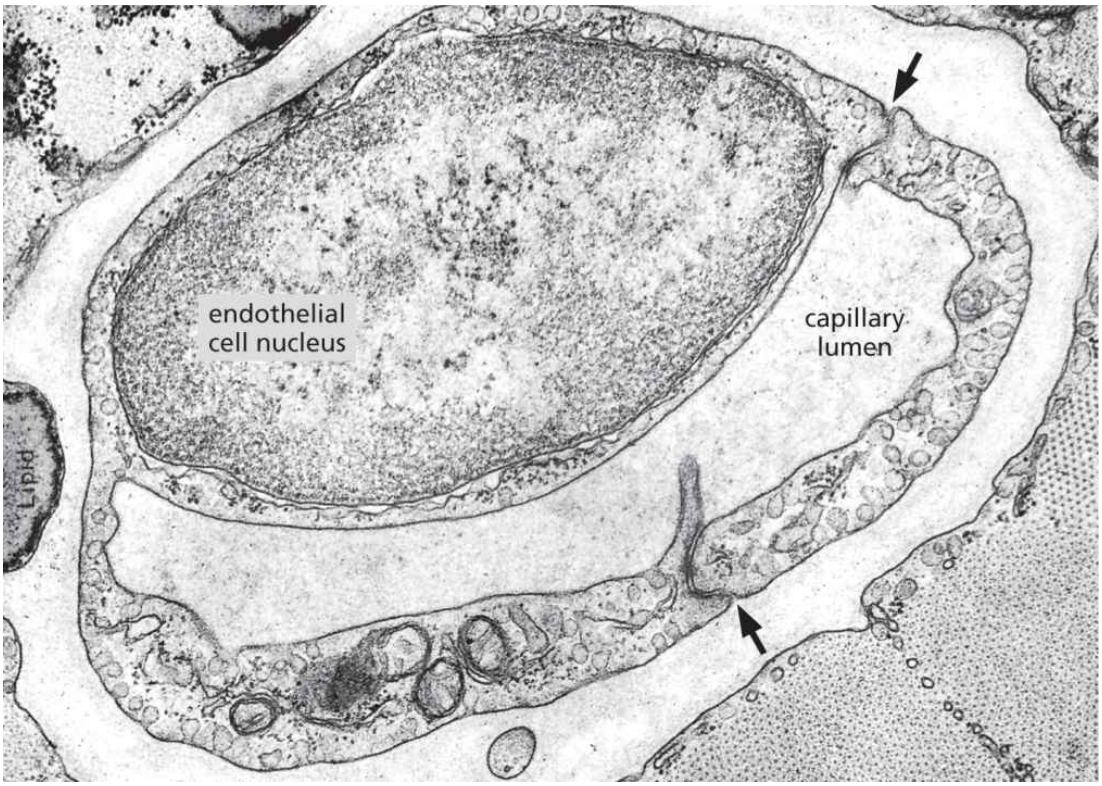
These observations illustrate the central importance of the vasculature to the growth and survival of all types of tissue, normal and neoplastic. The process of developing this vasculature through angiogenesis (the outgrowth via sprouting of new blood vessels from existing ones) can be observed during embryonic development, implantation of the placenta, wound healing, and certain pathological conditions such as diabetic retinopathy, psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, and, of course, tumorigenesis.

During embryonic development, the overall size and architecture of an organ or tissue is genetically programmed, but the precise locations of its individual component cells are not. This organization applies as well to the vasculature: the genome determines the overall layout of the major vessels and delegates to the individual cells within a tissue the task of designing and assembling local capillary networks and slightly larger vessels. Heterotypic interactions operating over short distances determine the routing of individual capillaries constituting the microvasculature. More specifically, capillaries appear to form wherever they are needed by the nonvascular (that is, parenchymal) cells in a tissue.

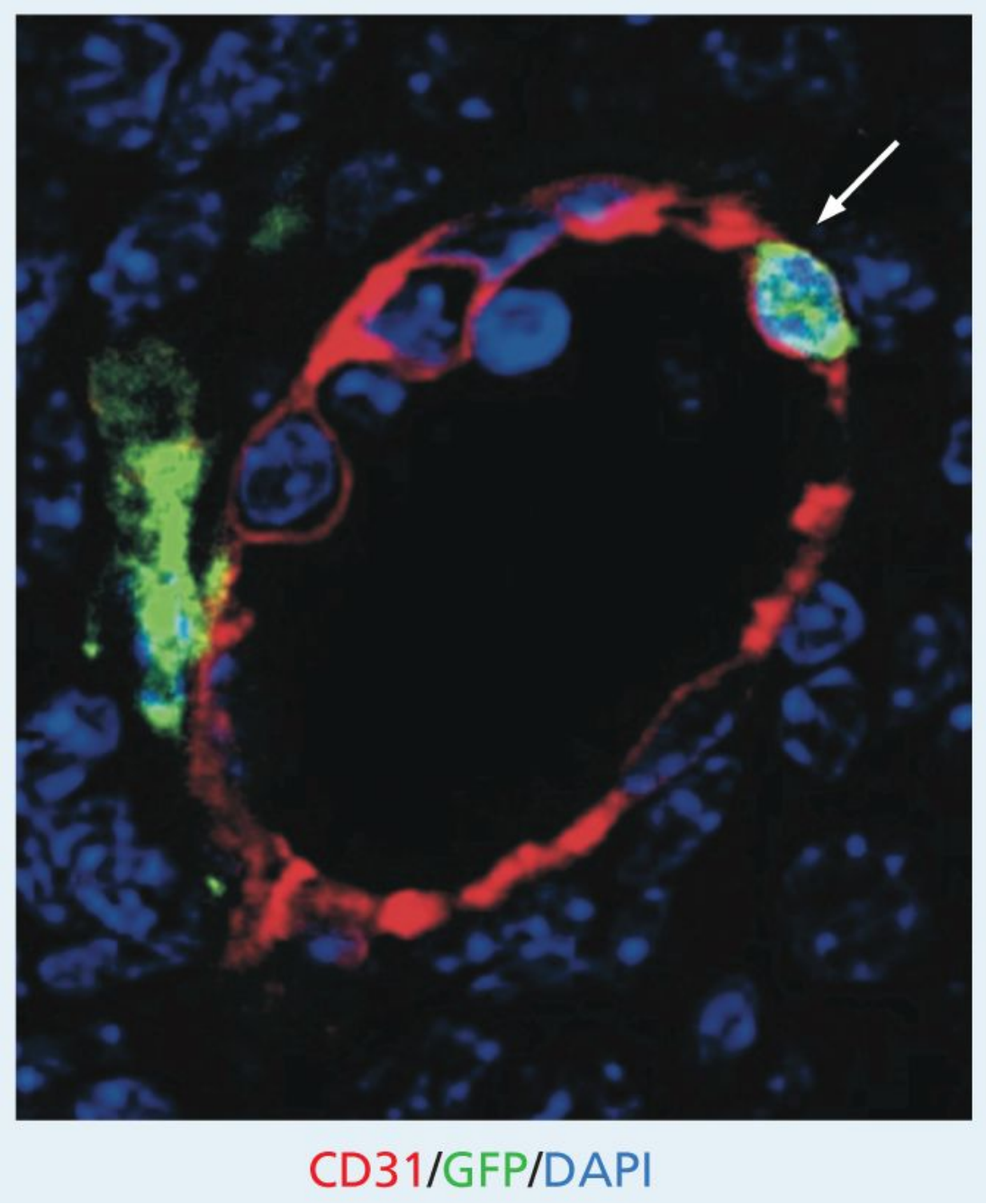
A variant of this plan operates during tumorigenesis. The overall architecture of individual tumors cannot be determined by the genome of an organism, because each tumor that arises is a novel invention whose design is not anticipated by the genome. This fact has implications for tumor angiogenesis as well: tumors cannot rely on some genetic blueprint to aid them in configuring their blood supply and must, instead, design the layout of their own vasculature, doing so step by step as they grow. In particular, when assembling their own blood supply, tumors depend completely on the localized heterotypic interactions between the cells of the vasculature (including endothelial cells, pericytes, and smooth muscle cells) and the individual nonvascular cells in tumors (including the neoplastic cells and the other cell types of the supporting stroma).

Many types of cells continuously take stock of their own intracellular oxygen tension through the actions of the VHL tumor suppressor protein and its partners. Under conditions of hypoxia, this complex of proteins permits functional HIF-1α and -1β transcription factors to accumulate, which in turn drives the expression of a number of genes whose products encourage angiogenesis. (In addition, low pH and signaling by the RTK–PI3K–Akt/PKB pathway can activate HIF-1–dependent signals, doing so in a fashion that is independent of oxygen tension.) Prominent among the HIF-1–induced gene products is VEGF. Synthesis of this key angiogenic factor has been associated with tumor cells, macrophages, and myofibroblasts, depending on the tumor type and its stage of progression. (In fact, there are two structurally related, functionally similar proteins termed VEGF-A and VEGF-B, with VEGF-A being the dominant angiogenic factor in most settings. We use the generic term VEGF to refer to both factors.)

Like many other growth factors, VEGF functions as a ligand of tyrosine kinase receptors—in this case, VEGF receptor-1 (also termed Flt-1) and VEGF receptor-2 (known also as Flk-1/KDR). Both are displayed on the surfaces of endothelial cells. Similarly, basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), another important angiogenic factor, binds to its own cognate receptors displayed by endothelial cells. Once stimulated by these angiogenic factors, the endothelial cells proliferate and contort their cytoplasms to construct the cylindrical walls of capillaries (**Figure S13.7**). These capillaries also penetrate existing cell layers, moving toward the highest localized concentration of angiogenic factors.



(A)



(B)

Figure S13.7 Endothelial cells and the formation of capillaries (A) This transmission electron micrograph reveals the cross section through a capillary in the midst of cardiac muscle and shows how the cytoplasms of two endothelial cells have become joined (*arrows*) to form the lumen of a capillary. The tight sealing of the plasma membranes of adjacent endothelial cells to one another results in capillary tubes whose walls are continuous and without gaps. The

nucleus of one of the endothelial cells is also seen here. (A pericyte coating the outside surface of a capillary can be seen in Figure 13.8A.) (B) Early in the formation of many tumors, the bulk of the endothelial cells derive from endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) that are acquired via the circulation from the bone marrow and differentiate within the tumor stroma. In the experiment illustrated here, a mouse was lethally irradiated and then rescued by engrafting GFP^+ hematopoietic stem cells, resulting in an almost-complete replacement of its bone marrow cells by donor green fluorescent protein (GFP)-labeled cells. Seen here is a capillary growing within a Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC) that was subsequently implanted in this mouse. The endothelial cells are indicated by the CD31 endothelial-specific marker (*red*). This capillary also contains a GFP^+ cell (*green*, *arrow*), demonstrating the bone marrow origin of this particular endothelial cell. Nuclei are stained with DAPI (*blue*). As the tumor grows, an increasing proportion of the endothelial cells derive via the proliferation of local endothelial cells rather than from EPCs originating in the bone marrow. (A, from D.W. Fawcett, *J. Histochem. Cytochem.* 13:75–91, 1965. With permission from SAGE. B, from D.J. Nolan et al., *Genes Dev.* 21:1546–1558, 2007. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Interestingly, early in the formation of certain experimental tumors, many of the endothelial cells forming the capillaries in the tumor-associated stroma derive from the circulating endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) cited earlier, which originate in the bone marrow and are then induced to settle in the tumor stroma and differentiate (see Figure 13.23). However, as tumor growth continues, an increasing proportion of the capillaries are assembled from endothelial cells that are already residing locally within the tumor stroma. These EPCs are only one of several distinct hematopoietic cell types that are recruited from bone marrow and contribute to various aspects of tumor angiogenesis in the tumor stroma.

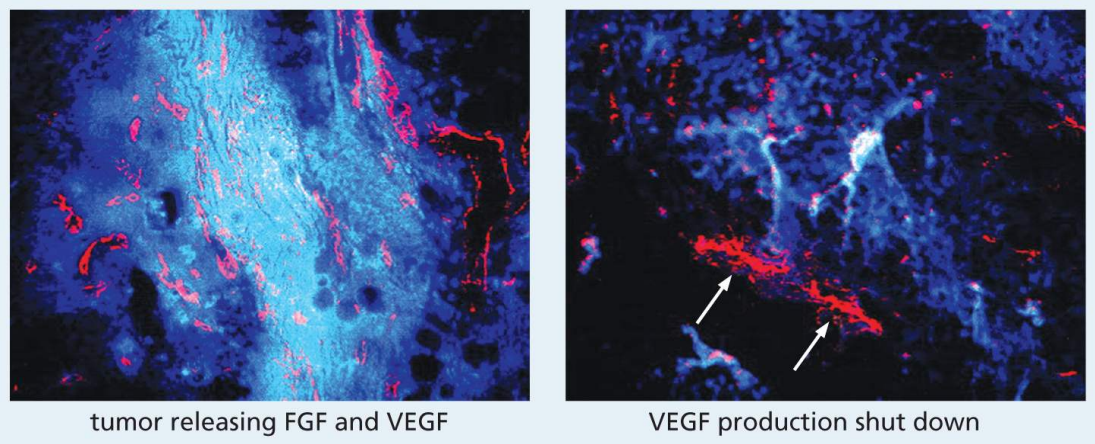
In addition, similar mechanisms appear to operate during the formation of lymphatic vessels. As we will see later in this chapter, lymph ducts are important regulators of fluid balance in the tumor stroma. In Chapter 14, they assume great importance, because they provide avenues for cancer cells to escape primary tumors and disseminate to distant sites in the body.

Supplementary Sidebar 13.7 Microvessel leakiness dooms many forms of anti-cancer therapy: optimizing anti-angiogenic VEGF-neutralizing treatment was discovered as a factor that promoted blood vessel permeability and initially was termed vascular permeability factor (VPF)

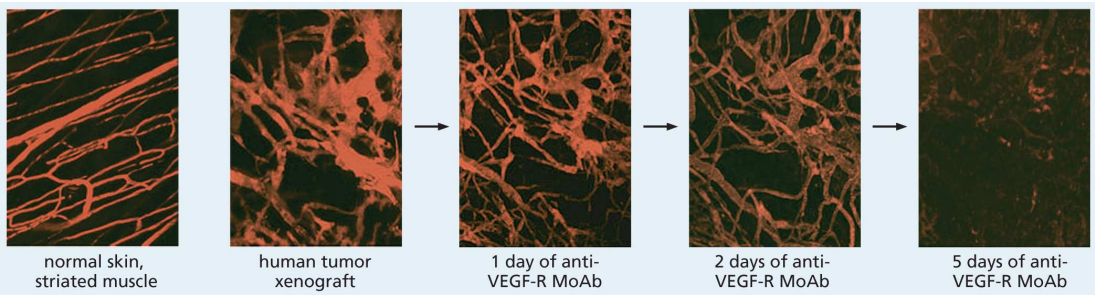
When an antibody that neutralizes VEGF is introduced into the circulation of a tumor-bearing mouse, the permeability of the tumor-associated capillaries is substantially reduced, demonstrating that the deregulated production of VEGF within tumors is responsible for much of the pathological leaking of plasma-derived water into the tumor parenchyma. This leaking causes much of the elevated hydrostatic pressure within the *interstitial* fluids of a tumor parenchyma, that is, the fluids lying between the nonvascular cells in the tumor parenchyma.

In normal tissues, the fluid pressure in the interstitial spaces is 0.4 mmHg or less, but in tumors, this pressure may reach 20 mmHg and occasionally far more. This means that the steep pressure gradient that normally operates between the lumen of a blood vessel (20 to 25 mmHg) and the surrounding parenchyma (0.4 mmHg) is absent in most solid tumors. Consequently, the introduction of low–molecular-weight drugs into tumor masses via the circulation becomes very difficult, because these molecules remain in the circulation rather than riding with surrounding water molecules down pressure gradients into the extravascular spaces. This likely explains at least some of the difficulties that have bedeviled almost all attempts to develop effective drug therapies for solid tumors; these therapies are usually stymied by the great difficulty of delivering drugs in significant concentrations to the cancer cells within the parenchyma of solid tumors.

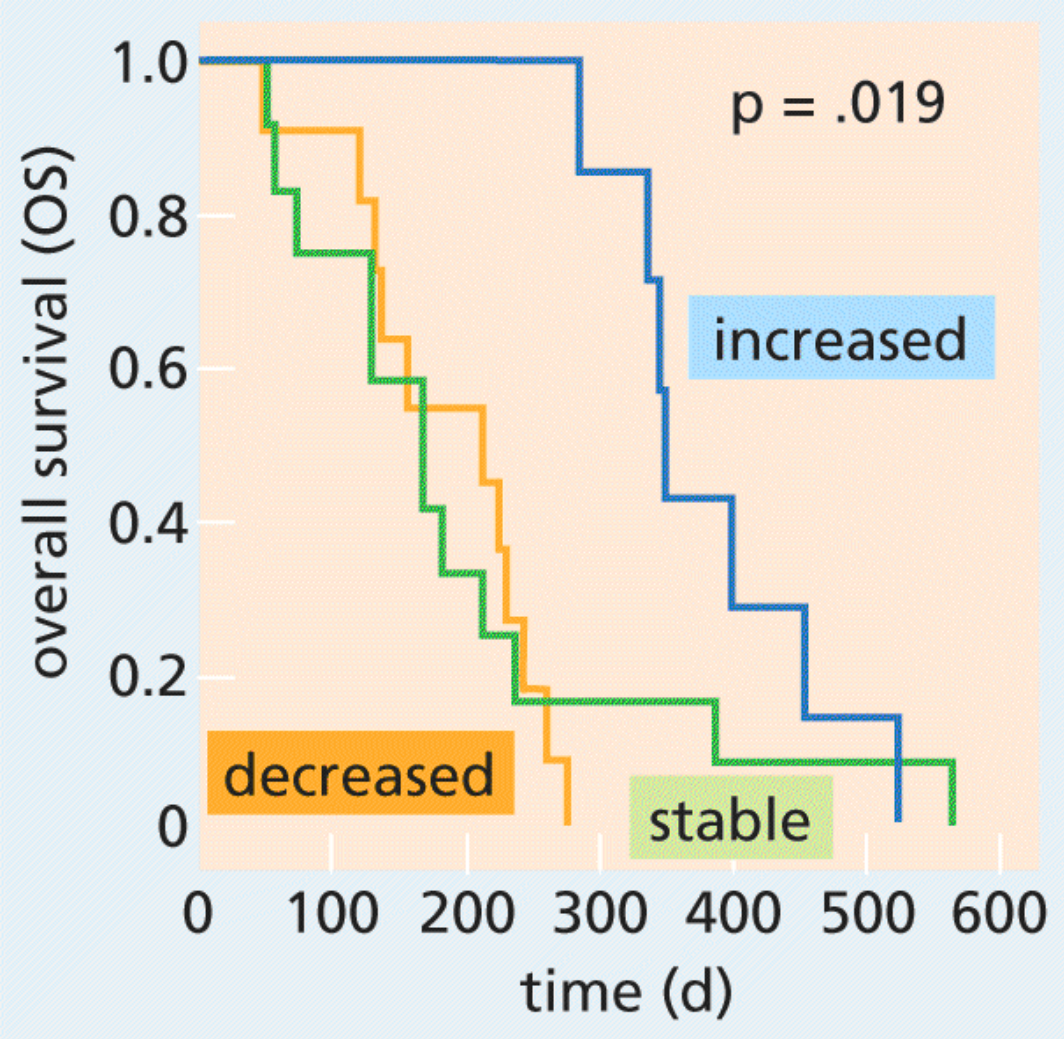
These difficulties have inspired a new form of anti-tumor therapy in which anti-angiogenic agents are given to *normalize* the tumor-associated vasculature. Shutdown of VEGF production by tumor cells, using antisense RNA directed against the VEGF mRNA, results in a dramatic decrease in capillary permeability (**Figure S13.8A**). In addition, when an anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody is introduced into a tumor-bearing mouse, the poorly constructed blood vessels in the tumor vasculature are pruned back, returning the vasculature trees to a more normal configuration (Figure S13.8B). This shift also results in a reduction in the interstitial hypertension of the tumor parenchyma and therefore permits far more effective delivery, via the circulation, of therapeutic drugs to the tumor cells. Importantly, an even more intensive (or longer-term) anti-angiogenic therapy is more than likely to be *counterproductive*, because it results in the regression of most of the residual vasculature in a tumor, thereby making drug delivery to the tumor extremely difficult once again (see Figure S13.8B). Moreover, as discussed in Sections 13.5 and 13.11, the local areas of hypoxia that may result from excessive reduction of the tumor microvasculature can induce an increased invasiveness in cancer cells and, quite possibly, metastatic dissemination of cancer cells. Hence, doses and dosing schedules of anti-angiogenic agents must be optimized in order for these agents to serve as effective complements to more conventional chemotherapy.


tumor releasing FGF and VEGF
VEGF production shut down

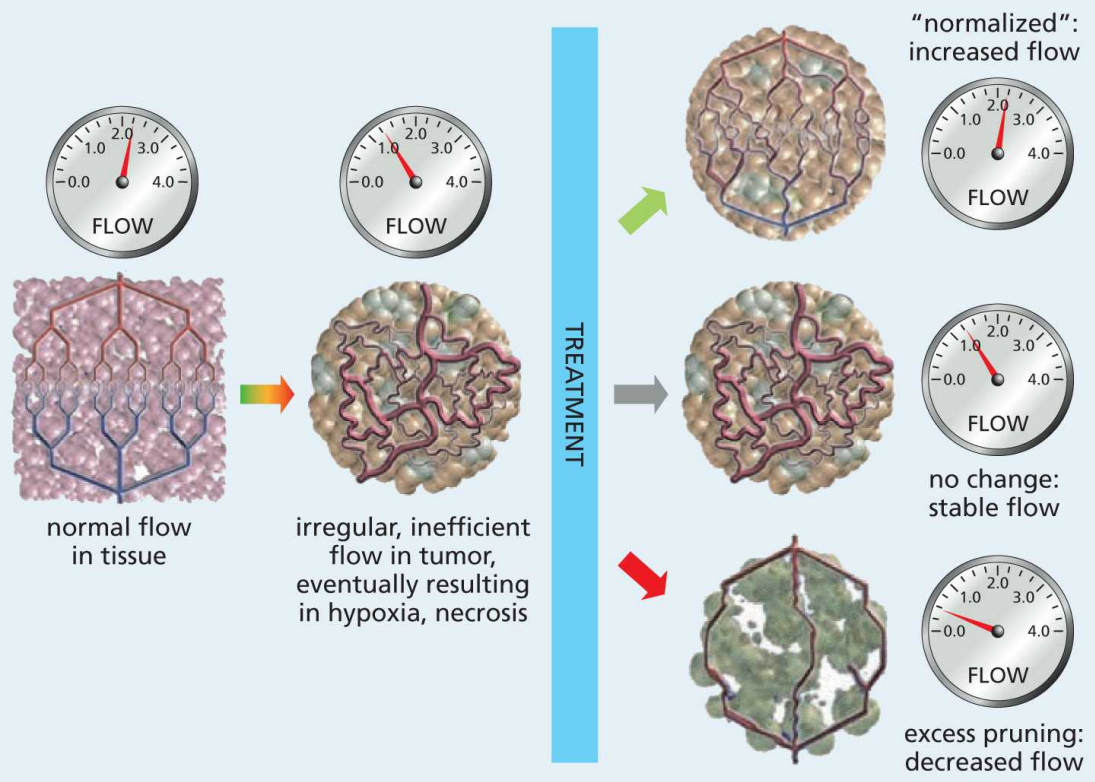
(A)


normal skin,
striated muscle
human tumor
xenograft
1 day of anti-
VEGF-R MoAb
2 days of anti-
VEGF-R MoAb
5 days of anti-
VEGF-R MoAb

(B)


1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
overall survival (OS)
p = .019
increased
decreased
stable
0
100
200
300
400
500
600
time (d)

(C)



(D)

Figure S13.8 Normalization of the tumor-associated vasculature (A) The permeability of tumor vessels was gauged here through the ability of a *light blue* dye, introduced into the circulation 2 minutes before sacrifice of a tumor-bearing mouse, to permeate into and throughout the tumor parenchyma from the circulation (*left panel*). Human endometrial carcinoma cells were constructed that released two angiogenic factors—FGF-2 and VEGF. When FGF-2 expression was shut down, the number of tumor-associated vessels decreased greatly, but those that remained were still highly permeable (*not shown*). However, when VEGF production was shut down (*right panel*), once again the number of tumor-associated vessels (*red*) decreased greatly and, in addition, the permeability of the surviving vessels was strongly reduced, as indicated by the virtual absence of *light blue* staining. *Arrows* indicate two vessels that are no longer connected with the circulation. (B) Intra-vital microscopy can be used to visualize, through an implanted glass window, the vasculature of a subcutaneously implanted tumor. Especially high resolution was obtained here by using a multiphoton laser scanning microscope. The vasculature of the same region of a subcutaneously implanted murine mammary adenocarcinoma was monitored following the introduction of anti-VEGF-R monoclonal antibody. The vasculature was highlighted through the intravenous injection of a contrast agent. In comparison with normal vasculature (*far left*), the vasculature of the tumor (*second image*)

initially appears contorted with many large-diameter vessels. After 2 days of treatment, the vasculature has normalized substantially. However, after 5 days, the vasculature in the tumor has regressed so far that it is barely visible (*far right*). (C) Thirty patients suffering from glioblastoma multiforme were treated daily with cediranib (AZD2171), a drug that inhibits the tyrosine kinase domains of all three VEGF receptors. Patients in whom the intra-tumoral blood flow increased during treatment, ostensibly because of normalization of the tumor-associated microvasculature, survived longer than patients in whom the blood flow was constant or decreased. (D) Anti-angiogenic treatments may elicit several alternative responses from the aberrant tumor-associated microvasculature that develops during primary tumor formation. The microvasculature may become normalized, which may facilitate drug delivery and avoid hypoxia and associated increases in tumor cell invasiveness. The microvasculature may remain unaltered, in which case continued capillary leakiness may lead to high interstitial hydrostatic pressure in the tumor parenchyma, complicating delivery of drugs from the vessel lumina to the tumor cells. Finally, the microvasculature may be almost eradicated, which may result in widespread hypoxia, tumor necrosis, or the emergence of tumor cells that respond to hypoxia by becoming more invasive. (A, from R. Giavazzi et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 162:1913–1926, 2003. With permission from American Society for Investigative Pathology. B, from R.K. Jain, *Nat. Med.* 9:685–693, 2003. With permission from Nature. C, from A.G. Sorensen et al., *Cancer Res.*72:402–407, 2012. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. D, from R. Jain, *Nat. Med.* 7, 987–989, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

These various arguments suggest that causing the *normalization* of the intra-tumoral vasculature rather than the *regression* of the vasculature may actually prove to be more productive therapeutically, and, indeed, certain clinical observations appear to support this notion. For example, intra-tumoral blood flow was measured in 30 patients suffering from glioblastoma by using noninvasive magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) technology. These patients were treated with an agent that inhibited the tyrosine kinase functions of all three VEGF receptor subtypes, and their tumors responded in one of three ways to the treatment: decreased blood flow (11 patients), constant blood flow (12 patients), and increased blood flow (7 patients). As is apparent from Figure S13.8C, those patients whose blood flow increased in the tumor enjoyed longer survival before they succumbed to this invariably fatal disease. This indicates that normalization of blood flow (see Figure S13.8D) may actually benefit a cancer patient.

Supplementary Sidebar 13.8 Angiogenesis is normally suppressed by physiological inhibitors

The actions of the actively pro-angiogenic factors described in Sections 13.7 and 13.8 are counterbalanced by a number of anti-angiogenic proteins and protein fragments that exist in normal tissues, largely as components of the ECM or as soluble proteins in the interstitial fluid. In addition, several of the components of the extracellular matrix are used by tissues to actively block excessive angiogenesis (**Table S13.1**). The best characterized of these is the thrombospondin-1 (Tsp-1) protein that is secreted by many cell types into the surrounding extracellular space, where it forms homotrimers and carries out several distinct functions. Most important for our discussion, Tsp-1 associates with a receptor (termed CD36) that is displayed on the surfaces of endothelial cells and halts their proliferation. In addition, research indicates that Tsp-1 treatment of endothelial cells causes them to release Fas ligand (FasL), the pro-apoptotic signaling protein that acts by binding to the Fas death receptor (**Figure S13.9**). Recall that the latter, once it has bound its ligand, activates an intracellular caspase cascade that triggers apoptosis (see Section 9.14). Therefore, once Tsp-1 causes endothelial cells to release FasL, the latter may act in an autocrine fashion to trigger the death of these cells in the event that they also display the Fas receptor.

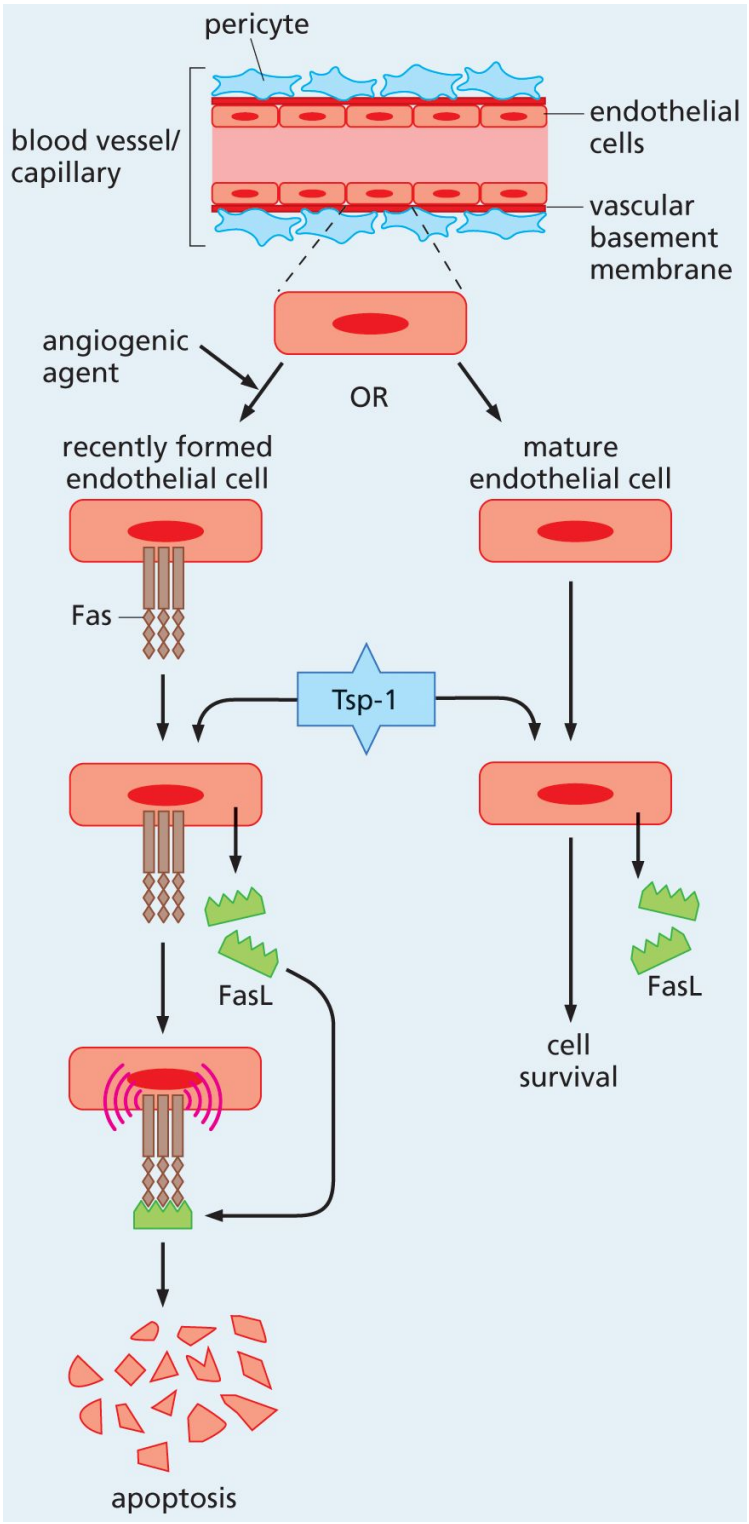
Table S13.1 Endogenous inhibitors of angiogenesis

Inhibitor	**Description**
A. Derived from extracellular matrix	
anastellin	fragment of fibronectin
arresten	fragment of type IV collagen α_1 chain of vascular basement membrane
canstatin	fragment of type IV collagen α_2 chain of vascular basement membrane
chondromodulin-I	component of cartilage ECM
EFC-XV	fragment of type XV collagen

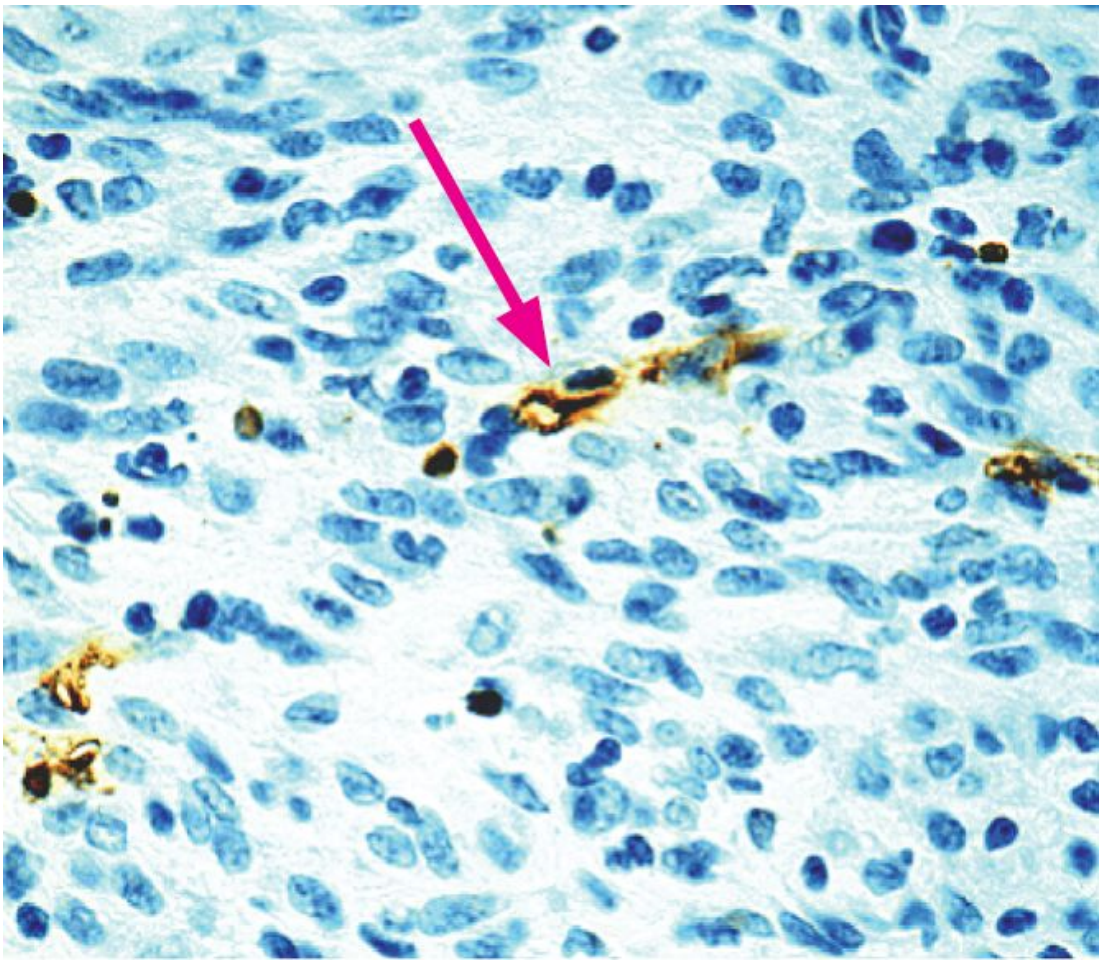
Inhibitor	**Description**
endorepellin	fragment of perlecan
endostatin	fragment of collagen type XVIII
fibulin	fragment of basement membrane protein
thrombospondin-1 and -2	ECM glycoproteins
troponin I	component of cartilage ECM
tumstatin	fragment of type IV collagen α_3 chain
B. Non-ECM–derived growth factors and cytokines	
interferon-α (IFN-α)	cytokine
interleukins (IL-1β, -12, -18)	cytokines
pigment epithelium-derived factor (PEDF)	growth factor
platelet factor-4	released by platelets during degranulation
Other types	
angiostatin	fragment of plasminogen

Inhibitor	Description
antithrombin III	fragment of antithrombin III
2-methoxyestradiol	endogenous metabolite of estrogen
PEX	fragment of MMP-2
plasminogen kringle 5	fragment of angiostatin
prolactin fragments	specific cleavage fragment
prothrombin kringle 2	fragment of prothrombin
sFlt-1	soluble form of VEGF-R1 (= Flt-1)
TIMP-2	inhibitor of metalloproteinase-2
TrpRS	fragment of tryptophanyl-tRNA synthetase
vasostatin	fragment of calreticulin

Adapted from P. Nyberg, L. Xie and R. Kalluri, *Cancer Res.* 65:3967–3979, 2005.


pericyte
blood vessel/
capillary
endothelial
cells
vascular
basement
membrane
angiogenic
agent
OR
recently formed
endothelial cell
mature
endothelial cell
Fas
Tsp-1
FasL
FasL
cell
survival
apoptosis

(A)



(B)

Figure S13.9 Thrombospondin, endothelial cell survival, and tumorigenesis (A) The stimulation of resting endothelial cells with angiogenic agents, such as VEGF or bFGF, creates activated, growing endothelial cells (*left branch*), which soon express the Fas death receptor (*light brown*) on their surface. Subsequent treatment of mature and recently formed endothelial cells with thrombospondin-1 (Tsp-1; *light blue*) causes both groups of cells to secrete FasL (*green*), the ligand of Fas. However, because only the activated endothelial cell displays the Fas receptor, it is preferentially induced to enter apoptosis by Tsp-1, whereas the FasL secreted by the mature, resting endothelial cell cannot be induced to enter apoptosis because it cannot bind and respond to secreted FasL. This behavior seems to explain why Tsp-1 can block new angiogenesis but has relatively minimal effects on already-constructed vasculature, whose endothelial cells are only rarely involved in active proliferation. (B) The loss of *ras* oncogene expression can lead to a rapid increase in Tsp-1 expression. This may explain why, in this transgenic mouse model of melanoma development, shutdown of *ras* oncogene expression in already-formed *ras*-induced tumors leads to rapid collapse

of the tumor-associated vasculature and tumor regression. Here, the TUNEL assay (see Figures 9.19 and S9.3) for apoptosis reveals apoptotic endothelial cells within a capillary (*arrow*) of a regressing melanoma. (A, adapted from O.V. Volpert et al., *Nat. Med.* 8:349–357, 2002. B, from L. Chin et al., *Nature* 400:468–472, 1999. With permission from Nature.)

Interestingly, the Fas receptor is displayed on endothelial cells that are actively proliferating or have recently ceased proliferation, but its display is suppressed once these cells have successfully formed mature capillaries and retreated into quiescence (see Figure S13.9). This seems to explain a most intriguing aspect of Tsp-1 behavior: it selectively inhibits and causes regression of newly formed and still-growing capillaries but has little if any effect on already-formed, mature capillaries. In fact, several other natural anti-angiogenic factors also exhibit such selectivity and, like Tsp-1, seem to depend upon activation of the pro-apoptotic caspase cascade in endothelial cells, because compounds that inhibit the caspase enzymes also protect endothelial cells from the anti-angiogenic effects of Tsp-1 and the other natural blockers of angiogenesis.

Transcription of the *TSP1* gene is strongly induced by p53, ostensibly as part of the p53-mediated emergency response that leads to a generalized shutdown of cell proliferation and tissue growth. Conversely, the loss of p53 function, which is seen in almost all human tumors (see Chapter 9), leads to a substantial decrease in Tsp-1 levels. This permits angiogenesis to be induced by cells that normally would have been prevented from doing so by the high Tsp-1 concentrations in the surrounding extracellular matrix.

The Ras oncoprotein, acting through a complex signaling cascade, acts in the opposite fashion, because it causes shutdown of *TSP1* gene expression. The resulting absence of significant levels of Tsp-1 can also contribute substantially to the elevated angiogenic powers of *ras*-transformed cells compared with their normal neighbors. In one study of melanomas arising in transgenic mice, expression of the H-*ras* oncogene, which had been used to initiate these tumors, was shut down after they had grown to a considerable size. These tumors collapsed rapidly thereafter, and this collapse was directly traceable to their loss of functional vasculature, most of which was recently synthesized and began to disintegrate within six hours after the loss of Ras function. The observed rapid entrance into apoptosis of endothelial cells forming the tumor vasculature preceded any decline in the levels of VEGF (which provides survival signals for endothelial cells). Although not demonstrated directly in these experiments, it seems likely that this apoptosis derived from the rapid re-expression of Tsp-1 that follows close on the heels of Ras shutdown.

Tsp-1 is surely a major governor of angiogenesis, but as hinted above, it is only one of a large cohort of natural inhibitors of angiogenesis that are found in the spaces between cells (see Table S13.1). Observations of the behavior of certain primary tumors and their derived metastases first suggested the existence of several other anti-angiogenic molecules. In some mouse models of tumorigenesis, metastases were found to remain small in size as long as the primary tumor that spawned them continued to grow. However, the moment the primary tumor was surgically removed, the metastases began to grow vigorously. This behavior is echoed by anecdotal reports of cancer surgeons, who have observed that after the successful surgical removal of a primary tumor, substantial numbers of metastases may suddenly sprout and flourish, doing so within several months' time.

Such observations suggested that some type of inhibitory substance released by the primary tumor acted, via the circulation, to suppress the proliferation of distant nests of metastatic cells. More specifically, these inhibitory factors, whatever their nature, seemed to block angiogenesis in these secondary growths, which failed to expand to a diameter of more than several tenths of a millimeter. Once the primary tumors were excised, the hypothetical inhibitory factors disappeared from the circulation, removing some constraints on the growth of already-seeded metastases.

The subsequent isolation of these circulating factors, initially from the urine of tumor-bearing animals, yielded the intensively studied angiostatin and endostatin molecules. Determination of the amino acid sequences of these two protein species indicated that they arise as cleavage products of familiar proteins of the extracellular matrix (ECM) or plasma. With the passage of time, yet other anti-angiogenic substances have been isolated (see Table S13.1), many of which are also formed by the proteolysis of extracellular proteins. Taken together, these discoveries suggest that as angiogenesis proceeds in normal tissues during development and wound healing, this process is eventually curtailed by the accumulation of anti-angiogenic protein fragments in the extracellular space. These naturally occurring anti-angiogenic substances can therefore be depicted as important components of negative-feedback loops operating to ensure that excessive vascularization of a tissue does not occur.

Other natural anti-angiogenic proteins function as antagonists of the matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). VEGF stimulates the localized production of MMPs 1 to 4, which enable elongating capillaries to invade the extracellular matrix between cells. A class of secreted proteins, termed tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs), can prevent this elongation by blocking the actions of these and other MMPs. For example, by forcing the ectopic expression of TIMP-2 in tumor cells, researchers have blocked the angiogenic and thus tumorigenic powers of these cells. However, the precise mechanisms by which TIMPs block angiogenesis are still not clearly resolved.

When integrated, these disparate observations about the physiological regulators of angiogenesis reinforce the idea, cited earlier, that angiogenesis is not a binary state—either on or off. Instead, different types of tumor cells acquire greater or lesser angiogenic powers, and even within a given tumor, the tumor cells are likely to show differing abilities to attract vasculature. Such behavior can be explained by a scheme (see Figure 13.44) in which the balance between pro- and anti-angiogenic factors determines whether neoangiogenesis will proceed, and if so, how intensively regions within tumors will become vascularized.

Supplementary Sidebar 13.9 Natural angiogenesis inhibitors may be employed in various forms of anti-angiogenic therapy

Arguably the most effective agents to deploy in anti-angiogenesis are molecules that are normally present in the body and used by various physiological mechanisms to constrain neoangiogenesis, that is to serve as counterweights to the pro-angiogenic factors that operate in various tissues (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.8**). The existence of such anti-angiogenic molecules was first suggested by observations of the behavior of certain primary tumors and their derived metastases, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 13.8**. Because these agents, such as angiostatin and endostatin, are native to the body, they have the advantage of being reasonably well tolerated without toxic side effects. They have virtually no effect on the *in vitro* proliferation of a variety of cells and, instead, are biologically active only on endothelial cells that are actively participating in neoangiogenesis *in vivo*. Moreover, these proteins can persist for some time in the circulation, thereby increasing the exposure of tumor vasculature to their anti-angiogenic effects. On the negative side, their manufacture in large quantities, like that of all proteins, is costly and challenging, and their precise mechanisms of action have been elusive.

Both angiostatin and endostatin had only modest effects in blocking the angiogenic switch in the pancreas of Rip-Tag mice (see Section 13.8). But when applied to already-vascularized small tumors, endostatin reduced by more than 80% their subsequent growth, and angiostatin reduced it by 50%. When large, well-established tumors were treated with either of these agents, relatively little effect was seen, but the two introduced together caused a 75% reduction in the mass of such tumors. Long-term endostatin treatment of mice bearing tumors formed from a lung carcinoma cell line led to regression of the tumors. This success might suggest that endostatin may be a highly effective therapeutic in the oncology clinic, but good responses in mice are rarely predictive of similar efficacy in the oncology clinic.

In fact, the development of angiostatin and endostatin as clinically useful anti-cancer agents has been abandoned in the West because clinical responses were, at best, equivocal. However, large-scale clinical trials in China have demonstrated significant

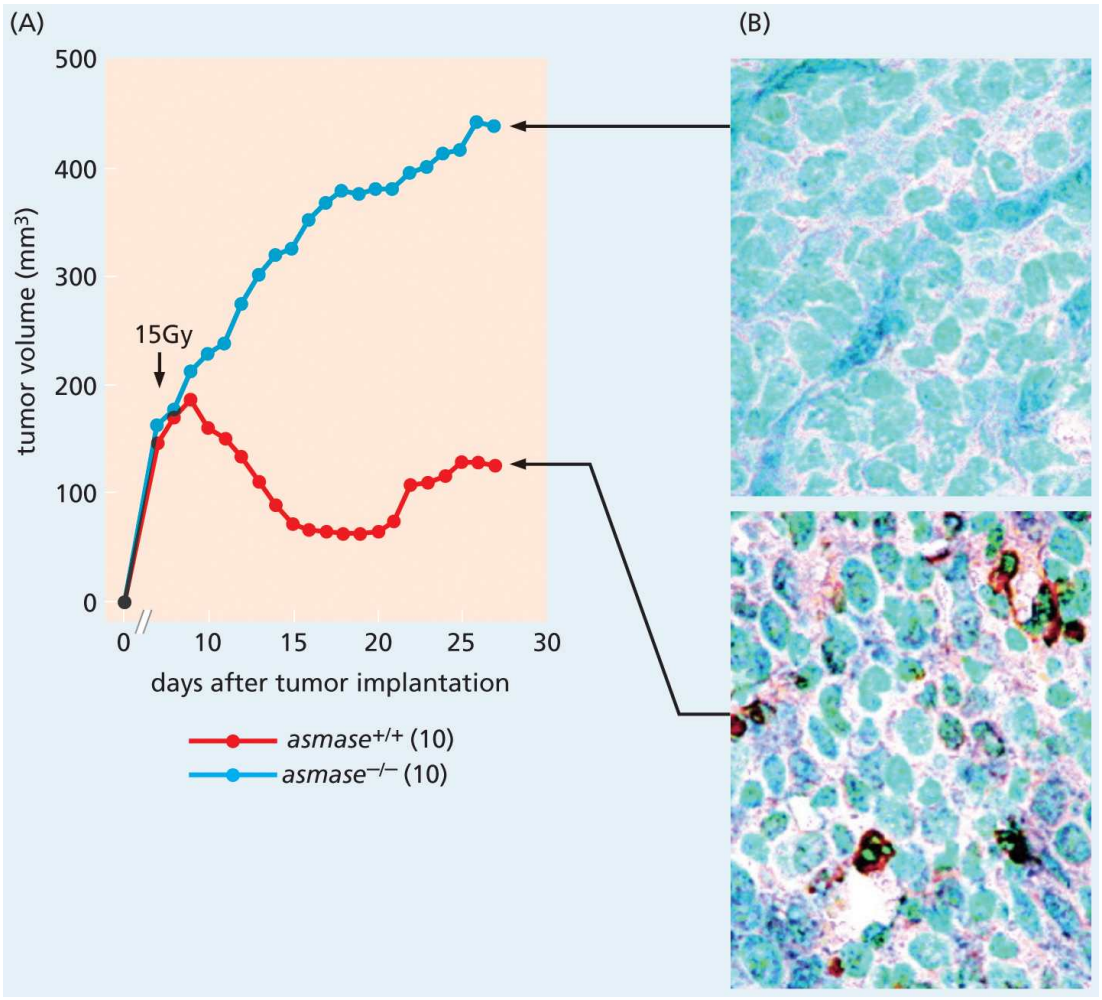
clinical benefit from adding a recombinant form of endostatin to standard chemotherapeutic agents when treating a variety of cancers. In these multiple clinical trials, the recombinant endostatin was found to act synergistically with the standard chemotherapeutics to prolong disease progression and patient survival significantly.

Yet another class of natural angiogenesis antagonists (see Table S13.1) are the interferons, which are usually studied in the context of their ability to modulate the activities of various cell types operating in the immune system. Interferon-α and -β have proven to be potent suppressors of the synthesis of basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) and of interleukin-8 (IL-8), both of which are strong angiogenic agents. And administration of interferon-α has proven to be useful in causing the regression of some hemangiomas (endothelial cell tumors) as well as Kaposi's sarcomas, which are also of endothelial cell origin (likely the endothelial cells forming lymph ducts). In both cases, the tumor regressions have been attributed to the anti-angiogenic effects of the interferon.

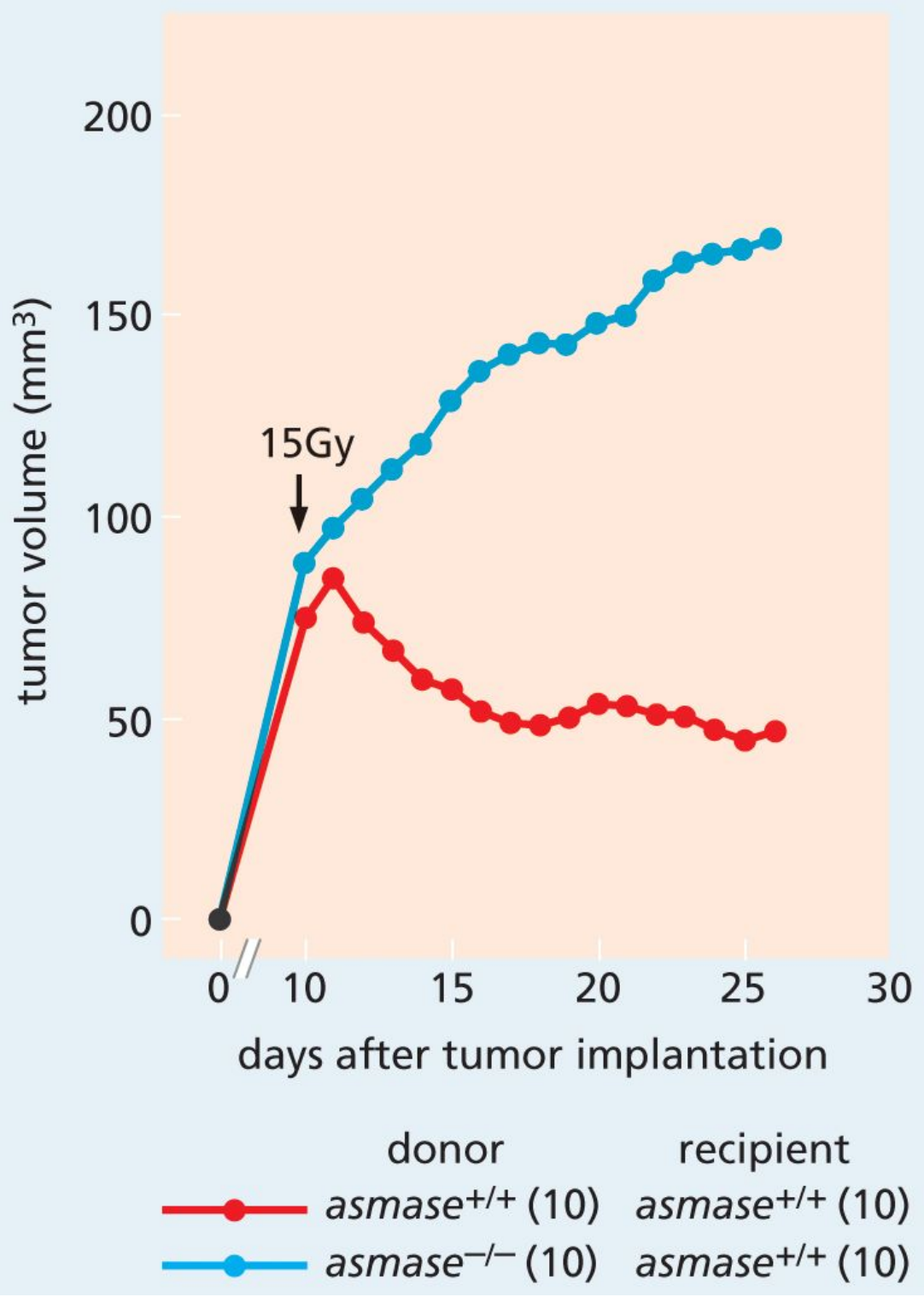
Supplementary Sidebar 13.10 Do the effects of radiotherapy depend on damaging tumor-associated microvessels?

Anti-angiogenic therapy may have been in use for many years: unbeknownst to clinical oncologists, much of the efficacy of some traditional anti-tumor therapies may derive from their effects on tumor-associated microvasculature. One striking example of this, which sheds light on how radiation therapy succeeds in destroying certain tumors, has come from studies of genetically altered mice that lack the genes encoding either the Bax protein or the acid sphingomyelinase (asmase) enzyme. Both these proteins are important pro-apoptotic regulators in a variety of cell types including, importantly, endothelial cells. Consequently, the endothelial cells from these genetically altered mice are far more resistant to toxic agents, including X-rays, than their wild-type counterparts.

In the experiments shown here, mouse tumor cells from a fibrosarcoma cell line were introduced into both wild-type and *asmase*$^{-/-}$ mice. After tumors had grown to a substantial size, these animals were exposed to a dose of 15 grays (Gy) of X-rays (**Figure S13.10**). This dose of radiation usually causes a significant reduction in tumor burden, and indeed it succeeded in doing so in the wild-type mice. However, the identically sized tumors grown in the *asmase*$^{-/-}$ host mice responded quite differently, in that their growth continued unabated. When, as a further experiment, the bone marrow of *asmase*$^{+/+}$ mice was replaced with transplanted mutant (*asmase*$^{-/-}$) bone marrow cells, the tumors became highly resistant to X-ray–induced killing.


(A)
(B)
500
400
300
200
100
0
tumor volume (mm³)
15Gy
0
10
15
20
25
30
days after tumor implantation
asmase+/+ (10)
asmase−/− (10)

(A)



(B)

Figure S13.10 Survival of wild-type and asmase-negative tumor-bearing mice
The responses of tumors to radiotherapy may often be determined by the

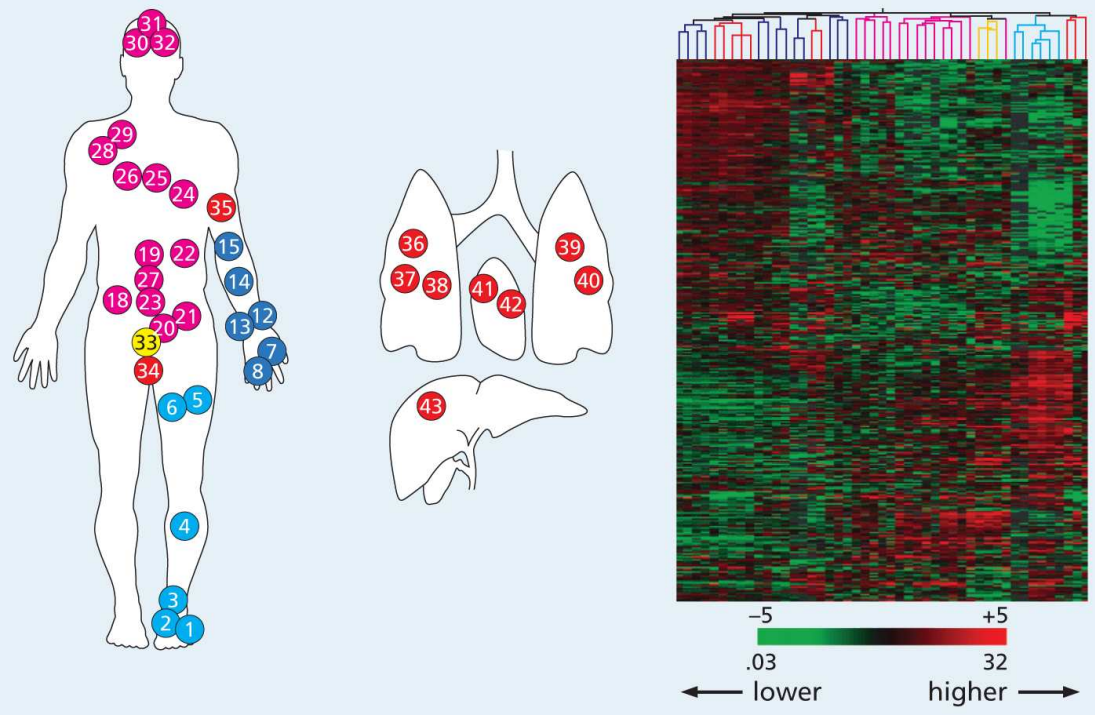
radiosensitivity of the endothelial cells that form their vasculature. Mice were bred to be either wild type or homozygous null for the gene encoding the pro-apoptotic enzyme acid sphingomyelinase (asmase). When mouse fibrosarcoma cells were implanted in the mice, the tumors grew twice as fast in the *asmase*$^{-/-}$ mice as in the wild-type mice, suggesting that a host factor, such as recruited endothelial cells, was governing the rate of tumor growth. (A) When exposed to a therapeutic dose (15 Gy) of radiation (*arrow*), the tumors in wild-type mice regressed (*red circles*) and, after a while, began to grow again. In contrast, the tumors in the *asmase*$^{-/-}$ hosts (*blue circles*) continued to grow unabated. (B) When these tumors were examined microscopically following irradiation, the endothelial cells (identified by a cell-specific immunostain) in tumors carried by wild-type mice (*below*) were apoptotic, as indicated by the TUNEL staining (*brown spots*; see Figure 9.19), whereas the endothelial cells in tumors borne by the *asmase*$^{-/-}$ hosts showed no signs of apoptosis (*above*). (C) When the bone marrow of wild-type hosts was replaced through transplantation of either wild-type or *asmase*$^{-/-}$ donor marrow cells, the tumors implanted in mouse hosts with engrafted mutant marrow (*blue curve*) continued to grow following 15 Gy of radiation (*arrow*), whereas tumors implanted in mouse hosts engrafted with wild-type marrow were stopped by the radiation (*red curve*). This procedure demonstrated that the radiosensitivity of the tumor was determined by cells of host bone marrow origin, not by the tumor cells themselves. The numbers in parentheses indicate that number of tumor-bearing mice in each experimental group. (From M. Garcia-Barros et al., *Science* 300:1155–1159, 2003. With permission from AAAS.)

These experiments demonstrate that the radiosensitivity of these tumors was not intrinsic to the tumor cells themselves. Instead, it was governed by host cells, specifically by cells recruited into engrafted tumors from the host bone marrow. These recruited host cells were indeed endothelial cells, as evidenced by the observations that (1) the apoptosis of the endothelial cells in tumor fragments irradiated *in vitro* directly paralleled and predicted the *in vivo* behavior of the tumors, and (2) the only cells that showed significant apoptosis in the tumors shortly after irradiation were associated with capillaries.

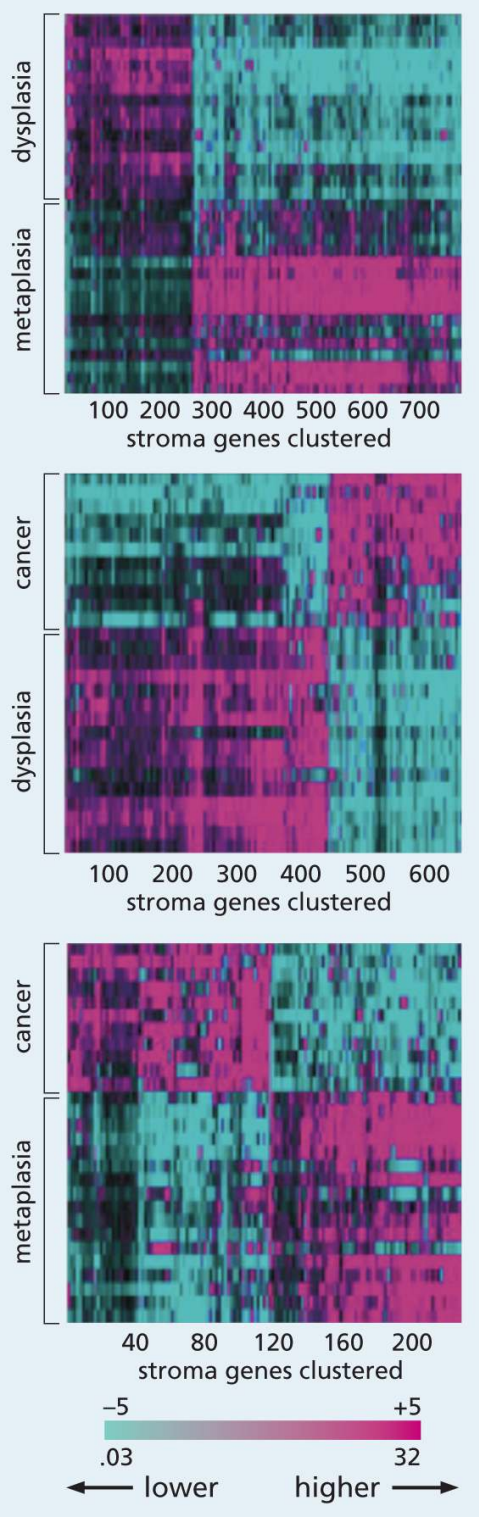
Observations like these indicate that anti-angiogenesis therapy has played a far greater role in a conventional anti-tumor radiotherapy than anyone dared to imagine; similarly, clinical responses to certain types of conventional chemotherapy may also be strongly influenced by the sensitivity of the tumor-associated microvasculature to these agents. This realization suggests that in the future, treatments with many anti-cancer chemotherapeutics may be optimized by gauging their effects on the tumor-associated microvessels rather than on the tumor cells themselves.

Supplementary Sidebar 13.11 Fibroblasts are heterogeneous and can change dynamically in response to signals

Many of the mesenchymal cell types that are recruited into the tumor stroma, either from afar (that is, from the bone marrow) or from adjacent tissues, actually represent distinct subtypes of a single well-studied cell type rather than a single, well-defined histopathological entity. Fibroblasts represent one such cell type, which under certain conditions may be induced to transdifferentiate into myofibroblasts. Fibroblasts and their derivatives exhibit great heterogeneity, depending on their tissue of origin and their association with neoplastic cells within tumors. The observations presented in **Figure S13.11** reveal how internally complex this class of cells actually is. Indeed, two dimensions of heterogeneity are indicated here: the fibroblasts prepared from various normal tissues show quite distinct gene expression patterns (Figure S13.11A), and the gene expression pattern of the stromal cells (essentially fibroblasts) from a single organ often changes as the tissue progresses increasingly toward high-grade neoplasia (Figure S13.11B). These differences in gene expression reflect underlying functional differences in fibroblast populations (Figure S13.11C).



(A)


dysplasia
metaplasia
100 200 300 400 500 600 700
stroma genes clustered
cancer
dysplasia
100 200 300 400 500 600
stroma genes clustered
cancer
metaplasia
40 80 120 160 200
stroma genes clustered
–5
+5
.03
32
lower
higher

(B)

(C)

Figure S13.11 Fibroblasts represent a heterogeneous collection of cells rather than a single distinct cell type (A) Fibroblasts were prepared from normal tissues in 43 locations throughout the human body, including both skin (samples 1–35) and internal organs, specifically the lungs, liver, aorta, skeletal muscle, and prostate gland (samples 36–43) (*left*). The results of gene expression analyses that were performed on each of these are presented in the *heat map* (*right*), in which probes reactive with a large series of genes are arrayed along the ordinate (vertical axis) and samples of fibroblasts from different tissues are arrayed along the abscissa (horizontal axis). The samples whose gene expression patterns are more closely related to one another are grouped together as indicated by the hierarchical clustering above the heat map. The degree of relative expression is given by the color bar below the heat map, where the numbers above the bar represent intensity of expression on a $\log_2$ scale. This heat map reveals several dozen distinct gene expression patterns, indicating that normal fibroblasts may reside in at least this many distinct states of differentiation. (B) The stroma from three distinct stages of esophageal cancer progression was isolated by microdissection, and the expression of stroma-specific genes was analyzed by microarrays. The expression patterns of the three distinct stages of progression—metaplasia (Barrett's esophagus), dysplasia, and frank carcinoma—were compared pairwise (labels to *left* of heat maps). These analyses reveal quite different gene expression patterns, largely of the fibroblasts within the stroma. Gene probes are arrayed *left to right*, and tissue samples are arrayed *vertically*. High expression is indicated by *red/maroon*; low expression, by *green/aquamarine*. (C) Normal human esophageal epithelial cells were experimentally transformed through the introduction of three genes (as described in Figure 11.28A). *Organotypic* cultures were prepared in which three distinct types of fibroblasts were embedded in extracellular matrix components in order to mimic *in vitro* the stroma present in the three tissues. The experimentally transformed epithelial cells were then layered above the fibroblast/ECM layer and propagated for 10 days in a series of media. The resulting cultures were sectioned and stained with hematoxylin/eosin (H&E). The fetal skin fibroblasts permitted limited invasion of the transformed keratinocytes

downward into the fibroblast/ECM layer, whereas fetal esophageal fibroblasts induced extensive, highly aggressive invasion by the epithelial cells. Adult esophageal fibroblasts permitted almost no invasion in the fibroblast/ECM layer. These images present a dramatic demonstration of the functional differences among different types of normal fibroblasts. (A, from J.L. Rinn et al., *PloS Genet.* 2:e119, 2006. © 2006 Rinn et al. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License. B, from A. Saadi et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 107:2177–2182, 2010. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. C, from T. Okawa et al., *Genes Dev.* 21:2788–2803, 2007. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Initial surveys of macrophages prepared from tissues and involved in different physiological responses suggest comparable complexity. Similar analyses of other stromal cell types have not yet been produced. These analyses, when taken together, indicate an array of distinct stromal cell types that vastly exceeds the ten or so that are usually invoked to explain the complexity of stromal biology.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

pleural
: Referring to the spaces between the membrane covering the lungs and the wall of the chest and the underlying tissues covered by this membrane.

peritoneal
: Referring to the cavity in the abdomen that is limited by an enclosing membrane and includes the lower gastrointestinal tract and associated organs, including pancreas and liver.

angiogenesis
: Process by which new blood vessels are formed by sprouting from existing vessels; *also called* **neoangiogenesis** in certain circumstances. *Compare* **vasculogenesis**.

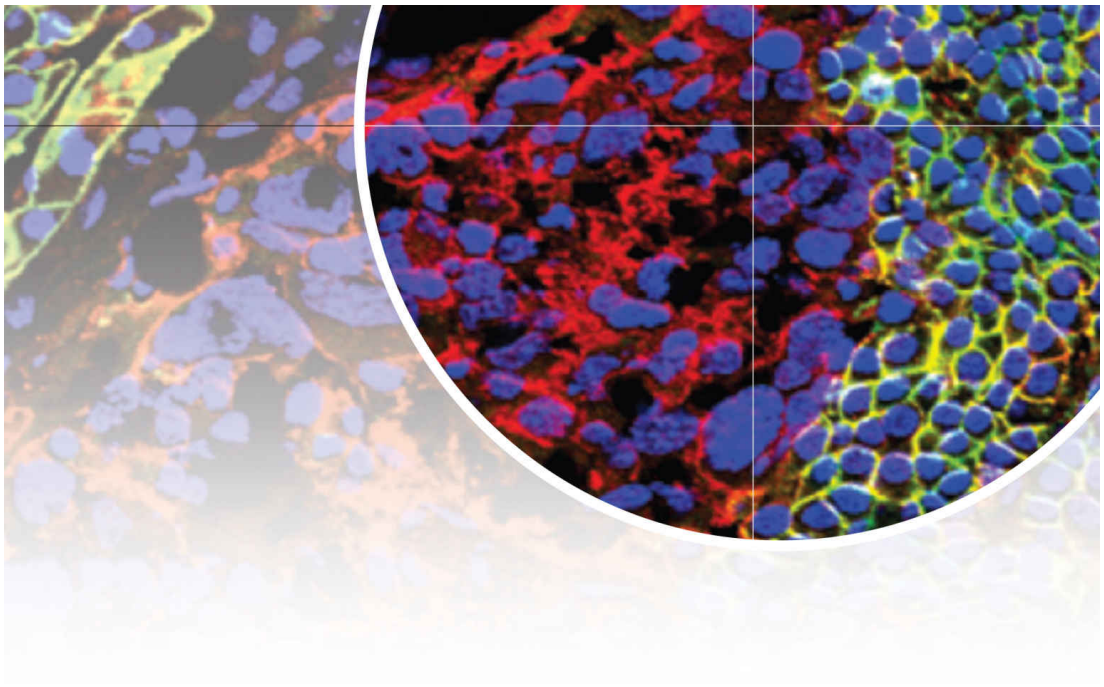
ascites
: (adj., **-itic**) Fluid that accumulates in the peritoneal cavity of some cancer patients, often containing malignant cells.

parenchyma
: The portion of a tissue that lies outside the circulatory system and often is responsible for carrying out the specialized functions of the tissue.

radiotherapy
: Treatment of a disease, notably cancer, through irradiation, usually in the form of X-rays that, in the case of cancer treatment, are focused on a targeted tumor or tumor-bearing tissue.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 14
Moving Out: Invasion and Metastasis



A fluorescence microscopy image of epithelial and mesenchymal pancreatic cancer cells.

The fact of cells identical with those of the cancer itself being seen in the blood may tend to throw some light upon the mode of origin of multiple tumors existing in the same person.

T.R. Ashworth, physician, 1869

What is it that decides what organs shall suffer in a case of disseminated cancer?

Stephen Paget, surgeon, 1889

It is not birth, marriage, or death, but gastrulation, which is truly the most important time in your life.

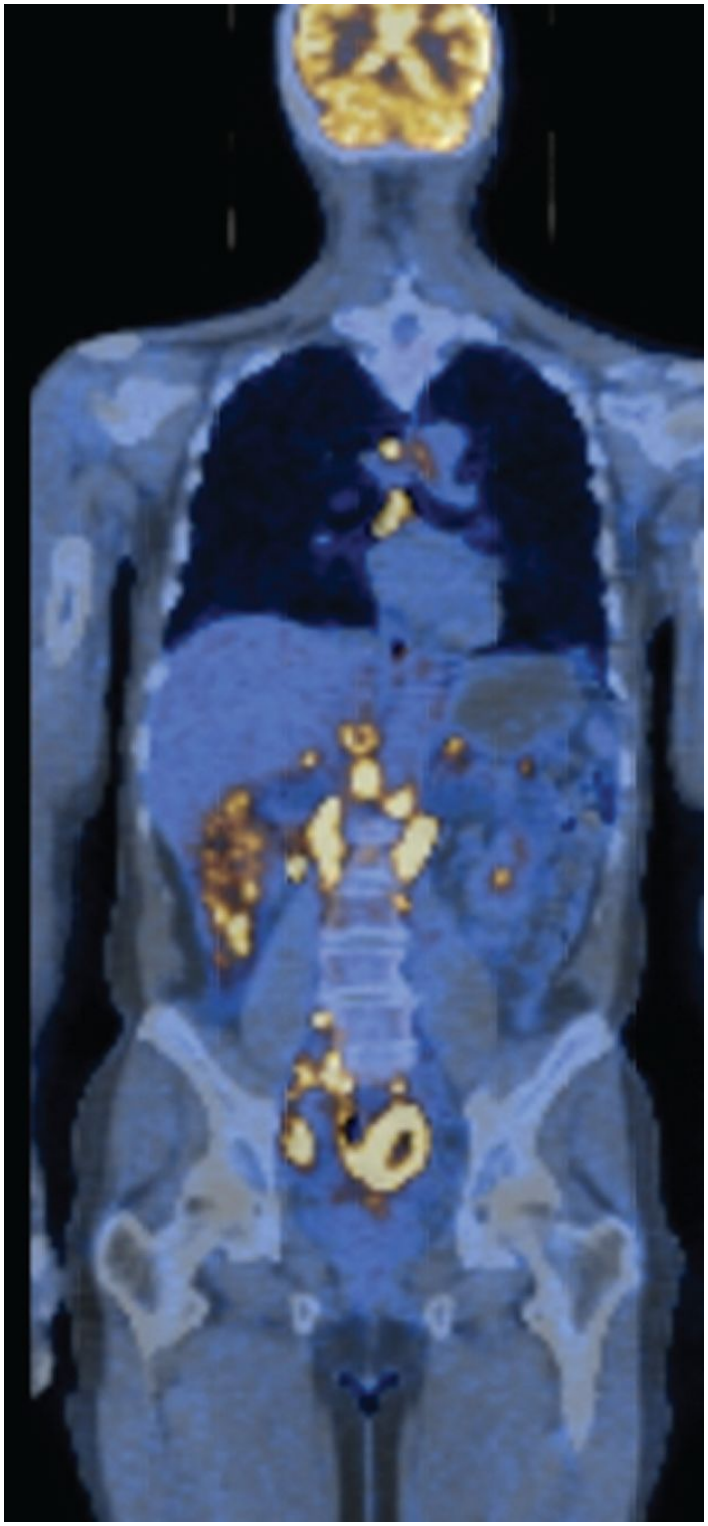
Lewis Wolpert, embryologist, 1986

In the early phases of multi-step tumor progression, cancer cells multiply near the site where their ancestors first began uncontrolled proliferation. The result, usually apparent only after many years' time, is a primary tumor mass. Given that a cubic centimeter of tissue may contain as many as 10^9 cells, we can easily imagine that tumors may often reach a size of 10^{10} or 10^{11} cells before they become apparent to the individual carrying them or to the clinician in search of them.

Primary tumors in some organ sites—specifically those arising within the peritoneal or pleural space—may well expand without causing any discomfort to the patient, simply because these cavities are expansible and their contents are quite plastic; in other sites, such as the brain, the presence of a tumor is often apparent when it is still relatively small. Sooner or later, however, in all sites throughout the body, tumors of substantial size compromise the functioning of the organs in which they have arisen and begin to evoke symptoms.

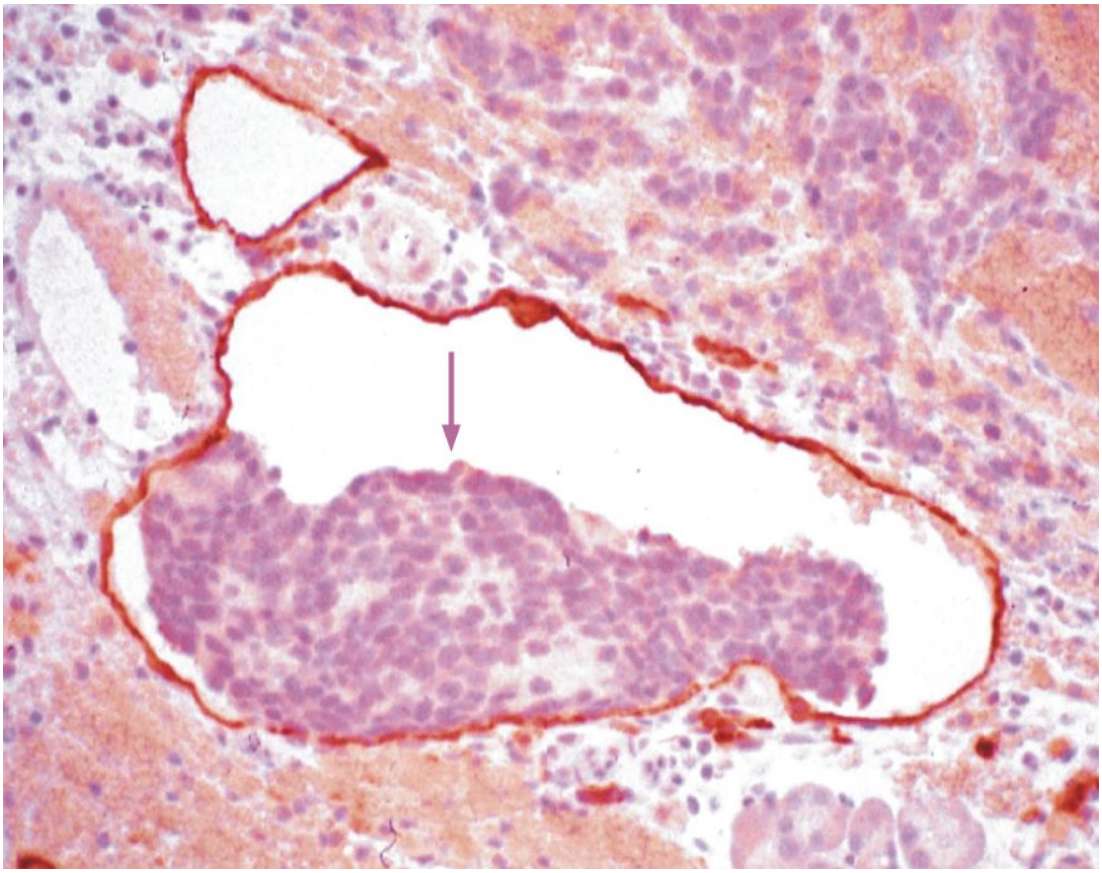
In many cases, the effects on normal tissue function come from the physical pressure exerted by the expanding tumor masses. In others, cells from the primary tumor mass invade adjacent normal tissues and, in so doing, begin to compromise vital functions. Large tumors in the colon may obstruct passage of digestion products through the lumen, and in tissues such as the liver and pancreas, cancer cells may obstruct the flow of bile through critical ducts. In the lungs, airways may be compromised.

As insidious and corrosive as these primary tumors are, they ultimately are responsible for only about 10% of deaths from cancer. The remaining 90% of patients are struck down by cancerous growths that are discovered at sites often far removed from the locations where their primary tumors first arose (**Figure 14.1**; see also Figure 2.2). These metastases are formed by cancer cells that have left the primary tumor mass and traveled by the body's highways—blood and lymphatic vessels—to seek out new sites throughout the body where they may found new colonies (**Figure 14.2**). Breast cancers often spawn metastatic colonies promiscuously in many tissues throughout the body, including the brain, liver, bones, and lungs. Prostate tumors are most often seeded to the bones, whereas colon carcinomas preferentially form new colonies in the liver.



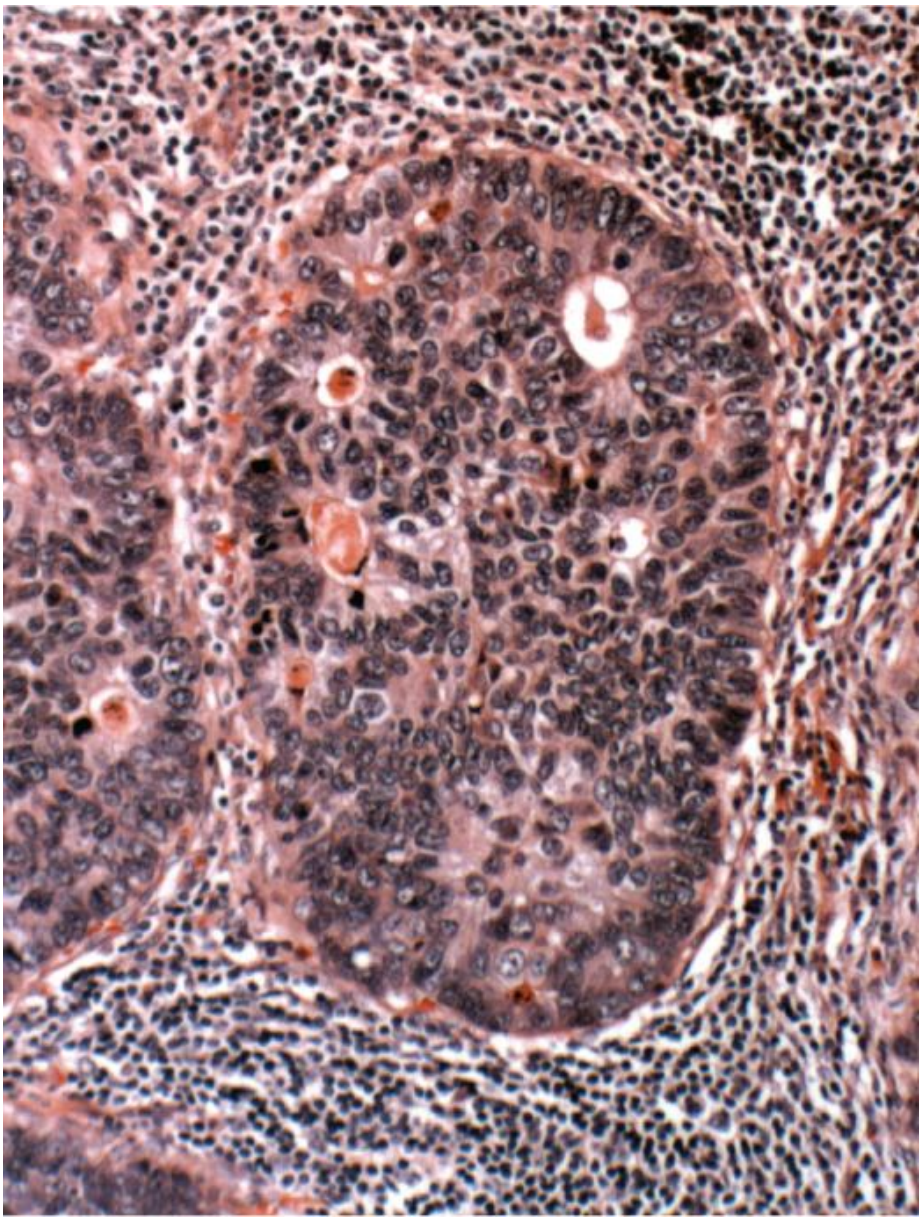
A radiographic image of a cancer patient’s body. Normal tissue appears blue or gray. The brain appears yellow, which is normal, but there are abnormal yellow regions in the pelvis, the upper abdomen below the liver and stomach, and the upper chambers of the heart.

Figure 14.1 Disseminated tumors The diagnosis of metastatic disease often represents a death sentence for a cancer patient, yet the mechanisms by which cancer cells metastasize from a primary tumor to distant sites in the body remain poorly understood. Seen here is a whole-body scan of a patient with metastatic non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL). This is a fusion image of a CT (computed X-ray tomography) scan of the body's tissues (*gray, blue*) and a PET (positron-emission tomography) scan in which the uptake of radioactively labeled fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG) in various tissues (*yellow*) has been detected. FDG uptake indicates regions of high glucose uptake associated with aerobic glycolysis (see Section 11.15). The activity associated with the brain is normal. However, the yellow spots in the abdominal regions indicate multiple NHL metastases. (Courtesy of S.S. Gambhir.)



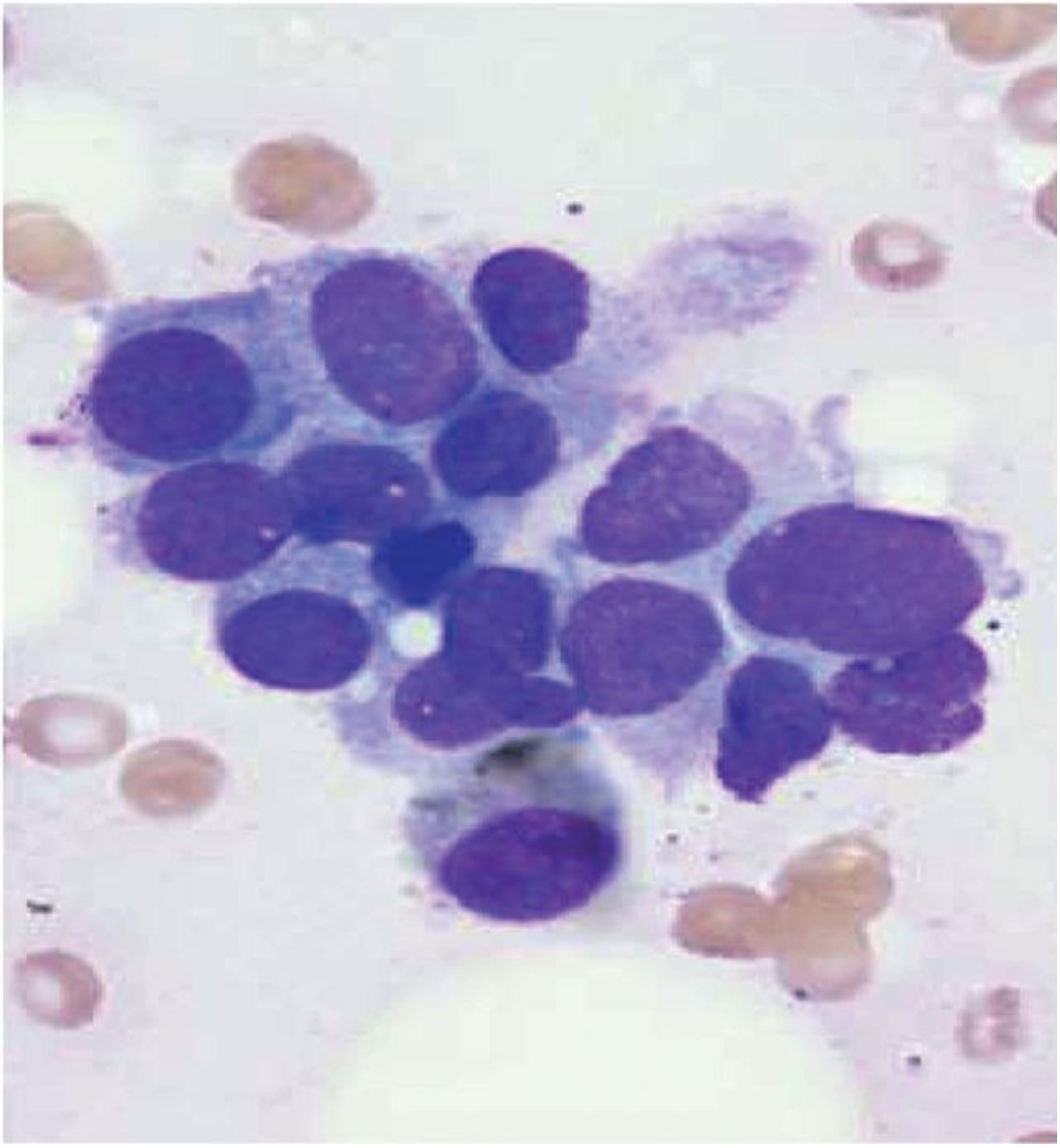
An arrow points to a dark pink clump of cells within a lumen that is lined with bright red cells. The lumen is otherwise white.

(A)



A rounded lump of tissue containing many large nuclei is surrounded by normal tissue with smaller nuclei.

(B)



A small clump of 15 to 20 blue-purple cells.

(C)

Figure 14.2 Histology of metastases in various tissues throughout the body
(A) In the Rip-Tag transgenic mouse model of pancreatic islet cell tumorigenesis (see Figure 13.35), metastasis via the lymph nodes can be encouraged through the forced expression of VEGF-C—a lymphangiogenic factor—in the islet tumor cells. Seen here is a small metastasis of islet cells (*arrow*) within a lymphatic vessel that is lined with endothelial cells (*reddish brown*). (B) A small metastasis of a human breast cancer (*center*) is seen growing within a lymph node associated with one of the lymphatic ducts draining the breast. Note that this metastasis

exhibits features that are characteristic of many primary tumors of the breast; adjacent to this metastasis are numerous lymphocytes in the surrounding lymph duct (*dark nuclei*). (C) The presence of clumps of metastatic carcinoma cells (*blue*) in the bone marrow can be revealed using specific immunohistochemistry to detect cells displaying epithelial markers, which set them apart from the mesenchymal cells naturally present in the marrow. In this particular case, however, the metastatic deposits were revealed by an alternative technique, use of the Wright–Giemsa stain. (A, from S.J. Mandriota et al., *EMBO J*. 20:672–682, 2001. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. B, courtesy of T.A. Ince. C, Fan FS, Yang C-F and Wang Y-F *Case Rep. Oncol. Med.* Article ID 2946409, 2018.)

Such wandering cancer cells are the most dangerous manifestations of the cancer process. When they succeed in founding colonies in distant sites, they often wreak great havoc. The female body can dispense with its mammary glands without losing vital physiological functions, and so almost all primary breast carcinomas do not compromise survival while they are confined to the breast. However, the metastatic colonies that breast cancer cells initiate in the bone marrow can cause localized erosion of bone tissue, resulting in agonizing pain and skeletal collapse. Metastases in the brain may rapidly compromise central nervous system function, while those in the lung or liver are similarly threatening to life because of the vital functions of these organs.

One major puzzle concerns the variable tendencies that different tumors have to metastasize. For reasons that remain obscure, primary tumors formed in certain tissues have a high probability of metastasizing, while those arising in other tissues almost never do so. After primary melanomas penetrate a certain distance downward into the tissue underlying the skin, the presence of metastases at distant sites in the body is almost a certainty. In contrast, basal cell carcinomas of the skin and astrocytomas—primary tumors of the glial cells in the brain—rarely spawn metastases. Another major unresolved issue concerns the metastatic *tropism* cited above: Why do tumors originating in a given organ preferentially seed colonies in particular tissues located elsewhere in the body?

In a variety of human tumor types, the dissemination of cancer cells throughout the body has already occurred by the time a primary tumor is first detected; at the time of initial diagnosis, these scattered cells may be clinically inapparent because they form only minute tumor colonies—micrometastases. Such behavior provokes questions that we will confront in this chapter and in Chapter 17: Do the properties of a primary tumor reveal whether it has broadcast cancer cells throughout the body that will eventually create life-threatening metastatic disease long after the primary tumor has been surgically removed? And equally important, do metastatic growths respond to therapies similarly to the corresponding primary tumors, or have the disseminated

tumor cells in these growths evolved to a state of higher resistance to various forms of therapy?

In this chapter, we confront the processes that create these most aggressive products of tumor progression. These processes initially depend within the primary tumor on complex biochemical and biological changes in cancer cells and in the tumor-associated stroma. Most of the steps of cancer formation, as described in earlier chapters, are understood in considerable detail. In contrast, our understanding of invasion and metastasis is still incomplete, explaining why these late steps of tumor progression represent the major unsolved problems of cancer pathogenesis.

Importantly, extensive efforts have been undertaken to document metastasis-specific mutations, that is, mutant alleles that are present recurrently in the cells forming metastases and are apparently absent in the corresponding primary tumors; such mutations would ostensibly be responsible for driving metastatic dissemination or the outgrowth of already-seeded metastases. Such efforts have consistently failed. These failures provide strong suggestion that, although carcinoma cells acquire a variety of somatic mutations in order to form primary tumors, additional metastasis-specific mutations do not seem to be involved in propelling primary tumor cells to distant sites in the body. This explains why the present chapter describes the mechanisms associated with invasion and metastasis as consequences of the actions of nongenetic (that is epigenetic) regulatory programs that are activated during the course of metastatic progression.

As you will see, this chapter is unusually long and takes numerous excursions, doing so for some very good reasons. Most obvious, metastases are responsible for ∼90% of all cancer-associated deaths. Then, there is the biological complexity of the process. And finally, the nature of invasion and metastasis has left major puzzles unsolved, if only because critical steps in this process have proven elusive experimentally.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

primary tumor

Tumor growing at the anatomical site where tumor formation began and proceeded to yield this mass. *See also* **metastasis**.

metastasis

(pl., **- es**; adj., **metastatic**; v. **metastasize**) A neoplastic growth forming at one site in the body, the cells of which derive from a malignancy located elsewhere in the body, such as the site of primary tumor formation. (2) The process leading to the formation of metastases. *See also* **primary tumor**.

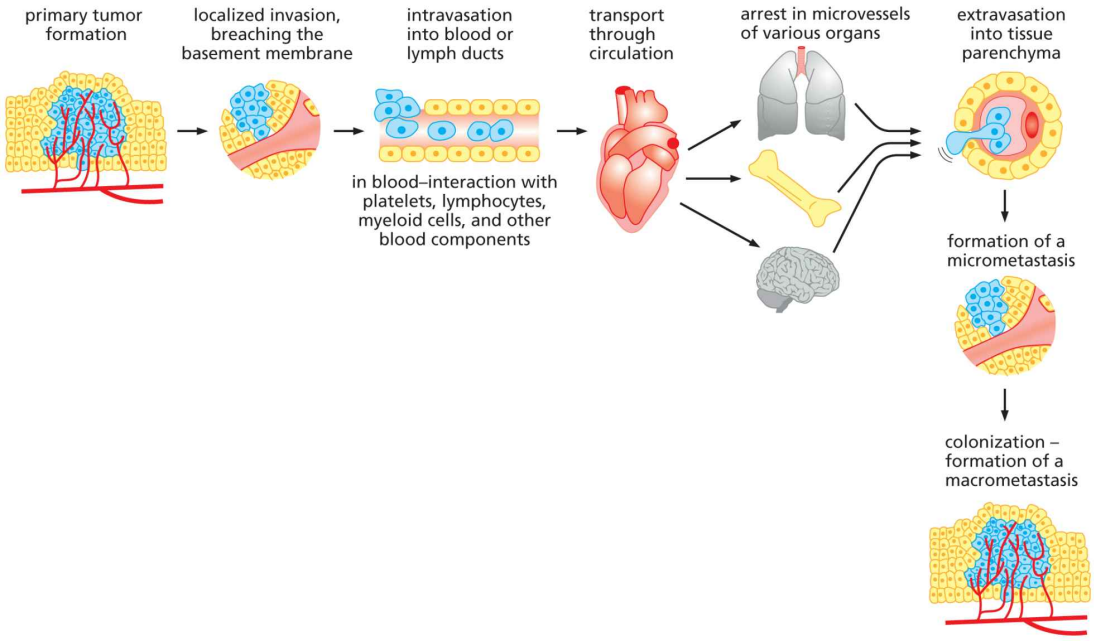
micrometastases

A single cell or small clump of disseminated cancer cells that can only be visualized using one or another form of microscopy. *See also* **macrometastasis**.

OceanofPDF.com

14.1 The invasion–metastasis cascade begins with local invasiveness

The great majority (>80%) of life-threatening cancers occur in epithelial tissues, yielding carcinomas. Consequently, most of our discussions in this chapter, as in the last, will refer to this class of tumors, with the understanding that cancers arising in other tissue types, such as connective and nervous tissues, often follow similar paths when they become invasive and metastatic. Even certain hematopoietic tumors, notably lymphomas, often have an early, localized phase and a later phase during which they become disseminated to distant anatomical sites. The overall process of dissemination, sometimes called the invasion–metastasis cascade, involves a complex succession of steps, which are outlined in **Figure 14.3**. As we proceed through this chapter, we will confront each of these steps, one after the other.



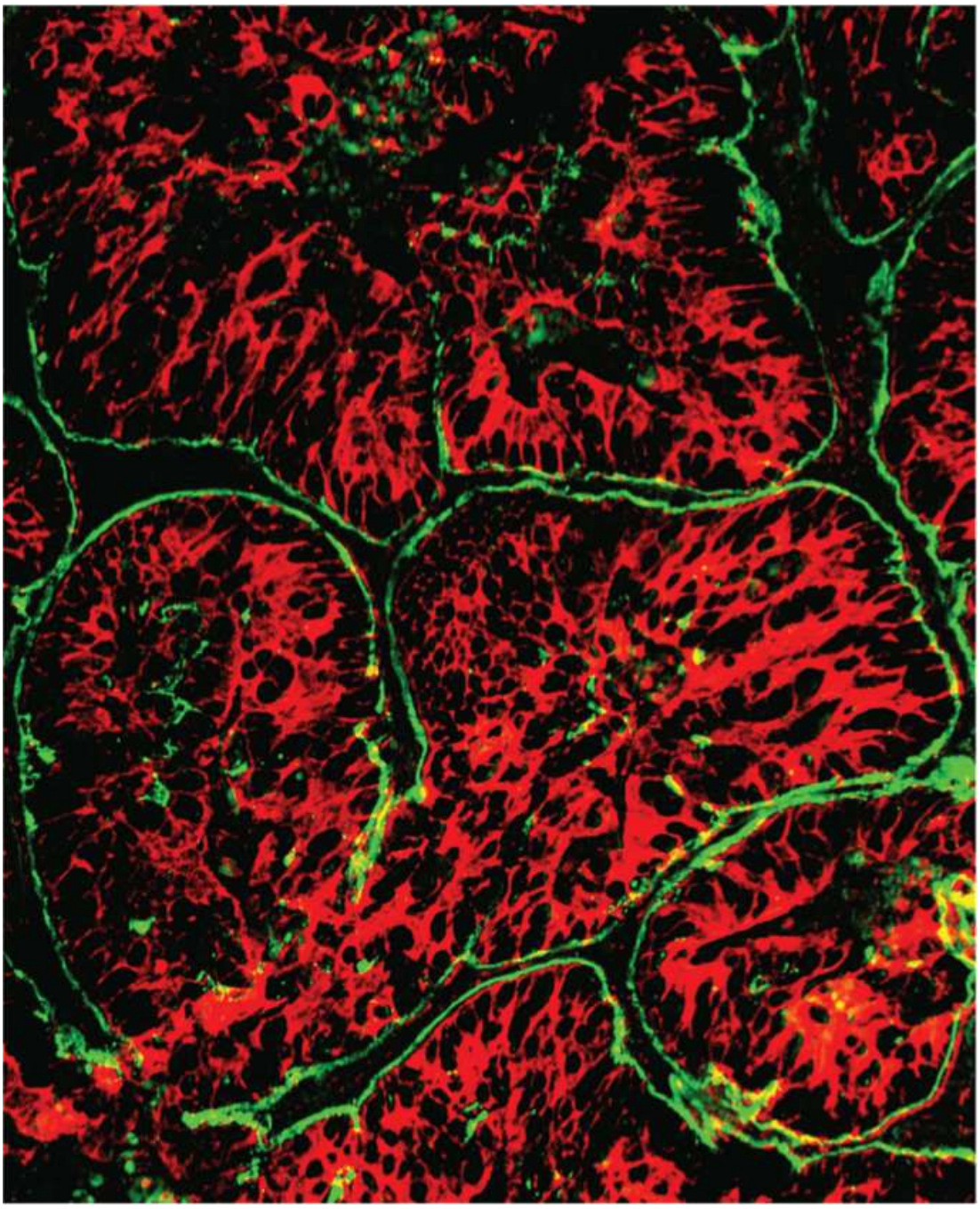
The invasion–metastasis cascade. Primary tumor formation is followed by localized invasion, breaching the basement membrane. This is followed by intravasation into blood or lymph ducts, where in blood–interaction with platelets, lymphocytes, myeloid cells, and other blood components occurs. This is followed by transport through circulation and eventual arrest in microvessels of various organs, such as the lungs, bone tissue, and the brain. The final three steps are

extravasation into tissue parenchyma, formation of a micrometastasis, and colonization–formation of a macrometastasis.

Figure 14.3 The invasion–metastasis cascade This depiction of the invasion–metastasis cascade ascribes seven distinct steps to the overall process. The initial step of localized invasiveness enables *in situ* carcinoma cells to breach the basement membrane. Thereafter, they may intravasate into either lymphatic or blood microvessels; only the latter is illustrated here. The blood may then transport these cancer cells via the general circulation (termed hematogenous dissemination) to distant anatomical sites, where they may be trapped, subsequently extravasate into the tissue parenchyma surrounding blood vessels, and form dormant micrometastases. Micrometastases may, on rare occasion, eventually acquire the ability to colonize the tissue in which they have landed, enabling them to form a macroscopic metastasis. The last step—colonization—seems to be the most inefficient of all. The small probability of successfully completing all steps of this cascade explains the low likelihood that any single cancer cell leaving a primary tumor will succeed in becoming the founder of a distant, macroscopic metastasis. More recent molecular and cell-biological studies suggest an alternative depiction involving two major phases: the first enables the physical dissemination of cancer cells from the core of the primary tumor to the parenchyma of a distant tissue, whereas the second—colonization—depends on the adaptation of disseminated cancer cells to the microenvironment of this tissue. (Adapted from I.J. Fidler, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3:453–458, 2003. With permission from Nature.)

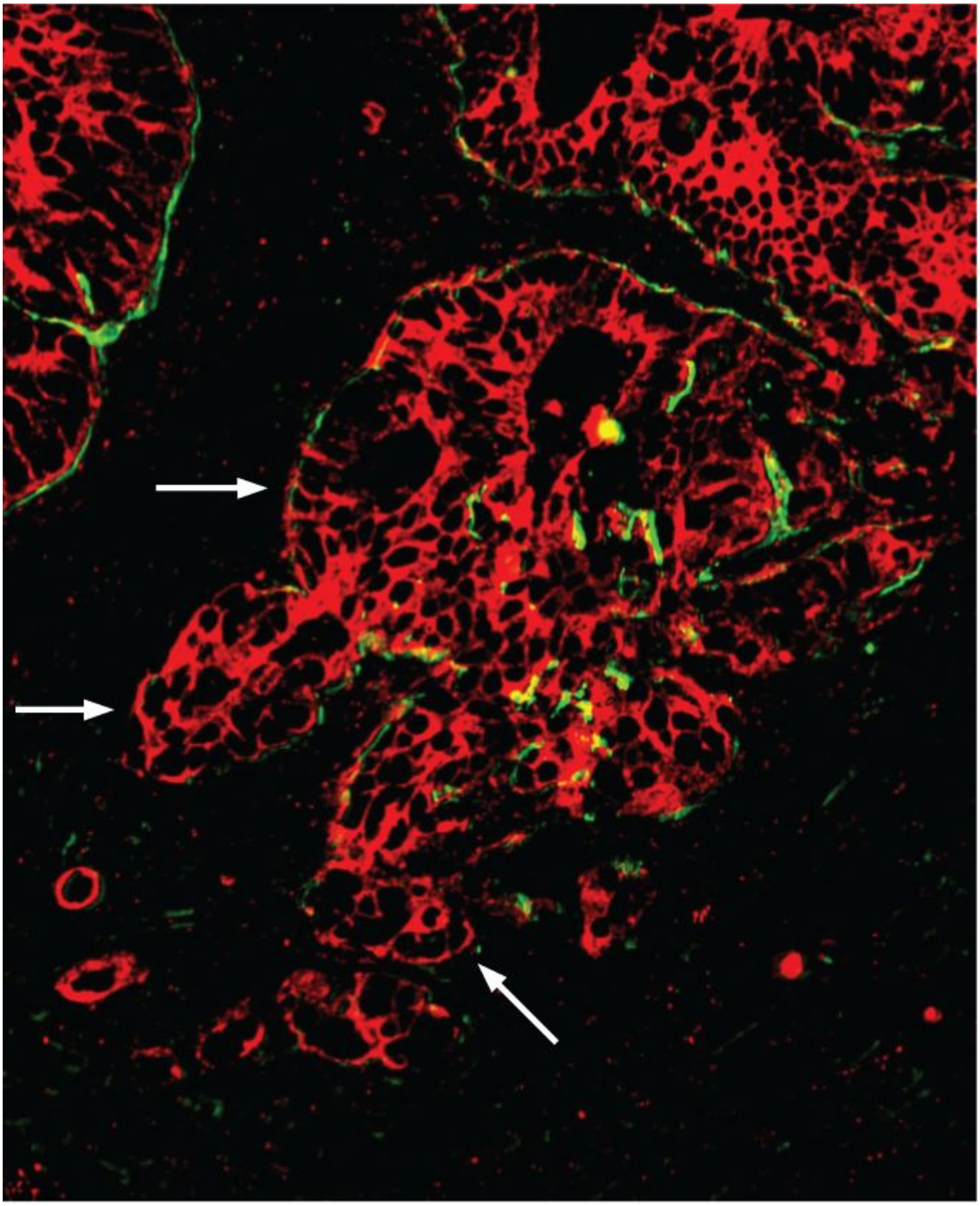
Our focus on carcinomas requires us to draw from earlier discussions of these tumors and the epithelial tissues in which they arise (see, for example, Sections 2.2 and 13.1). To recap briefly, the great majority of epithelial tissues are constructed according to a common set of architectural principles; in most cases, relatively thin sheets of epithelial cells sit atop deep, complex layers of various types of mesenchymal cells forming the stroma. Separating the two groups of cells is the specialized type of extracellular matrix (ECM) known as the basement membrane, sometimes termed the basal lamina (see Figure 2.3A and 13.10). This proteinaceous meshwork is constructed collaboratively by proteins secreted by both epithelial and stromal cells, with most of the basement membrane components being contributed by the epithelial cells.

By definition, carcinomas begin on the epithelial side of the basement membrane (BM) and are considered to be benign as long as the cells forming them remain on this side. Sooner or later, however, many carcinomas acquire the ability to breach the basement membrane (**Figure 14.4A and B**). In certain groups of cancer patients, loss of the BM in their tumors predicts the future course of their disease, specifically their subsequent development of metastatic disease (Figure 14.4C); consequently, loss of the BM is often a prelude to eventual dissemination of cells from the primary tumor.



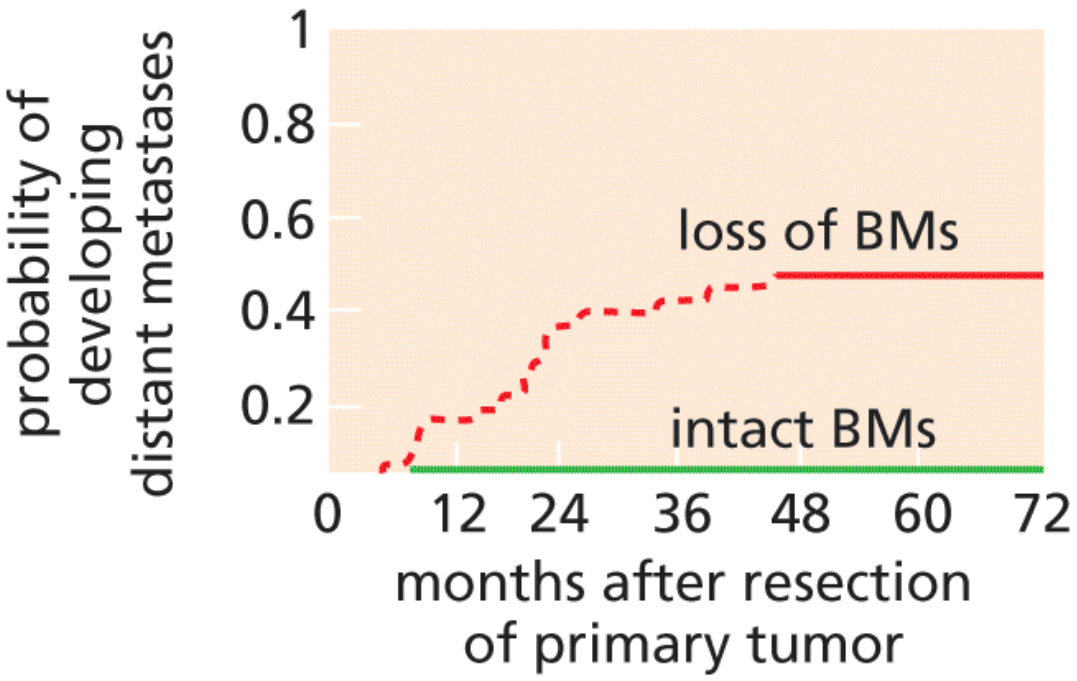
A fluorescence microscopy image in which spongy masses of red tissue are separated from one another by enclosing capsules of green tissue.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image in which a spongy mass of red tissue appears to have burst into fragments. There are only traces left of an enclosing capsule of green tissue.

(B)



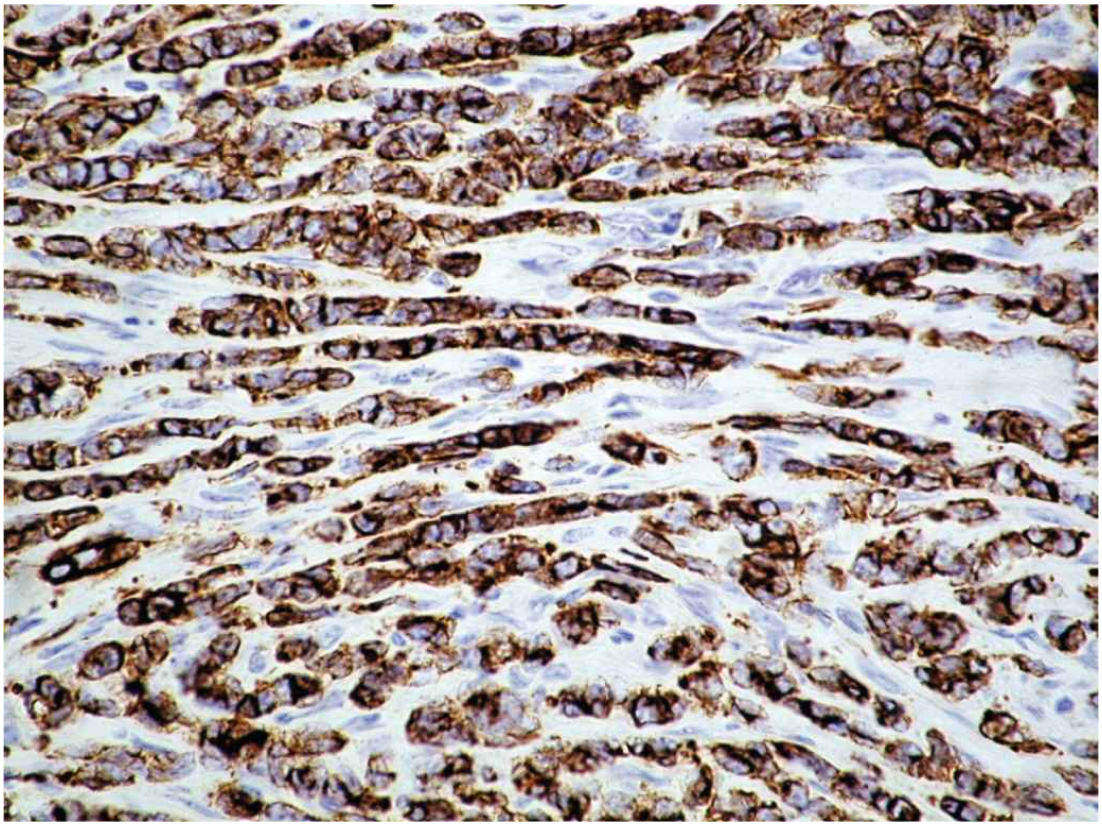
A line graph describing the probability of developing distant metastases as a function of time for two different conditions. With intact basement membranes, the probability remains essentially zero out to 72 months after resection of the primary tumor. With loss of basement membranes, the probability rises to about 50 percent after 48 months and remains at 50 percen thereafter.

(C)

Figure 14.4 Breaching of the basement membrane The basement membrane (BM) can be detected through use of antibodies reactive with laminin, a key component of this membrane (see Figure 13.10C). (A) In the more differentiated, less aggressive portions of a colorectal carcinoma, islands of carcinoma cells labeled with an anti-cytokeratin antibody (*red*) are surrounded by BMs (*green*) that have been detected with an antibody reactive with the α3 chain of laminin. The stroma between islands of carcinoma cells appears *black*. (B) In the portions of the tumor that appear to be less differentiated and more invasive, this staining reveals edges of islands of carcinoma cells (*arrows*) that lack BM, which has been broken down by the invading carcinoma cells and recruited myeloid cells. Now the carcinoma cells are in direct contact with the surrounding stroma. (C) For a group of patients whose high-grade rectal carcinomas (all classified as stage T3) had penetrated at least 5 mm into nearby fatty tissue, the loss of BM around tumor islands directly correlated with the probability of developing distant metastases. Thus, partial or complete loss of BM within their tumors indicated a strong

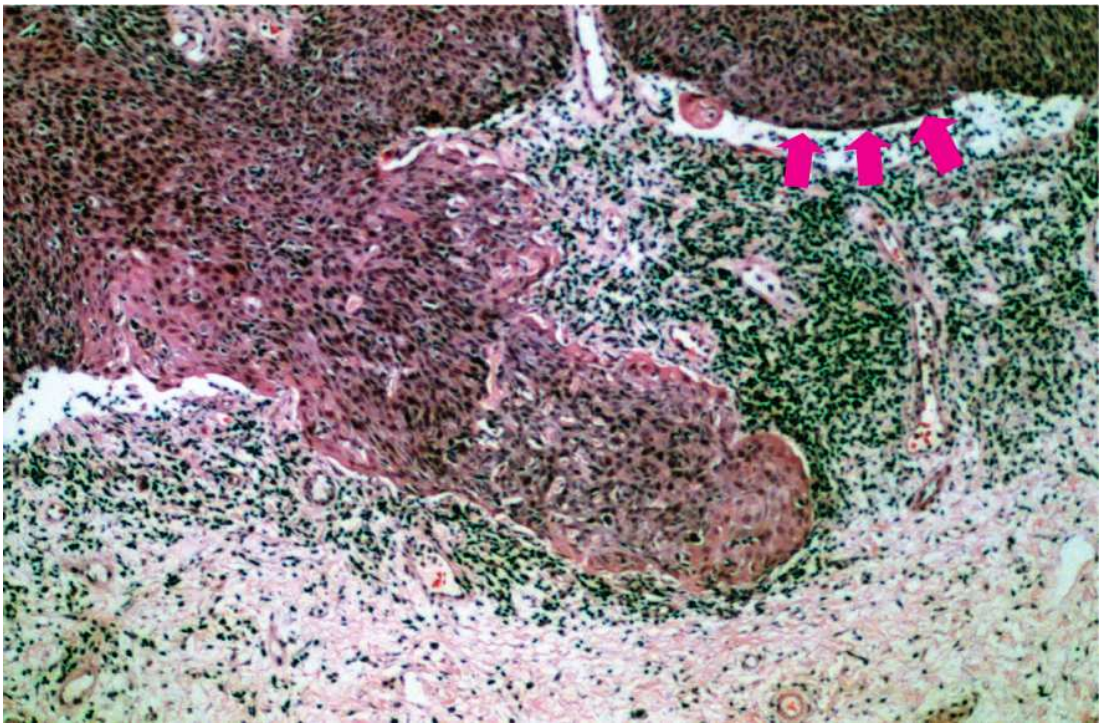
likelihood that metastases would develop during the five years after surgical removal of the primary tumors. (From S. Spaderna et al., *Gastroenterology* 131:830–840, 2006. With permission from Elsevier.)

Having breached the BM, cancer cells begin to invade the nearby stroma singly or in coherent groups, the latter process being called collective invasion (**Figure 14.5**). The tumors spawning these invasive neoplastic cells are now reclassified as malignant. The breakdown of the BM by invading carcinoma cells removes an important physical barrier to the further expansion of tumor cell populations. But in addition, as we learned in the last chapter, by degrading various components of the BM, invasive cells harvest growth and survival factors that have been sequestered by attachment to this specialized extracellular matrix. The invading cohorts of cancer cells that may arise following the breaching of the BM rely on cells at their leading edges that have activated the cell-biological program termed the epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), which we encountered previously in Section 13.3 and will be described in greater detail below.



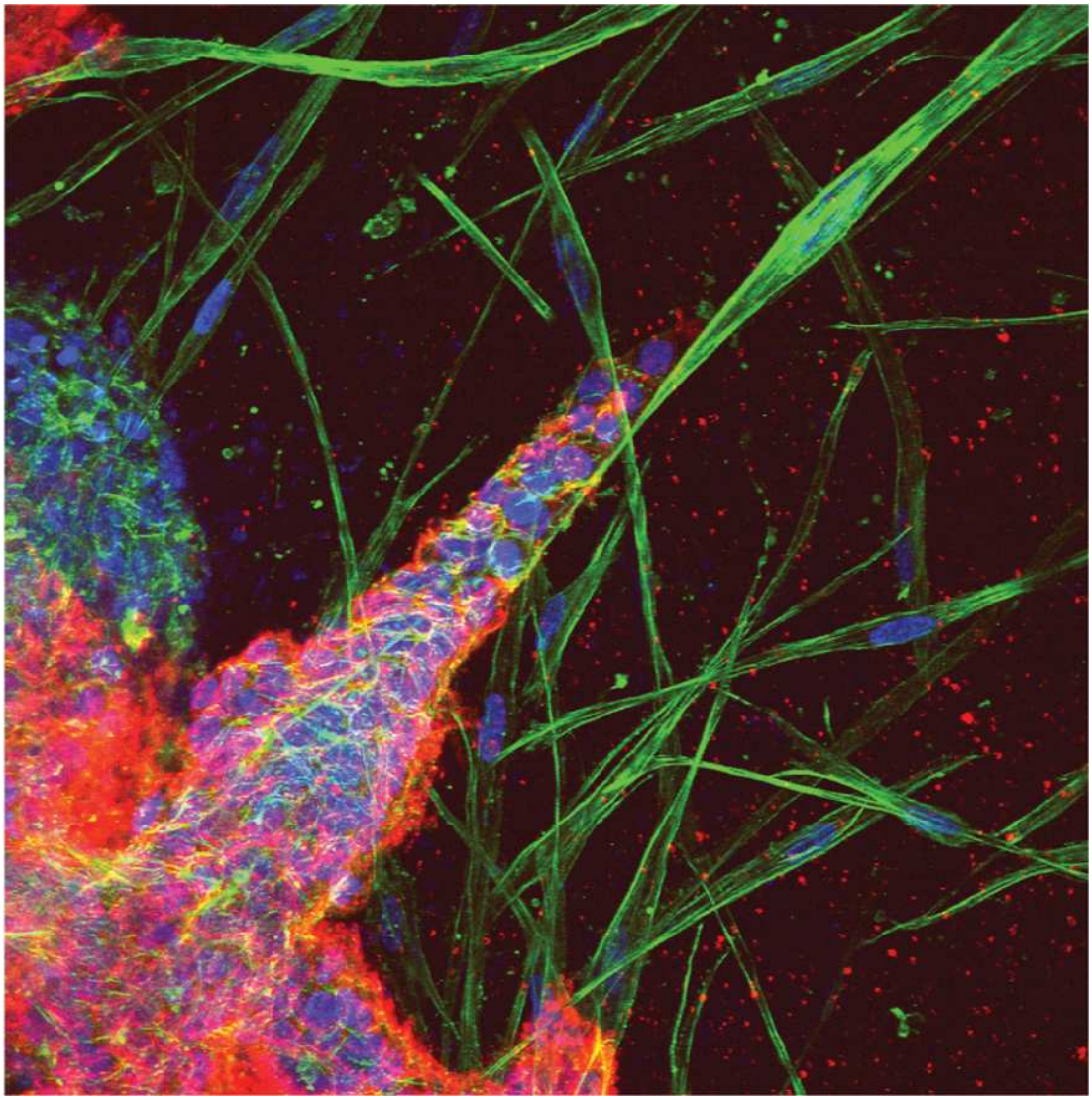
A histology stain image that shows white tissue shot through with horizontal tunnels filled with brown cells.

(A)



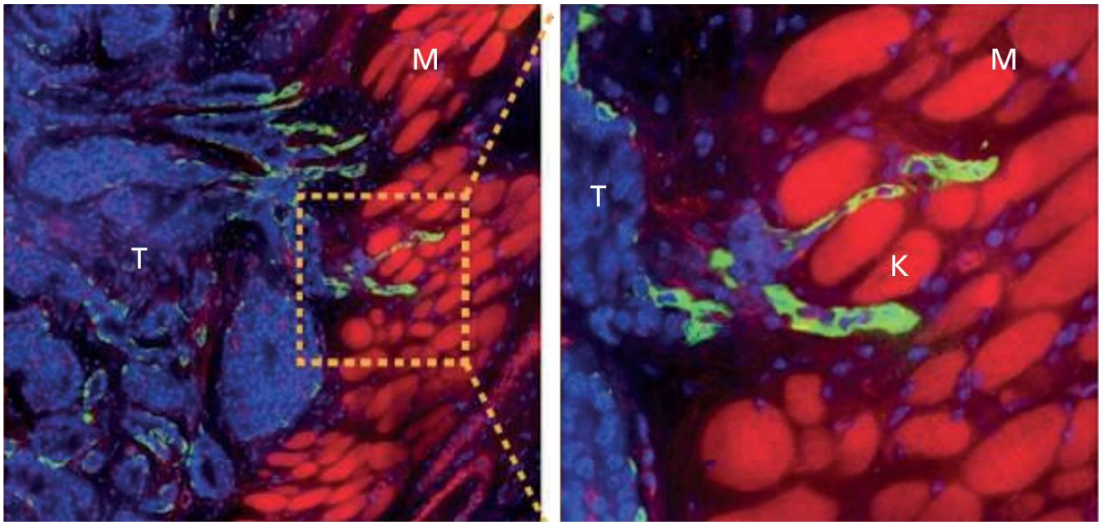
A histology stain image that shows a basement membrane, indicated by pink arrows, separating dark pink cancer cells above from greenish normal stroma below. In the left part of the image, the basement membrane has been breached and a thick tongue of cancer cells projects into the stroma.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image shows red tissue in the lower left corner, with a flamelike burst of red projected upward and to the right into tissue that is dark except for long, thin green streaks.

(C)



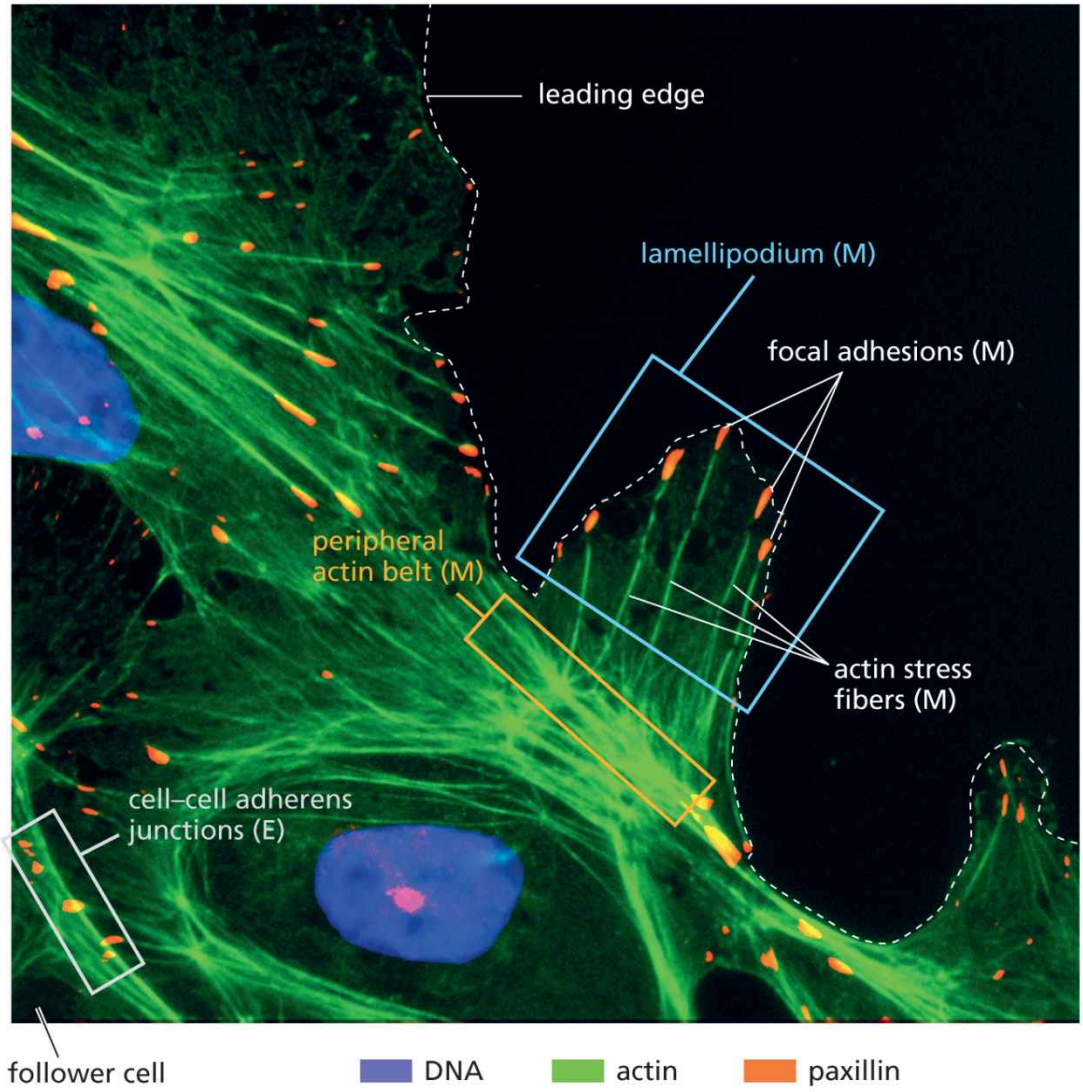
Two fluorescence microscopy images showing tumor cells invading muscle tissue. In the left one, a mass of blue cells marked T is sending a few green tendrils toward a mass of red cells on the right, marked M. The right image is a magnification of part of the left one, showing green tendrils marked K that have penetrated into the red cells.

(D)

Figure 14.5 Patterns of invasion (A) These invasive lobular mammary carcinoma cells (*brown*) have left the primary tumor (*not shown to the left*) and are proceeding rightward, one by one in single file, through channels they have carved in the adjacent stroma (*white, gray*). (B) Far more typical is the coordinated invasion of a phalanx of carcinoma cells, often termed collective invasion. In this squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, a tongue of many hundreds of cancer cells (*pink, brown*) has breached the basement membrane and is invading the stroma. The latter is characterized by both fibroblasts and inflammatory cells (*dark green*). The basement membrane is the *dark brown, horizontal line* (*pink arrows*) that separates the bulk of the carcinoma cells (*above*) from the stromal cells (*below*) and is uninterrupted except for a capillary and the tongue of invasive cancer cells. (C) Collective invasion can be modeled experimentally *in vitro*. Here, MCF-7 human breast cancer cells were cultured together with fibroblasts in a 3-dimensional (3D) matrix composed largely of collagen. (Such 3D matrices are thought to recapitulate the *in vivo* tissue environment more closely than 2D monolayer culture conditions.) The breast cancer cells, seen here invading through the collagen matrix, continue to adhere to one another via E-cadherin–containing adherens junctions (*red*). The actin stress fibers of the fibroblasts are stained with phalloidin (*green*); cell nuclei are stained with DAPI (*blue*). (D) In the MMTV-PyMT transgenic mouse model of mammary carcinoma pathogenesis, the bulk of the tumor cells (T, *blue, left*) at the invasive edge of a primary tumor are following

highly invasive leader cells (*green*) that have moved from a luminal differentiation state to a basal state, express the basal state-associated cytokeratin 14 marker (K), and have thereby activated a weak form of the EMT program (see Figure 14.12). These leader cells are invading into adjacent muscle tissue (M, *red, right*). (A, courtesy of J. Jonkers. B, courtesy of T.A. Ince. C, from O. Ilina and P. Friedl, *J. Cell Sci.* 122:3203–3208, 2009. With permission from The Company of Biologists. D, from K.J. Cheung, E. Gabrielson, Z. Werb and A.J. Ewald, *Cell* 155:1639–1651, 2013. With permission from Elsevier.)

In the cases of collective invasion, there is evidence that individual leading cells may simultaneously reside in two distinct phenotypic states: the leading halves of each of these cells (facing toward the direction of advance) may exhibit a variety of signs of invasiveness and components of the EMT program, whereas the lagging halves may continue to form adherens junctions with their followers; such junctions ensure the continued attachment of these leaders with the follower cells that form the bulk of the invading cohort (**Figure 14.6**).



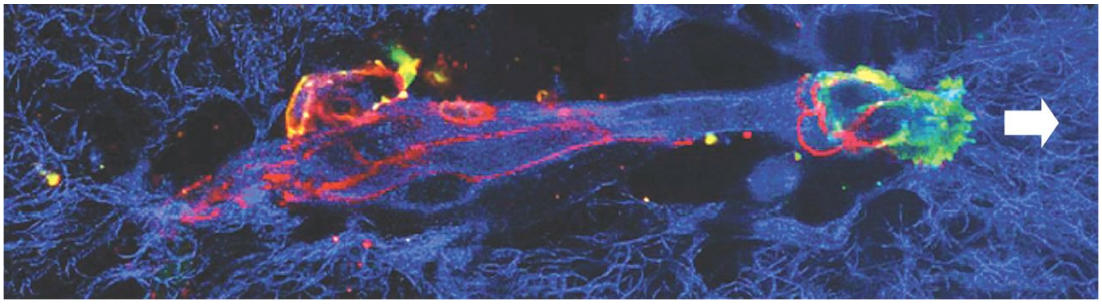
A highly detailed fluorescence microscopy image. Much of the image is crisscrossed by long, straight, green actin fibers, the thickest of which terminate in short orange spots made of paxillin. Some of the green fibers encircle a large nucleus of blue D N A, one of the two nuclei visible in the image. An irregular dashed line labeled, leading edge, separates the colored material from a black region in the upper right corner. A prominent band of green fibers running from the upper left to the lower right, between the nuclei and the leading edge, is labeled, peripheral actin belt, M. A large protrusion into the black region, on the leading edge side of the actin belt, is labeled, lamellipodium, M. Five fingerlike green fibers in this structure are labeled, actin stress fibers, and their orange termination spots along the leading edge are labeled, focal adhesions, M. In the lower left corner of the image is a cell labeled, follower cell. The actin fibers separating this cell from the one with the encircled blue nucleus are labeled, cell–cell adherens junctions, E.

Figure 14.6 Cellular polarization at edge of invading epithelial sheet The cells at the edge of a wounded epithelial sheet undertake to fill the wounded area and restore the integrity of the epithelial sheet. To do so, they activate transiently an EMT program (see Figure 13.15A). As they move into the wound site, they retain tight associations with tightly adhering follower cells (*lower left corner*). This continued association is enabled by their undergoing a form of intracellular polarization, with the sector within the cell that faces the leading edge displaying certain mesenchymal (M) traits, while the sector facing the follower cells retaining epithelial (E) traits, as evidenced by the continued assembly of E-cadherin-containing adherens junctions (*lower left*) formed with follower, fully epithelial cells. Included among the mesenchymal traits are the actin stress fibers (*green*) ending with focal adhesions containing paxillin (*orange*). (Courtesy of P. Savagner.)

Recall that even before carcinoma cells breach the basement membrane, they often succeed in stimulating angiogenesis on the stromal side of the membrane, apparently by dispatching angiogenic factors through this porous barrier to endothelial cells within the stroma (see Figure 13.37B). Signals borne by other soluble factors may also flow through an intact BM in the other direction: inflammatory cells such as macrophages on the stromal side of this membrane may induce initial EMT on the epithelial side (see Section 13.3). Nevertheless, once the BM is broken down, carcinoma cells are placed in a far better position for executing subsequent steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade.

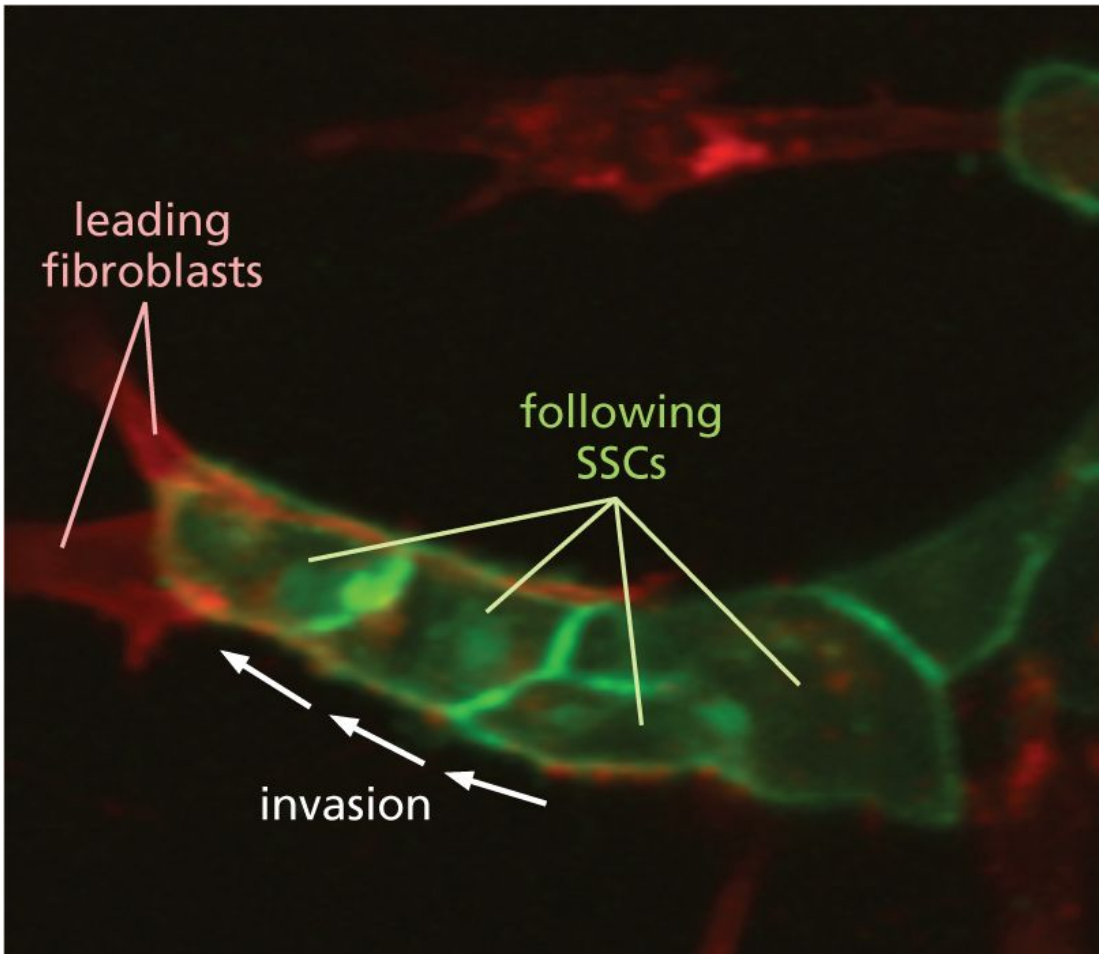
Carcinoma cells invading the stroma can gain direct access to the blood and lymphatic vessels, which are normally found only on the stromal side of the basement membrane. Closer contact with the capillaries affords cancer cells improved access to the nutrients and oxygen carried by the blood (see also Figure 13.40B). In addition, their invasive properties enable these cancer cells to move through the walls and into the lumina (that is, the bores) of blood and lymphatic vessels. This invasion into vessels is often termed intravasation and depends on the ability of individual cancer cells or small clumps of these cells to break away from their neoplastic neighbors and enter into these vessels.

Local invasion seems to depend invariably on the release of secreted proteases, which are required to remodel the extracellular matrix (ECM), thereby carving out space for the advance of cancer cells (**Figure 14.7A**). In some tumors, invading carcinoma cells make their own proteases, such as MMP-2 and MMP-9, while in others a variety of stromal cells, notably fibroblasts and macrophages, are recruited and induced to produce and release these enzymes, allowing flocks of carcinoma cells to follow closely behind them (Figure 14.7B–C).



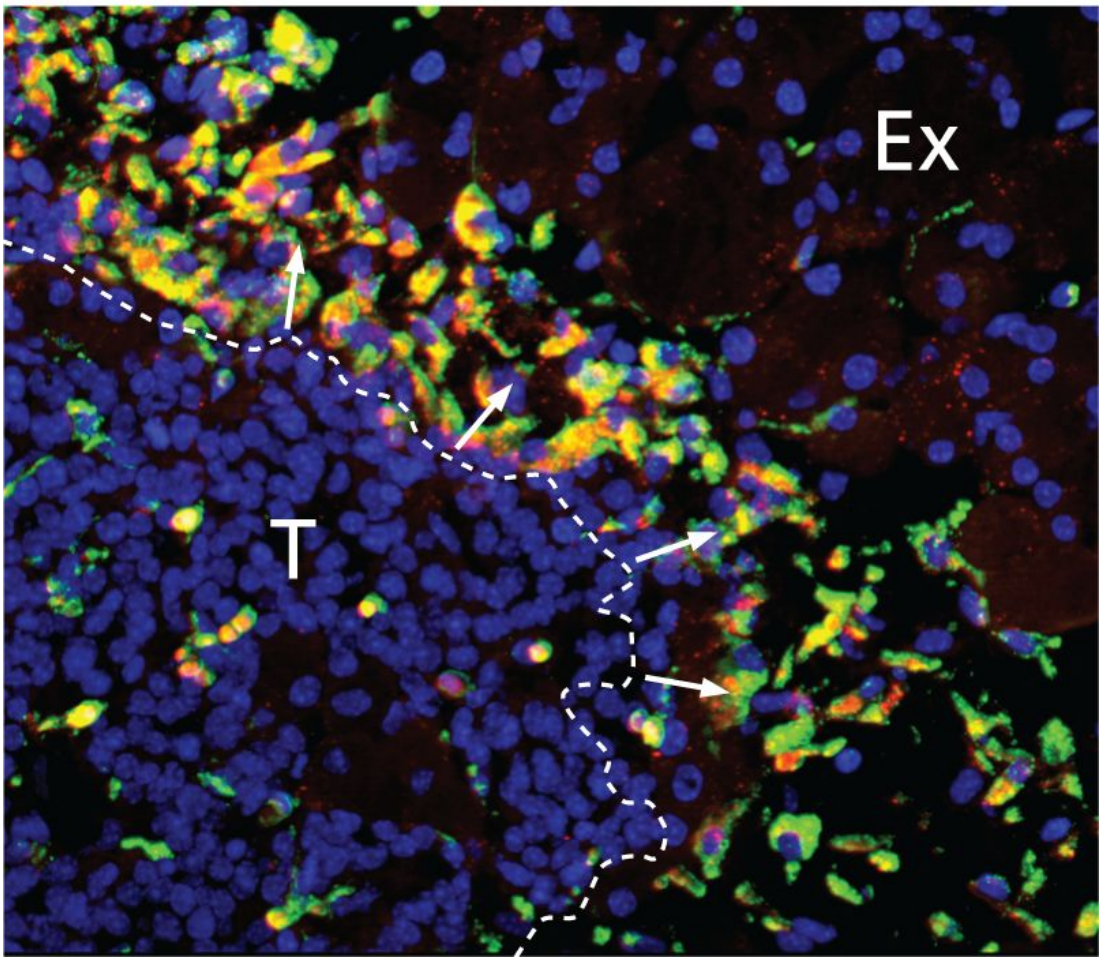
A fluroescence microscopy image that shows a horizontally elongating grouping of cells within a dark blue fibrous matrix. The cells are streaked with red along the left end and middle of the grouping, with a yellow green head on the right. This head is near a right-pointing white arrow that indicates the direction of motion.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a cluster of cells shaped into a long green curve moving to the left and upward, with white arrows indicating the

direction of invasion. On the left tip are a few small red protrusions labeled, leading fibroblasts. The green curve is labeled, following S S Sees.
(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image of an advancing tumor. A region in the lower left, labeled T, consists mostly of dark blue nuclei with a few specks of green and yellow. Curving around this region is an irregular dashed line. Arrows indicate that this is the leading edge of a tumor advancing upward and to the right, into a region labeled E x. In this region, the cells nearest the tumor's leading edge are lit up in yellow and green. Further away from the leading edge, only blue nuclei are visible in the E x region. They are packed less densely than in the tumor.

(C)

Figure 14.7 Invasion through the extracellular matrix and its control by stromal cells (A) Carcinoma cell invasion requires degradation of the extracellular matrix (ECM), as illustrated by this confocal micrograph of a cohort

of 5–10 melanoma cells that are moving together through a collagen matrix (*blue*); like normal melanocytes, they continue to adhere to one another through adherens junctions that are formed by E-cadherin molecules (*red*). Large gaps in the matrix surrounding the melanoma cells (*black*) indicate areas that have been degraded by the advancing cancer cells or associated stromal cells. At the leading invasive edge (*white arrow*), the melanoma cells are displaying β1 integrins (*green*), which enable them to attach to the still-intact ECM lying ahead in their path. (B) In a variety of tumors, cancer cells recruit and co-opt stromal cells, which clear the invasion path by degrading the ECM, with the carcinoma cells following close on their heels. In this case, human oral squamous cell carcinoma cells (SCCs, *green*) are being led by a small group of carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (*red*) in an *in vitro* experimental model of cancer cell invasion. The direction of invasion by these cells (*arrows*) was determined using time-lapse microscopy. (C) In the Rip-Tag transgenic model of pancreatic islet carcinogenesis (see Figure 13.35), the carcinoma cells forming the leading edge [dashed line at edge of the tumor (T)] recruit macrophages (*green*) and, by stimulating them with interleukin-4 (IL-4), cause them to release cathepsins (*red-orange*), a class of secreted proteases distinct from matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). Release of these cathepsins at the invasive front of the carcinoma cells is essential for invasion by these cells (*white arrows*) into the adjacent exocrine pancreas (Ex). Cathepsin-producing macrophages are seen here in *yellow*. Nuclei are stained *blue* with DAPI (*blue*). (A, from P. Friedl, Y. Hegerfeldt and M. Tusch, *Int. J. Dev. Biol*. 48:441–449, 2004. With permission from UPV/EHU Press. B, from C. Gaggioli et al., *Nat. Cell Biol*. 9:1392–1400, 2007. With permission from Nature.C, courtesy of B.B. Gadea and J.A. Joyce; from V.L. Gocheva et al., *Genes Dev*. 24:241–255, 2010. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

invasion–metastasis cascade
: A succession of steps that enables primary tumor cells to spawn metastases, doing so via local invasion, intravasation into blood or lymphatic vessels, dissemination to distant tissues, extravasation into the parenchyma of those tissues, formation of micrometastases, and ultimately colonization leading to the formation of macroscopic metastases.

benign
: (1) Describing a growth that is confined to a specific site within a tissue and gives no evidence of invading adjacent tissue. (2) Referring to an epithelial growth that has not penetrated through the basement membrane.

collective invasion
: Process whereby a cohesive mass of invasive cancer cells invades in a coordinated fashion into nearby tissue.

malignant
: Describing a growth that shows evidence of being locally invasive and possibly even metastatic.

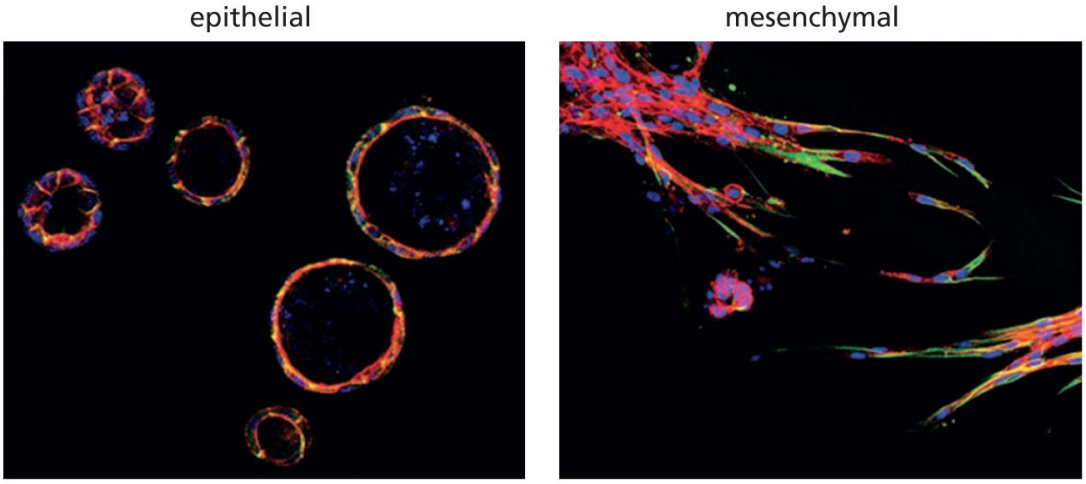
intravasation
: Process of invading into a blood or lymphatic vessel from the surrounding tissue. *See also* **extravasation**.

OceanofPDF.com

14.2 Epithelial–mesenchymal transitions profoundly reshape the phenotypes of carcinoma cells

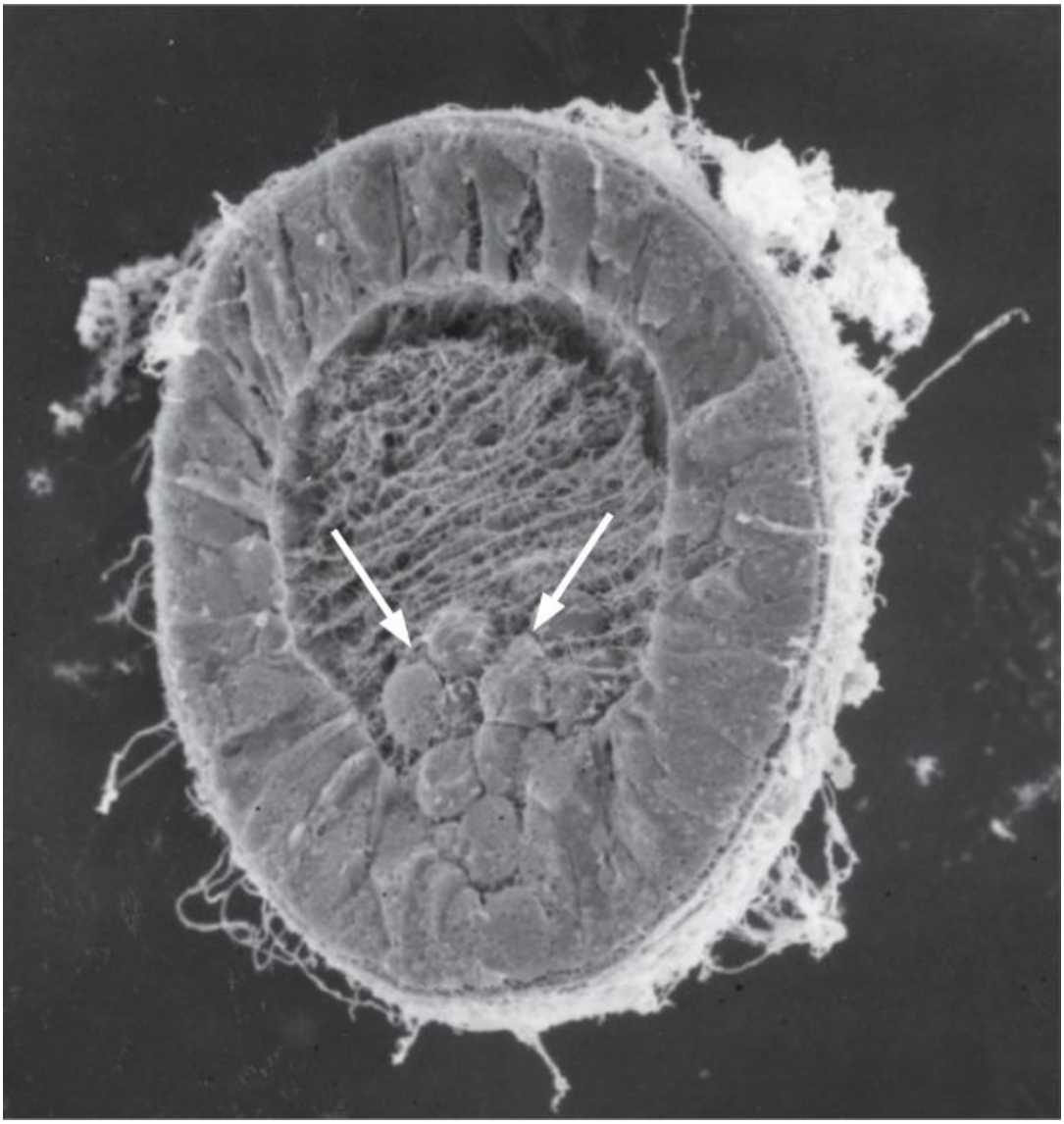
The first of the many steps leading to metastasis—the acquisition of local invasiveness—involves major changes in the phenotype of cancer cells within the primary tumor. As before, we will focus this discussion on epithelial tissues and the carcinomas that they spawn. The organization of the epithelial cell layers in normal tissues is incompatible with the motility and the invasiveness displayed by malignant carcinoma cells (see Figure 2.15), yet elements of this epithelial organization plan continues to be respected in many primary carcinomas. In these tumors, well-organized sheets of epithelial cells are present, although their overall topology may be quite different from that of comparable normal epithelia (see, for example, Figure 2.5).

In order to acquire motility and invasiveness, carcinoma cells must shed many of their epithelial phenotypes, detach from epithelial sheets, and undergo a drastic alteration—the epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), which was mentioned in the context of wound healing (see Section 13.3). Recall that an EMT involves the shedding by epithelial cells of their characteristic morphology and gene expression pattern and the assumption of a shape and transcriptional program more characteristic of mesenchymal cells (**Figure 14.8A**). (The EMT represents a cell-biological "program," in that it involves the coordinated changes of the expression of hundreds of genes and thus proteins, with the implication that this program is templated directly or indirectly by a cell's genome and its developmental history.)



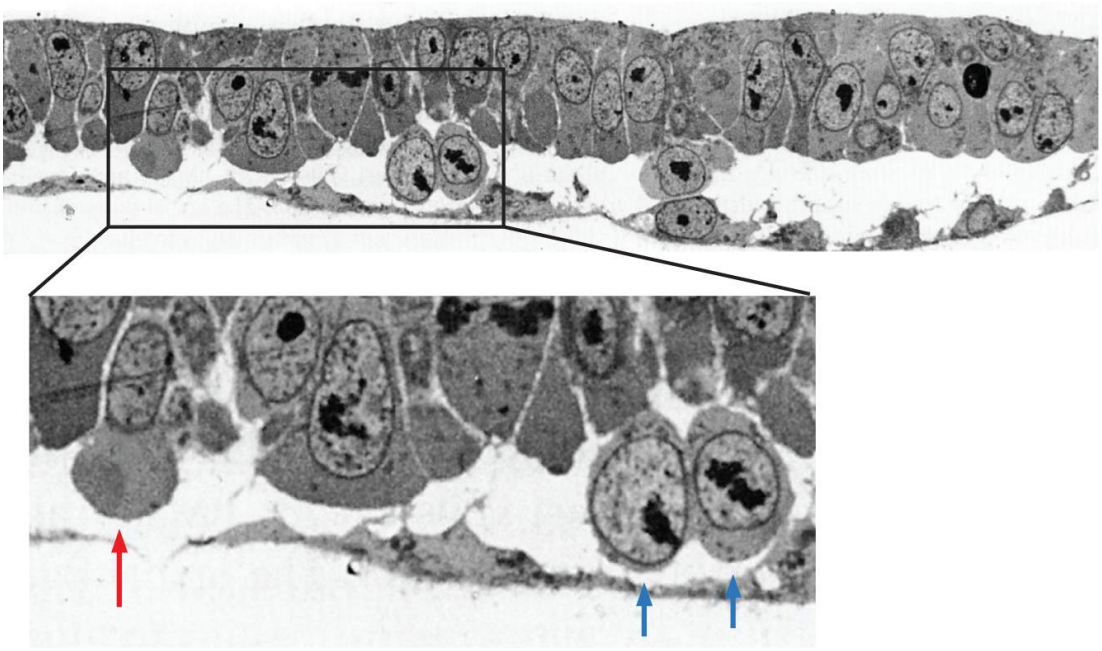
Two fluorescence microscopy images. On the left, epithelial cells have formed rings colored in various shades of orange, with blue nuclei visible. On the right, mesenchymal cells have formed into long, multicolored spiky structures, again with blue nuclei visible.

(A)



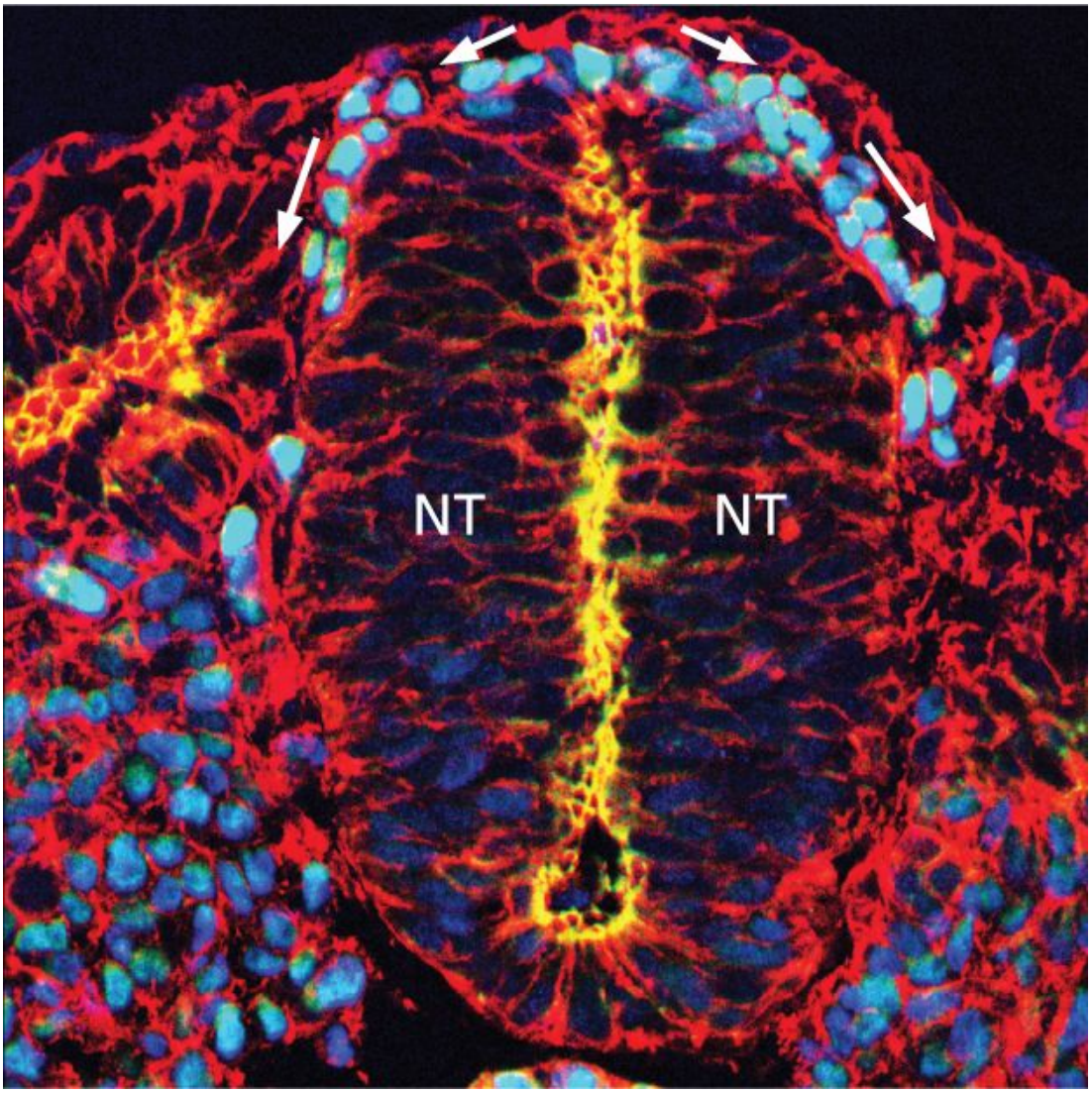
A scanning electron micrograph of a circular embryo. The edges have a thick border, and inside the hollow center is a fibrous mass. White arrows point to small clumps at the bottom of this hollow.

(B)



A scanning electron micrograph of a horizontal layer of cells shown in cross section, with one portion also shown enlarged. In this portion, three cells hang below the rest. One, marked by a red arrow, protrudes downward while the nucleus remains higher up. In the other two, marked by blue arrows, the nuclei have descended and the cells appear ready to detach.

(C)



A fluorescence microscopy image showing a round red structure with a vertical yellow line in the center. It is surrounded by spongy red tissue and blue nuclei, which white arrows indicate as moving downwards from the top of the circle along the edges. On either side of the yellow line is the label, N T

(D)

Figure 14.8 The epithelial–mesenchymal transition and embryogenesis (A) Epithelial (MDCK; Madin-Darby canine kidney) cells form ducts when propagated *in vitro* in 3D-matrices designed to model the *in vivo* microenvironment (*left*). However, when grown under identical conditions, MDCK cells forced to express the Prrx1 EMT-TF form networks of mesenchymal cells (*right*). Note that the dramatic morphological changes are accompanied by the acquisition of motility and invasive properties (*not shown*). (Nuclei revealed

by DAPI staining, *blue*; actin filaments, *red*; E-cadherin (epithelial marker), *yellow-green*, left panel; vimentin (mesenchymal marker), *green*, right panel.) (B) This scanning electron micrograph shows the delamination of cells from the primitive ectoderm of a sea urchin embryo (*white arrows*) and their migration into the interior of the embryo—the process of gastrulation. These cells have become round and acquired motility in anticipation of their forming the rudiments of the mesoderm—changes associated with an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT). They are migrating along strands of extracellular matrix in the blastocoel of this early embryo. (C) The process of gastrulation in mammals, such as in the early rabbit embryo studied here, is superficially quite different but depends on very similar processes. As revealed by this transmission electron micrograph, one cell of the primitive ectoderm (also termed epiblast; lower panel, *red arrow*) is in the midst of undergoing an EMT, while two other cells (*blue arrows*) have already delaminated from the epiblast and become mesenchymal, thereby initiating the formation of mesodermal tissues. (D) Certain cells derive from the upper region of the neural tube (NT, *center*) and can be immunostained for the Sox 9 transcription factor. These cells (*light blue, top*) arise in the embryonic neural crest of chordates and undergo an EMT, delaminate from this epithelium, acquire motility and invasiveness, and disperse (*white arrows*) throughout the embryo, where they form melanocytes, much of the peripheral nervous systems, and much of the skeleton of the face. The neural epithelium is immunostained for N-cadherin (*yellow*). All cells are stained with phalloidin to reveal their actin cytoskeleton (*red*) and with DAPI to indicate their nuclei (*dark blue*). (A, from M.A. Nieto, *Science* 342:1234850, 2013. With permission from AAAS. B, from G.N. Cherr et al., *Microsc. Res. Tech*. 22:11–22, 1992. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C, from C. Viebahn, B. Mayer and A. Miething, *Acta Anat. (Basel)* 154:99–110, 1995. With permission from Karger. D, courtesy of J. Briscoe; see also J. Yang and R.A. Weinberg, *Dev. Cell* 14:818–829, 2008.)

In its normal manifestations, the EMT is used in specific morphogenetic steps occurring during embryogenesis, when tissue remodeling depends on EMTs executed by various types of epithelial cells (**Table 14.1**). During one of the steps of gastrulation, for example, individual cells peel away from the ectoderm and migrate inward toward the center of the embryo to form the mesoderm, the precursor of mesenchymal tissues, including (in chordates) fibroblasts and hematopoietic cells. This conversion of ectodermal cells, which at this stage are arrayed in an epithelial cell layer, to those having a mesodermal phenotype involves an EMT (Figure 14.8B and C). At the same time, the cells undergoing an EMT acquire the ability to translocate from one location (the outer cell layer) to another (the interior) within the embryo.

Table 14.1 Examples of EMTs during mouse embryonic development

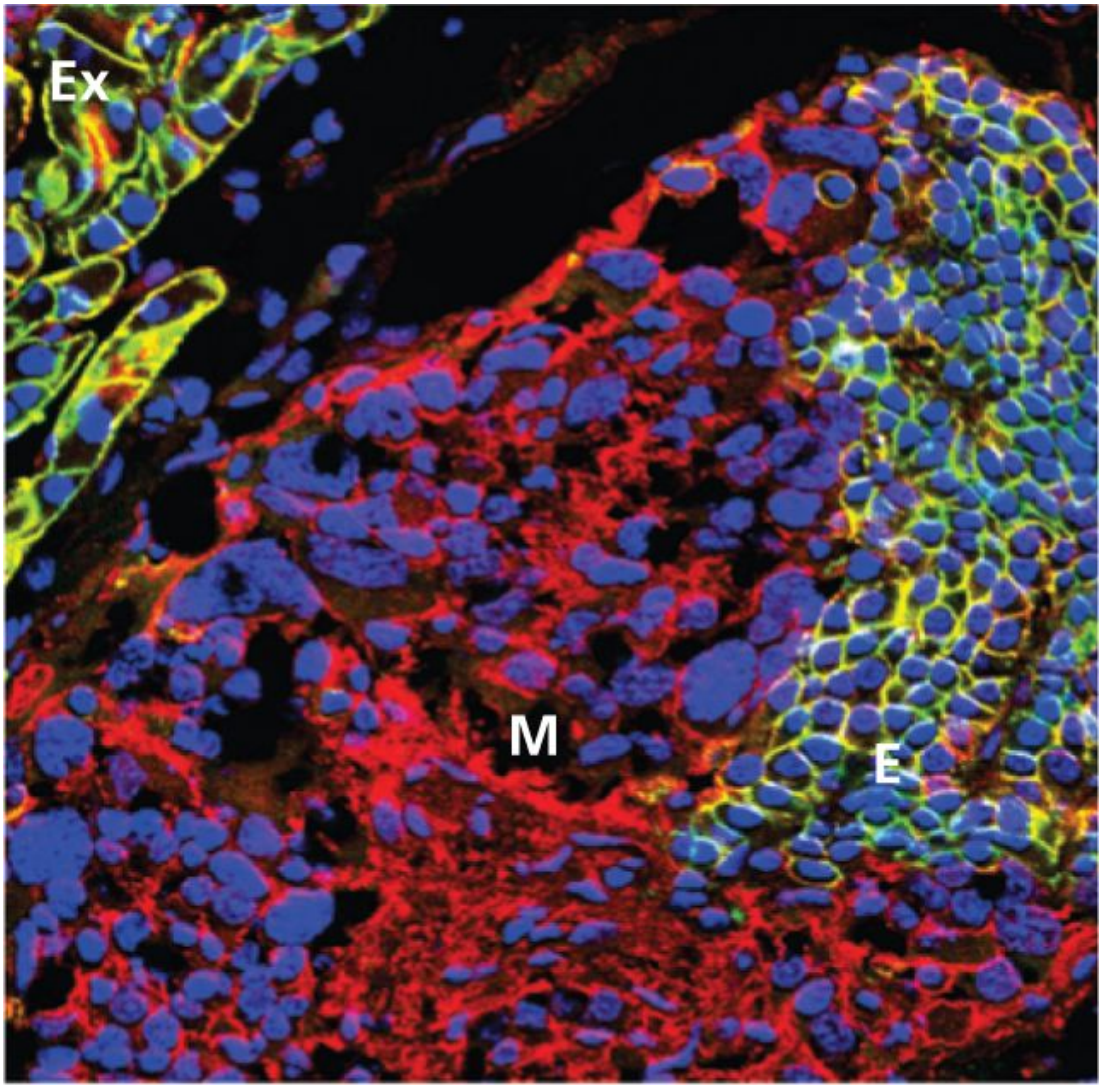
	Transition	
Process	**From**	**To**
gastrulation	epiblast	mesoderm
prevalvular mesenchyme in the heart	endothelium	atrial and ventricular septum
neural crest cells	neural plate	neural crest cells, which can yield bone, muscle, peripheral nervous system
somitogenesis	somite walls	sclerotome
palate formation	oral epithelium	mesenchymal cells
Müllerian duct regression	Müllerian tract	mesenchymal cells

Adapted from P. Savagner, *BioEssays* 23:912–923, 2001.

The migration of neuroepithelial cells from the neural crest into the mesenchyme of early vertebrate embryos also depends on a transformation of cell phenotype that can best be described as an EMT (Figure 14.8D). Similarly, the migration of myogenic precursor cells (the progenitors of muscle cells) from the dermomyotome of the early embryo to the limb buds depends on an EMT-like transformation of cell phenotype. Even late steps in morphogenesis, such as the formation of the palate, take advantage of the powers of EMT programs (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.1**). All of these processes bear a striking resemblance to the EMT undertaken by the epithelial cells at the edge of a wound that has damaged an epithelial cell sheet; these cells must undergo a transient EMT in order to migrate into the wound site and close the gap in the epithelial cell sheet that was created by the wounding process (see Figure 13.15A).

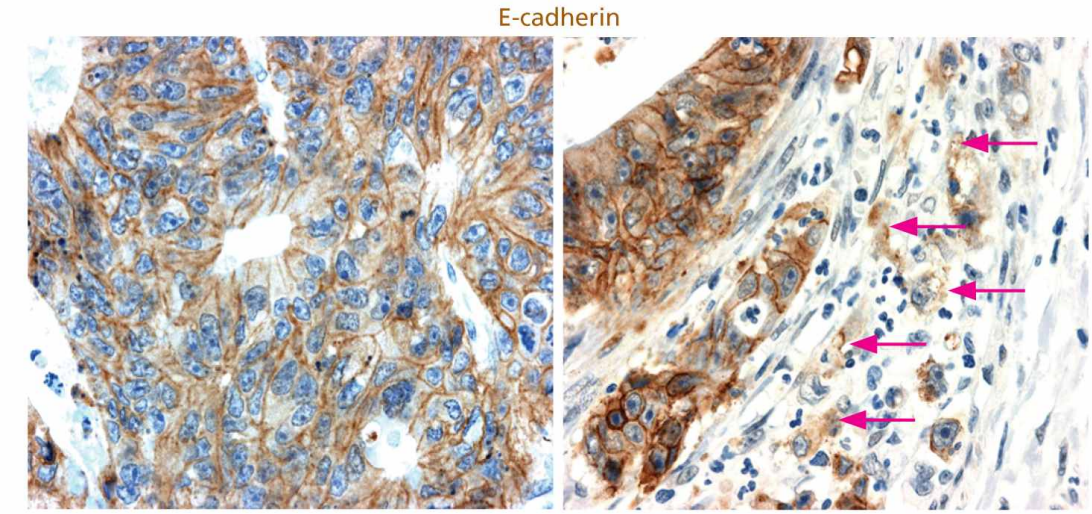
Hence, EMT programs play important roles in two aspects of normal physiology—developmental morphogenesis and wound healing.

As described below, an EMT can also be seen at the edges of carcinomas that are invading adjacent tissues (**Figure 14.9**; see also Figure 14.5D). This pathological process is very similar to the EMTs occurring during early embryogenesis and wound healing. It is plausible, though hardly proven, that all types of carcinoma cells must activate components of an EMT program in order to become motile and invasive.



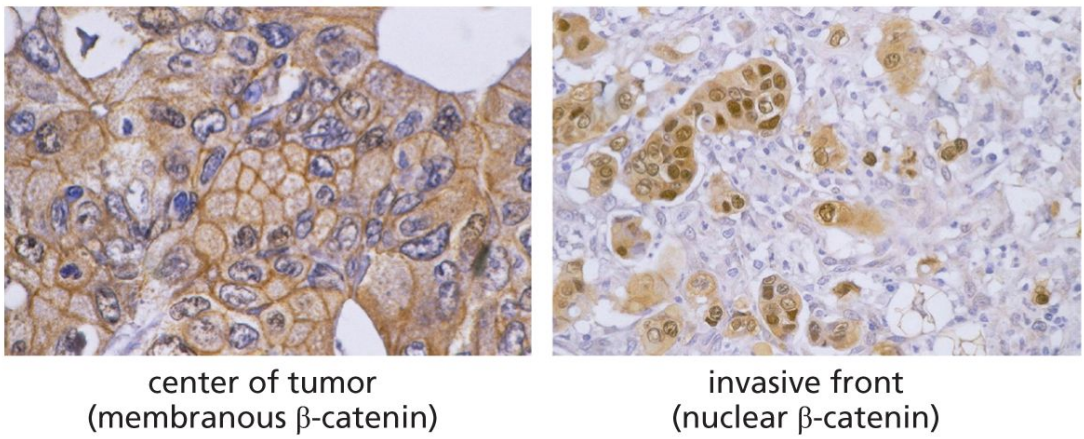
A fluorescence microscopy image of epithelial and mesenchymal pancreatic cancer cells. The epithelial cells, on the right, are labeled E. They have small, close-packed blue nuclei that are surrounded by green and yellow. The mesenchymal cells, on the left, are labeled M. They have larger, more loosely packed blue nuclei that are surrounded by red.

(A)



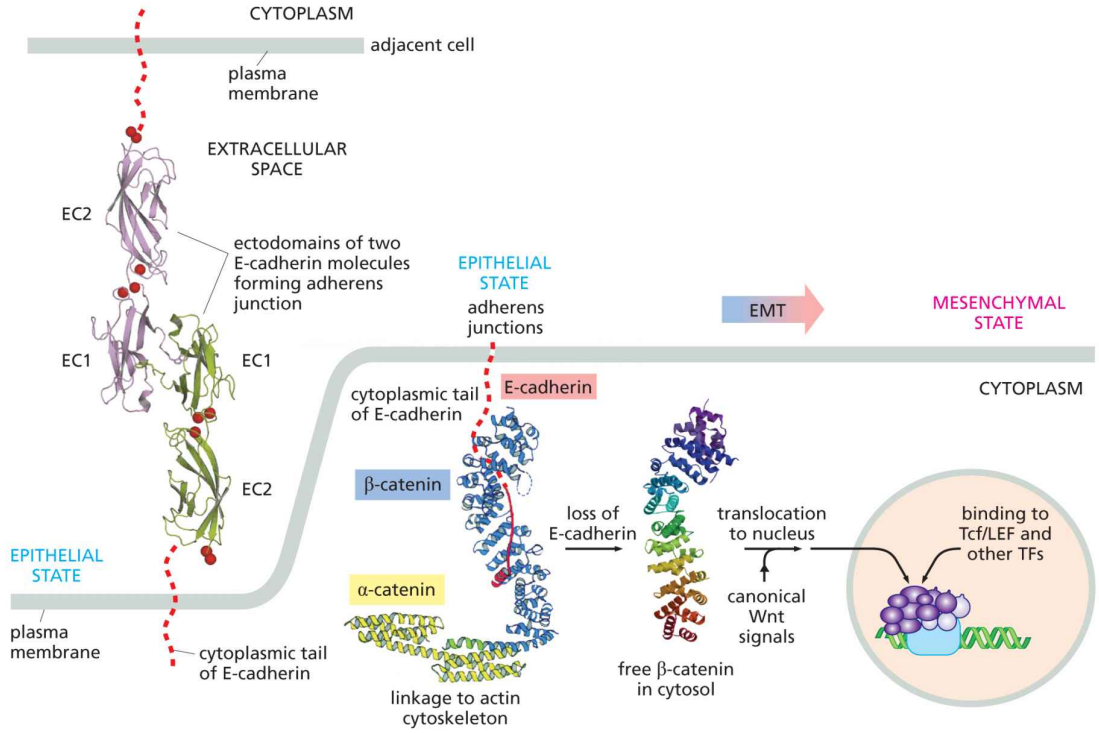
Two histology stain images in which brown indicates the presence of E-cadherin. In the image on the left, cells with large, pale blue nuclei and brown cytoplasms cling together. In the image on the right, there are dark brown streaks on the left, but most of the image to right of those streaks is filled with tissue in which the nuclei are smaller and the cytoplasms are mostly clear, with just patches of light brown here and there, marked by arrows.

(B)



Two histology stain images in which brown indicates the presence of beta-catenin. In the image on the left, labeled center of tumor, membranous beta-catenin, cells with blue nuclei and brown cell walls crowd thickly together. In the image on the right, labeled invasive front, nuclear beta-catenin, isolated patches of brown cells with dark brown nuclei are surrounded by cells of normal tissue.

(C)



A schematic of the epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Initially, a cell in the epithelial state is linked to another cell by the ectodomains of two E-cadherin molecules forming an adherens junction. Each molecule has an E C 1 domain at the head, where the junction occurs, an E C 2 domain in the middle, and a cytoplasmic tail that penetrates that molecule's plasma membrane. Within the cytoplasm, the tail is linked via beta-catenin and alpha-catenin to the cell's actin cytoskeleton. Loss of E-cadherin leads to free beta-catenin in the cytosol. Under the influence of canonical W n t signals, the free beta-catenin translocates to the nucleus, where it binds to T c f slash L E F and other T Effs. The completes the transition to the mesenchymal state.

(D)

Figure 14.9 Epithelial–mesenchymal transition at the invasive edge of a tumor (A) In the Rip-Tag transgenic mouse model of pancreatic islet carcinogenesis (see Figure 13.35), neoplastic cells undergo an EMT that enables them to invade the surrounding exocrine pancreas (Ex). Carcinoma cells at the far right continue to reside in an epithelial state (E), exhibit E-cadherin staining (*green*), and in many places exhibit overlapping β-catenin staining (*red*). The overlap of these two proteins, indicating their co-localization in adherens junctions, appears as *yellow*. Those carcinoma cells that have undergone an EMT

and become more mesenchymal (M) have lost E-cadherin staining and show greatly increased levels of cytoplasmic β-catenin staining. Nuclei are stained *blue* with DAPI. (B) Colon carcinoma cells at the invasive edge of a primary human tumor undergo changes in gene expression and the localization of certain proteins. Although E-cadherin (*brown*) is strongly expressed on the plasma membranes of cells in the core of a primary tumor, where it forms adherens junctions (*left panel*) that delineate the associations between adjacent cells, its expression decreases substantially in individual invasive cells at the edge of this tumor (*pink arrows, right panel*) and is no longer localized to their plasma membranes, indicating that it no longer participates in forming adherens junctions. (C) Tumor cells in the center of this colon tumor (*dashed lines, left panel*) express β-catenin (*dark red*) under their plasma membranes and diffusely throughout the cytoplasm, whereas tumor cells at the invasive edge (*right panel*) show intense β-catenin staining in their nuclei. (D) The ectodomain of E-cadherin displayed by an epithelial cell dimerizes with the ectodomain of a second E-cadherin molecule displayed by an adjacent epithelial cell (*left*). Calcium ions, which are essential for the normal secondary structure and rigidity of the ectodomains, are shown as *red balls*. At the same time, the cytoplasmic tail of E-cadherin is linked via β-catenin and several other molecules to the actin cytoskeleton. β-Catenin also functions in the cytoplasm as a key intermediary in the Wnt signaling pathway (see Section 6.10). Loss of E-cadherin from the plasma membrane liberates β-catenin molecules, which may then accumulate in the cytoplasm and, under the influence of Wnt-initiated signals, migrate to the nucleus and associate with Tcf/LEF and other transcription factors, thereby inducing expression of genes orchestrating the EMT program. (A, from M. Herzig et al., *Oncogene* 26:2290–2298, 2007. With permission from Nature. B, courtesy of T. Brabletz. C, courtesy of T. Brabletz and T. Kirchner. D, from T.A. Graham et al., *Cell* 103:885–896, 2000, PDB: 2BCT; and from E. Parisini et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 373:401–411, 2007. Both with permission from Elsevier.)

The strong resemblance between the pathological process of tumor invasiveness and normal steps of embryogenesis and wound healing suggests a mechanistic model that is supported by extensive evidence gathered in recent years: the complex program of cellular reorganization exhibited by invasive carcinoma cells depends on the reactivation of a latent behavioral program whose expression is usually confined to early embryogenesis and to damaged adult tissues. Following this thinking, once carcinoma cells acquire access to an expressed EMT program, they can exploit it to profoundly change their own morphology, motility, and ability to invade nearby cell layers. This model implies that the multiple changes in cell phenotype associated with invasiveness, some of which are described below, need not be acquired piecemeal by carcinoma cells. Instead, these cells simply activate a morphogenetic program that is

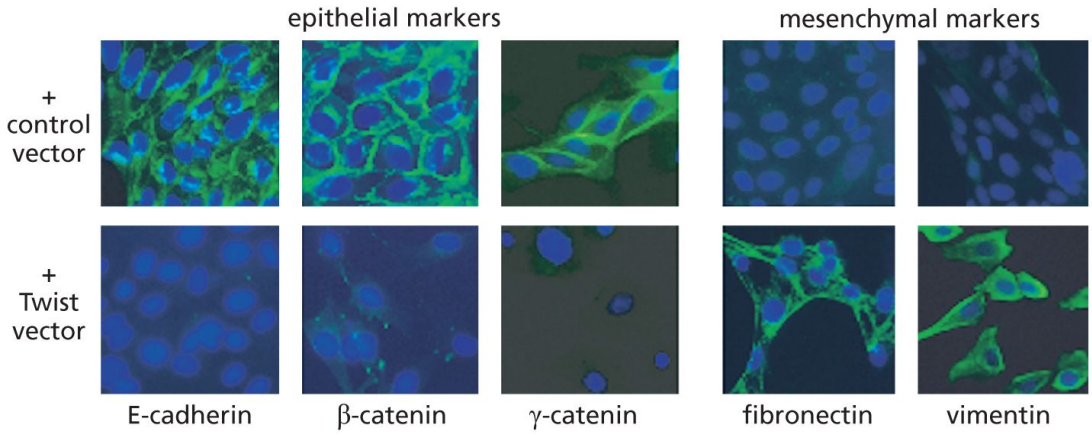
already encoded in their genomes. (This logic echoes our earlier discussion in Section 13.3 of epithelial–stromal interactions, where we argued that cancer cells co-opt entire wound-healing programs in order to acquire an activated stroma.)

The normal and pathological versions of the EMT involve, in addition to changes in shape and the acquisition of motility, fundamental alterations in the gene expression profiles of cells (**Table 14.2**). Expression of E-cadherin and cytokeratins—hallmarks of epithelial cell protein expression—is repressed, while the expression of vimentin, an intermediate filament component of the mesenchymal cell cytoskeleton, is induced (**Figure 14.10**). Epithelial cells that have undergone an EMT often begin to make fibronectin, an extracellular matrix protein that is normally secreted only by mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts. At the same time, expression of a typical fibroblastic marker—N-cadherin—is often acquired in place of E-cadherin.

Table 14.2 Cellular changes associated with an epithelial–mesenchymal transition

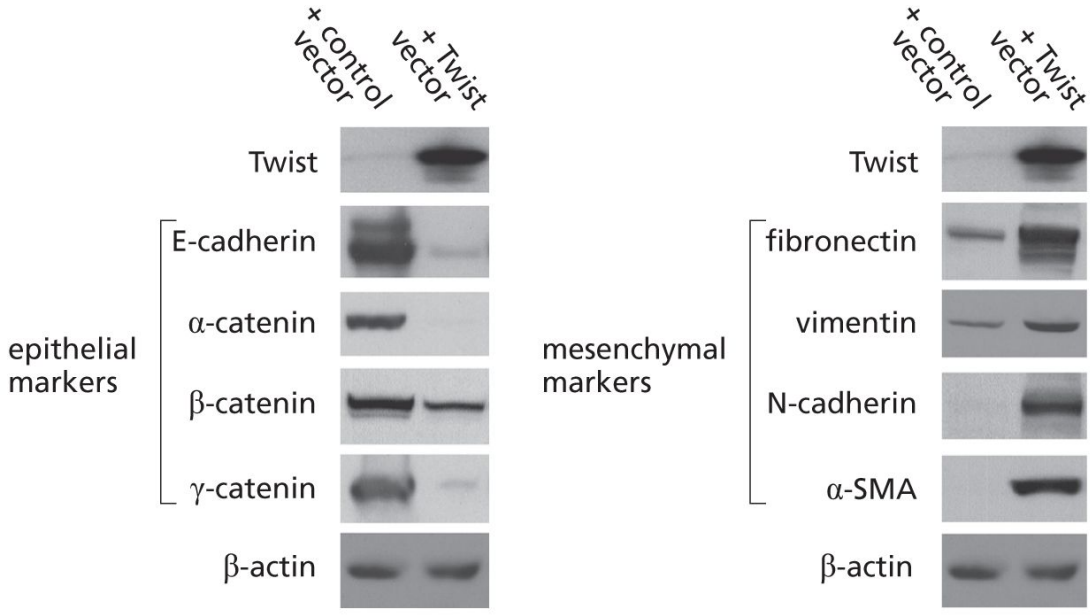
Loss of
cytokeratin (intermediate filament) expression
tight junctions and epithelial adherens junctions involving E-cadherin
epithelial cell polarity
epithelial gene expression program
Acquisition of
fibroblast-like shape
motility
invasiveness

Loss of
increased resistance to apoptosis
increased resistance to radiotherapy
mesenchymal gene expression program including EMT-inducing transcription factors
mesenchymal adherens junction protein (N-cadherin)
protease secretion (MMP-2, MMP-9)
vimentin (intermediate filament) expression
fibronectin secretion
PDGF receptor expression
$\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin expression
stem cell-like traits



A 2 by 3 grid of immunofluorescence images depicting the results of adding either control vector or twist vector in the presence of one of three epithelial markers, namely E-cadherin, beta-catenin, and gamma-catenin. To the right is a 2 by 2 grid of images depicting the results of adding either control vector or twist vector in the presence of one of two mesenchymal markers, namely fibronectin and vimentin. In all cases, blue nuclei are visible, but these are surrounded by green only when a control vector is added where an epithelial marker is present, or when a twist vector is added when a mesenchymal marker is present.

(A)



Two sets of immunoblot tests. In the left test, there is a channel for control vector and a channel for twist vector. Six proteins are tested, namely Twist,

the four epithelial markers E-cadherin, alpha-catenin, beta-catenin, and gamma-catenin, and beta-actin. In the right test, the same two channels are again used to test six proteins, namely Twist, the four mesenchymal markers fibronectin, vimentin, N-cadherin, and alpha-S M A, and beta-actin.
(B)

Figure 14.10 Biochemical changes accompanying the EMT As discussed later, EMT programs can be induced by several pleiotropically acting transcription factors. Shown here are the effects of expressing the EMT-inducing Twist transcription factor in MDCK (Madin–Darby canine kidney) cells, which are widely used to study epithelial cell biology. (A) These immunofluorescence analyses indicate that expression of epithelial markers, specifically E-cadherin, β-catenin, and γ-catenin, is repressed, whereas expression of mesenchymal markers, specifically vimentin and fibronectin, is induced by ectopic expression of Twist. Note that in epithelial cells that have not been induced to enter into an EMT, E-cadherin, β-catenin, and γ-catenin are located at the interfaces between adjacent cells, where they form adherens junctions. Although functional studies indicate the activation of transcription by nuclear β-catenin in mesenchymal cells, this is usually difficult to observe by immunofluorescence because β-catenin accumulates only to low steady-state levels in the nucleus. (B) Immunoblots confirm the results of immunofluorescence, but in a more quantitative fashion. Lysates of control MDCK cells are analyzed in the left channels, while lysates of MDCK cells forced to express Twist are analyzed in the right channels. β-Actin, whose expression is unaffected by the EMT, is used here as a control to ensure that equal amounts of cell lysate have been analyzed in all cases. α-SMA, α-smooth muscle actin. (A and B, from J. Yang et al., *Cell* 117:927–939, 2004. With permission from Elsevier.)

Of all these proteins, the transmembrane E-cadherin molecule plays the dominant role in influencing epithelial versus mesenchymal cell phenotypes. Recall our earlier encounters with E-cadherin and its role in enabling epithelial cells to adhere laterally to one another (see Figures 6.19A and 13.14). In normal epithelia, the ectodomains of E-cadherin molecules extend from the plasma membrane of one epithelial cell to form complexes with other E-cadherin molecules protruding from the surface of an adjacent epithelial cell. This enables homodimeric (and higher-order) bridges to be built between adjacent cells in an epithelial cell layer, resulting in the adherens junctions that are so important to the structural integrity of epithelial cell sheets (see Figure 13.14D).

The cytoplasmic domains of individual E-cadherin molecules are tethered to the actin fibers of the cytoskeleton via a complex of α- and β-catenins (see Figure 14.9D) and other ancillary proteins. The actin cytoskeleton, for its part, provides tensile strength to

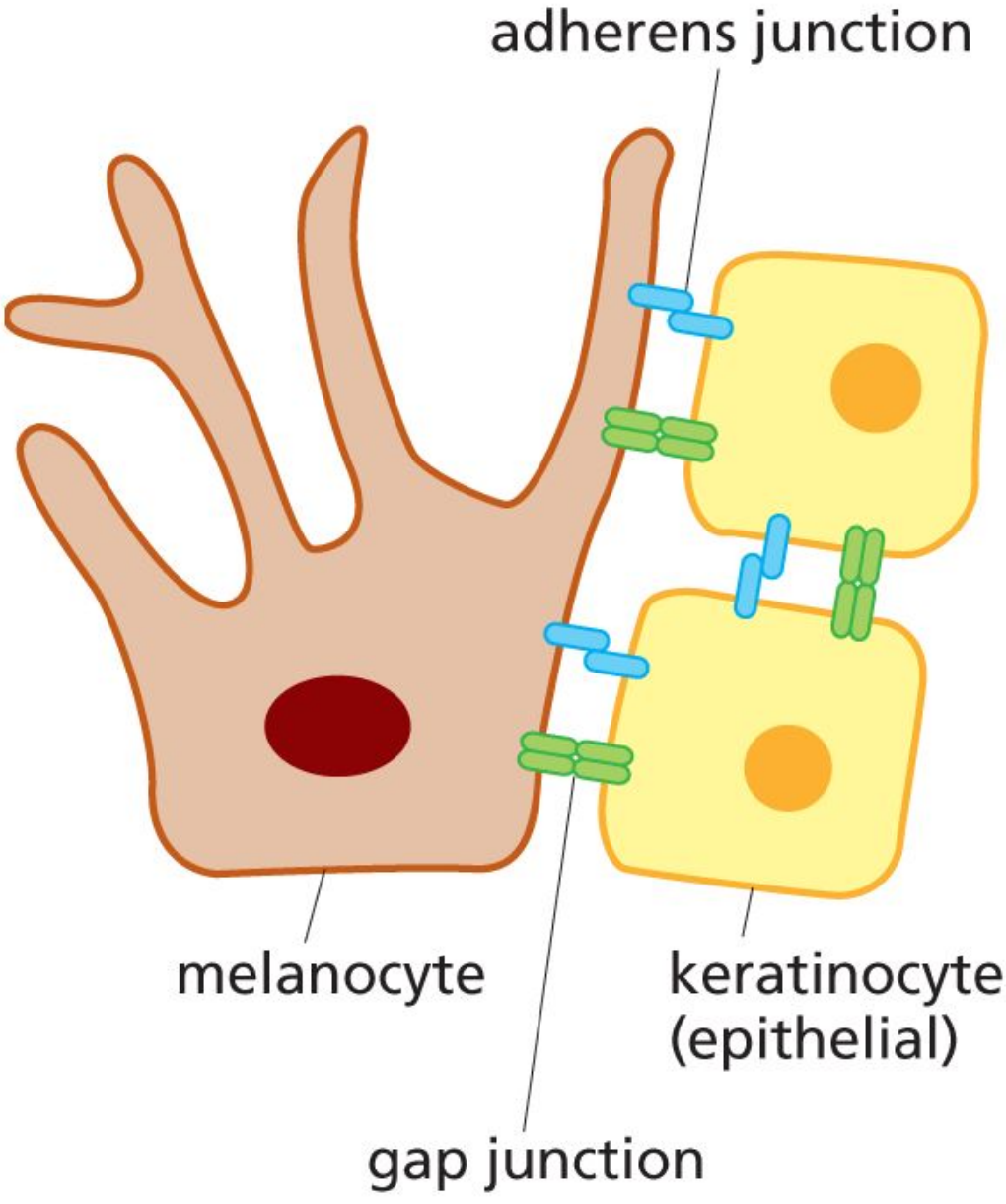
the cell. Hence, by knitting together the actin cytoskeletons of adjacent cells, E-cadherin molecules help an epithelial cell sheet resist mechanical forces that might otherwise tear it apart. Once E-cadherin expression is suppressed, many of the other cell-physiological changes associated with the EMT seem to follow suit. Some experiments indicate that simply by suppressing the expression of the E-cadherin protein, cells acquire a more mesenchymal morphology and increased motility. Yet other cell–cell physical interactions in both normal and neoplastic tissues are mediated by other members of the large family of cadherin proteins encoded in the human genome. For example, the binding of normal and neoplastic epithelial cells to the endothelial cells forming microvessels depends on homotypic interactions mediated by cadherin 5, that is, interactions between two identical molecules displayed by two closely apposed cells.

The pivotal role of E-cadherin in the acquisition of malignant cell phenotypes is further supported by observations indicating that the *CDH1* gene, which specifies E-cadherin, is repressed by promoter methylation in certain invasive human carcinomas (see Table 7.2) and in others by transcriptional repressors; this gene can also be inactivated by reading-frame mutations. For example, an analysis of 26 human breast cancer cell lines indicated that 8 had mutations that led to inactivation of E-cadherin gene expression, 5 had truncating mutations in the E-cadherin reading frame, and 3 had in-frame deletions resulting in the expression of mutant E-cadherin molecules at the cell surface. By now, loss of E-cadherin expression or expression of mutant E-cadherin proteins has been documented in advanced carcinomas of the breast, colon, prostate, stomach, liver, esophagus, skin, kidney, and lung. Finally, mutant germ-line alleles of the *CDH1* gene result in familial gastric cancer (see Table 7.1).

Additionally, in studies of several types of carcinoma cells that had lost E-cadherin expression, re-expression of this protein (achieved experimentally by introduction of an E-cadherin expression vector) strongly suppressed the invasiveness and metastatic dissemination of these cancer cells. Together, these diverse observations indicate that E-cadherin levels are key determinants of the biological behavior of epithelial cancer cells and that the cell-to-cell contacts constructed by E-cadherins impede invasiveness and hence metastasis.

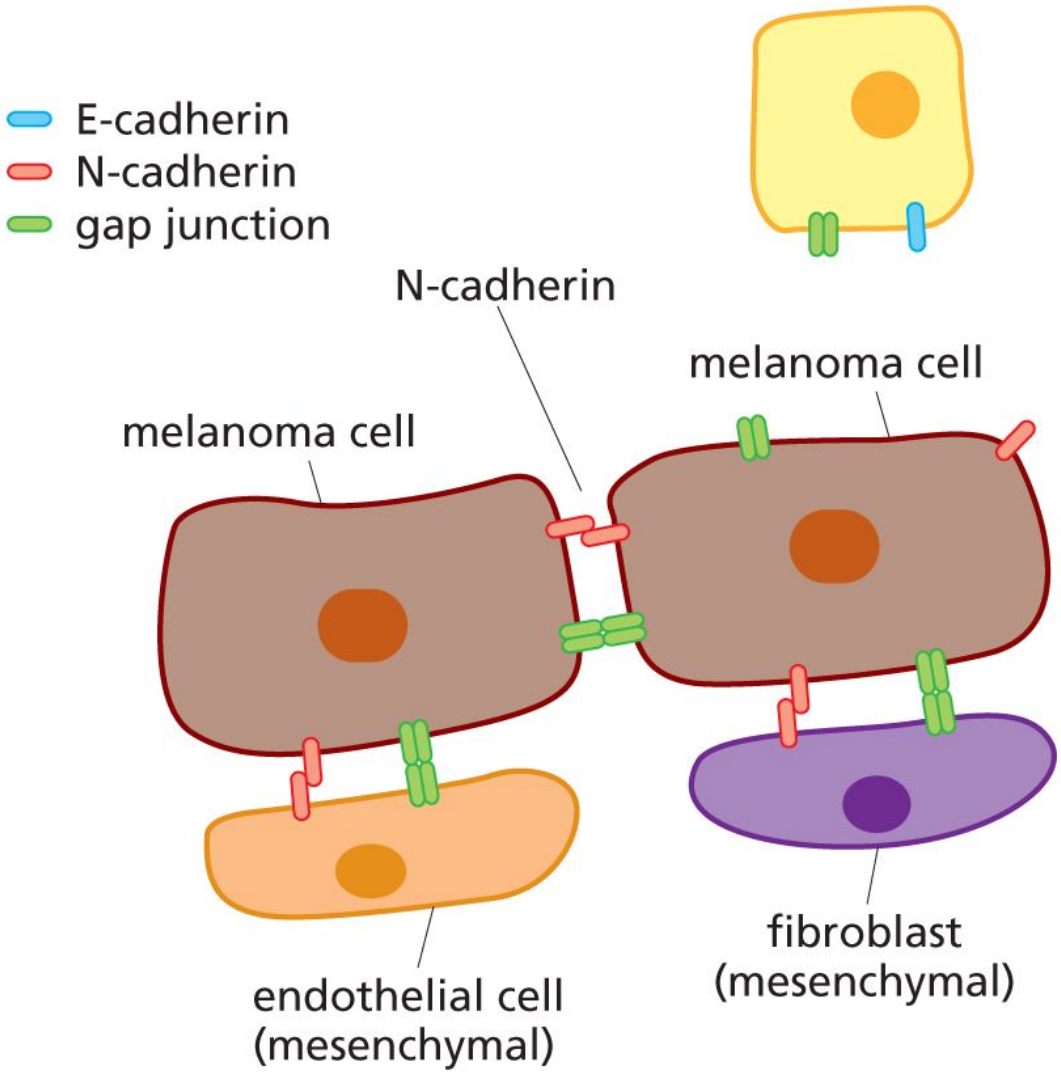
Like E-cadherin, the N-cadherin that is produced in its stead during the course of an EMT participates in homophilic interactions. Consequently, the N-cadherin molecules expressed on the surface of a carcinoma cell that has undergone an EMT increase the affinity of this cancer cell for the stromal cells that normally display N-cadherin, notably the fibroblasts in the stroma underlying the epithelial cell layer. This association seems to help invading carcinoma cells insert themselves amid stromal cell populations. Precisely the same dynamics have been proposed to explain how melanomas develop: normal melanocytes express E-cadherin, which binds them to the skin keratinocytes around them; melanoma cells—the transformed derivatives of

melanocytes—express N-cadherin, which facilitates their invasion of the dermal stroma of the skin and their association with its fibroblasts and endothelial cells (**Figure 14.11**). Moreover, E-cadherin:N-cadherin interactions have recently been documented that violate the simple rule limiting cadherins strictly to homophilic interactions. The non-homophilic interactions are less strong and, being more transient, may also help the initial invasion of more epithelial carcinoma cells into the stroma.



A melanocyte with a highly irregular shape lies alongside two epithelial keratinocytes that are generally square in shape. Each cell is joined to each of

the others by an adherens junction that involves two E-cadherins, and by a gap junction.
(A)



A keratinocyte is shown floating free, and two rectangular melanoma cells are joined end-to-end by a gap junction and a junction formed by two N-cadherins. One of the melanoma cells is also joined, along its long side, to a mesenchymal endothelial cell, again by a gap junction and a junction formed by two N-cadherins. The other melanoma cell is similarly joined to a mesenchymal fibroblast.

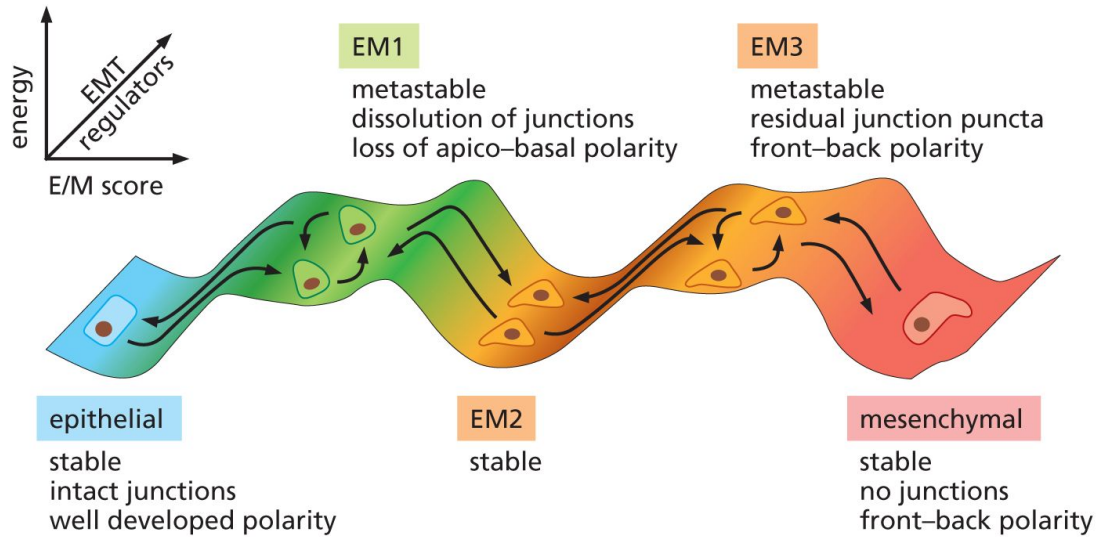
(B)

Figure 14.11 Cadherin shifts and melanoma cell invasiveness Melanomas are among the most malignant tumors because of their tendency to metastasize widely

once they reach a certain stage of tumor progression. This behavior is attributable, in part, to the reactivation of a cell-biological program that enabled the migratory behavior of their neural crest ancestors (see Figure 14.8D). The shift from E- to N-cadherin expression, which occurs when melanocytes (A) become transformed into melanoma cells (B), has been proposed to facilitate invasion of the stroma, since the shutdown of E-cadherin expression (*green*) enables these cancer cells to extricate themselves from their keratinocyte neighbors in the epidermis, while its replacement by expression of N-cadherin (*reddish pink*) allows these tumor cells to form homotypic interactions with various types of mesenchymal cells, such as fibroblasts and endothelial cells, that reside in the stroma of the skin (i.e., the dermis). Of note, the EMT-inducing Slug transcription factor (see Figure 14.19B) plays a key role in activating aggressive behavior in melanoma cells. (Adapted from N.K. Haass, K.S.M Smalley and M. Herlyn, *J. Mol. Histol*. 35:309–318, 2004. With permission from Springer.)

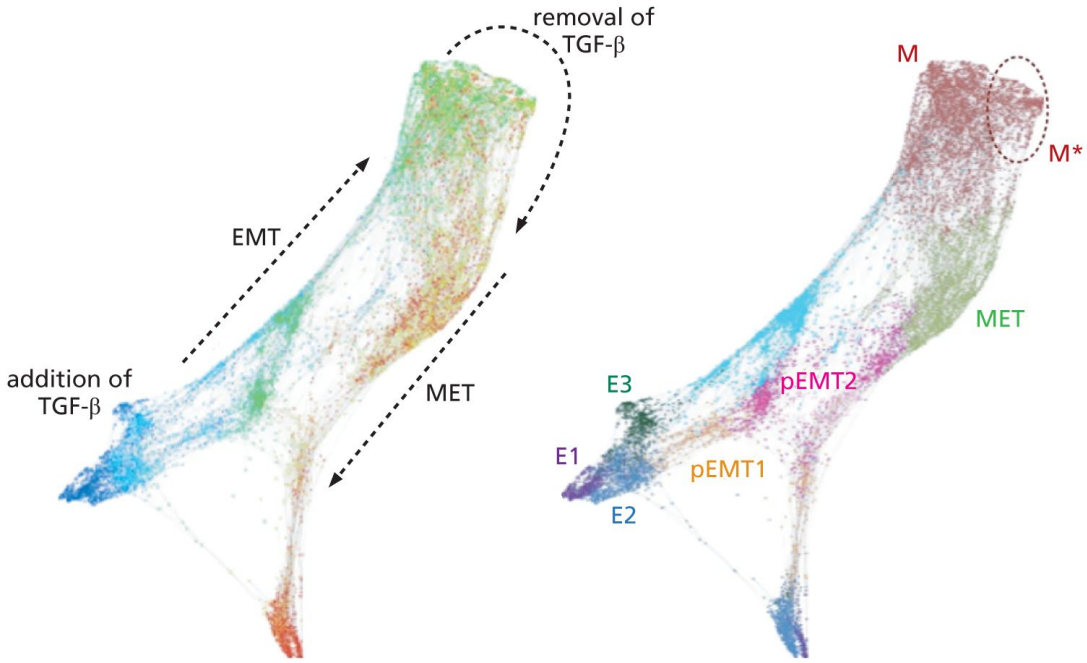
The intermolecular homophilic bonds formed between pairs of N-cadherin molecules are weaker than those formed by E-cadherin homodimers. This helps to explain why cell surface N-cadherin molecules actively favor cell motility and thus behave very differently from their E-cadherin cousins, which work to immobilize cells within epithelial cell layers. This point is driven home by experiments in which expression vectors are used to force high levels of N-cadherin expression in otherwise-normal cultured epithelial cells. Such ectopic expression causes the epithelial cells to acquire motility and invasiveness, as indicated by their ability to break through a reconstructed extracellular matrix introduced into a culture dish.

Finally, we should note that the above description of the EMT program is simplistic in at least one very important way: the cancer cells in human carcinomas that have activated an EMT program rarely advance all the way toward a fully mesenchymal state. Instead, they proceed only partway down the road, resulting in a “partial EMT” in which these neoplastic cells co-express certain retained epithelial markers together with newly acquired mesenchymal ones. Hence, the EMT program does not operate as a binary switch that alternates between extreme epithelial and mesenchymal poles. Instead, its actions are manifested by the entrance of cells into a spectrum of phenotypic states arrayed along an epithelial–mesenchymal axis, with the possibility that cells can rapidly interconvert between these intermediate states depending on contextual signals that they may be receiving (**Figure 14.12**). Indeed, it is unclear whether an EMT program, as it operates in spontaneously arising tumors, ever transports a carcinoma cell all the way into a highly mesenchymal state such as that of a typical fibroblast.



A ribbon-like continuum of cell states in which progression left to right represents E slash M score and vertical elevation represents energy. The ribbon starts at the bottom left with epithelial cells, which are stable and characterized by intact junctions and well-developed polarity. Moving right, the ribbon rises to E M 1 cells, which are metastable and characterized by dissolution of junctions and loss of apico–basal polarity. Further right, the ribbon descends to E M 2 cells, which are stable. It then rises again to E M 3 cells, which are metastable and characterized by residual junction puncta and front–back polarity. Finally, the ribbon descends again to mesenchymal cells, which are stable and characterized by no junctions and front–back polarity.

(A)



Two images, both showing an upward curve from left to right with a long, thir downward protrusion from the center of each curve. On the left image, the bottom left of the curve is labeled addition of T G F beta, the path upwards is labeled E M T, the curving path across the upper right is labeled removal of T G F beta, and the path back downards towards the protrusion is labeled M E T On the right image, identical in shape but differently colored, there are colorec regions labeled E1, E2 and E3 on the bottom left of the curve; a region labelec p E M T 1 to the left of the protrusion; a region labeled p E M T 2 above the protrusion; a region labeled M E T to the right and above the protrusion; and a region labeled M on one side and M star on the other in the upper right where the curve ends.

(B)

Figure 14.12 Multiple intermediate states between epithelial and mesenchymal phenotypes (A) As depicted here, the EMT does not operate as a binary switch that conveys cells between two alternative states—highly epithelial and highly mesenchymal. Instead, multiple intermediate states with differing proportions of epithelial and mesenchymal traits intervene between the two extreme endpoints of this spectrum of phenotypes. The interconversions between phenotypic states are represented as movements between states plotted on a free energy diagram, with cells residing in a stable or metastable fashion in energy minima. While the mesenchymal state is indicated at the right of this spectrum, in reality spontaneous activation of an EMT program in carcinoma cells during the course of tumor progression rarely if ever generates fully mesenchymal cells. (B)

Mass cytometry uses the analytical tools of mass spectrometry to detect isotope-coupled antibody molecules, enabling the simultaneous detection of dozens of different antibody-bound antigens in a biological sample. The resulting multi-dimensional protein expression profiles are presented in a way that collapses multi-dimensional measurements into the 2-dimensional images shown here. The *left* image indicates the course of entrance into successive phenotypic states of cells following application of TGF-β (which induces an EMT program), whereas the reversal of those phenotypes and the return to a more epithelial state following withdrawal of TGF-β is indicated by MET. The *right* image indicates distinct phenotypic states that were assigned to cell populations as they passed between epithelial and mesenchymal cell states. (A, from M.A. Nieto, R.Y.-J. Huang, R.A. Jackson and J.P. Thiery, *Cell*, 166:21–45, 2016. With permission from Elsevier. B, from L.G. Karacosta, B. Anchang, N. Ignatiadis et al., *Nature Commun*. 10:5587, 2019. With permission from Nature.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

gastrulation
: An early stage of embryogenesis in which cells of the outer ectodermal layer invaginate into the interior of the embryo, where they serve subsequently as precursors of the endodermal and mesodermal cell layers.

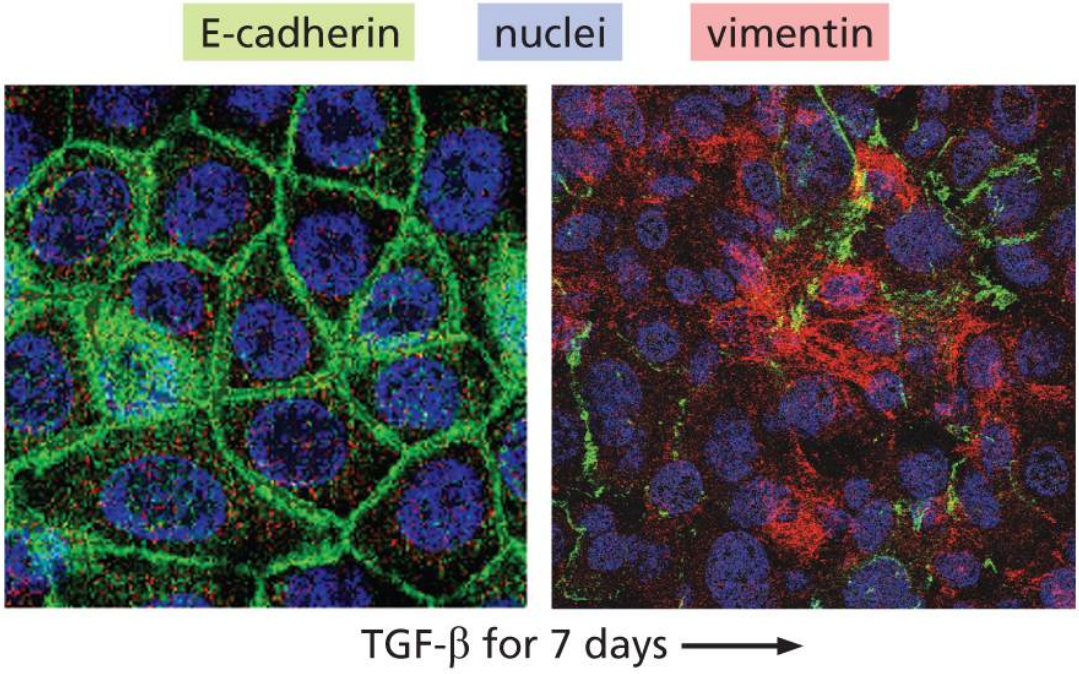
vimentin
: Intermediate filament protein of the cytoskeleton of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts.

homotypic
: (1) Referring to interactions between two cells of the same type; *see also* **heterotypic**. (2) Referring to interactions between two or more molecules of the same type.

OceanofPDF.com

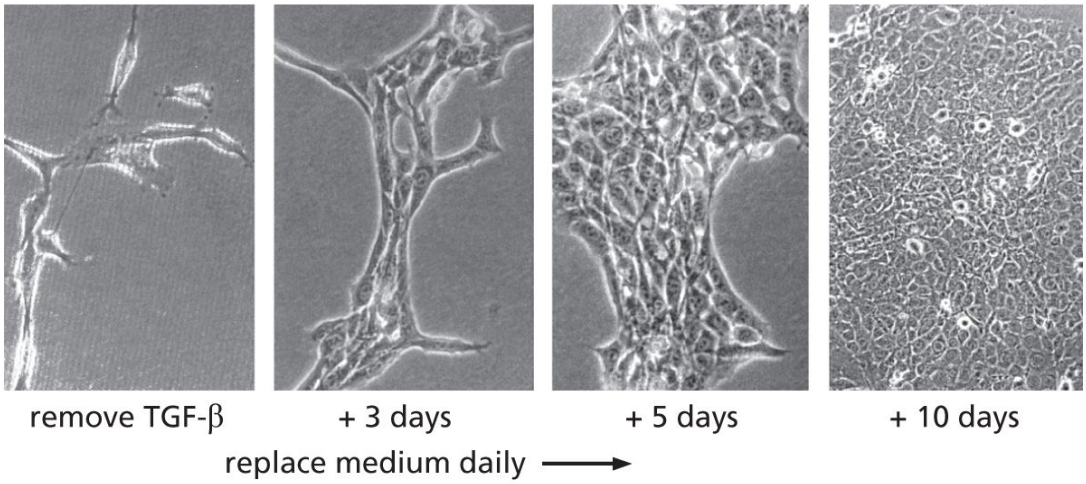
14.3 Epithelial–mesenchymal transitions are often induced by contextual signals

Stepping back for a moment, much of the thinking described above could be traced back to pioneering experiments carried out in Austria in the mid-1990s, which extended earlier research on the role of EMT in embryogenesis into the area of cancer pathogenesis. As was demonstrated at the time, exposure of *ras*-transformed EpRas mouse mammary epithelial cells (MECs) to TGF-β resulted in the progressive loss of epithelial morphology and a reduction of epithelial markers, including cytokeratins and E-cadherin (**Figure 14.13**). At the same time, these transformed cells acquired mesenchymal protein markers, such as vimentin, and assumed a morphology resembling that of fibroblasts—all of the hallmarks of the EMT studied earlier by developmental biologists.



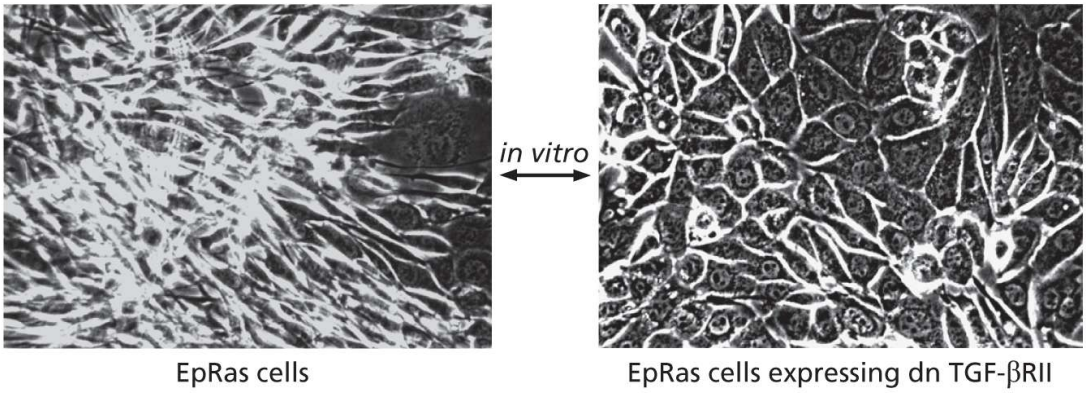
Two fluorescence microscopy images in which E-cadherin appears in green, vimentin in red, and nuclei in blue. On the left, the regions between tightly packed blue nuclei are green. On the right, after 7 days' exposure to T G F-beta, the green is largely gone and there are now scattered patches of red between and overlying the blue nuclei.

(A)



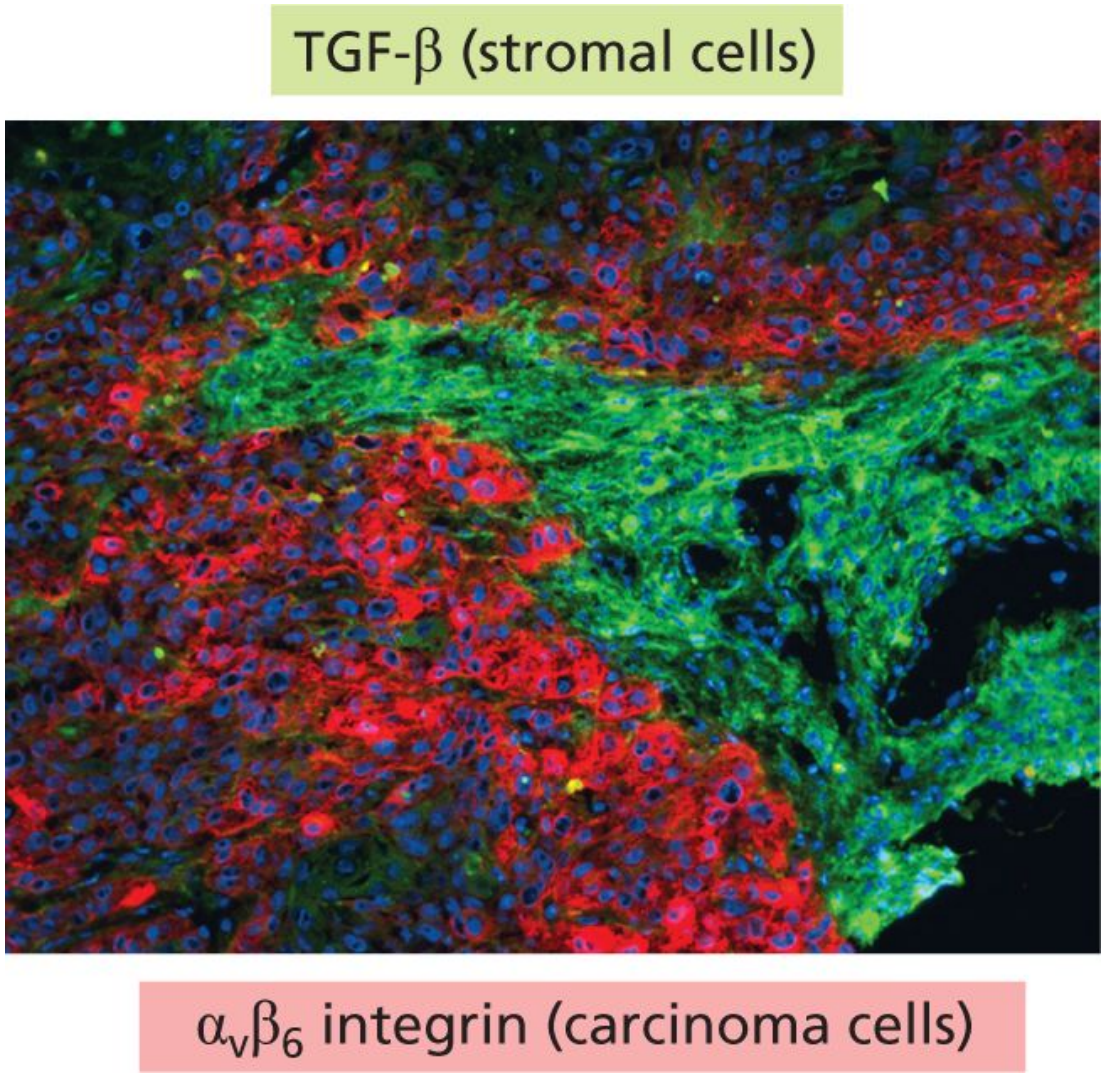
A sequence of four grayscale microscope images. In the first, a few cells are visible, in a shape like a nude tree branch. At this point, T G F beta is removed. With growth medium being replaced daily, the cell cluster is shown at 3, 5 and 10 days, over which time it grows dramatically. By day 10, the cluster is a mass of hundreds of tightly packed cells.

(B)



Two grayscale in vitro microscopy images. On the left, E p R a s cells are dramatically elongated. On the right, E p R a s cells expressing d n T G F-beta R2 have a more rounded appearance.

(C)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a tissue sample. On the left are carcinoma cells, whose red color signifies the presence of alpha v beta 6 integrin. On the right is stroma, whose green color signifies the presence of T G F-beta.

(D)

Figure 14.13 Control of the EMT by TGF-β and its effects on tumorigenic cells Immortalized mouse mammary epithelial cells (MECs) of the EpH4 cell line were transformed into EpRas tumor cells by introducing a *ras* oncogene. (A) EpRas cells (*left panel*) usually have an epithelial, cobblestone-like appearance and express E-cadherin (*green*) at their cell–cell junctions. However, when cultured for 7 days in the presence of TGF-β1 (*right panel*), they undergo an EMT and assume an elongated fibroblastic appearance (*not visible here*). In addition, they suppress expression of E-cadherin and express instead vimentin (*red*),

thereby shifting from an epithelial to a mesenchymal gene expression program. Nuclei are stained *blue* with DAPI dye. (B) Thereafter, EpRas cells maintain the EMT-induced mesenchymal, fibroblast-like state through their own production of and response to TGF-β1 (i.e., via autocrine signaling; *not shown*). However, as seen here, when these cells are cultured in a medium that lacks added TGF-β1 and their growth medium is changed daily (to remove any TGF-β that they may have secreted into the medium and have accumulated), their appearance gradually reverts to an epithelial cobblestone phenotype, as shown after 3, 5, and 10 days of culture (*left to right*), indicating that they have undergone a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET). (C) Use of a dominant-negative (dn) type II TGF-β receptor (which effectively blocks autocrine TGF-β signaling) provides further proof that autocrine TGF-β signaling by EpRas cells is required to maintain their residence in a mesenchymal state. When this signaling is blocked by expression of this mutant receptor, the mesenchymal appearance of the EpRas cells (*left*) is replaced by an epithelial appearance (*right*), indicating that they have undergone an MET. (D) Detroit 562 human pharyngeal carcinoma cells growing in a tumor express the $\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin (*red*; see Figure 14.14C), indicative of their having undergone an EMT, whereas TGF-β (*green*) is produced by cells in the nearby tumor-associated stroma. The $\alpha_v\beta_6$ displayed by the tumor cells can be deployed to activate the latent form of TGF-β produced by the stromal cells, thereby creating a self-sustaining, positive-feedback loop (since the activated TGF-β is a strong inducer of the EMT and thus of additional expression of $\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin by the carcinoma cells, yielding even more activated TGF-β). (A, from E. Janda et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 156:299–314, 2002. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. B, from M. Oft et al., *Genes Dev*. 10:2462–2477, 1996. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. C and D, courtesy of D.R. Leone, B.M. Dolinski and S.M. Violette, Biogen MA Inc.)

Provocatively, once these *ras*-transformed cells underwent an EMT, they began to produce their own TGF-β1; this TGF-β1, acting via an autocrine positive-feedback signaling loop (see Figure 5.8C), allowed them to maintain their mesenchymal phenotype for extended periods of time, long after the inciting TGF-β was withdrawn from their culture medium. If they were prevented, however, from accumulating concentrations of TGF-β1 in their immediate surroundings, then they would lapse back to an epithelial state (Figure 14.13B). A similar reversion to an epithelial state was achieved through inhibition of signaling by a key TGF-β1 receptor displayed by these cells (Figure 14.13C; see also Figure 5.15). Moreover, maintenance of TGF-β autocrine signaling through a positive-feedback loop was apparently amplified by the $\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin, which is displayed characteristically as one component of the EMT program and serves to activate latent TGF-β sequestered in the extracellular space (Figure 14.13D). Figure 14.13D also reveals that TGF-β is often produced in

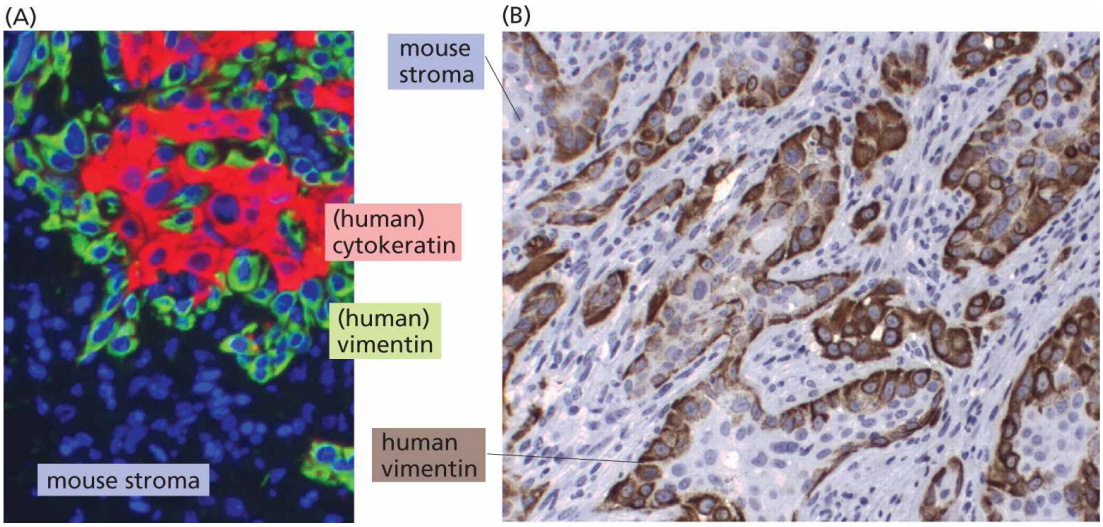
abundance by the tumor-associated stroma. These experiments, taken together, demonstrated that TGF-β signaling could conspire with oncogenes frequently found in human cancers—members of the *ras* gene family—to force epithelial cancer cells to undergo an EMT.

In retrospect, this work established three principles that were to guide research into the EMT-cancer connection in the quarter century that followed. First, that a contextual signal that is abundant in many human carcinomas could serve as the trigger of EMT and the resulting formation of more-mesenchymal carcinoma cells. Second, that the resulting cells could thereafter retain their more-mesenchymal phenotype through autocrine signaling. Finally, that this residence in a quasi-mesenchymal state was only metastable, in that it could be reversed by interrupting certain positive-feedback controls such as the TGF-β-dependent autocrine loop (see Figure 14.13C).

The prominent role of TGF-β in actively promoting the aggressiveness of malignant cancer cells contrasts starkly with our earlier discussions of its anti-proliferative effects (see Section 8.10 and **Supplementary Sidebar 14.2**). In Chapter 8, we learned that this cytokine could block the advance of cells through the cell cycle, often preventing forward march through the G_1 phase of the cell cycle. In this chapter we encounter TGF-β in an entirely different role in which it actually *fosters* tumor progression by activating EMT programs. The resolution of this apparent paradox comes from an understanding of the effects of somatic mutations acquired during primary tumor formation, such as acquisition of a *ras* oncogene or inactivation of the *Rb* tumor suppressor gene. Both of these changes, as well as other similarly acting mutations, render a carcinoma cell resistant to the cytostatic effects of TGF-β, permitting its EMT-inducing effects to manifest themselves.

Strong support for the notion that TGF-β can favor malignant cell behavior is provided by numerous studies in which the levels of tumor-associated TGF-β (often TGF-β1) have been found to rise in parallel with increasing degrees of tumor invasiveness and general aggressiveness. Indeed, high levels of TGF-β, both within the tumor mass and in the general circulation, augur poorly for the long-term survival of a cancer patient.

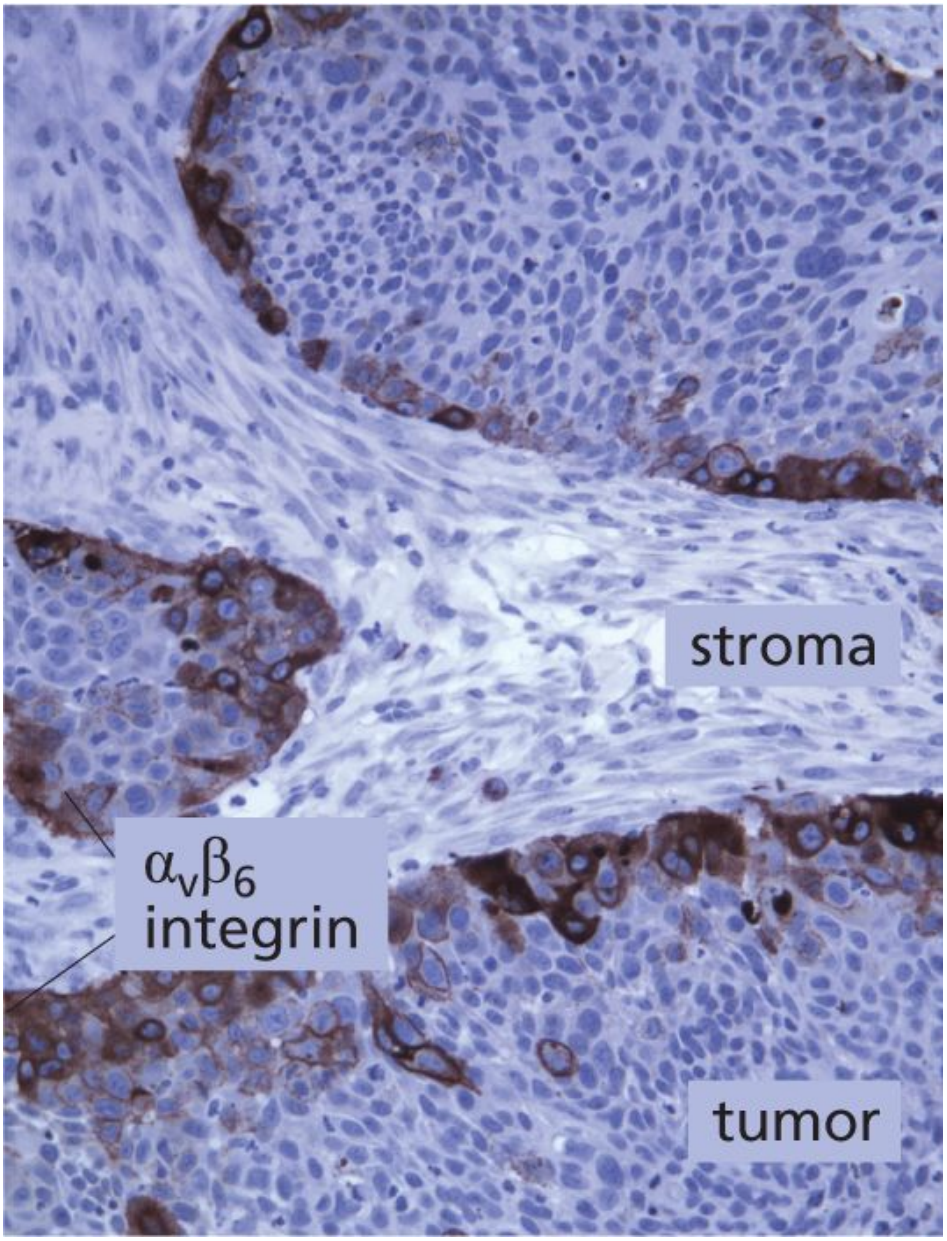
In the years that followed the early EMT–TGF-β experiments, studies of the localization within a tumor of the carcinoma cells that underwent an EMT reinforced the notion that contextual signals are often important in triggering the expression of EMT programs in carcinoma cells. As seen in **Figure 14.14**, carcinoma cells in close contact with the surrounding stroma activate their EMT programs, whereas those residing in the interior of islands of carcinoma cells (and thus shielded from direct contact with stroma) fail to do so. The notion that these “edge cells” have indeed activated components of their EMT program is supported by the observations that these cells also exhibit changes in a collection of other proteins expressed following experimental induction of EMT programs in cultured cells.



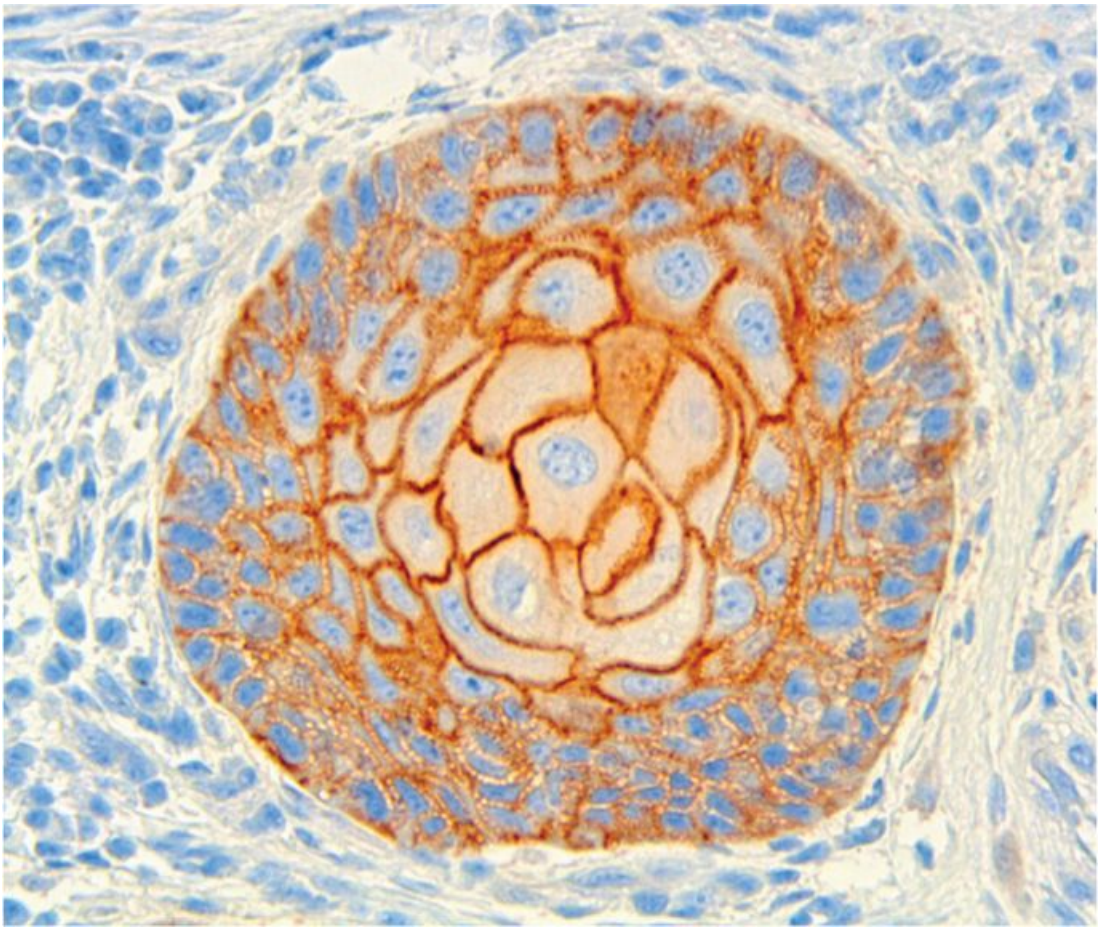
A fluorescence microscopy image showing human tumor cells with bright red and green cytoplasms, and mouse stroma cells with only blue nuclei visible. The human cells in direct contact with the mouse stroma are green, indicating the presence of vimentin. They surround the cells that are red, indicating the presence of cytokeratin.

A histology stain image in which blue-gray mouse stroma cells are infiltrated with many moderately-sized patches of cells whose brown color indicates the presence of human vimentin.

(C)

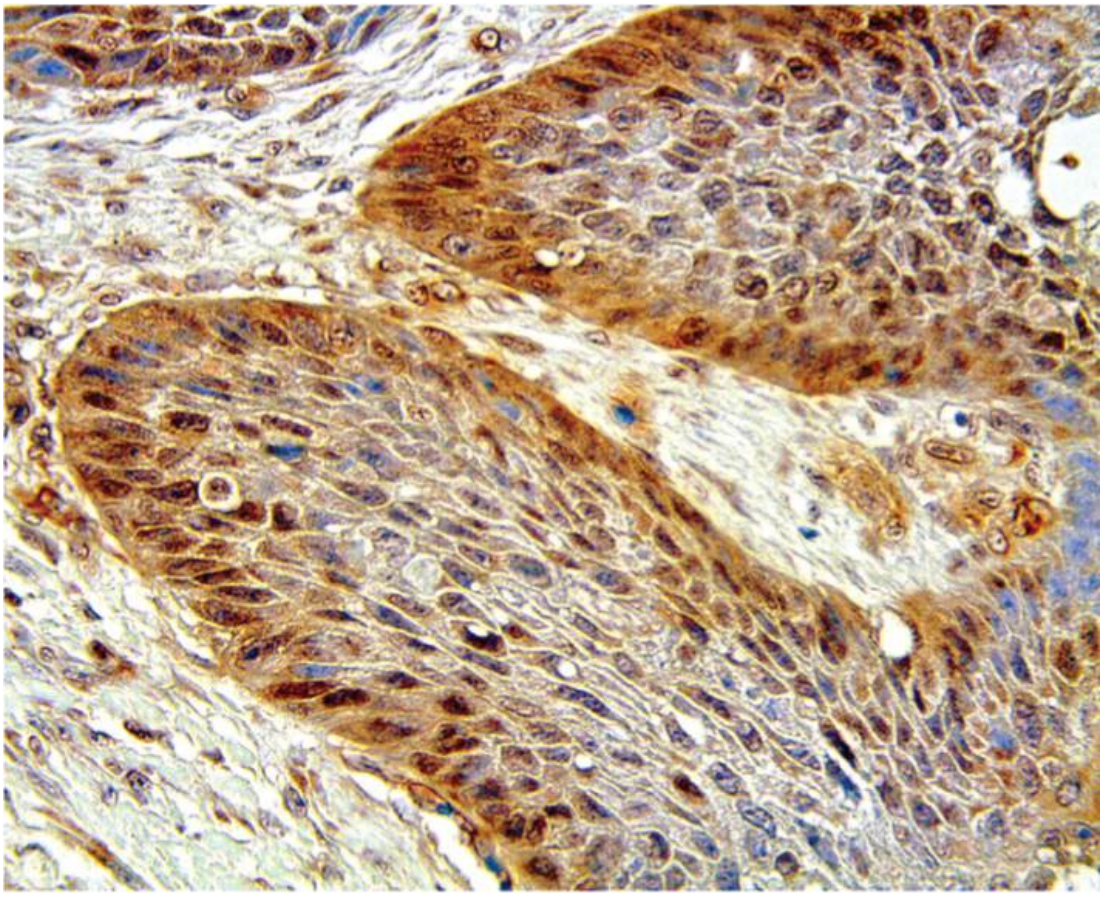


A histology stain image showing dark blue tumor masses within lighter blue stroma tissue. The tumors are dark brown edges, indicating the presence of alpha v beta 6 integrin.



A histology stain image showing a circular mass of light brown cells surrounded by tissue in which only pale blue nuclei are visible. The cells in the center of the mass are large and the nuclei are not prominent. The cells near the edge of the mass are smaller and the blue nuclei are prominent.

(D)



A histology stain image showing dark brown tumor tissue invading lighter brown stroma from the right. The tumor tissue is darkest brown where the tumor and stroma make contact.

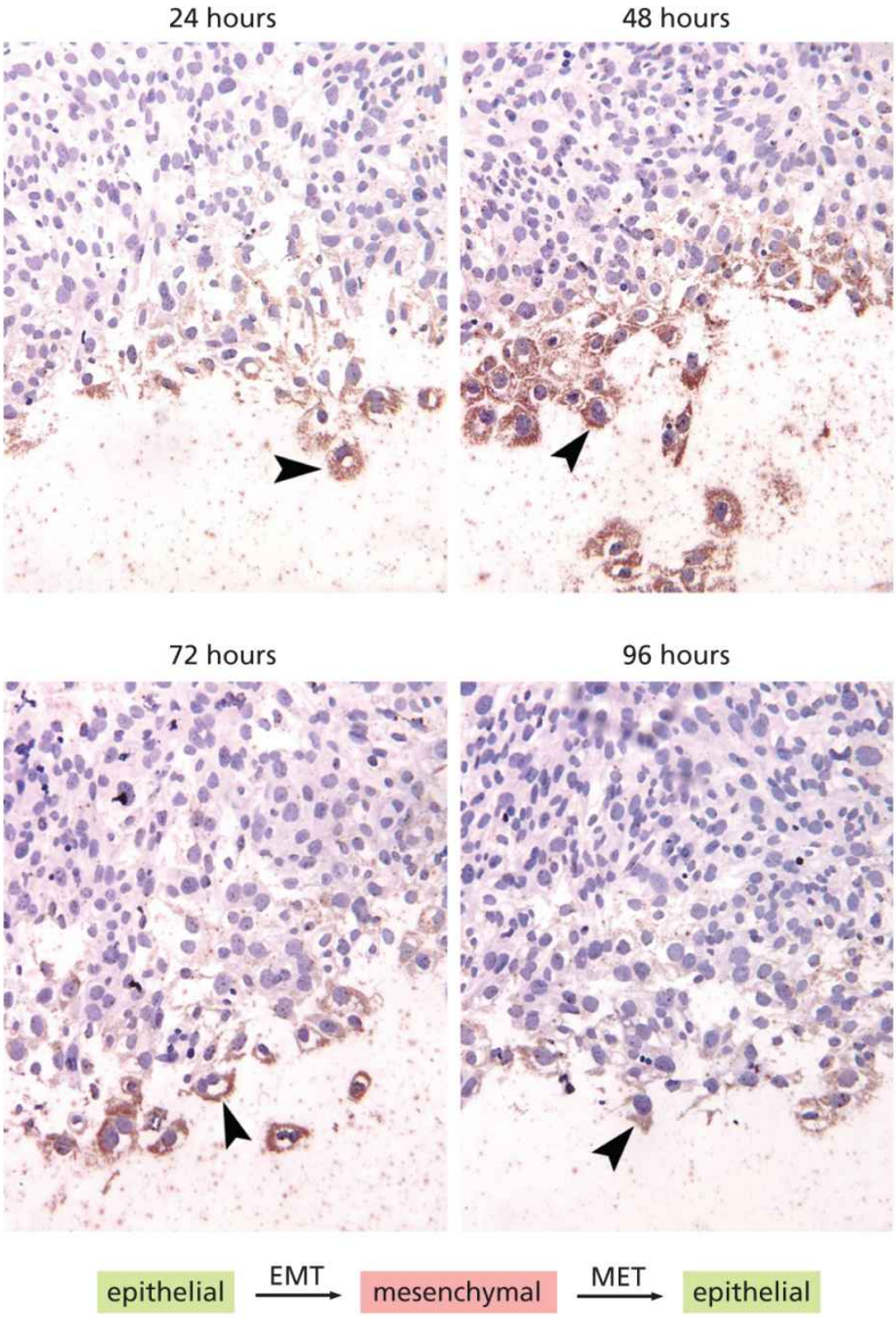
(E)

Figure 14.14 Manifestations of the EMT at the interface between tumor epithelium and stroma (A) Experimentally transformed human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) were implanted in an immunocompromised mouse host. The cytokeratin-positive human carcinoma cells (*red*) toward the center of the tumor mass are not in direct contact with the surrounding mouse stromal cells, whose presence is indicated only by their DAPI-stained nuclei (*blue*). However, many of the human MECs that are in contact with the stroma have undergone an EMT, as indicated by their loss of cytokeratin staining (*red*) and their display instead of human-specific vimentin (*green*). [The use of antibody that specifically recognizes human (and not mouse) vimentin ensures that the green cells at the invasive edge derive from the engrafted human cells rather than from the mouse host.] Moreover, some of these cancer cells at the invasive edge have lost the cuboidal shape of the epithelial cancer cells and have assumed, instead, a more

elongated, fibroblastic shape. (B) A tumor formed by the same strain of transformed human MECs described in panel B is seen here at lower magnification. The display of human vimentin (*dark brown*), which indicates passage through an EMT, is limited to cells that are in direct contact with the surrounding stroma. Conversely, tumor cells in the interior of these islands do not display human vimentin and have presumably remained in an epithelial state. (C) The expression of the $\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin is associated with the EMT program. This integrin is expressed in epithelial tissues that are undergoing wound healing or suffering chronic inflammation; it is also seen at the invasive edge of carcinomas. In a xenografted tumor formed by SCC-14 human pharyngeal carcinoma cells, expression of the $\alpha_v\beta_6$ integrin is exhibited by carcinoma cells at the invasive edge of the tumor (*dark brown*) that are in direct contact with the tumor-associated stroma, suggesting that stromal signals are responsible for its expression in epithelial cells. (D) In this human oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC), intense expression of p120 catenin (*light brown*), another component of the adherens junction, is limited to the center of this island of carcinoma cells, whereas cells closer to the surrounding stroma (*light blue nuclei*) have lost p120 catenin and thus the adherens junctions typical of epithelial cells. Cell nuclei are stained *blue* with hematoxylin. (E) In another OSCC, matrix metalloproteinase-2 (MMP-2, *brown*), which is up-regulated during passage through an EMT and deployed by some carcinoma cells to facilitate invasion, is also seen to be expressed preferentially near the stroma. (A, courtesy of K. Hartwell and T.A. Ince. B, courtesy of T.A. Ince. C, courtesy of D.R. Leone, B.M. Dolinski and S.M. Violette, Biogen MA Inc. D and E, from M. Vidal et al., *Am. J. Pathol*. 176:3007–3014, 2010. With permission from Elsevier.)

To summarize, in the primary tumor, a "reactive stroma" forms during the long course of primary tumor formation and, once formed, releases EMT-inducing signals (among them TGF-β) back to nearby carcinoma cells, which indeed are the neoplastic cells that previously were responsible for provoking the formation of the reactive stroma in the first place.

These observations and others like them (see Figure 14.14 C–E) clearly indicate the involvement of contextual signals experienced by carcinoma cells at the outer edges of islands of these cells. Actually, these signals may be of several types: In addition to soluble factors released by stromal cells, epithelial cells at the edges of these islands may sense that they no longer enjoy direct interactions on all sides with epithelial neighbors; the absence of a full complement of epithelial–epithelial homotypic interactions (**Figure 14.15**) might, on its own, induce them to activate an EMT program.

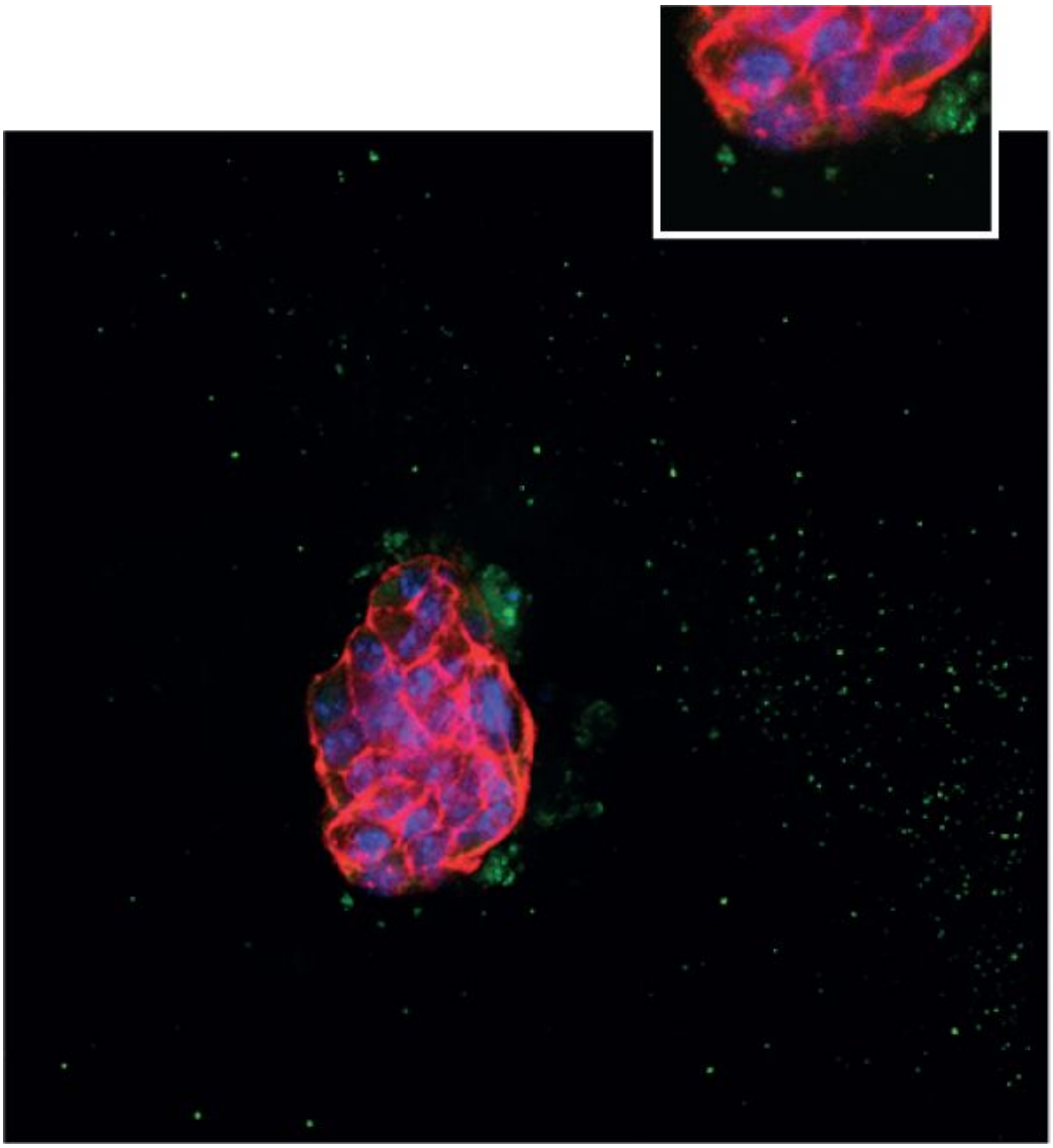


A sequence of four histology stain images, taken at 24-hour intervals, in which cells transition from epithelial to mesenchymal and then back to epithelial. In the first image, at the 24 hour mark, a few cells at the edge of the tissue sample are brown and starting to separate from the main body of cells. At the 48 hour mark,

many cells at the edge of the sample are brown, and some have fully separated. At the 72 hour mark, the only brown cells are a few detached ones. At the 96 hour mark, no cells are detached and hardly any brown is visible.

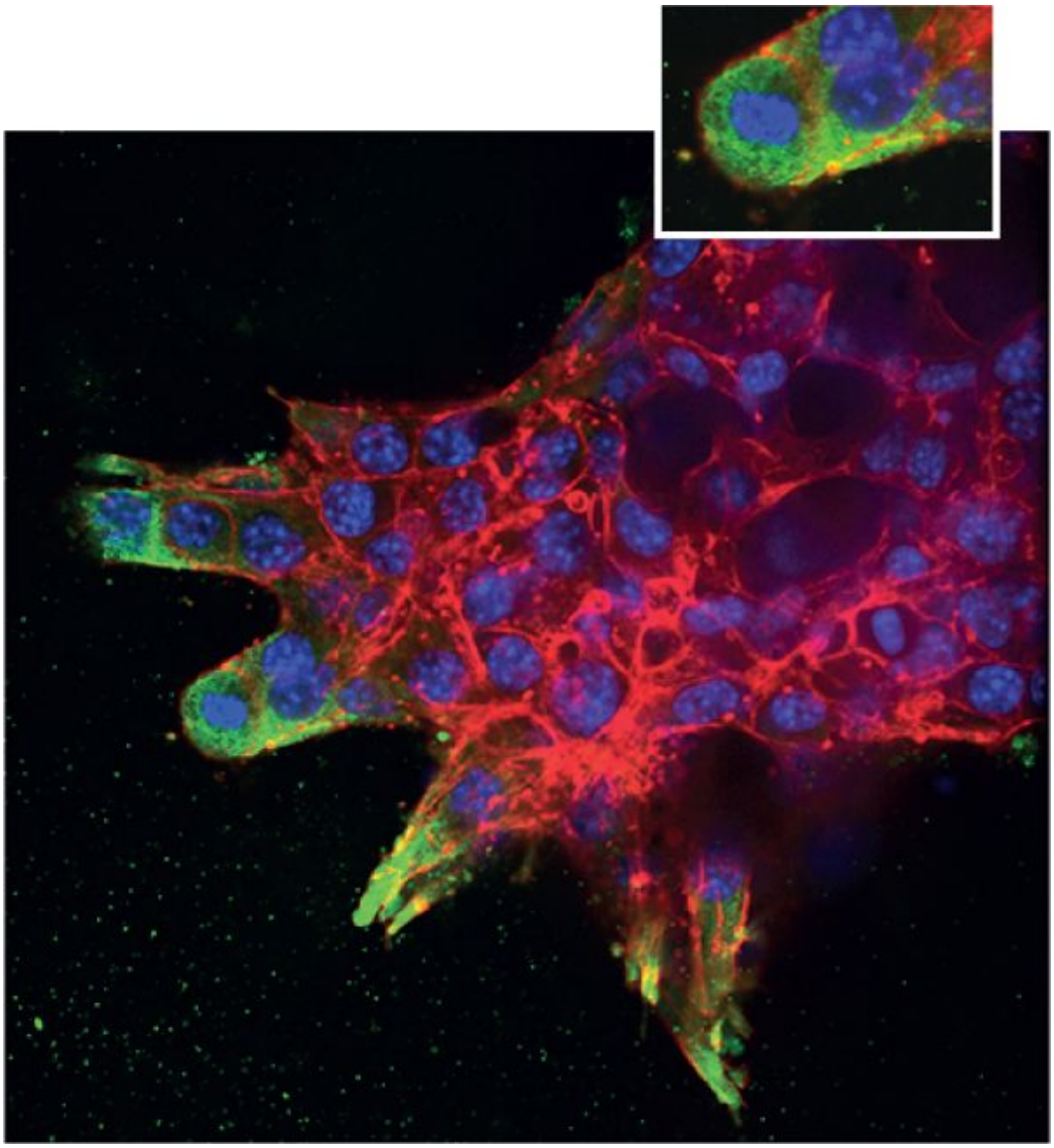
Figure 14.15 Transient expression of an EMT-inducing transcription factor in wound healing Expression of the Slug transcription factor is induced transiently in a monolayer culture of keratinocytes that has been wounded by scraping away a swath of cells. As seen here, 48 hours after wounding, keratinocytes at the edge of the wound induce expression of the Slug EMT-TF (*dark brown*) as they separate from the contiguous monolayer and begin to make their way as individual cells into the wound site (*bottom of each panel*), doing so in order to reconstruct an intact monolayer. By 96 hours, most of these cells cease expressing Slug and become integrated into a continuous monolayer. Hence, cells that initially underwent an EMT under the influence of the Slug EMT-TF in order to fill in and cover the wound site subsequently undergo an MET (mesenchymal–epithelial transition) in order to revert to the epithelial phenotype of their ancestors and reassemble a contiguous epithelial sheet. (From P. Savagner et al., *J. Cell Physiol*. 202:858–866, 2004. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

The extracellular matrix (ECM) assembled by cells in the stroma also contributes to EMT induction. Some research implicates direct contact of carcinoma cells with collagen type I, which is present in abundance in the ECM of the stroma but is absent in the epithelial compartment of the tumor, as another that favors EMT induction. Equally important is the *physical state* experienced by carcinoma cells: stromal cells may construct a stiff ECM that induces carcinoma cells to activate components of their EMT program (**Figure 14.16**). At the level of signal transduction biochemistry, Twist, a transcription factor and organizer of EMT programs, is liberated from its site of cytoplasmic sequestration and allowed to migrate to the nucleus, where its EMT-promoting powers can be exercised. Similarly, the expression of Snail, another EMT-inducing transcription factor, is significantly increased in response to stiffness of the ECM as is TGF-β autocrine signaling.



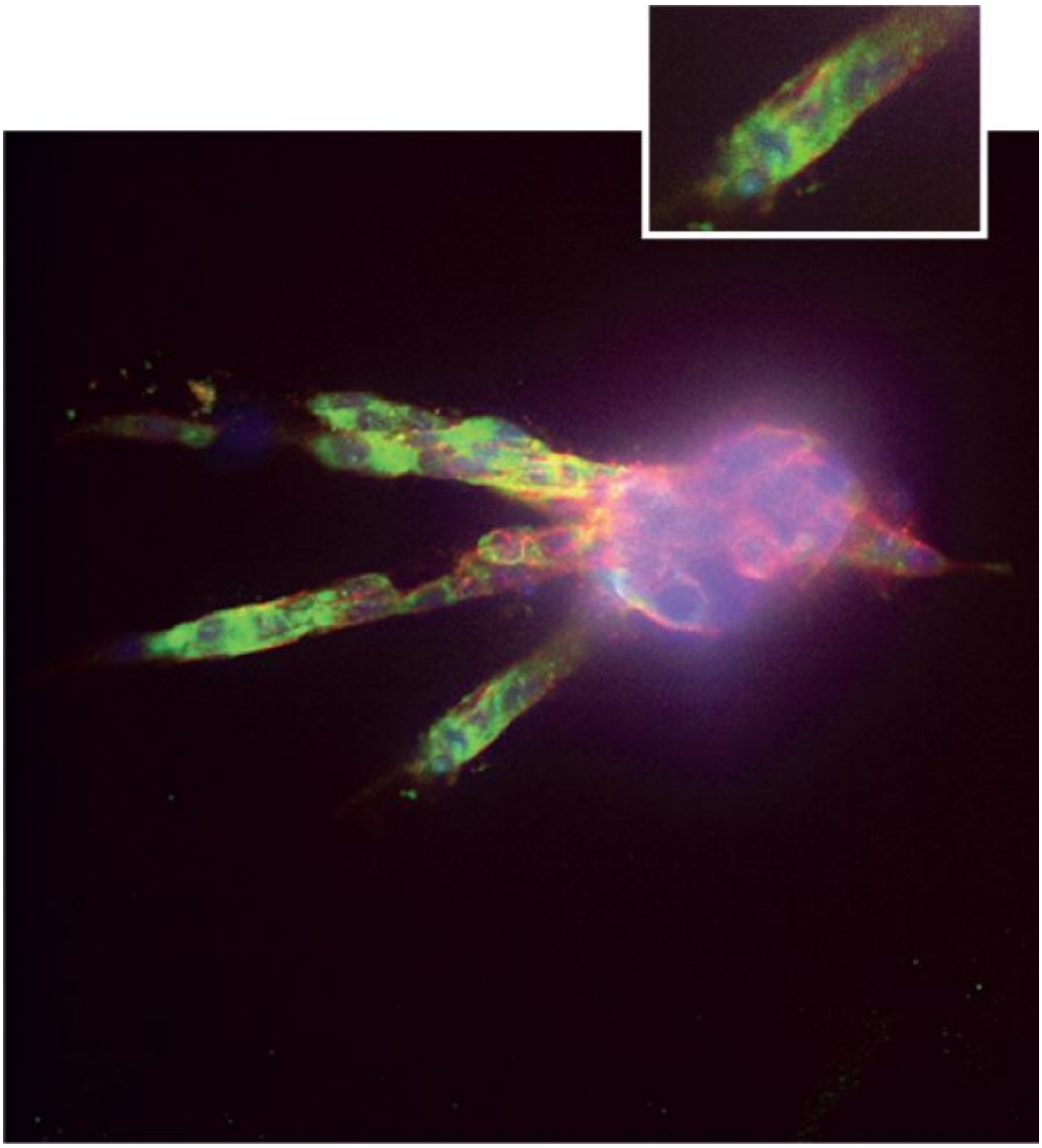
A fluorescence microscopy image of a small, globular cluster of cells with blue nuclei and red cytoplasms. Two or three green areas are barely visible.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a large cluster of cells that takes the shape of a hand with splayed stubby fingers. Most of the cluster consists of cells with blue nuclei and red cytoplasms. The tips of the stubby fingers, however, are green and yellow.

(B)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a cluster of cells that looks like a hand with three long, bony fingers. The palm is a fuzzy bluish pink. The fingers are yellow-green.

(C)

Figure 14.16 TGF-β and stiff extracellular matrix conspire to activate EMT markers Mammary carcinoma cells from the MMTV-PyMT mouse model of adenocarcinoma pathogenesis were propagated *in vitro* in collagen I gels having different degrees of stiffness in the presence or absence of added TGF-β. The gels model one aspect of the extracellular matrix (ECM) encountered by such gels during tumor pathogenesis. The expression of the RNA encoding the Snail EMT-TF was gauged by use of a recombinant construct in which the promoter of the

Snail gene drove expression of a YFP fluorescent reporter (*green*). In each panel, a higher magnification section of an interface between the introduced carcinoma cells and the surrounding gel is provided in the *top right.* (A) In a soft collagen I, the introduced carcinoma cells formed small noninvasive spheroids. (B) However, if the gel into which the cells were introduced was constructed to provide a relatively stiff surrounding matrix, these colonies began to extend small invasive fingers that expressed the *Snail* RNA at elevated levels. (C) If the introduced cells were propagated in a stiff gel, as in (B), that also contained TGF-β1, then long, highly invasive *Snail*-positive fingers were extended into the gel. (From A.H. Mekhdjian, F. Kai, M.G. Rubashkin et al., *Mol. Biol. Cell* 28:1467–1488, 2017.)

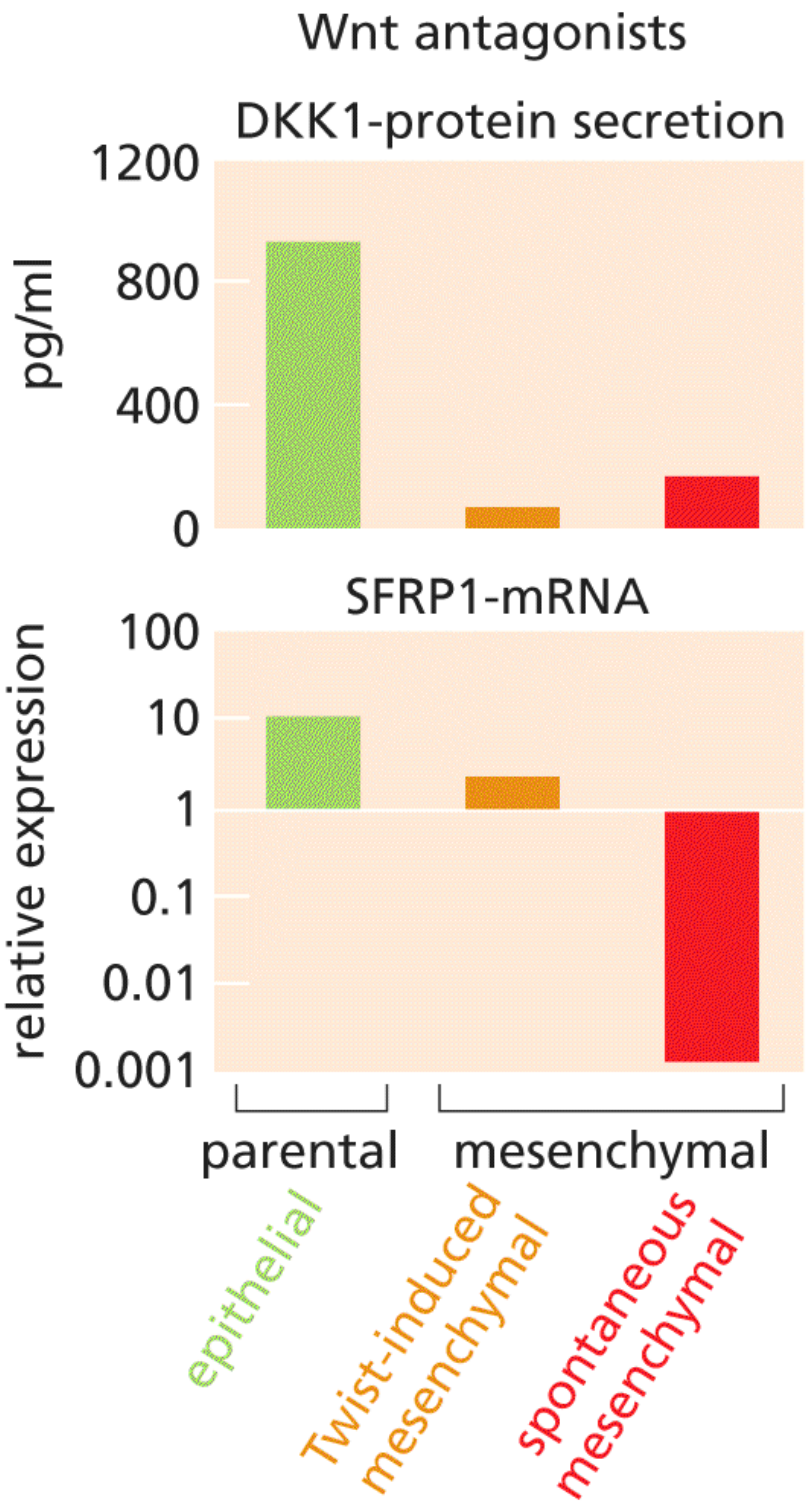
The major class of EMT-inducing signals involves a large cohort of soluble factors that, like the growth factors described in Chapter 5, are released by cells of the reactive stroma and impinge on nearby carcinoma cells located at the outer edges of epithelial cell masses, TGF-β being only one of them. Numerous observations implicate a variety of other factors, including Wnts, TNF-α (tumor necrosis factor-α), EGF (epidermal growth factor), HGF (hepatocyte growth factor), IGF-1 (insulin-like growth factor-1), as well as interleukins 6 and 8. It is likely that these stromal signals act in various combinations to induce epithelial cells to activate their previously latent EMT programs (**Table 14.3**). This raises the question of why this signaling became so complex during the course of metazoan evolution (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.3**).

Table 14.3 Contextual signals inducing EMT programs

TGF-β
canonical and non-canonical Wnts
Notch ligands
RTKs such as EGF-R, FGF-R, Met
various cytokines
stiff extracellular matrix

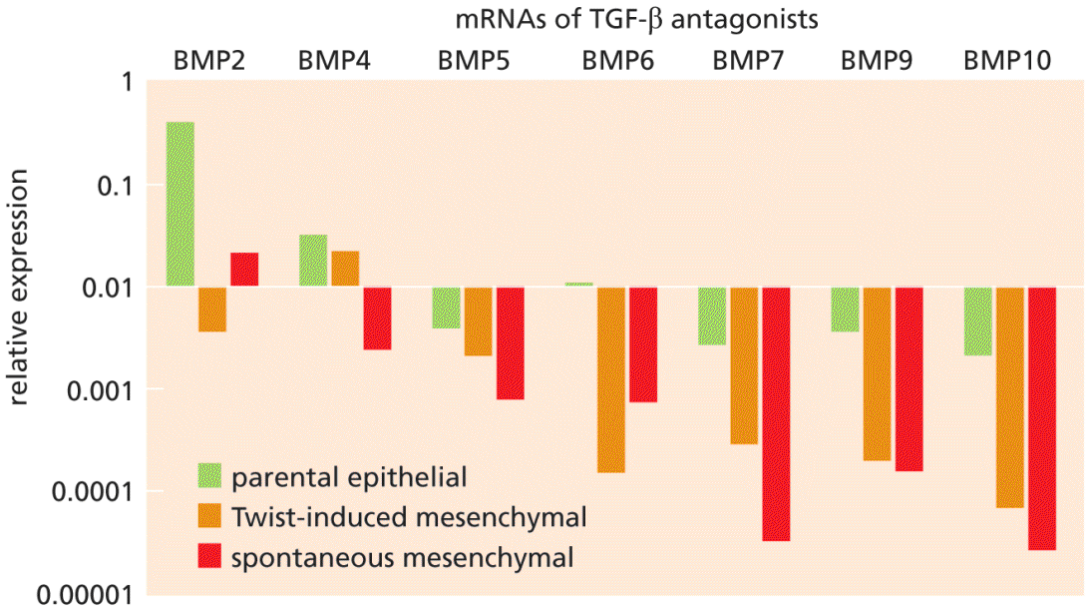
absence of epithelial neighbors
periostin
collagen type1

This theme of combinations of signals working through paracrine and autocrine signaling channels was supported by experiments in 2011, which extended the notion of collaborating EMT-inducing signals (**Figure 14.17**). Study of the growth factors that were secreted by cells that spontaneously entered into a more mesenchymal state revealed three classes of signaling proteins that appear to collaborate in various ways to actively maintain ongoing residence in this state: canonical Wnt proteins and non-canonical Wnt proteins (see Section 6.10), and the aforementioned TGF-β (see Section 6.12). Ongoing secretion and resulting autocrine stimulation by these factors were essential for continued maintenance of the mesenchymal phenotype. Conversely, if these autocrine signaling loops were interrupted by physiological inhibitors of these signaling loops, cells would revert to and rest in an epithelial state.



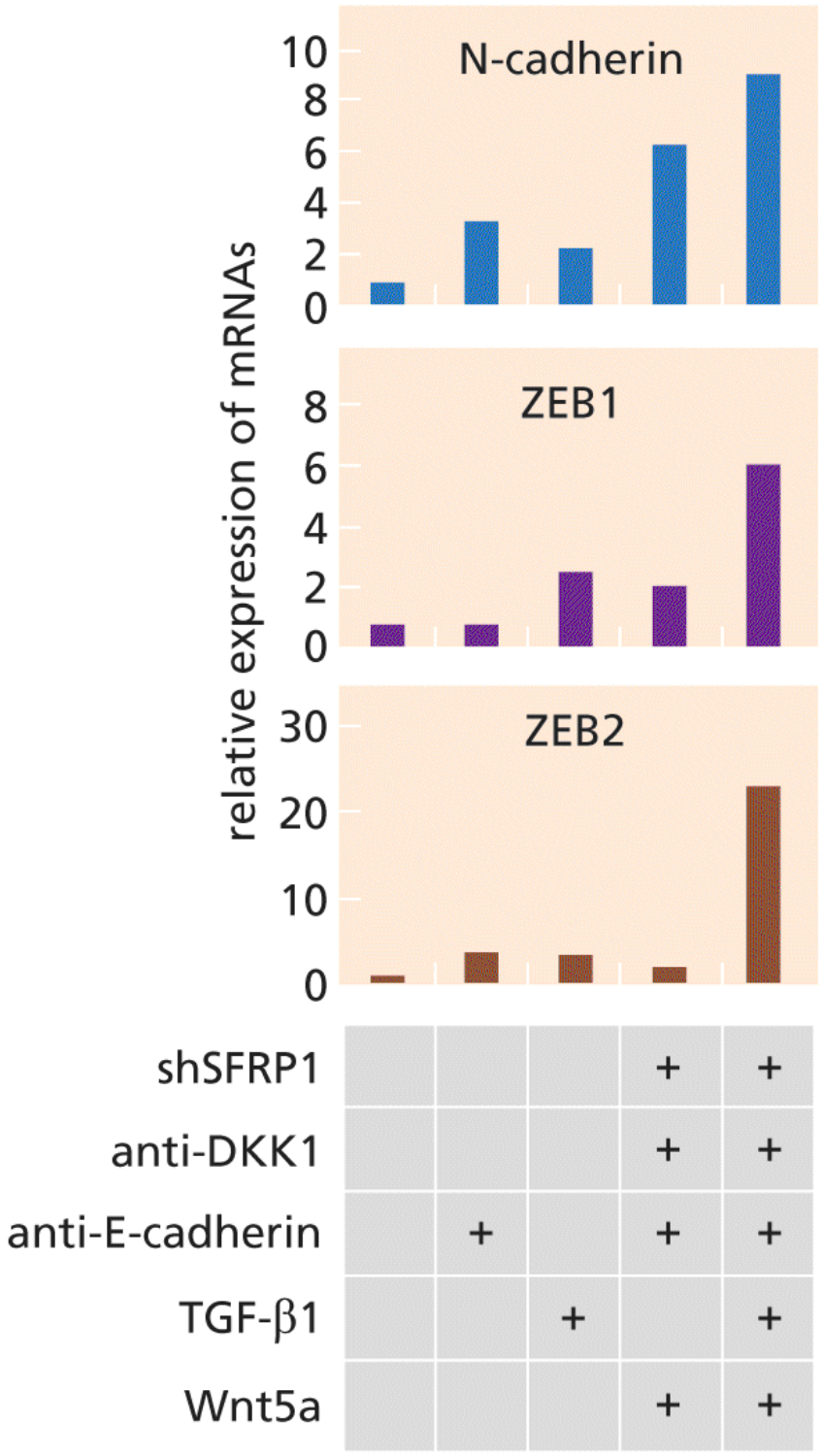
Two bar graphs under the heading W n t antagonists. The upper graph shows D K K 1-protein secretion in picograms per milliliter to be much higher for parental epithelial cells than for either Twist-induced or spontaneous mesenchymal cells. The lower graph shows that relative expression of S F R P

1-m R N A in parental epithelial cells is an order of magnitude higher than in Twist-induced mesenchymal cells and several orders of magnitude higher than in spontaneous mesenchymal cells.
(A)



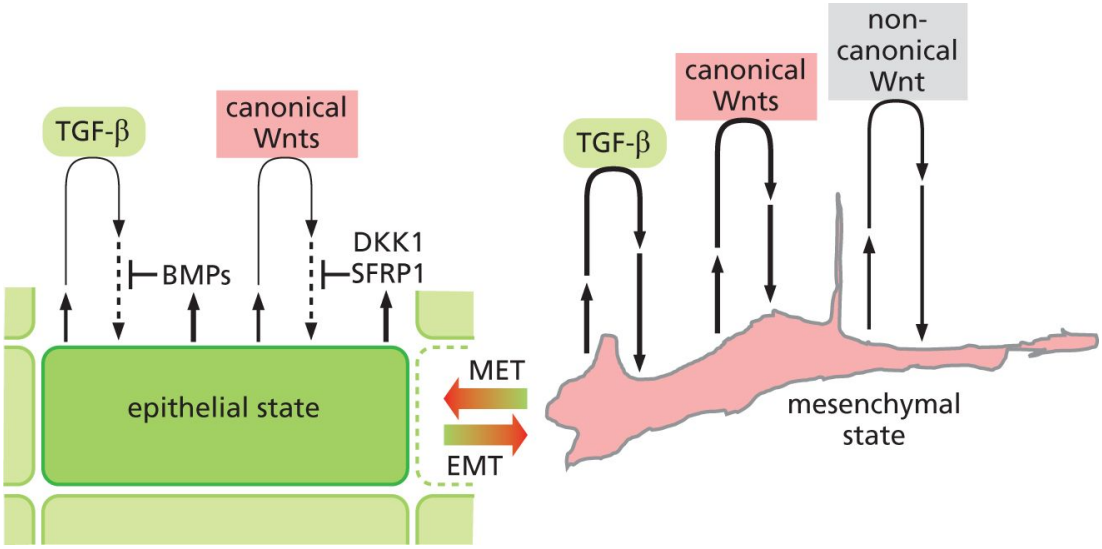
A bar graph which compares the relative expressions of seven different m R N Ayze of T G F-beta antagonists, in parental epithelial, twist-induced mesenchymal, and spontaneous mesenchymal cells. The seven T G F-beta antagonists are B M Pees 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 and 10. Relative expression is consistently higher in epithelial cells than in either type of mesenchymal cell.

(B)



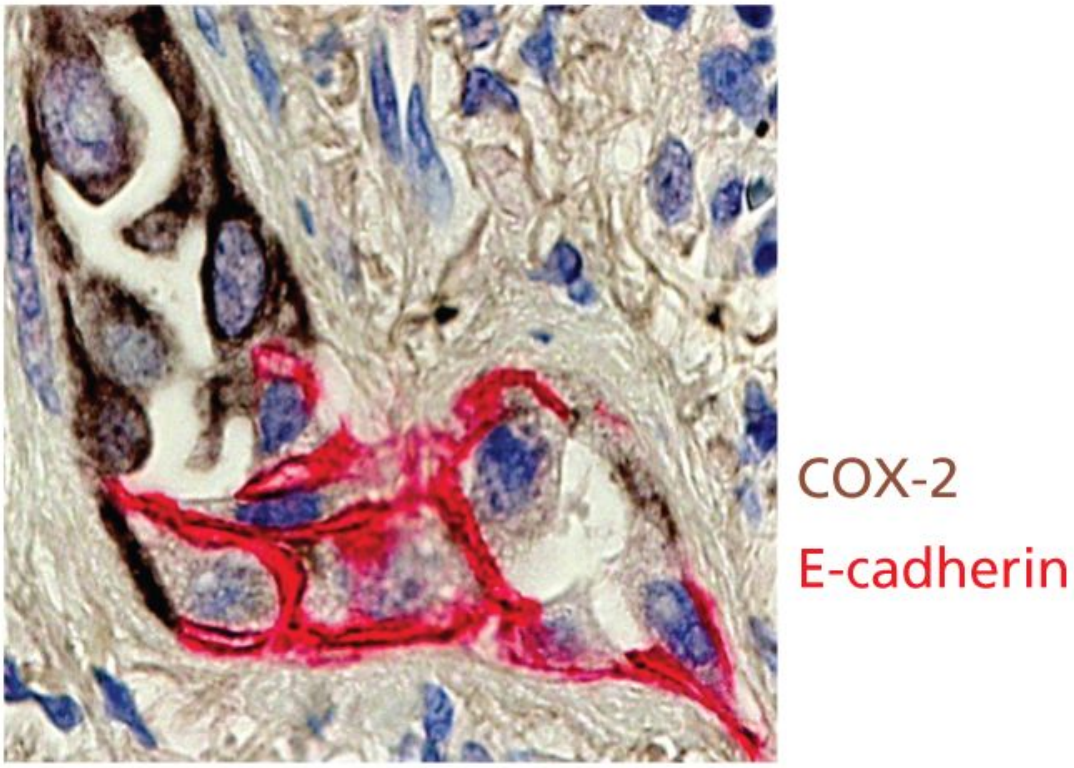
Three bar graphs describing the relative expression of m R N Ayze encoding N-cadherin, ZEB 1, and ZEB 2, under five different conditions identified as s h S F R P 1, anti-D K K 1, anti-E-cadherin, TGF-beta1, and W n t 5 a. Expression is strongest when all five conditions are present.

(C)



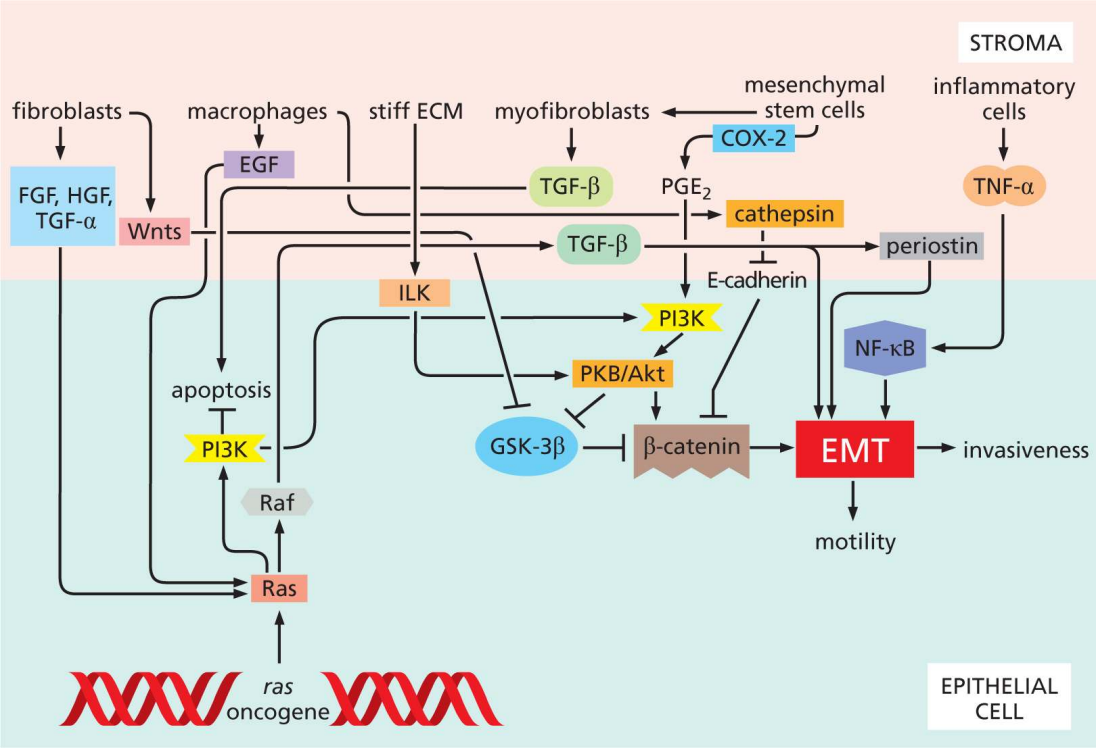
A schematic showing a cell in the orderly epithelial state and in the irregular mesenchymal state. In the epithelial state, the cell secretes T G F-beta and canonical W n tees, but B M Pees inhibit the T G F-beta from acting back on the cell, and D K K 1 and S F R P 1 inhibit the W n tees from acting back on the cell. In the mesenchymal state those inhibitors are not present, and secreted T G F-beta and canonical W n tees act back on the cell, as does non-canonical W n t.

(D)



A histology image in which cells that express COX-2 are brown and cells that express E-cadherin are bright red. These appear within tissue that is otherwise pale and nondescript.

(E)



A schematic summary of the complex signaling that goes on within and between an epithelial cell and stroma to induce the epithelial cell to transition into a mesenchymal state, which increases invasiveness and motility. Within the epithelial cell, the prime initiator is an r a s oncogene. Contributing initiators in the stroma include fibroblasts, macrophages, stiff extracellular matrix, myofibroblasts, mesenchymal stem cells, and inflammatory cells.

(F)

Figure 14.17 Multiple signals collaborate to induce and then maintain the mesenchymal state Immortalized HMLE human mammary epithelial cells (parental cells) entered into the mesenchymal state either spontaneously or by the forced expression of the Twist EMT-TF (EMT-inducing transcription factor). The parental cells secreted significant amounts of TGF-β1, canonical Wnts, and non-canonical Wnts. (A) However, the secreted Wnts were unable to activate autocrine signaling because these epithelial cells release significant amounts of the DKK1 and SFRP1 inhibitors of Wnt signaling (*green*). When cells moved from the epithelial to the mesenchymal state (*orange*, *red*), the levels of these two Wnt inhibitors decreased greatly. (B) TGF-β autocrine loops were similarly blocked in the parental epithelial cells by the secretion of an array of BMPs (bone morphogenetic proteins) that function to blunt TGF-β signaling. Entrance into the mesenchymal state resulted in strong decreases in the expression of the mRNAs encoding these TGF-β inhibitors. Ongoing autocrine signaling was required to

maintain expression of a variety of mesenchymal phenotypes, because their expression could be reduced in the mesenchymal cells through the addition of the SFRP1 and DKK1 recombinant proteins to the culture medium (*not shown*). (C) Entrance into the mesenchymal state can be triggered in mammary epithelial cells in culture by disrupting adherens junctions with an anti-E-cadherin antibody (which liberates β-catenin), the shutdown of SFRP1 mRNA function (through an shRNA), the addition of a DKK1-neutralizing antibody, the addition of large amounts of TGF-β1, and the addition of Wnt5a (a non-canonical Wnt) to the growth medium. Passage through an EMT and entrance into the mesenchymal state were gauged here by measuring levels of mRNAs encoding N-cadherin and two key EMT-TFs—Zeb1 and Zeb2. "+" denotes the addition of a component to this EMT-inducing cocktail, whereas absence of a component is indicated by a blank square in the *gray* matrix *below*. If the epithelial cells were exposed to this induction cocktail for more than a week, they would maintain their mesenchymal phenotype indefinitely in the absence of further such treatment (*not shown*). (D) These observations among others suggest that residence in the mesenchymal state is maintained following passage through an EMT by the actions of these three autocrine signaling loops (*right*). In the epithelial state (*left*), however, while cells secrete TGF-β and canonical Wnts, the ability of these factors to function in an autocrine manner is blocked by the concomitant secretion of inhibitors—BMPs, DKK1, and SFRP1. Hence, when cells undergo an EMT, they shut down production of BMPs and the Wnt inhibitors, thereby creating a permissive extracellular environment for the firing of EMT-inducing autocrine signaling loops. In addition, upon passing through an EMT, such cells express greatly elevated levels of non-canonical Wnt proteins, which also operate thereafter in an autocrine fashion. The residence of cells in the resulting mesenchymal state is maintained in a metastable fashion, because interrupting the three autocrine loops forces cells to revert to an epithelial state. It is not known whether similar dynamics apply to epithelial cells from other tissues. (E) The stromal cells in inflamed tissues and in many tumors release prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2), which can induce an EMT in epithelial cells and thereby may complement or reinforce the stromal signals released by Wnts and TGF-β (see Panels D and F). In this non-small-cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC), the mutually exclusive expression of the E-cadherin epithelial marker (*red*) and COX-2, the enzyme that produces PGE_2 (*dark brown*), is apparent at high magnification. COX-2–positive carcinoma cells tended to be discohesive, i.e., in the process of separating from other carcinoma cells. Other work (*not shown*) indicates that expression of E-cadherin and the Zeb1 EMT-inducing transcription factor was mutually exclusive in these tumors. (F) A summary of the existing literature reveals numerous cross-connections that begin to explain why and how EMT programs are induced by combinations of heterotypic signals. This diagram presents a highly simplified view of the signaling channels that originate in the stroma and influence epithelial cancer cells

to undergo a partial or complete EMT. It is likely that an EMT program is usually triggered in response to a convergence of signals that carcinoma cells receive from the stroma together with intracellular signals, such as those released by a *ras* oncogene, as indicated here. The precise identities of these stromal signals and their combinatorial mechanisms of action remain to be elucidated. In the longer term, the interactions depicted in this diagram must be integrated with those indicated in panels A, B, and C, an undertaking that is impossible at present, given the dearth of available information. (A–C, from C. Scheel et al., *Cell* 145:926–940, 2011. With permission from Elsevier. E, from M. Dohadwala et al., *Cancer Res*. 66:5338–5345, 2006. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

In addition, these experiments reinforced the notion that, although an EMT program can be triggered initially by paracrine signals originating in the nearby stroma, once an EMT program is kindled, it can be self-sustaining through autocrine signaling. By revealing the importance of combinations of EMT-inducing signals in triggering activation of this program, studies like this one also suggested the converse: that individual heterotypic signals are usually not capable on their own of triggering such activation. Moreover, biochemical studies of the intracellular signaling circuitry of mammalian cells (Figure 14.17F) suggest how these diverse signals collaborate with one another to induce and maintain expression of EMT programs.

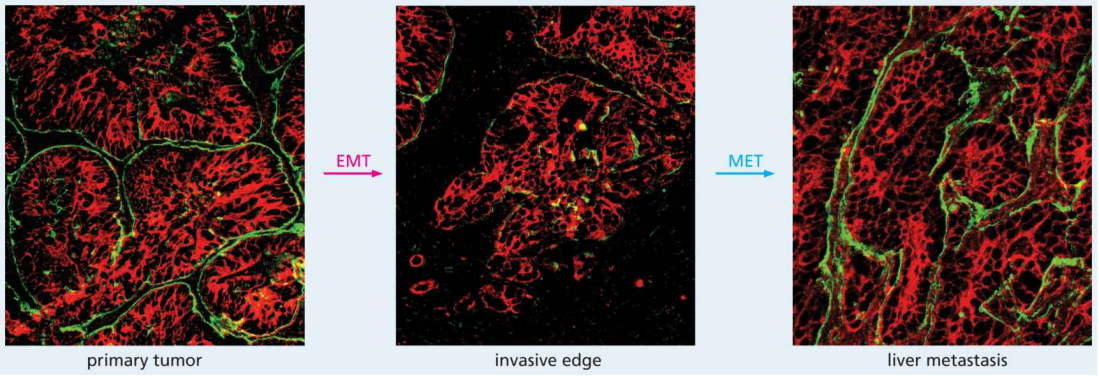
Compounding these normal processes are genetic and epigenetic alterations acquired by carcinoma cells during primary tumor formation that are likely to increase their *responsiveness* to these various contextual signals and thereby influence the way that EMT programs alter carcinoma cell phenotypes. For example, some experiments indicate that cancer cells that have lost p53 function are more responsive to various EMT-inducing signals, and that the *ras* oncogene activated in various human tumors triggers the production and release of TGF-β, which amplifies the TGF-β of stromal origin to facilitate induction of an EMT. Moreover, the extent of EMT expression exhibited by a variety of human tumor cell lines that are propagated as pure populations *in vitro* (in which heterotypic signals are absent) is echoed by the degree of expression of the same EMT programs when corresponding tumor types are growing in human cancer patients. Findings such as these suggest that each type of cancer cell tends to revert to its own characteristic "set point" in the absence of EMT-inducing heterotypic signals (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.4**).

The early research on TGF-β and the reversibility of the EMT (see Figure 14.13B and C) have found echoes in research on the histories of carcinoma cells as they advance down the road toward a highly malignant growth state. Thus, during the development of many carcinomas, once carcinoma cells leave the primary tumor, having completed the EMT-driven steps of invasion and dissemination, as described below, they often

revert back to a more epithelial phenotype by passing through the reverse process—the mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET) mentioned in the last chapter (**Sidebar 14.1**).

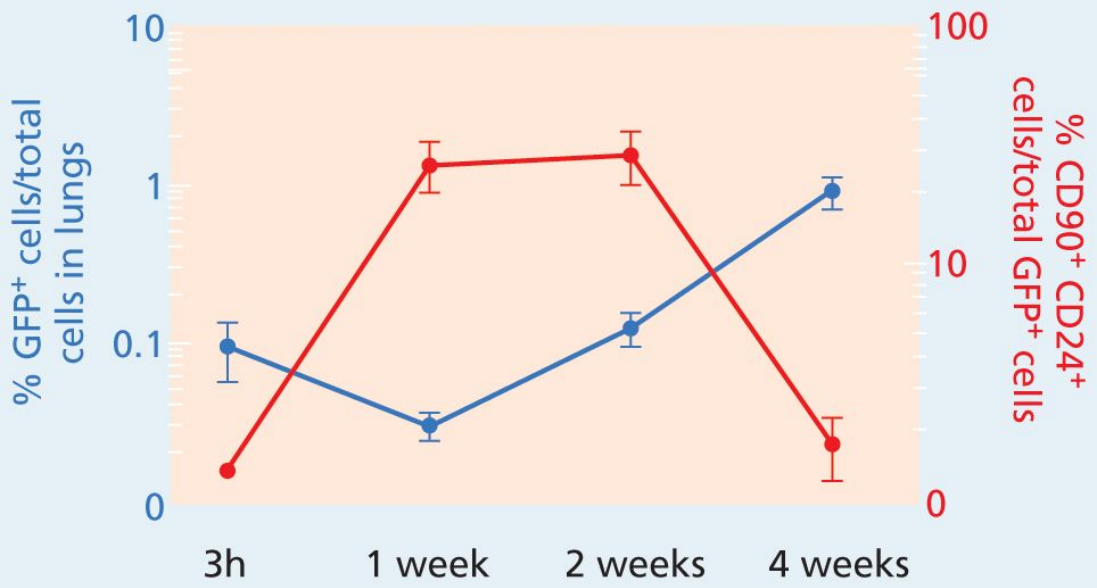
Sidebar 14.1 Reversal of the EMT at sites of metastasis

Although EMT programs may play a central role in enabling the dissemination of primary tumor cells to distant sites in the body, the reversal of these EMT programs that is often observed in subsequently arising metastatic carcinoma colonies may actually be essential to the robust outgrowth of these colonies (**Figure 14.18**). Multiple lines of experimental evidence support this notion. Thus, the histology of primary tumors often indicates a largely epithelial phenotype (Figure 14.18A), whereas the invasive edges of these tumors, which contain the presumed precursors of disseminated tumor cells, show loss of basement membrane, this structure normally serving as a key hallmark of residence in the epithelial state. However, the metastases that ultimately are formed provide clear indication of a basement membrane and a histology that closely resembles that of the primary tumor, indicating a reversion from a more mesenchymal to a more epithelial state. Similarly, in a mouse transgenic model of mammary carcinoma development, experimentally seeded, metastatic carcinoma cells initially show a low representation of cell surface markers indicative of the mesenchymal state. However, the representation of these more mesenchymal cells soon increases more than tenfold as the metastases grow out, but weeks later, as the metastatic colonies expand, the mesenchymal cells once again become a small minority of the cells in these metastases (Figure 14.18B).



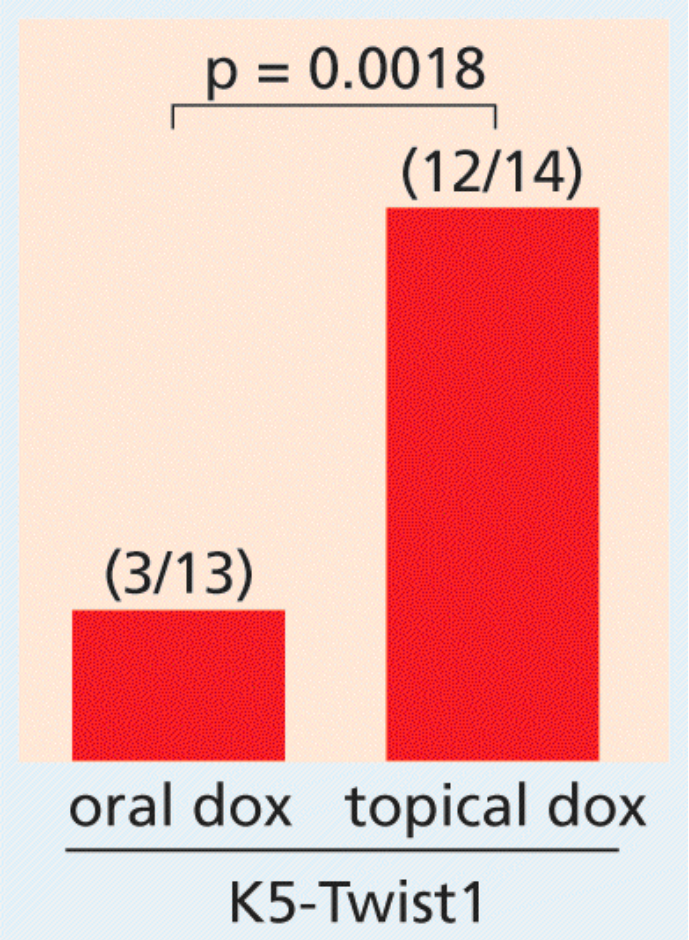
Three fluorescence microscopy images. In the first one, labeled primary tumor, spongy masses of red tissue are separated from one another by enclosing capsules of green tissue. In the second one, labeled invasive edge, cells that have undergone E M T make up a spongy mass of red tissue that appears to have burst into fragments. There are only traces left of an enclosing capsule of green tissue. In the third image, labeled liver metastasis, cells that

have undergone M E T appear much like those in the first image, with spongy masses of red tissue separated from one another by enclosing capsules of green tissue.
(A)



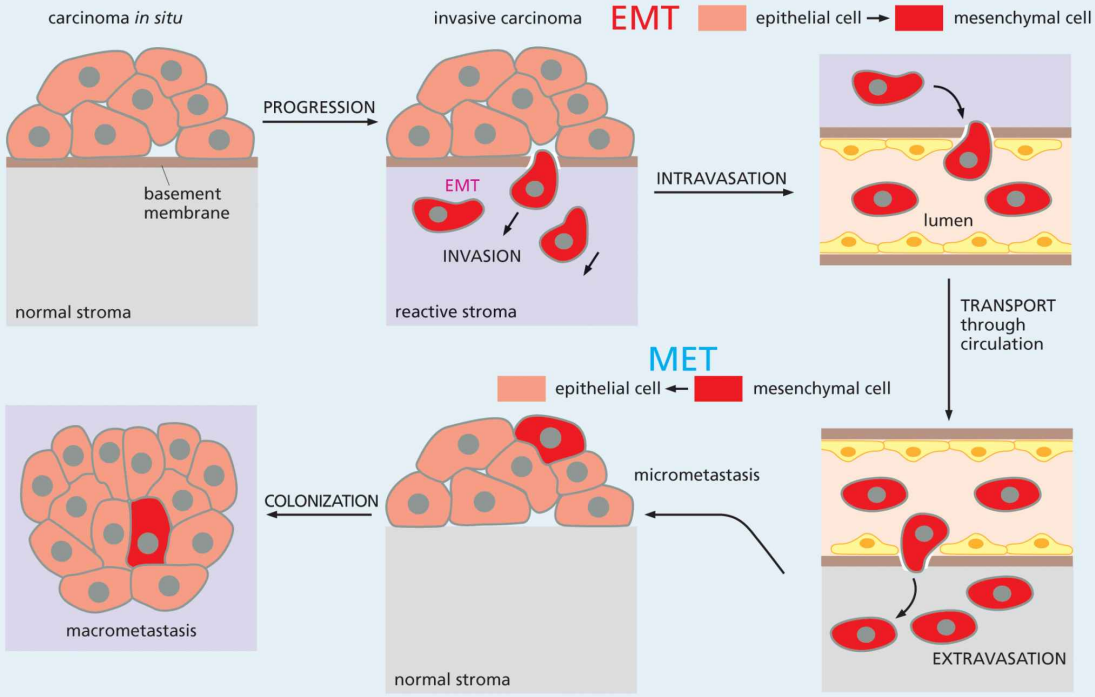
A line graph with time on the horizontal axis, from 3 hours to 4 weeks, and two quantities on the vertical axis. A blue line shows that the count of G F P positive cells, as a percent of the total cells in the lungs, starts at 0.1, initially falls, then rises to 1 by 4 weeks. A red line shows that the count of C D90 positive, C D24 positive cells, as a percent of G F P positive cells, starts out low, rises as high as 1, and then falls again.

(B)



A bar graph showing that 12 of 14 K 5-Twist 1 mice treated with topical doxycycline developed tumors, while only 3 of 13 K 5 -Twist 1 mice treated with oral doxycycline developed tumors. The significance level of this difference was p = 0.0018.

(C)



A model of E M T followed by M E T. Initially, an intact basement membrane separates a carcinoma in situ above, consisting of epithelial cells, from normal stroma below. Following progression, cells undergoing epithelial-mesenchymal transition breach the basement membrane and invade the stroma, which becomes reactive. Through intravasation, these cells pass through the walls of blood vessels and enter the blood stream. After transport to a new location through circulation, the mesenchymal cells undergo extravasation back into normal stroma, where through micrometastasis they form a new tumor. At this point most but not all of the cells revert to the epithelial state. The tumor now grows into a macrometastatis.

(D)

Figure 14.18 Reversibility of EMT Although cells at the invasive edge of a primary carcinoma often give evidence of an EMT, derived metastases may exhibit a histology typical of the center of the primary tumor, suggesting a reversion programmed by a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET) program. (A) Release of degradative enzymes, notably matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), is one of the many manifestations of the EMT. These cells in a primary colorectal carcinoma show expression of both cytokeratin 18 (*red*) and a basement membrane protein (*green*). However, at the invasive edge of this tumor, the cells have undergone a partial EMT, in that they have degraded the adjacent basement membranes while still expressing cytokeratin 18, a key epithelial marker. In a subsequently arising metastasis in this patient, which presumably descended from

cells that underwent an EMT and acquired invasiveness en route to metastatic dissemination, the cancer cells form a growth having, once again, the histological appearance of cells in the heart of the primary tumor, suggesting reversibility of the EMT. (B) These dynamics are supported by studies of disseminated cancer cells. Green fluorescent protein (GFP)-expressing cancer cells were prepared from mammary tumors of MMTV-PyMT transgenic mice in which the MMTV promoter drives expression of the polyoma middle T (PyMT) oncogene (established as a transgene in the mouse germline); these mice develop spontaneously metastasizing mammary carcinomas at a high rate. These cell populations were injected into the tail veins of tumor-free host mice and the proportion of GFP^+ cells relative to total cells in the lungs (*blue curve*) was followed over the indicated time intervals (*red curve*). Initially, ~0.1% of all cells in the lungs were GFP^+ carcinoma cells, which declined to ~0.03% a week later and later increased progressively as metastatic colonization and the growth of metastases proceeded. In contrast, the percentage of GFP^+ tumor cells exhibiting a $CD90^+$ $CD24^+$ marker phenotype (representing carcinoma cells with a mesenchymal phenotype; *red curve*) was initially ~1.5%, reflecting the makeup of cells in the primary tumors from which these cells were prepared. This percentage increased almost 20-fold in the first week to over 20%; however, as the individual metastases expanded in size, this percentage decreased back to ~1.8%, almost precisely the level in the initially inoculated cells. Hence, mesenchymal-like carcinoma cells are favored initially to found and establish metastatic colonies, but as colonization proceeds, the representation of mesenchymal/stem-like cells decreases to that seen in the primary tumor. (C) The inducible expression of the Twist1 EMT-TF was used to gauge its effects on metastatic colonization. As indicated, when this EMT-TF was shut down after dissemination (*right bar*), 12 of 14 mice developed metastases, whereas if this EMT-TF continued to be expressed following metastatic dissemination (*left bar*), a far smaller proportion of the mice developed metastatic colonies. This result indicated that the continued high-level expression of this EMT-TF, and thus tumor cell residence in a more mesenchymal state, was counterproductive for metastatic colonization. (D) These observations can be explained by a model in which epithelial cancer cells at the edge of a primary carcinoma (*pink/brown cells*) undergo an EMT as they invade the stroma and become more mesenchymal (*red cells*). This change seems to be triggered by signals that these carcinoma cells receive from the nearby tumor-associated reactive stroma (see Figure 14.17), which is composed of a variety of inflammatory cells that accumulate during the long course of primary tumor formation. The newly acquired mesenchymal state enables the carcinoma cells to invade locally and intravasate, and subsequently to extravasate into the parenchyma of a distant, ostensibly normal tissue. Following extravasation, however, these cancer cells find themselves in a fully normal stroma that lacks the inflammatory cells and therefore does not release EMT-inducing signals. This

allows these cells and their descendants to lapse back to an epithelial phenotype (*pink/brown cells*) via a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET). (The regeneration of a basement membrane, which occurs as one consequence of an MET, is not illustrated here.) (A, courtesy of T. Brabletz. B, from I. Malanchi et al., *Nature* 481:85–89, 2012. With permission from Nature. C, from J.H. Tsai, J.L. Donaher, D.A. Murphy et al., *Cancer Cell* 22:725–736, 2012. With permission from Elsevier. D, adapted from J.P. Thiery, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2:442–454, 2002. With permission from Nature.)

The above experiments indicate a strong *correlation* between robust outgrowth of metastatic colonies and residence in an epithelial state. Even more compelling are experiments that demonstrate *causality*, specifically that the continued residence in a more mesenchymal phenotypic state is counterproductive for the formation of robustly growing metastatic colonies (Figure 14.18C). All this can be reconciled with a scheme (Figure 14.18D) in which the EMT program participates in the physical dissemination of carcinoma cells from primary tumors, but its continued expression in the majority of cells within derived metastatic colonies actually hinders the robust outgrowth of metastatic colonies, necessitating a reversal of the EMT program, that is, a mesenchymal–epithelial transition (MET) occurring during the process of metastatic colonization.

The reasons why such METs are needed for optimal metastatic colonization and the eruption of macroscopic metastases remain unclear. In fact, cells that have entered into a more mesenchymal state because of the actions of an EMT program proliferate less rapidly than their epithelial counterparts, but this difference is relatively minor and cannot explain the METs observed in recently seeded metastases. More plausible, however, is a mechanism in which the epithelial subpopulations of carcinoma cells within a metastatic colony actively contribute to the robust outgrowth of the colony as a whole, doing so as part of a hierarchy of cells of the sort depicted in Figure 11.20B.

After leaving the primary tumor and entering into the vasculature, additional EMT-inducing signals may be released by the platelets that adsorb to tumor cells in the lumina of vessels (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.5**), reinforcing the previously acquired quasi-mesenchymal state of these cells that drove their intravasation. However, following extravasation of carcinoma cells at sites of metastatic dissemination, the initially encountered stroma is likely to be fully normal and therefore not capable of releasing signals that previously enabled the “reactive stroma” of the primary tumor to actively promote and sustain an EMT program; in the absence of these EMT-promoting signals, recently arrived cells may revert via an MET to the more-epithelial state of their ancestors in the heart of the primary tumor. Later on, if the initially formed micrometastases succeed in colonizing a distant tissue (thereby forming an

actively growing macroscopic tumor), a reactive stroma may eventually be recruited to the resulting metastatic tumor colony, echoing the changes that occurred previously in the primary tumor and inducing, once again, an EMT in the carcinoma cells forming this colony.

Also, as our discussions of the EMT progress, on occasion they will embrace a subtle change in wording: rather than describing a single unitary EMT program, they will refer to EMT *programs* that share a number of core elements but differ from one another in certain details. The existence of multiple alternative EMT programs is dictated by the diverse factors that shape these programs, including the identities of the somatically mutated alleles borne by cancer cells, the differentiation programs of the normal cells-of-origin that spawned various types of neoplastic cells, the nature of the stromal cells that are releasing EMT-inducing heterotypic signals, and the varying extents to which cells have advanced through these programs (see Figure 14.12).

Finally, the phenomena described in this section, when taken together, hold major implications for our thinking about cancer cell biology. Thus, the realization that EMT programs are induced by contextual signals released by other cells indicates that the expression of these programs does not derive directly from mutant alleles carried in the genomes of cancer cells. Hence, the EMT program is an example of an epigenetic rather than a genetically encoded process. In addition, the fact that EMT programs are multifaceted and affect a wide range of cell-biological phenotypes (see Table 14.2), suggests that a significant proportion, possibly the majority, of the distinctive phenotypes of aggressive carcinoma cells are not traceable directly back to somatically mutated alleles of genes (such as the oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes described in earlier chapters) but instead are manifestations of this multifaceted cellular program. This realization moves our thinking away from the notion that cancer cell biology can be understood as a cell-autonomous process, in which study of the genome borne by a neoplastic cell—in its wild-type or mutant configuration—can be used, on its own, to predict the biological phenotypes of this cell (as was implied in Figure 11.12).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

metastable
: State of a cell or process that appears over a period of time to be stable and unchanging but can in fact be changed by various signals or perturbants.

reactive stroma
: The stroma of a highly progressed tumor that has recruited a number of cell types that are typically associated with inflammation and wound healing, including prominently activated fibroblasts and myofibroblasts. *See also* **stroma**.

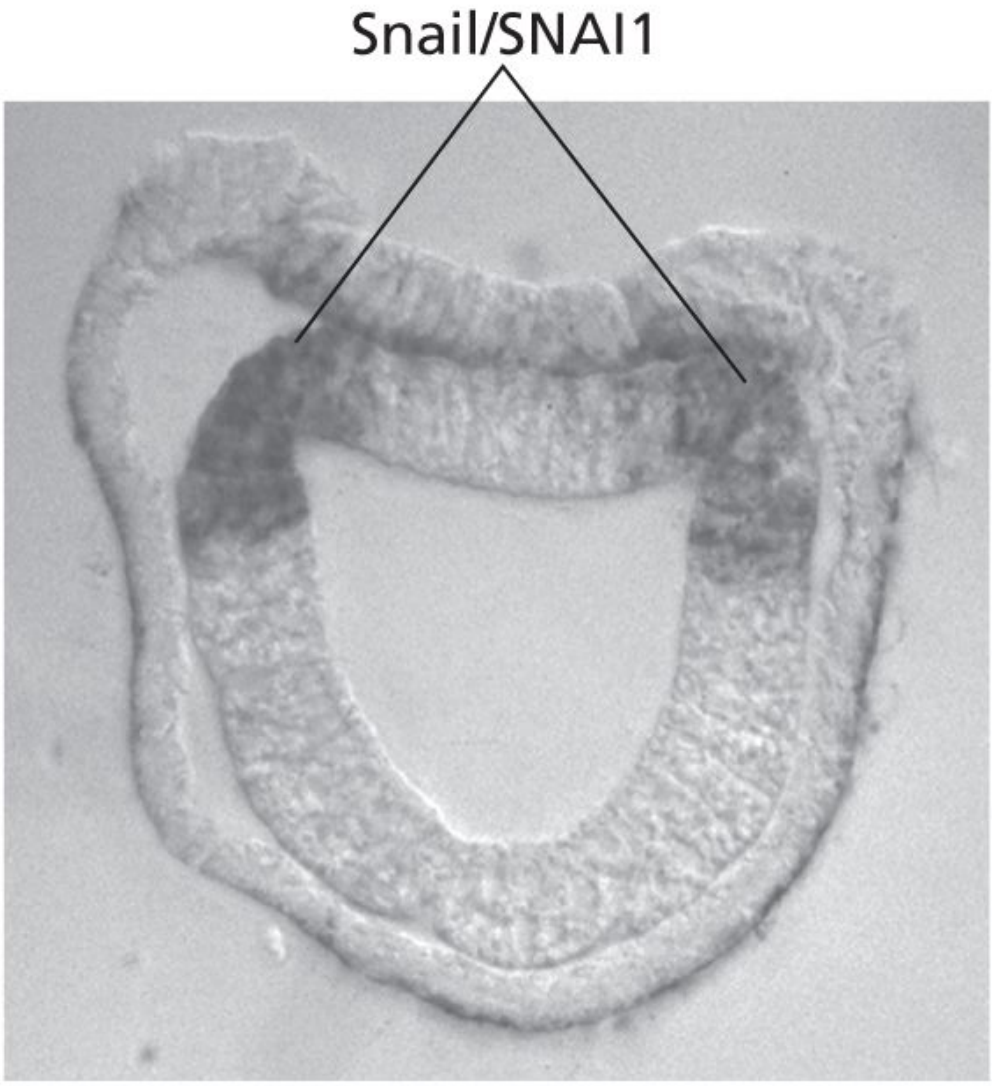
set point
: A state to which a complex regulatory system naturally reverts in the absence of strong external perturbants; set points are often maintained through homeostatic regulatory mechanisms. *See* **homeostasis.**

OceanofPDF.com

14.4 EMTs are programmed by transcription factors that orchestrate key steps of embryogenesis

Execution of an EMT program depends on coordinated changes in the expression of hundreds of distinct genes as well as complex mechanisms of post-transcriptional regulatory controls. These changes affect many aspects of cell biology, not all of which have been enumerated here. The changes include the organization of a cell's intermediate filament cytoskeleton, its motility, its sensitivity to apoptosis, its association with neighboring cells, its release of proteases, and even its display of cell surface integrins and growth factor receptors (see Table 14.2). While extensive evidence, some of it detailed above, implicates stromal signals as key elements in triggering the EMT of carcinoma cells, none of this evidence, on its own, reveals precisely how the complex EMT program is actually coordinated and executed *within* the responding epithelial cells.

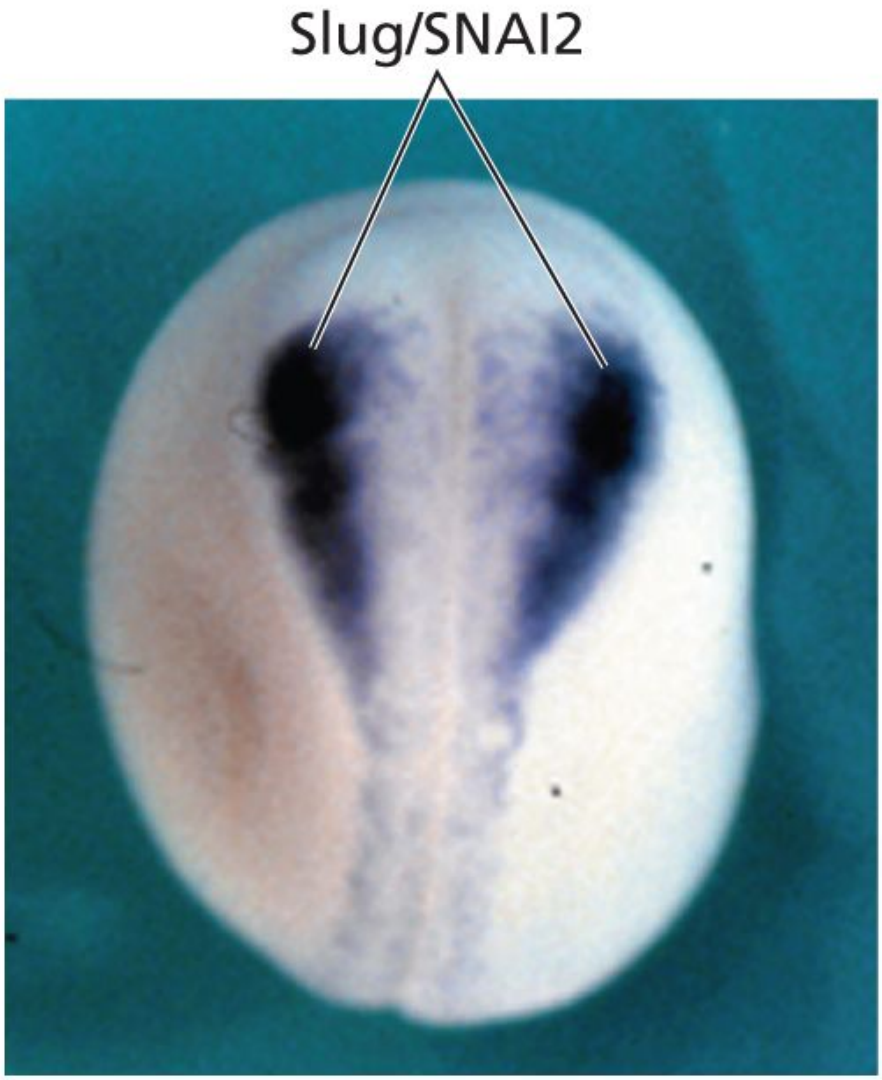
The genetics of the early development of a variety of model organisms has provided many of the answers to this question. Like many complex cell-biological programs, EMTs are orchestrated by a small number of pleiotropically acting transcription factors (TFs). A number of genes specifying these EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) have been identified (**Figure 14.19**), many initially uncovered in the embryos of the fruit fly, *Drosophila melanogaster*. These genes and the TFs that they encode are conserved in all chordates and in most metazoa and have been found to control key steps in early embryogenesis in various metazoan embryos; these steps involve various versions of the EMT program. (The strong evolutionary conservation of these EMT-TFs indicates that the EMT and key steps of early embryogenesis were developed early in metazoan evolution, long before the radiation of the various metazoan phyla which seems to have occurred before the Cambrian era 550 million years ago.) By activating expression of these TFs, cancer cells gain access to the complex, multifaceted EMT programs that they orchestrate. Implicit in what follows is the following scheme: heterotypic signals from the stroma induce expression of EMT-TFs in carcinoma cells; these TFs, in turn, orchestrate EMT programs within these cells.



Amphioxus

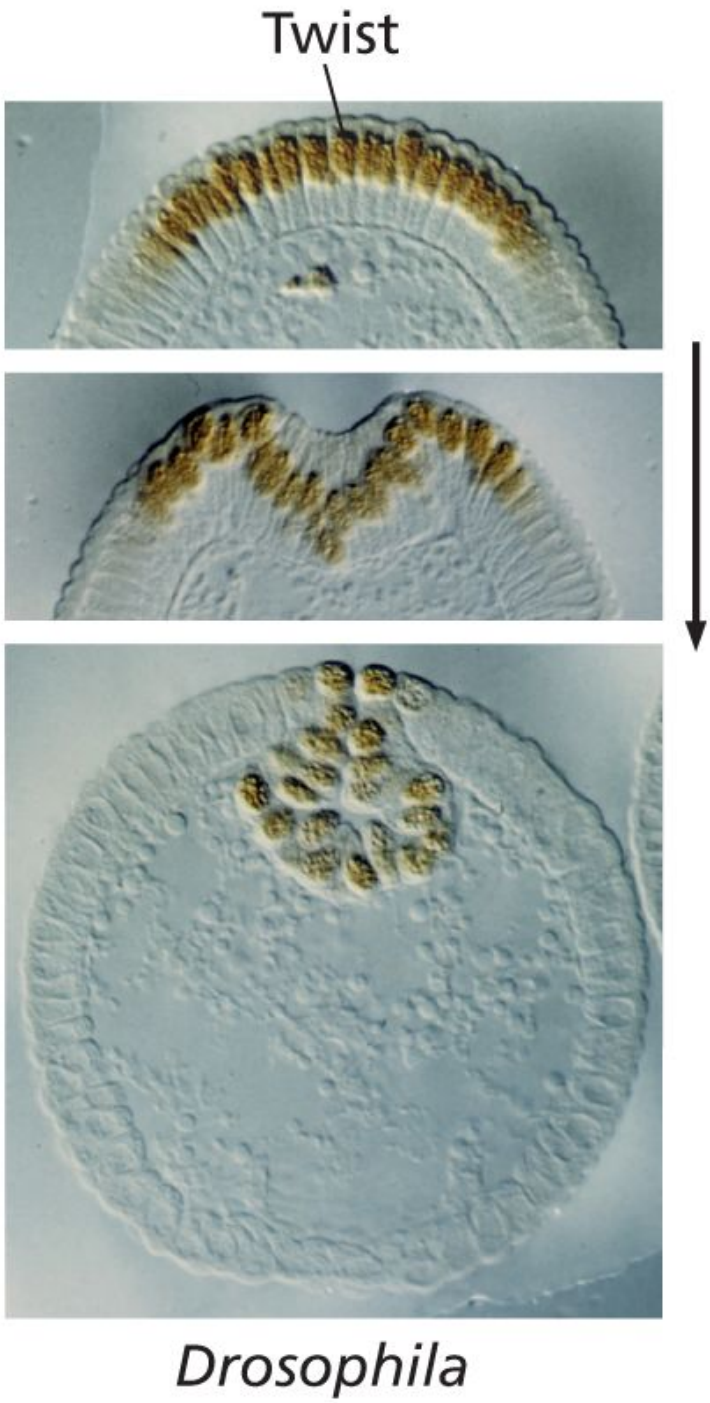
Snail slash S N A I 1 is shown being expressed as two dark spots in an embryo of Amphioxus, a marine species resembling a miniature lamprey.

(A)



Slug slash S N A I 2 is shown being expressed as two dark spots in an embryo of Xenopus laevis, the African clawed frog.

(B)

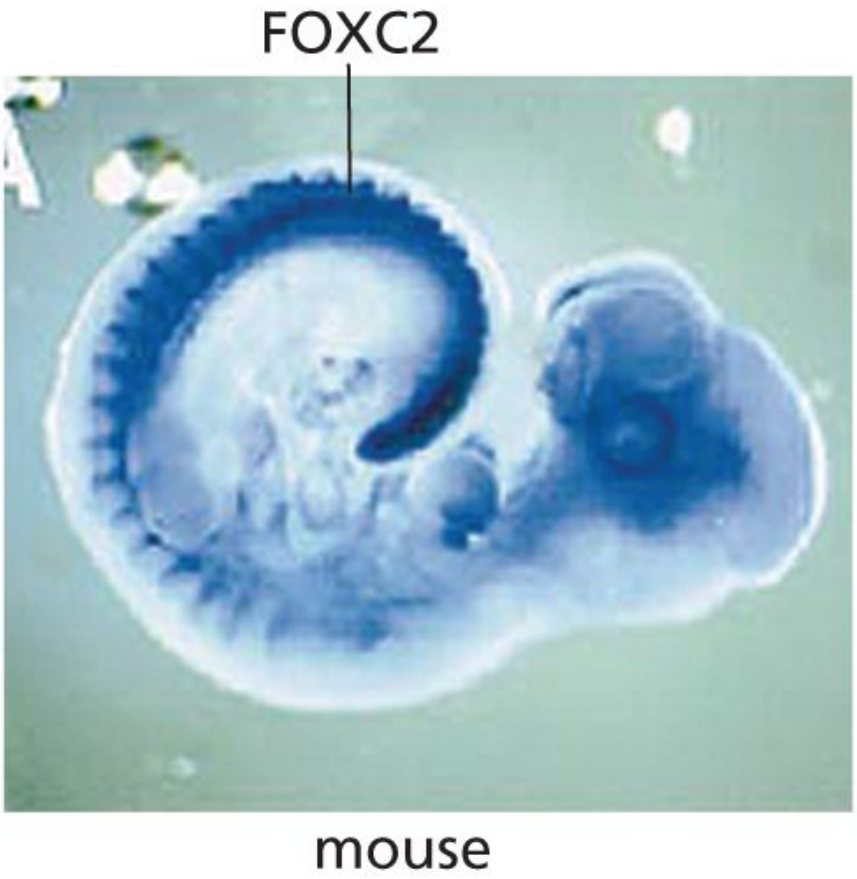


Twist is shown being expressed in a gastrulating blastula of Drosophila, the fruit fly. A patch of cells along the surface forms an indentation and then reshapes into a cluster of cells that extend into the embryo’s interior.

(C)

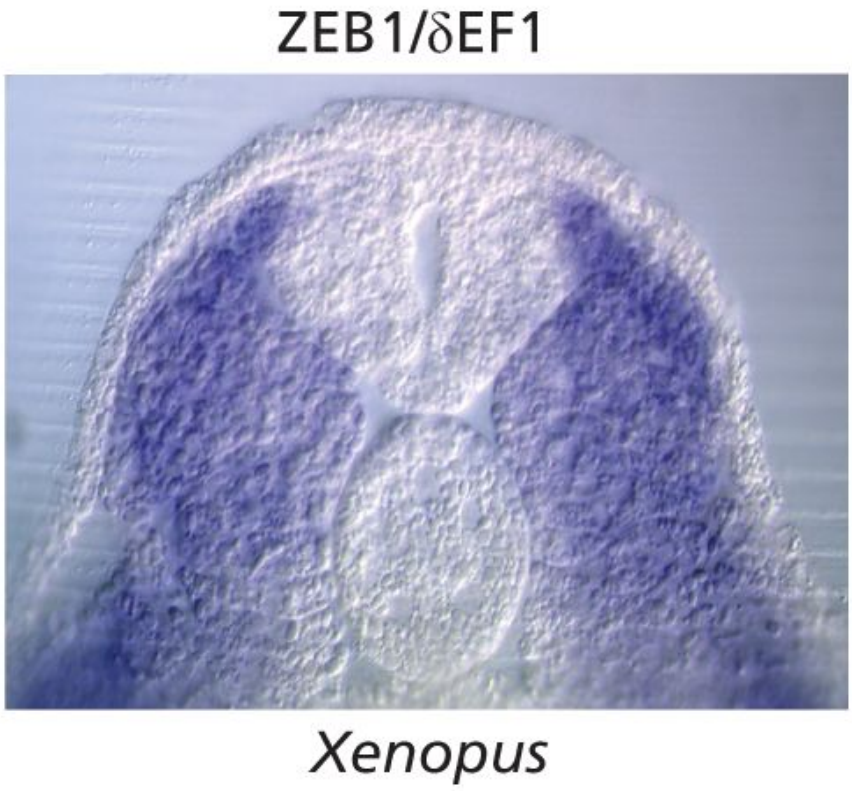
Goosecoid is shown being expressed as a dark spot in a gastrulating Amphioxus blastula.

(D)



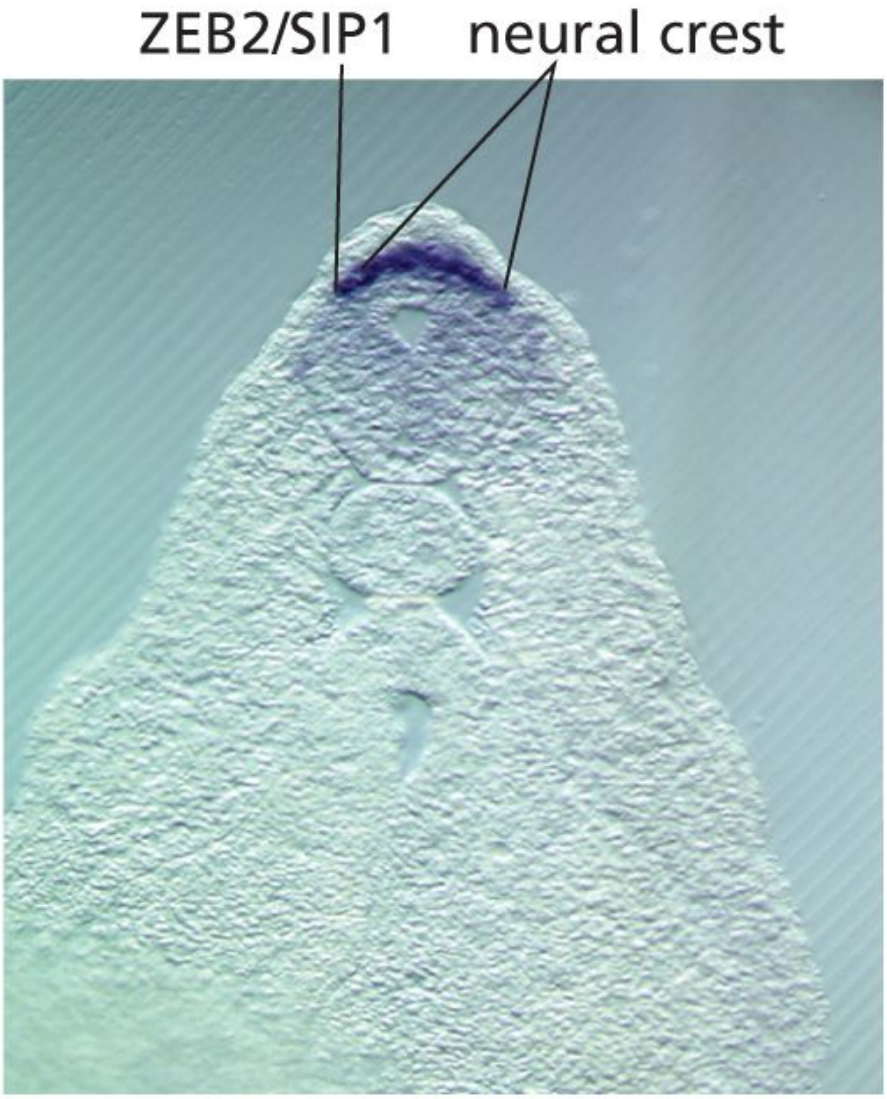
FOX C 2 is shown being expressed as the long, curved bottom part of the developing spine in a mouse embryo.

(E)



Z E B1 slash delta E F 1 is shown being expressed in a Xenopus embryo as two dark areas on either side of the developing spine.

(F)

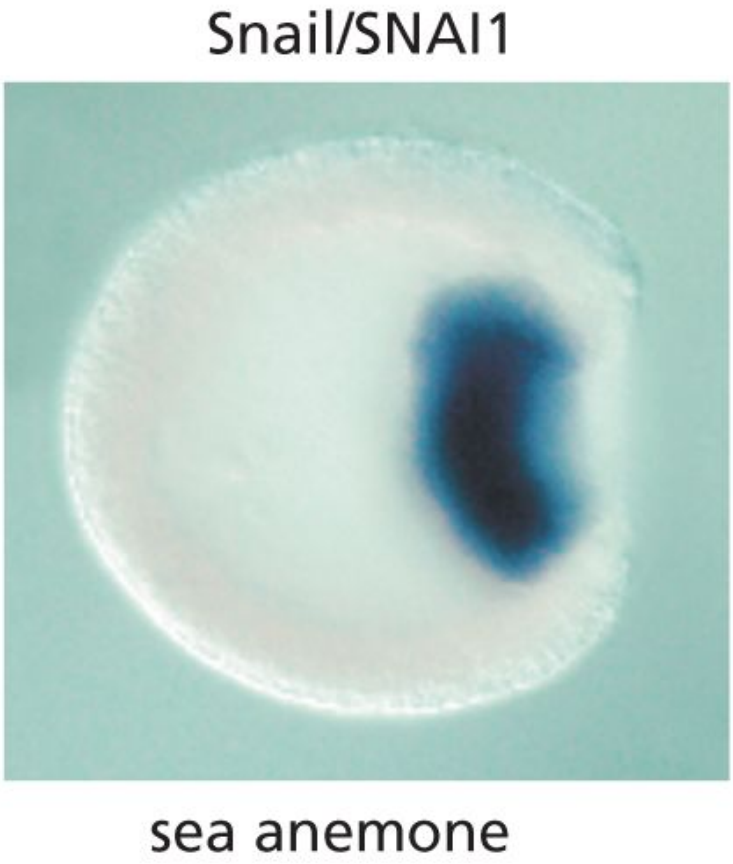


Z E B 2 slash S I P 1 is shown being expressed in a Xenopus embryo as a dark, curved neural crest.

(G)

P r r x1 is shown being expressed in a zebrafish embryo as dark spots along the edges.

(H)



Snail slash S N A I 1 is shown being expressed as a dark spot in a sea anemone blastula.

(I)

Figure 14.19 Embryonic transcription factors programming epithelial–mesenchymal transitions A variety of EMT-inducing transcription factors (EMT-TFs) can induce this program in various stages of embryogenesis, and their expression has been documented in a wide range of organisms. (A) Snail (also known as SNAI1) is shown being expressed in cells of a primitive chordate, specifically in cells (*dark areas*) whose counterparts in higher chordates form the neural crest. (B) The Slug TF (SNAI2), a close relative of Snail, is expressed in *Amphioxus* (*dark blue*) in the embryonic neural crest, here in an embryo of *Xenopus laevis*, the African clawed toad. (C) Twist is shown here in an early *Drosophila* embryo, in which it programs an EMT at the site of gastrulation (*brown*). (D) The Goosecoid TF is expressed at the blastopore lip in gastrulating chordate embryos. Here its expression, which is inducible by the TGF-β signaling pathway, is adjacent to the blastopore 8 hours after fertilization of an *Amphioxus* egg. (E) The FOXC2 TF is expressed in important mesodermal structures in this day 9.5 mouse embryo, including the mesoderm around the developing spinal

column as well as in somites, which are precursors to many of the body's muscles. (F) The ZEB1 (δEF1) TF is expressed in the paraxial mesoderm of an early *Xenopus* embryo, where it may play a role in programming the toad's development from axial stem cells. (G) In the same embryo at this stage, expression of the related ZEB2 (SIP1) TF occurs in a complementary pattern, being highest in the neural crest and neural tube, where it appears to be responsible for the cell movements that lead to closure of the neural tube and emigration of cells from the neural crest to other parts of the body. (H) Expression of the PRXX1 EMT-TF at the 22-somite stage of a zebrafish embryo. (I) The antiquity of these TFs is illustrated by the expression of Snail in the blastula stage of the starlet sea anemone embryo, *Nematostella vectensis.* Its ancestors diverged from those of the chordates >600 million years ago, before the evolution of bilateral animals with three cell layers. It contrasts with *Amphioxus*—clearly a chordate with many features of vertebrate ancestors—which diverged ∼525 million years ago from our own lineage. (A, from J. Langeland et al., *Dev. Genes Evol*. 208:569-577, 1998. With permission from Springer. B, from C. LaBonne et al., J. *Neurobiol*. 36:175-189, 1999. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C, courtesy of M. Leptin. D, from A.H. Neidert, G. Panopoulou and J.A. Langeland, *Evol. Dev*. 2:303–310, 2000. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. E, from T. Furumoto et al., *Dev. Biol*. 210:15–29, 1999. With permission from Elsevier. F, from L.A. van Grunsven et al., *Dev. Dyn*. 235:1491–1500, 2006. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. G, courtesy of E.J. Bellefroid. H, from O.H. Ocaña, R. Corcoles, A. Fabra I et al., *Cancer Cell* 22:709–724, 2012. With permission from Elsevier. I, from M.Q. Martindale, K. Pang and J.R. Finnerty, *Development* 131:2463–2474, 2004. With permission from The Company of Biologists.)

More than half a dozen EMT-TFs have been described, each capable of inducing an EMT when ectopically expressed in certain epithelial cells (**Table 14.4**). For example, Snail is an EMT-TF that was first described in *Drosophila* and has since been discovered in a wide range of metazoa, including vertebrates, insects, worms, and molluscs. In early vertebrate embryos, Snail is first expressed in the portion of the ectoderm that is destined to become mesoderm following gastrulation. During embryogenesis, Snail, working together with two other EMT-TFs—Slug, and Twist—convert epithelial cells into the migratory mesenchymal cells that form the mesoderm. Snail and its relative Slug are involved in yet other embryonic steps in which one type of tissue is transformed into another. The truly ancient origins of these TFs are illustrated dramatically by Figure 14.19I, in which the embryo of a very primitive organism—a sea anemone, which lacks bilateral symmetry and three germ layers—expresses the Snail EMT-TF at the site of its future embryonic blastopore.

Table 14.4 Transcription factors orchestrating an EMT

Name	Where first identified	Type of transcription factor	Cancer association
Snail (SNAI1)	mesoderm induction in *Drosophila*; neural crest migration in vertebrates	C2H2-type zinc finger	invasive ductal carcinoma
Slug (SNAI2)	delamination of the neural crest and early mesoderm in chicken	C2H2-type zinc finger	breast cancer cell lines, melanoma
Twist	mesoderm induction in *Drosophila*; emigration from neural crest	bHLH	various carcinomas, high-grade melanoma, neuroblastoma
Goosecoid	gastrulation in frog	paired homeodomain	various carcinomas
FOXC2	mesenchyme formation	winged helix/forkhead	basal-like breast cancer
ZEB1 (δEF1)	postgastrulation mesodermal tissue formation	2-handed zinc finger/homeodomain	wide variety of cancers
ZEB2 (SIP1)	neurogenesis	2-handed zinc finger/homeodomain	ovarian, breast, liver carcinomas
E12/E47 (Tcf3)[a]	associated with E-cadherin promoter	bHLH	gastric cancer

Name	Where first identified	Type of transcription factor	Cancer association
Prrx 1	chick mesoderm formation	paired homeobox	various carcinomas

Some of these TFs are expressed transiently in adult tissues during the tissue remodeling that underlies wound healing. This is illustrated nicely by the behavior of confluent monolayers of normal epithelial cells in culture that are wounded experimentally by scraping away a swath of these cells as was seen in Figure 14.15. Slug expression is induced in the surviving epithelial cells sitting at the edge of the wound, which appeared to enable these cells to acquire motility and migrate into the wound site. This pattern of expression helps to explain how epithelial cells at the edges of wounds undergo a transient EMT in order to reassemble epithelial cell sheets (see also Figure 13.15A). Observations like these broaden our perspective on the normal biological roles of these EMT-TFs: in addition to programming key steps in early embryogenesis, the expression of some of these TFs is resurrected transiently in adults in order to help reconstruct damaged epithelial tissues.

Snail and Slug (sometimes called SNAI1 and SNAI2) are members of the C2H2-type family. These two TFs seem to operate largely as repressors of transcription. Thus, both have been found to be able to repress transcription of the gene encoding E-cadherin, which serves as the keystone of the epithelial cell state. (As we read earlier, the loss of E-cadherin expression can, on its own, cause epithelial cells to assume many of the phenotypic changes associated with an EMT.)

The Snail TF has been found to be expressed in the invasive fronts of chemically induced mouse skin carcinomas, and its expression is associated with the degree of lymph node metastasis of human breast cancers. Moreover, embryonic expression of Snail, its cousin Slug, and Goosecoid is induced by contextual signals, such as TGF-β and Wnts, that are known to be responsible for inducing the EMT conversion of mouse tumor cells. Twist is expressed during the gastrulation of *Drosophila* embryos (see Figure 14.19C) and the out-migration of neuroepithelial cells from the neural crest of chordate embryos. Its expression is also induced by exposure to TGF-β.

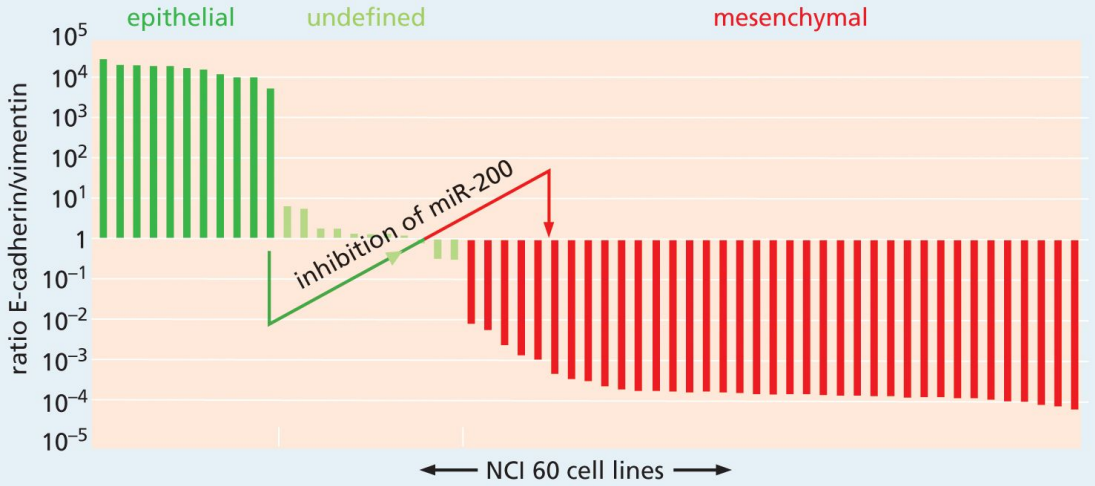
Although the micrographs of Figure 14.19 give the impression that these and other EMT-TFs are involved largely in early embryonic morphogenetic steps, in fact they continue to play roles throughout the entire process of embryonic development and postnatal tissue homeostasis (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.1**). The multiplicity of these TFs, along with their expression in various combinations in human cancers,

helps to further explain the nomenclature cited earlier, namely that the term “EMT” actually refers to a group of cell-biological programs rather than a single, uniformly expressed program.

Some of the EMT-TFs participate in unusually interesting modes of regulation. For example, the EMT was portrayed as generating a succession of phenotypic states arrayed along a spectrum between highly epithelial and highly mesenchymal (see Figure 14.12). This was cited as an example of how and why the EMT does not operate as a simple binary switch that shuttles cells between two alternative phenotypic states, that is, one fully epithelial, the other fully mesenchymal. Nevertheless, certain binary controls appear to contribute to the regulation of EMT expression. One was seen in the behavior of *ras*-transformed cells that have been triggered by TGF-β exposure to enter into a more mesenchymal, EMT-induced state (see Figure 14.13); the resulting cell state causes them to produce their own, endogenously synthesized TGF-β, which operates, in turn, in an autocrine manner, driving a self-sustaining positive-feedback (sometimes termed “feed-forward”) signaling loop. Such controls can yield phenotypic states that are stably maintained and expressed over many cell generations and operate in a binary fashion, that is, either they are or are not activated. Another manifestation of binary controls operates in the case of the Zeb1 and Zeb2 EMT-TFs, which are important, if not dominant EMT-TFs in imposing a more mesenchymal state on cancer cells (**Sidebar 14.2**). Somehow, these binary switching mechanisms must be integrated into the well-documented notion that EMT programs produce a spectrum of phenotypic states (rather than just two) arrayed along the E to M axis.

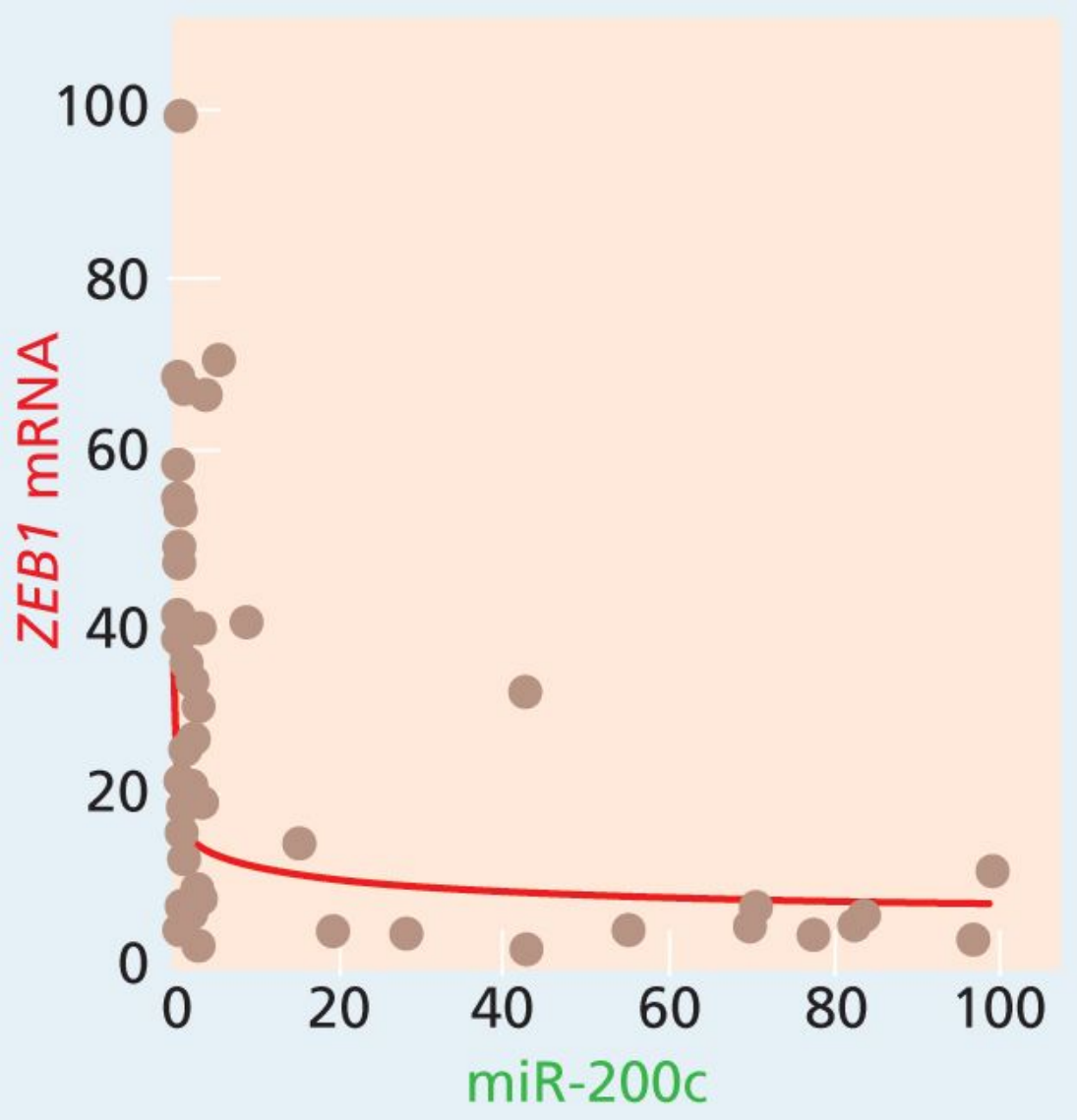
Sidebar 14.2 Binary switches may operate in cells that sit in a diverse set of phenotypic states

A major unresolved puzzle comes from the observation that carcinoma cells seem to reside in a number of distinct alternative phenotypic states arrayed continuously across the epithelial-to-mesenchymal spectrum of phenotypes while, at the same time, some of the controls regulating their phenotypic states operate as binary switches, shunting cells into either an epithelial or a mesenchymal state but not intermediate states (**Figure 14.20**). Related to this quandary is the unresolved question of how precisely the phenotypic states of carcinoma cells are stabilized at various stopping points along the E-to-M spectrum rather than being subjected to continual interconversions between these states.



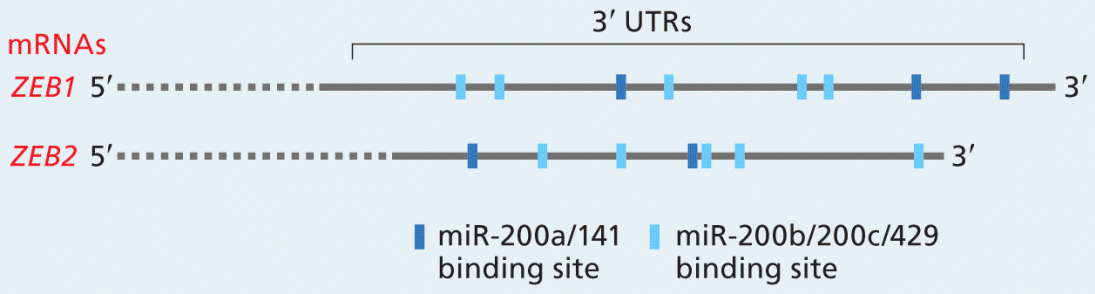
A graphic depicting the ratio of E-cadherin to vimentin in each of the N C I 60 cell lines. The first 11 lines are clearly epithelial, with more than 1000 times as much E-cadherin as vimentin. The next 11 lines are undefined, with E-cadherin to vimentin ratios between 10 and 0.1. The remaining lines are mesenchymal, all with more than 100 times as much vimentin as E-cadherin, and in a few cases 10,000 time as much. One epithelial line is shown undergoing conversion to mesenchymal through inhibition of m i R-200.

(A)



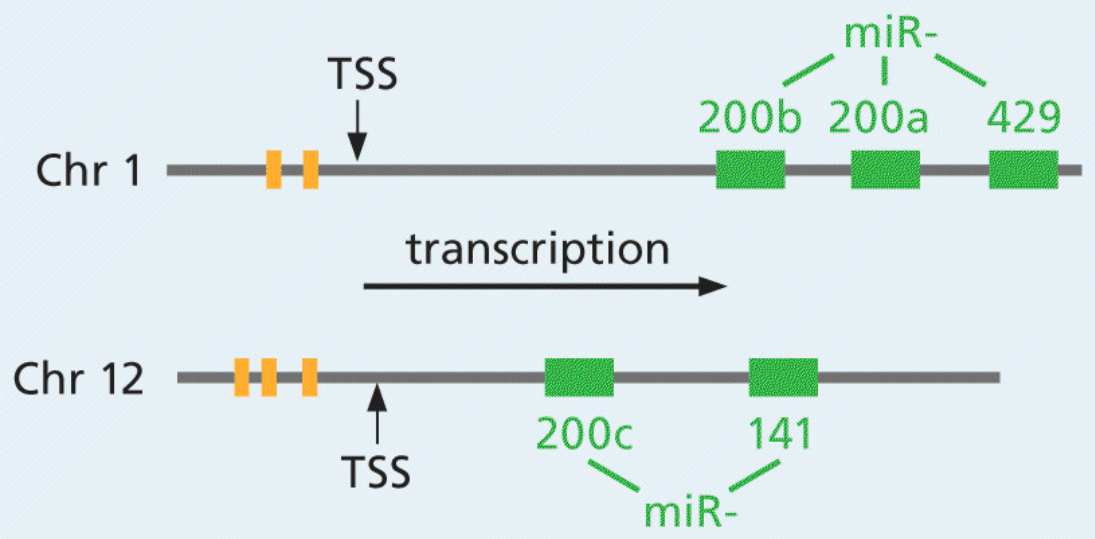
A scatter plot with m i R-200c expression on the horizontal axis and ZEB1 m R N A expression on the vertical axis. Each dot represents one cell line. The dot pattern indicates a mostly one-or-the-other relationship: only one cell line expresses both genes to a significant degree.

(B)



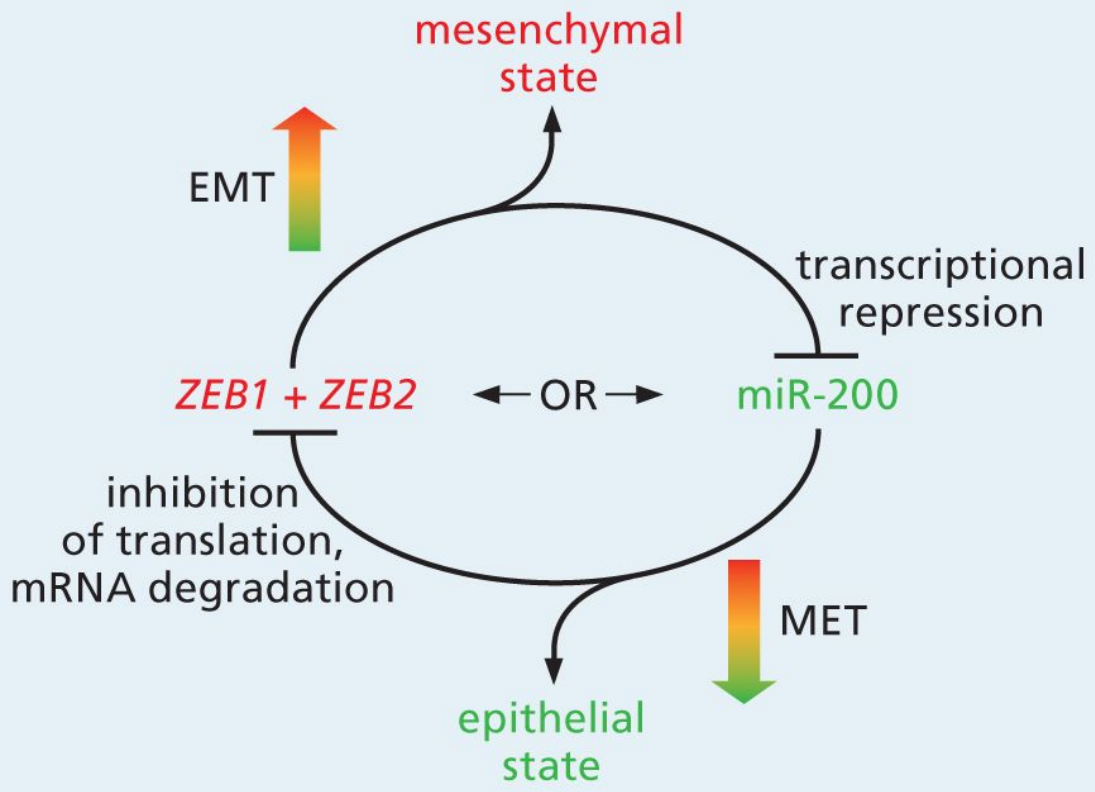
A schematic illustrating the sequencing of m R N Ayze ZEB 1 and ZEB 2, revealing multiple m i R-200a slash 141 and m i R-200b slash 200c slash 429 binding sites on each.

(C)



The C h r 1 gene with a transcription start site on the left and transcription proceeding rightward, with specification points for m i R 200b, 200a, and finally 429. Also, the C h r 12 gene with a transcription start site on the left and transcription proceeding rightward, with specification points for m i R 200c and then 141.

(D)



A diagram of a mutually inhibitory relationship between the epithelial and mesenchymal states. In a cell that has undergone E M T and is mesenchymal, ZEB1 and ZEB2 exert transcriptional repression of m i R-200. On the other hand, in a cell that has undergone M E T and is epithelial, m i R-200 exerts inhibition of translation and m R N A degradation of ZEB1 and ZEB2.

(E)

Figure 14.20 Alternation between the epithelial and mesenchymal states
Although carcinoma cells growing *in vivo* apparently can switch reversibly between epithelial and mesenchymal states, the cells of many cancer cell lines, when propagated *in vitro*, appear to reside stably in one or the other of these states, being controlled seemingly by a governor that functions as a bistable switch. (A) The levels of E-cadherin and vimentin, representative markers of the epithelial and mesenchymal states, respectively, were measured by immunoblotting of lysates of the 60 distinct cancer cell lines that constitute the collection termed the NCI 60 cell lines. The ratio of E-cadherin vs. vimentin (i.e., epithelial vs. mesenchymal) is indicated on the ordinate. As is apparent, almost all of the NCI 60 cells resided either in the epithelial (*green bars*) or mesenchymal (*red bars*) state when propagated in culture. The arrow indicates the shift of one of these cell lines after it was induced experimentally to undergo an EMT as described in panel C. (B) Examination of a series of microRNAs (see Section 1.9)

expressed in either the epithelial or the mesenchymal state revealed that several of these belonging to the miR-200 family of microRNAs were expressed in a fashion that was mutually exclusive with the ZEB1 and ZEB2 EMT-TFs. Shown (in arbitrary units) are the expression levels of ZEB1 mRNA and of miR-200c in ∼60 cell lines, with each point representing a single cell line; regulation of ZEB2 mRNA behaved in an essentially identical fashion (*not shown*). (C) Sequencing of the mRNAs encoding ZEB1 and ZEB2 revealed multiple sites in the 3′ UTRs (3′ untranslated regions; *light and dark blue boxes*) that could be targeted by miR-200 family members, resulting in inhibition of translation or degradation of these mRNAs. Alteration of these target sequences by site-directed mutagenesis rendered these mRNAs resistant to the inhibitory actions of miR-200 microRNAs. Moreover, experimental inhibition in epithelial cells of endogenously expressed miR-200 microRNAs, achieved by transfection of an antisense locked nucleic acid (LNA) construct, allowed accumulation of ZEB1 and ZEB2 and loss of epithelial gene expression. (D) Each of the two genes encoding miR-200 microRNAs specifies multiple miRNAs (*green boxes*) in its primary transcript (*not shown*), which is then cleaved post-transcriptionally to generate several mature microRNAs. The promoters of both genes contain evolutionarily conserved binding sites for ZEB1 and ZEB2 (*orange boxes*), which bind a sequence in these promoters and proceed to repress transcription of these genes. Transcription is from left to right (*horizontal arrow*) and the diagram is not drawn to scale. TSS, transcription start site. (E) The observations in panels C and D, when taken together, indicate the existence of mutually antagonistic interactions that operate as a bistable switch, thereby ensuring the metastable residence of a cell in either the mesenchymal or the epithelial state. Once one group of regulatory molecules gets the upper hand (i.e., either ZEB1/2 or miR-200 microRNAs), it shuts down the other and thereby ensures long-term residence in either the mesenchymal or the epithelial state. In principle, each group of regulators can act on yet other genes and mRNAs; e.g., ZEB1/2 can repress E-cadherin and other epithelial genes. The actions of the miR-200 microRNAs, however, seem to be focused more narrowly on suppressing just *ZEB1/2* expression. (A–C, from S.-M. Park et al., *Genes Dev*. 22:894–907, 2008. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. D, from S. Brabletz and T. Brabletz, *EMBO Rep*. 11:670-677, 2010. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

OceanofPDF.com

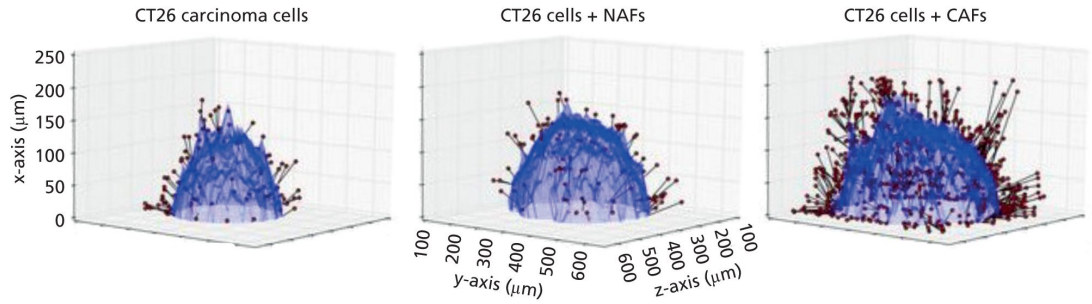
Footnotes

- aIt remains unclear whether E12/E47 can function on its own to induce an EMT, or whether this bHLH protein functions as a subunit of a heterodimeric TF complex formed with other well-validated EMT-TF proteins such as Twist.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

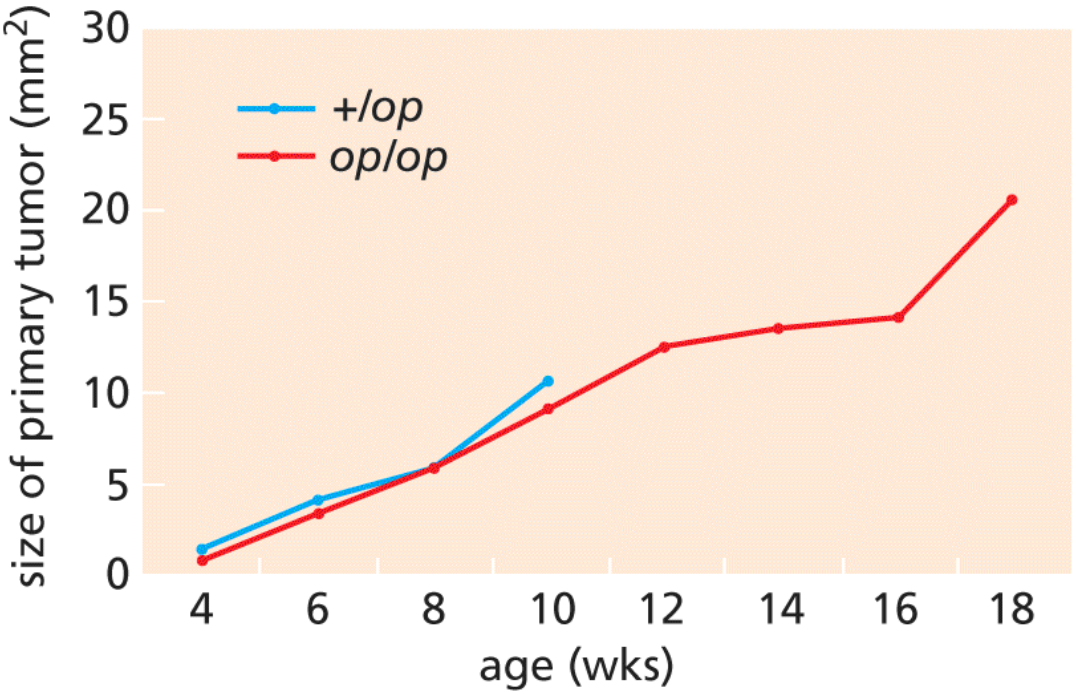
14.5 Signals released by an array of stromal cell types contribute to the induction of invasiveness and intravasation

The diversity of the EMT-inducing signals described above (see Table 14.3 and Figure 14.17) draws attention to the stromal cells that are the sources of these signals. The most prominent cells in the stroma of a high-grade tumor are the carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), which form the reactive stroma of the tumor and typically resemble myofibroblasts, releasing among other paracrine signals large amounts of TGF-β. As seen in **Figure 14.21A**, when clusters of murine colorectal carcinoma (CRC) cells, sometimes termed spheroids, are introduced into a three-dimensional collagen matrix, small numbers of CRC cells invade the nearby matrix; the same behavior is noted when the CRC cell spheroids are propagated in a collagen matrix containing normal fibroblasts adjacent to an excised tumor. However, when fibroblasts are prepared instead from the tumor-associated stroma (and may be termed CAFs, carcinoma-associated fibroblasts), there is a dramatic increase in invasiveness, ostensibly echoing the behavior of carcinoma cells in a highly progressed primary tumor.



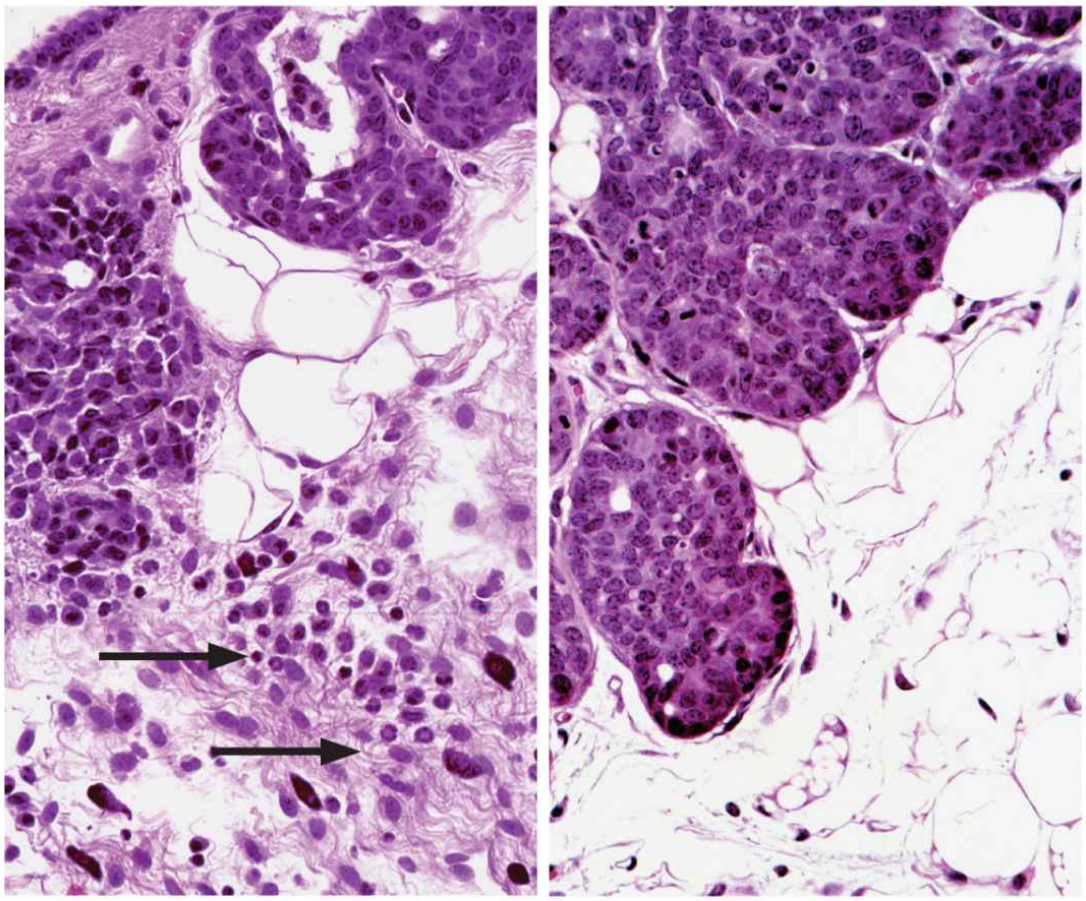
Three three-dimensional visualizations of invasiveness, each showing a round blue core surrounded by dark red dots some distance away. In the visualizations for C T 26 carcinoma cells and for C T 26 carcinoma cells plus N A Effs, the number of red dots is comparable. In the visualization for C T 26 carcinoma cells plus C A Effs, there are far more red dots and their arrangement is less orderly.

(A)



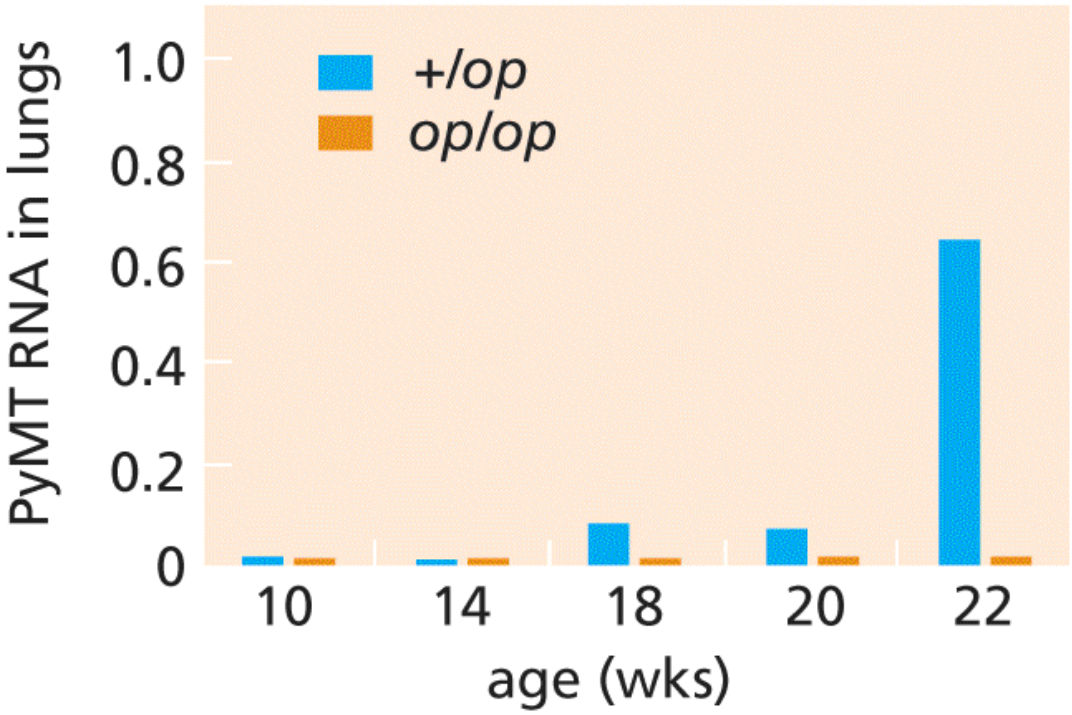
A line graph describing the size of the primary tumor as a function of time for two types of mice. In both plus slash o p and double o p mice, the tumor grows to about 10 square millimeters in 10 weeks. The line for double o p mice continues out to about 20 square millimeters in 18 weeks.

(B)



A pair of histology stain images. In the one for plus slash o p, the middle and lower parts of the image are thick with disordered nuclei. In the image for double o p, the corresponding areas are almost entirely free of nuclei.

(C)



A bar graph that gives P y M T R N A in lungs for two types of mice over time. The bars for plus slash o p are short at 10 weeks and 14 weeks, raised to 0.1 at 18 and 20 weeks, and significantky raised tot 0.6 at 22 weeks. The bars for double o p are short at all times.

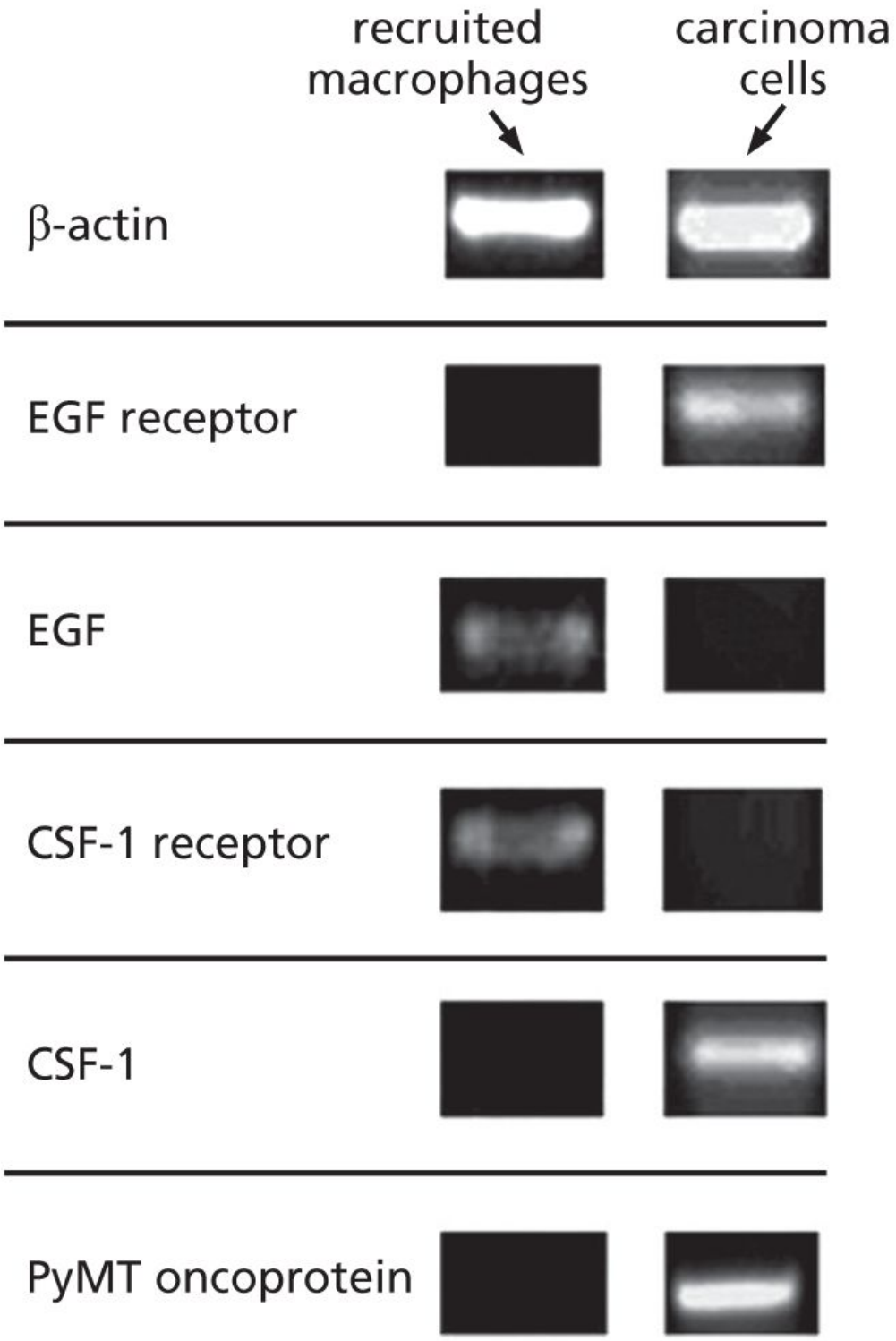
(D)

Figure 14.21 Effects of fibroblasts and macrophages on invasion and metastasis Both cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) and macrophages can have strong effects on the biology of nearby carcinoma cells. (A) In an *in vitro* model of invasiveness, clusters of CT26 murine colorectal carcinoma (CRC) cells were embedded in a 3-dimensional collagen I matrix on their own (*purple, left panel*), in the presence of normal fibroblasts (NAFs) adjacent to a CRC tumor excised at surgery from a patient (*middle panel*), or carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) prepared from the stroma of the excised human CRC tumor (*right panel*). The fibroblast populations were mixed into the collagen matrix. After 3 days, the nuclei of the invasive cells were visualized (*dark red dots*) by image-processing software. (B) The PyMT transgene (see Figure 14.18B) has been introduced, through breeding, into mice that can ($Csf^{+/op}$) or cannot ($Csf^{op+/op}$) make colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1), which is needed to recruit macrophages into tumors (see Figure 13.25). The presence (in $Csf^{+/op}$ mice) or absence (in $Csf^{op+/op}$ mice) of recruited tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) has no effect on the ability of the primary breast tumors to grow in these transgenic mice. (C) Such mammary

tumors arising in *Csf*$^{+/op}$ mice (whose tumors contain many TAMs, *not shown*) develop a highly invasive phenotype, in which individual carcinoma cells invade the nearby stroma in large numbers (*left panel*, *arrows*). However, if tumors develop in *Csf*$^{op+/op}$ mice, in which macrophages cannot be recruited into the tumor-associated stroma (*right panel*), the tumor cells do not break through the basement membrane and the tumor as a whole remains encapsulated and benign, indicating that the macrophages contribute in essential ways to tumor invasiveness. (D) In the *Csf*$^{+/op}$ mice, metastases in the lungs begin to appear at 18 weeks of age and increase progressively thereafter (*blue bars*), as gauged by the amount of polyomavirus middle T RNA (expressed exclusively in tumor cells) present in the lungs (*ordinate*). However, in the *Csf*$^{op+/op}$ TAM-negative mice (*orange bars*), lung metastases are virtually absent. (A, from Y. Attieh, A.G. Clark, C. Grass et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 216:3509–3520, 2017. With permission from Elsevier. B–D, from E.Y. Lin et al., *J. Exp. Med*. 193:727–740, 2001. With permission from Rockefeller University Press.)

The roles played by macrophages in the tumor-associated stroma were already cited briefly earlier. Their influence on the invasive and metastatic behavior of primary cancer cells can be demonstrated by studying genetically altered mice that lack the ability to make colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1). As was discussed in the last chapter (Section 13.3), mammary carcinomas arising in cancer-prone transgenic mice usually recruit large numbers of tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs). However, when the tumor cells in such mice lack the ability to make CSF-1, TAMs are virtually absent (see Figure 13.25). The absence of CSF-1 and TAMs has no effect on primary tumor growth (Figure 14.21B), but such tumors show a benign, noninvasive behavior, in contrast to tumors that succeed in recruiting TAMs (Figure 14.21C). The influence of these macrophages on metastatic behavior is striking: primary mammary tumors usually succeed in seeding large numbers of metastases in the lungs, but without recruited TAMs in their stroma, they fail entirely to seed detectable lung metastases (Figure 14.21D).

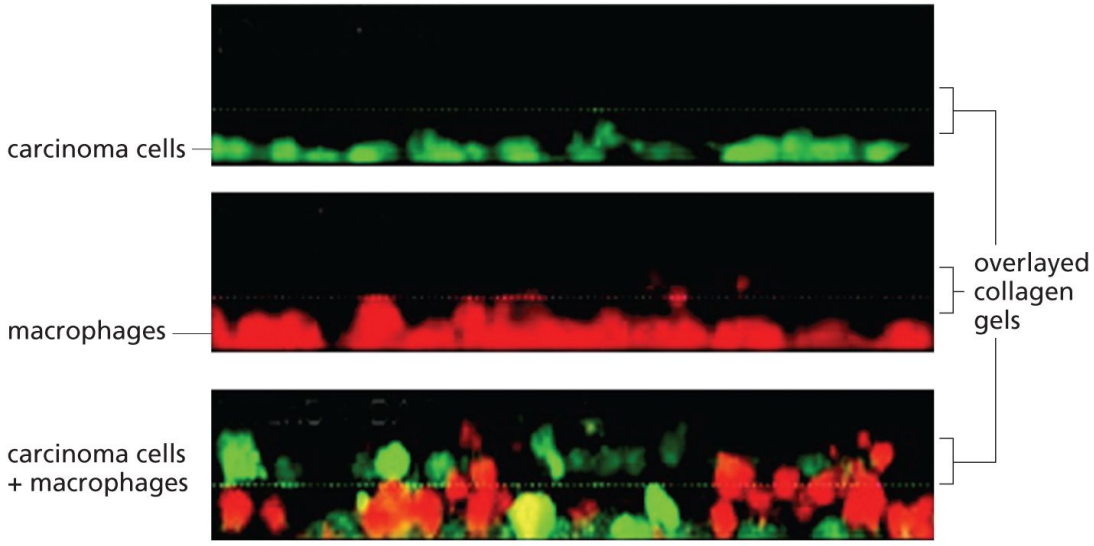
These experiments (Figure 14.21B–D) provide compelling evidence that the invasive and metastatic behavior of mouse breast carcinoma cells can be strongly influenced by the actions of stromal cells, in this case specific heterotypic signals released by macrophages. They fail, however, to reveal the precise nature of these signals. Macrophage-derived TNF-α, as argued earlier, is likely to contribute to induction of the EMT by cancer cells, and therefore to the invasive and metastatic behavior described in **Figure 14.22**.



A table of gel electrophoresis results for six different proteins, in each case showing a result for recruited macrophages and one for carcinoma cells. Both results are strongly positive for Beta-actin. For E G F receptor, C S F-1, and P y M T oncoprotein, the results are negative for recruited macrophages and

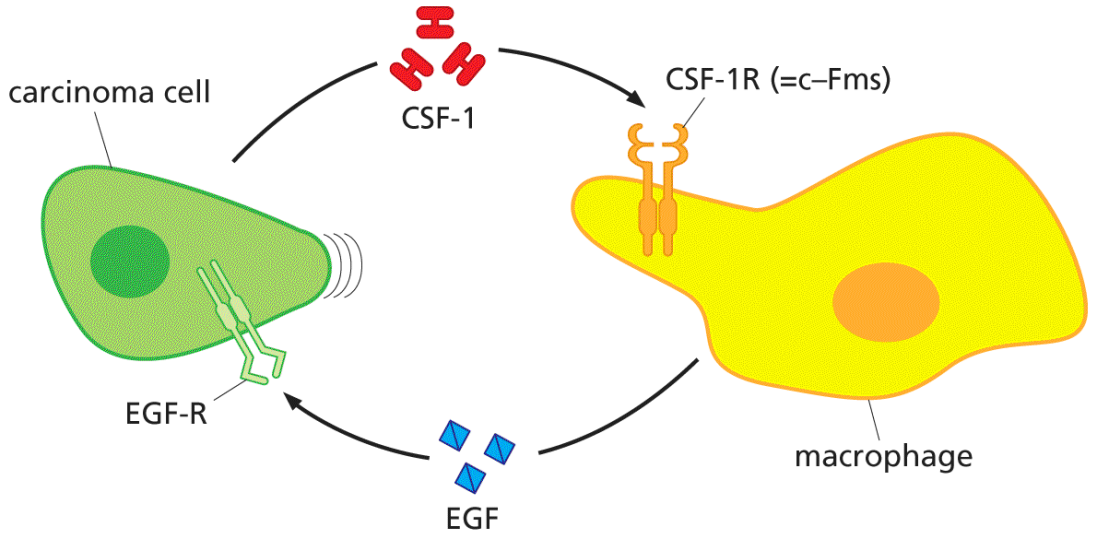
positive for carcinoma cells. For E G F and C S F-1 receptor, the reverse is true.

(A)



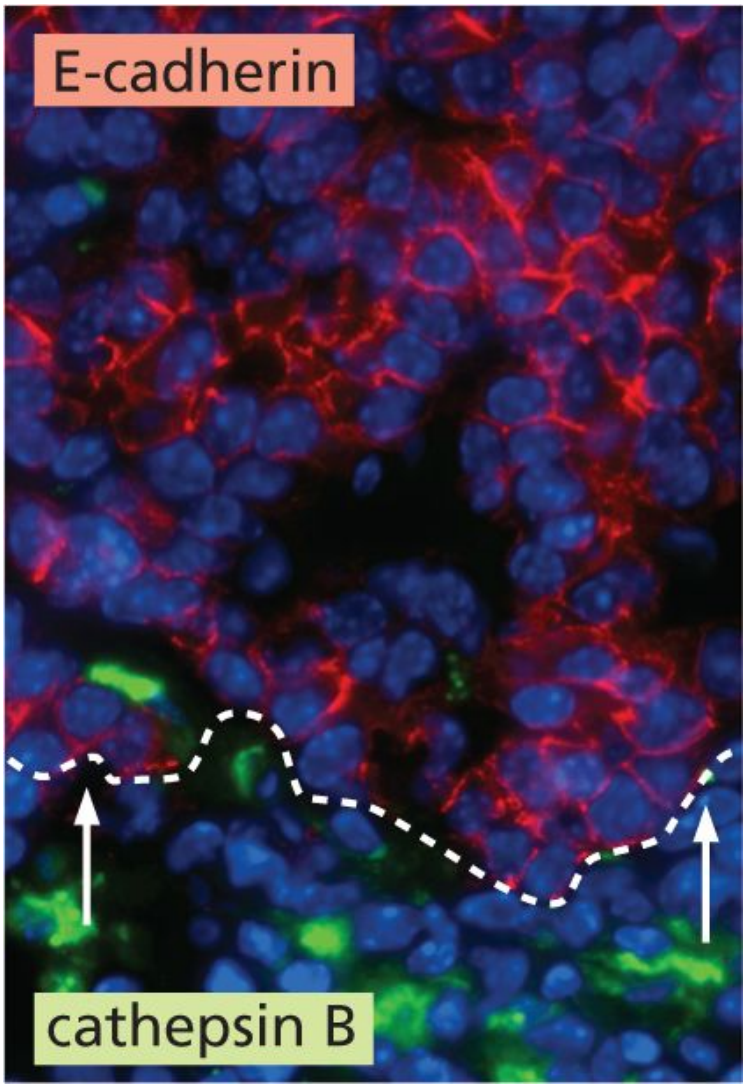
Three fluorescence microscopy images, each showing a petri dish in cross section with a layer of cells across the bottom and a layer of overlayed collagen gel on top. The top image shows carcinoma cells in green. They do not penetrate upward into the collagen gel layer. The middle image shows macrophages in red. They do not penetrate into the collagen gel layer, either. The bottom image shows green carcinoma cells and red macrophages together. They do penetrate into the collagen gel layer.

(B)



A schematic showing the interaction between a carcinoma cell and a macrophage. The carcinoma cell produces C S F-1, which binds to the C S F 1 receptor on the macrophage. The macrophage, in turn, produces E G F, which binds to the E G F receptor on the carcinoma cell.

(C)



A fluorescence microscopy image in which blue nuclei are surrounded by red E-cadherin above a white dashed line and by green cathepsin B below the dashed line.

(D)

Figure 14.22 Reciprocal stimulation by breast cancer cells and macrophages
A variety of experiments indicate that macrophages are the major source of EGF

in breast cancers. EGF is known to be able to stimulate epithelial cancer cells to proliferate and invade through extracellular matrix. In addition, EGF exposure causes breast cancer cells to release CSF-1, which allows them to recruit macrophages and stimulates production by the macrophages of more EGF, resulting in a positive-feedback loop between these two cell types. (A) Using PCR analysis, the mRNA levels of these two growth factors and their receptors are found to be reciprocally expressed in mammary carcinoma cells arising in PyMT tumor-prone transgenic mice (see Figure 14.18B) and in recruited stromal macrophages. (B) Breast cancer cells (labeled here with green fluorescent protein, GFP; *green*) were placed at the bottom of a Petri dish (seen here in side view) below a layer of collagen gel (*top image*), where they remained. Similarly, macrophages (*red*) also remained where they were initially placed at the bottom of the Petri dish below a collagen gel (*middle image*). However, when the two populations were co-cultured at this location, the breast cancer cells (*green*) were now induced to move upward and invade the overlying collagen gel (*lower image*).(C) The reciprocal paracrine interactions between carcinoma cells and macrophages operates by the release of EGF by the macrophages, which stimulates the carcinoma cells, which proceed to release CSF-1, which recruits macrophages. (D) The possibility that macrophages can contribute directly to triggering an EMT program in carcinoma cells is indicated by studies of macrophages that have been recruited to the invasive edge (*dashed line, arrows*) of a pancreatic islet cell tumor (*above*) in the Rip-Tag transgenic mouse model (see Figure 13.35). As seen here, the cathepsin B secreted protease (*green*) produced by the recruited macrophages causes the carcinoma cells to lose expression of E-cadherin (*red*). The resulting carcinoma cells (*below dashed line*) are revealed here only by their DAPI-stained nuclei (*blue*). (Inactivation of cathepsin B production by the macrophages permitted the carcinoma cells to regain their E-cadherin expression and caused them to lose invasiveness; *not shown*. Cathepsin B is also responsible for activating a number of distinct matrix metalloproteinases, whose activation leads to amplification of the cathepsin B-mediated proteolysis.) (A, from J. Wyckoff et al., *Cancer Res*. 64:7022–7029, 2004. B, from S. Goswami et al., *Cancer Res*. 65:5278–5283, 2005. Both with permission from American Association for Cancer Research. D, courtesy of V. Gocheva and J.A. Joyce; see also V. Gocheva et al., *Genes Dev*. 20:543– 556, 2006.)

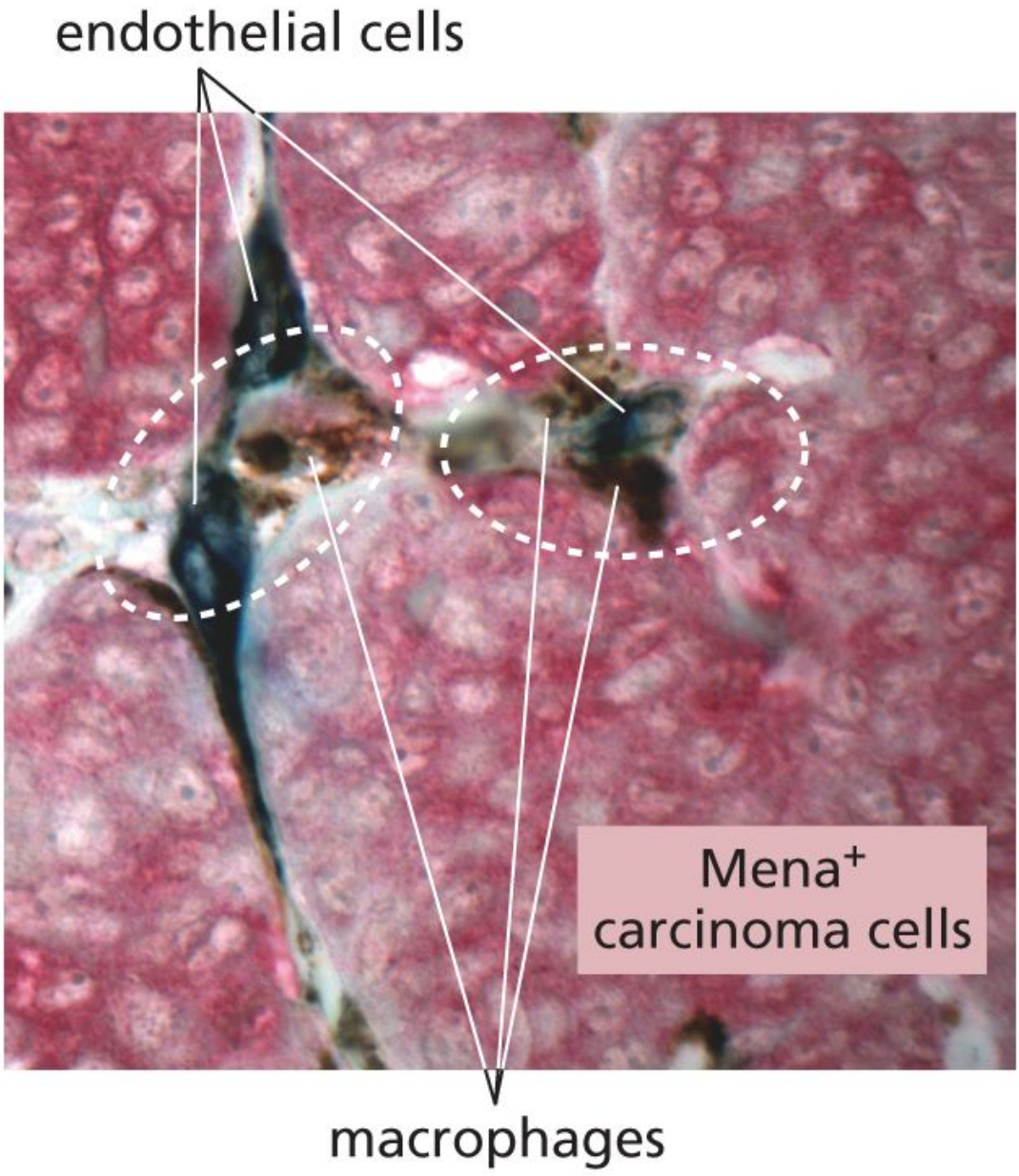
Another key macrophage-derived signal is conveyed by EGF, as mentioned earlier. Some of the evidence favoring EGF as a key inducer of cancer cell invasiveness comes from studies of mouse breast cancer cells both *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Like most epithelial cells, these carcinoma cells express the EGF receptor, and activation of this receptor by EGF causes them to acquire both motility and invasiveness (to be discussed later in

Supplementary Sidebar 14.9) and to secrete CSF-1, a key attractant and stimulant of macrophages. Macrophages respond reciprocally to CSF-1 by proliferating and releasing EGF, which activates the cancer cells. These effects all proceed through paracrine rather than autocrine signaling, as demonstrated by the fact that the breast cancer cells do not express the CSF-1 receptor and the macrophages do not express the EGF receptor (see Figure 14.22A). Hence, these two cell types collaborate by reciprocally stimulating one another, yielding another type of positive-feedback loop (see Figure 14.22C).

Importantly, the behaviors depicted in Figures 14.7 and 14.22B suggest that macrophages actually play critical roles in two stages of the invasion–metastasis cascade—initial invasiveness and intravasation. Although cancer cell motility and invasiveness are clearly demonstrated in such experiments, the induction of an EMT program in the cancer cells can only be inferred from their acquisition of motile, invasive behavior. More direct evidence comes, however, from the Rip-Tag tumor model (see Figure 13.35), in which the secretion by recruited macrophages of the cathepsin B protease is correlated with the loss—ostensibly through proteolytic degradation—of E-cadherin expression from the cell surface of carcinoma cells; such loss, on its own, can serve as a trigger for initiating an EMT (see Figure 14.22D).

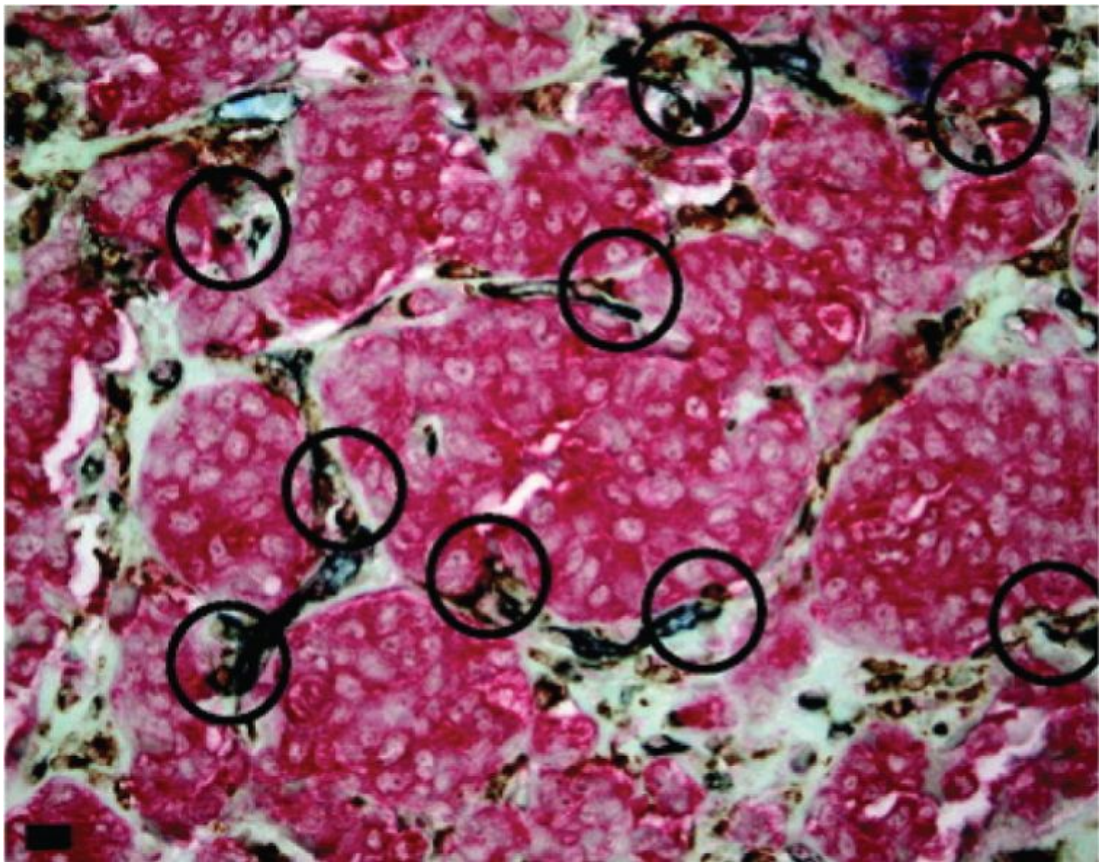
These bidirectional interactions seem to play a critical role in a poorly studied step of the invasion–metastasis cascade, the process of intravasation. As cited earlier, the invasiveness of primary tumor cells leads, with a certain probability, to intravasation, that is, entrance into the lumina of blood and lymphatic vessels. Many had assumed that intravasation is nothing more than an accidental, undirected by-product of invasion. However, recent studies have pointed to more specificity and organization of this process.

These studies indicate that in many breast cancers, and likely in other carcinomas as well, a triad of three distinct cell types—carcinoma cells, macrophages, and endothelial cells—assembles to enable the cancer cells to intravasate (**Figure 14.23**). The macrophages in these multicellular clusters appear to be responsible for creating “doorways” in the endothelial walls of microvessels that allow invasive carcinoma cells to enter the lumina of these vessels. In more detail, the macrophages appear to deploy the VEGF-A angiogenic growth factor to induce retraction of the endothelial cells from one another. These opened doorways therefore represent discrete sites of greatly increased permeability in the vascular endothelial wall and are formed where macrophage-induced endothelial cell retraction creates significant gaps in the otherwise-intact endothelial lining of microvessels (see Figure 14.23D).



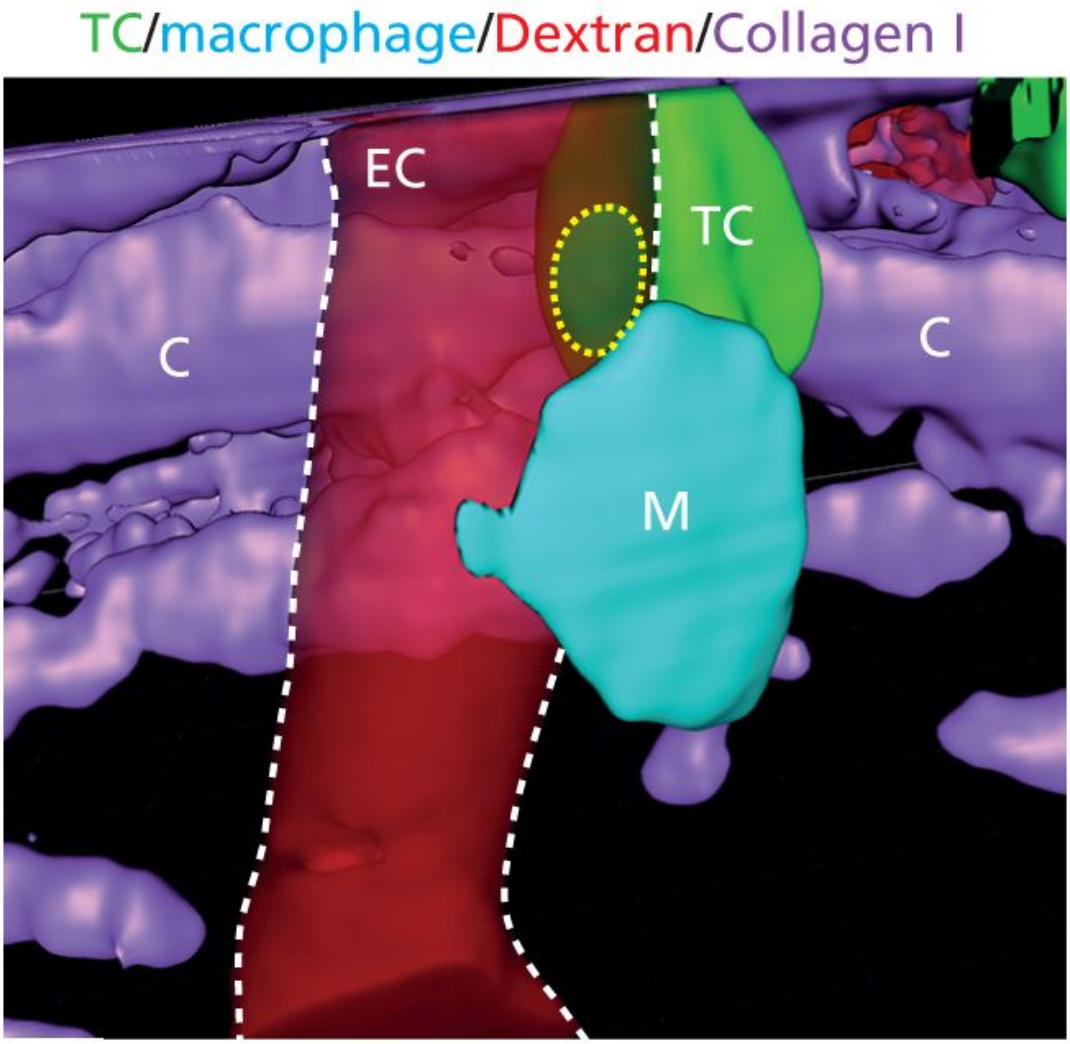
A micrograph of three brown macrophages and three dark endothelial cells clustered together and surrounded by red-pink Mena plus carcinoma cells. Two ovals mark locations where all three cell types are present.

(A)



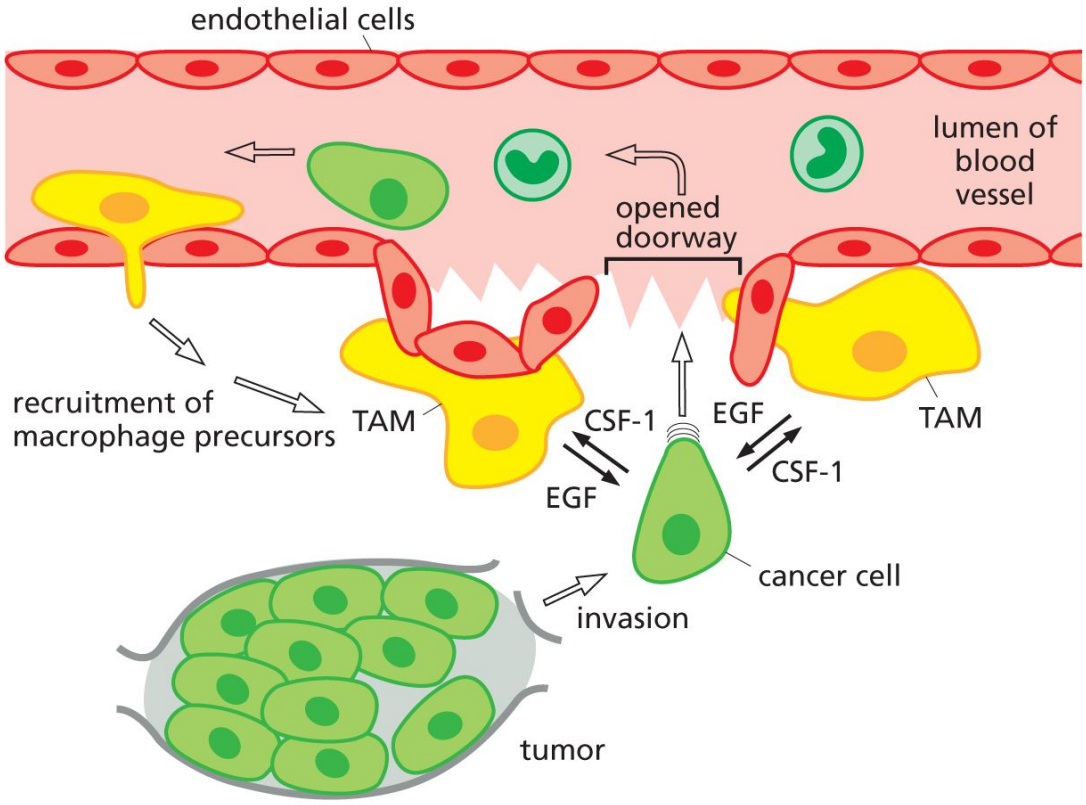
A zoomed out version of Part A, with black circles indicating nine different macrophage-endothelial-carcinoma cell triads.

(B)



A false-color reconstruction of tissue in which a microvessel, labeled E C and outlined with a white dashed line, has attached to its right side a green cell labeled T C and a blue cell labeled M. Part of the green cell is shown to have penetrated into the microvessel. This structure is surrounded by a purple matrix labeled C.

(C)



A schematic depiction of how a tumor places cells into the bloodstream. The recruitment of macrophage precursors from within the lumen of a microvessel leads to a configuration in which cancer cells released by the tumor act with C S F 1 on tumor associated macrophages. In turn, the tumor associated macrophages are acted on by E G F from the macrophages. The macrophages tear open a doorway that provides access to the lumen of the vessel. The cancer cells then pass through the doorway.

(D)

Figure 14.23 Intravasation Like local invasion, the process of intravasation by carcinoma cells often—and perhaps always—requires help from stromal cells, in this case macrophages. (A) Detailed investigation of carcinomas, in both laboratory animal models and human tumors, reveals triads (*ovals*) of carcinoma cells, macrophages, and endothelial cells (sometimes termed TMEM, for tumor microenvironment of metastasis). The macrophages help the carcinoma cells to intravasate through the capillary wall formed by the endothelial cells. A triad is registered only if all three cellular components are directly apposed and if the carcinoma cells express significant levels of the Mena actin-cytoskeleton–regulating protein that is associated with cell motility, seen here as a *red* stain. (B) Although two human carcinomas may have a very similar histopathological

appearance, the counting of the density of TMEM triads (*circles*) within sections of these tumors generates a highly useful prognostic marker of metastasis. (C) A 3-dimensional reconstruction of real-time intravital imaging showing collagen I fibers (C, *purple*) behind a doorway in the wall of a microvessel composed of a tripartite cell complex involving a tumor cell (TC, *green*), a macrophage (M, *cyan*), and an endothelial cell (EC). The endothelial cells were not labeled in this image but form a thin 1- to 2-micron thick cell layer (*dashed white lines*) around the intraluminal space of a microvessel, which is defined by fluorescently labeled dextran (*red*) that was intravascularly injected. The carcinoma cell has partially intravasated into the lumen of the micro vessel with the *yellow dotted line* separating its intraluminal portion (*oval dotted line*) from its portion that remains outside of the vascular lumen. (D) The reciprocal interactions between breast cancer cells and macrophages are illustrated schematically here. Because macrophages are often found in close proximity to microvessels, the stimulation by tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) of breast cancer cell motility and invasiveness may also contribute to cancer cell intravasation, as suggested by the observations of Figure 14.7 and depicted here in more mechanistic detail. (A, B, from B.D. Robinson et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 15:2433–2441, 2009. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of D. Entenberg, A.S. Harney, P. Guo, and J. Condeelis. D, from W. Wang et al., *Trends Cell Biol.* 15: 138–145, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

Importantly, the density of these microscopically visualized tripartite cell clusters (see Figure 14.23C) represents a strong predictor of eventual systemic metastatic dissemination in breast cancer patients. Thus, in women bearing estrogen receptor-positive, HER2-negative primary breast cancers (which in aggregate constitute ∼60% of all breast tumors), the third of the women whose tumors exhibited the highest density of these triads exhibited a 2.7 times higher risk of developing distant metastases than the third of patients whose tumors carried the lowest density of these triads. In fact, this measurement of triad density was found to be a more accurate indicator of future metastatic risk than was the overall histopathological grade of the primary tumor.

To summarize, these diverse lines of evidence indicate that the acquisition of malignant traits by carcinoma cells, involving notably induction of an EMT, is not governed solely by the genomes of these cells. Instead, these profound shifts in cell phenotype are often initiated by a collaboration between specific mutant alleles harbored in cancer cell genomes (for example, mutant *ras* or *p53* genes) and the signals that these cancer cells receive in certain tissue microenvironments, specifically at the boundaries between islands of tumor cells and reactive stroma. In many tumors, these contextual signals are conveyed by certain factors, such as TGF-β, Wnts, PGE_2,

and TNF-α, that are released by cells in the reactive stroma. Yet other stromal signals, such as those carried by EGF and HGF, may also help to elicit many of the changes that we associate with cancer cell invasiveness and the EMT. Importantly, these descriptions likely apply to the biology of all carcinomas, which together account for ∼80% of life-threatening human tumors; there is also evidence that neuroectodermal tumors of the brain also exhibit EMT-like behavior, possibly testifying to their formation in a tissue derived from an epithelium—the neuroectoderm—present in the early embryo. However, the relevance of our discussions in this chapter to the other main classes of human tumors—mesenchymal tumors (that is, sarcomas) and hematopoietic cancers—remains unclear.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

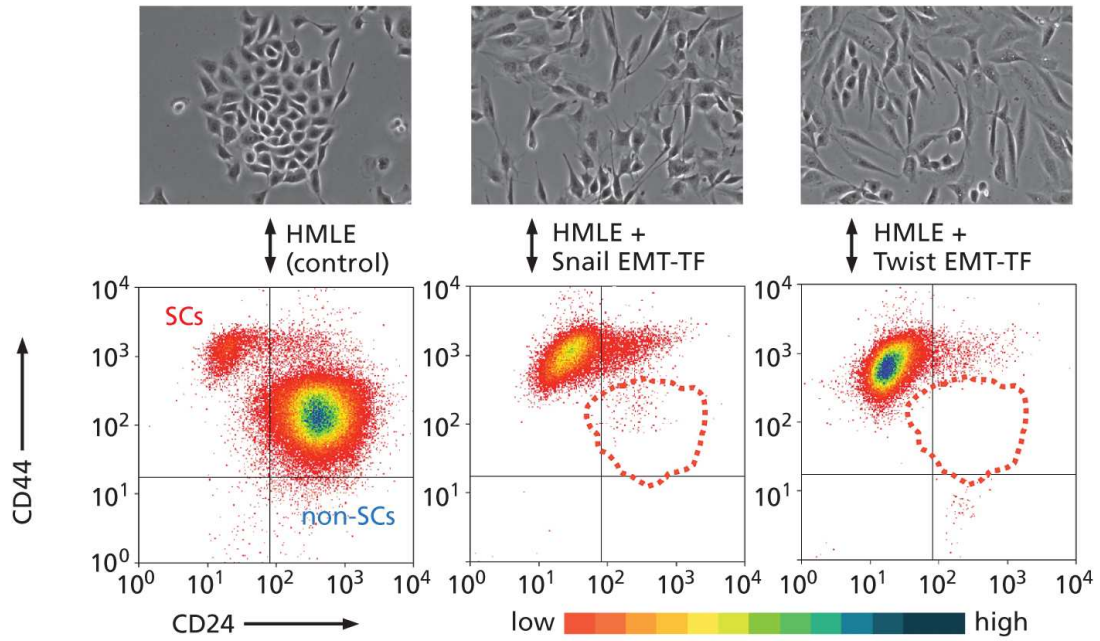
spheroid
: Small, sphere-shaped cluster of cells typically observed when cells are propagated *in vitro* in three-dimensional matrices.

OceanofPDF.com

14.6 EMT-inducing transcription factors may enable entrance into the stem cell state

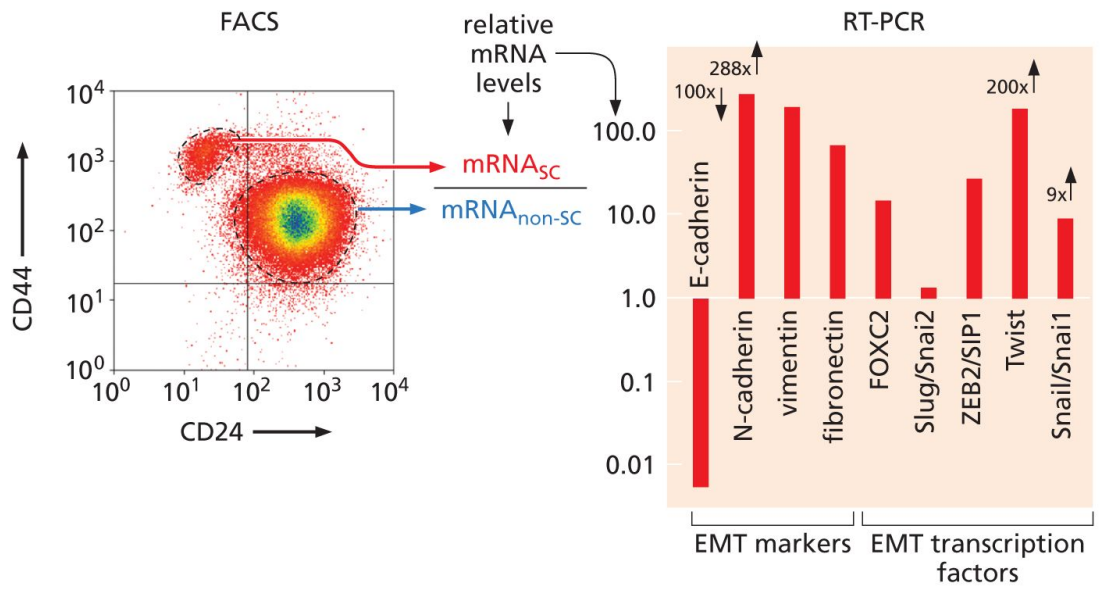
The cellular traits that are induced by the actions of one or another EMT-TF suggest that these master regulators can orchestrate many of the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade. There is, however, one trait that is critical for metastasis that has not yet been considered here: in order for a disseminated cancer cell to seed a metastasis, it must possess the tumor-initiating ability that we previously ascribed to cancer stem cells (CSCs; see Section 11.7). Recall that these cells are defined operationally through their ability to seed new tumors following experimental implantation into suitable hosts. In principle, the seeding of a metastatic colony, when it occurs as a consequence of primary tumor progression, represents a very similar process: in both cases, small numbers of cells—sometimes just a single cell—are able to spawn the large cell populations that form macroscopic tumors, including the secondary growths that we term metastases.

The trait of self-renewal that is so central to the stem cell state would seem to be far removed mechanistically from the aggressive cell-biological traits programmed by EMT transcription factors. Evidence first reported in 2008, however, indicates otherwise: this work revealed that immortalized human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) that are forced to pass through an EMT acquire many of the attributes of stem cells (**Figure 14.24**). Related studies later extended this work in two directions by showing that mammary carcinoma cells that have undergone an EMT exhibit vastly increased tumor-initiating capacity; similar dynamics apply to normal MECs and their stem cell-like behavior (**Figure 14.25**).



Three pairings of a micrographic image of cells with a two-dimensional differentiation of the cells, with C D 24 level on the horizontal axis and C D 44 level on vertical axis. The left pairing, labeled H M L E control, shows a micrograph of cells in a cobblestone pattern and below a differentiation that shows that most of these cells are non-stem cells with high C D 24 expression and low C D 44 expression, but with a minority of stem cells with low C D 24 expression and high C D 44 expression. In both the middle pairing, labeled H M L E control plus Snail E M T-T F, and the right pairing, labeled H M L E control plus Twist E M T-T F, the micrograph shows a more dispersed spatial distribution, and in the 2 D differentiation, the non-stem cell grouping has disappeared while the stem cell grouping has grown denser.

(A)



A comparison of various m R N A levels in stem cells and non-stem cells from the H M L E control group. The E M T marker E-cadherin was much more strongly expressed, by a factor of over 100, in non-stem cells. The E M T transcription factor Slug slash S n a i2 was about equally expressed in both cell types. The E M T markers N-cadherin, vimentin, and fibronectin were all more strongly expressed in stem cells, as were the E M T transcription factors FOX C2, ZEB2 slash SIP1, Twist, and Snail slash S n a i 1.

(B)

Figure 14.24 EMT-inducing transcription factors confer stem cell properties on epithelial cells Epithelial cells acquire certain properties associated with stem cells (SCs) following activation of EMT programs. (A) When experimentally immortalized human mammary epithelial cells, termed HMLE, are viewed in monolayer culture by phase microscopy (*left*, *above*), they exhibit the cobblestone morphology that is typical of epithelial cells. These cells can be fractionated using fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) into a minority subpopulation that has a $CD44^{hi}$ $CD24^{lo}$ cell surface antigen profile and a majority subpopulation that has the opposite antigen profile—$CD44^{lo}$ $CD24^{hi}$ (*left*, *below*). The minority population, although not homogeneous, is greatly enriched for stem cells (SCs), which are absent from the majority population; this appears to be true for normal, immortalized, and neoplastically transformed human mammary epithelial cells. When these cells were then forced to express either the Snail (*middle column*) or the Twist (*right column*) EMT-inducing transcription factor (EMT-TF), their morphology changed in monolayer culture to the dispersed elongated phenotype typical of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts (*below*). In addition, virtually all the cells that were previously in the $CD44^{lo}$ $CD24^{hi}$ non-SC state were converted

to the $CD44^{hi}$ $CD24^{lo}$ population, which is greatly enriched in mammary SCs. (B) The relative levels of mRNAs expressed in each of the two populations in (A) (*left*) were quantified using RT-PCR analysis; the results are shown in the histogram (*right*). The mRNA encoding E-cadherin, the key epithelial marker, was expressed at ~1/100 the level per cell in the $CD44^{hi}$ $CD24^{lo}$ cells, whereas N-cadherin, vimentin, and fibronectin mRNAs (all encoding mesenchymal proteins) were expressed at levels ranging from ~65- to ~280-fold more abundantly in these cells. Of greater interest, cells that resided in the $CD44^{hi}$ $CD24^{lo}$ state naturally expressed levels of mRNAs specifying four EMT-TFs (FOXC2, ZEB2, Twist, and Snail) that were between 9- and 200-fold higher per cell than the $CD44^{lo}$ $CD24^{hi}$ cells. (A, B, from S.A. Mani et al., *Cell* 133:704–715, 2008. With permission from Elsevier.)

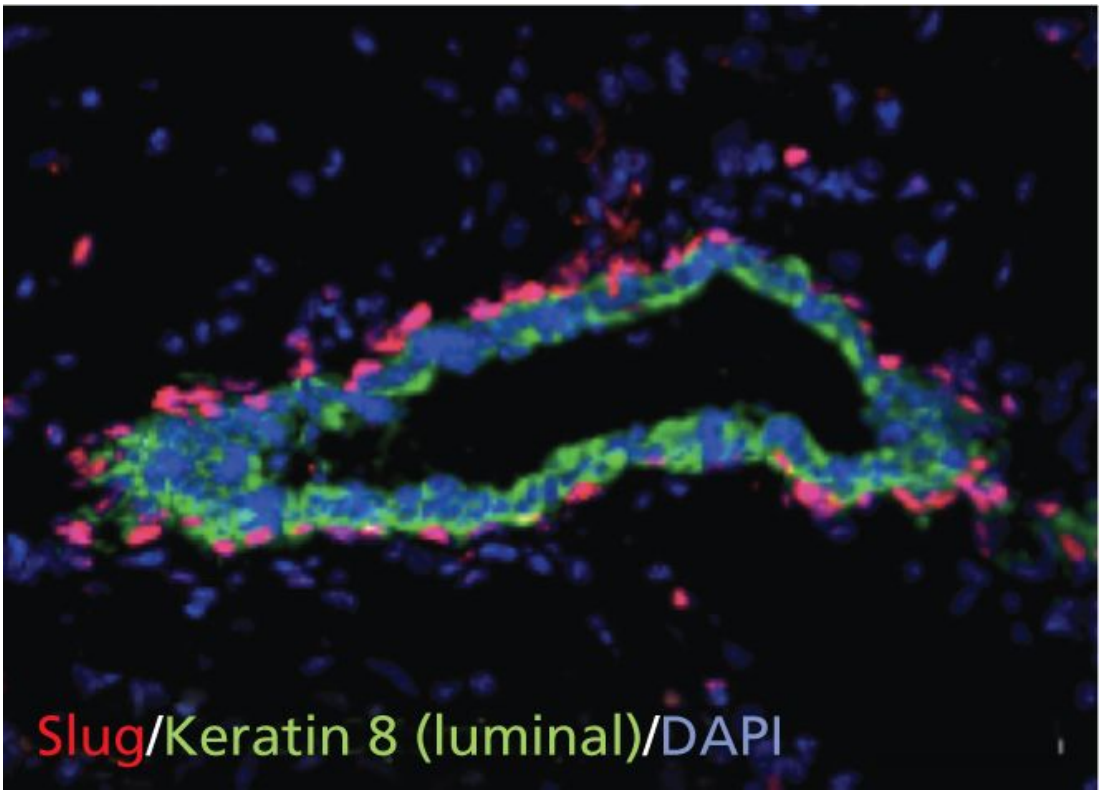
---

frequency of TICs in subpopulations of mammary carcinoma cells

number of implanted cells	1×10^5	1×10^4	1×10^3	1×10^2	estimated TIC frequency (95% confidence interval)
Snail-YFP^{hi} $EpCAM^{lo}$	6/6	6/6	6/6	3/6	1/143 (1/428~1/47)
Snail-YFP^{lo} $EpCAM^{hi}$	5/6	2/6	0/6	0/6	1/46,014 (1/111,052~1/19,065)

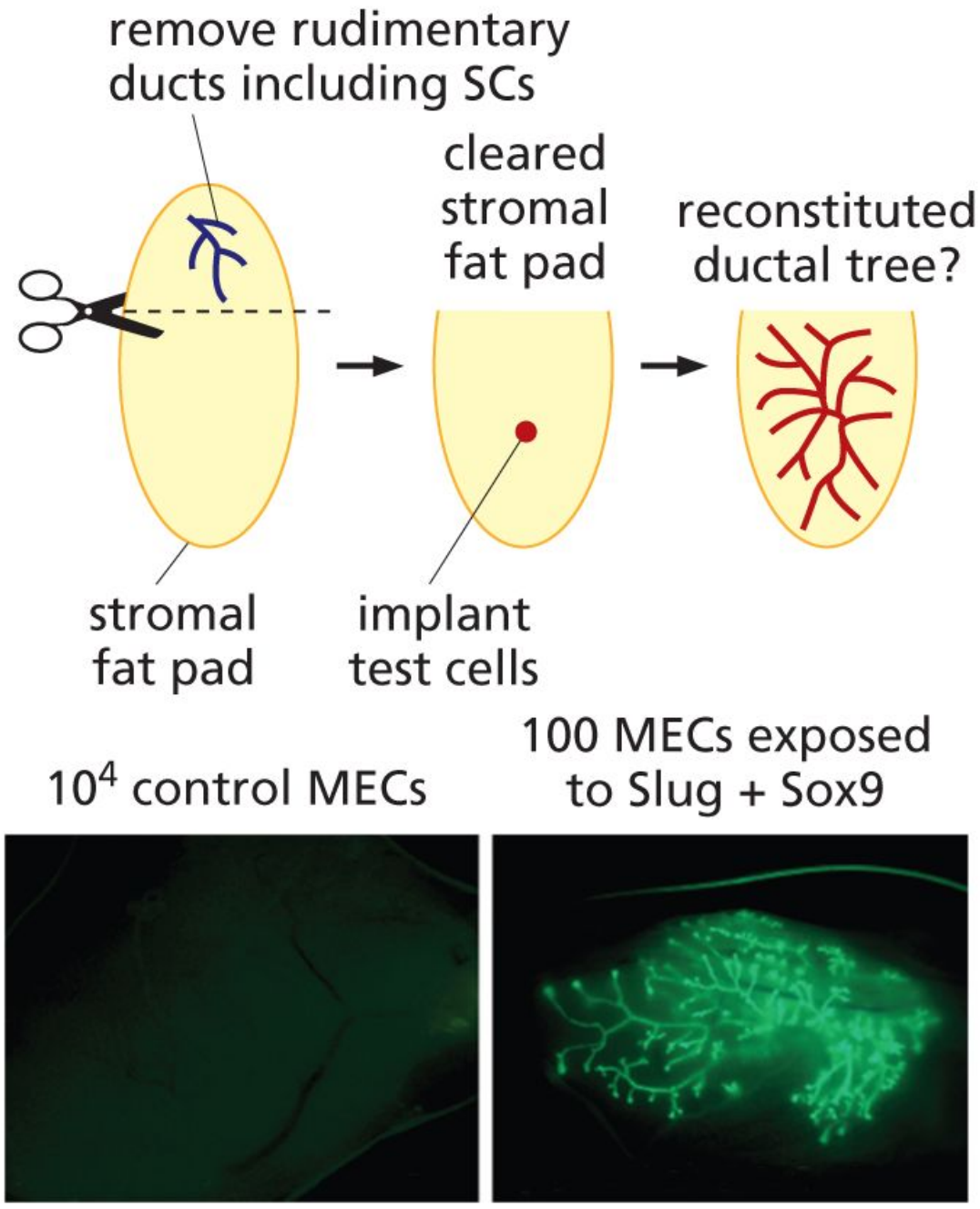
A table listing the frequency of T I Sees in subpopulations of two types of mammary carcinoma cells. One type is given as Snail-Y F P high Ep C A M low. In this type, the estimated T I C frequency is 1 in 143, with 95 percent confidence that the value lies between 1 in 428 and 1 in 47. The other type is given as Snail-Y F P low Ep C A M high. In this type, the estimated T I C frequency is 1 in 46,014, with 95 percent confidence that the value lies between 1 in 111,052 and 1 in 19,065.

(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image of a duct cross section. The duct wall is blue and green, edged with red along the outer perimeter.

(B)



An experiment. A diagram shows remove rudimentary ducts including stem cells being excised from a stromal fat pad, and test cells being implanted in the cleared fat pad. The looked-for result is a reconstituted ductal tree. Fluorescence microscopy images confirm that this is what happens, but only when the implanted cells were exposed to Slug and Sox9.

(C)

Figure 14.25 Contributions of EMT-TFs to mammary carcinoma and normal mammary gland formation (A) Implantation of populations of cancer cells, performed here in syngeneic host mice and at different concentrations, makes it possible, using the algorithm of limiting dilution analysis (LDA), to estimate the representation of tumor-initiating cells (TICs) in the undiluted cancer cell population. As is apparent, when gauging the percentage of TICs/CSCs within these tumors, among the cells expressing high levels of the Snail EMT-TF (Snail-$YFP^{hi}EpCAM^{lo}$) 1 in 143 can be registered as a TIC, whereas among cells that express much lower levels of Snail (Snail-$YFP^{lo}EpCAM^{hi}$) only 1 in 46,014 cells was calculated to be a TIC. In these tumors, the latter class of cells expressed significant levels of the Slug EMT-TF. (B) In this cross section of a duct of the normal mouse mammary gland, abluminal (situated away from the lumen) cells in a location known to contain both myoepithelial and stem cells are seen to express the Slug EMT-TF protein at significant levels (*pinkish red*), in contrast to the luminal epithelial cells, which express cytokeratin 8 (*green*). Nuclei are stained *blue* with DAPI. (C) A rigorous test of stemness comes from implanting as few as one mouse mammary epithelial SC into a mammary stromal fat pad that lacks its own endogenous MECs (*above*). Success in mammary gland reconstitution demonstrates the presence of SCs among the implanted cells. In this test, 10,000 control mouse MECs were implanted in a cleared fat pad (*below, left*), resulting in no reconstituted mammary ductal tree. However, If the Slug EMT-TF and a second collaborating TF, termed Sox9, were transiently co-expressed in mouse MECs, as few as 100 of these cells (*below, right*) were able to reconstitute a mammary ductal tree. (A, from X. Ye, W.L. Tam, T. Shibue et al., *Nature* 525:256–260, 2015. With permission from Nature. B and C (bottom), from W. Guo, Z. Keckesova, J.L. Donaher et al., *Cell* 148:1015–1028, 2012. With permission from Elsevier. C (top), adapted from L. Hennighausen and G.W. Robinson, *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol*. 6:715–725, 2005.)

In the analysis provided in Figure 14.24A, a population of experimentally immortalized human MECs could be fractionated, as judged by FACS analysis, into a minority and a majority subpopulation, with cells in the minority subpopulation exhibiting cell surface markers of the stem cell-like state; we encountered the same fractionation procedure previously in Figures 11.19 and 11.20, where it was used to resolve tumor-initiating cells (TICs) from non-TIC subpopulations. Because all the cells in this analysis appeared to share the same genome, this suggested, on its own, that cell populations like this one spontaneously sort themselves into majority and minority subpopulations, doing so via a process that did not require genetic change.

When two EMT-TFs were introduced separately into the cells analyzed in Figure 14.24A, the cells that had previously resided in the majority, non-stem-cell population

migrated into the position in this FACS plot of stem-like cells. This behavior suggested that activation of an EMT program facilitated entrance into a stem-like state, but on its own did not prove this because the cellular products of this conversion were not tested biologically for stemness.

Perhaps more persuasive were the observations of Figure 14.24B, in which mRNA levels were quantified in the cells of these two subpopulations, this analysis being measured in the absence of any experimentally forced expression of EMT-TFs. This analysis made it clear that the cells residing in the position (in the FACS plot) of stem-like cells expressed mesenchymal markers at greatly elevated levels relative to cells in the non-stem-like position. Included among these mesenchymal markers were mRNAs specifying a group of EMT-TFs. Here, the affiliation of EMT-inducing TFs with an SC-enriched state reflected regulation by natural, endogenous transcriptional controls rather than regulation imposed by experimentally introduced genes.

This association could also be extended in two directions with fully neoplastic, transformed mammary carcinoma cells and with non-neoplastic normal mammary stem cells. In one set of experiments, distinct populations of mammary carcinoma cells formed spontaneously in a transgenic model of breast cancer pathogenesis were implanted at different dilutions (diluted in tenfold increments over three orders of magnitude) in the mammary glands of syngeneic mouse hosts. This procedure (see Figure 14.25A) is termed limiting dilution analysis (LDA) and can be employed to quantify the number of tumor-initiating cells (TICs), also termed cancer stem cells (CSCs), that are present in a larger population of cells isolated directly from a tumor.

As can be seen in Figure 14.25A, ∼1 out of 143 tumor cells that expressed high levels of the Snail EMT-TF and resided in a more mesenchymal state could seed a new tumor upon implantation in the mammary glands of syngeneic mouse hosts; in contrast, the carcinoma cells in a cell population that expressed low levels of the Snail EMT-TF and resided in a more epithelial state (as indicated by the high levels of the EpCAM epithelial marker) harbored a far lower representation of TICs, specifically ∼1 in 46,014 cells, that is, a greater than 300-fold difference in the relative concentrations of TICs. When taken together, these experiments showed a *correlation* between EMT-TF expression and concentrations of TICs. Other experiments to be described below relate to the issue of *causation*, that is, by demonstrating directly that an experimentally induced EMT program can actually drive an increase in the formation of CSCs and metastases. (Inevitably, demonstrations of causation are more compelling than those showing only correlation.)

As mentioned earlier, association of an EMT program with stemness could also be found in non-neoplastic mammary epithelial cells (MECs) (see Figure 14.25B). A cross-section of a normal mouse mammary duct reveals its bilayered structure, much like a number of other epithelial tissues throughout the body. The cells in the luminal

layer directly confront the lumen of this duct, whereas those of the basal layer underlie the luminal cells, being one cell layer removed from the lumen. Figure 14.25B reveals that the basal cells, which are known from other work to contain the normal stem cells of the mammary duct, naturally express the Slug EMT-TF. This observation is striking for the following reason: until now, we have depicted EMT-TFs as master regulators that function in embryonic morphogenesis, in wound healing, and in tumor progression. Now one of them is found to be routinely expressed in an adult tissue that is operating in an unperturbed, fully normal fashion.

Once again this observation, on its own, was also correlative because it did not demonstrate directly that the Slug-expressing cells are functional stem cells (and if so, whether Slug was responsible for their stem-like properties). In this instance, functional tests of stemness could be undertaken using mammary gland reconstitution experiments. This procedure gauges the ability of small numbers of implanted normal mammary cells to generate entire mammary ductal trees after their implantation in mammary stromal fat pads (see Figure 14.25C). Here, the presence of stem cells is gauged by their ability to spawn an entire normal mammary gland—a stringent test of stemness. When MECs prepared from a mouse mammary gland that had been forced to transiently express Slug and Sox9 were implanted into a cleared mammary stromal fat pad, their ability to generate a normal mammary ductal tree was increased >100-fold relative to MECs that had not been exposed transiently to these transcription factors. (Sox9 is a second TF that potentiates in this case the actions of the Slug EMT-TF.)

We are only beginning to learn the identities of the stromal cells that cooperate with one another to create both normal and neoplastic stem cell (SC) niches. These signals clearly overlap significantly with the EMT-inducing signals described in Section 14.5 because activation of an EMT program places MECs in a position to advance into the SC state. Interestingly, the macrophages that assist in the intravasation of primary tumor cells, as described in Figure 14.23, are also reported to induce carcinoma cells to enter into the CSC state during the course of this assisted intravasation.

Evidence from numerous sources now indicates that carcinoma cells residing in a hybrid phenotypic state expressing a mixture of epithelial and mesenchymal attributes (see Figure 14.12), which can be annotated as E/M or termed “quasi-mesenchymal,” are placed optimally to function as cancer stem cells. Conversely, transformed cells residing at either end of the E-to-M spectrum of phenotypes, that is, fully epithelial and fully mesenchymal, have far less if any tumor-initiating activity. Moreover, carcinoma cells that lack phenotypic plasticity and have been trapped experimentally in such an E/M phenotypic state (achieved through manipulation of EMT-TF expression) exhibit a high degree of tumor-initiating activity. This indicates that the CSC phenotype exhibited by such E/M cells does not depend on their plasticity, that is, their ability to interconvert to other phenotypic states arrayed along the E-to-M

spectrum. Instead, a specific mixture of epithelial and mesenchymal cell-biological traits exhibited by such cells suffices to empower them to function as tumor-initiating cells (TICs) and thus, quite possibly, as founders of metastatic colonies.

These observations hold important implications for the role of EMT programs in epithelial stemness. Although they were only performed in the context of mammary gland biology, it is likely that similar behaviors will be found in other bilayered epithelial tissues throughout the body, both normal and neoplastic. To enumerate these conclusions: (1) The SC machinery that operates in normal mammary epithelial tissue operates in a similar fashion in mammary carcinoma cells; hence, breast cancers do not seem to invent entirely novel SC programs during tumor formation but instead appropriate versions of an SC program that operates in a normal precursor tissue. (2) Contrary to intuition, the SCs in the basal cell layers of the mammary gland express a series of mesenchymal markers. Accordingly, in bilayered epithelia, to the extent that self-renewing stem cells are associated with basal cells, it seems likely that the luminal epithelial cells are the more differentiated progeny of quasi-mesenchymal, less differentiated SCs. It remains unclear whether this lesson also applies to single-layer epithelia. (3) From the perspective of multi-step tumor progression (see Figure 11.7A), because both fully normal and fully neoplastic cells employ EMT-associated stem cell programs, it is plausible if not likely that each of the distinct cell populations formed at intermediate stages of multi-step tumor formation do so as well, that is, they harbor subpopulations of quasi-mesenchymal SCs (see Figures 11.22 and S11.4). Stated differently, it seems that epithelial cell populations, independent of their state of neoplastic transformation, naturally form their own subpopulations of SCs. The latter, in turn, employ versions of EMT programs to help organize themselves, at least in tumors arising in bilayered epithelial tissues.

Finally, in the context of metastasis formation, the tumor-initiating powers associated with the CSC phenotype hold important implications for the seeding of metastases. Intuition would dictate that the same cell-biological functions required to seed tumors upon experimental implantation (as analyzed in Figure 14.25A), are also critical to the founding of metastatic colonies following spontaneous dissemination of cells from primary tumors. Indeed, deletion from carcinoma cells of an important regulator of stemness—the p53-related p63 protein—while compatible with ongoing growth of established primary tumors, deprives these tumors of the ability to seed metastases, which they would otherwise spawn in large numbers. Still, all this leaves us with a major conceptual puzzle that has never been satisfactorily resolved: Why are the EMT program and epithelial stemness so tightly interconnected in certain tissues?

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

limiting dilution analysis
: Procedure in which the representation or percentage of a given cell type of interest within a larger, often heterogeneous cell population is gauged by diluting the sample of interest and extrapolating from subsequent biological assays the concentration of the cell type of interest in the initial sample being analyzed.

luminal
: Referring to a cavity in a tissue or the cells that line and face a lumen. See also **lumen**.

basal
: (1) Referring to a lower physical location. (2) Referring to cells in an epithelium that are located away from an exposed surface of the epithelium such as its luminal surface. (3) Referring to the surface of an individual epithelial cell that is located away from an exposed surface of the epithelium such as its luminal surface. (4) Referring to a (low) rate of activity or function observed in the absence of any activating stimulus. *See also* **apical**.

OceanofPDF.com

14.7EMT-inducing transcription factors help drive malignant progression including metastatic dissemination

Once certain EMT-TFs are expressed in cancer cells, they act in various combinations to induce multiple cellular changes associated with invasion and metastasis. They are invariably expressed in combinations in cancer cells, which suggests that no one of them, acting on its own, is able to organize all of the cell-biological changes associated with passage through an EMT program. Indeed, these master regulators have been found to induce the synthesis of one another, often by the direct binding of one EMT-TF to the transcriptional promoter of another. For example, Twist binds directly to the promoters of the genes encoding Twist, Snail, Slug, and Zeb1, and actually depends on Slug induction in order to activate an EMT program. In addition, expression of Slug, which is frequently co-expressed with Twist in human breast cancers, is lost when Twist expression is shut down in some breast cancer cells. Also, some of these TFs can act in a redundant fashion; for example, Snail, Slug, Zeb1, and Zeb2 can all bind to the promoter of the E-cadherin gene (*CDH1*) and thereby repress E-cadherin expression. Accordingly, Twist may delegate the job of shutting down E-cadherin expression to Slug. Although Snail and its cousin Slug function very similarly, their expression is regulated very differently, giving us clues about the dynamics of EMT induction (**Sidebar 14.3**).

Sidebar 14.3 Snail stands out from its colleagues

Like many other cell-biological processes, the induction of an EMT program depends on increases in EMT-inducing TFs in the cell nucleus. These increases generally depend on the relatively slow processes of inducing the transcription of the genes that encode these EMT-TFs, the processing of the resulting pre-mRNA transcripts, and the translation of the mRNA products into the proteins that thereafter function as TFs in the nucleus; these yield, in turn, mRNAs that, with the passage of time, enable the accumulation of proteins related to the mesenchymal state. Taken together, these steps dictate that EMT-TF proteins and their downstream gene products proteins only respond to inductive signals over periods of several hours, possibly days.

This account describes the regulation of Slug. However, its close cousin, Snail is an outlier: Snail is usually produced at a high rate and is rapidly degraded thereafter, yielding a short lifetime of 25 minutes; this so-called “futile cycle” resembles the cycles governing the levels of the Myc and p53 proteins (see Sections 8.9 and 9.5). If Snail degradation is blocked, the ongoing high rate of Snail synthesis allows for rapid increases in protein levels that can be measured over the course of minutes and the resulting rapid induction of EMT programs.

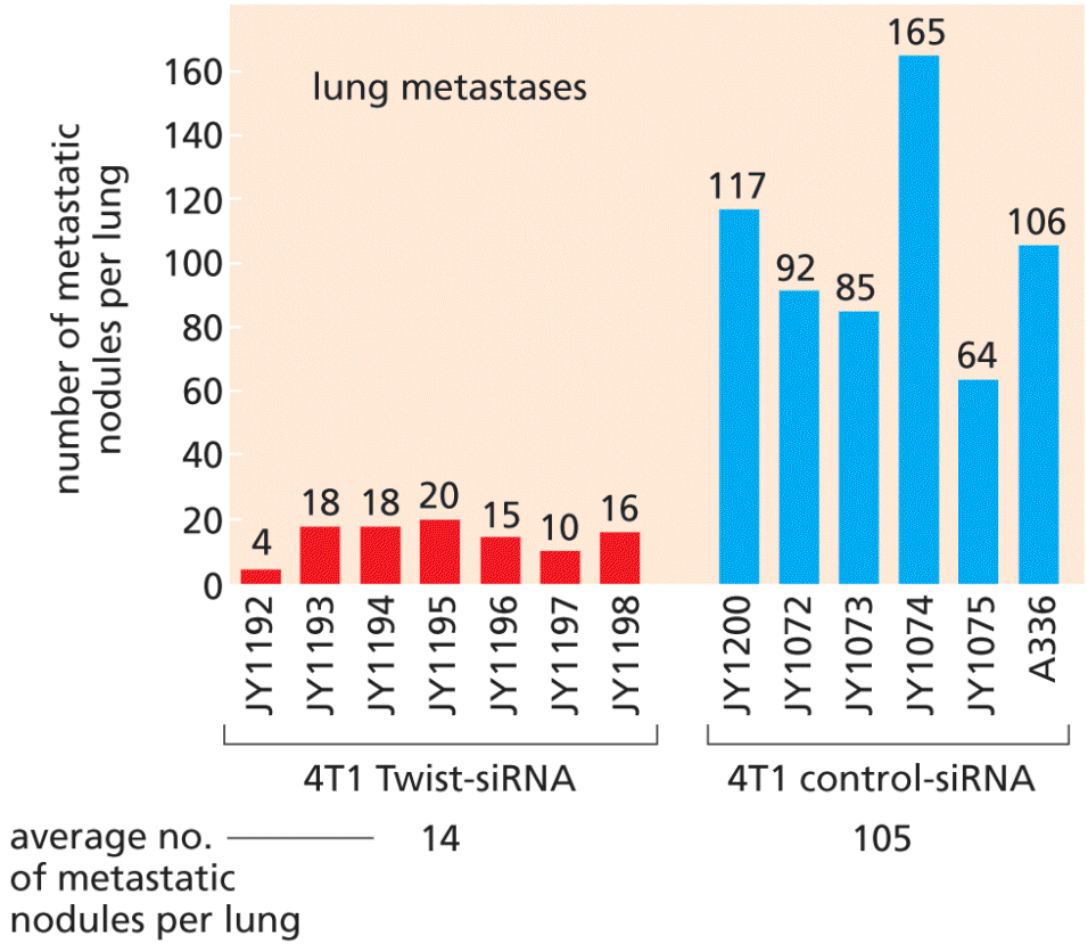
Under conditions of cell quiescence, the GSK-3β kinase phosphorylates recently synthesized Snail, thereby causing it to be tagged (by ubiquitylation) for rapid destruction in proteasomes. Conversely, activation of mitogenic signaling via growth factor ligands and their receptors and resulting activation of the Ras–PI3K–Akt/PKB pathway results in the inactivation of GSK-3β by Akt/PKB, permitting in turn survival and thus accumulation of Snail. (We first encountered GSK-3β in its role in driving β-catenin degradation; see Figure 6.19B.)

These dynamics operate in other situations as well. For example, interactions of cancer cells with macrophages, as described earlier in this chapter, result in, among other things, the release of tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) by these myeloid cells, which in turn helps to initiate an EMT in nearby carcinoma cells. (TNF-α, as we read earlier, is an important player in the process of tumor promotion via inflammation; see Figures 11.35 and 11.36). By activating the NF-κB transcription factor in carcinoma cells, TNF-α causes expression of the CSN2 protein, which associates with and blocks the ubiquitylation of Snail, once again allowing the latter to accumulate rapidly in periods of less than an hour. Finally, we should note that certain aspects of the tumor-promoting effects of inflammatory cells, as described in Section 11.13, can be nicely explained by the EMT-inducing effect of TNF-α.

Although experiments described above related to the connections between EMT programs and the stem-cell state, they did not directly confront the key question of metastasis: Do the EMT-TFs simply confer traits associated with high-grade malignancy on cultured cells, or are their powers also apparent *in vivo*? More importantly, do they actually *cause* metastatic dissemination or merely accompany it? The most direct route for demonstrating their role in causing various steps of invasion and metastasis involves either overexpressing them or shutting down their expression in tumorigenic cells that have been implanted in suitable host mice.

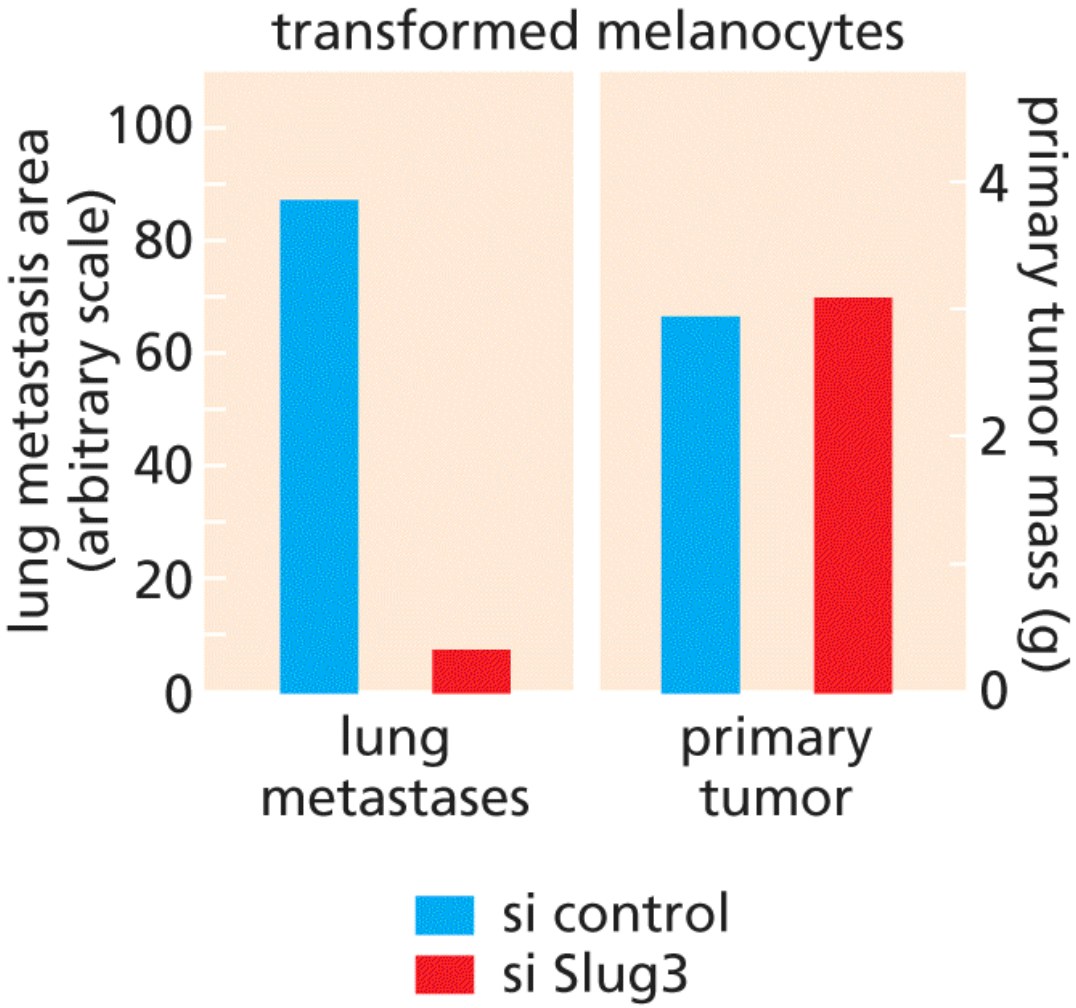
In fact, some research shows that EMT-TF function is *necessary* for efficient metastasis. Thus, in one set of experiments, expression by carcinoma cells of either the Twist1 or the Slug EMT-TF was suppressed through the use of siRNA constructs. As seen in **Figure 14.26A and B**, suppression of Twist1 expression in mammary carcinoma cells or of Slug in melanoma cells resulted, in both cases, in significant

decreases in the lung metastases formed by primary tumors. In the experiment involving Twist (see Figure 14.26A), the few metastases that formed following siRNA-mediated suppression of Twist1 were found to have escaped complete Twist shutdown by the siRNA. These experiments address the necessity of EMT in metastatic dissemination of pulmonary metastases from primary tumor sites. A similar outcome was seen when the Zeb1 EMT-TF was shut down in epithelial cells transformed by a combination of forced expression of a receptor and its ligand (Figure 14.26C).



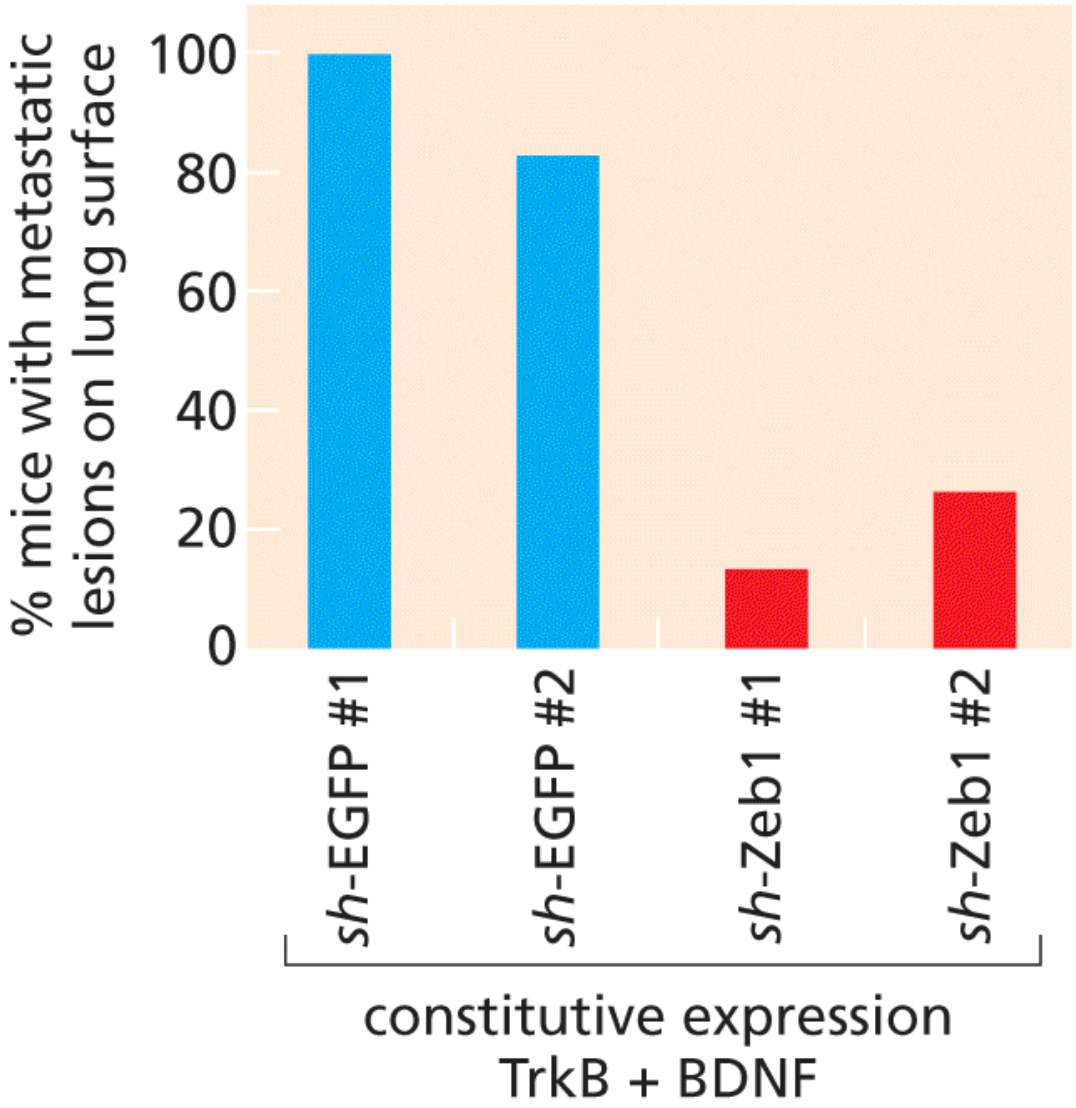
A bar graph that gives the number of metastatic cancer nodules per lung for six 4T1 control-s i R N A cell lines and seven 4T1 Twist-s i R N A cell lines. The average number of nodules was 105 for the control lines and only 14 for the twist lines.

(A)



A bar graph that gives information about two types of transformed melanocytes, namely s i control and s i slug 3. The primary tumor mass was about 3 grams in both cases, but the control cells generated far more metastases into the lungs.

(B)



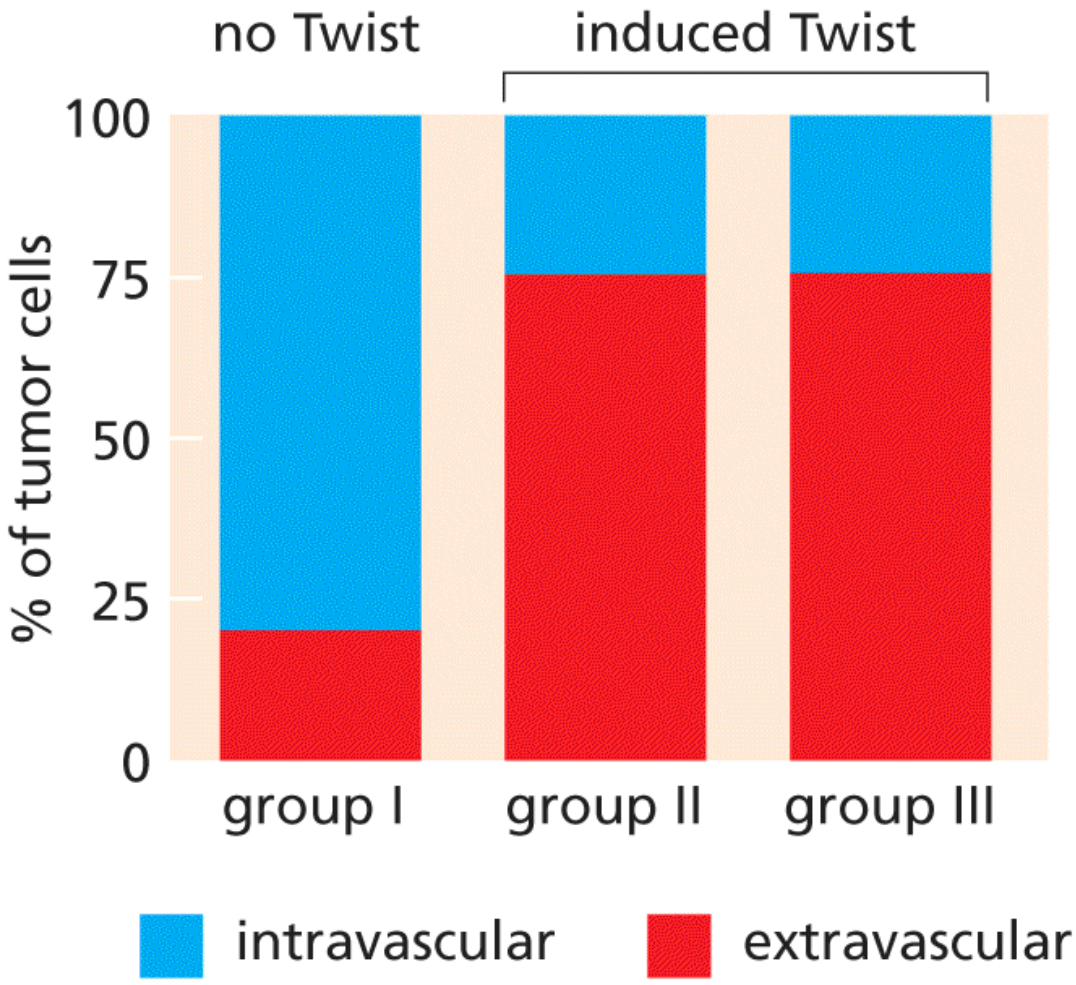
A bar graph that gives the percent of mice with metastatic lesions on lung surface for four different cell lines, all characterized by constitutive expression of T r k B and B D N F. The percentage was 100 percent for s h-E G F P number 1, 80 percent for s h-E G F P number 2, 10 percent for s h-Z e b 1 number 1, and 30 percent for s h-Z e b 1 number 2.

(C)

Figure 14.26 Dependence of metastasis in mouse models on EMT-inducing TFs (A) 4T1 mouse mammary carcinoma cells are usually highly metastatic following implantation in the orthotopic site—the mammary gland (*blue bars*). However, when these cells were infected with a retrovirus vector specifying a potent siRNA directed against the Twist EMT-TF, primary tumors grew as rapidly

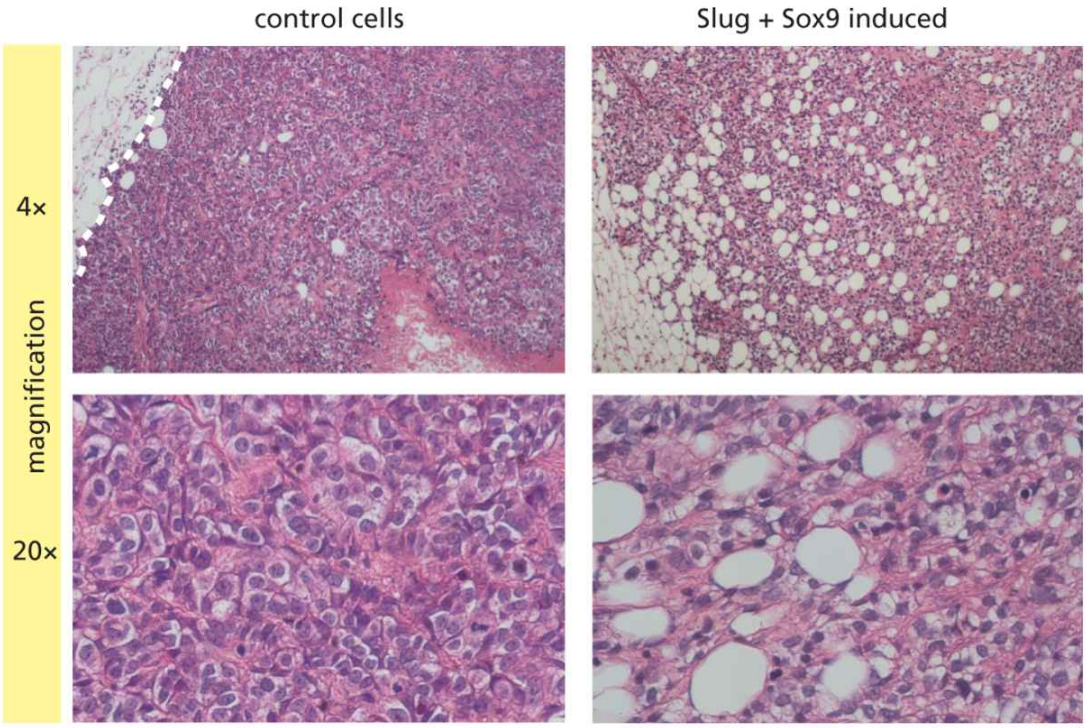
as before, but metastases to the lungs were reduced by ∼85%. The residual metastases expressed significant levels of Twist, indicating that they derived from primary tumor cells in which Twist expression had not been successfully knocked down (*red bars*). (B) Experimentally transformed human melanocytes were found to express high levels of the Slug EMT-inducing TF. When these cells were implanted in a subcutaneous site, they generated large numbers of lung metastases. However, when an siRNA was expressed that reduced Slug mRNA levels by 80%, the number of pulmonary metastases decreased by ∼90%, while the growth of the corresponding primary tumors was hardly affected. (C) Rat epithelial cells were transformed by forced constitutive expression of both TrkB (a tyrosine kinase receptor) and its ligand, BDNF, achieved in both cases by retrovirus vectors. The number of mice bearing subcutaneously implanted TrkB-transformed cells was reduced significantly by anti-ZEB1 shRNA relative to those bearing tumors expressing control (anti-EGFP) shRNAs. (A, from J. Yang et al., *Cell* 117:927–939, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. B, from P.B. Gupta et al., *Nat. Genet*. 37:1047–1054, 2005. C, from M.A. Smit and D.S. Peeper, *Oncogene* 30:3735–3744, 2011. Both with permission from Nature.)

Experiments like those of Figure 14.26 do not address whether expression of EMT-TFs is *sufficient* to trigger the latter steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade. One critical rate-limiting step of metastasis formation is extravasation—escape of cancer cells from microvessels into the parenchyma of nearby tissue (see Figure 14.3). The efficiency of this step can be gauged by injecting cancer cells into the tail vein of a mouse, which results in their rapid trapping in the microvessels of the lungs—the procedure termed “experimental metastasis”. In this instance, extravasation rates can be determined by microscopic examination of lung tissue, specifically by examining whether injected cancer cells remain trapped intraluminally in the microvessels or have escaped into the lung parenchyma. The experiments shown in **Figure 14.27A** reveal that when the tumors cells used in these experiments were injected without any induced EMT-TF, about 20% succeeded in extravasating; however, when expression of the Twist EMT-TF was induced in the tumor cells for a week or more while these cells were still in culture, ∼80% of the subsequently injected cells succeeded in extravasating within 36 hours of tail-vein injection, whether or not Twist expression continued after tail-vein injection. Hence, the process of extravasation, which represents one of the last steps of the invasion-metastasis cascade, is greatly facilitated by the actions of an EMT program.



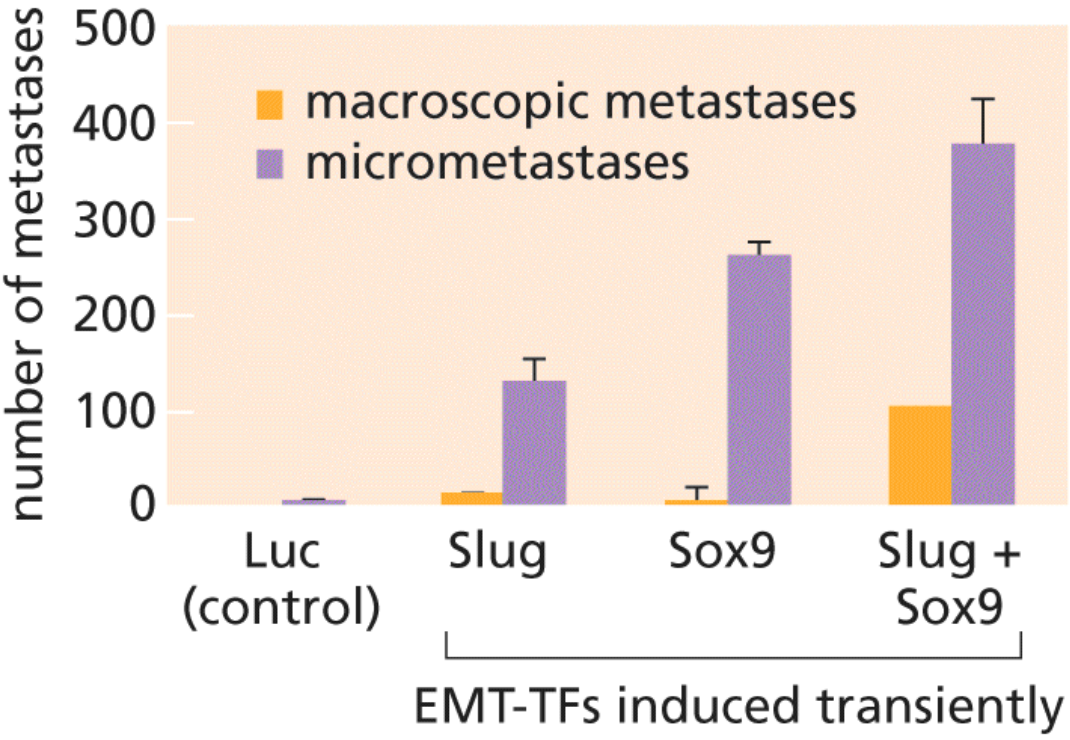
A vertical bar graph that displays the ratio of extravascular to intravascular cells for three different groups of tumor cells. In Group 1, with no twist, less than 20 percent of cells are extravascular. In Groups 2 and 3, both with twist, 75 percent of cells are extravascular.

(A)



Histology stain images of two sets of cancer cells, each at both 4 x and 20 x magnification. On the left, control cells are fairly uniform in texture and have a clear margin where they meet non-cancerous cells. On the right, Slug and Sox9 induced cells have a spongy texture, with many large pores, and a poorly defined margin where they meet non-cancerous cells.

(B)



A vertical bar graph that gives the number of micrometastases and macroscopic metastases for four different cell types, namely Luc (the control), three types with E M T-T Effs induced transiently: Slug, Sox9, and Slug plus Sox9. The number of micrometastases is 0 for Luc, over 100 for Slug, over 250 for Sox9, and over 350 for Slug plus Sox9. The number of macroscopic metastases is low for the first three cell types but jumps to 100 for Slug plus Sox9.

(C)

Figure 14.27 Contributions of EMT-inducing TFs to invasion, extravasation, and metastasis (A) The effects of the Twist EMT-TF specifically on the process of extravasation was tested in a mouse model of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. Primary tumor cells were propagated in culture and then injected into the tail vein of a mouse with microscopic monitoring 36 hours later in order to determine whether the carcinoma cells had remained trapped in microvasculature of the lungs or had extravasated into the lung parenchyma. In the absence of any induced Twist expression, ~20% of the cells successfully extravasated (*left bar*). However, if Twist was expressed for a week or more in culture prior to tail-vein injection and was either kept on or shut off after tail-vein injection (achieved through use of an inducible Twist expression construct), ~80% of the carcinoma cells were found to have successfully extravasated (*middle, right bars*). (B) Human breast cancer cells of the MCF7-ras cell line are weakly invasive and

metastatic. Thus 12 weeks after implantation into an immunocompromised mouse host, these cells formed tumors (*left panels*) that had smooth outer margins (*white line, top left panel*) and the absence of histopathological traits that were indicative of invasiveness. In contrast, cells in which the combination of the Slug and Sox9 EMT-TFs was induced for 2 weeks after implantation *in vivo* and then shut down (*right panels*), the tumors that formed 10 weeks later showed invasive margins, indicative of invasion into adjacent adipocyte-rich stromal tissue. Hence, these cells continue to be affected by the actions of the EMT-TFs long after expression of these TFs had been de-induced. (C) Lung metastases were counted 12 weeks after orthotopic implantation of MCF7-ras breast cancer cells. Neither micrometastases nor macroscopic metastases were present in significant numbers in the Luc (control) cells. However, these EMT-TFs, induced either singly or in combination, yielded as many as ∼400 micrometastases and ∼100 macroscopic metastases, demonstrating the powers of the EMT program to drive otherwise-benign primary tumor cells through most of the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade. (A, from J.H. Tsai, J.L. Donaher, D.A. Murphy et al., *Cancer Cell* 22:725–736, 2012. With permission from Elsevier. B, C, courtesy of Z. Keckesova and J. DeCock.)

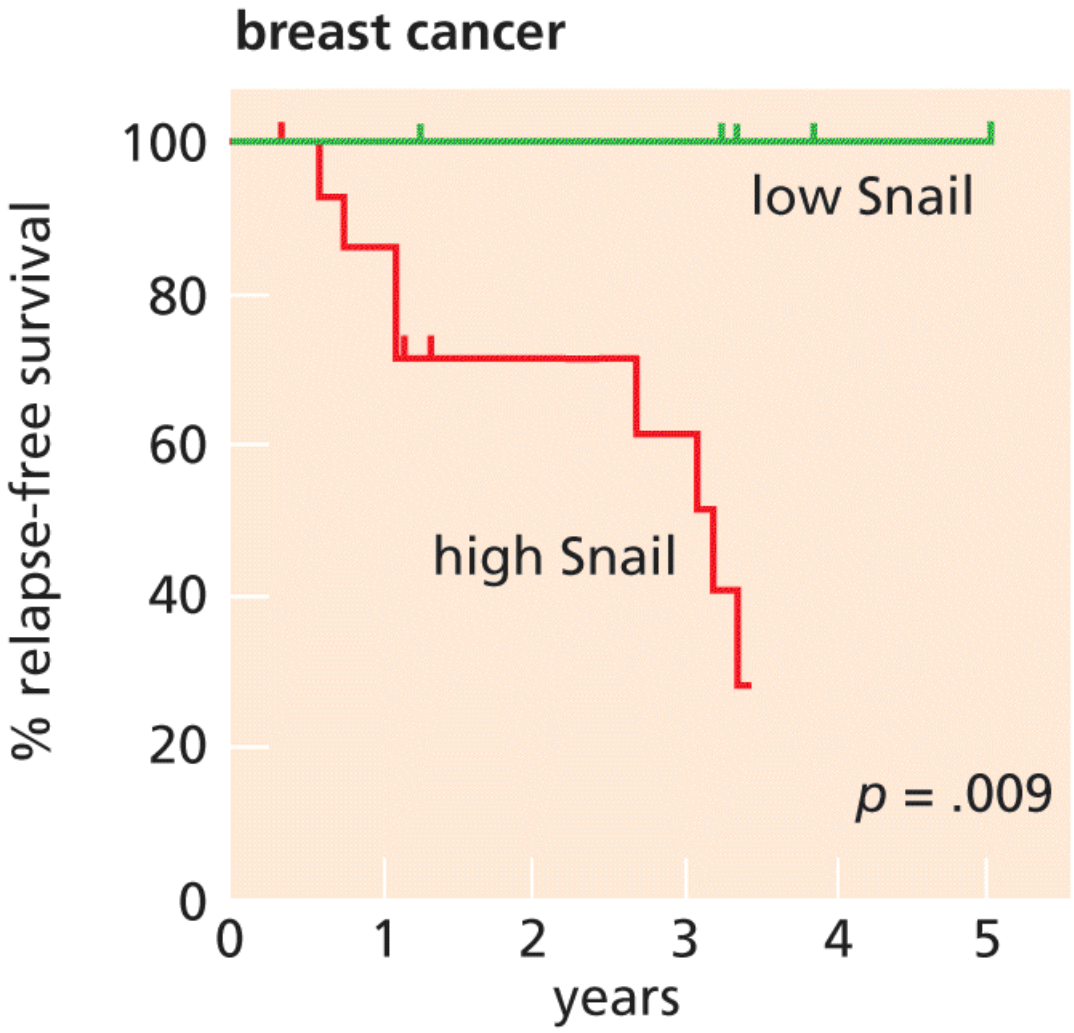
Yet other experiments deal with the larger question of whether expression of EMT-TFs and resulting induction of EMT programs is, on its own, *sufficient* to force otherwise-nonmetastatic human breast cancer cells growing in primary tumors to form metastases and therefore complete most of the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade. These experiments relied on the reversible induction of the Slug EMT-TF together with a second TF, Sox9; this pair of transcription factors had been previously found to induce stemness of normal mouse mammary epithelial cells, as illustrated in Figure 14.25C. Expression of this pair of TFs was induced in orthotopically implanted tumors (that is, in this case in mammary stromal fat pads) for 2 weeks, after which their expression was shut down and the tumor-bearing mice were observed for another 10 weeks.

Figure 14.27B reveals that control cells (Luciferase), in which expression of the two TFs had not been induced, formed primary tumors at the end of the 12-week experiment that exhibited smooth outer edges, indicative of a lack of invasiveness, as well as harboring cells with more epithelial cell morphologies. In contrast, the tumor cells that had been exposed 10 weeks earlier to the two TFs generated tumors whose outer edges were highly invasive; also, the associated individual carcinoma cells were more mesenchymal in morphology. Hence, once an EMT had been induced in these cells, their descendants “remembered” the effects of the induced EMT-TFs 10 weeks later, even in the absence of ongoing induction of the TFs that had initially triggered the EMT. This result indicated that once an EMT program had been induced, its effects

were transmitted in a cell-heritable fashion to its lineal descendants and maintained during the subsequent long period of cell proliferation and tumor growth, ostensibly under the auspices of self-reinforcing positive-feedback loops such as those driven by autocrine signaling. Of even greater interest were the lung metastases that were spawned by the subcutaneously implanted primary tumor cells. As shown in Figure 14.27C, the parental control cells generated essentially no metastases, while the cells that had experienced transient Slug + Sox9 expression formed almost 400 micrometastases and almost 100 macroscopic metastases.

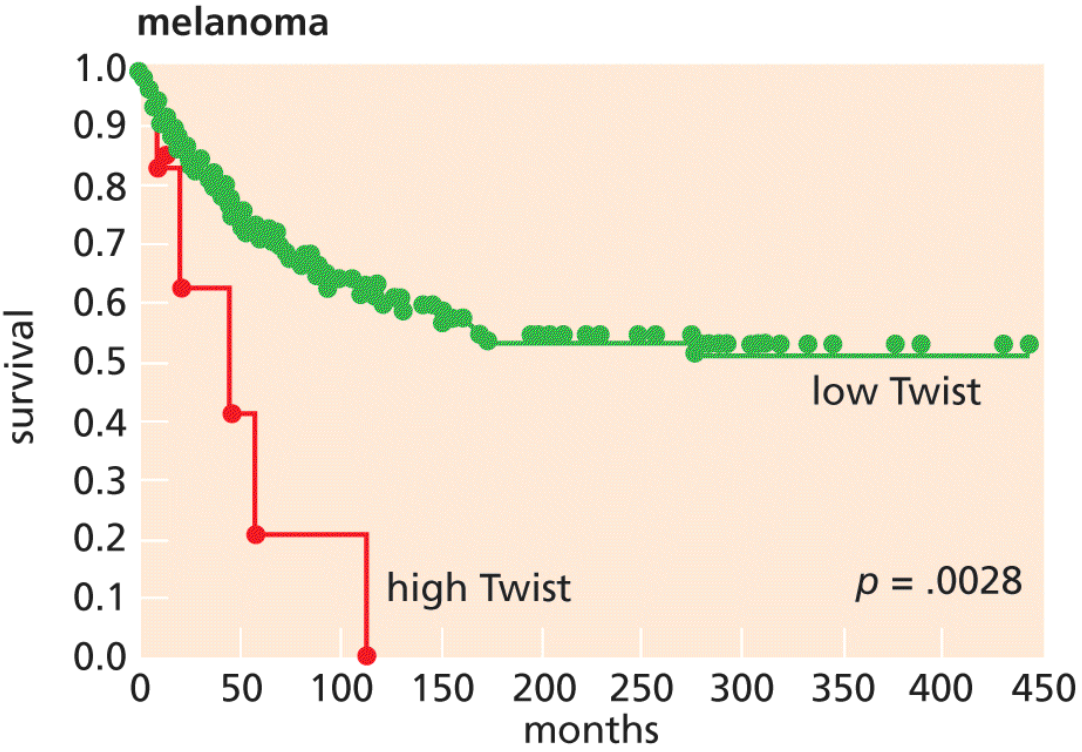
Preclinical studies like these and others not shown here, all of which have been conducted in mice, provide compelling evidence that expression of an EMT program enables primary cancer cells to complete almost all the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade illustrated in Figure 14.3. Included among these are the steps of localized invasion, the formation of circulating tumors cells (CTCs) that results from intravasation, subsequent extravasation, and the formation of micrometastases. Although the experiments described in Figure 14.27B indicate that macroscopic metastases, which result from the process of colonization, could be accomplished by expression of an EMT program, as discussed further below, execution of this final step of the cascade cannot generally be achieved simply by expression of an EMT program. Nonetheless, these various experiments reveal that, at the very least, EMT programs can physically convey carcinoma cells from the confines of a primary tumor into the parenchyma of a distant tissue; the execution of the last step of the invasion–metastasis cascade (see Figure 14.3), entails unrelated, complex phenotypic shifts that we will encounter later in this chapter.

Reassuringly, the results of the experiments described here have correlates in the observations of human cancer patients occurring in the oncology clinic. As seen in a variety of carcinomas, expression of the Snail, Twist, and Slug EMT-TFs in primary tumors is associated with poor prognoses in at least four types of human carcinomas (**Figure 14.28**). These studies and others like them provide confidence that our discussions in this chapter, focused for historical reasons largely on breast cancer, will eventually prove applicable to a broad range of human carcinomas, possibly all of them. Moreover, the strong effects of EMT, as indicated by the expression of EMT-TFs and EMT phenotype (Figure 14.28D), validate the use of mouse models of carcinoma progression for understanding human cancer pathogenesis.



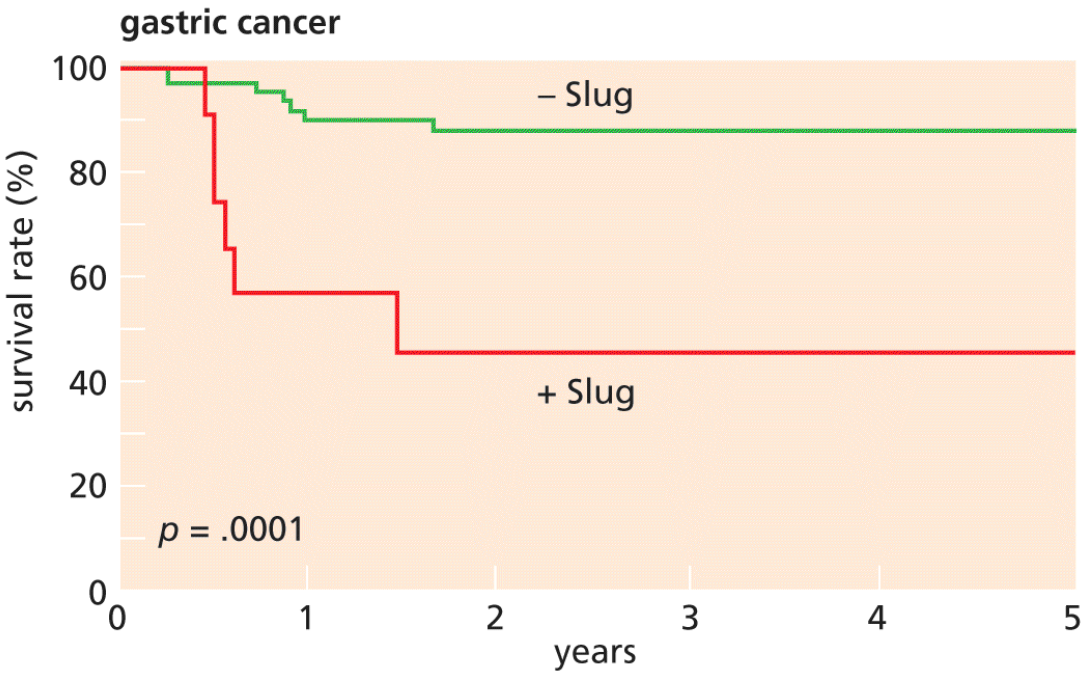
A line graph showing that the percent of relapse-free survival of breast cancer remains at 100 out to 5 years for patients with low Snail, but drops to nearly 20 percent in about 3 years for patients with high Snail.

(A)



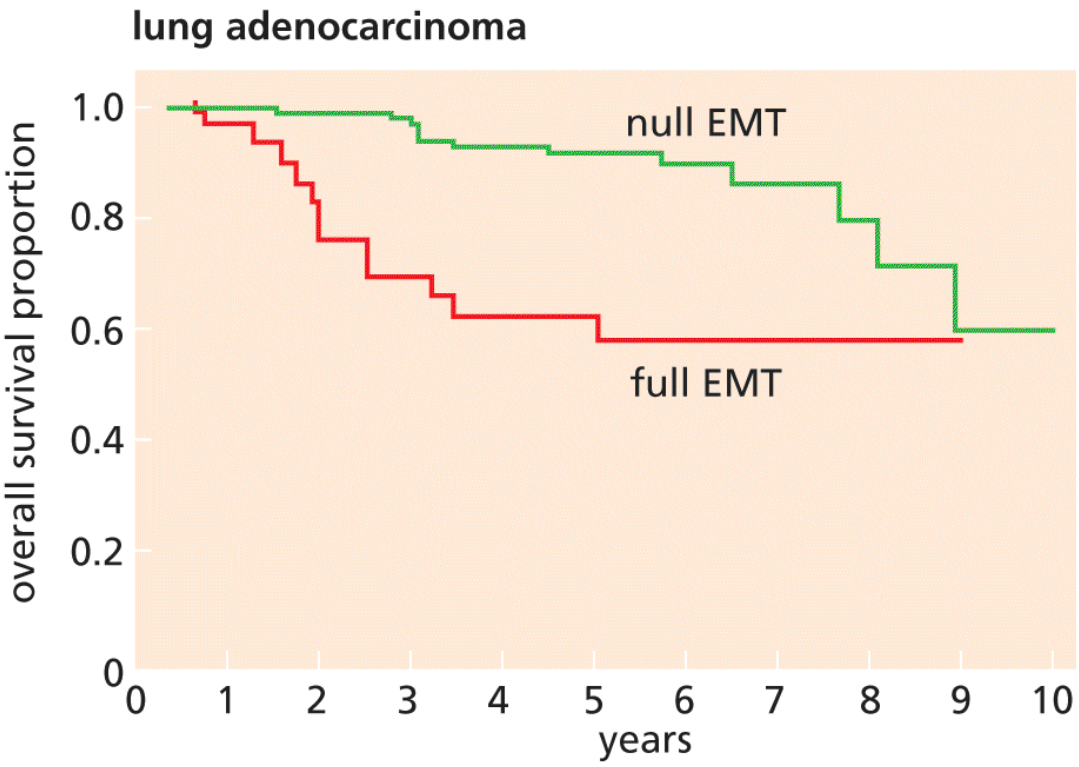
A line graph showing that the percent of relapse-free survival of melanoma in patients with low Twist declines from 100 percent down to about 50 percent ir 300 months and remains there out to 450 months. For patients with high twist, the percent declines sharply from 100 down to 0 within 120 months.

(B)



A line graph showing that the survival rate with gastric cancer remains near 9(percent out to 5 years for Slug negative patients, but drops below 50 percent in less than 2 years for Slug positive patients.

(C)



A line graph showing that the overall survival proportion from lung adenocarcinoma after 6 years is around 90 percent for null E M T patients and around 60 percent for full E M T patients. The proportion at 10 years is 60 percent for both patient types.

(D)

Figure 14.28 Indications of the role of EMT-inducing transcription factors in human tumor progression Increasing evidence correlates the expression of EMT-inducing TFs with the induction of malignant behavior in cancer cells in patients. (A) Among a group of women with locally advanced breast cancers (tumors that appeared histologically to be aggressive without evidence of disseminated disease), those whose tumors expressed either high or low levels of Snail were followed for a period of 5 years after initial surgery. The percentage of women who enjoyed relapse-free survival varied dramatically, depending on whether or not the carcinoma cells in their primary tumors expressed high levels of the Snail EMT-TF protein. (B) Sections of primary melanomas were immunostained for Twist EMT-TF expression and correlated retrospectively with the long-term survival of the patients bearing these tumors. (C) Shown are the postoperative survival rates for stomach cancer patients whose primary tumors retained detectable E-cadherin expression together with or in the absence of Slug EMT-TF expression. (D) The clinical progression of patients suffering from lung

adenocarcinomas was tracked following their initial presentation in the oncology clinic. Patients whose tumors were CD133-negative (a stem cell marker) were classified into two groups: null EMT–E-cadherin-positive, vimentin-negative; or Full EMT (E-cadherin-negative, vimentin-positive.) (A, from S.E. Moody et al., *Cancer Cell* 8:197–209, 2005. With permission from Elsevier. B, from K. Hoek et al., *Cancer Res*. 64:5270–5282, 2004. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, from Y. Uchikado et al., *Gastric Cancer* 14:41–49, 2011. With permission from Springer. D, from T. Sowa, T. Menju, M. Sonobe et al., *Cancer Med*. 4:1853–1862, 2015. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

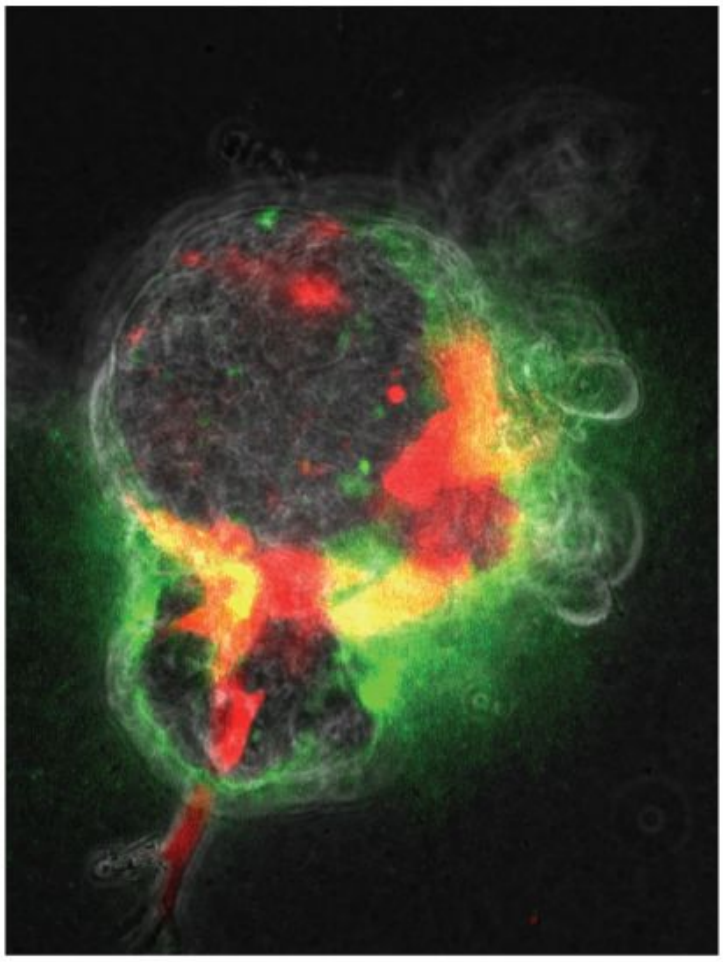
To summarize, the discovery of the EMT-inducing TFs and the mechanisms that control their expression suggest at least three important ideas about malignant progression. First, many malignant cell phenotypes, notably those displayed by carcinoma cells, may be induced by *nongenetic* changes—heterotypic signals of stromal origin—rather than somatically acquired genetic changes occurring within carcinoma cell genomes; hence the cells within primary tumors may already possess the genetic alterations required for dissemination and therefore only require activation of an EMT program in order to spread to distant sites (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.6**). Second, because expression of these TFs and the resulting EMT is often dependent on heterotypic signaling from the reactive stroma of primary tumors, carcinoma cells may revert from a more mesenchymal state to an epithelial state once they have left the primary tumor and encounter the normal stromal microenvironments present in sites of metastasis; by definition, such normal stromata do not release the heterotypic signals that can induce activation of EMT programs in nearby carcinoma cells. Third, cancer cells do not need to cobble together all of the phenotypes associated with highly malignant cells by acquiring multiple mutant genes or activating multiple cell-biological programs; instead, many of the malignancy-associated traits enabling completion of most of the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade can be acquired concomitantly through the actions of a single cell-biological program—the EMT.

OceanofPDF.com

14.8 The invasiveness of carcinoma cells depends on clearance of obstructing ECM

The discussions of EMT programs and the TFs that induce them have overlooked the individual steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade that yield the final products—fully formed, life-threatening metastases. So, now we backtrack to revisit these steps and revisit how they are manifested in aggressive primary tumors cells. To begin, and as cited on multiple occasions earlier, among the critical consequences of EMT activation are its effects on the invasiveness of carcinoma cells. This invasiveness plays critical roles in enabling islands of primary carcinoma cells to invade the nearby stroma (see Figure 14.5), to intravasate (see Figure 14.23) and, following lymphatic and hematogenous dissemination, to extravasate into the parenchyma of distant tissues (see Figure 14.27A). The observed invasiveness is, in turn, the product of two distinct but closely coordinated cellular processes: the dissolution of extracellular matrix (ECM) that would otherwise obstruct the forward march of invading tumor cells, operating together with the acquisition of motility by these cells, which enables them to enter the spaces created by localized degradation of the ECM. Both processes are critical to the burrowing of cancer cells into adjacent parenchymal tissues.

The most important EMT effectors responsible for excavating space for invading cancer cells are the matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs; see Table 13.1). In carcinomas, the bulk of these proteases are secreted by recruited stromal cells, notably macrophages, mast cells, and fibroblasts, rather than by the neoplastic epithelial cells themselves (**Figure 14.29**). By dissolving the dense thickets of ECM molecules that surround and confine carcinoma cells within tissues (see Figure 14.7A), these secreted MMPs excavate spaces for these cells to advance forward. Included among the ECM components that are cleaved by MMPs are fibronectin, tenascin, laminin, collagens, and proteoglycans. (The loss of metastatic ability observed in the absence of macrophages, as seen in Figure 14.21D, can be ascribed to the absence of the MMPs that are usually essential for metastatic dissemination.) Of note, these MMPs are also critical for nonpathological processes, such as the neoangiogenesis that enables endothelial cells present at the tips of growing capillaries to invade into tissues that require vascularization; similar dynamics seem to apply to the growing extensions of mammary ducts into the mammary stromal fat pad (see Figure 14.25C).



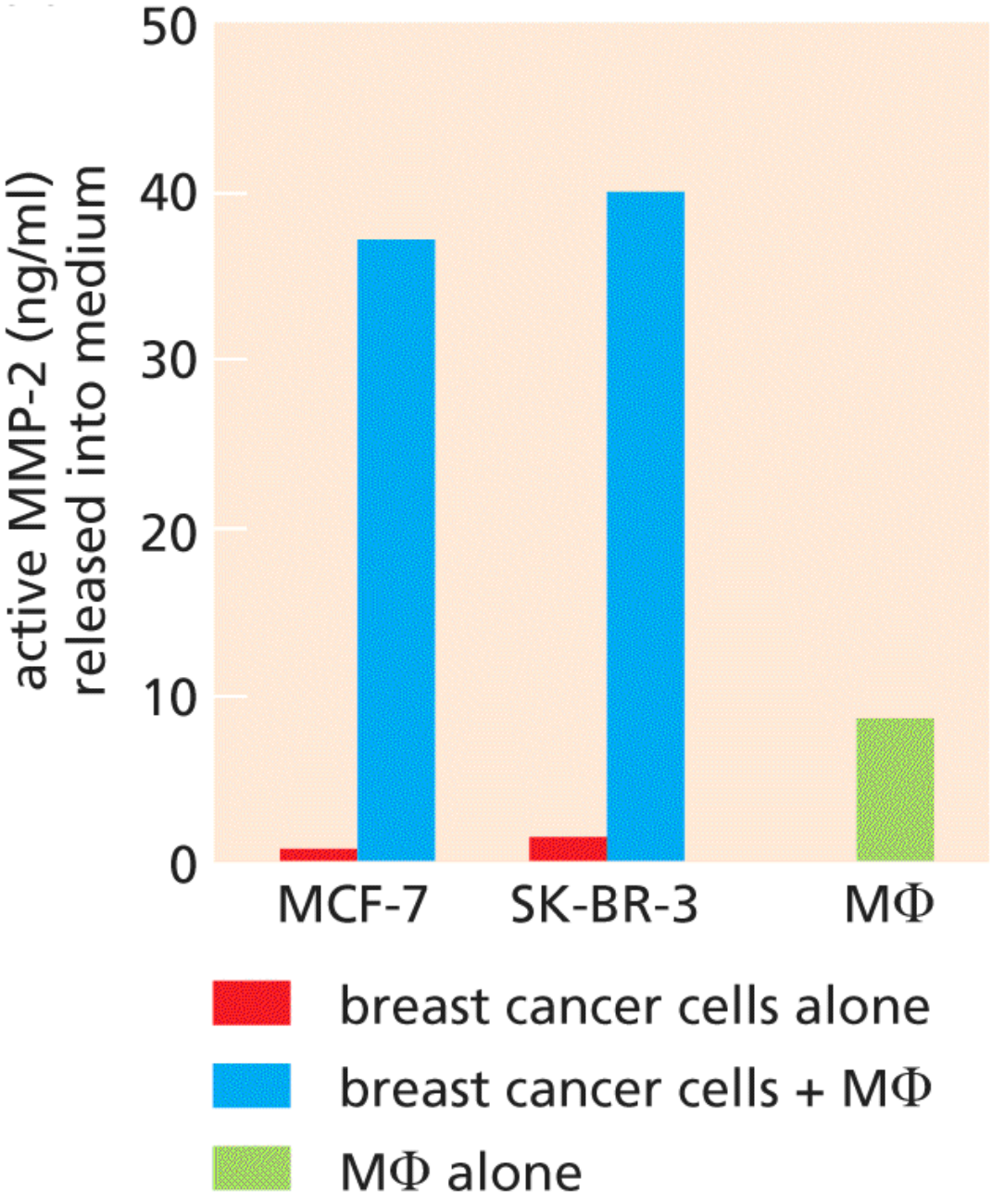
cleaved collagen IV

normal fibroblasts

overlap: fibroblasts
+ cleaved Col IV

A fluorescence microscopy image of a globular tissue clump in which cleaved collagen I V is green, normal fibroblasts are red, and the overlap of the two appears as yellow.

(A)



A bar graph showing the amount of active M M P-2 released into growth medium by five cell colony types or combinations. For M C F-7 and S K-B R-3, the amount of active M M P-2 was very low. For the same two cell lines combined with macrophages, the amount was much higher, around 37 to 40 nanograms per milliliter. For macrophages alone, the amount was moderate, around 9 nanograms per milliliter.

(B)

Figure 14.29 Matrix metalloproteinases produced by tumor-associated stromal cells (A) The ability of tumors to degrade collagen IV, a key component of the basement membrane, can be measured by generating a modified collagen IV substrate that fluoresces *green* upon cleavage. In this experiment, human mammary carcinoma cells (*not seen*) and human mammary fibroblasts (*red*) showed relatively weak ability to degrade the collagen IV substrate when these two cell populations were cultured on their own. However, when these two cell populations were co-cultured, regions of collagen IV cleavage (*green*) were evident, often in areas where fibroblasts were also present (*yellow*: *overlap of green and red*). This cleavage was essentially eliminated in the presence of MMP inhibitors (*not shown*). (B) An even more important source of MMPs is the macrophages (MΦs) that are recruited into the tumor stroma. In this *in vitro* experiment, the presence of MMP-2 was measured in the culture medium of MΦs that were cultured alone (*green*) or together with either of two human breast cancer cell lines—MCF-7 or SK-BR-3. Neither of these cancer cell types released significant levels of MMP-2 on its own (*red*), but in the presence of MΦs (*blue*), the production and release of MMP-2 increased 4- to 5-fold. (The increase could be traced to the induction of MMP-2 mRNA expression by the MΦs, *not shown*.) The released MMP-2 imparted increased invasiveness to these breast cancer cells (*not shown*). (A, from M. Sameni et al., *Mol. Imaging* 2:159–175, 2003. With permission from SAGE. B, from T. Hagemann et al., *Carcinogenesis* 25:1543–1549, 2004. With permission from Oxford University Press.)

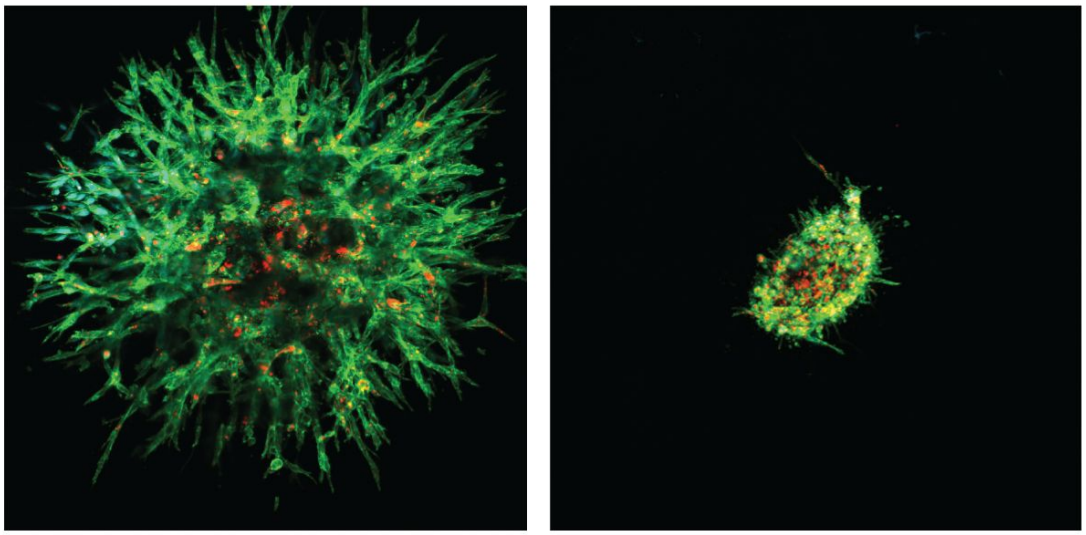
During the course of degrading ECM components, MMPs also mobilize and activate certain growth factors that have been tethered in inactive form to the ECM or to the surfaces of cells. These actions are actually directly intertwined with the control of EMT programs: On the one hand, EMT-induced transcriptomes include mRNAs encoding an array of secreted MMPs, such as MMP-2 and MMP-9. On the other, these MMPs act in the intercellular space to cleave the ectodomains of E-cadherin molecules and to activate previously latent TGF-β; both of these actions stimulate, in turn, the expression of EMT-TFs, creating self-reinforcing, positive-feedback loops that help to sustain expression of EMT programs in cells that have initiated components of these programs.

Complementing these secreted MMPs is a critically important one—MT1-MMP (membrane type-1 MMP)—that remains tethered directly to the plasma membrane surfaces of cancer cells and is wielded by them in order to cleave cell ECM components, cell surface adhesion molecules (for example, cadherins and integrins), as well as growth factor receptors and chemokines. Most importantly, MT1-MMP can also cleave inactive pro-enzymes, such as pro-MMP-2, into enzymatically active MMP isoforms. By activating soluble, diffusible MMPs like MMP-2, MT1-MMP can amplify and extend its proteolytic effects to regions in the pericellular space that are

not immediately adjacent to the cell surface of cancer cells. (MT1-MMP is one of six MMPs that are membrane-anchored and therefore limited to cleaving substrate proteins in the immediate vicinity of the cells that produce them.) Taken together, these properties explain how ectopic expression of MT1-MMP, acting via its downstream MMP effectors, can induce EMTs in cultured epithelial cells.

As we have read, the initial steps of invasion by a carcinoma cell are obstructed by the basement membrane (BM), which may have pores as small as 40 nm in diameter (see Figure 13.10). Although cells can distort their cytoplasms in order to squeeze through small openings, their nuclei are relatively rigid and thus govern the size of the smallest pores through which cells can pass. Cell nuclei are generally in the size range of 3 to 10 μm, about 100 times larger than the pores in the BM; this explains why dissolution of the BM is critical to carcinoma cell invasion (see also Figure 14.4).

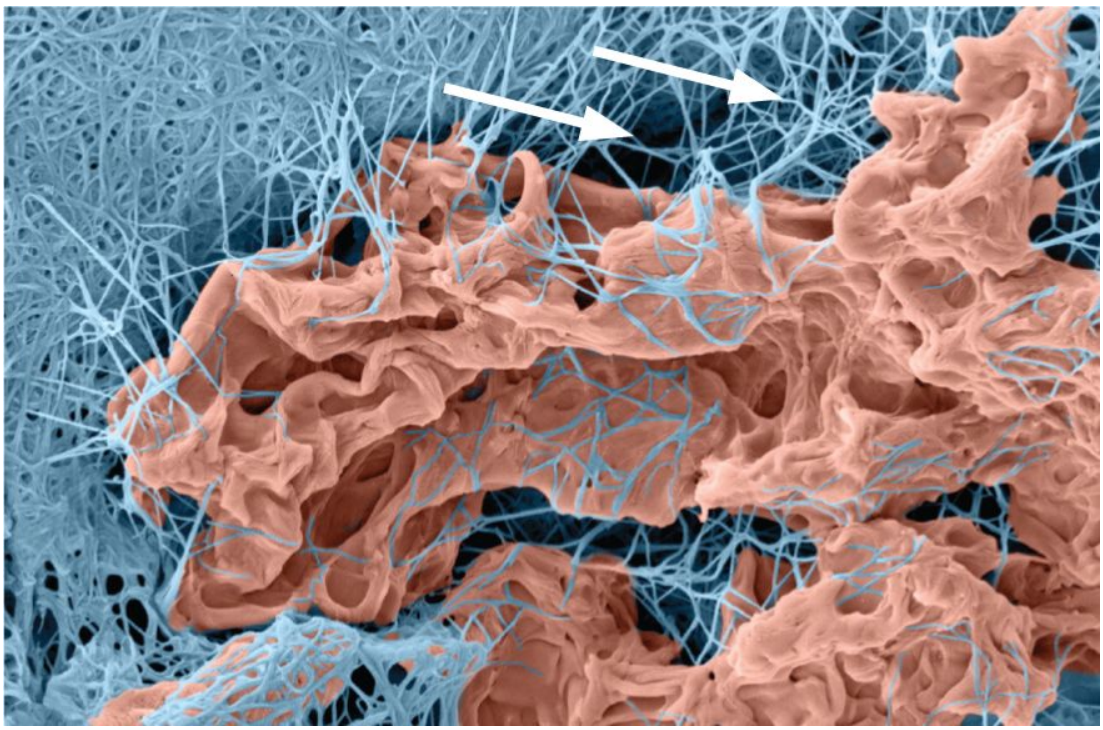
The activities of MT1-MMP, which plays a leading role in BM breakdown, seem to be confined through its concentration at discrete cell surface foci, initially termed **podosomes** but increasingly called invadopodia because of the involvement of these structures in cancer cell invasion (**Figure 14.30**). Early in malignant progression, MT1-MMP displayed on the surface of carcinoma cells can cleave collagen type IV, the collagen that imparts rigidity to the basement membrane (BM; see Figures 2.3 and 13.10). The resulting weakening of the BM allows cancer cells to begin invading the underlying stroma (see Figure 14.4). Once in the stroma, an invading carcinoma cell confronts a dense network of cross-linked collagen type I fibers that obstructs further advance (see Figure 14.30B); here, MT1-MMP once again plays a central role. It initiates collagen I degradation and then recruits an inactive pro-enzyme (pro-MMP-2) of stromal origin, which it activates by cleavage as mentioned above (**Figure 14.31**). The resulting active MMP-2 then operates in the peri-cellular space to further reduce collagen I into lower–molecular-weight fragments. Without these proteolytic steps, the dense networks of collagen I fibers that are present in the stromal ECM totally block cancer cell invasion.



control siRNA anti-MT1-MMP siRNA

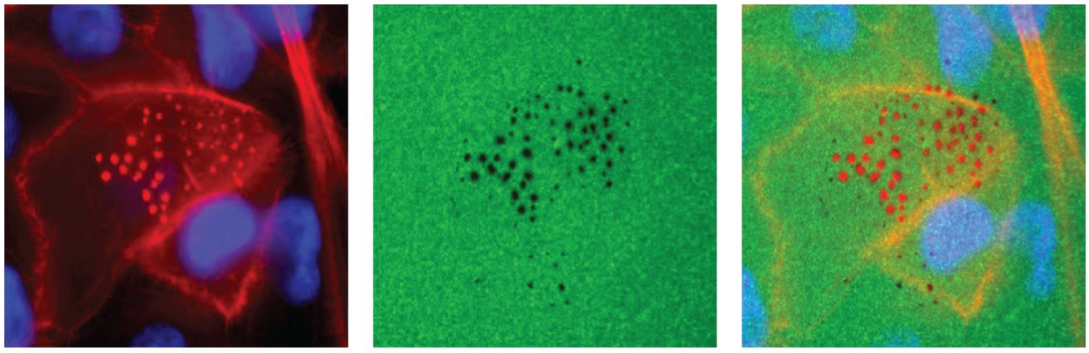
Two fluorescence microscopy images. The first is of a large round burst of green spikes and tendrils, labeled control s i R N A. The second is of a small, concentrated fuzzy green oval shape, labeled anti-M T 1-M M P s i R N A.

(A)



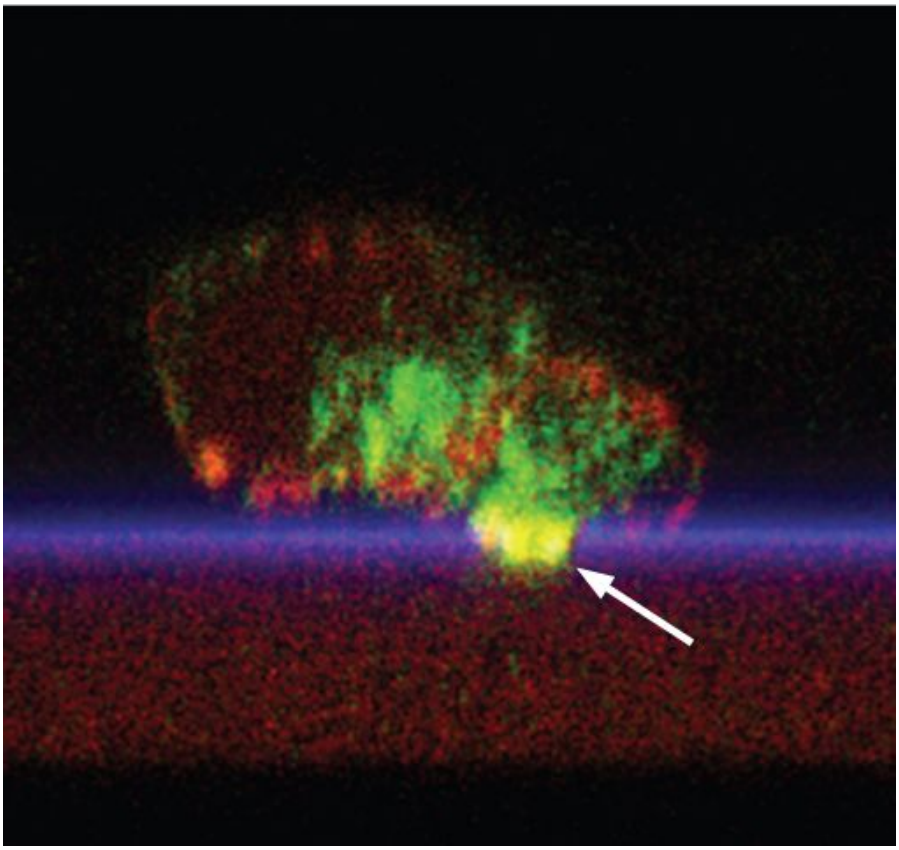
A false-color image of a pink carcinoma enmeshed in a matrix of pale blue collagen fibers, which are denser further away from the carcinoma than where

they touch it.
(B)



Three fluorescence microscopy images. The first, labeled D A P I F actin, shows fibers and dots glowing red amid blue nuclei. The second, labled F I T C gelatin, shows black dots in a field of green. The third image, labled overlap, is a superposition of the first two, showing that the red dots in the first image match the black dots in the second one.

(C)

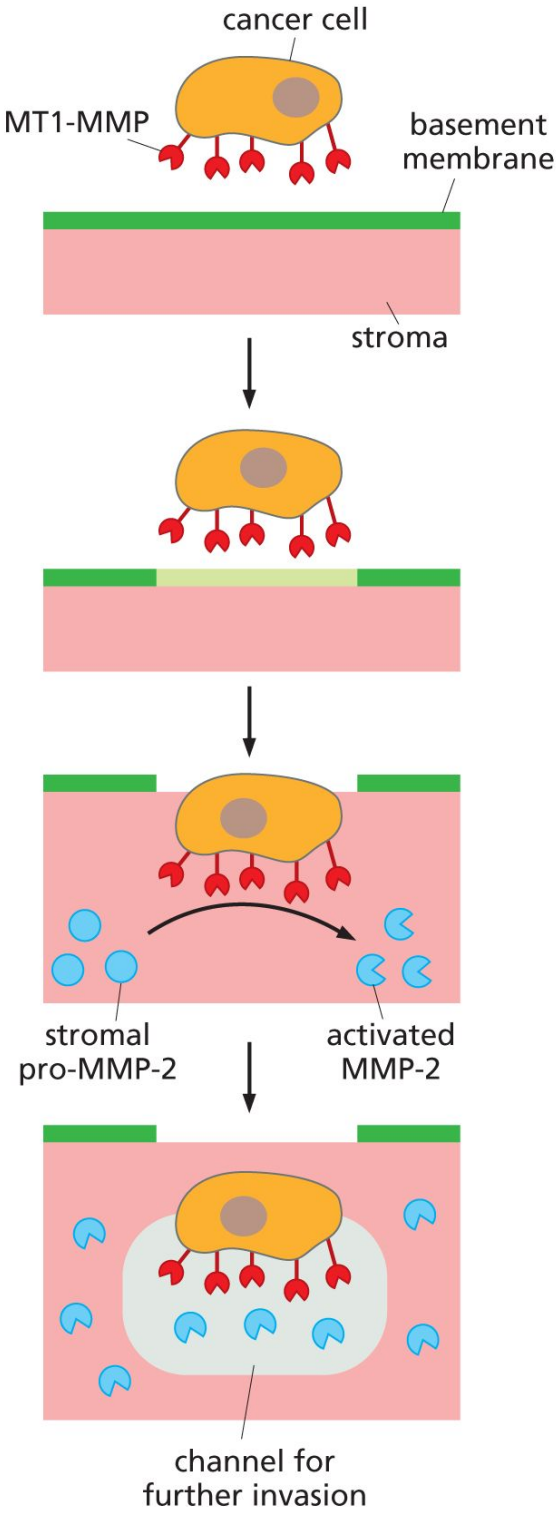


A fluorescence microscopy image in which a yellow and green blob with a fringe of red dots sits mostly above a horizontal blue line that has many tiny red dots below it. A portion of the blob has penetrated down through the blue line.

(D)

Figure 14.30 MT1-MMP, invadopodia, and the degradation of the extracellular matrix Invadopodia, sometimes termed podosomes, are small, focal protrusions from the cell surface that degrade localized areas of extracellular matrix (ECM) in their immediate vicinity. In the case of tumor development, invadopodia are deployed by invasive cancer cells to drive localized, highly controlled degradation of the ECM near the leading edges of these cells. (A) The critical contribution of MT1-MMP, which is tethered to the surface of invadopodia, in cancer cell invasion can be demonstrated *in vitro* through the behavior of HT1080 human fibrosarcoma cells. When these cells, seen here growing as a colony in a 3D matrix of collagen I, were forced to express a control siRNA (*left panel*), they demonstrated a high degree of invasiveness, as indicated by the numerous protruding columns of cancer cells invading the matrix. However, when MT1-MMP production was knocked down through the actions of a specific siRNA, these cells were confined to a small volume surrounding the site at which the founding cell was initially introduced into the matrix. Knockdown of the two secreted metalloproteinases also made by these cells—MMP-1 and MMP-2—had no effect on their invasiveness (*not shown*). Cells were treated with a phalloidin derivative, which labels filamentous actin (*green*), and di-I (3,3-dioctadecyl indocarbocyanine), which stains membranes (*red*). (B) The effects of the proteases produced by the invasive HT1080 cells are seen in fine detail in this scanning electron micrograph in which the collagen I fibers in the ECM have been pseudo-colored *blue* and the fibrosarcoma cells are colorized *pink*. Note that the collagen matrix is dense beyond the immediate vicinity of the fibrosarcoma cells (*top left*), whereas the collagen fibers are sparse in the immediate vicinity of the cells (*arrows, center, right*) from the actions of the proteases, largely and perhaps exclusively the MT1-MMP made by these cells. (C) MT1-MMP is the major protease displayed on invadopodia. These organelles are defined by dense concentrations of filamentous actin, stained here with phalloidin (*red, left panel*) on the ventral surface (i.e., the surface directly apposed to the underlying substrate) of immortalized human mammary epithelial cells; nuclei are labeled with DAPI (*blue*). These immortalized human mammary epithelial cells were plated above a thin matrix of gelatin labeled with FITC dye (*green, middle panel*). The single cell seen in the middle of the left panel has eroded numerous holes (*black dots, middle panel*) in the gelatin (thereby solubilizing FITC) precisely under the focal areas where invadopodia were seen; the overlap between the F-actin foci and the eroded holes in the gelatin is seen here in red (*right panel*).

Formation of these invadopodia was dependent on activation of the Twist EMT-TF as well as expression of the PDGF-Rα that resulted from activation of the EMT program. (D) The invadopodia of a small cluster of cells are visualized from the side (a *z*-axis view) through confocal microscopy. The staining of filamentous actin (*red*) and cortical actin (*green*; see Figure 14.40) overlap in the invadopodia (*yellow*), which are protruding through a layer of the ECM protein fibronectin (*blue*) through which they have eroded an opening (*white arrow*). (A and B, from F. Sabeh et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 185:11–19, 2009. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. C, from M.A. Eckert et al., *Cancer Cell* 19:372–386, 2011. With permission from Elsevier. D, courtesy of S. Vitale and M. Frame; see also S. Vitale et al., *Eur. J. Cell Biol*. 87:569–579, 2008.)



A diagram showing the Collaboration of M T 1-M M P and M M P-2 in carcinoma cell invasion. A cancer cell with numerous M T1-M M P proteases protruding from its underside descends onto a basement membrane. The proteases open a hole in the membrane, through which the cell passes into the underlying stroma.

There, the proteases convert stromal pro-M M P-2 into activated M M P-2. These open up a channel in the stroma for further invasion.

Figure 14.31 Collaboration of MT1-MMP and MMP-2 in carcinoma cell invasion Membrane-tethered proteases, notably MT1-MMP, initially enable carcinoma cells to degrade the basement membrane (*green*) that separates them from the adjacent stroma. Once in direct contact with the stroma (*pink*), MT1-MMP can cleave pro-MMP-2 made by the stromal cells, converting it to an active, soluble protease. MT1-MMP also partially cleaves collagen I, which normally forms a densely interwoven network in the ECM of the stroma; the activated MMP-2 then proceeds to degrade the initially formed collagen I cleavage products to lower–molecular-weight fragments. Dissolving the collagen I network creates a channel immediately in front of the carcinoma cell that allows it to invade more deeply into the stroma.

Membrane-bound and secreted proteases clearly play important roles in normal cell survival and proliferation. After all, each time a cell within a normal tissue goes through a cycle of growth and division, spaces within the ECM must be carved out for its daughters. Once formed, each daughter cell must, in turn, reassemble a new ECM around itself. Hence, the remodeling of the ECM takes place continuously in mitotically active normal tissues. Therefore, rather than being aberrations of invasive cancer cells, the activities of MMPs and other extracellular proteases are part of the program associated with normal cell proliferation. Of relevance here are clinical trials of certain MMP-inhibiting drugs, which were launched in order to curtail cancer cell invasiveness and thus a key aspect of high-grade malignancy. These trials were terminated due to the effects of these inhibitors on a variety of normal tissues; because these agents suppressed the normal ongoing remodeling of cartilage and other components of the ECM in joints, they created unacceptable levels of joint stiffness and pain.

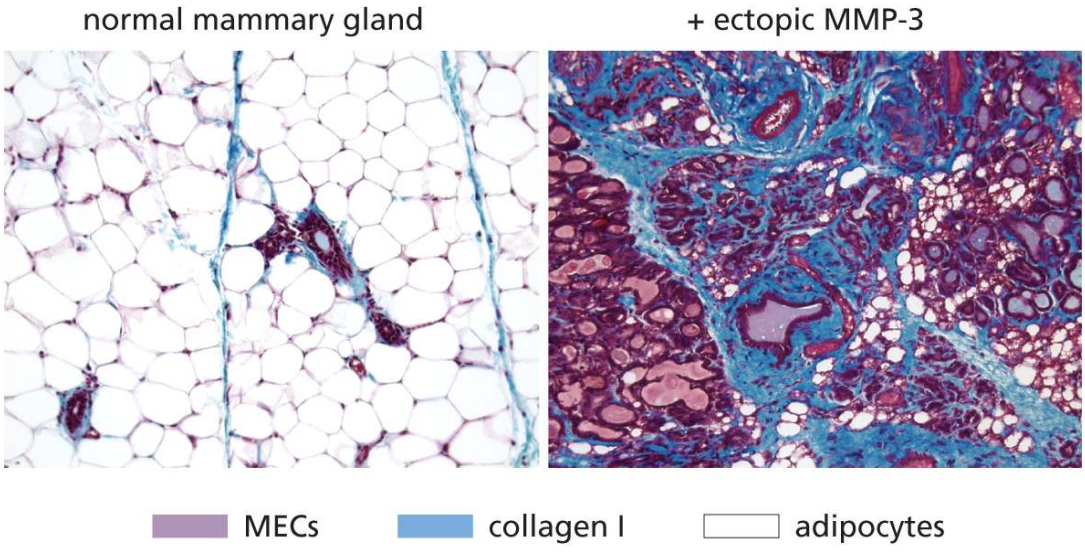
Each type of MMP usually acts on a well-defined set of substrates (see Table 13.1), doing so in a highly regulated and localized fashion. It is likely that these enzymes continue to show such substrate specificity during the process of cancer cell invasion. However, in the case of invasive cancer cells, such proteolysis seems to proceed continuously rather than in the well-controlled, brief spurts that accompany normal cell growth and division.

As cited earlier, many of the MMPs found in tumors originate in various cellular components recruited to the tumor-associated stroma. For example, the best-studied of the matrix metalloproteinases, MMP-9, is expressed largely by the macrophages (see Section 13.5), neutrophils, and fibroblasts that are recruited to the invasive fronts of tumors. MMP-9 expression at these fronts correlates positively with the metastatic ability of a primary tumor, suggesting that MMPs like this one can act at several stages

of the invasion–metastasis cascade, including local invasion of the primary tumor stroma, intravasation, and extravasation, the latter steps described in more detail below. *In vitro* assays indicate that MMP-9 can degrade collagens that are prominent components of the ECM including basement membranes, specifically collagen types IV, V, XI, and XIV. Other targets of MMP-9 include laminin (another key constituent of the basement membrane; see Figure 13.10), chemokines, fibrinogen, and latent TGF-β. In the case of the latter, cleavage by MMPs converts this factor from a latent form into its activated form, as mentioned earlier.

These widely ranging functions of MMPs indicate that their enzymatic activity must be tightly controlled, at least in normal tissues. One critical control mechanism has already been described: Soluble MMPs, such as MMP-2 and MMP-9, are initially synthesized as inactive pro-enzymes that can only function, like the caspases (see Section 9.13), following their activation by other proteases (see, for example, Figure 14.31). Negative regulation is also provided by a class of proteins termed tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs), which bind MMPs and place them in an inactive configuration.

Although MMPs have been depicted as one of a group of downstream effectors of certain steps in invasion and metastasis, it is clear that the deregulation of MMPs can, on its own, drive the progression of cells through all of the stages of multi-step tumorigenesis including completion of the invasion–metastasis cascade. Thus, when expression of MMP-3 is forced in the mammary gland of transgenic mice, these mice initially develop mammary hyperplasias (**Figure 14.32**). Some of these growths eventually progress to carcinomas that become invasive and metastatic. These mice reveal how critical the regulation of MMP function is and why it must be kept under control in normal tissues.



Two histology stain images pertaining to the Ectopic expression of MMP-3 and mammary tumor progression. On the left is normal mammary gland tissue. The structure is dominated by white globular adipocytes, separated by purple mammary epithelial cells. Two blue lines of collagen 1 fibers run through the image. On the right is tissue positive with ectopic M M P-3. It is much darker and denser, thick with epithelial cells and only a few veins of adipocytes. The center of the image is dominated by a thick tangle of collagen 1 fibers.

Figure 14.32 Ectopic expression of MMP-3 and mammary tumor progression
The normal mouse mammary gland (*left panel*) is composed of resting ducts formed by mammary epithelial cells (MECs, *purple*) and abundant adipose tissue (lipid-filled cells, *white*), as well as collagen fibers (*light blue*). However, when the gene encoding MMP-3 (also known as stromelysin-1) is expressed constitutively as a transgene in the mammary epithelium, the mice develop abundant hyperplasias (*right panel*), including extensive islands of hyperplastic epithelial cells (*purple*) that form ducts, as well as a fibrotic, collagen-rich stroma (*light blue*) and abnormal adipocytes (*white oval structures*, *lower right*). Many of these areas subsequently progress to invasive, metastatic tumors (*not shown*). (From M.D. Sternlicht et al., *Cell* 98:137–146, 1999. With permission from Elsevier.)

These brief vignettes of proteases and their contributions to cancer cell invasiveness describe only small parts of what are surely highly complex networks of interacting proteases, protease inhibitors, and substrates. The total number of proteases made by mammalian cells is vast and rivals the number of proteins that form the highly complex intracellular signal-processing circuits described in Chapter 6. To date, the actions of only a tiny proportion of these enzymes have been studied in the context of cancer pathogenesis (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.7**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

pro-enzyme
: Catalytically inactive precursor form of an enzyme that requires some type of alteration (often proteolytic cleavage) in order to become catalytically active.

invadopodium
: (pl., **-ia**) An organized structure on the surface of a cell in which plasma membrane–bound proteases degrade adjacent extracellular matrix, apparently to enable subsequent invasion by the cell as a whole. *Sometimes termed* **podosome**.

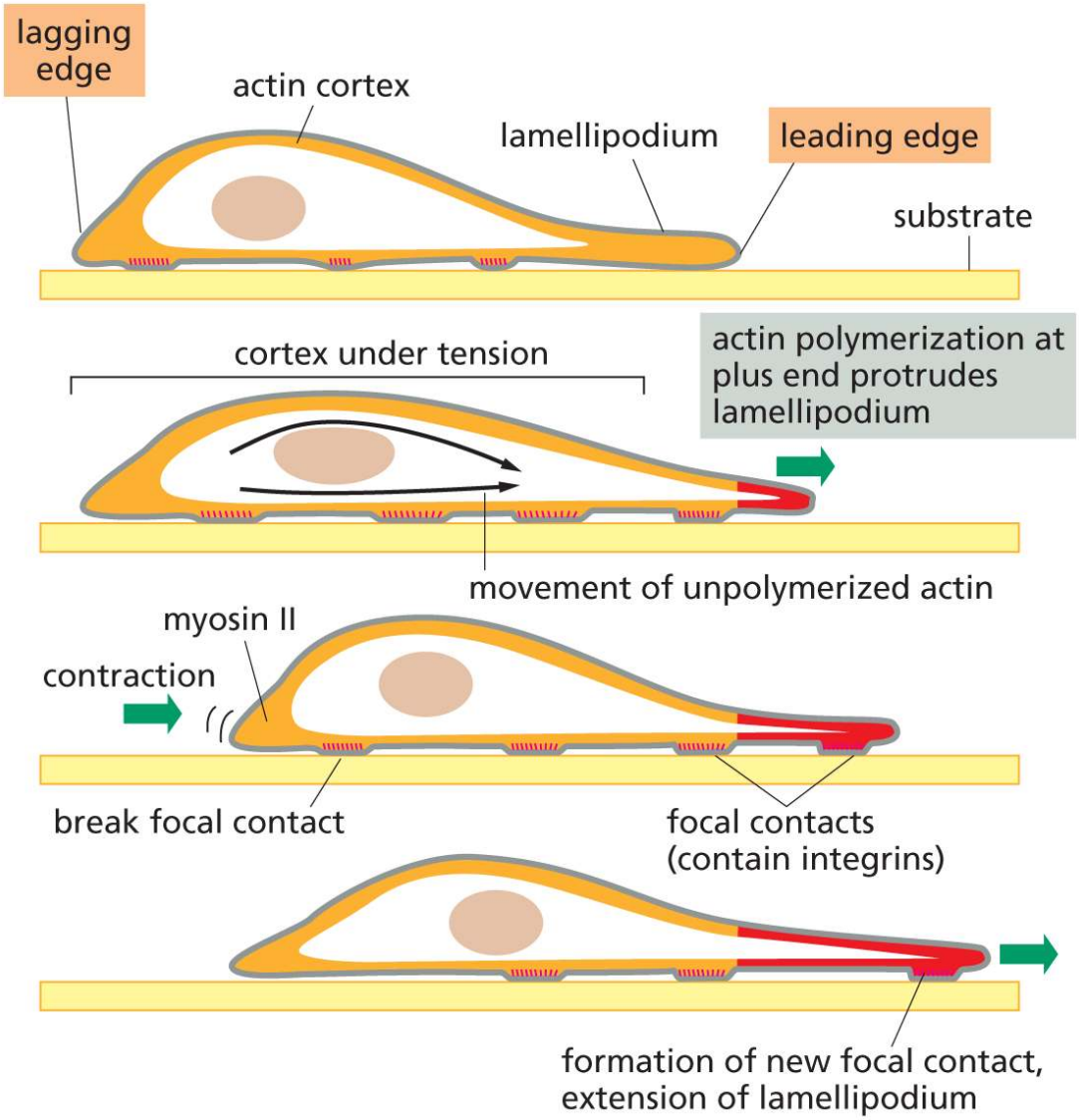
OceanofPDF.com

14.9 Motility enables cancer cells to move into space excavated by MMPs

The actions of extracellular proteases, notably the MMPs, explain at the biochemical level how paths are cleared for the advance of invasive cancer cells through the extracellular matrix and thus through tissues. They fail, however, to tell us how individual cancer cells take advantage of these cleared paths to move ahead—the trait of cell motility. The motile behavior of cells has been studied extensively with cultured cells, and it is presumed that their crawling on solid substrates *in vitro* reflects the *in vivo* behavior of cancer cells as they invade nearby cell layers and intravasate. Such motility is also presumed to be important for cancer cells' escape from blood vessels or lymph ducts—the process of extravasation.

Motile behavior can be induced in cultured cells by exposing them to a variety of growth factors. (Those GFs able to induce such locomotion are sometimes designated as being motogenic in addition to being mitogenic.) In the case of epithelial cells, the most potent inducer of motility is hepatocyte growth factor (HGF); this protein is also called scatter factor (SF) in recognition of its ability to induce multidirectional movement of cells in monolayer culture. Many types of epithelial cells express Met, the receptor for HGF, and such cells have been found to acquire motility in response to HGF treatment. Similarly, EGF is clearly able to induce motility of breast cancer cells.

The cellular machinery that responds to motogenic signals and operates as the engine of motility is extraordinarily complex at the molecular level. Cell motility involves continuous restructuring of the actin cytoskeleton in different parts of a cell, as well as the making and breaking of attachments between the migrating cell and the extracellular matrix (**Figure 14.33**). (In the case of cultured cells, the ECM in question is the network of proteins that has previously been laid down by these cells on the surface of the Petri dish; see Figure 1.11.) The outlines of these complex cellular and molecular mechanisms are described in **Supplementary Sidebars 14.7** and **14.8**.

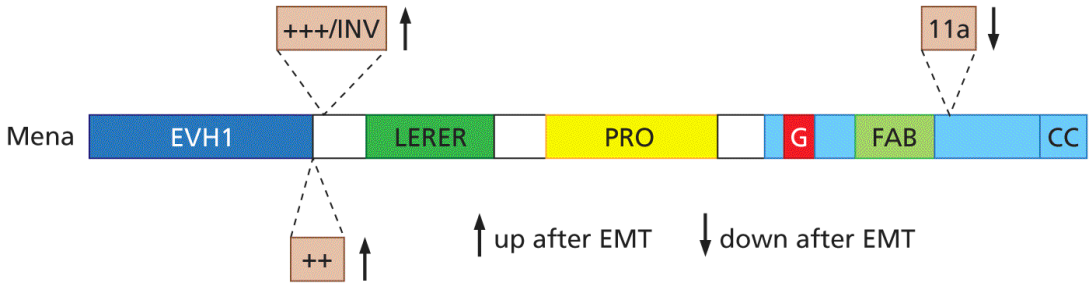


The Locomotion of cells on solid substrates. A cell resting on a flat substrate surface is shown in cross section, with the nucleus and cytoplasm surrounded by an actin cortex. The cell's underside is flat and adheres to the substrate with three focal contacts containing integrins. The high point of the rounded upper surface of the cell is toward the rear, and the lagging edge is blunt. The leading edge is greatly elongated and is labeled lamellipodium. When the cortex comes under tension, unpolymerized actin in the cytoplasm is squeezed forward, and actin polymerization at the plus end protrudes the lamellipodium forward, and a new focal contact with is formed. Myosin 2 brings about contraction of the lagging edge, pulling it forward, and the rearmost focal contact breaks. The cycle then repeats.

Figure 14.33 Locomotion of cells on solid substrates The locomotion of a cultured cell depends on the coordination of a complex series of changes in the cytoskeleton, as well as the making and breaking of focal contacts with the underlying solid substrate. The cell organizes actin fibers at their plus ends in order to extend lamellipodia at its advancing/leading edge and to establish new focal contacts. At the same time, stress fibers, also consisting of actin, are used to contract the lagging/trailing edge of the cell, where focal contacts are being broken. The making and breaking of the focal contacts depend on localized modulation of the affinities of various integrins for extracellular matrix (ECM) components, represented here by the *yellow* substrate. (From B. Alberts et al., *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, 5th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2008.)

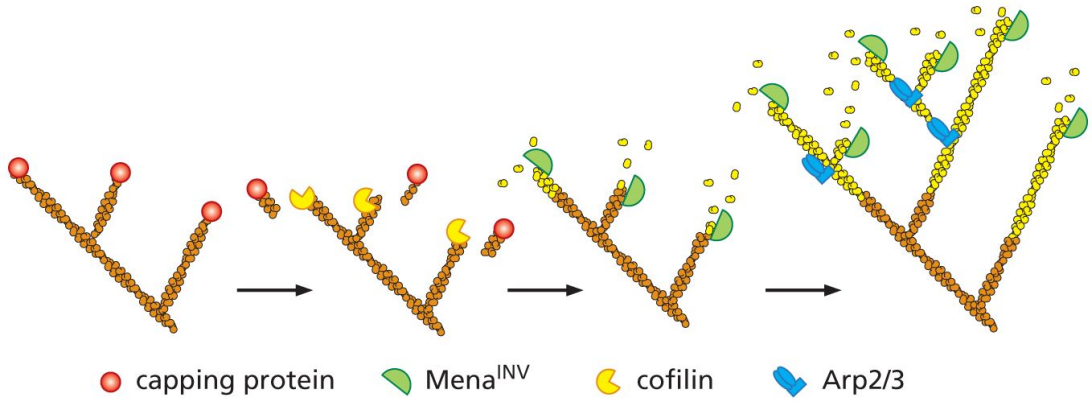
We can summarize our understanding of the motility of cancer cells by relating it to the actions of EMT programs. As was apparent from earlier discussions of epithelial cells, they are largely immotile unless induced to move by processes such as wound healing (see, as an example, Figure 14.15).

To present a highly interesting example of motility mechanisms, among the many mRNAs altered by EMT programs, is the one that encodes Mena, a cytoplasmic protein that plays a key role in regulating the extension of actin fibers (**Figure 14.34**).



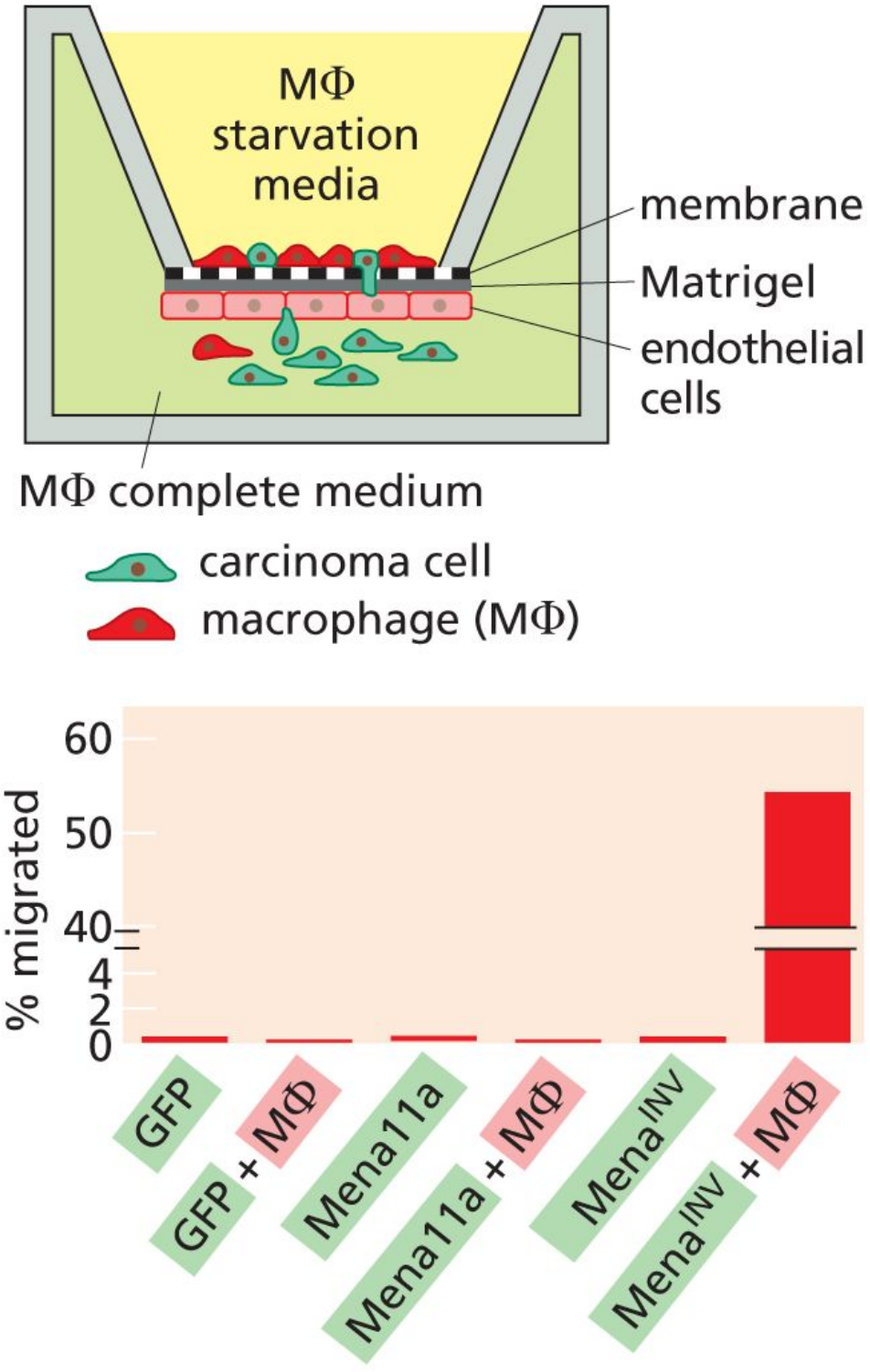
A mapping of the MENA protein. From left to right, the standard domains are E V H1, LERER, PRO, G, FAB, and C C. In epithelial cells, a short 11 a domain may also be present between FAB and C C. Cells that undergo E M T lose the 11 a domain, if present, and gain a double plus and a triple plus slash I N V domain between E V H1 and LERER.

(A)



A diagram of the growth of branching actin fibers. Initially, each terminus of a branch ends in a capping protein. The capped ends are trimmed off by cofilin. The ends then begin to grow after I N V isoform Mena attaches to each. As growth continues, branching is facilitated by A r p 2 slash 3.

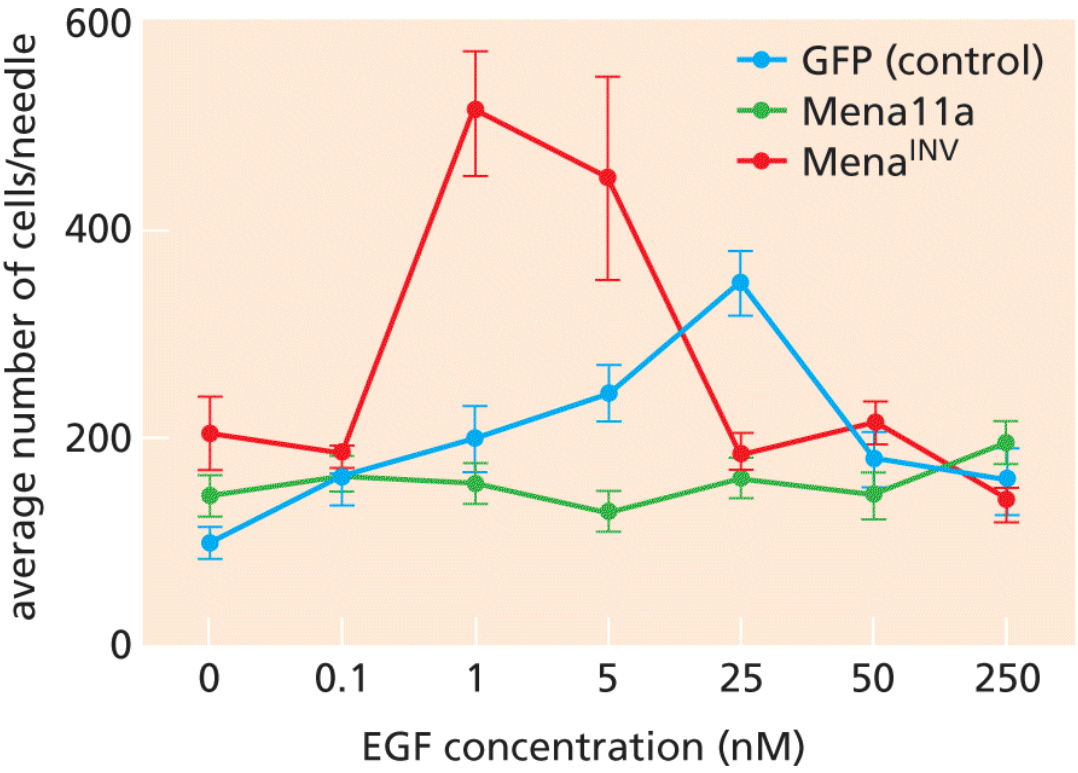
(B)



An experimental setup involving a container with macrophage starvation media in the upper chamber, macrophage complete medium in the lower chamber, and a horizontal wall separating the two chambers. This wall has an upper layer labeled membrane, a middle layer labeled matrigel, and a lower

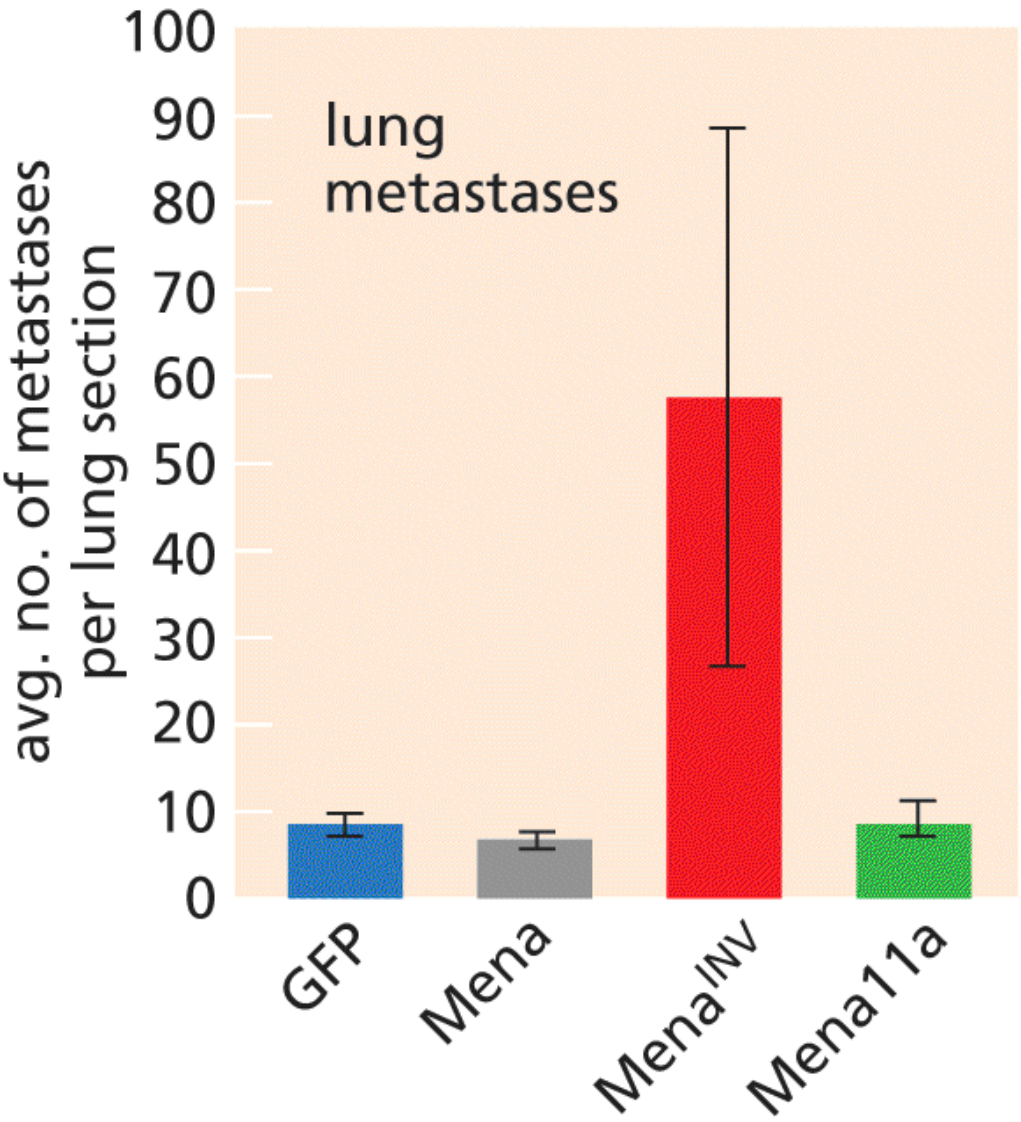
layer consisting of endothelial cells. A mix of carcinoma cells and macrophages rest atop this wall, within the macrophage starvation media. Cells, nearly all carcinoma calls and just a few macrophages, penetrate the wall down into the macrophage complete medium. A bar graph shows that this only happens when the carcinoma cells are incubated with macrophages and forced to express I N V isoform Mena.

(C)



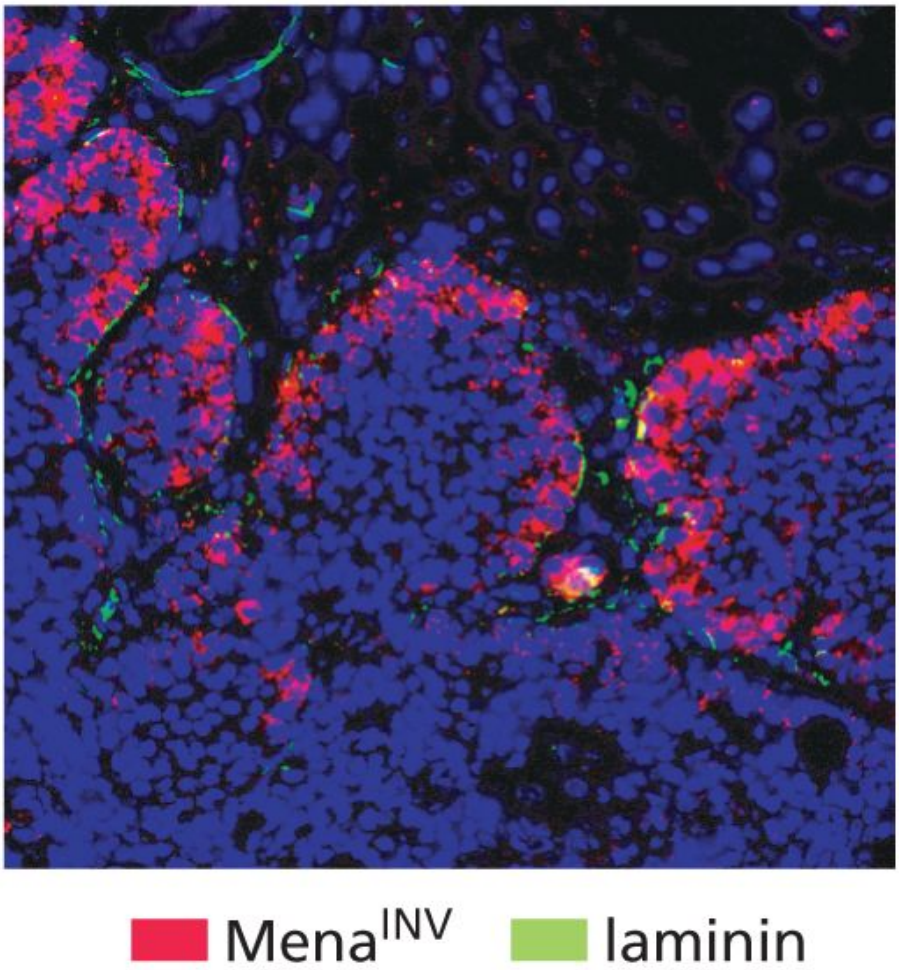
A line graph showing average number of cells per needle as a function of E G F concentration for three different proteins. G F P, the control, has a peak of about 350 cells per needle at 25 nanoMolar. Mena 11a remains fairly flat across all concentrations, just below 200 cells per needle. Mena I N V has a peak of about 500 cells per needle at 1 nanoMolar.

(D)



A bar graph of average number of lung metastases per lung section. For G F P, Mena, and Mena 11a, the average is less than 10. For Mena I N V it is almost 60.

(E)



A fluorescence microscopy image in which a region of densely packed blue nuclei is separated from a region of less densely packed nuclei by an undulating border. This border is edged on the side of the denser nuclei by much pink, indicating the presence of Mena I N V. Flecks of green, signifying laminin, are also visible.

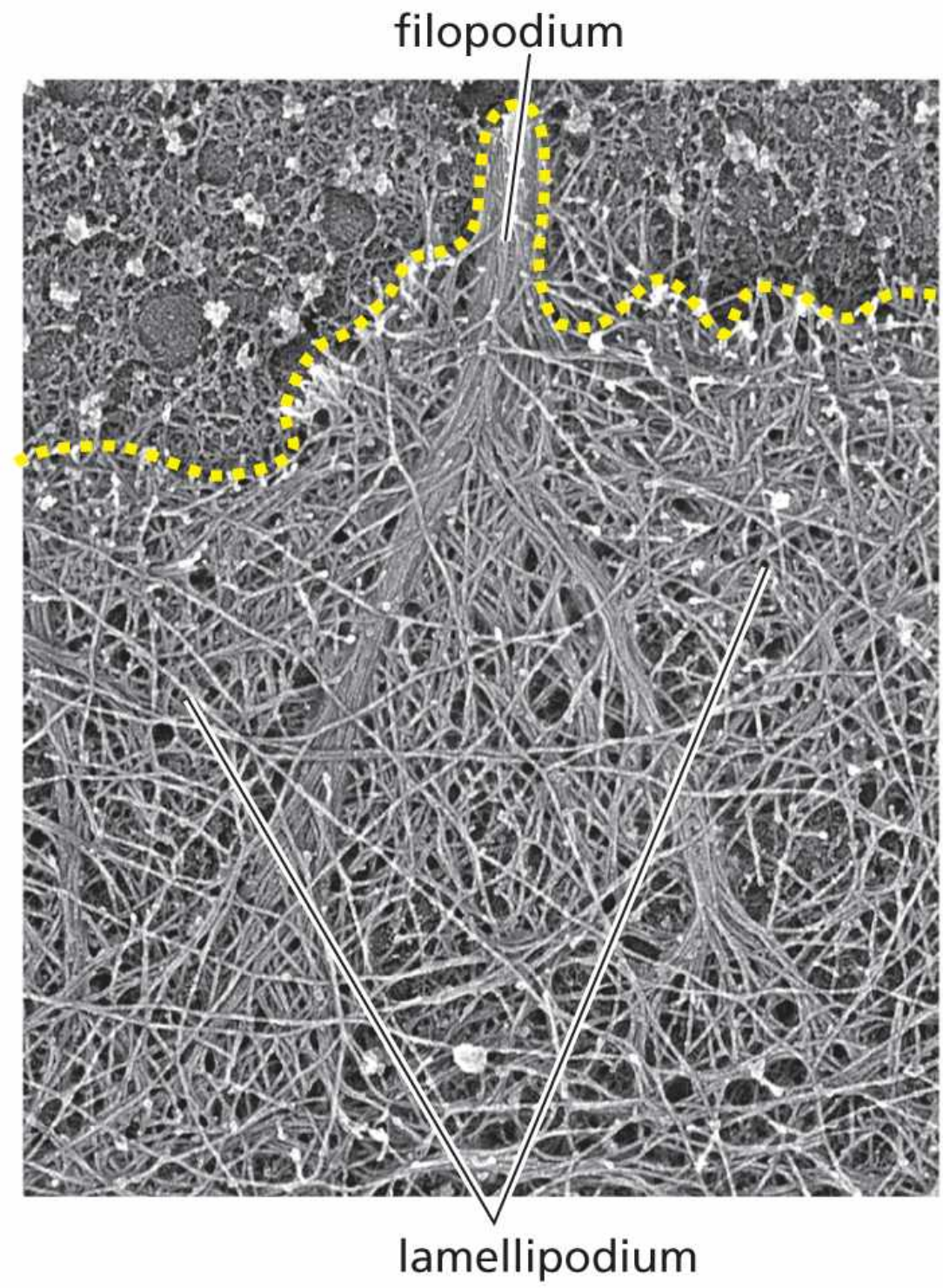
(F)

Figure 14.34 How EMT drives alternative splicing, cell motility, and increased invasiveness When carcinoma cells undergo an EMT, the result is a major shift in the expression of certain splicing factors that govern alternative splicing patterns. For example, several splicing factors that favor the epithelial phenotype are depressed, resulting in the synthesis of alternatively spliced mRNAs that encode proteins fostering a mesenchymal cell phenotype. (A) The usually synthesized version of the Mena protein seen both in normal epithelial cells and in localized carcinomas are composed of multiple domains and are specified by mRNAs encoding all the colored domains with the exception of the

three light brown domains (termed simply “Mena”) or these colored domains plus the 11a segment (“Mena11a”). In contrast, the form of Mena seen in cancer cells that have undergone an EMT and, in addition, are growing *in vivo* within a tumor contains segments encoded by exons INV (also known as +++) and ++ and lacks segment 11a. The Mena domain encoded by the INV exon seems to play an especially important role in carcinoma cell invasiveness. The arrows indicate the changes seen in association with activation of an EMT program. (B) The various forms of Mena promote the elongation of actin fibers that are essential for the growth of both lamellipodia and filopodia; only lamellipodial growth is illustrated here. Normally, a capping protein (*red circle*) blocks the further extension of actin fibers. Cofilin (*yellow*) cleaves the ends of actin fibers, removing the capping protein, and Mena (*green*) then prevents the reattachment of capping protein, permitting further fiber elongation; the INV isoform of Mena is especially effective in promoting this elongation, thereby driving actin fiber elongation and the growth of both lamellipodia and filopodia. Yet another protein—Arp2/3 (*blue*)—enables the branching of actin fibers that is critical for stable lamellipodial extension. (C) As described in Figure 14.22, macrophages interact with breast carcinoma cells via bidirectional signaling that promotes carcinoma cell invasiveness. (As shown in Figure 14.23, such invasiveness was manifested by an increased ability to intravasate.) Invasiveness through an endothelial cell layer can be measured in an *in vitro* assay (*above*), in which carcinoma cells (*green*) are introduced into the upper chamber of a two-chamber “transwell” incubation vessel, either together with or in the absence of macrophages (*red*). These cells are separated from the lower chamber by a perforated membrane (*dotted black line*), below which are a layer of ECM formed by Matrigel (a mixture of basement membrane proteins, *solid gray line*) and a monolayer of endothelial cells (*pink*). Conditioned medium in the bottom chamber attracts the carcinoma cells to migrate from the upper chamber, requiring their invasion through the endothelial cell monolayer. Carcinoma cells were genetically modified by vectors expressing either GFP, Mena11a, or $Mena^{INV}$. As shown *below*, a control expression vector encoding GFP (green fluorescent protein) has no effect on trans-endothelial migration, even in the presence of added macrophages (MΦ). Similarly, no effect was seen when these carcinoma cells were forced to express the Mena11a (epithelial) isoform. Moreover, the presence of both macrophages and the Mena/Mena11a isoforms fails to induce trans-endothelial migration. Only when the carcinoma cells are incubated with macrophages and forced to express the $Mena^{INV}$ isoform does this migration proceed efficiently, resulting in a ∼200-fold increase in invasiveness. (D) Expression of the $Mena^{INV}$ isoform also sensitizes carcinoma cells to the presence of EGF, such as that secreted by nearby macrophages (see Figure 14.22). Insertion of a large-bore EGF-filled needle into a carcinoma can be used to assay invasiveness by counting the number of carcinoma cells that are sensitized to motogenic EGF signals, which respond by migrating

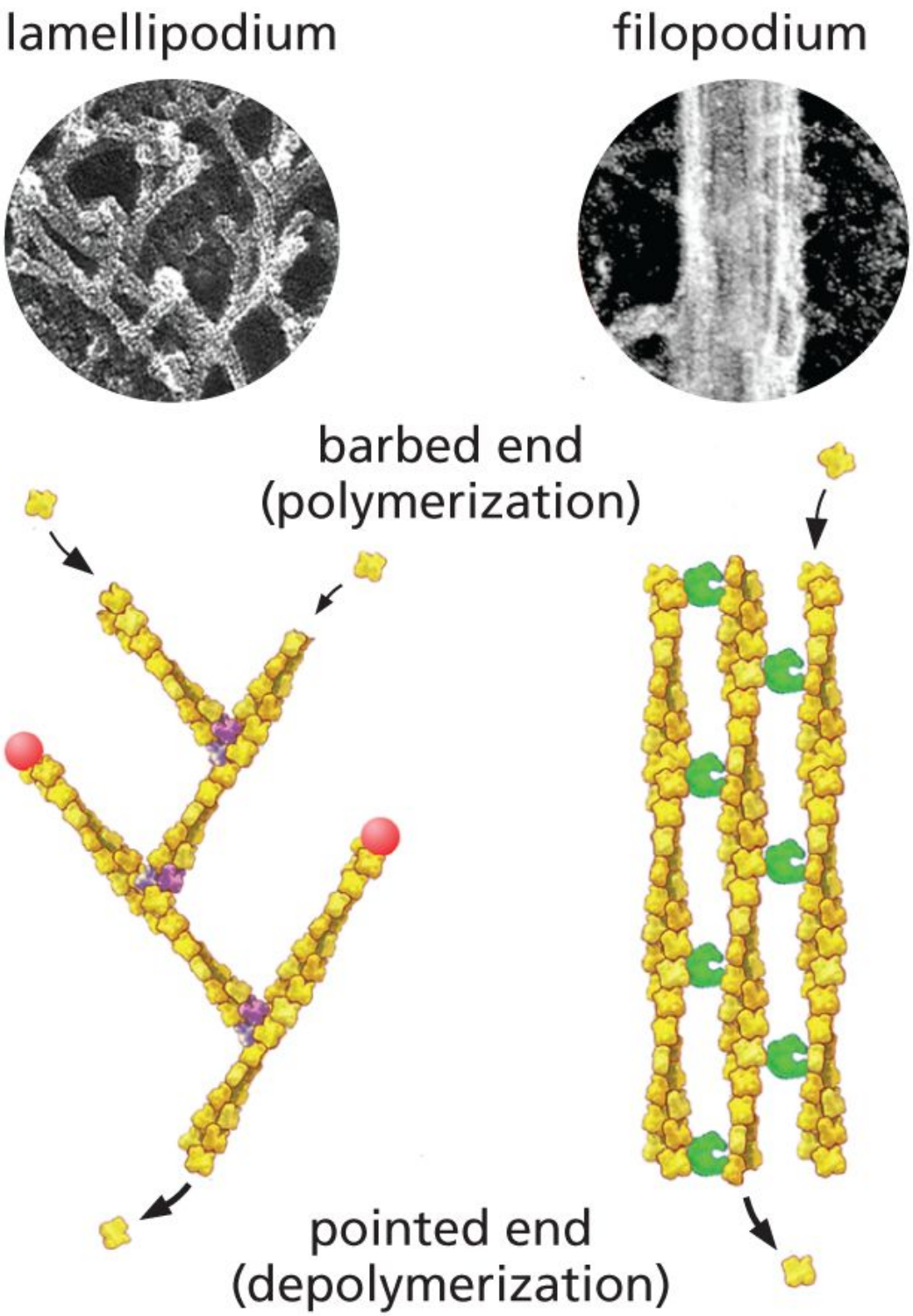
into the bore of the needle. As seen here, carcinoma cells that express the Mena^{INV} isoform are recruited by a 25-fold lower concentration of EGF than is required to recruit carcinoma cells expressing the control GFP plasmid, whereas expression of the Mena11a isoform actually suppresses the control/basal level of recruitment; this indicates that profound changes in sensitization to EGF are elicited by the different Mena isoforms. (E) These various effects on increased invasiveness and EGF responsiveness collaborate to affect the rate of metastasis to the lungs from primary tumors that express either a GFP control vector, a Mena11a vector, or a Mena^{INV} vector. (F) Mena^{INV} can be seen to be widely expressed among cells at the outer, invasive edge of an island of carcinoma cells (*pink*), where the remnants of the former basement membrane, visualized here by an antibody stain specific for laminin (*green*) are barely apparent, most of it having already been degraded by the invasive carcinoma cells. (A, from S. Goswami et al., *Clin. Exp. Metastasis* 26:153–159, 2009. With permission from Springer. B, from U. Philippar et al., *Dev. Cell* 15:813–828, 2008. With permission from Elsevier. C and D, from E.T. Roussos, M. Balsamo, S.K. Alford et al., *J. Cell Sci*. 124:2120–2131, 2011. With permission from The Company of Biologists. E, adapted from U. Philippar, E.T. Roussos, M. Oser et al., *Dev. Cell* 15:813–828, 2008, and E.T. Roussos et al., 2011. F, Courtesy of F. Gertler.)

Carcinoma cells that have been driven through an EMT by the actions of the Twist EMT-TF exhibit changes in the splicing patterns of hundreds of pre-mRNAs, these being products of alternative splicing. Among the altered mRNAs is the one encoding Mena. The normally synthesized *Mena* mRNA is replaced by a new version that specifies a form of the Mena protein (see Figure 14.34A) containing an invasion-associated domain (Mena^{INV}). Mena^{INV}, in turn, affects a variety of cell behaviors associated with invasion including responsiveness to EGF-induced cell motility (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.9**) and trans-endothelial invasiveness. These changes conspire to generate significant increases in metastatic dissemination by the carcinoma cells within primary tumors (see Figure 14.34B–E). Resulting changes in the actin cytoskeleton, mediated in part by filopodia and lamellipodia, then enable the motility that underlies the invasive behavior of carcinoma cells (**Figure 14.35**). Lamellipodia are thin, sheet-like protrusions from the plasma membrane (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.8**) that enable the cytoplasm of a cell to extend forward in the direction of migration while filopodia protrude from lamellipodia and serve to sense guidance cues ahead of migrating cells and to provide attachment to the ECM. The detailed understanding of cell motility proteins garnered from studies like these is increasingly illuminating how an EMT works at the molecular level to power high-grade malignancy.



An electron microscopy image of the leading edge of a moving cell. The lamellipodium appears as a dense mat of fibers. A fingerlike forward protrusion that is especially dense with fibers is labeled filopodium.

(A)



Two sets of images contrast the structure of the fibers in lamellipodium and those in filopodium. As shown in a micrograph and a diagram, lamellipodium

fibers have a kind of zigzag structure, with the branch tips at each zig or zag pointing toward the barbed end, where polymerization is occurring, and away from the pointed end, where depolymerization is happening. Each tip has a pink ball on it. Filopodium fibers, again as shown in a micrograph and a diagram, run parallel. Three strands are shown connected by green linking proteins. Here, too, polymerization is happening at one end and depolymerization at the other.
(B)

Figure 14.35 The actin cytoskeleton and the restructuring of the cell surface
The formation of both lamellipodia and filopodia depends on assembly of specific configurations of the actin cytoskeleton that lies immediately beneath the plasma membrane. (A) Use of platinum replica electron microscopy reveals the configuration of the actin fibers that form both a lamellipodium and a filopodium. All membranes have been removed to reveal the actin cytoskeleton. The dashed line indicates the imputed location of the plasma membrane, which previously separated the cytoplasm (*below*) from the extracellular matrix (*above*). The lamellipodium (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 14.8**) extends broadly across the entire micrograph, and a single filopodium protrudes from the leading edge of the lamellipodium. (B) The actin fibers within a lamellipodium, seen here at higher magnification (*above left*), are extended at their growing "barbed" ends by addition of actin monomers (*yellow balls, top in lower diagram*) and are disassembled at their retreating "pointed" ends by liberation of individual monomers (*below*). The same dynamic operates to enable the extension of filopodia (*right*). Ancillary proteins involved in forming the branched fiber networks of the lamellipodium are depicted in *pink*, whereas those involved in forming the tightly bundled, parallel actin fibers of the filopodium are depicted in *green*. The plasma membrane wraps over and around these structures in a fashion that is poorly understood. (A, from T.M. Svitkina, E.A. Bulanova, O.Y. Chaga et al., *J. Cell Biol*. 160:409–421, 2003. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. B, from D. Vignjevic and G. Montagnac, *Semin. Cancer Biol*. 18:12–22, 2008. With permission from Elsevier.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

motogenic
: Referring to an agent or signal that stimulates cell movement or motility.

filopodium
: Filamentous, spikelike protrusion from the surface of a cell, usually extending from the leading edge of a lamellipodium, that may be used by the cell to explore territory that lies ahead in its path and to forge focal adhesions with the extracellular matrix lying in this path. *See also* **lamellipodium**.

lamellipodium
: (pl., **- ia**) A broad, sheetlike ruffle extending from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space that is typically found at the leading edge of a motile cell.

OceanofPDF.com

14.10 Intravasation and the formation of circulating tumor cells: first steps in perilous journeys

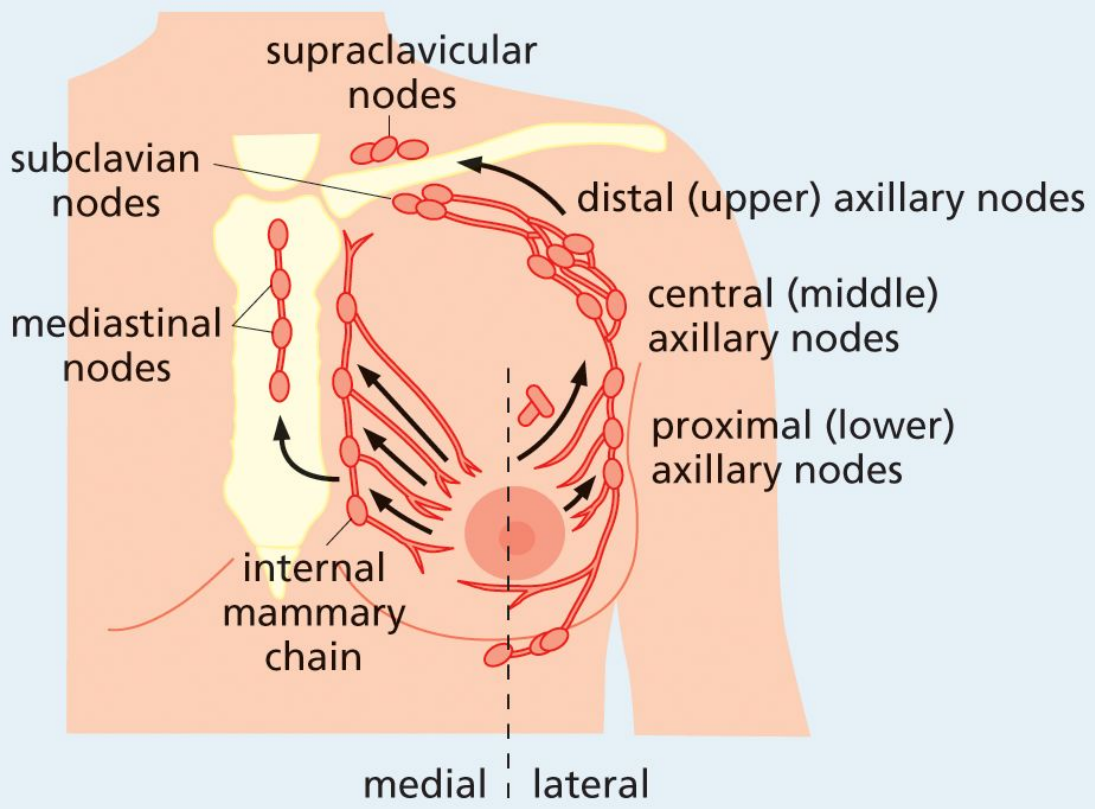
The invasiveness that we read about immediately above allows carcinoma cells to take advantage of the "doorways" in microvessels that we encountered in Figure 14.23. Recall that these openings in the walls of microvessels are formed by three-way collaborations between carcinoma cells, macrophages, and endothelial cells. These structures provide an entryway for carcinoma cells, resulting in the process of intravasation. In addition, and not mentioned previously, as individual carcinoma cells enter the lumina of microvessels, they may also acquire stemness, which may qualify them to serve later as founders of metastatic tissues. Still, these intravasation events are only the beginnings of long and difficult journeys. Similar processes, not yet studied, may also permit intravasation into the lumina of lymphatic vessels. Equally unclear are the cellular mechanisms that allow clumps of neoplastic cells to enter into the circulation. Such clumps, more than single intravasated cells, may actually represent the founders of most metastatic colonies.

The entrance into blood vessels in principle allows the neoplastic cells to spread via the process of hematogenous dissemination. Primary tumor cells may also seek out the alternative route of spreading via the lymphatic vessels that drain tumors and carry cells together with tumor-associated debris into the "draining lymph nodes." As will be discussed in Chapter 15, such lymph nodes are the sites where antigen-presenting cells, notably dendritic cells, present tumor-associated antigenic peptides to T lymphocytes as an initial step in the formation of an adaptive immune response. It is unclear whether the lymph nodes represent dead ends for disseminating cancer cells or, alternatively, staging areas for further spread to distant tissues (**Sidebar 14.4**). One study of the genomes of distant metastases found that two-thirds of cancer cells in these metastases arose from subpopulations of primary tumor cells that were genetically distinct from the subpopulations that spawned the lymph node-associated cancer cells. This might suggest two independent, parallel routes of dissemination from primary tumors to either draining lymph nodes or, alternatively, to blood vessels that lead from primary tumors directly into the venous circulation and ultimately to distant anatomical sites throughout the body.

Sidebar 14.4 The lymphatic system represents an alternative route to metastasis

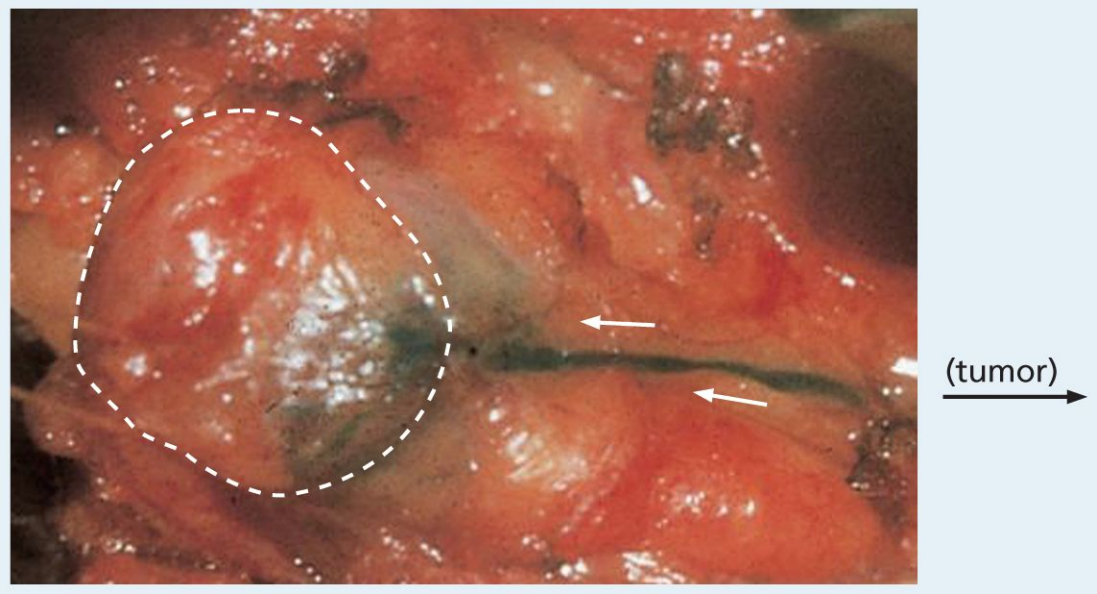
After invasive, motile cells enter into the vessels of blood or lymphatic systems—the process of intravasation—they disperse and, should they survive the rigors of the voyage, eventually settle in tissue sites that lie at some distance from the primary tumor. The hematogenous route of dissemination is clear and well established. Less obvious is the alternative route via the lymphatic system. Virtually all tissues in the body carry networks of lymphatic vessels that are responsible for continuously draining the interstitial fluid that accumulates in the spaces between cells (see Figure 13.8C). Most of these vessels converge on a major abdominal vessel that empties its lymph into the left subclavian vein near the heart and thence into the general circulation. Consequently, cancer cells present in lymphatic vessels may occasionally enter through this cross connection into the general circulation.

Tumor cells and recruited stromal companions may secrete VEGF-C, which drives lymphangiogenesis—the formation of new lymphatic vessels (see Section 13.6). Moreover, experimental tumors forced to secrete increased levels of VEGF-C will seed larger numbers of metastatic cells in nearby draining lymph nodes—the lymph nodes associated with the lymphatic ducts that drain the tissue in which the tumor lies (**Figure 14.36**). However, detailed histological analyses of spontaneously arising solid tumors indicate that functional lymphatic vessels are rarely found throughout tumor masses. Instead, they largely occupy a zone at the periphery of solid tumors. Those few lymphatic vessels detected in the central regions of tumors are usually collapsed (see Figure 13.34). As discussed in the previous chapter, it seems that the expanding masses of cancer cells within a tumor press on these vessels; because the lymphatic ducts have little internal hydrostatic pressure, they cannot resist these forces and collapse.



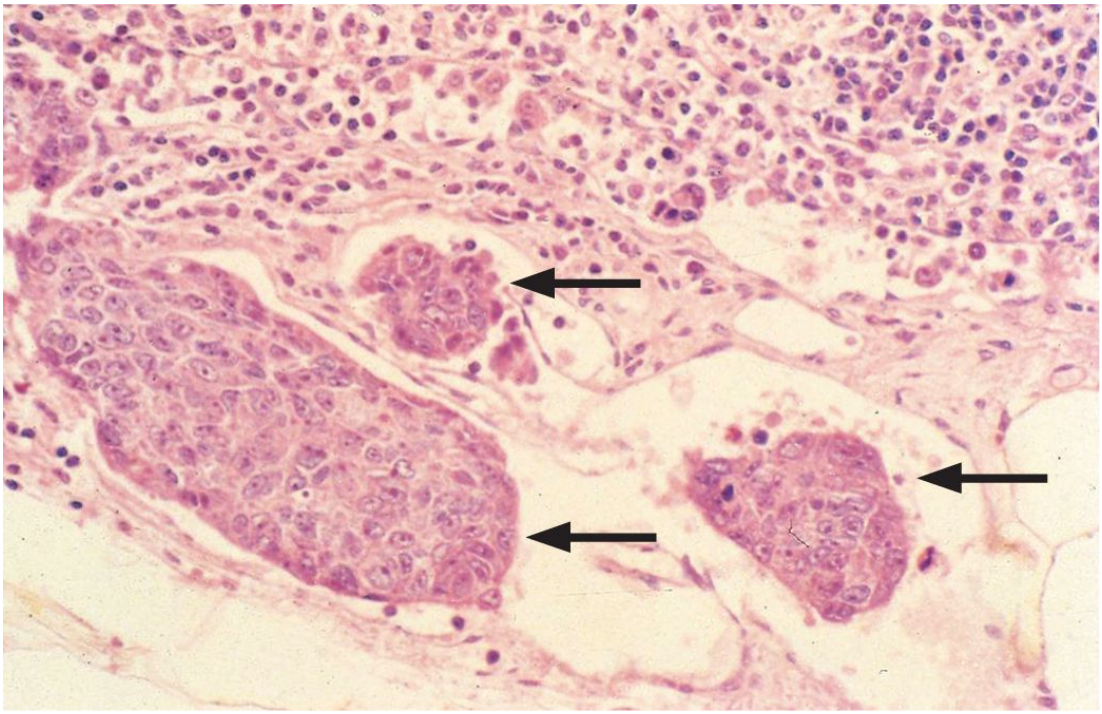
A diagram of the lymph nodes associated with the human female breast. These include three sets of nodes along the breast's outer edge, near the armpit. From top to bottom, they are the distal or upper, central or middle, and proximal or lower axillary nodes. These are connected by a network of lymph vessels through which lymph moves upward, away from the breast. Other nodes include the inner mammary chain, which runs vertically along the inner edge of the breast, near the sternum. These, too, are connected to lymph vessels that lead away from the breast. Finally, there are the mediastinal nodes down the center of the sternum, and the subclavian and supraclavian nodes, which lie, respectively, just below and just above the collarbone.

(A)



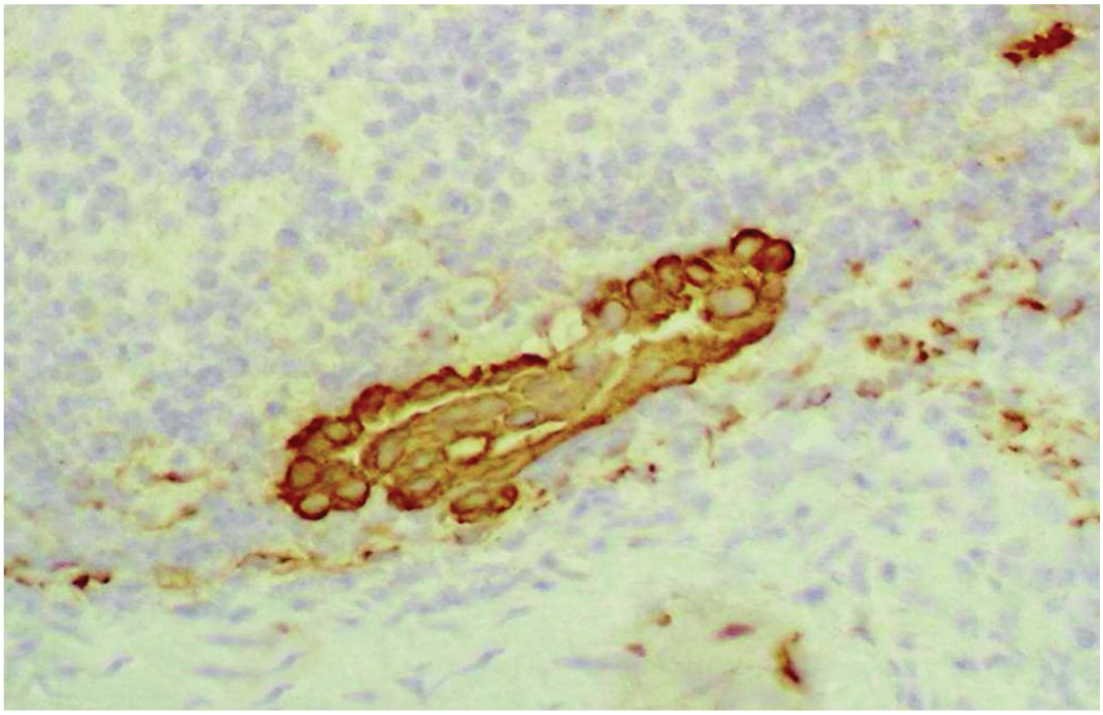
A color photograph of a tumor. A thickened mass of tissue is outline by a white dashed line. A dark blue line leads horizontally toward from the mass from the right.

(B)



A histology stain image showing three dark pink lumps, indicated by arrows, surrounded by paler tissue. Higher up in the image is an area of cells with

many small but distinctly visible nuclei.
(C)



A color image showing a small, elongated patch of brown cells, surrounded by tissue that is translucent and white with barely visible pale blue-purple nuclei.

(D)

Figure 14.36 Draining lymph nodes of the mammary gland and its tumors (A) The lymphatic ducts (*red*) and the lymph nodes draining the breast (swellings along ducts) are initial sites of metastatic spread, carcinoma cells being carried there by the flow of lymph (*arrows*) leaving various sectors of the breast. The discovery of carcinoma cells in these lymph nodes, which is observed in more than 30% of human breast carcinoma patients at the time of initial diagnosis, suggests the possibility of deposits of metastatic cells in more distant sites in the body, particularly if large numbers of draining nodes are found to carry breast cancer cells. (B) The lymph node that serves as the sentinel node of a tumor can usually be identified among all of the lymph nodes draining the breast by injecting a blue dye into the tumor (outside photographic field to right) and following the trail of the dye via the lymphatic duct (*arrows*) to the draining node (outlined in dashed line, *left*). (C) Hematoxylin–eosin (H&E) staining of a section of an axillary lymph node reveals that three micrometastases (*arrows*) arising from a primary breast tumor have grown in the space between the capsule surrounding this node (not seen, *below*) and the mass of lymphocytes within the node (small

cells, dark nuclei, *above*), displacing the latter upward. (D) Immunohistochemistry using an antibody specific for cytokeratins (*brown*) reveals this small micrometastasis in a sentinel node. This procedure is far more sensitive than H&E staining (panel C) in detecting micrometastases, because the mesenchymal cells of the lymph node do not express cytokeratin, which is made by epithelial cells and thus by most carcinoma cells. (A–C, from A.T. Skarin, *Atlas of Diagnostic Oncology*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science Ltd., 2010. With permission from Elsevier. D, from J.P. Leikola, T.S. Toivonen, L.A. Krogerus et al., *Cancer* 104:14–19, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

The absence of functional lymphatic vessels within tumor masses must influence the paths used by metastasizing cancer cells to leave the primary tumor. Without ready access to lymph ducts, most motile cancer cells are likely forced to emigrate via the far more numerous functional capillaries, which are threaded throughout the tumor mass. In spite of such limited access, some cancer cells do indeed succeed in entering the lymphatic system. In the specific case of mammary carcinomas, some metastasizing cancer cells enter into the lymphatic vessels that directly drain the mammary gland and collect in the nearby downstream lymph nodes (see Figure 14.36A). These wandering carcinoma cells are readily detected because their appearance differs so strongly from the surrounding lymphoid cells (see Figure 14.36C) and they express epithelial proteins, such as cytokeratins, that are otherwise absent from lymphatic tissues (Figure 14.36D). Histological examination of draining lymph nodes is routinely used to determine whether a primary breast cancer has begun to dispatch metastatic pioneer cells to distant sites in the body.

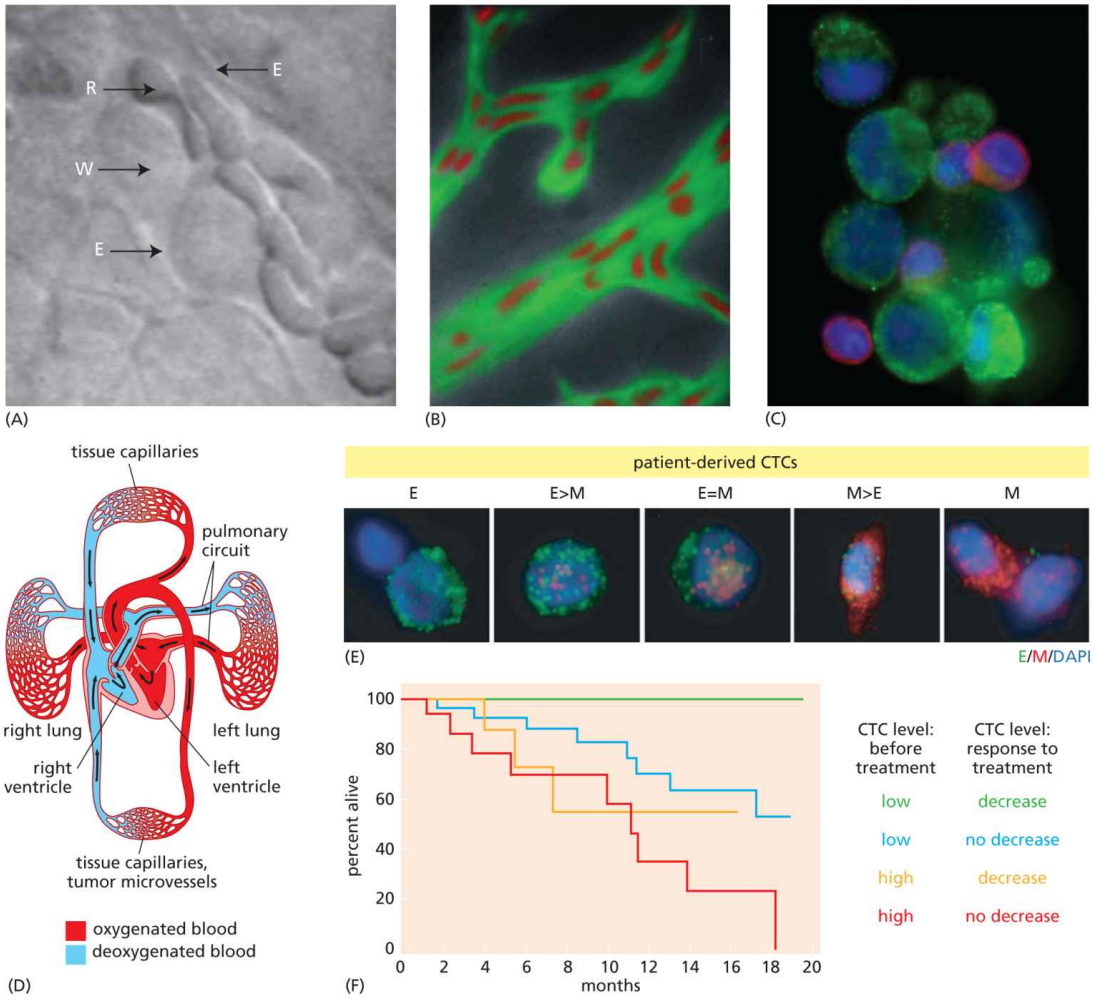
The fact that lymph nodes operate as collection points for subcellular debris and cells shed by tissues explains why draining nodes are routinely examined to determine whether cancer cells have been released by primary tumors growing in those tissues (for example, the mammary gland; see Figure 14.36A and B). As examples, upon initial diagnosis, about one-third of breast, colorectal, cervical, and oral carcinoma patients have disseminated cancer cells in the lymph nodes near their primary tumors (see Figure 14.36C and D).

These draining lymph nodes serve as proverbial “canaries in the mine,” by providing early warning of the presence of metastasizing cells in the body. Among these regional lymph nodes, the single node that directly drains the primary tumor growing in the breast is often termed the “sentinel” node (see Figure 14.36B). Patients with small numbers of affected nodes often have only localized spread of the breast cancer and may never develop metastatic disease, whereas those with many affected nodes are far more likely to harbor other deposits of metastatic cells in distant sites in the body. For example, in one study, 90% of long-term survivors of a variety of carcinomas had one, two, or occasionally three “positive” lymph nodes at diagnosis. Conversely, fewer than

5% of patients with more than five positive lymph nodes when their primary tumors were removed enjoyed long-term, disease-free survival. Accordingly, in multiple types of primary tumors, cancer cell–positive lymph nodes represent "surrogate markers" of metastasis by providing useful diagnostic and prognostic data without being directly involved in the processes that lead to widespread cancer cell dissemination and metastatic disease.

Once cancer cells intravasate into the general circulation, either directly by entering the microvessels that empty into the venous circulation or indirectly following time spent in the lymphatic system, such cells are considered circulating tumor cells (CTCs). The long-range migrations through the general circulation are fraught with great danger for the CTCs. Like normal cells, the wanderers may continue to depend on anchorage to solid substrates; without such attachment, the migrating cells may die rapidly from anoikis, the form of apoptosis that is triggered by detachment of a cell from a solid substrate such as an extracellular matrix (see Section 9.13). Also, like their forebears in the primary tumor, these pioneers may depend on various types of stromal support, which will usually be lacking the moment they leave the primary tumor mass. Recall that the stroma can benefit carcinoma cells in multiple ways by supplying both mitogenic and trophic (survival) factors.

The blood, in particular, represents an actively hostile environment for disseminating cancer cells (**Figure 14.37**). Hydrodynamic shear forces in the circulation, which are often substantial in smaller vessels, may tear apart the wandering cancer cells. Some experimental models of metastasis in the mouse provide clear indication that the survival of metastasizing cancer cells in the general circulation is greatly enhanced if they can attract an entourage of blood platelets to escort them through the rapids into safe pools within tissues (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.5**). These tightly adhered passengers form a protective cloak that reduces the likelihood that the CTCs will be ambushed by natural killer (NK) lymphocytes lying in wait in the circulation (to be described in Chapter 15). In addition, after adhering to carcinoma cells, platelets may release a variety of growth factors that are usually instrumental in supporting wound repair, among them mitogenic and trophic signals. Some of the platelet-secreted factors may activate or sustain EMT programs in the adhered carcinoma cells, thereby rendering them more resistant to various forms of cell death.



A six-part figure pertaining to the Passage of tumor cells through the body's circulatory system. Part A is a grayscale micrograph showing white and red blood cells, labeled R and W, squeezing their way through a capillary whose walls are labeled with Ease. Part B is a fluorescence microscopy image of small blood vessels, appearing in green, and red blood cells passing through them. Part C is a fluorescence microscopy image of a clump of round, multi-colored cells. The cells have blue nuclei. Most of the cytoplasms are green, but two of the smaller cells have red cytoplasms. Part D is a schematic of the circulatory system, with the heart in the middle and blood circulating through the lungs and the upper and lower extremities. Red, oxygenated blood flows from the lungs through the heart's left ventricle into the extremities, deoxygenates, and turns blue as it passes through tissue capillaries and tumor microvessels. It then flows back to the heart, through the right ventricle, and from there to the lungs to be re-oxygenated. Part E is a series of fluorescence microscopy images of patient-derived circulating tumor cells. In the first image, labeled E, only green dots are visible around the blue nucleus. In the second image, labeled E greater than M, a few red dots have

appeared. In the third image, labeled E equals M, about half the dots are red. In the fourth image, labeled M greater than E, there are just a few green dots. In the final image, labeled M, all the dots are red. Part F is a line graph that gives percent alive as a function of time for four different groups of patients. Of patients whose C T C levels were low to begin with and decreased in response to treatment, 100 percent remained alive out to 20 months. Of patients whose C T C levels were low to begin with but did not decrease in response to treatment, about 50 percent remained alive out to 20 months. Of patients whose C T C levels were high to begin with but decreased in response to treatment, about 55 percent remained alive after 8 months, and all of those remained alive after 16 months. Of patients whose C T C levels were high to begin with and did not decrease in response to treatment, none survived past 18 months.

Figure 14.37 Passage of tumor cells through the circulation Cancer cells moving through the circulation are found amid densely packed cells of hematopoietic origin. (A) Intra-vital microscopy reveals the two endothelial walls of a capillary (E), erythrocytes (R), and some leukocytes (W). The small size (∼7 μm diameter) and deformability of the erythrocytes and leukocytes allow them to pass through capillaries without becoming trapped. (B) The vessels in this intra-vital fluorescence micrograph are slightly larger than capillaries. The plasma has been stained with a *green* dye, and the erythrocytes have been colorized *red*. The high deformability of these red blood cells is apparent. Most cancer cells have more than twice the diameter of erythrocytes and are not deformable, and they are less able to negotiate narrow passages, such as those created by the lumina of capillaries. (C) The difficulties of negotiating passage through the narrow microvessels of various tissues are compounded by the fact that intravasated cancer cells often attract clouds of platelets around them (see Supplementary Sidebar 14.5) and the fact that they are often found in the circulation as multicellular aggregates, as is seen in this cluster of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) isolated from the circulation of a patient with metastatic prostate cancer. Cells were immunostained with an antibody reactive with the prostate-specific membrane antigen (*green)* and another reactive with the CD45 displayed by many types of hematopoietic cells (*red*). DNA was stained *blue* with DAPI. (D) This diagram of the mammalian circulation indicates that venous blood (*blue*) leaving a tissue (and thus cancer cells that have escaped from a primary tumor and intravasated, *below*) must first pass through the right ventricle of the heart and thence through the lungs before it enters the left ventricle and is pumped into the general arterial circulation. Because passage through the pulmonary circulation of the lung requires passage through its capillaries, many metastasizing cells entering into the venous circulation are rapidly trapped in the pulmonary capillary beds. (E) Circulating tumor cells present in the blood of breast cancer patients were analyzed for their expression of epithelial (E, *green*) and mesenchymal (M, *red*) RNAs by *in situ* hybridization. As is apparent, cells expressing various proportions

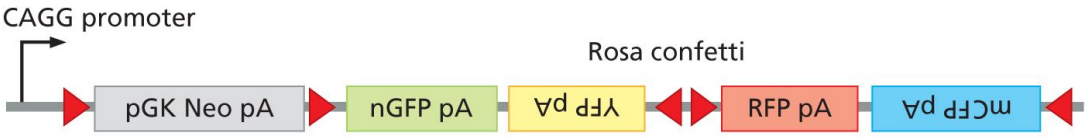
of E and M marker-expressing CTCs were present in the blood of various patients. Not shown is the fact that as tumor progression proceeded in individual patients, the proportions of M-marker-expressing cells increased in the CTCs. (F) While a measurement of the levels of CTCs in a patient relative to other patients often does not provide clinically useful information. Instead, it is useful to monitor individual patients longitudinally, that is at various time points over the course of treatment. As is seen here, the responses of individual patients to therapy can be gauged by measuring levels of CTCs following therapy relative to their initial levels of CTCs. (A and B, from I.C. MacDonald, A.C. Groom and A.F Chambers, *BioEssays* 24:885–893, 2002. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C, from S.L. Stott, C.H. Hsu, D.I. Tsurkov et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 107:18392–18397, 2010. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. E, from M. Yu, A. Bardia, B.S. Wittner et al., *Science* 339:580–584, 2013. With permission from AAAS. F, from T.T. Kwan, A. Bardia, L.M. Spring et al., *Cancer Discov*. 8:1286–1299, 2018. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

The concentrations of CTCs in the blood of patients under treatment often represent powerful prognostic markers (Figure 14.37F). In the analyses illustrated in this figure, individual patients were monitored longitudinally, that is, at different times during the course of their treatment and diagnosis. In the analyses shown, the responses of CTC concentrations to patients' therapy were monitored. As is clear, patients who began treatment with low CTC concentrations that decreased following treatment fared well, showing no mortality during the 20 months of clinical observation. Conversely, patients who began treatment with high CTC concentrations that failed to respond to treatment by decreasing showed a high level of mortality, all dying by the end of the observation period. The monitoring of CTC concentrations rather than direct observations of tumor masses is often termed a form of liquid biopsy. Importantly, longitudinal observations of CTC concentrations in individual patients often provide highly useful prognostic information, as revealed by Figure 14.37F. However, different patients harboring tumors of comparable sizes and degrees of progression may often exhibit very different levels of CTCs, indicating the limitations of using liquid biopsies to assess the sizes of their primary tumors and the numbers of derived metastases.

CTCs may either be present in the blood of cancer patients as single cells or as multicellular clumps, sometimes termed microemboli (see Figure 14.37C), their migration being termed collective metastasis. As mentioned earlier, accumulating evidence indicates that the CTC clumps are actually more effective than individual CTCs in founding metastatic colonies in distant organ sites. Their multicellularity may confer several benefits. Cells buried within these clumps may be shielded from attacks by NK cells. Because of the larger diameter of these clumps, they are likely to be physically trapped in small-bore microvessels far more quickly than individual CTCs

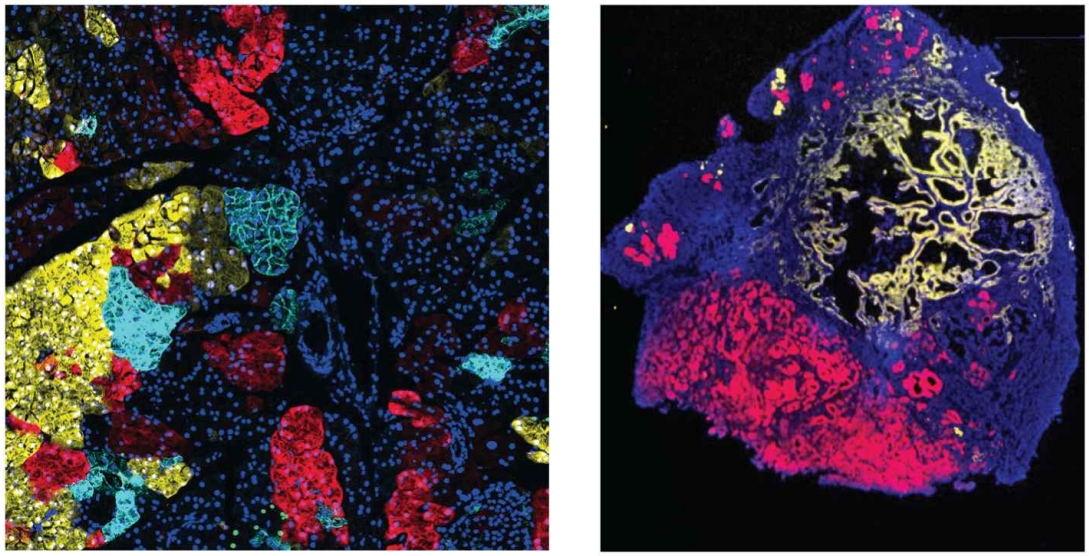
traveling on their own; this short lifetime in the general circulation may, on its own, confer significant benefit, allowing these cells to quickly find refuge away from the raging torrents of the general circulation.

Related molecular evidence indicates that many metastases can be initiated by multicellular aggregates. This insight comes from labeling the individual cancer cells within primary tumors growing in a mouse with a diversity of unique DNA markers, sometimes termed barcodes, that have been stably introduced into their genomes. In individual metastases spawned by these primary tumors, one finds multiple barcodes, indicating that the descendants of multiple distinct cells within a primary tumor served as cofounders of each metastatic colony (**Figure 14.38**). Such evidence suggests that these polyclonal metastases were initiated by multicellular, genetically heterogeneous cell clumps. (Additional evidence indicates that these metastases are unlikely to arise from individual disseminated tumor cells (DTCs) that converged independently of one another on the site of dissemination.) Moreover, in these barcode experiments, at least 80% of the metastases gave evidence of oligoclonality, that is, at least two distinct clonal subpopulations in a given metastatic colony. Hence, many metastases represent oligoclonal growths rather than the monoclonal growths that would be expected if they traced their origins to single founder cells.



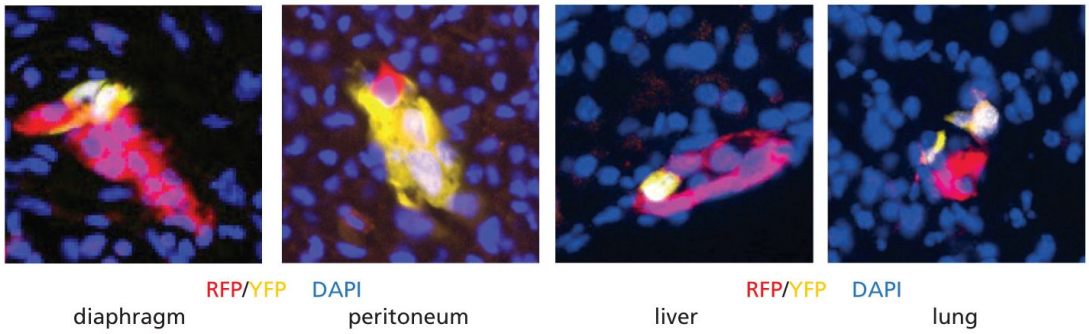
A map of a vector used to generate expression of one of four randomly activated fluorescent marker proteins. The map begins on the left with C A G G promoter. Markers from left to right are p G K Neo, n G F P, Y F P upside down, R F P, and m C F P upside down.

(A)



A comparison of a fluorescence microscopy image of normal pancreatic tissue with G F P, R F P, and Y F P to an image of a primary tumor in which there is no G F P. Both images contain dark blue nuclei alongside the protein markers.

(B)



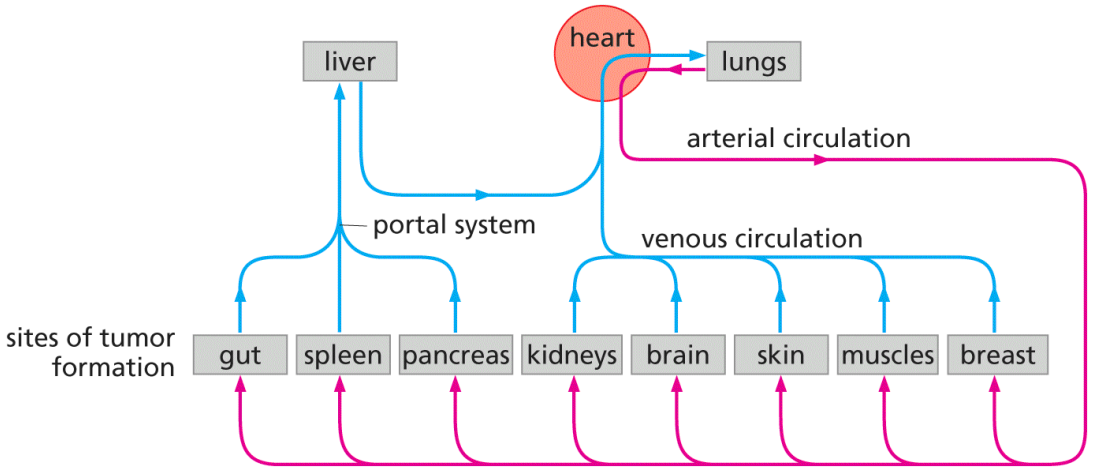
A series of four fluorescence microscopy images, one each from the diaphragm, peritoneum, liver, and lung. Each contains R F P and Y F P, along with the dark blue D A P I in nuclei.

(C)

Figure 14.38 Genetic barcodes reveal the multicellular origins of many metastases An important question concerns the origins of metastatic colonies, specifically whether they arise from single, individual founder cells or multiple founders, yielding monoclonal or polyclonal metastases. A powerful strategy to demonstrate the polyclonal origins of metastases derives from the strategy of

"confetti labeling," in which one of a series of fluorescent proteins of different colors are expressed in a random fashion in the individual cells of a primary tumor and in the lineal descendants of each of these initially labeled cells. (A) As seen in this map of a vector used to generate expression of one of four randomly activated fluorescent marker proteins, the reading frames of all four proteins are randomly expressed in various alternative configurations. Upon activation of the Cre-Lox recombinase, two successive excisions and reorientations occur, resulting in the expression of only one of the four fluorescent proteins and being expressed within a cell. (B) The confetti labeling procedure was employed to label the cells within a mouse model of primary pancreatic cancer, yielding sectors that express the four alternative fluorescent protein markers. (C) Liver metastases from these pancreatic primary tumors were analyzed for their marker protein expression, revealing the oligoclonality of these metastases. (A, from R. Maddipati and B.Z. Stanger, *Cancer Discov.* 5:1086–1097, 2015. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B and C, courtesy of Ben Stanger and Ravi Maddipati.)

The CTCs have been the objects of intensive investigation in recent years. They presumably are representative of the cancer cells moving from primary tumors to sites of metastasis formation. But this notion is at best an inference, since only a tiny proportion of CTCs cells ever succeed in founding new metastatic colonies, explaining why individual CTCs have rarely, if ever, been viewed in the act of extravasating and thereafter spawning macroscopic metastases. In one analysis, the CTCs were measured in the portal circulation (**Figure 14.39**) of 18 patients bearing pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas. These measurements yielded an average of ~15 CTCs/ml. of portal blood, which could yield in aggregate 3×10^7 carcinoma cells entering from a pancreatic tumor into a patient's liver each day. However, the number of pancreatic metastases formed after several months' time (including the extended time prior to diagnosis) could be numbered on the fingers of one hand.



A schematic of the venous circulation and sites of trapping of circulating tumor cells. Arterial circulation routes blood oxygenated by the lungs from the heart to the body's many organs, which are sites of tumor formation: the gut, spleen, pancreas, kidneys, brain, skin, muscles and breast. There the blood is deoxygenated. Venous circulation then routes blood from the kidneys, brain, skin, muscles and breast back to the heart. Blood from the gut, spleen and pancreas is routed through the portal system into the liver, from where it then also travels to the heart. From the heart, all blood flows to the lungs to be reoxygenated.

Figure 14.39 The venous circulation and sites of trapping of CTCs The layout of the general circulation dictates that cancer cells disseminating from most primary tumor sites via the venous circulation (*blue lines*) will soon be trapped, at least transiently, in the microvessels within the lungs. However, the veins draining the gut, pancreas, and spleen are organized differently, in that their venous blood empties directly into the liver via the hepatic portal circulation before being dispatched thereafter to the heart and lungs. Consequently, vast numbers of metastasizing colorectal carcinoma and pancreatic adenocarcinoma cells are trapped in the microvessels of the liver within seconds of leaving the colon and pancreas. (As drawn, this diagram omits mention of the liver as a site of primary tumor formation.) (Adapted from I.C. MacDonald, G.C. Groom and A.F. Chambers, *BioEssays* 24:885–893, 2002.)

Another calculation revealed that even after arriving in the bone marrow, only one in a thousand disseminated breast cancer cells (DTCs) ever forms a micrometastasis, and only a single macroscopic metastasis arises from a thousand previously formed micrometastases. These calculations, which by necessity are only rough estimates, illustrate the phenomenon of metastatic inefficiency, that is, the profound discordance between the numbers of metastasizing cells released by primary tumors and the eventual outgrowth of clinically detectable metastases.

A variety of techniques are being developed to measure the concentrations of CTCs in the circulation of cancer patients (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.10**). These numbers may prove useful in gauging the efficacy of therapies directed against a primary tumor within a single patient; thus, a decrease in viable cells in the primary tumor following therapy will presumably be accompanied by a corresponding decrease in the release of such cells into the general circulation and a resulting decline in the number of CTCs. Techniques like these may also be used to determine an elusive number—the lifetime of CTCs in the general circulation (**Sidebar 14.5**).

Sidebar 14.5 Lifetimes of CTCs in the population may vary dramatically

Multiple factors contribute to the short lifetime of CTCs in the circulation; in a mouse, most of these cells spend less than 2 minutes in the circulation. Unlike red and white blood cells, the cells released by solid tumors are ill-suited to negotiate the passage through microvessels in various tissues (see Figure 14.37A–C). Thus, the internal diameters of most capillaries—3 to 8 μm—are far too small to accommodate the >20 μm diameter of individual cancer cells. Erythrocytes, for example, are only about 7 μm in diameter and are easily deformed, facilitating their passage through capillaries. Most cancer cells, in contrast, are not especially deformable. [Moreover, if cancer cells in the blood are coated with platelets (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.5**), their effective physical diameters become even larger, causing them to be trapped in vessels larger than capillaries, such as the small arteries known as arterioles.] These factors dictate that within seconds of entering into the venous circulation many cancer cells will encounter the capillary beds of the lungs (see Figure 14.37D), in which they lodge.

Indeed, the lifetimes of CTCs as truly free-floating cells in the circulation may be so short that CTCs cannot respond via anoikis (see Section 9.13) to their loss of anchorage to solid substrates and the absence of stromal support. If so, this particular type of attrition sustained while these cells are swimming through the circulation may not play a major role in limiting their lifetime. Some measurements have been made by examining the attrition rate of carcinoma cells in the mouse by injecting such cells into the venous circulation via the tail vein, that is, using the procedure termed "experimental metastasis." Once in the circulation, the great majority of such cells are rapidly trapped in the microvasculature of the lungs (see Figures 14.37D and 14.39). As an example, in one experiment, within 10 minutes of injection into the venous circulation of a mouse more than 98% of the cells were already cleared out of the circulation; the corresponding half-life in humans is longer (∼1–2 hours), because the human systemic circulation time is ∼1 minute compared with the ∼4 seconds within a mouse. Although convenient, such experiments may represent artifacts of experimentation because other work utilizing conjoined mice suggests that CTCs spend several minutes in the circulation before disappearing. These latter experiments would seem to more closely represent the behavior of CTCs released by primary tumors, since they gauge the lifetimes of cell released by autochthonous primary tumors, that is, tumors initiated and growing within the hosts in which these measurements are made.

Importantly, the dynamics of physical trapping in the narrow-bore microvessels of many tissues hold important implications for measuring the numbers of the multicellular clumps of cells seen in Figure 14.37C and studied genetically in Figure 14.38. Because of their far larger effective diameters, these microemboli are likely to be trapped far more quickly in the microvasculature of various tissues and accordingly to exhibit far shorter half-lives in the circulation. This, in turn, will proportionately

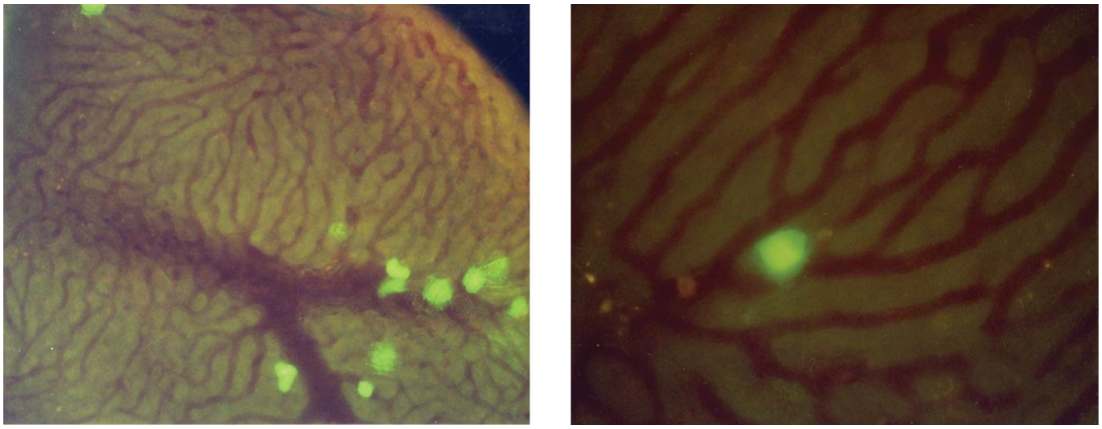
reduce their steady-state concentrations in the general circulation, leading to underestimates of the rates at which these clumps are actually formed and released into the circulation.

Once trapped within the lungs, some metastasizing cancer cells may attempt to found metastases there. However, the metastases spawned by many types of human tumors are often found elsewhere throughout the body, indicating that cancer cells usually succeed in escaping from initial trapping in the lungs and travel further to other sites in the body. How they do so is unclear. In some experiments, cancer cells trapped in capillaries have been observed to pinch off large amounts of cytoplasm, leaving behind cells that, although greatly reduced in size, seem to be viable; once they have undergone this amputation, such slenderized cells may succeed in negotiating passage through the narrow straits of the lung capillaries. A more plausible explanation is that wandering cancer cells may avoid being trapped altogether: in many organs, including the lungs, metastasizing cells can bypass capillaries by traveling through arterial–venous shunts, which form large-bore, direct connections between the two halves of the circulatory system. Finally, it is worthwhile noting that multicellular CTC clumps have been observed to work their way through microvessels whose luminal diameter is far smaller than the dimensions of these clumps.

Having snaked their way through the lungs and arrived in the general arterial circulation, roaming cancer cells, either as individual cells or in clumps, can then scatter to all tissues in the body. Some experiments have suggested that cancer cells use specific cell surface receptors to initially adhere to the luminal walls of arterioles and capillaries in certain tissue sites. However, far more extensive evidence indicates that simple physical trapping within small vessels throughout the body, as discussed above in the context of the lungs, provides most wandering cancer cells with their first solid foothold within a tissue.

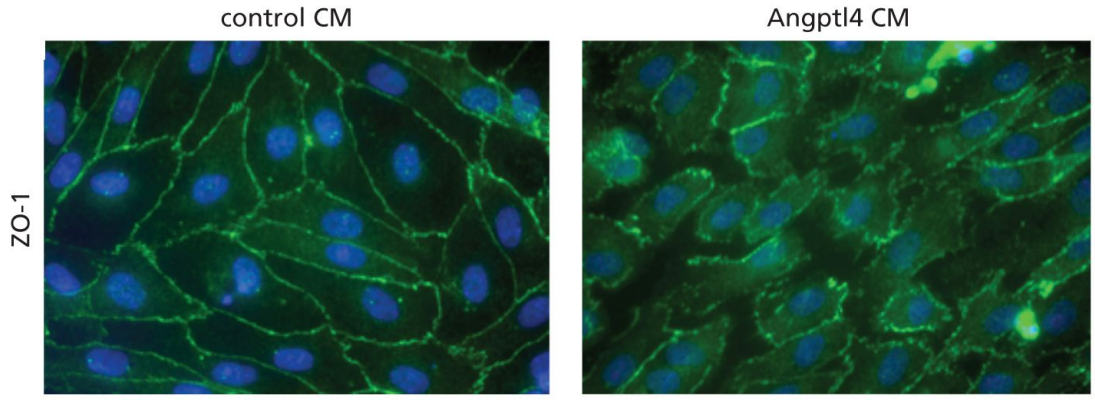
Once lodged in the blood vessels of various tissues, cancer cells must escape from the lumina of these vessels and penetrate into the surrounding tissue—the step termed extravasation (**Figure 14.40**). The process of extravasation depends on complex interactions between cancer cells and the walls of the vessels in which they have become trapped. Cancer cells can use several alternative strategies to extravasate. They may proceed immediately to elbow their way through the vessel wall. Alternatively, and possibly more typical, their ability to extravasate may depend on their secretion of angiopoietin-like protein-4 (Angptl4), which is released by carcinoma cells that are experiencing TGF-β signaling. This secreted factor stimulates the retraction of endothelial cells from one another, leaving gaps in the vessel walls as the initial step of extravasation (Figure 14.40B). The loosening of endothelial tight junctions may also be facilitated by recruited myeloid cells, notably neutrophils, which can supply proteases that dissolve the junctions between adjacent endothelial cells lining the walls

of blood vessels. The gaps in the endothelium created by this loosening expose vascular basement membrane (BM). The ability of the cancer cells to proceed further with extravasation seems to depend on their expression of integrin β1 (see Table 5.4 and Figure 5.22) which, together with associated α integrin subunits enables the tethering of the cancer cells to the laminin in the BM (Figure 14.40C; see also Figure 13.10). The cancer cells seem thereafter to deploy invadosomes (see Figure 14.30) to invade through the BM after which they may confront pericytes (see Figure 13.8) before they finally enter into the tissue parenchyma. Alternatively, trapped CTCs may begin to proliferate while still living within the lumen of a vessel, creating a small tumor that grows and eventually obliterates the adjacent vessel wall (see Figure 14.40D). In doing so, they push aside endothelial cells, pericytes, and smooth muscle cells that previously separated the vessel lumen from the surrounding tissue parenchyma (**Sidebar 14.6**).



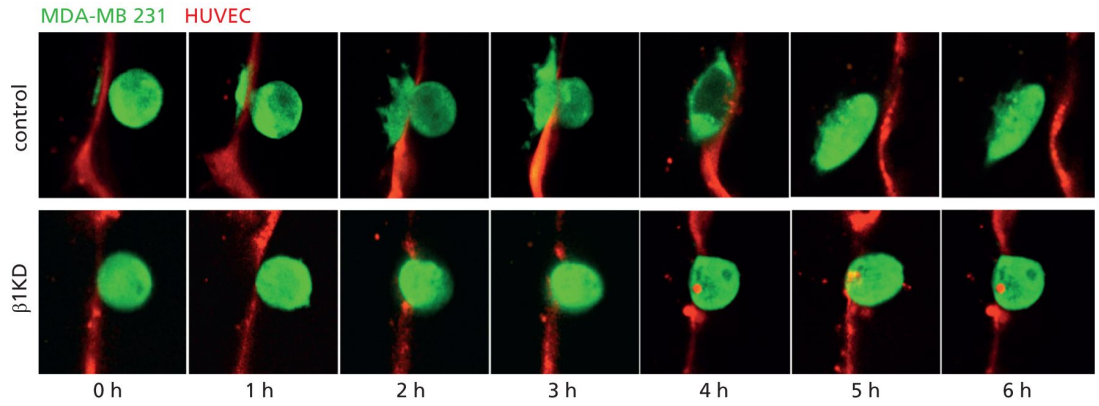
Two images of fluorescent green cells within liver tissue. The left image shows a dozen or so such cells lodged within small blood vessels fed by a larger one. The right image shows a single green cell that appears to lie between blood vessels.

(A)



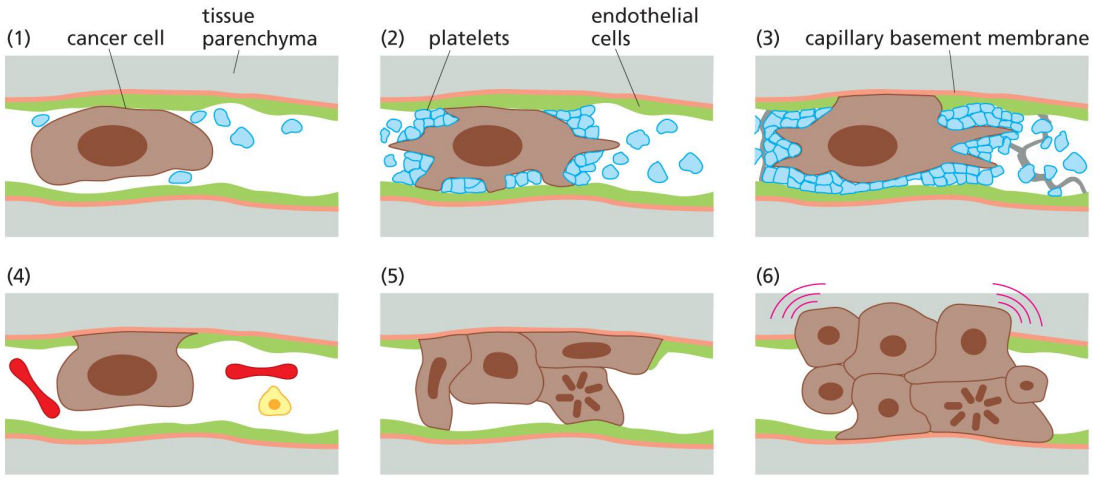
Two images of cells with blue nuclei and green plasma membranes. The left image, labeled Control C M, shows an irregular pattern of oblong cells packed tightly together, with fairly straight lines of contact between cells and no gaps. The right image, labeled Ang p t l 4 C M, shows an irregular pattern of oblong cells packed loosely together, with sometimes jagged outlines and dark gaps between cells.

(B)



Two sequences of fluorescence microscopy images, seven images each, taken at time 0 and then once every hour, up to 6 hours. In the images, green is M D A-M B 231 and red is HUVEC. The upper image sequence is labeled control; it shows a green tumor cell first attaching to and then breaking completely through a red vascular basilar membrane. The lower image sequence is labeled beta 1 K D; it shows a green tumor cell becoming lodged within a red vascular basilar membrane and remaining there.

(C)



A sequence of six diagrams. In the first diagram, a few platelets have begun to accumulate around a cancer cell lodged within a microvessel that is surrounded by tissue parenchyma. In the second diagram, the cancer cell has become fully encrusted with platelets, but at certain points, remains in contact with the microvessel's endothelial lining. In the third diagram, the cancer cell is even more encrusted with platelets, but on one side has broken through the endothelial lining and made direct contact with the capillary basement membrane that forms the microvessel's outer layer. In the fourth diagram, the platelets have disappeared, and normal blood flow through the microvessel has resumed, but the cancer cell remains in place, attached on one side to the outer capillary basement membrane. In the fifth diagram, the cancer cell has multiplied. There are now four cancer cells, and they have begun to obstruct the flow of blood. In the sixth and last diagram, the multiplying cancer cells have burst through the capillary basement membrane into the surrounding parenchyma.

(D)

Figure 14.40 Lodging and extravasation of circulating tumor cells (A) Tumorigenic, green fluorescent protein (GFP)–labeled Chinese hamster ovary cells were injected via the portal vein into a mouse liver. Large numbers of these cells (*green*) soon became arrested in the microvessels of the liver (*left panel*). However, within 24 hours, only an individual cell (*right panel; higher magnification*) has extravasated out of the microvessels (*dark red*) into the liver parenchyma (*light brown*). (B) Mammary carcinoma cells within a primary tumor experience TGF-β, which is produced in abundance in cells that have undergone an EMT and causes them to produce angiopoietin-like protein 4 (Angptl4). When these cells disseminate and become lodged in microvessels, the Angptl4 that they secrete induces nearby endothelial cells to retract from one another, leaving gaps in the capillary walls that facilitate extravasation. As seen here, cultured human vascular endothelial cells, when exposed to conditioned culture media (CM) produced by Angptl4-secreting cells (*right panel*), retract their associations with one another, as indicated by the dissolution of the ZO-1–containing tight junctions (*green*) between adjacent cells; CM produced by control cells (*left panel*) fails to induce this retraction. (C) The actions of Angptl4, as described in panel B, expose the underlying vascular basement membrane, a specialized BM that differs slightly from that underlying epithelial cell layers. In this *in vitro* microfluidic model of the microvasculature, MDA-MB-231 human breast cancer cells (*green*) have been introduced into an already-formed microvasculature formed by human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVECs; *red*). The ability of a carcinoma cell in the lumen of a microvessel to successfully extravasate (*above*) depends on their expression of integrin β1, which allows them to attach to the laminin of the BM. Subsequent invasion through the BM depends on their expression of invadopodia

and podosomes. Conversely, in the absence of normal integrin β1 expression by the carcinoma cell (β1KD *below*), achieved by shRNA knockdown, the carcinoma cannot attach to and advance beyond the vascular BM (*not visible*). (D) Electron-microscopic observations of metastasizing lung cancer cells injected into the venous circulation of mice (*not shown*) suggest that the process of extravasation often proceeds via steps involving the intraluminal proliferation of the cancer cells as drawn here. (1) A disseminated cell (*brown*) is trapped physically in a capillary. (2) Within minutes, a large number of platelets (*blue*) become attached to the cancer cell, forming a microthrombus. (3) The cancer cell pushes aside an endothelial cell (*green*) on one wall of the capillary, thereby achieving direct contact with the underlying capillary basement membrane (*orange*). (4) Within a day, the microthrombus is dissolved by the proteases that are responsible for dissolving clots. (5) The cancer cell begins to proliferate in the lumen of the capillary. (6) Within several days, sometimes sooner, the cancer cells break through the capillary basement membrane and invade the surrounding tissue parenchyma (*gray area*). (A, from G.N. Naumov, S.M. Wilson, I.C. MacDonald et al., *J. Cell Sci*. 112:1835–1842, 1999. With permission from The Company of Biologists. B, from D. Padua, X.H. Zhang, Q. Wang et al., *Cell* 133:66–77, 2008. With permission from Elsevier. C, from M.B. Chen, L.M Lamar, R. Li et al., *Cancer Res*. 76:2513–2524, 2016. D, from J.D. Crissman, J.S. Hatfield, D.G. Menter et al., *Cancer Res*. 48:4065–4072, 1988. Both with permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Sidebar 14.6 Cancer cells are clumsy escape artists

The complex task of escaping from the circulation into the surrounding tissue parenchyma is accomplished routinely by leukocytes, which must be able to enter into the parenchyma of tissues throughout the body in response to certain inflammatory stimuli, including the presence of infectious agents. Through a sequence of steps known as diapedesis, leukocytes are able to induce endothelial cells in postcapillary venules to retract and create portals into the underlying tissue. The entire process from attachment to the endothelial wall to entrance into the tissue parenchyma takes less than a minute and involves an elaborately choreographed program of biochemical and cell-biological changes!

In contrast, the vast majority of metastasizing cancer cells are not endowed with the receptors and biochemical response mechanisms required to execute diapedesis. Accordingly, if neoplastic cells do succeed in penetrating through the wall of a capillary or slightly larger vessel, they seem to do so by brute force, perhaps by degrading patches of endothelium in a process that may require many hours or even a day rather than a minute to complete (see Figure 14.40). Of additional interest is that the thrombin produced during the formation of microthrombi (see **Supplementary**

Sidebar 14.5) is quite effective in cleaving the various proteins used by endothelial cells to attach to the underlying vascular basement membrane; this activity may cause endothelial cells to retract from microemboli, thereby exposing the capillary basement membrane to direct attack by invasive cancer cells and the proteases that they and recruited neutrophils produce.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

hematogenous dissemination
: Metastatic dissemination occurring via the circulating blood.

surrogate marker
: A measurable parameter, often a diagnostic parameter, that serves to indicate the behavior of another process or agent whose behavior it parallels and reflects.

liquid biopsy
: Sampling of the contents of the blood rather than the contents of a solid tissue such as a tumor.

collective metastasis
: Process whereby a cluster of circulating tumor cells function as the founders of a metastatic colony, yielding a polyclonal growth formed by the lineal descendants of the multiple clustered disseminating tumor cells.

barcode
: Distinct labels, usually in the form of specific oligonucleotide DNA sequences, that are introduced into the individual cells within a cell population and used subsequently to identify each of these cells and their lineal descendants; the DNA sequences within a barcode library often represent randomly generated oligonucleotide sequences.

metastatic inefficiency
: Phenomenon in which only a minute portion of disseminated tumor cells succeed in spawning macroscopic metastases.

arteriole
: A small artery that empties into capillaries.

experimental metastasis
: Procedure for introducing cancer cells into the circulation via injection into the tail vein of a mouse; this procedure largely yields cancer cells trapped in the microvessels of the lungs.

autochthonous
: (1) Of native origin. (2) Referring to a tumor that arises within an organism (rather than from implanted cells or tumor fragments).

shunt

A passageway or connection that allows fluid to pass directly from one place to another, such as the direct connection between an artery and a vein that occurs without blood passing through intermediate microvessels, i.e., capillaries.

extravasation

Process of leaving a blood or lymphatic vessel and invading the parenchyma of the adjacent tissue. *See also* **intravasation**.

diapedesis

Complex sequence of steps enabling leukocytes to extravasate rapidly from the lumen of a blood vessel through the vessel wall into the underlying tissue parenchyma.

longitudinal

Referring to the repeated, successive monitoring of a single patient or a group of patients over an extended period of time.

microembolus

(pl., **microemboli**) Small body formed from cells or products of the clotting machinery that travels through the circulation and may be trapped in small vessels, often blocking further circulation through these vessels. *See also* **embolus**.

OceanofPDF.com

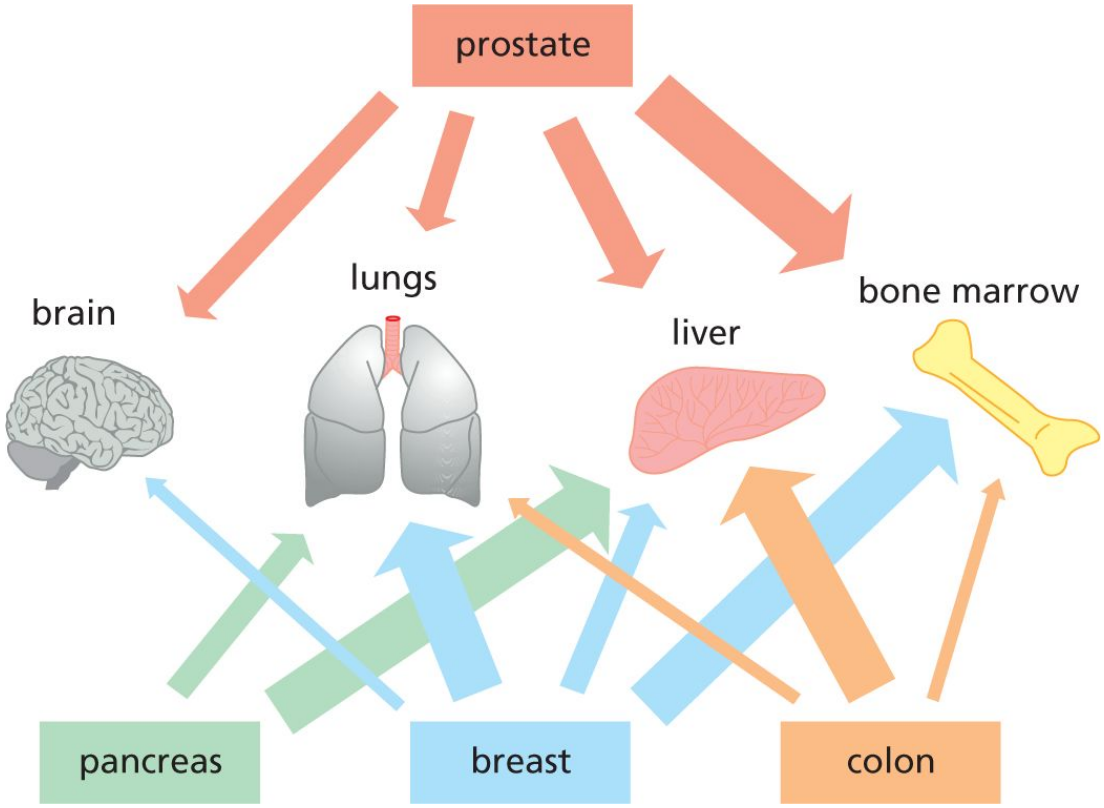
14.11 Colonization represents the most complex and challenging step of the invasion–metastasis cascade

Once they have arrived within the parenchyma of a tissue, metastasizing cancer cells may form micrometastases—small clumps of disseminated cancer cells, some of which are able to expand into clinically detectable masses; this growth of microscopic into macroscopic metastases is often termed colonization. It is plausible, if not likely, that CTCs are trapped in diverse tissues throughout the body and can seed micrometastases in most of them. If so, then the observed tendencies of different types of primary tumor cells to preferentially form macroscopic metastases in certain organs but not others may only reflect the efficiency of post-extravasation colonization, which is likely to vary drastically from one site of dissemination to another and reflect how permissive different tissues are for the colonization by various types of disseminated cancer cells. To be sure, there are clear exceptions to this thinking, specifically where the layout of the vasculature (as depicted, for example, in Figure 14.39) ensures that tumors arising in the gastrointestinal tract and pancreas dump vast numbers of cells via the portal circulation directly into the liver (as described in Section 14.10). In this situation, even if the liver were an intrinsically inhospitable host tissue for DTCs, the sheer numbers of cancer cells deposited directly into the liver from the portal vein may ensure that even low-probability events, specifically colonization, become possible.

The predilection to form metastases in one or another organ site was noted as early as 1889 by the British pathologist Stephen Paget (**Figure 14.41A**). He proposed the “seed and soil” hypothesis, in which he likened the seeding of cancer cells to the dispersal of the seeds of plants. After studying the clinical course of 735 breast cancer patients, Paget concluded that the patterns of metastasis formation in these patients could not be explained either by random scattering throughout the body or by the patterns of dispersal from the breast through the general circulation. He therefore proposed that the metastasizing cancer cells (the seed) find a compatible home only in certain especially hospitable tissues (the soil). He wrote, “a plant goes to seed, its seeds are carried in all directions; but they can only live and grow if they fall on congenial soil.”

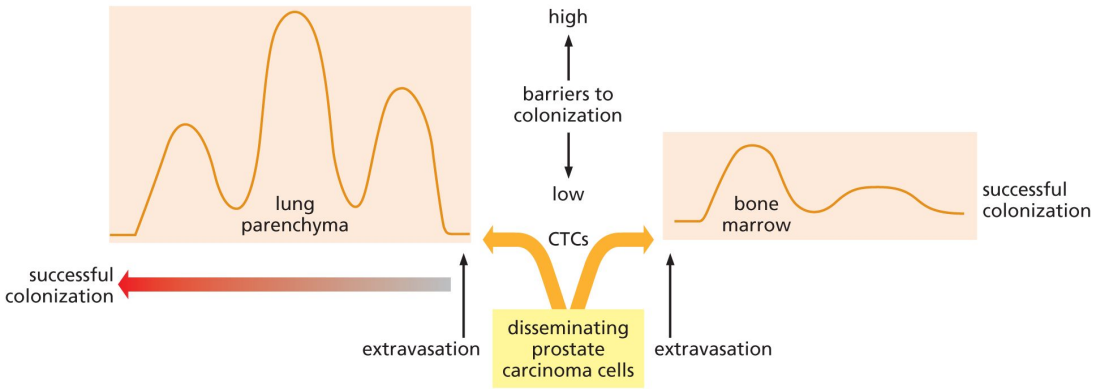
A black and white photograph of Stephen Paget, who is wearing pince-nez and reading a newspaper.

(A)



A schematic indicating the frequency with which various cancers metastasize into the brain, lungs, liver and bone marrow. Prostate cancer metastasizes into all four, but more frequently into bone marrow than into the others. Pancreatic cancer metastasizes into the liver and sometimes into the lungs. Breast cancer metastasizes into the brain, lungs, liver and bone marrow, but more frequently into lungs and bone marrow. Colon cancer metastasizes into the lungs, liver and bone marrow, but especially into the liver.

(B)



A schematic illustration of the metastasization of prostate cancer cells into the lung parenchyma and into bone marrow. The process begins with disseminating prostate carcinoma cells entering the bloodstream as circulating tumor cells. They undergo extravasation into the destination tissue, which is lung or bone, where they encounter barriers to colonization. These barriers are higher and more numerous in lung parenchyma than in bone marrow. Overcoming of the obstacles results in successful colonization.

(C)

Figure 14.41 Primary tumors and their metastatic tropisms (A) The British physician Stephen Paget (1855–1926) was the first to enunciate the "seed and soil" hypothesis, which states that the ability of a disseminated cancer cell to successfully found a metastasis depends on whether a distant tissue offers it a hospitable environment to survive and proliferate. (B) In this diagram, the relative width of each arrow indicates the relative proportion of clinically apparent metastases in various tissue sites of metastatic colony outgrowth that are generated by four types of common primary human carcinomas: prostate, breast, pancreas, and colon. In some cases, a tumor's tendency to spawn metastases in one or another tissue reflects the facility of the cancer cells from the primary tumor to adapt to (and thus colonize) the microenvironment of distant tissues, which likely explains the strong tendencies of prostate and breast cancers to generate metastases in the bone marrow. In other cases, the layout of the circulation (see Figure 14.39) may strongly influence the site of metastasis. For example, the high proportions of liver metastases deriving from primary colon cancers and pancreatic adenocarcinomas likely reflect the drainage via the portal vein of blood from the colon and pancreas directly into the liver. (C) One way to conceptualize the biological bases of metastatic colonization portrays the adaptations that disseminating carcinoma cells (circulating tumor cells, CTCs) must undertake in order to surmount multiple barriers to their successful adaption, given their initial differentiation program. Thus, prostate carcinoma cells encounter relatively few low biological barriers in the marrow (*right*) but multiple high barriers in the lung parenchyma (*left*). (A, from I.J. Fidler, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3:453–458, 2003.)

These tendencies are often termed metastatic tropism or organotropism. In some cases, the proclivity of primary tumors to seed certain sites of metastasis formation can be ascribed trivially to the organization of the circulation (see Figure 14.39). In other cases, such as the bone marrow metastases formed by prostate and breast tumors, more subtle biological mechanisms must be invoked, as described below. Moreover, use of the term "metastatic tropism" is actually misleading, because "tropism" usually implies the preferential, directed migration of agents to certain sites but not to others,

which clearly does not explain the anatomical sites of most types of metastasis formation.

Metastatic colonization is, without question, the most challenging step of the invasion–metastasis cascade, ostensibly because the foreign tissue environments encountered by recently arrived cancer cells do not provide them with the collections of familiar growth and survival factors as well as extracellular matrix components that allowed their forbears to thrive while still residing within the confines of the primary tumor in which they arose. Without these various types of familiar physiological support, poorly adapted disseminated cancer cells may rapidly die or, at best, survive for extended periods of time as micrometastases that can only be detected microscopically and rarely increase beyond this size.

Of note, the actions of EMT programs, as described in Sections 14.3 and 14.4, would not seem to explain the metastatic tropisms of cancer cells. Instead, it seems that, at least in the case of carcinoma cells, EMT programs are capable of moving these cells physically from primary tumors into the parenchyma of distant tissues. However, once arrived in these distant sites, disseminated tumor cells (DTCs) must devise their own tissue-adaptive programs, an undertaking that seems to be highly challenging for most types of DTCs. In these situations, the DTCs clearly experience enormous selective pressure, with variants succeeding only on rare occasion in contriving adaptive programs that permit survival and subsequent robust proliferation of these cells and their descendants.

In fact, at present, the problem of metastatic colonization represents the major puzzle for cancer researchers intent on understanding the pathogenesis of human neoplastic diseases. As will be apparent below, this is a problem of daunting complexity, given the large number of distinct subtypes of human primary tumors, the number of distinct sites at which metastases may grow out, and the possibility that each successful adaptive program may vary from others that arise independently in other patients and in other anatomical sites (Figure 14.41B).

Note, by the way, that these tissue-specific “adaptations” may be of two sorts. DTCs may acquire the ability to respond to the contextual signals naturally provided by their newly encountered tissue microenvironments; at the same time, they may need to learn how to perturb these microenvironments, forcing the latter to undergo shifts that create congenial metastatic niches.

As depicted here, successful adaptations and outgrowth represent a form of Darwinian evolution in which rare variants successfully adapt to newly encountered environments and associated stresses. Not addressed by this thinking is precisely *how* DTCs succeed in assembling biological programs that ensure their success as the founders of macroscopic metastases. Darwinian evolution is thought to depend largely if not

exclusively on heritable changes in the genomes of organisms under selective pressure. However, extensive searches for recurring somatic mutations that function to allow the outgrowth of DTCs in certain destination sites have provided few insights. These failures suggest the alternative mechanism: that effective adaptive programs are largely cobbled together at the epigenetic level, that is, they depend on changes in the transcriptomes of cells without underlying changes in the nucleotide sequences of their genomes.

Such epigenetic programs, once assembled, must be transmitted in a cell-heritable fashion, that is, being perpetuated from generation to generation of cells in cell lineages over extended periods of time. In addition, the invention of such programs by DTCs must depend on their phenotypic plasticity, that is, their ability to readily shift from one phenotypic state to another. Such plasticity would seem to echo another type of phenotypic plasticity—the behavior of cells that have activated EMT programs and, as a consequence, shift frequently between multiple phenotypic states lying between the extremes of fully epithelial and fully mesenchymal, as depicted in Figure 14.12.

At the same time, the ability of a DTC to succeed in cobbling together an effective adaptive program (that is, one that adapts them to their new tissue microenvironment) is likely to be governed by this cell's starting point—the differentiation program that it brought along from the primary tumor. This starting point may place the DTC in a position that allows it to adapt with ease to the foreign tissue that now hosts it or, conversely, may require a complex, challenging set of changes in transcriptional programs (and thus shifts in cell state).

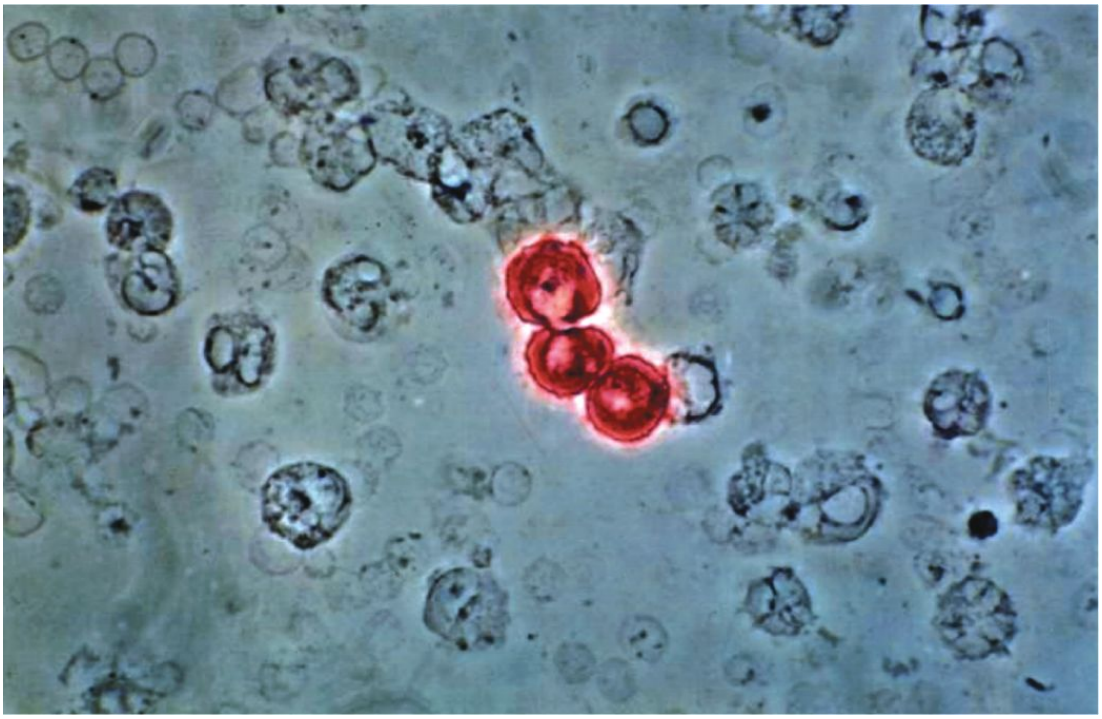
Stated in this way, circulating tumor cells (CTCs) originating from certain primary tumors may already be well poised to acquire effective tissue-adaptive programs simply because relatively few adjustments need to be made to their existing transcriptomes in order to thrive in certain sites of eventual dissemination. In contrast, CTCs originating in other types of primary tumors may confront multiple, almost-insurmountable barriers to developing successful adaptation programs in certain destination sites (Figure 14.41C). As an example, metastasizing cutaneous melanoma cells may already be poised to readily acquire adaptive programs that function in a variety of tissues, but distantly related uveal melanomas of the eye may be hard-pressed to devise diverse adaptive programs. As a consequence, cutaneous melanomas may found metastatic colonies in diverse tissue sites, whereas uveal melanomas, because of their limited phenotypic plasticity and unique differentiation program, may be limited to successfully seeding metastases only in the liver.

At present, we understand almost nothing about the mechanisms that enable DTCs within micrometastases to develop novel adaptive programs that power their proliferation thereafter in their newfound homes, doing so ostensibly by shifting from one transcriptomic state (and thus phenotype) to another. Moreover, it is possible in

principle that some of the changes in DTCs that optimize colonization efficiency in certain tissues may be achieved by genetic alterations, that is, mutations of their genomes occurring long after they have left the primary tumor; at present, however, there are no anecdotal accounts supporting this notion.

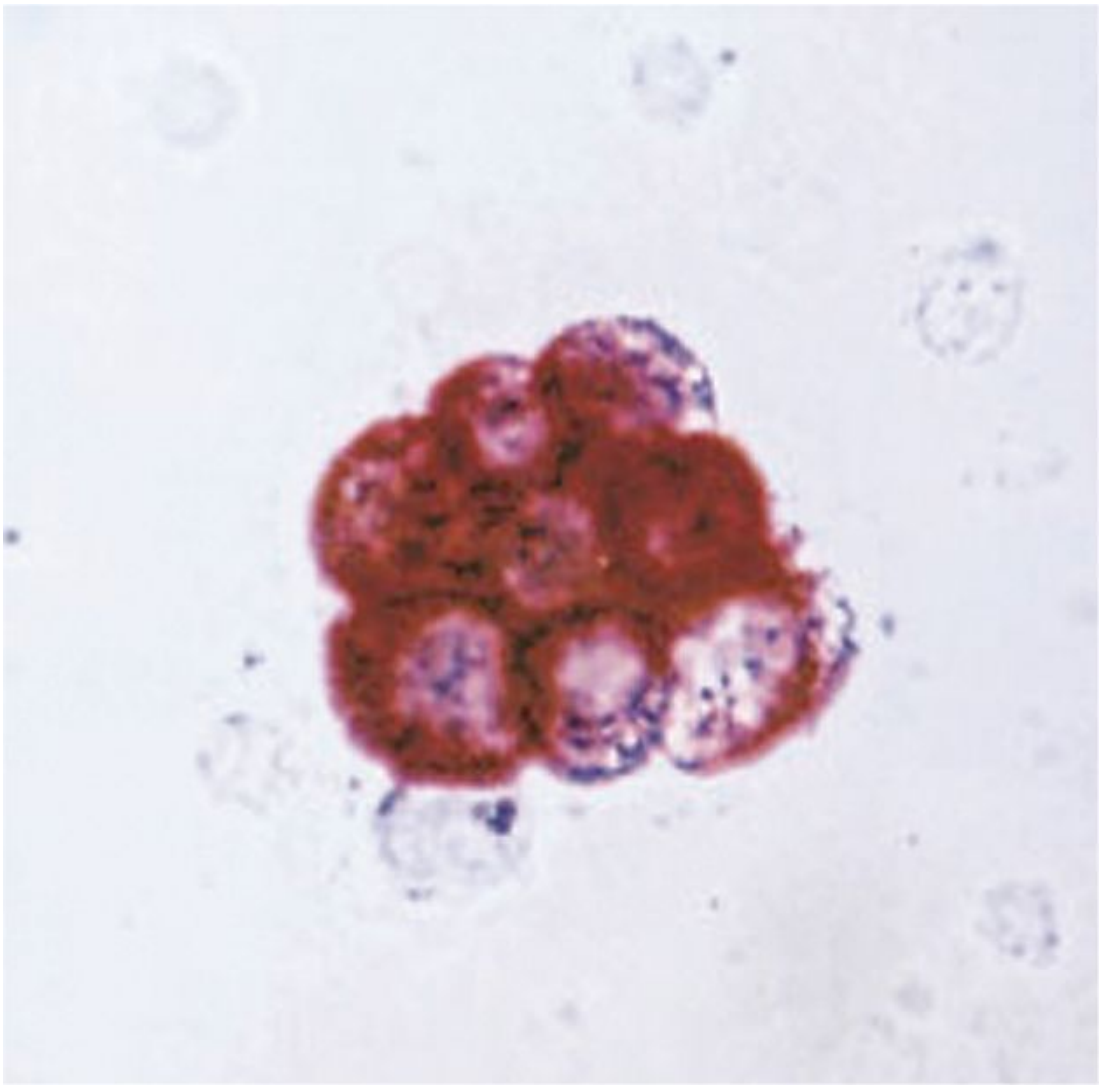
The barriers to post-extravasation proliferation are encountered almost immediately in the tissue parenchyma. To begin, carcinoma cells need to anchor to the surrounding extracellular matrix (ECM) via the integrins displayed on their surface (see Section 5.9). Without this anchorage, they are unable to activate a key source of mitogenic signals transduced by focal adhesion kinase (FAK, see Figure 6.17). This obstacle dooms the extravasated cells to remain as single-cell or several-cell micrometastases. Yet other barriers to successful colonization may also prevent them from thriving in their sites of dissemination. For example, the ability of a growing micrometastatic colony to successfully acquire access to a neovasculature may differ greatly from one site of dissemination to another (see Section 13.6). Moreover, for complex reasons, the stromal microenvironments of certain tissues may be fundamentally incompatible with the needs of DTCs originating in certain types of primary tumors.

Our descriptions of metastatic inefficiency in the previous section can be revisited here but from a slightly different angle. A frequently quoted statistic describes the clinical progression of breast cancer patients: more than 30% of these patients harbor hundreds, likely thousands of micrometastases in their bone marrow at the time of initial clinical presentation, but only half of the women in this group will ever develop metastatic disease. These numbers have implied to many that the bone marrow is the major site of dissemination of breast cancer cells, whereas in fact, it only represents the tissue in which micrometastases involving single DTCs and small clusters of DTCs are readily visualized and quantified (**Figure 14.42**). In reality, micrometastases are likely to be widely disseminated throughout many other tissues of a cancer patient, invariably in tissues where their detection is far more challenging than in the bone marrow, explaining our almost-total ignorance of where most DTCs end up, at least transiently, in the body; some of these occult micrometastases may lead, on occasion, to disastrous outcomes (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.11**).



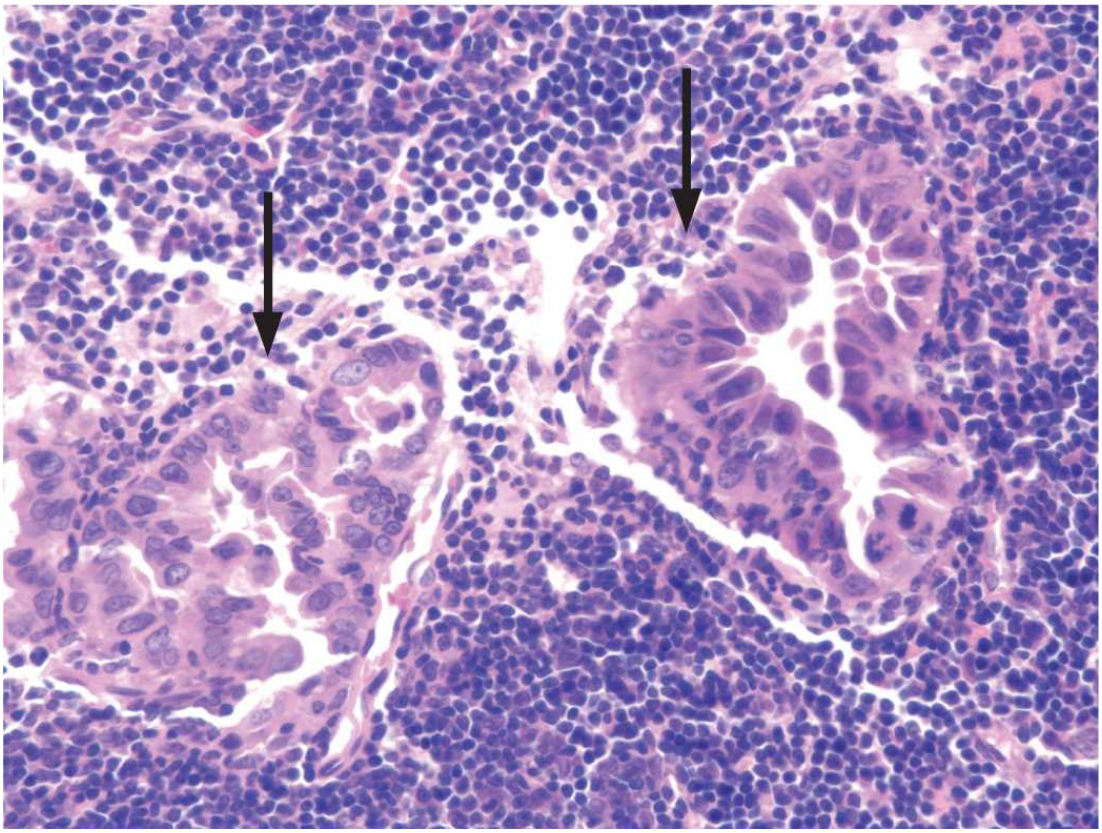
A color image showing a cluster of 3 bright red, distinctly outlined cells against a background of less distinctly defined cyan blue tissue.

(A)



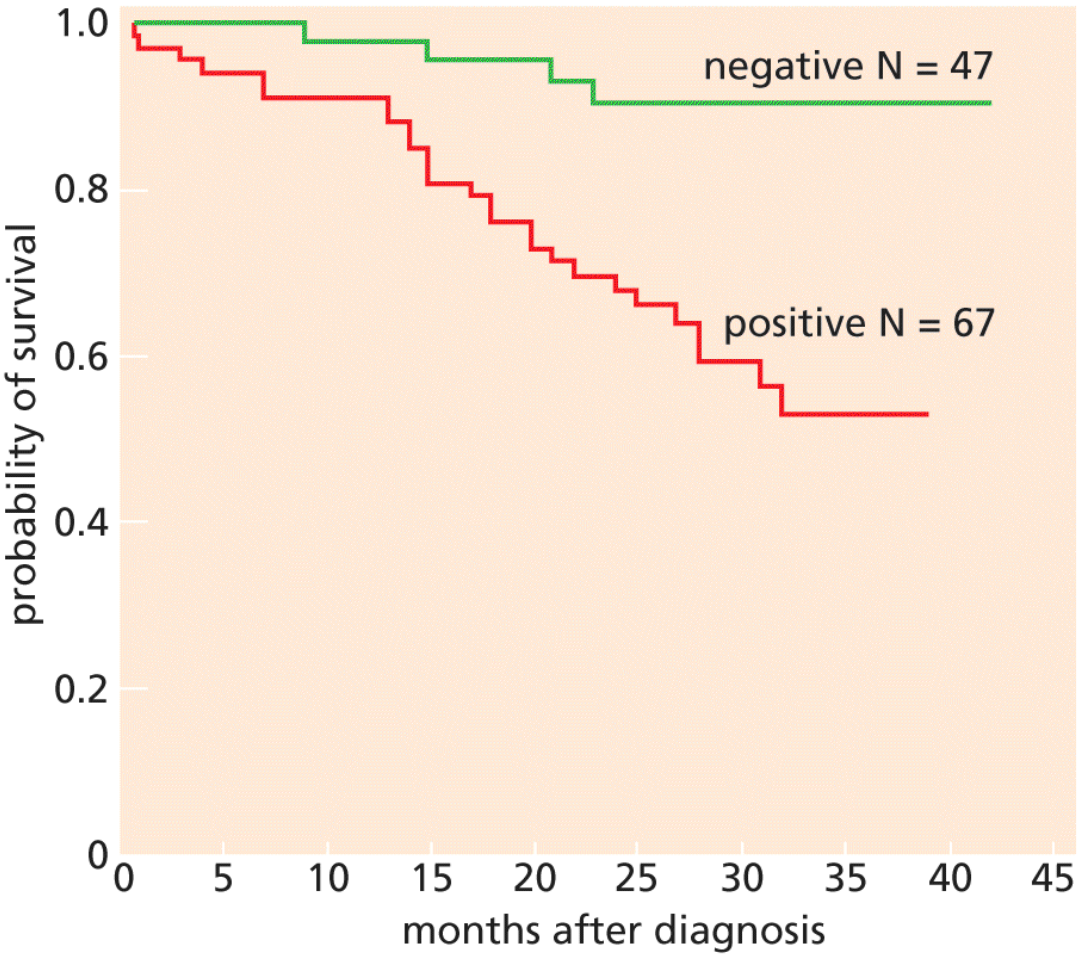
A color image showing a cluster of at least 8 bright red, distinctly outlined cells against a gray-white background.

(B)



A histology stain image of two ductlike structures in cross section, but the left one has no well-defined lumen and is surrounded by small, densely packed cells with dark nuclei.

(C)



A line graph showing the probability of survival as a function of time for two patient groups. For 47 cytokeratin-negative patients, the survival probability dropped from 100 percent at time zero to 90 percent at 25 months and remained flat thereafter. For 67 cytokeratin-positive patients, the survival probability dropped to 70 percent at 20 months and below 60 percent at 30 months.

(D)

Figure 14.42 Presence of micrometastases in the marrow and lymph node (A) Metastasis of cancer cells to the bone marrow is usually determined by withdrawing marrow from the iliac crest of the pelvis. In this micrograph, the presence of a micrometastasis containing several cancer cells in the bone marrow of a colon cancer patient has been detected by staining with an anti-cytokeratin antibody (*red*). This staining is highly specific because normal marrow cells are of mesenchymal/hematopoietic origin and thus do not express cytokeratins. In contrast, epithelial cells and their neoplastic descendants usually express

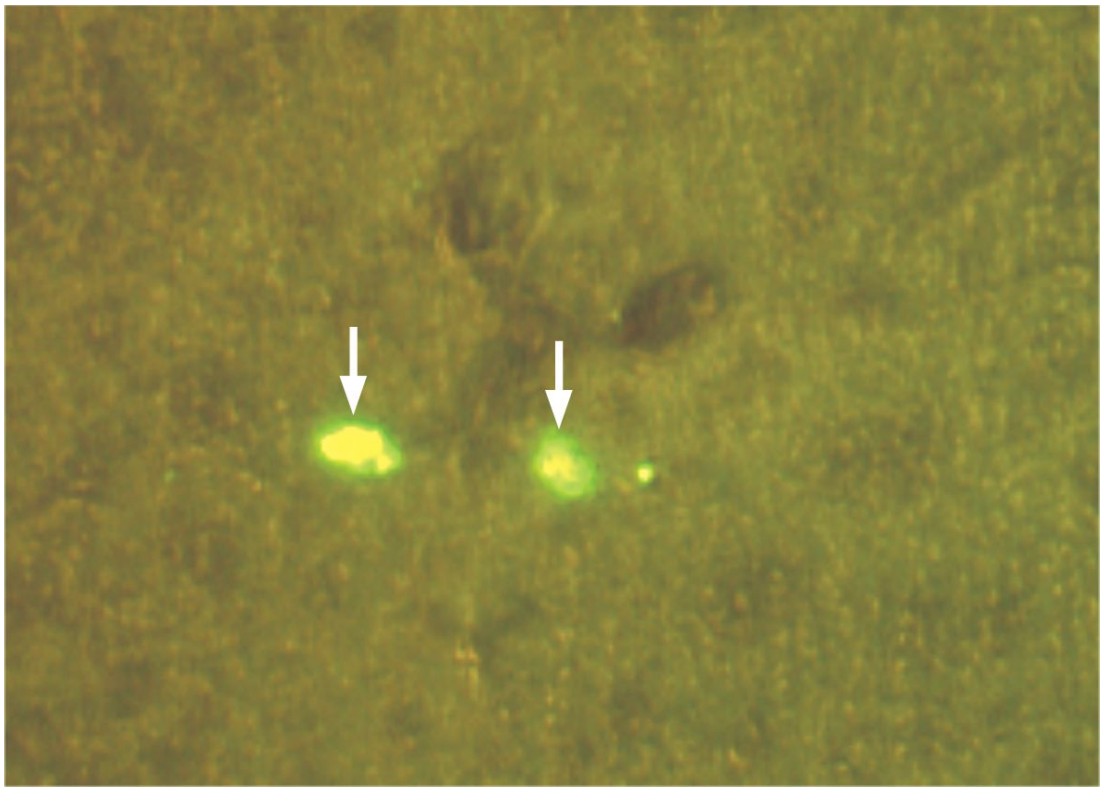
cytokeratins at significant levels. (B) Clusters of mammary carcinoma cells (*red*), viewed at slightly lower magnification, can often be found in the marrow of breast cancer patients. Although not demonstrated here, these cells are apparently the products of post-extravasation proliferation in the marrow. (C) Micrometastases often form in a draining lymph node—one that is directly connected with the primary tumor via a lymphatic duct that drains the tissue in which this tumor arose (see Figure 14.36). These growths are usually detectable by their strongly contrasting appearance from surrounding lymphocytes. Here two micrometastases of a mouse lung adenocarcinoma (*arrows*) to a lymph node are seen amid a sea of lymphocytes. Note the formation of a ductlike structure by the right micrometastasis, providing clear indication of proliferation after initial dissemination. (D) Cytokeratin-positive cells in the marrows of a cohort of breast cancer patients were counted, allowing the patients to be placed into two groups having either cytokeratin-positive or -negative marrows. As is evident, those with cytokeratin-positive cells in their marrow had a far worse prognosis, with almost 50% of them dying within three years of initial diagnosis. (A, courtesy of I. Funke and G. Riethmüller. B, from S. Braun, K. Pantel, P. Müller et al., *N. Engl. J. Med*. 342:525–533, 2000. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society. C, courtesy of K.P. Olive and T. Jacks. D, from J.-Y. Pierga, C. Bonneton, A. Vincent-Salomon et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 10:1392–1400, 2004. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Although the probability that a given disseminated cancer cell will succeed in generating a macroscopic metastasis is extremely low, the very fact that a patient's primary tumor is actively dispatching neoplastic cells to sites throughout the body is itself an indication that the tumor carries a bad prognosis (Figure 14.42D). Indeed, at least at present, the number of DTCs in the marrow seems to represent a far more useful prognostic marker than the concentration of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) in the blood. This would seem to reflect the fact that the number of DTCs represents the accumulation of disseminated cancer cells over an extended period of time, whereas the concentration of CTCs may be dictated by complex kinetic processes governing their lifetimes—and thus their steady-state concentrations—in the circulation at one point in time.

Support for the existence of dormant micrometastases that persist in a nongrowing but viable state for extended periods of time comes from experiments in which living cancer cells were marked by brief exposure to fluorescent label–containing particles; the latter persist for long time periods within cells but do not affect the viability these cells, explaining why they are often termed vital dyes. However, the intracellular concentration—and thus the fluorescence intensity of the dye particles—is diluted by a factor of 2 each time a cell divides; hence, the residual fluorescence intensity in cells

allows the experimenter to estimate how many times the cells have divided since they were initially marked.

In one influential experiment, such dye-labeled cancer cells were introduced via the portal circulation into mouse livers, in which they formed large numbers of single-cell micrometastases. Eleven weeks later, cancer cells were recovered from these livers, and many of these still possessed full fluorescence intensity (**Figure 14.43**), indicating that they represented cells that had not divided even once since their arrival in the liver. Importantly, these recovered cancer cells remained capable of proliferating *in vitro* and were able to generate new tumors when injected subcutaneously into other host mice, that is, into an anatomical site where, for various reasons, they were able to proliferate more readily.



Two fluorescent green dots against a muted green background.

Figure 14.43 Persistence of solitary dormant tumor cells many weeks after introduction into the liver Tumorigenic mouse breast cancer cells were labeled by inducing them to take up styrene nanoparticles (48 nm diameter) that had been tagged with a fluorescent dye. These cells were then injected into a mesenteric vein, which carried them via the portal vein into the liver. Eleven weeks later, tumor cells could still be detected in the liver (*white arrows*). Importantly, the fluorescence intensity of many of these cells did not differ significantly from the

intensity of cells shortly after labeling, indicating that these cells had not divided even once following labeling and implantation in the liver. Following isolation and *in vitro* culturing, the descendants of many of these cells were tumorigenic when injected into the mammary fat pads of host mice. (Moreover, the dormant cancer cells were found to be fully resistant to a chemotherapy that reduced by 75% the size of metastases that were growing rapidly in the same mice.) (From G.N. Naumov, I.C. MacDonald, P.M. Weinmeister et al., *Cancer Res*. 62:2162–2168, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

The above experiment shows dramatically that disseminated cancer cells can remain viable for extended periods of time in a nondividing, dormant state within foreign tissue sites. A quite different type of micrometastasis arises when disseminated cancer cells succeed in proliferating and forming colonies of a very small size within a foreign tissue; however, these subclinical micrometastases may never increase in size because the rate of cell proliferation in these clumps is counterbalanced by an equal rate of attrition, possibly as a result of the failure of these cells to execute the angiogenic switch (see Section 13.7). Alternatively, the outgrowth of such micrometastases may be held in check by the actions of both the innate and adaptive arms of the immune system (to be discussed in Chapter 15).

These micrometastatic colonies of various types are essentially undetectable clinically and represent what is often termed “residual disease.” The eruption of metastases that renders them clinically apparent may occur months or years after initial seeding; these delayed relapses are most notorious in the case of breast cancer, in which women who have been deemed cured may suddenly develop macroscopic metastases years after their initial, ostensibly successful treatment. As an example, as many as one-third of women treated years earlier by removal of their primary breast cancers exhibit occasional mammary carcinoma DTCs, even though they may remain symptom-free years after their primary tumor surgery. Such women may nonetheless experience metastatic relapses 10–20 years after their initial surgery.

We can imagine that such relapses can be triggered by at least two alternative mechanisms. DTCs may *evolve* on site, solving the problem of colonization by acquiring the ability to thrive in the foreign tissue microenvironments in which they happen to have landed and to resist ongoing attrition by immune-mediated attacks in those sites. Importantly, ongoing cell proliferation over extended periods of time would seem to be essential in order for the cells within disseminated micrometastases to spontaneously evolve to an aggressive state, that is, to generate the genetic or epigenetic heterogeneity that is essential for such diversification (and subsequent selection) via a form of Darwinian evolution (**Sidebar 14.7**).

Sidebar 14.7 Genetic analyses suggest that the evolution of metastatic ability can occur outside of the primary tumor

In perhaps 30% of breast, prostate, and colon cancer patients whose primary carcinomas have been surgically removed, one can still detect micrometastases in the marrow, lymph nodes, or blood; these patients are considered to have “minimal residual disease.” At this stage, analysis of the micrometastases indicates that they are genetically heterogeneous. However, years later, when a patient develops disease relapse and manifests readily detectable metastatic masses, the patient’s single-cell micrometastases are now much more similar to one another genetically (see Figure 11.16C).

This sequence of events suggests a stage of tumor progression in which the ability to colonize is acquired long after the acquired ability to disseminate to distant organ sites. Initially, genetically diverse cancer cells are seeded by a primary tumor throughout the body, but none of these succeeds in establishing a macroscopic metastasis simply because none is intrinsically capable of doing so. After a period of time, however, genetic and epigenetic evolution occurring in a micrometastasis somewhere in the body yields a clone of cells with the newly acquired ability to colonize efficiently. As this clone expands, it also begins to seed cancer cells throughout the body, and therefore generates a secondary wave of metastatic dissemination.

The individual cancer cells that are released by this colonizing clone soon constitute the majority of the single-cell micrometastases of a cancer patient, and these micrometastases are genetically very similar to one another because of their shared descent from the same clonal cell population. Importantly, because the cells in these new micrometastases all have inherited the ability to colonize, many may grow rapidly into macroscopic metastases, creating a life-threatening burden of disseminated cancer cells in the patient.

This cascade model suggests that the final evolution toward advanced malignancy often occurs at anatomical sites far removed from the primary tumor and that a secondary wave of dissemination (emanating from initially formed metastatic colonies) is responsible for most metastasis-associated death. (This secondary wave of dissemination is sometimes termed a “metastatic shower” to indicate the large number of new, robustly growing metastases that seem to appear simultaneously.)

A 1986 study of the autopsies of more than 1500 patients who died from colon carcinoma provided strong indications that metastases initially formed in the livers of these patients and spread from there to the lungs and finally to other sites in the body. Nevertheless, even with such evidence in hand, the cascade model is not yet validated by the genomic sequencing techniques and currently available bioinformatic algorithms.

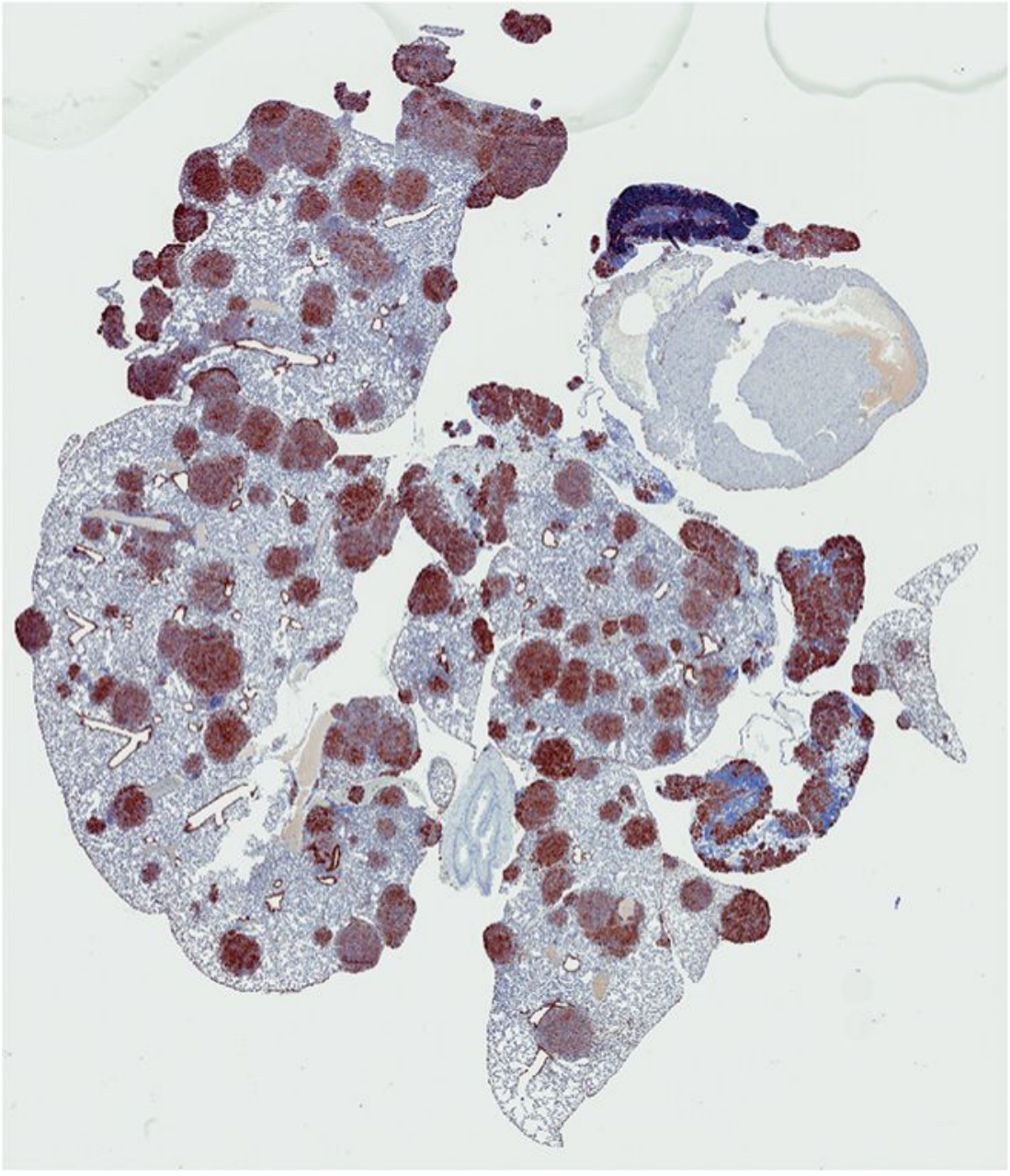
An entirely different, alternative mechanism of metastatic awakening and colonization is also plausible: changes in the tissue microenvironment surrounding dormant micrometastases, such as localized inflammation, might also trigger their outgrowth, perhaps by re-creating the stromal conditions that operated in the primary tumors in which the DTCs originated. Whatever their nature, micrometastases represent an imminent threat because they are often present in vast numbers throughout the body and may erupt years after a cancer has been thought to be cured.

The above discussions of sites of metastasis imply that the microenvironment of each potential target tissue (that is, a tissue in which a metastasis may actually form) represents a relatively stable constellation of biochemical and cellular traits that is typical of that particular tissue and of the niches encountered by recently arrived cancer cells.

The reality is, however, quite different, because certain tissue microenvironments may actually represent dynamically changing surroundings, that is, moving targets. Thus, rapidly accumulating evidence indicates that systemic signals released by primary tumors can actively reshape the microenvironments of distant tissues, often prior to metastatic dissemination, changing the parenchyma of these tissues and making them more hospitable to circulating tumor cells that happen subsequently to land in these tissues. These changes have been described as creating pre-metastatic niches in the destination tissues. Alternatively, as DTCs gain a foothold in the distant tissues and begin proliferation, they can then generate progressive changes in the tissue microenvironments around them that re-create the reactive stroma that was present in their corresponding primary tumors prior to the earlier dissemination. Hence, changes in the microenvironment at the site of eventual colony formation may occur both before and after the CTCs arrive.

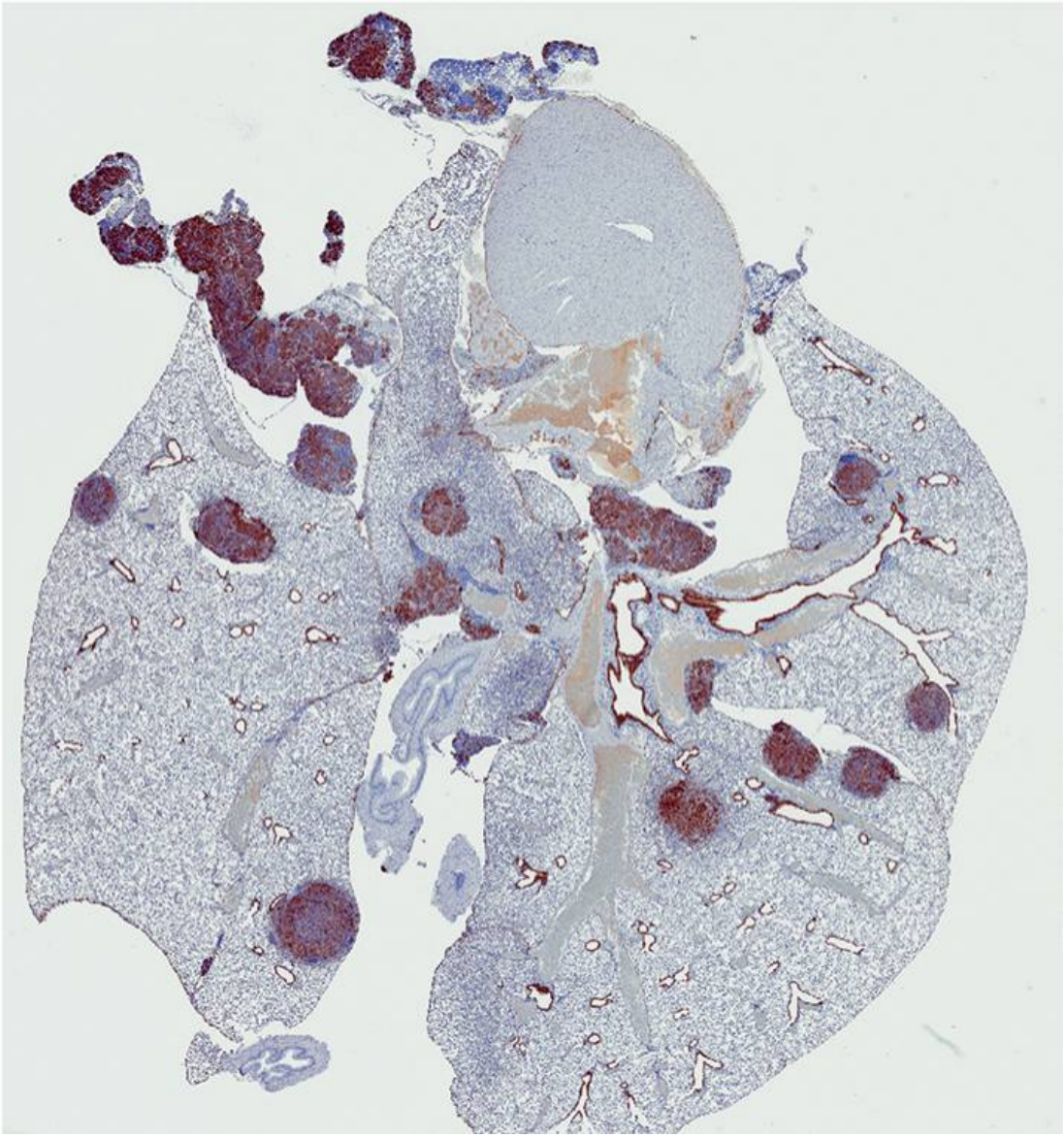
Moreover, the generation of a reactive, EMT-inducing stroma associated with a given metastatic colony implies that this colony could itself become the source of a new generation of CTCs and a resulting secondary wave of metastatic dissemination, as cited above. If so, the resulting secondarily generated CTCs may actually be more dangerous to the patient than the initially disseminated cells arriving earlier from the primary tumor, simply because these newer CTCs derive directly from precursors that have already undergone evolution in a site of dissemination and have therefore developed tissue-adaptive programs; these programs may allow this second wave of CTCs and derived DTCs to take root almost immediately in various newer sites of dissemination. Such behavior may explain the above-cited clinical observations of metastatic showers, in which individual patients seem to develop multiple metastases synchronously throughout the body (see Sidebar 14.7).

There are diverse ways in which primary tumors could favor the formation of pre-metastatic niches. One frequently observed mechanism involves the creation by primary tumors of neutrophilia, the state of elevated neutrophil concentrations present in the circulation. Doing so must involve the release by primary tumors of neutrophil-stimulating factors, such as G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor), that impinge on the bone marrow and greatly increase the production of these myeloid cells, their concentrations in the general circulation, and their deposition in tissues throughout the body (**Figure 14.44**).



Pale blue lung tissue is riddled with many dark brown spots of varying size.

(A)



There are far fewer brown spots. Large areas of pale blue lung tissue are free of spots.

(B)

Figure 14.44 Role of neutrophils in facilitating the formation of pulmonary metastases Neutrophils operate in multiple ways to facilitate metastasis formation by circulating tumor cells, a process best documented in the context of the lungs. A variety of primary tumor types induce neutrophilia through the elaboration directly or indirectly of the G-CSF factor, which stimulates neutrophil expansion in the marrow and then in the systemic circulation. Neutrophils thereafter

contribute to the formation of pre-metastatic niches in the lungs. (A) In a mouse model of spontaneous mammary carcinoma metastasis, large numbers of metastatic colonies are readily detected in the lungs. (B) However, if circulating neutrophils are largely depleted using the anti-Ly6G antibody, which is used to specifically deplete neutrophils and reverse neutrophilia, the number of pulmonary metastases is greatly reduced. (From S.B. Coffelt, K. Kersten, C.W. Doornebal et al., *Nature* 522:345–348, 2015. With permission from Nature.)

The resulting neutrophils may actually operate in at least three distinct ways to increase the numbers of successfully launched metastases. Thus, these myeloid cells have been found to protect circulating tumor cells (CTCs) from attacks and thus attrition launched by NK cells in the general circulation. Neutrophils can also facilitate extravasation by CTCs. And finally, neutrophils may create changes in the parenchyma of a destination site that favor rapid outgrowth of extravasated cells.

A variety of noncellular messengers have also been found to serve as agents that are dispatched by primary tumors and contribute to pre-metastatic niche formation. By 2016, more than a dozen signaling molecules had been associated with the formation of these niches, in each case substances that are released by primary tumors, travel systemically to various sites throughout the body, and facilitate the establishment of metastases by subsequently arriving cancer cells. To extend the seed-and-soil metaphor of Paget, it would seem that the agents creating pre-metastatic niches function by tilling the soil, preparing tissues for possible seeding by subsequently arriving cancer cells.

This concept of pre-metastatic niche formation implies a purposive action on the part of a primary tumor that undertakes to pave the way for its metastatic offspring to spread throughout the body. Although attractive in theory, this notion ascribes an almost-intentional behavior to primary tumors, suggesting that preparing destination sites for eventual metastatic outgrowth is advantageous for the growth of cancer cells in the primary tumors. Instead, it is far more plausible that mechanisms that create these niches, like the process of metastasis itself, are unintended side-products of primary tumor growth, representing consequences of the formation of reactive stroma within primary tumors and associated systemic changes in a variety of bone marrow-derived cells that occur in connection with localized wound-healing and inflammation.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

colonization
: Proliferation of cells within a micrometastasis that leads to the formation of a macroscopic metastasis.

metastatic tropism
: The observed tendency of cancer cells from one specific primary tumor type to colonize preferentially one target organ or another.

organotropism
: The tendency of cancer cells in a specific type of primary tumor to spawn metastases in a specific subset of normal tissues in the body.

plasticity
: Describing an ability to readily transit between alternative states, such as distinct phenotypic states.

vital dye
: Dye that can be used to stain living cells or tissues and is retained for extended periods of time in these objects without compromising viability.

cascade model (of metastasis)
: A hypothetical model that posits that initially formed metastatic colonies rather than corresponding primary tumors are the sources of a secondary wave of metastatic dissemination and thus metastatic colonies.

metastatic shower
: Clinical observation of an apparent synchronous formation of multiple new metastases at multiple sites of metastatic dissemination.

pre-metastatic niche
: A site within a tissue that is altered in some fashion to facilitate the survival and/or proliferation of subsequently arriving disseminated cancer cells.

neutrophilia
: A condition in which the concentration of neutrophils in the circulation is elevated above its normal value.

steady state
: The condition reached when a series of dynamic, often countervailing processes have placed a complex system in a balanced, relatively

constant, unchanging state.

OceanofPDF.com

14.12 Successful metastatic colonization often involves complex adaptations

Abundant evidence supports the notion that metastatic cancer cells that have colonized a certain target organ must become highly specialized to do so: (1) Of the 75% of young patients with papillary thyroid carcinomas that are accompanied by significant lymph node metastases, only 3% will ever develop distant metastases. Hence, adaptation to the lymph nodes by metastasizing thyroid carcinoma cells does not empower them to colonize other tissues in the body. (2) Similarly, duodenal carcinoid tumors greater than 1 cm in diameter (containing $>10^9$ cells) have a high rate of lymph node metastasis, yet they rarely proceed to metastasize to the liver, which is the common site of metastasis of the tumors that arise in the nearby colon. (3) Cancer cells isolated from human lymph node metastases have been found, after injection into the venous system of mice, to grow preferentially in the lymph nodes of their mouse hosts rather than in other possible sites of colonization, suggesting specialized adaptations to these sites in humans that persist and influence tissue tropism in mice. (4) Mouse melanoma cells can be selected that metastasize preferentially to the lungs and human breast cancer cells that metastasize either to the lungs or to the bone and continue to do so each time they are implanted in mouse hosts. (5) Cells that formed dormant micrometastases in the liver proliferate vigorously when removed from the liver and implanted subcutaneously, as described in Figure 14.43.

These disparate observations reinforce the notion that the ability to colonize a certain organ represents an acquired specialization. Arguably the most dramatic example of the need for such specialization comes of the clinical practice of introducing peritoneovenous shunts to reduce the ascitic fluid accumulated in patients afflicted with various types of inoperable primary tumors. In such patients, billions of cancer cells arising in peritoneal ascites

are transferred into the general venous circulation but few if any metastases seem to be seeded by these cells (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.12**).

To summarize, it seems that the frequency of metastases to an organ site is governed by two parameters—the frequency with which metastasizing cells are physically trapped in an organ, which is dictated in part by the layout of the circulation (see Figure 14.39), and the ease with which they can thereafter develop specialized adaptations that allow them to thrive in the microenvironment of that organ. Aside from metastases to the liver from the gut and pancreas, the layout of the circulation appears to represent a minor factor in governing the sites of metastasis formation.

There are also indications that tissues that are normally not hospitable sites for colonization may become so through specific pathological processes, such as localized wounding (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.13**). This suggests that areas of chronic inflammation within the body of a cancer patient may occasionally create congenial environments for metastasizing cancer cells, simply because they provide a spectrum of mitogenic and trophic signals, as discussed in Chapter 13. Such essential preconditions for metastatic seeding may explain why the microenvironment of the fully normal contralateral breast of a breast cancer patient is rarely the site of metastatic seeding, simply because it is not in a physiological state, such as one of inflammation, that is a key ingredient for effective colonization (**Sidebar 14.8**).

Sidebar 14.8 Contralateral metastases are relatively rare

Possibly the greatest embarrassment for the seed-and-soil hypothesis comes from its failure to explain the rarity of contralateral metastases. For example, cancer cells disseminated from a primary tumor in one breast should find that the contralateral breast provides the most hospitable environment for colonization by these cells. In fact, only about 2% of breast cancer cases result in contralateral metastases, comparable to the frequency of tumors in the breast that arise as metastases of primary tumors located elsewhere in the body. Similarly, primary kidney cancers metastasize infrequently to contralateral kidneys. These behaviors are clearly incompatible with the simplest version of the seed-and-soil hypothesis and

require explanation. One possibility is that, in addition to landing in an intrinsically compatible tissue, disseminating cancer cells prefer to take root in a tissue that has an activated stroma, such as is seen in sites of chronic inflammation or wound healing (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 14.13**).

Such metastasis to areas of wounding and inflammation may explain a phenomenon first described in 2009—tumor self-seeding. Circulating tumor cells (CTCs) released by an initially formed macroscopic metastasis may find that the most congenial tissue microenvironment to colonize is the stroma of the corresponding primary tumor. On the one hand, the reactive stroma of the primary tumor (see Section 13.3) would seem to provide the factors that are highly supportive of the survival and proliferation of many types of cancer cells. On the other, these CTCs do not need to undergo the adaptive changes that seem to be required when cancer cells arising in one organ attempt to colonize a different organ; here these traveling cells are returning to familiar territory.

Tumor self-seeding also holds implications for the genetic makeup of the primary tumor: if cancer cells undergo adaptive genetic and epigenetic changes in distant sites of metastasis in order to colonize those sites, secondary metastatic showers of cells released by those distant tumors (see Sidebar 14.7) may carry these genetic and epigenetic changes *back* to a primary tumor, causing its cells to increasingly exhibit the genotypic and phenotypic alterations developed elsewhere in the body!

One interesting and still-unresolved question involves the timing of metastatic dissemination: When during the course of primary tumor progression do cells begin to disperse to distant sites in which they eventually form metastases (**Sidebar 14.9**)?

Sidebar 14.9 Some cancer cells leave home early

Embedded in the discussions in this chapter is the notion that multi-step tumor progression occurs in the primary tumor site, and that only after cancer cells in these tumors have evolved to a certain state of aggressiveness do they begin to disseminate and attempt to found metastatic

colonies. In fact, clinical observations have demonstrated the presence of disseminated tumor cells in certain organs, such as the bone marrow, long before primary tumor progression has generated aggressive tumor cells. (In the case of carcinomas, these observations may one day be explained by the activation of EMT programs in the cells of relatively benign, early-stage tumors.)

This early dispersal suggests that once relatively early-stage cancer cells have settled in distant tissues, they may evolve within those tissues through the later steps of multi-step tumor progression (see Chapter 11). Accordingly, such parallel progression may occur at a great distance from and independently of the multi-step progression occurring in the primary tumor. If validated, this would force a fundamental rethinking of how multi-step tumor progression usually proceeds.

This model is encumbered, however, by certain realities if only because these early-disseminating cells are doubly handicapped: like their late-stage counterparts, they are poorly adapted, at the moment of their arrival, to proliferate in the foreign tissues in which they have landed. In addition, by definition, they lack the suite of mutations (for example, those affecting oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes) needed to proliferate vigorously wherever they land (see Sections 11.8 and 11.9). Because the genetic and epigenetic diversification of tumor cells (which is critical to tissue adaptation via multi-step cellular evolution) would seem to require active cell proliferation, these dual impediments to proliferation may well dictate that these dispersed cells represent dead ends, remaining as dormant micrometastases and undergoing slow, progressive attrition.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

contralateral
: Referring to the opposite side of the body of a bilaterally symmetrical organism.

tumor self-seeding
: Process whereby circulating tumor cells originating in a primary tumor or in its derived metastases return to the primary tumor and seed populations of cells within that tumor.

parallel progression
: Process whereby cancer cells advance through multi-step tumor progression at sites distant from and independently of the primary tumor. *See also* **primary tumor**.

OceanofPDF.com

14.13 An example of extreme metastatic specialization: metastasis to bone requires the subversion of osteoblasts and osteoclasts

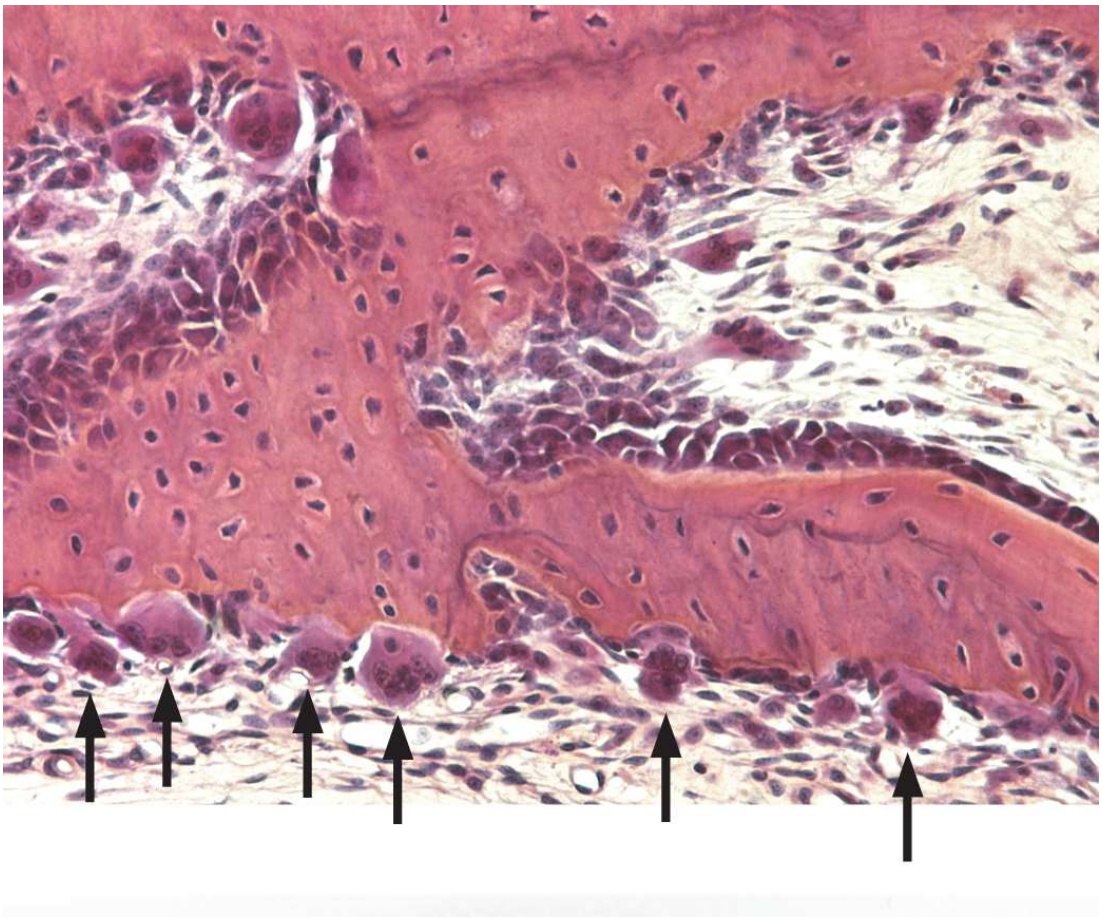
The adaptations that circulating tumor cells must make in order to succeed in colonizing various tissues have been studied in a variety of destination sites. Arguably the best understood of these concerns the formation of metastases in the microenvironment of the bone marrow and surrounding mineralized bone. Indeed, the development of bony metastases represents one instance in which we understand in extraordinary detail the biochemical and biological mechanisms that permit metastasized cancer cells to thrive in a specific tissue microenvironment. This fact, on its own, justifies a detailed discussion of osteotropic metastasis. In addition, the current, very detailed understanding of the mechanisms of bony metastasis formation should serve as a model for how comparable processes operating in other sites of cancer metastasis will be elucidated in the future.

Osteotropic metastases also warrant our attention because, as mentioned repeatedly, several of the most common types of cancer occurring in the Western world—carcinomas of the lung, breast, and prostate—show a strong tendency to metastasize to the bone. In fact, patients with advanced breast and prostate cancer almost always develop bone metastases. And in those patients who succumb to these cancers, the bulk of the tumor cells in their bodies at the time of death is often found among the metastases scattered throughout their bones.

We usually think of bone as being a static tissue which, once formed, retains its structure throughout life. The truth is far more interesting. In mammals, about 10% of skeletal bone mass is replaced each year, resulting in an essentially complete replacement over the course of a decade. This continuous remodeling enables the bones to respond to mechanical stresses by compensatory reinforcing of stressed regions. For example, the bones of the legs are continuously being remodeled in response to the weight-bearing signals that different portions of each leg bone receive.

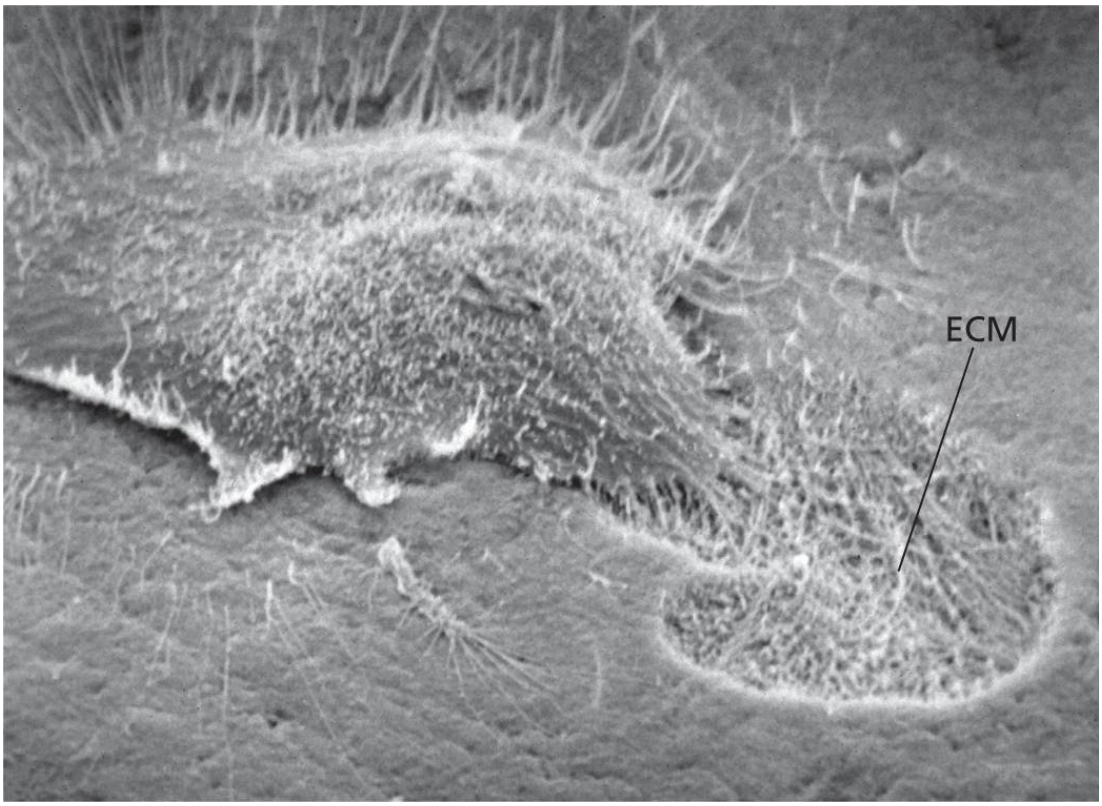
The turnover of bone is the work of osteoclasts, which break down mineralized bone, and of osteoblasts, which reconstruct it. The osteoclasts function first to demineralize

the bone (by dissolving its calcium phosphate crystals) and then to degrade the now-exposed extracellular matrix, which previously formed the organic scaffolding for the calcium phosphate crystals (the process together being termed resorption; **Figure 14.45**). Osteoblasts move in soon after the osteoclasts have completed their work in order to carry out reconstruction, which involves both the assembly of new ECM and the deposition of calcium phosphate crystals in the interstices of this matrix. As can be deduced from this description, the two cell types normally work in close coordination.



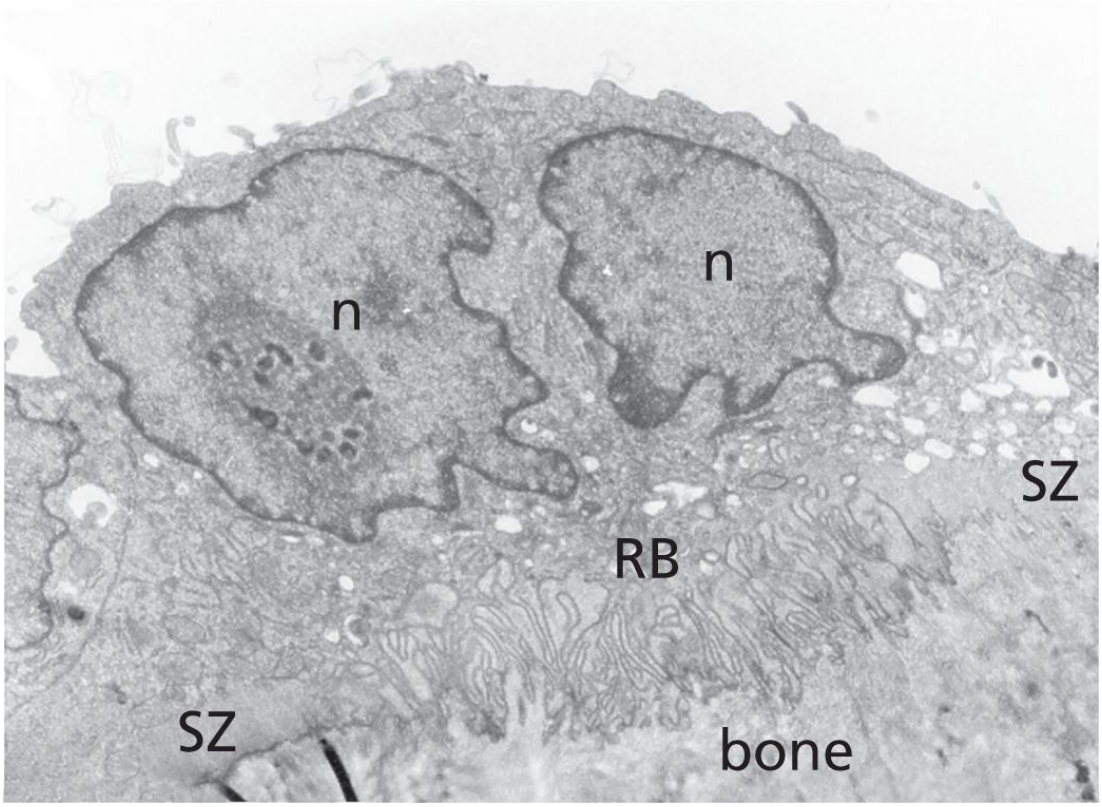
A histology image of dark pink tissue surrounded by lighter tissue. Near the bottom of the image, a series of purple nodules straddle the horizontal boundary between the two tissue types.

(A)



An electron micrograph of a flat, hairy cell making its way across a flat surface. Behind the trailing edge of the cell, a portion of the flat surface features a large indentation in which the fibrous character of the surface material is revealed. This is labeled E C M.

(B)



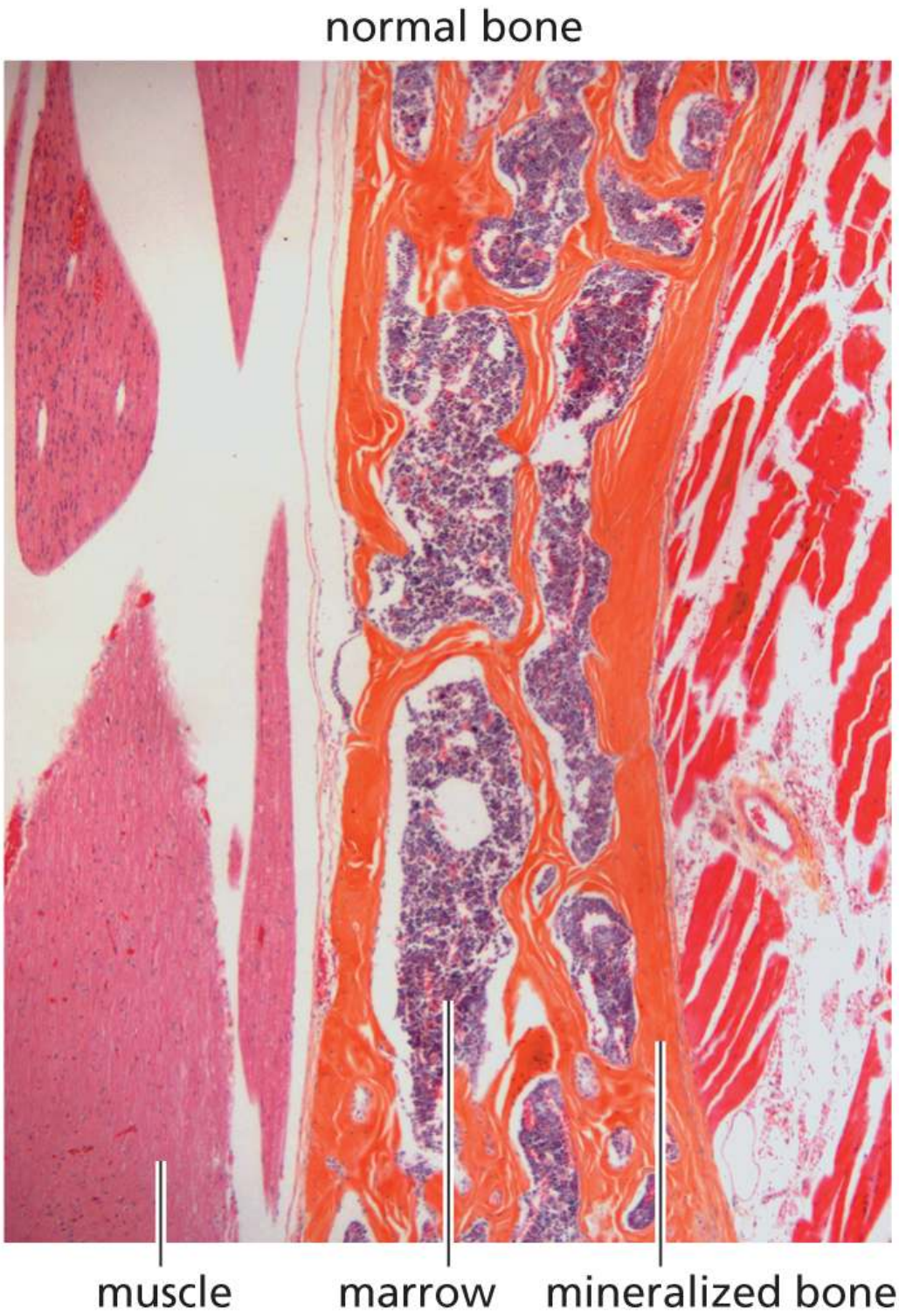
A cross section of a cell attached to a bone surface. The cell contains two large, irregular structures labeled n. The contact surface between the cell and the bone, labeled R B, is highly ruffled, so that cell and bone are intertwined. To the left and right of this ruffled border are areas labeled S Z.

(C)

Figure 14.45 Bone degradation by osteoclasts The degradation of bone, often termed *resorption*, depends on the complex actions of osteoclasts—large multinucleated cells deriving from the monocyte lineage that also generates macrophages. (A) This light micrograph shows osteoclasts (*purple*, *arrows*) excavating small pits in the surface of a mouse jawbone (*pink*). (B) At far higher magnification, this scanning electron micrograph shows a cat osteoclast that has excavated a shallow pit in the surface of mineralized bone. The calcium apatite crystals in the bone have been dissolved away by acid secreted by the osteoclast, revealing the complex meshwork of collagen-rich extracellular matrix (ECM) at the bottom of the pit. Associated with this ECM are mitogens and survival factors that become available to cancer cells after osteoclasts subsequently break down the ECM. (C) This transmission electron micrograph reveals at even higher magnification the details of how osteoclasts resorb bone. This section through an osteoclast (with multiple nuclei, n, *above*) and underlying bone (*below*) reveals the osteoclast's complex ruffled border (RB), which secretes protons to dissolve the

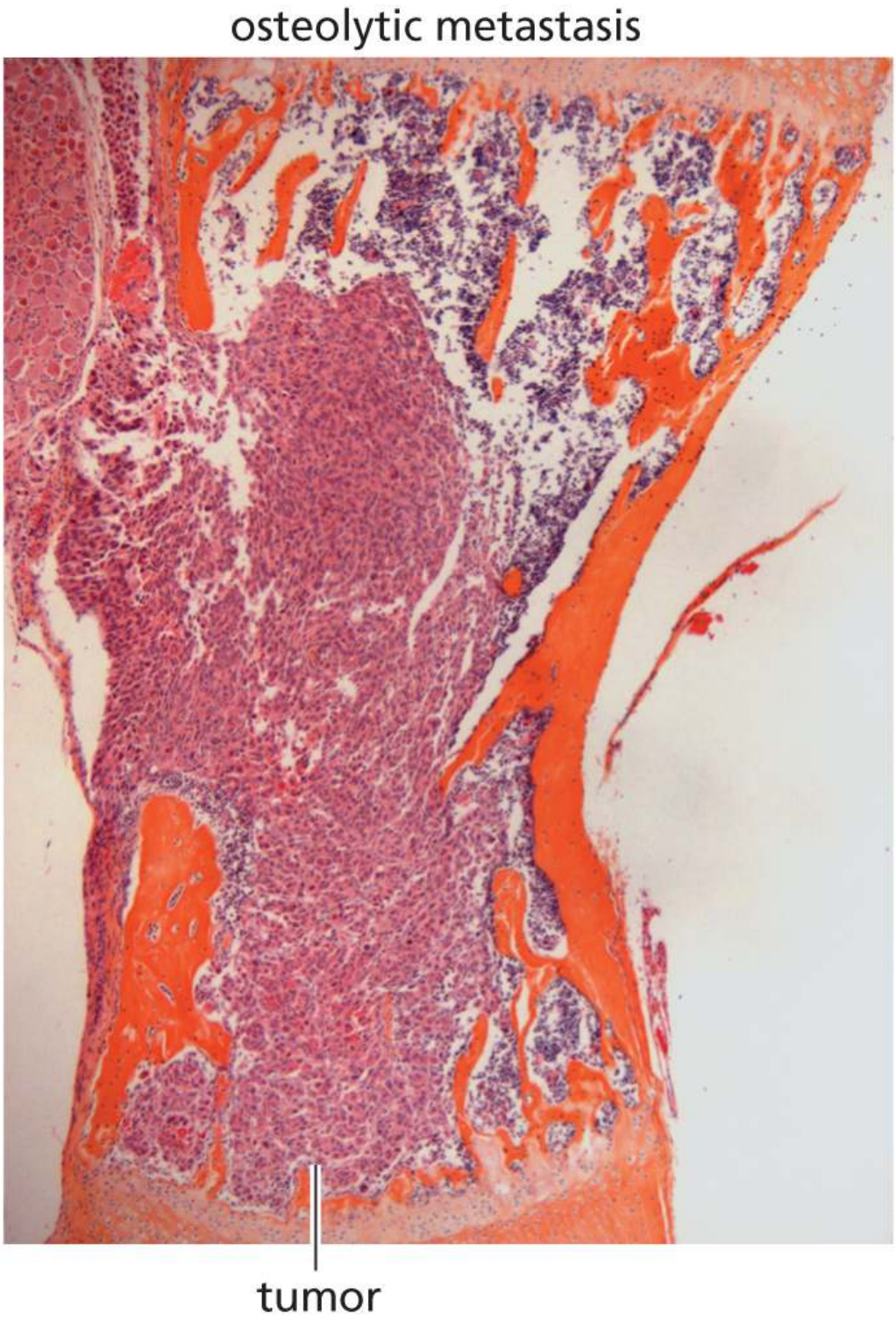
mineral component of the bone and acid proteases to degrade the collagen-rich extracellular matrix that is exposed following demineralization. Surrounding this area of contact is a circular sealing zone (SZ) containing substantial amounts of filamentous actin, which functions as a gasket to confine these secretions to a small localized interstitial area between the osteoclast and bone. (A, courtesy of T.R. Arnett. B, from T.R. Arnett and D.W. Dempster, *Endocrinology* 119:199–124, 1986. With permission from Oxford University Press. C, from H. Zhao, T. Laitala-Leinonen, V. Parikka et al., *J. Biol. Chem*. 276:39295–39302, 2001. © 2001 ASBMB. This article is available under a Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY 4.0) license.)

Most kinds of metastasizing cancer cells are, on their own, incapable of remodeling bone structure. Instead, they manipulate and exploit these two types of cells normally present in the bone. Thus, breast cancer cells preferentially activate the osteoclasts, resulting in osteolytic metastases—literally, metastases that dissolve bone. Prostate cancer cells tend, on the other hand, to activate osteoblasts, yielding osteoblastic lesions, in which immature mineralized bone (sometimes termed osteoid) actually accumulates in the vicinity of the metastases (**Figure 14.46**).



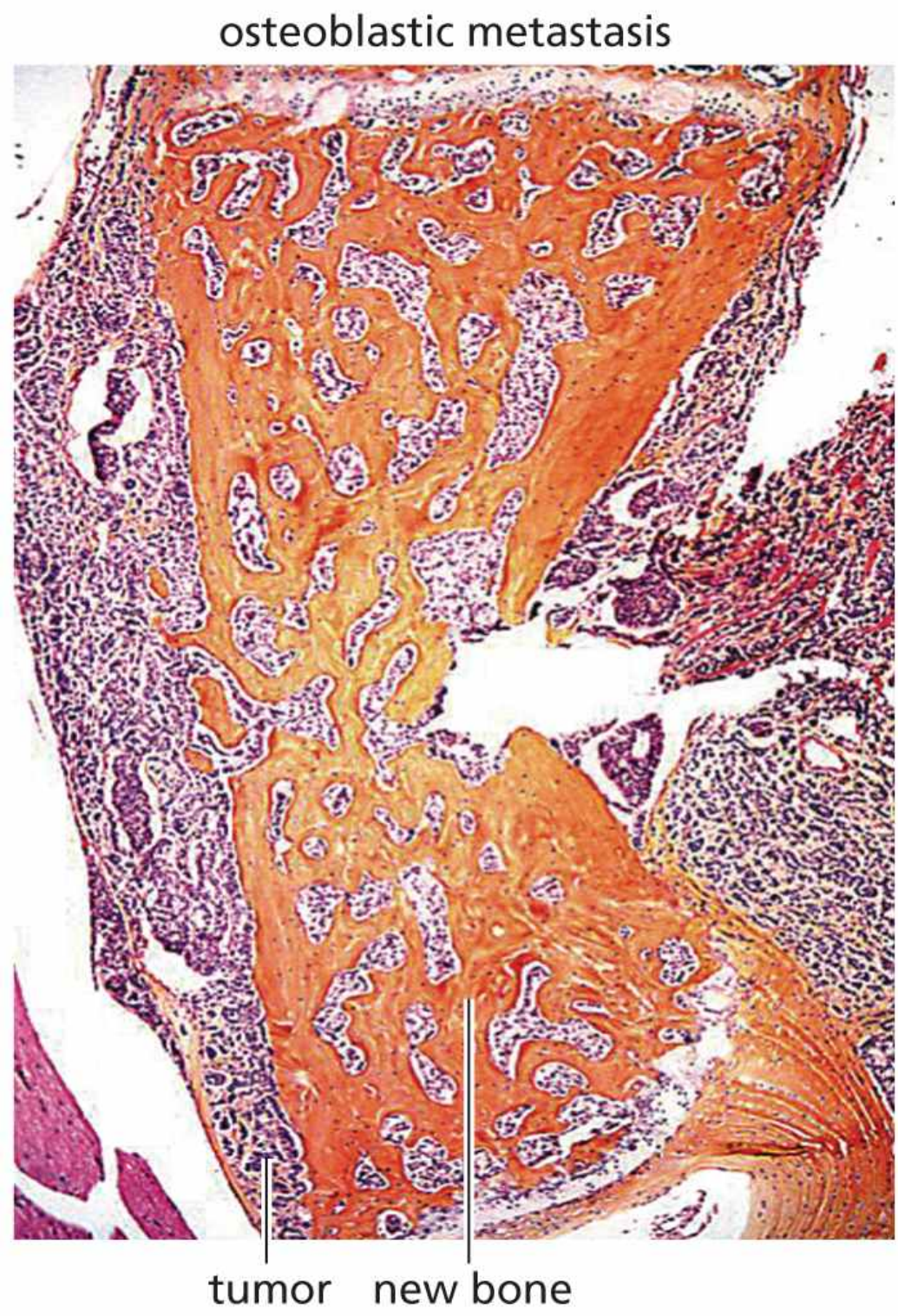
A color micrograph of normal bone in cross section. On the left, muscle tissue appears as pink. In the middle, bone marrow appears a purple, with a spongy texture. Veins of mineralized bone, appearing as orange, surround the marrow and run through it.

(A)



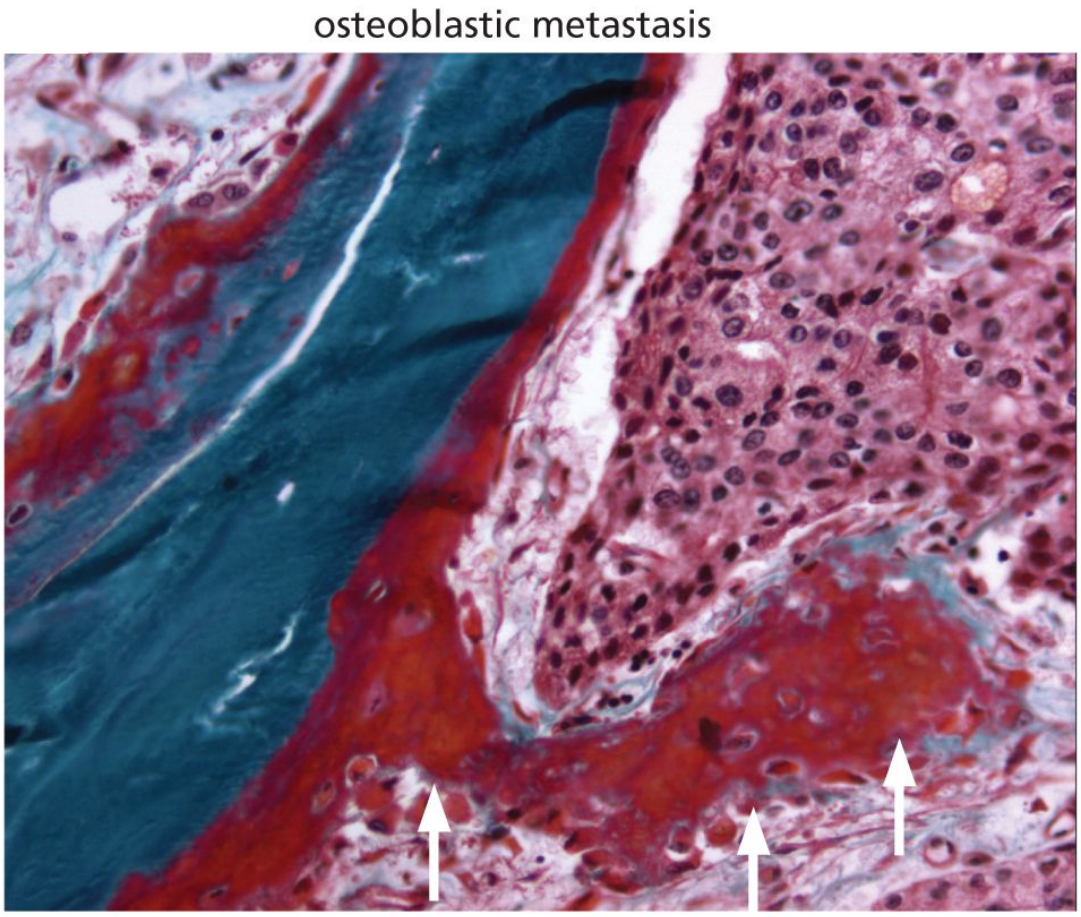
A color micrograph of bone with osteolytic metastasis. There is more marrow-like tissue, except that a large portion of it, labeled tumor, is dense and lighter

in color. This tissue and the darker marrow tissue are still partly surrounded by orange mineralized bone, but in the left part of the image, the tumor appears to have eroded the bone and broken through it.
(B)



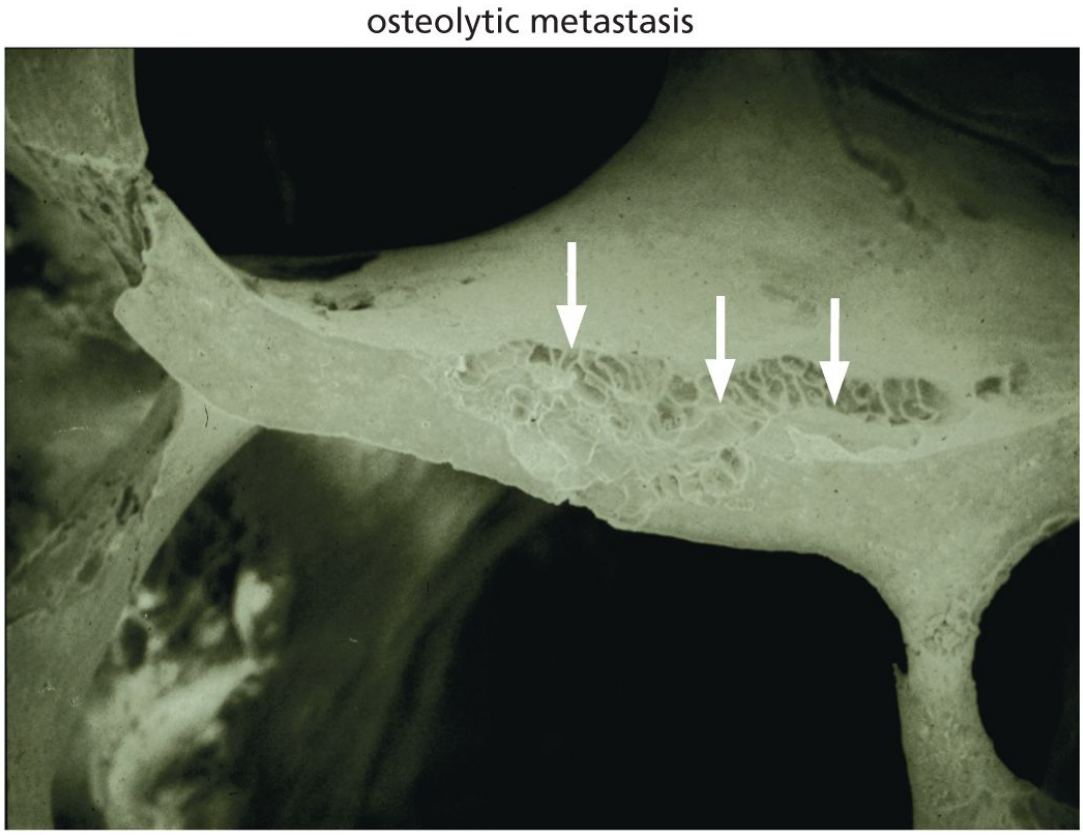
A color micrograph of bone with osteoblastic metastasis. Down the middle of the image is a wide, orange band of thick, porous mineralized bone. Spongy purple tissue on either side represents tumor.

(C)



A histology stain image in which normal bone appears as dark teal green and surrounding prostate cancer tissue appears as pink with dark purple nuclei. Surrounding the teal bone is a sheath of reddish purple that has grown a hornlike protrusion, which has pushed rightward into the prostate cancer tissue.

(D)



A scanning electron micrograph showing a location where healthy bone has been made thin and porous by something eating away at the bone matrix.

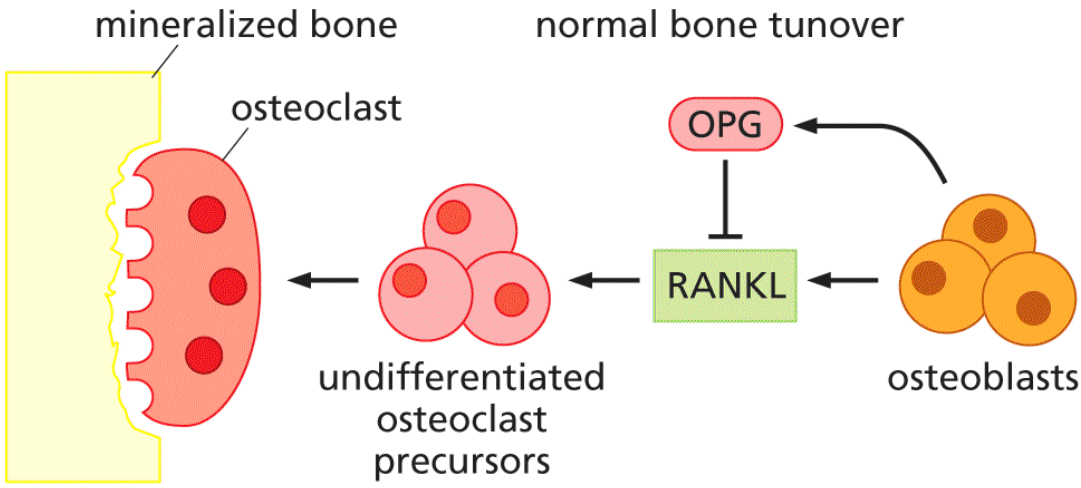
(E)

Figure 14.46 Osteolytic and osteoblastic metastases The first three of these micrographs present sections of mouse vertebrae and femurs in which the mineralized bone (*orange*), surrounding muscle (*bright red*), and bone marrow (*dark purple*) are clearly delineated. (A) This vertebra of a control mouse injected only with buffer is seen to be composed of extensive marrow with ribbons of mineralized bone running through the marrow. (B) In a mouse bearing a human breast cancer cell line (MDA-MB-231) that creates osteolytic lesions, much of the mineralized bone is seen to be missing, and the marrow has been displaced by tumor cells (*dark red*). (C) In a mouse bearing a human breast cancer cell line (ZR-75-1) that creates osteoblastic lesions, much of the marrow space is now filled with mineralized bone (*orange*) with tumor masses evident to the *left* and *right.* (D) In the iliac crest of the pelvis of a prostate cancer patient, the native bone (*dark green-blue*) can be readily resolved from the newly synthesized, still-poorly mineralized osteoblastic lesion (*purple*), which is sometimes termed osteoid. The osteoid is protruding into a mass of metastatic prostate cancer cells (*dark purple nuclei*). (E) A scanning electron micrograph reveals how devastating

the osteolytic lesions (*arrows*) can be in terms of compromising bone structure in a patient with metastatic osteolytic lesions created by osteoclasts. (A–C, from J.J. Yin, K.S. Mohammad, S.M. Käkonen et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:10954–10959, 2003. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. D, courtesy of C. Morrissey and R.L.Vessella. E, courtesy of G.R. Mundy.)

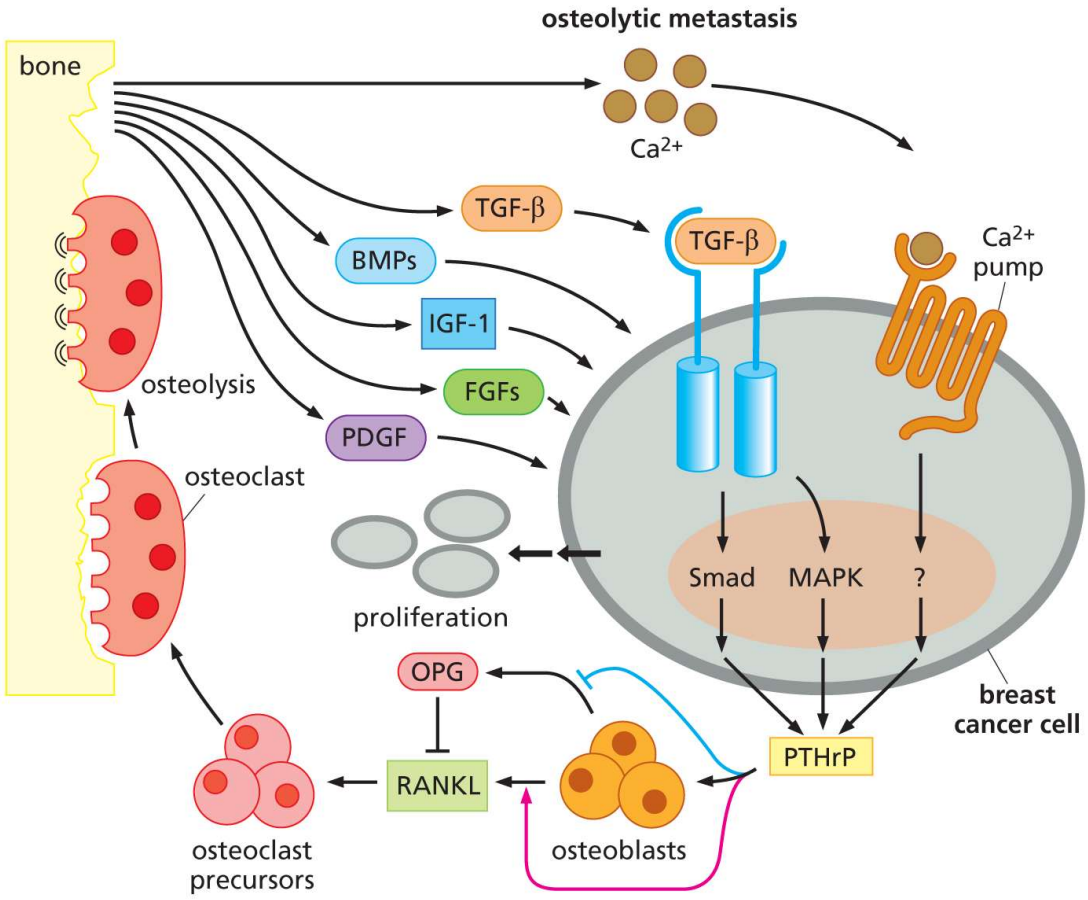
In fact, these two behaviors represent the extremes of a continuum, since both types of cancers activate both osteoblasts and osteoclasts to a greater or lesser extent. For example, while osteolytic metastases predominate in advanced breast cancer patients, as many as one-quarter of these women also have clearly defined osteoblastic lesions in their bones. Similarly, prostate carcinomas also generate occasional osteolytic metastases scattered among the many osteoblastic growths spawned by these tumors. One exception to this rule of a mingling of both types of bone metastases is provided by myeloma cells (tumors of the B-cell, antibody-secreting lineage), which create exclusively osteolytic lesions.

The normally operative close coordination between osteoblasts and osteoclasts is mediated, at least in part, by the exchange of growth factor signals. An important inducer of osteoclast differentiation is RANK (receptor activator of NF-κB) ligand, or simply RANKL. RANKL is produced by and displayed on the surface of osteoblasts. When an osteoclast precursor displaying the RANK receptor comes into contact with an osteoblast and its cell surface RANKL molecules, this results in activation of the RANK receptors of the osteoclast precursor and its maturation into a functional osteoclast (**Figure 14.47A**). At the same time, osteoblasts produce a soluble decoy receptor, termed osteoprotegerin (OPG), which can bind RANKL and ambush it before it succeeds in activating the RANK receptor on the surface of osteoclast precursors. The result is a blockage of the RANKL–RANK signaling and the inhibition of osteoclast maturation. Hence, the balance between the RANKL (stimulatory) and OPG (inhibitory) signals displayed by osteoblasts determines the state of activation of osteoclasts (Figure 14.47A and B). This dynamic interaction of osteoblasts and osteoclasts provides the background for the actions of cancer cells that metastasize to bones. Their attraction to the bone derives ultimately from the collagenous extracellular matrix that forms the organic scaffolding in which calcium phosphate crystals are deposited (see Figure 14.45B). As it happens, bone ECM is an unusually rich source of the mitogenic and trophic factors that allow several types of carcinoma cells to thrive. Consequently, by provoking the demineralization of bone, cancer cells gain access to the storehouse of factors sequestered in the bone ECM and use them to support their own proliferation and survival.



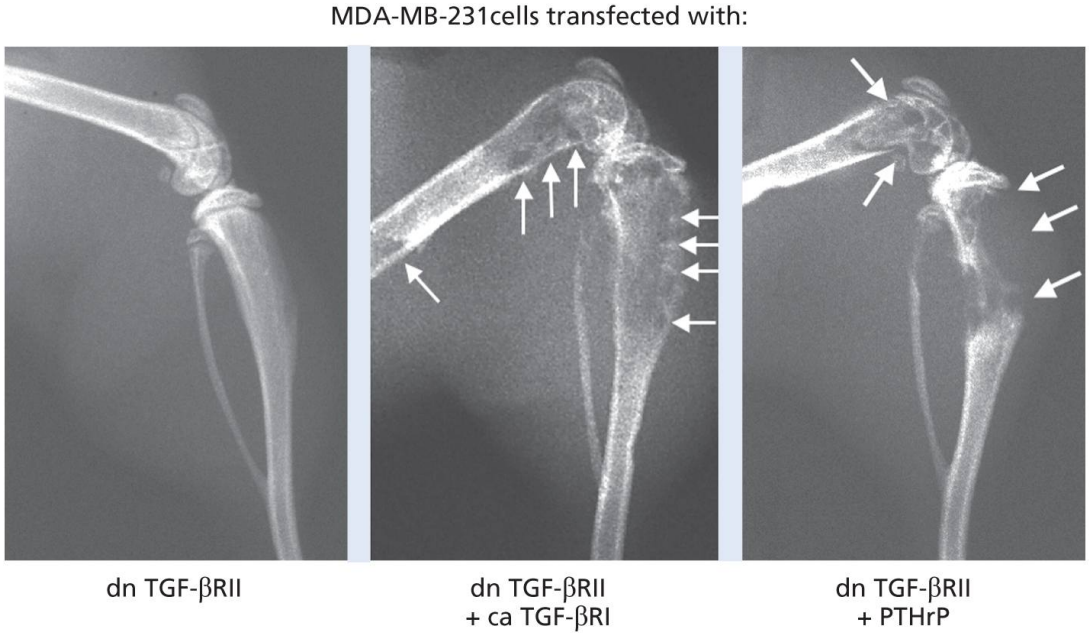
Normal bone turnover. An osteoblast secretes RANKEL, which stimulates undifferentiated osteoclast precursors to develop into osteoclasts, one of which is shown dissolving mineralized bone. The osteoblast also secretes O P G, which inhibits the osteoclast-promoting action of RANKEL.

(A)



A breast cancer cell’s manipulation of the balance of RANKEL and O P G produced by osteoblasts. The cancer cell releases P T H r P, which amplifies an osteoblast’s RANKEL production and inhibits its O P G production, causing increased production of osteoclasts that dissolve bone. The dissolved bone release calcium ions and various proteins that stimulate the cancer cells to release more P T H r P and also to proliferate.

(B)



A series of three X-rays of mice limbs in which M D A-M B-2 3 1 cells have been transfected with, respectively, d n T G F-beta R 2, dn T G F-beta R 2 plus c a T G F-beta R 1, and d n T G F-beta R 2 plus P T H r P. In the first image, no bone damage is visible, in the second, some erosion is visible, and in the third, dramatic erosion is visible.

(C)

Figure 14.47 Osteoblasts vs. osteoclasts (A) The physiological balance between normal bone formation and resorption is created by signaling between osteoblasts, which assemble bone, and osteoclasts, which dissolve it. In an ongoing cycle, osteoclasts remove mineralized bone by covering and sealing off a section of bone and secreting digestive acid into the bone below them (see Figure 14.45C); this is followed by osteoblastic filling of resulting cavities with new bone. The osteoblasts release RANKL, which acts via the RANK receptor (*not shown*) displayed by osteoclast precursors to induce the latter to mature into functional osteoclasts. The osteoblasts may also secrete osteoprotegerin (OPG), which acts as

a *decoy receptor* to ambush RANKL before it has had a chance to activate osteoclast precursors. Hence, the balance between RANKL and OPG determines the net rate of bone growth or loss. (B) Release by a breast cancer cell (*right, gray*) of PTHrP (parathyroid hormone–related peptide, *below*) causes nearby osteoblasts to change the mix of signals that they release: they increase RANKL synthesis (*red arrow*) and decrease OPG synthesis (*blue line*), the result being RANKL-induced maturation of osteoclast precursors into functional osteoclasts. The latter undertake osteolysis, which causes bone demineralization, exposes the extracellular matrix within the bone (see Figure 14.45B), and results in liberation of TGF-β, Ca^{2+}, BMPs, PDGF, FGFs, and IGF-1 (*upper left and middle*). IGF-1 and Ca^{2+} enable cancer cell proliferation and survival, and the additional presence of TGF-β induces the cancer cell to release more PTHrP, resulting in a self-sustaining positive-feedback loop that has been termed the “vicious cycle” of osteolytic metastasis. (C) Evidence supporting the vicious cycle model of osteolytic metastasis comes in part from experiments involving the use of MDA-MB-231 cells, a line of human breast cancer cells that show a high tendency to produce osteolytic metastases (see Figure 14.46B). The ability of these cells to do so is gauged here by X-ray analyses of the hind limbs of mice that have borne MDA-MB-231 tumor xenografts. When a dominant-negative type II TGF-β receptor (dn TGF-βRII) expression construct is introduced into these cancer cells, this mutant protein blocks their ability to respond to TGF-β, specifically the TGF-β that would otherwise be liberated from the extracellular matrix of the osteolytic lesions that they may have created. Without TGF-β stimulation, these cancer cells fail to form osteolytic metastases (*left panel*). However, if this inability to respond to TGF-β is overridden by introducing additionally into these cells an expression construct specifying a constitutively active type I TGF-β receptor (ca TGF-βRI), then the powers of these breast cancer cells to induce osteolytic lesions are restored (*arrows, center panel*). This observation, on its own, does not indicate precisely how the ca TGF-βRI succeeds in restoring the osteolytic activity to these cells. An explanation comes from an experiment in which a vector causing PTHrP expression (instead of ca TGF-βRI expression) is introduced into the cells expressing the dn TGF-βRII, causing them to regain the ability to form osteolytic metastases (*arrows, right panel*). This is compatible with the notion that PTHrP functions downstream of TGF-β signaling and that the latter is no longer important for osteolysis if PTHrP is expressed constitutively, i.e., is no longer under the control of TGF-β. (B, from G.R. Mundy, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2:584–593, 2002. With permission from Nature. C, from J.J. Yin, K. Selander, J.M. Chirgwin et al., *J. Clin. Invest*. 103:197–206, 1999. With permission from American Society for Clinical Investigation.)

Metastasizing cancer cells reach the bone through the vessels feeding the marrow. Once there, they adhere to specialized stromal cells coating the surfaces of the bone facing the marrow. Metastasizing breast cancer cells, upon arrival in bone, revert to a behavior characteristic of their normal precursors (mammary epithelial cells, MECs). During lactation, when producing milk, MECs forming the small sacs (alveoli) of the mammary gland release parathyroid hormone–related peptide (PTHrP). PTHrP then travels from the breast through the circulation to the bones, where it triggers a chain of events that encourages the dissolution of bone minerals by osteoclasts. This results in the mobilization of calcium ions, which travel back via the circulation to the mammary gland, where they are incorporated into the milk by the MECs.

This normal calcium-mobilizing mechanism is subverted by metastasizing breast cancer cells that become established in bones (see Figure 14.47B). Having attached to the stromal cells covering the surfaces of mineralized bone, the breast cancer cells, reverting to the habit of normal MECs, release PTHrP. The PTHrP, in turn, impinges directly on its receptors displayed by osteoblasts, causing these cells to release RANKL. RANKL then induces the differentiation of osteoclast precursors into active osteoclasts. The activated osteoclasts degrade nearby mineralized bone, thereby liberating calcium ions together with the rich supply of growth factors attached to the ECM of the bone.

The growth factors liberated from the bone ECM, including PDGF, bone morphogenetic proteins (BMPs), fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), and TGF-β, fuel the further growth of the breast cancer cells, inducing them to secrete more PTHrP. This PTHrP engenders more osteolysis by the osteoclasts, leading to a self-perpetuating signaling system that has been called a "vicious cycle" (see Figure 14.47B) in which TGF-β also plays a key role (**Sidebar 14.10**).

Sidebar 14.10 TGF-β and PTHrP play pivotal roles in the vicious cycle of breast cancer osteolytic metastases

Breast cancer cells that have metastasized to the bone produce far more parathyroid hormone-related peptide (PTHrP) than do others in the same animal that have not because certain growth factors liberated from the bone ECM stimulate PTHrP production by the metastatic cancer cells. The most important of these bone-derived factors is TGF-β, as illustrated by some simple experiments. In one of these, a dominant-negative TGF-β receptor (which blocks a cell's ability to respond to TGF-β) is expressed in the cancer cells; this blocks the ability of these cells to drive osteolytic metastases in the bone; forced expression of PTHrP in these cancer cells reverses this effect (see Figure 14.47C).

In another experiment, breast cancer cells that usually lack the ability to metastasize to bone and fail to secrete TGF-β can be forced (through the use of an expression vector) to secrete TGF-β. The latter then acts in an autocrine fashion to stimulate these cells to produce their own PTHrP, allowing them to form large numbers of bone metastases. Finally, antibodies that bind and neutralize PTHrP are able to block the ability of human breast cancer cells to generate osteolytic lesions in mice. These are some of the disparate observations that have inspired the "vicious cycle" model depicted in Figure 14.47B.

The central role of osteoclasts in this cycle suggests possible points of therapeutic intervention. One highly effective strategy depends on drugs belonging to the class of bisphosphonates, which are taken orally and become adsorbed to the apatite crystals that constitute the mineral portion of bone; the drug molecules can persist there for extended periods of time, as long as a decade or more. When bisphosphonate-containing bone is eventually dissolved by osteoclasts, the latter are poisoned by the liberated bisphosphonates, leading to their apoptosis. Hence, bisphosphonates are useful for reducing the burden of osteolytic lesions in patients with various types of metastatic cancer.

When immunocompromised mice carrying human breast cancer cells are treated with bisphosphonates, the number of osteolytic lesions is reduced and, at the same time, the total burden of tumor cells in these animals is decreased. This observation provides additional indication that late in tumor progression, the proliferation of these breast cancer cells depends greatly on osteolysis and the resulting liberation of growth factors from dissolved bone; similar observations have been made in human breast cancer patients treated with bisphosphonates. For example, a clinical study reported in 2011 that premenopausal women who developed breast cancer and were treated with zoledronic acid—a bisphosphonate—experienced a 37% increase in overall survival (relative to those who did not receive this treatment) over a period of seven years. Such clinical responses further reinforce the notion that many breast cancer relapses in patients (1) derive from metastatic deposits in the marrow and (2) depend on the ability of disseminated metastatic cells to generate mitogens by dissolving bone. Moreover, bisphosphonate therapy can provide additional benefits to patients suffering from metastatic breast cancer by reducing the hypercalcemia—pathologically high concentration of calcium in the circulation—stemming from the large-scale resorption of mineralized bone. Hypercalcemia usually signals the final stages of malignant disease and causes gastrointestinal, urinary tract, cardiovascular, and neuropsychiatric problems.

Figure 14.47B predicts that the vicious cycle driving osteolytic metastases should be slowed down or even blocked by therapeutic treatment with osteoprotegerin (OPG). In fact, a derivative of OPG has been found to be as effective as a widely used

bisphosphonate in slowing down bone resorption in patients with metastatic breast cancer. However, clinical development of this OPG derivative was eventually discontinued, having been displaced by a slightly more effective treatment—a monoclonal antibody (denosumab) that binds and neutralizes RANKL. A phase III clinical trial revealed that denosumab was more effective than bisphosphonates in delaying the onset of serious skeletal-related events in patients with metastatic breast disease, while having comparable efficacy in delaying disease progression.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

osteoclast
: Cell type of monocyte origin that functions to degrade and demineralize already-assembled bone.

osteoblast
: Mesenchymal cell type related to fibroblasts that constructs mineralized bone through the deposition of a collagenous matrix and apatite crystals.

demineralize
: To dissolve the inorganic apatite (i.e., calcium phosphate) component, notably of bone.

resorption
: The osteoclast-mediated process of dissolving mineralized bone with attendant mobilization of calcium into the circulation.

osteolytic
: Referring to a bone lesion that involves localized dissolution of mineralized bone usually driven by the localized actions of osteoclasts. *See also* **osteoblastic**.

osteoblastic
: Referring to a class of bone lesions that involve localized increases in the amount of mineralized bone. *See also* **osteolytic**.

osteoid
: The extracellular matrix that forms during bone formation prior to mineralization.

decoy receptor
: A nonsignaling protein that binds and sequesters a ligand (e.g., a growth factor), thereby diverting the ligand from binding and activating its functional cognate signaling receptor.

vicious cycle
: Term used to describe the self-perpetuating, complex interactions between disseminated cancer cells, osteoclasts, and osteoblasts that has been used to explain the mechanisms underlying osteolytic metastases.

bisphosphonates
: Class of drugs, characterized by a chemical backbone with the structure P–C–P, that are incorporated into bone apatite and

subsequently become available to poison osteoclasts that may later undertake to dissolve the bone, thereby liberating the previously incorporated toxic bisphosphonates.

hypercalcemia

Presence of elevated concentrations of calcium ions in the blood.

phase III

A clinical trial in which very large numbers (e.g., hundreds to thousands) of patients are exposed to a new drug, given in a randomized fashion with placebo controls, and tested for its efficacy relative to existing approved therapeutic modalities, with the intent of demonstrating statistically significant clinical benefit, usually one greater than existing approved therapies. *Compare* **phase I**, **phase II**.

osteotropism

The trait of cells, notably metastasizing cancer cells, to migrate to and colonize the bone marrow.

alveolus (pl., alveoli)

A small sac within a tissue that is connected to a duct, such as the sacs seen in the lung and in the mammary gland during pregnancy.

OceanofPDF.com

14.14 Occult micrometastases threaten the long-term survival of many cancer patients

Throughout this chapter, we have read repeatedly about the extraordinary inefficiency with which metastases are produced. Some of this metastatic inefficiency is created by the profound difficulties that cancer cells experience as they undertake the initial steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade. Most of those that do manage to reach distant sites and survive in their newfound homes fail to form clinically detectable metastases. The result is the presence of myriad dormant micrometastases seeded throughout the tissues of many cancer patients.

While micrometastases are, with rare exception, unable to expand to form clinically detectable metastases, they do provide clear indication that a primary tumor has seeded cells throughout the body. These micrometastases represent a threat to the long-term survival of cancer patients, if only because some of them may erupt into full-fledged, clinically significant macroscopic metastases years after they become implanted in some distant tissue site. Breast cancers are notorious for yielding relapses one and even two decades after the primary tumor has been removed and the patient has been declared to be free of cancer.

In one study of breast cancer patients, micrometastases were detected by sampling the bone marrow of the iliac crest of the pelvis. About 1% of a population of patients suffering from nonmalignant conditions showed cytokeratin-positive cells (that is, epithelial cells) in their marrow. In contrast, 36% of breast cancer patients carrying tumors of stages I, II, or III had such micrometastases in their marrow. The presence of these micrometastases in the marrow proved to be a highly useful prognostic marker for the risk of relapsing with clinically detectable metastasis (see also Figure 14.42D). Thus, within four years, one-quarter of the marrow-positive patients had died from cancer, whereas only 6% of those lacking

cancer cells in their marrow had died from this disease. Another study found a more than tenfold increased risk of death from breast cancer among those whose marrow carried micrometastases composed of single cells or small clumps of cancer cells.

Colon cancer patients who have undergone resection (surgical excision) of their primary tumor will often appear in the cancer clinic a year or two later with a small number of metastases in their liver but none elsewhere; these can then be removed surgically, often with significant clinical benefit. Once again, micrometastases in the marrow of the pelvis can be scored. About 90% of those who lack these micrometastases are still alive 15 months later, whereas only 60% of those who carry such micrometastases survive to this point.

A procedure used to treat cancer of the esophagus provides yet another insight into metastatic spread. These tumors are often treated surgically, which necessitates the removal of one or more rib segments, from which marrow can be easily flushed. Two independent studies reported that 79% and 88% of these patients, respectively, harbored carcinoma micrometastases in their rib marrow at the time of their surgery. These numbers, which contrast with the approximately 30% of initially diagnosed breast cancer patients bearing micrometastases, correlated with a far grimmer prognosis for patients suffering this type of cancer, with less than half of them surviving more than three years after diagnosis.

The melanoma literature provides equally dramatic testimony of the long-term dangers posed by occult, dormant micrometastases (that is, those that are latent and apparently not growing). In one particularly well-documented case, kidneys were prepared for organ transplantation from the cadaver of a patient who had undergone resection of a small melanoma 16 years earlier. The patient had been followed closely for 15 years after removal of this small primary tumor and had remained symptom-free. However, soon after transplantation, the two recipients of his kidneys (who were immunosuppressed to accommodate the allogeneic kidney grafts) developed aggressive melanomas that were directly traceable to this donor (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.11**).

We still understand relatively little about the mechanisms that prevent dormant micrometastases from erupting into clinically threatening growths long after primary tumor removal. In some instances, one can observe micrometastases growing as cuffs around small vessels; this suggests that they lack their own angiogenic capabilities but are nonetheless able to take limited advantage of host capillaries that happen to be nearby. In most micrometastases found in the marrow, the involved cells lack any indication of cell proliferation markers and thus are in a nongrowing, G_0-like state for extended periods of time (see Figure 14.43), perhaps for months and even years (consider, however, **Sidebar 14.11**). (Because such cells are not proliferating, they may be especially resistant to chemotherapeutic treatment designed to eliminate the residual disease that persists following surgical removal of a primary tumor.)

Sidebar 14.11 Are all micrometastases truly dormant?

The cancer cells borne by many patients with “minimal residual disease” occasionally acquire the ability to colonize a site of dissemination, creating a clinically apparent metastasis and, in turn, a new site from which carcinoma cells can further disseminate. How this occurs depends critically on the state of the disseminated tumor cells (DTCs) in patients with this condition.

The state of metastatic dormancy might be interpreted as one in which the cells are residing in a state of quiescence, that is, out of the active growth-and-division cycle that we encountered in Chapter 8. The alternative is that the cells in such growths are actually in a state of active proliferation, but are unable to drive increases in the size of the micrometastatic deposits, simply because the growth of such deposits is counterbalanced by an equal rate of attrition.

Importantly, a major shift in cell phenotype that is associated with the “awakening” of dormant micrometastases has a low probability of occurring in populations of quiescent cells. Instead, extensive observations made over many years’ time indicate that such major changes happen spontaneously only in *proliferating* cell populations. Hence, in many

patients with minimal residual disease, some clones of micrometastatic cancer cells are likely to be passing through repeated growth-and-division cycles and occasionally spawning variants that have, through some random accident, acquired colonizing ability.

Immune mechanisms may also contribute to suppressing the growth of micrometastases, thereby preventing metastatic disease relapse. This is suggested by the occasionally observed explosive growth of aggressive metastatic tumors in immunosuppressed organ transplant recipients such as the two kidney graft recipients described above. Moreover, the wound-healing response following primary tumor resection may transiently liberate nearby DTCs from immune control, once again enabling their eruption. There is also evidence that localized inflammation in the tissue harboring dormant micrometastases can provoke their awakening and the eruption of rapidly growing metastases. Finally, the possibly critical role of tumor stem cells as founders of macrometastatic colonies may help to explain the inability of most of initially seeded DTCs to generate macroscopic outgrowths (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.14**). Beyond this, relatively little is known about the details of the mechanisms that preclude most micrometastases from successfully colonizing the tissues in which they have landed.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

resection
: Removal by surgical excision.

occult
: Hidden, inapparent.

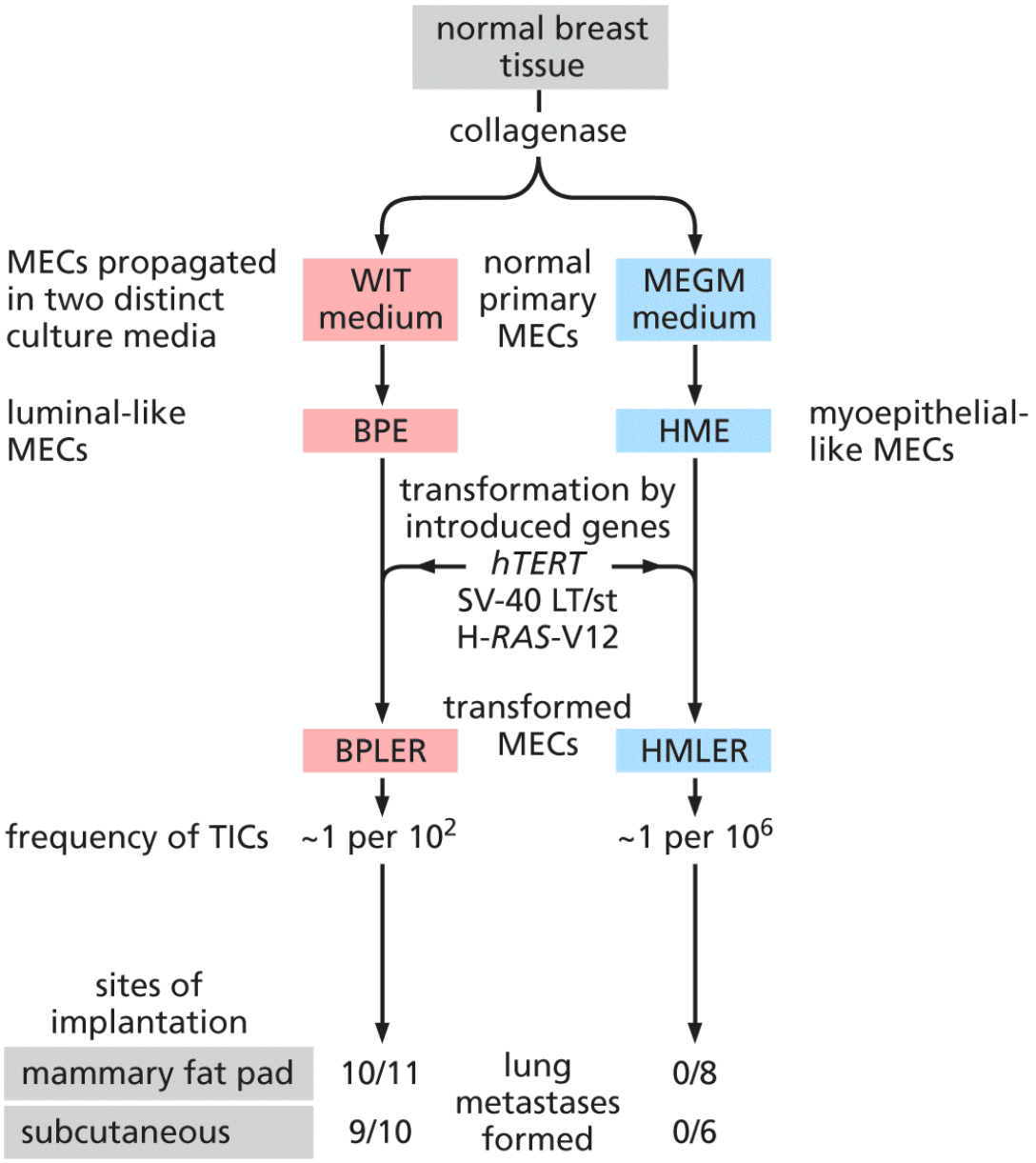
OceanofPDF.com

14.15 Synopsis and prospects

Several major issues have complicated the search for the genetic determinants of aggressive phenotypes of cancer: Are these phenotypes programmed by a small number of pleiotropically acting, master control genes, or do the actions of multiple, independently regulated genes collaborate to create each of these phenotypes? Do these genes undergo mutation during tumor progression, or do they become involved in the late steps of tumor progression through nongenetic, that is, epigenetic mechanisms that control their expression? And how do familiar oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes contribute to invasion and metastasis?

Although many of the genetic elements governing metastasis remain unclear, significant progress is being made in solving another puzzle: Are the cells within a primary human tumor that undertake invasion and metastasis rare variants (among the larger population of tumor cells) that have, through some genetic or epigenetic accident, acquired the ability to execute these steps? Or are all the cancer cells within certain primary tumors equally capable *a priori* of invading and metastasizing (albeit with extraordinarily low efficiency), whereas the great majority of the cancer cells in other tumors lack these abilities?

In fact, such differences in the eventual metastatic behavior of various tumor cell populations may be determined extremely early, even *before* multi-step tumor progression has begun in a tissue: thus, as **Figure 14.48** indicates, the differentiation programs of the normal cells-of-origin can strongly influence the biological behaviors of derived neoplastic descendants and indeed can dominate the actions of any somatically sustained oncogenic alleles. This would suggest that a tendency to eventually metastasize or not is a trait that is shared in common by the neoplastic cells within a primary tumor.

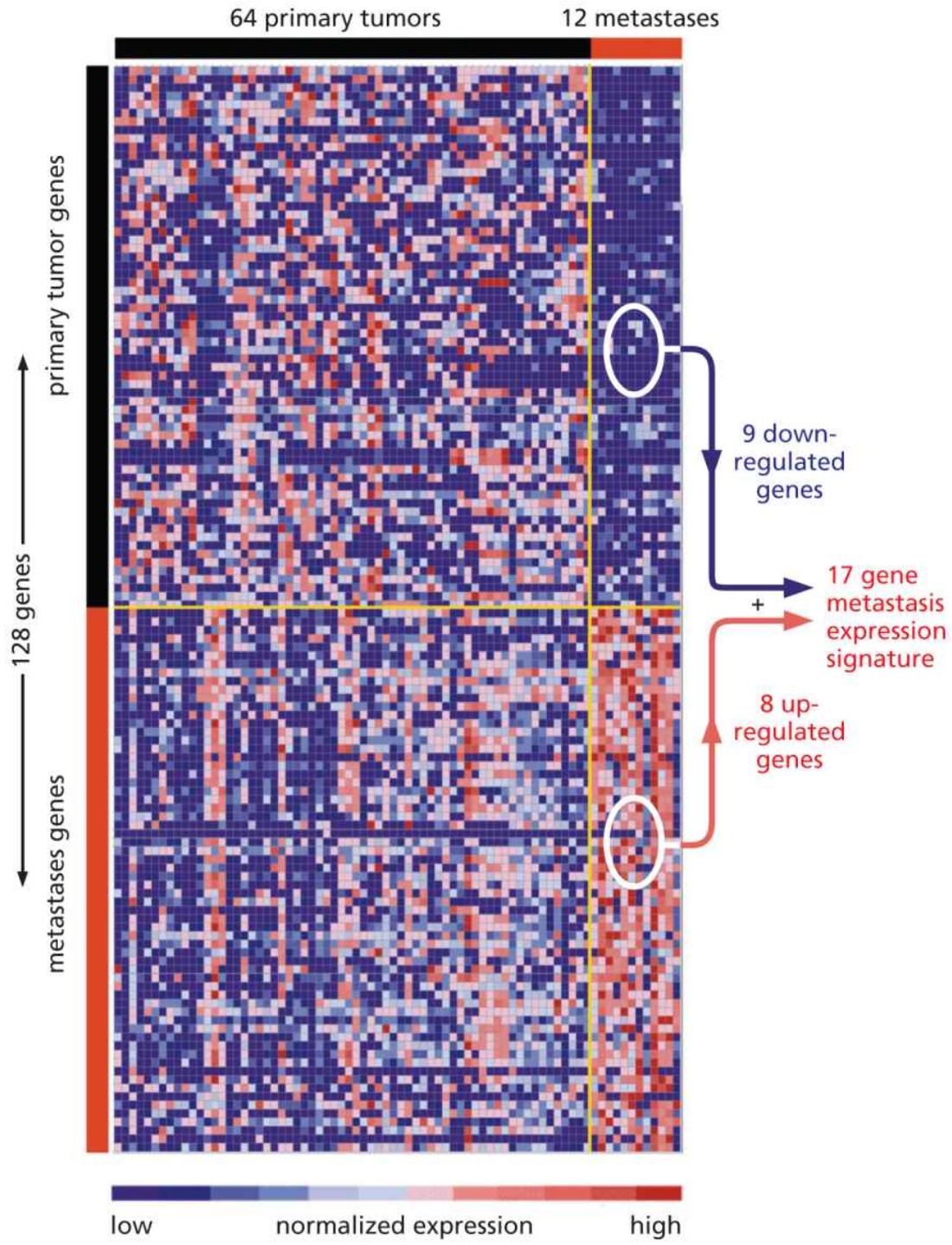


A flowchart showing the course of an experiment. Normal breast tissue is exposed to collagenase to obtain mammary epithelial cells. These are then cultured either in W I T medium to obtain luminal-like cells that express B P E, or myoepithelial-like cells that express H M E. The two types of cells are transformed, respectively, by introduced genes into B P L E R or H M L E R. The frequency of tumor initiating cells is about 1 per 100 in B P L E R and about 1 per 1 million in H M L E R. When these are implanted into mammary fat pads or subcutaneously, the B P L E R cells reliably produced lung metastases whereas the H M L E R cells did not.

Figure 14.48 Influence of cell-of-origin on metastatic propensity The observations to be presented in Figure 14.49 indicate that a substantial proportion of the cells in a primary tumor share a gene expression signature that was acquired relatively early in the course of tumor progression and is coupled with the propensity of the tumor to eventually metastasize. Such acquisition may have derived from the initial somatic mutations that triggered multi-step tumor progression or, even earlier, in the gene expression signature of the preexisting normal cell-of-origin, the latter reflecting its program of differentiation. In the experiment described here, a heterogeneous population of normal human mammary epithelial cells (MECs) explanted directly from a normal mammary gland were propagated *in vitro* in two alternative tissue culture media, which selected for the outgrowth of MEC populations that expressed either a more luminal (BPE) or a more myoepithelial (HME) gene expression pattern and therefore originated from two distinct differentiation lineages in the mammary gland. These cells were then transformed through the successive introduction of an hTERT gene, the SV40 early region (expressing small and large T antigens), and a RAS oncogene (see Figure 11.28), resulting in BPLER and HMLER tumorigenic cells. Although the introduced transforming genes were expressed at comparable levels in the two cell populations, these transformed cells behaved very differently. The concentration of tumor-initiating cells (TICs), also known as cancer stem cells, in the BPLER cell population was 10^4 times higher than in the HMLER cell population. The BPLER cells formed lung metastases following orthotopic implantation (into mammary stromal fat pads; see Figure 14.25C) or implantation into subcutaneous sites (in 10 of 11 and in 9 of 10 implanted mice, respectively), whereas the HMLER cells, implanted in equal numbers in these sites, failed to do so. Because the two cell populations acquired identical sets of oncogenes that were expressed at very similar levels, the only source of their dramatically different behaviors must be associated with the differentiation programs of the normal MECs in each population prior to experimental transformation. By extension, this implies that the differentiation programs of normal cells-of-origin continue to imprint themselves on the behavior of their neoplastic progeny. (From T.A. Ince, A.L. Richardson, G.W. Bell et al., *Cancer Cell* 12:160–170, 2007. With permission from Elsevier.)

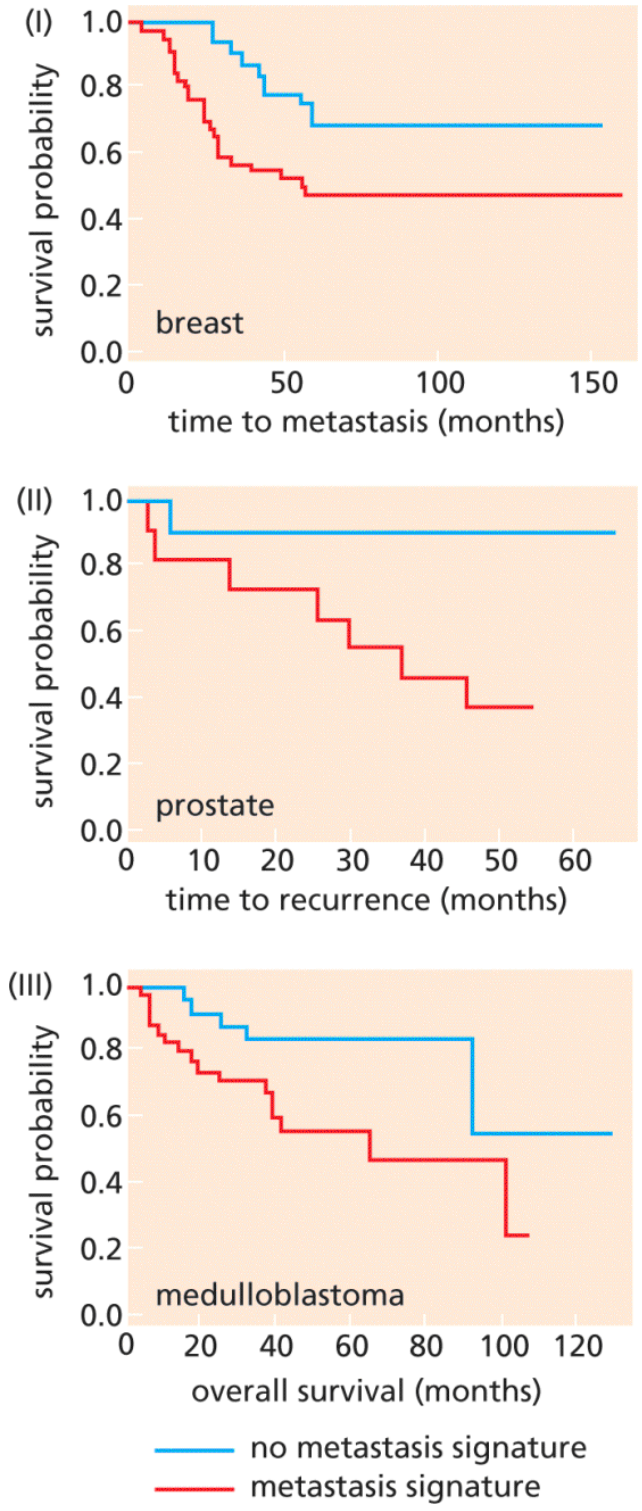
More direct evidence for this scheme (of widespread metastatic competence shared among the cells within a primary tumor) can be found in attempts to predict the metastatic tendencies of primary tumors. Thus, there are multiple examples of cancer types in which the transcriptomes of primary tumor cells can be used as prognostic indicators of eventual tendency to metastasize. By necessity, because the transcriptomes are determined in each case by extracting RNA from large numbers of pooled primary tumor cells, these transcriptomes are reflective of a widely shared state

of expression rather than one that is characteristic of a small minority of primary tumor cells. As seen in **Figure 14.49**, an effort to distill the complex transcriptomes of primary tumors and their association with metastases yielded a signature of 17 genes that could be used to predict the likelihood of patients bearing three types of primary tumors to progress to various clinical end points. Observations like these suggest that metastatic cells are drawn from the general population of cells in a primary tumor rather than from small, specialized, genetically unrepresentative subclones of cells.



A Gene expression microarray with 128 rows for different genes, half of them primary tumor genes and the other half metastases genes. There are columns for 64 primary tumors and 12 metastases. The array reveals that in primary tumors, primary tumor genes tend to be somewhat more commonly expressed than metastases genes, whereas in metastases, metastases genes are much more strongly expressed than primary tumor genes. In metastases, a

combination of 9 downregulated primary tumor genes and 8 upregulated metastases genes constitutes a 17 gene metastasis expression signature. (A)



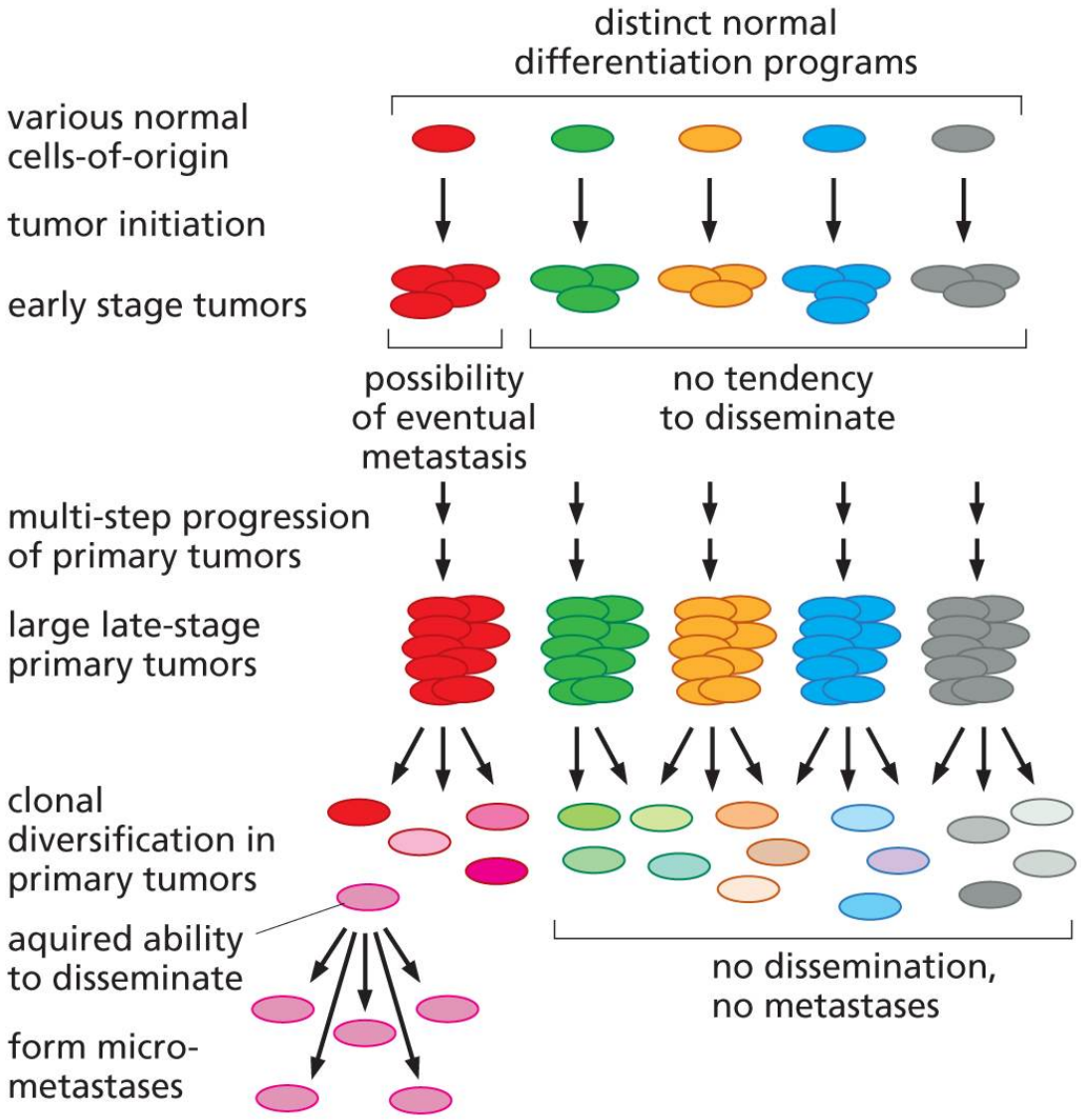
Three line graphs describing survival probability as a function of time for three types of cancer, with and without a metastasis signature. The first line graph shows that about 30 percent of primary breast tumors without the metastasis signature metastasized in just over 50 months, and slightly over 50 percent of tumors with the signature did so. The second line graph shows that only about 10 percent of primary prostate tumors without the metastasis signature recurred, and over 60 percent of tumors with the signature did so, within 50 months. The third line graph shows that slightly over 80 percent of medulloblastoma patients whose primary tumor did not have the metastasis signature survived out to 50 months, and less than 60 percent of patients whose primary tumor did have the metastasis signature survived out to 50 months.

(B)

Figure 14.49 Schedule of acquiring metastatic propensity The process of metastasis is the endpoint of multi-step tumor progression for many human tumors. This raises the issue of whether the tendency to metastasize is acquired late in tumor progression by a small subpopulation of cells or relatively early. (A) Gene expression microarrays make possible the simultaneous monitoring of the expression of thousands of genes to determine a specific pattern or expression signature that is correlated with a specific phenotype or set of phenotypes. In the expression array analysis seen here, genes that are expressed at high levels are in *red* and those expressed at low levels are in *blue*. RNAs prepared from 64 primary adenocarcinomas (from various tissues) and 12 metastatic nodules of adenocarcinomas (*arrayed across the top*) were analyzed (*horizontal black, red bars*, respectively). Of the thousands of genes analyzed in an initial gene expression array (*not shown*), 128 genes (*arrayed vertically*) were found to be associated—because of over- or underexpression—with metastases and metastatic progression (*vertical red, black bars, respectively*). Further distillation of the data yielded a set of 17 genes whose expression was as useful as that of the 128-gene set in predicting eventual metastases from primary tumors. (B) When researchers used the metastasis expression signature of panel A to analyze the gene expression patterns of other types of primary tumors, they were able to separate the patients bearing tumors of the breast (I), prostate (II), as well as (III) medulloblastomas into two groups (*blue, red lines*) having markedly different times to clinical progression or relapse following initial surgery. Most cells in certain primary tumors expressed a gene expression signature associated with metastasis, suggesting that this signature was acquired relatively early in primary tumor progression, possibly even before the initiating somatic mutation, and it became widespread in such tumors, being inherited by the great majority of descendants of early founders of the tumor cell population. (A and B, from S. Ramaswamy, K.N.

Ross, E.S. Lander et al., *Nat. Genet*. 33:49–54, 2003. With permission from Nature.)

However, DNA sequencing studies of the genomes of metastases and corresponding primary tumors suggest an apparently opposite conclusion: that primary tumors are genetically heterogeneous, and that metastases arise from genetically specialized subpopulations within primary tumors. An eventual reconciliation of these two portrayals of metastatic progression may be as follows (**Figure 14.50**): the differentiation program of a normal cell-of-origin is an important determinant of whether a primary tumor will ever have the potential to spawn metastasis-competent subpopulations. In those tumors that happen to inherit a differentiation program that favors eventual metastasis, diverse, specialized subclones may subsequently arise through somatic mutations or other stochastically acquired cell-heritable changes. Among these subclones will be those that have actually acquired metastatic powers. These subclones will then become the major sources of metastatic dissemination. Some speculations about the evolution of metastatic competence extend and reinforce this model (**Supplementary Sidebar 14.15**).



A diagram starts with five different normal cells-of-origin, each with a distinct normal differentiation program. Each cell undergoes tumor initiation, followed by the formation of an early-stage tumor. In one of the tumors, there is the possibility of eventual metastasis. In the other four tumors, there is no tendency to disseminate. All five tumors then go through multi-step progression of primary tumors to form large late-stage primary tumors, followed by clonal diversification in primary tumors. The same four tumors display no dissemination and no metastases. The one remaining tumor acquires the ability to disseminate and then forms microtumors.

Figure 14.50 Determinants of eventual metastatic dissemination. Observations like those presented in Figure 14.49 suggest that the differentiation programs of the normal cells-of-origin of a tumor continue to strongly influence the fully

transformed, tumorigenic descendants cells long after primary tumors are formed. As depicted here, most types of normal cells-of-origin, following neoplastic transformation, will generate primary tumors that have little tendency to disseminate even though the constituent cells are capable of robust proliferation in the context of the primary tumor. A subset of normal cells-of-origin (*left*, *red*) will, in contrast, yield primary tumors of comparable size and growth rates that contain cells that may well eventually metastasize. As the cells within a primary tumor undergo diversification during primary tumor progression, certain cells within the tumor will form small clonal populations that have acquired the ability, under appropriate circumstances, to disseminate and form micrometastases. Because this last step occurs at random times, most eventually formed metastases will represent the descendants of the clonal populations that were the first to develop the ability to disseminate.

As described here, EMT programs offer an attractive mechanistic solution to the problem of how carcinoma cells disseminate from primary tumors to distant tissues. Thus, the multiple distinct phenotypes conferred on neoplastic epithelial cells by this pleiotropically acting program may enable a primary tumor cell to physically translocate from the heart of a primary tumor to the parenchyma of a distant organ. Accordingly, a carcinoma cell that has activated an EMT program may be able to accomplish most of the steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade (see Figure 14.3) except the last one—colonization. If eventually proven, this model would represent a simplifying solution to a problem that has been viewed as one of endless complexity.

Of additional interest, and as illustrated in Figure 14.18, certain observations have demonstrated that once breast cancer cells have passed through an EMT in order to travel from the primary tumor to a foreign tissue compartment and found a new metastatic colony, many of the carcinoma cells in the resulting colony undergo an MET and thereby generate cells of a more epithelial phenotype. Thus, the presence of the resulting epithelial cells in such a metastasis seems to be critical to its robust outgrowth.

Our repeated reference to EMT programs in the context of carcinoma pathogenesis raises the question of whether there are alternative, equally important cell-biological programs that drive malignant progression. At present, it seems gratuitous to search for alternatives. Thus, in light of the detailed surveys of the traits of spontaneously arising, malignant carcinoma cells and the phenotypes of EMT-expressing cultured cells, it seems increasingly likely that EMTs play a central role in the malignant progression of most if not all carcinoma types and that the existence of alternative, equally important cell-biological programs is improbable.

Unanswered by our discussions are the associations of EMT programs with nonepithelial tumors, notably hematopoietic, connective tissue, and central nervous system (CNS) tumors, some of which are able to invade and occasionally metastasize. The origin of the CNS from an early embryonic epithelium—the neuroectoderm—offers the possibility that certain EMT-TFs that have been studied in the context of carcinoma progression may prove to be important actors for this class of tumors as well. Still, this uncertainty reminds us how little is understood at present about the malignancy programs of nonepithelial tumors.

Whether one or another model of metastasis is ultimately validated, it is clear that the identities of many of the genes that are specifically involved in programming metastasis have been elusive. Experimental resolution of these problems is confounded by complications at every level.

1. Experimental analyses are complicated by the inefficiencies of the metastatic process. Even when cancer cells have ostensibly acquired a genotype and phenotype enabling metastasis, they succeed in metastasizing with extraordinarily low efficiency. Such a weak connection between genotype and measurable phenotype derails most currently available experimental strategies.
2. A second dimension of complexity arises from the apparent collaboration of genetic and epigenetic factors in creating the metastatic trait. Recall, for example, that in certain experimental models of cancer, an EMT is achieved when *ras*-transformed cells are exposed to TGF-β (see Section 14.3). This transition, which is likely to operate in many human carcinomas and enable their invasiveness, can be triggered by specific signals that somatically mutated cells encounter in certain tissue microenvironments but not in others. Hence, at least in these cases, invasion and subsequent metastasis can hardly be portrayed as genetically templated traits and, for this reason, cannot be readily studied by many commonly used experimental techniques that focus on cancer cell genetics and cancer genome sequencing.
3. In many tumors, the genes and proteins that participate directly in programming invasion and metastasis may be expressed only at the invasive edges of primary tumors (see Figure 14.14), and the cancer cells in these invasive edges may represent only a minor fraction of the total neoplastic cell populations in these tumors. This organization greatly complicates experiments designed to reveal the biochemical and genetic bases of invasiveness and metastatic ability, which often rely on analyzing bulk populations of cancer cells prepared from large chunks of surgically resected tumors.
4. Carcinomas constitute the most common class of human cancers, and the neoplastic epithelial cells within these tumors may need to undergo an EMT in order to become invasive and metastatic. However, if invading carcinoma cells occasionally advance far through an EMT program and shed almost all epithelial traits, they become the proverbial “wolves in sheep’s clothing,” because most

commonly used histological analyses are unable to distinguish these cells from the non-neoplastic mesenchymal cells of the tumor-associated stroma. (Indeed, this difficulty explains why many tumor pathologists deny the very existence of the EMT as a key process in the development of carcinoma invasiveness.)

5. Metastatic dormancy creates another experimental problem. In breast cancer patients, for example, metastases may suddenly appear as long as 20 years after the initial primary tumor has been removed. Because of this long latency period and the sheer number of micrometastases carried by many patients, it has been difficult to learn how and why only a few of them suddenly acquire the ability to mushroom into macroscopic, life-threatening tumors.

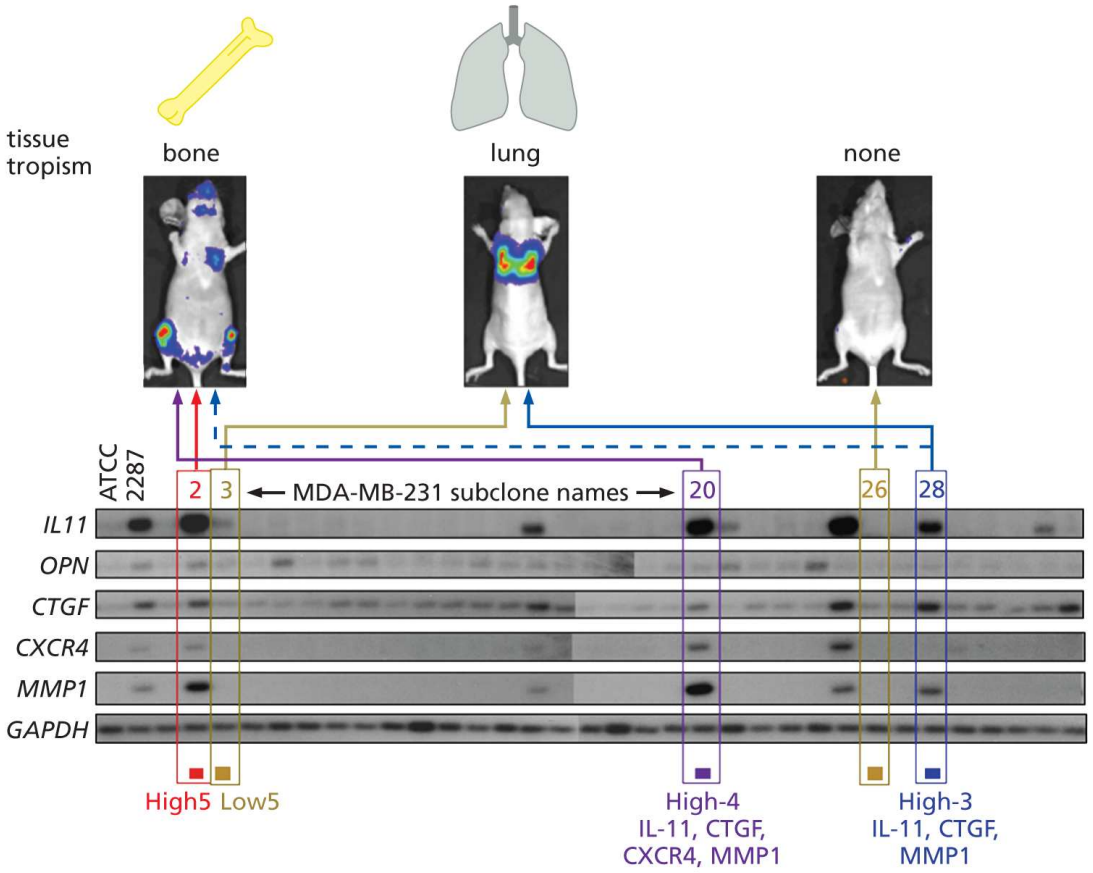
These experimental difficulties have greatly held back the progress of metastasis research, leaving many simple yet fundamental questions unanswered. For example, are there really genes that are specialized to impart an invasive or metastatic phenotype to cancer cells? And in the same vein, are there specialized metastasis suppressor genes that must be inactivated before a population of tumor cells can acquire invasive or metastatic ability? Or do the genes and proteins that affect metastasis operate as components of the regulatory circuits that we have repeatedly encountered throughout this book, namely, the circuits governed by the products of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes?

The tissue tropisms of metastasizing cancer cells—their tendencies to colonize some but not other organs—represent the major challenge for cancer biologists studying metastasis. Figure 14.41B only begins to suggest the daunting complexity of the colonization problem. There, the tendencies of only four common cancers (those arising in the prostate, pancreas, breast, and colon) are illustrated in terms of their tendencies to form metastases in four organ sites (brain, lungs, liver, and bone marrow). In principle, each type of primary tumor cell depicted in Figure 14.41B must develop a distinct set of adaptations for each organ microenvironment in which it lands, yielding 16 distinct adaptive programs. Of course, there are far more primary tumor types that can metastasize to distant organs, and there are yet other alternative organ sites in which these tumors can found metastatic colonies; in addition, the various subtypes of primary tumors arising in an organ (for example, different subtypes of breast or lung carcinomas) may differ in their requirements for adaptation to different sites of metastatic colonization. In aggregate, these combinatorial interactions suggest the existence of many dozens, likely hundreds of distinct adaptive programs, each composed, in turn, of multiple genetic and epigenetic changes that enable one specific subtype of disseminating primary tumor cell to colonize a certain target organ.

This uncertainty is beginning to change. A powerful strategy for discovering the genes and proteins responsible for specific metastatic tropisms involves the isolation of tumor cells that show preference for colonizing a specific target organ. By retrieving

already-metastasized cancer cells from that organ, propagating them *in vitro*, and injecting them into host mice, followed by another round of isolating metastatic cells from that organ, it is possible to select clones of cancer cells that stably express a highly specific tropism for that organ.

Alternatively, single-cell clones (that is, clonal cell populations, each of which is descended from a single isolated cell) can be prepared from a heterogeneous population of cells present in a human cancer cell line. The gene expression profile (see Figure 13.20A) of each clone can then be analyzed, and its tendency to form metastases in one or another target organ can be determined. This analysis can lead to the identification of genes whose expression in a cancer cell is correlated with the metastatic tropism of that cell and may even contribute causally to this behavior (**Figure 14.51**). Indeed, ectopic expression of a group of such genes in otherwise-poorly metastatic clonal cell populations can induce these cells to exhibit potent osteotropic metastasis. Such experiments also indicate that within a heterogeneous tumor cell population, various preexisting gene expression patterns can strongly influence the ability of individual cells to exhibit a variety of metastatic behaviors.



A figure related to Gene expression patterns and metastatic tropism. 33 breast cancer cell lines, plus comparison lines A T C C and 2287 are analyzed for the

strength of expression of five genes, these being I L 11, O P N, C T G F, C X C R 4, and M M P 1, with G A P D H as a control. Cell line 2, in which all five test genes were strongly expressed, formed osteotropic metastases in mice. The same thing happened with cell line 20, in which all genes except O P N were strongly expressed. Cell line 3, in which all five test genes were weakly expressed, formed metastases in the lungs instead. Cell line 26, in which none of the five test genes were expressed, did not form metastases. Cell line 28, in which I L-11, C T G F, M M P 1 were strongly expressed, formed metastases in the lungs and, to a lesser degree, in bone.

Figure 14.51 Gene expression patterns and metastatic tropism Thirty-three cells from a large population of human MDA-MB-231 breast cancer cells were each expanded into a clonal population in culture. The mRNA expression pattern of each subclone was analyzed (*columns*, *arrayed left to right*) using probes for the mRNAs of five genes—IL11 (interleukin-11), OPN (osteopontin), CTGF (connective tissue growth factor), CXCR4 (chemokine receptor 4), and MMP1 (matrix metalloproteinase-1)—and, as loading control, a probe for GAPDH (glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase) mRNA. In addition, the expression patterns of the original tumor cell population (ATCC, *left column*) and a subcloned cancer cell population termed 2287 (which was selected for its ability to generate osteolytic metastases; *second column*) were analyzed. The five experimental genes were chosen because of their overexpression in osteotropic metastatic cells and their known biological properties in promoting osteolytic metastases. Clone 2 cells (*red box*), when injected into the arterial circulation of mice, showed a tendency to produce osteotropic metastases, as indicated by *in vivo* imaging; these cells expressed high levels of all five experimental mRNAs. Clone 3 cells (*yellow box*), in contrast, expressed low levels of all five mRNAs and preferentially formed lung metastases. And clone 26 genes (*yellow box*), which expressed essentially none of these mRNAs, formed no metastases at all. Moreover, when otherwise poorly metastatic cells were forced to express combinations of three of these genes, they acquired the ability to form bone metastases efficiently (*not shown*), pointing to the causal role of these genes in forming these metastases. Metastases were visualized through the presence of a luciferase gene in the tumor cells, which causes cells to release a bioluminescent signal. (Top, from J. Massagué. Bottom, from Y. Kang, P.M. Siegel, W. Shu et al., *Cancer Cell* 3:537–549, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

Such research does not address the clinical challenges associated with metastasis, which remain daunting. The existence of micrometastases represents a major challenge for oncologists who would like to prevent disease relapse years after the primary tumor has been eliminated. Micrometastases of less than 0.2 mm diameter may carry several hundred to several thousand cells, and their detection in an organism carrying

approximately 5×10^{13} cells represents, at least at present, an almost-impossible undertaking. These micrometastases represent an ongoing threat because some of them may erupt into lethal outgrowths at an unpredictable future time.

This issue leads directly to another: Can the therapies used to treat primary tumors also be used to treat their metastatic derivatives? Or are metastatic cells so different from their progenitors in the primary tumor that they require their own customized therapies? In fact, expression array analyses indicating substantial similarity between the gene expression profiles of primary tumors and their metastatic offshoots provide some hope that metastatic cells may respond to the same therapies that succeed in destroying the primary tumors from which they derive.

To conclude, we go back to the beginning of this chapter: if, as experimental evidence increasingly shows, the epithelial–mesenchymal transition is a critical event in the acquisition of invasiveness and metastatic dissemination, and if cancer cells resurrect embryonic transcription factors to acquire malignant traits, then Lewis Wolpert's statement might require revision, in that gastrulation (and the associated EMT) might well loom as one of the most *dangerous* events in our lives!

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Invasion and metastasis are responsible for 90% of cancer-associated mortality, and the majority of cancer cells at the time of death may often be found in metastases rather than the primary tumor.
- The invasion–metastasis cascade involves local invasion, intravasation, transport, extravasation, formation of micrometastases, and colonization.
- The sequence of steps in this cascade is completed only infrequently, resulting in metastatic inefficiency. The least efficient of these steps appears to be colonization.
- Many of these steps can be executed by carcinoma cells that activate a cell-biological program called the epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), which is normally used by cells during embryonic morphogenesis and wound healing.
- An EMT can be programmed by pleiotropically acting transcription factors that are normally involved in organizing various steps of early embryogenesis.
- Signals released by the stromal microenvironment of a cancer cell, operating together with genetic and epigenetic alterations of the cancer cell genome, are often responsible for inducing expression of the EMT-inducing transcription factors in the cancer cell and thus the EMT.
- The EMT involves loss of an epithelial cell gene expression program and acquisition of mesenchymal gene expression. The latter enables cells to acquire invasiveness, motility, and a heightened resistance to apoptosis.
- Passage through an EMT places carcinoma cells in a state from which they can progress further to become cancer stem cells, which in turn confers on them powers that are essential for the seeding of new tumor colonies.
- Cell invasiveness is enabled by various matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) that function to degrade components of the extracellular matrix. These enzymes are often manufactured by inflammatory cells within the tumor-associated stroma.

- Metastatic cancer cells may travel via the lymph ducts to nodes. However, their spread via the blood circulation is responsible for most distant metastases.
- Many cancer cells that are carried through the circulation form microthrombi that lodge in the arterioles and capillaries of various tissues.
- The ability of cancer cells to extravasate may depend on many of the same activities that were used earlier to execute invasiveness and intravasation.
- Although the earlier steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade are likely to be similar in various types of human tumors, the last step—colonization—is likely to depend on complex interactions that are specific to the particular type of metastasizing cells and the microenvironments of the host tissues in which they land.
- The details of colonization mechanisms are best understood in the context of osteotropic metastases, especially the osteolytic metastases initiated by breast cancer cells.
- In some cases, the metastatic tropisms of cancer cells can be explained by the organization of the circulation between the primary tumor site and the target site of metastasis. In many other cases, the reasons that cancer cells metastasize from primary tumors to certain target organs are poorly understood.
- The acquisition of invasive and metastatic powers does not appear to involve major changes in the genotype of cancer cells within the primary tumor.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What arguments can be mustered for or against the notion that invasion and metastasis are likely to be orchestrated by specific mutant alleles that are acquired by cancer cells late in tumor progression?
2. What explanations can be offered for the inefficiency of colonization by the cells within micrometastases?
3. What arguments suggest that the ability to metastasize is expressed either by the bulk of cancer cells in a primary tumor or only by a minority of cells that are specialized to do so?
4. What evidence suggests that genetic and phenotypic evolution of cancer cells can occur in sites within the body that are far removed from the primary tumor?
5. What specific types of physiological support might be supplied by tissues that are frequently sites of successful metastasis formation? In what way do these supports affect the ultimate success of the colonization process?
6. How might primary tumors exhibit metastatic powers as soon as they form?
7. Would the ability to prevent metastasis have demonstrable effects on the clinical course of some human tumors but not others?
8. What evidence supports the involvement of an EMT in human tumor pathogenesis, and what evidence argues against it?
9. How might the ability to accurately determine the prognosis of a diagnosed prostate or mammary tumor lead to dramatic changes in the practice of clinical oncology?
10. What mechanisms might be invoked to explain why large primary tumor size is often correlated with a poor prognosis of metastasis?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Alix-Panabières C, Riethdorf S & Pantel K (2008) Circulating tumor cells and bone marrow micrometastasis. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 14, 5013–5021.

Barrallo-Gimeno A & Nieto MA (2005) The Snail genes as inducers of cell movement and survival: implications in development and cancer. *Development* 132, 3151–3161.

Berx G, Raspé E, Christofori G et al. (2007) Pre-EMTing metastasis? Recapitulation of morphogenetic processes in cancer. *Clin. Exp. Metastasis* 24, 587–597.

Blasi F & Carmeliet P (2002) uPAR: a versatile signalling orchestrator. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 3, 932–943.

Boccaccio C & Comoglio PM (2006) Invasive growth: a *MET*-driven genetic programme for cancer and stem cells. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 6, 637–645.

Borovski T, De Sousa e Melo F, Vermeulen L & Medema JP (2011) Cancer stem cell niche: the place to be. *Cancer Res.* 71, 634–639.

Brabletz T, Jung A, Spaderna SK et al. (2005) Opinion: migrating cancer stem cells—an integrated concept of malignant tumour progression. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 744–749.

Brabletz T, Lyden D, Steeg PS & Werb Z (2013) Roadblocks to translational advances on metastasis research. *Nat. Med.* 19, 1104–1109.

Bracken CP & Goodall GJ (2021) The many regulators of epithelial–mesenchymal transition. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* December 2021.

Braun S, Pantel K, Muller P et al. (2000) Cytokeratin-positive cells in the bone marrow and survival of patients with Stage I, II or III breast cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 342, 525–533.

Burridge K & Wennerberg K (2004) Rho and Rac take center stage. *Cell* 116, 167–179.

Chambers AF, Groom AC & MacDonald IC (2002) Dissemination and growth of cancer cells in metastatic sites. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 563–572.

Chiang AC & Massagué J (2008) Molecular basis of metastasis. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 359, 2814–2823.

Christofori G (2006) New signals from the invasive front. *Nature* 441, 444–450.

Coleman RE, Croucher PI, Padhani AR et al. (2020) Bone metastases. *Nat. Rev. Dis. Primers* 6, 82.

Condeelis J & Pollard JW (2006) Macrophages: obligate partners for tumor cell migration, invasion, and metastasis. *Cell* 124, 263–266.

Condeelis J, Singer RH & Segall JE (2005) The great escape: when cancer cells hijack the genes for chemotaxis and motility. *Annu. Rev. Cell Dev. Biol.* 21, 695–718.

Cristofanilli M & Braun S (2010) Circulating tumor cells revisited. *J.A.M.A.* 303, 1092–1093.

De Wever O, Demetter P, Mareel M & Bracke M (2008) Stromal myofibroblasts are drivers of invasive cancer growth. *Int. J. Cancer* 123, 2229–2238.

Drasin DJ, Robin TP & Ford HL (2011) Breast cancer epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition: examining the functional consequences of plasticity. *Breast Cancer Res*. 13, 266.

Dykxhoorn DM (2010) MicroRNAs and metastasis: little RNAs go a long way. *Cancer Res.* 70, 6401–6406.

Fidler IJ (2003) The pathogenesis of cancer metastasis: the “seed and soil” hypothesis revisited. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 3, 453–458.

Fodde R & Brabletz T (2007) Wnt/β-catenin signaling in cancer stemness and malignant behavior. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 19, 150–158.

Friedl P & Gilmour D (2009) Collective cell migration in morphogenesis, generation and cancer. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 10, 445–457.

Friedl P & Mayor R (2017) Tuning collective cell migration by cell–cell junction regulation. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.* 9, a029199.

Friedl P & Wolf K (2009) Plasticity of cell migration: a multiscale tuning model. *J. Cell Biol.* 188, 11–19.

Gertler F & Condeelis J (2011) Metastasis: tumor cells becoming MENAcing. *Trends Cell Biol.* 21, 81–90.

Gregory PA, Bracken CP, Bert AG & Goodall GJ (2008) MicroRNAs as regulators of epithelial-mesenchymal transition. *Cell Cycle* 7, 3112–3118.

Güc E & Pollard JW (2021) Redefining macrophage and neutrophil biology in the metastatic cascade. *Immunity* 54, 885–902.

Gupta GP & Massagué J (2006) Cancer metastasis: building a framework. *Cell* 127, 679–695.

Haber DA and Velculescu VE (2014) Blood-based analyses of cancer: circulating tumor cells and circulating tumor DNA. *Cancer Discov.* 4, 650–661.

Hay ED (2005) The mesenchymal cell, its role in the embryo, and the remarkable signaling mechanisms that create it. *Dev. Dyn.* 3, 706–720.

Heasman SJ & Ridley AJ (2008) Mammalian Rho GTPases: new insights into their functions from *in vivo* studies. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 9, 690–701.

Heldin C-H, Landström M & Moustakas A (2009) Mechanism of TGF-β signaling to growth arrest, apoptosis, and epithelial–mesenchymal transition. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 21, 1–11.

Huber MA, Kraut N & Beug H (2005) Molecular requirements for epithelial-mesenchymal transition during tumor progression. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 17, 548–556.

Hugo H, Ackland ML, Blick T et al. (2007) Epithelial-mesenchymal and mesenchymal-epithelial transitions in carcinoma progression. *J. Cell Physiol.* 213, 374–383.

Ilina O & Friedl P (2009) Mechanisms of collective cell migration at a glance. *J. Cell Sci.* 122, 3203–3208.

Jin X, Demere Z, Nair K et al. (2020) A metastasis map of human cancer cell lines. *Nature* 588, 331–336.

Joyce JA & Pollard JW (2009) Microenvironmental regulation of metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 9, 239–252.

Kai F, Drain AP & Weaver VM (2019) The extracellular matrix modulates the metastatic journey. *Dev. Cell* 49, 332–346.

Kedrin D, van Rheenen J, Hernandez L et al. (2007) Cell motility and cytoskeletal regulation in invasion and metastasis. *J. Mammary Gland Biol. Neoplasia* 12, 143–152.

Kingsley LA, Fournier PGJ, Chirgwin JM & Guise TA (2007) Molecular biology of bone metastasis. *Mol. Cancer Ther.* 6, 2609–2617.

Klein CA (2020) Cancer progression and the invisible phase of metastatic colonization. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 20, 681–694.

Lamouille S, Xu J & Derynck R (2014) Molecular mechanisms of epithelial-mesenchymal transition. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 15, 178–196.

Liu Y & Cao X (2016) Characteristics and significance of the pre-metastatic niche. *Cancer Cell* 30, 668–681.

Lu X & Kang Y (2010) Hypoxia and hypoxia-inducible factors, master regulators of metastasis. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 16, 5928–5935.

Mehra N, Zafeiriou Z, Lorente D et al. (2015) *CCR* 20th anniversary commentary: circulating tumor cells in prostate cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 21, 4992–4995.

Micalizzi DS, Maheswaran S & Haber DA (2017) A conduit to metastasis: circulating tumor cell biology. *Genes Dev.* 31, 1827–1840.

Mundy GR (2002) Metastasis to bone: causes, consequences, and therapeutic opportunities. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 584–593.

Munro MJ, Wickremesekera SK, Peng L et al. (2018) Cancer stem cells in colorectal cancer: a review. *J. Clin. Pathol.* 71, 110–116.

Murphy DA & Courtneidge SA (2011) The “ins” and “outs” of podosomes and invadopodia: characteristics, formation and function. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 12, 413–426.

Nguyen DX, Bos PD & Massagué J (2009) Metastasis: from dissemination to organ-specific colonization. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 9, 274–284.

Nieto MA (2002) The Snail superfamily of zinc-finger transcription factors. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 3, 155–166.

Nieto MA (2011) The ins and outs of the epithelial to mesenchymal transition in health and disease. *Annu. Rev. Cell Dev. Biol.* 27, 347–376.

Nieto MA (2013) Epithelial plasticity: a common theme in embryonic cells and cancer cells. *Science* 342, 1234850.

Nieto MA, Huang RYJ, Jackson RA & Thiery JP (2016) EMT:2016. *Cell* 166, 21–45.

Odenthal J, Takes R & Friedl P (2016) Plasticity of tumor cell invasion: governance by growth factors and cytokines. *Carcinogenesis* 37, 1117–1128.

Oudin MJ & Weaver VM (2016) Physical and chemical gradients in the tumor microenvironment regulate tumor cell invasion, migration, and metastasis. *Cold Spring Harb. Symp. Quant. Biol.* 81, 189–205.

Page-McCaw A, Ewald AJ & Werb Z (2007) Matrix metalloproteinases and the regulation of tissue remodeling. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 8, 221–233.

Paget S (1889) The distribution of secondary growths in cancer of the breast (re-publication of 1889 *Lancet* article). *Cancer Metastasis Rev.* 8, 98–101.

Pandya P, Orgaz JL & Sanz-Moreno V (2017) Actomyosin contractility and collective migration: may the force be with you. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 48, 87–96.

Pantel K & Alix-Panabieres K (2019) Liquid biopsy and minimal residual disease—latest advances and implications for cure. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 16, 409–424.

Pari AAA, Singhal M & Augustin H (2021) Emerging paradigms in metastasis research. *J. Exp. Med.* 218, e20190218.

Pollard JW (2004) Tumour-educated macrophages promote tumour progression and metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4, 71–78.

Sahai E (2007) Illuminating the metastatic process. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 7, 737–749.

Savagner P (2014) Epithelial-mesenchymal transitions: from cell plasticity to concept elasticity. *Curr. Topics Devel. Biol.* 112, 273–300.

Sekiguchi R & Yamada KM (2018) Basement membranes in development and disease. *Curr. Top. Dev. Biol.* 130, 143–191.

Shamir ER & Ewald AJ (2014) Three-dimensional organotypic culture: experimental models of mammalian biology and disease. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 15, 647–664.

Skrypek N, Goossens S, De Smedt E et al. (2017) Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition: epigenetic reprogramming driving cellular plasticity. *Trends Genet.* 33, 943–959.

Stacker SA, Achen MG, Jussila L et al. (2002) Lymphangiogenesis and cancer metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 573–583.

Svitkina T (2018) The actin cytoskeleton and actin-based motility. *Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol.*10, a018267.

Thiery JP, Acloque H, Huang RYG & Nieto MA (2009) Epithelial-mesenchymal transitions in development and disease. *Cell* 139, 871–890.

Thiery JP & Sleeman JP (2006) Complex networks orchestrate epithelial-mesenchymal transitions. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol* 7, 131–142.

Turajlic S & Swanton C (2016) Metastasis as an evolutionary process. *Science* 352, 169–175.

van de Stolpe A, Pantel K, Sleijfer S et al. (2011) Circulating tumor cell isolation and diagnostics: toward routine clinical use. *Cancer Res*. 71, 5955–5960.

van Roy F (2014) Beyond E-cadherin: roles of other cadherin superfamily members in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 14, 121–134.

Vignjevic D & Montagnac G (2008) Reorganisation of the dendritic actin network during cancer cell migration and invasion. *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 18, 12–22.

Wang X & Thiery JP (2021) Harnessing carcinoma cell plasticity mediated by TGF-β signaling. *Cancers* 13, 3397.

Weigelt B, Peterse JL & van't Veer LJ (2005) Breast cancer metastasis: markers and models. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 591–602.

Weilbaecher K, Guise TA & McCauley LK (2011) Cancer to bone: a fatal attraction. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 411–425.

Wendt MK, Tian M & Schiemann WP (2012) Deconstructing the mechanisms and consequences of TGF-β-induced EMT during cancer progression. *Cell Tissue Res.* 347, 85–101.

Wirtz D, Konstantopoulos K & Searson PC (2011) The physics of cancer: the role of physical interactions and mechanical forces in metastasis. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 11, 512–522.

Wren E, Huang Y & Cheung K (2021) Collective metastasis: coordinating the multicellular voyage. *Clin. Exptl. Metastasis* 38, 373–399.

Yang J, Antin P, Berx G et al. (2020) Guidelines and definitions for research on epithelial-mesenchymal transition. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell Biol.* 21, 341–352.

Yang J & Weinberg RA (2008) Epithelial-mesenchymal transition: at the crossroads of development and tumor metastasis. *Dev. Cell* 14, 818–829.

Yeung KT & Yang J (2017) Epithelial-mesenchymal transition in tumor metastasis. *Mol. Oncol.* 11, 28–39.

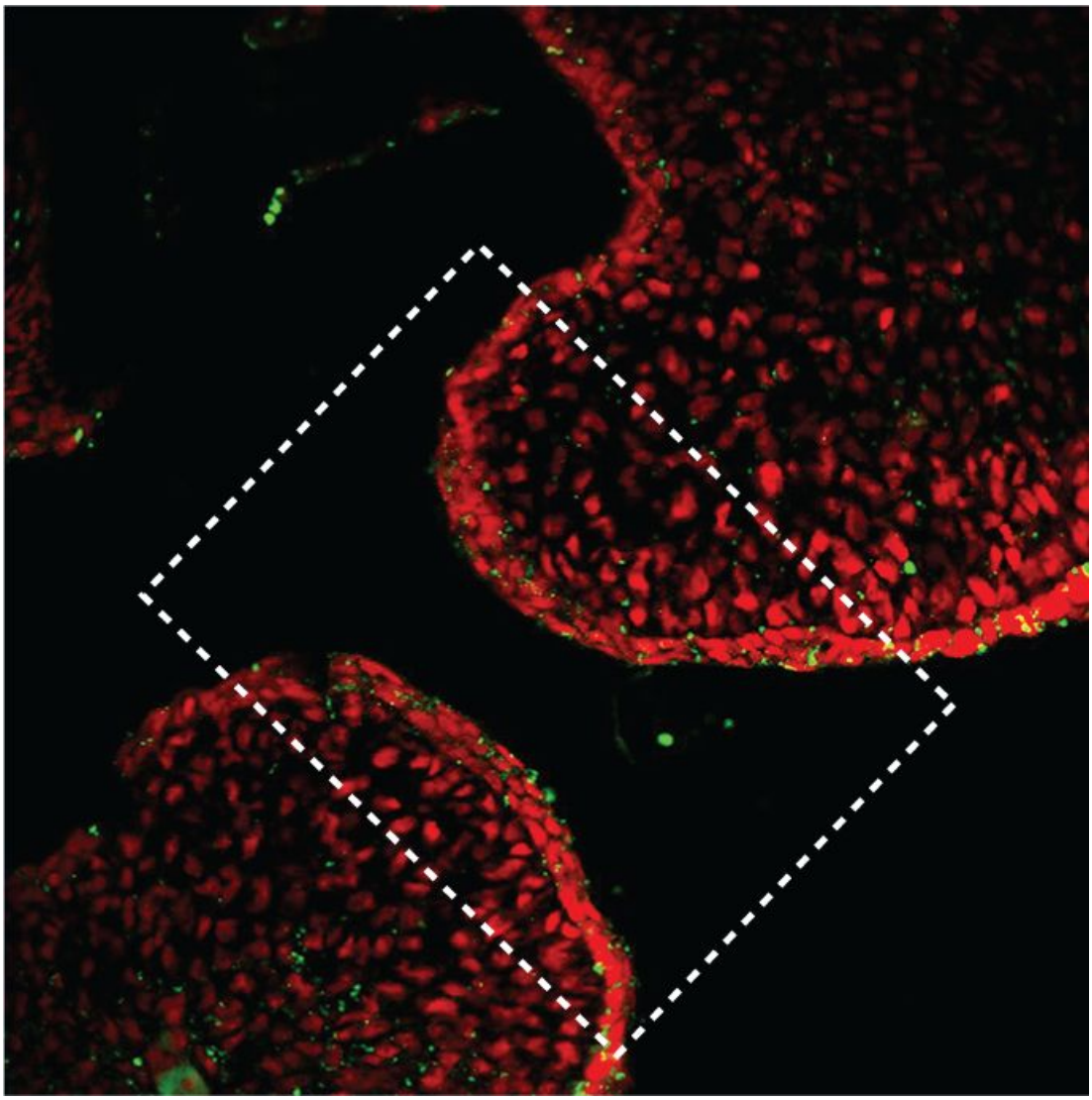
Yilmaz M & Christofori G (2009) EMT, the cytoskeleton, and cancer cell invasion. *Cancer Metastasis Rev.* 28, 15–33.

OceanofPDF.com

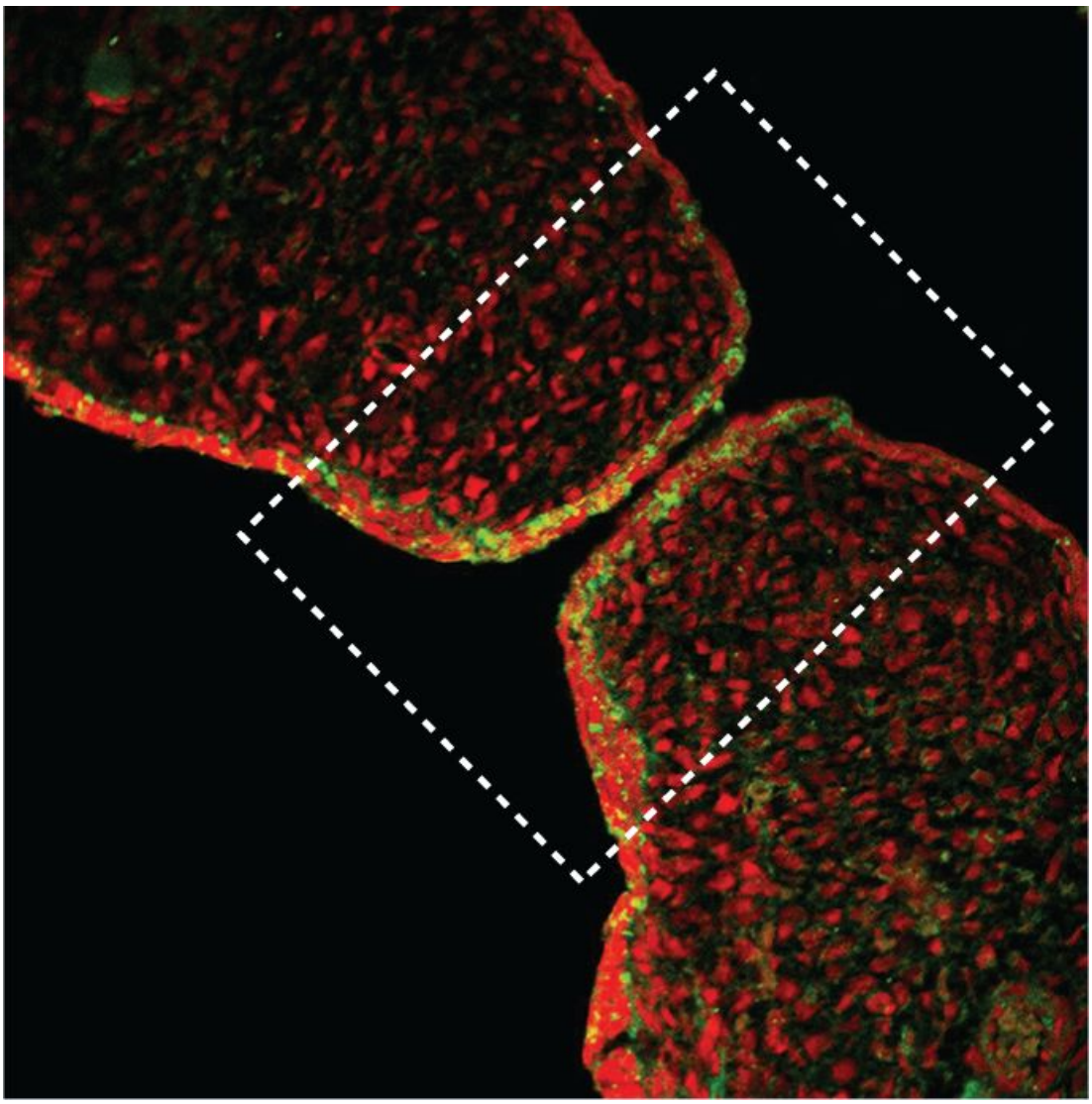
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 14.1 An example of an EMT relatively late in embryonic development

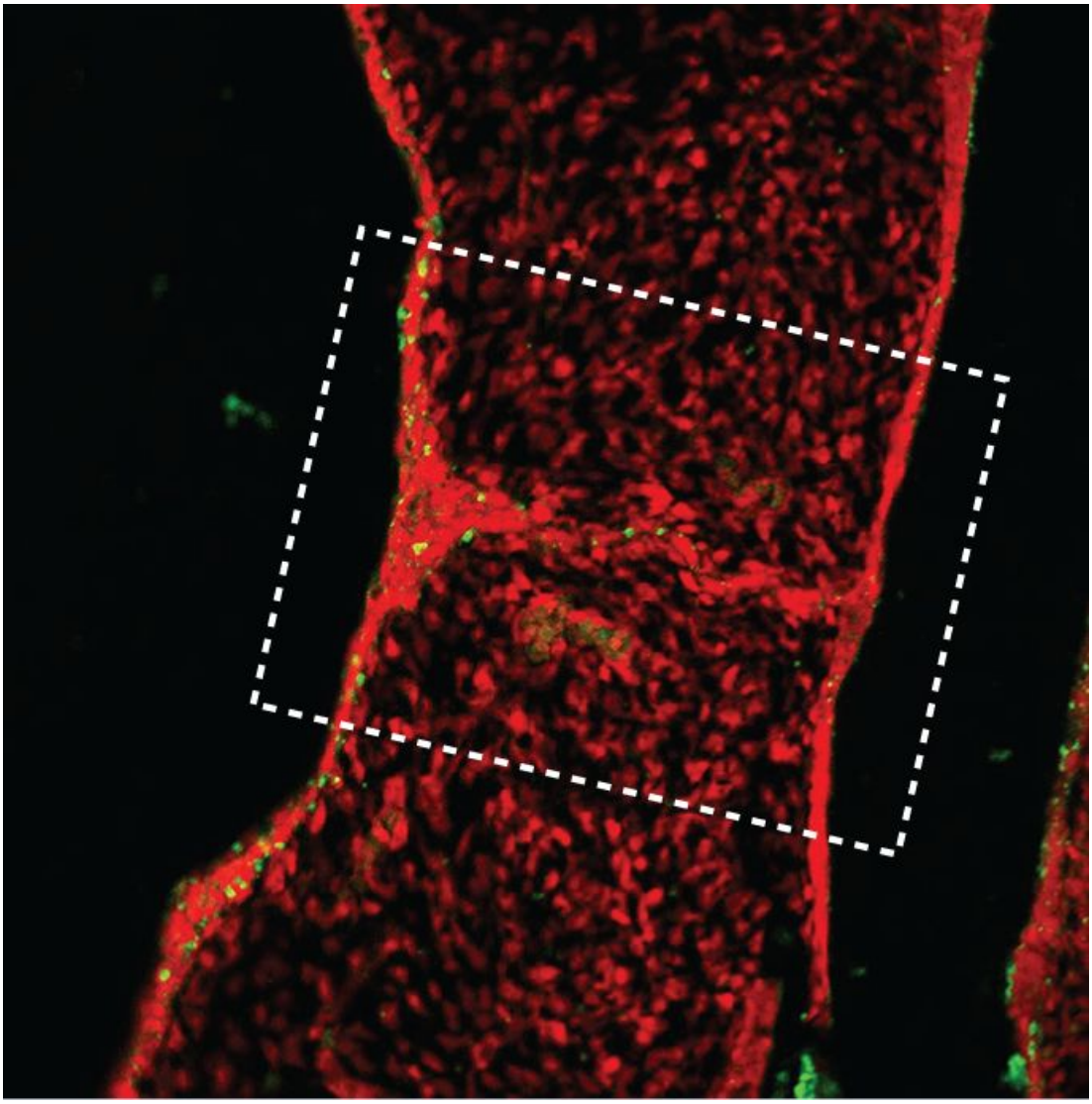
A variety of morphogenetic steps occurring long after the earliest processes, such as gastrulation and neural crest migration, continue to depend on EMTs and the transcription factors that orchestrate them. One graphic example is the formation of the palate (**Figure S14.1**), which requires the fusion of embryonic cell layers converging from both sides of the roof of the embryonic oral cavity to form a single tissue—a process that occasionally occurs incompletely and thereby generates the condition of cleft palate.



(A)



(B)



(C)

Figure S14.1Palatal morphogenesis and Twist The process of palate formation that generates the roof of the oral cavity in a mouse embryo depends on the fusion of two palatal “shelves” that are initially formed on opposite sides of the future oral cavity, grow toward one another, and then fuse. This fusion process depends on an EMT in the epithelial cells at the point of initial contact; as illustrated in this series of micrographs, at the point of fusion the epithelial cells have acquired expression of the Twist EMT-inducing transcription factor, which is detected here by immunofluorescence (*green*). (Because the growth factor TGF-β is known to induce Twist expression in cultured cells, the fusion of the palatal shelves can be prevented by the application of anti-TGF-β antibody.) Cell nuclei were stained with ToPro dye (*red*). (A) Before fusion, Twist is detected in scattered cells in both the outer epithelium and the underlying mesenchymal tissue. (B) As the two

palatal shelves converge, intense Twist expression is induced (*green*), largely at the point of future fusion. (C) Once fusion has occurred, Twist expression declines dramatically and the fusion point (still apparent here) will eventually be healed completely, erasing all vestiges of the fusion process (*not shown*). It remains unclear whether this EMT program enables epithelial cells to migrate bidirectionally out from the point of fusion toward the nasal and oral cavities (above and below the recently formed palate, respectively) or whether it generates large populations of mesenchymal cells that will form the future mesenchyme of the palate. (From W. Yu, H. Kamara and K.H. Svoboda, *Dev. Dyn.* 237:2716–2725, 2008. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Supplementary Sidebar 14.2 TGF-β works in conflicting ways during tumor progression

The powers of TGF-β to affect tumor development both positively and negatively have been shown dramatically by experiments reported in 1996 using a transgenic mouse model of skin carcinogenesis. In this model, the development of squamous cell carcinoma was favored by the expression of a *ras* oncogene under the control of a transcriptional promoter that ensured its expression in keratinocytes of the skin. When a transgene favoring TGF-β expression in the skin was also installed in the germ line of these cancer-prone mice, the absolute number of skin tumors that formed was decreased, ostensibly because of the anti-proliferative effects of TGF-β. However, those few tumors that did arise showed the phenotype of aggressive spindle-cell carcinomas (formed from cells that have undergone an EMT) rather than the more benign squamous cell carcinomas that are usually seen in such transgenic, tumor-prone mice. Consequently, once transformed epithelial cells have developed a resistance to TGF-β's cytostatic effects (for example, through inactivation of the pRb pathway; see Section 8.10), this factor can collaborate with oncogenes residing in the carcinoma cells to trigger an EMT and attendant high-grade malignancy.

To summarize these and other observations, TGF-β can contribute to cancer cell malignant phenotypes through at least four mechanisms. First, most human carcinomas retain at least some functional TGF-β receptor signaling, allowing them to continue to respond to TGF-β during the entire course of tumor progression. (This contrasts with the situation observed in a subset of colon carcinomas in which receptor function may be lost entirely through mutations in the receptor-encoding genes; see Figure 12.26.) Second, the inactivation of the pRb pathway, which occurs in most if not all human cancers, causes malignant cells to lose their responsiveness to the cytostatic effects of TGF-β; this loss, however, does not affect the responses to other downstream signals that are released by ligand-activated TGF-β receptors, specifically the signals that trigger induction of EMT programs. Third, in the absence of the cytostatic effects of

TGF-β, exposure of certain kinds of cancer cells to this factor may actually *favor* their proliferation. For example, glioblastoma and osteosarcoma cells that are treated with TGF-β respond by producing and secreting PDGF; once released, the latter acts in an autocrine fashion to stimulate the proliferation of these cancer cells via the PDGF receptors that they also display. Finally, exposure of breast cancer cells to TGF-β causes them to release other factors that accelerate the breakdown of mineralized bone—a critical step in the formation of *osteolytic* metastases; as we will learn later (Section 14.13), this breakdown liberates additional mitogens that drive cancer cell proliferation.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.3 Signals operate in various combinations during embryogenesis

The EMT program involves at least three dimensions of complexity—the multiple discrete manifestations of the cell-biological program, the multiple transcription factors that can orchestrate it singly or in combination, and the multiple distinct afferent signals that function combinatorially to activate it. Focusing on the latter, we can refer to the two major normal functions that this program was evolved to accomplish, specifically wound healing and developmental morphogenesis. The former, although having its own internal complexity (see Section 13.3), pales in comparison with the myriad biological programs that allow the morphogenesis associated with organismic development to proceed properly.

The master programs of development ensure that cells in certain specific locations within an embryo activate EMT programs at certain times, whereas cells located in other locations do not. The location of each of the cells within an embryo is determined and defines its immediate surroundings, specifically by the identities of its immediate neighbors and the diverse paracrine signals that they release. These multiple requirements for proper morphogenesis demand that EMT-activating signals function combinatorially, that is, a cell in a defined position in an embryo will receive one combination of afferent signals flowing from its own particular set of close neighbors; their identities define its unique location and dictate its future fate and that of its descendants. Cells located elsewhere in the embryo will experience their own combinations of afferent signals released by their own respective neighbors. This logic provides the biological rationale that seems to explain the selective forces that drove the development of the EMT machinery (and its regulation) during a period in the pre-Cambrian era—by some accounts as long as 750 million years ago—when the complexity of metazoan morphogenesis was being invented.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.4 The epithelial versus mesenchymal status of carcinoma cells appears to be influenced by cell-intrinsic responses

We read throughout this chapter about the importance of contextual signals originating in the tumor microenvironment that function in various combinations to induce activation of EMT programs in nearby carcinoma cells (see **Supplementary Sidebar 14.3**). Not discussed in these accounts is the influence of the *responsiveness* of the carcinoma cell to these signals. Thus, this responsiveness may be influenced by the nature of the somatic mutations that these cells have acquired en route to full-fledged malignancy. In addition, the differentiation program of the tissue in which cancer cells have arisen may exert strong influences on their ultimate positions along the epithelial–mesenchymal spectrum of phenotypes.

This notion has been studied in part by creating an "EMT score" that quantifies the extent to which the program has been activated in a cell of a certain origin, using a variety of markers to calculate this score. Having done so, one can measure the EMT score of samples of carcinoma cells prepared directly from patients' tumors and compare these with the behavior of carcinoma cell lines that are propagated in culture. In the former case, the EMT status of the carcinoma cells is the product of the various contextual, heterotypic signals that the carcinomas cells have experienced while growing within histologically complex tumors. In the latter case, the carcinoma cells proliferate in the absence of any contextual signals except those that they generate on their own. As seen in **Figure S14.2**, there is a striking similarity when comparing these two EMT measurements (that is, phenotypes exhibited by cancer cells present in spontaneously arising human tumors versus phenotypes of cancer cell lines derived from the same tumor subtypes) in a survey of a broad range of carcinoma cell types. This similarity, on its own, suggests that the carcinoma cells exhibit an *intrinsic responsiveness* to EMT-inducing signals that operates independently of the signals that they happen to encounter *in vivo*. Such responsiveness may be influenced by the ongoing expression of differentiation programs that these cells inherit from their respective normal cells-of-origin operating together with the spectrum of autocrine signals that they happen to generate and experience, the latter once again being influenced by their differentiation programs.

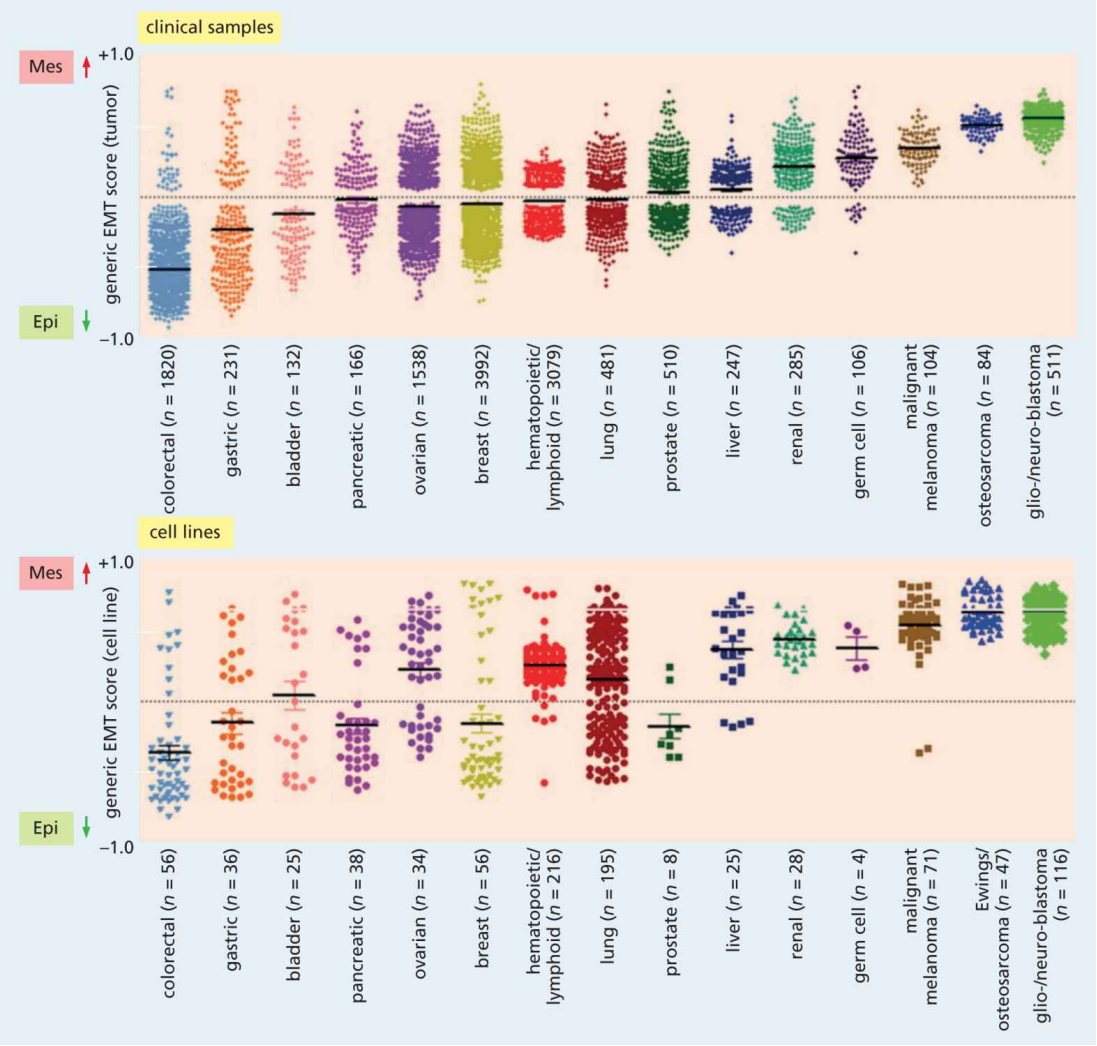
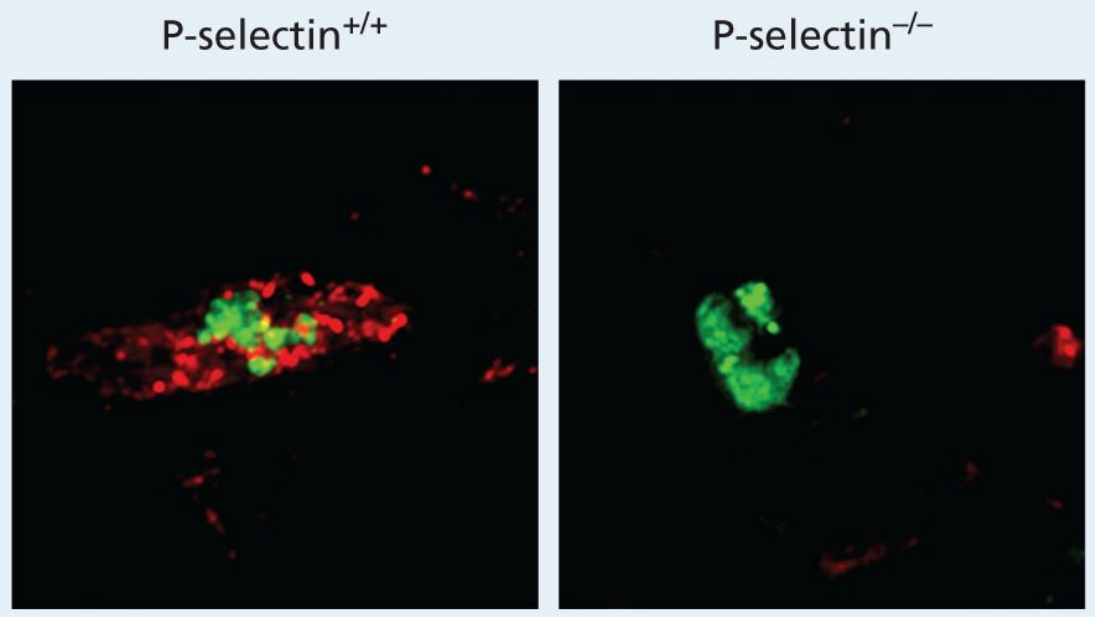


Figure S14.2 EMT Score and the natural set points of human cancer cells A quantitative measure of the extent of EMT activation was devised by creating an algorithm that measured the weighted sum of a series of EMT-related markers in cancer tumor cells. The resulting "generic EMT scores" (*ordinates*) were than derived for a series of clinical samples (*upper panel*) and human cancer cell lines propagated in culture (*lower panel*). Cells residing in a more mesenchymal phenotypic state received EMT scores closer to +1, whereas cells residing in a more epithelial state received EMT scores closer to –1. The numbers of samples evaluated are indicated in the parentheses in each case. The striking similarities between these two independently measured sets of human cancer cell collections suggested that the lower cell lines, which were propagated in culture in the absence of any stromal support, naturally seek and enter into a certain E vs. M phenotypic state along the E-to-M spectrum, even in the absence of the stromal signals that must be experienced by corresponding tumor cells residing in

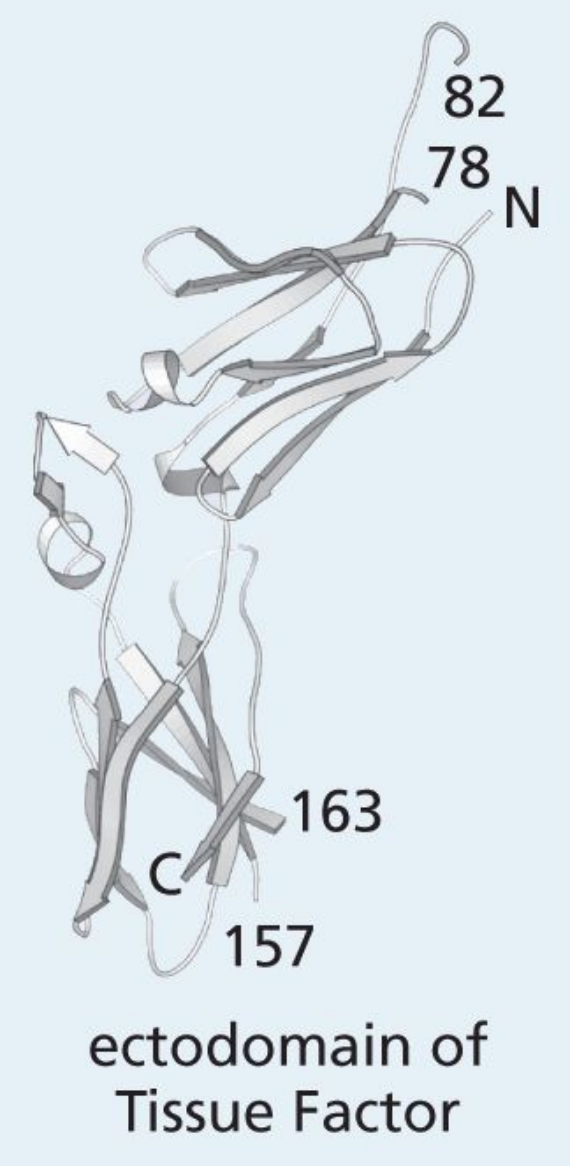
naturally arising human tumors. (From T.Z. Tan, Q.H. Miow, Y. Miki et al., *EMBO Mol. Med*. 6:1279–1293, 2014. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Supplementary Sidebar 14.5 Metastasizing cancer cells often take on hitchhikers while traveling through the blood

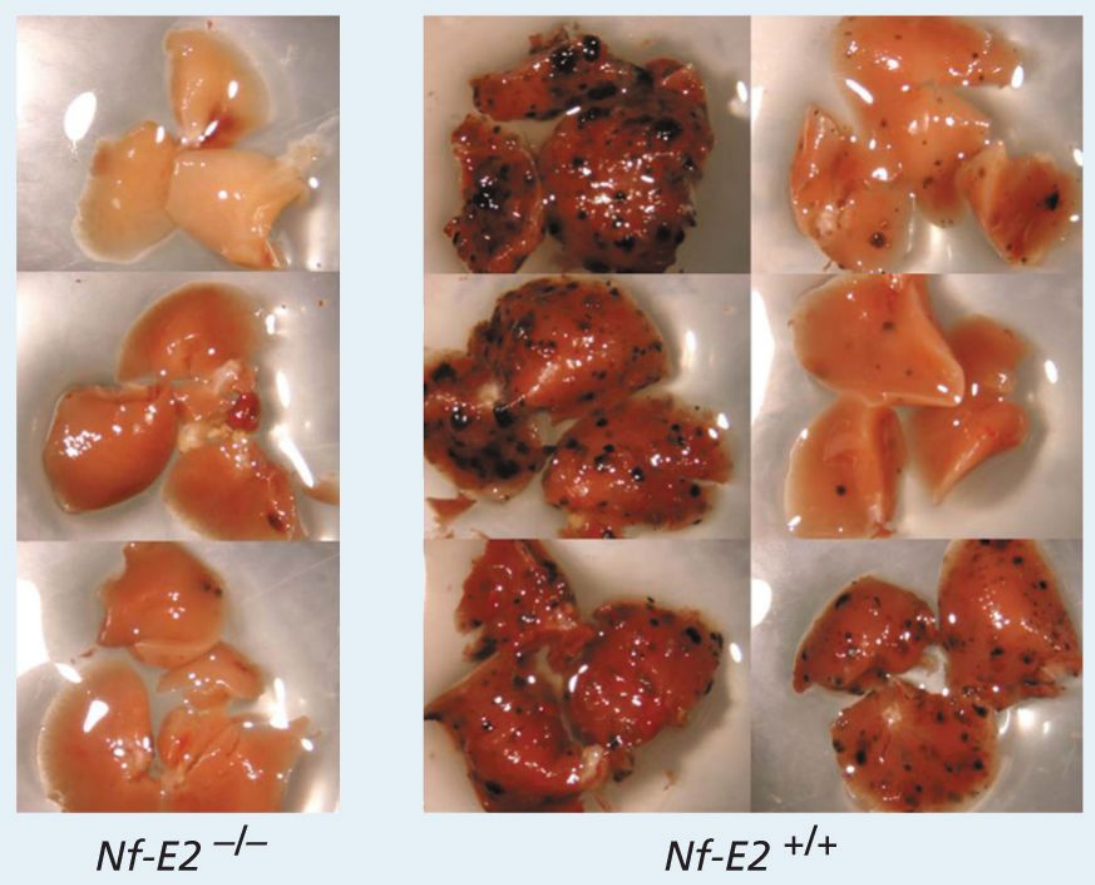
Repeated reports over the course of the last century have documented the presence of metastasizing cancer cells within small clots, termed variously microthrombi, microemboli, or thromboemboli. These consist of multiple platelets and red blood cells adsorbed to the surface of individual tumor cells or clumps of tumor cells within blood vessels (**Figure S14.3A**). (The process of forming these microthrombi is sometimes termed embolization.) In fact, the direct contact of cancer cell surfaces with blood plasma tends to provoke localized clotting. In experimental mouse models of human cancer development, the formation of these microthrombi can already be observed within two minutes of the entrance of cancer cells into the circulation.



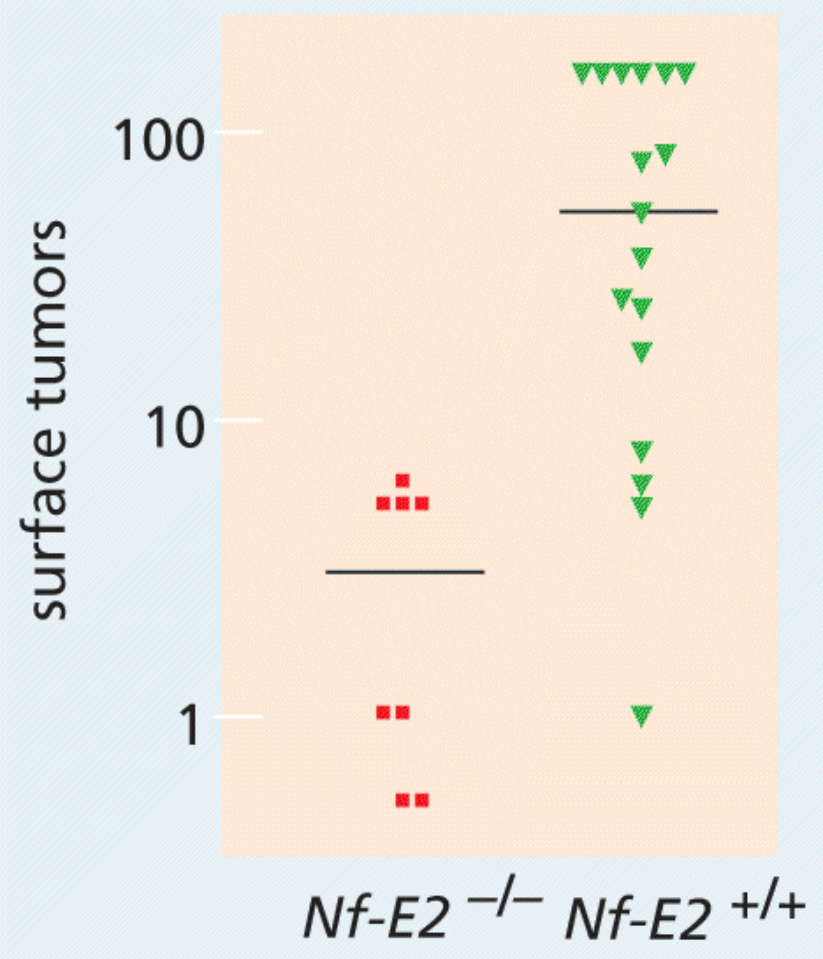
(A)



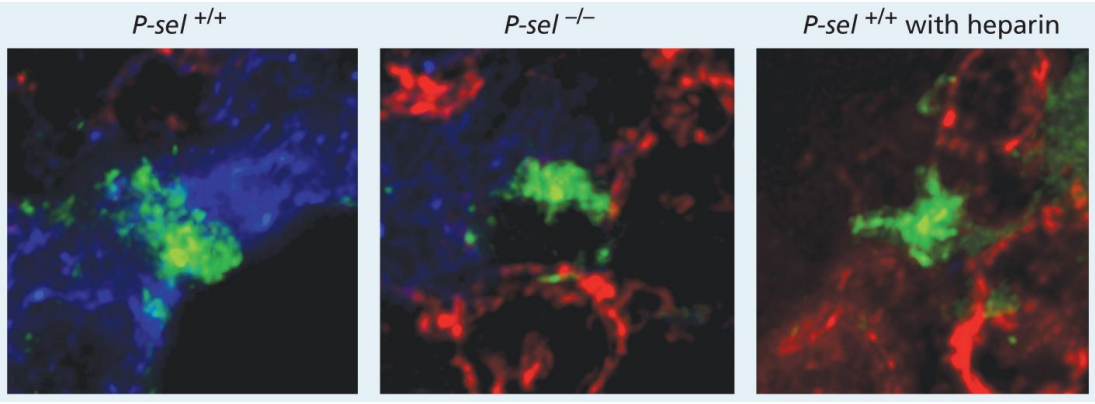
(B)



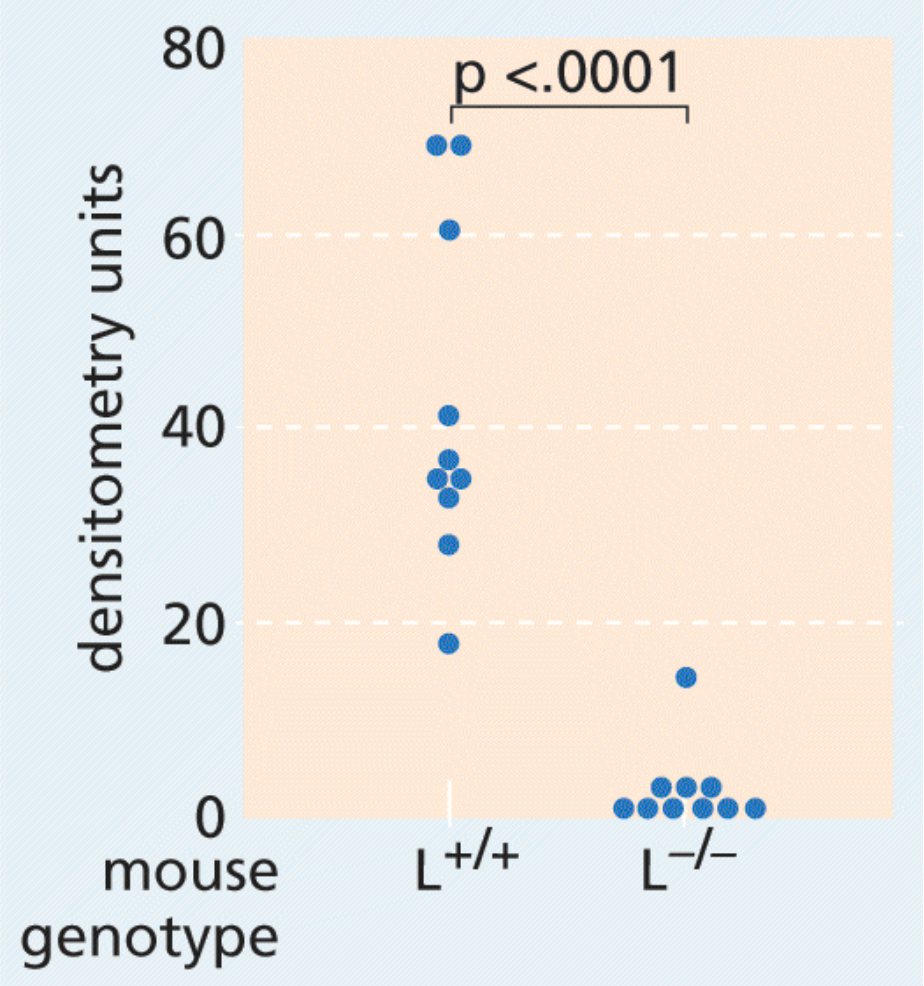
(C)


100
10
1
surface tumors
Nf-E2 −/−
Nf-E2 +/+

(D)


P-sel +/+
P-sel −/−
P-sel +/+ with heparin

(E)



(F)

Figure S14.3 Contribution of platelets to the formation of metastases The initial adhesion of platelets to intravasated cancer cells is triggered by Tissue Factor (TF), a glycoprotein that is expressed on the surfaces of most cell types outside of the circulatory system. This binding seems to be reinforced by receptors —L-selectin and P-selectin—that are expressed on the cell surface of platelets. Both selectins appear to recognize and bind mucins on the surface of cancer cells. (A) Green fluorescent protein (GFP)–labeled cells from a human colon cancer cell line were injected intravenously into mice, and 30 minutes later, frozen sections were prepared from the lungs of these mice and immunostained with an antibody that recognizes platelets (*red*). When this experiment was performed in mice that are wild type at the locus for P-selectin (*left*), a cloud of platelets was apparent; however the same experiment performed in P-selectin–negative cells (*right*) failed to demonstrate platelet aggregation, indicating the key role of P-selectin in forging links between platelets and intravasated cancer cells. Similar clouds of platelets can be found at even shorter times after introduction of other cell types, such as

melanoma cells, into the general circulation. (B) The attachment of platelets to cancer cells is triggered by the actions of Tissue Factor, whose ectodomain is seen here. Exposure of plasma to Tissue Factor, which occurs following wounding, results in a 10^5-fold up-regulation of plasma-associated FVIIa; activated FVIIa then initiates the clotting cascade that results in the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin and the adsorption of platelets to the surfaces of cancer cells. (C) Mouse B16 melanoma cells, which express the melanin pigment (*black*), were injected into the tail vein of either wild-type mice or *Nf-E2*$^{-/-}$ mice; the latter have virtually no platelets. As seen here, the mutant mice (*left*) developed very few melanoma metastases (*black spots*) in their lungs, whereas most of the wild-type mice (*right*) injected with an equal number of melanoma cells developed large numbers of metastases in their lungs. Hence, platelets provided a critical contribution to metastasis formation. (D) The counts of metastases visible on the surfaces of the lungs in panel C vary dramatically from mouse to mouse. Note that the ordinate is a logarithmic scale. (E) In wild-type mice (*left panel*), a cloak of platelets (*blue*) is present 30 minutes after human colon carcinoma cells (*green*) have been introduced into the circulation. P-selectin is required for the firm attachment of platelets to cancer cells. In mice unable to make P-selectin (*middle panel*), the cloak of platelets is substantially reduced, and now immune cells, including macrophages and monocytes (*red*), are able to approach closely to the cancer cells. Similarly, when wild-type mice are injected with heparin (an anti-coagulant that prevents platelet aggregation; *right panel*) prior to introducing the cancer cells, the platelets are absent and immune cells are present in abundance immediately around a cancer cell. (F) L-selectin plays a similarly important role in forming these microemboli. Human colon carcinoma cells were injected intravenously via the tail vein into immunocompromised mouse hosts and the numbers of metastasized human cancer cells were determined by measuring the amount of human DNA (represented here as densitometry units) in the lungs of these animals 6 weeks later. Mice whose platelets expressed normal levels of L-selectin ($L^{+/+}$) showed significant amounts of human DNA and thus metastases in their lungs, whereas those whose platelets lacked L-selectin ($L^{-/-}$) showed few if any lung metastases. (A and E, from L. Borsig et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 98:3352–3357, 2001. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. B, from Y.A. Muller, R.F. Kelley and A.M. deVos, *Protein Sci.* 7:1106–1115, 1998. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C and D, from E. Camerer et al., *Blood* 104:397–401, 2004. With permission from American Society for Hematology. F, from L. Borsig et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 99:2193–2198, 2002. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

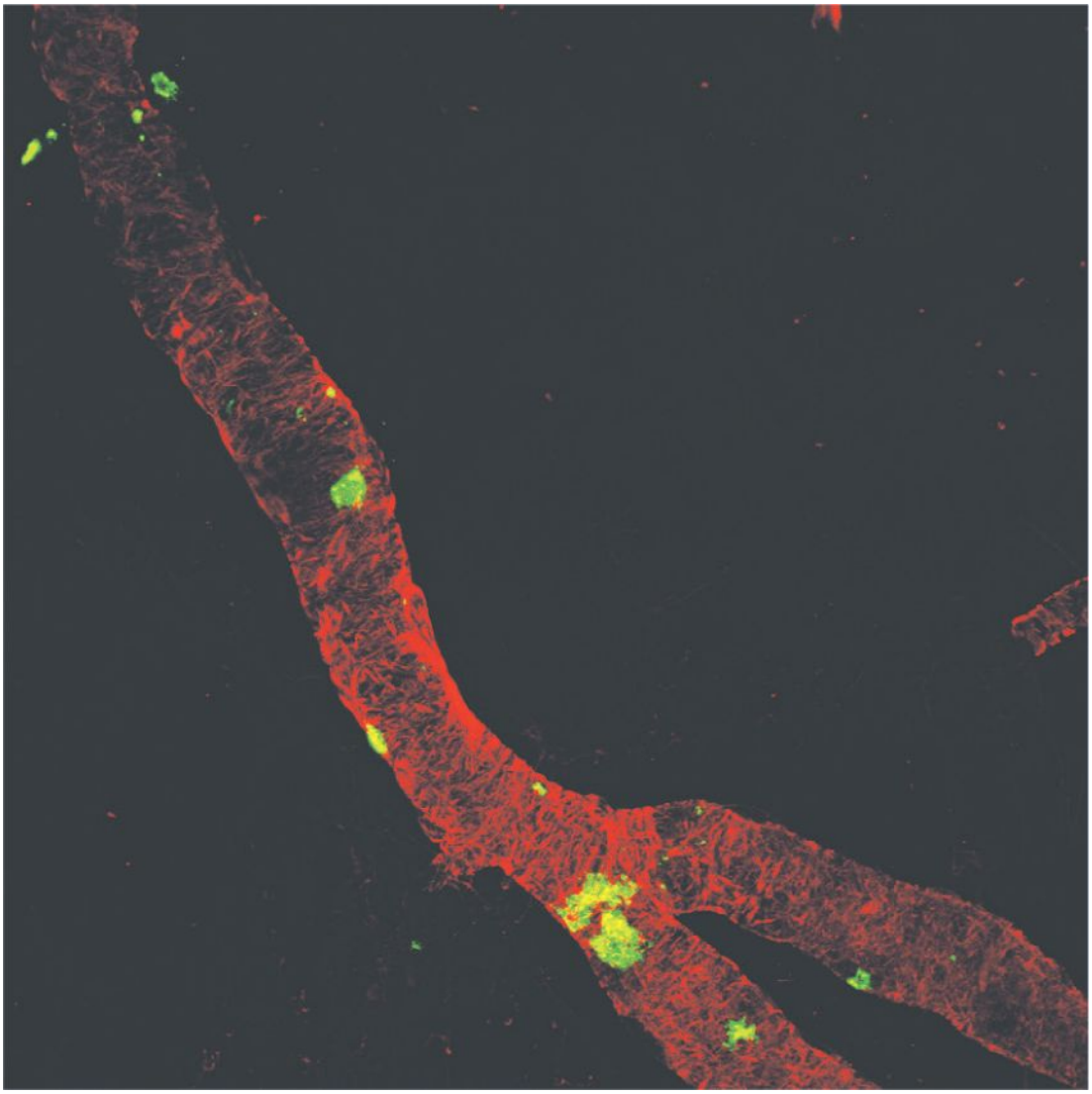
These localized clots are likely to be triggered largely by Tissue Factor (Figure S14.3B), a protein that is expressed on the surface of malignant carcinoma cells and

much less so by benign carcinoma cells and normal epithelial cells. Tissue Factor interacts with proteins in the plasma to initiate the clotting cascade: it activates thrombin, which in turn converts fibrinogen to fibrin (which binds the cells in clots together) and activates platelets (see Figure 13.12).

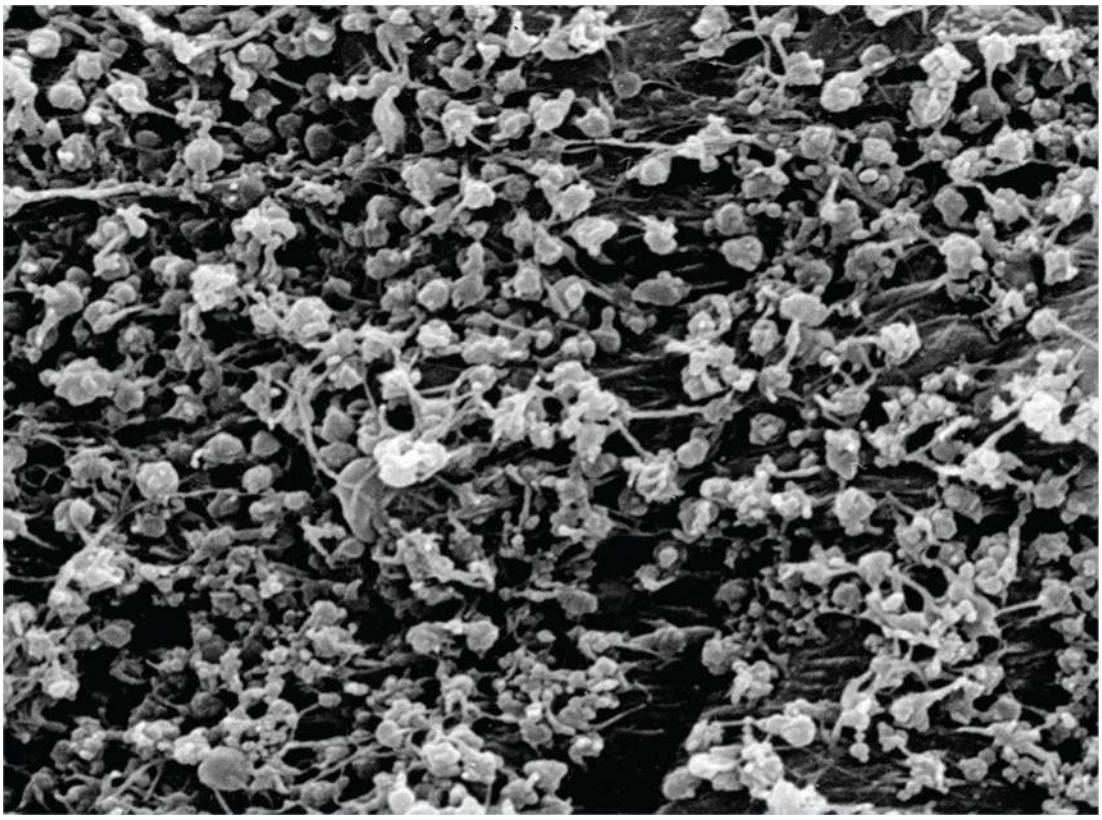
The importance of these microthrombi as vehicles for metastasizing cancer cells is indicated by studies using genetically altered mice that lack various components of the platelet-clotting machinery, including fibrinogen and components of platelets essential for their activation. Thus, melanoma cells were introduced via injection into the tail veins of these mice, and the numbers of subsequently arising lung metastases were determined. Mice lacking platelets showed a metastatic tumor burden that was only 4% of that seen in comparable wild-type mice (Figure S14.3C and D). Similarly, mutant mice carrying platelets that were unresponsive to activation by thrombin showed a metastatic burden that was only 9% of the burden seen in wild-type mice. And mice lacking the ability to form fibrin—the critical structural component of clots—exhibited lung metastases that totaled only 3% of the number counted in wild-type mice. In addition, two cell surface proteins, P- and L-selectin, seem to reinforce the adhesion of the platelets to intravasated cancer cells (Figure S14.3E and F).

Precisely how microthrombi facilitate metastasis remains a matter of conjecture. Some experiments indicate clearly that a coating of platelets protects cancer cells from various types of injury while they are traveling through the blood and are lodged in microvessels. This protection may include shielding these circulating cancer cells from attacks by natural killer (NK) cells (lymphocytes that have an intrinsic ability to recognize and kill many types of cancer cells; see Chapter 15) as well as from monocytes and macrophages. For example, the loss of metastatic ability resulting from the absence of fibrinogen is almost completely reversed if host mice are also unable to make NK cells. Presumably NK cells represent the major threat to metastasizing cancer cells in the circulation, and cancer cell survival seems to depend on the ability to hide behind cloaks formed by adsorbed platelets.

Platelets may also expedite metastasis through their ability to strongly adhere to the surfaces of injured blood vessels, specifically those in which the localized loss of the endothelial cell lining exposes the underlying vascular basement membrane and associated collagen IV (**Figure S14.4**). This binding may facilitate the attachment of entire microthrombi to the walls of larger vessels and thereby enable metastasizing cancer cells within these clumps to gain their first firm foothold in a tissue. Once physically stabilized in this way, cancer cells may begin to proliferate within microthrombi, penetrate through the vessel wall (that is, extravasate), and eventually establish a new metastatic colony in the parenchyma of a tissue.



(A)



(B)

Figure S14.4 Adhesion of microthrombi to vessel walls Microthrombi carrying cancer cells and attached platelets may occasionally adhere to the walls of larger vessels. (A) One highly plausible mechanism of attachment depends on the presence of patches of vascular basement membrane that are not covered by a continuous coating of endothelial cells and are therefore directly exposed to the lumen of a blood vessel. In this fluorescence micrograph, the outline of a blood vessel in a mouse is indicated by the configuration of the pericytes and smooth muscle cells around its exterior that have been immunostained with an antibody reactive with α-smooth muscle actin (*red*). Patches of basement membrane exposed to the lumen of this vessel have been stained through use of a lectin that specifically sticks to the basement membrane (*green*). (B) The endothelial cells lining the lumen of a rabbit carotid artery have been removed through the procedure of balloon angioplasty, exposing underlying basement membrane. Subsequently, as seen in this scanning electron micrograph, hundreds of platelets, which have a strong affinity for the collagen IV of the basement membrane, adhered to this basement membrane. This behavior suggests how microthrombi may attach to exposed patches of basement membrane through their halo of platelets. (A, courtesy of J.H.C. Chen and L. Coussens. B, from M.R. Miller et al.,

Cardiovasc. Res. 57:853–860, 2003. Republished with permission of Oxford University Press-Journals.)

In addition, as first reported in 2011, adhered platelets may help to induce components of the EMT program via the secretion of molecules like TGF-β. Indeed, this interaction, which is likely to occur after cancer cells have become trapped in distant microvessels, can perpetuate and thereby maintain expression of an EMT program that was initially activated within the confines of a primary tumor, and may thus confer the invasive traits that cancer cells require in order to extravasate by invading through the walls of these microvessels into the nearby tissue parenchyma.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.6 Metastatic dissemination of advanced primary tumor cells occurs relatively rapidly

A study published in 2008 attempted to measure the time periods that typically elapsed between distinct stages of colorectal carcinoma progression. This multi-step process was first linked to the genetic evolution of carcinoma cells in 1989 (see Figure 11.9), but the early research did not reveal the time elapsed between the successive steps. The advent of large-scale sequencing of cancer cell genomes, however, allowed calculations of the rate at which random, unselected point mutations accumulate with time, a rate found to be ~4.6×10^{-10} per base pair per cell generation. This number, taken together with the known rate of doubling of colorectal cells at various stages of tumor progression, allowed a rough calculation of the time required for the major steps of multi-step tumor progression to reach completion.

These calculations predict (**Figure S14.5**) that ~17 years is required for a primary, high-grade carcinoma to develop (via genetic and epigenetic mechanisms) from a relatively large, benign, adenomatous polyp. However, once this high-grade carcinoma forms in the gut, less than 2 years are required for metastases to the liver to arise.

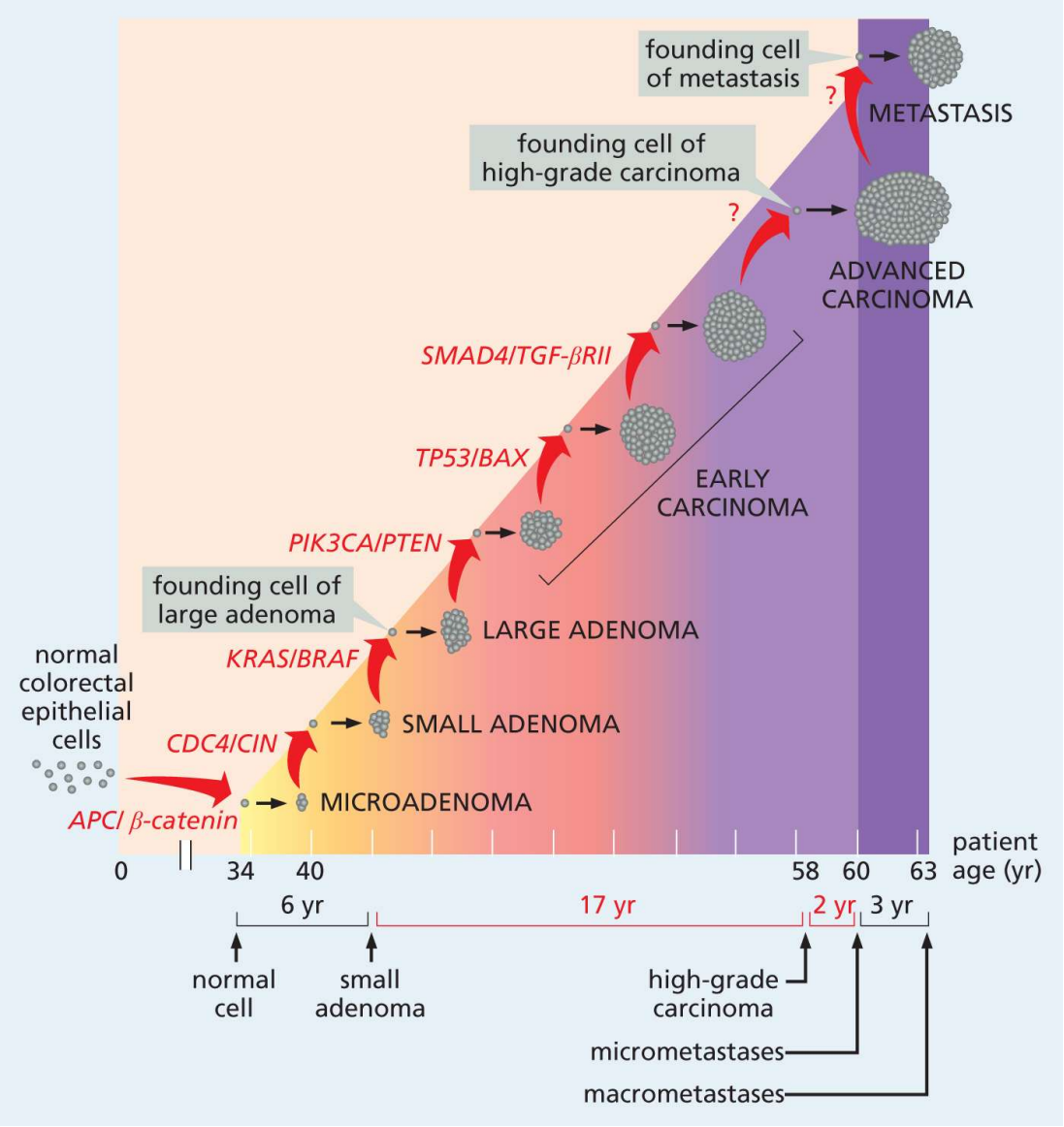


Figure S14.5 Timetable of colorectal tumor progression This scheme illustrates the time spans that have been associated with various discrete stages of colorectal tumor progression based on the somatic mutations that have been acquired in the genomes of colorectal epithelial cells at various stages of multi-step tumor progression. The age of the average patient at each stage of colorectal cancer (CRC) progression is indicated *below* the drawing, as are the time spans required to progress from a fully normal intestinal enterocyte to the formation of a small adenoma (6 yr), from this stage to a high-grade primary carcinoma (17 yr), from this stage to a micrometastasis (2 yr), and from the latter to the formation of a clinically detectable macroscopic metastasis (3 yr), this last step representing the process of colonization. The time of appearance of the founding cells of several of these clonally expanding populations is indicated. Mutant oncogenes and tumor

suppressor genes that are found typically in various stages of CRC tumor progression and are responsible hypothetically for driving these clonal expansions are given in *red*. (From S. Jones et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 105:4283–4288, 2008. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

The rapidity with which such high-grade primary carcinoma cells disseminate seems to be incompatible with a requirement for additional rare genetic events to occur and become well represented in the genomes of evolving pre-metastatic tumor cell populations. This suggests instead that the heritable genetic changes that were selected during primary tumor formation and were required for its outgrowth were already *sufficient* to enable metastatic dissemination to take place. Stated differently, high-grade primary carcinoma cells may already be genetically equipped to disseminate. Accordingly, epigenetic changes acquired by these high-grade primary carcinoma cells —specifically those acquired during passage through an EMT—may suffice to enable these genetically altered cells to disseminate.

In light of the information presented in Section 14.7, the process of multi-step tumor progression can be depicted in a new way: primary tumor formation depends on the acquisition of a number of critical gene mutations (and hypermethylated transcriptional promoters). In many tumors, once these changes have been acquired, expression of one or several EMT-TFs in these cells may enable them to complete the remaining steps of the invasion–metastasis cascade (up to the stage of colonization) without the need for additional genetic alterations.

These considerations have additional implications for the overall process of tumor pathogenesis and metastasis. They suggest three major phases of this process: (1) primary tumor formation through heritable genetic and epigenetic somatic alterations (the latter via promoter methylation); (2) activation of an EMT program in cells and their physical dissemination leading to the formation of micrometastases; and (3) colonization, which demands that disseminated micrometastatic cells undergo a series of adaptations to an unfamiliar tissue microenvironment by still-unknown changes, perhaps largely nongenetic.

The subsequent outgrowth of a macroscopic metastasis—the product of successful colonization—may then allow a repetition of steps 2 and 3, in this case involving the newly formed macrometastasis rather than the primary tumor as the source of the disseminating cancer cells.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.7 Our cells devote an enormous number of genes to regulating protein degradation

Surveys of the human genome sequence have yielded a repertoire of protease-encoding genes that is vastly larger than previously anticipated. These enzymes degrade protein substrates both inside and outside of cells. They can be placed into five major functional classes, depending on the identity of the critical functional group in the catalytic sites of these enzymes. Thus, in addition to the metalloproteinases, serine, cysteine, aspartyl, and threonine proteases have been characterized.

A 2003 detailed analysis of the human genome identified 553 genes that encode proteases, some which, based on their sequence, appeared to be catalytically inactive but nonetheless subserving some still-unknown function. (For comparison, recall that the entire human kinome contains 518 protein kinases, compared to the 553 proteins that together compose the "degradome.") Of these proteases, 125 appeared to be membrane bound, although the location of the membrane (i.e., cell surface versus intracellular membrane) was not revealed by this analysis. Most of these 553 proteins are likely to be secreted proteins or cell surface proteins, highlighting the complex regulatory interactions that are mediated by proteases and operate in the extracellular space, about which we know almost nothing.

The large super-family of proteases could be grouped into 63 distinct gene families based on their amino acid sequences. This echoes the explosive growth of another group of enzymes known to be involved in protein degradation—the ubiquitylating enzymes. Some surveys have enumerated as many as 527 of these enzymes that are encoded by the human genome (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). The actions of the ubiquitylating enzymes are countered by as many as 110 distinct de-ubiquitylating enzymes (DUBs), most of which are cysteine proteases. Altogether, about 5% of the genes in our genome are devoted to one or another aspect of protein degradation. Only a tiny fraction of these genes and their protein products have been studied to date; many are likely to control the concentrations of important cellular growth-regulating proteins. It is inevitable, therefore, that a significant cohort of these regulators will eventually be discovered to play key roles in neoplastic growth control and tumor invasiveness.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.8 Complex subcellular structures enable cell motility

The process of cellular movement can be broken down into several distinct steps. To begin, a cell will extend its cytoplasm in the direction of intended movement. This extension involves the protrusion from the cell surface of lamellipodia—broad, flat, sheetlike structures that may be tens of microns in width but only 0.1 to 0.2 μm thick (**Figure S14.6**; see also Figure 14.35). At the same time, cell surface proteases, such as those cited in **Supplementary Sidebar 14.7**, are used to selectively degrade ECM proteins that stand in the way of the "leading edge" of the migrating cell. While this is going on, the cell deploys integrins to construct new points of attachment between the

lamellipodia and the ECM at its leading edge and, at the same time, breaks such adhesions at its “lagging edge,” thereby liberating components of its cytoplasm and plasma membrane for redeployment to the leading edge (see Figure 14.33).

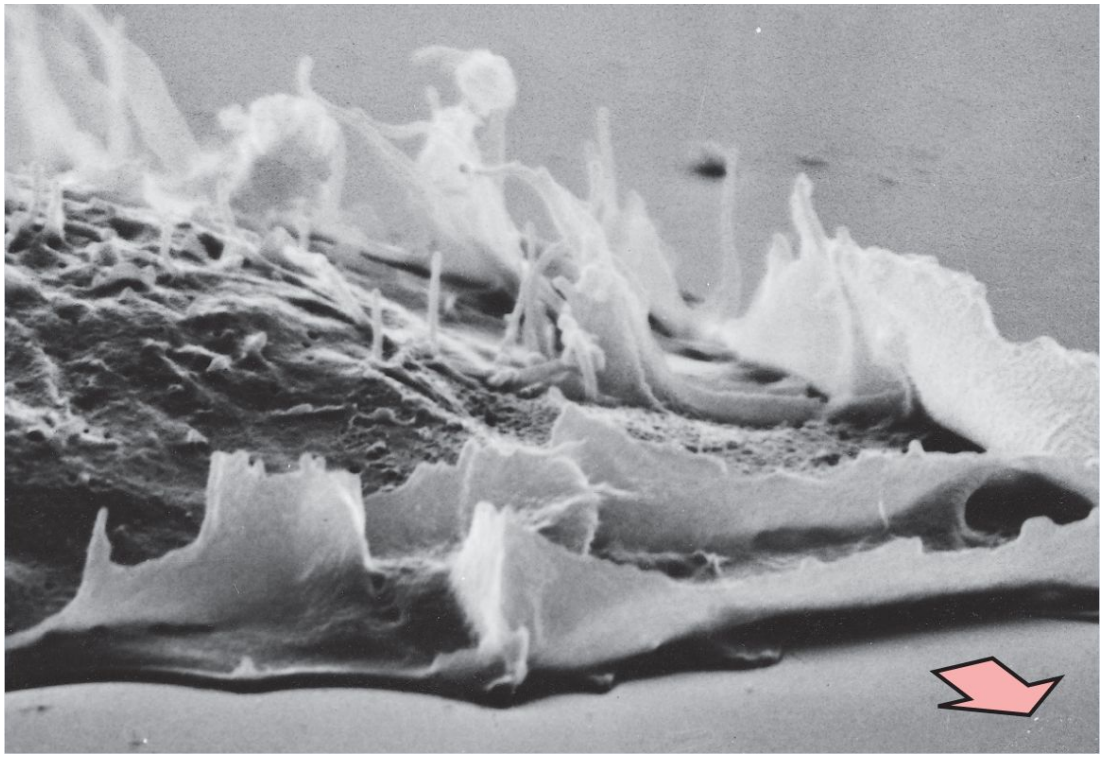


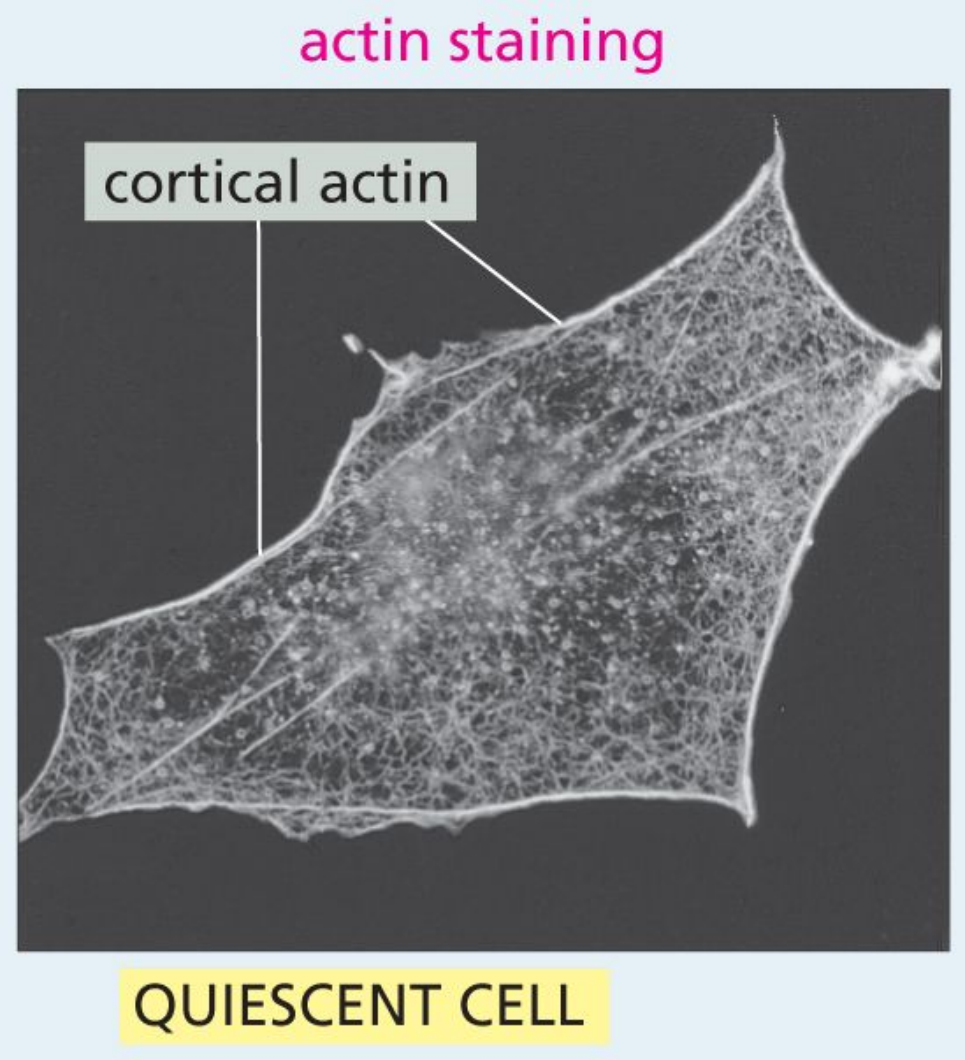
Figure S14.6 Lamellipodia and filopodia This scanning electron micrograph (SEM) of a spontaneously transformed rat liver cell shows the elaborate ruffles—lamellipodia—that migrating cells extend at their leading edge during locomotion in the indicated direction (*pink arrow*). Lamellipodia are presumed to play a key role in the advance of invasive cancer cells *in vivo*, but this has not yet been directly demonstrated. Lamellipodia that fail to attach to the substrate seem to be swept back as ruffles along the dorsal (top) side of the cell; their component parts are then reintegrated into the larger plasma membrane and cytoskeleton. Not shown here are the filopodia—the small fingerlike protrusions that are extended from the leading edges of lamellipodia and are seen in abundance in Figure S14.7D. (Courtesy of Julian Heath.)

Protruding from the lamellipodia are spikelike structures termed filopodia that are thought to enable an advancing cell to explore the territory that lies ahead and initiate the formation of focal adhesions by integrins (see Figure 14.35); once formed, these adhesions provide cells with survival signals and, at the same time, allow them to gain traction through firm physical connections with the adjacent ECM. There are also indications that filopodia play a key role in the initial formation of micrometastases,

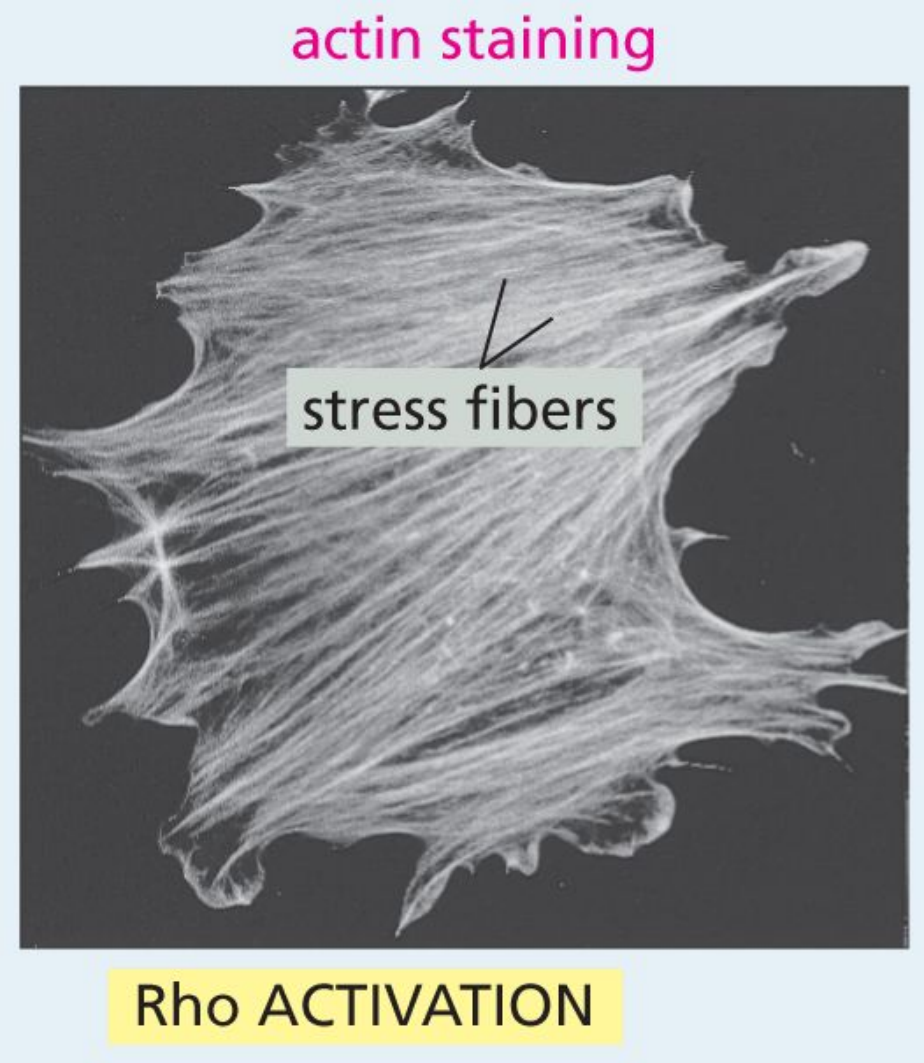
doing so by enabling extravasated cancer cells to form focal adhesions with the ECM of the surrounding tissue. Like lamellipodia, filopodia are assembled through the reorganization of actin fibers, in this case the fibers that are tightly bundled together beneath the plasma membrane of each filopodium (see Figure 14.35B). All these changes are organized by the actions of Ras-like small G proteins, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 14.9**.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.9 Small G proteins govern cell motility

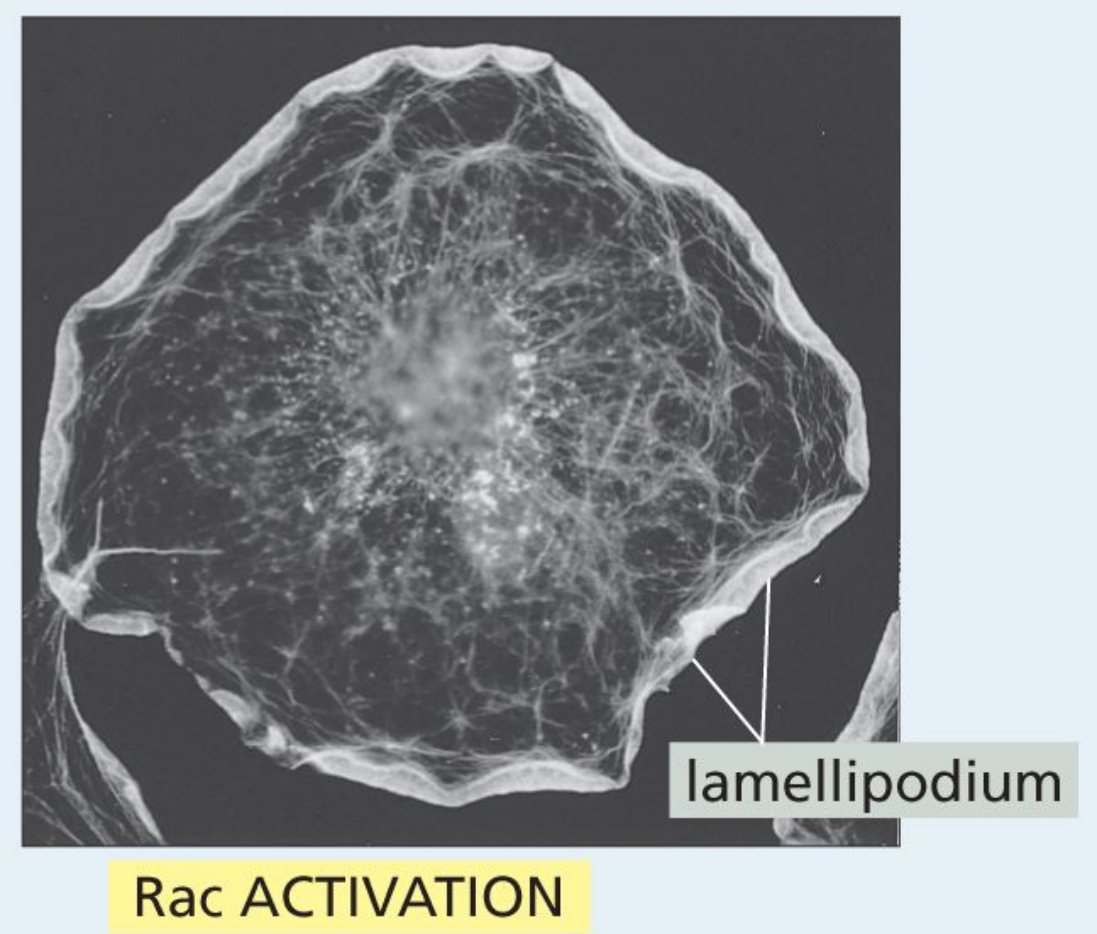
The management of the details of cell shape and motility is under the control of members of a group of Ras-related proteins belonging to the Rho family. As discussed briefly in Chapter 6, the Rho proteins, like Ras, operate as binary switches, being in a functionally active state while binding GTP and in an inactive state once they hydrolyze their bound GTP to GDP. More than 20 members of the Rho family of proteins have been discovered in human cells. They are divided into three subfamilies —the Rho proteins proper, the Rac proteins, and Cdc42. Like the Ras proteins, most members of the Rho protein family bear lipid groups at their C-termini that enable anchoring to intracellular membranes. Each of these has specialized functions in reorganizing cell shape and enabling cell motility (**Figure S14.7**).



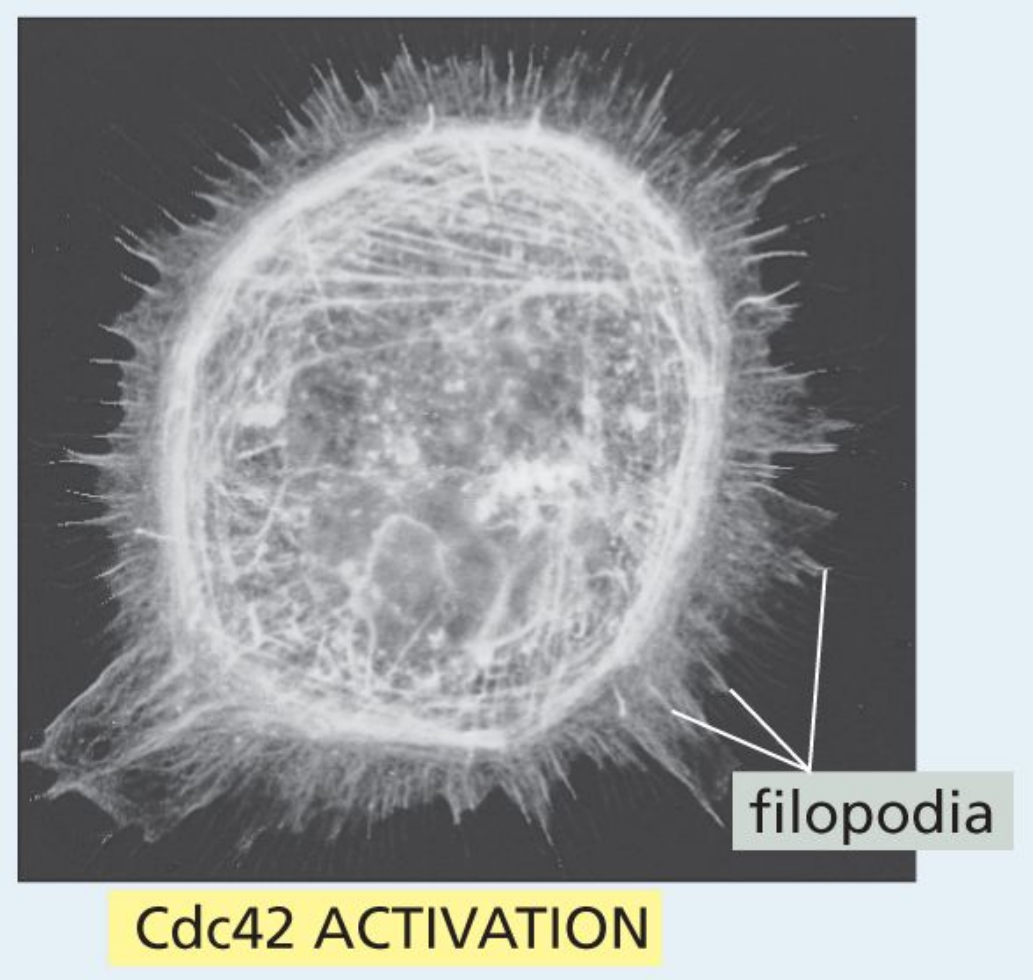
(A)



(B)



(C)



(D)

Figure S14.7 Effects of Rho-like proteins on the actin cytoskeleton and cell adhesion Members of the Rho family of small GTPases, which consists of Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 subfamilies, control both the actin cytoskeleton and the formation of focal adhesions (see Figure 5.22A). The actin fibers were labeled in all cases with fluorescent phalloidin. (A) Quiescent, serum-starved 3T3 fibroblasts serve as the controls for the panels that follow; note the cortical actin beneath the plasma membrane of this cell. (B) Exposure of cells to lysophosphatidic acid, which specifically activates Rho subfamily proteins, causes the cell to assemble large numbers of focal adhesions (*not shown*), which in turn enable the assembly of actin stress fibers. (C) Micro-injection of a constitutively activate form of a Rac protein into a cell causes it to construct a single enormous lamellipodium around its entire circumference. (In contrast, a focal source of a Rac-activating signal is likely to induce a lamellipodium only on the side facing this source.) (D) Micro-injection of a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF) of Cdc42 into a cell causes it to extend hundreds of filopodia in all directions, which fails to reflect the

usual focal localization of these extensions on one or another side of a cell. (Courtesy of Kate Nobes; from A. Hall, *Science* 279:509–514, 1998.)

Figure S14.7 actually misrepresents the actions of these various Rho-like proteins in one important respect: it implies that each of them acts globally throughout the cell to organize certain changes in the configuration of the actin cytoskeleton. In reality, the complex program of cell motility depends on the *localized* activation of each of these proteins in very small domains of the cytoplasm, which in turn enables the cell as a whole to move in one direction or another. This focal activation seems to depend, in turn, on the subcellular localization of specialized Rho GEFs (guanine nucleotide exchange factors), which, like Sos (see Section 6.2), operate to convert Rho proteins from their inactive GDP-bound form to their active GTP-bound form; there are about 80 Rho GEFs in mammalian cells, few of which have been studied in any detail. The alternative to localized activation—global activation throughout a cell—would lead to attempts by a cell to move simultaneously in all directions, a scenario suggested by the lamellipodia of Figure S14.7C, which form a continuous ring around the entire perimeter of the cytoplasm. (The global activation of Rac function in the cell depicted in Figure S14.7C is an artifact of introducing mutant, constitutively activated Rac protein into the cell by micro-injection.)

Growth factor activation of tyrosine kinase receptors leads to the activation of many members of the Rho family of G proteins (**Figure S14.8**). For example, treatment of cultured fibroblasts with platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), a potent mitogen for these cells, activates a number of Rho proteins and stimulates these fibroblasts to move across the bottom of a Petri dish. Alternatively, when fibroblasts are placed in three-dimensional culture by being suspended in a collagen gel, PDGF induces them to invade through this gel. All three subfamilies of Rho proteins appear to contribute to this invasion, whereas only Rac may be needed for the movement of fibroblasts across a solid substrate in culture. These various behaviors also illustrate an important distinction between the Ras proteins and their distant Rho family cousins: in cancer cells, Ras proteins are often activated by alterations in their structure (more specifically, amino acid substitutions), whereas the various Rho proteins are functionally activated by their upstream physiological regulators.

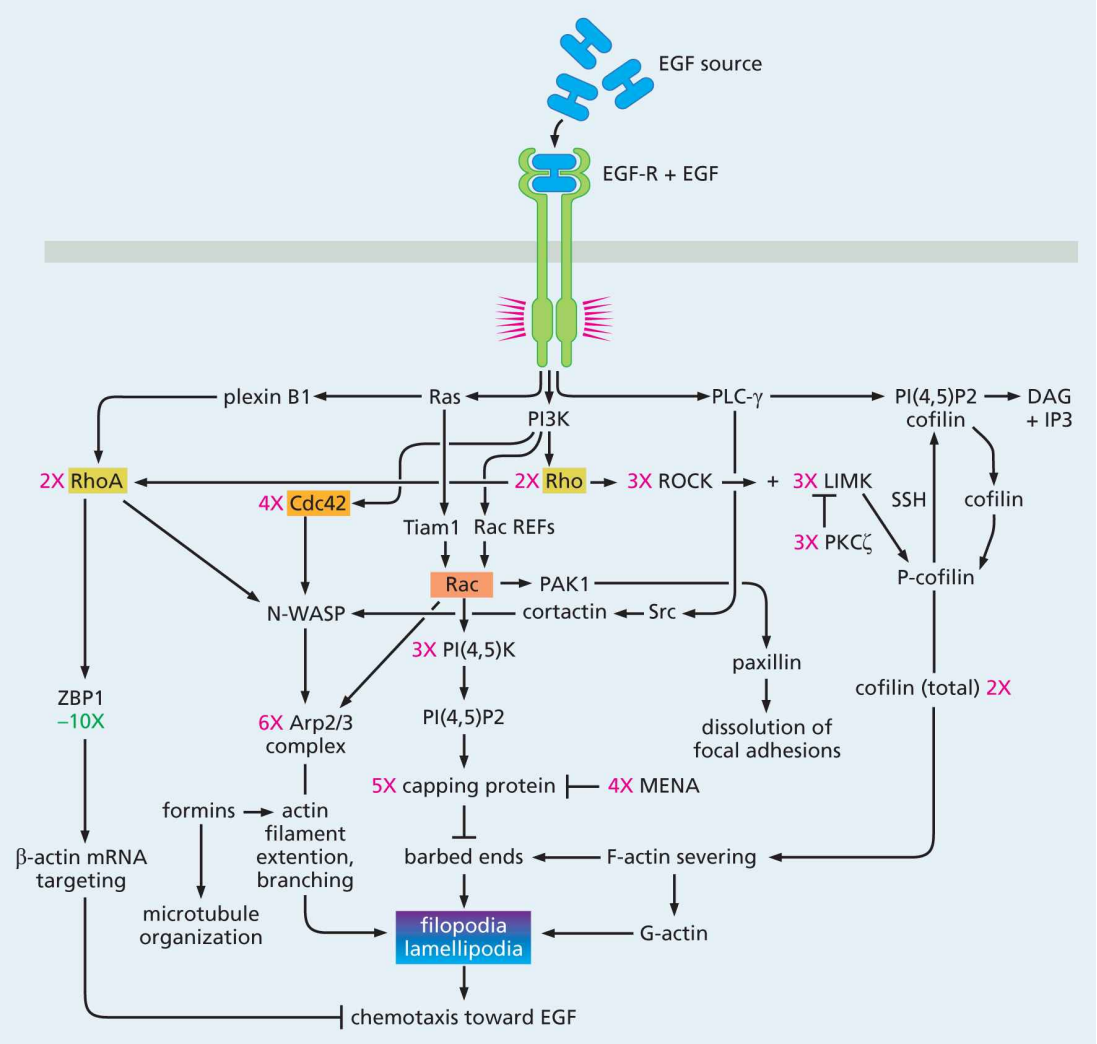


Figure S14.8 The circuitry mediating EGF-induced cell motility Many of the signal-transducing proteins that lie downstream of the EGF receptor and are responsible for mediating EGF-induced cell motility are indicated here. These act in large part through their ability to assemble and dissolve components of the actin cytoskeleton, which in turn create the filopodia and lamellipodia at the cell surface that enable motility and invasiveness; reconfigurations of the microtubule cytoskeleton also contribute to motility. The relative proportions of these proteins change as breast cancer cells acquire increased motility and invasiveness; the extent of overexpression of mRNAs encoding a number of these proteins in the cancer cells is indicated by the *pink* numbers, and the extent of reduced expression is indicated by the *green* number. Together these changes in expression have been termed the “invasion signature.” Some proteins, such as cofilin, sever existing actin fibers in certain localized regions of the cell, while capping protein prevents further extension of existing fibers (see Figures 14.34 and 14.35). Cortactin is associated with cortical actin and is responsible for organizing the invasive edges

of lamellipodia. Members of the Rho family of GTPases are indicated in *yellow* and *orange;* major cellular structures are indicated in *blue/purple*. This "wiring diagram" continues to undergo revisions as new component signaling proteins and interconnections between them are delineated. (Adapted from W. Wang et al., *Trends Cell Biol.* 15:138–145, 2005. With permission from Elsevier.)

All of the signaling connections between the tyrosine kinase receptors, such as the PDGF and EGF receptors, and these Rho family proteins are not known. We do know, however, that these receptors, by activating Ras, stimulate at least three downstream signaling pathways involving the Raf, PI3K (phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase), and Ral-GEF effectors (see Sections 6.5–6.7); a subset of these may, in turn, influence cell motility via regulation of the Rho proteins. In addition, activated Ras binds and appears to activate Tiam1, which functions as a guanine nucleotide exchange factor for Rac. (Recall that GEFs are responsible for causing small G proteins, such as Ras and Rho, to jettison bound GDP and take on GTP, thereby activating signaling by these G proteins.) Hence, Tiam1 and Rac should also be considered to be downstream effectors of Ras that affect cell motility, ostensibly by regulating the formation of lamellipodia.

Actually, from the perspective of cell motility, PI3K is clearly the most important of the well-characterized Ras effectors. By generating PIP3 [phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)-triphosphate], the PI3K enzyme creates a chemical structure on the cytoplasmic face of the plasma membrane to which a variety of cytosolic proteins can attach via their PH domains (see Section 6.6). Among these tethered proteins are several GEFs that are responsible for activating members of the Rho family of G proteins. These Rho GEFs become activated following their tethering to the plasma membrane.

(The overarching role of PI3K and PIP3 in choreographing cell motility is illustrated by studies of the motility of the slime mold *Dictyostelium discoideum*. PI3K, and thus its product, PIP3, is localized at the leading edge of an advancing slime mold cell. Conversely, PTEN, the enzyme that dephosphorylates PIP3 and thereby antagonizes PI3K, is localized to the sides and to the rear, lagging edge of such a cell. This introduces another element into our thinking: although growth factor receptors, such as the PDGF-R, might in principle release signals encouraging PI3K activation throughout a cell, the actual signaling by this enzyme may also be influenced by its localization and the localizations of its activating GF receptor and antagonist within the cell.)

Tiam1 was originally identified as the product of a **T**-cell lymphoma **i**nvasion **a**nd **m**etastasis gene, indicating the importance of its encoded protein to these late steps of tumor progression. Tiam1 function appears to be stimulated both by its association with GTP-bound, active Ras (see Figure S14.8) and by its binding to PIP3. By activating Rac proteins, the Tiam1 GEF encourages the localized polymerization of

actin at the leading edge of migrating cells, thereby yielding the lamellipodia that are so critical to cell locomotion (see Figure S14.6).

The other Rho-like proteins that are activated by Rho GEFs are responsible for other parts of the cell motility program (see Figure S14.7B). For example, Rho proteins like RhoA and RhoB, acting in concert with Rac proteins, promote the establishment of new points of adhesion between the leading edge of the cell and the extracellular matrix. The reverse is also true: the forging of new focal adhesions also encourages Rac activation (see Figure S14.7C), suggesting the operation of some self-sustaining, positive-feedback loop that ensures the continuity of forward motion. Rac and Cdc42 proteins also appear able to induce expression of certain secreted proteases, notably the matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) described in the last section. By doing so, they may coordinate localized remodeling of the extracellular matrix with extension of lamellipodia at the leading edge of a motile cell.

The contraction of the cell body (which helps to drag the lagging edge of the cell forward toward the leading edge; see Figure 14.33) is equally important for a cell's directed movement. This contraction is also governed largely by members of the Rho subfamily of proteins. By encouraging the formation of actin bundles in the cytoplasm, Rho proteins are able to create the structures known as "stress fibers" (see Figure S14.7B) and thereby contribute to the regulation of the contractility of the cytoplasm.

Cdc42, which represents the third subfamily of Rho-like proteins, has its own specialized function: it is able to induce the extension of the fingerlike filopodia (see Figures 14.35A and S14.7D). As mentioned in **Supplementary Sidebar 14.8**, filopodia contribute to cell motility by nucleating the formation of focal adhesions, which in turn allow advancing cells to establish a firm footing in the ECM. In addition, activated Cdc42 is able to stimulate generalized cell motility, independent of its specific effects on filopodia.

To complicate things even more, the actions of Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 differ in different cell types. For example, in normal epithelial cells (rather than the fibroblasts discussed above), the Rac and Rho subfamily proteins are responsible for maintaining the E-cadherin–dependent cell–cell adherens junctions; as we have read, these junctions are vital for preserving the epithelial cell sheet and therefore immobilize participating epithelial cells. However, in transformed epithelial cells, such as colon carcinoma cells that have undergone a partial or complete EMT, Rac clearly contributes to increased motility. In nonmotile cells, Tiam1 (the Rac exchange factor) is found in these adherens junctions, whereas in migrating cells, Tiam1 localizes to lamellipodia and related membrane ruffles.

The task of integrating these disparate observations into a single scheme has only begun. An early attempt to do so, seen in Figure S14.8, will surely be followed by

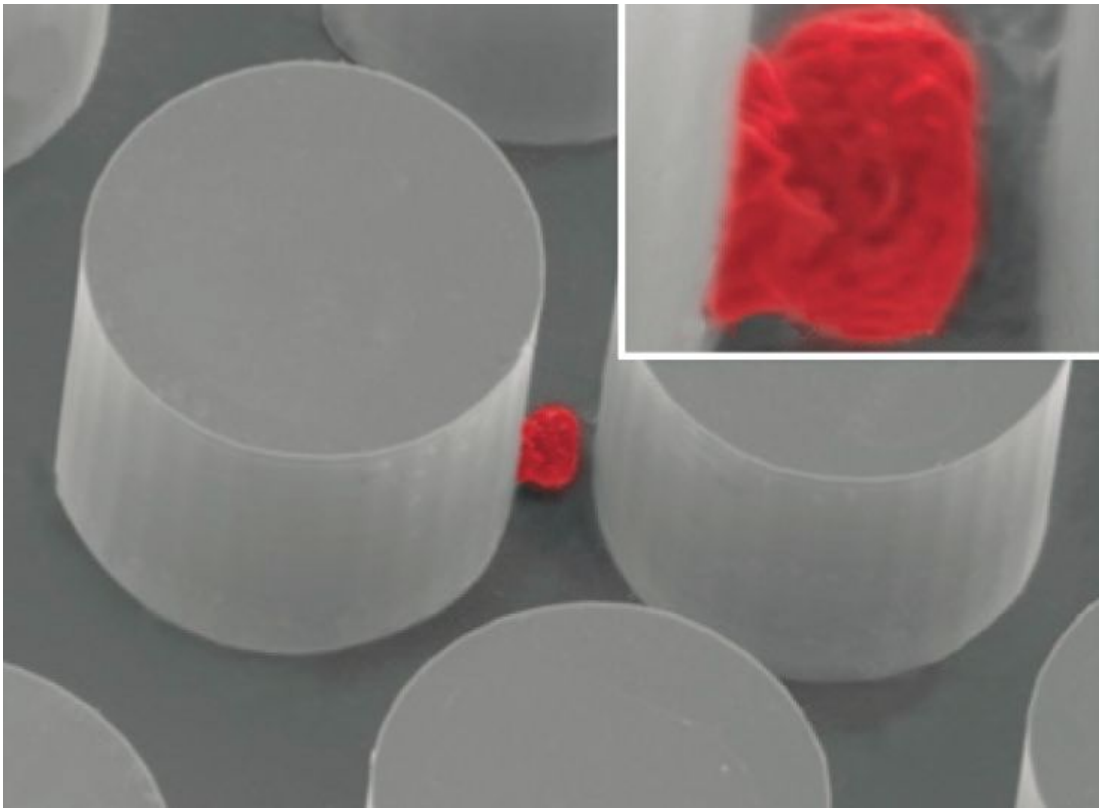
dozens of revisions. Virtually all the subcircuits depicted in this scheme of EGF-induced motility are likely to participate in organizing the motility stimulated by other motogenic growth factors, such as HGF and PDGF, as well.

The relevance of the Rho family proteins to cancer metastasis has been highlighted by searches for genes that are specifically expressed in metastatic cells but are expressed to a much lesser extent in nonmetastatic cells. In one set of experiments, strongly metastatic variants of mouse and human melanoma tumor cell lines were selected and the gene expression patterns of the cell lines were compared with those of weakly metastatic cells. Prominent among the genes whose expression was elevated in the metastatic variants was the gene encoding the RhoC protein (one of the Rho subfamily). Indeed, introduction of a RhoC-expression vector into poorly metastatic melanoma cells caused them to become highly metastatic, while ectopic expression of a dominant-interfering form of RhoC reduced the metastatic powers of usually metastatic cells. RhoC has also been found to be strongly expressed in cells of inflammatory breast cancers, a particularly aggressive form of this disease, and in pancreatic carcinomas, which are almost always highly aggressive.

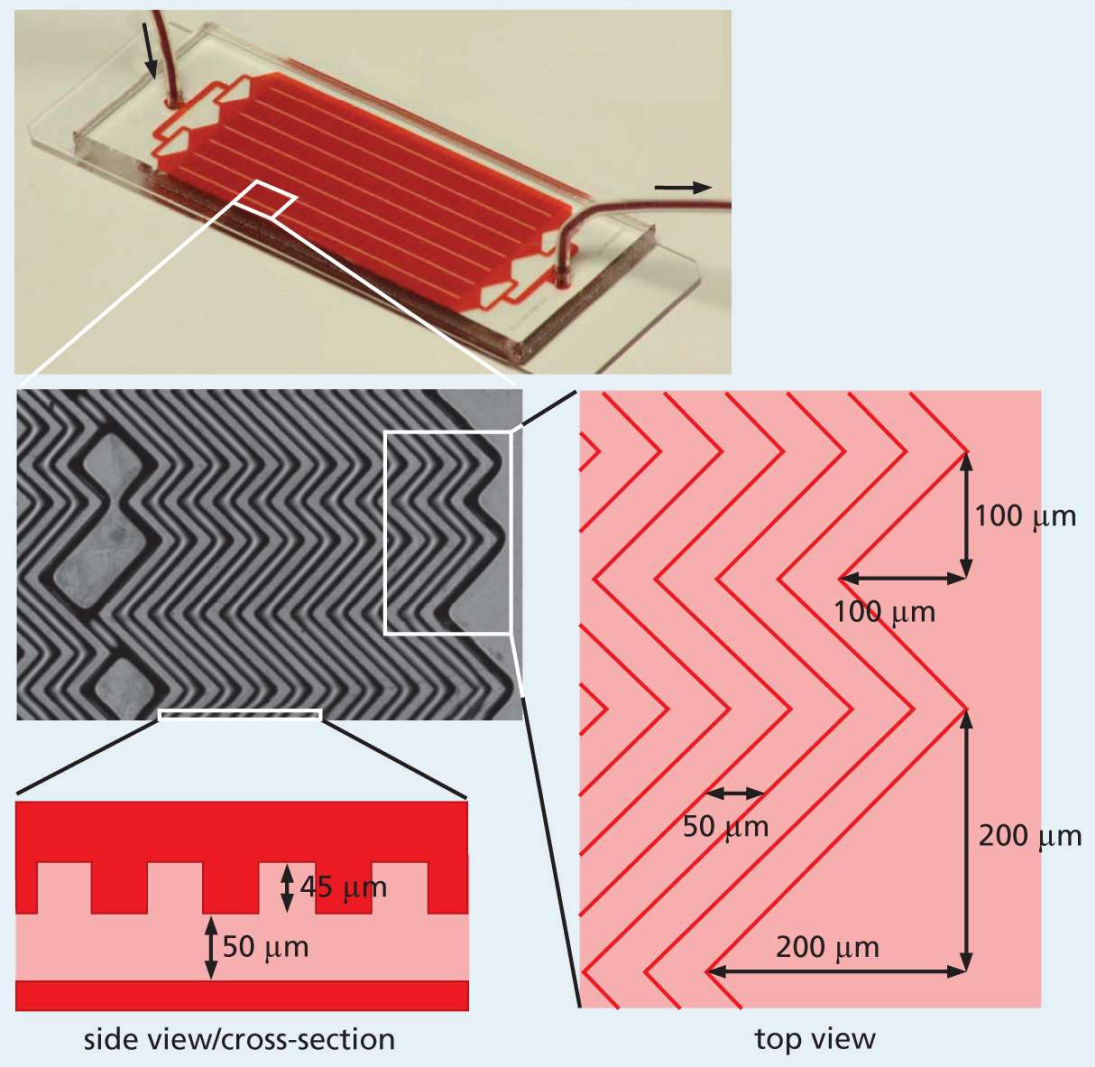
Our rapidly expanding understanding of the molecular mechanisms underlying cell motility and invasiveness has converged on studies of the EMT program. In particular, these mechanisms provide insights into how some of the key changes occurring during an EMT are actually accomplished by various effectors regulating the cytoskeleton, protease synthesis, and thus cancer cell motility. Here, much interest has focused on the Mena protein, also called ENAH (see Figure 14.34).

Supplementary Sidebar 14.10 Specially designed instruments can be used to detect circulating tumor cells

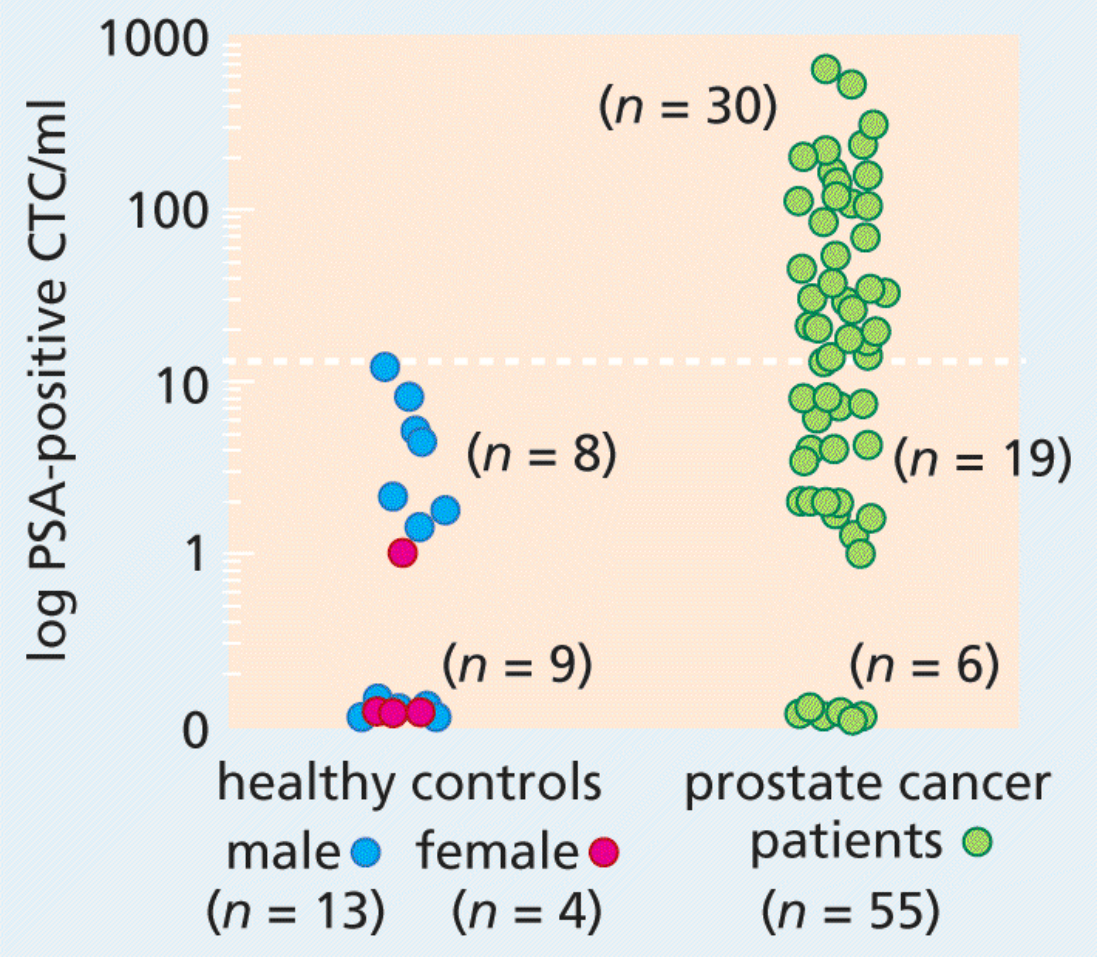
Devices have been developed that allow the isolation of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) from the blood of cancer patients; these instruments are currently in a state of rapid further development. Some of these devices rely on the immobilization of monoclonal antibody molecules on the solid surfaces on the sides of channels through which blood is then forced. These microfluidic devices come in various configurations, two examples of which are provided here (**Figure S14.9A** and **B**). Application of such microfluidic devices to the analysis of the blood of normal controls and prostate cancer patients is seen in Figure S14.9C–E.



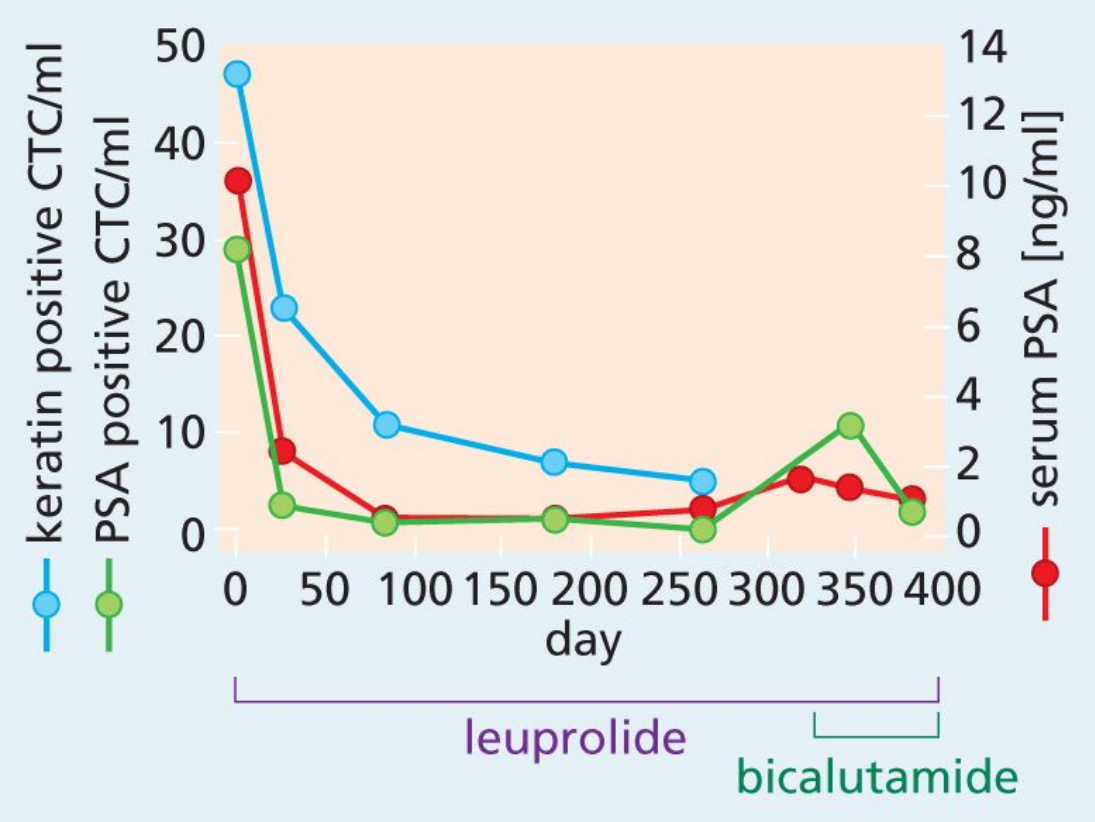
(A)


100 μm
100 μm
50 μm
200 μm
200 μm
45 μm
50 μm
side view/cross-section
top view

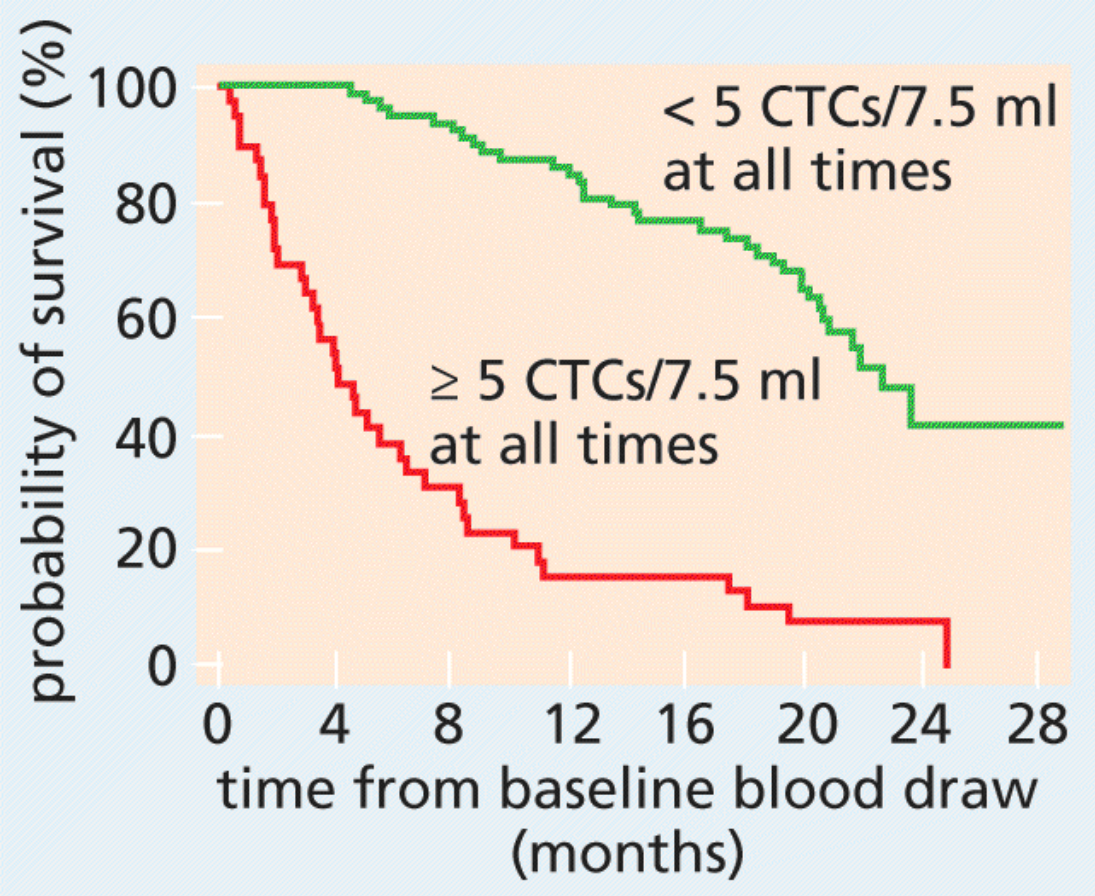
(B)


1000
100
10
1
0
log PSA-positive CTC/ml
(n = 30)
(n = 8)
(n = 19)
(n = 9)
(n = 6)
healthy controls
male
female
(n = 13)
(n = 4)
prostate cancer
patients
(n = 55)

(C)


keratin positive CTC/ml
PSA positive CTC/ml
50
40
30
20
10
0
14
12
10
8
6
4
2
0
serum PSA [ng/ml]
0 50 100 150 200 250 300 350 400
day
leuprolide
bicalutamide

(D)



(E)

Figure S14.9 Microfluidic devices for capturing circulating tumor cells (CTCs) from the blood of cancer patients Two examples of a variety of microfluidic devices ("chips") are shown. By coating the surfaces of these devices with monoclonal antibody molecules that recognize cell-surface antigens displayed by cancer cells, CTCs from a variety of tumors can be trapped. Although early versions of such chips did not allow intact cells to be readily isolated, more recent versions do indeed permit the isolation of intact, even viable cells. An alternative means of isolating CTCs, not shown here, involves the coupling of monoclonal antibodies to iron particles, allowing the coupled antibodies to bind to the surfaces of CTCs, and isolating the resulting antibody–CTC complexes with a magnetic field. (A) This chip contained 78,000 cylindrical microposts coated with a monoclonal antibody reactive with EpCam, a cell surface antigen expressed by many carcinoma cells and normal epithelial cell types but not expressed by hematopoietic cells. In the chip visualized here by scanning electron microscopy, human lung cancer cells added to normal human blood were passed through the microfluidic chamber. A captured lung cancer cell, colorized *red*, is also seen at higher magnification in the inset at the *top right*. In

blood samples from patients with a variety of metastatic cancers (lung, prostate, pancreatic, breast, and colon carcinomas), 99% yielded CTCs immobilized on this chip. (B) Shown is a microfluidic chip of the herringbone configuration, which allows more efficient capture of CTCs. Moreover, because of the decreased turbulence within the channels, larger aggregates composed of multiple CTCs can be captured. This device, like the one described in panel A, depends on coating the surfaces with a monoclonal antibody directed against EpCam. (C) Here, a microfluidic chip of the type described in panel A was used to screen the blood of patients with metastatic prostate cancer and, as a control, of normal male and female volunteers for the presence of CTCs. In this case, an antibody against PSA (prostate-specific antigen) was used to trap PSA^+ prostate cells on the microposts within the chip; hematopoietic cells expressing the CD45 cell surface antigens were excluded from this analysis. The concentration of CTCs per ml is plotted on a logarithmic scale (*ordinate*). Normal men exhibited between ~0.5 and 10 CTCs per ml (*red circles*), whereas the prostate cancer patients, including those with both localized and metastatic disease, had from ~0.5 to ~3000 CTCs per ml of blood. (D) The changing levels of CTCs in response to anti-androgen therapy against metastatic prostate cancer were measured in a number of men, one of whose responses are plotted here. The man was first treated with leuprolide, which interferes with androgen biosynthesis by altering signaling in the pituitary gland and subsequently, toward the end of this course of treatment, with bicalutamide, an androgen receptor antagonist. This patient's levels of circulating PSA (*red curve*) dropped dramatically in response to initial treatment, in parallel with a decrease in the levels of PSA-positive CTCs (*green curve*), while his levels of cytokeratin-positive CTCs dropped more slowly. (E) The concentrations of CTCs from a group of 177 patients with metastatic breast cancer were monitored at intervals after initiation of a new course of therapy. The survival of two subgroups of patients with different concentrations of CTCs/7.5 ml of blood are shown. (A, from S. Nagrath et al., *Nature* 450:1235–1239, 2007. With permission from Nature. B, from S.L. Stott et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 107:18393–18397, 2010. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. C and D, from S.L. Stott et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* 2:25ra23, 2010. With permission from AAAS. E, from D.F. Hayes et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 12:4218–4224, 2006. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Supplementary Sidebar 14.11 Hidden micrometastases are revealed through organ transplantation

Organ transplantation first came into widespread use in the early 1960s. The procedure requires that the immune systems of organ recipients be suppressed in order to prevent immune rejection of implanted donor organs. Some of the organ donors at the time had

previously been treated, ostensibly successfully, for one or another type of cancer. Although gross examination of the donated organs indicated that they were healthy, cancer cells clearly contaminated these tissues, because the transplant recipients occasionally developed tumors of donor origin. These tumors thrived in the recipients and often became life-threatening, because the immunosuppressed state of the recipients prevented their immune systems from rejecting these foreign cancer cells—a theme that we will pursue further in Chapter 15.

Today, organ donors are screened far more thoroughly before their organs are transplanted into others. Even so, donors may harbor undetected micrometastases whose existence may be revealed only upon organ transplantation. In some cases, a misdiagnosis of an organ donor's cause of death results in unsuitable organs being made available for transplantation. For example, a diagnosis of death from a cerebral hemorrhage will obscure the real cause of death—a metastasis to the brain.

A worldwide registry of transplantation-associated malignancies, maintained in Cincinnati, Ohio, cataloged cases arising up to 1995 in which undetected cancer cells in the organs of 153 donors generated tumors in the recipients. (About 300,000 transplant procedures had been performed by that time.) In some cases, individual donors provided multiple organs, resulting in the development of identical cancers in several organ recipients. Some of the organ recipients exhibited widespread metastatic disease soon after transplantation; prominent among these were growths that could subsequently be identified as malignant melanoma and carcinomas of the kidney and lung. Because some types of tumors—notably primary brain tumors, squamous cell carcinomas of the skin, and localized (*in situ*) carcinomas of the cervix—almost never metastasize, organs from donors with histories of having borne these particular tumors are currently judged to be safe for transplantation.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.12 Peritoneovenous shunts provide dramatic support for the seed-and-soil hypothesis

The tendency of metastasizing cancer cells from certain types of primary tumors to establish themselves in specific target organs is amply borne out by repeated clinical observations of millions of cancer cases. Clinical observations of 14 cancer patients reported in 1984 revealed just how well adapted these cells must be in order to successfully colonize potential target organs. These cases involved patients with inoperable tumors (11 ovarian plus one each of stomach, pancreatic, and bronchial carcinomas) that were causing abdominal distension and associated discomfort because of the accumulation of large volumes of ascites. This fluid, which contains large numbers of cancer cells, accumulates in the peritoneal (abdominal) cavity, because (1) the lymphatic vessels draining this cavity become obstructed by cancer cells and (2) the cancer cells often release large amounts of VEGF (also known as

vascular permeability factor) into the ascitic fluid, causing microvessels in contact with this fluid to become highly permeable and leak plasma-like fluids into the abdominal cavity.

Surgeons have occasionally resorted to treating ascites by implanting a tube (termed a peritoneovenous shunt) that leads from the abdominal cavity into the subclavian vein near the heart; this tube permits the ascites and associated cancer cells to drain into the general circulation. When the circulation reaches the kidneys, the water from the ascitic fluid can be eliminated, while many important solutes are retained and recycled in the body (**Figure S14.10**). (The alternative—the direct removal of fluid from the abdominal cavity via a needle—can lead to severe depletion of ions and essential metabolites.) The ascitic fluid of ten of these patients was found to contain suspensions of between 10^5 and 10^6 viable cancer cells per milliliter. The 2 to 10 liters of ascitic fluid produced by the patients each week drained through these inserted tubes for their remaining lifetimes. The procedure yielded a great reduction in pain and discomfort and, in a number of cases, a clear extension of survival.

At the same time, this procedure also resulted in the continuous introduction, over months' to several years' time, of vast numbers of highly malignant cancer cells directly into the circulation. After passing through the heart, most of these cancer cells would be trapped in the capillary beds of the lung (see Figure 14.37D); some would pass through the lungs and become trapped in many other tissues throughout the body. However, in spite of billions of malignant cells being seeded in the lungs, these patients developed no macroscopic lung metastases; at most, only clinically insignificant, microscopic metastases were found upon autopsy. Hence, the highly malignant cancer cells clearly experienced a tissue microenvironment in the lung that was ill-suited to their continued survival and proliferation.

These observations provide dramatic testimony of the fact that the acquisition of a highly malignant growth phenotype does not, on its own, enable cancer cells to establish themselves in distant organ sites, and that additional cellular traits are required to allow them to colonize foreign tissue environments.

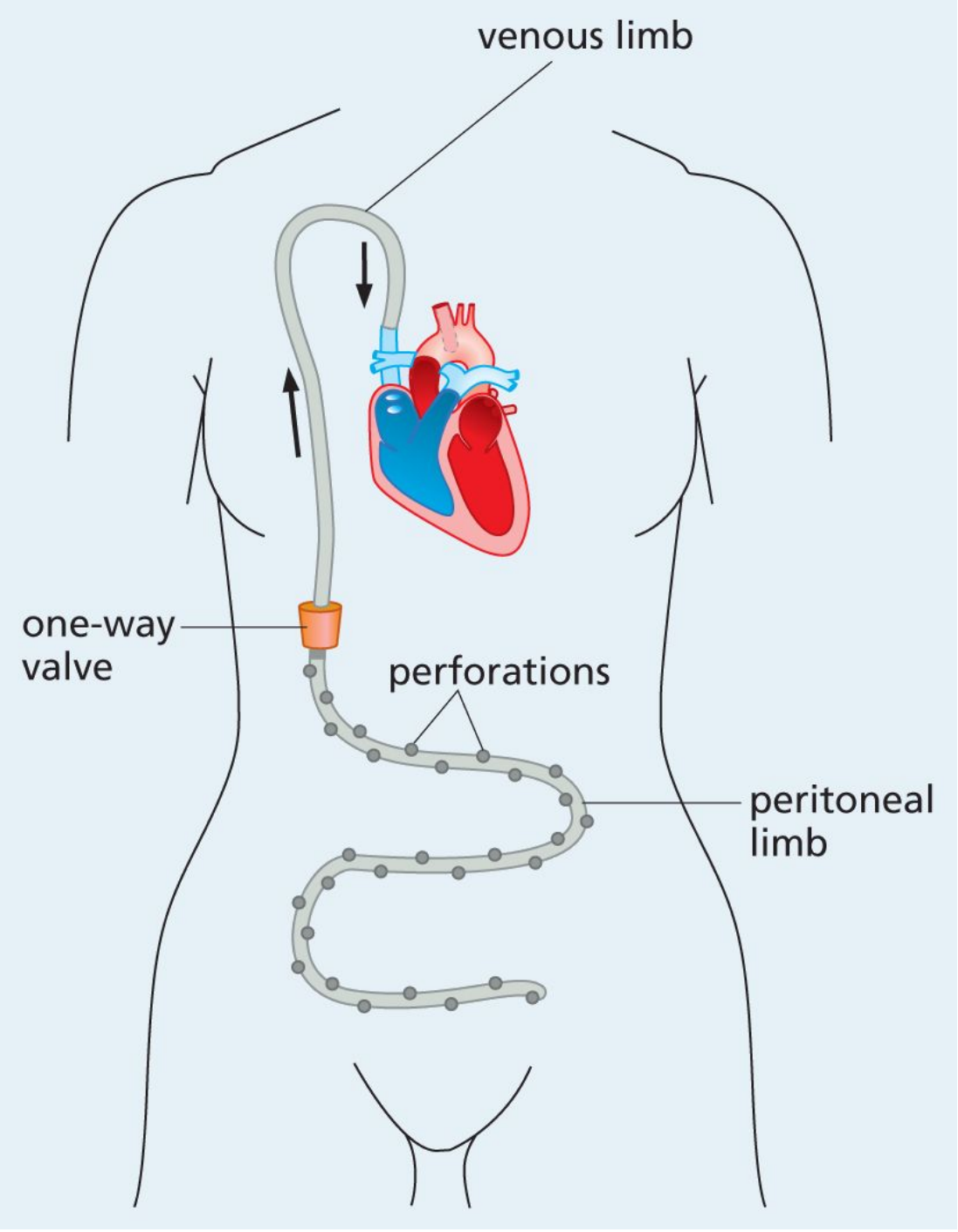


Figure S14.10 The peritoneovenous shunt and the seed-and-soil hypothesis
The peritoneovenous shunt (tube) is inserted into the intraperitoneal space in the abdomen (*below*), where it collects ascites fluid through perforations in the walls of the tube. The fluid is then drawn through a one-way valve and empties into the venous circulation near the heart (*above*). Although this shunt may transport billions of highly malignant cancer cells into the venous circulation and thus into

many parts of the body, few metastases are observed. (From V.T. de Vita, S. Hellman and S.A. Rosenberg, *Cancer: Principles and Practice of Oncology*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2001. With permission from Wolters Kluwer.)

Supplementary Sidebar 14.13 Tooth extractions may occasionally become exceedingly painful

A 1993 paper by a group of Israeli oral surgeons summarized 55 cases reported in the scientific literature, in which the extraction of a tooth was followed, within days, weeks, or several months, by the appearance of a metastatic growth at the site of the extraction. (The oral cavity is otherwise a rare site for the appearance of metastases.) In one-third of these cases, these metastases were the first indication of the existence of a cancer in a patient's body. Almost all of the responsible primary tumors were carcinomas arising in various internal organs. The time between the appearance of these oral lesions and the death of the patient was only four months on average, indicating that the disease was already highly advanced when the oral metastases were discovered.

These cases illustrate graphically that in some cancer patients, large numbers of metastatic cells are scattered throughout the body and that the cells' ability to found new tumor colonies at various sites depends strongly on the localized tissue environment. In a region of wound healing, such as a tooth extraction site, active inflammation and the remodeling of both bone and soft tissue occur. In such an environment, the tissue stroma provides many of the factors that create a hospitable site for wandering cancer cells to settle down and to proliferate rapidly. This echoes our discussion in Section 13.3, in which the activated, desmoplastic tumor stroma was described as a tissue having many of the attributes of a wound site.

Supplementary Sidebar 14.14 Tumor stem cells further complicate our understanding of the metastatic process

Earlier in this book (see Section 11.7), we encountered evidence that tumor cell populations arising in the breast and brain (and apparently in many other organs as well) are organized much like normal tissues, in which self-renewing stem cell populations are responsible for spawning the bulk of the cells. In the case of certain well-studied breast carcinomas, the bulk populations (>>95%) of tumor cells behave much like the actively dividing, more differentiated cells found in normal tissues. According to this conceptual model, the cancer stem cells (CSCs), also known as tumor-initiating cells (TICs), are tumorigenic, in that they can seed a new tumor mass

when implanted into a host, whereas the non-stem cells in the tumor mass are unable to do so because they lack self-renewal potential.

These observations, if extended and validated for a wide variety of tumor types, have important implications for the process of metastasis: if the non-stem cells in a primary tumor mass are truly non-tumorigenic then these cells may well succeed in leaving the primary tumor and lodging in distant tissue sites, but they will be unable to colonize these sites because of their limited self-renewal and thus limited long-term proliferative potential. Accordingly, the ability to create macroscopic metastases may be confined either to the relatively small number of CSCs that escape from the primary tumor or to cells that somehow enter into the CSC state after they have left the primary tumor. These cells are thought to have the ability to replicate to an unlimited extent and therefore are ideally suited to found new metastatic colonies that eventually expand to life-threatening sizes. Indeed, as described in Section 14.6, the same EMT program that allows primary carcinoma cells to physically disseminate from a primary tumor also endows many of them with the self-renewal potential of CSCs, which means that it is also likely to influence the fate of disseminated carcinoma cells. For example, those carcinoma cells that maintain their quasi-mesenchymal (and associated CSC) phenotype after dissemination are likely to be more qualified to colonize a site of dissemination, whereas those that rapidly shut down their EMT program, exit from the CSC state, and revert to a more epithelial state may lose colonization ability. These dynamics may well contribute to "metastatic inefficiency"—the failure of the vast majority of disseminated cancer cells to colonize the tissue sites in which they have landed (see Section 14.10).

Supplementary Sidebar 14.15 Does Darwinian evolution accommodate metastasis-specific alleles?

The conceptual model that was developed in Chapter 11 portrays multi-step tumorigenesis as a process formally akin to Darwinian evolution: a cell within a pre-neoplastic cell population acquires a particular mutant allele that confers additional proliferative advantage and, sooner or later, the descendants of this cell will predominate among the neoplastic cells in the primary tumor mass (see Figure 11.14).

As a logical extension of this thinking, the final steps of tumor progression would involve the acquisition of mutant alleles that enable the cells within benign tumors to evolve further toward the invasive and metastatic state. Inherent in this model, however, is a conceptual quandary: imagine that mutant alleles exist that confer metastatic ability but not replicative or survival advantage. The descendants of the rare tumor cell (for example, one in 10^6) that happens to acquire such a purely metastatic allele will, much later, continue to be equally rare among the population of cells in the

primary tumor mass (because this allele, by definition, does not confer proliferative or survival advantage in the primary tumor). Hence, given the scarcity of these cells, coupled with the inefficiency of the metastatic process, metastases originating from this small clonal population will rarely if ever form. This logic indicates that mutant alleles specialized to confer metastatic potential are unlikely to play a significant role in the last stages of primary tumor progression.

The simplest alternative to this model posits that certain mutant alleles arise during tumor progression that are advantageous for evolving, premalignant cancer cells and also *incidentally* confer increased metastatic ability. Cells carrying such multifunctional alleles may soon dominate the primary tumor mass, simply because of the proliferative advantage conferred by these alleles. This now-large mass of cells may then successfully seed metastases, because its constituent cells all happen to exhibit the additional, unselected trait of metastatic ability. (Implicit in this model is the notion that certain genes and proteins favoring aggressive proliferation within the primary tumor may also impart invasive and even metastatic phenotypes.)

A variant of this model involves a delayed phenotypic response to an initially sustained mutation. Imagine that at a certain step early in tumor progression, there are several alternative mutant alleles that can equally satisfy the proliferative needs of an evolving premalignant cell population. For example, relatively early in colon tumor progression, the K-*ras* oncogene is activated in almost half of all colon cancers; in many of the remaining ones, mutant B-*raf* genes (~15% of all tumors) or mutant PI3 kinase genes (~30% of all tumors) are often found (see Figure 11.11). Although these three alternative classes of alleles may function similarly early in multi-step tumor progression by promoting cell proliferation and survival, much later, in the context of subsequent mutational steps in tumor progression (for example, the mutation of a *p53* gene), the three genetic subtypes of colon tumors may elicit very different behaviors. Thus, speculatively, in the presence of a subsequently acquired mutant *p53* allele, the K-*ras* oncogene might portend the development of relatively benign tumors, whereas the mutant B-*raf* alleles may provoke an invasive outcome. If so, this would indicate that some tumors “start off on the wrong foot” because of the nature of the mutant genes that they happen to acquire early in multi-step tumor progression; years later, when tumor progression generates tumorigenic cells, these initially acquired alleles may strongly influence the invasive and metastatic behaviors of these cancer cells. In all these cases, other types of cell-heritable alterations, notably promoter methylation, may play roles similar to the genetic mutations discussed here.

The apparently important role played by the EMT program in invasion and metastasis by carcinoma must also be integrated into this thinking. Thus, if certain mutant alleles (and inherited epigenetic alterations) confer an acquired ability to metastasize, these alleles may not directly drive invasion and metastasis. Instead, they may act less

directly by conferring on primary tumor cells a heightened *responsiveness* to EMT-inducing signals, such as those originating in the tumor-associated stroma.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

embolization
: Process of forming an embolus. *See* **embolus**.

Tissue Factor
: A cell-surface glycoprotein expressed by many cell types in the body that interacts with clotting factors in the plasma, thereby triggering the coagulation cascade.

thrombin
: A plasma protease that is activated following wounding and triggers blood coagulation by activating platelets and cleaving fibrinogen to fibrin.

fibrinogen
: *See* **fibrin**.

fibrin
: Protein that is formed by the cleavage of plasma fibrinogen and assembles to form the fibers binding the platelets together in clots.

peritoneovenous shunt
: A tube that is inserted into the peritoneal space that allows the collection of cancer cells forming the ascites fluid in patients suffering high-grade cancers; the cancer cells, which enter through holes in the tube, are eventually emptied directly by the tube into the venous circulation, often via the vena cava.

microthrombus
: A blood clot or other solid body, such as a clump of cells, that can travel from one site in the body via the circulation to a second site in which it may become lodged within a blood vessel.

microembolus
: (pl., **microemboli**) Small body formed from cells or products of the clotting machinery that travels through the circulation and may be trapped in small vessels, often blocking further circulation through these vessels. *See also* **embolus**.

thromboembolus
: A blood clot or other solid body, such as a clump of cells, that can travel from one site in the body via the circulation to a second site in which it may become lodged within a blood vessel.

lamellipodium

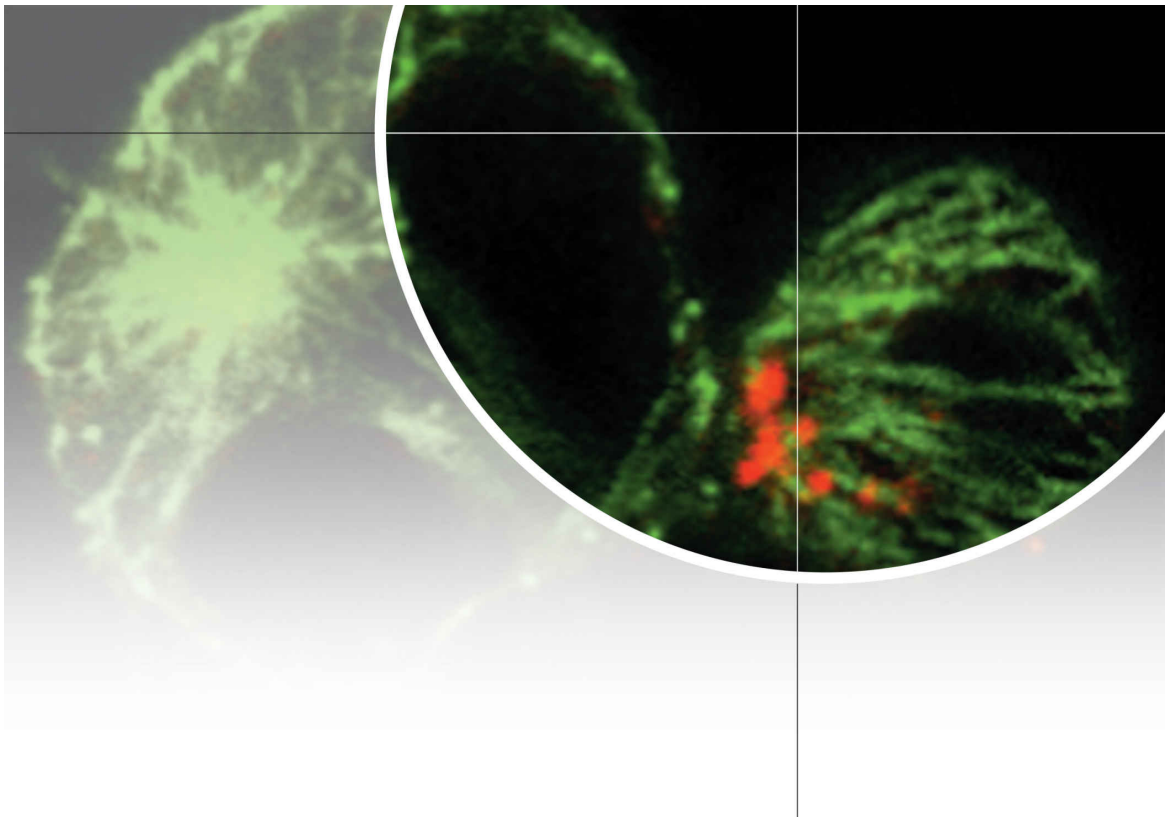
(pl., **-ia**) A broad, sheetlike ruffle extending from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space that is typically found at the leading edge of a motile cell.

filopodium

Filamentous, spikelike protrusion from the surface of a cell, usually extending from the leading edge of a lamellipodium, that may be used by the cell to explore territory that lies ahead in its path and to forge focal adhesions with the extracellular matrix lying in this path. *See also* **lamellipodium**.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 15
Crowd Control: Tumor Immunology



A fluorescence microscopy image of a cytotoxic T lymphocyte attacking a larger target cell. The microtubular networks of both cells appear in green. The lymphocyte has bright red dots concentrated near the point of contact with the target cell.

It is by no means inconceivable that small accumulations of tumour cells may develop and, because of their possession of new antigenic potentialities, provoke an effective immunological reaction with regression of the tumour and no clinical hint of its existence.

Macfarlane Burnet, immunologist, 1957

Throughout this text, we have studied various defenses that the body erects against the appearance of cancerous growths. Many of these defenses are inherent in mammalian cells, more specifically in the hard-wired regulatory circuitry operating within individual human cells, and can influence the decision of a cancer cell to commit to division or even undergo programmed cell death. The most obvious of these are the controls imposed on cells by apoptosis or by the mechanisms of other death programs poised to trigger the death of cells that are misbehaving or, alternatively, suffering certain types of damage or physiological stress. Similarly, the pRb and p53 signaling circuits (see Chapters 8 and 9) are configured to impede the outgrowth of incipient cancer cells.

Even the organization of some tissues places constraints on how and where incipient cancer cells can proliferate. For example, normal epithelial cells that lose their tethering to the basement membrane activate the form of apoptosis called anoikis. This mechanism limits the ability of epithelial cells to stray from their normal locations within tissues and grow in ectopic (that is, abnormal) sites. Beyond these cell- and tissue-specific mechanisms, there is another line of defense: the immune system.

The powers of the immune system to detect and eliminate infectious agents have been known for well over a hundred years. In the 1950s, Macfarlane Burnet and Lewis Thomas independently speculated that the immune system can recognize tumor cells as altered forms of the normal cells in our tissues that, in the context of immunology, we hereafter will term self; having done so, the immune system would proceed to recognize and eliminate the tumor cells as foreign, unnatural entities that we will term non-self. This hypothesized process was codified as immunosurveillance, which implies that the immune system continuously monitors tissues for the presence of aberrant cells, including cancer cells, recognizes them, and quickly eliminates them. Subsequent work has confirmed the validity of this fertile but, until recently, speculative hypothesis. Indeed, it is now clear that the immune system can distinguish tumor cells from normal ones and can mount responses to eliminate them. This insight reveals why so many anti-cancer immune therapies have emerged in recent years from efforts to harness the immune system to treat and manage a variety of cancers.

Still, the immune system frequently fails to enforce effective and sustained crowd control over cancer cells, as evidenced by the approximately 19.3 million new cases of cancer worldwide in 2021 and the fact that cancer results in 1 in 5 deaths

annually in the United States. Looking beyond these failures, in the next chapter we will see how the body's multi-layered immune system's diverse network of interacting defenses has been marshalled and manipulated to treat cancer, offering multiple opportunities for novel anti-cancer therapies.

Since the immune system has evolved to recognize and eliminate foreign agents from the body while leaving the body's own tissues unmolested, its purported ability to recognize and attack cancer cells long seemed implausible. As we have read repeatedly throughout this book, cancer cells are native to the body and are therefore, in so many respects, indistinguishable from the body's normal cells. In fact, considerable progress has been made toward determining precisely how the immune system distinguishes cancer cells as different from their normal counterparts and, as a consequence, recognizes these cells as appropriate targets of immune-mediated killing. This understanding has provided approaches for harnessing the immune system to effectively target cancer cells and given rise to the burgeoning field of cancer immunotherapy.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

self
: A constituent of the body that is native to the body's normal tissues and associated cells. *See also* **non-self**.

non-self
: Constituent or agent in the body that is of foreign, non-native origin. *See also* **self**.

immunosurveillance
: Process by which the immune system continuously monitors tissues for the presence of aberrant antigens or cells, including cancer cells, and in response, mounts responses to eliminate the antigens or cells expressing such antigens.

OceanofPDF.com

15.1 The immune system continuously conducts surveillance of tissues

Early insights in the area of tumor immunology research came from attempts to implant cells from a variety of sources into mouse hosts. Normal human cells were rapidly eliminated, and even normal cells from one strain of inbred mice were equally unable to gain a footing when implanted in the tissues of mice belonging to another inbred strain. Thus, these cells were rejected by the host tissues in which they were implanted, ostensibly by the immune systems of the hosts.

These now-ancient findings established a principle that is central to all that follows in this chapter: the immune system can recognize certain molecules displayed on the surface of certain implanted cells that somehow provide a clear and unambiguous signal that can provoke an attack on these cells, often leading to their elimination. As we will see, identification of the precise nature of these cell surface molecules and their recognition by the immune system required decades of research.

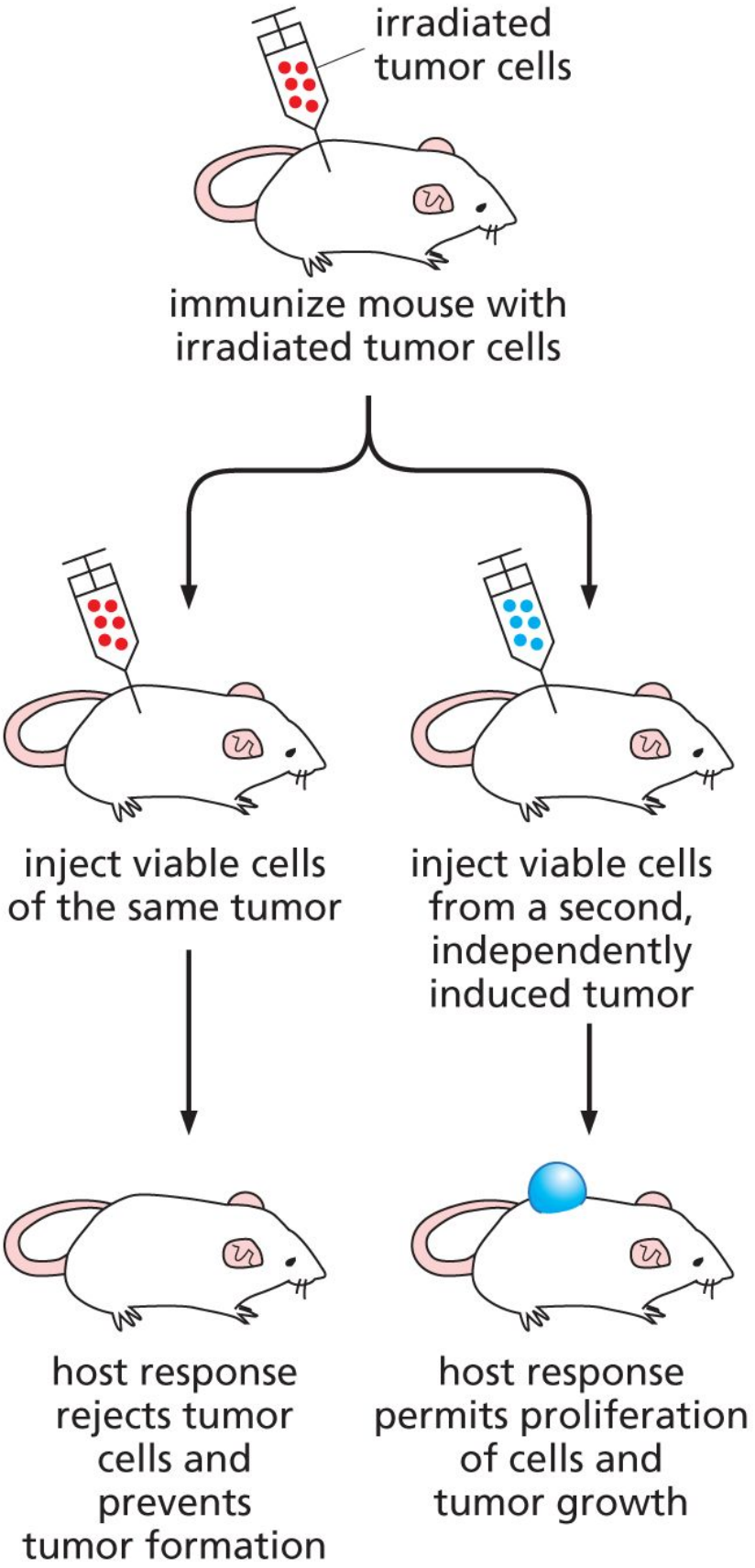
The observed rejections of implanted cells in mouse hosts were accompanied by the realization that the immune system usually tolerates the body's own cells, as well as implanted cells prepared from genetically identical mice, that is, cells from the same inbred strain of mice. Such tolerance implied an ability to recognize the "familiar," distinguishing it from the "unfamiliar and foreign." (Cells originating in mice of one inbred strain and implanted in mouse hosts of the same strain are said to be syngeneic with respect to these hosts.)

Thus, the major problem of anti-cancer immunosurveillance became clear: cancer cells originate from normal cells in the body's own familiar tissues. Given the immune system's ability to tolerate normal tissues (that is, the state of immunological tolerance), its ability to recognize the foreignness of

cancer cells became difficult to explain because it was widely assumed that cancer cells were essentially identical to normal cells in the body.

In fact, a small number of early studies in mice provided evidence that the immune system can indeed play a role in the immunosurveillance of tissues directed specifically toward the detection of aberrant cells including, notably, cancer cells. An important line of investigation relied on observations showing that certain chemically induced tumors (see Sections 2.9 and 11.11) in mice were immunogenic, that is, capable of provoking an immune response, and therefore could be recognized as foreign, making them vulnerable to elimination by the immune systems of the host mice bearing these tumors.

In one set of experiments outlined in **Figure 15.1**, cells from a 3-methylcholanthrene (3-MC)–induced tumor that arose in one strain of mice (see Section 11.11) were irradiated prior to implantation in mouse hosts of the same inbred strain. The irradiation served to prevent the proliferation of these cells and the resulting rapid outgrowth of life-threatening tumors in the hosts while, at the same time, permitting these cells to continue expressing certain immunogenic proteins. Because these cancer cells were prepared from tumors that had been induced in the same strain of mice as the recipient hosts, the implanted cancer cells did not elicit an immediate aggressive response.


irradiated
tumor cells
immunize mouse with
irradiated tumor cells
inject viable cells
of the same tumor
inject viable cells
from a second,
independently
induced tumor
host response
rejects tumor
cells and
prevents
tumor formation
host response
permits proliferation
of cells and
tumor growth

An experiment on mice. The first step is to immunize the mice with irradiated tumor cells. Some of the mice are then injected with viable cells of the same tumor; in these mice, the host response rejects the tumor cells and prevents tumor formation. The other mice are injected with viable cells from a second, independently induced tumor; in these mice, the host response permits proliferation of cells and tumor growth.

Figure 15.1 Immunization of mice by exposure to killed cancer cells Mice from one strain were initially injected with irradiated, killed cancer cells (*red*) derived from a tumor that had been chemically induced in a mouse of the same strain (i.e., a syngeneic host). When these mice were subsequently injected with live cells prepared from the same tumor, the cells failed to grow (*lower left*). However, when these mice were injected with live cells from a second, independently induced tumor (*blue*), the cells proliferated and formed a tumor mass (*lower right*). The reciprocal experiment (*not shown*) yields the converse results, i.e., implantation of killed blue cancer cells subsequently rendered mice immune to the blue tumor but not to the red tumor. Because these experiments were all performed using tumor cells and mice from the same genetically defined strain, the rejection of these tumors could not be attributed to histoincompatibility, that is, to the rejection of allogeneic cells. Instead, these experiments demonstrated that the chemically induced tumor cells had developed distinctive antigens, apparently acquired during the chemical carcinogenesis (and associated intense mutagenesis) that led to their transformation. These results suggested, in turn, that cancer cells can express mutant proteins that may be recognized as foreign by the immune systems of tumor-bearing hosts.

Subsequently, mice previously implanted with the syngeneic, irradiated tumor cells received a second injection of live tumor cells originating from the same chemically induced tumor or, alternatively, from a different, independently induced 3-MC tumor. As before, all implanted cells were of syngeneic origin. As it turned out, the second set of implanted cancer cells originating from the original chemically induced tumor did not grow out and were ostensibly being attacked by the immune systems of these mouse hosts, that is, they were rejected. In contrast, the cells derived from another,

independently induced tumor could indeed grow and form new tumors in the recipients.

These experiments left two lessons. First, under certain conditions, implanted cancer cells could indeed evoke long-term immunity; this response appeared to be similar to the one achieved by vaccinating a host against one or another type of infectious agent, notably some type of virus. Second, somehow, tumor cells originating from one chemically induced tumor could be readily distinguished by the immune system from cells prepared from another independently induced tumor. Thus, the initial exposure to dead cancer cells from one tumor had immunized the mice against live cells originating from the same tumor, while failing to elicit some type of immunity against the second, independently arising tumor.

These observations led, in turn, to the notion that the neoplastic cells in different independently arising tumors exhibit distinct sets of antigens, that is, molecules with the potential to provoke an immune response. Exposure to a particular set of such antigens displayed by one type of cancer cell could apparently stimulate the immune system to remember a prior encounter with cells displaying that particular set of antigens, recognize these cells, and kill them. Conversely, such immune-mediated protection did not arise when the prior encounter involved cells from a different, independently formed tumor. As described below, these “antigens” are almost invariably different proteins.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

tolerance
: Physiological state that reflects the ability of the immune system to ignore or overlook the body's normal complement of antigens and the cells expressing such antigens.

syngeneic
: (1) Referring to two organisms that share the identical genetic background, such as two members of an inbred strain of mice. (2) Describing the relationship between two sets of cells or tissues, or between a set of cells and an organism, deriving from identical genetic backgrounds.

antigen
: (adj., **-genic**) Molecule or portion of a molecule, often an oligopeptide, that can be specifically recognized and bound by an antibody or a T-cell receptor or that provokes the production of an antibody. *See also* **immunogenic**.

rejection
: Process whereby the immune system of a host organism prevents the outgrowth of implanted donor cells or tissues, usually by the killing donor cells. *See also* **allograft rejection**.

immunogen
: (adj., **-genic**) A chemical structure that is capable of provoking some type of immune response, e.g., an antigen that can provoke the synthesis of antibody molecules capable of recognizing and binding it.

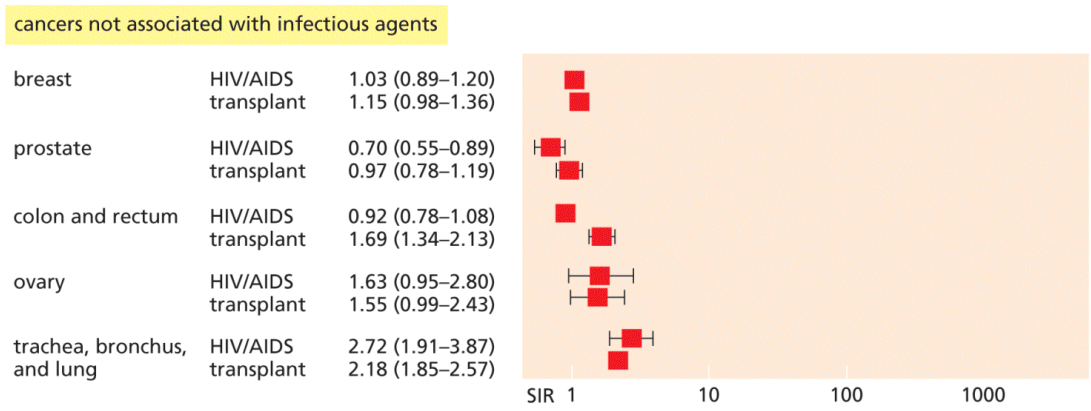
OceanofPDF.com

15.2 The human immune system plays a critical role in warding off various types of human cancer

Because the biology of mice and humans differs in so many respects, we need to interpret the results described above with caution when attempting to understand the role of the human immune system in defending us against cancer. In addition, it is possible that the chemical carcinogens used to induce mouse cancers may well create tumors that are far more capable of provoking a strong immune response than are provoked by spontaneously arising human tumors. In fact, there is compelling evidence that the human immune system can indeed recognize cancer cells arising in the body of an individual who has not been exposed to potent carcinogens and that the actions of our immune systems do indeed play an important role in warding off the outgrowth of some tumors. As we will see, this evidence is drawn from a diverse set of observations, including the elevated cancer risk borne by immunocompromised individuals, the presence of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes across many different types of cancers, and the clinical successes achieved by targeting tumors with anti-cancer immune-based therapies that will be described in the next chapter.

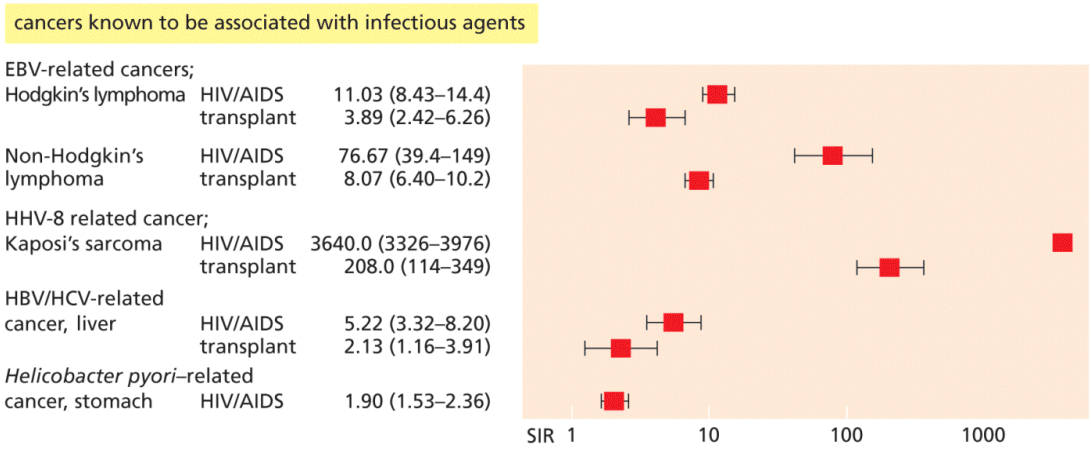
To begin, the study of cancer incidence in immunocompromised individuals reveals that dysfunctional or suppressed immune systems are indeed associated with an elevated risk for many types of cancer. Generally, the immunocompromised state responsible for this elevation arises from one of three sources. First, some individuals are born with certain germ-line mutations that render their immune systems dysfunctional. With improvements in hospital care, these immunocompromised individuals now live longer but still experience a reduced life expectancy. Second, in 2019, nearly 38 million people worldwide were infected by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), which can lead to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Those afflicted with AIDS have increased susceptibility to opportunistic infections by various tumor viruses, resulting in higher rates of cancer incidence. Third, organ transplantation, involving kidneys, hearts, and livers, has become common throughout the developed world. Because the transplanted organs are typically derived from donors who are genetically distinct from the transplant recipients (that is, allogeneic), the transplanted organs are recognized as foreign and thus subject to rejection by the immune systems of engrafted patients; such donor grafts are termed histoincompatible (literally, containing tissues that are incompatible with the tissues of graft recipients). To avoid rejection of the transplant by the recipients' immune systems, these patients are routinely rendered immunocompromised by treatment with several types of potent

immunosuppressive drugs and, as an unintended consequence, they experience markedly elevated rates of cancer incidence. This finding suggests that the mechanisms that allow the immune system to recognize implanted allogeneic cells (that is, cells derived from the tissues of genetically non-identical members of the same species) overlap with the mechanisms employed in the body to recognize incipient cancer cells (**Figure 15.2**).



Cancers not associated with infectious agents: breast; prostate; colon and rectum; ovary; trachea, bronchus, and lung. S I R values range from 0.7 for prostate cancer in H I V AIDS patients up to 2.72 for trachea, bronchus, and lung cancer in H I V AIDS patients.

(A)



Cancers known to be associated with infectious agents: E B V-related cancers and Hodgkin's lymphoma; non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; H H V-8 related cancer and Kaposi's sarcoma; H B V slash H C V-related cancer and liver cancer; and Helicobacter pylori–related cancer and stomach cancer. S I R values range from 1.90 for Helicobacter pylori–related cancer and stomach cancer in H I V

AIDS patients up to 3640 for Helicobacter pylori–related cancer and stomach cancer in H I V AIDS patients.
(B)

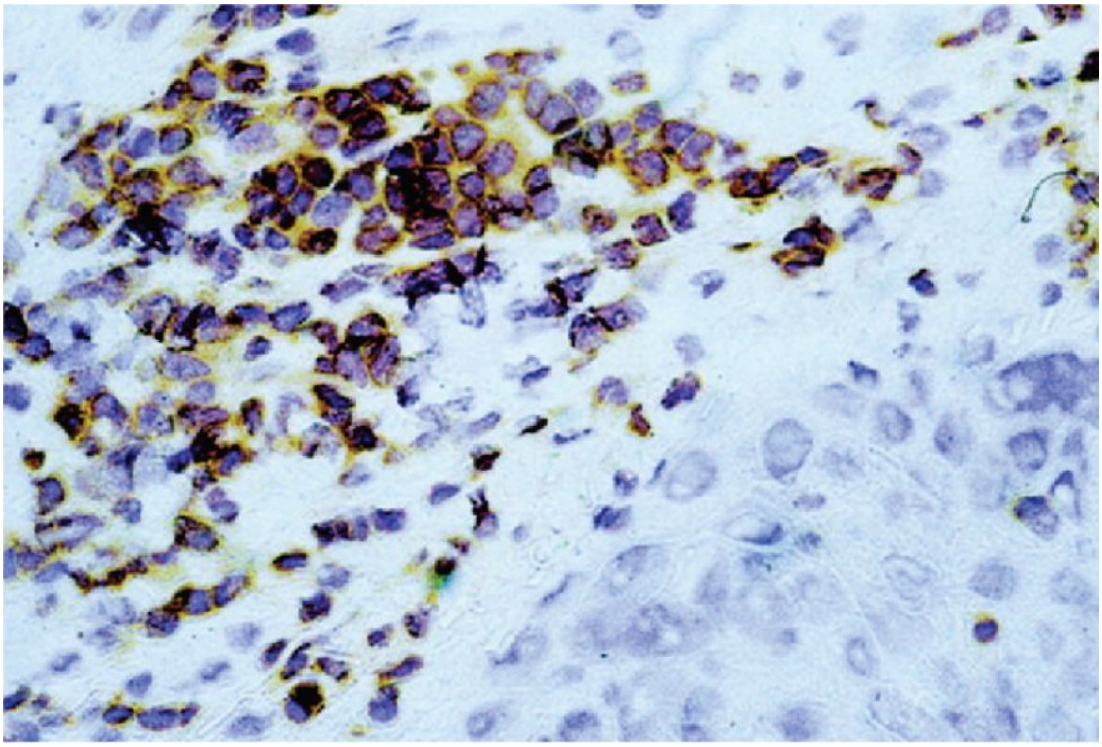
Figure 15.2 Effects of compromised immune systems on cancer incidence This meta-analysis pooled the conclusions of a group of epidemiologic studies in order to calculate the standardized incidence ratio (SIR)—the number of cancer cases actually observed in populations of HIV/AIDS patients and immunosuppressed individuals divided by the number expected in the age-matched general population. Note that the SIR values are plotted logarithmically on the abscissa. All patients in the transplant category were presumed to be subject to significant immunosuppression in order to prevent rejection of the transplanted organ. The numbers associated with each entry indicate the calculated mean SIR, followed by the confidence interval (which shows, with 95% probability, the interval within which the measured mean value will fall). Similarly, in these "box-and-whisker" plots (*right*), the filled boxes are centered on the median measurements, and the outer points of the whiskers indicate the bounds of the 95% confidence interval. (A) Among a group of five commonly occurring epithelial cancers, the incidence of breast, prostate, and colorectal carcinomas was not elevated in HIV-infected/AIDS patients relative to the general population, whereas carcinomas of the ovary and lungs were modestly elevated and at a statistically significant level. (B) Strikingly different values are seen, however, among a range of tumors that are known to be associated with either chronic viral or bacterial infections, where the lack of a fully functional immune system often leads to dramatic increases in tumor incidence. Included here are EBV-related cancers, non-Hodgkin lymphomas, HHV-8-induced Kaposi's sarcomas, HBV/HCV-related liver cancers, and *Helicobacter pylori*-associated stomach cancers. (EBV, Epstein–Barr virus; HHV-8, human herpesvirus-8; HBV and HCV, hepatitis viruses B and C.) (From A.E. Grulich et al., *Lancet* 370:59–67, 2007. With permission from Elsevier.)

At this stage in our discussion, the processes of anti-cancer immune surveillance must be divided into two classes: tumors that are of viral etiology and those that are not. Virus-induced malignancies (see Chapter 3) present clear biochemical evidence of their viral origin, because tumors that have been triggered by tumor virus infections (such as viruses of the herpesvirus and papillomavirus classes) almost always continue to express virus-encoded oncoproteins during the course of tumor outgrowth. These viral proteins are structurally distinct from normal host proteins and are therefore intrinsically capable of being recognized as foreign by the host immune system; the latter can readily respond by mounting immune responses against them, more specifically against the cancer cells that express them. These facts, on their own, explain how the cells of virus-induced malignancies can attract the attention of the immune system, which may in turn be able to control their outgrowth, and how failure

of this control accounts for the 20% of cancer mortality worldwide that derives from this class of human tumors.

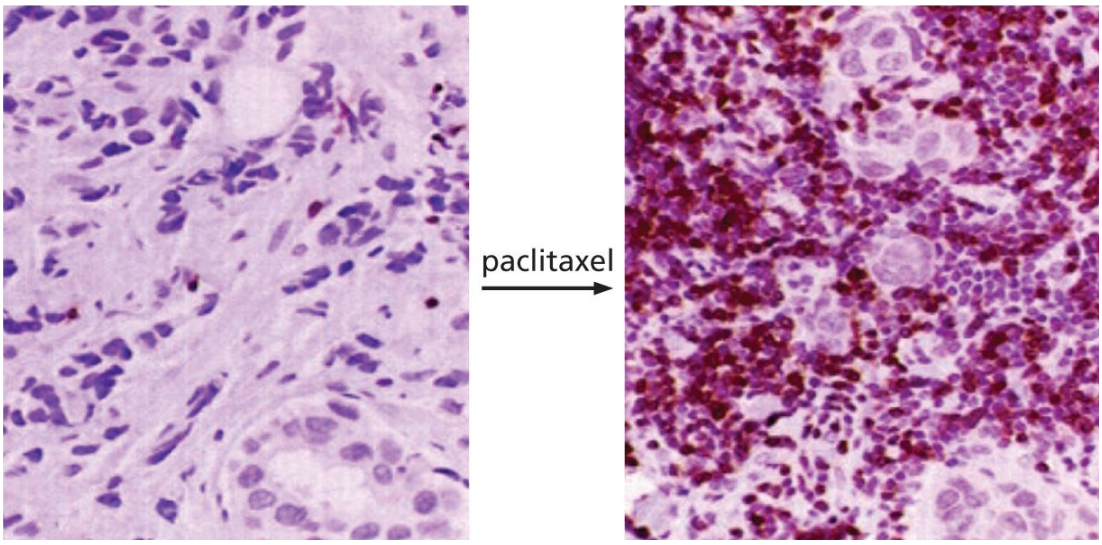
A more challenging task is understanding how the immune system can recognize and eliminate *nonviral* malignancies (that is, those not induced by infecting tumor viruses), and whether failure to do so results in the tumors responsible for nearly 80% of cancer-associated mortality. Here, the major difficulty derives from the phenomenon of tolerance described above—from the fact that the immune system's attentions are directed away from attacking the body's own tissues (that is, self) and thus away from the cancer cells that are, to a large extent, very similar to the cells in our normal tissues.

As we will see in more detail below, many of the actions of the immune system are mediated by a class of immune cells (immunocytes) collectively termed lymphocytes, which are responsible for organizing attacks against tumor cells. Much of the evidence supporting a role of lymphocyte-mediated immune surveillance in warding off non-virus-induced tumors comes from the histopathological studies of a broad spectrum of human tumors. These neoplasms often contain large numbers of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs; **Figure 15.3**), providing a clear indication that immune recognition and associated recruitment of these immune cells into the interstices of tumors has occurred. Importantly, this recognition, on its own, does not guarantee a successful attack on and elimination of tumor cells. Instead, it only suggests that such recognition has taken place, setting the stage for possible attack on the associated tumor masses by the recruited immune cells.



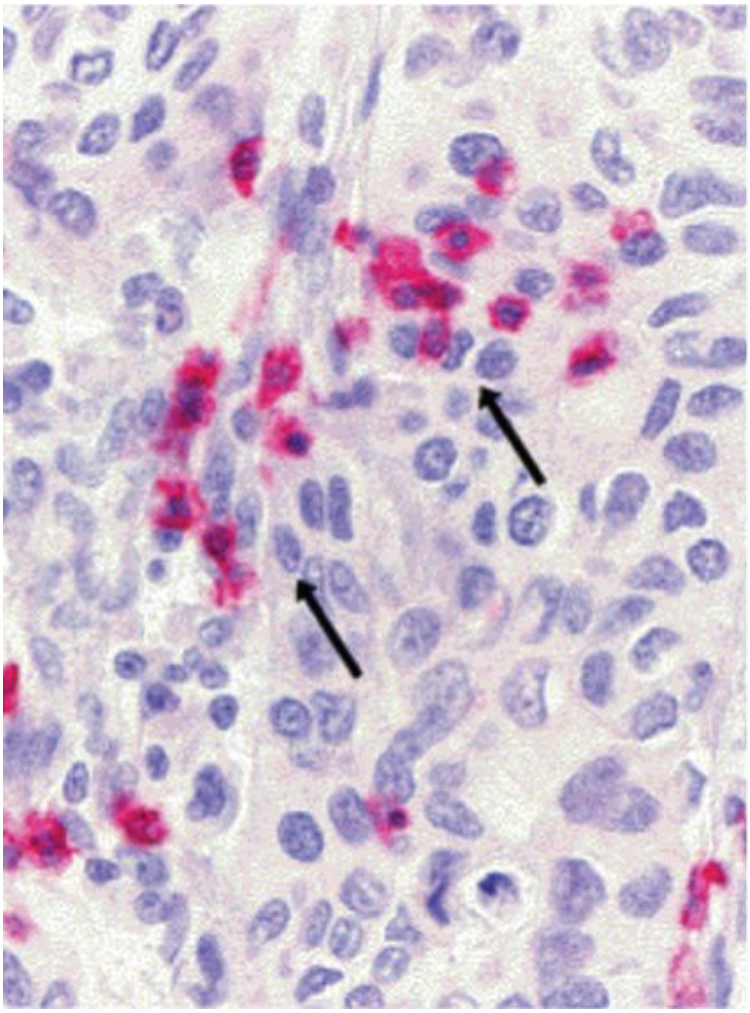
A histology stain image. The nuclei on the right side of the image are pale blue, while those on the left side are dark brown.

(A)



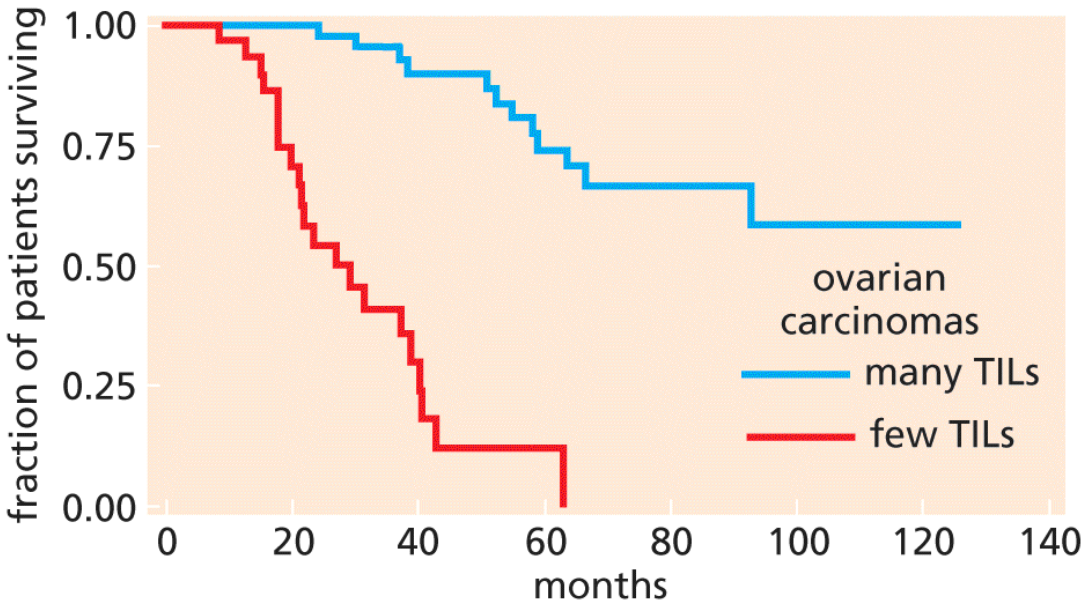
A before-and-after comparison of histology stain images. The before image is moderately dense with purple nuclei. The image after treatment with paclitaxel is thick with dark magenta nuclei.

(B)



A histology stain image. It mostly shows pale purple nuclei, but there are concentrations of bright pink smudges.

(C)



A line graph describing fraction of ovarian carcinoma patients surviving as a function of time. Of patients whose tumors contained many T I Ells, 70 percent survived at least 80 months after diagnosis. Of patients whose tumors contained few T I Ells, none survived to 65 months after diagnosis.

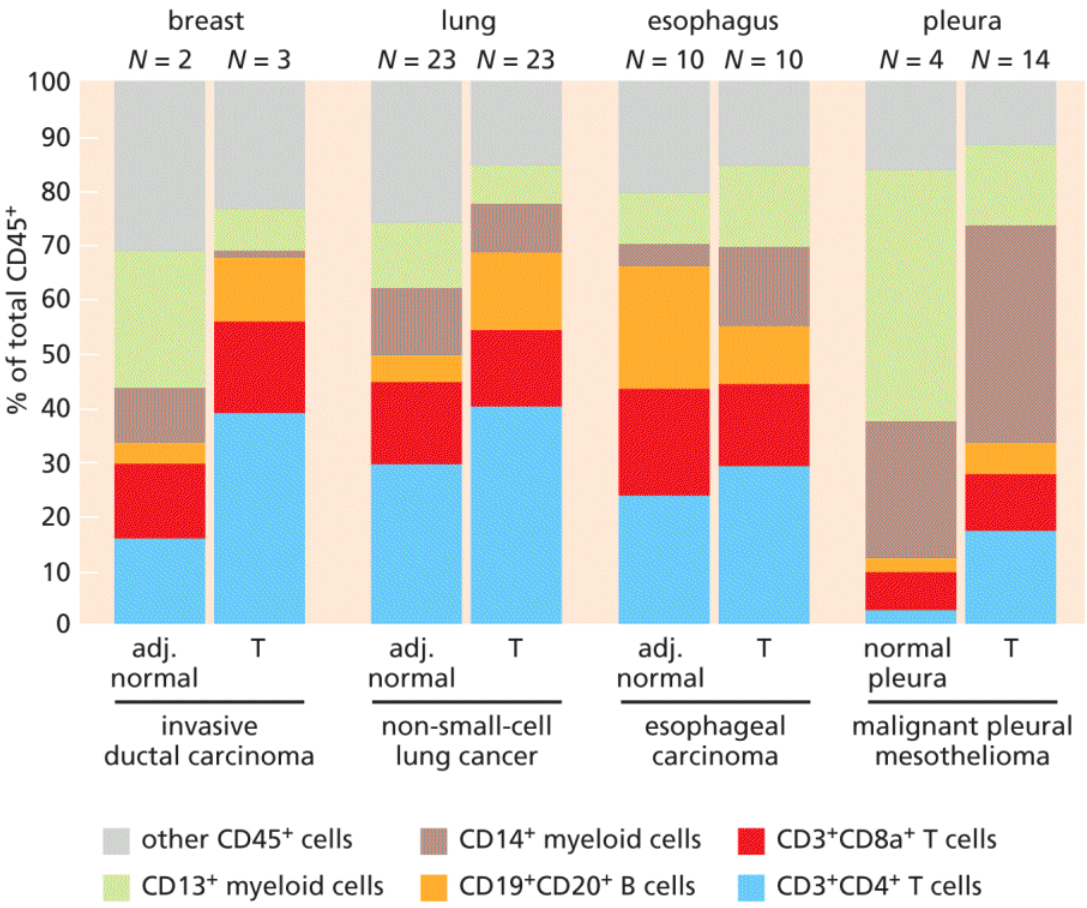
(D)

Figure 15.3 Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (A) This immunostaining of an oral carcinoma with an antibody that recognizes the CD3 antigen expressed by T lymphocytes reveals an abundance of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs; *brown*) in certain areas of the tumor. More detailed characterizations revealed several T-lymphocyte subtypes among these cells (*not shown*). (B) This immunostaining demonstrates that TILs, detected once again with an anti-CD3 antibody (*dark purple*), are relatively rare in an untreated breast tumor (*left*) but become abundant in areas of the tumor following chemotherapy with the drug paclitaxel (*right*). The increased presence of TILs following chemotherapy is assumed to be indicative of an immune response mediated by the immigrant TILs. (C) TILs are also frequently found in invasive non-small-cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs; *arrows*). The expression here of the CD8 antigen (*dark pink*) indicates that these cells are largely cytotoxic lymphocytes (CTL). (D) The clinical prognosis of a set of ovarian carcinoma patients was strongly correlated with the concentrations of TILs in their tumors. In this Kaplan–Meier plot, the proportion of patients surviving after initial diagnosis (*ordinate*) is plotted versus the months of survival (*abscissa*). Those patients whose tumors had high levels of TILs (*blue line*) fared significantly better than did those whose tumors lacked significant concentrations of TILs (*red line*). (A, from T.E. Reichert et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.*

8:3137–3145, 2002. B, from S. Demaria et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 7:3025–3030, 2001. Both with permission from American Association for Cancer Research.C, from A. Trojan et al., *Lung Cancer* 44:143–147, 2004. With permission from Elsevier. D, adapted from L. Zhang et al., *N. Engl. J. Med*. 348:203–213, 2003. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

In fact, the presence of TILs in a human tumor usually tells us more: it provides a strong indication that the immune system may be actively launching attacks against neoplastic cells. Such attacks may often succeed in constraining tumor outgrowth, but by definition, they fail to eliminate the tumor, as evidenced by the continued presence of a large, clinically detectable mass in a patient's body. As an example, clinical observations on ovarian carcinoma patients have demonstrated that the presence of large numbers of TILs in their tumors prior to debulking of the tumor through surgery and chemotherapy is associated with dramatically better survival outcomes compared to patients whose ovarian tumors lacked TILs (Figure 15.3D). Similar outcomes are associated with the clinical courses of melanoma and colorectal carcinoma patients whose tumors carry large numbers of TILs; in the case of melanomas, these patients live 1.5 to 3 times longer following diagnosis than do patients lacking comparable populations of TILs in their tumors. Similar correlations have been made between the presence of these infiltrating lymphocytes and the survival of patients bearing carcinomas of the breast, bladder, prostate, and rectum. Still, such observations, although striking, are only correlative, and therefore do not prove that these lymphocytes are actually important agents responsible for launching attacks on tumors, thereby constraining tumor growth and the progression to life-threatening cancers.

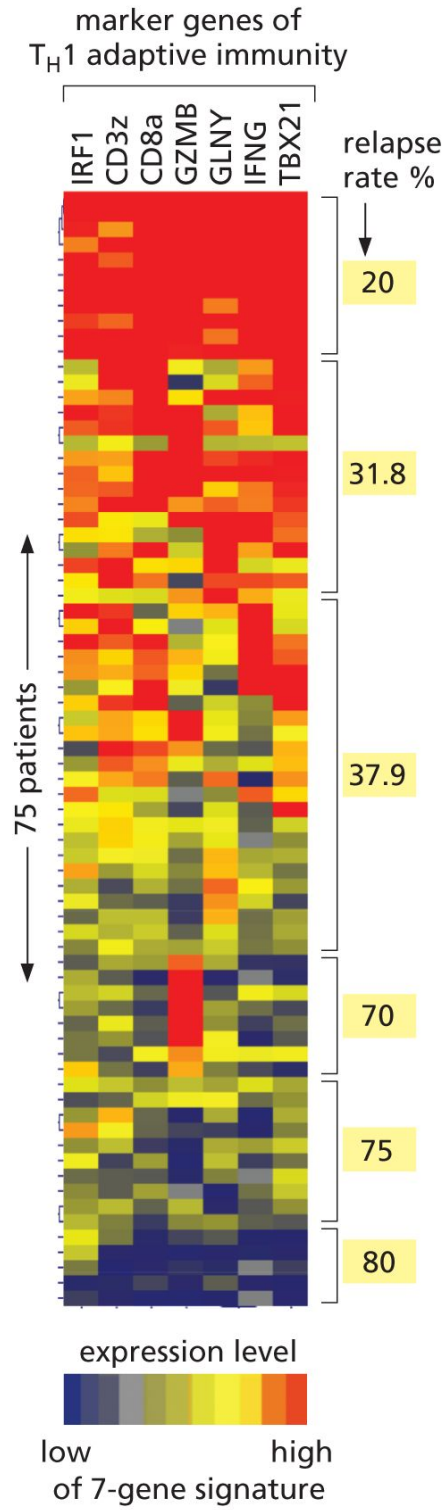
The identities of the immune cells that are attracted into a growing tumor mass are actually quite complex, involving multiple distinct types of immunocytes (**Figure 15.4**). The composition of these immunocytes differs greatly when comparing individual tumors with one another. Such heterogeneity complicates attempts at drawing generalizable conclusions about the role of the immune system in controlling all types of cancer. Moreover, each class of immunocytes may be represented by multiple subtypes that can play distinct, even conflicting roles in fostering or suppressing tumor growth. In some cases, the presence of specific subtypes of immune cells is closely associated with the stage of tumor progression, providing strong but still-correlative evidence of a causal role in controlling or failing to control clinical behavior (**Figure 15.5**).



A breakdown of how six different categories of C D45 positive immunocyte cells are represented in four different types of tissue, both normal and cancerous. The six immunocyte categories are C D3 positive C D4 positive T cells; C D3 positive C D8a positive T cells; C D19 positive C D20 positive B cells; C D14 positive myeloid cells; C D13 positive myeloid cells; and other CD45 positive cells. In three samples of invasive ductal carcinoma breast cancer, C D3 positive C D4 positive T cells constituted almost 40 percent of all C D45 positive cells, compared to 15 percent in two adjacent normal tissue samples. The percentage of C D13 positive myeloid cells was less than 10 in the cancerous tissue, compared to more than 20 in the normal tissue. In 23 samples of non-small-cell lung cancer, C D3 positive C D4 positive T cells constituted 40 percent of all C D45 positive cells, compared to 30 percent in 23 adjacent normal tissue samples. The percentage of C D19 positive C D20 positive B cells was about 15 in the cancerous tissue, compared to 5 in the normal tissue. In 10 samples of esophageal carcinoma, C D14 positive myeloid cells constituted 15 percent of all C D45 positive cells, compared to less than 5 in 10 adjacent normal tissue samples. The percentage of C D19 positive C D20 positive B cells was about 10 in the cancerous tissue, compared to more than 20 in the normal tissue. Finally, in 14 samples of malignant pleural mesothelioma, C D14 positive myeloid cells

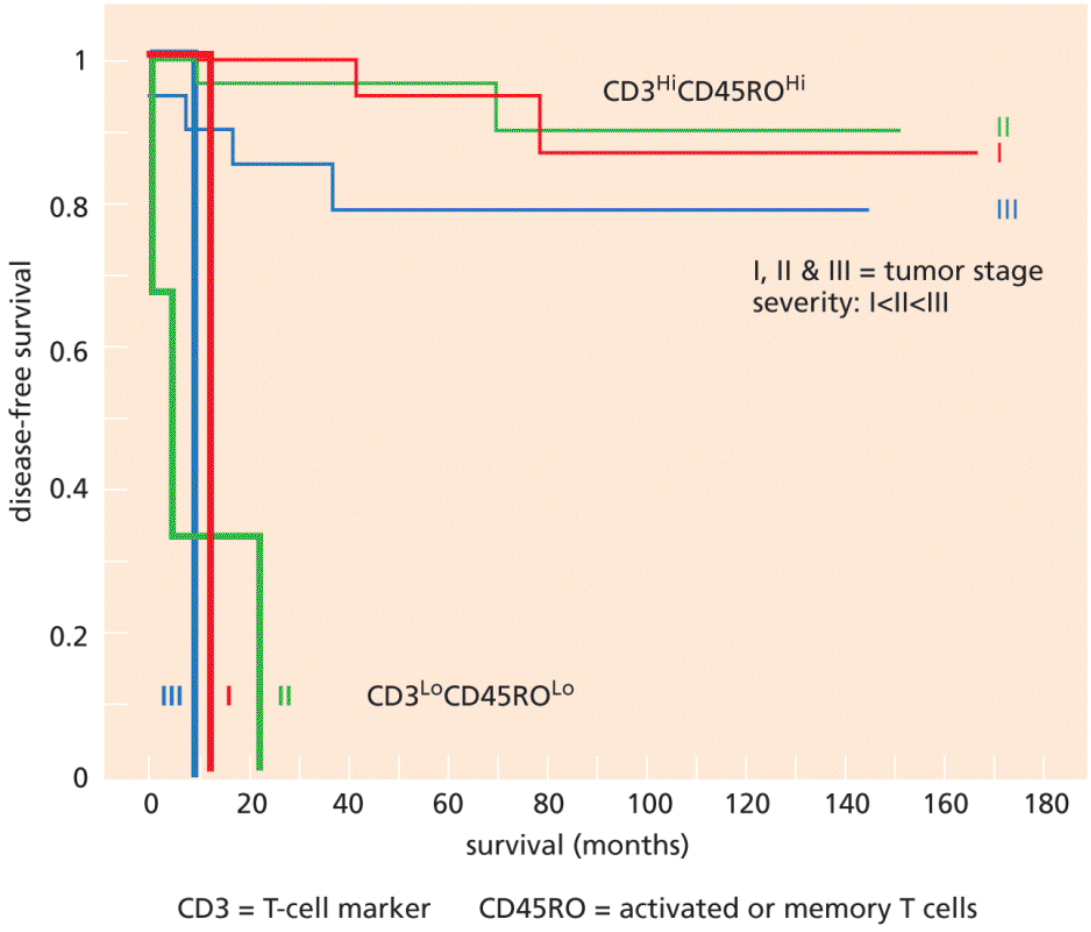
constituted 40 percent of all C D45 positive cells, compared to about 25 in 4 normal pleura samples. The percentage of C D13 positive myeloid cells was about 15 in the cancerous tissue, compared to almost 50 in the normal tissue.

Figure 15.4 Tumor-specific infiltration by immunocytes Analysis of immunocyte populations present in different tumors shows dramatic differences among the immune cells recruited by these various tumors. In the analyses presented here, normal and tumor tissue samples excised from patients were enzymatically digested; single cells in the resulting suspensions were then detected with dye-labeled monoclonal antibodies and analyzed by flow cytometry. Only those cells expressing CD45, an antigen present on all leukocytes, were included in these analyses. The number (*N*) of each tumor type and corresponding normal tissue samples analyzed is given above the bars; in each case, normal adjacent tissue (adj. normal) was analyzed in parallel with tumor samples (T) with the aid of fluorescently labeled antibodies specific for each of the indicated displayed cell-surface antigens: CD3, a component of the TCR complex found on all T cells; CD4, helper T cells, and regulatory T cells; CD8, cytotoxic T lymphocytes; CD13, many myeloid cell types, including granulocytes and monocytes; CD14, monocytes and macrophages; CD19, B cells; CD20, B cells. (Courtesy of L.M. Coussens.)



A graphic depicting the expression levels of 7 marker genes of T H1 adaptive immunity in 75 patients, ordered by relapse rate, from 20 percent to 80 percent. The analysis clearly shows that the higher the expression levels, the lower the relapse rate.

(A)



A line graph displaying the percentage of patients that survive disease-free, as a function of time, for six different patient groups, each characterized by stage of cancer and by the presence or absence of T cells. Of the C D 3 Hi C D 45 R O Hi patients, 80 percent survived disease free up to at least 140 months, even patients with stage 3 cancer. Of the C D 3 Lo C D 45 R O Lo patients, none survived disease-free past 22 months.

(B)

Figure 15.5 T-cell infiltration and the course of colorectal carcinoma progression (A) The clinical course of colorectal (CRC) tumor progression was monitored in a group of 75 patients over periods up to 15 years and correlated with the presence of specific subtypes of immunocytes in their tumors. Whole tumors, encompassing both their epithelial and stromal compartments, were analyzed for their patterns of RNA expression, using qRT-PCR. An expression signature composed of seven genes (*top*) was generated in order to gauge

specifically the representation of immune cells that had infiltrated colorectal carcinomas and also expressed genes of the T_H1 subset of helper T cells, specifically memory T cells. These cells persist for many years after exposure to antigen and can be reactivated quickly in response to a subsequent challenge by this antigen. Those patients whose tumors carried many cells having high expression of this set of T_H1 markers (*top*) experienced a vastly lower rate (20%, *right side*) of post-surgical relapse (generally liver metastases) than did those whose tumors contained low levels of such T cells (80%, *bottom*). (B) An even more dramatic correlation between T-cell infiltration and clinical progression came from analysis of a group of 406 CRC patients, who were stratified into four subgroups according to the stage of histopathological progression of their primary CRC tumors, with stage I tumors representing the least aggressive and stage IV representing the most aggressive subtype. Each tumor was analyzed for the presence of $CD3^+$ (overall T cells) and $CD45RO^+$ (memory T cells) both at the invasive margins of tumors and at the centers of such tumors. As the Kaplan–Meier curves illustrate, most stage I, II, and III tumor patients showed long-term survival if observation revealed that their tumors exhibited high levels of CD3-positive and CD45RO-positive cells at both the tumor centers and invasive margins, whereas those patients whose tumors lacked such T cells in both sites declined precipitously after initial surgery. The clinical progression of stage IV patients, almost all of whom did poorly, is not shown here. (From J. Galon et al., *Science* 313:1960–1964, 2006. With permission from AAAS.)

The evidence presented in Figure 15.5 points to apparently important roles of subsets of T lymphocytes in controlling colorectal carcinoma progression; similar evidence exists for other carcinoma types as well. In addition, the phenotypic state of the cancer cells within a tumor may exert strong influence on the spectrum of immunocytes in its stroma. As one example, the carcinoma cells within a tumor will attract quite different groups of immunocytes, depending on whether these individual neoplastic cells reside in the epithelial or mesenchymal phenotypic states that are described in Section 13.3 and, in more detail, in Chapter 14.

As we will see in this chapter, considerable progress has been made in uncovering some of the mechanisms by which the immune system recognizes and responds to, or fails to respond to, cancer. At present, this knowledge is still incomplete and the underlying mechanisms remain imperfectly understood.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immunocompromised
: Describing an organism lacking a fully functional immune system. *Also termed* **immunodeficient**.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
: Disease caused by infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) that causes depletion of CD4+ lymphocytes and resulting collapse of adaptive immunity.

allogeneic
: Referring to a pair of tissues or associated cells that differ genetically and, quite possibly, antigenically.

histoincompatible
: Failure of tissues or cells to be tolerated by the immune system of the host organism into which they have been engrafted. *See also* **histocompatible**.

immunocyte
: A cell associated with one of the multiple types of cells that form the functional arms of the immune system.

lymphocytes
: Class of leukocytes that mediate humoral or cellular immunity, encompassing B cells, T cells, and NK cells and derivatives thereof.

opportunistic
: A process, such as an infectious event, that exploits an environment that normally would be inhospitable to that process. An opportunistic infection by a virus occurs in host organisms that have compromised antiviral defense mechanisms.

debulk
: To reduce in overall size with the intent of removing the great majority of a mass such as a solid tumor.

OceanofPDF.com

15.3 The immune system functions to destroy foreign invaders and abnormal cells in the body’s tissues

The structures of our tissues clearly provide physical barriers and thus a measure of protection against infections by various pathogens. Beyond these barriers, immune systems developed early in metazoan evolution in order to defend against infections by viruses, bacteria, and fungal parasites. In vertebrates like ourselves, this protection is implemented by the diverse cellular components of the immune system, including lymphocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and natural killer (NK) cells as described below.

Vertebrate immunity is mediated by two distinct but interacting physiologic systems, the innate immune system and the adaptive immune system. **Table 15.1** summarizes some of the salient features and differences in these two systems. Most fundamentally, the innate immune system recognizes molecular patterns characteristically associated with pathogens and some cancer cells and responds with a variety of measures to prevent, limit, or eliminate infections and to eliminate incipient tumors as well. Such innate immunity operates “instinctively,” that is, without any prior exposure of an individual organism to such pathogens, cancer cells, and their associated antigens; accordingly, this type of immunity is not learned during the lifetime of the individual, but instead exists constitutively, being orchestrated entirely by genes inherited through the germ line.

Table 15.1 Innate and adaptive immunity

Property	**Innate immunity**	**Adaptive immunity**
Phylogenetic distribution	All phyla	Demonstrated only in vertebrates and in bacterial species endowed with CRISPR
Receptor diversity	Many types of germ-line-encoded receptors,	Antigen receptors including antibodies and T-cell

Property	Innate immunity	Adaptive immunity
	but little or no diversity within each receptor type	receptors encoded by genes that arise from somatic diversification of germ-line genes to generate an exceedingly large diversity of antigen receptors
Specificity	Molecular patterns	Highly specific. Can discriminate subtle differences between molecular structures. Each member of a species is capable of recognizing $>10^7$ antigen specificities.
Immunological memory	Generally absent, but some cells of the innate immunity system may show increased responses to subsequent encounters with the same stimulus	Capacity for more rapid and more potent immune responses to subsequent encounters with the same antigen
Self/non-self discrimination	Excellent discrimination of microbial molecular patterns from host molecular patterns	Very good but imperfect. Failures can occur and result in autoimmune disease.
Major soluble components	Antimicrobial peptides and proteins, cytokines, chemokines, and other soluble mediators including complement proteins	Antibodies, cytokines, and chemokines

Property	Innate immunity	Adaptive immunity
Major cell types	Many different types of phagocytes including macrophages, neutrophils, dendritic cells; NK cells; some epithelial cells	T cells, B cells, and antigen-presenting cells (primarily dendritic cells, but in some cases, activated macrophages and B cells)

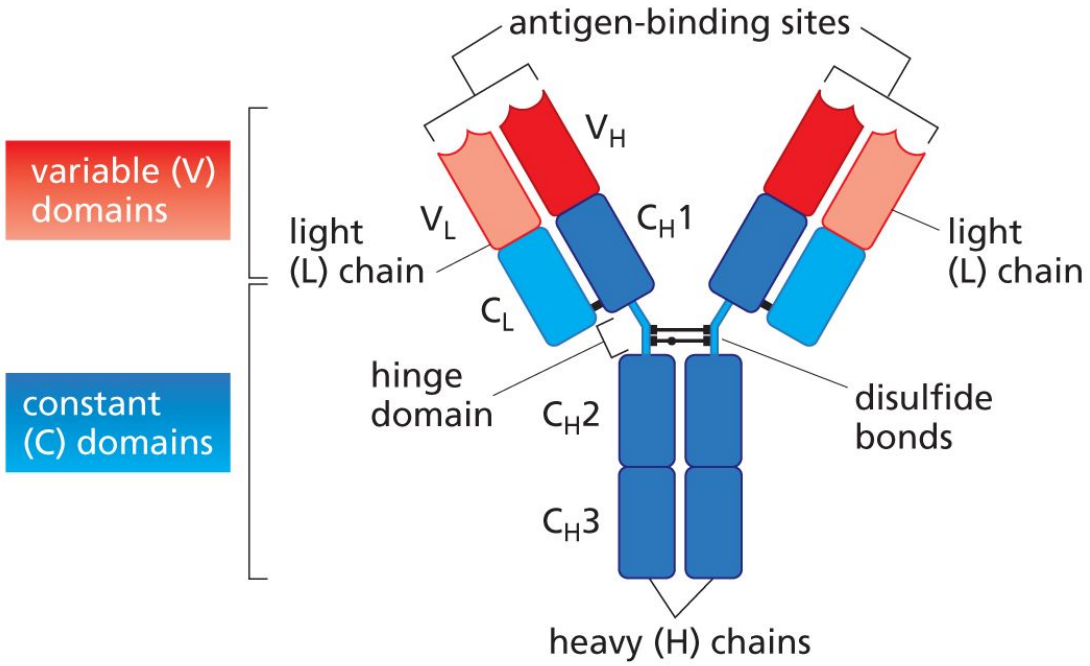
This innate behavior contrasts with that of the adaptive immune system, whose actions are indeed triggered by exposure to a given antigen or the antigens borne by an infectious agent or by aberrant cells, including cancer cells. The learned behavior of the adaptive immune system often enables an individual to respond quickly and strongly to subsequent challenges posed by exposure to the same antigens or infectious agents years or decades later. Such delayed responses are indicative of immunological memory, that is, the ability of the adaptive immune system to “remember” over extended periods of time the prior exposure to an antigen or set of antigens.

The innate immune response can be construed as the first line of defense against attacks launched by pathogens, because its components preexist in the body and therefore largely do not require an extended period of development. The second, more powerful line of defense is ultimately afforded by the adaptive immune response, which is highly specific for the antigen-displaying targets that it recognizes and undertakes to attack. Moreover, the adaptive response to these targets can undergo great amplification and is capable of recognizing the essentially unlimited diversity of molecular structures, which are the physical embodiments of antigens.

Strikingly, after an initial encounter and response to a given novel antigen (or antigen-displaying cell), subsequent adaptive immune responses to that particular antigen are typically far stronger and more rapid in onset than the initial response. These secondary responses, sometimes occurring months and even years after the initial exposure to an infecting pathogen or foreign antigen, reflect the phenomenon of immunological memory cited above and are the basis of vaccination. Thus, lymphocytes that participated in a successful immune response to an initially encountered infectious agent (or tumor cell) and associated antigens will leave behind descendants that will persist in the body for years or decades and confer ongoing protection against subsequent exposure to this agent. It is these long-lived lymphocytes that preserve the record of initial encounters with an antigen and therefore provide the immunity conferred by vaccination.

Two classes of lymphocytes, T lymphocytes (T cells) and B lymphocytes (B cells) and their products, are the cellular mediators of adaptive immunity. B cells produce antibody molecules (also known as immunoglobulins) and T cells are key effectors and regulators of immune responses. Distinct classes of antigen-specific receptors displayed on the surface of a T cell—T-cell receptors (TCRs)—and on the surface of a B cell—B-cell receptors (BCRs)—endow these lymphocytes with the ability to recognize the particular molecular configurations of antigens, doing so with exquisite specificity. In addition, many of the soluble antibody molecules secreted by B cells and present in our blood exhibit high specificity for recognizing and binding tightly to their cognate antigens, that is, the antigens that previously provoked their formation. The B-cell receptors displayed at the cell surface by B lymphocytes are membrane-bound versions of the soluble antibody molecules that these cells secrete.

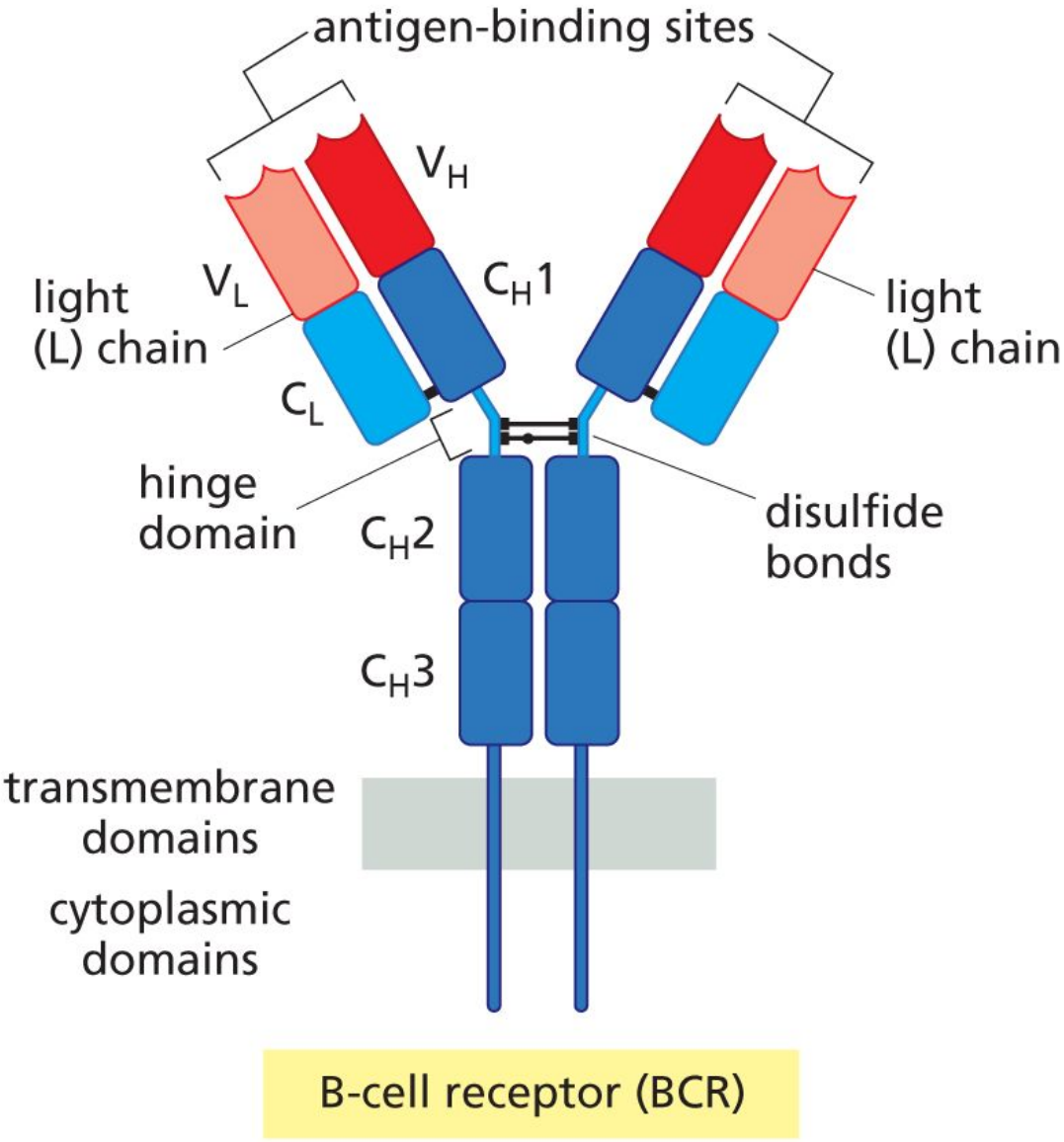
The functions of these various membrane-bound and secreted antigen-recognizing proteins, or antibodies, can be understood from **Figure 15.6**, which reveals that these antigen-recognizing immune molecules contain subdomains domains known as variable regions (V regions), which are the sites of their antigen-recognizing and antigen-binding functions. V regions are composed of amino acid sequences that vary according to their antigen specificity, allowing them to recognize and bind an extraordinarily diverse array of antigens. In effect, V regions carry the antigen-binding sites that recognize and bind antigen molecules having complementary structures, much like the fit of individual keys (antigens) in appropriate cognate locks (V regions).



antibody molecule

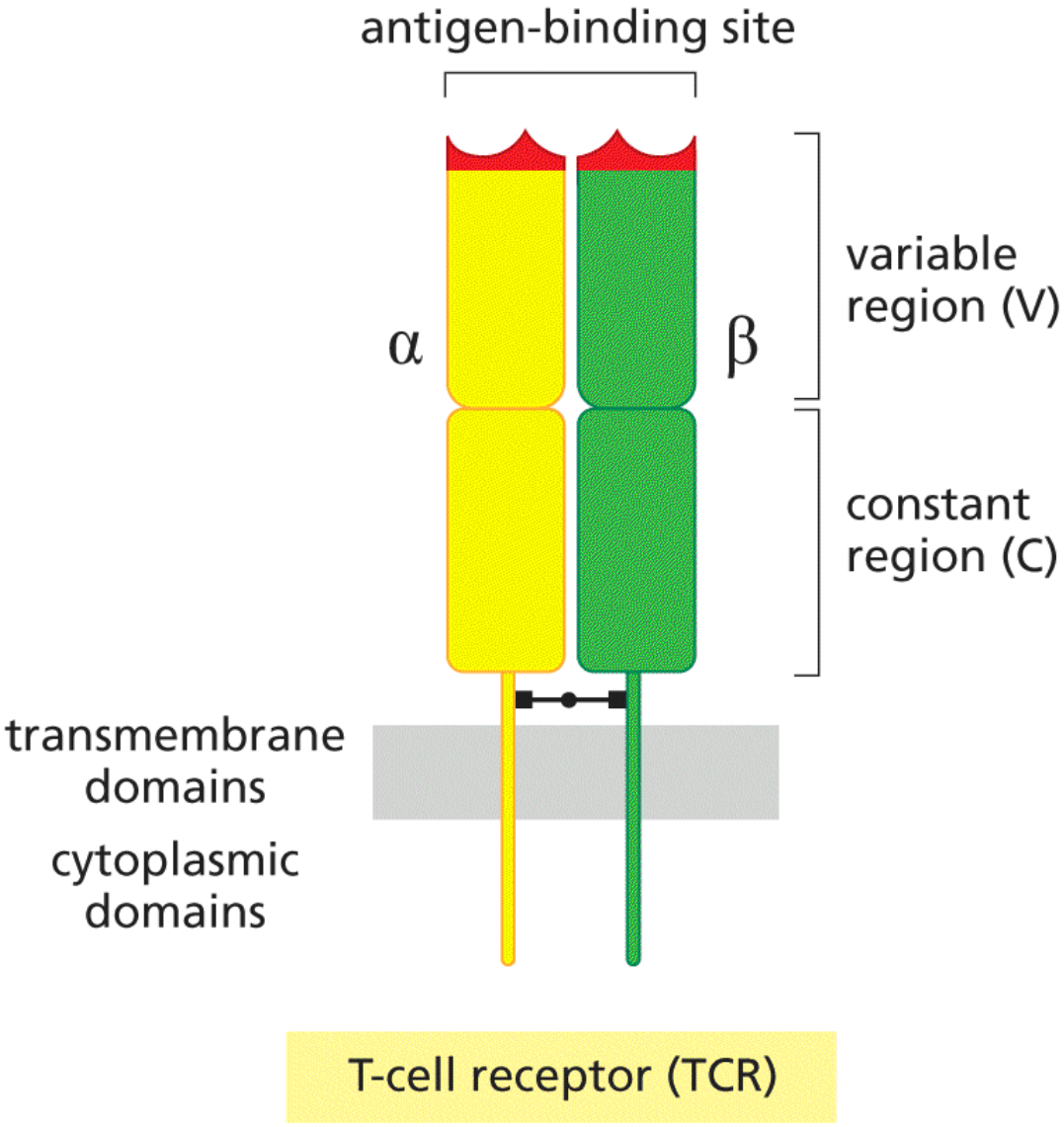
A Y-shaped antibody molecule, with disulfide bonds connecting the left and right halves at the hinge domains. The vertical portion below the linked hinge domains consists of two parallel heavy chains, each consisting of a C H 3 domain beneath a C H 2 domain. Each of the two angled arms above the linked hinge domains consists of a heavy chain on the inside, toward the midline, and a parallel light chain on the outside, away from the midline. The heavy and light chains in the arms each have a constant domain on the hinge end and a variable domain on the free end. These are labeled C H 1, C H L, V H, and V L, respectively. The antigen binding sites are on the free ends of the variable domains.

(A)



A B-cell receptor, or B C R. The structure is the same as that of an antibody molecule, except that the C H 3 domains have long, thin tails, consisting of transmembrane domains and cytoplasmic domains that penetrate through a plasma membrane into cytoplasm.

(B)



A T-cell receptor, or T C R, consists of alpha and beta monomers brought together. Each monomer has a variable region up top, where the two ends together form the antigen binding site, and a constant region down below, where long, thin tails, consisting of transmembrane domains and cytoplasmic domains, penetrate through a plasma membrane into cytoplasm.

(C)

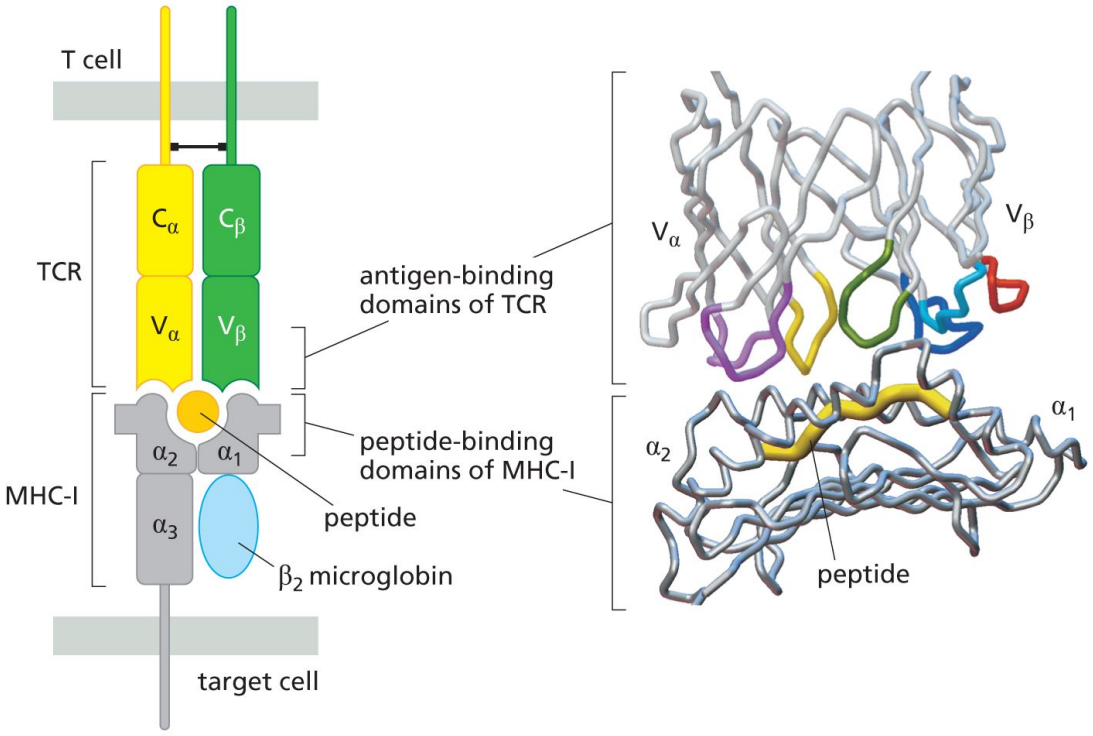
Figure 15.16 Checkpoint inhibition of T-cell activation and effector function
Checkpoint controls ensure the limiting or shutdown of the T-cell response and operate in two successive phases of response development. (A) Activation phase. A naive T cell is primed within a lymph node by engagement of its TCRs with cognate peptide:MHC-I complexes presented by a dendritic cell (DC) (*left*). The

essential co-stimulation that is necessary to augment signaling from the TCR into the T cell is provided by engagement of the T cell's co-stimulatory receptor, CD28, with stimulatory ligands (CD80/86) displayed on the surface of the dendritic cell (*inset, above*). The combined strength of these signals is sufficient to force activation of the naive T cell, causing it to undergo proliferation and develop effector functions. An alternative counteracting response occurs when the CTLA-4 receptor of a T cell, rather than its CD28 receptor, binds to CD80/86 of a dendritic cell: rather than stimulating the T cell and causing its activation, this CTLA-4:CD80/86 binding generates signals that inhibit T-cell activation (*inset, below*). CTLA-4 binding to the CD80/86 ligands is stronger than is CD28 binding; hence, the inhibitory effects of CTLA-4 dominate if both are expressed. As the activation of T cells mediated by CD28 proceeds, the levels of CTLA-4 increase progressively, ultimately ensuring the shutdown of further CD28 signaling and resulting T-cell activation. Those T cells that undergo successful activation leave the lymph node via the circulatory system and are carried to peripheral tissues. This negative-feedback control of T-cell activation operates independently of the T_{reg} inhibition described in Figure 15.15. (B) Effector phase. Those CD8 T cells that are successfully activated by antigen exposure (*broad blue arrow*) are exported from the lymph node and disperse into peripheral tissues, in this case a tumor (*right*). There they enter the tumor microenvironment (TME), where recognition of peptide:MHC complexes displayed by cancer cells can provoke a cytotoxic attack by the activated CD8 T cells. However, the presence of PD-1, an inhibitory receptor also displayed on the surface of the cytotoxic CD8 cells, renders them susceptible to inhibition if they happen to encounter the inhibitory ligands PD-L1 or PD-L2 (PD-L1/2) displayed either by cancer cells or by other noncancerous bystander cells present in the TME (*inset*). (Adapted from R.J. Lee, J.S. Abramson and R.A. Goldsby, Case Studies in Cancer. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 2018.)

In addition, TCRs and BCRs, like antibody molecules, contain constant regions (C regions) that differ little between different molecules of a given class. Thus, the C regions of a diverse array of TCRs contain amino acid sequences that are identical or similar to one another; the same can be said of BCRs and their antibody counterparts. In effect, the constant regions represent the structural scaffolds required for the multiple functions of these three classes of immune molecules—secreted antibody molecules, TCRs, and BCRs. As should be apparent, the C regions of these molecules are not involved in antigen recognition.

Although all three classes of molecules are members of the same immunoglobulin superfamily of proteins, TCRs, BCRs, and antibodies differ markedly from one another in certain critical structural features. As an example, while T-cell receptors are

heterodimers, the basic structure of antibodies and BCRs can best be described as dimers of identical heterodimers. Thus, as illustrated in Figure 15.6, each heterotetramer forming an antibody molecule is composed of four immunoglobulin chains, two identical larger heavy chains (H) and two identical smaller light chains (L). Note that when antibody molecules remain anchored to the surfaces of B cells that made them, they function as antigen-recognizing, B-cell receptors (BCRs). When present in soluble, secreted form, the almost-identical immunoglobulin molecules are referred to as antibodies and are found throughout the blood, lymph, and tissue fluids. In contrast to antibodies and BCRs, the antigen receptors found on most T cells recognize a complex formed between an antigen-derived peptide and an MHC protein, a type of cell surface molecule known to be encoded by the major histocompatibility complex of genes for which they are named (**Figure 15.7**); they will be discussed in detail in Sections 15.5 and 15.6.



An illustration of an M H C-1 complex binding to a T cell receptor to connect a T-cell and a target cell. The two tails of the T cell receptor penetrate the plasma membrane and cytoplasm of the T-cell. The one tail of the M H C-1 complex extends from the alpha 3 component into the plasma membrane and cytoplasm of the target cell. The head of the M H C-1 complex consists of an alpha 1, an alpha 2, and a peptide; this combination constitutes the peptide-binding domain of M H C-1. It binds to the antigen binding site of the T cell receptor. Also present is a beta 2 microglobin; it is attached to the back of the alpha 2. Also shown is a

ribbon diagram representation of the interacting binding domains of the T cell receptor and the M H C-1 complex.

Figure 15.7 T-cell receptors are specific for a complex of peptide and MHC T-cell receptors (TCRs) recognize the structure formed by the noncovalent interaction of a peptide (*yellow*) with the binding pocket of an MHC-I or MHC-II molecule. An MHC-I complex is illustrated here (*left*). Displayed here is the recognition of such a complex (i.e., a peptide in the cleft formed together with the peptide-binding domains of an MHC-I molecule) by the αβ TCR of a T cell. The structures (*right*) of the polypeptide backbones of a TCR antigen-binding domain (*above*) bound to an MHC-I molecule and its associated bound peptide (*below*) complex has been determined by X-ray crystallographic analysis. (Adapted from K. Murphy and C. Weaver (eds.), Janeway's Immunobiology, 9th ed. New York: Garland Science, p.162, Figure 4.24; ribbon diagram from K.C. Garcia, et al. *Science* 274:209-219, 1996. With permission from AAAS.)

The binding of antigens to the antigen-binding sites of TCRs or BCRs triggers adaptive immune responses. Although antigen binding is necessary to trigger an adaptive immune response, it is almost never sufficient. As a rule, the immune system must receive additional signals in order to assemble a biological program that permits the successful initiation of an actual adaptive immune response. Whether or not an antigen can function as an immunogen, that is, a substance capable of provoking an immune response, depends on the context of the encounter with this substance. As we will see, a major problem of anti-cancer immunotherapies derives from the difficulty in rendering cancer cell-associated antigens immunogenic, that is, creating the conditions that make a cancer antigen an immunogen and thus capable of provoking an effective immune attack.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immunological memory
: The process by which cells of the adaptive immune system store information of an encounter with an antigen and exploit this stored information to rapidly mount a second immune response against this antigen long after the initial encounter with the antigen has taken place.

immunoglobulin
: An antibody molecule assembled from two heavy and two light chains.

T-cell receptor
: The immunoglobulin-like molecule that is displayed on the surface of T cells and used by them to recognize antigens displayed by HLA/MHC class I or class II proteins on the surfaces of other cells, including professional antigen-presenting cells and potential target cells.

B-cell receptor
: An immunoglobulin molecule that is displayed on the surface of a B cell that enables this cell to recognize and respond to specific antigens.

antibody
: A soluble tetrameric protein that is produced by plasma cells of the immune system and is capable of recognizing and binding particular antigens with high specificity. *See also* **immunoglobulin**.

variable region
: Portion of an antibody molecule or T-cell receptor that contains the antigen-binding domain and, within an individual organism, is present in millions of alternative versions (and thus alternative amino acid sequences) in the various antibody molecules that together comprise a given class of antibody molecules such as gamma immunoglobulin. *Compare* **constant region**.

constant region
: Portion of an antibody molecule that is present identically by all members of a class of these molecules, e.g., all immunoglobulin gamma molecules. *Compare* **variable region**.

heavy chain

Larger of the two polypeptide chains that assemble to form immunoglobulins and related proteins. *Compare* **light chain**.

light chain

Smaller of the two polypeptide chains that assemble to form immunoglobulins and related proteins. *Compare* **heavy chain**.

immunogen

(adj., - **genic**) A chemical structure that is capable of provoking some type of immune response, e.g., an antigen that can provoke the synthesis of antibody molecules capable of recognizing and binding it.

T lymphocyte

Class of lymphocytes that develops largely in the thymus and includes T_H cells, T_C cells, and T_{reg}'s.

B cells

Lymphocytes, also termed B lymphocytes, that develop in the bone marrow and are involved in generating the humoral immune response. *See also* **T cells**.

innate immune response

An immune system response toward an antigen or a cell that occurs in the absence of prior exposure of an organism to this particular antigen or cell. *See also* **adaptive immune response**.

adaptive immune response

An immune system response that is acquired or learned following exposure of an organism to an antigen or antigen-bearing agent. *See also* **innate immune response**.

OceanofPDF.com

15.4 The diversity of B cell and T cell receptors arises from the stochastic diversification of the genes that encode them

During the generation of T lymphocytes and B lymphocytes, a highly unusual process of immunoglobulin diversification (including diversification of soluble antibodies as well as the membrane-tethered TCRs and BCRs) is achieved by the intensive diversification of the genomic nucleotide sequences that encode the V regions of these various proteins. Unlike essentially all other genes in the human genome, the genetic sequences encoding antibodies and thus B-cell receptors are not inherited in the germ line and therefore are not present in the lymphocyte progenitor cells at birth. Instead, a few hundred distinct subgenic segments that are indeed inherited in the genome can combine with one another almost randomly in any one of thousands of different ways as the immune system matures (**Supplementary Sidebar 15.1**). A similar process of rearrangement and assembly of subgenic segments of T-cell receptor genes generates a diverse repertoire of T-cell receptors. The resulting combinatorially assembled, fused subgenic sequences underlie the staggering diversity of T- and B-cell populations; the potential diversity of T-cell and the B-cell repertoires of an individual human each exceed 10^9 potential antigen specificities. In aggregate, these specificities enable T and B cells to recognize and bind almost any antigen that might be encountered during a lifetime. (Actually, only a tiny subset of these possible antigens is ever encountered by an individual human.)

In fact, the organization of the process of random gene rearrangement ensures that only one of the very large number of possible gene rearrangements is allowed to assemble within a given lymphocyte precursor. Once a new antigen-combining site has been assembled in a

lymphocyte precursor (through the process of stochastic combinatorial fusion of encoding DNA segments described above), subsequent recombination events are blocked in that cell and its descendants. Therefore, a lymphocyte precursor cell and its lineal descendants carry genes that encode the ability to recognize only one specific cognate antigen (or set of structurally similar antigens). Accordingly, all antigen receptors or all of the antibody molecules made by a given lymphocyte are identical to one another at the molecular level and all exhibit identical antigen-recognizing specificity.

Importantly, the chance diversification of these antigen receptor genes occurs in the absence of any direct provocation by encounters with specific antigens. Instead, diversification simply allows the immune system to anticipate future challenges arising from an essentially unlimited number of antigens, each composed of a molecular structure that might not have been encountered previously by an individual but might well be encountered during the individual's lifetime. Among these novel antigens are some that have never been encountered during the evolutionary history of the animal species to which the individual belongs.

An encounter with an antigen can provoke the proliferation of a lymphocyte whose antigen receptors (antibody molecules, BCRs, or TCRs) recognize the antigen's detailed molecular conformation. As a consequence, repeated cycles of cell division of an antigen-provoked lymphocyte and its direct descendants produce a large clonal population of cells that all share the same antigen-binding specificity as the parental lymphocyte in which an initial immunoglobulin or T-cell receptor gene rearrangement took place. The proliferation of a clone of B or T lymphocytes in response to an encounter with a specific antigen is referred to as clonal expansion. In effect, the antigen that provokes this clonal expansion functions much like a mitogenic growth factor impinging on non-immune cells throughout the body (see Chapter 5). Antigen-provoked clonal expansions are formally similar to the clonal expansions that occur during multi-step tumor progression (see Figure 11.14) as a consequence of the acquisition of advantageous, somatically generated, mutant alleles. The clonal expansions of lymphocytes generate the large populations of these cells that can

mediate actual responses to a newly encountered antigen, replacing the initially small number of cells that were incapable of doing so.

An inherent hazard of the system that allows the stochastic generation of antibodies and T-cell receptors is the likelihood that such a process will generate receptors that exhibit a specificity for antigens expressed by the body's own normal cells, that is, "self." The formation of such antigen receptors may open the door to an attack within a host organism by its own immune system, resulting in an autoimmune disease. Such an attack is said to be launched by autoreactive lymphocytes and antibody molecules.

In fact, most lymphocytes that happen to have developed strong reactivity to the antigens expressed in normal tissues are eliminated soon after their development; this elimination occurs in the tissues termed primary lymphoid organs where they were generated, these being either the thymus in the case of T cells or the bone marrow in the case of B cells. Deletion of autoreactive cells must operate efficiently lest life-threatening autoimmune diseases occur. Moreover, it is this deletion that lies at the heart of immunological tolerance (**Sidebar 15.1**).

Sidebar 15.1 Inappropriate gene expression may yield protein antigens that escape immune tolerance

The development of immune tolerance depends on the ability of the immune system to recognize self-antigens and eliminate the lymphocytes that happen to have developed reactivity with these antigens. This process is highly effective but never flawless. As an example, deviations from normal patterns of antigen synthesis and presentation may be undertaken by cancer cells, which may well derive, in turn, from aberrant patterns of gene expression in these cells; such shifts in the transcriptomes of cancer cells may yield, among other aberrations, the inappropriate expression of proteins normally restricted to earlier stages of development and thus no longer expressed in adult tissues. Such aberrantly expressed antigens may not have provoked the development of immune tolerance toward them.

Alternatively, cancer cells may develop ectopic expression of proteins whose synthesis is normally restricted to special sites in the body, such as

the testes; such proteins may not have previously elicited the development of immune tolerance, simply because they are expressed in anatomical sites that are usually inaccessible to the components of the adaptive immune system that are responsible for the development of tolerance. These various types of antigens that have failed (for one reason or another) to induce tolerance and are displayed by tumor cells represent excellent candidates for recognition and attack by components of the adaptive immune system.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

clonal expansion
: Process by which a cell that has acquired a more advantageous phenotype generates a large population of lineal descendant cells, which in aggregate constitute a clone; such clonal populations may be generated during the process of tumor progression or in lymphocytes that are stimulated to proliferate by encounter with an antigen that is cognate with the cell surface receptor that they display.

autoimmune
: Referring to a process or disease in which the immune system attacks an organism's own normal cells and tissues. *See also* **autoreactive**.

autoreactive
: Referring to the ability of components of the adaptive immune system —including antibody molecules and lymphocytes—to recognize and react with antigens displayed by normal tissues, resulting in autoimmunity. *See also* **autoimmune**.

OceanofPDF.com

15.5 MHC molecules play key roles in antigen recognition by T cells

Only those members of the huge, diversified lymphocyte population encountering an antigen that happens to bind their antigen receptor (that is, a BCR or TCR) will be activated to divide and differentiate into cells that perform the effector functions (the actual work) of their lymphocyte type. Antibody production is the primary effector function of B cells, whereas the effector functions of T cells are more variable, depending on which of the broad categories of helper, regulatory, or cytotoxic T-cell functions they are destined to perform; these subcategories of T cells are usually denoted as T_H, T_{reg}, and T_C cells, respectively.

An understanding of the molecular mechanisms through which T cells are cued to play their assigned roles in controlling cancer begins with an appreciation of precisely how T cells recognize antigens, specifically antigens expressed by other cells, such as cancer cells, including those proteins that reside within these other cells. This recognition is complicated by the fact that cells of the immune system do not have the capacity to peer inside other cells including cancer cells. Instead, in order to circumvent this problem, the contents of cells must be displayed on the surface of such cells, allowing them to be sensed by the immune system. The ability to surveil the internal contents of cells is critical given the fact that the majority of cancer-associated antigens are intracellular proteins rather than proteins that are naturally displayed on the surface of cancer cells.

This prerequisite for effective immune surveillance provides the rationale for the cellular machinery that has evolved specifically to display samples of the intracellular contents on the cell surface. In the case of protein-associated antigens—essentially all of the antigens discussed here—this surveillance depends, more specifically, on fragments of such proteins being presented at the surface. These fragments are generated by ongoing proteolysis in the cytoplasm of a portion of recently synthesized proteins.

Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules are responsible for displaying fragments of intracellular proteins on the surfaces of all the body’s cells. These molecules are tasked with the function of acquiring peptide

fragments of recently synthesized proteins and conveying them to the cell surface, where they are subsequently displayed and may, in principle, be recognized by TCRs.

MHCs are transmembrane proteins that are topologically much like the growth factor receptors and integrins described in Chapter 5. However, the functions of these classes of cell surface molecules are totally different: growth factor receptors transduce signals into cells informing the intracellular circuitry of conditions in the outside world, in particular the extracellular space immediately surrounding a cell. In stark contrast, MHC molecules function in precisely the opposite fashion by conveying signals (in the form of peptide:MHC complexes) to the cell surface, where they are displayed to the outside world, more specifically to components of the immune system.

The cells of an individual mammal can muster a diverse array of MHC molecules. These molecules are encoded by highly polymorphic alleles in the genome. (Recall that a genetic polymorphism is a variant allele whose protein products support normal cellular and organismic function.) The polymorphic variants of MHC molecules carry functional pockets that are capable of binding many of the diverse peptides generated by intracellular proteolysis and thereafter conveying the bound peptides to the cell surface for display to the outside world (**Sidebar 15.2**).

Sidebar 15.2 MHC polymorphism has functional consequences

The MHC complex is a closely linked cluster of genes that is present in the genome of all vertebrate species. Together with bound peptides, proteins encoded by the MHC form the antigenic structures recognized by T cells. In humans, MHC molecules are termed instead HLA molecules. There are two classes of MHC molecules, MHC class I (MHC-I) and MHC class II (MHC-II). MHC molecules all have a functional pocket, a molecular cleft that binds some peptides but not others in order to form the peptide:MHC complexes that TCRs recognize. MHC molecules are encoded, as mentioned, by highly polymorphic genetic loci, each of which hosts multiple alternative alleles. By now, more than 10,000 distinct MHC alleles have been catalogued in the human gene pool. This diversity is a direct reflection of the need to maximize the chances that an MHC molecule of one variant subtype or another will contain a molecular cleft that selectively binds some members of the diverse population of peptides generated by post-translational intracellular proteolysis of recently synthesized proteins.

Bear in mind that although peptide binding by MHC molecules is somewhat selective, it is highly promiscuous, and any particular MHC molecule is capable of binding a large number of different peptides. This means that in an outbred vertebrate population, such as humans, it is virtually impossible for a pathogen to evolve proteins that will not, upon proteolysis, generate peptides that can be bound by at least some MHC class I and class II molecules displayed by certain individual members of a mammalian species. This combination of MHC polymorphism and peptide-binding promiscuity would seem to guarantee that the species as a whole cannot be driven to extinction by exposure to one or another novel infectious agent. This versatility of peptide binding extends as well to those generated from the proteins expressed by cancer cells: even in a single individual, it is likely that at least some peptides generated from novel antigens arising in cancer cells have a probability of being bound by at least one of the class I or class II MHC molecules encoded in this individual's genome.

Given the large number of polymorphic alleles and the number of loci that carry these alleles, each individual member of a species is likely to carry a combination of MHC molecules that differs significantly from the combination of MHC molecules expressed by almost everyone else. The most obvious exceptions to this are identical twins in humans and members of specific inbred strains of mice in which all individual mice are genetically identical to one another. This polymorphic variability has another immunological consequence: every individual's cells will express at the surface a combination of MHC molecules that is unique (or almost so). Although the assigned task of MHC molecules is to *present* intracellular peptides, enabling the latter to be recognized as antigens, these MHC molecules themselves, independent of their peptide-displaying powers, become antigens in their own right that are readily recognized by components of the immune system. Within an individual's body, these MHC molecules are, quite naturally, the object of immunological tolerance; however, when this individual's cells or tissues are transplanted into the body of a genetically nonidentical person, they will almost inevitably be recognized as foreign because these donor cells and tissues express MHC molecules that the recipient's immune system has not previously experienced.

These dynamics explain historically the origin of the term *major histocompatibility complex,* which derived from the observation that tissues and cells of some organisms can be readily transplanted into other syngeneic organisms; the transplanted donor tissues are therefore "histo" (meaning "tissue") compatible with the recipient hosts. Conversely, transplanted donor tissue that is nonsyngeneic with a potential graft recipient was seen to be rejected by the

recipient and was therefore deemed to be *histoincompatible*. (Indeed, the MHC genetic complexes were discovered because of the strong immunogenicity of their encoded proteins, which were found to be major sources of graft recognition and rejection.)

Given the high degree of polymorphism in MHC molecules, differences in MHC repertoires among members of an outbred species, such as our own, are assured. Consequently, transplantation of cells, tissues, or organs between members of a population that are not genetically identical are likely to fail unless powerful immunosuppressive measures are taken to prevent anti-graft rejection responses in tissues of the recipients.

Importantly, the polymorphic variability of MHC molecules is not generated by rearrangements of DNA segments inherited through the germ line, as described earlier (see **Supplementary Sidebar 15.1**), but preexists in the encoding germ-line sequences inherited from parents. Moreover, this diversity of MHC molecules displayed by a given vertebrate cell exists in order to enable a subset of them to bind, with some degree of affinity, a portion of the peptides that are generated by proteolysis of that cell's intracellular contents. In all vertebrates, the loci of genes encoding the two major types of MHC molecules—class I and class II—as well as several other genes encoding many of the proteins essential for antigen presentation, are closely linked to one another in a region of the genome referred to as the MHC complex.

As cited above and described in detail later in this chapter, the recognition of cancer cells by components of the immune system depends on the ability of immune effector cells to recognize MHC-bound peptides displayed on the surfaces of the neoplastic cells. As indicated earlier, these peptides are produced continuously in cells and, in principle, are created by the systematic cleavage of a portion of all the proteins that are synthesized inside a cell; accordingly, they include proteins made by normal cells, proteins made by cancer cells, and proteins made by pathogen-infected cells. One immediate and direct implication is that the failure of a cancer cell to display cancer-associated peptides borne by its MHC molecules may enable that cancer cell to evade detection and subsequent attack by T cells of the immune system.

There are two types of cell surface MHC molecules, MHC class I (class I or MHC-I) and MHC class II (class II or MHC-II), and there is a marked difference in the patterns of their expression among the diverse cell types in the body.

Essentially all nucleated cells display class I MHC molecules, revealing how far-reaching is the ability of the immune system to monitor intracellular proteins—including those made by infectious agents within infected cells—throughout the body. Class II expression, however, is mostly restricted to only a few types of cells with specialized immune-related functions, specifically dendritic cells, B cells, and macrophages, as well as others we need not consider here. As will become apparent, these differences have important functional consequences. The restricted expression of the class II MHC molecules and the specialized function of these class II molecules have caused this small number of immune cell types to be called antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

Both MHC-I and MHC-II molecules carry the clefts cited earlier that serve as selective binding sites for the peptides generated by intracellular proteolytic degradation. In effect, these peptide-binding clefts serve as the palms of the hands of these MHC molecules that grab peptides inside the cell and display them outside the cell at its surface. The resulting complex of a peptide and MHC molecule forms a three-dimensional structure that is unique for any particular combination of peptide and MHC and is the structural feature on the surface of a cancer cell that may be recognized by a T-cell receptor (see Figure 15.7).

The relatively small size of the peptide-presenting cleft together with the size of captured peptides, typically 8 to 10 amino acid residues for MHC-I and 13 to 20 or so for MHC-II, create a problem: the interaction domains between the peptide and the MHC cleft that hosts it depend, by necessity, on a small number of noncovalent interactions between the two. Indeed, complex bioinformatic algorithms have been developed to predict whether a given peptide generated by proteolytic cleavage within a cell will find a firm roost in one of a cell's repertoire of MHC molecules and thus have a chance of being carried to a cell surface and displayed there.

These facts suggest that when both a wild-type and corresponding mutant peptide are properly displayed on the cell surface, a subtle structural difference between them may suffice to provoke an immune recognition of the difference between them. Thus, during the development of the immune system, the wild-type peptide should have elicited tolerance and should thereby be overlooked by the multiple arms of the adaptive immune system; in contrast, a single amino acid-substituted peptide version of the wild-type peptide may stand out and be highly successful in attracting the attention of the immunocytes that form the adaptive arm of this system. This explains how a cell bearing a single cancer-associated mutant allele

can generate peptide:MHC complexes that have the potential to be recognized by T cells, the agents of adaptive immunity responsible for such recognition.

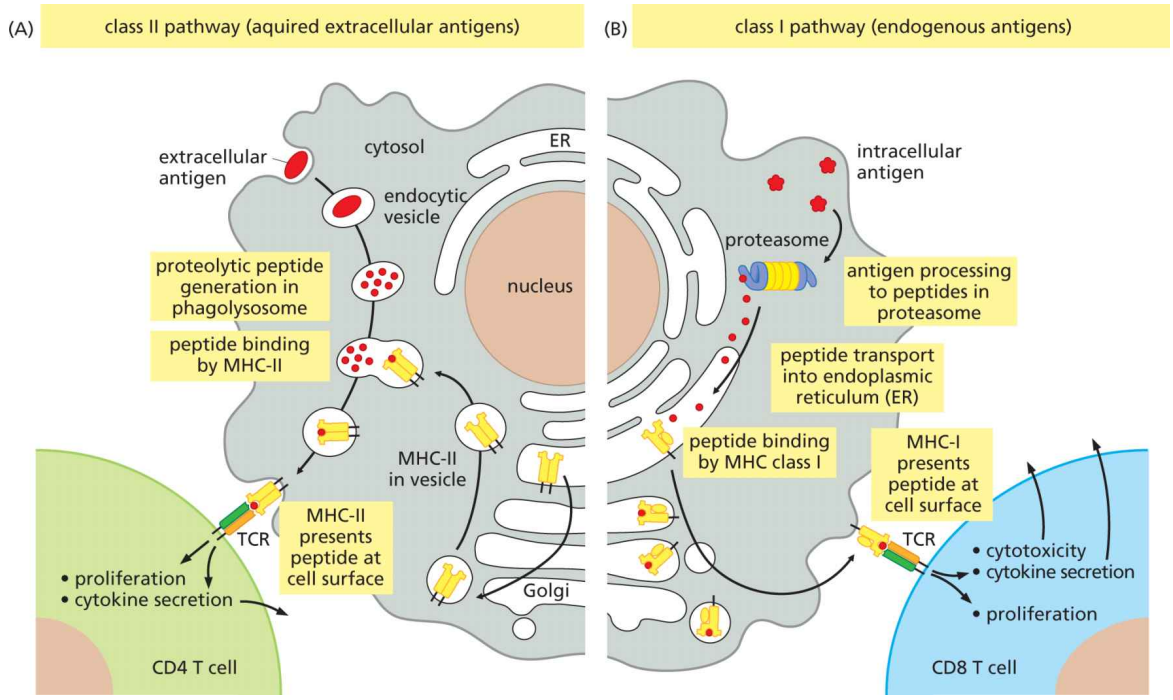
Importantly, the peptides presented by the two classes of MHC molecules have different origins. MHC-I selectively binds peptides generated from proteins initially synthesized within the *same cell* that later displays this peptide:MHC complex on its surface. Given the almost universal expression of MHC class I molecules throughout all cell types in the body, this implies that a portion of each protein made by a cell anywhere in the body is diverted from its dedicated function and destination site and is, instead, subjected to intracellular proteolysis and subsequent cell surface display via MHC-I molecules.

The MHC-II molecules displayed by a cell operate very differently: they selectively bind peptides derived from proteins initially synthesized in *other cells* in the body that were previously acquired by antigen-presenting cells (APCs), internalized into these cells (by phagocytosis, endocytosis, or pinocytosis), subsequently degraded into peptides, and only then loaded onto an MHC-II molecule and presented at the cell surface. The ability to perform this function, involving antigen acquisition and subsequent cell surface presentation, is not ubiquitous; rather this function is restricted to the APCs enumerated earlier, specifically B cells, macrophages, and most importantly, dendritic cells (DCs).

These unique capacities enable itinerant, “professional” antigen-presenting cells to survey the contents of cells and fluids throughout the body, including infecting microbes and cancer cells, ingest them, digest them, and ultimately present resulting peptides to other components of the immune system, making possible the subsequent development of an effective immune response. To be more specific, this MHC-II–mediated presentation by APCs of acquired peptides is made to T cells, which respond in various ways to create various aspects of the immune response.

Dendritic cells represent the most potent class of APCs, because they possess, by far, the greatest capacity to present certain peptides generated from proteins synthesized in other cells. In addition, because DCs share traits with essentially all other cells in the body, they can also present oligopeptides on their surface via their MHC-I molecules. Hence, DCs employ both MHC-I and MHC-II to display peptides at their surface. In both cases, T cells represent the audience that views and responds to these two types of antigen presentation. The T cells, in turn, proceed to operate as the key organizers, amplifiers, and in many cases, the effectors of adaptive immune responses to microbes and cancer. The pathways

leading to presentation of peptides on class I or class II MHC molecules are presented schematically in **Figure 15.8**.



A two-part figure depicting two different pathways of antigen processing. Part A depicts a class 2 pathway (acquired extracellular antigens). An extracellular antigen entering a cell's cytosol is enclosed in an endocytic vesicle. Proteolytic peptide generation in a phagolysosome is followed by peptide binding by an M H C-2, which moved from a Golgi body to a vesicle to the binding site. When the M H C-2 presents the peptide at the cell surface, the T cell receptor of a C D4 T cell binds to it, resulting in proliferation of the T cell and secretion of cytokines. Part B depicts a class 1 pathway (endogenous antigens). This pathway begins with intracellular antigens. Antigen processing to peptides takes place in a proteasome. The peptides are then transported into the endoplasmic reticulum, where they are bound by M H C class 1. When the M H C-1 presents the peptide at the cell surface, the T cell receptor of a C D8 T cell binds to it, resulting in proliferation of the T cell, cytotoxicity, and secretion of cytokines.

Figure 15.8 Different pathways of antigen processing present antigen-derived peptides to CD4 and CD8 T cells (A) Class II pathway: presentation to CD4 T cells. Extracellular antigens—notably those produced by other cells (*red oval*, *upper left*) and then internalized by phagocytic cells, especially dendritic cells (via phagocytosis, endocytosis, or pinocytosis)—

soon become enclosed in endocytic vesicles, some of which fuse with phagolysosomes in the cytoplasm, where their contents are subjected to proteolysis, resulting in the generation of peptides (*red dots*), some of which are then bound by MHC-II. The resulting peptide:MHC-II complexes are exported to the cell surface by vesicular transport and presented to T-cell receptor (TCR) displayed by an adjacent $CD4^+$ T cell (*light green*, *lower left*). Recognition of these cell-surface peptide:MHC-II complexes by the TCR of a $CD4^+$ T cell can induce its proliferation and its secretion of certain cytokines. (B) Class I pathway: presentation to CD8 T cells. A portion of the recently synthesized proteins within a cell routinely undergo proteasome-mediated proteolysis, generating peptides that are transported into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), where some are bound within the lumen of the ER by newly synthesized MHC-I molecules. Subsequent transport first to the Golgi apparatus and then to the cell surface results in the presentation of the peptide:MHC-I complexes at the cell surface. Recognition of peptide:MHC-I complexes by the TCRs of nearby CD8 cells (*light blue*, *lower right*) can induce these cells to undergo proliferation, secrete cytokines, and differentiate into cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs, *not shown*) that can kill cells bearing peptide–MHC complexes recognized by their TCRs. (Adapted from P. Parham, The Immune System, 5th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2021, Figure 5.17.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

effector
: An agent (such as a protein) that carries out the actual work of a biological process rather than simply regulating it.

MHC class I
: A class of cell surface proteins that is specialized to acquire (during its maturation within the endoplasmic reticulum) oligopeptide fragments of its own intracellular proteins and thereafter present these fragments on the cell surface where they may be recognized by components of the adaptive immune system such as CD8+ lymphocytes. *Compare* **MHC class II**.

MHC class II
: A class of cell surface proteins that is specialized to acquire (during its maturation within the endoplasmic reticulum) oligopeptide fragments of acquired phagocytosed cells or particles and thereafter present these fragments on the cell surface where they may be recognized by components of the adaptive immune system such as CD4+ lymphocytes. *Compare* **MHC class I**.

antigen-presenting cells
: A class of cells—often termed professional antigen-presenting cells, including dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells—that present oligopeptide antigens via class I and II MHC molecules to other immunocytes, notably helper and cytotoxic T cells.

phagocytosis
: Endocytotic process by which a cell, usually a component of the immune system, engulfs a particle (which may be another cell), internalizes this particle, and usually proceeds to degrade it by introducing it into lysosomes. *See also* **endocytosis**.

endocytosis
: Uptake by a cell of extracellular material together with associated extracellular fluid that is achieved through the invagination of a patch of plasma membrane, thereby yielding membrane-bound vesicles termed endosomes within the cytoplasm. Pinocytosis and phagocytosis are forms of endocytosis. *See also* **exocytosis**, **endosome**, **phagocytosis**, **pinocytosis**.

pinocytosis

Process similar to endocytosis in which a small volume of extracellular fluid together with its dissolved contents is internalized by the invagination of patches of plasma membrane, yielding cytoplasmic vesicles. *See also* **endocytosis**.

OceanofPDF.com

15.6 T cells that recognize MHC-I have different roles from those that recognize MHC-II

The T cells that respond to antigen presentation via either MHC-I or MHC-II fall into two distinct subtypes. In both cases, the responses depend on TCRs displayed by the T cells. Whether a TCR recognizes MHC-I–bound or MHC-II–bound peptides is determined by a co-receptor protein that is associated closely but noncovalently with this TCR on the cell surface adjacent to this TCR. The co-receptors do not have any antigen-recognizing function of their own, but instead ensure that the TCR with which they are partnered is directed toward the appropriate type of MHC molecule, that is, toward either MHC-I or MHC-II. More specifically, CD4 and CD8 molecules, functioning as co-receptors, direct their TCR partners to bind either MHC-II complexes (CD4) or MHC-I complexes (CD8) displayed by other cells. Indeed, the two dominant classes of T lymphocytes are named $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells after their co-receptors (or, more simply, CD4 T cells and CD8 T cells). Thus, a given T lymphocyte will display either a CD4 or CD8 co-receptor and belong to either the $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ class of T cells.

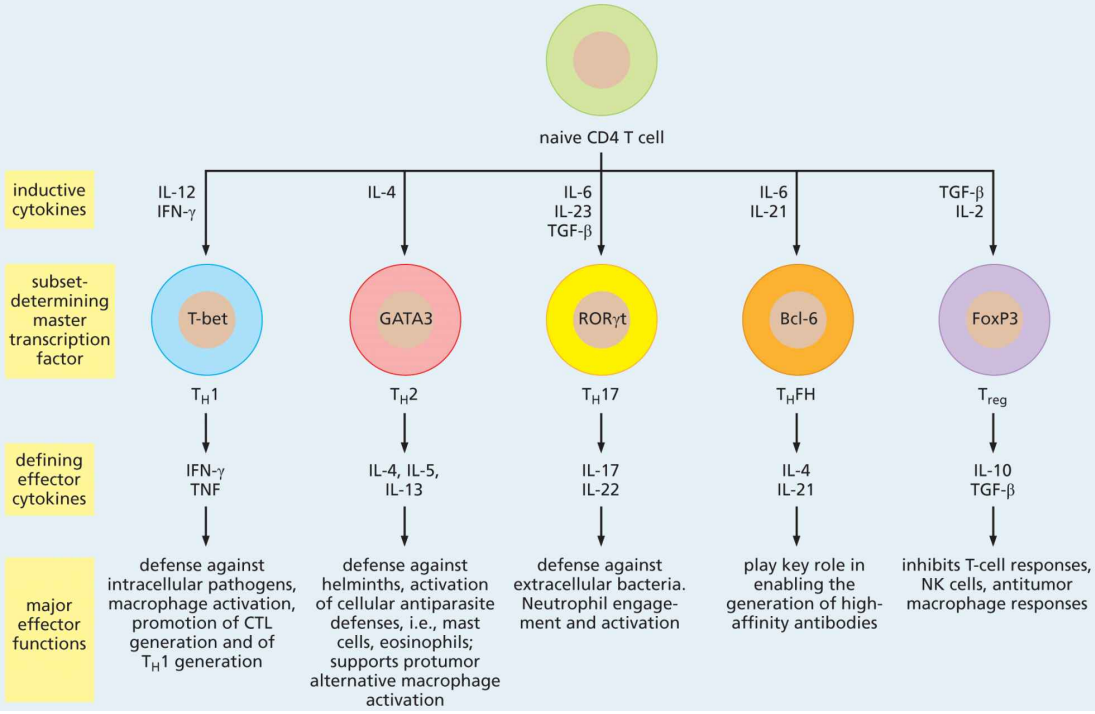
Having interacted with appropriate MHC molecules, these two classes of T cells undertake very different specialized functions. The CD8 T cells, which are specialized to interact with MHC class I molecules, depend on this interaction to recognize cells that are to be targeted for killing; this explains why CD8 T cells are often termed cytotoxic T cells (T_C) or cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs). It is these CD8 T cells that carry out the hard work of recognizing and eliminating cancer cells bearing certain peptide:MHC-I complexes on their surface (see Figure 15.8). Conversely, CD4 cells are specialized to recognize the peptide:MHC-II complexes displayed by APCs and, having done so, provide signals that help to activate, support, and coordinate the behavior of several other types of T cells—including, most importantly, CD8-bearing cytotoxic T cells. For this reason, CD4 lymphocytes are often termed helper T cells (T_H cells).

The existence of T_H cells reveals a new mode of immunocyte function, in that these cells act primarily to regulate and stimulate other lymphocytes. Stated differently, the actions of other immunocytes often depend on previous stimulation or support by T_H cells. Within the class of CD4 T cells there are multiple subsets, each assuming a different set of functional responsibilities (**Sidebar 15.3**).

Sidebar 15.3 CD4 +T-cells belong to multiple subtypes

T lymphocytes of the CD4 category are responsible for a broad range of activities that stimulate, coordinate, or otherwise regulate the responses of multiple types of immune cells. This is accomplished at the time of their activation by the differentiation of naive T cells into one of five major effector $CD4^+$ T-cell subsets. Each of these effector subsets orchestrates a distinct function or set of functions. The specific path of differentiation into each of these subsets is determined by the cytokines present during the initial antigen-triggered activation of the naive CD4 cell and involves the expression of a key transcription factor that determines subset identity.

Each T-cell subset is distinguished by the secretion of its own distinct set of cytokines, each providing the means to direct the behavior of specific target cell populations under its control, that is, the particular cell populations that are being helped by the specialized CD4 T-cell subset. **Figure 15.9** provides a summary profile of five widely recognized T-cell subsets. Four of the five CD4 T-cell subsets play a role in activating or intensifying the responses of the immunocytes they target, thereby supporting or augmenting their functional capabilities. In sharp contrast, the fifth subset is composed of regulatory T cells, T_{reg}'s, which *suppress* the activities of the immune cells that they target.



Five T-cell subsets derived from naive C D 4 T cells. T H 1 cells are induced by interleukin 12 and interferon gamma. The master transcription factor is T-bet. The

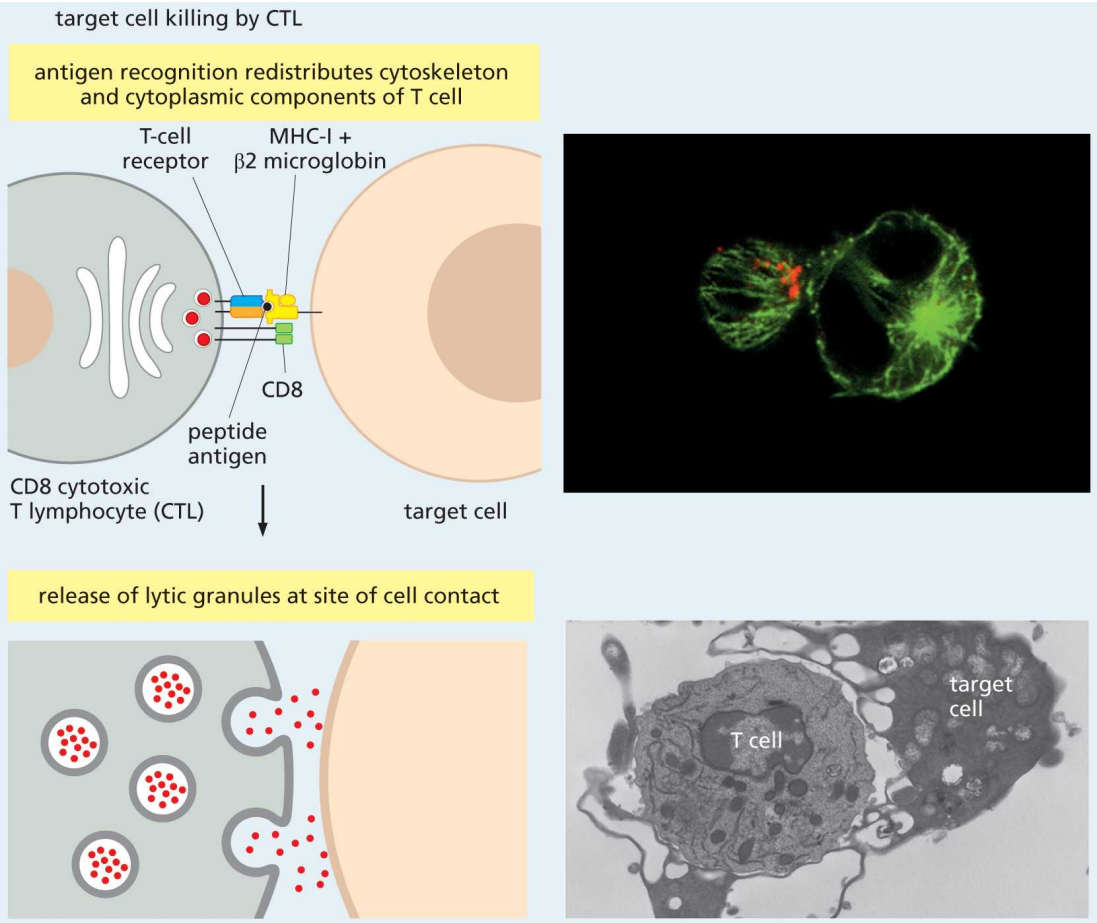
defining effector cytokines are interferon gamma and Tumor necrosis factor. The major effector functions are defense against intracellular pathogens, macrophage activation, and promotion of C T L generation and of T H 1 generation. T H 2 cells are induced by interleukin 4. The master transcription factor is GATA 3. The defining effector cytokines are interleukins 4, 5 and 13. The major effector functions are defense against helminths, activation of cellular antiparasite defenses, i.e., mast cells, eosinophils; and support of protumor alternative macrophage activation. T H 17 cells are induced by interleukins 6 and 23 and by transforming growth factor beta. The master transcription factor is R O R gamma t. The defining effector cytokines are interleukins 17 and 22. The major effector functions are defense against extracellular bacteria, and Neutrophil engagement and activation. T H F H cells are induced by interleukins 6 and 21. The master transcription factor is B c l-6. The defining effector cytokines are interleukins 4 and 21. These cells play a key role in enabling the generation of high affinity antibodies. Regulatory T cells are induced by transforming growth factor beta and interleukin 2. The master transcription factor is Fox P3. The defining effector cytokines are interleukin 10 and transforming growth factor beta. The major effector functions are to inhibit T-cell responses, NK cells, and antitumor macrophage responses.

Figure 15.9 T-cell subsets Five of the most studied of the known T-cell subsets derived from naive T cells (*above*) are shown, and the cytokine or cytokines essential for their induced differentiation are identified. As indicated, the expression of a key and distinctive transcription factor or factors is required for differentiation into each subset. Once formed, each subset secretes a characteristic profile of effector cytokines that promotes the indicated effector functions (*bottom*). (Adapted from P. Parham, The Immune System, 5th ed., New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2021.)

At first glance, it might seem that the CD8-bearing cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) are limited to attacking and eliminating cells from our tissues that are somehow aberrant and worthy of recognition and elimination, often because they express aberrant cellular proteins and give rise to peptides that provoke attack when displayed as peptide:MHC-I complexes on their surface. Cancer cells feature prominently in the list of such aberrant cells. CTLs are also an important arm of the *antiviral* immune defenses of the body because they can recognize virus-infected cells displaying virus-derived peptide:MHC complexes and attack these cells, eliminating them. In so doing, the CTLs destroy the factories in which replicating viruses generate progeny virus particles. In a larger sense, CD8 T cells are a key line of defense against a variety of intracellular pathogens that depend on their cellular hosts to multiply (**Sidebar 15.4**).

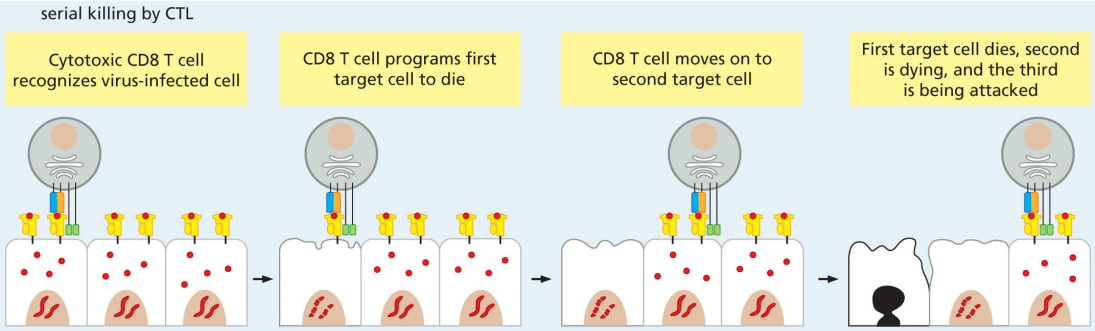
Sidebar 15.4 CTLs use well-defined mechanisms to kill their targets

A cell's display of certain peptide antigens on its surface (via its MHC class I molecules; see Figure 15.7) may subsequently attract the attention of certain cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs or T_C), which migrate out of the lymph nodes following their activation by APCs, enter into the circulation, and thereafter enter into various peripheral tissues to search for appropriate targets. When a CTL encounters a cell displaying the specific peptide:MHC complex recognized by its TCR, it will launch an attack on this cell with the goal of killing it. In fact, cytotoxic T cells deploy two distinct mechanisms to kill their targets, relying either on granule exocytosis (**Figure 15.10A**) or on death-inducing ligands (see Figures 9.31 and 9.32). Thus, CTLs can attack their intended victims through the secretion of granules containing toxic proteins, such as perforin and granzymes. Perforin, for its part, punches holes in the plasma membranes of targeted cells, allowing granzymes to enter the target's cytosol, where they can activate the intrinsic apoptotic pathway shown in Figures 9.31 and 9.32. The alternative killing mechanism involves the Fas death receptor, which is displayed on some cell types. CTLs can present FasL, the ligand of the Fas receptor, to their target cells, activating the Fas death receptors on the surfaces of the targeted cells and triggering the extrinsic apoptotic pathway within these cells (see Section 9.14).



Target cell killing by a cytotoxic T lymphocyte, with two diagrams and two micrographs. In the first diagram, antigen recognition redistributes cytoskeleton and cytoplasmic components of a T cell. The T-cell receptor on a C D8 cytotoxic T lymphocyte is shown binding to a peptide M H C complex on a target cell. Beside the diagram is a fluorescence microscopy image of a cytotoxic T lymphocyte attacking a larger target cell. The microtubular networks of both cells appear in green. The lymphocyte has bright red dots concentrated near the point of contact with the target cell. These events lead tc the second diagram, showing release by the T cell of lytic granules at the site of cell contact. A micrograph shows the effect on the target cell: it is dissolving where it is in contact with the T cell.

(A)



A diagram, in four panels, of serial killing by a cytotoxic T lymphocyte. A Cytotoxic C D8 T cell is shown recognizing a virus-infected cell. The C D8 T cell programs the first target cell to die. Then the C D8 T cell moves on to the second target cell. In the last panel, the First target cell dies, the second is dying, and the third is being attacked.

(B)

Figure 15.10 Killing of target cells by cytotoxic CD8-expressing T cells (CTLs) (A) Recognition of peptide:MHC-I complexes on the surface of target cells by the T-cell receptor together with the associated CD8 co-receptor of a CTL (*diagram*) causes a reorganization of cytoplasmic elements within the CTL (*micrograph*). As seen in the micrograph, the engagement prompts alignment of the CTL's Golgi apparatus and granules containing cytotoxins, such as granzymes, toward the target cell. The micrograph shows the microtubular networks of both cells (*green fluorescence*) and the lytic granules of the attacking CTL (*red fluorescence*). Subsequent fusion of these lytic cytotoxin-containing granules with the plasma membrane of the CTL results in the release and deposition of their cargo directly onto the membrane of the closely apposed target cell (*middle left*). The accompanying electron micrograph (*middle right*) shows the breakdown of

intracellular elements suffered by a target cell sometime after being exposed to a granule-mediated attack by a T cell. (B) Serial killing by a CTL. A cytotoxic CD8 T cell can recognize peptide:MHC-I on one cell, program it for apoptotic death by delivering lytic granules, release it, and serially repeat the process of cell recognition, programming for death, and release. The course of the apoptosis program is illustrated by the changing configuration of the cells (*bottom*, *left to right*). This capacity allows a single CTL to kill other cells in the vicinity that bear peptide:MHC-I complexes recognized by its TCR. (A, Gillian Griffiths. B, Republished with permission of Springer, Kluwer/Plenum, Mechanisms of Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity II, Second International Workshop on Mechanisms in Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity. Annapolis, Maryland, June 10-13, 1984.)

Such CTL-mediated attacks on target antigen-displaying cells (see Figure 15.10A) represent a major component of the cellular arm of the adaptive immune response and play an important role in the elimination of aberrant cells, notably virus-infected cells and cancer cells. Finally, we should note that CTL-mediated killing is efficient; a single CTL may serially engage and kill one target cell after another (Figure 15.10B).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

co-receptor
: Cell surface protein that is displayed in conjunction with a nearby receptor and modulates the function of the latter by modulating its ligand specificity or signaling powers.

helper T cell
: A subtype of T cell that is identified by its expression of the CD4 co-receptor and functions to stimulate and amplify the functions of B cells and effector T cells, most importantly the CD8+ cytotoxic T cells.

OceanofPDF.com

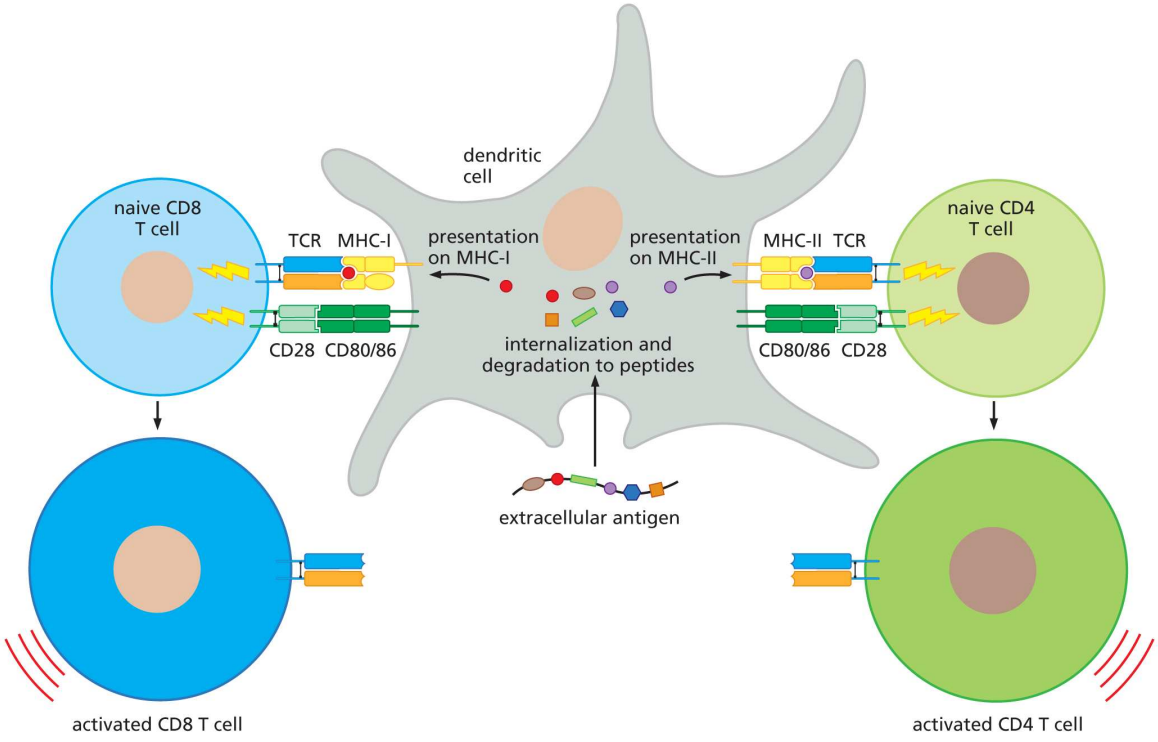
15.7 Dendritic cell activation of naive T cells is a key step in the generation of functional helper and cytotoxic T cells

As mentioned earlier, continuous sampling of the body's tissues is a signature capacity of the dendritic cell (DC) lineage. Having acquired fragments of cells, cellular debris, and pathogens in whatever tissue locations they happen to be found, these versatile cells then migrate with their cargo to nearby draining lymph nodes, that is, to the lymph nodes that are connected directly via lymph ducts to the tissue sites of antigen acquisition (see Figure 14.36).

After arriving in these nodes, the DCs encounter naive T cells that have traveled to these nodes via a totally independent route—the bloodstream; naive T cells by definition have not experienced contact with an antigen and undergone a resulting activation step.

The two routes of travel—via the lymph ducts and the bloodstream—dictate that in most instances, naive T cells that are destined to eventually launch anti-tumor responses do not initially encounter tumor antigens directly in the tumor itself. Instead, this encounter occurs in lymphoid tissues at sites physically removed from the tumor, where peptides derived from proteolysis of tumor cell debris or components are presented on the surface of DCs as peptide:MHC complexes.

In fact, DCs have the unusual ability to present peptides derived from the proteolysis of proteins on both their MHC-I and MHC-II molecules. Thus, they can present peptides from their own native internal proteins on their MHC class I molecules (like all other cells). DCs can also present peptides derived from previously scavenged (that is, foreign) proteins on their MHC-I molecules. Hence, the MHC-I molecules of DCs are employed to present peptides of both native and foreign origin. This unusual ability of DCs to concomitantly present acquired peptides on both sets of MHC molecules is called cross-presentation. This ability is central to the generation of CD4 helper T cells and cytotoxic CD8 T cells (**Figure 15.11**).



The activation of naive cells by contact with a dendritic cell that has ingested an extracellular antigen. The process involves the internalization and degradation of the antigen into peptides, the presentation of these peptides on an M H C complex, and the binding of that complex to a T cell receptor on a T cell in parallel with the binding of a C D80 slash 86 on the dendritic cell to a C D 28 on the T cell. Peptide presentation by M H C 1 activates C D 8 T cells, while Peptide presentation by M H C 2 activates C D 4 T cells

Figure 15.11 Dendritic cells employ cross-presentation to present extracellular antigens to both CD4 and CD8 T cells As described in Figure 15.8, proteins acquired through phagocytosis, endocytosis, or pinocytosis by dendritic cells (DCs) can undergo proteolysis and generate peptides, some of which are presented on the cell surface as peptide:MHC-I complexes to CD8 T cells (*blue, left*), whereas others are presented as peptide:MHC-II complexes to CD4 T cells (*green, right*). This concomitant presentation by two classes of MHC molecules is termed cross-presentation. Although the detailed cell biology of cross-presentation is complex and still unclear, the result is the capacity of DCs to present peptides derived from acquired antigens to both CD4 and CD8 T cells. As indicated in the figure, the amino acid sequences of the peptides presented following binding to MHC-I are different from those presented by MHC-II molecules.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

draining lymph node
: A lymph node that receives cells and debris via a lymph duct that drains lymphatic fluid from a specific tissue or sector of a tissue.

naive
: Referring to immune lymphocytes that have not experienced contact with cognate antigens and have not, as a consequence, undergone the biological activation associated with such contact.

cross-presentation
: The presentation by antigen-acquiring cells, notably dendritic cells, of peptides acquired from other cells and cellular debris on the MHC-I cell surface molecules of the antigen-acquiring cells; such presentation occurs concomitantly with peptide presentation by these cells via their MHC-II molecules.

OceanofPDF.com

15.8 Tumor antigens are targets of the immune response to cancer

The above discussions lead inevitably to the questions surrounding the nature of the antigens recognized by the adaptive immune system. In most human tumor types, somatic mutations of cellular genes produce cell-heritable changes in the genomes of cancer cells, some of which result in structurally aberrant cell proteins. A subset of the novel proteins generated by these mutations, such as those creating *ras* oncogenes, may provoke an immune response, in which case they may be called neoantigens, a term implying both their newness and the fact that they were not the objects of tolerance developed during early immune system development.

The presence of neoantigens can be demonstrated experimentally by taking cells that are suspected of expressing them, implanting such cells in an appropriate mouse host, removing or killing these cells, and then determining whether this initial exposure has effectively immunized the host against subsequent implantation with the same strain of tumor cells. This secondary implantation of tumor cells involves live tumorigenic cells and the process of secondary implantation is used to “challenge” the immune system of such mice to determine whether long-term immunity against these cells was actually developed following the initial implantation. (Such an experiment testing for immunity against the cells originating from a particular tumor was described in Section 15.1. We repeat this story in order to emphasize that, at the molecular level, such anti-tumor immunity, if it exists, can be understood only in terms of specific antigens that must have been displayed initially by the immunizing tumor cells as well as by the subsequently introduced, challenging cells.)

In the event that such anti-tumor immunity has developed, the immune systems of the mice initially exposed to these tumor cells will attack the secondarily implanted cells; that is, they will reject these tumor cells. As controls, other lines of cancer cells that were independently induced

previously and unlikely to express the same set of neoantigens can be used to challenge these mice. In principle, exposure to the first population of cells should not confer cross-immunity against the secondarily implanted cells, indicating that the neoantigens displayed by the first populations of cells were *specific* to these cells and not displayed by other independently arising cancer cells or, of course, by normal cells in the body. Such behavior explains the term tumor-specific transplantation antigens (TSTAs), which are implied to be expressed by cancer cells in certain tumors but not necessarily by the cells forming other tumors and not by normal cells throughout the body.

Indeed, tumor-specific antigens may be uniquely expressed by one set of cancer cells and not by any others that are examined thereafter. As should be apparent, these altered proteins are likely capable of inducing certain types of adaptive immune responses.

Note that the proteins resulting from either viral infection or somatic mutation of the cellular genome (as described above) will differ from those encoded by the unmutated genome of the host's cells and therefore fall in the class of tumor-specific transplantation antigens (TSTAs). Because certain TSTAs can be created by randomly occurring somatic mutations, each tumor may display its own TSTA or set of TSTAs; that is, each TSTA will represent a unique immunological marker of the cells in that particular tumor.

Importantly, because TSTAs are not present during the early development of the immune system when immunological tolerance develops, they may well be recognized as foreign entities by the adaptive immune system, and the cancer cells bearing these TSTAs may become objects of immune attack and elimination.

As we have learned (for example, in Chapter 11), most somatically mutated genes formed during the course of tumor progression are unlikely to drive this progression forward, simply because they affect genes whose alteration does not confer advantageous phenotypes on the cells that have acquired such mutant alleles. Instead, as described in Section 11.6, these mutations are categorized as creating mutant *passenger* alleles, in contrast to mutations that affect genes whose alteration is indeed advantageous for cancer cell survival and proliferation and are, in that sense, considered to affect *driver* genes. Thus, the passenger alleles are only "going along for the ride," being present

in cells that happen to have acquired advantageous driver mutations and are undergoing clonal expansion during the course of multi-step tumor pathogenesis.

Both mutant driver and mutant passenger genes may encode neoantigens (**Sidebar 15.5**). Therefore, the fact that an allele is either a driver or a passenger is unrelated to its ability to encode a neoantigen. One example of a mutation that is functionally important for tumor growth and, at the same time, able to create a neoantigen, is the mutation of the gene encoding the normal K-Ras protein into a driver oncogene that encodes a K-Ras oncoprotein (see Section 4.3). Once created, the structurally novel oncoproteins have the potential to generate peptides that may evoke T-cell responses when presented on appropriate MHC molecules.

Sidebar 15.5 Neoantigens encoded by passenger genes have implications for the success of anti-tumor therapies

Most neoantigens expressed by tumor cells are encoded by mutant passenger alleles rather than by driver alleles and are, by definition, not critical to continued cancer cell proliferation and survival. The distinction between the two classes of neoantigens may be functionally critical for the outgrowth of a tumor, in particular its responses to anti-tumor immunotherapy, because cancer cells may attempt to evade immune attack by down-regulating expression of certain neoantigens.

This evasive maneuver raises the question of whether or not cancer cells will pay a price for down-regulating the expression of a particular neoantigen. If the neoantigen is encoded by a mutant driver gene allele, a cancer cell cannot afford to lose this antigenic protein, as its loss is likely to compromise further survival and proliferation of this cell. The contrasting situation pertains to neoantigens encoded by passenger genes: in this instance, a cancer cell may freely shut down expression of the neoantigens without paying a price in terms of its selective fitness. This may, in turn, allow this cell and its progeny to evade further immune attack launched by lymphocytes that previously recognized this neoantigen and, provoked by its display, undertook to eliminate this cell.

As we will learn later, such immunoevasive maneuvers are critically important in determining whether the immune system can sense and eliminate spontaneously arising tumors, thereby preventing their clinical appearance in certain tissues. Similarly, successes of anti-tumor immunotherapy may depend on whether or not targeted tumor cells can down-regulate expression of certain neoantigens, doing so in order to escape therapy-driven killing.

Yet another example derives from the numerous types of chromosomal translocations that lead to fusion proteins (see Section 4.4). Such translocations are frequently found in hematopoietic malignancies, such as chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). This well-studied translocation, which is created by the fusion of one portion of the *Bcr* gene with a portion of the *Abl* proto-oncogene, generates a novel peptide sequence at the site where the two coding sequences are joined. In fact, the highly immunogenic peptides generated from this novel peptide segment can indeed provoke T-cell responses.

In addition to TSTAs, there are some normal cellular antigens that are associated with certain tumors that may actually attract the attention of the immune system. By implication, expression of these antigens is not limited uniquely to an individual spontaneously arising tumor, and these antigens are therefore not tumor-specific. These antigens are designated as tumor-associated transplantation antigens (TATAs) or more simply called tumor-associated antigens (TAAs), with the implication that such antigens may also be expressed by other cells in the body rather than being unique, novel antigens created during the formation of a single tumor (**Table 15.2**).

Table 15.2 Examples of tumor antigens

Antigen type	**Example**	**Nature of antigen**	**Occurs in indicated cancers**
Oncogenic virus-encoded nonvirion protein	HPV E6 and E7 proteins	Nonstructural oncogenic proteins	Cervical carcinoma

Antigen type	Example	Nature of antigen	Occurs in indicated cancers
Product of chromosomal translocation; gene rearrangements, insertions, or deletions	Bcr-Abl protein	Novel oligopeptide at site of fusion of reading frames of two otherwise unlinked genes	Chronic myelogenous leukemia
Neoantigens	Changes in primary structure resulting from point mutations in *Ras* Changes in primary structure of P53 resulting from any of many dozens of alternative point mutations in *p53* Point mutations that alter	Oncogene generated by mutation of proto-oncogene counterpart Alternative amino acid substitutions at sites within or outside of DNA-binding domain Novel protein sequences conferring potential T-cell-recognized epitopes	Many types of cancerMany types of cancer Many types of tumors with distinctive landscapes of mutationally generated neoepitopes

Antigen type	Example	Nature of antigen	Occurs in indicated cancers
	primary structures of diverse cellular proteins		
Differentiation antigens	Tyrosinase PSMA	Enzyme in melanin synthesis pathway Cell surface protein with carboxypeptidase activity expressed by cells of prostatic epithelium	MelanomaProstate cancer
Cancer testis antigens	MAGE-1MAGE-3 NY-ESO	Protein normally expressed in testes; aberrantly expressed in several types of cancer Protein normally expressed in testes; aberrantly expressed in several types of cancer	Melanoma, NSCLC, esophageal carcinoma

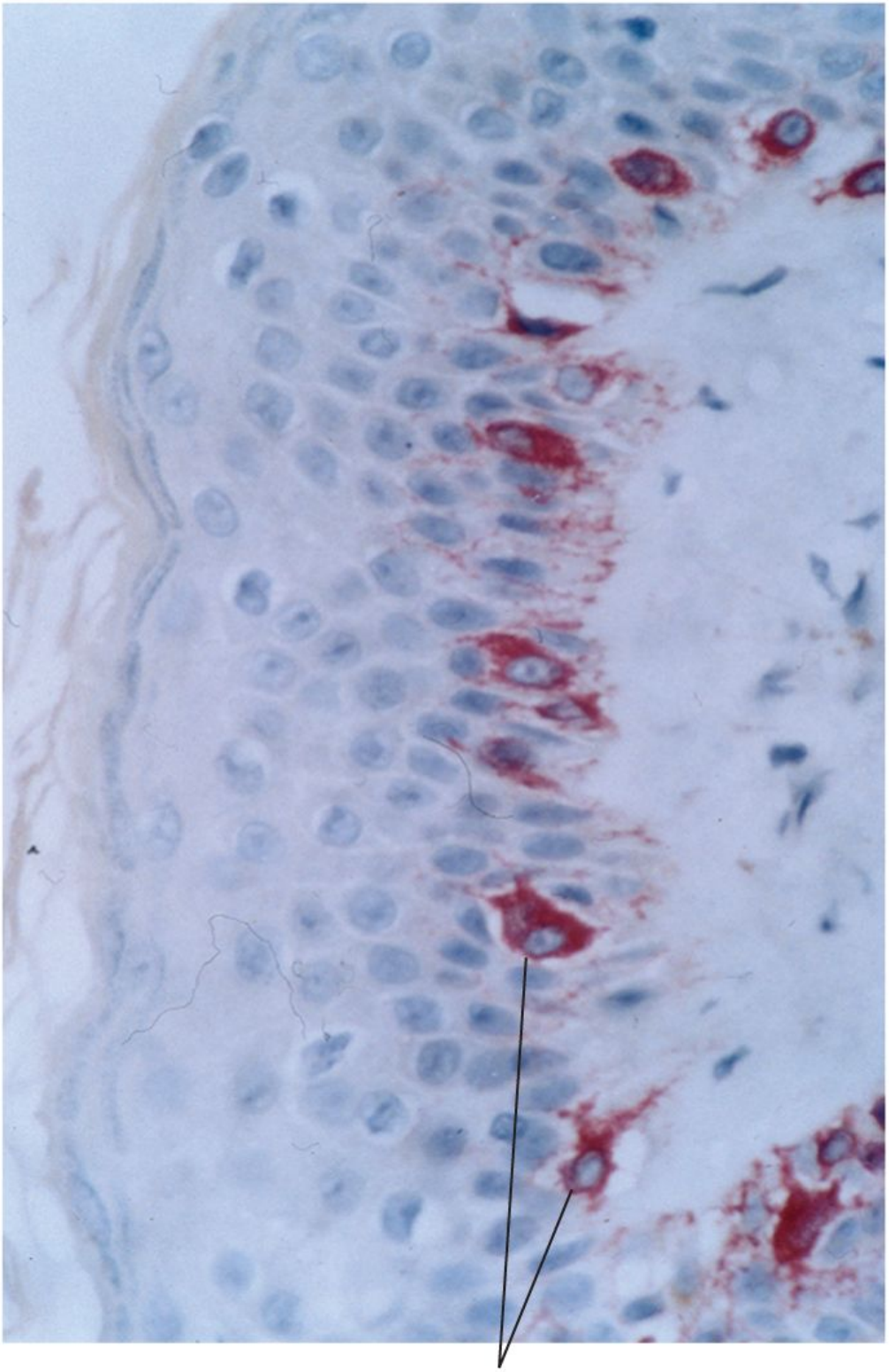
Antigen type	Example	Nature of antigen	Occurs in indicated cancers
Overexpressed antigens	HER-2 MUC-1WT1	Receptor tyrosine kinase expressed on epithelial cell surface Glycosylated protein found on epithelial surfaces Transcription factor	Breast cancer, ovarian cancer Breast cancerPancreatic cancerLeukemia
Abnormal post-transcriptional modification	NA17	Abnormal protein resulting from retention of introns during splicing of pre-mRNA	Leukemia

Adapted from K. Murphy, C. Weaver and L. Berg (eds.), Janeway's Immunobiology 10th ed. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 2022.

The ability of an immune system to focus on a TATA will depend, by necessity, on whether tolerance has been developed by the immune system of the tumor-bearing host. For example, such tolerance may not have been developed, as discussed earlier, simply because the particular normal antigen was expressed in a tissue, such as the testis, that is shielded from intensive immunosurveillance and therefore did not participate in the generation of immune tolerance early in the development of the immune system. Other TATAs may derive from proteins that are normally expressed only transiently during early embryonic development, long before the functional immune

system and associated tolerance have been established. For example, MAGE, a protein expressed in normal cells of the testes, is expressed in certain melanomas and will behave as a TATA (see Table 15.2; **Figure 15.12**). Because certain TATAs are plausibly expressed by a variety of normal cells in the tissues of a tumor-bearing host, an immunotherapy directed against them may often result in unacceptably high levels of therapy-associated toxicities.

tyrosinase antigen

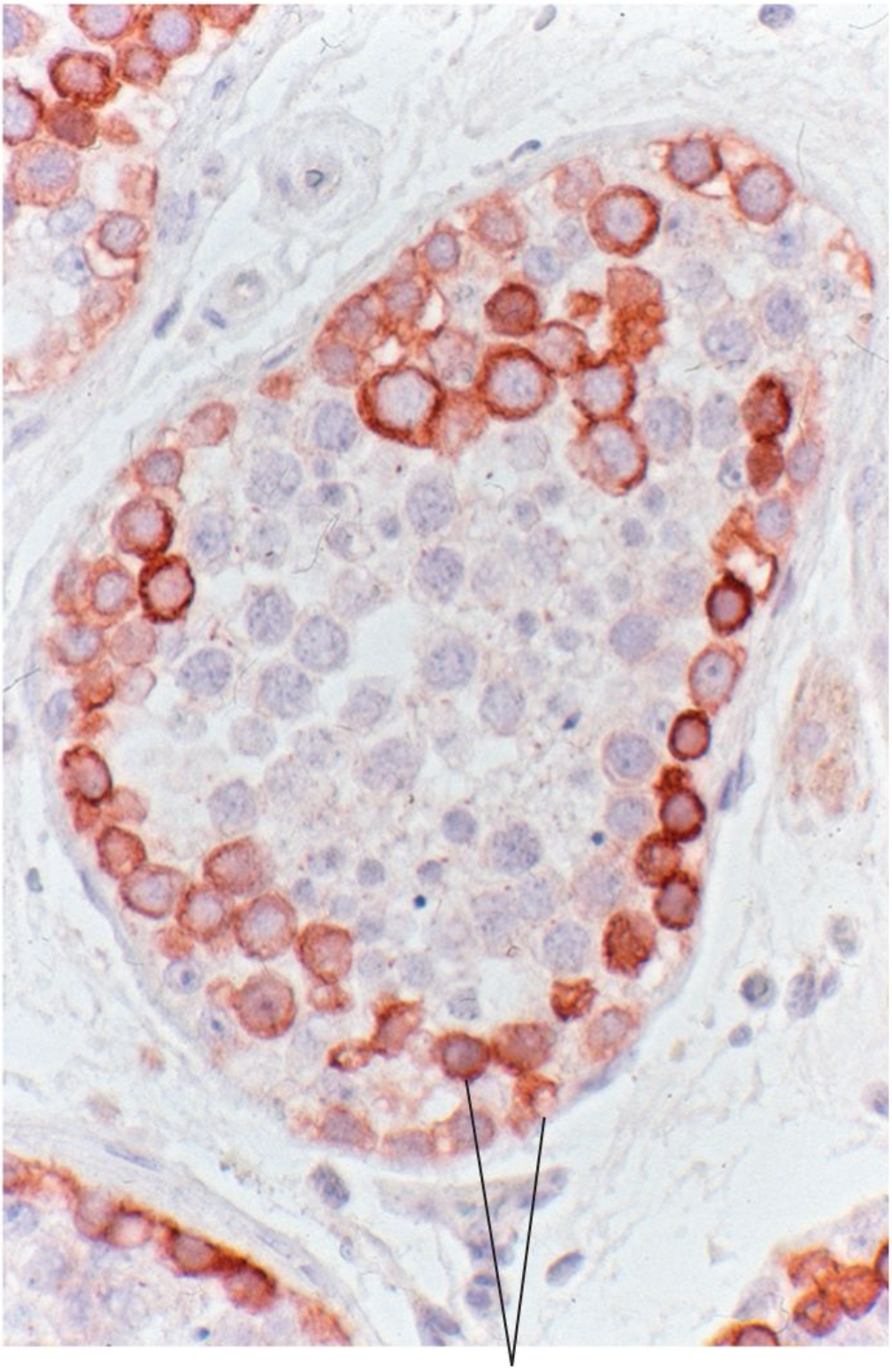


skin melanocytes

The image, titled tyrosinase antigen, is a histology stain image of skin tissue in which most cells appear pale blue with darker blue nuclei, but a few isolated cells appear in red. These are labeled as melanocytes.

(A)

MAGE-1 antigen



testes

spermatagonia

The image, titled M A G E-1 antigen, is a histology stain image of testes tissue in which a cluster of round, pink cells is surrounded by lighter tissue. Many of the cells near the perimeter of the cluster have darker cell walls than those close to the center. These darker cells are labeled as spermatogonia.

(B)

Figure 15.12 Normal proteins displayed as tumor-associated melanoma antigens (A) A monoclonal antibody has been used here to detect the enzyme tyrosinase, which is involved in pigment production in melanocytes and melanomas. Though present in melanocytes (*dark red*) this enzyme is not detectable in other normal tissues. Its expression by melanoma cells can cause them to become immunogenic and the targets of killing by CTLs. (B) The spermatogonia in the testes have been stained here with a monoclonal antibody against the MAGE-1 antigen (*red*); normally this antigen is only seen in one additional site—the placenta. Its expression has been detected in a variety of human tumor types and has been studied in detail in melanomas because it is often immunogenic when expressed by these tumors. (A, from Y.T. Chen et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:5915-5919, 1996. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. B, from J.C. Cheville and P.C. Roche, *Mod. Pathol.* 12:974–978, 1999. With permission from Nature.)

Some of the TATAs may be expressed as domains of cell surface proteins. For instance, normal B cells display a protein called CD20 that is also present as a TATA in many B-cell lymphomas that derive from the normal B-cell compartment of immune cells. In theory, TATAs like CD20 could be used as targets to provoke and guide attacks by the immune system on lymphoma cells that express CD20. However, such attacks rarely happen spontaneously because normal cell proteins like CD20 are shielded by immune tolerance.

We should note that the spontaneous targeting of various normal self-antigens by a host immune system (which could lead to autoimmune conditions) is the rare exception rather than the dependable rule, as might be predicted from the usually efficient actions of the tolerance-inducing mechanisms operating in the immune system. However, in the next chapter we will discuss the

deployment of technologies that are indeed capable of enlisting a variety of self-antigens as useful targets for innovative anti-cancer immunotherapies. Table 15.2 lists a variety of TATAs that have been identified in human tumors.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

neoantigen
: An antigen that is newly formed by tumor cells, usually during the course of tumor development, and is created by somatic mutations affecting the reading frames of cellular mRNAs.

tumor-specific transplantation antigen
: An antigen that can, through transplantation analyses, be associated with one particular tumor cell population but not with other similar tumor cell populations. *See also* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor-associated transplantation antigen
: An antigen encoded by a normal cellular allele that is expressed by a certain class of tumors and may have, for various reasons, not elicited immune tolerance. *See also* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor-associated antigen
: An antigen that is associated with the cells of a tumor and may also be displayed by normal cells or tissues throughout the body; *also termed* **tumor-associated transplantation antigen**. *Compare* **tumor-specific antigen**.

OceanofPDF.com

15.9 Natural killer cells contribute to anti-cancer immunity

Cytotoxic T cells are the most formidable weapons that the immune system deploys in the struggle to eliminate cancer cells. Confronted by the strong selective pressure applied by CTLs, it is not surprising that some cancer cells might contrive to shut down display of their class I MHC molecules, thereby depriving CTLs of the peptide:MHC complexes needed by the CTLs to recognize (via their TCRs) these cancer cells and target them for killing. Such down-regulation, like the down-regulation of TATAs described above, may allow cancer cells to elude CTL-mediated death.

Natural killer cells (NK cells) can block this potential avenue of escape from killing. These lymphocytes operate as key components of the innate immune system that are programmed to kill cells throughout the body that fail to display normal levels of MHC-I molecules (independent of the presence or absence of tumor antigens). During the evolution of the immune system, the development of NK cells was clearly selected in order to anticipate immune-evasive maneuvers undertaken by cells infected with viruses and certain other intracellular pathogens.

NK cells kill target cells by releasing cytotoxic granules similar to those released by CTLs. In addition to mounting cytotoxic granule–mediated attack, NK cells also produce interferon γ (IFN-γ), a key inflammatory cytokine that favors cell-mediated immunity by stimulating the up-regulation by potential target cells of class I MHC expression, thereby making the targeted cells more vulnerable to CTL attack.

In fact, potential target cells can display other outward-facing indicators that they are, in one way or another, aberrant and thus appropriate targets for elimination by components of the innate immune system. Specifically, the display of stress-induced ligands on the cell surface of cancer cells can be detected by an NK-cell receptor known as NKG2D. These ligands appear to be induced by a variety of cellular stressors, including genetic damage caused by radiation or chemical agents, viral infections, and neoplastic transformation. The NK cell surface receptor NKG2D interacts with these stress-induced ligands on potential target cells, and the resulting interaction, like the one triggered by inadequate levels of MHC-I molecules, results in strong activation of an NK cell's cytotoxic response.

In addition to the surveillance provided by the NKG2D receptor, an additional family of receptors, generically termed KIR (*K*iller *I*mmunoglobulin-like *R*eceptors), also

monitors the levels of certain MHC-I molecules; many of these KIRs *inhibit* NK function if the levels of the MHC-I molecules are relatively normal and, conversely, *allow* NK-mediated killing if MHC-I levels slip below a certain threshold.

Finally, an important alternative avenue of NK cell killing involves the cooperative interaction of components of the innate and adaptive immunity systems. This mode of killing depends on the binding of antibody molecules directly to cell surface molecules displayed by potential target cells, such as cancer cells. The cell surface display of these molecules (which are tethered directly to the plasma membrane) reflects their normal localization and does not in any way involve MHC-I molecules as agents of antigen presentation.

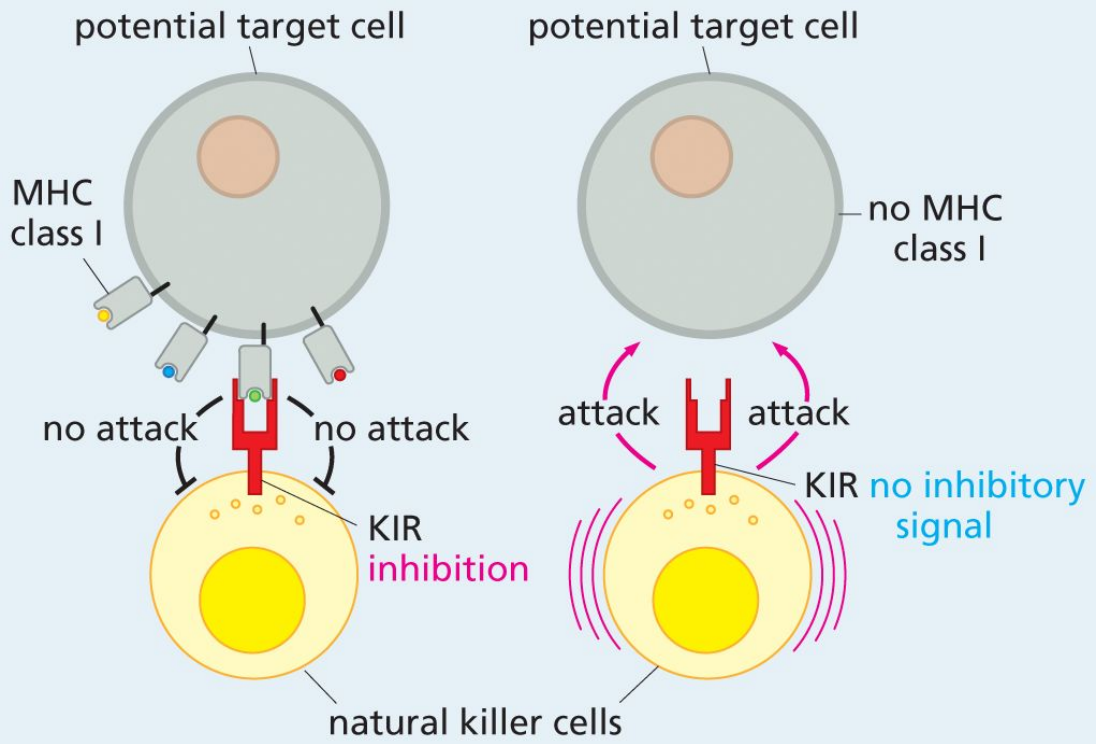
NK cells, as agents of innate immunity, bear Fc receptors—a class of receptors that recognize and bind the constant (Fc) region of common antibody molecules. A chance encounter between NK cells and a cell whose surface is studded, even partially, by antigen-bound antibody molecules may, on its own, trigger NK cell–mediated killing of the antibody-coated cell. This process is known as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC; **Sidebar 15.6**). Many of the activities of NK cells are summarized in **Figure 15.13**.

Sidebar 15.6 Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) is a major pathway of antibody-mediated killing

ADCC has attracted great interest over the past two decades, largely because of the development of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) that bind antigens displayed on the surface of various types of tumor cells. This binding, in turn, can trigger the killing of the antibody-bound cells, often through the actions of NK cells. The killing process reflects a mechanism of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity that is normally operative in the body and depends on naturally arising antibody molecules that bind cell surface proteins expressed by various cells. As an example, many RNA virus particles are cloaked in a lipid bilayer from which virus-encoded glycoprotein spikes protrude. These spikes, which engender an antibody response in infected individuals, are also expressed on the surface of virus-infected cells. As a consequence, such cells may attract antiviral antibody binding and, in turn, become victims of ADCC. Such an ADCC response also may be triggered by mAbs that are introduced into the body as part of an anticancer immunotherapy.

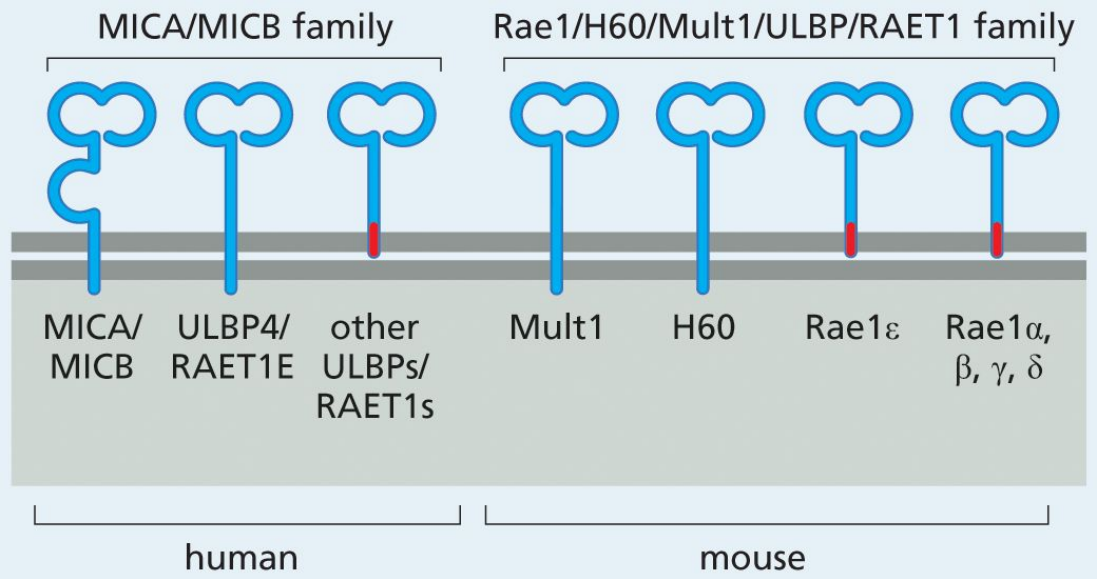
ADCC, as it operates naturally within the body, represents a convergence of the adaptive immune system, which forms antigen-binding antibodies, and the innate immune system, represented by NK cells that recognize antibody-coated cells. In more detail, many NK cells express on their surface the Fcγ receptors (FcRγ) that bind the constant (C) regions of antibody molecules that are already bound via their V regions

to cell surface antigens. One direct consequence is the activation of a cytotoxic attack by the NK cells on the antibody-coated cells, which results in the death of the latter. The killing mechanisms depend, as cited earlier, on the exocytosis by NK cells of cytotoxic granules, including those carrying granzymes that trigger the rapid death of the antibody-bound cell.



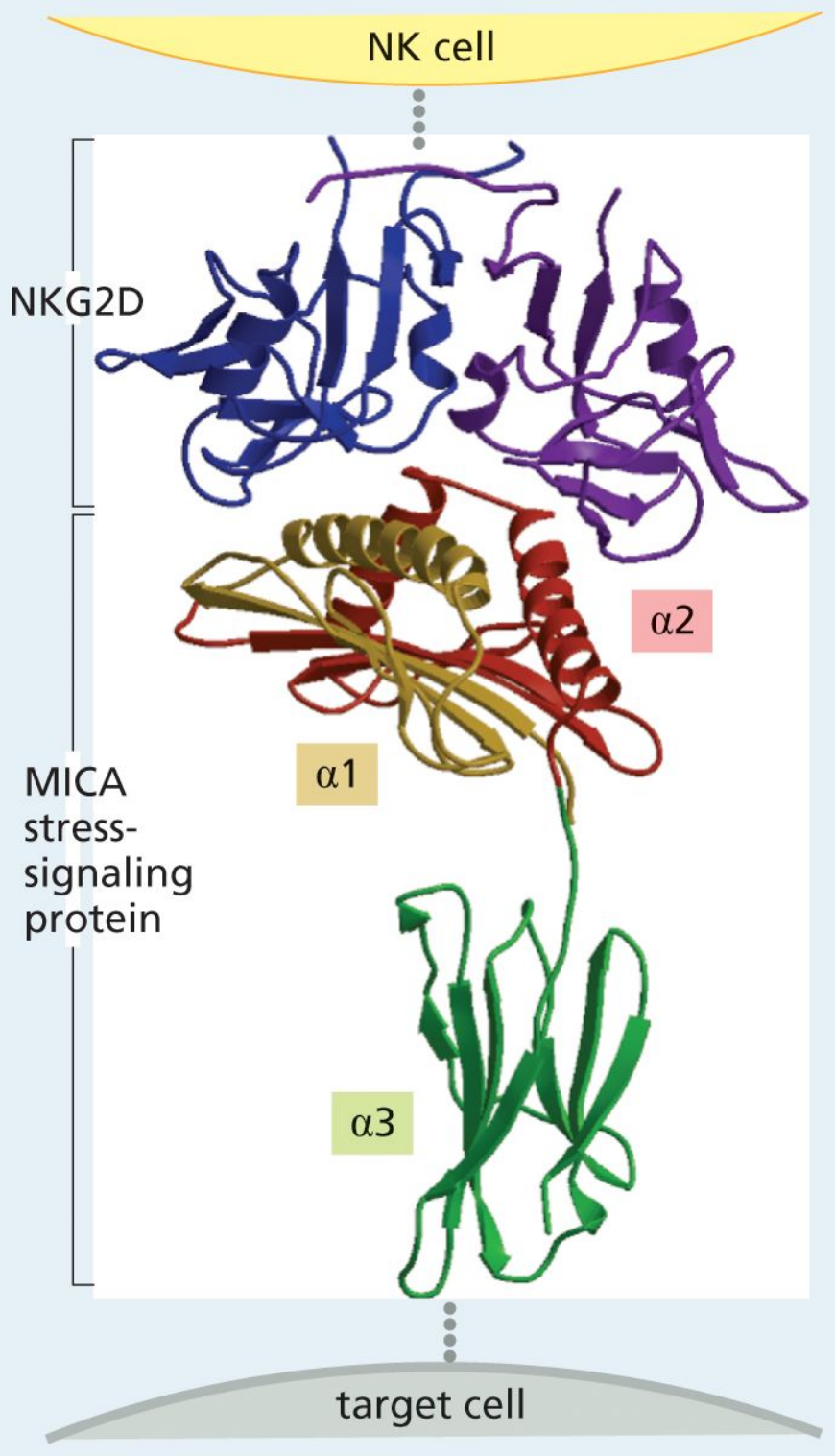
Two natural killer cells, each paired with a potential target cell. On the left, the target cell is studded with M H C class 1 molecules. One of them binds to a K I R on the killer cell, triggering an inhibitory signal that prevents the killer cell from attacking. The target cell on the right, not displaying any M H C class 1 molecules, is attacked because there is no inhibitory signal.

(A)



Seven surface alarm proteins, displayed side by side. The first three belong to the M I C A slash M I C B family and are found in human tissue. The last four belong to the Rae 1 slash H 60 slash Mult 1 slash U L B P slash R A E T 1 family and are found in mouse tissue.

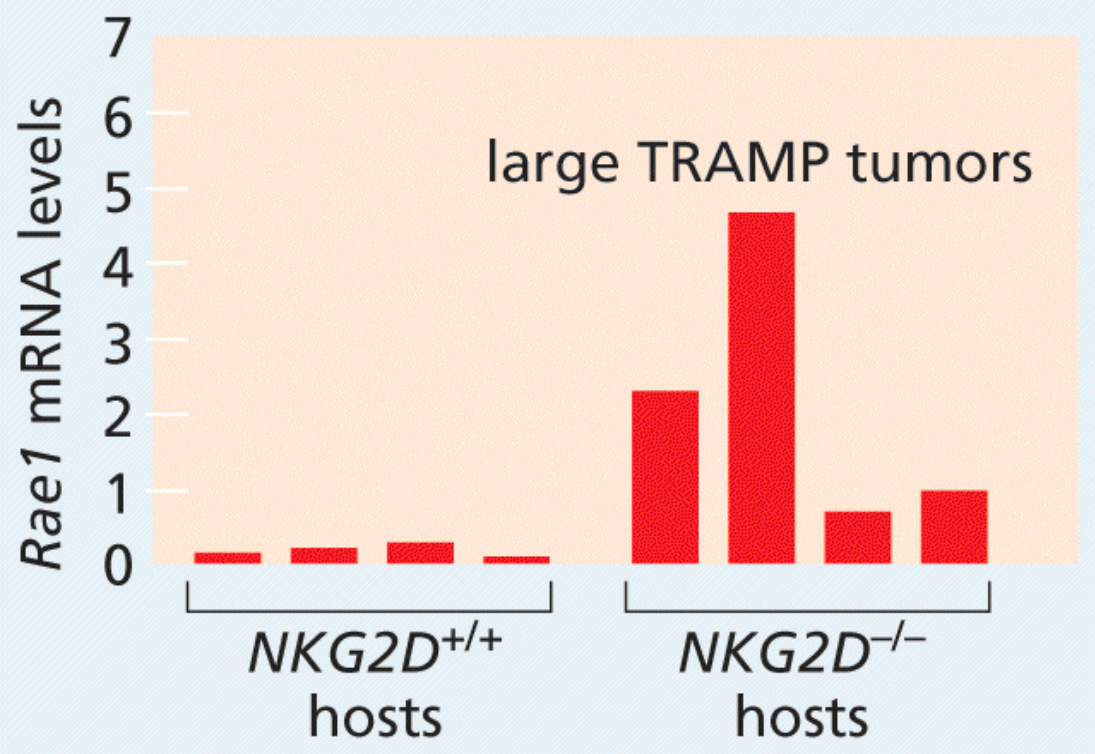
(B)



A ribbon diagram of a complex formed by N K G 2 D and an M I C A stress signaling protein that consists of alpha 1, alpha 2, and alpha 3 units, where the alpha 1 and alpha 2 units bind to the N K G 2 D. The complex is part of a

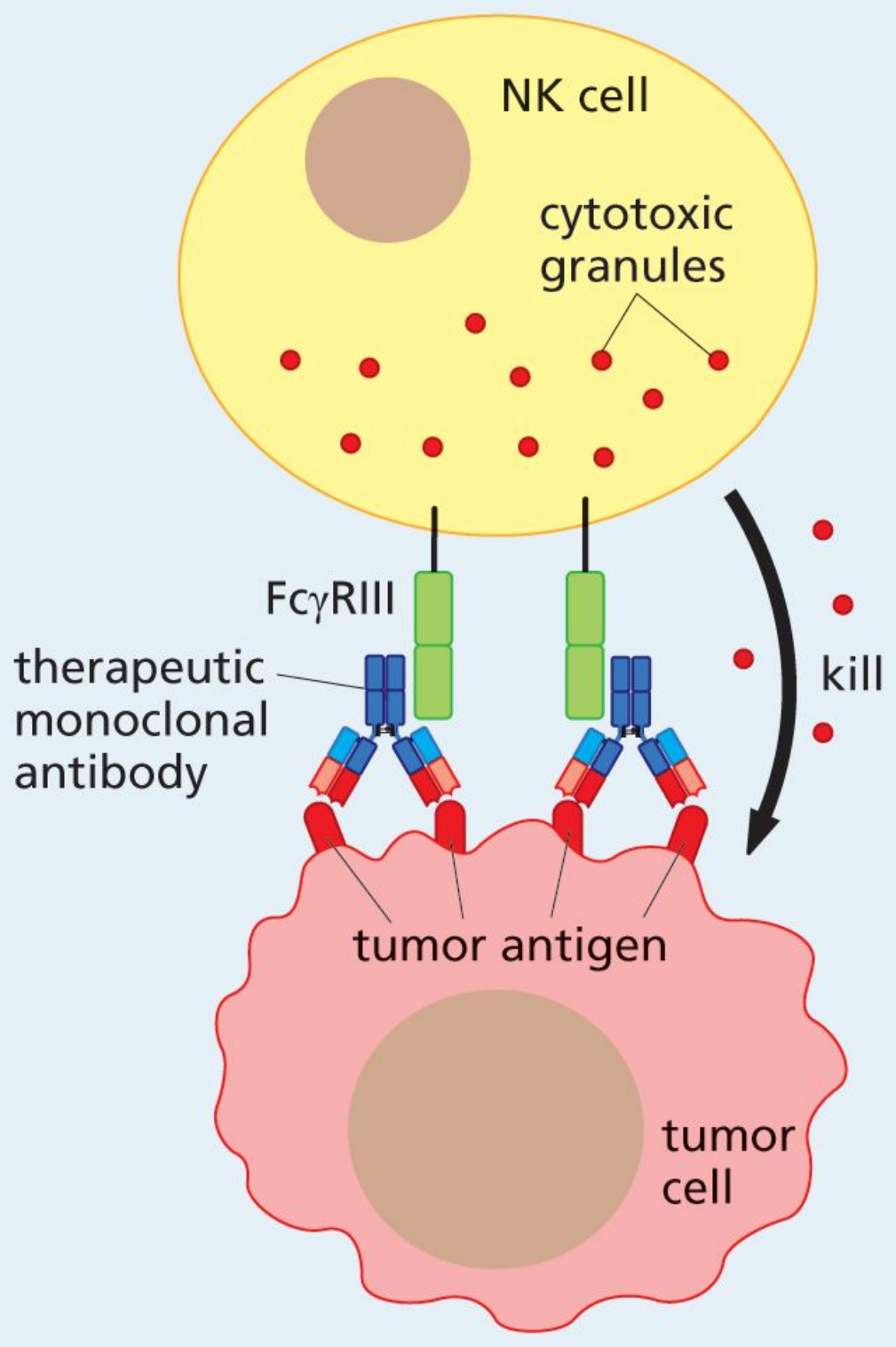
bridge between a natural killer cell and a target cell. The N K G 2 D end of the complex is oriented toward the killer cell.

(C)



A bar graph showing R a e 1 m R N A levels in eight hosts. The first four hosts are homozygous N K G 2 D positive. R a e 1 m R N A levels are uniformly low. The last four hosts are homozygous N K G 2 D negative. The R a e 1 m R N A levels are higher, and considerably so in two of the four cases. These cases present large TRAMP tumors.

(D)



A tumor cell and a natural killer cell. Therapeutic monoclonal antibodies attach with their arms to antigens displayed by the tumor and with their bases to F c gamma R 3 receptors on the killer cell. This linkage of the two cells

triggers a release of cytotoxic granules from inside the killer cell; these attack the tumor cell and kill it.
(E)

Figure 15.13 Control of killing by natural killer cells is mediated by inhibitory and activating signals (A) Natural killer (NK) cells display *inhibitory* receptors that can recognize MHC class I molecules being displayed on the surface of cells. When MHC-I molecules are present at levels above a threshold, these inhibitory receptors (*red*) provide negative signals that discourage NK-mediated cell killing. One class of inhibitory receptors are those of the KIR (*K*iller *I*mmunoglobulin-like *R*eceptor) family, which recognize some MHC-I molecules but not others. Another type is CD94–NKG2A, a heterodimer (*not shown*). In both cases, recognition by NK cells of MHC-I molecules displayed by a nearby potential target cell can dampen or block NK-mediated attack (*left*); this recognition of MHC-I molecules can be achieved by one or the other and sometimes both types of these inhibitory receptor types displayed by the NK cell. In the absence of such recognition and functional silencing by either of these inhibitory receptors, NK-mediated attack is unimpeded (*right*). (B) In contrast to the actions of these inhibitory receptors, other NK-associated receptors are involved in *activation* of NK cells by proteins; as in (A), this type of response is triggered by cell surface proteins displayed by potential target cells. Thus, when many types of cells are suffering certain types of cell-physiological stress, they may display alarm proteins on their surface. Notable causes of such stresses include genetic damage, viral infection, and neoplastic transformation. Shown here is a series of frequently displayed human and mouse cell surface alarm proteins (*blue*). (C) Seen here are ribbon diagrams of the molecular structures of the components of the complex formed between NKG2D, an NK-associated homodimeric receptor (*light purple, dark purple, above*) and its cognate ligand, the MICA alarm protein displayed by a human cell, such as a cancer cell (α*1brown,* α*2magenta and* α*3green, below*), under stress. (The domains that anchor these various proteins to the surfaces of the NK and the target cell are not shown.) (D) Tumor cells arising in the TRAMP transgenic mouse model of prostate adenocarcinoma development express on their surface the Rae1 alarm ligand (see panel B), which serves as an activating ligand for the NKG2D receptor displayed by NK cells. The tumor cells formed in TRAMP host mice that carry wild-type versions of the NKG2D-encoding gene expressed low levels of *Rae1* mRNA. In contrast, in TRAMP host mice in which the *Klrk1* gene encoding NKG2D had been knocked out, the tumor cells expressed far higher levels of the *Rae1* transcript. This suggests that TRAMP tumor cells can down-regulate their Rae1 expression in order to avoid attack and elimination by the NK cells that display NKG2D. (E) The binding of FcγRIII receptors displayed by NK cells to antibodies previously bound to antigens displayed on the surfaces of potential

target cells (represented here by a tumor cell), causes the directed release of cytotoxic granules from the NK cell into the target cell, resulting in the death of the latter; this process is termed antibody-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC). (B, from D. Raulet, *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 3:781–790, 2003. C, from P. Li et al., *Nat. Immunol.* 2:443–451, 2001. Both with permission from Nature. D, from N. Guerra et al., *Immunity* 28:571–580, 2008. With permission from Elsevier. E, adapted from P. Parham, The Immune System, 5th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2021, p. 522.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

natural killer cells
: A type of lymphocyte whose ability to attack target cells is not dependent on any form of adaptive immunity. *See also* **innate immune response**.

stress-induced ligand
: A cell surface protein that signals that the cell displaying this protein is suffering from some type of cell physiological stress.

antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity
: A form of attack by cytotoxic immune cells, such as NK cells, that depends on the presence of antibody molecules bound to antigens displayed on the surface of the targeted cells.

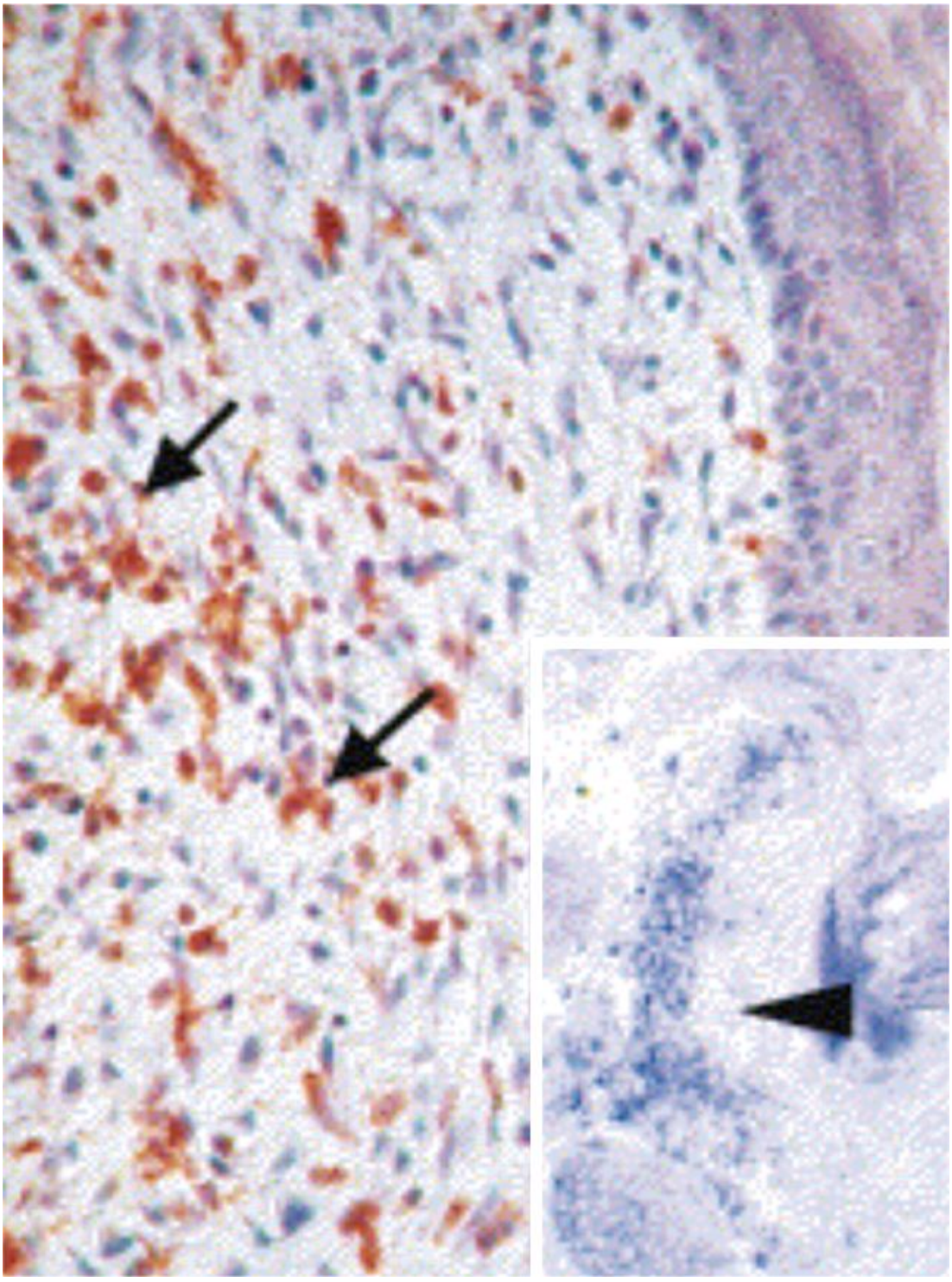
OceanofPDF.com

15.10 Macrophages make multiple contributions to tumor development

Macrophages represent a category of versatile phagocytic cells that are also involved in tissue repair and often secrete cytokines capable of directing and modifying the behavior of a variety of other cell types. They are essential cellular elements of innate immunity and exist in a range of specialized, functionally activated states that span a spectrum of alternative phenotypes. These phenotypes are often described, simplistically, as ranging from the M1 state at one pole of a spectrum of phenotypes to M2 at the other.

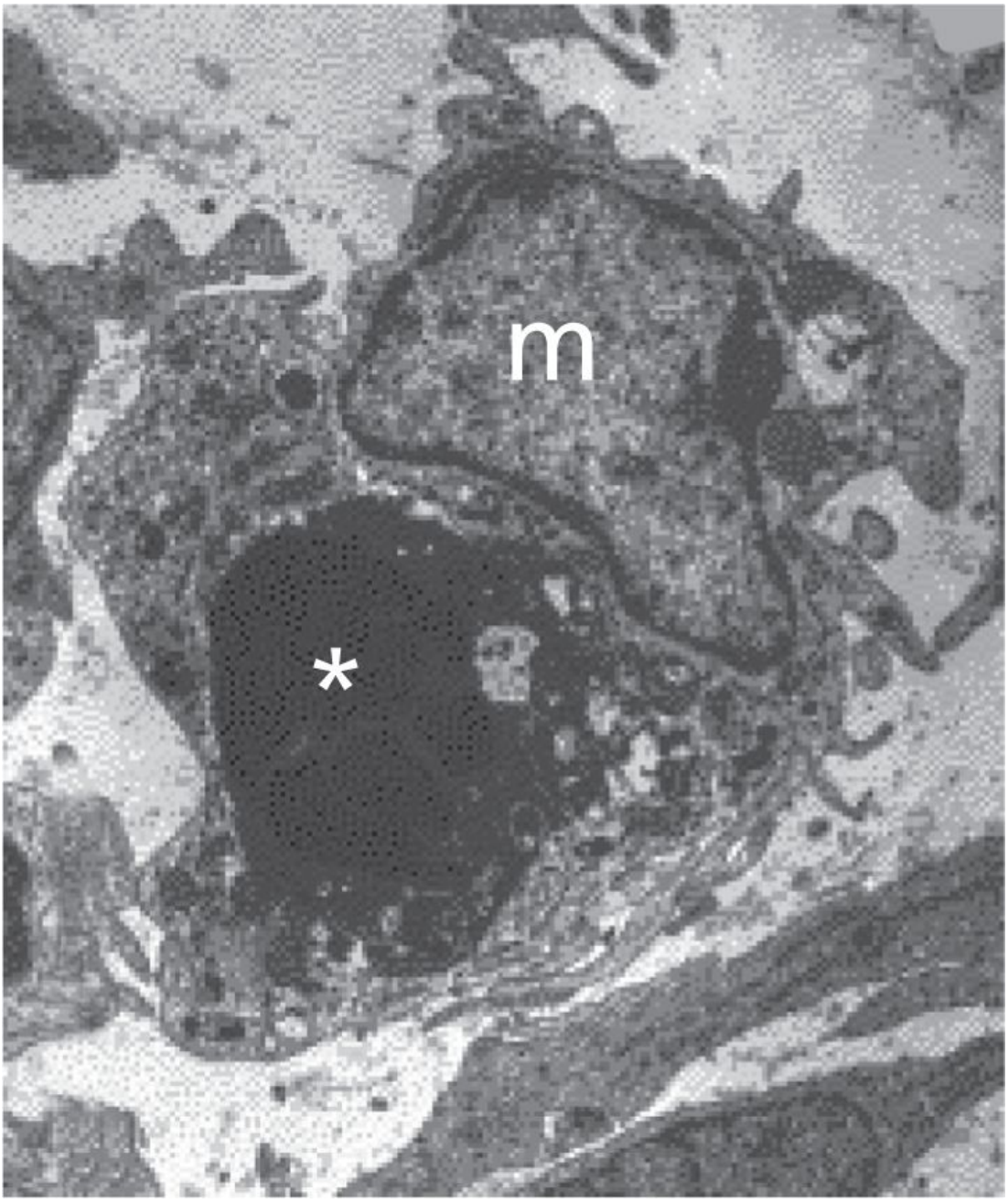
To focus on the salient traits of the macrophages: cells in the M1 state are cytotoxic and highly phagocytic, and they can produce IL-12, a cytokine that supports the generation of one subset of helper T cells termed T_H1. In the context of cancer pathogenesis, these attributes favor tumor control and elimination. In contrast, macrophages in the M2 state (sometimes referred to as alternatively activated macrophages) produce IL-10 and TGF-β, both of which are immunosuppressive cytokines and, accordingly, protect cancer cells from immune attack, thereby favoring tumor persistence and progression. The M2 macrophages also favor tissue repair and regeneration, support vascularization by secretion of VEGF (see Section 13.5), and secrete proteases that contribute to tissue remodeling.

Actually, most macrophages do not reside at the extreme poles of the M1/M2 spectrum of phenotypes. Instead, depending on conditions, many adopt phenotypes that are aligned more toward one or the other of these states and thus enter mixed phenotypic states located at various intermediate positions along this spectrum. Accordingly, the extent to which macrophages contribute to tumor control and elimination or, alternatively, to tumor maintenance and progression, depends on where they reside along this continuum of phenotypes. Some of the many roles played by macrophages in normal and tumor physiology are illustrated in **Figure 15.14**.



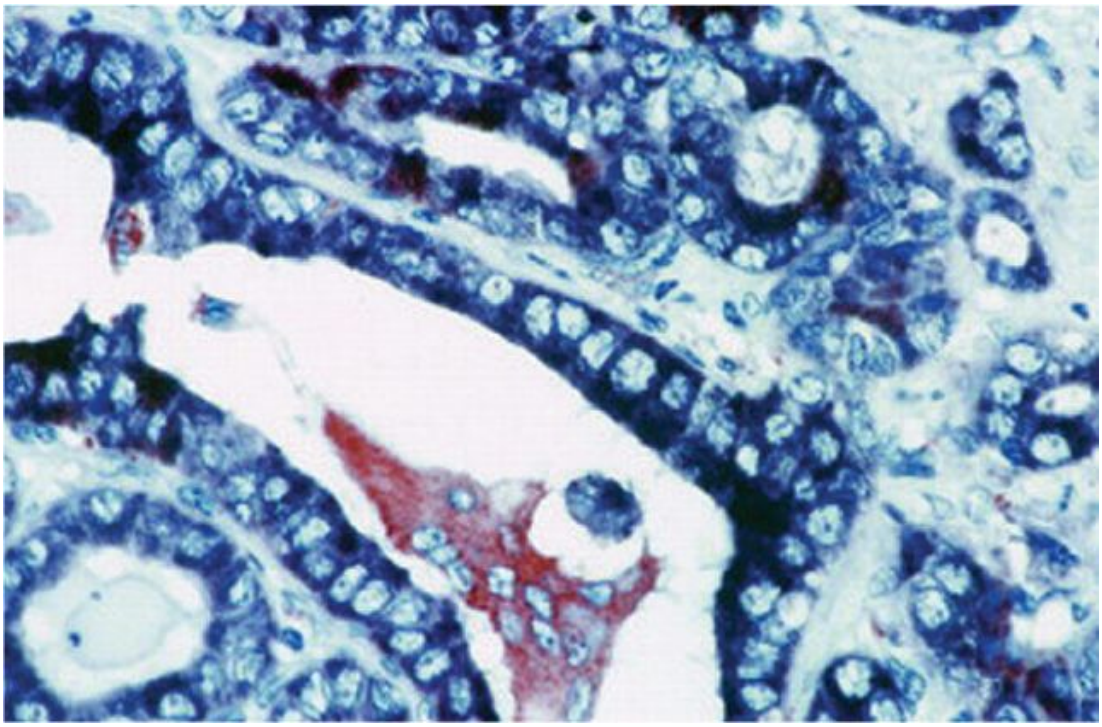
A histology stain image of bluish skin tissue containing many brown macrophages. An inset shows a curving band of dark blue spots surrounded by light blue tissue.

(A)



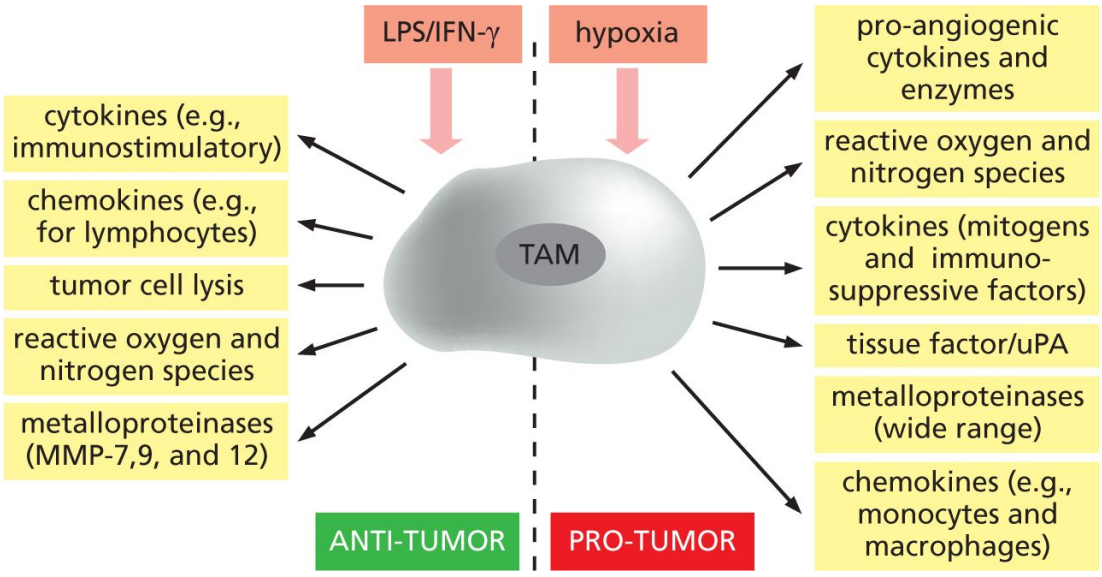
A black and white image of a cell labeled m that engulfs a large, dark object labeled with an asterisk.

(B)



A histology stain image. The tissue is mostly dark blue, but in the lower middle, where there is white space, a pinkish cell is in the process of engulfing a smaller dark blue one.

(C)



A graphic lists two sets of functions that a tumor-associated macrophage is capable of. Exposure to lipopolysaccharide or interferon gamma induces anti-tumor functions such as cytokines (e.g., immunostimulatory); chemokines

(e.g., for lymphocytes); tumor cell lysis; reactive oxygen and nitrogen species; and metalloproteinases (MMP-7,9, and 12). Hypoxia, on the other hand, induces pro-tumor functions such as pro-angiogenic cytokines and enzymes; reactive oxygen and nitrogen species; cytokines (mitogens and immunosuppressive factors); tissue factor slash u P A; metalloproteinases (wide range); and chemokines (e.g., monocytes and macrophages).
(D)

Figure 15.14 Multiple roles of macrophages Macrophages play critical roles in promoting wound healing and tumor progression. They also act in an opposing fashion as agents of the immune system to present tumor antigens and to consume tumor cells. These different functions are carried out by distinct subtypes of macrophages. (A) In this wound-healing site in the skin of a mouse, macrophages (*brown*) are detected in abundance (*arrows*) through use of immunochemical procedures that recognize the F4/80 macrophage-specific antigen and the CSF-1R receptor marker (*arrowhead, inset*). (B) Transmission electron microscopy reveals a macrophage (m) that is engorged with the phagocytosed corpses of apoptotic cells (*asterisk, dark body*) in the middle of a wound-healing site. (C) A macrophage (*pinkish*) is seen as it begins to phagocytose a tumor cell in the lumen of a duct within a papillary thyroid carcinoma. (D) Macrophages can be activated by diverse signals, such as interferon-γ (IFN-γ) and bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS), the latter being used as an adjuvant to potentiate the immune response. Once activated, these macrophages, dubbed M1 or M1-like, can function to acquire and present antigens to T_H cells and to effect tumor-cell killing by antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC; *left*). Acting in the opposite direction, hypoxia and a variety of tumor-derived signals direct the activation and differentiation of macrophages into the M2 phenotype, which causes them to foster rather than antagonize tumor formation (*right*); especially important among these M2 functions are those that create immunosuppressive tumor microenvironments. (A and B, from P. Martin et al., *Curr. Biol.* 13:1122–1128, 2003. With permission from Elsevier. C, from A. Fiumara et al., *J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab.* 82:1615–1620, 1997. With permission from Oxford University Press. D, from L. Bingle, N.J. Brown and C.E. Lewis, *J. Pathol.* 196:254–265, 2002. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

As an example, T cells are often important regulators of the direction and degree of macrophage polarization. Members of the T_H1 subset of helper T cells (see Sidebar 15.3) and CTLs secrete interferon-γ, a cytokine that favors M1-like behavior, including phagocytic behavior and the generation of oxidizing agents, such as nitric oxide, that macrophages deploy to kill targeted cells. In contrast, other cytokines,

specifically the IL-4 and IL-13 secreted by another set of helper T cells termed T_H2 cells, can drive macrophages toward tumor-promoting M2-like phenotypes.

As multi-step tumor progression proceeds, at least during the formation of common, well-studied carcinomas, cancer cells begin to release immunosuppressive cytokines, the most prominent of which is TGF-β. This cytokine, on its own, exerts direct immunosuppressive effects by inducing the formation of M2 macrophages as well as the formation of an immunosuppressive subset of lymphocytes termed regulatory T cells (T_{reg}'s; to be described in Section 15.11).

Macrophages can attack and eliminate cancer cells simply by consuming them through the process of phagocytosis (see Figure 15.14C). Some cancer cells, however, having attracted the attentions of innate immune cells such as macrophages, may contrive a strategy for eluding macrophage-dealt phagocytic death; they do so by exaggerating an interesting aspect of normal tissue physiology. In order to protect themselves against inadvertent phagocytosis by roving macrophages, normal cells throughout the body display the CD47 protein—a "don't-eat-me" signal—on their surface. The CD47 receptor is one of several known receptors employed by normal cells throughout the body, including erythrocytes, to avoid inadvertent macrophage attack. CD47 levels are also used to determine the lifetimes of specific cell types in the body. For example, recently formed erythrocytes display high levels of CD47 that decline progressively in such cells until they approach the end of their pre-ordained lifetimes; at this stage CD47 has lost its ability to stave off attack by macrophages and closely allied immune cells, resulting in the removal of the aged red cells via phagocytosis.

Not surprisingly, many types of cancer cells up-regulate display of their CD47 don't-eat-me signal on their surfaces, thereby discouraging would-be macrophage attackers and overriding any tendency of macrophages to kill them via phagocytosis. Indeed, clinical observations have shown that circulating cancer cells, often referred to as circulating tumor cells (CTCs), released from certain human breast carcinomas display high levels of CD47, presumably offering protection against macrophages that are present in the circulation.

Once internalized by phagocytosis, ingested materials such as cancer cells are transferred to the lysosomes where they are enzymatically degraded. Phagocytosis can be facilitated if a potential target cell is coated by antibodies attached to cell surface molecules displayed by the target cell, much like the ADCC that is executed by NK cells (Section 15.9 and Sidebar 15.6). Phagocytic killing of target cells by this antibody-assisted route is called antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP). Like NK cells that carry out ADCC, macrophages display Fc receptors that, when engaged by antibodies bound to cell surface antigens, enable macraphages to kill the antibody targeted cells.

In fact, antibodies directed against tumor-associated cell surface antigens are employed by a variety of anti-cancer immunotherapies but do not seem to play major roles in the natural control and elimination of cancers. This explains why macrophage-mediated ADCP and NK-mediated ADCC are unlikely to be major factors in determining the clinical progression of most cancers. However, in the context of clinical settings, where monoclonal antibodies (MoAbs) targeting cancer cells are employed as therapeutic agents to kill cancer cells, both ADCP and ADCC can indeed be important contributors to the elimination of cancer cells. Examples of these antibody therapies will be presented in the next chapter.

Following the early stages of tumor development, a period when M1-like macrophages may contribute to cancer cell death, tumor-associated macrophage (TAM) populations progressively shift their phenotypes in ways that are more supportive of further tumor outgrowth, that is, increasingly transitioning from an M1 into an M2-like state. This seems to explain why clinical observations have shown that extensive macrophage infiltration of a clinically detectable tumor is generally an indicator of the presence of M2 macrophages and poor clinical prognosis. As an example, one meta-analysis of 55 studies of human cancers showed that dense infiltration of macrophages within a tumor mass correlated with poor overall survival in a wide variety of solid tumors, including breast, bladder, thyroid, and ovarian carcinomas. Images of macrophages presented in Figure 15.14 illustrate some of the many roles played by this class of versatile cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

alternatively activated macrophages
: A subtype of macrophages that releases immunosuppressive cytokines, notably IL-10 and TGF-β, and also favors tissue repair and regeneration. **Also called M2 macrophage**.

regulatory T cells
: A subset of CD4 lymphocytes that releases various immunosuppressive signals. *Also termed* **T_{reg} 's**.

tumor-associated macrophage
: A macrophage that has been recruited into a tumor.

M1 macrophage
: A subtype of macrophages that is associated with highly cytotoxic and phagocytic powers and can function to assist the immune attack on cancer cells. *Compare* **M2 macrophage**.

M2 macrophage
: A subtype of macrophages that releases immunosuppressive cytokines, notably IL-10 and TGF-β, and also favors tissue repair and regeneration. *Compare* **M1 macrophage**.

OceanofPDF.com

15.11 Regulatory T cells are indispensable negative regulators of the immune response that are co-opted by tumors to counteract immune attack

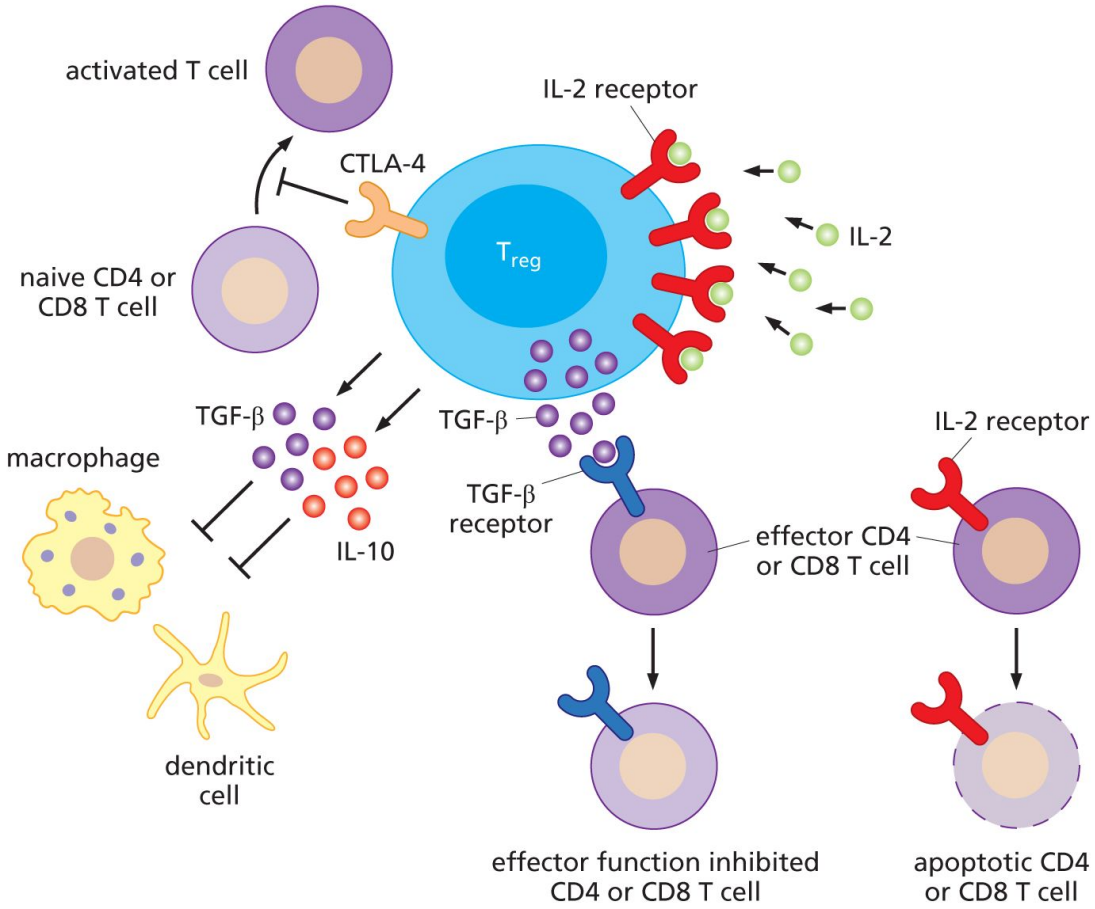
In contrast to the contributions made by most T-cell types to the elimination of cancer cells, one subtype of CD4 T cell, termed regulatory T cells (T_{reg}'s), actively aid tumor maintenance and progression, doing so by inhibiting various kinds of adaptive anti-tumor immune responses. More generally, T_{reg}'s play key immunoregulatory roles that are critical to the maintenance of normal tissue homeostasis. They do so by eliminating or suppressing autoreactive T cells, thereby playing a key role in ensuring immune tolerance. This particular function of T_{reg}'s is illustrated by studies using genetically altered mice that lack T_{reg} cells; such mice are afflicted by a lethal autoimmune disease that develops early in life. Similarly, humans who are unable for one reason or another to form T_{reg}'s develop an aggressive and ultimately fatal autoimmune disease.

Like the negative-feedback loops that modulate proper levels of mitogenic signaling in cells (as described in Section 6.14), the adaptive immune system requires counterbalancing inhibitory control mechanisms to constrain its actions. In the context of cancer development, T_{reg}'s can compromise the ability of the immune system to restrain tumor progression or eliminate tumor cell populations. We now know that they do so by inhibiting the effector functions and the proliferation of helper T cells and of CTLs. In addition, the actions of T_{reg}'s extend beyond their effects on T cells. Thus, they can inhibit effective antigen presentation by dendritic cells (see Section 15.7) as well as suppressing the anti-tumor activities of macrophages (see Section 15.10).

The formation of T_{reg}'s is strongly encouraged by TGF-β, which can induce their differentiation from CD4 lymphocyte precursors. Such differentiation can be monitored by the acquired expression of yet another cell surface marker protein, termed CD25. This induction of the T_{reg} state becomes important in the context of tumor pathogenesis because many types of transformed cells, including more mesenchymal carcinoma cells (see Section 13.3), actively secrete TGF-β, which can

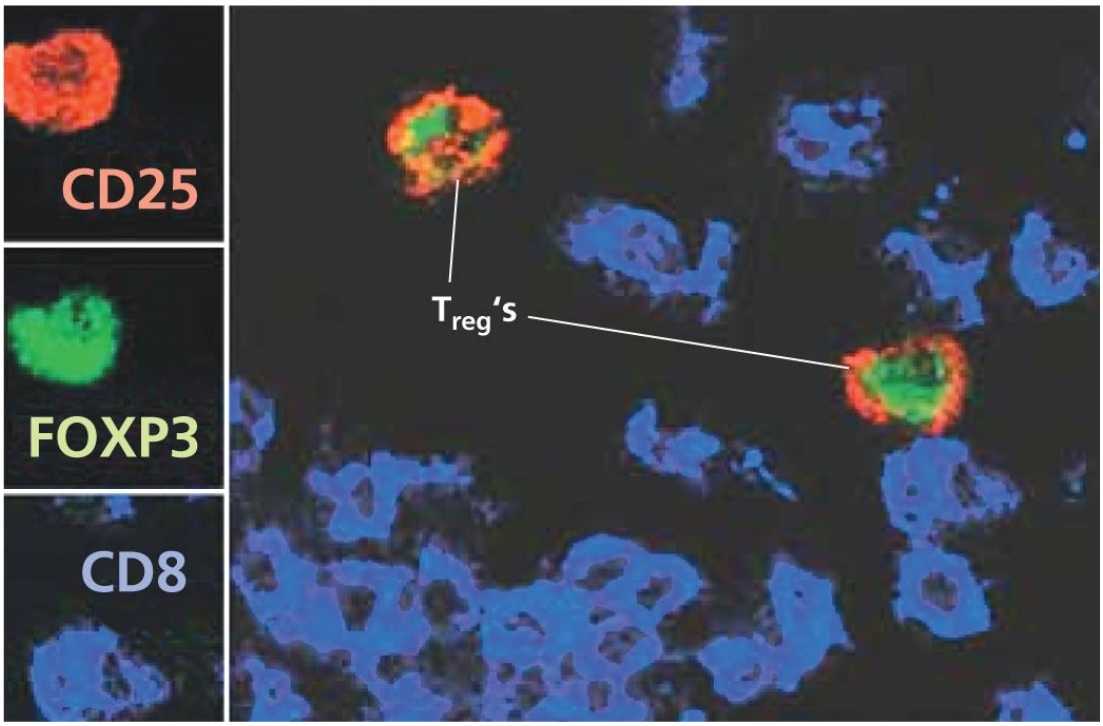
proceed to encourage the formation of more immunosuppressive, pro-tumor tissue microenvironments.

T_{reg}'s often constitute a significant proportion of the tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) in lung, ovarian, breast, and pancreatic carcinomas as well as the immunocytes present in tumor ascites—the fluid accumulated in the peritoneal cavities of patients with several types of advanced cancers. Many tumors actively recruit T_{reg} cells to their associated microenvironments by releasing the chemokine CCL22. Regulatory T cells display a receptor for CCL22 and can sense CCL22 in their surroundings and advance toward the tumor cells that are generating the CCL22, doing so by following gradients of increasing concentration of this chemokine. Thus, this chemokine serves as a chemoattractant for these cells. These various aspects of T_{reg}-mediated immunosuppression are summarized in **Figure 15.15**.



A regulatory T cell engaged in multiple actions. With a C T L A-4 receptor on its surface, it inhibits the conversion of a naive C D 4 or C D 8 T cell into an activated T cell. On another part of the regulatory T cell's surface, multiple interleukin 2 receptors bind free-floating interleukin 2 molecules. This causes

interleukin 2 receptors on effector C D 4 or C D 8 T cells to remain empty, causing those cells to become apoptotic. The regulatory T cell also secretes transforming growth factor beta, which binds to T G F beta receptors on effector C D 4 or C D 8 T cells, causing their effector function to be inhibited. Finally, the regulatory T cell secretes interleukin 10, which together with T G F beta reduces the activity of dendritic cells and macrophages.
(A)



A fluorescence microscopy image showing colored cell nuclei against a black background. Most nuclei are dark blue, indicating the presence of C D 8. Two, however, have green centers and red edges. The green is a marker for FOX P3. The red is a marker for C D 25.

(B)

Figure 15.15 Regulatory T cells (A) Regulatory T (T_{reg}) cells act on other immunocytes in multiple ways. The CTLA-4 receptor has a higher affinity for the co-stimulatory ligands CD80/86 than does CD28 on other T cells. Consequently, CTLA-4 can bind to these co-stimulatory ligands and inhibit the activation of naive T cells to functional effector T cells by preventing them from receiving the co-stimulation on which their priming depends (*above left*). Interleukin-2 (IL-2) is an essential factor for the survival and proliferation of effector T cells. T_{reg}'s display high densities of the IL-2 receptor (IL-2R) on their surface, allowing them to bind and sequester IL-2, thereby denying the essential support by IL-2 to other

T cells in their vicinity (*above right*). TGF-β secreted by T_{reg} cells can inhibit the activity of multiple types of effector T cells, including subsets of CD4 helper T cells, as well as CTLs. T_{reg}'s also secrete IL-10, a potent inhibitory cytokine that collaborates with TGF-β in reducing the activity of dendritic cells and macrophages (*lower left*). By inhibiting helper T cells with secreted cytokines like TGF-β, these T_{reg} cells can reduce antibody production by B cells (*middle left*). By depriving CD4 and CD8 T cells of IL-2 (*middle right*), T_{reg} cells can also trigger apoptosis of CD4 and CD8 cells. (B) Immunofluorescence staining reveals the presence of T_{reg}'s through their expression of the CD25 surface antigen (*red*) and the FOXP3 transcription factor (*green*), which is localized to the nuclei of these cells. They are seen here amid CD8+ cytotoxic T cells (*blue*), whose actions they are ostensibly inhibiting; these lymphocytes were present in the ascites of a patient suffering from ovarian cancer. (A, adapted from X. Meng, et al., *Nat. Rev. Cardiol.* 13:167–179, 2016. B, adapted from E.M. Shevach, *Nat. Med.* 10:900–901, 2004. With permission from Nature.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

ascites

(adj., - **itic**) Fluid that accumulates in the peritoneal cavity of some cancer patients, often containing malignant cells.

chemokine

(1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

OceanofPDF.com

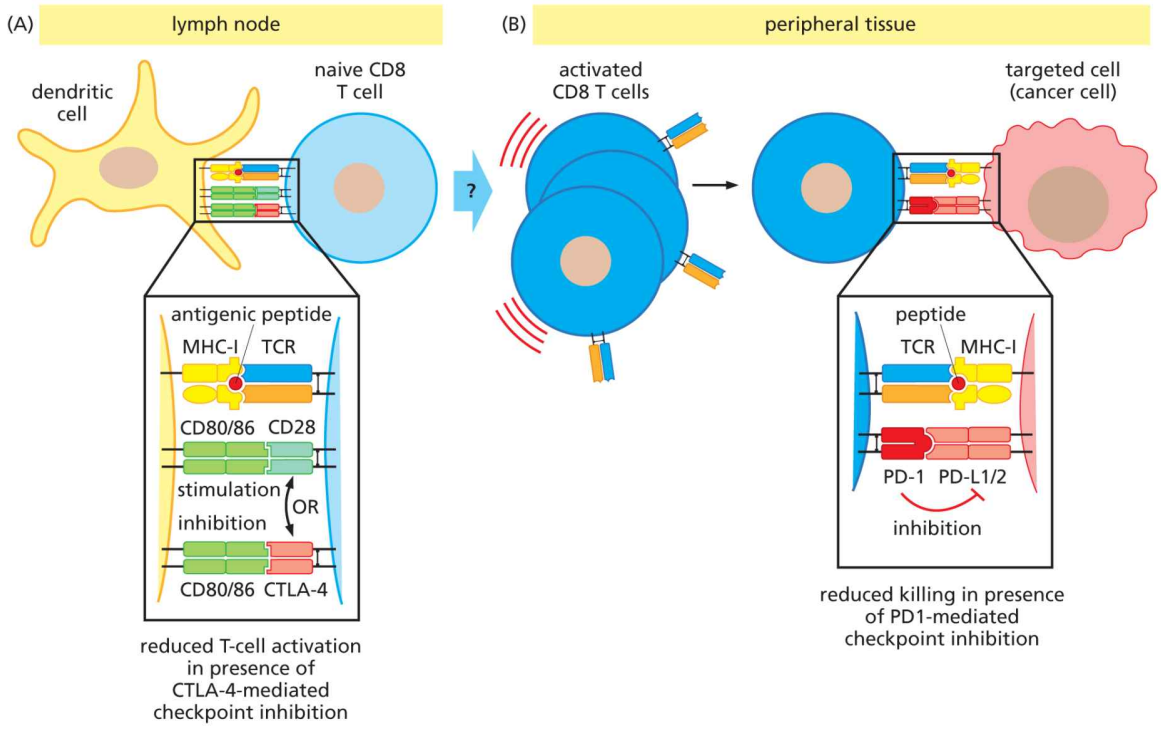
15.12 Immune checkpoints act to limit immune responses

Once set in motion, immune responses can pose threats to the normal host tissues comparable to those created by infectious pathogens or tumor cells. An elaborate set of controls, including the T_{reg}'s just described, ensures that these responses are limited and eventually shut down once immune responses have completed their work. Moreover, as argued repeatedly above, over extended periods of time, organismic survival depends on mechanisms of immune tolerance to spare normal tissues from immune attack.

In contrast with the receptor–ligand interactions that promote immune responses, those underlying the operations of immune checkpoints dampen immune responses and ensure that they are self-limiting. These checkpoints depend on *juxtacrine* receptor–ligand interactions involving cell–cell contact (see Figure 5.8), which negatively regulate immune responses and, in this respect, contrast with the influences of soluble *paracrine* immunosuppressive cytokines and the T_{reg}'s described in Section 15.11. We now turn to an exploration of this juxtacrine signaling because it is essential to understanding how cancers develop in the face of existing immunological surveillance and how already developed cancers acquire the ability to elude anti-cancer immunotherapies directed against them.

To begin, we return to the interactions between DCs and their potential T-cell partners. Thus, as antigen-presenting dendritic cells physically approach potential T-cell partners within lymphoid tissues, they display on their surface the CD80 and CD86 "co-stimulatory ligands" either of which can engage with CD28, a stimulatory co-receptor on the surface of T cells distinct from their TCRs. Hence, in addition to recognition of peptide:MHC-I complexes by TCRs, effective T-cell responses are promoted by and dependent on an additional essential co-stimulatory interaction mediated by this co-receptor, which enables the conversion of naive T cells into the activated lymphocytes that participate thereafter in immune responses. In fact, naive T cells staunchly resist activation simply by engagement of their TCR signaling, whereas the powerful combination of stimulation by peptide:MHC (acting on the TCR) plus co-stimulation by CD80/86 (acting on CD28) is sufficient to push normally activation-resistant naive T cells into a state of activation.

The actions of these co-stimulatory interactions are counterbalanced by certain immune checkpoint mechanisms, which include co-inhibitory receptor–ligand interactions that limit the *intensity* of T-cell activation during the initial induction of immune response described above (**Figure 15.16**).



A two-part figure depicting regulation of the activation and effector phases of T-cell response. Part A, titled reduced T-cell activation in presence of C T L A-4-mediated checkpoint inhibition, shows the activation phase unfolding in the lymph node, as a dendritic cell makes contact with a naive C D 8 T cell. Activation is achieved through the coupling of a peptide M H C 1 complex on the dendritic cell with a cognate receptor on the T cell. Also presented on the surface of the dendritic cell is a C D 80 slash 86. If this binds to a C D 28 on the T cell, activation is stimulated, whereas if the C D 80 slash 86 binds to a C T L A-4 on the T cell, activation is inhibited. Part B, titled reduced killing in presence of P D1-mediated checkpoint inhibition, shows the effector phase unfolding in peripheral tissue, as an activated dendritic C D 8 T cell makes contact with a target cell, which is a cancer cell. An attack by the T cell is triggered when a T cell receptor couples with a cognate peptide M H C 1 complex on the target cell. This triggering is inhibited if a P D-1 on the T cell binds with a P D-L1 slash 2 on the target cell.

Figure 15.16 Checkpoint inhibition of T-cell activation and effector function Checkpoint controls ensure the limiting or shutdown of the T-cell response and operate in two successive phases of response development. (A) Activation phase. A naive T cell is primed within a lymph node by engagement of its TCRs with cognate peptide:MHC-I complexes presented by a dendritic cell (DC) (*left*). The essential co-stimulation that is necessary to augment signaling from the TCR into the T cell is provided by engagement of the T cell's co-stimulatory receptor, CD28, with stimulatory ligands (CD80/86) displayed on the surface of the dendritic cell (*inset, above*). The combined strength of these signals is sufficient to force activation of the naive T cell, causing it to undergo proliferation and develop effector functions. An alternative counteracting response occurs when the CTLA-4 receptor of a T cell, rather than its CD28 receptor, binds to CD80/86 of a dendritic cell: rather than stimulating the T cell and causing its activation, this CTLA-4:CD80/86 binding generates signals that inhibit T-cell activation (*inset, below*). CTLA-4 binding to the CD80/86 ligands is stronger than is CD28 binding; hence, the inhibitory effects of CTLA-4 dominate if both are expressed. As the activation of T cells mediated by CD28 proceeds, the levels of CTLA-4 increase progressively, ultimately ensuring the shutdown of further CD28 signaling and resulting T-cell activation. Those T cells that undergo successful activation leave the lymph node via the circulatory system and are carried to peripheral tissues. This negative-feedback control of T-cell activation operates independently of the T_{reg} inhibition described in Figure 15.15. (B) Effector phase. Those CD8 T cells that are successfully activated by antigen exposure (*broad blue arrow*) are exported from the lymph node and disperse into peripheral tissues, in this case a tumor (*right*). There they enter the tumor microenvironment (TME), where recognition of peptide:MHC complexes displayed by cancer cells can provoke a cytotoxic attack by the activated CD8 T cells. However, the presence of PD-1, an inhibitory receptor also displayed on the surface of the cytotoxic CD8 cells, renders them susceptible to inhibition if they happen to encounter the inhibitory ligands PD-L1 or PD-L2 (PD-L1/2) displayed either by cancer cells or by other noncancerous bystander cells present in the TME (*inset*). (Adapted from R.J. Lee, J.S. Abramson and R.A. Goldsby, Case Studies in Cancer. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 2018.)

This initial activation of a T-cell in a lymphoid tissue is limited by a counterbalancing inhibition mediated by the CTLA-4 T-cell co-inhibitory receptor, this action representing an initial critical checkpoint control occurring

within the lymphoid tissue. As Figure 15.16 indicates, CTLA-4 is activated by its cognate CD80/86 ligand displayed by the dendritic cell and proceeds thereafter to damp down T-cell activation. Hence, the CD80/86 proteins displayed by DCs serve as ligands for two mutually antagonistic receptors, one stimulatory, the other inhibitory (**Sidebar 15.7**).

Sidebar 15.7 Checkpoint controls reflect the operations of conflicting regulatory molecules

A variety of counter-balancing receptor–ligand interactions operate together to form an elaborate network of cell–cell signaling dedicated to stimulating or suppressing immune attacks on various normal cells throughout the body. To review, this sequence of interactions begins with naive CD8+ T cells in lymphoid tissue, where the CD28 receptor acts as a co-receptor with the TCR also displayed by the CD8+ T cell; when the CD8+ T cell's TCR recognizes a peptide antigen displayed by a dendritic cell (DC), the presence of CD80/86 molecules on the DC surface engages the CD28 receptor displayed by the CD8+ T cell, generating a combined signal strong enough to activate or "prime" it and, in principle, enable it to function thereafter as a CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) capable of subsequent action elsewhere in the body. For this reason, CD28 is often termed a co-stimulatory receptor, acting in partnership with the TCR.

The CTLA-4 receptor is also displayed by a CD8+ T cell encountering antigen within lymphoid tissue. This receptor also recognizes and binds CD80/86 displayed by a dendritic cell. This last fact places the two co-receptors displayed by T cells—CD28 and CTLA-4—in conflict and in direct competition with one another for binding their common ligands CD80/86 displayed by DCs. Initially, the stimulatory effects of the CD28:CD80/86 association may dominate and result in successful activation of the T cell, but as this interaction proceeds, increasing levels of the CTLA-4 co-inhibitory receptor are now displayed on the surface of the T cell. Because CTLA-4 binds the critical CD80/86 ligands (on the DC) more avidly than does CD28, it eventually prevails, displacing CD28 binding and shutting down further stimulation of the T cell. Hence, CTLA-4 functions to mediate as a negative feedback control that is only imposed with some delay after T cell:DC interaction.

The physiological importance of the CTLA-4 inhibitory receptor is illustrated most dramatically by the consequences of its deletion from the control circuitry of

the immune response. Studies in mice demonstrate that germ-line deletion of *ctla4*, the gene encoding CTLA-4, results in massive lymphoproliferative disease that kills such animals within 3 to 4 weeks after birth; this demonstrates the key role of the CTLA-4 response in constraining T-cell *proliferation* following an initial encounter with activating antigens.

Later, when the now-activated T cell leaves a lymphoid tissue and disperses to tissues throughout the body, the T cell's inhibitory PD-1 co-receptor comes into play. Thus, if and when the TCR of this CTL recognizes cognate antigens displayed by these target cells, this T cell will launch an attack on the latter. Only then does the T cell's PD-1 co-receptor confront its PD-L1/2 ligands displayed by the target cells in one or another peripheral tissue. Thus, the juxtracrine PD-1:PD-L1/2 interaction will eventually intervene to curtail further T-cell activity. This shutdown of further CTL-mediated attack may also occur, for example, upon protracted antigen stimulation or exposure to certain inflammatory conditions.

These two sets of interactions—CTLA-4 with CD80/86 in lymphoid tissues and PD-1 with PD-L1/2—represent the signaling agents controlling the two successive immune checkpoint mechanisms that have been most thoroughly studied to date, and both underlie now well-established cancer immunotherapies as we will read in the next chapter.

In the presence of a sufficiently high level of PD-1 ligands, persistent antigen stimulation in a peripheral tissue may drive a T cell into a state of T-cell exhaustion. Exhausted T cells typically display high levels of PD-1, together with other inhibitory checkpoint receptors, and at the same time exhibit significantly reduced functional capacity. However, despite the implications of the term "exhausted," such T cells have not lost all functional capacity and may still contribute to T-cell responses, including anti-tumor responses, albeit at greatly reduced levels.

To summarize, the two checkpoint controls, involving the CTLA-4 and PD-1 co-receptors operating one after the other, exert a moderating influence that is necessary to (1) avoid excessive, acute immune responses, (2) discourage the development of autoimmunity and, as a consequence, (3) prevent or limit the tissue damage and systemic pathology that can result from prolonged or chronic T-cell activation and accompanying chronic inflammation.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immune checkpoint
: Control mechanism ensuring that immune attacks on cells and tissues are constrained or limited, achieved by modulating downstream signaling responses such as those triggered by receptor–ligand interactions between immunocytes and target cells. *See also* **checkpoint**.

co-inhibitory
: (1) Referring to a molecule or process that operates in concert with a major inhibitory process to ensure completion of the latter or to amplify its effects. (2) Receptor that, when displayed in conjunction with a T-cell receptor, will dampen the duration of subsequent T-cell activation; such a receptor will recognize a ligand presented by a potential target cell. *See also* **co-stimulatory**.

co-stimulatory
: (1) Referring to molecules or processes that operate in concert with a major stimulatory process to ensure completion of the latter or to amplify its effects. (2) Referring to a receptor that, when acting in concert with a T-cell receptor, can act to stimulate the resulting T-cell response; such a receptor will recognize a ligand displayed by a potential target cell. *See also* **co-inhibitory**.

T-cell exhaustion
: State of a T cell that has been induced by prolonged, possibly excessive antigen exposure as well as by exposure to certain cytokines, and is associated with loss of its various effector functions.

OceanofPDF.com

15.13 Synopsis and prospects

Once formed, cancer cells confront the immune system as a major threat to their ongoing survival and progression to states of high-grade malignancy. Indeed, most cancer cells and the tiny incipient tumors that they form may be eliminated entirely by the immune system, leaving no record of their formation; hence, the tumors that are registered clinically may only represent a minute proportion of those that are initially formed. Alternatively, early-stage tumors may be held in check by the adaptive immune system and limited to forming small indolent growths that may never become clinically manifest. The cells in such tumors may continue to proliferate slowly, with immunogenic subpopulations being continually eliminated by CTLs and by other cytotoxic immune cells. These mechanisms, to the extent that they operate, effectively preclude us from gauging precisely how effective the immune system truly is in protecting us against cancer.

Nonetheless, macroscopic tumors do erupt, underscoring why avoidance of immune destruction is considered a fundamental hallmark of cancer (see Section 11.3). Eventually, an initial delicate balance between survival and immune destruction may be disrupted, tipping away from susceptibility to immune attack and toward expansion of the tumor cell population. Ironically, the powerful selective force exerted by the immune system that is designed to eliminate cancer cells can provide a mechanism that promotes the evolution of cancer cell populations that are resistant to immune attack.

Tumor cell populations are heterogeneous and some cells within individual tumors have antigenic profiles that make them more immunogenic than others. One consequence of the operation of immune selection is likely to be the elimination from populations of heterogeneous, early-stage tumor cells of the more immunogenic variant cells, leaving behind populations that may be more capable of resisting immune attack, in part via some of the mechanisms described in this chapter.

The selective processes that favor the emergence of less immunogenic cancer cells have been termed immunoediting. Immunoediting represents a form of Darwinian selection in which fitness is determined by absence of effective antigenicity while the adaptive immune system works as the selective force. One inevitable consequence often follows: over extended periods of time, immunoediting can result in the evolution and eventual outgrowth of tumor cell populations against which the immune system is powerless.

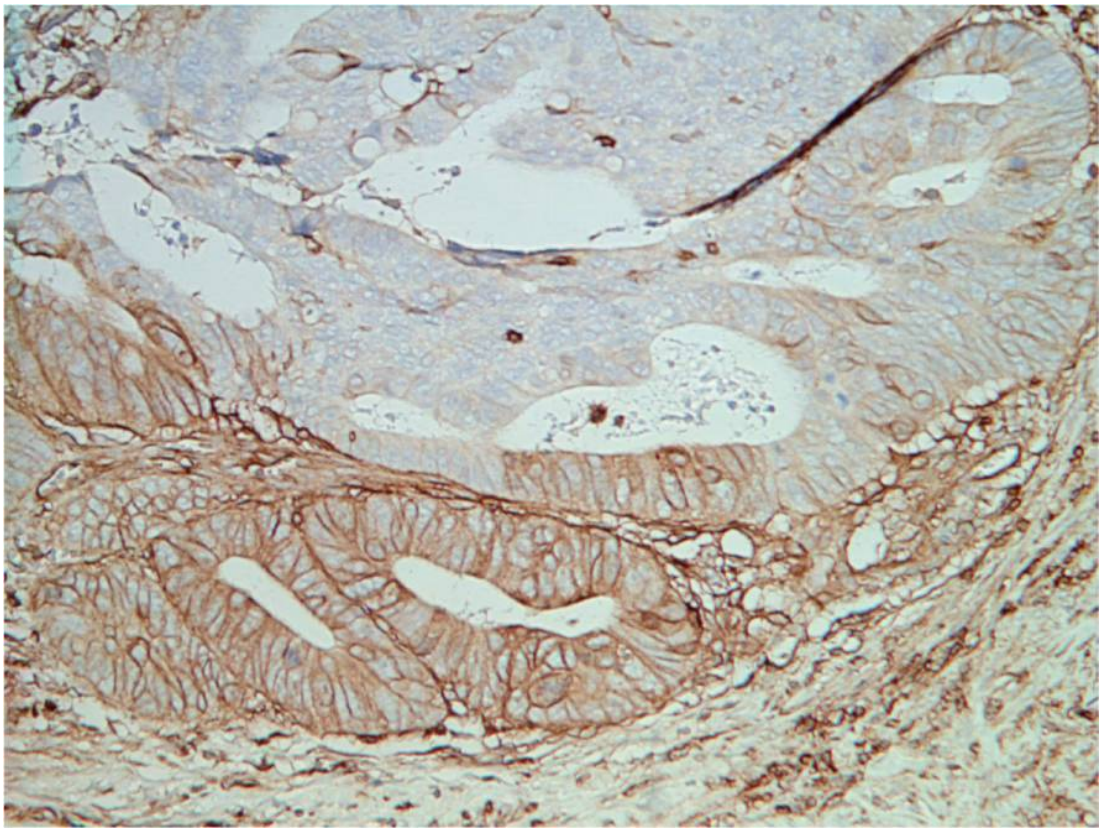
The most obvious strategy mounted by tumor cells to avoid such selection via immunoediting involves shutdown of the expression of immunogenic antigens. In fact, tumors often harbor cell clones that have entirely lost expression of certain tumor antigen-encoding genes as a consequence of DNA methylation of the promoter regions of these genes (see Section 7.7) or outright deletion of the encoding chromosomal DNA sequences. Many of the tumor antigens affected by these types of cancer cell-intrinsic immunoevasive maneuvers derive from proteins whose continued expression is not critical to continued cancer cell viability and proliferation. (Such proteins are often, for example, the products of mutant passenger gene alleles.)

In many cases, however, cancer cells cannot simply resort to down-regulation of the expression of an immunogenic tumor antigen if its continued functions are essential for cellular function or neoplastic proliferation. For example, the overexpressed but otherwise-normal HER2/Neu protein—a growth factor receptor displayed by more than 20% of human breast cancers—may provoke an anti-tumor immune attack (see Figure 4.3). In this case, however, the neoplastic cells in these breast carcinomas *depend* on continued expression and functioning of this receptor protein to drive their proliferation and avoid apoptosis, and for this reason, they simply cannot afford to shed this critical tumor antigen. One response by a cancer cell unable to down-regulate expression of a key tumor antigen might involve the remodeling of this antigen through changes in its primary amino acid sequence that erase an antigenic determinant; this maneuver often does not represent a viable solution, given the potentially disruptive effects of many structural changes on the continued functioning of an essential cancer-forming protein.

Yet another alternative immunoevasive strategy may derive from reducing or halting the cell surface presentation of a targeted tumor peptide antigen by MHC-I proteins. This approach avoids attack by cytotoxic T cells (CTLs) whose TCRs specifically recognize the peptide:MHC-I complexes formed by such an antigen. This strategy can be executed by either a shutdown of MHC class I protein expression or a failure to properly load peptides onto the MHC-I carrier molecules during their maturation in the endoplasmic reticulum. There is evidence that both these evasive maneuvers are employed.

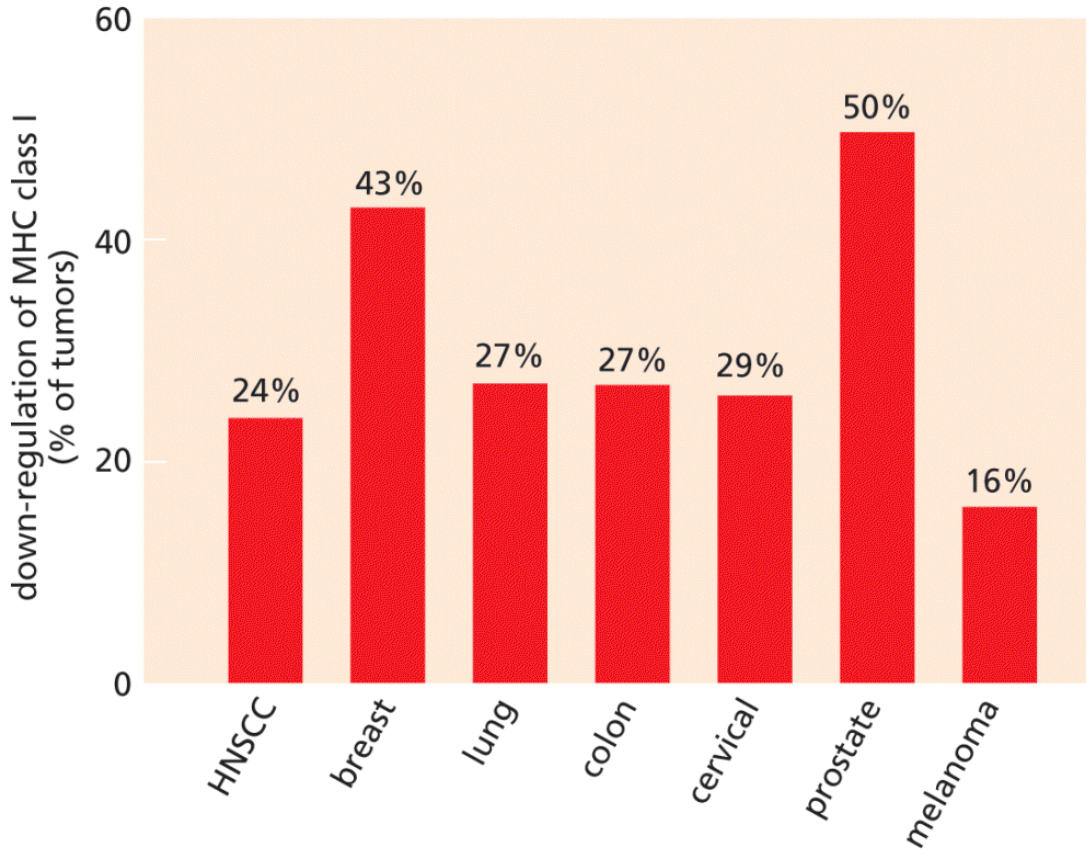
Suppression of MHC class I protein expression is often achieved through transcriptional repression of their encoding genes. In fact, many types of human cancer cells have been found to lack normal levels of the mRNAs encoding these MHC molecules, thereby preventing their synthesis and thus display of antigens at the cell surface (**Figure 15.17**). Alternatively, cancer cells can also use post-translational mechanisms to reduce MHC class I-mediated antigen presentation. For instance, the migration of MHC molecules from the endoplasmic reticulum to the cell surface depends on their association with β_2-microglobulin protein (β_2m). Normally, β_2m escorts the MHC molecules and their peptide cargo to the cell surface (**Figure**

15.18A). In certain high-grade tumors, however, the absence of β_2m synthesis prevents the peptide-loaded MHC class I molecules from reaching the cell surface (Figure 15.18B).



A histology stain image. The lower part, in which several ducts are visible in cross section, is a pale orange or pink, while the upper part, in which no ducts are visible, is a neutral gray.

(A)

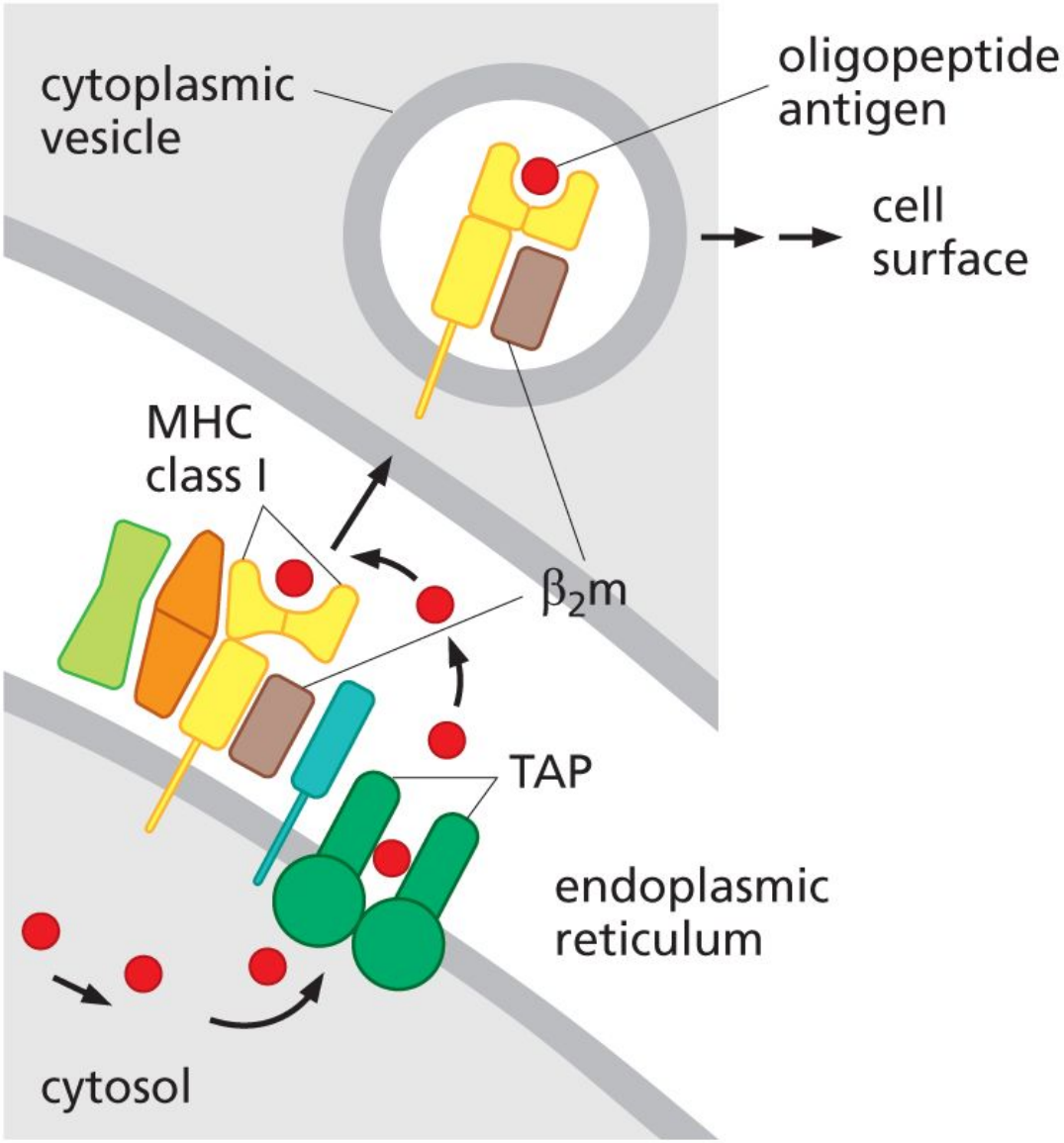


A bar graph showing what percent of tumors display down-regulation of M H C class 1. The percentages range from 16 percent for melanoma to 50 percent for prostate cancer. In between those extremes are Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, at 24 percent; breast cancer, at 43 percent; lung cancer and colon cancer, each at 27 percent; and cervical cancer, at 29 percent.

(B)

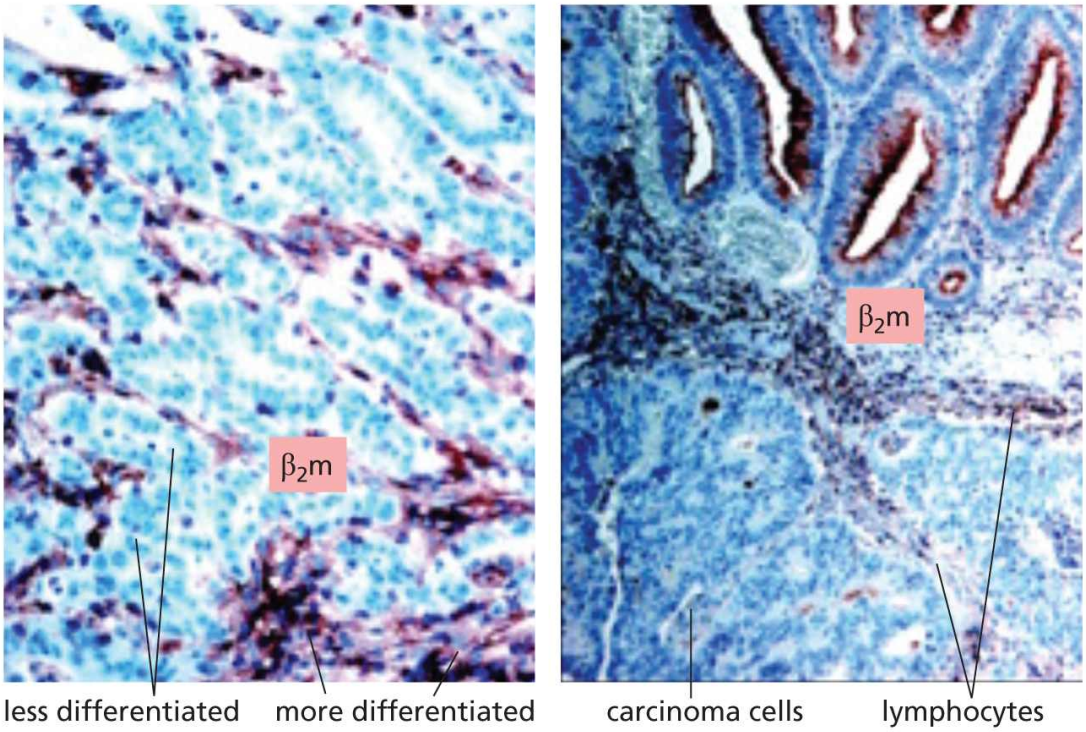
Figure 15.17 Immunoevasion through suppression of MHC class I expression
Cancer cells will often down-regulate expression of their MHC class I molecules, ostensibly in order to avoid recognition and attack by cellular components of the adaptive immune response. (A) Shown here are cells of a human colorectal tumor that have been immunostained with an antibody that recognizes a specific subtype of human MHC class I molecule termed HLA-A. The carcinoma cells in the lower part of the tumor strongly express HLA-A (*dark red*), whereas the cells in the upper part of the tumor have partially or totally shut down HLA-A expression. (B) Shown on the ordinate is the percentage of tumor samples in which down-regulation of MHC class I expression occurred in a significant segment of the tumors examined (HNSCC, head-and-neck squamous cell carcinoma.) (A, from

A.G. Menon et al., *Lab. Invest.* 82:1725–1733, 2002. With permission from Nature. B, courtesy of S. Ferrone.)



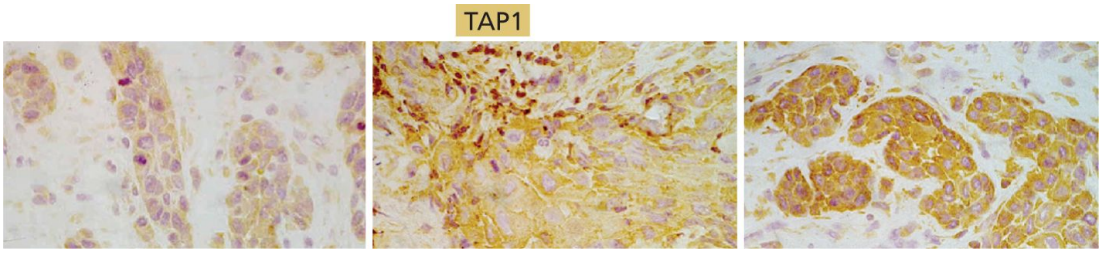
A diagram of a process that begins in the endoplasmic reticulum of a cell. An oligopeptide antigen is funneled from the cytosol into the endoplasmic reticulum by a pair of T A P proteins. From there, the oligopeptide comes to rest on the receptor end of an M H C 1 complex. At the same time, a beta 2 m molecule binds to the underside of the M H C 1 complex. The oligopeptide M H C 1 beta 2 m complex is sequestered into a cytoplasmic vesicle that delivers the complex to the cell surface.

(A)



Two histology stain images. In the left one, less differentiated tissue appears as large areas of cyan, and more differentiated tissue appears as veins of dark purple with reddish brown spots that indicate the presence of beta 2 m. In the right image, carcinoma cells appear as large areas of cyan, and lymphocytes appear as veins of dark blue with reddish brown spots that indicate the presence of beta 2 m.

(B)



A sequence of three histology stain images. In the left one, the tissue appears pink. In the middle image, the tissue appears yellowish tan. In the right image, the tissue appears pink with islands of yellowish tan.

(C)

Figure 15.18 Failure of antigen presentation from loss of TAP1 orβ_2-microglobulin (A) The TAP complex is a heterodimer of the TAP1 and TAP2 proteins (transporters associated with antigen processing; *dark green*) that is involved in transporting oligopeptides (*red dots*) from the cytosol into the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum, where the oligopeptides can be loaded onto MHC class I molecules (*yellow*). Independent of this, the β_2-microglobulin (β_2m, *light brown*) molecule associates with MHC class I molecules and helps to shepherd them, together with their captured oligopeptide antigens, to the cell surface. The MHC class I molecules require both a bound oligopeptide antigen and an associated β_2m molecule in order to reach the cell surface via cytoplasmic vesicles (*above*). Hence, defects in either the β_2m or TAP protein expression can preclude MHC-I-mediated presentation of oligopeptide antigens on the cell surface. (B) In one human colorectal carcinoma (*left panel*), β_2m staining (*reddish brown*) is present in the cancer cells forming the more differentiated tubular structures (*below*), while the less differentiated carcinoma cells (*light blue, above*) fail to express any β_2m. In a second colorectal carcinoma (*right panel*), β_2m is present in infiltrating lymphocytes (*dark red*) but is totally absent in many of the carcinoma cells (*light blue, bottom half*). In 5 of 17 microsatellite-unstable (MIN) colorectal tumors (see Section 12.3), the β_2*m* gene was found to have suffered inactivating mutations and was transcriptionally silenced through unknown mechanisms in a number of other tumors. (C) Defective antigen processing is frequently seen in head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCCs), in which expression of TAP1 or TAP2 is often lost. The immunohistochemical staining shown here reveals the expression of TAP1 (*beige*) in a group of HNSCCs to be variable, being absent in some tumors (*left*), present in patches in others (*middle*), and normally expressed in yet others (*right*). (A, from C.A. Janeway Jr. et al., Immunobiology, 6th ed. New York: Garland Science, 2005. B, from M. Kloor et al., *Cancer Res.* 65:6418–6424, 2005. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of Barbara Seliger.)

An even earlier step in antigen presentation may also be compromised: some tumors have defective TAP1 or TAP2 (*t*ransporter associated with *a*ntigen *p*resentation) proteins (see Figure 15.18A). These proteins are essential for the transport of peptides generated by the proteasomes in the cytosol to the ectodomains of MHC class I molecules present in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum. Without help from both TAP proteins, antigen presentation by MHC molecules once again fails (Figure 15.18C).

These various attempts at immunoevasion can be countered, however, through dispatch by the immune system of NK cells, which are programmed to attack cells that

lack adequate levels of MHC class I protein expressed on their surface. The tumor, for its part, may respond in turn by launching a counter-counterattack, doing so by secreting TGF-β, which proceeds to shut down NK cells. The back and forth, cat-and-mouse games may continue for extended periods of time with ultimate outcomes that are hardly predictable.

Another defense against attacks launched by the immune system depends on cancer cells modifying the extended tumor microenvironments (TME) around them, using diffusible substances to weaken various types of immune attacks. Interleukin-10 (IL-10) and TGF-β are broadly immunosuppressive agents that are produced by some cancer cells and by certain types of immune cells present in the TME. They suppress T-cell proliferation and can inhibit antigen presentation by dendritic cells. Under appropriate conditions, TGF-β can induce the generation of the strongly immunosuppressive regulatory T cells and inhibit NK function, both being strategies cited earlier.

Carcinoma cells that have activated portions of the epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) cell-biological program described in Chapters 13 and 14 often secrete significant amounts of TGF-β that they depend on, since it operates via an *autocrine* signaling mechanism to help these cells maintain their continued residence in more mesenchymal phenotypic states. However, this secreted TGF-β can also extend its reach further by acting in a *paracrine* manner to suppress a variety of immune cells that have ventured too close to islands of tumor cells. In the case of IL-10, study of the Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) genome (see Section 3.4) has revealed the presence of an IL-10-like viral gene of clear cellular origin that was acquired by the distant ancestors of the virus. In an earlier chapter, we read that this virus is an important etiologic agent of Burkitt's lymphomas, other lymphomas of the B-cell lineage, and nasopharyngeal carcinomas. It appears that EBV forces an infected cell to release an IL-10-like immunosuppressive cytokine, protecting this cell from attack by cytotoxic immune cells, which serves in turn to preserve the infected host cell in a viable state for an extended period of time while the virus exploits its continued viability to ensure viral proliferation and progeny virus formation.

Tumors host a broad variety of immunosuppressive cell populations. The repertoire of suppressive populations may include one or more of the following cell types: regulatory T cells, tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), tumor-associated neutrophils (TANs), and myeloid-derived suppressor cell (MDSC) populations. Increased numbers of these immunocyte populations provide immunosuppressive environments that are hostile to immune control and elimination of tumor cells. In fact, a subset of B cells, known as regulatory B cells (B_{reg}'s) has recently come to light. Similar to their T_{reg} cousins, B_{reg}'s secrete the immunosuppressive cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β. They have also been found in the tumor microenvironment and are

associated with the suppression of immune responses. Further study will provide more indications of their impact on tumor maintenance and progression and of their utility as prognostic clinical indicators.

As an alternative strategy for immunoevasion, some cancer cells may alter their intracellular biochemistry in order to render themselves intrinsically less vulnerable to cytotoxic T cell attacks. For example, some cancer cells become resistant to being killed following an initial encounter with the FasL death receptor ligand wielded by cytotoxic T cells; they do so by altering their intracellular signaling pathways downstream of their Fas death receptor. This pathway dysregulation results in the inactivation of the extrinsic apoptotic pathway (see Figure 9.31), providing cancer cells with yet another way to escape death.

A related immunoevasive strategy reflects strategies used to escape the major mechanism employed by cytotoxic T cells and NK cells to kill their target cells. Thus, CTLs and NK cells introduce proteases—granzymes—into targeted cells to induce apoptosis through cleavage and the resulting activation of a caspase pro-enzyme involved in triggering this cell death program (see Figure 9.31). Cancer cells can escape this killing mechanism by increasing the levels of certain inhibitor-of-apoptosis proteins (IAPs; see Figure 9.27), which sequester and inactivate key pro-apoptotic caspases, thereby blunting any activation of the extrinsic apoptotic pathway.

To summarize, immune-initiated cytotoxicity can be viewed as yet another physiological stressor experienced by cancer cells during multiple stages of multi-step tumor progression, taking its place alongside hypoxia, intracellular signaling imbalances, and loss of anchorage, all of which force cancer cells to disable their pro-apoptotic signaling pathways. Although extensive and various, the list of immunoevasive strategies explored here should not be considered complete and is likely to be extended in various directions by future research.

The next chapter reveals powerful and still-developing immunotherapies designed to defeat or bypass many of the defenses erected by cancer cells to thwart or avoid immune attack. Like the targeted therapies explored in early chapters, the inspiration for these immunotherapies and the guidance for their development emerged from the increasing and still-developing understanding of basic immunology and cancer immunobiology described in this chapter.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

immunoediting
: Process in which the selective pressure imposed by immune surveillance and attack eliminates strongly immunogenic tumor cells while permitting the survival and outgrowth of those that are weakly immunogenic.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Normally, the immune system displays tolerance, the failure to mount immune responses against self. Because tumor cells are very similar to their normal counterparts, tolerance can be a barrier that must be overcome in order to make an anti-tumor immune response against them.
- Immunocompromised individuals experience elevated levels of various cancers, strongly suggesting that the immune system is continuously monitoring the body's tissues for the presence of tumors and attempting to eliminate them—the process of immunosurveillance.
- There are two types of tumor antigens: tumor-specific antigens (TSA) and tumor-associated antigens (TAAs). Tumor-specific antigens are expressed by some or all of the cells of a given tumor. Tumor-associated antigens are expressed by tumor cells and certain other normal tissues throughout the body; they often reflect the differentiation programs of the tissues in which these tumor cells arose.
- In vertebrates, immunity is provided by the innate immune system and the adaptive immune system, two distinct, but interacting physiological systems. Innate immune responses are triggered by broadly specific pattern-recognition receptors. Adaptive immune responses are triggered by engagement of receptors that are highly specific for a given antigen.
- Two classes of lymphocytes, B lymphocytes (B cells) and T lymphocytes (T cells), are the signature cell types of adaptive immunity. Antibodies, their B-cell receptor counterparts, T-cell receptors and, in complexes with their peptide ligands, MHC-I and MHC-II molecules enable the adaptive immune system to recognize and respond to diverse antigens.
- The extensive diversity of antibodies and T-cell receptors is achieved by the stochastic rearrangement of a few hundred subgenic segments that are inherited in the germ line and can combine almost randomly during the development of B cells and T cells. The resulting molecules, assembled combinatorially, are enormously diverse and generate T cell

and B cell repertoires exceeding 10^9 potential antigen specificities in each individual human.

- The T-cell receptors (TCRs) of the body's major T-cell population do not recognize intact protein antigens but instead respond to complexes of peptide fragments derived from intracellular degradation of peptide fragments presented as complexes with MHC molecules.
- Somatic cells throughout the body routinely present peptide fragments of proteins synthesized within their confines as peptide:MHC class I on their surface. A very few cell types—macrophages, B cells, and most notably, dendritic cells—have the ability to present peptides derived from proteins acquired from outside their confines as complexes of peptide:MHC class II molecules.
- Whether T cells recognize MHC-I–bound or MHC-II–bound peptides is determined by a co-receptor protein, either CD4 or CD8, that is associated closely, but noncovalently, with TCRs on their surface. The co-receptors ensure that the TCR with which they are partnered is directed toward the appropriate MHC molecule. CD8 T cells interact with MHC class I molecules and CD4 T cells interact with MHC class II molecules.
- T cells that have not undergone an encounter with antigen that resulted in their activation are referred to as naive T cells. They are unresponsive, except under the special circumstances designated as priming. Conditions for priming are demanding and include antigenic stimulation, an additional signal called co-stimulation, and the presence of appropriate cytokines. During priming, naive T cells almost always receive antigenic stimulation and co-stimulation from dendritic cells.
- Dendritic cells are able to present peptides on both MHC-I and MHC-II molecules, a distinctive feature of their physiology called cross-presentation, which enables presentation to either naive CD4 or CD8 T cells. Their display of the co-stimulatory ligands, CD80/86, also allows dendritic cells to deliver co-stimulatory signals. Given the presence of appropriate cytokines, this combination of TCR and co-stimulatory signaling, effects the transformation of T cells from the naive state to the state of activation.
- Different functions are assumed by CD8 and CD4 T cells. Cytotoxicity is the function of CD8 T cells, and CD4 T cells are primarily involved

in the positive or negative regulation of other T cells and some other types of immunocytes. CD4 T cells that deliver signals supporting cell functions are referred to as helper T cells (T_H cells) and those that inhibit other immunocytes are called regulatory T cells (T_{reg}'s).

- Regulatory T cells play a key immunoregulatory role by eliminating or suppressing autoreactive T cells. Despite their indispensable role as negative regulators of excessive or autoreactive immune responses, T_{reg}'s can be co-opted by tumors to diminish or block anti-tumor immune responses.
- In addition to many receptor–ligand interactions that induce or intensify immune responses, there are immune checkpoints that negatively regulate immune responses, dampening their intensity and ensuring that they are self-limiting. Two receptors, CTLA-4 and PD-1, are key receptors for the mediation of checkpoint inhibition. Though essential agents of normal immunophysiology, they can also reduce anti-tumor responses to the point that they become ineffective.
- The CTLA-4 and PD-1 mediated checkpoints exert their effects in different anatomical locations. In lymph nodes, the stimulatory effect of engagement of CD28 on T cells with the co-stimulatory ligands, CD80/86, is counterbalanced by engagement of CD80/86 with the inhibitory receptor CTLA-4, preventing excessive T-cell activation. In peripheral tissues, the intensity and duration of the T-cell response is dampened by engagement of the inhibitory receptor PD-1, borne by responding T cells with its PD-L1/2 ligand displayed by other cells within various tissues.
- Natural killer (NK) cells are cytotoxic cells that kill cells that lack proper levels of cell surface MHC class I molecules. Given the strong selective pressure imposed by CTLs, some cancer cells contrive to shut down their display of MHC-I and escape cytotoxic T-cell attack. NK cells provide a bulwark against this strategy. In addition, NK cells are endowed with receptors that can detect the display of certain stress-induced ligands on the surface of cells and kill them.
- NK cells have receptors for the Fc regions of certain antibody classes, allowing them to bind via their FcRs to antibody-coated cells and kill them via the process of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC).

- Macrophages represent a versatile category of phagocytic cells that display a spectrum of phenotypes ranging from the anti-tumor highly phagocytic M1 state to the protumor M2 state that supports vascularization and tissue repair and secretes the immunosuppressive cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β. Macrophages possess Fc receptors and can be induced to kill antibody-targeted cells by antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) or ADCC.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What clinical data and experiments using animal models do you believe provide the most compelling evidence that the immune system plays a significant role in suppressing the appearance of solid tumors?
2. Most of the antigenic differences between normal cells and tumor cells are not displayed on the cell membrane but reside in the cell's interior. Nevertheless, the presence of these antigens, most of which are proteins, are often detected by the immune system and responses are mounted against them. How and on what platforms are specific portions of these interior antigens displayed on the cell surface?
3. Some individuals have congenital defects in antibody production that render them unable to make antibody responses. Despite this deficiency, would you expect many of these individuals to retain the ability to mount many of the most consequential immune responses to cancer? Explain why you answered as you did.
4. The CD4 category of T cells encompasses multiple subtypes of cells. Do any of these make important contributions to the immune response against cancer, and which, if any, would you expect to be a powerful inhibitor of anti-tumor responses? Provide justifications for your responses.
5. Even after tumors come under immune attack, all too often they manage to escape elimination. How would you account for the failures of the immune system to eradicate many of the tumors it recognizes and mounts an initially effective attack against?
6. Adaptive and innate immunity are distinct, but often collaborative, arms of the immune system. Can you describe specific examples that illustrate the harnessing of innate/adaptive collaborative interactions to mount attacks on cancer?
7. Consider the following immune responses: (1) the activation of anti-tumor CD8+ T cells; (2) the activation of anti-tumor CD4 T cells. What effect, if any, would you expect blockade of CTLA-4 by anti-CTLA-4 antibodies to have on either or both of these processes? Justify your response.
8. Tumors often provoke immune responses that result in attacks upon them. However, in many instances these immune attacks fail to

eliminate the tumor and become increasingly ineffective at limiting tumor growth. How would you explain the ability of cancers to evade control or elimination by the immune system?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Cassetta L & Pollard JW (2018) Targeting macrophages: therapeutic approaches in cancer. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov*. 11, 887–903.

Coffelt SB, Wellenstein MD & de Visser KE (2016) Neutrophils in cancer: neutral no more. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 16, 431–446.

Gonzalez H, Hagerling C & Werb Z (2018) Roles of the immune system in cancer: from tumor initiation to metastatic progression. *Genes Dev.* 32, 1267–1284.

He X & Xu C (2020) Immune checkpoint signaling and cancer immunotherapy. *Cell Res.*30, 660–669.

Joffre OP, Segura E, Savina A & Amigorena S (2012) Cross-presentation by dendritic cells. *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 12, 557–569.

Mantovani A, Marchesi F, Malesci A, Laghi L & Allavena P (2017) Tumour-associated macrophages as treatment targets in oncology. *Nat. Rev. Clinical Oncol.* 14, 399–416.

Market E & Papavasiliou FN (2003) V(D)J recombination and the evolution of the adaptive immune system. *PLoS Biol*. 1, e16.

Mauri C & Menon M (2017) Human regulatory B cells in health and disease: therapeutic potential. *J. Clin. Invest.* 127, 772–779.

Miller JS & Lanier LL (2019) Natural killer cells in cancer immunotherapy. *Annu. Rev. Cancer Biol.* 3, 77–103.

Nagarsheth N, Wicha MS & Zou W (2017) Chemokines in the cancer microenvironment and their relevance in cancer immunotherapy. *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 17, 559–572.

Olingy CE, Dinh HQ & Hedrick CC (2019) Monocyte heterogeneity and functions in cancer. *J. Leukoc. Biol.* 106, 309–322.

Plitas G & Rudensky AY (2020) Regulatory T cells in cancer. *Annu. Rev. Cancer Biol.* 4, 459–477.

Schreiber RD, Old LJ & Smyth MJ (2011) Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. *Science* 331, 1565–1570.

Sharonov GV, Serebrovskaya EO, Yuzhakova DV, Britanova OV & Chudakov DM (2020) B cells, plasma cells and antibody repertoires in the tumour microenvironment. *Nat. Rev. Immunol*. 20, 294–307.

Topalian SL, Drake CG & Pardoll DM (2015) Immune checkpoint blockade: a common denominator approach to cancer therapy. *Cancer Cell* 27, 450–461.

Veglia F, Perego M & Gabrilovich D (2018) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells coming of age. *Nat. Immunol.* 19, 108–119.

Wan YY & Flavell RA (2007) 'Yin-yang' functions of TGF-β and Tregs in immune regulation. *Immunol. Rev.* 220, 199–213.

Wculek SK, Cueto FJ, Mujal AM et al. (2020) Dendritic cells in cancer immunology and immunotherapy. *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 20, 7–24.

Wei SC, Duffy CR & Allison JP (2018) Fundamental mechanisms of immune checkpoint blockade therapy. *Cancer Discov.* 8, 1069–1086.

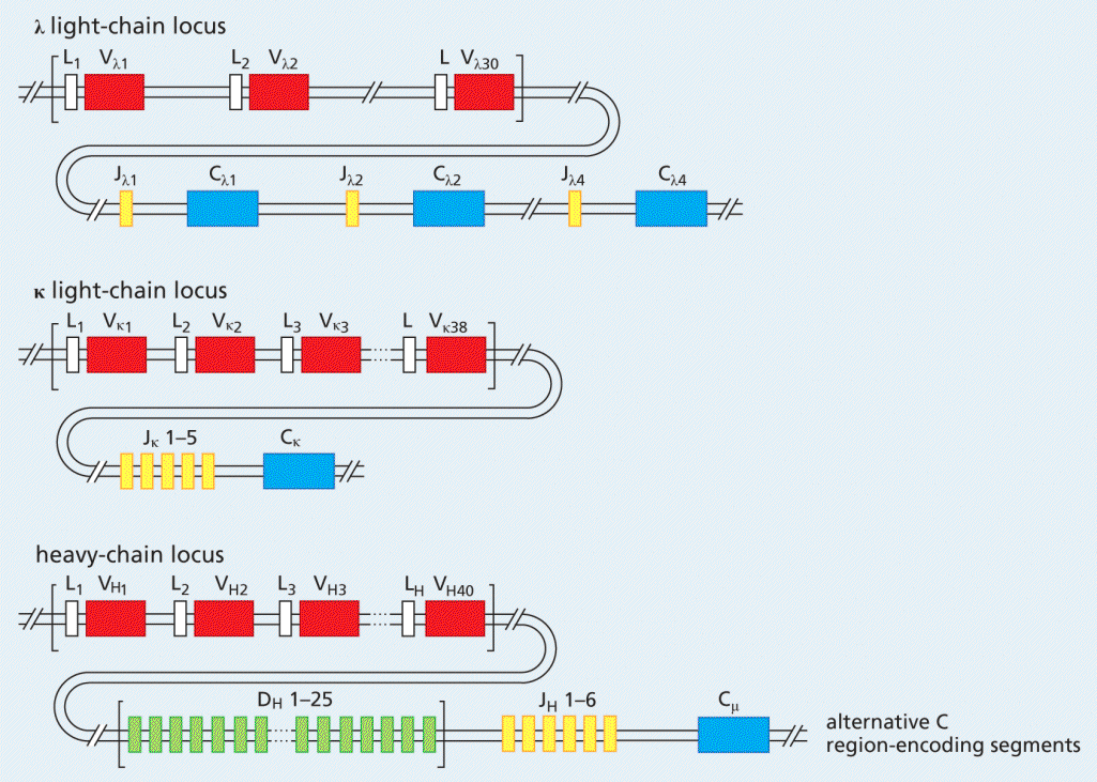
Wing JB, Tanaka A & Sakaguchi S (2019) Human FOXP3+ regulatory T cell heterogeneity and function in autoimmunity and cancer. *Immunity* 50, 302–316.

OceanofPDF.com

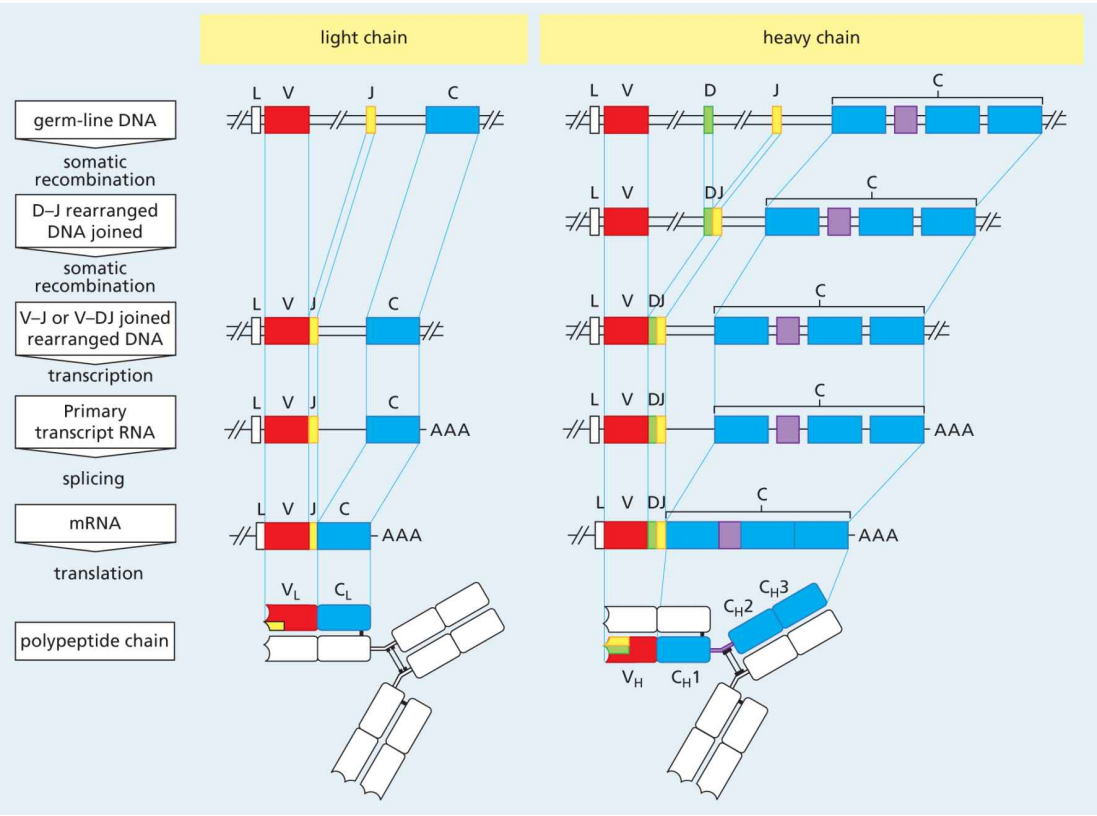
Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 15.1 Antibody and T-cell receptor diversity are generated by somatic rearrangement of germ-line genes

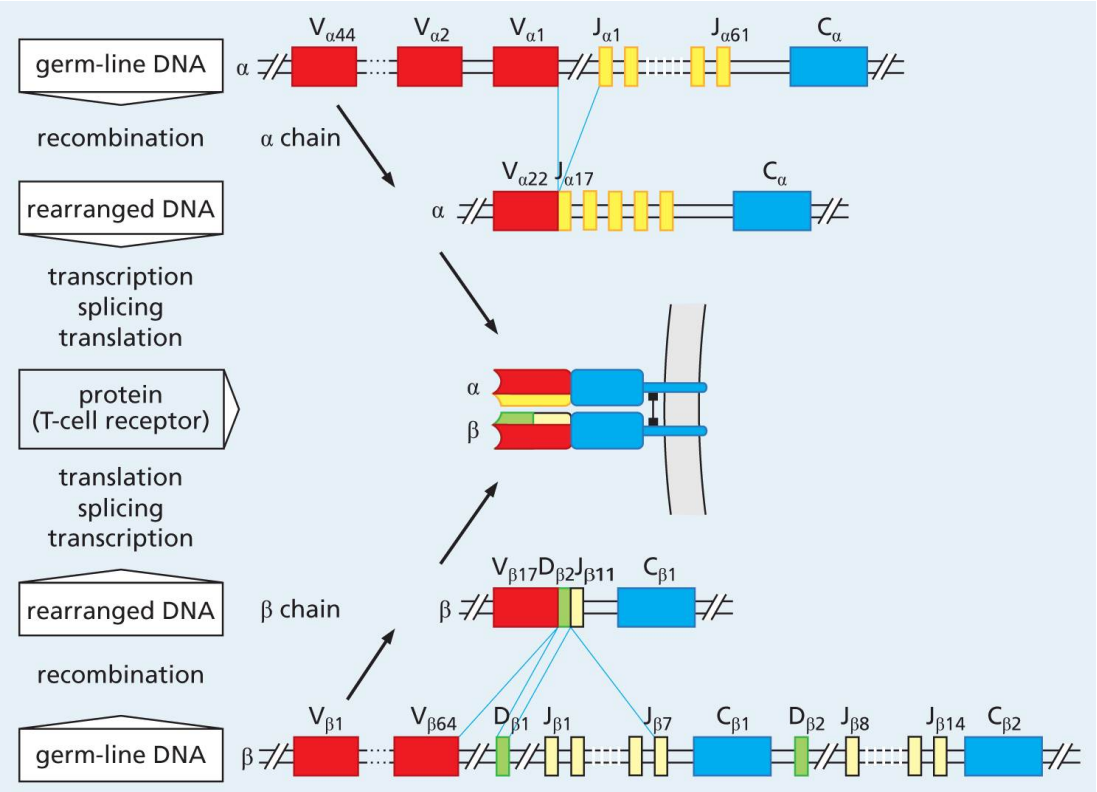
The immunoglobulin (Ig, antibody) genes and the T-cell receptor genes (TCR) generate diverse antigen-combining regions through similar mechanisms involving the rearrangement of preexisting germ-line DNA segments. As shown in Figure 15.6A and B, antibody molecules and B-cell receptors are tetramers of two heavy (H) and two light (L) chains. While only a single heavy-chain-encoding locus exists (**Figure S15.1A**), light chains can be encoded by either of two alternative light-chain genes, termed κ and λ. In humans, each of the light-chain loci (*above*) encodes a series of V segments, ~30 in the case of the V_{λ} locus and ~35 in the case of the V_{κ} locus. A small cohort of J_{λ} and J_{κ} (joining) segments and C (constant) region segments encode the remaining portions of the light chains. The single heavy-chain locus (*below*) is more complex, carrying ~40 V_H, ~25 D_H, and 6 J_H segments and a C_{μ} segment lying to the right. In addition, there are a number of other constant region segments to the right/downstream of C_{μ} (*not shown*). The VJ and VDJ segments in the light and heavy gene loci are responsible for the diverse antigen-combining abilities of immunoglobulins. The L segments (*open rectangles , white*) encode short N-terminal "leader/signal" segments that enable co-translational insertion of nascent polypeptide chains into the endoplasmic reticulum. During the rearrangements that generate functional antibody genes (Figure S15.1B), V, J, and C segments of the light chains (*left*), and V, D, J, and C segments of the heavy chains (*right*), are fused to assemble the coding sequences of these subunits of the mature, functional antibody molecule. Each V, J, and C segment is chosen randomly from the corresponding germ-line repertoire of the V, the J, and the C segments, respectively, resulting in a fused reading frame, such as $V_{\kappa 31}$ $J_{\kappa 2}$ in the case of a kappa light chain, or V_{H17} D_{H11} J_{H3} in the case of a heavy chain. (Not included here are the various L-chain leader oligopeptide segments, which are usually cleaved off during the maturation of antibody proteins. In addition, in the case of the heavy chain locus, are fusions to a number of alternative C_H segments (*right, not shown*), which can result in joining a number of alternative constant regions to a rearranged VDJ variable region; these fusions, the products of C region "switching," create alternative "classes" of antibody molecules, all of which may share the same antigen-binding domain.)


λ light-chain locus
L1 Vλ1
L2 Vλ2
L Vλ30
Jλ1
Cλ1
Jλ2
Cλ2
Jλ4
Cλ4
κ light-chain locus
L1 Vκ1
L2 Vκ2
L3 Vκ3
L Vκ38
Jκ 1–5
Cκ
heavy-chain locus
L1 VH1
L2 VH2
L3 VH3
LH VH40
DH 1–25
JH 1–6
Cμ
alternative C region-encoding segments

(A)


light chain
heavy chain
germ-line DNA
somatic recombination
D–J rearranged DNA joined
somatic recombination
V–J or V–DJ joined rearranged DNA
transcription
Primary transcript RNA
splicing
mRNA
translation
polypeptide chain
L V J C
L V D J C
L V DJ C
AAA
VL CL
VH CH1 CH2 CH3

(B)



(C)

Figure S15.1 The stochastic rearrangements of V region DNA segments creates a broad diversity of antigen-binding receptors and antibodies (A) The antigen-combining domains of the heavy (H) and light (L) antibody chains and B-cell receptors are generated by rearrangements and fusions of variable (V, *red*) and joining (J, *yellow*) DNA segments (in the case of the two light chain loci) and, in the case of the heavy chain locus, of V, diversity (D, *green*) and J segments. Following formation of the DNA segments encoding these antigen-binding domains, the resulting fusion segments are then fused with constant (denoted by C) region-encoding segments (*blue*). The entire repertoires of the C region segments are not illustrated here. (C) A diverse repertoire of T-cell receptors is generated by a similar process (*not shown*) that involves the rearrangement and joining of DNA segments encoding each of the distinct immunoglobulin chains of the T-cell receptor. (Some of the content of this sidebar is based on or modified from K. Murphy, C. Weaver and L. Berg (eds.) *Janeway's Immunobiology, 10th ed*. New York: W. W. Norton, 2022.)

In addition to the rearrangement of germ-line-encoded gene segments described above, additional antibody diversity is provided subsequently by the enzyme-mediated mutation of the DNA segments encoding variable regions of rearranged heavy and light chains. Following antigen stimulation and signals from the follicular subset of CD4 helper T cells (T_{FH}), some B cells undergo the antibody class switching mentioned above and experience a 100,000-fold increase in the mutation rate of their rearranged antibody genes. These mutations are caused by the induction of activation-induced deaminase (AID), a cytidine deaminase of the APOBEC family. Because the mutations occur in somatic cells rather than germ cells and the mutation rates induced within these short regions of genomic DNA are very high, the process is often called somatic hypermutation. Most of the mutations occur within or close to the variable regions of rearranged antibody genes. Some of these mutations lie within the portions of V region genes destined to encode the antigen-combining sites of antibody genes. Some of the AID-induced mutations affect and thereby diversify the binding affinities of the encoded V regions with antigens. Those that increase affinity have significant consequences. Higher-affinity antibodies bind their cognate antigens more tightly, more rapidly, and at lower concentrations of antigen and antibody. Although these attributes, induced by the action of AID, are generally desirable, some of the mutations caused by AID take place inadvertently in other unrelated genes throughout the genome and have the potential to generate mutant proteins that are oncogenic.

A similar scheme of gene rearrangements that operate to generate the αβ chains of the T-cell receptor is illustrated in Figure S15.1C. These two chains are encoded by unlinked genetic loci but are organized on the same principle as the immunoglobulins and participating genetic segments are rearranged by the same molecular machinery. However, T cells do not express AID and therefore, unlike antibody genes, T-cell receptor genes do not undergo somatic hypermutation. (Modified from K. Murphy, C. Weaver and L. Berg (eds.), Janeway's Immunobiology, 10th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2022.)

OceanofPDF.com

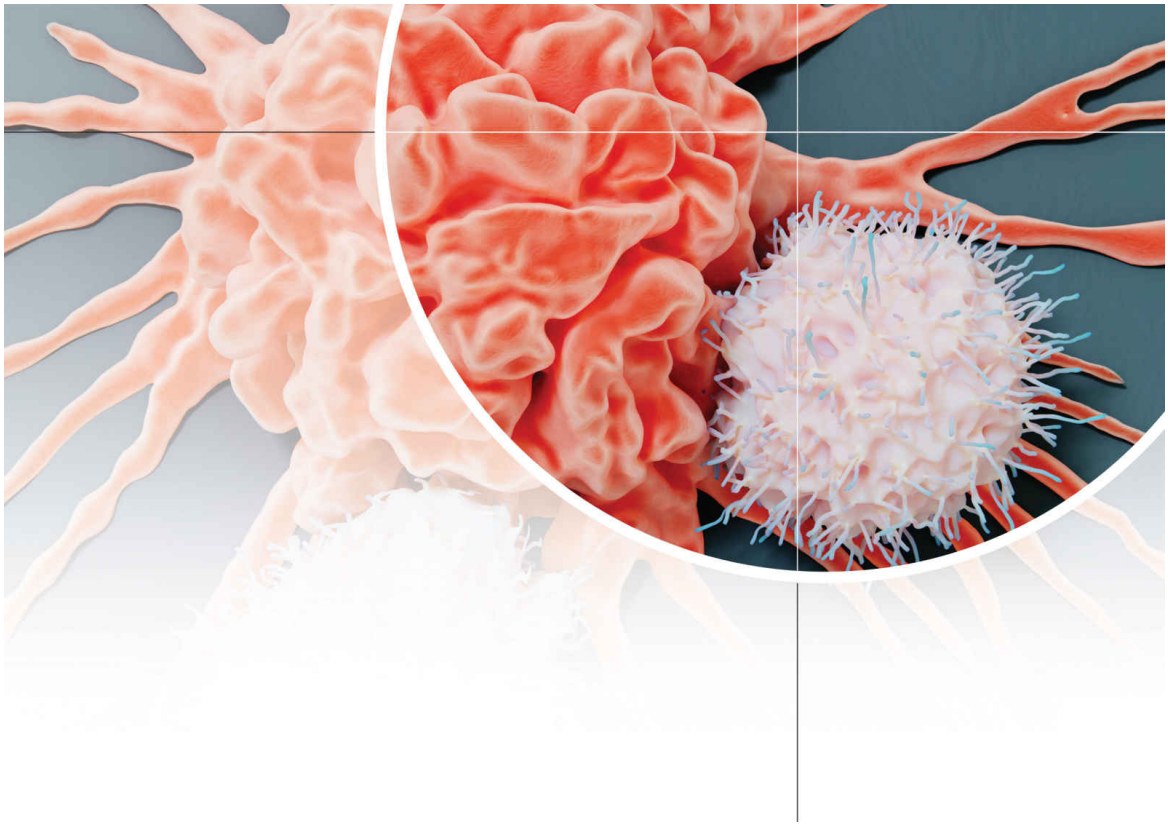
Glossary

activation-induced deaminase
: A cytidine deaminase that introduces point mutations in already-rearranged immunoglobulin genes, preferentially in their V regions, thereby diversifying antigen-binding specificities of the encoded immunoglobulins.

somatic hypermutation
: Enzyme-mediated process, notably that effected by activation-induced deaminase, that creates point mutations in the already-rearranged immunoglobulin genes, largely focused on their V region-encoding segments and generating greatly increased antigen-binding diversity. *See also* **activation-induced deaminase**.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 16
Cancer Immunotherapy



A scanning electron microscope image of a large cell with two smaller cells next to it. The larger cell has an undulating surface and long projections extending outward. The two smaller cells look like cotton balls with short wavy extensions covering their surface.

[I]n animals, ... inheritable genetic changes must be common in somatic cells and a proportion of these changes will represent a step toward malignancy. It is an evolutionary necessity that there should be some mechanism for eliminating or inactivating such potentially dangerous mutant cells and it is postulated that this mechanism is of immunological character.

Macfarlane Burnet, immunologist,1964

As described in the last chapter, research conducted over the past several decades has left us with a rich, detailed accounting of the workings of the immune system. Although much remains to be learned, the existing body of information on immunological functions has provided us with a broad and deep foundation for translation into clinical care, that is, the development of immunotherapies focused on harnessing the powers of the immune system to eliminate clinically diagnosed tumors. At present, the field of cancer immunotherapy is exploding, with hundreds of different immunotherapies being considered or developed, all of which draw directly from the lessons we learned in Chapter 15.

Much of the current enthusiasm for cancer immunotherapies comes from the perception that most of the low-molecular–weight pharmacological treatments of cancer have seemingly reached the limits of what they are capable of providing, and that truly curative therapies will need to be sought from an entirely different therapeutic approach, specifically immunotherapy. This explains the depth and breadth with which cancer immunotherapies are laid out in this chapter.

Drawn in broad strokes, these immunotherapies can be placed into three categories. The most straightforward are those that provoke the immune system to develop reactivity with tumor cells and neutralization of the infectious agents that cause their formation; these protocols proceed via clinical strategies that resemble traditional vaccination by providing antigens that either prevent tumor formation or provoke the development of immunity against already established tumors. A second major strategy can be depicted as passive immunization, in which patients under treatment are supplied with antibodies or cells of various sorts that, for one or another reason, the patients' own immune systems have been incapable of developing on their own.

And finally, the third thrust of modern immunotherapy derives from treatments that reveal otherwise-inapparent immunities that patients' own immune systems have successfully developed but that, for various reasons, have been blocked by various immunosuppressive mechanisms. As we shall see, tumor immunology, including immunotherapy, represents a rapidly advancing field; indeed, it is the most dynamic and innovative area of contemporary cancer research. At present, we have only begun to understand its potential for developing truly effective treatments of neoplastic diseases, many of which have proven resistant to existing therapies.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

passive immunization
: Procedure in which the immune responses of an organism are supplemented or strengthened through the introduction of immunological agents, usually antibodies or immunocytes, of foreign origin.

OceanofPDF.com

16.1 Vaccination can prevent cancer caused by infectious agents

We begin our exploration of immunotherapies with vaccination, immunology's oldest, safest, most widely used, and to date most successful technology. These immunotherapies derive directly from more than two centuries of experience in generating protection against infectious agents via vaccination. Decades of epidemiological, clinical, and laboratory studies have shown that infectious agents are responsible for about 20% of cancers. As shown in **Table 16.1** at least seven viruses, one bacterium, and three parasites have been implicated as etiological agents in cancer pathogenesis. Some of these are directly involved and others play important but indirect roles in oncogenesis. Given the demonstrated power of immunization to neutralize infectious agents, these agents represent attractive targets for immunization undertaken to *prevent* the appearance of the cancers that they cause.

Table 16.1 Infectious agents implicated in human cancer causation

Classification	Infectious agent	Mode of carcinogenesis (mediator)	Human malignancy	Transmission
herpesvirus	EBV	direct (oncogene)	lymphoma; some nasopharyngeal carcinomas	saliva, transfusion, and sexual contact
delta retrovirus	HTLV-1	direct (oncogene)	adult T cell lymphoma	sexual contact, needle sharing and transfusion

Classification	Infectious agent	Mode of carcinogenesis (mediator)	Human malignancy	Transmission
papilloma virus	HPV	direct (oncogene)	cervical cancer, some oropharyngeal, genital and anal cancers	sexual contact
herpesvirus	KSHV (also called HHV8)	direct (oncogene)	Kaposi sarcoma and others	salivary spread in endemic area; sexual spread in nonendemic areas
polyoma virus	MCPyV	direct (oncogene)	skin cancer	skin to skin contact and contact with virus-contaminated surfaces
hepatitis virus	HBV	indirect (chronic inflammation)	liver cancer	transfusion, needle sharing, and sexual contact
hepatitis virus	HCV	indirect (chronic inflammation)	liver cancer	transfusion, needle sharing, and sexual contact

Classification	Infectious agent	Mode of carcinogenesis (mediator)	Human malignancy	Transmission
lentivirus	HIV	(immunosuppression)	increased risk of many cancers, including Kaposi sarcoma, lymphoma, and others	sexual contact and transfusion
bacterium	*H. pylori*	(inflammation)	some stomach cancers and gastric tissue associated lymphomas	perhaps by consuming contaminated water and foods
helminth	*Opisthorchis viverrini*	(generation of oxidizing agents?)	cholangiocarcinoma	consumption of raw or undercooked fish from fresh waters of Southeast Asia
helminth	*Shistosoma hematobium*	(generation of oxidizing agents?)	bladder cancer	Contact with fresh water snails infected with S. hematobium
helminth	*Clonorchis sinensis*	(generation of oxidizing agents?)	cholangiocarcinoma	consumption of raw or undercooked fish from

Classification	Infectious agent	Mode of carcinogenesis (mediator)	Human malignancy	Transmission
				fresh waters of many regions of Asia

EBV, Epstein–Barr virus; HTLV-1, human T cell leukemia virus-1; HPV, human papilloma virus; KSHV, Kaposi sarcoma herpes virus, also known as human herpesvirus 8 (HHV8); MCPyV, Merkel cell polyoma virus; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus.

In fact, all of the infectious agents that are directly involved in driving oncogenesis are viruses. The five known, widely acting oncogenic viruses—HPV, HTLV-1, EBV, MCPyV, and KSHV—all express viral oncoproteins. As argued in Section 8.5, these viruses deploy virus-encoded oncoproteins in order to convert the intracellular environments of infected cells into ones that support efficient viral replication. Accordingly, the evolution of these viruses has been dictated by their need to optimize their mechanisms of proliferation rather than optimizing cell transformation and the formation of tumors. Each of these viruses is considered *directly oncogenic* because one or more of its virus-encoded gene products operates to perturb the intracellular signal transduction machinery, as described previously in Chapters 8 and 9. Central to our thinking here is the notion that the ability of these viruses to transform cells in a fashion that leads to tumorigenesis requires the continued presence of the viral genomes in the descendants of initially infected cells —a mechanism first described in Section 3.3 in the context of Rous sarcoma virus transformation. In the absence of continued expression of virus-encoded oncoproteins, during the earlier stages of tumorigenesis, some virus-transformed cells are likely to revert to a non-neoplastic state.

The other six agents, including two viruses (HBV and HCV), one bacterium (*Helicobacter pylori*), and three flatworm parasites (*Schistosoma haematobium*, *Opisthorchis viverrini*, and *Clonorchis sinensis*), are *indirectly oncogenic*, in that infection by these agents induces localized, persistent inflammation within a tissue, which in turn favors the outgrowth of tumors. The inflammation induced by these agents reflects normal responses by the immune system that are designed to rapidly and effectively eliminate infectious agents; however, because these infections are not successfully cured, chronic localized inflammation ensues, which in turn creates

a hospitable tissue microenvironment for the outgrowth of pre-neoplastic and neoplastic growths, as described in Section 11.13.

These persistent inflammatory states usually feature the continuing release of a variety of tumor-promoting cytokines, chemokines, and prostaglandins as well as the generation of mutagenic reactive oxygen species (ROS; see Section 12.4). This explains why prevention of infections by these agents or their timely eradication from the body can avoid the cancers that they might otherwise cause. In principle, this might be accomplished in either of two ways: the use of antimicrobial drugs, such as antibiotics being employed to eliminate *H. pylori*, or vaccinations, such as those used to confer immunity to future infections by neutralizing various cancer-inducing agents. Importantly, in the case of the class of tumors induced by indirectly oncogenic infectious agents, the clearing of these agents from the body's tissues will not necessarily affect the continued growth and viability of already-established tumors simply because, once formed, these tumors no longer depend on the inflammatory signals that fostered their development in the first place.

Prophylactic vaccines, which are designed to prevent infections by cancer-inducing agents, represent by far the largest group of vaccines currently used in the clinic. If successful, they prevent the formation of the tumors that are caused by these agents. Therapeutic vaccines, in contrast, are used to treat already-established disease; there are very few examples of this type of vaccine employed clinically, in part for reasons described above. When considering and comparing these two alternative approaches, we must keep in mind that, in terms of reducing morbidity and mortality from neoplastic disease, prevention is always vastly more effective than attempts to treat existing disease, sometimes by orders of magnitude.

Two prophylactic vaccines have proven to be highly effective in lowering the incidence of cancers caused by two infectious agents. One of these prevents infection by hepatitis B virus (HBV), the agent responsible for most hepatocellular carcinomas (**Sidebar 16.1**). The other vaccine prevents infection by oncogenic human papillomaviruses (HPVs), the cause of most (~99%) cases of cervical cancer and cancers at other sites as well. Both of these vaccines have had significant impact in reducing the incidence of the cancers caused by the infectious agents they protect against.

Sidebar 16.1 Hepatitis B virus infections led to hepatomas in Taiwanese government workers

Epidemiological studies usually yield outcomes that make it difficult to discern a strong correlation between occasional exposure to certain environmental factors and

a subsequent moderately increased risk of cancer. The incidence of liver cancer, however, varies dramatically throughout the world, making it possible to strongly associate this disease with specific causative factors. In certain parts of the world, including much of Asia—especially China and sub-Saharan Africa—hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs, also known as hepatomas) are one of the leading causes of death due to cancer. In stark contrast, liver cancer ranks 25th as a cause of cancer-related deaths in the United States.

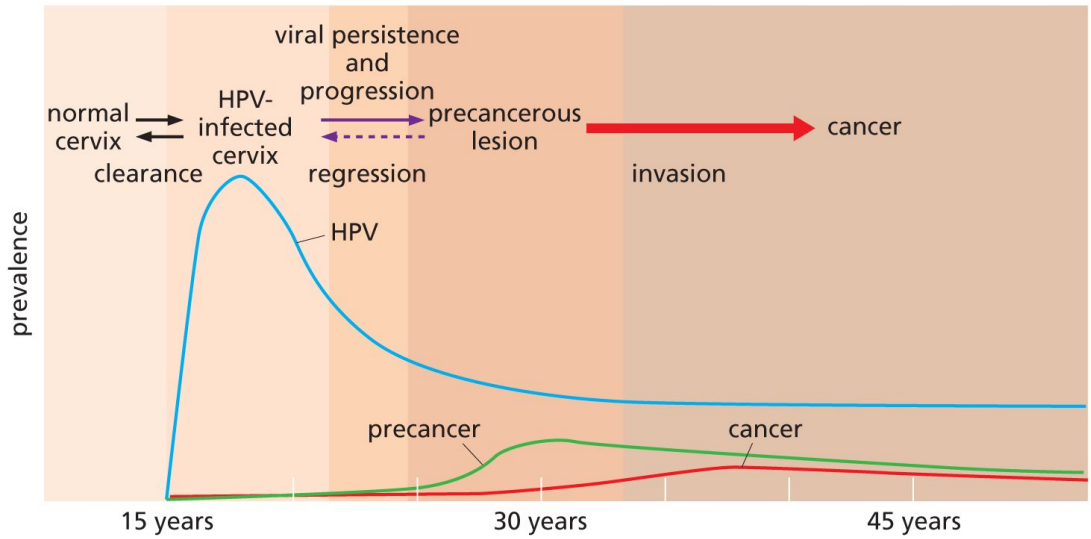
A stunning correlation can be made between hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections and susceptibility to liver cancer. At the beginning of an epidemiologic study undertaken in 1975, the HBV status of 22,707 men in government service in Taiwan was determined by measuring, among other parameters, the presence of viral antigens in their blood. The causes of deaths in this cohort were then chronicled over the next decade. By 1986, death from hepatocellular carcinoma had claimed 152 of the 3454 men who were initially positive for HBV viral antigen, but only 9 of the 19,253 men who were negative for this antigen in their blood. The relative increased risk of dying from his disease if one carried viral antigen in the circulation (which is indicative of an active HBV infection in the liver) was calculated to be 98.4. This means that an individual afflicted with chronic, active HBV infection experienced an almost 100-fold increased risk of contracting and dying from this cancer compared with someone who lacked viral antigen in his liver and was apparently uninfected. These numbers contrast strongly with most epidemiologic correlations made between specific exposures of patients to suspected carcinogens and disease incidence, where relative risk of disease is often only two to threefold, often hovering on the borderline of statistical significance.

OceanofPDF.com

16.2 Vaccination against human papillomaviruses prevents cervical cancer

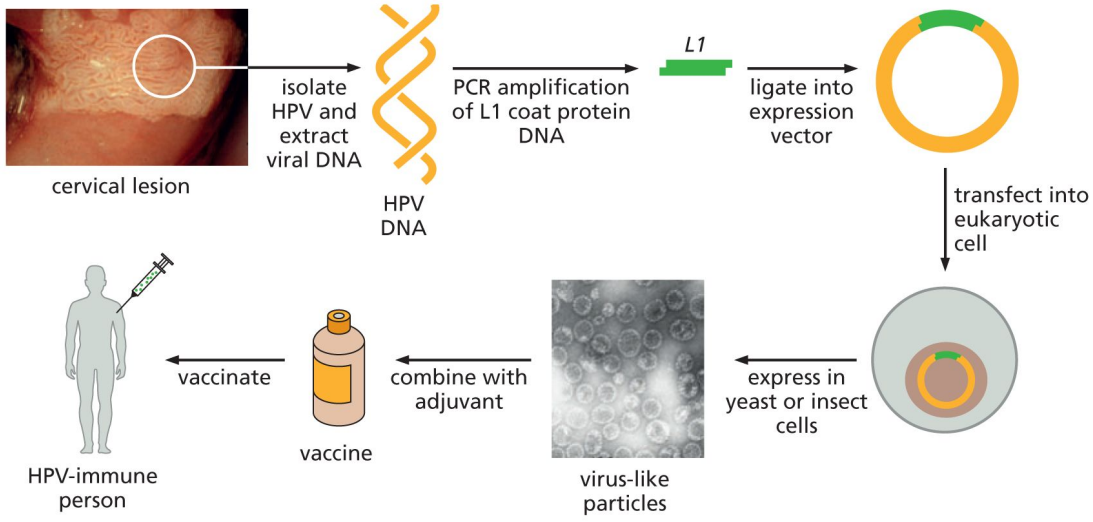
Because the oncogenic effects of HPVs are direct rather than indirect, we will examine vaccination strategies to prevent HPV infection in some detail. HPVs represent a major human carcinogen, being sexually transmitted and responsible for at least 99% of all cervical cancers and about 4.5% of total cancer incidence worldwide. In addition to cervical carcinoma, other anogenital cancers (88% of carcinomas of the anus, 25% of the vulva, 78% of the vagina, and 50% of the penis) and a significant fraction of head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCC) can be traced back to HPV infections. In the United States, the numbers of HPV-linked oropharyngeal carcinomas (OPCs), a subset of HNSCCs, now exceed the numbers of cervical cancers diagnosed annually. Although more than 150 distinct HPV types have been identified, only 12 of these have been associated with cervical cancer and other HPV-induced cancers, with just two HPV types—HPV16 and HPV18—being responsible for 75% of HPV-induced cancer.

Epidemiological studies demonstrate that in the United States, the prevalence of HPV infection in females increases rapidly in the mid-teens, a consequence of the onset of sexual activity (**Figure 16.1A**). Many years elapse between the times of infection and the progression to cancer by the small proportion of HPV-infected people who actually develop clinically detectable cancers. By now it has become clear that vaccination to prevent infection should occur in boys and girls during childhood or early adolescence, at a time before men (the vectors of the disease) and women become sexually active.



A graph displays the prevalence of and progression of H P V infections over time. There are five phases. A normal cervix can be infected with H P V. If clearance occurs, it returns to a normal cervix. If viral persistence and progression occurs, a precancerous lesion forms. If regression occurs, the cervix will return to normal. If invasion occurs, it becomes cancer. On the x axis is age from 10 to 50 years. From 10 to 15 years there is no H P V. From 15 to 22 years, prevalence of H P V increases rapidly to a peak at 18 years and then starts to decline. Prevalence of precancer and cancer is low. Prevalence of H P V continues to decline and plateaus at a moderate level around age 30. This is also when the prevalence of precancer peaks. The prevalence of cancer peaks around age 37 but is still lower than the prevalence of H P V and precancer.

(A)



A diagram shows the production and implementation of anti-H P V vaccines. H P V is isolated from a cervical lesion and the viral D N A is extracted. From the H P V D N A, P C R amplification of the L 1 coat protein is performed. This is ligated into an expression vector that is transfected into a eukaryotic cell. The vector is expressed in yeast of insect cells that produce virus like particles. These particles are combined with an adjuvant to make a vaccine. The vaccine is used to vaccinate a person, rendering them immune to H P V.

(B)

Figure 16.1 Prevention of HPV infections More than 99% of human cervical carcinomas are caused by human papillomavirus (HPV) infections, which has led to the development of multiple anti-HPV vaccines that block viral infections and thereby prevent this cancer. (A) The natural history of HPV and cervical cancer. In women, the prevalence of transient HPV infection (*blue curve*) begins in the early teens and peaks during the 20s, paralleling the initiation of sexual activity. Cervical precancerous conditions (*green curve*) begin to appear approximately 10 years later. The peak prevalence of invasive cancers (*red curve*) is seen between ages 40 and 50. The development of precancerous lesions depends on the persistence of viral infection, because viral oncogenes and encoded oncoproteins are essential for the progression of the precancerous lesions to cancer and in many cases remain important for the growth and maintenance of the resulting cancers. (B) Anti-HPV vaccines were produced by extracting DNA from the virions of various HPV strains, and in each case the segment encoding L1, the major capsid protein, was amplified by PCR using specific primers; the amplified DNA was ligated into an expression vector and introduced into yeast cells for protein production. The resulting L1 protein assembles spontaneously into virus-like particles (VLPs), which are then introduced together with a suitable adjuvant (a substance that enhances the immune response) to formulate a vaccine that is subsequently injected into humans. (A, adapted from M. Schiffman & P.E. Castle, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 353:2101–2104, 2005. With permision from Massachusetts Medical Society. B, adapted from I.H. Frazer, G.R. Leggatt & S.R. Mattarollo, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 29:111–138, 2011. With permission from Annual Reviews.)

The small genome of HPV (see Section 3.4) limits the number of proteins encoded by HPV to the capsid proteins and several other proteins that foster the replication of its DNA genome. L1, the more abundant of HPV's capsid proteins, can be induced to assemble into virus-like particles (VLPs) *in vitro* in the absence of viral DNA and other capsid proteins. These particles are immunogenic and, upon injection, induce neutralizing antibodies, which has been exploited for the development of a variety of vaccines against HPV (Figure 16.1B). The VLP-based vaccines are safe because the injected vaccine virions lack the viral DNA needed for viral replication; at the same

time, they are capable of inducing a strong protective immune response because the VLPs display the L1 target antigen in a stereochemical configuration that is virtually identical to the way it is displayed by intact virus particles.

The effectiveness of the VLP-based vaccine strategy has been repeatedly demonstrated in large clinical trials, including tests of versions of the vaccine that involve L1 capsid proteins (and resulting VLPs) from an increasing number of HPV types. Although 70% of cervical cancer is caused by just two types, HPV 16 and HPV 18, immunizations against additional virus types have been added with each successive iteration of the vaccine, eventually including VLPs produced by HPV types 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58; these additional HPV types are known to make modest but real contributions to the causation of cervical cancer. In addition, VLPs from HPV types 6 and 11 antigens have been included in these polyvalent vaccines because these types cause anal and genital warts. In 2014, the FDA approved Gardisil9^{TM}, a nonavalent vaccine containing VLPs made by all nine of these HPV types. This vaccine is 96.8% effective in preventing cervical cancer.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

polyvalent
: Having multiple distinct reactivities, such as multiple reactive chemical groups within a single molecule or multiple antigens administered together in a single vaccine.

OceanofPDF.com

16.3 Therapeutic vaccination is a potential treatment for cancer

An alternative strategy for developing anti-cancer vaccines holds the promise of treating established tumors by developing immune recognition of cancer cells rather than the agents that previously caused them. As we read in Section 15.7, the observation that CD8+ cytotoxic T cells can develop the ability to recognize and lyse cancer cells displaying certain antigens has encouraged attempts to use therapeutic vaccination to induce potent anti-tumor responses. In these cases, vaccination is accomplished by administration of specific tumor antigens under conditions that provoke adaptive immune responses.

In principle, the more general strategy of targeting already-formed cancer cells of both viral and nonviral origin offers the advantage that it enables attacks on both primary tumors and metastatic colonies disseminated throughout the body of a cancer patient. Furthermore, should cancers return after being successfully controlled and caused to regress, memory anti-tumor immune responses offer the potential to recognize and thwart such clinical relapses. Despite the appeal of immunization to treat existing cancers, significant obstacles have blocked the path to its widespread use in clinical practice. The most important of these involve the mechanisms of immune escape and evasion discussed in Section 15.13, some of which derive from the ability of tumors to hide within immunosuppressive microenvironments that they assemble around themselves.

Nonetheless, despite clear and formidable challenges, a number of efforts have been launched to develop effective therapeutic cancer vaccines against established tumors. These fall into one of two major strategies: direct delivery of antigen and delivery of antigen loaded on dendritic cells. Direct delivery can provide a wide variety of putative tumor antigens and has the appeal of simplicity. However, it is totally dependent on *in vivo* host processes to perform the key steps of antigen uptake and presentation by professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs). The alternative involves the loading of dendritic cells or dendritic-like cells *ex vivo* and their subsequent delivery to the patient in order to ensure the *in vivo* presentation of antigens by cells capable of activating T-cell-mediated anti-tumor immune responses.

Direct delivery uses a variety of vaccination strategies to provoke tumor antigen responses. These include injection of (1) the antigenic protein or peptide directly into the tumor or the systemic circulation, (2) the RNA encoding this antigen, or (3) the DNA encoding this RNA. While direct injection of the protein antigen represents the

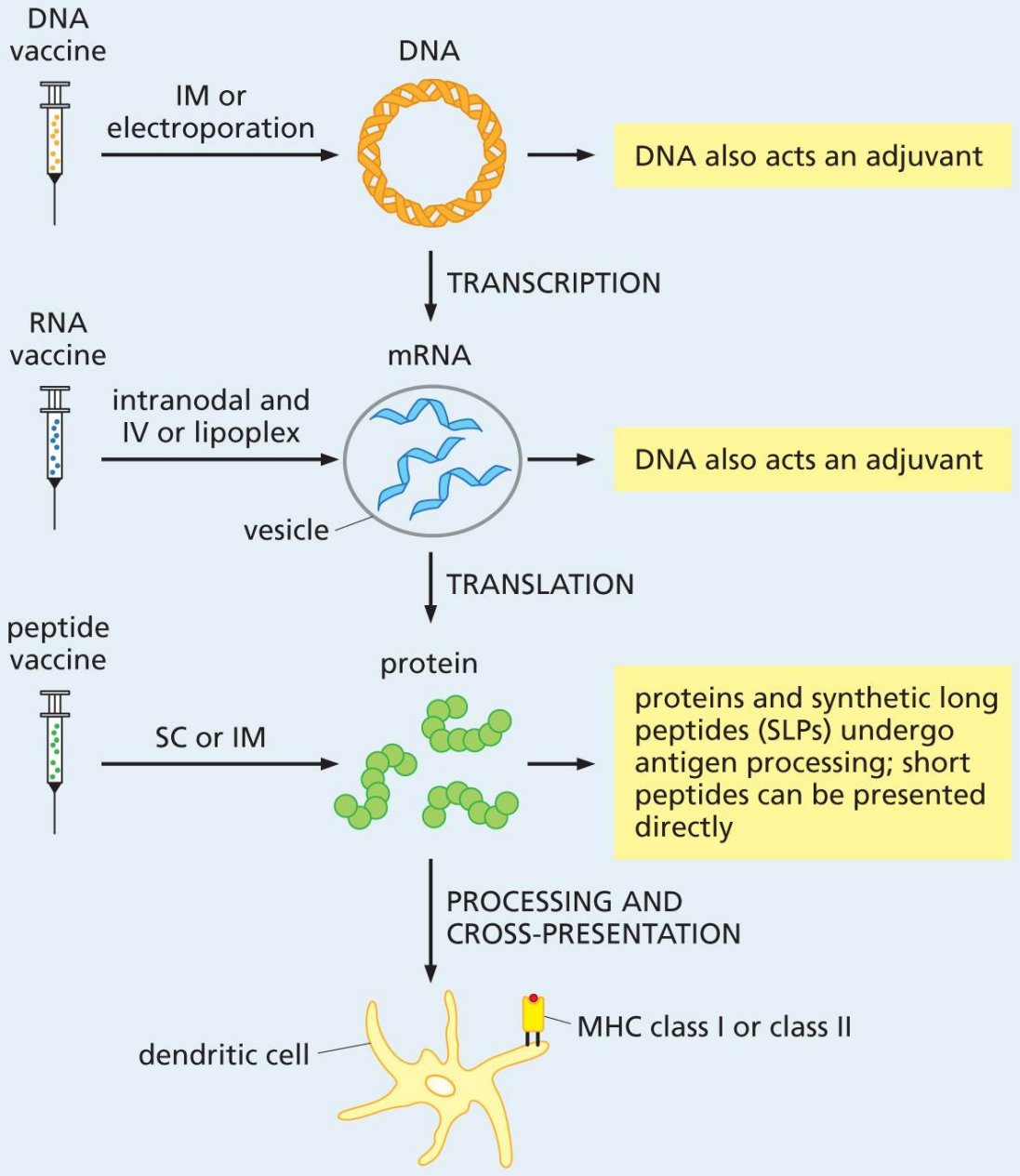
most straightforward approach, the use of RNA or DNA has certain advantages. Transfection with either RNA or DNA makes it possible to include in the vaccine inoculum other molecular templates that encode an adjuvant protein, such as a cytokine, in addition to the target antigen. Although promising RNA-based cancer vaccines have begun to appear (**Sidebar 16.2**), there may also be clinical situations in which more stable DNA vaccines have advantages over the more labile RNA vaccines.

Sidebar 16.2 RNA vaccination shows promise for the treatment of melanoma

A variation on the RNA vaccine technology that has been deployed so effectively to generate highly efficacious coronavirus vaccines shows promise for therapeutic cancer vaccination. Melanoma patients, whose tumors had progressed despite previous treatment and expressed at least one of a set of melanoma antigens, specifically NY-ESO-1, MAGE-A3, TPTE, or tyrosinase, were given a vaccine composed of mRNAs that encoded all four antigens. In an early-stage clinical trial, partial responses (shrinkage of a tumor) were seen in 26% of a cohort of 38 trial enrollees, all of whom were afflicted with unresectable stage III or IV melanomas. Moreover, the vaccine stimulated antigen-specific responses in both CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell populations.

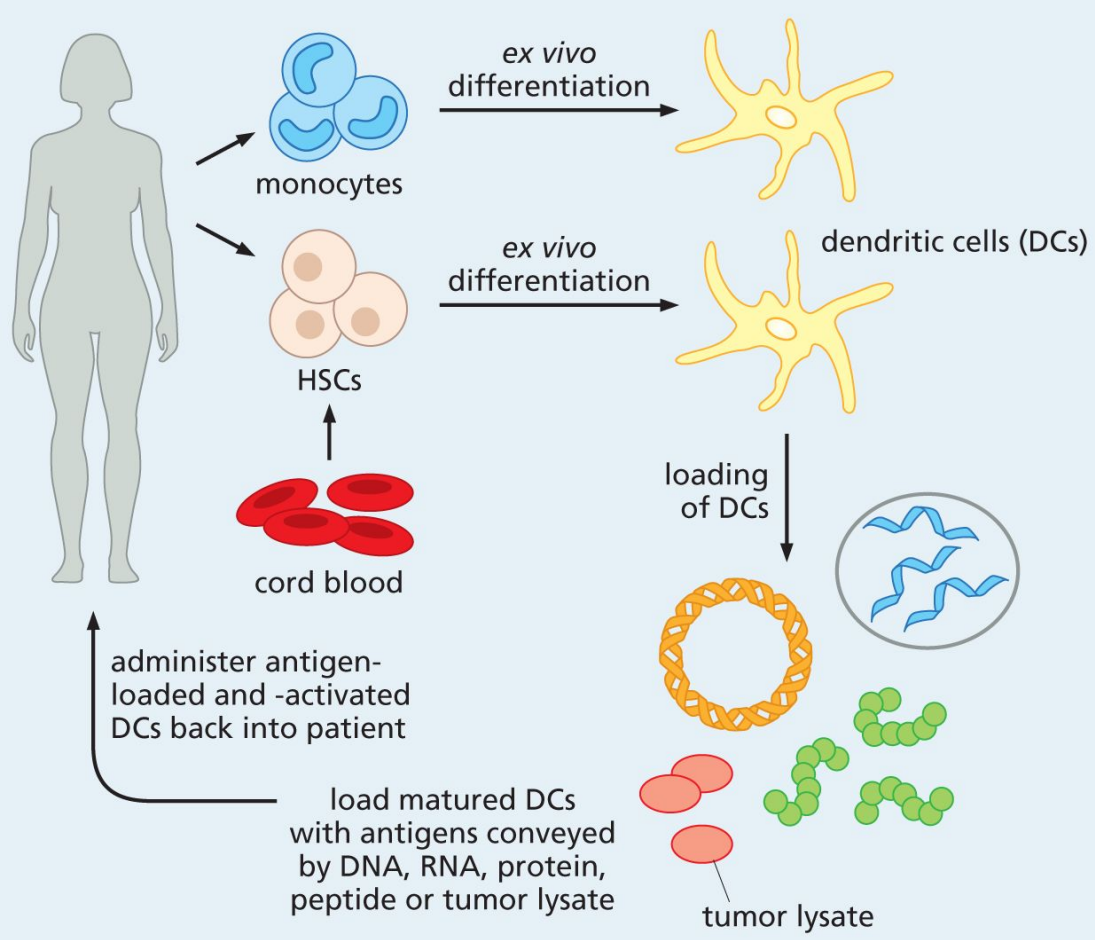
Strikingly, in some enrollees, the levels of antigen-specific CD8+ T-cell clones reactive with one of the vaccine-encoded antigens rose over the course of 8 weeks from undetectable levels prior to immunization to levels approaching 10% of circulating CD8+ T cells. Observations like these have encouraged investigation of the possibility that the addition of an appropriate immune checkpoint inhibitor (described in Section 16.9) may further increase the clinical efficacy of certain mRNA-based therapeutic cancer vaccines.

At this point the development of RNA-based therapeutic cancer vaccines is still in its early stages, and future work will surely extend exploration of this approach to cancer-specific tumor antigens. Efforts will be made to target established tumor antigens, such as the E6 and E7 oncoprotein drivers present in cancers of HPV etiology, notably cervical cancer and some head-and-neck squamous carcinomas (see Section 16.2). In addition, mutations present in tumor cell genomes, such as the point mutations that create Ras oncoproteins and thus potential neoantigens, come to mind as attractive targets of future vaccine development. Finally, the mRNA vaccine technologies developed in the context of anti-COVID vaccine manufacture make them well suited to the fabrication of personalized cancer vaccines targeting the neoantigen repertoires of individual patients. Indeed, a variety of strategies for vaccination against tumor antigens, including neoantigens, are under exploration (**Figure 16.3**).



A depiction of three different delivery routes for Direct presentation of a peptide antigen. The first involves subcutaneous or intramuscular injection of a peptide vaccine. Once delivered, proteins and synthetic long peptides undergo antigen processing; short peptides can be presented directly. PROCESSING AND CROSS-PRESENTATION by dendritic cells then follows, where the presentation uses M H C class 1 or 2. The second delivery route involves intranodal and I V or lipoplex administration of an R N A vaccine. Once arrived in a vesicle, the m R N A can undergo translation to a protein, and the rest proceeds as in route 1. D N A can also act as an adjuvant. The third delivery route involves intramuscular injection or electroporation.

The D N A undergoes translation to m R N A, and the rest proceeds as in route 2. D N A can also act as an adjuvant.
(A)



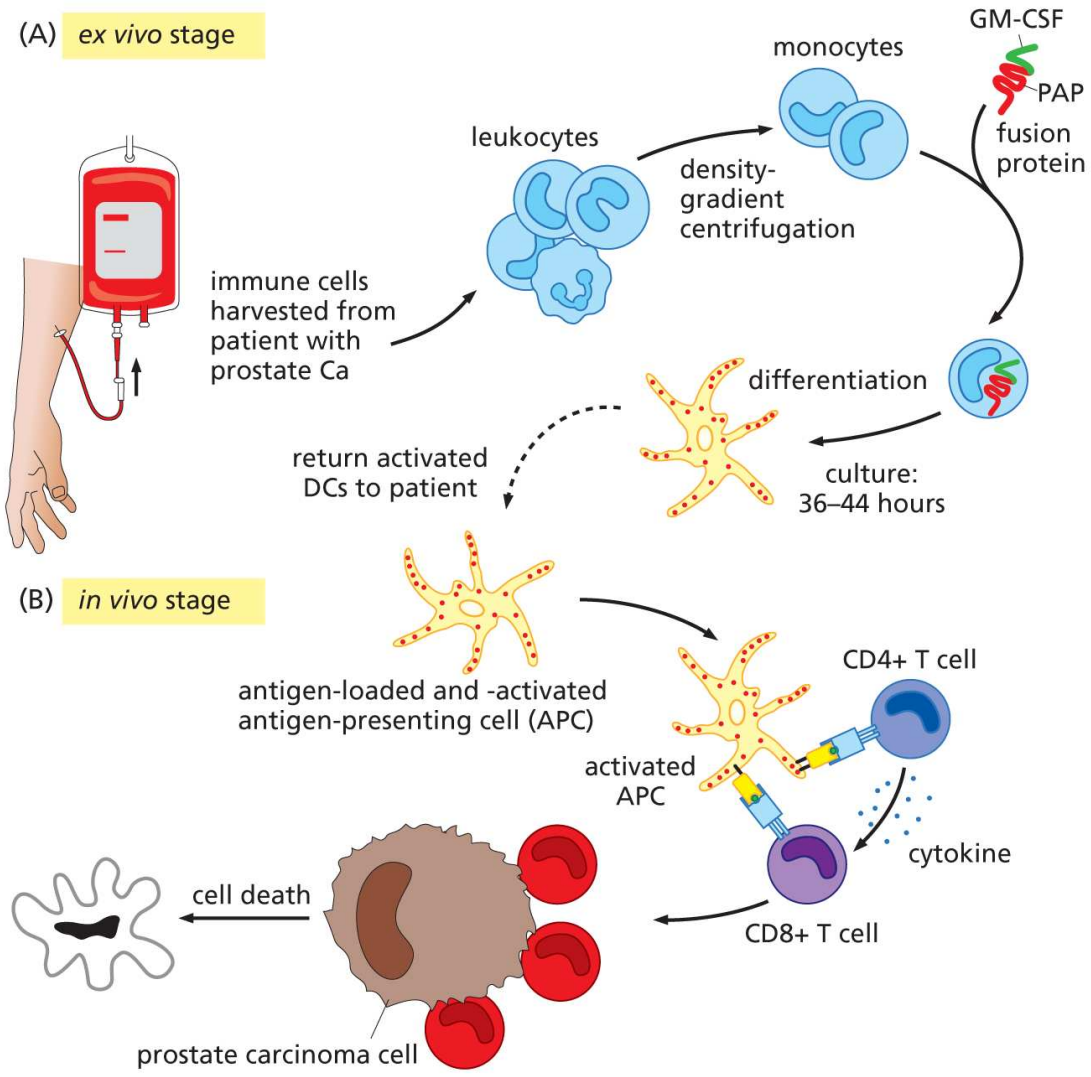
A cycle that begins with monocytes being extractes from a human patient, or with hematopeoietic stem cells being extracted from a human patient or from cord blood. The chosen cells undergo ex vivo differentiation. After the resulting dendritic cells mature, they are loaded with D N A, R N A, protein, peptide or tumor lysate. Once activated, the cells are administered back into the patient, completing the cycle.

(B)

Figure 16.3 Delivery platforms for cancer vaccines Antigen delivery strategies for cancer vaccines fall into two broad categories—direct delivery of antigen or agents encoding it to the patient's tissues and delivery by antigen-loaded dendritic cells. (A) Direct presentation of peptide antigen can be accomplished through three alternative routes. Direct delivery can be accomplished by injection of

antigen-encoding DNA or RNA, or by injection of protein itself or a synthetic long peptide (SLP) derived from it. With any of these three alternative delivery routes, the antigen can be processed to peptides in antigen-presenting dendritic cells (DCs). The machinery of cross-presentation by the DCs, which function as APCs, allows presentation of some peptides on MHC-I to CD8 T cells and presentation of some others on MHC-II to CD4 T cells. (B) Antigen-loaded dendritic cells can also be used in lymphoid tissues to deliver peptide antigen fragments in a three-step process. The first step involves induced differentiation *ex vivo* of host monocytes or hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) into dendritic cells. Second, antigen-encoding construct is delivered to (loaded on) dendritic cells (*lower right*). Third, the resulting antigen-loaded DCs are infused back into the host. Abbreviations: IM = intramuscular, IV = intravenous injection, SC = subcutaneous injection, lipoplex = liposome-based and RNA delivery particles. (Adapted from M. Saxena, S.H. van der Burg, C.J.M. Melief et al., *Nature Rev. Cancer* 21:360–378, 2021. With permission from Nature.)

While lacking the simplicity of direct delivery, antigen-loaded antigen-presenting cells were used to develop the first therapeutic cancer vaccine to receive approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). This vaccine, Sipuleucel-T, was developed for the treatment of prostate cancer. This particular vaccine strategy, schematized in **Figure 16.2**, while delivering only limited clinical benefit, has translated the concept of therapeutic vaccination into actual clinical practice.



A diagram shows the development of a therapeutic vaccination strategy for prostate cancer. Part A is of the ex vivo stage. Blood is drawn and immune cells are harvested from a patient with prostate cancer. These leukocytes are processed via density-gradient centrifugation to isolate monocytes. A fusion protein consisting of PAP and G M C S F is inserted into the monocyte. Differentiation occurs in a culture over 36 to 44 hours. The activated D Cees are returned to the patient. Part B is of the in vivo stage. The antigen loaded and activated antigen presenting cell, or A P C, binds to C D 4 plus T cells which release cytokines and transforms into a C D 8 plus T cell. These cells then bind to the prostate carcinoma cell and trigger cell death.

Figure 16.2 Development of therapeutic vaccination strategy for prostate cancer This therapeutic vaccination involves two stages, the first *ex vivo* and the second *in vivo*. (A) *Ex vivo* stage: An immunizing antigen is produced by fusing a cDNA encoding granulocyte–macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF)

and a second cDNA encoding prostatic acid phosphatase (PAP). The PAP (*red*)/GM-CSF (*green*) fusion protein generated is introduced into a cancer patient's monocytes. The GM-CSF portion of the fusion protein induces the differentiation of monocytes into antigen-presenting cells (APCs). The PAP portion corresponds to a prostate-specific antigen that is widely expressed in prostate carcinoma cells. PAP undergoes antigen processing in the monocyte-derived APCs, resulting in loading of PAP peptide fragments onto MHC proteins. This population of monocytes and induced APCs is infused into the cancer patient. (B) *In vivo* stage: Following their introduction into the patient, these antigen-loaded and -activated APCs present antigen to CD4 (*blue*) and CD8 (*purple*) T cells, leading in turn to the activation of PAP-specific CD4 and CD8 T cells. Cytotoxic CD8 (*red*) cells are shown engaging and killing a PAP-expressing prostate cancer cell (*brown*). (Adapted from J.A. Garcia, *Ther. Adv. Med. Oncol*. 3:101–108, 2011. With permission from SAGE.)

As much a process as a product, preparing the Sipuleucel-T vaccine involves the harvesting of peripheral blood mononuclear cells from a prostate cancer patient. These cells are then activated in culture by exposing them to recombinant human GM-CSF molecules that have been chemically linked to human prostatic acid phosphatase (PAP), an antigen that is expressed at elevated levels in advanced prostate carcinomas. The GM-CSF portion of the hybrid PAP-GM-CSF protein binds as a ligand to cognate GM-CSF receptors displayed by the patient's monocytes and induces their differentiation into antigen-presenting dendritic cells (DCs). At the same time, some of the receptor-bound hybrid protein–ligand molecules, like many receptor–ligand complexes, are internalized into these DCs, where they undergo proteolysis and processing for subsequent antigen presentation on MHC molecules.

Prostate cancer patients are infused with the resulting *ex vivo* differentiated, antigen-loaded DCs, which should then migrate to the recipient's lymphoid tissues. Once arrived in these tissues, these DCs, using their cross-presentation powers (see Section 15.7), should present resulting peptide antigens—notably those derived from cleavage of PAP—via their MHC class II molecules to CD4+ helper T cells and via their class I molecules to prime the naive CD8+ T cells. Among other consequences, this antigen presentation should result in the generation and proliferation of PAP-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) in the patient's lymphoid tissues, which thereafter have the potential to attack prostate cancer cells displaying the PAP protein antigen. To be sure, normal prostate cells will be targeted as well, but other cell types will be spared from PAP antigen-specific attack.

Sipuleucel-T is described here largely because of the interesting logic that led to its development and introduction into the clinic. In reality, the clinical benefit that it offers has been modest, with increases in time to progression and overall survival of several

months. At present it is difficult to know whether similar strategies will prove useful in developing immunotherapies that yield truly striking responses in patients afflicted with a variety of other cancer types.

Several factors will be important in determining the degree to which these and similar vaccines are successful. These include the target antigen's degree of foreignness, the widespread expression of the target antigen within a tumor, and whether its proteolytic cleavage gives rise to peptides that can be effectively presented by the MHC molecules displayed on the surface of a patient's cells.

Also, in the case of tumor antigens that are formed as a consequence of somatic mutations, the identity of the affected gene—whether it is a driver or passenger gene—will be a crucial determinant of success (see Section 11.6). Recall that continued expression of a mutant driver gene is generally critical to ongoing tumor growth and therefore cannot be shut down by cancer cells as an immunoevasive maneuver without incurring the cost of reducing their fitness. In contrast, cancer cells can indeed shut down expression of a mutant passenger gene without paying a fitness price in terms of their own proliferation or survival, thereby evading further immune attack and resulting in the rebound of a tumor's growth.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

time to progression

The period between inception of a treatment and the subsequent progression of a tumor under treatment to a stage of worse clinical presentation or higher stage of malignancy.

OceanofPDF.com

16.4 Passive immunization with antibodies can be used to treat cancer

The immunotherapeutic strategies described above are focused on energizing the immune system to deploy its humoral and cellular arms to attack targeted tumor cells. An alternative and often more productive strategy is to provide a patient with antibody molecules that have been formed outside the patient's body, that is, to supplement or replace limited endogenous immune responses by providing cellular agents or immune molecules that arise elsewhere. (In fact, a form of passive immunization operates naturally during gestation, when the immune system of the developing fetus is augmented by maternal antibodies acquired via placental transfer; similarly, in the first postnatal years, the immune systems of the very young are strengthened and diversified by antibodies supplied via maternal milk.)

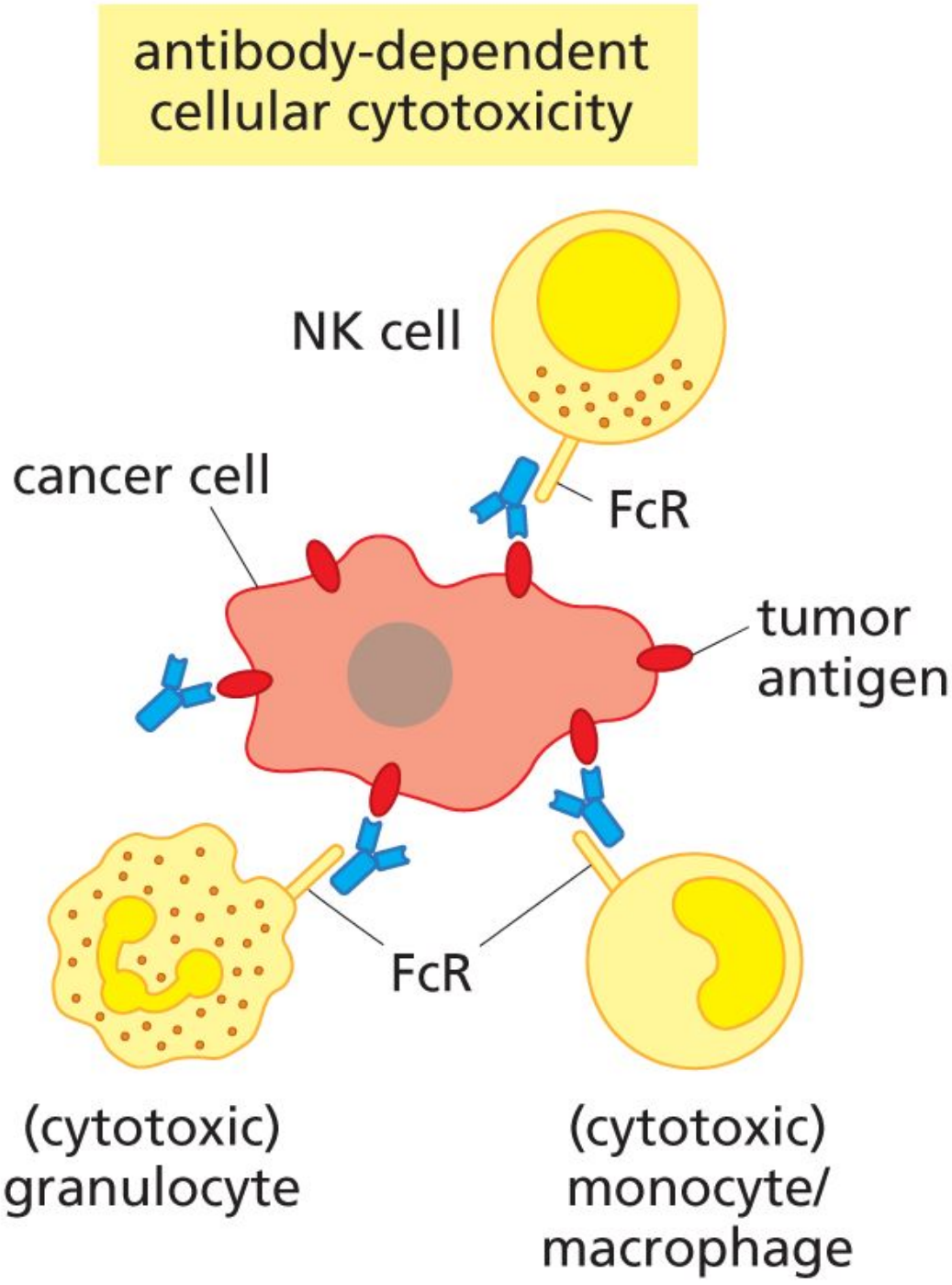
To date, antibody-based passive immunization technologies have yielded the most successful and diverse immunotherapies. The power of antibody-mediated attacks on cancer cells derives from the specificity and high affinity of antigen–antibody reactions and the many weeks-long persistence of introduced antibodies in a patient's circulation.

The advent of technologies for the manufacture of monoclonal antibodies (moAbs) has made the generation of homogeneous populations of antibody molecules routine (**Supplementary Sidebar 16.1**). Unlike the heterogeneous mixtures of antibodies generated during the natural immune response, solutions of moAbs contain antibodies that are, at the molecular level, identical to one another. Moreover, moAb technology makes it possible to generate antibodies of virtually any desired specificity. Equally important, recombinant DNA technology has enabled the reengineering of antibody molecules, making them substantially more effective and versatile, even creating, as we will see, highly useful antibody-like molecules that do not occur in nature.

In more detail, the use of therapeutic moAbs offers two alternative strategies for attacking cancer cells. Some antibodies exert their anti-tumor activity directly by binding to tumor cells and killing them or, more commonly, impairing their further proliferation. Others act indirectly by modifying the behavior of components of the tumor microenvironment in ways that lead to the impairment or death of tumor cells. Thus, such indirectly acting moAbs may target certain cells or factors that are essential for tumor survival and progression without targeting the tumor cells themselves.

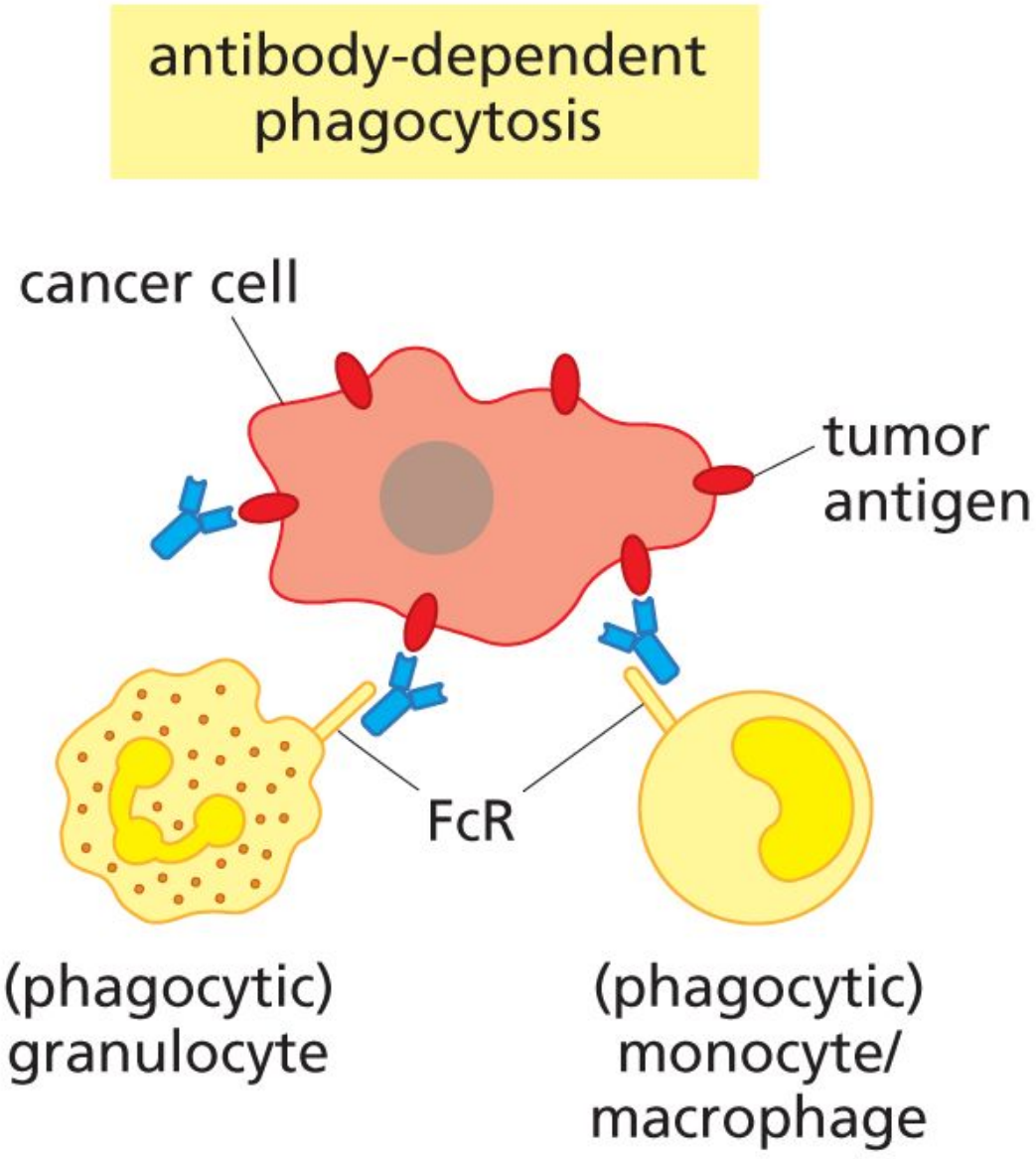
There are actually five distinct ways in which antibodies, such as moAbs, can bind directly to antigens displayed on the surface of targeted cancer cells and thereafter provoke the death of these cells. In all these strategies, the critical antigens are displayed directly on the plasma membrane rather than being presented by the MHC-I/II molecules described in Section 15.6.

Several of these treatments involve recruitment of cellular agents of the innate immune system that can recognize cell-bound antibody molecules, doing so by recognizing the Fc constant region of the already-bound antibody molecules. Such Fc-dependent attacks arise because cellular components of the innate immune system, specifically natural killer (NK) cells, macrophages, and neutrophils, naturally display Fc receptors (FcRs), which specifically recognize and bind to the Fc regions of certain subclasses of immunoglobulin gamma (IgG) molecules that have previously bound to the surfaces of cells. Once these cell-bound IgG molecules are recognized and bound by any one of these three classes of innate immune cells (via the various FcRs displayed by these cells), the process termed antibody-dependent cellular toxicity (ADCC) is triggered and the targeted cells, in our case cancer cells, are killed by the cytotoxic powers of the attacking immune cells (**Figure 16.4A**).



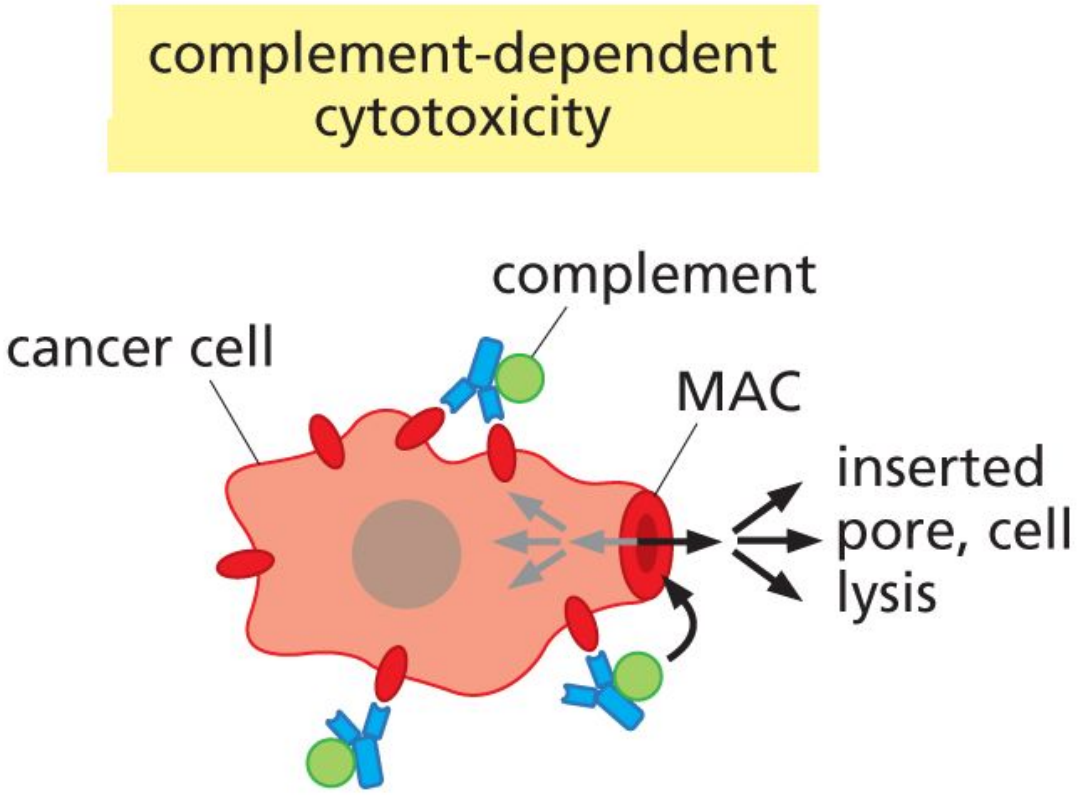
Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. The cancer cell is attacked by a natural killer cell, a cytotoxic granulocyte, and a cytotoxic monocyte slash macrophage, each of which has an F c receptor that has bound to an antibody attached to a cancer cell antigen.

(A)



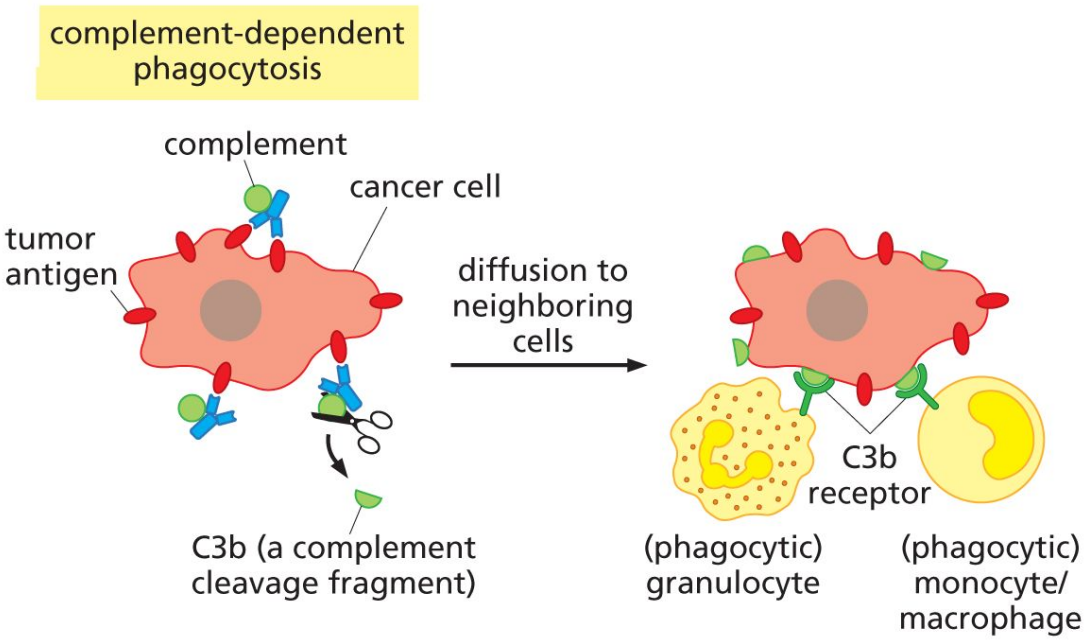
Antibody-dependent phagocytosis. The cancer cell is attacked by a phagocytic granulocyte and a phagocytic monocyte slash macrophage, each of which has an F c receptor that has bound to an antibody attached to a cancer cell antigen.

(B)



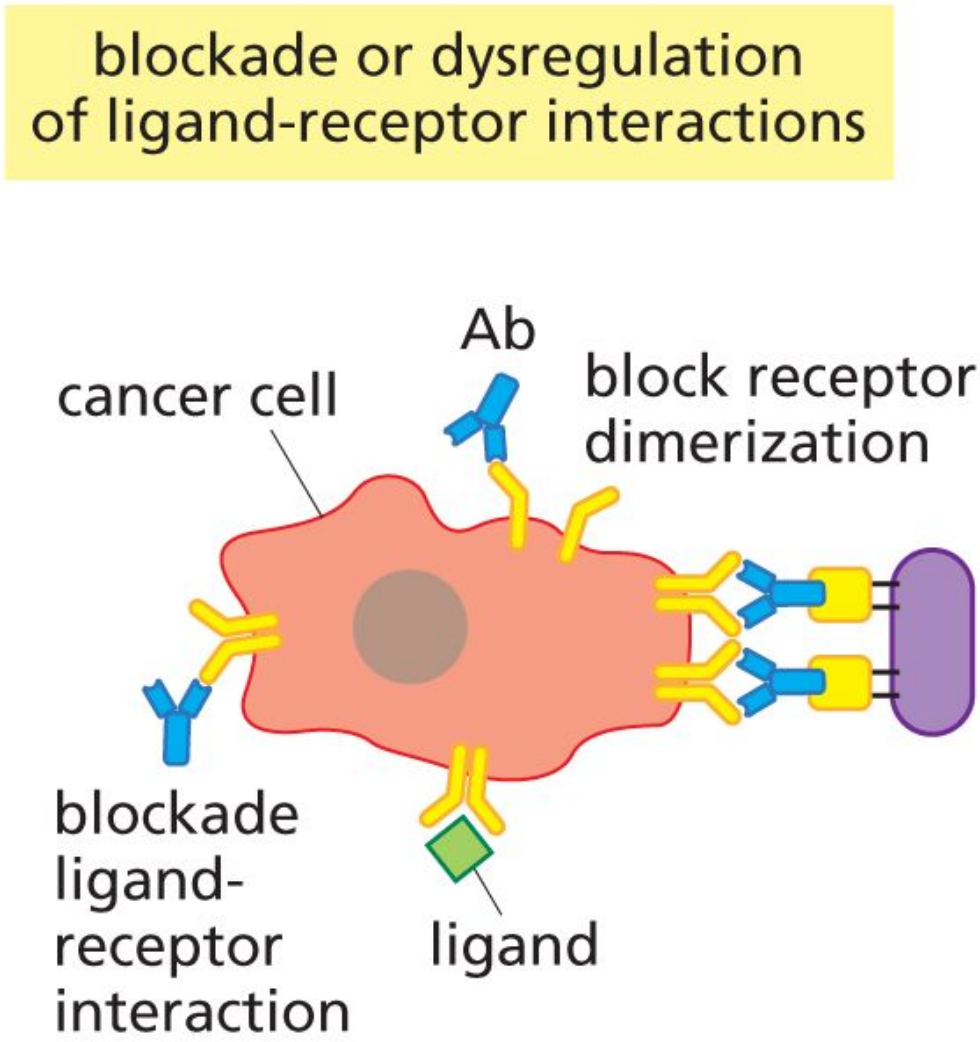
Complement-dependent cytotoxicity. Complement proteins attach to the antibodies bound to the cancer cell. The complement proteins form membrane attack complexes that insert pores into the cell membrane, resulting in cell lysis.

(C)



Complement-dependent phagocytosis. Complement proteins attach to the antibodies bound to the cancer cell. C 3 b fragments are cleaved off the complement proteins and attach elsewhere on the cancer cell. The cancer cell is then shown being attacked by a phagocytic granulocyte and a phagocytic monocyte slash macrophage, each of which has a C 3 b receptor.

(D)



Blockade or dysregulation of ligand-receptor interactions. Ligands that normally bind to dimerizing receptors on the cancer cell are blocked from doing so by the presence of antigen molecules that bind to the receptors.

(E)

Figure 16.4 Multiple distinct mechanisms of cancer cell killing by antibodies and complement The binding of antibody molecules to cell surface antigens expressed by targeted cancer cells affords multiple alternatives routes of attack by the immune system. (A) Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). Binding of tumor antigen-reactive antibodies to surface-displayed tumor antigens is followed by recognition of the Fc regions of the bound antibodies via Fc receptors displayed by phagocytes and NK cells, triggering their killing of the targeted cell. (B) Antibody-dependent phagocytosis (ADP). Engagement of the Fc regions of antibodies bound to tumor cells with the Fc receptors of phagocytes

induces phagocytosis of tumor cells. (C) Complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Interaction of complement with the Fc region of tumor cell-bound antibodies triggers the assembly of complement-derived components, collectively known as the membrane attack complex (MAC), on the surface of the tumor cell, which punches holes in its plasma membrane (*right*), allowing the free exchange of ions and soluble molecules between the cell interior and the external milieu, leading in turn rapidly to cell death. (D) Complement-dependent phagocytosis (CDP). An alternative response occurs after the activated antibody:complement complex has bound to a cell surface antigen: one subunit of the complement complex may be cleaved, yielding C3b, a polypeptide fragment of a key complement component subunit. Once formed, C3b can be deposited on sites near its site of generation including the surfaces of neighboring cells. Any cells decorated with these C3b fragments can then recognized by C3b receptors on phagocytes and engulfed. (E) Blockade or dysregulation of ligand–receptor interactions. Interference with receipt by the targeted cancer cell of essential growth or survival signals, leading to induction of apoptotic signaling or prevention of receptor dimerization, also resulting in cell death. (A–C, E adapted from G.J. Weiner, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 15:361–370, 2015.)

A second, related strategy of attack can be mounted by macrophages and neutrophils, both of these being phagocytes whose engagement with the Fc regions of cell-bound IgG molecules results in the engulfment via phagocytosis of antibody-tagged cells (Figure 16.4B).

Yet a third type of lethality is dealt by the activation of the complement system, a group of soluble plasma proteins that can be activated by antibodies bound to cells, causing the death of target cells in either of two ways. In one mode of antigen-directed cell killing, the protein components of the complement system recognize and bind cell-bound antibody molecules (once again recognizing the Fc portion of the bound antibody). The resulting multi-subunit protein assemblies create pore-forming complexes, that is, complexes of proteins that insert pores into the adjacent plasma membrane of the cell under attack. Such pores, once formed, deal a death blow to the targeted cell, because they prevent the cell from maintaining its normal osmotic gradients and thus its viability, doing so by allowing various low–molecular-weight substances, notably ions, to flow freely into and out of the cytoplasm. Such a pore-forming assembly of proteins is known as the membrane attack complex (MAC) (Figure 16.4C).

A fourth mechanism of antibody-mediated cell killing is also complement dependent. The instigating C3b protein is a by-product of the activation of complement by its interaction with antigen–antibody complexes (see Figure 16.4D), such as those formed between anti-tumor antibodies and cell surface tumor antigens. Complement activation

proceeds by proteolytic cleavage, a reaction triggered by antigen–antibody complexes, that results in the formation of a number of cleavage products, including C3b. Following their generation, these C3b proteins, which are highly hydrophobic, diffuse to a nearby cell and bind to its plasma membrane in a fashion that is completely nonspecific. Now membrane-bound, C3b attracts the attention of C3b receptor-bearing macrophages and other phagocytes, such as neutrophils, prompting their phagocytosis of cells decorated with this complement-derived protein fragment (Figure 16.4D). Notably, this avenue of complement-mediated cell killing has the potential to kill nearby tumor cells as well, because cytotoxic components of the activated complex can diffuse from their sites of formation and eliminate these bystanders. Even nearby members of the tumor population that may have contrived to lose expression of the tumor antigen targeted by the antibody will be subject to bystander killing.

A fifth mechanism of antibody attack involves interference at the cell surface with receptor–ligand interactions employed by the cancer cells, usually interactions that are required by cancer cells to drive their own continued proliferation or ensure their survival (Figure 16.4E). The actions of growth factor ligands and their cognate receptors come to mind here, as was described in Chapter 5. The antibody-mediated interference may take any one of a number of forms, including sequestration of a vital ligand on which a cancer cell depends, blockade of ligand binding by the receptor, and even receptor binding that triggers the release of aberrant signals that cause cell death.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

Fc receptor
: A cell surface protein displayed by immunocytes, such as NK cells, dendritic cells and macrophages, that recognizes and binds the constant regions of antibody molecules, notably IgG molecules, the latter being bound via their variable regions to antigens on the surfaces of potential target cells such as microbes or cancer cells; such binding enables killing of the antibody-bound cells by the NK cells or macrophages.

membrane attack complex
: The complex of multiple proteins including cell surface–bound antibody molecules and complement proteins that can introduce pores in the nearby plasma membrane, thereby killing an involved cell.

complement
: Group of collaborating plasma proteins that can associate with antibody molecules bound to cell surface antigens, such as antigens displayed by bacterial, yeast, or mammalian cells; once attached via these antibody molecules to a cell surface, complement can kill the cell by introducing pores into the nearby cell membrane, including the plasma membrane of mammalian cells.

OceanofPDF.com

16.5 Lymphoma and breast cancer can be treated with monoclonal antibodies

The cell surface glycoprotein CD20 is characteristically expressed by cells at multiple stages of normal B-cell differentiation and rarely on T cells. This limited range of expression made it an attractive target for antibody-mediated attack on non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, 85% of which derive from cells of the B-cell lineage and display this antigen. A genetically engineered monoclonal antibody, termed rituximab (**Sidebar 16.3**), with binding specificity for CD20, was generated for the treatment of this cancer (**Sidebar 16.4**). It became the first moAb approved for cancer therapy, having gained FDA approval for clinical use in 1997 and being widely employed thereafter for the treatment of certain types of relapsed or refractory B-cell lymphoma.

Sidebar 16.3 The conventions for naming monoclonal antibodies are systematic but complex

A complex set of naming conventions has been adopted to name monoclonal antibodies, each of which carries one name reflecting use of these conventions and a second name by which it may be marketed. For example, trastuzumab is the technical name of the antibody molecule marketed as Herceptin^{TM}.

The "mab" suffix refers to a monoclonal antibody, while the first syllable, for example, the "tras" in trastuzumab, has no particular meaning and is given to confer a unique identity. The "tu" in trastuzumab refers to reactivity with a tumor antigen, while the "zu" syllable refers to a *humanized* monoclonal antibody (see Sidebar 16.4). The "xi" syllable indicates a chimeric antibody in which the constant region sequences are human and most or all of the variable region sequences are nonhuman. As an example, in rituximab, working backward, "mab" indicates monoclonal antibody, "xi" denotes chimeric origin, "tu" indicates targeting of a tumor antigen, and "ri" is the individual unique identifying prefix of this antibody that lacks further meaning. Additional, highly specialized syllables, not listed here, indicate yet other properties of a given moAb.

Sidebar 16.4 Devising useful monoclonal antibodies is a complex process

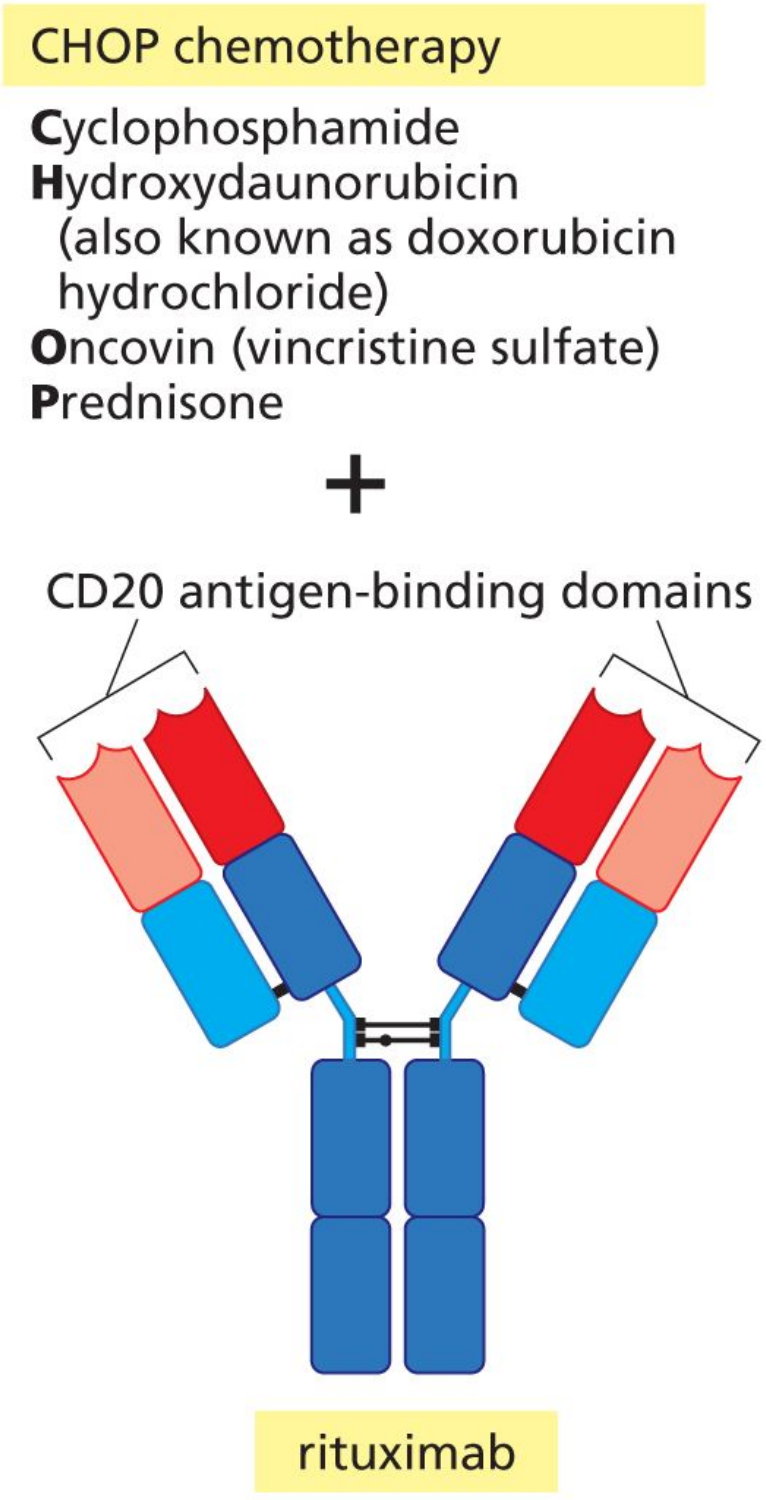
Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) were initially derived by immunizing mice with antigens of interest, such as cancer cell-associated proteins, deriving moAb-producing cells of mouse origin (see **Supplementary Sidebar 16.1**), and introducing the secreted mAbs, as a form of passive immunization, into the circulation of patients being treated for various conditions. These early treatments made it apparent that such antibodies can have exquisite antigen specificity, being able to bind to targeted antigens while ignoring the tens of thousands of other proteins made in the body. However, their usefulness was often reduced because the supplied mAb molecules were themselves immunogenic, being of mouse origin and displaying amino acid sequences and conformations that directly induced human anti-mouse antibody (HAMA) responses by the immune systems of the patients under treatment. Once a patient's immune system developed HAMA reactivity, the introduced mouse mAb became useless because HAMA neutralized the response.

The problem of reactivity against intact mouse moAbs was largely addressed by genetic engineering, in which portions of the immunogenic constant regions of mouse-derived mAb molecules were replaced by corresponding human segments. This maneuver produced chimeric antibodies, that is, ones in which the large sections of mouse constant region were replaced by their human equivalents but retained the variable regions of the mouse antibody; such antibody molecules preserved the antigen specificity of the original mouse antibody derived from its variable regions. These "chimeric" antibody molecules typically contain about 30% of murine antigen-binding sequences together with about 70% of human amino acid sequences, while even more extensively altered "humanized" moAbs have eliminated almost all mouse sequences, retaining only those forming the antigen-binding sites of murine origin. However, as explained in **Supplementary Sidebar 16.1**, technologies now exist for the derivation of fully human antibodies of any desired specificity. Indeed, most of the moAbs currently being developed for clinical use are formed by entirely human amino acid sequences.

Rituximab was first introduced into clinical practice to treat diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), a prevalent form of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. At the time of its introduction, DLBCL was usually treated with the chemotherapy protocol known as CHOP (a combination of the cytotoxic drugs **c**yclophosphamide, **h**ydroxydoxorubicin, **o**ncovin (vincristine sulfate), and **p**rednisone). Among its other limitations, the use of CHOP in elderly patients was constrained because dose escalation could not be undertaken due to the severity of side effects experienced in this population.

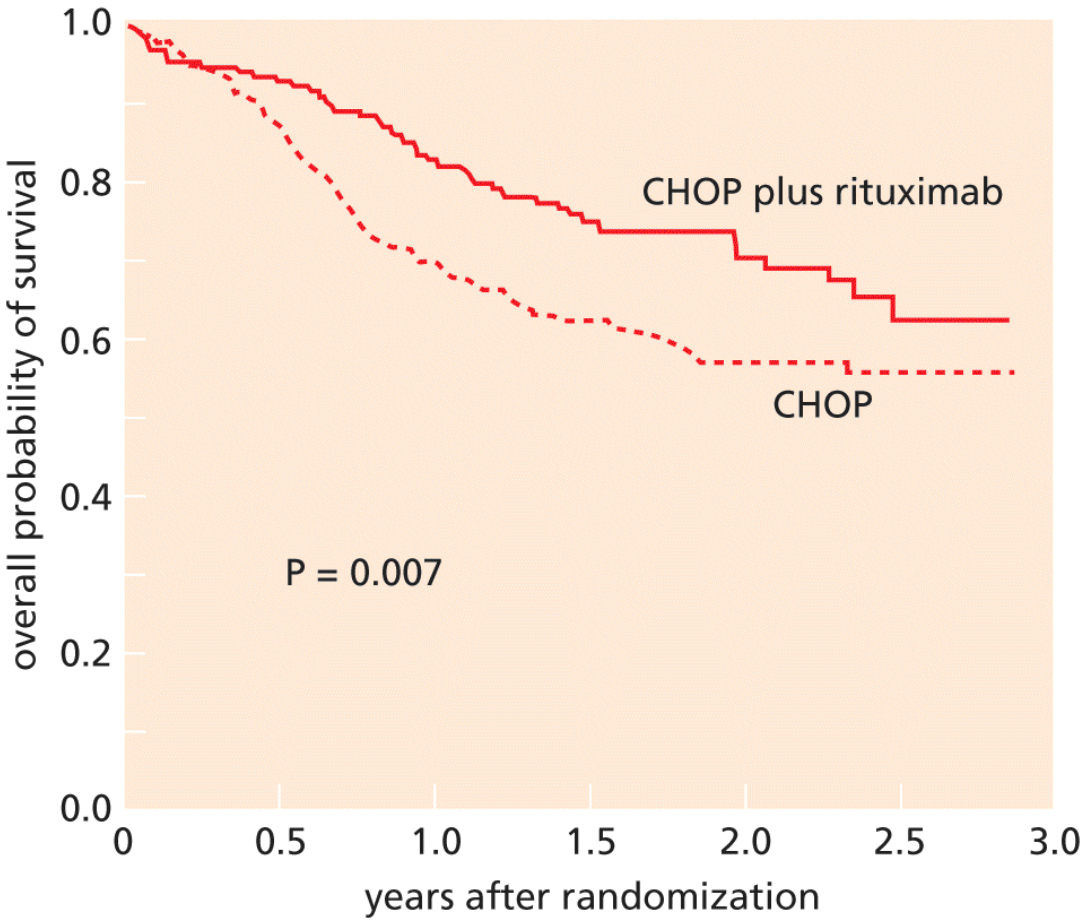
A clinical trial that compared treatment of elderly DLBCL patients with CHOP alone or CHOP plus rituximab showed that adding rituximab to standard CHOP chemotherapy significantly improved event-free survival and prolonged overall survival compared to treatment with CHOP alone (**Figure 16.5**). More generally, as

clinical experience with moAb therapies has grown, it has become apparent that, like their chemotherapeutic forerunners, these agents are usually more effective as components of combination therapies than when they are employed as stand-alone monotherapies.



CHOP chemotherapy combines Cyclophosphamide, Hydroxydaunorubicin (also known as doxorubicin hydrochloride), Oncovin (also known as vincristine sulfate), and Prednisone. It may be combined with the engineered antibody rituximab, which has C D 20 antigen-binding domains.

(A)



A line chart showing the overall probability of survival as a function of time for two groups of patients. Of the patients given CHOP without rituximab, a little more than 60 percent remained alive 1.5 years after randomization. Of the patients given CHOP with rituximab, about 75 percent remained alive 1.5 years after randomization. The difference diminished in later years. Of the patients given CHOP without rituximab, a little less than 60 percent remained alive 3 years after randomization. Of the patients given CHOP with rituximab, a little more than 60 percent remained alive 3 years after randomization.

(B)

Figure 16.5 Combination therapy with anti-tumor antibody and chemotherapy (A) CHOP therapy directed toward B-cell–derived lymphomas involves a combination of cytotoxic compounds and rituximab, an anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody. (B) Overall survival among elderly patients (median age, 69 years) with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) treated with CHOP or CHOP plus rituximab. (B, from B. Coiffier, E. Lepage, J. Briere et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 346:235–242, 2002. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

Monoclonal antibodies have also had a substantial impact on the immunotherapy of a subset of breast cancers. As a prominent example, as many as 15 to 20% of human mammary carcinomas overexpress human epidermal growth factor receptor-2 (HER2), the close cousin and signaling partner of the EGF receptor (see Sections 4.2 and 5.3). When its expression is elevated in breast cancer cells, this receptor molecule serves as a tumor-associated antigen that can be targeted by anti-HER2 antibodies. In fact, it serves as more than a tumor cell-associated antigen target, because various studies have demonstrated that overexpression of HER2 provides critical mitogenic and anti-apoptotic signals to breast cancer cells.

Trastuzumab, an anti-HER2 humanized monoclonal antibody, was the first successful antibody-based therapy for breast cancer and showed efficacy in prolonging progression-free and overall survival in patients with HER2-positive breast cancer. Studies of the mechanisms responsible for the anti-tumor effects of trastuzumab, also termed Herceptin, showed that its use led to attacks on HER2-positive cancer cells via multiple mechanisms, including recruitment of innate immune cells by antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), induction of complement-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (CDCC), and interference with growth factor signaling. Overall, in a meta-analysis that included the clinical histories of 13,864 breast cancer patients over the course of a decade, when applied together with chemotherapy, trastuzumab treatment reduced patient mortality by 33% relative to treatment with chemotherapy alone, a significant advance by any standard.

More recently, alternative versions of anti-HER2 mAbs have been generated and deployed in the cancer clinic. One of these, termed pertuzumab, targets a distinct domain of the HER2 protein and prevents its heterodimerization with HER3 (another EGFR-related receptor protein), thereby blocking HER2 signaling. Its distinct mechanism-of-action explains why it functions synergistically with trastuzumab in treating a variety of breast cancer subtypes (**Sidebar 16.5**). In early-stage breast cancers, this combination of moAbs often generates pathological complete responses, that is, the elimination of all cancerous tissue from the site of treatment, including comparable effects on draining lymph nodes (see Figure 14.36), judged in both cases by histopathological assessment. Such responses are often, but not always, indicative of cures.

Sidebar 16.5 The peculiarities of HER2 function limit the efficacy of trastuzumab alone

A key feature of HER2 signaling is its requirement for dimerization with another member of the family of receptor tyrosine kinases (see Section 5.6). As it turns out, a HER2 receptor molecule can dimerize with another HER2 receptor molecule or, alternatively with either HER1 (=EGFR) or HER3, a closely related member of this receptor family. Trastuzumab interferes with the formation of HER2–HER2 homodimers, but it does not block the formation of HER2–HER3 heterodimers, which represent the active signaling complexes following binding of EGF-like ligands. (Trastuzumab fails to block heterodimer formation because it binds to a site on the HER2 molecule that is distinct from the site involved in interaction with HER3.) This failure to block HER2–HER3 heterodimer formation therefore provides an escape pathway for cancer cells under attack by trastuzumab. The development of pertuzumab —the mAb that blocks the formation of HER2–HER3 heterodimers—closed this escape hatch. The complementary action of trastuzumab and pertuzumab was found to be more effective than either antibody alone, and when the trastuzumab–pertuzumab couple was paired with the powerful anti-mitotic agent, docetaxel, a therapy for HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer emerged that became, for a time, the standard of care, especially for HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer. While this combination was surely a milestone in the management of this disease, resistance to this therapy did eventually emerge in a number of patients.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

dose escalation
: The practice of progressively increasing the dosage of a drug in an investigatory clinical trial in order to determine efficacy of the drug under study at various applied doses and, at the same time, revealing the toxicity of such doses in order define the maximum tolerated dose. *See also* **maximum tolerated dose.**

meta-analysis
: Statistical procedure for pooling and integrating the results of a number of independent experimental, clinical, or epidemiologic studies in order to generate a larger data set and greater statistical significance than is afforded by the data of only a single study.

pathological complete response
: The response of a tumor to a therapy that involves the complete elimination of microscopically detectable remnants of a tumor under treatment. *See* **complete response**.

standard of care
: The therapeutic agent or protocol that is widely accepted in the treatment of disease and often serves as the reference against which candidate novel treatments are measured.

OceanofPDF.com

16.6 Antibody–drug conjugates deliver toxic drugs to cells displaying tumor antigens

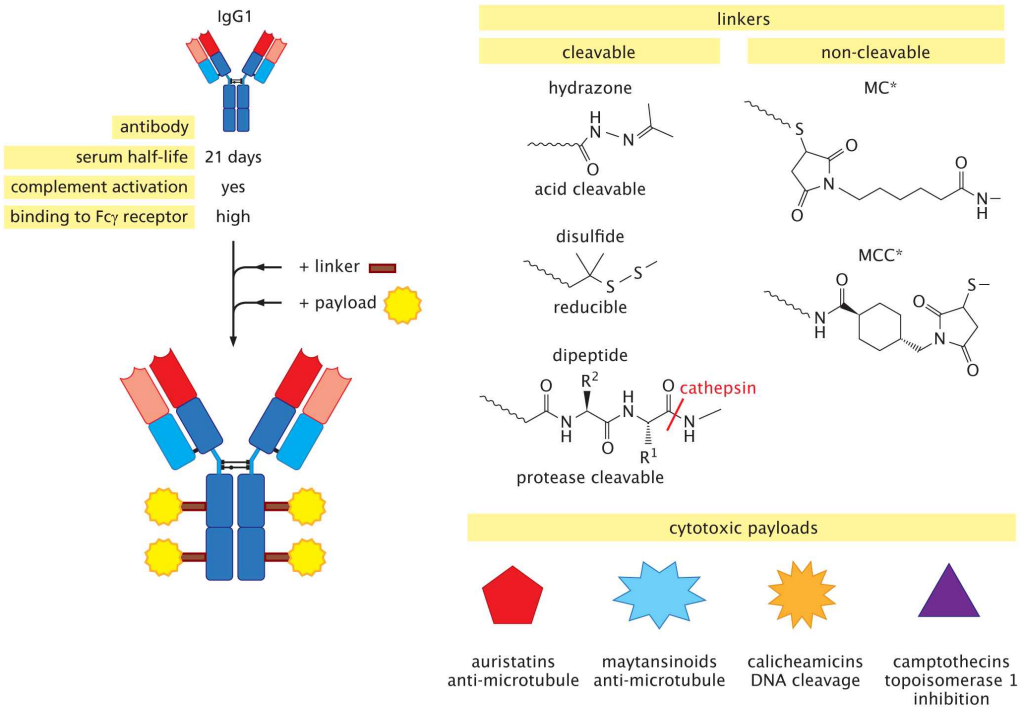
The highly specific targeting afforded by anti-tumor mAbs can be exploited to direct a variety of cytotoxic drugs to the relatively small number of tumor cells in the body, thereby sparing the normal cells and tissues elsewhere in the body. By doing so, such antibody–drug conjugates (ADCs) address a major limitation of existing cytotoxic chemotherapies, that of limited therapeutic index (TI), which represents the ratio of the concentration at which a drug generates unacceptable side-effect toxicities to the concentration at which it creates desired therapeutic responses; high TIs are desirable because they reflect the specificity with which various agents act preferentially on intended targets, including tumors, without creating major side effects.

Chemical coupling with toxic molecules can also greatly enhance the cytotoxic effects of the antibody molecules. These responses ensue when the antibody–drug conjugates are internalized by antibody-bound cells. In most instances, the antibody portions of the ADCs should ideally retain many of the functions of unmodified moAb molecules, including the ability of cell-bound antibodies to trigger lethal attacks by antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), antibody-dependent phagocytosis (ADP), and complement dependent cellular cytoxicity (CDCC). Similarly, those moAb molecules that disrupt or perturb ligand–receptor signaling should, in most cases, retain this ability following their conjugation with cytotoxic drug molecules.

In more detail, each ADC is formed from three components, an antibody molecule against a tumor antigen, a highly potent cytotoxic drug molecule, and a molecular linker between the two. Stringent requirements are placed on the cytotoxic drug and on the linker. Because relatively small numbers of the cytotoxic drug molecules are actually delivered into individual targeted cells, the intrinsic cytotoxicity of the drug must be very high, explaining why such agents, when used as unmodified soluble molecules, often exert toxicity in the subnanomolar-to-picomolar concentration range.

The linker must be stable in the bloodstream, allowing the antibody to retain its cargo until it binds to and is internalized by a targeted cell. Without this stability, ADCs can release their toxic payload molecules directly into the bloodstream, causing off-target toxicity to normal tissues—precisely the outcome that ADCs were invented to avoid. However, once internalized by a targeted cell, the cytotoxic payload must be released through cleavage from the linker or by the intracellular digestion of the ADC, liberating in either case biologically active drug moieties. As shown in **Figure 16.6**, a great many permutations of the theme of antibody, linker, and cytotoxic drug payload are possible. Most ADCs are built on a human IgG1 backbone, a subclass of antibody molecules that, in unmodified form, enjoy a long

serum half-life of 21 days. Their Fc region should be able to trigger complement activation and, because they represent a ligand for binding by the Fc receptors of NK cells, macrophages, and neutrophils, should also enable target cell killing by these innate immune cells.



The Construction of an antibody drug conjugate. It begins with an I g G 1 subclass antibody, with a serum half life of 21 days. There is complement activation and high binding to an F c gamma receptor. Four payloads are connected to the F c portion, two on each side. Each payload is connected by a linker element. Linkers may be cleavable, such as hydrazone, which is acid-cleavable; disulfide, which is reducible; and dipeptide, which is protease cleavable. Linkers may also be non-cleavable, such as M C star and M C C star. Cytotoxic payloads include auristatins, which are anti-microtubule; maytansinoids, which are also anti-microtubule; calicheamicins, which engage in D N A cleavage; and camptothecins, which engage in topoisomerase 1 inhibition.

Figure 16.6 Construction of an antibody–drug conjugate Antibody molecules, usually of the IgG1 subclass, are used because they have a long half-life and their Fc regions are bound by Fc receptors displayed by phagocytes and NK cells. These antibody molecules are modified by the covalent attachment of highly toxic drug molecules referred to as “payloads.” A variety of cleavable linkers, five of which are shown here (*right*), are used to conjugate toxic payload molecules to antibody molecules. The figure shows the four major classes of chemical species currently used as cytotoxic payloads (*lower right*). (Adapted from J.Z. Drago, S. Modi and S. Chandarlapaty, *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 18:327–344, 2021. With permission from Nature.)

ADCs often offer additional benefits. Leakage of the introduced toxic molecules from cells directly targeted by an ADC may result in the killing of additional tumor cells present in the nearby tissue microenvironment, acting by the so-called bystander effect. This ideally offers the benefits of killing neighboring tumor cells that may have escaped targeting by the ADC, either by chance or because they have adopted evasive strategies including down-regulation of a targeted tumor antigen. Antibody–drug conjugates constitute a rapidly expanding category of cancer drugs and several have received FDA approval for the treatment of a broad range of cancers (**Table 16.2**).

Table 16.2 Antibody–drug conjugates approved for clinical use

ADC	Target antigen	moAb isotype	Payload	Payload class	Payload action	Drug-to-antibody ratio (DAR)	Disease indication (year of approval)
Gemtuzumab ozogamicin	CD33	IgG4	Ozogamicin	Calicheamicin	DNA cleavage	2–3	$CD33^+$ R/R AML (2000)[a]
Brentuximab Vedotin	CD30	IgG1	MMAE	Auristatin	microtubule inhibitor	4	R/R sALCL or cHL (2011) R/R pcALCL or $CD30^+$ MF (2017) cHL, sALCL or $CD30^+$ PTCL (2018)[b]
Ado-trastuzumab emtansine (T-DM1)	HER2	IgG1	DM1	Maytansinoid	microtubule inhibitor	3.5 (mean)	advanced-stage $HER2^+$ breast cancer previously treated with trastuzumab and a taxane (2013); early stage $HER2^+$ breast cancer in patients with residual

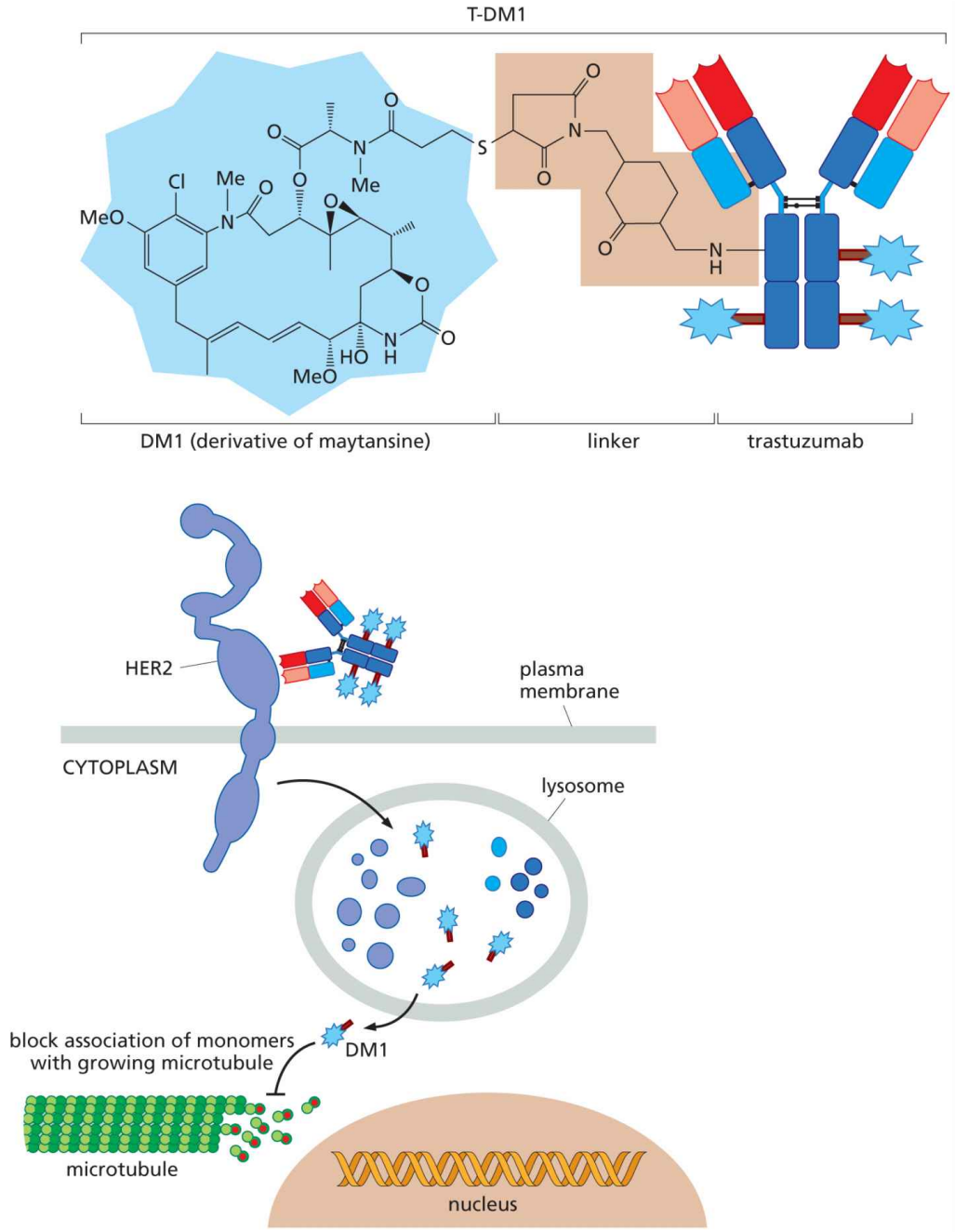
ADC	Target antigen	moAb isotype	Payload	Payload class	Payload action	Drug-to-antibody ratio (DAR)	Disease indication (year of approval)
							disease after neoadjuvant trastuzumab–taxane- based treatment (2019)
Inotuzumab ozogamicin	CD22	IgG4	Ozogamicin	Calicheamicin	DNA cleavage	5–7	R/R B-ALL (2017)
Fam-trastuzumab deruxtecan-nxki (T-DXd)	HER2	IgG1	DXd	Camptothecin	TOPO1 inhibitor	8	advanced-stage $HER2^{+}$ breast cancer after two or more anti-HER2-based regimens (2019)
Polatuzumab vedotin-piiq	CD79b	IgG1	MMAE	Auristatin	microtubule inhibitor	3.5 (mean)	R/R DLBCL (2019)[c]
Sacituzumab govitecan-hziy	Trop-2	IgG1	SN-38 (active metabolite of irinotecan)	Camptothecin	TOPO1 inhibitor	8	advanced-stage, triple-negative breast cancer in the third-line setting or beyond (2020)
Enfortumab vedotin-ejfv	Nectin 4	IgG1	MMAE	Auristatin	microtubule inhibitor	4	advanced-stage urothelial carcinoma,

ADC	Target antigen	moAb isotype	Payload	Payload class	Payload action	Drug-to-antibody ratio (DAR)	Disease indication (year of approval)
							following progression on a PD-1 or PD-L1 inhibitor plus platinum-containing chemotherapy (2020)
Belantamab mafodotin-blmf	BCMA	IgG1	MMAF	Auristatin	microtubule inhibitor	unknown	R/R multiple myeloma in the fifth-line setting or beyond (2020)

ADC, antibody–drug conjugate; AML, acute myeloid leukemia; B-ALL, B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia; BCMA, B-cell maturation antigen; cHL, classical Hodgkin's lymphoma; DLBCL, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma; moAb, monoclonal antibody; MF, mycosis fungoides; MMAE, monomethyl auristatin E; MMAF, monomethyl auristatin F; pcALCL, primary cutaneous anaplastic large-cell lymphoma; PTCL, peripheral T-cell lymphoma; R/R, relapsed and/or refractory; sALCL, systemic anaplastic large-cell lymphoma; TOPO1, topoisomerase I; Trop-2, tumor-associated calcium signal transducer 2. Adapted from Z.J. Drago, S. Modi and S. Chandarlapaty, *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 18:327–334, 2021. With permission from Nature.

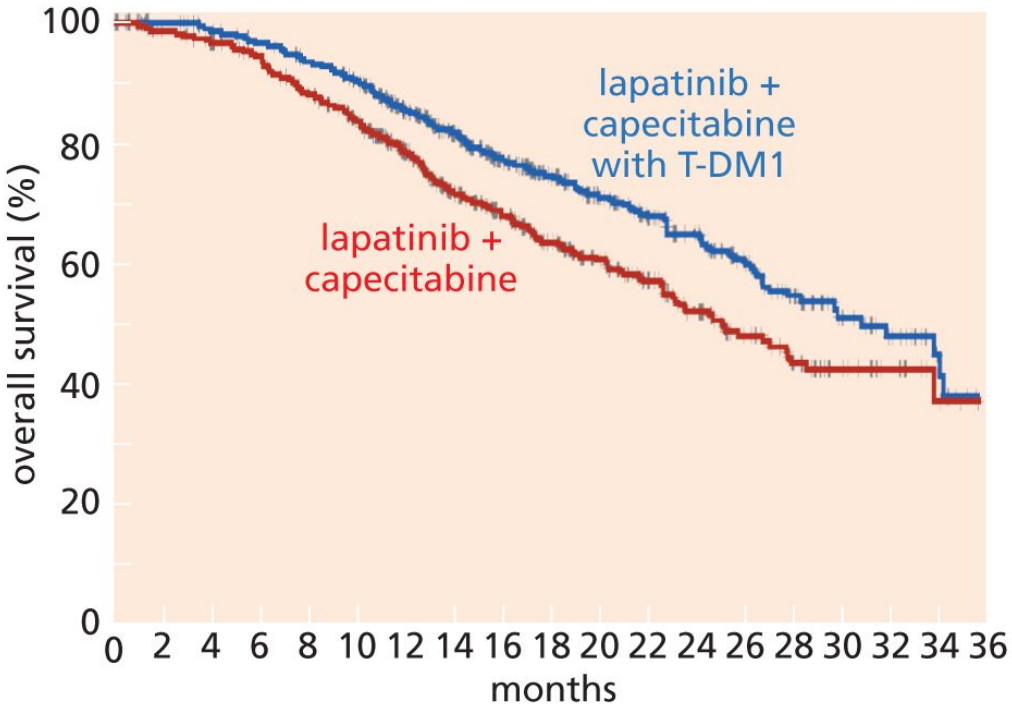
As an example, trastuzumab emtansine, an ADC derivative of trastuzumab, targets cells that express HER2, doing so via the trastuzumab moiety of the conjugate; after binding, this ADC delivers DM1, a highly cytotoxic microtubule inhibitor to the HER2-expressing cell. In addition to its role in the delivery of a cytotoxic payload, the antibody retains most of the preexisting potent anti-tumor properties associated with the parental moAb (**Figure 16.7A**). Compared to a standard chemotherapy for patients who had been previously treated with a combination of trastuzumab and a taxane (another class of small–molecular-weight microtubule inhibitors), the ADC provided significant gains in overall survival (Figure 16.7B). Furthermore, these gains were achieved with less toxicity than experienced with lapatinib and capecitabine, two low–molecular-weight cytotoxic drugs that are often used in

combination in patients whose tumors have escaped trastuzumab and taxane-mediated chemotherapy.



The structure of the antibody drug conjugate T-D M 1. It consists of the antibody trastuzumab, a linker, and the maytansine derivative D M 1 as the payload. The mechanism of action is that the antibody's receptor domains bind to an H E R 2 protein protruding from the surface of a cancer cell. The D M 1 molecules make their way into a lysosome, and from there move to block microtubule growth by blocking the association of monomers with growing microtubules.

(A)



A line chart showing the overall probability of survival as a function of time for two groups of patients. Of patients treated with lapatinib and capecitabine alone, 60 percent survived to 20 months. Of patients treated with lapatinib and capecitabine and also T- D M 1, 70 percent survived to 20 months. Just under 40 percent of either group survived to 35 months.

(B)

Figure 16.7 Use of an antibody–drug conjugate (ADC) to treat breast cancer (A) The cytotoxic drug DM1, a chemical derivative of the potent microtubule inhibitor, maytansine (*above left*), is chemically coupled via a thioether linker to one of four alternative sites in the constant region of an anti-HER2 moAb directed against this receptor molecule (*above right*), which is frequently overexpressed in breast cancers. After being administered to a patient afflicted with a HER2-overexpressing breast cancer, the ADC can bind to a HER2 molecule (*purple, lower left*) displayed on the surface of $HER2^+$ cancer cells. The ADC–HER2 complex is then internalized via endocytosis and is thereafter delivered to a lysosome within which the linker is cleaved. This liberates the maytansine moiety, which can then escape the lysosome and enter into the cytosol, where it inhibits the growth of microtubules and therefore the assembly of the mitotic apparatus in the M phase of the cell cycle. (B) The Kaplan–Meier graph presents the results of a clinical trial demonstrating that treatment with the ADC, TDM1 (*blue curve*) produced significant gains in short-term survival compared with a standard chemotherapy (lapatinib-capecitabine, *red curve*) employed with this type of breast cancer, although long-term survival was not significantly affected. (A, Adapted from

P.M. Lorosso, D. Weiss, E. Guardino et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.* 17:6437–6447, 2011. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B, from S. Verma, D. Miles, L. Gianni et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 367:1783–1791, 2012. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

Nevertheless, the tumors borne by some patients eventually develop resistance to trastuzumab emtansine. In a number of these patients, this acquired resistance cannot be associated with the shutdown of HER2 antigen expression. Instead, in some of these patients, the observed loss of sensitivity to this ADC can be linked to alterations in lysosomal trafficking and degradation. In others, it is possible that tumor cells develop resistance to the emtansine payload caused by certain changes in intracellular biochemistry. Hence, the mechanisms underlying acquired resistance to trastuzumab emtansine are often poorly understood.

The impact of ADCs on breast cancer extends beyond the set of HER2-positive breast cancers to include triple-negative breast cancers (TNBC). These aggressive cancers, named because they lack readily detectable expression of the estrogen, progesterone, and HER2 receptors, account for around 15% of invasive breast cancers, are more common in younger than older women, and, in the United States, occur with higher frequency in African Americans than in other races and ethnic groups. Sequential single-agent chemotherapy has represented the standard of care and yields low response rates and short periods of progression-free survival.

The absence of HER2 expression by TNBCs guarantees their unresponsiveness to HER2-targeting antibodies and derived ADCs. However, there is a fallback option: the majority of breast cancers (including TNBCs) express human trophoblast cell surface antigen 2 (Trop-2). Accordingly, a humanized moAb specific for Trop-2 has been derived and coupled to a potent topoisomerase I inhibitor, creating the antibody drug conjugate sacituzumab govitecan. In a definitive clinical trial that compared the effects of this ADC with chemotherapy, the median overall survival of patients given sacituzumab govitecan was 12.1 months and thus superior to the 6.7-month median overall survival of patients given chemotherapy instead. These findings demonstrate the superiority of the ADC over chemotherapy with regard to progression-free survival and the potential impact of these different treatments on tumor growth and regression.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

therapeutic index
: (pl., **indices**) The ratio of the concentration of a drug that elicits an unacceptable level of toxicity compared with the concentration of the drug that elicits a desirable therapeutic response.

bystander effect
: Mechanism through which normal cells or tissues near to those directly targeted are also affected.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aAs a single agent or in combination with daunorubicin and cytarabine. Gemtuzumab ozogamicin was withdrawn from the market in 2010 and reapproved in 2017 for newly diagnosed or R/R CD33-positive AML.Return to reference a
- bIn combination with cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and prednisone for newly diagnosed sALCL or $CD30^+$ PTCL and in combination with doxorubicin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine for newly diagnosed cHL.Return to reference b
- cIn combination with bendamustine and rituximab.Return to reference c

OceanofPDF.com

16.7 Cancer can be treated by adoptive cell transfer

In the sections above, we encountered a series of immunotherapeutic strategies in which the powers of a patient's immune system were augmented or complemented by agents of foreign origin. In particular, these strategies involved antibodies generated outside the body, modified in some cases, and finally introduced into patients' bodies in order to supplant functions that the immune system of these patients was incapable of generating on its own. An entirely different strategy involves capturing components of a patient's native immune response to a tumor, amplifying them outside the body in ways that do not occur naturally, and introducing these components back into the patient's body. Once again, such strategies are designed to compensate for the inability of a patient's native immune system to mount certain types of effective anti-tumor responses on its own.

As we saw in Chapter 15, T cells are the major governors of immune responses to cancer and therefore are key determinants of whether tumors are eliminated, kept under control, or progress. In fact, diverse studies of tumor histology (see Figures 15.3, 15.4, and 15.5) have revealed that many actively growing tumors harbor significant populations of T cells that coexist with large numbers of neoplastic cells but nonetheless have clearly failed to eliminate the cancer cells.

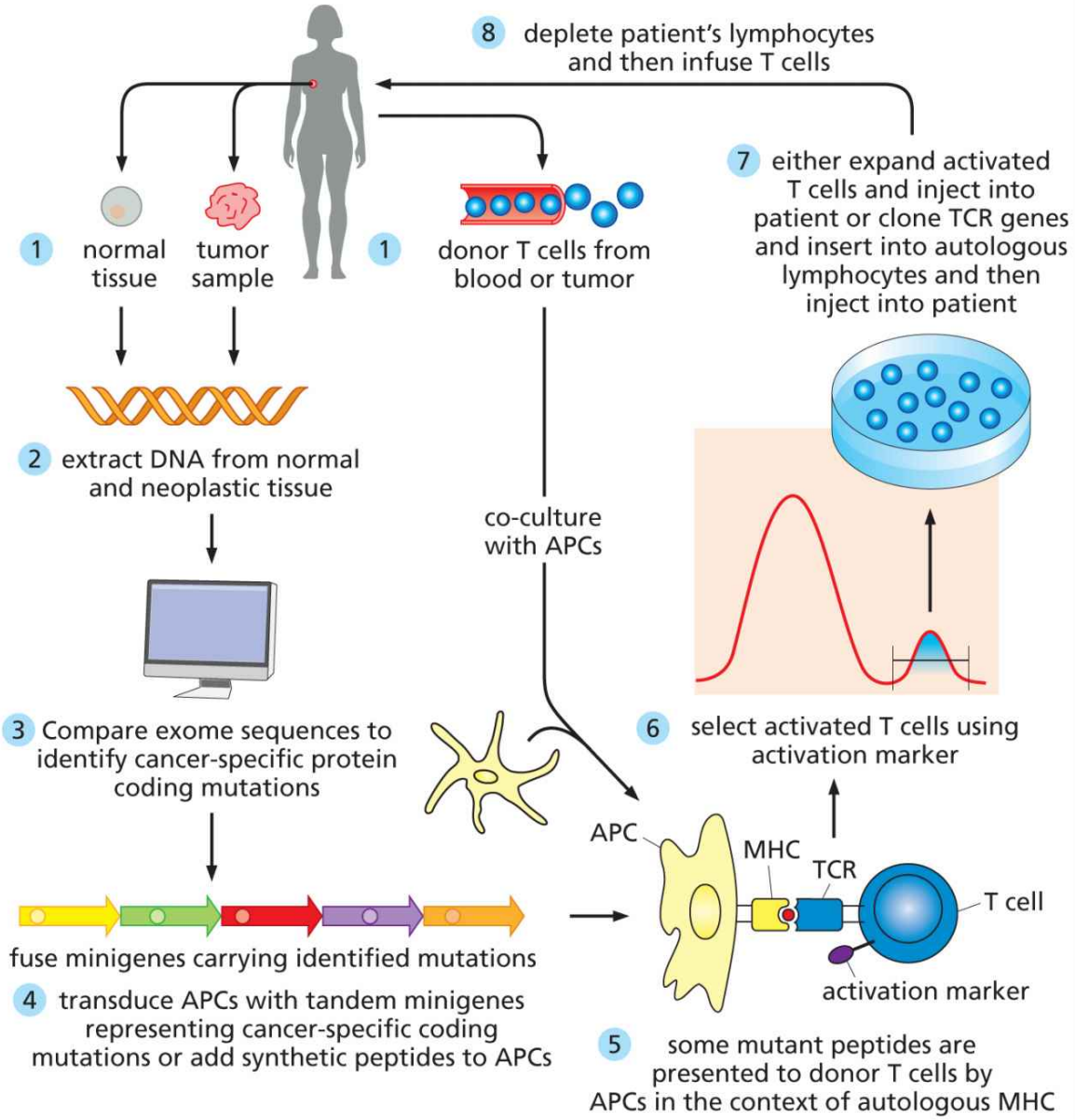
The repeated detection of such tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes (TILs) has stimulated a major thrust in the development of anti-cancer immunotherapies, which is inspired by the notion that such infiltrating T cells are not present in adequate numbers or in physiological states that would allow them to effectively kill nearby cancer cells. This notion has led to the development of methods for harvesting T cells from a patient, manipulating them *ex vivo,* and then introducing the altered lymphocytes back into the donor or into other histocompatible recipients. Such a clinical strategy, which also represents a form of passive immunization, is termed adoptive cell transfer (ACT).

In adoptive cell transfer, immune cells, almost invariably T cells, are harvested directly from a patient's excised tumor, expanded *ex vivo* into much larger cell populations, and then transferred back into the patient via intravenous infusion. Ideally, among the reintroduced cells are anti-tumor cytotoxic T cells whose

TCRs direct cytotoxic attacks on cells that display tumor-associated antigens, while sparing cells that do not. By necessity, this target specificity was initially developed in the donor's body during the period when the tumor was growing out and provoking various types of adaptive immune responses. Two major versions of ACT T-cell immunotherapies have been developed: adoptive transfer of T cells bearing conventional TCRs and adoptive transfer of T cells bearing chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR T cells).

To provide some background, we note that during the last quarter of the twentieth century, various experiments demonstrated that certain subpopulations of T cells could be harvested from tumor-bearing mice and thereafter propagated in culture under conditions that greatly increased their number without these cells losing their critical biological functions. The expansion of these murine T-cell populations *ex vivo* depended on the inclusion in the *in vitro* growth medium of the cytokine interleukin-2 (IL-2), a potent T-cell growth factor. Later, it became possible to expand corresponding human lymphocytes *ex vivo*. In both cases, the expanded lymphocyte populations could be re-infused back into the bodies of the donors that previously formed them (or, more precisely, formed their initially harvested progenitors). These re-introduced T lymphocytes should not be recognized as foreign and therefore should not provoke an immune response that would blunt or eliminate them in the bodies of engrafted recipients.

In more recent versions of this strategy, genomic sequencing is used to identify tumor-specific somatic mutations in the coding sequences of a patient's cancer cell genome (**Figure 16.8**). Once identified, these mutant sequences can be used to construct recombinant "minigenes" that encode oligopeptides carrying the mutant amino acid sequences (rather than encoding the full-length mutant proteins). Moreover, in a single tumor genome, multiple polypeptide sequences, corresponding to various somatic mutations registered in the patient's tumor genome, can be identified; each of these sequences can be used to construct a recombinant minigene, and the resulting collection of minigenes can be linked to one another to create a tandem string of minigenes. (Such mutant tumor cell sequences can derive from somatically mutated driver genes as well as passenger genes because both are equally capable of specifying tumor-specific antigens.)



An Overview of adoptive T-cell transfer cancer therapy. Step 1 is the extraction of normal tissue and tumor tissue samples from a patient. Separately, donor T cells from the patient's blood or the tumor are also extracted and co-cultured with antigen-presenting cells. Step 2 is to extract D N A from the normal and neoplastic tissue samples. Step 3 is to Compare exome sequences to identify cancer-specific protein coding mutations. Step 4 is to transduce antigen-presenting cells with tandem minigenes, representing cancer-specific coding mutations, or to add synthetic peptides to antigen-presenting cells. This is done by fusing together minigenes carrying identified mutations. Step 5 is to present some mutant peptides to cultured donor T cells by antigen-presenting cells in the context of autologous M H C. These T cells

receive an activation marker. Step 6 is to select activated T cells using the activation marker. Step 7 is to either expand activated T cells and inject them into the patient, or to clone T C R genes and insert them into autologous lymphocytes, and then inject these into the patient. Step 8 is to deplete the patient's lymphocytes and then infuse T cells.

Figure 16.8 Overview of adoptive T-cell transfer cancer therapy The schematic outline of this treatment strategy shows the following steps: (1) Samples of normal and tumor tissue are taken from the patient and T cells are obtained from the tumor or from blood (*top left*). (2) DNA is extracted from normal and tumor tissue and is subjected to exomic sequencing. (3) Comparison of the tumor vs. normal exome sequences allows identification of structural mutations, that is, those that encode differences in the amino acid sequences of proteins, leading in turn to identification of candidate tumor-specific neoantigens. (4) Minigenes, each specifying a peptide of 25 amino acids in length flanking and including an identified somatic structural mutation, are synthesized, linked in tandem, and transfected into APCs, enabling expression and presentation of encoded neoantigen peptides by the transfected APCs. Five fused minigenes, each represented by a different color are shown here. Alternatively, neoantigen peptides can be chemically synthesized and added directly to *in vitro* cultures of APCs. The presence of mutations in each of these genes is suggested by the small lighter circles within each. (5) Co-culture of patient T cells harvested in Step 1 allow those APCs displaying neoantigen peptides to activate T cells prepared from the patient (*dark blue*) bearing TCRs that recognize complexes of neoantigen peptide:MHC (*lower right*) presented by mutant oligopeptide-displaying dendritic cell (APC). (6) The minority of T cells that display activation markers after interaction with the peptide-displaying APC are identified by flow cytometry, sorted, and expanded to large numbers ($>10^{10}$) *ex vivo*. (7) The expanded populations of neoantigen-reactive T cells are infused into the donor, who has previously undergone lymphodepletion by treatment with a cytotoxic drug in order to create a niche for the infused cells. (Adapted from S.A. Rosenberg and N.P. Restifo, *Science* 348:62–68, 2015.)

These strings of minigenes can then be processed further to encourage the outgrowth *ex vivo* of specific lymphocyte subpopulations that recognize and respond to them. Thus, DNA molecules carrying these minigenes can be transfected into donor-derived antigen-presenting cells (APCs), which should then permit the APCs to present minigene-encoded mutant peptides on their cell surface MHC-I molecules. In principle, co-culture of these transfected APCs with

the patient's cultured T cells should trigger activation of a subset of the donor's explanted immunocytes, in particular those lymphocytes bearing T-cell receptors (TCRs) specific for the mutant peptide-antigen:MHC complex that had previously been exhibited *in vivo* by the patient's own tumor cells and therefore experienced by the precursors of the explanted T cells. The resulting *in vitro* activated T cells, ideally expanded to far larger numbers, can then be infused back into the patient's body.

Although creative in exploiting our existing knowledge of T-cell biology, these ACT strategies are complicated by certain realities of immune regulation (**Sidebar 16.6**).

Sidebar 16.6 Development of effective ACT strategies requires attention to many complicating factors

In practice, the design of an adoptive cell transfer protocol requires attention to a number of critical biological details. To begin, the APCs used in these APC experiments should ideally come from the patient because the spectrum of MHC molecules that these APCs employ to present oligopeptide antigens should be identical to those used by the patient's tumor cells to do so. This is critical because, as we learned in the last chapter, the complex molecular structures recognized by TCRs are oligopeptide antigens together with the "hands" of the MHC molecules that hold and present these oligopeptide antigens (see Figure 15.7). In addition, the tumoricidal powers of the lymphocyte populations propagated *ex vivo* are greatly strengthened when the minority populations of these lymphocytes that have been successfully activated by exposure to minigene-encoded peptides are harvested for re-infusion into the donor (discarding those lymphocytes that have not been activated). This enrichment can be achieved by harvesting only those lymphocytes that express on their surface certain antigens associated with T-cell activation. As shown in Figure 16.8, such cells can be detected readily in cultured lymphocyte populations, isolated, and further expanded *in vitro,* thereby preparing them for subsequent re-infusion into the donor cancer patient.

Yet another biological detail needs to be respected in order to maximize the success of the ACT re-infusion protocol described here: Prior to T-cell re-infusion, patients need to be treated with cytotoxic chemotherapeutic drugs in order to reduce the populations of resident lymphocytes and other leukocytes in their immune systems, thereby "making room" for the re-infused lymphocytes

and facilitating their taking root in the recipient's body. Following re-infusion of the *ex vivo* expanded lymphocytes, patients are often given IL-2 to help support successful engraftment and proliferation of the re-infused T cells, including the rare T cells that, following infusion, happen to encounter cancer cells displaying the peptide:MHC complexes that they recognize. It is worth noting that because systemic IL-2 can cause toxic side effects, more recent research has focused on innovative T-cell culture protocols that reduce the need for sustained *in vivo* treatment with IL-2.

As shown in **Table 16.3**, ACT has been used for the treatment of several types of cancer including melanoma, lymphomas, and carcinomas, such as urothelial and breast tumors. Adoptive T-cell transfer, as outlined here, leverages the capacity of T cells to discriminate between oligopeptide sequences that differ by as little as a single amino acid residue. Although elegant in concept and powerful in clinical application, major challenges remain to its widespread adoption in oncology clinics.

Table 16.3 Treatment of cancer by adoptive T-cell transfer

Year	Type of cancer	Molecule targeted	Patients	% objective responses	Comment
1998	melanoma	unknown	15	60	The first clinical trial of TILs; responses were observed but of short duration and TILs did not persist.
2002	melanoma	unknown	13	46%	First use of lymphodepletion before cell transfer, responses were of longer

Year	Type of cancer	Molecule targeted	Patients	% objective responses	Comment
					duration and TIL population persisted.
2008	melanoma	NY-ESO-1	9	33%	First demonstration of feasibility of treating cancer with *in vitro* generated antigen-specific TILs.
2011	melanoma	unknown	93	56%	20% of the patients had complete recoveries exceeding 5 years.
2014	cervical cancer	unknown	9	33%	Treatment of carcinoma with TIL therapy.
2014	cholangial carcinoma	mutated ERB2	1	—	Use of *in vitro* selected antigen-specific TILs to effect complete regression >6 years.

Year	Type of cancer	Molecule targeted	Patients	% objective responses	Comment
2016	metastatic colorectal cancer	mutant KRAS (G12D mutation)	1	—	Use of *in vitro* selected antigen-specific TILs to effect complete regression >5 years.
2018	chemotherapy-resistant metastatic breast cancer	mutant forms of four proteins: SLC3A2 KIAA0368 CADPS2 CTSB	1	—	Use of multiple *in vitro* antigen-specific TIL populations to effect durable regression.

Adapted in part from S.A. Rosenberg and N.P. Restifo, *Science* 348:62–68, 2015.

To begin, as described above, this type of immunotherapy is highly personalized, that is, tailored specifically to the somatic mutations borne by each patient's tumor. It is also extremely labor intensive and requires the resources and a spectrum of medical expertise found only in large academic medical centers to manage its administration and respond to possible side effects.

Also, as summarized in the next section, the biology of conventional T cells and the mechanisms leading to their activation create significant obstacles to widespread adoption in oncology clinics. Hence, the ACT therapy described here, as documented in Table 16.3, has been applied to a variety of cancers. At present, it can be regarded as providing a dramatic demonstration of the powers of the adaptive immune system, but nevertheless remains a therapeutic protocol whose logistics and incurred expense keep it from being introduced into the oncology clinic as a routinely employed strategy in the foreseeable future.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

adoptive transfer
: Procedure in which immune cells are transferred from a donor to a recipient, undertaken with the goal that the donor’s cells will be able to mediate an immune function in the recipient.

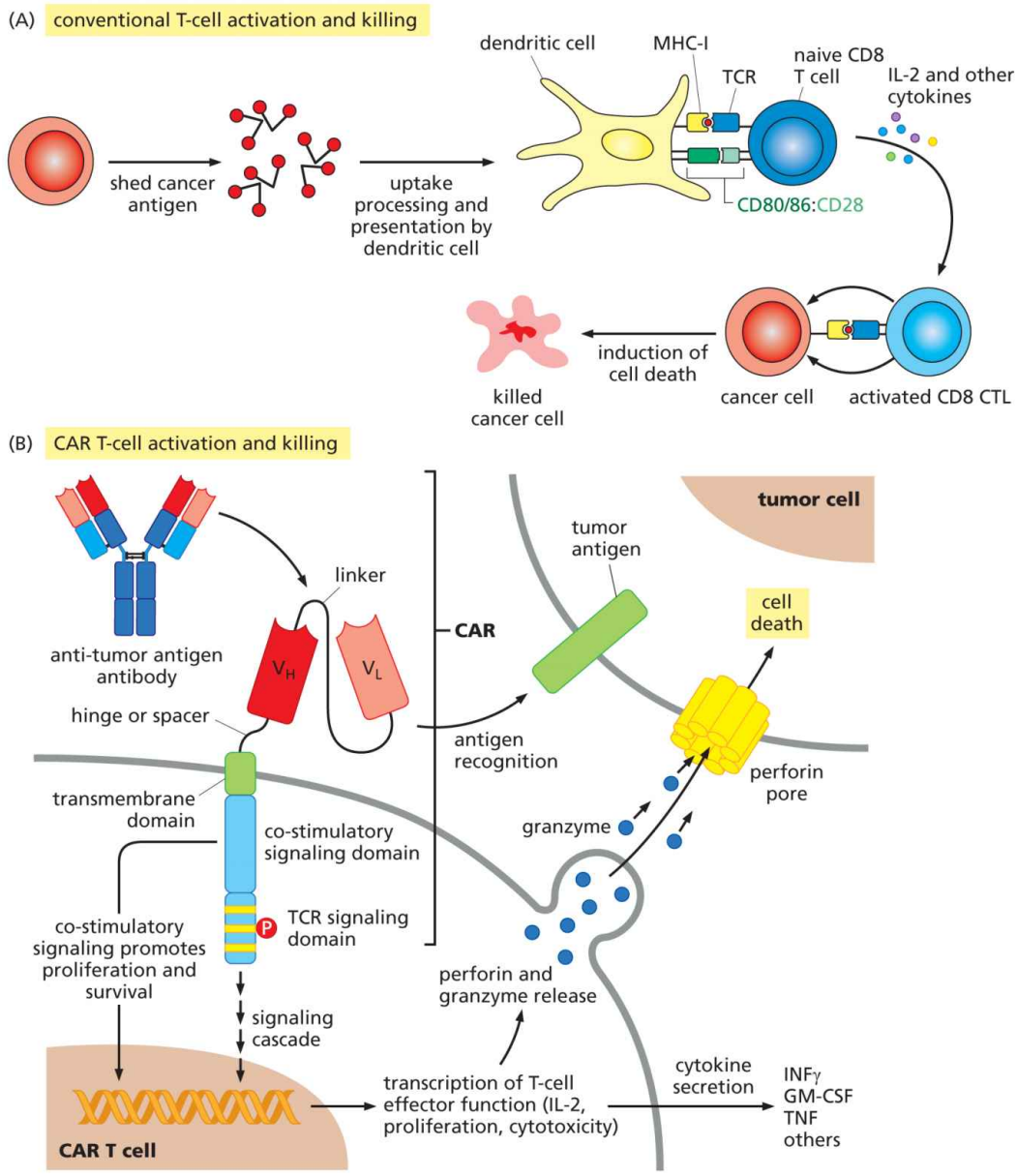
OceanofPDF.com

16.8 CAR T cells have predetermined specificity and bypass MHC-dependent antigen presentation

An alternative adoptive cell transfer strategy involves the modification of T cells in ways that are simpler than the complex, challenging experimental protocol described above. Recall from Section 15.7 that the conventional T-cell activation triggered by APCs occurs in a lymphoid tissue, and requires both antigen recognition by the TCR complex and co-stimulatory signals generated by the T cell's co-stimulatory receptors. The latter must recognize ligands displayed on the surface of antigen-presenting APCs in order for this activation to proceed to completion.

These two recognition events, mediated by the two sets of receptors, trigger a complex set of signaling events within the naive T cell, with each receptor type acting on a largely distinct intracellular signal-transducing circuitry; the resulting signaling events, operating together, result in activation of the T cell.

Subsequently, following its migration out of lymphoid tissues to peripheral, non-lymphoid sites in the body, the activated T cell may encounter cells displaying peptide:MHC complexes recognized by its TCRs; this T cell will then be induced to respond, specifically by launching a cytotoxic attack on the encountered target cells. This complex process, involving multiple different cell types and several distinct receptor–ligand interactions, is outlined in **Figure 16.9A**.



A two-part figure giving an Overview of C A R T-cell biology. Part A depicts conventional T-cell activation and killing. A cancer cell sheds antigens. These undergo uptake processing by a dendritic cell, which then presents them to a naive C D 8 T cell. In the presence of I L-2 and other cytokines, the T cell matures into an activated C D 8 cytotoxic T lymphocyte. This attaches to a cancer cell, inducing the death of the latter. Part B depicts C A R T-cell activation and killing. Upon recognition of a cancer cell antigen, a V H and a V L from an anti-tumor antigen antibody detach and are joined end to end by a linker. The V H attaches via a hinge or spacer to a transmembrane domain on a C A R T-cell, which in turn is attached to a co-stimulatory signaling domain in the cytoplasm, which in turn is attached to a T C R signaling domain. The signaling domain initiates a signaling cascade, and at the same time signaling from the co-stimulatory signaling domain promotes proliferation and

survival. The combined effect is the transcription of T-cell effector function (I L-2, proliferation, cytotoxicity). This results in the secretion of cytokines: interferon gamma, G M-C S F, tumor necrosis factor, and others. The other result is the release, through the plasma membrane, of perforin and granzyme. A perforin pore is formed in the plasma membrane of the cancer cell, and granzymes pass through the pore into the cancer cell's interior, where they cause cell death.

Figure 16.9 Overview of CAR T-cell biology (A) Conventional T-cell activation and killing involves at least three cell types: CD8 T cells (*dark blue*), dendritic cells (*yellow*), and cancer cells (*light red*), the last being the source of tumor antigens for activating T cells and the target of killing. Ligand–receptor interactions between naive T cells and dendritic cells include both TCR recognition of complexes of peptide antigen (*dark red*) formed with MHC-I molecules displayed by dendritic cells and co-stimulation of T cells via C80/86:CD28 interactions. In the presence of IL-2 and other cytokines, these several interactions enable the activation of a naive CD8 T cell (*dark blue*) and its maturation to a functional cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, *light blue*). The resulting activated CD8 T cell can proceed to kill a cancer cell (*light red*) that displays the MHC-I:peptide complex recognized by the T cell's TCR. (B) Chimeric antigen receptor-displaying T-cell (CAR T-cell) responses require only two cell types, a CAR T cell (*lower left*) and its target cell, specifically a tumor antigen-displaying cancer cell (*upper right*). The recognition of the tumor antigen (*green*) on the surface of the target cell is the only type of receptor–ligand interaction required to trigger killing of the targeted cancer cell. Most chimeric antigen receptors include three modules: (1) an extracellular antigen-binding domain comprised of a single-chain variable region fragment (scFv) derived from the V_H and V_L domains of a monoclonal antibody molecule known to bind specifically to a target antigen (*red*, *pink*), (2) a hinge or spacer segment and a short transmembrane domain derived from any of a variety of cell surface receptor molecules (*light green*), and (3) a cytoplasmic domain assembled from two distinct intracellular signaling domains, one providing co-stimulatory signals usually released by a CD28 co-stimulatory receptor (*light blue*) and a domain containing the TCR signaling domain that is usually activated when a TCR recognizes and binds a cognate antigen on a second cell (*blue, yellow stripes*). Engagement of the CAR with the targeted tumor antigen has three major effects: a perforin–granzyme-mediated cytolytic attack by the CAR T cell on the tumor cell (*upper right*), secretion by the CAR T cell of a variety of cytokines (*lower right*), and proliferation and survival of the CAR T-cell population. (Adapted in part from R.J. Lee, J.S. Abramson and R.A. Goldsby, *Case Studies in Cancer*, New York: W.W. Norton, 2019, p. 275, and in part from R.C. Larson and M.V. Maus, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 21:145–161, 2021. With permission from Nature.)

The general strategy of chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell therapies bypasses the complexity of this conventional T-cell activation process. These therapies do so by endowing T cells with receptors that enable them to recognize and attack target cells

displaying an already-identified cell surface antigen. This is achieved without identifying and assembling the usually required antigen-specific TCR and its associated co-receptor.

To begin, DNA segments encoding the variable (V) antigen-recognizing domains of certain moAbs can be appropriated as starting points. These mAbs have previously been isolated because they recognize known cell surface antigens displayed by cancer cells. Using recombinant DNA, the two V-encoding DNA segments of such a mAb are isolated and strung together, thereby assembling a gene encoding an entirely artificial antigen-binding receptor. This resulting antigen-binding domain can then be incorporated into a larger protein that carries the additional domains associated with a TCR, specifically the transmembrane domains and the cytoplasmic domains of a TCR; finally, the cytoplasmic domain of a co-stimulatory receptor is added. Hence, the antigen-binding ectodomain of the engineered receptor should mimic the functions of a naturally arising TCR.

If constructed properly (**Sidebar 16.7**), the cytoplasmic domains of this newly constructed receptor should enable the release into lymphocytes of the mixture of biochemical signals that normally occurs when a natural TCR recognizes and binds a cognate antigen. Recall that this binding usually elicits functional activation of the lymphocytes and enables them to kill the cells displaying targeted tumor antigens (Figure 16.9B). (The term “chimeric” in chimeric antigen receptor, CAR, comes from the fact that the antigen-recognizing portion of this artificial receptor derives from an already-identified monoclonal antibody, whereas the transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains derive from the signal-emitting domains of a bona fide TCR plus its companion co-stimulatory receptor, such as CD28 or 4-1BB.)

Sidebar 16.7 T-cell chimeric antigen receptors incorporate functional domains from several different molecules

(1)The process of constructing a chimeric antigen receptor begins with the identification of an antigen that is either tumor associated or tumor specific and is reliably displayed by many, if not all, of the neoplastic cells within a tumor. A suitable mAb is then derived against the identified tumor antigen. The DNA sequences that encode the antigen-binding heavy- and light-chain variable regions of the antibody molecule are then subcloned and linked together via a linker-encoding segment into a single reading frame. This yields an expression construct specifying the antigen-binding domain of the parental moAb from which these sequences were derived. Hence, the antigen-recognizing and -binding functions usually achieved collaboratively by the heavy and light chains of a conventional immunoglobulin are now mediated by a single polypeptide, often termed a single-chain variable region fragment (scFv). (2) This gene construct is then extended further by adding a segment encoding a membrane-spanning polypeptide, often mirroring the transmembrane sequence of a T-cell protein such as the CD8 co-receptor. This polypeptide segment serves the dual functions of connecting the scFv ectodomain to the CAR’s cytoplasmic signaling domains and, at the same time, operates as a molecular hinge, providing flexibility to the scFv ectodomain module of the CAR. (3) This gene fusion is followed by adding a segment encoding the cytoplasmic domain of the CAR that

incorporates the signal-emitting domain of the TCR complex together with the signaling domain of a stimulatory co-receptor molecule, yielding a combined cytoplasmic domain that releases both types of signals into the T-cell cytoplasm following antigen binding.

Ideally, binding of the antibody-derived receptor portion of the CAR by the targeted antigen initiates many of the same T-cell-activating signaling cascades that are triggered within a T cell by engagement of its native TCR. Signals from the co-stimulatory domain contribute to the rate of cell proliferation, the persistence of the CAR T cells, and the durability of the response. As might be apparent, CAR T cells may also kill normal host cells that happen to express the same antigen as the targeted tumor-associated antigen.

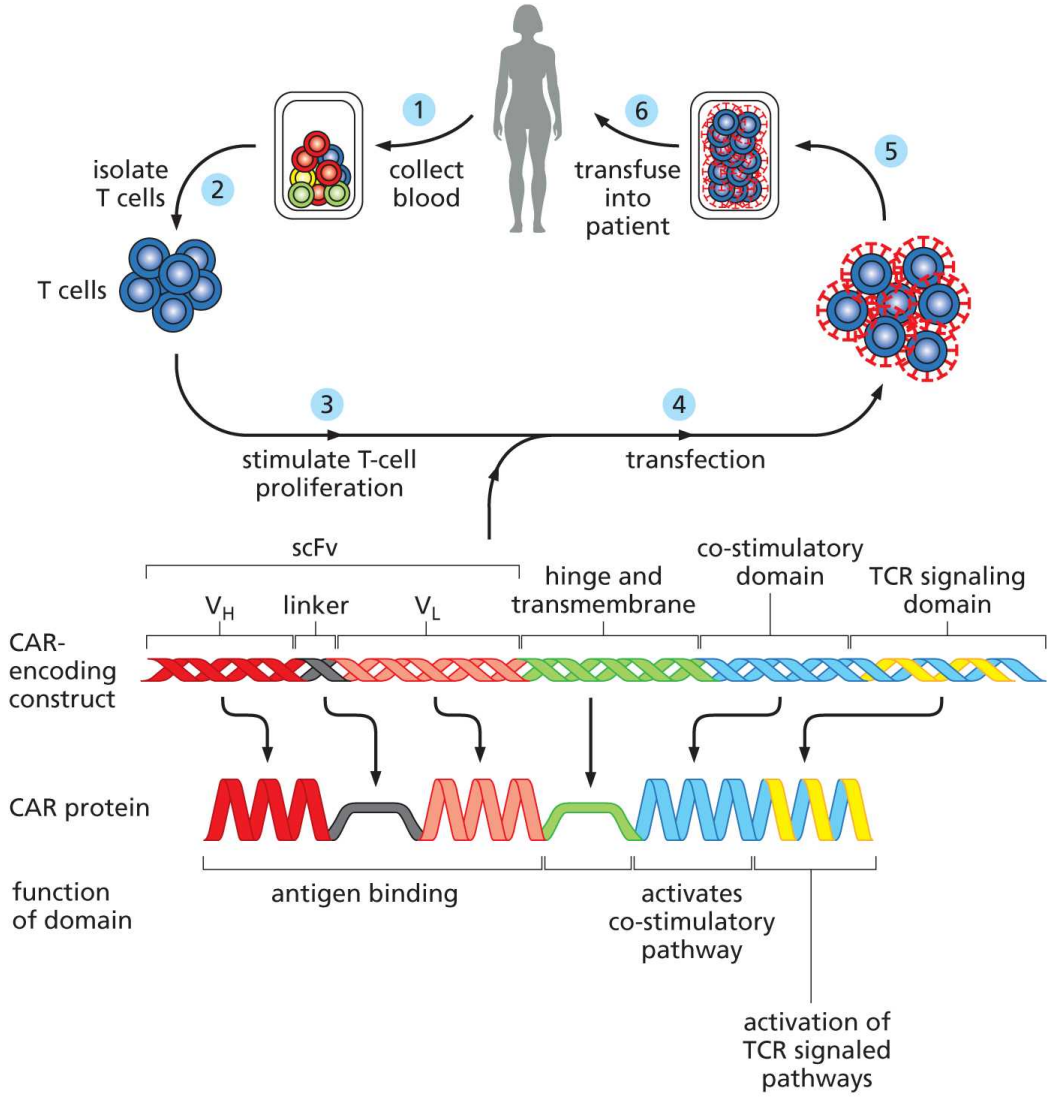
These multiple structural domains of a CAR allow it to incorporate all of the functional features required for its recognition of a target cell and the resulting functional activation of a T cell, all this achieved by a single engineered molecule (see Sidebar 16.7). Once a gene encoding a CAR has been assembled, it can be transfected into a patient's lymphocytes, resulting in the creation of CAR T cells.

An additional attraction of CAR T cells is that the antigen specificity of their CAR can be predetermined to be specific for recognizing and binding a tumor antigen known to be displayed on the surface of targeted cancer cells (see Figure 16.9B). Also, such a protein antigen can be displayed directly on the surface of the cancer cell's plasma membrane without a need for prior antigen processing and association with MHC-I molecules. (Of course, any resulting attack launched by a CAR-expressing T cell will fail if and when the cancer cell contrives to shut down expression of the targeted cell surface antigen.)

Like the antibodies from which they derive, antigen-specific CARs can be generated that recognize a variety of chemical classes of antigens, including not only proteins but also carbohydrates and lipids. In addition, the desired CAR T-cell responses involve the participation of only two cell types: the attacking CAR T cell and the targeted antigen-displaying cancer cell. This obviates the need for several different receptor–ligand interactions involving multiple cell types that are normally required for T-cell activation (see Figure 16.9).

Once the chimeric antigen receptor has been generated, the manufacture and administration of CAR T cells is carried out along the general outline illustrated in **Figure 16.10**. Thus, leukocytes are collected via leukapheresis of a patient's blood, a procedure in which white blood cells including T cells are separated from blood and the remaining red blood cells and plasma are recycled back to the patient. As illustrated in this figure, T cells are then separated from other leukocytes, transfected with an expression construct encoding the CAR, and stimulated to proliferate by antibody-mediated crosslinking using anti-TCR and anti-CD28 antibodies in the presence of IL-2. Following *ex vivo* expansion, the CAR-displaying T cells are infused back into a patient who, as in the adoptive T-cell transfer therapy described earlier, has been treated with leukocyte-depleting chemotherapy in order to create a niche in the patient's immune system for the re-introduced cells.

Patients also are given IL-2 to support longer-term CAR T-cell growth and maintenance. As attractive as CAR T-cell therapy is in concept, it remains encumbered by several significant complications (**Sidebar 16.8**).



A depiction of the Overall strategy of C A R T-cell therapy. Step 1 is to collect blood from a patient. Step 2 is to isolate T-cells. Step 3 is stimulate T-cell proliferation. Step 4 is transfection with a C A R encoding construct. The structure of the construct is shown, schematically, to consist, from left to right, of a V H domain, a linker, a V L domain, a transmembrane domain hinge, a co-stimulatory domain, and a T C R signaling domain. In the corresponding C A R protein, the segments produced by the V H and V L domains engage in antigen binding, the segment produced by the co-stimulatory domain activates the co-stimulatory pathway, and the signaling domain activates the T C R signaled pathways. Step 5 is the harvesting of the population of C A R-expressing T cells. Step 6 is transfusion into the patient.

Figure 16.10 Overall strategy of CAR T-cell therapy Production of CAR T cells must be tailored to each individual's tumors and associated tumor antigens. (1) Blood is collected from the patient and leukocytes are prepared by the procedure sometimes termed leukapheresis. (2) T cells are purified from the leukocyte fraction. (3) T cells are stimulated to proliferate by exposure to IL-2 and T-cell activation signals. (4) The proliferating T cells are transfected with a lentiviral or retroviral expression vector construct that encodes the chimeric antigen receptor (CAR, *lower left*). (5) The population of CAR-expressing T cells is harvested. (6) These cells are transfused into the patient who has undergone lymphodepletion prior to the return of these genetically modified T-cells. (Adapted from R.J. Lee, J.S. Abramson and R.A. Goldsby, *Case Studies in Cancer*, New York: W.W. Norton, 2019, pp. 296–297.)

Sidebar 16.8 The utility of ACT therapies is reduced by certain limitations

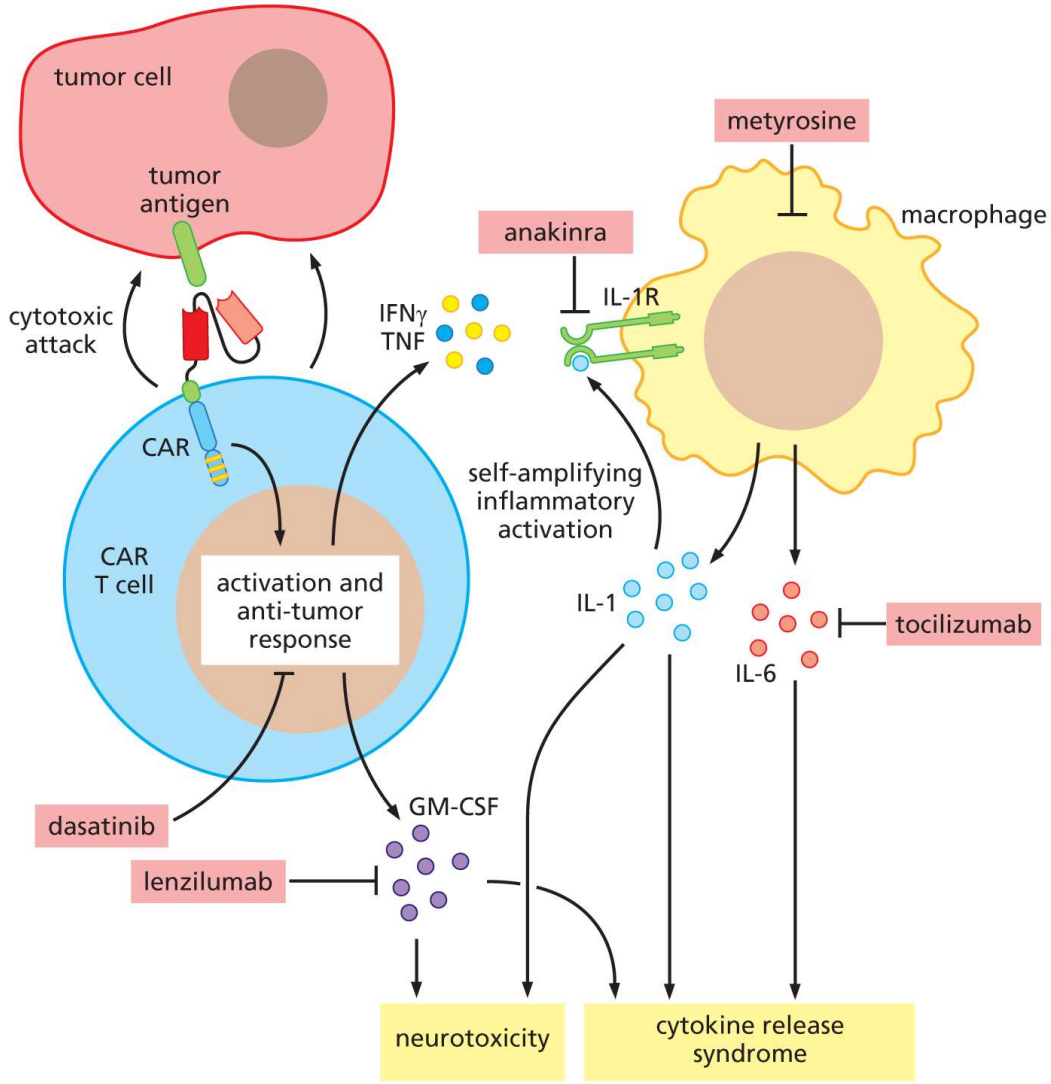
At present, like the adoptive cell transfer (ACT) therapies described earlier, CAR therapies represent personalized therapies designed to respond to each patient's tumor and associated antigens. Moreover, each batch of T cells that is modified to become CAR T cells must be autologous to the patient, that is, derived from a patient's own preexisting T cells. This requirement is critical in order to avoid a graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction, which often occurs when transfused donor T cells are derived from an allogeneic donor. Such allogeneic T cells may recognize and react to recipient host antigens displayed widely throughout a patient's body, resulting in a serious and potentially fatal condition.

In the case of CAR T-cell therapy, GVH may occur simply because, in addition to expression of the inserted CAR proteins, the modified T cells continue to express their normal complement of native TCRs. If allogeneic T cells are indeed employed to create CAR T cells (because a patient's lymphocytes are not readily available), these lymphocytes will not be tolerant following infusion of the modified T cells of some of the antigens naturally expressed by the recipient patient's tissues, particularly the protein products of the major histocompatibility complex genes, notably MHC-I and MHC-II. Recognition of these or other host antigens can lead to widespread GVH attacks on the recipient's cells that must be controlled with a variety of immunosuppressive treatments.

Another potential complication is that the CAR expressed by the introduced lymphocytes is itself a novel molecular structure not expressed by the patient's normal cells and therefore represents, on its own, a potentially immunogenic antigen capable of eliciting an immune response from the immune system of this recipient. This response can be minimized, however, by the immunosuppressive preparative lymphodepletion protocol mentioned above.

A prominent example of the use of CAR T therapy comes from its application to the treatment of B-cell-related lymphomas. Thus, the CD19 antigen is expressed by cells of the B-cell lineage at all stages of their differentiation (including derived lymphoma cells)

and therefore has represented an attractive candidate for antigen-targeted CAR T therapy. Indeed, anti-CD19–CAR T-cell therapy has become the current standard of care for patients suffering acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) and large B-cell lymphoma. In spite of its demonstrated therapeutic efficacy, this treatment is often accompanied by significant side effects that on their own can be severe and even life threatening. Thus, within the first several weeks of therapy, patients often experience fevers as high as 40°C, with spikes in the production of a variety of inflammatory cytokines, particularly interferon-γ, IL-6, TNFα, GM-CSF, and IL-1. Together, these systemically released cytokines represent the central features of the condition termed cytokine release syndrome (CRS), which is manifested as an acute systemic inflammatory syndrome that can lead to the dysfunction if not destruction of multiple tissues, organs, and even neurological disorders. The life-threatening consequences of CRS can usually be avoided or treated by use of a variety of immunosuppressive treatments (**Figure 16.11**).



A diagrammatic overview of Cytokine release syndrome and some pharmacological approaches to its treatment. Upon activation and initiation of an anti-tumor response, a C A R T-cell begins a cytotoxic attack on a tumor cell whose antigen has been recognized. Associated with this activity is the release of interferon gamma, tumor necrosis factor, and G M-C S F. Activation of the T-cell and initiation of the anti-tumor response can be blocked by dasatinib. G M-C S F has neurotoxic effects and contributes to cytokine release syndrome, but lenzilumab can block G M-C S F from doing this. The release the of cytokines stimulates a macrophage to release interleukins 1 and 6. These also contribute to cytokine release syndrome, and I L 1 is neurotoxic. Metyrosine inhibits release of interleukins 1 and 6, and tocilizumab blocks the action of I L 6. Interleukin 1 engages in self-amplifying inflammatory activation by binding to I L 1 receptors on the macrophage, but this action is blocked by anakinra.

Figure 16.11 Cytokine release syndrome (CRS) and some pharmacological approaches to its treatment Activation of a CAR T cell (*light blue, lower left*; see also Figures 16.9 and 16.10) triggered by its encounter with a targeted tumor cell (*pink, upper left*) causes the CAR T cell to synthesize and secrete a number of powerful cytokines, including tumor necrosis factor (TNF, *dark blue*), interferon-γ (IFNγ, *yellow*), and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) (*purple*). Macrophages (*light yellow, right*) respond to the highly pro-inflammatory cytokines in a number of ways, including secretion of IL-1 (*light blue*) and IL-6 (*pink*). In addition to its neurotoxic effects, IL-1 (*light blue*) interacts in an autocrine fashion with IL-1 receptors displayed by the macrophages (*light green*) to drive them to higher levels of activation, contributing to a positive feedback loop that intensifies CRS and its impact on the central nervous system (CNS). Anti-CRS therapies include treatment with anakinra, an IL-1 mimic that blocks the IL-1 receptor; lenzilumab, a monoclonal antibody that binds GM-CSF; and tocilizumab, a monoclonal antibody that binds IL-6. In addition, small-molecule therapies deploying desatinib and metyrosine have been used. Dasatinib, an inhibitor of the Src family of tyrosine kinases as well as Bcr-Abl, lowers the level of activation and cytokine secretion in CAR T cells. Metyrosine acts on macrophages to reduce their production of catecholamines, which function in turn as inducers of IL-6 secretion. (Adapted from R.C. Larson and M.V. Maus, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 21:145–161, 2021. With permission from Nature.)

To date, CAR T therapies targeting the tumor-associated antigen described above and several others listed in **Table 16.4** have made their greatest contribution to the treatment of hematologic cancers. Efforts to deploy CAR T against solid tumors have been largely frustrated by the challenges of identifying target antigens that are strongly expressed within tumors but exhibit little or no expression in normal tissues. Still, several candidate antigens have emerged. These include the B7-H3 antigen, which is expressed at low levels

on the cells of many normal tissues, but at high levels by the cells of several pediatric cancers, including medulloblastoma, Ewing sarcoma, and osteosarcoma.

Table 16.4 Use of CAR T cells to treat a variety of hematologic cancers

Target antigen	Disease	CAR	Number of patients analyzed	Median age (years)	Response	Patients with CRS (%)	Patients with neurotoxicity (%)
CD19	B-ALL (pediatric)[a]	Tisagenlecleucel; 4-1BB co-stimulation	75	11	6-month relapse-free survival rate of 80%	77	40
CD19	relapsed or refractory DLBCL[a]	Axicabtagene ciloleucel; CD28 co-stimulation	101	58	83% objective response; 58% complete response	93	67
CD19	refractory B-cell lymphomas[a]	Tisagenlecleucel; 4-1BB co-stimulation	28	58.5	64% overall response; 43% complete remission	57	39
CD19	mantle-cell lymphoma[a]	Axicabtagene ciloleucel; CD28 co-stimulation	68	65	93% objective response rate; 67% complete response	91	63

Target antigen	Disease	CAR	Number of patients analyzed	Median age (years)	Response	Patients with CRS (%)	Patients with neurotoxicity (%)
CD19	B-ALL	CD28 co-stimulation	53	44	83% complete remission; median overall survival 12.9 months	85	44
CD22	relapsed or refractory pre-B-ALL	4-1BB co-stimulation	21	19	73% complete remission treated with higher dose	76	unreported
BCMA	relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma	Idecaptagene vicleucel; 4-1BB co-stimulation	33	60	85% objective response rate; 45% complete response rate	76	42
BCMA	multiple myeloma	4-1BB co-stimulation	25		48% overall response rate	88	32

B-ALL, B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia; BCMA, B-cell maturation antigen; CAR, chimeric antigen receptor; CRS, cytokine release syndrome; DLBCL, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma; 4-1BB TNF-related ligand protein.

Adapted from: R.C. Larson and M.V. Maus, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 21:145–161, 2021. With permission from Nature.

Brain cancers have represented a challenge for mAb-based cancer therapies because of the difficulties imposed by the blood–brain barrier, specifically its ability to block the transfer of large molecules from the circulation into the brain parenchyma. Conveniently, however, a quirk in brain physiology allows intravenously injected T cells to pass through the blood–brain barrier and gain access to the brain parenchyma. This fact has provoked considerable interest in developing CAR therapies for the treatment of glioblastomas.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

chimeric antigen receptor
: Cell surface antigen-binding receptor generated by recombinant DNA in which antigen-binding and transmembrane domains have been fused with segments of intracellular signal-emitting domains, resulting in strong potentiation of antigen-provoked signaling within a T cell.

single-chain variable region fragment
: An antigen-binding polypeptide that is formed by connecting the variable domains of the heavy and light chains of an immunoglobulin via an intermediate linker; this fusion protein can function like the parental, naturally formed antibody to recognize and bind a specific antigen.

leukapheresis
: Procedure whereby leukocytes are prepared *ex vivo* from drawn blood prior to returning the remaining portions of the blood to the donor or to another recipient.

cytokine release syndrome
: Condition representing acute systemic inflammation associated with fever and often the dysfunction of multiple organs throughout the body, which is often life-threatening.

graft-versus-host disease
: A condition, often life-threatening, in which cells of an allogeneic bone marrow graft generate significant immune-mediated destruction of various normal tissues throughout the body of the graft recipient.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aU.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval.Return to reference a
- aU.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval.Return to reference a
- aU.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval.Return to reference a
- aU.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval.Return to reference a

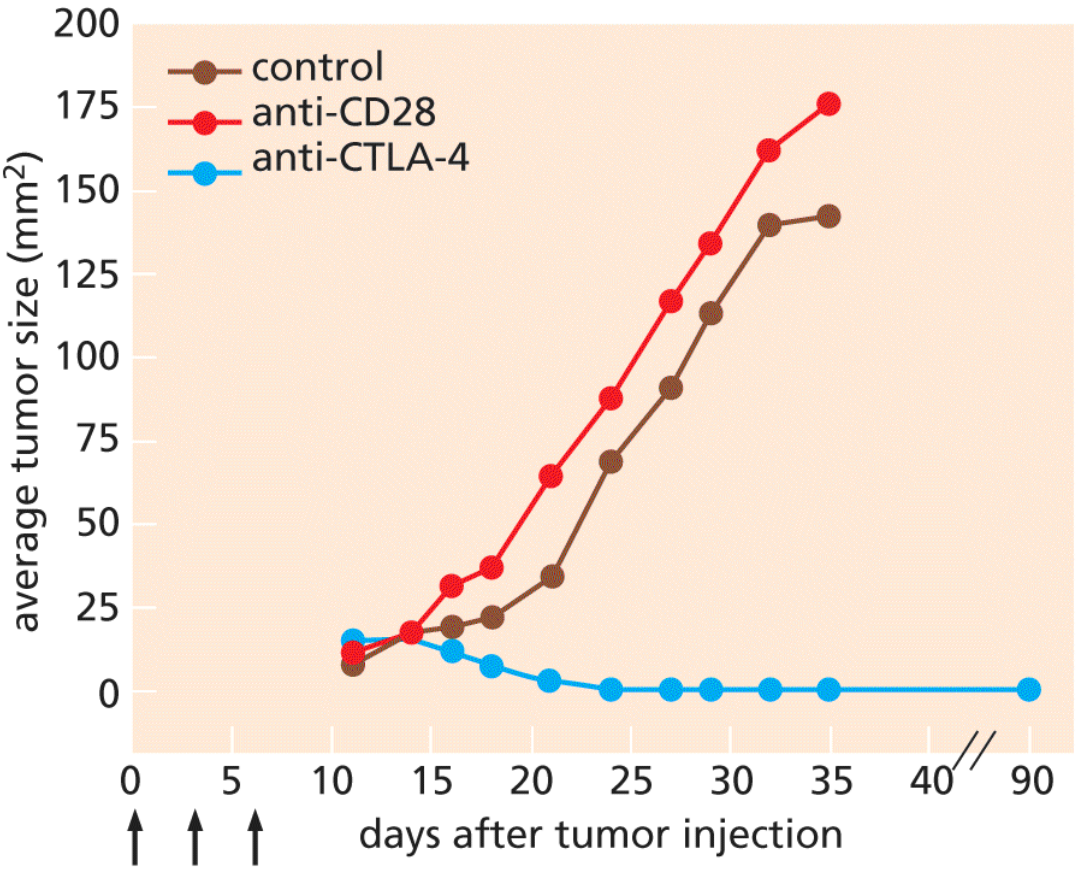
OceanofPDF.com

16.9 Checkpoint inhibition is a distinct type of immunotherapy that modifies the behavior of immune cells

The antibody and T-cell-mediated immunotherapies we have examined so far are designed to directly engage and kill tumor cells. Checkpoint inhibitory therapies operate quite differently. Rather than launching direct cytopathic attacks on these cells, this class of treatments manipulates the immune system in ways that increase the likelihood and potency of *existing* anti-tumor immune responses, particularly responses that may already exist in a patient's body but cannot be launched or effectively sustained because they have been shut down by certain immune regulatory mechanisms.

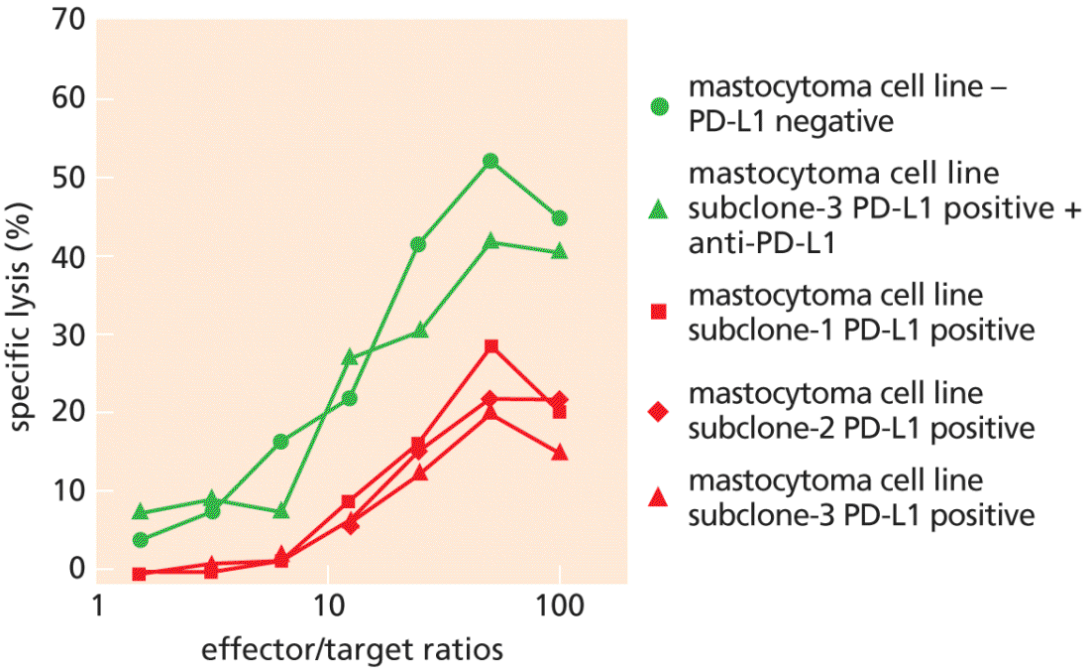
Checkpoint inhibition was introduced in Chapter 15 as a mechanism that operates to restrain excessive T-cell activation that might otherwise lead to persistent inflammatory states or autoimmune diseases. In effect, immune checkpoints of various types operate to provide negative-feedback controls on normal immune function (see also Section 6.14), thereby ensuring that the occurrence and strength of various immune responses are constrained in order to avoid inadvertent, uncontrolled, highly destructive autoimmune attacks on normal cells and tissues.

The concept of immune checkpoint regulation and associated anti-tumor immunotherapy emerged from a foundational experiment reported in 1996. As illustrated in **Figure 16.12A**, this work demonstrated the principle of checkpoint immunotherapy by showing that antibody-mediated blockade of CTLA-4 function inhibits tumor growth. This result was most provocative, because it showed that an antibody directed against a T-cell protein (rather than a cancer cell-associated antigen) would impede the growth of a tumor.



A line graph depicting average tumor size over time for three different groups. In the control group, tumors grew to 125 square millimeters in surface area within 30 days of tumor injection. Tumors grew even more in the anti-C D 28 group, to 150 square millimeters within 30 days. In the anti-C T L A-4 group, by contrast, tumors shrank to zero within 30 days and remained at zero out to 90 days.

(A)



A line graph charting specific lysis percentage as a function of effector to target ratio for five different mastocytoma cell lines. The horizontal scale is logarithmic. The curves rise from 1 to 10 and from 10 to 50 but then fall after 50, so that peak lysis percentages are at an effector-to-target ratio of 50. The P D-L1 negative line has the highest lysis percentages, peaking at a specific lysis of about 53. Next is subclone-3 P D-L1 positive and anti-P D-L1, peaking at about 43 percent. Subclone-1 P D-L1 positive peaks at just under 30 percent, and subclone-2 P D-L1 positive and subclone-3 P D-L1 positive both peak at about 20 percent.

(B)

Figure 16.12 Enhancement of anti-tumor immunity by antibody-mediated checkpoint blockade (A) Effect of CTLA-4 blockade. Cells of a colon cancer cell line were implanted into three groups of mice on day zero. The treated groups received either anti-CTLA-4 moAb (*blue*) or anti-CD28 moAb (*red*) at the three times indicated by the arrows, while the control group (*brown*) received neither. Tumor growth was assessed by measuring the size of the tumor nodule. (B) Effect of PD-1 blocking PD-L1 interaction. The targeted cancer cells used were from a cell line that had been derived from a mouse mastocytoma, which arises from mast cells and represent a subtype of granulocytes of the myeloid lineage. These cells did not naturally express PD-L1. Three subclones of the line were transfected with a PD-L1 expression construct to force their expression of PD-L1. Each of these populations was subjected to attack by a cytotoxic T-cell line *in vitro* at increasing ratios of the attacking cytotoxic T-cell line (effectors) to the

mastocytoma target cell line (target) and the lysis of targeted mastocytoma cells was measured. The three PD-L1-expressing mastocytoma subclones showed reduced sensitivity to killing (*red lines*) relative to parental mastocytoma cells that were PD-L1 negative (*green filled circles*). Moreover, when the subclone-3 cells, which had been forced to express PD-L1 were treated with anti-PD-L1 moAb (*green filled triangles*), their sensitivity to killing rivaled that of the parental cell line (*green filled circles*) that lacked forced PD-L1 expression. (A, adapted from D.R. Leach, M.F. Krummel and J.P. Allison. *Science* 271:1734–1736, 1996. With permission from AAAS. B, adapted from Y. Iwai, M. Ishida, Y. Tanaka et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 99:12293–12297, 2002. With permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.)

While we have discussed the importance of checkpoint controls in limiting the direct attacks by CTLs on potential target cells, these controls also operate to constrain an earlier step in the development of CTLs that operates *centrally* in the lymph nodes rather than *peripherally* at sites of immune attack on tumors. Recall that CTLA-4 acts as a cell surface receptor displayed by T lymphocytes that is activated by binding its cognate ligands displayed by antigen-presenting cells in the lymph nodes (see Sections 15.7 and 15.12). Since its ligands (usually termed CD80 and CD86) are cell surface proteins displayed by other cells, specifically APCs, they have sometimes been termed "counter-receptors." Upon engagement with CD80/86, which requires close physical contact between T cells and APCs displaying their cognate antigens, the CTLA-4 receptor normally acts directly to shut down T-cell receptor signaling and thus T-cell activation in both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. Hence, introduction of an anti-CTLA-4 mAb severs an important negative-feedback loop that normally operates within lymphoid tissues to constrain T-cell activation. Accordingly, this moAb treatment enables the activation of both CD8+ T cells that are capable of becoming cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs, T_C) and CD4+ helper T-cell (T_H) subsets that make important contributions to anti-tumor immunity.

While the 1996 work did not reveal these mechanistic details, it did show unequivocally that manipulations of immune cells, in this case CTLs, led to major changes in the ability of tumors to persist and continue to grow in host mice. This suggested, in turn, that the immune systems of the tumor-bearing hosts intrinsically possessed the power to kill cancer cells. However, this hypothesized power could not be realized in the absence of experimental intervention, in this case an intervention achieved through the use of an antibody recognizing a cell surface protein (CTLA-4) displayed by T cells.

In fact, the 1996 work could have been interpreted in two ways: either the applied antibody directly *stimulated* the anti-tumor response of the mice treated with it or,

alternatively, it *interrupted* a normally operative inhibitory mechanism that blocked their ability to mount an effective anti-tumor response. As is clear from the last chapter and the above text, it was this second mechanism that was found to underlie and explain the mechanism of action of the anti-CTLA-4 moAb.

The observed successes in halting tumor growth suggested a larger principle: checkpoint controls analogous to the CTLA-4:CD80/86 regulation highlighted in these early experiments operate to protect cancer cells from attack and elimination, and conversely, blocking these negative controls can free certain arms of the immune system from suppression by these controls. This liberation from such postulated controls would then give T cells the freedom to launch effective attacks on cancer cells, ideally resulting in elimination of the latter.

Control experiments, undertaken in parallel, involved the CD28 co-receptor, which is also displayed on the surface of T cells. This second set of experiments demonstrated that CD28 acts in a manner that is precisely opposite to CTLA-4, doing so by *enabling* the generation of CTL-mediated immune attack. Thus, if the CD28 stimulatory receptor co-displayed with the TCR on the surface of a T lymphocyte was able to engage CD80/CD86 displayed by APCs, it would provide the co-stimulation necessary to enable the activation of CD8 T cells and their maturation into CTLs capable of mounting cytolytic attacks, notably attacks on targeted tumor cells. (As might be anticipated, blocking this CD28 receptor with an appropriate mAb led to a result opposite to that achieved by anti-CTLA-4 mAbs, namely that tumor growth actually *benefited* by squelching the actions of this activation-promoting CD28 protein.

These functions of CTLA-4 represent a two-edged sword. Normally, CTLA-4 provides critical protection against excessive or inappropriate initiation of immune responses launched by T cells, such as those that can lead to autoimmune diseases. However, at the same time, it can reduce or even prevent the initiation of desirable T-cell responses including those mounted against cancer cells.

In addition, subsequent work has shown that anti-CTLA-4 moAb has another mechanism of action: It contributes to the killing of regulatory T cells (T_{reg}) cells that, when allowed to function, are potently immunosuppressive cells that inhibit both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. (Regulatory T cells display CTLA-4 on their surface, making them targets for the binding of anti-CTLA-4 antibodies, which leads to their death mediated by either natural killer (NK) cells or phagocytes as described in Section 16.4 and illustrated in Figure 16.4.)

An entirely independent set of studies uncovered PD-1, a second, distinct inhibitory checkpoint receptor displayed by CTLs and other T cells that operates at a later stage of T-cell development, after activated T cells have ceased their interactions with APCs, left lymphoid tissues, and dispersed into tissues throughout the body (**Sidebar 16.9**).

Sidebar 16.9 CTLA-4 and PD-1 act at distinct steps of CTL activation

As described here, the two checkpoint controls actually operate at distinct, successive stages of CTL development. Initial activation of naive T cells occurs within lymph nodes, where antigen-presenting cells (APCs) present antigen to developing T cells (see Sections 15.7 and 15.12). This initial confrontation arms the T cells, allowing them to develop into functional CTLs and to disperse to peripheral, non-lymphoid tissues throughout the body. CTLA-4 damps down this initial priming in lymph nodes and other lymphoid tissues, explaining why anti-CTLA-4 can potentiate the priming of T cells that normally occurs within lymphoid tissues.

PD-1 appears on the surface of T cells that have already been primed in lymphoid tissues, as described above, but operates instead at a later phase of T-cell development, doing so in the context of non-lymphoid peripheral tissues. This explains how PD-1 actions interfere directly with the interactions between CTLs and their potential targeted cells in various anatomical sites throughout the body; these PD-1 functions therefore operate only *after* primed CTLs have emigrated from lymphoid organs and dispersed throughout the body.

As mentioned, engagement of PD-1 with its cognate ligands PD-L1 and PD-L2 displayed by target cells only occurs if and when CTLs encounter antigen-expressing target cells. Once this encounter has taken place, the PD-1:PD-L1/2 interaction proceeds to inhibit both T-cell cytotoxicity and the secretion of inflammatory cytokines, such as IFNγ and TNFα, by antigen-activated CTLs. In addition to its inhibition of T-cell cytotoxicity, we now know that the display of PD-1 ligands by potential target cells can be up-regulated by inflammatory cytokines, such as IFNγ and TNFα, that are secreted by CTLs, pointing to the PD-1:PD-L1/2 axis as a negative regulator of inflammation in peripheral, non-lymphoid tissues.

Importantly, because these two checkpoint controls (involving CTLA-4 and PD-1) operate at successive stages of T-cell activation, inhibiting both of them with mAbs directed against the two signaling axes can have additive or even synergistic effects in terms of activating ongoing immune attack. However, while the use of mixtures of moAbs interrupting both checkpoints may have increased potency in eliminating tumors, it can often elicit unacceptably high levels of autoimmune conditions in patients under treatment.

The discovery of the PD-1 receptor was followed by research that revealed and characterized PD-L1 and PD-L2, two ligands of the PD-1 receptor displayed on the surface of potential target cells. These ligands are routinely expressed on the surfaces of a variety of cell types throughout the body that might fall victim to CTL cell attack.

Figure 16.12 describes an experiment conducted *in vitro* and employing a PD-1-expressing cytotoxic T-cell line whose TCRs were specific for an antigen expressed by the target P815 tumor cells employed in this particular experiment.

In more detail, the PD-1-expressing CTLs killed their P815 targets perfectly well if the cognate PD-L1 was missing from the surface of the targeted P815 tumor cells. However, forcing PD-L1 expression in the P815 tumor cells, achieved experimentally with an introduced expression vector, rendered these cells less susceptible to killing by the cytotoxic T cells. Hence, the previously observed killing of the target cells proceeded efficiently as long as these P815 target cells failed to express the PD-L1 ligand, but was greatly reduced once these P815 cells were forced to express PD-L1.

Importantly, as shown in Figure 16.12B, in the presence of anti-PD-1 antibody, even PD-L1-displaying cells fall victim to attack by PD-1-expressing CTLs. These experiments demonstrated that blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 checkpoint by anti-PD-1 relieved inhibition of CTL-mediated immune responses. The PD-1/PD-L1 work established the principle that there are checkpoint regulatory mechanisms beyond the CTLA-4:CD80/86 signaling axis. Indeed, subsequent work has found yet other receptor:ligand pairs that operate to inhibit T-cell responses (**Table 16.5**). As might have been anticipated, these initial *in vitro* experiments could be extended to demonstrations *in vivo*, which confirmed that attacks on tumors formed by targeted cells could be predicted on the basis of their *in vitro* responses to certain CTLs. To summarize, use of anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD1 moAbs demonstrated that the survival of mouse hosts bearing various tumors could be extended by antibody-mediated blockade of these two checkpoint controls (see Sidebar 16.9).

Table 16.5 Immune checkpoint inhibitors in clinical use and under development

Immune checkpoint		**Immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI)**	**FDA approval**	**Treatment indications**
ICIs in clinical use				
Receptor	**Ligand**			
CTLA-4	CD80/86	anti-CTLA-4 (ipilimumab)	first in 2011,	metastatic melanoma and others

Immune checkpoint		Immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI)	FDA approval	Treatment indications
ICIs in clinical use				
Receptor	**Ligand**			
			other ICIs since	
PD-1	PD-L1, PD-L2	anti-PD-1 (pembrolizumab, nivolumab, others)anti-PD-L1 (durvalumab, atezolizumab)	first in 2014, other ICIs since first in 2016, other ICIs since	metastatic melanoma and subsequently many othersmetastatic urothelial carcinoma and others
ICIs in advanced clinical trials				
1**Receptor**	**Ligand**	**Nature of IC**	**Immune process impacted by the immune checkpoint**	
LAG-3	MHC-II	moAb[a]	inhibition of T-cell proliferation and cytokine secretion; may promote expansion of T_{reg}'s	
TIM-3	Galectin-9, CEACAM-1	moAb	induces T-cell exhaustion and can affect other immunocytes including NK cells and some dendritic cells	

Immune checkpoint		Immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI)	FDA approval		Treatment indications
ICIs in clinical use					
Receptor	**Ligand**				
PVRIG	PVRL2	moAb	engagement of T-cell-borne PVRIG with PVRL2 on dendritic cells inhibits T-cell activation		
VISTA	PSGL-1, VISIG-3	moAb	inhibits T-cell activation and cytokine production; inhibits NK-cell responses; inhibits secretion of TNF and certain other proinflammatory cytokines by myeloid cell types		
TIGIT	CD155	moAb	inhibits T-cell and NK-cell effector functions; can increase T_{reg}-mediated immunosuppression		
CD47	SIRPα	moAb[a]	inhibition of phagocytosis by macrophages		

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aIn addition to monoclonal antibodies (moAb), recombinant fusion proteins joining the binding domains of inhibitory receptors or ligands to constant region domains of IgG have also been employed as immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs). Abbreviations: LAG-3, lymphocyte activation gene 3; TIM-3, T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing-3; PVIRG poliovirus receptor-related immunoglobulin domain containing; PVRL2, poliovirus receptor related 2; VISTA, V domain Ig suppressor of T-cell activation; PSGL-1, P-selectin glycoprotein ligand 1; VSIG3, V-set and Ig domain-containing 3; TIGIT, T-cell immunoglobulin and ITIM domain; SIRPα, signal regulatory protein alpha.Return to reference a
- aIn addition to monoclonal antibodies (moAb), recombinant fusion proteins joining the binding domains of inhibitory receptors or ligands to constant region domains of IgG have also been employed as immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs). Abbreviations: LAG-3, lymphocyte activation gene 3; TIM-3, T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing-3; PVIRG poliovirus receptor-related immunoglobulin domain containing; PVRL2, poliovirus receptor related 2; VISTA, V domain Ig suppressor of T-cell activation; PSGL-1, P-selectin glycoprotein ligand 1; VSIG3, V-set and Ig domain-containing 3; TIGIT, T-cell immunoglobulin and ITIM domain; SIRPα, signal regulatory protein alpha.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

16.10 Checkpoint immunotherapies based on mouse studies have been applied in the oncology clinic

We turn now to an examination of the translation of these studies of checkpoint immunology to actual clinical applications of these immunotherapies. As shown in Table 16.5, ipilimumab, an anti-CTLA-4 mAb, was the first checkpoint inhibitor to receive FDA approval for the treatment of cancer. It showed survival benefits and improvements in overall survival when used to treat melanoma patients. Soon thereafter, an anti-PD-1 antibody also showed substantial clinical benefit for the treatment of melanoma, and it too received FDA approval (see Table 16.5). In the years since the introduction into clinical practice of these first immune checkpoint blockade inhibitors (ICIs), many clinical trials against a wide variety of cancers have shown a highly variable efficacy of these immunotherapies for the treatment of many types of cancer, with few recapitulating the striking long-term therapeutic benefits of the anti-melanoma therapies (**Sidebar 16.10**).

Sidebar 16.10 Immune checkpoint blockade can yield unprecedented responses in human cancer patients

We can learn much from reviewing a critical clinical trial, aptly titled Checkmate 067, that compared the clinical performance of an anti-CTLA-4 ICI with an anti-PD-1 ICI and with a combination therapy employing both ICIs. Checkmate 067 enrolled into a clinical trial a patient population of 945 individuals who bore histologically confirmed stage III or stage IV metastatic melanomas and had received no prior systemic treatment such as chemotherapy or moAb therapy. Historical controls, that is, the documented clinical responses of patients to various earlier anti-melanoma therapies, indicated that patients under treatment for these conditions would have an overall survival rate of 23% at five years after initial diagnosis.

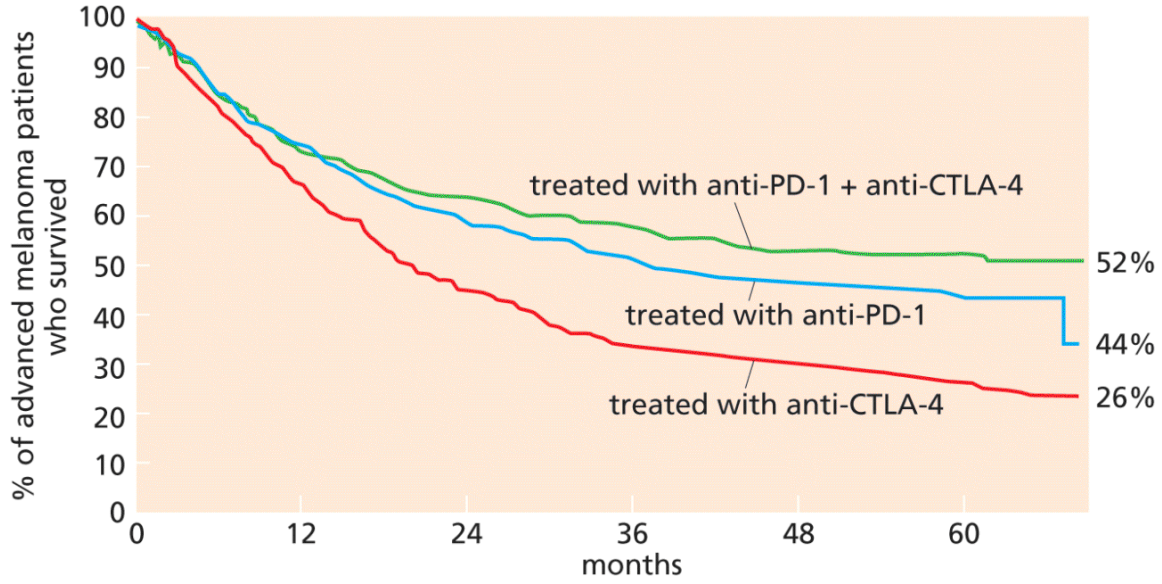
Each of the participants in this trial was assigned to one of the following groups: anti-PD1 alone, anti-CTLA-4 alone, or anti-CTLA-4 + anti PD-1. As anticipated from previous studies of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 ICIs, some patients in each of the three treatment groups showed significant clinical responses. However, the data in **Table 16.6** indicate that responses differed significantly among each of the treatments. Thus, patients enrolled in the anti-CTLA-4 cohort showed inferior responses to therapy relative to those enrolled in the other two in all respects; at the same time, patients whose tumors were better controlled also experienced higher incidence of side effects.

Table 16.6 Responses of melanoma patients to ICI monotherapy or combination therapy

	Nivolumab plus ipilimumab (N = 314)		**Nivolumab (N = 316)**		**Ipilimumab (N = 315)**	
	N	**%**	**N**	**%**	**N**	**%**
Complete response[a]	69	22	60	19	18	6
Partial response[a]	114	36	81	26	42	13
Total responding	183	58	141	45	60	19
Patients experiencing high-grade adverse events[b]	186	59	73	23	69	28
5-year overall survival (patients alive 5 years after initiation of treatment)	151	52	130	44	67	26

	Nivolumab plus ipilimumab (N = 314)	Nivolumab (N = 316)	Ipilimumab (N = 315)
Median treatment-free interval in months[c]	18.1	1.8	1.9

The data in **Figure 16.13** illustrate the changes in tumor burden, a term referring to the size of the tumor or number of tumor cells carried by each patient in each of the treatment groups. These observations reveal a substantial contrast in the efficacy of the anti-PD-1 versus anti-CTLA-4 blockade therapies. We can also note that a significant percentage of the patients treated with only anti-PD-1checkpoint immunotherapy experienced durable progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS). A 5-year follow-up study of the patients enrolled in Checkmate 067 revealed leveling off ("plateauing") in survival beginning around 3 years after initiation of therapy that was maintained for another 5 years. In fact, the absence of additional patient deaths over this period, which yielded the horizontal plateaus in overall survival curves (see Figure 16.13), is often interpreted to represent definitive cures of neoplastic disease, which otherwise are rarely claimed in most types of currently available treatments of high-grade cancers of various types.



A line graph describing survival percentage of advanced melanoma patients as a function of time, for three different treatment groups. All three curves decline exponentially from 100 percent at time zero. At 60 months, the survival percentage was 26 for patients treated with anti-C T L A-4, 44 for patients treated with anti-P D-1, and 52 for patients treated with both.

Figure 16.13 Therapeutic efficacy of immune checkpoint inhibitors used singly or in combination The overall survival at 5 years was studied in three groups of melanoma patients treated with different versions of anti-checkpoint blockade moAbs. One group was treated with anti-CTLA-4 moAb (*red curve*), a second with anti-PD-1 moAb (*blue curve*), and a third group received both anti-PD1 and anti-CTLA-4 moAbs (*green curve*). The combination was superior to either anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1 used alone. (Adapted from J. Larkin, V. Chiaron-Seleni, R. Gonzalez et al. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 381:1535–1546, 2019. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

The 5-year survival rates for patients presenting in the clinic with metastatic melanomas has, until recently, hovered in the range of 23%, as mentioned above. In contrast, the therapies involving anti-PD-1 alone, anti-CTLA-4 alone, and the combination of anti-CTLA-4 + anti-PD-1, were 44%, 26%, and 52%, respectively (see Figure 16.13). These survival rates of metastatic melanoma patients are unmatched by any non-ICI therapies. So far, only adoptive T-cell therapy, a highly customized and resource-intensive adoptive cell transfer immunotherapy (see Section 16.7), has produced comparable rates of success. At present, ICI therapy is used for many types of cancer and several ICIs have received FDA approval for such therapy (see Table 16.5).

Unfortunately, the impressive success delivered by ICIs in treatment of melanoma have not yet been seen in the treatment of most other types of cancer. Nevertheless, the list of cancers responsive to treatment with ICIs is increasing. More generally, because mutation can generate neoantigens, some of these being subject to targeting by the immune system, cancers that harbor elevated numbers of mutations are likely to provoke immune attack. Therapy of these cancers may benefit from the use of ICIs.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aResponses were evaluated using response evaluation criteria in solid tumors (RECIST).Return to reference a
- aResponses were evaluated using response evaluation criteria in solid tumors (RECIST).Return to reference a
- bTreatment-related adverse events (rash, diarrhea, fever, hypothyroidism, and others) were evaluated on a scale of 1 (minor) to 4 (severe). Return to reference b
- cA period when no medications or procedures to treat the patient's cancer are applied. Data from J. Larkin, V. Chiarion-Sileni, R. Gonzalez et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 381:1535–1546, 2019.Return to reference c

OceanofPDF.com

16.11 Resistance to immune checkpoint inhibitors commonly arises

Even among patients being treated for melanoma, a disease for which ICIs have had their greatest successes, the tumors borne by roughly half of these patients are either entirely unresponsive or the responses that are observed are only transient. Such responses are reminiscent of the responses of many types of tumors to a wide variety of anti-cancer therapies, as will be described in Chapter 17. As with chemotherapy, resistance to ICIs may be primary or acquired. Thus, in the cases of primary resistance, a significant, measurable response to immune checkpoint blockade (ICB) therapy is never observed, whereas patients with acquired resistance respond initially and only thereafter become refractory to treatment as therapy continues. Nonetheless, such acquired resistance after months of initial clinical responses may buy patients many months of symptom-free survival that they otherwise would not have enjoyed.

Cases of primary resistance may be ascribed to a variety of mechanisms. These may occur if there has not been any preexisting recognition of tumor cells by the adaptive immune system and therefore no low-level immune attacks that could be amplified by ICI therapy. This might derive from the failure of tumor cells, for whatever reason, to generate or present, via MHC-I proteins, peptide antigens to T cells, leading to the absence of a T-cell response of any kind. Similarly, there may be no T-cell response to enhance if the diverse array of T cells that succeed in entering into the interstices of a tumor lack subpopulations bearing TCRs that can recognize antigen-derived peptide:MHC complexes displayed by the tumor cells.

Even if all these obstacles to ICB inhibition were to be removed in the future, clinical responses to ICIs might still be compromised by changes *within* tumor cells, specifically interruptions of signaling pathways that are essential for effective killing by CTLs. As a prominent example, the

disruption in tumor cells of the signaling pathway activated by the interferon-γ (IFNγ) receptor comes to mind. Cancer cells lacking an intact IFNγ signaling pathway would be oblivious to the powerful anti-neoplastic effects of this T-cell-derived cytokine, which normally include a heightened susceptibility to apoptosis, an inhibition of proliferation, and an increased MHC class I-mediated antigen presentation (making them more vulnerable to immune recognition and attack). Such crippling of a cancer cell's capacity to respond to IFNγ denies patients the beneficial effects of increased IFN production, which ideally should occur once inhibitory checkpoints are eliminated by immune checkpoint inhibitors.

All of the mechanisms underlying primary resistance may also be developed by tumor cells during the course of ICI treatment, yielding multiple alternative paths to acquired resistance to immune checkpoint blockade. Finally, in addition to tumor cell-intrinsic pathways to ICI resistance, the tumor microenvironment (TME) can become a major tumor cell-extrinsic contributor to acquired ICI resistance. Populations of immunosuppressive cell types, including regulatory T cells (T_{reg}'s), M2-like macrophages, and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), create immunosuppressive TMEs that develop high levels of immunosuppressive cytokines such as TGFβ. This dictates that the evolution of an increasingly immunosuppressive TME during the course of checkpoint immunotherapy will deny a patient the therapeutic benefit that a T-cell-mediated anti-tumor response might otherwise provide. In recent years a variety of markers have been developed that help to predict responses to checkpoint immunotherapy (**Supplementary Sidebar 16.2**).

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

primary resistance
: Term denoting the behavior of a tumor that is refractory to treatment from the onset of that treatment; *also termed* **intrinsic resistance**. *See also* **secondary resistance**.

acquired resistance
: Referring to the resistance to therapy of a tumor that arises with some delay following and in response to implementation of therapy; *also termed* **secondary resistance**. *See also* **intrinsic resistance**.

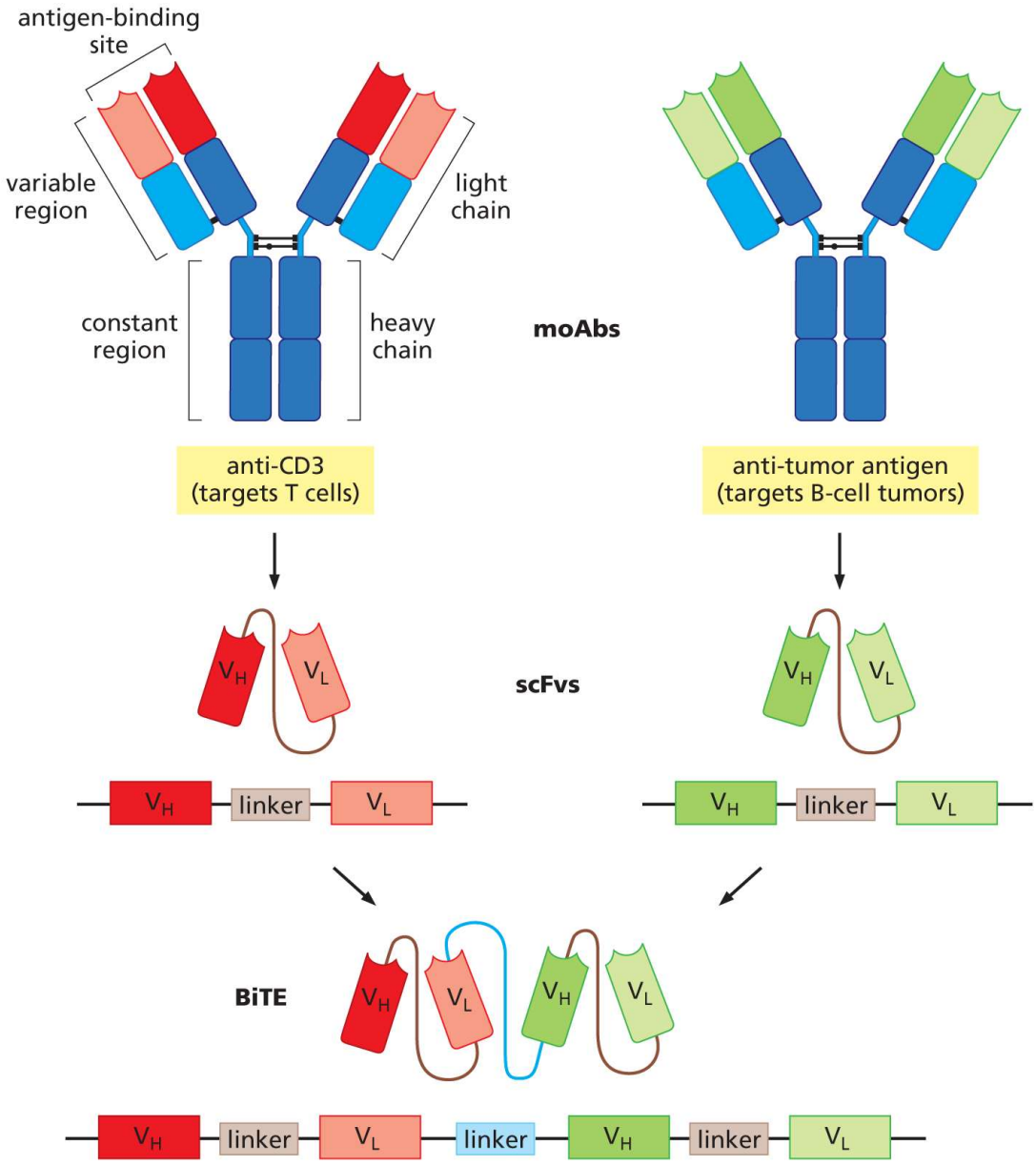
immune checkpoint
: Control mechanism ensuring that immune attacks on cells and tissues are constrained or limited, achieved by modulating downstream signaling responses such as those triggered by receptor–ligand interactions between immunocytes and target cells. *See also* **checkpoint**.

OceanofPDF.com

16.12 Lethal encounters between T cells and cancer cells can be encouraged by constructing bi-specific antibodies

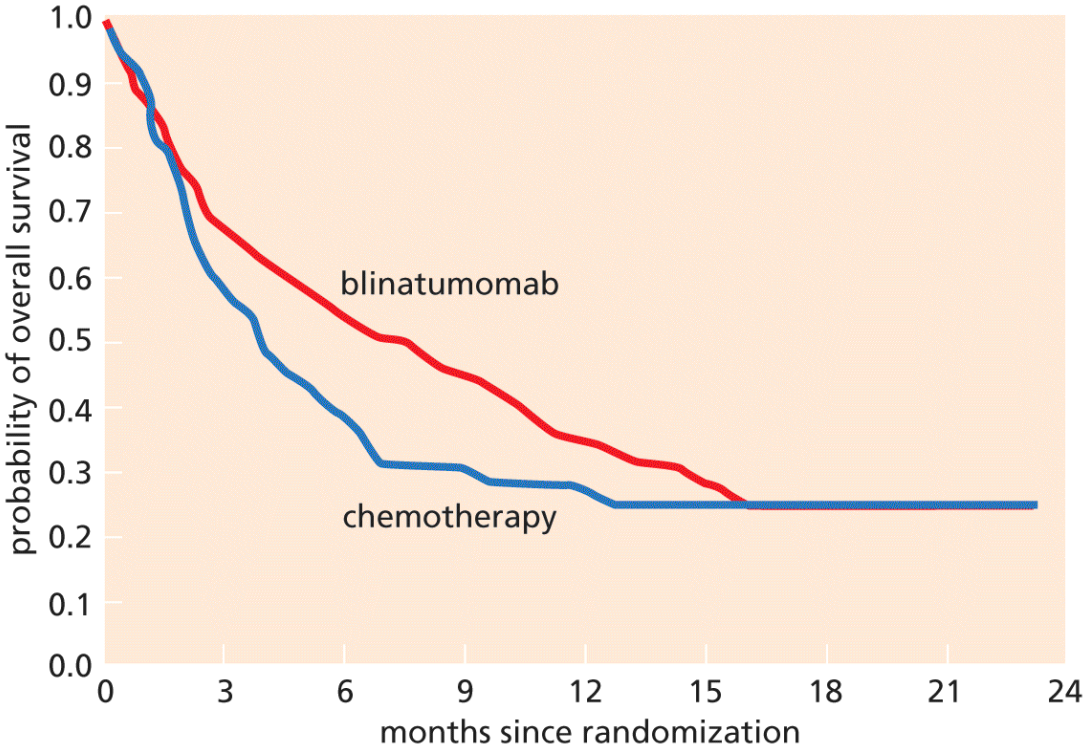
As discussed earlier in the context of CAR T-cell construction (see Sidebar 16.7), recombinant DNA procedures can be employed to join the reading frames encoding the variable domains of the heavy (H) and light (L) chains of a single antibody, the two being linked via a segment encoding a flexible linker to enable the formation of a functional antigen-combining site. If constructed properly, the fusion protein encoded by these joined engineered DNA segments should have antigen-binding power equivalent to that of the corresponding naturally arising antibody molecule.

This sequence of steps can be repeated with the DNA segments encoding a second, independently arising antibody having a different antigen-binding specificity (**Figure 16.14**). Thereafter, DNA segments encoding the H–L fusion proteins derived from the two distinct antigen-specific antibodies can be fused together, resulting in a DNA construct that now encompasses four reading frames and encodes two sets of H–L fusion proteins. The resulting bi-specific protein should now be able to simultaneously recognize and bind two distinct antigens and, by doing so, cross-link, for example, two cells, each expressing one of the two antigens recognized by this bi-specific protein.



Construction of a bi-specific anti-C D 3 x C D19 antibody begins with two monoclonal antibodies, one of which is an anti-C D 3 that targets T cells, and the other of which is an anti-tumor antigen that targets B-cell tumors. Each donates one heavy-chain binding-site end and one light-chain binding-site end, joined end-to-end by a linker to form a single-chain variable region fragment. The two fragments are then joined end-to-end by a third linker to form a linear bi-specific T-cell engager.

(A)



A line graph showing probability of overall survival as a function of time, for two different treatment groups. 7 months after randomization, 50 percent of patients treated with blinatumomab survive, compared to just over 30 percent of patients treated with standard chemotherapy. 17 months after randomization, however, the survival rate is the same for both groups, at 25 percent.

(B)

Figure 16.14 Construction and clinical trial of a bi-specific anti-CD3xCD19 antibody (A) The DNA sequences encoding the variable regions (V_H and V_L, *red, pink)* of a monoclonal antibody specific for CD3 (*above left*), a component of the T-cell receptor displayed by all T cells, and the sequences encoding the V_H and V_L sequences (*light green, dark green*) of a monoclonal antibody specific for CD19 (*above right*), a cell surface antigen displayed by B cells, were determined and used to design expression constructs encoding, in each case, single-chain variable region fragments (scFvs) that replicated the antigen specificity of each of the parent antibodies (*middle, left and right*). The DNA sequences encoding these two scFvs were linked to one another via a DNA segment encoding a connecting linker (*light blue*) which then expresses a protein termed a bi-specific T-cell engager (BiTE, *below*) that can bind to a B cell via its anti-CD19 specificity and to a T cell using its anti-CD3 arm. Such molecules can force the physical engagement of a T

cell with a CD19-bearing cell. (B) Clinical trial of a BiTE. The efficacy of blinatumomab, an anti-CD3xCD19 BiTE was compared to standard chemotherapy for the treatment of advanced acute lymphoblastic leukemia. As shown in the graph, the bi-specific antibody was superior to chemotherapy by increasing short-term survival but not overall long-term survival. (A, adapted from Slaney et al., *Cancer Discov.* 8:924–934, 2018. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.B, adapted from H. Kantarjian, A. Stein, N. Gökbuget et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 376:836–847, 2017. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

Such cross-linking can be highly useful in the case of cancer immunotherapy because it may be used to physically link a CTL (or other cytotoxic cell) to a targeted cancer cell, thereby circumventing the complex biological steps that are normally required to place the two cells in close juxtaposition. Constructs like these can be loosely termed "bi-specific antibodies," even though they contain only the antigen-binding domains of two parental antibodies.

In one well-studied application of this procedure, a DNA construct encoding a bi-specific antibody was created by joining the reading frames encoding the binding sites of an anti-CD19 antibody with the binding sites of an anti-CD3 antibody. The resulting dual->specificity antibody was denoted anti-CD3xCD19. As mentioned earlier in this chapter (see Section 16.8), many tumors of the B-cell lineage, including B-cell lymphomas, display the CD19 B-cell-specific cell surface antigen; at the same time, virtually all T cells display CD3, which is a component of the multi-subunit TCR complex. Accordingly, a bi-specific anti-CD3xCD19 antibody should be able to simultaneously bind a T cell to a potential target cell of the B-cell lineage (see Figure 16.14A). Such an antibody that is specialized to link a T cell to potential cell targets is sometimes termed a bi-specific T-cell engager (BiTE). The T cell in this forced marriage can be a CTL, and this association, once formed, can be used, in the case of B-cell lymphomas, to drive a functional engagement of T cells with lymphoma cells. Some of the cross-linked T cells may even carry a TCR (which continues to be expressed in these modified cells) that recognizes an antigen displayed by the targeted B cells, resulting in an immune-mediated cytotoxic attack and elimination of the B cells and the tumors that they form.

Clinical trials have demonstrated the effectiveness of BiTEs for the treatment of certain cancers, including one landmark study that compared the effectiveness of blinatumomab—an anti-CD3xCD19 BiTE consisting of an anti-CD19 single-chain variable fragment (scFv) joined to an anti-CD3 scFv—applied together with chemotherapy for the treatment of advanced acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL). Historically, although chemotherapy produces complete remission in 85–90% of patients newly diagnosed with ALL, most of these patients will relapse sooner or later.

Salvage chemotherapy, that is, a second round of treatment used with the hope of generating a new round of therapeutic responses, produces remissions in 18–44% of these patients, but these remission periods are short, often between 4 to 5 months. Such periods of remission, while they are occurring, provide an opportunity to implement a second therapy involving bone marrow transplantation (BMT), with the removal by strong chemotherapy of a patient's entire repertoire of immune cells (including the ALL cells) and the replacement of these cells with those coming from a healthy bone marrow donor.

This explains why a treatment was sought that would induce longer-lasting remission periods than the existing chemotherapy protocol, thereby making more BMTs possible. The results, summarized in Figure 16.14B, found the median 7.3-month period of remission achieved by blinatumomab superior to the median 4.6 months survival afforded by chemotherapy and paved the way for blinatumomab to become the first bi-specific T-cell engager to receive FDA approval. This approval provided validation of an entirely novel type of immunotherapy and prompted the entry of a flock of candidate T-cell engagers into the research and development pipeline directed toward treatment of a variety of hematological and solid tumors.

In the aforementioned clinical trial comparing a BiTE with chemotherapy, 61% of the patients receiving the BiTE experienced a serious adverse event (AE) relative to the 45% in the chemotherapy group to which it was compared. These adverse events included cytokine release syndrome (CRS), which is also encountered during CAR T-cell therapy as described earlier. This BiTE therapy also yields a second type of undesired side effect, specifically the depletion of normal B cells, termed B-cell lymphopenia.

Notably, T-cell engager therapies do not require the complex steps that are involved in CAR T-cell therapies, which include the arduous processes of harvesting T-cell populations followed by manipulating and expanding them *ex vivo* prior to re-infusing them into patients. Nonetheless, as seen with almost all anti-cancer therapies including immunotherapies, resistance to BiTE therapy often develops. The primary causes of resistance are predictable. Thus, loss or down-regulation of target antigen display is commonly encountered and, as we read in Section 15.13, is employed by tumor cells in order to evade or escape immune attack. The up-regulation of the PD-1 checkpoint receptor on the surface of the T cells responding to engager therapy can also reduce therapeutic responses. Finally, the phenomenon of T-cell exhaustion, discussed in the next section, can also compromise ongoing T-cell engager immunotherapy. Hence, like other immunotherapies, this novel treatment strategy holds the promise for overcoming shortcomings of existing therapies, but, at the same time, carries its own set of risks and side effects.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

salvage chemotherapy
: A round of chemotherapeutic treatment given to a patient who initially responded well to an initial round of chemotherapy but then relapsed.

lymphopenia
: Deficiency of lymphocytes in the circulation. *Also termed* **lymphocytopenia**.

exhaustion
: (adj. **exhausted**) Physiological state of a T cell that has lost many of its normally exercised effector functions; provoking signals include chronic antigen stimulation and prolonged contact with antigen-presenting cells. Less commonly, NK cell exhaustion and macrophage exhaustion.

bispecific T-cell engager
: A re-engineered antibody-derived molecule that simultaneously binds a T cell displaying a T cell-specific cell surface antigen, often CD3, to a second cell, such as a targeted cancer cell that displays a distinct cell surface antigen; such an antibody is used to drive the physical linking and thus juxtaposition of the T cell with the targeted cell.

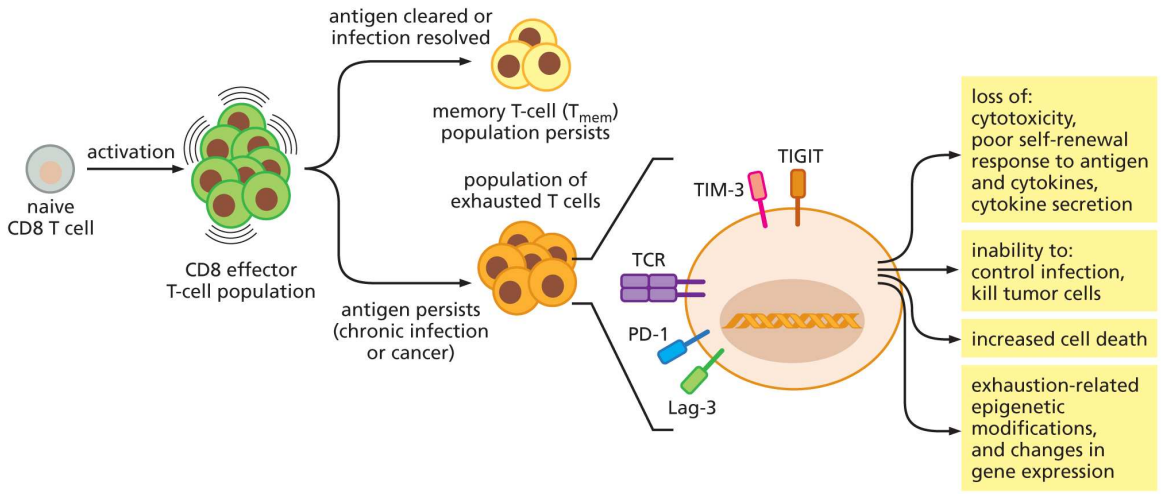
OceanofPDF.com

16.13 T-cell–dependent immunotherapies can be hampered by T-cell exhaustion

The effectiveness of the various types of immunotherapy described here ultimately depends on various regulatory controls that allow T cells, often CD8+ cytotoxic T cells (CTLs), to attack and kill targeted cancer cells. All of these therapies may be ineffective, however, if the CTLs are functionally compromised in one way or another, often by the process that leads to their state of exhaustion. Like the immune checkpoints described above, the T-cell exhaustion response originally evolved as yet another means to protect against the damaging effects on normal tissues generated by chronically activated T-cell populations.

Our current understanding of the controls leading to T-cell exhaustion stems historically from studies in mice of the immune responses following various types of viral infection. Thus, when the infections were rapidly cleared, the populations of CD8 T cells that remained behind were heterogeneous and could be classified into three major subpopulations on the basis of their expression of certain cell surface markers, epigenetic changes, and patterns of gene expression. These three broad groups were effector T cells (T_{eff}), memory T cells (T_{mem}), and exhausted T cells (T_{ex}). Cells belonging to the effector T-cell subpopulation were found to be actively cytotoxic, to secrete IFNγ and other cytokines, to be nonproliferating, and ultimately to undergo cell death. Memory T-cell populations (T_{mem}), in stark contrast, persisted long after the clearance of viral antigens and retained the ability to proliferate in response to a new challenge by the viral antigens that had previously provoked their formation.

The exhausted T cells (T_{ex}) arose under a variety of conditions. Most importantly, initial viral infections that were not successfully cleared could persist as chronic infections. Under such conditions, a T-cell population eventually emerged in which cells exhibited greatly reduced or no effector functions, lost proliferative capacity, and displayed inhibitory receptors such as PD-1. Such T cells were deemed to be “exhausted” and, additionally, were found to have little capacity to self-renew and could not generate T_{mem} populations (**Figure 16.15**).



An Overview of T-cell exhaustion. Activation of a naive C D 8 T-cell leads to the creation of a C D 8 effector T-cell population. If the antigen is cleared or the infection is resolved, a memory T-cell population persists. If, on the other hand, the antigen persists due to chronic infection or cancer, then a population of exhausted T cells arises. These display the T cell receptor on their surface, but also markers such as P D-1, Lag-3, Tim-3, and T I G I T. These cells are characterized by loss of cytokine secretion and cytotoxicity, poor self-renewal response to antigens and cytokines, inability to control infection or kill tumor cells, increased cell death, exhaustion-related epigenetic modifications, and changes in gene expression.

Figure 16.15 Overview of T-cell exhaustion Following activation, T cells may experience different fates depending on the duration of the antigenic stimuli that they receive. When the antigen is presented to the immune system and is cleared, as occurs after immunization via vaccination or after an infection is resolved by the actions of the innate and adaptive immune systems (*above*), some members of the responding T-cell population differentiate into effector T cells, most of which eventually die. Some, however, differentiate into various types of memory T-cell populations, which may survive for protracted periods of time. In contrast, chronic stimulation, which operates in persistent infections and in cancer (*below*), results in protracted stimulation and the eventual differentiation of responding T cells into a state termed “exhaustion.” Exhausted T cells (*lower right*) display one or more inhibitory markers, such as PD-1, Lag-3, Tim-3, and TIGIT, and also show alterations in gene expression and loss of several functions. (Adapted in part from K.E. Pauken and E.J. Wherry, *Cell* 163:1038, 2015. With permission from Elsevier.)

Further research in this area demonstrated that exhausted T-cell populations could be found in humans suffering from HIV infection and in those suffering from chronic hepatitis B or C viral infections; all of these viral infections can persist for years in infected patients and with unabated viral replication. As we now realize, T-cell exhaustion is also an important element of the immune dysfunction that allows tumors to grow out. This state often develops in populations of T cells that have entered into growing tumors and experience chronic stimulation by various tumor antigens. Under these conditions, such T cells are simply unable to control or eliminate tumors and enter into a state of exhaustion. Furthermore, the development of functional exhaustion can compromise the effectiveness of adoptive T-cell transfer (see Section 16.7) and CAR T-cell immunotherapies (**Sidebar 16.11**; see also Section 16.8).

Sidebar 16.11 Exhaustion compromises the effectiveness of ACT and CAR T-cell therapies

Two immunotherapy strategies described earlier—adoptive T-cell transfer and CAR T-cell therapy—involve the *ex vivo* expansion of small populations of T cells to very large numbers during the course of many weeks. Critical to the success of the expansion protocols is the continuous stimulation of T-cell signaling pathways by engagement of the T-cell receptor in the presence of IL-2, the cytokine essential for T-cell proliferation. Although being indispensable for the generation of the large numbers of cells needed for these therapies, such persistent IL-2-driven expansion *ex vivo* can, on its own, force the proliferating T cells into the early stages of exhaustion. This compromises, in turn, the capacity of any subsequently infused T cells or CAR T cells to maintain robust and durable cytotoxic activity against tumor targets. Moreover, such infused cells have lost the ability to generate persisting memory T-cell (T_{mem}) populations that would be capable of future proliferation and the generation of cytotoxic activity in response to the reappearance of cancers after extended periods of clinical remission.

This significant complication of *ex vivo* T-cell expansion has stimulated the exploration of strategies designed to prevent or at least minimize the development of exhaustion. As one example, some of these strategies involve the use of CRISPR-Cas9 (see Sidebar 12.11) to delete from the genomes of proliferating T cells several of the genes specifying transcription factors that are known to play key roles in orchestrating T-cell exhaustion. Also, chronic rather than periodic signaling induces exhaustion, which has suggested the appealing approach of

expanding T-cell populations by periodic cycles of stimulation and stimulus interruption, the latter being termed “rest.” In addition, our increasing understanding of the mechanisms underlying T-cell exhaustion may suggest yet other approaches, including pharmacological ones, for the prevention or reversal of this state.

The PD-1 receptor that operates to enable one type of checkpoint control (see Section 16.9) is also a marker of T-cell exhaustion that appears on responding T cells and on their CAR T-cell counterparts during prolonged antigen stimulation. The development of a fully exhausted state is not inevitable however. Thus, at early stages of T-cell exhaustion, treatment with the anti-PD-1 immune checkpoint inhibitor can halt its development, and previously exhausted T cells can be coaxed back into fully functional states. However, as exhaustion develops further, T cells become increasingly resistant to reversal of exhaustion achieved by interrupting PD-1 signaling, which at this stage has therefore become an ineffective strategy for invigorating various forms of immunotherapy (see Sidebar 16.11).

OceanofPDF.com

16.14 Synopsis and Prospects

Cancer immunotherapy provides an impressive demonstration of the translation of basic preclinical research into effective clinical interventions. As it turned out, most of the immunotherapies described in this chapter and now deployed for the treatment of cancer did not emerge from organized programs of drug discovery directed toward the development of novel cancer treatments. Instead, their origins can be traced to efforts designed to understand the biology of immune responses at the most fundamental level with no preconception of how resulting insights might one day impact clinical medicine.

Adoptive cell transfer (ACT) was initially developed as an experimental technique to determine and study the cell–cell collaborations essential for normal immune responses. Only later was it harnessed to capture a sample of a cancer patient's small population of anti-tumor T cells, expand their numbers *ex vivo*, and return the greatly increased cell population to the donor to treat their cancer. Chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell protocols arose as a marriage of adoptive cell transfer and the capacity, borrowed from monoclonal antibody technology, to generate antibodies that specifically bound tumor antigens.

Antibody–drug conjugates (ADCs) and bi-specific T-cell engagers (BiTEs) represent yet other offspring of monoclonal antibody technology. ADCs enable the targeting of highly cytotoxic drugs to tumors; this technology was designed to avoid the extensive systemic toxicity that often accompanies administration of these agents. BiTEs play a very different role, bringing T cells together with tumor cells that they would not otherwise engage. And finally, we note that fundamental research on how immune function is regulated has led to the truly revolutionary therapies based on immune checkpoint blockade (ICB) that have already yielded two Nobel Prizes!

But all of this, impressive as it is, should be viewed as no more than a beginning, representing very promising early steps toward the goal of

effective management of cancers. The challenge is to find ways to improve immunotherapies so that, for many cases of cancer, cure becomes an expected outcome rather than an aspirational goal that is achieved only infrequently. At present, research focused on improving existing immunotherapies is rapidly evolving and future trajectories are already apparent as described below. Also, in light of the rapid progress of immunotherapy over the past generation, it would be surprising if existing treatment strategies were not joined in the near future by some entirely novel and entirely unanticipated ones.

Many of the existing cancer immunotherapies depend on antibodies or antibody-derived binding sites employed to direct immune attacks on tumor cells displaying tumor-associated antigens (TAAs). Unmodified antibodies, antibody–drug conjugates, CAR T cells, and bi-specific T-cell engagers all target antigens that are not exclusively found on tumor cells but instead are shared with certain normal cells. Consequently, collateral attacks on normal cells are inevitable, yielding side-effect toxicities that can prove to be life-threatening. This consideration helps to explain why, for example, antibody-driven therapies to treat hematologic cancers are restricted at present to lymphomas of the B-cell lineage. Although normal B cells are killed together with targeted lymphoma and leukemia cells, the B-cell lymphopenia that develops is manageable, and the affected normal cell population recovers once therapy is completed.

The problems associated with targeting of tumor-associated antigens (TAAs; Section 15.8) persist simply because it is impossible or unfeasible to identify tumor-specific antigens (TSAs) in many tumors. These problems also hobble the ADC, CAR T-cell, and bi-specific antibody treatments employed to treat carcinomas. Although these tumors create ~80% of cancer-associated mortality, immunotherapies targeting their TAAs inevitably affect the cells forming normal epithelia. In many cases, the resulting collateral side effects of attacks on these normal tissues, causing immune-mediated destruction of critical tissues, are intolerable, generating significant morbidity and even life-threatening losses of normal tissue functions. Even if not life-threatening, the necessity of limiting collateral damage to normal tissues is likely to compromise dosage levels and, in

many cases, forces withdrawal of the therapy before its treatment objectives have been fully realized.

Nevertheless, despite these inherent liabilities, antibodies and ADCs (antibody–drug conjugates) have proven useful for the treatment of certain subtypes of breast cancers (see Section 16.6). Progress in extending cytotoxic antibody therapies to the treatment of additional breast cancer subtypes will depend on identifying additional TAAs, such as trophoblast cell surface antigen 2 (Trop2); even now, anti-Trop2-mediated attack by the ADC sacituzumab govitecan is used to treat some triple-negative breast cancers. Identification of alternative target antigens displayed by the cells of normal tissues but significantly upregulated by tumor cells will enable extension of these therapies to the treatment of a wider variety of carcinomas and other solid tumors.

The power of antibodies and ADCs to selectively target cells that display their cognate antigen creates a vulnerability that is likely, sooner or later, to render each of these therapies ineffective. Thus, as we have read time and again, antigen-guided attacks on tumor cells select for members of tumor cell populations that contrive to reduce or cease display of the targeted antigens, rendering them unresponsive to the immunotherapy being applied. In principle, application of a bi-specific antibody targeting two distinct TAAs displayed concomitantly on the surface of individual tumor cells should trigger attacks of the type that are not so easily evaded by loss of one of the two targeted TAAs. This, in turn, should avoid or significantly delay the development of therapeutic resistance.

Currently employed clinical practice yields other instructive examples of future therapeutic strategies. For instance, rather than using an antibody as a monotherapy, current clinical practice for the treatment of some B-cell lymphomas combines antibodies that are directly cytotoxic with chemotherapies, which act through mechanistically unrelated ways. The design of such two-pronged attacks on these tumors is motivated by a similar consideration, that is, the low probability that lymphoma cells can concomitantly develop resistance to a chemotherapeutic agent applied together with antibody-driven attacks on one or more B-cell surface antigens.

Antigen loss is also a major cause of the acquired resistance to CAR T-cell therapy. One study described the clinical courses of large B-cell leukemia (LBCL) in 16 patients being treated with anti-CD19–CAR T-cell therapy. Eleven of these patients eventually showed down-regulation or complete loss of CD19 display. In the near future, this problem of immunoevasion will be approached in either of two ways. One may involve the development of a collection of monospecific CAR T cells, each one recognizing a distinct antigen, with infusion of these cell lines either together or sequentially, one after the other. An attractive alternative to this cumbersome approach involves construction of a single CAR T-cell line bearing not one but a repertoire of multiple distinct CARs, each specific for a different tumor antigen (**Sidebar 16.12**).

Sidebar 16.12 Initial attempts at using CAR T cells to target multiple tumor-associated antigens

The observation that many B-cell malignancies that express CD19 also display the CD22 antigen has already inspired the construction of CAR T cells with dual specificity, bearing one CAR capable of recognizing CD19 and a second CAR specific for CD22. Initial clinical findings in patients of lymphoma patients infused with such CD19–22 CAR T cells showed that the dual-specificity CAR T cells induced various degrees of remission in a patient cohort and, in a handful of these patients, PET scans revealed dramatic reductions of tumor masses. Furthermore, some of the treated patients exhibited clear evidence of the persistence of populations of the dual-specificity CAR T cells, suggesting the possibility of launching future attacks on persisting or returning tumor cell populations displaying the targeted antigens. However, though an encouraging beginning, the efficacy of these dual-specificity CAR T cells did not actually exceed that of monospecific anti-CD19–CAR T therapies already in clinical use. Still, even now we can anticipate the development of CAR T-cell therapies involving their further modification from functional monospecificity to multispecificity and resulting substantial increases in therapeutic efficacy.

Nonetheless, even with the adoption of therapeutic strategies that enable CAR T cells to anticipate and overcome eventual evasion arising from antigen loss, the creation of these cells requires an elaborate technology involving harvest of each patient's T cells, their conversion to CAR-expressing cells, and the reinfusion of resulting CAR T cells into the donor. In addition, this immunotherapeutic technology, at least as presently configured, is encumbered by a number of additional significant problems.

Thus, in addition to their forced display of chimeric antigen receptors, CAR T cells retain their complement of preexisting conventional TCRs. The ongoing display of these indigenous TCRs imposes limits on the application of CAR T-cell therapies, simply because these receptors continue to recognize allogeneic MHC complexes as foreign. As a direct consequence, when CAR T cells carrying these TCRs are infused into allogeneic recipients, the cells may attack a broad array of these recipients' tissues, often resulting in life-threatening graft-versus-host (GVH) reactions. For this reason, at least at present, each batch of infused CAR T cells represents, in effect, a personalized drug, offering great possible therapeutic benefit to a syngeneic recipient while, at the same time, triggering potentially lethal responses in allogeneic recipients. In addition, the assembly of CAR T-cell populations requires periods of at least 2–3 weeks between harvest and reinfusion, leading to significant delays in the initiation of a patient's treatment. Finally, quite often a cancer patient's physical condition may make it difficult to harvest sufficient numbers of T cells for CAR T-cell preparation.

A promising alternative to CAR T cells is poised to emerge. Natural killer (NK) cells have been engineered to express chimeric antigen receptors conferring on these innate immune cells a predefined specificity for a particular tumor antigen. As we read previously (Section 15.9), NK cells are capable of launching a variety of potent cytotoxic attacks on the cells they target. Importantly, unlike their CAR T-cell counterparts, the initially unmodified NK cells lack preexisting TCRs and are therefore incapable of mounting inadvertent GVH reactions. For these reasons, CAR-NK cells can be generated from an allogenic donor and deployed in many different allogenic recipients without the danger of life-threatening GVH reactions.

Moreover, NK cells, are already known to mount stronger attacks against allogeneic tumors than against syngeneic ones.

In fact, CAR-NK cells can be generated from NK cells retrieved from umbilical cord blood, thereby leveraging the availability of relatively abundant frozen stores of cord blood cells to prepare CAR-NK cells for use in allogeneic recipients. Preliminary studies have already shown that a single unit of umbilical cord blood yields sufficient NK cells to prepare to enough CAR-NK cells for treating several patients. In the longer term, if proven efficacious and safe, previously prepared batches of CAR-NK cells could provide an “off the shelf” therapy, being instantly available, less expensive, and available to a wider range of patients than the conventional CAR T-cell treatments currently available.

Indeed, anti-CD19–specific CAR-NK cells prepared from frozen cord blood-derived NK cells have already been employed in a clinical trial that enrolled patients with relapsed or treatment-refractory CD19-positive non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma or chronic lymphocytic leukemia. In this early-stage clinical trial, 7 of 11 members of the patient group showed elimination of detectable tumor cells at 14 months after CAR-NK therapy. Of note, all of these patients were allogenic with respect to the CAR-NK preparation administered. In addition, cytokine release syndrome (CRS), which is often observed as a side effect of existing CAR T-cell therapies, was not observed in this study. If these striking initial clinical studies are sustained and reinforced in larger trials, CAR-NK cells will become a highly useful addition to the repertoire of adoptive cell transfer therapies for the treatment of cancer.

All of the adoptive cell transfer therapies cited here—adoptive T-cell transfer, CAR T-cell, and CAR-NK therapies—as well as the bi-specific T-cell engager (BiTE) therapy, involve continuous functional activation of the introduced cells and their attendant proliferation. This suggests that all of these therapies will eventually be compromised by the functional exhaustion of the introduced immunocytes, indeed an outcome that has already been observed. This suggests an urgent need to develop strategies for preventing, damping, or reversing exhaustion in both T cells and NK cells, and in their modified derivatives.

In the arena of the ICI treatments described here, involving both CTLA-4 and PD-1 strategies (as described in Section 16.9), further improvements are also desperately needed: both treatments are already in widespread clinical use even though their demonstrated utility is actually limited to a relatively small subset of the tumors encountered in the oncology clinic. Moreover, in the years since the development of the CTLA-4 and PD-1 ICIs, a number of other similarly acting immune checkpoints have been discovered (see Table 16.5), several of which appear promising in terms of their potential to generate clinically useful immunotherapies. Nonetheless, it is already apparent that none of these will be sufficiently powerful on its own to be used as a monotherapy. Instead, echoing the theme regularly encountered in cancer immunotherapy and chemotherapy, they will most likely find roles as components of combination therapies.

Beyond combination therapy, as more has been learned about the dynamics of immune checkpoint blockades, appreciation has grown for the complexity of the multiple host and environmental factors that influence responses to ICIs. Some of these factors are discussed in **Supplementary Sidebar 16.2**.

To summarize, it is clear that much of contemporary cancer research is influenced by the realization that an in-depth understanding of initial cancer pathogenesis (as described in Chapter 11) and the development of improved treatments of existing tumors (as described in this chapter and Chapter 17) will depend on elucidating and exploiting the formidable powers of the immune system. At the same time, development of novel immunotherapies is occurring in the face of an increasing awareness that the development of non-immune-based, truly effective anti-cancer therapeutics has become increasingly challenging. Together, these trends explain the explosive increase in the number of anti-cancer immunotherapies that are currently under development and will surely be introduced into clinical practice in the years to come.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- Most cancer immunotherapies fall into one of three categories: vaccination against tumor cells and oncogenic microbes; passive immunization via administration of anti-tumor cells or antibodies; and release of immunosuppressive mechanisms, notably those imposed by immune checkpoints.
- Prophylactic cancer vaccines prevent infection by microbial agents that directly or indirectly cause cancer, thereby lowering the incidence of the cancers induced by these agents. Vaccination against Hepatitis B virus (HBV) prevents HBV-induced liver cancer and human polyoma virus (HPV) vaccines prevent most cervical cancer.
- Therapeutic cancer vaccines stimulate the immune system to make adaptive immune responses against tumors that have already established themselves in the body, arresting the growth of these tumors and ultimately rejecting them.
- Passive immunization by administration of antibodies against tumor antigens borne by a patient’s tumor can kill tumor cells in a variety of ways, many of them involving recruitment of cells of the innate immune system.
- Antibody drug conjugates (ADCs) combine the powers of antibody-mediated passive immunization with antibody-guided delivery of highly potent cytopathic drugs.
- Passive immunization can also involve capturing cells of a patient’s immune system, amplifying, and in some cases modifying them, and then infusing them back into the patient. This process is called adoptive cell transfer (ACT).
- CAR T-cell therapy is a form of ACT that is already in widespread use. In CAR T cells, the antigen recognition function of the T-cell receptor is assumed by an engineered chimeric antigen receptor (CAR), a single molecule that incorporates specific antigen recognition, and that has the capacity to trigger T-cell activation and the generation of T-cell proliferation and survival signals.
- Immune checkpoints normally provide essential homeostatic negative feedback controls necessary to prevent excessive inflammation and

destructive autoimmune responses. However, these essential homeostatic controls can dampen or prevent strong anti-tumor responses.

- Immune checkpoint inhibition manipulates the behavior of immune cells in ways that increase the likelihood and potency of their anti-tumor responses. Monoclonal antibodies that interfere with either the CTLA4:CD80/86 or the PD-1:PD-L1/2 axis have proven useful for the treatment of melanoma and a variety of other cancers.
- Bi-specific antibodies (and antibody-like molecules) constructed to simultaneously bind to two cells displaying different cell surface antigens, bring cells that would not otherwise closely engage, into sustained physical contact with each other. A bi-specific antibody, known as a bi-specific T- cell engager (BiTE), can link a T cell to another cell, such as a tumor cell. Such forced juxtaposition of a T cell with a second cell can result in the T-cell-mediated death of the second cell, such as a targeted cancer cell.
- T-cell-mediated therapies depend on sustained T-cell activation but can be compromised by T-cell exhaustion. Therefore, it is important to develop a deeper understanding of this phenomenon in order to make activation-dependent T-cell-mediated cancer therapies more enduring and thus more effective.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought Questions

1. Initial treatment of a patient’s cancer with anti-PD-1 was ineffective. Following irradiation, the patient's tumor showed modest shrinkage and then resumed growth. However, a second course of treatment with anti-PD-1 resulted in regression of tumor growth. Offer reasonable hypotheses for: (a) why treatment with anti-PD-1 was initially ineffective and (b) why anti-PD-1 may have been effective after radiation therapy.
2. CAR T cells specific for CD20 were generated from T cells harvested from a lymphoma patient, frozen, and subsequently used in a successful treatment of the patient’s cancer. However, several frozen ampoules of this effective CAR T-cell preparation were not used. An enthusiastic oncology resident suggested that these surplus CAR T cells could be used to treat future lymphoma patients whose profile of surface antigens indicated they might benefit from treatment with anti-CD20 CAR T cells. A second oncology resident, who had paid attention during her immunology rotation, explained to her colleague why this was not a good idea. What did she say?
3. Distinguish between prophylactic and therapeutic cancer vaccination. What etiology is shared by cancers that can be prevented by prophylactic immunization? Briefly outline the advantages offered by therapeutic cancer vaccination and suggest the form such vaccines might take.
4. Antibodies have become mainstays of cancer immunotherapy. Some anti-tumor antibodies directly kill tumor cells. Other highly effective antibodies have no direct cytotoxic effect on tumor cells. How does one class of molecules play such different roles in cancer therapy?
5. What advantages, if any, do bi-specific T-cell engagers have over CAR T cells for the treatment of cancer? What feature of CAR T cells might give them an advantage over these bi-specific agents?
6. Adoptive T-cell transfer has shown a capacity to treat a wider variety of cancers than CAR T cells or BiTEs. What is the basis of the ability of this approach to target a particularly broad spectrum of cancers? Given its demonstrated ability to target many different kinds of cancer, why is it not more widely practiced?

7. Antibody–drug conjugates (ADCs) are highly effective anti-tumor agents. Briefly identify the many ways in which an ADC can kill or induce the death of its target cell. Given their many strengths, identify a strategy of evasion used by some tumor cells to escape killing by antibodies and CAR T cells that also allows them to evade killing by ADCs. Suggest how you might create an ADC that would be less susceptible to this commonly adopted strategy of escape from immune-mediated killing.
8. T-cell exhaustion is a well-established immunological phenomenon and can blunt the therapeutic effects of adoptive cell transfer strategies, bi-specific T-cell engagers, and release of checkpoint blockade by ICIs. Although these are very different approaches, why are all of them susceptible to loss of efficacy because of T-cell exhaustion?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional Reading

Bagchi S, Yuan R, & Engleman EG (2021) Immune checkpoint inhibitors for the treatment of cancer: clinical impact and mechanisms of response and resistance. *Annu. Rev. Pathol.* 16, 223–249.

Bardia A, Hurvitz A, Tolaney S et al. (2021) Sacituzumab Govitecan in metastatic triple-negative breast cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 384, 1529–1541.

Drago ZJ, Modi S & Chandarlapaty S (2021) Unlocking the potential of antibody-drug conjugates for cancer therapy. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 18, 327–344.

Freeman GJ, Long A, Iwai Y et al. (2000) Engagement of the Pd-1 immunoinhibitory receptor by a novel B7 family member leads to negative regulation of lymphocyte activation. *J. Exp. Med.* 192, 1027–1034.

Iwai Y, Ishida M, Tanaka Yet al. (2002) Involvement of PD-L1 on tumor cells in the escape from host immune system and tumor immunotherapy by PD-L1 blockade. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 19, 12293–12297.

Jenkins RW, Barbie DA & Flaherty KT (2018) Mechanisms of resistance to immune checkpoint inhibitors. *Br. J. Cancer* 118:9–16.

Joura EA, Guilana A, Iverson O et al. (2015) A 9-valent HPV vaccine against infection and intraepithelial neoplasia in women. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 372:711–723.

Kantarjian H, Stein A, Gokbuget N et al. (2017) Blinatumomab versus chemotherapy for advanced acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 376:836–847.

Labrijn AF, Janmaat ML, Reichert JM & Parren PWHI. (2019) Bi-specific antibodies: a mechanistic review of the pipeline. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 18, 585–608.

Larkin J, Chairion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R et al. (2019) Five-year survival with combined nivolumab and ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. *N. Engl. J. Med*. 381, 1535–1546.

Larson RC & Maus MV (2021) Recent advances and discoveries in the mechanisms and functions of CAR T cells. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 21, 145–161.

Leach DR, Krummel MF & Allison JP (1996) Enhancement of antitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. *Science* 271, 1734–1736.

Leko V & Rosenberg SA (2020) Identifying and targeting human tumor antigens for T cell-based immunotherapy of solid tumors. *Cancer Cell* 38, 454–472.

Liu E, Marin D, Banerjee, P et al. (2020) Use of CAR-Transduced natural killer cells in CD19-positive lymphoid tumors. *N. Engl. J. Med*. 382, 545–553.

McLane LM, Abdel-Hakeem MS & Wherry EJ (2019) CD8 T cell exhaustion during chronic viral infection and cancer. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 37, 457–495.

Sahin U, Petra O, Derhovanessian E et al. (2020) An RNA vaccine drives immunity in checkpoint-inhibitor-treated melanoma. *Nature*. 585, 107–112.

Slaney CY, Wang P, Darcy PK & Kershaw MH (2018) CARs versus BiTEs: a comparison between T cell-redirection strategies for cancer treatment. *Cancer Discov.* 8, 924–934.

Saxena M, van der Burg SH, Melief CJM & Bhardwaj N (2021) Therapeutic cancer vaccines. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 21, 360–378.

Weber EW, Parker KR, Sotillo E et al. (2021) Transient rest restores functionality in exhausted CAR-T cells through epigenetic remodeling. *Science* 372(6537) DOI: 10.1126/science.aba1786.

Wei SC, Anang N, Sharma R et al. (2019) Combination anti-CTLA-4 plus anti-PD-1 checkpoint blockade utilizes cellular mechanisms partially

distinct from monotherapies. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 116, 22699–22709.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 16.1 How to make monoclonal antibodies

Antibodies generated during a particular immune response are a heterogeneous population of molecules with different antigen-recognizing specificities. This heterogeneity arises because the antibodies formed following immunization with a given antigen are produced from a diverse population of B cells and derived plasma cells, and each responding plasma cell produces its own version of an antibody able to bind in a specific manner the immunizing antigen. Although useful for certain applications, each batch of antibodies produced by exposure to an antigen contains not only a heterogeneous collection of these antibodies but also one that is irreproducible from one batch to another.

In an ideal world, one should be able to isolate individual antibody-producing B cells from, for example, the spleen of an antigen-immunized mouse, propagate these cells *in vitro*, and expand the descendants of each of these explanted cells into a large, monoclonal population. Because the cells in each of these resulting monoclonal populations would be genetically identical to one another, each population should secrete into a culture medium a uniform homogeneous population of antibody molecules, which in principle could be tested for its ability to recognize and bind an antigen of interest.

The biological reality however renders this scheme unworkable. It has been and continues to be impossible to explant individual cells from the spleen of a mouse and propagate them *ex vivo* for any period of time, simply because these cells have not been immortalized and are unfit to proliferate in appropriate culture media.

This problem was addressed and solved in 1975 by Georges Köhler and Cesar Milstein, who invented a technique for immortalizing individual antibody-producing B cells, which, in turn, enabled their expansion *ex vivo.* Each of the resulting expanded monoclonal cell populations should produce a homogeneous population of antibody molecules that are identical to one another and possess identical affinity and specificity for an antigen.

Rather than introducing an immortalizing gene or set of genes into a set of spleen-derived B cells, Köhler and Milstein determined that a more effective immortalizing strategy would be to fuse each of a large population of spleen-derived B cells with a myeloma cell, that is, a neoplastic cell that naturally possesses an immortalized phenotype as a consequence of the multi-step progression that led previously to the outgrowth of the myeloma in the first place.

Myeloma is a tumor of plasma cells, which represent the cells at the antibody-producing, terminal stage of B cell differentiation. Like virtually all human neoplasias, each myeloma arises from the transformation of a single plasma cell and is therefore a monoclonal cell population. Hence all of the antibodies secreted by all of the cells composing a patient's population of myeloma cells are encoded by identical immunoglobulin genes, have identical amino acid sequences, and therefore exhibit identical antigen specificities and affinities. The presence of the disease is signaled by the expression of a single dominant antibody species in the blood rather than a broad spectrum of such antibodies that is normally present, as resolved and visualized by electrophoresis (see **Supplementary Sidebar 2.5**). Accordingly, each myeloma tumor cell population represents a monoclonal population that is derived from a common cell-of-origin and produces an antibody species that happens to have been produced by the cell-of-origin that acquired the somatic mutations that transformed it to a neoplastic state. Accordingly, while representing a monoclonal population, the investigator can exert no control over the antigen specificity of the antibody secreted by any given myeloma. The antibody molecules produced by the cells of a myeloma are directed against an unknown antigen that reflects the history of the founding cell-of-origin of the myeloma tumor cell population. In fact, the individual myeloma cells of such a population possess three important features of interest. First, the antibody-encoding gene developed by its cell-of-origin. Second, the oncogene(s) that allowed these cells to become tumorigenic and thus immortalized. Third, myelomas arise from plasma cells, the only stage of B cell differentiation that is permissive for the synthesis and secretion of large amounts of antibody. The existing antibody-encoding properties of the myeloma cell are irrelevant to what follows.

Köhler and Milstein's key and enabling insight was the realization that they could take a large population of B cells from the spleen of a mouse that had been immunized with an antigen of interest and, ideally, fuse each of these cells individually to a myeloma cell. This fusion would provide each of the B cells with an immortalizing gene (or set of genes), allowing it to proliferate indefinitely in culture with a retention of its previously developed antibody-producing

powers. A few years later, the use of myeloma or myeloma-derived cell lines that had lost the capacity to produce endogenous antibody chains was a major technical advance that removed the complication of unwanted production of myeloma immunoglobulins (see Figure 7.1).

The B cells used in these fusions exhibit the expected heterogeneity of B cells normally present in, for example, the spleen or other secondary lymphoid tissues, such as lymph nodes. Because the B cells are prepared from a mouse that has been recently immunized with specific antigen of interest, a significant percentage of the B cells prepared from the spleen of this mouse will be B cells that have developed antibody responses against the immunizing antigens. Thus, among several hundred randomly chosen B cells from the spleen of the recently immunized animal, there will likely be dozens that have developed an antibody against the antigen of interest. Like the overall population of B cells in the spleen, even this smaller population making antibodies of interest will exhibit a degree of heterogeneity. The strategy thereafter would be to immortalize each of these B cells separately and identify which of these produces an antibody of sufficient antigen affinity (tight binding) and specificity.

When the two cells are fused together (see Figure 7.1), the resulting hybrid cell that is formed when a normal B cell fuses with a myeloma cell is termed a *hybridoma*. As described above, such a cell retains the ability of the normal B-cell parent to make an antibody specific for the immunizing antigen and retains the myeloma parent's capacity for indefinite survival and proliferation in culture, that is, the trait of replicative immortality as described in Chapter 10.

Because each hybridoma represents a monoclonal cell population, being the descendants of a single B cell partner, the antibodies that all of the cells in this population produce are identical throughout their structure, including their antigen-binding sites. Such antibodies are called *monoclonal antibodies* (moAbs).

In more detail, splenocytes, including large numbers of B cells, are isolated from a mouse that has been immunized, often repeatedly, with an antigen of interest. A population of such splenocytes is then fused, each individually, with cells from a suitable myeloma cell line, leading to a large population of hybrid cells. (Successfully fused cells can be isolated using a drug selection protocol designed to eliminate all unfused cells.) Such hybrid cells that grow out after a period of time are then introduced individually into an array of microtiter wells at low seeding density in order to ensure that each well receives at most only a single hybrid cell. The cells in these wells are then cultured for a period of some days to

ensure that they can secrete into the supernatant medium present in each well the antibodies that they should be capable of producing. The media of microtiter wells that carry antibody against the antigen of interest are then identified and the hybrid cells that are present in these microtiter wells are retrieved and expanded *ex vivo*, yielding a population of hybridoma cells that encodes a secreted immunoglobulin and can be propagated indefinitely in culture and expanded into large culture vessels for the essentially unlimited production of the monoclonal antibody.

Today, however, a newer technology is employed to produce antibodies that are to be used for therapeutic applications. These newer types of moAbs have amino acid sequences that are essentially fully human and are derived in one of three ways: phage display technologies, the use of recombinant DNA technology to clone and express antibody genes from human B lineage cells, and immunization of transgenic animals carrying human immunoglobulin genes, as described below.

Independent of the specific protocols that are followed, the advent of technologies for the derivation of monoclonal antibodies and the subsequent development of the capacity to produce them in unlimited amounts has been revolutionary for preclinical research and clinical therapeutic applications. Monoclonal antibodies are now the standard reagents for the performance of serological assays, for diagnostic histology and flow cytometry, and for many therapeutic applications, explaining why a large and growing number of them are finding applications in oncology. Monoclonal antibodies (moAbs) used for investigational or diagnostic purposes are derived by producing hybridomas from murine sources, that is, B cells from the spleens of immunized mice as described above (**Figure S16.1**).

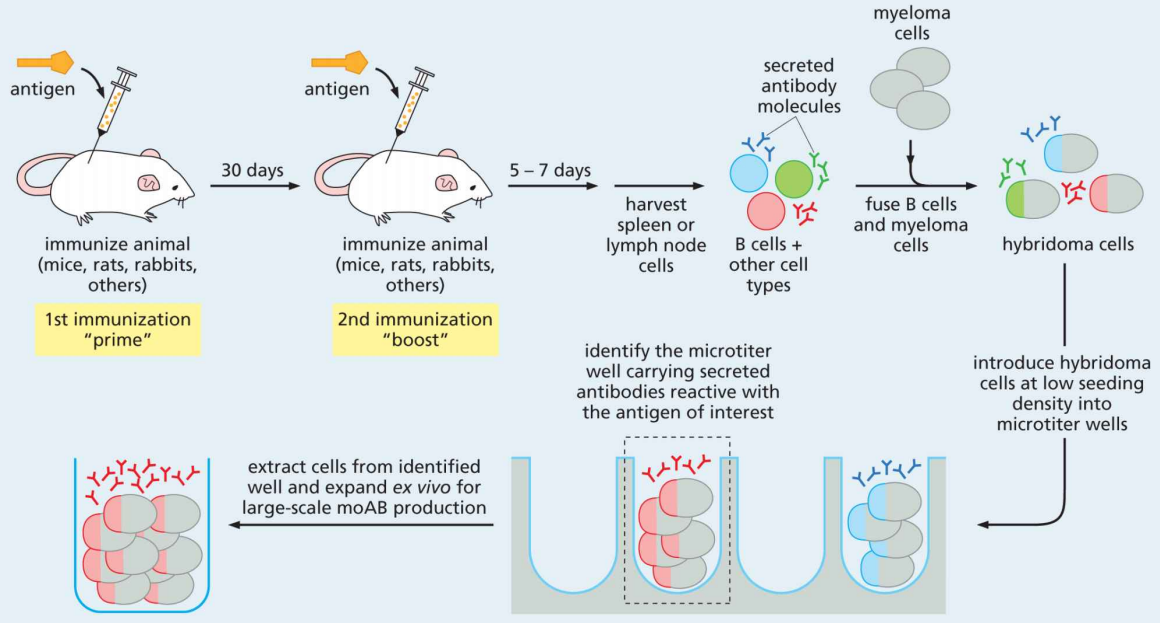


Figure S16.1 How to make monoclonal antibodies The antigen against which monoclonal antibodies are to be raised is repeatedly administered to mice or some other species at intervals suitable for raising an antibody response. The initial immunization is known as priming and subsequent administrations of antigen are called boosts. Three to five days after the last boost, the spleen or a few lymph nodes are collected and their immunocytes are harvested and fused to a suitable myeloma cell line, the cells of which have lost the ability to make antibodies. The fusion of individual B cells with myeloma cells yields hybridoma cells. Drug selection kills unfused myeloma cells and unfused B cells are incapable of extended proliferation in culture. The heterogeneous population of hybridoma cells is diluted and added to the wells of microtiter dishes at seeding densities low enough to ensure that each well receives no more than one hybridoma cell. After a period of growth, a sample of the supernatant from each of the monoclonal cultures that emerge is collected and added to the wells of assay plates that have been coated with the target antigen. After a suitable period of incubation, the plates are thoroughly washed and assayed for antibody binding, usually by a chromogenic ELISA-type assay. (Adapted in part from https:mblbio.com/bio/g/support/method/antibody-production.html.)

Use of phage display to make antibodies In a technique for producing antibody-like molecules, large collections of gene sequences encoding the antigen-binding variable (V) domains of antibodies are individually fused to genes encoding the

coat protein of a bacteriophage. Bacteriophages containing such gene fusions are used to infect bacteria. The resulting progeny phage particles have coats that express the antibody-like fusion protein, with the antigen-binding domain displayed on the outside of the bacteriophage virions. A collection of recombinant phages, each displaying a distinct antigen-binding domain on the surface, is known as a *phage display library*. In much the same way that antibodies specific for a particular antigen can be isolated from a complex mixture by affinity chromatography, phages expressing antigen-binding domains specific for a particular antigen can be isolated by selecting the phages in the library that bind specifically to that antigen, which had been expressed as a recombinant protein and immobilized on one or another solid matrix. The few phage particles that bind to the matrix via their linked antigen-binding domain are eluted from the matrix, recovered, and used to infect fresh bacteria. Each phage isolated in this way will produce a monoclonal antigen-binding particle analogous to a monoclonal antibody. The genes encoding the antigen-binding site, which are unique to each phage, can then be recovered from the phage DNA by recombinant DNA procedures and used to assemble genes specifying a complete antibody molecule by joining these genes to segments of immunoglobulin genes that encode the constant (C) domains of an antibody molecule. When these reconstructed complete antibody genes are introduced into a suitable host-cell line, such as the non-antibody-producing myeloma cell variants mentioned above, and used for making moAbs, the transfected cells can secrete antibodies with all of the desirable characteristics of monoclonal antibodies produced from hybridomas, including the homogeneity of the population of secreted antibody molecules.

If most of the residues of the resulting antibody molecules derive from human sources, then the resulting antibody molecules themselves will not provoke an anti-moAb response in a human patient, which would result in the effective neutralization of this antibody by the recipient's immune system. (Conversely, the use of mouse-derived sequences in the reconstructed antibody molecules will indeed provoke an undesired response because the patient's immune system is unlikely to be tolerant of foreign antigens, that is, those of nonhuman origin.)

Generation of human monoclonal antibodies from human B-cell donors In certain cases, human monoclonal antibodies can be made by cloning the rearranged antibody heavy- and light-chain gene sequences from B cells isolated from the peripheral blood of individuals. Individual cells of the B-cell lineage that display antibodies specific for a given antigen can be identified by flow cytometry (FACS) and isolated by cell-sorting technology as single cells.

Thereafter, single-cell DNA sequencing of the genomes of such cells makes it possible to identify the rearranged heavy- and light-chain variable region sequences encoding human antibodies of the desired specificity. Once captured, these sequences are cloned into expression vectors designed to incorporate them into generic human constant (C) region constructs encoding both the light and heavy constant regions. Transfection of these expression vectors into an appropriate mammalian cell line allows production of monoclonal antibody molecules assembled entirely from human sequences and exhibits the desired antigen-recognizing specificity. As described above, such human moAbs can be used therapeutically because they will not provoke an anti-moAb response, as described above.

Generation of monoclonal antibodies from transgenic animals Transgenic animals, largely mice, have been produced in which the resident genomic regions encoding murine immunoglobulin genes have been entirely replaced by human equivalents, that is, the corresponding orthologous sequences present in the human genome. Once again, this strategy is used to avoid the isolation of antibody-encoding genes of mouse origin, the products of which could provoke an anti-murine antibody response in human recipients. When immunized, such human immunoglobulin-expressing transgenic mice produce human antibodies instead of murine ones. Consequently, it is possible to immunize these mice with any desired antigen and to use hybridoma technology (see Figure S16.1) to produce hybridomas that secrete monoclonal human antibodies against the target antigen. Human immunoglobulin transgenic mice are now widely used to derive monoclonal human antibodies for a broad variety of therapeutic applications.

Adapted in part from K. Murphy and C. Weaver (eds.), Janeway’s Immunology 9th ed. New York: W.W. Norton, 2017.

Supplementary Sidebar 16.2 Indicators of success or failure of immune checkpoint blockade therapies

Infiltration of a tumor by CD8+ T cells is widely viewed as a parameter that reliably predicts its favorable clinical responses to immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI) therapy. Furthermore, the determination that the infiltrating population of CD8+ T cells displays a diverse repertoire of T-cell receptors (TCRs) provides an additional prognostic indicator of a favorable response. Thus, the more diverse the antigen-recognizing domains of these receptors are within a patient’s tumor-infiltrating T-cell populations, the greater the likelihood that certain CD8+ CTLs

will recognize cognate antigens within a tumor and proceed to kill cancer cells. In more detail, T cells can be isolated from the blood of cancer patients and the diversity of the antigen-recognizing domains of their TCRs can be judged by high-throughput sequencing analyses of the genomic segments encoding these domains, yielding a direct metric of TCR diversity, including that of the TCRs expressed by tumor-infiltrating T cells. Indeed, this metric predicts future responses to ICB and reveals whether extensive TCR diversity already exists at baseline (that is, before ICI treatment) or after ICI therapy has been initiated.

The nature of the antigens developed by tumor cells is also critical to determining the nature of eventual immune responses. Thus, to step back a bit, higher frequencies of somatic mutations that have been accumulated in the cancer cell genome during the course of tumor formation provide a higher abundance and richer diversity of neoantigens, thereby increasing the potential for immune recognition (see Section 15.8). Such elevated antigen diversity is often reflected in the finding that tumors with higher tumor mutational burdens (TMBs) are associated with T cells exhibiting greater TCR diversity. This implies, in turn, that many of the individual neoantigens created by somatic mutations can evoke the development of corresponding highly specific TCRs.

Indeed, high TMB has been associated with better responses to either anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1 across a broad spectrum of cancers. Furthermore, the specific mutational mechanisms responsible for the elevation of the TMB (see Sections 12.4 and 12.5) do not actually appear to be important. Thus, tumors that acquire hundreds, even thousands of mutations as a consequence of UV exposure, as is true of many melanomas, and tumors that acquire mutations through inhaled mutagenic carcinogens, as is the case for smokers who develop non-small-cell lung carcinomas, are indeed more responsive to ICIs.

Most unexpectedly, the composition of patient microbiomes may significantly influence responses to ICIs. For example, mouse studies have demonstrated that the presence of certain bacterial species in the gut promoted therapeutic responses to anti-CTLA-4 immunotherapy, whereas others promoted responses to anti-PD-1 therapy. In addition, a clinical study of patients with urothelial carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, and non-small-cell lung cancer showed that antibiotic treatment during the course of anti-PD-1 immunotherapy was negatively correlated with patient responses to ICI immunotherapy. This suggested that somehow immunostimulatory effects were being conferred by the presence of certain commensal bacterial species and that these species and the beneficial effects on the host immune responses (including those conferred by ICI therapies) were

being eliminated by the use of antibiotics. These observations suggest that analyses of intestinal microbiota might one day provide useful indicators of those patients who are likely to respond to ICI immunotherapy and those who are not. In fact, certain microbiomes contain microbial species that are associated with poor responsiveness to checkpoint-mediated immunotherapy. These microbiome-based indicators and those cited in **Figure S16.2** are helpful but inadequate predictors of ICB response. At present, we lack reliable predictors of clinical responses for ~80% of the patients being treated with various ICB therapies.

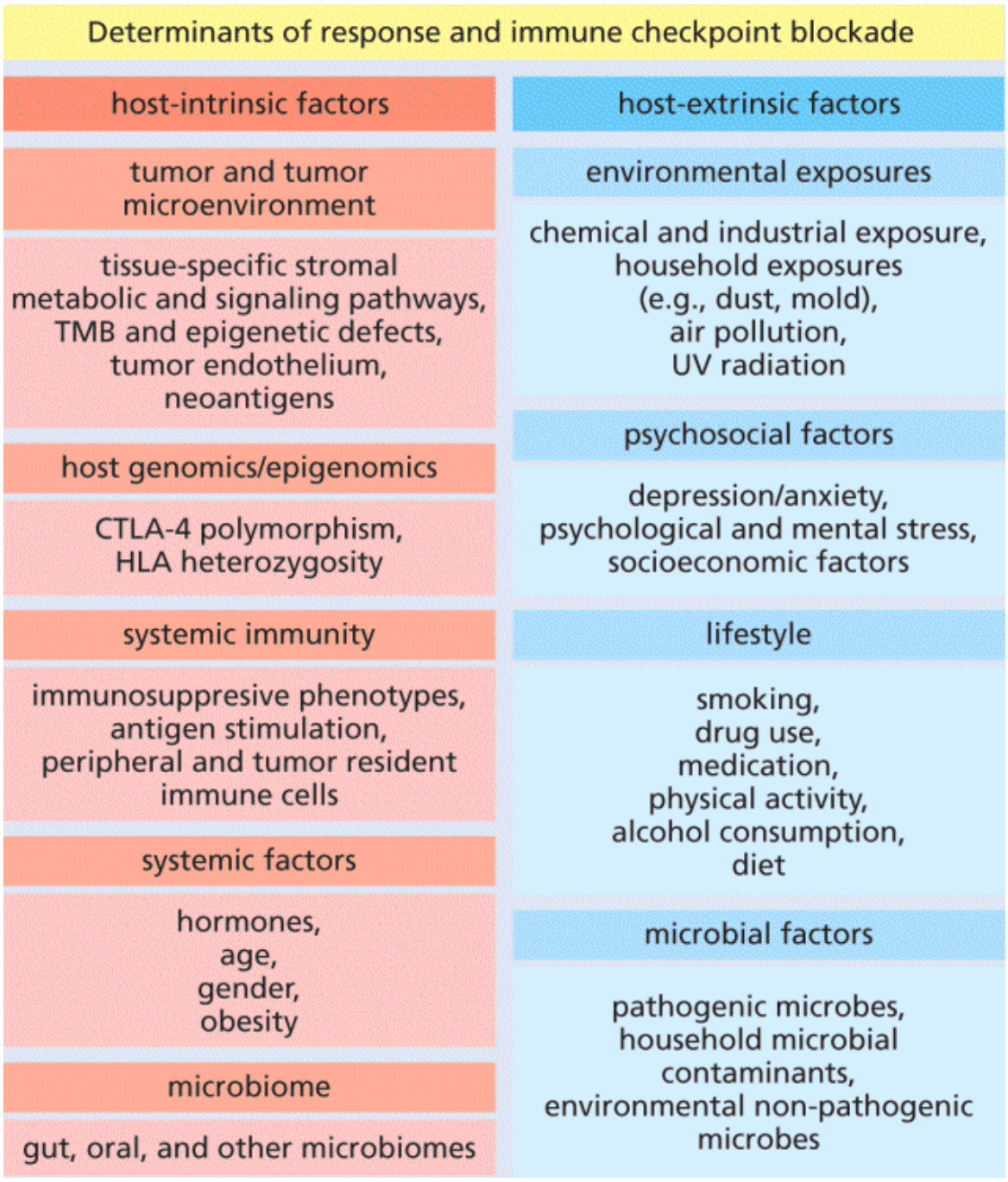


Figure S16.2 Factors governing clinical responses to checkpoint blockade inhibition A variety of host-intrinsic and host-extrinsic factors influence the response to treatment with immune checkpoint inhibitors. (Adapted from G. Morad, B.A. Helmink, P. Sharma and J.A. Wargo, *Cell* 184:5309–5337, 2021.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

splenocyte
: A leukocyte isolated from the spleen, which may belong to B or T cell populations as well as myeloid-derived populations, such as macrophages and dendritic cells.

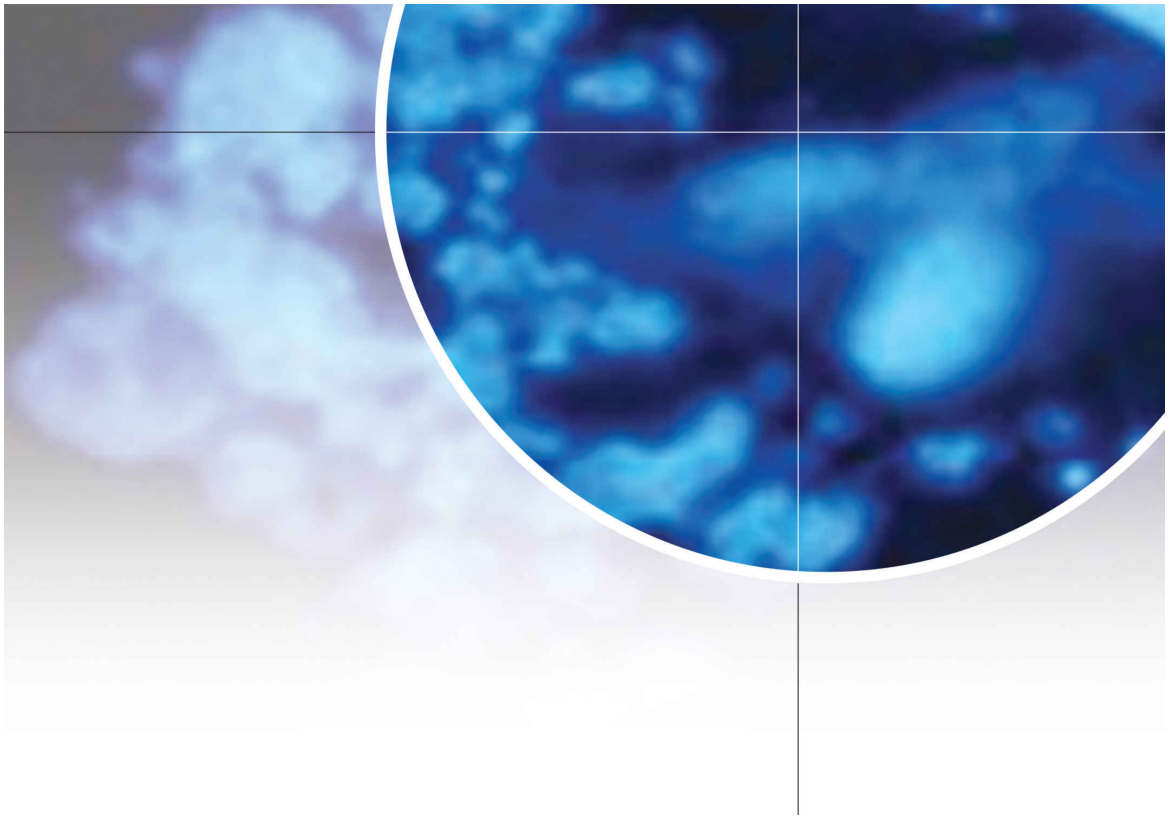
affinity chromatography
: Procedure for enriching from a complex mixture of biological molecules the subpopulation of biomolecules that binds specifically to a cognate ligand or molecular binding partner, the latter being immobilized on a solid matrix. Molecules that are retained on the matrix, in contrast to the bulk population of molecules that are not, can subsequently be eluted from the matrix and prepared for various additional enrichment or analytic techniques.

tumor mutational burden
: The total number of mutations found in the genomic DNA of tumor sample, often presented as number per haploid genome or per megabase of genomic DNA.

commensal
: Referring to a long-term interaction between two organisms, such as gastrointestinal bacteria and their mammalian hosts, which reflects symbiosis between the organisms and may accrue to the benefit of both of them.

OceanofPDF.com

Chapter 17
The Rational Treatment of Cancer



A fluorescence microscopy image of tissue glowing blue in different sized splotches.

All substances are poisonous, there is none that is not a poison; the right dose differentiates a poison from a remedy.

Paracelsus (Auroleus Phillipus Theostratus Bombastus von Hohenheim), alchemist and physician, 1538

Doctors are men who prescribe medicines of which they know little, to cure diseases of which they know less, in human beings of whom they know nothing.

Voltaire (François-Marie Arouet), author and philosopher, 1760

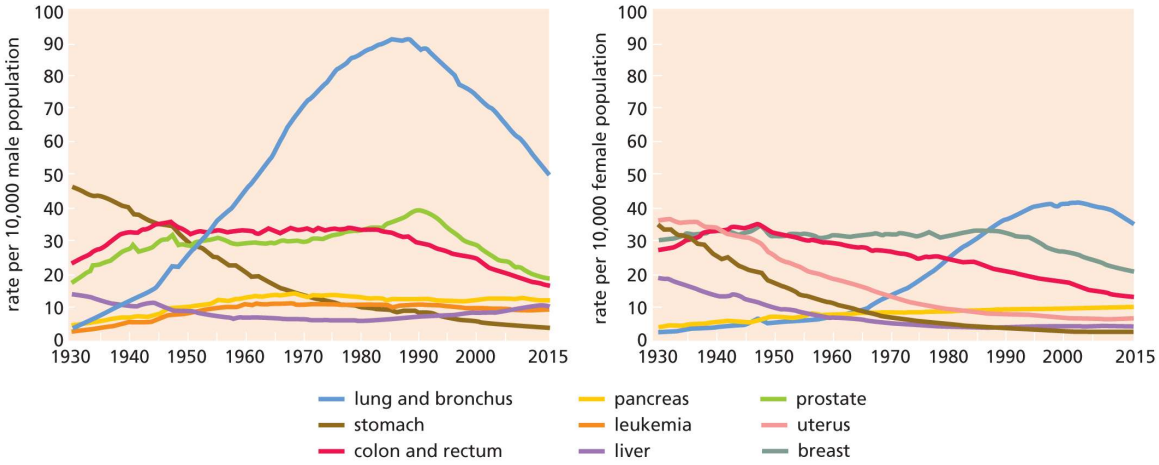
The research described throughout this book represents a revolution in our understanding of cancer pathogenesis. In 1975, there were virtually no insights into the molecular alterations within human cells that lead to the appearance of malignancies. Two generations later, we possess this knowledge in abundance. Indeed, the available information and concepts about cancer's origins can truly be said to constitute a science with a logical and coherent conceptual structure.

In spite of these extraordinary leaps forward, more limited progress has been made in exploiting these insights into etiology (that is, the causative mechanisms of disease) in order to prevent the disease and, equally important, to treat it. Most of the anti-cancer treatments in widespread use today were developed prior to 1975, at a time when the development of therapeutics was not yet informed by detailed knowledge of the genetic and biochemical mechanisms of cancer pathogenesis. Consequently, there is a widely felt frustration among molecular oncologists that the potential of their research for contributing to new anti-cancer therapeutics has not yet been realized.

The promise—still unrealized—of the new therapeutics needs to be juxtaposed with the overall progress in treating advanced tumors using the traditional strategies of surgery, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy. Significant progress in treating many tumors has been slow. For example, in 1970 in the United States, 7% of the patients diagnosed with lung cancer were still alive five years after their initial diagnosis. Five decades later, this number had risen to only 19%, a relatively minor improvement. And even this degree of therapeutic success may be illusory, because modern diagnostic techniques often detect tumors far earlier in their natural course, creating a greater time span between initial diagnosis and ultimate progression to end-stage disease.

Death rates for colon cancer have begun to fall, because of early detection and surgical removal of growths that have advanced through only the early stages of tumor progression (**Figure 17.1**; see also Figure 11.8B). However, mortality caused by the more advanced colorectal tumors has changed little—a testimonial to the failures of chemotherapy and radiation to eliminate these malignancies once they have invaded and begun to metastasize (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.1**). Moreover, age-adjusted mortality from other types of tumors has remained constant or declined relatively little. Statistics like these suggest that the potential of the traditional therapies to cure high-grade malignancies has been largely realized and that major progress in the future can only come from the novel

therapeutics whose designs are informed by our now-extensive knowledge of the molecular, biochemical, and cellular mechanisms of cancer pathogenesis.



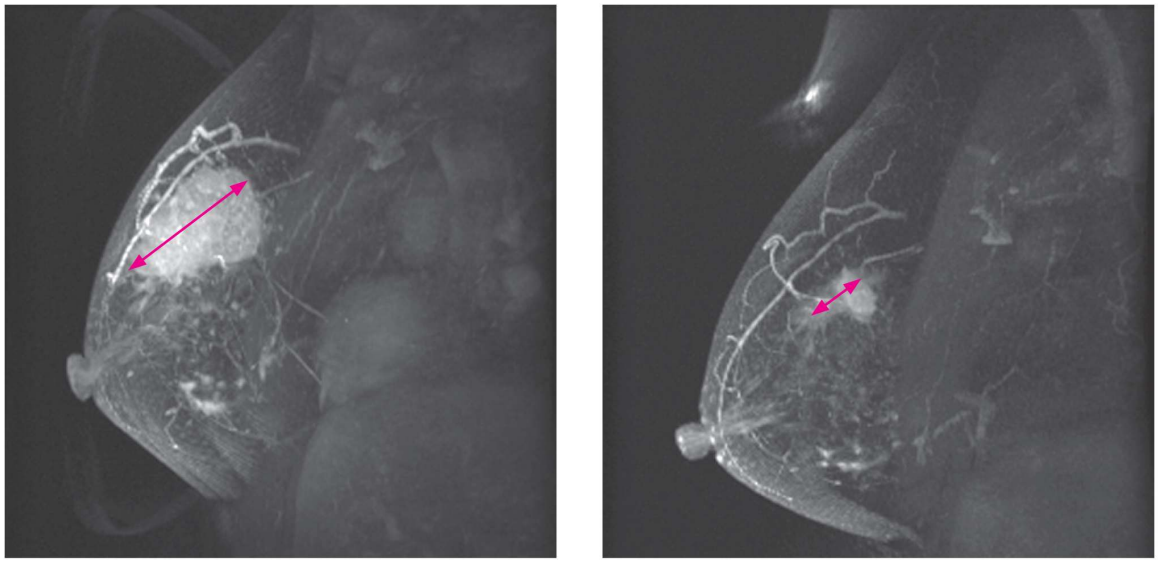
Two line graphs of the mortality rates of different cancers in males and females from 1930 to 2015. Each graph has the years 1930 to 2015 on the x axis and rate per 10,000 on the y axis. For males, pancreas, leukemia, and liver stay below 20 across all years. Stomach starts near 45 in 1930 and decreases almost to 0 by 2015. Colon, rectum, and prostate stay between 10 and 40. Lung and bronchus start near 0, peak near 90 in 1990 and then decrease to 50. For women, all cancers are below 40 and most decrease or remain constant. Liver and pancreas stay below 20. Lung and bronchus increase to a peak at 40 in the early 2000s before decreasing to 30.

Figure 17.1 Cancer mortality from 1930 to 2015: the lay of the land The statistics compiled in the United States on the age-adjusted death rates for males and females from various types of cancer reveal two different long-term trends. Mortality from several major killers has declined significantly since 1930. This resulted from changes in food storage practices and a possible reduction in *Helicobacter pylori* infection rates, in the case of stomach cancer, and to screening, in the case of colorectal cancer. The decline in mortality from lung cancer is attributable, almost entirely, to decreases in tobacco usage. However, tumors associated with the number of major sources of cancer-related death, including those associated with various forms of lung cancer, have proven resistant to most forms of traditional therapies, especially when these tumors progress to a highly malignant, metastatic stage. (Uterus includes uterine cervix and uterine corpus combined, due to limitations in COD coding prior to 1970. From American Cancer Society. Cancer Facts &

Figures, 2018. Atlanta: American Cancer Society; 2018. With permission from American Cancer Society.)

The problems confronted here are manifold. To begin, in the case of certain common cancers, we lack a good estimate of the size of the problem. How many of the cases that are diagnosed each year (yielding age-adjusted incidence) are likely to grow into life-threatening growths? And how often do treatments performed on patients with relatively benign tumors yield more morbidity than clinical benefit in terms of subsequent well-being and gains in life span?

The problem is explained by a critical lesson we learned in Chapter 11: as we grow older, small tumors appear spontaneously in a wide variety of tissues. At the same time, as diagnostic procedures become increasingly sensitive (**Figure 17.2**), we begin to detect more and more cases of cancer without a clear indication of the proportion of these that will grow into life-threatening tumors. This problem is immense, given the limited ability of oncology clinics and funds to respond to an ever-increasing number of cases (**Sidebar 17.1**).



Two M R I images of breast tissue before and after chemotherapy. In both images there is a white mass in the breast tissue. In the pre-chemotherapy image, the longest dimension of the mass is 47 millimeters. In the post-chemotherapy image, the longest dimension of the mass is 16 millimeters.

Figure 17.2 High-resolution noninvasive imaging of human tissues The development of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has enabled increasingly higher-resolution noninvasive visualization of living tissues. MRI now allows breast tumors of very small size (several millimeters in diameter) to be detected and, as shown here, makes it possible to view the progress of anti-tumor therapy—in this case chemotherapy with an anthracycline cytotoxic agent—in exquisite detail. Widespread use of such highly sensitive imaging techniques has resulted in increases in the registered incidence rate of breast cancer (resulting from detection of disease that would previously have eluded detection) with unclear effects on the ultimate mortality of the disease. (Courtesy of N.M. Hylton and L.J. Esserman.)

Sidebar 17.1 How common are cancers that require clinical intervention?

The development and use of diagnostic procedures of ever-increasing sensitivity led to steep increases in the incidence of breast and prostate cancers during the second half of the twentieth century. In the case of the breast, the incidence of carcinomas increased progressively during the late twentieth century and then leveled off (see Figure 17.3). Some of these growths will eventually become life-threatening and many others will not. However, incidence rates are an artifact of technology, and as diagnosis improves (see Figure 17.2), the age-adjusted incidence will increase in lockstep unless the images generated by these new diagnostic techniques are interpreted with caution. Hence, the only truly rigorous and solid measurements are those associated with mortality.

A recent study of breast cancer performed post mortem on women who died of a variety of causes estimated that at the age of 80, at least two-thirds of women carry breast carcinomas (whereas only ~4% will die from breast cancer). An even larger number (~80%) applies to post mortem studies of prostate carcinomas in men of this age. Thus, if the diagnostic procedures performed on living patients were as sensitive as those implemented upon autopsy, the estimated incidence of breast and prostate carcinomas would increase dramatically, because even more non-life-threatening cancers would be registered (see also **Supplementary Sidebar 17.2**).

As discussed in the next section, our rapidly evolving understanding of disease pathogenesis may soon allow us to judge more accurately how many cancers are deserving of aggressive treatment and how many can be safely left untreated. At

the same time, our improving insights into specific disease processes, such as the development of metastases, have revealed how traditional, widely used forms of therapy have not served many cancer patients well (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.2**).

In most of this chapter, we explore therapeutic strategies under development or recently introduced into the clinic and examine how their development has been informed by what we have learned in the earlier chapters of this book. The goal here is not to survey the full range of current research in these areas. That would be unreachable: a 2018 compilation of anti-cancer therapies in pre-clinical development or in clinical testing listed more than 1100 potential therapeutic agents that were being pursued by pharmaceutical companies and biotechnology firms. The agents under development included low–molecular-weight drugs, proteins, antibodies and antibody conjugates, and gene therapy strategies, including viral vectors.

Rather than being encyclopedic, we will concentrate here on a small number of recently developed therapies that illustrate how discoveries described in the previous chapters have inspired novel strategies for treating cancer and how molecular diagnosis will increasingly play a part in the development and clinical introduction of novel therapies. These therapeutic strategies hold great promise, and invariably their true potential is yet to be realized. The anecdotes surrounding the development of each of these agents are interesting and provocative because they teach important lessons about the triumphs and pitfalls of developing novel anti-cancer treatments. Note that the recent development of immunotherapies has profoundly influenced both the current treatment of multiple cancer types and the future prospects for the treatment of malignancies that have traditionally been refractory to therapy. These dramatic developments have been described in some detail in Chapter 16.

Almost all the research findings described throughout this textbook will stand the test of time and be considered credible and correct (though perhaps not that interesting) a generation from now. However, those who love certainty and eternal truths will find the stories that follow below to be unsatisfying for a very simple reason: the work reported is in great flux and many outcomes are uncertain. Many of the newer therapies will seem quaint and anachronistic a decade after this chapter is written. The campaign to convert insights about cancer’s molecular causes into new ways of curing disease has just begun.

Note also that we will pass over descriptions of how molecular biology is changing cancer *prevention* strategies. Thus, in this chapter we will not examine the major advances that have been made in developing vaccines that protect against hepatitis B virus (HBV) and human papillomavirus (HPV) infections (for example, see Supplementary Sidebar 15.5); these vaccines should be highly effective in reducing the incidence of hepatomas and cervical carcinomas, which are major sources of cancer-associated mortality in certain parts of the world. (If past public health measures are any guide, the prevention of cancer, that is, the reduction of disease *incidence*, will ultimately yield far greater reductions in overall disease-related *mortality* than will therapies of the sort discussed in this chapter.)

Simple logic would dictate that the newer, "rationally designed" agents, because they attack specific, identifiable molecular targets, are likely to be far more effective in eradicating tumors and less encumbered with toxic side effects than are older agents; the latter were discovered through empirical trial-and-error testing that was undertaken without any foreknowledge of the biochemistry and molecular biology of cancer cells. However, as we will see in Section 17.2, the more traditional ways of treating neoplastic disease have proven to be highly effective in halting disease progression and reducing cancer-associated mortality, explaining why these treatments continue to merit our attention. Such curative outcomes are, ironically, still not the endpoints achieved by most of the recently developed therapies, as we will see.

OceanofPDF.com

17.1 The development and clinical use of effective therapies will depend on accurate diagnosis of disease

In previous chapters, we repeatedly categorized cancers in terms of their tissues of origin and their stages of clinical progression. Almost always, these assignments have been dictated by the appearance of normal and malignant tissues under the microscope. On many occasions, to be sure, we have refined these classifications by describing certain molecular markers [for example, expression of HER2 in breast cancers and the implications that they hold for prognosis (see Figure 4.3A)], but in general, histopathology has reigned supreme in our discussions, as it has in the practice of clinical oncology for almost a century.

It has become increasingly clear, however, that the traditional ways of classifying cancers have limited utility. Truly useful diagnoses must inform the clinician about the underlying nature of diseases and, more important, how each disease entity will respond to various types of therapy. As we have learned more about human cancers, we have come to realize that many human cancers that have traditionally been lumped together as examples of a single disease entity should, in fact, be separated into several distinct subcategories of a disease. This tendency to view cancer as a uniform entity helps to explain why many existing anti-cancer therapeutic strategies used over the past three decades have had such low overall success rates, in that they have treated tumors of a certain class as representatives of a homogeneous disease rather than of multiple distinct subtypes of disease, some of which might be responsive to targeted therapeutic attack, whereas others might be quite resistant. These response rates also have important implications for the development of new drugs (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.3**).

Stated differently, the clinical oncologist really confronts two issues: Should a diagnosed tumor be treated, and if so, what available therapies are appropriate for the subtype of tumor that has been identified? In an ideal world, the decision to proceed with treatment should be a challenging one requiring detailed knowledge of the idiosyncrasies of the diagnosed tumor, but in the real world, it is often simplified: treat almost all tumors (with the exception of skin cancers) aggressively in order to reduce as much as possible the likelihood of eventual life-threatening clinical progression.

Ideally, the complexity of the decision to proceed with treatment should take into account that diagnosed tumors fall into three classes:

1. Indolent tumors that have low invasive and metastatic potential and will remain in such a state during the lifetime of the patient.
2. Highly aggressive tumors with a propensity to metastasize that have, with high probability, disseminated by the time that the primary tumor has been diagnosed.
3. Tumors of intermediate grade that have the potential to disseminate but can be excised or treated with cytotoxic therapies before dissemination occurs and life-threatening metastases are formed.

Tumors of the first class are generally not worthy of treatment, including surgery, and should be left undisturbed. (Indeed, surgery may, under certain conditions, provoke otherwise-indolent growths to become clinically apparent if not aggressive.) One illustrative example of these is pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (NETs)—that is, tumors of the pancreatic islets (see Figure 13.36)—which constitute about 3% of pancreatic carcinomas and are discovered incidentally during high-resolution imaging, often undertaken for other conditions. Asymptomatic patients with these low-grade "incidentalomas," as the tumors are termed amusingly by oncologists, confront a 90% five-year progression-free survival. Like any type of pancreatic surgery, excision of these tumors is accompanied by a high degree of post-surgical morbidity; such morbidity may eclipse the clinical benefit that these patients receive from surgery, given the low likelihood of clinical progression. [Contrast their prognosis with that of a recently diagnosed pancreatic exocrine adenocarcinoma patient (see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.5**), whose overall five-year survival is only ~5%.] At present, diagnostic criteria do not distinguish between the small subset of NETs that will eventually progress and the great majority that are unlikely to progress during a patient's lifetime. Papillary thyroid carcinomas represent another class of incidentalomas: in one of the few systematic post mortem studies of this disease, a Finnish research group found these growths in one-third of those autopsied, whereas only 0.07% of annual deaths (in the United States) can be attributed to this disease.

Truly effective treatments for most kinds of metastases are not available at present, raising the question whether tumors of the second class are worth treating, as they will become lethal no matter what therapies are attempted. (The proviso here is that existing treatments may ameliorate symptoms over an extended period of time and may even forestall the inevitable, thereby extending patients' symptom-free life spans significantly.) Cynics argue simplistically that patients carrying these two classes of tumor should be left untreated, because the long-term outcome is predictable no matter what clinical strategy is chosen. Unappreciated by the cynics is the possibility that the sub-optimal responses of the second class of tumors to existing therapies will serve as foundations for the development in the future of vastly more effective therapies that will save those who, at present, confront inevitable disease progression and death.

The third class of tumors—those of intermediate grade—are those that should and will command most of our attention in this chapter—the “in-between” tumors whose treatment will actually prevent metastatic progression and achieve long-term, even curative responses. In reality, in countries like the United States where concerns about neglectful treatment verging on medical malpractice dominate, tumors of all classes are treated, often aggressively. Such unfocused treatments will soon become issues of the past, if only because the costs of unnecessary therapies will no longer be economically sustainable.

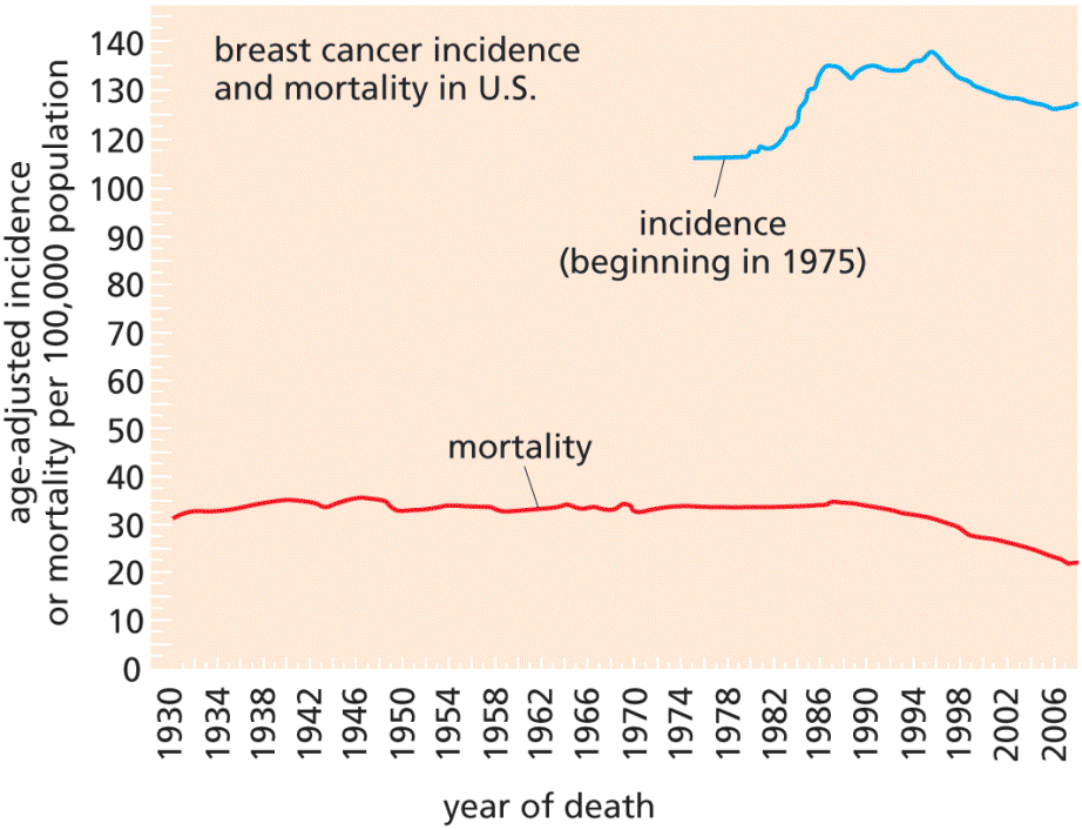
At present, such uniformly applied therapies may have other downsides beyond economic costs. Indeed, anti-cancer treatments often cause numerous side effects and some may actually increase the incidence of second-site cancers arising years later. For example, in the early 1980s, breast cancer patients receiving the then-standard dose of cyclophosphamide (a chemotherapeutic drug that is also an alkylating agent; **Table 17.1**) experienced a 5.7-fold increased risk of subsequently developing acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), ostensibly the consequence of the mutagenic actions of this drug. (Many current treatment protocols use lower drug dosages and result in greatly decreased incidence of such second-site cancers.) All this points to the great need for more refined diagnostic tools—ones that can accurately predict responsiveness to various anti-tumor therapies and allow the oncologist to avoid use of therapies when they are not needed because they are highly unlikely to succeed.

Table 17.1 Examples of alkylating agents or other DNA-modifying agents used to treat cancer

Name	**Chemical structure**	**Effects on DNA**	**Examples of clinical use**
bleomycin	nonribosomally synthesized oligopeptide	strand breaks	Hodgkin’s lymphoma, squamous cell carcinoma
cyclophosphamide	nitrogen mustard analog	cross-links N^7 of guanine	lymphoma, leukemia
dacarbazine	nitrogen mustard analog	methylation of guanine	Hodgkin’s lymphoma, melanoma

Name	Chemical structure	Effects on DNA	Examples of clinical use
melphalan	nitrogen mustard analog	alkylates N^7 of guanine	multiple myeloma
chlorambucil	nitrogen mustard analog	base alkylation, cross-links	chronic lymphocytic leukemia
carboplatin/cisplatin	alkylating-like agent	intra-strand cross-links	breast, ovarian, testicular cancer
temozolomide	alkylating agent	methylation of guanine	glioblastoma multiforme

We can focus for the moment on female breast cancers in the United States to provide an illustrative example. In 2018, about 266,000 cases of invasive breast cancer were diagnosed together with 64,000 noninvasive (*in situ*) forms of the disease. That year, about 41,000 women were predicted to die from the disease. Most patients with invasive mammary carcinomas were treated with aggressive chemotherapy. The age-adjusted death rate from breast cancer in the United States did not change significantly throughout most of the twentieth century (**Figure 17.3**) during a period when truly effective therapies were not available, suggesting that a comparable annual frequency of life-threatening breast cancers continues to be formed today and that many of the vastly larger numbers of invasive breast carcinomas currently being diagnosed are not likely to cause death, even without therapeutic intervention, much like the prostate cancers that are diagnosed in vast numbers in the West (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.4**). As screening for breast cancer increases and the power to detect small, previously overlooked tumors improves (see Figure 17.2), this disparity between breast cancer incidence and mortality is likely to grow.



A line graph of breast cancer incidence and mortality in the United States. On the x axis is year of death from 1930 to 2006. On the y axis is age-adjusted incidence or mortality per 100,000 population from 0 to 140. Mortality stays relatively constant between 30 and 40 until 1990 when it starts to decrease. By 2004, it is around 20. Incidence rates start in 1975 near 120. They sharply increase to between 130 and 140 between 1986 and 1996 before dropping to 125.

Figure 17.3 Breast cancer incidence vs. mortality in the United States The age-adjusted incidence of breast cancer has been increasing steadily over the past several decades, whereas mortality from this disease was quite constant until the end of the twentieth century, when it began to decline significantly. Most of the increase in incidence appears to be attributable to increased screening, but a small proportion of it may have resulted from real changes in the rate at which the disease strikes because of changes in reproductive practices, nutrition, obesity, age of menarche and menopause, and so forth. (From A. Jemal et al., *CA Cancer J. Clin*. 55:10–30, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

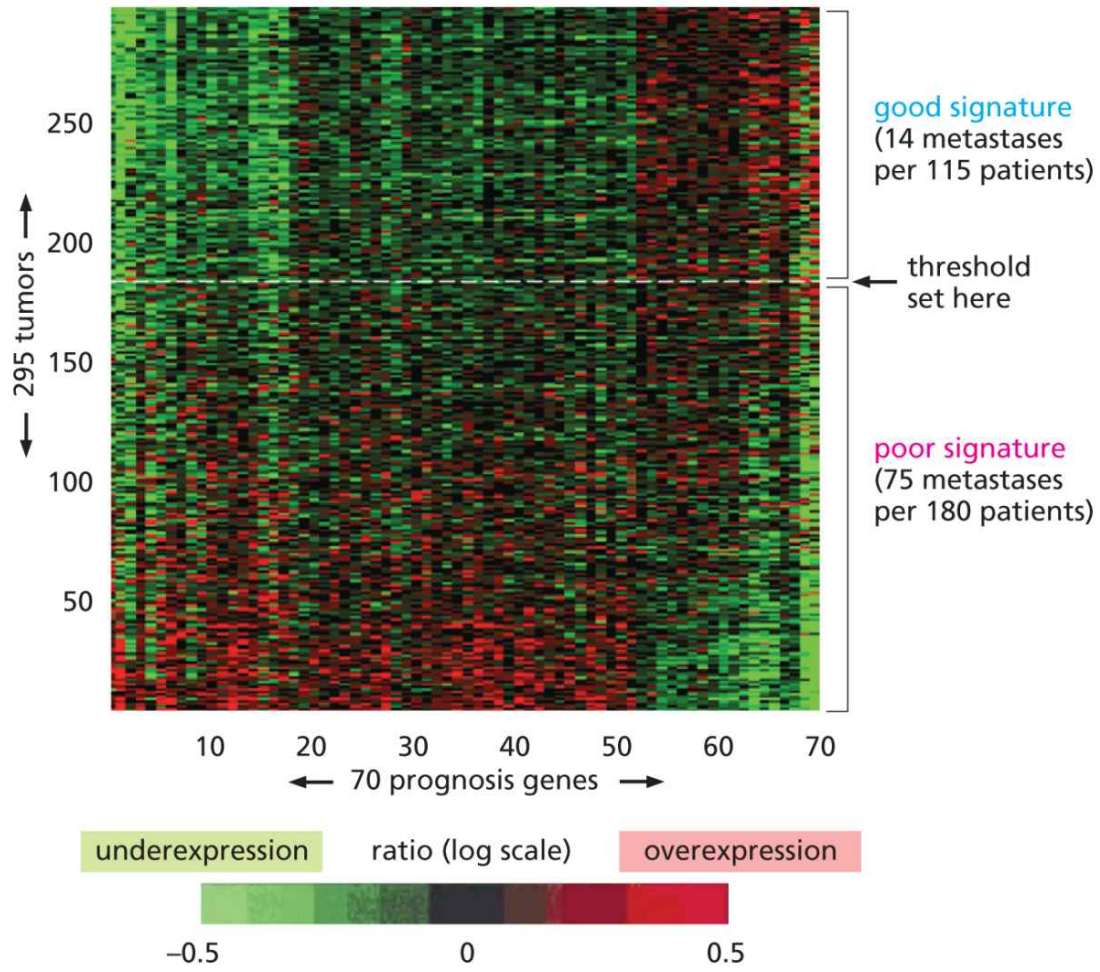
Statistics like these underscore the desperate need to develop molecular markers that enable oncologists to distinguish between those tumors that truly require aggressive treatment and those that can be monitored repeatedly for signs of progression (the

practice termed “watchful waiting”). In the case of other types of cancer, equally important distinctions must also be made, but of a far grimmer sort—between those cancers that are likely to show some significant response to therapy and those that will not, in which case compassionate care dictates that the disease should be allowed to run its natural course.

Gene expression analysis, of the type first described in Figure 13.20, has provided clinicians with an additional approach to stratify cancers—to classify them into subgroups having distinct biological properties and prognoses. RNAseq, a key analytical tool of the science of functional genomics, allows a researcher to survey the expression levels of a set of genes (often involving virtually all genes in the genome whose expression can be measured in a tissue preparation). Subsequent computerized analyses of these expression data using bioinformatics make it possible to identify patterns of gene expression characteristic of specific tumor types and subtypes. Additionally, these analyses can reveal small subsets of the genes whose expression (at characteristically high or low levels) correlates with a specific biological phenotype, drug responsiveness, or prognosis. For example, the expression of a cohort of several dozen genes by a tumor may suffice to serve, on its own, as a strong predictor of its degree of progression or its association with one or another specific subtype of cancer.

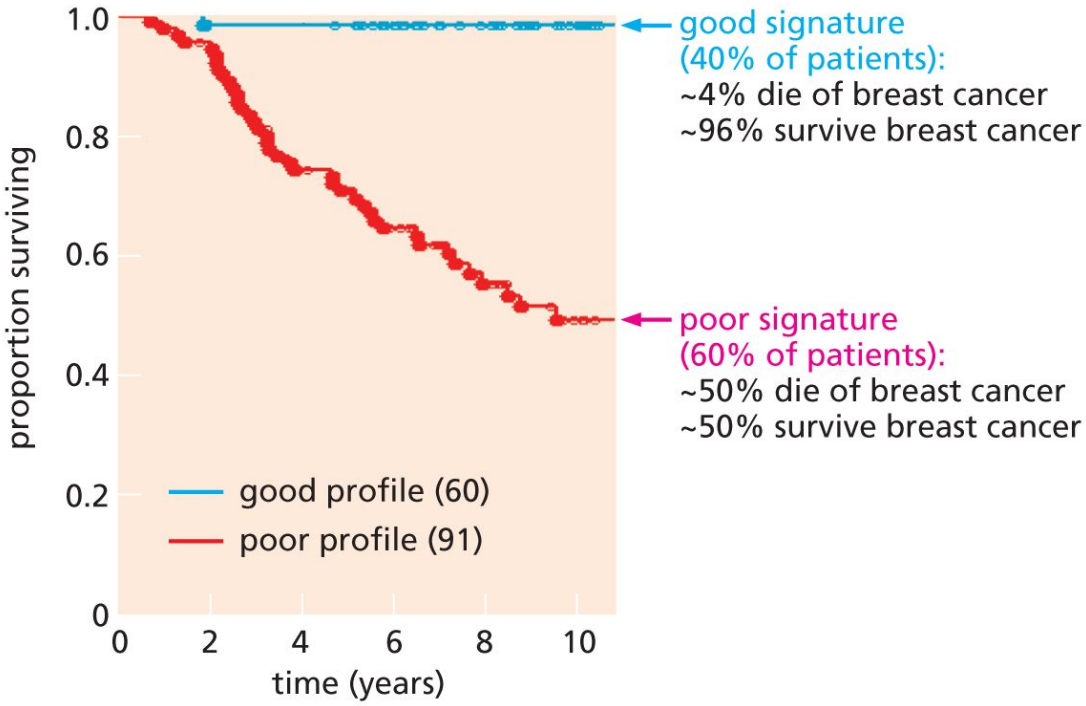
In the case of breast cancers, there has been a crying need to distinguish those primary tumors that are likely to become metastatic from those that will remain indolent and are therefore not likely to spread during the lifetime of the patient. Traditionally, the main prognostic parameters that have been used to predict the course of breast cancer development have been patient age, tumor size, number of involved axillary lymph nodes, histological type of the tumor, pathological grade, cell proliferation rate, and receptor status (that is, the expression of the estrogen, progesterone, and HER2 receptors). Because these factors, when used singly or in combination, do not yield prognoses with a high degree of accuracy, most patients diagnosed with primary invasive breast cancers in the United States have been treated aggressively, even though only ~19% of such patients will ever develop life-threatening disease.

The combined use of gene expression analysis and bioinformatics has made it possible to predict the clinical course of breast cancer progression with more than 90% accuracy (**Figure 17.4**). Such a high prognostic accuracy holds the promise of sparing many women exposure to unnecessary chemotherapy; in these women, gauged statistically, the risks incurred by the therapy may actually exceed the risk of life-threatening cancer development. And in the future, the details of gene expression analyses are likely to inform the oncologist about the treatment protocol that is most likely to yield a durable clinical response or even a cure (**Sidebar 17.2**).



An expression array shows how underexpression and overexpression of 70 genes is correlated to the occurrence of tumors. A threshold is set in the middle. A good signature means there were 14 metastases per 115 patients. A poor signature means there were 75 metastases per 180 patients. For some genes, an underexpression was the good signature, and overexpression was the poor signature. For others, it was the opposite.

(A)



A graph with time in years from 0 to 10 on the x axis, and proportion surviving on the y axis. 40 percent of patients had a good signature. Of these, by year 10, 4 percent die of breast cancer and 96 percent survive breast cancer. 60 percent of patients had a poor signature. Of these, by year 10, 50 percent die of breast cancer and 50 percent survive breast cancer.

(B)

Figure 17.4 Stratifying breast cancers using functional genomics (A) Expression arrays were used to analyze the gene expression of 295 primary breast cancers diagnosed in women under 53 years old. The group included patients with metastatic cells in the axillary lymph nodes draining the mammary glands as well as patients whose lymph nodes were free of cancer cells. Bioinformatics analyses of these tumors were then employed to choose a set of 70 “prognosis genes” whose expression could be used to stratify these breast cancer patients (arrayed along vertical axis), whose clinical course had been followed for a mean time of 7 years. The expression levels of these 70 genes (arrayed along horizontal axis, names not given) together with information about the patients’ clinical history was then used to set a threshold that separated tumors that had a “good expression signature” from tumors that had a “poor expression signature.” (B) This Kaplan–Meier plot reveals the stratification of a group of 151 breast cancer patients whose survival had been followed for 10 years following initial diagnosis. Using the criteria of panel A, they could be separated into two groups with dramatically different clinical courses. Taken together with other factors (such as the efficacy of

chemotherapy), calculations indicate that women whose tumors carry a good expression signature derive virtually no benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy. (From M.J. van de Vijver et al., *N. Engl. J. Med*. 347:1999–2009, 2002. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society.)

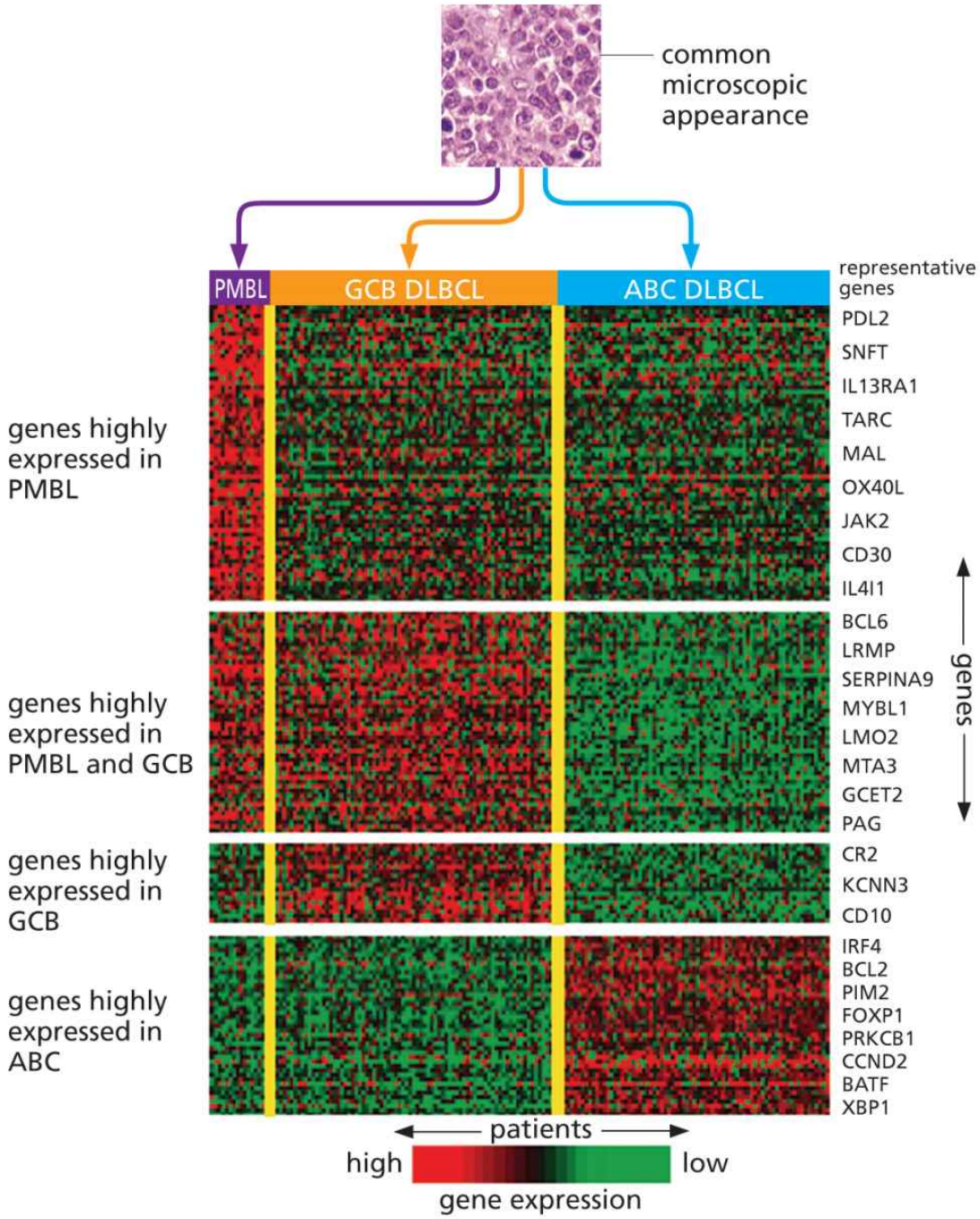
Sidebar 17.2 RNA expression and tumor origins

As we read earlier in Chapter 11, the somatic mutations and epigenetic alterations that tumors sustain en route to full-blown malignancy rarely eradicate the influence of the differentiation programs of their normal cells-of-origin (see Sidebar 11.2 and Figures 11.13 and 14.50). In most tumors, these programs are transmitted heritably from one cell generation to another, in spite of the profoundly disruptive effects of various mutations and heritable epigenetic alterations acquired during the course of tumor progression. These differentiation programs work hand in hand with the somatic mutations and epigenetic alterations to dictate cancer cell phenotype and thus responsiveness of a tumor to therapies.

These complex interactions between genetic and nongenetic determinants of cancer cell behavior cannot be discerned by sequencing tumor cell genomes, creating a need to systematically monitor the nongenetic determinants of cancer cell behavior. In principle, cell phenotype could be surveyed in a systematic and quantitative way through proteomic analyses that reveal the complex array of proteins expressed by cancer cells, the levels of these proteins, and their states of post-translational modification. At present this is challenging at the single cell level, indicating the need to use gene expression analyses as the practical alternative for surveying cancer cell phenotype. In the future, complex bioinformatic algorithms will need to be developed to integrate the results of gene expression analyses with those of tumor genome sequencing in order to produce a more complete picture of the molecular and biochemical state of diverse sets of cancer cells within a tumor that should prove even more useful than the results currently achieved by RNAseq and scRNAseq analyses alone.

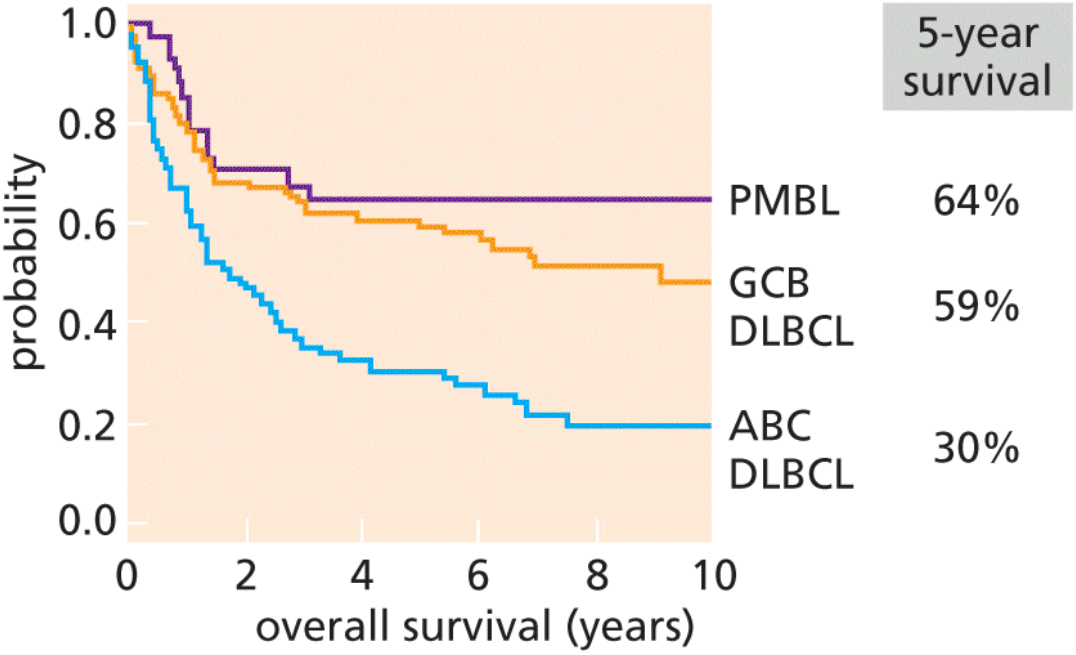
Analyses of this sort are only the beginning steps in a large-scale effort to examine a variety of human cancer types by means of gene expression. The resulting information should make it possible to stratify the cancer types into subtypes and, based on the resulting information, to devise therapies tailored to each specific subtype. As an illustrative example, diffuse large B-cell lymphomas (DLBCLs) have presented a quandary to the oncologist because their outcomes are so variable in the clinic, with some patients dying soon after diagnosis and many others being cured, or at least achieving 10-year remissions without any clinical symptoms. At the same time, all these tumors have a very similar appearance under the microscope (**Figure 17.5A**).

Through the use of gene expression analysis in combination with additional high-resolution approaches, we now know that this malignancy is actually composed of several distinct molecular disease subtypes, seemingly originating from cells that have passed through different stages of B-cell differentiation (Figure 17.5A). These subtypes, which include germinal-center B-cell-like (GCB) lymphomas, activated B-cell-like (ABC) lymphomas, and primary mediastinal B-cell lymphomas (PMBL; Figure 17.5B), show distinct clinical outcomes following standard chemotherapy.



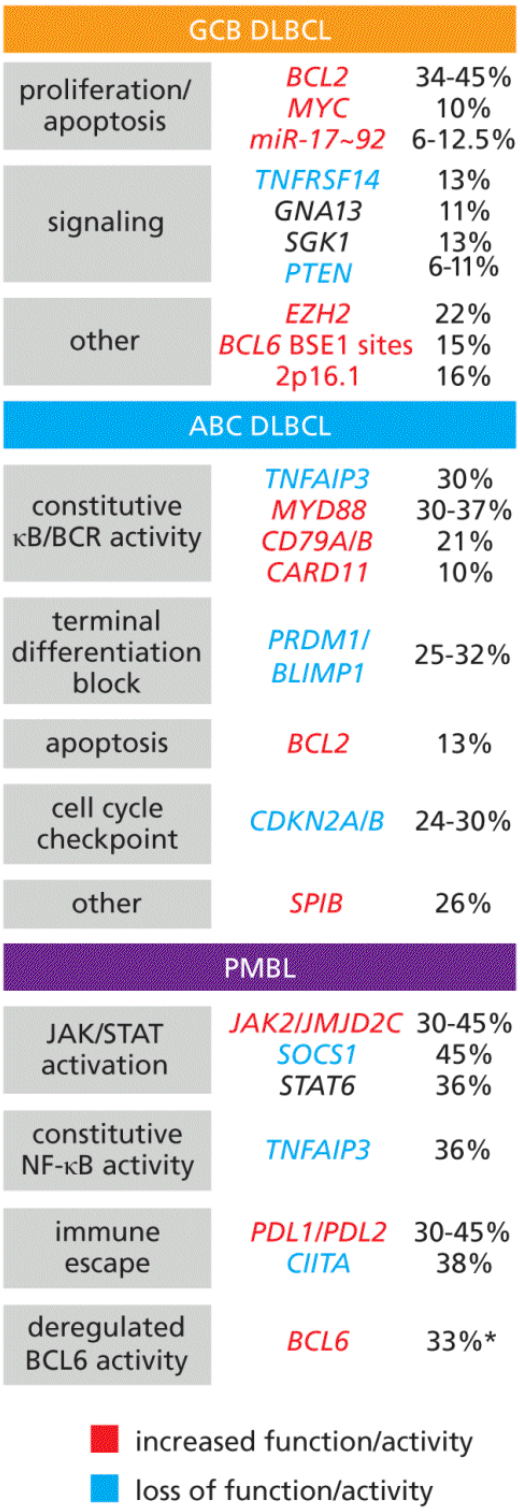
A microscopy image shows that cells from three subtypes of B cell neoplasia are all stained purple. A gene expression analysis below lists 28 different representative genes along with their gene expression levels. Some genes are only highly expressed in subtype P M B L. Some genes are highly expressed in subtypes P M B L and G C P. Some genes are only highly expressed in subtype G C B. Some genes are only highly expressed in subtype A B C.

(A)



A graph shows the 5 year survival and overall survival for three subtypes of B cell lymphomas. On the x axis is years and on the y axis is the survival probability. The 5 year survival of A B C D L B C L is 30 percent and the 10 year survival is 20 percent. The five year survival of G C B D L B C L is 59 percent and the 10 year survival is 50 percent. The five and ten year survival of P M B L is 64 percent.

(B)



A table shows characteristics of different tumor subtypes. In the G C B D L B C L subtype, there is enhanced expression of genes that cause proliferation, apoptosis, and other effects, and loss of genes that lead to signalling. In the A B C D L B C L subtype there is enhanced expression of genes that lead to

constitutive kappa B slash B C R activity, apoptosis, and other effects. There is loss of genes that lead to terminal differentiation block, cell cycle checkpoint, and constitutive kappa B slash B C R activity. In the P M B L subtype, there is enhanced expression of genes that lead to JAK slash STAT activation, immune escape, and deregulated B C L 6 activity. There is loss of genes that lead to JAK slash STAT activation, constitutive N F kappa B activity, and immune escape. The percentage present of these alterations ranges from 6 to 45 percent.
(C)

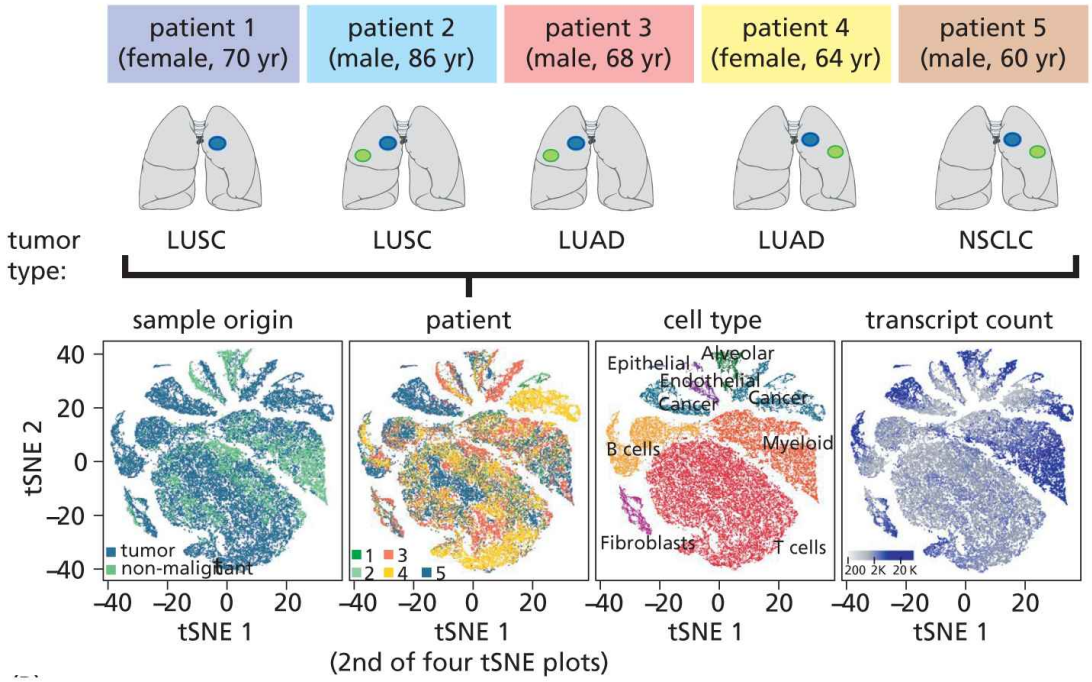
Figure 17.5 Stratification of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas (A) DLBCLs represent a group of several subtypes of B-cell neoplasia that are essentially indistinguishable in the microscope from one another and from the microscopic appearance of primary mediastinal B-cell lymphomas (*above*). However, use of gene expression analysis (*below*) allows these tumors to be stratified into three subtypes, termed primary mediastinal B-cell lymphomas (PMBLs), germinal-center B-cell (GCB) DLBCLs, and activated B-cell-like (ABC) DLBCLs. In this expression array, a set of genes whose expression levels have been found to be useful in making this stratification is plotted along the vertical axis, and a set of patient tumors (*unlabeled*) is plotted along the horizontal axis. (B) This Kaplan–Meier curve illustrates the greatly differing disease courses that patients with the three subtypes experience. (C) The tumors that are classified through the expression analyses shown in panel A exhibit distinct genetic alterations (shown as present in the indicated percentage of each tumor subtype), including mutations resulting in a loss of gene function (*blue*) and mutations and chromosome translocations resulting in enhanced gene activity or expression (*red*). (A, top, from M. Roschewski, L.M. Stuadt, and W.H. Wilson, *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. 11:12-13, 2014. With permission from Nature. Bottom, from L.M. Staudt and S. Dave, *Adv. Immunol*. 87:163–208, 2005. With permission from Elsevier. B, from A. Rosenwald et al., *J. Exp. Med*. 198:851–862, 2003. With permission from Rockefeller University Press. C, from L. Pasqualucci and R. Dalla-Favera, *Cancer Cell* 25:132, 2014. With permission from Elsevier.)

The combination of next-generation DNA sequencing with expression-based classification has further defined a molecular architecture of these lymphoma subtypes. Of these three subtypes, both the activated ABC lymphomas and the PMBLs exhibit genetic and epigenetic alterations that lead to high levels of NF-κB activity (see Figure 6.22A and 17.5C); this transcription factor (see Section 6.12) appears to be driving their proliferation and protecting them from apoptosis. In ABC lymphomas, NF-κB activity can by driven by constitutive B-cell receptor signaling or mutations, like those present in Myd88 or TNFAIP3, which promote or inhibit repression of NF-κB induction. In contrast, GCB tumors depend upon a distinct set of anti-apoptotic

signals, including the overexpression or constitutive activation of Bcl2 or Bcl6 (see Section 9.13), or mutations in epigenetic regulators, such as EZH2, that maintain the germinal center cell state, that is, the phenotypic state characteristic of cells in the lymphoid organs in which B cells mature.

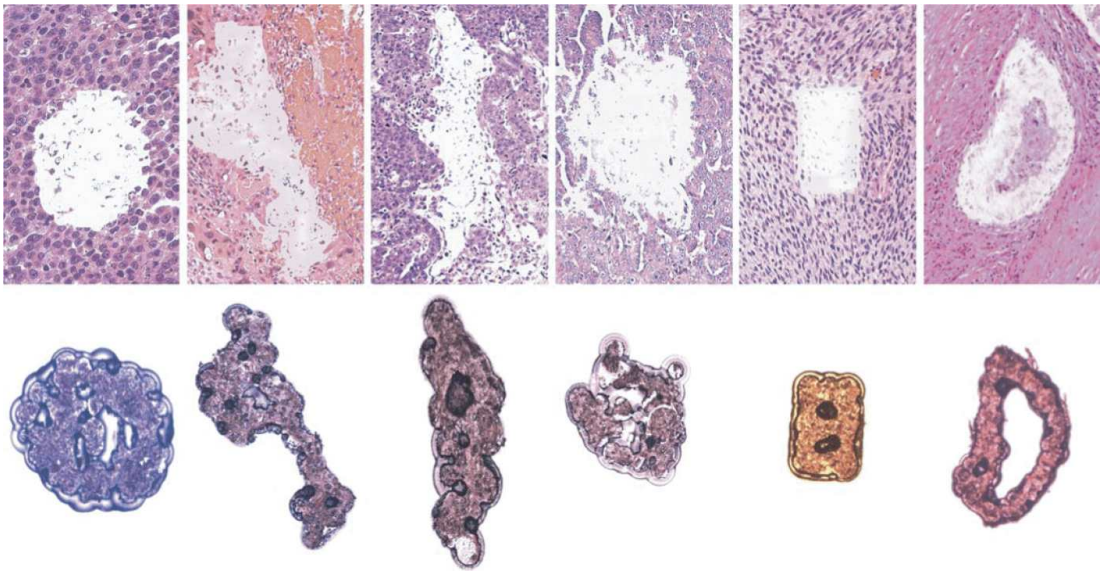
The identification of deregulated signaling and driver mutations in lymphoma subtypes has prompted clinical efforts to target these particular pathways in primary tumors and in those resistant to chemotherapy. To summarize, expression analysis of tumor-derived RNA can provide a molecular pathological characterization (rather than a microscope-based histopathological characterization) of a tumor that can then be combined with DNA sequencing analysis to identify molecular targets within these cancer cells that might be targeted by appropriate pharmacological agents. It remains to be seen whether the identification of these vulnerabilities of distinct lymphoma subtypes will result in new first-line treatments for most lymphoma patients.

Interpretation of the gene expression patterns of tumors of complex histology, such as carcinomas composed of epithelial, endothelial, immune, and other stromal cell types, is often confounded because the RNA transcripts being measured represent mixtures deriving from multiple cell types rather than the transcripts produced by the neoplastic cells in these tumors. This problem may be addressed by bioinformatic analyses that are able to deconvolute the contributions of the various distinct cell types in a tumor being analyzed. More precise assessments can be made through use of recent advances in RNA sequencing (**Figure 17.6A**). Specifically, the quantification of multiple transcripts produced by individual cells—both normal and neoplastic—can now be performed. This experimental procedure, termed single-cell RNA sequencing or scRNAseq, involves isolating single cells and generating amplified cDNA libraries representing the transcripts of each of these cells, which can then be sequenced using conventional DNA sequencing procedures (**Sidebar 17.3**).



A diagram shows five patients along with their lung tumor type. Patient 1 is a 70 year old female with an L U S C tumor. Patient 2 is an 86 year old male with an L U S C tumor. Patient 3 is a 68 year old male with an L U A D tumor. Patient 4 is a 64 year old female with an L U A D tumor. Patient 5 is a 60 year old male with an N S C L C tumor. Below these are four t S N S plots. One is of the sample origin, one is of the patient, one shows cell type, and one shows transcript count. They all are of the same lung section and have t S N E 1 on the x axis and t S N E 2 on the y axis.

(A)



Six histology images of tissue with tumors removed. A 3 D model of the tumor is shown below the histology image. The empty space in the tissue matches the shape of the tumor below.

(B)

Figure 17.6 scRNAseq and laser-capture microdissection of tumors High-resolution techniques are increasingly used to examine the cellular pathology of human cancer. (A) Lung tumors excised during surgery are disassociated into single cells and analyzed for mRNA content. The transcriptome of each cell can then be used to demarcate which cells are neoplastic cells vs. those deriving from adjacent nonmalignant tissue, which specific stromal cell types are present within individual tumors, and how the representations of tumor and stromal cell types vary within individual tumors and between patients. The individual cells with similar transcriptomes can be grouped together using a statistical algorithm that displays them in a two-dimensional tSNE plot, examples of which are presented here. The combined expression data provides a new kind of tumor pathological analysis that extends beyond that afforded by more established cell staining and immunohistochemical approaches. (B) Laser-capture microdissection (LCM) of tumor sections allows for the precise isolation of small sets of tumor cells within a topologically defined area of a tumor. Here each removed patch of tumor cells (*right*) is aligned with the remainder of the tumor section that is left behind following this removal (*left*). This approach can be combined with scRNAseq to determine the gene expression states and the level of heterogeneity that exists between cells in distinct areas of the same tumor. (A, from D. Lambrechts et al., *Nat. Med.* 24:1277–1289, 2018. With permission from Nature. B, Reprinted with permission of Springer Nature: Humana Press, Testicular Germ Cell Tumors,

Methods and Protocols by Aditya Bagrodia and James F. Amatruda. 2021; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.)

Sidebar 17.3 Examining gene expression in tumors at the single-cell level

scRNAseq technology now enables a deep exploration of the range of distinct cell types within a given tumor. For example, the mRNA species produced by individual stromal cells, as revealed by scRNAseq, can be used to determine the inflammatory or immune characteristics of the tumor-associated stroma. It can also be used to identify characteristics of infiltrating stromal cells that may modulate tumor behavior or therapeutic response. Moreover, this technology has been used to characterize intra-tumoral heterogeneity among neoplastic cells themselves, that is, the phenotypically diverse subpopulations of neoplastic cells that arise in advanced tumors (see Section 11.6). Among other benefits, scRNAseq can identify subsets of cancer cells that are refractory to treatment and would not be recognizable by bulk RNA expression analysis (that is, sequencing the transcripts produced by unfractionated mixtures of cells; see Figure 17.6A).

An extension of scRNAseq that will be employed increasingly in the future is its combination with the technique of laser-capture microdissection (LCM; see Figure 17.6B) in order to characterize the transcriptomes of physically isolated cells or groups of cells prepared from microscopic sections. Such combination analyses will reveal the precise intra-tumoral location and the RNA expression states of a diverse set of normal and tumor cells. In the future, such analyses will provide a high-resolution diagram of the functional interactions between the spatially associated cell types within a tumor. This information will help, in turn, to define mechanisms by which the tumor microenvironment promotes phenotypic heterogeneity among tumor cells or supports processes like tumor cell metastasis, immune protection, or therapeutic resistance.

In addition to these various analyses of cell transcripts, technical advancements in DNA sequencing have enabled genome-scale analyses to be performed at an increasingly accessible cost. Thus, next-generation DNA sequencing has become an increasingly common cancer diagnostic tool. Targeted mutational analysis seeks to identify common cancer alterations in specific malignancies (that is, known recurring mutations) that may inform patient prognosis or the use of a drug that targets a specific mutation. Conversely, whole genome or whole exome sequencing seeks to identify rare or previously uncharacterized mutations in the genome of a tumor that may reveal an unexpected vulnerability of this tumor to an existing targeted therapeutic. Whether such an approach will identify targetable alterations for many cancer patients or have a transformative impact in cancer care remains to be seen. For cancer patients whose tumors carry mutations that are targetable by an available therapy, whole-genome

sequencing clearly leads to better treatment, outcome, and survival. However, at this point, the number of cancer-causing mutations identified by DNA sequencing vastly exceeds the number of available treatments that specifically target tumors bearing these mutations.

Beyond these gene expression and genomics analyses stands a generation of novel diagnostic tools involving the science of proteomics, in which the spectrum of proteins expressed in a patient's tumor or serum will provide critical diagnostic information. The long-term goal of all these analytic techniques—both functional genomics and proteomics—is to assign each patient's tumor to a specific subtype of disease; such assignment may make it possible to apply drug therapies that are proven to be effective for treating a particular subtype of cancer but not other superficially similar tumors. Such tailor-made drug therapies hold the promise of yielding high response rates in narrowly defined patient populations.

To conclude, and on a more sober note, these various powerful tools of tumor stratification or subclassification may yield an "embarrassment of riches," that is, a vast number of distinct subtypes of human tumors whose diversity and distinctive properties greatly exceed our ability, in the near and distant future, to effectively develop treatments for most of these subtypes. After all, appropriate tailor-made therapies are usually validated in large and expensive clinical trials, as described later in Section 17.11. Moreover, as tumor types are sliced into increasingly thin sections, the number of patients affected by each subtype of tumor will grow correspondingly small, complicating attempts at recruiting enough patients to conduct clinical trials yielding statistically significant readouts. Thus, how will we possibly design and carry out clinical trials of diverse agents on diverse cancer subtypes? The answers to these quandaries are not yet in hand.

OceanofPDF.com

17.2 Surgery, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy are the major pillars on which current cancer therapies rest

An exclusive focus in this chapter on the newer, rationally designed agents would not be warranted because of one simple fact: the older treatments—surgery, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy—have been shown over many decades to be highly effective in extending the survival of cancer patients and even eradicating certain types of tumors with curative outcomes, whereas the newer, “rational” agents—whose design and implementation have been informed by the research described in this book—can rarely boast such successes. So, we begin this chapter with these older agents and describe their successes and failures.

The multi-step nature of cancer development, specifically the notion that primary tumors spawn metastases, has been a central concept in anti-cancer therapy since the end of the nineteenth century. Radiotherapy developed only slowly during the course of the twentieth century, and chemotherapy was initiated only after World War II. Through much of the century, then, surgery was the only form of therapy that offered any hope of reversing the disease, perhaps even achieving cures.

The discipline of surgical oncology embraced two notions as fundamental truths: small tumors will inevitably develop into large tumors and the resection of primary tumors represents an effective means of reducing the risk of metastatic relapse—the resurgence of disease long after the primary tumor has been removed. For example, resection of early-stage colorectal carcinomas yields 95% patient survival after five years—essentially a curative outcome—even without adjuvant (post-surgical) chemotherapy.

In fact, the accepted truths governing surgical practice were rarely subjected to critical tests until the last decades of the twentieth century, when the specialty of *outcomes research*, often referred to as evidence-based medicine, arose. The evidence in these cases came from clinical trials in which two or more alternative surgical strategies were compared with one another in randomized patient populations. These randomized trials revealed that some surgical procedures produced highly effective clinical outcomes, whereas others were of dubious utility, as described in **Supplementary Sidebar 17.2**.

Radiation oncology began soon after Wilhelm Röntgen's 1895 discovery of X-rays and the frequent observations soon thereafter that exposure to this form of electromagnetic radiation resulted in burn damage to normal tissues, including even tissue necrosis. The widespread use of radiotherapy in the oncology clinic awaited the development, after World War II, of the technical means of directing these rays in relatively narrow beams of radiation that were focused on diagnosed, clearly delineated tumors, almost invariably primary tumors. Focused adjuvant radiotherapy has become an essential clinical tool in reducing post-surgical relapse in the surgical field (that is, the tissues adjacent to or surrounding resected primary tumors). Indeed, nearly half of all cancer patients will receive radiation or radioactivity as a component of their therapy. A dramatic example of the utility of radiotherapy comes from post-lumpectomy (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.2**) follow-up of older women with early-stage breast cancer: adjuvant (post-surgical) radiation reduces by 50% the rate of subsequent mastectomy (resection of the entire breast rather than just the area immediately around the tumor) during the decade following initial surgery.

The use of radionuclides—radioactive isotopes administered intravenously as components of a pharmaceutical drug or coupled to monoclonal antibodies—underlies systemic radiotherapy and is often used when all or parts of a tumor cannot be readily resected or when disseminated cancer cells need to be eradicated. Brachytherapy, involving the implantation of radioactive sources carried in small capsules into an organ site or tumor, is also used in a variety of cancers. Because brachytherapy does not generally reach uninvolved normal tissue, its use allows for the delivery of higher localized doses than those that are achievable by radiation with external beam therapy.

Chemotherapy has more recent origins: an often-related anecdote describes how the 1943 bombing of an American warship in the harbor of Bari, Italy, led to release of a large cloud of mustard gas of the sort used in World War I chemical warfare. Almost a thousand people died, sooner or later, from the effects of this explosion and the released cloud of gas. The clinical deterioration of some survivors of this catastrophe reawakened interest in the 1919 discovery that exposure to mustard gas leads to depletion of bone marrow cells and thus anemia. In fact, research begun independently at Yale University in 1942, a year before the Bari disaster, had revealed that intravenous doses of mustard gas—named after its characteristic odor—led to temporary regression of a lymphoma. We have encountered chemicals of this class in the form of alkylating agents (see Section 12.5) that are used, among other applications, to treat glioblastomas (see Table 17.1).

[Recall that in addition to their cytotoxicity, these alkylating agents are highly mutagenic, leaving the genomes of exposed cells with hundreds if not thousands of point mutations (see Figure 12.7B); this outcome reveals another side of a number of anti-cancer treatments: in addition to their effects in reducing or eliminating tumors, X-rays and certain cytotoxic agents are also carcinogenic, and their short-term successes in producing clinical remissions may be counterbalanced by the appearance years later of independently arising, second-site tumors that are direct consequences of their mutagenic actions.]

The transient clinical response of a lymphoma observed at Yale was followed by rapidly expanding interest in similar agents in the years that followed. The emphasis here was on cytotoxic agents that, for unknown reasons, killed neoplastic cells preferentially by sparing normal tissues, or at least by inflicting tolerable side effects on the patient. Almost always, discovery of the biochemical and cell-biological mechanisms of these drugs came decades after their introduction into the clinic, and in many cases, as discussed below, we still do not understand the precise mechanisms-of-action of a number of highly effective cytotoxic drugs.

By 1947, the utility of another class of cytotoxics was discovered, initially in the form of an agent for treating pediatric leukemias and lymphomas. In this case, the compound in question—aminopterin—acted as an antagonist of folate metabolism, inhibiting the formation of tetrahydrofolate and

thereby blocking some of the critical biosynthetic reactions that are required for the assembly of nucleotides and thus the synthesis of DNA and RNA. A young boy treated that year for lymphoma survived and lived another half century, representing the first documented cure of this disease.

Compounds like aminopterin are often termed antimetabolites because they interfere with the normal functioning of specific metabolites or the enzymes that produce them in the cell. Most of these agents closely resemble and are therefore chemical analogs of normal metabolites. For example, a number of highly effective antimetabolites are purine or pyrimidine analogs that operate either by preventing normal biosynthesis or by becoming incorporated into DNA, whose function they then inhibit (**Table 17.2**; **Figure 17.7**).

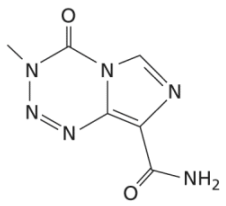
Table 17.2 Examples of antimetabolites used to treat cancer

Name	**Chemical structure**	**Targeted reaction**	**Examples of clinical use**
methotrexate	folate analog	formation of tetrahydrofolate	breast cancer, lymphomas
6-mercaptopurine	purine analog	purine biosynthesis	leukemia, NHL
doxorubicin	natural product[a]	intercalating agent, inhibits topoisomerase	wide range
thioguanine	guanine analog	purine biosynthesis	acute granulocytic leukemia

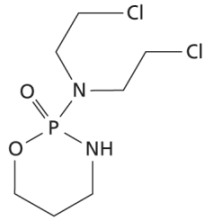
Name	Chemical structure	Targeted reaction	Examples of clinical use
fludarabine	purine analog	ribonucleotide reductase, DNA replication	chronic lymphocytic leukemia, NHL
cladribine	adenosine analog	adenosine deaminase	hairy-cell leukemia
bortezomib	peptide analog	proteasomal degradation	multiple myeloma
paclitaxel	natural product[a]	microtubule destabilization	lung, ovarian, breast cancer
etoposide	natural product[a]	DNA unwinding	lung cancer, sarcomas, glioblastoma
mitoxantrone	topoisomerase inhibitor	DNA unwinding	AML, breast cancer, NHL
irinotecan	topoisomerase inhibitor	DNA unwinding	colorectal carcinoma
vinblastine	natural product[a]	microtubule assembly	Hodgkin’s lymphoma

Name	Chemical structure	Targeted reaction	Examples of clinical use
vorinostat	hydroxamic acid	histone deacetylation	cutaneous T-cell lymphoma
azacitidine	pyrimidine analog	DNA methylation	myelodysplastic syndrome

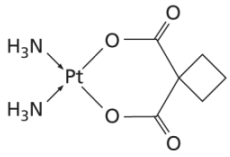
Abbreviations: NHL, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma; AML, acute myelogenous leukemia.



temozolomide



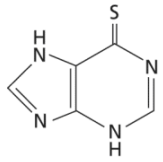
cyclophosphamide



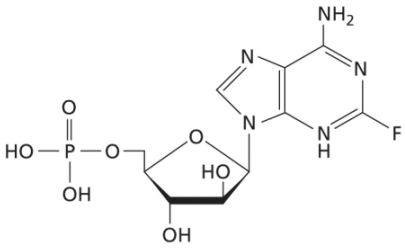
carboplatin

alkylating

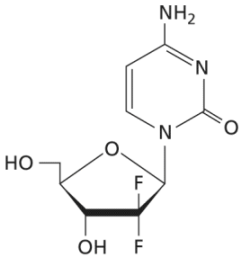
alkylating-like



6-mercaptopurine

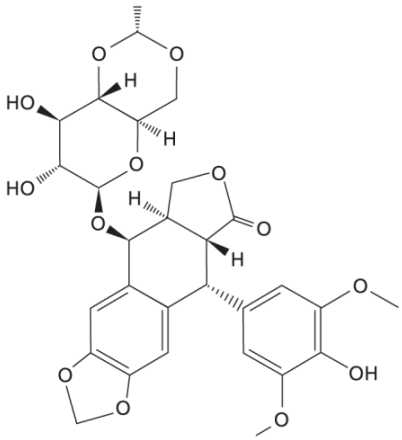


fludarabine

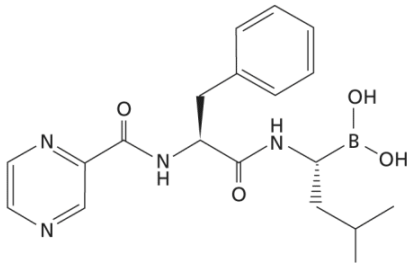


gemcitabine

nucleoside analog

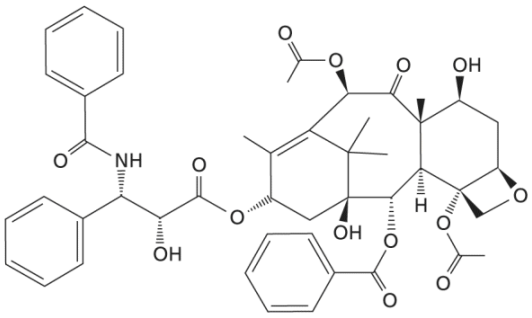


etoposide

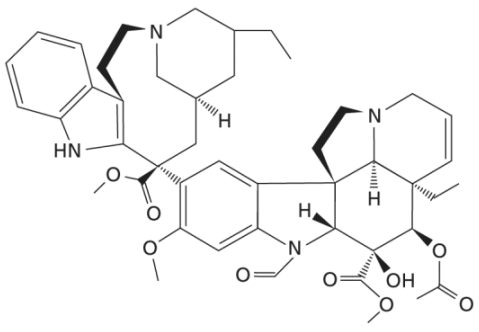


bortezomib

complex synthetic



paclitaxel



vincristine

natural products

The molecular structures of ten different cytotoxic drugs. All contain ring structures and are relatively complex molecules. Temozolomide and cyclophosphamide are alkylating. Carboplatin is alkylating like. 6 mercaptopurine, fludarabine, and gemcitabine are nucleoside analogs. Etoposide and bortezomib are complex synthetic drugs. Paclitaxel and vincristine are natural products and have the most complex structures.

Figure 17.7 Cytotoxic drugs in current use The development of most cytotoxic drugs did not depend on detailed insights into the genetic and molecular mechanisms of tumor pathogenesis, but instead derived from investigations of the cytotoxic effects of a diverse array of organic molecules; most were products of synthetic organic chemistry, although a minority were natural products. These agents work in a number of distinct ways to kill cancer cells, although in many cases the precise mechanisms of cytotoxicity are not well understood. Temozolomide and cyclophosphamide alkylate DNA and generate lesions that are difficult to repair; carboplatin acts in a similar fashion but makes intra-strand cross-links within DNA. 6-Mercaptopurine interferes with nucleoside biosynthesis, whereas the cytotoxic actions of both fludarabine and gemcitabine seem to depend largely on the analogs of these nucleosides becoming incorporated into cell DNA, yielding nucleotides that are difficult to replicate or repair. Etoposide is a topoisomerase inhibitor; bortezomib disrupts proteasome function, whereas paclitaxel and vincristine function to stabilize and destabilize microtubules, respectively.

Another class of antimetabolites affects normal cell function by interfering with microtubule assembly, either inhibiting or fostering it. This class of drugs was one of the first useful categories of anti-cancer agents that were discovered through screens of libraries of natural products, that is, collected biochemical species produced by various plants, molds, and even animal species. Paclitaxel, initially named taxol, was discovered as the product of the Pacific yew tree, *Taxus brevifolia*. Its ability to block the breakdown of microtubules at the end of mitosis (see Figure 8.3) leads to potent therapeutic effects on a variety of commonly occurring tumors, including

those of lung, ovary, and breast, as well as head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas.

Acting in the opposite direction are microtubule-depolymerizing agents that prevent assembly of microtubules, often by barring their interaction with the microtubule organizing centers (see Figure 12.38). One such agent is colcemide, which is often used experimentally to trap cells in the metaphase of mitosis, making karyotyping possible (see Figure 1.9). More useful clinically are vinblastine and vincristine, both derived from *Vinca rosea*, a periwinkle plant growing in Madagascar. The discovery in Canada in 1958 of this class of agents led to their frequent use in lymphomas, non-small-cell lung cancers, and breast cancers, as well as head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas.

In 1965, yet another class of agents was uncovered that, like alkylating agents, induced covalent modifications of DNA, creating adducts that were not readily removed by cells' repair machinery. Cisplatin [*cis*-$PtCl_2(NH_3)_2$] was discovered serendipitously as an antibacterial agent that formed at platinum electrodes and subsequently showed potent anti-cancer activity. Like bifunctional alkylating agents, it generates covalent cross-links within DNA; certain alkylating agents form inter-strand cross-links, whereas cisplatin forms largely intra-strand cross-links, usually between two adjacent guanines. Prior to the advent of cisplatin and the related drug carboplatin, the cure rate for testicular cancer was in the range of 10%; these days, however, use of cisplatin and related agents leads to curing 90 to 95% of those suffering from this tumor.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

adjuvant
: (1) A treatment that is given in concert with or following another treatment. (2) A substance that is given together with an antigen to enhance the immune response. *See also* **neoadjuvant**.

lumpectomy
: Surgical procedure in which a tumor is removed together with immediately surrounding normal tissue while leaving the bulk of the affected organ intact; usually used in the context of breast cancer surgery.

external beam therapy
: Form of radiotherapy, in which the radiation source is usually a linear accelerator used as the source of radiation that is usually directed in a highly focused fashion to a region of tissue that is being treated.

antimetabolite
: Compound, typically used as an anti-tumor cytotoxic drug, that acts through its ability to interfere with the synthesis or function of a normal cellular metabolite.

natural product
: A chemical species that is a product of the natural metabolism of an organism, such as a bacterium, fungus, or plant.

head-and-neck cancers
: A group of carcinomas of the larynx, throat, mouth, nose, and salivary glands.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aComplex structure.Return to reference a
- aComplex structure.Return to reference a
- aComplex structure.Return to reference a
- aComplex structure.Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

17.3 The present and future use of chemotherapy requires improved understanding of how anti-cancer drugs work

The discovery of these various cytotoxic drugs led repeatedly to confrontations with three major questions. First, how do they kill cancer cells? Second, why are certain types of cancer cells killed more readily than normal cells? And third, how do cancer cells and the tumors that they form develop resistance to agents that initially were effective in treating these tumors? These questions have been introduced into current studies of the more recent, molecularly designed agents that are the primary focus of this chapter.

In fact, for many of the cytotoxic drugs that have been in use for more than 70 years, answers to these questions remain elusive. Several mechanistic explanations of selectivity have been proposed (**Table 17.3**). The simplest—that cytotoxic drugs kill proliferating cells selectively—is hard to reconcile with the fact that the populations of cancer cells within most tumors actually have a very low proliferative index, that is, the proportion of cells residing in the active cell cycle.

Table 17.3 Known or suspected mechanisms of anti-tumor selectivity[a]

Name	Mechanism conferring selectivity
cyclophosphamide	detoxified by ALDH in normal bone marrow
cladribine	detoxified by non-hematopoietic cell types

Name	Mechanism conferring selectivity
taxol/paclitaxel	high proliferation index,[b] other mechanisms unknown
multiple cytotoxic drugs	high proliferation index,[b] high sensitivity to apoptotic stimuli
cisplatin	intact p53 function in testicular germ-cell tumors[c]
DNA-damaging agents	inability to halt cell cycle advance in response to DNA damage[d]
PARP inhibitors	defective homology-directed repair
DNA-damaging agents	various types of defective DNA repair

Abbreviations: ALDH, aldehyde dehydrogenase; PARP, poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase.

An alternative explanation is that specific chemotherapies target emergent tumor cell dependencies, that is, vulnerabilities that result directly from the specific lesions acquired by these cells en route to the malignant growth state. For example, tumor cells that develop from mutations in DNA repair pathways show enhanced sensitivity to unrepaired DNA damage incurred as a result of genotoxic chemotherapy. This emergent tumor cell vulnerability underlies the sensitivity of ovarian cancers bearing defects in the homologous recombination (HR) machinery to agents like cisplatin that induce DNA

cross-links usually resolved by HR-mediated DNA repair (see Section 12.9). Thus, existing genotoxic chemotherapies that are generally depicted as "non-targeted" (because they are not designed to attack a specific molecular target within a cell) may, in fact, target specific tumor cell dependencies. However, to this day, experts who are queried about (1) the mechanisms-of-action of many widely used agents, (2) why they selectively kill cancer cells, and (3) how tumors develop drug resistance readily admit to the minimal progress made in solving these fundamental questions.

Early on, medical oncologists (that is, oncologists who treat cancer with various drugs) recognized that drug resistance developed sooner or later for almost all the drugs and the cancer types under treatment, being manifested as the outgrowth of drug-resistant variant cell populations. This drug resistance was soon understood by applying the lessons learned from bacterial genetics, in which resistance to various types of antibiotic treatment was known to occur via the selective outgrowth of mutant variants, some of which may have already existed in bacterial populations prior to being challenged by drugs. Given the large numbers of cells in clinically detectable human tumors—almost 1 billion in a growth of 1 cm diameter—and the frequency of resistant mutants—perhaps one in a million—the emergence of drug-resistant variants seemed almost inevitable.

The response to this was the development of multi-drug protocols, often using combinations of drugs with distinct and complementary modes of cell killing, such as an antimetabolite, an alkylating agent, and a microtubule antagonist. In theory, the likelihood that variants preexisted in tumor cell populations that were simultaneously resistant to all three agents appeared to be astronomically low—the product of three probabilities, in this case one in 10^{18}. Indeed, the introduction of combination drug regimens resulted in dramatic and unprecedented clinical responses in certain tumors, even cures. For example, the ABVD regimen, which was developed in Italy in the mid-1970s and is still used to treat advanced Hodgkin's lymphomas (HLs), involves the administration of *a*driamycin (doxorubicin), a DNA-intercalating drug; *b*leomycin, a DNA-cleaving agent; *v*inblastine, a microtubule antagonist; and *d*acarbazine, an alkylating agent (**Table 17.4**). Depending on the stage at which the tumor is initially diagnosed, 5-year progression-free survival (PFS) of treated patients ranges from 85 to 98%, with many of these patients essentially cured of the disease. Another multi-drug protocol elicits

an almost 90% cure rate in childhood (younger than 15 years of age at diagnosis) acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL).

Table 17.4 Examples of multi-drug treatment protocols

Acronym	Components	Mechanisms of action	Application
ABVD	doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine	intercalation, DNA strand breaks, microtubule inhibition	Hodgkin's lymphoma
CHOP	cyclophosphamide, hydroxydaunorubicin, vincristine, prednisone	alkylating, DNA intercalation, microtubule inhibition, steroid antagonist	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
FOLFOX	fluorouracil, leucovorin, oxiplatin	pyrimidine analog, folic acid antagonist, DNA cross-linking	colorectal cancer
TIP	paclitaxel, ifosfamide, platinum agent cisplatin	microtubule antagonist, alkylating, DNA cross-linking	testicular cancer

In spite of these occasional striking successes, no fixed rules emerged to help in the rational design of multi-drug therapy, aside from the intuitive notion that drugs with distinct mechanisms of cytotoxicity are likely to function in complementary and thus synergistic ways. Indeed, it is unlikely that cancer cell populations will readily spawn variants that can simultaneously resist the cytotoxic effects of multiple agents that act through multiple unrelated mechanisms. During the course of early clinical trials, the initial implementation of these combination regimens has been guided more by issues of toxicity rather than by drug mechanisms-of-action. Individual chemotherapies elicit a diverse set of so-called “side effects,” including uncontrollable diarrhea; peripheral neuropathy; kidney, liver, and cardiac toxicity; and bone marrow suppression (**Sidebar 17.4**). Although combinations of agents that induce similar side effects lead to potentially lethal levels of organ-specific toxicity that limit overall drug dose and efficacy, combining agents with distinct toxicities allows for the administration of higher total drug concentrations. However, this strategy of concomitant application of three or four agents also often leads to unacceptable levels of systemic toxicity.

Sidebar 17.4 Do combination chemotherapies represent a double-edged sword?

Many decades after these multi-drug therapies were first contrived, we still do not understand why and how they work. Some recent studies even suggest that the use of multi-drug regimens may serve to treat heterogeneity within populations of patients instead of heterogeneity within individual tumors. Specifically, these observations indicate that distinct components of these multi-drug regimens are effective in specific patient subpopulations and that the observed utility of combination regimens derives from their ability to provide a uniform therapy to a diverse set of tumors. If this were the case, it would suggest that these regimens are inherently “de-personalized,” that is, being applied to a heterogeneous group of patients rather than being designed specifically for an individual patient under treatment.

The potential dangers of “de-personalized” medicine are twofold. First, patients are exposed to the certain toxicity of all administered drugs, although realizing the benefit of only a subset of them. The side effects of such

regimens include acute toxicity and the aforementioned increased cancer risk, but they can also include long-term impacts on development and health that are only manifest years after treatment (**Figure 17.8**). Second, standard, de-personalized treatments are administered to patients regardless of the presence of any specific tumor biomarkers and resulting association of successful treatments with specific subsets of tumors. This patient-agnostic approach to cancer treatment, when such treatments are the standard of care for a malignancy, can impede the development of improved therapies tailored to the particular clinical needs of specific subsets of these patients. As a consequence, largely effective but toxic combination therapies can become entrenched in clinical practice as obligatory front-line therapies, discouraging attempts to identify subsets of patients who might respond better to alternative treatments. Thus, the drug regimens that historically represented the first major advances in cancer treatment now may represent major barriers to improving cancer treatment and long-term patient health.

A photo of two women with blonde hair standing with their arms over each others shoulders.

Figure 17.8 The great success and long-term consequences of high dose therapy The photograph shows identical 26-year-old twins. The twin on the right was treated for childhood B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia at 4 years of age. She received high-dose combination chemotherapy in addition to cranial radiation. Although this treatment is frequently curative, as it was in this case, 25 years following combination therapy, 27.5% of adult survivors of childhood treatment suffer from at least one severe, life-threatening, or disabling condition (in comparison with 5.2% of siblings of a comparable age). (Adult Primary Care after

Childhood Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia, *The New England Journal of Medicine*, Oct. 13, 2011; 365:1417-1424, DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp1103645.)

An understanding of the specific mechanism-of-actions of chemotherapeutic drugs has perhaps become even more relevant as these drugs are given as adjuvant treatments administered together with novel immunotherapies. A well-established example of this is the use of the anti-CD20 antibody Rituximab in combination with multi-drug regimens in the treatment of B-cell leukemia. More recently, cyclophosphamide (see Table 17.1) is given to patients with treatment-refractory B-cell malignancies prior to CAR-T therapy (see Chapter 16). As the use of immunotherapy regimens expands, it will become increasingly important to understand the mechanisms by which our current arsenal of chemotherapeutic agents modulate both tumor cell immunogenicity and the immunocyte responses to immune-targeting agents.

In contrast to these hematopoietic malignancies, the response rates of most solid tumors to multi-drug chemotherapy regimens are usually limited by intrinsic (that is, preexisting) tumor resistance to therapy (**Table 17.5**). Nonetheless, these agents can be effectively employed as neoadjuvant treatments, that is, treatments that are applied *prior* to surgery to debulk a solid tumor or to shrink its borders to a size or configuration that render surgical excision more effective (see Figure 17.2). Chemotherapy is also applied as adjuvant therapy following surgery in order to eliminate residual, non-excised tumor cells. The benefits of both neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy are clearly established when comparing the survival of patients treated in combination with surgery. However, cytotoxic chemotherapies, when applied on their own, are rarely successful in the treatment of solid tumors.

Table 17.5 Mechanisms of acquired resistance to anti-cancer therapies[a]

Nature of resistance	**Mechanism of resistance**
Multi-drug resistance[b]	increased expression of drug export pumps
Pan-drug resistance[c]	unknown
Drug detoxification[d]	enzymatic detoxification of drug molecule
Acquired drug resistance	refuge of cancer cells in drug-protected anatomical sites[e] failure of tissue to convert pro-drug into active form refuge of cancer cells in an anatomical site that provides protective trophic signals[f] massive stromalization[g] emergence of mutant, structurally altered cellular target[h] amplification of gene encoding targeted protein emergence of cells bearing alterations in genes whose products are functionally redundant with drug target [i]

Nature of resistance	Mechanism of resistance
	loss of drug importer [j] passage through an EMT [k] activation of anti-apoptotic regulators
Physiological activation of compensatory adaptive mechanisms	
Resistance to EGF-R inhibition	up-regulation of IGF-1R signaling amplification of *Met* gene mutational activation of a *ras* pathway gene cell state changes, including conversion from non-small-cell to small-cell lung cancer
Resistance to Bcr-Abl inhibition	amplification of *Bcr-Abl* gene drug target site mutations in *Abl* blast cell transition

Chemo-refractory tumor cell populations invariably arise in patients at rates far higher than would be predicted from the measured frequencies of variant cells that are intrinsically resistant to specific drugs. Precisely why they do so is often a puzzle. One explanation derives from the commonly observed trait of multi-drug resistance displayed by many types of cancer cells and achieved by the actions of single cancer cell-associated genes and encoded

proteins; the latter often function as plasma-membrane export pumps that actively extrude multiple molecular species and thus multiple distinct types of drug molecules from cells under treatment. We can also imagine that cancer cell alterations that weaken or cripple the pro-apoptotic machinery (for example, p53 inactivation, see Section 9.9) can likewise confer concomitant resistance to multiple cytotoxic drugs.

The need to test drugs and administer them with maximum therapeutic effect led in the mid-twentieth century to the emergence of an entirely new discipline focused on the pharmacology of anti-cancer therapeutics. Thus, pre-clinical drug testing directed toward studying the effects of candidate drugs on both cultured tumor cells and tumor xenografts growing in laboratory mice became the prelude to a sequence of clinical tests on human subjects designed to gauge the toxicity and tolerability of drugs, their utility in treating specific subtypes of neoplastic diseases, and ultimately, their efficacy.

Study of the pharmacokinetics (PK) of drugs revealed it as a critical determinant of therapeutic efficacy, being governed by the rates at which an administered drug is (1) absorbed into the circulation, as gauged by its concentrations in the plasma; (2) distributed in different physiological compartments throughout the body; (3) metabolized in ways that either potentiate or inactivate its intended function; and (4) excreted.

Still, these complex PK responses cannot predict the kinetics with which cells or molecular targets actually *respond* to administered drugs—the study of pharmacodynamics (PD). Thus, independent of the rates of drug accumulation in a tissue or within cells, are the cellular processes that govern the kinetics of cellular responses to treatment including the kinetics of changes in specific biochemical processes. For example, if the cytotoxic effects of taxol depend on its ability to stabilize microtubules within cancer cells, how quickly can actual microtubule growth in these cells be observed following initial drug administration and how rapidly do cytostatic and cytotoxic effects on cancer cells follow? Notably, the biological effects of agents like taxol depend on drug dose, so the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of anti-cancer agents are closely interrelated.

In principle, the properties of the mechanism-based drugs that are described in the following sections should provide ready answers to the three questions posed earlier, that is, (1) How does each drug kill cancer cells? (2) Why are its actions selective for neoplastic tissues? And (3) how do tumors develop drug resistance after an initial period of responsiveness? In reality, in spite of the extraordinary level of detail known about these rationally designed agents, our ability to answer these questions is often limited.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

selectivity
: Relative ability of a therapy to affect targeted cells or tissue compared with its (side) effects on non-targeted normal cells or tissue. *See also* **therapeutic index**.

peripheral neuropathy
: Damage to peripheral nerves, usually in the limbs, that affects muscle coordination or sensation and may even create sensed pain.

neoadjuvant
: Referring to a treatment that is undertaken before the main therapy is applied, e.g., to reduce tumor size before surgery. *See also* **adjuvant**.

chemo-refractory
: Resistant or unresponsive to treatment by chemotherapy.

multi-drug resistance
: Development by cancer cells under treatment of concomitant resistance to multiple chemically distinct species of therapeutic drugs.

pharmacokinetics
: Results of measurements gauging the rise and fall in the concentration of an administered drug in the body, usually measured in the plasma and gauged at different times after initial administration.

pharmacodynamics
: Time course of biological responses within a tissue or its cells that are induced by a drug, usually gauged at different times after initial administration.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aDrug selectivity, which leads to therapeutic indices larger than 1, implies that cancer cells are, for various reasons, hypersensitive to a therapeutic agent. Lack of selectivity and the absence of a significant therapeutic index imply that cancer cells are as sensitive to an agent as are cells in normal tissues.Return to reference a
- bProliferation-dependent cytotoxicity is not well understood. In certain cases, rapidly dividing cells are presumed to lack the time required to repair therapy-induced DNA damage before DNA replication occurs.Return to reference b
- bProliferation-dependent cytotoxicity is not well understood. In certain cases, rapidly dividing cells are presumed to lack the time required to repair therapy-induced DNA damage before DNA replication occurs.Return to reference b
- cIntact p53 function is known to render these cells highly susceptible to DNA damage–induced apoptosis.Return to reference c
- dDefective p53 function, as well as nonfunctional cell cycle checkpoints, is presumed to allow cells bearing damaged, still-unrepaired genomes to advance into S phase, M phase, or both, resulting in stalled replication forks or mitotic catastrophe.Return to reference d
- aThe entries in this table refer to tumors that are initially responsive to an applied therapy and then exhibit resistance that is manifested as regrowth of a tumor and thus indicates clinical relapse. Resistance may emerge because of the outgrowth of a therapy-resistant subpopulation of variant cells; such variant cells may preexist in the population prior to the onset of treatment or may arise as genetic or epigenetic variants that are formed *de novo* during the course of treatment. Alternatively, resistance may arise as a normal compensatory physiological response to an initially applied therapy-imposed inhibition; this second form of resistance presumably occurs widely throughout a tumor rather than resulting from the selective outgrowth of a therapy-resistant subpopulation.Return to reference a
- bAs an example, concomitant resistance to paclitaxel, doxorubicin, etoposide, and vinblastine is exhibited by cells overexpressing P-

glycoprotein, a drug export transporter operating in the plasma membrane.Return to reference b

- cPan-drug resistance refers to resistance against all agents that are applied to a tumor and cannot be attributed to increased drug export.Return to reference c
- dAs an example, lack of responsiveness of glioblastomas to the temozolomide alkylating drug often results from expression of the MGMT enzyme, which detoxifies it (see Section 12.7).Return to reference d
- eAs an example, a variety of metastatic growths in the brain may be protected from chemotherapy by the blood–brain barrier, which blocks agents in the circulation from entering the brain parenchyma.Return to reference e
- fAs an example, lymphoma cells may survive in the thymus because thymic stromal cells release survival factors in response to the genotoxic stress provoked by chemotherapy.Return to reference f
- gAs an example, part of the difficulty of treating pancreatic carcinomas derives from the development in these tumors of a highly desmoplastic stroma that impedes transport of drugs from the circulation to the neoplastic cells.Return to reference g
- hAs an example, patients treated successfully with imatinib/Gleevec will develop drug resistance because of the emergence of cells expressing a mutant, structurally altered Bcr-Abl protein that no longer permits high-affinity binding of the drug.Return to reference h
- iAs examples, individuals whose tumors exhibit responsiveness to EGF-R inhibitors may develop resistance because of the mutational activation of a *ras* oncogene or because of *crkl* amplification. Resistance of CML cells to imatinib/Gleevec may develop because of the emergence of cells expressing altered $p19^{ARF}$, Myc, p53, or Ras, which function to bypass the dependence of the tumor cells on the targeted Bcr-Abl oncoprotein. Resistance to B-Raf inhibition can develop through up-regulation of PDGF-Rβ expression or N-*ras* mutation.Return to reference i
- jHigh-grade serous ovarian carcinomas are often treated with doxorubicin that is encapsulated in a synthetic liposome. Drug-resistant cells often emerge that have lost the LDL receptor–related

protein (LRP1B), a cell surface protein that appears to be responsible for internalizing the liposomes.Return to reference j

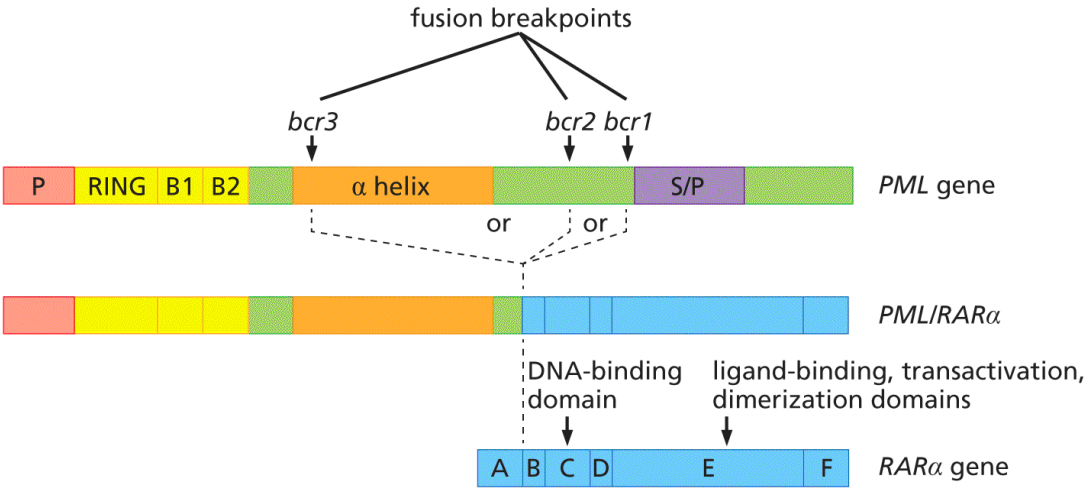
- kPassage through an epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT) results in, among other changes, the expression of drug efflux pumps in the plasma membrane and increases in expression of anti-apoptotic proteins.Return to reference k

OceanofPDF.com

17.4 Differentiation, synthetic lethality, and cell cycle checkpoints can be exploited to kill cancer cells

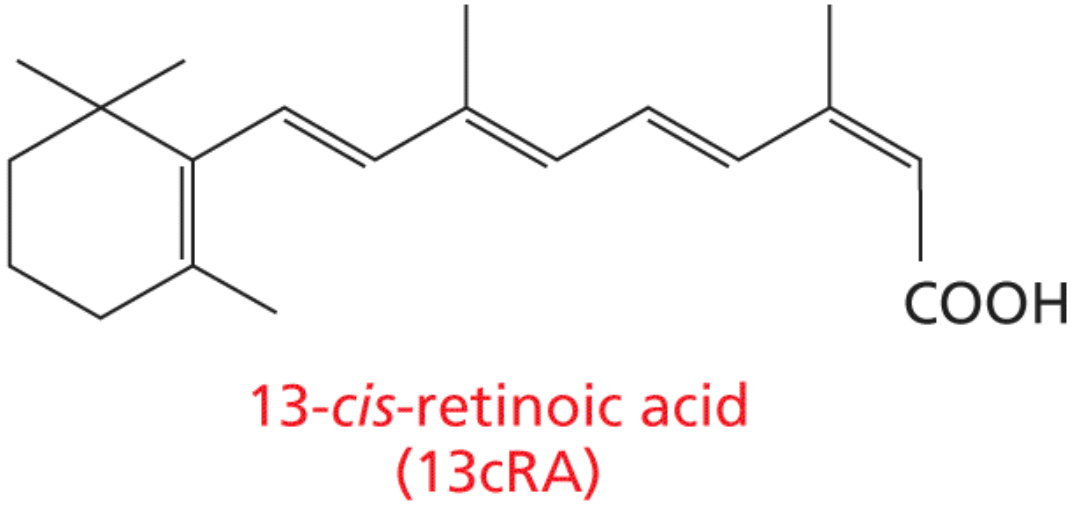
In principle, several distinct biological strategies might prove to be equally successful in eliminating established tumors or holding their growth in check. The most obvious of these are designed to induce the death of cancer cells, usually via apoptosis. Indeed, almost all existing nonsurgical strategies for eliminating cancer cells lead in one way or another to activation of the apoptotic pathways described in Chapter 9. However, an alternative therapeutic strategy relies on inducing differentiation, and we will consider this one first, if only briefly.

As described in Chapter 8, the acquisition of the malignant phenotype is usually accompanied by defective differentiation and the associated entrance into a post-mitotic state. Recall that as tumor cell populations evolve to greater degrees of malignancy, they usually shed more and more markers of differentiation. These behaviors suggest an attractive strategy for treating tumors: persuade cancer cells to differentiate and thereby enter into post-mitotic states. Although we have learned much about the connections between cell cycle control and the regulation of differentiation programs (see Sections 8.9 and 8.11), most of this information has not yet been translatable into effective forms of therapy. The prominent exception has come from one form of treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) (**Figure 17.9**). In the course of this therapy, the undifferentiated leukemic blast cells can be induced to differentiate into neutrophils by treatment with all-*trans*-retinoic acid (ATRA). Treatment of APL patients with ATRA together with concomitant chemotherapy often results in complete remission, with five-year survival rates approaching 75 to 85%—suggestive of complete cures.



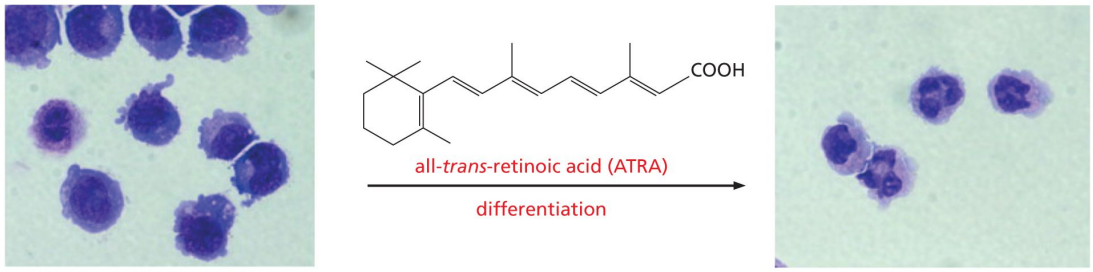
A diagram shows three fusion break points in a P M L gene. B c r 3 occurs in the alpha helix domain and b c r 2 and b c r 1 occur in a green domain. Everything to the left of the breakpoint is then attached to a R A R alpha gene to form P M L slash R A R alpha. the R A R alpha gene contains D N A binding, ligand-binding, transactivation, and dimerization domains.

(A)



The molecular structure of 13 cis retinoic acid or 13 c R A. The structure consists of an 8 carbon chain with alternating single and double bonds. Carbon 1 is bonded to a cyclohexene ring that has three methyl groups. Carbon 3 and carbon 7 are bonded to methyl groups. Carbon 8 is bonded to a carboxyl group.

(B)



Two micrographs shows how all-trans-retinoic acid or A T R A treatment causes promyelocytes to differentiate into polymorphonuclear cells also known as neutrophils. The promyelocytes are almost completely dark purple. The neutrophils are a mixture of light and dark purple. The molecular structure of all trans retinoic acid consists of an 8 carbon chain with alternating single and double bonds. Carbon 1 is bonded to a cyclohexene ring that has three methyl groups. Carbon 3 and carbon 7 are bonded to methyl groups. Carbon 8 is bonded to a carboxyl group.

(C)

Figure 17.9 Retinoic acid and induced differentiation of cancer cells (A) In >95% of acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) cases, a translocation involving Chromosomes 15 and 17 results in fusion of the gene encoding the retinoic acid receptor (RARα, also termed RARA) with the promyelocytic leukemia (*PML*) gene. The *PML* gene can undergo fusion with the *RARA* gene in any of three sites, termed breakpoint cluster regions (bcr1,2,3). The fused portion of RARα retains the DNA-binding domain (region C) and the ligand-binding domain (region E). Once formed, the resulting fusion protein appears to block the differentiation of promyelocytes into various granulocyte cell types, which normally depends on the actions of retinoic acid (RA) binding to its receptor, RARα. (B) Large numbers of promyelocytes carrying many granules in their cytoplasm are apparent in the circulation (*left*) of an individual suffering from APL. However, following all-*trans*-retinoic acid (ATRA) treatment, these immature promyelocytes disappear and are replaced by differentiated granulocytes, specifically polymorphonuclear (PMN) neutrophils (*right*). ATRA causes inactivation and degradation of the PML-RARα fusion protein, allowing the normal RARα to drive normal differentiation. (C) 13-*cis*-Retinoic acid has been used to cause regression of the premalignant precursors of head-and-neck carcinomas. (A, adapted from S. Kalantry et al., *J. Cell Physiol*. 173:288–296, 1997. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. B, Reprinted from Blood, 107 (8), Beatrice U. Mueller, Thomas Pabst, José Fos, Vibor Petkovic, Martin F. Fey, Norio Asou, Ulrich Buergi, Daniel G. Tenen, ATRA

resolves the differentiation block in t(15;17) acute myeloid leukemia by restoring PU.1 expression, 3330-3338, Copyright 2006, with permission from Elsevier.)

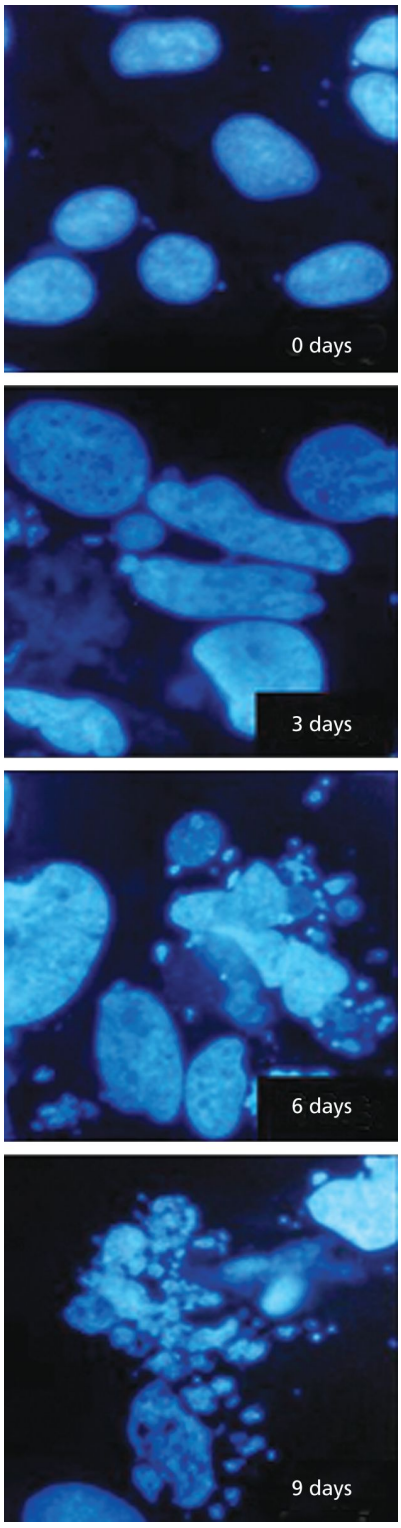
During the initial development of APL, the normal differentiation program of certain hematopoietic cells is blocked by the actions of the fusion protein PML-RARα, which results from a 15;17 chromosomal translocation seen in the leukemic cells of almost all APL patients (Figure 17.9A). This hybrid protein is composed of the PML (promyelocytic leukemia) protein, which has multiple normal functions, some associated with tumor suppression, fused to the nuclear retinoic acid receptor (RARα) protein. The latter, upon binding its retinoic acid (RA) ligand, is normally able to induce the expression of genes that program cell differentiation in a variety of cell types throughout the body (see Section 5.8). [In the absence of ligand, RARα recruits histone deacetylases (HDACs), which cause repression of differentiation-associated genes, whereas in the presence of RA ligand, RARα recruits histone acetyltransferases (HATs) that permit expression of these same genes; see Section 1.8.]

In fact, the precise mechanism by which the PML-RARα protein prevents the differentiation of promyelocytic leukemia cells is not clear. An attractive possibility is that the PML-RARα fusion protein found in leukemic cells interferes with the differentiation-inducing functions of the normal RARα in bone marrow cells, thereby causing accumulation of large numbers of these cells in a stem cell-like state. [The ligand-activated RARα acts to induce expression of certain target genes associated with the differentiation of hematopoietic precursor cells, whereas the PML-RARα fusion protein acts as a repressor, or at least an antagonist, of RARα. This interference with the normal RARα function seems to derive from the ability of the PML-RARα complex to bind more avidly to the HDAC co-repressor complex (see Section 1.8) than does the normal RARα.] Much of the therapeutic effect of all-*trans*-retinoic acid treatment appears to derive from its ability to cause the PML-RARα complex to release its grip on HDACs and to induce subsequent ubiquitylation and proteasome-mediated degradation of the PML-RAR fusion protein, resulting in relief of the block to differentiation. A complementary treatment derives from the use of arsenic trioxide (ATO), first discovered in China, which also drives degradation of PML-RARα; when applied together with ATRA, the two agents achieve a greater than 90% cure rate of APLs. Arsenic is usually portrayed as a highly toxic poison, whereas in this case it is clearly a remarkable lifesaver!

A similar mechanism likely explains the successes of the therapy that employs 13-*cis*-retinoic acid (13cRA; see Figure 17.9C), related chemically to vitamin A and to the all-*trans*-retinoic acid described above. It has been used with great success to cause the regression of pre-malignant lesions in the mouth and throat, thereby preventing or delaying their progression to head-and-neck cancers. Interestingly, loss of expression of RARβ—a second, similarly functioning RA receptor—is often observed in these

pre-malignant growths, as well as in a variety of other human carcinomas, ostensibly because its loss helps the cells in these various lesions to avoid entrance into a differentiated, post-mitotic state. Moreover, reduction of RARβ receptor expression in mice, achieved through the use of an antisense transgene, results in the formation of large numbers of lung carcinomas by 18 months of age, providing further support for the notion that evasion of retinoic acid-induced differentiation serves as an important mechanism of carcinoma pathogenesis.

Beyond these two striking examples, strategies that induce differentiation have had limited success in treating established cancers. An alternative set of therapeutic strategies takes advantage of the vulnerabilities that cancer cells have once they have discarded critical checkpoint controls operating in the normal cell cycle (see Table 17.3; Section 8.1). For example, some cancer cells lack the checkpoint control that normally blocks entrance into mitosis (M phase) from the G_2 phase until significant damage to the genomic DNA or to the chromosomes has been repaired. Consequently, many neoplastic tissues may be treated by inflicting genomic damage through chemotherapeutics or radiation. Whereas normal cells will tarry and repair this damage before advancing into M phase, cancer cells may ignore such damage and proceed blithely into mitosis, where they may stumble into a mitotic catastrophe that threatens their continued viability when they attempt to segregate their still-damaged chromosomes (**Figure 17.10**). This damage may be so overwhelming that it succeeds in triggering the residual apoptotic responses that these cells possess.



Four fluorescence microscopy images show the effect of chemotherapy on cancer cells over a period of 9 days. On day 0, the cells are ovular, almost like fingerprints. On day 3, the cells are elongated and slightly splotchy. On day 6,

some of the cells are breaking up into pieces. On day 9, only a couple cells remain that are not completely fragmented.

Figure 17.10 Chemotherapy and mitotic catastrophe Many chemotherapeutic drugs may damage the chromosomes of cancer cells. Because some cancer cells lack key G_2/M checkpoint controls, they may advance into mitosis without having repaired the chromosomal damage. This may cause them to enter into "mitotic catastrophe," which results in aneuploidy, polyploidy, formation of micronuclei, and the eventual death of these cells. Seen here are the effects of low doses (50 ng/ml) of doxorubicin, a widely used chemotherapeutic drug, on Huh-7 human hepatoma cells. Over a period of nine days, the nuclei of these cells grow larger or smaller and many eventually fragment into micronuclei, each of which carries a small number of chromosomes; this leads eventually to cell death, often by apoptosis. (From Y.W. Eom et al., *Oncogene* 24:4765–4777, 2005. With permission from Nature.)

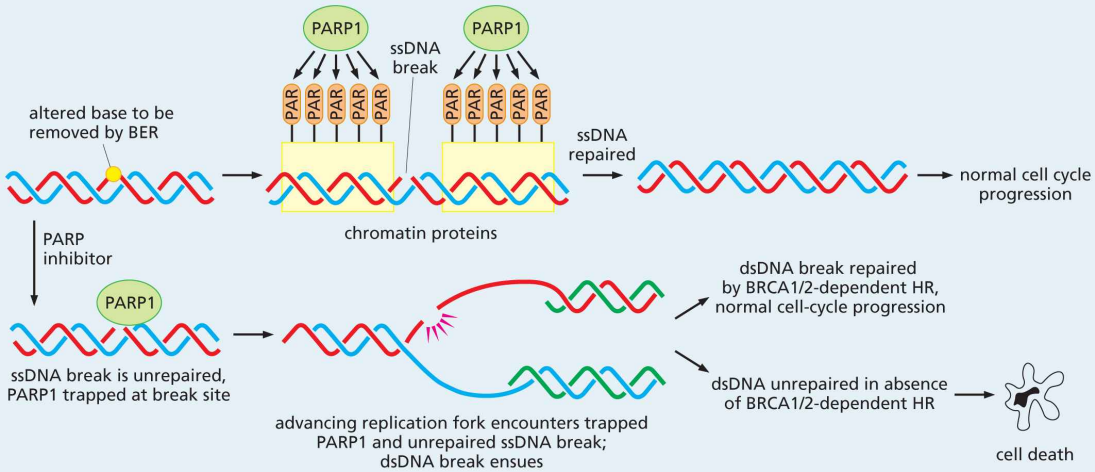
Similarly, cancer cells that lack the ability to undergo a G_1 phase cell cycle arrest following the induction of DNA damage, as is seen in the absence of the p53 tumor suppressor, become highly dependent on G_2 /M phase cell cycle arrest to avoid such a mitotic catastrophe. In this context, small molecules that target mediators of this G_2 /M phase cell cycle arrest, including the ATM and MK2 checkpoint kinases, can specifically sensitize p53-deficient tumors to chemotherapy (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.5**). Such an interaction can be viewed as a synthetic lethality, as it represents a therapeutic strategy in which a tumor cell-specific alteration, while conferring growth-enabling characteristics upon tumor cells, also recreates an emergent targetable tumor cell vulnerability (**Sidebar 17.5**.)

Sidebar 17.5 Targeting DNA repair deficiencies

In addition to targeting cell cycle dependencies that emerge during tumorigenesis, synthetic lethal approaches are also currently used to target tumor-specific alterations in DNA damage response pathways. Thus, breast and ovarian cancers that are deficient for either the *BRCA1* or *BRCA1* gene products represent perhaps the most notable examples of this therapeutic approach. The BRCA1 and BRCA2 proteins are necessary to perform homologous recombination and repair (HR) following the induction of a DNA double-strand break. In cells lacking either *BRCA1* or *BRCA2*, the high level of unrepaired DNA breaks fuels genomic instability and, in turn, the acquisition of pro-tumorigenic genetic alterations (see Section 12.10).

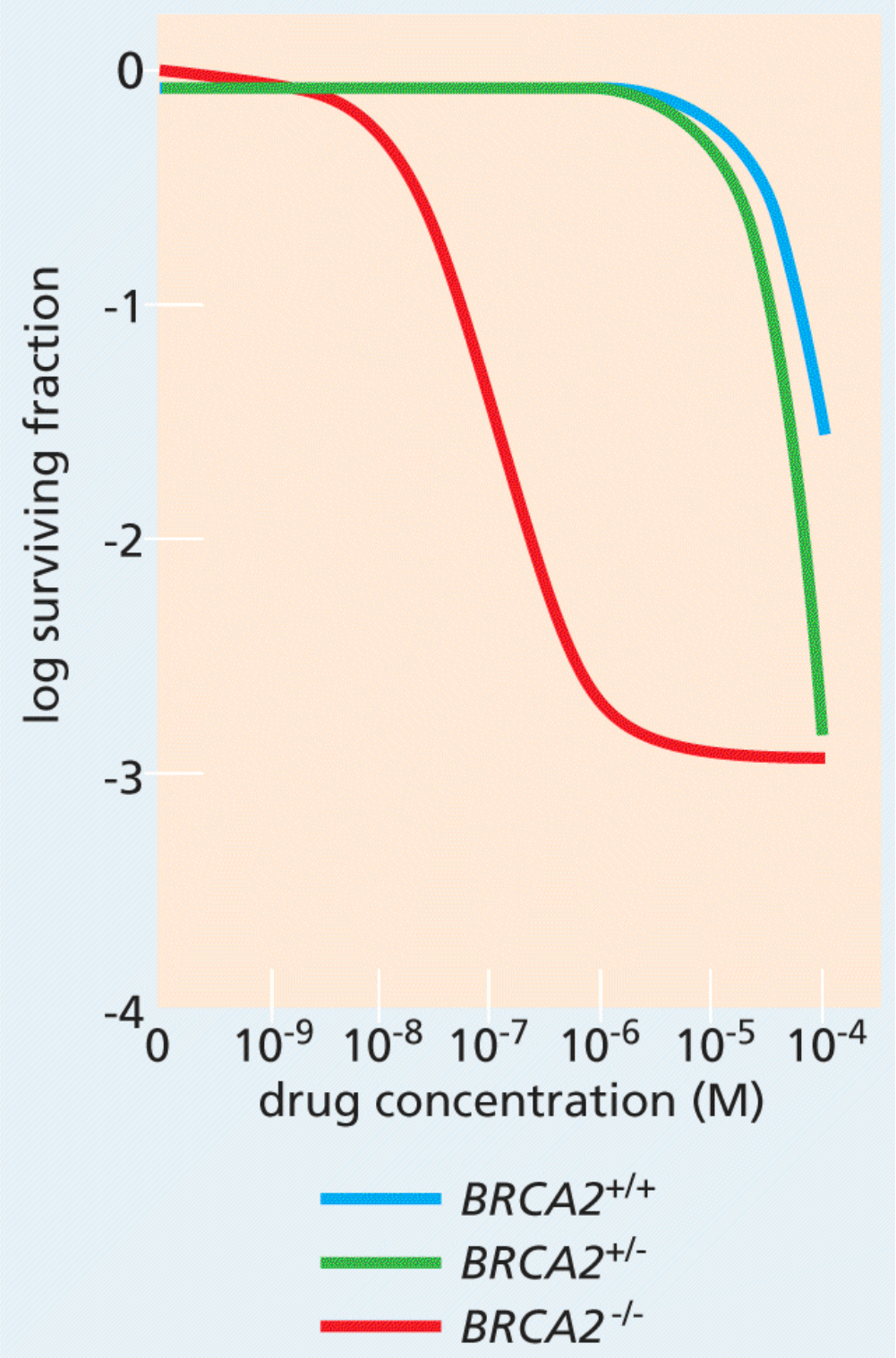
However, the absence of these repair proteins also creates a *de novo* dependency on other DNA repair factors that can compensate, at least in part, for this ongoing

genomic instability through their own abilities to support minimal levels of genomic integrity and tumor cell survival. In this context, impairment of such backup compensatory repair pathways can render a cell vulnerable to a synthetic lethality. Thus, cells routinely suffer single-strand breaks in their DNA, which trigger ADP-ribosylation by PARP1 of nearby histone and non-histone chromatin proteins in anticipation of break repair; in the absence of functional PARP1, such damage goes unrepaired. When a replication fork subsequently encounters such an unrepaired single-strand break, a collapsed replication fork ensues, resulting in a double-strand break that can only be effectively repaired by HR mediated by BRCA1–BRCA2 associated complexes. Without such repair, these dsDNA breaks create cell lethality. This explains why PARP1 inhibitors are preferentially toxic to cells lacking *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* (**Figure 17.11**).



A diagram shows the effect of PARP 1 in a cell. The process starts with an altered base in a section of double stranded D N A that is removed by B E R. This results in a single stranded D N A break. PARP binds to either side of the break and stimulated the addition of PAR proteins and other chromatin proteins. The single strand D N A is repaired and normal cell cycle progression occurs. However, if a PARP inhibitor is present, the single strand D N A break is unrepaired and PARP 1 is trapped at the break site. The advancing replication fork encounters the trapped PARP 1 and unrepaired single strand D N A break and a double strand D N A break ensues. If the break is repaired by B R C A 1 or 2 dependent H R, normal cell cycle progression occurs. If the break is unrepaired due to an absence of B R C A 1 or 2 dependent H R, cell death occurs.

(A)



A line graph of the log surviving fraction of three different cell lines relative to the drug concentration. All three cell lines have a log surviving fraction close to 0 when the drug concentration is low. Around 10 to the negative 8 molar, the log surviving fraction of B R C A 2 minus minus decreases rapidly

to around negative 3. Around 10 to the negative 5 molar, B R C A 2 plus plus and B R C A plus minus start to decrease rapidly with B R C A plus minus decreasing slightly faster.
(B)

Figure 17.11 PARP1 inhibition promotes DNA damage and cell death in BRCA1/2 deficient cells (A) Altered bases are removed by base-excision repair (BER); the resulting abasic sites are then converted to ssDNA breaks (SSBs). PARP1 binds to these breaks and catalyzes the addition of PAR polymers on itself (auto-PARylation), as well as flanking histones and other chromatin-associated proteins. This process promotes chromatin relaxation and the recruitment of DNA repair proteins. PARP inhibitors block PARylation of PARP1 itself and neighboring proteins. As a result, PARP1 fails to disassociate from the SSB, resulting in its being trapped on DNA and the persistence of unrepaired SSBs. When an advancing replication fork encounters the SSB, a double-strand break (DSB) is generated. (B) Proper repair of the resulting DSB requires BRCA1, BRCA2, and other homologous recombination (HR) proteins. Consequently, in the absence of HR repair proteins (like BRCA1 or BRCA2), tumor cells are highly sensitized to PARP inhibitors (PARPi) (*lower right*). The specific absence of BRCA2 in tumor cells, and not in non-malignant cells, provides a therapeutic window for PARPi use. (B, from H. Farmer et al., *Nature* 434:917-921, 2005. With permission from Nature.)

This specificity toxicity provides a therapeutic window in which only HR-defective tumor cells, and not adjacent normal cells, are sensitive to PARP1 inhibition. Further evidence for the specific interaction between *BRCA1/2* genes and PARP inhibitor sensitivity comes from the analysis of tumors following their extended treatment with PARP1 pharmacologic inhibitors and eventual escape from this treatment, leading to clinical relapse. Such PARP1 inhibitor-resistant tumors frequently eliminate the *BRCA1* exon containing frame-shift mutations that lead to protein inactivation and loss. As a result, functional BRCA1 protein is restored, together with double-strand break repair capacity.

More generally, genotoxic chemotherapies that increase the burden of DNA damage in cancer cells may further exploit the vulnerabilities present in DNA repair- and checkpoint-defective cells. Indeed, many of the traditionally used cancer therapeutics are suspected to take advantage of defects in checkpoint controls to destroy cancer cells, but sufficient evidence to guide the use of these agents in specific cancers is not yet in hand. In the discussions that follow, however, we will focus on agents that target specific critical proteins rather than the genomes of cancer cells.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

blast
: Term used as prefix or suffix, indicating a relatively undifferentiated or embryonic precursor cell.

remission
: Retreat or disappearance of a disease state with the implied possibility of its eventual reappearance or worsening.

mitotic catastrophe
: Process by which unrepaired damage to DNA or chromosomes or mis-segregation of chromosomes causes cells to enter into M phase and die there through non-apoptotic mechanisms because of an inability to properly complete the critical final steps of mitosis.

synthetic lethal
: (1) Describing phenotypes that result from the combined effects of two alleles, each of which is nonlethal on its own, but which, when present in combination, result in lethality. (2) Referring to a state in which an existing genetic or epigenetic condition renders a cell vulnerable to killing by one or another applied agent, such as a therapeutic agent.

OceanofPDF.com

17.5 Functional and biochemical considerations dictate that only a subset of the defective proteins in cancer cells are attractive targets for drug development

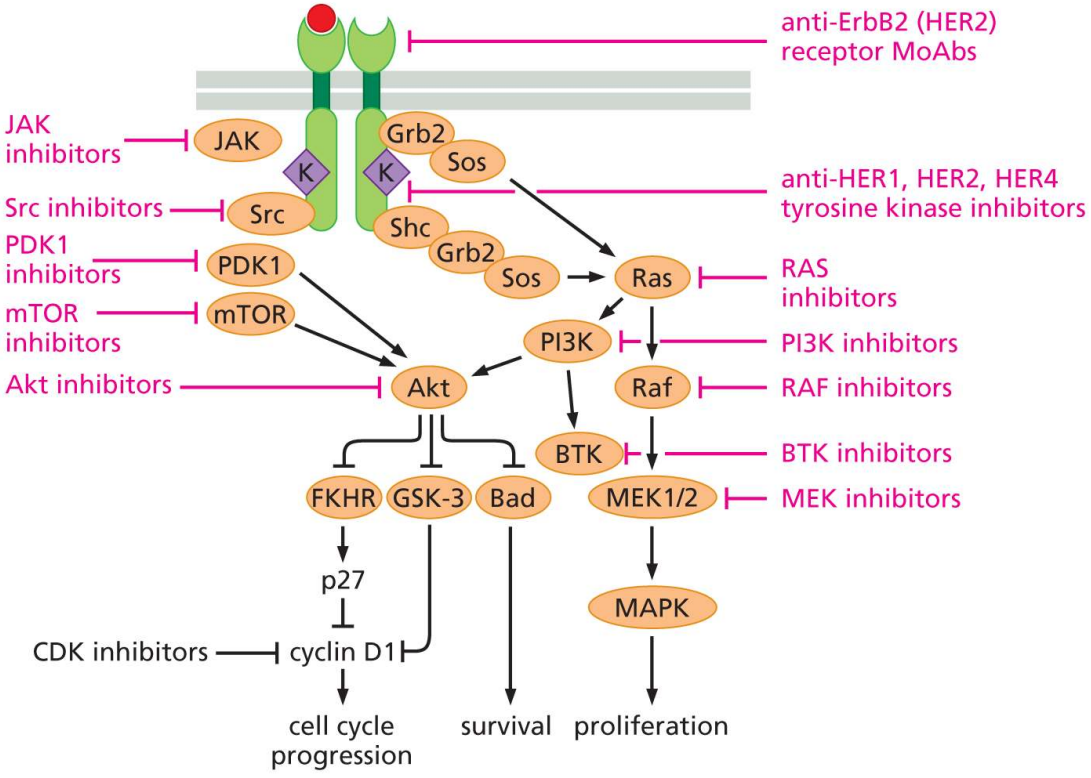
In the past (see Section 17.2), anti-cancer drugs were discovered and optimized for their cytotoxic effects on cancer cells (and thus on tumors as a whole) without any preconception as to precisely how these drugs were killing cancer cells. The mindset of current anti-cancer drug developers, in contrast, is far more focused: to direct therapeutic drugs at specific molecular targets within cancer cells. The logic underlying this strategy is simple: if the aberrant biological state of cancer cells derives from and depends on malfunctioning signaling proteins, then inhibiting or eliminating such proteins from a cell's circuitry should result in a cytostatic or cytotoxic response in these cells. Such responses should, in turn, halt further tumor progression or, better yet, cause a regression of tumors.

Two other factors have furthered this thinking. First, knowledge gleaned over the past four decades about the machinery that governs normal and neoplastic cells has provided us with a wealth of potential molecular targets. Second, because the molecular targets function differently in normal and neoplastic cells, targeting these molecules should yield substantial therapeutic indices, that is, selective killing of cancer cells versus normal cells and potentially reduced side-effect toxicities for cancer patients under treatment.

This agenda, attractive as it may be, is constrained by certain functional realities. Drugs—usually low-molecular weight organic compounds—generally inhibit rather than enhance biochemical functions. This simple fact drastically narrows the options for the development of anti-cancer drugs. As we saw in Chapter 7, the protein products of tumor suppressor genes—the so-called gatekeepers—contribute to cancer development through their absence and attempts at developing low–molecular-weight compounds to replace or replicate these missing functions are impractical at present. The few successes here represent relatively minor victories. For example, certain compounds can restore some p53 function by shifting mutant forms of the p53 protein from their functionally defective stereochemical configurations back into a wild-type configuration.

Precisely the same arguments apply to the proteins responsible for maintaining the cellular genome—the caretakers (see Chapter 12). Once again, their functions, often missing from cancer cells, cannot be restored by even the most complex drug molecules. And even if they were, little utility would derive from such successes. After all, if the progression of a tumor has been driven by defective DNA repair and resulting accumulation of mutant alleles, restoration of the missing DNA repair function will have no effect on the many mutant sequences that have already accumulated in the genomes of its constituent cancer cells.

Once gatekeepers and caretakers are removed from consideration, such logic leaves oncoproteins—hyperactive forms of normal cellular growth- and survival-promoting proteins—as the most attractive targets for the development of anti-cancer therapies. These are molecules that, in principle, can be inhibited by drugs, resulting in reduction of their activity and, with luck, collapse of the neoplastic growth program. In fact, the signal-transducing proteins immediately downstream of hyperactive oncoproteins are also attractive targets, because most of these are also important positive effectors of signaling (**Figure 17.12**).



A diagram shows a receptor and the signalling pathway connected to it along with the different mechanisms of inhibition. The pathway leads to cell cycle progression, survival, and proliferation. The inhibitors include anti E r b B 2 receptor Mo Abs, JAK inhibitors, S r c inhibitors, anti HER 1 2 and 4 tyrosine

kinase inhibitors, P D K 1 inhibitors, RAS inhibitors, m TOR inhibitors, A k t inhibitors, P I 3 inhibitors, RAF inhibitors, B T K inhibitors, M E K inhibitors, and C D K inhibitors.

Figure 17.12 Inhibition of tumor growth by targeting downstream signaling elements As indicated in this diagram, signaling from receptors such as the EGF (HER1) and HER2/Neu receptors can be blocked in a number of ways. The ectodomains of the receptors can be targeted by monoclonal antibodies such as Herceptin. Moreover, the tyrosine kinase (TK) signal-emitting domains of these receptors can be targeted by a variety of low–molecular-weight drug compounds. In addition, several drugs have been developed that target proteins functioning as components of downstream signaling pathways, including those that inhibit Ras, both Raf and MEK (through inhibition of their serine/threonine kinase catalytic functions), mTOR (through inhibition of the formation of functional signaling complexes between mTOR and associated partner proteins), and cyclin D1 (through the inhibition of cyclin-dependent kinases). (Courtesy of J. Baselga.)

Certain genetic considerations may further narrow the range of molecules that are attractive targets for anti-tumor drug development. Earlier, we learned that as cancer progresses, cell populations acquire a succession of genetic and thus biochemical alterations that ultimately lead these cells to the neoplastic growth state (see Chapter 11). This scenario raises a provocative question: Do the changes that were responsible for the *early* steps of multi-step tumor progression continue to play critical roles far *later*, when the full-blown malignant phenotype has finally been acquired? For example, if the initial step in the development of a tumor involved the formation of a *ras* oncogene, are the continued actions of this oncogene still required later by the highly malignant descendant cells? Or have some of the changes occurring later during tumor progression rendered the continued functions of a Ras oncoprotein unnecessary?

Take the case of pancreatic carcinomas, in which the K-*ras* oncogene is found in the great majority (~90%) of tumors. The acquisition of this oncogene occurs relatively early in tumor progression, because mutant K-*ras* oncogenes are often found in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasias (PanINs; see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.3**), the benign precursors of frank carcinomas. Do some of the subsequently acquired changes in, for example, the *Smad4/DPC4* and $p16^{INK4A}$/*CDKN2A* genes make the K-Ras4B oncoprotein superfluous? If so, drugs designed to block K-Ras signaling will never prove useful for treating this class of cancers.

Here, we can take some encouragement from a number of mouse models of cancer development (**Table 17.6**). The oncogene responsible for initiating tumor progression in tumor-prone transgenic mice can be shut off experimentally many weeks later in the tumors that eventually form. Such experiments have exploited the H-*ras* oncogene to create melanomas, the K-*ras* oncogene to induce lung adenocarcinomas, the *bcr-abl*

oncogene to create leukemias, and the *myc* oncogene to make islet cell tumors of the pancreas as well as leukemias and lymphomas. In all of these cases, the tumor cells that arise continue to be dependent on the initiating oncogenes, as indicated by the regression of these tumors once expression of the initiating oncogenes is shut down experimentally. The behavior of certain human tumor cells also indicates the continuing essential contributions of initiating genetic elements to cancer cell survival and tumor growth (**Sidebar 17.6**).

Table 17.6 Effects of shutting down expression of an initiating oncogenic transgene in tumor-prone mice

Transgenic oncogene	**Response of tumors**
Permanent regression after shutdown of transgene	
H-*ras*	melanoma regressed
K-*ras*	lung adenocarcinoma regressed
bcr-abl	B-cell leukemia regressed
myc	T-cell lymphoma, acute myelogenous leukemia, and epidermal, mammary, and islet cell carcinomas regressed
fgf-7	lung epithelial hyperplasia regressed
SV40 large T	salivary gland hyperplasia regressed if transgene expressed < 4 months
wnt1	mammary adenocarcinoma regressed
Persistence or relapse after shutdown of transgene	

Transgenic oncogene	Response of tumors
SV40 large T	salivary gland hyperplasia relapsed if transgene expressed > 4 months
neu	mammary adenocarcinoma regressed and then relapsed
myc	mammary adenocarcinoma relapsed in presence of K-*ras* oncogene
wnt1	mammary adenocarcinoma relapsed in absence of p53 function

Adapted in part from D.W. Felsher, *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 14: 37–42, 2004.

Sidebar 17.6 HeLa cells provide the most dramatic example of the ongoing importance of initiating genetic lesions

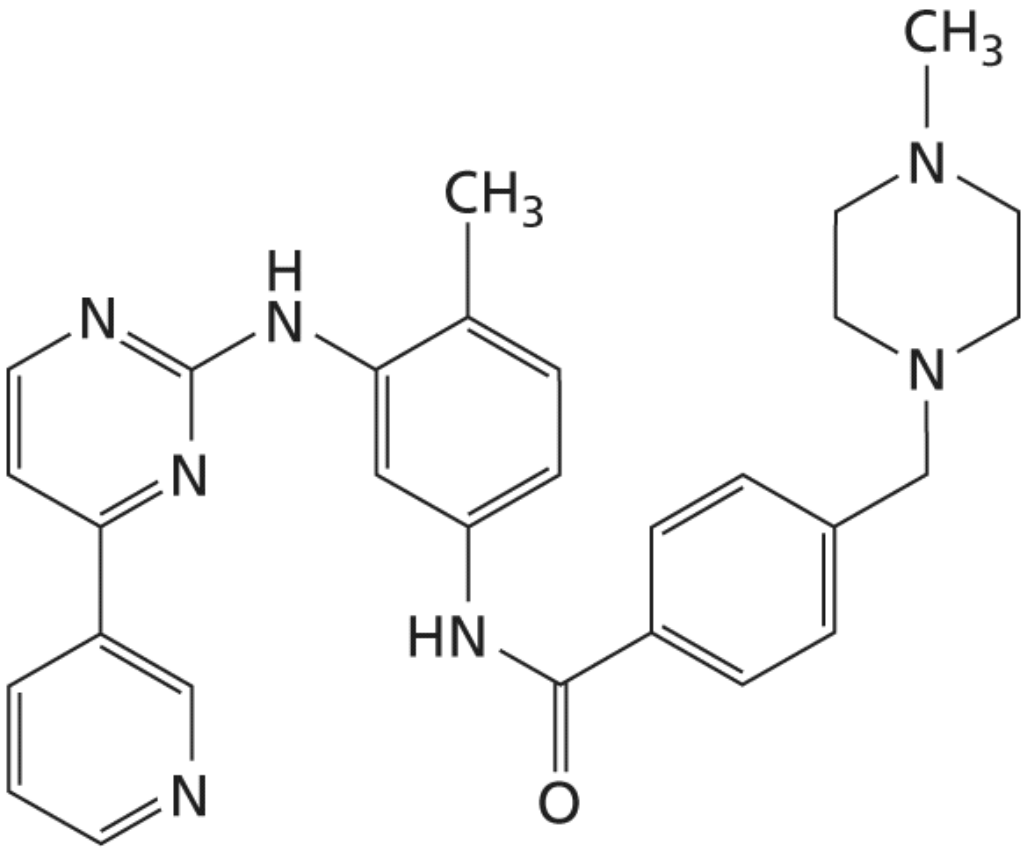
Arguably the most extreme example of the continued influence of initiating genetic lesions is provided by the behavior of the cells of the human HeLa cervical cancer cell line. Recall that these cells were derived in 1951 from a highly aggressive cervical carcinoma (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.3**) and, like almost all (>99.7%) cervical carcinomas, the initiation of this tumor is traceable to a human papillomavirus (HPV) infection, in this case HPV type 18 and its two encoded oncoproteins, E6 and E7. Half a century later, during which time cultured HeLa cells passed through many thousands of growth-and-division cycles, genetic strategies were used to shut down the HPV18 oncogenes being expressed in these cells. The shutdown of E7 expression led to reactivation of pRb function and cell senescence, and shutdown of E6 led to the reappearance of p53 and subsequent senescence or apoptosis in these cells. Therefore, in the case of HeLa cells, the initiating genetic change (acquisition of an HPV genome) continued to be absolutely essential for the maintenance of cancer cell proliferation and viability thousands of cell generations later.

This continued dependence on an oncogene, often an initiating oncogene, has been termed oncogene addiction to indicate the irreplaceable role that such a gene plays in the ongoing viability of the cancer cell and growth of the tumor. We will encounter this physiological state again later in this chapter.

The biochemical subtleties of the oncoproteins that have been chosen as attractive targets for drug intervention, as described above, further complicate attempts at developing novel anti-cancer drugs. These drugs are, almost invariably, low–molecular-weight organic compounds, because (1) in general, such molecules are produced far more readily by synthetic organic chemistry than molecules of higher molecular weight; and (2) small molecules are more likely to penetrate into the interstices of a tumor, thereby exerting therapeutic effects on all of its component cells.

These potential molecular targets fall into two major categories—those that are druggable and those that are not. “Druggability” implies that the target molecule has a structure that should make it vulnerable to attack and inhibition by low–molecular-weight compounds. Stated differently, druggable cellular targets—invariably proteins—must have domains within their structures that are capable of strong and specific interactions with small drug molecules.

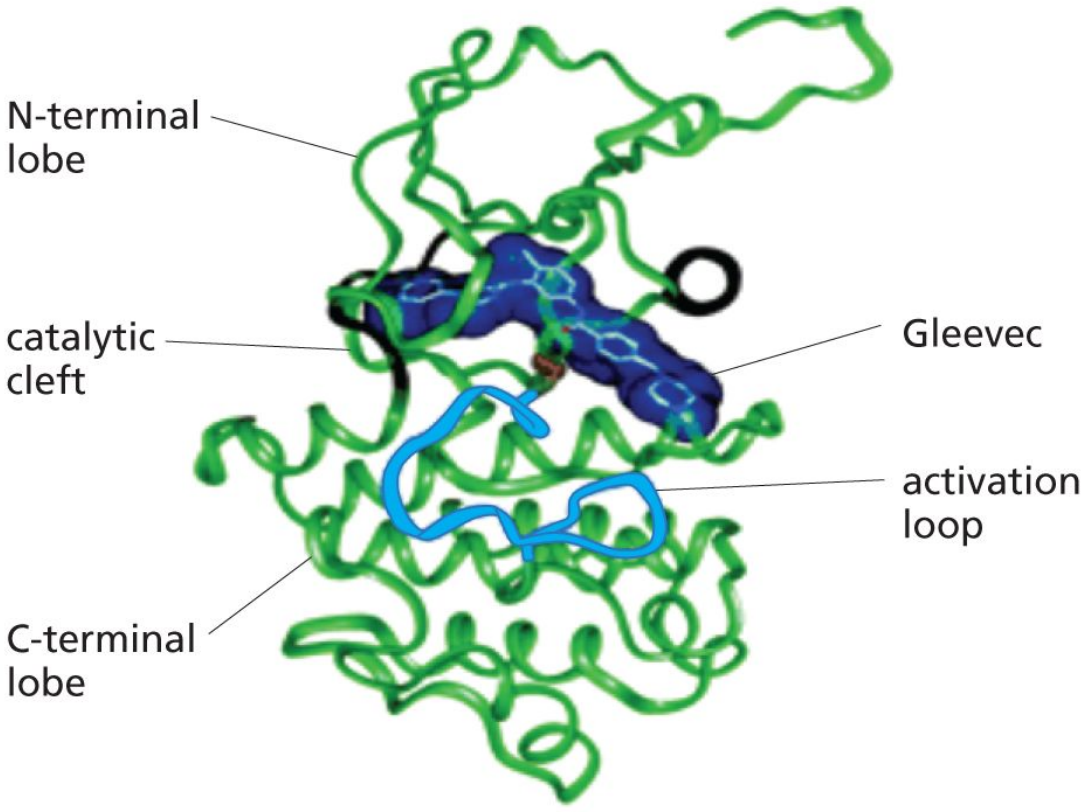
A protein is considered druggable if it has a cavity, usually a well-defined catalytic cleft. Such clefts are attractive for drug developers, because they usually can bind small organic molecules in a highly specific manner. In particular, these cavities often make it possible for a low–molecular-weight compound to form noncovalent bonds simultaneously with multiple amino acid residues lining their walls (**Figure 17.13**; see also Figure 17.46). These multiple independent contacts enable a drug molecule to bind the targeted protein with great specificity and avidity. Additionally, such binding has a high likelihood of perturbing protein function, because, in the case of catalytic clefts, the drug molecule occupies a functionally critical domain of the protein.



Gleevec®
(imatinib mesylate)

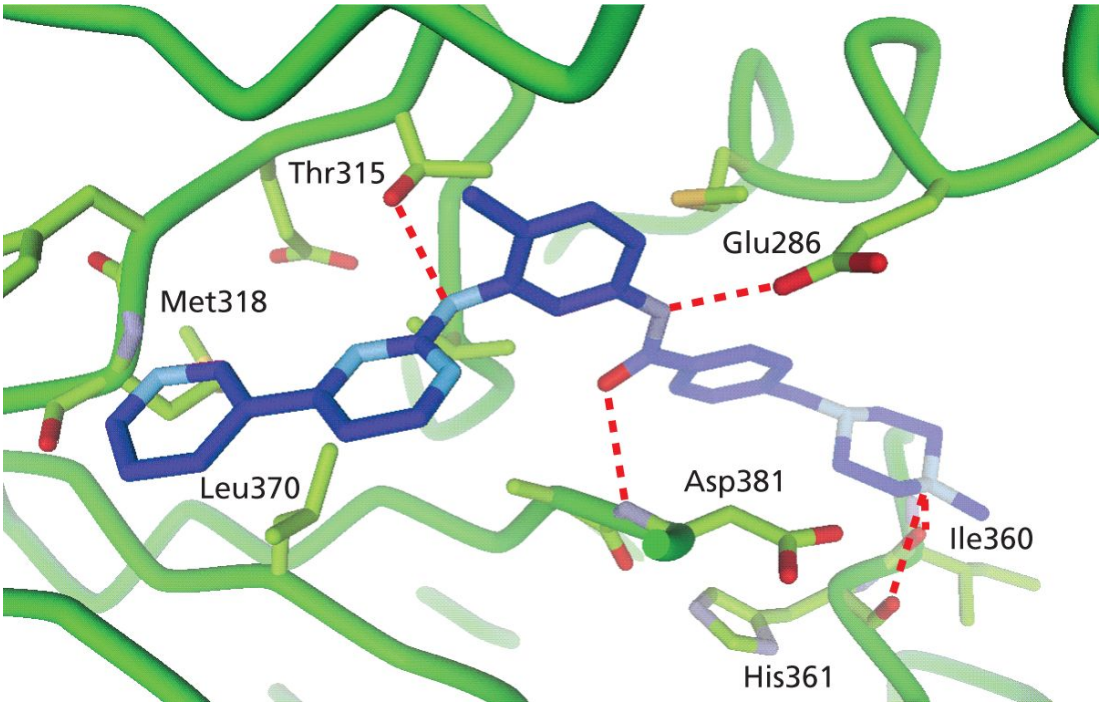
The molecular structure of Gleevec or imatinib mesylate.The structure contains five six membered ring structures that are linked by carbons and nitrogens. There is one carbonyl group in the middle of the structure.

(A)



A diagram shows a protein with a catalytic cleft between the N terminal lobe and the C terminal lobe. Gleevec is positioned within the catalytic cleft above the activation loop of the protein.

(B)



A magnified view of the position of Gleevec in the catalytic cleft. Gleevec hydrogen bonds with four amino acids in the protein which are T h r 315, G l u 286, A s p 381, and H i s 361.

(C)

Figure 17.13 Multiple contacts between drugs and their targets (A) The chemical structure of Gleevec, which was developed to inhibit the tyrosine kinase activity of the Bcr-Abl fusion protein active in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), was the result of optimizing the structure of a precursor compound to which certain side chains were added while others were removed in order to improve drug binding to the catalytic cleft of the Abl tyrosine kinase domain. (B) The catalytic cleft of the Abl kinase is found between its N- and C-terminal lobes, shown here as green ribbon structures. A space-filling model (with van der Waals radii) of a Gleevec molecule is shown in *dark blue*, and the "activation loop" of Abl, which normally blocks access to substrates by the catalytic cleft, is shown in *light blue*. (This activation loop swings out of the way when the kinase shifts into its active configuration.) (C) The avid and specific association of Gleevec (*blue*) with the catalytic cleft of Abl depends on the formation of multiple hydrogen bonds (*red dashed lines*), as well as weaker van der Waals interactions (*not shown*). These bonds increase the binding affinity of the drug for the protein; at the same time, they explain the specificity of association, because the various pairs of proton donors and acceptors, which participate as partners in hydrogen bond formation, must be precisely positioned in three-dimensional space. (A and

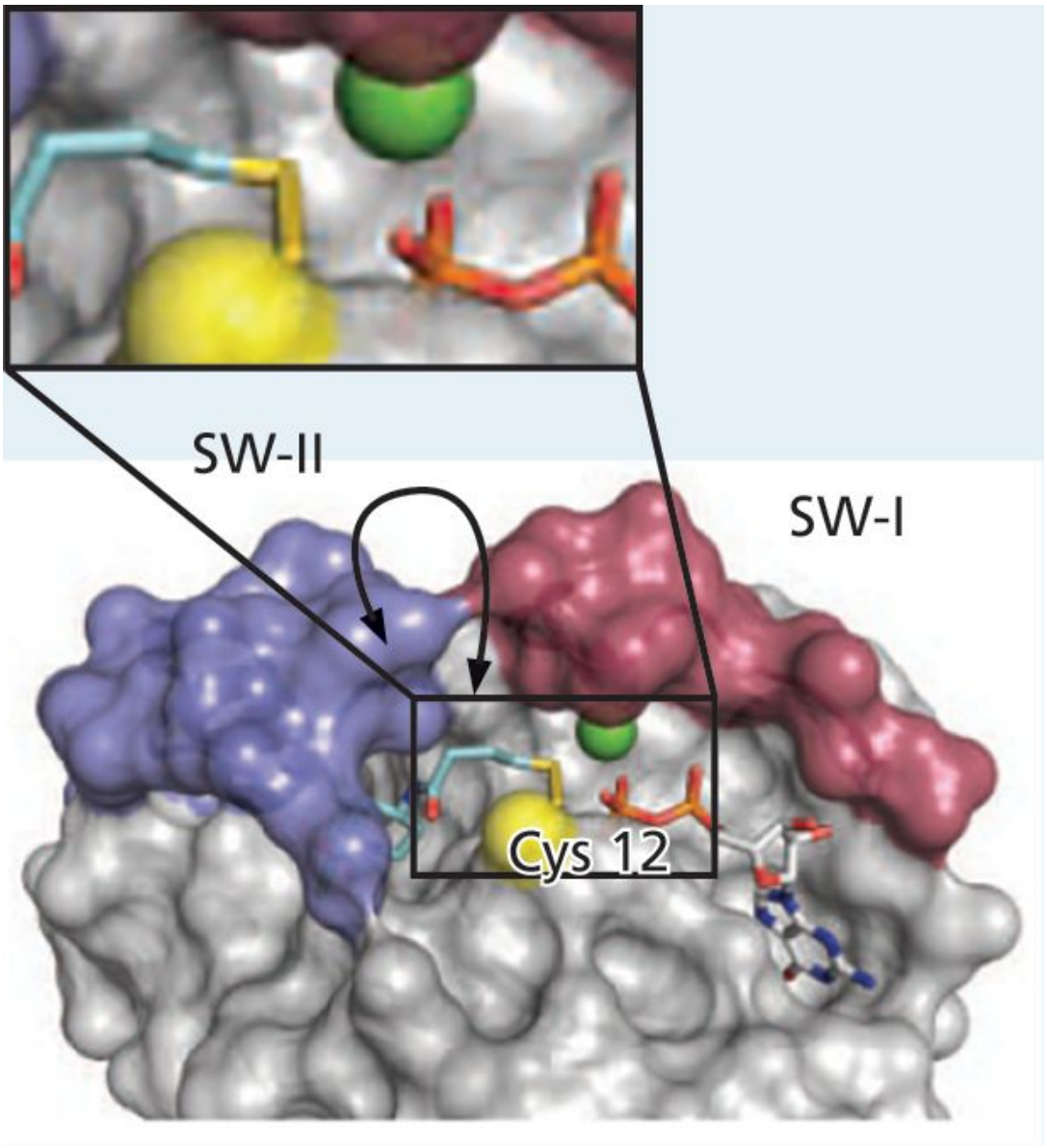
B, from B. Nagar et al., *Cancer Res*. 62:4236–4243, 2002. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, courtesy of Novartis Pharmaceuticals.)

An equally important aspect of drug development is that pre-clinical evaluations of candidate drug molecules are greatly helped if the protein has a well-defined, measurable enzymatic function that underlies its oncogenic effect (**Sidebar 17.7**).

Sidebar 17.7 Targeting the Ras Oncoprotein

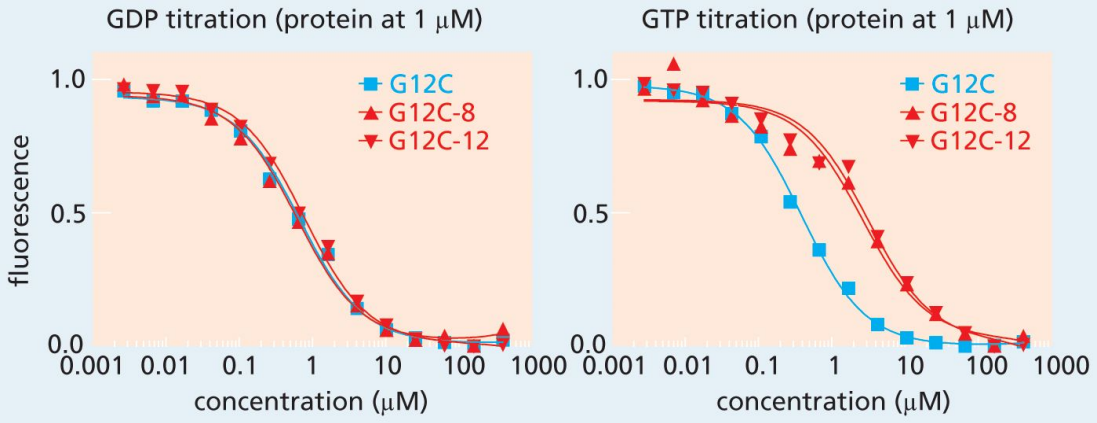
The presence of an identifiable catalytic function and apparent druggability does not, on its own, guarantee that an attractive target has been identified. Consider, for example, the case of the Ras oncoprotein, which has a clearly identifiable catalytic activity—its GTPase function. This enzymatic activity in Ras-expressing cells has never been the object of drug development because the Ras GTPase, as we learned in Section 5.10, functions as a *negative* regulator of Ras signaling. Its inhibition would only augment the already disastrous effects of the amino acid substitutions that create Ras oncoproteins in the first place. The same can be said of many tyrosine phosphatases, whose designated roles are to reverse the effects of growth-promoting tyrosine kinases (see Section 6.3), and, similarly, the activity of the PTEN phosphatase, which serves to counteract the actions of PI3K (see Figure 6.14).

Notably, although Ras has long been an undruggable target, recent work has provided a clear therapeutic strategy to target a specific allele-encoded variant of oncogenic Ras. The G12C mutation is found in non-small-cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs) developed by current and former smokers, representing ~12% of all Ras mutations in these tumors. Small-molecule-tethering experiments identified a targetable pocket in GDP-bound but not GTP-bound form of this oncoprotein. Ras (G12C) occupies this GDP-bound form more frequently than do other Ras mutants and, like all other Ras proteins, requires guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs; see Figure 6.25A) to be activated. Small drug molecules with a thiol group can bind covalently to the cysteine residue present in this mutant Ras oncoprotein and lock this protein in the GDP-bound inactive form (**Figure 17.14**). Consequently, first-in-class inhibitors of RASG12C have entered clinical trials in solid tumors that carry this mutation.



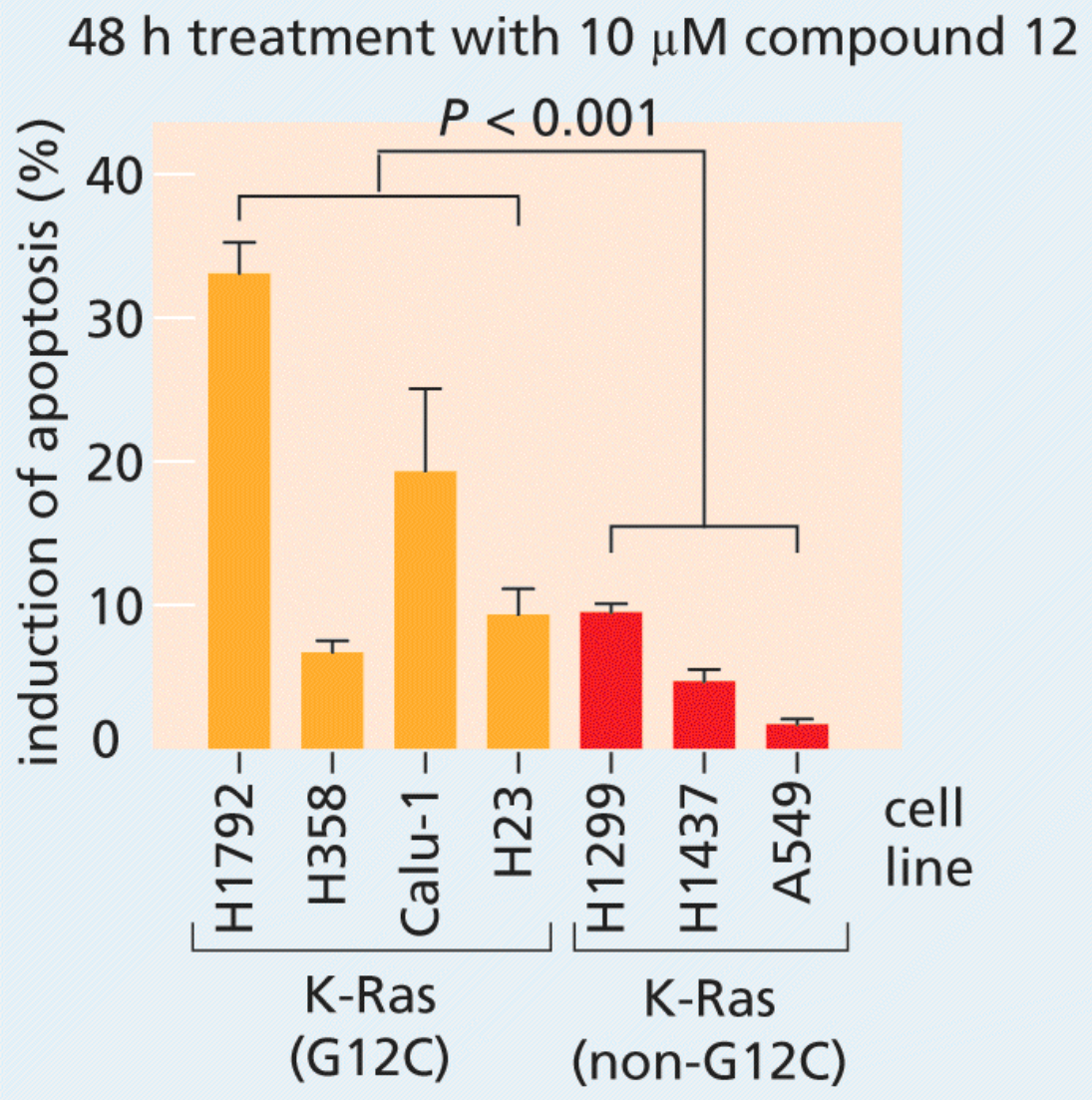
A space filling model of mutant K Ras with a molecule binding in a cleft below the S W 1 and S W 2 subunits. The molecule is interacting with C y s 12 at the base of the cleft.

(A)



Two graphs of G D P and G T P titration of proteins at 1 micromolar. Both graphs have concentration in micromolar on the x axis and fluorescence from 0 to 1 on the y axis. Three proteins are measured: G 12 C, G 12 C 8, and G 12 C 12. All curves have the same inverse S shape, starting near a fluorescence of 1 and ending near a fluorescence of 0. In the G D P titration graph, all three curves are close to each other where the steepest decrease in fluorescence occurs near a concentration of 1 micromolar. However, in the G T P titration graph, G 12 C 8 and G 12 C 12 are shifted to the right such that the steepest decrease occurs around a concentration of 8 micromolars.

(B)



A graph shows the percent induction of apoptosis after 48 hours of treatment with 10 micromolar compound 12 for different cell lines. Four cell lines have G 12 C K Ras and three cell lines have non C 12 C K Ras. These two groups have statistically different percent induction of apoptosis at the p is less than 0.001 level. In the G 12 C K Ras cell lines the percent induction of apoptosis ranges from 8 to 32. In the non G 12 C K Rad cell lines the percent induction of apoptosis is always less than 10.

(C)

Figure 17.14 Compounds that can specifically bind to oncogenic K-Ras (G12C) Certain small molecules compounds rely on the mutant cysteine residue present within mutant K-Ras (G12C; *yellow*) for binding and consequently do not interact with wild-type K-Ras. (A) Crystallographic studies of K-Ras (G12C)

show a new pocket that is beneath the effector binding switch-II region (SW-II, *purple*). Here, the small molecule inhibitor forms a disulfide bond with Cys12 of K-Ras (G12C) (shown in the blown-up image). (B) As described in Figure 6.8B, K-Ras exists in an inactive GDP-bound state and an active GTP-bound state. The graph shows GDP and GTP titration assays that measure the relative affinity of K-Ras (G12C) for GDP and GTP in the presence and absence of certain small molecule inhibitors. Binding of these compounds to K-Ras (G12C) shifts the relative nucleotide affinities of Ras to favor GDP over GTP, causing K-Ras (G12C) to accumulate in the inactive state. (C) A small molecule inhibitor of K-Ras (G12C) (here designated compound 12) preferentially induces cell death in tumor cell lines expressing K-Ras (G12C) vs. wild-type K-Ras. (A–C taken from J. M. Ostrem et al., *Nature* 503(7477):548–551, 2013. With permission from Nature.)

Proteins lacking such catalytic clefts are often dismissed as being “undruggable.” Transcription factors, for example, are widely thought (rightly or wrongly) to be undruggable, because they usually lack catalytic clefts and thus the much-sought drug-binding pockets. Hence transcription factor oncoproteins, such as Myc and Fos, are placed in the category of undruggable targets, whereas the many kinases involved in cancer formation are placed in the camp of druggable target molecules.

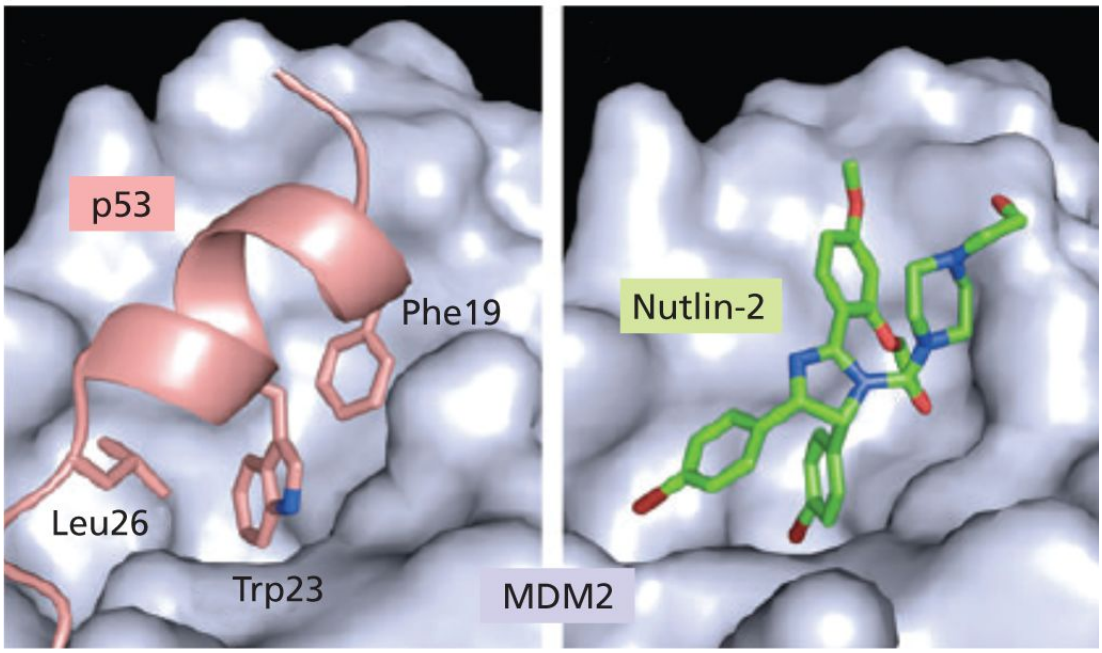
(The major exceptions to the lack of druggability of transcription factors are the nuclear hormone receptors, such as the estrogen and progesterone receptors. Because they have hormone-binding pockets, these receptor proteins are vulnerable to disruption by pseudo-ligands, such as tamoxifen, which bind and antagonize certain functions of the estrogen receptor.)

The difficulties in directly targeting transcription factors with small molecules have led to a diverse set of strategies to indirectly perturb transcription factor levels or activity. These include blocking transcription factor/co-factor interactions, disrupting transcription factor interaction with DNA or histones, or increasing the level of ubiquitylation and subsequent proteasome degradation of transcription factors. However, the impact of these approaches on cancer treatment remains largely unrealized.

The notion that molecular cavities provide attractive targets for drug development might also suggest that many types of protein–protein interactions represent druggable targets. After all, the confined space between two physically apposed proteins would seem likely to create a highly specific drug-binding pocket, and insertion of a drug into such a cavity might therefore destabilize or block the protein–protein interaction.

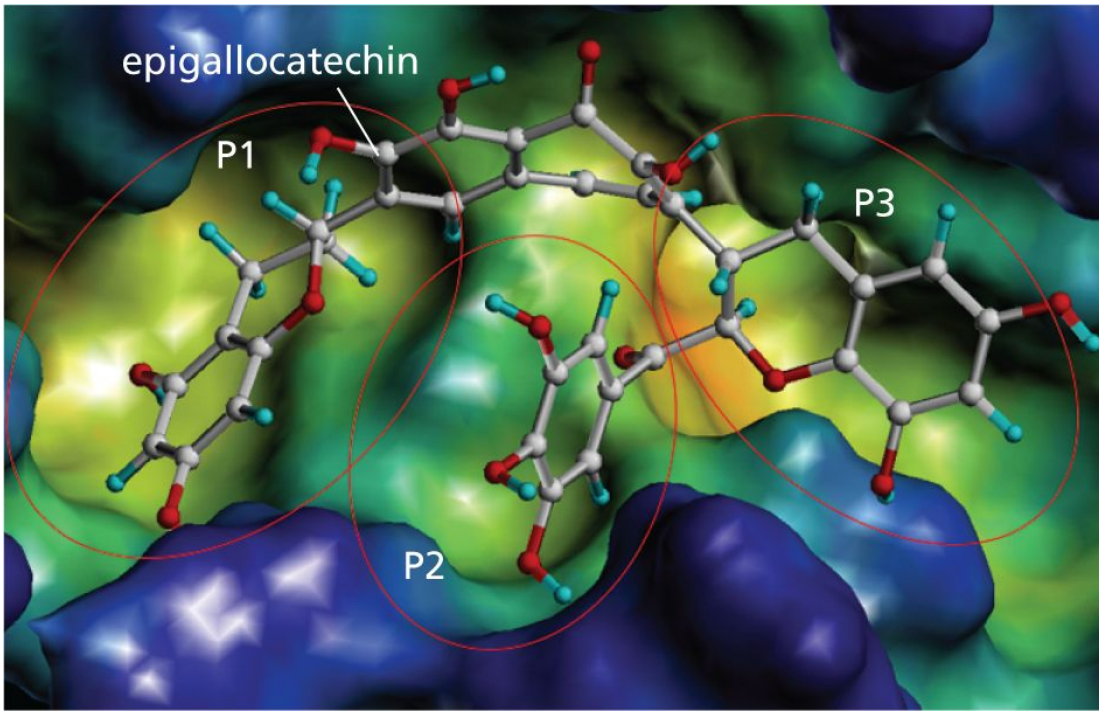
Unfortunately, most attempts at preventing these and other protein–protein associations through custom-made drug molecules have been unsuccessful. The numerous failures were rationalized as follows: the association of two proteins with one another involves multiple points of binding between their interacting faces. These points of contact extend over wide molecular domains that greatly exceed the dimensions of drug molecules, which typically have a rather low molecular weight (generally <600). Consequently, only a small fraction of the contact points between two associating proteins can be blocked by any single drug molecule, and the association as a whole remains essentially unperturbed.

An exception to this widely accepted lore was announced in late 2003, when a low–molecular-weight compound (termed *nutlin*) that inhibits formation of the Mdm2–p53 complex (see Section 9.8) was described (**Figure 17.15A**). This development meant that, in principle, the absence of functionally adequate levels of p53 protein observed in many types of human tumors—often resulting from loss of $p14^{ARF}$ expression or overexpression of Mdm2—could be reversed by drug treatment.



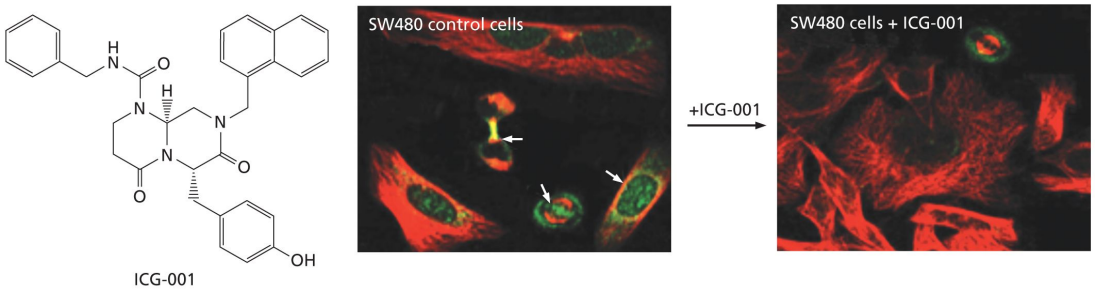
Two 3 D models show p 53 and Nutlin 2 binding within the same cleft in M D M 2. They interact with Leucine 26, Tryptophan 23, and Phenylalanine 19.

(A)



A 3 D model shows epigallocatechin binding to B c l X. Three regions of the molecule are circled and labeled P1, P2, and P3. These regions interact strongly with the protein.

(B)



The molecular structure of I C G 001 and two fluorescence microscopy images of cells with and without I C G 001. The structure consists of a two six membered ring complex at the center where each ring has two nitrogen atoms. There are side chains that branch off of this that have multiple benzene rings. The S W 480 control cells have green staining in the center. However, the S W 480 cells with I C G 001 have no green staining.

(C)

Figure 17.15 Inhibitors of protein–protein interactions (A) A search for compounds that inhibit Mdm2–p53 binding resulted in the discovery of Nutlin-2, which associates with the p53-binding pocket of Mdm2, whose surface is shown here. The usual interaction of the transactivation domain of p53 (*pink*; see Figure 9.6) with a hydrophobic cleft near the N-terminal domain of MDM2 (*gray, left*) (see Figure 9.11A) is mimicked by the Nutlin-2 molecule (*stick figure*) binding the same hydrophobic cleft of MDM2 (*right*). Nutlin-2 and closely related compounds prevent Mdm2-mediated p53 degradation and thereby act to trigger apoptosis in certain cancer cells, achieving both effects at low micromolar concentrations. (B) Some of the constituents of tea leaves induce apoptosis in tumor cells at very low concentrations. Epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG; *stick figure*) extracted from green tea binds the important anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-X_L with an inhibitory constant (K_i) of 490 nM and Bcl-2 with a K_i of 335 nM. (K_i values reflect the concentrations at which 50% of the activity of these proteins is inhibited; values in the submicromolar range are indicative of high potency.) A combination of three technologies—nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) binding assays, fluorescence polarization assays, and computational docking—was used to derive this image, which shows the docking of EGCG in three adjacent hydrophobic pockets of Bcl-X_L *(yellow* and *green)*, whose molecular surfaces are labeled P1, P2, and P3 here. These pockets together constitute a hydrophobic domain that Bcl-X_L, which is overexpressed in many cancer cells, uses to bind and neutralize pro-apoptotic BH3-only proteins (see Figures 9.26 and 9.28 and 17.27. (C) The small molecule ICG-001 *(left)* inhibits the association of the β-catenin–Tcf/Lef complex with the transcriptional co-activator CBP, a histone acetyltransferase (see Section 1.8). The transcription factor complex is responsible for inducing, among other genes, expression of the gene encoding survivin, a key inhibitor of apoptosis (IAP; see Section 9.15). As seen here, expression of survivin (*green, yellow immunofluorescence, center*) that is normally present in SW480 human colon carcinoma cells (*arrows*) is strongly reduced by the presence of ICG-001 (*right*)*;* tubulin (*red*) is used in both cases as a counterstain. The concentration of ICG-001 used in this experiment causes an approximately sixfold reduction in the activity of the survivin gene promoter (not shown). Clinical trials of ICG-001 and derivatives are ongoing. (A, from A.C. Joerger and A.R. Fersht, *Annu. Rev. Biochem*. 77:557–582, 2008. With permission from Annual Reviews. B, from M. Leone et al., *Cancer Res*. 63:8118–8121, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. C, left, from K.H. Emami et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101:12682–12687, 2004; with permission from National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.; right, from H. Ma et al., *Oncogene* 24:3619–3631, 2005. With permission from Nature.)

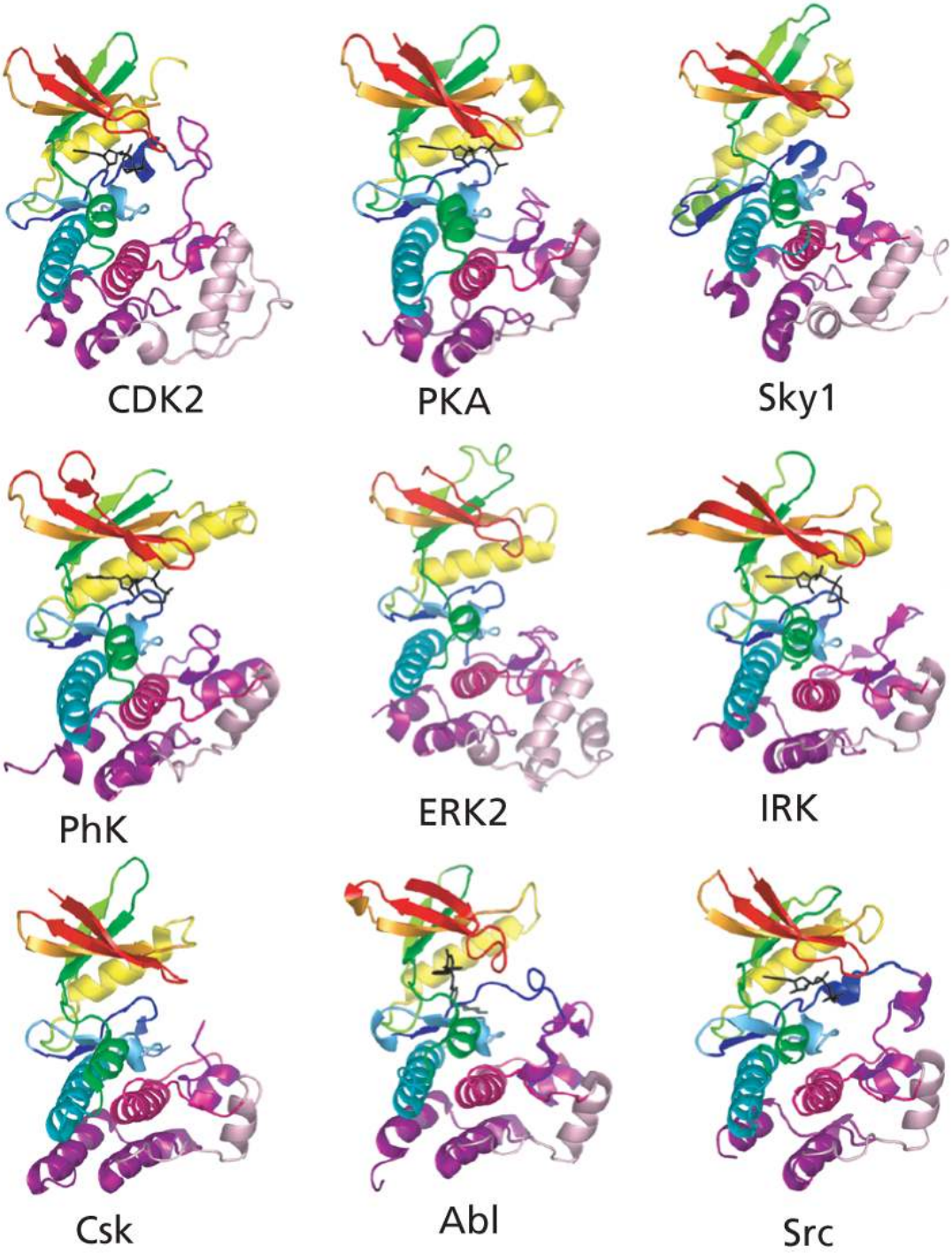
Subsequently, naturally occurring compounds isolated from green and black tea were found to block the binding and neutralization of pro-apoptotic BH3 proteins by the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L proteins, doing so at relatively low concentrations (see Figures 9.25C and 17.15B). As described in detail in Section 17.12, a synthetic inhibitor of the Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, and Bcl-w proteins was generated that associates with these anti-apoptotic proteins with a binding affinity of approximately 1 nM—more than two orders-of-magnitude more avid than the tea compound. An additional compound, ICG-001, identified through high-throughput screening (HTS; **Supplementary Sidebar 17.6**), was found to be capable of inhibiting the association of β-catenin with CBP (cyclic AMP response element–binding protein), a widely acting transcriptional co-activator that works in the cell nucleus with β-catenin to induce expression of key genes, including the gene encoding survivin (see Table 9.4), an important anti-apoptotic IAP protein (see Figure 17.15C), as well as cyclin D1. Both ICG-001 and a 20-fold more potent derivative, termed PRI-724, have entered into clinical trials for treatment of leukemias and carcinomas of the colon and pancreas. Other obvious candidates for such inhibition were the several types of cyclin–Cdk pairs, whose actions drive the proliferation of all cancer cells (see Figure 8.10).

In the years that followed these pioneering efforts, successes have been reported in targeting an increasing number of other protein–protein interactions. Included among these are the interactions between Sos and Ras (see Sections 6.2 and 6.4); the ligand–receptor interactions between VEGF and PDGF and their respective receptors (see Section 5.6); and interactions between bromodomain-containing proteins with histones (see Section 1.8), VHL with HIF1α, and MLL with Menin (see Table 7.1).

These successes notwithstanding, kinases still reign supreme among the classes of cellular molecules that are attractive, druggable targets for anti-cancer therapy. As we have seen in Chapters 5 and 6, many of these kinases function as oncoproteins that act to drive neoplastic proliferation and, at the same time, are enzymes possessing well-defined catalytic clefts. Recall that at least 518 distinct kinase-encoding genes have been enumerated in the human genome, of which 90 encode tyrosine kinases (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.7**), which are major players in many kinds of human cancer.

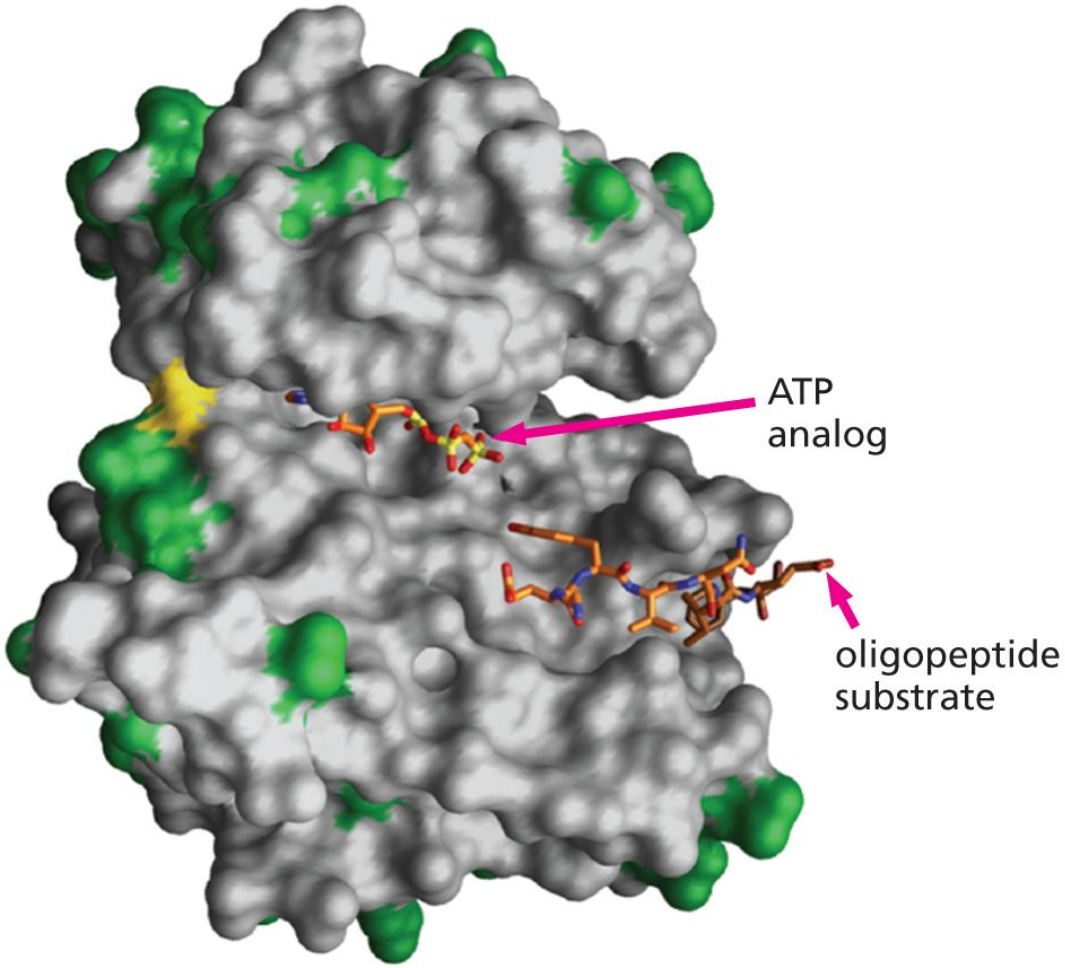
For some cancer researchers, this multiplicity of potentially druggable cancer targets represents an embarrassment of riches. However, for pharmaceutical chemists, numbers like these create a nightmare. Because almost all protein kinases are evolutionarily related (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.7**), their catalytic clefts are structurally quite similar (**Figure 17.16A**). The similarity is even more striking among the clefts of the more closely related tyrosine kinases (Figure 17.16B) that are involved in cancer pathogenesis. How can one possibly develop agents that specifically affect

the actions of certain cancer-associated kinases, while leaving untouched the kinases required for normal cell proliferation and survival? Rational drug design and high-throughput screening, both described below, attempt to address these issues.



A series of ribbon diagrams show the structures of nine kinases. They include C D K 2, P K A, Sky 1, P h K, E R K 2, I R K, C s k, A b l, and S r c. All the

structures look very similar with multiple domains but slightly different conformations.
(A)



A 3 D model shows a protein that is mostly gray with a few protrusions on the outer edges shaded green. In the central cleft, an A T P analog is bound. The structure of an oligopeptide substrate is also shown.

(B)

Figure 17.16 Similar structures of kinases (A) The difficulty of producing a specific kinase inhibitor is suggested by the striking similarities in structure of a variety of serine/threonine and tyrosine kinases. Depicted here as ribbon diagrams are the kinase domains of five serine/threonine kinases: CDK2 (see Chapter 8), PKA (cyclic AMP-regulated protein kinase A), Sky1 (SR-protein–specific kinase

of budding yeast, a serine kinase involved in yeast nuclear RNA processing), PhK (phosphorylase kinase involved in glycogen metabolism), and ERK2 (extracellular-regulated kinase of the MAPK cascade; see Section 6.5); as well as four tyrosine kinase (TK) domains: IRK (insulin receptor kinase), Csk (C-terminal Src kinase), Abl (see Figure 17.13), and Src (see Section 5.2). In all cases, the catalytic clefts of these kinases are sandwiched between the two major lobes (N- and C-terminal, above and below, respectively) of these proteins. (B) An extreme example of the structural similarities between related kinases is illustrated by this surface diagram comparing the catalytic clefts and adjacent amino acid residues of the tyrosine kinase domains of the insulin receptor (IR; see the IRK of panel A) and the insulin-like growth factor receptor (IGF-1R). Identical amino acid residues are in *gray* and dissimilar ones are in *green*. These structures show how very similar the catalytic regions of the two TK domains are and it explains why it was difficult to find inhibitors of one tyrosine kinase receptor that do not affect the other. A threonine in the peptide linking the two lobes of the kinases is shown in *yellow*, and stick figures (*multicolor*) of an ATP analog and an oligopeptide substrate (*right*) are also shown. Almost all TK antagonist drugs bind in the ATP-binding sites of the kinases that they inhibit. (A, courtesy of N.M. Haste and S.S. Taylor. B, from S. Favelyukis et al., *Nat. Struct. Biol*. 8:1058–1063, 2001. With permission from Nature.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

oncogene addiction
: (1) The physiological state of a cancer cell in which it continues to be dependent for its proliferation or survival on the ongoing function of a certain oncogene, usually a mutant oncogene, often long after the oncogene has been acquired during the course of multi-step tumorigenesis. (2) More generally, ongoing dependence on any type of previously acquired genetic or epigenetic alteration.

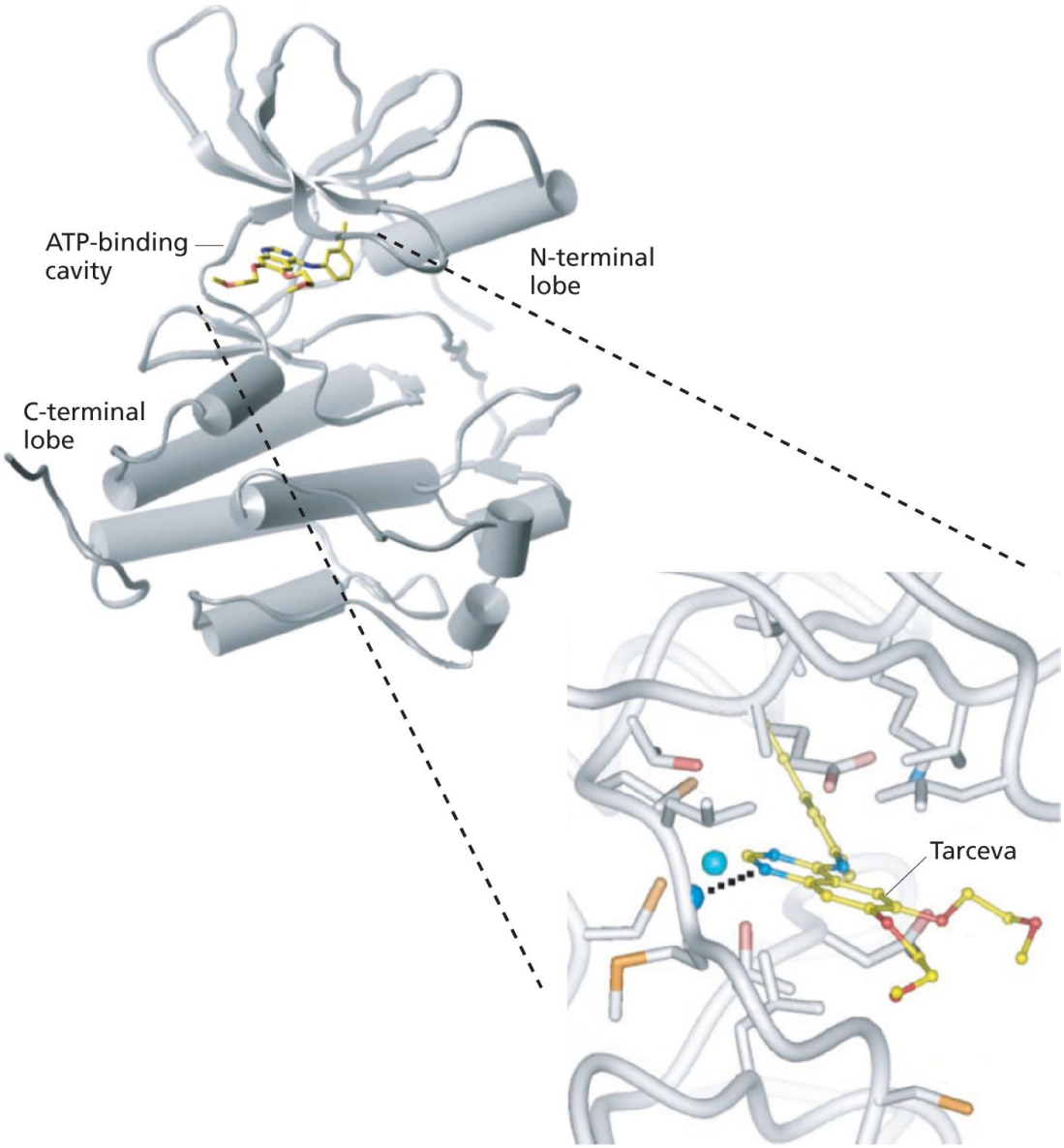
druggable
: Referring to a molecular species, such as a protein, that has the structural and functional properties suggesting that low–molecular-weight therapeutic drug compounds can be developed that specifically interact with and perturb its functioning; the structural properties include, most prominently, a drug-binding pocket that should permit high-affinity, multivalent associations between a drug molecule and the targeted protein.

therapeutic index
: (pl., **indices**) The ratio of the concentration of a drug that elicits an unacceptable level of toxicity compared with the concentration of the drug that elicits a desirable therapeutic response.

OceanofPDF.com

17.6 Pharmaceutical chemists can generate and explore the biochemical properties of a wide array of potential drugs

The ideology of “rational drug design,” as it is often called, embraces the notions that (1) drugs should be targeted against specific proteins known to be malfunctioning within cells, thereby contributing in functionally critical ways to a disease state; (2) the candidacy of these proteins as attractive targets for therapeutic intervention should be determined by their predicted druggability; and (3) the detailed molecular structures of such target proteins should inform the design of the chemical structures of the drugs that are to be developed. More specifically, chemical species must be synthesized whose detailed three-dimensional structures (that is, whose stereochemistry) enable them to fit, in a key-in-lock fashion, into specific pockets or sites within the far larger proteins that they are supposed to attack and disable (**Figure 17.17**).



Two diagrams show Tarceva binding in the A T P binding cavity of the E G F receptor tyrosine kinase. The cavity is between the C terminal lobe and the N terminal lobe.

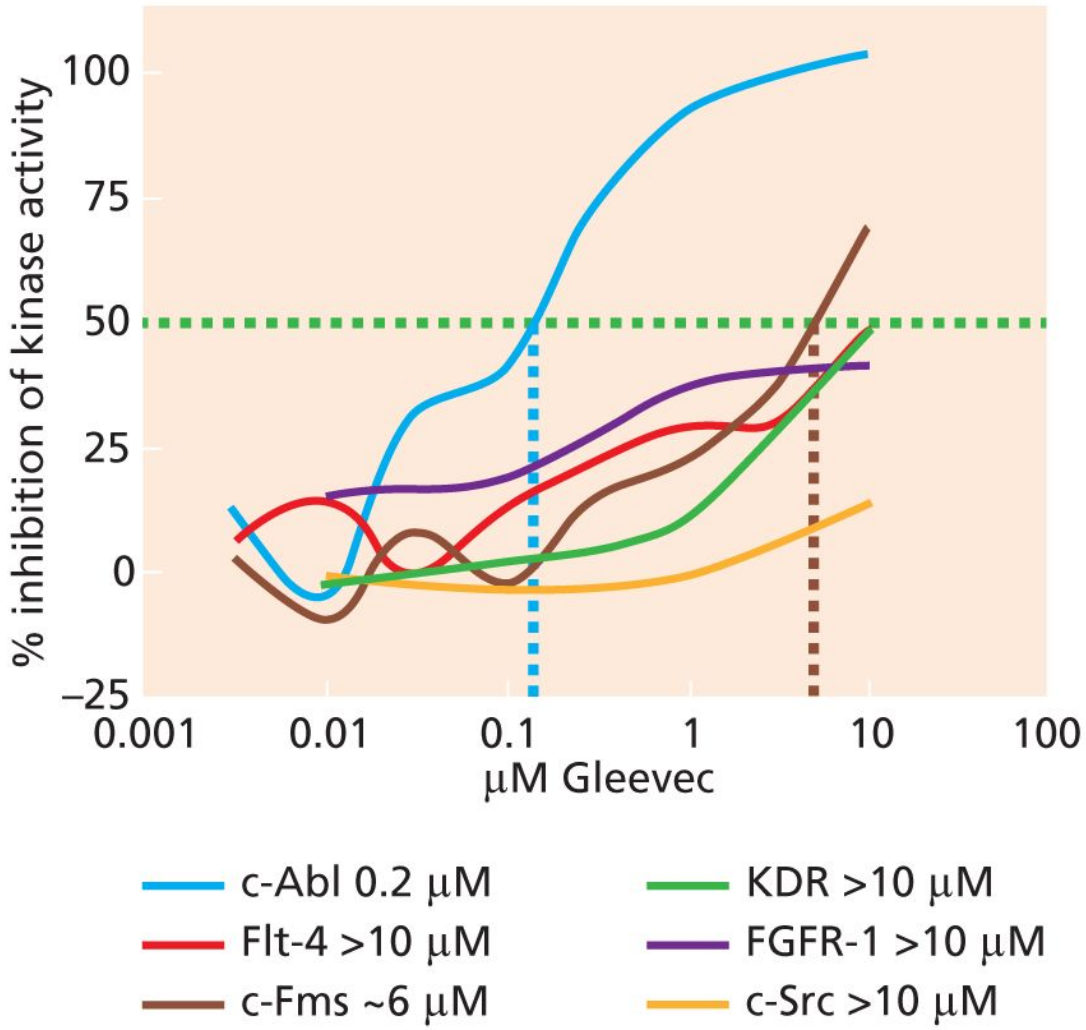
Figure 17.17 Tarceva and the inhibition of the EGF receptor kinase domain This model of the catalytic cleft of the EGF receptor tyrosine kinase (TK) domain, derived by X-ray crystallography, shows how the drug Tarceva fits snugly within the ATP-binding cavity of the cleft and in this way inhibits receptor signaling. The three-dimensional complementarity between drug and targeted protein is necessary for drug binding but not sufficient, because specific bonding, largely achieved through the formation of hydrogen bonds (*dashed line*), must occur between the drug molecule and amino acids lining the drug-binding pocket (see,

for example, Figure 17.13C). A water molecule (*light blue sphere*) that is hydrogen-bonded to the Tarceva molecule is also shown. (From J. Stamos, M.X. Sliwkowski and C. Eigenbrot, *J. Biol. Chem*. 277:46265–46272, 2002. © 2002 ASBMB. This article is available under a Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY 4.0) license.)

In principle, knowledge of the detailed structure of a potential drug-binding cavity in a targeted protein should allow a skilled synthetic organic chemist to design and synthesize a molecule that not only fits snugly into this cavity but also forms multiple noncovalent bonds with the amino acids lining its walls. According to this logic, the more bonds are formed, the higher the specificity and strength of binding of the candidate drug compound by the targeted protein. This purely theoretical route for designing a novel drug structure has led to some notable successes, including the development of the B-Raf inhibitor vemurafenib, the BCL-2 inhibitor venetoclax, and the CDK4 inhibitor ribociclib. However, these successes have been the exception, not the rule, for cancer drug development. For this reason, current drug discovery generally relies on more empirical ways of finding useful molecular structures, involving surveys of hundreds of thousands of compounds via high-throughput screening (HTS; **Supplementary Sidebar 17.8**).

Imagine that HTS has yielded a drug molecule that inhibits the activity of a targeted protein in living cells, doing so at an IC_{50} in the 10 to 100 micromolar range (that is, drug concentrations in this range are required for 50% inhibition of the activity of the targeted protein). Further development of this particular drug becomes unrealistic, given the massive amounts of this agent that would need to be delivered into a patient's body in order to achieve a desired therapeutic effect. The chemical properties of this molecular species may or may not allow derivatization (the synthesis of chemically modified derivatives of this compound) that yields a molecule with IC_{50} potency in the nanomolar concentration range, which is the prerequisite for drugs that are introduced into the clinic (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.8**).

If such a drug is indeed successfully synthesized, the ensuing pre-clinical testing involves measurements of the drug's *relative* effects on its intended target compared with its off-target effects on other, similar proteins in the cell. The goal here is to determine whether the drug acts selectively by inhibiting the targeted protein at drug concentrations that are substantially below (10- to 100-fold) those affecting other similar proteins in the cell (**Figure 17.18**). (In truth, given the 20,000 or more distinct protein structures present in mammalian cells, these measurements do not preclude possible effects on structurally unrelated proteins that may, through happenstance, also be affected by an agent under development.)



A line graph shows the dose response curves of Gleevec with six different tyrosine kinase enzymes. On the x axis is the micromoles of Gleevec on a log scale from 0.001 to 100. On the y axis is the percent inhibition of kinase activity. The lines all follow different trajectories, often rising and falling multiple times. Dashed lines indicate that c A b l reaches 50 percent inhibition at a concentration of 0.2 micromolar Gleevec. Other dashed lines indicate that c F m s reaches 50 percent inhibition at a concentration of approximately 6 micromolar Gleevec. All other kinases reach 50 percent inhibition at greater than 10 micromolar Gleevec.

Figure 17.18 Dose response curves of Gleevec The ability to inhibit a targeted protein without affecting other, related cellular proteins is critical to the success of therapy, making possible therapeutic responses without undesired side-effect toxicities. Here we see the responses of a group of six tyrosine kinase (TK) enzymes to the drug Gleevec (see Figure 17.13). In all cases, the kinase activity of the purified enzymes in solution was measured. Note that the graph was

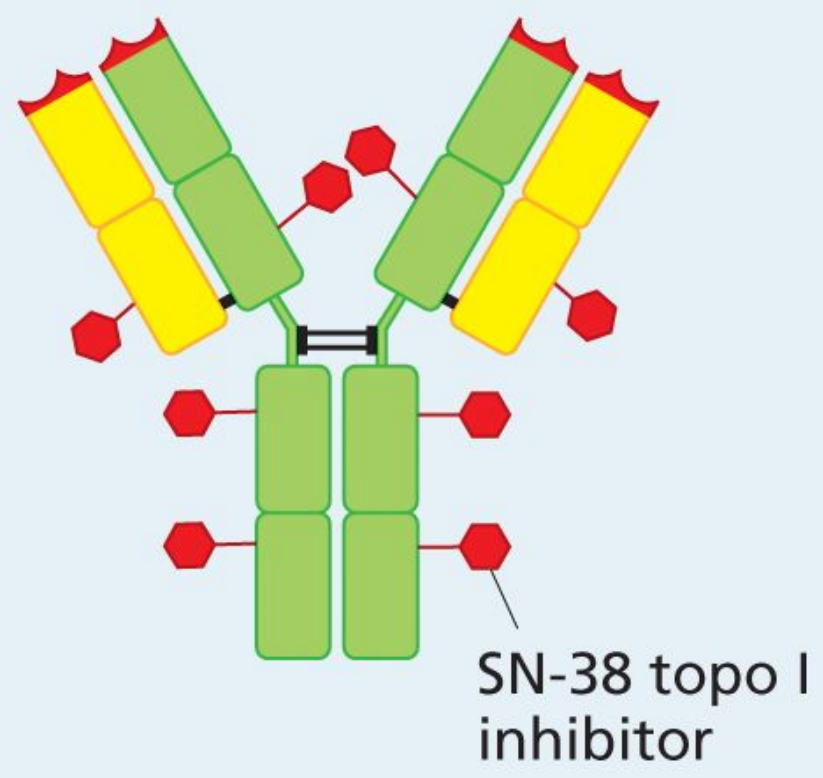
constructed using the log of Gleevec concentration on the abscissa; the percent of inhibition of catalytic activity is plotted linearly on the ordinate. A level of 50% inhibition is indicated by the *green dashed horizontal line*. At a concentration of approximately 0.2 μM (*blue dashed vertical line*), 50% of c-Abl enzyme activity was inhibited, whereas comparable inhibition of the c-Fms TK occurred only at a concentration of ~6 μM (*brown dashed vertical line*). Under these conditions, the c-Src TK was hardly inhibited at all. (Courtesy of Novartis Pharmaceuticals.)

In the case of tyrosine kinase inhibitors, which are the focus of much current anti-cancer drug development, new experimental strategies are being developed to enable the screening of a large portion of the kinases that might possibly be affected by a candidate drug inhibitor. Technologies like the one described in **Supplementary Sidebar 17.8** greatly accelerate the rate at which large numbers of candidate drugs can be tested against a wide spectrum of these enzymes. As we will see later, discovering off-target activities of a drug, which is enabled by screens such as this one, is actually useful in two ways: (1) It may explain toxicities of a drug—undesired side effects in tissues other than the targeted tumor; and (2) it may reveal new clinical applications for the drug, because the drug may be found to inhibit an enzyme, such as a kinase, that is active in a type of tumor that was not targeted during the initial drug development (**Sidebar 17.8**).

Sidebar 17.8 Linking cancer drugs together

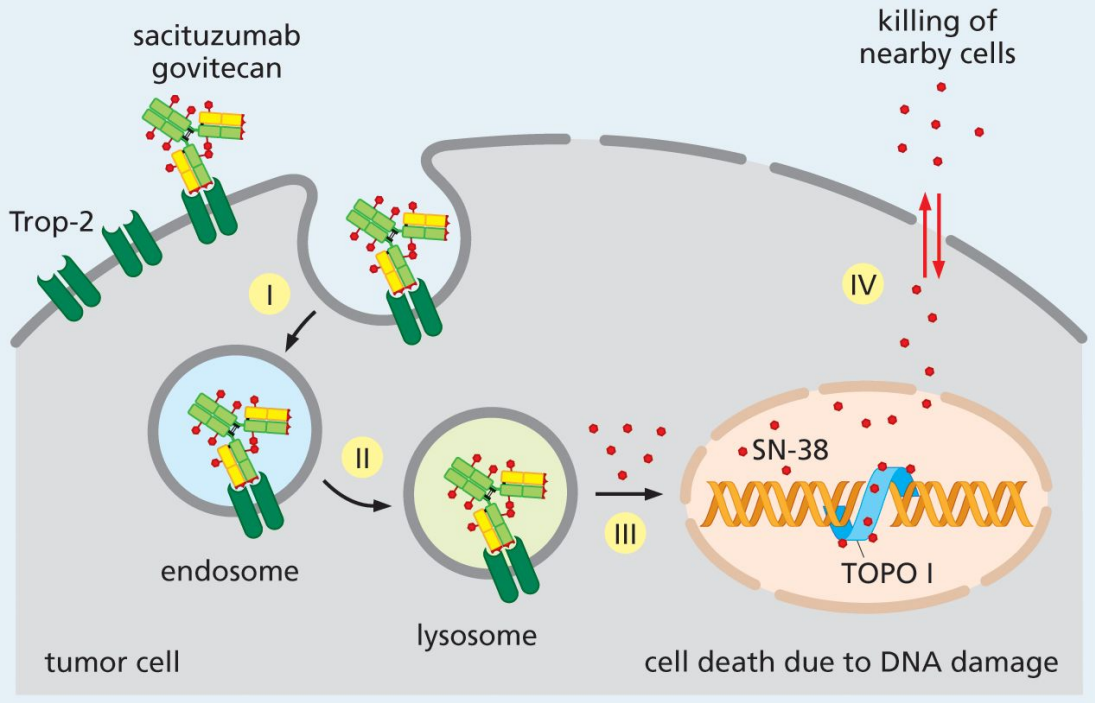
In addition to drug derivatization, another type of drug engineering involves the physical linking, usually via covalent bonds of multiple agents to produce combinatorial effects. The potential benefit of such an approach is twofold. First, it can ensure that both constituent agents are present in a target tumor cell at a desired stoichiometric ratio. Second, if one component of the conjugate can provide tumor targeting, a second, more toxic, drug can be delivered specifically to tumor cells (while sparing normal cells). An example of this approach, discussed in Chapter 16, is the development of antibody–drug conjugates targeting the transmembrane glycoprotein Trop-2—a protein found on the surface of many epithelial tumors. As discussed previously in this text (see Figure 4.3), monoclonal antibodies (most notably those targeting Her2/neu) are a central component of combination drug regimens used for the treatment of breast cancers, that is, breast tumors that overexpress this protein. However, these regimens are generally unsuccessful in the treatment of metastatic breast cancer, and resistance to antibody therapy can arise in primary tumors through multiple alternative mechanisms. Similar to trastuzumab (anti-Her2/neu)-chemotherapy conjugates described in Chapter 16, the antibody–drug conjugate sacituzumab govitecan (or Trodelvy), an antibody–drug conjugate that links hRS7 (a Trop-2 antibody) to SN-38, a topoisomerase I poison has been approved for the

treatment of metastatic breast cancer. In this case, hRS7 binding to Trop-2 promotes receptor-mediated internalization of the conjugate, followed by release of the SN-38 “payload” (**Figure 17.19**). Thus, high doses of a chemotherapy that would typically elicit toxic effects in nonmalignant cells can be more specifically delivered to tumor cells. This agent has extended survival in disseminated, treatment-refractory breast cancer and represents one of a large number of antibody-targeted therapies that are currently in clinical development. These therapies provide some hope for alternatives to the standard systemic treatment of cytotoxic chemotherapy and its accompanying side effects.



A diagram of a Y shaped antibody with S N 38 topo 1 inhibitors bound to it.

(A)



A diagram shows the process of an antibody drug conjugate killing a tumor cell. The antibody drug conjugate labeled sacituzumab govitecan binds to a Trop 2 receptor on the tumor cell membrane. The antibody drug conjugate is brought into the cell in an endosome. The endosome becomes a lysosome. This releases S N 38 molecules which enter the nucleus and inhibit TOPO 1. This causes cell death due to D N A damage. S N 38 molecules are released and go on to kill nearby cells.

(B)

Figure 17.19 Targeting chemotherapy to cancer cells (A) Multiple copies of the topoisomerase I poison SN-38 (*pink dots*), are bound to an antibody molecule targeting Trop-2, a surface protein displayed on the surface of many epithelial tumor cells. This antibody–drug conjugate, termed sacituzumab govitecan (Trodelvy), has been approved for clinical treatment of patients suffering from metastatic triple-negative breast cancer. SN-38 molecules are tethered to the Trop-2 antibody with a stoichiometric ratio of 7.6 to 1, allowing elevated levels of the cytotoxic chemotherapy compound to be delivered, as a payload, to individual cancer cells. (B) I. Upon engaging the Trop-2 cell-surface protein, the antibody–drug conjugate is internalized into the tumor cell via endosomal trafficking. II. The linker joining SN-38 to the antibody is hydrolyzed in the lumen of an endosome. III. SN-38 molecules are released, enter the nucleus, and inhibit topoisomerase I (TOPO I), yielding cell killing. IV. SN-38 molecules are released from the dying cell to enter and kill nearby cancer cells via “bystander effect

killing." (Adapted from https://www.futuremedicine.com/doi/10.2217/fon-2020-0163. H.S. Rugo et al., *Future Oncol*. 16, 2020. With permission from Hope S. Rugo.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

stereochemistry
: Description of the three-dimensional structure of a molecule (such as a protein or drug) and the influence that this structure exerts on the chemical behavior or biochemical function of the molecule.

derivatization
: The alteration via synthetic organic chemistry of the molecular structure of an existing drug molecule, usually through the covalent linkage of side groups, and undertaken with the intention of improving its pharmacological properties.

OceanofPDF.com

17.7 Drug candidates and their targets must be examined in cell models as an initial measurement of their utility in whole organisms

The early development of cytotoxic chemotherapy occurred with little understanding of the mechanisms of action of these agents. Instead, the ability of these agents to preferentially kill cancer as opposed to normal cells was sufficient on its own to warrant exploration of their clinical potential as cancer therapeutics. In contrast, the generation of rationally targeted therapies involves two independent but converging lines of experimentation that are used to support continued pre-clinical development.

The first and more recent of these involves the use of genetic tools to explore the potential effects of targeting a particular protein in distinct cellular contexts, that is, inactivating this protein through directed alteration of its encoding gene. This process has been significantly enabled by the development of gene suppression tools, such as RNA interference and, more significantly, gene editing using CRISPR/Cas9 systems adapted from prokaryotes. The ability to genetically inactivate or entirely eliminate the expression of any gene of interest enables one to identify cell vulnerabilities in diverse cellular contexts. Thus, the knockout of a gene of interest creates a model of what would likely happen in a cell or tissue if a drug completely inactivated the functions of its encoded protein product. Moreover, this approach can determine whether cells from various tumor types or bearing particular genetic alterations are more or less sensitized to the loss of a particular gene function (**Sidebar 17.9**).

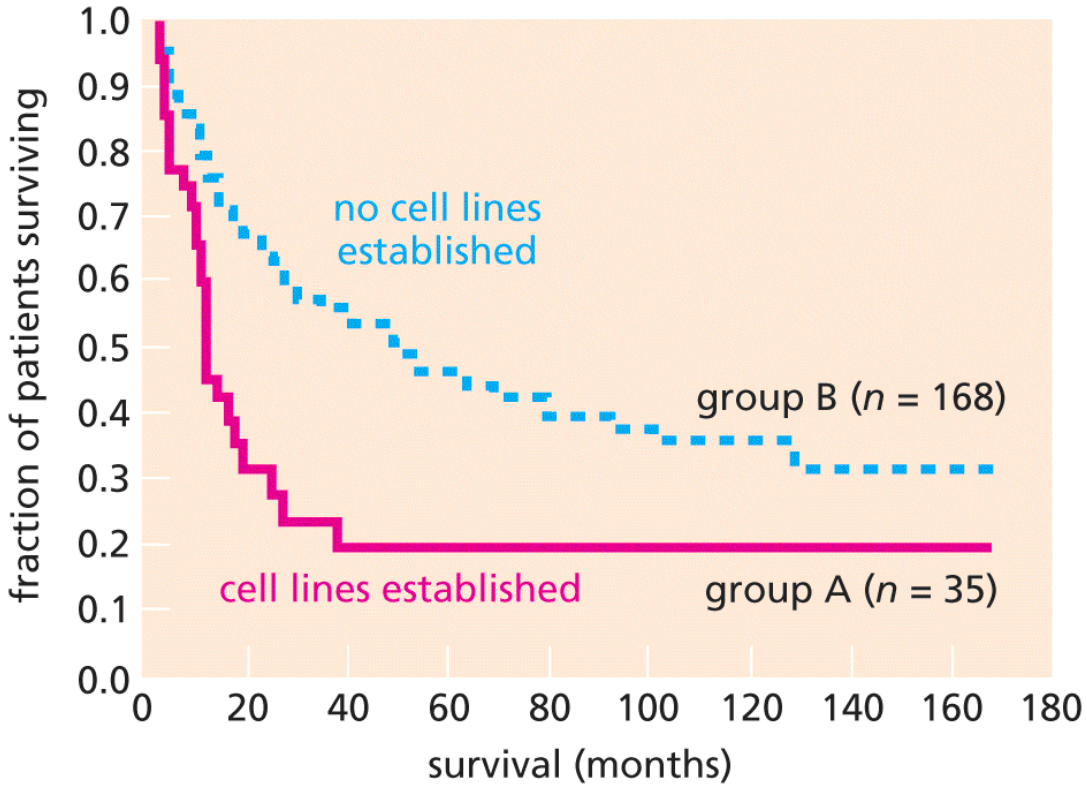
Sidebar 17.9 Systematic screening and the Cancer Dependency Map

In a more ambitious effort applying gene-editing tools to survey cancer-related genes, large-scale projects like the DepMap (or Cancer Dependency Map) have used CRISPR/Cas9 to systematically disrupt all genes in the human genome in each of a large collection of human tumor cell lines, doing so in order to identify specific genes whose continued function is critical to the proliferation or viability of the cells forming each of these cell lines. This expansive database now includes information examining over 27,000 genes in 1811 cell lines derived from 35 distinct primary diseases. Data from these efforts can not only validate the choice of a particular protein as a target for

future development but can also identify specific contexts, such as classes of cancers, in which the drug may be most effective.

The powers of the DepMap, as described above, can help address major questions of pre-clinical cancer research, notably whether targeting a particular protein would have an effect in treating a particular cancer, and which particular tumor types and patients would benefit from treatment with one or another drug. Still, this approach does have some notable limitations. For example, the cellular consequences of eliminating a protein from cells, as revealed by CRISPR/Cas9-mediated gene editing, may be dramatically different from those incurred by small molecule drug inhibition of the same protein from such cells. In addition, this approach only models cancer cell-intrinsic effects of a particular therapeutic drug, while failing to register drug effects on tumor-associated stromal cells, whose functions may also contribute in critical ways to the responses of the tumor as a whole. Finally, the DepMap, at least in its initial incarnation, focuses on cancer cell lines propagated *ex vivo*, some of which deviate significantly from corresponding cancer cells prepared directly from tumors, raising the question of the possibly limited utility in predicting drug sensitivities of various types of cancer cells.

The second major line of pre-clinical experimentation and certainly the more time-honored and established strategy—involves determination of the effects of drugs on cancer cells propagated in tissue culture. Here, the choice of cultured cells represents a major challenge (see also Sidebar 13.2). Many cell lines have been propagated in culture as pure populations for many years, often decades. As a prominent example, many small molecules were initially evaluated in a set of 60 human cancer cell lines established by the National Cancer Institute as standard reagents to be used for gauging the efficacy of candidate anti-cancer agents. Many of the cell lines from this "NCI-60 cell lines" panel are not representative of neoplasms encountered routinely in the cancer clinic because they derive from particularly aggressive human tumors that yielded cells that were especially adaptable to extended propagation in tissue culture (as shown in **Figure 17.20**). Other cancer cell lines have, almost inevitably, evolved in culture far beyond the ancestral cells that were originally removed from actual human tumors; consider that the cells in such lines have been selected for optimal proliferation under *in vitro* conditions that differ profoundly from those in living tissues.



A graph of the survival of cancer patients from which cells were extracted. Survival in months is on the x axis and the fraction of patients surviving is on the y axis. For the 35 patients where cell lines were established, the fraction of patients surviving drops quickly to 0.2 by 20 months, and from there it stays constant. For the 168 patients where no cell lines were established, the fraction of patients surviving drops more slowly to 0.3 by 130 months, and from there it stays constant.

Figure 17.20 Cancer cell lines as representatives of human tumors Many researchers have attempted to create cancer cell lines by extracting cells from human tumors and adapting them to culture. Their experience, largely anecdotal, is that only the most malignant cancer cells can be propagated *in vitro*, yielding cancer cell lines. This notion has finally been tested systematically in a 12-year-long study in which the esophageal carcinoma cells of 203 patients were introduced into culture. Of these, only 35 cell lines (derived from about 17% of the tumors) became established in culture. The patients whose tumors were in this group (group A) experienced a far worse clinical progression (*red line*) than did those whose cells failed to adapt to culture (group B; *blue line*). This study illustrates graphically why tumor xenografts produced from established cancer cell lines usually fail to recapitulate the properties of the tumors typically encountered in a cancer clinic (because the cancer cell lines usually derive from tumors at the far end of the clinical spectrum—the most aggressive subset). (From Y. Shimada

et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 9:243–249, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

This situation has now changed. The ability to culture diverse sets of tumor-derived cells has evolved rapidly over the past two decades. In particular, the use of specialized media and co-cultured stromal support cells has made it possible to propagate *in vitro* a diverse set of tumor cell types that previously resisted propagation in culture. These advances have enabled systematic efforts to catalog the effects of large sets of cancer drugs on an increasing number of cancer cells. These efforts, which include the Cancer Cell Line Encyclopedia (CCLE) and the Genomics of Drug Sensitivity in Cancer (GDSC), now serve as general resources for evaluating the efficacy and specificity of cancer drugs in an extended array of cancer cells with defined genetic alterations.

Additionally, the ability to grow tumor cells in three-dimensional clusters, termed organoids (see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.9**), has made it possible to replicate more closely the treatment conditions experienced by neoplastic cells growing in tumors *in vivo*. In certain cases, the cancer cells growing in organoids exhibit dramatic differences in drug response relative to their behavior when grown in two-dimensional culture. These advances in cell propagation technology now allow a greater diversity of tumor types bearing a broad set of underlying mutations to be examined in the context of new therapies. However, the adaptation of cells to growth in culture, even when performed rapidly and in carefully orchestrated contexts, is likely to be accompanied by significant changes in the cultured cells that are likely to affect drug responses (**Sidebar 17.10**).

Sidebar 17.10 Pitfalls in identifying proteins and signaling pathways for pharmacological targeting

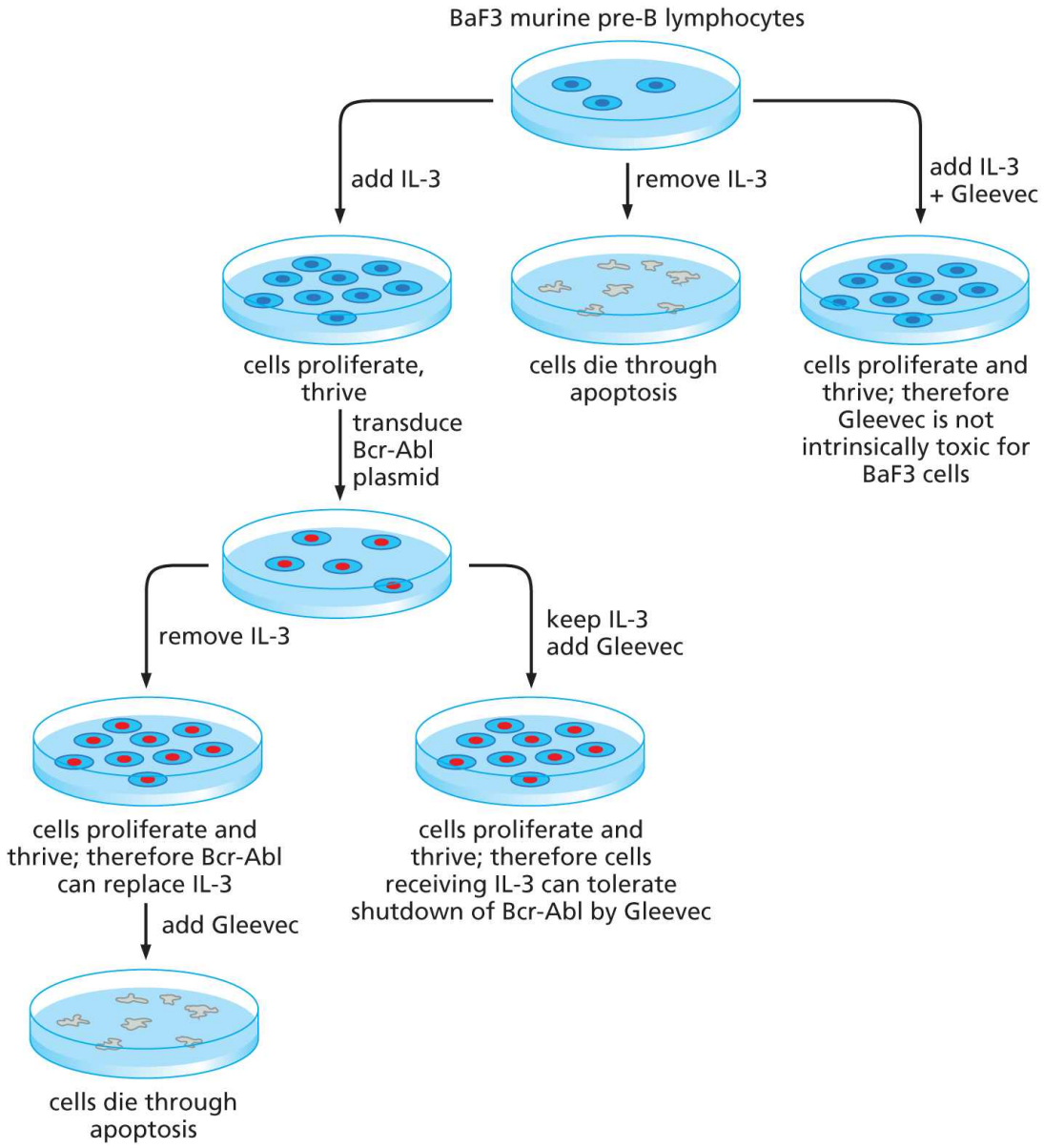
Identifying a protein or pathway as a good cancer target for anti-cancer drug development is a challenging, but critically important, task. Thus, the landscape of anti-cancer drug development projects is strewn with many that ultimately failed. How can one avoid the pitfalls that have determined the fate of these projects? Here, lessons can be learned from the development of the failed projects. Especially instructive is the history of developing inhibitors of the hedgehog (Hh) signaling pathway (see Figures 5.17 and 6.22C). Hedgehog signaling plays a key role in organismal development and cell differentiation, and defects in this pathway lead to aberrant development of a diverse set of organisms. Analysis of Hedgehog signaling in various types of tumors suggested a role for this pathway in the growth, proliferation, and invasion of individual tumor cells. Indeed, it was postulated that Hh inhibitors might have efficacy in more than 25% of all human cancers. As a result, at least 10 different Hh pathway-

inhibiting small molecules (that is, drug molecules of specific structure) were generated by drug companies using organic chemistry synthesis. Based on extensive pre-clinical testing in cancer cell lines and animal models, 86 human clinical trials were ultimately launched. However, except for a small subset of basal cell carcinomas of the skin and medulloblastomas (many adult-onset versions bear activating mutations in the Hh pathway), Hh inhibitors failed to yield any clinical benefit.

So where precisely did the pre-clinical studies go wrong? Although many issues have played a role in the lack of success of these agents, one clear and major contributor was the data generated from studies examining the effects of candidate drugs on tumor cells lines propagated in culture. Tumor cell lines were generally treated with very high doses of Hh pathway inhibitors, significantly higher than those necessary to inhibit signaling through the Hh pathway. As a direct consequence, many of the observed effects of these agents were related to nonspecific or Hh-independent effects, and comparable doses (as gauged by drug concentrations delivered *in vivo*) could not be physiologically achieved in patients. Here, one wonders whether genetic studies validating the dependency of specific tumor cell lines on this pathway using gene editing technology that is currently feasible may have halted the drug development process at an earlier juncture, long before costly clinical studies were considered and implemented.

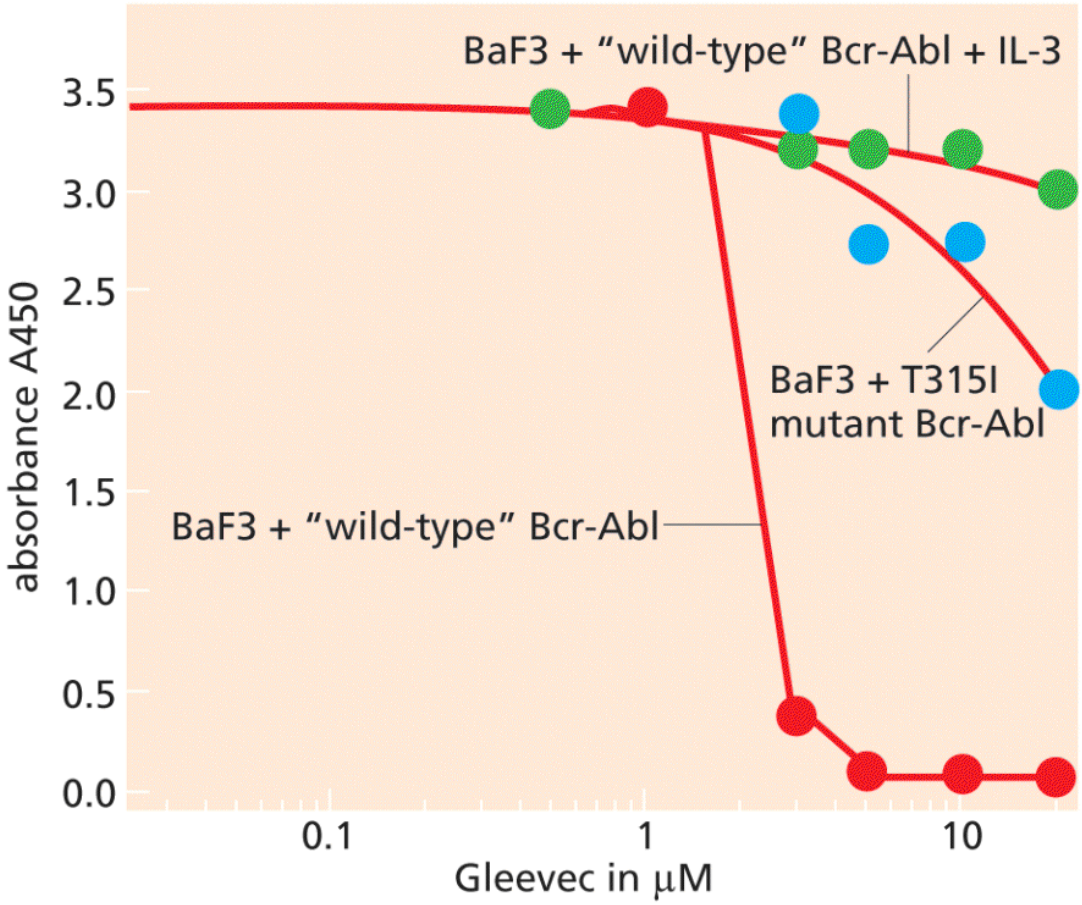
Cell culture studies are generally undertaken after biochemical studies have validated drug–target interactions, that is, the engagement of a candidate drug molecule by an identified protein target. Here we can learn much from the case of Gleevec, the compound (see Figure 17.13A) found initially to inhibit the tyrosine kinase activity of the isolated Bcr-Abl fusion protein; this protein was known to be responsible for driving the proliferation and survival of the cancer cells of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML; see Figure 4.11). Having established its effects on the isolated Bcr-Abl protein (see Figure 17.14), drug developers could then proceed to the next step, which involved the use of cultured cells whose proliferation or survival *in vitro* depended on the continued actions of this fusion protein.

Figure 17.21A shows an example of such a cell-based test, which happens to have been conducted long after Gleevec was developed. This test used the cells of a murine pre-B-lymphocyte line that normally depend for their survival and proliferation *in vitro* on the presence of interleukin-3 (IL-3) in their culture medium. These cells could be rendered independent of IL-3 if a functional Bcr-Abl oncoprotein was ectopically expressed in them. The modified cells were then cultured in the absence of IL-3 (making them totally dependent on continued Bcr-Abl firing) and exposed to various drugs that were candidate antagonists of the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein. The proliferation and survival of these cells was then gauged (Figure 17.21B).



A flow chart shows the process of testing B a F 3 murine pre-B lymphocytes grown in a petri dish. If I L 3 and Gleevec are added, cells proliferate and thrive. Therefore, Gleevec is not intrinsically toxic for B a F 3 cells. If I L 3 is removed, the cells die through apoptosis. If I L 3 is added, the cells proliferate and thrive. If those cells are then transduced with the B c r A b l plasmid, a new strain of cells is created. If Gleevec is added in the presence of I L 3, these new cells proliferate and thrive. Therefore cells receiving I L 3 can tolerate shutdown of B c r A b l by Gleevec. Additionally, if I L 3 is removed, the cells proliferate and thrive. Therefore B c r A b l can replace I L 3. However, if Gleevec is added after I L 3 is removed, the cells die through apoptosis.

(A)



A scatterplot shows the survival of cells in different conditions when treated with increasing Gleevec concentrations. On the x axis is the Gleevec concentration in micromoles from 0 to 10 on the log scale. On the y axis is absorbance A 450 from 0 to 3.5. All three conditions start with a high absorbance. Around a concentration of 2 micromolar, the absorbance of the B a F 3 plus wild type B c r A b l cells drops quickly, and by a concentration of 8 micromolar, the absorbance is 0. The other 2 cell lines decrease as well but more gradually. The B a F 3 plus T 315 I mutant B c r A b l cells decreases to an absorbance of 2 at greater than 10 micromolar. The B a F 3 plus wild type B c r A b l plus I L 3 cells decreases to an absorbance of 3 at greater than 10 micromolar.

(B)

Figure 17.21 Testing of Gleevec in cell culture (A) BaF3 cells, a line of murine pre-B lymphocytes, normally depend on the addition of interleukin-3 (IL-3) for their proliferation and survival (*top left*). When Gleevec is added together with IL-

3, these cells continue to thrive (*top right*), indicating that the IL-3–based survival mechanism is not sensitive to Gleevec inhibition. When an expression plasmid specifying the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein is also introduced into these cells, the BaF3 cells continue to proliferate, even after IL-3 is withdrawn (*left middle*), indicating that Bcr-Abl can replace IL-3 and sustain these cells on its own. However, the addition of Gleevec at doses that inhibit the Abl kinase will cause the cells to die (*lower left*), whereas addition of Gleevec to Bcr-Abl–expressing cells that continue to receive IL-3 does not affect their survival. Therefore, in the absence of IL-3, the Bcr-Abl–expressing BaF3 cells can serve as highly sensitive and specific indicators of the actions of Gleevec and similarly acting drugs on the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein. (B) The information in panel A can be used to develop an assay system, in which the number of BaF3 cells surviving after certain treatments is indicated by the optical density (absorbance at 450 nm wavelength) of BaF3 cell suspensions (*ordinate*). In the presence of IL-3, Gleevec has almost no effect on BaF3 cell survival, whether or not the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein is being expressed in BaF3 cells (*green dots*). In the absence of IL-3, however, survival of Bcr-Abl–expressing cells is strongly suppressed above about 2 μM Gleevec concentration (*red dots*). If instead of the "wild-type" Bcr-Abl protein, cloned from a patient's CML cells at the beginning of Gleevec treatment, a highly drug-resistant mutant version of Bcr-Abl (termed T315I) that arose in a CML patient during the course of Gleevec treatment is expressed in the BaF3 cells growing in medium lacking IL-3, far higher drug concentrations are required to kill these cells (*blue dots*). (Courtesy of M. Azam and G.Q. Daley.)

Cell-based tests like these are designed to determine whether the drug being examined induces apoptosis in treated cells, or cytostasis (that is, a halt in cell proliferation), or has no effect whatsoever. And if the drug does evoke a desired response, does it do so at a reasonably low concentration?

The outcomes of such cell-based tests are rarely obvious beforehand. Many compounds that are highly hydrophobic may be excluded from these tests from the outset because they are poorly soluble and therefore cannot be placed on cultured cells in significant concentrations. Their more hydrophilic chemical relatives may be highly soluble and may work well on a purified targeted protein, such as Bcr-Abl, but may not be readily transported through the plasma membranes of cells; these chemical species are likely to prove useless, simply because they cannot accumulate within cells at concentrations that would allow them to be effective (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.6**).

Imagine that these hurdles have been successfully surmounted and that the proliferation of Bcr-Abl–dependent cells is indeed inhibited at nanomolar concentrations of a candidate therapeutic agent. Although the candidate drug acts on

these cells, it does not exclude the possibility that the drug also affects dozens of other kinases in these and other cells, some of which may be essential for normal cell metabolism—the property of biological selectivity or lack thereof. (Its *biochemical* selectivity is likely to have been determined previously by tests such as those described in **Supplementary Sidebar 17.8**).

Given the initial lack of certainty about the selectivity of a candidate Bcr-Abl drug, it became necessary to determine whether cancer cells whose growth is driven by other tyrosine kinases were equally sensitive to the actions of an identified anti-Bcr-Abl agent like Gleevec and whether fully normal cultured cells were affected by a candidate drug like Gleevec. With luck, one might begin to see a high therapeutic index emerge; for example, in the context of the assay described in Figure 17.21, Bcr-Abl–dependent cells might have been killed by drug concentrations that had little discernible effect on comparable cells grown in the presence of IL-3 or on a variety of other cancer cells whose growth is driven by other tyrosine kinase oncoproteins. Such observations would provide hope, as they did in the case of Gleevec development, and would encourage the drug developers to proceed to the next steps, in which the biological effects of drugs at the cellular and tissue level are evaluated *in vivo*, as we learn below.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

Cancer Dependency Map
: The product of an effort focused on systematically cataloging the key roles of genes throughout the entire human genome whose inactivation by CRISPR/Cas9 leads to the death of cells belonging to specific cancer cell lines.

NCI-60 cell lines
: (often **NCI-60**) The collection of 60 human cancer cell lines prepared from nine commonly occurring tumor types and provided by the U.S. National Cancer Institute that is often used to gauge the responsiveness of different types of cancer cells to therapeutic agents under development.

organoid
: An experimentally created model of a normal adult tissue, usually generated through incubation of organ-specific stemlike cells suspended in a three-dimensional gelatinous matrix containing a cocktail of factors designed to induce a tissue-specific differentiation program in the organoid.

OceanofPDF.com

17.8 Studies of a drug's action in laboratory animals are an essential part of pre-clinical testing

Once a candidate anti-tumor agent has been found to have potent killing effects on cultured cancer cells *in vitro*, drug development inevitably moves to the next step—testing whether it will kill cancer cells proliferating within tumor masses *in vivo*. Ideally, the *in vitro* behavior of a drug should predict its actions *in vivo*.

In fact, the *in vivo* treatment environment introduces additional complexities governing therapeutic response that are not present in the cell culture setting. One is suggested by experimental results that we encountered in Section 13.9. There we read that the sensitivity of tumors to radiation may be determined by the radiosensitivity of the endothelial cells in their vasculature, rather than by the responses of the neoplastic cells in these masses; some drugs may act similarly, by affecting the supporting stromal cells of a tumor (which are rarely studied *in vitro*) rather than the cancer cells themselves. For example, endothelial cells exposed to the DNA-damaging effects of certain cytotoxic drugs respond by releasing interleukin-6 (IL-6), which confers on nearby lymphoma cells an elevated resistance to killing by these drugs. (This finding may explain why lymphoma cells in a mouse model of Burkitt's lymphoma can survive chemotherapy by finding refuge in the thymus, where this pro-survival signal is produced in abundance by the resident endothelial cells.)

Independent of such therapy-induced responses, stromal cells may continuously provide certain types of anti-apoptotic survival signals, such as IGF-1, that are not available in comparable amounts to cancer cells in culture (see Figure 9.32). In a more general sense, the complexities of tumor biology created by heterotypic interactions of neoplastic cells with the tumor-associated stroma often dictate that the drug responses of pure populations of cancer cells proliferating *in vitro* fail to predict their responses within growing tumors *in vivo*.

Because rodent and human cells can differ so substantially in their biology (see Section 11.9), the *in vivo* testing of candidate anti-cancer drugs involves, almost

always, human (rather than murine) cancer cells grown in mouse hosts. The presumption is that the human tumor xenografts formed in immunocompromised mice will behave much like the tumors encountered by oncologists in human patients. However, almost always these tumors are derived from cells that have previously adapted to growth in culture (as discussed above), are frequently implanted in anatomical sites in mouse hosts that are distinct from their tissue of origin, exhibit species-specific differences in the types of recruited stromal support cells, and grow well only in the absence of a functional immune system.

These facts help to explain why human tumor xenograft models (that is, human tumor cells growing in foreign hosts, usually mice) are relatively unpredictive of the responses of the actual tumors borne by patients in the cancer clinic. Indeed, in some cases, it is questionable whether cancer cells that are purportedly from, for example, a pancreatic carcinoma continue to reflect pancreatic behavior, or whether they have been inadvertently contaminated by colon or breast carcinoma cells at some point over the previous several decades of *in vitro* passage in one or another laboratory. In addition, there are clear indications that human tumors growing as xenografts in mice interact with the host tissue microenvironment in a fashion that differs from mouse tumor xenografts interacting with syngeneic host tissues (**Sidebar 17.11**).

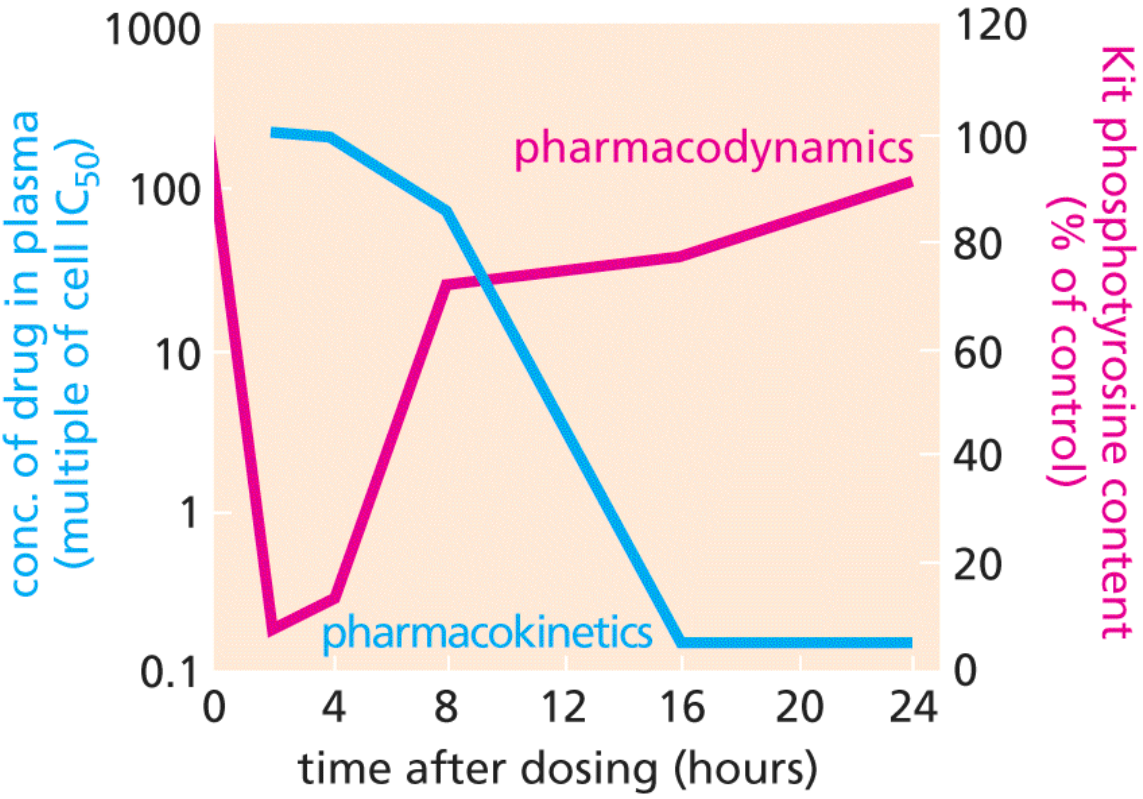
Sidebar 17.11 The elusive, ideal, pre-clinical model of drug responses

There is yet another problem that, until recently, has not attracted attention. In 2009 experiments were reported on a genetically engineered mouse model (GEMM) of pancreatic adenocarcinoma development; this research analyzed the responses to therapy of such tumors arising within mice through the actions of oncogenic alleles introduced into their *K-ras* and *p53* germ-line genes. The resulting autochthonous tumors (that is, those arising within a host rather than being implanted in such host) that formed in these mice responded to therapy very differently from tumors that arose when the cells from these autochthonous tumors were extracted, propagated briefly in culture, and then implanted subcutaneously in other syngeneic host mice, now forming pancreatic tumor grafts. This finding pointed to another long-neglected problem—namely, that experimentally implanted tumor grafts may behave very differently from autochthonously arising tumors, even when the two tumor cell populations are genetically indistinguishable from one another. [In this case, the implanted tumors were responsive to gemcitabine therapy (see Figure 17.7), whereas the autochthonous tumors were resistant.] If this observation were generalized to

other tumor models and cancer types, it would greatly complicate pre-clinical drug testing because implantation of tumor cell lines is far simpler logistically and less expensive than GEMM models of disease.

Indeed, the challenge of finding the ideal pre-clinical mouse model may not have a single solution. There is now an abundance of readily available mouse models to test therapeutics. These models include the use of orthotopic injections of syngeneic tumor cells, the injection of human tumor organoid cell cultures, the use of "humanized" mouse models in which tumors arise in the context of a human organ system reconstituted in a mouse, and the use of mice bearing humanized immune systems. All these systems have potential advantages, but none truly recapitulate the clinical setting in human cancers.

As discussed earlier, the pharmacokinetics (PK) of a drug represent a key determinant of its efficacy *in vivo*: Does it accumulate to significant levels in the plasma or tissues for an extended period? Or is it present in the body only transiently, being excreted by the kidneys within minutes of entering into the circulation? Is it resistant to rapid degradation, or do certain drug-metabolizing systems, such as the cytochrome P450s (see Section 12.5), rapidly convert it into an innocuous, chemically unreactive molecular species (**Figure 17.22**)? (A key pharmacokinetic parameter that is often measured is the "area under the curve," or AUC, which is calculated by integrating the concentration of a drug in the plasma as a function of time; the AUC is thought to reflect the cumulative drug dose experienced by cells in a tumor.) And can it be administered orally rather than requiring injection?

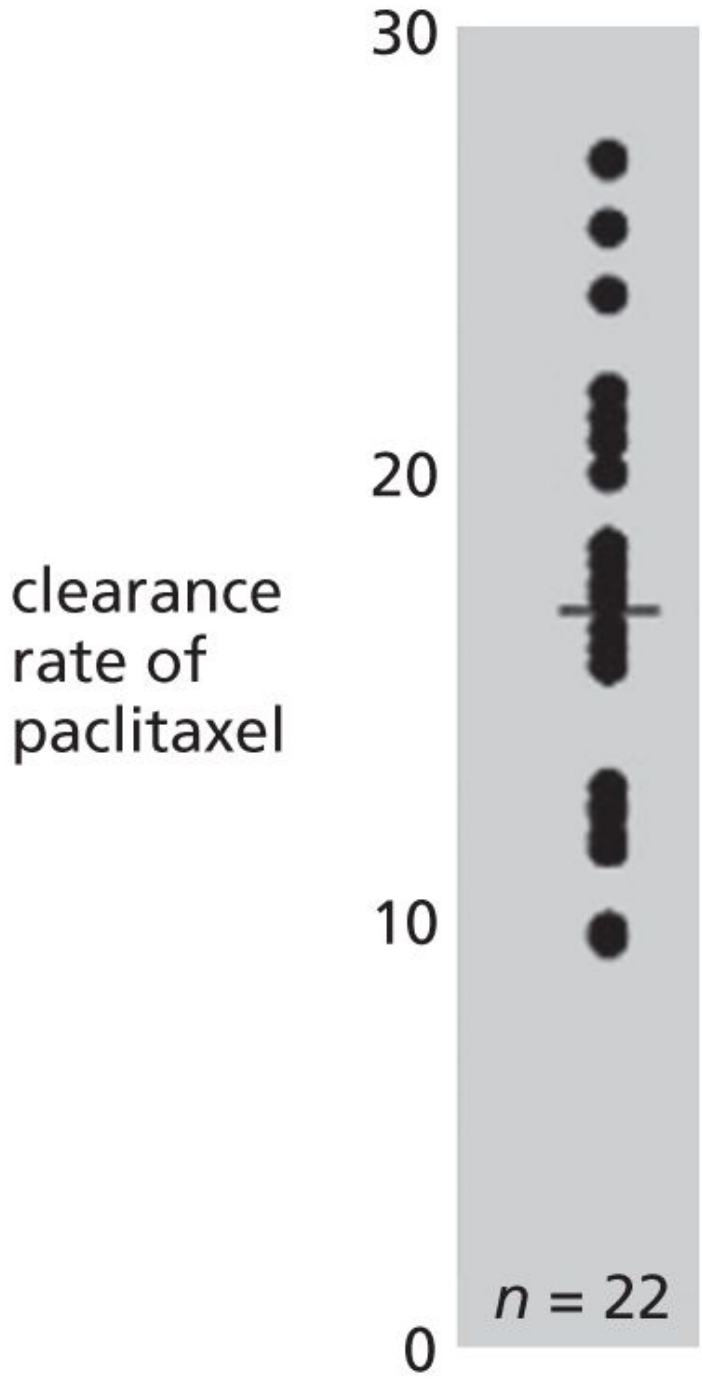


A line graph shows the change in concentration of Gleevec in plasma and the Kit phosphotyrosine content over time. The x axis has time after dosing from 0 to 24 hours. The concentration of Gleevec starts above 100 and decreases to 0.1 by hour 16. The Kit phosphotyrosine content, as a percent of control, starts near 100, decreases to around 0 by hour 2, increases to 80 by hour 8, and increases more slowly to 95 by hour 24.

Figure 17.22 Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of Gleevec The pharmacokinetics of a drug represent the kinetics of its accumulation in and disappearance from the plasma, which in turn are presumed to provide a good indication of the drug concentrations that tumor cells experience in a laboratory animal or a patient undergoing therapy. The plasma level of the drug Gleevec, plotted on a logarithmic scale (*left ordinate*), fluctuates dramatically following injection of the drug into a mouse (*blue curve*). Its concentration is indicated here as a multiple of the drug concentration known to inhibit the firing of the tyrosine kinase of the Kit receptor by 50% (i.e., the IC_{50} of this agent). (The tyrosine kinase domain of the Kit growth factor receptor is also a target of inhibition by Gleevec.) In order to gauge the pharmacodynamics, the amount of phosphotyrosine associated with the Kit receptor (a reflection of Kit tyrosine kinase activity) was measured, in this

case the Kit expressed by engrafted human mast cell leukemia cells (*red curve*), which was initially set as 100%. It decreases to <<1% of pre-existing levels within an hour after drug injection but rebounds within 8 hours as the concentration of the drug declines in the plasma. (Courtesy of D.L. Emerson.)

Laboratory animals give some rough indication of a drug's pharmacokinetics, but they are by no means accurate predictors of how humans metabolize and excrete various agents. Moreover, as we read earlier (see Sidebar 12.4), the rates at which various compounds are metabolized or excreted can even vary dramatically from one person to another (**Figure 17.23**). (In some pharmaceutical companies, the pharmacokinetics of candidate compounds may be measured even *before* their therapeutic efficacy against xenografted tumors is assessed; those showing poor pharmacokinetics in laboratory animals are often eliminated from further testing. Discarding such drugs may occasionally be premature, given the dramatically differing rates of drug metabolism and excretion between rodents and humans.)



A figure shows the clearance rate of paclitaxel in 22 patients. The clearance rates range from 9 to 28.

Figure 17.23 Inter-individual variability in drug clearance Paclitaxel is a chemotherapeutic drug used to treat a number of malignancies; it works by stabilizing microtubules, thereby interfering with the progression of cells

through M phase (see Figure 17.7). As seen here, in this study of 22 ovarian cancer patients, the relative rates of clearance of this drug from the plasma after initial injection varied over a factor of 3. These rates may be influenced by changes in the rate of metabolism by enzymes such as cytochrome *c* (see Figure 12.13) and by excretion in the kidneys. (From M. Nakajima et al., *J. Clin. Pharmacol*. 45:674–682, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Figure 17.22 illustrates the other key kinetic process that was introduced earlier—a drug's pharmacodynamics (PD), in this case those of Gleevec. Recall that pharmacodynamics measure the ability of a drug to affect a targeted biochemical or cell-biological function in a tumor under treatment. In the PD presented in this figure, as is often the practice, a surrogate marker of the targeted Bcr-Abl function was measured—the behavior of the Kit receptor. Kit is one of several tyrosine kinases affected by Gleevec, and its responses to the drug presumably parallel those of Bcr-Abl. Figure 17.22 reveals that Kit activity in this experiment was inhibited only briefly at the time when the highest concentration of drug was present in the circulation. Such a transient inhibition—only a fraction of a cell cycle—is generally insufficient to elicit a substantial biological response, such as tumor cell killing.

During the course of animal testing, information may surface about the toxic side effects that the drug elicits in whole organisms. These side effects represent the bane of almost all existing cancer treatments. Quite frequently, various normal organ systems, including the liver, kidneys, gastrointestinal tract, and the hematopoietic system, show toxic effects of a drug when it is used at the concentrations required to kill tumor cells. These toxicities are rarely predicted by *in vitro* tissue culture tests, and toxicities detected in laboratory animals, including dogs, monkeys, mice, and rats, may or may not be predictive of human responses. For example, when used together with a cytotoxic drug to treat subtypes of breast and gastric carcinomas, Herceptin (also known as trastuzumab), a monoclonal antibody that is reactive with the HER2/neu receptor, has an effect on cardiac function that could not have been predicted from the known expression of the HER2/neu receptor in various epithelial cell types; this effect can lead to (usually reversible) heart failure in a significant fraction of patients under treatment.

Such observations direct our attention once again to the therapeutic index of an agent—the efficiency with which it affects cancerous tissues compared with its

toxic effects in normal tissues. Clearly, ideal cancer treatments should have high therapeutic indices, wreaking havoc on cancer cells while leaving normal tissues relatively untouched. The fundamental obstacle to achieving such selectivity is that most of the 11,000 or so genes expressed in the average cancer cell are also being expressed by their normal counterparts.

The failure of animal models to predict the toxic side effects of a drug in humans creates serious problems. The roughly 80 million years of independent evolution that separate us from our rodent cousins have led to substantial differences in metabolism; we may react to certain drugs much differently from mice or rats, or even the more closely related Old World monkeys, which may eventually be exposed to a candidate drug in order to obtain a slightly more accurate prediction of toxicities in humans. If a drug passes these various pre-clinical tests without raising too many warning flags, it may be promoted to a candidate for testing in humans.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

xenograft
: A normal or neoplastic tissue derived from one species that has been implanted into a host animal from another species.

autochthonous
: (1) Of native origin. (2) Referring to a tumor that arises within an organism (rather than from implanted cells or tumor fragments).

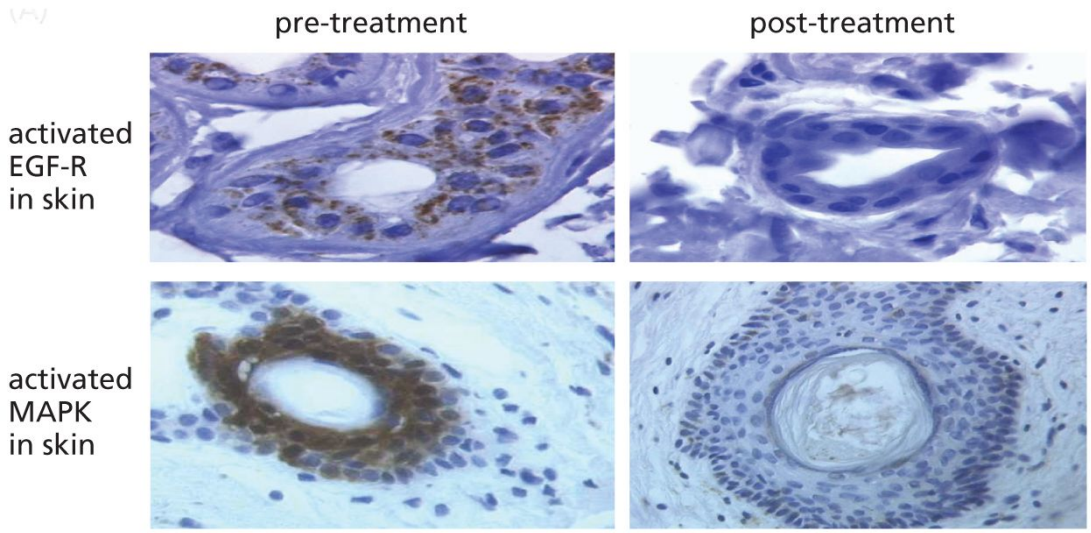
surrogate marker
: A measurable parameter, often a diagnostic parameter, that serves to indicate the behavior of another process or agent whose behavior it parallels and reflects.

OceanofPDF.com

17.9 Promising candidate drugs are subjected to rigorous clinical tests in Phase I trials in humans

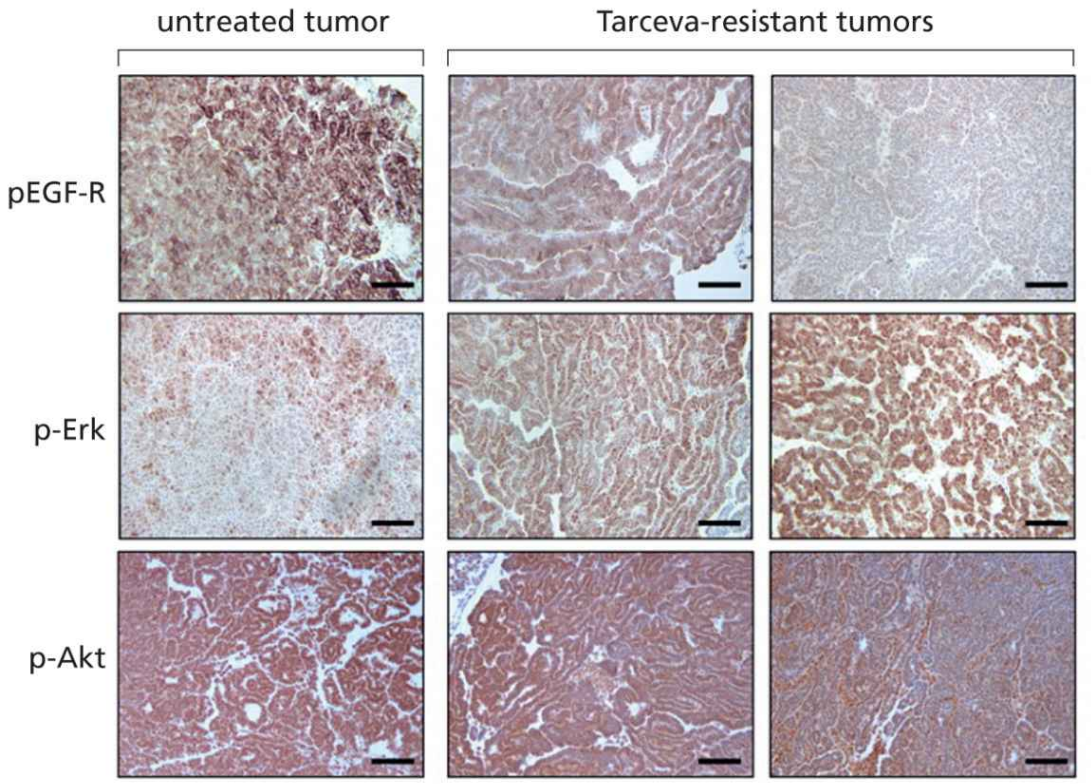
The discussions above explain why the first true tests of a drug's tolerability usually come in initial patient exposures, which are termed Phase I trials in the United States. Here, candidate drugs are tested at various doses, including the presumed therapeutic doses, to gauge toxic side effects rather than drug efficacy. The usual practice is to begin these trials at drug dosages that are likely to be far below the level of any overt toxicity (for example, one-tenth the drug concentration that created toxicity in laboratory animals) and then, in a series of patients, increase the dosages incrementally until drug levels are reached that begin to induce unacceptable toxicities. This "dose escalation" yields a value—the maximum tolerated dose (MTD)—that is then used to guide further treatment protocols. Certain side effects, such as a skin rash or transient nausea, may be tolerable and not scuttle further drug development, whereas others, such as massive diarrhea or bone marrow depletion, may be so burdensome or life-threatening that they cause rapid abandonment of all further development of a drug.

During these Phase I trials, pharmacokinetics measurements, like those made previously in animals, will also be taken in order to ascertain whether the drug is reaching tumor cells at a sufficient concentration and for an extended period of time. Still, these PK measurements give no indication whether or not the cancer cells are responding in any way—the property of pharmacodynamics described earlier. For example, in **Figure 17.24**, we see the PD responses to treatments with EGF receptor antagonists (in this case both a monoclonal antibody and a low–molecular-weight tyrosine kinase inhibitor). To obtain some measure of the effects of therapies on the EGF-R in patients' tumors, the oncologists used, as a surrogate marker, the EGF-R of patients' biopsied skin cells, which were far more easily monitored.



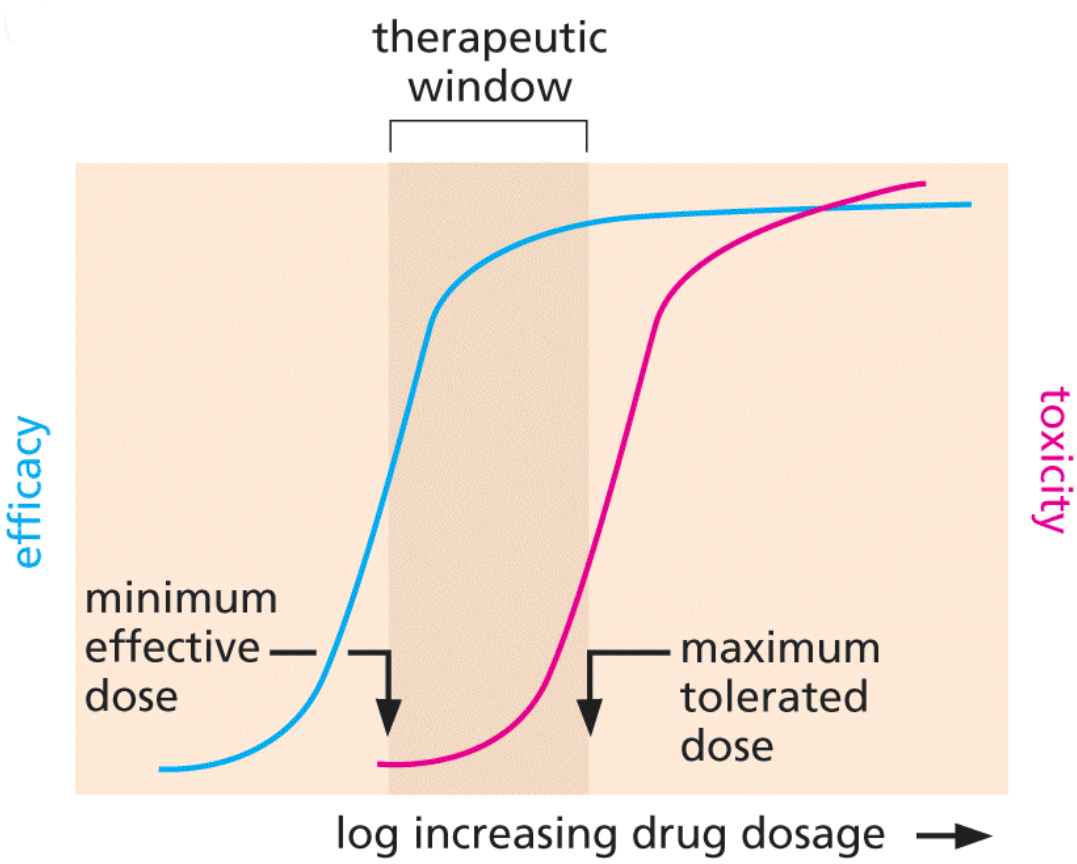
A series of four histology images. When there is activated E G F R in the skin, the pre-treatment image shows scattered brown cells amongst other purple cells. Post-treatment there are no brown cells. When there is activated M A P K in the skin, the pretreatment image shows a ring of brown cells amongst other scattered purple cells. Post-treatment there are no brown cells.

(A)



A series of nine histology images. In an untreated tumor, the p E G F R staining results in dark coloration of cells. The Tarceva resistant tumor images have lighter pink cells. In an untreated tumor, the p E R K staining results in some light pink coloration of cells. The Tarceva resistant tumor images have darker brown cells. In an untreated tumor, the p A k t staining results in a reddish coloration of cells. The Tarceva resistant tumor images have similar colored cells.

(B)



A line graph shows the therapeutic window is between the minimum effective dose and the maximum tolerated dose. On the x axis is increasing drug dosage on the log scale. There are two similar S shaped curves. The efficacy curve is shifted to the right of the toxicity curve. The space between the curves is the therapeutic window.

(C)

Figure 17.24 Measurements of pharmacodynamics and determination of the therapeutic window The extent of inhibition of the EGF-R in a tumor can, in

principle, be gauged by measuring effects of drug treatment on the EGF-R in the skin; the latter is readily assessed through small skin biopsies. In the cases illustrated here, patients were suffering from a variety of tumors, including carcinomas of the ovary, lung, colon, and prostate and head-and-neck cancers. (A) Shown here are the effects of treating a cancer patient with Iressa, a low–molecular-weight EGF-R tyrosine kinase inhibitor (see, as an example, Figure 17.17). The upper panels show immunohistochemistry using an antibody against phospho-EGF-R (*brown*), i.e., the activated form of the receptor. The lower panels used an antibody against phospho-MAPK, the activated form of this downstream kinase (see Figure 6.9A). Both measurements depended on the normally intense mitogenic signaling occurring in hair follicle keratinocytes. (B) The effects of Tarceva, another low–molecular-weight EGF-R tyrosine kinase inhibitor, gauged by immunohistochemical staining of a mouse lung adenocarcinoma. In this case, long-term treatment resulted in a reduction in the overall level of phosphorylated EGF-R (*brown, upper row*). The level of phosphorylated Erk and Akt/PKB (*brown; lower rows*) was, however, elevated in tumor cells that survive Tarceva treatment, suggesting that tumors that escape EGFR inhibition can find alternative mechanisms to activate pathways downstream of active EGFR. (C) Measurements of pharmacodynamics such as these, taken together with studies of pharmacokinetics and toxicity, define the therapeutic window in which a drug should be given—the range of concentrations that are efficacious without creating an unacceptable level of toxic side effects. (A, top from J. Albanell et al., *J. Clin. Oncol*. 20:110-124, 2002. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology; bottom from J. Albanell, F., Rojo, and J. Baselga, *Semin. Oncol*. 28:56-66, 2001. With permission from Elsevier. B, Katerina Politi, Pang-Dian Fan, Ronglai Shen, Maureen Zakowski, Harold Varmus; Erlotinib resistance in mouse models of epidermal growth factor receptor-induced lung adenocarcinoma. Dis Model Mech 14 January 2010; 3 (1-2): 111–119. With permission of the Company of Biologists.)

As seen in Figure 17.24A, patient exposure to an EGF-R tyrosine kinase inhibitor resulted in a strong suppression of EGF-R signaling in the skin. In addition, the activity of MAP kinase, which functions as an important downstream transducer of EGF-R signaling (see Section 6.5), was also suppressed, indicating successful inhibition of downstream mitogenic signaling.

Similar results were observed in mouse lung tumors following treatment with Tarceva, a low–molecular-weight EGF-R tyrosine kinase inhibitor (Figure 17.24B). PD measurements like these provide reassurance that the administered treatment is reaching its intended target at concentrations that suffice to shut down much of the target's activity. Interestingly, a number of the signal-transducing proteins operating downstream of the EGF-R, including Erk and Akt/PKB, were expressed at equal or

higher levels in surviving tumor cells indicating that the tumor cells had acquired alternative means for activating these signaling molecules. Hence, PD measurements ensure that one precondition of therapeutic success—delivery of the therapeutic agent to the targeted cells and molecules—has been satisfied, but do not, on their own, guarantee that the therapy will succeed, as other factors may thwart it.

When taken together, the measurements of maximum tolerated dose (MTD), pharmacokinetics (PK), and pharmacodynamics (PD) define the therapeutic window—the range of concentrations that are higher than that needed to elicit a desired therapeutic effect and lower than the maximum tolerated dose (see Figure 17.24C). Ideally, a therapeutic window of a drug should be broad, so as to allow clinicians some flexibility in administering the drug, adjusting dosage to the patient and the condition being treated. As the therapeutic window narrows, the likelihood that a candidate drug will prove clinically useful diminishes.

Occasionally, Phase I clinical trials, which are usually undertaken with very small groups of patient volunteers who have failed other available therapies, may reveal some favorable responses in terms of tumor regression or halting of further tumor growth, doing so at acceptably low levels of toxicity. However, even if there are hints of clinical efficacy, the positive results observed in Phase I trials are never statistically significant and thus not regarded as definitive. Instead, these trials are really undertaken to discover unanticipated toxicities and tolerable levels of drug dosage.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

maximum tolerated dose
: The dosage of an administered drug above which a patient suffers unacceptable levels of toxic side effects.

therapeutic window
: Range of concentrations of a drug that are higher than that needed to elicit a therapeutic effect and lower than the maximum tolerated dose. *Also termed* **therapeutic range**.

OceanofPDF.com

17.10 Phase II and III trials provide credible indications of clinical efficacy

Acceptably low levels of toxicity in a Phase I trial will encourage testing a candidate drug's efficacy in a Phase II trial, in which larger groups of cancer patients are involved. Now, for the first time, critical decisions must be made about the indications for enlisting specific patients in the trial—that is, which type of tumor or what stage of tumor progression will justify enrolling patients in such a trial?

Sometimes the clinical indications are obvious. For example, an agent targeted against the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein should be tested in patients diagnosed with chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). A drug directed against the HER2/neu receptor should be tested in the approximately 30% of breast cancer patients whose tumor cells overexpress this protein. An inhibitor of Raf kinases can be tried in patients with advanced melanomas, in which the B-Raf kinase molecule is often (~60% of cases) mutant and constitutively activated (see Section 17.17).

But more often than not, the choice of indications and clinical response to these indications is neither entirely rational nor optimal. Which class of cancer patients should be treated, for example, with a drug that acts as a general inducer of apoptosis in many types of cancer cells? How should a drug directed against the anti-apoptotic Akt/PKB kinase be used in the clinic? Will an anti-EGF receptor drug prove useful in all carcinomas that express elevated levels of this receptor protein or only a select subset (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.9**)? Significant help here may come from consulting the Cancer Dependency Map (DepMap), which presents a compendium of dependencies of various tumor types on the ongoing functioning of a variety of known, well-characterized signaling proteins. Information obtained from approaches like the DepMap may demarcate sets of tumors that are particularly susceptible to drugs targeting specific signaling pathways. However, as we will see later in this chapter, certain types of cancer that would never be identified by genetics or molecular biology as attractive targets for drug treatment turn out, on occasion, to be highly susceptible to certain drugs under development. In these cases, the therapeutic utility of such drugs is discovered only by chance.

(Given the arbitrary ways in which tumor indications are chosen in many Phase II trials, we can wonder how many truly useful candidate drugs have been discarded in the past, simply because good luck did not favor them in the design of these trials. Thus, it may well be that a drug has the potential to elicit truly spectacular responses when used to treat gastric carcinomas but this effect is never realized, if it is tested in Phase II trials for its effects on pancreatic or lung carcinomas, where it fails to show any useful effects and is therefore dropped entirely from further development and clinical testing.)

If Phase II trials yield clear signs of efficacy for treating certain types of cancer with a candidate drug, Phase III trials, undertaken in far larger patient populations, will be launched. These trials are very costly but are ultimately critical, if only because they may show, for the first time, whether any clinical responses ascribed to a drug are statistically significant. The results of these trials usually become compelling only if control experiments are performed by treating equally large populations of patients with another therapy in parallel, usually one that is already licensed and in widespread use. Importantly, the licensing of a candidate drug for a specific disease indication (in the United States by the Food and Drug Administration, FDA; in the European Union by the European Medicines Agency, EMA) usually depends on whether it yields a therapeutic benefit that is measurably greater than the existing standard of care (**Sidebar 17.12**).

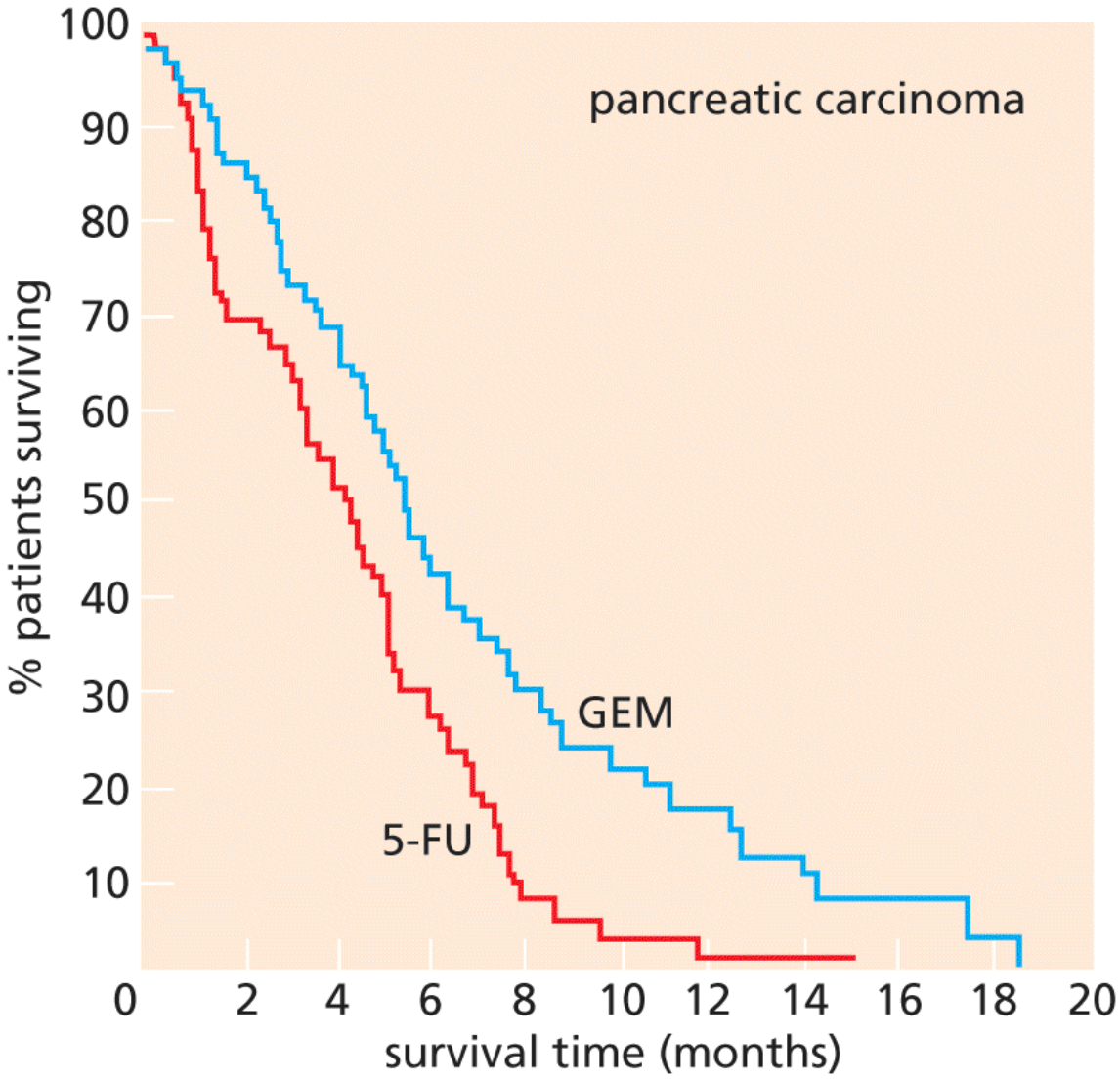
Sidebar 17.12 When do we decide that a drug works?

It is worth considering how one evaluates success of a given therapy in the context of a clinical trial. Certainly the most relevant and compelling metric is whether patients treated with a new agent show increased overall survival relative to those treated with a standard-of-care therapy. However, in many cases, drug efficacy is assessed as the “objective response” of the tumor, itself, to treatment. Alternatively, one can assess the “time to tumor progression” after treatment. Both “objective response” and “time to tumor progression” seek to use changes in tumor size or number as an endpoint upon which efficacy conclusions can be inferred. However, both endpoints are only useful if they are based on widely agreed upon and commonly applied standards. The RECIST (or Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumors) criteria provide general guidelines for how these endpoints are determined. These criteria, which have been periodically updated based on patient response and outcome data and advancing tumor imaging modalities, define a set of four possible outcomes for tumors of a certain

minimum size (at least 10 mm) following treatment. There can be a complete response (CR), in which all tumors shrink below the 10 mm minimum size; a partial response (PR), in which all tumors show at least a 30% decrease in size; progressive disease (PD), in which tumors show at least a 20% increase in size; and stable disease (SD), in which tumors do not show a sufficient volume change to be placed in the PR or PD categories. These criteria have been very useful in comparing the potential efficacy of distinct therapies across broad patient populations. However, these criteria also have significant limitations. Most notably, tumor size changes following treatment correlate but are not necessarily linked with patient outcome. Thus, drugs that elicit a PR may not extend overall survival.

Patients in Phase III trials of anti-cancer agents usually have gone through previous rounds of chemotherapy with various types of cytotoxic agents, each ending with a relapse and the appearance of tumors that are refractory to the already-applied therapy. Moreover, these tumors are often highly aggressive. This patient profile helps to explain why the bar is not set too high for FDA approval of a new drug or drug combination because the drugs in Phase III trials are dispatched to attack the most difficult-to-treat types of cancer. Thus, improvements in patient quality of life or temporary shrinkage of a tumor may suffice even without improvement in long-term survival.

One illustration of this comes from a current treatment for pancreatic cancer. This disease is an extreme example, to be sure, in that the five-year survival rate of this disease (from the time of initial diagnosis) is consistently less than 5%. Gemcitabine (difluorodeoxycytidine; see Figure 17.6), which is widely employed as a therapy for pancreatic carcinoma, received initial FDA approval because in some patients it resulted in an improvement in symptoms, weight gain, and a temporary stabilization in tumor growth, although it offered only a modest increase in survival time (from the time of diagnosis): patients treated with gemcitabine had a median survival time of 5.65 months compared with those given the existing standard of care—5-fluorouracil (5-FU), which afforded them a 4.41-month median survival time (**Figure 17.25**). This and similar anecdotes reveal how desperate is the need for truly effective means of treating solid tumors.



A line graph shows the survival of pancreatic carcinoma patients that were treated with 5 F U or G E M. By 8 months, less than 10 percent of the patients treated with 5 F U were surviving. None survived past 15 months. By 14 months, less than 10 percent of the patients treated with G E M were surviving. None survived past 19 months.

Figure 17.25 Gemcitabine as a treatment for pancreatic cancer This Kaplan–Meier plot illustrates the high mortality exacted by pancreatic cancer. Patients treated with gemcitabine (GEM; see Figure 17.7) lived slightly longer than those treated with 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)—the standard treatment in the 1990s. Both agents are pyrimidine derivatives whose cytotoxicity derives from their ability to inhibit DNA synthesis, in part through misincorporation into the DNA. (5-FU also interferes with pyrimidine

biosynthesis.) As is apparent, gemcitabine treatment offered only a modest increase in patient survival in this study reported in 1997, but this nevertheless sufficed to allow its approval by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. (From H.A. Burris III et al., *J. Clin. Oncol*. 15:2403–2413, 1997. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology.)

Nonetheless, even with these relatively modest regulatory requirements, the other obstacles in drug development described here keep the current success rate for anti-cancer drug development extremely low. Perhaps one drug in a hundred advances all the way through the drug development "pipeline" from initial *in vitro* testing through a Phase III trial that culminates in some clear improvement in patient outcome and licensing by the FDA. (After licensing has occurred, a Phase IV trial may be conducted to determine the efficacy of drug treatment over an extended period of time, how certain subgroups of patients respond to the drug, and whether concerns about a drug's safety eventually emerge from its use in very large patient populations.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

indication
: A clinically observed trait or property that represents a valid reason for the making of a certain diagnosis or use of a certain therapy.

standard of care
: The therapeutic agent or protocol that is widely accepted in the treatment of disease and often serves as the reference against which candidate novel treatments are measured.

OceanofPDF.com

17.11 Tumors often develop resistance to initially effective therapy

A complication that dogs all anti-cancer drugs is illustrated by the behavior of *HER2/neu* transgenic mice, in which the mutant, oncogenic transgene has been programmed to induce mammary tumors on a predictable schedule and can be shut down thereafter. Although transgene-induced primary breast tumors and metastases all collapsed when the *HER2/neu* transgene was shut down, new tumors recurred in most of these mice between 1 and 9 months later. These tumors clearly represented variants of the initially observed ones that had developed alternative means of propelling their growth—that is, had become independent of *HER2/neu* oncogene expression.

As we saw in Chapter 12, the unstable, mutable genomes of cancer cells continually generate new alleles and novel genetic configurations (see Section 12.15). Evolving cancer cells can pick and choose among these genetic variations, searching for combinations that improve their ability to survive and proliferate. In this *HER2/neu* example, the relatively small number of cancer cells that survived oncogene shutdown seem to have spent months thereafter trolling for newly arising oncogenes (or other cancer-causing alleles) in their genomes that might enable them to re-launch their program of aggressive proliferation. The rare cells that happened to acquire such advantageous alleles or epigenetic states then began clonal expansions that led to relapsing tumors.

A similar dynamic complicates almost all types of human cancer therapies, where initial clinical successes in reducing tumor cell populations are usually followed by the re-emergence in patients of tumor cell populations that have, through one means or another, developed resistance to the treatment (see Table 17.5). Much of this acquired resistance is attributable to the genetic and therefore phenotypic plasticity of cancer cell populations. Importantly, much of this “acquired” resistance may derive from variants that already existed within a tumor at the time the therapy was initiated.

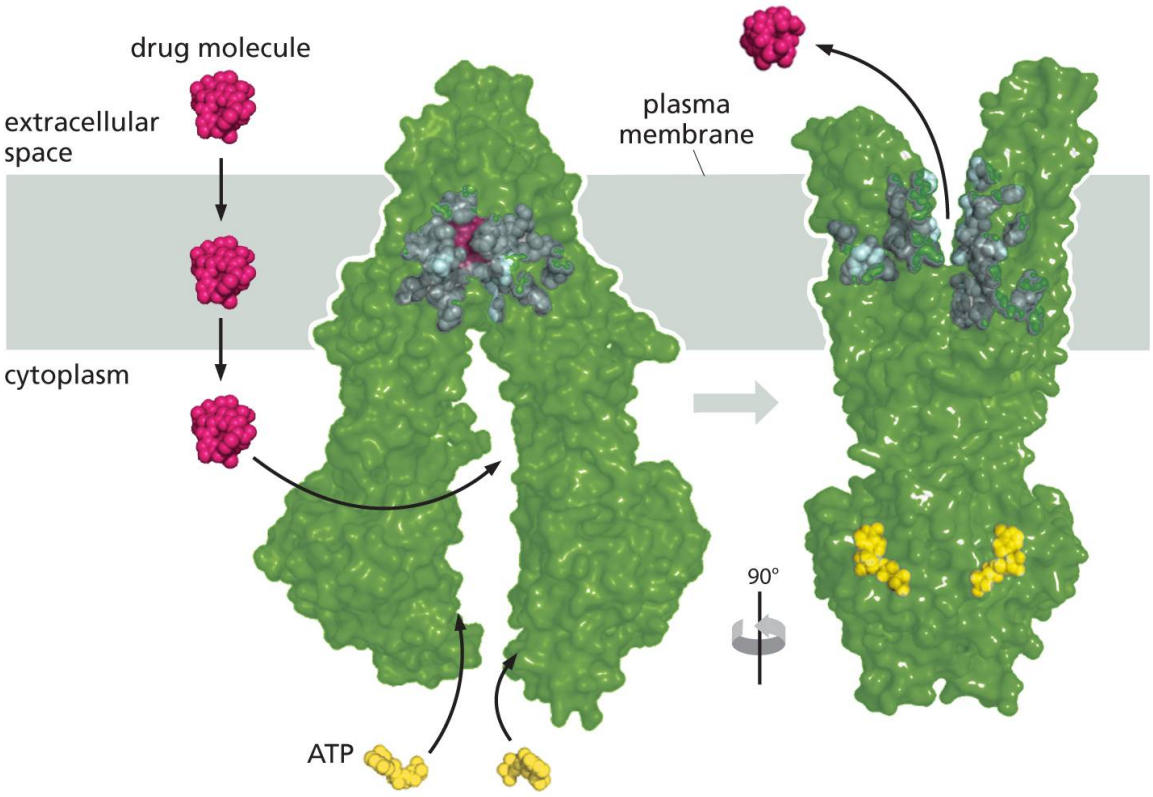
The acquired mechanisms of drug resistance are quite variable and illustrate the ingenuity of cancer cells (see Table 17.5). Perhaps the most intuitive of all

resistance mechanisms are alterations that block drug–target interactions. These alterations include mutations that change the structures of targeted proteins and directly prevent drug binding. They can also confer a decreased ability to import drug molecules through the plasma membrane or an acquired ability to pump out drug molecules through this membrane.

Other resistance mechanisms depend on the acquired ability to metabolize drug molecules, converting them to inactive products, in some cases using the same classes of enzymes that normally operate to detoxify toxic compounds that have entered the cell (see Section 12.5). Cells may also neutralize components of their apoptotic machinery or may acquire an increased ability to repair DNA molecules damaged by chemotherapeutics or radiation. Finally, tumor cells can undergo state changes—that is, transitions from one phenotypic state to another—that result in a decreased dependence on a particular drug target and perhaps, an acquired dependence on another. Sometimes multiple alternative resistance mechanisms can arise in response to a given therapy and multiple resistance-mediating alterations may operate concomitantly within a given tumor.

These behaviors represent a general challenge to all types of anti-tumor therapy, as discussed earlier in Section 17.2. The response to such acquired resistance was the development of multi-drug therapies. However, even these multi-drug therapy strategies are often foiled by cancer cells. For example, as mentioned, lymphomas treated with combination chemotherapy frequently relapse. Moreover, despite 60 years of clinical experience with lymphoma chemotherapy, the basic mechanisms of drug relapse in this context remain unclear and obvious resistance mutations have not been identified.

In recent years we have learned much about how multi-drug resistance can be achieved at the molecular level. For example, high-level expression of the *MDR1* gene, which encodes a normal transmembrane drug efflux pump, enables cancer cells to efficiently excrete a variety of chemically unrelated drugs, thereby lowering intracellular drug concentrations to subtoxic levels (**Figure 17.26**). Similarly, inactivation of certain parts of the apoptotic machinery (see Table 17.5) may also confer concomitant resistance to a number of distinct cytotoxic agents. However, whether these processes represent major mediators of multi-drug resistance in cancer patients remains unclear.



Space filling models show a P glycoprotein removing a drug molecule from a cell. The P glycoprotein is embedded in the cell membrane. A drug molecule enters the cytoplasm from the extracellular space through the cell membrane. The drug molecule binds to the cytoplasmic side of the P glycoprotein, and A T P enters, resulting in a change in conformation of the P glycoprotein. The drug molecule is ejected into the extracellular space.

Figure 17.26 Multi-drug resistance and the P-glycoprotein The MDR1 gene encodes P-glycoprotein (P-gp, *green*), a protein that is often present at elevated levels in cancer cells being treated with various types of chemotherapy. A structural model of P-gp is shown here. It is a 170-kD ATP-dependent transmembrane protein that can pump out of cells a wide variety of molecules with molecular weights ranging from 330 up to 4000. Its elevated expression is often associated with and likely causes multi-drug resistance. It is a member of a large family of mammalian ABC (ATP-binding cassette) transporter molecules, of which 49 have been discovered. As shown, a substrate such as a chemotherapeutic drug (*magenta*) enters the cell and is bound by the cytoplasmic domains of P-gp (*left*). In response to this binding and the binding of ATP molecules (*yellow*), the P-gp undergoes a profound conformational shift that collapses its cytoplasmic substrate-binding domain

and opens its domain facing the extracellular space (*right*), resulting in the extrusion of the drug molecule from the cell. The drug-binding pocket is shown in *cyan*. The right P-gp molecule has been rotated 90 degrees to better illustrate the stereochemistry of the drug-extrusion step. (From S.G. Aller et al., *Science* 323:1718–1722, 2009. With permission from AAAS.)

The advent of molecularly targeted agents, as discussed in the following sections, has highlighted the tremendous challenge of acquired drug resistance. Tumors almost invariably relapse with resistance-causing alterations after treatment with targeted therapy. This grim clinical reality has led to widespread consensus among drug developers: monotherapies involving either low–molecular-weight drugs or biological molecules are unlikely to cure most types of cancer, and effective multi-agent therapies must be devised if definitive, durable clinical responses are to be achieved in the future.

With these considerations in mind, we will read about a series of illustrative anecdotes in the ensuing sections. Each concerns a type of drug and its targets within cancer cells. The stories are arranged in an order, beginning with a well-established therapy and ending with a speculative one that holds great promise but is still far from clinical validation. In some cases, the specific therapy was inspired by discoveries of malfunctioning proteins within cancer cells; these discoveries allowed drug development to be pursued logically and methodically. In other cases, strokes of good luck or intuitive leaps enabled the development of highly active compounds. Inevitably, these anecdotes represent arbitrary choices and draw from a vast pool of agents currently under investigation or development. They represent the forerunners of many such drugs that will surely be developed and licensed for clinical use in the years to come.

OceanofPDF.com

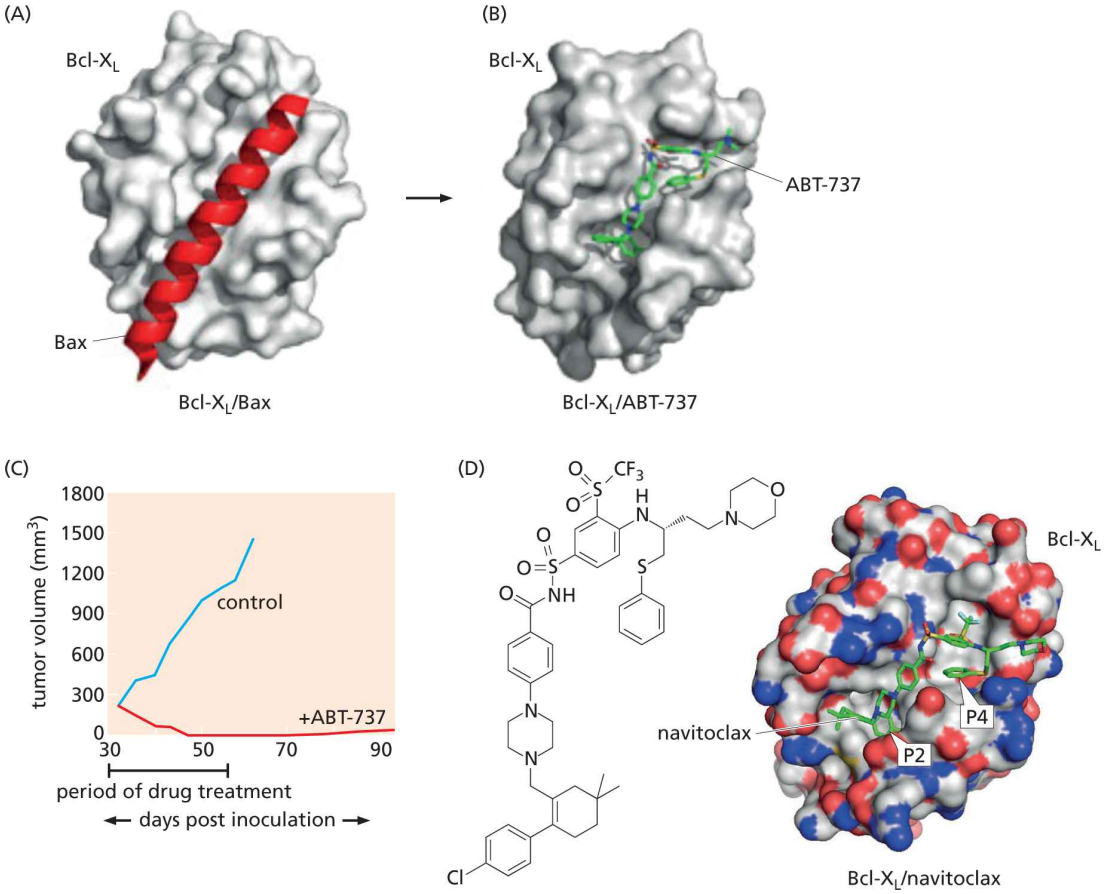
17.12 Targeting Bcl-2 to induce cell death

Arguably the most effective way to treat a tumor is to induce death in its constituent neoplastic cells, specifically to activate the apoptotic cell death program described in detail in Chapter 9. As revealed there, decisions of life versus death in the cell often depend on the functional balances between countervailing pro- and anti-apoptotic proteins, most directly depicted in Figure 9.25C. As described there, these mutually antagonistic proteins are all members of the Bcl-2 family, and they all operate in one or another way to open outer mitochondrial membrane pores (pro-apoptotic) or to hold these pores shut (anti-apoptotic). The presence of Bcl-2 translocations and deregulated expression in B-cell malignancies, coupled with an understanding of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 function at the mitochondrial outer membrane, suggested that an ongoing block to apoptosis may represent a core dependency in certain cancers.

As was discussed, this hypothesis was tested in mouse models in which Myc and Bcl-2 coordinately promoted B-cell lymphoma development (Section 9.13). Genetic deletion of the Bcl-2 transgene expression in these tumors led to rapid apoptosis and tumor regression. Thus, not only could Bcl-2 promote tumor development, but it was also necessary for ongoing tumor maintenance and, consequently, rose to the level of a highly attractive target for anti-cancer drug development. However, a strategy to target Bcl-2 was complicated because it lacked any targetable catalytic site or drug-binding structural pocket. Attempts to use antisense nucleic acids targeting Bcl-2 mRNA were undertaken in the clinic, but these approaches achieved limited overall success.

A key breakthrough toward understanding how to target anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 members came from examining the interaction between BH3-only Bcl-2 family members and their anti-apoptotic targets. The observation that small peptide domains were able to block Bcl-2 interactions with Bax led to the development of short BH3 peptide mimetics that could recapitulate some of the activity of BH3-only proteins (see Figures 9.23 and 9.25). These BH3 peptide mimetics have since become an effective tool for examining the propensity of specific cells to undergo apoptosis in response to diverse stimuli including anti-cancer agents (**Supplementary Sidebar 17.10**). Using a chemical screening approach based on nuclear magnetic resonance, a small molecule BH3 mimetic termed ABT-737 was developed. This molecule represented one of the first anti-cancer agents that was developed based on structural prediction and simulation. Molecules were identified that could recapitulate two distinct binding interfaces of the BH3-only protein Bim bound to the BH2 and BH4 pockets of Bcl-X_L. These two binding fragments were then cleverly linked together to generate the final

ABT-737 molecule (**Figure 17.27A**). ABT-737 bound Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L with high affinity and showed potent single-agent killing in a range of tumor cell lines and murine tumors (Figure 17.27B).



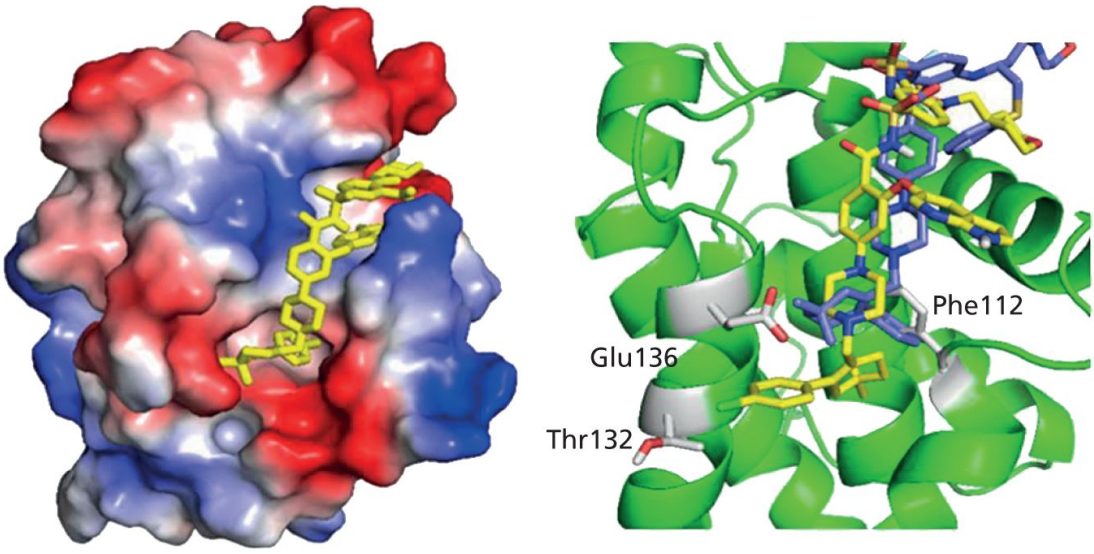
A four part figure about anti-apoptotic B c l 2 family inhibitors. Part A. A space filling model of a B c l X L slash Bax complex. An alpha helix of Bax binds to a groove in the B c l X L protein. Part B. A space filling model of a B c l X L slash A B T 737 complex. A molecule of A B T 737 binds to a groove in the B c l X L protein. Part C. A line graph shows the change in tumor volume in a control and when treated with A B T 737. On the x axis is days post inoculation. The period of drug treatment is from 30 to 55 days. Both tumors start at just under 300 cubic millimeters. The control increases steadily to about 1500 cubic centimeters by day 65. The tumor treated with A B T 737 decreases in size to about 0 cubic millimeters by day 50 and remains close to 0 through day 90. Part D. The molecular structure of navitoclax and a space filling model of navitoclax bound to B c l X L. The molecular structure is complex with several six membered rings. Nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen groups are integrated throughout the structure. The model shows navitoclax binding with pockets P2 and P4 of a groove in B c l X L.

Figure 17.27 The development of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2-family inhibitors (A) The drug termed ABT-737 was developed using nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)-based screening, parallel synthesis (a form of combinatorial chemistry), and structure-based design, undertaken to visualize the interacting structures of pro-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members with the anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-X_L. The α-helix of the pro-apoptotic Bax protein (*red helix*; see also Figures 9.23 and 9.25) binds to a groove in Bcl-X_L protein (*white/gray surface*) and inhibits its anti-apoptotic function. (B) This groove is also occupied by ABT-737, a small molecule (*green stick figure*)—specifically designed to mimic and thus compete with this protein–protein interaction. (C) The effects of ABT-737 on the growth of a human small-cell lung carcinoma (SCLC) xenograft are shown in the graph. The black bar indicates the time window during which ABT-737 was applied. (D) An orally bioavailable compound navitoclax (also known as ABT-263, *green*), an inhibitor of the Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L and MCL1 anti-apoptotic proteins, was subsequently generated. Shown is an X-ray co-crystal structure of navitoclax (*green stick figure*) bound to Bcl-X_L (*red, white, blue*) with critical drug-binding pockets indicated as P2 and P4. Because navitoclax inhibits Bcl-X_L, a protein important for blood platelet life span, dose-limiting thrombocytopenia has presented a barrier for expanded clinical use of this agent. (A, from N. Chessum et al., *Prog Med Chem.*54:1–63, 2015. With permission from Elsevier. B, from A. Ashkenazi et al., *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov*. 16:273–284, 2017. With permission from Elsevier. C, from T. Oltersdorf et al., *Nature* 435:677–681, 2005. With permission from Nature. D, A. Ashkenazi et al., *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 16:273–285, 2017. With permission from Nature.)

An orally available version of ABT-737, termed ABT-263 (Figure 17.27C), was subsequently developed and introduced into clinical trials as a monotherapy in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). Here, as occurs in the context of many clinical trials, the agent produced an unanticipated toxicity. Although effective in eliminating leukemia cells, ABT-263 also demonstrated significant platelet toxicity. The resulting thrombocytopenia (and associated risk of hemorrhages) restricted the ability to introduce larger doses of ABT-263 and limited the overall efficacy of this drug.

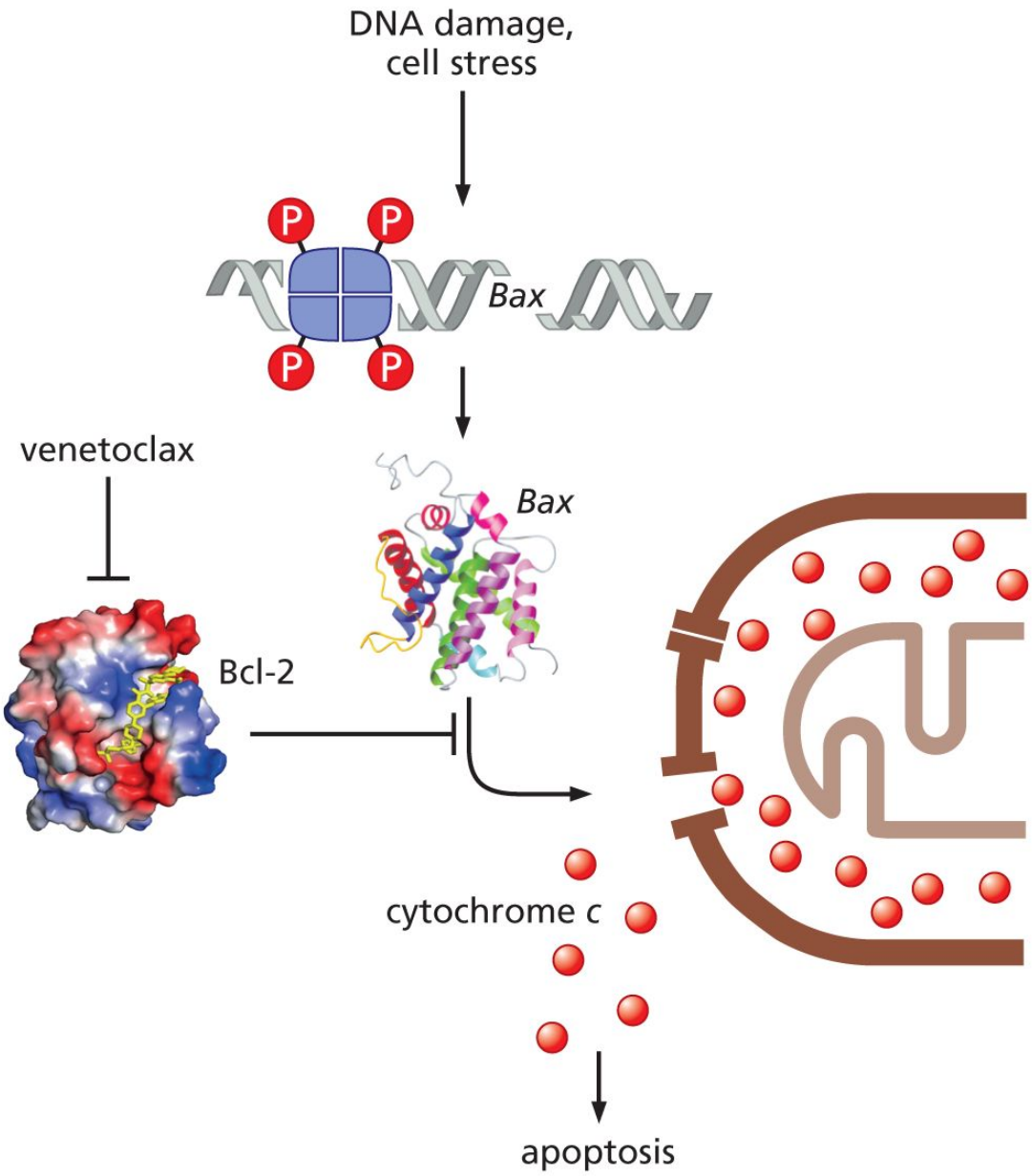
Although this type of setback in a clinical trial represents the end of many drug development programs, a broad understanding of Bcl-2-family protein biology provided a key insight into this toxicity. Specifically, Bcl-X_L was determined to be essential for the survival of platelets and, indeed, ABT-263 was found to target both Bcl-2 (its intended target) and Bcl-X_l. This finding led to further efforts to apply the same approach used previously to formulate ABT-737 in order to generate a Bcl-2

specific inhibitor. The result was the development of ABT-199 (or venetoclax), a selective, orally bioavailable and potent inhibitor of Bcl-2 that lacks significant platelet toxicity (**Figure 17.28A**).



A 3 D model of venetoclax binding to a cleft in B c l 2. A ribbon diagram shows that venetoclax interacts with glutamine 136, threonine 132, and phenylalanine 112.

(A)



A diagram shows the pathways leading to induction of apoptosis. D N A damage and cell stress stimulate the translation of the Bax gene to create the Bax protein. Venetoclax inhibits B c l 2 from inhibiting Bax. Bax stimulates the release of cytochrome c from the mitochondria which leads to apoptosis.

(B)

Figure 17.28 The development of venetoclax Structure-based design was used to generate Bcl-2-selective small molecules, based on the idea that such molecules would maintain anti-tumor activity while avoiding the thrombocytopenia induced by navitoclax (see Figure 17.27). (A) A model of venetoclax (also known as ABT-

199, *yellow*) binding to Bcl-2 (*left*) shows the Bcl-2 electrostatic surface, with positive charges in *blue* and negative charges in *red*. The image compares the interacting residues in Bcl-2 (*green*, *right*), venetoclax (*yellow*), and navitoclax (*blue-purple*). Here, the amino residues Phe112, Thr132, and Glu136 (latter two in *red*, *white*) of Bcl-2 specifically interact with venetoclax, which underlies the specificity of this agent as a Bcl-2 inhibitor. (B) The diagram shows pathways leading to induction of apoptosis. In the absence of p53-dependent induction of BH3-only proteins (notably Bax), Bcl-2 holds mitochondrial outer membrane channels shut, preventing release of cytochrome *c*, and cellular stresses fail to induce cell death; this explains why malignancies like p53-deficient chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) are highly resistant to genotoxic agents. Venetoclax blocks the ability of Bcl-2 to inhibit pro-apoptotic Bax (and Bak, *not shown*) and renders p53-deficient tumor cells vulnerable to cellular stress. Results to date indicate that venetoclax functions most effectively to sensitize cancer cells to the killing effects of FDA-approved cytotoxic drugs. (A, from J. Ramos et al., *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* 20:860–879, 2019. B, adapted from M. Suzuki, R.J. Youle and N. Tjandra, *Cell* 103:645–654, 2000. With permission from Elsevier.)

Venetoclax has achieved clinical success in the treatment of CLLs that lack chromosome 17p, an alteration that most notably results in the loss of p53 expression (Figure 17.28B). Notably, 17p loss does not, per se, sensitize these cancers to Bcl-2 inhibition. Instead, CLLs with 17p loss are highly resistant to existing standard-of-care therapies, making it possible to rapidly identify a subset of patients who would not benefit from existing chemotherapy. As is the case for many cancers, it was the absence of effective alternative treatments that provided the opportunity and impetus to try new approaches.

Soon extensive experimental data showed that overexpressed Bcl-2 could promote neoplastic progression in a broad set of hematopoietic cell types, explaining why much of the pre-clinical and clinical efforts to explore the clinical utility of venetoclax has focused on blood cancers. These treatment studies included patients with acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), a cancer that is currently treated with conventional combination chemotherapy and has a generally poor prognosis. Venetoclax, in combination with other agents, has shown significant clinical efficacy in AML patients who cannot tolerate the toxicity associated with high-dose chemotherapy. Here again, it was the inability to treat patients with a standard-of-care therapy that provided the opportunity and incentive to test a new agent. Although it remains to be seen if this treatment can supplant standard-of-care regimens in this disease, the introduction of an alternative to toxic combination-chemotherapy represents an important development for the treatment of AML.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

nuclear magnetic resonance
: Analytical procedure for determining molecular structures and interactions in which molecules are placed under strong magnetic fields and the influence of radio frequency waves; the frequencies at which the atoms within a molecule resonate yields information on the molecular interactions of individual atoms and, in turn, the overall structure of a complex molecule.

monotherapy
: A therapy in which only a single drug or treatment is used at one time.

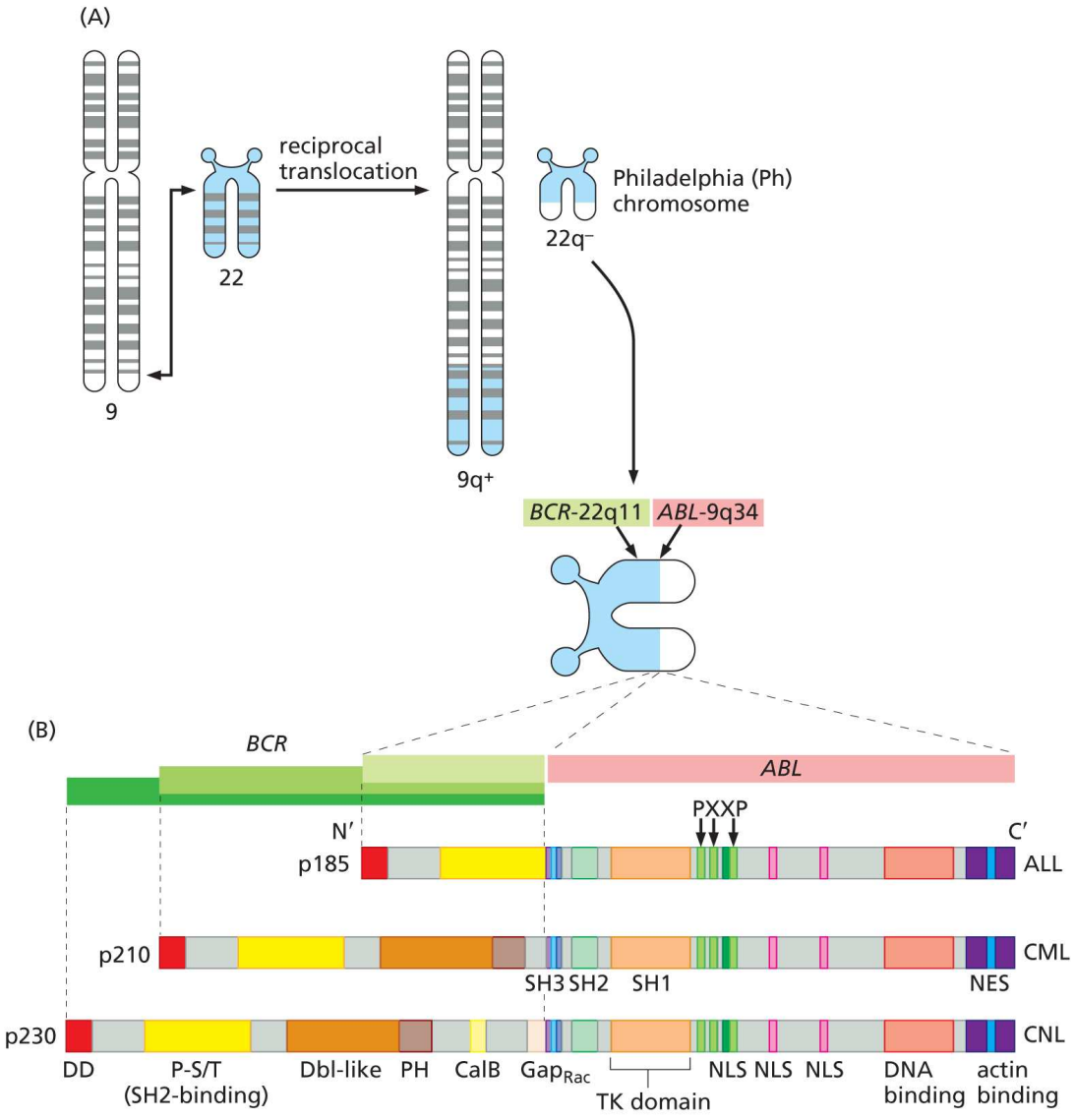
thrombocytopenia
: A deficiency of platelets in the circulation.

OceanofPDF.com

17.13 Gleevec paved the way for the development of many other highly targeted compounds

In the previous sections, we made repeated reference to the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein and to experimental strategies for antagonizing it. Now, we backtrack and review the history of how the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein was discovered and validated as an attractive drug target and finally used as an object of rational drug design. This story is valuable, if only because it illustrates vividly the long course through which drug development passes from initial discovery at the laboratory bench to the oncology clinic.

This particular story begins in 1914, when the German cytologist Theodor Boveri proposed that chromosomal defects might cause a cell to proliferate abnormally, resulting ultimately in the formation of some type of cancer. Almost half a century passed before Boveri's idea received some validation. In 1960, two cytologists working in Philadelphia noted that an abnormal, unusually small Chromosome 22 was characteristically present in the great majority of cells of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML); since that time, it has been called the Philadelphia chromosome or simply Ph. It took another dozen years before a researcher in Chicago demonstrated that a reciprocal translocation between Chromosomes 9 and 22 was responsible for creating the Ph chromosome (see Section 4.5). (A larger chunk of Chromosome 22 is donated to the tip of Chromosome 9 than is received from this chromosome, leaving the already-tiny Chromosome 22 even more diminished in size; this remnant of 22 plus the small translocated segment constitutes the Ph chromosome; **Figure 17.29A**). The chromosomal aberration—clearly representing a somatic mutation—was proposed as a potential cause of this malignancy. As mentioned earlier, we now know that this particular translocation is present in more than 95% of cases of CML.



A two part figure shows the origin and structure of the B c r A b l protein. Part A. An illustration shows the formation of the Philadelphia, or P h, chromosome. When reciprocal translocation occurs between chromosomes 9 and 22, it forms 9 q plus, which is longer than 9, and 22 q minus, which is shorter than 22. 22 q minus is the Philadelphia chromosome, and the resulting section around the breakpoint boundary is a fusion of B C R 22 q 11 and A B L 9 q 34. Part B. A diagram shows the different breakpoints in the chromosome and the proteins that they form. The A b l side is always present and consists of the following domains, S H 3, S H 2, S H 1, which is the T K domain, P X X P, the N L S domains, a D N A binding domain, an actin binding domain, and N E S. The B C R side can be different length,s all which contain the D D domain and the S H 2 binding domain. In the p 185 protein, nothing else is present. The p 210 protein also contains D b l like and P H domains. The p 230 protein also contains Cal B and Gap sub Rac domains.

Figure 17.29 Origin and structure of the Bcr-Abl protein (A) More than 95% of cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) exhibit the Philadelphia chromosome, which results from a reciprocal translocation between Chromosomes 9 and 22. The q34 region of Chromosome 9 carrying most of the *ABL* gene is transferred to the q11 region of Chromosome 22, replacing a larger segment of Chromosome 22 that is translocated reciprocally to Chromosome 9. The net result is a truncated Chromosome 22 (i.e., $22q^{-}$), often termed the Philadelphia chromosome (Ph), and a fusion of the 5′ portion of the *ABL* gene with a 3′-proximal portion of the *BCR* gene, which normally resides at 22q11. (B) Depending on the precise location of the breakpoint in *BCR*, three distinct Bcr-Abl fusion proteins may be formed; these are found in ALL (acute lymphoblastic leukemia), CML, and CNL (chronic neutrophilic leukemia). Each of these *BCR-ABL* fusion genes encodes a multidomain (and thus multifunctional) protein. (From A.S. Advani and A.M. Pendergast, *Leuk. Res*. 26:713–720, 2002. With permission from Elsevier.)

The genes that were fused through this translocation remained unknown until 1982, when molecular biologists discovered that *ABL*, the human homolog of the mouse c-*abl* proto-oncogene (see Tables 4.1 and 4.5), participates directly in these chromosomal translocations, becoming fused with a second, still unknown gene. The breakpoints of this other gene (the chromosomal sites at which it becomes fused to the *ABL* gene) were soon found to be scattered over many kilobases of DNA, yielding the name "**b**reakpoint **c**luster **r**egion" or simply *BCR*. In fact, three distinct fusion proteins arise through the inclusion of variously sized Bcr proteins at the N-termini of the fusion proteins, with almost the entire Abl protein at the C-termini (see Figures 4.11 and 17.29B). As indicated in the figure, the different fusion proteins tend to be associated with distinct types of leukemia.

Within two years of its discovery, the Bcr-Abl protein was found to function as a constitutively activated tyrosine kinase. In this respect, it functions like the Abl oncoprotein of Abelson mouse leukemia virus. Like other acutely transforming retroviruses, the genome of this virus carries an oncogene—in this case *abl*—derived from a corresponding proto-oncogene residing in the normal mouse genome (see Section 3.10).

By 1990, a cDNA encoding the Bcr-Abl fusion protein had been introduced into a retrovirus vector, and the resulting virus was then found to induce in mice a leukemia that closely resembled human CML. Like the human disease, this leukemia involved large numbers of fully differentiated granulocytes in the blood. Under certain conditions, the mouse leukemia, like its human counterpart, progressed to a "blast crisis," involving the accumulation of immature cells of the lymphoid or myeloid lineages (see also Sidebar 8.7). These observations in mice represented the first formal

proof that the Bcr-Abl fusion protein operates as the central motive force of leukemogenesis in CML.

Unfortunately, this demonstration of the critical role of Bcr-Abl revealed nothing about the mechanisms by which it functions. The bewildering complexity of Bcr-Abl signaling is indicated by the diverse array of structural and functional domains in the two contributing proteins (see Figures 4.11B and 17.29B). Altogether, the domains of this fusion protein enable it to activate the Ras pathway, the PI3 kinase–Akt/PKB pathway, the Jak–STAT pathway, and transcription factors, including Jun, Myc, and NF-κB. In addition, the Ras-like Rac protein, which regulates activities as diverse as cellular migration, survival, and proliferation, is activated, as are two nonreceptor tyrosine kinases, Hck and Fes. These various associations enable the Bcr-Abl protein to extend its reach into almost all the regulatory circuits governing cell proliferation and survival.

In spite of this complexity, the tyrosine kinase domain of Bcr-Abl was found to be the key element in leukemogenesis. For example, subtle alterations of the Bcr-Abl protein that inactivated its tyrosine kinase catalytic activity led to total loss of its transforming function. In the early 1990s, a research program was begun to develop low–molecular-weight antagonists of the Bcr-Abl tyrosine kinase activity. A drug molecule emerged, termed variously imatinib mesylate, STI-571, Glivec, and Gleevec (see Figure 17.13A), which was able to bind the catalytic cleft of the Bcr-Abl tyrosine kinase. As is the case with all other kinases of this family, the cleft is located between the two major structural lobes of the kinase protein (see Figures 6.6 and 17.13B).

Even though the Abl kinase domain shares roughly 42% amino acid identity with a large number of other tyrosine kinases, the inhibitory effects of Gleevec on Bcr-Abl were found to be relatively specific (see Figure 17.16). Subsequently, four other tyrosine kinases—those belonging to the PDGF (α and β) and Kit receptors as well as the Arg (Abelson-related gene) protein—were also found to be inhibited by Gleevec. Accordingly, this drug, when used at therapeutic concentrations, appears to target only 4 of the 90 or so human tyrosine kinases. Like most other kinase inhibitors, the Gleevec molecule associates directly with the ATP-binding pocket of the Abl kinase domain (see Figure 17.13). Whereas other kinase inhibitors block ATP binding in this cleft, Gleevec works differently: it binds and stabilizes a catalytically inactive conformation of this enzyme (much like the small drug molecule that inhibits the G12C mutant Ras protein; see Section 17.4).

The success with Gleevec encouraged other attempts at creating low–molecular-weight kinase antagonists, which were realized to have certain therapeutic advantages over anti-receptor monoclonal antibodies (**Table 17.7**). In addition, this advance stimulated efforts to make narrowly targeted tyrosine kinase inhibitors, some of which have indeed demonstrated extraordinary specificity. For example, even though the tyrosine

kinase domains of the insulin receptor (IR) and insulin-like growth factor receptor (IGF-1R) are very similar in structure (84% identity in kinase domain residues), a low–molecular-weight inhibitor has been developed that targets preferentially the IGF-1R, doing so at a concentration that is 27-fold lower than that required for it to inhibit the IR.

Table 17.7 Strengths and weaknesses of anti-receptor antibodies versus low–molecular-weight tyrosine kinase inhibitors as anti-cancer agents

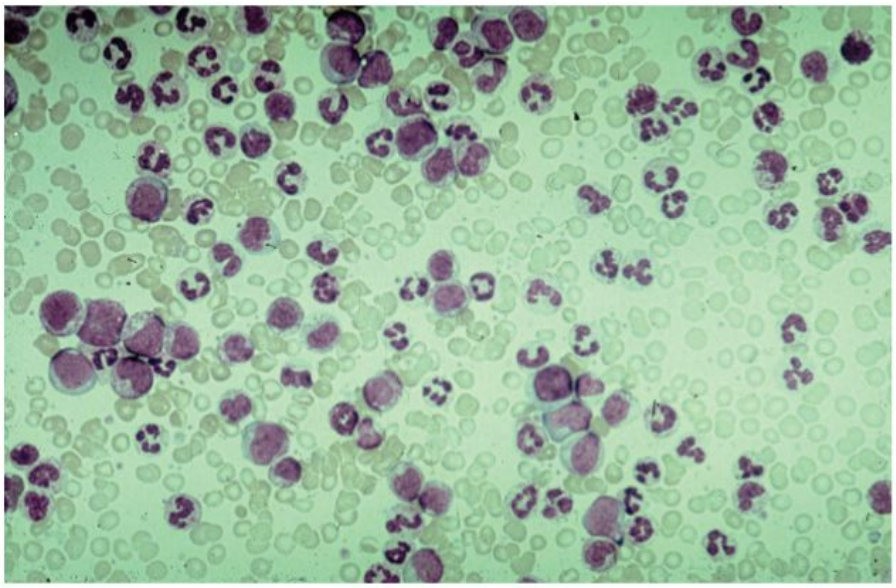
	Small molecule	**Antibody**
Target	tyrosine kinase domain	receptor ectodomain
Specificity	+++	++++
Binding	most are rapidly reversible	receptor internalized, only slowly regenerated
Dosing	oral daily	intravenous, ≤ weekly
Distribution in tissues	more complete	less complete
Toxicity	rash, diarrhea, pulmonary	rash, allergy
Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity	no	possibly

Courtesy of N.J. Meropol and from N. Damjanov and N. Meropol, *Oncol. (Huntington)* 18:479–488, 2004.

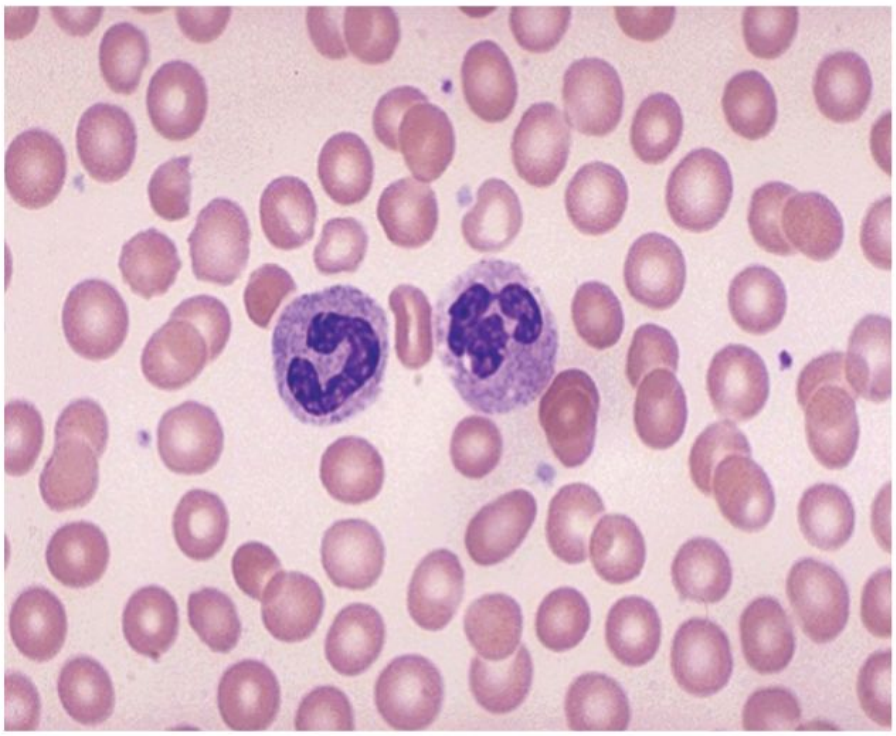
By 1996, Gleevec had been found able to inhibit the growth of CML cells *in vitro* while having no effect on normal bone marrow cells. More specifically, the proliferation of Bcr-Abl–dependent cells could be inhibited at drug concentrations as

low as 40 nM, indicating a high affinity of Gleevec for the catalytic cleft of the tyrosine kinase domain. (Cells that depend on Bcr-Abl for survival can be forced into apoptosis by Gleevec's inhibition of Abl kinase function.) The initial clinical trials, begun in 1998, revealed remissions from disease in all 31 treated CML patients, with only minimal side effects, even when taken daily for many years. Four years later, 6000 patients were participating in Gleevec clinical trials.

Treatment of early-stage (chronic) CML with Gleevec leads to a hematologic response in 90% of cases: microscopic analysis of blood smears reveals a profound shift in the cellular composition of the blood (**Figure 17.30A**), and PCR analysis reveals an extraordinary decline in the levels of the *Bcr-Abl* mRNA detectable in blood cells (Figure 17.30B). In 50% of these cases, the translocated Philadelphia chromosome is no longer detectable by karyotypic analyses of patients' white cells. About 60% of the patients who have already progressed to blast crisis respond to Gleevec, but they generally relapse after some months. In contrast, a clinical study reported in 2006 that five years after chronic-phase patients began long-term treatment with Gleevec, fewer than 5% of patients had died of CML-related effects. By this fifth year, the annual relapse rate (that is, progression to blast crisis) in this population was ~0.6%.



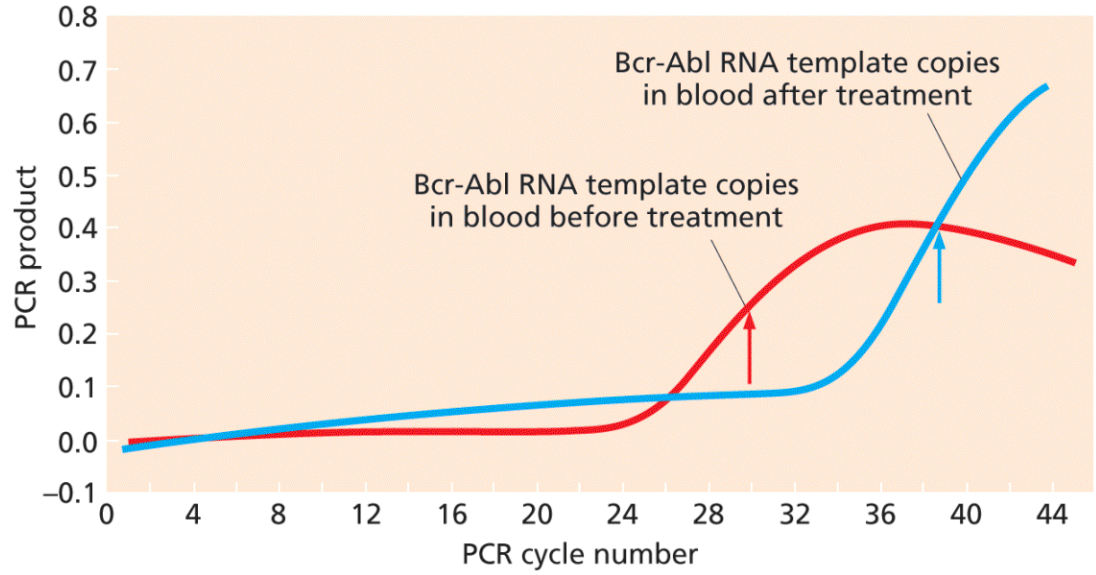
before treatment



after treatment

Two histology images of blood before and after treatment. The blood before has many cells with large dark nuclei among the red blood cells. The blood after has two purple cells among the red blood cells.

(A)



A graph shows the amount of P C R product relative to an increasing number of P C R cycles. On the x axis, the P C R cycle number ranges from 0 to 44. On the y axis, the amount of P C R product ranges from negative 0.1 to 0.8. There are two curves that both start near 0. The curve for B c r A b l R N A template copies in blood before treatment starts increasing around cycle 24 and peaks near 0.5 at cycle 36. The curve for B c r A b l R N A template copies in blood after treatment increases slowly to 0.1 at cycle 33 and then increases more rapidly to 0.7 at cycle 44.

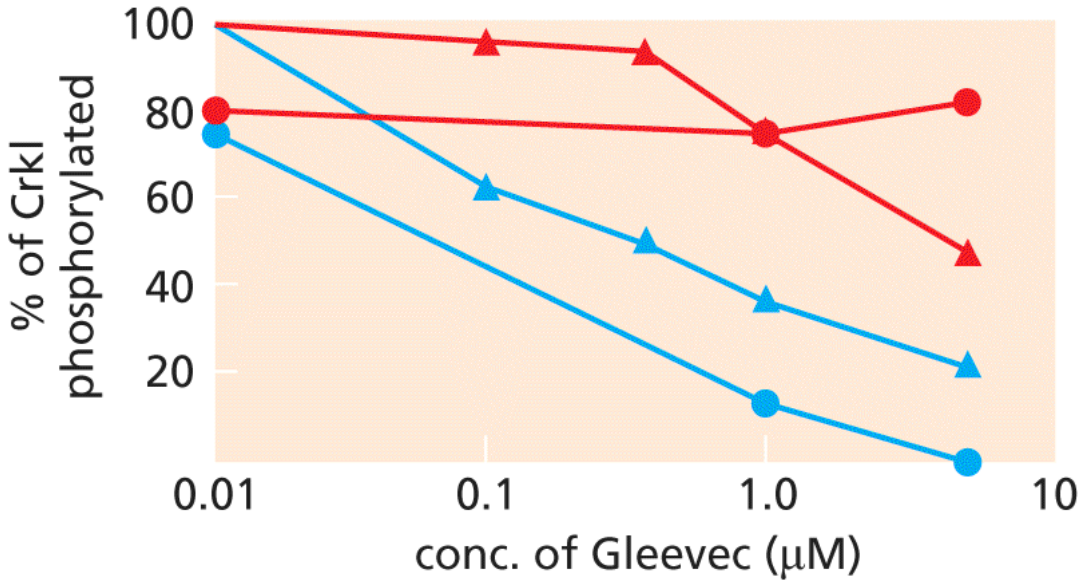
(B)

Figure 17.30 Measuring clinical responses to Gleevec treatment (A) The successes of Gleevec in treating chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) can be gauged from cytological analyses of the patients' blood. As seen here, treatment with Gleevec converted the blood from a state with many leukemia cells (large, dark nuclei, *above*) to one in which only normal granulocytes are visible (*below*) among the red blood cells. (B) A more sensitive and quantitative measure of therapeutic success comes from use of quantitative polymerase chain reaction (qPCR) measurements of the level of Bcr-Abl mRNA (which is reverse-transcribed prior to PCR amplification). In an untreated patient (*red curve*), 50% of maximum (*red arrow*) PCR-mediated gene amplification is observed at about the 29th cycle of gene amplification (in which each cycle results in the doubling of the amplified sequence). Following Gleevec treatment (*blue curve*), a comparable degree of amplification is achieved only at about the 39th cycle (*blue arrow*), indicating that the Bcr-Abl mRNA–expressing cells are present at a level

that has been reduced by a factor of about 2^{10}. PCR-based assays can detect as few as one CML cell amid 10^5 to 10^6 normal blood cells. (A and B, courtesy of B.J. Druker.)

The molecular mechanisms that allow tumor cells to eventually escape Gleevec inhibition are interesting, in that they shed further light on the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein and its actions and, more generally, they reveal how cancer cells can acquire resistance to highly targeted drugs. Initial analyses of *Bcr-Abl* sequences in the tumors of patients with Gleevec-resistant, relapsed disease revealed that 29 of 32 tumors harbored mutations in the *Bcr-Abl* gene; altogether these yielded substitutions of 13 distinct amino acid residues in the kinase domain. Another dozen have been cataloged in subsequent studies.

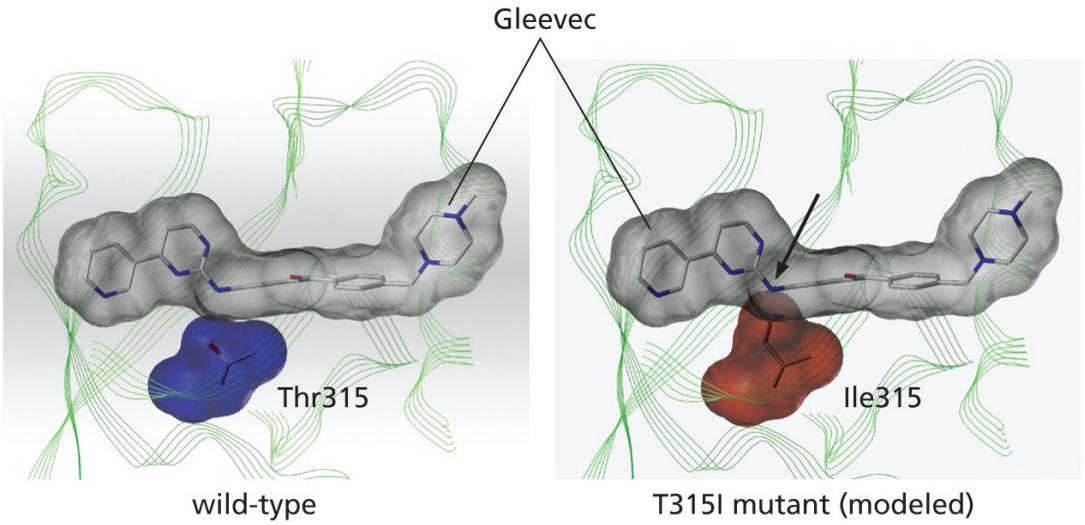
Some of these mutations prevent Gleevec from binding to the Abl catalytic cleft, either by directly interfering with its binding or, less directly, by promoting protein conformational changes that affect the dynamics of binding (**Figure 17.31A and B**). In a minority of patients, Gleevec resistance was achieved through amplification of the *Bcr-Abl* gene in their leukemia cells, yielding increased levels of the encoded oncoprotein that apparently could no longer be inhibited by the concentrations of drug used to treat patients (see Figure 17.31C).



A graph shows the percent of C r k l phosphorylated relative to the concentration of Gleevec for two different patients before and after treatment with Gleevec. On the x axis is concentration of Gleevec from 0 to 10 micromolar. On the y axis is percent of C r k l phosphorylated from 0 to 100.

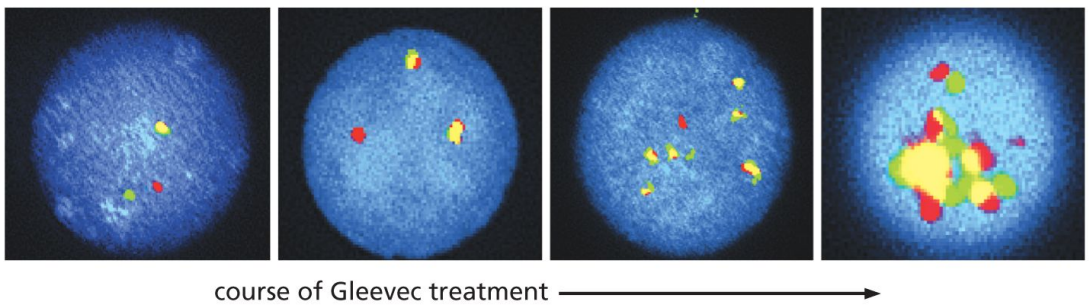
The blue triangle line starts near 100 percent and ends at 20 percent near a concentration of 8 micromolar. The blue circle line starts near 78 percent and ends at 0 percent near a concentration of 8 micromolar. The red triangle line starts at 100 percent and ends at 50 percent near a concentration of 8 micromolar. The red circle line starts at 80 percent and ends at 85 percent near a concentration of 8 micromolar.

(A)



Two illustrations show Gleevec in a wild type and a T 315 l mutant cell. In the wild type cell, Gleevec is bonded such that it just touches T h r 315. In the mutant cell, if Gleevec were to try to bind, it would overlap with I L e315.

(B)



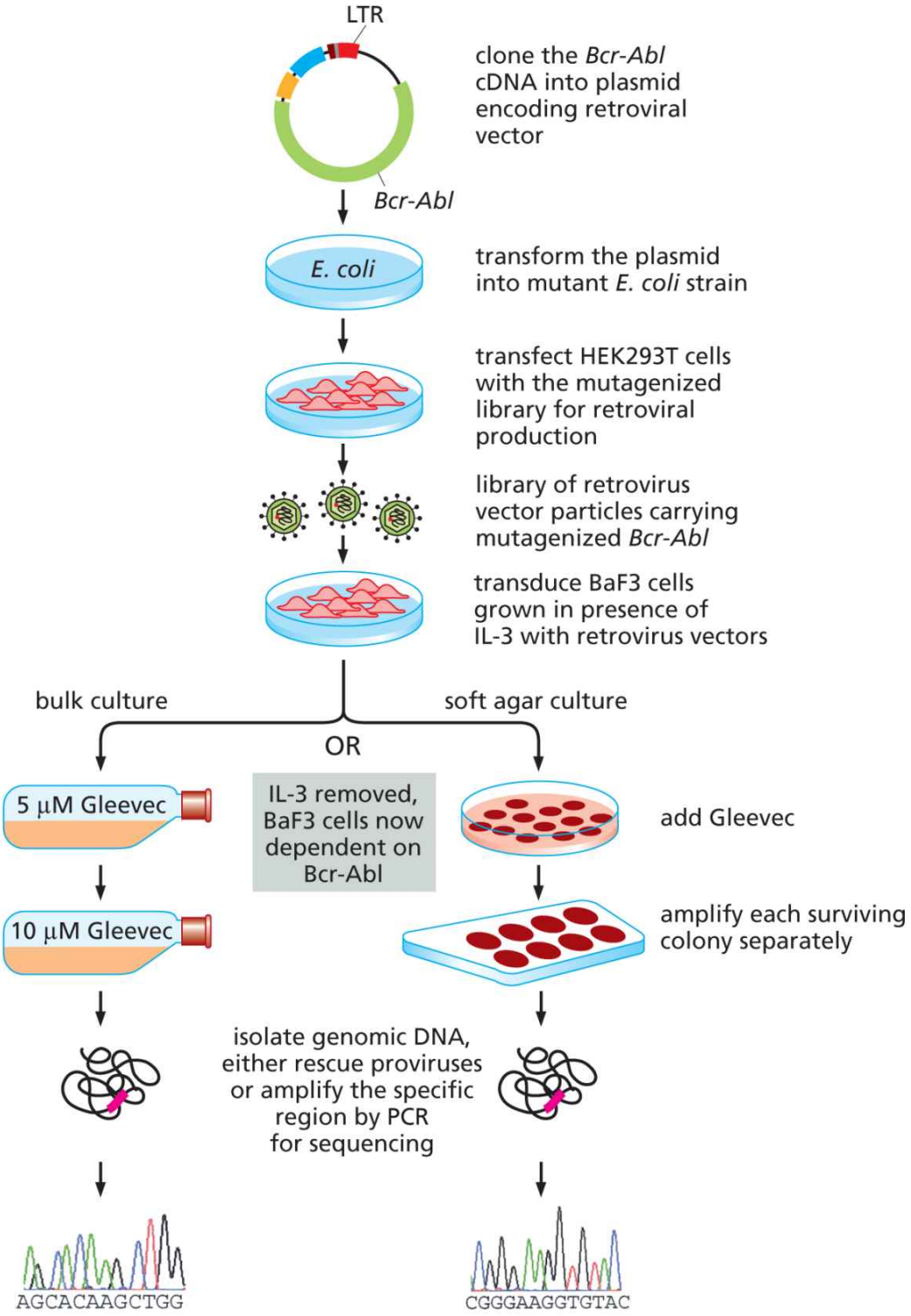
A series of fluorescence images shows changes over the course of Gleevec treatment. The first image has one small red dot, one small green dot, and one small yellow dot on a blue background. The second image has two slightly larger yellow dots and a red dot, with one small spot of green indicating overlap. The third image has several yellow dots and one red dot, with a few

green dots indicating overlap. The fourth image has several larger yellow masses and red splotches, with several green splotches indicating overlap. (C)

Figure 17.31 Acquisition by CML cells of resistance to Gleevec The ability of Gleevec to inhibit Bcr-Abl kinase activity changes dramatically following relapse and acquired resistance to drug treatment. (A) In this experiment, Bcr-Abl kinase activity was gauged in isolated leukemia cells by the degree of phosphorylation of Crkl, a protein that is a substrate for phosphorylation by this kinase. At the onset of therapy, the Bcr-Abl kinase (in cultured leukemia cells) suffered about a 50% inhibition in the presence of approximately 0.1 μM Gleevec in two patients (*blue triangles, blue circles*). However, after Gleevec resistance developed in these patients, about an 8-μM concentration of the drug was required to inhibit one patient's Bcr-Abl kinase (*red triangles*), while the other patient was totally resistant to the drug (*red circles*). (B) The Gleevec molecule is able to nestle tightly in a molecular cavity created in part by a threonine residue (*dark blue*) in residue position 315 of the wild-type Bcr-Abl oncoprotein (*left*; see also Figure 16.10C). However, in a mutant Bcr-Abl found in the leukemic cells of a Gleevec-resistant patient (*right*), this threonine residue was replaced by an isoleucine (*brown, arrow*), which protrudes into the drug-binding cavity and interferes with insertion of Gleevec into the cavity. (C) The number of *Bcr-Abl* gene copies in a patient's leukemic cells has been gauged here using fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH). Nuclei are visualized here in *blue*, ABL sequences in *red*, and BCR sequences in *green*. Yellow indicates an overlap of ABL and BCR sequences, i.e., sites of the fused gene created by the chromosomal translocation. The copy numbers of the fused gene (*yellow*) at the beginning of therapy (*left*) were quite low, but as treatment proceeded (*rightward*), the copies of the fused gene (and therefore Bcr-Abl fusion protein) increased progressively until the patient's leukemia became resistant to Gleevec treatment. In this particular patient, Gleevec resistance was acquired by the tumor cells because the fusion protein became overexpressed, thereby exceeding the ability of the normally used therapeutic concentration of Gleevec to bind and fully inactivate it. (From M.E. Gorre et al., *Science* 293:876–880, 2001. With permission from AAAS.)

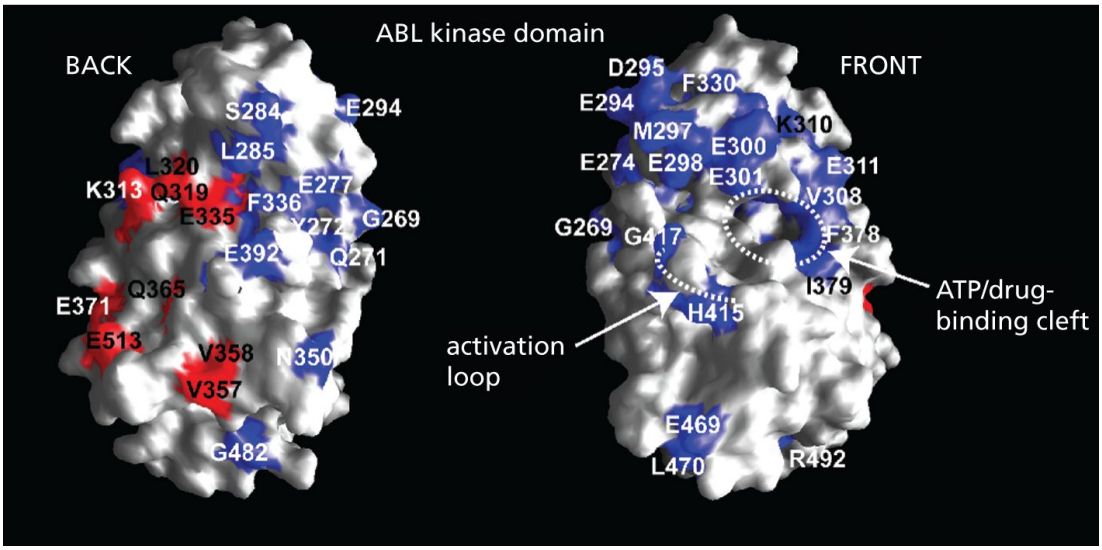
The observations that acquired resistance to Gleevec is usually accompanied by either structural alterations or overexpression of the Bcr-Abl protein provide compelling proof that Gleevec's therapeutic responses can be attributed directly to its effects on the Bcr-Abl protein. This insight was further explored by introducing random mutations into a vector encoding the Bcr-Abl protein and then determining which of the resulting mutant forms of this protein were able to resist inhibition by Gleevec (**Figure 17.32**). Such an experimental strategy, which uses cultured cells whose growth and viability are dependent on Bcr-Abl (see Figure 17.21), can in principle

reveal the full spectrum of structural alterations of Bcr-Abl that are capable of rendering it resistant to Gleevec inhibition and thereby advance our understanding of the molecular mechanisms underlying acquired drug resistance.



A flow chart shows the process of screening for drug resistant variants of B c r A b l. The first step is to clone the B c r A b l c D N A into a plasmid encoding retroviral vector. The plasmid is then transformed into a mutant E coli strain in a petri dish. The next step is to transfect H E K 293 T cells with the mutagenized library for production. This produces a library of retrovirus vector particles carrying mutagenized B c r A b l. The next step is to transduce B a F 3 cells grown in the presence of I L 3 with the retrovirus vectors. This may be put in a bulk culture with 5 micromolar Gleevec and then with 10 micromolar Gleevec. If it is instead put in a soft agar culture, Gleevec is added and then each surviving colony is amplified separately. In both situations, I L 3 is removed so that the B a F 3 cells are now dependent on B c r A b l. After each of these processes, genomic D N A is isolated. The next step is either to rescue the proviruses of amplify the specific region by P C R for sequencing.

(A)



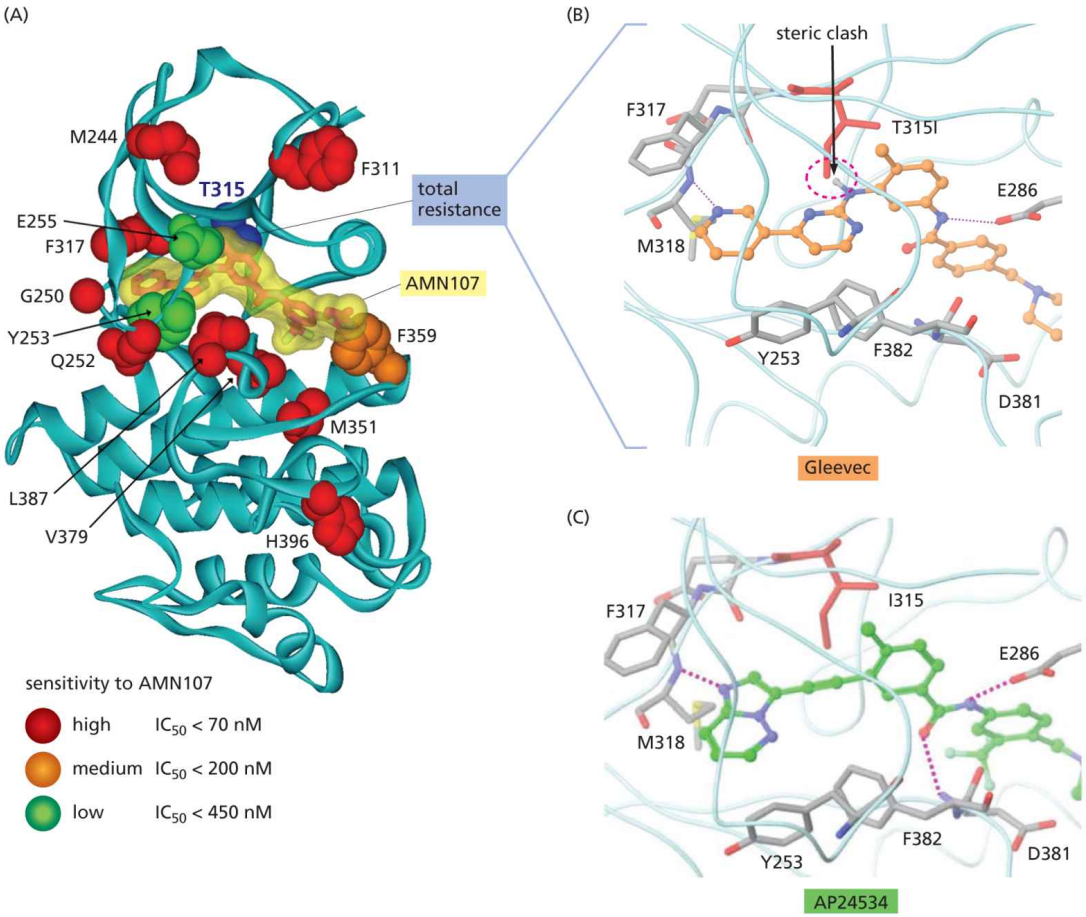
A 3 D model of the A B L kinase domain of a Gleevec resistant B c r A b l protein. Both sides of the lumpy, ovular mass are shown with different regions highlighted and labeled. Two regions close together are identified as the activation loop and the A T P slash drug binding cleft.

(B)

Figure 17.32 Screening *in vitro* for Gleevec-resistant mutant forms of Bcr-Abl
One strategy for detecting drug-resistant variants of Bcr-Abl involves cultured cells such as BaF3 cells (see Figure 16.15), whose continued survival can be made dependent on the presence of a functionally active Bcr-Abl oncoprotein. When

such Bcr-Abl–expressing cells are treated with Gleevec, they are killed because of their dependence on continued Bcr-Abl signaling. (A) A cDNA clone expressing the “wild-type” Bcr-Abl protein (i.e., the direct product of the chromosomal translocation) can be mutagenized by passage through *E. coli* bacteria that are highly error-prone in DNA replication and therefore generate mutant variants of the introduced, plasmid-borne *Bcr-Abl* sequence. The resulting collection of randomly mutated Bcr-Abl–expressing clones is then introduced, via a retrovirus vector, into BaF3 cells, which are then exposed to Gleevec. The rare cells that resist being killed by Gleevec are isolated, and the sequence of the mutant Bcr-Abl protein that conferred Gleevec resistance is determined. (B) When these Gleevec-resistant mutant Bcr-Abl proteins are analyzed, many are found to have single amino acid substitutions of residues located throughout the Abl kinase domain. The “back” and “front” of the Abl kinase domain are shown here, together with the sites of these mutant residues and the identities of the normally present amino acid residues. Surprisingly, the individual mutations, each of which confers Gleevec resistance, alter residues at many sites in the ABL domain, indicating that CML cells have multiple options for developing drug resistance. Many of these mutant residues are found on the back side of Abl opposite the catalytic cleft; some of these residues (*red*) participate in interactions between the kinase (i.e., SH1) domain and the SH2 and SH3 domains of Abl (*not shown*). Other mutant sites (*blue*) produce drug resistance through poorly understood mechanisms. This *in vitro* screen for Gleevec-resistant Bcr-Abl mutants revealed most of those discovered in patients plus a number of previously undocumented ones. (From M. Azam, R.R. Latek and G.Q. Daley, *Cell* 112:831–843, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

A number of second-generation Bcr-Abl inhibitors have been synthesized that succeed in inhibiting many of the mutant Gleevec-resistant Bcr-Abl proteins that arise in CML patients and trigger clinical relapse; among these are nilotinib and dasatinib, which are actually more potent than Gleevec/imatinib. However, they and other newly developed Abl inhibitors fail to shut down the most formidable of the mutant proteins, termed T315I (**Figure 17.33A and B**). Detailed structural analyses of this mutant protein and its effects on drug binding have, after much effort, yielded novel compounds, including ponatinib, that can also shut down this particular mutant kinase (Figure 17.33C), illustrating once again how a convergence of structural biology and synthetic organic chemistry can often cope with such refractory mutant enzymes.



Three models show different inhibitors of B c r A b l. Part A. A ribbon model of B c R A b l with A M N 107 bound in the tyrosine kinase domain. Points of high sensitivity surround the molecule and lead to total resistance. There are a few points of medium and low sensitivity. Part B. A model shows Gleevec binding in the tyrosine kinase domain of a mutant B c r A b l. The molecule has a steric clash with the protein and the structures overlap. Part C. A model shows A P 24 534 binding in the tyrosine kinase domain of a mutant B c r A b l. The molecule hydrogen bonds with different locations and does not have a steric clash.

Figure 17.33 Backup inhibitors of Bcr-Abl for patients with Gleevec-resistant tumors The fact that patients in the acute (blast crisis) phase of CML often develop resistance to Gleevec (see, for example, Figure 17.31) has stimulated the development of alternative inhibitors of the Abl tyrosine kinase. (A) One of these inhibitors, AMN107, which is ~20 times more potent than Gleevec against unmutated Bcr-Abl, is shown here (*orange stick figure in yellow envelope*) in complex with the tyrosine kinase domain of Bcr-Abl, on which are also indicated the sites of a number of amino acid substitutions found in the mutant forms of Bcr-Abl in tumors of Gleevec-resistant patients. (The number of colored spheres at a site indicates the number of atoms present in the side chain of the substituted

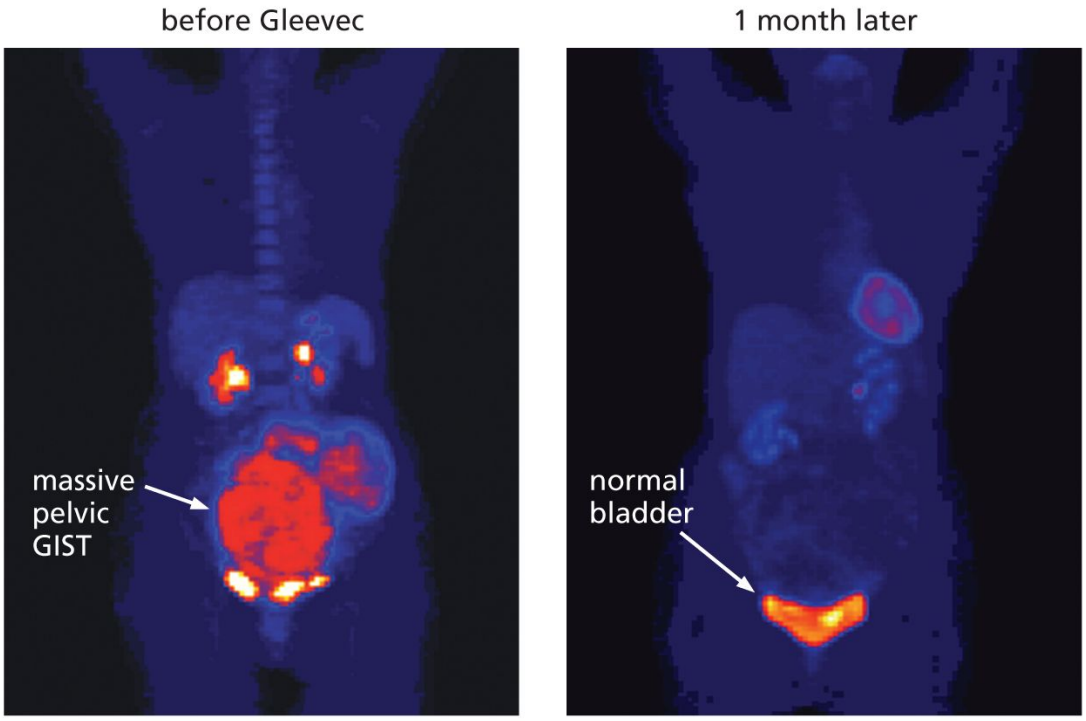
amino acid.) The locations of the amino acid substitutions carried by the mutant, Gleevec-resistant Bcr-Abl proteins are indicated by the red, orange, and green spheres and show different levels of sensitivity to inhibition by AMN107 (*below*). One Gleevec-resistant mutant form of Bcr-Abl in which the normally present threonine is replaced by an isoleucine (T315I; *blue spheres*) is also totally resistant to AMN107 and most other second-generation Bcr-Abl inhibitors. (IC_{50}, concentration required for 50% inhibition of the target molecule.) (B) As seen here, the side chain of the isoleucine (*red*) present in the T315I mutant Bcr-Abl protein creates a steric clash with a hydrogen atom of Gleevec in the drug-binding pocket (see Figure 17.31B), effectively precluding binding by Gleevec (*left*). (C) In response to this resistance of the T315I mutant, a pharmacologically active derivative of Gleevec, termed AP24534, avoids the steric clash and therefore can bind the T315I mutant protein. (A, from T. O'Hare et al., *Cancer Res*. 65:4500–4505, 2005. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research. B and C, from T. O'Hare et al., *Cancer Cell* 16:401–412, 2009. With permission from Elsevier.)

The ability of Gleevec to also inhibit the platelet-derived growth factor receptors (PDGF-Rα and β) suggested that it might prove useful in treating other types of malignancies as well. For example, translocations of the genes encoding these two receptors that cause constitutive receptor activation have been found in a number of chronic myeloproliferative diseases, that is, conditions involving elevated levels in the circulation of one or another cell type arising from the myeloid lineage of hematopoiesis. Indeed, patients suffering from hypereosinophilic syndrome that have PDGF-R translocations have shown a complete response following Gleevec treatment, with virtual disappearance of their eosinophils.

The growth of many of the far more common glioblastomas is driven by PDGF–PDGF-R autocrine loops (see Figure 5.8C). In this instance, however, the use of Gleevec administered together with cytotoxic drugs has not proven encouraging, possibly because it cannot efficiently penetrate the blood–brain barrier and gain access to the tumor parenchyma.

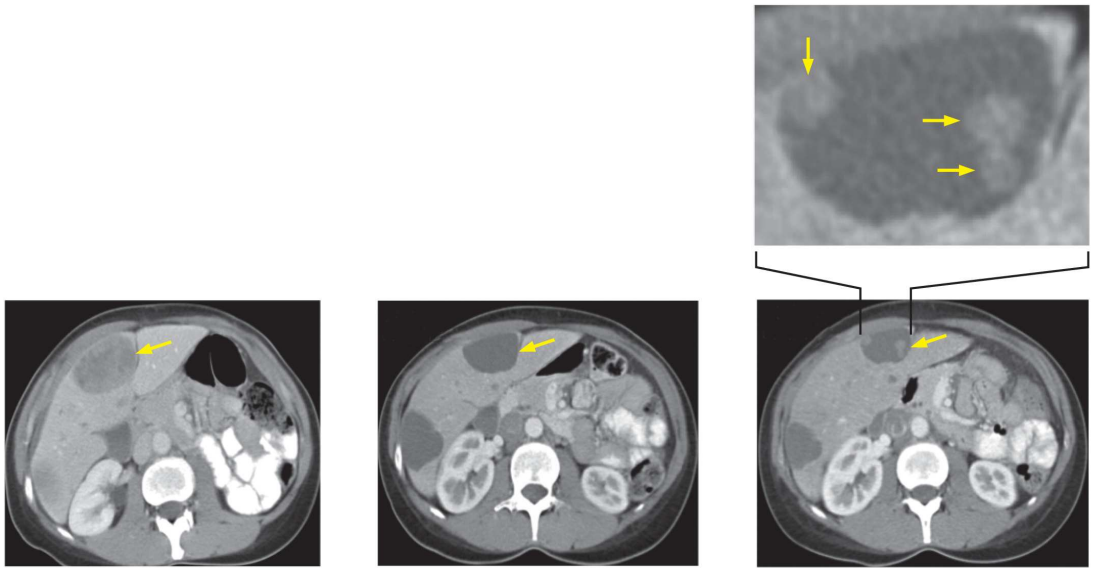
Gleevec's effects on a third tyrosine kinase—the Kit receptor—also make it an attractive agent for attacking gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), a relatively uncommon sarcomatous tumor for which few therapeutic options have been available. The Kit receptor is mutated in the majority (~85%) of these cancers, while a minority (3–5%) exhibit mutant PDGF-Rα—both targets of Gleevec. The mutant receptors fire constitutively in these tumors and seem to represent the primary mitogenic drivers operating in the tumor cells (see Figure 5.17). In one study, clear regression of the tumor was observed in almost 70% of treated patients (**Figure 17.34A**). By 2005,

SU11248—a second inhibitor of Kit tyrosine kinase function—was approved by the FDA for the treatment of GISTs, including those that had developed a resistance to Gleevec. When used as an adjuvant following surgical excision of localized primary tumors, Gleevec treatment offers long-term survival that may result in a cure. With metastatic disease, however, Gleevec can cause regression of GIST lesions, but within a year or two, tumors reappear (see Figure 17.34B).



Two images show a scan of a patient’s abdomen before and after Gleevec treatment. The patient’s body is mostly a dark blue color. Before Gleevec, there is a bright red massive pelvic G I S T that takes up most of space in the lower abdomen. One month later, a much smaller portion is red, which is characteristic of a normal bladder.

(A)



A series of C T scans of a patient's abdomen. In the initial presentation, a large light gray oval is present in the liver. After 1 month on Gleevec, there are now two dark gray spots. After 9 months on Gleevec, the dark gray spots are smaller but within one of them are three lighter gray spots.

(B)

Figure 17.34 Use of Gleevec to treat gastrointestinal stromal tumors Gleevec also shows inhibitory activity against the tyrosine kinase function of the Kit receptor, which suggested that it might prove useful against gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), in which mutant, constitutively active Kit receptors are commonly found. (A) As seen here, this patient's GIST (red mass, pelvic region, *left image*), which was visualized because of its uptake of a labeled glucose analog, responded dramatically to Gleevec treatment (*right image*). (The residual labeling following treatment reflects the accumulation of the labeled dye in the patient's bladder.) (B) Despite initial anti-tumor activity in nearly 90% of patients, resistance to Gleevec develops in most GIST patients; after two years, about 50% of tumors worsen despite continuing Gleevec treatment. Seen here are computed tomography (CT) scans of a patient with advanced GIST demonstrating several metastatic lesions growing in the liver (one with *yellow arrow*, *left panel*). After one month of daily Gleevec (= imatinib) treatment, the metastases, previously a lightly mottled *gray*, become more solidly dark, indicating the increased water density following widespread tumor cell apoptosis and degeneration (*middle panel*). However, after nine months of Gleevec (*right panel*), three light spots have appeared within the dark mass that was the original tumor (*yellow arrow*), indicating the eruption of robustly growing subpopulations that signal the onset of clinical resistance to targeted therapy (*yellow arrows, top right*). In this particular

patient, each of the three recurring growths carried its own novel secondary point mutation in the *Kit* gene in addition to the initiating *Kit* mutation that launched the tumor in the first place, leading in each case to a doubly mutated *KIT* allele. (Courtesy of G.D. Demetri.)

The clear successes of Gleevec represented the first validation that rational drug design can succeed in producing agents that are highly useful for treating various types of human cancer. It was initially viewed as a disadvantage that Gleevec interferes with multiple tyrosine kinases, because it was feared that this broader activity would lead to unacceptable side effects. However, with the passage of time, it is increasingly clear that such multi-target effects may actually prove useful in treating certain malignancies. Indeed, second and third generation Bcr-Abl inhibitors engage an even broader range of kinase targets. Dasatinib, for example, targets Abl, Src kinase, and c-Kit at dose ranges of less than 1 nanomolar. Here, as in many examples of kinase inhibitors, higher affinity interaction for a given target is accompanied by increased affinity to many targets (and, consequently, decreased overall drug specificity). This broader activity plays a critical role in the treatment of another Bcr-Abl-driven malignancy, a Philadephia chromosome-positive subset of B-cell leukemia, termed Ph+ B-ALL. Unlike CML, Gleevec-treated Ph+ B-cell acute lymphocytic leukemias frequently relapse during treatment and, in roughly one-third of these cancers, relapses occur in the absence of Bcr-Abl mutations. Dasatinib and ponatinib have proven more effective in treating these leukemias, presumably because they are able to inhibit both Bcr-Abl and other pro-survival kinase-driven pathways operating in these cells.

The successes of ponatinib in targeting CMLs bearing T315I mutations and Ph+ B-ALLs led to attempted use of this agent as first-line therapy for these cancers. However, clinical trials of this agent were halted after bleeding issues from thrombocytopenia and stenosis in small and large blood vessels appeared. Use of this agent was subsequently limited to the treatment of treatment-resistant CML and Ph+ B-ALL. Thus, the viability and proliferation of the neoplastic cells in many tumors depend on the coordinated actions of multiple tyrosine kinases, and the ability to strike at several of these simultaneously may one day be found to confer great therapeutic advantage. However, broadly acting kinase inhibitors can also yield unexpected toxicity that limits or prevents their use in the oncology clinic.

Unfortunately, in CML, the continued presence of cancer stem cells (CSCs) limits the ability of Gleevec to definitively cure patients (Sidebar 17.13). Recall that research on human cancers, including hematopoietic tumors, breast carcinomas, and brain tumors, has revealed that CSCs often constitute only a small proportion (<<5%) of the neoplastic cells in these tumors and that their existence can be revealed only by the biological test of their tumor-forming ability or by the use of fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS; see Section 11.7). As it happens, Gleevec is quite potent in killing

actively cycling leukemia cells (that is, the “transit-amplifying” or “progenitor” cells; see Section 11.7). However, most of the cells in the neoplastic stem cell population, which are outside the active cell cycle at any single point in time (see Section 8.1), are not dependent on Bcr-Abl-mediated signaling for their continued survival and have proven to be quite resistant to drug treatment.

The CSCs are usually present in minute numbers in a CML patient undergoing Gleevec therapy, being detectable only by highly sensitive PCR-based assays. However, if treatment is halted, the CSCs usually re-enter into the growth-and-division cycle and regenerate transit-amplifying progeny, soon leading to regrowth of the malignancy and clinical relapse (**Figure 17.35A**). This seems to explain why Gleevec treatment needs to be chronic and why, in the future, drug development needs to be focused on agents that strike at the cores of tumors by destroying their stem cells (**Sidebar 17.13**).

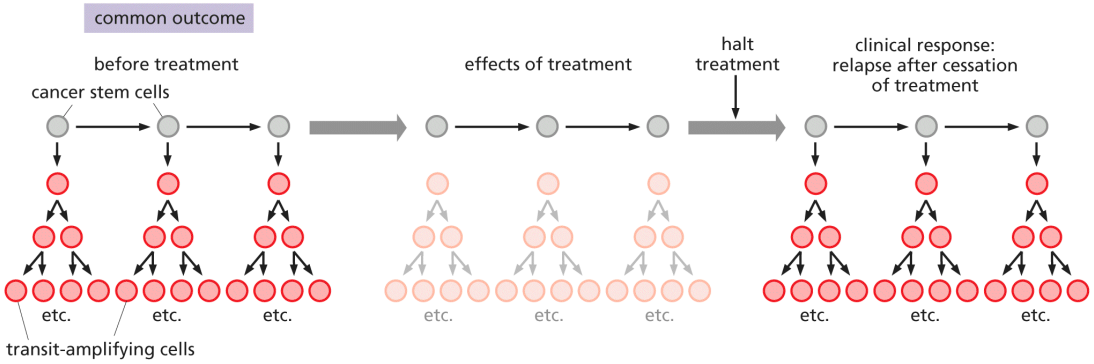
Sidebar 17.13 Cancer stem cells greatly complicate the evaluation of anti-cancer therapies

The existence of cancer stem cells (CSCs) in many solid tumors has profound implications for the evaluation of many types of anti-cancer treatments. These lessons are illustrated graphically in the case of CML and Gleevec. [In the hypothetical case shown in Figure 17.35A, the re-emergence of a tumor is triggered by cessation of treatment, but for most tumors under treatment, such relapses occur because tumor cells have developed resistance to the therapeutic agents.] In carcinomas, for example, the CSCs, which display certain mesenchymal characteristics, seem generally to be more resistant to existing therapeutic regimens than most of the neoplastic cells in these tumors (see Table 17.5). Hence, a therapy may eliminate the bulk of a tumor (leading to a significant clinical response), while leaving behind a residue of clinically undetectable CSCs; the latter may then re-launch tumor growth when the therapy is halted or when drug resistance develops. Clinically, this behavior is sometimes called the “dandelion effect,” referring to the rapid re-emergence of weeds in a lawn following mowing, which cuts off their leaves but leaves their roots intact.

This logic suggests that the ability to eliminate CSCs will be the key to generating durable clinical responses for many types of tumors (Figure 17.35B). However, such elimination on its own may not suffice, because there are indications from studies of tumor xenografts that the transit-amplifying/progenitor cells can dedifferentiate and thereby regenerate new CSCs under certain physiological conditions (Figure 17.35C). Together, this would indicate that both the CSCs and the non-CSCs within a tumor need to be eliminated in order to prevent recurrence and clinical relapse. Importantly, identifying agents that specifically eliminate CSCs may be challenging, because such

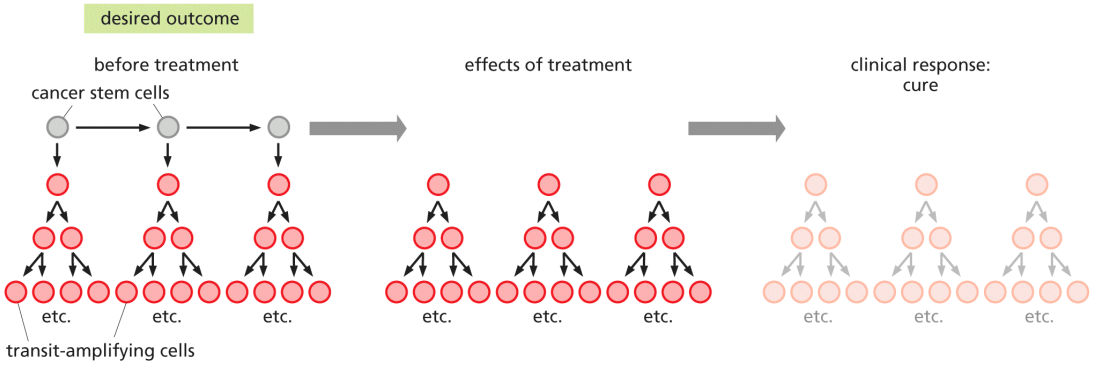
drugs may, on their own, have minimal effects on the overall sizes of tumor masses and may therefore be judged to be unworthy of further development.

In fact, rituximab, the anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody that is used to treat B-cell tumors (see Section 15.19), shows just this behavior: it eliminates the CSCs of multiple myelomas but not the more differentiated, far more abundant antibody-secreting cells that form the bulk of these tumors. (Fortunately, early in its development, rituximab was recognized to have efficacy for treating a wide range of B-lymphocyte–lineage tumors and was therefore approved for further development and introduction into the clinic.)



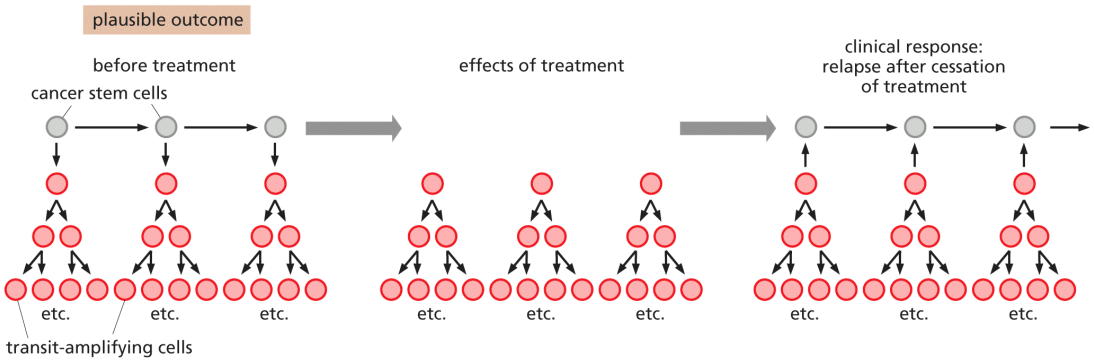
A set of genealogy trees shows the common outcome. Before treatment, each cancer stem cell produces a cancer cell that reproduces such that the number of cancer cells doubles with each generation. These are called transit-amplifying cells. During treatment, the transit-amplifying cells do not form but the stem cells remain. After treatment is stopped, the clinical response is a relapse and the transit-amplifying cells return after cessation of treatment.

(A)



A set of genealogy trees shows the desired outcome. Before treatment, each cancer stem cell produces a cancer cell that reproduces such that the number

of cancer cells doubles with each generation. These are called transit-amplifying cells. During treatment, the stem cells are removed but the transit amplifying cells remain. After treatment is stopped, the clinical response is a cure and the transit amplifying cells disappear as well.
(B)



A set of genealogy trees shows the plausible outcome. Before treatment, each cancer stem cell produces a cancer cell that reproduces such that the number of cancer cells doubles with each generation. These are called transit-amplifying cells. During treatment, the stem cells are removed but the transit amplifying cells remain. After treatment is stopped, the clinical response is a relapse and the transit amplifying cells produce new stem cells after cessation of treatment.

(C)

Figure 17.35 Role of tumor stem cells in the response to anti-cancer treatments Although the evidence is still fragmentary, it appears that in many and perhaps all tumors (see Section 11.6), a small proportion of the neoplastic cell population is composed of self-renewing cancer stem cells (*gray*). These spawn the bulk of the cancer cells in tumors (*pink*), which have many of the properties of normal progenitor/transit-amplifying cells, as well as more differentiated progeny. (A) If, as occurs with Gleevec, an anti-cancer therapy results in the depletion of the neoplastic transit-amplifying cells without eliminating the cancer stem cells (CSCs), then the latter can regenerate the tumor soon after that therapy is halted (*right*). Indeed, diverse sources of evidence indicate that in many carcinomas the CSCs are significantly more resistant to therapy than the majority of carcinoma cells. Hence, CSCs are doubly dangerous in that they can survive treatment and are capable of generating entirely new tumors in both primary tumor sites and in distant tissues. (B) In response to the risk posed by CSCs, some researchers have undertaken to discover agents that preferentially eliminate these cells, with the thought that their elimination will lead to the disappearance of entire tumors, because their source of self-renewal has been eliminated (*right*). (C) Elimination

of CSCs, by itself, may not lead to a cure because newer evidence has indicated (*right*) that the non-CSCs in certain tumors can spontaneously generate new CSCs. Hence, the targeting of both populations (CSCs and non-CSCs) may be required to develop durable clinical responses following treatment of a variety of tumors.

As mentioned, Gleevec also fails to effectively treat CML that has progressed to an advanced blast crisis phase. In this phase, tumor cells no longer exhibit a myeloid-like appearance and resemble, instead, undifferentiated progenitor cells. Indeed, these cells cytologically resemble tumor cells present in treatment-refractory Ph+ B-ALL. These cells express Bcr-Abl but fail to incur durable responses to Bcr-Abl inhibitors. This explains why patients need to be treated with Gleevec prior to leukemia progression to blast crisis, at which point Gleevec and similarly acting drugs lose much of their efficacy.

Nonetheless, if a drug such as Gleevec succeeds in generating clinical remissions that are durable over many years' time, its inability to kill the stem cells of a CML and the requirement to administer drug early in disease progression is clearly an acceptable shortcoming. In any case, Gleevec represents a major triumph of anti-cancer drug development, because it is vastly superior to all alternative treatments of this otherwise-inexorably progressing disease.

Of note, the striking success of Gleevec in treating CML persuaded many that comparable successes would soon emerge for treating a number of other malignancies driven by deregulated tyrosine kinases. As it turned out, CML is a rather unique entity among adult tumors, in that almost all these leukemias share a common genetic driver (the Bcr-Abl translocation) to which they are all addicted, while carrying few if any additional chromosomal aberrations and oncogenic mutations. In addition, rather than being full-fledged malignant cells, the leukemic cells present in the chronic phase of CML have been likened to *in situ* carcinomas in the breast and early adenomas in the gut (see Section 11.2). These attributes set the chronic-phase cells apart from most adult tumors and help to explain the striking differences between the clinical responses of CML to Gleevec versus the mixed responses of many carcinomas to the other tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) described below. (In retrospect, the stunning successes of Gleevec inspired unrealistically high expectations for the many TKIs that followed.)

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

myeloproliferative
: Referring to excessive proliferation and resulting elevated levels of one of the several cell types generated by the myeloid branch of the hematopoietic system.

hypereosinophilic
: Referring to a syndrome with elevated levels of eosinophils in the circulation. *See* **eosinophil**.

complete response
: Elimination of all detectable neoplastic tissue following an anti-cancer therapy. *See also* **partial response**.

blood–brain barrier
: The barrier created by specialized endothelial cells and basement membrane that operates, together with astrocytes, to prevent transport of solutes between the blood and the parenchyma of the brain.

first-line therapy
: The mode of therapy that is initially employed to treat a patient, usually because it is considered most likely to elicit a desired clinical response; failure of this initial therapy often leads to the use of second-line treatments. *See also* **second-line therapy**.

blast crisis
: Clinical state occurring when a hematopoietic tumor that has been under therapeutic control relapses into a highly aggressive stage of disease progression in which the erupting tumor cells are in a primitive state of differentiation. *See* **blast**.

OceanofPDF.com

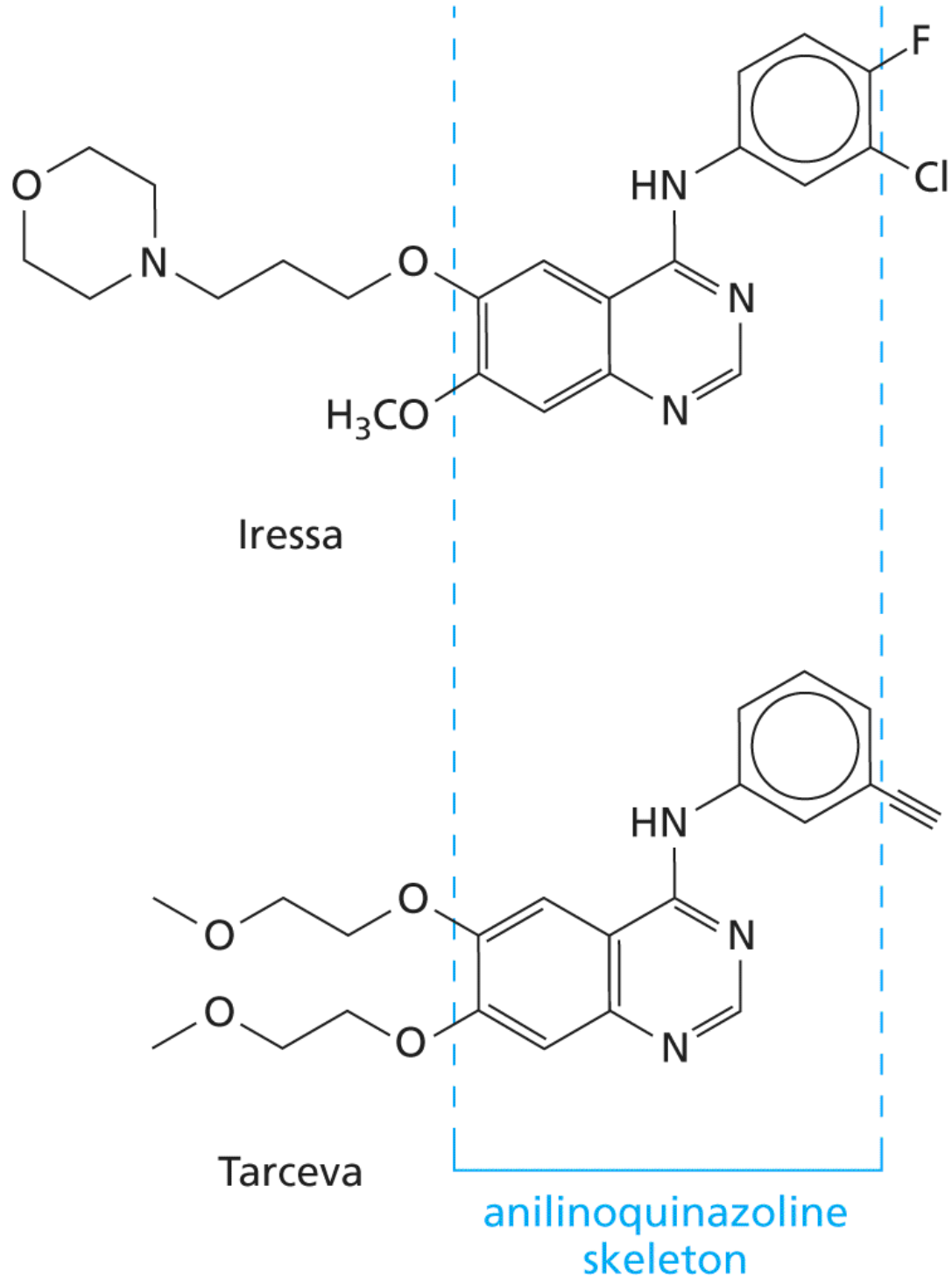
17.14 EGF receptor antagonists may be useful for treating a wide variety of tumor types

The proposal to develop Gleevec initially met with considerable resistance in the pharmaceutical company where it originated, simply because the market for this drug was judged to be too small to justify the high costs of its development and testing in the clinic. The same could not be said of the class of drugs designed to inhibit the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R). Carcinomas are common tumors, and this receptor is believed to play a key role in the development of as many as one-third of them, being frequently overexpressed.

At least six distinct EGF-related ligands, including EGF itself, have been found to bind and activate the EGF-R. This means that even in those carcinomas in which the EGF-R is not overexpressed, it may nonetheless emit critical oncogenic signals through autocrine or paracrine signaling loops that are driven by the presence of one or more of its ligands in the interstitial space surrounding individual tumor cells. As one example of paracrine signaling, recall the release of EGF by macrophages that confers invasiveness on nearby breast cancer cells (see Figure 14.22).

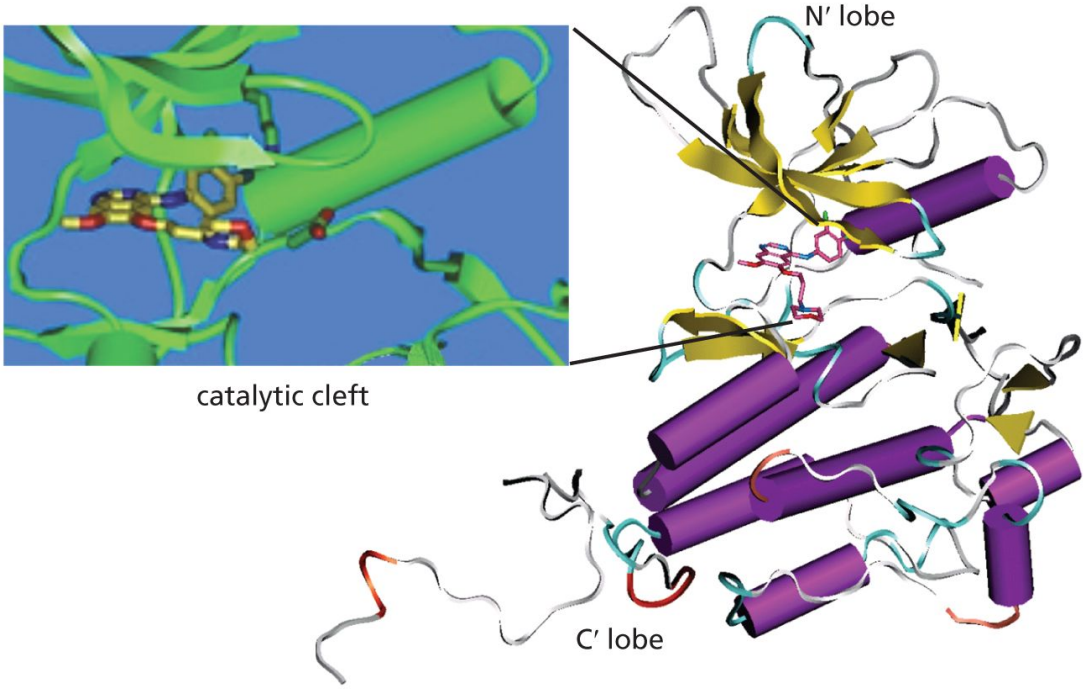
An alternative role of EGF-R in carcinoma pathogenesis is illustrated by breast carcinomas that overexpress the HER2/neu receptor. The oncogenic actions of this protein depend on its ability to form heterodimers with its cousin, the EGF-R; in such heterodimers, the EGF-R can phosphorylate the C′-terminal tail of HER2/neu, thereby activating signaling by the latter through the formation of multiple phosphotyrosines on its C-terminal tail (see Section 5.6).

The first clinically effective inhibitors developed to target the EGF-R tyrosine kinase were the drugs Iressa, also known as gefitinib/ZD1839, and Tarceva, also called either erlotinib or OSI-774 (**Figure 17.36A**). The two drugs have very similar but not identical properties and act by blocking the ATP-binding site of the receptor-associated kinase (Figure 17.36B; see also Figure 17.17). Once cancer cells are deprived of receptor signaling through inhibition of the EGF-R, they should lose the benefit of the strong mitogenic and anti-apoptotic signals that it generates. For example, in many types of epithelial cells, the continuous firing of the EGF-R sustains expression of Bcl-X_L (the potently anti-apoptotic cousin of Bcl-2) and, acting via MAPK, drives phosphorylation and attendant functional inactivation of the pro-apoptotic Bad protein (see Section 9.13, Figure 9.23B).



The molecular structures of Iressa and Tarceva. They both have an anilinoquinazoline skeleton with different side chains attached. the anilinoquinazoline skeleton consists of two six membered rings fused together. One is a benzene ring, onto which the side chains bind. The other has four carbon atoms and two nitrogen atoms. Bonded to the carbon atom that is

in between the benzene ring and a nitrogen atom, is a nitrogen atom that is further bonded to a benzene ring. In Iressa, this benzene ring is bonded to a fluorine and a chlorine. In Tarceva, it is bonded to a two carbon chain that has a triple bond.
(A)



A ribbon model of E G F R tyrosine kinase shows the binding site of Iressa and Tarceva. It has an N lobe of mainly beta sheets and a C lobe of mainly alpha helices. The drug binds in between these two lobes in the catalytic cleft.

(B)

Figure 17.36 Iressa and Tarceva (A) The two epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R) antagonists are constructed from a common anilinoquinazoline skeleton, which confers on them an affinity for the ATP-binding site of the receptor tyrosine kinase. The chemical side groups that are attached to this skeleton have biological effects, because the effectiveness of the two drugs differs in treating, for example, non-small-cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs). (B) Iressa, also termed ZD1839, binds to a very similar region of the EGF-R tyrosine kinase as does Tarceva (see Figure 17.17). A blown-up view (*left*) of the drug-binding site of the EGF-R tyrosine kinase domain (*right*) is shown here, with the drug molecule shown as a colored stick figure. This binding is so strong that 50% inhibition of the tyrosine kinase (TK) enzyme activity is achieved at a concentration of about 0.030 μM. (B, courtesy of A.C. Kay, AstraZeneca.)

Because Iressa and Tarceva target a cell surface receptor, their therapeutic utility must be compared with that of the monoclonal antibodies that also affect this receptor (see **Supplementary Sidebar 16.1**). In principle, these low–molecular-weight compounds should be able to penetrate into all the interstices of a solid tumor, including those where the far larger antibody molecules may have trouble gaining access (see Table 17.7). Also, it is generally far easier and less expensive to produce low–molecular-weight compounds on an industrial scale than it is to generate large quantities of monoclonal antibodies.

There are yet other possible advantages of low–molecular-weight tyrosine kinase inhibitors. For example, as we have read, in many human carcinomas, truncated forms of the EGF-R are expressed that lack the ectodomain; these mutant EGF-Rs may signal in a ligand-independent, constitutive fashion and therefore can function as potent oncoproteins (see Figure 5.8A). Similarly, about half of high-grade (that is, advanced) gliomas, termed glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), exhibit overexpressed EGF-R, and of these, about 40% display a form of the receptor that lacks the ectodomains specified by exons 2 through 7 of the EGF-R coding sequence. Such decapitated receptors cannot be bound by the monoclonal antibodies (MoAbs) that have been developed to recognize antigenic epitopes present in the ectodomain of the normal receptor protein. However, these aberrations should not derail the low–molecular-weight tyrosine kinase inhibitors, which target the cytoplasmic, signal-emitting domain of the receptor. Weighing against these drugs are their pharmacokinetic properties: as an example, Tarceva has a half-life of ∼36 hours, whereas the half-life of cetuximab (an anti-EGF-R monoclonal antibody) is >5 days and of Herceptin ~28 days.

Iressa has approximately a 50-fold more potent activity against the EGF-R–associated tyrosine kinase than against a number of other tyrosine kinases (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.9**), and its initial use in the oncology clinic was reasonably encouraging. In the first clinical trials, 10% of patients with non-small-cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs) showed partial responses to the drug, including disease stabilization of tumor growth; these patients tended to be women, nonsmokers, and those with the broncholaveolar subtype of lung cancers. A parallel study in Japan found a far higher rate (27%) of partial responses to Iressa; this difference, which continues to be observed, appears to represent a difference in the genetic constitutions of the Japanese versus Caucasian populations. (More generally, NSCLC tumors have represented difficult diseases to treat, as fewer than 15% of patients survive for five years following initial diagnosis.)

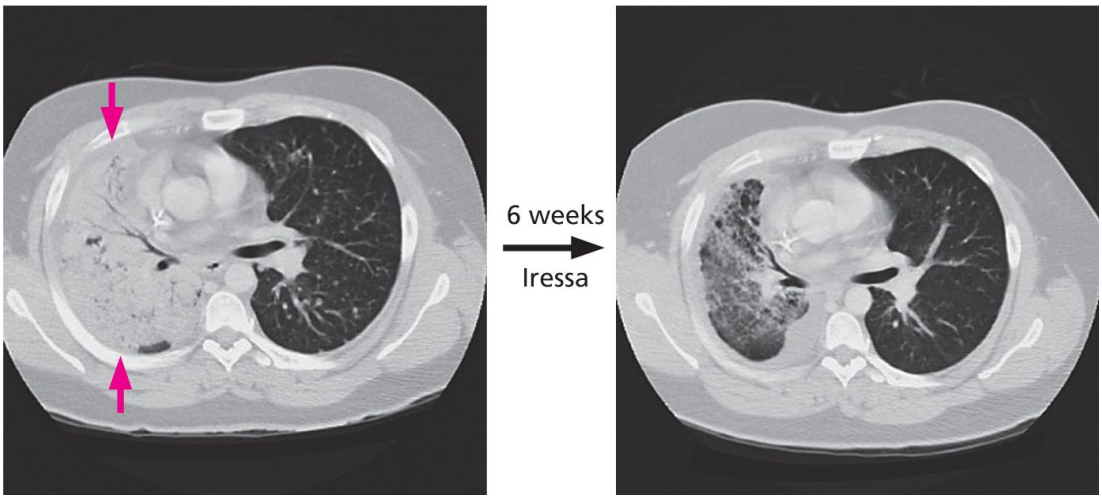
These outcomes were gratifying, if only because they represented clear responses in patients who otherwise had few if any other treatment alternatives. However, the hoped-for synergistic actions of Iressa with standard chemotherapeutic agents did not provide any survival advantage over standard chemotherapy used alone for the

treatment of NSCLC tumors, which together constitute almost 80% of lung cancer cases in the United States. When used on its own, Tarceva (but not Iressa) increased by two months the overall survival time of patients whose NSCLCs had become refractory to treatment by standard chemotherapeutic drugs.

Some valuable lessons were learned from these initial trials that may improve the responses in future clinical trials of these and similar drugs: First, the specific contribution of the EGF-R to the growth of the tumors under treatment was not documented. Hence, far greater response rates might have resulted from a stratification of the NSCLC patients and limiting the use of Iressa only to those tumors having specific molecular signatures indicating a key contribution of EGF-R to disease pathogenesis. A second, related consideration derived from the possible contribution of other mutant proteins to the mitogenic and anti-apoptotic signaling operating in tumor cells; here again, these factors were not assessed. There is evidence, for example, that PTEN-negative tumors (which have a hyperactive PI3 kinase pathway; see Section 6.6) do not respond to Iressa, and that inhibitors of Akt/PKB (the downstream beneficiary of PTEN inactivation) can act synergistically with Iressa to halt tumor growth. Third, relatively few pre-clinical studies were undertaken in order to optimize the dosage and the schedule of treatments with this drug.

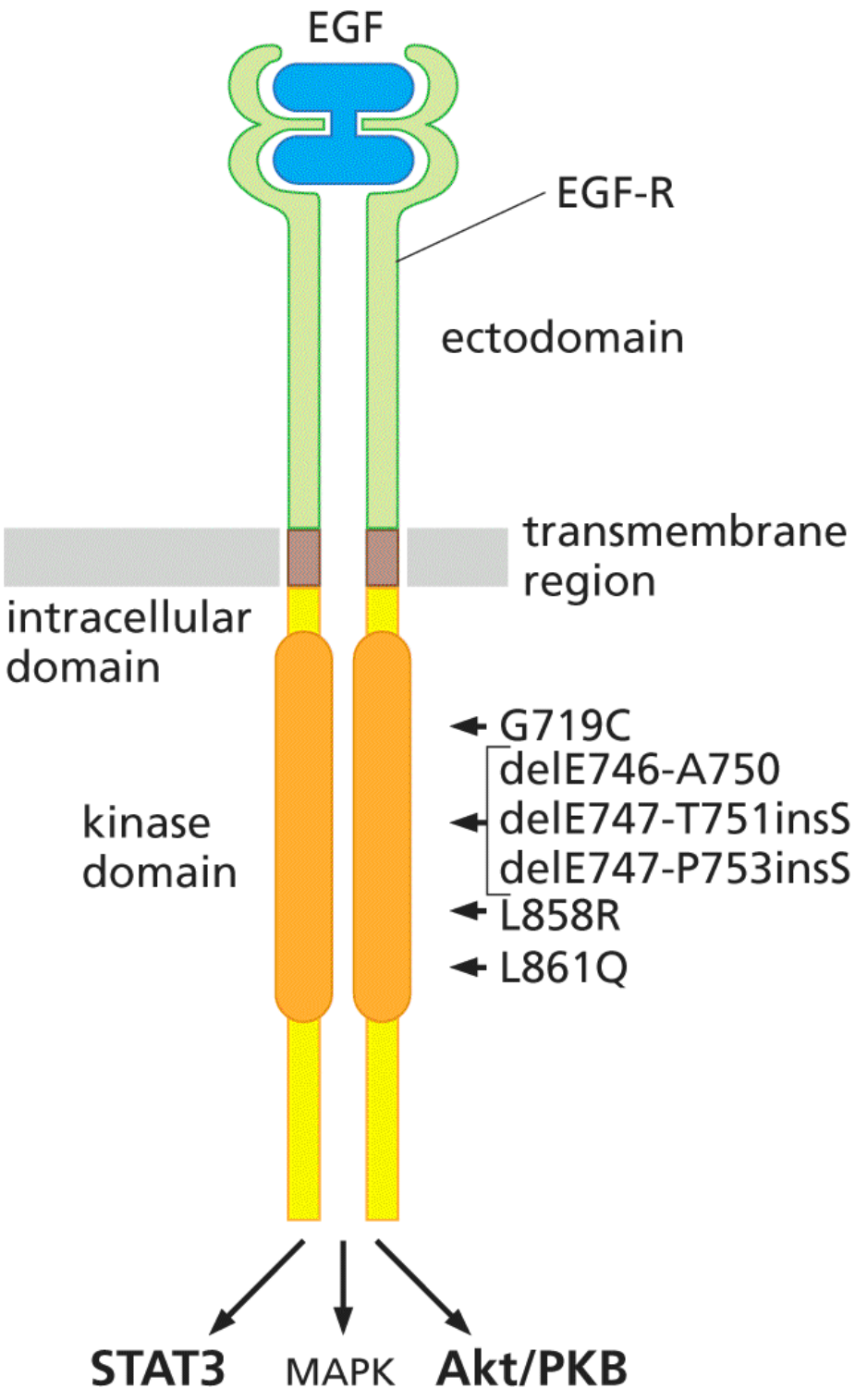
In 2004, four years after results of the initial clinical trials with Iressa were first reported, two research collaborations in Boston independently provided a molecular explanation for the observed responses to Iressa. Previously, the status of the EGF receptor in NSCLC cells was assessed by determining whether it was overexpressed and whether it was present in truncated, constitutively active form, as is the case in human glioblastomas. In the 2004 studies, however, investigators undertook detailed sequencing of the reading frames of the EGF-R–encoding gene in the NSCLC patients who had been treated with Iressa.

Quite dramatically, they found that almost all of the small group (~10% of the total) of NSCLC patients who had responded well to Iressa treatment (**Figure 17.37A**) bore tumor cells displaying structurally altered EGF-Rs. Such mutant receptors were not found among the tumors that failed to respond to Iressa, including those that expressed elevated levels of this receptor (see, for example, **Supplementary Sidebar 17.9**). For example, 78% of patients who responded to anti-EGF-R therapy expressed mutant EGF-R protein, whereas among the nonresponders only 6% showed such structurally altered receptor proteins.



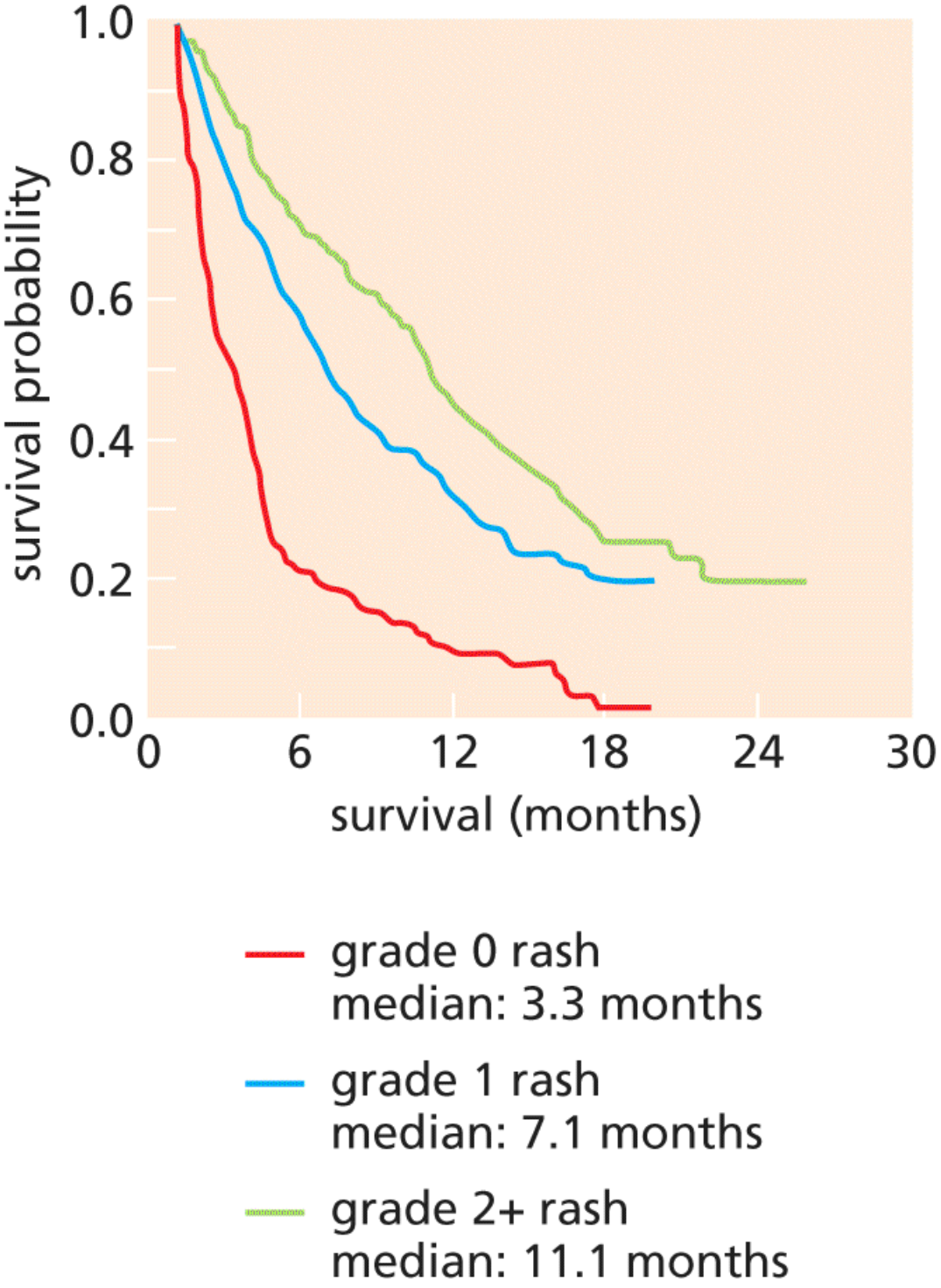
Two computerized tomographic images show a large mass in a lung. The first image shows a healthy black lung on the the right. The lung on the lefts is mostly filled with a large white mass. Six weeks after treatment with Iressa, the area that was completely white is now black and dark gray.

(A)



A diagram of a E G F R receptor embedded in a cell membrane. The ectodomain consists of an E G F binding site where E G F is currently bound. The intracellular domain contains a kinase domain and ultimately stimulates STAT 3, MAP K, and A k t slash P k B. Different deletions and point

mutations are listed next to the kinase domain. The point mutations are G 719 C, L 858 R, and L 861 Q. The deletions are from E 746 to A 750, from E 747 to T 751 ins S, and from E 747 to P 753 ins S.
(B)



A graph shows the relationship between the appearance of rashes and survival probability. For those that have a grade 0 rash, the median survival is 3.3 months. By 19 months, the survival probability is 0. For those that have a grade 1 rash, the median survival is 7.1 months, By 19 months, the survival probability is 0.2. For those that have a grade 2 plus rash, the median survival is 11.1 months. By 24 months, the survival probability is 0.2.

(C)

Figure 17.37 Determinants of responsiveness of NSCLCs to Iressa and Tarceva treatment (A) A minority of patients with refractory non-small-cell lung cancers (NSCLCs)—tumors that failed to respond or ceased to respond to standard chemotherapy—show dramatic responses to treatment by Iressa. These computerized tomographic images reveal dramatic regression of a large mass (*left*) in a patient's right lung following six weeks of Iressa treatment (*right*). (B) A substantial proportion of NSCLCs that respond to Iressa have been found to carry deletions ("del") and point mutations in the EGF-R gene that affect the cytoplasmic domain of the receptor. These alterations in EGF-R structure deregulate and activate the tyrosine kinase function of the receptor, thereby stimulating the Akt/PKB and STAT signaling pathways, which protect these tumor cells from apoptosis (see Figures 6.10 and 6.16). (C) Experience with a variety of anti-EGF-R treatments has indicated that, in addition to the genetic state of the tumor cells, the development of an acne-like rash by patients under treatment is a strong positive indicator of the eventual response of tumors to therapy. (This response clearly reflects the role of the EGF-R in skin keratinocyte biology and the precise mechanistic connection between the normal keratinocyte response of patients to therapy and the response of their tumors remains obscure.) In this case, the responses of NSCLC patients to Tarceva therapy are shown in this Kaplan–Meier graph. "Median" indicates median survival. (A and B, from T.J. Lynch et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 350:2129–2139, 2004. With permission from Massachusetts Medical Society. C, from B. Wacker et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 13:3913–3921, 2007. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

The mutations found in the altered EGF-Rs created amino acid substitutions and small deletions in the kinase domain (Figure 17.37B) rather than the major deletions of the receptor ectodomain typically found in glioblastomas. These mutant receptors showed distinctive patterns of tyrosine phosphorylation of their C-terminal tails (see Section 6.3) and selectively stimulated the downstream Akt/PKB and STAT5 pathways, leaving the MAPK signaling pathway unaffected.

These observations provided compelling evidence that the EGF-R played a central role in driving the growth of these small groups of tumors. In addition, they demonstrated

the value of stratification of tumors using molecular markers when treating patient populations with targeted molecular therapeutics such as Iressa and Tarceva. Still, these experiments did not reveal why Iressa and Tarceva had such strong effects on these particular tumors (**Sidebar 17.14**).

Sidebar 17.14 Oncogene addiction may explain how Iressa and Tarceva succeed in killing NSCLCs

The mutant EGF-Rs that are found in certain NSCLCs cause the cells from these particular tumors to be approximately 100 times more sensitive to Iressa than tumors expressing the wild-type receptors (Figure 17.31A). Importantly, the actual drug concentrations in the plasma of patients being treated fall in the range that allows such selective inhibition to operate. The mechanism of oncogene addiction, introduced in Section 17.4, may explain the selective effects of both Iressa and Tarceva on tumors expressing structurally altered EGF-Rs. Recall that oncogene addiction refers to the strict dependence of certain cancer cells on a certain oncogene or oncoprotein for their growth and survival, whereas other types of cancer cells can lose this gene or protein without suffering significant consequences.

To explain this behavior, we can imagine that some oncogenes are generally deleterious when expressed in wild-type cells but are actually beneficial in cells that previously acquired certain mutant alleles of another oncogene. A good example is provided by the *myc* oncogene, which has pro-apoptotic effects on cells unless they are protected from apoptosis by an acquired anti-apoptotic allele of some sort (for example, a *ras* oncogene); in the presence of the anti-apoptotic mutation, the strongly mitogenic effects of the *myc* oncogene then become apparent. Hence, tumor cells that carry both the *ras* and *myc* oncogenes would behave as if they were “addicted” to the *ras* expression, because they would die quickly by apoptosis if they were deprived of the *ras* oncogene.

Similarly, early in tumor progression, the acquisition of a certain oncogene, such as a mutant EGF-R gene, might create a cellular environment that permits acquisition of other oncogenes (or losses of tumor suppressor genes) that would, on their own, be highly deleterious for tumor cells. If the mutant receptor is now lost, then the deleterious effects of these other oncogenes, such as those favoring apoptosis, would become apparent and result in rapid loss of cell viability.

In the case of non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC), those tumors bearing mutant receptors may have come to depend on the firing by their mutant EGF-Rs in order to survive and proliferate; that is, they are “addicted” to the mutant receptors. Conversely, the far more numerous NSCLCs expressing the wild-type EGF-R, often at elevated levels, may have developed alternative means of securing mitogenic and

survival signals, as is indeed suggested by the observation of receptor-independent firing of the MAPK and PI3K pathways in some lung cancers.

This scenario is further supported by experiments using siRNAs to inhibit the expression of wild-type or mutant receptors (see **Supplementary Sidebar 1.5**): NSCLC cells with mutant EGF-R die quickly, whereas those displaying wild-type receptor are only slightly affected (see Figure 17.31B and C). Consequently, the death of cancer cells with mutant EGF-Rs does not occur from some unknown, off-target effect of Iressa or Tarceva, but instead is caused directly by the loss of beneficial signals released by these receptors. Moreover, experiments like these suggest that EGF-R inhibitors may have far greater effects on NSCLCs expressing wild-type receptors if they are applied together with a second drug that inhibits another, functionally redundant signaling pathway, such as the one controlled by PI3K.

An additional puzzle comes from the frequency of the NSCLCs found to express the structurally altered EGF receptors. They have been found in the tumors of ~10% of Western patients suffering from NSCLC, although in certain Asian populations, as many as 30% of the NSCLCs analyzed express these mutant receptor proteins; these altered EGF receptors would appear to explain the far higher response rates to Iressa in Japan cited above. (In all cases these altered receptors result from somatic mutations rather than inherited germ-line alleles.) The reasons for these inter-ethnic discrepancies and the greater frequency of these tumors in female nonsmokers represent additional puzzles.

One mystery seems to have been solved, however. In certain East Asian populations, as many as half of CML patients show an incomplete response to Gleevec therapy compared with only one-fourth of Western patients; a similar therapy-resistant subpopulation exists among NSCLC populations and their responses to EGF-R inhibitors. In both cases, the patients' tumors are resistant from the beginning of treatment to the effects of the tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) used to treat these two diseases. Among oncologists, this preexisting resistance is often called primary resistance to distinguish it from the resistance that develops during the course of therapy, which is termed secondary resistance.

In both NSCLC and CML, primary resistance has been traced to an allele of the pro-apoptotic *Bim* gene (see Section 9.13) that encodes a defective version of the Bim protein and is carried by 12.3% of East Asians but is absent in African and European populations. Other work has shown that expression of the wild-type Bim protein is suppressed by oncogenic tyrosine kinases, and its activation following TK inhibition contributes importantly to the apoptotic cancer cell death that drugs like Gleevec, Iressa, and Tarceva succeed in inducing in responsive cell populations. Lacking both copies of the wild-type *Bim* gene and thus normal levels of the Bim protein, the tumors

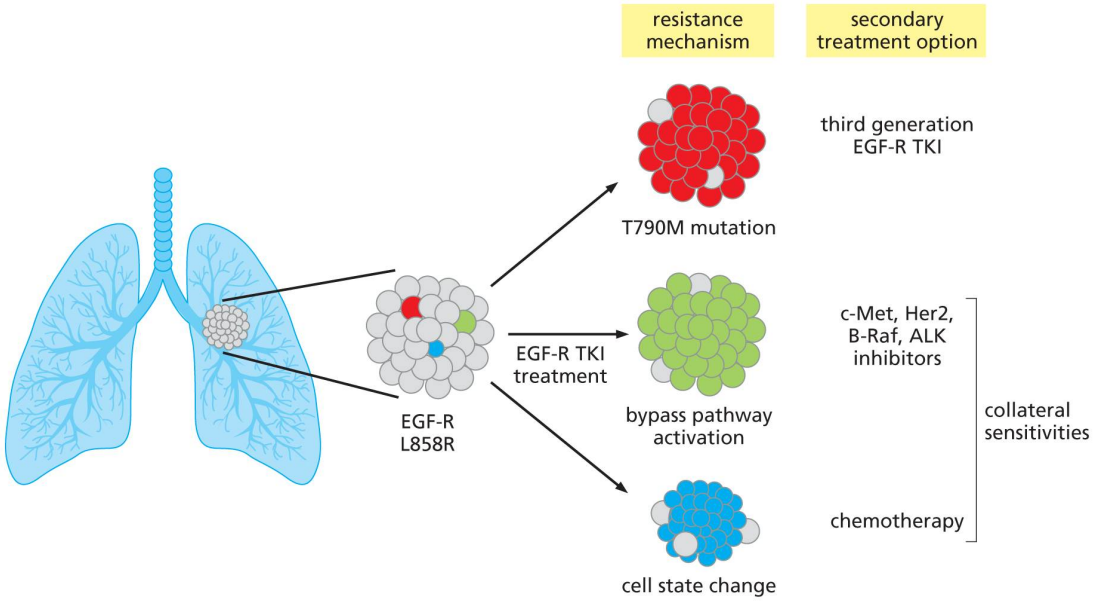
of these East Asian patients show substantially reduced tendency to enter into apoptosis and thus reduced responsiveness to the killing effects of these inhibitors.

In addition to the germ-line and somatically acquired alleles cited above, there are yet other indications that are useful for predicting responsiveness to anti-EGF-R TKIs. Echoing the results from use of anti-receptor MoAbs (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.9**), the presence of a mutant, activated K-*ras* or *PI3K* oncogene or an inactivated *PTEN* tumor suppressor gene is strongly correlated with the failure of tumors to respond to these TKIs. These findings can all be rationalized in terms of the signal transduction cascades that we encountered in Chapter 6. Thus, if a downstream cytoplasmic effector of a cell surface receptor becomes activated by mutation, its firing no longer depends on the upstream receptor and can continue unabated, even if the receptor itself is inactivated, in this case by targeted therapies.

There is, however, a striking finding that cannot be rationalized in terms of our current understanding of cellular signaling and therefore represents an abiding mystery: the best surrogate marker of a tumor's responsiveness to various anti-EGF-R therapies is the development by the cancer patient of a readily observable severe skin rash (see Figure 17.37C). Because the skin is clearly not involved in the pathogenesis of lung and colorectal carcinomas, this rash might mean that there exist significant inter-individual differences in pharmacokinetics (PK) that determine therapeutic outcome and, in parallel, affect the skin; in truth, however, there is no correlation between PK and skin rash development. In addition, the positive correlation between skin rash severity and therapeutic response applies to a variety of low–molecular-weight drugs as well as anti-receptor monoclonal antibodies (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.9**). These observations provide a strong indication that some subtle, inter-individual variability in the behavior of the basic signal-processing machinery operating in various epithelial cells throughout the body strongly influences responsiveness to anti-EGF-R therapies. This behavior reminds us of how little we understand about the regulators of cell signaling, whose behaviors are more than minor determinants of the success or failure of current, so-called rational therapies.

Unfortunately, even positive responses to these tyrosine kinase inhibitors have been short-lived, and most patients relapse in 6 to 18 months, having developed a secondary resistance to drug treatment. Acquired resistance to erlotinib and gefinitib can occur via a diverse set of mechanisms that highlight both the promise of new therapies as well as the fundamental challenges in achieving durable clinical responses, including cures. The first and most common mechanism of EGF-R inhibitor resistance is mutation of the receptor itself. The T790M amino acid substitution, the product of a so-called gatekeeper mutation, alters the ATP binding pocket of EGF-R (**Figure 17.38**). Rather than blocking drug interaction with EGF-R, this amino acid change increases the receptor affinity for ATP such that the effect of inhibitors is diminished. The common appearance of these mutations following treatment with first generation

EGF-R inhibitors led to the development of second and third generation EGF-R inhibitors that can target the T790M mutant. Drugs like osimertinib are now used in the treatment of T790M-mutant NSCLC. Because this agent can also target unmutated EGF-R, it is often used as a first-line therapy that can preempt the eventual emergence of T790M-mutant tumors.



A diagram shows different routes to resistance to E G F R inhibitors in a tumor in a lung. The tumor cells have an E G F R L 858 R mutation. The tumor is treated with E F G R T K I treatment. Three resistance mechanisms occur in different cells, each which replicate and make their own cluster of tumor cells. The first is a T 790 M mutation. The secondary treatment option is third generation E G F R T K I. The second resistance mechanism is bypass pathway activation. The secondary treatment options are c Met, Her 2, B Raf, and A L K inhibitors. The third resistance mechanism is cell state change. The secondary treatment option is chemotherapy. The second two resistance mechanisms are labeled as collateral sensitivities.

Figure 17.38 Routes to resistance to EGF-R inhibitors Non-small-cell lung cancers (NSCLC) driven by mutation and amplification of EGF-R are sensitive to EGF-R inhibitors including erlotinib and gefitinib. In this illustrated case, an L858R amino acid substitution in a mutant EGF-R drove initial outgrowth of the NSCLC. Resistance to EGF-R-inhibitory drugs could occur via a variety of alternative mechanisms (*middle column*), including second-site mutations in EGF-R (most frequently the T790M "gatekeeper" mutation, *red cells*), activation of parallel bypass pathways or downstream signal transducers (e.g., c-MET, Her2, ALK, or B-Raf activation, *green cells*), or cell state changes (e.g., EMT or transdifferentiation to small-cell lung cancer, *blue cells*). Each resistance state is,

in turn, targetable by a subsequent cancer therapy (*right column*). In the case of the activation of bypass pathways and cell state changes, these resistance mechanisms create "collateral sensitivities" or emergent sensitivities that were not present in the initial pre-treatment tumor. The existence of such emergent sensitivities presents opportunities for effective sequential cancer therapy, but also creates challenges in determining how and when such therapies should be applied.

A second, alternative mechanism of acquired EGF-R inhibitor resistance involves the activation of parallel growth signaling pathways. For example, the overexpression—often resulting from gene amplification—of the c-Met TK receptor can substitute for EGF-R signaling in treated tumor cells. Similarly, alterations in kinases downstream of EGF-R (see Section 6.5) can also promote cell survival in the face of EGF-R inhibition. Activating mutations in B-Raf kinase (discussed in Section 17.16 of this chapter), a downstream target of EGF-R signaling, can obviate the requirement for upstream EGF-R activity.

Finally, as mentioned earlier in the context of Bcr-Abl signaling, cell state changes can also promote resistance to EGF-R inhibitors. In one such example, NSCLCs have been shown to undergo an EMT-like switch to a more mesenchymal phenotypic state following treatment (see Sections 13.3 and 14.3). In another, treated NSCLC patients may suffer relapses concomitant with a shift in the phenotype of their tumors and tumor cells, suggesting their entrance into a state closely resembling that of small-cell lung cancer (SCLC), a tumor thought to have a developmental origin distinct from that of the more common adenocarcinomas. Precisely how this kind of developmental transition—essentially a transdifferentiation—occurs remains unanswered.

In all these cases, the specific resistance mechanisms that appear in relapsed tumors inform the choice of specific actionable therapies. Thus, T790 mutant tumors are treated with osimertinib; c-Met–amplified tumors are treated with c-Met inhibitors combined with EGF-R inhibitors; B-Raf mutant tumors are treated with B-Raf inhibitors; and tumors that have undergone the cell state change described above are treated with chemotherapy, to which SCLC tumors respond much more effectively than do NSCLCs. This connection between resistance mechanisms and actionable therapeutic strategies designed to target resistance states represents a major advance in cancer therapy, one that has extended and improved the lives of cancer patients. However, none of these treatments is ultimately curative, highlighting the fundamental, ongoing challenge of drug resistance: while we have substantially increased our arsenal of agents to target a variety of tumor-associated alterations, tumor cells invariably contrive more alternative paths to resistance than we have drugs to treat them.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

partial response
: Halting of further tumor growth or a 50% or greater reduction in tumor mass following anti-cancer therapy. *See also* **complete response**.

primary resistance
: Term denoting the behavior of a tumor that is refractory to treatment from the onset of that treatment; *also termed* **intrinsic resistance**. *See also* **secondary resistance**.

secondary resistance
: Term denoting the behavior of a tumor that was initially responsive to a treatment but subsequently becomes refractory to that treatment; *also termed* **acquired resistance**. *See also* **primary resistance**.

gatekeeper
: (1) An oligopeptide domain that controls access by small molecules to the catalytic cleft of an enzyme such as a kinase. (2) A gene that operates to regulate cell proliferation or to regulate cell number by controlling cell differentiation or cell death. Loss of a gatekeeper gene removes an impediment to cell proliferation and thus to the appearance of populations of neoplastic cells. *Compare* **caretaker**, **tumor suppressor gene**.

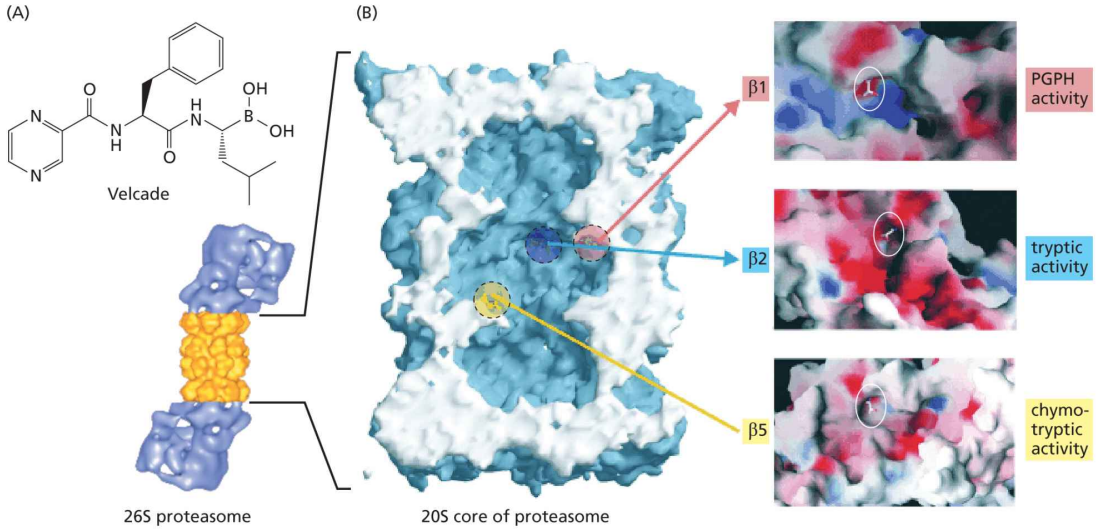
transdifferentiation
: Transition by a cell from one differentiation lineage into the phenotypic state characteristic of cells from another, distinct differentiation lineage.

bronchoalveolar
: Subtype of lung adenocarcinoma usually arising in peripheral areas of the lung and referring to tissues derived from small airways termed bronchioles and associated alveoli. *See also* **alveolus**.

OceanofPDF.com

17.15 Proteasome inhibitors yield unexpected therapeutic benefit

Serendipity plays an unusually prominent role in the world of drug discovery. On occasion, the development of an anti-cancer drug is launched as part of a rational drug design program and ultimately yields an agent that turns out to be highly useful, albeit for reasons quite unrelated to those that inspired its development in the first place. This best describes the development of the drug known as Velcade, also called PS-341 and bortezomib (**Figure 17.39A**).



A two part figure about velcade and its effects on proteasomes. Part A. The chemical structure of velcade. It consists of a six membered chain with the atoms carbon, nitrogen, carbon, carbon, nitrogen, and carbon. The first carbon is bonded to a benzene ring where two of the carbons are replaced by nitrogen. The second and fourth carbons are part of carbonyl groups. The last carbon is bonded to another carbon side chain and a bromine atom that is further bonded to two hydroxyl groups. The third carbon in the initial chain is bonded to a carbon that is further bonded to a benzene ring. Part B. A 3 D rendering of a 26 S proteasome. The proteasome is shaped like an uneven cylinder with three sections. The middle section is the 20 S core. A cross-section reveals that it has three catalytic sites on the interior edge. The first is beta 1, which is responsible for the P G P H activity. The second is beta 2, which is responsible for the tryptic activity. The third is beta 5, which is responsible for the chymotryptic activity.

Figure 17.39 Velcade and its effects on proteasomes (A) The chemical structure of Velcade reveals the presence, unusual among drugs, of a boron atom. Peptide boronic acids like Velcade were known to bind to the active site of serine proteases of the chymotrypsin class (which cleave substrate proteins adjacent to phenylalanine and tyrosine residues) by mimicking the normal substrates of these enzymes. This finding suggested to the drug developers that such compounds might inhibit the chymotrypsin-like active site in the 20S core of the proteasome. (B) A cross section (*center*) through the central (20S) core of the yeast proteasome (*left*) reveals the locations of three distinct catalytic sites, involving the β1, β2, and β5 subunits of the proteasome (*far right*), which are responsible for its PGPH (peptidyl-glutamyl-peptide hydrolyzing), tryptic, and chymotryptic proteolytic activities, respectively. Velcade shows a strong preference for inhibiting the β5 chymotryptic activity (*lower right*); a weak interaction with the β2 tryptic activity (*middle right*); and no interaction with the β1 PGPH activity (*top right*). The key nucleophilic threonine residue in each of these catalytic sites is shown as a stick figure (*white inside white ovals*); basic amino acids in the catalytic clefts are in *blue*, acidic amino acids are in *red*, and hydrophobic residues are in *white*. (B, from M. Groll et al., *Chembiochem* 6:222–256, 2005. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

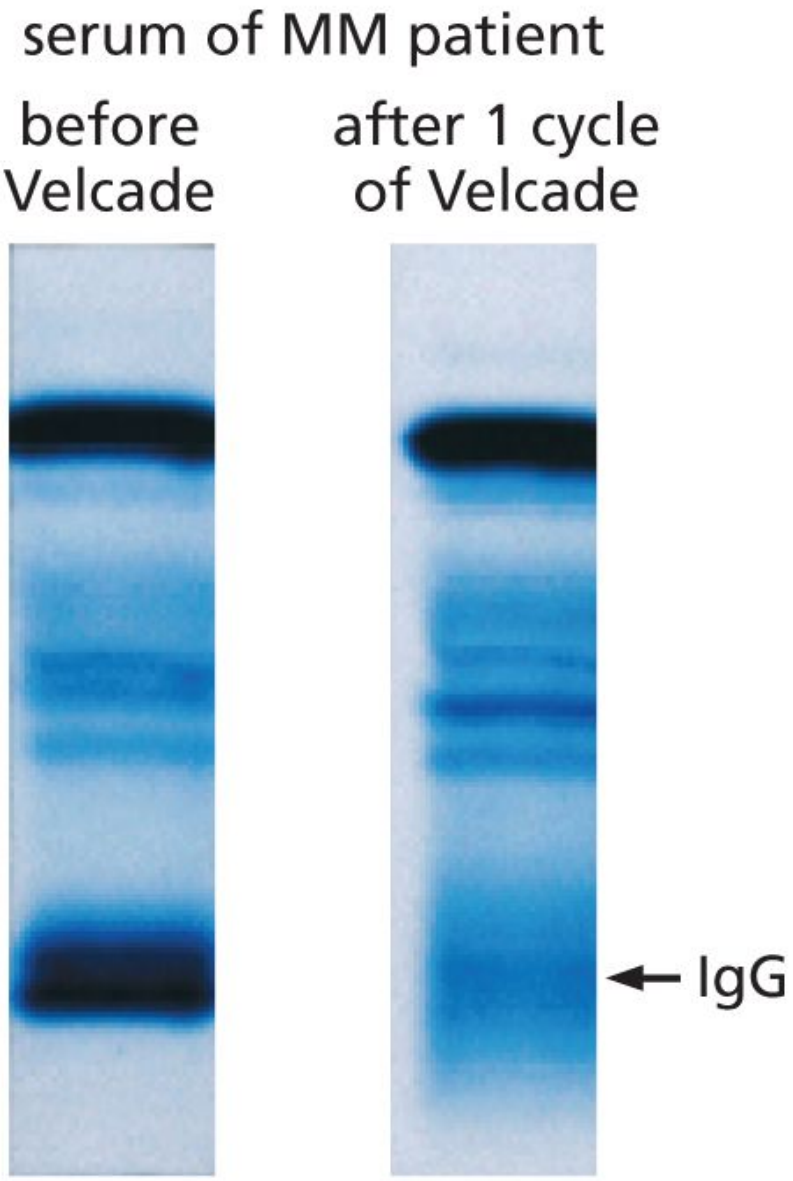
On many occasions throughout this book, we have seen how the levels of key cellular regulatory proteins are determined by the balance between their synthesis and their degradation. Much of this degradation is mediated by the ubiquitin–proteasome system (see **Supplementary Sidebar 7.5**). Recall that the tagging of a protein by polyubiquitylation results in its transport to proteasomes and its degradation in these intracellular machines.

The phenomenon of cancer-associated cachexia initially stimulated interest in inhibitors of proteasome function. Cachexia occurs late in tumor progression and represents a progressive wasting of the cancer patient's tissues through mechanisms that remain poorly understood. It was speculated that a proteasome inhibitor could be useful in retarding the widespread degradation of proteins occurring in the tissues of cachectic patients. At least five distinct classes of proteasome inhibitors have been developed, although most have been abandoned as candidates for clinical use because of metabolic instability, lack of specificity, or irreversible binding and inactivation of proteasomes.

Velcade, one of these proteasome inhibitors, is a boronic acid dipeptide that was designed as a specific inhibitor of the peptidase (peptide-cleaving) activity that occurs in the 20S core of the proteasome (Figure 17.39B). It has extraordinary potency, being able to inhibit 50% of the proteasome's chymotryptic activity at a concentration (that

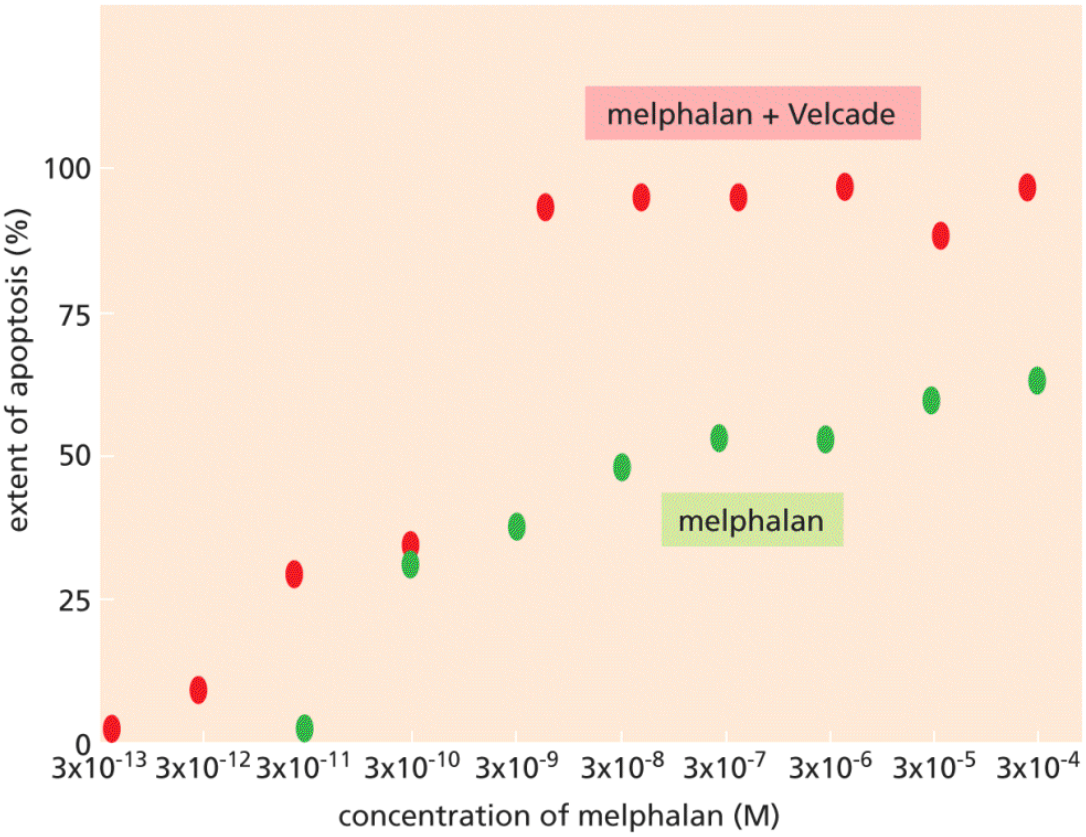
is, its K_i) of only 0.6 nM. Functioning as a competitive inhibitor of this enzyme activity, Velcade slows the flux of substrates through proteasomes, which soon become clogged and dysfunctional.

Proteasome-mediated degradation was subsequently found to play a critical role in regulating a number of key cellular signaling pathways. Because other proteasome inhibitors had been found to be especially potent in killing a variety of cultured cancer cells, Velcade was used in Phase I trials to treat cancer patients who had failed other available therapies. Those with solid tumors showed few striking responses. However, among a group of patients with hematological malignancies was an individual suffering from multiple myeloma (MM), a malignancy of the B-cell lineage in which a single clone of antibody-producing plasma cells undergoes clonal expansion and ultimately dominates the bone marrow. The myeloma cells create osteolytic bone lesions that lead to fractures, and they ultimately crowd out the remaining cellular components of the marrow, resulting in severe immune depression and, typically, death from overwhelming infection. Survival after initial diagnosis is usually three to five years. The myeloma carried by this initially treated patient showed a dramatic regression (**Figure 17.40A**), which soon led to the inclusion of other myeloma patients in this Phase I trial and eventually to large-scale clinical trials.



Two gel electrophoresis images from the serum of an M M patient before and after 1 cycle of Velcade treatment. Both gels have multiple dark bands. The band corresponding to I g G is much darker before Velcade treatment than it is after treatment.

(A)



A scatterplot shows the percent extent of apoptosis relative to the concentration of melphalan when used with and without Velcade. The concentration of melphalan ranges from 3 times 10 to the negative 13 molar and 3 times 10 to the negative 4 molar. Percent extent of apoptosis increases as the concentration of melphalan increases. With melphalan only, the extent of apoptosis never exceeds 70 percent. However, when combined with Velcade, the percent of apoptosis is close to 100 percent for concentrations of 3 times 10 to the negative 9 to 3 times 10 to the negative 4.

(B)

Figure 17.40 Multiple myeloma and the biological effects of Velcade (A) Velcade can have profound effects on the cellular contents of the marrow and thus the composition of antibody molecules in the blood. In one multiple myeloma (MM) patient, after eight doses of Velcade, the neoplastic plasma cells in the marrow declined from 41% of total cells to 1%. At the same time, the level of the single species of immunoglobulin γ (IgG) made by these myeloma cells declined drastically. As seen here, upon gel electrophoresis, the small number of IgG species present before treatment (indicative of the homogeneous antibody population produced by a monoclonal tumor, *left*) resolved into the heterogeneously migrating pattern of IgGs that are present in the circulation of a

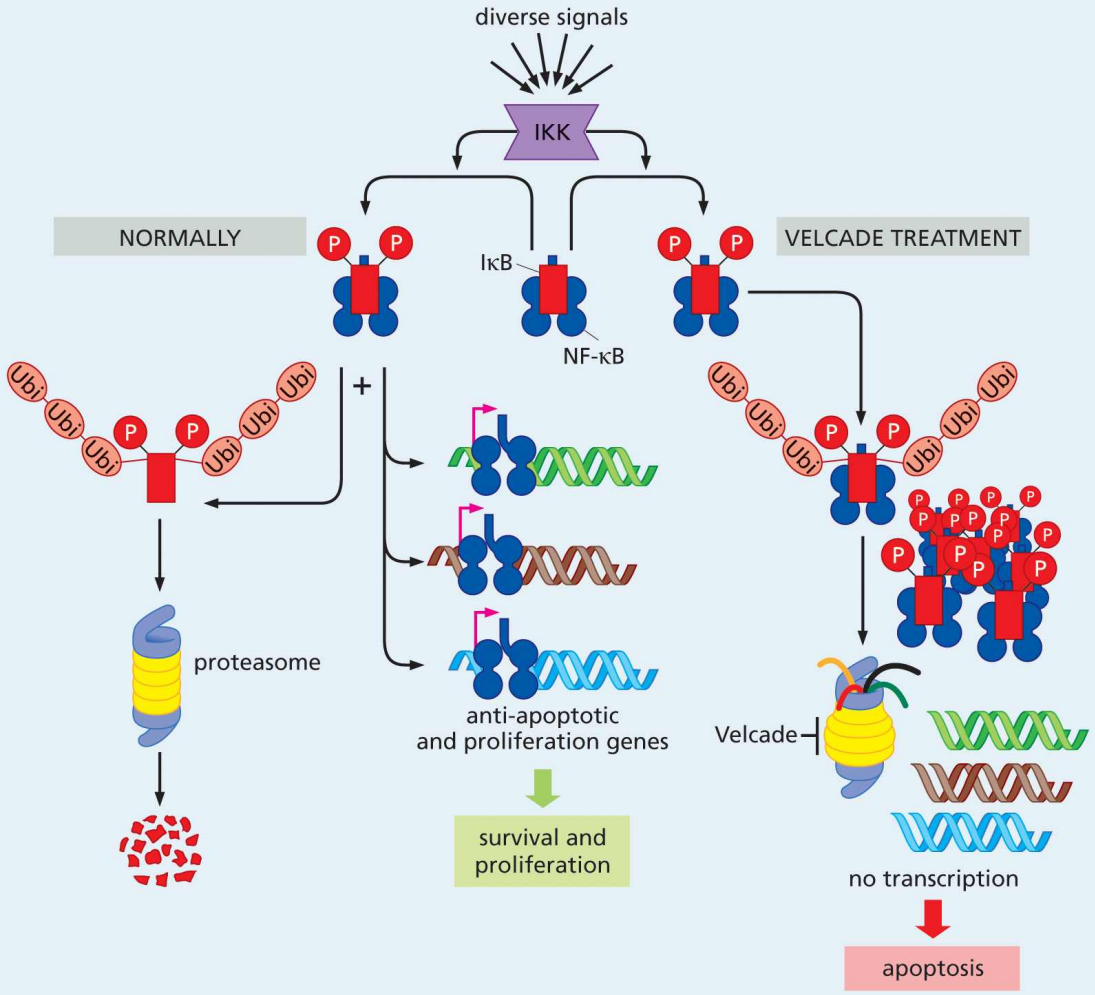
healthy individual (*right*). (B) Melphalan, an alkylating chemotherapeutic drug used routinely to treat MM, was added at various concentrations to an MM cell line *in vitro*, either on its own (*green*) or in the presence of a noncytotoxic dose of Velcade (*red*). In the presence of Velcade, melphalan was able to induce widespread apoptosis at approximately 3 nM concentration, but when applied on its own, melphalan was unable to induce this degree of apoptosis, even at vastly higher concentrations. (A, from R.Z. Orlowski et al., *J. Clin. Oncol*. 20:4420–4427, 2002. With permission from American Society of Clinical Oncology. B, from M.H. Ma et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 9:1136–1144, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

In a subsequent Phase I clinical trial with a group of multiple myeloma patients suffering from rapidly progressing disease, Velcade showed clear "objective responses" in slowing disease progression in 55% of the patients and halted progression in another 25%. In a Phase II clinical trial, half of patients were given Velcade while the other half, who served as controls, were given dexamethasone, a standard treatment for multiple myeloma. Most of these patients had already failed the chemotherapies commonly used for myeloma. This trial was stopped prematurely in 2003 because Velcade demonstrated a clear superiority over existing treatments, with the disease showing a complete response in a small number of patients (that is, myeloma cells disappeared completely from the blood for at least six weeks) and a partial response (at least 50% reduction in myeloma cell–secreted antibody in blood and 90% reduction of this protein in urine over the same time period) in 35% of the Velcade-treated patients. As a consequence, the control patients were then allowed to take the drug as well. In a subsequent trial, the progression of myeloma to a higher stage of disease occurred with a median time of seven months in Velcade-treated patients compared with three months in a control group studied in parallel. Moreover, pre-clinical studies indicate that relatively low doses of Velcade can sensitize myeloma cells to chemotherapeutic drugs, making the latter far more effective (Figure 17.40B and **Sidebar 17.15**).

Sidebar 17.15 Myelomas as an attractive target of proteasome inhibitor therapies

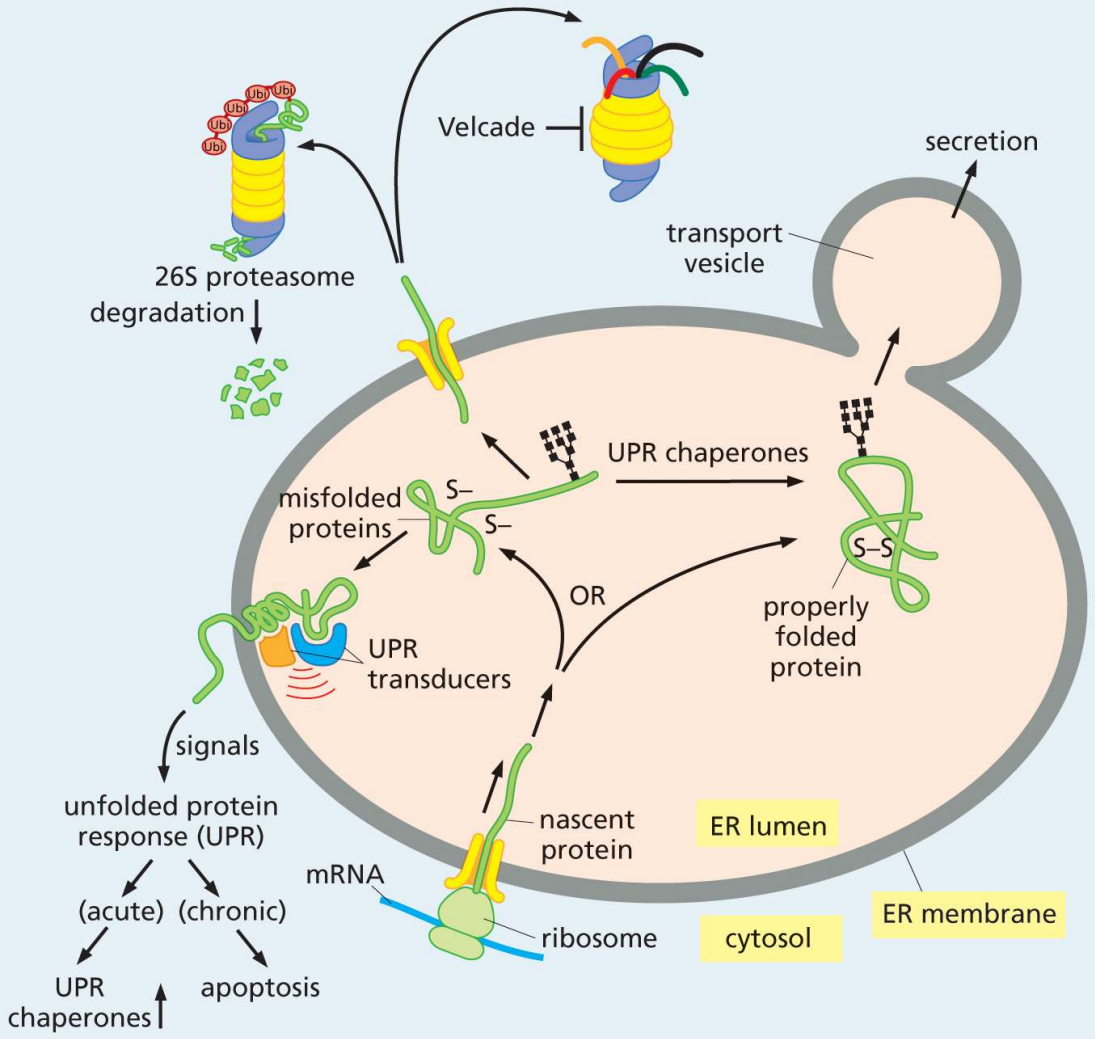
Inclusion of a myeloma patient in the initial clinical trial involving Velcade was hardly accidental. Multiple myeloma was thought to be an attractive target for treatment by a proteasome inhibitor because of the known elevated activity of the NF-κB signaling pathway in the myeloma cells and its physiological importance in driving the survival and proliferation of these cells. In Section 6.12 we noted that NF-κB transcription factors are normally sequestered in the cytoplasm by a class of inhibitors termed IκBs (inhibitors of N-κB). When these IκBs are phosphorylated by a group of specialized kinases termed IκB kinases, or simply IKKs, the IκBs undergo polyubiquitylation and

resulting degradation; this liberates the NF-κBs, allowing them to migrate into the nucleus, where they activate a number of anti-apoptotic genes as well as growth-promoting genes (**Figures 17.41 and 17.42**; see also Figures 6.22A and 11.38B).



A diagram shows the difference between the normal signal pathway and the pathway after velcade treatment. In both, diverse signals activate I K K. The I K K then phosphorylates I kappa B that is attached to N F kappa B. Normally, these two separate. I kappa B then is ubiquitylated and degraded in a proteasome. N F kappa B activates anti-apoptotic and proliferation genes, which leads to cell survival and proliferation. When there is velcade treatment, I kappa B and N F kappa B stay together. I kappa B is ubiquitylated, and Velcade then inhibits the proteasome. There is no free N F kappa B, so no transcription of the genes occur. This leads to apoptosis.

(A)

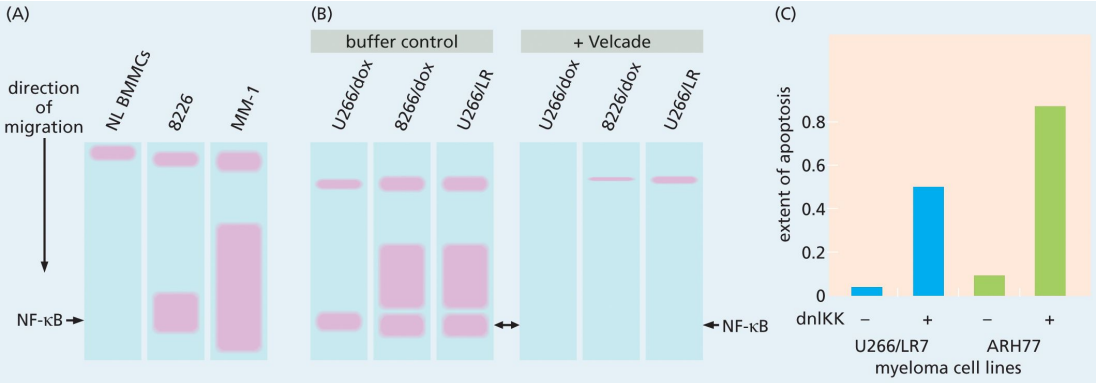


A diagram of the E R lumen showing pathways of proteins. m R N A in the cytosol is translated by a ribosome and the nascent protein enters the E R lumen. If the protein folds properly, it is secreted through a transport vesicle. If the protein is misfolded, three things may happen. One, U P R chaperones may correct the misfolding, turning it into a properly folded protein. Two, the misfolded protein may bind to a U P R transducer that signals an unfolded protein response. When acute, this leads to an increase in U P R chaperones. When chronic, this leads to apoptosis. Three, the misfolded protein may leave the E R and be degraded by a 26 S proteasome. However, if velcade is present, it inhibits the proteasome.

(B)

Figure 17.41 Mechanisms of Velcade action Two alternative mechanisms of action of Velcade have been proposed, and both are supported by extensive observations. (A) In normal and neoplastic cells (*left*), a variety of stress,

mitogenic, and trophic (survival) signals activate IκB kinase (IKK; *purple*, *above*, see Figure 6.22A). Once activated, IKK phosphorylates IκB (*red*), the inhibitor of NF-κB. This causes IκB to become ubiquitylated (*left*) and degraded in proteasomes (*lower left*). NF-κB (*blue*) is then free to move into the nucleus, where it activates the expression of numerous proliferation and anti-apoptotic genes. In the presence of Velcade (*right*), the ubiquitylated IκB cannot be degraded in the proteasomes because the latter have become engorged with unprocessed polypeptides. The IκB that accumulates in the cytoplasm binds and sequesters NF-κB (*right*). As a consequence, NF-κB is prevented from moving into the nucleus and activating expression of key anti-apoptotic genes. (B) The striking toxicity of Velcade for MM cells may arise because these cells, like normal plasma cells, are specialized to continuously synthesize and secrete enormous amounts of antibody molecules, in both cases on membrane-bound polyribosomes (*below, middle*). Like other secreted glycoproteins, antibody molecules are processed in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) prior to being secreted via exocytosis (*upper right*). Inevitably, a certain proportion of recently synthesized antibody molecules are misfolded following their insertion into the lumen of the ER. In the absence of proper folding, many of these misfolded proteins are extruded from the ER and broken down, following ubiquitylation, in cytosolic proteasomes (*upper left*). However, when proteasome function is blocked by Velcade (*above*), misfolded proteins accumulate in the lumen of the ER and trigger the unfolded protein response (UPR). This complex program includes the induction of apoptosis when misfolded proteins accumulate to toxic levels (*lower left*). (B, adapted from Y. Ma and L.M. Hendershot, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4:966–977, 2004. With permission from Nature.)



Three parts show evidence supporting the importance of N F kappa B signalling in Velcade induced apoptosis. Part A. An electrophoretic mobility shift assay shows the presence of N F kappa B in three types of cells. N L B M M cells have no N F kappa B band. 8266 cells have a thick band. M M 1 cells have a very thick band that is about three times as thick as the 8266 cell’s band. Part B. An

electrophoretic mobility shift assay shows the presence of N F kappa B in three types of cells with and without Velcade treatment. U 266 slash dox cells have a small band when treated with the buffer control and no band when treated with Velcade. 8226 slash dox cells have a large band when treated with the buffer control and no band when treated with Velcade. U 266 slash L R cells have a large band when treated with the buffer control and no band when treated with Velcade. Part C. A bar graph shows the extent of apoptosis in different myeloma cell lines. For the U 266 slash L R 7 cell line, extent of apoptosis was just above 0 for those that were d n l K K negative and around 0.5 for those that were d n l K K positive. For the A R H 77 cell line, extent of apoptosis was just around 0.1 for those that were d n l K K negative and around 0.9 for those that were d n l K K positive.
Figure 17.42 Evidence supporting the importance of NF-κB signaling in Velcade-induced apoptosis The scheme presented in Figure 17.41A is supported by a number of lines of evidence. (A) In an electrophoretic mobility shift assay (EMSA; also called a gel retardation assay), the presence and concentration of a functional, DNA-binding transcription factor (TF) are assessed by mixing an extract of nuclear proteins with a radiolabeled dsDNA oligonucleotide that carries a binding site for the TF. The presence of the DNA-binding TF is reflected by the amount of oligonucleotide that has formed a nucleoprotein complex with the TF; the large mass of protein associated with the oligonucleotide retards its migration during electrophoresis, causing it to migrate to a characteristic higher position in the gel. The arrow (*left*) indicates the expected location of a complex containing the NF-κB transcription factor and the radiolabeled oligonucleotide, in this case one derived from the promoter of the TNF-α gene, a target of NF-κB activation. (In the absence of bound DNA, the oligonucleotide migrates beyond the bottom of the gel.) The assay indicates little if any detectable NF-κB activity in normal bone marrow mononuclear cells (NL BMMCs, *left channel*), considerable activity in a multiple myeloma (MM) cell line (8226), and an enormous amount of NF-κB activity in the bone marrow cells prepared directly from a multiple myeloma patient (MM-1, *right channel*). (B) An EMSA has been used, as in panel A, to measure the level of functional NF-κB transcription factor in three MM cell lines treated with a control buffer (*left three channels*) or with Velcade (*right three channels*). Velcade eliminates essentially all NF-κB activity in these cells. (C) The importance of ongoing NF-κB signaling to the survival of MM cells is demonstrated by this experiment, in which a vector expressing a dominant-negative IKK (dnIKK) has been introduced into two different MM cell lines. If NF-κB signaling were critical to the action of Velcade, then the dnIKK should mimic the effects of Velcade by inducing MM cell apoptosis—the outcome that is indeed observed here. A vector that does not express dnIKK was used as control here. (From M.H. Ma et al., *Clin. Cancer Res*. 9:1136–1144, 2003. With permission from American Association for Cancer Research.)

Like myriad other polyubiquitylated proteins, the IκBs end up being degraded in proteasomes. Hence, by inhibiting proteasome action, IκBs should be protected from degradation, survive in the cytoplasm, and continue to sequester the NF-κBs, thereby blocking NF-κB nuclear translocation and activation of transcription. Nuclear, functionally active NF-κB was known to be important for inducing the expression of IL-4 and IL-6, two interleukins that operate as important autocrine factors required for the growth and survival of myeloma cells. In addition, as was learned later, NF-κB plays a prominent role in anti-apoptotic signaling in a number of cancer cell types; hence, loss of active NF-κB might well tilt the signaling balance within these cells toward apoptosis. More specifically, once cancer cells lose the potently anti-apoptotic Bcl-2, cIAP-2, and XIAP proteins (all of whose expression is induced by NF-κB), they are in grave danger of slipping into the apoptotic abyss.

All this does not explain, however, why Velcade is far more potent against myelomas than other tumors that rely on NF-κB signaling to protect them from apoptosis. A possible clue comes from observations that the growth and viability of myeloma cells is highly dependent on their ability to synthesize VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor; see Section 13.1) and adhesion molecules; the latter enable myeloma cells to attach to bone marrow stem cells (BMSCs), with which the myeloma cells establish critically important heterotypic interactions. The genes encoding these various proteins are all under NF-κB control.

NF-κB antagonists are likely to have utility for treating a number of other kinds of cancer as well. Recall that NF-κB plays a key role in the development of a variety of carcinomas (see **Supplementary Sidebar 11.12**) and may be required for the maintenance of these tumors once they are formed. For example, gene expression and tumor mutational analysis has revealed that many B-cell lymphomas have constitutively activated NF-κB activity. Consequently, these tumors become attractive targets for treatment by either Velcade or a NF-κB treatment, and for one treatment-refractory B-cell lymphoma type, mantle cell lymphoma, Velcade now represents an effective therapy for many patients. However, other B-cell lymphoma types that have constitutive NF-κB signaling fail to respond to Velcade, suggesting that this tumor dependency may not be the sole determinant of Velcade response.

A second, alternative theory of Velcade's mechanism of action, which also has numerous proponents, does not attribute its effects specifically to inactivation of the NF-κB signaling pathway. According to this proposed mechanism, myeloma cells, like normal antibody-secreting plasma cells, continuously synthesize and secrete antibody molecules at a prodigious rate—estimated to be thousands of molecules per second. A certain portion of these molecules are routinely degraded in the proteasomes because of misfolding or other mishaps occurring during their post-translational maturation. As seen in Figure 17.41B, in addition to proteasomal degradation, accumulation of unfolded and misfolded proteins in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) creates the state of

ER stress, which in turn activates the unfolded protein response (UPR). This complex program depends on signaling by receptor-like UPR transducers that convey information of the presence of significant numbers of misfolded proteins in the lumen of the ER. One component of the UPR, active during acute episodes of ER stress, results in molecular chaperones being dispatched from the cytosol into the lumen of the ER in order to properly fold the aberrant proteins. Another part of the UPR program operates in response to chronic ER stress and triggers apoptosis. Myeloma cells are especially sensitive to inhibitors of protein degradation and become engorged with misfolded protein molecules, specifically subunits of antibodies. In some poorly understood fashion, the failure of proteasomal function in the cytosol triggers activation of the UPR within the ER, and under many circumstances, this results eventually in the activation of apoptosis. The truly amazing potency and therapeutic index of Velcade—killing myeloma cells at concentrations as low as 1 nM—may be explained by the highly specialized secretory phenotype of these cells.

The lack of a clear mechanism underlying Velcade efficacy has confounded attempts to identify biomarkers for drug response. The absence of biomarkers represents a challenge to clinicians in providing optimal treatment to patients, and it also represents a common challenge in determining how to pay for such treatments. Specifically, given the extraordinarily high cost of some cancer therapies, it can be difficult to justify paying for therapies that are not effective in most patients. In the case of EGF-R inhibitor treatment, the identification of the subset of patients likely to be responsive to therapy not only improved the treatment of such patients but also made the use of these treatments feasible from a cost-benefit perspective for insurance companies and government health agencies. A pragmatic solution was found in the context of Velcade treatment: European healthcare agencies reached an agreement with drug developers to pay for Velcade only when the treatment showed efficacy in specific patients. Whether such arrangements will become commonplace for cancer therapy remains unclear, but in the case of Velcade this arrangement was fundamental to broad clinical use of the drug.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

cachexia
: Physiological state, often seen late in cancer development, in which the patient loses appetite and suffers wasting of tissues throughout the body.

peptidase
: Peptide-cleaving enzyme.

chymotryptic
: Referring to proteolytic reaction similar to that of chymotrypsin that cleaves protein substrates adjacent to hydrophobic amino acids.

multiple myeloma
: *See* **myeloma**.

objective response
: Demonstration of clinical response to therapy as gauged by changes in progression-free survival, overall survival, time to progression, size of tumor, marked improvement in patient symptoms, or other measurable response to therapy.

ER stress
: Physiological stress in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum often triggered by misfolded or unfolded protein domains. *See also* **unfolded protein response**.

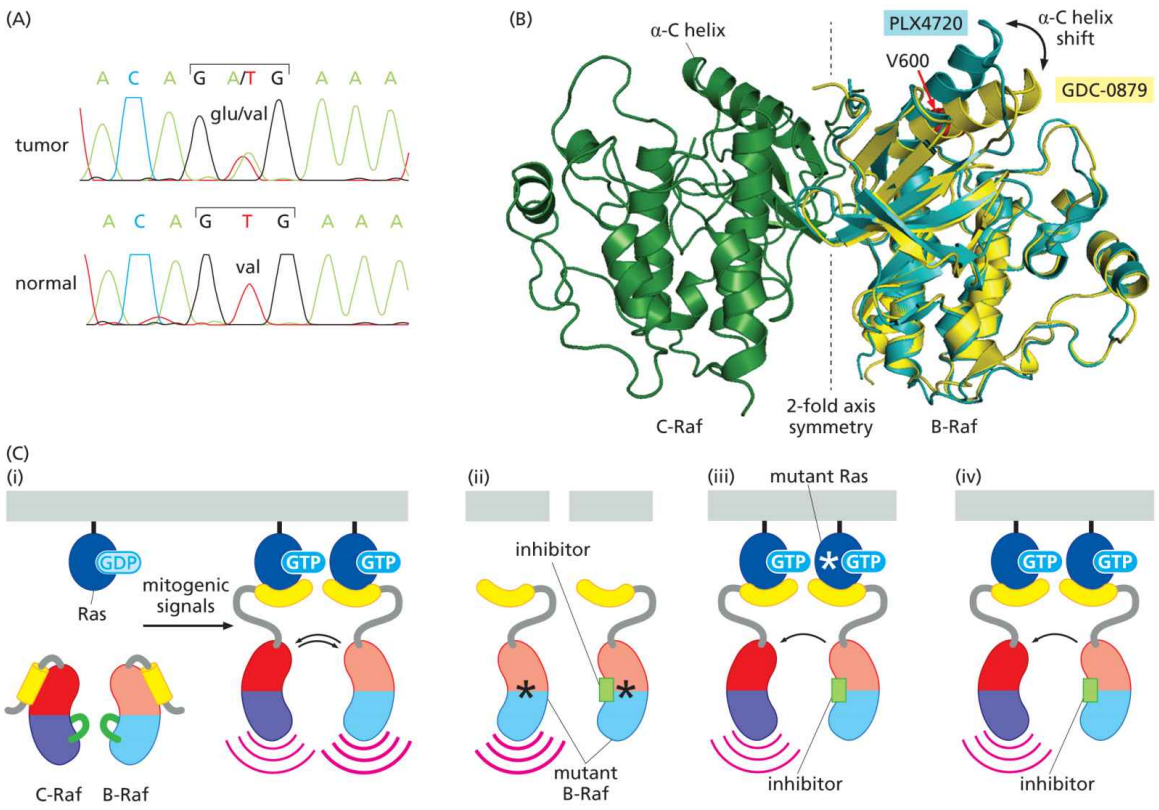
unfolded protein response
: A cell-biological program, which is the main source of ER stress, that is activated by the accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum; this program halts further translation, induces synthesis of molecular chaperones, and, if unsuccessful in reducing the level of unfolded and misfolded proteins, induces apoptosis. *See* **ER stress**.

OceanofPDF.com

17.16 B-Raf discoveries have led to inroads into the melanoma problem

The sequencing of entire tumor cell genomes, made possible over the past decade by new technology, has uncovered large numbers of novel candidate oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. However, the most important of these was actually found by focusing the sequencing technology on a known signaling pathway—exploring the well-lit ground under a familiar lamppost—the Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK pathway (see Section 6.5). Among other genes being studied was *C-Raf* (earlier called *Raf*) and its two paralogs, *A-Raf* and *B-Raf*, all of which are activated by GTP-bound Ras; *C-Raf* encodes the familiar Raf oncoprotein, first identified by its presence in an acutely transforming retrovirus (see Table 4.1). In 2002, sequence analysis revealed the presence of mutant *B-Raf* alleles in more than half of cutaneous human melanomas. In one sense, this was an astonishing finding, given that the Raf proteins, largely C-Raf, had been studied for two decades without there being any hint that one of these three genes was a frequent participant in the formation of a not-uncommon human malignancy.

Ninety percent of the mutant *B-Raf* alleles were found to carry point mutations in the codon encoding amino acid residue 600, causing a normally present valine to be replaced by a glutamic acid (**Figure 17.43A**). The behavior of this V600E mutation echoes that of the *Ras* oncogenes, in which an even greater proportion of mutant alleles affect a single codon, specifically codon 12 (see Figure 4.6). Interestingly, in melanomas and other tumor types, mutant *B-Raf* alleles are rarely found together with activated *Ras* oncogenes in individual cancer cell genomes; this mutually exclusive pattern indicates that the Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK pathway plays a key role in the development of these various tumors and suggests that these two classes of mutant alleles are functionally redundant.



A three part figure describes mutant B Raf and its treatment. Part A. The D N A sequences of a mutant tumor B Raf and a normal B Raf. The sequences are the same excep,t in the mutant, a T has changed to an A. This results in G A G, which codes for glutamine, versus G T G, which codes for valine. Part B. A ribbon model of the B Raf slash C Raf heterodimer. There is 2 fold axis symmetry, with the C Raf subunit on the left and the B Raf subunit on the right. Both sides have an alpha C helix pointing outward from the top. V 600 is near the base of this alpha C helix in B Raf. A mutation can cause the helix to shift positions. In one conformation, P L X 4720 binds, and in another conformation, G D C 0879 binds. Part C. A four part diagram shows different behaviors of Raf dimers in a cell. The first example shows C Raf, B Raf, and G D P bound Ras. After mitogenic signals, C-Raf and B-Raf each bind to a Ras that now has G T P bound. C Raf and B Raf are signalling. The second example shows that a mutant B Raf can signal without being bound to Ras. However, if an inhibitor is bound, it will not signal. The third example shows a C Raf bound to a Ras and a B Raf bound to a mutant Ras. The B Raf has an inhibitor. The B Raf activates signalling in the C Raf, but the B Raf is not signalling. The fourth example is the same as the third example, but the B Raf is bound to a normal Ras.

Figure 17.43 The mutant B-Raf and its treatment A search for mutant alleles of the genes controlling the main mitogenic signaling pathway in cells —the Ras–Raf–MEK–MAPK pathway—has revealed the frequent presence of mutant alleles of one of the three genes encoding Raf family kinases, which operate as serine/threonine kinases immediately downstream of the Ras proteins (see Figure 6.9A). (A) The discovery of point-mutated B-Raf alleles is shown here, in which sequencing of the genome of an ovarian tumor (*above*) revealed heterozygosity in codon 600 of the protein, which normally specifies valine (*below*). The mutant allele in the tumor genome was found to specify glutamic acid instead. This V600E mutant allele has since been found to be the predominant mutant B-Raf allele in more than half of all malignant melanomas and a variety of other tumors, including ~10% of colon carcinomas. (B) A molecular model of the B-Raf/C-Raf heterodimer structure is shown here. The two kinase molecules associate with one another in a parallel, side-to-side fashion, with residues from both the N- and C-terminal lobes contributing to the heterodimer interface. The V600 residue of B-Raf (*arrow, red*) is the most common structural alteration encoded by oncogenic mutations (usually V600E) and renders the enzyme constitutively active. Acting via allosteric interactions, the B-Raf protomer is able to activate C-Raf signaling even when B-Raf lacks kinase activity (as a result of mutation or drug action). The orientation of the α-C helices can affect B-Raf/C-Raf dimerization and thus C-Raf kinase activation. As seen here, the binding of two distinct B-Raf inhibitors, PLX4720 and GDC-0879, in the ATP-binding pocket of B-Raf shifts the orientation of this α-helix and thus the interactions between the two protomer subunits. (C) The behavior of Raf dimers greatly complicates the therapeutic effects of the B-Raf V600E inhibitor. (i) In normal cells, mitogen-activated GTP-bound Ras proteins bind and activate B-Raf/C-Raf heterodimers, with much of the downstream signaling being emitted by the more potent B-Raf partner; this results in activation of MEK and MAPK/ERK (see Figure 6.9A). (ii) In many melanomas, a mutant V600E B-Raf protein, acting in a Ras-independent fashion, can signal constitutively as a monomer (*right*), driving strong activation of this signaling cascade. A V600E-specific inhibitor (*green rectangle*) blocks this signaling (*right*), leading to temporary tumor regression of many melanomas. (iii) In cancer cells in which a mutant Ras oncoprotein is present (for example, in many colorectal carcinomas), the V600E-specific inhibitor, while shutting down B-Raf signaling, causes the latter to activate, via allosteric interactions, signaling by C-Raf. (iv) In certain normal cells in which B-Raf is wild type, this inhibitor can stimulate signaling, possibly by activating C-Raf. (A, from H. Davies et al., *Nature* 417:949–954, 2002. B, from G. Hatzivassiliou et al.,

Nature 464:431–435, 2010. Both with permission from Nature. C, courtesy of M.B. Yaffe.)

In 2011, the drug vemurafenib (previously called PLX4032), which targets specifically the V600E mutant B-Raf protein, received approval for use in metastatic melanomas in Europe, followed soon thereafter by approval in the United States. It was the first time that these aggressive, late-stage tumors could be treated with significant clinical responses. Thus, over a 6-month trial period, vemurafenib produced a 74% increase in progression-free survival (PFS) and a 20% reduction in overall mortality relative to the standard of care at the time, an alkylating agent named dacarbazine. Stated differently, vemurafenib increased overall PFS of these patients by ~4 months. These numbers indicate that vemurafenib offers patients with V600E metastatic melanomas an extension of life span but only rarely a cure. Sooner or later, their tumors develop strategies for evading this drug and thereby acquire the ability to erupt again, although many of these relapsed tumors can now be treated effectively with checkpoint blockade immunotherapy, as discussed in Chapter 16.

Curiously, a significant percentage of vemurafenib-treated patients develop cutaneous squamous cell carcinomas, providing a clear indication that, paradoxically, this drug *stimulates* the outgrowth of previously latent, subclinical tumors. Indeed, in patients whose tumors carried mutations other than the V600E alteration, vemurafenib actually *favored* tumor growth, indicating the critical importance of sequence analysis of tumors prior to use of this drug.

One possible explanation for this apparently paradoxical biology is that ATP-competitive Raf inhibitors inhibit mutant B-Raf activity, but unexpectedly activate wild-type B-Raf signaling. Here, drug interaction with the ATP-binding pocket of one B-Raf protein within a B-Raf dimer leads to the activation of the other component of the dimer. This activation is dependent upon Ras activity and can result in elevated MEK/ERK activation in non-tumor cells (including, possibly, subclinical squamous cell carcinomas). The relevance of this unexpected biology is worth noting in the context of the therapeutic index. Because vemurafenib (and other Raf inhibitors) activates the Ras/MAPK pathway in normal cells, rather than inhibiting it, it is possible to apply very high doses of drug to treat the tumor. This therapeutic index also allows co-treatment with a MEK inhibitor to increase the potency of vemurafinib in the tumor without the usual toxicity of a MEK inhibitor in normal tissue.

Another explanation for this phenomenon relates to the propensity of deregulated Ras expression to promote the process of cellular senescence, as described in Section 9.11. Studies of transplanted melanomas in mice showed that tumors that acquired the ability to grow in the presence of vemurafenib actually developed a dependence on continued drug treatment. Here, resistance to vemurafenib treatment resulted from hyperactivation of Ras signaling and cessation of vemurafenib treatment, by reactivating B-Raf, led to elevation of already high levels of Ras signaling to a level at which Ras-induced senescence occurred. Conversely, in the context of squamous cell carcinomas, it is possible that vemurafenib treatment decreases senescence induction in pre-neoplastic lesions, allowing skin tumors to progress. The ability to engage a senescence response by halting vemurafenib treatment has promoted the idea that intermittent drug holidays, periods in which patients are not administered therapy, may promote better overall tumor control. This result highlights the idea, supported largely by empirical data, that the timing and scheduling of drug treatments can decidedly affect the therapeutic response.

The development of anti-tumor immunotherapies (as described in Chapter 16) has profoundly altered the treatment of melanoma. Still, vemurafenib has the prospect of becoming part of a multi-drug treatment protocol that one day will stop the previously unstoppable metastatic melanomas in their tracks. Indeed, vemurafenib is now used in combination with Mek inhibitors to treat B-Raf mutant melanoma. Additionally, an increasing number of tumors beyond melanoma have been shown to rely on signaling pathways that require B-Raf, and B-Raf mutation and activation can promote tumor cell resistance to targeted therapies, including EGF-R inhibitors in lung cancer. Thus, although not as effective as Gleevec before it, this drug confers significant benefit in melanoma patients and provides support for the goal of treating multiple primary and drug-resistant cancers with rationally developed drugs.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

drug holiday
: Defined period when drug treatment is halted.

OceanofPDF.com

17.17 Synopsis and prospects: challenges and opportunities on the road ahead

“When is cancer going to be cured?” This is the simple and reasonable question posed most often to cancer researchers by those who are not directly involved in this area of biomedical research. In their minds are the histories of other public health measures. Infectious diseases, such as polio and smallpox, can be prevented, and bacterial infections are, almost invariably, cured. Heart disease is, in the eyes of many, well on its way to being prevented. Why should cancer be any different?

The information in this book provides some insights into the answers to these questions. As much as we have invoked unifying concepts to portray cancer as a single disease, the reality—at least in the eyes of clinical oncologists—is far different. Cancer is really a collection of more than 200 diseases, each affecting a distinct cell or tissue type in the body.

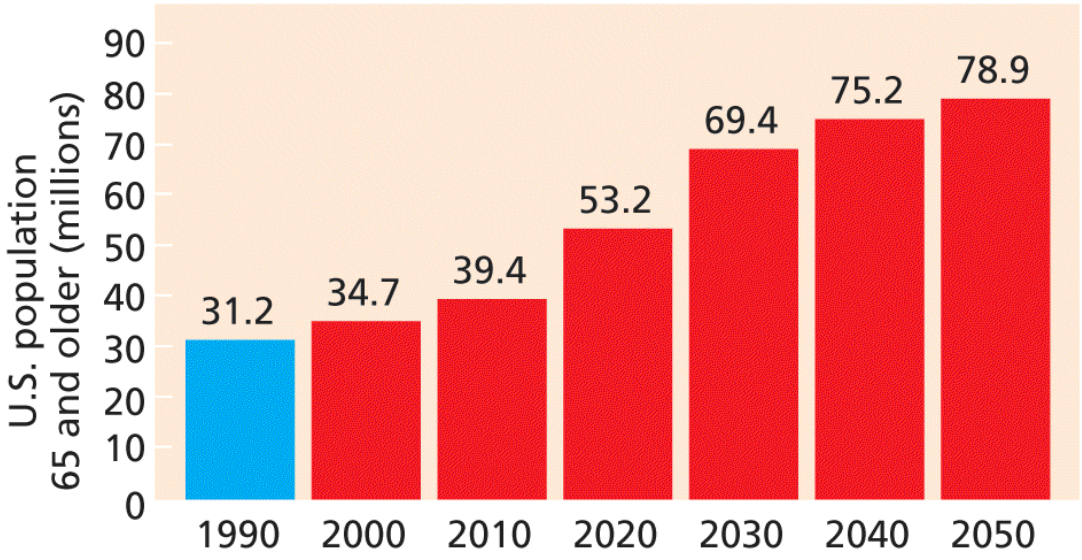
Pathological analyses have led us to embrace this number, or one a bit larger. (For example, there are at least eight distinct histopathological categories of breast cancer.) However, even the expanded number, large as it may be, represents an illusion: the current use of molecular diagnostics, specifically gene expression arrays, is leading to an explosion of subcategories, so that several hundred distinct neoplastic disease entities are likely to be recognized, each following its own, reasonably predictable clinical course and exhibiting its own responsiveness to specific forms of therapy. With the passage of time, cancer diagnoses will increasingly be made using bioinformatics rather than the trained eyes of a pathologist.

So the initial response to questions about “the cure” is that there won’t be a single major breakthrough that will cure all cancers—a decisive battlefield victory—simply because cancer is not a single disease. Instead, there will be many small skirmishes that will steadily reduce the overall death rates from various types of cancer. And because certain molecular defects and pathological processes (for example, immune evasion) are shared by multiple human cancers, there will be occasions when therapeutic advances on a number of fronts will be made concomitantly.

Before we speculate on the future of cancer therapy, it is worthwhile to step back and assess the scope of the challenge: (1) How large is the problem of cancer and, in the

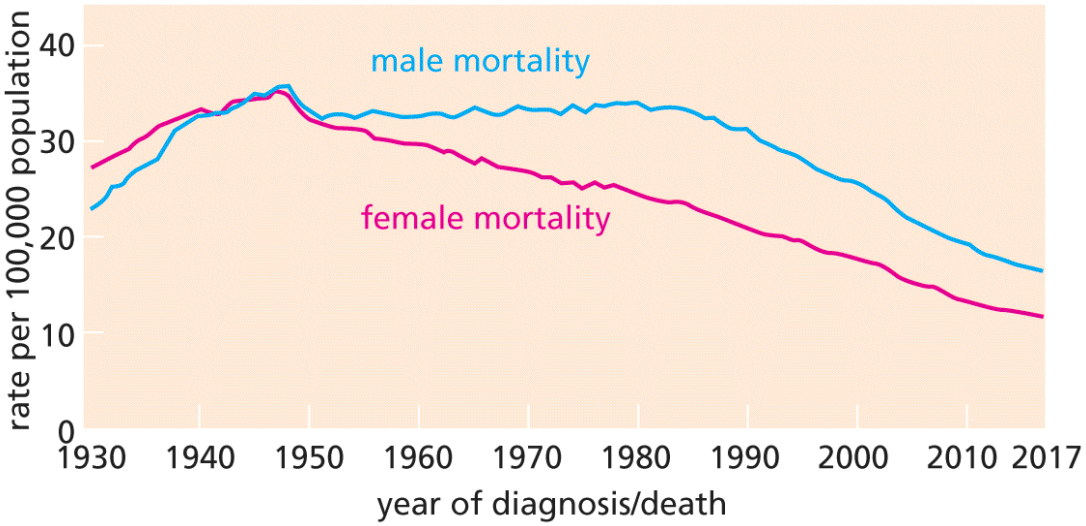
future, how desperate will the need be to cure various types of neoplastic disease? (2) How well are we doing now in curing the major solid tumors?

Epidemiology and demographics provide some answers to the first question. They yield sobering assessments of the road ahead. The statistics illustrated in Figure 11.1 and cited in **Figure 17.44** demonstrate that cancer is largely a disease of the elderly, whose numbers are growing rapidly and will continue to do so, generating progressive increases in the numbers of cases of cancer-related deaths (mortality) over the coming decades.



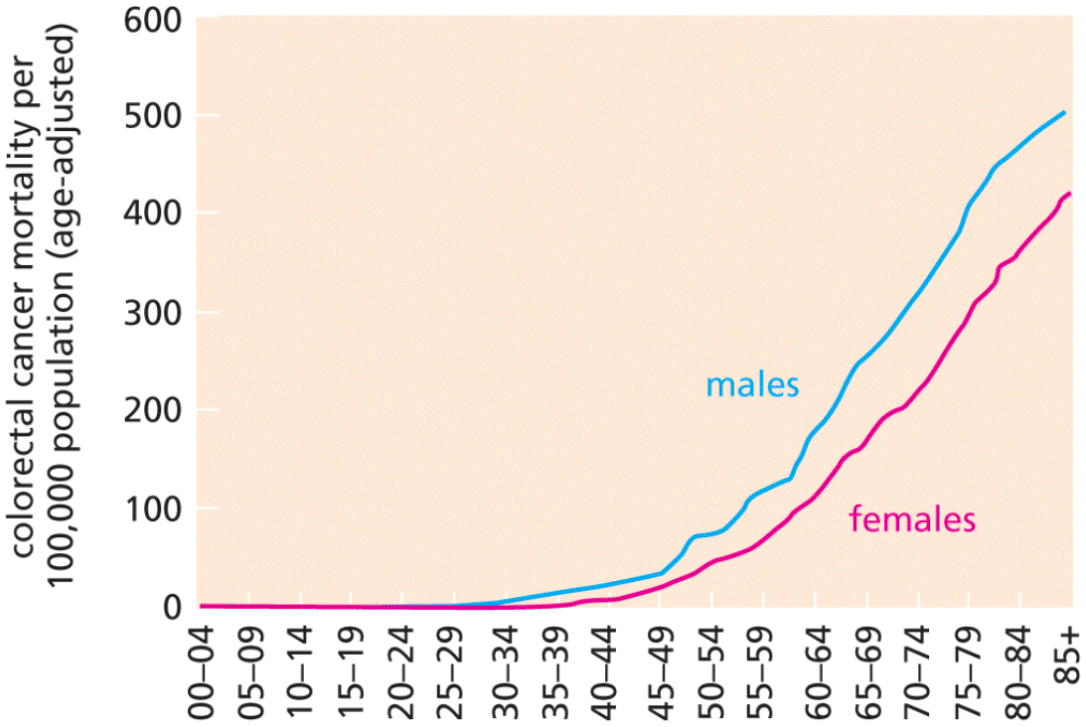
A bar graph shows the number of the U.S. population that is 65 and older for different years. In 1990, there were 31.2 million. In 2000, there were 34.7 million. In 2010, there were 39.4 million. In 2020, there were 53.2 million. In 2030, there will be 69.4 million. In 2040, there will be 75.2 million. In 2050, there will be 78.9 million.

(A)



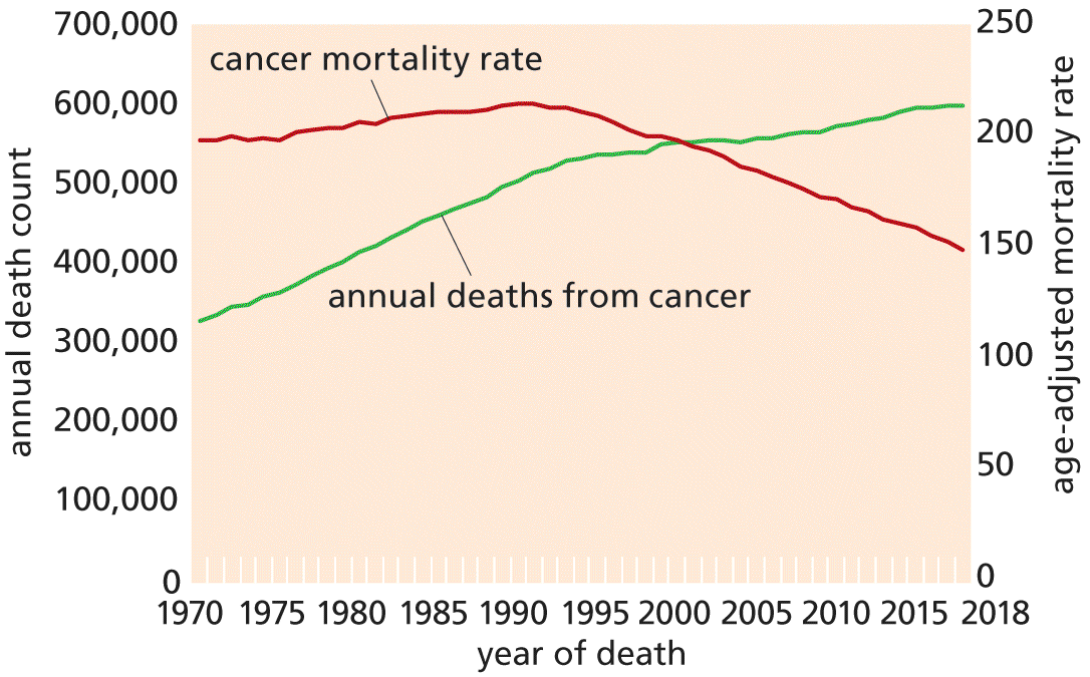
A line graph shows the female and male mortality rates relative to the year of diagnosis or death from 1930 to 2017. Both follow the same trajectory with a peak mortality rate at the year 1950. After 1950, female mortality rate decreases steadily to around 15 per 100,000 population in 2017. Male mortality plateaus around 30 per 100,000, until 1990, when it starts to decrease. By 2017, it is around 20 per 100,000.

(B)



A line graph of colorectal cancer mortality for different genders and age groups. For both males and females, mortality per 100,000 people is 0 until around age 29. After that, the mortality increases somewhat exponentially. At age 85 plus, the mortality per 100,000 people reaches about 510 for males and 425 for females.

(C)



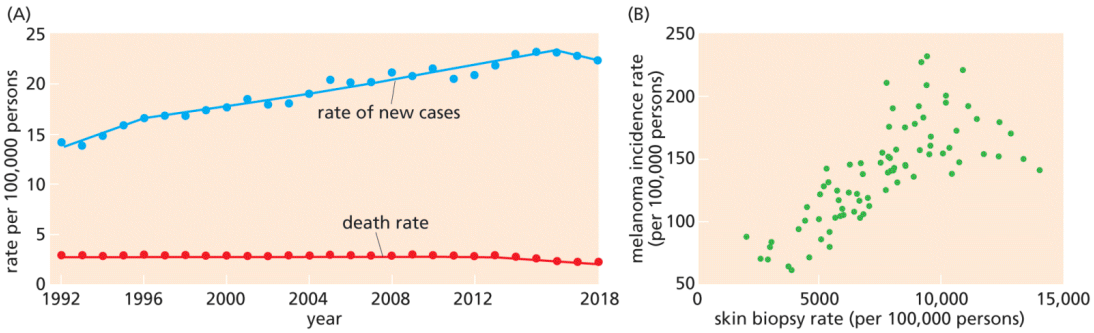
A line graph shows the cancer mortality rate and annual deaths from cancer from 1970 to 2018. The annual deaths from cancer increases from just over 300,000 in 1970 to around 600,000 in 2018. The age adjusted cancer mortality rate stays around 200 from 1970 to 1990 and then decreases to 150 by 2018.

(D)

Figure 17.44 The demographics and epidemiology of cancer (A) Because of dramatic decreases in midlife mortality, populations in industrialized countries are aging rapidly. In the United States, the number of individuals over 65 years of age has increased elevenfold since 1900, while the number of those under 65 has increased by a factor of 3. Comparable increases in the aged population are likely to occur worldwide over the next generation. (B) The age-adjusted death rate from colorectal cancer has changed only slightly over the past several decades. Other major cancers show similar curves. (C) Like many other diseases, cancer is uncommon during early and midlife and then increases rapidly. Shown here is the age-dependent death rate of colorectal cancer. (D) Because (1) the number of

elderly individuals has increased steadily over the past century and will continue to do so (see panel A), (2) cancer is a disease of the elderly (panel C), and (3) the age-adjusted death rate of most cancers has been declining only slowly (as suggested in panel B), the absolute number of annual deaths from cancer has increased dramatically over the past three-quarters of a century in the United States (red line) despite an overall decrease in age-adjusted mortality (blue line, a death rate that controls for the effects of differences in population age distributions). (The number of individuals afflicted with Alzheimer's disease has increased in parallel for the same reasons.) Because these trends are likely to continue, the burden of cancer cases in industrialized societies will continue to climb for many decades, albeit at a slower rate than before 1995. (A, courtesy of D. Singer and R. Hodes, from U.S. Bureau of the Census, Projections of 1996. B, from R. Siegel et al., *CA Cancer J Clin*. 70(3):145–164, 2020. With permission from John Wiley & Sons. C and D, from Natl. Cancer Inst, DCCPS, Surveillance Res. Program, May 2020 and the American Cancer Society.)

Equally important, we still have only very imperfect ways of measuring incidence—how often the disease strikes. This greatly complicates assessments of the effectiveness of current therapies and future needs for therapy. As indicated in **Figure 17.45**, perceptions of the incidence of certain types of neoplastic disease are strongly influenced by diagnostic practices.



Two graphs describe melanoma incidence and mortality. Part A. A line graph shows the death rate and rate of new cases of melanoma from 1992 to 2018. The death rate remains around 3 per 100,000 people across all years. However, the rate of new cases starts near 15 per 100,000 people and increases to a peak of 24 per 100,000 people around 2016. Part B. A scatterplot shows the melanoma incidence rate relative to the skin biopsy rate per 100,000 people. In general, the incidence rate increases as the biopsy rate increases. For instance, a biopsy rate of 5000 per 100,000 people is associated with an incidence rate of 100 per 100,000 people. A biopsy rate of 10,000 per 100,000 people is associated with an incidence rate of 150 per 100,000 people.

Figure 17.45 Melanoma incidence and mortality Melanoma incidence in the United States has increased by a factor of 6 over the past half century, raising the question whether this trend has created a comparable increase in the number of cases that truly require aggressive clinical treatment. (A) The age-adjusted breakdown of melanoma incidence, collected from 13 locations within the United States, indicates a dramatic increase over the past three decades in the overall incidence rate of disease (*blue curve*). The age-adjusted mortality rate (*red curve*) has been relatively constant during these years. These data raise the question: Has the real incidence of life-threatening disease been relatively constant over this period and has the registered incidence of this disease increased from changes in screening practices, revealing increasing numbers of non-life-threatening early-stage disease? (B) If melanoma incidence rates are plotted against the rates of screening of people aged 65 or over for melanoma in nine areas of the United States, as registered during several time periods between 2002 and 2009, the resulting scatter plot reveals a close correlation between the two. This provides a strong indication that the incidence of the disease is strongly influenced by diagnostic practices. It is therefore possible that (1) the true incidence of life-threatening melanomas (panel A) has not changed significantly over the past two decades; or (2) the true incidence of these tumors has increased, but intensification of screening has held the mortality rate at levels observed two decades ago by allowing the removal of early-stage tumors before they progress to become invasive and metastatic. (A, from https://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/melan.html and H. G. Welch et al., *BMJ.* 331:481–484, 2005; B, from M. A. Weinstock et al, *Br. J. Dermatol*. 176: 949–954, 2016. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

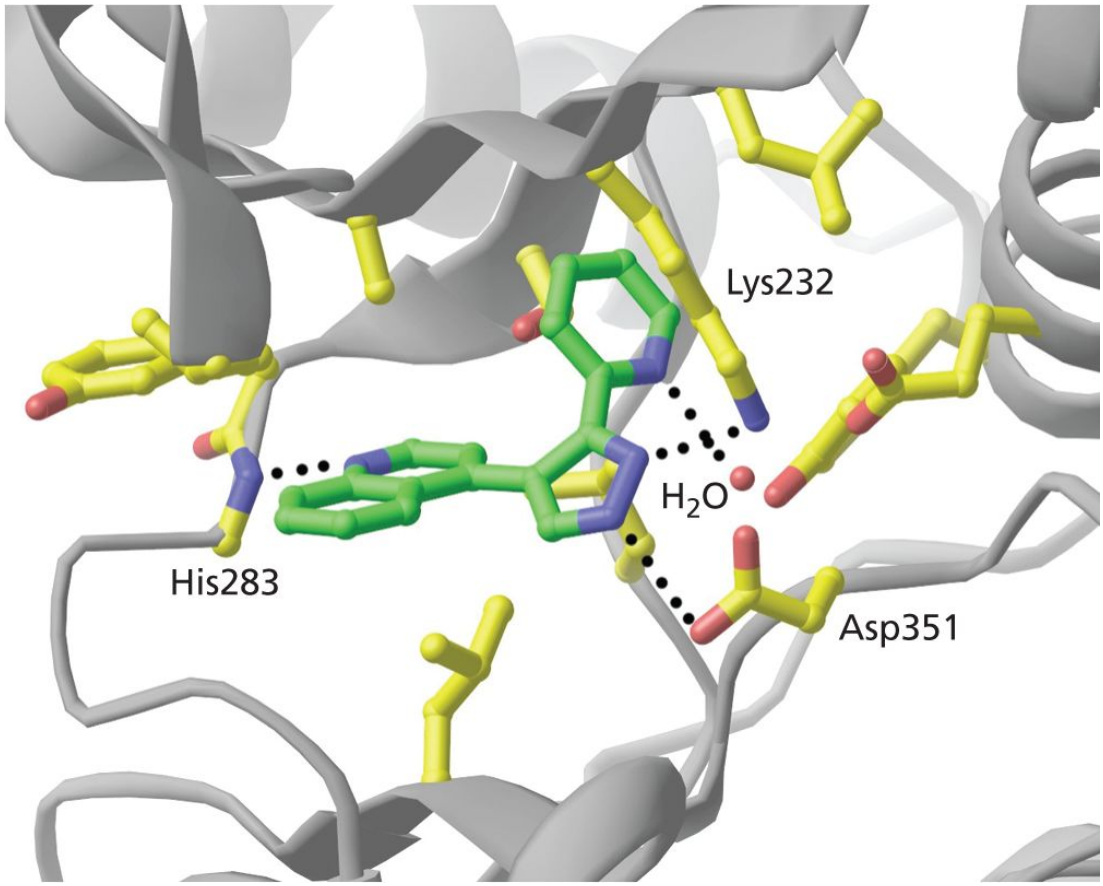
For many types of cancer, the more one looks, the more one finds. Statistics like those in Figure 17.45 suggest that, in the past, many cancers remained undiagnosed and asymptomatic for the lifetimes of those who carried them and that tumors of this class are contributing the lion's share to the perceived increases in disease incidence, notably of common tumors, such as those arising in the breast and prostate. (The major exceptions here are the cancers related to tobacco use, whose increased incidence in certain populations is real and beyond dispute because the incidence rates are closely paralleled by the rates of mortality.) Such statistics indicate that for certain common tumors—prostate and breast cancer being prominent examples—we have only a poor appreciation of the number of tumors that truly require treatment (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.2**). Given these numbers, the current practice in the West of aggressively treating all individuals diagnosed with cancer (whether or not they truly require such treatment) will soon exceed the ability of national economies to support such care.

Data like those in Figure 17.45 also undermine the notion, deeply entrenched in the thinking of many cancer biologists and clinical oncologists, that all benign growths are in danger of becoming, sooner or later, highly malignant ones (see Chapter 11). Cancer

epidemiology now makes us confront the alternative possibility: many kinds of early-stage tumors are unlikely to progress to high-grade malignancy during an average human life span, and the long-term side effects of aggressive treatment may often be more serious than the statistical likelihood of dying from these tumors. Unfortunately, we are only beginning to learn how to segregate those tumors that are truly deserving of aggressive treatment from those that are not (see, for example, Figure 17.4).

As to the second question, which deals with the effectiveness of current cancer therapies, our perceptions have been strongly influenced by the fact that people are living longer with their cancers. This increase in longevity would seem to provide some reassurance that real progress is being made. However, some of these perceived improvements in therapy may, once again, be artifacts of increased screening and more sensitive detection techniques that increasingly uncover tumors relatively early in their development, giving the patient additional years of survival before tumor progression advances through its natural course, whether or not treatments are applied. This logic forces the conclusion that the efficacy of therapies can be accurately gauged only by well-controlled experiments: comparisons of several patient populations that are afflicted by the same malignancy and exposed in parallel to different agents or treatment protocols. Such side-by-side comparisons have, until recently, yielded only incremental gains in treating most solid tumors (see, for example, Figure 17.25), but this is beginning to change as new drugs and immune therapies are introduced into the clinic. Indeed, the age-adjusted mortality from breast cancer in Western countries has decreased by 40% in certain cohorts of women, and most of this decrease is likely attributable to aggressive clinical intervention.

The major hope at present is that agents such as Gleevec, erlotinib, vemurafenib, and rituximab are the forerunners of dozens and eventually hundreds of targeted, highly efficacious drugs. Computer-driven procedures, including high-throughput screening (HTS), automated determinations of the stereochemical structures of target molecules, and computer-aided design of drug molecules (**Figure 17.46**), are proving useful in this endeavor. Without such automated procedures, the current costs of developing novel anti-cancer drugs will soon become economically unsustainable, and the development of agents for less common subtypes of common cancers will never be realized.



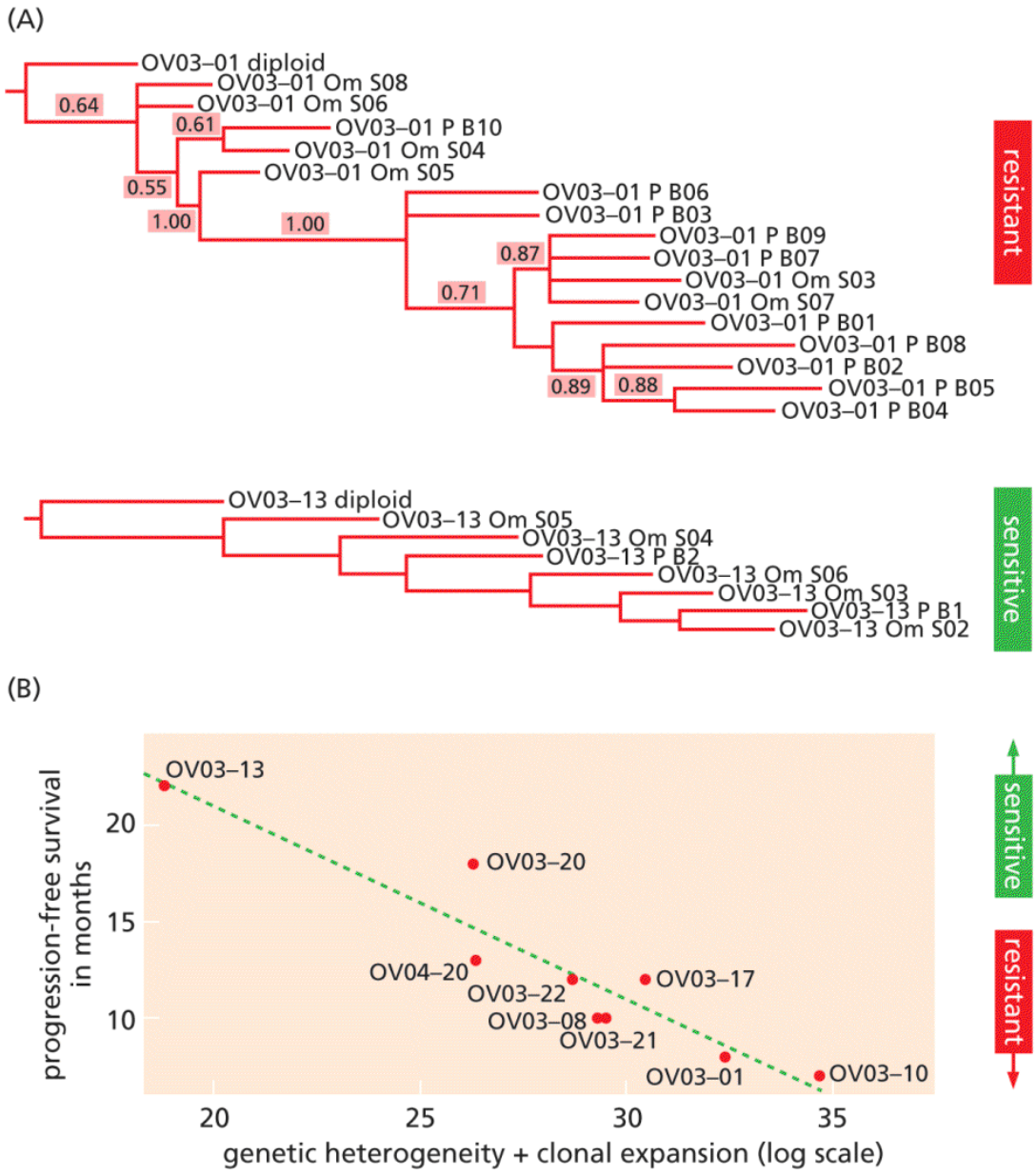
A diagram shows a drug molecule interacting with the Histidine 283, Lysine 232, and Asparagine 351 of a T G H beta type 1 receptor kinase.

Figure 17.46 Virtual screening—designing drugs using the desktop computer High-throughput drug screening using various cancer cells as targets has yielded a large number of highly attractive drug candidates, many of which have advanced into clinical trials. In the future, however, much of this screening, which is very expensive, may be obviated by the development of powerful algorithms that enable pharmacologists to design drugs using the known stereochemical structures of target proteins. The development of the drug illustrated here began with a compound that showed very weak affinity (IC_{50} of 30 μM) for the ATP-binding site of the TGF-β type I receptor kinase. Researchers then queried a database of 200,000 known compounds for ones that shared some chemical features with the starting compound and conformed to the constraints imposed by the known structure of the ATP-binding site. This yielded the structures of 87 chemical species that satisfied these criteria and were then screened using conventional biochemical techniques. One of these, named HTS466284, is shown here ensconced in the ATP-binding site of the TGF-β type I receptor kinase; it exhibits an IC_{50} of 27 nM and thus functions as a potent inhibitor of TGF-β signaling.

Significantly, another research group, working independently, arrived at the identical inhibitor molecule using conventional high-throughput screening. Hydrogen bonds are indicated by dotted lines. (From J. Singh et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* 13:4355–4359, 2003. With permission from Elsevier.)

Ultimately, the biggest challenge of drug development now and in the future is to demonstrate long-term efficacy: Does a drug being tested have significant effects on extending the life expectancy of cancer patients, doing so with acceptable levels of side-effect toxicities? And do we dare to hope that it can achieve durable responses, including cures?

As mentioned repeatedly here, rapidly evolving populations of cancer cells develop drug-evading mechanisms that protect them from many types of therapeutic attack. Indeed, recent evidence demonstrates directly that tumors that undergo more genetic diversification and thus evolution are likely to be more resistant to therapy (**Figure 17.47**). Some populations of cancer cells may develop drug evasion mechanisms by increasing their anti-apoptotic defenses (see Table 17.5). Yet others may lose checkpoint controls that previously made them sensitive to certain types of drug treatment, or evade the effects of administered drugs either by altering drug metabolism or enhancing drug efflux. Tumors whose cells were previously being killed through antibody-mediated attack may simply down-regulate expression of the telltale antigen. At present, it remains unclear whether we will, one day, be able to devise treatment strategies that anticipate the plasticity and evasiveness of cancer cells, allowing us to develop definitive cures of malignancies that have long been incurable.



A two part figure demonstrates the genetic diversification of tumors and their resistance to therapy. Part A. Phylogenetic trees for a tumor population that was resistant to treatment and one that was sensitive to treatment. The tree of the resistant tumor has many more branches and many more cell subpopulations than the tree of the sensitive tumor. Part B. A scatterplot of genetic traits of 9 ovarian tumors. On the x axis is genetic heterogeneity and clonal expression on the log scale. On the y axis is progression-free survival in months from 5 to 25. A dashed linear line with a negative slope runs from around a genetic heterogeneity of 20 and 20 months to around 35 and 5 months. The points representing different tumors generally follow this line.

Figure 17.47 Genetic diversification and resistance to therapy A widely embraced notion is that tumors develop resistance to therapy through a process of genetic diversification followed by the selection and outgrowth of more therapy-resistant subpopulations of cells—a model formally akin to Darwinian evolution. This notion has rarely been tested experimentally in a clinical setting. As shown here, the ovarian tumors of individual patients were sampled successively during the course of their treatment, and the interrelatedness and thus genetic diversification of subpopulations within their tumors were gauged using genome sequence analyses and a bioinformatics algorithm. (A) The genetic relatedness of the subclones within two patients is indicated here. As is apparent, the tumor subpopulations within a patient whose ovarian carcinoma became resistant to therapy (*above*) exhibit extensive diversification, with multiple branch points illustrating the relationships among cell subpopulations within her tumor. Conversely, a patient whose tumor was sensitive to treatment (*below*) showed minimal branching and thus minimal genetic diversification of cancer cell populations. (B) The genetic behavior of nine ovarian tumors and the clinical progression of the patients carrying them are plotted here. As is apparent, a metric of intra-tumor genetic heterogeneity within individual tumors (*abscissa*) is correlated inversely with the extent of progression-free survival (*ordinate*). (Courtesy of R. Schwarz, J.D. Brenton, and F. Markowetz.)

These evasive maneuvers of cancer cells underlie the growing conviction of cancer researchers that most monotherapies are unlikely to yield curative treatments because they are destined to select for the outgrowth of variant cells within tumors that happen to have developed resistance to the single agent being applied. Such logic dictates that truly successful clinical outcomes and durable clinical responses will depend in the future on the development of multi-drug therapies and on the low probability that a clinically detectable tumor will harbor individual cancer cells that exhibit concomitant resistance to all of the cytotoxic agents dispatched to kill them.

This development of therapeutic resistance occurs sooner or later following long-term treatment of a variety of common human cancers. Included among these are high-grade tumors of the lung, breast, prostate, pancreas, ovary, and liver. Such acquired resistance represents the secondary resistance described earlier and indicates the grim scenario confronting medical oncologists at present, because it means that most therapeutic protocols (including those involving multi-drug therapy) will provide only a temporary respite from disease progression. As a consequence, the medical oncologist needs to respond, time after time, to the latest clinical relapse in a patient by devising a new protocol that responds to the most recent evasive maneuver developed by the patient’s tumor.

The replacement of one therapeutic protocol that has failed a patient with another requires some understanding of the resistance mechanisms that have provoked clinical relapse and allowed therapy-resistant tumors to grow out. Indeed, in certain cancers, like EGF-R- or ALK-driven lung cancer or Bcr-Abl–driven leukemia, we have a very good understanding of the multiple alternative pathways toward resistance that are sought out by the neoplastic cells under treatment, including treatments involving targeted agents. Moreover, we have myriad new therapies that target the acquired resistant states.

Still, fundamental questions remain regarding how we should treat patients exposed to front-line therapies. For example, can we predict which pathway of resistance will eventually emerge in a given tumor? Can we direct tumors to evolve toward specific resistance states that we are better able to treat? And can we preempt the development of resistance by adding a second-line therapy drug that targets the emergent vulnerabilities of therapy-resistant tumor cells? Additionally, in an ideal world, each of this succession of treatment protocols would provoke tolerable levels of side-effect toxicities, and the sequence of treatments would allow the cancer patient to live in a relatively symptom-free state, surviving in many cases to the end of what would be a normally expected life span. We are still very far from reaching this goal.

Clearly, cell-intrinsic (as opposed to microenvironment-mediated) drug resistance derives from the instability of cancer cell genotypes and phenotypes that allow the emergence of therapy-resistant variant cell clones, as detailed in Chapter 12. The evidence presented in Figure 17.47 provides possibly the first direct demonstration that genetic plasticity plays a central role in generating secondary resistance. In truth, however, we still do not understand how much of this secondary resistance derives from genetic instability and how much can be traced to shifts in the cell-heritable epigenetic programs (see Section 1.8) of these cells.

Here we also confront the fact that there are still no clear and logical strategies for designing multi-drug therapies, beyond the strategy that has been in place for half a century: choose combinations of drugs having cytotoxic mechanisms of action that are distinct from one another, doing so with the hope that they will act synergistically to reduce the burden of cancer cells in a patient’s body below the threshold level at which the clinical resurgence of the disease becomes likely.

The lack of clear therapeutic strategies regarding the construction of multi-drug regimens also suggests a related question: What if the real powers of a drug under development are only realizable when it is used in combination with several others? In theory, many anti-cancer agents should fall into this category. If true, it suggests that many truly useful drug candidates have been discarded in the past, having failed tests in monotherapy trials, and that many others will suffer this fate in the future, simply because their true utility as components of multi-drug treatment protocols will never

be tested. Here again, one hopes that our increasing understanding of the subcellular signaling circuitry will ameliorate this situation (**Sidebar 17.16**).

Sidebar 17.16 Legal and financial disincentives decrease the likelihood of drugs being tested in combination

At present, the biological difficulties of testing candidate drugs in combination with others are compounded by economic forces that often create disincentives for pharmaceutical companies to test their own proprietary drugs in combination with those produced by their competitors. Patent regulations have also discouraged certain uses of patented compounds by firms that are in direct competition with the patent holders.

In the past, the difficulties of organizing early multi-drug clinical trials were further compounded in the United States by the Food and Drug Administration's (FDA's) insistence that the clinical efficacy of drug candidates be demonstrated first as monotherapies. But this practice has begun to change, albeit slowly. For example, Erbitux, the anti-EGF-receptor monoclonal antibody (see Sidebar 15.5), was initially approved for use together with irinotecan because the two used in concert yielded far better responses than did irinotecan on its own. (Irinotecan is a more traditional cytotoxic agent that functions as a topoisomerase I inhibitor; see Table 17.2.)

The existence of tumor stem cells (see Section 11.6) creates another major challenge for anti-cancer drug development. Recall that the self-renewing cancer stem cells (CSCs) can seed new tumors, whereas their far more numerous transit-amplifying progeny, with limited self-renewal capacity, cannot. Such a hierarchical organization was demonstrated initially in leukemias, breast carcinomas, and brain tumors, but it probably exists in most tumors and holds important implications for the development of anti-cancer drugs. Traditionally, clinical validation of the therapeutic efficacy of these drugs has depended on demonstrations of their ability to halt further tumor growth or decrease tumor size. Many anti-tumor agents in clinical trials may shrink tumor masses by eliminating populations of transit-amplifying and more differentiated neoplastic cells, which together constitute the great bulk of the tumors' cellularity. However, if such drugs leave the minority populations of self-renewing CSCs untouched (see Figure 17.35A), the tumor has a high probability of regrowing, leading sooner or later to clinical relapse. Indeed, as mentioned, there is clear evidence that CSCs are more resistant to a variety of modes of current anti-cancer therapy (see Sidebar 17.13).

Such evidence suggests that durable remissions and cures can only derive from therapies that strike both the majority of non-CSCs in tumors and, importantly, those

that lie at the heart of the tumor—the self-renewing CSCs. Currently, assays for the presence of these cells in most tumor types are poorly developed. Hence, drug development efforts are hobbled in part because researchers lack key analytical tools that are essential for developing truly efficacious therapies.

But there is another problem that has only recently emerged: the non-CSCs within a tumor, more specifically the transit-amplifying/progenitor cells (see Figure 11.20C), are able in some tumors, and quite possibly in most tumors, to dedifferentiate and thereby form new CSCs (see Figure 17.35C). If validated as a general phenomenon, this tumor cell plasticity adds emphasis to the necessity of eliminating both the existing CSCs within tumors as well as their more differentiated progeny, which may wait in the wings, always poised to regenerate new CSCs.

A major, still-unsolved problem concerns the biological models that are used in pre-clinical drug development. Some xenograft models of human cancer are useful in predicting the behavior of tumors encountered in the oncology clinic, but most are not (see Sidebar 13.13). Similarly, genetically engineered mouse models of human cancer have been limited in their ability to predict clinical responses. However, we now have an expanding array of tumor cell lines, organoid models, primary human patient-derived xenograft (PDX) models, and "humanized" mouse tumors, as well as gene-editing technologies that permit the re-creation of complex tumor genomes. The use of these systems to create predictive pre-clinical models of human cancer will surely reduce the expense of drug development and, quite possibly, even obviate certain early-phase clinical trials.

The non-neoplastic stromal cell types within a tumor may be major determinants of responsiveness to most drug therapies, yet their proportions and respective contributions are not recognized in the design of most pre-clinical models of human cancer. In Chapter 13, we learned, for example, that the most radiosensitive cells in some tumors are likely to be the endothelial cells forming their neovasculature (see **Supplementary Sidebar 13.10**). By the same token, it seems increasingly likely that many widely used anti-cancer chemotherapeutics have strong effects on the tumor-associated endothelial cells that were never suspected in the past. In fact, some researchers are redesigning chemotherapeutic treatment protocols in order to optimize their toxic effects on the tumor-associated neovasculature. Recognition of these two classes of tumor-associated cells—cancer stem cells and stromal cells—as critically important biological targets of chemotherapy will surely change the entire landscape of the drug development field. Moreover, the concept of "stroma" will surely be expanded to include the microenvironments of tumor cells throughout the body as we learn that certain sites of metastatic dissemination offer particularly hospitable homes for cancer cells, protecting them from the toxic effects of various therapies.

The ultimate test of many candidate anti-cancer drugs comes when they are first tested in substantial numbers of cancer patients. Here, the drug developer is often confronted by the dilemma of not knowing which types of tumors are likely to respond. Should a candidate drug be tested on patients suffering from pancreatic carcinomas or neuroblastomas? The molecular lesions discovered in these and other types of cancer cells would seem to be highly useful indicators for informing this decision. But quite often, tumors respond for reasons that cannot be predicted by the mutant genes and deregulated signaling pathways known to be present in these growths, and so the choices of patients recruited into clinical trials are arbitrary and sub-optimal. Once again, we can only hope that our increasing insights into the molecular etiologies of various cancers will provide truly useful guidelines for oncologists to follow.

Independent of the challenges of cancer drug development and testing are the more transcendent problems created by the complex biology of human cancers: Will different types of drugs need to be developed for different classes of cancers or will a small number of treatments find wide applicability? Will different tumors within a given class (for example, colon carcinomas) require distinct, tailor-made treatments based on their particular genotypes and phenotypes? And will we one day be able to provide “personalized molecular medicine” at an affordable cost, in which the detailed characteristics of each patient’s tumor genome, transcriptome, and proteome inform the design of a customized therapy?

Will anti-neoplastic drugs ever be developed that have lethal effects on malignant growths while having minimal side effects on normal tissues? And should drug designers undertake to develop anti-cancer drugs that keep tumors under control rather than attempting to wipe them out? The goal of curing many kinds of tumors, cited above, may well be an unreachable one, and for these tumors, reducing cancer to a chronic but bearable disease may be a more realizable goal. (Such is the thinking of researchers developing new types of anti-HIV treatment protocols, some of which have achieved this goal.)

A recent census of genes mutated in human cancer cell genomes describes 576 distinct genes—more than 2% of the genes present in the human genome. Of these, 533 become involved in cancer largely through somatic mutation, while the remaining 43 are exclusively inherited as germ-line determinants of cancer susceptibility. This list—generated in significant part from the results of cancer genome sequencing—will likely grow somewhat in the future. The list of somatically altered genes will be increased by inclusion of myriad tumor suppressor genes that are shut down by promoter methylation; recall that promoter methylation is as effective as genetic mutation in eliminating genes and proteins from the regulatory circuitry of cells. At the same time, the census of germ-line determinants of cancer will expand as alleles (and thus genes) having less penetrant effects on cancer susceptibility are uncovered.

This census suggests many druggable targets for researchers. At the same time, it represents bewildering complexity. Some of these genes are mutated only in rare cancers, and the costs of developing therapeutic drugs directed against their protein products are unlikely to ever be recouped through drug sales. Most of the encoded mutant proteins contribute in still-obscure ways to the neoplastic growth of various types of human cancer cells. How will we ever ascribe key roles to each of the more than 570 mutant genes that are already known or suspected to be involved in the pathogenesis of many cancers? [Of relevance here is that only a limited portion of the **human kinome** (see **Supplementary Sidebar 17.7**) has been extensively explored by laboratory researchers and pharmaceutical chemists. A 2009 survey indicated that half of the kinome (a total of ~522 protein kinases) had been described by 20 or fewer research publications, in contrast to 10 kinases (all discussed in some detail in this book) that had been the topics of 5000 or more reports. Additionally, less than 10% of the kinome has been successfully targeted in the form of FDA-approved therapies. Many of the under-studied, potentially druggable enzymes are likely to participate in tumor pathogenesis, even when present in wild-type configuration within cancer cells. Hence, a large array of potentially targetable kinases has yet to be intensively explored.]

Many cancer researchers would like to understand the entirety of a biological system, such as a living cancer cell, rather than its individual functional components. In their eyes, reductionist biology, which focuses on the individual, isolatable components of complex systems, has had its day, and the time has come for the vast amounts of information known about these components to be integrated into complex interacting *systems* whose behavior can be predicted by bioinformatics.

Successes in these efforts, involving the new discipline of "systems biology," will surely benefit cancer research. Imagine a day when the biological responses of various human cells, normal and malignant, can be predicted by mathematical models of these cells and their internal control circuits. Such advances will render many current practices in experimental biology, including many steps of drug development, unnecessary. If this ever becomes possible, drug development will be more a matter of dry bioinformatics than wet biology at the laboratory bench.

But for the moment, most of this remains a pipe dream, still far in the future. For now, at least, we need to wrestle with the grim realities of drug development, the inadequate animal models, our ignorance of the behavior of cellular regulatory circuitry, and the confounding biological complexities of human cancer. And most importantly, we must never give up. If our ancestors had, we would still be living in the Stone Age.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

kinome
: The complete repertoire of kinases encoded by a genome, such as the human genome.

OceanofPDF.com

Key concepts

- The science of molecular oncology has revealed hundreds of proteins whose malfunction contributes to the formation and maintenance of tumors. Many of these proteins exhibit molecular properties that make them attractive targets for novel anti-cancer therapeutic agents, such as monoclonal antibodies or low–molecular-weight drugs.
- Proteins that are attractive targets for attack by antibodies are invariably located at the cell surface or in the extracellular space.
- Most proteins that are attractive targets for attack by low–molecular-weight compounds are enzymes that possess druggable catalytic clefts.
- Recent advances have expanded the range of druggable targets to include certain protein–protein interactions and protein conformational states that can also be inhibited by low–molecular-weight drugs.
- The proteins that are most suitable as targets are those whose inactivation is predicted to make tumor cells cease proliferating, to promote cell differentiation, or to lead to their death by apoptosis.
- The most successful targeted anti-cancer drugs developed to date have been those that interfere with the functioning of various growth- and survival-promoting kinases, specifically, receptor-associated tyrosine kinases.
- Successful drugs must have a high therapeutic index, appropriate pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, and minimal side effects on major organ systems.
- Studies of drugs in Phase I, II, and III clinical trials are essential because pre-clinical studies of drugs' efficacy and tolerability are poorly predictive of the drugs' behavior in humans.
- Clinical use of certain drugs under development may be indicated by the known behavior of targeted proteins in cancer cells (as in the case of Gleevec) or by empirical tests of how various types of human tumors respond to treatment (as with Velcade).
- Stratification of outwardly similar tumors into narrow subclasses greatly helps researchers and clinicians to match drugs to the specific tumor cell types they can most effectively treat.

- The greatest benefit of certain drugs, such as Gleevec, may eventually prove to derive from a broad target specificity that allows them to target multiple pathways in tumor cells and adjacent stromal cells in a wide range of cancers.
- The treatment of tumors with targeted therapies is almost universally accompanied by the development of drug resistance, and so treatment strategies that target the resistant state are critical for durable responses.

OceanofPDF.com

Thought questions

1. What are the therapeutic advantages and disadvantages of using a drug that affects a broad range of molecular targets?
2. Given the large and heterogeneous collection of signaling molecules that have been portrayed in this book as playing key roles in the pathogenesis of various cancers, which classes of molecules do you think might become the targets for the development of a new range of anti-cancer therapeutics besides the much-studied kinases?
3. How might tumors that were initiated by the formation of a certain oncogene become independent of this oncogene later in tumor progression?
4. What strategies might you implement to preempt the development of tumor drug resistance or target the drug resistant state?
5. Having concluded that natural products represent a rich resource of potential anti-cancer drugs, what obstacles might limit the search for and testing of such drugs?
6. What obstacles stand in the way of developing drugs for tumors that represent only a very small proportion of the total cancer burden in a population?
7. In the oncology clinic of the future, what types of information might be included in the assembly of anti-cancer therapies that are tailor-made specifically to respond to an individual patient's tumor?
8. Given the new tools available (including gene editing technology) for cancer cell target identification, what criteria should be used to nominate potential drug targets for clinical development?
9. What strategies would you pursue to develop pre-clinical models of human tumors that are highly useful in predicting patient responses to candidate drugs?
10. Given that current combination chemotherapy regimens are highly toxic and provided without a clear sense of which patients will respond and which of the component drugs have efficacy in individual patients, how would you develop strategies to reduce or replace these front-line treatments with more personalized therapies?

OceanofPDF.com

Additional reading

Alison MR, Lim SML & Nicholson LJ (2010) Cancer stem cells: problems for therapy? *J. Pathol.* 223, 147–161.

Arbiser J (2007) Why targeted therapy hasn't worked in advanced cancer. *J. Clin. Invest.* 117, 2762–2765.

Barouch-Bentov R & Sauer K (2011) Mechanisms of drug-resistance in kinases. *Expert Opin. Investig. Drugs* 20, 153–208.

Barr S, Thomson S, Buck E et al. (2008) Bypassing cellular EGF receptor dependence through epithelial-to-mesenchymal-like transitions. *Clin. Exp. Metastasis* 25, 685–693.

Black WC & Welch HG (1993) Advances in diagnostic imaging and overestimations of disease prevalence and the benefits of therapy. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 328, 1237–1243.

Cantor JR & Sabatini DM (2012) Cancer cell metabolism: one hallmark, many forms. *Cancer Discov.* 2, 881–898.

Cantwell-Dorris ER, O'Leary JJ & Sheils OM (2011) $BRAF^{V600E}$: implications for carcinogenesis and molecular therapy. *Mol. Cancer Ther.* 10, 385–394.

Chabner BA & Roberts TG Jr (2005) Chemotherapy and the war on cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 65–72.

Cohen P (2002) Protein kinases: the major drug targets of the twenty-first century? *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 1, 309–315.

Creighton CJ, Chang JC & Rosen JM (2010) Epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) in tumor-initiating cells and its clinical implications in breast cancer. *J. Mammary Gland Biol. Neoplasia* 15, 253–260.

Curran T (2018) Reproducibility of academic preclinical translational research: lessons from the development of Hedgehog pathway inhibitors to treat cancer. *Open Biol*. 8:180098.

Deininger MW (2008) Nilotinib. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 14, 4027–4031.

Di Cosimo S & Baselga J (2010) Management of breast cancer with targeted agents: importance of heterogenicity. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. 7, 139–147.

Easton JB & Houghton PJ (2006) mTOR and cancer therapy. *Oncogene* 16, 6436–6446.

Felsher DW (2008) Oncogene addiction versus oncogene amnesia: perhaps more than just a bad habit? *Cancer Res.* 68, 3081–3086.

Fojo T & Grady C (2009) How much is life worth: cetuximab, non-small cell lung cancer, and the $440 billion question. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 101, 1044–1048.

Frei E III (1985) Curative cancer chemotherapy. *Cancer Res.* 45, 6523–6537.

Garber K (2009) Trial offers early test case for personalized medicine. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 101, 136–138.

Garraway LA & Jänne PA (2012) Circumventing cancer drug resistance in the era of personalized medicine. *Cancer Discov.* 2, 214–226.

Gerard L, Duvivier L, Gillet JP (2021) Targeting tumor resistance mechanisms. *Fac. Rev*. Jan 26,10:6.

Gilbert LA & Hemann MT (2011) Chemotherapeutic resistance: surviving stressful situations. *Cancer Res.* 71, 5062–5066.

Glunde K, Pathak AP & Bhujwalla ZM (2007) Molecular-functional imaging of cancer: to image and imagine. *Trends Mol. Med.* 13, 287–297.

Hammerman PS, Jänne PA & Johnson BE (2009) Resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in non-small cell lung cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 15, 7502–7509.

Hellman S (2005) Evolving paradigms and perceptions of cancer. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 2, 618–624.

Hill C & Wang Y (2020) The importance of epithelial-mesenchymal transition and autophagy in cancer drug resistance. *Cancer Drug Resist*. 3:38–47.

Hirst GL & Balmain A (2004) Forty years of cancer modeling in the mouse. *Eur. J. Cancer* 40, 1974–1980.

Horn L & Sandler A (2009) Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors and antiangiogenic agents for the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 15, 5040–5048.

Humphrey RW, Brockway-Lunardi LM, Bonk DT et al. (2011) Opportunities and challenges in the development of experimental drug combinations for cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 103, 1222–1226.

Hunter T (2007) Treatment for chronic myelogenous leukemia: the long road to imatinib. *J. Clin. Invest.* 117, 2036–2043.

Kaelin WG Jr (2005) The concept of synthetic lethality in the context of anticancer therapy. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 689–698.

Khazak V, Astsaturov I, Serebriiskii IG & Golemis EA (2009) Selective Raf inhibition in cancer therapy. *Expert Opin. Ther. Targets* 11, 1587–1609.

Klein S & Levitzki A (2009) Targeting the EGFR and the PKB pathway in cancer. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 21, 1–9.

Klein S, McCormick F & Levitzki A (2005) Killing time for cancer cells. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 5, 573–580.

Konopleva M, & Letai A (2018) BCL-2 inhibition in AML: an unexpected bonus? *Blood* 132:1007–1012.

Lane HA & Breuleux M (2009) Optimal targeting of the mTORC1 kinase in human cancer. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.* 21, 219–229.

Letai, A (2017) Apoptosis and Cancer. *Annu. Rev. Cancer Biol.* 1:275–294.

Leverson JD, Sampath D, Souers AJ et al. (2017) Found in translation: how preclinical research is guiding the clinical development of the BCL2-selective inhibitor Venetoclax. *Cancer Discov*. 7:1376–1393.

Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R et al. (2004) Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 350, 2129–2139.

Massagué J (2007) Sorting out breast-cancer gene signatures. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 358, 294–297.

Milojkovic D & Apperley J (2009) Mechanisms of resistance to imatinib and second-generation tyrosine inhibitors in chronic myeloid leukemia. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 15, 7519–7527.

Moore AR, Rosenberg SC, McCormick F & Malek S (2020) RAS-targeted therapies: is the undruggable drugged? *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov*. 19:533–552.

Orlowski RZ & Kuhn DJ (2008) Proteasome inhibitors in cancer therapy: lessons from the first decade. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 14, 1649–1657.

Palmer AC, Sorger PK (2017) Combination cancer therapy can confer benefit via patient-to-patient variability without drug additivity or synergy. *Cell* 171(7):1678–1691.

Pritchard JR, Bruno PM, Gilbert LA et al. (2013) Defining principles of combination drug mechanisms of action. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. 110:E170-9.

Rauch J, Volinsky N, Romano D & Kolch W (2011) The secret life of kinases: functions beyond catalysis. *Cell Commun. Signal.* 9, 23, doi: 10.1186/1478-811X-9-23.

Riese DJ 2nd, Gallo RM & Settleman J (2007) Mutational activation of ErbB family receptor tyrosine kinases: insights into mechanisms of signal

transduction and tumorigenesis. *Bioessays* 29, 558–565.

Sawyers C (2004) Targeted cancer therapy. *Nature* 432, 204–207.

Scaltriti M & Baselga J (2006) The epidermal growth factor receptor pathway: a model for targeted therapy. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 12, 5268–5272.

Schiller JT & Lowy DR (2006) Prospects for cervical cancer prevention by human papillomavirus vaccination. *Cancer Res.* 66, 10229–10232.

Schlessinger J (2005) SU11248: genesis of a new cancer drug. *The Scientist* 19, 17–18.

Sebolt-Leopold JS & Herrera R (2004) Targeting the mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade to treat cancer. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 4, 937–947.

Sharpless NE & DePinho RA (2006) The mighty mouse: genetically engineered mouse models in cancer drug development. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 5, 741–754.

Shibue T & Weinberg RA (2017) EMT, CSCs, and drug resistance: the mechanistic link and clinical implications. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. 10:611–629.

Singh A & Settleman A (2010) EMT, cancer stem cells and drug resistance: an emerging axis of evil in the war on cancer. *Oncogene* 29, 4741–4751.

Sotiriou C & Pusztai L (2009) Gene-expression signatures in breast cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 360, 790–800.

Staudt LM (2003) Molecular diagnosis of the hematologic cancers. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 348, 1777–1785.

Stegmeier F, Warmuth M, Sellers WR & Dorsch M (2010) Targeted cancer therapies in the twenty-first century: lessons from imatinib. *Clin. Pharmacol. Ther.* 87, 543–552.

Teodori E, Dei S, Martelli C et al. (2006) The functions and structure of ABC transporters: implications for the design of new inhibitors of Pgp and

MRP1 to control multidrug resistance (MDR). *Curr. Drug Targets* 7, 893–909.

Tinker AV, Boussioutas A & Bowtell DDL (2006) The challenges of gene expression microarrays for the study of human cancer. *Cancer Cell* 9, 333–339.

Tsou LK, Cheng Y & Cheng Y-C (2012) Therapeutic development in targeting protein–protein interactions with synthetic topological mimetics. *Curr. Opin. Pharmacol.* 12, 403–407.

van't Veer LJ & Bernards R (2008) Enabling personalized cancer medicine through gene-expression patterns. *Nature* 452, 564–570.

Welch HG & Black WC (2010) Overdiagnosis in cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 102, 605–613.

Welch HG, Woloshin S & Schwartz LM (2008) The sea of uncertainty surrounding ductal carcinoma in situ: the price of screening mammography. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 100, 228–229.

Zhou B-B, Zhang H, Damelin M et al. (2009) Tumour-initiating cells: challenges and opportunities for anticancer drug discovery. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov*. 8, 806–823.

Zhu J, Chen Z, Lallemand-Breitenbach V & de Thé H (2002) How acute promyelocytic leukaemia revived arsenic. *Nat. Rev. Cancer* 2, 705–714.

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 17.1 Modern cancer therapies have had only a minor effect on the overall death rate from the disease

It is instructive to examine the causes of declining rates of cancer-associated mortality and their connection with improvements in detection and therapy, the latter including surgical resection of primary tumors as well as various forms of chemo- and radiotherapy. Figure 17.1 reveals that stomach cancer—once a major killer—has declined by a factor of more than 6 in the United States over the past 85 years, an apparent reflection of better food storage and preservation practices and associated declines in fungal contamination; declines in *Helicobacter pylori* infection rates may also have contributed to this decrease. Deaths from carcinomas of the uterus and lower intestinal tract have declined because of increased screening using the Pap smear and colonoscopy, respectively; these have allowed early-stage tumors to be removed before they became malignant. Lung cancer mortality in males has begun to decrease because of declining rates of tobacco use. (In the United States, in the years 2004–2008, 20% of the overall decline in cancer-associated mortality came from decreases in lung cancer–associated deaths, which resulted almost entirely from reductions in smoking.)

None of these important declines in death rate seems to be attributable to improved therapeutic treatment of established aggressive cancers. For example, 236,000 new cases of lung and bronchus cancer were predicted to occur in the United States in 2021, while mortality associated with this disease was expected to be 132,000. About 60,000 new cases of pancreatic cancer were anticipated, with 48,000 associated deaths. Diagnosed cases of liver cancer and associated mortality were predicted to be almost 42,000 and 30,000, respectively. Hence, diagnosis of these killer diseases continues to carry a very poor prognosis.

Figure 17.1B reveals that most of the major sources of cancer-associated mortality have remained steady or increased somewhat. Notable exceptions are breast and prostate cancers, where age-adjusted mortality rates have declined 25–30% over the past two decades—clear tributes to the effectiveness of modern therapeutic attacks on these tumors; the major causes of this improvement appear to be traceable to surgery, adjuvant chemotherapy (that is, treatment with cytotoxic drugs following surgery), and adjuvant radiotherapy, as well as tamoxifen and anti-androgen treatments, and, in the case of breast cancer, Herceptin, cessation of hormone-replacement therapy, and, quite possibly, increased screening by mammography.

Still, as outlined above, the decline in overall cancer mortality cannot be attributed to therapeutic attack on advanced tumors. Instead, these statistics indicate that prevention strategies (including lifestyle changes) as well as screening for certain types of cancer are likely to yield the greatest benefits in reducing deaths from cancer, at least for the foreseeable future. They also hint at the considerable challenges still facing the researchers who are developing therapeutics directed against already-established aggressive primary tumors and derived metastases.

Supplementary Sidebar 17.2 Clinical practice and our understanding of disease pathogenesis have often been poorly aligned, leading to sub-optimal, often tragic outcomes

The treatment of breast and prostate cancers over the past century reveals the strong disconnect between how cancers develop and how they have been treated. To begin, we recognized the overriding fact that virtually all breast and prostate cancer–associated mortality derives from metastases, not from the outgrowth of primary tumors. Hence, much attention has been focused on preventing the dissemination of cancer cells and the outgrowth of metastases.

Radiotherapy was used sporadically throughout much of the first half of the twentieth century to treat various types of cancer. In the case of breast cancer, however, surgery was the treatment of choice until the 1980s. In 1894, two American surgeons—Willy Meyer in New York and William Halsted in Baltimore—simultaneously reported the procedure that came to be called the *radical mastectomy*. It involves excision not only of the entire breast in which a tumor has been detected but also of underlying chest wall muscles and nearby lymph nodes, including those in the armpit. Until the 1970s, as many as 90% of women treated surgically for breast cancer in the United States underwent this procedure. In addition to disfigurement, a significant percentage of treated women experienced lymphedema caused by the inability of lymphatic fluid to properly drain from the arm on the side where the axillary (armpit) lymph nodes were excised. In many patients, it was and is a lifelong affliction.

The logic behind radical mastectomy derived from, among others, Rudolf Virchow, the father of modern pathology and the popularizer in 1852 of *omnis cellula e cellula*—all cells arise from other cells, a fundamental concept underlying all modern biology. Virchow argued that the lymph nodes draining a tissue (see Figure 14.42) served as filters to trap disseminating cancer cells. Thereafter, others concluded that metastases growing in these nodes represented staging areas from which a second wave of dissemination would occur to more distant sites in the body, eventually spawning life-threatening metastases. Hence, removal of draining lymph nodes, including those at some distance from the primary tumor, was thought to be a critical means of preventing distant metastatic spread.

This thinking excluded an alternative model of metastasis: that breast cancer cells metastasize simultaneously to draining lymph nodes and to distant tissues. Accordingly, the presence of significant numbers of lymph nodes carrying shed breast cancer cells might be only an indication of a parallel spread of primary tumor cells directly to distant anatomical sites. In effect, according to this parallel dissemination model, the lymph nodes served only as “canaries in the coal mine”—providing signs that distant dissemination had already occurred, rather than being temporary staging areas for more distant travel. If correct, then attempts to prevent metastasis by treating the primary tumor and draining nodes would be doomed to failure.

Beginning in the 1970s, there was increased awareness that the Halsted radical mastectomy might not confer substantial benefit on many breast cancer patients. Although staunchly resisted by American surgeons, who argued that to do less would put breast cancer patients at grave and unnecessary risk, a more conservative procedure termed a *lumpectomy* was developed; it involved removing the tumor and immediately surrounding breast tissue but leaving the remainder of the breast and adjacent tissue intact. Likewise, there was resistance to the notion of conducting a controlled clinical trial, in which the benefits of radical mastectomy versus lumpectomy would be compared in two similarly sized clinical populations.

When such controlled trials were nonetheless performed, it became clear that breast cancer patients fared equally well following a lumpectomy as after radical mastectomy, in terms of their disease-free survival and long-term survival. In aggregate, between 2 and 3 million Halsted procedures were performed in the United States over the course of the twentieth century, and it is plausible that few if any women carrying aggressive primary tumors ever received significant, long-term benefit from this procedure, or at least more benefit than they would have received from the far less disfiguring lumpectomy.

A similar dynamic describes the trajectory of prostate cancer surgery. In this case, a different preconception drove surgical practice: that a high percentage of primary prostate carcinomas have the potential to metastasize. In many clinical practices, however, radical prostatectomy has been pursued as the most prudent means of preventing metastatic relapse for all patients diagnosed with various forms of this disease, including still-benign, localized tumors. In the case of this surgical procedure, the side effects are once again significant: radical prostatectomy often leads to lifelong incontinence and impotence. A 2012 study analyzed the clinical outcomes of prostate cancer patients with localized, still-benign tumors who were treated with radical prostatectomy or, alternatively, underwent “watchful waiting,” that is, periodic monitoring of the prostate gland in the years after initial diagnosis. This study demonstrated that the prostate cancer–associated mortality in the decade following surgery was essentially equivalent for both those who did and those who did not undergo prostatectomy. Its conclusions need to be qualified because patients who have

low-grade tumors (and represent the great majority of prostate cancer patients) are not likely to benefit from prostatectomy, whereas a minority—those with high-grade, malignant tumors—may receive substantial benefit.

The breast and prostate cancer treatments cited above are clearly influenced by the concept that most primary tumors that are detected will sooner or later become aggressive. For example, many medical and surgical oncologists express the clear opinion that invasive breast cancers, if left untreated, will inevitably develop into large, life-threatening malignancies that can no longer be controlled by available therapies. Hence, in the absence of any clinical intervention, rather than the 39,500 breast cancer–related deaths that were predicted to occur in 2012, there might be 227,000 deaths—the number of invasive breast cancers that were predicted to be diagnosed in the United States that year.

Breast oncologists will also argue that small tumors, if treated early, are curable, whereas large tumors are far less curable and more prone to generate metastatic relapses. This thinking is once again strongly influenced by the mechanistic model in which all small tumors expand sooner or later into large, clinically significant tumors. The alternative to this thinking is radically different: most small tumors will never develop into large, life-threatening growths within the expected lifetimes of patients. With diagnostic imaging technology that detects tumors of smaller and smaller size, most of the currently detected breast cancers may well fall into this second class.

Moreover, the “curability” of small tumors implies that if they are caught early, they can be successfully treated. The alternative explanation is that it is unimportant when these small tumors are detected during the course of their development, because their small size testifies to their intrinsic indolent nature and “curing” them represents the elimination of growths that would never become life-threatening, whether or not they had been detected in the first place. The current inability to predict accurately whether a given tumor will or will not eventually become life-threatening means that in the United States virtually all breast cancers that are detected are treated aggressively with chemotherapy (including, when appropriate, tamoxifen and Herceptin) and radiotherapy as well as surgery. Importantly, the above conjectures on the nature of breast and prostate cancer progression remain topics of heated debate.

Supplementary Sidebar 17.3 The ability to assign tumors to specific disease subtypes is critical to the success of drug development

Tumors that have traditionally been placed together in a single group, such as leukemias, constitute a very heterogeneous collection of diseases, each having its own route of pathogenesis, its own set of acquired genetic and epigenetic alterations, and its own distinct responses to a particular therapy. For example, the actions of Gleevec

(also known as Glivec and imatinib), a drug discussed extensively in this chapter, are focused on antagonizing, among several molecular targets, the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein, which is found in virtually all (>95%) cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) but is uncommon in most other kinds of leukemias (see Figure 4.11). During its initial clinical development, Gleevec might well have been tested in patients suffering from all types of leukemia, in which case 5% or less of the treated population (that is, the 5% suffering from CML) would have been found to benefit from this therapy—a success rate that is usually far too low to justify further investment in the development and clinical introduction of a drug.

Instead, in early clinical trials, Gleevec treatment was limited to only those patients whose leukemias had been certified to carry the specific chromosomal translocation that is the hallmark of CML and causes production of the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein. This strategy yielded extremely favorable clinical responses in the great majority of treated CML patients, which encouraged its further, accelerated development and its rapid introduction into oncology clinics worldwide.

(As an aside, Gleevec's early and resounding clinical successes in the late 1990s were viewed as a harbinger of things to come—a strong argument for the powers of rationally designed drugs. As it turned out, CML is a rather unique condition, in that the chronic phase of this disease seems to be driven entirely by the Bcr-Abl oncoprotein, making the leukemia cells highly vulnerable to the shutdown of this protein. This contrasts with most adult neoplasias, in which complex genetic alterations are present in the cancer cells' genomes and multiple, distinct oncogenic events collaborate to drive disease progression, as discussed in Chapter 11. The multiple genetic alterations and the plasticity of the genomes of the cells forming the more common tumors appear to underlie their far lower response rates—and the lower reductions in disease-related mortality—following administration of a variety of newer rationally designed drugs. Hence, most unfortunately, the brilliant success of Gleevec did not foretell similar successes of other targeted drugs in the years that followed.)

Supplementary Sidebar 17.4 Prostate cancers usually do not require aggressive intervention—a tale of two countries

By some estimates, the percentage of elderly American men harboring prostate carcinomas, as judged upon autopsy, is roughly equal to their age in years. Thus, even though almost 80% of American men develop prostate carcinomas by the age of 80 (as judged upon autopsy), only about 3% of them die of the disease. In many American states, the number of cases of prostate cancer diagnosed each year (in men of all ages) exceeds by a factor of about 6 the number of deaths caused by this disease.

In very large part, these large numbers of registered cases (that is, disease *incidence*) are artifacts of diagnostic bias—reflections of our improved ability to detect neoplasms whose existence would previously have gone unnoticed because they would not have progressed to life-threatening malignancies (**Figure S17.1**). For example, in countries such as Denmark, where screening for prostate cancer using the prostate-specific antigen (PSA) blood test was uncommon, the estimated age-adjusted annual incidence rate of this tumor was 31 cases per 100,000 in the year 2000, whereas in the United States, where use of this test was widespread, the registered incidence was 104 per 100,000 that year. (In one large study cohort in the United States, the proportion of patients bearing tumors that suggested low risk of invasion and metastasis rose from 29.8% in 1989–1992 to 45.3% in 1999–2001.) Because clinicians have been unable to accurately discriminate between tumors that require therapy and those growths that can be left alone, aggressive treatment of diagnosed tumors became the norm in the United States. By one estimate, fewer than 10% of patients with prostate cancer in the United States are subjected to "watchful waiting," that is, no immediate clinical treatment with periodic surveillance every several years. In contrast, watchful waiting has been the norm in Denmark with relatively little value attached to aggressive treatment of the great majority of growths detected in the prostate.

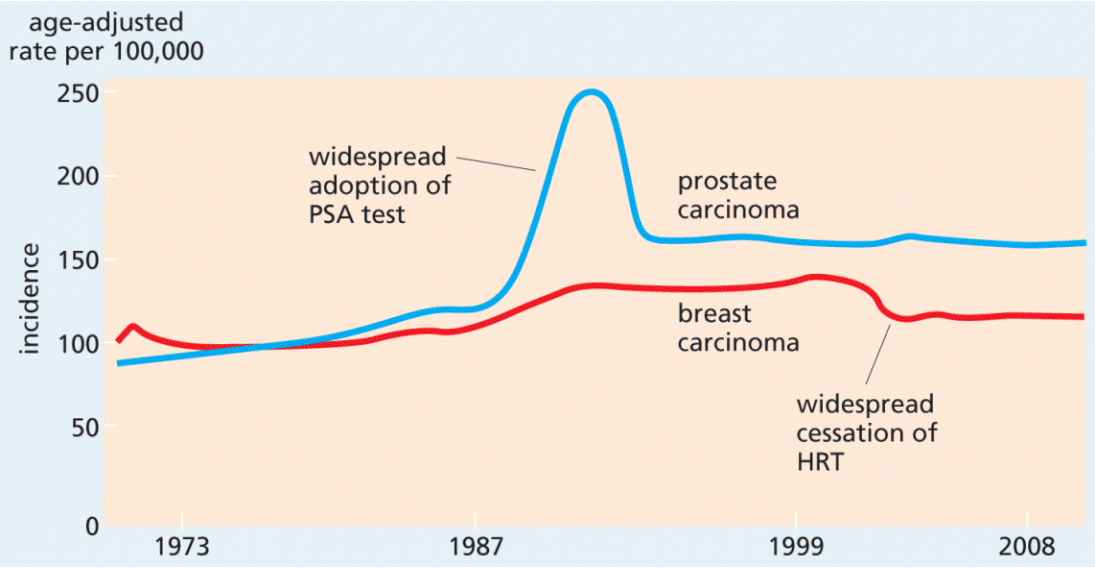


Figure S17.1 Incidence of prostate vs. breast carcinomas in the United States
The incidence of prostate cancer briefly and abruptly increased in the United States in 1991–1992, when a clinical report demonstrating the utility of testing for serum levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) was published, leading to the test's widespread clinical adoption. Shortly thereafter, the disease rate returned to its historic, gradually increasing trend, indicating that the spike in prostate cancer incidence was an observational (i.e., diagnostic) artifact rather than a reflection of changes in the real frequency of life-threatening disease. By 2007, an estimated 20

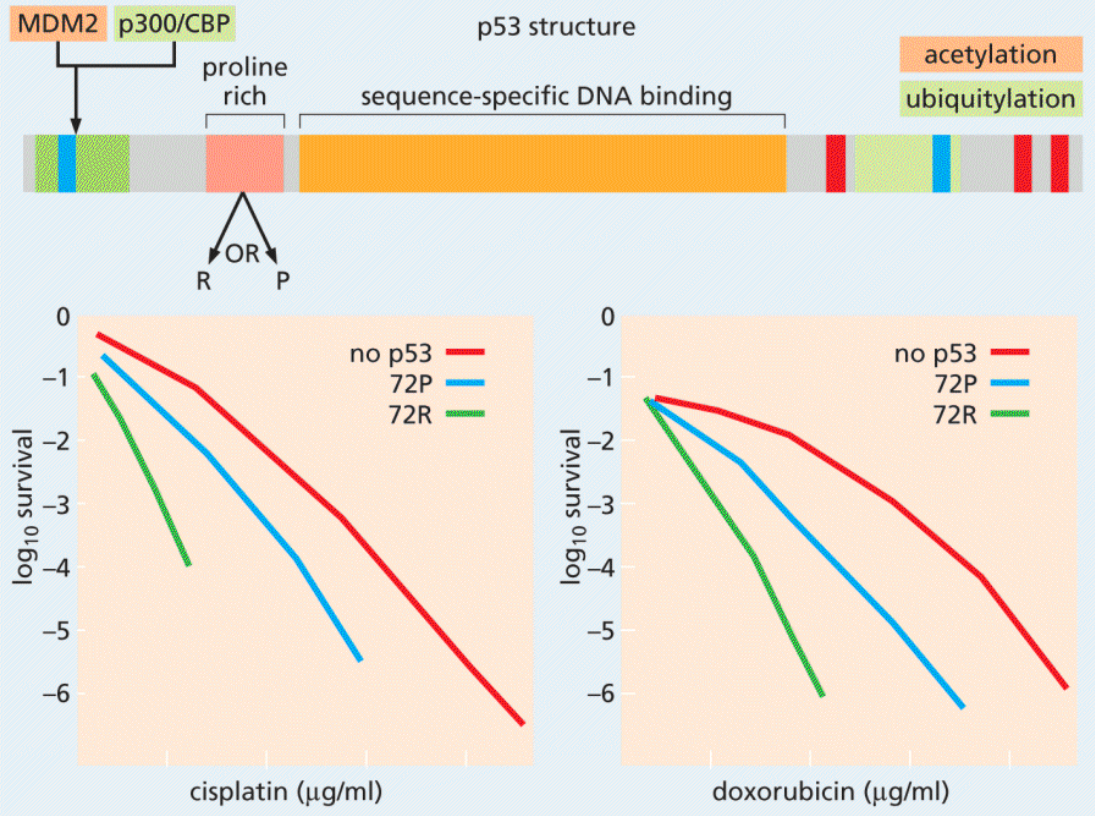
million PSA tests were being performed annually in North America. Five years later, the lifetime risk of an American man being diagnosed with prostate cancer was ~16%, whereas the risk of dying from this disease was 2.9%. Similar dynamics have governed breast cancer incidence, which peaked at 142 (age-adjusted) cases per 100,000 population in 1999. (Here there was also a dramatic readjustment of incidence, but one traceable to a real biological process: the impressive decrease of ~7% in breast cancer incidence observed between 2002 and 2003 was attributed to widespread reduction in the use of hormone replacement therapy, or HRT.) By 2012, it was concluded that PSA testing had measurable benefit only for younger men with a longer life expectancy and that for all others, the disadvantages of this test (resulting from the morbidity caused by aggressive clinical treatment following positive PSA test results) outweighed the potential benefits. (Before 1999, from A. Jemal et al., *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 55:10–30, 2005.)

Still, the aggressive overtreatment practiced in the United States compared with the watchful waiting practiced until recently in Denmark has had significant differential effects on the age-adjusted prostate cancer–associated mortality rates: it declined by >25% in the United States during the period 1975–2005 while having increased by ∼50% during this period in Denmark. Averaged over the 2000–2006 period, the prostate cancer–associated mortality rate was ∼75% higher in Denmark than in the United States. Taken together, these numbers suggest that even though the great majority of prostate cancer patients in the United States are treated with one or another form of unnecessary therapy, this aggressive scattershot approach to treating almost all men diagnosed with prostate cancer—treating many who do not really require aggressive treatment along with the few that do—has yielded substantial benefits in terms of reducing age-adjusted mortality associated with this disease.

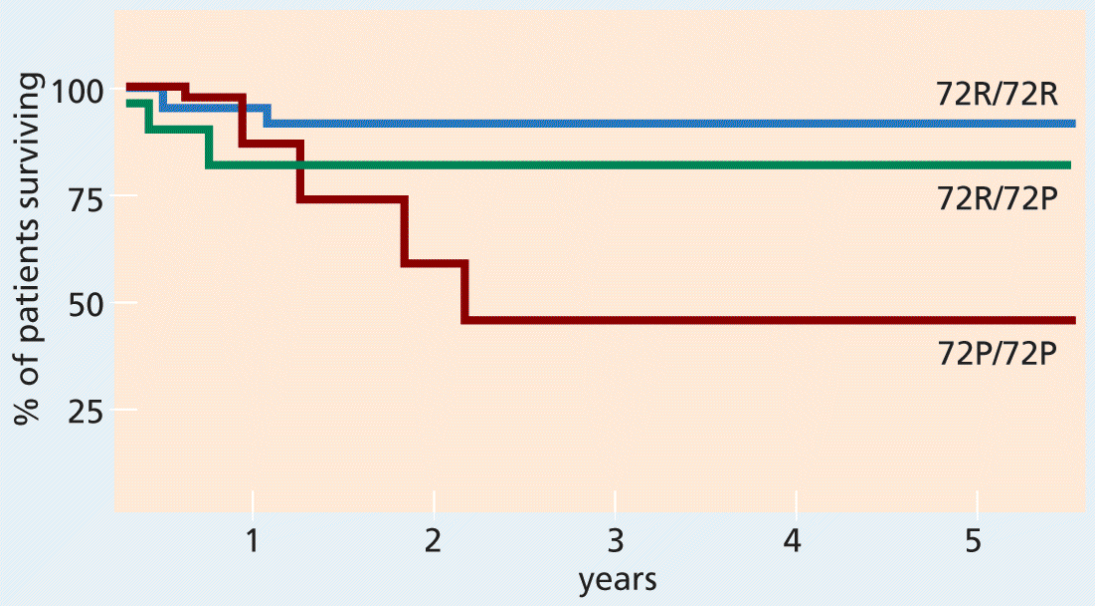
Supplementary Sidebar 17.5 *p53* germ-line polymorphisms and somatic mutations can complicate the induction of apoptosis by drugs

The induction of tumor cell apoptosis by anti-cancer drugs is often influenced by the configuration of the *p53* gene in a patient’s tumor genome. Thus, in addition to the somatic mutations that have altered this gene during the course of tumor progression, the inherited germ-line version of *p53* may affect responsiveness to treatment. Indeed, it is possible that, in general, the configuration of the *p53* alleles in a patient’s tumor represents the single most important determinant of responsiveness to various forms of therapy.

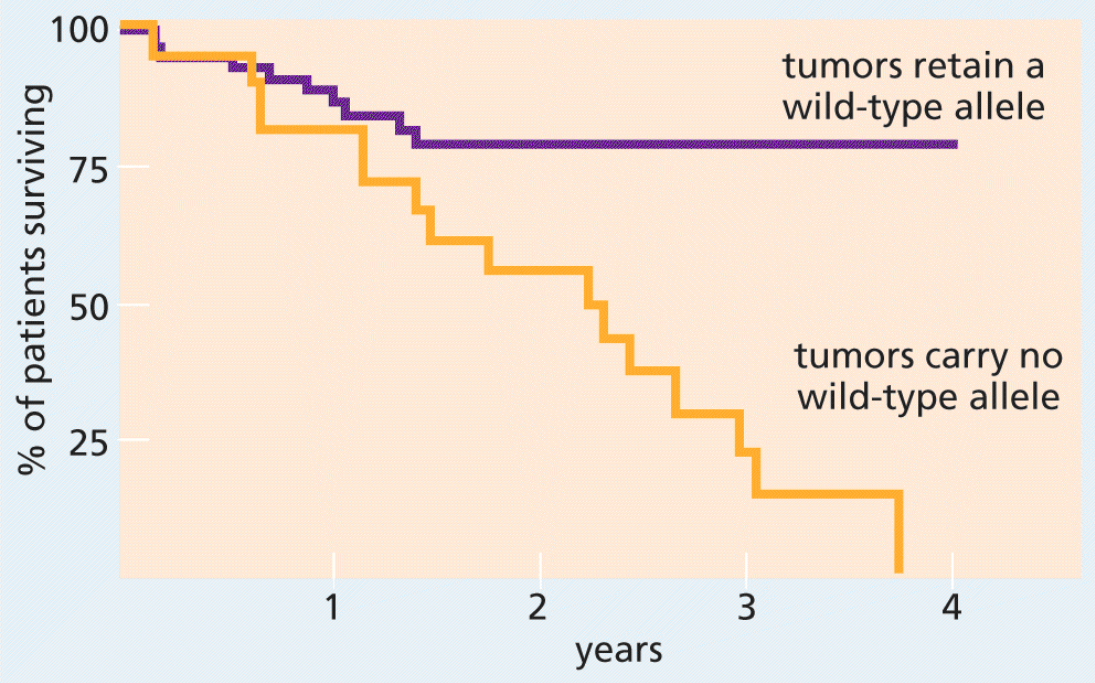
To begin, we note that the “wild-type” human gene comes in two polymorphic variants that affect the identity of the amino acid in residue position 72 of the p53 protein; one encodes arginine (72R) and the other specifies proline (72P). Cultured, otherwise isogenic cells that express the 72P, the 72R, or no p53 protein exhibit dramatic differences in their apoptotic responses following exposure to two commonly used chemotherapeutic drugs (**Figure S17.2A**). And patients whose tumors retained the two copies of the wild-type 72R allele showed substantially greater survival than those whose tumors carried a wild-type 72P allele (see Figure S17.2B). Observations like these point to challenges in the development of apoptosis-inducing therapies that reflect a patient’s inherited germ-line alleles.



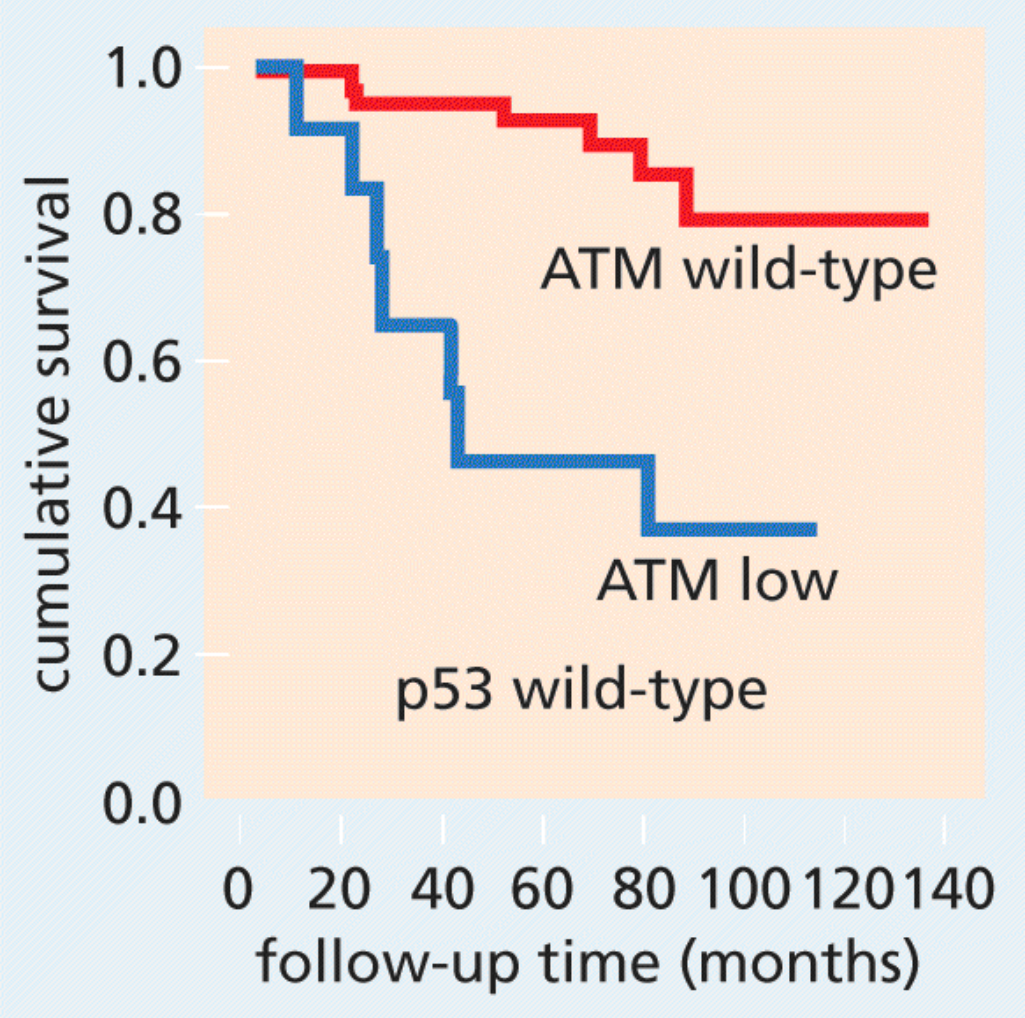
(A)


% of patients surviving
100
75
50
25
72R/72R
72R/72P
72P/72P
1
2
3
4
5
years

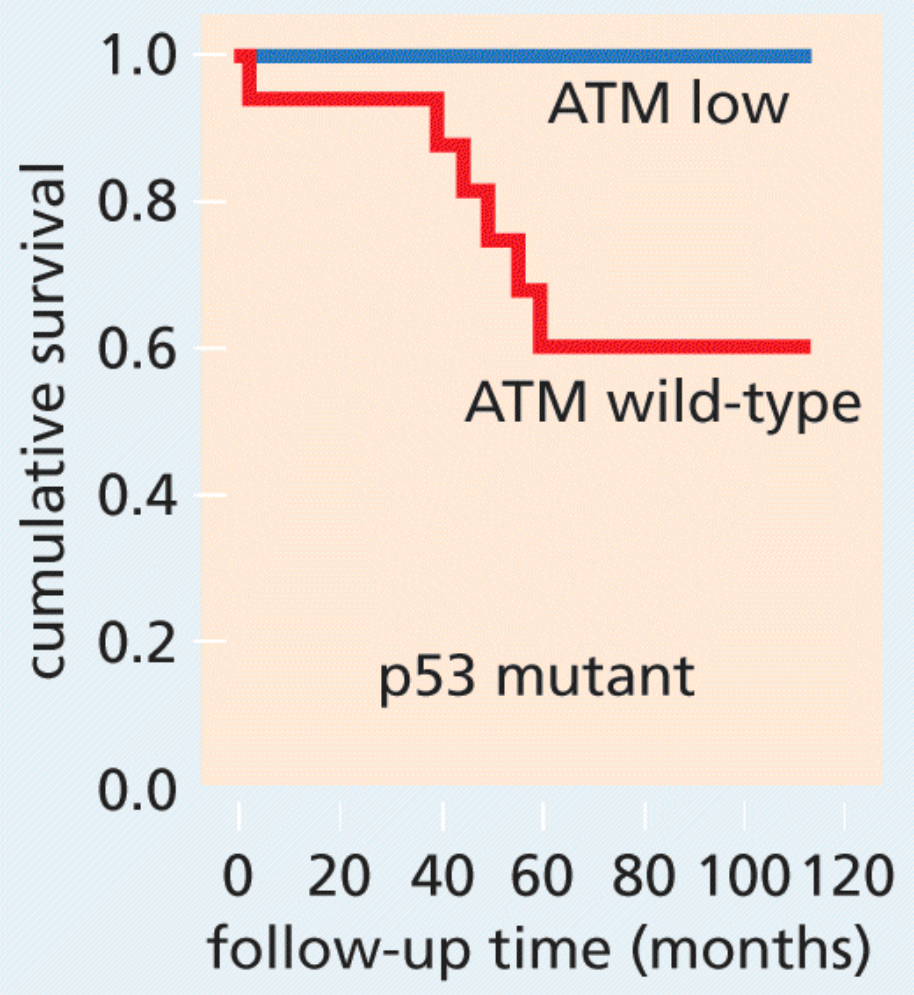
(B)


% of patients surviving
100
75
50
25
tumors retain a wild-type allele
tumors carry no wild-type allele
1
2
3
4
years

(C)


1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0.0
cumulative survival
ATM wild-type
ATM low
p53 wild-type
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
140
follow-up time (months)

(D)



(E)

Figure S17.2 Effects of p53 polymorphisms on the induction of apoptosis (A) Human H1299 lung cancer cells, which have lost expression of their endogenous *p53* gene, were forced to express either the 72P or the 72R polymorphic variant of wild-type human p53 protein. They were then exposed to various concentrations of cisplatin (*left*) or doxorubicin (*right*), two commonly used anti-tumor chemotherapeutic drugs (see Tables 16.1 and 16.2), and their survival following drug-induced apoptosis was gauged. Note that the ordinate is a logarithmic scale. As is apparent, those cells that expressed the 72R variant of p53 were far more sensitive to killing by both agents than were those expressing the 72P variant protein. Moreover, as anticipated, those expressing no p53 protein were far more resistant to killing by both agents. (B) In this study, 70 patients suffering from inoperable head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCCs) were treated with cisplatin. Of those patients, 48 carried tumors with wild-type *p53* alleles (either 72P or 72R heterozygotes or homozygotes). Of these, 31 had tumors that were of the 72R/72R genotype, 12 had tumors of the 72P/72P genotype, and 5 had tumors

of the 72P/72R genotype. The survival of these three groups is shown here. Those patients who were R/R homozygotes (whose p53 proteins favored drug-induced apoptosis—see Panel A) enjoyed far better survival than those with the other two genotypes. (C) For the 70 patients mentioned in panel B, the survival of the *p53*-positive and -negative groups in the years following initial diagnosis and treatment is shown in this Kaplan–Meier plot. Hence, independent of the germ-line configuration of their *p53* alleles, retention in their tumors of a wild-type gene copy (either the P or R allelic variant) was associated with far better long-term survival than was a state in their tumors in which both wild-type gene copies were lost. (Subsequent research on a larger group of patients has extended these results and solidified the conclusions, having made them statistically more robust.) (D, E) The responses to chemotherapy and thus survival of breast cancer patients are shown here in these Kaplan–Meier graphs, in which the patients are segregated according to the *p53* and *ATM* status of their tumor cells (see Figure 9.9). Their clinical courses can be explained by the responses of their cancer cells to genotoxic chemotherapeutic agents, such as doxorubicin. As is apparent, patients whose tumors were *p53* wild-type but lacked ATM function fared far worse than did those whose ATM function was intact. Thus, cancer cells that possessed intact p53 and ATM function were able to respond to chemotherapy by activating a cytostatic or apoptotic response, eliminating these cells and conferring clinical benefit; in contrast, those with defective ATM function could not activate their p53 apoptosis-inducing protein, thereby permitting these cells to survive, and leading to a poor clinical course. Conversely, those patients whose tumors lacked p53 function and also lacked ATM function fared far better than those whose tumors lacked p53 but expressed wild-type ATM. In this case, it seems that in the absence of these two DNA damage–response proteins, cancer cells that were exposed to genotoxic chemotherapeutic agents lacked critical G_1/S and G_2/M cell cycle checkpoint controls (see Figure 8.4). Following chemotherapy-induced DNA damage, their cancer cells, rather than halting and repairing this damage, proceeded to advance into M phase, thereby stumbling into mitotic catastrophe (see Figure 17.10); the resulting death of these cancer cells explained the better clinical course of these patients. In contrast, in the presence of functional ATM, p53-mutant breast cancer cells still retained a critical checkpoint control protein, enabling these cells to halt cell cycle advance in response to DNA damage and repair their DNA before they re-entered the cell cycle; this exit from the cell cycle allowed the cancer cells to survive and, subsequently, proliferate, resulting in the poor clinical course of these patients. (A–C, from A. Sullivan et al., *Oncogene* 23:3328–3337, 2004. With permission from Nature. D and E, from H. Jiang et al., *Genes Dev.* 23:1895–1909, 2009. With permission from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

The somatic mutations that affect p53 also are determinants of a tumor's responsiveness to chemotherapeutic drugs and thus the clinical course of the patients carrying these cancers. As is indicated in Figure S17.2C, the retention of a wild-type *p53* allele in patients' head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas dramatically improved overall survival.

Actually, p53 can have conflicting effects on responsiveness to chemotherapeutics, depending on the status of other genes in the signaling network with which it interacts. In particular, the ATM protein, which is responsible for activating wild-type p53 protein in response to DNA damage (see Figure 9.9), is an additional important factor that operates together with p53 to determine responsiveness to cytotoxic drugs that target the DNA of cancer cells (see Figure S17.2D and E).

Taken together, these diverse observations lead to the conclusion that p53 (and ATM) are critical regulators of cancer cells' responses to chemotherapy, and that these responses are shaped by both the germ-line configuration of the genes that encode these proteins and the somatic mutations that alter these key regulators.

Supplementary Sidebar 17.6 Chemical synthesis, compound libraries, and high-throughput screening can identify lead compounds for further clinical development

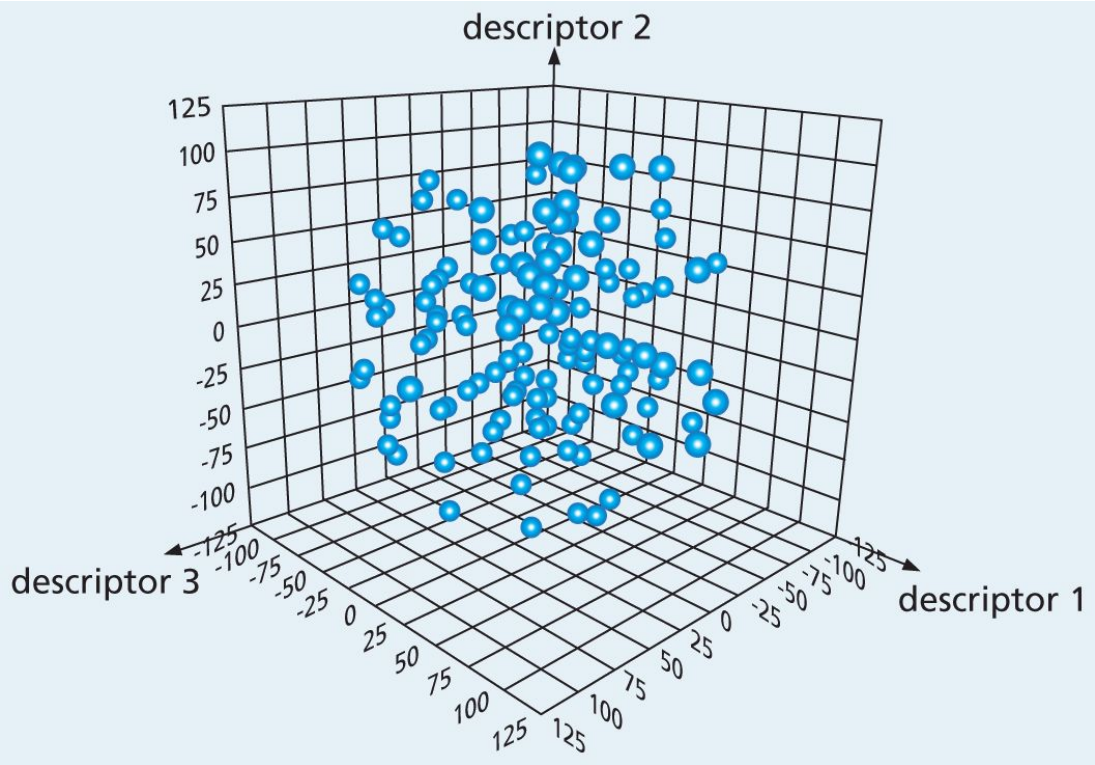
Currently available synthetic organic chemistry techniques make it possible to generate some 10^{200} distinct molecular species by linking various combinations of chemical groups to one another in various orders and configurations—the technology of "combinatorial synthesis." Of these organic molecules, only a tiny fraction—about 10^{62}—have a molecular weight below 500, and only 1% of these are thought to possess the chemical properties, such as solubility, lipophilicity, chemical stability, and molecular weight, that would make them plausible drug candidates (**Table S17.1**). Instead of exploring the entire, still-huge "chemical space" of 10^{60} organic molecules synthesized by such combinatorial methods (**Figure S17.3A**), it is far more productive in practice to search through collections ("libraries") of compounds that have been synthesized for previous drug development programs and contain, typically, 10^5 or more distinct chemical species. (About a quarter million distinct molecular species are estimated to be present in aggregate in the chemical libraries currently screened by the pharmaceutical industry.) These compound libraries are stored in industrial facilities (Figure S17.3B) from which individual compounds can be retrieved robotically. The technology of *high-throughput screening* (HTS) makes it possible to search through libraries of existing diverse organic molecules in order to find the small number having the functional properties of the desired drug, for example, a chemical species that inhibits a certain tyrosine kinase while leaving other tyrosine kinases unaffected.

Thus, *in vitro* enzymological assays or cell-based assays can be devised in which 10^5 or even 10^6 distinct compounds can be individually assayed, using robotic machinery (Figure S17.3C), to measure a functional property, such as the ability to inhibit the kinase of interest; these screens can often be accomplished in several days.

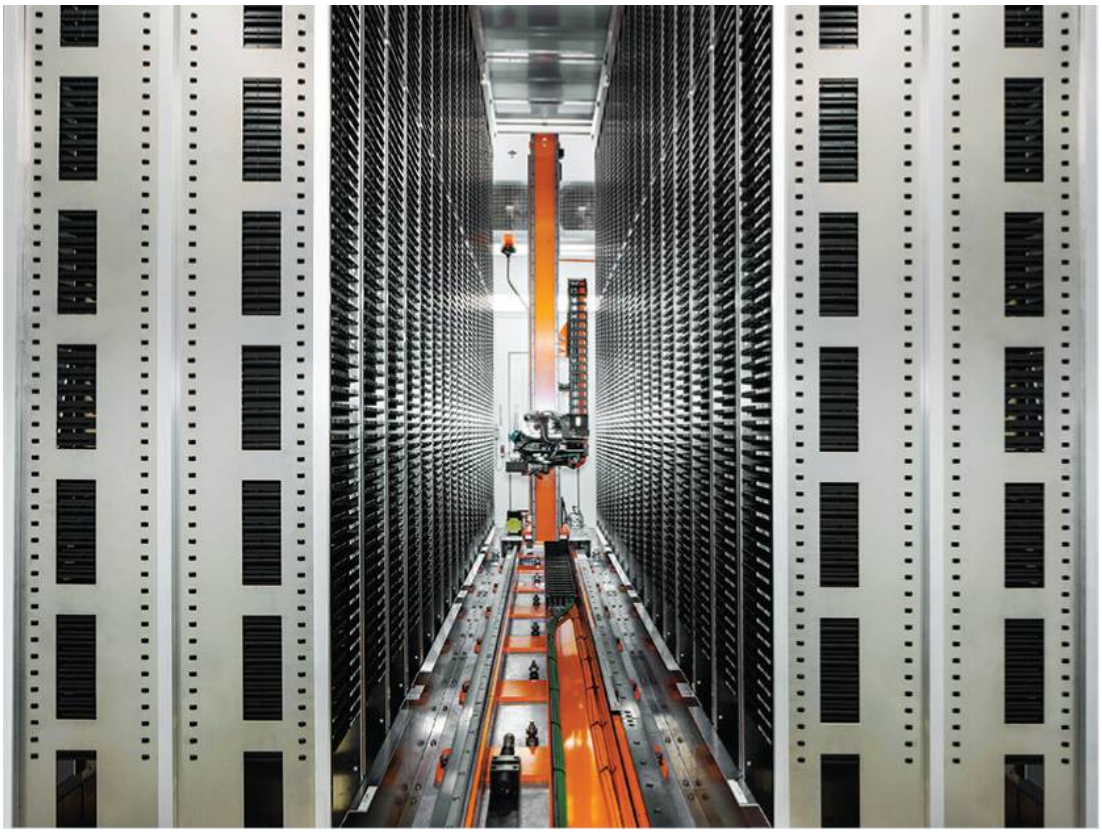
Table S17.1 Predictors of poor drug absorption

Properties of a molecule that predict its poor absorption or permeation into tissues and cells[a]
1. No more than 5 hydrogen bond donors
2. Molecular weight over 500
3. Octanol/water solvent partitioning >5 (lipophilicity)
4. More than 10 hydrogen bond acceptors (N's and O's)

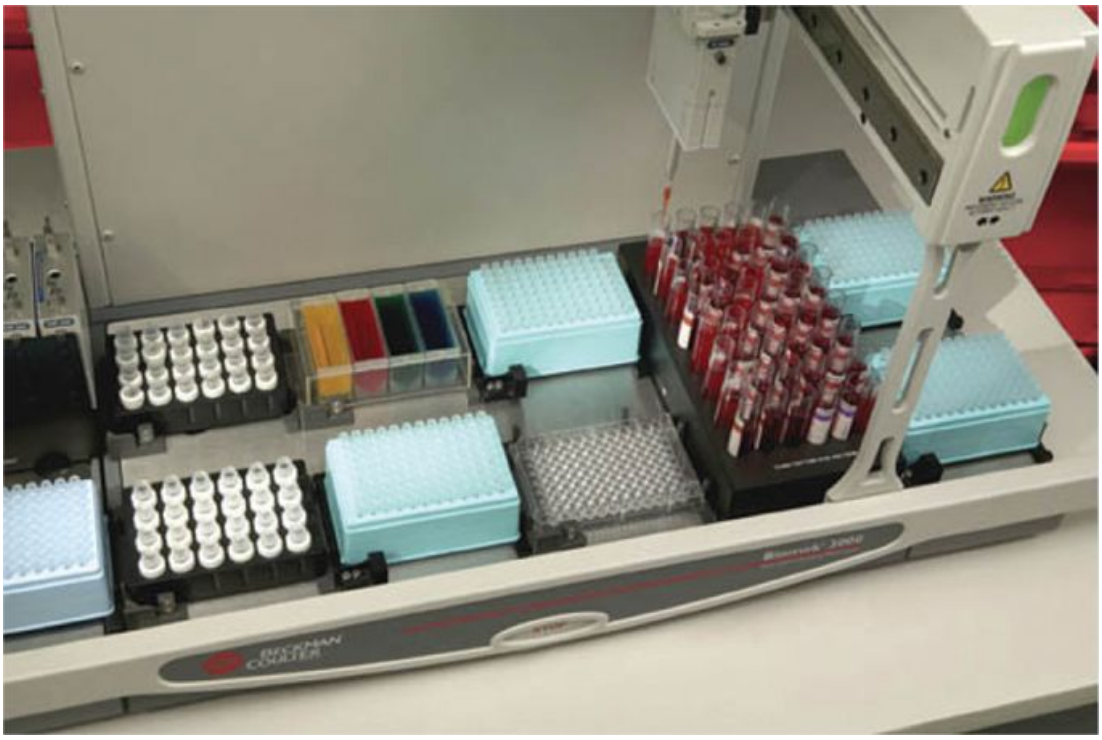
From C.A. Lipinski et al., *Adv. Drug Deliv. Rev.* 46:3–26, 2001.



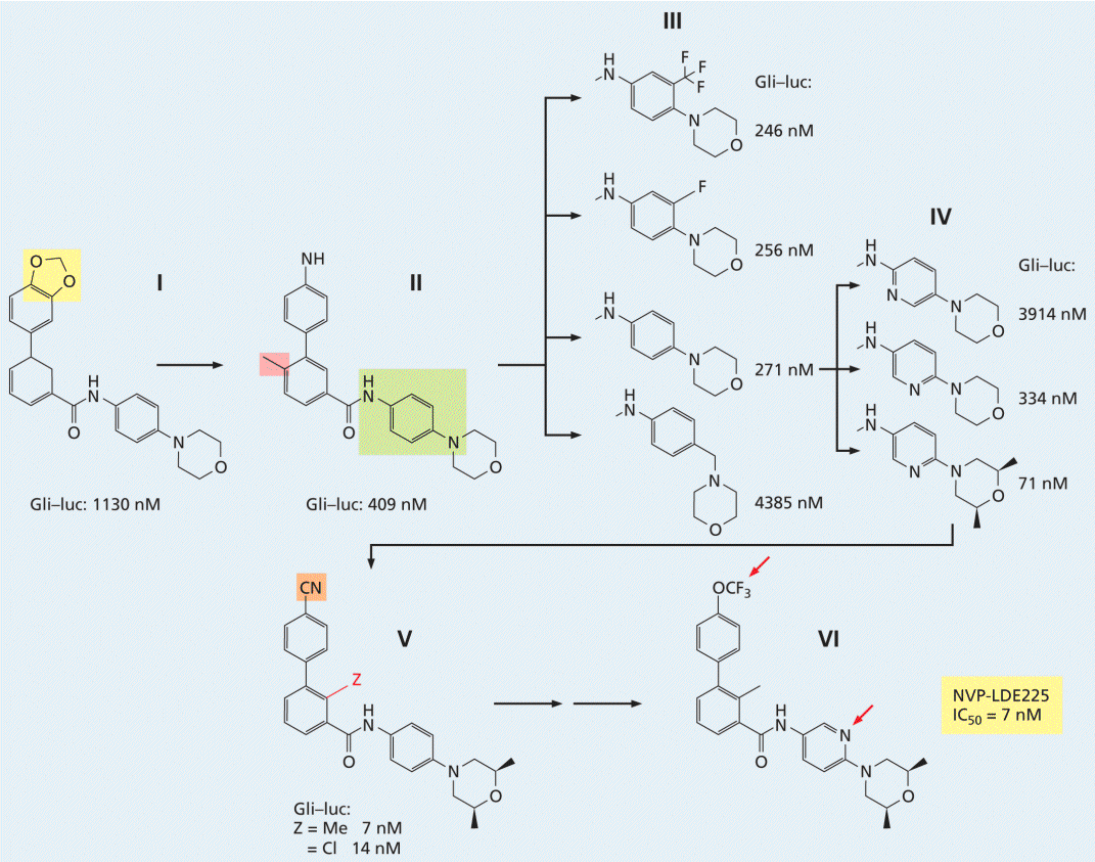
(A)



(B)



(C)



(D)

Figure S17.3 Generation of compound libraries and screening of large numbers of compounds (A) The diversity of chemical species including natural and synthetic organic products can be portrayed graphically by depicting a three-dimensional “chemical space” in which each of the three dimensions indicates a specific chemical attribute (a “descriptor”) of the molecules being cataloged. In reality, because the number of descriptors (each referring, for example, to the presence of a specific side chain in the molecules being plotted) is vastly larger than three, the actual chemical space is multidimensional, amounting possibly to several hundred dimensions. (B) The drug library of a typical large pharmaceutical company is stored, as seen here, in a facility from which individual compounds can be retrieved robotically. (C) Computer-driven robots, such as the one pictured, can be used to process thousands of samples daily, often using the 96-well microtiter plates shown in this photograph. By introducing enzyme- or cell-based assays into these plates, the biochemical and biological activities of large numbers of compounds can be measured over a short period of time—the technology of high-throughput screening (HTS). (D) The optimization of a drug designed to

antagonize Smoothened, as described here, reflects the general strategy of lead-compound optimization. In this case, the drug development began with a lead compound (**I**, *above*, *left*) that had measurable activity against a targeted molecule but only at an unacceptably high concentration (IC_{50}), in this case 1130 nM. (In this case, a cell-based assay was used to evaluate the ability of a test compound to reduce the level of the luciferase protein, expression of which was being controlled by the Gli transcription factor.) Its derivatization began with a major modification of the northernmost ring (*yellow field*) and the addition of a methyl group (**II**, *pink field*) on its western side. Subsequent derivatizations of the area in the *green field* of molecule II yielded four compounds (**III**) that exhibited either substantial increases or minimal decreases in the IC_{50} (concentration needed to achieve 50% inhibition). However, further derivatizations of one of these (IC_{50} of 271 nM) led to three more compounds (**IV**, *far right*), one of which showed an IC_{50} of only 71 nM following the addition of two methyl groups in the southeastern part of this molecule. This improvement was incorporated into the next versions of the drug (**V**, *below left*), which carried two alternative additions. These involved initially removing the previously added methyl group on the western side of the molecule (see **II**) and derivatizing instead the same ring (*side group* Z of *V*) with two alternative side groups (*below*). One of these, involving the addition of a methyl group (Me), yielded a molecule with an IC_{50} of 7 nM. Further derivatizations of the northernmost ring and an alteration of the heterocyclic ring (**VI**, *red arrows*), undertaken to improve pharmacokinetics and oral bioavailability, yielded the final drug molecule, termed NVP-LDE225. This drug was then introduced into pre-clinical studies focused on the treatment of small-cell lung cancer (SCLC) and medulloblastoma. (A, courtesy of S.L. Schreiber. B, courtesy of Novartis Pharma AG. C, courtesy of Beckman–Coulter Co. D, from S. Pan et al., *ACS Med. Chem. Lett.* 1:130–134, 2010. With permission from American Chemical Society.)

High-throughput screening of such libraries often yields a small number of *lead compounds* that have some of the desired functional and chemical properties. Researchers can then explore the chemical space in the immediate vicinity of a lead compound by incrementally modifying it, doing so by adding certain chemical groups to the initially identified molecule and removing others. This process of derivatizing a lead compound may result in the discovery of variant chemical structures with even better properties, such as improved solubility, ability to inhibit a targeted enzyme at lower concentrations, improved permeation into cells, or the ability to be taken orally (Figure S17.3D). However, even with such modifications of existing compounds, only tiny corners of the total chemical space of 10^{60} possible drug compounds have been explored by the pharmaceutical industry.

Supplementary Sidebar 17.7 Evolution can generate huge collections of structurally similar proteins

Evolution generally proceeds via the incremental modification of existing morphological structures or existing molecules. In the case of the latter, the invention of totally novel protein structures is a very rare event, even when measured over the course of hundreds of millions of years. Accordingly, the structures of almost all modern metazoan proteins are clearly discernible in the proteins encoded by the genomes that served as the common ancestors of modern metazoa. Therefore, once a protein structure is invented and achieves functional activity, the overall molecular scaffold of its evolutionarily derived relatives usually remains relatively unaffected, although small domains or individual amino acids may be altered in these derived proteins to generate novel functions or activities.

This specialization and acquisition of novel function usually depends, over the course of evolutionary time periods, on repeated cycles of gene duplication followed by sequence divergence of the duplicated genes. Thus, each of the resulting diverged genes will specify a protein that has its own distinctive features but nonetheless continues to exhibit the basic, commonly shared structure. In the case of the functionally diverse set of kinase molecules, almost all members of the vast repertoire of modern mammalian kinases can trace their ancestry to a common founder enzyme that must have developed long before the Cambrian era and thus before the metazoan radiation (**Figure S17.4**).

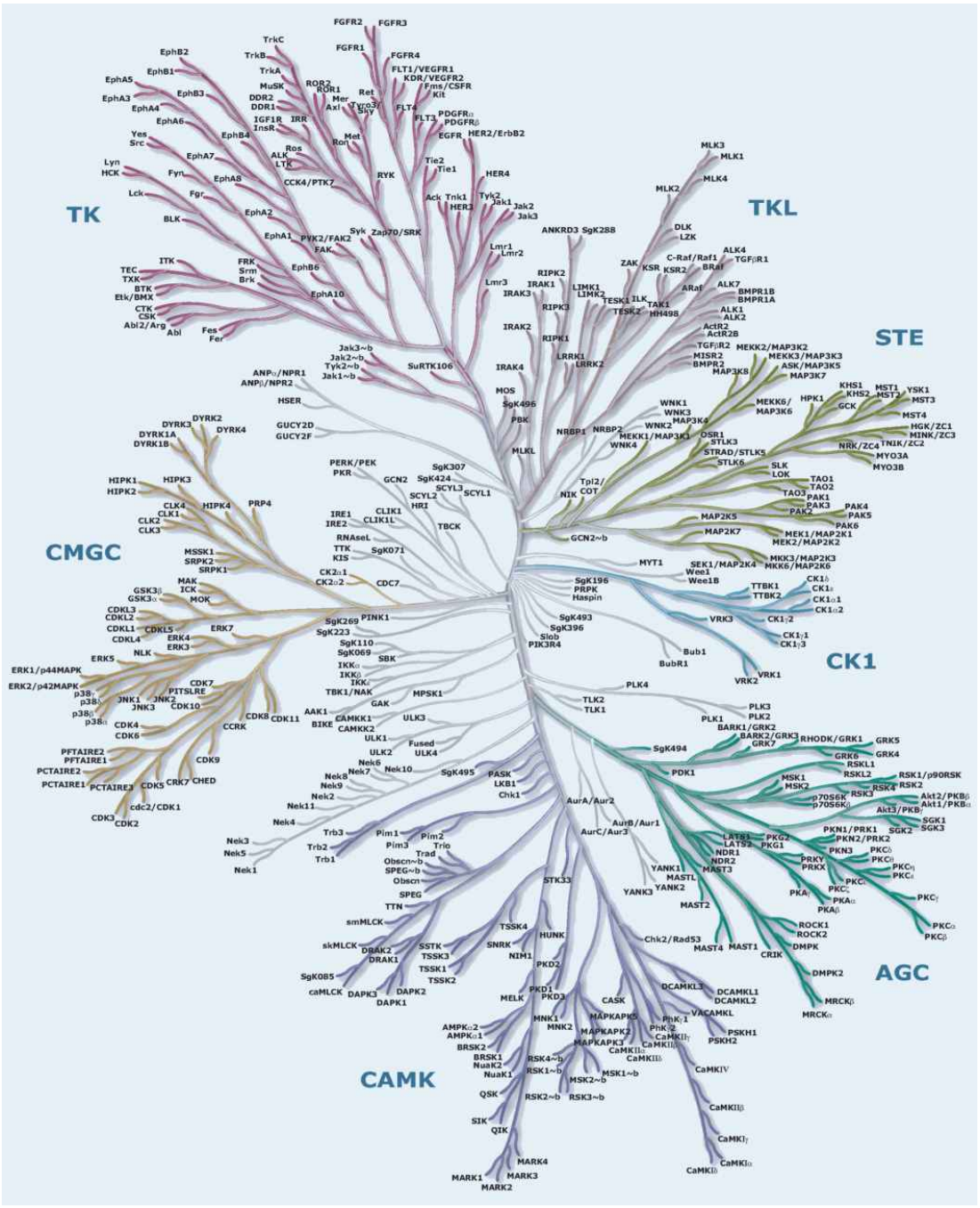


Figure S17.4 The human kinome As illustrated here, the great majority of the protein kinases of mammalian cells, including serine/threonine and tyrosine kinases, share substantial structural similarity, indicating that they all descend from a primitive protein kinase that existed long before the radiation of metazoan life forms. The serine/threonine and tyrosine kinases diverged from one another relatively early and have been further diversified over the past approximately 10^9 years. Altogether, the human genome sequence reveals 518 distinct genes encoding protein kinases, which, as a group, have been called the “human

kinome." Of these, 90 phosphorylate tyrosine residues, and the remainder phosphorylate serine or threonine residues of substrate proteins. All tyrosine kinases (TKs) and 318 serine/threonine kinases show clear structural relatedness to one another and can be arrayed on an evolutionary tree that depicts how they appear to have evolved from one another through repeated gene duplications followed by diversification. (A small number of "atypical" protein kinases, *not shown*, appear to represent independent evolutionary inventions.) The shared origins of the kinases located on this tree dictate that many of these enzymes are structurally similar to one another, which complicates the creation of drugs that interfere selectively with only a few members of this large family of enzymes. The TKs (*top left*) represent relatively recent evolutionary inventions, as they are absent in prokaryotes and are present in only very small numbers (e.g., 3) in the genomes of single-cell eukaryotic protozoa sequenced to date. Their great diversification and specialization appear to have been critical to the evolution of anatomically complex metazoa. The remaining groupings on this tree are TKL, tyrosine kinase-like; STE, homologs of yeast sterile 7, 11, and 20 kinases; CK1, casein kinase-1; AGC, members of protein kinase A, kinase G, and kinase C families; CAMK, calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinases; and CMGC, containing CDK, MAPK, GSK-3, and CLK families. (Courtesy of Cell Signaling Technology, Inc.)

Supplementary Sidebar 17.8 Large-scale screening can systematically interrogate the inhibitory effects of a drug on many kinases

Attempts at identifying all of the kinases that might be affected by a drug of interest have, until recently, involved assays of the responses of only a small proportion of the large cohort of protein kinases known to be present in human cells. Consequently, over the past decade, certain off-target effects are likely to have eluded drug developers. This has begun to change with the advent of more systematic screening of a far larger portion of the kinases that might be affected by these inhibitors.

One biotechnology company has developed an assay for measuring the binding affinities of a test drug for 442 distinct kinases that are located on various branches of the kinome tree (**Figure S17.5A–D**). As gauged by this assay, two EGF receptor inhibitors—Iressa and Tarceva—are indeed found to bind preferentially the EGF-R tyrosine kinase, whereas staurosporine, which is thought to inhibit a wide spectrum of protein kinases of all types, is confirmed to exhibit a wide-ranging kinase-binding ability. (The *binding affinity* of a test drug for a kinase, as measured in this assay, has been found to predict the ability of this drug to *inhibit the activity* of the kinase.) This assay can be scaled up to enable the systematic screening of large numbers of kinase inhibitors, which greatly accelerates the rate at which candidate drugs of this class can

be evaluated for their potency and their specificity in targeting a kinase of interest, while having minimal effects on other closely related kinases (Figure S17.5E).

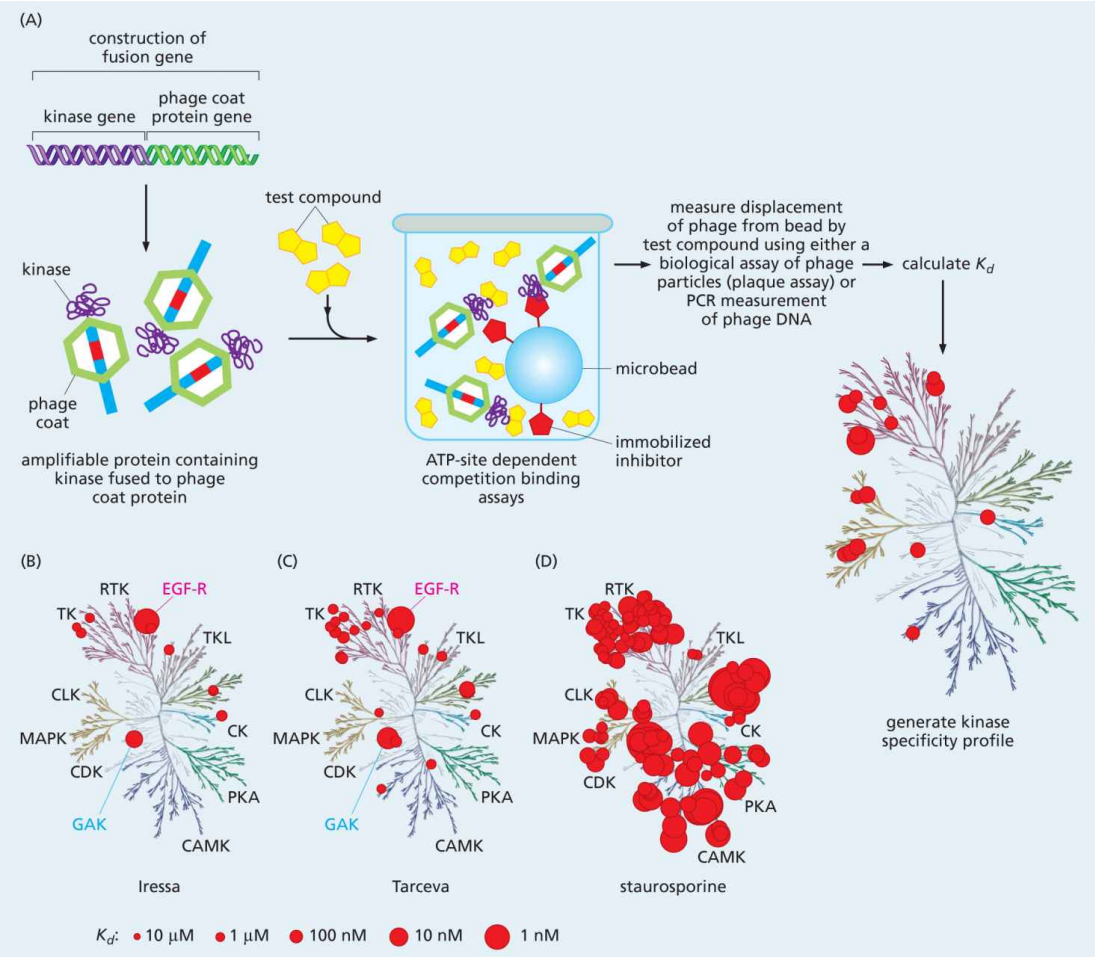
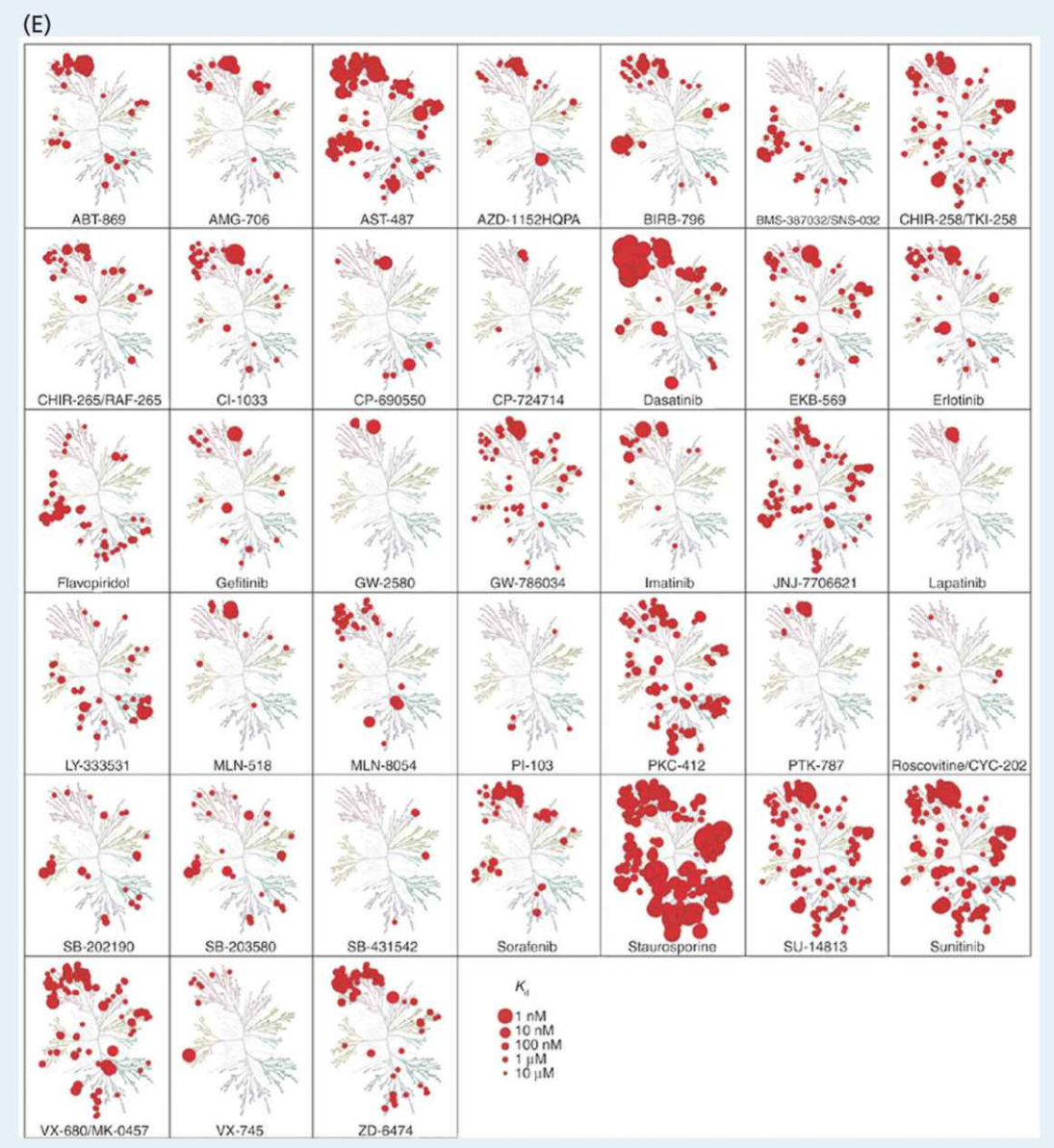


Figure S17.5 Effects of kinase inhibitors on a wide spectrum of protein kinases The individual responses to various kinase inhibitors of an array of 156 distinct tyrosine and serine/threonine kinases have been tested by measuring the *binding affinities* of each inhibitor for each of these kinases. This test depends on the fact that almost all kinase inhibitors bind to the ATP-binding sites of targeted enzymes. (A) A cDNA encoding the kinase domain o a protein is cloned into a bacteriophage vector so that some of the phage capsid (coat) proteins (*green*) are synthesized as fusion proteins with the kinase (*purple*). An ATP analog that is known to bind the ATP-binding sites of many kinases (*red pentagons*) is then immobilized by being linked to microbeads (*light blue*). This allows phage particles to become linked via the fusion proteins in their capsids to the ATP analog on the beads. The assay then measures the ability of a test compound (e.g., a candidate tyrosine kinase inhibitor, *yellow*) to compete with the immobilized ATP analog (*red*), thereby blocking association of the phage to the bead. The number of phage particles

released from the beads (determined by using a phage plaque assay or a polymerase chain reaction for the phage DNA) indicates the reduction in binding of the phage to the beads and therefore the binding affinity of the test compound for the kinase present in the fusion protein. The binding affinity is represented by the displacement constant K_d for the fusion protein, that is, the concentration at which 50% of the phage is displaced from the beads. The remaining panels show the evolutionary relationships of the kinases in the form of kinome trees (see Figure S17.4) on which the binding affinities of tested inhibitors for the kinases are noted. Each kinase that showed a K_d of less than 10 μM is indicated by a red circle whose diameter varies inversely with the K_d (binding affinity constant). (B, C) These panels show the effects of Iressa and Tarceva, respectively, two inhibitors of the EGF receptor (EGF-R) that have already been licensed for clinical use. Both, reassuringly, show greater specificity for the EGF-R than for the 155 other kinases tested. However, Iressa also binds GAK (cyclin G–associated kinase; see Sidebar 5.2) at about a tenfold higher concentration, whereas Tarceva affects GAK at an even lower concentration, barely higher than that required to inhibit the EGF-R itself. (D) In contrast, staurosporine, a widely used experimental reagent that is thought to inhibit many kinases, is seen here to indeed bind a large number of these enzymes, some while it is present at subnanomolar concentrations. (E) The technology described here has been extended to systematically survey the effects of 38 kinase inhibitors, one of which (staurosporine) was analyzed in panel D. (A, from J.D. Griffin, *Nat. Biotechnol.* 23:308–309, 2005. With permission from Nature. B–D, courtesy of P.R. Zarrinkar and D.J. Lockhart; see also M.A. Fabian et al., *Nat. Biotechnol.* 23:329–336, 2005. E, from M.W. Karaman et al., *Nat. Biotechnol.* 26:127–132, 2008. With permission from Nature.)



Supplementary Sidebar 17.9 Epidermal growth factor receptor expression levels predict little about a tumor's susceptibility to receptor antagonists

Elevated expression of the EGF-R is seen in a diverse array of tumors, including glioblastomas, head-and-neck squamous cell carcinomas, and bladder, kidney, esophageal, and lung cancers, often without associated amplification of the encoding gene. In many of these cancers, autocrine signaling loops driven by ligands such as TGF-α and amphiregulin are also activated. Tumors displaying elevated EGF-R expression or activity would seem to be obvious targets for treatment with receptor antagonists, specifically anti-receptor monoclonal antibodies and tyrosine kinase

inhibitors. However, the clinical results of such attempts to date have been disappointing.

In colorectal cancers (CRCs), for example, the responsiveness of a tumor to monoclonal antibody (MoAb) therapy is not predicted by the extent of receptor overexpression. And although colorectal cancers as a class have been relatively unresponsive to treatment with low–molecular-weight tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such as Iressa and Tarceva, non-small-cell lung carcinomas have occasionally responded in a striking fashion (see Section 17.14).

In the case of metastatic CRCs, the presence of a mutant K-*ras* allele in the genome of the corresponding primary tumors is a predictor of nonresponsiveness to anti-EGF-R MoAb therapy, and the direct demonstration of the absence of such an allele in a patient's tumor is now a prerequisite in Europe for MoAb treatment of the tumor. Similarly, the presence in the primary CRC genome of mutant, activated B-*raf* and *PI3K* alleles (the latter involving exon-20 mutations) or inactivated *PTEN* alleles has also been associated with poor response to MoAb therapy, as measured by *time to progression* (interval between inception of therapy and evidence of worsening of symptoms and tumor growth) and *overall survival* (percentage of patients surviving at a given time, independent of other clinical responses). Conversely, elevated expression of amphiregulin and epiregulin—two EGF-R ligands—and the implied activation of autocrine signaling loops have been associated with increased time to progression and overall survival. Significantly, in the presence of a mutant, activated K-*ras* oncogene, the expression of these ligands was not predictive of a positive response to MoAb therapy, indicating that the effects of the K-*ras* oncogene dominate and overrule any other factors that might affect responsiveness to antibody therapy.

In the case of anti-EGF-R monoclonal antibody therapies, the most useful indicator of a positive clinical response is not some biochemical or genetic marker but rather the skin rash developed by some of the patients under treatment (**Figure S17.6**). Taken together, this large body of clinical experience has not been reassuring for the advocates of rational drug therapy.

Figure S17.6 Skin rash—a surrogate marker for treatment efficacy The responses of most solid tumors to anti-EGF receptor monoclonal antibody therapy have been modest. However, the minority of patients who do show significant clinical responses often develop an acne-like skin rash of the sort seen here. This rash may in some way reflect the importance of the EGF-R in maintaining normal skin, but the precise mechanistic reasons for its correlation with positive clinical responses and its utility as a surrogate marker of tumor-killing activity are obscure. (From K.J. Busam et al., *Br. J. Dermatol.* 144:1169–1176, 2001. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

Supplementary Sidebar 17.10 BH3 profiling can measure a cell's propensity to undergo apoptosis in response to therapy

The response of a tumor to a Bcl-2 family member inhibitor will depend on the specific balance between pro- and anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members in a cell (see Figures 9.23 and 9.25). In the presence of significant pro-apoptotic stimuli, which exists in many cancer cells, the active expression of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members is necessary to prevent cell death. Thus, unlike normal cells, many cancer cells are teetering precariously on the brink of cell death, and disabling a critical pro-survival pathway may push them over the edge.

The relative propensity of a cell to die following a pro-apoptotic stimulus, as well as the identities of the specific Bcl-2 family members that are promoting cell survival in a given cancer cell type, can be accurately measured using an approach termed BH3 profiling. Here, BH3 peptides corresponding to distinct BH3-only proteins are applied to purified mitochondria or permeabilized cells prepared from a tumor of interest (**Figure S17.7**). The resulting level of cytochrome *c* release determines whether target cells are "primed" for apoptosis and, given the known interaction specificities of

different BH3 peptides, which anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members are most critical for the cellular balance of pro- and anti-apoptotic forces.

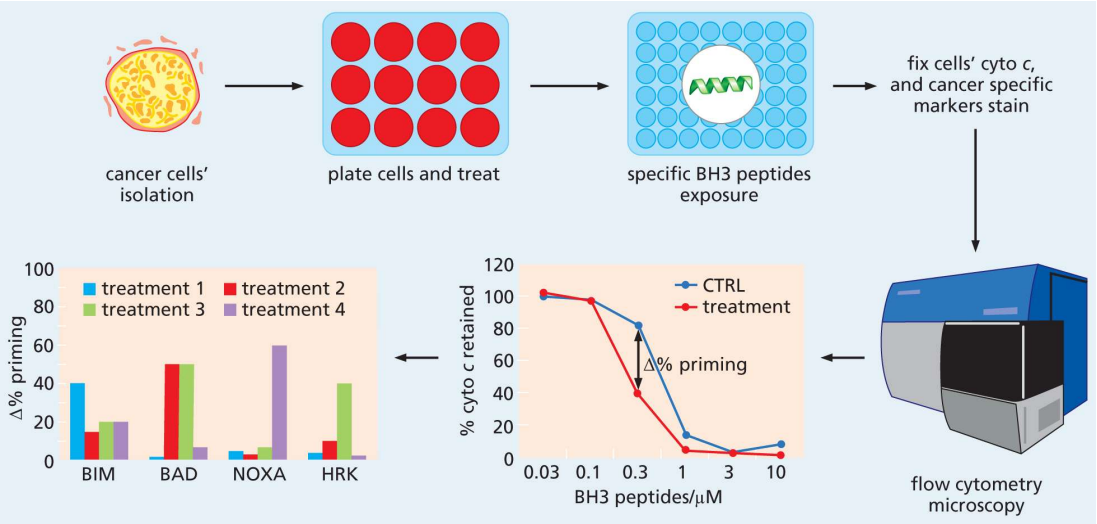


Figure S17.7 Dynamic BH3 profiling The propensity of cancer cells to die in response to specific treatments can be assessed using BH3 peptides. Tumor cells isolated from patients can be treated with a range of cancer therapeutics and then exposed to peptides derived from distinct BH3-only pro-apoptotic regulators. Peptides that effectively push treated cells over the apoptotic threshold promote cytochrome *c* release from mitochondria from treated cells. The level of cytochrome *c* release elicited by each BH3 peptide can be used to define a profile of apoptotic sensitivities that predict response to treatment, changes in apoptotic dependencies following treatment, the effective use of BH3-mimetics as therapeutics, and the response of a given tumor to combinations of BH3 mimetics and specific therapies. (From J. Montero and A. Letai, *Cell Death Differ*. 25, 56–64, 2018. Copyright © 2017, The Authors. This article is available under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License.)

Results from such experiments not only can identify which tumor types may be amenable to treatment with Bcl-2-targeted therapies, but also can identify tumors that might be responsive to small molecule BH3 mimetics targeting certain Bcl-2 family members. This approach represents a unique type of therapy tailored to a patient's tumor cells, that is, "personalized" anti-cancer therapy. Although one typically seeks a tumor-specific mutation or pathway that demarcates a therapeutic dependency, BH3-profiling provides a *functional readout* that could guide the targeted use of apoptosis-inducing anti-cancer agents.

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

diagnostic bias
: Tendency of an observation or conclusion to be influenced by the specific properties or applications of a diagnostic technique rather than to accurately reflect an intrinsic property of the entity (such as a disease) under examination.

OceanofPDF.com

Footnotes

- aThese rules stipulate that in order for a drug to be orally active, its properties cannot violate more than one of the four listed conditions. Conformance to these rules is said to determine a drug's pharmacokinetics, which derive in turn from (1) its absorption via passive diffusion through mucous membranes and plasma membranes into the general circulation; (2) its distribution via the circulation to various tissues throughout the body; (3) its metabolism, often via cytochromes operating in the liver; and (4) its excretion via the kidneys, gastrointestinal tract, or lungs. In fact, only about half of the drugs that have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration and are in clinical use conform to these properties, which are often referred to as "Lipinski's Rule of 5" or simply "the Lipinski rules."Return to reference a

OceanofPDF.com

Abbreviations

2D two-dimensional

3D three-dimensional

3-MC 3-methylcholanthrene

13cRA 13-*cis*-retinoic acid

A (1) adenine; (2) adenosine

AA aristolochic acid

ABC (1) activated B-cell-like subtype of DLBCL; (2) adenoid basal carcinoma; (3) ATP-binding cassette (transporter)

Abl Abelson leukemia virus oncoprotein

ABVD adriamycin, bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine combined chemotherapy

ACF aberrant (intestinal) crypt focus/foci

ACT adoptive cell transfer

ACTH adrenocorticotropic hormone

ADC antibody–drug conjugate

ADCC antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity

ADCP antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis

AE adverse (clinical) event

AEV avian erythroblastosis virus

AFB1 aflatoxin B1

Ag antigen

AGMK African green monkey kidney (cells)

AGT O^6-alkylguanine-DNA-alkyltransferase; *also called* **MGMT**

AID activation-induced cytidine deaminase

AIDS acquired immunodeficiency syndrome

Akt T-cell lymphoma of Ak mouse strain (serine-threonine kinase); *also* PKB

ALDH1 aldehyde dehydrogenase isoform 1

ALK anaplastic large-cell lymphoma kinase

ALL acute lymphocytic (or lymphoblastic) leukemia

α-SMA α-smooth muscle actin

ALT alternative lengthening of telomeres

ALV avian leukosis virus

AML acute myelogenous leukemia

AMP adenosine monophosphate

AMPK adenosine-5′-monophosphate-activated kinase

AMV avian myelocytomatosis virus

Ang angiopoietin

ANGPTL angiopoietin-like (protein)

AP (1) apurinic; (2) apyrimidinic

AP-1 activator protein-1 transcription factor (Fos + Jun complex)

Apaf-1 apoptotic protease-activating factor-1

APC (1) antigen-presenting cell; (2) anaphase-promoting complex; (3) adenomatous polyposis coli

APE apurinic/apyrimidinic endonuclease

APL acute promyelocytic leukemia

APOBEC apolipoprotein B mRNA editing enzyme catalytic peptide-like

AR androgen receptor

ARE antioxidant response element (DNA sequence)

ARF alternative reading frame (of protein-encoding sequence)

ASCT allogeneic stem cell transplantation

asmase acid sphingomyelinase

AT ataxia telangiectasia (syndrome)

ATACseq assay for transposase-accessible chromatin (followed by sequencing)

ATM mutated in ataxia telangiectasia

ATP adenosine triphosphate

ATR (1) ATM-related kinase; (2) ATM and Rad3-related kinase

ATRA all-*trans*-retinoic acid

a.u. arbitrary units

AUC area under the curve

BCC basal cell carcinoma

BCG Bacillus Calmette–Guérin (mycobacterial vaccine)

Bcl-2 B-cell lymphoma gene-2

BCNS basal cell nevus syndrome

BCR, bcr (1) breakpoint cluster region; (2) B-cell receptor

BDNF bone-derived neurotrophic factor

BER base-excision DNA repair

β-gal β-galactosidase

β2m β2 microglobulin

BFB breakage–fusion–bridge (cycle of chromosomes)

BH Bcl-2–homologous (domain)

BHK baby hamster kidney (cells)

bHLH basic helix–loop–helix (transcription factor)

BiTE bi-specific T cell engager

BL Burkitt's lymphoma

BM (1) bone marrow; (2) basement membrane

BMI body-mass index

BMP bone morphogenetic protein

BMPR1 BMP receptor-1

BMSC bone marrow stem cell

BMT bone marrow transplantation

BP benzo[*a*]pyrene

bp base pair

BPDE benzo[*a*]pyrenediolepoxide

BPV bovine papillomavirus

BrdU bromodeoxyuridine

B_{reg} regulatory B cell

BTK Bruton's TK

bZIP basic leucine zipper (transcription factor)

C (1) carboxy (terminus of polypeptide); (2) constant region (of an antibody molecule); (3) cytidine, cytosine

ca (1) cancer; (2) carcinoma

CAD caspase-activated DNase

CAF cancer-associated fibroblast

CagA cytotoxin-associated gene A

CAK CDK-activating kinase

CalB calcium–phospholipid binding domain

cAMP cyclic adenosine monophosphate

CAR chimeric antigen receptor

CART T lymphocyte expressing a CAR

CASP caspase-encoding gene

Cas9 CRISPR-associated protein-9

CAT computed axial tomography; *see also* **CT**

CBL Casitas B-lineage lymphoma (protein)

CBP cyclic AMP response element–binding protein

CCK cholecystokinin

CCL chemokine ligand with two adjacent cysteines

CCLE Cancer Cell Line Encyclopedia

CD cluster of differentiation (cell surface antigen)

CDC complement-dependent cytotoxicity

CDH1 E-cadherin

Cdh1 regulatory subunit of the anaphase-promoting complex

CDK cyclin-dependent kinase

Cdki CDK inhibitor

CDKN1A $p21^{Cip1}$ Cdki

CDKN1B $p27^{Kip1}$ Cdki

CDKN1C $p57^{Kip2}$ Cdki

cDNA complementary DNA copy of mRNA

CDR complementarity-determining region (of an antibody)

CEA carcinoembryonic antigen

C/EBPβCCAAT/enhancer-binding protein β

CEF chicken embryo fibroblast

CEP circulating endothelial progenitor (cell)

CFP cyan fluorescent protein

CGH comparative genomic hybridization

cGMP cyclic guanosine monophosphate

CHFR checkpoint with forkhead and RING finger domains (protein)

ChIP chromatin immunoprecipitation

Chk2 checkpoint kinase 2

CHK2 gene encoding Chk2 protein

CHOP cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (chemotherapy cocktail)

CI confidence interval

CIMP CpG island methylator phenotype

CIN (1) cervical intraepithelial neoplasia; (2) chromosomal instability

circRNA small circular RNA

CIS carcinoma *in situ*

CK1 casein kinase I

CK2 casein kinase II

CKI cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor

CLL chronic lymphocytic leukemia

CM (1) conditioned medium; (2) culture medium

CML chronic myelogenous leukemia

CMV cytomegalovirus

CNA (gene) copy number alteration

CNK connector enhancer of KSR

CNL chronic neutrophilic leukemia

CNS central nervous system

CNV (gene) copy number variation

CoA coenzyme A

CoO the (normal) cell-of-origin (of a population of cancer cells)

COSMIC Catalogue of Somatic Mutations in Cancer

COX-2 cyclooxygenase-2

CPD cyclobutane pyrimidine dimer

CPE cytopathic effect

CpG cytidine phosphate guanosine (DNA sequence)

cpm counts per minute

CR complete (clinical) response

CRC colorectal carcinoma

cre causes recombination

CRISPR clustered regularly-interspaced short palindromic repeats

CRISPRa CRISPR-mediated activation (of transcription)

CRISPRi CRISPR-mediated inhibition (of transcription)

Crkl Crk-like; *also* CrkL

CRS cytokine release syndrome

CRT calreticulin

CS Cockayne syndrome

CSC cancer stem cell

CSF-1 colony-stimulating factor-1

Csk C-terminal Src kinase

CSR core serum response (gene expression signature)

CT (1) cancer-testis (antigen); (2) computed tomography (usually using X-ray scanning); (3) chemotherapy

CTC circulating tumor cell

CTGF connective tissue growth factor

CTL cytotoxic T lymphocyte

CTLA-4 cytotoxic T lymphocyte–associated antigen-4

CTVS canine transmissible venereal sarcoma

CUP (metastasized) cancer of unknown primary origin

CXCL ligand of chemokine receptor

CXCR chemokine receptor

CYP cytochrome P450 enzyme

d5′-mC deoxy-5′-methylcytosine

dA deoxyadenosine

DAAM diaphanous-related formin protein

DAG diacylglycerol

DAPI 4′,6′-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DNA stain)

DBD DNA-binding domain

DC (1) dendritic cell; (2) dyskeratosis congenita

DCIS ductal carcinoma *in situ* (of the breast)

DDR discoidin domain receptor

del genetic deletion

DepMap Cancer Dependency Map

DES diethylstilbestrol

DFS disease-free survival

dG deoxyguanosine

DIABLO direct IAP-binding protein with low pI

di-I 3,3-dioctadecyl indocarbocyanine (dye)

DISC death-inducing signaling complex

DKK Dickkopf (inhibitor of Wnts)

DLBCL diffuse large B-cell lymphoma

DLC (1) dynein light chain; (2) deleted in liver cancer

DLL Delta-like ligand

DM double-minute chromosome

DM1 mertansine anti-microtubule drug

DMBA dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene

dn *DN* dominant-negative (allele)

DNMT DNA methyltransferase

DP differentiation-related transcription factor protein

DPC4 deleted in pancreatic cancer-4

dR deoxyribose

DRG dorsal root ganglion

ds double-stranded (DNA or RNA)

DSB double-strand (DNA) break

DTC disseminated tumor cell

dTg deoxythymidine glycol

DUB de-ubiquitylating enzyme

dUTP deoxyuridine triphosphate

Dvl dishevelled (protein)

E2 17-β-estradiol/estrogen

E2F transcription factor activating adenovirus E2 gene

4E-BP eIF4E-binding protein

E (1) epithelial; (2) gene expressed early in a viral replication cycle

EBV Epstein–Barr virus

EC embryonal carcinoma (cell)

ECM extracellular matrix

EFS event-free survival

e.g. for example

EGF epidermal growth factor

EGF-R EGF receptor

eIF eukaryotic (translation) initiation factor

eIF4E eukaryotic (translation) initiation factor 4E

EM (1) electron micrograph; (2) electron microscope

EMA European Medicines Agency

EMSA electrophoretic mobility shift assay

EMT epithelial–mesenchymal transition; *also* epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition

EMT-TF EMT-inducing transcription factor

ENU *N*-ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea

env retrovirus envelope glycoprotein

EPC (1) endothelial precursor cell; (2) endothelial progenitor cell

EpCAM epithelial cell adhesion molecule

EPO erythropoietin

ε dA 1,N^6-ethenodeoxyadenosine

ER (1) estrogen receptor; (2) endoplasmic reticulum

erb (oncogene of) avian erythroblastosis virus

ERG ETS-related gene

ERK extracellular signal–regulated kinase

ERV endogenous retrovirus

ES embryonic stem (cells)

ESA epithelial surface antigen

ET-1 endothelin-1

EZH2 enhancer of zeste homolog 2

5-FU 5-fluorouracil

F filamentous (actin)

FA Fanconi anemia (syndrome)

FACS fluorescence-activated cell sorting

FADD Fas-associated death domain (protein)

FAK focal adhesion kinase

FANC defective in Fanconi anemia syndrome (protein)

FAP familial adenomatous polyposis

FasL ligand of the Fas death receptor

Fc fragment crystallizable (region of IgG antibody molecule)

FcR Fc receptor

FDA U.S. Food and Drug Administration

FDG 2-deoxy-2-(^{18}F)fluoro-D-glucose

FGF fibroblast growth factor

FH fumarate hydratase

Fig fused in glioblastoma (gene)

FISH fluorescence *in situ* hybridization

FITC fluorescein isothiocyanate (dye)

FKBP12 FK506-binding protein of 12 kD

FL (1) follicular (B-cell) lymphoma; (2) ligand of the Flt-3 receptor

FLICE FADD-like interleukin-1β–converting enzyme; *also called* caspase 8

FLIP FLICE-inhibitory protein

Flk-1 murine VEGF-R2

Flt Fms-like tyrosine kinase

FLT-1 human VEGF-R1 (gene)

FLV Friend murine leukemia virus

FOX member of the Forkhead family of transcription factors

FPT farnesyl protein transferase

FRB FKBP12 + rapamycin–binding (domain of protein)

FSH follicle-stimulating hormone

FTI farnesyltransferase inhibitor

Fzd frizzled (Wnt receptor)

G (1) guanine; (2) guanine nucleotide; (3) guanosine; (4) organismic generation

G1 gap 1 phase (of cell cycle)

G2 gap 2 phase (of cell cycle)

G6PD glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase

GAG glycosaminoglycan

gag group-specific antigen (retrovirus capsid protein)

GAK cyclin G–associated kinase

GAP GTPase-activating protein

GAPDH glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase

GBM glioblastoma multiforme

GCB germinal-center B-cell lymphoma

GDNF glial cell–derived neurotrophic growth factor

GDP guanosine diphosphate

GDSC Genomics of Drug Sensitivity in Cancer

GEF guanine nucleotide exchange factor

GEMM genetically engineered mouse model, *also termed* GEM

GF growth factor

GFAP glial fibrillary acidic protein

GFP green fluorescent protein

GGF glial growth factor

GGR global genomic repair

GH growth hormone

GIST gastrointestinal stromal tumor

GLUT glucose transporter

GM-CSF granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor

gp glycoprotein

GPI glycosylphosphatidylinositol

GPCR G-protein–coupled receptor

GPX4 glutathione peroxidase 4

Grb2 growth factor receptor-bound-2

GRIP-1 glucocorticoid receptor interacting protein-1

gRNA guide RNA (in CRISPR-Cas9 procedure)

GRP gastrin-releasing peptide

GSDMD gasdermin D

GSEA gene set enrichment analysis

GSK-3βglycogen synthase kinase-3b

GSTP1 glutathione *S*-transferase π1

GTP guanosine triphosphate

GTPase enzyme that cleaves GTP

GVHD graft-versus-host disease (immunological reaction)

GVT graft versus tumor (immunological reaction)

Gy gray (radiation dose unit)

2-HG 2-hydroxyglutarate

5hmC 5-hydroxymethylcytosine

H histone

h prefix referring to the human form of a gene or protein

^{3}**H** tritium

H&E hematoxylin–eosin (tissue stain)

hABH human AlkB homolog

HAMA human anti-mouse antibody

HAT (1) hypoxanthine–aminopterin–thymidine (culture medium); (2) histone acetyltransferase

HB-EGF heparin-binding EGF

HBV hepatitis B virus

HCA heterocyclic amine

HCC hepatocellular carcinoma

hCG human chorionic gonadotropin

HCL hairy-cell leukemia

HCMV human cytomegalovirus

HCV hepatitis C virus

HDAC histone deacetylase

HDM2 human homolog of MDM2

HDR homology-directed (DNA) repair; *also* **HR**

HEK human embryonic kidney (cells)

HER human EGF receptor

HERV human endogenous retrovirus

HES hairy and enhancer of split

HGF hepatocyte growth factor; *also called* scatter factor (SF)

HGFL hepatocyte growth factor-like

HGPRT hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyltransferase

Hh Hedgehog

HHV human herpesvirus

HHV-8 human herpesvirus type 8; *also called* Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV)

HIF hypoxia-inducible (transcription) factor

HIP1 huntingtin-interacting protein-1

HIPK2 homeodomain-interacting protein kinase 2

HIV human immunodeficiency virus

HLA human leukocyte antigen; equivalent to MHC

HMEC human mammary epithelial cell

HMT histone methyltransferase

HNPCC hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer

hnRNA heterogeneous nuclear RNA

HNSCC head-and-neck squamous cell carcinoma

HPE human prostate epithelial (cell)

HPGD 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase

HPRT hypoxanthine phosphoribosyltransferase

HPV human papillomavirus

HR homology-directed (DNA) repair; *also* **HDR**

HRE hormone response element (in DNA)

HRG Heregulin

HRP horseradish peroxidase

HSA human serum albumin

HSC hematopoietic stem cell

HSIL high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion

HSR homogeneously staining region

HSV-1 herpes simplex virus type 1

hTERT human telomerase reverse transcriptase

HTLV-I human T-cell lymphotropic virus type-I

hTR human telomerase-associated RNA

HTS high-throughput screening

HU hydroxyurea

IAP (1) intracisternal A particle; (2) inhibitor of apoptosis

-ib low–molecular-weight drug (suffix)

IC_{50} concentration required to obtain 50% inhibition

ICAD inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase

ICB immune checkpoint blockade; *see also* **ICI**

ICGC International Cancer Genome Consortium

ICI immune checkpoint blockade inhibitor; *see also* **ICB**

Id, ID inhibitor of DNA binding (transcription factor)

IDH isocitrate dehydrogenase

i.e. that is

IEG immediate early gene

IEL intraepithelial lymphocyte

IF immunofluorescence

IFN interferon

IFN-R interferon receptor

IgH immunoglobulin heavy chain

IGF-1 Insulin-like growth factor-1

IGF-1R IGF-1 receptor

IGFBP Insulin-like growth factor–binding protein

IgL immunoglobulin light chain

IHC immunohistochemistry

Iκ B inhibitor of NF-κB

IKK Iκ kinase

IL interleukin

ILK Integrin-linked kinase

iMCs immature myeloid cells

int gene identified through insertional mutagenesis

IP3 inositol (1,4,5)-triphosphate

IR Insulin receptor

IRES internal ribosome entry site

IRK Insulin receptor kinase

ISH *in situ* hybridization

iSH2 inter SH2 domain (of PI3K)

Jak Janus kinase

JCV JC virus

JM juxtamembrane

Jmj Jumonji (enzyme)

kb kilobase

kbp kilobase pair

kD kilodalton

KDR human VEGF-R2

KEAP1 Kelch-like ECH-associated protein 1

KGF Keratinocyte growth factor

K_i concentration at which 50% inhibition is achieved

KIP kinase inhibitor protein

KIR killer-cell immunoglobulin-like receptor

KO (1) knockout (of gene); (2) knocked-out (gene)

KSHV *see* **HHV-8**

KSR kinase suppressor of Ras

LAK lymphokine-activated killer (cell)

LANA latency-associated nuclear antigen (of KSHV)

LATS large tumor suppressor homolog (kinase)

LBCL large B-cell lymphoma

LCM laser capture microdissection

LDA limiting dilution analysis

LDL low-density lipoprotein

LEF lymphoid enhancer-binding factor

LGR5 leucine-rich repeat-containing G protein-coupled receptor 5

LH luteinizing hormone

LIF leukemia inhibitory factor

lincRNA long intergenic noncoding RNA; usually lncRNA

LLC Lewis lung carcinoma

LNA locked nucleic acid (RNA)

lncRNA long noncoding RNA

LOH loss of heterozygosity

loxP locus of crossover in bacteriophage P1 genome

LPA lysophosphatidic acids

LPS lipopolysaccharide

LRC label-retaining cell

LRP LDL receptor–related protein

LSIL low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions

LT large T antigen (of SV40 or polyomavirus)

LTR long terminal repeat (of a retroviral provirus)

3-MC 3-methylcholanthrene

5mC 5-methylcytosine

μM micromolar (10^{-6} molar)

M (1) mitosis; (2) mesenchymal

m prefix referring to the murine form of a gene or protein

M1 pro-inflammatory macrophage subtype

M2 immunosuppressive macrophage subtype

-mab therapeutic monoclonal antibody (suffix)

MAC membrane attack complex

MAF musculoaponeurotic fibrosarcoma (transcription factor)

MALT mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue

MAPK mitogen-activated protein kinase; *also called* MAP-kinase

MAPKK kinase that phosphorylates a MAPK

MAPKKK kinase that phosphorylates a MAPKK

mb megabase; *also* MB

MCP-1 monocyte chemotactic protein-1

MCPyV Merkel cell (polyoma) virus

mCRP membrane-bound complement regulatory protein

M-CSF macrophage colony-stimulating factor

MCT monocarboxylate transporter

MCV Merkel cell (polyoma) virus

MDCK Madin–Darby canine kidney (cells)

MDM2 mouse double-minute chromosome 2

MDR multi-drug resistance (phenotype)

MDS myelodysplastic syndrome

MDSC myeloid-derived suppressor cell

MDV Marek's disease virus

MEC mammary epithelial cell

meCpG methyl-cytosine within a CpG dinucleotide

MEF mouse embryo fibroblast

MeIQx 2-amino-3,8-dimethylimidazo[4,5-f]-quinoxaline mutagen

MEK MAPKK/Erk kinase

MEN multiple endocrine neoplasia

MET mesenchymal–epithelial transition; *also* mesenchymal-to-epithelial transition

Met receptor of hepatocyte growth factor

mFISH multicolor fluorescence in situ hybridization

MGMT O^6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase; *also called* **AGT**

MHC major histocompatibility complex; *see also* **HLA**

-**mib** low–molecular-weight pharmacologic agent (suffix)

min multiple intestinal neoplasias

MIN microsatellite instability

miRNA microRNA

Miz-1 Myc-interacting zinc finger protein-1

MKP MAP kinase phosphatase

MLKL mixed lineage kinase-like protein

MLL (1) mixed lineage leukemia; (2) myeloid/lymphoid leukemia

MLV murine leukemia virus

MM multiple myeloma

mM millimolar (10^{-3} molar)

MMP matrix metalloproteinase

MMR mismatch repair (of DNA)

mms methylmethane sulfonate

MMTV mouse mammary tumor virus

MNNG *N*-methyl-*N*′-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine

MNU *N*-methylnitrosourea

MoAb monoclonal antibody

moca 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline)

MOMP mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization

mp muscularis propria (of intestinal wall)

mPGES microsomal prostaglandin E2 synthase

MPNST malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor

MRD minimal residual disease

MRE11 meiotic recombination 11 (protein)

MRI magnetic resonance imaging

MRN MRE11/Rad50/Nbs1 protein complex

mRNA messenger RNA

MSC mesenchymal stem cell

MSH melanocyte-stimulating hormone

MSP methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction

MT middle T antigen of polyomavirus

MT1-MMP membrane type 1-MMP

MTD maximum tolerated dose

mTERT murine TERT

MTH1 mammalian MutT homolog-1

mTOR mechanistic target of rapamycin (kinase)

mTR murine telomerase RNA

MUP major urinary protein

myc (oncogene of) avian myelocytomatosis virus

N ploidy number (where haploid = 1)

N′ (1) N amino terminus of polypeptide; (2) N-terminal (adj.)

NAT *N*-acetyltransferase

NBS1 Nijmegen break syndrome 1

NCAM neural cell adhesion molecule

NCI National Cancer Institute of the United States

NCI-60 Collection of 60 cancer cell lines prepared by the NCI

NECD Notch extracellular domain

neo neomycin

NER nucleotide-excision DNA repair

NES nuclear export signal

NET neuroendocrine tumor

Neu rat ortholog of HER2 (receptor)

Nf/NF neurofibromatosis

NF-κB nuclear factor-κB

NGF nerve growth factor

NGS next generation sequencing

NHEJ nonhomologous end joining

NHL non-Hodgkin's lymphoma

NICD Notch intracellular domain

NK natural killer (lymphocyte)

NKG2D natural killer group 2D (receptor)

NKT natural killer lymphocyte expressing T-cell receptor

NLS nuclear localization (import) sequence

nM nanomolar (10^{-9} molar)

NMR nuclear magnetic resonance

NO nitric oxide

NOD non-obese diabetic

NOD/SCID non-obese diabetic/severe combined immunodeficient (mouse strain)

NotchL Notch ligand

NR no (clinical) response

NRF2 nuclear factor erythroid 2-related (transcription factor)

NRG neuregulin

NSAID nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug

NSCLC non-small-cell lung carcinoma

nt nucleotide

NURF nucleosome remodeling factor

4-OHT 4-hydroxytamoxifen

8-oxo-dG 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine

OD optical density

OIS oncogene-induced senescence

OPC oropharyngeal carcinoma

OPG osteoprotegrin (decoy receptor protein)

OPN osteopontin (protein)

ORF open reading frame

OS overall survival

OSCC oral squamous cell carcinoma

OSE ovarian surface epithelium

6-4 PP pyrimidine (6-4) pyrimidinone (photoproduct)

p (1) short arm of a chromosome; (2) probability of an event

Pa Pascal (unit of measured pressure, stress)

PAH polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon

PAI (1) plasminogen activator inhibitor; (2) pathogenicity-associated island

PAM protospacer adjacent motif (in CRISPR-Cas9 procedure)

PanIN pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia

PAP prostatic acid phosphatase

PAR-1 protease-activated receptor protein-1 (GPCR)

PARP poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase

PBS phosphate-buffered saline

PCNA proliferating cell nuclear antigen

PCP planar cell polarity

PCR (1) polymerase chain reaction; (2) pathological complete response

PD (1) pharmacodynamics; (2) population doubling; (3) progressive disease

PD-1 programmed death-1 (receptor of T cells)

PDAC pancreatic ductal (exocrine) adenocarcinoma

PDGF platelet-derived growth factor

PDE phosphodiesterase

PDGF-R PDGF receptor

PDH pyruvate dehydrogenase

PDK1 (1) phosphoinositide-dependent kinase 1; (2) pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase 1

PD-L1 ligand of the PD-1 receptor

PDM mean population doublings

PDX patient-derived xenograft

PEG polyethylene glycol

pEMT partial EMT

PEP phosphoenolpyruvate

PET positron-emission tomography

PFS progression-free survival

PGDH 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase

PGE_2 prostaglandin E_2

P-gp P-glycoprotein

PH pleckstrin homology (phosphoinositol-binding protein domain)

PHD proline hydroxylase

PhIP (1) 2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; (2) PH-interacting domain protein

PhK phosphorylase kinase

pI isoelectric point

PI (1) phosphatidylinositol; (2) propidium iodide

PI(3,4,5)P3 *equivalent to* PIP3

PI3K phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase

PIK3CA catalytic subunit of PI3K

PIK3R regulatory subunit of PI3K

PIN prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia

PINCH particularly interesting new cysteine-histidine-rich (adaptor protein)

PIP2 phosphatidyl inositol (4,5) diphosphate/PI(4,5)P_2

PIP3 phosphatidyl inositol (3,4,5) triphosphate/PI(3,4,5)P_3

PK (1) pyruvate kinase; (2) pharmacokinetics

PKA protein kinase A

PKB protein kinase B (=Akt)

PKC protein kinase C

PLC phospholipase C

PLD phospholipase D

PMA phorbol-12-myristate-13-acetate; equivalent to TPA

PMBL primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma

PML (1) promyelocytic leukemia; (2) progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy

PND paraneoplastic neurological degeneration

PNI perineural invasion

pol (1) polymerase; (2) retrovirus reverse transcriptase

pol II RNA polymerase II

POT1 protection of telomere 1 (protein)

PP1 protein phosphatase 1

PP2A protein phosphatase 2A

PR (1) progesterone receptor; (2) partial (clinical) response.

PRAS proline-rich Akt substrate

pRb retinoblastoma protein; *also* **Rb**, RB

PRC1 polycomb repressive complex 1

pre-mRNA RNA precursor to mRNA

PRL prolactin

pro-B ALL pro-B-cell acute lymphocytic leukemia

PS phosphatidylserine

PSA prostate-specific antigen

PTB phosphotyrosine-binding (protein domain)

PTC (1) papillary thyroid carcinoma; (2) Patched

PTEN phosphatase and tensin homolog deleted on Chromosome 10

PTH parathyroid hormone

PTHrP parathyroid hormone–related peptide

PTM post-translational modification

PTP phosphotyrosine phosphatase

PUMA p53-upregulated modulator of apoptosis

pY phosphotyrosine

PyMT polyomavirus middle T oncoprotein

q long arm of a chromosome

qPCR quantitative polymerase chain reaction

qRT-PCR quantitative real-time PCR; *see also* **RT-PCR**

r resistant to specified agent

R restriction point (cell cycle landmark)

RA (1) retinoic acid; (2) Ras-association (domain)

Rad radiation repair (gene)

RAE retinoic acid early transcript (ligand)

RAG recombination-activating gene

RANK receptor activator of NF-κB

RANKL ligand of RANK (receptor)

RAR retinoic acid receptor

ras (oncogene of) rat sarcoma virus

RAS protein of *ras* oncogene

Rb retinoblastoma protein

RBD Ras-binding domain

RCC renal cell carcinoma

REF rat embryo fibroblast

relreticuloendotheliosis (oncogene)

RFLP restriction fragment length polymorphism

RFP red fluorescent protein

Rheb Ras homolog enriched in brain

RING really interesting new gene (protein domain)

RIPK receptor-interacting protein kinase

RISC RNA-induced silencing complex

RNAi RNA interference pathway (involving miRNAs, siRNAs, shRNAs)

RNA-seq RNA sequencing (via sequencing of cDNAs)

RNS reactive nitrogen species

ROS reactive oxygen species

RPA replication protein A

RR (1) relative risk; (2) response rate

RSV Rous sarcoma virus

RT reverse transcriptase

RTK receptor tyrosine kinase

RT-PCR reverse transcription PCR; *see also* **qRT-PCR**

S (1) DNA synthesis phase (of cell cycle); (2) Svedberg (unit of sedimentation in centrifuge); (3) serine

S1P sphingosine-1-phosphate

S6 protein 6 of the small ribosomal subunit

S6K1 p70 S6 kinase-1

SA-β-gal senescence-associated β-galactosidase

SAC spindle assembly checkpoint

SAHF senescence-associated heterochromatic foci

SASP senescence-associated secretory phenotype

SC stem cell

SCC squamous cell carcinoma

SCE sister chromatid exchange

SCF stem cell factor

scFv single-chain variable region fragment

SCID severe combined immunodeficiency (syndrome)

SCLC small-cell lung carcinoma

scRNAseq single-cell RNA sequencing

SDF-1 stromal cell–derived factor-1

SDH succinate dehydrogenase

SEM scanning electron micrograph/microscope/microscopy

ser serine

SERM selective estrogen receptor modulator

SF (1) scatter factor, *see also* **HGF**; (2) splicing factor

SFK Src family kinases

SFRP/sFRP secreted frizzle-related protein (Wnt inhibitor)

SGK1 serum- and glucocorticoid-inducible kinase 1

sgRNA single-guide RNA (in CRISPR-Cas9 procedure)

SH1 Src homology 1 domain (tyrosine kinase domain)

SH2 Src homology 2 domain (phosphotyrosine binding)

SH3 Src homology 3 domain (proline-rich binding)

SHP SH2-containing phosphatase

shRNA small hairpin RNA

SIP1 Smad-interacting protein 1

SIR standardized incidence ratio

siRNA small interfering RNA

Skp2 S-phase kinase-associated protein 2

SKY (multicolor) spectral karyotyping

Sky1 SR-protein–specific kinase of budding yeast

SLE systemic lupus erythematosus

SMA smooth muscle actin

Smac second mitochondria-derived activator of caspase

SMDF sensory and motor neuron-derived factor

Smo Smoothened

SNP single-nucleotide polymorphism

SOD superoxide dismutase

Sos Son of Sevenless

SPP1gene encoding osteopontin

Srf serum response factor

ss single-stranded (DNA or RNA)

STAT signal transducer and activator of transcription

Str-1 stromelysin-1

STS-1 suppressor of T-cell receptor signaling

SUMO small ubiquitin-like modifier

SV simian virus

SWI/SNF mating type switch/sucrose non-fermenting

T (1) thymine; (2) thymidine; (3) threonine

t referring to a chromosomal translocation

$\mathbf{T_{1/2}}$ half-life

T4SS type IV secretion system

$\mathbf{T_{50}}$ 50% of hosts bearing tumors

$\mathbf{T_{mem}}$ memory T cell

$\mathbf{T_{reg}}$ regulatory T cell

TAA tumor-associated antigen

Tag SV40/polyoma T-antigen

T-ALL T-cell acute lymphocytic leukemia

TAM tumor-associated macrophage

TAP transporter associated with antigen processing

TATA tumor-associated transplantation antigen

TAZ transcriptional activator with PDZ-binding motif

$\mathbf{T_C}$ cytotoxic T cell

TCF (1) T-cell factor; (2) T cell-specific transcription factor

TCGA The Cancer Genome Atlas

TCR (1) T-cell receptor; (2) transcription-coupled DNA repair

TdT terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase

TEAD transcription-enhanced associate domain (transcription factor)

$\mathbf{T_{eff}}$ Effector T cell

TEM transmission electron microscopy

TERRA telomere repeat-containing RNA

TERT telomerase reverse transcriptase

TET ten eleven (chromosomal) translocation

$\mathbf{T_{ex}}$ Exhausted T cell

TF (1) transcription factor; (2) Tissue Factor

$\mathbf{T_{FH}}$ T follicular helper (lymphocyte)

TFSS Type IV secretion system

TGF-α transforming growth factor-α

TGF-β transforming growth factor-β

TGF-βR TGF-β receptor

$\mathbf{T_H}$ helper T cell

thr threonine

TI therapeutic index

TIAM-1 T-cell lymphoma invasion and metastasis-1

TIC tumor-initiating cell (*see also* **CSC**)

TIF telomere dysfunction-induced focus

TIL tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte

TIMP tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase

TK (1) tyrosine kinase; (2) thymidine kinase

TKI tyrosine kinase inhibitor

TM transmembrane (domain of a protein)

Tm melting temperature

TMB tumor mutational burden

TME *see* **TMEN**

TMEN tumor microenvironment

TNBC triple-negative breast cancer

TNF tumor necrosis factor

TOR target of rapamycin

TORC mTOR-containing complex

TP53 gene encoding p53 TSG

TPA tPA (1) 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate (*see* PMA); (2) tissue plasminogen activator

TPO thrombopoietin

TRAIL TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand

TRAMP transgenic adenocarcinoma of the mouse prostate

TRAP telomeric repeat amplification protocol

Trop-2 human trophoblast cell surface antigen 2

TRF telomeric restriction fragment

tRNA transfer RNA

TrpRS tryptophanyl-tRNA synthetase

ts temperature-sensitive

TSA (1) trichostatin A; (2) tumor-specific antigen

TSC tuberous sclerosis

TSG tumor suppressor gene

TSHR thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor

t-SNE t-distributed stochastic neighborhood embedding (algorithm)

TSP tissue-specific (gene) promoter

Tsp-1 thrombospondin-1

TSS transcription start site

TSTA tumor-specific transplantation antigen

TUNEL TdT-mediated dUTP nick end labeling

tx transformed (cell)

U (1) uracil; (2) uridine

UC ulcerative colitis

UDG uracil-DNA glycosylase

uPA urokinase (type) plasminogen activator

uPAR receptor of uPA

UPR unfolded protein response

UTR untranslated region (of an mRNA)

UV ultraviolet

UV-B ultraviolet-B radiation

V variable region (of an antibody molecule)

VDAC voltage-dependent anion channel

VE vascular endothelial

VEGF vascular endothelial growth factor (=VPF)

VHL von Hippel–Lindau (protein)

VPF vascular permeability factor (=VEGF)

vs. versus

VSMC vascular smooth muscle cell

WES whole exon sequencing

WGS whole genome sequencing

WM Waldenström's macroglobulinemia

Wnt wingless/integration site (growth factor)

wt wild type

XAF1 XIAP-associated factor 1

XIAP X-chromosome–linked inhibitor of apoptosis

XP xeroderma pigmentosum

Y tyrosine

YAP Yes-associated protein

YFP yellow fluorescent protein

zTERT zebrafish telomerase; *see* also **TERT**

-zumab suffix indicating chimeric antibody MoAb

OceanofPDF.com

Glossary

3′ UTR The region of an mRNA molecule that is downstream of its reading frame.

5-hydroxymethylcytosine The oxidation product of 5-methylcytosine created by TET enzymes.

5′ UTR The region of an mRNA molecule that is upstream of its reading frame.

abasic Referring to a nucleotide that has lost its purine or pyrimidine base. *See also* **apurinic**; **apyrimidinic**.

abdomen (adj., **abdominal**) Referring to the cavity in vertebrates containing the digestive organs.

ablate To eliminate.

abluminal Located away from the lumen of a duct or other hollow structure.

abscissa Horizontal or *x*-axis of a Cartesian graph. *See also* **ordinate**.

abscission Final step of cytokinesis, when the remaining connections, including those created by microtubules, are severed, allowing complete separation of the two daughter cells. *See also* **cytokinesis.**

acellular Lacking or deprived of cells.

acetylation Covalent attachment of an acetyl group to a second molecule such as a protein.

acetylsalicylic acid Chemical name for aspirin.

acetyltransferase An enzyme that covalently links acetate groups to substrates, such as the amino acid side chains of proteins. *See also* **deacetylase**.

acid test The most rigorous test of an experimental hypothesis.

acinus (pl., **-i**) (1) A hollow saclike structure usually emptying into a duct. (2) A hollow spherical structure formed in culture by certain epithelial cells.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome Disease caused by infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) that causes depletion of CD4+ lymphocytes and resulting collapse of adaptive immunity.

acquired resistance Referring to the resistance to therapy of a tumor that arises with some delay following and in response to implementation of therapy; *also termed* **secondary resistance**. *See also* **intrinsic resistance**.

acromegaly Pathological condition of excessive growth of certain tissues, notably the hands, feet, and face, usually due to the elaboration of excessive growth hormone by a pituitary tumor.

actin Family of proteins that polymerizes to form microfilaments that help assemble the cytoskeleton of a cell and the thin filaments in contractile structures such as those in muscle.

activation-induced deaminase A cytidine deaminase that introduces point mutations in already-rearranged immunoglobulin genes, preferentially in their V regions, thereby diversifying antigen-binding specificities of the encoded immunoglobulins.

activation loop An oligopeptide loop of a protein kinase molecule that is normally positioned to block access by the catalytic cleft of the kinase to its substrates; phosphorylation of this loop, often by another kinase, causes it to swing out of the way, permitting free access of the catalytic cleft to its substrates.

activator A protein that favors the expression of a gene. *See also* **repressor**.

adaptive immune response An immune system response that is acquired or learned following exposure of an organism to an antigen or antigen-bearing agent. *See also* **innate immune response**.

addiction *See* **oncogene addiction**.

adduct Product of covalently linking a chemically reactive molecule to a targeted substrate molecule, such as the addition of a reactive mutagenic molecule to a base in the DNA.

adenocarcinoma Tumor derived from secretory epithelial cells. *See also* **squamous cell carcinoma**.

adenoma (adj., **-omatous**) Any of a series of premalignant, noninvasive growths in various epithelial tissues, many of which have the potential to progress further to carcinomas. *See also* **polyp**.

adherens junction Lateral cell–cell junction between adjacent cells, notably epithelial cells, that is formed by cadherins displayed on the opposing surfaces of participating pairs of cells; these junctions include the cytoplasmic proteins that are physically associated with the cytoplasmic domains of both participating cadherins and serve to link these junctions, in turn, to the actin cytoskeletons of the two cells.

adipocytes Specialized cells of the mesenchymal lineage, closely related to fibroblasts, that create fat and store it in large globules in the cytoplasm; the dominant cell type in fatty tissues.

adipogenic Causing differentiation into adipocytes.

adjuvant (1) A treatment that is given in concert with or following another treatment. (2) A substance that is given together with an antigen to enhance the immune response. *See also* **neoadjuvant**.

adoptive transfer Procedure in which immune cells are transferred from a donor to a recipient, undertaken with the goal that the donor’s cells will be able to mediate an immune function in the recipient.

adrenal Referring to the hormone-producing secretory glands that sit above the kidneys.

aerobic glycolysis The use by cancer cells of glycolysis as a major source of energy production under aerobic conditions that would normally favor use of the far more efficient Krebs/citric acid cycle; *also termed* **Warburg effect**.

afferent Referring to incoming signals. *See also* **efferent**.

affinity chromatography Procedure for enriching from a complex mixture of biological molecules the subpopulation of biomolecules that binds specifically to a cognate ligand or molecular binding partner, the latter being immobilized on a solid matrix. Molecules that are retained on the matrix, in contrast to the bulk population of molecules that are not, can subsequently be eluted from the matrix and prepared for various additional enrichment or analytic techniques.

age-adjusted Referring to an epidemiologic measurement, such as disease incidence or mortality, that has been adjusted to compensate for the age distribution of the population under study, allowing rates to be compared between populations having different age distributions.

agonist Activating agent; opposite of antagonist.

alkylating Capable of attaching covalently an alkyl group or similarly structured organic chemical group to a substrate such as a DNA base, usually resulting in the replacement of a proton in the substrate with the organic group, thereby forming a covalent bond.

allele One alternative among different versions of a gene that may be defined by the phenotype that it creates, by the protein that it specifies, or by its nucleotide sequence.

allelic deletion Referring to the loss of one of two alternative alleles within a cell and its descendants; such loss can occur via several alternative mechanisms. *See* **allele**, **loss of heterozygosity**.

allogeneic Referring to a pair of tissues or associated cells that differ genetically and, quite possibly, antigenically.

allogeneic stem cell transplantation Clinical procedure involving the transplantation of bone marrow cells from a donor that are genetically and thus antigenically nonidentical with those of a recipient.

allograft Implantation of cells of an animal of one genetic background into a host animal of another genetic background but from the same species.

allograft rejection Process occurring when a donor tissue graft is rejected by the immune system of a recipient because the donor and recipient, although members of the same species, are genetically distinct. *See also* **rejection**.

allosteric Referring to a mechanism for regulating the activity of a protein, notably an enzyme, in which its activity or function is modulated by changes in its three-dimensional structure; the change results from binding of a regulatory molecule at a site within the protein that is distant from the functionally important site, such as, in the case of enzymes, from its catalytic cleft.

alternative splicing Process whereby a pre-mRNA may be spliced in several alternative ways, resulting in mRNAs composed of different combinations of exons.

alternatively activated macrophages *See* **M2 macrophages**.

***Alu* repeat** Sequence block of about 300 bp that is found in almost 1 million copies scattered throughout the human genome.

alveolus (pl., **alveoli)** A small sac within a tissue that is connected to a duct, such as the sacs seen in the lung and in the mammary gland during pregnancy.

ambient Referring to conditions in the immediate surroundings.

Ames test An experimental protocol and versions thereof that enable the quantification of the mutagenic potency of candidate chemicals through their ability to induce mutations in bacteria growing in a Petri dish.

amino Referring to the end of an oligopeptide or protein chain that is formed first. *See also* **carboxy**.

amoeboid Exhibiting the shape and motility reminiscent of the behavior of the amoeba protozoan.

amphipathic Describing a molecule containing distinct hydrophobic and hydrophilic domains.

AMPK Kinase regulator of autophagy that responds to low intracellular ATP levels by negatively regulating components of the mTOR complex while stimulating certain enzymes that contribute to ATP production and others that decrease ATP consumption.

amplicon A defined stretch of (chromosomal) DNA that undergoes amplification flanked on both sides by DNA segments that are present in normal copy number.

amplification Genetic mechanism by which the copy number of a gene is increased above its normal level in the diploid genome.

anabolism (adj., **anabolic**) Processes by which new biological molecules are assembled via biosynthetic reactions. *See also* **catabolism**.

analogous Referring to two genes or proteins that have similar functions whether or not they share common evolutionary descent. *See also* **homologous**.

anaphase Third subphase of mitosis, during which the paired chromatids are segregated to the two opposite poles of the cell.

anaphase bridge A connection between two clusters of chromosomes that forms during anaphase and results from the simultaneous association of an

individual chromatid with both chromosomal clusters and their respective sets of spindles. *See also* **spindle**.

anaplastic (Referring to a tumor) having a tissue and cellular architecture lacking the differentiated characteristics of an identifiable tissue-of-origin or tumor type.

anastomosis End-to-end connection formed between two ductal structures, such as a connection formed directly between an artery and a vein.

anchorage dependence Requirement of cells for tethering to a solid substrate before they will grow.

anchorage independence Ability of a cell to proliferate without attachment to a solid substrate.

androgen Steroid hormone that stimulates development of male characteristics.

aneuploid (1) Describing a karyotype that deviates from diploid because of increases or decreases in the numbers of certain chromosomes. (2) Less commonly, describing a karyotype that carries structurally abnormal chromosomes.

angiogenesis Process by which new blood vessels are formed by sprouting from existing vessels; *also called* **neoangiogenesis** in certain circumstances. *Compare* **vasculogenesis**.

angiogenic factor Type of secreted growth factor that is specialized to induce angiogenesis.

angiogenic switch Shift by a mass of tumor cells from a state in which they are unable to induce neovascularization to one in which they exhibit this ability.

angiosarcoma Tumor of the cells that are precursors to endothelial cells.

annexin V A cellular protein that has strong affinity for binding of phosphatidylserine (PS); binding of this protein to the surface of intact cells

indicates that the usual segregation of PS to the inner leaflet of the bilayered plasma membrane has been disrupted, as occurs during apoptosis and other forms of cell death.

anoikis Form of apoptosis that is triggered by the failure of a cell to establish anchorage to a solid substrate, such as the extracellular matrix, or by loss of such anchorage.

anonymous (marker) Referring to a segment of genomic DNA that is not affiliated with any known gene or biological function.

anoxia State or environment in which oxygen is essentially absent.

antagonist Agent acting against another agent or process of interest. *See also* **agonist**.

antibody A soluble tetrameric protein that is produced by plasma cells of the immune system and is capable of recognizing and binding particular antigens with high specificity. *See also* **immunoglobulin**.

antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity A form of attack by cytotoxic immune cells, such as NK cells, that depends on the presence of antibody molecules bound to antigens displayed on the surface of the targeted cells.

antibody-mediated cellular phagocytosis Attack on targeted cells by phagocytic cells, such as macrophages, that is triggered by antibody molecules bound to antigens displayed on the surface of the targeted cells.

antigen (adj., **-genic**) Molecule or portion of a molecule, often an oligopeptide, that can be specifically recognized and bound by an antibody or a T-cell receptor or that provokes the production of an antibody. *See also* **immunogenic**.

antigen-presenting cells A class of cells—often termed professional antigen-presenting cells, including dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells—that present oligopeptide antigens via class I and II MHC molecules to other immunocytes, notably helper and cytotoxic T cells.

antimetabolite Compound, typically used as an anti-tumor cytotoxic drug, that acts through its ability to interfere with the synthesis or function of a normal cellular metabolite.

antisense RNA RNA molecules that, following introduction into or expression within cells, are capable of inhibiting the functions of targeted RNA molecules in those cells because the introduced RNAs have sequences complementary to those of the targeted RNAs and presumably form dsRNA molecules with them.

antiserum Serum that is produced by an animal exposed to a specific antigen or agent and contains antibodies that are able to recognize and bind that antigen or agent.

apatite Mineral component of bone composed of calcium phosphate crystals.

apex (adj., **apical**) Uppermost point of an object or collection of objects. *See also* **basal**.

apheresis Procedure involving the drawing of blood from a patient, the fractionation of the blood into plasma and various cellular components, the removal and purification of certain cellular components of the blood such as specific types of leukocytes, and the reintroduction of the remaining blood components into the patient's circulation. *See also* **leukapheresis.**

apical Referring to the surface of an epithelial cell that is facing an exposed surface of the epithelium such as its luminal surface.

apico–basal polarity Referring to the asymmetric organization of epithelial cells, often termed polarization, in which many proteins and subcellular structures, notably cytoplasmic and cell surface molecules, are preferentially localized toward either the apical surface (facing a lumen) or the basal surface (facing a basement membrane). *See* **polarity**.

APOBEC A class of cellular enzymes that mutate genomic sequences by deaminating genomic cytidine residues, thereby converting them into uridine residues, leading to C-to-T mutations.

apoptosis Complex program of cellular self-destruction, triggered by a variety of stimuli and involving the activation of caspase enzymes, which drive rapid fragmentation of diverse cellular structures and elimination of all breakdown products of a cell and phagocytosis of resulting cell fragments by neighboring cells or macrophages. *See also* **ferroptosis**, **necroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

apoptosome Multiprotein complex that consists of cytochrome *c* molecules and Apaf-1 and helps to initiate apoptosis by activating procaspase 9 into caspase 9. *See also* **caspase**.

apposed Physical entity located directly adjacent to a second one.

apposition Referring to the close physical positioning of one entity with another, such as one cell with another.

apurinic Referring to the product of depurination, in which the glycosidic bond linking a deoxyribose or ribose to a purine base is broken, leaving behind only the deoxyribose or ribose in the DNA or RNA, respectively. *See also* **depurination**.

apyrimidinic Referring to the product of depyrimidination, in which the glycosidic bond linking a deoxyribose or ribose to a pyrimidine base is broken, leaving behind only the deoxyribose or ribose in the DNA or RNA, respectively. *See also* **depyrimidination**.

aromatic Referring to an organic molecule that contains one or more benzene rings.

arrestin A protein involved in inhibiting or redirecting downstream signals of ligand-activated GPCRs.

arteriole A small artery that empties into capillaries.

artifact (adj., **artifactual**) A misleading observation or finding that results from the conditions or design of an experiment rather than from an intrinsic property of the entity being studied.

ascertainment bias Tendency of some conclusions or measurements to be strongly influenced by the observational tools that are used to generate them, including the ease or difficulty of applying such tools to a specific biological situation.

ascites (adj., **-itic**) Fluid that accumulates in the peritoneal cavity of some cancer patients, often containing malignant cells.

astrocytoma A glioma tumor deriving from astrocytes. *See* **glioma**.

asymmetric division Process whereby a mother cell, notably a stem cell, generates two daughters that reside in distinct states of differentiation; usually one daughter retains the phenotype of the mother cell while the second daughter acquires novel phenotypes or launches a program of differentiation. *See also* **self-renewal**, **symmetric division**, **stem cell**.

asynchronous Referring to a population of cells that are dispersed throughout the cell cycle during any point of time and therefore do not execute specific cell-cycle steps in a coordinated or synchronous manner.

ATAC-seq Procedure for mapping open chromatin by determining stretches of genomic DNA that are accessible for modification by the Tn5 transposase.

ataxia Loss of muscle coordination, often caused by cerebellar dysfunction.

atelomeric Lacking a telomere.

atrophy Shrinkage of a tissue, often caused by loss of viability of its component cells and resulting loss of normal cell numbers.

atypia Histopathological term for an abnormally appearing cell or collection of such cells.

autochthonous (1) Of native origin. (2) Referring to a tumor that arises within an organism (rather than from implanted cells or tumor fragments).

autocrine Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is released by a cell and proceeds to act upon the same cell (or same cell type)

that has released it. *Compare* **endocrine**, **exocrine**, **intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

autoimmune Referring to a process or disease in which the immune system attacks an organism's own normal cells and tissues. *See also* **autoreactive**.

autologous Referring to biological material, usually cells or tissues, that originates in a patient's own body (and may be reintroduced into that patient following some manipulation *ex vivo*).

autophagic cell death A form of cell death associated with autophagy in which dying cells sequester large portions of their cytoplasmic contents in autophagosomes. This form of cell death lacks the characteristic chromatin condensation seen in apoptosis. *See* **autophagosome, autophagy**.

autophagosome The specialized intracellular vesicle that is formed during the course of autophagy and encloses cytoplasmic organelles and other cellular products prior to fusion with lysosomes. *See also* **autophagy**.

autophagy A catabolic process whereby selected intracellular organelles and molecules are degraded by engulfment in autophagosomes that proceed to fuse with lysosomes in which degradation occurs, yielding metabolites that can be recycled for biosynthetic reactions.

autophosphorylation Phosphorylation of a protein molecule by its own associated kinase activity. *See also* **transphosphorylation**.

autoradiography Procedure for detecting radiolabeled molecules by placing them (or the samples carrying them) adjacent to a radiographic emulsion, which responds to radioactive decay by producing silver granules. *Also termed* **radioautography**.

autoreactive Referring to the ability of components of the adaptive immune system—including antibody molecules and lymphocytes—to recognize and react with antigens displayed by normal tissues, resulting in autoimmunity. *See also* **autoimmune**.

autosome A chromosome that is not a sex chromosome, i.e., neither an X nor a Y chromosome.

avidity Referring to the strength with which one molecule binds another, such as the interaction of an antibody molecule binding its cognate antigen(s).

axillary Referring to the armpit.

axon Long slender protrusion from the cell body of a neuron through which nerve signals are transmitted, often to other neurons.

B-cell receptor An immunoglobulin molecule that is displayed on the surface of a B cell that enables this cell to recognize and respond to specific antigens.

B cells Lymphocytes, also termed B lymphocytes, that develop in the bone marrow and are involved in generating the humoral immune response. *See also* **T cells**.

bacteriophage Virus that infects bacteria.

barcode Distinct labels, usually in the form of specific oligonucleotide DNA sequences, that are introduced into the individual cells within a cell population and used subsequently to identify each of these cells and their lineal descendants; the DNA sequences within a barcode library often represent randomly generated oligonucleotide sequences.

Barr body The condensed, inactive X chromosome found in each of the cells of females of placental mammals.

Barrett's esophagus Metaplasia in which squamous epithelium of the esophagus is replaced by secretory epithelial cells of a type normally found in the stomach. *See also* **metaplasia**.

basal (1) Referring to a lower physical location. (2) Referring to cells in an epithelium that are located away from an exposed surface of the epithelium such as its luminal surface. (3) Referring to the surface of an individual

epithelial cell that is located away from an exposed surface of the epithelium such as its luminal surface. (4) Referring to a (low) rate of activity or function observed in the absence of any activating stimulus. *See also* **apical**.

basal lamina *See* **basement membrane**.

basaloid Having the characteristics of a basal epithelial cell. *See also* **basal**.

base-excision repair A form of DNA repair that initially involves cleavage by a repair enzyme of the glycosidic bond between a base and a deoxyribose, leaving behind an abasic nucleotide. *Compare* **nucleotide-excision repair**.

basement membrane The specialized extracellular matrix that forms a sheet separating epithelial from stromal cells or endothelial cells from pericytes. *Also termed* **basal lamina**.

basophilic Referring to entities in a histopathological section, such as cell nuclei, that are stained preferentially by basic dyes such as hematoxylin.

benign (1) Describing a growth that is confined to a specific site within a tissue and gives no evidence of invading adjacent tissue. (2) Referring to an epithelial growth that has not penetrated through the basement membrane.

biallelic Referring to a state in which both copies of a gene are expressed or exert effects on phenotype. *See also* **monoallelic**.

bioavailability Proportion or amount of a substance that is available for absorption into cells and tissues or is able to exert biological effects on the cells of those tissues.

bioinformatics Science of using computational methods for analyzing biological information, notably complex sets of biological data.

biomarker A measurable property or parameter of a cell, tissue, or organism that provides information about the biological state of the entity

being analyzed; biomarkers can be used for stratification of disease subtypes and, in the clinic, for disease diagnosis or prognosis.

biopsy Retrieval of a sample of living tissue performed in order to understand the properties of the tissue using various analytical procedures.

biosynthesis Process by which new biological molecules are synthesized from precursor substrates via various biochemical reactions.

biotinylation Process of covalently attaching a biotin molecule to a protein or nucleic acid.

bispecific Able to specifically recognize or bind two objects simultaneously.

bispecific T-cell engager A re-engineered antibody-derived molecule that simultaneously binds a T cell displaying a T cell-specific cell surface antigen, often CD3, to a second cell, such as a targeted cancer cell that displays a distinct cell surface antigen; such an antibody is used to drive the physical linking and thus juxtaposition of the T cell with the targeted cell.

bisphosphonates Class of drugs, characterized by a chemical backbone with the structure P–C–P, that are incorporated into bone apatite and subsequently become available to poison osteoclasts that may later undertake to dissolve the bone, thereby liberating the previously incorporated toxic bisphosphonates.

bistable Referring to a control device or a system that resides stably in either one of two alternative states.

blast Term used as prefix or suffix, indicating a relatively undifferentiated or embryonic precursor cell.

blast crisis Clinical state occurring when a hematopoietic tumor that has been under therapeutic control relapses into a highly aggressive stage of disease progression in which the erupting tumor cells are in a primitive state of differentiation. *See* **blast**.

blastocoel Inner cavity present in a blastocyst.

blastocyst An early stage of vertebrate embryogenesis in which the embryo consists largely of an outer layer of cells enclosing an inner cavity that contains a cell mass destined to form the embryo.

bleb A small, bubble-like herniation through a membrane such as the plasma membrane.

blood–brain barrier The barrier created by specialized endothelial cells and basement membrane that operates, together with astrocytes, to prevent transport of solutes between the blood and the parenchyma of the brain.

body-mass index Anatomical metric calculated by dividing the weight of the body (measured in kilograms) divided by the square of height in meters.

bona fide Genuine, authentic.

Boyden chamber A cylindrical two-chambered plastic vessel in which the upper and lower chambers are separated by a membrane whose porosity allows molecules or, alternatively, whole cells to pass between them.

brachytherapy Form of radiotherapy in which a radioactive source carried within a small capsule or vessel is implanted in a patient’s tissue in order to generate localized high-intensity irradiation.

breakpoint Location in a chromosomal region or gene at which it becomes fused through chromosomal translocation with another chromosomal region or gene.

bronchial Referring to a major airway of the lung.

bronchoalveolar Subtype of lung adenocarcinoma usually arising in peripheral areas of the lung and referring to tissues derived from small airways termed bronchioles and associated alveoli. *See also* **alveolus**.

bronchoscope A flexible tube that can be inserted into the major air passages of the lungs and allows visual surveillance of the walls of these passages.

buccal Referring to the tissues of the oral cavity, specifically the epithelial lining of the cheek.

bypass polymerase A DNA polymerase that will copy over an unrepaired lesion in the template strand of the DNA, “guessing” (often in an error-prone fashion) the nucleotides that should be incorporated into the nascent complementary DNA strand in order to avoid undesirable stalling of replication forks.

bystander effect Mechanism through which normal cells or tissues near to those directly targeted are also affected.

bystander mutation *See* **passenger mutation**.

C-terminus (adj., **-al**) End of a protein chain that is synthesized last. *See also* **N-terminus**.

cachexia Physiological state, often seen late in cancer development, in which the patient loses appetite and suffers wasting of tissues throughout the body.

café au lait spots Coffee-with-milk–colored spots on the skin that are seen characteristically in patients suffering the neurofibromatosis type 1 syndrome.

calreticulin A cell surface protein whose display by a cell incites the phagocytosis of the cell by macrophages.

canaries in the mine Referring to the use of a highly sensitive sentinel to detect and report an early warning.

cancer (1) A clinical condition that is manifested by the presence of one or another type of neoplastic growth. (2) A malignant tumor.

Cancer Dependency Map The product of an effort focused on systematically cataloging the key roles of genes throughout the entire human genome whose inactivation by CRISPR/Cas9 leads to the death of cells belonging to specific cancer cell lines.

cancer of unknown primary A tumor, often a metastasis, whose histopathological appearance does not permit a determination of its tissue-of-origin within a patient. *See also* **primary tumor**.

cancer stem cell A neoplastic cell that resides within a tumor, is able to both self-renew and generate non-stem-cell progeny, and can be defined experimentally by its ability to seed a tumor when implanted in a suitable host such as a mouse. *Also termed* **tumor-initiating cell**.

canonical Referring to the most widely accepted representation of an entity or process, often the one that is initially discovered and characterized. *See also* **non-canonical**.

capsid Protein coat of a virus particle that envelops and protects the viral genome.

carboxy (1) Referring to the end of an oligopeptide or protein chain that is completed last. (2) Referring to the ionizable group of an organic acid. *See also* **amino**.

carcinogen An agent that contributes to the formation of a tumor.

carcinogenic Capable of causing or contributing to the causation of cancer.

carcinoma (adj., **-omatous**) A cancer arising from epithelial cells.

cardia Region of the stomach adjacent to its junction with the esophagus.

caretaker A gene that encodes a protein that maintains the integrity of the genome and thereby prevents the accumulation of mutations and, in turn, the formation of neoplastic cells. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

cascade model (of metastasis) A hypothetical model that posits that initially formed metastatic colonies rather than corresponding primary tumors are the sources of a secondary wave of metastatic dissemination and thus metastatic colonies.

caspase A protease that contains cysteine in its catalytic site and cleaves substrate proteins after aspartic acid residues. *See also* **apoptosome**.

CAT scan A clinical procedure in which multiple successive two-dimensional sections of a patient's body or specific tissue are imaged by X-rays and integrated with one another using informatics in order to provide a three-dimensional survey of an extensive portion of a patient's body or tissue.

catabolism (adj., **catabolic**) Metabolic process involving the breakdown of biological molecules, often used to generate energy or the precursors of new molecules. *See also* **anabolism**.

catalase An enzyme that catalyzes the reaction by which hydrogen peroxide is decomposed to water and oxygen.

catalytic cleft Region of a protein, usually an accessible cavity, in which enzymatic catalysis is accomplished by this protein.

CD3 Antigen representing a protein complex associated with the T-cell receptor and used to identify T cells and a subset of NK cells.

CD4 Cell surface protein displayed by helper T cells that enables them to recognize MHC-II proteins on the surface of professional antigen-presenting cells.

CD8 Cell surface protein displayed by cytotoxic T cells that enables them to recognize MHC-I proteins on the surface of cells that they may thereafter target for destruction.

CD20 Antigen that is displayed on the surface of multiple cell types of the B-cell lineage.

CD45 The common leukocyte antigen expressed by all cells of the hematopoietic lineage except platelets and erythrocytes.

CD47 Cell surface protein displayed by various cell types that discourages attack and phagocytosis by macrophages.

CD antigens Cell surface antigens that were initially characterized in human leukocytes in order to determine their immunophenotypes and later

determined for non-leukocyte cell types as well; by 2016, 371 distinct human CD antigens and comparable number of mouse CD antigens had been identified.

celecoxib A clinically employed nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug that strongly inhibits the COX-2 enzyme.

cell-autonomous Referring to a trait or behavior of a cell that is governed by its own genome and internal physiology and not by its ongoing interactions with other cells and its tissue microenvironment.

cell culture Procedure for propagating cells in various types of vessels using chemically defined media, usually with admixed serum.

cell cycle The sequence of changes in a cell from the moment when it is created by cell division, continuing through a period in which its contents including chromosomal DNA are doubled, and ending with the subsequent cell division and formation of two daughter cells.

cell cycle clock Network of signaling proteins in the nucleus that regulate and orchestrate progression of the cell through its growth-and-division cycle. *See also* **cell cycle**.

cell fate The entrance of a less-differentiated cell into a specific differentiation lineage and eventual differentiated state, often determined by a cell long before such a cell manifests specific markers of such a state.

cell-heritable Trait that is transmitted from a mother cell to one or both of its daughters; such heritability may result from genetic mutation or nongenetic mechanisms.

cell line Strain of cells that has been adapted for indefinite propagation in culture.

cell-of-origin The fully normal cell that serves as the ancestor of all the neoplastic cells within a tumor, i.e., their last common normal ancestor.

cellular immune response The arm of the immune system that depends on the ability of specific cell types, such as B cells, cytotoxic T cells, natural killer cells, and macrophages, to recognize and respond to specific entities or agents, notably those expressing certain antigens; such recognition may be followed by the immune cell-mediated destruction of the recognized entities, including abnormal cells and infectious agents. *See also* **humoral immune response**.

cellularity The proportion of the volume of a tumor that is represented by living cells rather than extracellular matrix and cellular debris.

central tolerance Process by which immature T-cells recognizing self-antigens are eliminated in the thymus. *Compare* **peripheral tolerance**.

centriole Component of a centrosome from which spindle fibers radiate during mitosis and meiosis.

centromere Region of a chromosome that holds the two chromatids together and that binds, via a kinetochore, with mitotic or meiotic spindle fibers.

centrosome A body in the cytoplasm containing a pair of centrioles, ancillary proteins, and outward radiating microtubules that functions to organize one-half of a mitotic spindle. *See also* **centriole**, **spindle**.

chain-terminating nucleotide A nucleotide that lacks a 3′-OH group, which is required for the formation of a phosphodiester bond between two nucleotides. The insertion of a chain-terminating nucleotide causes DNA polymerase to cease extension due to the inability to form a new phosphodiester bond with an incoming nucleotide.

chaperone *See* **molecular chaperone**.

checkpoint (1) Control mechanism that ensures that the next step in a process does not proceed until a series of prerequisites and conditions have been fulfilled. Such prerequisites may include, as examples, the successful completion of all previous steps during cell-cycle progression or the integrity of the cell genome. (2) Control mechanism that limits or constrains

the immune-mediated attack on targeted cells. *See also* **immune checkpoint**.

chemokine (1) A polypeptide that serves as an attractant for motile cells, notably leukocytes, via chemotaxis. (2) More narrowly, a member of a family of low–molecular-weight (8–10 kD) secreted proteins, most of which contain four cysteine residues in evolutionarily conserved sites. *See also* **chemotaxis**.

chemo-refractory Resistant or unresponsive to treatment by chemotherapy.

chemotaxis (adj., **-tactic**) Movement of a cell toward high concentrations of a soluble attractant such as a chemokine or growth factor. *See also* **chemokine**, **haptotaxis**.

chemotherapy Use of introduced low–molecular-weight drugs to treat a cancer, often because they have cytotoxic effects on proliferating cancer cells.

chimera Organism or molecule in which different parts or tissues derive from genetically distinct parents or genetically distinct origins.

chimeric antibody *See* **chimerized**.

chimeric antigen receptor Cell surface antigen-binding receptor generated by recombinant DNA in which antigen-binding and transmembrane domains have been fused with segments of intracellular signal-emitting domains, resulting in strong potentiation of antigen-provoked signaling within a T cell.

chimerization Process whereby a donor cell introduced into a host embryo —usually of a different genotype—is able to insert itself into that embryo and participate in the formation of some of the subsequently formed tissues arising from that embryo.

chimerized (1) Referring to the protein product of a re-engineered gene in which two portions of the protein derive from two distinct sources, such as two distinct species. (2) Describing an antibody molecule whose constant

(C) region amino acid sequences have been replaced by the homologous sequences from another species, e.g., one in which a mouse C region is replaced by a human C region.

ChIP-seq Procedure for determining chromosomal DNA sequences that are bound to specific proteins by immunoprecipitating the proteins of interest together with bound DNA followed by sequencing of co-precipitated DNA.

cholangiocarcinoma Tumor of the bile ducts in the liver, sometimes termed cholangiosarcoma.

chromatid A half chromosome that exists after S phase and before M phase; paired chromatids are separated at M phase, whereupon each becomes a chromosome.

chromatin Complex of DNA, RNA, and protein molecules that together constitute chromosomes.

chromogenic A chemical that generates a visible pigment upon enzymatic alteration; *sometimes called* **chromagenic**.

chromophore A chemical entity that serves to emit light, usually colored light visible via microscopy.

chromothripsis The presence of multiple chromosomal rearrangements usually limited to a single chromosomal region and suggesting the involvement of an initial catastrophic shattering of a chromosomal domain followed by rejoining of the fragmented segments in random order and orientation. *See also* **kataegis**.

chronic myelogenous leukemia An excess of the cells originating in the bone marrow that are precursors of granulocytes; these cells accumulate in large numbers in the blood of patients. *See also* **granulocyte**.

chymotryptic Referring to proteolytic reaction similar to that of chymotrypsin that cleaves protein substrates adjacent to hydrophobic amino acids.

cilium (pl., **cilia**) A cellular organelle that protrudes from the surface of a eukaryotic cell, is wrapped by a lipid bilayer, and contains in its core a unique arrangement of cytoskeletal proteins; a cilium may either be motile or non-motile. *See also* **primary cilium**.

circos plot Graphic convention in which the chromosomes of a cell, usually of human origin, are plotted in a circular array (often arrayed by increasing chromosome number ranging from Chromosomes 1 to 22 plus X and Y), in which translocations are indicated as arcs connecting participating chromosomal regions, and in which localized changes in copy number, chromosome structure, and mutational status are indicated in concentric outer circles.

circulating tumor cell A neoplastic cell that has entered into the general circulation following intravasation and dwells in the circulation for a brief period of time before being trapped in microvessels or eliminated by components of the immune system.

cis (1) Referring to an effect on a genetic segment exerted by the actions of a physically linked genetic segment. (2) Referring to a structural configuration of a molecule, often a complex organic molecule, in which two moieties are oriented in the same direction or on the same side of a plane. *See also* **trans**.

cistrome The entire set of targeted genes present in a genome that are acted upon by (a trans-acting) transcription factor. *See* **trans-acting**.

citric acid cycle *See* **tricarboxylic acid cycle**.

class switching Gene rearrangement occurring in an immunoglobulin gene locus in which an already-formed antigen-binding variable region-encoding sequence is switched from its juxtaposition with one constant region-encoding segment to another constant region-encoding segment; such switching enables one variable region of an immunoglobulin to be expressed in a number of alternative classes of immunoglobulins and related receptors.

clinical presentation *See* **presentation**.

clonal expansion Process by which a cell that has acquired a more advantageous phenotype generates a large population of lineal descendant cells, which in aggregate constitute a clone; such clonal populations may be generated during the process of tumor progression or in lymphocytes that are stimulated to proliferate by encounter with an antigen that is cognate with the cell surface receptor that they display.

clonal hematopoiesis Development in hematopoietic cell lineages of clonal populations of cells in which the constituent cells share a common somatic mutation or set of mutations that appears to favor their preferential clonal expansion in the hematopoietic system; such cells have nonetheless not developed a frankly neoplastic phenotype although they may be poised to do so.

clonal succession Process by which one clonal population of cells displaces and thus succeeds a preexisting clonal population of cells; by implication, the displacing cell population has acquired a more advantageous phenotype relative to that of the cell population that is being displaced. *See also* **clonal expansion**.

clonality Condition describing the state of a population of cells, all of which descend from a common progenitor. The cells within this population share a common genetic or epigenetic alteration inherited from this progenitor.

clone (adj., **clonal**) (1) Copy of a gene that has been isolated by recombinant DNA procedures and amplified into a large number of identical copies. (2) Population of cells, all of which descend from a common progenitor cell. (3) Offspring of a procedure of asexual reproduction in which the genome of a somatic diploid cell of an organism is used to form a cell that functions equivalently to a fertilized egg that may itself develop thereafter into an entire organism.

co-activator Protein that associates with a DNA-binding transcription factor and causes, directly or indirectly, the modification of nearby chromatin proteins and a resulting stimulatory effect on the transcription of an adjacent gene. *See also* **co-repressor**.

co-carcinogen An agent or substance that, while not carcinogenic on its own, collaborates with another agent to enable carcinogenesis to proceed.

cognate Corresponding to or related to.

co-inhibitory (1) Referring to a molecule or process that operates in concert with a major inhibitory process to ensure completion of the latter or to amplify its effects. (2) Receptor that, when displayed in conjunction with a T-cell receptor, will dampen the duration of subsequent T-cell activation; such a receptor will recognize a ligand presented by a potential target cell. *See also* **co-stimulatory**.

cold tumor A tumor that lacks evidence of extensive immune cell infiltration and inflammation.

collective invasion Process whereby a cohesive mass of invasive cancer cells invades in a coordinated fashion into nearby tissue.

collective metastasis Process whereby a cluster of circulating tumor cells function as the founders of a metastatic colony, yielding a polyclonal growth formed by the lineal descendants of the multiple clustered disseminating tumor cells.

colonization Proliferation of cells within a micrometastasis that leads to the formation of a macroscopic metastasis.

colonoscopy Clinical procedure used to visually survey the wall of the colon via insertion of an optical tube through the rectum, employed used to detect previously undiagnosed polyps.

colony (1) Cluster of cells, usually of clonal origin. (2) Cluster of cells that is able to proliferate in the absence of anchorage to a solid substrate.

colorectal Referring to the lower gastrointestinal tract including the colon and rectum.

commensal Referring to a long-term interaction between two organisms, such as gastrointestinal bacteria and their mammalian hosts, which reflects

symbiosis between the organisms and may accrue to the benefit of both of them.

commitment Decision made by a relatively undifferentiated cell to enter into one or another differentiation lineage and generate a limited repertoire of descendant differentiated cell types.

committed progenitor Less differentiated progenitor cell that is committed to spawning a population of descendant cells that are able to differentiate into a limited repertoire of distinct cell types. *See also* **progenitor cell**.

comparative genomic hybridization Procedure in which the copy numbers of a large array of genomic sequences from cells of interest are compared with the copy numbers of the corresponding sequences in normal reference DNA in order to determine whether the various sequences being analyzed are present in the cells of interest in increased or decreased copy number.

compartment Physical or virtual functional space that contains all cells of a given type within a tissue, e.g., a stem cell compartment.

competitive inhibition Mechanism whereby an inhibitory molecule reduces enzyme function by binding to the same site in the enzyme that is bound by the usual substrate of this enzyme.

complement Group of collaborating plasma proteins that can associate with antibody molecules bound to cell surface antigens, such as antigens displayed by bacterial, yeast, or mammalian cells; once attached via these antibody molecules to a cell surface, complement can kill the cell by introducing pores into the nearby cell membrane, including the plasma membrane of mammalian cells.

complementarity-determining region The variable domains of the heavy and of the light chains of antibody molecules and of the T-cell receptors that recognize and bind antigens; each of these regions is formed from three oligopeptide loops, meaning that, as an example, an antibody molecule possesses altogether six such loops in each of its two antigen-binding domains.

complementarity State in which two nucleic acid molecules can anneal to one another via hydrogen bonding because their respective base sequences are complementary with one another.

complementary DNA DNA strand that is produced on an RNA template by reverse transcriptase.

complementation Ability of two mutant genotypes, when coexisting in the same cell or organism, to compensate for each other's defects and thereby create a wild-type phenotype, indicating that the two genotypes carry changes in distinct genes and therefore can be classified as belonging to distinct complementation groups. *See also* **complementation groups**.

complementation group A set of genes or alleles, all of which behave identically when tested for their ability to complement the genetic defects present in a set of mutant organisms or cells. *See also* **complementation**.

complete carcinogen An agent that can act as both an initiator and a promoter of tumor progression. *See* **initiation, promotion**.

complete response Elimination of all detectable neoplastic tissue following an anti-cancer therapy. *See also* **partial response**.

computed tomography Procedure in which imaging generated by successive X-ray scans of sections of a tissue or of the entire body is processed digitally to generate a three-dimensional image of the tissue or of the entire body, sometimes termed computed axial tomography.

concatemer (1) A molecule resulting from end-to-end joining of multiple copies of a molecular species, such as a DNA sequence or a viral DNA genome. (2) DNA molecules that are topologically intertwined in a fashion that can only be resolved by the actions of a topoisomerase. *See also* **topoisomerase**.

conditional Referring to a phenotypic state or genetic change that only occurs under certain conditions, often in response to physiological signals or those induced experimentally. *See also* **constitutive**.

conditioned medium Culture medium that arises after cells have been propagated *in vitro* for a period of time; the secretion of various factors into the medium by these cells then imparts to this medium biological or biochemical properties.

confluence State reached when cells in monolayer culture proliferate until they fill available space at the bottom surface of a Petri dish.

congenic Referring to a genotype that differs from another only by the presence of a single or a small number of identified alleles.

congenital Referring to a condition that is already present at birth and may persist thereafter.

constant region Portion of an antibody molecule that is present identically by all members of a class of these molecules, e.g., all immunoglobulin gamma molecules. *Compare* **variable region**.

constitutive Describing a state of activity that occurs at a constant level and is therefore not responsive to modulation by physiologic regulators, or a type of control that yields such a constant output. *See also* **conditional**.

constitutive heterochromatin Regions of chromosomes that are permanently in a heterochromatic and thus transcriptionally inactive state, in contrast to facultative heterochromatin, which may become euchromatic in response to developmental or physiological signals. *See also* **facultative heterochromatin, euchromatin**.

constitutive proteasome Term used to describe the proteasome that is present in a wide variety of cell types and is responsible for the degradation of most cellular proteins; this class of proteasomes is distinguished from immunoproteasomes that degrade intracellular proteins in order to generate the oligopeptides that are loaded onto Class I MHC/HLA proteins and presented on the cell surface. *See also* **proteasome**, **immunoproteasome**.

contact inhibition Behavior exhibited by cells propagated in monolayer culture, reflecting the halt in cell proliferation when adjacent cells touch one another. *Also termed* **density inhibition**.

contralateral Referring to the opposite side of the body of a bilaterally symmetrical organism.

convergent evolution The independent development by multiple species of a common trait during the course of evolution.

copy choice Genetic recombination mechanism whereby, during the replication of DNA on one chromosome, the replication machinery switches to using the DNA sequences on another chromosome as template.

copy number variation Alteration involving the number of copies of a gene or chromosomal region present in a genome, usually the genome of a neoplastic cell that has undergone somatic mutation.

co-receptor Cell surface protein that is displayed in conjunction with a nearby receptor and modulates the function of the latter by modulating its ligand specificity or signaling powers.

co-repressor Protein that associates with a DNA-binding transcription factor and causes, directly or indirectly, the modification of nearby chromatin proteins and a resulting inhibitory effect on the transcription of an adjacent gene. *See also* **co-activator**.

cortex (adj., **cortical**) The region of the cytoplasm that immediately underlies the plasma membrane. *See also* **cortical actin**.

cortical actin Referring to the outer layer of actin filaments that lie just below and in a plane parallel with that of the nearby plasma membrane. *See also* **cortex**.

co-stimulatory (1) Referring to molecules or processes that operate in concert with a major stimulatory process to ensure completion of the latter or to amplify its effects. (2) Referring to a receptor that, when acting in concert with a T-cell receptor, can act to stimulate the resulting T-cell response; such a receptor will recognize a ligand displayed by a potential target cell. *See also* **co-inhibitory**.

co-translational Process occurring during the course of and coordinated with translation.

counterstain Histological procedure in which the microscopic entity of interest is viewed in the context of or is contrasted with other entities by staining the latter with a different dye or other substance.

CpG island Cluster of CpG dinucleotide sequences located in the vicinity of a gene promoter; the increased methylation of these CpGs may lead to transcriptional repression of the nearby gene. *See also* ***de novo* methyltransferase**.

Cre A bacterial recombinase enzyme that catalyzes the site-specific recombination between two loxP sites, resulting in the excision of the DNA sequences between them. *See* **loxP**.

crisis (1) Cellular state arising when cells lose telomeres of a length that is required to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA, resulting in the end-to-end fusion of chromosomes, karyotypic chaos, and widespread cell death by apoptosis. (2) Clinical state when patients whose tumors have been under therapeutic control relapse into a highly aggressive phase of disease.

CRISPR/Cas9 A genetic procedure in which a targeted gene within a cell is altered with specificity and accuracy achieved by associated sequence-specific guide RNAs and a specialized nuclease. *See also* **knock-out**, **knock-in**.

cross-immunity Immunity that has initially arisen against a particular antigen or infectious agent that is subsequently found to confer immunity against another distinct antigen or infectious agent.

cross-presentation The presentation by antigen-acquiring cells, notably dendritic cells, of peptides acquired from other cells and cellular debris on the MHC-I cell surface molecules of the antigen-acquiring cells; such presentation occurs concomitantly with peptide presentation by these cells via their MHC-II molecules.

cross-reactive Referring to the ability of an antibody to recognize and/or bind antigens other than the antigen of interest.

cruciferous Referring to a closely related group of vegetables, including kale, collard greens, cabbage, brussels sprouts, kohlrabi, and cauliflower.

cryoablation The elimination of a tissue or a group of cells by directed localized freezing.

crypt A deep cavity in the wall of the small or large intestine in which enterocyte stem cell proliferation and initial differentiation occur.

cutaneous Referring to the skin.

cyclin A protein that associates with a cyclin-dependent kinase and serves as a regulatory subunit of this kinase by activating its catalytic activity and directing it to appropriate substrates. *See also* **cyclin-dependent kinase**.

cyclin-dependent kinase Type of serine/threonine kinase deployed by the cell cycle machinery that depends on an associated cyclin protein for proper functioning. *See also* **cyclin**.

cycloheximide Drug that prevents the forward movement of ribosomes down mRNA templates, thereby blocking protein synthesis.

cyclooxygenase An enzyme that converts arachidonic acid to a number of prostaglandins including prostaglandin E_2.

cyclopia Malformation of the head resulting in embryos with only a single, centrally located eye.

-cyte Suffix indicating a type of cell.

cytoarchitecture Physical structure of a cell.

cytochrome P450enzymes A family of enzymes that function to oxidize steroids, fatty acids, and xenobiotics, and thereby aid in the clearance of various compounds.

cytocidal Referring to an effect or influence that causes cell killing. *See also* **cytopathic**, **cytostatic**, **cytotoxic**.

cytogenetics The study of cell or organismic genetics by examining the microscopic appearance of the chromosomes within individual cells.

cytokeratin Forms of the intermediate filament protein keratin that constitute part of the cytoskeleton of an epithelial cell; term used to distinguish it from the keratins that constitute hair, nails, and feathers.

cytokine (1) Secreted protein that operates like growth factors to stimulate or inhibit various cell types, notably those constituting various branches of the hematopoietic and immune systems. (2) Less commonly, secreted proteins that convey signals between cells, including mitogenic growth factors.

cytokine release syndrome Condition representing acute systemic inflammation associated with fever and often the dysfunction of multiple organs throughout the body, which is often life-threatening.

cytokinesis The late step of mitosis involving the separation of the two daughter cell cytoplasms from one another.

cytology (adj., **-logical**) (1) Analysis of subcellular structure under the microscope. (2) The microscopic appearance of a cell.

cytopathic Causing damage or death to a cell. *See also* **cytocidal**, **cytostatic**, **cytotoxic**.

cytoskeleton Network of filamentous proteins in the cell cytoplasm that provides it with structure and rigidity enables it to exhibit motile behavior and is formed from polymerized actin, tubulin, and intermediate filament proteins such as cytokeratins.

cytosol Portion of the cytoplasm that contains soluble material untethered to either cytoskeleton or membranes including those associated with organelles.

cytostasis The halting of cell proliferation. *See also* **cytostatic.**

cytostatic Referring to an influence or a force that inhibits cell proliferation without necessarily having any effect on cell viability. *See also* **cytocidal**, **cytopathic**, **cytotoxic**.

cytotoxic Referring to the ability of an agent to kill cells; such an agent might be, for example, a drug or another type of cell. *See also* **cytocidal**, **cytopathic**, **cytostatic**.

D-loop The loop of ssDNA created in telomeres through invasion of the telomeric dsDNA by the 5′ ssDNA overhang of the G-rich strand; *also termed* **displacement loop**.

de novo (1) Arising or formed anew. (2) Occurring for the first time.

***de novo* methyltransferase** An enzyme that attaches a methyl group to the C of a CpG dinucleotide in the absence of methylation of the complementary CpG.

deacetylase Enzyme that removes acetate groups from substrates, notably those groups that were previously attached by acetyltransferases. *See also* **acetyltransferase**.

deamination Loss or removal of an amine group from a larger molecule such as a DNA base.

death receptor A family of mammalian transmembrane receptors that function at the cell surface to initiate apoptosis through the extrinsic apoptotic program following binding of their cognate ligands. Examples of death receptors are TNFR1, FAS, DR3, DR4, and DR5.

debulk To reduce in overall size with the intent of removing the great majority of a mass such as a solid tumor.

decatenation Untangling and separation of topologically intertwined circular dsDNA molecules from one another, often accomplished by the topoisomerase II enzyme. *See also* **topoisomerase**.

deconvolute Mathematical manipulation that allows the dissection of complex datasets into distinct subsets of data, often yielding an assessment of the contributions of the individual subsets to the initial data set being analyzed.

decoy receptor A nonsignaling protein that binds and sequesters a ligand (e.g., a growth factor), thereby diverting the ligand from binding and activating its functional cognate signaling receptor.

dedifferentiation Reversion of a more differentiated cell to the phenotype of a less differentiated cell, such as its stem cell precursor.

degranulation Discharge of the contents of cytoplasmic granules into the extracellular space in response to a physiological stimulus.

delayed early Referring to genes whose expression depends on prior *de novo* protein synthesis and is induced with some delay following growth factor stimulation of a factor-starved cell. *See also* **immediate early**.

demineralize To dissolve the inorganic apatite (i.e., calcium phosphate) component, notably of bone.

denaturation Process that causes a molecule, such as a macromolecule (DNA, RNA, or protein), to lose its natural three-dimensional structure.

dendritic cell An innate immune cell that phagocytoses fragments of cells or infectious agents and then proceeds within lymphoid tissues to present oligopeptides derived from these phagocytosed particles to several types of T cells.

dendrogram Diagram in which closely related entities, such as genes, cells, or organisms, are placed close to one another on the branches of a multibranched tree on which the lengths of branches and the number of branch points provide an indication of the degree of relatedness. *See also* **hierarchical clustering**.

density inhibition *See* **contact inhibition**.

denuding Removal or stripping away of a tissue or population of cells, such as those forming an epithelium.

dependency Property of a tumor or tumor cell that reflects its continued dependence on an alteration acquired during the course of its formation and, in turn, renders it vulnerable to a specific type of therapeutic intervention.

dependency map The product of an effort to systematically catalog the effects of chemical and genetic perturbations on a large set of human cancer cell lines. The chemical perturbations derive from measurements of large collections of low–molecular-weight drug molecules, whereas the genetic perturbations derive from CRISPR/Cas9-mediated systematic inactivation of a large collection of genes in the human genome.

depurination Breakage of the glycosidic bond that links purine bases to the deoxyribose or ribose of DNA or RNA, respectively.

depyrimidination Breakage of the glycosidic bond that links pyrimidine bases to the deoxyribose or ribose of DNA or RNA, respectively.

derivitization The alteration via synthetic organic chemistry of the molecular structure of an existing drug molecule, usually through the covalent linkage of side groups, and undertaken with the intention of improving its pharmacological properties.

dermis (adj., **dermal**) Thick layer of stromal cells, largely fibroblasts, found beneath the epidermal keratinocyte layer of the skin.

desmoplastic Referring to a hard extracellular matrix that is rich in collagen and myofibroblasts.

detoxify To render a previously toxic substance harmless.

development The processes of growth, differentiation, and morphogenesis that enable a zygote to develop into a fully formed embryo and thereafter a newborn.

diagnostic bias Tendency of an observation or conclusion to be influenced by the specific properties or applications of a diagnostic technique rather than to accurately reflect an intrinsic property of the entity (such as a disease) under examination.

diapedesis Complex sequence of steps enabling leukocytes to extravasate rapidly from the lumen of a blood vessel through the vessel wall into the underlying tissue parenchyma.

dicentric Referring to a chromosome or chromatid that bears two distinct centromeres.

differentiation Process whereby a cell acquires a specialized phenotype, such as a phenotype characteristic of cells in a particular tissue.

differentiation antigen Protein or other product that is expressed only in a specific stage of differentiation of a normal tissue and that, for various reasons, may not induce immune tolerance.

dimer Molecular complex composed of two subunits.

dioxygenase An oxygenase that catalyzes the introduction of both atoms of molecular oxygen into the substrate being oxidized.

diploid Describing a genome in which all chromosomes are present in pairs, one of each pair being inherited from a father and the other from a mother, with the exception of the sex chromosomes, which in placental mammals are paired in either the XX or the XY configuration.

dirty drug A drug species that inhibits molecules within a cell in addition to its intended major target.

discoldin domain receptor A cell surface tyrosine kinase receptor that recognizes and binds extracellular collagen as its activating cognate ligand.

disease-free survival Time period elapsed following initiation of treatment during which there are no apparent symptoms of the disease under treatment. *See also* **overall survival** and **progression-free survival**.

displacement loop *See* **D-loop**.

disseminated Spread or seeded, often widely throughout the body.

DNA chip An array of thousands of sequence-specific DNA segments, constituting a DNA microarray, that is mounted on a solid support, such as a microscope slide. *See also* **microarray**.

dominance *See* **dominant**.

dominant (1) Referring to one of several alternative traits (phenotypes) that can be specified by a genetic locus; when the locus is heterozygous and carries information specifying two distinct traits, the dominant trait will be the one actually exhibited. (2) Describing an allele of a gene that determines phenotype in spite of the concomitant presence of a second allele, considered to be recessive, that specifies a different, alternative phenotype. *See also* **recessive**.

dominant-interfering *See* **dominant-negative**.

dominant-negative Referring to a mutant allele of a gene that, when co-expressed with the wild-type allele of the gene, is able to interfere with the functioning of the latter. *Also termed* **dominant-interfering**.

dorsal (1) Term for the surface of a cell that is exposed upward away from the underlying physical substrate to which the cell is attached, e.g., the bottom surface of a Petri dish. (2) Anatomical term referring to the back side of an organism such as a mammal. *See also* **ventral**.

dose escalation The practice of progressively increasing the dosage of a drug in an investigatory clinical trial in order to determine efficacy of the drug under study at various applied doses and, at the same time, revealing the toxicity of such doses in order define the maximum tolerated dose. *See also* **maximum tolerated dose.**

dose-limiting toxicity Side effect toxicity that dictates the highest dosage of a drug that can be applied without creating unacceptable levels of such toxicity in a patient. *See also* **maximum tolerated dose**.

double-minute A chromosomal segment that becomes separated from the chromosome in which it normally resides and is able to perpetuate itself as an extrachromosomal particle unlinked to a centromere, so termed because it is visualized at metaphase as small spots that are doubled like the chromatids prior to anaphase.

draining lymph node A lymph node that receives cells and debris via a lymph duct that drains lymphatic fluid from a specific tissue or sector of a tissue.

driver gene A gene that is affected by driver mutations and is identified because the mutations affecting this gene occur more frequently in tumors than would be expected by random chance; driver genes are mutated on a recurring basis in the genomes of multiple, independently arising tumors, ostensibly because these mutations confer advantageous cell phenotypes. *See* **driver mutation**.

driver mutation Mutation creating an allele of a gene that is advantageous for the cell that sustains it and results in clonal expansion of the progeny bearing mutant alleles of this gene. *See also* **driver gene**, **passenger gene**.

drug holiday Defined period when drug treatment is halted.

druggable Referring to a molecular species, such as a protein, that has the structural and functional properties suggesting that low–molecular-weight therapeutic drug compounds can be developed that specifically interact with and perturb its functioning; the structural properties include, most prominently, a drug-binding pocket that should permit high-affinity, multivalent associations between a drug molecule and the targeted protein.

dual-address Referring to signaling that involves the translocation of a protein from one intracellular site to another, e.g., from the cytoplasm to the nucleus.

duodenum (adj., **duodenal**) The section of the small intestine beginning immediately after the stomach and extending as far as the jejunum.

dysbiosis Referring to a shift in the representation of microbial species forming a microbiome away from its natural or optimal configuration.

dyskeratosis congenita An inherited syndrome involving compromise of multiple organs caused by a congenital inability to maintain telomeres in multiple cell types; the disease is often manifest in bone marrow failure and elevated risk of developing certain types of cancer.

dyskerin Protein that is a component of the shelterin complex whose absence causes, among other defects, a loss of proper telomere maintenance and the syndrome of dyskeratosis congenita. *See* **dyskeratosis congenita, shelterin**.

dysplasia (adj., **-plastic**) A premalignant tissue composed of abnormally appearing cells forming a tissue architecture that deviates from normal.

ectoderm Outermost layer of cells in an early chordate embryo that gives rise to the skin and nervous system.

ectodomain Portion of a cell surface protein that protrudes from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space.

ectopic (1) Referring to the expression of a gene or protein in a location or physiological situation where it normally would not be expressed. (2) Referring to the presence of cells or tissues in an anatomical site where they would not naturally be found in the body. *See also* **orthotopic**.

effector An agent (such as a protein) that carries out the actual work of a biological process rather than simply regulating it.

effector function The functions of an immune cell that enable it to interact with various antigen-displaying entities in the body and, in response, execute a specific physiological operation.

effector loop Region of a Ras protein that participates in direct physical interaction with one of its effector proteins; such interaction usually leads to the physical relocalization and/or functional activation of an effector protein.

effector T cells Referring to a group of relatively short-lived T cells types that actively respond to physiological stimuli by executing one or another immunological function; these include CD4+, CD8+, and T_{reg} cells.

efferent Referring to outgoing signals. *See also* **afferent**.

efficacy Measure of the ability of a therapeutic agent to elicit a desired clinical response.

electrophilic Referring to a molecule that seeks out and reacts with electron-rich substrates or molecular partners.

electrophoresis Procedure used to resolve molecules of differing masses, usually macromolecules, by placing them in an electric field that causes them to migrate at different rates through a matrix, such as an agarose or acrylamide gel; larger molecules are retarded by the pores of the gel, while smaller molecules migrate rapidly through the gel.

electroporation Procedure used to introduce various types of molecules into cells via the application of an electrical pulse that briefly opens pores in the plasma membranes of cells.

embolization Process of forming an embolus. *See* **embolus**.

embolus (pl., **emboli**) A blood clot or other solid body, such as a clump of cells, that can travel from one site in the body via the circulation to a second site in which it may become lodged within a blood vessel. *See also* **microembolus**.

embryonic stem cell A cell that derives from the inner cell mass of an early embryo and exhibits pluripotent powers, being able to spawn derivatives that can differentiate into all the cell types of an embryo except the placenta. *See also* **pluripotent**.

emergent Arising out of.

-emia Suffix denoting an excess of a substance or a cell type in the blood.

encapsidation Process of packaging a viral genome in a capsid.

end-replication problem Inability of the main DNA replication machinery to completely copy the end of one of two DNA strands being replicated, specifically the strand bearing a 3’ nucleotide at its end.

endocrine (1) Referring to a gland that secretes substances into the general circulation and thus to the rest of the body. (2) Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is made by cells in a tissue, passes through the circulation, and affects the behavior of cells in another tissue at a distant anatomical site. *Compare* **autocrine**, **exocrine, intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

endocytosis Uptake by a cell of extracellular material together with associated extracellular fluid that is achieved through the invagination of a patch of plasma membrane, thereby yielding membrane-bound vesicles termed endosomes within the cytoplasm. Pinocytosis and phagocytosis are forms of endocytosis. *See also* **exocytosis**, **endosome**, **phagocytosis**, **pinocytosis**.

endoderm Innermost layer of cells in an early embryo, which in chordates serves as precursor of the gastrointestinal tract and associated tissues, including the lungs, liver, and pancreas.

endogamy The practice of marrying within one’s own ethnic group, tribe, or clan.

endogenous Originating from within a cell, tissue, or organism.

endogenous provirus The provirus of a retrovirus that is integrated into the germ line DNA of an organism, thereby assuming a configuration much like all cellular genes in the organism’s genome.

endogenous retroviral genome *See* **endogenous provirus**.

endometrium Epithelial lining of the uterus.

endonuclease An enzyme that cleaves a single- or double-strand nucleic acid at an internal site rather than degrading it from an end. *See also* **exonuclease**.

endoplasmic reticulum Elaborate network of membranous structures in the cytoplasm in which glycoproteins are assembled by specific proteolytic cleavage and covalent attachment of carbohydrate side chains prior to being transported via membranous vesicles to the cell surface.

endoreduplication Process whereby a genome or chromosomal segment is replicated without subsequent segregation of the replicated copies during mitosis.

endosome Membranous vesicle lying beneath the plasma membrane that is formed after a patch of the plasma membrane invaginates into the cytoplasm via the process of endocytosis and pinches off from the plasma membrane into the cytoplasm, carrying with it extracellular fluid and associated molecules. *See also* **endocytosis.**

endothelial cells (1) Mesenchymal cells that form the walls of capillaries or lymph ducts by assuming shapes that allow the assembly of tubelike structures. (2) Mesenchymal cells lining the luminal walls of larger blood vessels or lymph ducts.

enhancer A relatively short sequence of nucleotides near or within a gene to which a transcription factor may bind in a sequence-specific manner and in turn influence the transcription of this gene. *See also* **super-enhancer, transcription factor**.

enterocyte Epithelial cell lining the luminal wall of the gastrointestinal tract or associated structures such as villi.

eosinophil, eosinophile A motile phagocytic granulocyte that can migrate from blood into tissue spaces, displays cell surface IgE receptors, and plays a role, among other functions, in eliminating parasitic and bacterial infectious organisms.

ependymoma A tumor deriving from glial cells and resembling the ependymal cells lining the ventricles of the brain.

epiblast Outer layer of primitive mammalian embryo that gives rise to the three major cell lineages following gastrulation.

epidermis (adj., **-dermal**) The epithelial layer of the skin, composed largely of keratinocytes at various stages of differentiation.

epigenetic (1) Referring to a process that affects phenotype without the involvement of heritable changes in the nucleotide sequence of the genome. (2) Referring to a mechanism enabling the transmission of a heritable trait from a cell or organism to its progeny that does not depend directly on changes of specific nucleotide sequences in its genome. (3) Referring to a mechanism that creates a cell-heritable trait, as in (2), and maintains expression of this trait in the absence of ongoing exposure to the stimulus that initially induced the expression of this trait. *See also* **epigenetics**, **genetic**.

epigenetics (1) The study of cell-heritable changes in gene expression that are not attributable to alteration in the primary DNA sequence. (2) More broadly, the study of changes in phenotype that reflect nongenetic alterations in the cell or organism; *also termed* **epigenomics**. (3) The study of the covalent modifications of histones forming the chromatin and resulting changes in transcriptional regulation.

epigenome The entire ensemble of modifications of a genome that do not affect its nucleotide sequences, such as methylation of CpG dinucleotides in the DNA and modifications of chromatin-associated proteins, notably histones. The epigenome is presumed to dictate the transcriptome of a cell, that is, the pattern of expression of a cell's repertoire of genes. *See also* **transcriptome**.

episome (adj., **episomal**) A genetic element, implicitly formed of dsDNA, that exists in a cell, often over multiple cell generations, but is not physically linked via covalent bonds to the cell's chromosomal DNA.

epistasis (adj., **epistatic**) The masking of the phenotypic effect of the allele(s) of one gene by the allele(s) associated with another gene.

epithelial–mesenchymal transition Cell-biological program enabling acquisition by epithelial cells of some of the phenotypes of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts. *Compare* **mesenchymal–epithelial transition**.

epithelium (pl., **epithelia**) A layer of cells that forms the lining of a cavity or duct and the specialized epithelium that forms the skin.

epitope (1) A specific chemical structure—often a short oligopeptide segment of a larger protein antigen—that is recognized and bound by an antibody molecule or other antigen-specific immune molecules. (2) Less commonly, the portion of a molecule that stimulates a specific immune response.

ER stress Physiological stress in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum often triggered by misfolded or unfolded protein domains. *See also* **unfolded protein response**.

eraser Enzyme that removes specific covalent modifications from histones within nucleosomes, thereby influencing processes such as transcription, DNA repair, further histone modifications, or DNA methylation. *See also* **writer**, **reader**.

erythroblastosis Malignancy of the precursors of red blood cells, usually referring to a condition of birds.

erythrocyte Red blood cell.

erythroleukemia A leukemia of the nonpigmented precursors of red blood cells.

erythropoiesis Process by which red blood cells are formed.

erythropoietin Growth factor that stimulates the production of red blood cells, often in response to inadequate oxygen transport by the blood.

essential genes The collection of genes that is required for normal organismic development and viability or for normal cellular viability or behavior. *See also* **essentialome**.

essentialome The collection of genes present in the genome of a cell or organism that is critical to its viability. *See also* **essential genes**.

estradiol 17b-Estradiol, *commonly called* **estrogen**. *See also* **estrogen**.

estrogen Steroid hormone that controls development of a variety of tissues including those involved in female development and reproductive function. *See also* **estradiol**.

etiology (adj., **-ologic**) (1) Mechanism or agent that is responsible for causing a specific pathological state. (2) The study of causative mechanisms of pathology.

euchromatin Chromatin that contains transcriptionally active genes and is therefore relatively expanded (rather than being condensed) and stains lightly. *See also* **heterochromatin**.

eukaryotic Referring to the large, complex, nucleated cells of metazoa, metaphyta, and many protozoa. *See also* **prokaryotic.**

euploid (1) Referring to a collection of chromosomes that corresponds precisely in number and structure to the array present in normal, wild-type cells. (2) Describing a karyotype having such a complement of chromosomes. *See also* **karyotype.**

event-free survival Period after initial treatment during which no additional clinical indications or episodes of disease are registered.

ex vivo Occurring outside of a living body or organism. *Compare in vitro, in vivo*.

executioner caspases A family of proteases (including caspases 3, 6, and 7) that become activated by initiator caspases through proteolytic cleavage and

subsequently cleave a number of cellular target proteins, leading to cell death. *See also* **caspase**.

exhaustion (adj. **exhausted**) Physiological state of a T cell that has lost many of its normally exercised effector functions; provoking signals include chronic antigen stimulation and prolonged contact with antigen-presenting cells. Less commonly, NK cell exhaustion and macrophage exhaustion.

exocrine Referring to a gland that secretes fluids via a duct, often into the gastrointestinal tract or to the surface of the skin, rather than into the bloodstream. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine**, **intracrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

exocyclic Referring to a chemical group that protrudes from the ring moiety of a molecule such as a DNA base.

exocyst Multi-subunit cytoplasmic protein complex that enables the tethering to the inner surface of the plasma membrane of vesicles destined for exocytosis, thereby regulating the cell surface display and secretion of a broad range of signaling molecules. *See* **exocytosis**.

exocytosis (1) Process by which cells secrete soluble products by storing them in the lumina of cytoplasmic exocytic vesicles that are caused to fuse with the plasma membrane, allowing the products carried within these vesicles to be released into the extracellular space. (2) Process by which cells achieve the display of proteins on the cell surface by embedding them in the membranes of exocytic vesicles prior to fusion of the latter with the plasma membrane. *Compare* **endocytosis**. *See also* **exocyst**.

exogenous Originating from outside a cell, tissue, or organism.

exome The collection of all exon segments present in a cellular transcriptome. *See also* **exon**, **transcriptome**.

exon Portion of a primary RNA transcript that is retained in the RNA product of splicing. *See also* **intron**.

exonuclease An enzyme that degrades a polynucleotide, often by proceeding processively (nucleotide-by-nucleotide) from one end or the other. *See also* **endonuclease**.

exosomes Small (30- to 100-nm) membrane vesicles that are released by many cell types into the extracellular space, following which they may adsorb to and fuse with other cells, thereby conveying molecular cargo into the latter.

experimental metastasis Procedure for introducing cancer cells into the circulation via injection into the tail vein of a mouse; this procedure largely yields cancer cells trapped in the microvessels of the lungs.

expression (1) Transcription of an active gene or synthesis of a protein from its encoded mRNA. (2) Forced release of interstitial fluid from a tissue caused by contraction of cells and/or extracellular matrix in that tissue. *See also* **repression**.

expression array A collection of probes that enables the concomitant measurement of the expression levels of a large group of genes, often encompassing more than 10,000 genes, that are transcribed in a cell type or tissue.

expression program The coordinated expression of a series of genes.

expression signature A constellation of up-regulated and down-regulated genes that can be correlated with a defined biological phenotype.

expressivity The quantitative extent to which a measurable or observable phenotype is expressed by an individual or cell carrying a specific allele or gene. *See also* **penetrance**.

external beam therapy Form of radiotherapy, in which the radiation source is usually a linear accelerator used as the source of radiation that is usually directed in a highly focused fashion to a region of tissue that is being treated.

extracellular matrix Meshwork of secreted proteins, largely glycoproteins and proteoglycans, that surrounds most cells within tissues and creates a structural scaffold in the intercellular space.

extravasation Process of leaving a blood or lymphatic vessel and invading the parenchyma of the adjacent tissue. *See also* **intravasation**.

F-actin The polymerized form of actin that forms filament. *See also* **actin**.

facultative heterochromatin Referring to chromatin that can switch from a heterochromatic to a euchromatic state in response to physiologic or developmental signals. *See also* **constitutive heterochromatin**, **euchromatin**.

familial Referring to an organismic trait or a syndrome that is heritable and therefore found in clusters in certain families.

familial adenomatous polyposis An inborn condition resulting in the formation of many hundreds of colorectal polyps, some of which are poised to progress to frank colorectal carcinomas. *See also* **hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer**.

Fc receptor A cell surface protein displayed by immunocytes, such as NK cells, dendritic cells and macrophages, that recognizes and binds the constant regions of antibody molecules, notably IgG molecules, the latter being bound via their variable regions to antigens on the surfaces of potential target cells such as microbes or cancer cells; such binding enables killing of the antibody-bound cells by the NK cells or macrophages.

Fc region Domain of an antibody molecule, notably that of IgG molecules, that is formed by the H-chain constant region and is recognized, when bound to a cell surface, by Fc receptors. *See also* **Fc receptor**.

feeder layer A population of cells, usually grown as a monolayer, that continuously secretes factors that benefit the growth and survival of a second cell population that is propagated above this monolayer.

feedback A regulatory interaction in which the stimulation of one component of a regulatory circuit enables this component to either stimulate or shut down further signaling by the source of the initial stimulation. *See also* **positive feedback, negative feedback, feedforward**.

feedforward Alternative term for **positive feedback**.

fenestration An opening in a surface, such as one found in the wall of a blood vessel.

ferroptosis A form of programmed cell death that depends on iron and the formation of lipid peroxides and is distinct from other forms of cell death such as apoptosis. *See also* **apoptosis, necroptosis, pyroptosis**.

fibrin Protein that is formed by the cleavage of plasma fibrinogen and assembles to form the fibers binding the platelets together in clots.

fibrinogen *See* **fibrin**.

fibrinolysis Dissolution of fibrin bundles achieved by certain proteases.

fibroblast Mesenchymal cell type that is common in connective tissues and in the stromal compartment of epithelial tissues and is characterized by its secretion of collagen.

fibrocyte A relatively undifferentiated circulating cell derived from monocytes in the bone marrow that expresses collagen, adheres tightly to substrates when cultured *in vitro*, exhibits certain features usually associated with macrophages, and serves as the precursor of fibroblasts and/or myofibroblasts in tissues to which it has been recruited.

fibroma A benign tumor of mesenchymal tissue containing fibroblast-like cells.

fibrosis Development within a tissue, often following chronic inflammation, of dense fibrous stroma that replaces normally present epithelium, resulting in loss of function of that tissue.

field cancerization Phenomenon in which an outwardly normal region of an organ or tissue produces multiple, ostensibly independently arising premalignant growths or frank neoplasms that actually share a common clonal origin and share a common set of abnormalities, including somatic mutations. Field cancerization is presumed to reflect the proliferative and survival advantage of somatic mutations (or heritable changes in the epigenome) that are not manifested in the outward behavior of the affected cells, but were already widely dispersed in this region prior to the appearance of these clearly preneoplastic or frankly neoplastic outgrowths. *See also* **clonal hematopoiesis**.

filopodium Filamentous, spikelike protrusion from the surface of a cell, usually extending from the leading edge of a lamellipodium, that may be used by the cell to explore territory that lies ahead in its path and to forge focal adhesions with the extracellular matrix lying in this path. *See also* **lamellipodium**.

filtrate Liquid that has passed through a filter.

first-degree relative A parent, sibling, or offspring of an individual (all of whom share 50% of their genome with the individual).

first-line therapy The mode of therapy that is initially employed to treat a patient, usually because it is considered most likely to elicit a desired clinical response; failure of this initial therapy often leads to the use of second-line treatments. *See also* **second-line therapy**.

fitness (1) Term to reflect the likelihood that, during the course of evolution, an organism will leave more descendants within a species as a consequence of its increased adaptation to the environment in which it exists or elevated ability to compete successfully with other similar individual organisms within the species. (2) Similar dynamics applying to the ability of an individual cancer cell or group of cancer cells to outcompete other such cells within a tumor.

fixed To become stably established, such as established within the genome of a cell or species.

floxed Referring to a gene or genetic segment that is flanked on both sides by LoxP sites. *See* **loxP**.

fluorescence *in situ***hybridization** Procedure in which a sequence-specific DNA probe linked to a fluorescent chromophore is annealed to the DNA or RNA of cells that have been immobilized on a microscope slide, revealing via resulting fluorescing spots the presence and often the number of copies of homologous DNA/RNA sequences carried by such cells that have annealed to the DNA probe.

fluorophore A molecule that fluoresces in response to exposure to light of a certain wavelength.

focal Referring to a change that affects only a small region or area, such as a relatively short segment of a chromosome.

focal adhesion A multiprotein complex containing many dozens of protein species that is assembled after a cell surface integrin binds macromolecular components of the extracellular matrix (ECM); focal adhesions mediate physical anchoring of a cell to the adjacent ECM, as well as transmitting information about this anchoring to the cell interior.

focus (pl., **foci**) A cluster of transformed cells growing amid a surrounding monolayer of normal untransformed cells in culture. Individual foci are usually composed of the lineal/clonal descendants of a founding cell that was transformed by one or another transforming agent.

founder effect Phenomenon in which multiple individuals within a species, often not known to share any genealogical relationship with one another, are found to carry a common germ-line allele that testifies to their actual descent from a common ancestor that bore the allele.

fragile site A site along a chromosome that is intrinsically unstable and thus especially susceptible to breakage, the existence of which is often revealed when DNA replication forks proceeding through the site are stalled.

frameshift A mutation that disrupts the reading frame of the coding sequence of a gene, doing so by adding or subtracting nucleotides that are

not multiples of 3. *See also* **reading frame**.

Frizzled Referring to a class of 7-membrane-spanning cell-surface proteins that function as receptors for Wnt ligands.

frontline therapy *See* **first-line therapy**.

functional genomics (1) Technology in which cell phenotypes are gauged by measuring the expression level of multiple genes, usually numbering in the thousands, in the cells. (2) Such analysis performed comparatively by examining various cell types or tissues that exist in different physiologic, pathological, or developmental conditions. (3) Study of how specific transcriptional programs contribute to the expression of specific functions or phenotypes.

fusogenic Capable of causing the fusion of membranes, such as the plasma membranes of two closely apposed cells.

G-protein A signaling protein that actively emits signals when it has bound GTP and shuts itself off by hydrolyzing the GTP, yielding bound GDP and transition of the protein to its inactive, non-signaling state. *See also* **guanine nucleotide exchange factor**.

gain-of-function Referring to a mutation that imparts novel activity to a gene and encoded protein. *See also* **loss-of-function**.

gametogenesis Processes that yield gametes, i.e., sperm or eggs.

ganglion (pl., **ganglia**) Cluster of neuron cell bodies formed in various parts of the peripheral nervous system and, to a smaller extent, in the central nervous system.

gasdermin A membrane pore-forming protein that is activated as part of the pyroptosis program. *See also* **pyroptosis**.

gastric Referring to the stomach.

gastrulation An early stage of embryogenesis in which cells of the outer ectodermal layer invaginate into the interior of the embryo, where they

serve subsequently as precursors of the endodermal and mesodermal cell layers.

gatekeeper (1) An oligopeptide domain that controls access by small molecules to the catalytic cleft of an enzyme such as a kinase. (2) A gene that operates to regulate cell proliferation or to regulate cell number by controlling cell differentiation or cell death. Loss of a gatekeeper gene removes an impediment to cell proliferation and thus to the appearance of populations of neoplastic cells. *Compare* **caretaker**, **tumor suppressor gene**.

gatekeeper mutation A mutation that restricts the accessibility of the ATP-binding pocket in the catalytic cleft of a protein kinase and thereby reduces the efficacy of a kinase-inhibiting drug designed to be bound in that cleft.

gene amplification *See* **amplification**.

gene conversion Process whereby the genetic information on one chromosome is transferred to the homologous chromosome without genetic recombination or crossing over occurring between the two chromosomes.

gene family Group of genes all of which are descended evolutionarily from a common ancestral gene. The members of a gene family generally encode distinct, structurally related proteins.

gene pool Collection of genes and associated alleles that are carried by the members of a species or by a group of individual organisms.

gene set enrichment analysis A computational algorithm designed to determine whether a set of genes is associated with a specific biological function or phenotype.

gene therapy Therapeutic strategy that involves the introduction of a cloned gene into cells of a diseased tissue, undertaken with the anticipation that the introduced gene will reverse a disease condition.

general transcription factor A protein that associates with sequence-specific transcription factors throughout the genome to enable transcription

to occur; general transcription factors usually do not possess sequence-specific DNA-binding domains and are presumed to be responsible for regulating the expression of large numbers of genes, possibly in certain cases all of the actively transcribed genes in a cell. *See also* **transcription factor**.

genetic (1) Involving the action of genes and the information that they carry. (2) Depending directly on the DNA and the nucleotide sequences that it contains. *See also* **epigenetic**.

genetic background The entire array of alleles carried in a cell or organismic genome with the exception of a gene or a small number of genes that are the subject of study.

genetic polymorphism A genetic element that is present in the gene pool of a species in multiple variant forms. Polymorphisms are often implied to have small or no effects on phenotype or evolutionary fitness. *See also* **polymorphism**.

genomic clone The product of a procedure involving recombinant DNA techniques that produces many copies of a specific segment of an organism's genome (e.g., its chromosomal DNA) through experimental isolation and amplification.

genotoxic Referring to an agent or mechanism that is capable of damaging a genome, i.e., is mutagenic.

genotype Genetic constitution of a cell or an organism.

germ cell An egg (ovum) or sperm (spermatocyte) or its immediate precursor within the ovary or testis, respectively.

germ line (1) The collection of genes that is transmitted from one organismic generation to the next. (2) The cells within a multicellular organism that are responsible for carrying and transmitting genes from one organismic generation to its offspring.

germ-line chimera An organism in which the germ cells derive from more than one genetic background.

germinal center Site in spleen or lymph node in which B cells differentiate, assemble, and diversify their antibody genes, and proliferate.

Giemsa A blue stain that is specific for DNA, binding preferentially to segments that are high in adenine and thymine.

glioblastoma A malignant high-grade glioma that often originates from a low-grade astrocytoma. *Also termed* glioblastoma multiforme. *See also* **glioma**.

glioma A group of central nervous system tumors that arise from glial cells and include ependymomas, astrocytomas, and oligodendrogliomas. *See also* **glioblastoma**.

global genomic repair Form of nucleotide excision repair that operates on all parts of the genome.

glutathione-*S*-transferase A family of enzymes that catalyze the conjugation of the reduced form of glutathione (GSH) to xenobiotic compounds for the purpose of detoxification.

glycolysis The series of enzymatic reactions in the cell cytoplasm that leads to the progressive degradation of a glucose molecule into three- and two-carbon fragments with the generation of ATP and NADH; glycolysis can proceed in the absence of available oxygen.

glycoprotein A protein that has been modified post-translationally through the covalent linkage of polysaccharide trees to the amino-acid side chains of the protein, usually those of asparagine, arginine, or serine. *See also* **glycosylation**.

glycosaminoglycan A charged polysaccharide of the extracellular matrix, such as chondroitin sulfate, hyaluronic acid, or heparin, that is attached covalently to a protein core and is composed of repeating monosaccharides, some of which are amino sugars. *See also* **proteoglycan**.

glycosylase An enzyme that cleaves a glycosidic bond, such as that linking a purine or pyrimidine base to a ribose or deoxyribose sugar.

glycosylation Covalent attachment of a carbohydrate side chain, usually a covalently linked branched network of monosaccharides, to a second molecule, e.g., to the side chain of an asparagine residue of a protein; such attachment occurs in concert with or following initial synthesis of the polypeptide backbone of a protein.

grade Degree or extent to which a tumor has advanced toward a highly aggressive state, as assessed by a pathologist usually on the basis of its histopathological appearance; high-grade tumors are more progressed and generally carry worse prognoses.

graft-versus-host disease A condition, often life-threatening, in which cells of an allogeneic bone marrow graft generate significant immune-mediated destruction of various normal tissues throughout the body of the graft recipient.

graft-versus-tumor An immunological process in which engrafted allogeneic bone marrow cells attack neoplastic cells in the graft recipient, usually the cellular constituents of hematopoietic malignancies; such attack may augment other anti-tumor therapies being applied to the graft recipient and may occur with acceptably low levels of graft-versus-host disease. *See also* **graft-versus-host disease**.

granulocyte Leukocyte that contains cytoplasmic granules, such as a basophil, an eosinophil, or a neutrophil.

granzyme Serine protease that is introduced by cytotoxic lymphocytes and natural killer cells into the cytoplasm of their cellular targets, where it triggers apoptosis by cleaving various cellular proteins, among them caspases.

gray (Gy) Unit of radiation exposure equal to the absorption of 1 joule of energy per kilogram of exposed tissue.

growth (1) Process involving accumulation of cellular constituents and associated increases in cell size such as cell volume. (2) Commonly but inappropriately used term for cell proliferation. *Compare with* **proliferation**.

growth arrest Halting of the progression of a cell through its growth-and-division cycle. *See also* **cytostatic**.

growth factor Secreted protein that is able to stimulate the growth and/or proliferation of a cell by binding to a specific cell-surface receptor displayed by that cell.

GTPase Enzymatic activity that hydrolyzes GTP to GDP.

GTPase-activating protein A protein that interacts with a G-protein and induces the latter to activate its intrinsic GTPase, thereby causing it to hydrolyze its bound GTP and enter into its GDP-bound state. *See also* **G-protein**, **guanine nucleotide exchange factor**.

guanine nucleotide exchange factor Protein that interacts with a G-protein, inducing the latter to release whatever guanine nucleotide it is binding, thereby creating space for another to be bound. Since GTP is present in the cytosol in great molar excess over GDP, this induced change usually results in the replacement of a GDP with a GTP and the associated functional activation of the G protein. *See also* **G-protein**, **GTPase-activating protein**.

hairpin Configuration of a single-stranded RNA or DNA molecule that is able to generate a double-stranded domain through the complementarity of two regions of such a molecule, in effect allowing the two regions to anneal with one another.

half-life (1) Time during which half of a population of metabolically unstable molecules decays or is eliminated or the time required for half of a physiological signal to decrease. (2) Time in which 50% of the atoms of a quantity of a radioactive isotope decay. (3) Time during which half of the entities forming a large population disappear or are removed.

Hallmarks of Cancer A set of cell-biological traits that are shared in common by the neoplastic cells forming a wide range of distinct types of tumors, are required for expression of the neoplastic cell phenotype, and distinguish such cells from the traits of corresponding normal cells.

hamartoma Benign overgrowth of tissue that normally involves mesenchymal cells; for example, gastrointestinal hamartomas are characterized by a benign expansion of stromal cells, often with concomitant hyperplasia of adjacent epithelial cells.

haploid Describing a genome in which all chromosomes are present in a single copy.

haploinsufficiency Genetic condition in which the presence of only a single functional copy of a gene yields a mutant or partially mutant phenotype.

haptotaxis Process in which the direction of migration of a cell is influenced by insoluble molecules in the extracellular space, specifically structural components of the extracellular matrix as well as molecules tethered to this matrix. *Compare* **chemotaxis**.

hard-wired (1) Describing a component of a regulatory circuit that is fixed and not readily changed. (2) Describing a response or behavior that is innate and not readily revised or altered.

hazard ratio The rate at which a given condition or state arises in an experimental population divided by the rate at which this occurs in a matched control population.

head-and-neck cancers A group of carcinomas of the larynx, throat, mouth, nose, and salivary glands.

heat map Graphic representation in the form of a matrix of the results of gene or protein expression analyses, in which a series of gene-specific probes is arrayed in one dimension, a series of biological samples is arrayed in a second dimension, and the intensity of expression is represented by two colors and intermediate shades.

heavy chain Larger of the two polypeptide chains that assemble to form immunoglobulins and related proteins. *Compare* **light chain**.

helicase An enzyme that functions to unwind helices, usually the double helices formed by DNA.

helper T cell A subtype of T cell that is identified by its expression of the CD4 co-receptor and functions to stimulate and amplify the functions of B cells and effector T cells, most importantly the CD8+ cytotoxic T cells.

hemangioblastoma Benign tumor of the precursors of the endothelial cells forming blood vessels within the central nervous system.

hemangioma Benign tumor of endothelial cell origin often seen in infants.

hematogenous Depending upon or facilitated by circulating blood.

hematogenous dissemination Metastatic dissemination occurring via the circulating blood.

hematopoiesis (adj., **-poietic**) Process that results in the formation of all of the cells in the blood, including its red and white cells, the latter including various cells of the immune system.

hemidesmosome A cluster of integrin molecules displayed on the basal surface of epithelial cells and used to anchor these cells to the underlying basement membrane.

hemi-methylated Referring to a DNA molecule in which only one of the two complementary strands of a particular DNA segment is methylated, usually at the deoxycytidine moiety of a CpG dinucleotide sequence.

hemizygosity Presence of only one copy of an autosomal gene per cell.

heparin An extracellular matrix glycosaminoglycan.

hepatectomy Procedure whereby part or all of the liver is surgically excised.

hepatoblast Embryonic liver cell.

hepatocellular carcinoma *See* **hepatoma**.

hepatocyte Epithelial cell type that forms the bulk of the liver and is responsible for virtually all of its metabolic activities.

hepatoma Tumor of the liver; also known as **hepatocellular carcinoma**.

Herceptin Chimeric anti-HER2/Neu monoclonal antibody bearing murine antigen-combining (variable) domains and a largely human constant domain. *Also called* **trastuzumab**.

hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer Inborn condition predisposing to colorectal cancers and distinct from familial adenomatous polyposis, being generally caused by inherited defects in the DNA mismatch repair machinery. *Also termed* **Lynch syndrome**; *See also* **familial adenomatous polyposis**.

heterochromatin Chromatin that contains transcriptionally inactive genes or no genes at all and is condensed and stains darkly. *See also* **euchromatin**.

heterochromatinization The process whereby euchromatin is converted to heterochromatin, notably that occurring during the process of X-chromosome inactivation.

heterocyclic amine Any of various carcinogenic amines formed when creatine or creatinine reacts with free amino acids and sugars in meat cooked at high temperatures.

heterodimer Molecular complex composed of two distinct subunits. *See also* **homodimer**.

heterogenous nuclear RNA (hnRNA) The collection of primary transcripts synthesized by pol II and derived processed intermediates arising from the actively transcribed genes of a cell.

heterokaryon Cell carrying two (or more) genetically distinct nuclei, often arising from the experimental fusion of two cells.

heterotrimer A molecule that is composed of three distinct subunits such as three distinct protein chains.

heterotypic Referring to interactions between two or more distinct cell types. *See also* **homotypic**.

heterozygote Individual cell or organism that carries two distinct alleles of a gene of interest. *See also* **heterozygous**.

heterozygous Referring to the configuration of a genetic locus in which the two copies of the associated gene carry different versions (alleles) of the gene that represents this locus. *See also* **homozygous**.

hierarchical clustering Statistical method used to place more similar samples closer together on a tree (*also called* dendrogram) than less similar samples, which are placed on more distant branches of the tree. *See also* **dendrogram**.

high-grade Referring to a tumor that has progressed through many steps of multi-step tumorigenesis and become highly malignant. *Compare with* **low-grade**.

high-throughput screening Technology involving robotic screening of large collections of pharmacological compounds to identify individual compounds that exhibit properties of a sought-after agent, such as potent inhibition of an enzyme.

histo- Prefix referring to tissue.

histochemistry Use of specific chemicals and chemical procedures to specifically react with and stain subcellular and cellular structures as well as tissues to reveal, when examined under the microscope, the presence of specific types of biological molecules present in these entities.

histocompatible Ability of tissues or cells to be tolerated by the immune system of the host organism into which they are engrafted. *See also* **histoincompatible**.

histocompatibility antigen Cell surface protein that determines whether or not an engrafted cell or tissue will be tolerated by the immune system of a host organism. *See also* **major histocompatibility antigen**.

histoincompatible Failure of tissues or cells to be tolerated by the immune system of the host organism into which they have been engrafted. *See also* **histocompatible**.

histology Study of tissue structure at the microscopic level. *See also* **histopathology**.

histomorphology The shapes and forms of cells and assemblies of cells within a tissue as revealed by microscopic examination of sections of that tissue.

histopathology Study of tissue structure at the microscopic level, often with reference to abnormal tissue. *See also* **pathology**.

Holliday junction Junction formed between four DNA double helices that can serve as an intermediate in certain forms of homologous recombination.

holoenzyme A multi-subunit complex containing an enzyme and associated protein subunits that collaborate to mediate and regulate enzymatic activity.

homeostasis (adj. **homeostatic**) The product of physiological control mechanisms that operate to maintain an optimal, often unchanging level of a certain signaling process, metabolic product, physiological function, or cell type.

homodimer Molecular complex composed of two identical subunits. *See also* **heterodimer**.

homogeneously staining region A region of a chromosome consisting of amplified copies of a chromosomal segment that have become fused end to

end; because each copy contains a characteristic sequence of DNA, the region as a whole appears homogenous following staining.

homolog (*also* **homologue**) A gene that is related to another because of evolutionary descent from a common ancestral gene. *See also* **ortholog, paralog**.

homologous (1) Referring to the relationship between a pair of chromosomes that carry the same set of genes within a diploid cell or organism. (2) Referring to genes or characteristics that are similar in related organisms because of shared descent from a common precursor. (3) Referring to two nucleic acids having similar or closely related nucleotide sequences. *See also* **analogous**.

homology-directed repair Form of DNA repair in which the reconstruction of damaged DNA, often involving a double-strand break, is instructed by the corresponding homologous nucleotide sequences present in the paired, intact sister chromatid.

homophilic Describing a molecule that binds preferentially to one or more additional molecules of the same type.

homopolymer A polymer that is assembled from monomers of a single type, such as an oligonucleotide segment formed entirely from one or another of the four possible deoxyribonucleotides.

homotetramer An assembly of four identical subunits, usually referring to proteins.

homotypic (1) Referring to interactions between two cells of the same type; *See also* **heterotypic**. (2) Referring to interactions between two or more molecules of the same type.

homozygous Referring to the configuration of a genetic locus in which the two copies of the associated gene carry identical alleles of the gene. *See also* **heterozygous**.

horizontal transmission Transmission of an agent, such as an infectious agent, throughout a population in ways that do not depend on parent-offspring interactions. *See also* **vertical transmission**.

hormone response element An oligonucleotide sequence in genomic DNA to which hormone-activated nuclear receptors bind.

host (1) The animal or human that bears a tumor as distinguished from the tumor itself. (2) The animal or human into which cells or molecules are introduced, often by experimentation or infection.

housekeeping gene A gene that is used universally in all cells throughout the body independent of their differentiated state and is assumed to be essential for their continuing viability.

humanize To impart human properties to something, e.g., an antibody molecule.

humanized antibody An antibody molecule of a nonhuman species whose constant (C) region and variable (V) region amino acid sequences outside of the antigen-combining site have been replaced by the homologous sequences of human origin, leaving only the antigen-combining sequences unmodified.

humoral Referring to a soluble substance or a fluid.

humoral immune response The arm of the immune system whose functions are mediated by the antibodies that it produces. *See also* **cellular immune response**.

hyaluronic acid A polymer assembled from disaccharide monomers formed from glucuronic acid plus *N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine.

hybrid (1) An experimentally formed double helix of two complementary nucleic acid strains. (2) A cell arising as a consequence of the experimental fusion of two parental cells that are distinct from one another. (3) An organism that results from the interbreeding of two genetically distinct parents.

hybridization Molecular process involving the annealing of two single-strand nucleic acid molecules to one another that depends on their having mutually complementary sequences and yields a double-stranded helical structure, such as DNA:DNA, DNA:RNA, or RNA:RNA helices.

hybridoma A clonal cell line that derives from the fusion of a plasma cell producing an antibody of interest with a myeloma cell and that is employed for the production of a distinct monoclonal antibody species. *See also* **monoclonal antibody**.

hydrocarbon An organic molecule composed of hydrogen and carbon atoms.

hydrogel A three-dimensional network of highly hydrophilic polymer molecules that can absorb 10- or even 100-fold its mass of water and can serve as an experimental model of natural matrices, such as the extracellular matrix.

hydrolysis Chemical breakdown of a compound through chemical reactions of covalent bonds with water molecules.

hydrophilic Referring to a chemical moiety or environment that prefers direct association with water. *Compare* **hydrophobic**.

hydrophobic Referring to a chemical moiety or environment that avoids direct interaction with water. *Compare* **hydrophilic**.

hypercalcemia Presence of elevated concentrations of calcium ions in the blood.

hypereosinophilic Referring to a syndrome with elevated levels of eosinophils in the circulation. *See* **eosinophil**.

hyperinsulinemia Level of circulating insulin that is higher than would be expected or is physiologically anticipated.

hypermethylation Referring to a state in which the number of CpG sites that are methylated is elevated relative to their number in normal or

reference cells. *Compare* **hypomethylation**.

hyperoxia State of oxygen tension that is elevated above physiological levels.

hyperphosphorylated Referring to the elevated phosphorylation state (e.g., of a protein).

hyperplasia (adj., - **plastic**) (1) Accumulation of excessive numbers of normal-appearing cells within an otherwise normal-appearing tissue. (2) An increase in the size of a tissue or organ, usually due to increased cell number rather than increased size of constituent cells.

hyperthyroidism Condition in which the thyroid gland releases inappropriately high levels of thyroid hormone into the circulation, leading to an elevated metabolic rate and multiple secondary effects on the body.

hypertrophy An increase in the size of a tissue or organ due to increased sizes of component cells rather than increased numbers of cells.

hypomethylation Referring to a state in which the number of CpG sites that are methylated is reduced relative to their state in normal or reference cells. *See* **hypermethylation**.

hypomorphic Referring to an allele that specifies reduced gene function while not eliminating it entirely. *See also* **null allele**.

hypopharyngeal Referring to the region between the pharynx and the entrance to the esophagus.

hypophosphorylated Referring to relatively low level of phosphorylation (of a protein).

hypoxia (adj., **hypoxic**) State of lower-than-normal oxygen tension. *See also* **normoxia**.

idiotype The structure that is created by the amino acid sequences forming the antigen-combining pocket of an antibody molecule; these sequences can

themselves function as antigens that provoke the synthesis of new antibody molecules reactive with the initial antibody molecule.

illegitimate recombination *See* **nonhomologous recombination**.

immediate early genes Referring to the group of genes whose expression is induced within half an hour of growth factor stimulation of previously factor-deprived cells, occurring even when protein synthesis is inhibited. *See also* **delayed early**.

immortal *See* **immortalization**.

immortality Trait of a cell or population of cells that reflects the ability of these cells and their descendants to proliferate indefinitely, usually observed in cell culture.

immortalization Process whereby a cell population normally having limited replicative potential acquires the ability to multiply indefinitely.

immune checkpoint Control mechanism ensuring that immune attacks on cells and tissues are constrained or limited, achieved by modulating downstream signaling responses such as those triggered by receptor–ligand interactions between immunocytes and target cells. *See also* **checkpoint**.

immune tolerance Physiological state that reflects the ability of the immune system to ignore or overlook the body's normal complement of antigens and the cells expressing such antigens.

immunoblot *See* **Western blot**.

immunocompetent Referring to an organism whose immune system is fully functional.

immunocompromised Describing an organism lacking a fully functional immune system. *Also termed* **immunodeficient**.

immunocyte A cell associated with one of the multiple types of cells that form the functional arms of the immune system.

immunodeficient *See* **immunocompromised**.

immunoediting Process in which the selective pressure imposed by immune surveillance and attack eliminates strongly immunogenic tumor cells while permitting the survival and outgrowth of those that are weakly immunogenic.

immunoevasion A biological strategy that enables an abnormal cell or an infectious agent to evade detection and/or elimination by the immune system.

immunofluorescence Use of antibody molecules linked directly or indirectly to fluorescent dyes used in order to stain tissue sections displaying antigens that are specifically recognized by such antibodies.

immunogen (adj., **-genic**) A chemical structure that is capable of provoking some type of immune response, e.g., an antigen that can provoke the synthesis of antibody molecules capable of recognizing and binding it.

immunoglobulin An antibody molecule assembled from two heavy and two light chains.

immunoglobulin superfamily Proteins belonging to a diverse array of cell surface and secreted soluble molecules, including antibody molecules and cell surface B-cell and T-cell receptors. The structural features shared among these proteins indicate that they have evolved from a common precursor and that their respective encoding genes represent paralogs of one another.

immunohistochemistry Procedure in which expression of an antigen is localized in a histological section through the use of an antibody that has been coupled to an enzyme (e.g., horseradish peroxidase) capable of generating a product that is visible in the light microscope.

immunological memory The process by which cells of the adaptive immune system store information of an encounter with an antigen and exploit this stored information to rapidly mount a second immune response

against this antigen long after the initial encounter with the antigen has taken place.

immunophenotyping The process of classifying a cell by determining the spectrum of specific antigens it expresses, usually on its surface.

immunoprecipitation Process of precipitating a molecule or molecular complex using an antibody that specifically recognizes and binds such a molecule or a component of such a molecular complex.

immunoprivileged Referring to sites in the body that are shielded by various mechanisms from routine surveillance conducted by components of the immune system.

immunoproteasome A proteasome that is specialized to generate oligopeptides for eventual presentation by MHC/HLA molecules at the cell surface. *See also* **proteasome**, **constitutive proteasome**.

immunostaining The use of antigen-specific antibodies linked directly or indirectly to fluorophores or dye-activating enzymes to reveal specific cells or subcellular structures present in histological sections.

immunosuppressive Referring to mechanisms and agents that constrain or inhibit the immune response, often involving its adaptive arms

immunosurveillance Process by which the immune system continuously monitors tissues for the presence of aberrant antigens or cells, including cancer cells, and in response, mounts responses to eliminate the antigens or cells expressing such antigens.

immunotoxin Toxin that is targeted to certain tissues or cells because it has been coupled to an antigen-specific antibody, usually a monoclonal antibody.

imprinting Process by which either the paternally or the maternally derived copy of a gene is transcriptionally inactivated during embryogenesis through promoter methylation, ensuring that only a single copy of the gene is expressed in somatic cells.

in situ (1) Occurring in the site of origin. (2) Localized to a specific site. (3) In the case of carcinomas, confined to the epithelial side of the basement membrane.

***in situ* hybridization** Procedure in which a nucleic acid probe is annealed to a nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) while the latter remains localized to its original site within a cell or tissue section; the probe is often linked to a fluorescent dye that can be visualized microscopically or to a radioisotope that can be detected by autoradiography. *See* **autoradiography**.

in utero Occurring in the womb during embryonic or fetal development.

in vitro (1) Referring to biochemical processes, notably reactions, that occur outside of living cells, including in cell lysates or under conditions involving purified reactants. (2) Referring to the propagation of living cells in a vessel (e.g., a Petri dish) rather than in living tissues. *Compare* ***in vivo, ex vivo***.

in vivo (1) Occurring in a living organism. (2) Occurring in a living, intact cell. *Compare in* ***vitro, ex vivo***.

inborn Inherited, congenital.

inbred Referring to a population generated by inbreeding. *See also* **inbreeding**.

inbreeding (1) Breeding of a strain of organisms, such as a strain of mice or rats, with one another in order to achieve genetic identity among all individuals of the strain (with the exception of male/female genetic differences). (2) Breeding between closely related individual organisms within a genetically heterogeneous species.

incidence Frequency with which a condition or a disease occurs or is diagnosed in a population.

incomplete penetrance Situation in which a dominant allele fails to affect phenotype because of the actions of other genes present in an organism’s genome. *See also* **penetrance**.

indel Insertion or deletion mutation.

indication A clinically observed trait or property that represents a valid reason for the making of a certain diagnosis or use of a certain therapy.

indolent Referring to a tumor that is apparently nongrowing or growing at a very slow rate.

inflammasome Multi-subunit complex that assembles in the cytosol in response to detection of pathogens or danger-associated cellular changes and proceeds to trigger cell death via caspase activation. *See also* **caspase**.

inflammation A process in which certain cellular components of the immune system are involved in the remodeling of a tissue in response to wounding, irritation, or infection.

inhibitor of apoptosis Cellular protein that blocks apoptosis by sequestering caspases.

initiation (1) Process of changing a cell, usually in a stable, cell-heritable fashion, so that it and its descendants are able to respond subsequently to the stimulatory actions of a tumor-promoting agent. (2) Such a process, with the implication that the change involves a mutation. (3) The first step in multi-step tumorigenesis. *See also* **promotion**.

initiator Agent that triggers the first step in multi-step tumorigenesis. *See also* **initiation**.

initiator caspases A family of proteases (including caspase 2, 8, 9, and 10) that become activated by upstream activating signals in the apoptotic pathway and functions to activate other downstream members of the caspase family (so-called executioner caspases), which proteolytically cleave a number of cellular target proteins. *See also* **caspase**.

innate Referring to an entity or process that is inborn and therefore does not require specific experience or provocation in order to arise.

innate immune response An immune system response toward an antigen or a cell that occurs in the absence of prior exposure of an organism to this particular antigen or cell. *See also* **adaptive immune response**.

innervated Referring to a tissue that is penetrated by components of the nervous system, specifically neurons and their axons.

inoculum Inoculated material.

inoperable A tumor or disease condition that cannot be treated surgically because of its anatomical location or other property. *See also* **operable**.

inositol A polyalcohol configured as a six-membered ring that has a chemical composition similar to that of hexose and is generated by reduction of the hexose aldehyde group to an alcohol.

insertional mutagenesis Alteration of a gene and its function through the integration of a retroviral provirus or transposon into the gene itself or a closely linked chromosomal site.

integrase An enzyme that is specialized to integrate an episomal DNA, such as a retroviral DNA genome, into host-cell chromosomal DNA. *See also* **integration, episome**.

integration Insertion of a fragment of foreign double-stranded DNA (e.g., the DNA genome of an infecting virus) into chromosomal DNA so that the foreign DNA becomes covalently linked to the chromosomal DNA segments flanking it on both sides and can be replicated together with the flanking DNA during subsequent rounds of cell growth and division.

integrin A heterodimeric cell surface receptor that binds components of the extracellular matrix and transmits information about this binding to the cell interior; the cytoplasmic domain of an integrin may also be coupled with components of the cytoskeleton, thereby linking the extracellular matrix to the cytoskeleton.

interactome (1) The collection of all protein–protein interactions that operate within a cell. (2) The subset of these that can be determined

experimentally.

intercalation Insertion of one molecule between two other molecules; intercalation in DNA involves insertion of a planar hydrophobic molecule between two adjacent base pairs.

interferon A member of one of three classes of secreted signaling cytokines that participate in activation of various type of immune responses.

intergenic Referring to genomic sequences located between identified genes. *Compare* **intragenic**.

interleukin A secreted growth and differentiation factor that stimulates various cellular components of the immune system.

intermediary metabolism The collection of biochemical reactions within a cell that allow the interconversion of various molecular species into one another, involving both anabolic and catabolic reactions. *See* **anabolic, catabolic**.

internalization Process by which proteins and other molecules are imported into a body, usually referring to importation of molecules into cells.

International Cancer Genome Consortium A multi-national effort to characterize the genetic changes in the genomes of multiple types of human cancer including multiple cases of specific cancer types. *See also* **The Cancer Genome Atlas**; **Sanger Cancer Genome Project.**

interphase The portion of the cell cycle outside of M phase.

interstitial (n. pl., **interstices**) (1) Referring to the space between an array of objects. (2) The space within a tissue that lies between cells.

interstitial deletion Genetic alteration, often observed through analysis of karyotype, that causes deletion of an internal segment of a chromosomal arm.

interstitial matrix Portion of the extracellular matrix that resides between cells and is not a component of the basement membrane.

intracrine A mode of signaling in which a receptor and its bound ligand interact entirely within a cell to release signals, often anticipating or following a similar interaction occurring in the extracellular space. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine**, **exocrine**, **juxtacrine**, **paracrine**.

intraepithelial (1) Referring to a change or an attribute confined to the epithelial cell layer. (2) Referring to a neoplasia that remains on the epithelial side of a basement membrane.

intragenic Process, event, or DNA sequence occurring within the genomic boundaries of a gene. *Compare* **intergenic**.

intravasation Process of invading into a blood or lymphatic vessel from the surrounding tissue. *See also* **extravasation**.

intravital Referring to a process that occurs in living tissue, such as imaging a process as it occurs in living tissue.

intrinsic resistance Referring to the resistance to therapy of a tumor that appears to have existed prior to the application of that therapy, *also termed* **primary resistance**. *Compare* **acquired resistance**.

intron Portion of a primary RNA transcript that is deleted during the process of splicing. *See also* **exon**.

invadopodium (pl., **-ia**) An organized structure on the surface of a cell in which plasma membrane–bound proteases degrade adjacent extracellular matrix, apparently to enable subsequent invasion by the cell as a whole. *Sometimes termed* **podosome**.

invagination Process by which planar structure, such as a membrane, is folded back on itself to generate a cavity or pouch.

invasion (1) Process by which cancer cells or groups thereof move from a primary tumor into adjacent normal tissue. (2) In the case of carcinomas, a

movement that involves breaching of the basement membrane.

invasion–metastasis cascade A succession of steps that enables primary tumor cells to spawn metastases, doing so via local invasion, intravasation into blood or lymphatic vessels, dissemination to distant tissues, extravasation into the parenchyma of those tissues, formation of micrometastases, and ultimately colonization leading to the formation of macroscopic metastases.

invasive (1) Referring to the increased aggressiveness of a tumor or its associated cells. (2) Referring to a procedure that involves the insertion of medical instruments into the body of a patient. *See also* **invasion**.

involution Regression or disappearance of a tissue, notably, the regression of the mammary epithelium upon weaning.

ionizing radiation A type of high-energy radiation that has enough energy to remove an electron from an atom or molecule, causing it to become ionized.

ischemia State within a tissue caused by inadequate access to circulating blood, resulting in hypoxia, decreased pH, and inadequate supply of nutrients.

isochromosome A chromosome in which one of the two chromosomal arms has been lost and replaced by a duplicated copy of the surviving arm.

isoelectric point The pH value at which a molecule, such as a protein, exhibits no net charge.

isoform Protein that is functionally and structurally similar but not identical to another protein. Multiple distinct isoforms of a protein are usually encoded either by a single gene (via alternative splicing of a pre-mRNA) or by closely related paralogous genes. *See* **paralog**.

isopycnic A form of centrifugation in which a medium or solution composed of components of different densities is established within a centrifuge tube in a continuous gradient of densities from most dense

solution at the bottom to least dense at the top; during centrifugation, analyte molecules, multi-subunit complexes, or organelles of a specific density will, at equilibrium, settle into a zone within the centrifuge tube that is equivalent to their own density, enabling the resolution of analytes of different densities.

junk DNA Genomic DNA that cannot be associated with any biological function.

juxtacrine Type of cell–cell signaling in which the signal-emitting cell must be directly apposed to the signal-receiving cell in order for the signal to be properly transmitted. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine**, **exocrine**, **intracrine**, **paracrine**.

juxtamembrane Located immediately adjacent to a membrane.

Kaplan–Meier plot A convention for graphing various clinical observations in which the percentage of surviving patients (or another clinical parameter such as disease-free or progression-free survival) is plotted on the ordinate (*y*-axis), while the time course after initial diagnosis or treatment is plotted (usually in increments of months or years) on the abscissa (*x*-axis).

kataegis Localized areas of point mutations arising near sites of chromothripsis and affecting preferentially cytidine and guanine nucleotides. *See* **chromothripsis**.

karyotype (1) The array of chromosomes carried by a cell, as determined by detailed microscopic examination of these chromosomes usually performed with condensed chromosomes at metaphase. (2) Images of the metaphase chromosomes of a cell arrayed systematically by homologous pairs from the largest to the smallest pair.

karyotypic Referring to the array of chromosomes of a cell that can be visualized by microscopy.

keratin (1) Protein component of the intermediate filaments forming the cytoskeleton of epithelial cells; *also termed* **cytokeratin**. (2) Extracellular

protein forming hair, nails, and feathers left behind and deposited after keratin-forming cells die.

keratinocyte Epithelial cell type found in a variety of epithelial tissues, notably the skin. These cells are named after the cytokeratins that they express, which form key components of the cytoskeleton of these cells. *See also* **cytokeratin.**

keratosis A benign lesion of the keratinocyte lineage in the skin usually caused by exposure to ultraviolet solar radiation.

Ki-67 A nuclear protein that serves as a marker of actively proliferating cells and is expressed in all phases of the active cell cycle.

kinase Enzyme that removes the γ phosphate from ATP and covalently attaches the phosphate moiety to substrate molecules, often but not exclusively proteins.

kinetochore Nucleoprotein complex that is associated with the centromeric DNA of a chromosome and is responsible during mitosis or meiosis for forming physical connections between the chromosome and the microtubules of the spindle fibers.

kinome The complete repertoire of kinases encoded by a genome, such as the human genome.

knock-down Procedure whereby the expression of a gene is reduced through the introduction into a cell of an inhibitory molecule such as an shRNA or siRNA that interferes with expression of its cognate mRNA.

knock-in A targeted mutation achieved through the homologous recombination of an experimentally introduced, cloned DNA fragment containing, in part, sequences of the targeted gene; the resulting integration of the introduced fragment into the genome of a cell usually results in the addition of novel sequences that affect the function of the targeted gene. *See also* **knock-out**.

knock-out (1) A targeted mutation that is achieved by a knock-in genetic strategy that results in insertion of a genetically defective copy of a gene or portion of a gene into the homologous gene sequence residing in the genome of a cell or organism. (2) A targeted mutation that is achieved by introduction of a CRISPR-Cas9 construct into a cell. *See also* **knock-in, CRISPR-Cas9**.

Krebs cycle *See* **tricarboxylic acid cycle**.

labile Highly susceptible or vulnerable to being changed, including suffering inactivation or destruction.

lamellipodium (pl., **-ia**) A broad, sheetlike ruffle extending from the plasma membrane into the extracellular space that is typically found at the leading edge of a motile cell.

lamin A fibrillar protein component of the nuclear membrane.

laminin A fibrillar protein component of the basement membrane.

laser capture microdissection Procedure in which a laser beam is used to delineate a patch of cells away from other cells present in a tissue section mounted on a microscope slide; the cells forming the patch are subsequently selectively removed for further analysis.

latency The time period that defines the delay before a process reaches completion and becomes manifest or apparent.

latent An entity or process that is not readily detectable or apparent.

lead-time bias A bias (e.g., in measurement of patient survival time) created when a disease condition is diagnosed at an earlier stage of its natural multi-step progression schedule because newly developed and more sensitive or effective diagnostic techniques have been deployed; resulting lead-time biases can lead to the impression that the temporal course of disease has been increased, whereas disease progression is only being monitored starting at an earlier step of the naturally occurring process.

leiomyoma Benign tumor of the mesenchymal cells forming the wall of the uterus.

leukapheresis Procedure whereby leukocytes are prepared *ex vivo* from drawn blood prior to returning the remaining portions of the blood to the donor or to another recipient.

leukemia Malignancy of any of a variety of hematopoietic cell types, including the lineages leading to lymphocytes and granulocytes, in which the tumor cells are nonpigmented and dispersed throughout the circulation. *Compare* **lymphoma**.

leukemogenesis (adj., **-genic**) Process that creates a leukemia.

leukocyte A nonpigmented white blood cell such as a lymphocyte, monocyte, macrophage, neutrophil, or mast cell.

leukosis A leukemia-like disease of chickens.

library (1) A collection of DNA clones derived from a cell's or an organism's genome or from cDNAs prepared from its expressed mRNAs, in which each component clone ideally derives from a distinct gene in this genome. (2) A collection of chemical compounds such as those synthesized because of their possible therapeutic utility.

ligand Molecule that binds specifically to a receptor and thereby activates its signaling powers. *See also* **receptor**.

ligase An enzyme that covalently joins two molecules together; in the context of DNA, ligases join the 3′ end of one ssDNA to the 5′ end of another other via a phosphodiester linkage.

light chain Smaller of the two polypeptide chains that assemble to form immunoglobulins and related proteins. *Compare* **heavy chain**.

limiting dilution analysis Procedure in which the representation or percentage of a given cell type of interest within a larger, often heterogeneous cell population is gauged by diluting the sample of interest

and extrapolating from subsequent biological assays the concentration of the cell type of interest in the initial sample being analyzed.

lineage A continuous, linear succession of cells extending from an ancestral cell via multiple intervening generations to its most recent descendants.

liquid biopsy Sampling of the contents of the blood rather than the contents of a solid tissue such as a tumor.

lobe (1) A cluster of alveoli formed in the mammary gland. (2) One of seven major sectors of the lungs or four major sectors of the liver. *See* **alveoli**.

OceanofPDF.com

lobular Referring to a lobe.

locked nucleic acid A chemically synthesized oligonucleotide in which the ribose residues contain methylene bridges between their 2′ oxygens and 4′ carbons, which greatly increase the ability of the oligonucleotide as a whole to anneal to complementary sequences.

locus (1) Chromosome site that can be studied genetically and is presumed to be associated with a specific gene. (2) A genetic element that can be mapped by genetic analysis.

long terminal repeat A genetic segment that is present in two identical copies at the ends of a retroviral genome or transposon and carries a strong transcriptional promoter and sequences important for chromosomal integration.

longitudinal Referring to the repeated, successive monitoring of a single patient or a group of patients over an extended period of time.

loss-of-function Referring to a mutation that deprives a gene and/or its protein product of an existing function. *See also* **gain-of-function**.

loss of heterozygosity A genetic event in which one of two alleles at a heterozygous locus is lost; the lost allele may simply be discarded or be replaced with a duplicated copy of the surviving allele. *See also* **allelic deletion**.

low-grade Referring to a tumor that has progressed minimally and is still relatively benign. *Compare with* **high-grade**.

loxP A bacteriophage DNA sequence that, when present in pairs within a genome, can be acted upon by a Cre recombinase, resulting in a recombination event between the two loxP sequences and loss of the intervening DNA segment located between the two loxP sites. *See also* **Cre**.

luciferase An ATP-dependent light-emitting protein.

lumen (pl., **lumina**; adj., **luminal**) (1) The bore of a hollow, tubelike structure, such as the gut, a bronchiole in the lung, a blood vessel, or a duct in a secretory organ. (2) The enclosed cavity within a spherical structure, such as a membranous vesicle.

luminal Referring to a cavity in a tissue or the cells that line and face a lumen. See also **lumen**.

lumpectomy Surgical procedure in which a tumor is removed together with immediately surrounding normal tissue while leaving the bulk of the affected organ intact; usually used in the context of breast cancer surgery.

lymph Interstitial fluid between cells that is drained via the lymph nodes to larger lymphatic vessels that eventually empty into the venous circulation.

lymph node Small kidney-shaped structure through which lymph passes and where antigens scavenged by antigen-presenting cells are presented to B and T lymphocytes.

lymphangiogenesis The process of forming new lymphatic vessels.

lymphatic Referring to vessels and nodes that drain interstitial fluid from tissues and eventually deposit this fluid in the venous circulation.

lymphedema Swelling of a tissue due to accumulation of interstitial fluid, which in turn is caused by failure of proper drainage via lymphatic ducts.

lymphocytes Class of leukocytes that mediate humoral or cellular immunity, encompassing B cells, T cells, and NK cells and derivatives thereof.

lymphoid (1) Referring to the lymphatic system and its associated organelles. (2) Referring to the lineage of hematopoietic cells that yields B and T lymphocytes as well as natural killer cells. *Compare* **myeloid**.

lymphokine A cytokine or growth factor specialized to attract and/or activate lymphocytes.

lymphoma Solid tumor of lymphoid cells. *Compare* **leukemia**.

lymphopenia Deficiency of lymphocytes in the circulation. *Also termed* **lymphocytopenia**.

lymphotropic Capable of infecting lymphocytes.

Lynch syndrome A form of familial colorectal cancer caused by inherited mutations in one of several mismatch repair genes; also known as hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC). Beyond colorectal cancer, individuals with Lynch syndrome are also at increased risk of developing brain, stomach, and endometrial cancer as well as other cancer types. *See also* **hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer**.

lysate Product of experimentally dissolving the structure of a tissue or a population of cells, usually generated in order to liberate the internal contents of the tissue or cells.

lysosome A cytoplasmic vesicle that contains in its lumen degradative enzymes in a solution of low pH, allowing it to degrade various molecules that are introduced into it; in addition, cells may sense nutrient availability by gauging the concentrations of certain amino acids in the lumina of their lysosomes.

lytic Dissolving a cell or tissue; often associated with the potent cytopathic effects of certain viruses on specific host cells.

lytic cycle Cycle of viral infection and replication that results ultimately in the death of the infected host cell.

M1 macrophage A subtype of macrophages that is associated with highly cytotoxic and phagocytic powers and can function to assist the immune attack on cancer cells. *Compare* **M2 macrophage**.

M2 macrophage A subtype of macrophages that releases immunosuppressive cytokines, notably IL-10 and TGF-β, and also favors tissue repair and regeneration. *Compare* **M1 macrophage**.

macrometastasis A metastatic tumor of a size that allows it to be detected by a variety of clinically used imaging procedures and thus does not require

microscopy for its detection. *See also* **micrometastasis**.

macronucleus Larger of the two nuclei in many ciliate cells, which carries multiple copies of each gene and is used for the production of mRNAs.

macrophage A phagocytic cell that either resides over extended periods of time within a tissue or arises within the tissue via the differentiation of recently arrived bone marrow–derived monocytes and proceeds to engulf and digest various infectious agents and cellular debris, often in order to present resulting oligopeptides to the adaptive immune system; additional normal functions include the release of angiogenic factors, mitogens, and proteases as part of a wound-healing program. *See also* **phagocytic**.

MAF transcription factors A family of bZip-containing transcription factors involved in regulating tissue-specific transcription programs.

maintenance methyltransferase An enzyme that attaches a methyl group to an unmethylated CpG that is complementary to an existing methylated CpG in a DNA double helix.

major histocompatibility antigen One of a group of cell-surface proteins that are responsible for the presentation of oligopeptide antigens derived from proteolysis of intracellular proteins to responding cells of the immune system. *See also* **histocompatibility antigen**.

malignant Describing a growth that shows evidence of being locally invasive and possibly even metastatic.

malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor A tumor, usually displaying mesenchymal traits, that often arises from a neurofibroma and derives from cells that form the cellular sheaths protecting peripheral nerves.

malpractice Clinical treatment that is not appropriate or optimal given existing standards of therapy and implying incompetence or willful neglect.

mammary Referring to the breast and its milk-producing glands.

mammogram The image produced by mammography. *See* **mammography**.

mammography A clinical procedure using X-rays to detect incipient breast cancers.

mass action Referring to a situation in which the rate of a chemical or biochemical reaction is governed by the concentration of one or more of its reactants.

mass cytometry Procedure whereby antigen-specific antibody molecules are coupled chemically (conjugated) to metal atoms of various isotopes followed by detection of resulting antigen-metal-antibody conjugates by mass spectrometry, enabling the simultaneous detection of several dozen antigens. *See also* **mass spectrometry**.

mass spectrometry Analytical procedure by which the mass-to-charge ratio of ions is measured. The presence of ions, which are generated by bombarding molecules with electrons, reveals the nature of the molecules being analyzed or fragments of such molecules, often leading to the identification of their chemical structure.

Masson's trichome stain A mixture of staining chemicals that, in one alternative version, stains collagen blue, muscles red, and nuclei dark brown.

mast cell Granulocyte of bone marrow origin that displays Fc receptors for binding IgE antibody molecules and undergoes IgE-mediated degranulation following encounter with antigens bound by the associated IgE molecules.

mastocytosis A benign excess of mast cells, which are normally involved in allergic responses, wound healing, and defense against pathogens. *See also* **mast cell**.

Matrigel A preparation of ECM components, largely of basement membrane origin, that is secreted by mouse sarcoma cells and is often used as a gelatinous matrix in which to suspend cells in three-dimensional culture.

matrisome The collection of molecular species that together form the extracellular matrix of a tissue or of cultured cells.

matrix metalloproteinases Secreted proteases that employ zinc ions in their catalytic sites and degrade extracellular proteins, largely components of the extracellular matrix.

maximum tolerated dose The dosage of an administered drug above which a patient suffers unacceptable levels of toxic side effects.

mechanotransduction Process by which a cell senses mechanical stimuli, such as tension in the adjacent extracellular matrix, and converts this physical information into intracellular biochemical signals.

median The numerical value of a measurement that resides halfway through a list of such measurements, the latter arrayed in an order of increasing or decreasing value.

medical Referring to the use of drugs, rather than surgery, to treat disease.

medical oncology The practice of treating cancer with drugs. *See also* **surgical oncology**, **radiation oncology**.

medium The fluid in which cells are propagated *in vitro. See also* **tissue culture**.

medulloblastoma Tumor of the primitive precursors of neurons in the cerebellum.

megakaryocyte Large cell of the hematopoietic system that produces platelets by pinching off fragments of its cytoplasm.

melanin A brown-black or red-brown pigment that is synthesized by melanocytes and, in the skin, transferred to basal keratinocytes, thereby creating pigmentation of the skin; alternatively, pigment is transferred to cells within the iris of the eye.

melanocyte Cell of neural crest origin that creates pigmentation of the skin and iris.

melanoma Tumor arising from the melanocytes present as the pigmented cells of the skin, iris, and retinal pigmented epithelium.

melanosome Melanin-containing body in the cytoplasm of a melanocyte that is transferred to a keratinocyte or cells of the iris in order to impart pigmentation to the latter.

membrane attack complex The complex of multiple proteins including cell surface–bound antibody molecules and complement proteins that can introduce pores in the nearby plasma membrane, thereby killing an involved cell.

memory *See* **immunological memory**.

menarche Timing in life of the first menstrual cycle. *See also* **menopause**.

menopause Time in life when menstrual cycles halt. *See also* **menarche**.

merotely Condition established during the prophase of mitosis when a single kinetochore becomes linked simultaneously to two opposing spindle fibers.

mesenchymal (1) Referring to tissue composed of cells of mesodermal origin, including fibroblasts, smooth muscle cells, endothelial cells, and adipocytes. (2) Referring to an individual cell type belonging to this class of cells. (3) Referring to a phenotypic state associated with mesenchymal markers and created by the epithelial–mesenchymal transition cell-biological program. *See* **epithelial–mesenchymal transition**.

mesenchymal–epithelial transition The reversal of the epithelial–mesenchymal transition program that converts phenotypically more-mesenchymal cells into more-epithelial derivatives. *Compare* **epithelial–mesenchymal transition**.

mesenchymal stem cell An oligopotent mesenchymal cell, often of bone marrow origin, that can be recruited to various tissues in which it can differentiate into chondrocytes, osteoblasts, adipocytes, and possibly other mesenchymal cell types.

mesoderm Middle layer of cells in an early chordate embryo lying between the ectoderm and endoderm, which is the precursor of mesenchymal tissues, including connective tissues and the hematopoietic system. *See also* mesenchymal.

mesothelioma Tumor of the epithelial membranes lining the lungs, peritoneal cavity, and heart.

messenger RNA (mRNA) The transcript of a gene that has been processed by splicing and exported to the cytoplasm where it serves as the template for protein synthesis conducted by ribosomes.

meta-analysis Statistical procedure for pooling and integrating the results of a number of independent experimental, clinical, or epidemiologic studies in order to generate a larger data set and greater statistical significance than is afforded by the data of only a single study.

metabolite Chemical species resulting from the metabolic conversion by enzymes of a precursor chemical species.

metalloproteinase A protease that contains a metal atom, usually zinc, in its catalytic site.

metaphase Second major phase of mitosis, during which chromosomes complete condensation and attach to the mitotic spindle after the nuclear membrane disappears; chromosomes are now readily observed in the light microscope following appropriate staining.

metaphase plate A plane or region that is approximately equidistant from the two poles of a dividing cell at which chromosomes align prior to the anaphase portion of the cell cycle.

metaphyta Plants composed of many cells.

metaplasia Replacement within a tissue of cells of one differentiation lineage by cells belonging to another lineage.

metastable State of a cell or process that appears over a period of time to be stable and unchanging but can in fact be changed by various signals or perturbants.

metastasis (pl., **-es**; adj., **metastatic**; v. **metastasize**) A neoplastic growth forming at one site in the body, the cells of which derive from a malignancy located elsewhere in the body, such as the site of primary tumor formation. (2) The process leading to the formation of metastases. *See also* **primary tumor**.

metastatic colonization The phenomenon in which disseminated tumor cells forming micrometastases succeed in spawning macroscopic metastases.

metastatic inefficiency Phenomenon in which only a minute portion of disseminated tumor cells succeed in spawning macroscopic metastases.

metastatic shower Clinical observation of an apparent synchronous formation of multiple new metastases at multiple sites of metastatic dissemination.

metastatic tropism The observed tendency of cancer cells from one specific primary tumor type to colonize preferentially one target organ or another.

metazoan Referring to animals composed of many cells. *Compare* **protozoan**.

methylator phenotype Tendency of the DNA methylation apparatus in a cell to drive excessive CpG methylation, leading to the hypermethylated state of its genome.

methyltransferase An enzyme that attaches methyl groups covalently to substrates, such as the cytosine bases of DNA or lysine residues of histones.

MHC class I A class of cell surface proteins that is specialized to acquire (during its maturation within the endoplasmic reticulum) oligopeptide fragments of its own intracellular proteins and thereafter present these

fragments on the cell surface where they may be recognized by components of the adaptive immune system such as CD8+ lymphocytes. *Compare* **MHC class II**.

MHC class II A class of cell surface proteins that is specialized to acquire (during its maturation within the endoplasmic reticulum) oligopeptide fragments of acquired phagocytosed cells or particles and thereafter present these fragments on the cell surface where they may be recognized by components of the adaptive immune system such as CD4+ lymphocytes. *Compare* **MHC class I**.

microarray A collection of sequence-specific DNA probes that are attached at specific sites to a solid substrate, such as a glass microscope slide; these probes may derive from specific genes scattered throughout a cell genome or from a particular subset of chosen genes. *See also* **DNA chip**.

microbiome The collection of microbes, largely bacteria, that exist naturally as commensal organisms in normal organs, such as the gastrointestional tract and the skin; each of these and other tissues carries its own spectrum of microbes and thus its own microbiome.

microembolus (pl., **microemboli**) Small body formed from cells or products of the clotting machinery that travels through the circulation and may be trapped in small vessels, often blocking further circulation through these vessels. *See also* **embolus**.

microenvironment (1) The biological environment within a tissue that is created by nearby cells that influence the behavior of a cell of interest. (2) In a tumor, the environment that is generated by the recruited stromal cells that are closely apposed to the neoplastic cells such as carcinoma cells.

micrometastasis A single cell or small clump of disseminated cancer cells that can only be visualized using one or another form of microscopy. *See also* **macrometastasis**.

micronucleus (1) A small fragment of a nucleus that has its own nuclear membrane and results from certain aberrations in cell division or from damage inflicted on a cell; micronuclei often carry only a single

chromosome and arise when this chromosome fails to be incorporated into the previously formed mitotic spindle, thereby escaping inclusion in the normal karyotypic array of a daughter cell. (2) Smaller of the two nuclei in many ciliate cells, which is used to carry and transmit the ciliate genome to progeny cells.

microRNA Endogenously synthesized RNA transcribed by RNA polymerase II and processed into 21- to 23-nt-long ssRNA that interferes with translation of an mRNA or causes its degradation, depending on the degree of complementarity with the mRNA.

microsatellite A DNA relatively short oligonucleotide segment of simple sequence that resides within a cell genome and is repeated hundreds, even thousands of times in this genome, often at sites scattered though this genome. *See also* **satellite**.

microsatellite instability A condition caused by mutations in genes involved in DNA mismatch repair that is manifested when microsatellite sequences undergo frequent expansion or shrinkage in length. *See also* **microsatellite**, **mismatch repair**.

microthrombus *See* **thrombus**, **embolus**.

mimetic An agent, such as a protein or chemical, that imitates or functionally mimics another agent.

minimal residual disease Following treatment of diagnosed tumors, the persistence of derived cancer cells that are undetectable by clinical or radiological measurements but nevertheless persist as potential sources of eventual clinical relapses.

mismatch repair Class of DNA repair processes that depend on proofreading a recently synthesized segment of DNA and removing any misincorporated bases that may have escaped previous correction by DNA polymerase-associated proofreading functions. Defects in mismatch repair lead to microsatellite instability. *See also* **microsatellite instability**, **proofreading.**

mis-segregation The failure to properly segregate chromosomes during mitosis or meiosis.

missense codon A triplet codon in the genetic code, often created by a point mutation, that specifies an amino acid residue different from that specified by the codon that it replaces. *See also* **nonsense codon**.

missense mutation Point mutation causing an amino acid substitution. *See* **missense codon**.

mitogen (adj., **-genic**) An agent that provokes cell proliferation.

mitosis (1) Nuclear division, composed of the four steps of prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase, the last including cytokinesis. (2) Process by which a single cell separates its complement of chromosomes into two equal sets in preparation for the division of the cell into two daughter cells achieved by cytokinesis.

mitotic catastrophe Process by which unrepaired damage to DNA or chromosomes or mis-segregation of chromosomes causes cells to enter into M phase and die there through non-apoptotic mechanisms because of an inability to properly complete the critical final steps of mitosis.

mitotic recombination Recombination between homologous chromosomal arms occurring during somatic cell proliferation, often during the G2 phase of the cell cycle (rather than during mitosis).

mitotic spindle The complex array of microtubules that is responsible for separating the two sets of chromatids during the anaphase of mitosis.

molecular chaperone A protein that functions to facilitate the proper folding of unfolded or misfolded proteins, doing so without making or breaking covalent bonds.

monoallelic Referring to a state in which only one of the two copies of a gene is expressed or exerts effects on phenotype. *See also* **biallelic**.

monoclonal Describing a population of cells, all of which derive by direct descent from a single common ancestral cell. *See also* **oligoclonal**, **polyclonal**.

monoclonal antibody An antibody that is made via secretion by a population of cells that has been produced through the immortalization of a single antibody-producing plasma cell and subsequent clonal expansion of its descendants, so that all antibody molecules in a preparation are biochemically identical to one another and show identical antigen specificity. *See also* **hybridoma**.

monocyte Phagocytic leukocyte of bone marrow origin that circulates briefly in the blood before migrating into tissues, where it can differentiate into macrophages, osteoclasts, dendritic cells, Langerhans cells, and possibly other phagocytic cell types.

monogenic Referring to a phenotype or disease condition that can be traced to the actions of a single gene and its alleles. *See also* **polygenic**.

monolayer A population of cells growing *in vitro* as a layer one cell thick.

monomer Molecule composed of a single unit or a single subunit of a chemical entity that is capable of forming higher–molecular-weight polymeric structures by association with or covalent linkage to other identical or similar units.

monotherapy A therapy in which only a single drug or treatment is used at one time.

monozygotic Referring to two or more organisms derived from a single fertilized egg, thereby referring to identical twins, triplets, or multiple births involving higher numbers of genetically identical newborns.

morbidity The existence of a medical condition or disease.

morphogen Low–molecular-weight substance that induces cells to assemble and participate in the construction of a tissue of a certain shape and form.

morphogenesis Process whereby shape is created, usually referring to the creation of shape of various tissue and organ structures during embryonic development.

morphology Shape and form of a cell, tissue, or organism.

mortal Referring to a cell population having limited proliferative capacity. *Compare* **immortalization**.

mortality The rate or frequency of death from a particular disease condition.

motility (adj., **motile**) Tendency for movement, such as that of individual cells, from one location to another.

motogenic Referring to an agent or signal that stimulates cell movement or motility.

mTOR Serine/threonine kinase that forms the catalytic core of the mTORC1 and mTORC2 complexes; by responding to nutrient availability, mTORC1 acts as the central regulator of cell growth, biosynthesis, and autophagy.

mucin Member of a family of heavily glycosylated glycoproteins that are secreted by luminal cells in a variety of epithelial tissues and form gel-like aggregates in order to lubricate or erect barriers to protect the luminal and underlying epithelial cell layers.

mucosa Epithelial cell layer that secretes a mucus-like substance that forms a protective layer above the secreting cells.

multi-drug resistance Development by cancer cells under treatment of concomitant resistance to multiple chemically distinct species of therapeutic drugs.

multi-drug transporter Molecular pump embedded in the plasma membrane of a cell that is capable of exporting multiple distinct molecular

species including drug molecules from the cell. *See also* **multi-drug resistance**.

multimeric. Referring to a complex of multiple subunits. *See also* **monomer**, **dimer**, **trimer**, **tetramer**.

multiparous Referring to a woman who has given birth multiple times.

multiple myeloma *See* **myeloma**.

multiplicity of infection In virology, the ratio of number of infectious particles to the number of infectable cells.

multipotent Referring to the ability of a stem cell to differentiate into multiple distinct cell types. *See also* **totipotent**, **pluripotent**.

mural Referring to the outer cell layers of blood vessels, which are composed of pericytes and smooth muscle cells and surround the luminal endothelial cells.

murine Referring to the subgroup of rodents that includes mice and rats.

muscularis propria Layer of muscles immediately underlying the submucosal layer in the gastrointestinal tract.

mutability The susceptibility of a cell and its genome to alteration via mutation.

mutable Referring to an entity that is subject to change, notably a genome subject to genetic mutation.

mutagen (adj., **-genic**) An agent that creates a mutation. *See also* **genotoxic**.

mutagenicity The property of being mutagenic.

mutation Change in the genotype of a virus or cell that involves an alteration in the nucleotide sequence of its genome, in the arrangement of a segment within a chromosome, in the number of copies of a segment, in the

physical structure of a chromosome, or in the number of copies of a structurally normal chromosome.

mutational burden *See* **tumor mutational burden**.

mutator phenotype Cell state in which defects in DNA repair or mutagen detoxification lead to elevated numbers of mutations sustained per cell generation.

myelin Substance composed of lipid and protein that is applied around axons by Schwann cells and oligodendrocytes in order provide electrical insulation, thereby facilitating rapid signal conduction. *See also* **Schwann cells**.

myelo- Prefix referring to bone marrow or an entity of bone marrow origin.

myeloablation Clinical procedure involving the elimination of the hematopoietic system, including its cellular components residing in the bone marrow, usually achieved through the application of a toxic drug or whole-body radiation.

myelocytomatosis A malignancy of avian bone marrow cells.

myelodysplasia Condition in which incompletely differentiated cells of one or another myeloid lineage accumulate in the blood, often accompanied by a reduction in the concentration within the circulation of properly differentiated cells of bone marrow origin.

myelodysplastic syndrome Hyperproliferative condition of cells of the myeloid lineage in the bone marrow which often progresses to acute myelogenous leukemia.

myelogenous Originating in the bone marrow; *also termed* **myelocytic**. *See also* **myeloid**.

myeloid (1) Referring to the lineages of hematopoietic cells that yield cells that are not lymphocytes and includes erythrocytes, platelets, granulocytes, monocytes, mast cells, and their derivatives. (2) Pertaining to or resembling

bone marrow; often used as a synonym for myelogenous. *Compare* **lymphoid**.

myeloid derived suppressor cell Relatively undifferentiated cell of myeloid origin, deriving from cells of the granulocytic or monocytic lineages, that exerts potent immunosuppressive functions on other immune cells of both the innate and adaptive arms of the immune system.

myeloma A malignancy of the antibody-producing cells of the bone marrow, often called multiple myeloma to indicate the large number of osteolytic lesions that are encountered in patients with advanced disease.

myeloproliferative Referring to excessive proliferation and resulting elevated levels of one of the several cell types generated by the myeloid branch of the hematopoietic system.

myoblasts The undifferentiated precursors of the myocytes present in differentiated muscle. *See also* **myocytes**.

myocytes The individual contractile cells that assemble to form functional muscles. *See also* **myoblasts**.

myofibroblast A type of fibroblast that is normally involved in wound healing and inflammation and is often defined by its expression of α-smooth muscle actin which, together with myosin, imparts to it contractile powers.

N-terminus (adj., **-al**) End of a protein chain at which synthesis is initiated. *See also* **C-terminus**.

naive Referring to immune lymphocytes that have not experienced contact with cognate antigens and have not, as a consequence, undergone the biological activation associated with such contact.

nascent Referring to an entity, such as a molecule, that is in the course of being formed or synthesized.

natal Referring to birth. *See also* **prenatal**.

natural killer cells A type of lymphocyte whose ability to attack target cells is not dependent on any form of adaptive immunity. *See also* **innate immune response**.

natural product A chemical species that is a product of the natural metabolism of an organism, such as a bacterium, fungus, or plant.

NCI-60 cell lines (often **NCI-60**) The collection of 60 human cancer cell lines prepared from nine commonly occurring tumor types and provided by the U.S. National Cancer Institute that is often used to gauge the responsiveness of different types of cancer cells to therapeutic agents under development.

necroptosis A programmed form of necrosis that leads to cell death and the release of cellular debris that may persist and trigger local tissue inflammation. *See also* **apoptosis**, **ferroptosis**, **pyroptosis**.

necrosis A non-programmed form of cell death triggered by the collapse of cellular energy production, involving the breakdown of a cell's constituents through steps that are distinct from those in the neocroptosis and apoptotic death programs. *See* **necroptosis**, **apoptosis**.

necrotic Referring to a region of a normal or neoplastic tissue in which the cells have died.

negative feedback A regulatory process whereby a stimulatory signal upstream in a signaling pathway activates a downstream target that proceeds to inhibit the source of the initial upstream signal, thereby reducing further overall signaling. *See also* **positive feedback**.

neoadjuvant Referring to a treatment that is undertaken before the main therapy is applied, e.g., to reduce tumor size before surgery. *See also* **adjuvant**.

neoangiogenesis *See* **angiogenesis**.

neoantigen An antigen that is newly formed by tumor cells, usually during the course of tumor development, and is created by somatic mutations

affecting the reading frames of cellular mRNAs.

neomorphic Referring to a mutation that confers a novel function on a gene and encoded protein.

neoplasia (adj., **-plastic**) (1) The state of cancerous growth. (2) Benign or malignant tumor composed of cells having an abnormal appearance and abnormal proliferation pattern.

neoplasm A tumor. *See also* **neoplasia**.

neovasculature Vasculature that is newly developed, often by a growing tumor. *See also* **vasculature**.

neural crest Dorsal region of the early chordate embryo that contains cells serving as precursors of various specialized tissue and cell types, including certain cells of the peripheral nervous system, bones of the face, melanocytes, and several types of neurosecretory cells.

neurite A thin provisional protrusion from the cell body of a neuron that has the potential to develop into a fully formed, functional axon. *See also* **axon**, **neuron**.

neuroblastoma Tumor of primitive neuronal precursor cells of the peripheral nervous system and adrenal medulla.

neuroectodermal Referring to the components of the nervous system, which derive from the embryonic ectoderm.

neuroendocrine Referring to a cell type that releases certain hormones in response to neuronal signals.

neurofibroma Benign tumor of cells forming the sheath around nerve axons.

neurofibrosarcoma Malignant tumor of cells forming the sheath around nerve axons.

neuron A nucleated cell in nervous tissue from which neurites and axons extend. *See* **axon**, **neurite**.

neuropeptide A small protein or oligopeptide that is produced by cleavage of a higher–molecular-weight precursor and is released by certain cells of the central nervous system and neuroendocrinal cells and that impinges upon and thereby signals to other cells inside and outside of the central nervous system.

neurosecretory Referring to a cell type that will secrete a substance, such as a hormone, in response to neuronal signals.

neurotrophic Referring to secreted factors that support the growth, survival, and differentiation of nervous tissue.

neutral mutation Change in DNA sequence that has no effect on phenotype, including mutations that have no effect on protein structure.

neutralization Inactivation of a biological activity, such as inactivation of viral infectivity by antibody molecules.

neutropenia Deficiency of neutrophils in the marrow and circulation.

neutrophil An abundant granulocyte in the circulation that expresses Fc receptors and is responsible for multiple functions, including recognizing and engulfing various types of infectious agents and participating in various types of inflammation.

neutrophilia A condition in which the concentration of neutrophils in the circulation is elevated above its normal value.

nevus (pl., **nevi**) A benign growth of melanocytes in the skin yielding moles or collections of pigmented cells that may, at low probability, progress into a melanoma.

next-generation sequencing A set of high-throughput methods used to determine a portion of the nucleotide sequence of DNA. These techniques utilize DNA sequencing technologies that are capable of determining

multiple DNA sequences in parallel. *Also called* massively parallel sequencing.

niche A functional locale that supports the survival and proliferation of specialized cells. Specific niches support the proliferation and survival of stem cells in normal tissues and, quite possibly, cancer stem cells in tumors.

NKG2D Receptor expressed by natural killer cells and other immunocytes that recognizes MHC-like molecules displayed by other cells undergoing various types of physiological stress and may trigger a cytolytic attack on such cells in response.

non-canonical Referring to a representation of an entity or process that differs from the most widely accepted, often initially established representation. *See also* **canonical**.

nondisjunction (1) Failure of two chromatids to separate from one another during mitosis or two homologous chromosomes to separate from one another during meiosis. (2) State created by this failure of separation.

nongenotoxic Incapable of damaging a genome. *See also* **genotoxic**.

nonhomologous end joining Type of DNA repair consisting of fusion of two dsDNA ends, in which the precise joining of the two ends is not informed or directed by sequences present in a normal sister chromatid or homologous chromosome.

nonhomologous recombination Process of recombination between two DNA molecules in which the two participating molecules do not share significant sequence identity. *Also called* **illegitimate recombination**.

noninvasive Referring to procedures that allow diagnosis or treatment without the need to enter the body with diagnostic instruments or surgery.

nonpermissive (1) Describing a physiological state that does not permit the survival and/or proliferation of a cell or infectious agent such as a temperature-sensitive virus. (2) Describing a type of host or host cell that does not permit cells or infectious agents to proliferate. *See* **permissive**.

non-self Constituent or agent in the body that is of foreign, non-native origin. *See also* **self**.

nonsense codon A triplet codon in the genetic code that specifies termination of the growing polypeptide chain; nonsense codons generated by point mutations within reading frames cause premature termination of translation and resulting formation of truncated proteins. *See also* **missense codon**.

nonsense mutation Mutation causing premature termination of a growing polypeptide chain. *See also* **nonsense codon**.

non-small-cell lung carcinoma Any of several types of lung cancers with the exception of small-cell lung carcinoma.

nonsynonymous A nucleotide mutation that alters the amino acid sequence of an encoded protein. Nonsynonymous mutations differ from synonymous mutations, which do not alter amino acid sequences of encoded proteins. *See also* **synonymous**.

normoxia A level of oxygen that corresponds to that normally experienced by cells in a specific tissue environment. *See also* **hypoxia**.

Northern blot Adaptation of the Southern blotting procedure in which RNA (rather than DNA) is resolved by gel electrophoresis and transferred to a filter that is subsequently incubated with a sequence-specific, radiolabeled DNA probe. *See also* **Southern blot**, **Western blot**.

nuclear magnetic resonance Analytical procedure for determining molecular structures and interactions in which molecules are placed under strong magnetic fields and the influence of radio frequency waves; the frequencies at which the atoms within a molecule resonate yields information on the molecular interactions of individual atoms and, in turn, the overall structure of a complex molecule.

nuclear receptor One of a family of nuclear DNA-binding proteins that bind lipid-soluble ligands and, in response, undergo a conformational shift

that enables them to directly control the transcription of genes to which they are bound.

nucleolus The organelle within the cell nucleus that is the site of ribosomal subunit biosynthesis.

nucleophilic Referring to a molecule that seeks out and reacts with electron-poor substrates. *Compare* **electrophilic**.

nucleoplasm The unstructured portion of the nucleus that does not include the nucleoli and chromosomes.

nucleosome Protein octamer, composed of two each of histones H2A, H2B, H3, and H4, around which DNA is wrapped in chromatin.

nucleotide-excision repair Type of DNA repair in which the initial step involves the excision of nucleotides (rather than bases). *Compare* **base-excision repair**.

null allele An allele of a gene that lacks all normal functions of the gene. *See also* **hypomorphic**.

nulliparous Referring to a female who has never given birth.

objective response Demonstration of clinical response to therapy as gauged by changes in progression-free survival, overall survival, time to progression, size of tumor, marked improvement in patient symptoms, or other measurable response to therapy.

obviate To render unnecessary.

occlude To block access to.

occult Hidden, inapparent.

ocular Referring to the eye.

off-target effects Effects of a therapeutic agent on molecules or cell types other than the intended targeted molecules or cell types.

Okazaki fragment A short DNA fragment of 150–200 nucleotides that enables lagging strand polymerization and is joined soon after its formation to adjacent Okazaki fragments by a DNA ligase.

oligoclonal Referring to a cell population that contains the descendants of a small number of founding cells. *See also* **polyclonal**, **monoclonal**.

oligomer A polymer of several monomeric subunits.

oligonucleotide A polymer composed of a relatively small number of nucleotides.

oligopeptide A short protein chain consisting of a relatively small number of amino acids.

oligopotent Referring to the ability of a less differentiated cell, such as a stem cell, to differentiate into two more distinct progeny.

-oma Denoting a benign or malignant growth.

-ome Suffix referring to the entire spectrum of a type of entity being expressed in a given cell or tissue, e.g., genome, proteome, (DNA) methylome, transcriptome, orfeome, matrisome or secretome.

ommatidium (pl., **-ia**) The individual compartment within the multi-compartment arthropod eye in which light is sensed.

oncofetal Referring to an antigen that is normally expressed transiently during embryonic development and is also expressed by some tumor cells.

oncogene (1) A cancer-inducing gene. (2) A gene that can transform cells from a normal to a neoplastic state.

oncogene addiction (1) The physiological state of a cancer cell in which it continues to be dependent for its proliferation or survival on the ongoing function of a certain oncogene, usually a mutant oncogene, often long after the oncogene has been acquired during the course of multi-step tumorigenesis. (2) More generally, ongoing dependence on any type of previously acquired genetic or epigenetic alteration.

oncogenic Referring to the ability to induce or cause cancer.

oncologist A physician who treats cancer, usually through medical rather than surgical means.

oncometabolite A chemical species that accumulates within cancer cells and contributes to their neoplastic transformation, e.g., 2-hydroxyglutarate.

oncomiR A microRNA associated with or causing cell transformation or contributing to tumor progression.

oncoprotein A protein specified by an oncogene that mediates its effects on cell physiology, often including neoplastic transformation.

ontogeny The developmental history of an individual organism.

open reading frame A sequence that encodes a continuous polypeptide segment, usually encompassing the entirety of the coding information of a gene.

operable Capable of being treated successfully by surgery. *See also* **inoperable**.

opportunistic A process, such as an infectious event, that exploits an environment that normally would be inhospitable to that process. An opportunistic infection by a virus occurs in host organisms that have compromised antiviral defense mechanisms.

opsonization Process of coating a cell, including a bacterial cell, with antibody molecules that recognize and bind cell surface antigens expressed by the cell; such binding often leads to the phagocytosis of the antibody-coated cell by phagocytes, such as macrophages, that display Fc receptors on their surface.

ordinate The vertical or *y*-axis of a Cartesian graph. *See also* **abscissa**.

orfeome The collection of many or all of the open reading frames expressed within a cell or cell type.

organelle A subcellular structure, such as a ribosome, mitochondrion, or Golgi apparatus.

organoid An experimentally created model of a normal adult tissue, usually generated through incubation of organ-specific stemlike cells suspended in a three-dimensional gelatinous matrix containing a cocktail of factors designed to induce a tissue-specific differentiation program in the organoid.

organotropism The tendency of cancer cells in a specific type of primary tumor to spawn metastases in a specific subset of normal tissues in the body.

organotypic Tending to reflect or recapitulate a state or condition mimicking the one operating within a specific organ or tissue.

origin of replication DNA segment that determines the site of initiation of replication in a chromosome, viral genome, or episome, often resulting in two diverging replication forks.

oropharynx (adj., **oropharyngeal**) The cavity extending from the back of the mouth down the respiratory tract to the larynx (voice box).

ortholog (*also* **orthologue**) A gene in one species that is the closest relative of a gene in another species, with the two genes arising from a common ancestral gene in a common ancestral species; usually orthologs represent direct counterparts of one another in the genomes of two species, often retaining very similar functions. *See also* **homolog**, **paralog**.

orthotopic Referring to an anatomically proper or native site. *See also* **ectopic**.

osteoblast Mesenchymal cell type related to fibroblasts that constructs mineralized bone through the deposition of a collagenous matrix and apatite crystals.

osteoblastic Referring to a class of bone lesions that involve localized increases in the amount of mineralized bone. *See also* **osteolytic**.

osteoclast Cell type of monocyte origin that functions to degrade and demineralize already-assembled bone.

osteoid The extracellular matrix that forms during bone formation prior to mineralization.

osteolytic Referring to a bone lesion that involves localized dissolution of mineralized bone usually driven by the localized actions of osteoclasts. *See also* **osteoblastic**.

osteotropism The trait of cells, notably metastasizing cancer cells, to migrate to and colonize the bone marrow.

outcomes research The practice of evaluating treatment protocols by comparing clinical outcomes achieved by several alternative protocols, usually in controlled clinical trials.

overall survival Proportion of patients who are still alive at a certain time following initiation of treatment, often measured after a certain interval, such as five years, after such treatment initiation. *See also* **progression-free survival**, **disease-free survival**.

overexpression Expression of an RNA or a protein at higher-than-normal levels.

oxidative phosphorylation The process of generating ATP from ADP driven by electron gradients in the mitochondrion.

p value Statistical parameter describing the probability that an event or quantity occurred simply by random chance.

Paneth cell Secretory cells that reside in the bottom of intestinal crypts and also help to create a stem-cell niche for adjacent intestinal stem cells. *See also* **niche**.

papilloma Benign, adenomatous proliferation of epithelial cells; term often used to describe benign lesions of the skin.

papovaviruses Class of viruses that includes SV40, polyomavirus, and papillomaviruses.

paracrine Referring to the signaling path of a hormone or factor that is released by one cell and acts on a nearby cell, ostensibly after transport through the interstitial fluid of a tissue. *Compare* **autocrine**, **endocrine, exocrine, intracrine**, **juxtacrine**.

parallel progression Process whereby cancer cells advance through multi-step tumor progression at sites distant from and independently of the primary tumor. *See also* **primary tumor**.

paralog (*also* **paralogue**) A gene or protein that is related to another gene or protein through evolution from a common ancestral precursor; paralogs usually arise via gene duplication followed by sequence divergence of the two resulting genes, often with the development of two distinct functions, with both resulting genes continuing to be present in the genome of a descendant organism. *See also* **homolog, ortholog**.

paraneoplastic Referring to a biological effect evoked in the body by a tumor at a site in the body that is located some distance from the tumor itself and is apparently not directly involved in the pathogenesis of the tumor.

parenchyma The portion of a tissue that lies outside the circulatory system and often is responsible for carrying out the specialized functions of the tissue.

parenteral Referring to a route of substance administration (usually injection) or infectious-agent transmission not involving the mouth or gastrointestinal tract.

parity (1) The condition of having given birth. (2) The number of times that a female has given birth.

parous Referring to a female who has given birth at least once.

partial response Halting of further tumor growth or a 50% or greater reduction in tumor mass following anti-cancer therapy. *See also* **complete response**.

passaging (1) Practice of transferring cells from one culture vessel to another, often performed because the cell population has filled up the first vessel. (2) Similarly, the transfer of tumor cells or infectious agents, notably viruses, from one host cell or organism to another. *See also* **serial passaging**.

passenger gene Gene altered by passenger mutation. *See* **passenger mutation**.

passenger mutation Mutation that confers no selective advantage on a cell carrying it but whose presence in a population of cells is increased because it resides in the same genome as other mutant alleles that do indeed confer advantage; sometimes termed bystander mutation. *Compare* **driver mutation**.

passive immunization Procedure in which the immune responses of an organism are supplemented or strengthened through the introduction of immunological agents, usually antibodies or immunocytes, of foreign origin.

pathogen Agent that causes disease, often as an infectious agent.

pathogenesis Process that leads to the creation of a disease state or diseased tissue.

pathological (1) Diseased or associated with a disease. (2) Referring to the study of a disease process, often at the level of light microscopy.

pathological complete response The response of a tumor to a therapy that involves the complete elimination of microscopically detectable remnants of a tumor under treatment. *See* **complete response**.

pathologist Physician who examines tissues microscopically to study and classify disease.

pathology (1) A disease or disease condition. (2) The science of analyzing a tissue by studying its microscopic structure. *See also* **histopathology**.

patient-derived xenograft A population of cancer cells that is derived by implanting fragments of patients' tumors directly into immunocompromised mouse hosts, thereby avoiding initial *ex vivo* propagation of tumor cells in tissue culture.

pausing *See* **polymerase pausing**.

pediatric Referring to an attribute or condition of children.

penetrance Extent to which an allele of a gene can or cannot influence phenotype, e.g., the likelihood that a germ-line allele will or will not induce a clinical phenotype in a carrier of this allele. *See also* **expressivity, incomplete penetrance**.

-penia Suffix denoting a deficiency or abnormally low levels of a substance or entity, usually detected in the circulation.

peptidase Peptide-cleaving enzyme.

perforin A protein made by cytotoxic immune cells and inserted by them into the plasma membrane of a targeted cell; once inserted, perforin molecules assemble to create a channel through the membrane that causes the death of the cell, often by allowing the introduction of pro-apoptotic proteins such as granzymes into the cell.

peri- Prefix implying surrounding or around.

pericytes Cells closely related to smooth muscle cells that surround capillaries and provide the capillary walls formed by endothelial cells with tensile strength and contractility; pericytes also provide trophic signals to nearby endothelial cells. *See also* **trophic**.

perineural invasion Invasion of cancer cells along tracts established by neurons and axons.

perineurial Referring to the fibroblast-like cells that wrap around and protect nerve axons.

perinuclear Surrounding or near to the cell nucleus.

peripheral neuropathy Damage to peripheral nerves, usually in the limbs, that affects muscle coordination or sensation and may even create sensed pain.

peripheral tolerance Process by which T cells recognizing self-antigens are eliminated or functionally inactivated in lymph nodes throughout the body rather than centrally in the thymus. *Compare* **central tolerance**.

peritoneal Referring to the cavity in the abdomen that is limited by an enclosing membrane and includes the lower gastrointestinal tract and associated organs, including pancreas and liver.

peritoneovenous shunt A tube that is inserted into the peritoneal space that allows the collection of cancer cells forming the ascites fluid in patients suffering high-grade cancers; the cancer cells, which enter through holes in the tube, are eventually emptied directly by the tube into the venous circulation, often via the vena cava.

permissive (1) Describing a physiological state that allows the survival and/or proliferation of a cell or infectious agent, such as a temperature-sensitive virus. (2) Describing a type of host or host cell that allows cells or infectious agents to proliferate. *See also* **nonpermissive**.

peroxidase An enzyme, often prepared from horseradish, that reduces peroxides and is often used in immunohistochemistry, when coupled to an antibody, to generate via oxidation products that exhibit a characteristic color.

peroxisome A cytoplasmic vesicular organelle that is involved in the oxidation of various substrates, notably lipids.

Peto's paradox The discrepancy, first noted by Richard Peto, that large bodied, long-lived organisms do not confront greater cancer incidence than

corresponding smaller, short-lived animals in spite of vast differences in cumulative cell divisions experienced during an average lifetime.

phage *See* **bacteriophage**.

phagocyte, (adj. **phagocytic**) Cell of the immune system—e.g., a macrophage or dendritic cell—that is specialized to engulf and destroy other cells, cellular fragments, and other debris.

phagocytosis Endocytotic process by which a cell, usually a component of the immune system, engulfs a particle (which may be another cell), internalizes this particle, and usually proceeds to degrade it by introducing it into lysosomes. *See also* **endocytosis**.

phagolysosomes Vesicular structure in the cytoplasm formed by the fusion of a phagosome with a lysosome. *See also* **phagosome**.

phagosome A vacuole or vesicle formed in the cytoplasm directly by the process of phagocytosis.

pharmacodynamics Time course of biological responses within a tissue or its cells that are induced by a drug, usually gauged at different times after initial administration.

pharmacokinetics Results of measurements gauging the rise and fall in the concentration of an administered drug in the body, usually measured in the plasma and gauged at different times after initial administration.

pharmacological Referring to the study and use of drugs, usually those of low molecular weight.

phase I A clinical trial with a relatively small group of patients that gauges the safety/tolerability of a new experimental drug as well as its pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *Compare* **phase II**, **phase III**.

phase II A clinical trial in a large group (e.g., hundreds) of patients in which the safety of a new drug is further examined after completion of a

phase I trial as well as its potential therapeutic efficacy, e.g., its ability to affect the growth of certain tumors. *Compare* **phase I**, **phase III**.

phase III A clinical trial in which very large numbers (e.g., hundreds to thousands) of patients are exposed to a new drug, given in a randomized fashion with placebo controls, and tested for its efficacy relative to existing approved therapeutic modalities, with the intent of demonstrating statistically significant clinical benefit, usually one greater than existing approved therapies. *Compare* **phase I**, **phase II**.

phasing The process controlling the precise positioning of DNA-bound nucleosomes relative to specific nucleotide sequence landmarks along the DNA.

phenocopy (1) A biological entity—cell, tissue, or organism—that replicates the phenotype of another entity even though the two entities may have distinct underlying genotypes or arise through distinct mechanisms. (2) To create a phenocopy. *See also* **phenotype**.

phenomenon (pl., **phenomena**) An observable process or entity.

phenotype (1) A measurable or observable trait of an organism. (2) The sum of all such traits of an organism.

pheochromocytoma Tumor of the neural crest-derived cells of the adrenal glands that secrete elevated levels of certain hormones through which they may instigate a number of abnormal clinical symptoms.

phosphatase An enzyme that removes phosphate groups from phosphorylated substrates, such as the phosphoamino acid residues in a protein or the phosphorylated inositol of a phospholipid.

phosphoprotein A protein to which one or more phosphate groups have been covalently attached, usually to threonine, serine, or tyrosine residues.

phosphoproteome A census of phosphoproteins, such as all those that can be shown to be present within a given cell.

phosphorylation Covalent attachment of a phosphate group to a substrate, often the side chain of an amino acid residue of a protein. *See also* **phosphoprotein**.

phylogeny The evolutionary history and development of a species.

physiological (1) Referring to the function of a biological system, such as a cell or organ. (2) Referring to the normal state of function of a biological system or process. *Also termed* **physiologic**.

physiology (1) Biological functioning of cells, tissues, organs, and organisms. (2) The study thereof.

phytochemical A chemical species produced by a plant as part of its normal metabolism.

pimonidazole 1-[(2-hydroxy-3-piperidinyl)propyl]-2- nitroimidazole hydrochloride, a chemical used to detect regions of hypoxia within a tissue.

pinocytosis Process similar to endocytosis in which a small volume of extracellular fluid together with its dissolved contents is internalized by the invagination of patches of plasma membrane, yielding cytoplasmic vesicles. *See also* **endocytosis**.

placebo A therapy or agent that is thought or known to be ineffective but is intended to deceive patients into believing that they are being treated with a therapy or agent that is or may be truly effective.

planar cell polarity Process by which the individual cells forming an epithelial cell sheet acquire a polarity, specifically along axes parallel to the plane of the sheet, and is coordinated with other cells in the plane of the sheet, resulting in an ordered, organized epithelium.

-plasia Suffix denoting a growth.

plasma The fluid component of blood that is left behind when its cellular components are removed, usually by centrifugation.

plasma cells Cells of the B-cell lineage that secrete antibodies into the blood plasma.

plasma membrane Lipid bilayer membrane that surrounds a eukaryotic cell and separates the aqueous environment of the cytoplasm from that of the extracellular space.

plasminogen The inactive pro-enzyme in the plasma that is converted into the active plasmin protease through proteolytic cleavage as part of the process of clotting.

plasticity Describing an ability to readily transit between alternative states, such as distinct phenotypic states.

pleiomorphic Referring to a population of cells in which individual cells exhibit diverse morphologies seen upon microscopic examination.

pleiotropy Ability of a gene or protein to concomitantly evoke multiple distinct downstream responses within a cell or organism.

pleura The membrane that covers the surface of the lungs and lines the inner wall of the chest. *See also* **pleural**.

pleural Referring to the spaces between the membrane covering the lungs and the wall of the chest and the underlying tissues covered by this membrane.

pleural effusion Accumulation of cancer cells and fluid in the space between the lungs and the surrounding pleural membrane.

plexiform Forming an interwoven network.

ploidy The number of haploid genome sets of chromosomes in a cell or organism, e.g., diploid, triploid, tetraploid.

pluripotent Referring to the ability of a stem cell to generate progeny that can participate in the formation of all of the tissues of an embryo except the extraembryonic membranes. *See also* **multipotent**, **totipotent**.

pneumocyte Epithelial cell lining the alveoli of the lungs that is responsible for gas exchange with the blood and the secretion of surfactant protein.

pocket protein Term referring to pRb and two related proteins, p107 and p130.

podosome *See* **invadopodium**.

-**poiesis** Suffix referring to the formation of a cell or tissue, often used to refer to the formation of various types of cells in the blood. *See* **hematopoiesis**.

point mutation Substitution of a single base for another in a DNA sequence.

polar Referring to a chemical compound that contains charged groups and is therefore hydrophilic.

polarity Phenomenon by which a cell can organize its cytoplasm, and therefore its general axis of orientation, into distinct regions, such as the behavior of epithelial cells forming a cell sheet and acquiring apical versus basal polarity or planar cell polarity. *See also* **apico–basal polarity**, **planar cell polarity**.

polyclonal Describing a population of cells that trace their origins to multiple founding ancestral cells. *See also* **monoclonal**, **oligoclonal**.

polycomb Group of multi-subunit protein complexes that remodel chromatin and place it in a transcriptionally repressed state. *See also* **polycomb domain**.

polycomb domain A region of chromatin that has been placed in a transcriptionally repressed state through the actions of polycomb complexes. *See also* **polycomb**.

polycyclic Referring to molecules with a structure that contains multiple covalently closed rings.

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon A hydrocarbon molecule that carries multiple benzene rings.

polycythemia Condition involving higher-than-normal levels of circulating red blood cells.

polygenic Referring to a phenotype or disease condition that is thought to be caused by or can be traced to the collaborative actions of multiple genes and their alleles. *See also* **monogenic**.

polykaryon Cell carrying multiple nuclei in a single cytoplasm.

polymer A molecule composed of a large number of monomeric subunits, usually joined covalently end-to-end in a linear array.

polymerase An enzyme that can join end-to-end multiple nucleotides, thereby assembling a DNA or an RNA molecule.

polymerase chain reaction Procedure by which large copy numbers of a double-strand DNA segment can be generated *in vitro* by repeated cycles of denaturation, followed by DNA replication that is enabled by the presence of short primers of the appropriate sequence at its ends; the DNA segment being copied may be a naturally existing DNA molecule, one generated by reverse transcription, or one arising from a chemically synthesized DNA molecule.

polymerase pausing The process in which an RNA polymerase, usually Pol II, initiates elongation of an RNA transcript and halts after producing 25–50 nucleotide-long transcripts until it is released from the pause site by various anti-pausing regulators and permitted to complete transcription of a gene.

polymorphism A variant genetic allele or phenotype that does not appear to be associated with any pathology and, by implication, is a reflection of normal intraspecies variability and thus normal function.

polyp A tumor, usually presumed to be premalignant, protruding into the lumen of an organ, such as gut or bladder, often equated with an adenoma.

See also **adenoma, polyposis**.

polypectomy Surgical removal of a (colonic) polyp.

polyploid Referring to a genome in which the entire haploid array of chromosomes is represented in copy numbers larger than two. *See also* **haploid**, **diploid**.

polyploidy The state of a karyotype that contains an array of chromosomes that exceeds the normal number.

polyposis Tendency to develop multiple preneoplastic polyps in the gut. *See also* **polyp**.

polyprotein Initial product of translation that is cleaved subsequently into multiple smaller proteins, each of which may then exhibit its own distinct function.

polyubiquitin Chain of covalently joined multiple ubiquitin subunits. *See also* **ubiquitin**.

polyvalent Having multiple distinct reactivities, such as multiple reactive chemical groups within a single molecule or multiple antigens administered together in a single vaccine.

pool A population or collection of similar entities, e.g., a gene pool or a pool of stem cells.

porcupine An *O*-acyltransferase enzyme that attaches lipid tails to Wnt proteins post-translationally, preparing them for secretion and signaling by binding cognate Frizzled receptors.

portal Referring to the properties of the vena porta and the veins that it drains, which convey venous blood directly from the pancreas, spleen, and intestine to the liver.

positive feedback A regulatory process whereby an upstream stimulatory signal provokes a downstream target that proceeds to sustain and/or amplify

signaling by the initial stimulatory signal. *See also* **feedforward**, **negative feedback**.

post mortem Referring to a biological process or medical analysis that occurs after death.

post-mitotic Describing a nonproliferating cell that has given up the option of ever again re-entering into an active growth-and-division cycle.

post-translational modification Covalent alteration of a protein occurring concomitantly with or after the initial polymerization of the polypeptide backbone of the protein, including cleavage of the initially synthesized polypeptide and covalent modification of its amino-acid side chains.

pre-clinical Referring to all of the steps in the research and development of an agent or therapeutic protocol leading up to but not including initiation of clinical testing.

pre-metastatic niche A site within a tissue that is altered in some fashion to facilitate the survival and/or proliferation of subsequently arriving disseminated cancer cells.

pre-mRNA The class of nuclear RNA molecules that are destined to become mRNA following their processing via splicing and export to the cytoplasm.

prenatal Occurring before birth. *See also* **natal**.

pre-neoplastic Referring to a tissue that has acquired certain features of a frank tumor but has itself not yet developed into a neoplasia. *See also* **neoplastic**.

presentation (1) The constellation of traits and symptoms exhibited by a patient upon examination in the clinic, often upon first encounter with a physician. (2) The set of symptoms and diagnostic parameters accompanying a disease when initially diagnosed.

primary Initial or initially formed.

primary cells (1) Literally, cells that have been recently explanted from living tissue into culture vessels and have not been propagated thereafter in culture. (2) More commonly, cells that have been explanted from living tissue into culture dishes and have been subjected to a relatively small number of successive *in vitro* passages thereafter.

primary cilium Single nonmotile cilium displayed by many types of mammalian cells which bears a specific set of receptors that confer responsiveness to various cytokines. *See also* **cilium**.

primary lymphoid organs The tissues in which immunoglobulin rearrangements initially occur, these being the thymus in the case of T lymphocytes and the bone marrow in the case of B lymphocytes.

primary resistance Term denoting the behavior of a tumor that is refractory to treatment from the onset of that treatment; *also termed* **intrinsic resistance**. *See also* **secondary resistance**.

primary tumor Tumor growing at the anatomical site where tumor formation began and proceeded to yield this mass. *See also* **metastasis**.

primase An enzyme that initiates DNA synthesis by laying down a short RNA segment on the template strand; the 3′-hydroxyl end of this RNA primer then serves as the site for attachment of the initial deoxyribonucleotide by a DNA polymerase. *See also* **primer**.

primer A DNA or RNA molecule whose 3′ end serves as the initiation point of DNA synthesis by a DNA polymerase.

priming The process that allows a specific set of converging signals to convert a naive T cell into a functionally activated derivative.

primitive (1) Referring to the relatively undifferentiated phenotype of a cell. (2) Referring to an embryonic cell.

private mutation A mutation that is present in a distinct subpopulation of cells or organisms and is not shared with the majority of cells or organisms in the population as a whole.

probe (1) An RNA or DNA, often radiolabeled, that anneals specifically with a complementary nucleic acid being analyzed, enabling the detection of the targeted nucleic acid sequence. (2) An immunological reagent used to detect an antigen or antibody.

procarcinogen A chemical compound that is relatively nonreactive chemically, but can be converted into a highly reactive carcinogen, usually through metabolic processes. *See also* **ultimate carcinogen**.

procaspase Protein that is converted to an active caspase enzyme by proteolytic cleavage. *See also* **caspase**.

processive Referring to a function of an enzyme in which it undertakes a succession of alterations of a substrate, doing so without dissociating from this substrate—e.g., a DNA polymerase extending a polynucleotide chain by hundreds of nucleotides without dissociating from the growing chain.

pro-drug An inactive precursor of a biologically active drug.

pro-enzyme Catalytically inactive precursor form of an enzyme that requires some type of alteration (often proteolytic cleavage) in order to become catalytically active.

professional antigen-presenting cell An immune cell (usually a dendritic cell or macrophage) that has, as one of its salient functions, the presentation within lymphoid tissues of antigenic peptides to T cells in lymphoid tissues. *See* **antigen-presenting cells**.

progenitor cell A cell derived from a stem cell whose descendants undergo a limited number of proliferative divisions before undergoing end-stage differentiation. *Also termed* **transit-amplifying cell**.

progeria Syndrome in which an individual undergoes premature or accelerated aging.

prognosis A prediction about the future clinical course of a disease, often influenced by detailed analyses of its existing attributes such as histopathology and biochemical markers.

programmed cell death One of several cell alternative death programs, such as apoptosis, that coordinate the process of cell death.

progression (1) The process whereby cells evolve progressively from a normal state to a state that enables them to form a high-grade malignancy. (2) The evolution of benign cancer cells to malignant derivatives. (3) The evolution of an initiated cell that is dependent on continued exposure to a tumor-promoting agent for its further proliferation into one that continues to proliferate in the absence of further exposure to the promoter. *See also* **initiation**, **promotion**.

progression-free survival Time elapsed following initiation of treatment during which a clinical condition does not worsen. *See also* **overall survival**, **disease-free survival**.

prokaryotic Referring to the relatively small, nonnucleated cells of bacteria and archaea. *See also* **eukaryotic**.

prolactin A polypeptide hormone made largely by the pituitary gland that stimulates mammary gland growth and milk production among other functions.

proliferation Process leading to increase in cell number and requiring passage through cells' growth-and-division cycle, often termed the **cell cycle**. *Compare* **growth**; *See also* **cell cycle**.

proliferation index Proportion of cells in a population that are proceeding through the active growth-and-division cycle.

prometaphase The phase of mitosis in the early part of metaphase when the nuclear membrane breaks down and the chromosomes form kinetochores. *See* **metaphase, kinetochore**.

promoter (1) An agent that furthers the progression of multi-step tumorigenesis by nongenetic mechanisms, notably those involving inflammation and/or mitogenesis, sometimes termed promoting agent. Tumor promoters are presumed to work by accelerating the rate of clonal

expansion of already-mutated cells. (2) The DNA sequence associated with a gene that controls its transcription. *See also* **promotion**.

promotion Process that stimulates or accelerates tumor progression, usually presumed to do so without directly damaging the genomes of cells. *See also* **promoter**, **initiation**.

promyelocyte An immature cell of the myeloid lineage that functions as precursor of various differentiated granulocyte cell types. *See* **granulocyte**.

proofreading Process by which a DNA polymerase scans the deoxyribonucleotide segment that it has just synthesized in order to ensure that the sequence of this segment was properly synthesized and thus is precisely complementary to that of the template strand. *See also* **mismatch repair**.

prophase First phase of mitosis in which chromosomes begin to condense and centrosomes begin to assemble.

prophylactic Preventative.

protease An enzyme that cleaves protein substrates.

proteasome A specialized intracellular multi-subunit machine that internalizes polyubiquitylated proteins and degrades them using specialized proteases, generating oligopeptides. *See also* **immunoproteasome**, **constitutive proteasome**.

proteoform A specific biochemical form of a protein that is defined by its primary amino acid residues together with a specific set of post-translational modifications. A single initially synthesized protein may be associated with multiple alternative proteoforms, each defined by its own combination of post-translational modifications.

proteoglycan Molecule with one or more glycosaminoglycan chains attached to a protein core. *See also* **glycosaminoglycan**.

proteolysis (adj., **-lytic**) Process, usually mediated by protease enzymes, of cleaving a polypeptide to lower–molecular-weight fragments including individual amino acids.

proteome The collection of all the protein species expressed by a cell, tissue, or organism.

proteomics (1) Technologies by which systematic analyses are made of large numbers of distinct protein species in a biological sample, such as a cell lysate or a biological fluid. (2) Enumeration of the set of proteins synthesized by a cell or tissue.

protomer A subunit—usually a single polypeptide chain— of a multi-subunit (oligomeric) protein.

proto-oncogene A normal cellular gene that, upon alteration by DNA-damaging agents or viral genomes, can acquire the ability to function as an oncogene. *See* **oncogene**.

protozoan Referring to single-cell eukaryotic animals that feed on other microorganisms or microbe-derived debris. *Compare* **metazoan**.

provirus The dsDNA copy of a retroviral genome that is the product of reverse transcription; it can exist transiently, as an episomal (nonchromosomal) plasmid, or stably, following its integration into the chromosomal DNA of an infected host cell.

pseudogene A gene present in the genome that shares extensive sequence similarity with known functional genes but encodes a defective function, such as a catalytically inactive enzyme; such pseudogenes invariably derive evolutionarily from functional genes that have sustained inactivating mutations in the distant past but have nonetheless persisted in an organism’s genome.

pseudokinase A protein domain that exhibits many of the structural features of a bona fide kinase and is a paralog of bona fide kinases but that lacks the catalytic activity of the latter because of amino acid replacements in the catalytic cleft.

pseudoligand A compound or substance that, although quite different from the actual normal ligand, can nevertheless bind to the ligand-binding site of a receptor, often doing so without activating signaling by the receptor.

pseudopregnant Referring to a female that has been placed in a physiological state that closely resembles that of pregnancy, achieved through exposure to certain hormones.

pulmonary Referring to the lungs.

purifying selection Process occurring during Darwinian evolution in which negative selection eliminates less-fit variants, leaving behind a population of cells or organisms that is most fit.

pulse-chase An experimental protocol in which a period of labeling, such as that involving incorporation of radioisotopes, is followed by a period in which further labeling is discontinued and may be actively blocked by agents that prevent further labeling.

pyknosis (also **pycnosis**) Chromatin condensation and shrinkage of nuclei creating small, densely staining structures observed as products of apoptosis and necrosis.

pyroptosis A cell death program that is often provoked by infection by intracellular pathogens and results in cell death and the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Pyroptosis can also be induced following exposure to certain chemotherapeutic agents.

qRT-PCR Procedure for quantifying the concentration of an RNA molecule by determining the number of PCR amplification cycles of its reverse transcript that are required to generate a certain threshold level of PCR-generated DNA products. *See also* **polymerase chain reaction**.

quartile Any one of four equal groups into which a large sample of individuals or test objects has been subdivided, being guided through the use of measurements of the properties of the individuals or test objects.

quasi-mesenchymal Referring to a phenotypic state between the fully epithelial and the fully mesenchymal states and involving the expression of a mixture of genes characteristic of both states.

R point *See* **restriction point**.

rad Unit of radiation corresponding to 0.01 joule of absorbed radiation per kilogram of exposed tissue or 0.01 gray.

radiation oncology The practice of treating tumors with various types of radiation. *See also* **medical oncology**, **surgical oncology**.

radioautography *See* **autoradiography**.

radionuclide An atomic species that undergoes radioactive decay, thereby emitting radioactivity. *Also termed* **radioisotope**.

radiosensitive Describing cells or tissues that are particularly sensitive to killing by radiation including that inflicted by radiotherapies.

radiotherapy Treatment of a disease, notably cancer, through irradiation, usually in the form of X-rays that, in the case of cancer treatment, are focused on a targeted tumor or tumor-bearing tissue.

rapalog A chemical analog of rapamycin. *See* **rapamycin**.

rapamycin A naturally occurring, low–molecular-weight inhibitor of mTOR. *See also* **mTOR**.

rate-limiting Referring to a step in a multi-step process that governs the overall rate at which the process as a whole reaches completion because this particular step is kinetically slower than all other steps.

reactive oxygen species A chemically reactive, oxidizing molecule that results from the incomplete reduction of oxygen, including notably superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radical; these reactive oxygen species damage a wide range of molecules in the cell, requiring compensatory anti-oxidant defenses to prevent or reverse this damage.

reactive stroma The stroma of a highly progressed tumor that has recruited a number of cell types that are typically associated with inflammation and wound healing, including prominently activated fibroblasts and myofibroblasts. *See also* **stroma**.

reader A protein that recognizes existing post-translational covalent modifications of histones within nucleosomes and responds by influencing the structure and/or function of the associated chromatin, thereby regulating processes such as transcription, DNA repair, and further histone modification. *See also* **writer**, **eraser**.

reading frame (1) The nucleotide sequence within a gene or mRNA that encodes the amino acid sequence of a protein. (2) The registration of triplet codons within this sequence that enables the proper translation of this protein sequence.

receptor Protein found on the plasma membrane or in the nucleus within a cell that is capable of specifically binding a signaling molecule (its cognate ligand). Most types of receptors emit signals, such as those inducing cell proliferation, in response to such binding. *See also* **ligand**.

recessive (1) Referring to one of several alternative traits that can be specified by a genetic locus; when the locus is heterozygous and carries information specifying two distinct traits, the dominant trait will be exhibited phenotypically by the organism and the recessive will not. (2) Referring to an allele of a gene that is unable to dictate phenotype when expressed in the presence of a second allele that acts dominantly. *See also* **dominant**.

reciprocal translocation Exchange via a process resembling recombination of chromosomal segments between two chromosomes from different (i.e., usually nonhomologous) chromosome pairs, resulting in the conservation of all participating chromosomal segments.

recombinant Referring to a protein that has been produced through the procedures of recombinant DNA.

recombinant DNA Technology that allows the isolation of genetic elements from organisms, often via the procedures of gene cloning, the experimental amplification of such segments, and their subsequent manipulation via various techniques of DNA alteration, with the intent of understanding the function of the isolated elements, altering them to generate useful gene products, or sequencing them in order to understand disease processes, genetic predilections, and relationships between organisms.

recombinase An enzyme that executes one or more steps of genetic recombination.

recurrent mutation Somatic mutations of a particular gene or nucleotide sequence that is observed in the genomes of a number of independently arising tumors, providing strong indication that mutations of this gene or sequence confer selective advantage to the cells that sustain them. *See also* **driver mutation**.

reductionism A scientific philosophy and research strategy that involves the study of individual, relatively simple components or subsystems of complex systems rather than the systems as a whole.

refractory Unresponsive or resistant to some type of signal or therapeutic agent.

regulatory B cells A subset of B cells that releases immunosuppressive signals. *Also termed* **B_{reg} 's**.

regulatory T cells A subset of CD4 lymphocytes that releases various immunosuppressive signals. *Also termed* **T_{reg} 's**.

rejection Process whereby the immune system of a host organism prevents the outgrowth of implanted donor cells or tissues, usually by the killing donor cells. *See also* **allograft rejection**.

relapse (1) (n.) Reoccurrence of a disease state, such as the reappearance of a tumor, after treatment with an initial, apparently successful therapy. (2) (v.) To sustain such a reoccurrence.

remission Retreat or disappearance of a disease state with the implied possibility of its eventual reappearance or worsening.

renal Referring to the kidney.

replication (1) Process involving the copying of a nucleic acid into more nucleic acid. Thus, DNA can be copied into progeny DNA and RNA can be copied into progeny RNA. (2) Proliferation of a virus in an infected cell.

replication cycle The program of molecular and biochemical changes that enables an infecting virus particle to multiply within a cell, generate progeny virus particles, and release these particles so that they may infect other cells.

replication fork The structure formed when a helicase enzyme locally unwinds a DNA double-helix, enabling the resulting single-strand DNAs to serve as templates for the synthesis of progeny double-helices. *See also* **stalled replication fork**, **replication stress**.

replication stress A physiological cell state that occurs when the normal coordination of DNA synthesis is perturbed, often in response to stalled replication forks, resulting in, among other consequences, the collapse of replication forks arising because of breakage of the persisting ssDNA and the resulting formation of dsDNA breaks. *See also* **replication fork**, **stalled replication fork**.

replicative immortality *See* **immortality**.

replicative senescence The cell state entered when chromosomal telomeres have undergone erosion or, more commonly, when cells have experienced cumulative physiological stress over multiple cell generations in culture due to suboptimal conditions of propagation. *See* **senescence**.

replicon A defined segment of (chromosomal) DNA that is replicated by the firing of a single origin of replication, in principle occurring once during each normal cell cycle. *See also* **origin of replication**.

repressed Referring to a gene that is not being expressed and therefore is not being transcribed.

repression Regulatory mechanism that causes shutdown of the expression (transcription) of a gene. *See also* **expression**.

repressor A protein involved in inhibiting gene transcription. *Compare* **activator**.

rescue To restore a phenotype, usually by specific genetic or epigenetic manipulation.

resection Removal by surgical excision.

resorption The osteoclast-mediated process of dissolving mineralized bone with attendant mobilization of calcium into the circulation.

restriction fragment length polymorphism Variation in DNA sequence that can be detected through its effect of allowing or preventing cleavage of a chromosomal DNA segment by a restriction enzyme.

restriction point Decision-making point in the late G_1 phase of the cell cycle at which a cell commits itself to either completing the remaining phases of the cell cycle, remaining in G_1, or exiting the active cell cycle and entering into G_0.

reticuloendotheliosis Tumor of monocyte/macrophage lineage common in chickens and turkeys.

retinoblastoma Pediatric tumor of the oligopotential stem cells of the retina.

retrotransposon A transposon that propagates throughout a cellular genome by specifying an RNA transcript that is reverse transcribed by the transposon-encoded reverse transcriptase followed by chromosomal integration of the resulting reverse transcript. *See* **reverse transcriptase**, **transposon**.

retrovirus A class of viruses that uses a reverse transcriptase enzyme to copy its genomic single-strand RNA into double-strand DNA that, after integration into a host cell chromosome, serves as template for transcription of viral mRNA and progeny viral genomes.

reverse transcriptase Enzyme capable of making a DNA complementary copy of an RNA molecule using the RNA molecule as template.

reverse transcription Enzymatic reaction whereby an enzyme, such as reverse transcriptase, copies an RNA template into a complementary DNA copy.

rheostat An electrical controller that can vary resistance continuously over a certain defined range, thereby moderating current flow over a continuous range.

ribosome The ribonucleoprotein complex that operates in the cytoplasm to translate the coding information of an mRNA to which it is bound into an amino acid sequence that yields as an end product a complete protein molecule.

risk factor A lifestyle practice or experience or inherited genetic determinant that is judged to affect the likelihood of the development of one or another pathological state. The importance of such a factor is gauged quantitatively and contrasted with the quantitative risk confronted by control populations, such as the general population, in developing such a condition.

Rituxan The chimeric anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody bearing a murine antigen-combining variable domain and a human constant domain. *Also called* **rituximab**.

RNAi The molecular pathway within cells that results in the post-transcriptional silencing of gene expression effected by microRNAs, siRNAs, and shRNAs. *See also* **microRNA, siRNA, shRNA**.

RNAseq A procedure used to survey the RNAs expressed within a cell population by reverse transcribing these RNAs followed by sequencing the

resulting cDNA molecules. *See also* **scRNAseq**.

rosette A set of repeating objects, such as cells, arrayed in a circle, reminiscent of the shape of a rose.

RT-PCR Procedure of reverse transcription of mRNAs followed by PCR to amplify resulting reverse transcripts; this procedure employs the powers of DNA sequencing to gauge the representation of various mRNAs within the transcriptome of a cell or tissue. *See also* **polymerase chain reaction, qRT-PCR**.

sagittal Referring to a geometric plane through an organism that divides the organism into a right and a left half.

salvage chemotherapy A round of chemotherapeutic treatment given to a patient who initially responded well to an initial round of chemotherapy but then relapsed.

Sanger Cancer Genome Project The program undertaken by the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute in the United Kingdom to identify sequence variants that are critical to the development of human cancers, including the assembly of the Catalogue of Somatic Mutations in Cancer.

sarcoma Tumor derived from mesenchymal cells, usually those constituting various connective tissue cell types, including fibroblasts, osteoblasts, endothelial cell precursors, and chondrocytes.

satellite Highly repetitive sequences present in genomic DNA. These sequences often have a different composition of bases compared to that of the bulk of the genomic DNA and thus form separate “satellite” bands that can be resolved upon isopycnic density centrifugation. *See also* **isopycnic**, **microsatellite**.

scaffold The structural backbone of a complex organic molecule that can be covalently modified (derivatized), often through the attachment of side groups, in order to create variants with differing pharmacological properties.

Schwann cells A cell that wraps itself around axons and secretes myelin, forming the myelin sheath that electrically insulates axons and facilitates transmission of electrical signals by the axons. *See also* **myelin**.

schwannoma Tumor of the Schwann cells.

scRNAseq *See* **single-cell RNA sequencing**, **RNAseq**.

second-line therapy The mode of therapy that is employed after a patient has been previously treated with a first-line therapy that has failed. *See also* **first-line therapy**.

second messenger A low–molecular-weight molecule that functions as an intracellular hormone, conveying signals from one part of a cell to another.

secondary resistance Term denoting the behavior of a tumor that was initially responsive to a treatment but subsequently becomes refractory to that treatment; *also termed* **acquired resistance**. *See also* **primary resistance**.

secretome The collection of proteins that are released by a cell into the extracellular space under specific physiological conditions or states of differentiation, often focused on signaling proteins.

section A slice, e.g., through a tissue.

seed-and-soil Hypothesis enunciated by Stephen Paget that describes the tendency of disseminated cancer cells from a specific type of primary tumor to preferentially colonize one or another distant tissue based on the biological compatibility between the disseminated cancer cells and the tissue in which they have landed.

segregation (1) Separation of chromosomes at the end of mitosis or meiosis. (2) Separation of alleles during meiosis.

selectin A cell surface receptor that enables a cell to bind to carbohydrate moieties expressed by other cells, such as those forming the luminal walls of blood vessels.

selective estrogen receptor modulator A pharmacological agent that binds as a pseudo-ligand to the estrogen receptor and perturbs its behavior in one way or another. *See* **pseudoligand**.

selectivity Relative ability of a therapy to affect targeted cells or tissue compared with its (side) effects on non-targeted normal cells or tissue. *See also* **therapeutic index**.

self A constituent of the body that is native to the body's normal tissues and associated cells. *See also* **non-self**.

self-antigens Antigens that are expressed in the body's normal tissues.

self-reactive Referring to the ability of certain components of the immune system of an organism to recognize and react with the normal tissue and normal cellular antigens of that organism, potentially resulting in the development of an autoimmune condition.

self-renewal Trait that enables a cell, usually a stem cell, to generate, upon cell division, at least one daughter cell that retains all of its traits. *See also* **stem cell**.

self-seeding *See* **tumor self-seeding**.

seminoma A tumor of the epithelial cells forming in the seminiferous tubules of the testes.

senescence A nongrowing state of cells in which they exhibit distinctive cell phenotypes and remain viable for extended periods of time but are generally unable to proliferate again; senescence often arises after extended passaging of cells *in vitro*, notably under suboptimal conditions of culture. *See* **replicative senescence**.

senescence-associated heterochromatin foci Domains of heterochromatin that form in senescent cells and contribute to the silencing of proliferation-promoting genes in such cells.

senescence-associated secretory phenotype A condition observed in some cells undergoing senescence that is associated with the secretion of certain pro-inflammatory cytokines, immune modulators, proteases, and growth factors.

sequence motif (1) Short oligonucleotide sequence in DNA that is characteristically associated with one or another biological function including recognition and binding by sequence-specific transcription factors. (2) Amino acid sequence that is characteristically associated with a structural or functional aspect of a protein.

sequencing depth The degree of redundant sequencing of a DNA segment or a DNA genome.

serial passaging Practice of transferring a cell population or viral population from one culture vessel or host cell to another, taking the products of this initial passage, and transferring a portion of them to yet another host cell or culture vessel to allow a new cycle of proliferation, doing so serially and repeatedly. *See* **passaging**.

serpentine Referring to the class of membrane proteins, such as G protein-coupled receptors, that wend their way back and forth (in a snakelike pattern) through a membrane multiple times.

serum (pl., **sera**) The fluid left behind when blood clots.

set point A state to which a complex regulatory system naturally reverts in the absence of strong external perturbants; set points are often maintained through homeostatic regulatory mechanisms. *See* **homeostasis.**

shelterin A complex of at least six proteins that binds to the ssDNA and dsDNA regions of telomeres and functions together with the telomeric DNA to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA from end-to-end fusions.

shRNA A sequence of ~60 nucleotides that is cloned into an expression vector that produces a hairpin transcript. This transcript is cleaved by cellular enzymes into a 21- to 25-nt-long dsRNA that is partially

complementary to the mRNA target that it is designed to inhibit. *See* **hairpin**.

shunt A passageway or connection that allows fluid to pass directly from one place to another, such as the direct connection between an artery and a vein that occurs without blood passing through intermediate microvessels, i.e., capillaries.

side effect A biological or biochemical effect of an applied treatment that elicits a response other than the intended one.

single-cell RNA sequencing A procedure in which the RNA transcripts of individual cells are reverse transcribed; the resulting DNA molecules are then amplified and subjected to next-generation DNA sequencing, revealing the transcriptomes of each of such cells. *See also* **next-generation sequencing**.

single-chain variable region fragment An antigen-binding polypeptide that is formed by connecting the variable domains of the heavy and light chains of an immunoglobulin via an intermediate linker; this fusion protein can function like the parental, naturally formed antibody to recognize and bind a specific antigen.

single-nucleotide polymorphism A polymorphism within the gene pool of a species that differs by a single nucleotide from homologous sequences that are present in the genomes of other individuals of the species. Such polymorphisms are generally assumed to be functionally and thus phenotypically silent. *See* **polymorphism**.

sinusoid A capillary-like channel located between liver hepatocytes that is lined with endothelial cells but lacks mural cells as well as a capillary basement membrane. *See also* **mural**.

siRNA A 21- to 25-nt-long dsRNA molecule that is synthetically produced and introduced into cells in order to interfere with the expression of a targeted mRNA with which it typically shares partial complementarity. *See also* **RNAi**.

sister chromatids The two chromatids that are formed from the two double helices synthesized following the most recent round of DNA replication and that remain joined via a pair of kinetochores associated with their respective centromeres until they are eventually separated from one another during mitosis.

small-cell lung carcinoma Lung cancer of specialized pulmonary cells having neurosecretory properties.

smoldering Referring to slow combustion releasing smoke but no flames.

soft-tissue sarcoma A sarcoma arising in a tissue other than bone.

soma All the tissues in the body outside of the germ cells (sperm and egg) and the immediate precursors of the germ cells.

somatic hypermutation Enzyme-mediated process, notably that effected by activation-induced deaminase, that creates point mutations in the already-rearranged immunoglobulin genes, largely focused on their V region-encoding segments and generating greatly increased antigen-binding diversity. *See also* **activation-induced deaminase**.

somatic mutation Mutation that strikes the genome of a cell outside of the germ line; such a mutation cannot, by definition, be transmitted to the next organismic generation. *See also* **germ line**.

Southern blot Procedure in which DNA molecules, usually produced by restriction enzyme cleavage, are resolved by gel electrophoresis and transferred to a filter to which they adsorb; the filter is subsequently incubated with a sequence-specific radiolabeled DNA probe to reveal, upon subsequent autoradiography, the sizes of the DNA fragments recognized by the probe. *See also* **Northern blot**, **Western blot, autoradiography**.

speciation The formation during the course of evolution of a new species from a preexisting one or the development of two new species from a preexisting one, the latter often enabled by the geographical isolation of two subpopulations of the original species from one another.

spectral karyotyping A procedure that allows the “painting” of individual chromosomes in a metaphase spread using chromosome-specific DNA probes coupled to five or more specific fluorochromes, achieved via fluorescent *in situ* hybridization and informatics to process and generate the colors exhibited in the finished karyotypic image.

spheroid Small, sphere-shaped cluster of cells typically observed when cells are propagated *in vitro* in three-dimensional matrices.

spindle The array of microtubule spindle fibers that originate at and radiate from the two oppositely located centrosomes and extend to the kinetochores of chromosomes, being involved in segregating chomosomes during mitosis and meiosis. *See also* **centrosome, kinetochore**, **spindle fiber**.

spindle assembly checkpoint The complex mechanism that monitors proper attachment of spindle fibers to kinetochores and blocks entrance into the anaphase of mitosis and meiosis if these attachments are not properly formed.

spindle fiber A microtubule fiber that extends from a centrosome to the kinetochore of a chromosome and is formed during meiosis and mitosis. *See also* **kinetochore**, **centrosome**, **spindle**.

splenocyte A leukocyte isolated from the spleen, which may belong to B or T cell populations as well as myeloid-derived populations, such as macrophages and dendritic cells.

splice site A sequence on a nuclear RNA molecule that determines the precise location of one of the two sequences that are fused to one another during the process of splicing.

splicing (1) Process that causes the deletion of a defined internal segment of a primary RNA transcript and the subsequent fusion of the two RNA segments flanking the deleted RNA segment. (2) Process occurring in the nucleus whereby a pre-mRNA precursor is converted into an mRNA through the deletion of introns and the fusion of remaining exons.

splicing factor Protein involved in regulating the process of splicing including the recognition of appropriate splice sites in the RNA molecule serving as the substrate of the splicing. *See also* **splice site**, **splicing**.

sporadic Describing a disease or condition that appears to occur randomly in a large population without any apparent inborn predisposition.

squamous Referring to epithelial cells that line a duct, hollow organ, or the skin and lack secretory function.

squamous cell carcinoma Tumor arising from squamous cells. *See also* **adenocarcinoma**.

staging A determination of the extent to which a tumor has progressed to a specific stage of multi-step tumor progression, involving consideration of an array of gross/macroscopic, histopathological, and karyotypic parameters.

stalled replication fork A DNA replication fork that, because of various impediments, cannot proceed further to replicate a DNA double helix; such stalled forks represent a potential physiological stress on a cell because of the persistence of single-strand DNA at the fork and the attendant danger of its breakage, resulting in turn in double-strand DNA breaks in the DNA being replicated. *See* **replication fork**.

standard of care The therapeutic agent or protocol that is widely accepted in the treatment of disease and often serves as the reference against which candidate novel treatments are measured.

standardized incidence ratio Ratio of the observed incidence of an event in a subpopulation of interest, such as a disease diagnosis, with the incidence of such an event that would be observed in a comparable control population, such as the general population.

start site The site in a gene at which an RNA polymerase initiates elongation of a nascent RNA transcript, also termed transcription start site.

steady state The condition reached when a series of dynamic, often countervailing processes have placed a complex system in a balanced, relatively constant, unchanging state.

stem cell Cell type within a tissue that is capable of self-renewal and is also capable of generating daughter cells that develop new phenotypes, notably those that are more differentiated than those displayed by the stem cell. *See also* **asymmetric division**.

stereochemistry Description of the three-dimensional structure of a molecule (such as a protein or drug) and the influence that this structure exerts on the chemical behavior or biochemical function of the molecule.

stochastic Referring to an event that occurs randomly with a certain probability rather than in a precisely predetermined fashion.

stock A solution of viruses that is used experimentally to infect cells or organisms.

stoichiometric Referring to a relationship or reaction between two or more molecular species in which the relative molarities of the participating species are precisely specified.

stratify (n., **stratification**) To classify superficially similar entities (e.g., a group of tumors) into several distinct categories or subclasses based on the shared properties of the entities within a given subclass.

stress-induced ligand A cell surface protein that signals that the cell displaying this protein is suffering from some type of cell physiological stress.

stressor An agent that imposes some type of physiological stress.

stroma (pl., **stromata**; adj., **stromal**) (1) The mesenchymal components of normal epithelial and hematopoietic tissues, which may include fibroblasts, adipocytes, endothelial cells, and various immunocytes as well as associated extracellular matrix. (2) A spectrum of similar cell types that constitute the stromal cells within a tumor and are recruited into the tumor

from host tissues and lack the somatic mutations born by the tumor cells. *See also* **reactive stroma**.

stromalization Referring to the process by which stroma is generated in a normal or neoplastic tissue including the formation of stroma-associated extracellular matrix.

structure-based drug design Use of the three-dimensional structure of a drug target, such as a protein, often determined by X-ray crystallography or nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, in order to predict the chemical structures of compounds that will bind the target specifically and with high affinity, usually inhibiting its function.

subclinical Referring to a state or process that does not elicit specific symptoms and/or eludes detection by available diagnostic tools.

subcutaneous Beneath the skin.

submicroscopic Too small to be seen through the light microscope.

substrate (1) Molecule that is acted upon by an enzyme, usually resulting in the covalent modification of the substrate. (2) A physical structure upon which entities such as cells reside.

subtelomeric Referring to a segment of DNA that contains imperfect copies of the telomeric hexanucleotide sequence, does not function to protect the ends of chromosomal DNA, and lies between the functional telomeric DNA and the bulk of chromosomal DNA.

SUMO One of a group of four ubiquitin-like polypeptides that, like ubiquitin, are attached covalently to substrate proteins, thereafter affecting intracellular localization and functions of the modified proteins but not their degradation.

sumoylation The process of modifying a protein by covalently attaching one or more SUMO molecules to it. *See also* **SUMO**.

super-enhancer A large cohort of transcription factors, each bound to its cognate enhancer sequence, that assemble in a physical complex and drive the high-level expression of a nearby gene. *See also* **enhancer**.

supernatant Fluid that is formed after solids are removed via centrifugation or solutes by precipitation or crystallization. *Also termed* **supernate**.

supernumerary Referring to a greater-than-normal number of some object.

superoxide Reactive ion arising from addition of an electron (reduction) to diatomic oxygen.

superoxide dismutase An enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of 2 superoxide molecules into one diatomic oxygen molecule (O_2) and one hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) molecule. *See also* **superoxide**.

supranormal Higher than normal physiological levels.

surgical oncology The practice of treating tumors surgically, usually by excision. *See also* **medical oncology**, **radiation oncology**.

surrogate marker A measurable parameter, often a diagnostic parameter, that serves to indicate the behavior of another process or agent whose behavior it parallels and reflects.

survivin Member of the IAP family of proteins that functions by inhibiting certain pro-apoptotic caspases.

symmetric division The process whereby a mother cell yields, following cell division, two identical daughter cells. *See also* **asymmetric division**.

synapse Physical connection formed between two interacting immune cells or between a cytotoxic lymphocyte and a targeted cell that facilitates exchange of signals between them and, in the case of cytotoxic cells, the transfer of cytotoxic granules from the cytotoxic cell to the targeted cell.

synchronous (1) Occurring at the same time; i.e., in a temporally coordinated fashion. (2) Referring to a population of cells that enter a specific phase of the cell cycle at the same time. *See also* **asynchronous**.

syncytium Cell formed when the plasma membranes of two or more cells fuse, initially resulting in a multi-nucleated cell.

syndrome Collection of symptoms and pathologies that are associated with and together define a specific disease condition.

syngeneic (1) Referring to two organisms that share the identical genetic background, such as two members of an inbred strain of mice. (2) Describing the relationship between two sets of cells or tissues, or between a set of cells and an organism, deriving from identical genetic backgrounds.

synonymous Referring to a mutation in a reading frame that does not change the identity of an encoded amino acid. *See also* **nonsynonymous**.

synthetic lethal (1) Describing phenotypes that result from the combined effects of two alleles, each of which is nonlethal on its own, but which, when present in combination, result in lethality. (2) Referring to a state in which an existing genetic or epigenetic condition renders a cell vulnerable to killing by one or another applied agent, such as a therapeutic agent.

synthetic lethal screen A screen of a large number of genes, often those present in an entire genome, in which the cells introduced into the screen bear one or another mutation; the subsequent screen is designed to detect, in an unbiased fashion, other genes that, when disrupted, lead to lethality in these cells but not in wild-type cells lacking the mutation.

T antigen Tumor-associated antigen, such as that encoded by the genome of a transforming tumor virus such as SV40 and the genomes of the cells that it has transformed. *See* **tumor-associated antigen**.

T cell Class of lymphocytes that develops largely in the thymus and includes T_H cells, T_C cells, and T_{reg}'s.

T-cell exhaustion State of a T cell that has been induced by prolonged, possibly excessive antigen exposure as well as by exposure to certain cytokines, and is associated with loss of its various effector functions.

T-cell receptor The immunoglobulin-like molecule that is displayed on the surface of T cells and used by them to recognize antigens displayed by HLA/MHC class I or class II proteins on the surfaces of other cells, including professional antigen-presenting cells and potential target cells.

T-loop *See* **activation loop**.

t-loop Lasso-like structure at the end of a telomere that serves to protect the termini of a chromosomal DNA molecule from end-to-end fusions and degradation by exonucleases.

T lymphocyte *See* **T cell**.

tamoxifen A synthetic pharmacological analog of estrogen which can bind the estrogen receptor and inhibit a subset of the normal signaling functions of this estrogen-activated receptor, thereby antagonizing the actions of estrogen.

telomerase An enzyme specialized to extend telomeric DNA; those telomerases characterized to date carry an RNA subunit and a reverse transcriptase-like catalytic subunit. *See also* **telomere**.

telomere Nucleoprotein structure at the end of a eukaryotic chromosome that protects this end from degradation and from fusion with the ends of other chromosomes.

telophase Fourth subphase of mitosis, during which chromosomes de-condense and the nuclear membranes reassemble in anticipation of separation of the two daughter cells.

temozolomide A chemotherapeutic drug used primarily in the treatment of certain brain tumors. It is a type of alkylating agent that causes direct DNA damage.

temperate A type of behavior (e.g., of an infectious agent, such as a virus) that creates minimal damage or pathology in an infected host cell or organism. *See also* **virulent**.

temperature-sensitive Describing a phenotype that is apparent when cells or viruses grow at one temperature but not at another.

tetramer Complex composed of four subunits.

teratogen An agent that causes malformations by perturbing embryonic morphogenesis.

teratoma Benign tumor formed by embryonic stem cells in which a wide variety of differentiated cell types are formed.

term The period of time required to complete a normal pregnancy.

ternary (1) Referring to a complex of three components. (2) Referring to the third step in a multi-step process.

TET A class of enzymes that operate to oxidize the methyl moiety of 5-methyl cytosines in the DNA, ultimately yielding demethylation of this base.

tetraploid Describing a karyotype having precisely four haploid complements (or two diploid complements) of chromosomes.

tetraspanin A relatively small protein with four transmembrane domains that operates in various membranes to modulate signaling by a wide variety of other transmembrane proteins such as receptors.

The Cancer Genome Atlas A project to identify the complete set of DNA changes in many different types of cancer, led by the U.S. National Cancer Institute and the U.S. National Human Genome Research Institute.

therapeutic index (pl., **indices**) The ratio of the concentration of a drug that elicits an unacceptable level of toxicity compared with the concentration of the drug that elicits a desirable therapeutic response.

therapeutic range *See* **therapeutic window**.

therapeutic window Range of concentrations of a drug that are higher than that needed to elicit a therapeutic effect and lower than the maximum tolerated dose. *Also termed* **therapeutic range**.

thrombin A plasma protease that is activated following wounding and triggers blood coagulation by activating platelets and cleaving fibrinogen to fibrin.

thrombocyte A platelet.

thrombocytopenia A deficiency of platelets in the circulation.

thromboembolus *See* **embolus**.

thrombopoiesis Process leading to the formation of blood platelets from megakaryocytes.

thrombopoietin A growth factor that stimulates the production of megakaryocytes and thus of derived blood platelets.

thrombus (pl., **thrombi**) A blood clot.

thymocyte A leukocyte residing in the thymus.

thymus The immune organ lying in the upper chest and front of throat in which the maturation of thymocytes occurs, including the elimination of autoreactive thymocytes

time-lapse microscopy Procedure in which the same microscope field is photographed repeatedly, usually at regular intervals.

time to progression The period between inception of a treatment and the subsequent progression of a tumor under treatment to a stage of worse clinical presentation or higher stage of malignancy.

tissue culture Procedure of propagating cells outside of living tissues in various types of vessels including flasks and Petri dishes.

Tissue Factor A cell-surface glycoprotein expressed by many cell types in the body that interacts with clotting factors in the plasma, thereby triggering the coagulation cascade.

tissue-specific gene Gene that is expressed only in cells of certain individual tissue types.

titer Concentration of a substance in solution, usually referring to the concentration of viruses or antibodies as gauged by certain biological measurements involving dilution.

tolerance *See* **immune tolerance**.

tomography A computerized image-processing technique that integrates images of successive sections obtained by X-rays, ultrasound, or by other imaging procedures in order to generate a cross-sectional image or a three-dimensional image of an object, such as the human body.

topoinhibition *See* **contact inhibition**.

topoisomerase (1) An enzyme that relieves torsional tension in a DNA double helix by cleaving one or both strands, permitting winding or unwinding of the helix to relieve tension; thereafter this enzyme, ligates the DNA strand(s), thereby restoring the covalent integrity of the helix. (2) An enzyme that disentangles two intertwined, concatenated dsDNA molecules.

totipotent Referring to the ability of a stem cell to generate all the differentiated cell lineages existing in the embryo as well as the extraembryonic membranes. *See also* **multipotent**, **pluripotent**.

toxicity The undesired side effect(s) of a drug on normal tissues and normal metabolism.

trafficking The process of translocating biological entities, usually vesicles, from one intracellular locale to another.

trans (1) Term to indicate the fact that a gene is acted upon by the product of a second, unlinked gene. (2) Term used in structural organic chemistry to

indicate that two moieties are oriented in opposite directions or located on opposite sides of an imagined plane. *See also* **cis**.

trans-acting Referring to a protein, often a transcription factor, that is encoded by one gene and acts upon or regulates a second gene.

transactivation Process by which one molecule is activated by another that arrives from elsewhere in the cell; e.g., expression of a gene that is induced by a diffusible transcription factor made by another gene. *See also* **cis, trans**.

transactivation domain Domain of a transcription factor that serves to activate the transcription of genes, usually by attracting other transcription-regulating proteins.

transcription Copying of DNA sequences into RNA molecules mediated by RNA polymerases.

transcription-coupled repair A form of nucleotide excision repair (NER) in which transcribed regions of the genome are preferentially repaired. RNA polymerase stalled at DNA lesions mediates the recruitment of NER enzymes to the damage site, initiating transcription-coupled repair.

transcription factor Protein that is involved in regulating the transcription of a gene, often by associating with specific sequences in the promoter region of the gene. *See also* **general transcription factor**.

transcriptional pausing The process causing an RNA polymerase II molecule that has initiated transcription of a gene to halt at a downstream site relatively close to the transcriptional start site; formation of a full-length transcript depends on release of the polymerase from the site of pausing.

transcriptome (1) The assembly of all of the transcripts that are produced by one cell or cell type. (2) More commonly, the assembly of all of the mRNAs produced by one cell or cell type.

transdifferentiation Transition by a cell from one differentiation lineage into the phenotypic state characteristic of cells from another, distinct differentiation lineage.

transduction (1) Process whereby a signaling element, such as a protein, receives a signal and, in response, processes the signal and emits another signal. (2) Process by which a gene is introduced into a cell, usually by a vector such as a viral vector.

transfectant A recipient cell that has taken up and incorporated into its genome transfected donor DNA.

transfection A procedure for introducing DNA or RNA molecules into cells which may thereafter be expressed transiently in such cells or, in the case of DNA, stably in such cells.

transferase An enzyme that attaches a complex molecule, such as glutathione, to its substrate.

transformant A neoplastic cell that is formed by the experimental transformation of a non-neoplastic cell. *See* **transformation**.

transformation (1) Process of converting a normal mammalian cell into a cell having some or many of the attributes of a cancer cell. (2) Alteration of a cell through the introduction of a genetic element, usually referring to a process occurring in prokaryotic cells.

transgene (1) A cloned gene that has been inserted experimentally into the germ line of an animal, often that of a laboratory mouse. (2) Less commonly, any experimentally altered gene in the germ line.

transgenic (1) Referring to an animal or breed of animal whose germ line has been experimentally altered, usually through the insertion of a cloned gene. (2) Less commonly, referring to an animal or breed of animal whose germ line has been altered through any of a variety of genetic manipulations, including the addition of a cloned gene or the alteration of a resident gene through homologous recombination or other procedure.

transit-amplifying cell A relatively undifferentiated cell that is initially generated by division of a stem cell and is capable of exponential proliferation for a limited number of successive cell generations before spawning highly differentiated progeny, which in many tissues become post-mitotic. *See also* **progenitor**.

transition Point mutation in which one purine base replaces another, or in which one pyrimidine base replaces another. *See also* **transversion**.

translation Synthesis of proteins by ribosomes in which the amino acid sequences of the synthesized proteins are dictated by the nucleotide sequences of the ribosome-associated mRNA molecules. *See also* **ribosome**.

translocation (1) Rearrangement of chromosomes that results in the fusion of two chromosomal segments that are not normally attached to one another, often resulting in a microscopically visible alteration of karyotype. (2) Movement of a physical entity from one part of the cell to another. (3) Movement of a ribosome down an mRNA being translated.

transmembrane Referring to the domain of a protein, usually composed of a stretch of 12 to 35 hydrophobic amino acids, that is threaded through a lipid bilayer membrane and therefore resides largely or entirely within the hydrophobic environment of the lipid bilayer.

transphosphorylation Phosphorylation of one protein molecule by another, such as the phosphorylation of one receptor subunit by the kinase carried by another. *See also* **autophosphorylation**.

transposable element DNA segment residing in a cellular genome that is capable of either jumping from one integration site to another or dispatching new copies of itself to novel sites of integration, doing so via one of several alternative molecular mechanisms.

transposase Enzyme that binds transposon DNA and causes its copying and insertion into novel integration sites in a cellular genome. *See also* **transposon**, **transposable element**.

transposon Genetic element or DNA segment that is able to move from one chromosomal integration site to another within a cell. *See also* **retrotransposon**.

transversion Point mutation in which a purine base replaces a pyrimidine or vice versa. *See also* **transition**.

trastuzumab *See* **Herceptin**.

tricarboxylic acid cycle The succession of biochemical reactions occurring within the mitochondria that results in the oxidation of a glucose molecule, yielding the equivalent of ~38 ATP molecules. *Also termed* **Krebs cycle**, **citric acid cycle**.

trimeric Complex composed of three subunits.

triploid Describing a karyotype or a genetic state having precisely three haploid complements of a chromosome, chromosomal array, or copies of a gene.

tritium Radioactive isotope of hydrogen.

trophic Aiding in or supporting cell growth, proliferation, or survival.

-tropic Referring to a tendency of a cell or an organism to move toward or turn toward some object or source or to direct its actions toward that source.

tropism (1) Tendency of a cell to face or move toward a specific location or signaling source. (2) Tendency of a cell to migrate in a specific direction or, in the case of metastatic cancer, to appear to home to a specific tissue site in the body.

truncal Referring to a genetic alteration that is present in the genomes of all of the otherwise-heterogeneous neoplastic cells within a tumor and is indicative of their shared descent from a common ancestral cell; such mutations are associated with the trunk of a branched tree drawn to depict graphically the evolutionary history of these cells from their common ancestor.

t-SNE A graphical convention in which the data present in high-dimensional datasets can be reduced via a statistical method to a two- or three-dimensional depiction; t-SNE plots are often used to depict results of single-cell RNA sequencing, such that cells with similar transcriptomes are clustered together with one another. *See also* **scRNAseq**.

tumor-associated antigen An antigen that is associated with the cells of a tumor and may also be displayed by normal cells or tissues throughout the body; *also termed* **tumor-associated transplantation antigen**. *Compare* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor-associated macrophage A macrophage that has been recruited into a tumor.

tumor-associated transplantation antigen An antigen encoded by a normal cellular allele that is expressed by a certain class of tumors and may have, for various reasons, not elicited immune tolerance. *See also* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor-initiating cell *See* **cancer stem cell**.

tumor microenvironment The areas within a tumor that are populated by recruited non-neoplastic cells, including various types of immunocytes and inflammatory cells, often synonymous with stroma. *See also* **stroma**.

tumor mutational burden The total number of mutations found in the genomic DNA of tumor sample, often presented as number per haploid genome or per megabase of genomic DNA.

tumor progression (1) Process of multi-step evolution of a normal cell into a fully neoplastic, malignant tumor cell. (2) Evolution of a benign into a malignant cancer cell or growth. (3) Evolution of a premalignant cell from a promoter-dependent to a promoter-independent state.

tumor promoter *See* **promoter**.

tumor rejection Process by which an organism prevents the formation of a tumor (including tumor formation by engrafted cells), usually achieved

through the action of its immune system.

tumor self-seeding Process whereby circulating tumor cells originating in a primary tumor or in its derived metastases return to the primary tumor and seed populations of cells within that tumor.

tumor-specific *See* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor-specific antigen An antigen that is associated with the cells of a tumor that is unique to this tumor and is not shared by other cells or tissues throughout the body; *also termed* **tumor-specific transplantation antigen**. *See also* **tumor-associated antigen**.

tumor-specific transplantation antigen An antigen that can, through transplantation analyses, be associated with one particular tumor cell population but not with other similar tumor cell populations. *See also* **tumor-specific antigen**.

tumor suppressor gene (1) A gene whose partial or complete inactivation, occurring in either the germ line or the genome of a somatic cell, leads to an increased likelihood of cancer development. (2) Such a gene that is responsible for constraining cell proliferation. *See also* **gatekeeper**.

tumoricidal Able to kill cancer cells and/or destroy a tumor.

tumorigenesis The process of forming a tumor, often involving a succession of steps.

tumorigenic (1) Referring to the ability of cells to form tumors when introduced into appropriate animal hosts. (2) Less commonly, pertaining to an agent such as a tumor virus that imparts this ability to cells.

tumorigenicity The ability of cells to serve as founders of new tumors, often gauged experimentally by transplanting cells into appropriate hosts.

tumorsphere A colony of cells that is formed in semi-solid culture medium by cells that are deprived of contact with solid substrate; the ability to form such colonies is sometimes used to predict tumor-forming ability *in vivo.*

turnover number The rate with which an enzyme processes its substrate, usually presented as the number of enzymatic reactions catalyzed per second by a single enzyme molecule.

type IV secretion system A collection of structures formed by bacteria and archaea that create a channel through which bacterial and archaean proteins are delivered through the outer membranes of other cells.

ubiquitin A polypeptide composed of 76 amino acid residues that undergoes covalent attachment to a substrate protein, often signaling that the resulting ubiquitylated protein is destined for degradation and usually present as a linear or branched polyubiquitylated modification of the substrate protein.

ubiquitylation Process by which one or more ubiquitin molecules are attached covalently to a protein substrate molecule, which often results in the degradation of the tagged protein in a proteasome, *alternatively termed* **ubiquitination**.

ultimate carcinogen A chemical compound that is able to directly contribute to the induction of cancer without further chemical modification, usually by direct chemical interaction with DNA, thereby altering the chemical structure of the latter. *See also* **procarcinogen**.

undruggable Referring to a molecular species within a cell, usually a protein, whose function cannot be readily inhibited by existing drug molecules or, ostensibly by alternative drug molecules that might be developed in the future; such a property is often judged by the absence of potential drug-binding pockets in the known three-dimensional structure of the species.

unequal crossing over A mechanism of genetic recombination in which a DNA sequence recombines with a nonidentical but similar sequence on either the sister chromatid or a homologous chromosome; because the recombination occurs between two nonidentical DNA sequences, one of the resulting recombinant chromosomes will gain sequence (and physical length), whereas the other will lose sequence (and physical length).

unfolded protein response A cell-biological program, which is the main source of ER stress, that is activated by the accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum; this program halts further translation, induces synthesis of molecular chaperones, and, if unsuccessful in reducing the level of unfolded and misfolded proteins, induces apoptosis. *See* **ER stress**.

urothelium The specialized epithelial cell lining of the urinary bladder.

uveal melanoma A tumor arising from the melanocytes of the uvea, more specifically located in the iris, the ciliary body, or the choroids of the eye.

vacuoles Small, fluid-filled, bubble-like structures, often seen in the cytoplasm of cells that are under physiological stress and in cells infected by certain viruses.

variable region Portion of an antibody molecule or T-cell receptor that contains the antigen-binding domain and, within an individual organism, is present in millions of alternative versions (and thus alternative amino acid sequences) in the various antibody molecules that together comprise a given class of antibody molecules such as gamma immunoglobulin. *Compare* **constant region**.

vascular ZIP code The display by the luminal surfaces of endothelial cells of specific proteins that reflect or are specific to the tissue in which the endothelial cells and the vessels they form reside; one theory of metastasis proposes that circulating cancer cells adhere to the vessel walls by recognizing the specific homing address created by these displayed proteins.

vascularized Referring to the presence of blood vessels throughout a tissue such as a tumor.

vasculature Network of blood vessels.

vasculogenesis Process by which vessels are assembled *de novo* through the differentiation program of primitive mesenchymal proteins termed angioblasts. *Compare* **angiogenesis**.

vasculogenic mimicry The process that enables the neoplastic cells within a tumor to assemble into blood-carrying microvessels without these cells becoming *bona fide* endothelial cells.

vasoactive Referring to a regulator of vascular function, such as a regulator of vascular permeability or constriction.

vector (1) Agent, often a virus, that is able to carry (transduce) a gene from one cell to another. (2) An infected organism that serves to transmit and distribute an infectious agent to other organisms.

vehicle The solvent that is used to deliver a drug.

venereal Involving or resulting from sexual intercourse.

Venn diagram Diagram of two or more circles, each of which encompasses a group of items such as genes; the overlap between two circles indicate the items that are shared in common between the groups represented by each of these circles.

ventral (1) Referring to the underside of a cell that is apposed to a solid substrate such as the surface of a culture dish. (2) Referring to the side of an organism opposite to its dorsal side and, in chordates, referring to the abdomen. *See also* **dorsal**.

venule A small vein that conducts blood from capillaries to larger veins.

versus In contrast to.

vertical transmission The transmission of an agent, such as an infectious agent, from parent to offspring. *See also* **horizontal transmission**.

vesicle (adj., **vesicular**) A structure, usually within the cell cytoplasm, that is composed of a lipid bilayer that surrounds and encloses an interior lumen and that is used to transport various biomolecules to various destinations inside and outside a cell. As examples, cytoplasmic vesicles may be generated by endocytosis and soluble proteins may be exported by a cell through the exocytosis of cytoplasmic vesicles.

viability Referring to the state of a cell or organism that enables its continued survival.

vicious cycle Term used to describe the self-perpetuating, complex interactions between disseminated cancer cells, osteoclasts, and osteoblasts that has been used to explain the mechanisms underlying osteolytic metastases.

villus (pl., **villi**) Fingerlike structure that is covered by epithelial enterocytes and protrudes from the wall of the small intestine into its lumen.

vimentin Intermediate filament protein of the cytoskeleton of mesenchymal cells such as fibroblasts.

viremia Presence of high concentrations of virus in the bloodstream.

virion Virus particle including a capsid (coat) and the viral genome.

virulent Referring to an infectious agent, such as a virus, that exhibits toxicity and creates damage in an infected host cell or organism. *See also* **temperate**.

virus stock A solution of virus particles used experimentally to infect cells or organisms.

vital dye Dye that can be used to stain living cells or tissues and is retained for extended periods of time in these objects without compromising viability.

vitiligo A skin disorder, often of autoimmune origin, that leads to loss of patches of melanocytes from the epidermis and resulting loss of pigmentation.

volcano plot Convention of graphing in which the individual data points of a large data set are plotted in two dimensions; individual data points are located by the statistical significance (p-value) of the measured value data points indicated on the ordinate (*y*-axis) versus extent of measured change from a reference data set on the abscissa (*x*-axis). Both axes are usually

presented as the logarithm of the values indicated and both positive and negative values of extent of change are indicated to the right or left of the graph, respectively. *See also* **p value**.

vulnerability Property of a tumor or tumor cell that reflects its responsiveness to a specific type of cytostatic or cytotoxic therapy.

Warburg effect *See* **aerobic glycolysis**.

waterfall plot Convention of graphing the responses of individual patients to a treatment protocol by depicting each patient's response as a bar that extends either above or below the abscissa indicating ongoing growth or shrinkage in the measured size of a tumor, respectively; by convention, lower to higher patient responses to a therapy are plotted left to right on these graphs.

Western blot Procedure whereby proteins are resolved by gel electrophoresis and transferred to a filter, whereupon they are detected by incubation with appropriate monoclonal antibodies. *Also termed* **immunoblot.** *See also* **Southern blot**, **Northern blot**.

whole-exome sequencing Method used to determine the nucleotide sequence primarily of the exonic (including protein-encoding) regions of genomic DNA sample.

wild type The allele of a gene that is commonly present in the great majority of individuals in a species and is usually presumed to be fully functional.

writer An enzyme that adds covalent modifications to histones within nucleosomes, thereby regulating processes such as transcription, DNA repair, and further histone modification. *See also* **eraser**, **reader**.

xenobiotic (n., adj.) A chemical species that originates outside of the body of an organism and is foreign to its normal metabolism.

xenograft A normal or neoplastic tissue derived from one species that has been implanted into a host animal from another species.

xenotropic Referring to a class of retroviruses from one species that can infect and replicate in cells of another species.

xeroderma pigmentosum Syndrome resulting from an inherited inability to repair UV-induced DNA lesions in the skin, resulting in severe burning of the skin following exposure to sunlight and the development of skin cancers at a high rate.

zinc finger A protein structural domain that binds and is stabilized by one or more zinc ions. Zinc fingers are employed by certain transcription factors to recognize and bind specific oligonucleotide sequences in DNA.

zygote The cell created by the fusion of sperm and egg.

zymogen An inactive precursor form of an active enzyme.

zymogram Analytic technique in which the migration rates of various proteins upon gel electrophoresis are gauged by their localized enzymatic activity following such electrophoresis.

OceanofPDF.com

Index

NOTE: Numerical and symbolic prefixes have been ignored in sorting. Thus 3-MC (3-methylcholanthrene) appears at ‘mc’. Where ambiguity remains after the first hyphen, as in ‘14-3-3σ protein’ the entry is sorted as though spelled out, in this case at ‘fourteen’. Among the page references, the suffixes F, S and T indicate that the topic is covered in a Figure, Sidebar or Table only on that page. Non-text material on a page where the text is already suitably indexed is not distinguished. Italics and the prefix SS indicate coverage in a Supplementary Sidebar (the number provided is the Supplementary Sidebar number). Supplementary Sidebars are available at the end of each chapter in the ebook format of the textbook only.

A

abasic sites, 493–494, 493S, 494F

ABC (ATP-binding cassette), 827F

ABC (activated B-cell-like) lymphoma, 789, 790F

Abelson leukemia virus, 89T, 106T, 118–119, 119F, 120T

abl gene, 106T, 118–119, 120T, 446T, 484, 719

Abl protein, 118–119, 812F

Gleevec, mechanism of action, 830–841, 841S

ABT-737, 828, 829F

ABVD multi-drug protocol, 797–800, 798S, 798T, 800T

A-CDK2 complexes, 287–291, 292S

acetaldehyde, 497, 497F

acetylation, 16S, 17, 23

acetylcholine, 600

acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF), 591T

acid reflux, 466T

acid sphingomyelinase (asmase) enzyme, *SS13.10*

acquired resistance, 768–769

acromegaly, 34

acronyms, gene notation use in text, 112

ACT (adoptive cell transfer), 754–757, 756S

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

T-cell exhaustion and, 773S

actin, 14F, 359

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cytoskeleton and, 621–622

epithelial cell sheets, 204–208

filopodia, 196–197

integrins, clustering of, 156–159, 158S

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

actinomycin, 342F

β-actin, 173T

γ-actin, 173T

activated B-cell-like (ABC) lymphoma, 789, 790F

activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) enzymes, 508S, *SS15.1*

activation loop, 142–144, *SS5.10*

drug targets and, 808F

Src protein, 183S

T-loops, 292S

activators, transcription, 20–21

activin, 148

ACTRII gene, 513T

acute granulocytic leukemia, 794T

acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), 39, 39T, 40F, 108F

BiTE (bi-specific T-cell engager) therapy, 770F, 771

CAR T therapies and, 761

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S, 798T, 800T

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), 39, 39T, 40F, *SS12.4*

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

chemotherapy for, 794T

drug therapy for, 829

familial syndromes, 511T

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

ras oncogene activation, 111T

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

as second-site cancer, 786

stem cells and, 484S

telomerase, human tumor development and, 407

tumor stem cells and, 437

tumor suppressor genes, human, 249T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

acute promyelocytic leukemia, 120T, 801–802, *SS8.9*

acute T-cell leukemia, 115T

adapter proteins, 177, 180F

adaptive immune system, 705–707

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

ADCC. *See* antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)

adducts, DNA, 496F, 497, 506, 507

adenine, deamination reactions, 491–492, 492F

adenocarcinoma, 32F, 36, 37F

of lung, 440S

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 580F

adenoid basal carcinoma of cervix, 436F

adenomas, 420–421

breakage-fusion-bridge (BFB) cycle, 407, 408S

DNA hypomethylation in, 427

familial syndromes, 511T

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

progression of, 45, 47F

of thyroid, 34

adenomatosis syndrome, familial, 511T

adenomatous polyposis coli. *See APC* (adenomatous polyposis coli) gene

adenomatous polyps, 45, 47F

adenoviruses, 77

E1A, 339F, 446

E1A, cell cycle regulation and, 293–297, 294S

p53 protein, targeting of, 361S

adenylate cyclase (AC), 151–153

adherens junctions, 204–208, *SS6.7*

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614, 614F, 615F, 618F–619F, 620F, 626F

wound healing, 568F, 569

adhesion molecules, 569

adipocytes, 38F

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

tumor formation, 32F, 37T, 38

See also tumor cell signaling networks

adjuvant, 793, 799

adoptive cell transfer (ACT), 754–757, 756S

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

T-cell exhaustion and, 773S

Ado-trastuzumab emtansine (T-DM1), 752T

adrenal glands, 42

adrenocortical carcinoma, 327

aerobic glycolysis, 467–470, 468F

AEV. *See* avian erythroblastosis virus (AEV)

affinity chromatography, *SS16.1*

aflatoxin-B1, 462, 498–499, 506

Aflibercept (EYLEA), 600T

Africa, Burkitt's lymphoma in, *SS4.7*

African green monkey kidney (AGMK) cells, 74

AFX, 195T

age-adjusted incidence and mortality rates, 52S

aging

cell senescence and, 345–348

deamination reactions, mutations from, 492, 492F

premature, *SS9.1*

proliferative capacity of cells, *SS10.2*

telomeric DNA and, 389–391

tumor development and, 416–418

AIB1 oncogene, 113T

AID (activation-induced cytidine deaminase) enzymes, 508S, *SS15.1*

AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), 210T, 211, 700, 701F, *SS3.6*

AIM2 gene, 513T

akt-1 and *akt-2* oncogenes, 113T

AKT8, 89T

Akt/PKB kinase, 130–131F, 184T, 225, 271, 277F, *SS6.6*

cell cycle regulation and, 287–289, 290F

in human tumors, 315

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 337

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 365–366

PH (pleckstrin homology) domains, 193, 194F

Ras-regulated signaling pathways, 189–198, 196S, 450F

ALK, fusion with EML4 protein, 522, 522F

AlkB enzyme, 503F, *SS12.5*

ALK gene, 269S

Alk proto-oncogene, *SS4.4*

alkylating agents, 495F, 496, 786T, 795F

chemotherapy with, 793–796

ALL. *See* acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL)

alleles, 3–4

dominant-interfering, 328, 329F

dominant-negative, 328, 329F

evolution, gene function conservation, 7F, 7S

evolution and, 4–6

hemizygosity, 240–242

hypomorphic, 407

loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 240–242

mitotic recombination, 240–242

neutral mutations, 5

null allele, 244, 328–330

polymorphis genetic markers, 245–247, 248T, 249T

See also gene; genome, cancer; mutations

allogeneic organ transplants, 700

allosteric shift, *SS6.5*

α2β3, 155T

α6β1, 155T

α6β4, 155T

α7β1, 155T

αvβ3, 155T

ALT (alternative lengthening of telomeres mechanism), 399–401, *SS10.4*

alternate reading frame (ARF), 338–339, 340–341, 364T, 365–366

alternative lengthening of telomeres mechanism (ALT), 399–401, *SS10.4*

alternatively activated macrophages (M2 state), 469–470, 723–725

alternative splicing, 16S, 21

RNA and, 14–17, 16S, 17S

unconventional RNAs and, 26

Alu sequences, *SS4.4*, *SS4.5*

alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma, 119, 120T

alveoli, 562–563, 683

Ames, Bruce, 57–60, 500S

Ames test, 57–60, 61S, 453, 453S, 500S, *SS2.8*

amino acids

deamination reactions, 491–492

phosphorylation of, 16S

point mutations, H-*ras* oncogene activation and, 109–110

post-translational modifications, 16S, 17

protein synthesis, 14

2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine (PhIP), 497–500

aminopterin, 794–796

AML. *See* acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)

aml1/mtg8 oncogene, 120T

Amphioxus, 634F, 635F, 635T

AMPK (AMP kinase), 218F

amplicon, 112, *SS4.4*

anabolism, 306–307, 470

anal cancer, 739T, 740

anal warts, 742

anaphase, 278–280, 284

anaphase bridge, 387F, 388, 388F

anaplastic tumors, 44, *SS2.3–SS2.4*

anastellin, *SS13.8*

anchorage dependence, 77, 78F

cell cycle regulation, 282

integrin receptors and, 154–159, 158S

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

anchorage independence, 77, 78F

cell cycle regulation, 282

integrin receptors and, 154–159, 158S

Raf protein kinase and, 189

anchor proteins, wound healing, 568F

andenyl cyclase, 209

androgen receptor (AR), 229S

androgens, 153–154

aneuploidy, 9, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F, 406, 407, 521, 524–528, *SS12.10*

Ang-1 and Ang-2 receptors and ligands, 139, 140

angiogenesis, 602F

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198

alternate incitement mechanisms, *SS13.6*

anti-angiogenic agents, 573, 594–599, 599S, 600T, *SS13.9*

cells in tumor microenvironment, 552F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

endogenous inhibitors of, *SS13.8*

heterotypic signaling and, 557, 558F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614, 615F, 640F, 641, 642F

lymphangiogenesis, 144S, 587S

macrophages and tumor stroma, 578–581

metastasis and, 611F

myofibroblasts and, 576, 577F

protein kinases, actions of, 130–131F

radiotherapy and, *SS13.10*

synopsis and prospects, 601–606

tumor access to circulation networks, 582–588, 586S, 587S

tumor expansion, angiogenic switch for, 588–592, 591S

tumor progression and, 592–594

tumor vascularization, alternate sources for, 578S

angiogenic switch, 602F

anti-cancer therapies and, 598

defined, 589

resulting processes from, 592–594

tumor expansion and, 589–592, 591S

angiogenin, 584, 591T

angiopoietin, 584, 585, 591T

angiosarcoma, 37T, 38F

angiostatin, *SS13.8*

animal models

for drug candidates, 819–821, 820S

value in research, 26–27, 56–57, *SS2.6*

See also specific animal names

annexin, 349

anoikis, 155

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell cycle regulation, 282

circulating tumor cells and, 662

integrins and, 156–159, 158S

mechanism of, 355–359

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

See also apoptosis

anonymous marker sequences, 243–244

anti-apoptotic signals, 156–159, 158S

antibodies

anti-Src antibodies, making of, *SS5.1*

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 508S

auto-reactive antibodies, 551S

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709

bi-specific antibodies, 769–771

Burkitt's lymphoma, translocations and, 114–115

gene translocations, cancer genome and, 522–523

germline genes and antibody diversity, *SS15.1*

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

immune system, overview of, 705–707, 708F

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

monoclonal anti-cancer therapies, 596, 600T, 745–748

NFKB2 locus and, 214

NHEJ (nonhomologous end joining), 518–519

phosphorylation of, 130F

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

See also immune system; monoclonal antibodies (moAbs)

antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), 722, 722S, 746–748

antibody-drug conjugates, 750–754

breast cancer therapies, 749–750, 750S

antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), 724

antibody-dependent phagocytosis (ADP), 750–754

antibody-drug conjugates (ADCs), 750–754, 773–776, 775S

anti-cancer therapies

accurate diagnosis of disease and, 784–792, 789S, 792S, *SS17.2*

animal models for, 819–821, 820S

anti-angiogenesis therapies, 594–599, 599S, 600T, *SS13.9*

Bcl-2, targeting of, 827–829, 830F

BH3 profiling and, *SS17.10*

biological strategies for, 801–803, 804S–805S

B-Raf and melanoma, 852–855

breast cancer, selection for, 786–788

cancer detection and diagnosis, 782–783, 783S

cancer stem cells and therapy evaluation, 841S

cell models for drug candidates, 815–819, 815S, 817S

chemotherapy, history of, 793–796

chemotherapy, mechanisms of action, 796–800, 798S

clinical outcomes and pathogenesis, *SS17.2*

compound libraries and high-throughput screening, *SS17.6*

cytotoxic drug therapies, 599S

development of, 141S, 792–796

disease subtypes and drug development, *SS17.3*

drug holidays, 854

drug resistance, 595, 797–800, 826–827, 834–835, 843–844, 857–860, 860S

drug targets, selection of, 803, 805–811, 807S, 809S

EGF receptor antagonists and, 841–847, 845S, *SS17.9*

Gleevec as model for, 830–841, 841S

high-throughput screening for, 812, 814S, 857, 858F

hTERT targets, 400–401

human cancer cell lines and, 559, 560S

kinase inhibitors, effects of, *SS17.8*

legal and financial disincentives, 860S

monoclonal antibodies, development of, 748S

monoclonal antibody naming conventions, 748S

mortality and, *SS17.1*

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

p53 germ-line mutations and, *SS17.5*

pharmacodynamics and -kinetics, 799

Phase I clinical trials, 821–822, 823F

Phase II and III clinical trials, 824–826, 825S

potential drugs, stereochemistry of, 811–814, 814S

for prostate cancer, *SS17.4*

proteasome inhibitors, 847–850, 850S–852S

radiotherapy, 793, *SS13.10*

rational treatment of cancer, 781–784

remission, 802

side-effects of, 798–799, 798S, 821

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 791, 792S

surgery as, 792–793

synopsis and prospects, 603–606, 855–863, 860S

tumor resistance to, 599s

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

vascular leakiness and, *SS13.7*

watchful waiting, 787

See also immunotherapy

antigen-directed killing, 746–748, 747F

antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 712–713

adoptive cell transfers, 755–757, 756S

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

checkpoint inhibition therapies, 763–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

cytotoxic T cell activation, 716S–717S

dendritic cell activation of T cells, 714–715, 717, 718F

immune checkpoints and, 728–730, 730S

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

tumor antigens, response to, 717–721, 719S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

antigens

antibody-drug conjugate therapies, 750–754

anti-Src antibodies, making of, *SS5.1*

auto-reactive antibodies, 551S

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

defined, 699

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

immune system, overview of, 705–707, 708F

monoclonal antibody therapeutics, 746–748

tumor antigens, response to, 717–721, 719S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

See also immune system

antimetabolites, 794–796

antioxidant responsive element (ARE) sequences, 265–267

antioxidants, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

antisense RNA, 396–399, 397S, 399S

antithrombin III, *SS13.8*

AP-1 transcription factor, 188

APAF1 gene, 251T, 364T, 365–366, 513T

Apaf-1 protein, apoptosis regulation, 340–341

APC (adenomatous polyposis coli) gene, 246F, 247F, 248T, 251T, 425, 425F, 426S, *SS11.3*, *SS11.14*, *SS12.11*

adenomatous polyposis and, 259–265

mutations and tumor progression, 426S

APC (adenomatous polyposis coli) protein, 204–208, *SS7.6*, *SS11.3*

APCs. *See* antigen-presenting cells (APCs)

apico-basal polarity, 35F

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, 507, 508S, 531F, 533

activation-induced deaminase (AID), *SS15.1*

apoptosis, 155, 175, *SS4.4*, *SS8.10*

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 801–803, 804S–805S

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 340–341

in B-cell lymphomas, 789

Bcl-2, as drug target, 827–829, 830F

BH3 profiling and, *SS17.10*

biochemistry of, 349–359

cancer and cell signaling, 473F

cancer cell inactivation of, 363–366

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell cycle regulation, 282

cell generations and, 380–384, *SS10.1*

colonic enterocytes, 261

crisis and, 383–388

cytotoxic T cells (T_C), 716S–717S

detection of cellular changes, *SS9.3*

gene knockdown, *SS1.5*

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

histone modifications and, 23

hypoxia and, 582–583

integrins and, 156–159, 158S

intrinsic and extrinsic programs of, 359–362, 361S, 363F

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 201

vs. necrosis, 349, 351T

necrotic cell death and, 367–370, 368S

in normal tissues, 348–349

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 336F, 337–340, 338S

p53 germ-line mutations and, *SS17.5*

p53 protein activation of, 323–324

preneoplastic cells, prevention mechanisms, 485

protein kinases, actions of, 130–131

Ras protein and, 189–198, 196S

senescence and telomeres, 397S

small G proteins and, 196S

synopsis and prospects, 370–372

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

See also anoikis; anti-cancer therapies; cell immortalization; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

apoptosome, 355–359

apoptotic bodies, 349

apposed plasma membranes, 569

Apr protein, 451

apurinic endonuclease (APE), 505F, 506

apurinic sites, 493–494, 493S

apyrimidinic endonuclease (APE), 505F, 506

apyrimidinic sites, 493–494, 493S

arachnoidal cells, tumor formation, 39–42

ARF (alternate reading frame), 338F

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 364T, 365–366, 366F

regulation of, 340–341

ARF-encoding genes, 338–339, 338F

AR gene, 251T

arginine finger, neurofibromin, 256F

Argonaut protein (Ago2), *SS1.5*

Aristolochia, 533S

aristolochic acid (AA), 533S

aromatic hydrocarbons, *SS2.7*

arresten, *SS13.8*

arsenic trioxide (ATO), 802

arterial-venous shunts, 666

arterioles, 666S

AS42 sarcoma virus, 89T

asbestos, 418, 418F, 466T, *SS3.4*

ascites, 602, 677, 727

ascitic fluid, *SS13.3*

ascitic tumors, 559

Ashkenazic Jews, 520S

Ashworth, T.R, 609

asmase (acid sphingomyelinase) enzyme, *SS13.10*

asparagine, protein side chains, 16S

Aspergillus fungi, 462, 498–499

astrocyte, NF1 protein and, 254–259, 257S, 260S

astrocytoma, 39–42, 112S, 121T, 249T, 610

ASV-16, 89T

asymmetric division, *SS12.1*

ataxia telangiectasia, 334, 511T, *SS12.11*

atelomeric DNA, 387F, 388, 388F

atezolizumab, 766T

Atg8, 226

Atg12, 226

ATM gene, *SS12.11*

ATM kinase

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 336–340, 338S

p53 protein signaling and, 333–334, 335S

ATP (adenosine triphosphate), Src protein function and, 129–132

ATP-binding cassette (ABC), 827F

ATP citrate lyase, 195T

atrophy, 402

ATR protein kinase, *SS8.1*

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 336–340, 338S

p53 protein signaling and, 334, 335S

attrition, tumor cells, 382–383, 382S, 383S

A-type cyclins (A1, A2), 283–286, 286S

pRb phosphorylation, control of, 296–297

auristatins, 751F, 752T

Aurora-A, -B gene, *SS12.11*

autochthonous, 666S, 820S

autocrine signaling, 185, *SS5.4*

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 219–221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628–629

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210–211

immune checkpoints, 732

autocrine signaling loop, 136F, 137F, 139–141, 140S

autoimmune diseases, 709, 721

regulatory T cells and, 725–727

autophagic cell death, 368, 369F

autophosphorylation, 129

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

auto-reactive antibodies, 551S

autoreactive lymphocytes, 709

autoregulation, p53 and Mdm2, 335–340, 338S

autosomes, functional redundancy, 8

auto-stimulatory signaling loop, 136F, 137F

See also autocrine signaling loop

Avastin (Bevacizumab), 596, 598, 600T

avian erythroblastosis virus (AEV), 105, 106T, 135–138, 484S

avian erythroblasts, 447T

avian leukosis virus (ALV), 71F, 84F, 86, 130F, 446T, *SS3.6*

proto-oncogenes and, 87, 87F, 88

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

avian myeloblastosis E26 virus, 106T

avian myelocytomatosis virus (MC29), 88, 108–111

myc oncogene activation, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

proto-oncogene activation and, 108–111

avian myelocytoma virus, 106T

avian sarcoma virus, 89T

axin, 205–208

AXIN-2 gene, 513T

AXL receptors, 139, 144

axons, 600–601

azacitidine, 794T

B

B7-H3 antigen, 761, 762F

bacterial cancers, 94–95, *SS3.9*

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740, 739T

Bad protein, 184T, 190F, 354–359

Akt/PKB effects and, 195T

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 364T, 365–366

Bak proteins, 354–359

Baltimore, David, *SS3.3*, *SS3.6*

Bang, Oluf, *SS3.1*

BAP1 gene, 248T

barcodes, 664–665

Barr body, *SS1.1*, *SS2.5*

Barrett’s esophagus, 44, 46F, 408S

basal cell carcinoma, 215–216, 248T, 495, 610

basal lamina, 34–35, 34F, 35F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

stem cells in, 645

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

base-excision repair (BER), 504–506, *SS12.6*

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

basement membrane (BM), 34–35, 34F, 35F

adenomatous growths and, 45, 47F

anoikis and morphogenesis, 204F

cancer progression and, 45–49

early tumor progression in, 592, 592F, 593F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 653–655, 656F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), 565, 566F, 591T

angiogenesis and, 584, *SS13.6*

anti-cancer therapies, 596

basophils, hematopoiesis overview, *SS12.1*

Bax gene, 365–366, 513T

Bax protein, 354–359, 361, 363F, 828

B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, 752T

B-cell lymphoma, 93T, 115T

activated B-cell-like (ABC) lymphoma, 789, 790F

apoptosis in, 789

diffuse B-cell lymphoma, 115T, 748–749, 788–789, 790F

gene expression analysis, 789, 790F

NFKB2 locus and, 214

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma (PMBL), 789, 790F

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 850S–852S

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

B-cell receptors (BCRs), 706–709

B cells. *See* B lymphocytes (B cells)

Bcl-2 gene, 115T, 446T, 447T, 448

apoptosis, mechanisms of, 349–359

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 365–366

Bcl-2 proteins, 214

anti-cancer therapy targets, 810–811, 827–829

apoptosis and, 340–341, 353–359, 361, 361S, 362F

gene expression analysis, 789

venetoclax and, 812

bcl-3 oncogene, 115T

bcl-6 oncogene, 115T

Bcl-6 protein, 789

BCL9-2/BL9, 207F

BCL-10 gene, 513T

Bcl-X_L protein, 201, 204F, 810–811, 810F, 828, 829F

BCMA protein, 752T

Bcr-Abl fusion protein, 118–119, 808F, 816, 818F, *SS8.3*

EGF-R inhibitors and, 847

Gleevec, mechanism of action, 830–841, 841S

protein structure, 830–831

bcr-abl oncogene, 118–119, 120–121

Bcr gene, 118–119, 719

Philadelphia chromosome and, 484

Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, 248T

Belantamab mafodotin-blmf, 752T

benign, 33–34, 421

adenomatous growths, 45, 47F

dysplasia as transition state, 44–45, 46F

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 419F, 420F, 422F, 423F, 423S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 613

tumor classification scheme, 46, 47–49, 48F, *SS2.4*

benzo*[a]*pyrene, 344, 465, 496, *SS2.7*

benzo*[a]*pyrene (BP), 454, 496F, 497

benzo*[a]*pyrenediolepoxide (BPDE), 496–497

BER (base-excision repair), 504–506

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

Berenblum, Isaac, *SS2.6*

betel nut, 466T

Bevacizumab (Avastin), 596, 598, 600T

bFGF receptors and ligands, 140

BH3 protein, 810–811, 828, *SS17.10*

BHD/FLCN gene, 249T

BH (Bcl-2 homology) domains, 354–359

bHLH (basic helix-loop-helix) transcription factors, 302S, 303–307, 304S, 394S, *SS8.8*

bias, diagnostic, 51, 52S

Bid protein, 354–359, 361, 362F

bilateral retinoblastoma, 236

bile, as tumor promoter, 466T

biliary tract carcinoma, Hedgehog signaling pathway, 216

bilirubin, 501

Bim gene, 844

Bim protein, 340–341, 354–359, 828, 844

binary switching mechanisms, 636–637, 637S, 638S

bioinformatics, breast cancer predictions, 787–788, 788F

Birt-Hogg-Dube syndrome, 249T

Bishop, J. Michael, 84–86, 86F

bi-specific T-cell engager (BiTE), 770–771, 770F, 773–776, 775S

bisphosphonates, 684

bisulfite sequencing, *SS7.4*

BiTE (bi-specific T-cell engager), 770–771, 770F

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

bladder carcinoma, 105, 105F, 313T

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

H-*ras*, localization of activating mutation, *SS4.6*

H-*ras* oncogene, 108–111

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

NSAIDs and, 463

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

ras oncogene activation, 111T

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

telomerase activation in, 393F

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703, 703F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

blast cells, anti-cancer therapy strategies, 801–802

blast crisis, 311S, 839

blastocoel, 257S

blastocyte, 257S

blebs, 349, 359

bleomycin, 786T, 797–800, 798S

blinatumomab, 771

BLM gene, 513T

blood-brain barrier, 835

blood fluke, 466T

blood vessels

intravasation, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615, 640F, 641, 642F

tumor access to circulation networks, 582–588, 586S, 587S

See also angiogenesis

Bloom syndrome, 511T

B lymphocytes (B cells)

as antigen-presenting cells, 712–713, 713F

B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, 752T

B-cell receptors (BCRs), 706–709

bi-specific T-cell engager (BiTE), 770–771, 770F

genes for, stochastic diversification of, 708–709

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 39T, 40F

immune system, overview of, 705–707, 708F

large B-cell leukemia, 775

lymphomas, CAR T therapies, 760–761

monoclonal antibody therapies and, 748–750

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

See also B-cell lymphoma

Bmi-1 gene, 93T, *SS3.8*

BMPs (bone morphogenetic proteins), 148

body mass and telomerase activity, 395–396, 396F, *SS11.10*

bombesin, 209F, 210–211

bone marrow

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 802

immature myeloid cells (iMCs), 581–582

micrometastases in, 673F

pre-leukemia, 16

stem cell transplants, *SS3.8*

tumor-associated stroma activation, 577F, 578–582, 578S

bone marrow stem cells proteasome inhibitor therapy, 850S–852S

bone marrow transplantation, 770F, 771

bone metastasis, 679–685, 684S

bone morphogenetic proteins (BMPs), 148

bortezomib (Velcade, PS-341), 794T, 795F, 847–850, 850S–852S

Boveri, Theodor, 31, 57, 58F, 102, 233, 830–831, *SS4.2*

bowhead whales, 451–452

BPDE (benzo*[a]*pyrenediolepoxide), 496–497

bradykinin, 210–211

B-raf gene, 189, 199–200, 222–223

melanoma and, 852–855

mutations and tumor progression, 426S

B-Raf inhibitors, 847

B-Raf kinase, 189, 199–200, 221

B-Raf protein

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 341

cell senescence and, 347–348

melanoma and, 852–855

vemurafenib and, 812

brain cancer, 312T

age and, 418F

CAR T therapies, 761, 762F

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

metastasis and, 610

brain tissues, 18F, 19F

brain tumors

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–118

melanoma metastases and, 559

oncogenes and, 105, 106T

p53 gene mutations and, 327

BRCA1 gene, 251T

cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

therapeutic strategies, DNA repair and, 804S–805S

BRCA1 protein, *SS12.12*

function of, *SS12.9*

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

BRCA2 gene

cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

therapeutic strategies, DNA repair and, 804S–805S

BRCA2-negative cells, drugs for, 543F

BRCA2 protein, *SS12.12*

breakage-fusion-bridge (BFB) cycle, 387F, 388, 391, 397S, 528

human tumor development and, 406–409, 408S

in telomerase-negative mice, 405–406

breakpoint, chromosomal, 114–115

breakpoint cluster region, 118–119

breast cancer, 55T, 260T, 312T, 313T

adoptive cell transfers and, 756, 757T

age and, 416–417

alkylating agents for, 786, 786T

anoikis and morphogenesis, 204F

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

anti-cancer therapies, selection of, 786–788

anti-PARP drug and, 543F

APOBEC cytosine deaminases expression, 508S

BRCA1 and *BRCA2,* cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–118, 166

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

chemotherapy for, 783F, 794T, 804S–805S, 814S

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

cyclin E and, 317–318

cyclins, transcription factors and, 286S

detection and diagnosis, 16, 783S, 786

DNA methylation and, 252

DNA mutations, density of, 490F

ductal carcinoma, progression of, 45F, 47F

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

EGF-R antagonist drug targets, 841–847, 845S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and stem cell state, 645–646

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 626F

familial syndromes, 511T

fibrin bundles in, 571F

gene amplification in, *SS4.4*

gene expression arrays, 18F, 19F

growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

HER2/neu oncogene, 11F

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

HOTAIR lncRNA, 26

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

inherited defects in caretaker genes, *SS12.12*

integrins and, 158S

intravasation and, 640F, 641, 642F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614F, 627F

invasive ductal carcinoma, 32F

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands and, 153–154

lymph nodes, metastasis and, 659–662, 660S

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581, 640F, 659F

mammography, 52S

metastasis, 559F, 610, 637–643, 648–650, 668F, 669F, 677, 684S

metastasis, bone, 679–685, 684S

mitogenesis and, 229S

monoclonal antibody therapies, 748–750, 750S

mortality rates, 782

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

oncogenes and, 105, 106T, 107F, 447–448

p53 gene mutations and, 327

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

Progression-Free Survival, 317

Ras signaling and, 219

relapse, 674

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

STAT3 protein, 201

steroid hormones as tumor promoters, 459–460

stromal components in, 550–551

surgery and stimulation of tumor growth, 567S

surgical treatment, decisions about, *SS17.2*

telomerase, human tumor development and, 407

triple-negative breast cancers (TNBCs), 754

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

tumor cell signaling networks, 577F

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tumor stem cells, 437–438

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 207–208

Brentuximab, 752T

Brg-1 protein, 411

bridging proteins, 177, 180F, 184, 185F

intra- and *inter*-molecular bridges, 183S

mitogenesis, 229S

SH2 domain of Src protein, 183S

wound healing, 568F

brochioalveolar, 843

Bromo domain, 184T

bronchoscopy, 423F

BTAK oncogene, 113T

BTK protein, 184T

B-type cyclins (B1, B2), 283–284, 292S

Bubr1/Bub1 gene, *SS12.11*

Burkitt, Denis, *SS4.7*

Burkitt's lymphoma, 77, 114–115, 121T, *SS4.7*

Burnet, Macfarlane, 697, 737

BWS/CDKN1C gene, 248T

bystander effect, 751

C

C2H2-type transcription repressors, 636

C3b protein, 746–748

C3H10T1/2 cells, 103–104

cab1-erbB2-grb7 oncogene, 113T

cachexia, 847–848

cadherin, 638F

cadherin 5, 621

E-cadherin, 578S, 617F

cathepsin B protease, degradation by, 640F, 641, 642F

CDH1 gene inactivation, cancer cells and, 621

epithelial and mesenchymal states, 638F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614F, 647, 651F

tumor invasiveness and, 618F–619F, 620–622

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

wound healing, 568F, 569

E-cadherin-associated proteins, 206F

N-cadherin, 617F

tumor invasiveness and, 621–622

wound healing, 569

Caenorhabditis elegans, 2, 24–26, 349, 350F, 376–377

café au lait spots, 254, 255F

CagA gene, 95

CagA pathogenicity island (PAI), 94F, 95, *SS3.9*

CagA protein, 94F

CAK (CDK-activating kinase), 292S

calicheamicins, 751F, 752T

California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, 69, *SS3.3*

cAMP (cyclic AMP), 151–153, *SS8.3*

camptothecins, 751F, 752T

cancer, nature of, 31–32

chemical agents as cause of cancer, 56–57, *SS2.6*

detection and diagnosis, 782–783, 783S

epidemiology and demographics, 855–857

etiologic mechanisms, 54

incidence and mortality rates, 51–54, 52S

lifestyle factors and, 53–56, 63F

mutagens, 57–61, 61S, *SS2.6–SS2.9*

myofibroblasts and cancer progression, *SS13.5*

pathogenesis, 62

progressive development, 44–49

synopsis and prospects, 61–62, 63T

tumor classification scheme, 46, 47–49, *SS2.4*

tumor formation in normal tissues, 32–34

tumor promoters, 61

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51, *SS2.5*

See also infectious disease, cancer as

cancer, use of term, 46

Cancer Cell Line Encyclopedia (CCLE), 816

cancer cell lines, 815–819, 815S, 817S

cancer cells

chromosome alterations in, 9, 10S–11S

diagnostic markers, 16

germ line, 9, 12

mutation rates, 6

soma, 9, 12

tumor suppressor genes, *SS2.5*

cancer clusters, 533S

Cancer Dependency Map (DepMap), 815S

cancer genome. *See* genome, cancer

The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA), 529

cancer immunotherapy. *See* immunotherapy

cancer of unknown primary (CUP), 44, *SS2.3–SS2.4*

cancer stem cell (CSC), 439–442, 540, 604

anti-cancer therapy, synopsis and prospects, 860–861

anti-cancer therapy evaluation and, 841S

Gleevec, limits of, 839, 840F

limiting dilution analysis (LDA) of, 644, 645F

multi-step tumor progression, overview of, *SS11.6*

papilloma growth and, *SS11.7*

cancer treatments. *See* anti-cancer therapies

canonical histones, 22

canonical pathways, *SS6.8*

canonical Wnt signaling, 151

canstatin, *SS13.8*

capecitabine, 754

capillaries

angiogenesis, 557, 558F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

intravasation, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615

leakiness in tumors, 570–571, 585–588, *SS13.7*

tumor access to circulation networks, 582–588, 586S, 587S

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

capsid, 70S

carbohydrate metabolism, 129–132

carboplatin, 786T, 795F, 796

carcinogenic chemicals, 56–57, *SS2.6*

Ames test, 57–60, 61S, *SS2.8*

from endogenous biochemical processes, 491–494, 493S

exogenous mutagens and their metabolites, 494–500, 500S

mutagens, 57–61, 61S, *SS2.6–SS2.9*

nonmutagenic agents and tumorigenesis, 453–458, 458S

procarcinogens, 496–497

synthetic chemicals, 500S

ultimate carcinogens, 496–497

carcinoma

adenocarcinoma, 36, 36T, 37F, 571–572, 580F

bacterial cancers and, 94–95, 94F

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT), 42–43

epithelial tissue, tumor formation in, 35–36, 37F

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

progression of, 45–49

squamous cell carcinoma, 36, 37F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

viral causative agents, 101

See also specific tissue or organ carcinoma

carcinoma-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), 572, 573F

cell signaling and invasiveness, 637–643

stromal cells and tumorigenesis, 575–576, 577F

caretakers

drug targets, selection of, 805

inherited defects in, *SS12.12*

tumor suppressor genes as, 268, 514

CAR-NK, immunotherapy and, 776

CAR T (chimeric antigen receptor) cells

adoptive cell transfer and, 754–757, 756S

MHC-dependent antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

T-cell exhaustion and, 773S

cascade model, 675S

Cas NS-1 virus, 89T

CASP8 gene, 251T

Caspase-5 gene, 513T

caspase 9, 358–359, 358F

Akt/PKB effects and, 195T

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 364T, 365–366

caspases (cysteine aspartyl-specific proteases), 358–359

apoptosis, regulation of, 340–341

cancer cells, apoptosis inactivation mechanisms, 364T, 365–366

intrinsic and extrinsic apoptotic programs, 360–362, 361S, 363F

catalytic clefts, drug targets and, 807–811, 812F

catenins

as drug targets, 810–811

tumor invasiveness and, 618F–619F, 620F, 626F

wound healing, 568F

α-catenin, 568F

β-catenin, 90F, 224, 261–265, 426S, 620F, 810–811, *SS6.7*

in mice, 402–403

tumor invasiveness and, 618F–619F

WNT-medulloblastoma, 586S

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208, 450

wound healing, 568F

γ-catenin, 620F

cathepsin B protease, 640F, 641, 642F

cats

feline leukemia virus, 88

feline sarcoma virus, 88

oncogenes and, 88–89

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

CBFb / MYH11 oncogene, 120T

CBL gene, 248T

Cbl protein, 184T

CBP gene, 248T

c-Cbl protein, 140S

CCND1 gene, *SS8.3*

CD4 T cells, 714, 715S, 716S–717S, 725–727

CD8 T cells, 714, 715S, 716S–717S, 730S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 743S–744S

CD19 antigen, 760–761, 769–771, 775–776

CD20 protein, 721, 748–750, 750S

CD22 protein, 752T

CD28 ligands, 728–730, 730S

CD30 protein, 752T

CD33 protein, 752T

CD47 protein, 723

CD79b protein, 752T

CD80 ligands, 728–730, 730S

CD86 ligands, 728–730, 730S

CDC2, 283

CDC25A, 292S

CDC25B, 292S

CDC25C, 292S

CDC25 protein, 184T

CDC42 protein, 196, 196S, 198–200

CDH1 gene, 248T, 251T, 621

CDK (cyclin-dependent kinase), 113T

CDK inhibitors, cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

cell cycle regulation and, 282–286, 286S

drug targets, selection of, 805F

$p21^{Cip1}$ protein, inhibition by, 343–344

phosphorylation and activity control, 292S

structures of, *SS8.2*

CDK1, 283–284, 292S

CDK1/CDC2, 343–344

CDK2, 283, 292S, 311–315, 343–344, 812F

CDK4, 283, 286, 378–380, 812

CDK4/6, 286, 286S, 311–315, *SS8.3*

CDK4 gene, 305

cdk4-mdm2-sas-gli oncogene, 113T

CDK6, 283, 283F, 286

cdk6 oncogene, 113T

CDK-activating kinase (CAK), 292S

CDK inhibitors (CKIs), 287–291, 292S, 378–380, *SS8.7*

CDKN1A gene, 287, 343

CDKN1B gene, 287

CDKN1C gene, 287

CDKN2A gene, 246F, 247

CDKN2A/p16^{INK4A} gene, 251T

CDKN2B gene, 246F, 247

CDKN2B/p15^{INK4B} gene, 251T

cDNA (complementary DNA)

ARF (alternate reading frame)-encoded genes and, 338–339

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

CDX2 gene, 513T

C/EBPβ transcription factor, 286S

celecoxib, *SS11.14*

cell adhesion receptors, 202–204

cell-autonomous processes, 383

cell cycle

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling, 193–198

anti-cancer therapies and, 596, 802–803, 804S–805S

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell generations, regulation of, 376–378, 383–384, 394–395, *SS10.1*

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

checkpoints, anti-cancer therapy strategies, 801–803, 804S–805S

clones, genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

histone modification and, 23

mutagenicity tests, *SS2.9*

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 341–345

Rb gene encoded protein function and, 253

regulation of, 276–280

STAT proteins and, 201

tumor formation in normal tissue, 32–34

vertebrate cells, 278–280

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

See also cell cycle clock; cell immortalization; cell signaling; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

cell cycle clock, 275–276, *SS8.1–SS8.10*

anti-cancer therapies and, 596

CDK inhibitors, role of, 287–291, 292S

cell cycle, overview of, 276–280

cyclins and cyclin-related kinases, role of, 282–286, 286S

E2F transcription factors, pRB cell cycle regulation and, 297–300, 301F

G_1 phase, growth regulating signals in, 280–282

Myc protein, regulation of proliferation and differentiation, 302–307, 302S, 304S

plasticity of, *SS8.5*

positive-feedback loops in, 300, 301F

pRb and differentiation controls, 309–311

pRb function, in human cancer, 311–315

pRb phosphorylation, mitogen signaling summary, 301–302

pRb phosphorylation, R-point transitions and, 292–297, 294S

synopsis and prospects, 315–318

TGF-β, blocking of cycle progression, 307–309

See also specific protein names

cell death. *See* anoikis; apoptosis

cell differentiation, 17–20

C/EBPβ transcription factor, 286S

cells-of-origin, tumors and, 428–429

dedifferentiated cells, 44

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

human tissues, organization of, 480–483

stem cell hierarchies, 439–441, 439S

telomerase expression and, 392

transdifferentiation, 42–43

cell division, defined, 277, 277F

cell fate, 149, 149F

cell fusion technique, 234–236

cell growth

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198

defined, 277

regulation of, 276–280

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F

See also tumor suppressor genes (TSG)

cell immortalization, 375–376

cell generations, regulation of, 376–378, 383–384, *SS10.1*

cell lines, 378–380

crisis and, 383–388

human cells resistance to, 448–451, 449S

synopsis and progress, 409–412

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

telomerase, telomere regeneration and, 391–396, 394S

telomerase, tumor development and, 406–409, 408S

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT), 399–401

telomeres, molecular structure of, 389–391

telomeres, role in mice, 401–406

tumor formation and, 380–384, 382S, 383S

cell lines, 378–380

defined, 380

human cancer cell lines, 559

as models for drug candidates, 815–819, 815S, 817S

stromal support and, 560S

cell membrane

EGF receptor, structure of, 133–134

Ras protein, control of inositol lipids and Akt/PKB kinase, 189–198, 196S

See also cell signaling

cell motility. *See* motility

cell proliferation

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198, *SS6.6*

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

cancer and cell signaling, 473F

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–118

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

defined, 277

dual address signaling pathways, 211–217

Erk signaling, 94F

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 208–211

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

growth factors and, 127–128

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

heterotypic signaling and, 553–559

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

insertional mutagenesis and, 92S, 93T

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 201

myc oncogene activation mechanisms, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

Myc protein, role of, 302–307, 302S, 304S

PI3K activation, 192

pRb and cell cycle regulation, 309–311

PTEN gene function and, 198

Raf protein and, 199

regulation of, 126–129, 128S

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 90–92

senescence and telomeres, 397S

signal transduction, 16S

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

telomerase expression and, 392

in tissue culture, 77, 78F

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51

tumor suppressor genes, *SS1.3*

Wnt factors and, 151

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F, 207–208

See also cell cycle clock; cell immortalization; cell signaling; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry; tumor suppressor genes (TSG)

cells, in human body

number of, 479–480

tissues, organization of, 480–483

cell signaling, 125–126, *SS5.1–SS6.9*

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

animal models, value in research, 26–27

autocrine signaling loop, 136F, 137F, *SS5.4*

auto-stimulatory signaling loop, 136F, 137F

B-Raf mutations and melanoma, 852–855

cancer and, 13–14

cancer-associated genes and, 473F

cell proliferation, regulation of, 16S, 126–129, 128S

communication with environment, 147–153

cross-phosphorylation and, *SS5.10*

cytokine receptors, 147, 148F

drug targets, selection of, 805–807

EGF receptor functions as tyrosine kinase, 132–135

endocrine signaling, 139

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 622, 623–633, 631S

evolution, p53 protein and, 334

fusion proteins and, 145–146

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

growth factors and, 35

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

heterotypic signaling, 553–559

inside-out signaling, 158

integrin receptors, 154–159, 158S

juxtracrine signaling, 136F, 137F, 148

Notch receptor, 148–149

nuclear receptors, 153–154

oncogene collaboration, 445–448

paracrine signaling, 139

Patched receptor, 149–150

PP2A enzyme complexes, 449–450, 449S

proteases and, 16S

protozoan roots of, *SS5.3*

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

signaling pathways, organization of, 223–229, 229S

signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223, 450–451

somatic mutations, multi-step tumor progression and, 426S

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

stem cell maintenance and, 440S–441S

synopsis and prospects, 162–167

Tax oncoprotein, 93–94

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S, *SS5.6*

tumor initiation and promotion, 458S

vicious cycle of, 684

Wnt factors, 150–151

See also cell cycle clock; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry; tumor cell signaling networks; specific protein names

cells-of-origin, 23, 428–429, *SS2.3–SS2.4*

stem cells as, 483–485, 484S, 485S

cell transformation, 69, 71–72

cellular oncogenes. *See* oncogenes

cellular senescence, 332

Central Dogma, 24

central nervous system, tumor formation in, 39–42, 689–691, 692F

centromeres, 80, 318F, 385–386

centrosomes

BRCA1 and *BRCA2*, cancer susceptibility and, 516–517

cell cycle regulation, cyclins and, 282–286, 286S, 287F

chromosome number, alterations in, 525–527

HPV and aneuploidy, *SS12.10*

cerebellum, tumor formation, 39–42

cervical carcinoma, 101, 121T, 138T, 312T, 361S, 436F

adoptive cell transfers and, 756, 757T

DNA methylation and, 252F

HPV vaccinations and, 738–742

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614F

lymph nodes, metastasis and, 659–662, 660S

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

Myc protein and, 302–307, 302S, 304S

Notch protein and, 215

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 293–297, 294S

RNA vaccine therapy for, 743S–744S

cervix

dysplasia, 46F

HPV (human papillomavirus) and, *SS3.5*

tumor formation, 37F

Cetuximab (Erbitux), 600T, 843

chain-terminating nucleotides, 530S

CHD5 gene, 248T

checkpoint inhibition therapies, 761–768, 765S

indicators of success, *SS16.2*

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

checkpoints (checkpoint controls), 279–282

See also immune checkpoints; R point (restriction point)

chemical agents, cancer risk and, 56–57, *SS2.6*

DNA repair mechanisms, 504–506

KEAP1 protein, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

mutagens, 57–61, 61S, *SS2.6–SS2.9*

chemokine receptors, 153

chemokines, 211, 462T

leukocytes and, 578, 579F

neoangiogenesis and, 556–557, 576, 577F

regulatory T cells and, 727

chemo-refractory tumor cells, 799

chemotactic factors, 578

chemotherapeutics, 793–796

adjuvants and neoadjuvants, 799

cancer stem cells and, 441–442

chemo-refractory tumor cells and, 799

drug-resistance and, 797–800, 826–827, 857–860, 860S

drug targets, selection of, 803, 805–811, 807S, 809S

limitations of, 782

mechanisms of action, 796–800, 798S

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, 799

remission and, 802

side effects of, 798–799, 798S, 821

See also anti-cancer therapies

chewing tobacco, 466T

CHFR (checkpoint with forkhead and RING finger) domains, *SS12.11*

Chfr gene, *SS12.11*

chickens, *SS3.1*

chicken embryo fibroblasts (CEFs), 130F

c-*src* gene, 86–88

macrophages, 447T

Marek’s disease virus (MDV), 82

MC29 myelocytomatosis virus, 88, 108–117, 112S, 116S–117S

oncogenes and, 89T

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92, 186

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

See also Rous sarcoma virus (RSV)

chimeric antigen receptor cells. *See* CAR T (chimeric antigen receptor) cells

chimerize, 257S

ChIP (chromatin immunoprecipitation), 286S, 342F

CHK1 gene, 513T

Chk1 kinase, 334, 334F, 335S, 336–340, 338S

Chk2 kinase, 333–334, 335S, 336–340, 338S

Chlamydomonas reinhardtii, 316

chlorambucil, 786T

cholangial carcinoma, 756, 757T

cholangiocarcinoma, 739T

chondrocyte(s), tumor formation, 37T

chondromodulin-I, *SS13.8*

chondrosarcoma, 37T

CHOP (cyclophosphamide, hydroxydoxorubicin, oncovin, prednisone), 749

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

chromagenic substances, *SS2.4*

chromatids

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

chromosome number, alterations in, 525–527

dicentric, 387F, 388, 388F

double minutes (DMs) and, 11F

gene alterations and tumorigenesis, *SS12.11*

telomeres and crisis, 386–388

chromatin, 184T

cell senescence and, 345–348

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

structure of, 21–23

transcription factors and gene expression, 20–24

chromatin-associated proteins, 188

chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP), 286S, 342F

chromosomal instability (CIN), 317, 524–528, *SS7.6*

chromosomes

breakage-fusion-bridge (BFB) cycle, 387F, 388

breakpoint, 114–115

cancer cells, alterations in, 9, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

Chromosome 1, 6

Chromosome 2, 114–115

Chromosome 5q, 246F, 247F, 259, 261S, 425

Chromosome 8, 114–115, 528

Chromosome 9, 246F, 247

Chromosome 9q34, 118–119

Chromosome 11, 435, 436F

Chromosome 13, 242–244, 246F, 247F, *SS1.3*

Chromosome 14, 114–115, 246F, 247F

Chromosome 15, 246F, 247F

Chromosome 17, 245, 246F, 425, 435, 436F

Chromosome 17p13, 327

Chromosome 18, 245, 246F, 425

Chromosome 21, 246F, 247F

Chromosome 22, 114–115, 246F, 247F

Chromosome 22q11, 118–119, 120T

cytologic maps, *SS1.1*

double minutes (DMs), 112S

gene behavior and, 6, 8

haploid, 6, 8

hemizygosity, 240–242

illegitimate recombination, 516

loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 240–242

mitotic checkpoints, breakdown of, *SS8.1*

nondisjunction, 241F, 242

nonrandom amplifications and deletions on, 106, 108F

number of, alterations in, 524–528

p arm and q arm, *SS1.1*

Philadelphia chromosome, 57, 58F, 484, 830–831, 833–834, 838

proto-oncogene activation and, 115–116, 116S–117S

Rb gene and loss of heterozygosity in tumors, 242–244

regions frequently amplified, 113T

restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) markers, 245–247

standard notation system, 118

structural alterations, cancer and, 520–524

telomeres and, 384–388

translocations and, 114–115

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51

tumor suppressor genes, summary table, 248T–249T

See also loss of heterozygosity (LOH); sex chromosomes; X chromosome; Y chromosome

chromothripsis, 406, 523–524, 523F

chronic B-cell lymphoma, 115T

chronic inflammation, 408S, 466T

chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), 786T, 794T, 828, 829F

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 39, 39T, 40F, 57, 58F

BCR-ABL oncogene and, 525

blast crisis, 311S, 839

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 118–119, 120T

disease subtypes and drug development, *SS17.3*

drug targets for, 808F, 816

Gleevec, treatment with, 833–835, 839, 840F

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

Philadelphia (Ph^1) chromosome and, 484

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

chronic ulcerative colitis, 466T

chymotryptic activity, 848, 848F

cigarette smoking, 54–55, 417S, 418, 462

chromosomal translocations, 523F

chronic inflammation, effects of, 493S

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

mutagens in, 496–497

tumor mutation burden (TMB), 531

cilia, 14F

ciliates, as telomerase source, *SS10.6*

CIMP (CpG island methylator phenotype), 250

CIN (chromosomal instability), 317, 524–528, *SS7.6*

CIP2A protein, 449S

Circos plot, 523F

circRNA (small circular RNA), 26

circulating tumor cells (CTCs), 650

intravasation, 662–667, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

lifetimes of, 665S–666S

macrophages and, 723

circulatory system

intravasation, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F, 640F, 641, 642F

ciRS-7, 26

cisplatin, 796, 797–800, 798S

13-*cis*-retinoic acid (13cRA), 802

citric acid cycle, 467–470

CKIs (CDK inhibitors), 287–291, 292S, 378–380, *SS8.7*

cladribine, 794T, 797T

clinical outcomes, pathogenesis and, *SS17.2*

clinical trials

objective response in, 849

Phase I, 821–822, 823F

Phase II and III, 824–826, 825S

CLL (chronic lymphocytic leukemia), 786T, 794T, 828, 829F

C-lobe, Src protein, 177–182, 179S, 183S

clonal expansion, of B- and T-lymphocytes, 709

clonal hematopoiesis, 432

clonal succession, 429–431, 429F

tumor stem cells and, 437–443, 439S, 441S

clones, 9, 12

cancer cells, intra-tumor diversification, 432–436, 437S

clonal expansion rate, tumor promoters and, 458

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

foci and, 72

gene cloning techniques, 27–28, *SS1.4*

genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

of *Rb* gene, 244

transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51, 380–384, 382S, 383S

See also tumorigenesis

Clonorchis sinensis, 466T, 738–740

clot formation, 127–128

c-Met-amplified tumors, 847

CML. *See* chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)

c-*myc* gene, 28S, 90–92, 113T

Burkitt's lymphoma and, 114–115

Epstein-Barr virus and, *SS4.8*

proto-oncogene activation and, 108–111

c-Myc protein, 302–307, 302S, 304S

CNAs (copy number alterations), 143F

CNPase, 41F

CNVs (copy number variations), 533–534

co-activators, low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

coal tar, 56–57, *SS2.7*

Cockayne syndrome (CS), 510

co-dominant alleles, 3

cognate receptor, 184

cohesin complex, *SS12.11*

co-inhibitory interactions, 728–730, 730S

colcemide, 796

colitis, 466T

collagen

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

stromal cell signals and invasiveness, 637–643

tumor cell signaling and, 572, 573F

collagenase-1, 567T

collagen fibers, 13F, 155T, *SS5.6*

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

collagen matrix, tumor formation, 32F

collagen type I, 653, 654F

collagen type IV, 653, 654F

collective invasion, 613–615

collective metastasis, 662F, 664

colon

crypts, 261–265, *SS7.6*

intestinal stem cells, differentiation of, 261

polyps, 47F

colon carcinoma, 105

adenomatous polyposis coli (APC), 259–265

age and, 416–417

anti-cancer therapies, 596

chromosomal alterations in, 242

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

drug targets, selection of, 811

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

familial syndromes, 511T

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S, 430

gut microbiome as tumor promoter, *SS11.12*

hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 489F, 490F, 510–514

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

histopathology of tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

incidence of and risk factors, 431

liver metastasis, 559F

mortality rates, 782

Notch and, 215

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

PolD1 and *PolE* gene defects in, 513

receptor gene mutations, germ line transmission of, 146S

red meat and, *SS12.3–SS12.4*

RFLP markers and, 245–247, 248T, 249T

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 444

Src mutants and, 183S

stromal components in, 550–551

telomerase, human tumor development and, 407

telomere collapse and, 408S

tumor invasiveness, 618F–619F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T, 249T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

See also colorectal cancer; familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)

colonic crypts

histopathology of tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

stem cells in, 481–483

colonic polyposis, 511T

colonization, metastasis and, 667, 669–677, 675S

adaptations of, 677–678, 678S

colonoscopy, 421

colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1), 578, 579F

tumor-associated macrophages and, 637–643

color blindness, 8

colorectal cancer (CRC), *SS4.4*

adoptive cell transfers and, 756, 757T

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 220F, 221

chemotherapy for, 794T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

histopathology of tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

HOTAIR lncRNA, 26

immature myeloid cells (iMCs), 581–582

invasion-metastasis cascade, 613F

lymph nodes, metastasis and, 659–662, 660S

MGMT gene silencing in, 503–504

MMR (mismatch repair) enzyme defects, 512

mortality rates, 782

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

NSAIDs and, 462–463

pRb function in human cancer, 312T

ras oncogene activation, 111T

somatic mutations in, *SS11.3*

stromal components in, 550–551

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 580F

tumor stem cells, 438

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

See also colon carcinoma; rectal carcinoma

colorectal tumors, RFLP markers, 245–247, 248T, 249T

Comings, David E., 125, 275

commensal bacterial species, *SS16.2*

compartments, tissues and, 480

complementation, genetic, 176–177, 509–510, 509S

complement-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (CDCC)

antibody-drug conjugates, 750–754

breast cancer therapies, 749–750, 750S

complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), 746–748

complement-dependent phagocytosis (CDP), 746–748

complement system, monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748

complete carcinogens, 465

complete response, drug therapy and, 835

compound libraries, *SS17.6*

conditional deletion, 516

cones (eye), 41F

confluent cultures, 71–72

connective tissue

tumor formation, 32F, 36–42

wound healing, 127–128

constant region (C regions), 706, 707F, *SS4.3*

constitutive level, 108, 135–138

constitutive proteasome, *SS7.5*

contact inhibition, 71–72

E-cadherin gene expression and, 621

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 218F

Raf protein kinase and loss of inhibition, 189

Src protein and, 129–132

tumor invasiveness and, 625, 626F

tumor viruses, changes in cell phenotype, 77–79

contralateral metastases, 677, 678S

convergent evolution, 293

copy number alterations (CNAs), 143F

copy number variations (CNVs), 533–534

co-repressors, 153–154

core serum response (CSR) genes, 574F

corn, 466T

Costello syndrome, 269S

co-stimulatory receptors, 730S

counterstains, *SS2.1*

Cowden’s disease, 248T

COX-2 (cyclooxygenase-2), 464, *SS11.14*

CpG dinucleotides, 23–24

deamination reactions, 491–492

methylation and tumor formation, 427, 428–429

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, methylation and, 247, 249–252

CpG island methylator phenotype (CIMP), 250

CRC. *See* colon carcinoma; colorectal cancer (CRC)

Cre recombinase, 257S, 258F

Crick, Francis, 12

crisis, 379–380, 383–388

senescence and telomeres, 397S

telomerase and emergence from crisis, 391–396, 394S, 398–399, 399S

CRISPR/Cas9, 535S–537S, *SS1.5*

Crk protein, 184, 185F

cross-presentation, 717, 718F

CRS (cytokine release syndrome), 761, 762F

cryoablation, 236

crypts, 261–265, 451, *SS7.6*, *SS11.9*

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

stem cells in, 481–483

CSC. *See* cancer stem cell (CSC)

Csk (C-terminal Src kinase), 812F

CSN2 protein, 647S

c-*src* (cellular *src*) gene, 86–88, 95–96, 107, *SS4.4*

c-Src oncoprotein, 182, 183S

CTC. *See* circulating tumor cells (CTCs)

CTLA-4, 728–730, 730S, 763–768, 765S, 776

ctla4 gene, 728–730, 730S

CT (computed X-ray tomography) scans, 610F

Cul1 protein, 305

CUP. *See* cancer of unknown primary (CUP)

cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma, 854, *SS9.2*

cutaneous T-cell lymphoma, 794T

CycD1 gene, 93T

CycD2 gene, 93T

cyclin-CDK complexes, 811, *SS8.2*

cyclin D1, 188, 190F, 205, 206F

cyclin D1-exp1-hst1-ems1 oncogene, 113T

cyclin-dependent kinase. *See* CDK (cycline-dependent kinase)

cyclin E oncogene, 113T

cyclin G-associated kinase (GAK), 140S

cyclins, *SS7.5*

A-type cyclins (A1, A2), 283–286, 286S, 287F

B-type (B1, B2), 283–284, 292S

CDK inhibitors, cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

cell cycle regulation and, 282–286, 286S, 287F

cyclin-CDK complexes, *SS8.2*

D1 cyclin, mitogenic signals on, *SS8.4*

D-type (D1, D2, D3), 283–286, 286S, 287F, *SS8.3*

E-type (E1, E2), 283–286, 286S, 287F, 300, 301F

functions of, 286S

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

pRb phosphorylation, control of, 295–297

cyclobutane pyrimidine dimers, 344

cycloheximide, 174, 175, 331

cyclophosphamide, 749, 786, 795F, 797–800, 798S, 799

CYLD gene, 248T

cylindromatosis, 248T

cynomolgus monkeys, 74

Cyp1A1 gene, *SS12.4*

cystitis, 466T

cytidine, 23–24, 24F, 508S

cytoarchitecture, 13, 13F, 14F

cytochrome *c*, apoptosis and, 352–359

cytochrome P450 enzymes (CYPs), 496–500

cytokeratins, 13F, 428F, 614F, 620–622

cytokine receptors, 147, 148F

cytokine release syndrome (CRS), 761, 762F, 771

cytokines, 462T

$CD4^+$ T-cell subtypes, 715S

cell senescence and, 345–348

cell signaling, 147, 148F

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 219–221

cytotoxic T lymphocytes, 765S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

immune checkpoints, 732

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

macrophages and tumor development, 722–725, 726F

natural killer cells, role of, 721–722, 722S, 724F, 725F

neoangiogenesis and, 556–557

as oncoprotein, 93T

cytokinesis, regulation of, 276–280

cytologically abnormal, 44

See also dysplasia (dysplastic tissue)

cytologic maps, *SS1.1*

cytopathic effects, viruses, 67, 74, 75F

cytoplasm

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 136–138

immediate early genes, 173, 174F, 176S

cytoplasmic signaling circuitry, 171–172, *SS6.1–SS6.9*

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

dual address pathways, 211–217

feedback controls for, 218–221

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 208–211

Hippo circuit, 217, 218F

JAK-STAT pathway, 200–201

organization of pathways, 223–229, 229S

Ras protein, complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

Ras protein, control of inositol lipids and Akt/PKB kinase, 189–198, 196S

Ras protein, downstream signaling pathways of, 184–189

Ras protein, Ral-A and Ral-B interactions, 198–200

RTK signaling, overview of, *SS6.2*

signaling pathways, overview of, 172–175, 176S

signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

synopsis and prospects, 221–229, 229S

tyrosine phosphorylation controls in, 177–182, 179S, 183S

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

See also cell cycle clock; cell signaling; specific protein names

cytosine

deamination reactions, 491–492

DNA methyltransferases, 23–24

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, 247, 249–252, 253F

cytoskeleton, 13, 13F, 14F

apoptosis and, 359

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

epithelial cell sheets, 204–208, 621–622

filopodia, 196–197

integrins, clustering of, 156–159, 158S

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

serum stimulation, effects of, *SS6.1*

small G protein and, 196S

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

wound healing, 568F

cytosol, 181

cytotoxic drug therapies, 599S, 793–796

antibody-drug conjugates, 750–754

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, 799

cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs, T_c), 714, 715S, 716S–717S

apoptotic programs, 360–362, 361S, 363f

checkpoint inhibition therapies and, 761–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

dendritic cell activation of, 714–715, 717, 718F

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 743F, 745

D

DAB2IP gene, 260T

dacarbazine, 786T, 797–800, 798S

DAG, 181

dandelion effect, 841S

Darwin, Charles, 4–5, 415, 429

Darwinian evolution

genetics and, 4–6

intra-tumor diversification and, 432–436, 437S

purifying selection, 435

tumor development and, 429–431, *SS11.8*

tumor stem cells and, 437–443, 439S, 441S

Dasatinib (Sprycel), 600T, 837–838

daughter cells

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

chromosome number, alterations in, 525–527

telomeric DNA and, 390–391

D-CDK4/6 complexes, 287–291, 292S, 295–297

DCIS. *See* ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS)

deamination, mutations from, 491–492, 493S, 507, 508S

“death by neglect,” 362

death-inducing signaling complex (DISC), 360–362, 361S, 363F

death receptors, apoptosis and, 359–362, 361S, 363F

debulking of tumors, 702

decatenation checkpoint, 279–280

decoy receptor, 680, 682F, 683F

dedifferentiated cells, 44, 441S, 485S

dek/can oncogene, 120T

delayed early genes, 175, 176S

Delbrück, Max, 171

Delta, Notch receptor, 148–149, 215

delta retrovirus, 739T

demineralized bone, 679

demographics, cancer incidence and mortality, 51–54, 52S, 855–857

denaturation, 73

dendogram, 18F, 19F

dendritic cells (DCs), 40F

as antigen-presenting cells, 712–713

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

immune checkpoints and, 728–730, 730S

immune system, overview of, 704–707

regulatory T cells and, 725–727

T cell activation by, 714–715, 717, 718F

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

de novo (new) protein synthesis, 174

density inhibition, 71–72

deoxy-5-methylcytosine (d5mC), 494F

deoxyguanosine (dG), 503F

deoxythymidine glycol, 493–494, 493S

DepMap (Cancer Dependency Map), 815S

depurination, 492–493, 504–506

depyrimidination, 492–493

deregulated expression, 118

derivatization, 812, 814S

dermis, 464

dermomyotome, 618

Desert Hh, 150

desmoplastic stroma, 572, 573F

detoxification, 60

KEAP1 protein, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

de-ubiquitylating enzymes (DUBs), *SS8.8*

developmental biology, 17–20, 410

dGTP, *SS12.2*

diacylglycerol (DAG), 190, 209, 458S

diagnostic bias, 51, 52S

diagnostic procedures

cancer detection and, 782–783, 783S

clinical outcomes and pathogenesis, *SS17.2*

screening protocols, 424

therapy development and, 784–792, 789S, 792S

diapedesis, 667S

dibenz*[a,h]*anthracene, *SS2.7*

dicentric chromatid, 387F, 388

Dicer processing enzyme, 25

diet, cancer and, 61, 95, *SS2,8*

differentiation, 17–20, *SS8.9*

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 801–803, 804S–805S

autocrine signaling loops, 140

CKIs and, *SS8.7*

dedifferentiated cells, 44

E3 ubiquitin ligases, *SS8.8*

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

feedforward loops, 219–221

Myc protein, role of, 302–307, 302S, 304S

pRb, regulation and, 309–311

transdifferentiation, 42–43

See also cell cycle clock

diffuse B-cell lymphoma, 115T, 748–749, 788–789, 790F

dihydrofolate synthetase, 300

dimeric, defined, 141

dimeric ligands, 141–147, 145S, 146S, *SS5.5*

dimerization of kinases, *SS6.5*

7,12-dimethylbenz*[a]*-anthracene (DMBA), 454, *SS2.7*

2,3-dimethyl-4-aminoazobenzene, *SS2.7*

diploid, 3, 6, 8

directly oncogenic, 738

discoidin domain receptors, 155, *SS5.6*

disseminated tumor cells (DTCs), 665, 671–677

DKK1 gene, 251T

DM1, 752–754

Dmp1 gene, 260S

OceanofPDF.com

DMs (double minutes), 11F, 11S, 112, 112S, 335–340, 338S

DNA

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

Central Dogma of, 24

copy choice, 240–242

damaged DNA, p53-dependent senescence and, 345–348

damaged DNA, p53 protein repair of, 341–345

enhancers, 20–21

gene cloning techniques, *SS1.4*

gene conversion, 240–242

genetic polymorphisms, 5–6

genomic libraries, 27–28

genotype and phenotype, 12–20, 16S, 17S

“junk DNA,” 5

mutagenic processes, categories of, 486

PCR mapping of, *SS7.3*

Southern and Northern blot techniques, *SS4.3*

structure of, 12

telomerase, telomere regeneration and, 391–396, 394S

telomeres, molecular structure of, 389–391

transcription, proto-oncogene activation and, 107–111

transcription factors and gene expression, 20–24

transfection, for oncogene detection, 102–104

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, 247, 249–252, 253F

tumor viruses, integration with host DNA, 79–82

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745

viruses, structures of, 70S

See also genome, cancer

DNA adducts, 496F, 497, 503–504, 506, 507

DNA alkyltransferase, 503–504

DNA-binding domains (DBDs)

E2F transcription factors and, 297–300, 298F, 299F, 301F

p53 and repair of damaged DNA, 341–345

DNA-damaging (genotoxic) agents, 797T

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 803, 804S–805S

p53 protein induction and, 332–333

DNA glycosylases, 505F, 506

DNA hybridization, gene cloning techniques, 27–28

DNA ligase, 385–386, *SS12.6*

DNA markers, cancer cells, 664–665

DNA methyltransferases, 23–24, 249–252, 253F

DNA microarrays, *SS2.4*

DNA polymerases

error-prone repair, 506–507

pol-α, 300, 505F

pol-β, 507

pol-δ, 486, 488F, 505F, 512–513, 531

pol-ε, 486, 488F, 505F, 509–510, 512–513, 531

pol-κ, 507

proofreading accuracy of, 490

proofreading mechanisms, 486–490

telomerase holoenzyme subunit, 392–394, 394S

DNA probes

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

src-specific, 84–86, 85S, 86F

DNA repair

barriers to cancer formation, 424S

BRCA1 and *BRCA2,* cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

endogenous biochemical processes and, 491–494, 493S

error-prone repair, 506–507

H2A histone phosphorylation, 22–23

homology-directed repair (HDR), 517–519, *SS12.8*

inherited repair defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

mismatch repair enzymes, 486–490, 502–503

mutation repair mechanisms, 502–507, 504S, 508S, *SS12.6*

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 341–345

preneoplastic cells, prevention mechanisms, 485–490, 491F

proofreading, accuracy of, 490

See also mutations

DNA repair gene, 4, 4F

DNA replication

mutations, rates of, 6

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 344–345

primers, telomeric DNA and, 390–391

proofreading mechanisms, 486–490

rate of in humans, 479–480

See also genome, cancer; mutations

DNA sequencing

neutral mutations, 5

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 791, 792S

single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 245, 247

DNA synthesis, unscheduled, *SS2.9*

DNA transfection, 385–386

DNA tumor viruses

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 507, 508S

classification of, 76

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

p53 protein, targeting of, 361S

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 292–297, 294S

See also oncogenes

Dobzhansky, Theodosius, 415

Dolly (cloned sheep), *SS1.2*

dominant alleles, 3, 238–239, 239S

dominant-interfering mutant, 328, 329F

dominant-negative mutant, 302, 328, 329F

double minutes (DMs), 11F, 11S, 112, 112S, 335–340, 338S

double-strand break (DSB), DNA, 490, 491F, *SS4.4*

BRCA1 and *BRCA2,* cancer susceptibility and, 515–518

nonhomologous end joining, 518–519

p53 protein signaling and, 333–334, 335S

reactive oxygen species and, 493–494, 493S

Down syndrome, 484S

doxorubicin, 794T, 797–800, 798S

doxorubicin hydrochloride, 749

DPC4 gene, 249T

draining lymph nodes, 659–662, 660S, 714–715, 717, 718F

driver, gene amplification, 106, 107F, 719, 719S

driver mutations, 434F, 435

Drosophilia, 2, 634–636

chorion protein, genes for, *SS4.4*

eyeless gene, 7F

gene localization, 8F

giant eye cells, 277F

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 218F

mRNA generation, 16S

mutagens, discovery of, 57

Ras protein, complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

value in research, 26–27, 27F

Wnt-1 gene, 92S

Wnt factors, 150–151

β-catenin and, *SS6.7*

druggable targets, 807–809

drug holiday, 854

drug pumps, 485

drugs. *See* anti-cancer therapies

drugs, as tumor promoters, 466T

DSB. *See* double-strand break (DSB), DNA

dsDNA (double-stranded DNA)

retroviral genomes, 82–84

viruses, structures of, 70S, 76

D-type cyclins (D1, D2, D3), 283–286, 286S, 317

functions of, *SS8.3*

mitogenic signals and cyclin D1, *SS8.4*

Myc and D2 gene expression, 305

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

pRb phosphorylation, control of, 295–297

retinoblastoma and, *SS8.10*

dual address signaling pathways, 211–217, 212F, 213F

ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS)

anoikis and morphogenesis, 204F

cells in tumor microenvironment, 552F

progression of, 45F, 47F

Dulbecco, Renato, 69, *SS3.3*

duodenal carcinoma, 677

durvalumab, 766T

Dvorak, Harold, 549

DXd, 752T

dyskeratosis congenita, 407, *SS10.7*

dyskerin, *SS10.7*

dysplasia (dysplastic tissue), 44, 46F, 423S

dysplastic growths, 420–421

dysplastic tissue, 32F, 44, 46F

E

E1A gene, 341, 447T

E1A oncoprotein, 292–297, 294S, 304–305

E1B proteins, 361S

E2A/pbx1 oncogene, 120T

E2F1 transcription factor, 339F, 368S, *SS8.10*

E2F4 transcription factor, *SS8.9*

E2F transcription factors

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 340–341

Myc protein and, 306

pRb cell cycle regulation and, 297–300

TGF-β and cell cycle control, 308–309

E2 protein, *SS3.5*

E3 ubiquitin ligase, *SS7.5*, *SS8.8*

E6 protein, 361S, 394S, 743S–744S

E7 oncoprotein, 293–297, 294S, 743S–744S

E12/E47 (Tf3) transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636

early childhood leukemia, 444S

E-boxes, 303, 308F

EBV. *See* Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)

E-CDK2 complexes, 287–291, 292S, 296–297, 300, 301F

ECM. *See* extracellular matrix (ECM)

EcoRI, 246F

ectoderm, 36, 617–618

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

teratomas, 43–44

ectodomain, 133

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

dimeric ligands, receptor binding of, 142–144, 144S

of integrins, 155–156, 158S

Notch receptor, 148–149

ectopic gene expression, 270

ectopic sites, 43–44

ectopic tumor graft implantations, 560S

EFC-XV, *SS13.8*

effector loop

Ras effector pathways, *SS6.9*

Ras protein, downstream signaling pathways of, 185–186, 186F

effector proteins, 152, 199

effector T cells (T_{eff}), 772–773, 773S

EFS (event-free survival), 112S

EGF. *See* epidermal growth factor (EGF)

EGF-R. *See* epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R)

egg cells, 6, 8, 8F

cloning, genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

mutations causing cancer, 9, 12, 269S

teratomas, 43–44

egr-1 gene, 173T

electrophillic chemicals, 496

Elk-1 transcription factor, 188

Ellermann, Vilhelm, *SS3.1*

embryo

cell differentiation and, 17–20

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

epithelial tissue development, 36

neural crest, 42

tissues, origin of, 32–34

tumor classification scheme, 48F

embryogenesis, 7F, 7S

cell differentiation, 42

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and, 617–618, 633–637, 637S

receptor gene mutations, germ line transmission of, 146S

telomerase expression and, 392

X-inactivation, *SS1.1*

embryonic stem (ES) cells

cell lines and, 379–380

pediatric cancer and, 452–453

teratomas and, 43–44

TSG knockout mouse model, 257–258, 257S

embryonic tissue, morphogens and, 150

EML4-ALK fusion oncoprotein, 522

EML4/ALK oncogene, 120T

EMT. *See* epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT)

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs), 633–637, 637S

Mena protein and, 657, 658F, 659F, 660F

metastatic dissemination and, 646–651, 647S

stem cell state, tumors and, 643–646

encapsidate, 70S

endocrine neoplasia, 138T

endocrine signaling, 139, 551S, *SS13.1*

endocytosis, 140S, 147, 712–713, *SS7.5*

endoderm, 36

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

teratomas, 43–44

tumor classification scheme, 48F

endoduplication, *SS8.1*

endogenous carcinogenic processes, 418

endogenous proviruses, *SS4.1*

endogenous retroviral (ERV) genomes, 102, *SS4.1*

endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

endometrial carcinoma, 138T, 312T, 313T

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

MLH1 gene and, 514F

MMR (mismatch repair) enzyme defects, 512

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

PolD1 and *PolE* gene defects in, 513

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

endometrium, tumor formation in, 36T

endoplasmic reticulum (ER)

ER stress, 850S–852S

Ras and Ral-A / Ral-B cell signaling, 199

endoreduplication, *SS4.4*

endorepellin, *SS13.8*

endosomes, 147

endostatin (Endostar), 600T, *SS13.8*

endothelial cells, 35

angiogenesis and, 557

in lymph ducts, 587S

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tumor-derived RNA and, 789

tumor formation, 37T, 38, 253F

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

See also tumor cell signaling networks

endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs), 576, 577F, 578S, 594, 595F

endothelin, 140

end-replication problem, 390–391

Enfortumab vedotin-ejfv, 752T

enhancers, transcription, 20–21

enterocytes, 261, 481–483

colonic crypts, 261–265, *SS7.6*

ENU (ethylnitrosourea), 503F, 504S

env gene, 71F, 84F

environmental stress, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

enzymes

cancer cell metabolism and, 13

Dicer processing enzyme, 25

RNA molecules as, 14

unconventional RNA molecules as, 24–26

eosinophils

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

wound healing, 566–567, 566F

EpCAM, 144S

EPCs (endothelial progenitor cells), 576, 577F, 578S, 594, 595F

ependymoma, 39–42, 108F

ephrin B2 receptors and ligands, 140, 146

ephrin-Eph receptor, 148

ephrin ligands, 137F

epidemiology of cancer, 855–857

epidermal growth factor (EGF), 117–118, 451, 484S

cell signaling and, 127–128

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 220F, 221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

lateral receptor interactions, *SS5.9*

phosphorylation, cell signaling and, *SS5.10*

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

tumor invasiveness, 637–641, 642F

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R), 139–141, 140S, 180F, 749–750, 750S

antagonists, anti-cancer therapy and, 841–847, 845S, *SS17.9*

EGF-R/ErbB1 receptor, 138T

function as tyrosine kinase, 132–135

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

Tarceva and, 813F

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

tumor invasiveness, 637–641, 642F

epidermal keratinocytes, 463F, 464

epidermoid carcinoma, 142F, *SS6.7*

epigenetic heterogeneity, 674

epigenetic inheritance, 23

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) as epigenetic process, 631–633

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S

intra-tumor diversification and, 436

epigenetic marking, *SS2.5*

epigenomes, 424S

cancer cells, intra-tumor diversification, 432–436, 437S

episomal genomes, 82

episomes, 82

epithelial cells

binary switches in phenotypic states, 637S, 638F

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT), 42–43, 621–622

feeder layer, tissue culture, *SS10.3*

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

intestinal stem cells, differentiation of, 260–261

intracellular and extracellular scaffolding, 13F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

sheets, adherens junctions and, 204–208

stromal cells and tumorigenesis, 575–576, 577F

tumor-derived RNA and, 789

tumor formation in normal tissues, 32–34, 37F

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

wound healing, 127–128, 567–570

epithelial hemidesmosomes, 155T

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT), 16, 42–43, 443, 554

binary switches and phenotypic states, 636–637, 637S, 638F

carcinoma cells phenotypes, reshaping of, 615–622

embryogenesis and, 617–618

as epigenetic process, 631–633

heterotypic signals and, *SS13.4*

induction signals for, 622, 623–633, 631S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 613–615

metastasis, synopsis and prospects, 689–691, 692F

metastatic tropisms and, 671

reversal of, at metastasis sites, 631S

transcription factors and embryogenesis, 633–637, 637S

tumor immunology, 732

wound healing, 569–570

See also EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs)

epithelial sheets, 36

epithelial tissue

apoptosis in normal tissues, 348–349, 348F

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

human tissues, organization of, 481

melanoma, 42F

metaplasia, 44, 46F

normal and neoplastic tissues, formation of, 551–559

progressive development of cancer, 44–49

stromal components in carcinoma, 550–551

transition zones, 44

tumor classification scheme, 48F

tumor formation in, 34–38

See also tumor cell signaling networks

EPO. *See* erythropoietin (EPO)

epoxyaldehydes, 503F

Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 77, 96, 121, 386F, 732, *SS4.8*

Burkitt’s lymphoma and, 114–115, *SS4.7*

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

ER81 transcription factor, 394S

erbA oncogene, 106T, 302S, 446T, 484S

erbB1 / EGFR oncogene, 113T

erbB2 gene, 105, 106T, 107F

erbB2/HER2 gene, 105, 107F, *SS4.4*

ErbB2/HER2/Neu receptor, 138T, 222–223

ErbB2/HER2 receptor, *SS5.9*

erbB2/neu/HER2 gene, *SS4.4*

ErbB3, 4 receptor, 138T

ErbB/EGF-R, 140, 141S

erbB gene, 93T, 105, 446T, 484S

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

ErbB oncoprotein, 135–138

ErbB receptor, 164

Erbitux (Cetuximab), 600T, 843

erg oncogene, 115T

ERK1 activation pathway, 186–189, 187F

ERK2 (extracellular-regulated kinase), 186–189, 812F

ERK activation pathway, 449S

Erk signaling, 94F

Erlotinib (Tarceva), 600T, 813F, 842–847, 845S, *SS17.8*

error-prone DNA repair, 506–507

ER stress, 850S–852S

ERV. *See* endogenous retroviral (ERV) genomes

erythroblastic leukemia, 89T

erythroblastosis, 93T, 105, 106T

erythrocytes

development, regulation of, 147, 148F

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 39T, 40F

erythroleukemia, 40F, 135–138

erythropoiesis, 201, 341

erythropoietin (EPO), *SS5.6*

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201, 200F

receptors for, 147, 148F

SHP-1 signaling control of, 179S

ES. *See* embryonic stem (ES) cells

Escherichia coli, 2, *SS12.7*

esophageal adenocarcinoma, 44, 45F

esophageal carcinoma

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

Hedgehog signaling pathway, 216

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

occult micrometastases, 685

telomerase, human tumor development and, 407

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

esophagus

Barrett’s esophagus, 44, 46F

tumor formation in, 35–36

ESR1 gene, 251T

essential genes, 257S

essentialome, *SS1.3*

esterase D, 242–243

estrogen

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

as tumor promoter, 459–460, 466T

estrogen receptor (ER), 229S, *SS8.3*

Cre recombinase and, 257S, 258F

cyclin functions and, 286S

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

Myc protein and, 306

estrone, *SS2.7*

ethanol, 497, 497F

ethnicity, germ line mutations study, 520S

ethylnitrosourea (ENU), 344–345, 503F, 504S

etiologic mechanisms of cancer, 54

etoposide, 794T, 795F

ets-1 oncogene, 113T, 302S

ets-2 oncogene, 302S

ets oncogene, 106T

Ets transcription factor, 188, 394S

E-type cyclins (E1, E2), 283–286, 286S, 287F, 296–297, 300, 301F, 317–318, *SS8.8*

eukaryotes

evolution of, 7F, 7S

protein synthesis, 14

euploid, 9, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F, 521

Euplotes aediculatus, 393, *SS10.6*

event-free survival (EFS), 112S

evi-1 gene, 302S

evolution, 4–6

adherens junctions and, 205

barriers to cancer formation, 424S

body mass and telomerase activity, 395–396

of cancer defenses, 416

of cell signaling, 126, *SS5.3*

of complex signaling cascades, 177

convergent evolution, 293

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

of epithelial tissues, 36

gene function conservation, 7F, 7S

growth factor receptors and ligands, 134, 136T

human kinome and, *SS17.7*

human tissues, organization of, 482–483

mammalian cell transformation, complexity of, 451–453

of metazoa, 26–27

orthologs and homologs, 28S

of p53 protein function, 334

purifying selection, 435

SH3 domains, 182

of telomerase enzyme, 392

viruses and, *SS3.7*

evt-1 oncogene, 115T

evt-4 oncogene, 115T

Ewing's sarcoma, 108F, 113–114

CAR T therapies, 761, 762F

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 399S

ews/fli oncogene, 120T

executioner caspases, 358–359

exhausted T cells (T_{ex}), 772–773, 773S

Exo84 protein, 198–200

exocrine glands, 588–592, 591S

exocyclic amine groups, 500

exocysts, 198–200

exocytosis, 198–200

exons, 14–16, 16S

exonucleases, 391

exosomes, 164

experimental metastasis, 666S

expression, gene, 14

patterns of, 17–20

shRNAs, siRNAs, and CRISPR/Cas9, *SS1.5*

transcription factors and, 20–24

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

expression of interstitial fluid, 588

expression program, 21

external beam therapy, 793

extracellular matrix (ECM), 13, 13F, 14F

basement membrane, 34–35

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell cycle regulation and, 282

cell signaling and, 128S, 164–167

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 651–655, 656F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 625–633, 631S

filopodia, 196–197

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 209–211

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

immediate early genes, 173, 174F, 176S

integrin receptors and, 154–159, 158S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

lateral receptor interactions, *SS5.9*

PI3K activation, 192

stem cell maintenance and, 440S–441S

stiffness of, tumor invasiveness and, 626–628, 630F

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tissue culture and, *SS3.2*

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

Wnt factors, 150–151

extrachromosomal particles, 112S

extravasation, 648–649, 667, 668F, 669F

extrinsic apoptotic pathways, 359–362, 361S, 363f

ex vivo, *SS3.2*

eyes

evolution and, 7F, 7S

melanoma, 42, 42F

retinoblastoma tumors, 236–239, 239S

eYFP, fluorescent reporter protein, 13F

EYLEA (Aflibercept), 600T

EZH2, 789

F

FACS (fluorescence-activated cell sorting), 437, 438F, *SS11.5*

FAK (focal adhesion kinase), 158

familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), 259–265

multi-step tumor progression, 431–432

progression of, 421–422

familial cancer syndromes, 146S, 147

BRCA1 and *BRCA2*, cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

Cockayne syndrome (CS), 510

colon carcinomas, *Apc* gene and, 259–265

defective telomerase function in, *SS10.7*

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 489F, 490F, 510–514, *SS12.7*

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S, *SS12.12*

Mdm2 expression in, 337, 338S

Mormon populations, 261S

mouse models for, 257S

p53 gene mutations and, 327

progression of, 421

synopsis and prospects, 542–544

transmission of mutant alleles, 269S

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tumor suppressor genes, methylation and, 250

von Recklinghausen’s neurofibromatosis, 254–259, 257S, 260S

xeroderma pigementosum (XP), 508–510, 509S

familial gastrointestinal stromal tumors, 269S

familial medullary thyroid carcinoma, 146S

familial neuroblastoma, 269S

familial platelet disorder, 249T

familial retinoblastoma, 236–239, 239S, 250

Fam-trastuzumab deruxtecannxki (T-DXd), 752T

Fanconi anemia, 511T

FAP (familial adenomatous polyposis), 259–265

FAS-associated death domain (FADD) protein, 360–362, 361S, 363F

Fas death receptor, 716S–717S

FAS gene, 513T

FasL, 716S–717S

Fas Ligand (FasL), 360–362, 361S, 363F

FAT10, 226

Fc receptors, 722, 724, 751–754

Fc receptors (FcRs), 746–748

Fcγ receptors (FcRγ), 722S

feedback controls

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulation, 335–340, 338S

signaling circuits, 218–221

feeder layer, *SS10.3*

feedforward loops, 219, 220F

feline leukemia virus, 88

feline sarcoma virus, 88

females

sex chromosomes, 7F, 7S, 8

X chromosome, gene access, *SS1.1*

fenestrations, 586S

ferroptosis, 369–370

fertilization, 6, 8, 8F

fes oncogene, 88

FGF. *See* fibroblast growth factor (FGF)

FH gene, 248T

Fibiger, Johannes Grib, *SS2.6*

fibrin, 565, 565F, 570–572

fibrinogen, 155T, 565

fibroblast growth factor (FGF), 135T, *SS5.6*

anti-cancer therapy resistance and, 599s

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

wound healing, 565, 566F, 567

fibroblast growth factor 2 (FGF-2), 127–128

fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGF-R)

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

FGF-R1 oncogene, 113T

FGF-R2 receptor, 138T

FGF-R3 receptor, 138T

FGF-R4 receptor, 138T

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

fibroblasts, 13F, 447T

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655

fibroblastic phenotype, 23

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

heterogeneity of, *SS13.11*

invasion-metastasis cascade, 614F, 639F

serum-stimulated fibroblasts, 573–575

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tumor formation, 32F, 36–42

in tumor microenvironment, 552F

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

wound healing, 127–128, 565, 566F

See also tumor cell signaling networks

fibrocytes, 573

fibronectin, 14F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

immediate early genes, 173T

tumor invasiveness and, 620–622

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

fibrosarcoma, 37T, 38F

fibulin, *SS13.8*

field cancerization, 431–432, 433F

FIG gene, 145F

fil-1 gene, 302S

filopodia, 196–197, 657, 658F, 659F, 660F

filtrate, 68

first-line therapy, 838–839

FISH (fluorescence *in situ* hybridization), 8F, *SS2.1*

gene amplification detection, 106, 107F

multicolor (mFISH), 10S–11S

N-*myc* gene amplification, 112S

FITC (fluorescein isothiocyante), *SS2.1*

fitness, 429–431

fixatives, histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

FKHR transcription factor, 119

flagella, 14F

Flap endonuclease, 505F

Flaviviridae, 121T

FLIP (FLICE-inhibitory protein), 365–366

Flt-3 receptor, 138T

fludarabine, 794T, 795F

fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS), 437, 438F, *SS11.5*

fluorescence *in situ* hybridization. *See* FISH (fluorescence *in situ* hybridization)

fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG), 610F

fluorouracil, multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

5-fluorouracil (5-FU), 484, 596, 825–826

fly eyes, 7F, 7S

fms oncogene, 106T

focal adhesion kinase (FAK), 158, 672, *SS8.3*

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 218F

focal adhesions, 13F

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

integrins and, 156–159, 158S

focal reduplication, *SS4.4*

focus (foci), 69, 71–72

folate analogs, 794T

FOLFOX multi-drug protocol, 797–800, 798S

follicular B-cell lymphoma, 115T

follicular lymphoma, mice, 446T

fos gene, 173T, 175, 176S, 302S

Fos protein, 176S

Fos transcription factor, 188

founder mutations, 520S

4E-BP, 196

14-3-3 domain, 184T

14-3-3σ gene, *SS12.11*

FOXC2 transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636

FOXO1 TF, 195T

FOXO4, 195T

Fps protein, 180F

fragile sites, *SS3.5*, *SS8.1*

François-Marie, Arouet (Voltaire), 781

free radicals, 501

Frizzled (Fzd/Frz), 150–151, 164, 209, 440S, *SS6.7*

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F, 207–208

frontal cortex tissues, 18F, 19F

fruit fly. *See Drosophilia*

FSH receptor, *SS8.3*

functional genomics, 787–788

fusion proteins, 145–146, 522

fusogenic agent, 235F

G

G_0 state, 173

regulation of cell growth and division, 276–280

G1 cyclin, 93T, 113T

G_1 phase, 278–280

CDK inhibitors, role of, 287–289, 291

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 283–286, 286S

growth regulating signals in, 280–282

mutagenicity tests, *SS2.9*

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 342F, 343–345

pRb phosphorylation and, 293–297, 294S

G_2 phase, 278–280

crisis and, 386–388

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 283–286, 286S, 287F

mutagenicity tests, *SS2.9*

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 342F, 343–345

G6PD (glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase), *SS2.5*

G6PD gene, *SS2.5*

GABPα ETS-type transcription factor, 393F

gag proteins, viral, 71F

gain of function activity, 330, 330S

GAK (cyclin G-associated kinase), 140S

β-galactosidase (β-gal), cell senescence and, 345–348

gallbladder

gallstones, inflammation and, 460–461, 466T

tumor formation in, 35–36

G-α protein-coupled receptor, 208–211

gametes

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

mutations causing cancer, 9, 12

gametogenesis, 269S

gamma irradiation, 214

ganglia, 601

gap junctions, wound healing, 568F

gasdermin D (GSDMD), 369

gastric adenocarcinoma, 94F, *SS3.9*

gastric carcinoma, 94–95

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–118

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

Hedgehog signaling pathway, 216

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

MMR (mismatch repair) enzyme defects, 512

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

STAT3 protein, 201

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

gastrin, 209F, 210–211

gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP), 209F, 210–211

gastritis, 94F

gastrointestinal carcinoma, 313T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), 138T, 146S, 444S, *SS5.8*

drug therapy for, 835

Gleevec, treatment with, 835, 838F

gastrointestinal tract

crypts, 261–265, *SS7.6*

diet and cancer risk, 61

enterocytes, 261

epithelial cells, differentiation of, 260–261

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

tumor formation in, 35–36

gastrulation, 617–618, 617F

gatekeepers, tumor suppressor genes as, 268, 805

G-β protein-coupled receptor, 208–211

G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor), 591T, 676

GDNF, 135T

GDP (guanosine diphosphate)

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177, 184, 185F

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

GEF. *See* guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF)

gefitinib (Iressa), 600T, 842–847, 845S, *SS17.8*

gelatinase A, 567T

gelatinase B, 567T

gel electrophoresis, *SS4.3*

gelsolin, 359

gemcitabine, 795F, 825–826

GEMM (genetically engineered mouse model), 820S

Gemtuzumab ozogamicin, 752T

gene, 2

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709

chromosome behavior and, 6, 8

essential genes, 257S

evolution, gene function conservation, 7F, 7S

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S

haploinsufficiency, 259, 260S

hemizygosity, 240–242

housekeeping genes, 18–20

loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 240–242

mitotic recombination, 240–242

mutations (*See* mutations)

notations used in text, 112

recombinant minigenes, 756

repression of, 14

tissue-specific genes, 18–20

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51

X-inactivation, *SS1.1*

See also genetics; genome, cancer; oncogenes; transcription; translation; tumor suppressor genes (TSG)

gene amplification, 11F, 11S, 105–107, 108F, *SS4.4*

amplicon, 112

Myc protein, role of, 304S

receptor dimerization and glioblastoma pathogenesis, 143F

gene cloning techniques, 27–28, *SS1.4*

gene conversion, 240–242

gene expression, 14

cancer and cell signaling, 473F

chromosomal translocation and, 116S–117S

delayed early genes, 175, 176S

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S

GpC methylation and, 250

immediate early genes (IEGs), 173, 174F, 176S

patterns of, 17–20

regulation of, *SS7.5*

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 791, 792S

suppression of, *SS1.5*

transcription factors and, 20–24

transgene expression, 446–448

tumor-derived RNA and, 789–792, 789S, 792S

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

gene expression analysis, 787–789, 790F

gene family, 28S

gene knockdown, *SS1.5*

gene pool, 4–6

general transcription factors, 21

gene therapy, *SS3.8*

genetically engineered mouse model (GEMM), 820S

genetic background, 254

genetic barcodes, 664–665

genetic biography

colorectal cancer, *SS11.3*

pancreatic cancer, *SS11.3*

genetic catastrophe, 388

genetic complementation, 176–177

xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) syndrome, 509–510, 509S

genetic polymorphisms, 5–6, *SS7.1*

genetics

Darwinian evolution and, 4–6

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

Mendelian, basic rules, 2–4

genital warts, 742

genome, 2

clones, genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

CRISPR-Cas9, overview of, 535S–537S

Darwinian evolution and, 4–6

essentialome, *SS1.3*

evolution, gene function conservation, 7F, 7S

gene amplification techniques, 105–107, 108F

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

gene families, 28S

genetic background, 254

genetic polymorphisms, 5–6

“junk DNA,” 5, 6

mutable nature of, 57

next-generation sequencing (NGS) technologies, 529, 530S

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–89

retroviral genomes, 82–84

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

rodents and humans, similarity of, 448

sequencing with single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 245, 247

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51

tumor viruses, integration with host DNA, 79–82

tumor virus genomes, 75T

vertebrate genome, proto-oncogenes in, 88–89

viruses, life cycle of, 70S, 76F

See also genetics

genome, cancer, 479–480

aflatoxin-B1, effects of, 498–499

alkylating agents, effects of, 495F, 496

BRCA1 and *BRCA2* genes, 514–520, 520S

cancer cells, intra-tumor diversification, 432–436, 437S

cancer cells, methylation in, 249–252, 253F

cancer genomics, advances in, 528–534, 530S, 533S

cellular defenses against mutagens, 501–502

chromosome number, alterations in, 524–528

chromosome structure, alterations in, 520–524

deamination reactions, mutations from, 491–492

DNA repair enzymes and, 502–507, 504S, 508S

driver and passenger gene mutations, 534–535, 535S–537S

endogenous biochemical processes, mutations from, 491–494, 493S

exogenous mutagens and their metabolites, 494–500, 500S

hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 510–514

heterocyclic amines, effects of, 497–500

inflammation, mutations from, 493–494, 493S

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

inter- and intra-tumoral heterogeneity, 535, 537–539

ionizing radiation, effects of, 494–495

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, effects of, 496–497

preneoplastic cells, prevention mechanisms, 485–490, 491F

reactive oxygen species, mutations from, 493–494, 493S

stem cells, as cancer cells-of-origin, 483–485, 484S, 485S

stem cells, in tissues, 480–483

synopsis and prospects, 539–546, 543F, 545S

synthetic chemicals and, 500S

tissue organization, genome integrity and, 480–483

ultramutated genomes, 488F

xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) syndrome, 508–510, 509S

genome, human

cancer cell proliferation, genes for, 101–102

on Chromosome 1, 6

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

essentialome, *SS1.3*

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

gene families, 28S

GpC islands in, 250

heterozygosity in, *SS7.1*

interactome, 224–225

“junk DNA,” 5

lncRNA (long noncoding RNAs), 26

miRNAs and, 24–26

notation used in text, 112

protein coding genes, number of, 2, 16S

receptor genes in, 153

rodents, similarity to, 448

SH3 protein binding domains, 182

single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 245, 247

transcription factor genes, 21

See also oncogenes

genomic libraries, 27–28

genomics, functional, 787–788

Genomics of Drug Sensitivity in Cancer (GDSC), 816

genotoxic agents, 332

genotypes

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

Mendelian genetics, 2–4

phenotype and, 12–20, 16S, 17S

tumor stem cells and, 437–443, 439S, 441S

germ cells, 6, 8

B-cell lymphomas, gene expression analysis, 789, 790F

BRCA1 and *BRCA2* mutations, cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

receptor gene mutations, transmission of, 146S

teratomas, 43–44

tumor classification scheme, 48F

germinal-center B-cell-like (GCB) lymphoma, 789, 790F

germ line

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

inborn oncogenes, predisposition to cancer and, 444S

inherited defects in caretaker genes, *SS12.12*

mutations causing cancer, 9, 12

p53 gene mutations, 327

germ-line chimeras, 257S

GF. *See* growth factors (GFs)

GFP (green fluorescent protein), 193F, *SS2.4*

G-γ protein-coupled receptor, 208–211

GGR (global genomic repair), 506

GIST. *See* gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs)

Gleevec (imatinib mesylate), 598, 808F, 813F, 816–817, 820–821, 843–844

disease subtypes and drug development, *SS17.3*

as model for targeted compounds, 830–841, 841S

glial cells, 39–42, 135T

Gli1, Gli2, and Gli3 transcription factors, 149–150

gli-1 gene, 302S

Gli factor, 216

gli oncogene, 113T

Gli protein, 224, 302S

Hedgehog and, 212F, 213F, 215–216

glioblastoma, 108F, 121T, 260T, 313T, *SS5.10*

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

CAR T therapies, 761

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–120

chemotherapy for, 794T

DNA mutations, density of, 490F

p53 gene mutations and, 327

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

receptor dimerization and pathogenesis, 143F, 145F

STAT3 protein, 201

telomerase activation in, 393F

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT), 399–401

transdifferentiation in, *SS11.4*

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tumor vascularization, 578S

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), 39–42, 578S, 786T, 842–843

gliomas, 39–42

cancer stem cells and, 442

DNA mutations, density of, 490F

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

MGMT gene silencing in, 503–504

NF1 protein and, 254–259, 257S, 260S

temozolomide therapy and, 504

global genomic repair (GGR), 506

globin gene family, 28S

glucose

fluorodeoxyglucose radiolabels, 610F

metabolism in cancer cells, 469

glucose transporter, 173T, 469

GLUT1, 469

GLUT4, 195T

glutamine, cancer cell metabolism and, 470

glutathione *S*-transferases (GSTs), 251T, 501–502, 504, *SS12.4*

glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β), 130F, 131F, 151, 190F, 195T, 204–208, 263–265

glycolysis, 467–470, 468F

glycoproteins, 13F

Rous sarcoma virus, 71F

virus spikes, 84F, *SS3.6*

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

glycosoaminoglycan polysaccharide, 562

glycosylases, DNA, 505F, 506

glycosylation, 16S, 17, 20

GM-CSF (granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factors), 743F, 745

GM-CSF gene, 93T

Golgi apparatus, cell signaling and, 199

Goosecoid transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636

Gorlin syndrome, 215–216

GpC islands, 250, 250F

G-protein (guanine nucleotide-binding protein), 113T, 151–153

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

small G proteins, 196S

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

cell proliferation and, 208–211

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

GPX4 peroxidase, 369–370

graft-*versus*-host (GVH) reactions, 761S, 775

granular cells of cerebellum, 41F

granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), 591T, 676

granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factors (GM-CSF), 743F, 745

granulocytes, 40F

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) and, 484

granzymes, 716S–717S

Grb2 protein, 176–177, 184, 185F

GRB7 gene, *SS4.4*

GRB-14 gene, 513T

green fluorescent protein (GFP), 193F, *SS2.4*

Gross, Ludwik, 101

Groucho repressor protein, 207F

growth factors (GFs), 35, 125–126

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell proliferation, regulation of, 126–129, 128S

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

deregulated firing and, *SS5.7*

EGF receptor function as tyrosine kinase, 132–135

G_1 phase, growth regulating signals, 281–282

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

heterotypic signaling, 553–559, *SS13.1*

inhibitors of angiogenesis, *SS13.8*

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

ligand binding to, 134, 136T

motogenic growth factors, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

as oncoprotein, 93T

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 337

Src protein function as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

storage by platelets, *SSFS5.1*

synopsis and prospects, 162–167

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

trophic growth factors, 159

tyrosine kinase receptors and tumors, 135T

See also cell cycle clock; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

growth-inhibiting genes, 11F, 11S

growth-inhibitory signals, heterotypic signaling, 553–559

GRO-α receptors and ligands, 140

GSK-3β (glycogen synthase kinase-3β), 130F, 131F, 151, 190F, 195T, 204–208, 263–265

GST alleles, 504

GSTM1 gene, *SS12.4*

GSTP1 gene, 251T

GSTP gene, 501–502

GSTs (glutathione *S*-transferases), 501–502, 502F, *SS12.4*

GSTT1 gene, *SS12.4*

GTP (guanosine triphosphate)

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177, 184, 185F

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

GTPase

drug targets for Ras oncoprotein, 809S

Ras oncogene, inactivation by, 186F

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

GTPase-activating proteins

cancer and, 162S, 180F, 181

small G proteins, 196S

guanine, deamination reactions, 491–492

guanine nucleotide-binding protein. *See* G-protein (guanine nucleotide-binding protein)

guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF), 160–162, 162S

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 208–211

Grb2 and Shc bridging proteins and, 184, 185F

PH (pleckstrin homology) domains, 196

Ral-A and Ral-B cell signaling, 198–200

small G proteins, 196S

guanosine, 23–24

Ras protein function as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

H

H2A histone, 22, 545S

H2AX histone, 22–23, 545S

H3 histone, 22

hairy-cell leukemia, 794T

half-life ($T_{1/2}$), 175

of proteins, 330–332

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

halogenation, 493S

Halsted, William, *SS17.2*

hamartomas, 249T

hamartomatous colonic polyps, 249T

Hansemann, David von, 102, *SS4.2*

haploid, 6, 8

haploinsufficiency, 259, 260S, *SS1.3*

Hardy-Zuckerman feline sarcoma, 89T

Harvey sarcoma virus, 88–89, 105, 106T

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

H-*ras* oncogene activation, 111

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 160–162, 162S

Hayflick, Leonard, 377–378, *SS10.3*

HB-EGF (heparin-binding EGF), 557, 558F

HBV. *See* hepatitis B virus (HBV)

hCDC4 gene, 248T

HCV. *See* hepatitis C virus (HCV)

HDM2 protein, 335

See also mdm2 protein

HDR (homology-directed repair), 517–519, *SS12.8*

head-and-neck cancers, 201, 313T, 740

APOBEC cytosine deaminases expression, 508S

chemotherapy for, 796

chromosomal translocations, 523F

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

MGMT gene silencing in, 503F, 504

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

RNA vaccine therapy for, 743S–744S

head injury, 466T

heavy chains (H), 706, 707F

bi-specific antibodies, 769–771

germline genes and antibody diversity, *SS15.1*

Hedgehog (Hh) signaling pathway, 149–150, 817S

dual address signaling pathways, 212F, 213F, 215–216

HeLa cell lines, 380, 807S

Helicobacter hepaticus, SS11.12

Helicobacter pylori, 94F, 121, 463, 493S, 700, 738–740, *SS3.9*

helminths, 738, 739T

helper T cells (T_H)

dendritic cell activation of, 714–715, 717, 718F

macrophages and, 723

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

roles of, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

hemangioblastoma, 251T

hemangioma, 38, 38F, 552, 554F

hemangiosarcoma, 89T

hematogenous dissemination, intravasation and, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

hematopoiesis, *SS5.8*

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) and, 484

clonal, 432

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

tissue organization model, *SS12.1*

hematopoietic cells, cytokine receptors, 147, 148F

hematopoietic malignancies, 16, 39, 40F, 312T

chromosome number, alterations in, 525

immunoglobulin gene translocations, 522–523

oncogenic fusion proteins and, 118–119

proto-oncogene activation and, 116, 116S–117S

tumor classification scheme, 48F

tumor stem cells, 438

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

hematopoietic stem cells (HSC), 484, 484S

hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) staining, *SS2.1*, *SS2.4*

hemidesmosomes

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

wound healing, 568F

hemi-methylated DNA segments, 23–24

hemizygosity, 240–242

hemoglobin, gene families, 28S

Hepadnaviridae, 121T

heparin, *SS5.6*

heparin-binding EGF (HB-EGF), 188, 557, 558F

hepatic carcinoma. *See* hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC); liver carcinoma

hepatitis B virus (HBV), 75T, 96, 121, 121T, 408S

bacterial cancers, 94–95

chronic inflammation and tumorigenesis, 461, 461T, 493S

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

hepatocellular carcinoma and, 496F

T-cell exhaustion, 772–773, 773S

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740, 740S

hepatitis C virus (HCV), 75T, 96, 121, 408S

bacterial cancers, 94–95

chronic inflammation and tumorigenesis, 461–462, 493S

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

T-cell exhaustion, 772–773, 773S

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), 36T, 121T, 498–499

inflammation and, *SS11.13*

Met receptor dimerization and firing, 144S

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

tumor stem cells, 438

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

See also liver carcinoma

hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), 135T, *SS5.7*

angiogenic factors, 591T

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

heterotypic interactions, 554, 555F

HGF/SF growth factor, 557

integrin-mediated modulation of, *SS5.9*

Met receptor dimerization and firing, 144S

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

receptor gene mutations, transmission of, 146S

hepatocytes, functions of, 61

hepatomas, 101, 121, 313T

HER1/EGF-R receptor, 144, 805F

HER2, 749–750, 750S

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

antibody-drug conjugates, 752–754

invasion-metastasis cascade, 640F, 641, 642F

phosphorylation, cell signaling and, *SS5.10*

HER2/erbB2, 227

HER2/ErbB2/Neu receptor, 144, *SS5.7*

HER2/neu oncogene, 11F, 105, 106T, 107F

HER2/neu receptor, 166, 731, 814S, 821, *SS8.3*

breast cancer surgery and tumor growth, 567S

drug resistance and, 826–827

drug targets, selection of, 805F

EGF-R antagonist drug targets, 841–847, 845S

HER2 receptor, 180F, *SS6.5*

HER3 receptor, 144, 750, 750S, *SS5.10*

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

Herbra, Ferdinand, 508

Herceptin, 749–750, 750S, 821, 843

hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 259, 431, 489F, 490F, *SS12.7*

inherited defects in, 510–514

hereditary papillary renal cancer, 146S, 269S

Herpeseviridae, 121T

herpesviruses, 75T, 77, 739T, *SS3.5*

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

lymphotropic, 82

HERV-K retroviruses, *SS4.1*

H&E (hematoxylin and eosin) staining, *SS2.1*, *SS2.4*

heterochromatin, 345–348, *SS12.9*

heterocyclic amines (HCAs), 497–500, 506, *SS12.3–SS12.4*

heterodimeric ligands, 141–147, 145S, 146S

Raf kinase, 199

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208, 208F

heterodimers

defined, 141

E-boxes, 303, 308F

heterodimerization, 144

heterokayron, 234–236

heterotypic signaling, 553–559

angiogenesis and, 557, 558F

angiogenic switch and, 591, 591S

in carcinoma, *SS13.2*

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) and, *SS13.4*

growth factors and, *SS13.1*

synopsis and prospects, 604–605

wound healing and, 570F

heterozygosity, human gene pool, *SS7.1*

heterozygote, 4, 4F

heterozygous, 3–4, 4F

hG4-1 gene, 513T

HGF. *See* hepatocyte growth factor (HGF)

HGF/SF growth factor, 557

HGPRT (hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase), *SS2.9*

HHV. *See* human herpesvirus entries

HIF-1α, 130F–131F, 469, 811

high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSILs), *SS3.5*

high-throughput screening techniques, 812, 814S, 857, 858F, *SS17.6*

Hill, John, 54

HIP1 (huntingtin-interaction protein-1), 140S

HIPK2 (homeodomain-interacting protein kinase 2), *SS9.2*

hippocampus tissues, 18F, 19F

Hippo cell signaling circuit, 217, 218F

histoincompatible tissues, 700

histology, defined, 32, 32F

See also histopathology

histone acetylase, 297, 299F

histone acetyltransferase (HAT), 802

histone deacetylase (HDAC), 297–299, 802

histone H4, 226

histone-modifying enzymes, 154

histones, 21–23

activation of, 188

cancer risk and, 545S

canonical, 22

cell senescence and, 345–348

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 282–286, 286S

evolution and, 27, 28S

H2A, 22

H2AX, 22–23

H3, 22

H3 lysine 27, 26

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 154

p53 and repair of damaged DNA, 342–343

post-translational modifications, 16S

histopathology

anaplastic tumors, 44

draining lymph nodes, 660–662, 660S

epithelial tissue, tumor formation in, 34–48

field cancerization, 432, 433F

histopathological comparisons, 32–33

intra-tumor diversification, 436

metastasis and, 611F

of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

normal and neoplastic tissues, 551–559

progressive development of cancer, 44–49

stromal components in carcinoma, 550–551

techniques for, *SS2.1*

teratomas, 43–44

tumor classification, *SS2.4*

HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 400, 700, 701F, 739T

retroviral genomes, 82–84

retroviruses and, *SS3.6*

T-cell exhaustion, 772–773, 773S

HL. *See* Hodgkin’s lymphoma (HL)

H-L fusion proteins, 769–771

HMG-14 protein, 188

HMGA2 gene, 116–117S

HMGA2 protein, 116–117S

hMSH1 gene, *SS12.7*

hMSH2 gene, *SS12.7*

HNPCC. *See* hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC)

hnRNA (heterogeneous nuclear RNA), 16S

Hodgkin’s lymphoma (HL), 39, 121T, 552, 554F

alkylating agents for, 786T

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

chemotherapy for, 794T

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

holoenzyme, 392–394, 394S

homeostasis, 222

homodimers

E-boxes, 303, 308F

Raf kinase, 199

homogeneously staining region (HSR), 11F, 11S, 112, 112S, 114, *SS4.4*

homologous genomes, 28S

homologous recombination (HR), defects in, 796

homology-directed repair (HDR), 517–519, *SS12.8*

homophilic interactions, epithelial cells, 206F

N-cadherin and cancer invasiveness, 621–622

homotetramer, 328–330

homotypic interactions, 621

homozygous, 3–4

hormone response elements (HREs), 153–154

hormones

hormone response elements, 153–154

intracellular hormone, 190, 191F

IP3 as intracellular hormone, 190, 191F

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

thyroid adenomas, 34

as tumor promoters, 466T

horseradish peroxidase (HRP), *SS2.4*

HOTAIR lncRNA, 26

housekeeping genes, 18–20

hox1 oncogene, 115T

Hoxb8 gene, 302S

HPV. *See* human papillomavirus (HPV)

H-*ras* oncogene, 88–89, 105, 106T, 113T, 269S

cell transformation and, 132

localization of activating mutation, *SS4.6*

proto-oncogene activation and, 108–111

Ras signaling, subtleties of, *SS6.4*

tumor promoting agents, collaboration with, 456–458, 458S

H-Ras protein, 199

HREs (hormone response elements), 153–154

hRS7, 814S

hrx/af4 oncogene, 120T

hrx/enl oncogene, 120T

HSILs. *See* high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSILs)

HSR. *See* homogeneously staining region (HSR)

hTERT (human telomerase reverse transcriptase), 393–396, 394S, 411–412

body mass and telomerase activity, 395–396

human tumor development and, 407–409, 408S

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT) and, 400–401

hTERT gene, 449–450

hTERT mRNA, 392F, 393–396, 394S

HTLV-1 (human T-cell leukemia virus), 75T, 92–94, 121T, 361S, 738–740

hTR RNA subunit, telomerase, 392–394, 394S

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

human adenovirus 5, 75T, 292–297, 294S

human anti-mouse antibody (HAMA), 748S

human embryonic kidney (HEK) cells, 384

human genome. *See* genome, human

human herpesvirus 1, 77

human herpesvirus 2, 77

human herpesvirus 4 (HHV-4; EBV), 75T

human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6), 82, *SS4.1*

human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8; KSHV), 75T, 121, 140, 700

human kinome, 862, *SS17.7*

human life span, *SS11.2*

human papillomavirus (HPV), 74–77, 96, 121, 436F, 493S, 739T, *SS3.5*, *SS12.10*

cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma and, *SS9.2*

drug targets, selection of, 807S

Myc protein proliferation and differentiation regulation, 302–307, 302S, 304S

p53 protein, targeting of, 361S

p53 protein and skin cancer, 335S

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 293–297, 294S

RNA vaccine therapy for, 743S–744S

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–742

humans, lifetime cell divisions, 395

human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV-1), 75T, 92–94, 121T, 361S, 738–740

human telomerase holoenzyme, 392–394, 394S

human telomerase reverse transcriptase. *See* hTERT (human telomerase reverse transcriptase)

huntingtin-interaction protein-1 (HIP1), 140S

Huxley, Thomas H., 1

hyaluronan, 13F

hybrid proteins, 118–119

hydrocarbons, as carcinogens, *SS2.7*

hydrogel, 561–562

hydrogen peroxide, 493–494, 493S

hydroxodaunorubicin, 749, 797–800, 798S

hydroxyl radical, 493–494, 493S, 494F

hypercalcemia, 684

hypereosinophilic syndrome, 835

hyperphosphorylation, 292

hyperplastic growth, 44, 45F, 194F, 423S

histopathology of tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

hyperthyroidism, 34

hypochlorite, 493S

hypomethylation, 249–252, 427

hypomorphic alleles, 407

hypophosphorylation, 292

hypoxanthine, deamination reactions, 491–492

hypoxia, 467, 582F–583F, 583

H-Z feline virus, 106T

I

IAPs (inhibitors of apoptosis), 214, 358–359

ICAD (inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase), 359

ID1, ID2, ID3, and ID4 proteins, *SS8.8*

Id1 gene, 594, 595F

Id3 gene, 594, 595F

IEGs (immediate early genes), 173–175, 176S

ifosfamide, multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

IGF. *See* insulin-like growth factor (IGF)

IGFBP. *See* insulin-like growth factor-binding proteins (IGFBPs)

IgG

antibody-drug conjugates, 751–754

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748, 747F

IGRIIR gene, 513T

Ikaros gene, 426S

IKK protein, 195T

IKKε, 214

IL2 gene, 93T

IL3 gene, 93T

IL-6 receptors and ligands, 140

IL-8 receptors and ligands, 140

illegitimate recombination, 516, *SS3.5*

imatinib mesylate (Gleevec), 598, 808F, 813F, 816–817, 818F, 820–821, 843–844

disease subtypes and drug development, *SS17.3*

as model for targeted compounds, 830–841, 841S

immature myeloid cells (iMCs), 581–582

immediate early genes (IEGs), 173–175, 176S

immortal, defined, 379

immortalization, tissue culture cells, 77, 78F, 378–380, *SS3.2*, *SS3.4*

serial passaging, 377–378

telomerase expression in, 392

See also cell immortalization

immune checkpoints, 727–730, 730S

checkpoint inhibition therapy, indicators of success, *SS16.2*

checkpoint inhibition therapy, resistance to, 768–769

inhibition therapies, 761–768, 765S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 743S–744S

immune checkpoints blockade (ICB), 768–769

immune system

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 508S

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709, 709S

checkpoints to limit immune response (*See* immune checkpoints)

dendritic cell activation of T cells, 714–715, 717, 718F

Epstein-Barr virus, suppression of, 114–115

germline genes, antibody and T-cell diversity and, *SS15.1*

hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 40F

immunocompromised hosts, 78

immunosurveillance, overview of, 697–700, 704–707, 708F

macrophages and tumor development, 722–725, 726F

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

natural killer cells, role of, 721–722, 722S, 724F, 725F

NHEJ (nonhomologous end joining), 518–519

occult micrometastases and, 686

organ transplants and, 700

regulation of, 147, 148F

regulatory T cells, role of, 725–727

rejection and tolerance, 697–700

role in cancer protection, 700–704

self and non-self, overview of, 697–698

syngeneic host mice, 78

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

T-cell exhaustion, 772–773

T lymphocyte types and roles, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

transformed cells and tumor formation, 79S

tumor antigens, response to, 717–721, 719S

tumor-associated stroma activation, 576–582, 578S

viral-induced malignancies, 700–701

See also immunotherapy

immunocompetent hosts, *SS4.8*

immunocompromised hosts, 78, 79S

cancer and, 700–704

mice strains, 79S

immunocytes

metastases and, 559

role in cancer protection, 701–704

tumor-associated stromal cells, 552–553

immunoediting, 730

immunoFISH, *SS2.1*

immunofluorescence (IF), *SS2.1*

immunogenic material, 699–700, 707, *SS5.1*

immunoglobulin (antibody), 706, *SS2.5*

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 508S

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709

Burkitt’s lymphoma, translocations and, 114–115

gene translocation, cancer genome and, 522–523

germline genes and antibody diversity, *SS15.1*

IgG, 746–748, 751–754

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

NFKB2 locus and, 214

NHEJ (nonhomologous end joining), 518–519

nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB) and, 211–214

rel oncogene and, 211–214

immunohistochemistry (IHC), *SS2.1*

immunological memory, 705–707

immunologic tolerance, 698–700, 699F, *SS5.1*

immunoprecipitation, 130F, *SS5.1*

immunostaining, 343, 551, 552F

immunosupressive drugs, cancer and, 700, 701F

immunosurveillance, overview of, 697–700, 710–713, 711S

immunotherapy, 737–738

adoptive cell transfer, 754–757, 756S

antibody-drug conjugates, 750–754

bi-specific antibodies, 769–771

cancer stem cells and, 441–442

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S

checkpoint inhibition therapies, 761–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

checkpoint inhibition therapies, resistance to, 768–769

lymphoma and breast cancer therapies, 748–750, 750S

monoclonal antibodies, development of, 748S

monoclonal antibody naming conventions, 748S

multi-drug protocols and, 799

passive immunization, 738

passive immunization as cancer treatment, 745–748

polyvalent vaccines, 742

synopsis and prospects, 773–776, 775S

T-cell exhaustion and, 771–773, 773S

vaccination, cancer prevention and, 738–740

vaccination, cancer treatment and, 742–745, 743S–744S

See also anti-cancer therapies

incidence rates, cancer, 51–54, 52S, *SS11.1*

incomplete penetrance, 3

indel mutations, 533

Indian Hedgehog (Hh), 150, 216

indirectly oncogenic, 738

infectious disease, cancer as, 57, 67–68, 101–102

bacterial cancers, 94–95, *SS3.9*

chronic inflammation, effects of, 493S

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

cytopathic effects, viruses, 67

endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), *SS4.8*

evolution of viruses, *SS3.7*

gene therapy, *SS3.8*

genetic origins of tumor development, *SS4.2*

HIV and retroviruses, *SS3.6*

human papillomavirus (HPV), *SS3.5*

infection agents as tumor promoters, 466T

Kaposi’s sarcoma, *SS3.5*

mesothelioma and SV40, *SS3.4*

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–89

oranoids, *SS3.2*

papillomas (warts), 74–77

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 292–297, 294S

retroviral genomes, 82–84

retroviral theory, *SS3.3*

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

retroviruses as carriers of oncogenes, 92–94

Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), 68–74, *SS3.1*

synopsis and prospects, 95–96, 120–122, 121T

tissue culture, overview of, *SS3.2*

transformed cells and tumor formation, 79S

tumor viruses, changes in cell phenotype, 77–79

tumor viruses, integration with host DNA, 79–82

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

viruses, structures of, 70S, 71F

virus life cycle, 70S

virus stock, 69, 71

See also oncogenes; specific virus names

inflammation, 503F

angiogenic switch and, 590–592, 591S

cytokines, cell senescence and, 345–348

indirectly oncogenic agents and, 738–739

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615

at invasive edge of carcinoma cells, 626F

metastasis and, 677

mutations from, 493–494, 493S

natural killer cells, role of, 721–722, 722S, 724F, 725F

NSAIDs and tumorigenesis, *SS11.14*

pyroptosis, 369

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 792S

telomere collapse and, 408S

tumor progression and, 460–465, *SS11.12–SS11.13*

inheritance. *See* epigenetic inheritance

inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase (ICAD), 359

inhibitors of apoptosis (IAPs), 214, 358–359, 358F

inhibitory proteins, cell signaling feedback, 218–221

initiating agents (initiators), 454–455, 456F

initiator caspases, 358–359

INK4 proteins, cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

innate immune system, 705–707, 708F

inositol lipids, Ras-regulated signaling pathways, 189–198, 196S

inositol triphosphate (IP3), 209

Inotuzmab ozogamicin, 752T

insertional mutagenesis, 91–92, 92S, *SS3.8*

insulin-like growth factor (IGF), 127–128, 135T

apoptotic cascades and, 361, 363F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

growth factor autocrine signaling, 139

heterotypic signaling, 554, 555F, 557

PI3K activation, 192

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

insulin-like growth factor-binding proteins (IGFBPs), 251T, 345–348, 361, 363F, 579

insulin receptor (IR), integrin-mediated modulation of, *SS5.9*

int-1 gene, 92S, 93T, 150–151

int-2 gene, 92S, 93T

int-3 gene, 92S, 93T

integrase, 71F, 83–84

integration, viral DNA, 80, 81F

HPV genomes, *SS3.5*

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 90–92

integrin receptors, 154–159, 158S

integrins, 13F, *SS3.2*, *SS5.9*

anoikis and morphogenesis, 204F

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell cycle regulation and, 282

at invasive edge of carcinoma cells, 626F

tumorigenesis and, 158S

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

α1β1 integrin, 155T

α5β1 integrin, 155T

interactome, 224–225

interferon (IFN), 147, 148F

inhibitors of angiogenesis, *SS13.8*

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

wound healing, 566

interferon γ (INF-γ)

cytotoxic T lymphocytes and, 765S

natural killer cells, role of, 721–722, 722S, 724F, 725F

interleukin-1β, 214

interleukin-3 (IL-3), 192

interleukin-4, 7 receptor, *SS8.3*

interleukin-5 (IL-5) receptor, *SS8.3*

interleukin-6 (IL-6), 572, 573F, 628

interleukin-8 (IL-8), 628

angiogenic factors, 591T

macrophages and tumor angiogenesis, 579–581

tumor angiogenesis and, 584

interleukin-10 (IL-10), 723

interleukins

CD4$^+$ T-cell subtypes, 715S

cell senescence and, 345–348

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

inhibitors of angiogenesis, *SS13.8*

intermediary metabolism, 13

International Cancer Genome Consortium (ICGC), 529

interphase, Barr body, *SS1.1*

interstitial deletion, 11F, 11S

retinal tumors and, 242–244

interstitial fluid, 588

interstitial matrix, tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

interstitial space, 215

vascular leakiness and therapies, *SS13.7*

intestinal crypts, *SS11.9*

tissues, stem cells in, 481–483

intestines

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

tumor formation in, 35–36

int-H/int-5 gene, 93T

intracellular hormone, IP3 as, 190, 191F

See also second messengers

intracellular localization, 8F

heterotypic signaling and, 554, 555F

H-*ras*, localization of activating mutation, *SS4.6*

kinase cascades, effects of, 188

$p27^{Kip1}$, cancer progression and, 287–291, 292S

p27 protein, *SS8.6*

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 339–340

phosphorylation and cytoplasmic signaling controls, 177–182, 179S, 183S

Ral-A and Ral-B cell signaling, 198–200

See also relocalization

intragenic alterations, *SS4.4*

intravasation, 657, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615, 640F, 641, 642F

intrinsic apoptotic pathway, 359–362, 361S

introns, 14–16, 16S

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

transcription factors and, 20–21

invadopodia, 653, 654F

invadosomes, 667, 668F, 669F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 609–615, 616F

bone metastasis, 679–685, 684S

colonization, 667, 669–677, 675S

colonization, adaptations of, 677–678, 678S

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 651–655, 656F

EMT-inducing transcription factors and metastasis, 646–651, 647S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and stem cell state, 643–646

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 622, 623–633, 631S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions and, 615–622

intravasation, 657, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

macrophages and, 637–643

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

stromal cell signaling and, 637–643

synopsis and prospects, 686–691, 692F

invasive ductal breast cancer, 32F, 47F, 550–551

See also breast cancer

invasiveness, cancer cells, 196–197

angiogenic switch and tumor progression, 592–594

cells in tumor microenvironment, 552F

macrophages and, 579–581

TGF-β, 212F, 213F, 216–217

TGF-β and phenotypic change, 307–309

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

in vitro, 61S, *SS3.2*

anticancer therapy development, 141S

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

in vivo, 61S

anticancer therapy development, 141S

involution, 349

ionizing radiation

mutations from, 494–495

p53 protein signaling and, 332–334, 335S

IP3 (IP_3), 181, 190, 191F

ipilimumab, 766T, 767

irel/urg oncogene, 120T

Iressa (gefitinib), 600T, 842–847, 845S, *SS17.8*

irinotecan, 752T, 794T

IRK (insulin-receptor kinase), 812F

iron, ferroptosis, 369–370

IR receptor, 138T

IRS-1 protein, 184T

ischemia, 368

ISG15, 226

islets of Langerhans, 588–592, 591S

isoforms, 15–16

IκB kinase, 195T, 211–214

J

Jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus, 94

Jacob, François, 275

Jagged, Notch receptor, 148–149, 215

dual address signaling pathways, 212F, 213F, 214–215

JAKs (Janus kinases), 147, 148F

JAK-STAT pathway, 200–201

JC virus (JCV), 121T

junB gene, 173T

jun gene, 175, 302S

“junk DNA,” 5, 6

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

Jun protein, *SS7.5*

Jun transcription factor, 188

juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, 248T

juxtacrine signaling, 136F, 137F, 148, *SS13.1*

immune checkpoints, 728–730, 730S

Notch and, 215

juxtamembrane domain, 146S

juxtamembrane residues, *SS5.8*

K

Kaplan-Meier plots, 105, 107F

event-free survival (EFS), 112S

Kaposi Moritz, 508

Kaposi’s sarcoma, 508, 739T

Kaposi’s sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV/HHV-8), 82, 121T, *SS3.5*

autocrine signaling loops, 139–141, 141S

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

kappa (κ) antibody light chain, 114–115

karyotype, 6, 8

in cancer cells, chromosome structure and, 520–524

euploid and aneuploid, 9, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F

genetic catastrophe, 388

spectral karyotyping (SKY) analysis, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F, 58F, 410F, *SS8.1*

karyotypic analysis, tumor classification, *SS2.4*

kataegis, 406

KEAP1 gene, 247, 249T, 265–267

KEAP1-NRF2 pathway, 266–267

KEAP1 protein, oxidative stress regulation, 265–267

keratinocytes, 36, 37F, 335S

acellular keratin, 37F

melanoma, 42F

stem cells of, 484S

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

keratin pearl, 37F

KIAA0977 gene, 513T

kidney carcinoma

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

hereditary papillary renal cancer, 146S, 269S

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

mutational signatures, 533S

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

tumor formation in, 35F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 249T

See also renal cancer; renal cell carcinoma

kinase insert region, 180F, 181

kinases, 28S

dimerization of, *SS6.5*

human kinome, *SS17.7*

kinase inhibitors, effects of, *SS17.8*

phosphorylation and, 129, 130F

OceanofPDF.com

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

kinase signaling cascades, 184–189, 185F, 186F, 187F

kinetics, cancer onset and, 418

kinetochores, 525–527, 526F, 527F

KIR (Killer Immunoglobulin-like Receptors), 722

Kirsten sarcoma virus, 88–89, 105, 106T

Kit gene, 269S

Kit growth factor, 444S, 591S

kit oncogene, 106T

Kit receptor, 138T, 146S, *SS5.6*, *SS5.8*

Gleevec, effects of, 835

knockdown, gene, *SS1.5*

knocked-in genes, 110

knockout / knockin mutations, mouse cancer model, 257–258, 257S, 264–265

Knudson, Alfred, 237

Knudson “one-hit” hypothesis, 237, 238F

Knudson “two-hit” hypothesis, 237, 238F, 260

Koch, Robert, 68

K-*ras* gene, 25, 88–89, 93T, 105, 106T, 110–111, 113T, 198, 227, 269S

Apc function and, 264

drug targets, selection of, 805–807

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 425, 426S

Ras signaling, subtleties of, *SS6.4*

K-Ras protein, 199, 199F, 451, 719

Krebs cycle, 467–470

k-sam oncogene, 113T

KSHV. *See* Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV/HHV-8)

L

Lacks, Henrietta, 380

lactate dehydrogenase-A (LDH-A), 470

LAG-3 (lymphocyte activation gene), 766T

lambda (λ) antibody light chain, 114–115

lamellipodia, 657, 658F, 659F, 660F

laminins, 155T

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

lapatinib, 754

large B-cell leukemia (LBCL), 775

large-cell lung carcinoma, 36T

large-cell lymphoma, 120T

large intestine, tumor formation in, 35–36

large T gene, 446T, 447T

large T oncoprotein, 293–297, 294S, 384

cell senescence and, 345–348, 378–380

Rip-Tag transgenic mice, 588–592, 591S

large tumor antigen (T or LT), 324, 324F

larynx, tumor formation, 36T

laser-capture microdissection (LCM), 791F, 792S

latency, gene expression, 447–448

LATS 1/2 kinases, 218F

lck gene, 93T

LCM (laser-capture microdissection), 791F, 792S

leiomyoma, *SS2.5*

leiomyomatosis, 248T

leiomyosarcoma, 37T, 38F

lentiviral provirus, *SS1.5*

lentivirus, 739T

leptin, angiogenic factors, 591T

Let-7, 24–26, 116S–117S

leucovorin, multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

leukapheresis, 760

leukemia, 39, 40F, 55T, 312T, 313T

alkylating agents for, 786T

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

avian leukosis virus (ALV), 71F

blast crisis, 311S

cancer cells, apoptosis inactivation mechanisms, 364T, 365–366

CDK4 expression, 286

chemotherapy and, 794–796, 801–802

disease subtypes and drug development, *SS17.3*

early childhood, 444S

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

familial syndromes, 511T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

HTLV-1-induced, 75T, 92–94, 121T, 361S, 738–740

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

mortality rates, 782

murine leukemia virus (MLV), 71F

Notch receptor mutants, 149

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

oncoproteins and, 92–94

p53 gene mutations and, 327

pre-leukemia, 16

proto-oncogenes and, 88–89

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

SHP-1 expression and, 179S

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 444–448

in telomerase-negative mice, 401–406

leukemogenesis, 90–92, *SS3.8*

leukocytes, chemokines and, 578, 579F

Leydig cell hyperplasia, 210T, 211

Lgr5 protein, 440S, 482F

Lgr5+ stem cells, 451

libraries

compound, *SS17.6*

genomic, 27–28

life expectancy, human, *SS11.2*

lifestyle factors, cancer risk, 53–56, 63F

Li-Fraumeni syndrome, 249T, 327, 338S, 404, 426S, 511T

ligand(s), 117–118

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 136–138

autocrine signaling loops, 139–141, 141S

availability, regulation of, 144S

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

dimerization of, *SS5.5*

downstream signaling, effects on, 181–182

EGF receptor functions as tyrosine kinase, 132–135

fusion proteins and receptor binding, 145–146

growth factor-receptor binding, 134, 136T

low-molecular-weight lipophilic, 153–154

protein:protein interaction motifs, *SS6.3*

stress-induced ligands, 722

synopsis and prospects, 162–167

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

See also cell signaling; receptors

ligase, DNA, *SS12.6*

light chains (L), 706, 707F, *SS15.1*

limiting dilution analysis (LDA), 644, 645F

lineage tracing, *SS2.5*

lipid bilayers, biochemistry of, 189–191

lipid kinase, 89T

lipids, post-translational modifications, 17

lipopolysaccharide, 214

liposarcoma, 37T, 38F

liquid biopsy, 663–664

Lisch nodules, 254, 255F

liver

breast cancer metastasis, 559F

chronic inflammation and tumorigenesis, 461–462

colon carcinoma metastasis, 559F

cytochrome P450 enzymes, 496–497

detoxification by, 60, 61

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

hepatomas, 101

inflammation and tumorigenesis, *SS11.13*

micrometastases, 677

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

tumor formation in, 35–36

liver angiosarcoma, 55T

liver carcinoma, 121

aflatoxin-B1 and, 498–499

compromised immune system and, 700

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

hepatitis B and C viruses, 739T

hepatomas, 101, 121, 313T

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

mortality rates, 782

myc transgene expression, 309–311

Src mutants and, 183S

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 740S

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

See also hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)

liver fluke, 466T

LKB1/STK11 gene, 249T

LMO2 gene, *SS3.8*

L-*myc* gene, 28S, 113T, 302*S*

L-Myc protein, 302–307, 304S

lncRNA (long noncoding RNAs), 25–26

localization. *See* intracellular localization

locked nucleic acid (LNA), 638F

locus, genetic, 6, 8

LOH. *See* loss of heterozygosity (LOH)

longitudinal studies, 421, 663

long noncoding RNAs, 17

loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 240–242, *SS7.2*

background rate of, 245

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 425, 427, 430

in retinoblastoma tumors, 242–244

tumor suppressor gene promoter, methylation of, 251–252

tumor suppressor genes, identification strategies, 244–247, 248T, 249T

low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSILs), *SS3.5*

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

LoxP sites, targeted gene deletion, 257S, 258F

LRP5/6 co-receptor proteins, 440S

LSIL. *See* low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSILs)

lumina, 36, 645

lumpectomy, 793, *SS17.2*

lung

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

tobacco smoke, mutagens in, 496–497

tumor formation in, 35–36, 251–252

lung adenocarcinoma, 440S

lung cancer, 260T, 312T

age and, 416–417

chemotherapy for, 794T

cigarette smoking and, 54–55, 417S, 418

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

EGF-R heterodimerization and, 144

familial syndromes, 511T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 209F, 210–211

growth factor autosignaling, 139

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

Iressa and, 843–847, 845S

Keap1 gene mutations and, 265–267

mesothelioma, 55T, 248T, 418, 702–703, *SS3.4*

metastasis, bone, 679–685, 684S

miRNAs and, 24–26

mortality rates, 782

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

p53 gene mutations and, 327

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

ras oncogene activation, 111T, 382S

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

small-cell lung carcinoma, 42, 112S

STAT3 protein, 201

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tumor mutation burden (TMB), 531

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

See also non-small-cell lung cancer

lung carcinoma, 313T

APOBEC cytosine deaminases expression, 508S

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

intra-tumor diversification, 435, 436F

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

metastasis and, 648–649

p53 gene mutations and, 327

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

lyl oncogene, 115T

lymphangiogenesis, 144S, 587S, 660S

lymphatic cells, targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

lymphatic ducts, 587S

angiogenesis and, 557, 587–588

lymphangiogenesis, 144S, 587S

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

lymphatic vessels

intravasation, 659–662, 660S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615

lymph ducts, invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615

lymphedema, *SS17.2*

lymph nodes

breast cancer and, *SS17.2*

colonization, adaptations and, 677–678, 678S

draining lymph nodes, 659–662, 660S, 714–715, 717, 718F

metastasis and, 611F

micrometastases in, 673F

tumor classification and, *SS2.4*

lymphoblastic leukemia, *SS3.8*

lymphocytes

hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 40F

immune system, overview of, 704–707, 708F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

neoangiogenesis and, 557

role in cancer protection, 701–704

wound healing, 566–567

See also tumor cell signaling networks

lymphocytic leukemia, 39, 40F

lymphoid cancer, 197T

lymphoid lineages, 39, 40F

lymphoid tissues, immune checkpoints, 728–730, 730S

lymphoma, 39, 40F, 108F, 312T, 313T

adoptive cell transfers and, 756, 757T

alkylating agents for, 786T

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

B-cell lymphomas, gene expression analysis of, 788–789, 790F

Burkitt's, 77

CAR T therapies, 760–761

CDK4 expression, 286

chemotherapeutics, 793–796

Epstein-Barr virus and, 739T, *SS4.8*

familial syndromes, 511T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

HTLV-1 virus and, 75T, 92–94, 121T, 361S, 738–740

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

MGMT gene silencing in, 503F, 504

monoclonal antibody therapies, 748–750, 750S

oncogenes and, 89T

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

SHP-1 expression and, 179S

in telomerase-negative mice, 401–406

lymphomagenesis, 448

lymphopenia, 771

lymphosarcoma, 89T

lymphotropic, defined, 82

Lynch syndrome, 259, 510

See also hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC)

Lys48 protein, *SS7.5*

lysate, *SS5.1*

lysophosphatidic acid (LPA), *SS6.7*

lysosomes, 140S

lyt-10/Cα1 oncogene, 120T

lytic cycle, 76

M

M1 isoform, pyruvate kinase, 469–470

M1 state, macrophages, 723–725, 726F

M2 isoform, pyruvate kinase, 469–470

M2 state, macrophages, 723–725, 726F

macronucleus, *SS10.6*

macrophage chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1), 578, 579F

macrophage colony-stimulating factor (M-CSF), 578, 579F

macrophages, 40F

angiogenic switch and, 590–592, 591S

antibody-drug conjugates, 751–754

as antigen-presenting cells, 712–713

apoptosis in normal tissues, 349

chronic inflammation, effects of, 493S

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

immune system, overview of, 704–707, 708F

intravasation and, 640F, 641, 642F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615, 659F

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748

neoangiogenesis and, 557

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tumor-associated stroma activation, 576–582, 578S, 637–643

tumor development, role in, 722–725, 726F

tumoricidal actions, 581

in tumor microenvironment, 552F

See also tumor cell signaling networks

Mad1 gene, *SS12.11*

Mad2 gene, *SS12.11*

Mad protein, 303F, 304

MAGE-A3 protein, 743S–744S

MAGE protein, 720

major histocompatibility complex (MHC)

adoptive cell transfer (ACT), 754–757, 756S

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

class I (MHC-I), 711S, 712–713

class II (MHC-II), 711S, 712–713

polymorphism, functions of, 710–711, 711S

role in antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

T lymphocyte types and roles, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 743F, 743S–744S, 745

malaria, 466T, *SS4.7–SS4.8*

males, X-chromosomes, 7F, 7S, 8

malignant, 33–34, 421, 569F, 570

cancer, progression of, 45–49

dysplasia as transition state, 44–45, 46F

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 613–615, 616F

tumor classification scheme, 46, 47–49, *SS2.4*

malignant fibrous histiocytoma, 37T, 38F

malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors (MPNSTs), 254–259, 257S, 260S

mammals

animal models in research, 26–27, 56–57, *SS2.6*

evolution of, 7F, 7S

proto-oncogenes in genome, 88–89

ras gene expression, 24–26

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

telomerase expression in, *SS11.10*

mammary carcinoma, 93T

cell receptor proteins as oncoproteins, 117–118

integrins and, 158S

NSAIDs and, *SS11.14*

See also breast cancer

mammary epithelial cells (MECs), 204F, 447T, 460, 562–563

metastasis and, 683

stromal cells and tumorigenesis, 575–576, 577F

mammary gland, human, 32F

draining lymph nodes of, 661F

ductal carcinoma, progression of, 45F, 47F

tumor formation in, 35–36

mammography, 52S

MAPK (mitogen-activated protein kinase), 186–189, 224

EGF-R antagonist drug targets, 842–847, 845S

melanoma and, 852–855

oncogene addiction and, 845S

Ras-MAPK pathway, 394S

MAP kinase pathway, 186–189

MAPKK, 187F, 188

MAPKKK, 187F, 188

Marek’s disease virus (MDV), 82

Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), *SS3.3*, *SS4.2*

mass-action, 140S

Masson’s trichrome stain, *SS2.1*

mast cells

angiogenic switch and, 590–592, 591S

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

in tumor microenvironment, 552F

wound healing, 566–567

See also tumor cell signaling networks

mastectomy, *SS17.2*

master regulator, 21

Matrigel, *SS11.9*

matrilysin, 567T

matrisome, 561

matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), 362, 567T

angiogenic inhibition, *SS13.8*

angiogenic switch and, 590–592, 591S

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

immature myeloid cells (iMCs) and, 581–582

macrophages and, 579

wound healing, 565, 566F, 570

maximum tolerated dose (MTD), 822, 823F

maytansinoids, 751F, 752T, 753F

3-MC-transformed mouse cell lines, 103–104

MC29. *See* avian myelocytomatosis virus (MC29)

McClintock, Barbara, 385–386, 385F, 388

McDonough feline sarcoma virus, 106T

MCP-1 (macrophage chemoattractant protein-1), 578, 579F

MCPy-V, vaccinations and cancer prevention, 738–740

MDCK (Madin-Darby canine kidney) cells, 617F, 620F

Mdm2 gene, 335–340, 338S, 343

Mdm2-p53 complex, 810, 810F

Mdm2 protein, 195T, 335, *SS8.10*

in familial cancer syndromes, 337, 338S

p53 autoregulatory loop with, 335–340, 338S

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 364T, 365–366

MDM4 / MDMX oncogene, 113T

Mdm4 protein, 368S

MdmX (Mdm4), 336–340, 338S

Mdr1 (multi-drug resistance 1) protein, 485

MDS. *See* myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS)

MDSCs (myeloid-derived suppressor cells), 582, 732

MDV. *See* Marek's disease virus (MDV)

meat, heterocyclic amines and, 497–500, *SS12.3–SS12.4*

mechanotransduction, 218F

Mediator complex, transcription, 20–21

medium, tissue culture, *SS3.2*

medullary thyroid carcinoma, 146S

medulloblastoma, 39–42, 108F

CAR T therapies, 761, 762F

PTCH1 gene, 216

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

vessel permeability and, 586S

megakaryblastic leukemia, 484S

megakaryocytes, 147, 148F

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) and, 484

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

MeiQx (2-amino-3,8-dimethylimidazo[4,5-f] quinoxaline), *SS12.4*

MEK activation pathway, 186–189, 449S

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 220F, 221

melanoma and, 852–855

melanin, 501

melanocytes, 42, 501, 617F, 621–622

melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 335S

melanoma, 42, 260T, 312T, 313T

adoptive cell transfers and, 756, 757T

alkylating agents for, 786T

autocrine signaling loops and, 139–141, 141S

B-Raf and drug therapy, 852–855

cell invasiveness and, 621–622

cell senescence and, 347–348

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

hTERT expression in, 394S

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

metastases and, 559, 610, 648

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

Raf protein kinase and, 189

ras oncogene activation, 111T

STAT3 protein, 201

telomerase activation in, 393F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

uveal melanoma, 672

UV radiation and, 495

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 743S–744S

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

melphalan, 786T

membrane attack complex (MAC), 746–748

membrane type-1 MMP (MT1-MMP), 653–655, 656F

memory T cells (T_{mem}), 772–773, 773S

MEN1 gene, 248T, 394S

$Mena^{INV}$ protein, 657, 658F, 659F, 660F

Mena protein, 642F, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

menarche, 459

Mendel, Gregor, 2

Mendelian genetics

basic rules, 2–4

evolution and, 4–6

genes and chromosomes, 6, 8

menigioma, 39–42

Menin, 394S, 811

meninges, tumor formation, 39–42

menstrual cycles, 459–460

6-mercaptopurine, 794T, 795F

Merkel cell carcinoma, 121T

Merlin/NF2 tumor suppression protein, 218F

merotely, 526–527

mesenchymal cells, 618

binary switches in phenotypic states, 637S, 638F

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT), 42–43

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

quasi-mesenchymal phenotype, 569–570, 646

tumor classification scheme, 48F

tumor formation, 36–42

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

wound healing, 569–570

mesenchymal-epithelial transition (MET), 569F, 570

metastasis and, 630–631, 631S

mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs), 573

mesenchymal tissue, 32F

mesoderm, 36, 617F

embryogenesis and EMT, 617–618

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

normal and neoplastic epithelial tissue formation, 552–553

teratomas, 43–44

tumor classification scheme, 48F

mesothelioma, 55T, *SS3.4*

multi-step tumorigenesis, 418, 418F

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

meta-analysis, 750

metabolic stress, 397S

metabolism

cancer susceptibility and therapy response, *SS12.4*

tumorigenesis and, 465–470

metalloelastase, 567T

metaphase, 278–280

cyclin-CDK controls, 284

cytologic maps, *SS1.1*

normal and abnormal chromosomes, 10S–11S

metaphase plate, 525–527

metaphyta, 2

metaplasia, 44, 46F

metastable state, 625

metastases, defined, 610

metastasis, 33, 420F, 421, 609–612

accurate diagnosis of disease, 784–792, 789S, 792S

anaplastic tumors, *SS2.3*

of bone, 679–685, 684S

in breast cancer, 787

clinical outcomes and pathogenesis, *SS17.2*

colonization, 667, 669–677, 675S

colonization, adaptations of, 677–678, 678S

DNA markers (barcodes), 664–665

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions (EMT) and, 615–622

EMT, induction signals, 622, 623–633, 631S

EMT, reversal of, 631S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and metastasis, 646–651, 647S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and stem cell state, 643–646

extracellular matrix clearance and invasiveness, 651–655, 656F

genetic analysis of tumor progression, 675S

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

inside-out signaling and, 158

intra-tumor diversification and, 434F, 435

intravasation, 657, 659–667, 660S, 665S, 667S, 668F, 669F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

lamellipodia and, 197

macrophages and, 637–643

melanoma, 42F

metastatic inefficiency, 665

micrometastasis, 567S, 610–611

mortality rates, 782

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

Ral proteins and, 198

stromal cell signaling and, 637–643

stromal cells in, 558–559

synopsis and prospects, 686–691, 692F

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 399S

tumor cell signaling networks and, 551S

unconventional RNA molecules and, 26

metastatic inefficiency, 665

metastatic shower, 675S

metastatic tropism, 669–670, 691, 692F

metazoa, 2, 26–27

cancer defenses, evolution of, 416

cell generations, *SS10.1*

cell signaling, protozoan roots of, *SS5.3*

complex signaling cascades in, 177

evolution and, 7F, 7S

orthologs and homologs, 28S

telomerase expression, 395

tyrosine kinase receptor genes, 134

Met gene, 146S, 269S

methotrexate, 794T

2-methoxyestradiol, *SS13.8*

methylated CpG (meCpG), 247, 249–252, 253F

methylation, 16S, 17, *SS12.5*

bisulfite sequencing and, *SS7.4*

DNA alkyltransferase and, 503–504

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 427

of H3 lysine 27 histone, 26

histone modification and, 23

Keap1 hypermethylation, 266

MMR (mismatch repair) enzyme defects and, 512

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, 247, 249–252

3-methylcholanthrene (3-MC), 454, *SS2.7*

5-methylcytosine, 491–492

methylnitrosourea, 503F, 504

methyltransferases, DNA, 23–24

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, 249–252, 253F

Met oncogene, 113T

Met receptors, 144S, *SS5.7*, *SS5.9–SS5.10*

Meyer, Willy, *SS17.2*

MGMT (O^6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase), 503–504, 504S

MGMT gene, 251T, 503–504

MH2 avian leukemia virus chicken tumors, 446T

MHC class I (MHC-I), 711S, 712–713

T lymphocyte types and roles, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

MHC class II (MHC-II), 711S, 712–713

T lymphocyte types and roles, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

mice. *See* mouse (mice)

microarrays, 18F, 19F, *SS2.4*

microbiome, 61

gut microbiome as tumor promoter, *SS11.12*

microemboli, 662F, 664

microenvironment. *See* tumor microenvironment

micrometastasis, 567S, 610–611, 672–677

circulating tumor cells and, 650

genetic analysis of tumor progression, 675S

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

See also invasion-metastasis cascade

micronuclei, 524, *SS2.9*, *SS10.6*

microRNAs, 638F

deregulated expression of oncogenic proteins, 118

gene regulation and, 116S–117S

microsatellite instability (MIN), 487–490, 525, *SS12.7*

microsatellite sequences, 487–490

microscopy, *SS2.4*

histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

microtubules, 14F, 278F

APC protein and, *SS7.6*

paclitaxel, effects of, 796

middle T gene, 446T

mil gene, 446T

Min mouse, 264–265

miR-7, 26

miR-15a/16-1 gene, 248T

miR-124a, 248T

miR-127 gene, 248T

miR-200s gene, 251T

miRNA (microRNA), 15–16

gene expression, suppression of, *SS1.5*

gene expression and, 24–26

tumor suppression, 26

mismatch repair (MMR) enzymes, 486–490, 502–503

mis-segregation of chromosomes, 525–527

missense mutations, 16, 161, 328–330, 330S

mitochondria

apoptosis, mechanisms of, 352–359

glycolysis in, 467–470

mitogen-activated protein kinase. *See* MAPK (mitogen-activated protein kinase)

mitogens, 92S, 127–128, 176S

B-Raf mutations and melanoma, 852–855

breast cancer and, 229S

cancer and cell signaling, 473F

cell growth and division, regulation of, 276–280

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

dual address signaling pathways, 211–217

EGF receptor functions as tyrosine kinase, 132–135

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 209–211

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

heterotypic signaling, 553–559

inflammation, effects of, 493S

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 201

PIP3 activation and, 193F, 194–195

pRb phosphorylation, summary of, 301–302

prostate cancer and, 229S

Rac protein, 198–200

signaling pathways, organization of, 223–229, 229S

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

tyrosine phosphorylation and, 132

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

wound healing, 565

See also cell cycle clock; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

mitosis

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 802–803, 804S–805S

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

checkpoints, *SS8.1*

chromosome number, alterations in, 525–528

crisis and, 386–388

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 283–286, 286S

histone modifications and, 23

mutagenicity tests, *SS2.9*

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 343–345

regulation of, 276–280

of stem cells in human tissue, 480–481

telomeres in, 385–386

mitotic apparatus, 14F

mitotic catastrophe, 803, 804S–805S

mitotic recombination, 240–242

mitotic spindle, 278F, 279–280, 385F, 386

mitoxantrone, 794T

Miz-1 transcription factor, 305, 307–309

MLH1 gene, 251T, 512, 514F

MLH1 protein, 489F, 510–514

MLH3 gene, 513T

MLKL protein, 368–369

MLL, drug target selection and, 811

MLL/various oncogene, 120T

MLV. *See* murine leukemia virus (MLV)

MM. *See* multiple myeloma (MM)

MMPs (matrix metalloproteinases)

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615, 616F

MMP-2, 581–582

MMP-9, 565, 566F, 567T, 581–582

MMR (mismatch repair) enzymes, 486–490, 502–503

hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) and, 511–514

MMTV (mouse mammary tumor virus), 92S, 447–448

Mnk1 kinase, 188

MNSFβ, 226

moAbs. *See* monoclonal antibodies (moAbs)

molecular biology, 1–2

Central Dogma, 24

Moloney murine leukemia virus (Mo-MLV), *SS3.8*

MOMP (mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization), apoptosis and, 353–359

monkey viruses, 75F

herpesviruses, 77

oncogenes and, 89T

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

SV40, 74

monoclonal, tumors as, 49–51, *SS2.5*

monoclonal antibodies (moAbs)

anaplastic tumors, treatment for, *SS2.3*

anti-cancer therapies, 596, 600T, 724, 745–748, 814S, *SS17.9*

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 758F, 759–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

checkpoint inhibition therapies, 763–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

development of, 748S

FACS (fluorescence-activated cell sorting) and, *SS11.5*

histological techniques, *SS2.4*

naming conventions, 748S

process for making, *SS16.1*

radionuclides and, 793

monocyte chemotactic protein-1, 578, 579F

monocytes, 40F

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

wound healing, 566–567, 566F

Monod, Jacques, 1

monolayer, cell, 71–72

monomeric, defined, 142

monomethyl auristatin E (MMAE), 752T

mononucleosis, *SS4.8*

monotherapy, 828

mono-ubiquitylation, 140S

monozygotic twins, 459

Mormon population, heritable human disease and, 261S

morphogenesis, 31, 92S

anoikis and, 204F

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and carcinoma cells, 619–620

morphogens, 92S, 150, 205, 206F

morphology, 12

mortality rates, 51–54, 52S, 782, 855–857, *SS17.1*

mos gene, 93T

mosquitoes, Burkitt's lymphoma and, *SS4.7*

motility

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198

of cancer cells, 13, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and cell phenotype changes, 615–622

filopodia, 196–197

growth factor-receptor and ligand binding, effects of, 134, 136T

lamellipodia, 197

Ral proteins and, 198

Rho-like proteins and, 196–197

tumor invasiveness and, 621–622

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

motogenic growth factors, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

mouse (mice)

anti-cancer therapy development, 141S, 819–821, 820S

body mass and telomerase activity, 395–396

breast cancer cells, 13F

cell divisions, lifetime, 395

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

endogenous retroviral genomes and, *SS4.1*

genetically engineered mouse model (GEMM), 820S

human anti-mouse antibody (HAMA), 748S

immunocompromised strains of, 79S

integrins and tumorigenesis, 158S

“junk DNA,” 5

K-*ras* oncogene activation, 110–111

leukemia virus tumors, 446T

mammary epithelial cells (MECs), 448

mammary tumor virus (MMTV), 92S, 447–448

Min mouse, 264–265

monoclonal antibodies, process for making, *SS16.1*

murine polyomavirus, 74

Mus musculus, 2

NIH 3T3 fibroblasts, 130F–131F

NOD/SCID mice, 79S, 559

nude mice, 78F, 559

oncogenes and, 89T

pancreatic cancer in, 198

pancreatic islet cells, Akt/PKB effect on, 196

Pten$^{+/-}$ gene, 194F

RAG mice, 559

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

Rip-Tag transgenic mice, 588–592, 591S, 611F

risk of cancer development in, 451–452

rodent and human genome, similarity of, 448

Schwann cells, 218F

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 443–448

syngeneic hosts, 78, 324, 698–700

telomerase activity in stem cells, *SS10.8*

telomeres, role in, 401–406

transfection of DNA, 102–104

transformed cells and tumor formation, 79S

transgenic mice, 447–448

TSG knockout mice, 257–258, 257S

value in research, 26–27

β-catenin and, *SS6.7*

mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV), 92S, 447–448

mouth, tumor formation in, 35–36

See also oral carcinoma

M phase. *See* mitosis

MPNSTs (malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors), 254–259, 257S, 260S

MPyV. *See* murine polyomavirus (MPyV)

mRNA

as diagnostic marker for cancer, 16

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

gene knockdown, *SS1.5*

human genome, proteins in, 16S

protein synthesis and, 14–17, 16S, 17S

synthesis of, 14–16, 16S

transcription factors and, 20–21

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

viruses, life cycle of, 70S

See also pre-mRNA

mRNA (messenger RNA), 16S

microarray analysis, 18F, 19F

mRNA-vaccines, 743S–744S

MSH2 protein, 510–514

MSH3 gene, 511, 513T

MSH6 gene, 511, 513T

MST 1/2 kinases, 218F

MT1-MMP (membrane type-1 MMP), 653–655

mTERT enzyme, 401–403

MTH1 protein, *SS12.2*

mTOR, 190F, 195T, 271, 450, 805F

mTORC1, 196, *SS6.6*

mTOR kinase, 196

mTR RNA subunit, telomerase, 401–403

mucins, 482–483

mucosal tissue

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

tumor formation, 32F

mucus-secreting epithelium, transition zones, 44

Muller, Hermann, 57

multi-drug resistance, 799

multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), *SS3.4*

multi-generational cancer syndromes, 146S

multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN), 138T, 146S, 248T, 269S

multiple myeloma (MM), 39, 40F

alkylating agents for, 786T

antibody-drug conjugates, 752T

chemotherapy for, 794T

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 848–850, 850S–852S

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

multipotent, *SS12.1*

mural cells, 557, 558F, 598

murine colorectal carcinoma (CRC), 637–643

murine leukemia virus (MLV), 71F, 89–92, *SS3.6*

murine polyomavirus (MPyV), 74, 75T, 76, 79–82

murine retrovirus, 186

murine sarcoma 3611 virus, 106T

muscle tissue

cell differentiation, 310F

embryonic cell layers, 618, *SS2.2*

tumor formation, 37T, 38F

MuSK receptor, 208F

Mus Musculus, 2

mustard gas, 793

mutagenic, define, 57

mutagens, 57–61, 61S, *SS2.6–SS2.9*

alkylating agents, 495F, 496

Ames test, 57–60, 61S, 453, 453S, *SS2.8*

cellular defense mechanisms, 501–502

from endogenous biochemical processes, 491–494, 493S

inflammation, effects of, 493S

micronuclei formation, *SS2.9*

mutations

Ames test, 57–60, 59F, 61S, *SS2.8*

cancer causing, 9, 12, *SS2.6*

cancer cells, intra-tumor diversification, 432–436, 437S

cellular repair apparatus, 9, 12

in colorectal cancer, *SS11.3*

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431

DNA transfection, oncogene detection and, 102–104

dominant-interfering mutant, 328, 329F

dominate-negative mutant, 302, 328, 329F

driver mutations, 434F, 435

evolution and, 4–6, 7F, 7S

founder mutations, 520S

gain of function activity, 330, 330S

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S

genetic polymorphisms, 5–6

H-*ras*, localization of activating mutation, *SS4.6*

hybrid proteins and, 118–119

indel mutations, 533

insertional mutagenesis, 91–92, 92S, *SS3.8*

knockout / knockin mutations, mouse cancer model, 257–258, 257S

loss-of-function mutations, 257S, 258F

metastasis and, 610–611

missense mutations, 16, 161, 328–330

mutagenic processes, categories of, 486

neutral mutations, 5

nonsense mutations, 161, 328–330

nonsynonymous mutations, 529

null alleles, 328–330

of *p53* gene, effects of, 327–330, 330S

of *p53* gene in tumors, 325–327

in pancreatic cancer, *SS11.3*

passenger mutations, 434F, 435

point mutations, 6, 210T, 211

point mutations, H-*ras* oncogene activation, 108–111

prevalence of, *SS7.2*

rates of, 6

receptor gene mutations, 146S

recombinant minigenes, 756

recurrent mutations, 11F, 11S

single gene mutation, cell resistance to, 443–448

somatic hypermutations, *SS15.1*

somatic mutations, 9, 12

submicroscopic, 242

temperature-sensitive (ts) mutants, 73

transition mutations, 491–492

transmission through germ line, 269S

truncal mutations, 51, 434F, 435

tumor mutational burden (TMB), *SS16.2*

tumor progression and, 280

tumor promoting agents, collaboration with, 456–458, 458S

tumors as monoclonal growths, 49–51

tumor suppressor genes, loss of function, 240–242

ultramutated genomes, 488F, 513

See also cancer cells; genome, cancer; oncogenes

MutLα protein, 489F

MutS protein, 489F

Mxd, 394S

myb gene, 113T, 121, 175, 302S, *SS4.4*

myc gene, 11F, 88, 93T, 96, 105, 106T, 110, 173T, 302S, 341

activation of, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

c-*myc* proto-oncogene, 90–92

GLUT1 gene expression, 469

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 201

oncogene addiction, 845S

oncogene collaboration, 446T, 447T

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 444–448

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 399S

See also N-*myc* gene

myc-like genes, 28S

Myc-Max complexes, 302–307, 304S

mycosis fungoides, 752T

Myc protein, 21, 91F, 105, 114, 175, 190F, *SS7.5*

hTERT transcription and, 394S

myc oncogene activation and, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

Notch, dual address signaling pathways, 212F, 213F, 214–215

oncogene collaboration, 445–448

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 339F

proliferation or differentiation regulation, 302–307, 302S, 304S

short lifetime of, 331

See also N-Myc protein

Myd88, 789

myelodysplasia, 116S–117S, 794T

myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), 16, *SS12.4*

myelogenous leukemia, 39, 40F, 116S–117S, 254–259, 257S, 260S, 260T

myeloid cells, 256

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

tumor-associated stroma activation, 576–582, 578S

myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), 582, 732

myeloid leukemia, oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

myeloma, 39, 40F, *SS2.5*

NFKB2 locus and, 214

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 848–850, 850S–852S

ras oncogene activation, 111T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

myelomonocytic leukemia, 93T, 248T

myeloproliferation, 89T, 835

myeloproliferative leukemia, 89T

myl/RARa gene, 302S

myoblasts, 310F, *SS8.7*

myocytes, 38, *SS8.7*

myofibroblasts

angiogenesis and, 576, 577F

clinical progression of cancer and, *SS13.5*

fibroblast heterogenity, *SS13.11*

tumor cell signaling, 572

wound healing, 565

See also tumor cell signaling networks

myogenic precursor cells, 618

myxomas, 70S

N

NADH-UOB gene, 513T

naive T cells, 715

naming conventions, monoclonal antibodies, 748S

nanoclusters, *SS6.4–SS6.5*

2-naphthylamine, *SS2.7*

nasal adenocarcinoma, 55T

nasal cavity

cancer of, 54

tumor formation, 36T

nasopharyngeal carcinoma, 77

Epstein-Barr virus and, 739T, *SS4.8*

viral causes, 121T

NAT1 (*N*-acetyltransferase), *SS12.4*

natural killer (NK) cells

antibody-drug conjugates, 751–754

anti-cancer immunity, role in, 721–722, 722S

immune system, overview of, 704–707, 733

immunotherapy and, 775–776

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748

natural products, 795F, 796

natural selection, 5

NBS1 protein, 518–519

NCI-60 cell lines, 815–819, 815S, 817S

necroptosis, 368, 369F

necrosis

vs. apoptosis, 349, 351T

cell hypoxia and, 582F–583F, 583

necrotic cell death, 367–370, 368S

necrotic tissue, in tumors, 579

Nectin 4 protein, 752T

NEDD8 protein, 226, *SS7.5*

negative-feedback mechanisms, 116, 176S

cell signaling circuits and, 218–221

MdmX gene, 336–340, 338S

SH2-containing proteins and, 179S, 181

SHP-1 and, 179S

Nematostella vectensis, 634F, 635F, 635T

neoadjuvants, 799

neoantigens, 717–721, 719S

neomorphic activities, 330S

neoplasms, use of term, 46

neoplastic stem cell (SC) niches, 645–646

neoplastic tissue

formation of, 32–34

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

neovasculature, 576, 577F, 578S

See also angiogenesis

nephroblastoma, 93T

NER (nucleotide-excision repair), 504–506

Cockayne syndrome (CS) and, 510

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

nerve growth factor (NGF), 135T, 192, 600, *SS5.7*

nervous system

embryonic cell layers, 617F, *SS2.2*

nervous tissue and tumor growth, 599–601

tumor classification scheme, 48F

tumor formation, 39–42

von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis, 254–259, 257S, 260S

nestin, *SS11.7*

Neu, altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

See also HER2/neu receptor

neu gene, 105, 106T, 107F

neural crest, 42

-derived cells, neurofibromas and, 257, 257S, 258F

neural tube, 617F

neurite, 601

neuroblastoma, 39–42, 108F, 312T

cancer cells, apoptosis inactivation mechanisms, 365–366

c-*myc* oncogene activation, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

gene amplification, *SS4.4*

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 399S

neuroectodermal tumors, 39–42, 112S, 643

chemokines and, 578, 579F

tumor classification scheme, 48F

tumor stem cells, 438

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

neuroendocrinal tumors, 11F

neuroepithelial cells, 618

neurofibromas, 260T

neurofibroma-predisposition syndrome, 249T

von Recklinghausen’s neurofibromatosis, 254–259, 257S, 260S

neurofibromatosis formation, 257–258, 257S

neurofibromatosis type 1, 249T

neurofibromin (NF1) protein, 219, 220F

arginine finger subdomain, 256F

Ras signaling regulation and, 254–259, 257S, 260S

neurofibrosarcomas, 254–259, 257S, 260S, 260T

neurons

as post-mitotic cells, 277

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

neuropeptide-like properties, 209F, 210–211

neurosecretory cells, 42

neurotensin, 210–211

neurotransmitters, G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 209–211

neurotrophic factors, 600

neutral mutations, 5, 5F

neutrophilia, 676, 676F

neutrophils

antibody-drug conjugates, 751–754

chronic inflammation, effects of, 493S

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) and, 484

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

immune system, overview of, 704–707, 708F

inflammation and tumorigenesis, 463–464

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748

neoangiogenesis and, 557

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

wound healing, 566–567

neutrophil-stimulating factors, 676

nevi, 347–348

nevoid basal cell carcinoma, 248T

Nexavar (Sorafenib), 600T

next-generation sequencing (NGS) technologies, 529, 530S

Nf1 gene, 249T, 254–259, 257S, 260S, 260T

NF1 (neurofibromatosis type 1) protein, Ras signal regulation, 254–259, 257S, 260S

NF2 gene, 249T

NF2 (neurofibromatosis type 2) protein, 218F

NF-κB (nuclear factor-κB), 93–94, 211–214, 224, 302S, 789

cancer cells, apoptosis inactivation mechanisms, 365–366

liver tumorigenesis and inflammation, *SS11.13*

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 850S–852S

NF-κB transcription factor, metastasis and, 647S

NGF (nerve growth factor), 135T, 192, 600, *SS5.7*

NHEJ (nonhomologous end joining), 518–519

NHL. *See* non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL)

niches, stem cell, 440–441S

NIH 3T3 cell line, 103–104, 130–131F, 140S, *SS4.5*

cell fusion technique, 235F

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 443–444

STAT3 protein and, 201

Nijmegen breakage syndrome, 511T, 518–519

nitric oxide, 493S

nivolumab, 766T

NKG2D receptor, 722

N-lobe, Src protein, 177–182, 179S, 183S

n-*myc-DDX1* oncogene, 113T

N-*myc* gene, 28S

oncogene activation mechanisms, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 399S

N-myc gene, 302S

N-Myc protein

cell proliferation and differentiation, 302–307, 302S, 304S

myc oncogene activation and, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

N-*myc* proto-oncogene, *SS4.4*

N,*N*-dimethyl-4-aminoazobenzene, *SS2.7*

Nobel Prize, *SS2.6*, *SS3.3*

NOD/SCID mice, 79S, 559

Noggin, 451

non-cell-autonomous processes, 383

nondisjunction, chromosomes, 241F, 242, 526–527

non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL), 39, 121T

chemotherapy for, 794T

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

metastatic, 610F

monoclonal antibody therapies, 748–749

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

SHP-1 expression and, 179S

nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ), 518–519, 533

nonhomologous recombination, *SS3.5*

nonpermissive hosts, 76

nonpermissive temperature, 73, 73F

non-receptor TK, 93T, 106T

non-self, immune system and, 697–698

nonsense mutations, 161, 328–330

non-small-cell lung cancer

anti-cancer therapies, 596

drug targets for, 809S

Iressa and, 843–847, 845S

MGMT gene silencing in, 503F, 504

oncogenic fusion proteins, 120T

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 580F

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

See also lung cancer

nonsynonymous mutations, 529

Noonan syndrome, 269S

normoxic conditions, 467, 469

Northern blot, *SS4.3*

Notch-1/2 gene, 446T

NOTCH-1 gene, 215, 446T

Notch L, 148–149

Notch protein, 164, 167, 224, 302S, 628

dual address signaling pathways, 212F, 213F, 214–215

Notch receptor, 148–149

novel hybrid proteins, 118

Nov gene, 93T

Noxa protein, 340–341, 354–359

NPM/ALK oncogene, 120T

N-*ras* gene, 110–111, 113T

N-Ras protein, 189, 199, 199F

Nrf2 gene, 266–267, 266F, 267F

NRF2 protein, 265–267

NSAIDs (non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs), 462–464

tumorigenesis, *SS11.14*

nuclear envelope. *See* nuclear membrane

nuclear factor-κB. *See* NF-κB (nuclear factor-κB)

nuclear magnetic resonance, 828

nuclear membrane, 283

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

protein transport through, 196S

nuclear receptor proteins, 106T, 153–154

nucleocapsid, 71F

nucleolus, p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 339–340

nucleoplasm, p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 339–340

nucleoproteins, RISC (RNA-induced silencing complex), 24–26

nucleoside analogs, 794, 795F

nucleosome octamers, 21–23

nucleosomes, 21–23

nucleotide-excision repair (NER), 504–506

Cockayne syndrome (CS) and, 510

inherited defects and cancer susceptibility, 508–514, 509S

xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) syndrome, 508–510, 509S

nucleus, cell

cell cycle, overview of, 278–280

cell fusion technique, 234–236

immediate early genes, 173, 174F, 176S

localization of p27, *SS8.6*

macronucleus formation, *SS10.6*

micronuclei formation, *SS2.9*, *SS10.6*

Smad transcription factors, 212F, 213F, 216–217

See also cell cycle clock; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

Nude mice, 78, 79S

null allele, 244, 328–330

nur77 gene, 173T

nutlin, 810

NY-ESO-1 protein, 743S–744S

O

O4 oligodendrocyte marker, 41F

O^6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase (MGMT), 503–504

objective response, 849

occult micrometastases, 685–686, 686S

off-target effects, *SS1.5*

O'Grady, Marcella, *SS4.2*

OGT gene, 513T

Okazaki fragments, 390F

oligodendrocytes, tumor formation, 39–42

oligodendroglioma, 39–42

oligopeptides, *SS5.1*

oncogene addiction, 806, 845S

oncogene-induced senescence (OIS), 347–348, 397S

oncogenes, 81, 86–88

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

cell cycle checkpoints and, 280

cell senescence and, 346F, 347–348

cells-of-origin and, 23

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

directly and indirectly oncogenic agents, 738

drug targets, selection of, 805–807

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

frequently amplified chromosomal regions, 113T

fusion oncogenes, 522

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

HER2/neu oncogene, 11F

HIV and, *SS3.6*

H-*ras*, localization of activating mutation, *SS4.6*

inborn oncogenes and predisposition to cancer, 444S

insertional mutagenesis, proto-oncogenes, 91–92, 92S

myc activation mechanisms, 11F, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

notation used in text, 112

oncogene collaboration, 445–448

p-53-dependent senescence, induction of, 345–348

protein structural changes and oncogene activation, 117–120

proto-oncogene activation mechanisms, 107–111

Ras proteins and cell signaling, 159

receptor gene mutations, germ line transmission of, 146S

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

retroviruses as carriers of, 92–94

synopsis and prospects, 95–96, 120–122

transfection of DNA, detection strategy, 102–104

transforming retroviruses and, 104–107, 108F

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

in vertebrate genome, 88–89

See also cell cycle clock; cell signaling

oncogenic, 81

oncoMiRs, 25–26

oncoproteins, 92–94

activation of, 117–120

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

drug targets, selection of, 805–807

function as transcription factors, 302S

hTERT gene expression, 394S

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop and, 336–340, 338S

phosphorylation by, 130F

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 292–297, 294S

Raf kinase, 186

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

receptor gene mutations, germ line transmission, 146S

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

See also cell signaling

oncovin (vincristine sulfate), 749

“one-hit” hypothesis, 237, 238F

ontogeny, *SS11.11*

Opisthorchis viverrini, 738–740

opportunistic infections, tumor viruses as, 700

oral carcinoma, 55T

lymph nodes, metastasis and, 659–662, 660S

mouth, tumor formation in, 35–36

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

organoids, 816, *SS3.2*

organotropism, 669–670, 670F

organ transplants, 700, 761S, 775

oropharyngeal cancer, 739T, 740, *SS3.5*

oropharynx, 36T, *SS3.5*

orphan receptors, 209

orthologous proteins, 27, 28S

orthotopic tumor graft implantations, 560S

osteoblastic lesions, 679

osteoblast(s), 38F, 679

bone metastasis, 679–685, 684S

tumor formation, 37T, 38

osteoclasts, 40F, 679

bone metastasis, 679–685, 684S

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

osteoid, 679

osteolytic metastases, 679–685, 684S

osteoprotegerin (OPG), 680, 682F, 683F

osteosarcoma, 37T, 38F, 55T, 312T, 313T

familial syndromes, 511T

retinoblastoma and, 236–237, 244

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT), 399–401

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

osteosarcoma, CAR T therapies, 761, 762F

osteotropic metastasis, 679–685, 684S

outcomes research, 793

ovarian carcinoma, 312T, 313T

age and, 416–417

alkylating agents for, 786T

BRCA1 and *BRCA2*, cancer susceptibility and, 514–520, 520S

chemotherapy for, 794T, 796

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

familial syndromes, 511T

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

NSAIDs and, 463

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

spheroids, 559

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

ovaries, 6, 8

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

removal of, breast cancer risk and, 459–460

tumor formation in, 35–36

ovulation, as tumor promoter, 466T

oxidation

endogenous processes, mutations from, 493–494, 493S, SS12.5

products in urine as marker, *SS12.2*

oxidative phosphorylation, cytochrome *c*, apoptosis and, 352–359

oxidative stress, 265–267, 379, 397S

oxiplatin, multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (8-oxo-dG), 493–494, 493S, 507, *SS12.2*

8-oxoguanine, 493–494, 493S

ozogamicin, 752T

ozone, 494

P

P1 bacteriophage, 257S, 258F

p14^{ARF} gene, 248T, 340–341

p14^{ARF} protein, 338–340, 340S, *SS8.10*

p15^{INK4B} protein

cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

Myc protein and, 305

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

TGF-β and cell cycle control, 307–309

p16^{INK4A} gene, 248T, 251–252, 338–340, 340S

p16^{INK4A} protein, *SS8.9*

cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

cell immortalization, cell lines and, 378–380

cell senescence and, 345–348

E2F transcription factors and, 298–300

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

p18^{INK4C} protein, 287–291, 292S

p19^{ARF} gene, 260S

p19^{ARF} protein, 338–340, 340S

p19^{INK4D} protein, 287–291, 292S

p21^{Cip1} gene, 343

p21^{Cip1} protein, 195T, 343–344, *SS8.9*

cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

cell immortalization, cell lines and, 378–380, 379F

cell senescence and, 345–348

Myc protein and, 305

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 344–345

TGF-β and cell cycle control, 307–309

p21^{Waf1} protein, 188, 287–291, 292S

p27^{Kip1} gene, 260S

p27^{Kip1} protein, 300, 301F, *SS8.7–SS8.9*

cell cycle regulation and, 287–291, 292S

localization of, *SS8.6*

Myc protein and, 305

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

p53 gene, 93T, 425, 426S

Apc function and, 264

encoded protein function, 253–254

germ-line polymorphisms and drug therapy, *SS17.5*

mutations and familial cancer syndromes, 327

mutations interfere with p53 protein function, 327–330, 330S, 331F

mutations in tumor cell genomes, 325–326

skin cancer and, 335S

as tumor suppressor gene, 324–326

p53 inhibitor protein, 113T

p53 protein, 318F, 451, *SS7.5*, *SS8.10*, *SS9.1–SS9.3*

apoptosis, intrinsic and extrinsic programs, 361–362, 361S, 363F

apoptosis activation by, 323–324

ARF, regulation of, 340–341

BCR-ABL oncogene and, 525

cancer cell inactivation of, 365–366

cell hypoxia and, 582F–583F, 583

cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma and, *SS9.2*

discovery of, 324, 325T

DNA repair mechanisms and, 341–345, 450, 506

DNA viruses, targeting of, 361S

function of, 253–254

hTERT expression and, 394S

inactivation of, tumor progression and, 366–367

induction signals for, 332–333

Mdm2-p53 complex, 810

Mdm2 protein autoregulatory loop with, 335–340, 338S

p53 gene mutations, effect on protein function, 327–330, 330S

premature aging and, *SS9.1*

senescence, p-53 dependent, 345–348

sequestration by large T antigen, 378–380

short lifetime of, 330–332

skin cancer and, 335S

synopsis and prospects, 370–372

tumor cell attrition and, 382S

venetoclax and, 828, 830F

p57^{Kip2} gene, 251T

p57^{Kip2} protein, 287, 288F

p63 protein, 342F, 368S

p70S6 kinase, 196

p73 gene, 251T

p73 protein, 340–341, 342F, 368S

p85 regulatory subunit of PI3K, 192

p85α gene, 197T

p107 protein, 296–297, *SS8.9*

DNA viruses, targeting of, 361S

TGF-β and cell cycle control, 308–309

transcription regulation by, 298, 299F

p110α subunit of PI3K, 192, 192F

p120 protein, wound healing and, 568F

p130 protein, 296–297, *SS8.9*

DNA viruses, targeting of, 361S

transcription regulation by, 298, 299F

p300 protein, 325T, 331F, 342

P815 protein, 766

paclitaxel, 794T, 795F, 796, 797T

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

Paget, Stephen, 609, 669, 670F, 676

PAI. *See* pathogenicity islands (PAI)

palmitoylation, 229S

pancreas

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

tumor formation in, 35–36

pancreatic adenocarcinoma

desmoplastic stroma, 572, 573F

extracellular matrix, tumor mass and, 561

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 154, 154F

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

pancreatic cancer, mice, 198

pancreatic carcinoma, 313T

age and, 416–417

chromosome alterations in, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F

diagnostic criteria for, 785

drug targets, selection of, 806, 811

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and invasiveness, 618F–619F

gemcitabine and, 825–826

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

Hedgehog signaling pathway, 216

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

hypermethylated genes in, 251T, 253F

intra-tumor diversification, 435

mortality rates, 782

NSAIDs and, 462–463

p53 gene mutations and, 327

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

ras oncogene activation, 111T

Rip-Tag model of tumor progression, 588–592, 591S, 596–598, 611F

somatic mutations in, *SS11.3*

tumor stem cells, 438

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T, 249T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

pancreatic hyperplasia, 210T, 211

pancreatic islet cells, 196, *SS6.6*

pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (NETs), 785

pancreatitis, 466T

Paneth cells, 262–265, 440S–441S, 482F

PAP (prostatic acid phosphatase), 743F, 745

papillary thyroid carcinoma, 138T, 785

papillomas (warts), 45, 47F, 74–77

nonmutagenic agents, 454–458

stem cells and, 484S, *SS11.7*

stem cells as cancer cells-of-origin, 483–485, 484S, 485S

papilloma viruses, 76, 77, 80, 121T, 739T

PAR1 (partitioning-defective protein 1), 94F, 804S–805S

Paracelsus, 781

paracrine signaling, 139, 551S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628–629

heterotypic signaling, 554–556

immune checkpoints, 728–730, 730S, 732

Notch and, 215

stromal cell signals and invasiveness, 637–643

parallel progression, 678S

paralogs, 28S, 293–297, 294S

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

paraneoplastic syndromes, 551S

parasites, vaccinations for, 738–740

parathyroid hormone-related peptide (PTHrP), 683–684, 684S

parenchymal cells, *SS13.6*

PARP1 (poly-(ADP ribose) polymerase-1), 543F

PARP inhibitors, 797T

partial response, 843

passaged, tissue culture cells, *SS3.2*

passenger mutations, 434F, 435, 719, 719S

passengers, gene amplification, 106, 107F

passive immunization, 738, 745–748

Pasteur, Louis, 68

Patched-Smoothened signaling system, 149–150, 164

Hedgehog and, 212F, 213F, 215–216

pathogenesis, cancer, 62

oncogene collaboration and, 446–448

TGF-β, 212F, 213F, 216–217

pathogenicity islands (PAI), 94F, 95

pathological complete response, 750

patient-derived xenografts (PDXs), 563, 564F

PAX3/ALK oncogene, 120T

PAX3 transcription factor, 119

pax-6/small eye, 7F

PAX7 transcription factor, 119

paxillin, 156–159, 158S

pazopanib (Votrient), 600T

pbx gene, 302S

P/CAF protein, 184T

PCNA (proliferating cell nuclear antigen), 289, 344–345

PD-1 receptor, 728–730, 730S, 776

checkpoint inhibition therapies, 765–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

T-cell exhaustion maker, 773

PDGF. *See* platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)

PDGFR-A gene, 269S

PDGF-R receptor, 181

PDGF-Rβ receptor, 138T

PDXs (patient-derived xenografts), 563, 564F

pea plants, 3, 3F

pediatric glioma, 442

pediatric leukemia, 794–796

pediatric lymphoma, 794–796

pediatric neuroblastoma, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

pediatric tumors, 119, 418

embryonic cells and, 452–453

mutant driver genes and, *SS11.11*

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 398–399, 399S

pedunculated adenoma, 420F

pedunculated polyps, 47F

pembrolizumab, 766T

penetrance, of germ-line alleles, 520, 520S

penis, carcinoma of, 740

peptidase, 848

perforin, 716S–717S

pericytes, 557, 558F, 667, 668F, 669F

anti-cancer therapies, 596–598

heterotypic signaling, *SS13.1*

targets for therapeutic intervention, 604–605

tumor angiogenesis and, 584–585

See also tumor cell signaling networks

perineural invasion (PNI), 600–601

periostin, 628

peripheral neuropathy, 798

peripheral T-cell lymphoma, 752T

peritoneal effusions, *SS13.3*

peritoneovenous shunts, 677

perlecan, 561–563

permissive hosts, 76

permissive temperature, 73

peroxide, 503F

peroxisomes, 493–494, 493S

pertuzumab, 750, 750S

pesticides, 500S

PET (positron emission tomography), 469

Peto, Richard, 415

Peto’s paradox, 452

Peutz-Jegher syndrome, 249T

PEX, *SS13.8*

PGE2, *SS11.14*

P-glycoprotein, 827F

phagocytes, 40F

apoptosis in normal tissues, 349

chronic inflammation, effects of, 493S

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746–748

phagocytosis, 712–713

macrophages and tumor development, 723–725

phalloidin, *SS2.1*

pharmacodynamics, 799

therapeutic window and, 822, 823F

pharmacokinetics (PK), 799, 820–821

Phase I clinical trials, 821–822, 823F

Phase II and III clinical trials, 684–685, 824–826, 825S

PH (pleckstrin homology) domain, 180F, 184T, 193, 194F, 196

phenotypes

bacterial cancers, 94–95

binary switches, operation of, 636–637, 637S, 638S

cancer phenotype as recessive, 234–236

chromosomal translocation and gene expression, 116S–117S

Darwinian evolution and, 4–5, 429–431

epigenetic inheritance, 23

epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) as epigenetic process, 631–633

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions and, 615–622

gene expression patterns and, 17–20

gene function conservation, 7F, 7S

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 424–429, 424S, 426S

genetic polymorphisms, 6

genotype and, 12–20, 16S, 17S

Hallmarks of Cancer, 426–427, 471, 472S

haploinsufficiency, 259, 260S, *SS1.3*

invasion-metastasis cascade and, 613–615

Mendelian genetics, 2–4

morphology, 12

neutral mutations, 5

Nf1 function and disease phenotypes, 255–259, 257S, 260S

plasticity of, 671

proto-oncogenes and, 88

quasi-mesenchymal phenotypic state, 569–570, 646

Ras oncoprotein, effects of, 199–200

replicative immortality, 316

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

Src protein and pleiotropy, 129–132

TGF-β and phenotypic change, 307–309

transdifferentiation, 42

tumor classification scheme, 48F, *SS2.4*

tumor stem cells and, 437–443, 439S, 441S

tumor viruses, changes in cell phenotype, 77–79

tumor viruses, integration with host DNA, 79–82

ultra-mutated, 513

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

See also cell immortalization

pheochromocytomas, 254–259, 257S, 260S, 260T

Philadelphia chromosome, 57, 58F, 484, 830–831, 833–834, 838

PhIP (2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine), 497–500

PhK (phosphorylase kinase), 812F

phosphatases, 167

CDC25A, -B, -C, 292S

negative-feedback mechanisms, 146–147

phosphotyrosine phosphatase (PTP), 179–180, 179S

phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), *SS6.7*

phosphates, post-translational modifications, 16S, 17

phosphatidylinositol (PI), 190–191

phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), 181

cell cycle regulation and, 287–289, 290F

Ras-regulated signaling pathways, 189–198, 196S

phosphatidylinositol (4, 5)-diphosphate (PIP2), 181, 190–191

phosphatidylinositol (3, 4, 5)-triphosphate (PIP3), 189–198, 196S

phosphatidylserine (PS), 349

phosphoamino acids, in normal cells, 132

phosphoinositol, 190–191

phospholipase C (PLC), 190

phospholipase C (PLC) domain, 180F, 181

phospholipase C-β (PLC-β), 209

phospholipase C-γ (PLC-γ), 181

phospholipids

amphipathic structure of, 189, 191F

biochemistry of, 189–191, 193

inositol moiety, 190–191

Ras protein, control of inositol lipids and Akt/PKB kinase, 189–198, 196S

phosphoprotein, Src as, 129–132

phosphorylation, 16S, 20

Akt/PKB kinases and, 195

CDK4 and, 286

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 218–221

complex signaling cascades, 183S

cross-phosphorylation, cell signaling and, *SS5.10*

of cyclin-dependent kinases (CDK), effects of, 292S

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 282–286, 286S

cytoplasmic signaling controls and, 177–182, 179S, 183S

of histones, 22–23

hyper- and hypophosphorylation, 292

kinase cascades, effects of, 188

of p53 protein, effects of, 333–334, 335S

of phosphotyrosine, *SS5.2*

pRb and R-point transitions, cell cycle regulation, 292–297, 294S

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

Raf kinase and, 186–189

Ras, downstream cell signaling pathways, 184–189

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

phosphoserine, 132, 182, 184T

phosphothreonine, 132, 182, 184T

phosphotyrosine, 132

cytoplasmic cell signaling, control of, 177–182, 179S, 183S

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

phosphorylation of, *SS5.2*

phosphotyrosine phosphatase (PTP), 94F, 167, 179–180, 179S, 225

phylogeny, *SS11.11*

PI3K (phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase), 181

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

mutations and tumor progression, 426S

oncogene addiction and, 845S

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 337

p53 protein, cancer cell inactivation of, 364T, 365–366

Ras oncoprotein and, 199

TGF-β and, 217

PI3K gene, 425, 425F

PI3 kinase, 93–94, 186F

pigment epithelium-derived factor (PEDF), *SS13.8*

PIK3CA oncogene, 113T, 197, 223

PI kinase, 113T

pim-1 gene, 93T, 446T

pim-2 gene, 93T

PINCH protein, 550F

pinocytosis, 712–713

PIP2 (phosphatidylinositol (4, 5)-diphosphate), 181

PIP3 (phosphatidylinositol triphosphate), 180F, 223

pituitary gland, retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

PKA (protein kinase A), 812F

PKB. *See* Akt/PKB kinase

PKC (protein kinase C), 184T, 190, 191F, 458S, 463–464

placental growth factor, 591T

planar cell polarity (Wnt-PCP) pathway, 207–208

plasma, hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 40F

plasmacytoma, 93T

plasma membrane

cell signaling and, 125–126

immediate early genes, 173, 174F, 176S

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

Patched-Smoothened signaling system, 149–150

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

transmembrane proteins, mobility of, 141–142, 144

Wnt factors, 150–151

plasminogen kringle 5, *SS13.8*

plasticity, 441S, 671

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), 89T, 127–128, 565

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 136, 137F, 138T

angiogenic factors, 591T

anti-cancer therapies, 596–598

drug targets, selection of, 811

Gleevec, inhibition by, 835

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

heterotypic signaling, 554, 555F, 557, *SS13.1*

integrin-mediated modulation of, *SS5.9*

PDGFR-A gene, 269S

PDGF-R receptor, 181

PDGF-Rβ receptor, 138T

PDGF-β, 180–181

PDGR-R, 181

PI3K activation, 192

SH2 binding sites, 183S

stromal cells and tumorigenesis, 575–576

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S

tumor angiogenesis and, 584

tumor cell signaling and, 571–572

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

wound healing, 565

platelet factor-4, *SS13.8*

platelets

cell signaling and, 127–128

development, regulation of, 147, 148F

growth factor storage by, *SSFS5.1*

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

stem cells and malignancies, 484S

wound healing, 565

platinum agent cisplatin, multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

PLC (phospholipase C) domain, 180F, 181

PLC-γ (phospholipase C-γ), 181

PLC-δ protein, 184T

pleckstrin homology (PH) domains, 193, 194F, 196

plectin, 359

pleiotropy, 21, 78–79

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 87–88

Ras protein cell signaling, 198–200

Src protein and, 129–132

pleural effusions, 602, *SS13.3*

plexiform neurofibromas, 254–259, 257S, 260S

ploidy, *SS8.1*

pluripotency, teratomas and, 43–44

pluripotent cells, 257S

pluripotent stem cells, 484

plutonium exposure, 10S–11S

PLX4032 (vemurafenib), 854

PML/RAR oncogene, 120T

PMS1 gene, 511

PMS2 gene, 511

PMS2 protein, 489F

pneumocytes, 497

pocket proteins, 294F, 294S, 297–300, *SS8.9*

podosomes, 653, 654F

point mutations, 6

H-*ras* oncogene activation, 108–111

p53-associated, 330, 330S, 331F

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 443–448

thyroid adenoma and carcinoma, 210T, 211

transition mutations, 491–492

pol-. *See* DNA polymerases

Polatuzumab vedotin-piiq, 752T

PolD1 gene, 512–513

PolD gene, 486, 488F

POLD gene, 531

PolE gene, 512–513

POLE gene, 531

pol gene, 71F, 84F

poliovirus, 70S, 74, 76

poly-(ADP ribose) polymerase-1 (PARP1), 543F

polyclonal, tumors as, 49–51

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), 496, 506

polyethylene glycol (PEG), as fusogenic agent, 235F

polymerase chain reaction (PCR)

single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 245, 247

tumor suppressor gene mapping, *SS7.3*

polymorphic genetic markers, 245–247, 248T, 249T

OceanofPDF.com

polymorphism, 5–6

Polyomaviridae, 121T

polyoma virus, 739T

polyomavirus family, 76, 77

DNA metabolism, 80

integrins and tumorigenesis, 158S

retroviral genomes, 82–84

polyomavirus-induced murine tumors, 446T

polyp, 420–421

polypectomy, 423F

polyploidy, 520–521, *SS4.4*

polyposis, 249T

polyprotein, 83–84

polyps, progression of, 45, 47F

polyubiquitylation, 140S, *SS7.5*

polyvalent vaccines, 742

ponatinib, 835, 837F, 838–839

Porcupine protein, 440S–441S

positive-feedback mechanisms, 218–221, 300, 301F

post-mitotic cells, 277

post-transcriptional processing, 26

post-translational modifications (PTMs), 17, 225–226, 342F

H3 protein isoforms, 23

histones and, 22F

proteomics and, 20

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

Pott, Percival, 54, 56, *SS2.6*

poxvirus, 77

PP2A enzyme, 449–450, 449S, 450F

PPARB gene, *SS4.4*

PPAR-γ (peroxisome proliferator activated receptor-γ), 154F

PR65α subunit, 449S

pRb-E2F cell cycle control, 334, 335S

pRb protein, *SS8.9–SS8.10*

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 340–341

differentiation controls, 309–311

DNA viruses, targeting of, 361S

E2F transcription factors and cell cycle regulation, 297–300, 301F

function in human cancer, 311–315

function of, 253

paralogs of, 293–297, 294S

R-point transitions, regulation of cell cycle, 292–297, 294S, 450–451

sequestration by large T antigen, 378–380

TGF-β, blocking of cell cycle progression, 307–309

See also cell cycle clock

PRC2, 26

prednisone, 749, 797–800, 798S

pre-leukemia, 16

premature aging, *SS9.1*

pre-metastatic niches, 675–677

pre-mRNA, 14–16, 16S, 20–21

prenatal cancer risk, *SS11.11*

pre-neoplastic, 16

primary cells, 377–378, 444

metastasis, synopsis and prospects, 686–691, 692F

primary cilium, 149–150

primary cutaneous anaplastic large-cell lymphoma, 752T

primary drug resistance, 844

primary mediastinal B-cell lymphomas (PMBL), 789, 790F

primary resistance, 768–769

primary tumor, 33

metastasis, genetic analysis of, 675S

metastasis, synopsis and prospects, 686–691, 692F

See also invasion-metastasis cascade

primase, 390–391

primer, DNA replication and, 390–391

probe, *src*-specific DNA probe, 84–86, 85S

procarcinogens, 59, 496–497

pro-enzymes, 653

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 653–655, 656F

wound healing and, 566

progenitor cells, 439S, 484S, 485S, *SS12.1*

progeria, 544–545

progesterone

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

as tumor promoter, 459–460, 466T

prognosis, *SS2.4*

progression, tumor, 280, 454–458, 458S

Progression-Free Survival (PFS), 317

prolactin, *SS13.8*

prolactin receptors, *SS8.3*

proliferating-cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), 515

proliferin, 591T

proline, 180F, 182, 184T

prometaphase, 278–280

promoter, transcription, 20–21

methylation status, determining, *SS7.4*

myc oncogene activation, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

proto-oncogene activation and, 107–111

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, methylation and, 247, 249–252, 253F

promoter-proximal pausing, 21, 26

promoting agents (promoters of tumors), 61, 431, 454–455, 456F

chronic inflammation and, 460–465

gut microbiome as tumor promoter, *SS11.12*

mitogenic agents as, 458–460, 459S

promyelocytic leukemia (PML), 802

proofreading, DNA replication and, 486–490

prophase, 278–280, 284

See also mitosis

prophylactic vaccines, 739–740

See also vaccines

prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2), 464

prostaglandins, NSAIDs and tumorigenesis, *SS11.14*

prostate, tumor formation in, 35–36, 35F

prostate carcinoma, 115T, 116, 116S–117S, 260T, 313T

age and, 416–417

chromosomal translocations, 522

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

detection and diagnosis, 783S

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

familial syndromes, 511T

glutathione *S*-transferases (GSTs), 501–502

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

intervention decisions, *SS17.4*

Keap1 hypermethylation, 266

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

macrophage density in tumors, 579–581

metastasis and, 610, 679–685, 684S

mitogenesis and, 229S

mortality rates, 782

multi-step tumorigenesis, 422F

nervous tissue growth and, 600–601

Notch and, 215

NSAIDs and, 463

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and, 571–572

surgical treatment of, *SS17.2*

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205

prostatic acid phosphatase (PAP), 743F, 745

proteases, 17

cell signal transmission, 16S

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655

invasion-metastasis cascade, 615, 616F

wound healing, 565, 566F

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 847–850, 850S–852S

protein kinase A (PKA), 812F

protein kinase C (PKC), 184T, 190, 191F, 458S, 463–464

protein kinases, 28S

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

See also specific kinase names

proteins

adapter proteins, 177, 180F

bridging proteins, 177, 180F

cytoarchitecture / cytoskeleton, 13

druggable proteins, 807–809

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

genotype and phenotype, 12–20, 16S, 17S

glycosylation, 16S

half-life, measurement of, 330–331

human body, number and encoding of, 16S

hybrid proteins, 118–119

isoforms, 15–16

mRNA and protein synthesis, 14–17, 16S, 17S

notation used in text, 112

novel hybrid proteins, 118

oncoproteins, 92–94

orthologs and homologs, 27, 28S

phosphorylation, 16S

post-translational modifications, 16S, 17

stereochemistry, potential drug targets, 811–814, 814S

structural changes and oncogene activation, 117–120

synthesis of, 14

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

See also cell signaling; proteomics

protein sorting, *SS7.5*

protein synthesis

Akt/PKB kinase cell signaling and, 193–198

cycloheximide and, 174, 175

de novo (new) protein synthesis, 174

Myc protein and, 306–307

protein kinases, actions of, 130F–131F

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

proteoforms, 226

proteoglycans, 13F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655, 656F

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) and, 579

tumor microenvironment and, 561–563

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

proteolysis, 20, *SS7.5*

proteomics, 2

proteosomes, 140S, *SS7.5*

prothrombin kringle 2, *SS13.8*

proto-oncogenes, 86–88, 176S

activation of, 107–111

gene amplification techniques, 106, 108F, *SS4.4*

human oncogenes, retroviruses and, 104–107

insertional mutagenesis, 91–92, 92S

LMO2 gene, *SS3.8*

retrovirus activation of, 89–92

retroviruses as carriers of oncogenes, 92–94

synopsis and prospects, 95–96, 120–122

transmission of mutant genes, 269S

in vertebrate genome, 88–89

See also cell signaling; specific gene names

provirus, 82–84

endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 90–92, 92S

Prrx 1 transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636

PS-341 (bortezomib, Velcade), 794T, 795F, 847–850, 850S–852S

pseudogenes, 153

pseudokinases

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 207–208

pseudopregnant mouse model, 257S

PSGL-1 (P-selectin glycoprotein ligand), 766T

PSTAIRE helix, *SS8.2*

PTB domain, 184T

PTC gene, 248T

PTCH1 gene, 216

PTCH gene, 215–216

Pten$^{+/-}$ gene, 194F

PTEN gene, 248T, 251T, 271, 426S, 513T

PTEN-mutants, 197T, 198

PTEN-negative tumors, 843

PTEN phosphatase, 223, 809S

PTEN protein, 198, 260S

PTK7 receptor, 208F

PTMs. *See* post-translational modifications (PTMs)

PTP (phosphotyrosine phosphatase), 179–180, 179S

PTPN11 gene, 269S

Puckle, James, 171

PUMA protein, 340–341, 354–359, 361, 363F

purifying selection, 435

purines, 492–493, 794T

Purkinje cells, 41F

PVRIG (poliovirus receptor-related immunoglobulin) domain, 766T

PVRL2 (poliovirus receptor related 2), 766T

Pygopus, 207F

pyknosis, 349

pyrimidines, 492–493

deamination reactions, 491–492

UV radiation and, 495

pyroptosis, 369

pyruvate, 467–470

pyruvate kinase (PK), glycolysis in cancer cells, 469–470

Q

quasi-mesenchymal phenotypic state, 569–570, 646

R

rabies virus, 70S

Rac protein, 196–197, 196S, 198–200

RAD50 gene, 513T

RAD50/Mre11 protein, 514

RAD50 protein, 516

RAD51 protein, 514, 516, 517–518

radionuclides, 793

radiotherapy, 441–442, 598, 793, *SS13.10*

Raf/B-Raf protein, 186F, 225

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 341

melanoma and, 852–855

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

raf gene, 446T

Raf kinase, Ras activation pathways, 186–189

raf oncogene, 106T

Raf protein, 184T

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223, 449S

Ras-regulated control of inositol lipids, 192

RAG mice, 79S, 559

Ral-A protein, 198–200

Ral-B protein, 198–200

Ral-GEF protein, 186F

Ral proteins, 196S

RANK ligand (RANKL), 680, 682F, 683F

RANK receptor, *SS8.3*

Ran protein, 196S

RARb2 gene, 251T

RASA1 gene, 260T

RASA2 gene, 260T

RASAL2 gene, 260T

Ras effectors, 185–186, *SS6.9*

Ras-GAP (Ras GTPase-activating protein), 180F, 181, 218–221

Ras-MAPK pathway, 394S

ras oncogene, 24–26, 117, 120–121, 159, 189

activation of, 108–111

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 629–630

GLUT1 gene expression, 469

Notch and, 215

oncogene addiction, 845S

oncogene collaboration, 446T, 447T

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 443–448

TGF-β, effects on tumorigenic cells, 622, 623–625

tumor cell attrition, 382, 382S

tumor initiation and promotion, 458S

Ras oncoprotein, 159

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204, 282

drug targets for, 809S

PI3K activation by, 192

Ras protein functions as G-protein, 159–162, 162S, 164–165

Ras protein, 17, 25–26, 175

angiogenesis inhibition, *SS13.8*

ARF and p53-mediated apoptosis, 341

B-Raf mutations and melanoma, 852–855

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell senescence and, 347–348

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223, 226–228, 229S, 449S, 450–451

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177

control of inositol lipids and Akt/PKB kinase, 189–198, 196S

dominant-negative mutant of, 302

downstream signaling pathways of, 184–189

effector loop, 185–186

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 208–211

NF1 protein, negative regulation of Ras, 254–259, 257S, 260S

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 337, 338S, 339F

pRb phosphorylation and, 301–302

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

Ral-A and Ral-B cell signaling, 198–200

SH2, SH3, and Ras activation, 182, 184

signaling, subtleties of, *SS6.4*

small G proteins, 196S

ras proto-oncogene, 162, 236

RASSF1A gene, 248T

RASSF1A promoter, 250F

rat

adrenocortical cells, 447T

embryonic fibroblasts (REFs), 444–448

fibroblasts, 447T

kidney cells, 446T

-mouse leukemia virus, 88

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

Schwann cells, 447T

rate-limiting events, 417, *SS11.1*

rational drug design, Gleevec as model for, 830–841, 841S

See also anti-cancer therapies

RB1 tumor suppressor gene, *SS1.3*

Rb gene, 238–239, 239S, 248T, 251T, 269S, *SS8.10*, *SS12.11*

cloning of, 244

encoded protein function, 253

loss of heterozygosity (LOH) in tumors, 242–244

tumor suppressor genes, loss of function, 240–242, 250

Rb protein. *See* pRb protein

reactive oxygen species (ROS), 214, 411

cell cycle regulation and, 282

DNA repair mechanisms, 504–506

endogenous processes, mutations from, 493–494, 493S

KEAP1 protein, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

superoxide dismutase, 501

reactive stroma, 625, 626F

reading frame, 110

isoforms and, 15–16

receptor co-activator protein, 113T

receptors, 125–126

as active oncoproteins, 117–120

altered growth factor receptors as oncogenes, 135–138

chemokine receptors, 153

cognate receptors, 184

cytokines, 147, 148F

dimerization, 136–138, 140S

discoidin domain receptors, 155

for environmental communication, 147–153

fusion proteins, 145–146

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 151–153

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

mutant receptor genes and human germ line, 146S

negative-feedback mechanisms, 146–147

Notch, 148–149

nuclear receptors, 153–154

overexpression, causes of, 140S

Patched, 149–150

protein:protein interaction motifs, *SS6.3*

serpentine receptors, 149–150

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

synopsis and prospects, 162–167

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

Wnt factors, 150–151

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs), 147, 148F

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 219–221

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

complex signaling cascades and, 177

cytokine receptors, 147, 148F

EGF receptor function as, 132–135

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

gene mutations, transmission of, 146S

integrin-mediated modulation of, *SS5.9*

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

ligand-mediated dimerization, *SS5.5*

as oncoprotein, 93T

phosphorylation and cytoplasmic signaling controls, 177–182, 179S, 183S

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

RTK oncoprotein, 89T, 113T

RTK signaling, overview of, *SS6.2*

Src protein function as, 129–132

synopsis and prospects, 162–167

transphosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinases and, 141–147, 145S, 146S, *SS5.6*

tumor pathogenesis and, 135T

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F, 207–208

recessive alleles, 3

cancer phenotype and, 234–236

retinoblastoma, 238–239, 239S

reciprocal translocations, 10F, 11S

recombinant DNA techniques, 109, *SS3.7*

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

gene therapy, *SS3.8*

minigenes, 756

Northern blot, *SS4.3*

Southern blot, *SS4.3*

targeted gene deletion, mouse models, 257S, 258F

See also monoclonal antibodies (moAbs)

rectal carcinoma

compromised immune system and, 700

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

RFLP markers and, 245–247

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 702–703

See also colorectal cancer (CRC)

recurrent mutation, 11F, 11S

red meat, 497–500, *SS12.3–SS12.4*

reductionist science, 549–550

reduplication, *SS4.4*

Reed-Sternberg cells, 554F

refractory response to treatment, 595

regulatory T cells (T_{reg}), 715S

checkpoint inhibition therapies and, 765–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

immune checkpoints and, 728–730, 730S

macrophages and, 723

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

tumor progression and, 725–727

rejection, immune system and, 697–700

relapse, cancer stem cells and, 441–442

rel gene, 106T, 211–214, 302S

relocalization, 175

See also intracellular localization

remission, 802

renal cancer

anti-cancer therapies, 596

hereditary papillary renal cancer, 146S, 269S

intra-tumor diversification, 434F, 435

See also kidney carcinoma

renal cell carcinoma, 36T

mutational signatures, 533S

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tyrosine kinase GF receptor alterations and, 138T

replication fork, 390–391

replication stress, 541

replicative immortality, 316

See also cell immortalization

replicative senescence, 377–378, *SS10.3*

repression, gene, 14

DNA methylation and, 23–24

proto-oncogene activation and, 108–111

reproductive clones, *SS1.2*

resection, 685

residual disease, 674

resorption, 679

responder genes, 21

restriction endonuclease cleavage sites, 246F

restriction enzymes, *SS4.3*

restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), 245–247, 248T, 249T

restriction point (R point), 281–282, *SS8.1*

CDK inhibitors, role of, 287–289, 291

cyclin and cyclin-dependent kinases, role of, 286, 287

E2F transcription factors, pRB and, 297–300, 301F

pRb and regulation of cell cycle, 292–297, 294S

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

R-point perturbation in human tumors, 313F

ret gene, 146S, 269S

reticuloendotheliosis virus, 106T, 211–214

retina

cell differentiation, 309–311

tumor formation, 39–42

retinoblastoma, 39–42, 108F, 112S, 250, 269S, 312T, *SS8.10*, *SS10.1*

age and, 418F

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

tumor suppressor genes and, 236–239, 239S

See also Rb gene

retinoic acid, *SS8.9*

induced differentiation of cancer cells, 801–802

retinoic acid receptor (RARα) protein, 802

retinoic acid receptor (RARβ) protein, 802

retinoids, 153–154

Ret receptor, 138T

retroviral genomes, 82–84, 86–88, 107–111

retroviral provirus, *SS1.5*

Retroviridae, 121T

retroviruses, 82–84

endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

gene therapy and, *SS3.8*

HIV and, *SS3.6*

oncogene, human and, 104–107, 108F

as oncogene carriers, 92–94, 120–122

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–88

proto-oncogene activation by, 89–92

retroviral theory, *SS3.3*

telomerase holoenzyme functions, 392–394, 394S

See also oncogenes

reverse transcriptase (RT), 27–28, 82–84

HIV and retroviruses, *SS3.6*

telomerase holoenzyme functions, 392–394, 394S

in viruses, 71F

reverse transcription, 82–84

RFLP (restriction fragment length polymorphism), 245–247

rhabdoid predisposition syndrome, 249T

rhabdomyosarcoma, 37T, 38F, 138T

RHAMM gene, 513T

Rheb protein, 196S

rhesus monkeys, 74, 77

rhodopsin, 152F

Rho guanine nucleotide exchange proteins (Rho-GEFs), 190F

rhom-1 oncogene, 115T

rhom-2 oncogene, 115T

Rho protein, 196, 196S, 209–211

ribociclib, 812

ribosomes, 14, 17, 70S

RIPK1 kinase, 368–369

RIPK3 kinase, 368–369

Rip-Tag model of tumor progression, 588–592, 591S, 596–598, 661F

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and invasiveness, 618F–619F

tumor-associated macrophages and, 640F, 641, 642F

RISC (RNA-induced silencing complex), 24–26, *SS1.5*

rituximab, 748–749, 748S, 799, 841S

RIZ gene, 513T

RNA

long noncoding RNAs, 17

primers, telomeric DNA and, 390–391

role in protein structure and function, 14

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 791, 792S

synthesis of, 14

tumor origins of RNA expression, 789–792, 789S, 792S

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

See also circRNA (small circular RNA); hnRNA (heterogeneous nuclear RNA); lncRNA (long noncoding RNAs); mRNA; scRNA-seq (single-cell sequencing); shRNAs (small hairpin RNAs); siRNAs (small interfering RNAs)

RNAi (RNA interference), 265, *SS1.5*

RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), 24–26, *SS1.5*

RNA polymerase

E2F transcription factors and, 297

nucleotide-excision repair (NER) and, 506

viruses, life cycle of, 70S

RNA polymerase II (pol II), 20–21

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 154

Myc protein and, 304S

RNA polymerase III promoter, *SS1.5*

RNA-seq, 18F, 19F

RNA viruses

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 507, 508S

retroviral genomes, 82–84

structures of, 70S, 71F

Rockefeller Institute, 68

rods (eye), 41F

Ror1, 207–208

Ror2, 207–208

ROS. *See* reactive oxygen species (ROS)

ros gene, 145F

Ros receptor, 145F

Rothmund-Thomson syndrome, 511T

Rous, Francis Peyton, 31, 67, 68–69, 70S, 88, *SS2.6*, *SS3.1*

Rouse, Peyton, 56

Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), 68–74, 70S, 75T, 102, 120, 121, *SS3.1*, *SS3.6*

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–88

retroviral genomes, 82–84

Src, SH2 and SH3 domain functions, 182, 183S

Src kinase, actions of, 130F–131F

src-specific DNA probe, 84–86, 85S

R point (restriction point), 281–282, *SS8.1*

CDK inhibitors, role of, 287–289, 291

cyclin and cyclin-dependent kinases, role of, 286, 287

E2F transcription factors, pRB and, 297–300, 301F

pRb and regulation of cell cycle, 292–297, 294S

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

R-point perturbation in human tumors, 313F

R-spondin, 451

RSV. *See* Rous sarcoma virus (RSV)

RT. *See* reverse transcriptase (RT)

RTK. *See* receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs)

Rubin, Harry, 69, 73, *SS3.3*

Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome, 248T

RUNX1 gene, 249T

Ryk receptor, 208F

S

Saccharomyces cerevisiae, 2, 7F, 182, 315, 399–401

sacituzumab govitecan, 752T, 754, 814S

S-adenosylmethionine, *SS12.5*

Saimiri monkeys, 77

Salmonella, 57–60

salt, 466T

salvage chemotherapy, 770F, 771

SAP-1 transcription factor, 188

sarcomas, 313T

chemotherapy for, 794T

familial syndromes, 511T

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

Mdm2 gene in, 335–340, 338S

oncogenes and, 89T

p53 gene mutations and, 327

Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), 68–74

SNP309 polymorphisms and, 338S

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT), 399–401

tumor-associated stromal cells, 553

tumor formation, 36–42

satellite sequences, 487–490

scatter factor (SF), 144S

motility, mechanisms of, 656–657, 658F, 659F, 660F

SCE (sister chromatid exchange), *SS2.9*

SCF. *See* stem cell factor (SCF)

Schistosoma, 466T

Schistosoma haematobium, 738–740

Schizosaccharomyces pombe, 7F

Schwann cells, 447T

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 218F

neurofibromas, 255F, 257–258, 259F

tumor formation, 39–42

Schwannoma, 39–42

SCID (severe combined immunodeficiency), 79S, 518–519, 559, *SS3.8*

sci gene, 302S

SCLC. *See* small-cell lung carcinoma (SCLC)

screening protocols, 424

scRNA-seq (single-cell RNA sequencing), 18F, 19F, 791, 792S

scrotal cancer, 55T

Sec5 protein, 198–200

sec63 gene, 513T

secondary drug resistance, 844

second messengers, 190, 191F, 209

See also intracellular hormone

second-site cancers, 786, 793–796

See also metastasis

secretomes, 128S

sections, tissue, 32

Securin gene, *SS12.11*

selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM), 154

selectivity, of chemotherapy, 796–800, 798S

self, immune system and, 697–698, 709

See also immune system; major histocompatibility complex (MHC)

self-renewal process, *SS12.1*

seminoma, *ras* oncogene activation, 111T

senescence, cell

generational clock and, 383–384, 394–395, *SS10.1*

p-53 protein dependent senescence, 345–348

ras oncogene and, 382S

replicative senescence, *SS10.3*

telomeres and, 384–388, 397S, 411

in tissue culture, *SS3.2*

tissue culture conditions and, *SS10.3*

See also cell immortalization

senescence-associated heterochromatin foci (SAHF), 345–348, 397S

sequence motif, 21

serial passaging, 377–378

serine

phosphorylation, 16S, 130F, 132, 188

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

serine/threonine (Ser/Thr) kinases, 113T, 190, 191F

cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 283–286, 286S, 287F

as oncoprotein, 93T

PH (pleckstrin homology) domains and, 193, 194F

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

SERM (selective estrogen receptor modulator), 154

serpentine receptors, 149–150

serum

cell growth regulating signals, 281–282

cell signaling and, 127–128, 128S, *SS6.1*

serum-free media, 127, 128S, *SS3.2*

serum starvation, 173, *SS6.1*

serum-stimulated fibroblasts, 573–575

set point, 630

SET protein, 449S

Sevenless gene, 176–177

severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 79S, 518–519, 559, *SS3.8*

sex chromosomes, 6, 8, *SS1.1*

SF. *See* splicing factors (SFs)

SF (scatter factor), 144S

sFlt-1, *SS13.8*

SFV. *See* Shope fibroma virus (SFV)

SH1 domain, 177–182, 179S, 183S

SH2-dependent ubiquitylation factor, 89T

SH2 domain, 177–182, 179S, 183S, 184T

cell adhesion receptors, signals from, 202–204

cell signaling feedback mechanisms, 219–221

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

of PI3K, 192

protein:protein interaction motifs, *SS6.3*

Ras activation and signal specificity, 182, 184

SH2/SH3 adapter oncoprotein, 89T

SH3 domain, 177–182, 179S, 183S, 184T

proline-rich sequences as ligands, 182

protein:protein interaction motifs, *SS6.3*

Ras activation and signal specificity, 182, 184

Shc protein, 184, 184T, 185F

complex signaling cascades and, 176–177, 177F

Grb2, intermolecular links with, 184, 185F

sheep

Dolly, genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

Jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus, 94

pulmonary carcinoma, 210T, 211

Shelley, Mary, 323

shelterin, *SS10.4*

Shope, Richard, 74

Shope fibroma virus (SFV), 75T, 77

Shope papilloma virus (SPV), 75T, 76

SHP-1, 179S

SHP2, 94F

SHP-2 protein, 184T

shRNAs (small hairpin RNAs), 265, *SS1.5*

shunts, 666, 677

signals, cell. *See* cell signaling; cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

signal tranducers and activators of transcription (STATs), 200–201

simian sarcoma virus, 89T, 106T, 138–141, 140S

single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNAseq), 791, 792S

single-chain variable region fragment (scFv), 758F, 759–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 245, 247, 338S, *SS7.3*

single-strand DNA (ssDNA)

p53 protein signaling and, 334, 335S

reactive oxygen species and, 493–494, 493S

single-strand (ss) nick, *SS4.4*

Sipuleucel-T vaccine, 742–745

siRNAs (small interfering RNAs), *SS1.5*

SIRPα (signal regulatory protein alpha), 766T

sis oncogene, 106T, 138–141, 140S

sister chromatid exchange (SCE), *SS2.9*

skeletal muscle, tumor formation, 37T, 38F

ski gene, 302S

skin, 55T, 739T

adenomatous growths, 45, 47F

age and, 418F

basal cell carcinoma, 215–216, 248T, 495, 610

cells in aging tissues, *SS10.2*

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

embryonic cell layers, *SS2.2*

familial syndromes, 511T

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

keratinocytes, 36

melanin and melanocytes, 501, 501F

mice, experiments in, 454–458

p53 protein and, 335S

PTCH gene, Gorlin syndrome and, 215–216

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 444

stem cells and papilloma growth, *SS11.7*

tumor formation in, 35–36

ultraviolet (UV) radiation, 494–495

xeroderma pigementosum (XP), 508–510, 509S

See also melanoma; squamous cell carcinoma

Skp2, 314–315

Sky1 (SR-protein-specific kinase), 812F

SKY (spectral karyotyping) analysis, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F, 58F, 410F, *SS8.1*

SLC23A1 gene, 513T

Slug transcription factor, 622F, 627F, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636, 645

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) and metastasis, 647–651, 647S

Smac/DIABLO, 358–359

Smad2 protein, 216–217

Smad4 gene, 426S

Smad4 protein, 216–217, 260S, 451

Smad transcription factors, 212F, 213F, 216–217, 224

TGF-β and phenotypic change, 307–309

small-cell lung carcinoma (SCLC), 36T, 42, 112S, 312T, 847

EML4-ALK fusion oncoprotein, 522

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210–211

Hedgehog signaling pathway, 216

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

small G protein, 93T, 106T, 113T, 196S

small intestine, tumor formation in, 35–36, 35F

small non-histone nuclear proteins, 116S–117S

smallpox virus, 77

small T oncoprotein, 449–450, 449S

Rip-Tag transgenic mice, 588–592, 591S

α-SMA, 572, 573F

Smoothened (Smo), 149–150

Hedgehog and, 212F, 213F, 215–216

smooth muscle

growth factor genes as oncogenes, *sis* and, 138–141, 140S

tumor formation, 37T, 38F

SN-38, 752T, 814S

Snail transcription factors, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636, 644, 645F

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) and metastasis, 647–651, 647S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 626–628

SNF5 gene, 249T

SNP309 polymorphism, 338S

SNPs (single-nucleotide polymorphisms), 245, 247

somatic cells

clones, genomic integrity and, *SS1.2*

tumor classification scheme, 48F, *SS2.4*

somatic mutations, 9, 12

hypermutation, *SS15.1*

See also mutations

Sonic Hedgehog (Hh), 150, 216

Sorafenib (Nexavar), 600T

Sos *(son of sevenless)* gene, 176–177, 177F, 269S

Sos protein

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

drug targets, selection of, 811

Ral-A and Ral-B cell signaling, 198–200

Ras activation and signal specificity, 182, 184

Southern, Edwin, *SS4.3*

Southern blot, 105, 107F, *SS4.3*

Sox 9 transcription factor, 617F, 645, 649–650

Sp1 transcription factor, 394S

spectral karyotyping (SKY) analysis, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F, 58F, 410F, *SS8.1*

sperm cells, 6, 8

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

mutations causing cancer, 9, 12, 269S

teratomas, 43–44

S phase, cell cycle, 278–280

crisis and, 386–388

cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases, cell cycle regulation and, 283–286, 286S

error-prone DNA repair, 506–507

p53 protein, damaged DNA repair by, 342F, 343–345

spheroids, 559, 637–643

spi-1 gene, 302S

spindle assembly checkpoint (SAC), 527

spindle cell sarcoma, 38F

spindle fibers, 318F, 525–527

Spiroptera, *SS2.6*

splenocytes, *SS16.1*

splicing

circRNA and, 26

RNA and, 14–17, 16S, 17S

splicing factors (SFs), 16

sporadic retinoblastoma, 236–239, 239S, 250

sporadic (nonfamilial) tumors, 327

Sprycel (Dasatinib), 600T, 837–838

SPV. *See* Shope papilloma virus (SPV)

squamous cell carcinoma, 36, *SS9.2*

age and, 418F

alkylating agents for, 786T

cells in tumor microenvironment, 552F

cervix, 37F

hypermethylated genes in, 251T

UV radiation and, 495, 495F

squamous epithelium, transition zones, 44

src gene, 84F, 130F, 447T, *SS3.6*

GLUT1 gene expression, 469

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–88

in Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), 84–86, 85S

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

src-specific DNA probe, 84–86, 85S

Src kinase, 209–211, 225, *SS5.2*

Src protein, 84F, 175, 180F, 184T, 812F

activation loop, 183S

anti-Src antibodies, making of, *SS5.1*

cell adhesion signals from, 282

domain structure of, 177–182, 179S, 183S

Rous sarcoma virus and c-Src protein, 182, 183S

SH2 domain, 182, 183S

SH3 domain, 182, 183S

STAT3 activation, 201

tyrosine kinase function of, 129–132, 134

tyrosine phosphorylation and signaling controls, 177–182, 179S, 183S

Srf-1 gene, 173T

staging of tumors, *SS2.4*

staining techniques, *SS2.1*, *SS2.4*

standardized incidence ratio (SIR), 701F

STAT1, 201

STAT3, 201, *SS8.3*

STAT5, *SS8.3*

STATs (signal tranducers and activators of transcription), 224, 302S

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

steady-state concentrations, 672

steel factor RTK oncoprotein, 89T

stem cell factor (SCF), 135T, 139, 591S

stem cells

anti-cancer therapy strategies, 802

autocrine signaling loops, 140

as cancer cells-of-origin, 483–485, 484S, 485S

conditions required for stem cell maintenance, 440S–441S

dedifferentiation and, 485S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and, 643–646

hematopoietic malignancies and, 484S

hierarchies of, 439–441, 439S

in human tissues, 480–483

intestinal, differentiation of, 260–261

Mdr1 protein and, 485

niches, 440S–441S

Paneth cells and, 440S–441S

tumor stem cells, 437–443, 439S, 441S, 643–646

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 204–208

stem cell therapies, teratomas and, 43–44, 43F

stereochemistry

kinase cascades, effects of, 188

potential drug targets and, 811–814, 814S

protein kinases, dimerization of, *SS6.5*

signaling controls and, 177

steroid sex hormones

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

tumor promotion and, 459–460

stochastic mechanisms, 446

stomach cancer

age and, 416–417, 416F

bacterial cancers, 94–95, *SS3.9*

cell signal transduction in cancer cells, 222–223

compromised immune system and, 700, 701F

E-cadherin gene expression in, 621

gastric adenocarcinoma, 94F

hypermethylated genes in, 253F

mortality rates, *SS17.1*

NSAIDs and, 463

oncogenes and, 105, 106T

tumor formation, 35–36, 37F

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

stratification, microarrays, *SS2.4*

stress-activated apoptotic pathway, 359–362, 361S, 363F

stress-induced ligands, 722

stroma, 34–35, 42F

complexity in epithelial cancers, 551–559

desmoplastic stroma, 572, 573F

ECM clearance and invasiveness, 652–655

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 625–633, 631S

extracellular matrix and tumor microenvironment, 561–563

independence of some cancer cells from, *SS13.3*

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

macrophages and myeloid cells, tumor stroma activation, 576–582, 578S

reactive stroma, 625, 626F

stromal cells, metastases and, 558–559

stromal cells, tumor-derived RNA and, 789

stromal cells, tumorigenesis and, 575–576, 577F

stromal components in carcinoma, 550–551

synopsis and prospects, 601–606

See also tumor cell signaling networks

stroma-derived factor-1 (SDF-1/CXCL12), 557, 576, 577F

stromelysin-1, 567T

Sts-1 protein, 140S

Sts-2 protein, 140S

SU5416 anti-cancer agent, 596–598

SU6668 anti-cancer agent, 596–598

subcutaneous injection, 78

submicroscopic mutations, 242

SUFU, 216

sugar chains, post-translational modifications, 16S, 17

SUMO groups, 17, 226

Sumo protein, *SS7.5*

Sunitinib/Sutent, 600T

sunscreen, 509S

super-enhancers, 21

supernumerary centrosomes, 527–528

superoxide dismutase, 501

superoxide ion, 493–494, 493S

supranormal oxygen, 379

surgery, stimulation of tumor growth, 567S

surgical oncology, 792–793, *SS17.2*

surrogate marker, 243, 661–662, 820F, 821

survivin, 811

SV40 virus, 74, 75F, 75T, 76F, 447T

DNA replication, 80, 81F

large T antigen, senescence and, 378–380

mesothelioma and, *SS3.4*

p53 protein, discovery of, 324, 324F, 343

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 293–297, 294S

retroviruses, 82–84

Rip-Tag transgenic mice, 588–592, 591S

tumor viruses, integration with host DNA, 79–82

Syk protein, 180F

synchronous growth and division, 173, 284

syncytium, 234–236

syngeneic host mice, 78, 324, 698–700

synthetic chemicals, cancer risk and, 500S

synthetic lethality, 803, 804S–805S

synthetic lethal screen, 272

systemic anaplastic large-cell lymphoma, 752T

T

T24/EJ human bladder carcinoma cell line, *SS4.5*

T315I, 835, 837F, 838F

T790M mutant, 846–847

tal-1 oncogene, 115T

tal-2 oncogene, 115T

tal gene, 302S

talin, 156–159, 158S

tamoxifen, 154, 229S, 257S, 258F, 306

tan-1 oncogene, 115T

T antigens (tumor-associated proteins), 79–82

Tarceva (Erlotinib), 600T, 813F, 842–847, 845S, *SS17.8*

tar constituents, 454

TATA Box, 20–21

taxane, 753

tax gene, 93–94

taxol, 796, 797T

Tax oncoprotein, 92–94

taxonomy, tumor classification scheme, 48F, *SS2.4*

Taxus brevifolia, 796

TAZ transcription factor, 217, 218F, 224

T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (T-ALLs), 215, *SS4.4*

T-cell exhaustion, 728–730, 730S, 771–773, 773S

T-cell leukemia, 92–94, 115T, 149

T-cell lymphoma, 93T, 214, 508S, 739T

T-cell receptors (TCRs), 706–707

adoptive cell transfers and, 755–757, 756S

genetic diversification of, 708–709

germline genes and antibody diversity, *SS15.1*

TCF-4 gene, 513T

Tcf/Lef proteins, 205, 206F, 262–265

Tcf/Lef transcription factors, 207F, 618F–619F

T cytotoxic cells (T_c), 714–715, 715S, 716S–717S, 717, 718F

T-DM1 (Ado-trastuzumab emtansine), 752T

T-DXd (Fam-trastuzumab deruxtecannxki), 752T

TEAD transcription factor, 218F

telomerase, 411–412

anti-neoplastic mechanism, 452

body mass and telomerase activity, 395–396, *SS11.10*

cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

ciliates as source for, *SS10.6*

in human familial syndrome, *SS10.7*

mammalian cell transformation and, 452, *SS11.10*

in mice stem cells, *SS10.8*

role in mice, 401–406, 449

telomere regeneration and, 391–396, 394S

TRAP assay for, *SS10.5*

telomeres, 385

alternative lengthening of telomeres mechanism (ALT), 399–401, *SS10.4*

cells in aging tissues, *SS10.2*

generational clock and, 384–388, *SS10.1*

molecular structure of, 389–391

rodent *vs.* human structure of, 448–449

shortening of, 345–348

synopsis and progress, 409–412

telomerase and telomere regeneration, 391–396, 394S

telomere-associated proteins, *SS10.4*

telomere collapse and chronic inflammation, 408S

telomere shortening, 386

telomeric restriction fragments (TRFs), 386F

telophase, 278–280, 284

Temin, Howard, 69, 73, 82–84, 102, *SS3.3*, *SS3.6*

temozolomide, 490F, 504, 786T, 795F

temperature-sensitive (ts) mutants, 73

tenascin, 652–655, 656F

teratomas, 43–44

TERC gene, 393

TERRA (telomere repeat-containing RNA), 411

testes, 6, 8

testicular cancer, 313T, 418, 786T, 796, 797–800, 798S

testosterone, as tumor promoter, 459–460, 466T

Tetrahymena thermophila, *SS10.6*

tetrameric states, homotetramer, 328–330

tetraploidy, 521

tetraspanins, 167

TF. *See* transcription factors (TF)

TGFB2 gene, 248T

TGFBR2 gene, 251T

TGFα (transforming growth factor-α), 139, 165, 554, 555F, 591T

TGF-α gene, 447T

TGF-β (transforming growth factor-β), 147–148

angiogenic factors, 591T

breast cancer metastasis and, 684S

CDK inhibitors and cell cycle regulation, 287–289, 290F

cell cycle progression, blocking of, 307–309

cell growth and division, regulation of, 277

cell senescence and, 345–348

dual address signaling pathways, 212F, 213F, 216–217

effects on tumorgenic cells, 622, 623–625

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628–630

G_1 phase, growth regulating signals, 281–282

haploinsufficiency, 260S

heterotypic signaling and, 554–556

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

macrophages and tumor development, 723

mutations and tumor progression, 426S

Myc protein and, 305–306

regulatory T cells and, 726–727

tumor angiogenesis and, 584

wound healing, 565

TGF-β1 (transforming growth factor-β1), 127–128, 565, 573

TGR-βRII (type II TGFβ- receptor), 511–512, 513T

therapeutic index (TI), 750

drug targets, selection of, 803, 805–811, 807S, 809S

therapeutic vaccines, 739–740

See also vaccines

therapeutic window, 822, 823F

Thermus aquaticus, 489F

thioguanine, 794T

Thomas, Lewis, 479

3’ untranslated region (3’ UTR), *SS1.5*

chromosomal translocations, 116S–117S

threonine

phosphorylation, 16S, 130F, 132, 188

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

thrombin, 571F

thrombocytopenia, 828, 838–839

thrombopoiesis, 201

thrombopoietin (TPO), 89T, 147, 148F, 200–201

thrombospondin, 155T, *SS13.8*

thrombospondin-1 (Tsp-1), 573

thymidine kinase, 300

thymine, deamination reactions, 491–492

thymine glycol, 493–494, 493S, 494F

thymomas, 446T

thyroid adenomas, 34, 210T, 211

thyroid carcinoma, 138T, 312T

colonization and, 677

familial medullary thyroid carcinoma, 146S

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

PI3K pathway, alteration of, 197T

ras oncogene activation, 111T

tumor suppressor genes, human, 248T

thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR), 210T, 211

TIGIT (T-cell immunoglobulin and ITIM domain), 766T

TIM-3 (T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain-3), 766T

time to progression, 745

TIMP-2, *SS13.8*

TIMPs (tissue-inhibitors of metalloproteinases), 655, *SS13.8*

TIP multi-drug protocol, 797–800, 798S

tissue culture, 69, 71–72, *SS3.2*

cancer cell lines and stromal support, 560S

cell fusion technique, 234–236

cell lines, 378–380

cell models for drug candidates, 815–819, 815S, 817S

cell signaling and, 126–127, 128S

culture conditions and senescence, *SS10.3*

human cancer cell lines, 559

integrin receptors, 154–159, 158S

organoids, *SS3.2*

replicative senescence, 377–378, *SS10.3*

serial passaging, 377–378

serum starvation, G_0 state, 173, *SS6.1*

TGF-β, effects on tumorigenic cells, 622, 623–625

tumor viruses, cell proliferation and, 77, 78F

See also cell immortalization

tissue factor, 571F

tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs), 655, *SS13.8*

tissue microenvironment (TME), 431

tissue-of-origin, *SS2.3*

tissues

cell differentiation, 17–20

hematopoiesis as tissue model, *SS12.1*

invasion-metastasis cascade, 612–615, 616F

morphogenesis, 31

organization, in humans, 480–483

progressive development of cancer, 44–49

stem cells in, 480–483

tumor formation in, 32–42

See also extracellular matrix (ECM)

tissue samples, histopathological techniques, *SS2.1*

tissue sections, 32

tissue-specific genes, 18–20

tissue-specific promoter (TSP), 258F

T-loops, 292S, 389–391, 400–401

tls/erg oncogene, 120T

T lymphocytes (T cells)

adoptive cell transfer, 754–757, 756S

CAR T (chimeric antigen receptor) cells, 754–757, 756S

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 757–761, 759S, 761S

CD4 T cells, 714, 715S, 716S–717S, 725–727

CD8 T cells, 714, 715S, 716S–717S, 730S, 743S–744S

cytotoxic (*See* cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs, T_c))

dendritic cell activation of, 714–715, 717, 718F

effector T cells (T_{eff}), 772–773, 773S

genes for, stochastic diversification of, 708–709

germline genes and T-cell diversity, *SS15.1*

graft-*versus*-host reactions, 761S

helper T cells (T_H), 710–715, 711S, 715S, 716S–717S, 717, 718F, 723

hematopoiesis, overview of, *SS12.1*

hematopoietic malignancies, 39, 40F

immune system, overview of, 705–707, 708F

memory T cells (T_{mem}), 772–773, 773S

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

naive T cells, 715

proliferation of, 93–94

regulatory T cells (T_{reg}), 715S, 723, 725–730, 730S, 765–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 79S, 518–519, 559, *SS3.8*

subtypes and roles of, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

Tax oncoprotein and, 93–94

T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (T-ALLs), 215, *SS4.4*

T-cell exhaustion, 728–730, 730S, 771–773, 773S

T-cell leukemia, 92–94, 115T, 149

T-cell lymphoma, 93T, 214, 508S, 739T

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and, 703, 704F

in tumor microenvironment, 552F

vaccines as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

See also T-cell receptors (TCRs)

TMB (tumor mutational burden), 529–531

TME. *See* tumor microenvironment (TME, TMEN)

TMPR32/ERG translocation, 522

TNFAIP3, 789

TNFR1 gene, 366

TNF-α, 214, 464, 591T, 637–643, 765S

TNF-β receptors and ligands, 140

tobacco, 466T, 496–497, 523F

tolerance, immunologic, 697–700, 699F, *SS5.1*

topoinhibition, 71–72

topoisomerases, 279–280, 752T

TP53 gene, 249T, 324–326, 326F 327F

TPA (12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13- acetate), 454

TpG dinucleotides, 491–492

TPO (thrombopoietin), 89T, 147, 148F, 200–201

TPO receptor oncoprotein, 89T

TPTE protein, 743S–744S

tracheal cancer, 700

traits, Mendelian genetics, 2–4

transactivation domains, 297–299

transcription, 14

in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 118–119, 120T

E2F transcription factors, effects of, 297–300

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

ERK kinase phosphorylation and, 188

gene expression controls, 20–24

gene expression patterns, 17–20

Gli2 transcription factor, 149–150

Hippo cell signaling circuit and, 217, 218F

HPV genome integration and, *SS3.5*

hybrid proteins and, 119

JAK-STAT signaling pathway and, 200–201

myc oncogene activation, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

Notch receptor, 149

p53 gene mutations, effect on function, 330, 331F

proto-oncogene activation and, 107–111

retroviral activation of proto-oncogenes, 90–92

Smad transcription factors, 212F, 213F, 216–217

Tax oncoprotein, 93–94

tumor suppressor gene inactivation, 247, 249–252, 253F

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F

β-catenin and, 204–208, *SS6.7*

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

transcriptional pausing, 21

transcription-coupled repair (TCR), 506

transcription factors (TF), 113T

bHLH transcription factors, role of, 303–307, 304S

cyclin functions and, 286S

cytoplasmic signaling pathways, 174–175

drug targets, selection of, 807–808, 810–811

E2F transcription factors, pRB cell cycle regulation and, 297–300, 301F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 626–628, 629F, 632F, 633F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions and embryogenesis, 633–637, 637S

gene expression and, 20–24

hTERT gene expression and, 394S

low-molecular-weight lipophilic ligands, 153–154

Myc protein, role of, 302–307, 302S, 304S

as oncoproteins, 89T, 93T, 302S

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 335–340, 338S

p53 protein function as, 330–332

p53 repair of damaged DNA, 341–345

regulation mechanisms, 330–332

retrovirus-associated oncogenes, 106T

Smad, 212F, 213F, 216–217

telomerase activation in, 393F

TGF-β and cell cycle control, 307–309

tumor invasiveness and, 618F–619F

See also EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs)

transcriptomes, 17–20, *SS2.3*

transdifferentiation, 42–43, 847

transduce, viral genomes, *SS3.7*

transduction, cell signals, 13–14, 125–126

transfection of DNA

cloning transfected oncogenes, *SS4.5*

oncogene detection by, 102–104

transformants, 71–72

transformation, 16, 101–102

hematopoietic malignancies, 484S

human cells resistance to, 448–451, 449S

human oncogenes, retroviruses and, 104–107, 108F

mammalian cells, complexity of, 451–453

oncogenes and proto-oncogenes, 86–88

proto-oncogene activation and, 107–111

retroviral activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

single gene mutations, cell resistance to, 443–448

Src protein functions as tyrosine kinase, 129–132

See also oncogenes

transforming growth factors (TGF), 165

angiogenic factors, 591T

ligand availability, regulation of, 144S

wound healing, 565, 565F

See also cell cycle clock; TGF-α; TGF-β; TGF-β1

transgene expression, 446–448

drug targets, selection of, 805–807

transgenic mice, 447–448

transit-amplifying cells, 439S, 480–481, 485S, *SS12.1*

transitional-cell carcinoma (urinary bladder), 36T

transition mutation, 491–492

transition zones, epithelium, 44

translation, 14, 15–16

activation of, 195T, 196

chromosomal translocations and gene expression, 116S–117S

inhibition of, 195T, 196

unconventional RNA molecules and, 24–26

Wnt signaling, canonical and non-canonical, 205, 206F

See also cytoplasmic signaling circuitry

translocations, 391

bcr-abl, 118–119

Burkitt's lymphoma and, 114–115

cancer genome and, 521–524

in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 118–119

double-strand DNA breaks, 490, 491F

oncoprotein regulation and, 118

proto-oncogene activation and, 115–116, 116S–117S

signaling pathways, organization of, 224–229, 229S

transmembrane domain, 133

transmembrane proteins, mobility of, 141–142, 144

transmission, of endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

transphosphorylation, 141–147, 145S, 146S, *SS5.6*

transplantation

graft-*versus*-host (GVH) reactions, 761S, 775

immune system response, 79S

transversion, 494

TRAP (Telomeric Repeat Amplification Protocol) assay, *SS10.5*

trastuzumab, 749–750, 750S, 752–753, 814S, 821

β-TrCP ubiquitin ligase, 207F

treatment of cancer. *See* anti-cancer therapies

T regulatory cells (T_{reg}), 715S

checkpoint inhibition therapies and, 765–768, 765S, *SS16.2*

immune checkpoints and, 728–730, 730S

macrophages and, 723

tumor progression and, 725–727

tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, 467–470

triple-negative breast cancers (TNBCs), 754

triploidy, 520–521

TrkA receptor, *SS5.7*

Trodelvy, 814S

Trop-2 (trophoblast cell surface antigen), 752T, 754, 814S

trophic growth factors, 159

apoptotic cascades and, 361, 363F

heterotypic signaling, 553–559

tropomyosin, 173T

α-tropomyosin pre-mRNA, 15F

troponin I, *SS13.8*

Trp53 gene, 324–326

TrpRS , *SS13.8*

truncal mutations, 51, 434F, 435

try kinase, 89T

TSC1 gene, 248T, 277F

TSC2, 130–131F, 195T

TSC2 gene, 248T

TSG. *See* tumor suppressor genes (TSG)

t-SNE (T-distributed Stochastic Neighbor Embedding), 18F, 19F

TSP1 gene, *SS13.8*

tuberculosis bacillus, 466T

tuberous sclerosis, 248T, 277F

tubulin, 13F, 14F

tumor-associated antigens (TAAs), 719–721, 774–776, 775S

tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), 579–581, 637–643, 724–725, 726F, 732

tumor-associated neutrophils (TANs), 732

tumor-associated stroma (TAS), 550F, 792S

tumor-associated transplantation antigens (TATAs), 719–721

tumor cell signaling networks, 551S, *SS13.1–SS13.11*

angiogenesis, 557, 558F

angiogenic switch, resulting processes from, 592–594

angiogenic switch, tumor expansion and, 588–592, 591S

anti-angiogenesis therapies for cancer, 594–599, 599S, 600T

extracellular matrix and tumor microenvironment, 561–563

heterotypic signaling, 553–559

macrophages and myeloid cells, 576–582, 578S

nervous tissue and tumor growth, 599–601

normal and neoplastic epithelial tissue, 551–559

stromal cells and tumorigenesis, 575–576

synopsis and prospects, 601–606

tumor access to circulation networks, 582–588, 586S, 587S

tumor-derived RNA and, 789–792, 789S, 792S

tumor vascularization, alternate sources for, 578S

wound healing as model of, 563–575, 567S

tumor-derived RNA expression, 789–792, 789S, 792S

tumorgenic cells, 77, 437

tumoricidal actions, 581

tumorigenesis, 375–376, 415–416, *SS11.1–SS11.14*

age and tumor development, 416–418, 417S

attrition and, 382–383, 382S, 383S

cell generations, regulation of, 376–378, 383–384, *SS10.1*

cell immortalization and, 380–384, 382S, 383S

cells-of-origin, 428–429

chromatid gene alterations and, *SS12.11*

chronic inflammation and, 460–465

crisis and, 383–388

Darwinian evolution and tumor development, 429–431, *SS11.8*

familial polyposis and, 431–432

field cancerization and, 431–432, 433F

genetic and epigenetic alterations and, 424–429, 424S, 426S

glioblastoma, transdifferentiation in, *SS11.4*

gut microbiome as tumor promoter, *SS11.12*

histopathology of multi-step tumor formation, 419–424, 423S

human cells, resistance to immortalization and transformation, 448–451, 449S, 450F

inflammation and NSAIDs, *SS11.14*

initiation, promotion, and progression, 454–458, 458S

integrins and, 158S

intestinal crypts, morphology of, *SS11.9*

intra-tumor diversification, 432–436, 437S

in liver, *SS11.13*

mammalian evolution, cell transformation and, 451–453

mathematics of, *SS11.1*

metabolism, central role of, 465–470

mitogenic agents as tumor promoters, 458–460, 459S

multi-step progression, overview of, *SS11.6*

nonmutagenic agents, role of, 453–458, 458S

normal and neoplastic epithelial tissues, formation of, 551–559

pediatric tumors, mutant driver genes and, *SS11.11*

phenotype shifts and tumor biography, 437S

single gene mutation, cell resistance to, 443–448

somatic mutations and, *SS11.3*

stem cells and papilloma growth, *SS11.7*

stromal cells and, 575–576

synopsis and progress, 409–412, 470–475, 472S

telomerase, cancer cell proliferation and, 396–399, 397S, 399S

telomerase, telomere regeneration and, 391–396, 394S

telomerase, tumor development and, 406–409, 408S, *SS11.10*

telomeres, alternative lengthening mechanism (ALT), 399–401

telomeres, molecular structure of, 389–391

telomeres, role in mice, 401–406

tumor microenvironment (TME, TMEN), 551–552

tumor stem cells, 437–443, 439S, 441S

See also genome, cancer; metastasis

tumorigenicity, 77–79, 438

tumor immunology

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709, 709S

checkpoint to limit immune response, 727–730, 730S

dendritic cell activation of T cells, 714–715, 717, 718F

germline genes, antibody and T-cell diversity and, *SS15.1*

immune system, overview of, 704–707, 708F

immune system and cancer protection, 700–704

immunosurveillance, overview of, 697–700

macrophages and tumor development, 722–725, 726F

MHC and antigen recognition by T cells, 710–713, 711S

natural killer cells, role of, 721–722, 722S, 724F, 725F

regulatory T cells and tumor progression, 725–727

synopsis and prospects, 730–734

T lymphocyte types and roles, 714, 715S, 716S–717S

tumor antigens, response to, 717–721, 719S, 720T

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, 701–704

viral-induced malignancies, 700–701

See also immune system; immunotherapy

tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), 701–704, 727

adoptive cell transfer and, 754–757, 756S

tumor-initiating cells (TICs), 438–439

limiting dilution analysis (LDA) of, 644, 645F

tumor microenvironment (TME, TMEN), 551–552, 556F

chronic inflammation and tumorigenesis, 460–465

extracellular matrix and, 561–563

immune response and, 731–732

intravasation, 642F

monoclonal antibody therapeutics and, 746

nervous tissue and tumor growth, 599–601

synopsis and prospects, 601–606

tumor mutational burden (TMB), 529–531, *SS16.2*

tumor necrosis factors (TNFs)

apoptosis pathways and, 359–362, 361S, 363F

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) and metastasis, 647S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628

tumor-necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), 214, 464, 591T, 637–643, 765S

tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), receptors and ligands, 140

tumor progression, defined, 415–416

See also metastasis; tumorigenesis

tumor promoters, 61, 431, 454–455, 456F

chronic inflammation and, 460–465

gut microbiome as, *SS11.12*

mitogenic agents as, 458–460, 459S

tumor rejection, 78

tumors

anaplastic tumors, 44, *SS2.3–SS2.4*

aneuploid karyotypes, 9, 10F, 10S–11S, 11F

benign and malignant, 33–34

cancer of unknown primary (CUP), 44, *SS2.3–SS2.4*

detection and diagnosis, 784–792, 789S, 792S

dissemination of, 609–612

dominance and recessiveness, 4

in epithelial tissue, 34–38

formation in normal tissues, 32–34

growth in tissue culture, 69, 71

hematopoietic malignancies, 39

melanomas, 42

metastases, 33

methylation in cancer genome, 249–252, 253F

miRNA and gene expression, 25–26

as monoclonal growths, 49–51, *SS2.5*

necrotic cell death and, 367–370, 368S

in nonepithelial tissue, 36–42

organoids, 816

p53 inactivation and tumor progression, 366–367

pathological classification of, 46, 47–49, *SS2.4*

pRb function in human cancer, 311–315

primary tumor, 33, 609–610

progression of, 44–49, 280

promoters, 61

staging of, *SS2.4*

surgery and stimulation of tumor growth, 567S

teratomas, 43–44

TGF-β and phenotypic change, 307–309

tyrosine kinase receptors and pathogenesis, 135T

See also invasion-metastasis cascade

tumor self-seeding, 677–678

tumor-specific transplantation antigens (TSTAs), 718–721, 719S

tumor stem cells, 437–443, 439S, 441S

EMT-inducing transcription factors and, 643–646

tumor suppressor genes (TSG), 233–234, 236, *SS7.1–SS7.6*

Apc gene, adenomatous polyposis and, 259–265

cancer phenotype as recessive, 234–236

cell cycle checkpoints and, 280

cells-of-origin and, 23

encoded protein functions, overview, 253–254

as gatekeepers and caretakers, 268, 514

gene amplification techniques, 106, 108F

genetic alterations and tumor progression, 425, 430

haploinsufficiency and, 259, 260S

identification using loss-of-heterozygosity events, 244–247

inactivating with promoter methylation, 247, 249–252

KEAP1 and oxidative stress regulation, 265–267

loss of gene function, mechanisms for, 240–242

mapping with PCR, *SS7.3*

mutations, transmission through germ line, 269S

NF1 protein, Ras signal regulation, 254–259, 257S, 260S

p53 gene as, 324–326

pRb-oncogene complexes, cell cycle and, 292–297, 294S

Rb1, *SS1.3*

Rb gene, loss of heterozygosity (LOH) in tumors, 242–244

retinoblastoma tumors, 236–239, 239S

summary table of, 248T–249T

synopsis and prospects, 268–272

TSG knockout mouse model, 257–258, 257S

See also cell cycle clock

tumor suppressor proteins

hTERT gene expression and, 394S

STAT1, 201

tumor viruses

apoptosis and p53, 324, 325T

changes in cell phenotype, 77–79

life cycle, 70S

nonpermissive hosts, 76

provirus, 82–84

replication cycles, 67

as research tool, 62, 67–68

structure of, 70S, 71F

virus stock, 69, 71

See also infectious disease, cancer as; oncogenes

tumstatin, *SS13.8*

TUNEL assay, *SS9.3*

turnover number, 470

Twist transcription factor, 620F, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) and metastasis, 647–651, 647S

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 626–628, 629F, 632F, 633F

“two-hit” hypothesis, 237, 238F

type II TGFβ- receptor (TGR-βRII), 511–512, 512F

type II topoisomerase, 279–280

type IV collagen, 561–563

tyrosinase, 743S–744S

tyrosine

phosphorylation, 16S, 130F, 132, 188

transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), 147–148

tyrosine kinase, 225

anti-cancer therapies, 596–598, 600T

drug targets, selection of, 805F, 809S

See also receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs)

tyrosine kinase receptor gene, 134

tyrosine phosphatase, 809S

U

ubiquitin, 17

ubiquitin ligases, 284–285, *SS8.8*

ubiquitin-proteasome system, 847–850, 850S–852S

ubiquitylation, 205, *SS7.5*, *SS8.8*

CSN2 protein and, 647S

KEAP1 protein, regulation of oxidative stress, 265–267

p53 and Mdm2 autoregulatory loop, 335–340, 338S

Ubl5, 226

Ufm1, 226

ulcerative colitis, 408S

ultimate carcinogens, 59, 496–497

ultra-mutate phenotype, 513

ultraviolet (UV) radiation

cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma and, *SS9.2*

DNA repair mechanisms, 504–506, 507

DNA repair proteins and, 344

melanin and, 501

mutations from, 494–495

p53 protein induction and, 332–333

skin cancer and p53 protein, 335S

tumor mutation burden (TMB), 531, 533

xeroderma pigementosum (XP), 508–510, 509S

unfolded protein response (UPR), 850S–852S

University of California, Berkeley, 73

University of California, San Francisco, 84–86

University of Wisconsin, Madison, *SS3.3*

unscheduled DNA synthesis, *SS2.9*

UPR (unfolded protein response), 850S–852S

uracil, deamination reactions, 491–492

uracil-DNA glycosylase, 505F, 506

urate, 501

uridine, APOBEC cytosine deaminases, 508S

urinary bladder

age and cancer incidence, 416–417

carcinoma, 80F

tumor formation in, 35–36

Urm1, 226

urothelial carcinoma, 752T

urothelial cells, 109

uterine cancer

age and, 416–417

mortality rates, 782

uterine endometrioid, 111T

uterine epithelial cells, 194F

uterine hyperplasia, 194F

uterus, tumor formation in, 35–36, 37F

uveal melanoma, 248T, 672

V

vaccines

cancer prevention and, 738–740

as cancer therapeutics, 742–745, 743S–744S

human papillomavirus and, 740–742

poliovirus, 74, 76

polyvalent vaccines, 742

prophylactic vaccines, 739–740

therapeutic vaccines, 739–740

VLP (virus-like particle)-based vaccines, 741–742

vacuoles, 74

vaginal carcinoma, 55T, 740

Valéry, Paul, 549

valine, 186F

variable regions (V regions), 706, 707F

B- and T-cell receptor diversification, 708–709

bi-specific antibodies, 769–771

CAR T cells and MHC-antigen presentation, 759–761, 759S, 761S, 762F, 763T

germline genes and antibody diversity, *SS15.1*

Varmus, Harold, 84–86

vascular-endothelial-cadherin (VE-cadherin), 578S

vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 127–128, 135T, 139, 144S, *SS5.6*

angiogenesis and, 576, 577F, 585, 586, *SS13.6*

angiogenic switch and, 590–592, 591S

anti-cancer therapies, 596–598, 599S, 600T

breast surgery and tumor stimulation, 567S

drug targets, selection of, 881

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) and, 210T, 211

lymphangiogenesis, 587S, 660S

macrophages and tumor angiogenesis, 579–581

proteasome inhibitors, therapy with, 850S–852S

tumor cell signaling networks, 578, 579F

VEGF-C, metastasis and, 611F

wound healing, 557, 558F, 567

vasculogenic mimicry, 578S, *SS11.4*

vasoactive factors, 565

vasopressin, 209F, 210–211

vasostatin, *SS13.8*

v-Cbl oncoprotein, 140S

vectors, *SS3.7–SS3.8*

Vedotin, 752T

VEGF. *See* vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)

Velcade (PS-341, bortezomib), 794T795F, 847–850, 850S–852S

vemurafenib, 812, 854

venetoclax, 812, 828, 830F

venule permeability, fibrin reactions and, 570–571

vertebrate genome

proto-oncogenes in, 88–89

retrovirus activation of proto-oncogenes, 89–92

vertical transmission, 95

endogenous viruses and, *SS4.1*

vesicles

Patched-Smoothened signaling system, 149–150

small G proteins and, 196S

VHL, drug target selection, 811

VHL gene, 248T, 251T

vicious cycle, 684

vIL6, 140

vimentin, 359, 572–573

epithelial and mesenchymal states, 638F

tumor epithelium and stroma interface, 626F

tumor invasiveness and, 620–622

vinblastine, 794T, 796

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

Vinca rosea, 796

vincristine, 795F, 796

multi-drug protocols, 797–800, 798S

vincristine sulfate (oncovin), 749

vinculin, integrins and, 156–159, 158S

Virchow, Rudolf, *SS17.2*

viremia, *SS4.1*

viremic, 90–92

virions, 70S

virulence, 70S

viruses

APOBEC cytosine deaminases, mutations from, 507, 508S

cancer caused by, 57, 101–102

convergent evolution, 293

cytopathic effects, 67

discovery of, 68

disease caused by, 67

endogenous viruses, *SS4.1*

evolution and, *SS3.7*

gene cloning techniques, 27–28

growth in tissue culture, 69, 71

hosts, nonpermissive and permissive, 76

immune response and malignancy, 700–701

lentilviral and retroviral vectors, *SS1.5*

life cycle, 70S

provirus, 82–84

replication cycles, 67

structure of, 70S, 71F

synopsis and prospects, 120–122

tumor viruses, as research tool, 62, 67–68

tumor viruses, changes in cell phenotype, 77–79

vaccinations, cancer prevention and, 738–740

viral oncoproteins, 92–94

viremic, 90–92

virus stock, 69, 71

See also infectious disease, cancer as; oncogenes; specific virus names

virus-like particles (VLPs), 741–742, 741F

VISTA (V domain Ig suppressor of T-cell activation), 766T

vital dyes, 672–674

vitamin C, 501

vitamin D, 153–154

vitamin E (α-tocopherol), 501

vitronectin, 155T

vMIP, 140

v-*myc* gene, 88

oncogene activation mechanisms, 111–117, 112S, 116S–117S

proto-oncogene activation and, 108–111

Voltaire, 781

von Hansemann, David, 102, *SS4.2*

von Hipple-Lindau syndrome, 248T

von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis, 254–259, 257S, 260S

vorinostat, 794T

Votrient (pazopanib), 600T

v-*sea* gene, 447T

VSIG3 (V-set and Ig domain-containing 3), 766T

v-*sis* oncogene, 138–141, 139T, 140S

v-*ski* gene, 447T

v-*src* (viral *src*), 86–88, 95, 129–132

v-Src viral oncoprotein, 183S

vulva carcinoma, 740

W

Warburg, Otto, 467

Warburg effect, 467–470

warts. *See* papillomas (warts)

watchful waiting, 787

Watson, James, 12

Weissmann, August, 375–376

Werner syndrome, 511T

whales, bowhead, 451–452

whole-exome sequencing, 529

Wiessmann, August, 323

wild type, 4–6, 5F, 6F

Wilms tumor, 108F, 113–114, 248T, 249T, 327

WISP-3 gene, 513T

Wnt, 451

Wnt-1 gene, 92S

Wnt factors, 150–151

WNT-medulloblastoma, 586S

Wnt signaling, 92S, *SS6.4*, *SS6.8*

canonical and non-canonical, 204–208, 206–207F, 208F

epithelial-mesenchymal transitions, induction signals, 628, 628F–629F

in mice, 402–403

stem cell maintenance and, 440S–441S

tumor invasiveness and, 618F–619F

Wnt-Ca^{+2} signaling cascade, 207–208

Wnt-PCP signaling cascade, 207–208

Wnts-Frizzled receptor, *SS8.3*

β-catenin and, 262–265

Wnt-β-catenin-stimulated transcription, 411

Wolpert, Lewis, 609

worms

Caenorhabditis elegans, 2

ras gene, 24–26

value in research, 26–27

wound healing

anti-angiogenic mechanisms, 594–595

cell signaling and, 127–128

epithelial-mesenchymal transition and, 618, 627F

as model for tumor cell signaling, 563–575, 567S

Slug transcription factor and, 627F

WT1 gene, 248T

WT1 tumor suppressor protein, 394S

WTX gene, 249T

Wtx protein, 205–208

X

X11 protein, 184T

xantine, deamination reactions, 491–492

X chromosome, 8

color blindness, 8

gene access on, *SS1.1*

histone modification and, 23

tumors as monoclonal growths, *SS2.5*

xenobiotic compounds, 496–497, 500S, *SS12.3*

xenografts, 79S, 559, *SS2.1*

animal models for drug candidates, 819–821, 820S

anti-cancer therapy development and, 559, 560S

patient-derived xenografts (PDXs), 563, 564F

Xenopus laevis, 634F, 635F, 635T

xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) syndrome, 508–510, 509S, 511T

X-inactivation, *SS1.1*

XPA gene, 509–510, 509S

XPC gene, 509–510, 509S

XPV gene, 507, 509–510, 509S

X-rays, 57, 60

Cockayne syndrome (CS), 510

mutations from, 494–495

p53 protein induction and, 332–334, 335S

Y

Yaba monkey virus, 77

Yamagiwa, Katsusaburo, 56, *SS2.6*

YAP/TAZ + TEAD complex, 216–217, 224

YAP transcription factor, 217, 218F, 224

Y chromosome, 8

Z

ZEB1 transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636, 638F

EMT-inducing TFs (EMT-TFs) and metastasis, 647–651, 647S

ZEB2 transcription factor, 634F, 635F, 635T, 636, 638F

zebrafish, 411, 634F, 635F, 635T

zinc finger, 426S

zTERT, 411

zygote, clones and, *SS1.2*

OceanofPDF.com

Supplementary Sidebars

Supplementary Sidebar 1.1 Each female cell can access information only from a single X chromosome 1
Supplementary Sidebar 1.2 Organismic cloning and the integrity of the somatic cell genome 2
Supplementary Sidebar 1.3 The size of the human essentialome 3
Supplementary Sidebar 1.4 Gene cloning strategies 4
Supplementary Sidebar 1.5 Suppressing gene expression with shRNAs, siRNAs, and CRISPR/Cas9 5
Supplementary Sidebar 2.1 Commonly used histopathological techniques 7
Supplementary Sidebar 2.2 Early embryonic cell layers generate distinct cell types 9
Supplementary Sidebar 2.3 Anaplastic tumors 10
Supplementary Sidebar 2.4 Some principles involved in classifying tumors 11
Supplementary Sidebar 2.5 Demonstrations of monoclonality of tumors 12
Supplementary Sidebar 2.6 Katsusaburo Yamagiwa and the origins of experimental carcinogenesis 14
Supplementary Sidebar 2.7 Structures of carcinogenic coal tar molecules 15
Supplementary Sidebar 2.8 Use of the Ames test to detect mutagenic and thus potentially carcinogenic compounds 16
Supplementary Sidebar 2.9 Other tests for mutagenicity help assess possible carcinogenicity 17
Supplementary Sidebar 3.1 Peyton Rous and the discovery of Rous sarcoma virus 18
Supplementary Sidebar 3.2 Tissue Culture 19
Supplementary Sidebar 3.3 Howard Temin and the retrovirus theory 21
Supplementary Sidebar 3.4 Is SV40 responsible for the mesothelioma plague? 22

Supplementary Sidebar 3.5 Maintenance of KSHV and HPV genomes in episomal and chromosomal form 23
Supplementary Sidebar 3.6 Retroviruses and HIV 25
Supplementary Sidebar 3.7 Where do viruses and their genes originate? 26
Supplementary Sidebar 3.8 Gene therapy can occasionally have tragic consequences 27
Supplementary Sidebar 3.9 A bacterial agent of cancer pathogenesis 28
Supplementary Sidebar 4.1 Endogenous viruses can explain tumor development in the absence of infectious viral spread 29
Supplementary Sidebar 4.2 Boveri and Hansemann independently hypothesized genetic abnormality as the cause of cancer cells' malignant behavior 31
Supplementary Sidebar 4.3 Southern and Northern blotting 32
Supplementary Sidebar 4.4 Increases in gene copy number and their interpretation 33
Supplementary Sidebar 4.5 Cloning of transfected oncogenes 36
Supplementary Sidebar 4.6 Localization of the oncogene-activating mutation in the H-*ras* gene 38
Supplementary Sidebar 4.7 Distribution of mosquitoes, malaria, and Burkitt's lymphoma 39
Supplementary Sidebar 4.8 How does Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) cause cancer? 40
Supplementary Sidebar 5.1 Making anti-Src antibodies presented a major challenge 42
Supplementary Sidebar 5.2 The discovery of phosphotyrosine phosphorylation by Src 43
Supplementary Sidebar 5.3 The protozoan roots of metazoan signaling 44
Supplementary Sidebar 5.4 Demonstration of autocrine signaling by living cells 45
Supplementary Sidebar 5.5 Ligand-mediated dimerization of RTKs 46
Supplementary Sidebar 5.6 Mechanisms of activation of receptor signaling via transphosphorylation 47

Supplementary Sidebar 5.7 Structural alterations of growth factor receptors leading to deregulated firing 48
Supplementary Sidebar 5.8 Mutant forms of a single tyrosine kinase receptor may play a causal role in very different types of cancer 49
Supplementary Sidebar 5.9 Lateral interactions of cell surface receptors 50
Supplementary Sidebar 5.10 Cross-phosphorylation and the complexity of signaling processes 51
Supplementary Sidebar 6.1 Effects of serum stimulation on the cytoskeleton 52
Supplementary Sidebar 6.2 The complexities of understanding RTK signaling 53
Supplementary Sidebar 6.3 Protein: protein interaction motifs 54
Supplementary Sidebar 6.4 Subtleties of Ras signaling 55
Supplementary Sidebar 6.5 Dimerization of protein kinases and Ras 56
Supplementary Sidebar 6.6 Akt and the control of cell growth 58
Supplementary Sidebar 6.7 Diverse mechanisms regulating β-catenin function 59
Supplementary Sidebar 6.8 Cross connections between canonical pathways 60
Supplementary Sidebar 6.9 The actual Ras effector circuit 61
Supplementary Sidebar 7.1 Heterozygosity in the human gene pool 62
Supplementary Sidebar 7.2 Which is more likely: LOH or secondary, independent mutations? 63
Supplementary Sidebar 7.3 The polymerase chain reaction makes it possible to genetically map tumor suppressor genes rapidly 64
Supplementary Sidebar 7.4 Bisulfite sequencing makes it possible to gauge methylation status of promoters 65
Supplementary Sidebar 7.5 Ubiquitylation tags cellular proteins for destruction in proteasomes 66
Supplementary Sidebar 7.6 APC and microtubules 68
Supplementary Sidebar 8.1 Effects of breakdown of mitotic checkpoints 69
Supplementary Sidebar 8.2 Structures of cyclin:CDK complexes 70

Supplementary Sidebar 8.3 Why do mammalian cells employ three D-type cyclins? 71
Supplementary Sidebar 8.4 Mitogenic signals affect cyclin D1 levels in complex ways 72
Supplementary Sidebar 8.5 Plasticity of the cell cycle clock 73
Supplementary Sidebar 8.6 Cytoplasmic versus nuclear localization of p27 74
Supplementary Sidebar 8.7 CDK inhibitors (CKIs) help to maintain the post-mitotic states of differentiated cells 75
Supplementary Sidebar 8.8 Specific targeting of cell cycle and differentiation regulators by E3 ubiquitin ligases and de-ubiquitylating enzymes 76
Supplementary Sidebar 8.9 Other connections between cell cycle progression and entrance into a differentiated state 79
Supplementary Sidebar 8.10 The major puzzle surrounding the *RB* gene: retinoblastomas 80
Supplementary Sidebar 9.1 Too much of a good thing: a hyperactive p53 protein causes premature aging 83
Supplementary Sidebar 9.2 UV-B radiation, HPV, and cutaneous squamous cell carcinomas 84
Supplementary Sidebar 9.3 The molecular changes that characterized apoptotic cells can be detected by a variety of assays. 86
Supplementary Sidebar 10.1 Differentiated cell lineages pass through dramatically different numbers of cell generations 87
Supplementary Sidebar 10.2 The proliferative capacity of cells in aging tissues 88
Supplementary Sidebar 10.3 Replicative senescence—a tissue culture artifact? 89
Supplementary Sidebar 10.4 Telomere-associated proteins 91
Supplementary Sidebar 10.5 TRAP assay for quantifying telomerase activity 92
Supplementary Sidebar 10.6 Ciliates are a rich source of telomerase 93
Supplementary Sidebar 10.7 Defective telomerase function explains a rare human familial syndrome 95
Supplementary Sidebar 10.8 Evidence of telomerase activity in the normal stem cells of laboratory mice 96

Supplementary Sidebar 11.1 Mathematics of multi-step tumor formation 97
Supplementary Sidebar 11.2 Will curing cancer extended human life span? 98
Supplementary Sidebar 11.3 A more detailed accounting of the somatic mutations driving colorectal and pancreatic cancer formation 99
Supplementary Sidebar 11.4 Profound transdifferention in glioblastomas 101
Supplementary Sidebar 11.5 Monoclonal antibodies and fluorescence-activated cell sorting 102
Supplementary Sidebar 11.6 How does multi-step tumor progression actually take place? 104
Supplementary Sidebar 11.7 Stem cells driving papilloma growth closely echo the behavior of normal stem cells of the skin 106
Supplementary Sidebar 11.8 The Darwinian model of tumor development is difficult to validate experimentally 108
Supplementary Sidebar 11.9 Organoids enable the reconstruction of intestinal crypt formation in culture 109
Supplementary Sidebar 11.10 Mammalian cells appear to reduce constitutive telomerase expression in order to forestall tumor outgrowth 110
Supplementary Sidebar 11.11 Why do pediatric tumors carry so few mutant driver genes? 111
Supplementary Sidebar 11.12 The gut microbiome functions as a tumor-promoting mechanism 112
Supplementary Sidebar 11.13 Experimentally induced inflammation in the liver drives tumorigenesis 113
Supplementary Sidebar 11.14 Evidence supporting the key role of COX-2 and PGE2 in the tumor-promoting inflammatory response 115
Supplementary Sidebar 12.1 Hematopoiesis is a model for the organization of many kinds of tissues 119
Supplementary Sidebar 12.2 Oxidation products in urine provide an estimate of the rate of ongoing damage to the cellular genome 121
Supplementary Sidebar 12.3 How does red meat cause colon cancer? 122

Supplementary Sidebar 12.4 Allelic variation in genes encoding metabolic enzymes can affect cancer susceptibility and response to therapy 123
Supplementary Sidebar 12.5 Oxidation removes methyl groups from DNA bases 124
Supplementary Sidebar 12.6 Following base excision repair, DNA is restored by a series of steps 125
Supplementary Sidebar 12.7 A convergence of bacterial, yeast, and human genetics led to the discovery of hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer genes 126
Supplementary Sidebar 12.8 Homology-directed repair requires a homologous sequence 127
Supplementary Sidebar 12.9 BRCA1 has diverse functions 129
Supplementary Sidebar 12.10 HPV deregulates centrosome number and induces aneuploidy 130
Supplementary Sidebar 12.11 Rare alterations in genes encoding chromatid assembly and separation proteins in tumorigenesis 131
Supplementary Sidebar 12.12 Breast cancer studies indicate that common cancers are often caused by inherited defects in caretaker genes 132
Supplementary Sidebar 13.1 Localization of growth factors is important for proper heterotypic interactions 133
Supplementary Sidebar 13.2 Heterotypic signaling in carcinomas is an ongoing process 134
Supplementary Sidebar 13.3 Certain highly advanced tumors provide exceptions to the generally observed dependence of carcinoma cells on stroma 135
Supplementary Sidebar 13.4 Heterotypic signals provoke an EMT 136
Supplementary Sidebar 13.5 Myofibroblasts predict clinical progression of cancer 137
Supplementary Sidebar 13.6 Alternative mechanisms incite neoangiogenesis 138
Supplementary Sidebar 13.7 Microvessel leakiness dooms many forms of anti-cancer therapy: optimizing anti-angiogenic VEGF-neutralizing treatment was discovered as a factor that promoted blood

vessel permeability and initially was termed vascular permeability factor (VPF) 140
Supplementary Sidebar 13.8 Angiogenesis is normally suppressed by physiological inhibitors 143
Supplementary Sidebar 13.9 Natural angiogenesis inhibitors may be employed in various forms of anti-angiogenic therapy 146
Supplementary Sidebar 13.10 Do the effects of radiotherapy depend on damaging tumor-associated microvessels? 147
Supplementary Sidebar 13.11 Fibroblasts are heterogeneous and can change dynamically in response to signals 149
Supplementary Sidebar 14.1 An example of an EMT relatively late in embryonic development 151
Supplementary Sidebar 14.2 TGF-β works in conflicting ways during tumor progression 152
Supplementary Sidebar 14.3 Signals operate in various combinations during embryogenesis 153
Supplementary Sidebar 14.4 The epithelial versus mesenchymal status of carcinoma cells appears to be influenced by cell-intrinsic responses 154
Supplementary Sidebar 14.5 Metastasizing cancer cells often take on hitchhikers while traveling through the blood 156
Supplementary Sidebar 14.6 Metastatic dissemination of advanced primary tumor cells occurs relatively rapidly 159
Supplementary Sidebar 14.7 Our cells devote an enormous number of genes to regulating protein degradation 160
Supplementary Sidebar 14.8 Complex subcellular structures enable cell motility 161
Supplementary Sidebar 14.9 Small G proteins govern cell motility 162
Supplementary Sidebar 14.10 Instruments for detecting circulating tumor cells 165
Supplementary Sidebar 14.11 Hidden micrometastases are revealed through organ transplantation 167
Supplementary Sidebar 14.12 Peritoneovenous shunts provide dramatic support for the seed-and-soil hypothesis 168
Supplementary Sidebar 14.13 Tooth extractions may occasionally become exceedingly painful 169

Supplementary Sidebar 14.14 Tumor stem cells further complicate our understanding of the metastatic process 170
Supplementary Sidebar 14.15 Does Darwinian evolution accommodate metastasis-specific alleles? 171
Supplementary Sidebar 15.1 Antibody and T-cell receptor diversity are generated by somatic rearrangement of germ-line genes 172
Supplementary Sidebar 16.1 How to make monoclonal antibodies 174
Supplementary Sidebar 16.2 Indicators of success or failure of immune checkpoint blockade therapies 177
Supplementary Sidebar 17.1 Modern cancer therapies have had only a minor effect on the overall death rate from the disease 178
Supplementary Sidebar 17.2 Clinical practice and our understanding of disease pathogenesis have often been poorly aligned, leading to sub-optimal, often tragic outcomes 179
Supplementary Sidebar 17.3 The ability to assign tumors to specific disease subtypes is critical to the success of drug development 181
Supplementary Sidebar 17.4 Prostate cancers usually do not require aggressive intervention—a tale of two countries 182
Supplementary Sidebar 17.5 *p53* germ-line polymorphisms and somatic mutations can complicate the induction of apoptosis by drugs 183
Supplementary Sidebar 17.6 Chemical synthesis, compound libraries, and high-throughput screening can identify lead compounds for further clinical development 185
Supplementary Sidebar 17.7 Evolution can generate huge collections of structurally similar proteins 187
Supplementary Sidebar 17.8 Large-scale screening can systematically interrogate the inhibitory effects of a drug on many kinases 189
Supplementary Sidebar 17.9 Epidermal growth factor receptor expression levels predict little about a tumor’s susceptibility to receptor antagonists 191
Supplementary Sidebar 17.10 BH3 profiling can measure a cell’s propensity to undergo apoptosis in response to therapy 192

OceanofPDF.com